1

The Scope of Modern Anesthetic Practice

KATE LESLIE, LARS I. ERIKSSON, JEANINE P. WIENER-KRONISH,
NEAL H. COHEN, LEE A. FLEISHER, and MICHAEL A. GROPPER

KEY POINTS

- The scope of modern anesthesia practice includes preoperative evaluation and preparation; intraprocedural care; postoperative care including acute pain management; critical care, resuscitation, and retrieval; chronic pain management; and palliative care. Anesthesia plays a key role in health service delivery and has a significant impact on population health and the burden of disease.
- Global and national forces for change include changing patient populations, locations of care, workforce, costs, quality and safety initiatives, research capability, and the availability of data. These forces have major implications for the delivery of care, evaluation and organization of the anesthesia practice, and education and training of physician anesthesiologists.
- The volume of patients presenting for perioperative and obstetric care continues to grow. Increasingly more patients at extremes of age are requiring anesthesia services. Many of the patients are elderly and have significant comorbidities, including obesity and opioid use disorder. This has important implications for delivery of care and health system issues.
- Anesthesia care is shifting from the traditional surgical suite to other procedural areas, ambulatory sites, office-based facilities, and home environments. As anesthesia care expands, anesthesiologists must focus on maintaining the safety and quality of care in these diverse settings.
- Global and regional deficits in the availability of high-quality anesthesia care must be managed by improving the supply of both physician and non-physician anesthesia providers, by better use of technology, and by limiting demand through health promotion and disease prevention strategies.
- Internationally, the costs of health care continue to escalate; unfortunately the increased spending has not consistently translated into improved health outcomes. Health policy initiatives including alternative approaches to healthcare financing and payment systems are increasingly being implemented to encourage efficient and effective team-based anesthesia care.
- Anesthesiology was among the first medical specialties to focus on improving the safety of patient care. As anesthesia has become safer, attention has intensified on quality improvement, a process designed to improve patient experience and outcomes through systematic change and evaluation.
- Basic, translational, clinical, and implementation research is vital to continuous improvement in outcomes. Opportunities to optimize care are supported by the availability of large datasets generated using electronic health records as well as novel analytic techniques. These changes create new opportunities for anesthesiologists to collaborate with basic and translational scientists to better understand current practices and define better ways to deliver care. As always the provision of resources to support these research initiatives is a challenge.
- The scope of modern anesthetic practice is continually expanding and changing. The changes occurring in health care in the 21st century create opportunities for anesthesiologists to assume a broader role in clinical practice and health policy, providing exciting opportunities for the next generation of physicians in our specialty.

Introduction

Anesthesia is fundamental to the overall practice of medicine worldwide. Hundreds of millions of patients receive anesthesia care each year in association with a wide range of medical, surgical, and obstetric procedures. In addition to direct delivery of anesthesia to patients undergoing a surgical procedure, the scope of anesthesia practice extends beyond the traditional surgical suite to include preoperative evaluation and management of underlying clinical conditions (see Chapter 31); postoperative care including acute pain management (see Chapter 81); critical care, resuscitation, and retrieval (see Chapter 67); chronic pain management (see Chapter 51); and palliative care (see Chapter 52). Anesthesia therefore plays an essential role in health service delivery (see Chapter 3) and has a significant impact on global health and the burden of disease (see Chapter 2). The purpose of *Miller's Anesthesia* is to cover the full scope of contemporary anesthesia practice, from fundamental principles to advanced subspecialty procedures.

Every edition of this textbook begins with comments about the novel diagnostic and therapeutic procedures that have been developed since the last edition and the increasing complexity of patients presenting for anesthesia and perioperative care, especially those at the extremes of life. Each edition also provides descriptions about advances in anesthesiology that have facilitated patient care, including improved understanding of the processes that underlie disease and injury, the increasing sophistication of the pharmacologic and technical resources available, and the improvements in systems designed to promote safety and quality in health care. The 9th edition is no exception: in the last decade the advances in anesthesia and surgical care, especially for patients receiving complex clinical care, have been truly remarkable.

None of these advances would have been possible without the commitment of anesthesiologists to leadership, teaching, and research. Evidence of their contributions can be found in every chapter of the book, extending from improved understanding of the mechanisms of anesthesia and the processes that regulate organ function and drive organ failure; through new technologies, drugs, and systems of care and education; to improved understanding and acknowledgement of the critical role patients and their families play in decision making about healthcare and end-of-life issues.

The future of anesthesiology is filled with opportunities and challenges. Global and national forces will drive evidence-based, cost-effective perioperative and obstetric care by multiprofessional and multidisciplinary teams. These changes will be supported by integrated electronic medical records and large databases and registries of healthcare outputs and outcomes. Increasingly, anesthesia care has expanded outside the operating room, into preoperative clinics, intervention suites, extended postanesthesia care units, and even into patients' homes. As is true for other medical specialties, anesthesiologists have adopted telehealth strategies to extend the care provided to patients and colleagues beyond face-to-face encounters. Technological advances have and will continue to facilitate less invasive interventions and improved anesthesia delivery and monitoring systems. As a result, seriously ill and injured patients and those at the extremes of age, often with associated comorbidities now have access to care previously not available to them. Care is also becoming more personalized, in large part because of the availability of genetic testing and an improved understanding of the unique needs of each patient based on disease severity and his or her probability of responding to specific treatment modalities. Partially as a result of these improvements in care, the costs of caring for an aging population with progressively sophisticated therapies challenge all nations. These forces will likely have a major effect on the scope of perioperative care in general and anesthesia services in particular. Therefore, anesthesiologists must be involved in health policy decisions about the distribution of resources and the need for high-quality evidence to guide practice. In the rest of this chapter we will deal with some of these forces in detail.

Forces That Will Change Practice (Fig. 1.1)

CHANGING PATIENT POPULATIONS

The volume of patients having surgical procedures each year is large and growing. In 2012, more than 300 million patients had surgery worldwide.[1] This number probably underestimates the overall volume of patients requiring anesthesia services, in large part because much of anesthesia care is now provided outside of traditional surgical suite environments. Global initiatives aimed at delivering universal health coverage and safe and affordable surgery and anesthesia care will result in further increases in the number of patients requiring anesthesia care in coming decades (see Chapter 2).

Increasingly many of the patients requiring anesthesia services will be older and have multiple health problems, including obesity and chronic pain associated with opioid use.

The World Health Organization has estimated that by the year 2050 nearly one-quarter of the world's population will be over 60 years of age.[2] In the United States the number of people aged 65 years and over, and therefore eligible for treatment under Medicare, is expected to exceed 78 million by 2030. In high income countries the increase in the numbers of older patients will result from improved preventative care and management of chronic disease and injury. In low- and middle-income countries this change will result from improvements in maternal and child health and the eradication or control of infectious diseases. Concurrently, improvements in anesthetic and surgical care in many countries are increasing medical care options for older patients, who are now receiving more surgical services—many complicated procedures—than ever before. However, the accessibility of these additional options is presenting new challenges for both patients and providers. Aging is associated with a decline in physiologic reserve and organ function and an increase in the risk of disease, injury, and disability (both physical and cognitive). The aging process is highly variable, with significant influence from genetic, environmental, and societal factors. Aging is also associated with considerable changes in social and economic circumstances. Overall these factors lead the older adult to greater dependence on health and social care and challenges in the provision of safe surgery and anesthesia (see Chapters 65 and 82).

One significant public health issue that is accelerating internationally is obesity. It has emerged as a global health epidemic. In 2016, 39% of adults and 18% of children and adolescents worldwide were overweight.[3] In the United States the prevalence of overweight populations was 67.9% and 41.8% in adults and children, respectively. Although the rate of increase in the number of overweight and obese populations have slowed in some high-income nations, this is not the case in low- and middle-income countries. Poor access to healthy diets and limited exercise contribute to the problem. Obesity is associated with an increased burden of disease and injury, including diabetes and hypertension that result in the need for more interactions with the health system, high costs, and significant challenges in the provision of safe and high-quality surgical and anesthetic care (see Chapter 58).

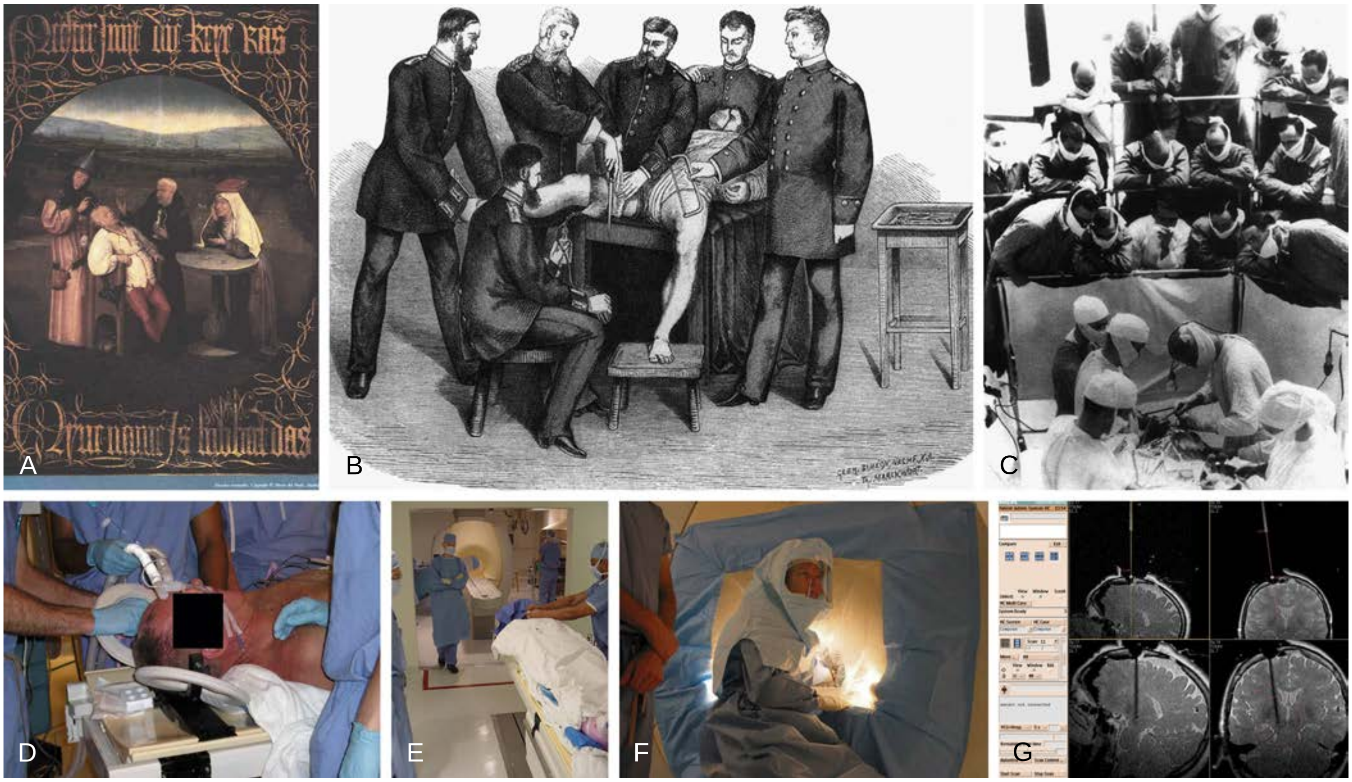


Fig. 1.1 Changing scope and settings of anesthesia and perioperative medicine. (A) *The Cure of Folly,* by Hieronymus Bosch (c.1450–1516), depicting the removal of stones in the head, thought to be a cure for madness. (B) Friedrich Esmarch amputating with the use of anesthesia and antisepsis. (C) Harvey Cushing performing an operation. The Harvey Cushing Society is observing (1932). (D) Placement of a deep brain stimulator for the treatment of Parkinson disease using a real-time magnetic resonance (MR) imaging technology (MR fluoroscopy). The procedure occurs in the MR suite of the radiology department. The patient is anesthetized and (E) moved into the bore of the magnet. (F) A sterile field is created for intracranial instrumentation, and (G) electrodes are placed using real-time guidance. (A, Museo Nacional del Prado, Madrid. B, Woodcut from Esmarch's *Handbuch Der Kriegschirurgischen Technik* [1877]; Jeremy Norman & Co. C, Photograph by Richard Upjohn Light (Boston Medical Library). D to G, Courtesy Paul Larson, University of California–San Francisco, San Francisco Veterans Administration Medical Center.)

Pain management strategies have also had impact on anesthesia practice and perioperative care. The current opioid epidemic arose from increased prescription of opioid drugs to treat all types of acute and chronic pain, including postoperative pain. This crisis has been exacerbated by diversion of prescribed medication (i.e., diverting a medication from its original licit medical purpose) and use of "street" drugs, including opioids. The consequences are significant for individual patients and society as a whole. Opioid use has resulted in addiction, overdoses, homelessness, excessive emergency room visits, increased infections, and neonatal abstinence syndrome. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimated that more than 191 million prescriptions (58.7 prescriptions per 100 persons) were filled in the United States in 2017, with marked regional variation characterized with adverse physical, economic, and social circumstances.[4] Opioids were involved in 42,249 overdose deaths in 2016 (66.4% of all drug overdose deaths). The situation is similar in other nations, with the World Health Organization estimating that 27 million people worldwide suffered opioid use disorder in 2015.[5] Recent government action has been substantial, particularly in the United States. The Department of Health and Human Services has implemented a five-point plan to combat the crisis including: (1) improved access to prevention, treatment, and recovery support services; (2) targeted availability and distribution of overdose-reversing (narcotic antagonist) drugs; (3) strengthened public health data reporting and collection; (4) support for cutting-edge research on addiction and pain; and (5) advances in pain management practice.[6] As experts in the pharmacology and clinical use of opioid drugs (see Chapters 24, 51, and 81), anesthesiologists and pain medicine specialists have and must continue their essential role in resolving this crisis.

CHANGING LOCATIONS OF CARE

Anesthesia practice has expanded to a variety of locations. A number of factors account for this shift in anesthesia and perioperative care (see Chapter 73). The costs of traditional operating room care are high and the services available may be unnecessarily comprehensive and complex for the planned episode of care. With advances in clinical care, the need for inpatient perioperative care is reduced for many surgical procedures. As a result more and more procedures are being performed in hospital outpatient settings, ambulatory surgery centers, and office-based practices. The focus of accrediting bodies and anesthesiology societies has been on maintaining the safety and quality of anesthesia care in outpatient settings, including providing for extended admission and escalation of care when clinically necessary to ensure patient safety.[7] At the same time, the payment models have not necessarily kept pace with these advances in clinical care. In the United States, the growth in nonhospital-based care has occurred despite curbs in reimbursement for ambulatory surgery by governmental and private payers.

The clinical practice for surgical patients has also changed because of changes in sites of care and inpatient management. For most patients, many aspects of perioperative care have shifted from the hospital or other healthcare facility to outpatient or home settings. As one example, the elimination of preoperative hospital admission to day-of-surgery admission is virtually complete in high-income nations. Hospital lengths of stay are also much shorter. As a result, postoperative care is increasingly undertaken in the home as well, often as part of enhanced recovery after surgery programs.[8] Advances in monitoring technology and pain management techniques create opportunities for anesthesiologists in which to not only participate, but also manage many aspects of postoperative care in the home. Although these changes have been beneficial to many patients with improved outcomes and reduced costs, for some families the transition to short hospital lengths of stay has created significant clinical and social problems. Anesthesiologists must have an understanding of patients perioperative and postoperative support needs and should be actively engaged in determining the most appropriate setting for a procedure and how to manage the transitions of care.[9]

In addition to the changes taking place for surgical patients, anesthesia care is also shifting outside the operating room as a result of the advances in minimally invasive techniques provided by cardiologists, radiologists, endoscopists, and pain medicine specialists (see Chapters 51, 55, 57, and 73). As the volume of these services increases, anesthesiologists may be asked to provide care in procedural areas that were not designed for delivery of anesthesia services, and often not properly equipped to support patient and provider needs. The locations are frequently remote from the operating suite and may lack the usual support available for the care of patients with complex cases and the management of crises. Anesthesiologists therefore must participate in planning for these services and provide leadership in defining and maintaining the same standards of operating room practice to other areas of the hospital.[10,11]

Another example of the advances in clinical care and implications is the remarkable increase in referrals for colonoscopy for colon cancer screening.[12] Although the sedation provider for colonoscopy widely varies internationally and regionally within the United States, anesthesiologists are now more commonly participating in the care of these patients, in part due to medical needs related to comorbidities, but also because of documented complications associated with the use of sedation that have resulted in airway compromise or respiratory failure. These complications have caused providers and payers to reevaluate patient needs, the appropriate training of practitioners delivering procedural sedation, and when to optimize care by having an anesthesia practitioner monitor the patient and administer sedation. American[11,13] and international[14,15] sedation guidelines recognize that for many patients, nonanesthesiologist physicians and independent or semi-independent nonmedical practitioners can provide deep sedation for endoscopy; however, all guidelines emphasize that anesthesiologists should be involved in the care of high-risk patients or those with significant comorbidities.

CHANGES IN THE ANESTHESIA WORKFORCE

As a result of advances in perioperative care and the many other changes that impact the need for anesthesia practitioners, global and regional workforce shortages have been identified in recent years and are expected to increase (see Chapter 2). There are a number of reasons for these deficits including an insufficient number of medical graduates (in some places exacerbated by outward migration and an aging workforce), duty hour restrictions for practicing physicians (due to regulation of work hours, changing lifestyle preferences, and desire for better work-life balance), and increased demand for medical services (due to population growth and on a per capita basis). In addition to the impact of these societal changes, demand for physician care in the United States has increased in part due to the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (Affordable Care Act) with more patients having medical insurance and seeking care. To respond to the shortages, many countries within the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (there are 36 member countries, including the United States) have increased medical school admissions in recent years.[16] Unfortunately, even this increase in number of trainees is insufficient to meet future needs. In 2017, the United States produced 7.55 medical graduates per 100,000 population, well below average (12 per 100,000 inhabitants). The Association of American Medical Colleges (AAMC) projects a shortage of up to 121,000 physicians by 2030.[14] At the same time, despite the increases in medical student enrollment, in the United States, most residency positions are funded by the Medicare program. As the medical school intakes have increased, this federal funding for residency positions (including anesthesiology) has not kept pace resulting in a bottleneck in the training pipeline. Along with reconsidering the cap on federally-funded positions, the AAMC has proposed alternative ways to leverage the skills and experience of physicians to advance care with improved use of technology and more interdisciplinary, team-based care as potential solutions.

Team-based care (anesthesia care team model) is already common in anesthesia practice, particularly in the United States. In the United States, the number of physician and nonphysician anesthesia providers are approaching parity, with the number of nurse anesthetists and anesthesia assistants increasing more rapidly than the number of physician anesthesiologists. In 2017, the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) released a statement on the anesthesia care team that enunciated its vision for physician-led teams where anesthesiologists have a particular role in governance, planning, and oversight of anesthesia care, advanced airway management, and resuscitation.[17] This oversight includes defining and monitoring sedation provided in non-operating room locations and other requirements for the credentialing of providers to optimize care of the patient who requires deep sedation. Similar team-based approaches to care associated with physician supervision are commonplace or emerging in other countries around the world.

The number of women in medical schools has increased to over 50% of the student cohort in many countries. At the same time, until recently, United States anesthesiology training programs have recruited a smaller proportion of women (37%). In academic departments, few women have reached the rank of professor, or become department chairs, or been elected to leadership positions in representative anesthesia organizations.[18] Programs to improve recruitment and advancement of women in academic medicine and anesthesiology have gained traction in the last decade (e.g., Athena Scientific Women's Academic Network[19]). In addition, all academic programs are paying more attention to diversity in the workforce, particularly among women and underrepresented minorities. With the increased understanding of the inequities, programs can be developed to more effectively address the disparities and broaden the diversity of the anesthesia workforce. It is essential that the anesthesia workforce reflect the diversity of the patient population that is served.

INCREASING COSTS OF CARE

The costs of health care continue to grow internationally, with health care consuming 8% of gross domestic product (GDP) on average in most countries, whereas in the United States the costs are as high as 18% of GDP.[20] Unfortunately the increased healthcare expenditures have not translated into improved health outcomes, particularly for Americans. Despite the Affordable Care Act, the United States continues to have a large uninsured or underinsured population, lapses in quality and safety of care inside and outside the hospital, and high rates of drug abuse, violence, and use of firearms.[21] The National Academy of Medicine concluded that healthcare funding in the United States needs to "reorient competition in the healthcare system around the value of services provided rather than the volume of services provided." This transition from volume to value is creating many new challenges and opportunities for anesthesiologists. As the health system adopts practices that provide documented improved outcomes at reduced costs, anesthesiologists must both understand the implications of these changes in clinical practices and also take a leadership role in identifying opportunities to reengineer care if the specialty is to retain its leadership role in quality and safety (see Chapter 3).

Payment for physician services is being modified to better align health systems, providers, and payers with respect to delivery of high-quality, patient-centered care. Compensation for clinical care continues to have a fee-for-service component, particularly in the United States; however, more compensation is becoming incentive-based to encourage changes in practice that improve efficiency and effectiveness. In contrast to fee-for-service models (which reward inputs), pay-for-performance models reward medical care that is consistent with published evidence and that improves the processes of care (e.g., timely administration of perioperative antibiotics), output (e.g., meeting targets for urgent surgery), or outcome (e.g., fewer central-line associated blood stream infections) measures. In the United States, recent pay-for-performance programs have included the Premier Hospital Quality Incentive Demonstration program of the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (2003–2009) and the national Hospital Value-Based Purchasing Program, adopted after the passage of the Affordable Care Act (2011). This initial attempt to modify anesthesia practice has had limited impact on outcomes, possibly because financial incentives are too small, payment is delayed, and/or the costs associated with implementing the programs is greater.[22] Nonetheless, incentive-based pay-for-performance programs (which are widespread in other nations with high-cost healthcare systems) will continue to expand.[23]

In addition to paying for high-quality performance, in the United States and other high-income nations there has been increasing emphasis on not paying for poor outcomes of errors in care. For example, some payers withhold payment for "never" events (e.g., wrong-sided surgery, pressure ulcers, retained foreign objects, mismatched blood transfusion) unless they are present on admission to the hospital. This approach may be expanded to withhold payment associated with treatment of preventable complications. A number of anesthesia-specific activities have been identified that impact outcomes and, if these are not provided, the consequence could be either no payment or penalties. For example, monitoring and maintaining body temperature during surgery as promoted by the Surgical Care Improvement Project is but one example of an anesthesia metric that affects outcomes and costs of care.[24] At the same time, identification of some of the interventions or monitoring techniques that impact outcome is challenging. As a result, it is critically important for anesthesiologists to continue to evaluate practices and do additional research to both optimize care and reduce costs.

Other changes in payment for clinical care have and will continue to have significant impact on compensation for anesthesia services. Some payers are providing "bundled" payments to compensate providers for episodes of care. This approach to payment is an integral part of the reforms introduced under the Affordable Care Act, although some of the incentives may be redefined by subsequent legislation. The Bundled Payments for Care Improvement initiative introduced by the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services tested the ability of bundling payments as a method for improving quality and lowering costs. The program has been most successful for selected clinical services such as total joint arthroplasty for which participation by anesthesiologists through the continuum of care can be most significant.[25] The ASA has proposed the Perioperative Surgical Home as an anesthesiologist-managed structure to coordinate perioperative team-based care. This model of coordinated care throughout the perioperative period should be amenable to bundled payments or other new approaches to compensating providers.[26]

INCREASING FOCUS ON SAFETY AND QUALITY

Anesthesiology was among the first medical specialties to focus on improving patient safety.[27] A number of initiatives have had major impact on outcomes of care, including improved monitoring techniques, airway management options, and new improved drugs. Anesthesiologists have been actively assessing clinical care through the use of incident reporting systems, morbidity and mortality conferences, and "near-miss" reports. Incident reporting, which was initiated in the United States more than 50 years ago, has documented a decline in anesthesia-related mortality to less than 1 per 1 million population.[28] In recent years national incident reporting programs have been initiated by the Anesthesia Quality Institute (Anesthesia Incident Reporting System[29]) and the Society of Pediatric Anesthesia (Wake Up Safe[30]). In addition to helping identify areas in which to improve clinical care, these programs provide legal protection to practitioners under the Patient Safety and Quality Improvement Act (2005). A number of programs have developed based on the experiences identified through these reporting mechanisms. Recognition of the human factors associated with adverse events has spawned a national and international movement directed at improving situational awareness and team functioning through simulation training (see Chapter 6). More recently programs to encourage healthcare providers and consumers to speak up about traditional patient safety concerns (e.g., commencing a wrong-side procedure) and unsafe professional behaviors (e.g., bullying and sexual harassment) have been integrated into workplaces nationwide and internationally.[31]

Anesthesiologists also led the way in the development of practice standards and checklists to improve clinical care. In some cases, the implementation of checklists has become a requirement for accreditation. In the last decade anesthesiologists were pivotal in the development, implementation, and evaluation of the World Health Organization's Surgical Safety Checklist.[32] Although the uptake of the Checklist has been patchy and its effect on outcomes has been inconsistent, the Checklist is widely implemented in the United States and other countries (see Chapter 2) in the belief that it will enable effective communication and a culture of safety.[33]

As anesthesia has become more and more safe, our attention has increasingly been focused on quality improvement, a process designed to improve patient experience and outcomes through systematic change and evaluation. In the United States, the Anesthesia Quality Institute established the National Anesthesia Clinical Outcomes Registry to enable systematic collection of quality information for use in quality improvement processes both nationally and locally.[34] Recently greater emphasis has been placed on longer-term and patient-centered or patient-reported outcomes. Many of these outcome measures have been incorporated into quality improvement programs and publicly reported metrics.[35] Anesthesiologists have identified the importance of assessing outcomes beyond the immediate perioperative period. As anesthesiologists assume a greater role in overall periprocedural care and outcomes, they will undoubtedly continue to advance the safety and quality agenda in large part due to their longstanding history in safety and quality as well as their training and pivotal role in perioperative care.

NEW OPPORTUNITIES AND CHALLENGES IN RESEARCH

Academic anesthesia departments are committed to advancing the scientific underpinning of anesthesiology. Basic, translational, clinical, and implementation research is vital to the continuous improvement in patient and health service outcomes (see Chapter 89). Fortunately, overall funding for biomedical and health services research in the United States more than doubled between 1994 and 2012. Although overall research funding has increased, since 2004 the overall growth of NIH funding for medical research has declined by 1.8%.[36] Private sources of funding have been important to supplement government-sponsored research support. Industry support is valuable and has been critical to the research agenda for academic departments. It also creates both real and perceived conflicts of interest that can be difficult to manage. Over the past decade, there has been a decline in early-stage research in favor of device development and clinical trials, poor mapping of research effort to the global burden of disease, and limited funding for critically important health services research.[36]

The implications of these changes in research support on anesthesia are significant. Academic anesthesia departments in the United States, as well as many other countries, continue to compete for government funding. Most benchmarks suggest that the specialty of anesthesiology in the United States fares poorly in National Institutes of Health funding when compared with other disciplines.[37] As a result, anesthesia departments, particularly in the United States have had to identify other funding sources, including foundations, industry, and philanthropy, particularly for early-career investigators.[38] For example the Foundation for Anesthesia Education and Research (FAER) has awarded more than $40 million in grants since 1986 and has demonstrated the leverage that these grants provide in achieving federal funding ($17 in funding for every $1 investment). Similar programs are funded by the International Anesthesia Research Society and by other anesthesiology organizations and foundations worldwide. At the same time, and in many respects related to the funding challenges and competing clinical needs, research support and peer-reviewed publications, which have increased in other countries, have not kept pace in the United States. As a result, an increasing number of publications in peer-reviewed journals are from authors outside the United States.

Other factors have impact on what resources are available for research. The clinical demands put on the faculty in academic departments make it difficult for clinician scientists to pursue research activities. Associated with the increasing clinical volume, supervised residents cannot provide all of the clinical care without compromising their educational experiences and fulfilling duty hour and other requirements. As a result, the faculty members are delivering a larger percentage of care on their own. At the same time, the complexity of some of the basic and translational research requires significant dedicated time and skills that are difficult to maintain when the investigator is also encumbered with a high clinical demand. Historically, clinically generated income was used to support research in general and young investigators in particular. As labor and other costs increase (including those associated with quality of care initiatives, clinical and research compliance, and other activities), fewer funds are available to support research. As a result of the high cost of developing new drugs with insufficient incentives for the pharmaceutical industry to develop new anesthetic agents, there is a reduced pipeline of anesthesia drugs.[39]

Despite these challenges, basic science, as well as clinical and translational research, is being performed by anesthesiologists and advances in the specialty are taking place. New models for research have contributed to advances in our understanding of basic concepts of anesthesia care as well as clinical advances. As is true for clinical care, collaboration has always been vital in biomedical research. In recent years anesthesiology research has increasingly been conducted by multiprofessional, multidisciplinary teams including biostatisticians, health informaticians, and health economists. Translation from discovery to practice has been facilitated by partnerships among basic scientists, clinical scientists, and implementation scientists.[40] In addition to collaborations among colleagues within one institution, increasingly clinical trials are being conducted by large, multicenter networks because of the recognition that single-center studies take too long and cannot recruit enough patients to answer the really important questions in anesthesiology.[41-44] Research based on electronic medical records and databases also requires collaboration between institutions, clinicians, and database experts (see later).

One of the primary motivators to support the research agenda for anesthesiology is the need to define reliable and peer-reviewed data upon which to advance the specialty. Although the volume of anesthesiology information and its ease of access have increased exponentially in the last decade, particularly through social media, anesthesiologists are progressively challenged to find reliable information to guide their practice. In addition to the difficulty of assessing the quality of some of the information posted on various web sites, anesthesiology has also been plagued by high-profile cases of research misconduct, including fabrication, falsification, and misleading reporting of research findings.[45] This has damaged the reputation of anesthesiology research and, as a result of unreliable data upon which to make clinical decisions, put patients at risk. Each anesthesiologist must be diligent in selecting a source of information that takes into consideration the standards of peer review of the material and the financial relationships between the authors and publishers.[46]

INCREASING AVAILABILITY OF DATA

One of the areas of opportunity with respect to better understanding our clinical practices and defining ways to improve care is the increasing amount of data that can inform us. The last decade has seen unprecedented growth in the volume and availability of healthcare data. Electronic health record (EHR) systems (see Chapter 4) facilitate complete data capture and integration from multiple sources, including surgical equipment, anesthesia delivery systems, and physiologic monitors. The EHR has greatly facilitated documentation of individual patient care and provided aggregate data for healthcare services and populations. Other sources of routinely-collected data include health service billing systems, government and insurance databases, disease registries, and public health reporting. In addition, data specifically collected for research and quality improvement is increasingly shared, including research databases and biobanks (including genetic databanks). Meta-data related to the use of electronic resources and social media is also available for interrogation. These data require new management and analysis techniques that are beyond the scope of the practicing anesthesiologist or researcher (see Chapter 4). Truly “big” data includes terabytes of information, is generated and analyzed at high speed, and includes data in a wide variety of formats and from a wide variety of sources.[47]

These large data sets are increasingly being used to answer important research questions, to develop evidence-based clinical guidelines, and to assess the safety and quality of anesthesia and perioperative care, within and across different clinical environments and regions. Although technologic resources are not replacing randomized clinical trials, the information gleaned from large databases can be used to address important questions about how to most effectively deliver cost-effective care. At the same time, it is important to acknowledge the limitations of large databases, which may have missing critical elements of care or outcomes, could misclassify data, or in some cases, lack verification.[48]

Conclusions

The scope of modern anesthetic practice is continually changing and expanding. The forces for change include changes in our patient population, locations of care, workforce, costs, quality and safety initiatives, research, and the availability of data. This chapter emphasizes the implications for these forces on the specialty as well as the influence they have on the delivery of health care in general. The changes occurring in health care in the 21st century obviously have implications for the role of anesthesiology in both the practice and delivery of medicine overall, and provide exciting opportunities for the next generation of practitioners and leaders in our specialty.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher recognize the contributions of Ronald D. Miller, who was a contributing author to this topic in previous editions of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Weiser TG, et al. *Lancet*. 2015;385(suppl 2):S11.
2. World Health Organisation. World report on ageing and health. Geneva. https://www.who.int/ageing/events/world-report-2015-launch/en/. Accessed October 18 2018.
3. World Health Organisation. Fact sheet on overweight and obesity. http://www.who.int/en/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/obesity-and-overweight. Accessed October 18 2018.
4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. U.S. opioid prescribing rate maps. Atlanta. https://www.cdc.gov/drugoverdose/maps/rxrate-maps.html. Accessed October 18 2018.
5. World Health Organisation. Information sheet on opioid overdose. Geneva. http://www.who.int/substance_abuse/information-sheet/en/. Accessed October 18 2018.
6. Department of Health and Human Services. Help, resources and information. National opioid crisis. Washington. https://www.hhs.gov/opioids/. Accessed October 18 2018.
7. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Guidelines for office-based anesthesia. Schaumberg. https://www.asahq.org/quality-and-practice-management/standards-guidelines-and-related-resources-search. Accessed October 18 2018.
8. Kehlet H. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:606.
9. Fleisher LA, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2004;139:67.
10. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Statement on non-operating room anesthetizing locations. Schaumberg. https://www.asahq.org/quality-and-practice-management/standards-guidelines-and-related-resources-search. Accessed.

11. American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on moderate procedural sedation and analgesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:437.
12. National Cancer Institute. Colorectal cancer screening. Bethesda. https://progressreport.cancer.gov/detection/colorectal_cancer. Accessed October 18 2018.
13. Quality Management and Departmental Administration Committee. Advisory on granting privileges for deep sedation to non-anesthesiologist physicians (amended October 25, 2017). Schaumburg. http://www.asahq.org/quality-and-practice-management/standards-guidelines-and-related-resources. Accessed March 5 2018.
14. The Academy of Medical Royal Colleges. Safe sedation practice for healthcare procedures. London. https://www.rcoa.ac.uk/system/files/PUB-SafeSedPrac2013.pdf. Accessed March 5 2018.
15. Hinkelbein J, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2017;35:6.
16. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. Medical graduates. Paris. https://data.oecd.org/healthres/medical-graduates.htm. Accessed October 18 2018.
17. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Statement on the anesthesia care team. Schaumberg. http://www.asahq.org/quality-and-practice-management/standards-guidelines-and-related-resources/statement-on-anesthesia-care-team. Accessed October 18 2018.
18. Leslie K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1394.
19. Equality Challenge Unit. Athena SWAN Charter. London. https://www.ecu.ac.uk/equality-charters/athena-swan/. Accessed October 18 2018.
20. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. Health spending. Paris. https://data.oecd.org/healthres/health-spending.htm. Accessed October 18 2018.
21. National Research Council and Institute of Medicine. U.S. *Health in International Perspective: shorter Lives, Poorer Health*. Washington: National Academies Press. 2013.
22. Bonfrer I, et al. *BMJ*. 2018;360:j5622.
23. European Observatory on Health Systems and Policies. Paying for performance in healthcare. Implications for health system performance and accountability. Maidenhead. http://www.euro.who.int/__data/assets/pdf_file/0020/271073/Paying-for-Performance-in-Health-Care.pdf. Accessed October 18 2018.
24. Scott AV, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:116.
25. Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services. Bundled Payments for Care Improvement (BPCI) Initiative: General Information. Washington DC. https://innovation.cms.gov/initiatives/bundled-payments/. Accessed October 18 2018.
26. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Perioperative surgical home. Schaumberg. https://www.asahq.org/psh. Accessed October 18 2018.
27. Kohn L, Corrigan J, Donaldson M. *To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System*. Washington DC: National Academy Press; 1999.
28. Li G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:759.
29. Anesthesia Quality Institute. Anesthesia incident reporting system (AIRS). Schaumberg. https://qualityportal.aqihq.org/AIRSMain/AIRSSelectType/0. Accessed October 18 2018.
30. Society for Pediatric Anesthesia. Wake up safe. Richmond. http://www.wakeupsafe.org/. Accessed October 18 2018.
31. Webb LE, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2016;42:149.
32. Haynes A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:491.
33. de Jager E, et al. *World J Surg*. 2016;40:1842.
34. Liau A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:1604.
35. Peden CJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:i5.
36. Moses H 3rd, et al. *JAMA*. 2015;313:174.
37. Reves JG. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:826.
38. Speck RM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126:2116.
39. Vlassakov KV, Kissin I. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2016;37:344.
40. Kharasch ED. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:693.
41. Myles P, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7:e015358.
42. Pearse RM, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311:2181.
43. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Lancet*. 2018;391:2631.
44. Devereaux P, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1494.
45. Moylan EC, Kowalczuk MK. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6:e012047.
46. Shen C, Bjork BC. *BMC Med*. 2015;13:230.
47. Levin MA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:1661.
48. Fleischut PM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:532.

References

1. Weiser TG, Haynes AB, Molina G, et al. Estimate of the global volume of surgery in 2012: an assessment supporting improved health outcomes. *Lancet*. 2015;385(suppl 2):S11.
2. World Health Organisation. World report on ageing and health. Geneva. https://www.who.int/ageing/events/world-report-2015-launch/en/. Accessed October 18 2018.
3. World Health Organisation. Fact sheet on overweight and obesity. http://www.who.int/en/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/obesity-and-overweight. Accessed October 18 2018.
4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. U.S. opioid prescribing rate maps. Atlanta. https://www.cdc.gov/drugoverdose/maps/rxrate-maps.html. Accessed October 18 2018.
5. World Health Organisation. Information sheet on opioid overdose. Geneva. http://www.who.int/substance_abuse/information-sheet/en/. Accessed October 18 2018.
6. Department of Health and Human Services. Help, resources and information. National opioid crisis. Washington. https://www.hhs.gov/opioids/. Accessed October 18 2018.
7. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Guidelines for office-based anesthesia. Schaumberg. https://www.asahq.org/quality-and-practice-management/standards-guidelines-and-related-resources-search. Accessed October 18 2018.
8. Kehlet H. Multimodal approach to control postoperative pathophysiology and rehabilitation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:606–617.
9. Fleisher LA, Pasternak LR, Herbert R, Anderson GF. Inpatient hospital admission and death after outpatient surgery in elderly patients: importance of patient and system characteristics and location of care. *Arch Surg*. 2004;139:67–72.
10. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Statement on non-operating room anesthetizing locations. Schaumberg. https://www.asahq.org/quality-and-practice-management/standards-guidelines-and-related-resources-search. Accessed.
11. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Moderate Procedural Sedation and Analgesia, the American Association of Oral and Maxillofacial Surgeons, American College of Radiology, American Dental Association, American Society of Dentist Anesthesiologists, and Society of Interventional Radiology. Practice guidelines for moderate procedural sedation and analgesia 2018. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:437–479.
12. National Cancer Institute. Colorectal cancer screening. Bethesda. https://progressreport.cancer.gov/detection/colorectal_cancer. Accessed October 18 2018.
13. Quality Management and Departmental Administration Committee. Advisory on granting privileges for deep sedation to non-anesthesiologist physicians (amended October 25, 2017). Schaumburg. http://www.asahq.org/quality-and-practice-management/standards-guidelines-and-related-resources. Accessed March 5 2018.
14. The Academy of Medical Royal Colleges. Safe sedation practice for healthcare procedures. London. https://www.rcoa.ac.uk/system/files/PUB-SafeSedPrac2013.pdf. Accessed March 5 2018.
15. Hinkelbein J, Lamperti M, Akeson J, et al. European Society of Anaesthesiology and European Board of Anaesthesiology guidelines for procedural sedation and analgesia in adults. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2017;35:6–24.
16. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. Medical graduates. Paris. https://data.oecd.org/healthres/medical-graduates.htm. Accessed October 18 2018.
17. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Statement on the anesthesia care team. Schaumberg. http://www.asahq.org/quality-and-practice-management/standards-guidelines-and-related-resources/statement-on-anesthesia-care-team. Accessed October 18 2018.
18. Leslie K, Hopf HW, Houston P, O'Sullivan E. Women, minorities, and leadership in anesthesiology: Take the pledge. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1394–1396.
19. Equality Challenge Unit. Athena SWAN Charter. London. https://www.ecu.ac.uk/equality-charters/athena-swan/. Accessed October 18 2018.
20. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. Health spending. Paris. https://data.oecd.org/healthres/health-spending.htm. Accessed October 18 2018.
21. National Research Council and Institute of Medicine. U.S. health in international perspective: shorter lives, poorer health. Washington: National Academies Press; 2013.
22. Bonfrer I, Figueroa JF, Zheng J, Orav EJ, Jha AK. Impact of financial incentives on early and late adopters among us hospitals: Observational study. *BMJ*. 2018;360:j5622.
23. European Observatory on Health Systems and Policies. Paying for performance in healthcare. Implications for health system performance and accountability. Maidenhead. http://www.euro.who.int/__data/assets/pdf_file/0020/271073/Paying-for-Performance-in-Health-Care.pdf. Accessed October 18 2018.
24. Scott AV, Stonemetz JL, Wasey JO, et al. compliance with surgical care improvement project for body temperature management (SCIP Inf-10) is associated with improved clinical outcomes. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:116–125.
25. Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services. Bundled Payments for Care Improvement (BPCI) Initiative: General Information. Washington DC. https://innovation.cms.gov/initiatives/bundled-payments/. Accessed October 18 2018.
26. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Perioperative surgical home. Schaumberg. https://www.asahq.org/psh. Accessed October 18 2018.
27. Kohn L, Corrigan J, Donaldson M. *To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System*. Washington DC: National Academy Press; 1999.
28. Li G, Warner M, Lang BH, Huang L, Sun LS. Epidemiology of anesthesia-related mortality in the United States, 1999-2005. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:759–765.
29. Anesthesia Quality Institute. Anesthesia incident reporting system (AIRS). Schaumberg. https://qualityportal.aqihq.org/AIRSMain/AIRSSelectType/0. Accessed October 18 2018.
30. Society for Pediatric Anesthesia. Wake up safe. Richmond. http://www.wakeupsafe.org/. Accessed October 18 2018
31. Webb LE, Dmochowski RR, Moore IN, et al. Using coworker observations to promote accountability for disrespectful and unsafe behaviors by physicians and advanced practice professionals. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2016;42:149–164.
32. Haynes A, Weiser T, Berry W, et al. A surgical safety checklist to reduce morbidity and mortality in a global population. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:491–499.
33. de Jager E, McKenna C, Bartlett L, Gunnarsson R, Ho YH. Postoperative adverse events inconsistently improved by the World Health Organization Surgical Safety Checklist: a systematic literature review of 25 studies. *World J Surg*. 2016;40:1842–1858.
34. Liau A, Havidich JE, Onega T, Dutton RP. The National Anesthesia Clinical Outcomes Registry. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:1604–1610.
35. Peden CJ, Campbell M, Aggarwal G. Quality, safety, and outcomes in anaesthesia: what's to be done? An international perspective. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:i5–i14.
36. Moses H 3rd, Matheson DH, Cairns-Smith S, George BP, Palisch C, Dorsey ER. The anatomy of medical research: US and international comparisons. *Jama*. 2015;313:174–189.
37. Reves JG. We are what we make: transforming research in anesthesiology: the 45th Rovenstine Lecture. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:826–835.
38. Speck RM, Ward DS, Fleisher LA. Academic anesthesiology career development: a mixed-methods evaluation of the role of Foundation for Anesthesiology Education and Research funding. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126:2116–2122.
39. Vlassakov KV, Kissin I. Decline in the development of new anesthetics. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2016;37:344–352.
40. Kharasch ED. The challenges of translation. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:693–696.
41. Myles P, Bellomo R, Corcoran T, et al. Restrictive versus liberal fluid therapy in major abdominal surgery (RELIEF): rationale and design for a multicentre randomised trial. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7:e015358.
42. Pearse RM, Harrison DA, MacDonald N, et al. Effect of a perioperative, cardiac output-guided hemodynamic therapy algorithm on outcomes following major gastrointestinal surgery: a randomized clinical trial and systematic review. *JAMA*. 2014;311:2181–2190.
43. Wijeysundera DN, Pearse RM, Shulman MA, et al. Assessment of functional capacity before major non-cardiac surgery: an international, prospective cohort study. *Lancet*. 2018;391:2631–2640.

44. Devereaux P, Sessler D, Mrkobrada M, et al. Aspirin in patients having non-cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1494–1503.
45. Moylan EC, Kowalczuk MK. Why articles are retracted: a retrospective cross-sectional study of retraction notices at BioMed Central. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6:e012047.
46. Shen C, Bjork BC. Predatory' open access: a longitudinal study of article volumes and market characteristics. *BMC Med*. 2015;13:230.
47. Levin MA, Wanderer JP, Ehrenfeld JM. Data, big data, and metadata in anesthesiology. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:1661–1667.
48. Fleischut PM, Mazumdar M, Memtsoudis SG. Perioperative database research: possibilities and pitfalls. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:532–534.

2

Anesthesia and Analgesia in the Global Context

MICHAEL S. LIPNICK, RONALD D. MILLER, and ADRIAN W. GELB, EDITORS.
SEE CHAPTER OUTLINE FOR CO-AUTHORS.

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Introduction
Section 1: Anesthesia and "Global Health"
Scope and Scale of the Global Anesthesia, Surgery, and Pain Crises
  Global Burden of Surgical Disease
  Global Burden of Pain
  Disparities in Access, Affordability, and Safety
Global Anesthesia, Surgery, and Pain Crises: Origins and Areas for Intervention
  Misperceptions and Limited Data
  Advocacy and Policy
  Workforce Shortages and Strategies for Expansion
  Infrastructure Challenges
  Inequities in Analgesia
Section 2: Evolution of Anesthesia Care Models and Challenges Around the World
Africa
  Uganda (Mary T. Nabukenya and Sarah Hodges)
  South Africa (Hyla Kluyts)
North America
  Canada (Tyler Law)
  Mexico (Gerardo Prieto)
  United States (Ronald D. Miller and Adrian W. Gelb)
Europe
  Norway (Jannicke Mellin-Olsen)
  Romania (Daniela Filipescu)
Asia and The Middle East
  India (Bala Krishnan Kanni)
  Lebanon and The Middle East (Patricia Yazbeck)
  Pakistan (Fauzia Khan)
  China (Yugaung Huang)
  Vietnam (Thi Thanh Nguyen and Thang Cong Quyet)
South America
  Paraguay (Rodrigo Sosa Argana)
  Colombia (Pedro Ibarra)
Oceania
  Australia and New Zealand (Rob McDougall)
  Fiji and Pacific Island Nations(Sereima Bale)
Section 3: Essentials for Practice in Resource-Constrained Settings
Clinical and Technical Skills
  Personnel
  Equipment
  Drugs
  Patients
Global Health Competencies
Conclusions

KEY POINTS

- More than 5 of the world's 7 billion people lack access to safe anesthesia and surgical services. Surgical disease accounts for 30% of global disease burden, yet less than 1% of development assistance for health supports delivery of anesthesia and surgical care. Lack of access to safe, timely, and affordable anesthesia and surgery kills more than 4 times as many as acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), tuberculosis (TB), and malaria combined.
- Lack of access to safe anesthesia and surgical services are among the most neglected crises in global health. Anesthesia-related mortality in some low-income countries (LICs) is reported in the 1:100s and is mostly avoidable. The burden of surgical disease is growing and disproportionately affects low- and middle-income countries.
- Pain is one of the top causes of morbidity worldwide, and inadequate access to analgesia is among the most inequitable global public health crises the world faces today. Five and a half billion people have limited or no access to narcotic medications for analgesia. Six high-income countries (HICs) account for 80% of the world's opioid consumption. Key drug control policies, organizations, and politics continue to influence issues of access and abuse, with disproportionately negative impacts for underserved populations.
- Critical shortages and the inequitable distribution of anesthesia providers are significant barriers to increasing access to safe anesthesia and surgical care. The density of surgery, anesthesia, and obstetric providers is 0.7 per 100,000 population for LICs as compared with 57 per 100,000 population for HICs.

KEY POINTS—cont'd

- Modern anesthesia workforce training and practice models vary widely from country to country. Innovative workforce solutions are needed to increase provider numbers while simultaneously ensuring quality and promoting access for underserved populations.
- Anesthesia, analgesia, and surgical services are feasible in resource-constrained settings and are as cost-effective as many other public health interventions (e.g., vaccinations).
- Issues of access, safety, and resource utilization are relevant to all anesthesia providers. Equipping anesthesia providers with knowledge and skills needed to address global challenges in anesthesia will become increasingly important in order to expand access to safe and affordable anesthesia care worldwide.
- Health care providers from multiple disciplines (nursing, surgery, obstetrics, anesthesia, and many more) are needed to effectively provide surgical and perioperative care. Anesthesiologists routinely work across the perioperative disciplines and can play a significant role to improve cohesive advocacy efforts and lead progress in global health equity for surgical disease and analgesia.
- The global anesthesia community is lagging behind other health disciplines in addressing global health challenges and must rapidly expand investment in initiatives to help characterize (research), address (implementation and policy), and support (financing) global anesthesia challenges.
- Developing infrastructure, expanding workforce, improving data to drive policy, providing financial risk protection mechanisms for surgical patients, improving referral and prehospital systems, and providing essential medicines are actions the global anesthesia community must prioritize. The need to act promptly is immense and must be balanced but not overshadowed by research agendas.

Introduction

There have been considerable efforts in recent years to define a global "standard" or "optimal" practice of anesthesia.[1-4] These debates, investigations, and innovations have most often been framed in the context of maximizing patient safety. More recently the focus of these efforts has expanded to also incorporate the important goals of maximizing not only safety, but also accessibility and affordability of anesthesia services.[5]

With scientific advancement and economic development, anesthesia—like much of medicine—has changed dramatically since the first public display of ether anesthesia in October of 1846. However, over the past 150-plus years, advances in anesthesia have been neither uniform nor universal, resulting in vastly heterogeneous anesthesia practice models and massive inequities in access to safe anesthesia care worldwide. The majority of the world's population does not have access to safe, affordable surgical, anesthesia, or pain services, and relatively few resources are being invested by governments, donors, or the global anesthesia community to address this crisis.

In this chapter we build off the work of Dr. Miller and colleagues' to explore not only the evolution and diversity of anesthesia practice models from around the world, but also challenges facing the global anesthesia community. A better understanding of the evolution of modern anesthesia care models, as well as the challenges they face and have overcome, is a key step to improving access and patient safety worldwide.

The first section of this chapter describes the scope and magnitude of the ongoing global surgical, anesthesia, and pain crises. This section also explores reasons why these crises have been relatively neglected by the global public health community, and reviews potential areas for intervention, advocacy, and change.

TABLE 2.1 World Bank Income Classifications by Gross National Income per Capita

	GNI per Capita (US $)
Low income	<1,005
Lower-middle income	1,006-3,955
Upper-middle income	3,956-12,235
High income	>12,235

GNI, Gross national income.
Source: https://blogs.worldbank.org/opendata/new-country-classifications-income-level-2017-2018.

The second section of this chapter presents examples of different anesthesia care models from around the world, including select historical milestones and snapshots of current challenges from regional and country-level perspectives.

The final section of this chapter provides a primer on essential clinical and nonclinical knowledge relevant for anesthesia practice in resource-constrained settings. The chapter concludes by discussing the role of anesthesia providers beyond the confines of the operating room or hospital setting, who increasingly will be called upon for solutions that increase access to safe anesthesia, surgery, and analgesia in the global context.

Section 1: Anesthesia and "Global Health"

The terms anesthesia and global health, when used together, often invoke thoughts of providers from high-income countries (HICs) providing clinical care in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs) as part of humanitarian outreach or "mission trips" (Table 2.1). Although such initiatives comprise a substantial proportion of efforts that

TABLE 2.2 Definitions of Global Health and Global Surgery

	Global Health*	Global Surgery†
Approach	Field of study, research, practice and advocacy. Emphasizes global perspective and a scientific approach to health promotion and disease prevention, including broad determinants of health.	Area for study, research, practice, and advocacy that places priority on improving health outcomes and achieving health equity for all people worldwide who are affected by surgical conditions or have a need for surgical care.
Geography	Focuses on issues that directly or indirectly affect health but that can transcend national boundaries.	Global surgery emphasizes supraterritorial and transnational issues, determinants, and solutions.
Level of cooperation	Development and implementation of solutions often require global cooperation.	Recognizes that the determinants of inadequate or inequitable surgical care are often the result of common and interdependent global structures and processes, and require global cooperation for global solutions.
Individuals or populations	Embraces both prevention in populations and clinical care of individuals.	Encompasses surgical care for underserved populations in all countries with special emphasis on those affected by conflict, displacement, and disaster.
Access to health	Health equity among nations and for all people is a major objective.	Equitable access to safe and affordable anesthesia, analgesia, and surgical care is a major objective.
Range of disciplines	Highly interdisciplinary and multidisciplinary within and beyond health sciences.	Incorporates all surgical specialties including obstetric and gynecological surgery, anesthesia, perioperative care, aspects of emergency medicine, rehabilitation, and palliative care, and nursing and the allied health professions involved in the care of the surgical patient. Engages non-clinical stakeholders including health economists, governments, and policymakers.

*Modified from Koplan JP, Bond TC, Merson MH, et al. Towards a common definition of global health. *Lancet*. 2009;(9679);1993–1995; Fried LP, Bentley ME, Buekens P, et al. Global health is public health. *Lancet*. 2010;375(9714):535–537.

†Modified from Dare AJ, Grimes CE, Gillies R, et al. Global surgery: defining an emerging global heath field. *Lancet*. 2014;384(9961):2245–2247.

aim to increase access to surgical and anesthesia services in resource-constrained settings, they represent only a fraction of the ever-expanding role of the anesthesia community in global health.

In this chapter, the term "global health" refers to a multidisciplinary field of study, research, practice, and advocacy that develops and implements solutions to promote health equity. Global health transcends national boundaries, requires global cooperation, and utilizes both population-level (e.g., injury prevention) and individual-level (e.g., clinical care) strategies (Table 2.2). Although some debate exists over the optimal definition of global health and its distinction, or lack thereof, from public health, it is worth highlighting that global health is not synonymous with international aid (i.e., going abroad from one's own country) or the transfer of technologies or interventions from HICs to LMICs.[6,7] Global health encompasses much more, including local providers working in the local environment (whether that is a low-, middle-, or high-income setting), and increasing emphasis on health equity.[8]

Global health has received unprecedented levels of interest in recent decades, expanding from its infectious disease origins to now incorporate a wider range of diseases, including the social and environmental factors affecting health.[9,10] Despite this expanded scope, surgery and anesthesia have remained relatively forgotten by the global health community.

In June of 1980, then Director-General of the World Health Organization (WHO), Dr. Halfdan Mahler, gave a presentation to the International College of Surgeons in Mexico City entitled "Surgery and Health for All." In this speech, Dr. Mahler stated that "*Surgery clearly has an important role to play in primary health care and in the services supporting it. Yet, the vast majority of the world's population has no access whatsoever to skilled surgical care, and little is being done to find a solution. I beg of you to give serious consideration to this most serious manifestation of social inequity in health care.*"[11]

Despite recognition of the global anesthesia and surgical crises several decades ago, it has been only recently that the global health community has begun to take notice and action.[12–17] In 2004, the WHO created the Emergency and Essential Surgical Care Program (EESC) and in 2005, the WHO Global Initiative for Emergency and Essential Surgical Care (GIEESC) was formed to convene multidisciplinary stakeholders interested in surgical disease. In 2007, the Bellagio Essential Surgery Group and Burden of Surgical Disease Working Group (later renamed the Alliance for Surgery and Anesthesia Presence [ASAP]) formed as two of the earliest concerted efforts to raise international awareness for surgical disease by advocating for the integration of surgery into health systems and the promotion of research and collaboration across disciplines.[18] These efforts followed in the wake of a seminal chapter on surgery in the Second Edition of the Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries (DCP2) book in 2006.[19] In 2008, the WHO launched the Safe Surgery Saves Lives initiative along with the WHO Safe Surgery Checklist.[20,21] Also in 2008 multiple leaders in global health highlighted surgery as the "neglected stepchild" and as the "other neglected disease" in global health, drawing comparison with the then emerging term, "neglected tropical diseases."[22,23]

Despite these pleas and consistent, albeit limited, data demonstrating the massive scale of the surgical disease crisis, it was not until 2014–15 that greater attention began to be realized. In 2014, the Amsterdam Declaration on Essential Surgical Care was created, and in 2015, the 68th World Health Assembly (WHA) unanimously passed resolution 68.15 (WHA68.15) to strengthen emergency and essential

BOX 2.1 Key Messages From the Disease Control Priorities 3rd Edition

- Provision of essential surgical procedures would avert an estimated 1.5 million deaths a year, or 6%-7% of all avertable deaths in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs).
- Essential surgical procedures rank among the most cost-effective of all health interventions. The surgical platform of first-level hospitals delivers 28 of the 44 essential procedures, making investment in this platform also highly cost-effective.
- Measures to expand access to surgery, such as task-sharing, have been shown to be safe and effective while countries make long-term investments in building surgical and anesthesia workforces.
- Because emergency procedures constitute 23 of the 28 procedures provided at first-level hospitals, such facilities must be widely geographically available.
- Substantial disparities remain in the safety of surgical care, driven by high perioperative mortality rates and anesthesia-related deaths in LMICs. Feasible measures, such as the World Health Organization's (WHO's) Surgical Safety Checklist,[27a] have led to improvements in safety and quality.
- The large burden of surgical conditions, the cost-effectiveness of essential surgery, and the strong public demand for surgical services suggest that universal coverage of essential surgery (UCES) should be financed early on the path to universal health coverage.
- We point to estimates that full coverage of the component of UCES applicable to first-level hospitals would require slightly more than $3 billion annually of additional spending and yield a benefit to cost ratio of better than 10:1. It would efficiently and equitably provide health benefits and financial protection, and it would contribute to stronger health systems.

From Jemison DT, Alwan A, Mock CN, et al: Universal health coverage and intersectoral action for health: key messages from Disease Control Priorities, 3rd edition. The Lancet 391, Issue 10125, 2018:1108–1120.

BOX 2.2 Key Messages From The Lancet Commission on Global Surgery

- 5 billion people do not have access to safe, affordable surgical and anesthesia care when needed. Access is worst in low-income and lower-middle-income countries (LMICs), where 9 of 10 people cannot access basic surgical care. 143 Million additional surgical procedures are needed in LMICs each year to save lives and prevent disability. Of the 313 million procedures undertaken worldwide each year, only 6% occur in the poorest countries, where over a third of the world's population lives. Low operative volumes are associated with high case-fatality rates from common, treatable surgical conditions. Unmet need is greatest in eastern, western, and central sub-Saharan Africa, and South Asia.
- 33 Million individuals face catastrophic health expenditure due to payment for surgery and anesthesia care each year. An additional 48 million cases of catastrophic expenditure are attributable to the nonmedical costs of accessing surgical care. A quarter of people who have a surgical procedure will incur financial catastrophe as a result of seeking care. The burden of catastrophic expenditure for surgery is highest in low-income and lower-middle-income countries and, within any country, lands most heavily on poor people.
- Investing in surgical services in LMICs is affordable, saves lives, and promotes economic growth. To meet present and projected population demands, urgent investment in human and physical resources for surgical and anesthesia care is needed. If LMICs were to scale-up surgical services at rates achieved by the present best-performing LMICs, two thirds of countries would be able to reach a minimum operative volume of 5000 surgical procedures per 100,000 population by 2030. Without urgent and accelerated investment in surgical scale-up, LMICs will continue to have losses in economic productivity, estimated cumulatively at US$12.3 trillion (2010 US$, purchasing power parity) between 2015 and 2030.
- Surgery is an "indivisible, indispensable part of health care."[1] Surgical and anesthesia care should be an integral component of a national health system in countries at all levels of development. Surgical services are a prerequisite for the full attainment of local and global health goals in areas as diverse as cancer, injury, cardiovascular disease, infection, and reproductive, maternal, neonatal, and child health. Universal health coverage and the health aspirations set out in the post-2015 Sustainable Development Goals will be impossible to achieve without ensuring that surgical and anesthesia care is available, accessible, safe, timely, and affordable.

Mock CN, Donkor P, Gawande A, et al: Essential surgery: key messages from Disease Control Priorities, 3rd edition. The Lancet 385, Issue 9983, 2015: 2209–2219.

surgical and anesthesia care as a component of universal health coverage.[24,25] Also in 2015, publication of DCP3 and the Lancet Commission on Global Surgery (LCOGS) "Global Surgery 2030" report significantly expanded the body of data characterizing the global surgical and anesthesia crises, and also outlined strategies for addressing some of these challenges (Boxes 2.1and 2.2).[5,26] During the LCOGS development, Jim Kim, President of the World Bank, echoed the words of Dr. Mahler from 35 years earlier by stating, "…surgery is an indivisible, indispensable part of health care and of progress towards universal health coverage."[27]

These events provided a much needed boost to efforts aimed at improving the accessibility, affordability, and safety of surgical, obstetric, and anesthesia care worldwide. They also helped provide a framework for including surgery and anesthesia as global health priorities by linking surgery and anesthesia care to universal health coverage. Surgery and anesthesia were not included in previous priority-setting efforts, in part, because it was not clear how to incorporate them. Limited data about the scale of the crises, as well as misperceptions around complexity and cost-effectiveness (as discussed in the next section) resulted in surgery and anesthesia care being peripheral to global health priority-setting efforts like the Millennium Development Goals (MDGs). Although surgery and anesthesia are not explicitly a focus of more recent global health priority initiatives like the Global Health 2035 report and the United Nations (UN) Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs), these reports emphasize noncommunicable diseases, injuries, healthcare workforce expansion, and universal health coverage, which incontrovertibly depend on surgery and anesthesia.[28,29]

Milestones like LCOGS, the WHA resolution 68.15, and the Lancet Commission on Palliative Care and Pain Relief have helped call attention to the global anesthesia, analgesia, and surgery crises at hand.[30] Entities like the World Federation of Societies of Anaesthesiologists (WFSA), Association of Anesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (AAGBI), Canadian Anesthesiologists' Society International Education Foundation (CASIEF), and Lifebox are among the increasing number of anesthesia organizations working on system-level changes, research, and large-scale education initiatives in LMICs. Many national anesthesia societies, such as the United Kingdom's Royal College of Anaesthetists (RCoA), the Royal College of Anesthesiologists of Thailand, and the Chilean Society of Anesthesiologists are also actively engaged in such activities. The number of these global anesthesia efforts is unprecedented, but still nascent and evolving.

If surgery is described as the neglected step-child of global health, then anesthesia is the forgotten relative. Despite significant interdependence, surgery, anesthesia, and obstetrics have yet to harmonize global health efforts and maximize impact. Global health efforts involving either surgery or anesthesia have become known collectively as "global surgery" (see Table 2.2). In 2014, "global surgery" was defined "…as an area for study, research, practice, and advocacy that places priority on improving health outcomes and achieving health equity for all people worldwide who are affected by surgical conditions or have a need for surgical care. Global surgery incorporates all surgical specialties, including obstetric and gynecologic surgery; anesthesia; perioperative care; aspects of emergency medicine; rehabilitation; palliative care; and nursing and the allied health professions involved in the care of the surgical patient. It encompasses surgical care for underserved populations in all countries and for populations affected by conflict, displacement, and disaster, and promotes access to safe, quality care. Global surgery emphasizes supraterritorial and transnational issues, determinants, and solutions, recognizing that the determinants of inadequate or inequitable surgical care are often the result of common and interdependent global structures and processes, even though they are predominantly experienced within individual countries and communities.[31]" This definition was abbreviated to state "global surgery is an area of study, research, practice, and advocacy that seeks to improve health outcomes and achieve health equity for all people who require surgical care, with a special emphasis on underserved populations and populations in crisis. It uses collaborative, cross-sectoral, and transnational approaches and is a synthesis of population-based strategies with individual surgical care." Although anesthesia is not directly mentioned in this definition, "global surgery" has become a rallying point for anesthesia global health efforts.

SCOPE AND SCALE OF THE GLOBAL ANESTHESIA, SURGERY, AND PAIN CRISES

Global Burden of Surgical Disease

Nearly 30% of global morbidity and mortality is surgically treatable, with tens of millions of lives lost each year due to surgical conditions.[5] This burden of surgical disease predominantly affects LMICs and kills 4 times more people than human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), TB, and malaria combined (Fig. 2.1).[32] In addition to negative impacts on health and well-being, there is also significant economic burden associated with surgical morbidity and mortality. By 2030, morbidity and mortality from surgical conditions could reduce annual gross domestic product (GDP) growth by an estimated 2% in LMICs. In the past, similar calculations were used to successfully generate global investment in malaria, but had estimated much lower (1.3%) decreases in GDP due to malaria.[33] Without significant and immediate intervention, surgical disease will produce economic productivity losses of more than US$12 trillion for LMICs between 2015 and 2030. While it is generally agreed that surgical conditions account for a large proportion of global morbidity and mortality, precise data to support this have been lacking. This challenge has been attributed in part to a lack of resources being invested in such research and also to several inherent difficulties in quantifying surgical diseases.

The term "global burden of disease" (GBD) uses the disability-adjusted-life-year (DALY) as a unit to quantify premature death (years of life lost) and disability (years of life lived in a state of less than full health) (Fig. 2.2). The DALY was originally developed for the seminal GBD 1990 Study to quantify the burden of different diseases around the world and has since become commonly used in public health and health economics.[34,35] Because the DALY is routinely used to inform resource allocation, it has been utilized to describe surgical and pain disease burdens as well. The global health community has moved away from using terms such as third world, developed, or developing when describing countries' level of economic development. Leading causes of DALYs are often reported geographically by World Bank income level (see Table 2.1) or more recently by socio-demographic index (SDI) (Figs. 2.3 and 2.4). The SDI is a composite average of three indicators predictive of health outcomes: income per capita, average educational attainment (for population >15 years old), and total fertility rate.

The 2006 DCP2 publication was one of the first attempts to quantify surgical disease burden and did so by asking 18 surgeons for an educated guess, using convenience sampling and an online survey. Although the reported number

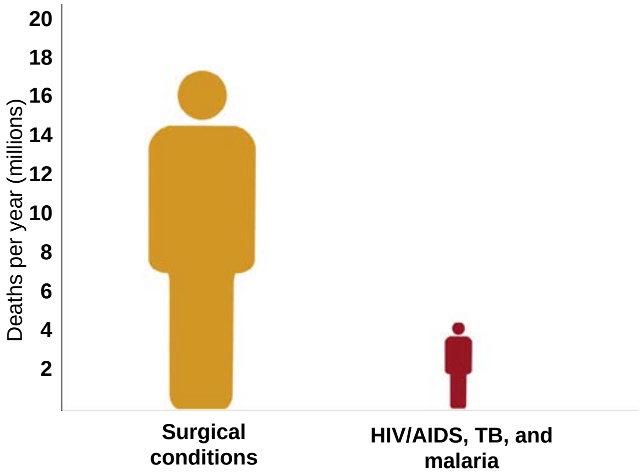


Fig. 2.1 Surgical conditions account for more annual deaths (16.9 million) than HIV/AIDS (1.03 million), TB (1.21 million), and malaria (0.72 million) combined. *AIDS*, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; *HIV*, human immune virus, *TB*, tuberculosis. (Data from Shrime MG, Bickler WS, Alkire BC, et al. Global burden of surgical disease: an estimation from the provider perspective. *Lancet Glob Health.* 2015;3:S8–S9; and GBD collaborators 2016. Global, regional, and national age-sex specific mortality for 264 causes of death, 1980–2016: a systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2016. *Lancet.* 2017;390[10100]:1151–1210.)

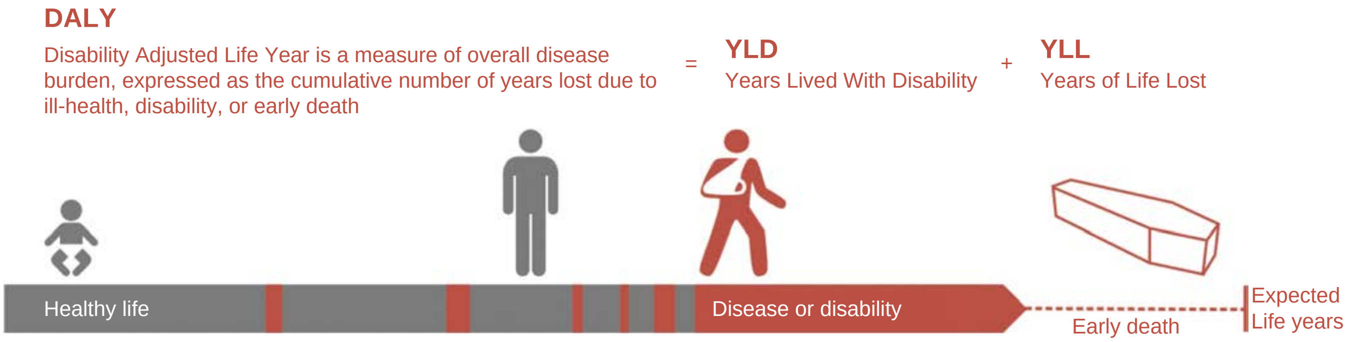

DALY
Disability Adjusted Life Year is a measure of overall disease burden, expressed as the cumulative number of years lost due to ill-health, disability, or early death
=
YLD
Years Lived With Disability
+
YLL
Years of Life Lost
Healthy life
Disease or disability
Early death
Expected Life years

Fig. 2.2 The disability-adjusted life year *(DALY)*. (From Wikipedia. https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Disabilityadjusted_life_year#/media/File:DALY_disability_affected_life_year_infographic.svg. Creative commons license: CC BY-SA 3.0.)

(11%) was eye-opening and widely quoted, it was likely a significant underestimation.

In 2015, the DCP3 provided another attempt to assess the public health impact of surgical care by estimating morbidity and mortality averted by scaling up basic surgical and anesthesia services in LMICs (i.e., surgical care for appendicitis, paralytic ileus, intestinal obstruction, hernias, gallbladder and bile duct disease, maternal hemorrhage, obstructed labor, abortion and neonatal encephalopathy, trauma resuscitation, surgical airway, peripheral venous access, suturing, laceration and wound management, chest tube or needle decompression, fracture reduction, escharotomy, fasciotomy, skin grafting, and trauma-related laparotomy and amputation). They concluded that an estimated 1.4 million deaths and 77.2 million DALYs could be prevented each year by scaling up basic surgical and anesthesia services in LMICs.[26]

The LCOGS produced another attempt to estimate global morbidity and mortality from surgical disease by asking 173 surgeons, anesthesiologists, internists, nurses, and public health practitioners from around the world, “What proportion of patients with the following conditions would, in an ideal world, require a surgeon for management?” The result of this survey was 28% to 32% of overall GBD requires a surgeon for management. Based on these results, LCOGS estimated that 30% of GBD is surgically treatable with an estimated 17 million lives lost per year due to surgical conditions.[5]

These reports are consistent with the 1990 GBD Study data, which demonstrate that the morbidity and mortality associated with surgical diseases is significantly larger than that of HIV, TB, and malaria combined.[32] Unintentional injuries are the single largest contributor of DALYs worldwide. The majority of deaths that can be prevented with surgical care are due to injuries (77%), maternal-neonatal

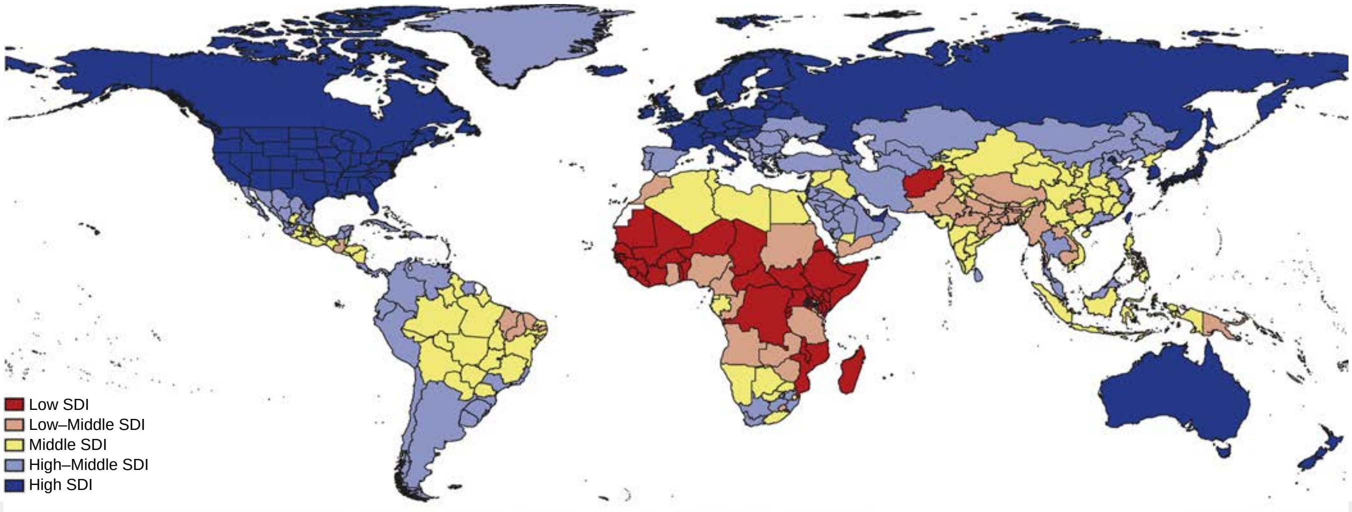


Fig. 2.3 Socio-demographic Index *(SDI)* is calculated for each geography as a function of lag-dependent income per capita, average educational attainment in the population older than age 15 years, and the total fertility rate. SDI units are interpretable; a zero represents the lowest level of income per capita and educational attainment and highest total fertility rate observed during 1980–2015, whereas a one represents the highest income per capita and educational attainment and lowest total fertility rate observed in the same period. Cutoffs on the SDI scale for the quintiles have been selected on the basis of examination of the entire distribution of geographies 1980–2015. *GBD,* Global Burden of Disease. (From GBD 2015 Mortality and Causes of Death Collaborators. Global, regional, and national life expectancy, all-cause mortality, and cause-specific mortality for 249 causes of death, 1980–2015: a systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2015. *Lancet*. 2016;388[10053]:1459–1544. Copyright © 2017 The Author[s]. Published by Elsevier Ltd. This is an Open Access article under the CC BY 4.0 license.)

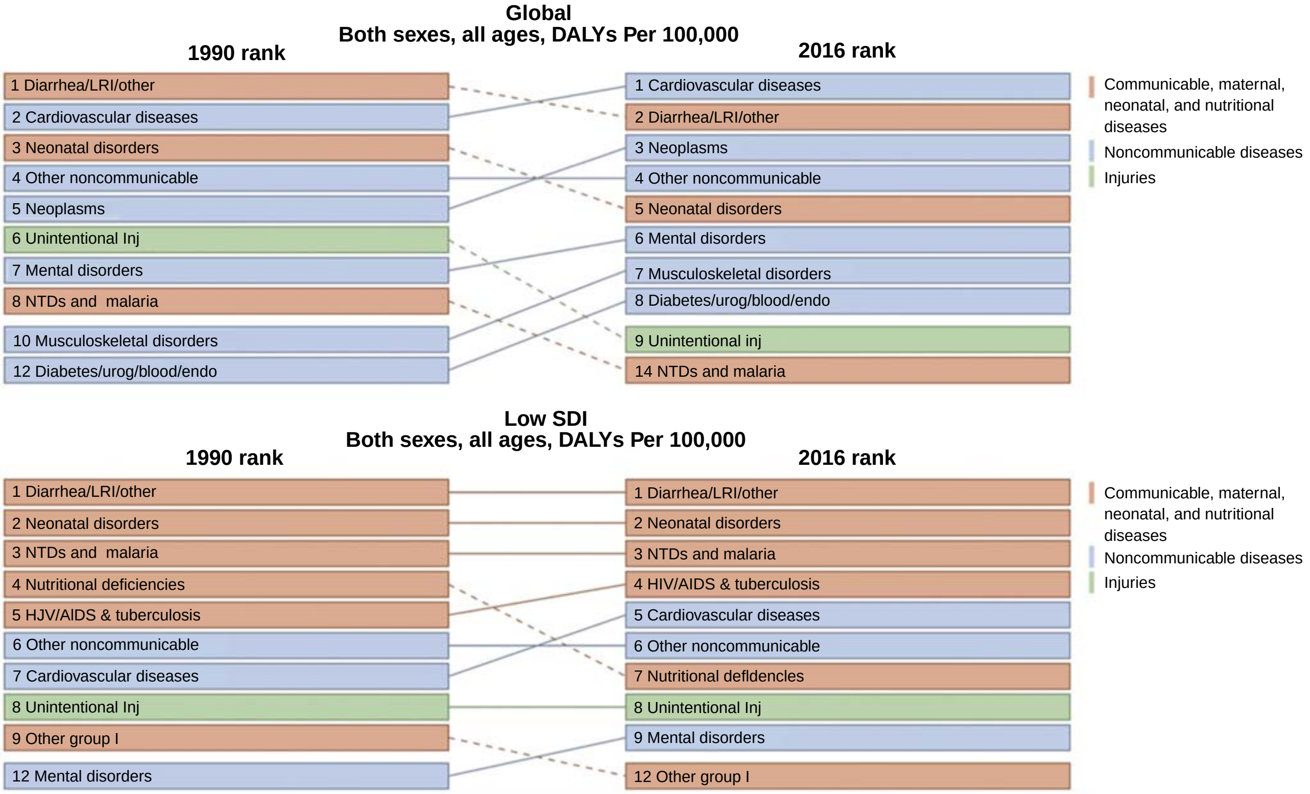


Fig. 2.4 Leading causes of death and disability-adjusted-life-years *(DALYs)*, 1990–2016, global versus low Socio-Demographic Index *(SDI)*. *AIDS*, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; *HIV*, human immune virus. (From https://vizhub.healthdata.org/gbd-compare/. Reproduced under Creative Commons Non-Commercial-No Derivatives 4.0 International License.)

conditions (14%), and digestive diseases (9%).[26] Global industrialization and an "epidemiological transition" (i.e., people living longer) in many LMICs have resulted in rising noncommunicable disease and injury burdens (most notably from road traffic crashes) that will likely contribute to increased global surgical disease burden in the coming years.

Each of the methods previously described to estimate surgical disease burden is imperfect. Challenges and limitations include complex methodologies (e.g., Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation [IHME], GBD Studies), difficulty with measuring and defining surgical diseases (e.g., the same neoplasm in one person may be treated with surgery but in another person may be treated with chemotherapy), and challenges in assigning DALYs to diseases (i.e., disability weighting) and assigning DALYs averted to surgical procedures.[26] To overcome these shortcomings, additional metrics for global surgery and anesthesia have been proposed and include measuring disease prevalence, treatment backlogs for non fatal conditions, morbidity and mortality as a result of delays in care, social benefit, economic benefit, and value of a statistical life (rather than costs per DALY averted).[36]

One significant role for the academic anesthesia community in the global context is working to increase efforts that better quantify the growing surgical disease and pain burdens in order to facilitate appropriate resource allocation and subsequent evaluation of interventions.

Global Burden of Pain

As with surgical disease burden, there is general consensus on the staggering prevalence and incidence of pain worldwide though there are relatively limited data and significant challenges to quantifying pain burden in the global context. Pain is one of the most common reasons for seeking medical attention, is among the top five causes of DALYs worldwide, and directly accounts for four (low back pain, neck pain, musculoskeletal pain, migraine) of the top 10 causes of years lived with disability (YLDs).[32,37] These statistics do not even account for pain secondary to oncology, injury, or postoperative etiologies, which likely increase these numbers substantially. It is estimated that 10% to 25% of the world's population suffer from recurring and chronic pain, with increasing numbers caused by intentional physical harm such as war, violence, and torture.[38] Uncontrolled pain has many potential negative impacts on health, well-being, and economic productivity, including increased risk of myocardial infarction and chronic pain.

The 2017 Lancet Commission on Palliative Care and Pain Relief defined serious health-related suffering (SHS) as suffering associated with illness or injury that compromises physical, social, or emotional functioning, and cannot be relieved without medical intervention.[30] Approximately half of all deaths worldwide involve SHS and more than 80% of people who die with SHS are from LMICs. It is estimated that 2.5 million children die with SHS each year. Ninety-eight percent of these children live in LMICs, and more than 90% of these deaths are avoidable. Among the top 10 conditions associated with SHS are HIV, malignancy, and injury. Though not as obvious as injury or cancer, HIV/AIDS is a major source of pain and analgesia need.[39] Pain related to HIV is not routinely managed by anesthesiologists when compared to other more common pain etiologies, however, the relevance of HIV as a rallying point to advocate for greater access to analgesics in LMICs is discussed further in this chapter. In many countries, conditions such as diabetes, sickle cell, and leprosy are also responsible for significant pain burdens. With increasing longevity and industrialization, the disease burden for malignancy and injury are expected to increase significantly in LMICs. As providers with often the most experience administering analgesics, anesthesia providers play an expanded and critical role in pain management, especially in resource-constrained settings.

Disparities in Access, Affordability, and Safety

The exact level of disease burden attributable to surgical disease or pain is a focus of ongoing debate and research, yet it is generally accepted that the surgical, anesthesia, and pain crises are massive, largely avoidable, and disproportionately affect LMICs. Of the roughly 300,000 maternal deaths worldwide, 99% occur in low-resource settings (66% in sub-Saharan Africa) and the majority are preventable with relatively basic surgical, anesthesia, and perioperative care.[40] Approximately 70% of global cancer deaths occur in LMICs, with the majority requiring surgical, anesthesia, or analgesia services.[41] Scaling access to basic surgical and anesthesia services in LMICs could avert 77 million DALYs and 1.5 million deaths per year.[26] Injury represents the majority (77%) of this avoidable morbidity and mortality, followed by maternal and neonatal conditions (14%). Approximately 90% of deaths and DALYs that are lost due to road traffic accidents occur in LMICs.

Based solely on the inequitable distribution of operating theatres, more than two billion people have no access to surgical services.[42] When also accounting for timeliness, facility capacity, safety, and affordability, nearly 5 billion people—the majority of the world's population—lack access to surgical and anesthesia care. The Global Initiative for Children's Surgery (GICS) estimates that 1.7 billion children lack access to surgical care.[42a] It is estimated that approximately 143 million additional surgeries are required each year.[5] Of the 234 million major surgical procedures performed annually, only 3% to 6% of them are estimated to occur in LIMCs.[5,43] Disparities in access disproportionally affect lower-income areas like sub-Saharan Africa or South Asia, where more than 95% of the population do not have access to surgical and anesthesia care. In some higher-income areas like North America and Europe, access varies considerably, but generally more than 95% of the population has access (Fig. 2.5).[44] Even in HIC like the United States, access to anesthesia, surgical, and analgesia care can be limited for rural and underserved populations.[45,46] It is estimated that universal access to "essential" surgical procedures (which include treatments for injury, obstetric complications, abdominal emergencies, cataracts, and congenital anomalies) would prevent approximately 1.5 million deaths per year or 6% to 7% of all preventable deaths in LMICs.[26]

Inadequate access to analgesia is among the most neglected and inequitable global public health challenges. The global burden of pain disproportionately affects the world's poor due to the high-burden conditions associated with pain (e.g., HIV, malignancy, and injury) in LMICs, and the general lack of access to analgesics. Although pain is the most common reason for seeking medical attention, and analgesia is considered a basic human right, gaps in access to analgesia are significant and among the most striking global health disparities worldwide.[47–49] Injury and malignancy, two conditions with significant analgesia needs, represent a significant proportion of surgical disease burden in LMICs, yet the vast majority of LMIC populations have limited or nonexistent access to opiate analgesia. Six HICs account for 80% of the world's opiate consumption, and countries that contain 17% of the world's population (Canada, United States, Western Europe, Australia, and New Zealand) are responsible for 92% of the world's opiate consumption (Figs. 2.6 and 2.7).[30,50-52] Pain and palliative care remain relatively neglected by the global health community and disproportionately affect vulnerable populations in LMICs.[30,53] In recent decades, access to opiates has improved in some LMICs, but not all (e.g., consumption in Africa and South Asia has declined).[52] Inequitable access to analgesia is not unique to LMICs and has been repeatedly described in many HICs, including the United States.[54-56] Reasons for the inequitable distribution of analgesia are discussed further in the next section of this chapter.

For the proportion of the world's population that has access to surgical and anesthesia care, they must confront significant disparities in safety. In the last half-century perioperative patient safety has improved by more than 10-fold, though the majority of the gains have been seen in HICs.[57] In the United States during the 21st century, anesthesia-related mortality decreased from 1:1560 around 1950 to less than 1:13,000, and is significantly better than this in healthy patients.[58,59] Worldwide, approximately 32 million people per year receive anesthesia without adequate monitoring, and more than 77,000 operating rooms (19%) worldwide lack pulse oximetry. In some regions, more than 70% of operating rooms lack pulse oximetry.[42] Data on surgical outcomes in LMICs remain limited but have expanded significantly in the early part of the 21st century. Reports of perioperative mortality rates (POMRs) from low-income countries (LICs) have varied widely in both methodology and results, ranging from 0.2% to 6% overall, with significantly higher mortality for emergent procedures (10% overall, 20% for typhoid intestinal perforations).[60–64] One international, prospective, observational cohort study of adults undergoing inpatient surgery in 247 hospitals from 25 African countries reported a 30-day in-hospital mortality rate (2.1%) that was twice the reported global average, despite a significantly younger and lower American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) physical classification patient population.[65]

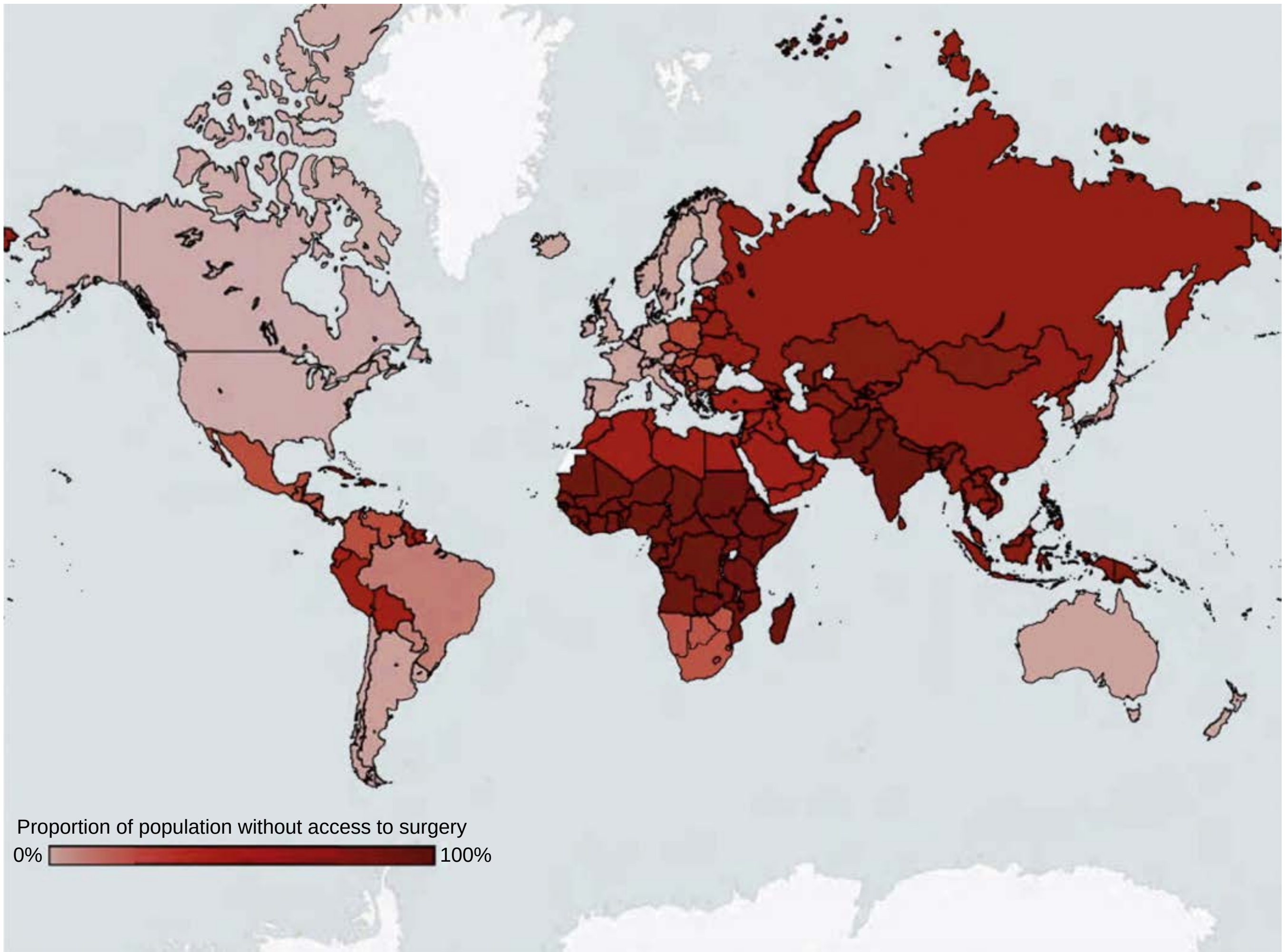

Proportion of population without access to surgery
0%
100%

Fig. 2.5 The proportion of population without access to surgery. (From Alkire BC, Raykar NP, Shrime MG, et al. Global access to surgical care: a modelling study. *Lancet Glob Health.* 2015;3:e316–e323. doi: 10.1016/S2214-109X(15)70115-4. Epub 2015 Apr 27. Copyright © 2015 Alkire et al. Open Access article distributed under the terms of CC.)

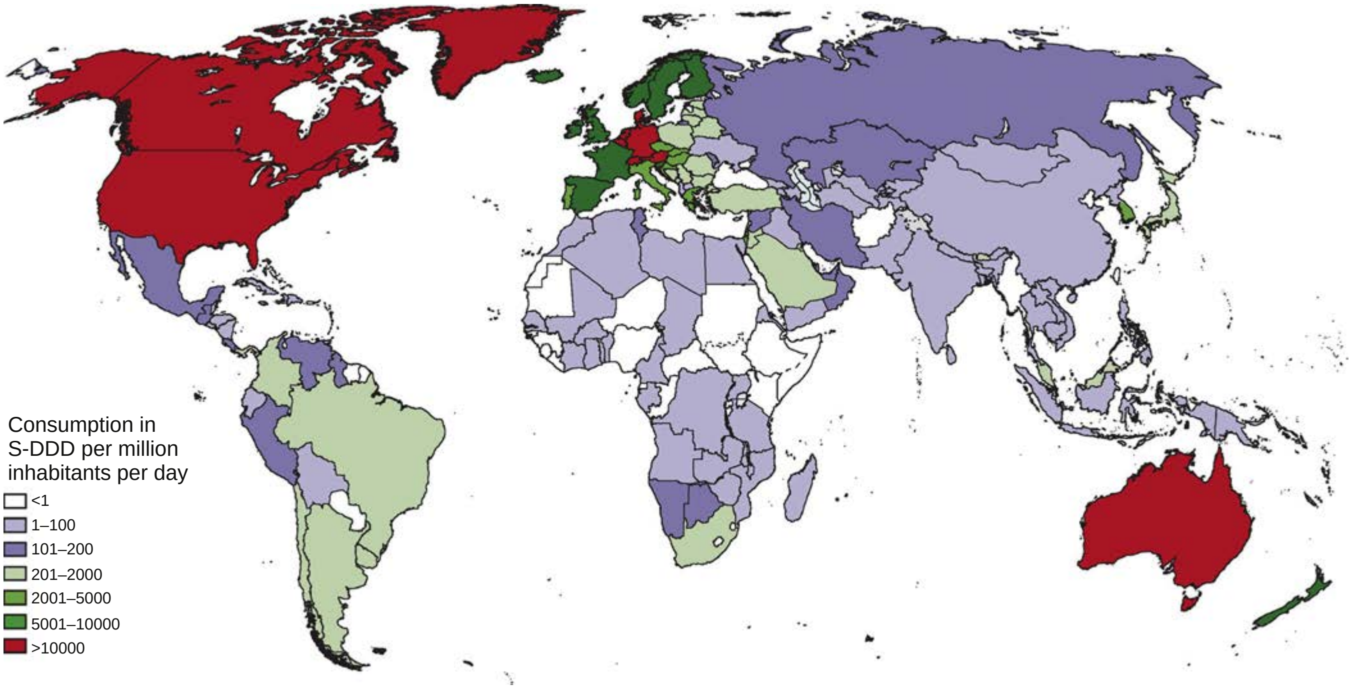

Consumption in S-DDD per million inhabitants per day
☐ <1
1–100
101–200
201–2000
2001–5000
5001–10000
>10000

Fig. 2.6 Mean availability of opioids for pain management in 2011–2013. *S-DDD,* Defined daily doses for statistical purposes. (From Berterame S, Erthal J, Thomas J, et al. Use of and barriers to access to opioid analgesics: a worldwide, regional, and national study. *Lancet*. 2016;387:1644–1656. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736[16]00161-6. Copyright © 2015 Berterame et al. Open Access article distributed under the terms of CC.)

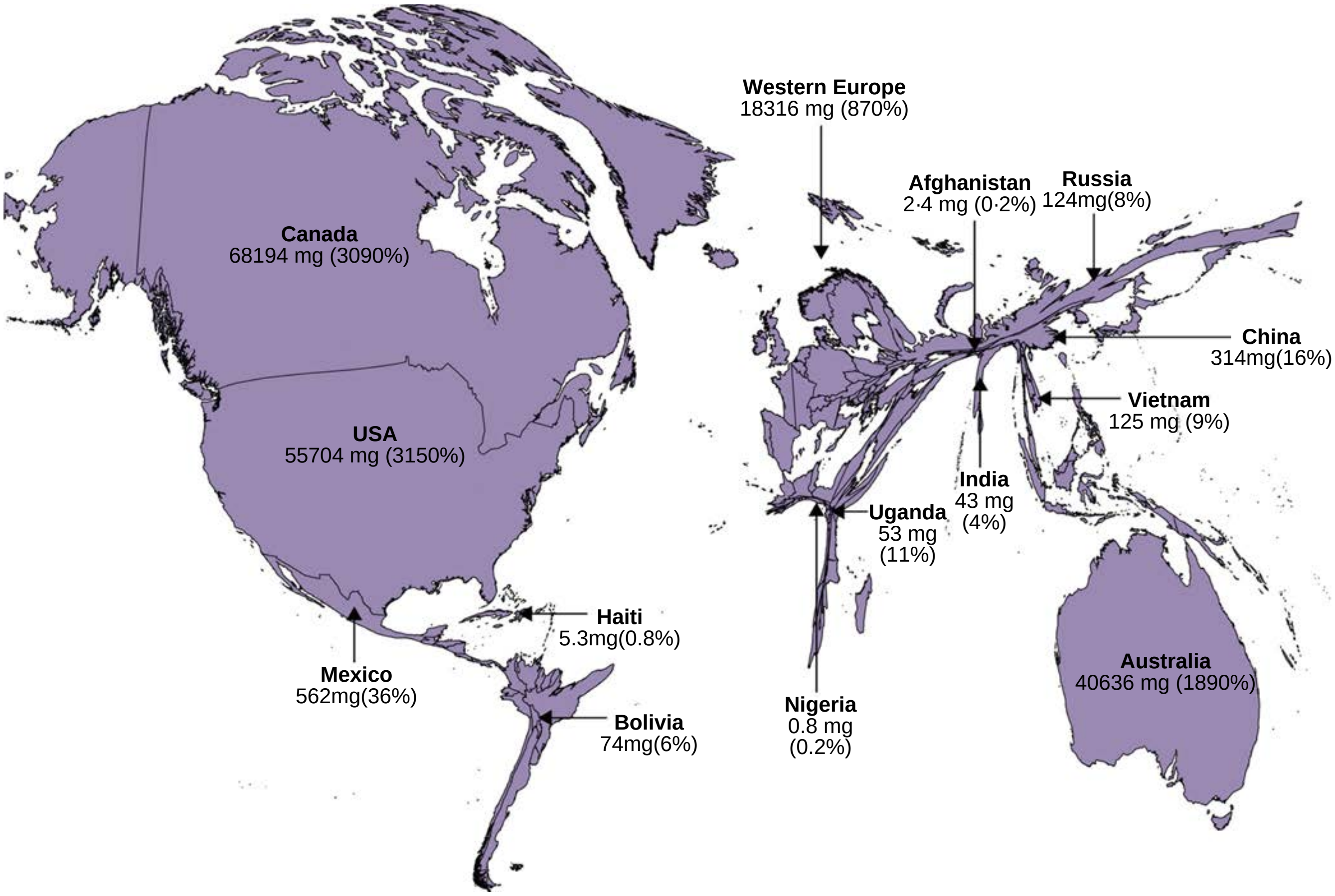


Fig. 2.7 Distributed opioid morphine-equivalent (morphine in mg/patient in need of palliative care, average 2010–2013), and estimated percentage of need that is met for the health conditions most associated with serious health-related suffering. (From Knaul FM, Bhadelia A, Rodriguez NM, et al. The *Lancet* Commission on Palliative Care and Pain Relief—findings, recommendations, and future directions. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2018;6:S5–S6. Copyright © 2018 The Author(s). Published by Elsevier Ltd. This is an open access article under the CC BY 4.0 license.)

In several African countries, anesthesia-related mortality has been reported to be in the 1:100s (Malawi 1:504; Zimbabwe 1:482; Nigeria 1:387 for C-sections; Togo 1:133 to 1:250).[66–69] In one report of 24-hour surgical outcomes in Togo, 30 deaths occurred (total cases 1464), 22 were deemed avoidable, and 11 were due to avoidable anesthesia complications.[15] Another report from Togo reported a mortality rate of 1:250 and found less than half of the 26 facilities surveyed had pulse oximetry, and none had capnography.[70] In a national report on maternal mortality in South Africa, nearly 2.35% of recorded maternal mortalities were anesthesia related, and the majority (93%) were deemed avoidable. One of the most common causes of anesthesia death in this report was the provision of spinal anesthesia without skills necessary to manage an airway or convert to general anesthesia.[71] Other commonly cited causes of avoidable anesthesia mortality in resource-constrained settings include inadequate staffing, monitoring, and drug overdose. A recent meta-analysis of anesthesia-related maternal mortality in LMICs found the risk of death from anesthesia for women undergoing obstetric procedures to be 1.2 per 1000 (vs. 3.8 per million in the United States), with higher risk reported if general anesthesia was used or if anesthesia was provided by a nonphysician[72]. In this analysis, anesthesia was the cause in 2.8% of maternal deaths in LMICs and 13.8% of all deaths during or after C-section in LMICs. To state this differently, anesthesia-related maternal mortality is 300-fold higher for neuraxial and 900-fold higher for general anesthesia than is reported in the United States.

It is important to note that the relationship between hospital-based perioperative morbidity and mortality and surgical disease morbidity and mortality must be interpreted with caution in settings where patients lack access to hospitals. In other words, in an HIC a patient's chances of dying from a ruptured viscous are roughly the same as the chances of dying from surgery for a ruptured viscous because more than 95% of the population has access to care. However, in an LIC, while the perioperative mortality for a ruptured viscous may be 10%, the majority of patients with this condition never make it to surgery and have mortality rates that are dramatically higher.

Affordability is another significant barrier to accessing surgical and anesthesia services. Each year, approximately 33 million people face catastrophic out-of-pocket expenditure due to payment for surgery and anesthesia (Fig. 2.8) with an additional 48 million people facing catastrophic expenditure related to non medical costs of accessing surgical care (e.g., transportation, lodging, and food).[5,73] Nearly half (3.7 billion) of the world's population is at risk of catastrophic expenditure if they were to have surgical and anesthesia care. The majority of those at risk live in

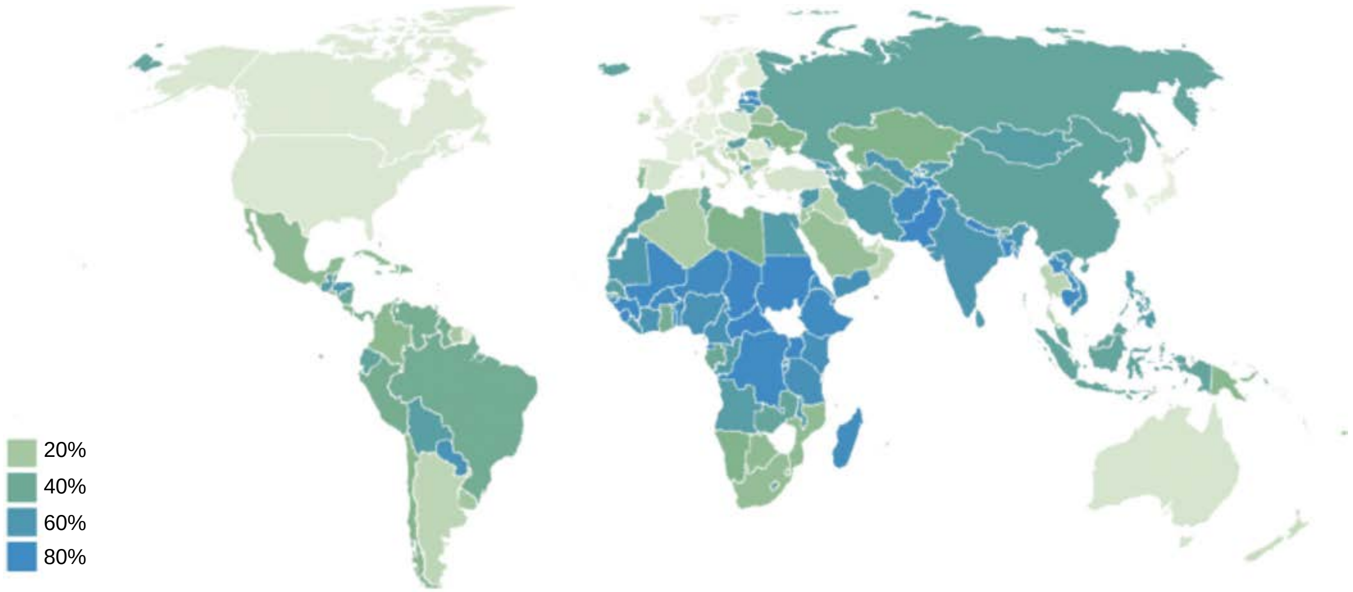


Fig. 2.8 **Risk of catastrophic expenditure for surgical care in 2014 (% of people at risk).** (Data from http://databank.worldbank.org/data/home.aspx. Originally printed: http://blogs.worldbank.org/opendata/africacan/pt/comment/reply/2341. Copyright © 2018 The World Bank. Reproduced under CC BY 4.0 license.)

sub-Saharan Africa, and South and Southeast Asia. The issue of affordability applies not only to surgery itself but also to components of perioperative care including analgesia and transfusions.[74] For example, in South America, a monthly prescription of opiate for chronic pain may cost 200% of annual income.[57] In India (where nominal gross national income per capita is $1670), a unit of blood often costs up to $247 despite a legal limit of $25.[75,76] Global health and development leaders including the WHO and World Bank prioritize financial risk protection as a key component of achieving universal health coverage goals for all countries. Despite relatively high out-of-pocket costs at the individual level for some procedures, surgery is a highly cost-effective public health intervention as discussed further in the following sections.

GLOBAL ANESTHESIA, SURGERY, AND PAIN CRISES: ORIGINS AND AREAS FOR INTERVENTION

Workforce shortages, inadequate infrastructure, lack of policy and prioritization, and increasing burden of surgical disease are among many factors contributing to current limitations in access, affordability, and safety of anesthesia and surgical services worldwide.[77] As previously discussed, global industrialization and an "epidemiological transition" in many LMICs have resulted in rising noncommunicable disease and injury burdens with lagging investment to address these issues. While these fundamental imbalances between healthcare needs and healthcare resources underlie much of the current global surgery, anesthesia, and pain crises, several additional factors have also contributed.

Misperceptions and Limited Data

Two common misperceptions about surgery and anesthesia have contributed to the delayed recognition of these fields as global public health priorities: (1) the scope and scale of surgical disease and pain burdens were vastly underestimated; and (2) surgical and anesthesia care were erroneously assumed to be too expensive and technology dependent to be done safely or cost-effectively in resource-constrained environments. In this section we discuss reasons why the surgical disease and pain burdens are historically poorly characterized. Misperceptions about cost-effectiveness and feasibility of safe surgery and anesthesia care also have roots in a historical data void, especially from LMICs.

Several innovative service delivery models in the public and private sectors of LMICs (e.g., Indus hospital, Aravind Eye Hospitals, and Narayana Hrudayalaya Heart Hospital) have demonstrated that it is feasible to provide cost-effective, safe, and affordable surgical and anesthesia care in resource-constrained countries.[78–81]

Recent data have consistently demonstrated that surgical services are among the most cost-effective public health interventions (Fig. 2.9). There are several methods to define cost-effectiveness thresholds, each with pros and cons.[82] One of the most commonly cited methods uses GDP-based thresholds. This approach was suggested by the WHO Commission on Macroeconomics and Health and has been defined by authors from the WHO's Choosing Interventions that are Cost–Effective project (WHO-CHOICE) as, "interventions that avert one DALY for less than average per capita income for a given country or region are considered very cost–effective; interventions that cost less than three times average per capita income per DALY averted are still considered cost–effective; and those that exceed this level are considered not cost–effective."[83]

In 2003 in Bangladesh, one of the earliest cost-effectiveness studies on surgical care reported the cost of emergency obstetric care at less than $11 per DALY averted.[16] This was 3 times more cost-effective than the measles vaccine (in 2003 dollars). The DCP2 and DCP3 demonstrated cost-effectiveness of the first-level surgical hospital, with essential surgical services all being highly cost effective and many

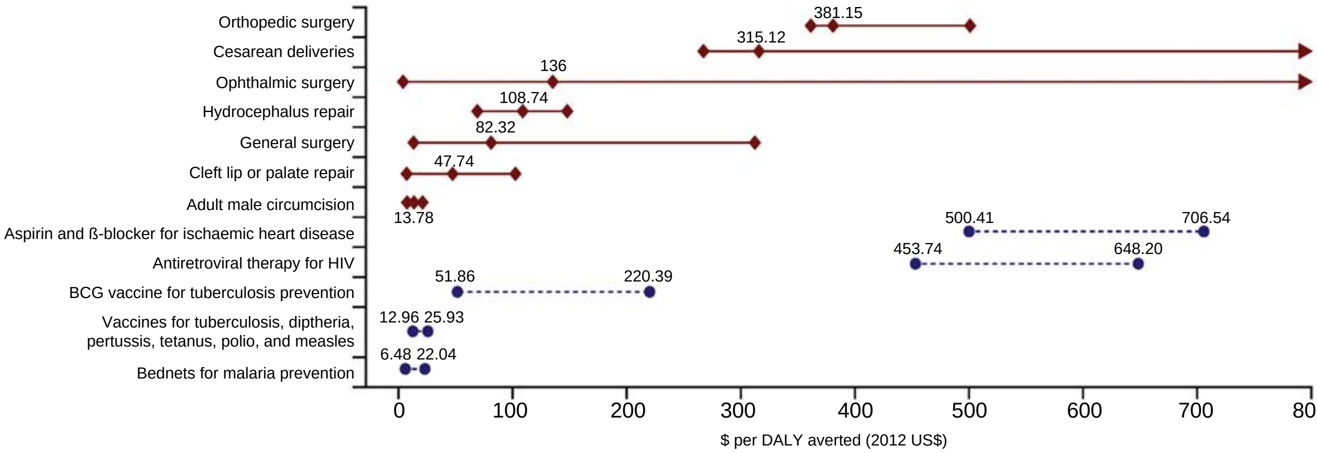


Fig. 2.9 Cost-effectiveness of surgery in low-income and middle-income countries compared with other public health interventions. Data points are medians, error bars show range. Surgical interventions are denoted by the diamonds and solid lines, public health interventions by the circles and dashed lines. *BCG*, Bacillus Calmette–Guérin; *DALY*, disability-adjusted life-year; *HIV*, human immune virus. (Source: Chao TE, Sharma K, Mandigo M, et al. Cost-effectiveness of surgery and its policy implications for global health: a systematic review and analysis. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2014;2:e334–e345. Copyright © 2015 Elsevier Ltd. Creative Commons Attribution License [CC BY].)

costing $10 to $100 per DALY averted. This is comparable to the cost-effectiveness of other public health interventions such as immunizations ($13-$26 per DALY) or bed nets for malaria prevention ($6-$22 per DALY), and much more cost-effective than other high-priority public health interventions such as HIV treatment ($500 per DALY).[84] A recent analysis of the cost-effectiveness of a pediatric operating room in Uganda found a cost of $6.39 per DALY averted and $397.95 per life saved, with a net economic benefit of over US$5 million per year (cost of $41,000 per year).[85]

In a 2012 forum hosted by the Copenhagen Consensus, five leading health economists, including four Nobel laureates, were asked how best to spend US$75 billion over 4 years to “advance global welfare,” especially in LMICs. The leading priority identified by the group was the expansion of surgical care capacity (US$3 billion per year).[86]

In the past 5 years the global surgery and anesthesia communities have expanded the volume of data that dispel prior misconceptions and support prioritization of surgical and anesthesia care in the global health agenda. During this timeframe, there has also been an explosion of articles that expand available data on a wide range of global anesthesia and surgical topics. The majority of these articles have been published in the surgical journals though recently anesthesia publications have begun to actively support global anesthesia research. The global anesthesia community must increase research productivity in global health and also invest in advocacy, policy, and implementation sciences in order to ensure impact.

Advocacy and Policy

There are many reasons why surgery, anesthesia, and pain have historically not been prioritized by national health systems, donors, or the broader global health community. Although surgical disease accounts for 30% of global disease burden, less than 1% of development assistance for health supports delivery of anesthesia and surgical care.[87] Imbalance between resource allocation and disease burden is found in many health conditions, though the degree of this disparity for surgical disease and pain is particularly striking.

As discussed previously, lack of disease burden data and misperceptions about safety and cost-effectiveness have significantly hindered advocacy efforts for global anesthesia and surgery. In a qualitative analysis of factors that have hindered political prioritization for global surgery, several additional factors were identified including: fragmentation of the global surgery community, lack of leadership and consensus, and inadequate political strategy (e.g., not capitalizing on opportunities such as the MDGs).[88] In another analysis to determine why certain disease-specific global health networks are relatively more or less effective than others, four common challenges were highlighted, each with relevance to global anesthesia and surgery: (1) defining the problem and how it should be addressed; (2) positioning the issue in a way to inspire action by external audiences; (3) building coalitions that include stakeholders outside the healthcare sector (coalitions are too often dominated by HIC providers); and (4) creating governance institutions that facilitate collective action (Fig. 2.10).[89] Another study that examined factors influencing prioritization of surgery in national health systems concluded that sustained advocacy, effective framing of problems and solutions, robust country-level data, and support from regional and international partners were critical for success but often lacking.[90]

Advocacy efforts for surgery, anesthesia, and pain face a few additional and relatively unique challenges. Unlike infectious diseases such as HIV or Ebola, surgical disease and pain are not pandemic and do not incite similar action by the HIC donor community. Furthermore, most surgical conditions and pain are difficult to advertise and are not disease specific. While select pediatric conditions (e.g., cleft lips) are easily marketable, other conditions like trauma, hernias, and cesarean section are more difficult to compassionately portray in media in attempts to improve public awareness.

The WHA resolution 68.15 emphasized advocacy and resource development in five key focus areas for global surgery (workforce, essential medicines, information management,

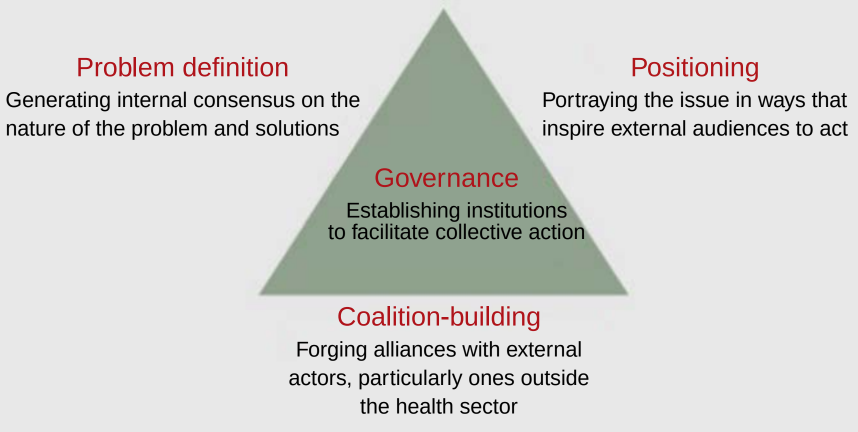

Problem definition
Generating internal consensus on the nature of the problem and solutions
Positioning
Portraying the issue in ways that inspire external audiences to act
Governance
Establishing institutions to facilitate collective action
Coalition-building
Forging alliances with external actors, particularly ones outside the health sector

Fig. 2.10 Four challenges that global health networks face. (From Shiffman J. Four challenges that global health networks face. *Int J Health Policy Manag.* 2017;6[4]:183–189. Copyright © 2018 The Author[s]. Published by Kerman University of Medical Sciences. This is an open access article under the CC BY 4.0 license.)

service delivery, and advocacy). The LCOGS provided clear framing of problems (see Box 2.2), outlined priorities for country-level data collection, and helped to provide frameworks for national surgical, obstetric, and anesthesia plans (NSOAPs) in LMICs. As more NSOAPs are produced, they have the potential to serve as key rallying points for national advocacy efforts.

Anesthesia, surgery, and pain need global champions. Only recently has advocacy by leading global organization (e.g., the World Bank, WHO) and select local governments in LMICs focused attention on anesthesia and surgery in the global context. This is in part due to advocacy efforts by several relatively recent initiatives (e.g., LCOGS, The Global Alliance for Surgical, Obstetric, Trauma, and Anaesthesia Care [G4 Alliance], WFSA, GICS, and several more). These multidisciplinary efforts must be expanded and sustained in order to reach the critical mass needed to overcome prior misperceptions and affect change. It is essential that advocacy efforts for surgery, anesthesia, and pain be consistent with the key messages of LCOGS, the Global Health 2035 Report, WHA resolution 68.15, and the SDGs, and emphasize that anesthesia, surgery, and analgesia are indispensable components of "universal health coverage." No longer can surgery be seen as a vertical (i.e., disease-specific) program.

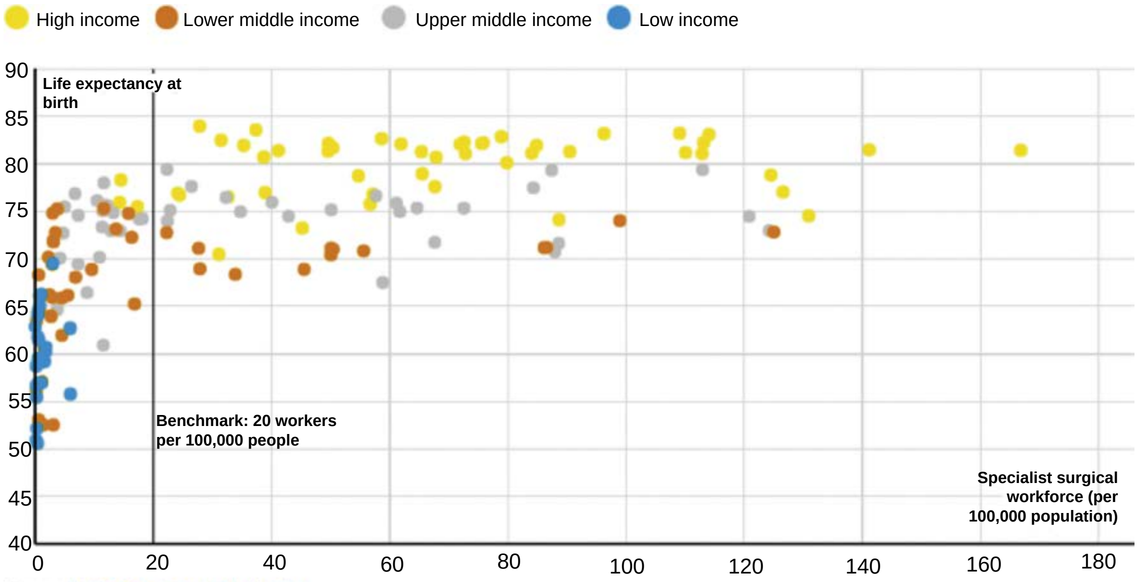
One key objective for advocacy efforts will be to identify new streams of funding from global donors, national budgets, private sectors, and innovative models. Similar to the large-scale funding initiatives to combat HIV/AIDS and other infectious diseases (e.g., the U.S. President's Emergency Plan for AIDS relief, Gavi Vaccine Alliance, The Global Fund), surgery and pain require comparable attention and support. In addition to domestic and international financing mechanisms to support health system scale-up, public-private partnerships and innovative patient-level financial risk protection strategies must be integral components to advocacy efforts.[5]

As leaders in safety, pain, perioperative care, and more, the global anesthesia community must actively engage in policy, research, and innovative global initiatives to expand access to quality care. Academic institutions from all countries can play a significant role in supporting a coordinated research agenda, creating a global voice for advocacy, sharing information, and harmonizing educational standards and opportunities. Anesthesia must follow the lead of other medical disciplines to not only cultivate but also support faculty and trainees with interests in global public health careers. Such advocacy will likely require coordination and partnership with multiple disciplines, including nonphysician provider cadres who perform a significant proportion of anesthesia services, especially in LICs.[91]

Workforce Shortages and Strategies for Expansion

The critical shortage of trained anesthesia providers in resource-constrained settings is one of the most significant barriers to expanding access to safe surgical, anesthesia, and pain services for billions of people worldwide. Although shortages of many key members of the surgical workforce exist (including surgeons, obstetricians, pathologists, radiologists, laboratory technicians, nurses, biomedical engineers, and more), anesthesia provider shortages in LMICs are particularly striking and relatively neglected. Countries like the Central African Republic have no physician anesthesiologists and only 24 nonphysician anesthesia providers (NPAPs) for a population of nearly 5 million. Ethiopia, with a population of over 100 million people, has only 35 physician specialist anesthesiologists. A survey of emergency obstetric care capacity at facilities in Uganda found that lack of staff had the greatest correlation with observed mortality rates.[92] In a survey of 64 public and private hospitals in Uganda, 84% did not have a physician specialist anesthesiologist, and 8% had no trained anesthesia providers at all.[93] In another survey of anesthesia providers from five main referral hospitals in East Africa (Uganda, Kenya, Tanzania, Rwanda, and Burundi), only 7% reported adequate anesthesia staffing.[94] In settings where providers exist but in small numbers, the workforce shortage is compounded by heavy administrative burdens and non-clinical duties.

While the anesthesia workforce shortage is most severe in LICs and particularly pronounced in sub-Saharan Africa, regional workforce shortages also exist in HICs and can significantly limit access to care for rural populations.[95,96] In one survey of rural hospitals in the United States, 36% reported delay or cancellation of surgery due to a lack of anesthesia providers.[97] Data from HICs demonstrate differences in trauma



Source: World Development Indicators

Fig. 2.11 **Life expectancy tends to be higher in countries with a surgical workforce larger than 20 workers per 100,000 people.** (Data source: http://databank.worldbank.org/data/home.aspx. Originally printed: http://blogs.worldbank.org/opendata/africacan/pt/comment/reply/2341. Copyright © 2018 The World Bank. Reproduced under CC BY 4.0 license.)

mortality are significantly worse starting at five miles from a trauma center in a major urban city.[98] One can only imagine outcome differences in settings where there may be no surgical or anesthesia provider for tens or even hundreds of miles.

The optimal number of specialist surgical, anesthetic, and obstetric workforce (SAO) providers needed to give access to safe surgery is unknown and likely to vary significantly based on local resources and needs. The SAO density correlates with life-expectancy and in one study, as SAO providers increased from 0 to 20 per 100,000 population, maternal mortality decreased by 13.1% for each 10 unit increase in provider density (Fig. 2.11). These benefits were also observed with workforce expansion beyond 20, though with less magnitude beyond 30 and 40 providers per 100,000 (Fig. 2.12).[99] Based on these findings, the LCOGS recommended prioritizing expansion of the SAO workforce to 20 per 100,000 population by 2030, with anesthesia-specific targets of 5 to 10 anesthesia providers per 100,000.[100]

The density of SAO providers has been estimated at 0.7 per 100,000 population for LICs as compared with 56.9 per 100,000 population for HICs.[101] Worldwide, 77 countries report an anesthesia provider density less than 5 per 100,000, with a 90-fold difference between the average physician workforce density in HICs as compared to LICs. The anesthesia workforce crisis is most severe in sub-Saharan Africa, where most countries have approximately 1.0 physician anesthesiologist per 100,000 population as compared to approximately 19 in Europe or 21 per 100,000 in the United States (Fig. 2.13).[100] Twenty-six countries in sub-Saharan Africa reported less than 0.5 physician anesthesia providers (PAPs) per 100,000. In many LICs, NPAPs provide the majority of anesthesia care. When NPAPs are included in calculations of total anesthesia provider density, 16 countries in sub-Saharan Africa still report less than 1 anesthesia provider per 100,000, and worldwide 70 countries still report less than 5 anesthesia providers per 100,000 population. Estimates from the WHO Global Surgical Workforce database demonstrate that 12% of the SAO workforce provides care for approximately a third of the world's population.[101] Worldwide, LICs and LMICs have 48% of the world's population but only 20% of the SAO workforce.

Multiple factors have contributed to the ongoing surgical and anesthesia workforce crises in LMICs, including limited training infrastructure, relatively low professional status, lack of career advancement (especially for NPAPs), perceived limited job opportunities relative to other professions (e.g., infectious disease in LMICs), cost of training, inefficient hiring mechanisms, provider burnout, as well as internal (e.g., private practice in urban settings) and external brain drain (e.g., leaving the country).[102,103] Lack of consensus on anesthesia practice models and polarized views on who should provide anesthesia care (i.e., physician versus nonphysician, supervised versus independent) are additional factors limiting a clear path for rapidly scaling the global anesthesia workforce (Table 2.3).[91] Task-sharing is a prominent and controversial component of many surgical workforce expansion efforts.

Each of the aforementioned challenges must be addressed as part of any national or international effort to expand the anesthesia workforce. The long-term goal of building robust training infrastructures in low-resource settings requires locally led plans for national advocacy, implementation, and evaluation. Such efforts can benefit from international investment and collaboration.[104-108]

Significant heterogeneity in anesthesia care models exists worldwide. Although the varied anesthesia practice and training models have evolved to address different local needs and challenges, excess heterogeneity and lack of consensus on anesthesia workforce strategy may provide an additional challenge to global workforce expansion. For example, within sub-Saharan Africa, formal nonphysician training programs range from 3 to 72 months in duration with widely different entry requirements, no standardized curricula or assessment tools, and different scopes of practice. For countries seeking

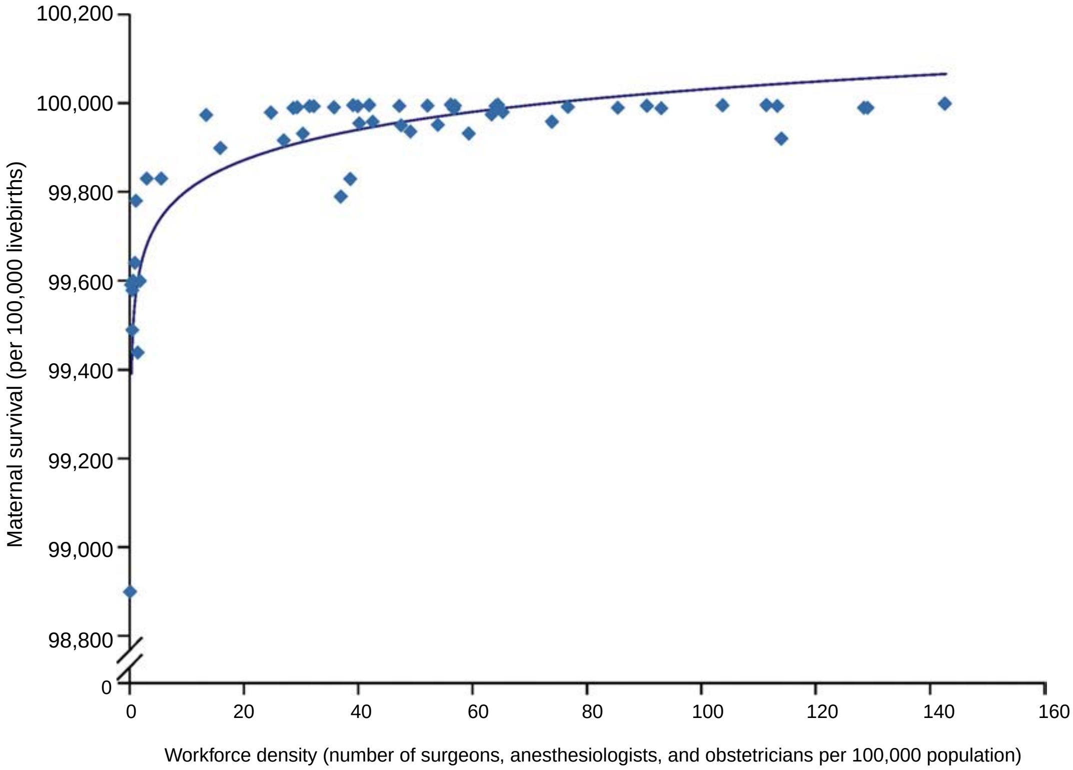


Fig. 2.12 Specialist surgical workforce density and maternal survival. A surgical workforce density of less than 20 per 100,000 specialist surgeons, anesthesiologists, and obstetricians correlates with lower rates of maternal survival. Maternal survival per 100,000 livebirths = 98,292 × ln (workforce density) + 99,579. (From Meara JG, Leather AJ, Hagander L, et al. Global Surgery 2030: evidence and solutions for achieving health, welfare, and economic development. *Lancet.* 2015;386:569–624. Data from Holmer H, Shrime MG, Riesel JN, et al. Towards closing the gap of the global surgeon, anaesthesiologist and obstetrician workforce: thresholds and projections towards 2030. *Lancet.* 2015;385(suppl 2):S40. Copyright © 2018 The Author(s). Published by Elsevier Ltd. This is an open access article under the CC BY 4.0 license.)

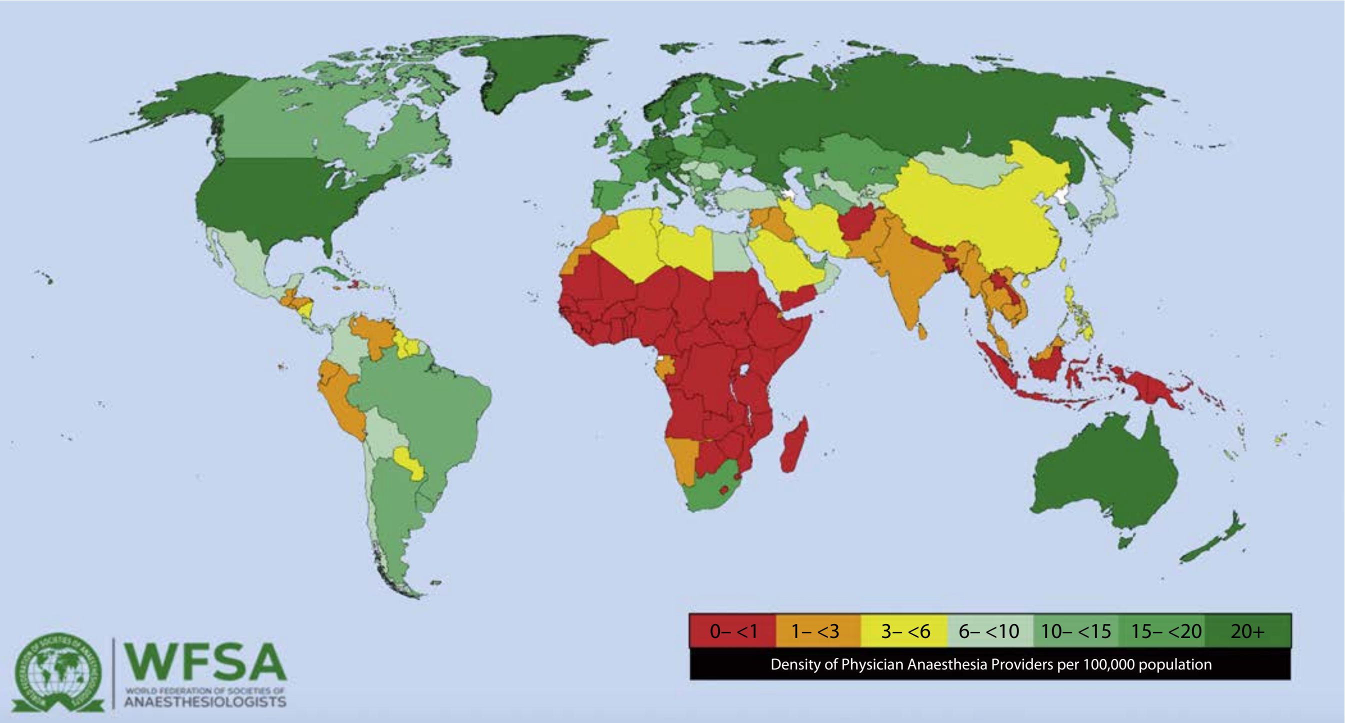

0– <1
1– <3
3– <6
6– <10
10– <15
15– <20
20+
Density of Physician Anaesthesia Providers per 100,000 population
WFSA
WORLD FEDERATION OF SOCIETIES OF ANAESTHESIOLOGISTS

Fig. 2.13 World Federation of Societies of Anaesthesiologists Workforce Map. Image accessed at https://www.wfsahq.org/workforce-map (Data published: Kempthorne P, Morriss WW, Mellin-Olsen J, et al. The WFSA Global Anesthesia Workforce Survey. *Anesth Analg.* 2017;125[3]:981–990. Copyright © 2018 The WFSA. This image is reproduced under the CC BY 4.0 license.)

to increase anesthesia provider numbers, no clear roadmap exists. In most of these countries, task-sharing with NPAPs will likely play a key role in workforce expansion efforts. Collaborative efforts involving stakeholders from different countries and different anesthesia provider cadres can support anesthesia workforce expansion efforts by offering frameworks for anesthesia training, competency assessments, and potential practice models that are feasible with local resources and that meet local needs. Initiatives that ensure quality (e.g., education programs, credentialing bodies, and licensing exams) are as important as those that focus on increasing absolute numbers. The global anesthesia community can play a significant role via advocacy, research, education, and partnership to address many of the challenges that have created the current global anesthesia workforce crisis.

Infrastructure Challenges

The provision of surgical and anesthesia care requires infrastructure that is often lacking in many LMICs. As discussed elsewhere in this chapter, such infrastructure does not necessarily need to be high-cost or based on advanced technologies to provide safe care. In addition to the provider shortages already discussed, additional infrastructure challenges that frequently limit surgical and anesthesia service delivery include: underdeveloped patient referral and prehospital systems, medication and equipment shortages, and inadequate supply chains and facility resources.

In maternal health, and more recently for surgery and anesthesia, a "three delays framework" has been used to describe factors delaying timely access to safe healthcare services.[5] The "first delay" in this model (delay in seeking care) may occur due to financial, cultural, education, or other patient factors. Anecdotally, fear of bad surgical outcomes (whether true or not) and more specifically a fear of anesthesia may also contribute to the "first delay." The second and third delays are more directly linked to infrastructure limitations. The "second delay" (delay in reaching care) occurs when health facilities cannot be reached in a timely manner and may be due to geographic distance or challenges with transportation (e.g., bad road conditions, no access to a car, no money for public transport). Although efforts to improve healthcare infrastructure often focus on facility-based interventions, emphasis on infrastructure that minimizes this "second delay" is underappreciated despite evidence of cost-effectiveness.[109] For example, the lack of prehospital care systems in many LMICs is a significant source of avoidable morbidity and mortality. The DCP3 estimates that 4.7 million deaths in LMICs each year are due to surgical conditions that are potentially addressable through prehospital and emergency care systems. In Uganda, less than 25% of the population lives within 2 hours of a surgical facility, and worldwide approximately 2 billion people lack access due to this second delay.

When discussing infrastructure limitations, most people think of the "third delay" (delay in receiving care), which occurs when patients reach a facility but may not receive adequate care because of limitations in facility resources. Data from 800 first-level health facilities in LICs demonstrate that relatively few first-level hospitals could provide C-sections (64%), laparotomies (58%), or open fracture repairs (40%), and most did not have reliable electricity (31%), running water (22%), oxygen (24%), or Internet access. Without reliable utilities, standard equipment like monitors, ventilators, anesthesia machines, and autoclaves are often not functional, assuming they are even present at all. In recent years, the number of surgical and anesthesia capacity assessment tools increased significantly, although most tools have focused on surgical care with limited ability to assess anesthesia or analgesia capacity.[110–117]

The WHO Surgical Safety Checklist includes requirements for pulse oximetry, anesthesia machine check, and confirmation of instrument sterility, yet these may not currently be feasible in many LMIC health facilities. As the consensus on what constitutes "essential" or "standard" anesthesia and surgical safety equipment is evolving, it is universally agreed that far too many health facilities face routine shortages of even the most basic anesthesia equipment.

Inadequate access to indicator strips, maintenance support, power, and distilled water result in low compliance with the 2016 WHO/Pan American Health Organization (PAHO) standards for cleaning, disinfection, and sterilization in most LMICs.[118,119] In a survey of 28 district hospitals in Zambia, 35% did not have a laryngoscope.[120] A study from Nigeria found that most facilities could not provide general anesthesia (53%); another survey in the Democratic Republic of Congo demonstrated 40% of hospitals lack suction, and in Guatemala only 17% of facilities surveyed had capnography.[121,122] In Uganda, a 2014 survey of health facilities that offer emergency services and surgical care revealed only 22% had pediatric airway equipment, 41% adult airway equipment, and 28% a pulse oximeter.[123] In one survey about obstetric operating room capacity in the five main referral hospitals in East Africa (Uganda, Kenya, Tanzania, Rwanda, and Burundi), only 4% of the providers surveyed reported the presence of electrocardiograph (ECG), pulse oximetry, continuous blood pressure monitoring, capnography, thermometer, stethoscope, difficult airway cart, suction machine, recovery room, and intensive care unit (ICU) facilities.[94] Access to reliable oxygen is a common problem in resource-constrained health systems. In such settings, oxygen is rarely available through central pressurized gas lines and more often provided via tanks or oxygen concentrators, the latter of which has been shown to offer long-term cost savings and increased reliability.[124] (Further discussion of oxygen supply challenges in resource-limited settings is provided in the section, Essentials for Practice in Resource-Constrained Settings of this chapter)

Equipment donations are common in LMICs, however, they often have limited long-term impact and multiple unintended consequences. Donations are frequently made with limited understanding of local needs, lack of communication between donor and recipient, and absence of ongoing technical support or access to consumables. Well-intentioned donors are often unaware of WHO Guidelines for Medical Device Donation, or of the fact that purchase costs account for only 20% of total lifetime costs for a piece of equipment.[125] As a result, up to 30% of donated equipment may only transiently or never become operational, and commonly accumulates in equipment graveyards because of a sense of obligation by recipients to not throw anything away. For example, donations of modern anesthesia machines from HICs is commonly encountered in many LMICs. Without reliable power, pressurized gas supplies, biomedical support, or access to disposables (e.g., carbon

TABLE 2.3 Heterogeneity in Global Anesthesia Workforce

	Australia	Canada	China	Colombia	Fiji	India	Lebanon
Population (millions)	24.1	36.3	1,379	45.5	0.9	1,324	6
GNI per capita (USD)	$54,230	$43,880	$8,250	$6,310	$4,780	$1,670	$7,980
Year formed as a specialty	1952	1910	1989	1963	1970	1964	1954
*Specialist physician anesthesiologists	5,535	3,318	71,698	3,600	18	25,000	500
*Nonphysician anesthetists	0	0	0	0	0	0	70
Anesthesia providers per 100,000 people[†]	23.0	9.1	5.2	7.9	2.0	1.9	9.5
Years of post-secondary education to qualify as specialist physician anesthesiologist	12	13	11	10	13	8	11
Duration of physician specialist training	5	5	3	3	4	4[†]	4
Members of anesthesia care team							
Physician specialist	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Physician non-specialist	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No
Nurse anesthetist	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes
Non-nurse, nonphysician anesthetist	No	No**	No	No	No	No	Yes
Key national challenges	Rural staffing and training, salaries at risk from governmental defunding	Rural staffing, large rural population	Inconsistent medical training, workforce shortage limiting obstetric and NORA coverage	Rural staffing and inequity, low salaries, high workload	Workforce shortage, few specialist job posts, limited postgraduate funding, limited access to resources	Workforce shortage, rural staffing, polarized views on task-sharing, poverty	Regional instability, limited resources and workforce, large refugee population (~⅓ population)
Subspecialty training programs							
Critical care	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Cardiac anesthesia	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
Pediatric anesthesia	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	No
Regional anesthesia	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	No
Obstetric anesthesia	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	No

GNI, Gross national income.

*In many countries (e.g., South Africa) large numbers of physician non-specialists provide anesthesia, but accurate counts of these cadres are unavailable.

[†] Physician specialist anesthesia training in India includes 3 years anesthesia training after 1 year as a "house surgeon."

**In Canada, Anesthesia Assistants are trained to perform many of the anesthesia tasks including intubation, extubation, maintenance of anesthesia (including administering drugs) as directed by the anesthesiologist, but are not designated as the primary anesthesia provider for a given case.

Mexico	**Norway**	**Pakistan**	**Paraguay**	**Romania**	**South Africa**	**Uganda**	**USA**	**Vietnam**
127.5	5.3	193.2	6.7	19.7	55.9	41.5	325.7	92.7
$9,040	$81,980	$1,500	$4,060	$9,480	$5,480	$630	$56,850	$2,060
1934	1949	1960	1973	1957	1935	1985	1940	1960
13,000	1,138	3,000	258	1,400	1,500	72	50,000	1,000
10	2,000	0	497	0	0	430	50,000	2,000
10.2	59.2	1.6	11.3	7.1	2.7	1.2	30.7	3.2
10	11	10	10	11	13	9	12	11
3	5	4	3	5	4	3	4	5
Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
No	Yes	No	No	No	Yes	No	No	No
No	Yes	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
No	No	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	No
Rural staffing, large rural population, political and civil stability	Inadequate time for non-clinical activities during training	Medication and workforce shortages, geographic distribution and inconsistent quality of care	Inconsistent training standards for non-physicians	Workforce shortages, regional staffing shortages, no standardized nurse curriculum	Workforce shortage, large poor and rural population, inequitable access to care	Workforce shortage, rural staffing, high workload, low remuneration, medication and equipment access, polarized views on task-sharing	Rural access to specialists, high cost of care, polarized views on task-sharing, maternal mortality	Inconsistent medication and equipment access, geographic distribution of workforce
Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	Yes	No
Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes
Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes
Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes

BOX 2.3 World Health Organization Essential Medicines List—Anesthesia Medications

General Anesthetics and Oxygen

- Halothane, isoflurane, nitrous oxide
- Oxygen
- Ketamine
- Propofol (or thiopental)
- Bupivacaine
- Lidocaine

Muscle Relaxants

- Atracurium
- Neostigmine
- Suxamethonium
- Vecuronium
- Pyridostigmine*

Preoperative Medication and Sedation for Short-Term Procedures

- Atropine
- Midazolam
- Morphine

Medicines for Pain and Palliative Care

- Acetylsalicylic acid
- Ibuprofen
- Paracetamol
- Codeine
- Fentanyl transdermal (for cancer pain)
- Morphine
- Methadone
- Dexamethasone
- Amitriptyline
- Diazepam
- Haloperidol
- Ondansetron

Additional Medications†

- Epinephrine
- Hydrocortisone
- Naloxone
- Lorazepam
- Enoxaparin
- Heparin
- Tranexamic acid
- Digoxin
- Verapamil
- Amiodarone*
- Hydralazine
- Lasix
- Sodium nitroprusside*
- Dopamine*
- Mannitol
- Insulin
- Glucose
- Ergometrine
- Misoprostol
- Oxytocin
- Misoprostol*

Notable deletions

- Ether (2005)
- Ephedrine (1995)*
- Magnesium sulfate (1988)
- Pethidine (2003)

*Ephedrine is listed in the complementary list of medications in the 2017 20th Edition EML. The complementary list presents essential medicines for priority diseases, for which specialized diagnostic or monitoring facilities, and/or specialist medical care, and/or specialist training are needed.

†Blood products, antiseptics, and antibiotics are included in the EML and not listed here.

Data from http://www.who.int/selection_medicines/committees/DELETIONS.pdf?ua=1.https://www.who.int/medicines/publications/essentialmedicines/20th_EML2017.pdf?ua=1/.

dioxide absorbent, humidity filters, circuit tubing), it is sometimes hard to argue in favor of these machines.

Reliable access to medications and blood are two additional common infrastructure challenges limiting access to safe surgery and anesthesia services worldwide. The WHO Essential Medicines List includes medications to safely perform general anesthesia, monitored anesthesia care (MAC), neuraxial, regional, local anesthesia, as well as acute and chronic pain management (Box 2.3).[126] Despite the existence of the list for more than 40 years, critical shortages of many medications persist. A WHO survey of all health facilities in Uganda examined availability of twelve anesthetic drugs (atracurium, bupivacaine, halothane, isoflurane, desflurane, sevoflurane, ketamine, lidocaine 2%, lidocaine 5% heavy spinal injection, midazolam, nitrous oxide, and suxamethonium) and found that only 2% of the surgical health facilities had all of these medications and only 19% had half.[123] The same WHO survey in the Democratic Republic of Congo found that only 33% of hospitals had bupivacaine, 21% thiopental, and 16% halothane. Factors specifically affecting access to analgesics are discussed further in the next section, though supply chain, cold storage, and cost are common challenges that limit availability for many drugs. Drug quality is also a factor in some LMICs where variable manufacturing quality and fraud (i.e., counterfeiting) are commonly encountered.[127] It is estimated that 1 in 10 medical products (e.g., medications) found in LMICs are substandard or falsified and result in hundreds of thousands of deaths each year.[128,129]

The WHO Essential Medicines List also includes blood products. Despite more than four decades of global advocacy (1975 WHA28.72) for universal access to safe blood, limited transfusion capacity significantly impacts the ability to provide safe surgery and anesthesia care, especially for rural and LMIC populations. Most rural surgical facilities are unable to provide consistent access to safe blood. Patients lack timely access to safe blood as a result of several common challenges including inadequate blood supply, distribution networks, rural blood banking capacity, safety protocols, workforce (e.g., pathologists, laboratory technicians), testing supplies, and policy implementation, as well as high costs of blood and high prevalence of infectious diseases.[75,130,131] The whole blood donation rate is used as an indicator of blood availability. The LCOGS recommends a minimum of 15 blood donations per 1000 people per year, yet this rate is 4.6 per 1000 people per year in LICs (compared with 32.1 per 1000 people per year in HICs).[5,132] Most LMICs cannot maintain adequate supply from voluntary non-remunerated donors (VNRDs) alone (as advocated by WHO), and the use of paid donors or family donors poses numerous logistic and safety concerns.[75] According to WHO data, 71 countries collect the majority of their blood supply from family or paid donors, 50% lack capacity to separate blood components, and 23.5% of countries have less than 100% screening for at least one of these transfusion-transmissible infections: HIV, hepatitis B, hepatitis C , or syphilis.[132] For many LMICs, investment in transfusion infrastructure, expansion of transfusion research, and advocacy (including rethinking of well-intentioned but context-limited policies such as VNRD-only mandates, requirements for onsite pathologists, and mandatory replacement units) are critical areas for engagement by anesthesia providers in the greater global health community.[75,133]

There is an evolving consensus on global standards for anesthesia equipment, medications, and other infrastructure.[3,117] As a result, most assessments of facility or national capacity capture different data that may over- or underestimate current infrastructure limitations. For example, lack of access to rocuronium, sevoflurane, or propofol does not necessarily indicate inability to safely perform anesthesia if suxamethonium, halothane, isoflurane, or thiopental are available. Currently efforts are underway by the WFSA, GICS, and other organizations to develop anesthesia-specific research tools to assist LMICs in monitoring and evaluation of anesthesia capacity.[116,117] The global anesthesia and surgical communities are likely to benefit from continued collaboration and harmonization of efforts that assess global anesthesia infrastructure.

Inequities in Analgesia

Five billion people worldwide have little or no access to analgesia. As with the surgical disease crisis, inequities in analgesia access are in part a result of the limited availability of data that quantify the problem. Unlike most traditional global health metrics that focus on extending healthy life and productivity, alleviating pain may not always target these same goals (e.g., acute surgical pain relief and palliative care), thus adding to the complexity of quantifying pain burden. Massive inequities in access to analgesia are also attributed to several additional factors including advocacy challenges (pain is not disease specific or easy to associate with a "face"), limited training opportunities for healthcare professions, fear of addiction and diversion, financing, supply chain limitations, cultural attitudes, and regulatory and legal barriers (Box 2.4).[52,53] In the ensuing discussion, we consider some of these barriers and potential areas for intervention by the global anesthesia community.

Limited financial resources and infrastructure hinder the ability of healthcare systems to deliver analgesia (i.e., effective supply chains) and limit the ability of patients to afford such care. Countries with a lower GDP or human development index have less access and use of opiates.[53] Opiate prices in LMICs are often significantly higher relative to GDP. In the recent past in Argentina and Mexico, the monthly cost of an opioid prescription for oncologic pain was reported to be more than 200% the average monthly income.[74,134] In Rwanda, the reported price of injectable morphine is 6 times the lowest cost reported in the International Drug Price Indicator Guide.[30,135] Drivers of these inflated prices include import costs, taxes, licensing fees, storage and sales restrictions, and limited public finance programs. International regulations and misconceptions about pain treatment and addiction form the basis for many of these interventions.

BOX 2.4 Factors Affecting Access to and Availability of Analgesia

Knowledge and Attitudes

- Providers—limited training
- Patients—limited health literacy
- Opiophobia—fear of addiction, diversion, or side effects
- Cultural attitudes and beliefs about pain
- Limited data to estimate pain burden or accurate national analgesia needs
- Challenging advocacy (pain is not disease specific or easy to associate with a "face")

Regulations and Policy

- Prohibitionist bias
- Implementation requires significant resources
- Onerous regulations (e.g., limits on who can prescribe, duration, dose and indication)
- Complex regulations create fear of prosecution among providers
- Limited global advocacy efforts to expand analgesia access

Economics and Financing

- Poverty
- Relatively high analgesic costs in LMICs
- Costs of implementing/enforcing international regulations
- Few mechanisms for financial protection from analgesic costs (e.g., subsidies or UHC)

Health Systems

- Supply chains (timely import, procurement, storage, and distribution)
- Limited analgesic options
- Few providers trained/skilled to provide adequate analgesia
- Inadequate number/distribution of facilities providing analgesia care
- Limited national government capacity

LMIC, Low- and middle-income countries; *UHC*, universal health coverage.

Modified from: Berterame S, Erthal J, Thomas J, et al. Use of and barriers to access to opioid analgesics: a worldwide, regional, and national study. *Lancet.* 2016;387(10028):1644–1656.

Goucke CR, Chaudakshetrin P. Pain: a neglected problem in the low-resource setting. *Anesth Analg.* 2018;126(4):1283–1286.

INCB 2017 report https://www.incb.org/documents/Publications/AnnualReports/AR2017/Annual_Report/E_2017_AR_ebook.pdf.

Misinformation about analgesia has biased knowledge and attitudes among providers, patients, and policymakers, and has resulted in significant undertreatment of pain. Several studies have demonstrated that the risk of addiction associated with appropriate analgesic administration is significantly exaggerated and especially low for acute, oncologic, or end-of-life pain.[136] Nonetheless, widespread and excessive fears over diversion and addiction have resulted in unnecessarily onerous regulatory barriers that often confuse tolerance and dependence, users and addicts, and disproportionately affect poor and marginalized populations.[137] In China, for example, a domestic ketamine abuse problem has led to repeat lobbying of the International Narcotics Control Board (INCB) by the Chinese government to reschedule ketamine as a schedule I drug for all countries. Such regulation would effectively remove the nearly ubiquitous access to ketamine in LMICs, and further exacerbate the ongoing global pain crisis.[138] Ketamine is inexpensive, accessible, and safe, and as a result has become a critical resource for the provision of safe and accessible anesthesia and analgesia services worldwide. Fortunately, attempts to restrict ketamine have been promptly recognized as heartless and a violation of international regulatory policies.

Tramadol is another analgesic with frequently misunderstood pharmacology that is commonly found in LMICs. Tramadol is not controlled by international regulations, which has led to its widespread availability for analgesia but also to its abuse.[139] Abuse is widely reported in many HICs (e.g., Canada) and LMICs (e.g., many countries in Africa and the Middle East) and is so severe that in countries like Cameroon, it can literally be found in the groundwater as a result of human excretion.[140] Tramadol is not considered an adequate substitute for opiates and is not included in the WHO Essential Medicines List.

Contemporary legal and regulatory/policy frameworks have significantly exacerbated disparities in access to analgesia care. In the wake of several key events in the 1800s that fueled skyrocketing opioid abuse, including the Opium Wars and invention of the hypodermic syringe, the beginning of the 20th century produced several of the first national and international efforts to restrict and regulate narcotics. This included the first international conference on narcotics in 1909 (International Opium Convention in Shanghai) and the first multilateral drug treaty in 1912 (The Hague Opium Convention). One of the most notable regulations of the 20th century is the 1961 UN Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs. The opening sentence of the "Single Convention" recognizes, "…that the medical use of narcotic drugs continues to be indispensable for the relief of pain and suffering and that adequate provision must be made to ensure the availability of narcotic drugs for such purposes…" The Single Convention set out to control the use and trade of plant-based drugs (opium, cannabis, and cocaine) while also assuring availability for medical purposes.[141] This regulation mandated government participation (reporting national estimates of narcotic needs, meticulous record keeping), regulated drug cultivation, restricted trade to authorized international parties, and created the INCB. The INCB was tasked with monitoring UN drug convention implementation and required each country to designate an enforcement office (e.g., the Drug Enforcement Administration [DEA] in the United States). While most countries adopted this onerous regulation, most poor countries did not have the extensive resources needed to enact all of these changes. The Single Convention's "global estimates" system has been particularly difficult for many countries to implement. This system requires all countries to provide an estimate of opiate need (for medical purposes) in order to inform global production goals and limit excess opiate supplies that are at risk for illicit use. Accurate estimates require significant resources, and for many LMICs, inability to provide accurate estimates translates directly to inadequate supply. For example, 2017 opiate estimates for Chad (population 14.5 million) predicted 341 g fentanyl, 249 g morphine, and 105 g codeine. When compared to estimates from Canada (population 36.3 million: 150,000 g fentanyl, 4,750,000 g morphine, 40,020,000 g codeine, and 70 other controlled substances) the disparity and gross underestimation is apparent.[142] By approving such gross underestimates, the INCB effectively is legally prohibiting patients from having access to opiates. In times of humanitarian crisis, the Single Convention impedes the ability to emergently augment local analgesia capacity as became evident in the wake of the 2010 Haiti earthquake.[143]

Global regulations to curb illicit use have dominated efforts to ensure access to analgesics for medical purposes (or to ensure access to substance abuse treatment). In 1985, the Parliament of India passed the Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances Act to enforce international drug policy (e.g., the Single Convention). The Act's onerous regulations and extreme penalties (including the death penalty for certain drug-related crimes) resulted in more than a 90% decrease in the medicinal use of morphine.[144,145] This imbalance, referred to by some as "collateral damage from the war on drugs," disproportionately affects LMICs and continues to cripple access to analgesics for the majority of the world's population.[143] Such bias has also impaired scaleup of addiction treatment initiatives. For example, addiction treatment (methadone and buprenorphine) was not added to the WHO Essential Medicines List until 2006, approximately 100 years after the passage of the earliest narcotic regulations and 40 years after the list's creation.

The prohibitory biases of prior international drug policy has resulted in numerous national regulatory barriers that include limitations on who can prescribe, dispense, or administer opiates, as well as limitations on indications (e.g., postoperative but not cancer pain), dosages, or duration of therapy.[137] For example, in Armenia only oncologists with the approval of multiple providers can prescribe outpatient opiates, whereas in the Ukraine, healthcare providers must travel to the patients' homes to administer outpatient opiates. In Jordan, the maximum duration of an opiate prescription for oncologic pain is 10 days, and only three days for all other conditions.[146] These myriad regulations create an additional barrier by inducing fear of prosecution for noncompliance among health professionals, thereby reducing provider willingness to prescribe. Lack of adequate training opportunities for healthcare providers, especially in LMICs, coupled with the rare use of analgesics in clinical practice, create a cycle whereby fewer and fewer providers feel comfortable prescribing opiates.

Several amendments to the Single Convention have been enacted including the 1971 Convention of Psychotropic Substances, the 1988 UN Convention Against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances, the inclusion of morphine in the first WHO Essential Medicines List in 1977, and introduction of the WHO Pain Ladder in 1986. Despite these efforts most of the world's population remains without reliable access to analgesia. Nearly 60 years after the Single Convention, the number of drug abusers in many countries is near all-time highs while 150 countries still lack reliable access to analgesia. Even the UN's SDGs, which aim to set development priorities for the world, reflect the prohibitory bias of prior international policies. SDG 3.5 calls for improved prevention and treatment for substance abuse, including narcotics, but fails to mention pain or palliative care anywhere else in the SDGs.[29]

Advocacy and education efforts by the global stakeholders, including the anesthesia community, as well as rethinking of international analgesic policy (including the Single Convention) are essential for progress in addressing the global pain crisis.[125,147] Education for healthcare providers, policymakers, and the public can play a significant role in expanding access to analgesia. Such efforts should focus on pharmacologic treatment strategies, but should also emphasize better understanding and management of causes and contributors to pain, including social and economic determinants. Efforts by numerous Ministry of Health agencies have had small successes. In Vietnam and India, grassroots- and civil-society-led

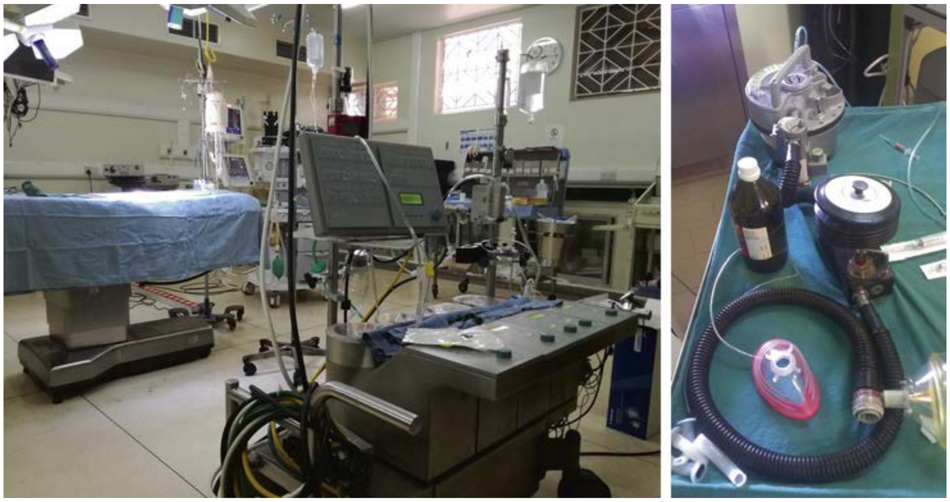


Fig. 2.14 Two operating theatre setups in Uganda, 2018. *Left,* The Ugandan Heart Institute. *Right,* Epstein, Macintosh, Oxford *(EMO)* ether vaporizer at a first-level hospital providing surgical services. (Copyright © 2018 Cornelius Sendagire, reproduced with permission.)

policy initiatives to allay opiophobia and reduce institutional licensing regulations have significantly increased access to analgesia without an increased diversion.[148–151] In Uganda, advocacy efforts by the nongovernmental organization Hospice Africa Uganda helped convince the Uganda Ministry of Health in 1993 to import morphine powder and to provide domestically made morphine liquid free to all cancer or HIV/AIDS patients. In 2004, the Uganda Ministry of Health legalized opioid prescribing by nurses and clinical officers with palliative care training, which significantly expanded access to analgesia especially in rural communities. The import and domestic packaging of oral morphine for palliative care has translated into greater access to oral morphine for the anesthesia and surgical communities. A similar model is currently being adopted in Rwanda, Nigeria, Kenya, Swaziland, and Malawi.[152]

Section 2: Evolution of Anesthesia Care Models and Challenges Around the World

In the mid-19th century the use of inhaled anesthetics (e.g., most notably ether) began in HICs and spread relatively quickly even to many relatively less resourced countries as a consequence of colonial systems. Today, more than 170 years later, ether is still used in some LICs (Fig. 2.14). The practice of anesthesia has changed significantly, though these changes—including large improvements in patient safety—disproportionately occurred in HICs. The practice of anesthesia varies widely between, and even within, countries. Of the numerous challenges and factors that have shaped this heterogeneity, many are shared by multiple countries regardless of income level. These include common challenges such as inadequate workforce (number, composition, or distribution); high cost of care; limited access for rural and poor populations; and lack of standards for practice and training.

This section explores anesthesiology in six geographic regions of the world, providing examples from countries of diverse economic, political, and population backgrounds. Regional variation in anesthesia care models including key milestones in the development of these systems as well as current challenges they face for providing access to safe, affordable anesthesia care are highlighted. This section is not intended to be comprehensive but to provide examples that are representative of the diversity in anesthesiology despite shared common objectives and many similar challenges.

AFRICA

Africa is the second largest continent, with 1.2 billion people, and the youngest population of all the continents (median age ~19 years vs. 38 years in the United States). Africa is also the poorest continent. Recent estimates by the World Bank demonstrate that 11% of the world's population lives on less than US$1.90 per day, and most of the world's extreme poor (over 400 million people) live in Africa (Fig. 2.15).[153]

Economically, Africa is growing fast with an annual change in GDP for most countries of approximately 3% to 6% (Uganda—an LIC 6.3%, South Africa—an upper middle-income country 1.2%).[154] Total health expenditure (THE) has grown more rapidly than GDP with average increases in THE/GDP from 4.8% in 1995 to 5.9% in 2014 for the continent. Out-of-pocket payments as a proportion of THE have also been decreasing (South Africa decreased from around 17% in 1995 to approximately 5% in 2014, and in Uganda from around 45% to around 40%).[155]

African countries have widely disparate health systems. According to a recently published study on outcomes after surgery in Africa, countries participating in the study reported poor outcomes relative to higher-income regions (despite healthier patients) and attributed worse outcomes to limited resources and lack of access to surgical care.[65] The public healthcare sectors of Uganda and South Africa are, in many ways, representative of the current state of anesthesia and surgical care in Africa.

Uganda (Mary T. Nabukenya and Sarah Hodges)

Uganda (population ~40 million) is one the youngest and most rapidly growing nations in the world (fertility rate

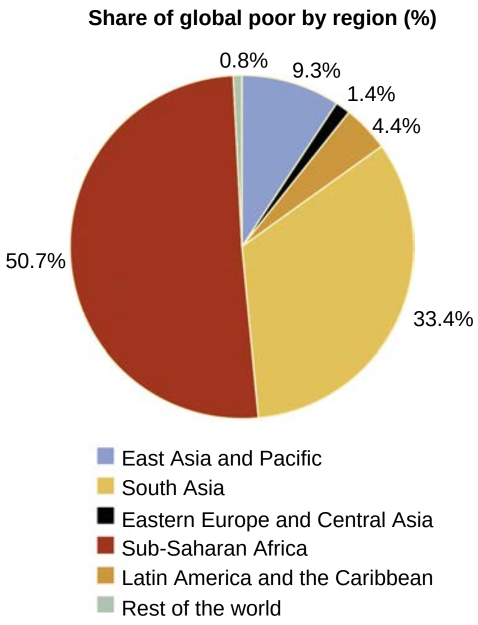


Fig. 2.15 Where are the global poor living? The global poor, by region, 2013. (Source: Most recent estimates, based on 2013 data using PovcalNet [online analysis tool], World Bank, Washington, DC, http://iresearch.worldbank.org/PovcalNet/. [Figure originally appeared in The World Bank Group. Taking on Inequality, Poverty and Shared Prosperity 2016. Copyright © 2016 The World Bank. This image is reproduced under the CC BY 4.0 license.])

~6). Uganda has a gross national income per capita of $630 (see Table 2.1) and despite recent increases in THE/GDP (7.2% vs. 17.10% in the United States), many healthcare challenges exist (life expectancy 56 years), especially with regard to anesthesia and surgery.[76,156]

The first recorded anesthetic in Uganda was a cesarean delivery in 1879 with the use of banana wine as the anesthetic.[157] The first modern anesthetic (chloroform) was given by Sir Albert Cook in 1897.[158]

Anesthesia was initially most commonly given by surgeons. Theater attendants and medical assistants were also trained on the job to administer anesthesia. In the 1970s and early 1980s, a 2-year anesthesia diploma program (anesthetic assistants) was created. In 1985, during a meeting of the Commonwealth Health Ministers of the East, Central, and Southern Africa region, it was established that a medical background was vital for anesthesia provider training. This resulted in abolishment of the “anesthetic assistant” programs and creation of a 2-year diploma (anesthetic officers) in 1986 that required a diploma in clinical medicine, nursing, or midwifery as a prerequisite.

Until the 1980s, training of Ugandan physician anesthesiologists was primarily foreign-based, and due to political turmoil, few returned to Uganda to practice. One anesthesiologist returned in the mid-1970s and started the Department of Anesthesia at Mulago Hospital (Kampala, Uganda). Together, with an Australian anesthesiologist, they established a 1-year Diploma in Anesthesia in 1985, and the following year the Anesthesia Master of Medicine (MMED), a 3-year residency program at the Makerere University Medical School. In 1990, with a total of 4 physician anesthesiologists and roughly 100 nonphysician anesthetists in the country, the Uganda Society of Anesthetists was founded.

Today there are two physician MMED and three nonphysician diploma programs in Uganda. A new nonphysician, 4-year Bachelor’s in Anesthesia program was also started in 2017. Each institution awards a qualification to its graduates, as currently there is no accrediting body for anesthesia in Uganda. Regionally, the College of Anesthesiologists for East, Central, and Southern Africa (CANECSA) was founded in 2014 but has not started accreditations.

From 2000–18, the number of physician anesthesiologists in Uganda has increased from less than 10 to over 80, with the majority working near the capital (Kampala). Nonphysician anesthetists outnumber the physician anesthesiologists by almost 6 times and are distributed widely throughout the country where they usually practice without supervision or team support. Despite increasing numbers in recent years, vast shortages in the anesthesia workforce limit access to care throughout the country. Over the past decade, about 10% of physician anesthesiologists have moved to other countries in Africa. This brain drain has been reported in many other countries, including Francophone Africa under the Cotonou program, where brain drain was reported at nearly 18%.[108] In addition to this external brain drain (i.e., emigrating to another country), internal brain drain (e.g., leaving the public sector for private practice, staying in urban centers, or leaving the field of anesthesiology) is also a significant challenge throughout the region. These moves are motivated by economic incentives and political changes.

In 2007, the Ugandan health ministry established health sub-districts in each county (about 150 countrywide), each with an operating theater for provision of emergency obstetric and surgical care. Unfortunately, they were ill-equipped, and many are nonfunctional. None of the 33 district hospitals have a physician anesthesiologist (despite position vacancies), and only 4 of 13 regional referral hospitals have an anesthesiologist on staff. There are currently 25 anesthesiologists in the national referral hospital together with the teaching faculty in the two MMED programs. All other physician anesthesiologists in Uganda are working in private hospitals and universities.

Safety standards in Uganda are based mainly on WFSA guidelines, however, these are not strictly enforced.[3] Compliance rates with the WHO Surgical Safety Checklist are low as is capacity to comply with the checklist requirements. A survey of utilization of the checklist in major East African hospitals showed variable compliance (19% to 65%).[94]

Administration of ether anesthesia with the Epstein, Macintosh, Oxford (EMO) vaporizer is still used in remote locations of Uganda, although its use has declined significantly in recent years. Throughout the country there are a wide range of configurations ranging from EMO drawover setups to modern anesthesia machines for cardiac bypass surgery (see Fig. 2.14). Limitations in reliable power, disposables, and oxygen are among the many infrastructure challenges that affect daily anesthesia care in almost all locations. Even with monitoring, there are significant differences in what is available ranging from a basic stethoscope and blood pressure cuff to monitors allowing for invasive monitoring. In recent years, the scope of practice has expanded as more providers are completing subspecialty training abroad (e.g., pediatrics, cardiac, obstetrics, critical care, and regional) and returning to practice and teach locally.

Besides the nearly universal problem of remuneration, the greatest challenge for anesthesia in Uganda is the massive imbalance between the workforce and the workload. This imbalance coupled with ill-equipped workplaces makes the provision of safe care difficult, and provider burnout is commonplace.

South Africa (Hyla Kluyts)

South Africa is home to approximately 56.5 million people of diverse ethnicity and culture.[159] Since the first democratic election in 1994 and the adoption of the South African Constitution in 1996, the country has been struggling to address its inequalities. In health care, there have been successes such as the decreasing incidence of HIV infections and increasing life expectancy (from 55.2 years in 2002 to 62.4 years in 2016). South Africa has a gross national income per capita of $5,480 (upper middle-income country), yet approximately 19% of the population live below the World Bank poverty line (US$1.90 per day) and only 17% of the population have private medical insurance.[76] The proportion of the population living below the extreme poverty line is much higher than that of many other middle-income countries. A recent collaborative report by the World Bank denotes South Africa as "one of the most unequal countries in the world."[160] The South African Department of Health is working toward universal health coverage and a draft National Health Insurance Bill was published in June 2018.[160a]

Ether was first used for dental extractions in Cape Town in April 1847, and the first major operation under anesthesia was performed in June of the same year. The first specialist anesthetist, British-born and -trained Dr. Bampfylde Daniel, was appointed at Johannesburg Hospital in 1907. The South African Society of Anaesthesiologists (SASA) was founded in 1943 and was a founding member of the WFSA in 1955. SASA published its first Practice Guidelines in 1987, with five subsequent revisions, including 2012 and 2018 revisions that adhere to the WHO-WFSA International Standards on the Practice of Safe Anaesthesia.[161]

Physicians are trained and accredited to provide anesthesia care as general practitioners or specialists. General practitioners are registered as independent practitioners after completing 6 years of undergraduate study and 3 years of supervised training as interns and subsequent community-service medical officers. A general practitioner can obtain a Diploma in Anaesthesia after 6 months of full-time supervised practice in an accredited institution. Specialists can register as such after completing a 4-year postgraduate training period, completing of a research project, and successfully passing the South African College of Anaesthetists' final Fellowship examination.

The Health Professionals Council of South Africa (HPCSA) certifies medical professionals and is the accreditation body for anesthesia training. Eight university departments across the country are responsible for the academic input and implementation of training pathways, whereas the Provincial Departments of Health dictate the number of posts within these training pathways. The curricula are determined by the Colleges of Medicine of South Africa, which also is responsible for assessments and examinations.

Anesthesia providers in South Africa consist of independent practitioners (general practitioners or specialists in both private and public sectors) supplemented by interns, community service medical officers, specialist trainees, and foreign physicians who do not qualify for registration as independent practitioners and must work under supervision in the public sector. Anesthetists in private practice in South Africa are not hospital based and travel between hospitals according to demand from surgical colleagues. The SASA therefore plays a significant role in the private sector as a representative body for clinician interaction with other stakeholders. In contrast, all public sector anesthetists are employed by the provincial Departments of Health at specific hospitals.

The already limited specialist anesthesia workforce is also unequally distributed between the private and the public sector, and between rural and urban areas in South Africa. For example, approximately 1800 specialist anesthesiologists were registered with the HPCSA in 2017, of which around 1100 specialists are SASA members, and of these, 790 work in the private sector. Roughly 9 million patients are insured and cared for in the private sector.[161] Unsatisfactory working conditions and remuneration are the most commonly quoted reasons for anaesthetists leaving the public sector for the private sector after registering as specialists.

There is limited information available regarding the number, distribution and training of non-specialist anesthesia providers in South Africa. The number of non-specialists choosing full-time anesthesia practice as a career is relatively low and likely does not significantly address the lack of anesthesia services available to the population in either sectors of the healthcare system. At best, the estimated total number of anesthesia providers per 100,000 of the population is half of the minimum required for safe care. No non-physicians provide anesthesia in South Africa. Attempts have been made to train more doctors and to recruit doctors to areas of need (e.g., implementation of rural allowance payments). Anesthetists also form part of the District Clinical Specialist Teams alongside the family physicians, primary healthcare nurses, and specialist obstetricians. These teams were created to improve maternal and neonatal mortality and morbidity at a district level, though anesthesia posts within these teams remain largely unfilled and are not considered mandatory for "minimal team" standards.

Access is a major barrier because of the country's geography and distribution of available resources. About one third of the poorest population in South Africa have to travel at least 20 km to the nearest hospital.[160] Often these level 1 facilities provide obstetric surgery services but not surgical services for the bellwether procedures largely because of the failure to recognize basic surgical care as a public health issue.

Information on anesthesia-related outcomes is not available on a national level, but some useful data are obtained through reports from the National Committee for the Confidential Enquiry into Maternal Deaths.[71] Surgical outcomes for South Africa and Africa have been reported following recent multicenter studies.[65] Regulation of healthcare expenditure, improving access to essential surgical care in rural parts of the country, and increasing data perioperative care and on resource distribution will be critical to improving anesthesia and surgical care in South Africa.

NORTH AMERICA

North American countries have widely different economic, political, and healthcare systems. This section describes examples from two HICs (Canada and the United States) and one middle-income country (Mexico). These two HICs have extremely different models of health care as well as anesthesia services. Canada has a predominantly physician-based system and universal health coverage, while the United States is split nearly equally between physician and nonphysician providers. Mexico is physician-based, but with a novel and controversial rural physician anesthesia program. Haiti is the only LIC in North America and suffers from shortages of healthcare providers that are orders of magnitude worse than other countries in the region. There are fewer than 100 anesthesiologists for the country's population of 10.85 million, and most only work in the capital city. In 1998 Médecins Sans Frontières began a nurse anesthetist training program in collaboration with the Ministry of Public Health and Population (independent from The Haitian Medical Association and the Haitian Society of Anesthesiologists), though numbers of nurse anesthetists remain critically low.[100,162]

Canada (Tyler Law)

The first reported anesthetic in Canada was administered in 1847, just after Morton's demonstration in Boston, as a result of the ship carrying the news from Boston to London, via Halifax.[163] The first formal anesthetic training program began in 1910 in Toronto, and anesthesia as a profession became formalized with the creation of the Canadian Anesthesiologists Association in 1943.[164]

PAPs undertake a 5-year specialist anesthesia residency directly from medical school, or through the International Medical Graduate program designed to train practicing physicians from other countries to national standards. This training focuses on the progressive, successful demonstration of task competency (termed entrustable professional activities [EPAs]), rather than time-based rotation training. The EPAs are consistent across residency programs, and residents receive frequent feedback on their performance. Residents must demonstrate competency in EPAs before advancing to the next phase of training.[165,166]

The Royal College of Physicians and Surgeons of Canada sets accreditation standards and required competencies for anesthesiologists in conjunction with the training programs. In conjunction with EPAs, the Royal College certifies a national examination with written and oral components that tests knowledge, application of knowledge, and clinical judgment. Standardized simulation scenarios are being gradually introduced as a component of specialty certification.

The count of physician anesthesiologists in Canada has increased significantly from 2500 in 2005 to 3300 in 2018, resulting in a provider density of 9 anesthesiologists per 100,000 population. In Canada, anesthetics are largely given by specialist physicians, with several additional healthcare provider cadres also administering anesthesia care. Graduates of the two-year Family Medicine residency may opt to take a 1-year "added skill" training program in anesthesia. They practice anesthesia independently for less acute patients and procedures, often in a community or low-volume setting.

A small number of dentists administer both general anesthesia and sedation for dental procedures, typically in ambulatory settings in the clinic or hospital. A 3-year training program undertaken after the completion of dental school enables them to care for ASA physical classification 1, 2, and stable 3 patients.[167] The anesthesia care team also includes anesthesia assistants, who undertake a prescribed educational program (most often 1 year in duration) and provide technical assistance with equipment and perform clinical tasks (such as intubation or intraoperative medical management) under the supervision of an anesthesiologist.

Guidelines for anesthesia practice have been established by the Canadian Anesthesiologists Association and are regularly updated for the core elements of anesthesia practice in Canada, and guidelines from the ASA and other international societies are commonly referenced. Notable elements of recent guidelines include encouraging the use of a structured handover protocol, and requiring capnography monitoring for moderate or deeper sedation.[168]

Most anesthesiologists practice in academic health centers and community hospitals.[169] The costs of most surgical, anesthetic, and postoperative inpatient care services are covered under provincially administered public health insurance schemes. Only 0.7% of private health spending is directed toward physicians, so the market for private anesthetic services is small and usually restricted to services not covered under public plans, such as dental and cosmetic procedures.[170]

Despite universal health coverage and a relatively large number of anesthesia providers, Canada still faces several challenges relevant to anesthesia and surgical care. Canada is the second largest country (by land mass) in the world, and while much of the population is geographically clustered, rural areas suffer from the lack of consistent access to health care, particularly lack of access to specialists including anesthesiologists. Many northern communities have sizable First Nations (indigenous) populations, who are disproportionately underserved. Similar to the United States, tension among anesthesia provider roles is an ongoing issue.

Mexico (Gerardo Prieto)

The Aztec and Maya were among the earliest anesthetists in Mexico and known for using herbal beverages to produce analgesia, with adjuncts such as rattlesnake fangs, leeches, porcupine needles, and the maguey needles to produce local numbness.[171] The Maya witch doctors were divided into specialty groups according to the diseases that they either cured or produced. The first mention is a witch doctor who produced *"sleepiness"* called Ah Pul Uenel, who used plants that produce hallucinations and nervous system stimulants. Also mentioned is Pul-Yahob who treated wounds and pain with different rituals, plants, and animals.

As in many countries, surgeons provided the first contemporary anesthetics in Mexico. The first ether anesthesia in Mexico was performed in 1847 by the military surgeons E. H. Barton and Pedro Vander Linden for a cannon ball wound amputation, during the U.S. Intervention War in Veracruz.[172] In 1852, Dr. Pablo Martinez Del Rio used ether in an obstetric patient during a session of the Medical Society. Dr. Ramos Alfaro is attributed as the founder of Mexican anesthesia with his introduction of chloroform anesthesia in 1852.[173] In 1900, Dr. Juan Ramon Pardo Galindo performed the first spinal anesthetic in Mexico and Latin America. In 1934, the first formal diploma in anesthesiology (DA) was awarded, and The Mexican Society of Anesthesiology (Sociedad Mexicana de Anestesistas) was formed. In 1957 the first contemporary anesthesia residency programs were formed, and in 1973 the Mexican Council of Anesthesia was registered and was active until 2013 when it became the National Council of Certification in Anesthesia (CNCA).

In Mexico, anesthesia training programs are 3 to 4 years in duration after medical school and authorized by a university and a recognized institute of medicine. Once this program is completed, trainees must pass the National Council of Certification in Anesthesia to receive a 5-year license. Mexico has subspecialty training in cardiac, pediatric, neuro, obstetrics and gynecology, and trauma anesthesia.

Mexico City is one of the most populated cities in the world, absorbing an estimated 70% of all Mexican anesthesiologists in a 300-mile radius. Many factors make medical access extremely difficult for large parts of the population, such as the broad geographic distribution of the Mexican population, rural indigenous tribes speaking different dialects, low per-capita income (gross national income per capita US$16,176), and the concentration of healthcare resources in urban areas.

In the wake of Mexico's economic crisis in 1994, the country was forced to evaluate how to improve access for the most impoverished and marginalized parts of the population. The program that emerged was called PROGRESA (Programa de Educación, Salud, y Alimenación) and was designed to alleviate poverty by developing human capital. Part of this program aimed to fill the shortage of specialists working in rural environments. The government and Mexican Social Security Institute established the idea of training "rural specialists" in surgery, obstetrics, pediatrics, and anesthesiology. Medical school graduates who did not pass the national examinations for admission to residency programs were enrolled and trained to work in rural areas for as little as 6 months to 2 years (often with limited educational resources). In many instances these providers migrated to the larger cities or towns. Approximately 500 graduates have been trained by this program, and in 2016 the government ordered the National Council of Certification in Anesthesia to allow rural anesthesia graduates to take the national examination. If these providers pass, they are given a certificate for rural practice only. If they do not pass the written examination in three attempts, they are given the opportunity to complete a practical examination. The efficacy of this training and impact of the program overall remain controversial.

In Mexico there are approximately 13,000 certified anesthesia practitioners for 128 million people (7 per 100,000 population), with 70% located in central Mexico. Approximately 85% of surgical procedures are performed in Government Social Hospitals and 15% in private practice. The Mexican Social Security Institute estimated that 2.5 million procedures were performed in 2015, and when including all the government hospitals and private practices, it is estimated that well over 5 million anesthetic procedures are performed each year.[8]

Mexico faces significant challenges providing access to anesthesia services outside of a few urban settings. In 2012, it was estimated that 21.5% of the population (~25 million people) lacked access to health services. The country has relatively sufficient anesthesia training capacity and increasing numbers of specialist anesthesiologists, yet provider maldistribution is currently the dominant factor limiting access. Additional challenges facing the anesthesia community in Mexico include provider burnout, addiction, and limited data on anesthesia safety.

A number of anesthesia patient safety initiatives are ongoing in Mexico, including legal mandates (the "Norma Oficial Mexicana de Anestesiologia 006") that specify practice requirements for anesthesiologists and hospitals. Success of these efforts will be contingent on addressing each of the challenges discussed previously.

United States (Ronald D. Miller and Adrian W. Gelb)

Anesthesia slowly gained acceptance as a medical specialty in the United States after the initial ether demonstrations by Morton in 1846. It was taught irregularly and informally throughout the early 1900s as a task performed by medical students, interns, or nurses. A large proportion of anesthesia in the United States was provided by nurses, even though the designation of Certified Registered Nurse Anesthetist (CRNA) was not formalized until 1956.

The first anesthesia society in the United States was the Long Island Society of Anesthetists, established in 1905, and the first department of anesthesia and residency program was established by Ralph Waters at the University of Wisconsin in 1927. This program produced several key leaders in anesthesiology directly (e.g., Cullen, Apgar, and Rovenstein) and indirectly (Stoelting, Miller) (Fig. 2.16). The American Board of Anesthesia (ABA) was formed in 1938 to serve as the certification body for anesthesiologists. Anesthesia was recognized as a specialty by the American Medical Association (AMA) in 1940, and the ASA was established in its current form in 1945.[163]

Physician anesthesiologists in the United States must obtain a medical degree (Doctor of Medicine or Doctor of Osteopathic Medicine) followed by specialty (residency) training in anesthesia. An undergraduate bachelor's degree (3-4 years) is required before entering medical school.[174] Residency in anesthesia lasts 4 years: 1 year of general medical internship and 3 years of anesthesia and perioperative medicine training. Residents rotate through the operating room (including subspecialty cases), pain medicine, and at least 4 months of intensive care. Residency training requirements are prescribed by the Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME). Graduates of an ACGME-approved program are eligible for ABA certification after passing two written examinations (BASIC and ADVANCED), a standardized oral examination, and an objective structured clinical examination. Board

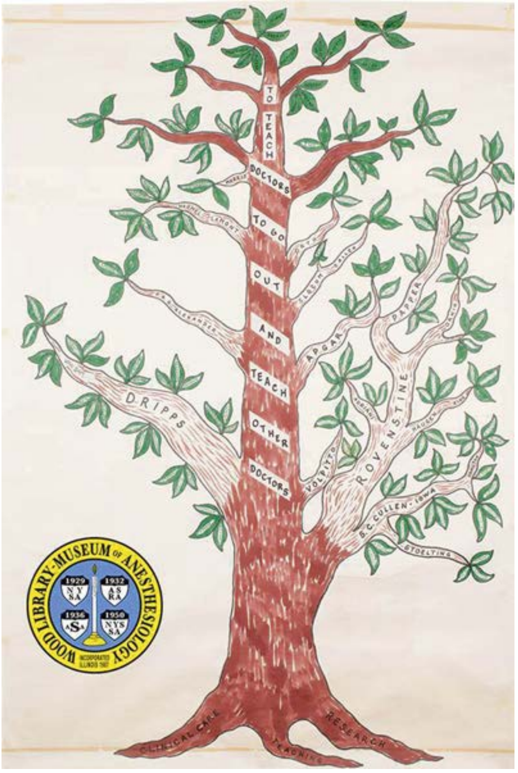


Fig. 2.16 The Aqualumni tree (created by Lucien E. Morris, Ralph M., and Jean P. Morris) depicting names of chairpersons or heads of academic anesthesia centers that came from the lineage of the world's first postgraduate academic residency program in anesthesiology led by Dr. Ralph Waters at the University of Wisconsin. (Copyright © 2018 https://www.woodlibrarymuseum.org. Image reproduced courtesy of the Wood Library-Museum of Anesthesiology, Schaumburg, IL.)

certification is a prerequisite for most hospital-based jobs in anesthesia.

Nurses with at least 1 year of practice in critical care are eligible to train as CRNAs. Training ranges from 24 to 42 months and confers a master's-level degree or higher. Training guidelines are specified by the Council on Accreditation of Nurse Anesthesia Educational Programs and mandate at least 465 hours of classroom education, exposure to a minimum of 600 clinical cases, and 2000 clinical hours.[175] Like physicians, CRNAs who complete an accredited program may take the National Certification Exam administered by the National Board of Certification and Recertification for Nurse Anesthetists.

Certified Anesthesiologist Assistants are a relatively new anesthesia provider group in the United States. Although the first training program opened in 1969 in an attempt to address significant provider shortages that existed in the United States at that time, the cadre has been relatively slow to increase numbers. Certified Anesthesiologist Assistants complete an undergraduate degree with pre-medical studies and then enter a 2.5-year anesthesia training program that is done in collaboration with an anesthesiology department. They conduct anesthesia as directed by a supervising anesthesiologist, and work in close collaboration with the anesthesiologist who leads the care team.

Physician anesthesiologists in the United States are involved in all aspects of perioperative care, including preoperative optimization in outpatient clinics, management of acute postoperative pain, obstetrical anesthesia services, and responding to traumas and inpatient emergencies. They also frequently manage ICUs after completing subspecialty training in critical care.

There are approximately 50,000 physician anesthesiologists, and 50,000 registered CRNAs in the United States, for a combined density of approximately 31 providers per 100,000 people.[176,177] The composition of the anesthesia care team may include from physician anesthesiologists only, to physician anesthesiologists supervising either CRNAs or anesthesia assistants, to CRNA-only models. Federal regulations mandate physician supervision of CRNAs, but 17 states have opted out of this requirement following the introduction of legislation in 2001.[178] Among the 17 states that have opted out, 14 require some degree of physician oversight (not necessarily by an anesthesiologist) and only 3 allow completely independent CRNA practice.

While it is unproven if nonphysician cadres in the United States increase access to anesthesia or provide care with different quality outcomes, data demonstrates that CRNAs are more likely to practice in rural locations and perform more anesthetics under sedation (i.e., MAC) than physician anesthesiologists.[179,180]

Although overall provider density is high in the United States, there is stark geographic maldistribution with providers concentrated in urban areas. Many less populated areas report significant surgical delays due to the lack of anesthesiologists.[95] Access to subspecialists is also limited. For example, nearly one third of the United States pediatric population lives more than 50 miles from the nearest pediatric anesthesiologist.[181]

Maternal mortality has increased in the United States in the last 10 years, though anesthetic-related maternal mortality has declined.[182] The causes are multifactorial, may be attributable to the changing risk profile of obstetric patients, and pose a dynamic challenge to anesthetists.

The high costs of care and incomplete financial coverage (insurance) are two additional, evolving challenges in the United States with significant repercussions and relevance for anesthesia care. Lastly, significant ongoing debate exists over anesthesia provider roles.

EUROPE

Although Europe and the European Union (EU) may appear as one entity, the countries represented are diverse with regard to population, economic situation, culture, and political leadership. Similar diversity is also seen for the training and organization of anesthesiology services in these countries. The official EU title of the specialty is "Anaesthetics," and the only EU training requirement is that its duration should be 3 years.[183] In reality, the duration of training is anything from 3 to 7 years, and the involvement in anesthesia, intensive care, pain, and critical emergency medicine varies to a great extent among countries.[184] The European Section and Board of Anaesthesiology (EBA) of the European Union of Medical Specialists (UEMS) is the political branch of European anesthesiology. The UEMS aims to promote and harmonize the highest level of training of the medical specialists, medical practice, and health care within the EU, and to promote free movement of specialist medical doctors within the EU. The EBA/UEMS has published training guidelines to encourage countries to aim for an agreed standard.[185] In cooperation with the scientific branch of European anesthesiology, the European Society of Anaesthesiology (ESA), the UEMS offers the European Diploma of Anaesthesia and Intensive Care (EDAIC). Another building block for European Anaesthesiology is the Helsinki Declaration on Patient Safety in Anaesthesiology, which was introduced in 2010.[186] In the following paragraphs we describe the situation in two countries—Romania, a middle-income EU member state with a population of 19.7 million and physician-only service, and Norway, a high-income, non-EU member state with a population of 5.2 million and where the team approach is the anesthesia service model.

Norway (Jannicke Mellin-Olsen)

In Norway, the first ether anesthetic was provided at Rikshospitalet (the National Hospital) in Oslo on March 4, 1847.[187] In April, the first ether inhalation for labor followed. At that time, younger surgeons and GPs and later nurses were in charge of anesthesia delivery. In the 1930s two surgeons (Carl Semb and Johan Holst) facilitated anesthesia training opportunities for physicians Otto Mollestad and Ivar Lund in London and Boston (Massachusetts General Hospital), respectively. Dr. Mollestad was hired without salary in 1939, and as the first consultant in anesthesiology in 1947.

The Norwegian Society of Anaesthesiology was founded in January 1949 with only seven members. The founding members faced significant difficulties promoting the specialty, but the anesthesia nurses welcomed physician involvement and leadership.

Physician specialty training is 5 years. There is no final examination, but there are course exams and procedure checklists, in addition to continuous individual assessment. Trainees are encouraged to take exams for the EDAIC. The nurse anesthetist training program is 1.5 years after 3 years of nursing education. Both physician anesthesiologists and nurse anesthetists are accredited by the Directorate of Health.

The first guidelines that described the scope of practice and dynamics of the anesthesia team were authored by both physicians and nurses in 1993.[188,189] It was agreed that anesthesiology is a medical specialty. A physician is responsible for all anesthetic procedures, although nurses are allowed to provide anesthesia for ASA physical classification 1 and 2 adults with indirect supervision. At induction and emergence, there must always be two anesthesia-trained persons immediately available. The "flexible anesthesia team" usually consists of one physician and one nurse.

Anesthesiology is an attractive and prestigious specialty in Norway (second to thoracic and neurosurgery only), and works closely with almost all other hospital specialists, including the surgeons.[190] In contrast to many other countries, anesthesiologists in Norway are highly respected by the general public. This is partly due to increased visibility, as anesthesiologists provide leadership not only in anesthesia, but also perioperative medicine, pain management, intensive care, and critical emergency medicine (including prehospital services). There are currently 1329 physician anesthesia providers (25.5 per 100,000 population) and 2000 nurse anesthesia providers.[100] Anesthesiology is among the medical specialties with the lowest female representation (30%). As Norway has generous paid maternity and paternity leave, the norm is that both sexes stay in the profession and work full-time.

Health care in Norway benefits from the country's economic prosperity, robust public programs, and emphasis on patient safety. The Norwegian Society of Anaesthesiology was among the first signatories of the Helsinki Declaration on Patient Safety in Anaesthesiology, and the WHO Surgical Safety Checklist is distributed and used nationwide. Norwegian health care is funded primarily by the government. Hospital care is free of charge for the patient, as are medication costs once a specified amount is surpassed. Private hospitals exist but provide mostly elective surgery.

Current challenges facing the anesthesia community in Norway include concerns about costs and quality, although in general, hospitals are well equipped. In recent years there has been increasing frequency of medicine shortages, mostly due to the lack of domestic production and export policies of drug companies that can have adverse safety consequences.

Romania (Daniela Filipescu)

The first anesthetic in Romania (ether for a limb amputation) was documented in the journal "TemesvarerWochenblatt" and took place on February 13, 1847.[190a] The world's first-ever use of opioids for intrathecal anesthesia was presented by a Romanian in Paris in 1901.[191] Thoma Ionescu further developed the technique and published the first textbook of intrathecal anesthesia—*La rachianesthésie générale.*[191,192]

The first anesthesia training course in Romania was held in 1951, and a formal 1-year training course began in 1959, after the recognition of Anesthesia and Intensive Care Medicine (AICM) as an independent medical specialty.[190a] The first ICU was instituted in 1958, but it was only in 1972 that AICM departments were formally introduced in the Romanian medical health system.

The first AICM study group was founded by Zorel Filipescu in 1958. The study group was included later as part of the Romanian Society of Surgery and separated as an independent Romanian Society of Anaesthesiology and Intensive Care (RSAIC) in 1972. The RSAIC joined the WFSA the same year.

In Romania, specialist physicians are the only formal anesthesia provider cadre. After graduating from medical school (MD), physicians may enter specialty training after passing a written national examination. The number of places for each specialty is decided by the Ministry of Health, and admission to a specialty depends on candidate preference and performance on the written examination. Usually, AICM is among the top specialties chosen for training due to the wide range of opportunities to work abroad. The Romanian MD and specialist diplomas are automatically recognized in EU countries.

The AICM specialty training is five years and includes two years in intensive care medicine. Romania endorsed the competency-based European Board of Anaesthesiology Curriculum for Anaesthesiology, Intensive Care, and Pain Therapy, but this has been only partially implemented. For obtaining the specialist certification, written and oral examinations must be taken at the end of the training period. Romania adopted the EDAIC Part I examination organized by the ESA as the national written examination since 2010. All physicians practicing in Romania have to be evaluated and re-licensed based on a minimum 200 continuing medical education (CME) credits accumulated every 5 years. There are no specialized anesthesia nursing cadres recognized in Romania, but general nurses may apply for posts in AICM departments where they are trained locally for the job.

An estimated 1400 anesthesiologists are currently practicing in Romania, and approximately 180 trainees are entering the specialty each year. Trainees are distributed to 12 academic centers in the country, although most trainees are taught in the five largest academic centers. The majority of anesthesiologists work in public hospitals though a small number work in private centers and some in both.

Safety in AICM is promoted by the RSAIC, which signed the Helsinki Declaration on Patient Safety in Anaesthesiology, endorsed the WHO checklists, the ESA clinical guidelines, and launched national guidelines. Despite this attention to patient safety, the European Surgical Outcomes Study (EuSOS), which included 17 hospitals and 1298 patients from Romania, demonstrated a higher postoperative mortality (6.8%) after nonemergent general surgery in Romania than the European mean value (4%).[193] Subsequently, a national program for critical care was implemented, and the more recent International Surgical Outcomes Study (ISOS), which included 1875 patients from 26 Romanian hospitals, demonstrated improved outcomes.[194]

The anesthesia community in Romania faces several challenges. A key challenge limiting anesthesia access in Romania is the shortage of providers (anesthesiologists and trained AICM nurses) as well as equipment technicians. Reasons for these shortages include internal and external brain drain (mostly to Western Europe).[195] Workforce shortages particularly affect ICU activities as well as operating theaters where a provider may be assigned multiple rooms simultaneously. Another barrier to scaling the workforce is the lack of a nationally standardized AICM nurse curriculum and training. Additional challenges routinely encountered in Romania include the uneven distribution of specialists and equipment as well as significant infrastructure limitations and drug shortages. For example, ultrasound and certain essential medications (e.g., tranexamic acid, amiodarone) are not universally available. Although the practice of AICM includes perioperative care, there are no formal anesthesia preoperative evaluation or pain therapy centers organized in the public hospitals in Romania. A final and significant challenge facing anesthesia providers is the unavailability of adequate malpractice coverage options which has resulted in defensive medical practices.

Despite the current challenges, the AICM is one of the most dynamic specialties in Romania, with a tremendous development led by dedicated RSAIC leadership.

ASIA AND THE MIDDLE EAST

Asia is the largest continent with a population of 4.43 billion. There is a wide socioeconomic variation among the countries with the GDP PPP (at purchasing power parity) per capita income ranging from 1944 International dollars for Afghanistan to 127,480 for countries like Qatar.[76] Anesthesia services also vary widely. Anesthetic societies are functional in the majority of the countries and a number of societies located in the same geographic regions have voluntarily come together to form regional societies. The officially recognized regional sections of the WFSA in Asia are the Pan Arab Federation of Societies of Anesthesia, Intensive Care and Pain Management (PAFSA) founded in 1884, Confederation of ASEAN Societies of Anaesthesiologists (CASA) as part of the Asian Australasian Regional Section founded in the 1970s, and the South Asian Association of Regional Co-operation—Association of Anaesthesiologists, which came into existence in 1991.

India (Bala Krishnan Kanni)

The first administration of ether anesthesia in India was on March 22, 1847, and the first chloroform anesthesia was administered on January 12, 1848. Chloroform and ether continued to be used until the mid-1950s in many hospitals. Halothane was introduced in 1960 and isoflurane in 1992.[196] Regional anesthesia (with cocaine) was first reported in 1894 and spinal anesthesia with hyperbaric Stovaine (amylocaine) was reported in 1908. In 1935, the first Boyle's apparatus machine arrived in India, and the same year the first oxygen plants were established in Calcutta (Kolkata). The Indian Society of Anesthesia (ISA) was established in 1947. The first official Journal of the ISA was published in July 1953, and in 1956 the ISA joined the WFSA as a founding member.

Formal anesthesia training for undergraduates in India officially started in 1906, followed by diploma (1946) and MD/MS degree programs (1955) in anesthesia. The National Academy of Medical Sciences started Diplomate of National Board of Examinations in 1970 followed by PhD programs in anesthesia. Today, all anesthesiologists in India are required to undergo one of three training pathways prior to independent practice. These pathways take place after completing 4 years of medical school (Bachelor of Medicine, Bachelor of Surgery–MBBS) and 1 year as an intern or "house surgeon." The first training pathway requires physicians to complete 3 years of postgraduate anesthesia training with a dissertation at a university hospital. The second potential pathway is called the Diplomate of the National Board (DNB) and requires 3 years of training as well as a dissertation at a hospital approved by the National Board of Examinations. Physicians can also pursue a 2-year postgraduate diploma program at a university hospital without dissertation. Holders of this latter postgraduate Diploma in Anesthesia often practice with supervision of more senior anesthesiologists. There are no nurse anesthetists in India, and the total number of anesthesiologists in the country (population 1.34 billion) is approximately 25,000 (see Table 2.3).

There have been several attempts to train non-anesthesiologists as stop-gaps for the ongoing workforce crisis. In 2002 the Indian government started a short-term training program for doctors but this could not be sustained due to problems in implementation and lack of support from the government. One ongoing program provides 6 months of training to physicians post-medical school to carry out cesarean sections and lifesaving anesthetic skills for emergency obstetric care in rural facilities where no anesthesiologist exists.[197,198] This program is controversial and not universally supported. India also trains Operation Theatre Technologists (OTT) or Assistants who may undergo a 3-year diploma or 6-month to 1-year training program straight from secondary school. These cadres have limited scopes of practice (e.g., can place IVs or administer medications) and must practice under direct supervision of anesthesiologists. Although the OTTs are not permitted by the ISA to perform tasks such as intubation or neuraxial anesthesia, there are significant concerns that such practice takes place in some centers.

In addition to shortages in number, the anesthesia workforce in India also suffers from inequitable distribution, with a disproportionate number of providers in urban areas. Because anesthesiologists in India are also responsible for many services outside of the operating theaters (e.g., preoperative preparation, postoperative care, and critical care), these services are also frequently unavailable.

The ISA is actively engaged in several activities to promote anesthesia safety throughout India. With initial financial assistance from WFSA, the ISA started a CME program for rural anesthetists to update knowledge and techniques. The ISA endorses the WFSA and WHO guidelines for minimum monitoring standards, the WHO Safe Surgery Checklist, as well as many other anesthesia safety practices (e.g., color coding of drugs, syringe labelling, machine checks, and appropriate records of anesthetic care). Significant efforts have also been made to educate the public about anesthesia and its safety by holding public education programs.[199]

Although safe anesthesia services are available in many institutions both public and private throughout India, access to modern equipment and facilities are not universal. Much like providers, anesthesia infrastructure is also concentrated in urban areas. Anesthesia subspecialties such as neuro, cardiac, pain, pediatrics, and obstetrics are available in most urban hospitals but few rural facilities.[200] As a result, many rural facilities lack capacity for safe anesthesia care. Additional challenges limiting access to safe anesthesia care in India include poverty, distance to care, social and cultural barriers, and comorbidity.

Lebanon and The Middle East (Patricia Yazbeck)

The oldest medical writings in the region were found in cuneiform tablets and Eber's papyrus in Mesopotamia and the Nile valley, describing herbal treatments like Belladonna, Cannabis, and Mandragora. Phoenicians also obtained artificial sleep by using calming herbs, opium poppy, and juniper leaves. In the Middle Ages, prominent Arab scholars (Avicenna, Al Razi, Ibn Al Quff, Al Baghdadi, and others) made important contributions to the field of medicine.

In 1835, the first Arab medical school in the Middle East was established by Dr. Clot in Kasr-Al-Aini Hospital, in Cairo. Graduates practiced in all the large cities of the region. In 1860, American, French, and British powers intervened in the region and with the inflow of missionaries, more medical schools and hospitals were established. In Lebanon, the Syrian Protestant College (American University of Beirut) was founded by American missionaries in 1886 while the French Medical School (St Joseph University) was founded by the French Jesuits in 1883. The first use of inhalational anesthesia occurred in 1865 by Dr. George Post, an American missionary surgeon who administered "kulfera" (chloroform) in the village of Abeih-Lebanon. Dr. Post is considered the pioneer of modern anesthesia in the Middle East (Fig. 2.17).[201]

At the end of WWI, the practice of anesthesia still depended on foreign surgeons, and on local and foreign nurses or technicians, administering ether or chloroform. But the beginning of oil production in the region contributed to economic improvement and led to the foundation of many faculties of medicine in Syria, Sudan, and Iraq. After 1950, Middle Eastern countries established fully independent anesthesia departments with their own structure, staff, residency training, research, and certification by international academic institutions. In addition, in the 1960s and 1970s, many countries founded their own national anesthesia societies and in 1985 a Pan Arab Society of Anesthesia, regional section of the WFSA, was founded.

Anesthesia departments in the Middle Eastern countries are staffed by highly qualified faculty certified either by the Arab Board or by foreign academic bodies, such as the American, French, or European Boards of Anesthesiology or by the RCoA.

A residency program of 4 years in a recognized center may be followed by 1 or 2 years of fellowship in pain management, critical care, obstetric anesthesia, cardiopulmonary anesthesia, or others as recognized by the national anesthesia societies, which also track CME.

Anesthesia is routinely administered by a qualified anesthesiologist. Trainee anesthesiologists or anesthesia nurses can administer anesthesia under the supervision of a qualified anesthesiologist. The density of physician anesthesia providers per 100,000 population is less than three in Morocco, Syria, and Iraq, and less than one in Yemen and Sudan while it ranges from six to more than 10 in countries like Egypt, Oman, Jordan, Lebanon, United Arab Emirates, and Kuwait.

The responsibilities of the anesthesiologist include preoperative assessment and preparation, premedication, as well as staffing PACUs and ICUs. Anesthesia is administered in the operating room, delivery suite, radiology department, and as ambulatory anesthesia. In addition, acute or chronic pain management is becoming routinely practiced. Departments and societies of anesthesiology in the Middle Eastern countries are responsible for setting practice guidelines, matching the standards approved by international societies, such as the American, French, or European Societies of Anesthesiologists. Anesthetic machines, monitoring equipment, and agents adhere to the international standards.

The major key challenges and barriers to safe anesthesia in the region are the consequence of the recent turmoil occurring in many Middle Eastern countries (e.g., Syria, Iraq, Libya, Sudan, and Palestine) resulting in limitations of workforce and anesthesia access and safety in parts of these countries.

Pakistan (Fauzia Khan)

From the time Pakistan gained independence (1947) until the late 1950s, the practice of anesthesia was mostly limited to spinal or open-drop ether after induction with ethyl chloride. The first chair of anesthesia was established at the King Edward Medical College, Lahore, in 1959, and a 2-year diploma course (DA) was introduced at the same institution in 1960. The first ICU in Pakistan was established in 1976 at Mayo Hospital, Lahore, and the Pakistan Society of Anesthesia (PSA) was founded in 1971 in Karachi. A higher

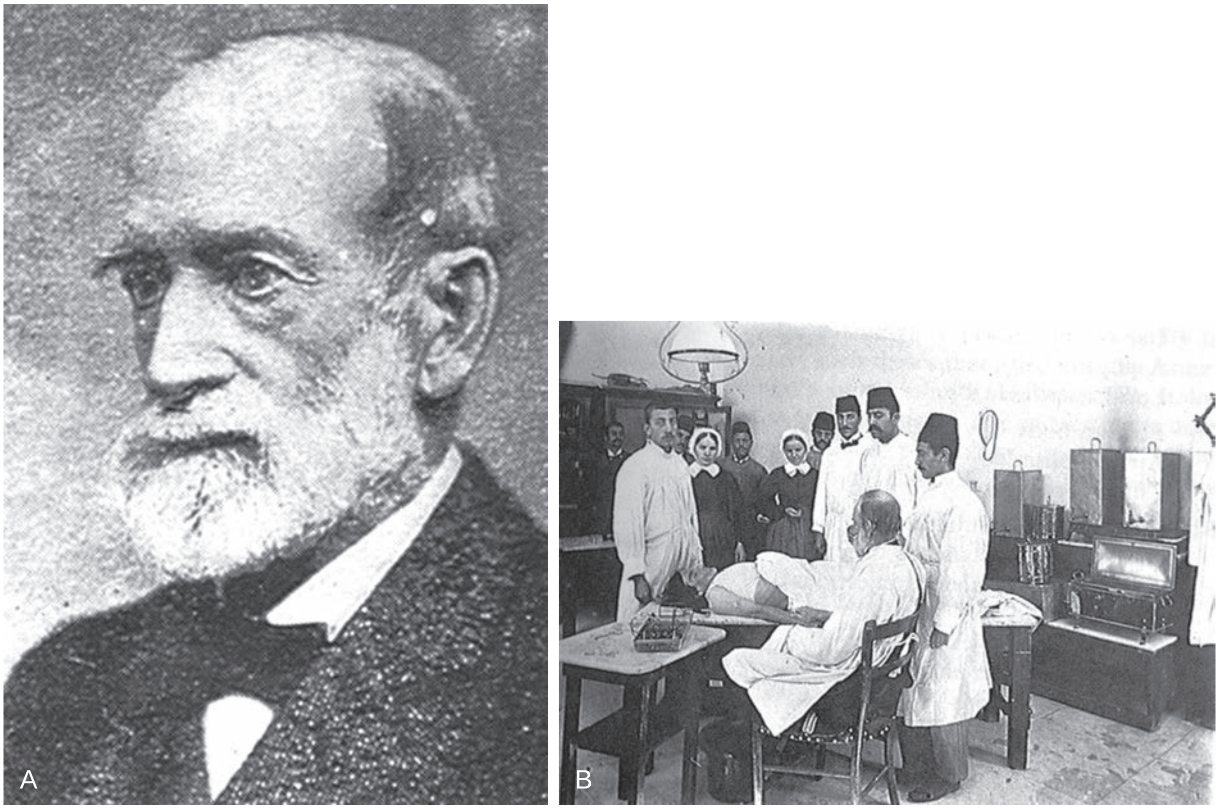


Fig. 2.17 Dr. George Post (A), in an operating room with a female patient on the table (B).

diploma, the Fellowship of the College of Physicians and Surgeons of Pakistan (FCPS), was instituted by the College of Physicians and Surgeons of Pakistan (CPSP) in 1972.

The CPSP includes anesthesia faculty and accredits all physician training programs in the country. Two training tracks are offered for anesthesia: (1) a higher professional diploma (FCPS) that requires 4 years of competency-based standardized training; and (2) a Membership of the College (MCPS) that requires 2 years of training after medical school and 1 year of internship. Only FCPS diploma holders can progress in the academic ladder in university anesthesia jobs. Certification in either track requires written, practical, and oral examinations. License to practice is provided by a separate body, the Pakistan Medical and Dental Council.

The anesthetic workforce in Pakistan is comprised of 3100 physician specialists (1.64 physician anesthetists per 100,000 population) (see Table 2.3). Anesthesia almost always is provided by physicians, although in some remote areas surgeons may administer local blocks or even spinal anesthesia. The main clinical responsibility for the majority of anesthesiologists is to provide operating room anesthesia and preoperative assessment, but in several institutions they also lead ICUs and chronic pain management clinics.

Health care in Pakistan is provided mainly by the private sector, with the government contributing only about 20% of services. Government-owned institutions are tiered into teaching, district, and county (taluka) hospitals. A system of basic health units provides primary health care. The majority of anesthesiologists hold two jobs as remuneration from just one is not sufficient. Only a few public institutions allow in-house private work by anesthesiologists. Brain drain is an ongoing issue with a significant proportion of the workforce emigrating to the Middle East or Europe.

There are currently no national guidelines relating to anesthesia and little awareness of international safety standards. There are also limited data on anesthesia outcomes in Pakistan.[202] There is no national body responsible for quality and safety in health care, however, the Punjab Healthcare Commission (PHC) is an autonomous health regulatory body created by the provincial government for the Punjab province (96 million people). The PHC aims to improve quality, safety, and efficiency of healthcare service delivery for the population of Punjab by implementing Minimum Service Delivery Standards (MSDS) in all areas and all disciplines including anesthesia. This model is soon to be replicated in the other provinces.

Anesthesia care varies significantly among health facilities within the country. Larger hospitals in bigger cities have access to modern equipment and monitors comparable to HICs. Many government teaching hospitals and secondary health centers are underfunded and have only basic equipment for monitoring (e.g., ECG and noninvasive blood pressure). Medication shortages are a frequent occurrence as several routine anesthetic medicines like fentanyl, inhalational agents, antiarrhythmics, and vasoactive drugs are imported. Even drugs manufactured within the country like morphine and ephedrine are frequently unavailable. Remifentanil, sufentanil, esmolol, S-ketamine, and clonidine are among many drugs not available at all due to licensing issues.

Additional challenges currently facing the Pakistani anesthesia community include maldistribution of human resources, limited biomedical technician support, and lack of political will. There is great necessity for regional collaboration to collect data on anesthesia and surgical need, resources, and outcomes to help improve safety and better allocate resources.[203]

China (Yugaung Huang)

Modern anesthesia was introduced along with Western medicine into China in the early 20th century. In the 1950s, only simple anesthesia care was available in China, including open-drop ether, tracheal intubation under inhalational anesthesia, and single-shot procaine spinal anesthesia together with peripheral nerve blocks. Because of economic limitations from the 1950s to the 1980s, intravenous procaine combined with opioid anesthesia and even acupuncture anesthesia were common. Anesthesiology in China has evolved in the past 2 decades as a crucial medical specialty that is integral to multidisciplinary surgical care and collaboration. This has resulted in modern anesthesiology shifting from narrowly focused on surgical anesthesia to perioperative medicine.

The training of anesthesia practitioners remains a big challenge. Currently in China, medical school studies range from 5 to 8 years resulting in an inevitable variation in educational quality. The national resident training program was initiated in 2000 and standardized in 2014, which will make the specialty catch up with the international standards of training and help to eliminate disparities due to difference in initial medical education.

To ensure patient safety, it is emphasized that clinical anesthesia is provided by anesthesiologists rather than anesthesia nurses. To meet the rapidly increasing needs outside of the operating room, anesthesiologists are required in nonsurgical diagnostic and therapeutic procedures for endoscopy, painless labor, and delivering optimal care to improve the quality of patient care throughout the hospital. With the economic boom, the majority of Chinese hospitals are equipped with sophisticated anesthetic machines and monitors and have a modern work environment. However, there are obvious variations in the quantity and quality of anesthesia devices and services among the different regions of China. In some small or medium-sized hospitals, there are no anesthetic gas monitors, defibrillators, or target-controlled infusion pumps.[204]

With the support from the National Health Commission (NHC), Chinese anesthesiology has been shifting from only operating room anesthesia to perioperative medicine and moving from a volume-based healthcare system to a value-based healthcare system. Anesthesia safety and quality assurance are of vital significance and great concern. The National Quality Assurance Center for Anesthesia was established with Professor Yuguang Huang as its leader in 2011. Thus far 31 Provincial Quality Assurance Centers have been established throughout mainland China. There have been only sporadic studies so far providing data on anesthesia safety and these have come from several large hospitals, while the current status in resource-limited medical settings remains to be explored.[205,206]

The anesthesia workforce shortage has become one of the greatest challenges in China as the number of surgeries has grown and the anesthesia demand increased without a concomitant increase in the number of anesthesiologists. The density of physician anesthesia providers is only 5.12 per 100,000 population in China, which is approximately 25% of that in the United States. To meet the urgent healthcare needs, Chinese anesthesiologists are struggling with heavy workloads, and thus have high burnout and low job satisfaction.[207] Long working hours, heavy workload, high acuity, and fast work pace are all factors associated with burnout and patient safety. Even with this effort only 10% of pregnant women can receive epidural analgesia during labor, and patients undergoing endoscopy have to be on long waiting lists for analgesia and sedation since anesthesia practitioners are mainly occupied with surgery in the operating rooms. To bridge the workforce gap, the Chinese government has made great efforts to emphasize the importance of anesthesiologists and anesthesiology nationwide with supportive documents focused on improving the perceptions and roles of the anesthesia specialty in medical care not only for patients but also for anesthesia professionals. It is encouraging to see that an increasing number of medical graduates are willing to join the profession of anesthesiology, which prognosticates well for the future.

With great efforts by the Chinese Society of Anesthesiology and Chinese Association of Anesthesiologists, Chinese anesthesiology has developed rapidly to provide patients with safer anesthesia and better quality of life. Challenges include variation in anesthesia safety, shortage of workforce, occupational burnout, and unbalanced working conditions across the country. Further efforts are anticipated to make anesthesia practice even better in China.

Vietnam (Thi Thanh Nguyen and Thang Cong Quyet)

The modern history of anesthesia in Vietnam dates as far back as 1975 only due to the loss of records during the war. During the war, anesthesia was usually administered by surgeons, and only occasionally by an anesthesiologist who had mainly been trained by French or American specialists. During the war, U.S. military anesthesiologists made multiple seminal discoveries that changed modern transfusion practices.[208,209] Following the war, Vietnamese doctors gradually took up anesthesia and in 1979, the Vietnam Society of Anesthesiologists was founded in Hanoi with 100 members and Professor Ton Duc Lang as its first president. The membership continued to expand and currently there are more than 1000 anesthesiologists in Vietnam. In 1980, with the help of Dr. J. Beiboer from The Netherlands, the Vietnam Society of Anesthesiologists joined the WFSA, the CASA, and various other specialist societies throughout the region.

During the past decade, the role of physician anesthesiologists in Southeast Asia has changed remarkably. Physician anesthesiologists have gained recognition by peers and the populace. Training in anesthesia was initially undertaken by surgeons concurrently with surgical training. In 1993 the first department of anesthesia was established at Hanoi Medical University. Other departments were soon established in Ho Chi Minh City, Hue, Can Tho, Thai Nguyen, and Hai Phong. Several different forms of training varying in duration from 1 to 5 years were introduced in order to fulfill different requirements throughout the country, and contemporary anesthesia training is based on both the American and French systems.

Medical school is 6 years in duration, though during times of war a 4-year option has existed for trainees who have already completed a 2-year nursing program. After medical school, graduates can enter a 3-year residency in anesthesia (24 months clinical and 12 months research), for which there are 30 spots per year in the country. Residents do not receive remuneration during training unless they are bonded to a hospital where they worked as a general practitioner between medical school and residency. Upon completing residency, graduates are awarded a Master's degree and can work as a "first specialist" anesthesiologist. Thereafter they can pursue additional training in either an academic pathway (2-year PhD) or a "practical" pathway with "second specialist" training (2 years of apprenticeship and consultant work). The "second specialist" certificate allows these providers to function as a consultant, head of anesthesiology or as a trainer in the practical training system. An additional anesthesia training pathway exists for medical school graduates who are not admitted to residency. These physicians must pass a 1-year anesthesia training program, pursue 2 years of clinical anesthesia practice, and then return to a medical university to complete 2 more years of anesthesia training. At the conclusion of this pathway, these providers receive a "first specialist" anesthesiologist certificate, functionally equivalent to anesthesiologists who have completed the practical pathway previously discussed. There are approximately 100 training spots available per year in the country for this anesthesia training pathway. There are no formal, accredited subspecialty training programs in Vietnam, although several institutions offer 6-month to 1-year certification programs for select subspecialties. Additional training opportunities for Vietnamese anesthesiologists have been introduced in France and Southeast Asia. Numerous Vietnamese anesthesiologists have participated in the Bangkok Anesthesia Regional Training Center (BARTC), a 1-year fellowship supported by the WFSA and the Royal College of Anesthesiologists of Thailand to train anesthesia educators in Asia.[210]

In addition to the courses for physician anesthesiologists, several courses for nurse anesthetists were also introduced, which varied in duration from 1 year for registered nurses to 3 years for new nursing students. Nurse anesthetists are required to always work with a physician anesthesia provider or with permission from the manager of the hospital. Physician and nurse anesthetists are now able to staff over 1000 hospitals and clinics throughout the country where surgery is undertaken. In 2012, the Ministry of Health issued guidelines for anesthesiologists to become involved in pain management and critical care in addition to preoperative, intraoperative, and postoperative care. These specialties require additional training and formal anesthesia subspecialty fellowships do not exist in Vietnam.

Prior to 1990 the major techniques used were inhalational anesthesia, first with ether and subsequently with halothane. Induction was with thiopentone or ketamine and regional anesthesia with spinal or epidural. Since 1990 the responsibilities of anesthetists have expanded to include specialist areas such as extracorporeal circulation for open heart surgery, organ transplantation, ultrasound-guided regional anesthesia, chronic pain management, preoperative assessment clinics, and out of operating room activities such as epidural analgesia for patients in labor, and anesthesia for endoscopic procedures. The WHO Surgical Safety Checklist is commonly applied in every operating room and clinical practice guidelines are selected from ASA or ESA guidelines. There is still a maldistribution of anesthesiologists, a shortage of essential medications, and lack of necessary infrastructure, which can endanger patient safety.

The Vietnam Society of Anesthesiologists is striving to raise standards of education in anesthesia to be at par with international standards in order to enhance the safety of the practice in the country, encourage scientific research among members, establish professional guidelines, and support working with the Ministry of Health to advance the specialty of anesthesia. At present there are no national examinations for certification.

SOUTH AMERICA

South America is a vast continent with a population of 420 million and economies ranging from the eighth largest in the world (Brazil) to some of the poorest in the world (Bolivia).[210a] Some cities or areas of cities have HIC health care including hospitals with top-level research and Joint Commission certification (77 in 6 countries) whereas many others do not even comply with national standards.[211] This is a reflection of the social difficulties of the continent where most countries have poor Gini indexes (measure of distribution of income of a country's residents) ranking among the worst in the world.[212]

Anesthesia workforce density in South America varies by more than 10-fold among countries (Uruguay 13.7 vs. Peru 1.7).[100] Substantial differences exist in practice models, ranging from physician-only anesthesia practice in Colombia to Paraguay where 50% of anesthesia is provided by nonphysicians. This translates into dramatic differences in resources where some hospitals have anesthesia information systems and sophisticated monitoring equipment (e.g., intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography with tissue Doppler, electroencephalograph monitoring), while most still rely on paper records and limited anesthesia machines. Training quality and capacity are also highly variable and few homogenizing mechanisms exist to guarantee a minimal standard of training, as certification mechanisms are virtually absent.

Paraguay (Rodrigo Sosa Argana)

The first reports of anesthesia in Paraguay are of chloroform use during the war Paraguay fought against the Triple Alliance (Brazil, Uruguay, and Argentina) between 1864 and 1870.[213] The country's first recorded physician anesthesia provider was Dr. Roberto Olmedo in 1928, and the first trained anesthesiologist Dr. Luis Ramirez is credited with starting the specialty in Paraguay in 1948. After this time, the number of anesthesiologists who trained abroad began to increase.[214]

The Sociedad Paraguaya de Anestesiología (SPA) was founded in 1973 by the 18 anesthesiologists practicing in the country at the time. The first anesthesia training programs were started in 1982, and the first formal anesthesia residency program (3 years in duration) was created in 1992 by the Hospital de Clinicas of the Universidad Nacional de Asunción.

In addition to physician anesthesiologists, the Ministry of Public Health and Social Welfare also licenses two types of nonphysician providers, technicians and diplomates. Technicians have no formal prerequisites and receive minimal if any formal training (most are taught as apprentices, historically most often by surgeons). Diplomates complete a 3-year anesthesia training program after high school that consists of once-weekly training days. These providers currently administer anesthesia in the most remote areas and public hospitals throughout the country, whereas physician anesthesiologists provide the majority of care in urban settings and the private sector. In the urban and private setting, the nonphysician cadres often work alongside physician anesthesiologists in a supportive role and with close supervision. The Ministry of Public Health has defined a scope of practice for nonphysicians in Paraguay such that they can perform anesthesia independently in remote locations where no anesthesiologists are present. In such circumstances, the nonphysicians are supervised by the surgeon and generally perform cases of lower complexity, most often under spinal anesthesia. There has been significant tension between all anesthesia cadres in the country. The technicians and diplomates consider their training and expertise as equivalent despite significant differences in prerequisites, training, and practice (see Table 2.3). In recent decades the number of physician anesthesiologists has increased relative to the number of nonphysician providers. There are approximately 258 anesthesiologists and 491 nonphysician providers (technicians and diplomates) in Paraguay (10.7 anesthesia providers per 100,000 people).

A major challenge in Paraguay at present is ensuring standards for anesthesia provider training. The SPA has lobbied the government extensively to curb nonphysician training in Paraguay due to ongoing concerns about the quality of training standards. In the last decade the SPA has been successful in enacting high-level education reform to improve anesthesia practice standards and has organized multiple international meetings including a recent large Latin American Anesthesia conference (CLASA 2013).

Colombia (Pedro Ibarra)

The first documented anesthetic in Colombia was provided in 1849 using chloroform.[215] In these early times, underperforming medical students were often relegated to providing anesthesia, and for many years anesthesia services were provided by poorly trained, and often nonmedical, personnel (e.g., technicians, healthcare students, and nurses). Dr. Isaac Rodriguez was the first Colombian physician dedicated to anesthesia, and the first formally trained anesthesiologist was Dr. Juan Jose Salamanca who trained under Dr. Henry Beecher at Massachusetts General Hospital in 1940. The Sociedad Colombiana de Anestesiologia y Reanimacion (SCARE) was founded in 1949 and was one of the founding societies of the WFSA in 1955. The first formal anesthesia training programs in Colombia were established in the 1960s, at Universidad Nacional and Universidad de Antioquia (UdeA). The Universidad Nacional program had input from Dr. Gustavo Delgado, who trained with several pioneers in anesthesia including Dr. Robert Dripps (see Fig. 2.16). The UdeA program was developed by Dr. Nacianceno Valencia, a second-generation "aqualumni" trained by Dr. Perry Volpitto (see Fig. 2.16).[216,217]

The first anesthesia residency programs (2 years in duration) began to increase the number of anesthesiologists in the 1960s, but the large magnitude of the workforce shortage forced several medical schools to introduce strong anesthesia training during medical school. This allowed medical school graduates to provide basic anesthesia care during their mandatory rural service year after graduation. They gradually reduced nonphysician anesthesia care in the 1970s in small towns. Many of these physicians remained in remote towns providing anesthesia care, until 1991 when the first law prohibiting anesthesia practice without a diploma was issued. Since the late 1990s, anesthesia care in Colombia has been exclusively provided by physician anesthesiologists.

Most of the 23 anesthesia residency programs are 3 years in duration (two programs are 4 years in duration) and are overseen by the Ministry of Education, which establishes curricular requirements based on input from the SCARE and the periodic Anesthesia Education Seminars that have been held since 1974. There is no national examination, and license for practice is issued by the Ministry of Health.

Currently there are approximately 3600 anesthesiologists in Colombia for a density of 7.9 anesthesiologists per 100,000 people. Approximately 115 anesthesiology trainees graduate each year, and a nearly matching number of foreigners or foreign-trained Colombians are incorporated into the workforce. In recent years, political and economic uncertainties in Venezuela have increased the influx of foreign-trained anesthesiologists into Colombia. In some cases, this increased supply has driven down remuneration and created tension with locally-trained anesthesiologists.

Rural anesthesia staffing is a significant challenge in Colombia. The needs of remote areas are often met through economic incentives and temporary positions. Rural hospitals pay premium salaries for positions that are difficult to fill and are able to do so because nearly 100% of Colombian citizens have healthcare coverage through the government-funded, multi-institutional insurance scheme. This single-payer approach allows rural hospitals to receive reimbursement comparable to institutions with higher-income, urban patient mixes. Because competition for anesthesia jobs is less in rural than urban settings, some rural hospitals are able to put together competitive compensation packages and recruit more easily than some public institutions in urban settings where reimbursement is lower and competition for jobs is higher.

The first Colombian anesthesia standards were published in 1985, and in 1992 a modern version based on the ASA Standards was published by SCARE and adopted by the Colombian government. The WHO Surgical Safety Checklist was adopted in 2008 and has contributed to the decreasing incidence of malpractice cases involving anesthesiology. Malpractice suits are a significant challenge in Colombia as well as a driver for improved safety. In 1993, SCARE created an anesthesia malpractice defense fund, FEPASDE, which became the major malpractice insurer for the country. To maintain the economic health of the fund, SCARE has adopted national healthcare education strategies for adverse outcome prevention.

Colombia's healthcare system faces several additional challenges. One is economic sustainability, due to healthcare benefits in excess of national resources. A second is regional inequity, where healthcare quality differs dramatically between regions. An additional major challenge is the ongoing workforce shortage. One driver of the health worker shortage is the present training system, which requires residents to pay tuition during specialist training. There is an effort in the Congress of Colombia to eliminate this practice. As with many other LMICs, remuneration is a major challenge for anesthesia providers in Colombia who frequently work more than one full-time position to increase salary. This has expanded anesthesia coverage but also increased the risk of provider burnout.

OCEANIA

There are 16 independent nations in the region of Oceania. This area of the South Western Pacific accounts for approximately 30% of the world's surface area but has less than 40 million people with over 70% of people living in Australia and New Zealand. Of the independent island nations, Papua New Guinea is the most populous with over 8 million people and Tuvalu the least populous with approximately 11,000 people. The region consists of many remote islands and is economically diverse with only Australia and New Zealand being considered as HICs. Australia and New Zealand will be considered together and the independent island nations of Fiji, Solomon Islands, Vanuatu, Tonga, Papua New Guinea, Marshall Islands, Micronesia, Nauru, Samoa, Tuvalu, Palau, and Kiribati will be considered as one group.

Australia and New Zealand (Rob McDougall)

News of the first use of ether for anesthesia reached Australia by sailing ship in May 1847 and soon after, ether was used for a dental procedure in Sydney and general surgery in Launceston.[218] Later that year saw the first use of anesthesia in New Zealand, again following news by ship.[219] In 1888 "chloroformists" were first appointed in Australian hospitals but it was not until 1944 that the first university diploma course in anesthesia was established.[220] The Australian Society of Anaesthetists was established in 1934 and the New Zealand Society of Anaesthetists (NZSA) followed in 1948.

Anesthesia in Australia and New Zealand is provided by physicians. Training, examination, and accreditation of Australian and New Zealand anesthesiologists is the responsibility of the Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists (ANZCA), which was founded in 1992. Prior to this time, specialist training was administered by the Faculty of Anaesthetists of the Royal Australasian College of Surgeons, which was formed in 1952. ANZCA established the Faculty of Pain Medicine in 1998 and pain medicine was recognized as a medical specialty in Australia in 2005. In addition, ANZCA is responsible for the standards of clinical practice of anesthesia and pain medicine in Australia and New Zealand.

Australia and New Zealand have among the highest density of anesthesia providers, in population terms, in the world with 23.09 and 21.79 anesthesia providers per 100,000 population, respectively.[100] A minimum of 7 years of postgraduate training is required to become a specialist anesthesiologist.

Specialist anesthetists account for almost the entire anesthesia workforce in New Zealand, however, Australia has an active body of over 250 GP anesthetists, who predominantly work in regional and remote areas which cannot sustain full-time specialist anesthetists.[221] The training and accreditation of GP anesthetists is overseen by ANZCA and the Royal Australian College of General Practitioners. The provision of high-quality anesthesia in remote areas of Australia continues to be a challenge.

In 2014, the average age of the Australian anesthesiologist workforce was 49 years and 27% of the workforce was female. Australia and New Zealand have publicly funded universal health care but both countries have a private health sector. Just over 50% of work by Australian anesthesiologists was in the public sector.

ANZCA has produced triennial reports on anesthesia-related mortality in Australia and New Zealand since the first comprehensive report for 1985–87. For 2012–14 the anesthesia-related mortality for Australia was 2.96 deaths per million population per annum or 1 death for 57,023 episodes of anesthesia care.[222] In addition, New Zealand is one of the few countries to comprehensively collect and report 30-day POMR. POMR is one of the core indicators recommended by the LCOGS for monitoring safe surgery and anesthesia. Thirty-day POMR in New Zealand for 2010–15 was 0.55% of hospital admissions receiving general anesthesia.[223]

In spite of its huge size, Australia is one of the world's most urbanized countries. This aids centralization of health care but does create equity of access challenges for those living in remote areas. This is a particular problem for indigenous Australians who account for almost half the population of very remote areas.

Australian and New Zealand anesthesiologists are involved in global health activities, particularly in the Asia Pacific region. Both the Australian Society of Anaesthetists and NZSA are active members of the WFSA and also have their own global outreach committees. ANZCA also has a strong Overseas Aid Committee. The Overseas Development and Education Committee of the Australian Society of Anaesthetists has long supported the development of anesthesia in the Pacific, in partnership with the Pacific Society of Anesthetists and the Fiji National University (FNU). ANZCA has similarly supported Papua New Guinea in partnership with the Society of Anesthetists of Papua New Guinea and the University of Papua New Guinea (UPNG). Similar partnerships exist between professional organizations in such countries as Mongolia, Myanmar, Timor-Leste, Micronesia, Solomon Islands, Laos, Cambodia, and other Pacific Island nations. Essential Pain Management, Primary Trauma Care, and Lifebox are examples of programs coordinated by Australian and New Zealand professional bodies in the Asia Pacific region.

Fiji and Pacific Island Nations (Sereima Bale)

The remote geographic locations of the myriad of small and large islands that comprise the Pacific Island nations and their diverse populations make the training and the practice of anesthesia a massive challenge.

In Fiji, Papua New Guinea, and Pacific Island countries, Assistant Medical Practitioners or Anaesthetic Technical Officers were trained as apprentices by expatriate consultant anesthetists during the various colonial eras before each country gained independence. Anesthesia became a recognized specialist discipline in 1970 in Fiji even though doctors (registered as "Native Medical Practitioner") had been practicing as "anesthetists" since the 1920s.

In the early 1970s, many Pacific Island nations (Fiji, Tonga, Kiribati, Niue) sent their doctors for training in the DA program offered by the Anesthesiology Center for the Western Pacific (Manila, Philippines) in collaboration with the WHO Western Pacific Regional Office. Currently the two specialist training institutions in this region are the College of Medicine, Nursing and Health Sciences of the Fiji National University (FNU), which started anesthesia training in 1996, and the University of Papua New Guinea (UPNG), which established anesthesia training in 1989 as the Fiji School of Medicine. These programs offer physicians a 1-year DA, that may be followed by a 3-year anesthesia Master's of Medicine (MMed) as the specialist qualification. Since 1996, FNU has graduated 92 doctors with the DA, and 39 of these have gone on to receive the MMed. There have been 32 anesthesia specialists that have graduated—23 from Fiji and 16 from other Pacific nations.

FNU trains only physicians while UPNG also offers a 1-year diploma course for healthcare workers who train as Anaesthesia Scientific Officers (ASOs). These NPAPs provide 90% of anesthesia services in Papua New Guinea, often in remote provincial and mission hospitals with no physician supervision. Other Pacific Islands that utilize this latter cadre of NPAPs to complement their physician capacity are Vanuatu, Tonga, and Solomon Islands. Other islands in the northern Pacific, including former U.S. territories, employ American-trained nurse anesthetists.[224]

Two issues significantly limit the development of the anesthesia workforce in the Pacific: (1) few students graduate from medical schools in Fiji and Papua New Guinea to supply any specialties and keep pace with growing populations; and (2) few job opportunities are funded by national Ministries of Health. In Fiji for example, there are 23 physician specialist anesthesiologists for a population of 800,000, but only 5 consultant positions supported by the Ministry of Health, which employs all Fijian FNU graduates. Additional challenges routinely faced in the region include limited access to equipment, geographic isolation, and an influx of medical graduates from other regions who may be ill-prepared for postgraduate training or practice in this setting.

In 2018, Fiji (population 800,000) had 18 specialists. Unless there is significant expansion of job opportunities for specialist anesthesiologists, limited access to specialist-level care is likely to continue regardless of numbers of graduates. There is continuing brain drain among graduate specialists in Fiji. Of the 23 MMed graduates, only 17 remain in government employment with minimal opportunities for private practice. Some of these graduates, however, remain in practice in the Pacific, just not in their country of origin.

Other Pacific Islands are continuing to build their capacity and are retaining their graduates: Kiribati (2 MMeds, 1 DA: population 33,000); Solomon Islands (4 MMeds; population 600,000). The volume and range of cases in the smaller island nations pose different challenges. The solo anesthetist who may provide anesthesia for 1 to 2 surgical lists per week may also be required to cover other clinical or administrative services as necessary. In addition, this officer is also expected to cover for emergencies and is permanently on call. Outdated skills and knowledge can develop as can burnout as a result of professional isolation and lack of support.

Papua New Guinea is a LMIC on the eastern half of the island of New Guinea (the second largest island in the world) and has only 19 physician specialist anesthesiologists and 130 ASOs, of which only 50% are currently employed. The challenges of the provision of safe surgery and anesthesia in Papua New Guinea relate to its terrain and poverty. Eighty percent of the population live in remote highland, coastal, and island villages and may be days away from a hospital that can provide the three bellwether procedures. Currently Papua New Guinea has 0.25 PAPs per 100,000 compared with Australia and New Zealand where the anesthesia workforce is 75 times greater.[224]

There are three main anesthesia societies in the western Pacific outside of Australia and New Zealand: The Pacific Society of Anaesthetists (28 members); the Micronesia Society of Anesthetists (7 members); and the Society of Anaesthetists of Papua New Guinea (16 members). All Pacific societies have received varying support from the Australian and New Zealand governments, the ASA, the NZSA, ANZCA, and the WFSA, and hosted joint meetings for the first time in 2014.

Section 3: Essentials for Practice in Resource-Constrained Settings

CLINICAL AND TECHNICAL SKILLS

The practice of anesthesia anywhere in the world is reliant on four principle factors: personnel, equipment, medications, and patients with their comorbidities. Disruption, change, or lack of any of these factors may limit the safe practice of anesthesia. Whether practicing in a rural HIC setting, an LMIC, a military or humanitarian field hospital, or other resource-constrained setting, all of these will be modified. Data guiding practice in these settings are limited and may be interpreted differently. There are numerous instances of well-intentioned, evidence-based practices from HICs producing unintended negative consequences in LMICs.[225]

Clinical practice in resource-constrained settings may be extremely different from what one may be accustomed to, so it is important to understand the local context before attempting to change anything. There is often a logical reason why practice patterns diverge from the "standard," and frequently this has less to do with local providers "not knowing the right way" and more to do with local challenges related to personnel, equipment, medications, or patients. This section will briefly discuss select aspects of anesthesia practice in resource-constrained settings through the lens of these four factors.

Personnel. Limitations in anesthesia workforce are one of the most significant barriers to the safe provision of anesthesia care worldwide. Beyond low absolute numbers of providers, the competencies of existing anesthetic providers may be highly variable. Many practitioners who provide anesthesia in resource-constrained settings may have completed inadequate training and often work in isolation with negligible supervision or colleague support. Many are highly skilled and competent within a narrow spectrum of clinical cases, and often learn to deliver a "recipe" type anesthetic that may not be adaptable or appropriate for more complex cases.

When working in resource-constrained environments, it is important to understand the level of knowledge and experience of the local anesthetic provider. Regardless of training level, there are always opportunities for mutually beneficial bidirectional learning. The role of the anesthetic provider in many resource-constrained settings is often limited to the operating theater, as the concept of perioperative care is underdeveloped and not part of training. Personnel shortages routinely limit capacity for adequate preoperative evaluation (including resuscitation) or routine postoperative monitoring. Staffing (e.g., perioperative nursing) may be entirely lacking, and routine elements of postoperative care such as monitoring or providing regular pain assessments with analgesic administration are rarely available. Thoughtful planning is required especially if higher-level care is needed postoperatively (e.g., ventilation), as this usually will become the responsibility of the anesthesia provider or even family members (who are frequently recruited to help with monitoring or even manual ventilation). The PACU may consist of an unstaffed corridor or a small designated space near the operating room complex exit. In this setting, it is paramount to ensure patients are more fully recovered from their anesthetic when they arrive in the recovery area than may be routine in well-resourced PACUs.

Equipment. Anesthesia Machines: Most modern anesthetic workstations cannot function without pressurized gases and electricity, both of which may be in short supply in many resource-constrained environments. In these settings, familiarity with drawover anesthesia may be essential. In-depth discussion of drawover anesthesia is beyond the scope of this chapter, however, knowledge of drawover anesthesia is highly relevant in many practice settings, and several comprehensive resources for learning drawover are included at the end of this chapter. Here we provide a brief overview of the basics of drawover anesthesia.

An inhalational anesthesia system must be able to deliver accurate concentrations of volatile agent, avoid rebreathing of carbon dioxide, have a provision for intermittent positive-pressure ventilation (IPPV), and provide oxygen-enriched gases. Unlike more complex anesthesia machines, drawover systems do not require compressed gas or power, can function on room air, and cannot deliver hypoxic gas mixtures (which is especially relevant where inspired oxygen monitors may be lacking). A drawover system consists of a temperature-compensated or buffered, low-resistance vaporizer (calibrated to the agent), a self-inflating bag or bellows with a one-way valve upstream to ensure unidirectional gas flow to the patient, and a non-rebreather valve at the patient end to avoid rebreathing of carbon dioxide (Fig. 2.18). Drawover setups that can function with multiple volatile agents are most versatile (i.e., in the event that one volatile agent is unavailable), and providers should be familiar with technical aspects of using the same vaporizer for different volatile agents. The self-inflating bellows (SIB) can be used for IPPV (by hand) and may show movement or a small palpable pressure change with respiration that enables the anesthesia provider to monitor respiratory rate in the spontaneous mode. Air is the “driving” gas (although “sucking” gas might be a more accurate description) in a drawover system, but oxygen supplementation is possible with addition of oxygen at the vaporizer inlet or with the addition of a piece of reservoir tubing or bag. The ability to function on ambient air is a critical safety feature of all drawover setups. Without some form of reservoir, it is impossible to achieve a fraction of inspired oxygen concentration (FiO2) above 0.3 regardless of oxygen flow. With just one meter of standard adult reservoir tubing (22 mm diameter), 4 L per minute can give an FiO_2 of over 0.6 and a flow of 1 L per minute gives an FiO_2 of 0.3. The gas flow, which is dependent on the patient’s tidal volume and respiratory rate, is highly variable, but most vaporizers (OMV, DDV, EMO) (see Fig. 2.18) remain extremely accurate as long as the gas flow is intermittent. However, they often lose their accuracy when the system is converted to a continuous flow mode.

Although the drawover system is low resistance, in some situations it may be advisable to convert it to a continuous flow system when anesthetizing babies to overcome the dead space at the level of the non-rebreather valve. This can be done manually by creating a flow using either an Oxford inflating bellows or self-inflating bag. The bellows are jerked up to their full capacity and then released slowly. This is done 6 times per minute to create a continuous flow through the vaporizer. This flow of oxygen-enriched air supplies an Ayre’s T-piece attached to the outlet of the bellows. Both valves need to be in use to ensure unidirectional flow as this is still a low-pressure system (Fig. 2.19). If using a self-inflating bag then it must be squeezed and released 12 times per minute. This manual system mimics adult drawover with a more intermittent flow, and the vaporizers tend to still provide an accurate reading as opposed to full continuous flow using either a Farman’s entrainer or direct attachment of an oxygen source to the inlet of a vaporizer. Whatever equipment you have at your disposal it is probably simpler to follow these approximate guidelines:

If <5 kg, assisted ventilation for whatever the length of the operation.
If 5-10 kg, spontaneous ventilation for short cases and assisted ventilation for longer procedures.
If >10 kg, spontaneous ventilation for most operations, unless paralysis is required or the procedure is prolonged.

There are a small number of all-in-one drawover anesthetic machines based on the same principles as the portable drawover systems (Fig. 2.20). They are not plenum machines, and supplemental oxygen can be supplied from a cylinder or an integrated oxygen concentrator. These machines are significantly less expensive and relatively easier to maintain than many other anesthesia machines. They can also function without power and without supplemental or pressurized oxygen, making them ideal for some resource-constrained settings. Integrated, uninterruptable power supplies (UPS) provide power for certain functions (e.g., monitors) in the event of power failure, and some versions include integrated ventilators. The companies that manufacture the Universal Anesthesia Machine (Gradian Health) and the Glostavent (Diamedica [UK] Ltd) both invest considerable resources to ensure local expertise for operation, training, and service support. These elements are critical for successful utilization of equipment in resource-constrained settings. Regardless of the anesthesia setup employed, a plan for power or oxygen failure is essential and likely to differ based on the setting.

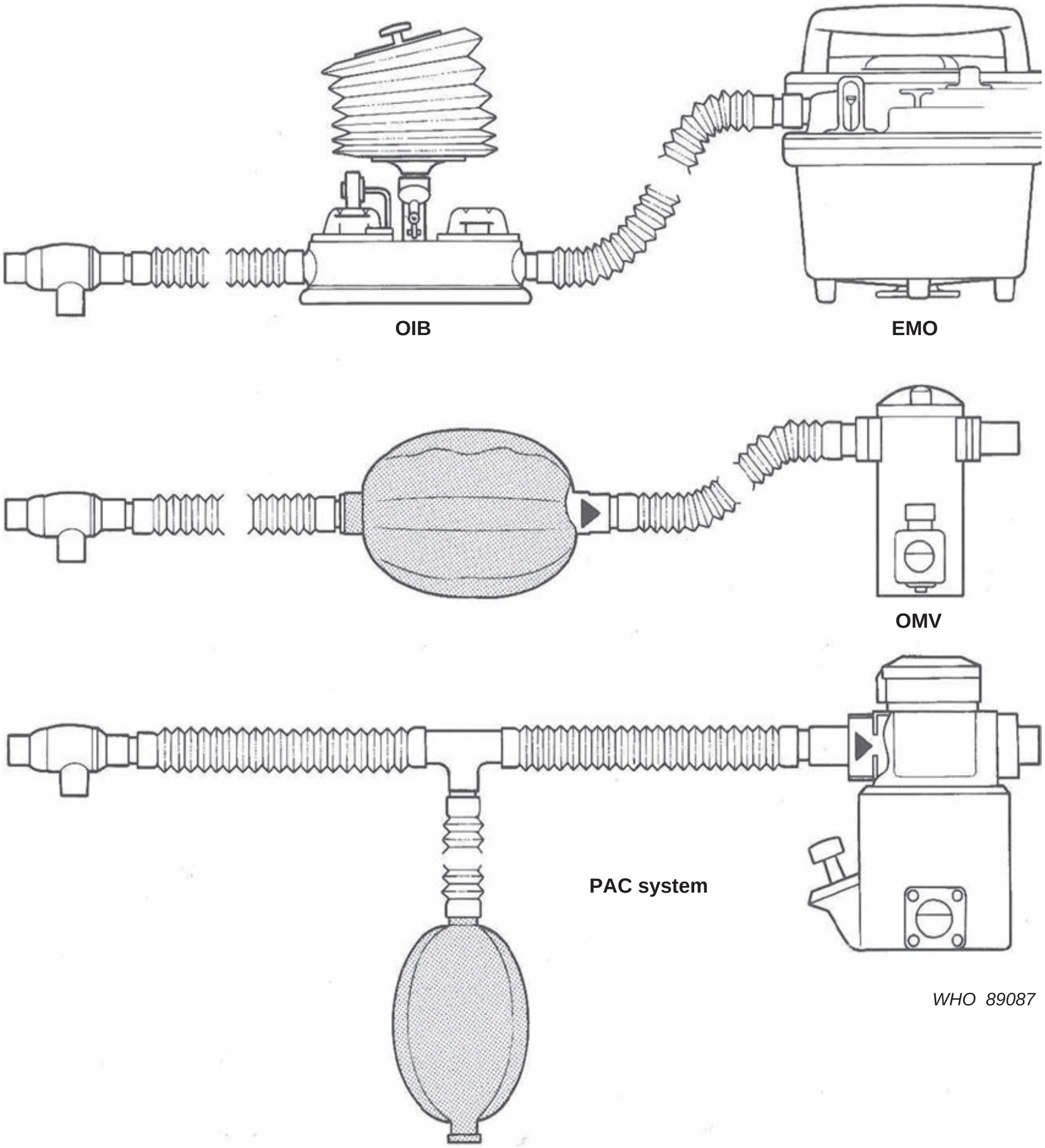

OIB
EMO
OMV
PAC system
WHO 89087

Fig. 2.18 Inhalational drawover anesthesia setups. (Reproduced with permission from the WHO. Dobson MB, World Health Organization. *Anaesthesia at the District Hospital*. 2nd ed. Geneva: World Health Organization. http://www.who.int/iris/handle/10665/42193.)

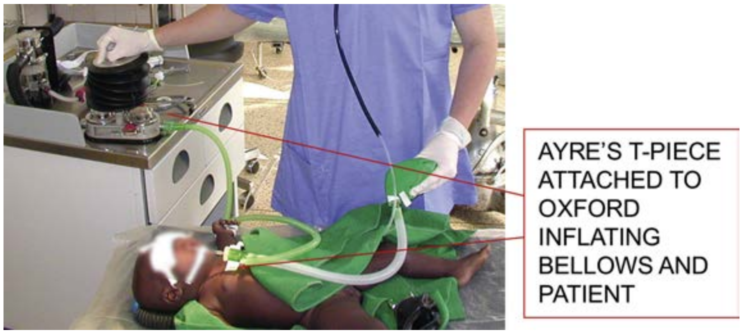

AYRE'S T-PIECE
ATTACHED TO
OXFORD
INFLATING
BELLOWS AND
PATIENT

Fig. 2.19 Drawover anesthesia using an Oxford-inflating bellows and Ayre's T-piece with a pediatric patient in Uganda. (Copyright © 2018 Sarah Hodges.)

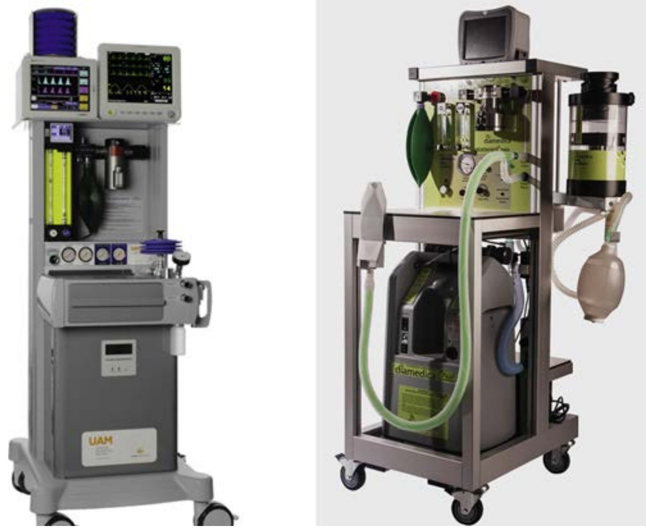


Fig. 2.20 All-in-one drawover anesthesia machines. *Left,* The Universal Anesthesia Machine by Gradian Health (including ventilator module). *Right,* The Glostavent Helix by Diamedica (UK) Ltd. (Copyright © 2018 Gradian Health and Diamedica [UK] Ltd.)

Oxygen Concentrators: In many countries pressurized oxygen is available primarily via cylinders, but the supply may be unreliable or cost prohibitive, and therefore a backup is essential. Providers working in resource-constrained settings should have familiarity with at least the basics of function and maintenance for various oxygen delivery solutions including concentrators. Oxygen concentrators use a technique called pressure swing adsorption and zeolite crystals to extract nitrogen from air to produce oxygen with 90% to 96% purity, although purity drops to around 85% with higher flow rates. In principle, most oxygen concentrators are relatively similar, and non-engineers can often diagnose and fix common problems (e.g., dirty filters, low voltage, compressor or valve system failure, excess flow, or hot ambient temperatures)[226] (see the Appendix 1 for links and useful resources including the WHO guide to oxygen concentrator maintenance). In reality, not all oxygen concentrators are designed to function in all climates, and many do not conform to WHO guidelines.[226,227] In a performance study of eight oxygen concentrators, only two models delivered greater than 82% inspired oxygen concentration at 35°C and 50% relative humidity.[228] Oxygen concentrators can be used to provide supplemental oxygen in the operating theater (via drawover system), the PACU, or the ward. Makeshift splitting of a single oxygen source to supply multiple patients on the ward is a common practice although it can easily result in inadequate inspired oxygen fractions. A small, portable oxygen analyzer can be useful to test the output of concentrators and cylinders as some facilities lack the infrastructure to ensure necessary quality control. Submerging the terminal end of parallel oxygen delivery circuits into cups of water can allow for comparison of gas flow rates.

Monitors: Many operating theaters around the world have minimal monitoring options despite the international standards set out by the WHO and WFSA.[3] In this environment there is increased reliance on clinical skills (e.g., change in palpable pulse volume, degree of chest expansion, pupil size, and change in compliance of bellows, self-inflating bag, or bag on Ayre's T-piece). Because electricity may be unreliable, ideally monitors should have a functional internal battery. Pulse oximetry is invaluable but not universally available. Some inexpensive pulse oximeters meet international quality standards, however, few are designed for harsh environments, and many are extremely inaccurate.[229] The Lifebox initiative is one of the first initiatives to help design and distribute pulse oximeters that meet the demands of LMICs (i.e., affordable, accurate, durable, with audible alarms and specially designed, reusable probes that work with neonates and adults).[230] Precordial stethoscopes are particularly useful and can be made from an ordinary stethoscope with an extension (e.g., suction tube or oxygen tubing). Precordial stethoscopes provide an excellent beat-to-beat heart rate monitor and continuous, audible verification of respiratory rate, airway patency, and endotracheal tube placement. Hypovolemia may be detectable by a decrease in heartbeat tone that is apparent prior to alarms on other monitors.

Airway Equipment: In resource-limited settings it is often absolutely essential to maintain spontaneous respiration and oxygenation with a difficult airway until the airway has been secured. Face mask ventilation with a Guedel or nasopharyngeal airway, regional anesthesia, or ketamine-based anesthetics may be safer than attempting complex airway management. An awake look with direct laryngoscopy can often assist in airway management planning. Safety is key and it may be preferable to opt for a tracheostomy under local anesthesia as the surgical skills may be superior to what is feasible with the limited anesthetic equipment and ability. As advanced airway equipment and experienced assistance is likely to be lacking, excellent technique and positioning for laryngoscopy is crucial for success. Many hospitals providing surgical care will have only a Macintosh size 3 laryngoscope blade, and rarely additional equipment such as a bougie. Retrograde intubation and blind nasal intubation can be useful skills to master. Airway topicalization can be accomplished many ways, including transtracheal lidocaine injection or by gargling or spraying water-based lubricant jelly, lidocaine, and epinephrine. For blind nasal intubation, the tube is pushed forward during inspiration following the base of the nose, listening to the noise of breathing (similar technique to a Patil guide). If the tube enters the esophagus the neck should be extended, and if it impinges on the anterior part of the larynx, the neck should be flexed. Lifting the jaw will stop the endotracheal tube from hitting the epiglottis. Rotating the tube or inflating the cuff slightly may also assist with entering the trachea. If capnography is not available then condensation in the tube, movement of the bag with respiration, auscultation of the chest, and in rare circumstances an esophageal bulb can help verify correct placement. In LMICs, laryngeal mask airways may not be available and face masks, Guedel or nasopharyngeal airways, and endotracheal tubes are often washed and reused. There are a number of products that can be used to easily decontaminate endotracheal tubes, laryngeal mask airways, and other airway equipment, however, access is highly variable. When processing and reusing such equipment, damage to the cuff and increasing stiffness of the plastic are significant challenges.

Endotracheal tube stylets are infrequently available. Improvised endotracheal tube introducers have been crafted by carefully inserting a piece of wire into an appropriately sized suction catheter, taking care that the metal tip is not protruding. Learning safe, sensible techniques that are reproducible without the use of expensive, specialized equipment is fundamental. Where traditional electric suction is unavailable, bulb suction (for neonates) and foot pedal suction devices are invaluable.

Equipment for regional anesthesia: Spinal anesthesia is universally taught and used in many settings though may be used for a wider variety of cases than is commonly done in HICs (e.g., appendectomy). The needles vary in quality and blunt tips can be overcome by using a 21-gauge hypodermic needle as an introducer. The most commonly used local anesthetic is hyperbaric 0.5% bupivacaine. All anesthetic providers are taught to do spinals, but not all are taught how to prevent supine hypotension during spinal anesthesia. Teaching how to fabricate a simple wedge for uterine tilt with pregnant patients, or learning to reposition patients in varying degrees of reverse Trendelendberg position may prevent untoward incidents especially where an adjustable operating table may not exist. Although a spinal might seem like an easier and safer option, appropriate patient selection is critical, especially where preferred vasopressors and fluids may be in short supply. In that situation 0.5 mg epinephrine has been diluted in a 500 mL bottle of 5% dextrose and administered cautiously to treat the hypotension. Epidurals are rarely available in low-resource settings for several reasons: providers may not be proficient with the technique; needles are not commonly found; preservative-free local anesthetic drugs are not readily available for postoperative infusions; and more importantly, the staffing ratio may be inadequate and the knowledge may be insufficient to manage an infusion in the postoperative setting. In some settings where electronic drug infusion pumps are unavailable, low-cost elastomeric bulb pumps can be used to deliver a fixed rate of medication. Caudal blocks using a 22-G cannula are commonly used in children for postoperative pain management although the only safe preparation of local anesthetic may be the spinal bupivacaine.

Ultrasound or nerve stimulators are rarely available but many blocks can be performed using landmark or blind techniques (e.g., ankle, digital, axillary, penile, wrist, fascia iliaca, femoral, and rectus sheath blocks). Local field blocks may be used for a wide variety of procedures, including hernias, which are often done under local anesthesia in the outpatient setting. Where ultrasounds are available, other regional supplies may be lacking such as ultrasound gel, probe covers, echogenic needles, and appropriate local anesthetics. Several workarounds to these common challenges have been well-described. Although many blocks can be done relatively easily and safely without ultrasound or nerve stimulation, serious complications can still occur. Anecdotal reports of local anesthetic toxicity fatalities during penile blocks for circumcision are still encountered in some LICs and attributed to preventable causes (incorrect dosing or technique).[231] In general, distal blocks with lower volume and shorter-acting local anesthetics may be safer options, especially where safety equipment may be limited (e.g., intralipid).

Equipment for venous access: Intravenous cannulas are almost universally obtainable but variable quality may limit use. Needles may be blunt or extend quite a few millimeters beyond the tip of the cannula. Scalp veins are a common site for insertion in critically-ill infants, and with appropriate training, rapid placement of a cannula in the right internal jugular vein or in the peritoneal cavity can be lifesaving in a child dying from hypovolemic shock (e.g., cholera) as you look for a more permanent solution. Intraosseous needles are not easily found, but 18-G or 16-G needles can be used in the tibia of an infant. Butterfly needles, if available, are particularly useful because of the limited length. Twisting is essential to pierce the cortex until a sudden give when entering the medullary cavity. It is feasible to perform anesthesia for an entire operation with such access (Fig. 2.21).

Infusions pumps are often not available in LMICs and when present, are frequently limited by the availability of compatible disposables (i.e., appropriately sized syringes or proprietary tubing). It is important to not only be proficient with calculating infusion rates based on drop factor (drops per mL) but also be aware that infusion sets vary in size and quality, often making accurate calibration challenging.

Drugs. Volatile agents: Ether has now been removed from the WHO Essential Medicines List, and its use has reduced dramatically since 2013. Both isoflurane and halothane are included in the WHO Essential Medicines List, and due to the price differential (e.g., in Uganda 250 mL of halothane ~$21; 250 mL of isoflurane ~$39; 250 mL of sevoflurane ~$250), halothane is the most commonly used agent in many rural or non-teaching hospitals in LICs. Halothane is potent (MAC 0.8%) and sweet smelling, but the blood gas partition coefficient is 2.4 making the onset and offset of anesthesia slower than some agents. This can be useful if managing a difficult airway and intubation under halothane alone. Halothane is a cardio-depressant and arrhythmogenic especially in the presence of an elevated end-tidal carbon dioxide. It is useful for inhalational induction, but it is important to rapidly reduce the inspired concentration once intravenous access is

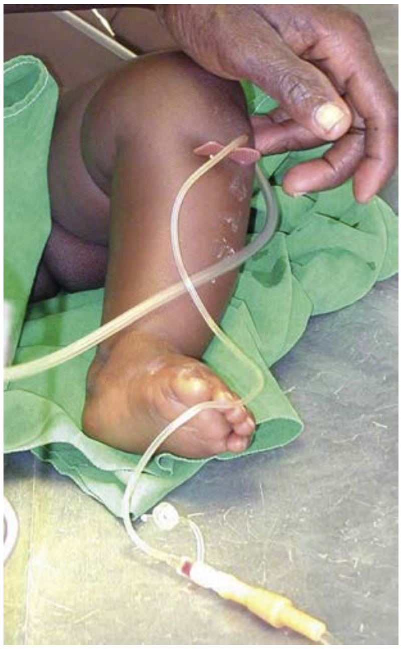


Fig. 2.21 Improvised intraosseous access catheter in a pediatric patient in Uganda. (Copyright © 2018 Sarah Hodges.)

secured. Nitrous oxide may be obtainable in some locations (primarily urban areas) but can be extremely expensive. Because medical-grade air (FiO_2 0.21) is often 4 to 5 times more expensive than oxygen, it is often unavailable and cases may be done on 100% inspired oxygen concentration.

Induction agents: The use of propofol is widespread but ketamine (in addition to volatile agents) remains the most ubiquitous induction agent in many LMICs. Thiopentone (thiopental) is also frequently encountered outside of HICs. Ketamine resembles an intravenous preparation of ether (sympathomimetic, does not depress airway reflexes, causes excessive salivation, and has excellent analgesic properties). S-ketamine is a useful adjunct for regional anesthesia. Ketamine can be used as an infusion (intravenous or subcutaneous injection) postoperatively for the management of pain especially if opioids are in short supply.[232] Ketamine can also be used for total intravenous anesthesia for a variety of procedures (e.g., laparotomies), but the wakeup can be very prolonged, and the patient may experience disturbing hallucinations as benzodiazepines are often not used (provider more likely to encounter diazepam than midazolam in resource-constrained settings). Ketamine is the “go-to” induction agent for any patient in hypovolemic or septic shock, but it can cause cardiac arrest in patients who are maximally sympathetically stimulated. Ketamine may be advised against as the sole anesthetic for pregnant patients undergoing non-obstetric procedures due to its potential oxytocic effects. Ketamine can also cause apnea in neonates, despite the appearance of the neonate moving in response to surgery. Special attention and caution must be emphasized in these patient populations. Because of ketamine’s overall safety profile, the drug has been used as the basis for a 5-day course to teach mid-level non-anesthesia providers to administer emergency anesthesia in rural sub-Saharan Africa when no anesthesia provider is available. This program has generated significant controversy and highlights many of the challenges facing the provision of anesthesia in LMICs.[233,234]

Analgesics: Morphine is often the most readily available opioid, although for many LMICs it is frequently challenging to obtain. In some countries where palliative care is more developed (e.g., Uganda), the oral formulation is often available for postoperative analgesia. Pethidine (meperidine) is commonly encountered in LMICs and used routinely for perioperative analgesia. Of note, pethidine is not included in the WHO Essential Medicines List, and it is not recommended for routine acute postoperative pain because of its variable efficacy and side effects. Nonetheless, pethidine may be the only option for analgesia in some LMICs and general familiarity with its pharmacology could be highly useful in select settings (see Chapter 24). As discussed earlier in this chapter, opiophobia and access limitations significantly restrict the use of opiates. As a result, if available, opiates are rarely prescribed beyond 48 hours postoperatively in many resource-constrained settings. Many analgesics (e.g., ketamine, morphine, and pethidine) are frequently given by intramuscular injection, which may have benefits in terms of feasibility and safety, although supporting data are limited.[232] Patient-controlled analgesia is generally unavailable, but in some settings has been substituted by using a small subcutaneous cannula, often placed over the deltoid muscle, used solely for parenteral opiate analgesics. This avoids repeated intramuscular injections especially in children and can remain in place for 48 to 72 hours. Tramadol is pervasive, inexpensive, and often used for perioperative pain management in resource-limited settings. Use of tramadol requires an understanding of its limitations including side effects, abuse potential, and inferiority in many instances to opioid analgesia.

Paracetamol (acetaminophen) is widely available as tablets, suppositories, syrups, and as an intravenous preparation as are nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs. Parenteral preparations vary from country to country as does the potency depending on the country of manufacture. Diclofenac is commonly found and intramuscularly injected. One of the major challenges with prescribing analgesics is conveying the concept of multimodal analgesia. Although the full spectrum of analgesic modalities may not be available, multiple analgesic options, including regional anesthesia, are often feasible in low-resource settings.

Muscle relaxants: Suxamethonium (succinylcholine) is a universally available muscle relaxant and may be the safest paralytic to use if there are no means for mechanical ventilation or availability for reversal. It rarely causes malignant hyperpyrexia although it can induce masseter spasm especially in children with neurologic or muscular disorders. Both atracurium and suxamethonium lose potency with exposure to heat and maintaining cold storage is a significant challenge in many settings. For cases where surgeons prefer paralysis for closure (e.g., laparotomy), a small dose of suxamethonium can be administered at the end of the case to facilitate closure of the peritoneum and rectus, while hand ventilating the patient and allowing faster offset of the volatile agent. The availability of nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents is highly variable, and providers should be prepared to use drugs they may not readily use in HICs.

Lack of access to transfusion services (as discussed in the section, Anesthesia and Global Health) is another commonly encountered problem that may require improvisation. Providers in resource-constrained settings may be tasked with ABO typing (e.g., EldonCard) and cross-matching and should be familiar with these techniques. Whole blood transfusion may be more common than component therapy, although there are several notable limitations (including potential loss of platelet and clotting factor activity with refrigeration). Absolute transfusion thresholds are lacking but can create significant dilemmas. For example, is it safe to perform a hernia with a hemoglobin of 9, 8, 7, or lower if no blood products are available? Direct donation from patients or relatives as well as mandatory exchange (i.e., someone must donate in order for units to be released from the blood bank) are variably practiced in LMICs. Other practices such as preoperative normovolemic hemodilution and makeshift intraoperative blood salvaging (e.g., by using a cup, gauze filter, anticoagulant, and a 60 mL syringe) have been reported, but as of yet there is no safe, effective substitute for transfusion services in many settings.[235,236]

Patients. Anesthesia providers in resource-constrained settings must be comfortable with a wide range of potential surgical patients, especially trauma, obstetric (e.g., postpartum hemorrhage), and pediatric patients. In many LMICs, more than 50% of the population is under the age of 18, and most have fewer comorbidities and less polypharmacy than in HICs. On the other hand, patients often present late with advanced pathology. This may be due to a wide range of factors affecting access to care, including physical access to the health unit (unpassable roads in the rainy season, or insecurity on the roads), or they have been consulting the local healer or bone setter and have not seen any improvement, or they are financially destitute and all health care is financially and socially draining.

As relatives often provide most of the in-hospital care (e.g., cook the food, wash the bedding and clothes), an inpatient stay is extremely time consuming and no family will want their patient to be in hospital longer than necessary. Patients will mobilize more rapidly but may also be less compliant with postoperative instructions. Although patients may have lower incidence of chronic cardiac and respiratory comorbidities, many may be anemic, malnourished, or harboring low-grade malaria or helminth infections. If major surgery is being considered, existing maladies may need to be treated first and can prolong the inpatient stay. Multiple preoperative investigations may not be affordable or feasible and many decisions are made solely on clinical judgment.

Anesthesia providers practicing in LMICs must be familiar with perioperative optimization of commonly encountered conditions. Treatment for universally common conditions such as hypertension or diabetes may require context-specific approaches and insights (e.g., where and how to provide temperature-stable, noncounterfeit medications).

The practice of anesthesia in the resource-limited setting is shackled by many issues, and it can be challenging to attempt to administer a high level of care as advocated by many professional entities. Anesthesia safety is an essential component of care. Are there standards of care that are immutable across the globe? If a full term pregnant woman is admitted to hospital with a severe antepartum hemorrhage that requires an emergency cesarean section to save the mother and baby, what is the anesthetic of choice? Is it local anesthetic infiltration alone, intermittent aliquots of intravenous ketamine and oxygen via nasal cannula, rapid sequence induction with ketamine, suxamethonium, and halothane? Then add to that decision the reality that the anesthetic provider may be a nurse with 1 year of training in anesthesia, only 250 mL of compatible blood is available in the hospital, and there is no pediatrician to resuscitate the baby. What is the safest anesthetic technique? It is difficult to answer that question, but for anyone planning to work in an LMIC as an anesthetic provider it is indispensable to learn about the local resources, to listen to the local providers, to have the humility to not have all the answers, but above all to focus on the care and safety of the patient.

GLOBAL HEALTH COMPETENCIES

Although the number of global health opportunities for medical trainees has skyrocketed in recent years, most are short-term, elective-based rotations, and relatively few programs offer structured training in global health competencies.[237]

Although many anesthesia providers may not be directly involved with formal global health initiatives or careers that focus on underserved populations, there are fundamental global health competencies that are relevant to all anesthesia providers (whether in high, middle, or LICs). A broad understanding of key concepts is universally relevant and should be incorporated into anesthesia training for all providers. These include access and affordability, local and global disease burden, structural and social determinants of health, medical ethics, health equity, and social justice. The Consortium of Universities for Global Health (CUGH) has identified 11 competency domains, with four levels of competency per domain (ranging from level I for all providers with any relation to global health, to level IV for providers planning to have significant lifelong engagement in global health) (Box 2.5).[238]

For anesthesia providers who intend to spend a portion of their career focused on global health, additional training should be considered in topics such as: epidemiology, statistics, qualitative research, health policy, health systems, health economics, medical anthropology, demography, ethics, and implementation and management sciences, among others.

Providers from relatively well-resourced settings benefit from preparation before working in resource-constrained settings, even if only for short-term visits.[239] Several nonclinical challenges and pitfalls are routinely encountered in resource-constrained settings, including failure to provide context-appropriate interventions (see discussion on equipment donations in the section on infrastructure challenges), failure to have a follow-up plan, failure to adequately engage local stakeholders, overemphasizing short-term solutions, and draining local resources.[240,241] Certain ethical challenges are also commonly encountered and often relate to the appropriate scope of practice, the equitable distribution of local and external resources, and an inadequate understanding of local social and cultural norms.

In a survey of surgery and anesthesia trainees at a large Ugandan university with numerous visiting international collaborators, most trainees (75%) agreed that visiting groups improve their training. However, 40% of trainees reported that international groups had a neutral or negative impact on patient care. Only 15% felt that research

BOX 2.5 **CUGH Global Health Competency Domains**

Domain 1—Global Burden of Disease
Domain 2—Globalization of Health and Health Care
Domain 3—Social and Environmental Determinants of Health
Domain 4—Capacity Strengthening
Domain 5—Collaboration, Partnering, and Communication
Domain 6—Ethics
Domain 7—Professional Practice
Domain 8—Health Equity and Social Justice
Domain 9—Program Management
Domain 10—Sociocultural and Political Awareness
Domain 11—Strategic Analysis

CUGH, Consortium of Universities for Global Health.

CUGH Competencies reproduced under Creative Commons 4 Licensing from Jogerst K, Callender B, Adams V, et al. Identifying interprofessional global health competencies for 21st-century health professionals. *Ann Glob Health.* 2015;81:239–247. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aogh.2015.03.006.

projects conducted by international groups were in local priority areas, and approximately one third of trainees (31%) reported discomfort with the ethics of clinical decisions made by visiting faculty.[242]

It is incumbent upon institutions that offer global health opportunities to provide formal training. Numerous resources exist to help equip trainees, providers, and institutions with the knowledge necessary to manage these challenges and maximize the positive impact of global health efforts (see the Appendix for links and useful resources).[243–246]

In some countries (e.g., the United Kingdom), anesthesia trainees can pursue 6-month to 1-year-long global health experiences, with formal curriculum and relatively long-term clinical, research, and educational components. Trainees are required to complete standardized assessments, including clinical evaluations and case-based discussions as outlined by the RCoA.[247] A relatively small yet increasing number of anesthesia programs in the United States and other countries are providing formal global health tracks for interested residents as well as formal anesthesia global health fellowships.[248] Academic institutions and the global anesthesia community at large must continue to expand training and career development opportunities that increase the number of anesthesiologists interested in and capable of improving equitable access to safe anesthesia worldwide.

Conclusions

Despite dramatic changes in anesthesia around the world over the past century, improvements in safety, access, and affordability have not been universal. At present, the majority of the world does not have access to safe anesthesia, surgical, or analgesia services, and relatively few resources are being devoted to address this growing crisis. The massive and growing surgical and pain crises disproportionately affect LMICs, where severe shortages of workforce and infrastructure, and impractical international regulations limit access to care. Despite many common misperceptions, anesthesia, analgesia, and surgical services are feasible in resource-constrained settings and are as cost-effective as many other public health interventions (e.g., vaccinations).

The neglect of pain and surgical disease by the global health community has resulted in one of the most inequitable global public health crises the world faces today. It has been only in recent years that the surgery, anesthesia, and global health communities have accelerated investment in research, education, and advocacy initiatives that aim to improve access to safe anesthesia and surgical services for the world's poor. These efforts are in their infancy and must be expanded and supported by the global anesthesia community. Factors affecting access to care, safety, and cost are relevant in all countries regardless of income level. All anesthesia providers should maintain awareness of the fundamental challenges facing the global anesthesia community, with the hope that increasing numbers will devote their careers to addressing issues of global health equity. There are many different ways for anesthesia providers to engage in global health at the patient level or system level, including research, advocacy, education, and clinical service.

The role of anesthesia in global health is easy for many to overlook, but the global anesthesia community must quickly increase efforts to actively lead global health initiatives that aim to improve infrastructure, expand workforce, increase translation of data into policy and practice, improve financial risk protection mechanisms for surgical patients, expand referral and prehospital systems, provide essential medicines, and ultimately improve access to safe and affordable anesthesia, surgical, and pain services worldwide.

Acknowledgments

The editors and publisher would like to thank the following collaborators for their contributions to this ever-evolving chapter: Maria Carmona, Deepak Tempe, Naoyuki Hirata, Michiaki Yamakage, Anis Baraka (deceased), Fouad Salim Haddad (deceased), Yury Polushin, Olga Afonin, Guillermo Lema, Florian Nuevo, Lars Eriksson, and D.G. Bogod.
This chapter greatly benefited from the contribution and thoughtful editing of Michael Cooper, Maytinee Lilaonitkul, Fred Bulamba, Cephas Mijumbi, and Doruk Ozgediz.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Gelb AW, et al. *World J Surg*. 2015.
2. McQueen K, et al. *World J Surg*. 2015;39(9):2153–2160.
3. Gelb A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. In Press. 2018.
4. Merry AF, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57(11):1027–1034.
5. Meara JG, et al. *Lancet*. 2015.
6. Koplan JP, et al. *Lancet*. 2009;373(9679):1993–1995.
7. Fried LP, et al. *The Lancet*. 2010;375(9714):535–537.
8. Adams LV, et al. *BMC Med Educ*. 2016;16:296.
9. Merson MH. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(18):1676–1678.
10. Merson M, Chapman K. *The Dramatic Expansion of University Engagement in Global Health | Center for Strategic and International Studies*. Washington, D.C: Center for Strategic and International Studies; 2009. https://www.csis.org/analysis/dramatic-expansion-university-engagement-global-health. Accessed August 21, 2016.
11. Address by Dr. H. Mahler Director General of the WHO to the World Congress of the International College of Surgeons. 1980. http://www.who.int/surgery/strategies/Mahler1980speech.pdf?ua=1. Accessed March 8, 2018.
12. MacGowan WA. *Bull Am Coll Surg*. 1987;72(6):5–7, 9.
13. Wasunna AE. *Bull Am Coll Surg*. 1987;72(6):18–19.
14. Vaz F, et al. *Bull World Health Organ*. 1999;77(8):688–691.
15. Ouro-Bang'na Maman AF, et al. *Trop Doct*. 2005;35(4):220–222.
16. McCord C, Chowdhury Q. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet Off Organ Int Fed Gynaecol Obstet*. 2003;81(1):83–92.
17. Javitt JC. *Arch Ophthalmol Chic Ill 1960*. 1993;111(12):1615.
18. Luboga S, et al. *PLoS Med*. 2009;6(12):e1000200.
19. Jamison DT, et al., ed. *Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries*. 2nd ed. Washington (DC): World Bank; 2006. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK11728/. Accessed January 18, 2016.
20. World Health Organization. *Patient Safety. WHO Guidelines for Safe Surgery 2009: Safe Surgery Saves Lives*; 2009. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK143243/. Accessed December 14, 2016.
21. Haynes AB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360(5):491–499.
22. Farmer PE, Kim JY. *World J Surg*. 2008;32(4):533–536.
23. Ozgediz D, Riviello R. *PLoS Med*. 2008;5(6).
24. 68th World Health Assembly. WHO. http://www.who.int/surgery/wha-eb/en/. Published May 2015. Accessed March 8, 2018.
25. Botman M, et al. *World J Surg*. 2015;39(6):1335–1340.

26. Debas H, et al., ed. *Disease Control Priorities 3. Vol Essential Surgery*. 3rd ed. World Bank Group; 2015. http://dcp-3.org/surgery
27. Jim Yong Kim - Inaugural Lancet Commission on Global Surgery 2014. YouTube; 2014. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=61iM4Qjk-q4. Accessed March 8, 2018.
28. Jamison DT, et al. *The Lancet*. 2013;382(9908):1898–1955.
29. United Nations Sustainable Development Goals. U N Sustain Dev. http://www.un.org/sustainabledevelopment/health/. Accessed August 25, 2016.
30. Knaul FM, et al. *The Lancet*. 2017;0(0).
31. Dare AJ, et al. *The Lancet*. 2014;384(9961):2245–2247.
32. GBD 2016 DALYs and HALE Collaborators. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2017;390(10100):1260–1344.
33. Gallup JL, Sachs JD. *The Economic Burden of Malaria*. American Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene; 2001. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK2624/. Accessed April 24, 2018.
34. Murray CJ. *Bull World Health Organ*. 1994;72(3):429–445.
35. Murray CJ, et al. *Bull World Health Organ*. 1994;72(3):495–509.
36. Gosselin R, et al. *World J Surg*. 2013;37(11):2507–2511.
37. Vos T, et al. *The Lancet*. 2017;390(10100):1211–1259.
38. Goldberg DS, McGee SJ. *BMC Public Health*. 2011;11:770.
39. Parker R, et al. *J Int AIDS Soc*. 2014;17(1).
40. Alkema L, et al. *The Lancet*. 2016;387(10017):462–474.
41. WHO cancer fact sheet. World Health Organization. http://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/cancer. Accessed June 24, 2018.
42. Funk LM, et al. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2010;376(9746):1055–1061.
42a. https://www.who.int/bulletin/online_first/18-216028.pdf. Accessed March 11, 2019.
43. Weiser TG, et al. *The Lancet*. 2008;372(9633):139–144.
44. Alkire BC, et al. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2015;3(6):e316–e323.
45. Khubchandani JA, et al. *Surgery*. 2018;163(2):243–250.
46. Cintron A, Morrison RS. *J Palliat Med*. 2006;9(6):1454–1473.
47. “Please, do not make us suffer any more…” | Access to Pain Treatment as a Human Right. Human Rights Watch. https://www.hrw.org/report/2009/03/03/please-do-not-make-us-suffer-any-more/access-pain-treatment-human-right. Published March 3, 2009. Accessed March 15, 2018.
48. Brennan F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(1):205–221.
49. Lohman D, et al. *BMC Med*. 2010;8:8.
50. Seya M-J, et al. *J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother*. 2011;25(1):6–18.
51. PPSG Opioid Consumption Map. https://ppsg.medicine.wisc.edu/. Accessed March 5, 2018.
52. International Narcotics Control Board, United Nations. *Availability of Internationally Controlled Drugs: Ensuring Adequate Access for Medical and Scientific Purposes : Indispensable, Adequately Available and Not Unduly Restricted*; 2016.
53. Berterame S, et al. *The Lancet*. 2016;387(10028):1644–1656.
54. Rasu RS, Knell ME. *Pain Med Malden Mass*. 2018;19(3):524–532.
55. Pletcher MJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2008;299(1):70–78.
56. Singhal A, et al. *PloS One*. 2016;11(8):e0159224.
57. Bainbridge D, et al. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2012;380(9847):1075–1081.
58. Beecher HK, Todd DP. *Ann Surg*. 1954;140(1):2–35.
59. Lagasse RS. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(6):1609–1617.
60. Rickard JL, et al. *World J Surg*. 2016;40(4):784–790.
61. Heywood AJ, et al. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 1989;71(6):354–358.
62. Watters DA, et al. *World J Surg*. 2015;39(4):856–864.
63. Ng-Kamstra JS, et al. *The Lancet*. 2015;385:S29.
64. Ng-Kamstra J, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2017;225(4):S107.
65. Biccard BM, et al. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2018.
66. Walker IA, Wilson IH. *The Lancet*. 2008;371(9617):968–969.
67. Maman AO-B, et al. *Trop Doct*. 2005;35(4):220–222.
68. Hansen D, et al. *Trop Doct*. 2000;30(3):146–149.
69. Glenshaw M, Madzimbamuto FD. *Cent Afr J Med*. 2005;51(3-4):39–44.
70. Sama HD, et al. *Ann Fr Anesth Réanimation*. 2013;32(11):818–819.
71. Saving Mothers 2014-2016: Seventh triennial report on confidential enquiries into maternal deaths in South Africa: short report. 2018. http://www.midwivessociety.co.za/downloads/Short_report_Saving_Mothers_2014-2016_7th_triennial_report.pdf. Accessed May 1, 2018.
72. Sobhy S, et al. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2016;4(5):e320–e327.
73. Shrime MG, et al. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2015;3(suppl 2):S38–44.
74. De Lima L, et al. *J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother*. 2004;18(1):59–70.
75. Jenny HE, et al. *BMJ Glob Health*. 2017;2(2): bmjgh-2016-000167.
76. Worldbank country data. https://data.worldbank.org/country/india. Published 2018. Accessed April 24, 2018.
77. Albutt K, et al. *PloS One*. 2018;13(4):e0195986.
78. Chu KM, et al. *Arch Surg Chic Ill 1960*. 2010;145(8):721–725.
79. Bhandari A, et al. *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 2008;27(4):964–976.
80. Narayana Hrudayalaya: a model for accessible, affordable health care? knowledge@wharton. http://knowledge.wharton.upenn.edu/article/narayana-hrudayalaya-a-model-for-accessible-affordable-health-care/. Accessed June 22, 2018.
81. Samad L, et al. *World J Surg*. 2015;39(1):21–28.
82. Bertram MY, et al. *Bull World Health Organ*. 2016;94(12):925–930.
83. Hutubessy R, et al. *Cost Eff Resour Alloc CE*. 2003;1:8.
84. Chao TE, et al. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2014;2(6):e334–e345.
85. Yap A, et al. *Surgery*. 2018.
86. Copenhagen Consensus Expert Panel Findings. 2012. http://www.copenhagenconsensus.com/sites/default/files/outcome_document_updated_1105.pdf. Accessed March 6, 2019.
87. Dieleman JL, et al. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2015;3(suppl 2):S2–4.
88. Shawar YR, et al. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2015;3(8):e487–e495.
89. Shiffman J, et al. *Int J Health Policy Manag*. 2017;6(4):183–189.
90. Dare AJ, et al. *PLOS Med*. 2016;13(5):e1002023.
91. Lipnick MS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(3):1049–1052.
92. Mbonye AK, et al. *Int J Gynecol Obstet*. 2007;98(3):285–290.
93. Epiu I, et al. *BMC Pregnancy Childbirth*. 2017;17(1):387.
94. Epiu I, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2016;16(1):60.
95. Baird M, et al. *The Anesthesiologist Workforce in 2013: A Final Briefing to the American Society of Anesthesiologists*; 2014. https://www.rand.org/content/dam/rand/pubs/research_reports/RR600/RR650/RAND_RR650.pdf. Accessed June 22, 2018.
96. Baird M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(5):997–1012.
97. Abenstein J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(supp 2):A1131.
98. Crandall M, et al. *Am J Public Health*. 2013;103(6):1103–1109.
99. Holmer H, et al. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2015;385(suppl 2):S40.
100. Kempthorne P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(3):981–990.
101. Holmer H, et al. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2015;3(suppl 2):S9–11.
102. Cherian M, et al. *Bull World Health Organ*. 2010;88(8):637–639.
103. Galukande M, et al. *East Cent Afr J Surg*. 2006;11:11–24.
104. Lipnick M, et al. *World J Surg*. 2012;37(3):488–497.
105. Hewitt-Smith A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(3):284–294.
106. Nurse Anesthetist Training Programs – AIC Kijabe Hospital. http://kijabehospital.org/postgraduate-training/nurse-anesthetist-training-programs. Accessed April 27, 2018.
107. Binagwaho A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(21):2054–2059.
108. Zoumenou E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(4):1321–1328.
109. Thind A, et al. In: Debas HT, Donkor P, Gawande A, Jamison DT, Kruk ME, Mock CN, eds. *Essential Surgery: Disease Control Priorities*. 3rd ed. Vol. 1. Washington (DC): The International Bank for Reconstruction and Development / The World Bank; 2015. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK333513/. Accessed April 21, 2018.
110. Chao TE, et al. *World J Surg*. 2012;36(11):2545–2553.
111. World Health Organization. Tool for Situational Analysis to Assess Emergency and Essential Surgical Care. http://www.who.int/surgery/publications/QuickSitAnalysisEESCsurvey.pdf. Accessed April 4, 2017.
112. WHO, Harvard PGSSC. WHO-PGSSC surgical assessment tool (SAT) hospital walkthrough tool. http://docs.wixstatic.com/ugd/346076_b9d8e8796eb945fe9bac7e7e35c512b1.pdf. Accessed June 7, 2017.
113. SOS PIPES Surgical Capacity Assessment Tool. Surgeons Overseas. https://www.surgeonsoverseas.org/resources/. Accessed April 4, 2017.
114. Hodges SC, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(1):4–11.
115. Evans FM, et al. Availability of essential anesthetic medicines in resource-poor countries in Africa and Central America. Scientific Abstract. American Society of Anesthesiologists.
116. World Federation of Societies of Anaesthesiologists - anesthesia facility assessment tool (AFAT). https://www.wfsahq.org/afat. Published 2018. Accessed June 1, 2018.
117. Global Initiative for Children’s Surgery (GICS). *Optimal resources for children’s surgical care: guidelines for different levels of care*. Version 2.0. April 2018.
118. Fast O, et al. *BMJ Glob Health*. 2017;2(suppl 4).
119. *Decontamination and Reprocessing of Medical Devices for Health-care Facilities*; 2016. http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/handle/10665/250232/9789241549851-eng.pdf;jsessionid=BD6887F06B8291CDBB52A6E5B49357E1?sequence=1. Accessed April 1, 2018.

120. WHO. Zambia - Service Availability and Readiness Assessment 2010, Summary report. http://apps.who.int/healthinfo/systems/datacatalog/index.php/catalog/36/reports. Accessed March 19, 2018.
121. Henry JA, et al. *World J Surg*. 2012;36(12):2811–2818.
122. *Indice de disponibilite et de capacite operationnelle des services (SARA): Republique democratique du Congo*; 2014. http://apps.who.int/healthinfo/systems/datacatalog/index.php/ddibrowser/54/download/165. Accessed April 1, 2018.
123. *Uganda Hospital and Health Centre IV Census Survey*. ; 2014. http://www.who.int/healthinfo/systems/SARA_H_UGA_Results_2014.pdf?ua=1. Accessed April 1, 2018.
124. Bradley BD, et al. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis Off J Int Union Tuberc Lung Dis*. 2016;20(8):1130–1134.
125. WHO medical device technical series: medical device donations - considerations for solicitation and provision. 2011. http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/44568/1/9789241501408_eng.pdf. Accessed March 19, 2018.
126. WHO model list of essential medicines - 20th list. 2017. http://www.who.int/medicines/publications/essentialmedicines/20th_EML2017.pdf?ua=1. Accessed April 1, 2018.
127. Buckley GJ, Gostin LO, eds. Committee on Understanding the Global Public Health Implications of Substandard, Falsified, and Counterfeit Medical Products, Board on Global Health, Institute of Medicine. *Countering the problem of falsified and substandard drugs*. Washington (DC): National Academies Press (US); 2013. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK202530/. Accessed June 24, 2018.
128. WHO global surveillance and monitoring system for substandard and falsified medical products. 2017. http://www.who.int/medicines/regulation/ssffc/publications/gsms-report-sf/en/. Accessed June 24, 2018.
129. A study on the public health and socioeconomic impact of substandard and falsified medical products. http://www.who.int/medicines/regulation/ssffc/publications/se-study-sf/en/. Accessed June 24, 2018.
130. Roberts DJ, et al. *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am*. 2016;30(2):477–495.
131. Kralievits KE, et al. *The Lancet*. 2015;385:S28.
132. WHO | Blood safety and availability. WHO. http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs279/en/. Accessed April 21, 2018. https://www.who.int/en/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/blood-safety-and-availability. Accessed 3-7-19 TG.
133. Custer B, et al. *Transfusion (Paris)*; 2018.
134. De Lima L. *J Palliat Med*. 2004;7(1):97–103.
135. Frye JE. *International Drug Price Indicator Guide*. 393.
136. Forbes K. *J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother*. 2006;20(3):33–35.
137. Liliana De Lima MHA, et al. *Health Policy*. 2001;56(2):99–110.
138. Nickerson JW, et al. *Can J Anaesth J Can Anesth*. 2017;64(3):296–307.
139. Scheck J. Tramadol: the opioid crisis for the rest of the world. *Wall Street Journal*. http://www.wsj.com/articles/tramadol-the-opioid-crisis-for-the-rest-of-the-world-1476887401. Published October 20, 2016. Accessed April 24, 2018.
140. Kusari S, et al. *Angew Chem Int Ed*. 55(1):240-243.
141. United Nations. *Single Convention on Narcotics Drugs*; 1961. https://www.unodc.org/pdf/convention_1961_en.pdf.
142. Estimated World Requirements of Narcotic Drugs in Grams for 2017. https://www.incb.org/documents/Narcotic-Drugs/Status-of-Estimates/2017/EstAdv17_Dec._21.pdf. Accessed May 1, 2018. Active 3/7/19.
143. Nickerson JW, Attaran A. *PLoS Med*. 2012;9(1).
144. WHO Regional Office for South-East Asia (SEARO) | Pain & Policy Studies Group. http://www.painpolicy.wisc.edu/who-regional-office-south-east-asia-searo. Accessed May 4, 2018.
145. Shariff U-K. An Epidemic of Pain in India; 2013. *New Yorker* https://www.newyorker.com/tech/elements/an-epidemic-of-pain-in-india. Accessed June 22, 2018.
146. Stjernswärd J, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2007;33(5):628–633.
147. Taylor AL. *J Law Med Ethics J Am Soc Law Med Ethics*. 2007;35(4):556–570, 511.
148. Krakauer EL, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2015;49(5):916–922.
149. Vallath N, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2017;53(3):518–532.
150. Joranson DE, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;24(2):152–159.
151. Rajagopal M, et al. *The Lancet*. 2001;358(9276):139–143.
152. Jr DGM. 'Opiophobia' Has Left Africa in Agony. *The New York Times*. https://www.nytimes.com/2017/12/04/health/opioids-africa-pain.html. Published December 4, 2017. Accessed April 15, 2018.
153. The World Bank Group. *Taking on Inequality, Poverty and Shared Prosperity 2016*; 2016. https://openknowledge.worldbank.org/bitstream/handle/10986/25078/9781464809583.pdf. Accessed May 1, 2018.
154. The World Monetary Fund. World Economic Outlook (April 2018) - Real GDP growth. http://www.imf.org/external/datamapper/NGDP_RPCH@WEO. Accessed June 24, 2018.
155. *Universal health coverage in Africa: a framework for action*. ; 2016. http://www.who.int/health_financing/documents/uhc-africa-action-framework/en/. Accessed June 24, 2018.
156. The World Factbook — Central Intelligence Agency. https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ug.html. Accessed June 2, 2018.
157. Dunn P. *Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed*. 1999;80(3):F250–F251.
158. Billington WR. *Br Med J*. 1970;4(5737):738–740.
159. Statistics South Africa. http://www.statssa.gov.za/. Accessed June 24, 2018.
160. Sulla V, Zikhali P. *Overcoming Poverty and Inequality in South Africa : An Assessment of Drivers, Constraints and Opportunities*. The World Bank; 2018:1–148. http://documents.worldbank.org/curated/en/530481521735906534/Overcoming-Poverty-and-Inequality-in-South-Africa-An-Assessment-of-Drivers-Constraints-and-Opportunities. Accessed June 24, 2018.

160a. South Africa. Dept of Health. 2018. *National Health Insurance Bill, No. 635:* For broader public comment. Government Gazette No. 41725:636 26 June.

161. SASA - South African Society of Anaesthesiologists Practice Guidelines; 2018. http://sasaweb.com/. Accessed June 24, 2018.
162. Rosseel P, et al. *World J Surg*. 2010;34(3):453–458.
163. Eger II EI, et al., ed. *The Wondrous Story of Anesthesia*. New York: Springer-Verlag; 2014. //www.springer.com/us/book/9781461484400. Accessed June 24, 2018.
164. Chronology of Canadian Anesthesiologists' society events. https://www.cas.ca/English/CAS-Chronology. Accessed June 24, 2018.
165. Fraser AB, et al. *Can J Anaesth J Can Anesth*. 2016;63(12):1364–1373.
166. The Royal College of Physicians and Surgeons of Canada. Specialty education design. http://www.royalcollege.ca/rcsite/cbd/cbd-specialty-education-design-sed-e. Accessed June 24, 2018.
167. *Standard of Practice: Use of Sedation and General Anesthesia in Dental Practice*; 2015. http://www.rcdso.org/Assets/DOCUMENTS/Professional_Practice/Standard_of_Practice/RCDSO_Standard_of_Practice__Use_of_Sedation_and_General_Anesthesia.pdf. Accessed June 1, 2018.
168. Dobson G, et al. *Can J Anaesth J Can Anesth*. 2018;65(1):76–104.
169. CMA Anesthesiology Profile; 2018. https://www.cma.ca/Assets/assets-library/document/en/advocacy/profiles/anesthesiology-e.pdf. Accessed June 1, 2018.
170. *National Health Expenditure Trends, 1975 to 2017*; 2017.
171. Gaspar XC. *Rev Biomed*. 1998;9(1):38–43.
172. Carillo-Esper R, et al. *Rev Mex Anestesiol*. 2017;40:S347–S349.
173. Sanchez-Meneses S. *Gac Med Mex*. 2007;143(6):525–529.
174. *ACGME Program Requirements for Graduate Medical Education in Anesthesiology*; 2017.
175. Accreditation Standards, Policies and Procedures, and Guidelines. Council on Accreditation of Nurse Anesthesia Education Programs. http://home.coa.us.com/accreditation/Pages/Accreditation-Policies-Procedures-and-Standards.aspx. Accessed June 24, 2018.
176. National Board of Certification & Recertification for Nurse Anesthetists. https://www.nbcrna.com/initial-certification. Accessed June 24, 2018.
177. 2016 Anesthesia almanac - analytics and research services - American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA). https://www.asahq.org/resources/analytics-and-research-services. Accessed June 24, 2018.
178. AANA. Certified Registered Nurse Anesthetists Fact Sheet; 2017. https://www.aana.com/docs/default-source/pr-aana-com-web-documents-(all)/crna-fact-sheet.pdf?sfvrsn=c5f641b1_4.
179. Lewis SR, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;7:CD010357.
180. Daugherty L, et al. An analysis of the labor markets for anesthesiology. https://www.rand.org/pubs/technical_reports/TR688.html. Published 2010. Accessed June 24, 2018.
181. Muffly MK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(1):179–185.
182. Creanga AA, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;130(2):366–373.

183. Recognition of professional qualifications in practice - growth - European commission. /growth/single-market/services/free-movement-professionals/qualifications-recognition_en. Accessed June 24, 2018.
184. Egger Halbeis CB, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24(12):991–1007.
185. Van Gessel E, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29(4):165–168.
186. Mellin-Olsen J, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27(7):592–597.
187. Strømskag KE. *Tidsskr Den Nor Laegeforening Tidsskr Prakt Med Ny Raekke*. 2002;122(8):804–805.
188. Gisvold SE, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(8):942–946.
189. Ringvold E-M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2018;62(3):411–417.
190. Aasland OG, et al. *Tidsskr Den Nor Laegeforening Tidsskr Prakt Med Ny Raekke*. 2008;128(16):1833–1837.
190a. Litarczek G, Tecău M. Tabelcronologic cu date din istoriaanesteziei. In: *Bazeleteoretice Ale Anesteziologiei. Bucureşti: Editura Academiei de Ştiinţe Medicale;* 201:15–22.
191. Brill S, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20(9):682–689.
192. Jonnesco T. *Br Med J*. 1909;2(2550):1396–1401.
193. Pearse RM, et al. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2012;380(9847):1059–1065.
194. International Surgical Outcomes Study Group. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(5):601–609.
195. Mitre C, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33(3):157–159.
196. Divekar VM, Naik LD. *J Postgrad Med*. 2001;47(2):149–152.
197. Mavalankar D, et al. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet Off Organ Int Fed Gynaecol Obstet*. 2009;107(3):283–288.
198. Ashtekar SV, et al. *Indian J Community Med Off Publ Indian Assoc Prev Soc Med*. 2012;37(3):180–184.
199. Ray M. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2010;54(1):6–7.
200. Agarwal A. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2012;56(6):524.
201. Haddad FS. *Middle East J Anaesthesiol*. 1982;6(5):241–280.
202. Khan M, Khan FA. *Middle East J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;19(1):159–172.
203. Abayadeera A. *Anaesth Pain Intensive Care*. 2017;21:125–127.
204. Juan X, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(6):1249–1253.
205. Yu X, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7(6):e015147.
206. Zhu B, et al. *Am J Med Qual Off J Am Coll Med Qual*. 2018;33(1):93–99.
207. Li H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(3):1004–1012.
208. Miller RD, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1971;174(5):794–801.
209. Miller RD, et al. *JAMA*. 1971;216(11):1762–1765.
210. Bangkok Anesthesia Regional Training Center | BARTC. http://www.wfsa-bartc.org/. Accessed June 25, 2018.
210a. World Bank. GDP ranking. 2019. https://datacatalog.worldbank.org/dataset/gdp-ranking. Accessed June 10, 2019.
211. JCI-Accredited Organizations. Joint Commission International. https://www.jointcommissioninternational.org/about-jci/jci-accredited-organizations/. Accessed June 25, 2018.
212. The world factbook — Central Intelligence Agency - Gini coefficient. https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/rankorder/2172rank.html. Accessed June 25, 2018.
213. Venturini A. *Historia de la anestesia en sudamerica*; 2010. http://files.sld.cu/anestesiologia/files/2012/03/anestesia-sudamerica.pdf. Accessed June 1, 2018.
214. Historia de la Anestesia en Paraguay. http://www.clasa-anestesia.org/search/apendice/comision_historia/paraguay.htm. Accessed June 25, 2018.
215. Ponton JH. *Sociedad Colombiana de Anestesiologia y Reanimacion*. 1999.
216. Ocampo B, Peña JE. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(3):406–409.
217. Bacon DR, Ament R. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7(6):534–543.
218. Cooper M. *Anaesth Intensive Care J*. 1997;25(3):221.
219. Newson AJ. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2006;34(suppl 1):39–45.
220. Wilson G. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1988;16(4):448–456.
221. Department of Health. *Australia's Future Health Workforce - Anaesthesia*; 2016. http://www.health.gov.au/internet/main/publishing.nsf/Content/australias-future-health-workforce-anaesthesia-report. Accessed June 1, 2018.
222. McNicol L. *A review of anaesthesia-related mortality reporting in Australia and New Zealand*; 2017:2012–2014. http://www.anzca.edu.au/documents/soa-mortality-report_p4.pdf. Accessed June 1, 2018.
223. Perioperative Mortality Review Committee. *Perioperative Mortality in New Zealand: Sixth report of the Perioperative Mortality Review Committee*; 2017. https://www.hqsc.govt.nz/assets/POMRC/Publications/POMRC_6th_Report_2017.pdf. Accessed June 1, 2018.
224. Cooper MG, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2016;44(3):420–424.
225. Maitland K, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364(26):2483–2495.
226. Duke T, et al. *Ann Trop Paediatr*. 2010;30(2):87–101.
227. Technical Specifications for Oxygen Concentrators. (WHO medical device technical series). http://apps.who.int/medicinedocs/en/d/Js22194en/. Accessed April 26, 2018.
228. Peel D, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(7):706–712.
229. Lipnick, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016.
230. Dubowitz G, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(12):1220–1223.
231. Gray A. *Atlas of Ultrasound-Guided Regional Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. 2018. https://www.elsevier.com/books/atlas-of-ultrasound-guided-regional-anesthesia/gray/978-1-4557-2819-0. Accessed May 4, 2018.
232. Sacevich C, et al. *Can J Anaesth J Can Anesth*. 2018;65(2):170–177.
233. Burke TF, et al. *World J Surg*. 2017;41(12):2990–2997.
234. Cheng D, et al. *World J Surg. February*. 2018.
235. Shukla P, et al. *J Obstet Gynaecol India*. 2014;64(5):358–361.
236. Nkwabong E, et al. *Med Sante Trop*. 2016;26(1):75–77.
237. Kerry VB, et al. *J Glob Health*. 2013;3(2):020406.
238. Jogerst K, et al. *Ann Glob Health*. 2015;81(2):239–247.
239. Butler M, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2018;53(4):828–836.
240. Welling DR, et al. *World J Surg*. 2010;34(3):466–470.
241. Holm JD, Malete L. Nine problems that hinder partnerships in Africa. *The Chronicle of Higher Education*. http://chronicle.com/article/Nine-Problems-That-Hinder/65892/. Published June 13, 2010. Accessed February 17, 2011.
242. Elobu AE, et al. *Surgery*. 2014;155(4):585–592.
243. DeCamp M, et al. *Ann Intern Med. March*. 2018.
244. Crump JA, Sugarman J. *JAMA*. 2008;300(12):1456–1458.
245. Crump JA, Sugarman J. *Am J Trop Med Hyg*. 2010;83(6):1178–1182.
246. Le Phuoc. Teaching global health ethics using simulation. Poster Presentation. Presented at the: https://interprofessional.ucsf.edu/sites/interprofessional.ucsf.edu/files/wysiwyg/GH_ethics_poster_1-23-14_final_draft.pdf.
247. The Royal College of Anaesthetists. Unit of training for working in a developing country. http://www.rcoa.ac.uk/careers-training/oope-and-oopt/working-training-developing-countries/unit-of-training-working-developing-country. Accessed August 23, 2016.
248. Tabaie S, et al. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2017;7(1):30–36.

Appendix 1 Links and Useful Resources

- WHO Essential Surgery: http://www.who.int/surgery/en/
- Surgical Care at the District Hospital: http://www.who.int/surgery/en/
- World Federation of Societies of Anaesthesiologists (WFSA): www.wfsahq.org
- WFSA Workforce Map: www.wfsahq.org/workforce-map
- WFSA Anesthesia Facility Assessment Tool: www.wfsahq.org/afat
- Open Anesthesia Global Health: http://www.openanesthesia.org/subspecialty/global-health/
- American Society of Anesthesiologists Global Humanitarian Outreach: https://www.asahq.org/gho
- Consortium of Universities for Global Health: www.cugh.org

- Royal College of Anesthetists e-Learning Anaesthesia: www.rcoa.ac.uk/e-la
- Royal College of Anesthetists Anaesthesia for Austere Environments modules: https://www.rcoa.ac.uk/e-la/anaesthesia-humanitarian-austere-environments
- Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation: http://ghdx.healthdata.org/
- Global Health Ethics Course (Johns Hopkins): http://ethicsandglobalhealth.org/
- Essential Pain Management Course: www.essentialpainmanagement.org/
- "Anaesthesia at the district hospital" by Mike Dobson: http://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/42193
- Developing Anaesthesia Handbook: http://www.developinganaesthesia.org/
- *Primary Anesthesia*, Book by Maurice King
- International Association for the Study of Pain (IASP) Guide to pain management in low-resource settings: http://ebooks.iasp-pain.org/guide_to_pain_management_in_low_resource_settings
- *Developing Global Health Programming: A Guidebook for Medical and Professional Schools.* By Jessica Evert et al: www.cfhi.org/sites/files/files/pages/developingglobalhealthprogramming_0.pdf
- *The Right Stuff*, Michael Dobson, MD Publications, 2017

References

1. Gelb AW, Enright A, Merry AF, Morriss W. The bare minimum requires caution. *World J Surg*. 2015. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-015-3287-y.
2. McQueen K, Coonan T, Ottaway A, et al. The bare minimum: the reality of global anaesthesia and patient safety. *World J Surg*. 2015;39(9):2153–2160. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-015-3101-x.
3. Gelb A, Johnson W, Morriss W, Merry A. WHO-WFSA international standards for a safe practice of anaesthesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 2018.
4. Merry AF, Cooper JB, Soyannwo O, Wilson IH, Eichhorn JH. International standards for a safe practice of anesthesia 2010. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57(11):1027–1034. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12630-010-9381-6.
5. Meara JG, Leather AJM, Hagander L, et al. Global Surgery 2030: evidence and solutions for achieving health, welfare, and economic development. *Lancet*. 2015. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(15)60160-X.
6. Koplan JP, Bond TC, Merson MH, et al. Towards a common definition of global health. *Lancet*. 2009;373(9679):1993–1995. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(09)60332-9.
7. Fried LP, Bentley ME, Buekens P, et al. Global health is public health. *The Lancet*. 2010;375(9714):535–537. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(10)60203-6.
8. Adams LV, Wagner CM, Nutt CT, Binagwaho A. The future of global health education: training for equity in global health. *BMC Med Educ*. 2016;16:296. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12909-016-0820-0.
9. Merson MH. University engagement in global health. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(18):1676–1678. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMp1401124.
10. Merson M, Chapman K. *The Dramatic Expansion of University Engagement in Global Health | Center for Strategic and International Studies*. Washington, D.C: Center for Strategic and International Studies; 2009. https://www.csis.org/analysis/dramatic-expansion-university-engagement-global-health. Accessed August 21, 2016.
11. Address by Dr. H. Mahler Director General of the WHO to the World Congress of the International College of Surgeons. 1980. http://www.who.int/surgery/strategies/Mahler1980speech.pdf?ua=1. Accessed March 8, 2018.
12. MacGowan WA. Surgical manpower worldwide. *Bull Am Coll Surg*. 1987;72(6):5–7, 9.
13. Wasunna AE. Surgical manpower in Africa. *Bull Am Coll Surg*. 1987;72(6):18–19.
14. Vaz F, Bergström S, Vaz M da l, Langa J, Bugalho A. Training medical assistants for surgery. *Bull World Health Organ*. 1999;77(8):688–691.
15. Ouro-Bang'na Maman AF, Tomta K, Ahouangbévi S, Chobli M. Deaths associated with anaesthesia in Togo, West Africa. *Trop Doct*. 2005;35(4):220–222. https://doi.org/10.1258/004947505774938666.
16. McCord C, Chowdhury Q. A cost effective small hospital in Bangladesh: what it can mean for emergency obstetric care. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet Off Organ Int Fed Gynaecol Obstet*. 2003;81(1):83–92.
17. Javitt JC. The cost-effectiveness of restoring sight. *Arch Ophthalmol Chic Ill 1960*. 1993;111(12):1615.
18. Luboga S, Macfarlane SB, von Schreeb J, et al. Increasing access to surgical services in sub-Saharan Africa: priorities for national and international agencies recommended by the Bellagio Essential Surgery Group. *PLoS Med*. 2009;6(12):e1000200. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pmed.1000200.
19. Jamison DT, Breman JG, Measham AR, et al., eds. *Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries*. 2nd ed. Washington (DC): World Bank; 2006. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK11728/. Accessed January 18, 2016.
20. World Health Organization. *Patient Safety. WHO Guidelines for Safe Surgery 2009: Safe Surgery Saves Lives*; 2009. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK143243/. Accessed December 14, 2016.
21. Haynes AB, Weiser TG, Berry WR, et al. A surgical safety checklist to reduce morbidity and mortality in a global population. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360(5):491–499. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMsa0810119.
22. Farmer PE, Kim JY. Surgery and global health: a view from beyond the OR. *World J Surg*. 2008;32(4):533–536. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-008-9525-9.
23. Ozgediz D, Riviello R. The "other" neglected diseases in global public health: surgical conditions in sub-saharan Africa. *PLoS Med*. 2008;5(6). https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pmed.0050121.
24. 68th World Health Assembly. WHO. http://www.who.int/surgery/wha-eb/en/. Published May 2015. Accessed March 8, 2018.
25. Botman M, Meester RJ, Voorhoeve R, et al. The Amsterdam declaration on essential surgical care. *World J Surg*. 2015;39(6):1335–1340. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-015-3057-x.
26. Debas H, Donkor P, Gawande A, Jamison D, Kruk ME, Mock C, eds. *Disease Control Priorities 3. Vol Essential Surgery*. 3rd ed. World Bank Group; 2015. http://dcp-3.org/surgery. Accessed March 13, 2018.
27. Jim Yong Kim - Inaugural. *Lancet Commission on Global Surgery 2014*. YouTube; 2014. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=61iM4Qjk-q4. Accessed March 8, 2018.

27a. Surgical Safety Checklist and Implementation Manual. Geneva: WHO; 2008. http://www.who.int/patientsafety/safesurgery/tools_resources/SSSL_Checklist_finalJun08.pdf?ua=1. Accessed online June 12, 2019.

28. Jamison DT, Summers LH, Alleyne G, et al. Global health 2035: a world converging within a generation. *The Lancet*. 2013;382(9908):1898–1955. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(13)62105-4.
29. United Nations Sustainable Development Goals. http://www.un.org/sustainabledevelopment/health/. Accessed August 25, 2016.
30. Knaul FM, Farmer PE, Krakauer EL, et al. Alleviating the access abyss in palliative care and pain relief—an imperative of universal health coverage: the Lancet Commission report. *The Lancet*. 2017;0(0). https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(17)32513-8.
31. Dare AJ, Grimes CE, Gillies R, et al. Global surgery: defining an emerging global health field. *The Lancet*. 2014;384(9961):2245–2247. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(14)60237-3.
32. GBD 2016 DALYs and HALE Collaborators. Global, regional, and national disability-adjusted life-years (DALYs) for 333 diseases and injuries and healthy life expectancy (HALE) for 195 countries and territories, 1990-2016: a systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2016. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2017;390(10100):1260–1344. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(17)32130-X.
33. Gallup JL, Sachs JD. *The Economic Burden of Malaria*. American Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene; 2001. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK2624/. Accessed April 24, 2018.
34. Murray CJ. Quantifying the burden of disease: the technical basis for disability-adjusted life years. *Bull World Health Organ*. 1994;72(3):429–445.
35. Murray CJ, Lopez AD, Jamison DT. The global burden of disease in 1990: summary results, sensitivity analysis and future directions. *Bull World Health Organ*. 1994;72(3):495–509.
36. Gosselin R, Ozgediz D, Poenaru D. A square peg in a round hole? Challenges with DALY-based "burden of disease" calculations in surgery and a call for alternative metrics. *World J Surg*. 2013;37(11):2507–2511. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-013-2182-7.
37. Vos T, Abajobir AA, Abate KH, et al. Global, regional, and national incidence, prevalence, and years lived with disability for 328 diseases and injuries for 195 countries, 1990–2016: a systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2016. *The Lancet*. 2017;390(10100):1211–1259. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(17)32154-2.
38. Goldberg DS, McGee SJ. Pain as a global public health priority. *BMC Public Health*. 2011;11:770. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2458-11-770.
39. Parker R, Stein DJ, Jelsma J. Pain in people living with HIV/AIDS: a systematic review. *J Int AIDS Soc*. 2014;17(1). https://doi.org/10.7448/IAS.17.1.18719.
40. Alkema L, Chou D, Hogan D, et al. Global, regional, and national levels and trends in maternal mortality between 1990 and 2015, with scenario-based projections to 2030: a systematic analysis by the UN maternal mortality estimation inter-agency group. *The Lancet*. 2016;387(10017):462–474. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(15)00838-7.
41. WHO Cancer Fact Sheet. http://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/cancer. Accessed June 24, 2018.
42. Funk LM, Weiser TG, Berry WR, et al. Global operating theatre distribution and pulse oximetry supply: an estimation from reported data. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2010;376(9746):1055–1061. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(10)60392-3.

42a. Mullapudi B, Grabski D, Ameh D, et al. Estimates of number of children and adolescents without access to surgical care. *Bull World Health Organ*. 2019;97(4):254–258.

43. Weiser TG, Regenbogen SE, Thompson KD, et al. An estimation of the global volume of surgery: a modelling strategy based on available data. *The Lancet*. 2008;372(9633):139–144. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(08)60878-8.

44. Alkire BC, Raykar NP, Shrime MG, et al. Global access to surgical care: a modelling study. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2015;3(6):e316–e323. https://doi.org/10.1016/S2214-109X(15)70115-4.

45. Khubchandani JA, Shen C, Ayturk D, Kiefe CI, Santry HP. Disparities in access to emergency general surgery care in the United States. *Surgery*. 2018;163(2):243–250. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.surg.2017.07.026.

46. Cintron A, Morrison RS. Pain and ethnicity in the United States: a systematic review. *J Palliat Med*. 2006;9(6):1454–1473. https://doi.org/10.1089/jpm.2006.9.1454.

47. "Please, do not make us suffer any more…" | Access to Pain Treatment as a Human Right. Human Rights Watch. https://www.hrw.org/report/2009/03/03/please-do-not-make-us-suffer-any-more/access-pain-treatment-human-right. Published March 3, 2009. Accessed March 15, 2018.

48. Brennan F, Carr DB, Cousins M. Pain management: a fundamental human right. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(1):205–221. https://doi.org/10.1213/01.ane.0000268145.52345.55.

49. Lohman D, Schleifer R, Amon JJ. Access to pain treatment as a human right. *BMC Med*. 2010;8:8. https://doi.org/10.1186/1741-7015-8-8.

50. Seya M-J, Gelders SFAM, Achara OU, Milani B, Scholten WK. A first comparison between the consumption of and the need for opioid analgesics at country, regional, and global levels. *J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother*. 2011;25(1):6–18. https://doi.org/10.3109/15360288.2010.536307.

51. PPSG Opioid Consumption Map. https://ppsg.medicine.wisc.edu/. Accessed March 5, 2018.

52. International Narcotics Control Board, United Nations. *Availability of Internationally Controlled Drugs: Ensuring Adequate Access for Medical and Scientific Purposes : Indispensable, Adequately Available and Not Unduly Restricted*; 2016.

53. Berterame S, Erthal J, Thomas J, et al. Use of and barriers to access to opioid analgesics: a worldwide, regional, and national study. *The Lancet*. 2016;387(10028):1644–1656. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(16)00161-6.

54. Rasu RS, Knell ME. Determinants of opioid prescribing for nonmalignant chronic pain in US outpatient settings. *Pain Med Malden Mass*. 2018;19(3):524–532. https://doi.org/10.1093/pm/pnx025.

55. Pletcher MJ, Kertesz SG, Kohn MA, Gonzales R. Trends in opioid prescribing by race/ethnicity for patients seeking care in US emergency departments. *JAMA*. 2008;299(1):70–78. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2007.64.

56. Singhal A, Tien Y-Y, Hsia RY. Racial-ethnic disparities in opioid prescriptions at emergency department visits for conditions commonly associated with prescription drug abuse. *PloS One*. 2016;11(8):e0159224. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0159224.

57. Bainbridge D, Martin J, Arango M, Cheng D. Evidence-based Peri-operative Clinical Outcomes Research (EPiCOR) Group. Perioperative and anaesthetic-related mortality in developed and developing countries: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2012;380(9847):1075–1081. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(12)60990-8.

58. Beecher HK, Todd DP. A study of the deaths associated with anesthesia and surgery: based on a study of 599, 548 anesthesias in ten institutions 1948-1952, inclusive. *Ann Surg*. 1954;140(1):2–35.

59. Lagasse RS. Anesthesia safety: model or myth? A review of the published literature and analysis of current original data. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(6):1609–1617.

60. Rickard JL, Ntakiyiruta G, Chu KM. Associations with perioperative mortality rate at a major referral hospital in Rwanda. *World J Surg*. 2016;40(4):784–790. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-015-3308-x.

61. Heywood AJ, Wilson IH, Sinclair JR. Perioperative mortality in Zambia. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 1989;71(6):354–358.

62. Watters DA, Hollands MJ, Gruen RL, et al. Perioperative mortality rate (POMR): a global indicator of access to safe surgery and anaesthesia. *World J Surg*. 2015;39(4):856–864. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-014-2638-4.

63. Ng-Kamstra JS, Greenberg SL, Kotagal M, et al. Use and definitions of perioperative mortality rates in low-income and middle-income countries: a systematic review. *The Lancet*. 2015;385:S29.

64. Ng-Kamstra J, Arya S, Greenberg SL, Kotagal M, Meara JG, Shrime MG. Perioperative mortality rates: a systematic review and meta-analysis of the literature from low- and middle-income countries. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2017;225(4):S107. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2017.07.236.

65. Biccard BM, Madiba TE, Kluyts H-L, et al. Perioperative patient outcomes in the African Surgical Outcomes Study: a 7-day prospective observational cohort study. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(18)30001-1.

66. Walker IA, Wilson IH. Anaesthesia in developing countries—a risk for patients. *The Lancet*. 2008;371(9617):968–969. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(08)60432-8.

67. Maman AO-B, Tomta K, Ahouangbevi S, Chobli M. Deaths associated with anaesthesia in Togo, West Africa. *Trop Doct*. 2005;35(4):220–222.

68. Hansen D, Gausi SC, Merikebu M. Anaesthesia in Malawi: complications and deaths. *Trop Doct*. 2000;30(3):146–149. https://doi.org/10.1177/004947550003000311.

69. Glenshaw M, Madzimbamuto FD. Anaesthesia associated mortality in a district hospital in Zimbabwe: 1994 to 2001. *Cent Afr J Med*. 2005;51(3-4):39–44.

70. Sama HD, Ouro Bang'na Maman AF, Hemou P, Tomta K, Lokossou T, Chobli M. Sécurité anesthésique en Afrique sub-Saharienne: expérience du Togo. *Ann Fr Anesth Réanimation*. 2013;32(11):818–819. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annfar.2013.08.012.

71. *Saving Mothers 2014-2016: Seventh Triennial Report on Confidential Enquiries into Maternal Deaths in South Africa: Short report*; 2018. http://www.midwivessociety.co.za/downloads/Short_report_Saving_Mothers_2014-2016_7th_triennial_report.pdf. Accessed May 1, 2018.

72. Sobhy S, Zamora J, Dharmarajah K, et al. Anaesthesia-related maternal mortality in low-income and middle-income countries: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2016;4(5):e320–e327. https://doi.org/10.1016/S2214-109X(16)30003-1.

73. Shrime MG, Dare AJ, Alkire BC, O'Neill K, Meara JG. Catastrophic expenditure to pay for surgery worldwide: a modelling study. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2015;3(suppl 2):S38–44. https://doi.org/10.1016/S2214-109X(15)70085-9.

74. De Lima L, Sweeney C, Palmer JL, Bruera E. Potent analgesics are more expensive for patients in developing countries: a comparative study. *J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother*. 2004;18(1):59–70.

75. Jenny HE, Saluja S, Sood R, et al. Access to safe blood in low-income and middle-income countries: lessons from India. *BMJ Glob Health*. 2017;2(2): bmjgh- 2016-000167. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjgh-2016-000167.

76. Worldbank country data. https://data.worldbank.org/country/india. Published 2018. Accessed April 24, 2018.

77. Albutt K, Yorlets RR, Punchak M, et al. You pray to your God: a qualitative analysis of challenges in the provision of safe, timely, and affordable surgical care in Uganda. *PloS One*. 2018;13(4):e0195986. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0195986.

78. Chu KM, Ford N, Trelles M. Operative mortality in resource-limited settings: the experience of Medecins Sans Frontieres in 13 countries. *Arch Surg Chic Ill 1960*. 2010;145(8):721–725. https://doi.org/10.1001/archsurg.2010.137.

79. Bhandari A, Dratler S, Raube K, Thulasiraj R d. Specialty Care Systems: a pioneering vision for global health. *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 2008;27(4):964–976. https://doi.org/10.1377/hlthaff.27.4.964.

80. Narayana Hrudayalaya: a model for accessible, affordable health care? knowledge@wharton. http://knowledge.wharton.upenn.edu/article/narayana-hrudayalaya-a-model-for-accessible-affordable-health-care/. Accessed June 22, 2018.

81. Samad L, Iqbal M, Tariq A, Shahzad W, Khan AJ. Equitable access to comprehensive surgical care: the potential of indigenous private philanthropy in low-income settings. *World J Surg*. 2015;39(1):21–28. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-014-2852-0.

82. Bertram MY, Lauer JA, De Joncheere K, et al. Cost–effectiveness thresholds: pros and cons. *Bull World Health Organ*. 2016;94(12):925–930. https://doi.org/10.2471/BLT.15.164418.

83. Hutubessy R, Chisholm D, Edejer TT-T. Generalized cost-effectiveness analysis for national-level priority-setting in the health sector. *Cost Eff Resour Alloc CE*. 2003;1:8. https://doi.org/10.1186/1478-7547-1-8.

84. Chao TE, Sharma K, Mandigo M, et al. Cost-effectiveness of surgery and its policy implications for global health: a systematic review and

analysis. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2014;2(6):e334–e345. https://doi.org/10.1016/S2214-109X(14)70213-X.

85. Yap A, Muzira A, Kakembo N, et al. A cost-effectiveness analysis of a pediatric operating room in Uganda. *Surgery*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.surg.2018.03.023.
86. Copenhagen Consensus Expert Panel Findings; 2012. http://www.copenhagenconsensus.com/sites/default/files/outcome_document_updated_1105.pdf. Accessed March 6, 2019.
87. Dieleman JL, Yamey G, Johnson EK, Graves CM, Haakenstad A, Meara JG. Tracking global expenditures on surgery: gaps in knowledge hinder progress. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2015;3(suppl 2):S2–4. https://doi.org/10.1016/S2214-109X(15)70075-6.
88. Shawar YR, Shiffman J, Spiegel DA. Generation of political priority for global surgery: a qualitative policy analysis. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2015;3(8):e487–e495. https://doi.org/10.1016/S2214-109X(15)00098-4.
89. Shiffman J. Four challenges that global health networks face. *Int J Health Policy Manag*. 2017;6(4):183–189. https://doi.org/10.15171/ijhpm.2017.14.
90. Dare AJ, Lee KC, Bleicher J, et al. Prioritizing surgical care on national health agendas: a qualitative case study of Papua New Guinea, Uganda, and Sierra Leone. *PLOS Med*. 2016;13(5):e1002023. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pmed.1002023.
91. Lipnick MS, Bulamba F, Ttendo S, Gelb AW. The need for a global perspective on task-sharing in anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(3):1049–1052. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000001988.
92. Mbonye AK, Mutabazi MG, Asimwe JB, et al. Declining maternal mortality ratio in Uganda: priority interventions to achieve the Millennium Development Goal. *Int J Gynecol Obstet*. 2007;98(3):285–290. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijgo.2007.05.019.
93. Epiu I, Wabule A, Kambugu A, Mayanja-Kizza H, Tindimwebwa JVB, Dubowitz G. Key bottlenecks to the provision of safe obstetric anaesthesia in low- income countries; a cross-sectional survey of 64 hospitals in Uganda. *BMC Pregnancy Childbirth*. 2017;17(1):387. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12884-017-1566-3.
94. Epiu I, Tindimwebwa JVB, Mijumbi C, et al. Working towards safer surgery in Africa; a survey of utilization of the WHO safe surgical checklist at the main referral hospitals in East Africa. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2016;16(1):60. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12871-016-0228-8.
95. Baird M, Daugherty L, Kumar KB, Arifkhanova A. *The Anesthesiologist Workforce in 2013: A Final Briefing to the American Society of Anesthesiologists*; 2014. https://www.rand.org/content/dam/rand/pubs/research_reports/RR600/RR650/RAND_RR650.pdf. Accessed April 1, 2018.
96. Baird M, Daugherty L, Kumar KB, Arifkhanova A. Regional and gender differences and trends in the anesthesiologist workforce. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(5):997–1012. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0000000000000834.
97. Abenstein J, McGlinch B, Dietz N. Is there a shortage of anesthesia personnel that limits access to rural surgical services? *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(supp 2):A1131.
98. Crandall M, Sharp D, Unger E, et al. Trauma deserts: distance from a trauma center, transport times, and mortality from gunshot wounds in Chicago. *Am J Public Health*. 2013;103(6):1103–1109. https://doi.org/10.2105/AJPH.2013.301223.
99. Holmer H, Shrime MG, Riesel JN, Meara JG, Hagander L. Towards closing the gap of the global surgeon, anaesthesiologist, and obstetrician workforce: thresholds and projections towards 2030. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2015;385(suppl 2):S40. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(15)60835-2.
100. Kempthorne P, Morriss WW, Mellin-Olsen J, Gore-Booth J. The WFSA global anesthesia workforce survey. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(3):981–990. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000002258.
101. Holmer H, Lantz A, Kunjumen T, et al. Global distribution of surgeons, anaesthesiologists, and obstetricians. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2015;3(suppl 2):S9–11. https://doi.org/10.1016/S2214-109X(14)70349-3.
102. Cherian M, Choo S, Wilson I, et al. Building and retaining the neglected anaesthesia health workforce: is it crucial for health systems strengthening through primary health care? *Bull World Health Organ*. 2010;88(8):637–639. https://doi.org/10.2471/BLT.09.072371.
103. Galukande M, Kijjambu S, Luboga S. Improving the recruitment of surgical trainees and training of surgeons in Uganda. *East Cent Afr J Surg*. 2006;11:11–24.
104. Lipnick M, Mijumbi C, Dubowitz G, et al. Surgery and anesthesia capacity-building in resource-poor settings: description of an ongoing academic partnership in Uganda. *World J Surg*. 2012;37(3):488–497. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-012-1848-x.
105. Hewitt-Smith A, Bulamba F, Ttendo S, Pappenheim K, Walker IA, Smith AF. A mixed-methods evaluation of the Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland Uganda fellowship scheme. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(3):284–294. https://doi.org/10.1111/anae.14116.
106. Nurse Anesthetist Training Programs – AIC Kijabe Hospital. http://kijabehospital.org/postgraduate-training/nurse-anesthetist-training-programs. Accessed April 27, 2018.
107. Binagwaho A, Kyamanywa P, Farmer PE, et al. The human resources for health program in Rwanda — a new partnership. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(21):2054–2059. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMsr1302176.
108. Zoumenou E, Chobli M, le Polain de Waroux B, Baele PL. Twenty years of collaboration between Belgium and Benin in training anesthesiologists for Africa. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(4):1321–1328. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000002772.
109. Thind A, Hsia R, Mabweijano J, Hicks ER, Zakariah A, Mock CN. Prehospital and emergency care. In: Debas HT, Donkor P, Gawande A, Jamison DT, Kruk ME, Mock CN, eds. *Essential Surgery: Disease Control Priorities*. 3rd ed. Vol. 1. Washington (DC): The International Bank for Reconstruction and Development / The World Bank; 2015. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK333513/. Accessed April 21, 2018.
110. Chao TE, Burdic M, Ganjawalla K, et al. Survey of surgery and anesthesia infrastructure in Ethiopia. *World J Surg*. 2012;36(11):2545–2553. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-012-1729-3.
111. World Health Organization. Tool for situational analysis to assess emergency and essential surgical care. http://www.who.int/surgery/publications/QuickSitAnalysisEESCsurvey.pdf. Accessed April 4, 2017.
112. WHO, Harvard PGSSC. WHO-PGSSC surgical assessment tool (SAT) hospital walkthrough tool. http://docs.wixstatic.com/ugd/346076_b9d8e8796eb945fe9bac7e7e35c512b1.pdf. Accessed June 7, 2017.
113. SOS PIPES Surgical Capacity Assessment tool. Surgeons Overseas. https://www.surgeonsoverseas.org/resources/. Accessed April 4, 2017.
114. Hodges SC, Mijumbi C, Okello M, McCormick BA, Walker IA, Wilson IH. Anaesthesia services in developing countries: defining the problems. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(1):4–11. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2044.2006.04907.x.
115. Evans FM, Nelson C, Lagoo J, et al. Availability of essential anesthetic medicines in resource-poor countries in Africa and Central America. Scientific Abstract. American Society of Anesthesiologists.
116. World Federation of Societies of Anaesthesiologists - anesthesia facility assessment tool (AFAT). https://www.wfsahq.org/afat. Published 2018. Accessed June 1, 2018.
117. Global Initiative for Children's Surgery (GICS). *Optimal resources for children's surgical care: guidelines for different levels of care. Version 2.0*; 2018.
118. Fast O, Fast C, Fast D, Veltjens S, Salami Z, White MC. Limited sterile processing capabilities for safe surgery in low-income and middle-income countries: experience in the Republic of Congo, Madagascar and Benin. *BMJ Glob Health*. 2017;2(suppl 4). https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjgh-2017-000428.
119. *Decontamination and Reprocessing of Medical Devices for Health-care Facilities*. ; 2016. http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/handle/10665/250232/9789241549851-eng.pdf;jsessionid=BD6887F06B8291CDBB52A6E5B49357E1?sequence=1. Accessed April 1, 2018.
120. WHO. Zambia - service availability and readiness assessment 2010, Summary report. http://apps.who.int/healthinfo/systems/datacatalog/index.php/catalog/36/reports. Accessed March 19, 2018.
121. Henry JA, Windapo O, Kushner AL, Groen RS, Nwomeh BC. A survey of surgical capacity in rural Southern Nigeria: opportunities for change. *World J Surg*. 2012;36(12):2811–2818. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-012-1764-0.
122. *Indice de disponibilite et de capacite operationnelle des services (SARA): Republique democratique du Congo*. ; 2014. http://apps.who.int/h

ealthinfo/systems/datacatalog/index.php/ddibrowser/54/download/165. Accessed April 1, 2018.

123. *Uganda Hospital and Health Centre IV Census Survey*; 2014. http://www.who.int/healthinfo/systems/SARA_H_UGA_Results_2014.pdf?ua=1. Accessed April 1, 2018.

124. Bradley BD, Light JD, Ebonyi AO, et al. Implementation and 8-year follow-up of an uninterrupted oxygen supply system in a hospital in The Gambia. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis Off J Int Union Tuberc Lung Dis*. 2016;20(8):1130–1134. https://doi.org/10.5588/ijtld.15.0889.

125. WHO medical device technical series: medical device donations - considerations for solicitation and provision. 2011. http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/44568/1/9789241501408_eng.pdf. Accessed March 19, 2018.

126. WHO Model List of Essential Medicines - 20th list. 2017. http://www.who.int/medicines/publications/essentialmedicines/20th_EML2017.pdf?ua=1. Accessed April 1, 2018.

127. Buckley GJ, Gostin LO, eds. Committee on Understanding the Global Public Health Implications of Substandard, Falsified, and Counterfeit Medical Products, Board on Global Health, Institute of Medicine. Countering the Problem of Falsified and Substandard Drugs. Washington (DC): National Academies Press (US); 2013. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK202530/. Accessed June 24, 2018.

128. WHO global surveillance and monitoring system for substandard and falsified medical products. 2017. http://www.who.int/medicines/regulation/ssffc/publications/gsms-report-sf/en/. Accessed June 24, 2018.

129. A study on the public health and socioeconomic impact of substandard and falsified medical products. http://www.who.int/medicines/regulation/ssffc/publications/se-study-sf/en/. Accessed June 24, 2018.

130. Roberts DJ, Field S, Delaney M, Bates I. Problems and approaches for blood transfusion in the developing countries. *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am*. 2016;30(2):477–495. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.hoc.2015.11.011.

131. Kralievits KE, Raykar NP, Greenberg SLM, Meara JG. The global blood supply: a literature review. *The Lancet*. 2015;385:S28. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(15)60823-6.

132. WHO | Blood safety and availability. who. http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs279/en/. Accessed April 21, 2018. https://www.who.int/en/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/blood-safety-and-availability. Accessed 3-7-19 TG.

133. Custer B, Zou S, Glynn SA, et al. Addressing gaps in international blood availability and transfusion safety in low- and middle-income countries: a NHLBI workshop. *Transfusion (Paris)*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1111/trf.14598.

134. De Lima L. Opioid availability in Latin America as a global problem: a new strategy with regional and national effects. *J Palliat Med*. 2004;7(1):97–103. https://doi.org/10.1089/109662104322737368.

135. Frye JE. *International Drug Price Indicator Guide*. 393.

136. Forbes K. Opioids: beliefs and myths. *J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother*. 2006;20(3):33–35.

137. Liliana De Lima MHA, Sakowski JA, Stratton Hill C, Bruera E. Legislation analysis according to WHO and INCB criteria on opioid availability: a comparative study of 5 countries and the state of Texas. *Health Policy*. 2001;56(2):99–110. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-8510(00)00130-5.

138. Nickerson JW, Pettus K, Wheeler KE, et al. Access to controlled medicines for anesthesia and surgical care in low-income countries: a narrative review of international drug control systems and policies. *Can J Anaesth J Can Anesth*. 2017;64(3):296–307. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12630-016-0805-9.

139. Scheck J. Tramadol: the opioid crisis for the rest of the world. *Wall Street Journal*. http://www.wsj.com/articles/tramadol-the-opioid-crisis-for-the-rest-of-the-world-1476887401. Published October 20, 2016. Accessed April 24, 2018.

140. Kusari S, Tatsimo SJN, Zühlke S, Spiteller M. Synthetic origin of tramadol in the environment. *Angew Chem Int Ed*. 55(1):240-243. doi:10.1002/anie.201508646

141. United Nations. *Single Convention on Narcotics Drugs*; 1961. https://www.unodc.org/pdf/convention_1961_en.pdf.

142. *Estimated World Requirements of Narcotic Drugs in Grams for*. ; 2017. https://www.incb.org/documents/Narcotic-Drugs/Status-of-Estimates/2017/EstAdv17_Dec._21.pdf. Accessed May 1, 2018. Acitve 3/7/19 TG.

143. Nickerson JW, Attaran A. The inadequate treatment of pain: collateral damage from the war on drugs. *PLoS Med*. 2012;9(1). https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pmed.1001153.

144. WHO Regional Office for South-East Asia (SEARO) | Pain & Policy Studies Group. http://www.painpolicy.wisc.edu/who-regional-office-south-east-asia-searo. Accessed May 4, 2018.

145. Shariff U-K. An Epidemic of Pain in India; 2013. *New Yorker* https://www.newyorker.com/tech/elements/an-epidemic-of-pain-in-india. Accessed June 22, 2018.

146. Stjernswärd J, Ferris FD, Khleif SN, et al. Jordan palliative care initiative: a WHO demonstration project. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2007;33(5):628–633. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2007.02.032.

147. Taylor AL. Addressing the global tragedy of needless pain: rethinking the United Nations single convention on narcotic drugs. *J Law Med Ethics J Am Soc Law Med Ethics*. 2007;35(4):556–570, 511. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1748-720X.2007.00180.x.

148. Krakauer EL, Nguyen TPC, Husain SA, et al. Toward safe accessibility of opioid pain medicines in Vietnam and other developing countries: a balanced policy method. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2015;49(5):916–922. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2014.10.012.

149. Vallath N, Tandon T, Pastrana T, et al. Civil society-driven drug policy reform for health and human welfare-India. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2017;53(3):518–532. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2016.10.362.

150. Joranson DE, Rajagopal MR, Gilson AM. Improving access to opioid analgesics for palliative care in India. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;24(2):152–159. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0885-3924(02)00458-X.

151. Rajagopal M, Joranson DE, Gilson AM. Medical use, misuse, and diversion of opioids in India. *The Lancet*. 2001;358(9276):139–143. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(01)05322-3.

152. Jr DGM. 'Opiophobia' Has Left Africa in Agony. *The New York Times*. https://www.nytimes.com/2017/12/04/health/opioids-africa-pain.html. Published December 4, 2017. Accessed April 15, 2018.

153. The World Bank Group. *Taking on Inequality, Poverty and Shared Prosperity 2016*; 2016. https://openknowledge.worldbank.org/bitstream/handle/10986/25078/9781464809583.pdf. Accessed May 1, 2018.

154. The International Monetary Fund World Economic Outlook (April 2019). Real GDP Growth. http://www.imf.org/external/datamapper/NGDP_RPCH@WEO/OEMDC/ADVEC/WEOWORLD. Accessed June 12, 2019.

155. *Universal health coverage in Africa: a framework for action*. ; 2016. http://www.who.int/health_financing/documents/uhc-africa-action-framework/en/. Accessed June 24, 2018.

156. The World Factbook — Central Intelligence Agency. https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ug.html. Accessed June 2, 2018.

157. Dunn P. Robert Felkin MD (1853-1926) and caesarean delivery in Central Africa (1879). *Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed*. 1999;80(3):F250–F251.

158. Billington WR. Albert Cook 1870-1951: Uganda pioneer. *Br Med J*. 1970;4(5737):738–740.

159. Statistics South Africa. http://www.statssa.gov.za/. Accessed June 24, 2018.

160. Sulla V, Zikhali P. Overcoming Poverty and Inequality in South Africa : An Assessment of Drivers, Constraints and Opportunities. *The World Bank*. 2018:1–148. http://documents.worldbank.org/curated/en-/530481521735906534/Overcoming-Poverty-and-Inequality-in-South-Africa-An-Assessment-of-Drivers-Constraints-and-Opportunities. Accessed June 24, 2018.

160a. South Africa. Dept of Health. 2018. *National Health Insurance Bill, No. 635:* For broader public comment. Government Gazette No. 41725:636 26 June.

161. SASA - South African Society of Anaesthesiologists Practice Guidelines; 2018. http://sasaweb.com/. Accessed June 24, 2018.

162. Rosseel P, Trelles M, Guilavogui S, Ford N, Chu K. Ten years of experience training non-physician anesthesia providers in Haiti. *World J Surg*. 2010;34(3):453–458. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-009-0192-2.

163. Eger II EI, Saidman L, Westhorpe R, eds. *The Wondrous Story of Anesthesia*. New York: Springer-Verlag; 2014. //www.springer.com/us/book/9781461484400. Accessed June 24, 2018.

164. Chronology of Canadian Anesthesiologists' Society Events. https://www.cas.ca/English/CAS-Chronology. Accessed June 24, 2018.

165. Fraser AB, Stodel EJ, Jee R, Dubois DA, Chaput AJ. Preparing anesthesiology faculty for competency-based medical education. *Can*

J Anaesth J Can Anesth. 2016;63(12):1364–1373. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12630-016-0739-2.

166. The Royal College of Physicians and Surgeons of Canada . Specialty education design. http://www.royalcollege.ca/rcsite/cbd/cbd-specialty-education-design-sed-e. Accessed June 24, 2018.
167. *Standard of Practice: Use of Sedation and General Anesthesia in Dental Practice*; 2015. http://www.rcdso.org/Assets/DOCUMENTS/Professional_Practice/Standard_of_Practice/RCDSO_Standard_of_Practice__Use_of_Sedation_and_General_Anesthesia.pdf. Accessed June 1, 2018.
168. Dobson G, Chow L, Chow L, Flexman A, et al. Guidelines to the Practice of Anesthesia – Revised Edition 2019. *Can J Anesth/J Can Anesth*. 2019;66:75. https:///doi-org.ucsf.idm.oclc.org/10.1007/s12630-018-1248-2.
169. *CMA Anesthesiology Profile*; 2018. https://www.cma.ca/Assets/assets-library/document/en/advocacy/profiles/anesthesiology-e.pdf. Accessed June 1, 2018.
170. Canadian Institute for Health Information. *National Health Expenditure Trends,1975 to 2017*. Ottawa, ON; CIHI; 2017.
171. Gaspar XC. El arte curativo de los Mayas y los primeros médicos de la Península de Yucatán. *México. Rev Biomed.* 1998;9(1):38–43.
172. Carillo-Esper R, Carillo-Cordova D, Carillo-Cordova J. Breve historia de la Anestesiología. *Rev Mex Anestesiol*. 2017;40:S347–S349.
173. Sanchez-Meneses S. Ramón Alfaro y la anestesia Mexicana. Historia y filosofía de la medicina. *Gac Med Mex*. 2007;143(6):525–529.
174. *ACGME Program Requirements for Graduate Medical Education in Anesthesiology*; 2017.
175. Accreditation Standards, Policies and Procedures, and Guidelines. Council on Accreditation of Nurse Anesthesia Education Programs. http://home.coa.us.com/accreditation/Pages/Accreditation-Policies-Procedures-and-Standards.aspx. Accessed June 24, 2018.
176. National Board of Certification & Recertification for Nurse Anesthetists. https://www.nbcrna.com/initial-certification. Accessed June 24, 2018.
177. 2016 Anesthesia Almanac - analytics and research services - American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA). https://www.asahq.org/resources/analytics-and-research-services. Accessed June 24, 2018.
178. Certified AANA. *Registered Nurse Anesthetists Fact Sheet*; 2017. http://www.aana.com/docs/default-source/pr-aana-com-web-documents-(all)/crna-fact-sheet.pdf?sfvrsn=c5f641b1_4.
179. Lewis SR, Nicholson A, Smith AF, Alderson P. Physician anaesthetists versus non-physician providers of anaesthesia for surgical patients. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;7:CD010357. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD010357.pub2.
180. Daugherty L, Fonseca Benito R, Kumar KB, Michaud P-C. *An Analysis of the Labor Markets for Anesthesiology*; 2010. Published https://www.rand.org/pubs/technical_reports/TR688.html. Accessed June 24, 2018.
181. Muffly MK, Muffly TM, Weterings R, Singleton M, Honkanen A. The current landscape of US pediatric anesthesiologists: demographic characteristics and geographic distribution. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(1):179–185. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000001266.
182. Creanga AA, Syverson C, Seed K, Callaghan WM. Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2011-2013. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;130(2):366–373. https://doi.org/10.1097/AOG.0000000000002114.
183. Recognition of professional qualifications in practice - growth - European commission. https://ec.europa.eu/docsroom/documents/15457/attachments/2/translations/en/renditions/pdf. Accessed June 12, 2019.
184. Egger Halbeis CB, Cvachovec K, Scherpereel P, Mellin-Olsen J, Drobnik L, Sondore A. Anaesthesia workforce in Europe. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24(12):991–1007. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0265021507000762.
185. Van Gessel E, Mellin-Olsen J, Østergaard HT, Niemi-Murola L. Education and Training Standing Committee, European Board of Anaesthesiology, Reanimation and Intensive Care. Postgraduate training in anaesthesiology, pain and intensive care: the new European competence-based guidelines. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29(4):165–168. https://doi.org/10.1097/EJA.0b013e32834da759.
186. Mellin-Olsen J, Staender S, Whitaker DK, Smith AF. The Helsinki declaration on patient safety in anaesthesiology. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27(7):592–597. https://doi.org/10.1097/EJA.0b013e32833b1adf.
187. Strømskag KE. [When anesthesia came to Norway]. *Tidsskr Den Nor Laegeforening Tidsskr Prakt Med Ny Raekke*. 2002;122(8):804–805.
188. Gisvold SE, Raeder J, Jyssum T, et al. Guidelines for the practice of anesthesia in Norway. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(8):942–946.
189. Ringvold E-M, Bekkevold M, Bruun A-MG, et al. Norwegian standard for the safe practice of anaesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2018;62(3):411–417. https://doi.org/10.1111/aas.13066.
190. Aasland OG, Røvik JO, Wiers-Jenssen J. [Motives for choice of specialty during and after medical school]. *Tidsskr Den Nor Laegeforening Tidsskr Prakt Med Ny Raekke*. 2008;128(16):1833–1837.

190a. Litarczek G, Tecău M. Tabelcronologic cu date din istoriaanesteziei. In: *Bazeleteoretice Ale Anesteziologiei. Bucureşti: Editura Academiei de Ştiinţe Medicale;* 201:15–22.

191. Brill S, Gurman GM, Fisher A. A history of neuraxial administration of local analgesics and opioids. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20(9):682–689.
192. Jonnesco T. Remarks on general spinal analgesia. *Br Med J*. 1909;2(2550):1396–1401.
193. Pearse RM, Moreno RP, Bauer P, et al. Mortality after surgery in Europe: a 7 day cohort study. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2012;380(9847):1059–1065. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(12)61148-9.
194. International Surgical Outcomes Study group. Global patient outcomes after elective surgery: prospective cohort study in 27 low-, middle- and high-income countries. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(5):601–609. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aew316.
195. Mitre C, Breazu C, Mitre I, Filipescu D. Migration of skilled anaesthesiologists from low to high-income economies: urgent action needed. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33(3):157–159. https://doi.org/10.1097/EJA.0000000000000382.
196. Divekar VM, Naik LD. Evolution of anaesthesia in India. *J Postgrad Med*. 2001;47(2):149–152.
197. Mavalankar D, Callahan K, Sriram V, Singh P, Desai A. Where there is no anesthetist--increasing capacity for emergency obstetric care in rural India: an evaluation of a pilot program to train general doctors. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet Off Organ Int Fed Gynaecol Obstet*. 2009;107(3):283–288. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijgo.2009.09.007.
198. Ashtekar SV, Kulkarni MB, Ashtekar RS, Sadavarte VS. Emergency obstetric care in a rural hospital: on-call specialists can manage C-sections. *Indian J Community Med Off Publ Indian Assoc Prev Soc Med*. 2012;37(3):180–184. https://doi.org/10.4103/0970-0218.99924.
199. Ray M. Past president's address. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2010;54(1):6–7. https://doi.org/10.4103/0019-5049.60489.
200. Agarwal A. The future of anaesthesiology. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2012;56(6):524. https://doi.org/10.4103/0019-5049.104567.
201. Haddad FS. History of anesthesia in Lebanon 1800-1914. *Middle East J Anaesthesiol*. 1982;6(5):241–280.
202. Khan M, Khan FA. Anesthetic deaths in a developing country. *Middle East J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;19(1):159–172.
203. Abayadeera A. Collaborative research for South Asia. *Anaesth Pain Intensive Care*. 2017;21:125–127.
204. Juan X, Xinqiao F, Shanglong Y, et al. Availability of anesthesia equipment in Chinese hospitals: is the safety of anesthesia patient care assured? *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(6):1249–1253. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0b013e31825018cf.
205. Yu X, Jiang J, Liu C, et al. Protocol for a multicentre, multistage, prospective study in China using system-based approaches for consistent improvement in surgical safety. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7(6):e015147. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2016-015147.
206. Zhu B, Gao H, Zhou X, Huang J. Anesthesia quality and patient safety in China: a survey. *Am J Med Qual Off J Am Coll Med Qual*. 2018;33(1):93–99. https://doi.org/10.1177/1062860617695615.
207. Li H, Zuo M, Gelb AW, et al. Chinese anesthesiologists have high burnout and low job satisfaction: a cross-sectional survey. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(3):1004–1012. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000002776.
208. Miller RD, Robbins TO, Tong MJ, Barton SL. Coagulation defects associated with massive blood transfusions. *Ann Surg*. 1971;174(5):794–801.
209. Miller RD, Tong MJ, Robbins TO. Effects of massive transfusion of blood on acid-base balance. *JAMA*. 1971;216(11):1762–1765.
210. Bangkok Anesthesia Regional Training Center | BARTC. http://www.wfsa-bartc.org/. Accessed June 25, 2018.

210a. World Bank. GDP ranking. 2019. https://datacatalog.worldbank.org/dataset/gdp-ranking. Accessed June 10, 2019.

211. JCI-Accredited Organizations. Joint Commission International. https://www.jointcommissioninternational.org/about-jci/jci-accredited-organizations/. Accessed June 25, 2018.
212. The World Factbook — Central Intelligence Agency - Gini coefficient. https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/rankorder/2172rank.html. Accessed June 25, 2018.
213. Venturini A. *Historia de la anestesia en sudamerica*; 2010. http://files.sld.cu/anestesiologia/files/2012/03/anestesia-sudamerica.pdf. Accessed June 1, 2018.
214. Historia de la Anestesia en Paraguay. http://www.clasa-anestesia.org/search/apendice/comision_historia/paraguay.htm. Accessed June 25, 2018.
215. Ponton JH. Historia de la anestesia en Colombia. *Sociedad Colombiana de Anestesiologia y Reanimacion*; 1999.
216. Ocampo B, Peña JE. IV. History of anaesthesia in Colombia: periods of development. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(3):406–409. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aet591.
217. Bacon DR, Ament R. Ralph Waters and the beginnings of academic anesthesiology in the United States: the Wisconsin Template. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7(6):534–543.
218. Cooper M. The history of anaesthesia in Australia - 150 years. *Anaesth Intensive Care J*. 1997;25(3):221.
219. Newson AJ. The contribution of newspapers and their advertisements to the history of colonial anaesthesia. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2006;34(suppl 1):39–45.
220. Wilson G. Education in anaesthesia in Australia: a centenary. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1988;16(4):448–456.
221. Department of Health. *Australia's Future Health Workforce - Anaesthesia*; 2016. http://www.health.gov.au/internet/main/publishing.nsf/Content/australias-future-health-workforce-anaesthesia-report. Accessed June 1, 2018.
222. McNicol L. *A review of anaesthesia-related mortality reporting in Australia and New Zealand*; 2017:2012–2014. http://www.anzca.edu.au/documents/soa-mortality-report_p4.pdf. Accessed June 1, 2018.
223. Perioperative Mortality Review Committee. *Perioperative Mortality in New Zealand: Sixth report of the Perioperative Mortality Review Committee*; 2017. https://www.hqsc.govt.nz/assets/POMRC/Publications/POMRC_6th_Report_2017.pdf. Accessed June 1, 2018.
224. Cooper MG, Wake PB, Morriss WW, Cargill PD, McDougall RJ. Global safe anaesthesia and surgery initiatives: implications for anaesthesia in the Pacific region. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2016;44(3):420–424.
225. Maitland K, Kiguli S, Opoka RO, et al. Mortality after fluid bolus in African children with severe infection. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364(26):2483–2495. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1101549.
226. Duke T, Peel D, Graham S, Howie S, Enarson PM, Jacobson R. Oxygen concentrators: a practical guide for clinicians and technicians in developing countries. *Ann Trop Paediatr*. 2010;30(2):87–101. https://doi.org/10.1179/146532810X12637745452356.
227. Technical specifications for oxygen concentrators. (WHO medical device technical series). http://apps.who.int/medicinedocs/en/d/Js22194en/. Accessed April 26, 2018.
228. Peel D, Neighbour R, Eltringham RJ. Evaluation of oxygen concentrators for use in countries with limited resources. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(7):706–712. https://doi.org/10.1111/anae.12260.
229. Lipnick, Feiner, Bernstein, Au, Bickler. Accuracy of six inexpensive, non-FDA cleared pulse oximeters: possible global public health implications. *Anesth Analg*. 2016.
230. Dubowitz G, Breyer K, Lipnick M, et al. Accuracy of the Lifebox pulse oximeter during hypoxia in healthy volunteers. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(12):1220–1223. https://doi.org/10.1111/anae.12382.
231. Gray A. *Atlas of Ultrasound-Guided Regional Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. 2018. https://www.elsevier.com/books/atlas-of-ultrasound-guided-regional-anesthesia/gray/978-1-4557-2819-0. Accessed May 4, 2018.
232. Sacevich C, Semakuba B, McKay WP, Thakore S, Twagirumugabe T, Nyiligira J. Subcutaneous ketamine for postoperative pain relief in Rwanda: a randomized clinical trial. *Can J Anaesth J Can Anesth*. 2018;65(2):170–177. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12630-017-1009-7.
233. Burke TF, Suarez S, Sessler DI, et al. Safety and feasibility of a ketamine package to support emergency and essential surgery in Kenya when no anesthetist is available: an analysis of 1216 consecutive operative procedures. *World J Surg*. 2017;41(12):2990–2997. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-017-4312-0.
234. Cheng D, Barreiro G, Khan F, Mellin-Olsen J. Commentary on Burke TF et al. "Safety and feasibility of a ketamine package to support emergency and essential surgery in Kenya when no anesthetist is available: an analysis of 1216 consecutive operative procedures. *World J Surg*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-017-4456-y.
235. Shukla P, Dwivedi S, Bhargava M, Singh R, Singh S. Intraoperative autologous blood transfusion of peritoneal blood during laparotomy for ectopic pregnancy: prospective study. *J Obstet Gynaecol India*. 2014;64(5):358–361. https://doi.org/10.1007/s13224-014-0534-3.
236. Nkwabong E, Takang WA, Kouam L. [Simple technique for autologous transfusion in ruptured ectopic pregnancy: report of six cases managed at the Yaoundé University Hospital in Cameroon]. *Med Sante Trop*. 2016;26(1):75–77. https://doi.org/10.1684/mst.2015.0525.
237. Kerry VB, Walensky RP, Tsai AC, et al. US medical specialty global health training and the global burden of disease. *J Glob Health*. 2013;3(2):020406. https://doi.org/10.7189/jogh.03.020406.
238. Jogerst K, Callender B, Adams V, et al. Identifying interprofessional global health competencies for 21st-century health professionals. *Ann Glob Health*. 2015;81(2):239–247. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aogh.2015.03.006.
239. Butler M, Drum E, Evans FM, et al. Guidelines and checklists for short-term missions in global pediatric surgery: recommendations from the American Academy of Pediatrics Delivery of Surgical Care Global Health Subcommittee, American Pediatric Surgical Association Global Pediatric Surgery Committee, Society for Pediatric Anesthesia Committee on International Education and Service, And American Pediatric Surgical Nurses Association, Inc. Global Health Special Interest Group. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2018;53(4):828–836. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpedsurg.2017.11.037.
240. Welling DR, Ryan JM, Burris DG, Rich NM. Seven sins of humanitarian medicine. *World J Surg*. 2010;34(3):466–470. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-009-0373-z.
241. Holm JD, Malete L. Nine problems that hinder partnerships in Africa. *The Chronicle of Higher Education*. http://chronicle.com/article/Nine-Problems-That-Hinder/65892/. Published June 13, 2010. Accessed February 17, 2011.
242. Elobu AE, Kintu A, Galukande M, et al. Evaluating international global health collaborations: perspectives from surgery and anesthesia trainees in Uganda. *Surgery*. 2014;155(4):585–592. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.surg.2013.11.007.
243. DeCamp M, Lehmann LS, Jaeel P, Horwitch C. for the ACP Ethics, professionalism and human rights committee. Ethical obligations regarding short-term global health clinical experiences: an American College of Physicians position paper. *Ann Intern Med*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.7326/M17-3361.
244. Crump JA, Sugarman J. Ethical considerations for short-term experiences by trainees in global health. *JAMA*. 2008;300(12):1456–1458. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.300.12.1456.
245. Crump JA, Sugarman J. Ethics and best practice guidelines for training experiences in global health. *Am J Trop Med Hyg*. 2010;83(6):1178–1182. https://doi.org/10.4269/ajtmh.2010.10-0527.
246. Le Phuoc. Teaching global health ethics using simulation. Poster Presentation. Presented at the. https://interprofessional.ucsf.edu/sites/interprofessional.ucsf.edu/files/wysiwyg/GH_ethics_poster_1-23-14_final_draft.pdf.
247. The Royal College of Anaesthetists. Unit of Training for working in a developing country. http://www.rcoa.ac.uk/careers-training/oope-and-oopt/working-training-developing-countries/unit-of-training-working-developing-country. Accessed August 23, 2016.
248. Tabaie S, Kaur G, Lilaonitkul M, Brumberger E, Dubowitz G, Lipnick MS. Evolving state of global health education for anesthesiology trainees. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2017;7(1):30–36. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40140-017-0194-9.

3 Perioperative Medicine

NEAL H. COHEN, MICHAEL A. GROPPER, and AMAN MAHAJAN

KEY POINTS

- The practice of anesthesiology continues to evolve with health care for patients undergoing new and, in many cases, more complicated procedures in the operating room as well as minimally invasive or interventional procedures performed in other nonoperating room settings. With the rapid growth of nonoperating room anesthesia, traditional operating room anesthesia care no longer dominates most anesthesia practices.
- The number of anesthesia subspecialties has also increased to include pediatric, cardiothoracic, obstetric, neuroanesthesia, critical care medicine, acute and chronic pain management, palliative care, and sleep medicine. Anesthesiologists' skills and expertise in subspecialties have grown paralleling the respective surgical specialties.
- The diversity of anesthesiology skills and clinical capabilities has created opportunities for anesthesiologists to take advantage of the changing healthcare environment and assume a more expansive role in perioperative care in both hospital and nonhospital settings, providing management of patients through the continuum of the perioperative or periprocedural period, and extending to home care and other settings.
- With changes in healthcare delivery, anesthesiologists will have to not only reassess current practices, but also define ways to adapt to new models of care. New approaches to care, while exciting for the specialty will be challenging to implement. While expanding the scope of practice, anesthesiologists must also continue to fulfill the traditional operating room roles and maintain the commitment to safe and high-quality intraoperative anesthesia care.
- To successfully transition to these new models of practice, anesthesiologists must acquire a more comprehensive understanding of the economics of health care and the role their perioperative care has in determining costs of care, outcomes, quality, and safety.
- The electronic health record and access to big data can serve as valuable resources in identifying opportunities to advance care and improve quality. To use the electronic record effectively will require that anesthesiologists acquire skills in biomedical informatics and data sciences to advance perioperative care.
- Public and private insurers are implementing new payment models to replace traditional fee-for-service payment for clinical care. They are transitioning from fee-for-service to "value-based" payment methodologies that better align quality, costs, and goals of care. At the same time, both government (e.g., Medicare) and private payors (e.g., insurance companies) are implementing new alternative payment models including bundled (fixed) payment methodologies designed to transfer the financial risk from patients and payors to providers, both physicians and health systems. Anesthesiologists must understand these new payment models and how they will impact clinical management and compensation for anesthesia services, particularly as anesthesia services and perioperative medicine evolve.
- Providing optimal perioperative care in the current healthcare environment requires implementation of new and creative models of value-based care that encompass the patient's entire clinical course as well as development of new partnerships and collaborations with other providers across the healthcare system. Anesthesiologists are well positioned to take a more prominent role in perioperative management, integrating their understanding of the surgical and medical needs of patients during and after surgical procedures. Concurrently, other physicians, including hospitalists, are partnering with surgeons to optimize perioperative inpatient care. Collaboration with hospitalists, medical specialists, and others is critical to improving perioperative care and in clarifying the roles anesthesiologists can play in providing value-based perioperative care. For some patient populations, co-management agreements can be executed to coordinate perioperative care and optimize transitions through the continuum of care.
- A variety of models for perioperative medicine are being successfully adopted in the United States and other countries. The perioperative surgical home (PSH) and Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS) protocols are examples of new approaches to collaborative multidisciplinary care that have demonstrated significant benefit for a number of patient populations—aligning goals for patients, providers, hospitals, and payors.

Introduction

The primary focus of anesthesia practice has traditionally been on the intraoperative management of patients undergoing surgical procedures in hospitals or ambulatory settings. Over the past few decades, anesthesiologists have been acknowledged for the significant improvement in perioperative safety and quality.[1] As a result of advances in anesthesia care as well as surgical and diagnostic capabilities, anesthesia services have expanded to include a wide variety of hospital-based and ambulatory settings outside of the operating room. While the diversity of anesthesia services has expanded, the basic elements of anesthesia care remained relatively consistent—preoperative assessment, intraoperative management, and postoperative care provided to ensure safe transition through the perioperative period. With increasing subspecialty training opportunities and changes in healthcare delivery and payment, new opportunities have developed for anesthesiologists to assume a broader role in both perioperative care and management of patients in the operating room and beyond. At the same time, the increasing capabilities and high costs of health care, particularly in the United States, is undergoing significant pressure to improve quality and safety while delivering value-based care consistent with patient wishes.[2,3] The changes create opportunities for anesthesia practices to evolve and for the role of anesthesiologists to extend beyond current clinical practices.

This chapter reviews the changes taking place in healthcare delivery and financing that create challenges and opportunities for anesthesiologists to expand their practices to incorporate concepts of perioperative medicine.

THE ANESTHESIOLOGIST AND PERIOPERATIVE MEDICINE

Perioperative medicine is an evolving field that focuses on optimizing the health and healthcare delivery of patients who will be undergoing surgery, and providing medical care for those patients following surgery. Anesthesiologists are well suited to advance their role as specialists in perioperative medicine and provide better care for surgical patients. New anesthetic techniques, monitoring capabilities, and evidence-based approaches to perioperative management have made anesthesia safer and improved the quality and safety of perioperative care.[1] Advances in surgery and development of minimally invasive techniques have had major impact on how anesthesia care is provided and expanded the locations in which anesthesia services are needed. At the same time, in part as a result of these changes, the patient population presenting for anesthesia has changed. Patients with significant underlying medical conditions who in the past were not considered candidates for surgery are now able to undergo complex surgical procedures successfully. These changes have had major impact on health systems, significantly increasing complexity and costs of care, while also putting pressure on healthcare resources including hospital bed capacity.[4,5]

For anesthesiologists, the advances in care, diversity of patients requiring anesthesia services, and the high costs of care create both new opportunities and challenges. Most significant to the practice of anesthesia has been the expansion in scope of clinical responsibilities in perioperative care of patients beyond the traditional operating room roles, and the need to improve operational efficiency in perioperative/periprocedural care and reduce costs. The challenges also provide the opportunity for anesthesiologists knowledgeable about operating room management to assume health system leadership roles and improve healthcare delivery for the surgical patients.

The change in scope of anesthesia practice is related to a number of different factors. The extension of anesthesia care to other inpatient and outpatient settings is based on management strategies and lessons learned in optimizing care in the operating room. The expansion of anesthesia services to interventional radiology, endoscopy, and cardiology suites has resulted in improved clinical management and, in some cases, better throughput.

Anesthesiologists have also modified clinical practices to optimize clinical care and improve efficiency. For example, preoperative assessment has been refined to improve clinical outcomes, but also reduce costs associated with laboratory testing and other preoperative testing that add no value.[6,7] At the same time, anesthesiologists have had a greater role in optimizing patients prior to surgery. Preoperative *management* of patients with underlying medical conditions, including diabetes, cardiopulmonary disease, and renal insufficiency, has improved the perioperative course and minimized the likelihood of postoperative complications. In some cases consultation with other medical specialists is required, but for most patients, the anesthesiologist's role is critical to optimizing the patient's conditions preoperatively as they best understand the interplay of the various perioperative variables including patient factors, anesthesia, and surgical techniques. As a key aspect of optimal perioperative medicine, anesthesiologists are able to provide postoperative management, including critical care and pain management for many of these patients based on their individual preoperative risk assessment and intraoperative course. In many respects, these changes have redefined anesthesia to encompass perioperative medicine.[8]

The expansion of anesthesia training in multiple subspecialties, as well as critical care medicine and acute and chronic pain management, also provides advanced and diverse skills that allow anesthesiologists, in collaboration with the surgical specialists, to ensure a coordinated approach to perioperative management. As a result, many anesthesia subspecialists have successfully expanded their roles in perioperative care. As one example, transplant anesthesiologists (also see Chapter 60) are often involved in discussions about patient selection, preoperative optimization, and transitions of care from the operating room to the postoperative period. Based on the collaboration of anesthesiologists, transplant surgeons, and medical specialists, anesthesiologists participate in selection discussions to provide their perspective on the perioperative implications of transplantation. For many transplant services, collaboration with the anesthesiologists has resulted in reengineering of care. Many patients who previously required postoperative care in the intensive care unit (ICU) can now bypass the ICU and have reduced hospital lengths of stay.[9] Similar outcomes have been documented for patients who have anesthesiologists participate in their perioperative management for cardiac surgery (also see Chapter 54), pediatric surgery (also see Chapters 77-79), neurosurgery (also see Chapter 57), or other subspecialties. In each of these examples, collaboration among the surgeons, anesthesiologists, and the overall team of providers both within and beyond the operating room environment is critical to realizing improved outcomes and reduced costs of care.

Anesthesiologists with advanced training in pain medicine and critical care are able to facilitate and optimize perioperative management. Pain management strategies have significant positive impact on the care of patients with both acute and chronic pain (also see Chapters 51, 80, and 82). Employing multimodal approaches to perioperative pain management, particularly for patients with longstanding chronic pain, perioperative pain medicine teams have had positive impact on perioperative outcomes, including reduced need for opioid analgesics and in some cases shortened the length of stay in hospital and improved patient satisfaction.[10-12] Similarly, critical care anesthesiologists play a large role in improving perioperative management of patients requiring ICU care. The value of the critical care physician on ICU utilization in reducing complications of mechanical ventilation, providing early diagnosis and treatment of sepsis, and improved management strategies for patients with renal dysfunction are well documented (see Chapters in 80, 84, and 85).[13-15]

An equally important factor contributing to anesthesiologists assuming greater responsibility in perioperative management is related to their knowledge of the overall perioperative environment, its complexities, and associated high costs. Advances in anesthetic management have facilitated implementation of new surgical techniques and allowed patients previously considered poor risks to undergo complex surgical procedures with good outcomes. These advances in care have contributed to the escalating cost of health care, particularly in the United States.[2] Not only are the high costs specifically related to the procedure, there are often substantial additional costs associated with complications of care, postdischarge care, and readmissions.[16,17] Anesthetic management has impact on costs of perioperative care, hospital length of stay, need for prolonged postoperative ICU stay, and other clinical outcomes. For example, intraoperative management can contribute to postoperative complications, such as pressure ulcers, central line infections, renal failure, aspiration and ventilator-associated pneumonia, cognitive dysfunction, and other complications. When these complications occur, hospitalizations are lengthy and rehabilitation (skilled nursing, physical, and rehabilitation services) needs are significant.

The need to address costs associated with managing complications of care is taking on greater importance. Over the past few years in the United States, government and private payors have raised concerns about the costs associated with managing complications of care, some of which are relevant to anesthetic management. These payors are reducing payment for costs associated with complications and denying payment for costs associated with readmissions.[18,19] As part of perioperative medicine, anesthesiologists have to identify these perioperative risks and, when clinically appropriate, identify ways to modify management to improve outcomes and reduce costs.

Another factor that has precipitated a need to address perioperative care in a more coordinated manner is the impact of changes in payment methods being implemented by both government and private payors as a way to control costs of care. In the United States, the primary method of payment to physicians remains fee based. While the implications of fee-for-service (FFS) payment methodology on quality of care and resource utilization are widely debated, FFS payment models are associated with overuse of some services, higher costs, and poor coordination of care.[20] In response to these issues, a number of alternative payment models (APMs) have been implemented including bundled payment methods and incentive-based payments associated with reduced costs of care and penalties when costs remain high. Under the Medicare Access and CHIP Reauthorization Act of 2015, Medicare has implemented a number of APMs and a Quality Payment Program that includes a Merit-Based Incentive Payment System (MIPS), each designed to compensate physicians for improving patient outcomes at reduced cost.[21] Medicare is also encouraging development of accountable care organizations (ACOs) in which health systems assume clinical and financial responsibility for managing a population of patients, improving quality, and reducing overall costs.

These changes in care management and payment methodologies have significant impact on all physicians and health systems. They shift responsibility and risk to the providers and are forcing physicians and health systems to implement value-based care. Anesthesiologists are knowledgeable about the complexities associated with perioperative care and have the ability to manage many aspects of the care and systems needed to optimize it. Consequently, they can help define new models of care and extend their role and assume greater responsibility for managing the perioperative course of some patient populations. For example, if anesthesiologists can help reduce costs during the course of care for a surgical patient, they can benefit financially under bundled payment methodologies, shared savings plans, and when participating in ACOs. Although issues related to payment methodologies are very different from one country to another and are beyond the scope of this chapter, the goals and implications of these newer payment methodologies should be understood by all anesthesiologists, since they have significant implications on the practice of anesthesia and the role for the anesthesiologist in perioperative medicine broadly.

While anesthesiologists are well suited to positively impact perioperative care, anesthesiology departments will need to adjust their focus and priorities to be better engaged in perioperative medicine. When provided in a coordinated way, perioperative care is cost effective and improves outcomes.[22] At the same time, the expansion of anesthesia practices, diversity of roles and responsibilities, and the subspecialization of anesthesia care have in some ways compromised the ability of anesthesiologists to fulfill their potential as perioperative providers. Compartmentalization of perioperative care and subspecialization have the risk of fragmenting care and undermining the development of a coordinated approach to perioperative management. At many hospitals, preoperative care is now provided in a dedicated preoperative evaluation clinic, physically separate from the operating room or other clinical sites. The evaluation is performed at some time prior to the surgical procedure; communication about the patient's status and clinical plans is most often done electronically with no face-to-face dialog or communication with the anesthesiologist who will deliver care during the procedure. Operating room care is provided by an anesthesiologist either personally or as part of the anesthesia care team model. Postoperative management—including care in the postanesthesia care unit, pain management, and ICU care—is often provided by another set of care providers. Perioperative medicine requires collaboration among all anesthesia providers, incorporating the knowledge and skills of each of the participants, including those providing preoperative management, intraoperative care, critical care, pain management, and so on. As much as each of the providers is critical to the care of the patient, the coordination of care among the anesthesiologists as a group is also a critical element in optimizing care, understanding and fulfilling the patient's goals for care, and improving efficiencies.

Perioperative Management

Throughout this text, the role of the anesthesiologist in various aspects of perioperative management is discussed. Each component is critically important to the quality, safety, and costs of care. The overall approach to care from the time a case is scheduled until the patient has recovered from anesthesia and surgery and resumed normal activities should be of concern to the anesthesiologist. Just as anesthesia as a specialty is acknowledged for advances in safety and quality in the intraoperative case, it should extend its focus and responsibility to the entire perioperative period—coordinating assessment, management, and responsibilities with the surgeons, hospitalists, other physicians, and nurses. By optimizing each of them independently and then coordinating the care across the continuum, the benefits of providing perioperative medicine will be achieved—with improved clinical outcomes, safer care, and reduced costs.

PREOPERATIVE ASSESSMENT AND MANAGEMENT

Chapter 31 emphasizes the changing patient needs and role of the anesthesiologist with respect to preoperative assessment and management. The chapter provides a more comprehensive discussion. To summarize current practices, for most healthy patients, a formal preoperative assessment is usually not required.[6,7] In fact, anesthesia providers have been able to reduce preoperative testing and other costs through the implementation of evidence-based protocols to standardize preoperative management for many patients.[7] Rather than requiring a preoperative visit, laboratory testing, and radiologic studies, most patients now have a phone consultation, often performed by a nurse practitioner to assess preoperative status and perioperative needs, and to address a patient's questions or concerns. For other patients, particularly those with underlying medical conditions or complex comorbidities, a more comprehensive evaluation and preoperative management and optimization of underlying conditions may be required.[23] For this subset of complex patients, preoperative assessment and management are an integral part of the continuum of perioperative care for which the anesthesiologist has a significant role. In some cases, additional diagnostic studies, such as an echocardiogram or focused pulmonary function studies, may be helpful in determining how best to manage a patient during the perioperative period. In this situation, interpretation of the studies may be done in coordination with a consultant or physician who has provided care to the patient preoperatively and who will resume care after the procedure is beneficial. The preoperative anesthesiologist may require a formal consultation with another specialist, such as a cardiologist, nephrologist, or pulmonary medicine physician, although these are needed for only a select few patients. For those patients with significant underlying conditions that will influence the perioperative course, particularly the postoperative recovery, referral for additional preoperative management (prehabilitation) can be helpful in optimizing their clinical status prior to proceeding with a major surgical procedure.[24-26] For most patients, the specific management strategies required to optimize the patient for anesthesia and surgery are often best defined when input is provided by the anesthesiologist who is most knowledgeable about the impact of chronic conditions on perioperative care needs as well as the implications of anesthesia on underlying physiology.

INTRAOPERATIVE (INTRAPROCEDURAL) MANAGEMENT

A number of initiatives have been implemented in hospitals throughout the world to improve intraoperative management, minimize complications, and reduce costs. The implementation of checklists has been demonstrated to improve patient safety in the operating room (also see Chapter 5).[27-29] Similarly, the routine briefing (i.e., time out) before beginning a surgical procedure reduces the incidence of wrong-site surgery, facilitates communication among providers, and ensures optimal patient care.[30] Some hospitals and surgical services also conduct debriefings at the end of each surgical procedure to define what procedure has been completed, clarify the postoperative expectations for the patient, and ensure that all supplies and materials have been appropriately retrieved from the surgical field.[31] These initiatives have reduced complications during surgery and, in some cases reduced costs of care. For example, the British National Health Service instituted "The Productive Operating Theatre" to improve productivity and patient outcomes during surgical procedures.[32,33] The program includes both briefings and debriefings to identify critical issues during and after a surgical procedure. This process has reduced errors and facilitated the transition from the operating room after a surgical procedure. Operating room utilization has increased, turnaround times shortened, and waste reduced. Significant financial savings have also resulted from this effort. The National Health Service is implementing similar initiatives in other hospital settings, such as "The Productive Ward" to build on the success achieved in the operating room environment.[34] Anesthesiologists need to be part of such initiatives that ensure there is an integrated approach to management during the intraoperative periods in order to demonstrate a significant and sustained impact on outcomes.

POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

The transition out of the operating room represents another important opportunity for anesthesiologists to enhance the quality and safety advances achieved in the operating room and improve perioperative patient outcomes. Advances in anesthesia safety have been acknowledged by the Academy of Medicine (formerly the Institute of Medicine) of the National Academy of Sciences[1] and other groups as a result of better anesthetic drugs, new anesthetic techniques, and improved monitoring. Although the incidence of intraoperative complications has been dramatically reduced, complication rates in the postoperative period remain high. The impact of variability in anesthetic practices on postoperative outcomes—beyond the immediate postoperative period—has received increasing attention for both patients who remain hospitalized and those who experience unintended and often unrecognized sequelae of anesthesia and surgery after discharge. For example, after a surgical procedure requiring tracheal intubation, a significant number of patients experience postextubation stridor or dysphagia that may last for days. These findings compromise the ability to protect the airway, particularly during sleep.[35] Does the dysphagia contribute to postoperative pneumonia that may not become clinically apparent until after discharge? Similarly, the most common healthcare–associated infections are pneumonia and surgical site infection, supporting the concept that intraoperative management is an important determinant of postoperative outcome.[36] Many other intraoperative strategies also impact long-term outcomes beyond the immediate postoperative period. Three examples support this conclusion. First is the influence of intraoperative fluid and vasopressor management on postoperative metabolic status and renal function.[37,38] Second, intraoperative glucose control can have a major impact on wound healing.[39] Finally, and more recently, anesthetic management can influence postoperative cognitive dysfunction for both adults and children.[40,41] As a result of these findings, anesthesiologists have a responsibility and an opportunity to understand the causes for these and other complications. We need to understand how anesthetic management contributes to adverse outcomes and how we can modify both intraoperative and postoperative care to reduce them.

COORDINATED PERIOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT STRATEGIES

While each of the components of perioperative care have specific requirements and approaches to optimize management, improve outcome, and potentially to reduce cost, perioperative management strategies must be assessed collectively, often using evidence-based clinical pathways to ensure that the goals of perioperative medicine are met.[42,43] Anesthesiologists have the opportunity to address these needs. To achieve these goals, however, anesthesiologists must reassess current models of care and modify some practices. One critical challenge to effectively coordinate care is the complexity of the perioperative course and management. In most clinical situations, it is no longer possible, nor appropriate, for a single anesthesia provider to participate in all aspects of the perioperative course. Perioperative, intraoperative, and postoperative care are often provided by different anesthesiologists, including pain medicine and critical care anesthesiologists in selected cases. To optimize perioperative management under this model requires improved communication and collaboration *among the anesthesia providers* as well as with others who participate in a patient's care. For some patient populations, such as geriatric patients or those with complex comorbidities, co-management agreements with other specialists can be executed to optimize care across the perioperative continuum, while clarifying roles and responsibilities.[44] The electronic health record is a valuable source of clinical information, but cannot substitute for more direct communication among providers, particularly in the management of complex clinical problems (also see Chapter 6).

The collaborative approach to care may not seem essential for healthy patients undergoing straightforward procedures. However, the value and opportunities for anesthesiologists to take a larger role in perioperative care is clearly evident for almost all patients—and the coordinated approach is appreciated by patients who are often confused about who is managing their care.[45] For example, patients undergoing "simple" procedures often have postoperative clinical issues that are underrecognized and require assessment and management. Anesthesiologists, surgeons, and nurses provide patients with instructions and information to help them manage their postoperative course, often at a time when they are not able to understand or process the information. As a result, even in these cases, the anesthesiologist can be instrumental in addressing postoperative anesthesia-related problems and coordinating the transition of the patient's care back to the primary care provider. The surgeon can provide information about the surgical procedure by forwarding the operative note to the primary care provider, but it rarely addresses any issues related to anesthetic management, concerns about the airway or potential for airway obstruction, or sequelae related to anesthetic agents, narcotics, muscle relaxants, or regional anesthetic blocks. In many cases, a phone consultation or teleconference is sufficient to address clinical needs. In other cases, a formal postoperative office visit may be required, as some anesthesia practices offer. Expansion of the postoperative assessment and management can be very helpful to patients, the surgeons, and other providers at the facilities to purvey a level of support to the patients that is often unavailable. The adoption of information technology resources and continued evolution of medical informatics (see Chapter 4) can enhance communication between patients and physicians during the entire perioperative period.

Besides the desire for a more coordinated approach to the entire perioperative course for every patient, a more formal and robust perioperative management strategy must be available for those patients with underlying medical conditions, those undergoing complex surgical procedures, and those needing prolonged hospitalization. In addition, for patients who require skilled nursing or rehabilitation services after discharge and for those needing home health services, the transitions of care create challenges for ensuring that postoperative management strategies are maintained, responses are assessed, and therapy is modified as needed. By its very nature, perioperative care for these patients is collaborative, requiring input and expertise from a number of different disciplines, including, but not limited to, anesthesia subspecialty expertise, surgeons, and medical subspecialists. Diverse perspectives and clinical expertise are essential, particularly for the more complex procedures in patients with multiple comorbidities. At the same time, the coordination of care must be assumed by a provider who is able to integrate the diverse perspectives into a comprehensive plan of care consistent with each patient's needs and goals. In the distant past, this coordination was provided by the patient's primary care provider, who maintained a role throughout the perioperative period. With the increasing complexity of perioperative care, changing demographics, and need to provide more efficient and coordinated care to reduce overall costs, the anesthesiologist has the opportunity to assume a more involved role in the management of some of these patients. To do so will require the commitment of the anesthesia practice to this new model of care and, in many cases, the acquisition of new clinical and management skills to deliver optimized care that is efficient and consistent with patient expectations.

One of the most prominent barriers for an anesthesia department to assume a greater role in perioperative management is its own members. It is imperative that there be consensus from all members of the department that a coordinated strategy is important and consistent with their expectations. To achieve department support, it is vital to clarify that perioperative management is a comprehensive approach to care that involves a diverse group of providers. Every member of the group must participate in the overall commitment to perioperative care. The care will be provided by a number of different anesthesiologists, each with different clinical expertise. One example of this coordinated approach to perioperative care is the management of a patient with a history of chronic severe pain who undergoes a complex surgical procedure. The patient will undergo extensive evaluation and optimization of care in the preoperative evaluation programs. Intraoperative care will be provided by another anesthesiologist, one who has communicated with the patient and understands all of the clinical issues identified and addressed preoperatively. When the patient is transferred to the ICU for postoperative care, which includes ventilator support, intensive respiratory care, hemodynamic monitoring, and fluid management, the transition from the anesthesiologist who provided intraoperative care to the critical care anesthesiologist is seamless. Pain management is provided by the pain service in collaboration with the critical care anesthesiologist (also see Chapters 51 and 82). The remainder of the patient's course of care will be managed by a member of the anesthesia department to facilitate transition to another care facility or home, and to ensure effective communication with the primary care provider or other caregivers. Although this model is foreign to many practices, it represents one of many approaches to optimizing perioperative management and takes advantage of the expertise of anesthesiologists in the overall care of the patients they anesthetize.

Finally, new approaches to perioperative management also require that each practice acquire the necessary operational, clinical, and financial data, as well as the analytical capability to interpret it. Larger regional and national organizations have the broad expertise available to analyze the practice and determine where improvements in processes can benefit patients and enhance the efficiency of the practice. For smaller practices, it can be challenging to have this broad level of expertise and access to information, although some have very successfully incorporated these strategies. As a consequence, in the United States there has been considerable consolidation of anesthesia practices by large regional and national organizations.[46] This consolidation has enabled the larger, often multi-institutional group to provide the resources needed to help anesthesia practices optimize perioperative management and document the value of the anesthesia services from both a clinical and financial perspective. Some groups have transitioned to multispecialty groups or recruited hospitalists or other providers to the anesthesia practice to supplement the clinical skills of the anesthesiologists so that the department has the diverse clinical and management expertise needed to optimize perioperative care. This multidisciplinary approach to perioperative care enables the group to expand its scope of practice and to develop clinical and administrative databases that allow them to document the value of their services to both patients and the institution. From an administrative perspective, this strategy better positions the practice to negotiate with representatives from the hospital or health system, particularly when advocating for the share of bundled payments. Because the administrative and analytical capabilities are essential to optimize delivery of perioperative care, each practice of whatever size will need to identify the most effective ways to develop this expertise and acquire the data needed to successfully address the many challenges facing anesthesia practices.

Models of Perioperative Care

Most health systems and providers are challenged to identify ways to become more efficient and reduce costs while maintaining or improving the quality of care, particularly perioperative care. Accomplishing these diverse goals is difficult and no single model of care works for every patient population or healthcare setting. As a result, many approaches to delivery of perioperative care have been implemented, some of these successful and some for which the outcome remains unknown. Although models of perioperative management include the anesthesiologist, other providers have participated in the preoperative and postoperative management of complex patient populations, each with variable success. Based on these experiences, the key aspects for any model for perioperative management include: (1) an understanding of the specific patient population included in the model (e.g., specific surgical procedure), (2) sufficient clinical and financial information to allow evaluation of the management strategies and their implications, and (3) coordination and collaboration among all providers participating in the model.[47] As models for perioperative management have evolved, they have taken advantage of the experiences from the hospitalist model for inpatient care and the medical home model for chronic disease management.

PATIENT-CENTERED MEDICAL HOME

The medical home model, also referred to as the "patient-centered medical home" (PCMH) refers to the model of care in which a primary care physician provides comprehensive care to improve health outcomes for a population of patients.[48] The critical element of the PCMH is the coordination of care to reduce emergency room visits and hospitalizations. In managing the patient population, a number of strategies are implemented to reduce costs and improve outcomes. These models often utilize additional providers, including advance practice nurses, respiratory therapists, physical therapists, and patient advocates to manage chronic diseases such as asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, heart failure, and diabetes mellitus. Payment for the PCMH includes FFS payments for episodes of care as well as payment to coordinate care. This model has been successful in improving care, particularly for patients with selected chronic diseases, although the financial success has not been consistently achieved.[49-51] In some cases, the PCMH actually resulted in increased hospital admissions.[52] Despite the variable success of the PCMH, there are some lessons that can be applied to perioperative care. First, preoperative assessment must be comprehensive enough to identify underlying clinical problems and effectively manage them, both preoperatively and postoperatively (also see Chapter 31). For the anesthesiologist managing the perioperative period, chronic conditions must be addressed; the management of these cannot be deferred to other providers. The implications of the perioperative needs must be taken into account when managing chronic diseases during the course of surgical care. Second, the underlying medical conditions must be considered as part of the proposed procedure and its implications for postoperative management. This broader perspective requires coordination with the surgeon and for some patients, the hospitalist, other specialists, and the primary care provider. For example, a patient with peripheral neuropathy associated with diabetes mellitus may be unable to participate in traditional approaches to rehabilitation; care must be tailored to the specific needs of each patient in consultation with others who can modify care as needed to optimize likelihood of achieving the desired outcome. Third, while participation by anesthesiologists is essential, many aspects of perioperative care can be managed by other providers, including other physicians and advance practice nurses. The keys to successful perioperative management, however, require that there be a single physician responsible for coordinating care among the team of providers, ensuring consistent and ongoing communication about patient care needs, and the availability of data that can be used to analyze clinical and business practices, costs of care, and outcome measures. The responsible provider during the perioperative period may be the anesthesiologist, surgeon, or hospitalist. As the patient recovers, the responsible provider may transition to the primary care provider, as long as there is good communication and appropriate "hand-off."

SURGICAL HOSPITALIST

Another model that has been implemented in many hospitals in the United States and other parts of the world is the surgical hospitalist model, which builds on the hospitalist model of care for inpatient medical patients. Many studies have documented the clinical values and other advantages associated with implementation of a robust hospitalist program.[53,54] Most of the programs have been focused on the care of patients with acute (and perhaps underlying chronic) medical problems rather than patients undergoing surgical procedures. For the surgical patient, the role of the surgeon is evolving for a number of reasons: the percentage of surgical inpatients is increasing, and inpatient clinical needs are becoming more complex and difficult for the surgeon to manage without additional support. As a result, many hospitals are recruiting hospitalists to provide perioperative care for surgical patients.[53,54] In some cases hospitalists work with specific surgical services (or an individual surgeon) to manage overall care and transitions of care into and out of the hospital environment. The models for surgical hospitalist programs vary, in some cases incorporating hospitalists with primary training in internal medicine or pediatrics, and in some cases, having a surgeon with interest in perioperative care take on the hospitalist role. In each model, the clinical management issues are similar, though the knowledge and skill to manage patients with complex comorbidities may differ considerably.

Many of these surgical hospitalist models have been successful in optimizing care of both underlying medical conditions and perioperative needs related to the surgical procedure. Although there is limited experience to document the effect on hospital lengths of stay and readmission rates, the models have been effective at improving timeliness of interventions, and patient and staff satisfaction.[54] For this model to be most effective requires that the surgical hospitalist be knowledgeable about the idiosyncrasies of perioperative management related to the specific surgical procedures. Their effectiveness is most evident when the care of underlying medical conditions is carefully coordinated with the other perioperative needs of the patient. For example, the neurosurgical hospitalist must understand concepts such as cerebral autoregulation and the impact of clinical interventions on cerebral hemodynamics for the patient who has undergone a neurovascular procedure. Similar considerations must be addressed for hospitalists working collaboratively with other surgical services.

The surgical hospitalist model has been very effective in allowing surgeons to concentrate their efforts in the operating room. However, the optimal relationship between the surgical hospitalist (whether a surgeon who has assumed this nonoperative responsibility or a medical hospitalist) and anesthesiologist during the immediate perioperative period has not been standardized. In some cases perioperative care is transferred from the anesthesiologist to the hospitalist in the immediate postoperative period; in other cases, care may be transferred from the anesthesiologist to an intensivist (either a critical care anesthesiologist or another intensive care physician) while the hospitalist maintains responsibility for managing some of the underlying clinical conditions. In the latter case, the roles and responsibilities of the anesthesiologist, critical care provider, and hospitalist need to be clearly defined to ensure appropriate coordination and transitions. Either model can be effective when coordination of responsibilities is clearly delineated. Another important component in the perioperative care of the patient is the transition from the inpatient to outpatient setting. When possible, there should be good communication and coordination of the transfer of care to the outpatient physician who is provided sufficient information about the intraoperative course and its implications, including any issues that arise as part of the anesthetic management that might impact postoperative management.

ENHANCED RECOVERY AFTER SURGERY

Enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) is another example of a creative approach to the perioperative management of patients who undergo major surgical procedures.[55,56] ERAS protocols are evidence-based pathways designed to improve care and outcomes as well as efficiency in the perioperative period. ERAS protocols require a multidisciplinary approach to perioperative care with particular emphasis on the entire perioperative course. The most successful ERAS programs are the ones that include participation by all of the healthcare and service providers who have a role in the perioperative course for the patient population.[57,58] Most ERAS protocols include preoperative education, perioperative antimicrobial management, pain management strategies, and early rehabilitation. In some cases, separate protocols have been initiated to address each period in the perioperative course, one to address the immediate perioperative management strategies and another to concentrate on the patient-care needs outside of the immediate postoperative period.[59] Many successful ERAS protocols have been implemented to optimize care of patients undergoing a variety of surgical procedures, including laparoscopic and other colorectal procedures, breast surgery, and urologic surgery.[60,61] Recently an ERAS protocol was implemented to optimize perioperative management of living liver donors[62] and another designed to improve perioperative management of patients undergoing elective craniotomy.[63] Each of these protocols has resulted in improved patient outcomes. For some patients, hospital lengths of stay and postoperative complications were reduced by as much as 30% and 50%, respectively[64,65]; for others postoperative pain management was improved despite administration of less opioids.[60-62,66]

As noted earlier, one of the most important features of the ERAS program, as with other pathways designed to improve perioperative care, is that the protocols are developed by a multidisciplinary group of providers that includes physicians, nurses, respiratory therapists, and others to ensure seamless coordination across the continuum from preoperative, intraoperative, and postoperative (postdischarge) periods.[67] The anesthesiologists offer essential information about key components of anesthetic management that can be modified to improve outcomes.

The outcomes associated with implementation of ERAS protocols have generally been positive for patients, providers, and health systems. In addition, the implementation of the protocols with participation of all providers involved in patient care enables a comprehensive review of the clinical course and outcomes, costs, and resource needs. The participants should be encouraged to review the clinical, financial, and other data regularly and, if appropriate, to modify the protocol to optimize care. One protocol recently implemented to improve care in colorectal surgery identified an increased incidence of acute renal injury.[68] The patients at risk for acute renal injury were those who had longer operative times and an associated diagnosis of diverticulitis. The findings emphasized a need to reassess the management strategies and to implement a goal-directed approach to fluid management intraoperatively and postoperatively. Follow-up will be required to determine if these changes in the protocol will be successful. These findings, however, emphasize the need to not only work collaboratively during the development of the protocol, but also review the experiences after implementation and modify the protocol when adverse outcomes occur.

Based on experiences with many of the ERAS protocols initiated to date, this approach to refining and improving care has been successful in improving outcomes and lowering costs. From a healthcare economic perspective, the ERAS protocols represent a value-based approach to optimizing care.[55] The development of the protocols give anesthesiologists an opportunity to engage in discussions with surgeons and other providers involved in the patients' care about how to optimize perioperative care and how to modify anesthesia practice and pain management strategies to facilitate recovery and potentially reduce complications. At the same time, while the reported improvements in outcome are impressive, anesthesiologists and other providers should ensure that outcome measures of most importance to patients are incorporated into future ERAS protocols in order to enhance their value.[58,69]

PERIOPERATIVE SURGICAL HOME

The expanding roles identified for anesthesiologists provide the foundation and framework upon which they can take on even broader roles as perioperative physicians.[70-72] The American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) in collaboration with other medical specialties has developed the perioperative surgical home (PSH) as a model for coordinating care throughout the entire perioperative period.[73-75] Many of the concepts incorporated into the PSH are built on the same foundation as those incorporated into the PCMH model. The PCMH is designed to better manage patients with complex medical problems and comorbidities in the outpatient setting,[49-51] whereas the PSH emphasizes clinical management of the patient from the time of scheduling of a surgical procedure through the entire perioperative period. The PSH is designed to specifically optimize outcomes during and after surgery, and to facilitate the transition of the patient back to the primary care provider. As with PCMH, the concept of the PSH model is to provide patient-focused care, consistent with patient goals and expectations. The goal for the PSH is to develop evidence-based clinical pathways designed to improve outcomes, and reduce overall costs-of-care across the continuum, including costs associated with home care and skilled nursing facilities.[76] Although the goals for implementation of the perioperative surgical home are clear, there is no single model nor list of specific guidelines one can follow when implementing a PSH. For some PSH models, the anesthesiologist assumes primary responsibility, whereas in other cases the surgeon is the lead provider. For some PSH models, co-management agreements with other providers has facilitated coordination of care and resulted in fewer surgical cancellations, less complications, lower lengths of stay, and fewer readmissions. For many PSH experiences, even when the anesthesiologist assumes a major role in the overall care of planning and execution, input from other providers (including hospitalist or medical subspecialist) is obtained based on the clinical needs of the patient. The collaborative relationships that are developed under the PSH extend to the care of other patients and provide the opportunity for other providers to better understand the skills, roles, and responsibilities of the anesthesiologists. These relationships are also critically important in representing the value anesthesiologists have under bundled payment models.

Although the goals for the PSH and ERAS protocols have some similarities, the components and overall goals for the PSH are somewhat broader than the expected outcomes for ERAS protocols. As proposed by the ASA, the PSH has the following major goals:

- identify the patient and proposed plans;
- facilitate communication among the surgeons, anesthesiologists, and others as needed to coordinate care;
- provide thorough preoperative assessment and develop a care plan, including management strategies for associated diseases;
- develop and implement evidence-based protocols for clinical care throughout the perioperative period;
- manage clinical care across the continuum; and
- measure and publicly report outcomes and performance.

The fundamental components of the PSH are clearly desirable goals and build on many of the basic concepts of perioperative medicine. The PSH is generally more comprehensive, requires thoughtful leadership and institutional commitment beyond what is often required for an ERAS protocol designed to reengineer care for a focused surgical procedure.[76,77]

A number of examples of the PSH model have been successfully implemented for selected patient populations with impressive results.[78,79] Some are relatively straightforward evidence-based strategies to optimize perioperative care, whereas others are more comprehensive. The process for developing a PSH can be cumbersome and requires a great deal of coordination across both inpatient and outpatient settings and, in some cases, participation of different healthcare systems. The model requires a designated physician leader who has responsibility for overseeing the continuum of perioperative care. To implement a successful PSH requires that the physician champion have some training and experience in process improvement strategies.[80] The model also requires support from other providers, particularly surgeons and hospital administrators.[81] Although the PSHs have been implemented in a variety of healthcare settings, the most comprehensive models can be successfully implemented in "closed" healthcare systems, such as the Veterans Administration, Kaiser, and other fully integrated delivery models.[79,82-84] The implementation is more challenging when the PSH requires participation of providers and facilities from multiple different environments, as may be required for patients needing rehabilitation, skilled nursing, or home care.

Despite these constraints, the implementation of the PSH has been successful with improved clinical care, reduced costs, shorter lengths of stay, fewer hospital readmissions, and both provider and patient satisfaction. The fundamental components of the PSH are clearly desirable goals and build on many of the basic concepts described for perioperative medicine. The model has promise in addressing the challenges associated with care to patients with complicated medical problems who are scheduled to undergo a complex surgical procedure. How effectively this model can be expanded to address this broader patient population and engage more providers and health systems is still to be determined.[77,85]

Conclusion

Perioperative care continues to evolve, in large part because of the advances made in surgical and anesthesia management of patients undergoing complex procedures in the operating room and nonoperating room settings. Surgical procedures are now commonly performed on patients with underlying medical conditions that impact anesthetic and surgical management. At the same time, and, in part as a result of the changing patient population, the cost of care continues to escalate. Payors are concerned about the increasing costs of care and, in some cases, point to the lack of evidence to support some costly clinical practices. Medicare and some private payors are transitioning to MIPS with associated incentives for providing value-based care and penalties for poor performance.[86] At the same time, providers are being asked to assume greater risk by providing bundled payment for selected diagnoses. To address these dramatic shifts in payment and concerns about the overall costs of surgical care, new models of perioperative care and implementation of clinical pathways based on evidence have evolved. These new models of care require better cooperation and coordination among all providers. The concepts behind perioperative medicine provide the framework upon which to reengineer care to address these challenges. Although no single strategy is appropriate for all clinical settings and patient needs, the one critical component of perioperative medicine is the need to implement a model of care that ensures coordination, collaboration, and improved transitions across the continuum from preoperative assessment and management to postoperative rehabilitation. These elements provide the opportunity for anesthesiologists and anesthesia departments to expand their scope of practice, building on the successes in improving intraoperative quality and safety. A number of alternative approaches to optimizing perioperative care may be appropriate and in all likelihood, multiple strategies will be required to address the idiosyncrasies of each patient population, surgical procedure, and institutional capabilities. The PSH is an example of a new creative model that might have significant benefit for selected patient populations; aligning patient's, provider's, hospital's, and payor's goals; and significantly improving perioperative care by building on the experience and successes of other approaches including ERAS, the surgical hospitalist model, and the PSH. To successfully assume an expanded role, anesthesiologists will have to build on their clinical expertise, and will have to acquire and analyze data on outcomes and costs to document that the new models of perioperative care are fulfilling the needs of all providers, health systems, payors, and, most importantly, patients.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Committee on Quality of Care in America. *Institute of Medicine: To Err is Human: Building a Safer Health System*. Washington: National Academy Press; 2000.
2. Papanicolas I, et al. *JAMA*. 2018;319(10):1024–1039.
3. Patel AS, et al. *Appl Health Econ Health Policy*. 2013;11:577.
4. McCrum ML, et al. *Med Care*. 2014;52(3):235–242.
5. Song PH, et al. *J Healthc Manag*. 2017;62(3):186–194.
6. Bader AM, et al. *Cleve Clin J Med*. 2009;76(suppl 4):S104.
7. Correll DJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:1254.
8. Rock P. *Anesthesiology Clin NA*. 2000;18:495–513.
9. Taner CB, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2012;18:361–369.
10. Garimella V, Cellini C. *Clin Colon Rectal Surg*. 2013;26:191–196.
11. Ilfeld BM, et al. *Pain*. 2010;150:477–485.
12. Rivard C, et al. *Gynecol Oncol*. 2014.
13. Hashemian SM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:979–980.
14. Shiramizo SC, et al. *PLoS One*. 2011;6:e26790.
15. Ferrer R, Artigas A. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2011;77:360–365.
16. Deepa C, Muralidhar K. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2012;28:386–396.
17. Bozic KJ. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2014;472:188–193.
18. Mattie AS, Webster BL. *Health Care Manag*. 2008;27:338–349.
19. Teufack SG, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2010;112:249–256.
20. Vats S, et al. *Med Care*. 2013;51:964–969.
21. Medicare QPP Resource Library. https://qpp.cms.gov/about/resource-library. Accessed December 31, 2018
22. Vetter TR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1450–1458.
23. Ferschl MB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:855.
24. Carli F, Scheede-Bergdahl C. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2015;33(1):17–33.
25. Vlisides PE, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2018.
26. West MA, et al. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2017;7(4):340–349.
27. Cullati S, et al. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2013;22:639–646.
28. Millat B. *J Visc Surg*. 2012;149:369.
29. Rateau F, et al. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2011;30:479.
30. Khoshbin A, et al. *Can J Surg*. 2009;52:309.
31. Ahmed M, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2013;258:958.
32. Ahmed K, et al. *Urol Int*. 2013;90:417.
33. Gilmour D. *J Perioper Pract*. 2009;19:196.
34. Bloodworth K. *J Perioper Pract*. 2011;21:97.
35. Skoretz SA, et al. *Chest*. 2010;137:665.
36. Magill SS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1196.
37. Adanir T, et al. *Int J Surg*. 2010;8:221–224.
38. Canet E, Bellomo R. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2018;24(6):568–574.
39. Endara ML, et al. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2013;132:996.
40. Monk TG, Price CC. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2011;17:376.
41. Millar K, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24:201.
42. Rieth EF, et al. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2018;8(4):368–374.
43. Soffin EM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
44. Adogwa O, et al. *J Neurosurg Spine*. 2017;27(6):670–675.
45. Wang MC, et al. *J Ambul Care Manage*. 2015;38(1):69–76.
46. https://www.abeo.com/anesthesia-mergers-understand-and-thrive/. Accessed December 31, 2018
47. Martin J, Cheng D. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60:918.
48. Robeznieks A. *Mod Healthc*. 2013;43(6):18–19.
49. Graham J, et al. *Patient Saf Surg*. 2014;8(7).
50. Schwenk TL. *JAMA*. 2014;311:802.
51. Kociol RD, et al. *JACC Heart Fail*. 2013;1:445.
52. Kuo YFL, Goodwin JS. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2010;58:1649.
53. Auerbach AD, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2004;170:2010.
54. Rohatgi N, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2016;264(2):275–282.
55. Ljungqvist O. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr*. 2014.
56. Oda Y, Kakinohana M. *J Anesth*. 2014;28:141.
57. Ljungqvist O, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2017;152:292–298.
58. Abola RE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(6):1874–1882.
59. Merchea A, Larson DW. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2018;98(6):1287–1292.
60. Lemini R, et al. *Int J Colorectal Dis*. 2018;33(11):1543–1550.
61. Rojas KE, et al. *Breast Cancer Res Treat*. 2018;171(3):621–626.
62. Khalil A, et al. *Clin Transplant*. 2018;32(8):e13342.
63. Wang Y, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2018:1–12.
64. Fierens J, et al. *Acta Chir Belg*. 2012;112:355.
65. Lee L, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259:670.
66. Brandal D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(5):1784–1792.
67. Persice M, et al. *J Perianesthe Nurs*. 2018.
68. Marcotte JH, et al. *Int J Colorectal Dis*. 2018;33(9):1259–1267.
69. Fleisher LA, Ko CY. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(6):1801–1802.
70. Longnecker DE. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:736.
71. Miller RD. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:714.
72. Kain ZN, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(5):1155–1157.
73. Perioperative surgical home. http://www.periopsurghome.info/index.php. Accessed March 28, 2014.
74. Paloski D: Forum Focus—Perioperative Surgical Home Model AHA Physician Forum 7/3/13. http://www.ahaphysicianforum.org/news/enews/2013/070313.html. Retrieved March 30, 2014.
75. Vetter TR. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2018;36(4):677–687.
76. Vetter TR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(5):1131–1136.
77. Vetter TR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(5):968–973.
78. Qiu C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:597–606.
79. Walters TL, et al. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;20:133–140.
80. Mariano ER, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(5):1443–1445.
81. Butterworth JF, Green JA. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:896–897.
82. Alvis BD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(5):1526–1531.
83. Mariano ER, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120:1163–1166.
84. Mahajan A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(1):333–341.
85. Vetter TR, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2013;13:6.
86. Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS). HHS. Medicare Program; Merit-Based Incentive Payment System (MIPS) and Alternative Payment Model (APM) incentive under the physician fee schedule, and criteria for physician-focused payment models. Final rule with comment period. *Fed Regist*. 2016;81(214):77008–77831.

References

1. Committee on Quality of Care in America. *Institute of Medicine: To Err is Human: Building a Safer Health System*. Washington: National Academy Press; 2000.
2. Papanicolas I, Woskie LR, Jha AK. Health care spending in the United States and other high-income countries. *JAMA*. 2018;319(10):1024–1039.
3. Patel AS, Bergman A, Moore BW, Haglund U. The economic burden of complications occurring in major surgical procedures: a systematic review. *Appl Health Econ Health Policy*. 2013;11:577–592.
4. McCrum ML, Lipsitz SR, Berry WR, Jha AK, Gawande AA. Beyond volume: does hospital complexity matter?: an analysis of inpatient surgical mortality in the United States. *Med Care*. 2014;52(3):235–242.
5. Song PH, Reiter KL, Yi Xu W. High-tech versus high-touch: components of hospital costs vary widely. *J Healthc Manag*. 2017;62(3):186–194.
6. Bader AM, Sweitzer B, Kumar A. Nuts and bolts of preoperative clinics: the view from three institutions. *Cleve Clin J Med*. 2009;76(suppl 4):S104–111.
7. Correll DJ, Bader AM, Hull MW, Hsu C, Tsen LC, Hepner DL. Value of preoperative clinic visits in identifying issues with potential impact on operating room efficiency. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:1254–1259.
8. Rock P. The future of anesthesiology is perioperative medicine. *Anesthesiology Clin NA*. 2000;18:495–513.
9. Taner CB, Willingham DL, Bulatao IG, et al. Is a mandatory intensive care unit stay needed after liver transplantation? Feasibility of fast-tracking to the surgical ward after liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl*. 2012;18:361–369.
10. Garimella V, Cellini C. Postoperative pain control. *Clin Colon Rectal Surg*. 2013;26:191–196.
11. Ilfeld BM, Mariano ER, Girard PJ, et al. A multicenter, randomized, triple-masked, placebo-controlled trial of the effect of ambulatory continuous femoral nerve blocks on discharge-readiness following total knee arthroplasty in patients on general orthopaedic wards. *Pain*. 2010;150:477–485.
12. Rivard C, Dickson EL, Vogel RI, Argenta PA, Teoh D. The effect of anesthesia choice on post-operative outcomes in women undergoing exploratory laparotomy for a suspected gynecologic malignancy. *Gynecol Oncol*. 2014.
13. Hashemian SM, Mohajerani SA, Jamaati HR. Ventilator-induced lung injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:979–980.
14. Shiramizo SC, Marra AR, Durão MS, Paes ÂT, Edmond MB, Pavão dos Santos OF. Decreasing mortality in severe sepsis and septic shock patients by implementing a sepsis bundle in a hospital setting. *PLoS One*. 2011;6. e26790. [Epub 2011 Nov 3].
15. Ferrer R, Artigas A. Effectiveness of treatments for severe sepsis: data from the bundle implementation programs. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2011;77:360–365.
16. Deepa C, Muralidhar K. Renal replacement therapy in ICU. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2012;28:386–396.
17. Bozic KJ, Ward L, Vail TP, Maze M. Bundled payments in total joint arthroplasty: targeting opportunities for quality improvement and cost reduction. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2014;472:188–193. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed?term=Teufack%20SG%5BAuthor%5D&cauthor=true&cauthor_uid=19681681.
18. Mattie AS, Webster BL. Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services' "never events": an analysis and recommendations to hospitals. *Health Care Manag*. 2008;27:338–349.
19. Teufack SG, Campbell P, Jabbour P, Maltenfort M, Evans J, Ratliff JK. Potential financial impact of restriction in "never event" and periprocedural hospital-acquired condition reimbursement at a tertiary neurosurgical center: a single-institution prospective study. *J Neurosurg*. 2010;112:249–256.
20. Vats S, Ash AS, Ellis RP. Bending the cost curve? Results from a comprehensive primary care payment pilot. *Med Care*. 2013;51:964–969.
21. Medicare QPP Resource Library. https://qpp.cms.gov/about/resource-library. Accessed December 31, 2018.
22. Vetter TR, Barman J, Hunter JM Jr, Jones KA, Pittet JF. The effect of implementation of preoperative and postoperative care elements of a perioperative surgical home model on outcomes in patients undergoing hip arthroplasty or knee arthroplasty. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1450–1458.
23. Ferschl MB, Tung A, Sweitzer B, Huo D, Glick DB. Peroperative clinic visits reduce operating room cancellations and delays. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:855–859.
24. Carli F, Scheede-Bergdahl C. Prehabilitation to enhance perioperative care. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2015;33(1):17–33.
25. Vlisides PE, Das AR, Thompson AM, et al. Home-based cognitive prehabilitation in older surgical patients: a feasibility study. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2018. Dec 14 Epub.
26. West MA, Wischmeyer PE, Grocutt MPW. Prehabilitation and nutritional support to improve perioperative outcomes. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2017;7(4):340–349.
27. Cullati S, Le Du S, Raë AC, et al. Is the Surgical Safety Checklist successfully conducted? An observational study of social interactions in the operating rooms of a tertiary hospital. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2013;22:639–646. [Epub 2013 Mar 8].
28. Millat B. The check list: a useful tool for the entire operation room team. *J Visc Surg*. 2012;149:369–370. [Epub 2012 Nov 23].
29. Rateau F, Levraut L, Colombel AL, et al. Check-list "Patient Safety" in the operating room: one year experience of 40,000 surgical procedures at the university hospital of Nice. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2011;30:479–483. [Epub 2011 May 23].
30. Khoshbin A, Lingard L, Wright JG. Evaluation of preoperative and perioperative operating room briefings at the Hospital for Sick Children. *Can J Surg*. 2009;52:309–315.
31. Ahmed M, Arora S, Russ S, Darzi A, Vincent C, Sevdalis N. Operation debrief: a SHARP improvement in performance feedback in the operating room. *Ann Surg*. 2013;258:958–963.
32. Ahmed K, Khan N, Anderson D, et al. Introducing the productive operating theatre programme in urology theatre suites. *Urol Int*. 2013;90:417–421. [Epub 2013 Mar 28].
33. Gilmour D. The productive operating theatre programme. *J Perioper Pract*. 2009;19(7):196.
34. Bloodworth K. The productive ward and the productive operating theatre. *J Perioper Pract*. 2011;21:97–103.
35. Skoretz SA, Flowers HL, Martino R. The incidence of dysphagia following endotracheal intubation: a systematic review. *Chest*. 2010;137:665–673.
36. Magill SS, Edwards JR, Bamberg W, et al. Multistate point-prevalence survey of health care-associated infections. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1196–1208.
37. Adanir T, et al. The relationship between vasopressor dose and anastomotic leak in colon surgery. *Int J Surg*. 2010;8:221–224.
38. Canet E, Bellomo R. Perioperative renal protection. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2018;24(6):568–574.
39. Endara M, Masden D, Goldstein J, Gondek S, Steinberg J, Attinger C. The role of chronic and perioperative glucose management in high-risk surgical closures: a case for tighter glycemic control. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2013;132:996–1004.
40. Monk TG, Price CC. Postoperative cognitive disorders. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2011;17:376–381.
41. Millar K, Bowman AW, Burns D, et al. Children's cognitive recovery after day-case general anesthesia: a randomized trial of propofol or isoflurane for dental procedures. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24:201–207. [Epub 2013 Dec 11].
42. Rieth EF, Fischer GW, Afonso AM. Organization of multidisciplinary cancer care for the surgical patient: role of anesthesiologists. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2018;8(4):368–374.
43. Soffin EM, Gibbons MM, Ko CY, et al. Evidence review conducted for the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality Safety Program for improving surgical care and recovery: focus on anesthesiology for total knee replacement. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
44. Adogwa O, Elsamadicy AA, Vuong VD, et al. Geriatric comanagement reduces perioperative complications and shortens duration of hospital stay after lumber spine surgery: a prospective single-institution experience. *J Neurosurg Spine*. 2017;27(6):670–675.
45. Wang MC, Mosen D, Shuster E, Bellows J. Association of patient-reported care coordination with patient satisfaction. *J Ambul Care Manage*. 2015;38(1):69–76.
46. https://www.abeo.com/anesthesia-mergers-understand-and-thrive/. Accessed December 31, 2018
47. Martin J, Cheng D. Role of the anesthesiologist in the wider governance of healthcare and health economics. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60:918–928. [Epub 2013 Jul 3].

48. Robeznieks A. Finding their way home. Despite mixed evidence, providers and payers are adopting patient-centered medical homes to improve health and cut costs. *Mod Healthc*. 2013;43(6-7):18–19.
49. Graham J, Bowen TR, Strohecker KA, Irgit K, Smith WR. Reducing mortality in hip fracture patients using a perioperative approach and "Patient- Centered Medical Home" model: a prospective cohort study. *Patient Saf Surg*. 2014;8:7.
50. Schwenk TL. The patient-centered medical home: one size does not fit all. *JAMA*. 2014;311:802–803.
51. Kociol RD, Hammill BG, Fonarow GC, et al. Associations between use of the hospitalist model and quality of care and outcomes of older patients hospitalized for heart failure. *JACC Heart Fail*. 2013;1:445–453. [Epub 2013 Sep 11].
52. Kuo YF, Goodwin JS. Effect of hospitalists on length of stay in the medicare population: variation according to hospital and patient characteristics. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2010;58:1649–1657.
53. Auerbach AD, Wachter RM, Cheng HQ, et al. Comanagement of surgical patients between neurosurgeons and hospitalists. *Arch Intern Med*. 2010;170:2004–2010.
54. Rohatgi N, Loftus P, Grujic O, Cullen M, Hopkins J, Ahuja N. Surgical comanagement by hospitalists improves patient outcomes: a propensity score analysis. *Ann Surg*. 2016;264(2):275–282.
55. Ljungqvist O. ERAS-enhanced recovery after surgery: moving evidence-based perioperative care to practice. *J Parenter Enteral Nutr*. 2014.
56. Oda Y, Kakinohana M. Introduction of ERAS(®) program into clinical practice: from preoperative management to postoperative evaluation : opening remarks. *J Anesth*. 2014;28:141–142. [Epub 2013 Dec 4].
57. Ljungqvist O, Scott M, Fearon KC. Enhanced recovery after surgery: a review. *JAMA Surg*. 2017;152:292–298.
58. Abola RE, Bennett-Guerrero E, Kent ML, et al. American Society for Enhanced Recovery and Perioperative Quality Initiative Joint Consensus Statement on patient-reported outcomes in enhanced recovery pathway. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(6):1874–1882.
59. Merchea A, Larson DW. Enhanced recovery after surgery and future directions. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2018;98(6):1287–1292.
60. Lemini R, Spaulding AC, Naessens JM, et al. *Int J Colorectal Dis*. 2018;33(11):1543–1550.
61. Rojas KE, Manasseh DM, Flom PL, et al. A pilot study of a breast surgery enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) protocol to eliminate narcotic prescription at discharge. *Breast Cancer Res Treat*. 2018;171(3):621–626.
62. Khalil A, Ganesh S, Hughes C, et al. Evaluation of the enhanced recovery after surgery protocol in living liver donors. *Clin Transplant*. 2018 Aug;32(8):e13342. [Epub 2018 Jul 24].
63. Wang Y, Liu B, Zhao T, et al. Safety and efficacy of a novel neurosurgical enhanced recovery after surgery protocol for elective craniotomy: a prospective randomized controlled trial. *J Neurosurg*. 2018 Jun 22:1–12. [Epub ahead of print].
64. Fierens J, Wolthuis AM, Penninckx F, D'Hoore A. Enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) protocol: prospective study of outcome in colorectal surgery. *Acta Chir Belg*. 2012;112:355–358.
65. Lee L, Li C, Landry T, et al. A systematic review of economic evaluations of enhanced recovery pathways for colorectal surgery. *Ann Surg*. 2013.
66. Brandal D, Keller MS, Lee C, et al. Impact of enhanced recovery after surgery and opioid-free anesthesia on opioid prescriptions at discharge from the hospital: a historical-prospective study. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(5):1784–1792.
67. Persice M, Miller D, Way C, et al. Implementation of enhanced recovery after surgery in a community hospital: an evidence-based approach. *J Perianesthe Nurs*. 2018.
68. Marcotte JH, Patel K, Desia R, et al. Acute renal injury following implementation of an enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) protocol in colorectal surgery. *Int J Colorectal Dis*. 2018;33(9): 1259–1267.
69. Fleisher LA, Ko CY. Enhanced recovery after surgery: is it time to drive patient-reported outcomes through robust measurement? *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(6):1801–1802.
70. Longnecker DE. Navigation in uncharted waters. Is anesthesiology on course for the 21st century? *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:736–742.
71. Miller RD. The pursuit of excellence: the 47th annual Rovenstine Lecture. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:714–720.
72. Kain ZN, Hwang J, Warner MA. Disruptive innovation and the specialty of anesthesiology: the case for the perioperative surgical home. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(5):1155–1157.
73. Perioperative surgical home. http://www.periopsurghome.info/index.php; asahq.org. Accessed March 28, 2014
74. Paloski D, Forum Focus – Perioperative Surgical Home Model AHA Physician Forum 7/3/13. http://www.ahaphysicianforum.org/news/enews/2013/070313.html. Retrieved March 30, 2014
75. Vetter TR. Perioperative surgical home models. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2018;36(4):677–687.
76. Vetter TR, Boudreaux AM, Jones KA, Hunter JM Jr, Pittet JF. The perioperative surgical home: how anesthesiology can collaboratively achieve and leverage the triple aim in health care. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(5):1131–1136.
77. Vetter TR, Pittet JF. The perioperative surgical home: a panacea or pandora's box for the specialty of anesthesiology? *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(5):968–973.
78. Qiu C, Cannesson M, Morkos A, et al. Practice and outcomes of the perioperative surgical home in a California integrated delivery system. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:597–606.
79. Walters TL, Howard SK, Kou A, et al. Design and implementation of a perioperative surgical home at a Veterans Affairs Hospital. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;20:133–140.
80. Mariano ER, Vetter TR, Kain ZN. The perioperative surgical home is not just a name. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(5):1443–1445.
81. Butterworth JF, Green JA. The anesthesiologist-directed perioperative surgical home: a great idea that will succeed only if it is embraced by hospital administrators and surgeons. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:896–897.
82. Alvis BD, King AB, Pandharipande PP, et al. Creation and execution of a novel anesthesia perioperative care service at a veterans affairs hospital. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(5):1526–1531.
83. Mariano ER, Walters TL, Kim TE, Kain ZN. Why the perioperative surgical home makes sense for veterans affairs health care. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120:1163–1166.
84. Mahajan A, Islam SD, Schwartz MJ, Cannesson M. A hospital is not just a factory, but a complex adaptive system-implications for perioperative care. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(1):333–341.
85. Vetter TR, Goeddel LA, Boudreaux AM, Hunt TR, Jones KA, Pittet JF. The perioperative surgical home: how can it make the case so everyone wins? *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2013;13:6.
86. Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS). HHS. Medicare Program; Merit-Based Incentive Payment System (MIPS) and Alternative Payment Model (APM) incentive under the physician fee schedule, and criteria for physician-focused payment models. Final rule with comment period. *Fed Regist*. 2016;81(214):77008–77831.

4

Informatics in Perioperative Medicine

DOUGLAS A. COLQUHOUN, NIRAV J. SHAH, and
SACHIN K. KHETERPAL

KEY POINTS

- Individual computers are connected via networks to share information across many users.
- Information security is about ensuring that the correct information is available only to the correct users at the correct time.
- Healthcare information storage and exchange is regulated to protect patient privacy.
- Information regarding the provision of anesthesia care is highly structured and organized compared to most healthcare specialties.
- Anesthesia care documentation systems have evolved in complexity and are now widely adopted in the perioperative care of patients in the United States.
- Benefits of electronic documentation of anesthesia care typically emerge from integration with monitoring, scheduling, billing, and enterprise electronic health record (EHR) systems.
- Active and passive decision-support tools may suggest typical courses of action or call to attention patterns that are not apparent to the clinician.
- Secondary use of EHR data is valuable in understanding the impact of clinical decisions on patient outcomes and the measurement of quality of care.
- Electronic devices may act as distractions within the operating room (OR) care environment.

Introduction

Computers have become ubiquitous in modern life. Their use has penetrated every medical field and the practice of perioperative care is no different. Computers have given rise to the academic discipline of informatics, the study of information creation, storage, handling, manipulation, and presentation. Within health care this is referred to as medical, biomedical, or clinical informatics.

Computer Systems

At their most basic, computer systems are complex electronic circuits that perform mathematical operations (add, subtract, multiply, divide, and compare) on information available to them. Even the most complicated computer systems consist of these operations repeated millions of times per second, which collectively generate the activity specified by the user. Every operation performed within the computer begins with the retrieval of information in the memory, a mathematical operation within the processor, and the storage of the output of that operation back to the memory. This cycle of retrieval, processing, and storage repeats millions of times per second.

Software applications execute the instructions that a computer uses to process information. The operating system is the fundamental software that controls the communication among the components of the computer. The operating system controls the order in which a processor completes tasks, allocates memory among different applications, provides a structure for organizing files in the long-term storage, controls access to files, determines which applications may run, and manages the interaction between the user and the computer. Modern operating systems provide graphic interfaces that act as paradigms to describe the organization of information and methods of user-specified computer action.

A software application is a set of instructions for a computer designed to perform a specific set of tasks. Electronic health record (EHR) software is an example of a software application. Software may (via the operating system) interact with external hardware devices, data held in long-term storage, and the user by way of input devices and display devices.

Because of the proliferation of mobile devices, traditional laptop or desktop computer systems have been supplanted in many environments by tablets or smartphone computers. These devices are structurally similar to traditional computing devices; however, the operating systems and software applications feature user interfaces that have been re-engineered to support use by touch screen or voice control operation. These devices trade off computational power, portability (size- and weight-related), and duration of operation (battery power).

Computer Networks

Networks are the means for the exchange of information among computers, enabling the sharing of resources. These networks may be established using wireless (e.g., microwave radio spectrum) or wired connections (Fig. 4.1). Dedicated hardware (equipment) controls the sending and receiving of information across these links, with specialized devices required to ensure that information is sent correctly

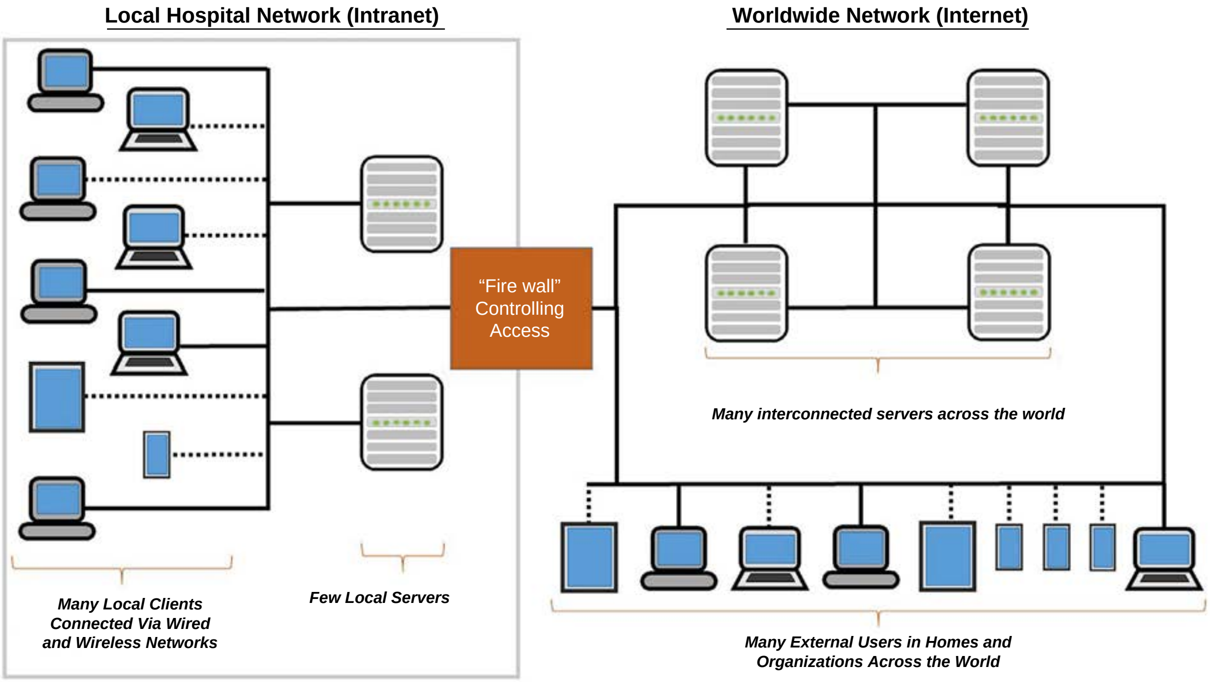

Local Hospital Network (Intranet)
Worldwide Network (Internet)
"Fire wall" Controlling Access
Many interconnected servers across the world
Many Local Clients Connected Via Wired and Wireless Networks
Few Local Servers
Many External Users in Homes and Organizations Across the World

Fig. 4.1 Relationship between a local intranet (within an institution) and the wider Internet. Institutions may choose to use an external vendor to provide certain services hosted on external servers, this is referred to as "cloud" computing or services. Prevention of unauthorized access to the intranet from external parties while allowing users to access the Internet and other remote resources is of paramount concern. "Firewall" devices aid in the separation of the institutional network from the wider Internet and control access.

to the intended computers on the network. Software is used to ensure communication is performed according to predefined standards. In order for a computer to be accessible in the network, each computer must be given a unique address on the network so that information can be identified as destined for that computer. The process of obtaining and maintaining network addresses is performed within the local operating system and network hardware. This allows software applications to specify the information to be sent and the operating system and network hardware to manage how it is exchanged between computers.

Wired networks require the computer system and the receiving hardware to be physically connected by electrical or optical cable. This limits the flexibility in the connection points, which must be placed in preplanned areas, with any subsequent adjustments requiring re-routing of cables. However, information travelling on the network cannot be intercepted or accessed without physical access to the network cables or connection points.

Wireless network systems offer advantages of convenience and the ability to move around a work environment without maintaining a physical connection among the computer systems. However, this usually occurs at the expense of speed of information exchange. Information exchange via wireless links is an order of magnitude slower than the fastest wired connections. Because wireless systems require the availability of strong radio links between the computer and the network equipment, they are subject to issues of poor reception (possibly because of physical barriers) and interference, which manifest as inaccessible or degraded network performance. It is difficult to control the precise limits of where a wireless network is available (i.e., only within a building and not immediately outside of it), therefore processes to limit wireless network access to authorized users and to encrypt data transmitted across wireless links are required.

In practice, healthcare facilities use a blend of both wired and wireless networks to ensure that the advantages of each system are available to support the users.

In most settings, the network is organized as a "client-server" model. The computer that hosts the shared resources is referred to as the "server" and the computer accessing the resources is the "client." The server is responsible for ensuring the client is an authorized user of the shared resource (access control) and ensuring the resource remains available to multiple users, potentially by preventing one client from monopolizing the use of the resource.

The client-server concept stands in contrast to peer-to-peer architecture, whereby resources are distributed across systems, with each computer on the network contributing its resources (e.g., files or specialized hardware). All computers are both clients and servers in this arrangement. There is limited ability to control access in a planned and coordinated manner.

Use of a client-server infrastructure may allow for a significant amount of the computational tasks to be outsourced to the central server. When the client has very limited computational resources this is referred to as a "thin client." Computationally intensive tasks can be performed by the server and the client receives the results of the computation. Fundamentally, the thin client is viewing and interacting with a software application that is running on the server. The client is little more than a means of sending user input to the server and a dynamic display of application results. In order for this arrangement to work, there must be a limited, predictable set of software applications that the client accesses on the server, with a reliable network connection. Without the network connection, the thin client has no functionality. This model may be easier to maintain because any changes are done centrally and need to be made once and then become available to every client connecting in.

An alternative model is the "thick client," where the client is capable of significant computational activities, retains a fully functional state when not connected to the network, accesses only the information required across the network, and processes it independently. However, these clients require individual maintenance.

A hybrid solution is the concept of "application virtualization," whereby a single software application is hosted and uses the computational resources centrally and the client systems access this application regardless of their configurations. This blends the advantages of a thin client—control of the application's availability, ease of maintenance, and ensuring compatibility (by not requiring any level of computational resources aside from running the connection to the server)—with users having a fully functional computer or device to use for the remainder of their tasks. Additionally, this hybrid enforces a separation between the information stored on the server and any applications running on the client and thus information can be secured within the server that is housed within the institutional network.

The Internet

The Internet is a global network of networks. Best known by two of the ways in which it can be used—websites and email—the Internet is at its simplest a method for transferring electronic information across the world. Internet service providers (ISPs) provide access to optical and electrical cables, which transfer information across the world. As these cables are all interconnected, multiple paths are available to transfer data at any one time. Routers control the flow of Internet traffic and ensure that it takes the most direct and fastest routes across the multiple paths available to it. Although the delay that a user may experience in accessing information varies widely and is dependent on many factors, the flow of information around the world can be measured in the order of hundreds of milliseconds or less.

Use of the Internet has led to the development of a series of technologies where computing resources are offered to multiple clients using an Internet connection as a means of distribution and interaction with the clients (see Fig. 4.1). These "cloud" platforms allow on-demand and scalable use of computing resources. Computing resources can be bought and sold based on the variable amount of time they are used or the amount of information stored; additional capacity can be flexibly added. These resources are accessible from anywhere with an Internet connection. Furthermore, cloud platforms give organizations the ability to transfer the management of the specialized computer hardware needed to provide these services to another party.

The integration of mobile phone data networks and the proliferation of increasingly powerful handheld devices (such as smartphones or tablets) has increased further the number of potential clients. For healthcare organizations, there is significant user pressure to be able to access healthcare information systems remotely or from these mobile devices.

The most ubiquitous usage of the Internet is in the delivery of "web pages." Information is stored on a "web server" and upon request from an application being run on a remote client computer (web browser), the information and display formatting instructions (i.e., size, shape, position of text, or graphics) are sent to the client. The web browser then interprets these instructions and displays the information according to the specified instructions. This process is highly dependent on well-defined and accepted standards of information exchange between client and server and rendering by the client.

These web pages have become increasingly sophisticated incorporating text, video, audio, complex animations, stylesheets, and hypertext links. Technologies have evolved into an interactive process that can dispense information specific to only one user (e.g., a record of the user's bank transactions) and that can be supplied in a manner that is generalizable to many different users (so all customers can access their bank transactions this way). When these instructions are assembled to generate specific business processes, they function as software applications that are web based and are referred to as "web applications" or "web apps." Interaction with web pages may lead to complex business processes being undertaken in the physical world. For example, the ability to buy a book over the Internet starts with a web page displaying the information and ends in someone delivering it to the door, with many physical steps in between. Healthcare organizations have embraced these technologies to support their delivery and administration of patient care, including scheduling systems, laboratory result reporting, patient communications, and equipment management systems, all of which are delivered in this manner.

Of note, information which is travelling across the Internet, without additional measures, is not necessarily private. A salient metaphor would be to consider the difference between information being conveyed in an envelope (where the contents are not visible) and information being conveyed on a postcard (where the message is clear to anyone who holds it).

Information Security

Although computing technology has significantly influenced the delivery of medical care, it has also brought a series of challenges that must be addressed. A major consideration is information security. Core to these considerations is ensuring that the correct information is available to the correct users at the correct time.

These threats to information security may come from within or outside an organization. Within organizations, an employee may access information that they are not authorized to so do or by transferring and storing it in an insecure manner. They may introduce security threats by using applications that may transfer information outside of the organization or by modifying an existing network by using a personal device. External threats may seek to improperly access information ("hacking") by obtaining passwords or identities from legitimate users (via "phishing" attacks) or by introducing applications that degrade computer function to extort payment ("ransomware" attacks).

The paradigm used for controlling access to computing resources is users and accounts. Each person who uses the computer is considered to be a user. Users can be identified and mapped to real-world persons. Users may belong to groups that share common attributes. It should be known in advance which resources should be available to which users or groups of users. A group of users (i.e., anesthesia providers) may have access to particular resources (e.g., a document of anesthesia policies) but each user may also have access based on their individual parameters (e.g., an individual anesthesiologist may have sole access to his or her own private files). A group of users with similar functional roles who have a defined set of resource privileges is known as "role-based security." Changes in privileges affect all users in that functional group.

Users should be able to positively identify themselves; commonly this involves the combination of a username and password with the password being known only to the user and the computer system. However, other methods of authentication, such as biometric information (fingerprint, iris scan, or face scan) or physical access tokens (e.g., identification badges) are now commonplace. Password policies that enforce a mandatory level of complexity (minimum length, mixing letters and numbers, or special characters), specific expiry dates, and prevent password reuse are designed to make it harder for passwords to be guessed by an unknown party or to mitigate or minimize the risk of passwords being accessed or used externally. However, requirements for increasing complexity or frequency of changes may pose additional burdens on users that they consider unacceptable and may not decrease risk.

Organizations may also choose to adopt "two-factor authentication" methods, which can be summarized as requiring "something you know and something you have" to gain access to the computer system. The password fulfills the first part of this concept as it is meant to be known only to the user. Devices such as physical token code generators (which provide a predictable response to be entered alongside the password) or an interactive system (authentication via a smartphone application or phone call) may satisfy the second concept. Thus, in order for someone to impersonate the user they must have both the password (that may have been taken without the user's knowledge) and a physical device (that the user is more likely to detect the absence of). This makes remote access less likely because an external user on the other side of the world may be able to obtain or guess a password but is very unlikely to also be able to obtain the token or smartphone required for access.

Physical security is an integral part of information security. Ensuring that an unauthorized person does not have physical access to computer hardware or access to the means of connecting to that computer hardware are important considerations. This can be accomplished by physical measures (such as locked rooms, doors, and devices that prevent movement of computer hardware) and considerations of where computers containing controlled information are placed (to prevent an unauthorized person from having access to a computer that is available in a public area).

However, as alluded to before, these restrictions are balanced against desires for increased usability and portability of computing devices from computer users and the need to make information available to the provider at the point of clinical interaction.

Therefore, it is necessary to ensure secure access to information across wireless links and across the Internet. One method for doing this is to ensure that the information transferred is not readily visible along its means of transmission. This is performed by a group of processes known as encryption. Encryption is the process of transforming a piece of information from its original and accessible state to one that is not accessible and lacks meaning without an additional piece of information (an encryption key).

The transformation to and from encrypted text takes place in a manner that is relatively easy to perform with the known encryption key but is infeasible to do so without knowing this key. Encryption processes are based on mathematics involving multiplication of very large numbers, which creates many possible combinations of different factors that could have led to the same outcome. Therefore, it would be computationally infeasible, with current technology, to attempt to try all possible solutions.

External threats to an organization involve outside entities attempting to access services or applications that are meant for internal use only. Because healthcare organizations must be connected to the Internet to enable many information exchange functions, their data may potentially be available to every Internet-connected device in the world. "Firewalls" are used to ensure that only legitimate transactions and interactions with the external world are exposed to the internal hospital network. These hardware or software tools, collectively known as a firewall, prevent the creation of unauthorized connections from outside the organization to the internal computing systems. Firewalls can also limit the types of network traffic that are allowed to exit from the internal networked system. For example, it may restrict network traffic typically used for the sharing of files.

In order to allow legitimate external access, organizations may allow the creation of virtual private networks (VPNs). After appropriate authentication and verification, VPNs set up an encrypted path for information from an external Internet-connected computer to the organization's internal network. This allows the external computer to act as if it was physically connected to the organization's internal network and to access resources such as specialized software or shared files. This adds an additional layer of access security to the connection and ensures the communication is secure. A healthcare organization may require use of a VPN to access an EHR from outside the organization's network.

Standards for Healthcare Data Exchange

Although not always obvious, the EHR is typically an amalgamation of multiple computer systems and devices of various complexity. These systems exchange data according to common standards, languages, and processes.

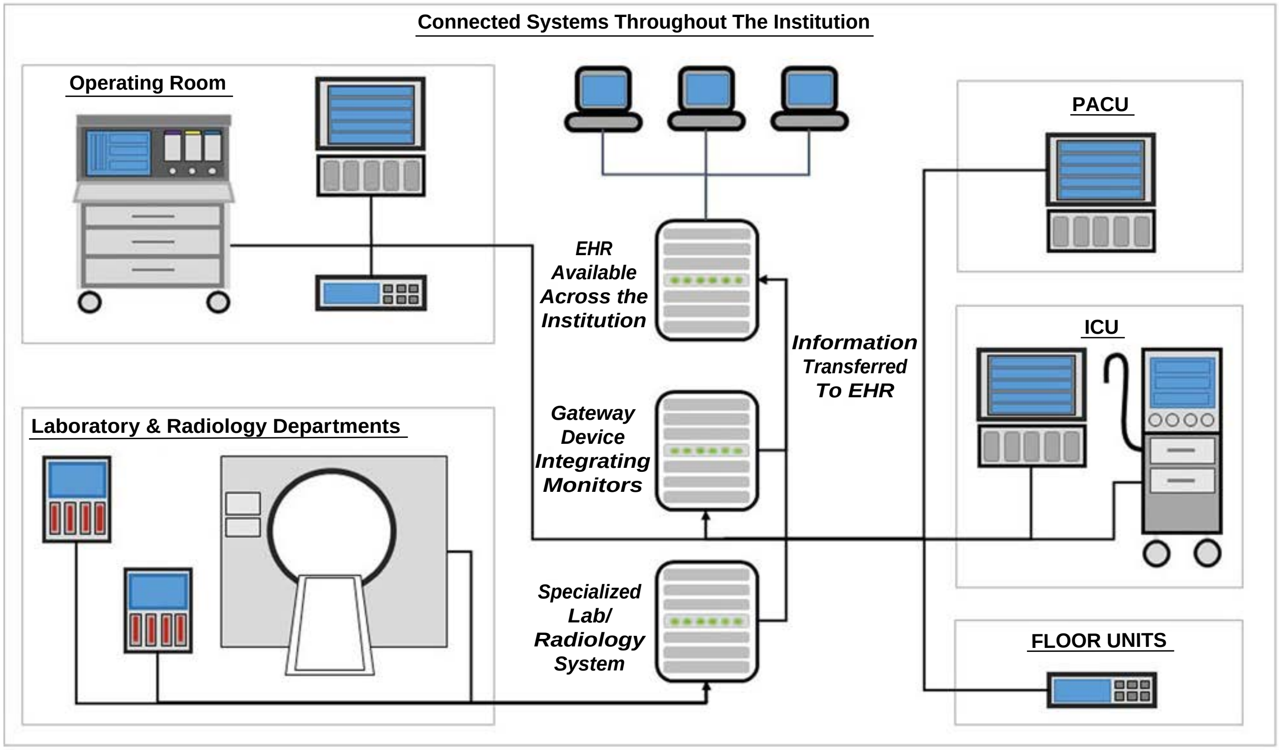

Connected Systems Throughout The Institution
Operating Room
Laboratory & Radiology Departments
EHR Available Across the Institution
Gateway Device Integrating Monitors
Specialized Lab/ Radiology System
Information Transferred To EHR
PACU
ICU
FLOOR UNITS

Fig. 4.2 Information flows from connected devices across the institution into the electronic health record (*EHR*). Some departments maintain specialized software to manage the needs specific to their workflow—for example Radiology departments using Picture Archiving and Communication Systems—that are interfaced into the EHR (i.e., to allow a report to be connected to the original CT scan). Similarly networked monitor data is made available by the use of a gateway interface device. *PACU*, Postanesthesia care unit

Common connections include monitoring devices that allow automatic transfer for measured parameters into the electronic chart, infusion pumps (recording programmed settings), laboratory instruments (blood gas machines, cell counters, biochemistry analyzers, point-of-care testing devices), or systems that manage patient admission, identification, and bed occupancy (admission, discharge, and transfer [ADT] system). All of these devices and systems need methods of communicating with the EHR (Fig. 4.2). Although in some situations it may be possible to use a proprietary standard for communication between systems, it can quickly become difficult to manage across an entire institution. As a consequence, a series of commonly used standards have been established that allow the communication of healthcare information.

The Health Level-7 (HL7) standard, originally developed in the late 1980s, is still used widely in the exchange of health information. HL7 allows the transmission of data in a standardized manner among devices and clinical systems. The information can be identified to a specific patient and organized into different data types, indicating laboratory results, monitor data, and billing information. It can also cause the receiving system to perform an action, such as update previously obtained data. The HL7 standard and subsequent derivatives that address the exchange of clinical documents in a structured and identified manner support communication among different clinical systems. However, this standard was based on data exchange within different software application systems within an institution and did not envisage the proliferation of Internet-connected devices remotely accessing shared resources across many healthcare organizations.

This new paradigm led to the development of Fast Health Interoperability Resources (FHIR). This communication standard is analogous to how modern Internet applications exchange data via simple standardized requests to a central resource. FHIR enables easier integration across different types of software and integrates security features necessary due to the proliferation of mobile devices. This standard is designed to facilitate the exchange of data regardless whether it is a single vital sign or a scanned document from a physical chart.

Regulation of Electronic Data Exchange

In the United States, the 1996 passage of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) established a common regulatory framework that defined health information and the processes by which it should be stored and transferred, and established powers to investigate concerns regarding noncompliance with these rules.

There are four major regulatory rules: the HIPAA Privacy Rule, Security Rule, Enforcement Rule, and the Breach Notification Rule. Each update is a complex regulatory document and professional advice should be sought on the applicability and relevance of each of these to a particular situation.

The HIPAA Privacy Rule details the allowable uses and disclosures of individually identifiable health information, which is referred to as "protected health information" (PHI). Identifiers that are considered PHI are listed in Table 4.1. The privacy rule additionally defines the healthcare agencies covered by the rule. It defines processes that must be taken when working with business partners outside the healthcare agency through the creation of business associate agreements. Further, it establishes the concept of a limited data set, which is a set of identifiable healthcare information that is devoid of direct identifiers and can be shared with certain entities for research purposes, healthcare operations, and public health reasons; use of these is governed by "data use agreements."

The HIPAA Security Rule applies specifically to electronic PHI (e-PHI). The rule requires that e-PHI created, received, maintained, or transmitted by an organization should be done so confidentially and in a manner that ensures data integrity and availability. Additionally, the rule requires that threats to information security be monitored and measures be taken to mitigate these threats; this includes audits of computer systems to ensure unauthorized access has not occurred. The specification includes physical, technical, procedural, and administrative measures, all of which need to be undertaken for compliance. In general, the rule does not specify a particular set of computing resources that should be used, but instead specifies the standards to which they should be verified.

TABLE 4.1 Data Elements that Allow Patients to Be Identified

HIPAA IDENTIFIERS
Names
All geographic subdivisions smaller than a state, including street address, city, county, precinct, ZIP code
All elements of dates (except year) for dates that are directly related to an individual. Ages over 89 and all elements of dates (including year) indicative of such age
Telephone numbers
Vehicle identifiers and serial numbers, including license plate numbers
Fax numbers
Device identifiers and serial numbers
Email addresses
Web Universal Resource Locators (URLs)
Social security numbers
Internet Protocol (IP) addresses
Medical record numbers
Biometric identifiers, including finger and voice prints
Health plan beneficiary numbers
Full-face photographs and any comparable images
Account numbers
Any other unique identifying number, characteristic, or code
Certificate/license numbers

HIPAA, Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act.
Adapted from https://www.hhs.gov/hipaa/for-professionals/privacy/special-topics/de-identification/index.html. Accessed March 3, 2019.

The HIPAA Enforcement Rule established the processes whereby a breach of the privacy rule could be investigated, and sanctions enforced. The Office of Civil Rights (OCR) within the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) is responsible for receiving and investigating these complaints. Complaints may also be referred to the Department of Justice if it is believed that a criminal breach has occurred. Penalties for noncompliance can involve significant monetary fines or imprisonment in the context of criminal acts.

Finally, the HIPAA Breach Notification Rule defines what a breach of PHI data security is and obligates covered organizations to report to the OCR breaches of PHI that are discovered. Differing timelines for reporting apply, depending on if the breach involved greater or fewer than 500 individuals. Notification must also be provided to affected individuals and potentially to the media, depending on the number of individuals involved.

The Nature of Healthcare Information in the Anesthesia Encounter

In the conduct of anesthesia care, much of the information gathered could be considered as frequently-occurring structured data. That is, much of the information contained within the encounter can be categorized into one of a relatively small number of groups. This information is present commonly across anesthesia encounters. And the information itself can often be restricted to a small number of possible options—consider the example of an airway assessment.

This applies to information gathered in the preoperative phase of care (i.e., Mallampati classification from an airway examination) and the intraoperative phase of care (i.e., heart rate or systolic blood pressure). Furthermore, the intraoperative phase of care is marked by repetition of information at predefined intervals with measurements that may be taken in an automated manner (e.g., noninvasive blood pressure recordings every 3 minutes).

A majority of data gathered during an anesthesia case is structured, limited, and predictably repeated. However, the data are also voluminous with data generated and captured continuously on monitors, anesthesia machines, and medication pumps. More than 50 different parameters may describe a single minute of anesthesia care.

This is in contrast with the nature of the information captured in many medical specialties that are not easily constrained by content or structure. The documentation of a primary care visit may follow a standard format, however the number of variables captured may not be easily defined in advance or constrained to a standard structure; the range of possible issues to be documented may be too broad.

Anesthesia-derived data is well suited for capture into electronic charting systems. A number of mature commercially available systems are available for undertaking this task. These systems are often not standalone, and we will discuss how they are integrated in the next section.

Development and Deployment of Anesthesia Information Management Systems

Given the suitability for automated capture of recurring high-volume data, the concept of using computerized capture and storage for parts of the anesthesia record is not new. McKesson in 1934 described an early form of monitor that integrated with a vital signs data recorder (Fig. 4.3).[1] Early pioneering systems included the Duke Automatic Monitoring Equipment (DAME) System and its more compact successor, microDAME, which combined an internal monitoring platform with an integrated network architecture for central data recording.[2] Anesthesia Record Keeper Integrating Voice Recognition (ARKIVE) developed commercially in 1982 by Diatek included both a voice and touch screen interface.[3,4] Over time, other systems became available and these progressively morphed from being described as "anesthesia record keeping" (ARK) systems to "anesthesia information management systems" (AIMS) as the range of features and integration with other systems progressed.

Despite extensive development of a number of commercial systems, the use of AIMS was relatively limited in the early 2000s. Survey estimates suggest that by 2007 market penetration in academic medical centers increased from approximately 10% to approximately 75% by the end of 2014. By 2020, it is estimated that market penetration will reach 84% of all medical centers.[5-7] In the United States, the implementation of EHRs has been encouraged by federal government financial incentives including the American Reinvestment and Recovery Act of 2009, which authorized up to $11 million dollars per hospital to finance the adoption of health information technology.[8]

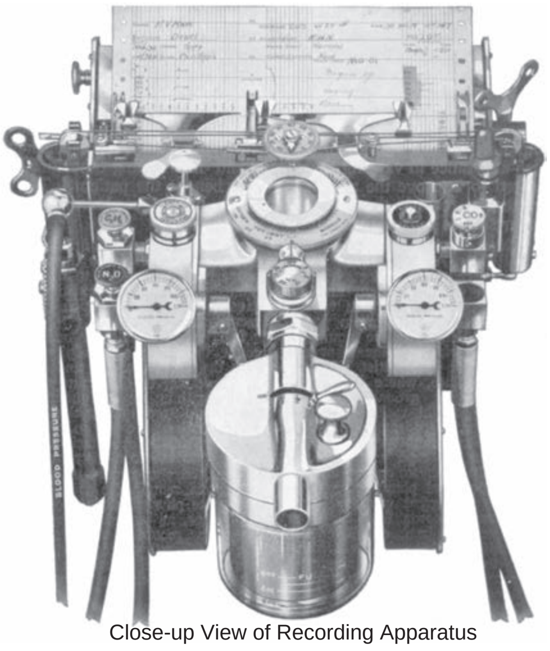


Fig. 4.3 McKesson's apparatus for the automated recording of physiologic recordings and gas mixtures. From 1934. (From McKesson El. The technique of recording the effects of gas-oxygen mixtures, pressures, rebreathing and carbon-dioxide, with a summary of the effects. *Anesth-Analg.* 1934;13[1]:1–7 ["Apparatus" Page 2])

The adoption of health information technology has resulted in the increasing integration of the anesthesia record with other clinical systems. The American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) has produced a statement on the documentation of anesthesia care.[9] Such systems can be used to fulfill clinical documentation needs; however, much of the promise of these systems is in the potential for integration with the broader hospital environment and secondary uses of the data that they potentially facilitate.

ANATOMY OF AN ANESTHESIA INFORMATION MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A mature AIMS must be capable of (1) recording all aspects of the anesthesia encounter (preoperative, intraoperative, and postanesthesia care unit [PACU]); (2) must automatically gather the high-fidelity physiologic data generated by monitoring platforms and anesthesia machines; and (3) must allow the anesthesia provider to record observations regarding the conduct of the anesthetic. These three simple requirements allow us to closely specify the anatomy of an AIMS.

The first requirement for access of the same patient record during multiple phases of a case suggests the use of a system organized on a computer network, where the computer record is maintained on a central server and accessed by multiple clients. This capability requires accessibility of computer workstations at each patient-care location to facilitate documentation. The computer must be accessible during the clinical interaction but in a way that does not interfere with this interaction, which is both an issue of ergonomics and of provider behavior. In the operating room (OR), the system should be directly accessible at the time of clinical care to allow contemporaneous documentation without the anesthesia provider physically moving away from the patient or care area. In many deployments, this is achieved with a computer mounted to the anesthesia workstation alongside the monitoring equipment. Because the computer hardware is located in clinical environments, these may become contaminated with pathogens and it is important that the hardware can be cleaned in a manner that is compatible with infection control policies.[10,11]

The second requirement for automated capture of data from OR monitors and anesthesia machines is some form of interface device between the computer hardware and the hemodynamic monitors, anesthesia machines, and other patient-connected equipment (infusion pumps or ventilators)—Table 4.2. In most AIMS implementations, this interface occurs at a central level, where a network of the physiologic monitors and the central server hosting the AIMS communicate via a gateway device. Typically, interfaces use standardized data formats, such as those described earlier that transmit communication among devices and software solutions from different manufacturers and developers. Interfacing these devices with a computer network may require specialized hardware and additional cost. However, the interface enables the automated capture of

TABLE 4.2 Examples of Parameters Commonly Included in the Anesthesia Record Gathered Automatically from Different Sources

FROM CORE PHYSIOLOGIC MONITOR	
	Arterial blood pressure (systolic, diastolic, mean)
	Cardiac index
	Cardiac output
	Central venous pressure
	End tidal CO_2
	Heart rate (ECG monitoring and SpO_2)
	Intracranial pressure (ICP)
	Noninvasive blood pressure (systolic, diastolic, mean)
	Pulmonary artery pressure (systolic, diastolic, mean)
	Pulse pressure variation (PPV) and systolic pressure variation (SPV)
	Saturation of peripheral oxygen (SpO_2)
	ST segment analysis
	Systemic vascular resistance
	Temperature (all sources)
FROM STAND-ALONE DEVICES (MAY BE AVAILABLE WITHIN SOME CORE PHYSIOLOGIC MONITORS)	
	Acceleromyography value
	Cerebral oximeter (NIRS)
	Continuous cardiac output measurement devices
	Level of consciousness monitors
	Mixed venous oxygen saturation (SvO_2)
FROM ANESTHESIA WORKSTATION	
	Fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2)
	Fresh gas flows: oxygen, air, nitrous oxide
	Volatile anesthetic agents (inspired and expired concentrations)
	Minute volume
	Nitrous oxide (inspired and expired concentrations)
	Oxygen (inspired and expired concentrations)
	Peak inspiratory pressure (PIP)
	Positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP)
	Respiratory rate (ventilator and $ETCO_2$)
	Tidal volume
	Ventilator mode

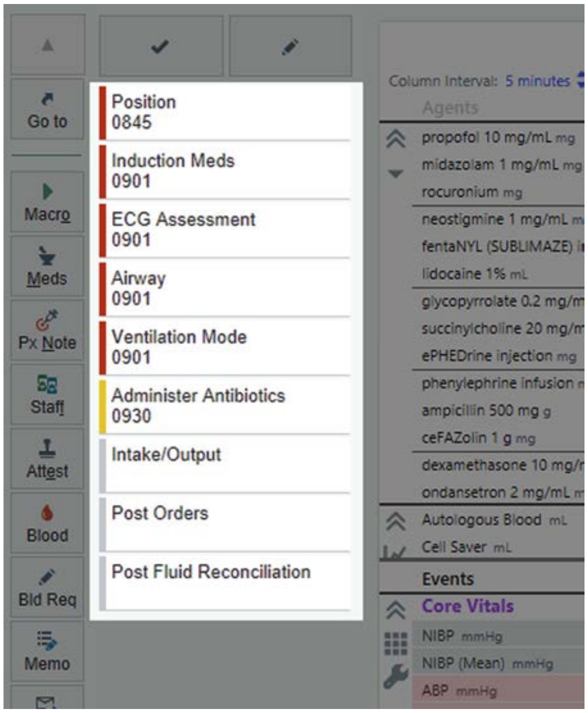

Column Interval: 5 minutes
Go to
Macro
Meds
Px Note
Staff
Attest
Blood
Bld Req
Memo
Position
0845
Induction Meds
0901
ECG Assessment
0901
Airway
0901
Ventilation Mode
0901
Administer Antibiotics
0930
Intake/Output
Post Orders
Post Fluid Reconciliation
Agents
propofol 10 mg/mL mg
midazolam 1 mg/mL mg
rocuronium mg
neostigmine 1 mg/mL
fentaNYL (SUBLIMAZE)
lidocaine 1% mL
glycopyrrolate 0.2 mg/
succinylcholine 20 mg/
ePHEDrine injection mg
phenylephrine infusion
ampicillin 500 mg g
ceFAZolin 1 g mg
dexamethasone 10 mg/
ondansetron 2 mg/mL
Autologous Blood mL
Cell Saver mL
Events
Core Vitals
NIBP mmHg
NIBP (Mean) mmHg
ABP mmHg

Fig. 4.4 A pre-defined set of charting elements for a given case. These may function as an example of passive decision support built into the EPIC Electronic Health Record Anesthesia Documentation (EPIC Systems, Verona, WI). The macro *(highlighted)* prompts the user to complete next documentation element. The "Administer Antibiotics" acts as an *aide-mémoire* reminding anesthesia providers that this is likely the next step in the process of care. (Image: © 2018 Epic System Corporation. Used with Permission.)

monitor and anesthesia machine data, freeing up clinical providers from the recording of these data elements. In light of the cost and practical challenges, some AIMS situated in low-resource settings (e.g., an office-based anesthesia location) may choose to eliminate the data interface feature.

Theoretically all electronically generated data can be recorded in the AIMS. As a consequence, the anesthesia provider must determine how much data should be incorporated into the system. Although some monitoring data is obtained with a defined frequency, such as a noninvasive blood pressure measurement taken every 3 minutes, most parameters are sampled from continuous data sources. In the OR, a pulse oximeter is not a single parameter checked at a discrete interval, but a continuous source of data. Continuous data sources (e.g., electrocardiogram [ECG], pulse oximeter, invasive blood pressure, or end-tidal carbon dioxide [$EtCO_2$] tracings) are transformed into measures that can be recorded with lower data intensity requirement, a process known as sampling. An ECG tracing may be sampled and interpreted to report heart rate and ST segment analysis results. Although it is technically possible to record continuous sources of data electronically for future review, this usually does not occur because the resulting data stream is difficult to present, archive, and review. Therefore, continuous data sources are usually reported as sampled values at a prespecified frequency.

The third requirement of an AIMS is to allow the user to annotate information (e.g., medications administered, descriptions of procedures performed, annotations to describe significant clinical events, or attestations for regulatory compliance) to the automatically collected data. Because of the similarity of one anesthesia encounter to another, some charting elements may be predefined to facilitate these documentation tasks and minimize the use of nonstructured or "free text" entries. Because of the possibility of similarity among cases, many systems use organized templates (sometimes referred to as "scripts," "templates," or "macros") that give the anesthesia provider easier access to charting elements required for a specific case type (Fig 4.4). For example, a cardiac anesthesia template may make charting elements regarding cardiopulmonary bypass prominent and easily selectable. These charting elements and templates are typically customizable at each installed site, thus providing flexibility in documenting site-specific practices or procedures.

Although the three AIMS requirements described give some specifics about how a system may be constructed, they are minimum requisites. The AIMS that only provides these requirements is not one that would be considered high value. The major advantages of AIMS come from their integration into other clinical systems and healthcare processes, which will be explored in the coming sections.

ADVANTAGES OF IMPLEMENTATION OF AN ANESTHESIA INFORMATION MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The shift to an AIMS is a key improvement in the quality of clinical documentation. Removing the task of manual documentation of physiologic parameters has not been shown to decrease vigilance to the clinical situation and may free up anesthesia providers to perform other tasks.[12-15] An AIMS also establishes an independent, unbiased record of monitoring and machine data. Finally, legibility issues noted in handwritten charting are resolved by the use of an electronically assembled record.

Early studies compared blood pressure values recorded in handwritten charts and those recorded by automated collection. The blood pressure recordings on handwritten charts had lower maximum systolic pressures and higher minimum diastolic pressures when compared with automated collected values in OR studies.[16-18] This variation has been termed the "smoothing effect" of handwritten charting and may result in loss of clinically meaningful data.[16,19] A subsequent study demonstrated that errors in handwritten charting were clustered during high-intensity periods; that is, induction, emergence, and significant clinical events.[20,21]

Although documentation of physiologic parameters may be more complete in AIMS-charted records compared with handwritten charts other data elements may remain incomplete.[22,23] As AIMS deployments have matured, it has become apparent that documentation quality varies among providers and important clinical fields can often be left incomplete, particularly when completion requires the entry of free text.[24] Medication administration has also been incompletely documented or omitted in the AIMS compared with observed practice with a similar effect of inaccuracies occurring during high intensity periods of care.[25] AIMS support degrees of customization, including designating certain data elements as mandatory prior to completion of the case, but the decision to add more mandatory elements must be traded off against risks of arbitrary data entry ("clicking through") or provider frustration, both of which detract from the aim of improved data quality.[26] It is clear that the system design and decisions made for default values or required data elements have significant influence on the quality of record created.

One solution to the challenge of excessively burdensome documentation requirements is to use an adaptive method that changes the required elements for documentation based on the clinical context—for example, requiring documentation of bilateral breath sounds in cases involving an endotracheal tube, but not with an laryngeal mask airway.[26]

In addition, to improve compliance with the capture of individual, high-priority data elements alternative strategies may be employed. Real-time provider notification by text page for allergy or procedural notes has demonstrated increases in completeness of this documentation.[27,28] Non-real-time feedback, via dashboards, email feedback, or informational campaigns may leverage AIMS data to improve data element completion.[29] These effects may be sustained past the interventional period.[27,29]

Integration with billing processes allows the automated capture of case elements necessary to facilitate anesthesia billing, such as care start and stop times, details of the surgical procedure for which anesthesia care is being provided, the nature of anesthesia care, any separately billable procedures, and the involved providers. This information can be extracted by reporting functions and integrated with the patient identifiers. Compared to solutions that require the manual review of copies of paper records, AIMS-based workflows offer significant overall process efficiency gains; although some designs unfortunately redistribute administrative tasks to point-of-care clinicians. The potential impact of AIMS use on anesthesia procedure includes improving capture of data elements needed for billing, improved documentation to support billing of anesthesia procedures, and billing capture at time of clinical care leading to more rapid processing.[27,28,30,31]

An advantage of an AIMS system is the ability to check concurrency of anesthesia providers across one entire organization in real time. In the United States, an "in-room" anesthesia provider must be physically present when anesthesia care is provided at all times. This is typically documented by "sign in" and "sign out" documentation times. An in-room provider may be supervised by a supervising provider who may supervise a number of ORs up to maximum specified by institutional or payer policy. The AIMS system can, at time of sign-in, check that no in-room provider is documented in more than one OR simultaneously and no supervising provider exceeds the prespecified supervision ratios. Checking at time of sign-in assures that these standards are not violated by documentation errors and prevents delays in the billing process. In certain billing environments, violation of the concurrency rules may cause rejection of claims at the time of billing.

Providing an anesthesia record that can be accessed concurrently by multiple users may facilitate remote monitoring of care being provided by the in-room anesthesia provider by a supervising anesthesia provider. This increased visibility of patient care being provided at each care location allows the supervising provider to maintain a better level of awareness on the course of the case and gives the supervising provider additional guidance on management decisions. OR managers benefit from similar insight and may be able to make decisions about resource utilization based on the documented care.

Integration of Anesthesia Care Information with Operating Room Information Systems

Given the necessity of maintaining information regarding locations of care, case, patient, staffing, and case progress, it is natural to integrate anesthesia information systems with OR management systems. These systems are used in the scheduling of OR cases and assignment of staffing and supplies.

ORs are finite resources. There are a set number of available rooms, set number of available staff for these rooms, set times of availability of these staff, defined experience and specialization of these staff, and finite amount of specialist equipment for use in the rooms. As a result of these factors, ORs create enormous costs prior to any procedure being performed; efficient allocation and utilization of these resources are tied to financial outcomes of a hospital.

Each procedure performed requires allocation of procedural space, staff, and equipment that may be specific to the particular case. Therefore, it makes sense for this to be coordinated in a centralized manner. OR management systems are designed to accomplish this task controlling the allocation of these resources. These systems allow these resources to be allocated both generally (e.g., on Mondays OR 12 is dedicated for thoracic surgery cases [block scheduling]) and also specifically (e.g., John Smith is undergoing a right upper lobectomy by Dr. Jones from 11 AM to 1 PM on August 20), and further allocate staff and equipment to this procedure (case scheduling). Case scheduling may be enhanced by using historical procedural lengths to estimate future time needs stratified by proceduralist and specific procedure to be performed.

Scheduling of a case by a specific proceduralist allows the generation of a specific list of required equipment/instruments to be recalled based on anticipated requirements and proceduralist preferences. These "case pick lists" of "surgeons preference cards" can be used by supply teams to ensure that necessary equipment is available and predict future utilization.

The integration of OR management systems with AIMS provides the cases and procedures against which charting functions can be performed. Furthermore, communication between these systems can create common charting, such as phase of procedure (induction, procedure begun, procedure complete, etc.) which can be useful in understanding utilization of the OR environment for daily management and ascertaining longer-term trends. Given the enormous fixed expense incurred in the OR suite, an extensive literature has developed from the analysis of information derived from these systems regarding variability in procedure time, "turnover time" between sequentially scheduled procedures, and effect of variability of anesthesia-related case timings.[32-37]

A more recent trend is the integration of the AIMS and Operating Room Management Systems with the wider hospital-wide or "enterprise" EHR. This occurs via the development of specialized modules which account for the differences in workflow between the OR environment and the inpatient floor/ward units. These systems leverage common patient information—such as patient identification, demographics, registration, and location—then add specialization discussed above. Furthermore, this allows medical documentation, and laboratory and other diagnostic results to be made available to the perioperative providers on a single computer system.

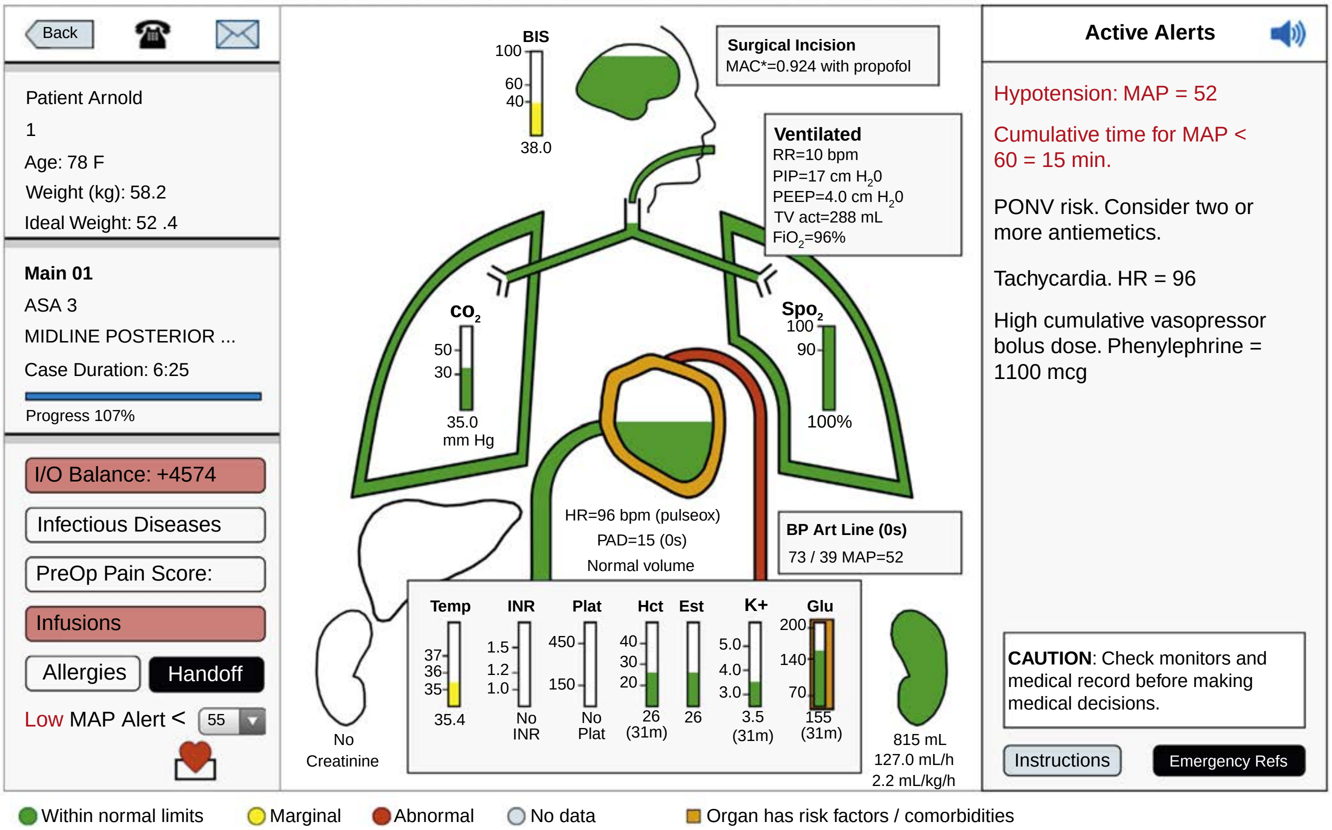
One of the larger contrasts emerging from the OR workflow versus the rest of the inpatient environment is the process of medication documentation. When using an inpatient EHR, a provider enters a computer-based order for the routine administration of a medication. After pharmacy verification of the order, the medication is delivered to the appropriate unit for administration to the patient by a bedside nurse. In the OR environment, the medication administration decision making, selection of the medication from a pre-stocked cart, and administration is handled by an individual providing anesthesia care. This shortens the time from provider intent to patient administration. Therefore, the documentation needs to reflect the concept of care provided rather than care to be provided in the future (i.e., scheduling a medication to be administered). Given the high intensity of medication administrations, short time interval between administrations and supply from the bedside cart of the medications to be administered, the ideal documentation system should not be burdensome and allow rapid entry.

A number of features of the inpatient EHR are unavailable due to this mode of medication administration and documentation: positive identification of the patient and medication with a specified order—typically performed by "barcode" scanning of medications and patients at time of administration—is not performed as medications are typically documented retrospectively, although patients are positively identified at the beginning of each anesthesia care encounter. Additionally, automated medication interaction, dose, and allergy checking may not function in the context of perioperative administration due the practice of retrospective documentation. As the documentation of anesthesia care is quite different from that of most medical interactions. The differences in workflows must be accounted for in the development of modes of interaction and creation of documentation.

While most medications administered in the OR have a relatively short duration of action, there are important cases where medications which are administered in the OR have important consequences beyond the OR. Examples such as neuromuscular blockade, long-acting opioids, long-acting local anesthetic agents, and antibiotic administrations all may lead to important medication interactions well beyond the OR or need for modifications of postoperative care. Therefore, information regarding these administrations must be available to care providers working in the postoperative period. The use of "stand-alone" AIMS may contribute to a failure of communication of the use of these important medications. Interfaces between the stand-alone systems and enterprise EHRs allow this information to be communicated, however this poses additional development, maintenance, and deployment burden. Similarly, documentation of difficult airway management in the OR has impact beyond the OR as the patient may require emergent airway management in the intensive care unit or during future visits; information gleaned during the perioperative encounter may have enduring value to many other providers.

Development of Decision Support Tools

One of the most exciting promises of AIMS and enterprise EHRs is their ability to improve patient care by improving the decisions made by providers.[38] While medical decision making must be provided by responsible care providers, it is possible to aid decision making by providing default choices that support particular practice patterns, suggesting options which may be appropriate based on the type of care (see Fig 4.4), providing additional notification of important updated trends or results, and providing alerts based on the integration of multiple pieces of information. The former


Patient Arnold
1
Age: 78 F
Weight (kg): 58.2
Ideal Weight: 52 .4

Main 01
ASA 3
MIDLINE POSTERIOR ...
Case Duration: 6:25
Progress 107%

I/O Balance: +4574

Low MAP Alert < 55

Surgical Incision
MAC*=0.924 with propofol

Ventilated
RR=10 bpm
PIP=17 cm H_20
PEEP=4.0 cm H_20
TV act=288 mL
FiO_2=96%

HR=96 bpm (pulseox)
PAD=15 (0s)
Normal volume

BP Art Line (0s)
73 / 39 MAP=52

Active Alerts

Hypotension: MAP = 52

Cumulative time for MAP < 60 = 15 min.

PONV risk. Consider two or more antiemetics.

Tachycardia. HR = 96

High cumulative vasopressor bolus dose. Phenylephrine = 1100 mcg

CAUTION: Check monitors and medical record before making medical decisions.

Fig. 4.5 The Alertwatch OR (Alertwatch, Ann Arbor, MI) multiparameter decision support system, illustrating the physiologic status of a patient under anesthetic care. This integrates data from physiologic monitors and electronic health record elements. Based on pre-specified rules it prompts providers to consider a specific course of action or indicates additional markers of patient state. * Indicates a calculated additive MAC value of inhaled agents and propofol and dexmedetomidine infusions.

two are examples of passive decision support, the latter two are examples of active decision support. Collectively these tools are referred to as decision support and are an integral part of the perioperative information system.[39]

PASSIVE DECISION SUPPORT SYSTEMS

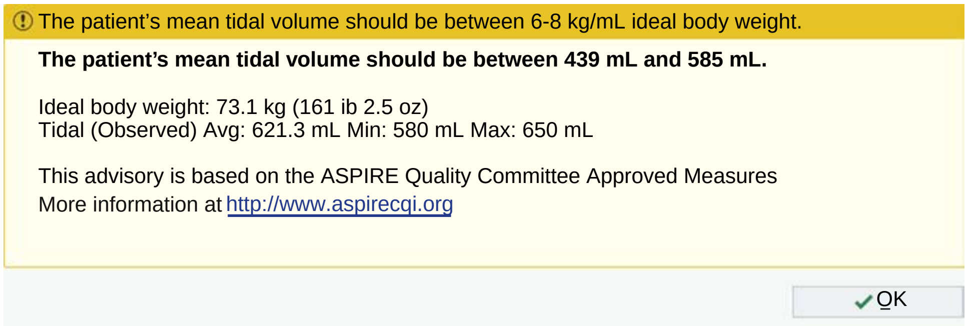
In considering these tools it is helpful to move from the simplest to the most complex. At the simplest level in the configuration of the perioperative information system, decisions regarding the choices presented to users (default doses, units, and range checks) may act as prompts for users in their selections—the so-called anchoring effect. This is an example of passive decision support. Over time it is important to continue to assess how usage aligns with users' practice to ensure that the default options presented do indeed capture the typical usage at a particular institution.[40]

Systems for the documentation of anesthetic care typically feature methods for documentation of aspects of clinical care which cluster together based on aspects of the procedure, anesthetic technique employed, or location of service. For example, a template for cases performed via a spinal anesthetic would not be configured to require documentation of the endotracheal intubation technique as these do not frequently overlap. These can form the basis of decision prompts for providers; for example, in a cardiac case, the charting element available immediately after documentation of full cardiopulmonary bypass may be regarding discontinuation of mechanical ventilation. This may act as a reminder to the provider to perform this task. The level of sophistication of these prompts depends on the time devoted to their construction at the time of system installation and configuration.

One feature to improve documentation is the utilization of mandatory documentation elements that are required prior to the completion of case documentation. Extreme care needs should dictate what elements of documentation should be made mandatory. There are likely exceptions to even the most universal documentation element and forcing completion or entry of such items may undermine trust in the entirety of the clinical documentation.

ACTIVE DECISION SUPPORT SYSTEMS

In the intraoperative space, a number of more sophisticated approaches to decision support have been developed (Fig 4.5). These decision support tools continuously evaluate the medical record for incoming information and provide feedback to the user. These tools may be separate from the EHR but access the information being recorded by that software. These tools apply rules to alert providers to aspects of care which may have been overlooked or need to be addressed. This may guide users to re-evaluate patient status (if a blood pressure monitoring gap is detected), or consider additional interventions (prompts to treat extremely elevated blood glucose) or alternative management strategies (e.g., if large tidal volumes are being used).[41-46]



The patient’s mean tidal volume should be between 6-8 kg/mL ideal body weight.

The patient’s mean tidal volume should be between 439 mL and 585 mL.

Ideal body weight: 73.1 kg (161 ib 2.5 oz)
Tidal (Observed) Avg: 621.3 mL Min: 580 mL Max: 650 mL

This advisory is based on the ASPIRE Quality Committee Approved Measures
More information at http://www.aspirecqi.org

Fig. 4.6 An example of active decision support. Providers prompted to consider the tidal volume, with information which may allow them to consider change in clinical practice. This alert is triggered in the context of an averaged measured value which is above a predefined threshold. Image: © 2018 Epic System Corporation. Used with Permission.

In order to function, these more sophisticated forms of decision support are designed around a common architecture. They run in parallel with the clinical documentation functions of the EHR. They may be built into the EHR (Fig 4.6) or may run as separate software alongside the EHR (see Fig 4.5). Regardless of the specifics of the software implementation, it is best to consider the construction of these systems as being in components.[39] In addition to the modules which capture incoming device data and enable provider manual documentation, three additional modules are added.

The first module is a component which allows a user to define a series of rules against which the incoming information will be assessed. These rules should define the population to which the rule applies (i.e., patients aged over 18 undergoing surgeries in the main hospital operating rooms), the details of the rule (i.e., determine if blood glucose value is >300 mg/dL), and then the proposed action (i.e., notify provider of this finding by text page or display a pop-up window in the EHR software). The second component is the surveillance process which repeatedly assesses the patient status against the rules using newly updated laboratory results, charting elements, monitor or device data; the process determines when a rule has been triggered. The final component is the notification module; this is the method of interacting with the user. This may be within the EHR (as a pop-up message at the front of the patient’s attention), separate to the EHR (in dedicated software running on the anesthesia workstation to display notifications regarding patient status), or alternatively may use a completely separate means of communication such as text paging, text messaging, or even phone calls.

Calibrating the alert to the clinical scenario is important and should take into account the lead time involved in data acquisition and notification. If an EHR obtains updated monitor information every minute, the rules require repeated values (to ensure non-artifact) and the output system has a 1-minute lag time, then this restricts the kinds of clinical events which are best addressed via this system. Second-to-second changes (such as in oxygen saturations) translate poorly through systems which have delays in the order minutes.[47] Therefore it is important in the design of decision support systems to target the correct events and recognize that extreme or rapidly occurring events may best be addressed via alternative notification systems or embedded into clinical monitors at the point of care.

The other key consideration is who is the intended recipient of the clinical decision support alert. In the US practice setting, there may be providers responsible for anesthesia care who are both within and outside the anesthetizing location. Alerts for providers in the OR may focus on supporting clinical decisions and selections, whereas those which are targeted at the supervising provider may be best focused on ensuring that the provider retains awareness of the current state of the OR cases being supervised. A provider in the role of OR anesthesia supervisor or manager may have additional concerns regarding allocation of anesthesia resources to support the anesthesia care being provided; notifications of significant deviations from schedules or occurrence of emergency events may be relevant to this group.

Various tools are available which incorporate these features. As discussed earlier, many passive decision support features are built into the EHR software natively. While more active decision support systems may be integrated into the EHR software it is also possible that this may come as part of stand-alone software which provides a mechanism for delivering these alerts to providers. More sophisticated implementations may additionally attempt to provide information about overall patient state drawing widely from EHR-derived data elements. This may be of use to providers in supervisory or OR manager roles seeking snapshots of the course of care.

IMPACT OF DECISION SUPPORT IN ANESTHESIA CARE

Evaluation of implementation of clinical decision support in anesthesia care has typically been focused around specific aspects of care, usually process measures. Examples include changes in ventilation parameters, perioperative β blockade, antibiotic administration, blood pressure management, administration of postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV) prophylaxis and decreases in anesthesia agent usage (by reductions in fresh gas flow).[44,48-58] What is less well established is the relationship between clinical decision support and relevant patient outcomes. Perioperative decision support tools in the domain of perioperative glucose management in diabetic patients has been able to demonstrate differences in surgical site infection alongside improvements in perioperative glucose control in a single-center study.[59] It is likely that measurable changes in patient outcome do not come from use of a single decision rule in most circumstances. Therefore, patient outcome impact is more likely in systems which include multiple elements in their decision support; this type of implementation is not widely implemented or studied. This is supported by a single-institution study which has demonstrated that deployment of a multiparameter perioperative decision support system may reduce hospital charges and therefore resources.[45]

Integration with the Enterprise Electronic Health Record

Given the substantial shared pool of information from which the AIMS and the enterprise EHR may draw on and contribute to, it is not surprising that these systems have become integrated at many institutions into a single system. It is important to note that this increases the complexity of the EHR. For organizations where the IT support for an OR or anesthesia information system was supported and maintained through an anesthesia or surgery department relationship, the migration to an enterprise EHR will result in these duties being transferred to the hospital or enterprise-wide support group. This may reduce the customizability of these systems as changes and alterations now become handled by groups with broader responsibilities and competing priorities.

An emerging feature of EHRs, which fulfills an early promise of their utility, is meaningful transmission of data from different EHR platforms across institutions. Typically, each institution maintains an EHR that is unique to that institution. As smaller medical practices have aggregated into larger health systems, providers come under the same umbrella EHR system. This has allowed records from more health interactions to be available in a single location; a satellite clinic in a physically separate location may use a health–systemwide common EHR for documentation, making it available to the anesthesiologist who sees the patient presenting for surgery at main campus. However, when a patient presents to a nonaffiliated practice or hospital, documentation from the other institutions are unavailable and have to be obtained as printed paper, or communicated by the patient manually.

To address this issue, healthcare information exchanges (HIE) have been developed. These exchanges facilitate the transfer of health information between multiple distinct healthcare system's EHRs. This can occur in a directed way: a user at one facility chooses to send imaging data to another and uses the EHR's HIE user interface to discover records available via the HIE. These come in multiple forms but are typically based on a geographic (i.e., at the state or regional level) or a shared EHR platform (i.e., EPIC Systems Care Everywhere functionality).

In order to function, HIEs must be able to correctly match the same patient across different hospitals or clinics. Failures of this process (both incorrectly matching two patients across institutions or failing to match the correct patient across institutions) could have potential for catastrophic consequences in clinical care. Matching must consider different identifiers used at each hospital; a medical record or registration number is usually unique to the institution so is not suitable for this task. Additionally, unique identification assigned for other reasons—such as social security numbers—may not be suitable for this task as their use may shift over time and the accuracy may not match the level of confidence required for medical care. Furthermore, social security numbers may pose risk to patient privacy as they are connected to multiple other datasets including financial records.

Typically, combinations of identifiers are used to uniquely identify patients. This is joined with logic that balances a degree of uncertainty to account for the challenges previously noted with the risks of failure to match and false matches. However, this may still lead to the exchange of patient identifiers. Cryptographic solutions may be employed to prevent the need to exchange patient identifiers.

In some situations, even acknowledging the existence of a record may be revealing and pose risk to patient privacy—for example a record existing in a clinic specializing in the treatment of a particular illness may cause an inference to be drawn about a particular diagnosis. One way to minimize this issue is to limit the links to another health system's records to patients in common at the source health system. Rather than allowing a user at one institution to search freely for patients at another institution, such an approach would allow users to access the "matched" patient records at another institution only. Access to remote systems could further be controlled to limit it to the context of an active patient-provider encounter. Each of these options contains trade-offs with maximizing information availability with patient privacy.

Billing System Interactions

Billing for hospital services involves capturing accurately the resources used in the delivery of care; for example, in the perioperative setting, OR and PACU times, or specific surgical supplies and equipment used. This is recorded via the OR management system and may be linked to a broader process which manages surgical supplies, resource utilization, and scheduling. In this manner, information captured as part of OR clinical care documentation may be reused for billing, supply, and utilization management. The management of information in a centralized EHR accessible by multiple users enables simultaneous use for clinical, operational, and administrative reasons. Automated export of documented parameters may form the basis of these other uses.

In the United States, professional charges for anesthesia care are based on the duration of the care provided and the procedure for which the care is provided. Additional charges may be possible for specialized monitoring, specialized vascular access, or pain management procedures provided for postoperative analgesia. Data necessary to aid the billing process can be extracted from the EHR: for example, basic case information such as duration of anesthesia care, ASA physical status classification, staff providing for anesthesia care, and procedure performed. Reports can be run at or near to the conclusion of the anesthesia care and allow a case to be rapidly turned over to the billing staff for further processing. This may speed up the billing process and make it less dependent on paper billing sheets or other means. The implementation of automated billing alerts via text paging and email have been shown to increase prevention of documentation practices that may have been erroneous and alter reimbursement, reduce time to documentation being complete and ready to be billed, reduce time to correct errors, and increase capture of arterial line placement leading to increased reimbursement.[28,30,60]

Challenges in Anesthesia Information Management System Implementation

Just as the OR must be available for emergencies at all times, the underlying perioperative information systems which capture this activity must also be highly reliable. Despite architecting extensive EHR redundancy, backup processes must be available in cases where the system is unavailable due to hardware and software failures, or in times of planned maintenance. Typically, these result in reverting to a paper-based system for the limited periods of planned or unplanned downtime. Processes must be in place to determine how documentation captured during these downtimes is subsequently handled.

Due to the complexity of these systems it is possible that certain elements fail without the entire system becoming unavailable. For example, if the link between the monitoring platform and the AIMS system becomes unavailable, anesthesia providers may have to respond by manually entering monitoring data. Importantly, this data link failure has to be recognized. Unfortunately, it is unlikely that manual data entry will replicate the degree of completeness of the automatically gathered information. Concerns have been raised of the possibility of legal liability arising from such scenarios.[61]

In all situations where electronic records are created, a plan needs to be created to ensure that access in the future is preserved. Medical records retention requirements vary significantly by state. These typically extend for a period of time past the last contact with the health service, even up to 10 years beyond that period for adult patients. For minor patients, this period typically extends beyond the time in which the patient reaches the age of majority, even up until the patient turns 30 years old. These time periods may extend past the life expectancy of the software which created the records. Operators of EHRs, including those in the perioperative period, need to have a plan in place to ensure that data can be archived, retained, and remain accessible in line with these legal requirements.

Even with the most comprehensive of EHRs there may be a need for a physical medical record to be created as part of care—consent forms may be provided on paper, patients may write letters to their providers, and outside hospitals may send printed or paper records with a transferring patient. Decisions need to be made as to how these physical documents are retained and archived. This may involve making electronic copies which become available within the electronic record.

In situations in which separate systems are used in the perioperative process from the rest of the institution there may be situations where a paper record is printed and placed inside a patient's physical chart. When a paper record and an electronic record exist simultaneously at a given institution, then a decision needs to be made as to which has primacy. If a provider creates a paper record at the end of anesthesia care and then subsequently updates a documentation element at a later time, a process needs to be in place to ensure that this can be transferred to the patient's physical record for the paper record to maintain primacy.

Additionally, if differing systems are used in the perioperative period there may be failure of communication of important information to the entire healthcare team. While specific examples regarding medications with prolonged duration of action and challenges in airway management have been discussed above, the siloing of information in a separate system (potentially with different access requirements) contributes to the appearance of the perioperative period as being one which is completely distinct from the rest of the clinical encounter. This can contribute to failures of communication of events which occur during this important phase of care and thus potentially patient harm.

Ensuring coverage of all locations where an anesthetic may be performed can be challenging. There may be many sites where anesthesia care is provided infrequently. These are likely "non-operating room sites." In such cases the economic justification for the capital investment required to allow these sites to participate in electronic charting may not be justified. In such situations, cases performed in non-connected locations may require traditional paper charting. This creates a significant overhead as business processes need to be maintained to support the documentation of activity in these locations and ensure that the paper documentation is archived as the record of care, available for billing processes and quality assurance review.

Additional Uses for Collected Data

Secondary use of EHR data has become commonplace and is part of the value proposition of the transition to these systems. In addition to the primary purposes of clinical documentation, operational and support tasks, information contained within the EHR may find secondary uses including in the ascertainment of practice quality measures and research endeavors.

USE FOR MEDICAL RESEARCH

The rapid emergence of AIMS led to a proliferation of research into anesthesia care practices and outcomes. This proliferation has occurred because of the improved ease with which study data may be acquired. Queries of the underlying EHR databases are far quicker to perform and may be more extensive in scope than review of paper documentation in the same population. Collectively, this has led to a rapid development of retrospective database research within anesthesiology. This work has allowed quantification and identification of risk factors for both rare events, such as difficult mask ventilation combined with difficult intubation or epidural hematoma after neuraxial anesthesia, and more common perioperative events, such as acute kidney injury.[62-67]

The use of an EHR as a data source for research initiatives has offered advantages of scale in study size but also allows a wide range of risk factors to be considered. It is now routine for observational research studies using EHR data to include thousands of patient records. Given the relatively infrequent occurrence of catastrophic complications or major adverse outcomes in modern anesthetic practice, extremely large sample sizes are necessary for quantification of risk factors and rates of occurrence of significant patient outcomes.

Despite the rarity of intraoperative complications, long-term complications of the surgical procedure remain common. The ability to utilize information drawn from the entire hospital record to characterize patient outcome is extremely important to the perioperative outcome researcher, as postoperative complications may have substantial impact on patient outcome.

It has become apparent that even the largest of single center studies may not be able to generalize well across sites. Substantial heterogeneity in clinical practice exists between institutions and across geographical regions. This has driven the development of multicenter studies, facilitated by the interchange of electronic data. The Multicenter Perioperative Outcomes Group (MPOG)[*] is one example of such an undertaking, bringing together investigators from over 50 institutions across the United States and Europe who have assembled, standardized, and identified over 10 million perioperative records for research and quality improvement.[†] By including data from many sites and seeking to include diverse practice locations, such efforts aim to develop generalizable knowledge.

One of the challenges in performing this work is the level of abstraction required to summarize the patient's clinical encounter into a small number of variables for inclusion in any analysis. For example, studies on the relationship of intraoperative hypotension and postoperative outcome need to consider how to develop a measure of hypotension which summarizes multiple hours of highly granular blood pressure information into a small number of variables for inclusion in the research study. A single 3-hour case may have 60 or more non-invasive blood pressure values recorded. To include in any analysis, these need to be summarized in a manner which remains biologically plausible. Many options are available, such as averages of all collected blood pressures or time or fraction of the case above (or below) absolute (i.e., mean arterial pressure [MAP] <65 mm Hg) or relative (<20% drop from baseline MAP) thresholds. Each approach would have very different output values and may alter the results and interpretation of a research finding. With any automatically collected information, methods for handling artifacts should be considered as artifactual values may have been propagated from the monitoring platform to the automated record without clinician intervention. Given the abundance of possible data to be included in any study, it is key that a clear hypothesis and approach be developed a-priori rather than post-hoc decisions that may evaluate particular statistically or clinically significant outcomes.

While most of the research thus far has been in the context of retrospective observational studies, an emerging theme in EHR-derived research is the use of this data in near real time (within days) for prospective interventional trials. These studies attempt to gather much of the information required for the trial as a byproduct of the clinical documentation created in the EHR. Additional information regarding patient progress in the study can be appended via traditional study management software. More novel methodologies such as embedded pragmatic clinical trials where hospitals or clinics choose to standardize their management in a coordinated manner for all patients (i.e., one class of antihypertensive or another as the usual first agent for adult patients without chronic kidney disease) are dependent on EHR data collection for patient follow up and perhaps even delivering the "usual choice" via decision support tools (see Chapter 89).[68]

MEASUREMENT OF QUALITY OF CARE

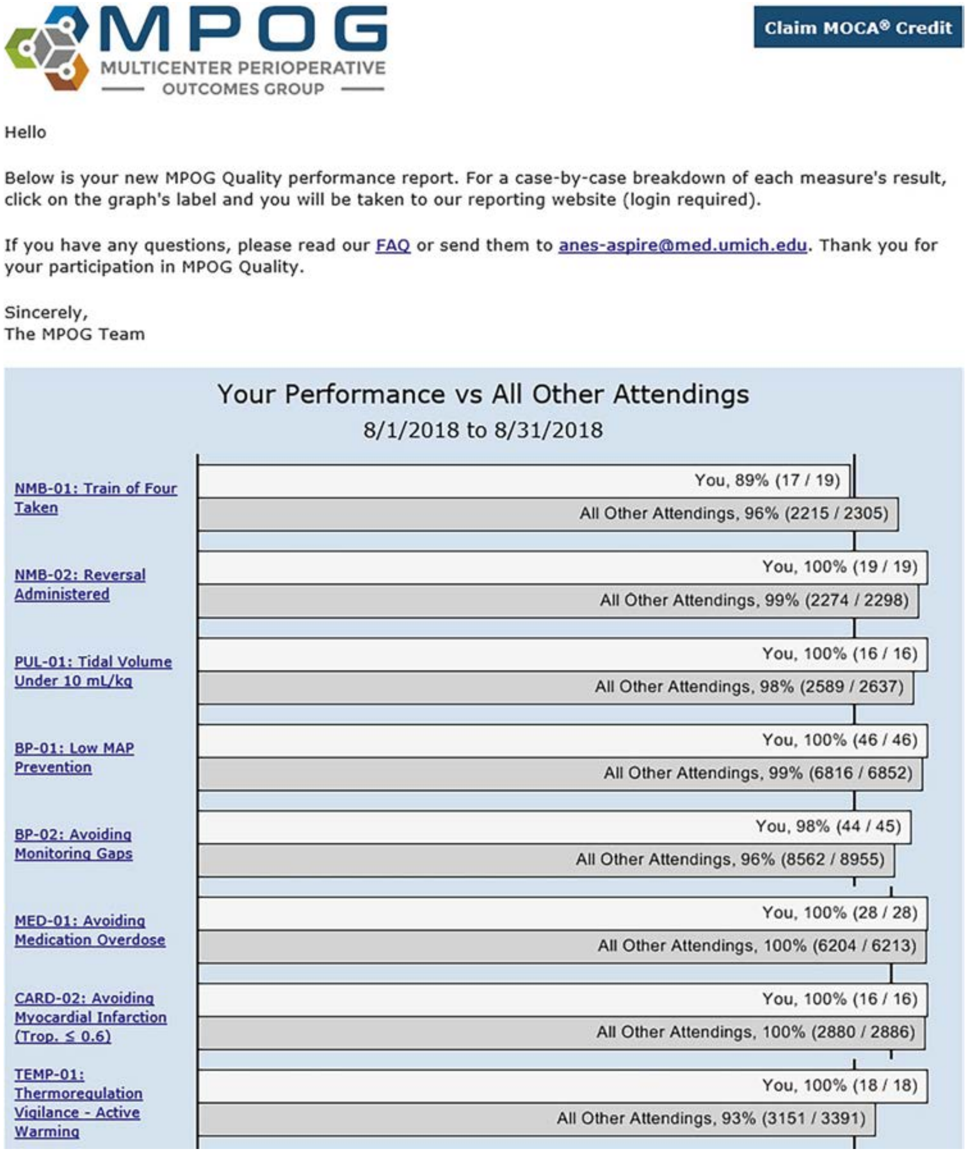
Information regarding the quality of care delivered and patient outcomes may be obtained from review of the EHR. Traditional models of quality management frequently depended on the use of trained abstractors reviewing medical records and applying standardized definitions. While these systems work well, they do not scale well into high volume clinical settings due to the time-consuming nature of detailed review and the resultant staffing costs. Interest has developed in the use of EHR data for the automated derivation of quality of care information. With careful design, both process of care (i.e., appropriate antibiotic prophylaxis administration) and outcome measures (i.e., surgical site infection) may be tracked using data derived from the EHR. Decision support tools may be used to aid in the alignment of the quality measures and the clinical practice which they seek to measure. Care needs to be taken to ensure the pattern of care which may be promoted is consistent with good clinical practice.

Using automatically derived measures, it is possible to provide feedback to medical providers near the time of clinical care. Automated data extraction and processing is well developed, with feedback being described across provider groups using email, provider and institutional specific "dashboard' reporting tools, and real-time paging alerts (Fig. 4.7).[38,49,51] Various groups have worked to make available tools to enable the widespread deployment of quality measures via submission of data from individual sites to a centralized database.[69] This approach is designed to limit the need for each site to develop the required technical architecture to build and deploy such tools—a significant hurdle for many organizations. However, this likely comes at the expense of flexibility of measurement offered at each site and some degree of delay in processing.

---

[*] Multicenter Perioperative Outcomes Group: http://www.mpog.org

[†] Personal communication, October 2018.


MPOG
MULTICENTER PERIOPERATIVE OUTCOMES GROUP
Claim MOCA® Credit

Hello

Below is your new MPOG Quality performance report. For a case-by-case breakdown of each measure's result, click on the graph's label and you will be taken to our reporting website (login required).

If you have any questions, please read our FAQ or send them to anes-aspire@med.umich.edu. Thank you for your participation in MPOG Quality.

Sincerely,
The MPOG Team

Your Performance vs All Other Attendings
8/1/2018 to 8/31/2018
NMB-01: Train of Four Taken
You, 89% (17 / 19)
All Other Attendings, 96% (2215 / 2305)
NMB-02: Reversal Administered
You, 100% (19 / 19)
All Other Attendings, 99% (2274 / 2298)
PUL-01: Tidal Volume Under 10 mL/kg
You, 100% (16 / 16)
All Other Attendings, 98% (2589 / 2637)
BP-01: Low MAP Prevention
You, 100% (46 / 46)
All Other Attendings, 99% (6816 / 6852)
BP-02: Avoiding Monitoring Gaps
You, 98% (44 / 45)
All Other Attendings, 96% (8562 / 8955)
MED-01: Avoiding Medication Overdose
You, 100% (28 / 28)
All Other Attendings, 100% (6204 / 6213)
CARD-02: Avoiding Myocardial Infarction (Trop. ≤ 0.6)
You, 100% (16 / 16)
All Other Attendings, 100% (2880 / 2886)
TEMP-01: Thermoregulation Vigilance - Active Warming
You, 100% (18 / 18)
All Other Attendings, 93% (3151 / 3391)

Fig. 4.7 Example of feedback email summarizing performance based on an automated assessment of compliance against predefined measurement instruments using data derived from the electronic health record. This figure has been lightly edited to remove identifying information of the recipient.

Interactions of Electronic Devices with the Delivery of Anesthesia Care

Safe anesthesia care requires the maintenance of a high degree of vigilance to multiple sources of information concurrently. When combined with required clinical tasks, estimates suggest that anesthesia care has high workload requirements.[70] Workload includes the factors related to the nature of the task, the situation in which it is performed, and the operator performing it.[71] In relation to phases of OR care, workload is clearly not uniformly distributed, clustering particularly in the induction and emergence phases of care.[70] The ability of providers to engage in tasks additional to patient care is debated.

Distractions from current patient care may include communication with other team members in the OR unrelated to patient care, preparation for subsequent patients, clinical reference lookup, pursuit of educational activities, and attention to personal issues. Attempts to quantify providers' attentiveness to the clinical situation or impact of a distracting event have been performed and note that distractions are a common feature of anesthesia care.[70,72-75] Given the common occurrence and diverse sources of possible distracting events during anesthesia care, mitigating the effects of distraction to maintain focus on patient care may be a required skill of an anesthesia provider.[74]

In particular, the proliferation of electronic devices in the OR including personally owned devices by providers (such as smartphone and tablet devices) and those that are part of the anesthesia workstation (frequently Internet-connected computers for accessing EHR and documentation purposes) has raised concern for the new sources of distraction in the OR.[76] A study from eight anesthesia workstations in one institution found that the computer attached to the anesthesia workstation was used for non-anesthesia documentation purposes for 16% of the procedure time. Importantly, this study did not differentiate between time spent in this category that was related to patient care (i.e., accessing a separate lab or EHR system) or not.[77] Additional research has observed self-initiated distractions occurred in 54% of anesthesia cases.[78] Distractions related to personal matters were found in 49% of cases and related to educational activities in 24% of cases.[78]

Professional societies have issued guidelines on the role of distractions, including electronic devices, in the OR, some of which recommend the development of local policies to cover usage of electronic devices.[79-81] These policies may differentiate between clinical, educational, and personal usage of electronic devices and resources, and the appropriateness of each during patient care. It should be noted that many aspects of use of perioperative information technology, including use of personal devices, are subject to logging or recording. This may allow medicolegal review of activity performed on electronic devices contemporaneous to anesthesia care being provided in the future.

Conclusion

Information technology is very much part of the perioperative care process. It has significantly impacted clinical care, organizational performance, provider satisfaction, research, and assessment of quality of care. It is important that anesthesiologists understand the principles behind its use and be keenly aware of the benefits and potential shortcomings that applications of these tools may have. It seems likely that the future will hold a more connected perioperative environment with even more information available. The challenge, and the promise, of perioperative informatics still lies in ensuring the right people have access to the right information at the right time to enable them to make the right decision for the patient care they are providing.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Dr. C. William Hanson for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. McKesson EI. *Curr Res Anesth Analg*. 1934;13:1.
2. Block Jr FE, et al. *J Clin Monit*. 1985;1:30.
3. Block Jr FE. *Baillière's Clinical Anaesthesiology*. 1990;4:159.
4. Stonemetz J. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2011;29:367.
5. Egger Halbeis CB. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1323.
6. Trentman TL, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2011;25:129.
7. Stol IS. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:644.
8. Steinbrook R. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:1057.
9. Committee on Quality Management and Departmental Administration. *Statement on Documentation of Anesthesia Care*. Schaumburg, IL: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 2018.
10. Rutala WA, et al. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2006;27:372.
11. Bures S, et al. *Am J Infect Control*. 2000;28:465.
12. Loeb RG. *J Clin Monit*. 1995;11:9.
13. Allard J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:619.
14. Weinger MB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:144; discussion 29A.
15. Davis TC, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2012;26:163.
16. Reich DL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:612.
17. Thrush DN. *J Clin Anesth*. 1992;4:386.
18. Cook RI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:385.
19. van Schalkwyk JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:546.
20. Lerou JG, et al. *J Clin Monit*. 1988;4:37.
21. Devitt JH, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:122.
22. Edwards KE, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60:990.
23. Jang J, et al. *Int J Med Inform*. 2013;82:702.
24. Driscoll WD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1454; table of contents.
25. Avidan A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2014;61:979.
26. Avidan A, Weissman C. *Int J Med Inform*. 2012;81:173.
27. Sandberg WS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:192; table of contents.
28. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:592.
29. McCarty LK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:1166.
30. Spring SF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:157.
31. Reich DL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:179; quiz 231.
32. Luedi MM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:1169.
33. Wang J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:1333.
34. Dexter F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:929.
35. Dexter F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1119; table of contents.
36. Dexter F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:1103.
37. Deal LG, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2014;26:264.
38. Epstein RH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:678.
39. Nair BG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:603.
40. Rodriquez LI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:255.
41. Ehrenfeld JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:356.
42. Nair BG, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2013;27:265.
43. Sathishkumar S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:29.
44. Blum JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:295.
45. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:272.
46. Simpao AF, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31:885.
47. Epstein RH, Dexter F. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:929.
48. Nair BG, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2012;38:283.
49. O'Reilly M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:908.
50. Nair BG, et al. *Surg Infect (Larchmt)*. 2011;12:57.
51. Nair BG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1293.
52. St Jacques P, et al. *Surg Infect (Larchmt)*. 2005;6:215.
53. Wax DB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1462; table of contents.
54. Nair BG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:206.
55. Kooij FO, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:893; table of contents.
56. Kooij FO, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:961.
57. Kooij FO, et al. *Appl Clin Inform*. 2017;8:313.
58. Nair BG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:874.
59. Ehrenfeld JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:431.
60. Freundlich RE, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2013;25:110.
61. Vigoda MM, Lubarsky DA. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1798.
62. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:885.
63. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:1360.
64. Lee LO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:1053.
65. Ehrenfeld JM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2013;38:409.
66. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:892.
67. Sun LY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:515.
68. Weinfurt KP, et al. *BMC Med Res Methodol*. 2017;17:144.
69. Valentine EA, Falk SA. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2018;36:31.
70. Weinger MB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1419; table of contents.
71. Leedal JM, Smith AF. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:702.
72. Slagle JM, Weinger MB. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:275.
73. Jothiraj H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:477.
74. Campbell G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:707.
75. Savoldelli GL, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:683.
76. Jorm CM, O'Sullivan G, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2012;40:71.
77. Wax DB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:1184.
78. Slagle JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:44.
79. Committee on Quality Management and Departmental Administration. *Statement on Distractions*. Schaumburg, IL: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 2015.
80. Committee on Perioperative Care. *Statement on Distractions in the Operating Room*. Chicago, IL: American College of Surgeons (ACS); 2016.
81. Position Statement. *Mobile Information Technology*. Park Ridge, IL: American Association of Nurse Anesthetists; 2015.

References

1. McKesson El. The technique of recording the effects of gas-oxygen mixtures, pressures, rebreathing and carbon-dioxide, with a summary of the effects. *Curr Res Anesth Analg*. 1934;13:1–14.
2. Block Jr FE, Burton LW, Rafal MD, et al. The computer-based anesthetic monitors: the Duke Automatic Monitoring Equipment (DAME) system and the microDAME. *J Clin Monit*. 1985;1:30–51.
3. Block Jr FE. The Diatek Arkive ® Patient Information Management System. *Baillieres Clin Anaesthesiol*. 1990;4:159–170.
4. Stonemetz J. Anesthesia information management systems marketplace and current vendors. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2011;29:367–375.
5. Egger CB, Epstein RH, Macario A, Pearl RG, Grunwald Z. Adoption of anesthesia information management systems by academic departments in the United States. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1323–1329.
6. Trentman TL, Mueller JT, Ruskin KJ, Noble BN, Doyle CA. Adoption of anesthesia information management systems by US anesthesiologists. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2011;25:129–135.
7. Stol IS, Ehrenfeld JM, Epstein RH. Technology diffusion of anesthesia information management systems into academic anesthesia departments in the United States. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:644–650.
8. Steinbrook R. Health care and the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:1057–1060.
9. Committee on Quality Management and Departmental Administration. *Statement on Documentation of Anesthesia Care*. Schaumburg, IL: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 2018.
10. Rutala WA, White MS, Gergen MF, Weber DJ. Bacterial contamination of keyboards: efficacy and functional impact of disinfectants. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2006;27:372–377.
11. Bures S, Fishbain JT, Uyehara CF, Parker JM, Berg BW. Computer keyboards and faucet handles as reservoirs of nosocomial pathogens in the intensive care unit. *Am J Infect Control*. 2000;28:465–471.
12. Loeb RG. Manual record keeping is not necessary for anesthesia vigilance. *J Clin Monit*. 1995;11:9–13.
13. Allard J, Dzwonczyk R, Yablok D, Block Jr FE, McDonald JS. Effect of automatic record keeping on vigilance and record keeping time. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:619–626.
14. Weinger MB, Herndon OW, Gaba DM. The effect of electronic record keeping and transesophageal echocardiography on task distribution, workload, and vigilance during cardiac anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:144–155; discussion 29A-30A.
15. Davis TC, Green JA, Colquhoun A, Hage BL, Biddle C. Anesthesia recordkeeping: accuracy of recall with computerized and manual entry recordkeeping. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2012;26:163–169.
16. Reich DL, Wood Jr RK, Mattar R, et al. Arterial blood pressure and heart rate discrepancies between handwritten and computerized anesthesia records. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:612–616.
17. Thrush DN. Are automated anesthesia records better? *J Clin Anesth*. 1992;4:386–389.
18. Cook RI, McDonald JS, Nunziata E. Differences between handwritten and automatic blood pressure records. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:385–390.
19. van Schalkwyk JM, Lowes D, Frampton C, Merry AF. Does manual anaesthetic record capture remove clinically important data? *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:546–552.
20. Lerou JG, Dirksen R, van Daele M, Nijhuis GM, Crul JF. Automated charting of physiological variables in anesthesia: a quantitative comparison of automated versus handwritten anesthesia records. *J Clin Monit*. 1988;4:37–47.
21. Devitt JH, Rapanos T, Kurrek M, Cohen MM, Shaw M. The anesthetic record: accuracy and completeness. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:122–128.
22. Edwards KE, Hagen SM, Hannam J, Kruger C, Yu R, Merry AF. A randomized comparison between records made with an anesthesia information management system and by hand, and evaluation of the Hawthorne effect. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60:990–997.
23. Jang J, Yu SH, Kim CB, Moon Y, Kim S. The effects of an electronic medical record on the completeness of documentation in the anesthesia record. *Int J Med Inform*. 2013;82:702–707.
24. Driscoll WD, Columbia MA, Peterfreund RA. An observational study of anesthesia record completeness using an anesthesia information management system. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1454–1461; table of contents.
25. Avidan A, Dotan K, Weissman C, Cohen MJ, Levin PD. Accuracy of manual entry of drug administration data into an anesthesia information management system. *Can J Anaesth*. 2014;61:979–985.
26. Avidan A, Weissman C. Record completeness and data concordance in an anesthesia information management system using context-sensitive mandatory data-entry fields. *Int J Med Inform*. 2012;81:173–181.
27. Sandberg WS, Sandberg EH, Seim AR, et al. Real-time checking of electronic anesthesia records for documentation errors and automatically text messaging clinicians improves quality of documentation. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:192–201; table of contents.
28. Kheterpal S, Gupta R, Blum JM, Tremper KK, O'Reilly M, Kazanjian PE. Electronic reminders improve procedure documentation compliance and professional fee reimbursement. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:592–597.
29. McCarty LK, Saddawi-Konefka D, Gargan LM, Driscoll WD, Walsh JL, Peterfreund RA. Application of process improvement principles to increase the frequency of complete airway management documentation. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:1166–1174.
30. Spring SF, Sandberg WS, Anupama S, Walsh JL, Driscoll WD, Raines DE. Automated documentation error detection and notification improves anesthesia billing performance. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:157–163.
31. Reich DL, Kahn RA, Wax D, Palvia T, Galati M, Krol M. Development of a module for point-of-care charge capture and submission using an anesthesia information management system. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:179–186; quiz 231-2.
32. Luedi MM, Kauf P, Mulks L, Wieferich K, Schiffer R, Doll D. Implications of patient age and ASA physical status for operating room management decisions. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:1169–1177.
33. Wang J, Dexter F, Yang K. A behavioral study of daily mean turnover times and first case of the day start tardiness. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:1333–1341.
34. Dexter F, Epstein RH, Lee JD, Ledolter J. Automatic updating of times remaining in surgical cases using bayesian analysis of historical case duration data and "instant messaging" updates from anesthesia providers. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:929–940.
35. Dexter F, Abouleish AE, Epstein RH, Whitten CW, Lubarsky DA. Use of operating room information system data to predict the impact of reducing turnover times on staffing costs. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1119–1126. table of contents.
36. Dexter F, Epstein RH, Bayman EO, Ledolter J. Estimating surgical case durations and making comparisons among facilities: identifying facilities with lower anesthesia professional fees. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:1103–1115.
37. Deal LG, Nyland ME, Gravenstein N, Tighe P. Are anesthesia start and end times randomly distributed? The influence of electronic records. *J Clin Anesth*. 2014;26:264–270.
38. Epstein RH, Dexter F, Patel N. Influencing anesthesia provider behavior using anesthesia information management system data for near real-time alerts and post hoc reports. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:678–692.
39. Nair BG, Gabel E, Hofer I, Schwid HA, Cannesson M. Intraoperative clinical decision support for anesthesia: a narrative review of available systems. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:603–617.
40. Rodriquez LI, Smaka TJ, Mahla M, Epstein RH. Default drug doses in anesthesia information management systems. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:255–260.
41. Ehrenfeld JM, Epstein RH, Bader S, Kheterpal S, Sandberg WS. Automatic notifications mediated by anesthesia information management systems reduce the frequency of prolonged gaps in blood pressure documentation. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:356–363.
42. Nair BG, Horibe M, Newman SF, Wu WY, Schwid HA. Near real-time notification of gaps in cuff blood pressure recordings for improved patient monitoring. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2013;27:265–271.
43. Sathishkumar S, Lai M, Picton P, et al. Behavioral modification of intraoperative hyperglycemia management with a novel real-time audiovisual monitor. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:29–37.
44. Blum JM, Stentz MJ, Maile MD, et al. Automated alerting and recommendations for the management of patients with preexisting hypoxia and potential acute lung injury: a pilot study. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:295–302.
45. Kheterpal S, Shanks A, Tremper KK. Impact of a novel multiparameter decision support system on intraoperative processes of care and postoperative outcomes. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:272–282.
46. Simpao AF, Tan JM, Lingappan AM, Galvez JA, Morgan SE, Krall MA. A systematic review of near real-time and point-of-care clinical decision support in anesthesia information management systems. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31:885–894.

47. Epstein RH, Dexter F. Implications of resolved hypoxemia on the utility of desaturation alerts sent from an anesthesia decision support system to supervising anesthesiologists. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:929–933.
48. Nair BG, Peterson GN, Newman SF, Wu WY, Kolios-Morris V, Schwid HA. Improving documentation of a beta-blocker quality measure through an anesthesia information management system and real-time notification of documentation errors. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2012;38:283–288.
49. O'Reilly M, Talsma A, VanRiper S, Kheterpal S, Burney R. An anesthesia information system designed to provide physician-specific feedback improves timely administration of prophylactic antibiotics. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:908–912.
50. Nair BG, Newman SF, Peterson GN, Schwid HA. Automated electronic reminders to improve redosing of antibiotics during surgical cases: comparison of two approaches. *Surg Infect (Larchmt)*. 2011;12:57–63.
51. Nair BG, Newman SF, Peterson GN, Wu WY, Schwid HA. Feedback mechanisms including real-time electronic alerts to achieve near 100% timely prophylactic antibiotic administration in surgical cases. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1293–1300.
52. St Jacques P, Sanders N, Patel N, Talbot TR, Deshpande JK, Higgins M. Improving timely surgical antibiotic prophylaxis redosing administration using computerized record prompts. *Surg Infect (Larchmt)*. 2005;6:215–221.
53. Wax DB, Beilin Y, Levin M, Chadha N, Krol M, Reich DL. The effect of an interactive visual reminder in an anesthesia information management system on timeliness of prophylactic antibiotic administration. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1462–1466; table of contents.
54. Nair BG, Horibe M, Newman SF, Wu WY, Peterson GN, Schwid HA. Anesthesia information management system-based near real-time decision support to manage intraoperative hypotension and hypertension. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:206–214.
55. Kooij FO, Klok T, Hollmann MW, Kal JE. Decision support increases guideline adherence for prescribing postoperative nausea and vomiting prophylaxis. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:893–898; table of contents.
56. Kooij FO, Vos N, Siebenga P, Klok T, Hollmann MW, Kal JE. Automated reminders decrease postoperative nausea and vomiting incidence in a general surgical population. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:961–965.
57. Kooij FO, Klok T, Preckel B, Hollmann MW, Kal JE. The effect of requesting a reason for non-adherence to a guideline in a long running automated reminder system for PONV prophylaxis. *Appl Clin Inform*. 2017;8:313–321.
58. Nair BG, Peterson GN, Neradilek MB, Newman SF, Huang EY, Schwid HA. Reducing wastage of inhalation anesthetics using real-time decision support to notify of excessive fresh gas flow. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:874–884.
59. Ehrenfeld JM, Wanderer JP, Terekhov M, Rothman BS, Sandberg WS. A perioperative systems design to improve intraoperative glucose monitoring is associated with a reduction in surgical site infections in a diabetic patient population. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:431–440.
60. Freundlich RE, Barnet CS, Mathis MR, Shanks AM, Tremper KK, Kheterpal S. A randomized trial of automated electronic alerts demonstrating improved reimbursable anesthesia time documentation. *J Clin Anesth*. 2013;25:110–114.
61. Vigoda MM, Lubarsky DA. Failure to recognize loss of incoming data in an anesthesia record-keeping system may have increased medical liability. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1798–1802.
62. Kheterpal S, Han R, Tremper KK, et al. Incidence and predictors of difficult and impossible mask ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:885–891.
63. Kheterpal S, Healy D, Aziz MF, et al. Multicenter perioperative outcomes group perioperative clinical research C: incidence, predictors, and outcome of difficult mask ventilation combined with difficult laryngoscopy: a report from the multicenter perioperative outcomes group. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:1360–1369.
64. Lee LO, Bateman BT, Kheterpal S, et al. Multicenter perioperative outcomes group i: risk of epidural hematoma after neuraxial techniques in thrombocytopenic parturients: a report from the multicenter perioperative outcomes group. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:1053–1063.
65. Ehrenfeld JM, Agarwal AK, Henneman JP, Sandberg WS. Estimating the incidence of suspected epidural hematoma and the hidden imaging cost of epidural catheterization: a retrospective review of 43,200 cases. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2013;38:409–414.
66. Kheterpal S, Tremper KK, Englesbe MJ, et al. Predictors of postoperative acute renal failure after noncardiac surgery in patients with previously normal renal function. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:892–902.
67. Sun LY, Wijeysundera DN, Tait GA, Beattie WS. Association of intraoperative hypotension with acute kidney injury after elective noncardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:515–523.
68. Weinfurt KP, Hernandez AF, Coronado GD, et al. Pragmatic clinical trials embedded in healthcare systems: generalizable lessons from the NIH Collaboratory. *BMC Med Res Methodol*. 2017;17:144.
69. Valentine EA, Falk SA. Quality improvement in anesthesiology - leveraging data and analytics to optimize outcomes. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2018;36:31–44.
70. Weinger MB, Reddy SB, Slagle JM. Multiple measures of anesthesia workload during teaching and nonteaching cases. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1419–1425; table of contents.
71. Leedal JM, Smith AF. Methodological approaches to anaesthetists' workload in the operating theatre. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:702–709.
72. Slagle JM, Weinger MB. Effects of intraoperative reading on vigilance and workload during anesthesia care in an academic medical center. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:275–283.
73. Jothiraj H, Howland-Harris J, Evley R, Moppett IK. Distractions and the anaesthetist: a qualitative study of context and direction of distraction. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:477–482.
74. Campbell G, Arfanis K, Smith AF. Distraction and interruption in anaesthetic practice. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:707–715.
75. Savoldelli GL, Thieblemont J, Clergue F, Waeber JL, Forster A, Garnerin P. Incidence and impact of distracting events during induction of general anaesthesia for urgent surgical cases. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:683–689.
76. Jorm CM, O'Sullivan G. Laptops and smartphones in the operating theatre - how does our knowledge of vigilance, multi-tasking and anaesthetist performance help us in our approach to this new distraction? *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2012;40:71–78.
77. Wax DB, Lin HM, Reich DL. Intraoperative non-record-keeping usage of anesthesia information management system workstations and associated hemodynamic variability and aberrancies. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:1184–1189.
78. Slagle JM, Porterfield ES, Lorinc AN, Afshartous D, Shotwell MS, Weinger MB. Prevalence of potentially distracting noncare activities and their effects on vigilance, workload, and nonroutine events during anesthesia care. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:44–54.
79. Committee on Quality Management and Departmental Administration. *Statement on Distractions*. Schaumburg, IL: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 2015.
80. Committee on Perioperative Care. *Statement on Distractions in the Operating Room*. Chicago, IL: American College of Surgeons (ACS); 2016.
81. Position Statement. *Mobile Information Technology*. Park Ridge, IL: American Association of Nurse Anesthetists; 2015.

5

Quality Improvement in Anesthesia Practice and Patient Safety

ANNA MARY VARUGHESE, DAVID WINTHROP BUCK, MEGHAN BROOKS LANE-FALL, and EUGENIE S. HEITMILLER

KEY POINTS

- Quality needs to be an integral characteristic of the system in which care is delivered. Improving the quality of care often requires reorganization of the way we work. A challenge to the anesthesia team is to combine efficiency in perioperative care (especially the operating room) with safety and the best quality possible.
- The growing demand from patients, clinicians, insurers, regulators, accreditors, and purchasers for improved quality and safety in health care requires that anesthesiologists and members of the anesthesia team persistently evaluate the quality of care they provide.
- Improving quality of care requires measuring performance. Clinicians have an enhanced ability to obtain feedback regarding performance in their daily work, in part because of the increasing use of information systems. Unfortunately, consensus has not been reached on how to measure quality of care.
- The goal of measurement is to learn and improve. The measurement system must fit into an improvement system; clinicians must have the will to work cooperatively to improve, and they must have ideas or hypotheses about changes to the current system of care. Also, the clinical team must have a model for testing changes and implementing those that result in improvements.
- Outcome measures, including in-hospital mortality rates, have been the basis for evaluating performance and quality. However, hospital mortality alone provides an incomplete picture of quality, does not include all domains of quality, and does not measure the overall success of the full cycle of care for a specific medical condition. A balanced set of structures (how care is organized), processes (what we do), and outcome measures (results of care in terms of patient's health over time) is needed to evaluate the quality of care overall.
- Efforts to improve quality of care require development of valid, reliable, and practical measures of quality. Identification of clinical care that truly achieves excellence would be helpful not only to the administration of anesthesia, but also to health care overall.
- Developing a quality measure requires several steps: prioritizing the clinical area to evaluate; selecting the type of measure; writing definitions and designing specifications; developing data collection tools; pilot-testing data collection tools and evaluating the validity, reliability, and feasibility of measures; developing scoring and analytic specifications; and collecting baseline data.
- The best opportunities to improve quality of care and patient outcomes will most likely come not only from discovering new therapies, but also from discovering how to better deliver therapies that are already known to be effective.
- Safety is an integral part of quality that is focused on the prevention of error and patient harm. The airline industry is often lauded as an exemplar of safety because it has embraced important safety principles, including the standardization of routine tasks, the reduction of unnecessary complexity, and the creation of redundancies. Anesthesia care teams have also adopted these principles, although many opportunities remain to further bolster patient safety.
- Healthcare providers can organize their quality improvement and patient safety efforts around three key areas: (1) translating evidence into practice, (2) identifying and mitigating hazards, and (3) improving culture and communication. Although each of these areas requires different tools, they all help health care organizations evaluate progress in patient safety and quality.

The need for improving quality and reducing the cost of health care has been highlighted repeatedly in the scientific literature and lay press. Improving care, minimizing variation, and reducing costs have increasingly become national priorities in many countries. Quality improvement (QI) programs that address these issues not only improve delivery of care but also have a positive effect on practitioner job satisfaction and organizational commitment.[1]

The goal of this chapter is to present a practical framework for developing and implementing QI programs in anesthesiology and critical care medicine that are both scientifically sound and feasible. To accomplish this goal, we review the science and approaches to QI, present measures that help evaluate whether QI programs have resulted in improvements, and describe examples of successful QI efforts.

What Is Quality?

DEFINITION OF QUALITY

W. Edwards Deming, scholar, professor, author, lecturer, and consultant to business leaders, corporations, and governments defined quality as "a predictable degree of uniformity and dependability with a quality standard suited to the customer."[1] This early definition of quality, in the context of QI, stems from its application to industrial production. However, when the term *quality* is applied to health care, the subtleties and implications of treating a human being are of prime importance, as opposed to the concerns involved in producing consumer goods. Use of the term *quality* in the context of health care can sometimes lead to defensive attitudes, economic concerns, and even ethical debates.

In the healthcare sector, quality can have various meanings to different people. For example, a daughter may evaluate quality by the level of dignity and respect with which her elderly mother is treated by a nurse. A cardiac surgeon may see quality as a percentage of improvement in the function of a heart on which he or she has just operated. A business may judge quality by the timeliness and cost effectiveness of the care delivered to its employees and its effect on the bottom line. Finally, society may evaluate quality by the ability to deliver care to those who need it, regardless of their cultural or socioeconomic backgrounds.

Despite the numerous definitions of quality in both business and medicine, a unified definition of quality in the context of QI should exist in health care. This definition of quality may have implications for both its measurement and its improvement. In order to help standardize the definition of quality in health care, the Institute of Medicine (IOM) published its own definition in a 1990 report titled *Medicare: A Strategy for Quality Assurance.* The IOM, which has since been renamed the National Academy of Medicine (NAM), defined *quality* as "the degree to which health services for individuals and populations increase the likelihood of desired health outcomes and are consistent with current professional knowledge."[2] Inherent in this definition are the elements of measurement, goal orientation, process and outcomes, individual and society preferences, and a dynamic state of professional knowledge. This definition of quality in health care has gained widespread acceptance. A similar definition is offered by the U.S. Government Department of Health and Human Services, which defines quality in public health as "the degree to which policies, programs, services, and research for the population increase desired health outcomes and conditions in which the population can be healthy."

AIMS OF QUALITY IN HEALTH CARE

In the 2001 report, *Crossing the Quality Chasm,* six aims for quality in health care were outlined.[3] These aims of safety, effectiveness, patient-centeredness, timeliness, efficiency, and equity included and extended the issues of patient safety described in their earlier report *To Err Is Human.*[4] The aims have been adopted by many organizations, including the Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI), a United States nongovernmental agency devoted to advancing QI and patient safety in health care. These aims serve as a basis on which quality is evaluated and improved and are described as follows.

1. Safety. No patient or healthcare worker should be harmed by the healthcare system at any time, including during transitions of care and "off hours," such as nights or weekends. Errors may be categorized as either failure of an action to occur as planned, such as the administration of a wrong medication to a patient, or having the wrong plan altogether, such as misdiagnosing and subsequently mistreating a patient.[4] As much as possible, patients should be informed about the risks and benefits of medical care in advance. If a complication does occur, medical staff should make full disclosure, provide assistance to the patient and family, and exercise due diligence in preventing any recurrences of the error.
2. Effectiveness. Effective medicine requires evidence-based decisions about treatment for individual patients, when such evidence exists. The best available evidence should be combined with clinical expertise and patient values in forming a treatment plan. With effective care, medical practitioners avoid underuse by providing a treatment to all who will benefit and avoid overuse by refraining from giving treatment to those unlikely to benefit.
3. Patient-centeredness. Patient-centered care is respectful of individual patient preferences, needs, and values and uses these factors to guide clinical decisions.[4] More specifically, according to Gerteis and colleagues,[6] patient-centered care encompasses respect for patients' values; coordination and integration of care; information, communication, and education; physical comfort; emotional support that relieves fear and anxiety; and involvement of family and friends. The dramatic increase in access to health information on the Internet has resulted in more patients who are well informed and proactive in their care. Patient-centered care embraces this trend and shifts more of the power and control to patients and their families. Examples of patient-centered care include shared decision making, patient and family participation in rounds, patient ownership of medical records, schedules that minimize patient inconvenience, and unrestricted visitation hours.[7]
4. Timeliness. Reduced wait time is important to both patients and healthcare practitioners. Long waits signal a lack of respect for a patient's time. Furthermore, delays may not only affect patient satisfaction, but may impair timely diagnosis and treatment. For healthcare workers, delays in availability of equipment or information may decrease job satisfaction and the ability to perform their jobs adequately.
5. Efficiency. Rising costs have increased scrutiny of waste in health care; this includes waste in labor, capital, equipment, supplies, ideas, and energy.[8] Improved efficiency reduces waste and results in an increased output for a given cost. Examples of efficiency measures include mean length of hospital stay, readmission rate, and mean cost of treatment for a diagnosis. The elimination of waste can result in better quality of care for patients at the same or lower cost.
6. Equity. Equitable care does not vary in quality based on personnel. The NAM defines equitable care at two levels. At the population level, equitable care means

reducing or eliminating disparities between subgroups. At the individual level, it means absence of discrimination based on factors such as age, gender, race, ethnicity, nationality, religion, educational attainment, sexual orientation, disability, or geographic location.[3]

Another framing of quality is the "quadruple aim" proposed by Bodenheimer and Sinsky[5] and adopted by the IHI. These four aims include better care, better outcomes, lower cost, and better work life for the healthcare workforce. This last aim was added to the IHI's previous "Triple Aim" in recognition that increasing clinician burnout represents a threat to high-quality care.[5]

DEMING'S SYSTEM OF PROFOUND KNOWLEDGE

Before learning about frameworks and tools for improvement, it helps to have an understanding of the theory behind improvement work. W. Edwards Deming wrote about two different types of knowledge: subject matter knowledge and profound knowledge. Subject matter knowledge is professional expertise, such as expertise in anesthesiology. Profound knowledge is the knowledge of improvement. The most significant improvement occurs where these two types of knowledge overlap. Deming divides profound knowledge into four different categories: appreciation of a system, the theory of knowledge, understanding variation, and psychology.

The first area of profound knowledge is appreciation of a system. A system is a network of interdependent components working together for a common aim.[6] It is often said that "Every system is perfectly designed to get the results it gets." If a system is underperforming, it is because it has unintentionally been designed to underperform. If this is the case, it is our responsibility to manage the system to get the results we want.

The second part of Deming's profound knowledge is the idea that knowledge requires a theory. Information by itself is not knowledge. For example, a dictionary contains information, but it is not knowledge. We must have a theory behind our improvement work, not just data, if we are going to learn.[6]

In order to learn, we must additionally understand variation and how to react to it. Deming says that "life is variation."[6] Common cause variation is variation that is inherent to the process. Special cause variation is variation from causes that are not inherent to the process but arise from specific circumstances. A process which only has common cause variation is in statistical "control." On the other hand, a process that has both common cause and special cause variation is an unstable process.[7] Two common errors in improvement work are acting upon common cause variation as if it were special cause, and acting upon special cause variation as if it were common cause.

The last area of profound knowledge is psychology. This is often the most challenging part of improvement work. Deming believed in intrinsic motivation, and the need to nurture people's joy in work and intrinsic motivation to learn.[6] More recently John P. Kotter describes eight steps to change in his book *The Heart of Change*. These are increase urgency, build the guiding team, get the vision right, communicate for buy-in, empower action, create short-term wins, don't let up, and make change stick.[8]

Approaches to Quality Assessment

QUALITY ASSURANCE VERSUS CONTINUOUS QUALITY IMPROVEMENT

Although the terms *continuous quality improvement (CQI)* and *quality assurance (QA)* were used interchangeably in the past, substantial differences existed between the two. Most medical CQI systems were built on the foundation of a traditional QA system that used *standards* to define quality.[9] Standards can be defined as an "acceptable" level of performance. For example, a standard for overall mortality after cardiac surgery is less than 3%; however, is 3% (vs. 4% or 2%) mortality after cardiac surgery acceptable? Similarly, a standard for head injury evaluation is a computerized tomography (CT) brain scan within 4 hours of admission, but in certain circumstances, patients with head injury may warrant a CT scan sooner than that.

Most standards are inherently arbitrary and often lack consensus among medical professionals.[9] Additionally, QA systems typically react only when a standard is not met. Examples of traditional standard-based QA systems were peer review systems and morbidity and mortality reviews. These systems often exist to flag certain cases or practitioners for intense review. Practitioners may regard this intense review as a punishment because only "failures" or "bad apples" are identified, and process failures are not connected with the outcome on every case. Thus, QA systems are inherently judgmental and, if not carefully administered, can hold practitioners responsible for random causes over which they have no control. CQI systems, on the other hand, recognize that errors occur and require different responses. Often excellence in health care is not identified by analysis of QA systems. Excellence is sometimes defined by the lack of failure. Is there a difference between good (acceptable) and excellent health care?

Systems within health care are a series of interlinked processes, each of which results in one or more outputs. CQI systems, as opposed to QA systems, include an explicit approach to process and the use of specifications to improve a process or outcome. A specification is an explicit, measurable statement regarding an important attribute of a process or the outcome it produces.[9] Specifications identify variables that need to be measured, but typically do not set acceptable limits or standards. Once specifications have been defined in a CQI system, all outputs or cases, not just failures, are evaluated against these specifications. The system then attempts to correct errors by fixing the process rather than the people. Thus, CQI aims to change the process and prevent quality failures before they happen by building improvements into the process. To quote Philip Crosby, "The system for causing quality is prevention, not appraisal."[10]

FRAMEWORKS FOR IMPROVEMENT

Model for Improvement

The journey toward improvement can be made more efficient and more effective with a systematic approach. The Model for Improvement, developed by the training and management consulting company Associates in Process Improvement (http://www.apiweb.org), is one such

TABLE 5.1 Steps of a Plan, Do, Study, Act (PDSA) Cycle

Step	Description
Plan	Make a plan for the test of change. Include predictions of results and how data will be collected.
Do	Test change on a small scale. Document data, observations, and problems that occur.
Study	Use data gathered from previous stages to build new knowledge and make predictions. Knowledge is gained from both successful and unsuccessful changes.
Act	Adopt the change, or use knowledge gained to plan or modify the next test of action.

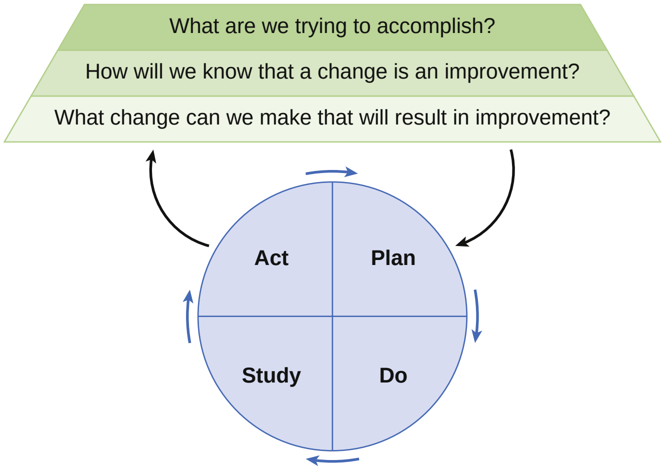

What are we trying to accomplish?
How will we know that a change is an improvement?
What change can we make that will result in improvement?
Act
Plan
Study
Do

Fig. 5.1 Diagram of model for improvement. (From Langley GJ, Moen RD, Nolan KM, et al. *The Improvement Guide: A Practical Approach to Enhancing Organizational Performance.* San Francisco: Jossey-Bass; 2009. With permission from John Wiley & Sons.)

approach adopted by organizations across varied disciplines and is currently the approach used by IHI. It is a structured, dynamic model that applies the scientific method to testing and implementing a change.[7] In 1939, Walter A. Shewhart, a physicist, engineer, and statistician, introduced the science of modern QI.[11] He introduced a three-step scientific process of specification, production, and inspection, stating that "these three steps must go in a circle instead of in a straight line."[12] In the 1940s, his protégé, W. Edwards Deming, applied these concepts to government and industry and developed the Plan, Do, Study, Act (PDSA) cycle (Table 5.1).[13] A modification of the PDSA by the addition of three fundamental questions (as explained in the next paragraph) resulted in the Model for Improvement (Fig. 5.1).[12]

Beginning an improvement project with the three fundamental questions for improvement helps set a clear direction for the project, define what success will look like, and hypothesize successful interventions. The three fundamental questions for improvement are:

1. Aim: "What are we trying to accomplish?" The aim (or objective) for improvement should be specific, measurable, actionable, relevant, and time-specific (also referred to as a SMART aim). Ideas for improvements may come from interviewing those involved or affected by the process, such as staff or patients. Ideas may also come from examining previous data on operational, clinical, or financial processes.
2. Measure: "How will we know if change is an improvement?" Ideally, measures should be linked directly to the aim or goal of the project and should ensure that the interests of the stakeholders of the process are represented.[7] Quantitative measures should be used when possible to measure change over time. These measures provide the feedback that enables one to know whether or not the change is an improvement. However, not all projects have an easily quantifiable outcome and the outcome may be more qualitative. It is worth the time and effort to identify opportunities to translate goals into quantifiable outcomes if possible. These can be easier to use to communicate success.
3. Changes: "What changes can we make that will result in improvement?" Ideas for changes that result in improvement often start with observations, modeling the success of others, and brainstorming. The more intimate the understanding of a process and its key drivers, the higher the likelihood of generating successful changes.

The three fundamental questions are followed by a PDSA cycle, which is the framework for testing and implementing previously generated ideas for change. Improvement may require multiple cycles of preferably small tests of change over time. By testing changes on a small scale before implementation, risk is mitigated. Small tests of change may also help overcome individuals' resistance to change. Through repeated cycles, increased knowledge is acquired, and actions are continuously modified or changed. Measures defined in the first part of the model help determine whether or not a change is a success. These measures are often plotted over time on run charts or control charts (Figs. 5.2 and 5.3). Knowledge can be gained from both successful and unsuccessful tests! Finally, PDSA cycles both test a change and implement a successful change on a larger scale or in diverse clinical areas.

Lean Methodology and Six Sigma

In addition to the Model for Improvement, CQI initiatives have many other frameworks. Two of these frameworks, Lean Production and Six Sigma, are briefly discussed here. These frameworks are sometimes combined, as in "Lean Six Sigma." Regardless of which framework is employed, benefits are gained by retaining a structured and consistent approach to CQI.

Lean methodology has its roots in Japanese manufacturing, particularly in the Toyota Production System.[14] More recently, Lean has found success in the healthcare industry. Two notable examples of its use are Virginia Mason Medical Center and ThedaCare, Inc., both of which have transformed their organizations through the application of Lean principles. In fact, ThedaCare reported $3.3 million in savings in 2004 with reduced accounts receivable, redeployed staff, reduced phone triage times, reduced time spent on paperwork, and decreased medication distribution time.[14]

Lean methodology is focused on creating more value for the customer (i.e., the patient) with fewer resources. Every step in a process is evaluated to differentiate those steps that add value from those that do not. The ultimate goal is to eliminate all waste so that every step adds value

TABLE 5.2 Steps in the Lean or Six Sigma Process

Step	Description
Define	Define the goals of the improvement project. Obtain necessary support and resources and put together a project team.
Measure	Establish appropriate metrics. Measure baseline performance of the current system.
Analyze	Examine the system for possible areas of improvement.
Improve	Improve the system through implementation of ideas. Statistically validate improvements.
Control	Institutionalize the new system and monitor its stability over time.

to a process. Other key components of Lean include reducing unevenness of workflow—for instance, what we might find in intensive care unit (ICU) admissions or emergency cases—and eliminating the overburdening of people and equipment. Five principles govern Lean improvement:[7]

1. *Define the value* that the customer is seeking. Virginia Mason Medical Center has a "patient-first" focus for all its processes.[14]
2. *Identify and map* the value stream. If evaluating preoperative assessment, map the physical flow of a patient from the scheduling of a procedure through the day of surgery (history and physical, preoperative counseling, laboratory tests, imaging, consultations). In this process, all of the steps are accounted for, including the back-and-forth flow of the patient to the front desk, to the laboratory, and so on. Time spent during each step of the process should be documented.
3. *Smooth the flow* between value-added steps. Eliminate steps that do not add value to the overall process and are likely a poor use of time or effort on the part of the caregivers or the patient. An example of this process might be eliminating unnecessary tests or consultations in a patient's preoperative evaluation and reducing excess wait times that are the result of correctable inefficiencies.
4. *Create pull* between steps. Customer demand should trigger the start of a downstream process. Examples include opening operating rooms (ORs) or increasing staffing based on surgical demand, as opposed to having a fixed amount of time for each surgeon or surgical division.
5. *Pursue perfection* by continuing the process until you have achieved ultimate value with no waste.

The transformation of Motorola in the 1980s from a struggling company to a high-quality, high-profit organization helped give rise to the Six Sigma methodology. Two key fundamental objectives of Six Sigma are a virtually error-free process and a large focus on reducing variation.[15] In fact, a Six Sigma process, or a process whose frequency falls six deviations from the mean, corresponds to just 3.4 errors per million.

Health care often falls far short of this standard. In a 1998 report, Chassin[16] reported that hospitalized patients harmed by negligence were at a four sigma level (10,000/million), patients inadequately treated for depression were at a two sigma level (580,000/million), and eligible heart attack survivors who failed to receive β-adrenergic blockers were at a one sigma level (790,000/million). In contrast, Chassin found that anesthesiology was the one healthcare specialty that approached the six sigma level, with deaths caused by anesthesia as low as 5.4/million.[16] In comparison with health care, airline fatalities were a two sigma process (230/million) and a traditional company operated around four sigma, the equivalent of 6200 errors/million.[16] Considering that errors are often tied directly to cost, this error rate has significant financial implications.

Six Sigma is similar to the Model for Improvement in that it makes use of a simple framework to guide improvement, in this case using Define, Measure, Analyze, Improve, Control (DMAIC).[15] The DMAIC steps are described in Table 5.2. As mentioned earlier, many organizations have found the greatest benefit by combining elements of different methodologies in their CQI work. One popular example of this is Lean Six Sigma, which combines improvements in flow and value with reduction in error and variation. Furthermore, individual tools from these strategies, such as PDSA cycles or DMAIC processes, can be applied where appropriate.

The Value Framework in Health Care

Since quality in health care is focused on patient outcomes, another approach to quality is the value framework. Quality relative to cost determines value. Hence, in health care, value is defined as the patient health outcomes achieved per dollar spent.[17] Value should define the framework for performance improvement in health care. Value includes goals already embraced by health care such as quality, safety, patient centeredness, and cost containment; the value framework allows for a way to integrate these goals.

Because value is always defined around the customer, in the healthcare industry it is what matters most to patients, and unites the interests of all the stakeholders in the healthcare system. Thus, when value improves, not only do patients, payers, providers, and suppliers all benefit, but the economic sustainability of the healthcare system also improves. As such, value should be the overarching goal of healthcare delivery. According to Porter, the failure to adopt value as the central goal in health care and the failure to measure it, are the most serious failures of the medical community.[18]

Value measurement today is limited and highly imperfect. Value should be measured by outputs not inputs. Thus, value is dependent on patient health outcomes and not the volume of services delivered. The only way to accurately measure value is to track individual patient outcomes and costs longitudinally over the full cycle of care, which can vary from 30 to 90 days for hospital care and 1 year for chronic care.

Value is not measured by processes of care utilized by a patient. While process measurement is an important component of improvement, it should not be substituted for measurement of patient outcomes. Outcomes and cost should be measured separately. Outcomes, the numerator of the value equation, refer to the actual results of care in terms of patient health and should consist of a set of multidimensional outcomes that, when considered together, constitute patient benefit. Cost, the denominator of the value equation, should include total costs involved in the full cycle of care for the patient's medical condition. Most physicians do not know the full costs of caring for a patient, thus they lack the information to make real efficiency improvements.

Outcomes measurement is critical to driving rapid improvements in health care. Without a feedback loop that includes the outcomes achieved, providers lack the information they require to learn and improve. Effective outcome measurement is hampered by several problems. First, there is a lack of consensus as to what constitutes an outcome. Second, electronic medical record (EMR) systems often do not facilitate the capture of longitudinal outcomes measures with appropriate scope; these systems may focus too narrowly or too broadly, giving only a partial view of patient outcomes. Third, outcomes such as infection rates may vary substantially by medical condition. Finally, true outcome measurement has been limited because the cost of gathering longitudinal patient results is high, due in part to fragmented organizational structures and poor EMR interoperability.

Cost is the most pressing issue in health care. Current cost measurement approaches have not only hampered our understanding of costs but also contributed to approaches involving cost-containment. A focus on cost-containment rather than value improvement can be dangerous and is often self-defeating. Two major problems associated with cost measurement include: (a) cost aggregation, wherein we often measure and accumulate costs based on how care is organized and billed for, that is, costs for departments, discrete service areas, and line items such as supplies or drugs and (b) cost allocation where the costs of healthcare delivery are shared costs, involving shared resources and as such are normally calculated as the average cost over all patients for a department. A good example of this is the hourly charge for the OR. However, to truly understand costs, they must be aggregated around the patient, rather than discrete services, and shared costs must be allocated to individual patients on the basis of each patient's actual use of the resources involved. Finally, the perspective used to calculate costs matters and patient costs including lost work may not be included in the analysis.

Proper measurement of outcomes and costs is the single most powerful lever for improving healthcare delivery and although current measurements are highly imperfect, the process of measurement has begun. As Michael Porter outlines in the framework papers underpinning his value commentary in the *New England Journal of Medicine*,[18] if all the stakeholders in health care were to embrace value as the central goal and measure it, the resulting improvements would be enormous.

Quality Improvement Measures and Tools

The concept of using measurement to drive improvement has its origins in both medicine and industry. The use of data to improve patient health originated in the mid-1800s with two pioneers, Florence Nightingale and John Snow. Nightingale used data on mortality among British soldiers to drive improvements in sanitation in field hospitals. Similarly, Snow used data on the incidence and geographic location of cholera to make the connection between the incidence of the disease and water obtained from the Broad Street water pump. In the early 20th century, Ernest Codman, a surgeon at Massachusetts General Hospital, was the first to advocate tracking of patient outcomes so that adverse events could be identified and improvements in care made for future patients.[19] In the 1960s, Avedis Donabedian emphasized the importance of measurement and described a model for evaluating quality of health care based on structure, process, and outcomes—*structure* being the environment in which health care is provided, *process* being the method by which it is provided, and *outcomes* being the result of the care provided.[20] More recently, in 1991, Paul Baltaden and Don Berwick developed the IHI, which has become one of the leading organizations in the application of improvement science to health care.[21]

In QI, measurement can serve many purposes. It can be used to identify problems and establish baseline performance, inform and guide QI projects, select and test changes for improvement, and assess and align progress with organizational goals. Selecting and developing measures that are useful can be challenging. Optimal measures must be comprehensive, carefully defined, tailored to the target audience, and involve minimal measurement burden. Target audiences usually include clinical staff, so measures should address and align with clinical targets for specific patient populations with whom the staff work. Measures should pass the face validity test with clinical practitioners delivering care. National or organizational measures, if applicable, can also be used, but they may not always be relevant or credible to the local target audience. Within an organization, target audiences should include system leaders, so measures should also align with organizational priorities and strategic goals.

PROCESS AND OUTCOME MEASURES

Measures should include the following:

1. Process measures that address the processes of healthcare delivery (e.g., perioperative β-adrenergic blocker administration for patients, antibiotic administration for prevention of surgical site infection)
2. Outcome measures that address patient outcomes from delivery of these services, such as clinical and functional outcomes or satisfaction with health (e.g., morbidity, mortality, length of stay, quality of life)
3. Balancing measures that address the possible consequences of changes in the process (e.g., when process improvements are made to improve efficiency, other outcomes, such as patient satisfaction, should not be adversely affected)

Each of these measures has advantages and limitations.[22] A comprehensive set of measures should include at least one process, outcome, and balancing measure. In addition, structural measures, such as ICU nurse-to-physician staffing ratios, can be important to include when appropriate.[23,24]

Healthcare providers readily accept process measures because they demonstrate the degree to which caregivers can influence a process with the intention to improve patient outcomes. Practitioners generally feel more accountable for the process of care than its outcomes, because outcomes may be affected by many other variables.[22] An obstacle to using process as a measure of quality is sustainability; frequent updating is required as the science of medicine advances.

Process measures, which evaluate how care is delivered, may be easier to measure and implement than outcome measures and can provide important insight into care.[25] Process measures can provide immediate feedback regarding performance, allowing for rapid improvements in care. If an outcome occurs infrequently, providers will be unable to obtain meaningful feedback on outcomes on a timely basis. For example, evidence of improved rates of catheter-related bloodstream infections (CRBSI; an outcome measure) may require 12 to 24 months of data (because few patients develop infections), whereas improved adherence to evidence-based practices to reduce infections (process measures) may be observed within a week (because all patients can be evaluated to determine whether they received the intervention).

Process measures have two other important advantages. First, they generally have face validity for providers, meaning that providers believe they can use the data to improve care; and second, because risk adjustment is less important, broad implementation is feasible. Moreover, joint efforts among providers, professional societies, and external government or payer agencies have made process measures more feasible.[25]

To be valid, process measures should have causal links to important outcomes; a change in the process should produce a desired change in outcome. One of the best opportunities to improve patient outcomes may well come from discovering how to deliver therapies (processes) that are known to be effective in producing a desired outcome.[26] For example, hand hygiene and application of chlorhexidine to sterilize the skin site before insertion of a central venous catheter (CVC) are two of five processes known to reduce CRBSI.[27] Process measures such as these are indicators of whether patients reliably receive evidence-based interventions known to prevent complications.

Although process measurement is useful and should continue, there is no substitute for measuring outcomes, whose principal purpose is not comparing providers but enabling innovations in care. Process measurement should largely be an internal effort, but should not be the means of external measurement and reporting of quality and value. As mentioned above, measuring value requires measuring actual outcomes over time.

Outcome measurement refers to the actual results of care in terms of patient health over time; for each medical condition there is a set of multidimensional outcomes that together constitute patient benefit. These include survival, functional status, and sustainability of recovery. Outcome measures relate directly to the health status of the patient. Patient satisfaction with care is a process measure, not an outcome. Patient satisfaction with health is an outcome measure. However, current measures for outcome often focus on the immediate results of particular procedures or interventions rather than on the overall success of the full cycle of care of a medical condition.

The relative focus on outcome and process measures will depend on balancing the collection of data between that which is scientifically sound and that which is feasible. In general, a balanced set of process and outcome measures helps inform improvement efforts and provides evidence that efforts have made a difference in the lives of patients.

For measurement to be effective, the following principles are important. First, measures should focus on something that the improvement team has the power to change and should initially be simple, small-scale measures that focus on the process itself and not on people. Second, measures should be practical, seek usefulness—not perfection—and fit the work environment and cost constraints. Third, data for measurement should be easy to obtain; finding ways to capture data while the work is getting done allows measures to be built into daily work. Fourth, qualitative data (e.g., reasons for patient dissatisfaction in the patients' own words, observations to contextualize quantitative data) are highly informative and should complement quantitative data (e.g., percentage of patients satisfied with care). Finally, when using measures, balance is key; a balanced set of measures can help answer the question, "Are we improving parts of our system at the expense of others?"

Measurement should not overwhelm the change process. Improvement teams should minimize the burden of measurement whenever possible. Measurement can have both direct and indirect consequences on resource use, provider behaviors, and patients.[28] Measurement of performance and outcomes of care can be costly, especially if the data collection process is manual and involves chart reviews. The burden of measurement is reduced with an EMR system and computerized order entry, although these information technology systems are costly to implement and maintain. Additionally, these resources may not be equally available throughout a system or organization, leading to disparities in the care provided.

Measurement fixation is an unintended consequence on healthcare staff behavior that may occur with the use of process measures. For example, when a process measure such as "the percentage of diabetic patients who received an action plan" is used rather than an outcome measure such as "improved patient understanding about diabetic management," the measure is perceived by the clinician as defining what is important. Thus, measurement of the process becomes the priority, rather than the intended outcome.[28] Alternatively, the clinician may become so focused on what is being measured that different aspects of care are not equally prioritized. In addition, a predominance of process rather than outcome measures can stifle innovation by scripting a process, thus inhibiting process-level innovation. Practice variation does have some utility because medical practice is dynamic, and it is through the trial of new methods of care that innovation occurs. Finally, QI performance measures may not match patient preferences for clinical care. Performance measures that do not take patient preference into account can lead to decreased patient satisfaction, trust, and confidence in their healthcare practitioners and system.[28] Thus, selection of a set of appropriate measures with the attributes described previously can be a balancing act that includes weighing the tradeoffs involved.

Consumers, payers, and employers are increasingly requesting outcome measures to both improve care and decrease cost. Even national governmental bodies are influencing the measurement and reporting of quality in health care. In the United States, the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS), the single largest healthcare purchaser, requires hospitals and physicians to participate in the Quality Payment Program (QPP). This program requires providers to demonstrate quality by either participating in an Advanced Alternative Payment Model (akin to a quality collaborative or participants in a bundled payment model) or by accumulating points through the Merit-based Incentive Payment System.[29] The United Kingdom Quality and Outcomes framework[30] is an analogous system. These quality mandates have fundamentally changed the ways that clinicians, hospitals, and health systems engage in and report QI activities.

ANALYSIS AND DISPLAY OF QUALITY IMPROVEMENT DATA

Interpretation of data and understanding of process variation are fundamental to QI work. Data elements central to improvement are first and foremost—those data are collected as a basis for action. Second, interpretation of data is made within the context of the process. Last, the analysis technique should filter out noise in the process. Aggregate data or summary statistics typically do not filter out noise in the system and do not present a broad enough context to point practitioners in the direction of proper action or process improvement.

Shewhart postulated that data contain both signal and noise; to be able to learn, one must separate the signal from the noise.[31] CQI science defines two types of variation within a process: random variation and specific variation. Random variation, also known as common-cause variation, results from differences in the inputs that a process receives or inherent factors in the process itself. Random variation is the random background noise within a system and occurs in the process all the time. Specific variation, also known as special-cause or attributable variation, is not present all of the time as background noise, but rather arises from one or more specific causes that are not part of the system. A process is considered to be unstable when specific variation exists, and efforts should be made to learn about the special causes for this variation. A stable process exists when specific variation no longer occurs, leaving only random or common variation.[9] CQI aims to eliminate specific variation for every process so that only random variation remains. A standards-based QA system fails to distinguish random cause from special cause and attempts to correct all variation. Attempts to correct random variation will necessarily fail—a process CQI defines as "tampering." When a process exhibits only random variation, the process should be evaluated to determine whether it is functioning at an acceptable level. If it is not, the process will need to be changed so that the average is moving in the desired direction. Standardization of a process is often the key to reducing random variation and improving a process.

Run Charts and Control Charts

Run charts and control charts are graphic displays of data that enable observation of trends and patterns over time. They are the best tools for determining whether improvement strategies have had an effect. A run chart (see Fig. 5.2), also called a time series chart, plots the variable or measure being studied on the vertical axis and plots the time on the horizontal axis. The average, or centerline, is the median. At least 12 data points are required to establish a baseline, and at least 20 to 25 data points are required to detect trends and patterns. Run charts should be annotated with tests of change to provide the context within which data can be interpreted. Four rules can be used with run charts to determine whether nonrandom patterns exist or to detect whether the change has led to an improvement:

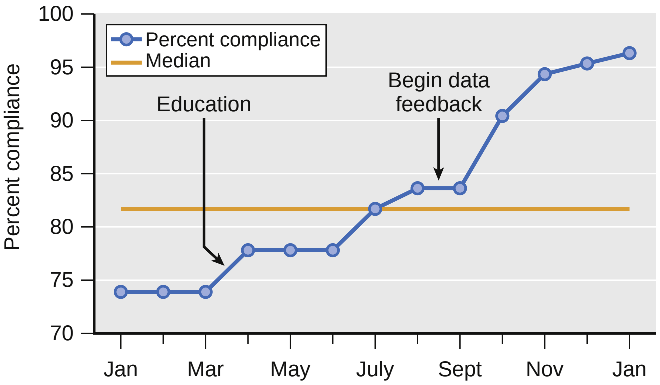


Fig. 5.2 Example of a run chart. This chart shows the plot of a performance measure over time. The horizontal (*x*) axis represents time in months, and the vertical (*y*) axis represents the performance measure—the percentage of compliance with the timing of preoperative antibiotics.

1. A shift is indicated by six or more consecutive points above or below the median.
2. A trend is indicated by five or more points all increasing or all decreasing.
3. A run is defined as a series of consecutive points on the same side of the median line.
4. An astronomical data point is an unusual point that is obviously different in value (an outlier).[7]

Because change is by nature temporal, run charts in which data are presented over time are powerful tools for interpreting data within the context of the process.

A control chart (see Fig. 5.3),[32] also known as a Shewhart chart,[7,11] is an extension of a run chart and is used to distinguish between specific and random variation. As on a run chart, the variable is plotted on the vertical axis and time on the horizontal axis. However, with a control chart the centerline or average is the mean, rather than the median, and the upper control limit (UCL) and lower control limit (LCL) are calculated. The UCL and LCL correspond to ±3 sigma from the mean. A process is considered to be "in control," or stable, when data points are within these control limits.[11] Random variation, or variation that is the result of the regular rhythm of the process, produces a stable process. However, in an unstable process that contains variation from special causes, data points exceed the UCL or LCL.[33]

Failure Modes and Effects Analysis

A failure modes and effects analysis (FMEA) is a tool to help identify problems in a process before they occur and cause harm.[7] An FMEA can help you decide where to target your improvement efforts. In addition, the proactive approach makes it especially useful before implementing a new process.

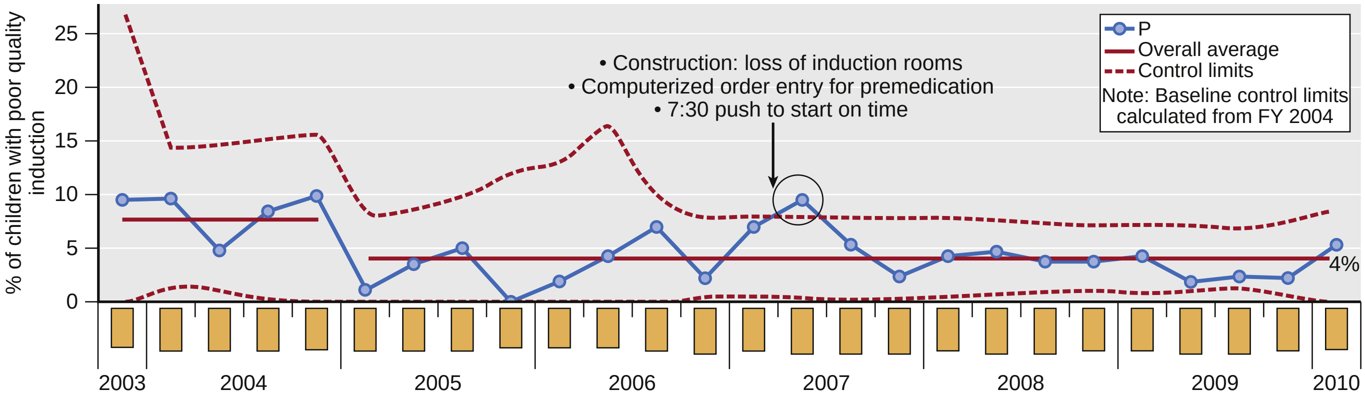


Fig. 5.3 Example of a control chart that monitors the quality of the anesthesia induction process, as measured by an induction compliance checklist. The solid red line marks the mean, and the dashed lines indicate the upper control limit and lower control limit, which are ±3 standard deviations from the mean. The circled point represents a single special cause variation in quality of induction. (From Varughese AM. Quality in pediatric anesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth.* 2010;20:684–696.)

An FMEA reviews the steps in a process, the potential failure modes (what could go wrong), failure causes (why would the failure happen?), and failure effects (what would be the consequences?). (IHI, QI Essentials Toolkit) After listing the steps in a process, a risk profile number is calculated based on the likelihood of occurrence, likelihood of detection, and severity. Improvement efforts are then targeted at the steps with the highest risk profile number.

A simplified FMEA is a quicker version of the FMEA that can help guide improvement work. A simplified FMEA consists of listing the steps in a process, listing potential failures that could go wrong for each step, and brainstorming interventions for each of those possible failures. Below is an example simplified FMEA for programming infusion pumps that was used in an improvement project to reduce medication errors.

Putting It All Together: An Example Quality Improvement Project

The following is an example of how the QI methodology previously discussed could be used to address a practical problem. A hypothetical example of reducing medication errors in an anesthesiology department is described.

An anesthesia group was concerned over the large number of medication errors that were occurring in their department. They formed a multidisciplinary group including an anesthesiologist, nurse anesthetist, anesthesia resident, and pharmacist. They addressed the first question in the Model for Improvement—“What are we trying to achieve?”—by writing a SMART aim. Their SMART aim was to reduce medication errors in the Department of Anesthesiology from three errors per month to one error per month within 12 months.

The next question in the Model for Improvement is “How will we know that a change will result in an improvement?” In order to monitor their progress, they constructed a run chart of medication errors per month in their department. They captured data through a previously existing self-reporting system.

The last question of the Model for Improvement is “What changes can we make that will result in an improvement?” To better understand the errors that were occurring, the group categorized the medication errors into categories and constructed a Pareto Chart. A Pareto Chart is a bar chart in which categories are listed in descending order. The group learned that three categories of errors accounted for about 80% of the total number of errors. These categories were infusion pump errors, acetaminophen errors, and antibiotic errors. They decided to focus their initial efforts on these three categories. They created process maps for these three categories to better understand the current process and develop possible interventions. Finally, to help organize their theory of improvement, they created a key driver diagram listing the drivers they thought would affect their aim, as well as possible interventions targeting the drivers.

Now that they had a theory of improvement, they started testing their interventions. They tested their ideas using PDSA cycles. They adopted the successful tests, adapted tests with mixed results, and abandoned the failed tests. Some of their tests included requiring a sticker from pharmacy and requiring a two-person double check of infusion pumps. As their testing and implementation continued, they saw the centerline, or median, of the run chart decrease from three to two. The run chart rules indicated this was a significant change. The group was excited that they had decreased the number of medication errors in their department, but they had not yet reached their aim of no more than one medication error per month. They decided to continue testing new ideas until the median decreased to less than one error per month.

Dashboards and Scorecards

A dashboard of measures functions like an instrument panel for an aircraft or automobile and provides real-time feedback on what is happening. Balanced *scorecards*, or “whole system measures,” are similar to dashboards and are used to provide a complete picture of quality. Developed by Kaplan and Norton, the balanced scorecard is defined as a “multidimensional framework for describing, implementing, and managing strategy at all levels of an enterprise by linking objectives, initiatives, and measures to an organization’s strategy.”[34] A set of measures should reflect the culture and mission of an organization. Viewed collectively, this set of measures provides a gauge of current performance and can also guide the direction for future organizational improvement efforts. A balanced set of measures is critical to ensure

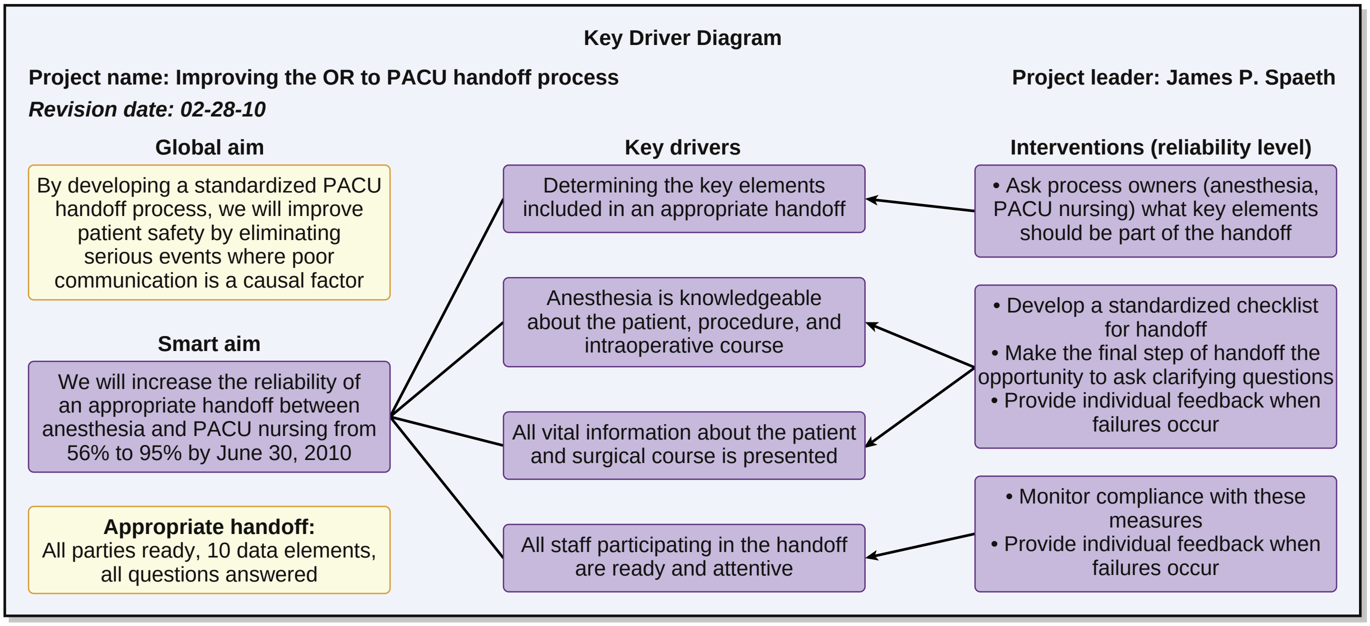

Key Driver Diagram
Project name: Improving the OR to PACU handoff process
Project leader: James P. Spaeth
Revision date: 02-28-10
Global aim
By developing a standardized PACU handoff process, we will improve patient safety by eliminating serious events where poor communication is a causal factor
Smart aim
We will increase the reliability of an appropriate handoff between anesthesia and PACU nursing from 56% to 95% by June 30, 2010
Appropriate handoff:
All parties ready, 10 data elements, all questions answered
Key drivers
Determining the key elements included in an appropriate handoff
Anesthesia is knowledgeable about the patient, procedure, and intraoperative course
All vital information about the patient and surgical course is presented
All staff participating in the handoff are ready and attentive
Interventions (reliability level)
• Ask process owners (anesthesia, PACU nursing) what key elements should be part of the handoff
• Develop a standardized checklist for handoff
• Make the final step of handoff the opportunity to ask clarifying questions
• Provide individual feedback when failures occur
• Monitor compliance with these measures
• Provide individual feedback when failures occur

Fig. 5.4 Example of a key driver diagram developed to improve the operating room *(OR)* to postanesthesia care unit (*PACU*) handoff process. This diagram incorporates the global and smart aim of the project, the key drivers inherent to the process, and specific interventions targeting each of the key drivers. (From Boat AC, Spaeth JP. Handoff checklists improve the reliability of patient handoffs in the operating room and postanesthesia care unit. *Paediatr Anaesth.* 2013;23(7):647-654.)[93]

that improvement efforts in one area do not adversely affect outcomes in other areas.

Additional Quality Improvement Evaluation and Communication Tools

In most situations, QI frameworks such as the Model for Improvement or Lean Sigma are sufficient to help guide the development, testing, implementation, and spread of improvement. However, to better understand problems within a system or process, QI professionals have developed or adapted a number of methods and tools. Some of these methods and tools help with viewing systems and processes and organizing and communicating information. These are described in the following section.

Understanding how a process or system works is fundamental to improving it. Process mapping is a method to gain this understanding. A flow diagram, or flow chart, is an improvement tool used during process mapping; it provides a visual picture of the process being studied, wherein the series of activities that define a process is graphically represented. Flow charts identify and clarify all steps in the process. They also help the team understand the complexity of the process and identify opportunities for improvement.

Failure mode and effects analysis is a systematic, proactive method of identifying and addressing problems associated with a process. It uses a standardized approach to analysis that includes identifying the various steps in a process and addressing their failure modes, effects, and possible interventions.

A key driver diagram (KDD) (Fig. 5.4)[35] is another approach to organizing the theories and ideas for improvement that a team has developed. The KDD presents the aim or outcome of the project with both the theories (key drivers) behind the improvement and ideas for test of change.[7] Initially, the driver diagram helps lay out the descriptive theory behind the improved outcomes. As these theories are tested, the driver diagram is updated and enhanced to develop a predictive theory. KDDs are extremely useful because they provide a shared mental model for the team during its improvement efforts.

IMPROVEMENT INTERVENTION TOOLS

Efforts in QI and patient safety have produced tools with which to reorganize the way care is delivered. QI intervention tools are used to improve communication and teamwork. Examples of these tools include daily goals sheets, briefings/debriefings, and checklists.

Daily Goals Sheet

For nearly 20 years, documentation of daily goals as either a hand-written sheet or a whiteboard have been used to improve communication during multidisciplinary rounds in adult and pediatric ICUs.[36,37] As a one-page paper checklist, this tool would be completed every morning to establish the care plan, set goals, and review potential safety risks for each patient (Fig. 5.5).

Before implementation of the daily goals sheet in an adult ICU, an initial survey showed that ICU team members were unable to answer two simple questions after rounding at each patient's bedside: "Do you understand the patient's goals for the day?" and "Do you understand what work needs to be accomplished on this patient today?" Fewer than 10% of the residents and nurses knew the care plan for the day—a finding that was not surprising because traditional bedside rounds tended to focus on teaching the staff about disease processes rather than focusing on the work that was necessary to treat the patient. Approximately 4 weeks after the daily goals sheet was implemented, 95% of residents and nurses understood the goals for each patient. Moreover, after the daily goals sheet was implemented, length of stay in the

	Room Number _______________	Shift: ☐ AM / ☐ PM
Safety	What needs to be done to d/c patient from the ICU?	
	Patient's greatest safety risk? How can we ↓ risk?	
	What events or deviations need to be reported? ICUSRS issues?	
Patient Care	Pain & Sedation Management	Pain goal ____ /10
	Cardiac Review ECGs	HR goal ____ ☐ at goal ☐ ↑ ☐ ↓ β-blockade
	Volume status Net goal for midnight	Even ☐ Pos ☐ Neg ___ Net ___ (cc) ☐ Patient determined
	Pulmonary: Ventilator, ventilator bundle, HOB ↑, wean	☐ OOB/pulmonary toilet/ambulation
	SIRS/Infection/Sepsis evaluation Temp >38°C or <36°C; HR >90 RR >20 or $Paco_2$ <32 WBC >12000 < 4000 or >10% bands	☐ No current SIRS/sepsis issues ☐ Known/suspected infection ☐ Culture blood ×2/urine/sputum ☐ Antibiotic changes ☐ Discontinue sepsis bundle
	Can catheters/tubes be removed?	Y/N
	GI/Nutrition/Bowel regimen: TPN catheter, ND tube PEG needed?	☐ TPN ☐ NPO/Advance diet
	Is patient receiving DVT/PUD prophylaxis?	Y/N
	Can meds be discontinued, changed to PO, adjusted?	
To Do	Tests/Procedures today	
	Scheduled labs	
	AM labs needed/CXR?	
	Consultations	
Description	Has primary service been updated?	
	Has family been updated? Social issues addressed? Long-term/Palliative care	

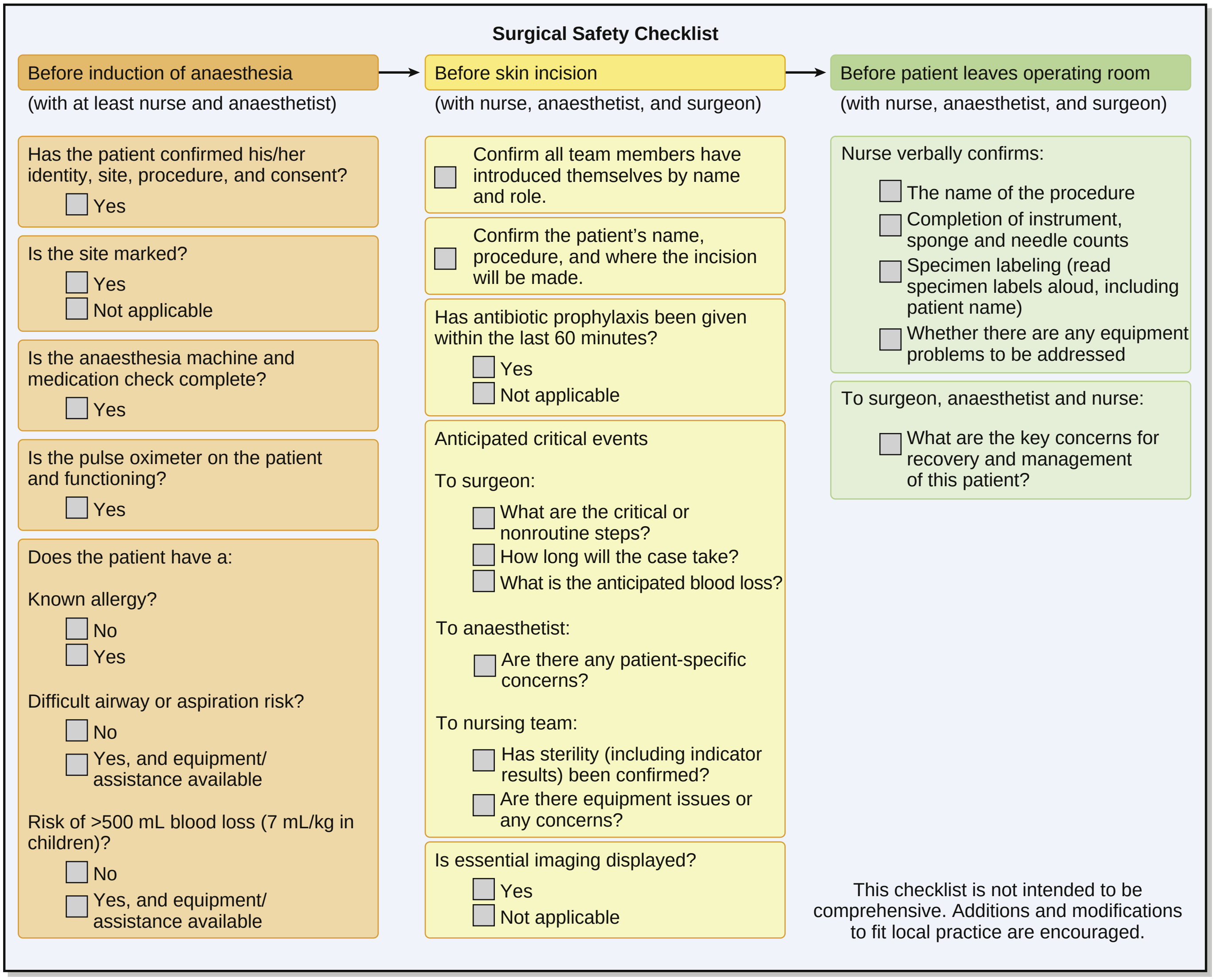
Fig. 5.5 Example of an intensive care unit *(ICU)* daily goals sheet. *CXR*, Chest radiograph; *d/c*, discharge; *DVT*, deep vein thrombosis; *ECG*, electrocardiogram; *GI*, gastrointestinal; *HOB*, head of bed; *HR*, heart rate; *ICUSRS*, ICU self-reporting system; *ND*, naso-duodenal; *NPO*, nothing by mouth; *OOB*, out of bed; *PEG*, percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy; *PUD*, peptic ulcer disease; *RR*, respiratory rate; *SIRS*, severe infectious respiratory syndrome; *temp*, temperature; *TPN*, total parenteral nutrition; *vent*, ventilator; *WBC*, white blood cell count.

surgical ICU decreased from a mean of 2.2 days to only 1.1 days.[38] These results have been reproduced in ICUs with nurses, physicians, and pharmacists. Interviews supported that communication, patient care, and education were enhanced by providing a structured, thorough, and individualized approach to the patient's care. The daily goals checklist helped to identify new patient care issues and sparked management discussions, especially for sedation, weaning, and medications.[36] Additionally, a QI intervention using daily goals checklists in 118 ICUs in Brazil improved the use of low tidal volumes, avoidance of heavy sedation, use of CVCs, use of urinary catheters, perception of teamwork, and perception of patient safety climate, but did not reduce in-hospital mortality.[37]

A further improvement was implemented in a pediatric cardiac ICU using a whiteboard for visual display of the daily goals.[39] Use of the whiteboard increased the percent agreement among the patient care team for patient goals from 62% to over 87%.[37] The goals were updated as needed and used as an information source for all staff involved in the patient's care as well as for the patient's family. A daily goals display such as this can be modified for use on other nursing units or during OR sign-out or emergency department rounds.

Checklists

Checklists have been used in health care and other industries to ensure that important steps in a process are not forgotten. The Food and Drug Administration recommends that a checklist be used when checking out and inspecting an anesthesia machine before use to ensure that the equipment and monitors are functioning properly.[40,41] Checklists have been shown to be effective in reducing central line associated blood stream infections (CLABSI) by standardizing practice, reducing complexity, and providing a redundant safety check. The idea behind having a person, such as a nurse or another physician, be responsible for actually reading the checklist also empowers that person or anyone involved to stop the procedure if the checklist is not followed or if sterile technique is compromised. An early study showed that use of a central line insertion checklist and bundle resulted in a 66% reduction in the overall CLABSI rate; the median rate was reduced from 2.7 per 1000



Surgical Safety Checklist

Before induction of anaesthesia → (with at least nurse and anaesthetist)

Has the patient confirmed his/her identity, site, procedure, and consent?
☐ Yes

Is the site marked?
☐ Yes
☐ Not applicable

Is the anaesthesia machine and medication check complete?
☐ Yes

Is the pulse oximeter on the patient and functioning?
☐ Yes

Does the patient have a:

Known allergy?
☐ No
☐ Yes

Difficult airway or aspiration risk?
☐ No
☐ Yes, and equipment/assistance available

Risk of >500 mL blood loss (7 mL/kg in children)?
☐ No
☐ Yes, and equipment/assistance available

Before skin incision → (with nurse, anaesthetist, and surgeon)

☐ Confirm all team members have introduced themselves by name and role.

☐ Confirm the patient's name, procedure, and where the incision will be made.

Has antibiotic prophylaxis been given within the last 60 minutes?
☐ Yes
☐ Not applicable

Anticipated critical events

To surgeon:
☐ What are the critical or nonroutine steps?
☐ How long will the case take?
☐ What is the anticipated blood loss?

To anaesthetist:
☐ Are there any patient-specific concerns?

To nursing team:
☐ Has sterility (including indicator results) been confirmed?
☐ Are there equipment issues or any concerns?

Is essential imaging displayed?
☐ Yes
☐ Not applicable

Before patient leaves operating room (with nurse, anaesthetist, and surgeon)

Nurse verbally confirms:
☐ The name of the procedure
☐ Completion of instrument, sponge and needle counts
☐ Specimen labeling (read specimen labels aloud, including patient name)
☐ Whether there are any equipment problems to be addressed

To surgeon, anaesthetist and nurse:
☐ What are the key concerns for recovery and management of this patient?

This checklist is not intended to be comprehensive. Additions and modifications to fit local practice are encouraged.

Fig. 5.6 World Health Organization Safe Surgery Checklist. (Reproduced with permission from World Health Organization. WHO Surgical Safety Checklist.)

catheter days before the intervention to 0 by month 3 and through month 18 of the postintervention.[42] A central line insertion checklist has since been adopted by institutions, safety groups, and regulatory agencies as a tool to ensure compliance with the best practices for CVC placement and prevent CLABSI. Checklists and central line insertion bundles are widely available online; one such resource is the IHI (http://www.ihi.org).

In addition to standardizing technical tasks, checklists are also used to standardize communication. Haynes and colleagues[43] described the use of a checklist to guide the perioperative time-out, briefing, and debriefing process. They showed that implementing the World Health Organization Surgical Safety Checklist (Fig. 5.6) reduced mortality and inpatient complications.[43] The use of surgical checklists is now widespread and is standard of care in most OR settings around the world. Numerous studies related to surgical checklists either as a tool or a process have shown their effectiveness, while some studies have reported limited impact. A review of 25 highly cited research papers on surgical safety checklists from 2009 to 2016 showed the complexity of standardizing, implementing, and sustaining the use of surgical safety checklists.[44] Complexities include variations in the environment, distribution of staff, timing of when the checklist is actually used, relationship between those using the checklist, and the culture of the institution.[44] These complexities may undermine the effectiveness of checklists and should be considered prior to checklist implementation.

Briefings and Debriefings

The surgical checklist is part of the Universal Protocol, which was created to prevent wrong person, wrong procedure, and wrong site surgery. In order to address many of the other important safety issues, such as antibiotic needs, deep vein thrombosis prevention, fire prevention, special equipment needs, and blood product availability, many institutions have implemented OR briefings or huddles, as well as debriefings at the end of surgery. Preoperative briefings have been shown to improve team communication, improve compliance with best practices, and enhance the overall perception of the safety climate in the OR.[45]

Briefing and debriefing tools are designed to promote effective interdisciplinary communication and teamwork.

	Briefing: Before Every Procedure
	Team introductions: First and last names, including roles; write names on board
	Verify: Patient ID band, informed consent (read out loud), site marking, OR posting, patient's verbalization of procedure (if patient awake), H&P or clinic note
	Are there any safety, equipment, instrument, implant, or other concerns?
	Have antibiotics been given, if indicated?
	What are the anticipated times of antibiotic redosing?
	Is glucose control or β-blockade indicated?
	Is the patient positioned to minimize injury?
	Has the prep solution been applied properly, without pooling, and allowed to dry?
	Have the goals and critical steps of the procedure been discussed?
	Is the appropriate amount of blood available?
	Is DVT prophylaxis indicated? If yes, describe.
	Are warmers on the patient?
	Is the time allotted for this procedure an accurate estimate?
	Have the attendings reviewed the latest laboratory and radiology results?
	Debriefing: After Every Procedure
	Could anything have been done to make this case safer or more efficient?
	Has the Surgical Site Infection data collection form been completed?
	Are the patient's name, history number, surgical specimen name, and laterality on the paper work? (must be independently verified by the surgeon)
	Did we have problems with instruments? Were they reported?
	Plan for transition of care to postop unit discussed? ❒ Fluid management? ❒ Blood transfusion paperwork in chart? ❒ Antibiotic dose and interval to be continued postop? ❒ Pain management/PCA plan? ❒ New medications needed immediately postop? ❒ β-blockers needed? ❒ Glucose control? ❒ DVT prophylaxis?

Fig. 5.7 Example of an operating room briefing and debriefing tool. *DVT,* Deep vein thrombosis; *H&P,* history and physical; *ID,* identification; *OR,* operating rooms.

Both have been used in the OR, during sign-out from the ICU nursing staff to the intensivist, and between OR nursing and anesthesia coordinators.[40,46,47] A briefing is a structured review of the case at hand that takes place among all team members before the start of an operative procedure. A debriefing occurs after the procedure; the team reviews what worked well, what failed, and what could be accomplished better in the future (Fig. 5.7).

An example of an OR briefing includes introduction by name (first and last) and role of each team member, confirmation of the correct patient, confirmation of the site/side and procedure (time-out), and a verbal assurance that all team members agree that they understand the procedure and what is required to ensure its success. A check of all necessary equipment, medications (e.g., appropriate antibiotic), and blood availability is performed. The question, "If something were to go wrong, what would it be?" is asked, and plans to mitigate or respond to the potential hazard are discussed.

A collaborative effort by the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ) and the Department of Defense adopted crew resource management strategies for OR briefings and produced an evidence-based resource called Team Strategies and Tools to Enhance Performance and Patient Safety (TeamSTEPPS) www.ahrq.gov. This team approach in the OR encourages situational awareness and communication among all members of the healthcare team.[48-51]

Sources of Quality Improvement Information

Development of a QI project first requires that an issue be identified. Baseline data are then collected and an improvement intervention instituted, often using one of the approaches described earlier. Data are re-collected after the intervention. If the intervention is found to be effective, ongoing monitoring or audits are instituted to ensure that the change is sustained. As part of the audits, feedback must be given to the providers. Healthcare providers traditionally have had limited ability to obtain feedback regarding performance in their daily work, in part because of a lack of information systems and a lack of agreement on how to measure quality of care.[52]

Ideas for QI projects can be identified from a multitude of sources, but they typically start with surveys and input from local medical staff and reviews of reported incidents. Additional information is gathered from the literature, review of national guidelines and quality metrics, and information obtained from external or internal reviews.

Sources of QI data that span both the clinical and administrative arenas include evidence-based medicine and evidence-based clinical practice guidelines, alerts from accrediting agencies and nonprofit safety organizations, standards and guidelines put forth by medical specialty associations, closed claims databases, and government agency administrative databases. United States governmental agencies, including the AHRQ, CMS, and the National Quality Forum (NQF), promote the development and reporting of healthcare quality measures.[53]

INCIDENT REPORTING

Voluntary incident reporting capturing hazardous conditions has been successfully used to improve patient care and foster QI programs.[54] As the potential of voluntary incident reporting is being realized in health care, this reporting has become less punitive and more focused on systems rather than on individuals. Voluntary incident reporting, when appropriately applied, helps identify hazards to patients that can then become the focus of QI efforts that seek to mitigate those hazards.[55] Unlike other methods that evaluate harmed patients, voluntary incident reporting provides the potential to also learn from near misses—incidents that did not lead to harm but were potentially hazardous. These near misses and potential hazards are a rich source for QI projects highlighting the importance of preventing harm.

All anesthesiology departments should have a process in place for capturing adverse events and near misses. Although most departments have a process for reporting, many incidents go unreported for a variety of reasons. Departments should encourage voluntary reporting without threat of punishment. Electronic capture of adverse events, near misses, and complaints can provide data that can subsequently be analyzed to identify trends and assess the degree of harm that a hazard poses to patients.

Events that occur frequently with low harm can be just as important as an event that occurs rarely with high harm. At the local level, it is more effective to focus on a more frequently occurring adverse event (e.g., perioperative skin abrasions, mislabeling of laboratory specimens) or on a process that can be measured with high frequency (e.g., hand hygiene, administration of antibiotic prophylaxis). For rarely occurring harmful events, a QI initiative may encompass a more expansive analysis of a national adverse-event database with multicenter participation.

With multiinstitutional event reporting systems, events that would rarely be seen in a single institution can be collected in larger numbers. Such systems allow analysis for common causes that increase our knowledge base for prevention initiatives. Larger multiinstitutional data gathering systems include the Vizient collaborative (the former University HealthSystem Consortium), which supports event reporting and databases that can be used to develop QI programs, benchmarking, and evidence-based practice.[56] Reporting systems that have been developed specifically to investigate rarely occurring anesthesia-related events include the Anesthesia Incident Reporting System (AIRS) created by the Anesthesia Quality Institute (AQI)[57] and Wake Up Safe, a QI initiative of the Society for Pediatric Anesthesia.[58] The AIRS program publishes a learning case each month in the *ASA Newsletter,* including a summary of a reported case with learning points.

More expansive international incident-reporting systems that are anonymous and voluntary have also been analyzed in the literature and have provided important information. Examples are the United Kingdom's Serious Incident Reporting and Learning Framework[59] and the Australian Incident Monitoring Study.[60] These incident registries do not require that the events be considered human error or preventable to merit reporting and are a source of ideas for QI projects.

Although voluntary systems often prove fruitful, many events and near misses still frequently go unreported. One way to capture these incidents is to survey local medical staff members to obtain their thoughts on how the last patient was harmed or how the next patient might be harmed. This process of performing a staff safety assessment survey is described in two later sections of this chapter (see "Collaborative Programs" and "Comprehensive Unit-Based Safety Program"). Staff safety assessment surveys can be particularly helpful for identifying issues for QI projects. Additionally, if staff members identify the issue, the likelihood is greater that they will have a vested interest in participating in the QI efforts.

PUBLISHED LITERATURE

Literature reviews offer ideas for QI topics in specific areas and information to guide interventions. For example, if the QI project plan is to reduce hazards in cardiac anesthesia, a literature review will provide reports of various cardiac anesthesia risks. Once a topic within a clinical area is selected, a literature search should be performed again to determine whether similar QI projects have been performed and whether they were successful. Such information will help with the design of a future initiative. The literature also provides published reports that identify guidelines and/or evidence-based practices that can be the basis for future programs.[61,62]

NATIONAL INITIATIVES AND QUALITY METRICS

The AHRQ is the source for both the U.S. National Quality Measures Clearinghouse and the National Guideline Clearinghouse. Professional organizations, such as the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) and the World Federation of Societies of Anesthesiologists, offer field-specific guidelines. The ASA has supported the review and development of many important guidelines that can serve as a rich source of QI initiatives. These guidelines cover a range of practices and include guidelines for the placement of central venous access,[63] management of patients with obstructive sleep apnea,[64] and management of preoperative fasting.[65] For those who are also involved in critical care medicine, guidelines and protocols do improve performance with specific care processes such as sedation and ventilator weaning protocols in ICUs. Such protocols decrease the duration of mechanical ventilation and ICU length of stay.[66,67]

Review of national quality metrics is another source of ideas for QI topics. National initiatives from CMS, such as the QPP (described earlier in "Quality Improvement Measures and Tools") and Surgical Care Improvement Project (SCIP), provide quality metrics and are associated with pay for performance. Most of the SCIP measures, which predominantly

TABLE 5.3 Nonprofit and Governmental Quality Improvement Organizations Pertinent to Anesthesia

Quality Improvement Organization	Website	Description
Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ)	www.ahrq.gov	Lead federal agency charged with improving the quality, safety, efficiency, and effectiveness of health care
American Health Quality Association (AHQA)	www.ahqa.org	Represents quality improvement organizations and professionals working to improve the quality of health care
Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation (APSF)	www.apsf.org	Promotes investigations and programs that will provide a better understanding of anesthetic injuries
Centers for Disease Control (CDC)	www.cdc.gov	One of the major operating components of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services
Emergency Care Research Institute (ECRI)	www.ecri.org	Uses applied scientific research to discover which medical procedures, devices, drugs, and processes are best
Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI)	www.ihi.org	Health care improvement organization based in Cambridge, Massachusetts
Institute for Safe Medication Practices (ISMP)	www.ismp.org	The nation's only 501(c)(3) organization devoted entirely to medication error prevention and safe medication use
Medicare Quality Improvement Community (MedQIC)	www.medquic.org	A national knowledge forum for health care and quality improvement professionals
National Quality Forum	www.qualityforum.org	Created to develop and implement a national strategy for health care quality and reporting
National Patient Safety Foundation (NPSF)	www.npsf.org	An independent 501(c)(3) organization with a mission to improve the safety of patients

measure processes of care, are topped out (nearly 100% in all hospitals) and have therefore been retired from active surveillance. The Joint Commission (TJC) website (www.jointcommission.org) lists United States National Patient Safety Goals and national quality core measures that are surveyed during site visits for accreditation. In 2004, TJC partnered with CMS to align measures common to both organizations in an initiative called Hospital Quality Measures. These measures are also endorsed by the NQF, a private, nonprofit membership organization created to develop and implement a national strategy for healthcare quality measurement and reporting (www.qualityforum.org). One of NQF's functions is to endorse quality and safety measures (consensus standards), which are then incorporated into other national quality initiatives. The goal for NQF-endorsed standards is that they become the primary standards used to measure the quality of health care in the United States. Increasingly, anesthesia programs are focusing on the standards that are relevant to the specialty because facilities are being evaluated on compliance with regulations and are required to report their performance regarding these standards to the governing bodies.

An increasing number of regional and national organizations are developing initiatives that are stimulating the reporting of specific evidence-based practices and outcomes. These initiatives are also determining the local selection of areas for QI (Table 5.3). As described earlier, reporting of these measures to CMS is being incentivized by performance-based payment. National professional organizations such as the ASA are developing metrics specific to the field.

OUTCOMES RESEARCH

The comparison of outcomes associated with different process decisions, or variations in care delivery, is the basis for outcomes research. Outcomes research offers a potential to identify these variations in care and to determine whether they improve outcomes for patients undergoing anesthesia. One of the key issues in outcomes research is risk adjustment, a challenging goal that requires a robust dataset. Using administrative data to identify patient risk factors has many limitations.[68] Registries designed specifically for research, benchmarking, and QI are good sources for this purpose.

The Society of Thoracic Surgeons (STS) and the National Surgical Quality Improvement Programs (NSQIP) are examples of outcomes research registries. Established in the early 1990s, the STS database now includes participation by nearly all U.S. cardiac surgery centers and has developed robust risk-stratification models. Findings from this database have led to initiatives associated with significant reductions in mortality; examples include the use of β-adrenergic blockers and aspirin perioperatively and the use of internal mammary arteries for coronary artery bypass grafting. NSQIP is a newer registry that was developed by the U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs (VA). Findings from this risk-adjusted outcomes database were used to identify variations in care. The changes that were instituted based on these findings resulted in improved surgical outcomes throughout the VA network. NSQIP has been adopted by the American College of Surgeons to provide comparisons among hospitals. Currently, more than 350 general surgery centers participate.[69] Hospitals that participate submit detailed data on a sample of general surgical patients for a number of common surgical procedures. They then receive a graphic display that compares their outcomes with those of the entire cohort. Surgery centers then use these data to identify areas in which they might be able to make improvements and initiate QI projects with that focus. As an example, the Kaiser Permanente group used this information to develop a QI program focused on reducing the percentage of patients with prolonged perioperative intubation.[69]

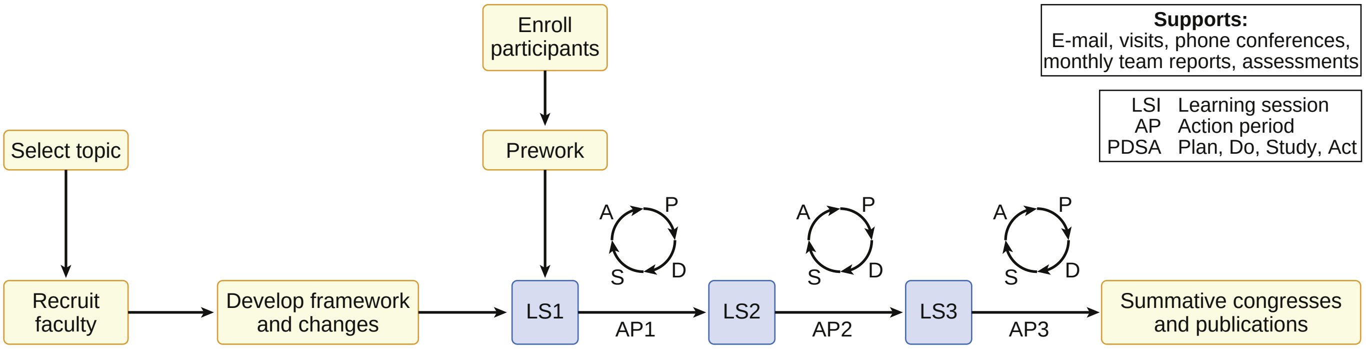

Supports:
E-mail, visits, phone conferences, monthly team reports, assessments
LSI Learning session
AP Action period
PDSA Plan, Do, Study, Act
Select topic
Enroll participants
Prework
Recruit faculty
Develop framework and changes
LS1
LS2
LS3
AP1
AP2
AP3
A
P
S
D
Summative congresses and publications

Fig. 5.8 Breakthrough series collaborative model. (Reproduced with permission from Institute for Healthcare Improvement: The Breakthrough Series: IHI's Collaborative Model for Achieving Breakthrough Improvement. IHI Innovation Series white paper, Boston, 2003. *PDSA*, Plan, Do, Study, Act. http://www.ihi.org/knowledge/Pages/IHIWhitePapers/TheBreakthroughSeriesIHIsCollaborativeModelforAchievingBreakthroughImprovement.aspx.)

The ASA created the AQI and the National Anesthesia Clinical Outcomes Registry with the goal of improving anesthesia outcomes through capture of case-specific data directly from electronic anesthesia data systems.[70,71] These resources are still evolving and moving forward to improve outcomes in anesthesia. Another important effort in anesthesia is the Multicenter Perioperative Outcomes Group (MPOG), which is led by researchers at the University of Michigan.[72] MPOG has established a national network of anesthesia practice groups that contribute data to a unified database. The goals of MPOG are to develop a structure for multiinstitutional collaboration and data sharing, to develop the information technology infrastructure to pool a wide variety of perioperative data for patient-centered research, to develop the statistical infrastructure to analyze the data, and to provide an academic venue in which faculty from multiple institutions will be able to collaborate in outcomes research (http://mpog.med.umich.edu).[72]

INTERNAL OR EXTERNAL INSTITUTIONAL REVIEWS

Internal or external institutional reviews of healthcare processes can provide important insights and ideas for QI initiatives. In addition to the external regulatory reviews, institutions are expected to perform internal reviews of quality and identify areas for improvement. These reviews are often used for QI projects at the institutional level.

Examples of Quality Improvement Programs

Examples of QI frameworks and tools have been discussed. This section addresses broad initiatives for quality and safety improvement that have used some of the methodologies and tools detailed earlier in this chapter.

COLLABORATIVE PROGRAMS

Use of a collaborative is one approach to improving broad areas of care. A QI collaborative involves the participation of two or more healthcare teams working toward a shared goal. In healthcare, a set of multidisciplinary representatives (from all of the clinical and administrative areas that are linked to the area of focus) should participate in the collaborative. A collaborative can be developed within a single organization and/or across multiple healthcare organizations. Collaborative programs are typically led by a team that is responsible for the following:

1. Determining the evidence-based interventions to be used and presenting these to the participants (if evidence-based interventions are not available, the team will generate interventions based on local and broad expert consensus)
2. Establishing the data collection approach (defining measures, collection methods, and feedback mechanism)

A key element to the success of collaboratives is an established process for educating members and for sharing interventions and obstacles. Through group discussions (meetings and/or conference calls), teams can learn about best practices and innovative methods used by other teams to approach a problem. In addition, collaboratives bring a shared momentum and enthusiasm that can increase sustainability.[24,73,74]

INSTITUTE FOR HEALTHCARE IMPROVEMENT BREAKTHROUGH SERIES COLLABORATIVES

QI collaboratives provide an opportunity to learn from other teams, work collaboratively, and spread change on a larger scale. The IHI has used a collaborative model for improvement, called the Breakthrough Series Model, for more than a decade. Collaboratives run from 12 to 160 teams across multiple organizations. Successful IHI collaboratives have included reducing waiting times by 50%, reducing ICU costs by 25%, and reducing hospitalizations of heart failure patients by 50%.[75]

In the Breakthrough Series Model, a topic is selected and participating teams are enrolled (Fig. 5.8). Expert faculty from across the country, or even internationally, are recruited for an expert meeting to develop a framework for change called a "change package." The change package describes interventions for improvement based on available evidence. Next, team members from all groups attend collaborative learning sessions where they learn the model for improvement and share their progress implementing the change package. At the end of the collaborative, a summative meeting and publications are used to share the findings with others.

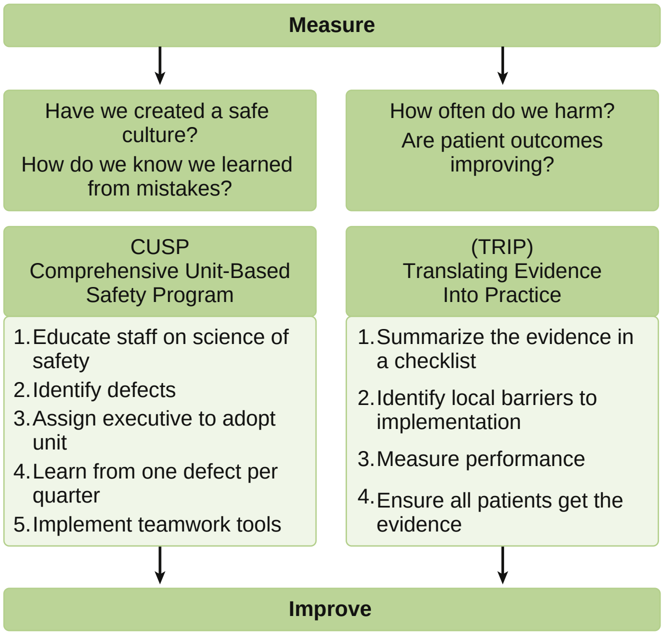

Measure
Have we created a safe culture?
How do we know we learned from mistakes?
How often do we harm?
Are patient outcomes improving?
CUSP
Comprehensive Unit-Based Safety Program
(TRIP)
Translating Evidence Into Practice
1. Educate staff on science of safety
2. Identify defects
3. Assign executive to adopt unit
4. Learn from one defect per quarter
5. Implement teamwork tools
1. Summarize the evidence in a checklist
2. Identify local barriers to implementation
3. Measure performance
4. Ensure all patients get the evidence
Improve

Fig. 5.9 Comprehensive unit-based safety program *(CUSP)* and translating evidence into practice *(TRIP)*: basic steps to ensure patients receive evidence-based care. (Reproduced with permission from Sawyer M. Using evidence, rigorous measurement, and collaboration to eliminate central catheter-associated bloodstream infections. *Crit Care Med.* 2010;38:S292–S298.)

COMPREHENSIVE UNIT-BASED PROGRAM

Sawyer and associates reported the success of a collaborative that incorporates a "mechanism to move evidence to the bedside and foster a culture where the focus is the patient."[76] The collaborative includes an emphasis on translating evidence into practice (TRIP) and the Comprehensive Unit-Based Safety Program (CUSP). This methodology has been reproduced and validated in several large collaborative efforts (Fig. 5.9).[76-78]

The TRIP model incorporates the following key steps and emphasizes the importance of measurement and feedback of data to teams.

1. Identify evidence-based interventions associated with an improved outcome through review of peer-reviewed publications.
2. Select goal-oriented interventions that have the most impact on outcomes and transform them into behaviors. In selecting behaviors, focus on interventions with the strongest treatment effect (smallest number needed to treat) and the lowest barrier to use.
3. Develop and implement measures that evaluate either the interventions (processes) or the outcomes.
4. Measure baseline performance and establish databases to facilitate accurate data management and timely feedback to teams.
5. Ensure that patients receive evidence-based interventions through four basic steps: engagement, education, execution, and evaluation (Table 5.4).

The format for the collaborative also includes annual face-to-face meetings with the participating teams and periodic conference calls, which focus on education about the actual processes being implemented, the evidence base to support these processes, and the sharing of experiences. First, weekly immersion calls provide an initial overview of the program, describe the roles and responsibilities of each of the individuals, and introduce the tools that are to be used. Once the collaborative is introduced, monthly content calls are held throughout the program and are typified by a slide presentation of the evidence base for the intervention or of other components of the program to be implemented. The monthly coaching calls offer an opportunity for teams to share how well or how poorly they are implementing the interventions and share ideas for overcoming barriers.

TABLE 5.4 Four Steps That Ensure Patients Receive Evidence-Based Interventions Through a Collaborative Using the Example of Catheter-Related Bloodstream Infections

Step	Action	Example
Engage	Make the problem real	Share information of local CRBSI rate vs. national rate
Educate	Develop an educational plan to reach ALL members of the caregiver team	Present evidence-based practices at grand rounds and multidisciplinary team meetings Present plans to improve care and measure outcome
Execute	Develop a safety culture Reduce complexity of the processes Introduce redundancy in processes Hold regular team meetings	Develop a culture of intolerance for CRBSI Ensure that all equipment and supplies for sterile CVC insertion are in one place and easily available Use checklists that identify key steps to reduce CRBSI Focus on one to two tasks per week and identify team member responsible for task
Evaluate	Measure and provide feedback	Develop data collection plan and database to track progress Give staff real-time feedback; post progress in highly visible location Identify causes of defects

CRBSI, Catheter-related bloodstream infections; *CVC*, central venous catheter.

Inclusion of the CUSP program in the collaborative provides a structured approach to improve safety culture and identify and mitigate hazards (i.e., learn from mistakes).[38,47] CUSP is a five-step program that has been tested and used successfully to improve quality and safety in ICUs (Table 5.5).[79,80] CUSP programs have been used in many different environments including inpatient units, primary care practices,[81] and in the perioperative period[82] to enhance the safety culture and improve the patient experience.[83]

Safety culture is assessed before the implementation of CUSP and reassessed after 1 year to evaluate the impact of the program. Multiple culture assessment tools are available.[64,65] The AHRQ offers a free survey online (www.ahrq.gov). The initial measure provides a baseline assessment of staff perceptions of safety culture in their clinical areas and their perceptions of the organization's commitment to patient safety.

Education is a crucial aspect of CUSP; it provides staff with a new set of lenses through which to identify hazards and

TABLE 5.5 Five-Step Comprehensive Unit-Based Safety Program

	Step	Description
1	Present educational material	Educate staff on science of safety though lectures and other educational materials
2	Complete forms that identify patient safety issues	Ask the following questions: ▪ How will the next patient be harmed? ▪ How can this harm be prevented? ▪ Establish voluntary incident reporting
3	Assign senior executive responsible for specific area	Senior executive meets with all staff of the clinical area to: ▪ Help prioritize safety efforts ▪ Remove barriers for system changes ▪ Provide resources ▪ Demonstrate hospital commitment to patient safety ▪ Foster relationship between senior leadership and staff
4	Learn from defects	Implement projects focused on two to three safety issues Keep goals simple: ▪ Reduce complexity in the process ▪ Create independent redundancies to ensure critical steps are accomplished
5	Implement teamwork tools	Implement programs such as checklists, training, and daily goals targeted at improving teamwork and communication

recommend system changes to improve care. The objectives of these educational efforts are to ensure that staff: (1) understand that safety is a system property, (2) learn concepts for reliable healthcare design, and (3) understand the basics of change management. After an educational lecture on the science of safety, staff members are requested to identify patient safety hazards in their clinical areas and suggest improvement interventions. For this process, staff members review incident reports, liability claims, and sentinel events from their unit. In addition, two questions are asked: "How do you think the next patient will be harmed?" and "How can we prevent it from happening?"

After the completion of the survey and educational component, a senior leader of the institution (e.g., hospital president, vice president, director) is partnered with a unit or clinical area. This leader attends rounds on the unit monthly to help staff members prioritize safety efforts, to ensure that they have the resources to implement improvements, and to hold them accountable for evaluating whether safety has improved. Staff members are asked to learn from one defect per month and to implement one tool per quarter designed to improve care delivery.[38,47]

CUSP was pilot-tested in ICUs and subsequently implemented throughout Johns Hopkins Hospital and in the Michigan Keystone project.[77] In the pilot, a patient-safety team that consisted of staff from the clinical area was responsible for oversight of the program. To be most effective, this team included the ICU director as the ICU physician safety champion, the nurse manager, another ICU physician and nurse, a risk manager or patient-safety officer, and a senior executive from the institution. The program worked best if the physician and nurse who led the program dedicated at least 20% of their time to improving quality and patient safety. The first unit was the beta site; subsequent teams from other clinical areas would learn from its successes and failures. The ultimate goal was to have every area in the hospital organizing and managing safety through CUSP.

CUSP has been associated with significant improvements in safety culture. The percentage of staff reporting a positive safety climate increased from 35% before CUSP to 60% after CUSP.[80,84] In addition, teams identified and mitigated several specific hazards through CUSP. As a result of asking staff members to speculate on how the next patient might be harmed, the ICU created a dedicated ICU transport team, implemented point-of-care pharmacists, implemented the daily goals sheet, clearly labeled epidural catheters to prevent inadvertent intravenous connection, and standardized the equipment in transvenous pacing kits.[85] Moreover, the use of CUSP decreased the length of stay and nurse turnover.

In summary, CUSP provides several benefits for improving safety culture and is a primer for staff compliance in implementing any safety or QI intervention or project. It provides enough structure to convert the often-vague goals of improving safety into a focused strategy; yet it is flexible enough to allow units to work on issues most important to them. CUSP provides a venue to introduce rigorous research methods, acts as a learning laboratory to identify and mitigate hazards, and has the potential to improve patient outcomes.

CHALLENGES AND BARRIERS TO QUALITY IMPROVEMENT PROJECTS

Multicentered and/or single-hospital projects can fail because of inadequate resources, lack of leadership support, vague expectations and objectives for team members, poor communication, complex study plans, inadequate management of data collection, and wasted efforts to "reinvent the wheel" rather than adopting practices proven to be effective. Successful collaboratives require a local culture (the set of values, attitudes, and beliefs of the group) that is ready for change and participants who have a shared view of safety and who understand the science of patient quality and safety (i.e., the technical components of how care is organized and delivered).

RELATED CONCEPTS: IMPROVEMENT SCIENCE AND IMPLEMENTATION SCIENCE

The focus of this chapter has been QI operations, or the efforts concerned with the measurement and timely improvement of quality in a given setting. QI operations is related to improvement science and implementation science, both of which aim to create generalizable knowledge that has the potential to improve care quality and patient outcomes across settings. These three fields are often confused because they share tools and are all interested in improving patient outcomes, but may use different terms to refer to similar concepts. To provide clarity about the similarities and differences between these fields, Koczwara and colleagues conceptualized a spectrum with QI operations at one end, implementation science at the other, and improvement science in the middle.[86] Understanding the roles for these fields may prove useful to those interested in anesthesia QI.

QI operations. As described at length in this chapter, QI is the systematic approach to improving problems in healthcare delivery that compromise care quality and outcomes. It is a timely, context-dependent team endeavor that has the potential to improve local care in the short, medium, and long term.

Improvement science. A common criticism of QI is that it is "unscientific" and more concerned with action than with understanding the mechanisms through which improvement occurs (or the reasons underlying the failure of improvement efforts). Improvement science draws from QI principles, aiming to "create practical learning that can make a timely difference to patient care."[87] But improvement science is also concerned with the creation of generalizable knowledge. Hence, close attention is paid to both internal and external validity in the design of improvement studies. Rigorously designed improvement science projects may sacrifice some of the timeliness of QI projects, but balance this downside with greater potential utility of the findings outside of a local setting.

Implementation science. Implementation science (known as knowledge translation in Canada) aims to narrow the evidence-to-practice gap evident when proven-effective interventions do not translate into improved care and outcomes.[88] Although the field is characterized as a new one, it draws from psychology, education, management, and related sciences. Two features clearly distinguish implementation science from QI and improvement science: the reliance on evidence-based practices and the use of explicit frameworks, theories, and models. Implementation science is a major focus for research funding agencies in the United States and Canada, as it is seen as one approach to maximize the return on grant dollars allocated to scientific discovery in health care. As with QI and improvement science, the adequate characterization of "real world" contexts is paramount. In contrast, there tends to be greater emphasis on generalizability in implementation science as compared to improvement science.

A key distinction between these three fields is their relationship to evidence. Implementation science relies on evidence-based interventions. However, there is not always evidence to guide our practice in situations with clearly suboptimal quality. In these situations, QI approaches can be useful, as rapid-cycle small-scale tests of change can minimize harm and mitigate risk at the same time as quality is addressed.

The Future: Research, Education, and Ethics

Much remains to be accomplished in QI. The opportunity to improve patient care is substantial, and the pressure to improve the quality of perioperative care continues to increase. Improving quality of care requires the ability to measure and improve performance. Research is needed to develop measures of quality that clinicians believe are valid and to learn how to ensure that all patients reliably receive recommended interventions. Innovation is needed to develop information systems that can be used by multiple disciplines. Anesthesiologists and professional societies may need to partner with experts in quality measurement to develop and implement quality measures. Future efforts should balance the feasibility and validity of quality measures and develop integrated approaches to improving quality, including strategies to develop care bundles, decrease complexity, and create independent redundancies.

TABLE 5.6 Accreditation Council of Graduate Medical Education (ACGME) Six Core Competencies and Institute of Medicine (IOM) Six Aims for Improvement

	ACGME Core Competencies	IOM Aims for Improvement
1	Patient care	Safe
2	Medical knowledge	Timely
3	Interpersonal and communication skills	Effective
4	Professionalism	Efficient
5	System-based practice	Equitable
6	Practice-based learning and improvement	Patient-centered

Clinicians now need the skills necessary to improve quality. Health care will cross the quality chasm only when all view quality and safety as their primary job, rather than as an added activity, and healthcare organizations provide the infrastructure to monitor and improve performance. Frontline healthcare providers must understand the science of quality and safety and evaluate safety risks as hazardous systems, not incompetent people. Integral to this is the education of our trainees. CQI in anesthesia residency training programs has been touted for more than 25 years.[89] In the United States, residents in training are expected to master six core competencies, as mandated by the Accreditation Council of Graduate Medical Education,[90] competencies that are linked to the NAM's six Aims for Improvement (Table 5.6).[3] In an effort to link these two sets of goals and apply them to the clinical setting for training purposes, Bingham and colleagues[91] developed a framework called the Healthcare Matrix that can be used as both an educational tool and a research tool for improvement.

With the increasing amount of intellectual focus and healthcare resources being directed toward QI programs, the ethics of QI have come to light. QI projects have generally been exempt from the rigorous review of human-subjects research. However, a Hastings Center Report on the ethics of using QI methods to improve health quality and safety suggests that some QI projects may involve risk to patients and should undergo a formal review.[92] This report lists QI initiatives that may trigger the need for a review as those that have a randomized design, use novel treatments, involve researchers, have delayed feedback of monitoring, or are funded by external sources. The reporting of QI activities should be encouraged, as should requiring approval by an internal review board and following a standardized format for reporting the results. All of these practices support the premise that delivery of quality care is a science as well as an art.

Summary

Healthcare organizations need a systematic approach to three areas of patient safety: (1) TRIP, (2) identifying and mitigating hazards, and (3) improving culture and communication. The underlying principle for all of the approaches discussed in this chapter is that improvement of the quality of care dictates that practitioners must be able to measure their performance. Healthcare practitioners traditionally have had limited ability to obtain feedback regarding performance in their daily work, in part because of the absence of information systems and a lack of agreement on how to measure quality of care.[44] As a result, many in health care do not have access to performance data and consequently do not know what results they achieve (or fail to achieve). As consumers, payors, regulators, and accreditors increasingly require evidence regarding quality of care, the demand for quality measures will grow. To meet these demands, anesthesiologists must be prepared to use valid measures to evaluate the quality of care that they provide and to implement evidence-based best practices in the perioperative care of patients.

Acknowledgments

The editors and the publisher would like to acknowledge Dr. Elizabeth Martinez (b. 1966–d. 2013) for her contributions to previous editions of this chapter. Her work served as the foundation for the current chapter.

This chapter greatly benefited from the thoughtful editing of Claire Levine.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Chandrupatla TR. *Quality and Reliability in Engineering: Excerpt*. New York: Cambridge University Press; 2009.
2. Lohr KN, Schroeder SA. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;322(10):707.
3. Institute of Medicine. *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press; 2001.
4. Institute of Medicine. *To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press; 2000.
5. Bodenheimer T, Sinsky C. *Ann Fam Med*. 2014;12(6):573.

5a. Kohn L, et al. *To err is Human: Building a Safer Health System*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press; 2000.

6. Gerteis M. *Picker/Commonwealth Program for Patient-Centered Care: Through the Patient's Eyes: Understanding and Promoting Patient-Centered Care*. 4th ed. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass; 1993.
7. Langley GJ, et al. *The Improvement Guide: A Practical Approach to Enhancing Organizational Performance*. Wiley; 2009.
8. Kotter JP, Cohen DS. *The Heart of Change: Real-life Stories of how People Change Their Organizations*. Harvard Business School Press; 2002.
9. James B. *Quality Management for Health Care Delivery*. Chicago: The Health Research and Educational Trust of the American Hospital Association; 1989.
10. Crosby PB. *Quality is Free: The Art of Making Quality Certain*. McGraw-Hill; 1979.
11. Shewhart WA, Deming WE. *Statistical Method from the Viewpoint of Quality Control*. New York: Dover; 1986.
12. Moen R, Clifford C. *Circling back: Clearing up Myths About the Deming Cycle and Seeing how it Keeps Evolving*. Quality Progress; 2010.
13. Deming WE. *Out of the Crisis.* 1st MIT Press ed. Cambridge, Mass: MIT Press; 2000.
14. Institute for Healthcare Improvement. *Going Lean in Health care*. Boston: IHI Innovation Series white paper; 2005. www.IHI.org
15. Pyzdek T, Keller PA. *The six Sigma Handbook : A Complete Guide for Green Belts, Black Belts, and Managers at all Levels*. 3rd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2010.
16. Chassin MR. *Milbank Q*. 1998;76:565.
17. Porter ME, Teisberg EO. *Redefining Health Care: Creating Value-Based Competition on Results*. Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press; 2006.
18. Porter ME. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(26):2477.
19. Howell J, Ayanian J. *J Health Serv Res Policy*. 2016;21(4):279.
20. Donabedian A. *The Milbank Memorial Fund quarterly*. 1966;44(3): suppl:166.
21. Randolph G, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2009;56:779.
22. Rubin HR, et al. *Int J Qual Health Care*. 2001;13:469.
23. Nelson EC, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Saf*. 2003;29:5.
24. Nelson EC, et al. *Front Health Serv Manage*. 1998;15:3.
25. Pronovost PJ, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2001;7:297.
26. Lenfant C. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:868.
27. Mermel LA, et al. *Clin Inf Dis*. 2009;49(1):1.
28. Bardach NS, Cabana MD. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2009;21:777.
29. Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services. *Fed Regist*. 2016;81(214): 77008.
30. Roland M, Guthrie B. *BMJ*. 2016;354.
31. Shewhart WA. *Economic Control of Quality of Manufactured Product*. American Society for Quality Control; 1931.
32. Varughese AM, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20:684.
33. Carey RG, Lloyd RC. *Measuring Quality Improvement in Healthcare: a Guide to Statistical Process Control Applications*. New York: Quality Resources; 1995.
34. Kaplan RS, Norton DP. *The Balanced Scorecard: Translating Strategy into Action*. Boston, Mass: Harvard Business School Press; 1996.
35. Christie CA, Inkelas M, Lemire S. *Improvement Science in Evaluation: Methods and Uses: New Directions for Evaluation*. Wiley; 2017. Number 153.
36. Centofanti JE, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(8):1797.
37. Cavalcanti AB, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;315(14):1480.
38. Pronovost P, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2003;18:71.
39. Justice LB, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2016;17(7):677.
40. Makary MA, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2006;32:357.
41. March MG, Crowley JJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:724.
42. Berenholtz SM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:2014.
43. Haynes AB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:491.
44. Mitchell B, et al. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2017;26(10):837.
45. Hicks CW, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2014;149(8):863.
46. Makary MA, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2006;32(7):407.
47. Thompson D, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2005;31(8):476.
48. Baker DP, et al. *Medical Teamwork and Patient Safety: The Evidence-Based Relation*. Rockville, MD 2003.
49. Alonso A, et al. *Hum Res Manage Rev*. 2006;16(3):396.
50. Clancy CM. *Aorn J*. 2007;86(1):18.
51. Weld LR, et al. *Am J Med Qual*. 2016;31(5):408.
52. McGlynn EA, Asch SM. *Am J Prev Med*. 1998;14:14.
53. Miller T, Leatherman S. *Health Affairs (Project Hope)*. 1999;18:233.
54. Leape LL. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:1633.
55. Vincent C. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348:1051.
56. White C. *Am J Med Qual*. 2017;32(1_suppl):3S.
57. Dutton RP. *ASA Monitor*. 2011;75(10). 30.
58. Tjia I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(1):122.
59. Cassidy CJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:879.
60. Webb RK, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21:520.
61. Sackett DL, et al. *BMJ*. 1996;312:71.
62. Shojania KG, et al. *Evid Rep Technol Assess (Summ) i*. 2001;1.
63. Rupp SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:539.
64. Gross JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1081; quiz, p 117.
65. Apfelbaum JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(3):495.
66. Brook AD, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:2609.
67. Marelich GP, et al. *Chest*. 2000;118:459.
68. Freundlich RE, Kheterpal S. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2011; 25:489.
69. Fuchshuber PR, et al. *Perm J*. 2012;16:39.
70. Dutton RP. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(3):507.
71. Dutton RP, Dukatz A. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2011;29(3):439.
72. Kheterpal S. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2011;29(3):377.
73. Ovretveit J, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2002;11:345.
74. Mittman BS. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;140:897.
75. Institute for Healthcare Improvement. Boston: IHI Innovation Series white paper; 2003.
76. Sawyer M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38:S292.
77. Pronovost P, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;355:2725.
78. Pronovost PJ, et al. *Health Serv Res*. 2006;41:1599.
79. Pronovost P, Goeschel C. *Healthc Exec*. 2005;20:14.
80. Pronovost PJ, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2006;32:119.
81. Pitts SI, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2017;43(11):591.

82. Moloo H, et al. *Can J Surg*. 2016;59(6):422.
83. Pottenger BC, et al. *Qual Manag Health Care*. 2016;25(4):197.
84. Pronovost P, et al. *J Pat Safety*. 2005;1:33.
85. Pronovost PJ, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2006;32:102.
86. Koczwara B, et al. *J Oncol Pract*. 2018;14(6):335.
87. Marshall M, et al. *Lancet*. 2013;381(9864):419.
88. Lane-Fall MB, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2018;36(1):1.
89. Dubin SA, et al. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1992;30:29.
90. Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education. ACGME Common Program Requirements. 7/29/2013 2016.
91. Bingham JW, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2005;31:98.
92. Baily MA, et al. *Hastings Cent Rep*. 2006;36:S1.
93. Boat AC, Spaeth JP. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2013;23(7):647.

References

1. Chandrupatla TR. *Quality and Reliability in Engineering*. Cambridge University Press; 2009.
2. Lohr KN, Schroeder SA. A strategy for quality assurance in Medicare. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;322(10):707–712.
3. Institute of Medicine. *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press; 2001.
4. Institute of Medicine. *To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press; 2000.
5. Bodenheimer T, Sinsky C. From triple to quadruple aim: care of the patient requires care of the provider. *The Annals of Family Medicine*. 2014;12(6):573–576.
6. Deming WE. *The New Economics: For Industry, Government, Education*. MIT Press; 2000.
7. Langley GJ, Moen RD, Nolan KM, Nolan TW, Norman CL, Provost LP. *The Improvement Guide: A Practical Approach to Enhancing Organizational Performance*. Wiley; 2009.
8. Kotter JP, Cohen DS. *The Heart of Change: Real-life Stories of how People Change Their Organizations*. Harvard Business School Press; 2002.
9. James BC, Research H, Measurement ETQ, Project M. *Quality management for health care delivery*. Hospital Research and Educational Trust of the American Hospital Association; 1989.
10. Crosby PB. *Quality is Free: The Art of Making Quality Certain*. McGraw-Hill; 1979.
11. Shewhart WA. *Statistical Method from the Viewpoint of Quality Control*. Dover Publications; 2012.
12. Moen RD, Clifford CL. Circling back: clearing up myths about the Deming Cycle and seeing how it keeps evolving. In. *Quality Progress*. 2010:22-28.
13. Deming WE. *Out of the Crisis*. Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Center for Advanced Engineering Study; 2000.
14. Institute for Healthcare Improvement. *Going Lean in Health Care*; 2005. Cambridge, MA.
15. Pyzdek T, Keller PA. *The Six Sigma Handbook*. 4th ed. McGraw-Hill Education; 2014.
16. Chassin MR. Is health care ready for Six Sigma quality?. *Milbank Q*. 1998;76(4):565–591. 510.
17. Porter ME, Teisberg EO. *Redefining Health Care: Creating Value-Based Competition on Results*. Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press; 2006.
18. Porter ME. What is value in health care? *N Engl J Med*. 2010; 363(26):2477–2481.
19. Howell J, Ayanian J. Ernest Codman and the end result system: a pioneer of health outcomes revisited. *J Health Serv Res Policy*. 2016;21(4):279–281.
20. Donabedian A. Evaluating the quality of medical care. *Milbank Mem Fund Q*. 1966;44(3):suppl:166–206 .
21. Randolph G, Esporas M, Provost L, Massie S, Bundy DG. Model for improvement—part two: measurement and feedback for quality improvement efforts. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2009;56(4):779–798.
22. Rubin HR, Pronovost P, Diette GB. The advantages and disadvantages of process-based measures of health care quality. *Int J Qual Health Care*. 2001;13(6):469–474.
23. Nelson EC, Batalden PB, Homa K, et al. Microsystems in health care: part 2. Creating a rich information environment. *Jt Comm J Qual Saf*. 2003;29(1):5–15.
24. Nelson EC, Batalden PB, Mohr JJ, Plume SK. Building a quality future. *Front Health Serv Manage*. 1998;15(1):3–32.
25. Pronovost PJ, Miller MR, Dorman T, Berenholtz SM, Rubin H. Developing and implementing measures of quality of care in the intensive care unit. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2001;7(4):297–303.
26. Lenfant C. Clinical research to clinical practice — lost in translation? *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349(9):868–874.
27. Mermel LA, Allon M, Bouza E, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of intravascular catheter-related infection: 2009 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. *Clinical Infectious Diseases*. 2009;49(1):1–45.
28. Bardach NS, Cabana MD. The unintended consequences of quality improvement. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2009;21(6):777–782.
29. Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services. Medicare program; merit-based incentive payment system (MIPS) and alternative payment model (APM) incentive under the physician fee schedule, and criteria for physician-focused payment models. final rule with comment period. *Federal Register*. 2016;81(214):77008–77831.
30. Roland M, Guthrie B. Quality and outcomes framework: what have we learnt? *BMJ*. 2016;354.
31. Shewhart WA. *Economic Control of Quality of Manufactured Product*. American Society for Quality Control; 1931.
32. Varughese AM, Hagerman NS, Kurth CD. Quality in pediatric anesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20(8):684–696.
33. Carey RG, Lloyd RC. *Measuring Quality Improvement in Healthcare: A Guide to Statistical Process Control Applications*. Quality Resources; 1995.
34. Kaplan RS, Norton DP. *The Balanced Scorecard: Translating Strategy Into Action*. Harvard Business School Press; 1996.
35. Christie CA, Inkelas M, Lemire S. *Improvement Science in Evaluation: Methods and Uses: New Directions for Evaluation*. Wiley; 2017. Number 153.
36. Centofanti JE, Duan EH, Hoad NC, et al. Use of a daily goals checklist for morning ICU rounds: a mixed-methods study. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(8):1797–1803.
37. Cavalcanti AB, Bozza FA, Machado FR, et al. Effect of a quality improvement intervention with daily round checklists, goal setting, and clinician prompting on mortality of critically ill patients: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2016;315(14):1480–1490.
38. Pronovost P, Berenholtz S, Dorman T, Lipsett PA, Simmonds T, Haraden C. Improving communication in the ICU using daily goals. *J Crit Care*. 2003;18(2):71–75.
39. Justice LB, Cooper DS, Henderson C, et al. Improving communication during cardiac icu multidisciplinary rounds through visual display of patient daily goals. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2016;17(7):677–683.
40. Makary MA, Holzmueller CG, Thompson D, et al. Operating room briefings: working on the same page. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2006;32(6):351–355.
41. March MG, Crowley JJ. An evaluation of anesthesiologists' present checkout methods and the validity of the FDA checklist. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(5):724–729.
42. Berenholtz SM, Pronovost PJ, Lipsett PA, et al. Eliminating catheter-related bloodstream infections in the intensive care unit. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(10):2014–2020.
43. Haynes AB, Weiser TG, Berry WR, et al. A surgical safety checklist to reduce morbidity and mortality in a global population. *New Engl J Med*. 2009;360(5):491–499.
44. Mitchell B, Cristancho S, Nyhof BB, Lingard LA. Mobilising or standing still? A narrative review of Surgical Safety Checklist knowledge as developed in 25 highly cited papers from 2009 to 2016. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2017;26(10):837–844.
45. Hicks CW, Rosen M, Hobson DB, Ko C, Wick EC. Improving safety and quality of care with enhanced teamwork through operating room briefings. *JAMA Surg*. 2014;149(8):863–868.
46. Makary MA, Holzmueller CG, Sexton JB, et al. Operating room debriefings. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2006;32(7):407–410. 357.
47. Thompson D, Holzmueller C, Hunt D, Cafeo C, Sexton B, Pronovost P. A morning briefing: setting the stage for a clinically and operationally good day. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2005;31(8):476–479.
48. Baker DP, Gustafson S, Beaubien JM, Salas E, Barach P. *Medical Teamwork and Patient Safety: the Evidence-Based Relation*; 2003. Rockville, MD.
49. Alonso A, Baker DP, Holtzman A, et al. Reducing medical error in the military health system: how can team training help? *Human Resource Management Review*. 2006;16(3):396–415.
50. Clancy CM. TeamSTEPPS: optimizing teamwork in the perioperative setting. *Aorn J*. 2007;86(1):18–22.
51. Weld LR, Stringer MT, Ebertowski JS, et al. TeamSTEPPS improves operating room efficiency and patient safety. *Am J Med Qual*. 2016;31(5):408–414.
52. McGlynn EA, Asch SM. Developing a clinical performance measure. *Am J Prev Med*. 1998;14(suppl 3):14–21.
53. Miller T, Leatherman S. The National Quality Forum: a 'me-too' or a breakthrough in quality measurement and reporting? *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 1999;18(6):233–237.
54. Leape LL. Reporting of adverse events. *N Engl J Med*. 2002; 347(20):1633–1638.
55. Vincent C. Understanding and responding to adverse events. *New Engl J Med*. 2003;348(11):1051–1056.

56. White C. The future awakens: a report on the 2016 Vizient Clinical Connections Summit. *Am J Med Qual*. 2017;32(suppl 1):3S–30S.
57. Dutton RP. Introducing the anesthesia incident reporting system (AIRS). *ASA Monitor*. 2011;75(10). 30-30.
58. Tjia I, Rampersad S, Varughese A, et al. Wake Up Safe and root cause analysis: quality improvement in pediatric anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(1):122–136.
59. Cassidy CJ, Smith A, Arnot-Smith J. Critical incident reports concerning anaesthetic equipment: analysis of the UK national reporting and learning system (NRLS) data from 2006-2008*. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(10):879–888.
60. Webb RK, Currie M, Morgan CA, et al. The Australian Incident Monitoring Study: an analysis of 2000 incident reports. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21(5):520–528.
61. Sackett DL, Rosenberg WM, Gray JA, Haynes RB, Richardson WS. Evidence based medicine: what it is and what it isn't. *BMJ*. 1996;312(7023):71–72.
62. Shojania KG, Duncan BW, McDonald KM, Wachter RM, Markowitz AJ. Making health care safer: a critical analysis of patient safety practices. *Evid Rep Technol Assess (Summ)*. 2001;(43):1–668, i-x.
63. Rupp SM, Apfelbaum JL, Blitt C, et al. Practice guidelines for central venous access: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on central venous access. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):539–573.
64. Gross JB, Bachenberg KL, Benumof JL, et al. Practice guidelines for the perioperative management of patients with obstructive sleep apnea: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on perioperative management of patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(5):1081–1093; quiz 1117-1088.
65. Apfelbaum JL, Caplan RA, Connis RT, et al. Practice guidelines for preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration: application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists committee on standards and practice parameters. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(3):495–511.
66. Brook AD, Ahrens TS, Schaiff R, et al. Effect of a nursing-implemented sedation protocol on the duration of mechanical ventilation. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27(12):2609–2615.
67. Marelich GP, Murin S, Battistella F, Inciardi J, Vierra T, Roby M. Protocol weaning of mechanical ventilation in medical and surgical patients by respiratory care practitioners and nurses: effect on weaning time and incidence of ventilator-associated pneumonia. *Chest*. 2000;118(2):459–467.
68. Freundlich RE, Kheterpal S. Perioperative effectiveness research using large databases. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;25(4):489–498.
69. Fuchshuber PR, Greif W, Tidwell CR, et al. The power of the National Surgical Quality Improvement Program—achieving a zero pneumonia rate in general surgery patients. *Perm J*. 2012;16(1):39–45.
70. Dutton RP. Making a difference: the anesthesia quality institute. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(3):507–509.
71. Dutton RP, Dukatz A. Quality improvement using automated data sources: the Anesthesia Quality Institute. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2011;29(3):439–454.
72. Kheterpal S. Clinical research using an information system: the multicenter perioperative outcomes group. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2011;29(3):377–388.
73. Ovretveit J, Bate P, Cleary P, et al. Quality collaboratives: lessons from research. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2002;11(4):345–351.
74. Mittman BS. Creating the evidence base for quality improvement collaboratives. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;140(11):897–901.
75. Institute for Healthcare Improvement. *The Breakthrough Series: IHI's Collaborative Model for Achieving Breakthrough Improvement*; 2003. Boston, MA.
76. Sawyer M, Weeks K, Goeschel CA, et al. Using evidence, rigorous measurement, and collaboration to eliminate central catheter-associated bloodstream infections. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(suppl 8):S292–298.
77. Pronovost P, Needham D, Berenholtz S, et al. An intervention to decrease catheter-related bloodstream infections in the ICU. *New Engl J med*. 2006;355(26):2725–2732.
78. Pronovost PJ, Berenholtz SM, Goeschel CA, et al. Creating high reliability in health care organizations. *Health Serv Res*. 2006;41(4 Pt 2):1599–1617.
79. Pronovost P, Goeschel C. Improving ICU care: it takes a team. *Healthc Exec*. 2005;20(2):14–16, 18, 20 passim.
80. Pronovost PJ, King J, Holzmueller CG, et al. A web-based tool for the comprehensive unit-based safety program (CUSP). *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2006;32(3):119–129.
81. Pitts SI, Maruthur NM, Luu NP, et al. Implementing the comprehensive unit-based safety program (CUSP) to improve patient safety in an academic primary care practice. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2017;43(11):591–597.
82. Moloo H, Brooke R, Sundaresan S, et al. Enabling front line–driven perioperative quality improvement through organizational infrastructure built around the comprehensive unit based safety program. *Can J Surg*. 2016;59(6):422–424.
83. Pottenger BC, Davis RO, Miller J, Allen L, Sawyer M, Pronovost PJ. Comprehensive unit-based safety program (CUSP) to improve patient experience: how a hospital enhanced care transitions and discharge processes. *Qual Manag Health Care*. 2016;25(4):197–202.
84. Pronovost P, Weast B, Rosenstein B, et al. Implementing and validating a comprehensive unit-based safety program. *J Patient Saf*. 2005;1(1):33–40.
85. Pronovost PJ, Holzmueller CG, Martinez E, et al. A practical tool to learn from defects in patient care. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2006;32(2):102–108.
86. Koczwara B, Stover AM, Davies L, et al. Harnessing the synergy between improvement science and implementation science in cancer: a call to action. *J Oncol Pract*. 2018;14(6):335–340.
87. Marshall M, Pronovost P, Dixon-Woods M. Promotion of improvement as a science. *Lancet*. 2013;381(9864):419–421.
88. Lane-Fall MB, Cobb BT, Cene CW, Beidas RS. Implementation science in perioperative care. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2018;36(1):1–15.
89. Dubin SA, Jense HG, Yodlowski E, McCranie JM. Continuous quality improvement in an anesthesia residency training program. *International Anesthesiology Clinics*. 1992;30(2):29–43.
90. Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education. *ACGME Common Program Requirements*. 7/29/2013 2016.
91. Bingham JW, Quinn DC, Richardson MG, Miles PV, Gabbe SG. Using a healthcare matrix to assess patient care in terms of aims for improvement and core competencies. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2005;31(2):98–105.
92. Baily MA, Bottrell M, Lynn J, Jennings B, Hastings C. The ethics of using QI methods to improve health care quality and safety. *Hastings Cent Rep*. 2006;36(4):S1–40.
93. Boat AC, Spaeth JP. Handoff checklists improve the reliability of patient handoffs in the operating room and postanesthesia care unit. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2013;23(7):647–654.

6

Avoiding Patient Harm in Anesthesia: Human Performance and Patient Safety

STEPHANIE MARIA OBERFRANK, MARCUS RALL, PETER DIECKMANN, MICHAELA KOLBE, and DAVID M. GABA

KEY POINTS

- Excellent clinical performance is not achieved by the use of sound medical knowledge alone, as clinicians have to face multifaceted challenges not just medical issues. There is an increased awareness that human factors—both on the individual and the team level—as well as organizational factors in the health care system play major roles in providing excellent medical care. Therefore, for anesthesia professionals (1) the study of human performance is fundamental, (2) the knowledge and successful application of efficient safety strategies are highly relevant, and (3) understanding of the pertinent organizational matters is very important.
- The health care system in general, individual clinical institutions, and work units in particular must provide the appropriate organizational characteristics to facilitate safe patient care including: promoting a culture of safety, effective incident reporting and analysis systems, continuous training for professionals, and optimized structures and processes.
- Organizations that provide such characteristics are referred to as high-reliability organizations (HRO). HRO theory describes the key features of systems that conduct complex and hazardous work, but do so with extremely low failure rates and complications. The credo of HROs is not to erase all errors but rather to identify human error mechanisms and make systems more impervious to errors and their sequelae (resilience).
- Several mechanisms of optimal versus poor performance have been demonstrated through human performance research. A particular technique of human performance research called task analysis has been useful in understanding the work of anesthesia professionals. Observing them during routine operations or in the handling of (simulated) adverse events has improved our knowledge on human performance. The findings include the impact of critical and continuous situation awareness and decision making (i.e., core cognitive process model), effective teamwork, leadership, and communication, as well as task management and the use of cognitive aids (e.g., checklists or emergency manuals).
- Organizations and individuals need to fully recognize that the performance of individual anesthesia professionals can—as for all human beings—be adversely influenced by performance-shaping factors, including noise, illness, aging, boredom, distraction, sleep deprivation, and fatigue, as well as by social dynamics within and between crews and teams.
- It is necessary to have a clear understanding of known human performance pitfalls such as fixation errors, ineffective team communication, misunderstandings, medication errors, unclear task management, and erroneous assumptions. While anesthesia professionals' knowledge and skill are key strengths needed for safe patient care, addressing the limitations will help them to actively avoid or mitigate the risk of adverse events.
- One approach to understanding and intervening in human performance issues for anesthesia care, especially focused on challenging situations, is that of crisis resource management (CRM). CRM (as in "cockpit [then crew] resource management") was developed in aviation first but then adapted to health care, initially for anesthesia care, in the early 1990s. There are many formulations of CRM but they typically highlight situation awareness, dynamic decision making, task management, communication, and teamwork. The introduction of CRM in anesthesiology and its spread into many other health care disciplines and domains have typically been associated with the use of realistic simulation-based training of anesthesia professionals in single-discipline or combined team training. It also has helped focus attention on systems' issues that relate to key aspects of human performance highlighted in CRM-oriented training.

- "First do no harm": Every avoidable harm or death to a patient is one tragic event too many. Anesthesia professionals must strive to avoid all harm that they may potentially impose, knowingly or not, on patients. Future progress on patient safety and human performance in anesthesia will require interdisciplinary research and training, improvements in systems thinking and systems safety, organizational learning, and the involvement of all levels of the health care industry.

What this Chapter is About: An Overview

This chapter provides the reader with an overview of key human performance and safety issues concerning anesthesiology and demonstrates the relevance of those topics to the clinical performance of anesthesia professionals. Applying the knowledge of this chapter to patient care can help to avoid unnecessary harm to patients and also prevent psychological harm to the anesthesia professional (as the "second victim"). Hence, this chapter is not only about patient safety, but also about the anesthesia professional's safety and well-being as care provider. The authors provide a set of practical safety concepts and strategies to guide the reader in improving or refreshing case management-related skills and to sensitize the reader to safety-related core issues and competencies in anesthesia.

Because most of the work on human performance has focused on anesthesiology in the operating room (OR), this chapter deals primarily with aspects of performance and safety in that setting. Nevertheless, most of the same principles and issues are relevant to other perioperative settings, to critical care, and to a lesser degree, in pain medicine. They will also largely apply to emergency medicine and other health care domains sharing similar cognitive profiles. For readers with a special interest in intensive care, a selection of references is given as a starting point.[1-8]

The chapter contains references ranging from several decades old to quite recent. The authors have tried to balance retention of classic references, where the intellectual content has only changed slightly over the years, with the introduction of current literature that reflects changes in thinking or evidence, or newer syntheses of knowledge and experience.

In this chapter, the authors use "anesthesia professional" to refer to any anesthesia clinician taking care of a patient, whether a physician, certified registered nurse anesthetist (CRNA), or anesthesia assistant (or to similar positions in other countries).

READERS WILL LEARN

- … safety relevant aspects of a dynamic and complex work environment and the resulting consequences for clinicians. Several sections highlight the nature of anesthesia as a highly complex and dynamic working environment and the difficulties that arise for human performance and patient safety.
- … characteristics and risks of different tasks performed by anesthesia professionals and countermeasures to mitigate their potential risks.
- … the issues of human performance, human limitations, and various relevant safety strategies that address them for both individuals and teams.
- … aspects of system safety concerning high-reliability organizations (HROs).

WHAT THIS CHAPTER IS NOT ABOUT

The literature related to human performance and patient safety is vast. Standard reference works are available[9-14] as well as several Internet sources (Appendix 6.1). This chapter samples only a portion of this literature as it most closely relates to the work of anesthesia professionals. This chapter does not address in detail human-machine interactions and the physical design of the work environment. These aspects of human factors, or ergonomics, in anesthesiology are important in their own right. The reader is referred to several publications that review these issues in detail.[15-20] Also not part of this chapter are most issues of infection control and medication safety, even as they pertain to the perioperative arena. Here, too, the reader is referred to several publications that review these issues in detail[21-36] and also to other chapters in this book.

Human Performance and Patient Safety in Anesthesia: Why is this Important?

Even though provision of anesthesia has become a "safe" discipline over the last decades through many scientific and technical improvements, anesthesia per se is an intrinsically hazardous undertaking. Many aspects of anesthetic drugs and care can affect vital human functions and are potentially lethal while they are not therapeutic in themselves. Evolution did not intend for human beings to be rendered temporarily insensitive to pain, unconscious, amnestic, and in many cases paralyzed. The surgical procedure itself may cause or trigger a variety of physiologic derangements and some patients needing anesthesia are already severely ill. Thus, in anesthesiology a stable situation can turn into a life-threatening situation in seconds, minutes, or hours, whereas in many arenas of health care changes happen in days, months, or years.

Medical and technical skills alone are not sufficient for excellent medical care. Historically, an adequately trained anesthesia professional was automatically assumed to always perform appropriately. Deviations from optimal outcomes were understood to result from imperfections in the art and science of anesthesiology. This perception led to heavy emphasis on the scientific and technical aspects of anesthesia training and care. Adverse outcomes were mostly ascribed to unavoidable side effects of a medication, underlying patient disease, negligence, or incompetence on the part of the anesthesia professional.

Interestingly, research shows that the etiology of most adverse events is generally not related to intrinsic problems associated with equipment, drugs, or diseases, but rather that 80% of the avoidable events are caused by so-called human factors (HF)—similar to the statistics emanating from the aviation industry. For instance, a review of critical anesthesia incidents by Cooper and associates revealed that human factors were contributory in 82% of the 359 incidents reported.[37] These incidents ranged from simple equipment malfunction in some cases, to death in others, indicating the seriousness and importance of the problems. Data from an earlier evaluation of 2000 incident reports support these findings with 83% of incidents occurring due to human error.[38] The term HF describes the physical and psychological behavior of humans in relation to specific environments, jobs, organizational patterns, machines, products, and individual challenges.

The performance of human beings is incredibly flexible, powerful, and robust in some aspects but limited and vulnerable in others. Today we have a more complete understanding of the human performance of anesthesia professionals than existed decades ago. For example, we know that the successful conduct of an anesthetic depends on having the requisite technical skills and relevant pathophysiologic knowledge. But it has also become clear that the effective real-time implementation of such expertise to a large extent depends on several nonmedical and nontechnical elements of performance. Among HF issues are those that are termed human performance-shaping factors like fatigue, boredom, and distraction.

Human factor-related safety strategies for the individual and the team are indispensable. Lapses, mistakes, and errors have the potential to harm a patient ("first victim"), but can also harm professionals themselves ("second victim"). Professionals suffer as second victims largely from the perceived guilt about an error that led to actual harm.[39] The clinical institution involved may also suffer financially or in reputation from such events, although often the occurrence of these events are not known to the public, and unlike in other industries (e.g., aviation, chemical manufacturing) there is no direct harm to the physical means of production. Nonetheless, the best way to avoid harm to the professional or the organization is to prevent adverse events or mitigate harm to patients.

Organizational safety attitudes are essential to support high individual human performance. More attention should be devoted to training anesthesia professionals in human performance issues so that they can develop and apply core competencies for achieving human performance on a daily basis. Moreover, departmental and organizational leadership must understand the enormous impact their attitudes and behavior have in shaping human performance, safety culture, outcomes, and ultimately (in all likelihood), the level of patient safety.

Even in anesthesiology, still a long way to go. Historically, anesthesiology was the first medical specialty to specifically focus on the promotion of patient safety. As a consequence, anesthesiology is widely recognized as the pioneering leader in patient safety efforts. Compared to other medical disciplines, the track record of anesthesiology is indeed a model of patient safety for the rest of health care.[40] However, safety science teaches us that patient safety and quality improvement are never-ending processes and complacency is dangerous. In addition, the increasing "production pressure" in anesthesia practice from expanding clinical demands in the face of constant or diminishing resources may threaten previously won gains. Any patient harmed by an anesthetic is one patient too many. This approach is aligned with the zero vision statement of the U.S. Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation (APSF): *"That no one shall be harmed by anesthesia care."* In this regard Cooper and Gaba wrote that anesthesia professionals "… should remain aware of the hazards they still face, take pride in having been the leaders in patient safety efforts, and stay motivated to continue the pursuit of 'no harm from anesthesia' with the passion it still demands" (p. 1336).[40]

Saving hearts, brains, and lives. Several recently published studies demonstrate the benefits of implementing various patient safety strategies.[5,41-44] The authors have experienced the benefit of a more safety- and human performance-focused approach in their own work, as have their colleagues who also work in this field or in other fields that are endeavoring to create a safer health care system. Although it may be challenging to produce undisputable evidence that patient outcomes are improved by addressing the issues and implementing the strategies presented in this chapter, there is strong reason and ongoing research to support the belief that hearts, brains, and lives have indeed been saved by applying them. That belief is reward enough for the efforts of the authors as they share with the reader what is known about human performance and patient safety.

Nature of the Anesthesia Professional's Operational Domain: A Dynamic and Complex Environment

The practice of anesthesiology can be characterized as a dynamic and complex environment that presents the anesthesia professional with challenges that may jeopardize human performance and patient safety.

To better understand these patient safety challenges that are related to human performance, the authors first describe the key characteristics of anesthesia work. In what follows they address (1) critical factors that categorize anesthesiology as a complex and dynamic working environment; (2) the safety challenge of inherent asymmetry between safety and production, and the effects of production pressure; and (3) the safety challenge of complexity and tight coupling in the anesthesia domain.

ANESTHESIOLOGY BY ITS NATURE INVOLVES CRISES

What makes anesthesiology and a few other medical domains (such as intensive care medicine, emergency medicine, obstetrics, neonatology, and surgery, to name a few) different from most other medical fields? The answer is that the clinical environment of anesthesiology is both complex and dynamic which, when combined with the inherent risks of surgery and anesthesia, makes crisis situations frequent and challenging to deal with. These moments of terror necessitate that anesthesia professionals be expert in crisis management.

CRITERIA DEFINING A COMPLEX AND DYNAMIC WORLD

Based on the work of Orasanu and colleagues,[45] the following text describes some of the characteristics of anesthesia that make it a complex and dynamic world.

1. **Ill-structured problems.** In contrast to well-structured problems, the nature and the goal of ill-structured problems are often vague or unclear, and many problem elements remain unknown or ambiguous. In anesthesiology, the patient's physiologic behavior is not an independent random variable but is causally linked to previous decisions and actions. There often is not just a single problem with a single decision to be made, but rather a variety of interrelated problems. Interdependent decisions must be made and actions taken by the anesthesia professional, surgeon, and other perioperative personnel.
2. **Uncertain system.** The patient is the main "system" of immediate interest to the anesthesia professional, just as the aircraft is of immediate interest to the pilot.[46] Patients are intrinsically very complex, and they contain many components with underlying functions that are imperfectly understood. The medical world knows very little about the underlying causes of specific physiologic events, although the general principles involved can be described. Unlike industrial or aviation systems, patients are not designed, built, or tested by humans, nor do they come with an operator's manual. The true state of the patient cannot usually be measured directly. It must be inferred from ambiguous patterns of clinical observations and data from electronic monitors. These data are imperfect because, unlike industrial systems that are designed and built with sensors in key areas to measure the most important variables, patients are typically instrumented to measure the variables that are easiest to monitor, predominantly with the use of noninvasive methods. Most physiologic functions are observed indirectly through weak signals available at the body surface that are prone to various types of electrical and mechanical interference. Invasive measurements are also vulnerable to artifacts and uncertainties of interpretation. Even if the anesthesia professional knew the exact state of the patient, the patient's response to interventions would be unpredictable, as normal patients show genetic or acquired differences in reflex sensitivity, pharmacokinetics, or pharmacodynamics that can yield a wide range of responses to a given dose of a drug or to a routine action (e.g., laryngoscopy). In diseased or traumatized patients, or in the presence of acute abnormalities, these responses may be markedly abnormal, and patients may overreact or underreact to otherwise appropriate actions. Thus, the patient as a system has substantially greater uncertainty than do engineered systems.
3. **Dynamic environment.** Dynamism stems from the frequency of routine and anomalous changes or events, the rapidity with which they evolve, and the unpredictability of the patient's physiology and response to interventions. An anesthetized patient is in a constant state of change during surgery, with many events outside the anesthesia professional's control, such as when the surgeon inadvertently transects a major vessel or when a patient with a previously unknown allergy suffers anaphylaxis. Although preventive measures can reduce the likelihood of some events, other events cannot be totally avoided because they are inevitable side effects of medically necessary procedures (e.g., surgical blood loss). Unpredictable and dynamic occurrences compete with the preplanned aspects of the case and together they drive the anesthesia professional's actions.
4. **Time stress.** Because the OR is a scarce resource, an incessant overall time pressure exists to use the OR efficiently (see section "Production Pressure"). Surgeons or OR managers pressing to start a case may affect the anesthesia professional's decisions and actions that could jeopardize safety standards. Over the long run this can cause a systematic "normalization of deviance" [47-50] (see section "Normalization of Deviance and Flirting with the Margin"), meaning the emergence of new, less stringent standard behaviors that are seen as normal judgments that previously would have been viewed as aberrant. An even more intense time stress occurs within a case when dynamic situations evolve rapidly and become time critical.
5. **Shifting, ill-defined, or competing goals.** Multiple goals of case management may compete with each other. (e.g., hemodynamic stability vs. good operating conditions for the surgeon vs. rapid emergence from anesthesia). The OR manager's administrative goals (high throughput, low cost) may sometimes compete with those of the anesthesia professional. All these goals shift as the patient's situation changes dynamically throughout a procedure and the flow of cases changes throughout the work day. For example, decisions on surgical operation planning are heavily influenced and manipulated by micropolitics and power, as investigated by Engelmann and colleagues.[51] Nurok and colleagues[52] portray this aspect in their survey: *"Are surgeons and anesthesiologists lying to each other or gaming the system?"*
6. **Short action feedback loops.** The time constants of actions and their effects are very short, on the order of seconds to minutes. Complete intermixing of decision making and action occurs; these functions are not performed in separate cycles. Most decisions and actions are implemented incrementally, constantly evaluating the relative success or failure of actions-to-date to determine how best to proceed. Anesthesia professionals often do not jump to conclusions or implement a whole set of actions all at once but try one or two approaches and see how they work, constantly reassessing rather than jumping ahead too far at once.
7. **High stakes.** The decisions and actions taken by anesthesia professionals can determine the outcome for the patient. The stakes are high because even for elective surgery in healthy patients, the risk of catastrophe is ever-present. Death, brain damage, or other permanent injury may be the end result of many pathways that can begin with seemingly innocuous triggering events. Each intervention, even if appropriate, is associated with side effects, some of which are themselves serious. Some risks cannot be anticipated or avoided. Unlike an event such as a commercial flight, which can be delayed or aborted if a problem occurs or if the weather is bad, these options are not always possible in health care. Sometimes immediate surgery (and anesthesia) may be necessary to treat

a medical problem that is itself life threatening. Balancing the risks of anesthesia and surgery against the risk of the patient's underlying diseases can be extremely difficult.

8. **Multiple players.** Perioperative domains involve multiple players from different professional backgrounds. Each profession has its own characteristics. On the one hand, surgeons, anesthesia professionals and OR nurses all want safety and a good outcome for the patient. On the other hand, each discipline and profession has other inherent goals. For example, surgeons may usually seem eager to perform the surgery and may seem to be more willing to take risks and to view the probability of a good outcome with optimism. In contrast, anesthesiologists may tend to be rather risk averse. Also, for a variety of reasons, it seems that surgeons tend to put production pressure on anesthesia professionals and nurses more than the other way around. The idiosyncrasies of interaction among various individual OR team members sometimes dominate the work environment. The OR sometimes offers a unique team structure of action teams, where the members may vary greatly from one day to the next (see later section "Teamwork"). Furthermore, there is a certain individual variation in the performance of each member; on any given day even usually "good" people may not be at their best.
9. **Organizational goals and norms.** The anesthesia professional works within the formal and informal norms of the OR suite, the anesthesia department, the institution, and the professional culture as a whole. Sometimes anesthesia professionals feel pressured to make decisions that they do not believe are best for the patient in order to comply with these norms. Therefore, it is important to face human performance and patient safety pitfalls not only on the individual and team level, but also on a larger departmental and organizational level (see later section "Patient Safety on the Organizational Level: Issues and Strategies").

Although some of these aforementioned characteristics apply to other domains of medicine, anesthesiology is unique in that many of the characteristics are prominent. In particular, what sets anesthesia apart from clinic-based or ward-based medicine is the intensity of the dynamics, time pressure, uncertainty, and extreme variation within the complexity, with danger lurking just below the surface, as well as the unique team constellation of so-called action teams (see section "Human Factors on the Team Level").

Other factors influencing complexity in anesthesia: device variety and tight coupling. The complexity in anesthesia also stems from the variety of devices in use and their interconnections. The challenge is that the equipment often consists of a proliferation of independent devices with multiple, nonstandardized interconnections. Devices seem often to be designed by engineers in isolation. As a consequence, interactions between devices, or among the equipment, the patient, and the human operator, may not be adequately addressed in the design phase.

Furthermore, complexity in anesthesia derives from complex interactions which are highly interdependent (tightly coupled). Coupling describes the notion of relations between parts of a system, which either can be tightly or loosely coupled.[46] Because many body systems affect each other, the patient is a major site of tight coupling. The anesthetic state tends to erode the protective and compensatory physiologic buffers among some of these interconnected systems, thereby forcing the patient's system to become even more connected and strengthening the coupling between them and between the patient and external technologic supports (e.g., ventilator or infusions of hemodynamically active drugs).

PRODUCTION PRESSURE RESULTING IN ASYMMETRY BETWEEN SAFETY AND PRODUCTION

The current trend of increasing production pressure in perioperative care can further strain the working conditions in this demanding work environment.[53] Social and organizational environments may act as a source of production pressure on anesthesia professionals.

Safety attitudes compete against economic thinking. Production pressure encompasses the economic and social pressures placed on workers to consider production, not safety, their primary priority.[54] In anesthesiology, this typically means starting cases early, keeping the OR schedule moving speedily, with few cancellations and minimum time between cases. In principle, safety and efficiency can go hand in hand. Many aspects of high reliability, such as standard operating procedures, preprocedure briefings, and flattening the hierarchy, may smooth operation of the system, as well as make it safer. However, the pressure for throughput as well as the wish to please the surgeon or the OR manager, or the attempt to make up time by skipping essential procedures can erode safety and lead to a normalization of deviance (the new normal, see sections "Normalization of Deviance" and & "Flirting with the Margin").[55] For example, when anesthesia professionals succumb to production pressures, they may skip appropriate preoperative evaluation and planning, or they may not perform adequate pre-use checkout of equipment. Even when preoperative evaluation does take place, overt or covert pressure from surgeons (or others) can cause anesthesia professionals to proceed with elective cases despite the existence of serious or uncontrolled medical problems.

Production pressure as a trigger to depart inappropriately from standard operating procedures and standards. Production pressure can cause anesthesia professionals to choose techniques that they would otherwise believe to be inadvisable. Gaba and associates reported on a survey of a large random sample of California anesthesiologists concerning their experience with production pressure.[56] A nontrivial minority of respondents (20% to 40%) reported meaningful levels of pressure to conform to such pressures, to make decisions against their judgment of optimal safety, and to risk economic consequences if they act as they see appropriate. Generally, the pressures were already internalized after prior unpleasant experiences rather than stemming from blatant external attacks. Although there are anecdotal reports of increasing production pressure, as well as organizational practices that increase it (e.g., scheduling elective cases to start late at night or after midnight without separate shifts of anesthesia professionals), there has been no comparable repeated survey of such pressures in recent years. Fully investigating these aspects of the work environment is difficult because such relationships are driven by economic considerations, as well as by the complex organizational and interpersonal networks linking the different medical cultures. Changing the environment will be equally challenging and calls for organizational action (see section "Patient Safety Strategies on the Individual and Team Level: Crisis Resource Management [CRM] and Other Training Curricula").[57]

The efficiency-thoroughness trade-off (ETTO). Given the limited resources in the health care system, professionals constantly need to prioritize and make trade-offs, the most common being the efficiency-thoroughness trade-off (ETTO) described in detail by Eric Hollnagel in his book *The ETTO Principle: Efficiency-Thoroughness Trade-Off: Why Things that Go Right Sometimes Go Wrong.*[58] One example of a tradeoff is reducing the amount of information sought about individual preoperative patients in order to more efficiently process large numbers of them. Since it rarely is possible to be both effective and thorough at the same time, the balance of the trade-off can get into an unnoticed disequilibrium threatening human performance and patient safety.

Inherent imbalance between signals of safety and signals of production. One of the challenges in achieving optimal safety is the asymmetry of the signals of safety and the signals of production[59]: (1) Investments for production are easy to plan for and measure. Feedback about production is easy to obtain (revenue, earnings, expenses) and to interpret (success, no success). Success is indicated positively (more production, more earnings) and reinforcing. The relationship between the application of resources (money, effort, time) and production goals is relatively certain. (2) On the contrary, investments for safety are more difficult to plan for and the costs and benefits can only be measured indirectly and without continuity, making them difficult to interpret or even deceptive. Feedback about safety is inherently weak and ambiguous. Success is less reinforcing because if indicated negatively (fewer accidents or incidents)—how can one measure the accidents that could have occurred but did not? The relationship between the application of resources (money, effort, time) and safety goals is equally uncertain. There have been many occasions when only after a catastrophe takes place are the signals concerning a safety hazard understood, and often there is evidence that some personnel did recognize the hazards but either did not sufficiently press the issue or else they were systematically ignored or repressed.

Nature of the Anesthesia Professional's Work: Task Variation and Workload Management

As previously described, the operational domain of anesthesia can be considered as a complex and dynamic world, managing different challenges with uncertain systems, competing goals, time pressure, and multiple players with special team constellations. All of these can affect human performance and patient safety. There also exist the challenges of the different specific tasks of conducting an anesthetic, whether manual (i.e., insertion of cannula, intubation), behavioral (i.e., leadership behaviors, communication patterns), or cognitive (i.e., attention, preparedness, dynamic decision making). Safe and efficient performance requires both medical and non-medical skills.[11,60]

Human failure or equipment failure can have disastrous consequences. Errors in cognitive tasks as well as cognitive biases are common in anesthesiology and pose a threat to patient safety.[61,62] In the following section the authors provide insights into the nature of the anesthesiaology professional's many tasks and their various vulnerabilities. This is important not only for individual and team improvements but also for improvements concerning clinical education, training, organizational structures, and equipment design. The focus of the upcoming section is on manual and cognitive tasks. The behavioral non-medical are discussed later (see section "Patient Safety on the Individal and Team Level").

This section briefly highlights the different phases of an anesthetic regimen and summarizes findings of task analysis and task performance studies, provides facts about the anesthesia machine checkout protocol as a safety relevant task, and introduces nonobservable cognitive tasks of administering anesthesia, in particular dynamic decision making. In addition, this section provides an introduction to workload measurement methodologies, gives study results concerning the performance of anesthesia professionals summarizes the benefits and obstacles of human performance measures, and highlights results from task analysis studies.

PROCEDURAL TASKS OF ANESTHESIA PROFESSIONALS AND RELATED VULNERABILITIES

Multiple task analysis studies have investigated what actions and thought processes an anesthesiologist is required to perform to achieve good anesthetic care. Since the 1970s, numerous studies have been done either by direct observation during real cases[63-67] or by indirect observation during cases captured on videotape.[64,68-74] In addition, an increasing number of studies have been performed in realistic simulation environments.[8,64,75-79] Of note, many of the studies cited are pioneering ones that remain valid today.

The early studies of the work of anesthesiologists drew attention to the wide spectrum of tasks in the trajectory of perioperative care. They highlighted that many tasks must be done in close parallel with others (approximating multitasking, see section Task Management), showing not only the different tasks and their substeps that can be prone to error, but also different phases of task intensity during an anesthetic. Subsequent task analysis studies focused on the workload and the performance of the anesthesiologist, at a later time expanding to performance measures based on teamwork,[80-82] communication,[83] and leadership.[82,84,85] More recently, task analysis studies have been performed with respect to ergonomic equipment design questions. Certain very complex issues concerning human-machine interactions and the ways in which technology affects behavior in complex patient-care environments are beyond the scope of this chapter; however a number of publications address these issues.[16,86,87]

The different phases for an anesthetic regimen are commonly classified into (1) preoperative planning, (2) induction, (3) maintenance of, and (4) emergence from anesthesia. [63] Every phase is characterized by manual and cognitive tasks, each of which consists of further subordinated steps and each of which presents with a variable density of tasks and human error pitfalls. For a comprehensive review, the reader is directed to the publication of Phipps and colleagues [63] for detailed information.

Preoperative Planning

The anesthesia professional needs to be prepared for active intervention during the whole anesthetic regimen. Part of this preparedness involves obtaining the necessary equipment and supplies, preparing medications, and conducting pre-use checkouts of life-support equipment and the anesthesia machine before induction (See section "Pre-use Checkout of Equipment/Anesthesia Machine Checkout").

However, with 44 task steps as identified in the task analysis study by Phipps and associates, the equipment check is a lengthy and detailed process, and it is possible that steps may be omitted, either intentionally or unintentionally.

Induction

Task analysis studies demonstrated increased anesthesiologist workload during induction, emergence, and emergency surgery.[63,67,88-94] Phipps and associates identified 73 task steps between the preparation of drugs and transferring the anesthetized patient to the operating room (induction phase), including cognitive and communicative tasks, machine checkouts, as well as a considerable number of manual task steps, such as the insertion of the cannula and airway devices. Pape and Dingman examined the number of unrelated distractions during the induction process (i.e., unrelated questions of other personnel, OR doors opening and closing, noise, answering incoming telephone calls, unrelated communication), discovering an average of 7.5 total interruptions per 9 minutes.[95] They argued that interruptions and distractions can lead to loss of focus and result in errors, and requested further research to determine whether silence during induction is needed as a safety measure. Another study concluded that on average during cases one distractive event occurs every 4 minutes 23 seconds, with approximately 3.4 distractions during induction and 3.0 distractions when moving from the induction room to the OR.[96] In this study while most distracting events had no negative consequences for the patient, 22% had negative consequences (suboptimal management). Interestingly 3% were actually not distractions because they had positive consequences for the patient. In another study, 20% of visual attention during induction was directed to the patient monitor, increasing up to 30% during simulated critical incident induction scenarios.[97] During the observation of real cases, yet another study group found that drug/fluid tasks comprised 20 ± 6% of induction, 15 ± 8% of maintenance, and 12 ± 7% of emergence during routine cases.[91]

Maintenance Phase of Anesthesia

Betza and colleagues found in an observational study that anesthesia providers spent 71% of their time during maintenance doing patient or display monitoring tasks.[98] Transitions between the task categories occurred approximately once every 9 seconds. It appeared that regardless of the task, there was a high frequency of task transitions to look at the visual displays and then from the visual displays toward the patient. Compared with the induction phase, there are fewer (16) task steps during the maintenance phase. [63] However, there is evidence that a relatively high proportion of critical incidents occur during the maintenance phase (59% of incidents during maintenance, 26% during induction).[37] Patients' conditions may vary in an overt or subtle way. Therefore, anesthesia professionals need to continuously monitor several parameters. Their attention may be distracted or misbalanced, as not all parameters need the same level of attention all the time. Sometimes other tasks, such as telephone calls, auscultation, insertion of an arterial cannula, use of transesophageal echocardiography (TEE), and "problem solving," may divert the attention of the anesthesia professional. As attention is a limited resource and susceptible to distractions, it is important to learn how to best allocate one's attention in continuously changing and complex environments like anesthesia (see later section, "Situation Awareness").

Very detailed task analyses took place in a series of studies carried out by the University of California, San Diego (UCSD), Stanford University, the San Diego and Stanford Veterans Administration Medical Centers.[66,67] Generally, studies of workload indicate that induction and, to a lesser degree, emergence are the most intensive. However, it is also argued that many of those tasks performed are part of a routine, which tends to reduce the effort required. Maintenance, in contrast, is typically less physically "action dense" but mental activity continues as a wide range of information is used and processed.[99]

Emergence

With 40 task steps to carry out in a relatively short period of time, the discontinuation of anesthesia and subsequent transfer of the patient to recovery is fairly busy.[63] A study from Broom and associates suggests that emergence is the most distractive period compared with induction and maintenance, finding noise during emergence at 58 decibels (dB) (compared to induction at 46 dB and maintenance at 52 dB), with sudden loud noise (>70 dB) occurring more frequently during emergence than at induction or maintenance.[100] The range of staff entrances and exits were also highest during emergence (10), compared to induction (0) and maintenance (6). Conversations unrelated to the procedure occurred in 93% of emergences. Emergence also was found to be the period of most frequent distractions, occurring on average every 2 minutes.[96] Those findings are acknowledged by the following quotations retrieved from subjective study interviews:

> *"I don't think people quite appreciate that emergence is as important as induction really and sometimes they're just glad to have finished off their case. They're crashing and banging and moving on and fail to realize." and "(…) [B]asically as far as they're concerned the job's finished. They're there moaning, yelling, or talking about the next case. I do find that distracting because I think: 'we haven't actually finished this case yet'." (p. 711)*[96]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

The period of the patient's emergence from anesthesia is high risk and a high workload for the anesthesia professional while low stress for other OR personnel. Often they forget and the noise level may rise considerably. If so the anesthesia professional should politely demand thoughtfulness and quiet from the other OR team members. This would also be a possible setting to invoke the auditory "sterile cockpit" protocol (see later section "Distractions and Interruptions in the Operating Room").

PRE-USE CHECKOUT OF EQUIPMENT/ ANESTHESIA MACHINE CHECKOUT

A pre-use check to ensure the correct functioning of anesthetic equipment is essential to patient safety. Failure to check anesthesia equipment prior to use can lead to patient injury or "near misses."[101,102] Based on a retrospective incident analysis of 668 reported incidents, Marcus reported a total of nearly 18% of in-theater incidents in pediatric anesthesia resulted from the failure to check.[102] More recent generations of anesthesia machines have internal computers that can conduct checks of many aspects of machine functioning and alert the anesthesia professional to problems. However, the authors have observed in simulations of embedded machine problems or external equipment faults (e.g., nitrous oxide vs. oxygen swap) that anesthesia professionals may lack a complete understanding of these systems.

In the United States an updated machine checklist was released by the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) in 2008.[103] Because no specific checkout recommendation could be applicable to all modern anesthesia delivery systems and to all anesthetizing locations, the latest recommendation is based on a set of design guidelines for the pre-anesthetic checkout and provides samples of checkout procedures (available at: www.asahq.org/resources/clinical-information/2008-asa-recommendations-for-pre-anesthesia-checkout). The 2008 pre-use anesthesia apparatus checkout recommendation (AACR) contains a list of 15 separate items that should be checked at the beginning of each day (preoperative check) or whenever a machine is moved, serviced, or the vaporizers changed. Eight of these items should be checked prior to each procedure (preinduction check). Some of the steps may be already part of an automated manufacturer's checkout process in the anesthesia machine; others need to be performed individually. Feldman and associates state:

> *"Following these checklists will typically require <5 minutes at the beginning of the day, and <2 minutes between cases, but will provide you with the confidence that the machine will be able to provide all essential life support functions before you begin a case." (p. 6)*[104]

In 2012, the Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (AAGBI) released a new safety guideline on checking anesthesia equipment that also includes, but is not limited to, the pre-use checkout of the anesthetic machine (available at: https://www.aagbi.org/sites/default/files/checking_anaesthetic_equipment_2012.pdf).[105] Rather recently revised guidelines on pre-use checking of the anesthetic equipment including the anesthesia workstation have been published by the Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists (ANZCA)[106] in 2014 and by the Canadian Anesthesiologists' Society (CAS)[107] in 2016.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

There are numerous checkout checklists available. A serious patient safety issue is the non-adherence to standard protocols. The anesthetic checkout of equipment is a method of systematically ensuring the anesthetic professional executes a thorough check of the anesthetic equipment. All professionals should therefore use it as a standard practice for checking the anesthetic machine to provide the best and safest patient care. The implementation of a checklist is an organizational process that needs systematic implementation and, optimally, user training.

COGNITIVE TASKS OF ADMINISTERING ANESTHESIA AND RELATED VULNERABILITIES

The observable tasks do not tell the whole story of what the anesthesia professional is doing. Even when the anesthesia professional appears idle, most of the time mental activity is ongoing. Several investigators have written about the cognitive elements in anesthesiology.[91,108-111] Of those errors made, cognitive errors and cognitive biases in anesthesiology are common and pose a threat to patient safety.[61,62,102] In the following section, (1) the cognitive tasks of dynamic decision making and situation awareness are described and summarized in the anesthesia professional's core cognitive process model; (2) subsequently, the management and coordination of the core cognitive process model are discussed in this section; and (3) several methodologies to measure cognitive workload are touched on.

Introduction of the Anesthesia Professional's Core Cognitive Process Model

Besides the constant check whether anticipated milestones of the anesthetic regimen are achieved and the constant check of incoming data streams, the anesthesia professional must also react to a large number of contingencies, some of which can be predicted in advance based on the patient's history and the type of surgery, whereas others cannot. If so, the existing plan may have to be reactively modified.

Different aspects of decision making and situation awareness are summarized in the anesthesia professional's core cognitive process model. The model was developed by David Gaba and draws heavily on the work of a number of other investigators who studied human performance in a variety of complex, dynamic worlds.[91,112-114] It is described in detail as a framework for understanding the empiric data, and provides a vocabulary for discussing the elements of both successful and unsuccessful performance by anesthesia professionals.

The entire core process model, shown in Fig. 6.1, depicts the anesthesia professional as working at five different interacting cognitive levels (resource management level,

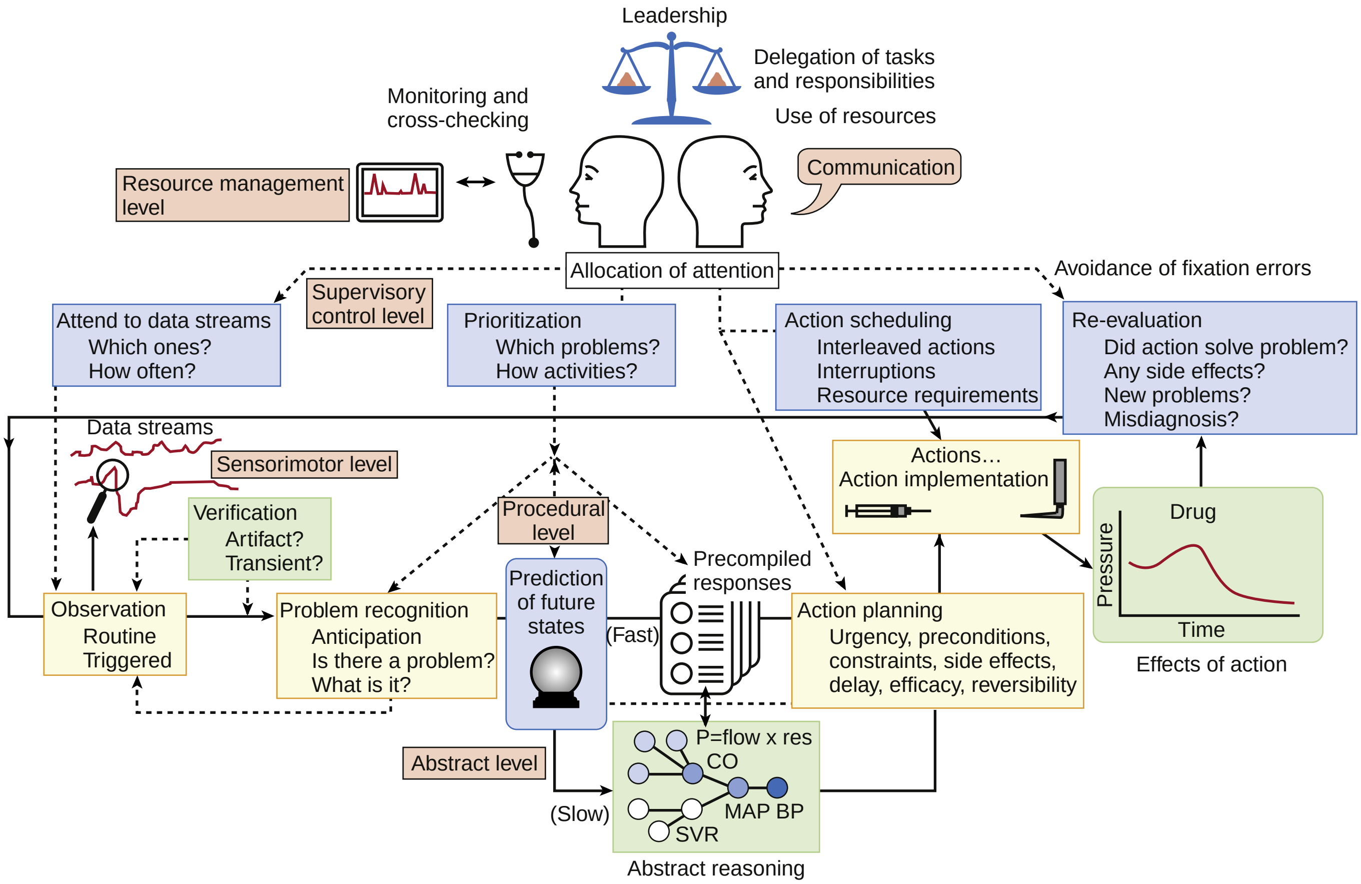

Leadership
Delegation of tasks and responsibilities
Use of resources
Monitoring and cross-checking
Resource management level
Communication
Allocation of attention
Avoidance of fixation errors
Supervisory control level
Attend to data streams
Which ones?
How often?
Prioritization
Which problems?
How activities?
Action scheduling
Interleaved actions
Interruptions
Resource requirements
Re-evaluation
Did action solve problem?
Any side effects?
New problems?
Misdiagnosis?
Data streams
Sensorimotor level
Actions…
Action implementation
Procedural level
Verification
Artifact?
Transient?
Drug
Pressure
Time
Effects of action
Prediction of future states
Precompiled responses
Observation
Routine
Triggered
Problem recognition
Anticipation
Is there a problem?
What is it?
(Fast)
Action planning
Urgency, preconditions, constraints, side effects, delay, efficacy, reversibility
P=flow x res
CO
MAP BP
SVR
Abstract level
(Slow)
Abstract reasoning

Fig. 6.1 Core cognitive process model of the anesthetist's complex real-time problem-solving behavior (see text for detailed description). Five levels of cognition operate in parallel. The core process involves a main loop (solid arrows) of observation, decision, action, and reevaluation. The core process is managed by two levels of metacognition that involve a second, higher-level loop (both above the core process): supervisor control (allocation of attention) and resource management. Each component of the model requires different cognitive skills. Each component is vulnerable to a different set of performance failures or errors. *BP*, Blood pressure; *CO*, cardiac output; *MAP*, mean arterial pressure; *SVR*, systematic vascular resistance. (From Gaba DM, Fish KJ, Howard SK. *Crisis Management in Anesthesiology*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1994.)

BOX 6.1 Elements of the Core Cognitive Process of an Anesthesiologist

1. Observation
2. Verification
3. Problem recognition
4. Prediction of future states
5. Decision making
    a. Application of precompiled responses (recognition-primed decision making)
    b. Decision making using heuristics and probability
    c. Decision making including abstract reasoning
6. Action implementation
7. Reevaluation (avoiding fixation errors)
8. Start again with 1 (loop continues)

procedural level, communication level, abstract reasoning level, supervisory control level) to implement and control a core process of observation, verification, problem recognition, prediction of future states, decision making, action, and reevaluation (Box 6.1). The core process must then be integrated with the behavior of other team members and with the constraints of the work environment. Expert performance in anesthesia involves these features in a repeated loop of the different steps. Errors can occur at each step in this process.

The division of mental activities into levels follows the work of Rasmussen and Reason et al..[113,115] Having multiple levels supports the concepts of parallel processing (performing more than one task at a time but working on different levels of mental activity) and multitasking/multiplexing (performing only one task at a time but switching very rapidly from one task to another), as shown in several task analysis studies.[64,67,89] Table 6.1 gives an overview and a brief explanation of the different mental activity levels.

At the sensorimotor level, activities involving sensory perception or motor actions take place with minimal conscious control; they are smooth, practiced, and highly integrated patterns of behavior. At the procedural level, the anesthesia professional performs regular routines in a familiar work situation. These routines have been derived and internalized from training and from previous work episodes. A level of abstract reasoning is used during preoperative planning, and intraoperatively it is used in unfamiliar situations for which no well-practiced expertise or routine is available from previous encounters. Rasmussen's model[113] was extended by the explicit addition of two additional levels of mental activity—the supervisory and the resource management level—that provide for dynamic adaptation of the anesthesia professional's own thought processes. Supervisory control is concerned with dynamically allocating finite

TABLE 6.1 Levels of Mental Activity

Level of Control	Explanation	Comments
Resource management level	Command and control of all resources, including teamwork and communication	Incident analysis shows a huge contribution of lack of resource management and communication skills to the development of incidents and accidents; the importance of these factors is reflected in the ACRM principles and simulation training courses (see Chapter 7)
Supervisory control level	Metacognition: thinking about thinking	Dynamic adaptation of the thought process, decision making (e.g., avoiding fixation errors), scheduling, and remembering actions (e.g., prospective memory tasks)
Abstract reasoning level	Use of fundamental medical knowledge, search for high-level analogies, deductive reasoning	Often in parallel with other levels; in emergency situations often too slow and too sensitive to distractions in high-workload situations
Procedural level	Precompiled responses, following algorithms, heuristics, "reflexes"	Recognition-primed decision making—experts are more often on this level; special errors may occur as a result of not checking for the appropriateness of the "procedure"; less experienced personnel may misuse this level for ill-considered, unadapted "cookbook medicine"
Sensorimotor level	Use of all senses and manual actions; "feeling, doing, hearing"; sometimes subconscious control of actions	Experts perform smooth action sequences and control their actions by direct feedback from their senses (e.g., action sequences of placing an intravenous line or endotracheal intubation; skill-based errors such as slips and lapses may occur)

ACRM, Anesthesia crisis resource management.

attention between routine and non-routine actions, among multiple problems or themes, and among the five cognitive levels. Attention is such a scarce resource, therefore its allocation is extremely important in every aspect of dynamic decision making. Resource management deals with the command and control of available resources, including teamwork and communication. Expert performance in anesthesia involves these features in a repeated loop. An overview of the core cognitive process and its elements is given in Box 6.1. The elements are explained in detail in the following text sections and include (1) observation; (2) verification; (3) problem recognition; (4) prediction of future states; (5) precompiled responses; (6) action taking/action implementation; and (7) reevaluation.

Observation. Anesthesia professionals use observations to decide whether the patient's course is on track or whether a problem is occurring; this is the first step of the decision making cycle. Data are observed and transformed by interpretation into information, followed by further interpretation into meaning. Data streams typically involve direct visual, auditory, or tactile contact with the patient, the surgical field, routine electronic monitoring, special (sometimes invasive) monitoring systems, contents of suction canisters and sponges, reading of reports of laboratory test results, and communications from other personnel. Loeb showed that anesthesiologists typically observe monitors for approximately 1 to 2 seconds every 10 to 20 seconds and that it usually took several observing cycles before they detected a subtle cue on the monitor.[88] Management of rapidly changing situations requires the anesthesia professional to assess a wide variety of information sources. Because the human mind can attend closely to only one or two items at a time, the anesthesia professional's supervisory control level must decide what information to attend to and how frequently to observe it (as later shown at CRM key point 14 "Allocate attention wisely"). Constant observation and interpretation of the different information systems is executed repeatedly throughout the course of an anesthetic regimen. The plethora of simultaneous data streams in even the most routine cases is a challenge. Vigilance, defined as the capacity to *sustain* attention, plays a crucial role in the observation and detection of problems and is a necessary prerequisite for meaningful care. Vigilance can be degraded by performance-shaping factors (see later section "Performance Shaping Factors") and it can be overwhelmed by the sheer amount of information and the rapidity with which it is changing.

Verification. In the working environment of an anesthesia professional, the available, observed information is not always reliable. Most monitoring is noninvasive and indirect and is susceptible to *artifacts* (false data). Even direct clinical observations such as vision or auscultation can be ambiguous. Brief *transients* (true data of short duration) can occur that quickly correct themselves. To prevent them from skewing the decision making process and triggering precipitous actions that may have significant side effects, critical observations must be verified before the clinician can act on them. This requires the use of all available data and information and cross-checking different related data streams rather than depending solely on any single datum without sensible interpretation (as later shown in CRM key point 8 "Use all available information" and CRM key point 10 "Cross check and double check; never assume anything"). Verification uses a variety of methods, shown in Table 6.2.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Try to be sensitive to changes and do not just explain them away as normal without double-checking or using other information to determine if everything really is okay. Assume there is a big problem unless you can prove otherwise. If in doubt, it should always be assumed that the patient is at risk and that the parameter in question is real (rule out the worst case). The burden of proof is on you. Beware of too easily assuming that it is just a technical artifact.

TABLE 6.2 Methods for Verification of Critical Observations

Method	Explanation and Example
Repeating	The observation or measurement is repeated to rule out a temporary wrong value (e.g., motion artifacts during noninvasive blood pressure measurement)
Checking trend information	The short-term trend is observed for plausibility of the actual value. Trends of physiologic parameters almost always follow curves, not steps
Observing a redundant channel	An existing redundant channel is checked (e.g., invasive arterial pressure and cuff pressure are redundant, or heart rate from an ECG and pulse oximeter)
Correlating	Multiple related (but not redundant) variables are correlated to determine the plausibility of the parameter in question (e.g., if the ECG monitor shows a flat line and “asystole” but the invasive blood pressure curve shows waves)
Activating a new monitoring device	A new monitoring modality is installed (e.g., placing a pulmonary artery catheter). This also adds another parameter for the method of “correlating”
Recalibrating an instrument or testing its function	The quality and reliability of a measurement are checked, and its function is tested (e.g., if the CO_2 detector shows no values, the anesthetist can exhale through it to see whether the device works). Observation of redundant channels can also help verify a value (see above)
Replacing an instrument	If doubt exists about the function of a device, an entirely new instrument or an alternative backup device may be installed
Asking for help	If the decision on the values remains unclear, help should be sought early to obtain a second opinion from other trained personnel

ECG, Electrocardiogram.

Problem Recognition. Having recognized a problem, how does the expert anesthesia professional respond? The classical paradigm of decision making involves a careful comparison of the evidence with various causal hypotheses that could explain the problem. This is followed by a careful analysis of all possible actions and solutions. This approach, although powerful, is relatively slow and does not work well with ambiguous or scanty evidence. Many perioperative problems faced by anesthesia professionals require quick action under uncertainty[116,117] to prevent a rapid cascade to a catastrophic adverse outcome, and solution of these problems through formal deductive reasoning from first principles is just too slow. The process of problem recognition is a central feature of several theories of cognition in complex, dynamic worlds.[110,118,119] Problem recognition involves matching sets of environmental cues to patterns that are known to represent specific types of problems. Given the high uncertainty seen in anesthesia, the available information sources cannot always disclose the existence of a problem, and even if they do, they may not specify its identity or origin. Anesthesia professionals use approximation strategies to handle these ambiguous situations; psychologists term such strategies *heuristics*.[120] Stiegler and Tung give a detailed review of heuristics and other biases that affect problem recognition.[121] One heuristic is to categorize what is happening as one of several generic problems, each of which encompasses many different underlying conditions (similarity/pattern matching). Another is to gamble on a single diagnosis (frequency gambling[115]) by initially choosing the single most frequent candidate event. During preoperative planning, the anesthesia professional may adjust a mental “index of suspicion” for recognizing certain specific problems anticipated for that particular patient or surgical procedure. The anesthesia professional must also decide whether a single underlying diagnosis explains all the data or whether they could come from multiple causes. This decision is important because excessive attempts to refine the diagnosis can be very costly in terms of allocation of attention. By contrast, a premature diagnosis can lead to inadequate or erroneous treatment. The use of heuristics is typical of expert anesthesia professionals and often results in considerable time savings in dealing with problems. However, it is a double-edged sword. Both frequency gambling and inappropriate allocation of attention solely to expected problems can seriously undermine problem solving when these gambles do not pay off or are not corrected in the reevaluation process.

Many of the issues that are related to problem recognition and cognition in general are discussed in more detail in the section on decision making further below, especially when dealing with the models of System I thinking and System II thinking and of recognition-primed decision making.

Prediction of Future States. Problems must be assessed in terms of their significance for the future states of the patient.[110,118] Predicting future states based on the occurrence of seemingly trivial problems is a major part of the anticipatory behaviors that characterize expert crisis managers. Problems that are already critical or that can be predicted to evolve into critical incidents receive the highest priority (as later shown in CRM key point 15 “Set priorities dynamically”). Prediction of future states also influences action planning by defining the timeframe available for required actions. Cook and colleagues described *“going sour”* incidents in which the future state of the patient was not adequately taken into account when early manifestations of problems were apparent.[122] One of the challenges known from research in psychology is that the human mind is not very well suited to predict future states, when things are changing in a nonlinear fashion. Under such circumstances, which are common for natural systems such as the human body, the rate of change is almost invariably underestimated, and people are surprised at the outcome.[123]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Slow but steady and sustained blood loss in a child during surgery might result in few or subtle changes in hemodynamics for some time until rapid decompensation occurs. If the weak signs of the developing problem were not detected or misjudged the ensuing catastrophe may seem to have occurred suddenly. The use of a visible trend monitoring of heart rate or blood pressure over a longer period of time can help the anesthesia professional to be better aware of changes that are not readily apparent if only the last few measurements are compared.

Precompiled Responses. Once a critical event has been observed and verified the anesthesia professional needs to respond. In complex, dynamic domains, the initial responses of experts to the majority of events stem from *precompiled* rules or response plans for dealing with a recognized event.[115] This method is referred to as recognition-primed decision making,[114,124] because once the event is identified, the response is well known (see later section "Decision Making"). In the anesthesia domain, these responses are usually acquired through personal experience alone, although there is a growing realization that critical response protocols must be codified explicitly and taught systematically. Experienced anesthesia professionals have been observed to rearrange, recompile, and rehearse these responses mentally based on the patient's condition, the surgical procedure, and the problems to be expected.[125] Ideally, precompiled responses to common problems are retrieved appropriately and executed rapidly. When the exact nature of the problem is not apparent, a set of *generic* responses appropriate to the overall situation may be invoked. For example, if a problem with ventilation is detected, the anesthesia professional may switch to manual ventilation at a higher fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2) while considering further diagnostic actions. However, experiments involving simulation have demonstrated that even experienced anesthesia professionals show great variability in their use of response procedures to critical situations.[75,125-127] This finding led these investigators to target simulator-based training in the systematic training of responses to critical events.[108,128]

Even the ideal use of precompiled responses is destined to fail when the problem does not have the suspected cause or when it does not respond to the usual actions. Anesthesia cannot be administered purely by precompiled "cookbook" procedures. Abstract reasoning about the problem through the use of fundamental medical knowledge still takes place in parallel with precompiled responses, even when quick action must be taken. This seems to involve a search for high-level analogies[115] or true deductive reasoning using deep medical and technical knowledge and a thorough analysis of all possible solutions. Anesthesia professionals managing simulated crises have linked their precompiled actions to abstract medical concepts.[125]

Taking Action/Action Implementation. Anesthesiologists need to share their attention among different cognitive levels, among tasks, and often among problems. The intensive demands on the anesthesia professional's attention could easily swamp the available mental resources. Therefore, the anesthesia professional must strike a balance between acting quickly on every small perturbation (which requires a lot of attention) and adopting a more conservative "wait-and-see" attitude. This balance must be constantly shifted between these extremes as the situation changes. However, during simulated crisis situations, some practitioners showed great reluctance to switch from business as usual to emergency mode even when serious problems were detected.[75] Erring too far in the direction of wait and see is an error that can be particularly catastrophic. Preparedness for active intervention in case of dynamically changing events is a key element of an anesthesiologist's work. But how frequent is this requirement? According to the review of Wacker and Staender, adverse events in the perioperative period continue to be frequent, occur in about 30% of hospital admissions, and may be preventable in more than 50%.[129]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Once you are sure there is a big problem, it is important for the entire team to transition into emergency mode efficiently. One way of doing so is to declare the emergency out loud with appropriate force, such as: *"Ok, everybody, there's a very serious problem with the patient—probably anaphylaxis—this is a major emergency."*

At any time during an anesthetic regimen there may be multiple things to do, each of which is intrinsically appropriate, yet they cannot all be done at once. Simulation experiments have shown that anesthesia professionals sometimes have difficulty selecting, planning, and scheduling actions optimally.[75]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

It helps if team members know the actions planned and the schedule of actions preferred (referred to as shared mental models). If the anesthesia professional does not provide the information, team members should check with the anesthesiologist. It also is helpful to distribute actions with clear communicated priorities and/or timeframes (CRM principle 7: "Effective Communication", e.g., *"[Name of receiver of message], prepare xxx first, then I need xxx, and after that bring me xxx,"* or *"After you have done xxx, let's start xxx together"*, or *"In 30 minutes, please check the blood gases/blood sugar level/ etc. again…"*)

A particular hallmark of anesthesiology is that the decision maker does not just decide what action is required but is often involved directly in the implementation of actions. Executing these actions requires substantial attention and may in fact impair the anesthesia professional's mental and physical ability to perform other activities (e.g., when an action requires a sterile procedure). This is particularly an issue when other tasks have been interrupted or temporarily suspended. *Prospective memory,*[130-134] one's ability to remember in the future to perform an action (i.e., to complete a task) can be easily disrupted. In addition, anesthesia professionals engaged in a manual procedure are strongly constrained from performing other manual tasks or from maintaining awareness of incoming information.

Reevaluation. In order to successfully solve dynamic problems and to cope with the rapid changes and profound diagnostic and therapeutic uncertainties seen during anesthesia, the core process must include repetitive reevaluation of the situation. Thus, the reevaluation step, initiated by the supervisory control level, returns the anesthesia professional to the observation phase, but with specific assessments in mind (see also CRM key point 12, "Reevaluate repeatedly"). Only by frequently reassessing the situation can the anesthesia professional adapt to dynamic processes, since the initial diagnosis and situation assessment can be incorrect. Even actions that are appropriate to the problem are not always successful.

BOX 6.2 Reevaluation Questions—Maintaining Situation Awareness

- Did the actions have any effect (e.g., did the drug reach the patient?)?
- Is the problem getting better, or is it getting worse?
- Are there any side effects resulting from previous actions?
- Are there any other problems or new problems that were missed before?
- Was the initial situation assessment/diagnosis correct?
- What further developments can be expected in the (near) future?

The process of continually updating the assessment of the situation and monitoring the efficacy of chosen actions is termed *situation awareness*.[118,119] Situation awareness is a very interesting and important topic in analyzing performance and reasons for errors[110,135,136] and is discussed in detail in a later section. Box 6.2 gives examples of reevaluation questions in order to maintain situation awareness.

Faulty reevaluation, inadequate adaptation of the plan, or loss of situation awareness can result in a type of human error termed *fixation error*.[137,138] Fixation errors have been described in responses of professionals to abnormal situations.[125,126,137-139] Avoiding and recognizing fixation errors in the field of anesthesia is covered more in detail in section "Introduction of the 15 Crisis Resource Management Key Principles."

Management and Coordination of the Core Cognitive Process: Supervisory Control and Resource Management

Anesthesia professionals' abilities to adapt their own thinking (metacognition—thinking about thinking) through supervisory control and resource management are key components of dynamic decision making and therefore of crisis management.

Supervisory Control. The supervisory control allocates the scarce resource of attention during multitasking, and oversees and modulates the core process. For example, determining the frequency of observation of different data streams, prioritizing diagnostic and therapeutic alternatives, actively managing workload, prioritizing and scheduling actions. Supervisory control actively manages the workload by (1) avoiding high-workload situations by anticipation and planning, (2) distributing workload over time or (3) over personnel, (4) changing the nature of the task to reduce work, or (5) minimizing distraction. More details regarding the active management of workload are touched on in the later section on CRM key point 5 "Distribute the Workload."

Resource Management. The highest layer of metacognition and control is known as resource management—the ability to command and control all the resources at hand to care for the patient and to respond to problems. This involves translating the knowledge of what needs to be done into effective team activity by taking into account the limitations of the complex and often ill-structured perioperative domain. Resources include personnel, equipment, and supplies, both in the immediate vicinity and, when necessary, throughout the various levels of the organization. Resource management explicitly demands teamwork and crew coordination. It is not enough for the anesthesia professional to know what to do or even to be able to do each task alone. Only so much can be accomplished in a given time, and some tasks can be performed only by other skilled personnel (e.g., catheterization lab). A key responsibility of the anesthesia professional is to mobilize needed resources and to distribute the relevant goals and tasks among those available. The details of this critical function are described in the section on "Crisis Resource Management."

ANESTHESIA PROFESSIONAL'S WORKLOAD AND METHODOLOGIES TO MEASURE IT

Most anesthesia professionals have significant other responsibilities in addition to the manual, cognitive, and behavioral duties described above, for example in administration, supervision, or teaching. Depending on the task, the task density, the individual's experience and skill, the patient's state, and the given circumstances (production pressure, staff availability, noise, light, space, team, etc.), the workload of the anesthesia professional can change at any time during an anesthetic regimen. Cognitive resources are diminished when the workload is heavy (i.e., during task dense phases like induction, emergence, or during an emergency), leading to lower levels of performance,[76,127] increased response time, [93] decreased vigilance,[90,92] and greater risk of errors.

The concept of workload is tricky to define. Hart and Staveland[140] describe it as follows: *"Workload is not an inherent property, but rather emerges from the interaction between the requirements of a task, the circumstances under which it is performed, and the skills, behaviors, and perceptions of the operator"* (p. 140). Psychology literature suggests that emotions during highly demanding activities impair cognitive processing efficiency.[141] Task analysis studies as described earlier and task (action) density studies (see later) give insights into several aspects of workload, especially facilitating workload measurements by identifying the individual work components or subtasks to be measured. However, those kind of studies do not necessarily give insight into the performance shaping aspects of workload.

Methods to measure workload include task performance via observation, subjective assessments, and physiological measures. They are described below. For a more comprehensive review, see, for example, Leedal and Smith, [142] and Byrne.[143]

Primary Task Performance. The primary task performance measure assesses the subject's performance on standard work tasks (e.g., cases seen, knots tied, etc.) as they are made progressively more difficult by increasing the number of tasks, task density, or task complexity. At first, the subject is able to keep up with the increasing task load, but at some point, the workload exceeds the ability to manage it, and performance on the standard tasks decreases.

Secondary Task Probing. Secondary task probing tests the subject with a minimally intrusive secondary task that is added to the primary work tasks. The secondary task is a simple one for which performance can be objectively measured. Reaction time, finger tapping, mental arithmetic and a vibrotactile device have for example been used for this technique as a secondary task. The anesthesia professional is instructed that the primary tasks of patient care take absolute precedence over the secondary task. Therefore, assuming that the secondary task requires some of the same mental resources as the primary task, the performance of the anesthesiologist on the secondary task is an indirect reflection of the spare capacity available to deal with it: the greater the spare capacity, the lower the primary workload. Depending on the secondary task response channels (manual, voice, gesture, multiple ways) there can exist channel interference. Controversy exists about whether these probes measure "vigilance" or "workload," although the same techniques probably measure both aspects of performance. When probes occur infrequently, are subtle, have multiple response channels, and are performed with a low level of existing workload, they are more likely to measure vigilance; when they are frequent, readily detectable, require a manual response, and are performed during a high-workload period, they probably are more indicative of spare capacity and workload.

Subjective Measures. In subjective measures, individuals are asked, most commonly in retrospect but sometimes in real time, how much load they were or are under during actual work situations. A common and validated form to assess subjective workload is the NASA TLX form.[140] Subjective measures usually complement objective measurements of external observations, since an anesthesia professional may subjectively underestimate the workload in settings in which objective measurements demonstrate a marked reduction in spare capacity.

Physiologic Measures. The final set of techniques for assessing workload consists of physiologic measures. Visual or auditory evoked potentials have been used successfully to assess mental workload, but this technique can be used only in a static laboratory environment. Heart rate (especially certain aspects of heart rate variability) and blood pressure are other physiologic measures that have been used, but there are challenges in reliable interpretation.

ASSESSING THE PERFORMANCE OF ANESTHESIA PROFESSIONALS

Over the years several study designs investigating manual (i.e., technical aspects of a procedure), cognitive (i.e., dynamic decision making, situation awareness, vigilance) and behavioral/nontechnical (i.e., communication, teamwork, leadership) tasks were used to assess the performance of anesthesiologists. In this section, studies with special focus on anesthesia professional's performance about action density, work experience, teaching/delegation/supervision activity, and critical incidents/emergency treatment are presented. Most of the studies were performed in a simulated medical environment.

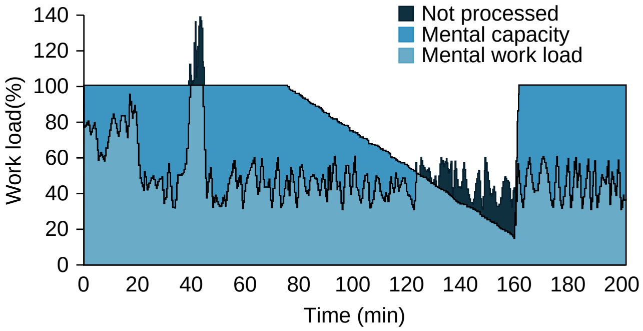


Fig. 6.2 Illustration of how mental workload for the individual and the team may vary during anesthesia. Time is shown on the x-axis. Total workload is shown on the y-axis. During the first 20 minutes of anesthesia induction the workload is high, but does not exceed mental capacity. Then, during the first minutes of maintenance the workload drops. At 35 minutes a crisis leads to a sudden increase in workload, which exceeds mental capacity. As shown, during this time certain information is not processed. Such a sudden overload is a typical feature of critical incidents, known in aviation as "maxing out." Thereafter, the workload of the maintenance phase drops again. But at the same time, after around 80 minutes in the case, the anesthesia professional becomes progressively more tired, resulting in less mental capacity available. So between 120 and 160 minutes workload again exceeds mental capacity and information is not processed. Finally, the anesthesiologist is roused after 160 minutes and workload again lies within capacity until the end of the case. (Figure based on the publication of Byrne A. Measurement of mental workload in clinical medicine: a review study. *Anesth Pain Med.* 2011;1(2):90–94.)

Because much of the more recent literature recapitulates findings of the pioneering studies, in this chapter those initial studies are used but the reader also is referred to newer, selected studies, without providing an exhaustive list.[6-8,68,73,74,76,144-149] The latest, large-scale study concerning the performance of anesthesiologists was published by Weinger and co-workers in 2017, examining the performance of board-certified anesthesiologists during four emergency cases.[75] The study is also presented in detail below.

A broader view on general human performance aspects related to anesthesia can be found in the next sections on "human performance, human factors and nontechnical skills" and "system thinking."

Performance as a function of task density

It is generally accepted that there are limits on human ability to process information, and that information overload can lead to poor performance.[150] For example, many people will have experienced the difficulties of simultaneously trying to drive, navigate, read road signs, and listen to passengers. However, the work domain of anesthesia oftentimes seems to require exactly this kind of task density (Fig. 6.2). An interdisciplinary research group performed several task analysis studies, which allowed the analysis of multiple parallel and overlapping actions (action/task density).[89] Figs. 6.3 and 6.4 show examples of observations of 24 real OR studies. The observation data contain many short-term fluctuations *(dots)*; the moving average of action density of the previous 5 minutes was charted as well *(line)*. Fig. 6.3 shows a complete anesthesia procedure with increases in action density during induction and emergence from anesthesia. Fig. 6.4 shows two final phases of cardiac cases

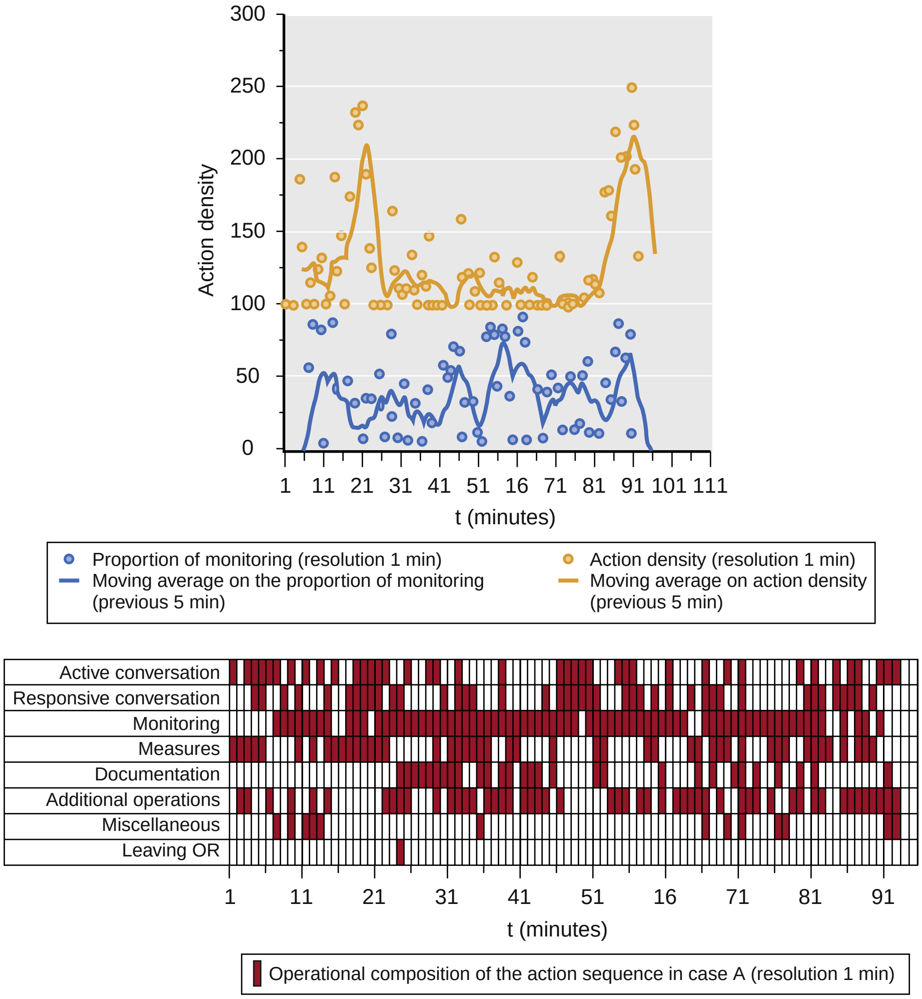


Fig. 6.3 Action density diagram illustrating the derived parameter "action density" from induction of anesthesia to emergence in a real anesthetic case. The *yellow line* in the graph shows the overall action density and the *dots* show the moving average of the density. The *blue line* shows the contribution of one task group, "monitoring," as an example. The table in the lower graph shows the composition of the data for all eight task groups from the same case. *OR,* Operating room.

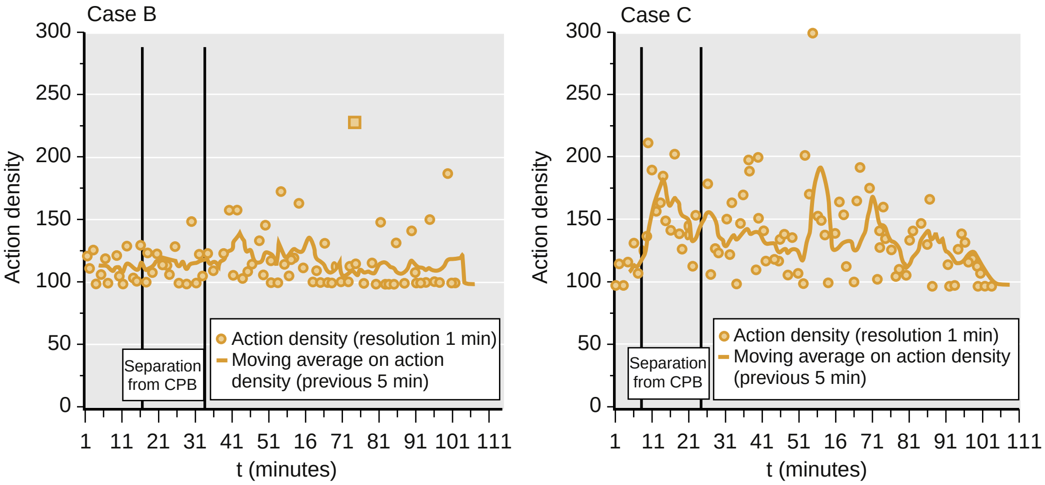


Fig. 6.4 Action density during separation from cardiopulmonary bypass without and with complications. The graph on the *left* is the density diagram of an uncomplicated case (case B) with a "flat" action density diagram during (between the two *vertical lines)* and after separation from cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB). In contrast, case C, shown in the graph on the *right,* had a complicated weaning from CPB; a very high action density is followed by an elevated density with further peaks after separation.

involving cardiopulmonary bypass. The described task analysis technique was also used to study action sequences in simulated cases and compare them with findings in the real OR to demonstrate and evaluate the ecologic validity of simulators (see Chapter 7).[64,89] Findings indicated that as the density of tasks per unit time increased, the dwell time on each task decreased, and vice versa. This finding has important implications for how anesthesia professionals allocate their attention.

Another interesting aspect in this respect is the hypothesis that the mental workload of novices may be lower than that of more experienced staff because they have yet to appreciate the difficulties facing them; this is termed unconscious incompetence.[151]

Xiao and colleagues[70] used simulations to investigate the dimensions of task complexity and their impact on crisis activities and team processes in the trauma room. They identified four components of complexity that affected team coordination in different ways. Multiple concurrent tasks led to goal conflict, task interference, and competition for access to the patient. Uncertainty regarding the case led to differences in opinion when interpreting information and difficulties when trying to anticipate the actions of other team members. The use of contingency plans caused difficulty in knowing when to switch tasks and how then to reallocate activities. Finally, a high workload caused procedures to be compressed and this deviation from normal work further increased the complexity of the situation. They suggested training in explicit communication to meet the challenges of task complexity.

Performance as a Function of Teaching, Delegation, and Supervision

Teaching. Close interaction of experienced anesthesia professionals with inexperienced clinical trainees during actual surgical procedures is a standard approach to training. It can be hypothesized that teaching adds to the workload of the more experienced care provider who is simultaneously responsible for safe and efficient anesthesia care during the procedure. Weinger and co-workers[92] found that teaching teams, involving one-to-one supervision of fourth-year medical students or first-month anesthesia residents by an attending anesthesiologist, had significantly slower response times to a warning light than non-teaching teams of attending(s) of similar experience. Response latency was highest during induction and emergence. This vigilance test was also a procedural (performance) workload assessment measure indicating increased workload and reduced spare capacity. They also found that workload density was significantly increased for teaching as opposed to non-teaching teams. In sum, intraoperative teaching increased workload and decreased vigilance, suggesting the need for caution when educating during patient care.

Delegation and Supervision. Experience suggests that the effect of delegation on workload varies depending on the nature of the task and how confident the delegating anesthesia professional feels about the capability of the person to whom the task is assigned. Delegation must be guided by the supervisor's situation awareness and overall ability to process information on the patients' condition. Several further aspects are presented in the work of Leedal and Smith.[142]

Performance as a Function of Experience

Routine Events. Novice trainee anesthesia professionals were found to perform many of the same tasks as do more experienced personnel at specific phases of an anesthetic regimen, but take longer over tasks, show longer latency of response, and greater task workload than third-year trainees and experienced nurse anesthetists.[90] While task density was generally highest for both subject groups in the period up to, during, and immediately after intubation, the more experienced trainees had higher task densities than the novices, suggesting greater competence among the former in carrying out multiple tasks in a short period of time. Those findings are in line with other studies, including the study of Weinger and associates[67] that evaluated the mean response time of pressing a buzzer at the flashing of a red light (secondary task). The response time was markedly less than 60 seconds for experienced subjects in both the induction and post induction (maintenance) phases, but it was much higher for novice residents during the induction phase. One explanation for those findings may be that the reduction of workload depends partly on the degree to which tasks can become routine, thus freeing mental resources for other tasks. Leedal and Smith conclude concerning this matter in their review: *"Experienced staff appear to show 'spare capacity' in performance during routine cases, which we suggest allows them an attentional 'safety margin' should adverse events occur"* (p. 708) [142]

In contrast, a more recent study presented by Byrne and co-workers found there was limited evidence of a relationship between workload and experience.[152]

Another recent finding indicates that more experienced anesthesia teams may be more likely to attempt to coordinate implicitly, without much overt communication, which makes them more reliant on accurate and shared understandings of the task and their teamwork.[153]

Novice residents also spent more time speaking to their attending staff (11% of preintubation time) than did experienced residents or CRNAs.[90] Experienced personnel observed the surgical field more than did the novices. Novices did take longer to complete patient preparation and induction of anesthesia, but it appeared that some of the extra time taken by novices working under supervision was offset by the efficiency of offloading other concurrent tasks to the attending anesthesiologist such that preintubation time was increased by only 6 minutes for novices.

Critical Events/Emergencies. Schulz and colleagues[97] presented data where more experienced anesthetists (>2 years work experience) increased the amount of time dedicated to manual tasks from 21% to 25% during critical incidents, whereas the less experienced decreased from 20% to 14%. The less experienced anesthesia providers spend more time on monitoring tasks.

A study by Byrne and Jones [76] looked at differences in the performance of experienced and less experienced anesthesia professionals during 180 simulated anesthesia emergency scenarios. The results showed significant differences only between the first and second year. As seen in other studies, significant errors occurred at all levels of experience,[75,76,125,126] and most of the anesthesia professionals deviated from established guidelines.[75,76,154]

A classic simulation study by DeAnda and Gaba investigated the response of anesthesia trainees and experienced anesthesia faculty and private practitioners to six preplanned critical incidents of differing type and severity.[126,155] The incidents included (1) endobronchial intubation (EI) resulting from surgical manipulation of the tube; (2) occlusion of intravenous (IV) tubing; (3) atrial fibrillation (AF) with a rapid ventricular response and hypotension; (4) airway disconnection between the endotracheal tube and the breathing circuit; (5) breathing hoses too short to turn the table 180 degrees, as requested by the surgeon; and (6) ventricular tachycardia or fibrillation. For each incident, considerable interindividual variability was found in detection and correction times, in information sources used, and in actions taken. The average performance of the anesthesia professionals tended to improve with experience, although this varied by incident. The performance of the experienced groups was not better than that of the second-year residents (who were in their final year of training at that time). Many (but not all) novice residents performed indistinguishably from more experienced subjects. Each experience group contained some who required excessive time to solve the problem or who never solved it. In each experience group at least one individual made major errors that could have had a substantial negative impact on a patient's clinical outcome. For example, one faculty member never used electrical countershock to treat ventricular fibrillation. One private practitioner treated the EI as though it were "bronchospasm" and never assessed the symmetry of ventilation. One resident never found the airway disconnection. The elements of suboptimal performance were both technical and cognitive. Technical problems included choosing defibrillation energies appropriate for internal paddles when using external paddles, ampule swap, and failure to inflate the endotracheal tube cuff that resulted in a leak. Cognitive problems included failure to allocate attention to the most critical problems and fixation errors.

Schwid and O'Donnell[125] performed an experiment similar to those of DeAnda and Gaba and received similar results. After working on several practice cases without critical incidents, each subject was asked to manage 3 or 4 cases involving a total of 4 serious critical events (esophageal intubation, myocardial ischemia, anaphylaxis, and cardiac arrest). The anesthesiologists studied had varying experience levels. Significant errors in diagnosis or treatment were made in every experience group. The errors occurred in both diagnosis of problems and in deciding on and implementing appropriate treatment. For example, 60% of subjects did not make the diagnosis of anaphylaxis despite available information on heart rate, blood pressure, wheezing, increased peak inspiratory pressure, and the presence of a rash. In managing myocardial ischemia, multiple failures occurred. 30% of subjects did not compensate for severe abnormalities while considering diagnostic maneuvers. Fixation errors in which initial diagnoses and plans were never revised were frequent, even when they were clearly wrong.

Independent from professionals' experience, Howard and colleagues[127] found a substantial incidence of difficulties during simulated emergencies: managing multiple problems simultaneously, applying attention to the most critical needs, acting as team leader, communicating with personnel, and using all available OR resources to best advantage. Analysis of videotaped trauma and resuscitation cases has revealed inadequacies in the availability and arrangement of monitoring equipment, as well as nonexistent or ambiguous communication.[69] Byrne and Jones [76] evaluated the performance of anesthetists during nine emergency cases, showing that serious errors in both diagnosis and treatment were made and accepted treatment guidelines were not followed. Diagnosis of several common critical incidents, for example, anaphylaxis, was hard to name.[74,125] As described earlier, once diagnosed, no structured plans or algorithms were used.[73,74]

These classic studies date back 25 years or more, yet the most recent studies [75,156] remain completely consistent with older studies. In the 2017 Weinger and colleagues publication, a total of 263 consenting U.S. board-certified anesthesiologists (BCAs—i.e., physicians) participated in two, 20-minute, standardized, high-fidelity simulation scenarios of unanticipated acute events during existing Maintenance of Certification in Anesthesiology simulation courses. The scenarios were from among the following: (1) local anesthetic systemic toxicity with hemodynamic collapse; (2) hemorrhagic shock due to hidden retroperitoneal bleeding during laparoscopy; (3) malignant hyperthermia presenting in the postanesthesia care unit; and (4) acute onset of AF with hemodynamic instability during laparotomy followed by ST elevation myocardial infarction. Performance measurement rubrics were established in advance: a scoresheet of critical clinical performance elements, behavioral anchored ordinal scales of four nontechnical skills, ordinal scales for overall individual and team technical performance and nontechnical performance, and a binary rating as to whether performance met or exceeded that expected of a BCA. The results showed that critical clinical performance elements were commonly omitted, roughly in four broad areas of crisis management, failures to: (1) escalate therapy where first-line options did not work (e.g., using epinephrine or vasopressin when phenylephrine, ephedrine, or fluids did not sufficiently correct hypotension); (2) use available resources (e.g., calling for help when conditions have deteriorated appreciably); (3) speak up and engage other team members, especially when action by them was required (e.g., asking the surgeon to change the surgical approach when it is essential to effective treatment); and (4) follow evidence-based guidelines (e.g., giving dantrolene to a patient with obvious MH). The performance of approximately 25% of subjects was rated in the low portion of the various technical and nontechnical 9-point ordinal scales. In about 30% of encounters, performance was rated as "below the level expected of a BCA."

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Experienced anesthetists are not immune to error. Studies show that significant errors can occur at all levels of experience. *Experience is not a substitute for excellence or expertise*, making recurrent training and continuous awareness of possible safety pitfalls important, independent of the experience level.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Do not think this cannot happen to you… In her paper, "Lake Wobegon for anesthesia...where everyone is above average except those who aren't: variability in the management of simulated intraoperative critical incidents," McIntosh[157] discusses the applicability to anesthesiology of the pervasive human tendency to overestimate one's achievements and capabilities in relation to others. Such effects have been documented for drivers, CEOs, stock market analysts, college students, parents, and state education officials, among others.[158] Indeed we may all be living in Lake Wobegon in terms of evaluating our own abilities to manage critical events.

What are the practical implications of performance assessment in Anesthesia?

In summary, simulation studies on performance all showed appreciable performance gaps of anesthesia professionals managing critical incidents and emergencies. The results expand on the few comparable data on real cases.[159-163] Overall, the surprisingly high frequency of mediocre performance represents a patient safety concern for the field of anesthesiology, emphasizing the need for anesthesia professionals and their organizations to:

- be aware of performance shortcomings and pitfalls in everyday work
- regard the knowledge and training of performance-enhancing strategies as one of the core competencies
- focus on the application of and adherence to evidence-based practice guidelines
- focus on the efficient management of the environment (team, resources, equipment, etc.)
- implement case management skills in the education, training, and re-certification, that go beyond only medical/technical knowledge and skill

BENEFITS AND CHALLENGES OF ASSESSING PERFORMANCE

Benefits of the Scientific Study of Tasks and Performance in Anesthesia

The generation of an improved understanding of the human performance of anesthesia professionals can help them to provide patient care more safely, in a wider variety of clinical situations, with greater efficiency, and with increased satisfaction to both patients and practitioners. The possible benefits of studying human performance include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Improved clinical performance: Behavior observation helps to identify which processes and behaviors are associated with effective and safe performance.[63,83,164] Thus, it provides us with new knowledge on what effective teams do differently compared with ineffective teams and how they do it.[165] Compared with self-reports, behavior observation allows for measuring actual team-level phenomena and dynamics that teams may not even be aware of and that may unfold over time.[166]
2. Improved operational protocols: The way in which individuals conduct anesthesia is based, in part, on knowing the limits of their performance envelope. Anesthetic techniques and OR practices should draw on anesthesia professionals' abilities and should mitigate their weaknesses.
3. Enhanced clinical education and training of anesthesia professionals: Understanding the required performance characteristics and inherent human limitations will lead to improved training, which will most fully develop the strengths and counter the existing vulnerabilities of the anesthesia professional. Identification of performance gaps informs opportunities for improvement.[75] Identification of expert knowledge through elicitation of unaware expertise behavior creates educational gain.[167] Taking this knowledge into action should make patient care safer, less stressful, and more efficient.
4. A more effective work environment: Anesthesia professionals now perform their tasks by using an array of technologies, many of which have not been designed to support the anesthesia professional's work optimally. By understanding the relevant tasks and performance requirements, the workspace and tools could be improved for better support of the most difficult tasks. This, too, can lead to greater safety and to greater efficiency and work satisfaction.
5. A more efficient organizational system: Anesthesiology is embedded within a larger system of organized medical care that involves interactions among numerous people, institutions, organizations, and professional domains. Understanding how the anesthesia professional's work relates to the larger system may enable the development of more rational and efficient flow of information and organizational control.
6. A more rational view of professional work and legal responsibility: Modern health care, especially in the United States, is strongly influenced by medicolegal concerns. The litigation system has a major selection bias in that every case that comes before it involves an adverse outcome for a patient. The duty of the practitioner is to render care as a reasonable and prudent specialist in the area of anesthesia. What is reasonable and prudent? What type of performance is to be expected from appropriately trained human beings in a complex and dynamic environment? By understanding human performance, it may be possible to generate a more rational view of what is and is not within the standard of care.

Challenges of the Scientific Study of Tasks and Performance in Anesthesia

Study of human performance involves research paradigms different from those typically used in the science of anesthesia. Many obstacles exist to obtaining valid data on human performance. There are no animal models for expert human performance and no Sprague-Dawley anesthesia professionals to be studied in detail. Recruiting experienced personnel to be the subjects of study is difficult and raises issues of selection bias concerning those who do volunteer. Especially if conducted during actual patient care, investigations of human performance are strongly influenced by concerns about litigation, credentialing, and confidentiality, thus making it difficult to execute optimal studies. Furthermore, variability among individual anesthesia professionals is quite striking because different anesthesia professionals respond to the same situation in different ways, and each individual may act differently on different days or at different times of the same day. The magnitude of this intraindividual variability is often nearly the same as the interindividual variability. Another challenge is that the performance measures may not be sensitive to an increase or decrease in workload if the subject compensates through increased, or reduced, effort respectively.

Performance itself is an intuitively meaningful concept that is difficult to define precisely. No universal standards are available for the clinical decisions and actions of anesthesia professionals. They depend heavily on the context of specific situations. In addition, determining how anesthesia professionals perform their jobs, whether successfully or unsuccessfully, means delving into their mental processes. This cannot be measured easily. Experimental designs can involve artificial laboratory tasks for which performance can be objectively measured, but these tasks will then be far removed from the real world of administering anesthesia. Conversely, investigating the actual performance of trained practitioners in the real world yields primarily subjective and indirect data. Understanding the anesthesia professional's performance must be seen as analogous to solving a jigsaw puzzle, an analogy introduced by Gaba[128] and extended by McIntosh.[157] Pieces of the puzzle probably come from a variety of sources, none of which by itself captures the entire picture.

Problems faced by all investigators are the lack of an accepted standard for objective or subjective evaluation of anesthesia professional performance and the absence of an agreed-on methodology for analyzing and describing anesthesia professional performance. As one result of the divergent research landscape in human performance, the number, scope, and variety of applied behavior observation taxonomies are growing, making comparison and convergent integration of research findings difficult. Several groups were working on methodologies for evaluating technical and behavioral aspects of performance.[75,89,166,168-170]

Kolbe and colleagues[166] pointed out four methodological challenges when rating behavior. First is identifying the optimal balance between specificity versus generalizability. Researchers must decide whether to investigate processes from a general perspective using methods that capture all teamwork behaviors simultaneously or whether to focus on one single process (e.g., closed-loop communication) to explore it in detail. Second is deciding whether to rate the quality or describe the occurrence of teamwork behavior. Quality of behavior can be measured with an anchored ordinal rating scale (e.g., from excellent to poor). Or alternatively, the occurrences of particular behaviors can be measured such as when?—by whom?—to whom?, etc., delivering different results. Third is linking research findings with team training content, when no common language and no common behavioral codes, respectively, are used in research. Fourth is applying different rating systems (in different studies) without respect to the usability and the different requirements for research, training, and examination purposes.

Patient Safety on the Individual and Team Level

In earlier sections the characteristics of the complex and dynamic working environment in anesthesia were described in detail, as well as the multiple manual, behavioral, and cognitive tasks and related performance assessment studies of the anesthesia professional. Both sections illustrated several human performance and patient safety challenges that personnel face regularly. The knowledge and management of the complex work environment and the various tasks, workload, and performance pitfalls can determine the ultimate success of professionals' intervention. These human factors comprise issues related to perception, memory, problem solving, physiological rhythm, and more. This section focusses on the so-called nontechnical skills and performance-shaping factors [37,38,136,171-174] as they have the most direct practical impact for the work of anesthesia professionals.

The importance of nontechnical skills and performance-shaping factors is also in line with the performance studies of anesthesiologists mentioned earlier in this chapter.[69,70,73-76,125,127] They revealed room for improvement at any level of experience, especially in non-routine and emergency situations. Recent views on nontechnical skills emphasize their relevance also in routine situations to prevent those from becoming critical.[175] Nontechnical skills explain difficulties in applying knowledge and skills that team members possess in stressful moments in a dynamic, complex, and high-workload environment. They are related to challenges in managing and coordinating oneself (e.g., remembering to do tasks, monitoring one's own actions, acting as a team leader), the team (e.g., distributing tasks, managing conflict, sharing mental models), and the equipment (e.g., knowing the application of the equipment, understanding different use modes, troubleshooting).

Therefore, in the upcoming sections the following topics are addressed: (1) General concepts of human factors (HF) and nontechnical skills (NTS) are introduced and discussed in the larger context of human performance. Subsequently, several examples of the impact of HF/NTS are given, indicating that from a safety point of view, HFs and NTS deserve as much attention as medical knowledge [patho-] physiology, diagnosis, treatment) and practical skills, which by tradition have dominated training programs for anesthesia professionals. (2) Two sets of key elements of patient safety: first relating to individual performance (situation awareness and decision making), and second relating to team performance (communication, teamwork, and task management). (3) Additionally, individual performance-shaping factors are discussed, in particular fatigue, interruptions, distractions, and ambient noise.

HUMAN PERFORMANCE, HUMAN FACTORS, AND NONTECHNICAL SKILLS

In the literature, the interrelated terms human performance, human factors, and nontechnical skills are used in a variety of ways and sometimes even synonymously, making it difficult to classify them. They are interconnected and while several models and taxonomies exist there is not always a clear distinction between these terms and concepts. In the upcoming section the authors explain the general underlying principles and give a simplified overview of their interrelationships in order to generate a more systematic understanding of key concepts. The term human error, also used in this context occasionally, is itself a different term, almost the flipside of human factors. One might say that challenges in human factors (and other aspects) can result in human error. For the definition and classification of human error see later section on "System Thinking."

HUMAN PERFORMANCE AND HUMAN FACTORS

What are Human Factors? Human performance is shaped, positively or negatively, by different levels of so-called human factors (HF). Good HF increases and poor HF decreases human performance. The term ergonomics is also used in some contexts. A broad variety of disciplines are involved and many different topics are embraced by both terms; hence, several definitions exist. The Human Factors and Ergonomics Society defines HF as follows: *"Human factors is concerned with the application of what we know about people, their abilities, characteristics, and limitations to the design of equipment they use, environments in which they function, and jobs they perform."*[176] Catchpole and McCulloch define human factors in the medical context as: *"Enhancing clinical performance through an understanding of the effects of teamwork, tasks, equipment, workspace, culture, and organization on human behavior and abilities and application of that knowledge in clinical settings."*[177]

Different Components of Human Factors. Derived from the SEIPS model[178,179] and adapted by the authors, different components of HF are:

- the behavior of individuals and their behavior/knowledge in regard to tasks (individual level)
- the interactions with each other (team level)
- the interactions of professionals with the organizational/sociocultural conditions (organizational level)
- the interactions of professionals with the environment/workspace (environmental level) and
- the interactions of professionals with technology/equipment (technology/engineering/design level)

Those five human factor components are necessary and sufficient to describe and understand the anesthesia professional's entire work system from a HF perspective. The components interact with and influence each other, resulting in a large number of relationships between different levels. At times the components compensate each other (e.g., when professionals work faster to compensate for time pressure or when people collaborate to solve problems that are beyond an individual's abilities). Other times the components resonate with each other and amplify their effects—for the good (e.g., having the right equipment for the task at hand) or the bad (e.g., lacking resources to solve a problem). Given that this chapter cannot deal with human factors in a comprehensive way, many topics can be touched on only briefly. Although the environmental and technology levels can be important—cognition is challenged when there is a power failure or a breakdown of key clinical equipment—in this chapter the focus lies on the most important aspects of human factors directly relevant to anesthesia professionals: the individual level, team level, and organizational level.

HUMAN FACTORS AND NONTECHNICAL SKILLS

What are NonTechnical skills in comparison to Human Factors? When talking specifically about HF that are directly related to actions of a single individual and/or of a team, often this is referred to as the concept of nontechnical skills (NTS). NTS are defined as *"the cognitive, social, and personal resource skills that complement technical skills (which encompass the technical knowledge of health care and its various procedures), and contribute to safe and efficient task performance"*[11] or alternatively as *"attitudes and behaviors not directly related to the use of medical expertise, drugs, or equipment."*[171]

While some authors object to the term nontechnical skills—using a negative to describe something—others have pointed out that not only is this term in wide use already, but that actually a variety of terms involving negation are in common use in science, mathematics, and medicine. One main paper and an editorial discuss this issue.[180,181] For health care, instead of nontechnical skills, the term could also be non-medical skills. However, because of the extensive use of nontechnical skills in the literature of other industries and in health care, this chapter uses that terminology.

Different Ways to Categorize NonTechnical Skills. In general, NTS can be categorized into two broad areas: (1) *cognitive and mental skills* on the individual level, including decision making and situation awareness; and (2) *social and interpersonal skills* on the team level, including teamwork, communication, and leadership. Commercial aviation incorporated such nontechnical skills in the cockpit (later crew) resource management paradigm (CRM, 1980s and continuous later evolution) and the "NOTECHS" paradigm in the late 1990s. In anesthesiology, the anesthesia crisis resource management (ACRM) framework was introduced by Howard and co-workers in 1990[127] as an adaptation of aviation's CRM. The ACRM approach categorizes NTS based on the five key elements of communication, situation awareness, decision making, teamwork (implicitly including leadership), and task management (Fig. 6.5). The anesthesia nontechnical skills (ANTS) framework by Fletcher and colleagues was introduced in 2003; Flin and colleagues give an overview of its history, development, application, use, and emerging is issues.[182, 183] The ANTS approach typically includes the four categories of situation awareness, decision making, teamwork (explicitly including leadership), and task management. Neither of these frameworks, and indeed no usable paradigm, can capture explicitly every important aspect of HF applied to anesthesiology. For example the management of the performance-shaping factors stress and fatigue are also part of the ANTS framework, but are implicit in ACRM. Communication itself is not an explicit skill element of the ANTS framework (which assumes that communication pervades each element), whereas in ACRM it is a specific skill that needs explicit mention and training.[184] Of note, from their start in anesthesiology, nontechnical skills frameworks have been further adapted to several other medical fields, such as for surgeons and intensive care specialists.[8,11,168,169,185-188]

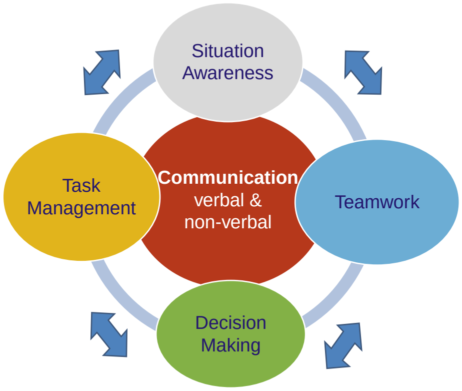


Fig. 6.5 The five main elements of Crisis Resource Management (CRM). The main elements include: Communication, situation awareness, decision making, task management, and teamwork. In this approach, effective communication is like the glue that holds all the other components together. Besides, all the components are intertwined with and related to each other, indicated by the arrows between the elements.

Assessment of NonTechnical Skills. In response to the growing acceptance of human factors and nontechnical skills influencing medical performance, several rubrics to measure NTS have been developed. Gaba and colleagues in 1998 described the direct adaptation for assessment of NTS of a set of CRM-anchored ordinal scale markers from Helmreich et al. concerning aviation.[169,189] In 2004 the ANTS framework was complemented by a behaviorally anchored rating scale in 2004.[182,183] A new set of assessment scales for four markers of NTS was introduced by Weinger and colleagues [75] in 2017 based on the fusion of aspects of a number of prior approaches.

A further, rather new approach for the assessment of nontechnical skills is the Co-ACT framework described by Kolbe and co-workers.[166] The framework serves observing coordination behavior, especially in acute care teams like anesthesia, and consists of four categories, each category obtaining three further subelements that more specifically describe the NTS: (1) *explicit action coordination* with the elements *instruction, speaking up*, and *planning*; (2) *implicit action coordination* with the elements *monitoring, talking to the room* (action-related), and *providing assistance*; (3) *explicit information coordination* with the elements *information request, information evaluation*, and *information upon request*; and (4) *implicit information coordination* with the elements *gathering information, talking to the room (information-related)*, and *information without request*.

Challenges of the Assessment of NonTechnical Skills. The psychometric qualities of measuring NTS have been assessed by the developers of the ANTS system and were considered to be of acceptable level,[182] whereas another study[190] assessed the reliability after a 1-day training for raters and concluded that reliability was poor. A study from Denmark showed good psychometric qualities.[185] Originally developed for educational purposes and used to discuss the NTS of anesthesiologists after training sessions in order to improve in NTS, Zwaan and colleagues assessed the usability and reliability for ANTS in research, finding that the ANTS system was reliable for the total score and usable to measure physicians' NTS in a research setting.[191] However, the investigators found a variation between the reliability of the different elements and recommend excluding elements in advance that are not applicable or observable in the situation of interest. It might not always be easy, however, to identify those elements that should be excluded. On the whole, the ANTS system appears to be a useful tool to enhance assessment of nontechnical skills in anesthesia and other medical fields further, and its careful derivation from an established system of nontechnical assessment in aviation (NOTECHS) may even allow some interdomain comparisons. However, more recently Watkins and colleagues directly compared ANTS with the system used in the Weinger and colleagues 2017 paper [75] and showed that ANTS was more difficult to use but that the two systems otherwise achieved equivalent assessment results.[192]

NonTechnical Skills: The Bad - The Good - The Variable. Good nontechnical skills (i.e., vigilance, efficient communication, team coordination, etc.) reduce the likelihood of active and passive errors and adverse events, and also increase human performance, whereas suboptimal NTS are expected to do the reverse. These effects are variable; for example, a person may communicate very effectively in one instance and fail to do so in the next challenging communication role.

A study from Denmark investigated the relationship between technical and nontechnical skills.[193] Twenty-five video recordings of second-year anesthesiologists managing a simulated difficult airway management scenario were rated with the ANTS instrument[185] and a score for the technical aspect for the procedure. In addition, written descriptions of the NTS performance were collected and content analyzed. The correlation between the two scores was not significant, but the content analysis comparing the NTS description in the best and poorest three scenarios identified what contributed most to good NTS. These were systematically collecting information, thinking ahead, communicating and justifying of decisions, delegating tasks, and vigilantly responding to the evolving situation. Poor NTS were related to: lack of structured approach, lack of articulating plans and decisions, poor resource and task management, lack of considering consequences of treatment, poor response to the evolving situation, and lack of leadership.

What is the Impact of Non-Technical Skills and Human Factors on Poor Performance in Medicine? The impact of poor NTS on poor human performance in the medical field cannot be overestimated. Depending on the literature, it is estimated that up to 80% of all errors in medicine can be attributed to problems with NTS and human factors.[37,38,171-174]

Even though one can argue on the one hand that due to progress in technology the findings and estimates of the pioneer study of Cooper and colleagues[37] performed in 1978 (results relating up to 80% of incidents to human factors) have been outdated for a long time, on the other hand those figures are (1) comparable to findings in other dynamic and complex work environments[171] and (2) newer studies as recent as 2015 still reconfirm those findings (references see below). In the following some illustrative studies are mentioned that link HF and safety challenges.

In 1993 an analysis of 2000 incident reports from the Australian Incident Reporting Study took place, investigating the incidents for relations to human factors and NTS.[38] In 83% of incidents, human factor elements were scored by the reporters. Even though scoring by the incident reporters might not produce results as accurate as those of a systematic scoring by human factor experts and such text descriptions are of limited value for this type of data collection, it still shows the scope of the problem—having also in mind that voluntarily reported incidents only represent the peak of an iceberg, with many incidents not reported at all.

Fletcher and colleagues published a review of studies describing the influence of nontechnical skills in anesthesia in 2002, summarizing that it is clear "*that nontechnical skills play a central role in good anesthesia practice and that a wide range of behaviors are important […] [including] monitoring, allocation of attention, planning and preparation, situation awareness, prioritization, applying predefined strategies/protocols, flexibility in decision-making, communication, and teamworking*" [p.426].[171]

As increasing evidence suggested that human factors like communication, leadership, and team interaction influence the performance of cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), Hunziker and colleagues[6] presented a study in 2010 reviewing the impact of human factors during simulation-based resuscitation scenarios. Similar to studies in real patients, simulated cardiac arrest scenarios revealed many unnecessary interruptions of CPR as well as significant delays in defibrillation—two outcome-relevant parameters. The studies showed that human factors played a major role in these shortcomings and that medical performance, at least in non-routine situations, depends among others on the quality of leadership and team-structuring.

Jones and co-workers[194] only recently systematically reviewed the literature on the impact of HFs in preventing complications in anesthesia due to poor airway management and highlighted recent national reports and guidelines, including the 4th National Audit Project (NAP4). NAP4 (2011) was the first prospective study of all major airway events occurring throughout the UK, reviewing any complications resulting from airway management that led to either death, brain damage, the need for an emergency surgical airway, unanticipated ICU admission, or prolongation of ICU stay.[173] 184 reports were reviewed. Subsequent in-depth analysis identified HFs as having been a relevant influence in every case, with a median range of 4.5 contributing HFs per case.[195] HFs in the report included for example[173]: casual attitude toward risk/overconfidence, peer tolerance of poor standards, lack of clarity in team structures, poor or dysfunctional communication including incomplete or inadequate handovers, inadequate checking procedures, failure to formulate back-up plans and discuss them with team members, failure to use available equipment, attempts to use unknown equipment in an emergency situation, heavy personal workload, lack of time to undertake thorough assessment, equipment shortage, inexperienced personnel working unsupervised, organizational cultures which induce or tolerate unsafe practices, no formalized requirement to undertake checking procedures, incompatible goals, and reluctance to analyze adverse events and learn from errors.

The Sentinel Event Report of the Joint Commission analyzed the root causes of 764 sentinel events (patient's death, loss in function, unexpected additional care and/or psychological impact) reported voluntarily in 2014.[172] Human-factor-related root causes, including among others communication and leadership, were the leading root causes of sentinel events and made up 65% of root causes. Even though the data are not specifically linked to anesthesia practice, it is very likely that there exist strong parallels.

One of the latest simulation-based studies, performed by Weinger and colleagues [75] in 2017 and explained in detail earlier (section on assessing performance, "Performance as a Function of Experience"), also shows a broad variety of human-factor-related hurdles for anesthesiologists when handling emergencies.

What are the implications of the Impact of Humand Factors and NonTechnical Skills on Human Performance?

- Balancing the importance of technical and non *technical skills during medical education and training.* While technical skills and medical knowledge have always been at the core of medical education and training, the importance of NTS has—despite long growing evidence—only recently been recognized.
- *Acknowledgement of the importance of human factors as individual and team.* One of the first steps for individuals and teams in minimizing and mitigating human frailties and strengthening human strengths—and in consequence reducing medical error and its consequences—is by acknowledging human factors as a part of human performance and thus acknowledging human limitation. The World Health Organization (WHO) states:

> *"A failure to apply human factors principles is a key aspect of most adverse events in health care. Therefore, all health-care workers need to have a basic understanding of human factors principles. Health-care workers who do not understand the basics of human factors are like infection control professionals not knowing about microbiology." (p. 111)*[196]

HUMAN FACTORS ON THE INDIVIDUAL LEVEL

This section will introduce three levels of human factors in more detail: (1) understanding the behavior of individuals (individual level), (2) the interactions between individuals (team level), and (3) their interactions with the organization (organizational level). This first section on the individual level addresses five interrelated elements: (1a) task management, (1b) situation awareness, (1c) decision making, (1d) general individual performance-shaping factors (e.g., fatigue, distractions and noise), and (1e) personal (safety) attitudes.

Task Management

According to the ANTS framework, task management is defined as (p. 8) "*skills for organizing resources and required activities to achieve goals, be they individual case plans or longer-term scheduling issues. It has four skill elements: planning and preparing; prioritizing; providing and maintaining standards; identifying and utilizing resources.*"[170]

Anesthesia professionals are often—within the operating room setting—their own phlebotomist, IV inserter, echocardiographer, pharmacist, technician, cleaner, data recorder, patient transporter, as well as performer of activities on behalf of the surgeon (e.g., manipulate the OR table, answer telephone calls, etc.) all while maintaining situation awareness, engaging in decision making, doing administrative tasks, and managing the anesthetic itself. That's a lot of activities! Task management in a team might include the delegation of tasks to appropriate personnel, using effective communication, and closing the loop, both to verify the request was received and understood and then to inform the leader that the task is done, or that there are problems.

Task density can become so high that (1) errors in tasks or their subtasks are more likely; (2) no single person can manage all the tasks alone[89] so that help from team members is needed (teamwork); and (3) tasks may be delayed by interruptions or competing demands, which then require prospective memory[130-134,197] to remember what to do in the future or to correctly resume interrupted actions.

Multitasking and Multiplexing. Sometimes multitasking—doing several things at a time—can be successful, depending on the situation and the tasks at hand. Yet professionals need to be aware that it can be unsuccessful when the situation or the tasks change. When task density becomes high, simple linear performance of tasks becomes impossible; instead more complicated processes of both multitasking and multiplexing are needed. Multitasking—trying to perform two (or more) tasks simultaneously—is frequent in hospital settings,[198] but is virtually impossible to execute if the same cognitive resources are involved. Conducting two or more relatively simple tasks is often possible, such as observing the surgical field while asking the surgeon a straightforward question. Even then there is a risk that one task will be dropped or degraded. However, adjusting an infusion pump while calculating the upcoming dose of antibiotic for an infant would be difficult to do in parallel.

In common use, the term multitasking sometimes refers specifically to media multitasking—everyday attempts to simultaneously work, listen to music, check email and text messages, and search the web. Studies[199,200] have shown that frequent media multitaskers perform worse on psychology laboratory probes of actual multitasking than those who are infrequent media multitaskers. Many suggest that true multitasking is impossible and that almost always there is a decrement of performance on some or all tasks when multitasking is attempted.

The degree to which media multitasking, or laboratory tests, relate to the kinds of multitasking performed by personnel in professional settings of many data streams and many tasks is as yet uncertain; it seems likely that in anesthesia care there are limits to what individuals can safely do on their own.

While simple multitasking in perioperative settings may work, when tasks are complex it may in fact be inefficient. Rather than conducting two (or more) activities in parallel, humans often do things sequentially but shift rapidly between items or back and forth across many simultaneous threads. If the tasks use different cognitive resources, this is referred to as multiplexing.[201] Multiplexing brings the challenges that people (1) have to refocus their concentration each time they switch and (2) are more susceptible to distractions and errors. This is especially true if the tasks at hand involve intensive real-time control as opposed to being cognitively automatic.[201] There is evidence that health care personnel are not aware of the risks of decreased performance when attempting to multitask.[202]

Douglas and co-authors recently reviewed the current literature concerning multitasking in the health care setting.[198] They suggest that multitasking typically results in increased time of task completion, increased stress, risk of memory lapses, and subsequent errors and accidents. Those performance limitations occur more often if one is forced to multitask by the environment and/or if the different tasks compete for the same local cognitive resource. Their review located only two studies on the association between multitasking and errors in the health care setting although nothing definitive was found. Executing two tasks at the same time was found to carry the risk of decreased accuracy and efficiency[203] and to have an increased reaction time to environmental stimuli.[204]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Keep focused. Instead of trying to do several things at once—and maybe none of them well—shift your attention consciously and completely from one task to the next and organize the tasks at hand according to priority. Giving your full attention to what you are doing will help you do it better, with fewer mistakes and less load on your prospective memory. Prevent or modulate avoidable distractions whenever possible.

Multitasking During Handovers?. One study observed different modes of patient handover from the OR to the postanesthesia recovery unit in six hospitals.[205] The researchers compared handovers of (1) *simultaneous* transfer of equipment and information (i.e., a nurse connecting the monitor while at the same time receiving verbal information) to (2) *sequential* transfer (equipment is first connected and lines sorted, then verbal information follows). The findings from 101 observed handovers showed that 65% of them took place simultaneously. Interestingly, simultaneous handovers were not significantly faster than sequential ones (1.8 vs. 2.0 min). In review of postoperative handovers Segall and colleagues[206] recommended: (1) standardize/structure processes (e.g., through the use of checklists and protocols); (2) complete urgent clinical tasks before the information transfer; (3) allow only patient-specific discussions during verbal handovers; (4) require that all relevant team members be present; and (5) provide training in team skills and communication. More information on handoffs is given in the later section on "Communication."

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

The recommendations given above are helpful for safe postoperative handovers. Another handover type occurs when one anesthesia professional replaces another, temporarily or permanently. And yet another handover is when you have called someone for help or when you are the one coming to help. For this last situation often the person arriving to help concentrates immediately on performing tasks without really listening to the briefing from the original anesthesia professional. Unless the task is critical (e.g., CPR) it is better to wait, assess the situation and the observable information, and then pay full attention to the briefing. For further information on handoffs see section "Effective Communication and Delegation of Tasks."

Situation Awareness

In anesthesia many sources of information need to be scanned in order to get the overview of the situation. These include, but are not limited to: the patient (clinical impression and history), various monitoring equipment, the patient chart, explicit and implicit information by colleagues and OR team members, and workday characteristics (i.e., staff composition, staff shortage, available equipment/time, etc.). Gaba, Howard, and Small introduced the concept of SA in the context of anesthesia in 1995.[110] Schulz and colleagues wrote a review article in 2013 especially on SA in anesthesia. [135]

Situation awareness (SA) describes *"the ability of an individual to maintain an adequate internal representation of the status of the environment in complex and dynamic domains where time constants are short and conditions may change within seconds and minutes"* (p. 729). [135]

SA is a concept drawn from military aviation concerning a variety of aspects of cognition in complex real-time environments. While important itself, situation awareness is influenced by previous decisions, communication patterns, and team dynamics; the level of SA in turn influences team communication and coordination. Situation awareness incorporates the circumstances of the patient at hand (e.g., "Is all required expertise represented?"), the state of the treatment team (e.g., "Is a team member task-overloaded?," "Do team members trust each other?"); and the state of the environment including the rest of the facility (e.g., "Is the problem I'm having also happening elsewhere in my OR suite?").

One of the primary experts on SA, Mica Endsley,[207-209] postulates three different components of individual SA: (1) *Perception* of the elements of a situation/environment within a volume of time and space (= gathering information, detection of cues); (2) *comprehension* of elements and their meaning (= interpretation of information/cues, diagnosis); and (3) *projection* of their status in the near future (= anticipation, prediction). Dekker and Hollnagel challenge this model.[210,211]

Success or failure of SA can occur at each component: gathering, comprehension, and projecting. Some readily available information can be missed, or perceived incorrectly; on the other hand experience makes them sensitive to barely perceptible cues. They also often, but not always, comprehend the meaning of what is perceived by everyone even when others miss its significance.[212] Experts also are usually able to assess the situation not only as it stands but also to project where things are headed, but of course their future projection can be inaccurate or disregarded (including the "everything is OK fixation error").

Schulz and colleagues reviewed 200 incidents in anesthesia and critical care in an in-hospital setting and determined the frequency of situation awareness errors for an individual patient.[136] Admittedly there could be some degree of hindsight bias; nonetheless, situation awareness errors were identified in 81.5% of cases—predominantly in perception (38.0%) and comprehension (31.5%).

Shared Situation Awareness. SA is a concept that can be applied to the individual (personal SA, see above), but also the team (shared SA). Team SA is defined as *"the degree to which every team member possesses the SA required for his or her responsibilities"* (p. 39).[207] Within different professions and different physical positions in the room, the situational awareness and interpretation of the same case can differ substantially within a team, due to variation in experience, involvement, focus point, interest, knowledge, or information. Of course, not every bit of information can be shared with the whole team; doing so would overwhelm everyone. Yet, creating and maintaining an overall shared mental model of the situation across all team members is critical for determining the best plan of action for patient care. Some team communication in the operating room that seemingly does not serve an obvious purpose, might, in fact, be a gauging of shared mental models and therefore shared SA.[213,214] Anesthesia professionals, for example, routinely assess the progress and possible complications of the operation by perceiving nuances in the conversation of the surgeons.[213]

Shared mental models predict good team performance[215] and were, for example, shown to be related to positive performance in trauma teams, with team leaders and followers actively working toward an information exchange.[216] Adapted from psychology and management literature, Schmutz and Eppich[217] introduced the conceptual framework of team reflexivity to health care. They propose that shared SA is fostered by components of team reflexivity, namely (1) pre-action briefing, (2) in-action deliberation, and (3) post-action debriefing. Fioratou and colleagues[218] challenge the common model of individual and team SA and instead introduced the model of distributed situation awareness (DSA) to anesthesia, arguing that cognition actually involves elements of the (physical) environment, for example, the values on a monitor.

A multicenter study from Denmark explored shared mental models of surgical teams during 64 video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery lobectomies to explore familiarity of the people involved in the operation with each other; mutual assessment of technical and nontechnical skills in the other persons present during the operation; assessment of the perceived risk for the patient from the procedure and from the anesthetic; and noting of problems in the present co-works task management. There was poor agreement between team members' risk ratings showing limitations in how much the members of the surgical team share a mental model about the patient and the related risks. A follow-up study demonstrated the connection between relevant clinical markers and shared mental models.

Other aspects of situation awareness have already been introduced within the "core cognitive process model" in an earlier section. Box 6.2 gives examples of reevaluation questions in order to maintain situation awareness.

Decision Making

Decision making is the generic term for the cognitive and emotional processes of determining appropriate information seeking and actions in a changing environment. It involves "*skills for reaching a judgement to select a course of* *action or make a diagnosis about a situation, in both normal conditions and in time-pressured crisis situations. It … [includes]: identifying options; balancing risks and selecting options [and] re-evaluating"* (p. 13).[170] Many aspects of the anesthesia professional's decision making have already been addressed in the earlier section where the "core cognitive process model" was introduced, so for more information the reader is referred back to that section.

Although decision making in anesthesiology involves many sorts of perioperative decisions, this chapter is particularly interested in the processes used for the non-routine decisions made during the management of problems or crises. This is a very complex process. Although information is sometimes used in what seems to be a purely rational manner,[219,220] decision making is affected strongly by a number of non-rational elements such as group pressure, ingrained habits, cognitive biases, and perceptual illusions. When determining the alternatives and their various pros and cons the set of options available or their perceived value will also vary.

Traditional concepts of decision making in much of medicine (not anesthesiology) have concentrated on relatively static, well-structured decisions. For example, should patient A with an elevated blood pressure be treated for hypertension with drug X, or should no treatment be started? Other studies have looked at diagnosis as an isolated task (specifically, diagnostic explanation) both in internal medicine and in radiology. These approaches to decision making have not captured the unique aspects of dynamism, time pressure, and uncertainty seen in anesthesiology. Since the 1980s, several paradigms have emerged regarding decision making and action in complex real-world situations.

On the one hand there are models that have their basis largely in research done in the psychology laboratory investigating the limits and pitfalls of decision making under controlled conditions, especially delineating cognitive biases. Daniel Kahneman and his colleague Amos Tversky won a Nobel Prize in Economics in 2002 for this kind of research. While Tversky passed away in 1999 Kahneman continued to work on decision making, and he recently synthesized and summarized the topic in the popular book *Thinking Fast and Slow*.[212] Two cognitive systems are described. System I is intuitive (heuristic), very fast, less concerned with the precision of the information processing and decision (as long as it is approximately correct) and more concerned with reducing cognitive load. Research about heuristic decision making shows that reducing the amount of information considered can still lead to equally good or superior decisions.[221] System II is analytical, slow but able to consider in detail the sources of information and the fine points of a decision. Especially in time-critical situations humans tend to run on System I as long as possible, sometimes too long—accepting imprecise results when precision is actually needed. Understanding the pitfalls of System I thinking can help professionals to lower the bar for their activation of System II. Another approach to studying and describing decision making, based on observational research on professionals engaged in doing complex decision-making work in real-world settings (or simulations thereof) is known as naturalistic decision making (NDM), with Gary Klein, Judith Orasanu, and others as the pioneers.[45,114,118] Models in NDM-oriented work also invoke the idea of parallel systems of decision making, one heuristic and fast, the other systematic, precise, and slow, as well as a number of other aspects of iterative consideration of useful actions.

The core cognitive process model including dynamic decision making (see earlier section on "Core Cognitive Process Model of the Anesthesia Professional") is based largely on the NDM model, but is consistent with Kahneman's description of System I and System II. In fact, Klein and Kahnemann have co-written a paper that outlines how their two approaches are in many ways similar, while in a few ways somewhat different. [222] A common (if incomplete) way to describe this is that the work of Kahneman and Tversky emphasizes the pitfalls and errors of decision making, NDM emphasizes how it is often successful despite these risks.

Stiegler and Tung—representing views influenced by the Kahneman-Tversky research—(1) identified current theories of human decision behavior in the context of anesthesia, which are: expected utility, Bayesian probability, formalized pattern matching, heuristics, dual process reasoning, and sensemaking; (2) identified common effects of non-rational cognitive processes on decision making; and (3) suggested strategies to improve anesthesia decision making.[121]

In another publication, Stiegler and co-workers summarized the most common cognitive/non-rational errors detected specific to anesthesiology practice; the leading 10 errors were anchoring, availability bias, premature closure, feedback bias, framing effect, confirmation bias, omission bias, commission bias, overconfidence, and sunk costs.[61] In a simulated emergency setting, the frequency of seven of those errors was over 50%, with premature closure (accepting a diagnosis prematurely, failure to consider reasonable differential of possibilities) and confirmation bias (seeking or acknowledging only information that confirms the desired or suspected diagnosis) being the most common cognitive errors with a frequency of nearly 80% each. In 2016 the Joint Commission also published a paper on the safety issues of cognitive errors and factors that can predispose or increase the likelihood of cognitive biases.[62]

Gigerenzer frames the view on the characteristics of human decision making differently.[223,224] What is called biases in other frameworks is seen as relevant features of human cognition and decision making that allow for functional perception and action in a very complicated world. Perhaps like NDM, this view suggests that theories of decision making do not really describe decision making in the real world. For example, in many situations it will not be possible to collect all relevant decision alternatives, to assess them fully, and to select the best option. There might not be enough data available about the alternatives and/or the evaluation might take too long. The "take-the-best" (also termed "satisficing") heuristic suggests that decision makers consider what they see as a key feature for the decision and only compare any alternatives along this criterion. Further criteria are only considered if the first ones do not identify an acceptable option.

PERFORMANCE-SHAPING FACTORS ON THE INDIVIDUAL LEVEL

The previous discussion about the performance of skilled anesthesia professionals has mostly assumed that they are normally fit, rested, and acting in a standard working environment. However, human performance on the individual level also depends on so-called performance-shaping factors such as interruptions, distractions, fatigue, and stress. Performance-shaping factors can predispose a person to error. Experience in human performance in the laboratory and other domains suggests that internal and external performance-shaping factors exert profound effects on the ability of even highly trained personnel. The degree to which this occurs and to which it affects patient outcome is highly uncertain. In extreme cases, such as profound fatigue, it is obvious these factors result in severe degradation of the anesthesia professional's performance or even complete incapacitation. However, these extreme conditions are quite unusual, and it is still unclear whether the levels of performance decrement most frequently seen in typical work situations have any significant effects.

Several performance-shaping factors are potentially of sufficient magnitude to be of concern. Those include ambient noise, music, distraction by personal electronic devices, distraction by other personnel, fatigue and sleep deprivation, aging, illness, drug use, and relatively fixed hazardous attitudes. These are discussed in the course of this section. A variety of other performance-shaping issues such as the level of illumination and environmental temperature are not dealt with in this chapter.

Currently, the responsibility for ensuring fitness for duty rests solely with the individual clinician. In high-reliability organizations (see later), where the maintenance of organizational safety is one of the key elements, the institution implements measures to mitigate decrements due to performance-shaping factors. As health care systems address issues of human performance and patient safety more seriously, these aspects of work will need to be dealt with.

Distractions and Interruptions in the Operating Room

Several recent publications deal with distractions and interruptions in the OR. For detailed information the reader is referred to further literature,[68,95,96,225-234] as the upcoming section can only give a brief overview on the topic.

Ambient Noise and Music. The workplace of anesthesia professionals—predominantly, but not exclusively, the operating room—is a very complex physical and cognitive setting. Unless there is an unusual effort to reduce sound levels the routine noises of the suction, surgical equipment (electrocautery, pneumatic or electric power tools), and monitoring equipment yield levels considerably higher than in most offices or control rooms. Other sound sources such as conversation and music are controllable. The potential interference of noise with communication and situation awareness[235] among personnel in the OR is particularly worrisome to those concerned with optimizing teamwork in this complex work environment.[68,236]

The use of music in the OR is now widespread. Many health care professionals believe that music enlivens the workday and can build team cohesiveness when all team members enjoy the music. Others note that in some cases the volume level of music makes it harder to hear the rhythm and tone of the pulse oximeter and alarms as well as work-related conversation between team members. A laboratory study by Stevenson and colleagues determined that visual attentional loads and auditory distractions additively reduced anesthesiology residents' ability to detect changes in pulse oximeter tone.[235]

A controversial study by two social psychologists, Allen and Blascovich, suggested that surgeon-selected music improved surgeons' performance on a serial subtraction task and reduced their autonomic reactivity (i.e., "relaxed" them) when compared with control conditions consisting of experimenter-selected music or no music at all.[237] The methodology of this study has been criticized.[238] In response to Allen and Blascovich, several anesthesiologists challenged the notion that the surgeon's preference for the type or volume of music can or should override the needs of other members of the team.[238]

Murthy and colleagues[239] studied the effect of OR noise (80 to 85 dB) and music on knot-tying ability in a laparoscopic skill simulator. They found no difference in time or knot quality in the conditions tested and concluded that surgeons can effectively block out noise and music. The invited commentary that accompanied the article brings up important issues: What impact does noise have on other members of the surgical team? How does noise affect communication between team members? Does noise affect judgment? The question of the proper role of music in the OR has no simple answer. Clearly, optimal patient care is the primary goal. Some surgical or anesthesia personnel explicitly forbid any type of music in the OR. A more common approach of many OR teams is to allow any team member to veto the choice or volume of music if they believe that it interferes with their work.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Distractions include music, social conversation, and jokes. Each of these activities is appropriate under the right circumstances. They can make the work environment more pleasant and promote the development of team spirit, but they can also seriously lessen your ability to detect and correct problems. This issue can be raised during the presurgical time-out to ensure that all personnel agree. During patient care you must take charge of modulating these activities so that they do not become distracting. If the music is too loud, one must insist that the volume be reduced or that it be turned off (a rule of thumb is that the pulse oximeter volume should always be louder than the music or conversation). When a crisis occurs, all distractions should be eliminated or reduced as much as possible.

Reading and Use of Mobile Electronic Devices. The observation that some anesthesia professionals have been seen to read journals or books casually during patient care led to a vigorous debate of the appropriateness of such activity.[240] Although it is indisputable that reading could distract attention from patient care, a study by Slagle and Weinger in 2009 suggested that when the practice of reading is confined to low-workload portions of a case, it has no effect on vigilance.[65] Many comments about the issue were related not to the actual decrement in vigilance induced by reading but rather to the impact of the negative perception of the practice and of those who do it by surgeons and by patients, if they were aware of it.

This issue has been greatly magnified by now-ubiquitous smartphones and social media. Nearly all clinical personnel (other than those scrubbed into surgery) have a smartphone immediately at hand. These provide great temptation for both pull activities—reading email, websites, or social media sites—and push activities, notification of new text messages, mail, or social media posts. The wide variety of channels of information makes it far more likely for people to spend time interacting with their phones than with newspapers, journals, or books. The content available is never ending. In their survey, Soto and colleagues give a current update of the usage patterns, risks, and benefits of personal electronic device use in the operating room.[241]

Distractions Caused by Work Itself. An important source of distraction is actually the work itself. That is, engaging in one task can distract attention from other important tasks. Repositioning the patient on the operating table (or rotating the table itself) can take a surprising amount of time and physical and mental effort. During these tasks it can be difficult, and in some cases impossible, to maintain all usual data streams, or to view, hear, or attend to them. Another highly distracting activity is the use of echocardiography, which requires focused attention on the image and manipulation of the probe and of the device's interface. While it may generate crucial clinical information, it can also distract attention from other important monitors or the surgical field.

Interruptions. Beyond distracting attention from important data streams, various stimuli can also cause "interruptions" in the sequence of conducting a task.[95] Campbell and associates[96] found that slightly more than 20% of distractions—particularly interruptions—were associated with an observable negative impact. Such events are particularly problematic when they disrupt prospective memory which is one's ability to *remember in the future* to perform an action or to resume interrupted tasks in the right spot.[132] It is particularly prone to disruption by concurrent tasks or interruptions. In anesthesia, for example, if the anesthesia professional suspends ventilation temporarily (say to allow a radiograph to be taken), the intention to restart the ventilator depends on prospective memory and can be easily forgotten.

A variety of methods may preserve prospective memory of intentions. Visual or auditory reminders can be used (physiologic monitor alarms often serve this purpose whether intended or not), although the effectiveness of such methods is variable.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Special actions—such as leaving one's finger on the ventilator switch when one has turned off the ventilator for an appropriate reason—can be used to indicate that an important intention is pending. Another strategy is putting a small sign on the ventilator to remind you that it is off. As a last resort in this example, properly set alarms should warn you of apnea should you forget to turn the ventilator back on. Depending on the requested action another strategy can be to accustom oneself to consciously finish tasks entirely before starting the next task (see also section on Task Management). If team members interrupt during a task it can be helpful to let them know that you are busy, something like "One moment please, you'll have my full attention shortly." However, asking others to help you remember ("can you please remind me"), has shown to be a less effective strategy, apparently because it diffuses the responsibility to actually remember.

Resulting Implications. Clearly, for all these distractions and interruptions the pros and cons of policing them need to be balanced. In our opinion—similar to those of Slagle and Weinger[65]—blanket policies against reading nonessential materials or interacting with mobile phones except for patient care needs are both doomed to failure and possibly detrimental. First, because they are hard to enforce and any intensive efforts to eradicate the use of such devices at work is likely to generate a tense work climate despite the best safety intentions of proponents. Second, because reading or phone use might actually counteract boredom in some situations and thus might increase performance. Third, these distractions are not necessarily any different from many other kinds of activities not related to patient care that are routinely accepted, such as social conversation among personnel. Of course, there are reasonable limits for such activities.

The bottom line is, to quote Slagle and Weinger: "*(1) the patient must be the foremost priority and (2) being distracted or performing noncritical tasks during critical or unstable situations is inappropriate and dangerous*" (p. 282).[65] In the end it is important for anesthesia professionals to keep in mind that there are potential pitfalls linked to distractions and that the anesthesia professional is responsible for modulating controllable distractions and for developing work processes that balance the cognitive load of tasks against their personal, clinical, or teambuilding utility. Allowing music during routine work (if all agree) and a modest amount of reading or smartphone use, but emphasizing the need to reduce or eliminate it when it is too distracting, the workload increases, or a situation becomes complex or urgent is one example. The threshold for abandoning any potential distraction to provide maximum attention to patient care should be rather low.

In response to the patient safety concerns related to distractions and interruptions in the OR and other patient care areas from the use of personal electronic devices for non-patient-related purposes, several professional societies and organizations have established position statements and guidelines to define appropriate use of those devices in the OR.[242-245] Some health care settings have implemented a "no interruption zone"[242,246] during critical phases of patient care activities, in the style of a "sterile cockpit" concept,[100] derived from aviation regulations that prohibit crewmembers from engaging in any activity except those duties required for the safe operation of the aircraft during critical phases of flight.

Stress. Stress is a performance-shaping factor that influences human performance. To go into detail about stress is beyond the scope of this chapter. Therefore the reader is referred to other references for more details.[11,247]

Sleep Deprivation and Fatigue

Fatigue is common in the life of anesthesia professionals, whether due to work hours, on-call duties, or the vagaries of life with children and otherwise. Sleep can be thought of as a physiologic drive state similar to hunger or thirst and is necessary for maintenance of alertness, performance, and overall well-being. The amount of sleep required by any individual is genetically determined and is the amount that allows that individual to be awake and alert throughout the day. The average sleep time for young adults is 7 to 8 hours per 24-hour period, with an approximately 15% interindividual variation. These sleep requirements do not change with age, and humans can do little to train their physiology to function optimally on less sleep than required.

The physiology and psychology of sleep and sleep deprivation are well established, and this section can only provide a cursory summary of what is known.

Sleep Debt. Sleep loss is cumulative and results in what is referred to as sleep debt. An individual who has obtained an optimal amount of sleep is better prepared to perform long periods of sustained work than one who is operating from a sleep debt. Because of the additive effects of chronic partial sleep loss, even minor sleep restriction on a nightly basis can insidiously accumulate into a substantial sleep debt. The only way to pay back a sleep debt is with sleep. Sleep debts are commonplace in our culture. The National Sleep Foundation's annual survey continues to reveal that Americans chronically undersleep by 30 to 90 minutes each day.[248] Shift work, long and irregular work hours, and the demands of family and recreation lead to irregular sleep patterns and prevent restful sleep. This is particularly true for health care workers, who often work in shifts, have long duty periods, and must frequently care for patients for long periods. To some degree it seems as if sleep deprivation might have led into a situation that is more dangerous than one thinks.

Circadian Rhythms. Our biological clock, responsible for the human circadian system, is synchronized to the 24-hour day by external stimuli referred to as "zeitgebers," the most influential of which is the light-dark cycle of day and night. The circadian system is biphasic in that it produces a state of increased sleep tendency and decreased performance capacity during two periods throughout the 24-hour day—from 2 a.m. to 6 a.m. and from 2 p.m. to 6 p.m. These are periods when professionals are more vulnerable to incidents and accidents because the body clock is "turned off." The circadian clock is very resistant to alterations, and it does not adjust rapidly to changes such as those produced by jet lag or shift work. Disruption of the normal circadian rhythm or incomplete circadian adaptation leads to acute and chronic sleep deprivation, decreased alertness, increased subjective fatigue, and decreased physical and mental performance.[249]

Sleepiness and Alertness. Sleepiness and alertness are at opposite ends of a continuum. Daytime sleepiness is the most obvious effect of failing to obtain adequate sleep. Data from the U.S. Department of Transportation reveal that the greatest number of single-vehicle accidents takes place during the early morning hours when people are at a circadian lull of alertness. These accidents are thought to result from inadvertent lapses in driver attention brought about by extremes of sleepiness.[250]

Both behavioral and subjective sleepiness can be masked by a stimulating environment. When environmental stimuli wane, physiologic sleepiness manifests itself as an overwhelming propensity to fall asleep. A person who is physiologically alert does not experience sleepiness as environmental stimuli decrease. For example, without physiologic sleepiness, an individual may become bored during a lecture but does not fall asleep.

Microsleep Events. The most extreme cause of impaired vigilance is the occurrence of actual sleep episodes (microsleeps) encroaching into periods of wakefulness. Microsleep events typically last a few seconds to a few minutes. They are intermittent in onset, and their impending occurrence is difficult for the individual to predict. Most individuals underestimate their level of sleepiness when they can be objectively shown to be extremely sleepy, thus making this problem even more insidious. This has significant meaning in the workplace and when driving home after long work periods.

Microsleeps are a sign of extreme sleepiness and are harbingers of the onset of longer sleep periods. Typically, they occur during periods of low workload or stimulation and when an individual is maximally sleepy. In addition, an individual's performance between microsleep episodes is impaired. Frequent and longer microsleeps increase the number of errors of omission.

Evaluation of Physiologic Sleepiness in Anesthesia Residents. Using the Multiple Sleep Latency Test (MSLT), a sleep disorder diagnostic tool, Howard and colleagues evaluated the physiologic (objective) daytime sleepiness of anesthesia residents under three different conditions: (1) baseline (daytime shift, no on-call duty period in the previous 48 hours), (2) post-call (immediately after a 24-hour work and in-house on-call period), and (3) sleep extended.[251,252] In the sleep-extended condition, residents were told to maximize sleep and were allowed to arrive for work at 10 am (3 to 4 hours later than normal) for 4 consecutive days before testing. They were not on call during this time. The sleep-extended condition was included to provide a true control state of maximal rest and optimum alertness. In this study, for anesthesia residents the MSLT scores for baseline as well as for post-call condition revealed the nearly pathologic levels of daytime sleepiness seen in patients with narcolepsy or sleep apnea. The baseline group slept an average of 7.1 ± 1.5 hours per night, whereas the post-call group reported an average of 6.3 ± 1.9 hours of sleep during their night on call. Ironically, although the on-call periods occurred during rotations that often have very busy call nights, only a few subjects were, in fact, awake most of the night. In the sleep-extended condition, the subjects extended their sleep to an average of more than 9 hours per night, and MSLT scores were in the normal range. These results clearly demonstrate that medical personnel who have not been on call cannot be assumed to be rested when compared with fatigued post-call residents. These data also indicate that under normal working conditions, the resident physicians studied were physiologically sleepy to nearly pathologic levels. Notably, these data cast substantial doubt on previous studies of the performance of medical personnel that have relied on the assumption that individuals working under normal conditions are truly rested.

Evaluation of Subjective Sleepiness in Anesthesia Residents. The previously mentioned study also investigated the connection between subjective and physiologic sleepiness. In the previously discussed study, Howard and colleagues also investigated the degree of discrepancy between the residents' subjective sleepiness (how sleepy they felt) and their physiologic sleepiness (how easily they fell asleep). Subjects' self-reported sleepiness immediately before each sleep opportunity did not, in general, correlate with their measured sleepiness. The authors also found that subjects demonstrated little ability to determine whether they had actually fallen asleep. For example, in 51% of trials in which the electroencephalographic and electro-oculographic measurements showed that the subject had fallen asleep, the subjects thought they had remained awake throughout the test. These results support the contention that medical personnel are physiologically vulnerable to degraded alertness yet are unable to perceive this decrement. Thus, an anesthesia professional could, in fact, fall asleep during a case, awaken, and be totally unaware of the lapse in vigilance.

Mood. Long work hours, fatigue, and sleep deprivation have been shown to bring about consistent and dramatic changes in mood and emotions. Depression, anxiety, irritability, anger, and depersonalization have all been shown to increase during testing of chronically fatigued house staff. These emotions are an obvious source of stress between anesthesia professionals and their co-workers, patients, and families. The relationship of mood, performance, and patient safety has yet to be determined.

Sleep Inertia. Sleep inertia corresponds to the period of reduced ability to function optimally immediately on awakening. This phenomenon usually occurs when individuals are awakened out of slow-wave sleep and is manifested as grogginess and impaired performance lasting as long as 15 to 30 minutes after awakening. Sleep inertia can also occur after being awakened from normal sleep and is most common during the early morning circadian trough (2 to 6 am). Depending on the preexisting level of sleepiness, individuals who take naps longer than 40 minutes are at greater risk for sleep inertia on awakening.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Sleep inertia can be important to health care professionals who may be awakened out of deep sleep to provide emergency care to patients (e.g., emergency cesarean section or emergency intubation). If urgent work can be anticipated, the sleeping individual should be awakened with sufficient time (at least 15 minutes) to minimize the fogginess and decrement in performance associated with sleep inertia. Another option is to not sleep longer than short naps in situations where immediate performance is required. If sleep inertia is unavoidable, it would be wise for the affected person to ask for help until the grogginess dissipates.

Effects of Fatigue on Anesthesiologists' Performance and Patient Outcome. It is highly uncertain as to whether, how, or in what circumstances these established psychophysical changes might interact with clinical work processes to affect patient safety in anesthesiology. Various methods are used for assessing an individual's level of sleepiness, including behavioral indicators, subjective measures, and physiologic (objective) measures.

The survey by Gaba and associates revealed that more than 50% of respondents believed that they had made an error in clinical management that they thought was related to fatigue.[56] In another survey of anesthesiologists and CRNAs, 61% of respondents recalled having made an error in the administration of anesthesia that they attributed to fatigue. In a study in 2011, a large, national, random sample of CRNAs in the United States was asked to complete an anonymous survey to quantify sleep activity.[253] Findings of the almost 1300 respondents revealed that nearly 16% have experienced sleep-related behavior during a surgical case, and close to 50% have witnessed a colleague asleep during a case. A similar survey of CRNAs was conducted in 2015, where nearly 30% of the 325 respondents reported they had committed a patient care error because of fatigue.[254]

The challenge of sleep deprivation and fatigue in medical personnel was addressed by the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations in 2011 in a Sentinel Event Alert on "Health Care Worker Fatigue and Patient Safety."[255] The Sentinel Event Alert is public and can be retrieved from the homepage of the Joint Commission. Sinha and co-workers ask: *"The fatigued anesthesiologist: A threat to patient safety?"*[256] and Gregory and Edsell picked up the topic in their educational publication in 2014. [257]

Considerable research on fatigue effects has targeted the transportation industries, especially driving which needs both continuous vigilance and psychomotor skill. If a driver has microsleeps lasting many seconds a problem is likely, unless the road is quite straight or there is an autosteering/autospeed autonomy. Even in health care, studies have largely been carried out in hospital ward settings where, during night on-call shifts, they may have responsibility for many patients.[258] The anesthesiology environment is different. Each patient having anesthesia will have at least one anesthesia professional in constant attendance and that individual is not directly responsible for other patients at the same time. Moreover, although vigilance is indeed the slogan of the ASA, there are few situations that require sustained second-by-second attention. The demand for high vigilance and effort does not usually occur at random; such situations are usually present at induction, emergence, and a few key milestones during the surgical procedure. Critical events are uncommon, and even when the chain of accident evolution has begun, the clinical team will likely have multiple opportunities to detect and correct it before any substantive negative impact has occurred. Thus, while anesthesia personnel may be prone to fatigue, and complaints about sleepiness and fatigue are common, the probability of a negative patient outcome during anesthesia directly attributable to sleepiness alone is very small. In health care, there is no formal mechanism for evaluating causation in adverse events, let alone for evaluating sleep-wake issues and fatigue, so one does not know the full contribution of this factor to negative outcomes. As for many aspects of human performance, variables that can be reliably and precisely measured do not capture the complexity or the typical resilience of clinical work. Conversely, measures and techniques that do address such factors are by nature non-quantitative and invasive.

Howard and colleagues conducted a study of rested versus sleep-deprived (awake for 25 hours on a pseudo-on-call period) anesthesiology residents by collecting multiple measures of performance during a 4-hour high-fidelity simulation scenario: Mood questionnaire, PVT psychomotor reaction time, response time to secondary task probes, and response to changing clinical events.[78] Psychomotor tests revealed progressive impairment of alertness, mood, and performance over the course of the pseudo–on-call period, as well as on the experimental day, when compared with the well-rested condition. Secondary task probe response times were slower after sleep deprivation, although this reached statistical significance for just one of three probe types. No statistical difference in case management between conditions was reported—in fact, subjects in both conditions made significant errors. Sleep-deprived subjects cycled (often rapidly) in and out of sleepy behavior, and the most impaired individuals showed such behavior for more than 25% of the experiment (60 minutes).

A key thing learned about fatigue during this study[78] was that highly fatigued anesthesia personnel in simulations are not either awake all the time or asleep all the time. Rather they usually cycled frequently in and out of states of apparent wakefulness, drowsiness, and microsleeps throughout the simulated case. Typically, when awake their performance was at most mildly degraded but when they showed extreme drowsiness or were actually asleep their performance was essentially zero. Participants were observed being totally asleep at one moment but awakening just in time to happen to catch a probe stimulus or clinical event, and respond to it satisfactorily. For most subjects the fraction of time spent in highly impaired states was low as their microsleeps were brief, in part because even a quiet routine clinical setting has a variety of stimuli, including other personnel and their tasks. The intrinsic redundancies in the OR team, the potential benefits of monitor alarms, and the resilience of clinical systems and patients may explain why catastrophes during anesthesia are very rare even though many operations are conducted with personnel suffering from substantial chronic and acute fatigue.

Fatigue Countermeasures. Anesthesia professionals cannot prevent sleepiness by willpower alone because it is a fundamental physiologic drive. Strategies that institutions or practitioners can use to minimize the negative effects of sleepiness and fatigue on performance include: education and promotion of safety culture, improved sleep habits, rest breaks at work, strategic napping, medications and social drugs, and light therapy. Strategies that national bodies and professional societies and organizations can call for are reasonable duty hour requirements.

Duty Hour Requirements. One direct regulatory strategy to minimize sleep deprivation has been to limit the work hours of clinicians. For the most part this has been attempted only for those in training (who traditionally have worked very long hours both during the day and in nighttime on-call). Results of process and outcome studies have varied but there has been no proof that such regulations, by themselves, improve patient safety.[259] Changing work schedules will not eliminate chronic fatigue, and in settings where clinicians at night may cover large numbers of unfamiliar patients the probability of information loss and confusion across the handoffs may outweigh any benefits of greater alertness. Yet, these findings may not apply to the anesthesiologists' operating room environment in the same way. The previous studies provided addressed the effects of sleep deprivation and fatigue on physician performance and well-being.

Back in 2003 the Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME) instituted the first set of common duty hour requirements for all accredited residency training programs in the United States. Those requirements were revised in 2011[260] in response to the 2009 Institute of Medicine (IOM) report entitled *Resident Duty Hours: Enhancing Sleep, Supervision, and Safety.* A white paper published by Blum and colleagues debates the latest information and innovative practices on the topic and discusses how to best implement the 2009 IOM recommendations.[261] Work hour regulations in the European Union and in Australia or New Zealand are much more stringent than they are for trainees in the United States. For more details on work hour regulations see also further literature.[259,262,263]

Education and Safety Culture. A first and relatively simple and inexpensive step in addressing sleepiness and fatigue of medical personnel is to educate practitioners and the administrators of health care institutions about the impact of sleep issues on work performance, mood, job satisfaction, and health. Educational programs covering sleep deprivation, circadian disruption and fatigue, and countermeasures have been enthusiastically adopted by an increasing fraction of the aviation community. Similar programs should be developed for the health care community. However, it is clear at both the individual and organizational level that education will not be sufficient to address this issue fully. Other competing forces, for example measures of production versus safety, are very powerful and difficult for practitioners to manage.

The organizational framework plays a major role. Only if fatigue is seen as an organizational issue affecting safety negatively and safety is made a high organizational priority with all the resulting consequences, will fatigue-related safety issues be minimized. For an organization that implies, for example, that (a) tired staff are not always implicitly expected to work under all circumstances, (b) opportunities are created for tired staff to rest and to recover (i.e., regular rest breaks, strategic napping, etc.), and (c) an organizational safety culture is fostered that allows anesthesiologists to call for the assistance of a colleague (teamwork, speak up, see next section) when they know that they are impaired (from fatigue or for any other reason), without any negative consequences (cowardice, etc.). For additional countermeasures also see the Sentinel Event Alert of the Joint Commission[255] introduced earlier.

IMPROVED SLEEP HABITS. It is important to obtain adequate sleep. Most adults need at least 8 hours and the amount you need will not change—no matter what you do. Good sleep habits include the following: regularity of bedtime and wake-up time; sufficient time for sustained and individually adequate sleep; restriction of alcohol, caffeine, and nicotine before bedtime; and use of exercise, nutrition, and environmental factors so that they enhance rather than disturb sleep. Also, mobile devices should be put aside about half an hour before sleep—not only because of their (blue) light that signals "wake-up time" to the body, but also because a lot of what you read in them might get your heart-rate up, not down.

A regular sleep schedule is an important part of optimal sleep hygiene, but it is often not possible for medical personnel, given the requirement to cover clinical needs on a 24-hour basis. It helps to maintain as constant a sleep schedule as possible and to maximize sleep opportunities before and after periods of reduced sleep. Social drug use can have profound effects on sleep (see below). Ideally, the sleep setting should be a dark, quiet room devoid of sources of interruption such as pets, telephones, pagers, and children. Psychological stressors increase baseline physiologic arousal and can impair the quality and quantity of sleep. When possible, effort should be made to separate the work of the day with a period of relaxation before attempting to initiate sleep.

Caffeine and other stronger stimulants are known to reduce nocturnal sleep if ingested close to bedtime, hence decreasing sleep quantity and quality. Potent stimulants such as amphetamines do produce increased alertness and performance, but they have significant side effects and are not an option for health care personnel (e.g., the individual must undergo a substantial amount of recovery sleep ["crash"] after their effect is gone).

Rest Breaks, Strategic Napping at Work, and Use of Caffeine

REST BREAKS. Although other industries have openly recognized the reality of decrements in vigilance resulting from fatigue and sleepiness, the health care system has not. Rest breaks and rotation of task duties are mandatory for air traffic controllers and are part of naval ship command procedures in an attempt to prevent potential lapses in vigilance. Short breaks in surgery have been shown to increase productivity and job satisfaction, and they probably also help alleviate boredom.[264] The organizational hurdle in anesthesia: oftentimes an extra anesthesia professional would be necessary to provide these opportunities on a regular basis.

The optimal timing and length of breaks are unknown, but periodic relief from duty should be taken when possible. Cooper and co-workers studied the effects of intraoperative exchange of anesthesia personnel.[265,266] Although in some cases the process of relieving OR personnel caused a problem, it more frequently was associated with the discovery of a preexisting problem. The positive effect of relief of personnel probably depends on the quality of the handover briefing conducted by anesthesia professionals. If anesthesia professionals are unable to obtain a break during long work periods, they can take other measures to remain alert. They can engage other OR personnel in conversation (although this, too, can be distracting), thereby increasing the level of stimulation in the environment. Walking around and standing up are also techniques that decrease subjective (but not physiologic) sleepiness.

STRATEGIC NAPPING AT WORK. If adequate sleep during the night cannot be obtained, naps can be used to decrease sleepiness and improve performance. The optimal nap length for most individuals is about 45 minutes; this duration acutely improves alertness, allows improved performance, and minimizes the possibility of sleep inertia on awakening. Naps as short as 10 minutes have beneficial effects on alertness. A nap of 90 to 120 minutes allows a full sleep cycle and can additionally boost alertness and performance over that of shorter nap periods.

Health care professionals oftentimes have an individual and cultural tendency to ignore or to minimize the effect of fatigue and sleep deprivation and to view work breaks and naps as signs of weakness. The military has addressed similar attitudes with the concept of 10 minute power napping, presenting naps in a positive light as a sign of wisdom and strength rather than one of cowardice and frailty. Again, the predominant organizational safety culture is one of the key elements—how critical safety and quality issues like fatigue are judged and how those obstacles are met (see above and later sections on "Patient Safety at the Organizational Level").

Smith-Coggins and associates studied the effect of naps during the night shift on health care providers working in a busy suburban university emergency department.[267] The investigators found that a nap improved performance on some (but not all) measures. The most important result of this study may be the fact that the subjects were able to (1) use this strategy successfully in the real workplace and (2) improve alertness and performance. At some sites within the Veterans' Affairs system a strategic nap program has been successfully developed and implemented in ICU settings.[268] Components included a formal educational program, guidelines for the individual practitioner and the facility, and other guidance for implementation. No additional staff members were required for the implementation, as the program allows individuals to nap during scheduled break periods. Certain issues complicate the appropriate use of naps by medical professionals. Locating space for the nap has proven to be a major (and continuing) hurdle.

USE OF CAFFEINE. Physicians frequently use caffeine to stay awake and to increase alertness temporarily during on-call periods, but often its use could be more strategic. Strategic use of caffeine includes (1) knowledge of its onset (15 to 30 minutes) and duration of action (3 to 4 hours) and (2) use when alertness is required and the opportunity to sleep is minimal. Besides its alerting effects, caffeine produces an increase in awakenings and decreases the total nocturnal sleep time if ingested close to sleep opportunities. Long-term use of caffeine, common in our culture, produces tolerance to the alerting effect of the drug and hence should be avoided when using caffeine strategically. Nicotine is a stimulant that produces effects similar to those of caffeine.

While anesthesia professionals might get away with working when sleepy without affecting aggregate patient outcome that does not mean that issues of sleep deprivation and fatigue should be ignored. Falling asleep (a long microsleep or full sleep) while taking care of a patient is just not acceptable; it's surely not what any patient or their family has a right to expect. Thus, both the individual anesthesia professional AND the systems and institutions they work within need to address the fatigue issue systematically. It is clear that just placing limits on work hours, either for trainees alone (the current situation in many countries) or for fully certified personnel as well, cannot do so. Only an integrated approach aimed at improving individuals' sleep hygiene along with reorganizing the structure and processes of clinical work will stand any chance of ensuring that anesthesia professionals who are appropriately alert are always there vigilantly protecting their patient.

Aging Anesthesiologists

Human abilities cannot be maintained indefinitely as humans age. On average, performance on laboratory tests of discrete sensory-motor and cognitive skills can be shown to decrease with increasing age.[269] However, large differences are noted among individuals. Again, except at extreme points of performance failure (e.g., severe impairment of vision, hearing, or cognition), the contribution of isolated changes in physiologic or cognitive performance is difficult to relate to real work situations. The work environment is often rich with redundant cues involving multiple sensory modalities, and technologic compensation for physiologic deficits is common (e.g., hearing aids or glasses). Advancing age is associated with worsening performance when tasks involve single-solution or fluency-based definitions of effectiveness.[270] However, along with possible physiologic changes of age typically comes greater experience with a variety of situations. When efficacy is defined in terms of the diversity of strategies used, as well as by the social and emotional impact of solution choice on the individual, performance is remarkably stable and sometimes even improves in the latter half of life.[270]

For many individuals, the lessons learned from experience more than offset the modest degree of physiologic impairment that they face as they grow older. Issues attributed to "age" might instead be related to a longer period away from initial or recurrent systematic training. The originally well-trained practitioner who keeps abreast of the changing standard of care and who exercises emergency skills frequently is less likely to be affected by advancing age than is a marginal practitioner whose knowledge and skills were frozen immediately after completion of initial training. For anesthesia professionals who are enrolled in mandatory maintenance of certification programs this issue might be less serious.

Patient care is a socially-organizationally constructed activity. Aging anesthesiologists may be able to modify their practice type, reducing complexity of cases or eliminating on-call and post-call patient care. Other perioperative team members may also be available to support those who while still competent may be, on any given day, not at their best.

What do other industries do about this issue? In the United States, from 1959 to 2007 there was a limit at 60 years of age for airline pilots; this has since been changed to age 65. Many countries have a higher limit and some have no limit. Moreover, regulations require airline pilots to pass a class I medical examination every 6 to 12 months, aimed at identifying individuals with chronic medical conditions that place them at risk for sudden incapacitation. Simulations show that sudden pilot incapacitation during a high-workload phase of flight (e.g., approach and landing) leads to a significant rate of crashes, even when a second pilot is at the controls. These physical examinations may also weed out pilots with severe cognitive or sensory-motor deficiencies (vision in particular), but they are not designed to assess subtle aspects of changes in performance resulting from age. Airline pilots' flying performance is also formally assessed annually throughout their career both during real flights and in simulation.

For anesthesia professionals, by contrast, there are no statutory requirements for medical examination or formal performance checking, although individual institutions or practice groups may choose to impose testing requirements or to implement age-based reductions in daytime or on-call requirements. No doubt, the issue of age-related effects on anesthesia professional performance is likely to continue to be raised periodically for the foreseeable future.

Illness and Drug Use

Every anesthesia professional is vulnerable to transient illnesses, which in some cases probably reduce performance ability. All personnel are vulnerable to chronic medical conditions that could directly or indirectly affect their fitness and performance capability. The culture of the caring professions often leads individuals to continue to work with illnesses that would cause other professionals to stay at home or to seek medical advice. The performance-shaping effects of the illness can be exacerbated by the use of either over-the-counter or prescribed medications. The degree to which illnesses and medications affect professional performance in anesthesia is unknown.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Pilots use a mnemonic checklist to review the effects of potential performance-shaping factors and are instructed not to fly if they are impaired for any reason. One similar safety strategy in health care is the "I'M SAFE" approach,[271] promoted by the patient safety intervention strategy "TeamSTEPPS," which is explained more in detail later. "I'M SAFE" is a simple personal checklist to determine one's ability to perform safely concerning the factors: **I**llness, **M**edication, **S**tress, **A**lcohol/Drugs, **F**atigue, **E**ating and Elimination. The difficulty in anesthesiology is that the real-world organization and incentives of many practice settings do not provide mechanisms for personnel to excuse themselves if they are temporarily impaired and that there barely exist organizational structures and departmental understanding to promote such approaches (lack of "safety culture").

A more serious problem for anesthesia professionals is that of drug and substance abuse.[272-275] Nearly 15% of all doctors will become substance-dependent over their lifetime, and the incidence in anesthetists is almost 3 times greater than other physician groups. Including alcohol, studies describe up to 3.5% of anesthesiologists being addicted; if alcohol is excluded, drug addiction occurs in about 2.5%.[276,277] The degree to which small doses of alcohol or hangovers affect performance on complex, anesthesia

TABLE 6.3 Examples of Hazardous Attitudes and Antidote Thoughts[279]

Hazardous Attitude	Antidote Thoughts
Antiauthority: *"Don't tell me what to do. The policies are for someone else."*	*"Follow the rules. They are usually right."*
Impulsivity: *"Do something quickly—anything!"*	*"Not so fast. Think first."*
Invulnerability: *"It won't happen to me. It's just a routine case."*	*"It could happen to me. Serious problems can develop even in routine cases."*
Macho: *"I'll show you I can do it. I can intubate the trachea of anyone."*	*"Taking chances is foolish. Plan for failure."*
Resignation: *"What's the use? It's out of my hands. It's up to the surgeon."*	*"I'm not helpless. I can make a difference. There is always something else to try that might help."*

tasks is uncertain. The natural history of serious abuse of alcohol, cocaine, sedatives, or narcotics by anesthesia professionals is such that cognitive performance will at some point be seriously compromised, although addiction specialists frequently report that job performance is one of the last areas of life to become seriously impaired.[273,275,278] The period of time in which an addicted anesthesia professional's performance in the OR is significantly impaired may be a relatively small fraction of the total time during which drugs are abused. Although this in no way excuses the practice of conducting anesthesia while under the influence of drugs, it may account for the fact that reports of addicted anesthesiologists are, unfortunately, common, whereas reports of overt patient risk or harm resulting from an addicted physician's errors are unusual. A host of other threats to patient safety, including production pressure, fatigue, illness, burnout, and distraction will affect far more anesthesia professionals, occur more regularly, and pose greater safety risks to patients, but they do not carry the same level of risk to the professional's own life, nor the same social stigma, as does addiction. On the other hand, diversion of drugs from the patient who needs them to the addicted clinician for use or sale is a growing risk.

Professionals' Attitudes as a Crucial Part of Human Performance and Patient Safety

Attitudes are important components of one's abilities. They can affect performance as strongly as physiologic and cognitive performance-shaping factors. Psychologists studying judgment in aviators have identified five types of attitude as being particularly hazardous, and they have developed specific antidote thoughts for each of these, which are supposed to be verbalized by pilots whenever they find themselves thinking in that way.[279] The authors have adapted these to anesthesiology shown in Table 6.3.

The invulnerable and macho attitudes seem particularly hazardous for anesthesia professionals. They are compounded by production pressures to handle more cases in less time with fewer cancellations and less opportunity for preoperative evaluation. The feeling that a catastrophe "cannot happen to me" and that perfect performance can always be relied on to avert a disaster can lead to cavalier behavior and poor planning. It can alter thresholds for believing that abnormal data represent a problem, thereby leading to the fixation error of "everything's OK."

Expert human performance is the anesthesia professional's most powerful tool to safeguard the patient. However, planning to avoid catastrophe is likely to be more successful than battling to avert it. The economic and social realities of practice can cause these pressures to become internalized by anesthesia professionals, who then develop hazardous attitudes they might otherwise have resisted.

Under these conditions the usual protocols for elective case management must be adapted to seek the best outcome for the patient. In the final analysis, one must ensure that the patient's benefit is the primary criterion in such decisions, and one should establish a bottom line of safe planning, pre-use equipment checks, and patient preparation beyond which one will not be pushed. Even if surgeons, nurses, colleagues, or administrators pressure one to do things that one does not think are safe, no one will thank you if the patient suffers, nor will they come to your defense should litigation arise.

To simplify these decisions, many institutions have developed multidisciplinary written consensus guidelines on the preoperative preparation of patients that address the appropriate workup for patients with various medical conditions in different surgical urgency categories.

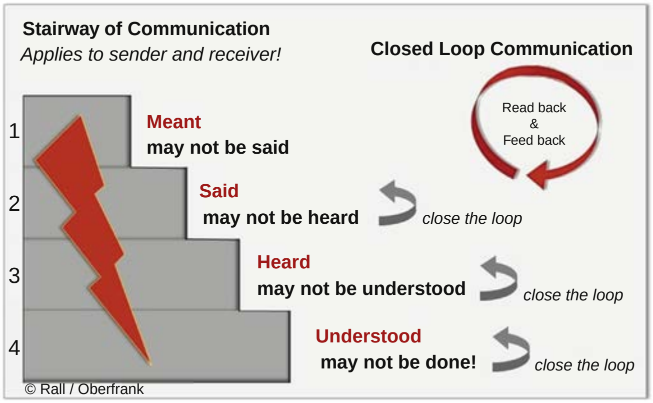
PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Sometimes it might seem appealing for a medical professional to emerge as a hero after a problem is solved or a complication is managed, but the challenge is to realize first that anesthesia professionals cannot rely primarily on heroism to achieve optimal safety, and second that in all likelihood no hero would have been needed at all if proper safety measures had been taken to begin with.

In their review *"Why hospitals don't learn from failures: organizational and psychological dynamics that inhibit system change,"* Tucker and Edmondson[280] describe a further aspect of professionals' attitudes that can have implications on safety*:* People are creative and they want to make things work for their patient. So, nearly every day they diligently work around problems and obstacles the best they can. However, the very acts of individual resourcefulness by such workarounds may mask the underlying systems issues that expose many patients to risk and thereby delay addressing successfully those very issues.

HUMAN FACTORS AT THE TEAM LEVEL

This section focuses on the human factors at the team level, exploring the key elements (a) effective communication including handoffs and the delegation of tasks; (b) the safety enhancing strategy "speaking up"; (c) aspects of status and hierarchy effects in teams; (d) teamwork including (e) leadership aspects.



© Rall / Oberfrank

Fig. 6.6 Stairway of Communication and Closed Loop Communication: The importance of proper communication. (1) Especially when dealing with complex situations under time pressure, but also during routine work, people tend to "mean" or "think" a lot, but "say" little. It is important to let other team members know what one thinks in order to create shared mental models of a situation. (2) For several reasons, not everything that is said is necessarily heard by those who should hear it. The sender needs to ensure that the message was heard by the receiver and the receiver needs to confirm the message (= closed loop communication). (3) Acoustic hearing and mental understanding are not the same. "Closely monitor this patient" might be clearly heard, but what is meant is open for interpretation on a large spectrum. Misunderstanding can result, but can be smoothed out. (4) Some tasks may be forgotten, making double checking necessary. Some tasks need time to be completed, some tasks may fail. No matter what, the team needs to know (= closed loop communication).

Effective Communication and Delegation of Tasks

The benefits of effective communication for patient care in anesthesia and the operating room have been repeatedly demonstrated.[281-284] However, the term effective communication is imprecise leaving much room for interpretation. In fact, communication is never a one-way street and effectiveness includes participation of all team members.[285] Based on research showing that teams unfortunately tend to communicate ineffectively, effective communication refers to both content and form.[286] Teams should routinely use and update information from multiple available resources, share key elements between team members, and strive to always communicate as clearly as possible.[286,287]

Closed Loop Communication. For example, addressing team members by name and engaging in closed loop communication (Fig. 6.6) can help avoid misunderstandings.[288-290] Closed loop communication includes (a) when the sender initiates communication, the receiver confirms that the communication has been heard by repeating the content of the communication and (b) when a delegated task is finished, the receiver gets back to the sender and the sender confirms the feedback. For instance, instead of saying *"Can someone call for help, please?"* closed loop communication presents as follows: *"Jeff, can you call for help, please."—"Yes, Megan, I will call for help immediately."—"Megan, I have called for help and they are on their way."*—"*Ok Jeff, thank you.*" El-Shafy and colleagues evaluated the effectiveness of closed loop communication in trauma settings of a level I trauma center in the United States, analyzing all verbal orders issued by the trauma team leader for order audibility, directed responsibility, check-back, and time-to-task-completion.[291] In total, 89 trauma videos were reviewed, with 387 verbal orders identified. Of those, 126 (32.6%) were directed, 372 (96.1%) audible, and 101 (26.1%) closed loop. On average each order required 3.85 minutes to be completed. There was a significant reduction in time-to-task-completion when closed loop communication was utilized. Orders with closed loop communication were completed 3.6 times sooner compared to orders with an open loop. The authors highlighted that closed loop communication not only prevents errors, but has the potential to increase the speed and efficiency with which tasks are completed in the setting of trauma.

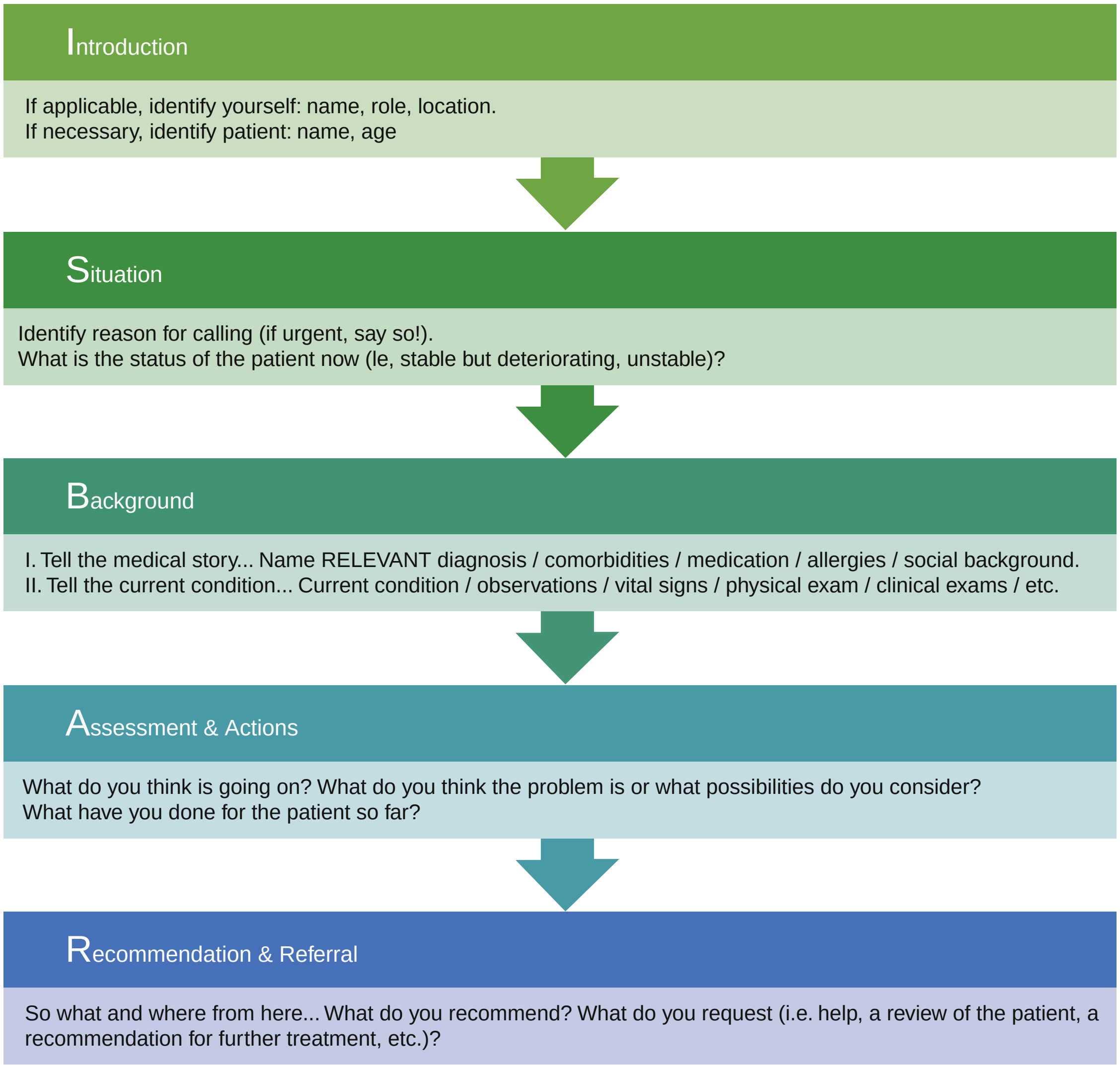
ISBAR Tool. Another effective communication tool especially useful for sharing information is the ISBAR concept (Fig. 6.7), often abridged to just SBAR. The acronym stands for **I**ntroduction, **S**ituation, **B**ackground, **A**ssessment, and **R**ecommendation. It originated in U.S. nuclear submarines and has also been used in the airline industry. ISBAR may be used variably by different members of the OR team.[292] Its use is associated with increased accuracy in communication and safety climate[293] and a decrease in communication errors[293] as well as in unexpected death.[294]

In the medical setting, ISBAR is a universally applicable communication tool that is usable in several settings, including for example face-to-face as well as telephone handovers in the OR or in the anesthesia post-anesthesia care unit. It also can be used for the briefing of new team members during emergencies and for briefing senior staff who has been asked for help. In the literature the slogan "Think—Talk—Write—ISBAR" can be found and characterizes the broad field of application of the idea. Shahid and Thomas give an up-to-date narrative review of the current literature on (I)SBAR, the challenges of communication among health care providers, and the proper use of the tool, and compares it to other communication tools that exist in order to assess their strengths and weaknesses.[295] For -detailed information the reader is referred to this review.

Because it assists the transfer of important information in limited time, ISBAR has been adopted by many health care organizations across the world. Medical associations and leading health care organizations, like the German Association of Anesthesiology and Intensive Care Medicine—Deutsche Gesellschaft für Anästhesiologie und Intensivmedizin (DGAI), the Australian Commission for Safety and Quality in Health Care (ACSQHC), the Institute of Healthcare Improvement (IHI), and the WHO have endorsed the (I)SBAR method as a standard communication tool, when appropriate, for health care providers. The experience in the United States is that SBAR has been adopted (in principle if not always in widespread practice) for nurses but is not frequently used by physicians.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Why use ISBAR (or SBAR)? It has the potential to improve patient care by enhancing transfer of information, responsibility, and accountability. It can improve patient safety by encouraging complete communication. ISBAR is an easy-to-remember memory prompt that helps providers (a) to prioritize what needs to be said by preparing consciously for communication, and (b) to set expectations on what will be



Introduction

If applicable, identify yourself: name, role, location.
If necessary, identify patient: name, age

Situation

Identify reason for calling (if urgent, say so!).
What is the status of the patient now (Ie, stable but deteriorating, unstable)?

Background

I. Tell the medical story... Name RELEVANT diagnosis / comorbidities / medication / allergies / social background.
II. Tell the current condition... Current condition / observations / vital signs / physical exam / clinical exams / etc.

Assessment & Actions

What do you think is going on? What do you think the problem is or what possibilities do you consider?
What have you done for the patient so far?

Recommendation & Referral

So what and where from here... What do you recommend? What do you request (i.e. help, a review of the patient, a recommendation for further treatment, etc.)?

Fig. 6.7 Example of the use of the communication tool ISBAR.

communicated (shared mental models). ISBAR can reduce barriers to effective communication across different levels of staff, professions, and disciplines. Its application should be expected for routine cases, which will then enable its use even during stressful events.

Handoff Protocols[*]. Another aspect of safe and effective communication concerns post-intervention handoffs and intraoperative transitions of care responsibility, which are known settings of risk for critical information to be lost.[296] Intraoperative anesthesia care transitions are known to be associated with adverse postoperative outcomes, with a similar effect size for attendings, residents, and nurse anesthetists.[297] Sometimes though the new person may be able to take a fresh look at the situation, catch errors, or find opportunities to improve care.

Handoff protocols are intended to minimize patient risk by creating a designated time and framework to ensure that crucial information is not missed during care transitions. There is an increased focus on formal protocols because the number of patient care handoffs has markedly increased in some settings due to work hours limits. Protocols can be divided into conceptual models (e.g., IQ—a reminder that the caregiver should inform the receiving provider about the details of the patient and case and then allow them to ask questions before leaving) or scripted models (e.g., I-PASS[298] which stands for **I**llness severity, **P**atient summary, **A**ction list, **S**ituation awareness and contingency plans, and **S**ynthesis by receiver, or I PASS the BATON[271] which stands for Introduction, Patient, Assessment, Situation, Safety Concerns [the] Background, Actions, Timing, Ownership, Next).

Another comparison can be made between verbal and written handoffs and also supplementing a primarily verbal handoff with written information. When a patient's care is being transferred to a different care team, such as when a patient moves between the intensive care unit and the operating room, a team-to-team handoff is beneficial because the report and questions about the patient are consolidated for both teams (e.g., time out for sign out).[299] A good handoff process should be used for every transition, including intraoperative transfers for breaks,[300] dropping off the patient in the PACU,[206] or changes from one anesthesiologist to another during a case. Using a checklist or structure can help prevent lapses, but regardless of the tool used, the goal is to provide clear and complete communication to protect the patient from medical errors.

---

[*] Acknowledgment: This section on handoffs was contributed by Lisa Sinz, MD (Penn State University School of Medicine).

Effective Delegation of Tasks. Delegation of tasks is sometimes ineffective leading to frustration on both sides: the person delegating and the person meant to perform the tasks. A common failing is when the delegation is incomplete and subject to assumptions, leaving too much room for interpretations.

The granularity of delegation instructions may depend on the personnel involved. For peer anesthesia professionals it may work to delegate a whole area of responsibility, such as "Sara, can you handle airway management please?," trusting that person to make the necessary decisions on their own. In other cases, especially with less experienced personnel, simply saying *"Michael, take care of the blood pressure"* may be insufficient because both the leader and the follower may have different assumptions of what that means in practical terms. With such a mismatch both parties may be unhappy. In such settings a more detailed delegation instruction may be needed, such as

"Michael, because our patient has a known hypertension and a risk for stroke, try to keep the diastolic blood pressure at or above 80 mm Hg. If necessary, give up to 500 ml crystalloid and, if necessary, small doses of ephedrine. If that doesn't handle it let me know. Any questions?"

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Effective delegation of tasks involves sharing mental models of the situation and oftentimes also sharing concrete orders or suggestions about what one expects the other to do in order to fulfill the task to the other person's satisfaction. One reason why delegators do not use concrete delegation of tasks is because they think that it would take too much time or because they assume that the other person knows or should know what do to. Those few seconds to make it as concrete as the situation requires will probably pay off in the long run.

Asking Open-Ended Questions. A useful and simple means of communication, particularly in interprofessional and interdisciplinary settings, is to ask about other team members' points of view and plans using open-ended questions.[281,301]

Status and Hierarchy: Speaking Up

Speaking up refers to "*discretionary communication of ideas, suggestions, concerns, or opinions about work-related issues with the intent to improve organizational or unit functioning*" (p. 375).[302] Often the notion of speaking up implies doing so from below to above in the authority gradient. Without speaking up, problems cannot be identified, ideas will not be shared, and potential harm will not be prevented. This is particularly important in the multidisciplinary, complex, dynamic, and yet confined environment of operating rooms.[303] Here, a team member's speaking up to raise concerns about potentially risky or inappropriate actions of other team members may often be the final barrier to an emerging adverse event.[10,304-307] Unfortunately, speaking up is rare in teams in general and in operating room crews in particular.[308-310] In a survey of 137 chiefs of medical and surgical departments, 70% said that problems were not addressed and "elephants in the room" were common.[311] Simulation-based studies in anesthesia have demonstrated that in situations that need speaking up, only 40% to 70% of the participants did so.[312,313] For example, one such study showed that faculty anesthesiologists only spoke up: (a) 73% of the time to a surgeon who demonstrated profound sleepiness; (b) 14% of the time to a nurse who put a pathologist on speakerphone while the patient was awake and could hear; and (c) only 24% of the time to an anesthesiologist colleague who ordered the wrong treatment.[303] Creating conditions that encourage speaking up is particularly useful for crews whose composition is constantly changing, so members do not have time to develop as team.[314] This instability impedes the development of both norms to speak up as well as psychological safety, that is, the perception that there is no jeopardy to one's position if they do speak up.[315]

BOX 6.3 Raising Safety Concerns - the CUS Tool

The CUS tool[271] is used to clearly communicate and escalate a rising level of concern for any issue and to focus a team's attention on specific key phrases that are linked to raising concerns. When a team member uses the phrase *"I am **c**oncerned…"* it is to get the team's attention and to ensure that team members are listening. In order to escalate the concern, the team member would use the phrase *"I am **u**ncomfortable because…,"* finally escalating the concern with the phrase *"This is a **s**afety issue…."* Then the current action must be stopped ("Stop the line!") and evaluated before continuing. Having a common framework, consisting of those three escalating key phrases, provides teams with a standardized, easy-to-use, attention-providing communication tool to raise concerns. At the same time, team members have a clear idea of the level of importance associated with the concern, due to the escalating concept.

Strong hierarchies, which are prevalent in many hospitals, constitute a barrier to speaking up.[303,316-318] Even formal systems designed to promote it may actually inhibit staff from speaking up.[319] Leadership is a powerful tool in facilitating it: leaders can support speaking up by providing direction and coaching,[320] by using inclusive language,[321] by implementing debriefings to reflect on speaking up, and by establishing and maintaining a norm that considers such actions as socially desirable.[322] New research shows that people who do speak up are seen as more confident, competent, and of higher social status than those who do not speak up.[323]

Two explicit safety strategies that can be used for speaking up are, for example, the CUS tool (Box 6.3) and the two-challenge rule (Box 6.4).[271] But the basic requirement for both tools, for them to work properly and beneficially, like with any tool, is the organizational integration and acceptance of the tools (see section on organizational aspects of patient safety and safety culture).

BOX 6.4 Raising Safety Concerns - The Two Challenge Rule

The two-challenge rule[271] is another strategy that also empowers all team members to "Stop the line!" if they sense or discover an essential safety breach.

The two-challenge rule emphasizes the following:

- It is everyone's responsibility to assertively voice concern ***at least 2 times*** to ensure that it has been heard
- The team member being challenged must acknowledge ***with an active verbal response*** that concern has been heard
- If the safety issue still hasn't been addressed: Team members should take a stronger course of action or utilize supervisor or chain of command

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Speaking up is never easy. It gets even harder if there is a difference in the hierarchy and experience level or if there is little positive organizational safety culture. Nevertheless, it is important to speak up if patient safety is in danger. The key to speaking up is often how to put things and when to intervene. Speaking up can be misinterpreted as a strategy to always tell colleagues what oneself would do differently. But speaking up should be used only in the case of a patient (or a colleague, or a piece of relevant equipment) at (potential) risk. To initiate speaking up it can help to have (organizationally) standardized phrasing, like for example, *"Excuse me, I see a patient safety issue here…."* Other systematic ways of expressing concern are the use of the CUS tool and the two-challenge rule. It also helps to explain one's thoughts and state a reason for the concern or the objection. For example instead of saying *"Succinylcholine…??? Do you really want to induce with succinylcholine???"* it is more helpful to say: *"Excuse me, in my eyes there is a patient safety issue using succinylcholine for induction. The patient has a potassium of 5.3 mmol/L so I think rocuronium would be better for induction, since the patient could get serious hyperkalemia and suffer cardiac arrest…"*

Teamwork

Teamwork can be defined as "*skills for working in a group context, in any role, to ensure effective joint task completion and team member satisfaction […. and includes] coordinating activities with team members; exchanging information; using authority and assertiveness; assessing capabilities; supporting others.*"[170]

Unlike teams in aviation, the military, and police and fire services, the OR team is unusual in that the command structure is ambiguous. Physicians (surgeon and anesthesiologist) are nominally superior to nursing and technical staff, but the two sets of physicians are coequally responsible for the patient during the immediate perioperative period.

Although surgeons were historically considered the "captain of the ship," with even a legal doctrine giving them responsibility for the actions of all other OR team members, this has long since formally fallen by the wayside. Nonetheless remnants of this old history remain in aspects of the organizational structure and culture of OR environments. Clearly though when both anesthesiologists and surgeons are jointly caring for a patient, they are both responsible, and this situation can lead to complex issues of command authority, hierarchy, and control. Cooper recently published a paper investigating the critical role of the surgeon-anesthesiologist relationship for patient safety.[324] Even though there is little research about this relationship, Cooper argues that the relationship for each surgeon-anesthesiologist dyad is perhaps the most critical element of overall team performance. His article explores functional and dysfunctional aspects of the relationship, identifies negative stereotypes each profession has of the other, and offers some suggestions on how to improve the working relationship.

Apart from the challenge of the coequal responsibility of the patient, the composition of teams in the OR holds some further challenges. Salas and colleagues defined a team as *"a distinguishable set of two or more people who interact, dynamically, interdependently, and adaptively toward a common and valued goal/ objective/ mission, who have each been assigned specific roles or functions to perform, and who have a limited life-span of membership"* (p. 4).[325] A team is distinct from a group in that a group is an ad hoc collection of individuals without a specific mission and without specific roles. In the OR, all team members have the common goal of a good outcome for the patient. However, considerable disagreement can exist on how to achieve this goal and which elements of patient care have the highest priority. These differences are probably traceable to the fact that the OR team is itself made up of several crews (e.g., surgery, anesthesiology, nursing, as well as sometimes technical personnel from several domains) each of which has its own command hierarchy, its own global properties (professional standing, culture, traditions, and history), and its own set of local goals and objectives for management of the patient. A critical component of the success of this process comprises the establishment and maintenance of a shared mental model of the situation. The greater the overlap in mental models the more likely that team members will predict, coordinate, and adapt.[13] To the degree that these objectives can be accomplished, the different individuals will be able to tailor their efforts toward a common goal.

The quality of teamwork influences clinical performance in anesthesia.[326] Strictly speaking, teams in the operating room and resuscitation teams are not teams in the traditional sense that exist for an extended period of time with a shared goal and fixed team membership. Instead, they are considered action teams: members may be assigned together ad hoc for a rather short tenure, and team membership may change repeatedly.[81]

This has implications for teamwork and training: such teams have limited time to develop and learn as a team.[314] Instead, they must team off the cuff—an ability that has been described as teaming.[285] Teaming includes four pillars: speaking up (see earlier section), collaboration (i.e., adopting a collaborative mindset and collaborative behaviors), experimentation (i.e., working iteratively and considering uncertainty as inherent in interactions), and regular and continuous reflection about teamwork. Briefings and debriefings have been shown to offer an infrastructure for reflection in anesthesia and the OR.[314,327,328] Particularly for action teams such as in the operating room, establishing and updating shared knowledge is challenging. According to Cooke and Salas, team knowledge is more than the sum of individual team members' knowledge.[329] They distinguished between team mental model and team situation model. To judge team knowledge, information is also needed on the broader aspect of team cognition, which involves team knowledge itself, team decision making, team situation awareness, and team perception. Establishing team cognition and adapting to changing requirements requires targeted communication among team members.[215,288,290,330-332] This may be done explicitly to avoid misunderstanding and check mutual assumptions, or implicitly, for example by talking to the room.[153,290,301,333]

Leadership

Whereas in aviation the roles of the captain and the first officer are carefully defined and involve separate but interrelated tasks, in anesthesiology the patient care roles and responsibilities of different members of the crew of anesthesia professionals—whether experienced or in training—are rarely predefined or made explicit. For example, a trainee is often expected to do all tasks with only occasional assistance from the supervisor. Leadership is pivotal in critical, non-routine, and highly complex situations in anesthesiology.[82,334,335] It includes a variety of functions such as composing team, defining mission, establishing expectations and goals, structuring and planning, training and developing, sense making, providing feedback, monitoring the team and managing its boundaries, performing team tasks, challenging the team, solving problems, providing resources, encouraging team self-management, and supporting social climate.[336] Some of these leadership functions may be shared among crew members.[335] A senior leader of a trauma team may dynamically delegate or withdraw certain active leadership roles to junior leaders.[337] While sharing leadership can be effective, it may require the team to know and discuss how to work well in this fashion[338] (see also later section on CRM, section "CRM Key Point 4"). This is important especially in highly dynamic, time-critical situations such as resuscitations in which leadership is critical for performance and has to be adapted to changing task and coordination requirements.[339,340] Behavior observation studies on leadership in acute care have shown that leadership behavior is positively associated with performance during critical and barely standardized situations, but negatively associated with performance during routine and highly standardized situations.[85] In addition, leaders should be role models of civil and respectful interaction as this is important for high and safe performance.[341,342]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

There are many kinds of situations where it is not clear who is the team leader in a medical setting. For example, to nurses or even to the physicians involved, it might be unclear who is the team leader when two doctors of the same profession present during an emergency. Leadership may change as personnel of different seniority or expertise enter or exit the scene. It is helpful to clarify roles as necessary. For example: *"Thank you for the handover. Now I will take over"* or *"Thank you. You stay in charge and I will assist you,"* or if in doubt ask *"Just to double check: Am I still in charge or do you want me to assist you?"* or from the perception of a nurse *"I am sorry, but to better coordinate my work: who is in charge now?"*

A particular issue of hierarchy is known as cue giving and cue taking, in which people give off cues (often without even knowing it) that are taken up by others.[343] People lower in a hierarchy are very sensitive to cues emitted by their superiors, which can inhibit action or even questions from subordinates. Such cues may be read as *"don't bother me," "don't question me," "I know what I'm doing; you don't,"* or *"I just checked on that and it's fine,"* thus inhibiting speaking up. A qualitative, descriptive study on nontechnical skills in Sweden revealed that anesthesia nurses view anesthetists as excellent if they are calm and clear in critical situations, and able to change to a strong leading style.[344] More on leadership in anesthesia can be found later in the associated section of "CRM principle 4."

PATIENT SAFETY STRATEGIES AT THE INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM LEVEL: CRISIS RESOURCE MANAGEMENT AND OTHER TRAINING CURRICULA

This next section is about how to minimize the negative human factors aspects of the anesthesia professional's physical, psychological, and organizational work environments and how to strengthen the positive aspects of individual and team performance. The CRM approach mentioned earlier is a useful organizing principle for tackling these issues. Below the authors (1) give a general explanation of the strategy and its history, (2) introduce the 15 key principles of CRM, (3) discuss the application of CRM in crisis as well as in routine medical situations, (4) cite evidence that CRM is beneficial in health care, and (5) briefly touch on other well-known team training curricula such as TeamSTEPPS and Medical Team Training (MTT).

Crisis/Crew Resource Management

Crisis resource management (CRM) in medicine, sometimes also referred to as crew resource management, is an effective safety strategy concept and tool adapted from the domain of aviation and modified to the needs of health care. Gaba traditionally defines CRM: *"CRM is the ability to translate the knowledge of what needs to be done into effective team activity in the complex and ill-structured real world of medical treatment."*

In overview, CRM means to coordinate, use, and apply all available resources to optimally protect the patient—at an individual as well as at a team level. Resources include all the personnel involved, along with all their skills, abilities, and attitudes—albeit also with their human limitations. Machines, devices, and information sources, including cognitive aids, are also critical resources. In addition, CRM provides effective strategies that cover typical safety pitfalls attributed to the five main elements of human-factor-related behavior as introduced earlier. The underlying scientific basis of CRM is formatted into 15 practical CRM key principles health care professionals can apply during work (Box 6.5).

CRM was introduced in aviation by airlines working with NASA originally as cockpit resource management in the mid-1980s after some sentinel airplane crashes. It later was renamed crew resource management to acknowledge the importance of the crew, not only those in the cockpit. CRM from that time on was and still is considered to be a successful safety strategy in aviation and is also part of safety strategies in other industrial and military settings. Interestingly, even though these industries maintain CRM principles and CRM training as crucial parts of their safety processes, they do so without what evidence-based medicine would call "level 1 evidence"—sound randomized trials—to justify this.[11,345] In fact, such evidence would be impossible to collect.

A similar program for anesthesiology was first developed by Gaba, Howard, and associates at the Veterans Affairs (VA) Palo Alto Health Care System and Stanford School of

BOX 6.5 Crisis Resource Management—Key Points in Health Care

- Know the environment.
- Anticipate and plan.
- Call for help early.
- Establish leadership and followership with appropriate assertiveness.
- Distribute the workload. Use 10 s for 10 min concept.
- Mobilize all available resources.
- Communicate effectively—speak up.
- Use all available information.
- Prevent and manage fixation errors.
- Cross and double check. Never assume anything.
- Use cognitive aids.
- Reevaluate repeatedly. Apply 10 s for 10 min concept.
- Use good teamwork. Coordinate with and support others.
- Allocate attention wisely.
- Set priorities dynamically.

The key points are derived from the publication of Rall and Gaba in the 6th edition of Miller's Anesthesia[559] and presented here in their updated, current version.

Medicine [109,127] originally as anesthesia crisis resource management (ACRM). It was modified from the aviation-based CRM principles to better suit the medical needs. The ACRM-like curricula have since been adopted by training centers worldwide for a variety of health care domains.[346] A detailed description of the ACRM course is provided.[347] More in-depth information on CRM in anesthesiology is provided in related safety literature[11,59,123,127,348] and in both the first (1994) and second edition[14] of the pioneering *Crisis Management in Anesthesiology* textbook by Gaba, Fish, Howard, and now Burden. Note that the term crisis does not mean that these principles only apply in such dire settings; instead, they apply to everything in patient care but are most pronounced in challenging situations. In addition, the pioneers of ACRM wished to retain the CRM acronym without using terms like cockpit or crew that were not familiar in health care.

The 15 Key Principles of Crisis Resource Management

The key points of CRM as they apply to anesthesia care have been steadily updated and expanded over time and are based on the research presented in the earlier sections. The 15 CRM key principles by Rall and Gaba (see Box 6.5) cover the content of the five main elements of human-factor-related behavior as introduced earlier: communication, teamwork, task management, decision making, and situation awareness (see Fig. 6.5). The CRM principles translate the theoretical content of those areas that are known to be important into handy and very applicable action strategies for health care professionals.

Looking closely, one can recognize that the different principles overlap in their content and aim in many cases. This way, different members and professions of a team can apply different CRM principles at different points of time during patient care, minimizing the risk of an error or harm to occur. Clinicians are not expected to memorize these principles; rather, the authors expect that they will be embedded into regular training and practice (see later section "How Can Crisis Resource Management Related Skills be Learned, Trained and Maintained").

Some of the principles may seem obvious or self-evident. However, from our experience in clinical work and simulation team training it is in fact *not* trivial to apply these principles in the real world. In the following sections the 15 CRM key points are introduced in detail.

Know the Environment (CRM Key Point 1). Knowing fully the environment of work is critical. Environment refers to equipment, supplies, processes, and people, as well as how they vary from case to case, or from location to location, time of day or day of the week. This knowledge reduces stress in the case of an emergency and provides more available mental capacity and prudence to deal with the case. It is important to know who can be asked for help, how to mobilize help quickly, and how long it will take help to arrive. Like pilots, anesthesia personnel can be expected to know in detail how to use all equipment and supplies, which in anesthesiology includes anesthesia machine, defibrillator, infusion and blood administration system as well as how to troubleshoot them or switch to backup devices. The experience of the authors as clinicians and teachers in real and simulated anesthetic cases suggests that many anesthesia professionals lack sufficient depth of knowledge or skill in the operation of their equipment. That these systems are not always designed optimally from a human factors standpoint only increases the need for the individual clinician to thoroughly learn about and practice with all their features and pitfalls.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Know Your Environment

- Know how to call for help and how to call a code in the event of a cardiac arrest or other major emergency.
- Know who to call for different kinds of problems or emergencies; learn the emergency numbers (or they may be present on available cognitive aids)—always ask for it if uncertain.
- Use any spare time at work to delve into the details and practice with devices or features that are rarely used. Some equipment (e.g., fiberoptic scopes) can be appropriately used during routine cases to stay in practice with its use.
- Be involved with organizational processes of identifying and implementing needed changes in different aspects of the environment to improve quality and safety.

Anticipate and Plan (CRM Key Point 2). Anticipation is key for goal-oriented behavior and it also helps avoid unpleasant surprises. Anesthesia professionals routinely consider in advance the requirements of a case and plan for its key milestones. In addition, they must imagine what could go wrong and plan ahead for possible difficulties. Savvy anesthesia professionals expect and are prepared for the unexpected. And when it does strike, they then anticipate what could happen next and prepare for the worst. In this context people often talk about "staying ahead of the game" or "not falling behind." Resources can be mobilized and used on the fly, but it is better if their possible need is anticipated and planned for.

For any case, a sound plan matches the anesthetic technique to the patient's disease state, the technical requirements of surgery (e.g., position of the patient), the anesthesia equipment available, and the skills of the anesthesia professional. It also includes specific backup procedures and contingency plans to be used if the original plan fails or needs to be changed. Often, faulty plans can result when underlying disease states are missed or ignored because of inadequate data gathering during preoperative evaluation. Poor planning may also result from the hazardous attitude of invulnerability. Note that a faulty anesthetic plan will expose the patient to risk even if it is carried out perfectly.

For anticipating and planning to be most effective, it should ensure the coordination of all members of the patient care team. One way to do so during routine cases is the use of briefings.[217,328] Over the last 10 years there has been a major movement to formalize such briefings (e.g., mandatory preoperative briefing of the WHO Surgical Safety Checklist, Patient Safety Huddles).

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Anticipate and Plan Ahead

- In order to be prepared it is important to know what to potentially expect.
- For proper preparation it helps to imagine possible difficulties or complications before each case and mentally prepare for alternatives or actions. If in doubt it is better to err on the side of extra preparation.
- Perform anticipation and planning with your team: encourage colleagues to speak up; for challenging cases review in depth the primary plan (plan A) as well as the alternate plans B, C, D, etc.

Call for Help Early Early Enough to Make a Difference (CRM Key Point 3). Calling for help is associated with better individual and team performance.[75] Knowing one's own limitations and calling for help early are signs of rationality, strength, and patient-centeredness. Trying to handle everything alone or toughing out a critical situation is dangerous and unfair for everyone. The decision of when to call for help is complicated, but the key point is to do so early enough that the assistance can make a difference. A call so late that the patient is beyond rescue is futile. Knowing in advance who might be available and planning how you would use them will facilitate their utility.

Some typical triggers for calling for help that apply to any anesthesia professional at any level are (1) when there are too many tasks to do, (2) when the situation is already catastrophic (e.g., cardiac arrest, difficulty securing the airway), (3) when serious problems are becoming worse or are not responding to the usual maneuvers (or both), and (4) when you do not know what is going on.

For novice anesthesia professionals, calling for help very early is frequent as they are not expected to handle any critical aspect of a case (e.g., induction of anesthesia) without supervision or assistance. For experienced personnel it will be less frequent, as they are fully able to handle more things alone, but mobilizing help is still critically important. Many situations that would spin out of control can be readily resolved with appropriate and timely assistance.

Whereas prior research on these kinds of backing-up behavior has indicated that it is beneficial to teams, nothing is perfect. Barnes and colleagues published a critique of aspects of backing-up behavior in their article "Harmful help,"[349] citing for example decreased work on subsequent tasks after receiving high amounts of backup. A related concept is that of social shirking in which a task that is typically done separately by two people, to gain redundancy, instead is shirked (dropped) by one or both of them assuming that the other is taking care of it.[350]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Call for Help Early Enough to Make a Difference There are different conceptual categories of help. One can refer to them as hands help (to do things) versus head help (to assist in thinking). Providing bits of key information even during the call for help may assist incoming personnel to be thinking or planning for the possible needs. Calling for help will only succeed in sites with an organizational culture that approves and supports it (see later section on "safety culture"). If someone who calls for help appropriately but early gets criticized or even bullied by colleagues or senior leaders such pro-safety behaviors will likely be extinguished.

Establish Leadership and Followership With Appropriate Assertiveness (CRM Key Point 4). Leadership involves structuring the team, planning, deciding, and distributing tasks. Leadership does not imply knowing more than everyone else, doing everything alone, or putting other people down. Followership is as important as leadership. Team leaders and team followers are jointly responsible for the well-being of the patient (see earlier section on "speaking up"). Since speaking up requires the crossing of many personal and interpersonal hurdles (e.g., fear of repercussions or arising disadvantages),[307] team members may need explicit invitations to contribute and shows of appreciation by the team leader, sometimes referred to as leader inclusiveness.[351,352]

Wacker and Kolbe[82] wrote about leadership, followership, and teamwork in anesthesia:

> *"Intuitively and empirically, leadership and teamwork are essential for team performance, patient safety, and patient outcomes in anesthesia and perioperative care. [...] Current research supports the concept that little explicit leadership is usually required during standardized routine work, but active and even directive leadership is important in unexpected, novel, or stressful situations."* (p. 200)

In their work they give an overview of how leadership practices in anesthesiology optimally change (implicit vs. explicit team coordination) according to clinical work phases and special situations (routine situations with low or high task load; unexpected minor or major events; initiation and maintenance phase). Rosenman and colleagues give a systematic review of leadership and leadership training for health care action teams.[353,354]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Establish Leadership and Followership With Appropriate Assertiveness Whenever people work together, conflict can ensue. Anyone on the team may need to diffuse conflicts to focus the team on care of the patient. One approach is to explicitly ask the team to concentrate on *what* is right (for the patient), not on *who* is right. Conflicts should be settled after the clinical event is resolved. As the leader, strive to have an open ear for the concerns of team members and actively invite them to express their opinion (for example, *"Do you have any other suggestions...?"* or *"The patient is deteriorating—I think we need to intubate him; what do* *you all think?"*). Team members need the confirmation that concerns and encouragement are appreciated. Alternate views may or may not change the leader's approach, but if they are not voiced there is little chance for a modification.

Distribute the Workload. Use the 10-Seconds-for-10-Minutes Principle (CRM Key Point 5). One major aspect of strategic control of attention is the active management of workload. Rather than passively dealing with rising or falling workload, the anesthesia professional actively manages it. Among others, Schneider and Detweiler[240] and Stone et al.[130] described the theoretical basis for a variety of strategies of workload management. These strategies were addressed specifically for anesthesiology by several investigators.[108,111] The anesthesia professional actively manages workload by the following five techniques:

1. *Avoiding excessive workload situations* (i.e., by anticipating and planning, CRM key point 2; calling for help early, CRM key point 3). Experts may choose techniques and plans that reduce the workload (especially when their individual and team resources are limited), even when those plans are otherwise slightly less desirable from a technical standpoint. For example, a single anesthesia professional working alone may opt not to use a high-tech, high-workload monitor (e.g., TEE) for a given case because the effort to use it might outweigh the likely information gained.
2. *Distributing workload over time* (i.e., by setting priorities dynamically, CRM key point 15). The anesthesia professional can prepare for future tasks when the current load is low (preloading) and can delay or shed low-priority tasks when the workload is high (offloading). Resources that require a significant amount of workload to prepare, such as vasopressor infusions, are often made ready before the case starts. Many tasks are made up of several subtasks, each of which has a finite duration. Because close attention may not be required during each of these subtasks, they can sometimes be interleaved with a fixed amount of attention (multitasking/multiplexing, see earlier section).
3. *Distributing workload over personnel* (i.e., by applying the actual CRM key point 5; by coordinating the team, CRM key point 13). When workload cannot be distributed over time and when additional people are available, tasks can be distributed to them with certain considerations: (a) Some resources can be handled by the individual anesthesia professional, whereas others require additional personnel; (b) Some tasks are completely incompatible, for example any activity that requires being gowned and gloved will preclude that individual from performing nearly all other tasks; (c) In very time-sensitive situations distribution over personnel may be needed whereas for more routine situations a single individual may be sufficient for the same set of tasks.
4. *Changing the nature of the task.* The nature of a task is often not fixed. They can be executed to different standards of performance; as standards are loosened, the workload required to perform them is reduced. For example, during periods of massive blood loss, the anesthesia professional focuses primarily on administering blood and fluids and on monitoring blood pressure. The acceptable limits of blood pressure may be widened to reduce the need for more frequent interventions.
5. *Modifying distractions and offloading routine activities.* In addition to the attentional demands of the anesthesia professional's core tasks, any clinical environment may be full of distractions. Expert anesthesia professionals modulate the distractions by eliminating them when the workload is high and allowing them to occur when the workload is low (to improve morale and team building). Similarly certain routine tasks (e.g., entering non-critical information into the anesthesia record) or courtesy activities (e.g., tying the gown of a surgeon or nurse) may be performed by the anesthesia professional only when workload is low, but not when it rises.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Distribute the Workload A team leader should try to stay free of tasks in order to observe, gather information, coordinate, distribute, and delegate tasks. This is because mental capacity of human beings is limited—multitasking leads to often unrecognized errors. Within the operating room this may not be possible until several skilled personnel arrive to help. Even then, there can be some tasks which the leader decides to perform while still being at the center of the team; for example they might choose to be the person administering IV drugs linking decision to action without a communication step. There is no single arrangement of personnel or tasks that is perfect for every situation.

Appropriate assertiveness is important. A frequent observation in simulations and real cases is that anesthesia professionals may be too quiet or too casual, even for situations that demand urgency and assertiveness. But choosing the appropriate level and style of assertiveness is also important because being excessively assertive, especially for non-critical situations, will anger or annoy co-workers and lead to suboptimal results.

Exercising effective followership (see CRM key point 4, exercise leadership and followership with appropriate assertiveness), team members should also look actively for work that needs to be done. The team leader should not have to think of and order every single task or activity. Proper communication will be needed to coordinate the work (see CRM key principle 7, Communicate effectively).

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Leaders should try to sensibly prioritize tasks to single individuals or to delegate one task at a time to each person, for example, *"Mary, go and call for help. Peter, go and get the emergency cart. Michael, draw up epinephrine 100 µg per mL."* Team members should speak up if they get too much work allocated at once or when the priorities aren't clear (e.g., *"I can only do one of those things at a time, which should I do first?"*).

We always have 10 seconds! Patient care is very rarely a high-speed discipline where seconds matter—initiating CPR is one example. Usually patients deteriorate in minutes to hours. Despite the stress and intrinsic pressure to perform immediate actions ("do something, do something now!") there is often some time to think of a plan. Trying to be too fast may lead to avoidable errors.

To address this Rall and colleagues developed the 10-seconds-for-10-minutes principle, meaning, metaphorically,

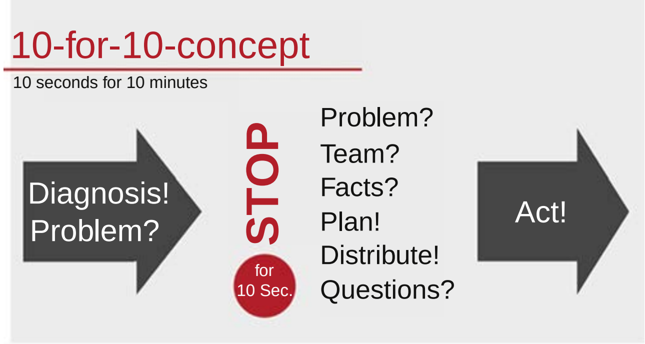


Fig. 6.8 The “10-seconds-for-10-minutes-principle”—“10-for-10.”[563] When *making a diagnosis* or *feeling stuck,* perform the 10-seconds-for-10-minutes team timeout and check to see “what the biggest problem is right now” *(Problem)*. Clarify this with all available team members *(Opinions)*. Gather the information available *(Facts)*. Plan the treatment, including the desired sequence of actions. Distribute the workload by assigning tasks and responsibilities. *Check actively* with all team members about any further concerns of suggestions. Then act as an organized team. (Figure provided by M. Rall.)

spending 10 seconds in order to achieve a better coordinated team for the next 10 minutes. Stopping for symbolically 10 seconds in an emergency feels counterintuitive, but once used to it, it is a very effective way to improve performance and patient safety. The 10-for-10 principle has spread to many health care settings (anesthesia, ICU, prehospital, etc.).

The concept can be extended to mean that sometimes an investment of time in an activity—even many minutes—can yield big dividends in various ways (including time saved) in the future. The benefit of strategic investment of time appears to be greatest in key situations, such as (a) the making of a provisional diagnosis and the beginning of treatment, (b) planning for complex interventions, or (c) when the team feels stuck because the initial diagnosis seems incorrect, or when the usual treatment of a known problem is not working (Fig. 6.8).

Research findings show that information sharing (see also CRM key principle 8, Use all available information) can be enhanced by structuring team discussions.[355] The 10-for-10 principle offers one way to encourage and facilitate such deliberations.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

When applying the 10-for-10 principle, it helps to use a key word or a key sentence for the team to pause for a moment in order to initiate the 10-for-10 break (e.g., *“Stop, everybody pause for a moment and let’s summarize where we stand…”* For the 10-for-10 to work it is important for everyone to stop any non-critical action and for the leader to explicitly invite the whole team to participate (e.g., *“I want you all to stop whatever you are doing and I want to shortly summarize together where we stand. This seems to me like an anaphylactic reaction. What do you all think? Any other diagnoses in the differential?”* The 10-for-10 principle in general can be initiated by any team member, but it remains the decision of the team leader whether or when to execute it.

Mobilize All Available Resources (CRM Key Point 6). In case of an (imminent) emergency, everyone and everything necessary to help the patient should be mobilized, including personnel (CRM key principle 3, Call for help early), equipment, and organizational structures (radiology, other medical specialties, etc.). It is important to know which resources are available and with what delay (CRM key principles 1, Know the environment and 2, Anticipate and plan). On the human side, the anesthesia professional’s knowledge and skills, constrained by human factors and one’s own human deficiencies, is the most important resource, complemented by the helpers who can be brought to bear.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Mobilize All Available Resources When applicable think of all the team members, not just the anesthesia professionals or technicians. In a tough situation everyone should be willing to help but they do not always know how. The other professionals have many skills, some unique. Even relatively untrained personnel (housekeeping staff or orderlies, for example) may be able to help in some tasks.

Communicate Effectively—Speak Up (CRM Key Point 7). Good teamwork depends on everybody’s being on the same page and on coordinating efforts. Communication is a very important vehicle to achieve good teamwork. It is like the glue that holds the disparate members together. Even though anesthesia professionals speak to each other all day long, effective communication is actually challenging, especially in a stressful situation. Based on research showing that teams unfortunately tend to communicate ineffectively,[356-358] effective communication refers to both content and form.[286] Many aspects make communication difficult: for example unspecified assumptions, lack of a shared mental model, hierarchy, acoustics, high mental workload, and time pressure (see earlier sections).

When dealing with complex situations under time pressure, people tend to “mean” a lot, but “say” little. Fig. 6.6 shows the closed loop communication, a systematic model of proper communication, ensuring that other team members know what one means, says, understands, and does in order to create shared mental models.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Communicate Effectively—Speak Up In order to communicate assertively and effectively, these approaches help:

- Do not ordinarily raise your voice, but do so if necessary to get others’ attention.
- State your commands or requests as clearly and as precisely as possible. This is very difficult in a crisis, and it takes practice.
- Address people by their names if possible or search for eye contact before speaking. Despite the fact that anesthesia professionals hate to be called “anesthesia” (i.e., address people by function) routinely, there is not much choice but to do likewise to others in a crisis when you do not know their names. Avoid unclear assignments into thin air like *“Can someone monitor the saturation…,” “Someone has to call for help…,” “I need more propofol…,” “We need more fluids…”*
- Use closed loop communication (see also earlier section):
  - Read back —If you received an assignment, repeat what you heard (i.e., Task: “Peter, I need epinephrine 10 µg per mL.” Answer: “Ok Mary, I’ll draw up epinephrine 10 µg per mL.”

  - Feedback—Give feedback when you are done with an assignment and also give feedback on what you did, even if it did not work or if it is not satisfying (i.e., "Mary, I got the defibrillator. It's right behind you. Do you want me to set it up?").
  - Get back—If someone does not reply or react to you, they might not have heard it or were busy. Ask further questions, wait for acknowledgment, and wait to speak until they are ready to listen.
  - Ask back—If you did not hear what the other person was saying or if you did not understand the assigned task, you should clarify matters.
- Accustom yourself to using the correct dosage indication when delegating the drawing up or the administration of medication (i.e., say *"Give 20 mg of propofol"* instead of *"Give 20 of propofol"* or say *"Draw up epinephrine 100 μg per mL"* instead of *"Draw up epinephrine."*
- Ask questions, especially if you do not know how to proceed. *"Ok, team. Right now I don't have any further ideas how to proceed. What should we do next?."*
- If you explain your thoughts or objections, this will help the team to understand better. For example, do not just say *"Get the defibrillator"* (thinking to yourself *"get the defibrillator so that we're prepared if we need it")*. Say instead what you mean: *"Get the defibrillator. We don't need it yet, but I want to be prepared in case we do…."*

Use All Available Information (CRM Key Point 8). Anesthesiology is particularly complex because information must be integrated from many different sources. In emergencies anesthesiologists often have only limited and indirect information on the patient, including those immediately at hand (the patient, non-invasive monitors, the anesthesia record), secondary sources such as the patient's chart, and external sources such as cognitive aids (see CRM key principle 11) or the Internet. Information provided to nurses and physicians who join an ongoing emergency can be unreliable.[355,356] The simulation study of Bogenstätter and co-workers showed that 18% of the information given to newcomers was inaccurate.[356]

Because of the various sources of unreliability of information (artifacts, transients, and miscommunications) various steps of verification and data fusion are needed to provide the best basis for problem recognition, identification, diagnosis, and management (as indicated in the cognitive process model of the anesthesiologist—see earlier section).

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Use All Available Information Be aware of the flow of time when considering information streams. Anesthesia can be very dynamic. Vital signs that were satisfactory three minutes ago can change quickly. For periodic non-invasive monitoring—say an automatic blood pressure cuff—we are constantly trading off the rate of recurrence of the measurement against the potential complications of too frequent use. The typical 5-minute interval will leave room for hidden changes should the patient become unstable, a problem exacerbated by the higher likelihood that the next measurement will be more difficult for the device to make adding more time to obtain a reading. This of course is why we sometimes opt to invest time, effort, and a small risk to place an arterial catheter for continuous measurement.

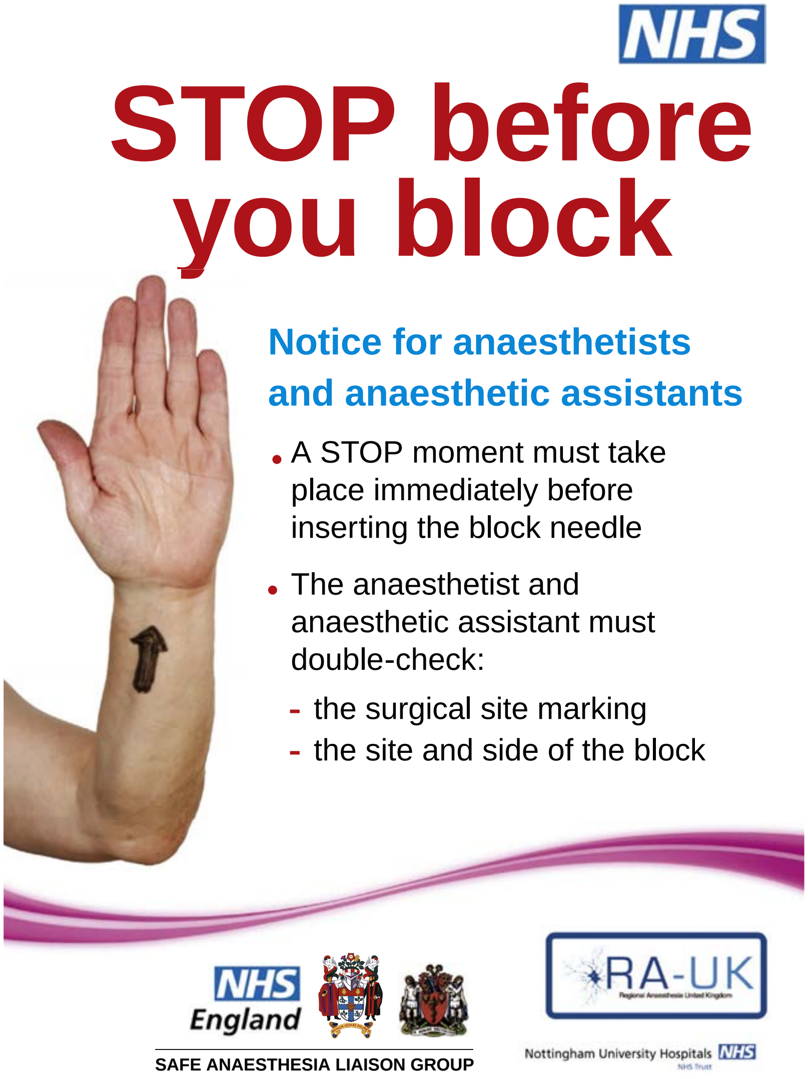
Prevent and Manage Fixation Errors (CRM Key Point 9). Human decisions and actions are based on an instantaneous mental model of the current situation (see earlier section on "core cognitive process model of anesthesia professional"). If the model is erroneous, the decisions and hence the actions will probably be wrong. Faulty reevaluation, inadequate plan adaptation, and loss of situation awareness each can result in the type of human error termed fixation error.[138] A fixation error describes a mental model of a situation that is persistently faulty despite sufficient evidence to correct it. A fixation error therefore leads to a persistent failure to revise a diagnosis or plan, even though readily available evidence suggests that a revision is necessary.

Three main types of fixation errors are recognized[137-139] and described in Box 6.6. Each represents an extreme relative to another; it is usually advantageous to aim for the sweet spot between the extremes. For example, regarding "This and Only This" versus "Everything But This," usually people want to hone in on the one most likely cause of a problem in order to properly address it, while still keeping an open mind for other possibilities. Occasionally the extreme is required—if there is no pulse, initially CPR must happen with no delay (this and only this) regardless of the underlying cause. Conversely, sometimes one must delay treating a possible cause so as to find out what is really going on. And if we never act as if everything is OK every routine case would turn into chaos. One's behavior must be fluid so as to navigate optimally toward or away from the middle ground as needed.

BOX 6.6 Fixation Errors

Three main types of fixation errors[137-139] are recognized and should be understood:

- Fixation Error # 1: *"This and only this" or "cognitive tunnel vision."* In this type of error, attention is focused on only one possibility. Other alternatives (possibly or actually correct) are not taken into account (i.e., There is profound hypotension and tachycardia; the patient must be hypovolemic, there must be bleeding [disregarding anaphylaxis, cardiogenic shock, excessive vasodilator administration, etc.]). The available evidence is interpreted to fit the initial diagnosis or attention is allocated to a minor aspect of a major problem.
- Fixation Error # 2: *"Everything but this."* In this type of error, attention is persistently focused on the search for further (irrelevant) information or diagnosis resulting in the failure to treat a probable cause and commit to the definitive treatment of a major problem. (i.e., Hmm… there is tachycardia, maybe it's light anesthesia, maybe it's hypovolemia, maybe it's… and there's hypercapnia maybe it's the CO_2 absorber, maybe it's… and there's fever, maybe the patient is septic, and… without ever committing to either definitively rule out, or else treat for—"actually all these signs point to malignant hyperthermia so I'm going to treat it as such").
- Fixation Error # 3: *"Everything is OK."* This is the persistent belief that no problem is occurring in spite of plentiful evidence that it is. In this type of error, all abnormalities may be attributed to artifact or transients. Possible (pre-) signs of a catastrophic situation are dismissed. (i.e., "The blood pressure cannot be so low. Probably the blood pressure cuff does not measure right. That is alright."). Another form of this type of fixation error is the failure to actively transition from routine mode into emergency mode when the situation demands it. A failure to declare an emergency or to accept help when facing a major crisis may stem from denial that a serious situation is actually occurring.



NHS

STOP before you block

Notice for anaesthetists and anaesthetic assistants

- A STOP moment must take place immediately before inserting the block needle
- The anaesthetist and anaesthetic assistant must double-check:
  - the surgical site marking
  - the site and side of the block

NHS England

SAFE ANAESTHESIA LIAISON GROUP

RA-UK Regional Anaesthesia United Kingdom

Nottingham University Hospitals NHS Trust

Fig. 6.9 "Stop before you block" to avoid wrong site block. Reproduced here with permission from the Safe Anaesthesia Liaison Group (SALG) and Regional Anaesthesia UK, but SALG has not reviewed this as a whole.

When working alone, an anesthesia professional can deliberately change perspectives (physically or mentally) and look for information not fitting the picture of the situation, as though freshly entering the room. Using the aforementioned 10-for-10 principle (CRM key principle 5) can be helpful by actively involving all team members and facilitating other ideas, diagnoses, and objections. Calling for head help from another anesthesia professional unaware of the previous assumptions can break fixation errors; it is best to try not to excessively bias their view of the situation during their incoming briefing. Remember that the burden of proof is on you. For every abnormality you must assume that the patient is not OK until you satisfy yourself otherwise. Similarly, you must assume that any abnormality represents the worst possible diagnosis until you can determine what is actually going on.

Cross and Double Check—Never Assume Anything (CRM Key Point 10). Cross checking and double checking are error-reduction strategies. Cross checking means correlating information from different sources. For example, there are often three independent sources of information on the patient's heart rate (electrocardiogram [ECG], pulse oximetry, and blood pressure monitor) and two of cardiac rhythm (ECG and pulse oximetry). Cross checking across people can be useful both for information that depends on human perception (e.g., auscultation) and for determining which actions were or were not completed. Human memory of actions delegated and performed is vulnerable, especially when interruptions have occurred.

Double checking means to verify information and/or equipment if it is very critical or if in doubt. In brief: to *never assume anything.* The more important or vital the information, the more certainty is appropriate. When chosen therapies do not seem to be working an important double check is whether the intended processes are really happening. For example to double check the proper performance of a critical infusion pump means to check its settings, operation, source of power, and the lines and stopcocks from it to the patient.

Another safety strategy using double checking in anesthesia is the *"Stop-before-you-block"* (SB4YB) campaign (for more information, free poster, and implementation package see www.rcoa.ac.uk/standards-of-clinical-practice/wrong-site-block). The "block time out" campaign was initiated by the Nottingham University Hospital in the UK in 2010 and by now has been adopted worldwide (poster see Fig. 6.9). Meanwhile, several extensions to this strategy have been published.[359,360]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

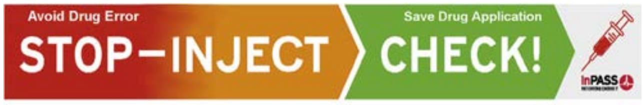
Cross Check and Double Check—Never Assume Anything A related safety strategy is *"Stop-Inject.—Check!"* (Fig. 6.10). In order to prevent medication errors, this strategy is very applicable. Whenever you intend to give an injection, do not inject ("STOP—INJECT") —and at a crucial point of no return think for a few seconds about the injection ("CHECK")—correct any issues—and only then continue with the injection safely. Because if the drug is in, it's in. This strategy is equally applicable to other interventions which cannot be reversed.

Use Cognitive Aids (CRM Key Point 11). The human factors literature demonstrates conclusively that cognitive functions such as memory and arithmetic calculation are vulnerable to error or even complete failure, especially during periods of stress or time pressure. Cognitive aids—such as posters, algorithms, checklists, handbooks, calculators, personal apps, and advice hotlines—come in different forms but serve similar functions. They offload memory and safeguard the correct recall of critical items. Cognitive aids ensure that critical steps are not missed. And they also help ensure the use of current best practices because during a crisis, people sometimes revert to what they originally learned, not what is the latest recommendation. Cognitive aids make knowledge explicit and applicable in the particular situation rather than only being implicit and in someone's brain.

In anesthesiology and emergency care, emergency manuals/crisis checklists, smartphone apps, electronic health record systems, posters, and algorithms are the most common kinds of cognitive aids used. The Internet has become an increasingly useful cognitive aid and may be available on computer terminals, tablets, and smartphones in hospital settings.

The use of cognitive aids is relatively easy and they help to prevent missing critical steps that can be deadly.

In 2003, the US Department of Veterans Affairs National Center for Patient Safety developed an emergency checklist set of 16 serious perioperative emergencies, in concert with the VA Palo Alto/Stanford group, and placed a set of these checklists on plastic laminated sheets in every OR of 105 hospitals. A study of the use of the VA cognitive aids suggested, that they were beneficial to VA anesthesia professionals.[144] Other research has demonstrated that (1) medical and technical performance is better during simulated crisis when a cognitive aid is used [145,361,362] and (2) it can be very helpful to the anesthesia professional leading the team if a reader is present whose job is to read the relevant aid to the team and keep track of whether the relevant tasks have been performed.[363,364]



© Marcus Rall, InPASS

Fig. 6.10 Using stop moments as a valuable patient safety tool for irreversible, critical points of no return, like for example "Stop-Inject. Check!". To avoid unnecessary drug errors, all who intend to inject drugs should take two seconds before injecting a drug ("Stop-Inject"), then confirm ("Check") that the injection is safe to perform (right patient, right medication, right dose, right route, etc....), and only after this short confirmation inject the drug. The figure shows the slogan printed on a sticker that, for example, can be put on medical equipment carts to serve as a daily patient safety memorizer for medical personnel.

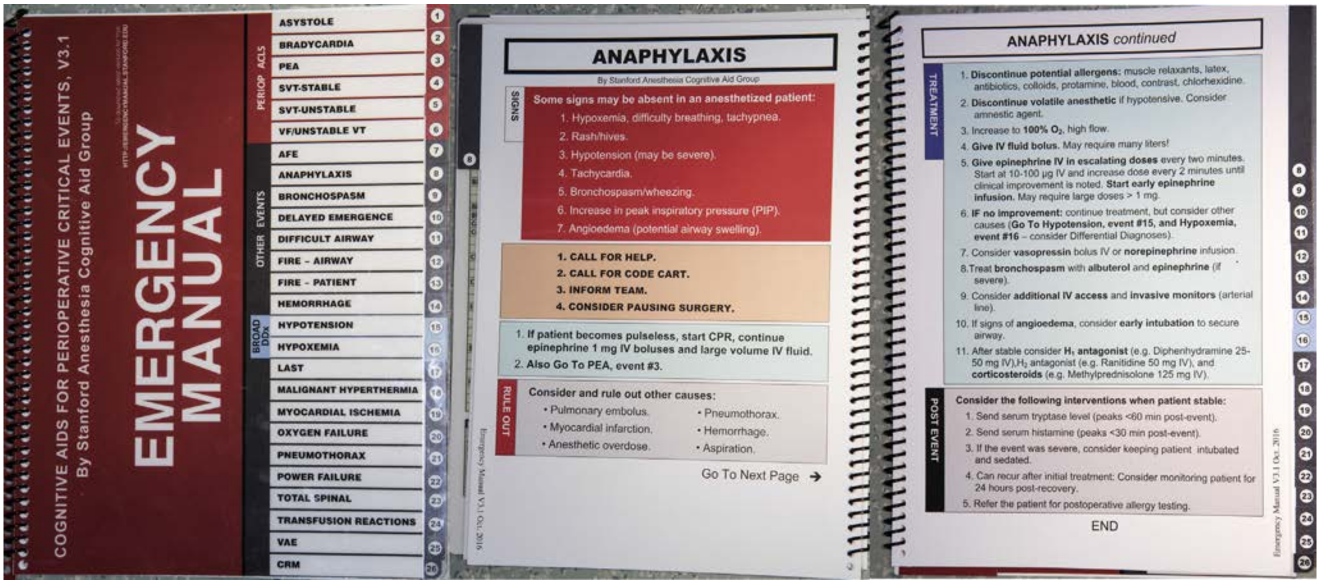
For example, Arriaga and colleagues demonstrated in a high-fidelity simulation study that the use of emergency checklists was associated with significant improvement in the management of operating-room crises, suggesting that checklists for use during operating-room crises have the potential to improve care.[145] In the study, 17 operating-room teams from three institutions (one academic medical center, two community hospitals) participated in 106 simulated surgical-crisis scenarios. Each team was randomly assigned to manage half the scenarios with a set of crisis checklists and the remaining scenarios from memory alone. Every team performed better when the crisis checklists were available than when they were not. Failure to adhere to lifesaving processes was less common when checklists were available (6% of steps missed when checklist available vs. 23% when unavailable). 97% of participants reported that they would want to use a checklist if one of these crises occurred during an operation. Further studies concerning this matter have been undertaken.[300,365-368]

Hepner and colleagues give an up-to-date overview of the history, current role, and future directions of cognitive aids in the operating room.[369] Marshall provides a review of the different cognitive aids existing in anesthesia based on a literature review and summarizes recommendations in cognitive aid design, testing, and implementation for the future.[370]

EXAMPLES OF KNOWN COGNITIVE AIGS. There is a growing movement toward the effective use of cognitive aids like checklists and emergency manuals in the operating room, both for routine and crisis situations. Following those movements there have been some recent large checklist implementation processes in health care:

One movement, for example, is the European "Helsinki Declaration on Patient Safety in Anaesthesiology," a shared European opinion of what currently is both worthy and achievable to improve patient safety in anesthesiology.[371] The declaration demands that *"all institutions providing peri-operative anaesthesia care to patients should have protocols [...] for managing [...] difficult/failed intubation, anaphylaxis, local anesthetic toxicity, massive haemorrhage [...]."*

Perhaps the most widely used checklist is the WHO Surgical Safety Checklist that was launched in 2009 by the WHO's World Alliance for Patient Safety accompanying the "Safe Surgery Saves Lives" campaign. A global study[372] showed that the rate of death was 1.5% before the WHO checklist was introduced and declined to 0.8% afterward. Inpatient complications occurred in 11.0% of patients at baseline and in 7.0% after introduction of the WHO checklist. However, there exist several challenges concerning the application of and adherence to the WHO Surgical Safety Checklist, represented by a study that assessed the application attitudes and compliance of the WHO checklist as perceived by anesthesia professionals in Germany.[373] Roughly 60% of participants had knowledge of the theoretical framework. Sign in, patient ID, and surgical site were checked > 95% of the time, allergies addressed in nearly 90%, expected difficult airway in 65%, and availability of blood products by 70%. A total of 85% of participants advocated for the timeout to include all persons present in the operating room, which was the



COGNITIVE AIDS FOR PERIOPERATIVE CRITICAL EVENTS, V3.1
By Stanford Anesthesia Cognitive Aid Group

EMERGENCY MANUAL

PERIOP ACLS
1. ASYSTOLE
2. BRADYCARDIA
3. PEA
4. SVT-STABLE
5. SVT-UNSTABLE
6. VF/UNSTABLE VT

OTHER EVENTS
7. AFE
8. ANAPHYLAXIS
9. BRONCHOSPASM
10. DELAYED EMERGENCE
11. DIFFICULT AIRWAY
12. FIRE – AIRWAY
13. FIRE – PATIENT
14. HEMORRHAGE

BROAD DDx
15. HYPOTENSION
16. HYPOXEMIA

17. LAST
18. MALIGNANT HYPERTHERMIA
19. MYOCARDIAL ISCHEMIA
20. OXYGEN FAILURE
21. PNEUMOTHORAX
22. POWER FAILURE
23. TOTAL SPINAL
24. TRANSFUSION REACTIONS
25. VAE
26. CRM

ANAPHYLAXIS

By Stanford Anesthesia Cognitive Aid Group

SIGNS

Some signs may be absent in an anesthetized patient:

1. Hypoxemia, difficulty breathing, tachypnea.
2. Rash/hives.
3. Hypotension (may be severe).
4. Tachycardia.
5. Bronchospasm/wheezing.
6. Increase in peak inspiratory pressure (PIP).
7. Angioedema (potential airway swelling).

1. CALL FOR HELP.
2. CALL FOR CODE CART.
3. INFORM TEAM.
4. CONSIDER PAUSING SURGERY.

1. **If patient becomes pulseless, start CPR, continue epinephrine 1 mg IV boluses and large volume IV fluid.**
2. **Also Go To PEA, event #3.**

RULE OUT

Consider and rule out other causes:

- Pulmonary embolus.
- Myocardial infarction.
- Anesthetic overdose.
- Pneumothorax.
- Hemorrhage.
- Aspiration.

Go To Next Page →

Emergency Manual V3.1 Oct. 2016

ANAPHYLAXIS *continued*

TREATMENT

1. **Discontinue potential allergens:** muscle relaxants, latex, antibiotics, colloids, protamine, blood, contrast, chlorhexidine.
2. **Discontinue volatile anesthetic** if hypotensive. Consider amnestic agent.
3. Increase to **100% O_2**, high flow.
4. **Give IV fluid bolus.** May require many liters!
5. **Give epinephrine IV in escalating doses** every two minutes. Start at 10-100 µg IV and increase dose every 2 minutes until clinical improvement is noted. **Start early epinephrine infusion.** May require large doses > 1 mg.
6. **IF no improvement:** continue treatment, but consider other causes (**Go To Hypotension, event #15, and Hypoxemia, event #16** – consider Differential Diagnoses).
7. Consider **vasopressin** bolus IV or **norepinephrine** infusion.
8. Treat **bronchospasm** with **albuterol** and **epinephrine** (if severe).
9. Consider **additional IV access** and **invasive monitors** (arterial line).
10. If signs of **angioedema**, consider **early intubation** to secure airway.
11. After stable consider **H_1 antagonist** (e.g. Diphenhydramine 25-50 mg IV),H_2 antagonist (e.g. Ranitidine 50 mg IV), and **corticosteroids** (e.g. Methylprednisolone 125 mg IV).

POST EVENT

Consider the following interventions when patient stable:

1. Send serum tryptase level (peaks <60 min post-event).
2. Send serum histamine (peaks <30 min post-event).
3. If the event was severe, consider keeping patient intubated and sedated.
4. Can recur after initial treatment: Consider monitoring patient for 24 hours post-recovery.
5. Refer the patient for postoperative allergy testing.

END

Emergency Manual V3.1 Oct. 2016

Fig. 6.11 Emergency Manual developed by the Stanford Anesthesia Cognitive Aid Group. (A) Front cover of the emergency manual. On the front page it shows the emergency events, thus making it easy to jump to the right page in the case of an emergency. The manual can be hung by its strong metal grommet. Experience shows that clinicians must be familiarized with the manual in advance for optimal use. (B and C) Two pages of the emergency manual for "Anaphylaxis." The content and the layout have been optimized through graphic layout and careful choice of words for easy and ergonomic use in actual operating room emergencies. (Photographs by David Gaba).

case in 57%. A total of 41% stated that the timeout was only performed between anesthetist and surgeon; in 17% of cases, the patient was simultaneously draped and/or surgically scrubbed.

Furthermore there exists a checklist for the significant reduction of catheter-/central-line-related bloodstream infections (CLABSI) in the ICU from Levy and colleagues.[374] And there exist several checklists for handovers and patient-care transition (see also earlier section "Effective Communication and Delegation of Tasks").[295,298,300] A survey[368] on the perception of anesthesia providers from a large academic U.S. institution revealed that printed or electronic aids for patient care transition and shift handoffs in general were valued (61% and 58%, respectively). To prepare for and perform routine anesthesia care, 40% of providers claimed interest in using checklists, however, the interest differed significantly with clinical experience: while both the least and most experienced providers valued aids for routine anesthesia (54% and 50%), only 29% of providers with 2 to 10 years of anesthesia experience claimed interest in using them. Distraction from patient care and decreased efficiency were concerns expressed for the use of routine checklists (27% and 31%, respectively).

Other checklists used especially in anesthesia are the checklist for the anesthesia machine (see earlier section "Pre-use Checkout of Equipment") and emergency checklists or emergency manuals.

EMERGENCY CHECKLISTS/EMERGENCY MANUALS. One known example of a cognitive aid is the use of emergency checklists or emergency manuals, also known by similar terms including emergency response protocols or critical event algorithms. The Stanford Anesthesia Cognitive Aid Group (SACAG) has conducted many years of simulation testing of cognitive aids meant for real-time intraoperative use,[362,363] with increasing levels of optimization through graphic design. SACAG has produced the *Emergency Manual: Cognitive Aids for Perioperative Critical Events ("Stanford Emergency Manual")* (at the time of this writing in version 3.1, see Fig. 6.11). An earlier version of the emergency manual was published as an appendix in the textbook "Manual of Clinical Anesthesiology."[375] In 2013 these cognitive aids were placed in all anesthetizing locations in the Stanford family of teaching hospitals.

The *Stanford Emergency Manual* is available free electronically throughout the world as a downloadable portable document format (PDF) file under a Creative Commons Attribution; Non-Commercial; No-Derivatives License, allowing free non-commercial use of the document as is, without unauthorized modifications, and with attribution of the author (emergencymanual.stanford.edu). Users are able to choose to print out the *Emergency Manual* locally or using any commercial printer; instructions are given on choices of printing paper (e.g., nonflammable and able to be wiped with disinfectant), binding, and placement in perioperative patient care settings.

An equally well-known emergency checklist was developed by the Ariadne Laboratory affiliated with the Brigham and Women's Hospital; it is also freely available and widely disseminated. The Society for Pediatric Anesthesia has a web-based and iPhone app emergency manual that is widely used in that subspecialty arena. A commercially available anesthesia crisis manual designed as a book was published in 2011 by David Borshoff with support of both the European and Australian Societies of Anesthesiology (for details, see www.theacm.com.au). The textbook *Crisis Management in Anesthesiology* while not optimized for real-time use, can also be used in real-time and contains a rather large number (99) of perioperative events.

A recent study compared the impact of paper versus electronic cognitive aids in a simulation-based study, suggesting that the mode of information does not affect performance.[376] The movement for the dissemination and use of such cognitive aids is growing. An Emergency

Manual Implementation Collaborative (EMIC) has been started, bringing together several leading centers in this arena to facilitate the development, testing, dissemination, adoption, and use of these resources. The most recent publications of the Collaborative emphasize the importance for implementation institutions to not only provide cognitive aids such as emergency manuals in accessible places, but also incorporate training mechanisms to increase clinicians' awareness, familiarity, cultural acceptance, and planned clinical use.[377] An implementation toolkit is provided by the Collaborative free of charge (www.implementingemergencychecklists.org/). The EMIC website provides links to obtain many of the available emergency manuals, most of which are non-commercial and free to download.

Collectively across all the relevant emergency cognitive aids for anesthesiology it is believed [DG] that as of late 2018 on the order of 400,000 have been downloaded or disseminated.

Conflicting data concerning the effectiveness of cognitive aids as described in the literature do not necessarily suggest that there is no benefit but suggest that the success of those tools requires complex cultural and organizational change efforts, not just providing the cognitive aid in perioperative settings. In research where no difference was found, the cognitive aids are almost always found to have been introduced without education (an approach termed "print and plunk" by experts on such aids) or to have flaws in their physical design.[370] In 2013 multiple papers and editorials in a single issue of *Anesthesia and Analgesia* discussed a number of important issues about cognitive aids and their implementation.[370,378-381] In the article "Cognitive aids: Time for a change?," Jenkins [382] among other things, draws attention to the fact that besides having checklists ready to use in OR, using them during OR team training for common emergencies would seem a logical next step.

The key elements of the successful implementation of cognitive aids is (1) a culture that embraces cognitive aids not as a sign of clinical incompetence, but as a tool to improve care (see later section on "Safety Culture"); (2) an organizational implementation process like, for example, suggested emergency checklist implementation toolkit (www.implementingemergencychecklists.org); and (3) a proper checklist development and design. Several publications give an overview of the challenges associated with development and implementation of checklists and cognitive aids in general.[383-390]

Reevaluate Repeatedly—Apply the 10-Seconds-for-10-Minutes Principle (CRM Key Point 12). Anesthesia in critical situations is a very dynamic activity. What is correct now may be wrong in the next minute. Some parameters may change slowly over time, and subtle changes are especially difficult to perceive. Therefore, it is critically important to perform a repeated reevaluation of the patient. Reevaluation describes the continual process of assessing the situation and updating one's individual, and at certain stages also the team's, mental model of the situation.

The process of continually reevaluating in order to update the assessment of the situation and monitoring the efficacy of chosen actions is a major part of situation awareness. No crisis manager can be certain of success at any stage in the event. It is crucial to keep thinking ahead (anticipate and plan, CRM principle 2). Do not assume that anything about the situation is certain—double-check all critical items (CRM principle 10). Trend monitoring can be helpful to detect slow but insidious changes.

Questions that should be raised repeatedly to maintain situation awareness and to check whether one is still treating the most serious problem most effectively include:

- Was the initial assessment of the situation or diagnosis correct?
- Did the actions have any effect?
- Is the problem getting better, or is it getting worse?
- Does the patient have any side effects resulting from previous actions?
- Are there any new problems or other problems that were missed before?
- What further developments can be expected in the (near) future?

One way to reevaluate the situation is the regular application of the 10-seconds-for-10-minutes principle at specific stages during the treatment of a crisis (see Fig. 6.8).

Use Good Teamwork—Coordinate With and Support Others (CRM Key Point 13). Teamwork is a very complex topic. But research demonstrates that quality of teamwork influences clinical performance in anesthesia.[326] Some of the principles of teamwork have already been introduced earlier (see section "Teamwork"). Key principles of teamwork in dynamic situations have been delineated, especially in the work of Eduardo Salas, Nancy Cooke, and colleagues.[391-395] Good teamwork depends on different attitudes and characteristics, some of which were already discussed in CRM principle 4, Exercise Leadership and Followership with Assertiveness, and CRM principle 7, Communicate Effectively—Speak Up.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Implement Principles of Good Teamwork—Coordinate With and Support Others Dream teams are made, not born. Dream teams support each other continuously, with everybody looking after each other in a professional manner, the safety and well-being of the patient being highest priority. In contrast to a widespread opinion, good teamwork does not depend on team members liking each other (although it probably helps). Do all players of champion sports teams like each other, or all the time? Probably not. Nevertheless, they function as a high-performing team because they share the common goal to win. Patients are depending on perioperative personnel to be part of a team with emotionless professionalism, using principles of good teamwork, regardless of their personal affinities.

Coordination within a team ideally begins when it gathers. If all members know about the tasks to be done and their roles during these tasks (briefing, see also CRM principle 7), coordination is easy. Short briefings at the beginning of certain tasks as well as short debriefings afterward are common in other complex and dynamic domains, such as aviation, and they are becoming more common in health care. Research in health care indicates that they seem worth the time spent.[217,328] During the acute phase of a crisis, it is valuable to spend a small amount of time to coordinate the team's activities (see e.g., 10-for-10 principle CRM key point 5). Information sharing in teams is important to team performance, cohesion, decision satisfaction, and knowledge integration.[355]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Surgeons are a key part of the team. Sometimes anesthesia professionals act as though they have only two options in dealing with surgeons when a problem occurs—keep quiet or demand immediate cessation of surgery. Actually there are many options (see also: Communicate Effectively) for coordinating activities and concerns. You should notify the surgeons and nurses of ongoing problems and concisely convey to them the nature of the problem, what you'd like them to do (or not do), and the immediate plan. Conversely, you should be prepared to help the surgeons or nurses in any reasonable way when they encounter problems, as long as you can also maintain safe assessment of the patient and control of the anesthetic course.

Allocate Attention Wisely (CRM Key Point 14). As described earlier, several performance-shaping factors (see section on "performance-shaping factors") and hazardous attitudes (see "Attitudes of Professionals as a Crucial Part of Human Performance and Patient Safety", and Table 6.3) can globally degrade your vigilance. However, there are other factors that can specifically degrade your vigilance whenever they exist in a case: one is distractions and interruptions (see sections on "Interruptions and Distractions"). The other is high task load (see section "Performance as Related to Task Density").

Referring again to the core cognitive process model of the anesthesia professional introduced earlier (see earlier section), empiric studies have clearly demonstrated that attention sharing is needed among cognitive levels, among tasks, and often among problems. The intensive demands on the anesthesia professional's attention could easily swamp the available mental resources. Human attention is very limited, and multitasking as well as multiplexing may become very difficult and unsuccessful in a stressful situation.

Attention must be dynamically allocated where it is needed by a dynamic process of constantly prioritizing the tasks requiring your attention. One should handle critical items quickly and leave the less critical problems for when the patient's status has been stabilized. On the other hand when the task load is low, one should deal even with minor problems because they might otherwise evolve to something more significant. One can also use times when the workload is low to prepare for upcoming high workload periods, such as emergence from anesthesia or termination of cardiopulmonary bypass.

Another way to allocate attention is to develop rhythms and scan patterns. For example, always asking questions during the preoperative evaluation in the same sequence makes it less likely to forget items. The ABC mnemonic that equals airway, breathing, and circulation (now CAB mnemonic per U.S. American Heart Association guidelines) is another example that is based on this principle. Other strategies include alternating between focusing on details and focusing on the big picture, and offloading certain responsibilities, tasks, or information streams to other qualified team members (CRM principle 5), with periodic update to the team leader about the situation (CRM principle 13).

Set Priorities Dynamically (CRM Key Point 15). Dynamic situations demand dynamically changing decisions and actions based on new information and constant reevaluation (CRM principle 12). What was not a right move at one time may become the right move at another. In addition, having one solution to an obvious problem does not guarantee that it is the best solution or that only one problem exists. Some goals are always of the highest priority—ensuring adequate oxygenation and perfusion of critical organs being the most crucial—and can never be neglected. In order for team members to understand changing priorities of the team leader, it is important to communicate dynamic priorities effectively (CRM principle 7) and to support each other the best way possible as a team (CRM principle 4 and 13). Sometimes people stick to their first decisions and actions (CRM principle 9).

Evidence for the Benefit of Crisis Resource Management and Other Human-Factor-Related Team Training Curricula

Improvements Following Implementation of Crisis Resource Management. Recently several studies show evidence that CRM training improves patient safety and patient outcomes. In health care organizations, implementation of programs that deal with the concepts of CRM/NTS have been associated with many improvements following their implementation:

- increased provider satisfaction
- improved safety culture and a heightened culture of teamwork[43]
- increased clinical team performance[396]
- decreased room turnover time[397]
- increased percentage of on-time first case starts[42,397]
- decreased preoperative delays, handoff issues, and equipment issues[42]
- improved patient willingness to recommend[397]
- a decrease in medication and transfusion errors[398]
- increased antibiotic prophylaxis compliance[42]
- an increase of efficiency for clinical processes for multidisciplinary trauma teams[399]
- decreased mortality and morbidity[42,400]

Neily and colleagues[42] investigated in a retrospective study including nearly 182.500 sampled procedures whether there exists an association between a CRM-based team training program and surgical outcomes on a national level. The authors showed an 18% reduction in annual mortality compared with a 7% decrease among non-training facilities.

Haerkens and colleagues[5] introduced CRM successfully in the ICU, with data indicating an association between

CRM implementation and the reduction in serious complications and mortality in critically ill patients. The prospective 3-year cohort study was performed in a 32-bed ICU, admitting 2500 to 3000 patients yearly. At the end of the baseline year, all ICU personnel received a 2-day CRM training in small teams, followed by one year of implementation phase. The third year was defined as the clinical effect year. All 7271 patients admitted to the ICU in the study period were included. The ICU complication rate declined from 67.1/1000 patients to 50.9/1000 patients. The incidence of cardiac arrests decreased from 9.2/1000 patients to 3.5/1000 patients, while CPR success rate increased from 19% to 67%. The standardized mortality ratio decreased from 0.72 to 0.60 in the post-implementation year.

Cost-benefit Analysis of Crisis Resource Management Programs. Moffatt-Bruce and colleagues[41] published an innovative study, not only reporting that the implementation of a CRM program at an academic medical center resulted in a 26% reduction in observed relative to expected events, but also evaluating the program's costs and the return on investment. Costs included training, programmatic fixed costs, time away from work, and leadership time. Cost savings were calculated based on the reduction in avoidable adverse events and cost estimates from the literature. Over a 3-year period, roughly 3000 health system employees across 12 areas were trained, costing $3.6 million. Savings ranged from a conservative estimate of $12.6 million to as much as $28.0 million. Therefore, the study presented an overall return on investment for CRM training in the range of $9.1 to $24.4 million, concluding that CRM presents a financially viable way to systematically organize for quality improvement. This study demonstrates that CRM training not only improves patient outcomes (see above) but is also very cost efficient.

Other Curricula for Team Training: TeamSTEPPS and Clinical Team Training

By now, many different types of training strategies fall under the umbrella of team training in medicine, encompassing a broad range of learning and development strategies, methods, and teamwork competencies. Although each is unique in some aspects many of the principles advocated and behaviors taught are similar, and all draw ultimately from the same pool of underlying literature and experience.[401-408] The adaptation of aviation CRM to health care was first described at length at the beginning in the early 1990s.[348] Another team training curriculum, called TeamSTEPPS, was introduced in 2006 and revised in 2015. TeamSTEPPS originated from work done by the U.S. military and was adapted for health care by the U.S. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. The U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs introduced its MTT curriculum (later renamed Clinical Team Training, CTT) in 2007.

In the review of Weaver and colleagues,[409] 9 of the 26 studies reviewed used some form of CRM intervention, 7 reported using components of the TeamSTEPPS curriculum, and 3 studies used VA MTT. Seven studies reported using other team-training curriculums. Another current review is that of Marlow and colleagues.[410]

TeamSTEPPS. The TeamSTEPPS curriculum (Team Strategies and Tools to Enhance Performance and Patient Safety)[411,412] is an evidence-based framework that addresses aspects of the following five key elements: team structure, leadership, situation monitoring/mutual performance monitoring, mutual support/back-up behavior, and communication. For implementation, it involves three continuous organizational phases: (1) assessment; (2) planning, training, implementation; and (3) sustainment. The program consists of multiple, explicit team strategies for each of the above mentioned key elements and it provides a source for ready-to-use materials, monthly webinars, as well as a training curriculum (for details see www.ahrq.gov/teamstepps/index.html). This way the program is intended to be fully or partially implemented in an organizational structure as a holistic organizational safety intervention, composed of several explicit safety strategies. The TeamSTEPPS curriculum is designed for health care professionals in general over a wide set of clinical domains. However, health care professionals working in dynamic arenas of high intrinsic risk, like for example anesthesia, intensive care medicine, emergency medicine, etc., face a cognitive and teamwork environment different from many other medical domains.

Clinical/Medical Team Training. The Clinical Team Training program (CTT - formerly named VA M (medical) TT)[413] of the Veterans Affairs National Center for Patient Safety, originally was a classroom-based CRM training program. However, as the program evolved, simulation-based training came to be a crucial part of the currciulum with multidisciplinary on-site training with integrated simulation conducted by experienced faculty.[414] In the CTT program, principles of aviation's crew resource management (CRM) are introduced in a clinical context to model specific applications in the health care environment. The preparation stage requires two months, top leadership engagement being a crucial part in the concept. For initiation, learning sessions are carried out over two days. The learning session is a one-day session delivered twice to increase attendance from clinical units that cannot be closed for training. Implementation is carried out over six months following the learning sessions, and accompanied by coaching and monitoring of unit-based performance outcomes over 12 months.

In our senior author's [DG] view the key difference between TeamSTEPPS and the (A)CRM approach (see earlier relevant section) is the high focus of TeamSTEPPS on very concrete and relevant behaviors (e.g., SBAR, CUS words, two-challenge rule), whereas (A)CRM addresses a broader set of issues, some of which can encompass the particular TeamSTEPPS behaviors. However, TeamSTEPPS does not address directly the components of dynamic decision making of the individual or of some of the more generic issues of team management and teamwork (e.g., distribution of workload, mobilizing and using resources). Some implementations of TeamSTEPPS may miss the forest for the trees. The focus on concrete behaviors has the benefit of giving a wide variety of personnel specific actions they can practice and then perform in daily work. But the downside is that a variety of complex issues of clinical work and of teamwork may be rarely addressed, if at all.

Actually, it seems evident that all of these curricula, and others, are really complementary approaches to similar issues, drawing from the same underlying principles and practices. No single one of them is demonstrably superior to the other, and hybrids combining two or more of them are possible. TeamSTEPPS is popular in part because it is intended to be neutral as to clinical arena or position in the hierarchy and thus is widely applicable, lending itself to organization-wide implementation as described above. It was formulated and disseminated by the U.S. government's Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, based on the work of internationally acknowledged experts on teamwork (albeit predominantly from non-medical domains). AHRQ provided a free extensive toolkit for TeamSTEPPS implementation. In contrast (A)CRM does not claim to be widely applicable, neutral as to clinical context, or requiring substantial analysis of or implementation by a clinical organization. It is popular especially in dynamic domains of high intrinsic risk analogous to the original one of anesthesiology. While it is successfully used with interprofessional groups in those domains, it is often aimed at physicians as team leaders. Dissemination of (A)CRM was facilitated by its long-standing existence (begun in 1990 and first described in the literature in 1992), publications on extensions into non-anesthesia domains, and an influential textbook (Crisis Management in Anesthesiology) in print via two editions since 1994.

Further Medical Team Training Programs. Besides these three rather well known team-training programs, there are multiple other team training programs, including Team Performance Plus (TPP), Team Oriented Medical Simulation (TOMS), LifeWings/Dynamic Outcomes Management (DOM), Triad for Optimal Patient Safety (TOPS), MedTeams, and Medical Team Management (MTM). They are mentioned for completeness, but for further details the reader is referred to the summary report of the Canadian Patient Safety Foundation[415] and further literature.

Patient Safety on the Organizational Level

In the following part the authors consider the organizational and systems aspects of human performance in anesthesia care and patient safety. Only the organization can sustain the systematic search for and implementation of cross-cutting and practical solutions for front-line patient care. An extensive overview of organizational aspects of patient safety is given by Charles Vincent in the second edition of his book *Patient Safety*.[9]

Organizations should strive to make it easy for clinicians to follow safety-related processes, essentially turning self-interest to work for patient interest. As pointed out by Reason,[123] as well as by Cook, Woods, and McDonald,[122] what goes on in the operational domain of frontline medicine (the so-called sharp end) is extensively shaped by the organizational and managerial environment in which it is embedded (the so-called blunt end). Of course every level has its own sharp end of deliverables and its blunt end of higher influences. For example, the hospital CEO makes policy and direction and is thus the blunt end for everyone else, but is in turn, shaped by regulators, funders, or patient advocacy groups, etc., constituting the CEO's blunt end.

Ideally, senior management commits not only in spirit but also in deed to patient safety as a primary goal. It encourages individuals and teams to fully engage in system-wide patient safety strategies and to trigger change themselves. Management and managers can do this first by changing their own behavior and that of the team, second by educating and persuading others about key changes, and third by searching for and identifying systems issues and pressing for their resolution.

The upcoming sections address (1) the basic concepts of systematic approaches (system thinking) to patient safety and human performance on the organizational level; (2) four organizational patient safety elements for health care derived from high-reliability organization theory (HROT); and (3) important strategies for organizational implementation of these concepts and principles.

SYSTEMS THINKING

To fully understand many issues in patient safety a broad systems perspective is needed. The actions and failures of individuals and teams usually play a central role, but their thinking and behavior is strongly influenced and constrained by their working environment and by wider organizational processes. The next sections provide systems thinking fundamentals, exploring (1) the definition of human failure and human error; (2) the evolution of accidents and adverse advents in relation to errors; (3) the concepts of hindsight bias and outcome bias as pitfalls in understanding events; (4) three prominent system organizational safety models: normal accident theory (NAT), HROT, and Safety-I/Safety-II; and (5) related concepts of resilience, uncertainty management, and normalization of deviance. More literature for further in-depth engagement with organizational approaches to human performance and patient safety are, for example, the works of René Alamberti, Sidney Dekker, Nancy Leveson, Richard Cook, David D. Woods, Erik Hollnagel, Jens Rasmussen, James Reason, Scott Sagan, Karl Weick, and Kathleen Sutcliffe.

Human Failure: Human Error and Violations

Human error has been conceptualized and investigated for a long time, initially by cataloguing errors and attempting to determine if the myriads of errors could be traced to a small set of causal mechanisms.[132,416] More recently the role of context for understanding error pathways and prevention has become prominent, while research in cognitive neuroscience has contributed to explaining individual vulnerabilities. [417]

Categorization of Human Failure. Different ways to categorize human failure and human error exist. Human failure in general can be categorized into two main types[418]: (1) human error, as an unintentional action

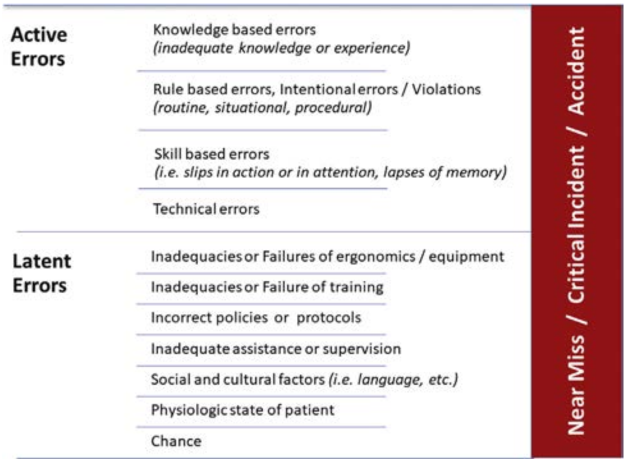

Active Errors
Knowledge based errors
(inadequate knowledge or experience)
Rule based errors, Intentional errors / Violations
(routine, situational, procedural)
Skill based errors
(i.e. slips in action or in attention, lapses of memory)
Technical errors
Latent Errors
Inadequacies or Failures of ergonomics / equipment
Inadequacies or Failure of training
Incorrect policies or protocols
Inadequate assistance or supervision
Social and cultural factors (i.e. language, etc.)
Physiologic state of patient
Chance
Near Miss / Critical Incident / Accident

Fig. 6.12 Active and Latent Human Errors. Derived and adapted from the publication *Catalogue of human error* by Arnstein[419] and Rasmussen's performance levels.[420] Skill-based errors, which incorporate slips and lapses, relate to errors in conscious and subconscious (automatic) cognition. They are also summarized under the term "execution errors." Rule- and knowledge-based errors are summarized under the term "planning errors" or "mistakes." For further information see text.

or decision and (2) violations, as an intentional failure, deliberately doing the wrong thing. Derived and adapted from the error models of Arnstein,[419] Norman,[112] and Rasmussen,[420] human failure can be classified as follows (Fig. 6.12): (a) *Active errors*, including knowledge-based errors, skill-based errors, and rule-based errors (violations). (b) *Latent errors*, including, for example, failure of equipment or ergonomics, incorrect policies/protocols, inadequate training/supervision/assistance, social/cultural factors, etc.

Active Errors

Skill-based errors. Those errors incorporate slips (action not as intended) and lapses of memory (forgetting to do something) and relate to errors in conscious and subconscious (automatic) cognition. They are summarized under the term execution errors. Norman has described five types of skill-based errors[112]:

- *capture error*: a common action taking over from the one intended (e.g., force of habit)
- *description error*: performing correct action on wrong target (e.g., flipping wrong switch)
- *memory error*: forgetting an item in a sequence
- *sequence error*: performing an action out of sequence from other actions
- *mode error*: actions appropriate for one mode of operation but incorrect in another mode

Mode errors are possible with simple devices but they are becoming even more frequent with the increased use of computer-based equipment.[86] An example in anesthesiology of a mechanical mode error is the bag/ventilator selector valve in the anesthesia breathing circuit, which selects between two modes of ventilation. Failing to activate the ventilator when in the ventilator mode can be catastrophic. Newer machines may activate the ventilator automatically when ventilator mode is chosen. Mode errors can also occur with monitoring or drug delivery devices if they assign different functions to the same displays or switches depending on the mode of operation selected.

Particularly dangerous slips of execution can be addressed through the use of engineered safety devices that physically prevent incorrect actions.[59] For example, newer anesthesia machines have interlocks that physically prevent the simultaneous administration of more than one volatile anesthetic. Other interlocks physically prevent the selection of a gas mixture containing less than 21% oxygen. However, all this has come at a price, not only in terms of money, but also in terms of complexity and the introduction of new failure mechanisms.

RULE- AND KNOWLEDGE-BASED ERRORS. Those errors (making an intentional decision that is wrong) are summarized by the term planning errors or mistakes. Additionally, three further forms of error are described as fixation errors (see section "Prevent and Manage Fixation Errors [CRM Key Point 9]").[109] These may be seen as cognitive tunnel vision.

Latent Errors. James Reason, who literally wrote the book on human error, introduced the concept of latent errors, for which he also used the metaphor of resident pathogens: "*... whose adverse consequences may lie dormant within the system for a long time, only becoming evident when they combine with other factors to breach the system's defenses. [They are] most likely to be spawned by those whose activities are removed in both time and space from the direct control interface: designers, high-level decision makers, construction workers, managers and maintenance personnel*" (p. 173).[59]

Latent errors evolve from latent threats like organizational culture, professional culture, scheduling, management policies and decisions, organizational processes, etc.

This threat and error model was articulated by the aviation-oriented psychologist Robert Helmreich, distinguishing between (1) latent threats (national and organizational culture, professional culture, scheduling and policies, management decisions, and organizational processes), (2) individual threats (team factors, patient factors, organizational factors, environmental factors, and individual staff factors), and (3) management threats (error management strategies and countermeasures).[421]

A variety of latent failures/threats/errors can exist in the anesthesia environment.[14] They may include such issues as how surgical cases are booked, how cases are assigned to specific anesthesia professionals, what provisions are made for preoperative evaluation of outpatients, and what relative priority is given to rapid turnover between cases or avoiding cancellation of cases as opposed to avoiding risk.[422] Latent errors can also result from the design of anesthesia equipment and its user interfaces, which in some cases lead clinicians to err or are unforgiving of errors. Manufacturing defects and routine maintenance failures are also types of latent failure, as well as training, supervision, etc.

Evolution and Investigation of Accidents: One Error is not the Cause of an Accident

Traditionally, one speaks of errors arising in decisions and actions that lead to a mishap or an accident possibly with patient harm. However, the term error is increasingly considered inappropriate as it typically jumps to

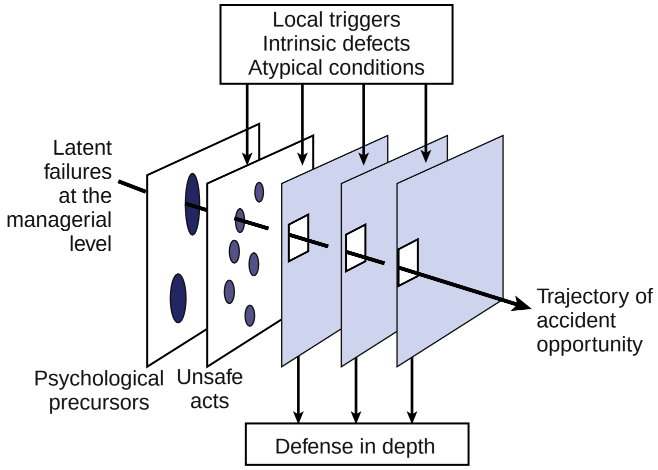


Fig. 6.13 James Reason's model of the causation of accidents. The model shows the different "defense shields" an organization possesses. Those shields prevent accidents at different levels. But each shield has weak spots, envisioned by the holes in the different shields. As work and the work environment in health care are dynamic, the diagram should be envisioned as being three-dimensional and also dynamic—with the shields moving around and holes opening and closing. If now, for example, latent failures at the managerial level combine with psychological precursors and active event triggers at the operational level, an accident sequence can be initiated. As long as there is no direct trajectory through the shields, the accident sequences are trapped at one or more defensive shields of the system. But if there develops a direct trajectory, the unforeseen combination of organizational or performance failures with latent errors and triggers may lead to breach the system's defenses and allow the accident to take place. This model is also known as Reason's "Swiss Cheese Model." Charles Vincent adapted Reason's model and published an extended model named "Organizational Accident Model."[9] (Figure redrawn from Reason JT. *Human Error*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 1990.)

conclusions of attribution and blame. Current organizational accident models indicate that errors are usually the consequence of a combination of several underlying factors and conditions (i.e., root causes and contributing factors) that yield an event (Fig. 6.13).[59] Vincent and colleagues published a framework of contributory factors, called the seven levels of safety.[423] In their work, the error-producing conditions and organizational factors are classified as: patient factors, task factors, staff and team factors, work environment factors, organizational/management factors, and institutional context factors. This classification is used in the London Protocol,[424] an investigation and analysis tool for the processing of incident reports.

Human error—a window to the system. Human error can be seen as a window onto the usually hidden dynamics of the work system.[9,425,426] Sidney Dekker, pilot and human error expert, wrote:

> *"You can see human error as the cause of a mishap. In this case, 'human error' under whatever label—loss of situation awareness, procedural violation, regulatory shortcomings, managerial deficiencies—is the conclusion of your effort to understand error. [Or] you can see human error as the symptom of deeper trouble. In this case, human error is the starting point for your efforts. Finding 'errors' is only the beginning. You will probe how human error is systematically connected to features of people's tools, tasks, and operational/organizational environment." (p. xi)*[427]

Whereas the first statement describes the old view on human error (person approach), the latter describes the new view on human error (system approach), albeit itself being a few decades old.[428] The new view focuses not on finding where people went wrong but rather to understand what triggered their assessment, actions, and decisions at the time, given the circumstances that surrounded them. Errors and violations should be addressed on a systems level as opposed to just with the individual(s) involved.

Investigation. Investigation of untoward events (see later section on "Critical Incident Reporting") should address both latent and active failures, and both the organizational/managerial environment and the operational domain. Focusing primarily on active failures may miss the fact that frontline personnel are often victims of the system in a Catch-22 situation, typically pushed to maximize production while admonished to be safe. Condemning only their actions—and not the latent pressures and conditions under which they work—will make them defensive and uncooperative. Cook and Woods pointed out that if one looks at the chain of events in an accident sequence, one can always find a failure on the part of an operator.[429] If the analysis stops at this point, the operator may be wrongly blamed in part or in whole while the real systemic root causes may not be detected; they will remain to cause other adverse event chains in the future (see later section on "Critical Incident Reporting").

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Admonishing personnel to *"Try harder!"/Be more careful!"/" Next time you have to pay more attention!"* is known to be a fruitless way to address safety issues; such situations need explicit practical changes in the way the work is being performed and organized that make it easier to comply.

Evaluation of Errors and Accidents: Hindsight Bias—"I knew it all Along" and Outcome Bias—"No Harm no Foul"

Hindsight Bias. The psychological phenomenon called hindsight bias plays an important role in the attribution of causes to accidents and adverse events. The bias is sometimes called *"Monday morning quarterbacking"* or the *"I knew-it-all-along effect."* After an event, it seems easy to conclude what went wrong, what the people involved did or did not do, what information turned out to be critical, and to recognize exactly the kind of harm that should have been foreseen or prevented: "*There is almost no human action or decision that cannot be made to look flawed and less sensible in the misleading light of hindsight. It is essential that the critic should keep himself constantly aware of that fact*" (p. 147).[430] Similarly Leveson wrote "*Before the event [accident], such insight is difficult and, perhaps, impossible*" (p. 38).[12] Hindsight bias, which typically underestimates complexity and cannot represent a comprehensive analysis of what and how factors interacted to lead to an error or accident, is linked to the old view of human error presented earlier. Hindsight bias still is insidious and very hard to overcome, bearing the danger to impair organizational learning, to contribute to personal overconfidence, and to even to misjudge reasonable actions as medical malpractice.[431,432]

Outcome Bias. A related bias is the outcome bias, sometimes—when the outcome is good—using the sports metaphor of "no harm no foul."[431] It occurs when the judgment of a situation is made dependent on the outcome (known only in hindsight) rather than on the decision-making process itself. Harsher judgments are often made when an outcome is bad, becoming even harsher depending on the severity.[433]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

When trying to make sense of events it is important to ask *"Why"* or *"How come?,"* to fully understand the problem and the thought processes in the moment of those involved. Jumping to conclusions prematurely can lead to solutions that are inappropriate or ineffective because they do not address the actual roots of the problem.

System Error Models: Normal Accident Theory and High Reliability Organization Theory

Several schools of thought about organizational safety in highly hazardous activities exist. Two complementary theories, Normal Accident Theory (NAT) and High Reliability Organization Theory (HROT), have dominated the discussion of system safety in many domains and have been applied to health care with increasing frequency since the 1980s.[59,123,434] NAT was originally promulgated by the sociologist Charles Perrow in the wake of the Three Mile Island (Pennsylvania) nuclear accident.[54] It has been applied by him and others to such diverse fields as commercial aviation, maritime transport, and the handling of nuclear weapons. A different theory, HROT, was put forth initially by Todd LaPorte, Gene Rochlin, and Karlene Roberts,[435-437] and later Karl Weick and Kathleen Sutcliffe.[438-441] It has been applied to diverse domains, including aircraft carrier flight decks, offshore oil platforms, air traffic control, nuclear power production, and the financial transaction industry. Both NAT and HROT agree that interactive complexity and tight coupling can lead to a system accident. However, they hold different opinions on whether those system accidents are inevitable or manageable.

In brief, the rather pessimistic view of NAT suggests, that disasters are the unwanted but inevitable (normal) results of complex socio-technical systems one cannot design around; the rather optimistic view of HROT sees disasters as preventable and manageable by certain key design characteristics or response systems of the organization.

A number of comparisons of these theories have been provided, giving an overview of the two theories, their advantages and limitations, and sometimes suggesting approaches that move beyond them.[442-446] Hollnagel and colleagues have promoted another influential error model called resilience engineering,[447-451] which has been compared to HROT by Haavik and colleagues.[452] One can argue that none of the other theories have replaced either NAT or HRO, and nearly all experts now believe that these exist in parallel, each providing a complementary view of the same set of issues.

Normal Accident Theory. NAT focuses primarily on three features of a system: (1) the complexity of interactions in the system, (2) the presence of tight coupling among the system's elements, and (3) the catastrophic potential of the system. Perrow[54] argues that the coexistence of interactive complexity and tight coupling in socio-technological systems leads to unpredictability of interactions and hence system accident is inevitable or normal. NAT suggests that when complexity and tight coupling coexist, abnormal sequences of events can be hidden and have complex or unpredictable consequences. Active errors in the system may not result in an accident only if, they are trapped at some point by the system's multiple layers of checks and defenses (Fig. 6.14; see also Fig. 6.13).

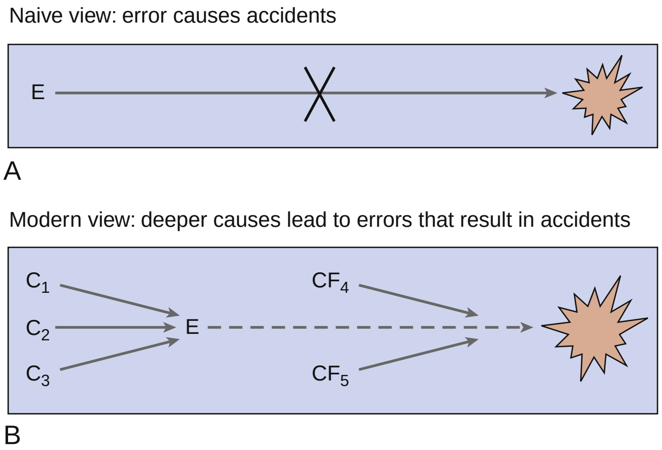

Naive view: error causes accidents
E
A
Modern view: deeper causes lead to errors that result in accidents
C_1
C_2
C_3
E
CF_4
CF_5
B

Fig. 6.14 Relationship between errors and adverse events. (A) Errors are the cause of accidents. Rather naïve views see the causes of accidents directly and solely linked to errors (*E*), as errors oftentimes lead directly to the accident. But errors are not the cause of accidents alone. (B) Errors are not the cause of accidents. In the more modern view, errors are one part of a multifactorial environment, when accidents occur. Multiple root causes (*C1, C2, C3*) lead to the error (E). For the most part, in an accident sequence additional contributing factors (*CF4, CF5*) are necessary to allow the error to evolve into an accident, explaining why profound analysis of an accident or incident is necessary in order to prevent similar consequences. (Modified from Rall M, Manster T, Guggenberger H, et al. Patient safety and errors in medicine: development, prevention and analyses of incidents [in German]. *Anesthesiol Intensivmed Notfallmed Schmerzther.* 2001;36:321–330 with permission.)

NAT also proposes that professionals delude themselves by believing that they can perfectly control hazardous activities and forestall disaster all the time. In reality, many of the efforts people make at management and design tend only to increase the opacity and complexity of the system (making more holes in the barriers, Fig. 6.13) thereby increasing the likelihood of accidents. The combination of these factors with normal everyday faults, slips, and incidents provides fertile ground for the occurrence of accidents.

NAT considers safety as one of many competing organizational objectives, but often not of sufficiently high priority. For preventing adverse events, Perrow suggested that attention should be directed at strengthening the recovery pathways by which small events can be properly handled before they evolve into a serious accident. In fact, this suggestion by Perrow in the book *Normal Accidents*—plus the apparent success in commercial aviation—were direct inspirations for Gaba and colleagues to develop simulation-based CRM-oriented training, and to create and disseminate emergency manuals (cognitive aids).

BOX 6.7 Characteristics High Reliability Organizations Hold in Common…[454]

- Hypercomplex environment—extreme variety of components, systems, and levels.
- Tight coupling/interdependent teams—reciprocal interdependence across many units and levels.
- Extreme hierarchical differentiation—multiple levels, each with its own elaborate control and regulating mechanisms.
- Multiple decision makers in complex communication networks—characterized by redundancy in control and information systems.
- Degree of accountability that does not exist in most organizations—substandard performance or deviations from standard procedures meet with severe adverse consequences.
- High frequency of immediate feedback about decisions.
- Compressed time constraints—cycles of major activities are measured in seconds.
- More than one critical outcome that must happen simultaneously—simultaneity signifies both the complexity of operations as well as the inability to withdraw or modify operations decisions.

BOX 6.8 Organizational Strategies[438] that Guide the Thinking of People in High Reliability Organizations:

- Preoccupation with failure
- Reluctance to simplify interpretations
- Sensitivity to (front-line) operations
- Commitment to resilience
- Deference to expertise

High-Reliability Organization Theory. In contrast to these rather pessimistic views of NAT concerning the organizational challenges to safety, HROT suggests that proper organization of people, technology, and processes can handle complex and hazardous activities at acceptable levels of performance.[373,453] In fact, consider the many endeavors in which HROs manage to achieve nearly failure-free results despite high intrinsic risk and high throughput.

Box 6.7 shows the common characteristics of HROs.[454] It is important to note that many organizations display some of these characteristics, but true HROs display them all simultaneously. Box 6.8 shows the organizational safety strategies that guide the thinking of people in an HRO. Although these elements point in the right direction, they remain theoretical if not—in our case—translated to health care, and then embedded into the fabric of an organization's operations. An HRO-based safety strategy tool in the form of a reference sheet is available at no cost from the Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI).[455] Fig. 6.15 shows four strategic key elements of HROs, which are explained in more detail in Boxes 6.9 and 6.10 and in the following section.

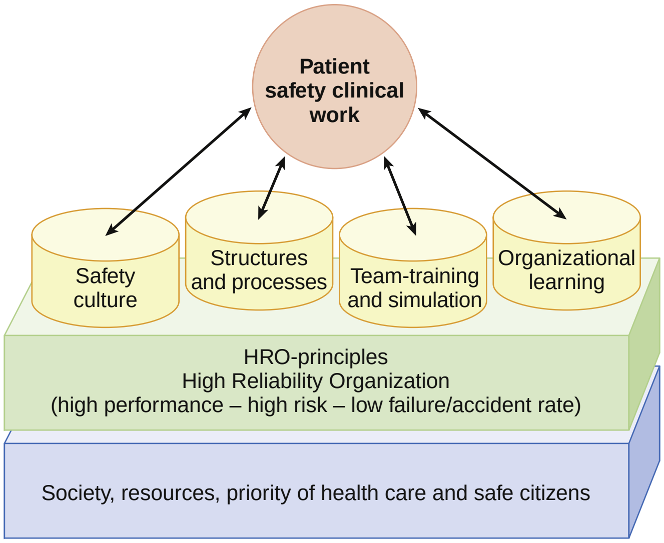

Patient safety clinical work
Safety culture
Structures and processes
Team-training and simulation
Organizational learning
HRO-principles
High Reliability Organization
(high performance – high risk – low failure/accident rate)
Society, resources, priority of health care and safe citizens

Fig. 6.15 The fundamentals and principles of a high reliability organization.

BOX 6.9 Elements of a Culture of Safety[437,441,454,560]

Values

- Safety is most important goal, overriding production or efficiency
- Preoccupation is with possible "failures," not past "successes"
- Necessary resources/incentives/rewards are provided for optimal safety, not only for optimal production

Beliefs

- Safety must be actively managed
- Processes and routines of care are as (or more) important to safety as individual dedication, skill, or effort
- Openness about safety and errors is essential; learning from normal and adverse events should be thorough

Norms

- Low-ranking personnel raise safety issues and challenge ambiguity regardless of hierarchy or rank
- Calling for help is encouraged and occurs frequently, even by experienced personnel
- Explicit communication is frequent
- The hierarchy is flat—leaders listen to juniors; juniors speak up; and calling for help is routine regardless of rank
- People are rewarded for rationally erring on the side of safety, even when their credible concerns turn out to be wrong

Modified from Weick KE. Organizational culture as a source of high reliability. *Calif Manage Rev*. 1987;29:112–127.

Anesthesiology has traditionally been strong at some elements of HRO, particularly in redundancy and technical safety measures. A movement is growing in anesthesia to implement HRO philosophies and techniques more fully.[456] In fact, anesthesiologists not only have been promoters of the patient safety movement in general but also have been leaders at applying HROT principles to health care. In 2003, the APSF began initiatives in high reliability perioperative health care (see special issue of the *APSF Newsletter*, summer 2003, at www.apsf.org). More recently, HROs have been conceptualized as one of three approaches to safety: ultra-adaptive (which embraces risks, e.g., trauma center), high-reliability (which manages risks, e.g., scheduled surgery), and ultra-safe (which avoids risk, e.g., radiotherapy).[10] Providing anesthesiology to an ASA1 patient is considered between the high-reliability and ultra-safe approach.[10]

BOX 6.10 Key Elements of a High-Reliability Organization in Medicine[437,441,454,560]

Established Culture of Safety (see elements Box 6.9)

Optimal Structures and Procedures

- Decision making rests with those with greatest knowledge or experience about specific issues regardless of rank or job type.
- The unit integrates crews from different departments (e.g., cardiac surgery, cardiac anesthesia, OR nursing, perfusion, ICU) into a coherent clinical team. Teamwork and resiliency are emphasized.
- Formal procedures are in place to maximize transfer of information to all team members before a case (e.g., briefings or time-out procedures).
- Schedules are designed to keep work hours and duty periods at reasonable levels to avoid undue fatigue. Personnel under excessive stress are supported or replaced as needed.
- Standardized procedures, techniques, and equipment are adopted whenever possible so that similar tasks or operations are performed similarly regardless of the personnel involved; conversely, when necessary (in an emergency or adverse event), the team is resilient and responds as needed to the situation without slavish dependence on standard routines.
- The use of preplanned algorithms, checklists, and cognitive aids is actively encouraged.
- Easy access to current information systems is available at all times and all locations.

Training and Practice in Routine Procedures and Simulations

- Debriefings are conducted after each case.
- Nonpunitive assessment instruments are used on a regular basis to provide current feedback and identify elements requiring special training.
- Initial and recurrent simulation-based single-discipline and multidisciplinary training in crew resource management occurs (see Chapter 7).
- Actual clinical crews and teams conduct periodic drills or simulations of critical situations in the real OR, PACU, and ICU.
- Resident training uses a guided curriculum; training goals and the level of responsibility assigned to a resident match the current proficiency level of the trainee with the complexity of the procedure.

Organizational Learning

- Robust mechanisms are in regular use for organizational learning, both prospectively (considering in advance how to optimize protocols and procedures, such as failure mode and analysis of effects) and retrospectively (from analyzing reports of adverse events, near misses, or problems such as root cause analysis).
- Problems are analyzed primarily to determine what can be improved, rather than whom to blame. Altered procedures are assessed and adopted as appropriate. Process changes reflect appropriate analysis.

ICU, Intensive care unit; *OR*, operating room; *PACU*, postanesthesia care unit.

Safety I and Safety II: Ensuring that as Few Things as Possible go Wrong or that as Many Things as Possible go Right…?

As indicated above, perspectives on safety are changing. In recent years several scientists questioned the definition of safety as the absence of errors. A new view of safety has evolved, defining it as maximizing the ways that work can evolve in a correct way and focusing primarily on why human performance succeeds most often despite myriad challenges. Erik Hollnagel labelled this new approach Safety-II, as opposed to Safety-I, which denotes the traditional approach investigating errors, incidents, and accidents.[457] *"Safety management should therefore move from ensuring that 'as few things as possible go wrong' [Safety-I] to ensuring that 'as many things as possible go right [Safety-II]'"* (p. 4).[458]

The Safety-II approach aims to understand how good performance is actually produced: how people adapt the workflow, their use of devices, and their organization of tasks to achieve good performance even in challenging circumstances. In this regard it is quite similar to HROT. Safety-II also sees successful performance as a learning space:

> *this "…approach assumes that everyday performance variability provides the adaptations that are needed to respond to varying conditions, and hence is the reason why things go right. Humans are consequently seen as a resource necessary for system flexibility and resilience. In Safety-II the purpose of investigations changes to become an understanding of how things usually go right, since that is the basis for explaining how things occasionally go wrong." (p. 4)*[458]

Perhaps the most important new ideas of Safety-I and -II are the analytical character of the models. The focus on positive performance provides a different lens and rather than emphasizing the individual's success it addresses how and why such success occurs. One specific method that Hollnagel[459] describes is functional resonance analysis, which identifies the different pieces of a system and investigates in detail how they interact with each other dynamically. Many phenomena emerge from the interplay of the system parts, but this emergence might not be easy or possible to explain on a causal basis. A detailed description of the Safety-I and Safety-II approach by Hollnagel, Wears, and Braithwaite is available in PDF format online (*"From Safety-I to Safety-II: A White Paper. The Resilient Health Care Net"*).[458]

Resilience and Uncertainty Management: Safety is a Dynamic State, not all Risks can be Eliminated

System safety is not a static property of hospitals and departments; rather it is dynamic, often on short time scales. Even with the implementation of robust patient safety strategies and regulatory regimes, (1) not all risks can be eliminated in the system and (2) safety, even once established, is not omnipresent or infinitely persistent. Whether risk in any setting can credibly be lowered to zero is widely debated. Admitting that risk cannot be prevented while striving to find more appropriate ways of handling adverse occurrences, for example through improving system resilience [447,448] or the ability to manage uncertainties,[460-465] seems appropriate regardless of the theoretical approach. Whereas some system safety methodologies view even a domain's own professionals as unreliable components, the theories of HRO, Safety-I, and Safety-II view people as core elements in creating reliable systems.

Resilience. The term resilience in respect to patient safety is derived from resilience engineering and is an important characteristic of HROs. The introduction to health care was promoted by Hollnagel and colleagues. Resilience describes the intrinsic ability of individuals, teams, and the system to cope with and adjust to new or changing demands and to respond effectively and safely to unforeseen, unpredicted, and unexpected problems or demands as they occur, even after a major mishap or in the presence of continuous stress. A resilient system owns the ability to produce success despite conditions that could easily lead to failure.

Uncertainty Management. Grote argues that *"in order to improve risk management and safety more generally deliberate increases in uncertainty may be beneficial"* (p. 71).[460] Grote furthermore distinguishes two uncertainty paradigms[461]: (1) Uncertainty may be minimized by high levels of standardization, central planning, automation of work/processes, and high levels of specialization with few degrees of freedom for employees (stability). (2) Newer organization theories in contrast stress the need for flexible adaptation in highly uncertain and networked processes, empowering everyone in the organization to cope with uncertainty by providing them with options for action rather than fixed plans and standards. As a consequence, organizations must find a way to balance stability and flexibility as both can mutually enable each other.[466] It sometimes can be worth tolerating some degree of uncertainty—relying on flexible adaptation of intelligent, well-trained personnel and stability by well-functioning systems—rather than to attempt to eradicate every possible uncertainty by standardization. From an HROT perspective's view one could say to standardize where possible (or sensible) while remaining flexible and resilient. Clearly there is a sweet spot between these extremes, although how to achieve that balance remains under debate.[467]

Normalization of Deviance and Flirting with the Margin

Normalization of Deviance. Normalization of deviance is a term first coined by American sociologist Diane Vaughan who conducted a detailed organizational analysis of the Space Shuttle Challenger disaster.[468] The phenomenon occurs when people within an organization become so insensitive to deviant practices or occurrences that do not cause a problem that the practices themselves no longer seem wrong—essentially creating a *"new normal."* Such normalization of deviance emerges insidiously, sometimes over years. Once this happens on a large scale, no one within an organization is able to see the shortcomings in the behavior. They become resistant to suggestions that they are in fact abnormal and deviant, dismissing allegations that *"the emperor has no clothes."* Because disaster indeed does not happen without a number of critical factors lining up, their resistance is reinforced by the continued good outcomes—until a catastrophe occurs. Many have applied these concepts to health care including anesthesiology.[48-50,445] Banja[47] gives an overview of the topic in health care overall and identifies a number of reasons why normalization of deviance occurs in organizations, including:

- The existing rules are considered stupid and inefficient
- Knowledge is imperfect and uneven
- The work itself, along with new technology, can disrupt work behaviors and rule compliance
- "I'm breaking the rule for the good of my patient!"
- "The rules don't apply to me"/"You can trust me"
- Workers are afraid to speak up
- Leadership is unaware of or downplays reports or findings on system problems

Flirting With the Margin. Cook and Rasmussen published two related models to normalization of deviance that can be understood as flirting with the margin.[469] Their so-called dynamic safety model identifies three different states of a system in which an organization can operate (stable systems, unstable systems, stable but high-risk systems). The model points out that the states can be floating, depending on the set of organizational boundaries (i.e., economic, workload, acceptable performance) and the pressures within the system (i.e., management, safety campaigns/culture, staff). Typically the highest economic yield lies near the margin and the system may be pushed toward or even over the marginal boundary that safeguards systems from errors, accidents, and adverse events. The constitutive flirting with the margin model draws attention to the risk that repeated shifts outside the marginal boundary may lead to the original margin being judged as too conservative, resulting in a shift of the marginal boundary (normalization of deviance). When this happens regular operations in a system take place in an already dangerous marginal zone, implying a false sense of safety and raising the probability of accidents.

ACHIEVING HIGH RELIABILTY AND SYSTEM THINKING: FUNDAMENTAL ELEMENTS FOR A SYSTEMATIC SAFETY APPROACH

How can clinical departments and health care institutions transform into a high-reliability organization? Addressing safety at the individual and team level has yielded some useful improvements in health care. However, more comprehensive improvement will require transforming whole organizations. Altering particular care processes is not enough; the work culture needs to be transformed. The AHRQ published a report in 2008—*"Becoming a High Reliability Organization: Operational advice for Hospital Leaders"*—that summarizes the topic in depth.[470]

As displayed in Fig. 6.15, HROs can be characterized essentially by four key structural pillars: (1) creation and sustainment of a culture of safety; (2) global and profound organizational learning, including incident reporting systems (IRS); (3) continuous training of individuals, teams, and work units including the regular use of simulation; and (4) continuous optimization of safety-relevant structures and processes. The four pillars are intended to provide anchor points for systematic organizational improvement. They are explained in more detail in the subsequent sections.

Culture of Safety

Creating a culture of safety is an important element of enhancing patient safety.[471-473] Safety culture is part of the

BOX 6.11 **Key Features of High Reliability Organizations Based on the AHRQ's Definition**[561]

- acknowledgment of the high-risk nature of an organization's activities and the determination to achieve consistently safe operations
- a blame-free environment where individuals are able to report errors or near misses without fear of reprimand or punishment
- encouragement of collaboration across ranks and disciplines to seek solutions to patient safety problems
- organizational commitment of resources to address safety concerns

overall culture of an organization. Opposed to the widely spread culture of blame (also called negative safety culture), the culture of safety is also referred to as the culture of no-blame or is reinforced in its meaning by the expression positive safety culture.

One prominent definition of culture is: "*A pattern of shared basic assumptions learned by a group as it solved its problems of external adaptation and internal integration*" (p.12).[474] More simply, culture is "*the way we do things around here,*" or "*what you do when nobody is looking.*" The Joint Commission defines safety culture as follows: *"Safety culture is the sum of what an organization is and does in the pursuit of safety. [. . .] the product of individual and group beliefs, values, attitudes, perceptions, competencies, and patterns of behavior that determine the organization's commitment to quality and patient safety"* (p. 2).[475]

Edgar Schein described three elements of culture that can be observed: (1) artifacts that are used in the organization (e.g., charts, clothes/uniforms, meetings, rituals), (2) espoused beliefs and values (some measurable in surveys and some by interviews or by watching and listening to everyday work), and (3) underlying assumptions that are so ingrained that they are hardly noticeable any more (e.g., what is meant by a patient vs. a client or partner; by illness vs. health; or by safety vs. quality or outcome). Box 6.9 shows the major elements of a culture of safety based on shared values (what is important), beliefs (how things should work), and norms (the way things work).

The Joint Commission published behaviors that undermine a safety culture and suggests respective countermeasures.[476] Two reviews on the current literature of safety culture are available.[477,478]

A health care HRO's commitment to safety needs to start at the top—with full buy-in from chief executives and boards of directors or trustees and palpably extend through all levels of middle managers and fully into frontline personnel (professionals and others). This commitment encompasses the key features (based on AHRQ's formulation) shown in Box 6.11.

When an organization does not promote a culture of safety, staff members often are unwilling to report adverse events and unsafe conditions because they fear reprisal or from prior experience believe reporting rarely results in change (see later sections "Organizational Learning" and "Incident Reporting").[471]

A variety of techniques have been developed to help organizations create and sustain a safety culture. Some of these address getting senior managers and executives more directly in touch with what is happening at the sharp end of work, by activities such as Patient Safety Leadership Walk-Rounds[479] or Leveraging Frontline Expertise (LFLE).[479,480] Other interventions suggested by the IHI include: designation of a patient safety officer, involvement of patients in safety initiatives, appointment of a safety champion for every unit, safety briefings, and simulation of possible adverse events (see later section on "Periodic Team Training and Simulation Team Training" and Chapter 7).[481] Other widely available guides to address an organization's safety culture come from The American College of Healthcare Executives and IHI/NPSF Lucian Leape Institute[482] and the Joint Commission.[483] It is hard to demonstrate which, if any, of these strategies and techniques are most effective, and it may depend heavily on a variety of local factors in each organization.[484]

It is problematic that, sometimes, safety culture is thought to mean culture of no blame. Safety culture is actually a much broader concept and the notion of no blame or blame-free has widely given way to the concept of a just culture. While no blame is appropriate for many unintended errors, other actions do seem blameworthy and demand individual accountability. A just culture focuses on identifying and addressing systems issues that lead individuals to engage in unsafe behaviors, while maintaining individual accountability by establishing zero tolerance for reckless behavior. It distinguishes between human error (e.g., slips), at-risk behavior (e.g., taking shortcuts), and reckless behavior (e.g., ignoring required safety steps). Gross negligence, behavior violations, and destructive acts are not tolerated.

Nonetheless, unjust cultures of individual blame still appear to be dominant.[476] Khatri and colleagues reported an increased likelihood of a culture of blame in health care organizations that (1) rely predominantly on hierarchical, compliance-based management systems; (2) attach less importance to employee involvement in decision making; and (3) neglect human resource management capabilities to help foster a safety culture.[485]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Mind your language! Ensure that dialogues, interviews, discussions, and reports avoid judgmental or blaming language (e.g., *"You should/could have...," "Why didn't you...?," "Do you think that was a good idea?," "The professional failed to..."*). Instead, use language that encourages systems thinking.[486]

Anesthesiology as a specialty has played a leading role in the attempt to turn the rather predominant culture of blame into a culture of safety—putting safety first and trying to understand how errors, incidents, and adverse events evolve.[11,40,456,487-490]

Measuring Safety Culture. Measuring safety culture is difficult. Strictly speaking, it may only be possible to investigate culture by anthropologic means—embedding ethnographers into the workplace for deep understanding of how work is conducted. This can be supplemented by structured interviews. Such methods are difficult and costly. More frequently safety culture is measured through written surveys of health care personnel. Essentially these measure safety climate—the attitudes of personnel as represented by survey responses. It is difficult to extrapolate from these results to the culture as actually enacted. Nonetheless, surveys are relatively simple and low cost, especially since the advent of online administration of the instruments.

Several validated survey tools are available to measure hospital safety and teamwork safety climates, including, for example, the Patient Safety Culture in Healthcare Organizations (PSCHO),[491-493] the AHRQ Survey on Patient Safety Culture, and the Safety Attitudes Questionnaire (SAQ). Each of the various instruments have a somewhat different focus, and the methods of administration of such surveys can be very important.

Among the issues that influence what can be learned from such surveys are: (a) Who is asked to complete the survey? Is it hospital-wide or just in one or a few work units? Sometimes the work unit is the appropriate unit of analysis but often the target may need to be broader.[494] (b) Are managers and senior leaders sampled in the same fraction as other workers? If so, this will mean that their views will not be well represented because they make up such a small fraction of the overall workforce. Oversampling of important but small populations can compensate for this. (c) Are the surveys truly confidential or anonymous? (d) How are the data interpreted? Looking primarily at the views of the majority of respondents may not be sufficient. If only a modest fraction (the rule of thumb from some experts is about 10% or more) respond in ways antithetical to a culture of safety that may represent a serious lack in its uniformity, and show a problem. For example, elements of the PSCHO survey have been asked also in different surveys of military aviators, acknowledged HRO. The negative safety views almost never were near the 10% level but this was seen substantially more often in the health care population.[495] Teamwork and communication dimensions of safety culture have been significantly related to adverse clinical events.[491,496-498]

Despite the past decade's focus on improving patient safety, most health care organizations are still striving to achieve high-reliability organization status[445,499]—consistently providing high quality care, with substantial load while minimizing adverse events.

In an update of the sentinel event alert from 2009, the Joint Commission 2017 calls again for senior health care leaders to establish a culture of safety within their organizations, use just culture principles to establish transparent and fair policies for addressing errors by clinical personnel in the front lines, and maintain robust structures for analyzing and responding to adverse events. Specific suggested actions include involving hospital boards and patients in safety efforts and making safety performance an explicit part of the evaluation for leaders. Adherence to sentinel event alert recommendations is assessed as part of Joint Commission accreditation surveys.[475]

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

Mind your attitude! Pursuing a culture of safety oftentimes is about one's attitude and reactions when safety concerns are raised. For example: If a patient's condition is deteriorating and someone else calls the rapid response team (RRT) when you think you might have things under control, don't say *"Why did you call the RRT? It's fine, do you think I'm an idiot?"* Instead it's better to say *"Thanks for calling the RRT—I think I know what's going on and have it under control, but it can't hurt to have them here."* Conversely, when a team arrives, if they find that there is no active crisis, they should not complain (or roll their eyes). Instead they should thank the clinician for calling them and offer to help in any way even though they seem to have things well in hand. In health care, one sometimes rewards people verbally for a good pickup, noticing something that is clearly of importance to the patient's care. Yet one rarely rewards people for raising their credible concerns when they turn out not to be an issue. Providing such rewards regardless of outcome will strengthen the safety culture and foster the desired speaking up.

Organizational Learning

An important strategy for improving patient safety and a core content of HROs is organizational learning. Organizational learning *"is defined as the process of creating and applying valid knowledge to enable an organization to improve."*[500] Such learning should be both prospective (i.e., using Failure Mode and Effect Analysis; FMEA) and retrospective (i.e., using [critical] incident reporting systems; [C]IRS). In analogy to aviation, Donaldson referred to organizational learning in health care as "passing the orange wire test":

> *"Imagine that a Boeing 757 aircraft engine contained an orange-coloured wire essential to its safe functioning. Imagine that an airline engineer doing a preflight inspection spotted that the wire was frayed in a way that suggested a systematic fault rather than routine wear and tear. Imagine what would happen next. It is likely that most 757 engines in the world would be inspected—probably within days—and the orange wire, if faulty, renewed."*[501]

So, what about health care and the orange wire test? Over the last two decades IRS have generated a lot of momentum in enhancing system safety in health care by organizational learning. The next sections focus on: (1) basic information on prospective (FMEA) and retrospective (IRS) organizational learning; (2) more detailed information about the purpose of IRS, their challenges, and their effectiveness; (3) barriers and facilitators for IRS; (4) characteristics of successful IRS; (5) legal issues of IRS; and (6) the linked idea of independent medical accident investigation boards is discussed based on a recent pioneering safety movement in the United Kingdom.

Failure Mode And Effect Analysis. FMEA has been adapted to health care from engineering systems analysis; it is sometimes used as a tool to analyze adverse events in retrospect. The FMEA approach is to lay out comprehensively the possible failure modes and their effects that could have led to the events and the outcome that occurred. This helps define ways in which the chain of accident evolution could have been prevented or thwarted. A prospective approach to safety can use FMEA techniques to identify safety gaps in advance and implement corrective measures. This can be especially useful for assessing proposed changes to the system—such as introducing a new piece of equipment or a new set of surgical procedures (e.g., starting a liver transplant program where none had existed). Contemplating in advance the ways that things might fail will help determine whether the benefits outweigh the risks organizationally, how best to structure the change, as well as how best to prevent or mitigate problems when they inevitably occur.

(Critical) Incident Reporting System†. The retrospective approach to organizational learning means maximizing the learning to be had from understanding incidents or near misses that have already happened. Even though the terms vary in the literature, based on the *WHO Draft Guidelines for Adverse Event Reporting and Learning Systems*[502] an incident is any deviation from usual medical care that causes harm to a patient or presents a risk of harm. It includes (1) adverse events, where harm is caused to a patient, sometimes also referred to as sentinel events (SE) or critical incidents, as well as (2) near misses. A near miss is a situation that potentially could have turned into a critical incident, but was somehow prevented beforehand. Yet another kind of incident is termed a never event, an incident that results in serious patient harm or death, classified as one that is never the natural result of disease or therapeutic side effect.

Apart from certain mandatory legal reporting and disclosure requirements, (critical) IRSs, sometimes also called patient safety reporting systems (PSRS), are usually voluntary. While original IRS were paper-based, technological progress has allowed the development of mostly electronic or web-based systems. Although IRS adopt various formats, most have the same core operating model: frontline staff, usually those directly involved in an event or actions leading to it, anonymously or confidentially provide detailed information about something that has occurred. In the next step, this report is analyzed—usually free of blame to the reporter—by expert analysts to identify contributing system and human factors, and if applicable, develop strategies for preventing such occurrences. A simplified overview of the core processes of IRS is given in Fig. 6.16. IRS aim to provide systematic organizational learning from local to global levels, recognizing that an incident that occurred in one unit might also be a problem in another unit.

Most HROs have made special efforts to create IRS for incidents of various severity and near misses. Despite several limitations, if IRS is used in a successful way, to quote Charles Vincent,[487] it can serve as a powerful *"window on the system,"* enabling understanding of system problems and safety gaps. In order to function well, IRS need to be easy to use, organizationally integrated and coherent, supported by a culture of safety (see earlier correspondent section), free of sanctions, and linked to feedback about what is being done about the issues reported.

Other methods for organizational learning. Neither FMEA nor IRS alone can optimally enhance patient safety. They are just two of many strategies for soliciting input from frontline staff to creating snapshots of safety issues in the patient care arena. Information from many sources needs to be combined through a systematic assessment of error and harm to obtain the full picture. The U.S. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality provides a detailed discussion of methods of identifying errors and latent safety problems for organizational learning.[503] Walk rounds by senior leaders and executives also offer a way of collecting data from frontline staff about possible safety hazards.[479]

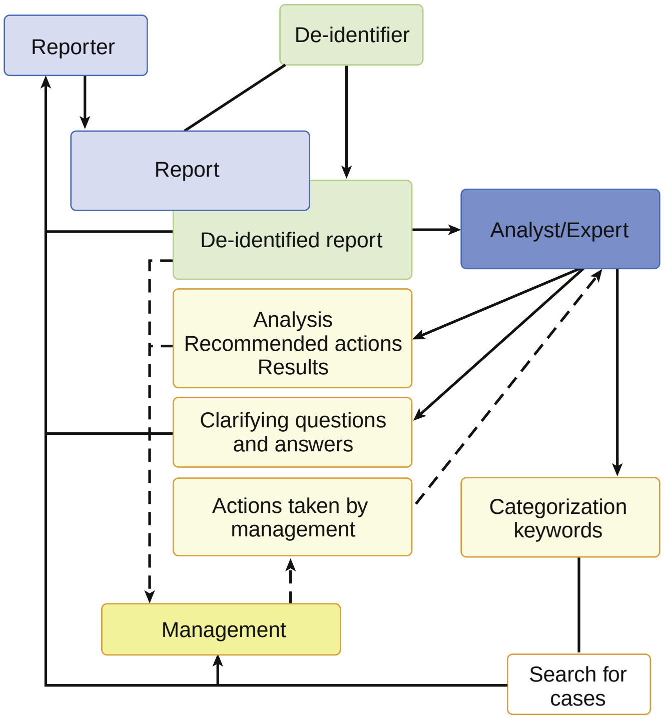


Fig. 6.16 Data handling in a modern incident reporting system with deidentification. The incoming reports are first completely deidentified by a trained deidentifier. Only after this step is the report ready to be analyzed. It is important that the reports are analyzed by a multiprofessional team and that recommendations be fed back to the management of the organization from which the report came. The analysis and feedback should be transparent for all stakeholders.

IRS in health care have drawn their inspiration especially from commercial aviation and the nuclear industry. Unfortunately, the word reporting is a word with a variety of (mostly negative) connotations. In the context of organizational learning it is intended to be regarded as something positive and means communicating safety-relevant information. Anesthesia professionals experience weaknesses and strengths of their work sites during everyday work—valuable information of potential safety gaps that are already out there. By reporting, IRS can help the organization and staff at the rather blunt end of medicine (risk managers, executives, etc.) to extract safety-critical information from frontline staff at first hand, analyze it, and learn from it as an organization. Hence, IRS in a more positive way are often referred to as learning systems, such as the National Reporting and Learning System of the National Patient Safety Agency in the National Health Service (NHS) of the United Kingdom.

Different Operating Modes of Incident Reporting Systems. IRS around the world vary widely in terms of design and operational processes (see Appendix 6.1).[346,502,504-509] IRS can operate at different levels within the health care system: some IRS operate primarily at the local level (i.e., as a tool for local hospital quality and risk management), which may or may not feed into a larger scale; others operate on a larger regional or national scale (i.e., ASA' AIRS). The latter allow (a) a recognition of a pattern of (rare) events that otherwise could not be discerned, and (b) a wider dissemination of lessons learned and solutions created. Both on a local and national level, IRS can be related to a single specialty, or include a broader suite of professional domains. Some IRS accept reports of all kind of events and deviations (i.e., near misses, adverse events, sentinel events, never events, etc.). Others restrict their reports to incidents that match specific narrow criteria.

---

†While reading this section American readers will need to break their ingrained habit of seeing "IRS" as the tax collecting agency of the U.S. federal government (Internal Revenue Service).

The Goals of Incident Reporting Systems. The applicable goals of reporting systems are currently under debate with respect to the way in which data can be used, particularly whether for different combinations of the following: (1) help health care organizations learn and improve, (2) benchmark and compare organizations, (3) hold organizations accountable for safety performance, or (4) help regulators and funders make judgments.[502,510-513] Some of these IRS goals, while compatible in theory, may be mutually exclusive in practice. The emphasis applied to each goal influences system design features, such as whether reporting is mandatory or voluntary, whether reports are confidential or made public, and what kind of incidents are allowed to be reported.

Are IRS effective?. In the United States, all hospitals are required to maintain a confidential event reporting system. In Germany, this has been the case since 2013. Almost two decades ago, Lucian Leape wrote: "If reporting is safe and provides useful information from expert analysis, it can measurably improve safety."[504] Despite their current ubiquity, the actual contribution of these systems to any of their stated goals is uncertain and questions about their effectiveness remain.[514,515]

Challenges and Misunderstandings About Incident Reporting Systems. In a recent paper *"The problem with incident reporting,"* Macrae summarizes a variety of issues surrounding IRS.[512] These include, among many others:

1. Underreporting has been recognized as a major limitation of incident reporting. Of the errors and adverse events that occur in hospital settings, reporting systems capture fewer than 10%.[516] A detailed review of causes of underreporting is described in the section on barriers of reporting. While increasing the absolute number of reports can be useful, their quality is of greatest importance. Charles Vincent stresses that analyzing a small number of incidents thoroughly is probably more valuable than a cursory overview of a large number of incidents.[487]
2. Another widespread misunderstanding of IRS is the idea that the goal of reporting is to provide a numerical metric of harm to patients. In contrary, merely counting incidents is largely uninformative and probably a waste of time.[517] It is sometimes described as a box-checking exercise. Many reports can describe similar events and the relative learning per event shrinks markedly after the first few, whereas some kinds of events are not reported and hence the system may be blind to them. All reporting systems, whether voluntary or not, have serious selection-bias issues—many events are never reported both because it takes effort to do so and because doing so seems to expose the individual and the work setting to risk of reputation loss or other negative consequences.
3. Even at best, IRS provide only partial views on the organization. For a variety of reasons 50% to 80% of the reports are filed by nurses. Physicians file only 1% to 3% of incident reports.[518,519] But many issues involve physician care—up to 94% of the events based on a landmark study.[520] It is likely that to fully understand a system it would be necessary for trained observers (ethnographers) to be embedded in it. Moreover, even if all events were known about in detail the tasks of analyzing and understanding them and finding practical but robust solutions to problems uncovered are far more difficult than merely collecting the information.

BOX 6.12 Important Characteristics of Effective Incident Reporting Systems[11,502,523,527]

- Integration of the incident reporting system into the organization and full support by management
- The absence of negative sanctions for reporters and people involved
- Confidential or anonymous reporting option, with active deidentification (domain expertise required)
- Legal protection and state-of-the-art data security
- Independence of the organizational hierarchy: reports are sent to a trusted subunit outside the hierarchy of the organization or outside the organization (external trust center, e.g., NASA for the ASRS)
- Orientation to a system that enables all stakeholders of patient safety, including physicians, nurses, and technicians, to file reports easily
- Easy and fast reporting
- Training of stakeholders to file valuable reports (e.g., focusing on human factor issues, as well as medical-technical aspects)
- Timely feedback about reception of the report, its analysis, and proposed measures to be taken from it
- Analysis of each report by experts (a multiprofessional team that has a background not only in the medical domain but also in issues of human performance and analysis methods)
- Deep analysis of selected cases by using root cause analyses or failure modes and effect analyses with the aim of improving systems safety in the future
- Timely implementation of improvements to confirm the "reactivity" of the system and to *make a difference*
- Evaluation of improvements and special care to avoid "improvements for the worse" (quick fixes without improving the underlying latent dangers)
- Organizational support of reporting and analysis of cases, as well as the implementation of improvements
- Supports continuous improvement of the positive proactive safety culture in the department (systems perspective!)

ASRS, Aviation Safety Reporting System; *NASA*, National Aeronautics and Space Administration.

Characteristics of Successful Incident Reporting Systems

Reporting Environment. The details of successful IRS are covered in a number of publications,[1,502,505-507,521-527], and summarized in Box 6.12. A culture of safety is a prerequisite for an effective IRS.[502,506] If people fear negative consequences from reports or think that nothing will change, they will not file reports.

Additionally, successful IRS need top management to spread the message of a blame-free and non-punitive objective of IRS and to ensure that the actual activities of the organization comply. Furthermore, health care organizations should be accountable for investigating their own reports.[513]

BARRIERS AND FACILITATORS TO REPORTING. IRS live on the willingness of the staff to report. Common barriers reported by health care professionals include[508]: fear of blame; legal penalties; the perception that incident reporting does not improve patient safety; lack of organizational support; inadequate feedback; no incident follow-up; lack of knowledge about IRS; and lack of understanding about what constitutes an error. Additional aspects found by Firth-Cozens and colleagues[528] were a too-narrow definition of reportable errors and the effort of making the report. Lack of feedback appeared also as the most important barrier in another study of doctors and nurses.[529]

Common facilitators included a non-judgmental environment; the perception that incident reporting improves safety; clarifying what to report and how to do it as well as how the system uses reports; role models (such as managers); legislated protection of reporters; ability to report anonymously.[508] Additional aspects found by Firth-Cozens and colleagues were[528]: improved leadership about safety and errors; learning groups and learning timeouts; cultural change to make clear what is acceptable behavior; action by management to bring about change and to support employees; middle-grade staff on policy committees; support for each other and from management.

WHAT SHOULD BE REPORTED IN INCIDENT REPORTING SYSTEMS AND BY WHOM? In aviation, the cradle of IRS, there are separate reporting systems for incidents (deviations without a negative outcome) versus accidents (with negative outcome). Aviation accidents are investigated by an independent national body (see later section on "Accident Investigation Board"). In contrast to aviation, where the occurrence of an accident is usually quite public and events with negative outcomes are never supposed to happen, in the health care setting every human being will become ill and die someday so that most negative outcomes are inherent to the progression of disease. It is often difficult to determine which outcomes are the result of deviations versus those due to disease itself or inherent side effects.

From the authors' point of view, the invitation to staff to report should be very broad with few limitations on reporting criteria. This way, reporting is simpler for clinicians and staff and a wide net can be cast to identify as many safety-relevant occurrences and system gaps as possible. For this reason many experts believe that for health care event reporting systems, all adverse incidents should be reportable to the system regardless of whether there was a negative outcome. Whereas all health care organization staff should be included for reporting,[506] another interesting approach is to also give patients and relatives the opportunity to report.[502]

Recently Macrae[512] and other experts have argued that the "report it all, catch it all" approach misses an important opportunity to use specific reporting criteria to shape attention to certain events and set priorities on key risks. This becomes increasingly important as an IRS becomes established in an organization and receives a higher volume of reports. In their literature review Stavropoulou and colleagues found evidence that IRS seem more effective if there are explicit criteria for what counts as an incident.[515]

A rather new approach to incident reporting is called learning from excellence,[530] an approach that is in line with the idea of Safety-II (see earlier section). Learning from excellence means that analysis of reports of positive events and excellent performance in which the outcome was good despite challenging clinical circumstances may be as useful as analyzing failures.

There is a risk that certain kinds of IRS can end up being dominated by self-interested claims and complaints.[9] This can happen if staff members are not fully introduced to the goals and operating principles of what to report and why. IRS can also be used as a means for one or more individuals to attempt to exert power over other individuals or groups.

WHAT SHOULD REPORT FORMS LOOK LIKE? Typically, incident forms are partly standardized—to collect basic clinical details—while including the possibility to describe the incident in a free-text field. So-called narrative reports provide the opportunity to capture the rich context and storyline that allow the conditions that contributed to the error to be explored and understood. IRS that rely largely on an array of checkboxes for the reporter to choose relevant causes of the incident have not proven to be as useful.[502,506]

While traditional event reporting systems were paper-based, technological enhancements have allowed the development of web-based systems. On the reporting form, staff should be encouraged to also propose solutions for incidents.[513] Ideally, it should not take long for personnel to complete the form.[529] In the future, IRS reporting might use digital resources such as smartphones, enabling staff to report in near real-time using a device that they are accustomed to.[507]

CONFIDENTIALITY AND ANONYMITY. Usually, reports are submitted by staff members who were directly involved in the events; these professionals may have legitimate concerns about potential effects the reporting could have on their reputation or their employment performance record. Some IRS are entirely anonymous—neither the patient nor the reporting professional can be identified. This grants a high level of protection, although unique aspects of clinical events may make them self-identifying. For organizational learning, anonymous reports carry a major disadvantage: analysts cannot go back and ask for further information to clarify the report (which is often incomplete).

Other IRS, in contrast, are confidential but not anonymous, meaning that the identity of the reporter is known to the system but kept as secret as possible. Ideally there will be strong legal protection from disclosing the reporter's identity (sometimes with exclusions about purposeful professional misconduct or criminal acts). In general, confidential reports should be deidentified as fully as possible, once the full story has been elicited by the analyzing team.[9] Experts suggest that confidential systems should also allow for anonymous reports, as obtaining any report is more important than missing it entirely.[502,506]

Deidentifying reports can tricky. It is not always easy during the deidentification process to balance retaining the key information required to understand the situation versus deleting all possibly identifying data. The combination of facts about a case may be unique and may thus be intrinsically identifiable, even when seemingly all objective identifiers are stripped.[531] Those involved in the deidentification process proper need special training and supervision to ensure that the appropriate balance is achieved.

PATIENT SAFETY ACTION BOX

To learn from errors or incidents and to improve system and patient safety systematically, the primary questions of incident reporting should not address *"who was wrong"* but address *"what was wrong and how/why."* In a next step, incident reporting needs to focus on *"who can do what to prevent such things from happening again."*

Another widespread concern in relation to confidentiality and anonymity is fear of repercussions if reported event is disclosed internally to supervisors or managers. This fear likely influences what is reported, generating a counterproductive filter that prevents important information being passed up the hierarchy.[512] A typical model drawn from aviation is that IRS are operated and managed by an independent safety team that has no influence on personnel decisions and performance records.

Incident Categorization. The next step of the IRS is to categorize it to make it easier to find or link to it internally and to compare data across care providers, possibly using a standardized format.[502,506,513] The most commonly used framework for categorization is the WHO Framework of Critical Incidents (www.who.int/patientsafety/implementation/taxonomy/ICPS-report/en/).

Analysis. A structured and defined mechanism should be in place for analyzing reports.[521] A widely used framework for analysis of reported incidents among many others and variants is the London Protocol by Taylor-Adams and Vincent.[424] Reports should be interpreted by someone who knows the work and knows the context.[517] For health care incident reports to be of most value they should be reviewed by clinicians, perhaps working also with people who can identify the human factors and organizational system issues.[532] The value of multidisciplinary and multiprofessional investigating committees for analyzing incidents is stressed by experts.[522,533] Common findings of an analysis should characterize the problem, draw conclusions, and set out an action plan.[506]

Action. One of the major problems with incident reporting in health care as it stands is that *"we collect too much and do too little."*[512] Structured approaches to developing action plans and change may be helpful.[521] Reporting systems, both local and national, are sometimes overwhelmed by the volume of reports filed. As a consequence, they often fall short in defining recommendations for good and sustainable solutions. In the worst case, so-called quick fixes are produced that themselves trigger new risks. Even well-meaning activities of promoting lessons learned as organizational safety alerts, an updated policy, or new clinical recommendations, will not by themselves promote learning.[512] Learning is a complex social and participative process that involves people actively reflecting on and reorganizing shared knowledge, technologies, and practices.

Apart from an optimal organizational embedding, IRS can be particularly effective when they are successfully integrated and intertwined to other safety measures. For example, linking simulation team-training programs with an IRS allows for mutual input. Using reported incidents in anesthesia as a basis for simulation scenarios makes the training experience and message for the anesthesia professional very relevant to everyday clinical work. Conversely simulations can deepen the understanding of how and why things happened the way they did, and the experience of simulations can trigger participating clinicians to be more interested in reporting to the IRS in the future.

Feedback. Timely feedback should be given to the reporter, confirming that the report was received and is being processed so that they do not feel that their report was just tossed aside.[497,504] In the course, the reporter should be individually kept informed of next steps and actions taken. Failure to receive feedback after reporting an event and the perception that incident reporting neither brings change nor improves patient safety frustrates reporters. Summaries of reported events (deidentified) should be disseminated in a timely fashion to staff.[521] A variety of complementary feedback modes have been described.[507,534] Researchers have described a safety action feedback loop. This feedback loop unfortunately receives inadequate attention in many organizations,[512,522] leading to the perception of IRS as black holes (reports go in but nothing useful ever seems to come out). Clinical managers should seek to use action feedback information to motivate their staff.[535]

In the past 15 years, research about IRS have focused primarily on setting the stage for technical infrastructure, report collection forms, and categorization and analysis tools. Although those foundations are important, *"over the next 15 years we must refocus our efforts and develop more sophisticated infrastructures for investigation, learning and sharing, …"* (p. 74).[512] Leistikow and colleagues controversially argue that "the journey, not the arrival matters," meaning to focus more on how hospitals learn from incidents and less on what hospitals learn.[511]

LEGAL ISSUES OF REPORTING SYSTEMS. Especially in jurisdictions for which medical liability litigation is common, certain legal issues affect reporting systems. For some kinds of events in some settings, legal requirements to report the event to a governmental body may be in place. This is true in the United States for certain kinds of adverse drug events or for certain failures of medical devices. Moreover, some U.S. states have started mandatory reporting programs about certain never events. In general, voluntary IRS operate completely separate from these governmental types of reporting systems.

In the United States there are various aspects of law in individual states and at the federal level that can provide statutory protection (shield) from discovery (in litigation) of certain kinds of reports to certain organizations. The U.S. Congress passed the Patient Safety and Quality Improvement Act of 2005 (Public Law 109-41)—implemented in 2009—providing for the Department of Health and Human Services to certify patient safety organizations (PSOs) to collect confidential reports about events and to analyze the information. The act provides strong legal protection (privilege) from any compelled release of the information, as in the process of discovery in a lawsuit. Separate privilege from discovery may be granted in states that provide it for internal reporting systems within hospitals that are quality improvement activities, but state laws vary widely on this matter. In addition, the quality improvement protections are often challenged during litigation, and whether the privilege will be applied depends on the ruling of a judge in each individual case. Reporting systems in other countries have used different strategies. For example, in Germany, national IRS have constituted themselves as a press office (informing the anesthesia public domain as journalists would); this then brings them under the protection of the free press act and rights, and makes it almost impossible to use its data in litigation.

The Anesthesia Incident Reporting System in the United States. In 2011 the Anesthesia Quality Institute, affiliated with the ASA, initiated the Anesthesia IRS (AIRS) to collect reports of critical events in anesthesia. Incidents can be reported by secure web-based data collection, either confidentially or anonymously. Confidential reporting allows the AIRS analyst to contact the individual for clarification or follow-up. Legal protection is provided by U.S. federal legislation described above. The law also imposes strict guidelines on how confidentiality of the work must be preserved. The AIRS publishes regularly on their Homepage as well a monthly column in the ASA Newsletter, in which it describes—in deidentified form—an interesting case report and its analysis by the AIRS Committee (Lit: https://www.aqihq.org/casereportsandcommittee.aspx). As of October 2018, AIRS has published a case analysis every month since October 2011. AIRS has instituted 4 specialty modules to collect data about events in certain categories of special interest: (1) cases that involved a respiratory depression event; (2) cases that involved a lack of necessary medications (drug shortage); (3) cases that fall under the OB/GYN procedural service type or took place in an institution's OB ward; (4) cases for patients under the age of 18 (pediatrics).

Should Health Care have an Independent Organization for Accident Investigation? As noted, serious incidents and transportation accidents in aviation and other industries are investigated by an entirely independent, interdisciplinary governmental safety investigator. For example the National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB; www.ntsb.gov) in the United States; similar agencies exist in most countries. These generally provide for rapid—usually in well under 24 hours—deployment of expert accident investigators to the scene of accidents with extensive laboratory and analytical facilities and expertise headquarters.

For several decades, suggestions have been made to establish an NTSB-like body to investigate accidents in health care. Especially in the past few years, new calls have been made to establish such an organization.[536] Until 2017, the complexities and pitfalls of such an investigation, including the fact that adverse outcomes are several orders of magnitude more common in health care than in commercial aviation, have obstructed any progress toward creating such a program. In April 2017, the United Kingdom began to operate the first independent investigation body, the Healthcare Safety Investigation Branch (HSIB; www.hsib.org.uk). Even though funded by the Department of Health and hosted by the NHS Improvement, the multidisciplinary team of experienced safety investigators operates independently. Future developments will show what benefit and usage will derive from this activity.

The debate about the feasibility and advisability of such high-level investigating organizations in different jurisdictions will probably continue for a long time. We believe professional investigation of safety critical events and harm, with rapid deployment and expert analysis, will lead to new insights and the implementation of practical, robust, and effective solutions.

Continuous Training including simulation

Small groups of individuals work together throughout perioperative care. Anesthesia professionals, surgeons, nurses, and other health professionals must coordinate their activities in order to make safe and efficient patient care the priority. Whereas teams in the classical sense work together over a longer period of time, the configuration of teams in the dynamic and frequently changing setting of the OR or ICU environment contains particular challenges of so-called action teams (see earlier section on "Teamwork"). Members of action teams are rarely trained together, and to-date, few are trained at all specifically in how to manage challenging situations providing safe care, for example, by applying the CRM concept (see earlier section on "Crisis Resource Management"). Moreover, they come from distinctly different disciplines and diverse educational backgrounds to the extent that they are often described as being in silos or tribes. The varied nature of the work and the necessity for cooperation among those who perform it make team training an ideal tool in the drive to improve patient safety and reduce medical errors.

How the CRM concept can be learned, trained, and implemented best is explained more in detail in the upcoming section. More detailed information on the conduct and modalities of modern simulation team training for health care professionals can be found in Chapter 7.

How Can Crisis Resource Management-related Skills be Learned, Trained, and Sustained? Despite the growing evidence, systematic interventions to improve patient and system safety have only partially penetrated medical thinking and teaching. CRM-oriented training and behavior should be one component of a comprehensive approach to addressing human factors issues in anesthesia safety, but few if any institutions have deployed such integrated approaches. There have been several reviews on the variety of MTTs, the latest published by Weaver and colleagues in 2014.[409] The targeted teamwork competencies of the programs they discuss are similar, but the curricula differ widely: in content, duration, participation frequency of clinicians and staff, delivery strategies (didactic, seminar, simulation/debriefing), maintenance strategies, and evaluation effort. One major question seems to be the degree to which simulation adds to simple classroom activities.

Two Different Approaches of Team Training: Simulation-Based or Classroom-Based? The oldest medical CRM curriculum, namely the ACRM curriculum, relies heavily on high-fidelity simulation-based training, introducing the CRM principles to the participants and then highlighting CRM aspects of medical care in the post-scenario debriefings. A pocket card of the 15 CRM key points is shown in Fig. 6.17.

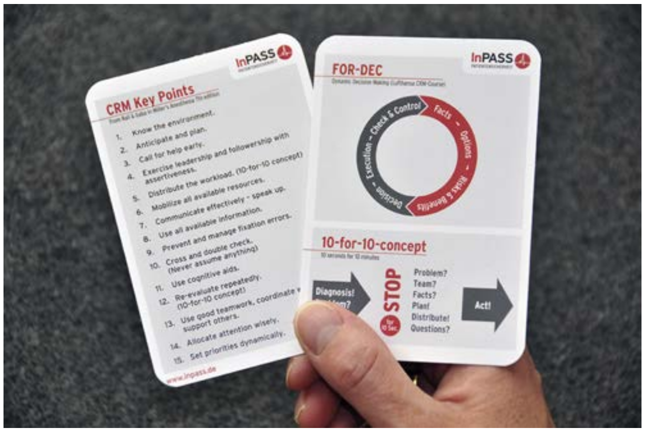

InPASS
CRM Key Points
1. Know the environment.
2. Anticipate and plan.
3. Call for help early.
4. Exercise leadership and followership with assertiveness.
5. Distribute the workload. (10-for-10 concept)
6. Mobilize all available resources.
7. Communicate effectively - speak up.
8. Use all available information.
9. Prevent and manage fixation errors.
10. Cross and double check. (Never assume anything)
11. Use cognitive aids.
12. Re-evaluate repeatedly. (10-for-10 concept)
13. Use good teamwork, coordinate
support others.
14. Allocate attention wisely.
15. Set priorities dynamically.
www.inpass.de
InPASS
FOR-DEC
Facts
Options
Risks & Benefits
Decision
Execution
Check & Control
10-for-10-concept
Diagnosis!
STOP
10 Sec
Problem?
Team?
Facts?
Plan!
Distribute!
Questions?
Act!

Fig. 6.17 Crisis resource management (CRM) pocket cards. One side of the cards shows the 15 CRM key principles by Rall and Gaba. The other side of the card shows two graphics. One shows a tool for formalizing decision-making and avoiding fixation errors called "FOR-DEC," which is derived from aviation. Another shows the "10-seconds-for-10-minutes" concept, a reminder to take the necessary time to organize into a team, whenever appropriate. The cards are handy and pocket sized, and can be carried around during work as a reminder or can be distributed in the department as reminder, an interest-gaining or a multiplication tool. During the CRM courses or simulation training sessions of the authors, CRM pocket cards are given to each participant. (Photograph by M. Rall.)

Much simpler than simulation-based training is purely seminar-based training about human factors, CRM principles, teamwork, and team communication. Several team training programs, including MedTeams, MTM, and DOM, rely on classroom-based approaches only and use didactic lectures, group exercises and role plays, discussion, and analysis of trigger videos.

The different concepts of these training programs, probably as well as the cost and manpower of high-fidelity simulation and the small number of participants per simulation session, raised the question whether simulation-based CRM training is needed compared to classroom-based training and whether they are equally effective. Only a few studies have investigated the effectiveness of classroom-based team trainings versus simulator-based programs.[537] Weaver's summary of review findings reported similar positive effects on learner reactions, knowledge or skills, and clinical practices, as well as patient outcomes.[409] Riley et al. compared perinatal work areas in three different hospitals; one participated in a didactic team-training program, one participated in an in situ simulation program, and one served as a control.[538] Results indicated that significantly greater reductions in patient harm were achieved by the group that participated in the in situ simulation program compared with both the didactic and control groups (37% reduction vs. 1% reduction vs. 43% increase in harm, respectively). The lessons learned from the implementation of the Veteran Affairs (VA) MTT program introduced earlier also suggest that simulation is a crucial part of CRM-based team training interventions.[414]

Drawing parallels to the translated CRM training curriculum in aviation, the classroom-based approach correlates with what the Federal Aviation Agency (FAA) calls phase I (awareness), whereas the simulation-based approach correlates with phase II (skills practice and feedback), which is followed by phase III for maintenance (recurrence training). This is in accordance with the comprehensive approach to teamwork training of Salas and colleagues.

This didactic approach suggests three elements needed for adult education: (1) convey knowledge about teamwork, (2) develop skills of teamwork, and (3) enhance attitudes concerning teamwork.[539,540] Gaba wrote in a point-counterpoint discussion about the question "What does simulation add to teamwork training"[541] the following, proposing the benefit of simulation-based CRM training:

> *"Didactic training may address knowledge and can influence attitudes, but to fully develop skills and alter attitudes, experiential training [like simulation-based training] is likely to be the most effective. Thus, given the complexity of the topic, it is likely that multiple approaches will be necessary to maximize learning and transfer to real patient care."*

Pratt and Sachs challenge this view, arguing that the rather complex and costly simulation approach is replaceable with classroom-based teaching and intensive coaching of clinicians during and after real patient care activities.[542] A rather new approach is the concept of teaching CRM-related topics with a screen-based interactive virtual simulation featuring typical clinical situations.[543,544] Even though virtual simulations permit flexible, cost-efficient, and asynchronous learning, the role and the effectiveness of such virtual activities away from a physical team intervention have to be further evaluated.

Gaba continued in the aforementioned discussion:

> *"Moreover, it is also likely that no single course or exercise can change such complex behaviors permanently—only long-term repetitive training and practice, combined with solid reinforcement of the principles and skills in the actual work environment, has any chance of developing new and optimal teamwork patterns that become deeply ingrained in the work culture."*[541]

It seems reasonable to combine best practices from classroom-based and simulation-based training for an optimal CRM team-training experience. More and more CRM-related organizational or departmental interventions now do so, following the classical phases I (awareness) and II (practical skills and feedback) of the aviation CRM curriculum: that is, ACRM curriculum, TeamSTEPPS, VA CTT, and several CRM implementation studies. Primarily, staff participates in seminar-based CRM interventions in order to learn about the concepts and to create awareness. Simulation-based training is then used after or during the classroom introduction to apply the theoretical knowledge during practical medical case scenarios and to get feedback or to refresh knowledge in order to reach a sustainable base over time. More details on the simulation-based approach are provided in Chapter 7. More details on different ways of teaching ACRM—both simulation- and classroom-based—can be found in the second edition of the book *Crisis Management in Anesthesiology*.[14]

We believe that practicing the reliable execution of CRM skills in routine and emergency situations requires, among other things, exposure to challenging clinical situations in realistic simulation scenarios, followed by detailed group debriefings led by qualified instructors to analyze what transpired. As discussed in Chapter 7, Such CRM-oriented simulation training may be available in dedicated simulation centers or as in situ simulation training in actual work environments. Many simulation centers offer mobile simulation training whereby a simulation team can bring the simulator and simulation equipment to another facility to train the staff in institutions that do not have a simulator or the relevant instructors. Another way is to prepare a few of a site's own clinicians to conduct CRM-based simulation team trainings by sending them to one of the instructor courses for CRM-based simulation team training. Although there are many such courses, the three best known sites of instructor training in the United States are at the Center for Medical Simulation in Boston, the Center for Immersive and Simulation-based Learning at Stanford School of Medicine, and WISER at University of Pittsburgh. In Europe, among others there is the InPASS InFacT instructor course (by Rall), the instructor courses run by DIMS (by Dieckmann), and the EuSiM instructor course.

When choosing a train-the-trainer course, it is important to understand that simulation is a technique, not a technology. It takes many forms: from nontechnological modalities (e.g. verbal simulation, role-playing) to simple skills training models to computerized full-body mannequins; from training students to training professional teams, from rather simple mega-code training scenarios to complex emergency scenario design. Each training form requires a different amount of manpower, logistics, and costs. But crucial under all circumstances is the special skills of the simulation instructors in course and scenario preparation, scenario execution, and debriefing (see Chapter 7). In order to use simulation successfully, the simulation instructors need to be specially qualified in CRM-based training (see Chapter x), the learning objectives of the simulation training need to be set (see Chapter x), and the needs of learners at each stage of education must be targeted (see Chapter x). Furthermore, for simulation to be effective it needs to be integrated into the strategic concept of an organization in a way that promotes transfer of the ideas and skills learned to clinical practice.

Reinforcement and Sustainability of Team Training Effects. Sustainability of team training effects over time is a common question among both improvement scientists and practitioners. Many early evaluations of team training limited follow-up evaluations to 6 months post-training or less.[409] Positive responses after a simulation-based CRM intervention have been found to last for up to 6 months after training.[347] Patterson found gains in teamwork knowledge sustained at follow-up conducted 8 to 10 months post-training.[242] In studies examining the implementation of the VA's team training program, results indicated both significant improvements in perceptions of teamwork climate up to 11 months following implementation[545] and statistically significant reductions in surgical mortality 1 year post training.[42] Those numbers mimic the findings of Armour et al. who indicated a decay in gains 1 year post training.[397]

While a great deal of work has been dedicated to examining optimal refresher training intervals for clinical procedural skills (e.g., resuscitation or intubation skills), relatively minimal work has been done to understand optimal refresher intervals for teamwork competencies. Moffatt and colleagues offered a recurrent training two years after the initial training.[41] The VA CTT program conducts mandatory recurrent training one year after the initial training session, viewing this approach *"critical to re-enforcing key CRM concepts in the program."*[546] Nothing is stated in the program about further training frequency after one year. Based on the literature findings and also drawing parallels to the CRM curriculum in aviation (phase III: recurrence training), a refresher interval of one year for CRM team trainings would seem rational, but we do not know of any institutions that do full-day sessions for experienced clinicians this frequently.

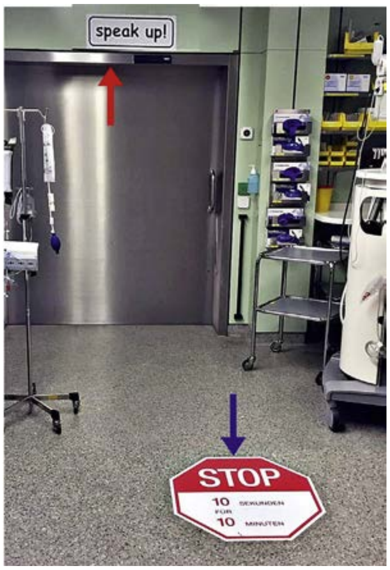


Fig. 6.18 Example of the organizational integration of "Speaking up" and "STOP! 10-seconds-for-10-minutes." The photo shows a laminated sign with the words "Speak up" above the trauma room door (red arrow) and a laminated sign with the words "Stop! 10-seconds-for-10-minutes" on the floor (blue arrow) at the University Hospital of Zurich, Switzerland. The signs are placed as a reminders for safety tools for clinical teams and at the same time show the organizational effort and support for patient safety issues. (Photos published with permission of University Hospital Zurich [USZ], Center for Simulation [Chair: M. Kolbe]).

It is important not think about simulation as a one-shot thing once or every now and then, but rather about a career-long set of activities. These might sometimes take place in a dedicated simulation center or a hospital simulation area and sometimes in situ, directly where patients are treated and cared for.[547] If simulation activities are combined this way it stands to reason that there will be an accumulation of change in individual and team skills, knowledge, attitudes, and behaviors as well as in systems probing and systems change.

Organizational Aspects of the Implementation and Sustainability of Team Training. As with nearly all patient safety principles, application of CRM key points to patient care must be supported by top leadership and reinforced in the actual work environment (Fig. 6.18). It is of less use to study these principles (or even practice them in simulations) only to find that the pressures and culture of the real OR make them impossible to implement. Fully integrating the concepts underlying the CRM key points into the structures and processes of clinical practice has proven to be a significant challenge. The Joint Commission Journal on Quality and Patient Safety outlined several critical factors for developing successful team training in 2009.[539] In brief, those are:

- Align team training objectives and safety aims with organizational goals.
- Provide organizational support for the team training initiative.
- Get frontline care leaders on board.
- Prepare the environment and trainees for team training.
- Determine required resources and time commitment and ensure their availability.
- Facilitate application of trained teamwork skills on the job.
- Measure the effectiveness of the team training program.

Box 6.13 shows characteristics of the implementation of team training interventions that have proved to be successful characteristics.

Continuous Optimization of Safety-Relevant Structures and Processes

HROs try to continually alter the way that they work to improve safety—the structure of their organization, its work units (sometimes described as microsystems), and teams, as well as the usual processes and protocols of care. Sometimes, but not always, these changes can also improve efficiency as well as safety. Since individual workarounds succeed only one patient at a time, addressing the flow of everyday work, and the preparations for anomalies or crises, will be critical to making lasting improvement.

In order to optimize structures and processes continuously in regard to patient safety, it is important to maintain a culture of safety (see above) so that frontline staff are willing and enabled to contribute actively. Furthermore, when talking about the optimization of structures and processes in regard to safety, it is important to define and generate structured ways to transfer safety-critical information and topics, for example from IRS (see earlier section) and team training events (see earlier section) to those who are in charge of structural changes.

Surely, there are many different ways to optimize structures and processes. Starting points, for example, could be the aforementioned use of walkrounds[479] and closing performance gaps by using debriefing as formative assessment[548] after routine and non-routine events.

In many places, the optimization of structures and processes lies in the hand of quality and risk managers. However, we have observed gaps between what is optimized by those working at the blunt end and what is acknowledged and played out by personnel at the sharp end.[549] In order to master this challenge, from the authors' point of view and based on the view of other experts, it is important to:

- focus on the four main elements of safety culture, organizational learning (i.e., IRS), team training, and optimization of structures and processes in a very balanced manner
- develop and optimize structures and processes together and with close involvement of clinical teams (participatory development and user-centered iterative design)

BOX 6.13 Characteristics of Successful Team Training

Studies[5,41,42,414,546,562] that evaluated the positive impact of the implementation of a CRM team-training program and that were successful, show the following, or part of the following, characteristics for the implementation and training process:

Preparation and Implementation

- Assess measures of collaboration and standardization (i.e., 2 months), followed by planning the implementation (i.e., 1 month) based on individual organizational aspects
- Appointment of a “steering committee” consisting of hospital medical and nursing leadership
- Create leadership support and engage departmental teams for planning and preparation

Initiation

- Administrative Training: Intensive training of the leadership group, for example, chief executive officer, chief financial officer, dean, chief medical officer, chief quality officer, department chairs, division heads (i.e., 2 days)
- Administrative Training: Training of executive and senior leadership, board members, and perioperative departmental leadership attending the same CRM training that all perioperative physicians and staff attend.
- Staff Training: Mandatory CRM training session for all physicians and nurses participating in the intervention. Some programs first started on a voluntary basis (“pilot”)
- Interactive training and training in interprofessional teams
- Small groups (i.e., 15 participants/group) and sufficient exposition time for the lectures and interactive training sessions (i.e., 2 day à 9 h[5]; 1 day[42]; 4 h[41])
- Introduction of CRM with en bloc-training (all department staff participates in the training in a short time span, i.e., within 2 or 3 months)
- Team training provided by CRM qualified and experienced instructors; peer-to-peer communication is helpful
- Sufficient Trainer: Participant ratio is 2:15 for moderated interactive group work
- Training is a mixture of lectures and interactive elements (i.e., workshops, discussions, etc.)
- The potential for disturbance is as low as possible (i.e., no duty calls, no pagers, etc.) Eventually ORs must be closed for the training sessions
- Training tailored to organizational/departmental needs

Maintenance

- Creation of a CRM work group consisting of frontline clinicians, giving input to CRM every now and then (posts, bulletin notes, CRM as standard item during morning rounds and staff meetings, etc.), translating CRM into the organizational needs (professional ownership), and organizing several CRM activities (i.e., “week of CRM,” refresher lectures, CRM “awards,” etc.)
- CRM as part of the yearly individual evaluations
- Nomination of local “champions”
- Coaching and monitoring of unit-based performance outcomes (i.e., over 12 months) or “follow-up support” is provided
- Mandatory team training of all new staff members
- Mandatory “practical training” (i.e., CRM-based simulation team training)
- Mandatory “recurrence training” (after 1 year of initial training, not mandatory after 2 years of initial training)
- Steering committee continues to meet monthly to monitor progress
- Initiation of a “train-the-trainer program” to promote hospital’s own CRM facilitators and internalize CRM training and implementation

- introduce and implement new processes and structures systematically, taking whatever time is needed to do this effectively rather than just rolling it out haphazardly. This likely needs change control to determine first how and where the new processes will involve and influence other activities, information that will best come from discussions with clinical personnel and their managers.
- adjust processes and structures in regard to findings from human factors engineering; sometimes it is the work environment or equipment that need to be changed and adapted to the realities of human performance rather than the other way around.

As it is rarely possible to implement or strengthen the four main elements of an HRO all at the same time; it is important to proceed step by step and balance the focus between the elements. Establishing a culture of safety is one of the most important goals as this element is incredibly intertwined with the success of the other elements. Nevertheless, a strong focus on human performance and patient safety within organizations lies in the optimization of structures and processes and IRS. At the same time, organizations should continually train their medical personnel about issues of human performance and patient safety, because there are three related challenges:

- **What do frontline personnel do until all structures and processes are optimized?** The development of strong and safe structures and processes cannot be achieved overnight. Many processes and structures need optimization. While this is going on clinical teams continue to treat patients day after day. They need to hone their skills even while working with outmoded structures and procedures.
- **Even when improved, no system and no process is perfect.** Even optimized processes and structures hold pitfalls; clinical teams will always need to compensate for them and for safety gaps. Only if the individuals and teams have learned and trained together in how to do so can they can operate safely—essentially *"people create safety"* (p. 267).[9]
- **At the very end of any structure or process there always stands a human being.** Regardless of whether the structures and processes are optimized, for the foreseeable future a human professional is at the sharp end of patient care, executing those processes and procedures, and consciously or inadvertently altering or bypassing them. Therefore they need to know and be able to use all relevant safety strategies. These professionals are indeed the last barriers against catastrophe and hence each should individually also exemplify the ideals of HROs, promoting resilience and flexibility at the same time (see earlier sections).

The behavior, commitment, and engagement of frontline staff itself is the crucial key to translate organizational intentions into practice. Our experience is that CRM-based simulation team training (clinical action and clinical relevance) with focus on human performance elements and patient safety can be a good starting point to gain the understanding and buy-in of clinical personnel to organizational changes.

The Bigger Picture: Patient Safety Efforts on the U.S. National and International Level

PATIENT SAFETY MILESTONES AND MOVEMENTS

The field of anesthesiology can rightly be proud of introducing the idea that patient safety is not just a byproduct of clinicians doing a good job, but rather is something to be studied, sought, and fought for as a matter in its own right. This was in large measure achieved by Jeffrey B. Cooper (at Massachusetts General Hospital) and Ellison C. (Jeep) Pierce, Jr., (when president of the ASA), who created a Committee on Patient Safety. Jeff, Jeep, and a few other like-minded innovators created the Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation. These developments are acknowledged to be the founding milestones of the patient safety endeavor, and the inspiration for further development of similar organizations for all aspects of health care across the world.

In part through the efforts of such PSOs the medical community became more open to taking a harder look at medical human performance, error, and negative outcomes. Since the 1990s, many landmark publications and activities have addressed patient safety and the organizational aspects of reducing errors.[9,11,174,434,550-552]

Although many scholars within and outside of anesthesiology had been addressing these issues for some years, the report of the IOM in 1999, *To Err Is Human,*[174] was a highly publicized awakening in the United States about the problems of patient safety. Summarizing the primary literature, the report stated that *"tens of thousands die each year from errors in their care and hundreds of thousands suffer or barely escape from nonfatal injuries that a truly high-quality care system would largely prevent."* The subsequent report of the IOM Committee on Quality of Health Care in America in 2001, entitled *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century,*[434] took a systematic approach to improvement of the entire health care system. It stated that *"between the health care we have and the care we could have, lies not just a gap, but a chasm"* because the health care system today harms too frequently yet routinely fails to deliver its potential benefits. The report concluded: *"The current care system cannot do the job. Trying harder will not work. Changing the systems of care will."*

Various other efforts have taken place, including the *"100,000 Lives Campaign"* (2004) by the IHI; the WHO patient safety program (2004); the patient safety enhancing *TeamSTEPPS* program (2005 and revised 2013); the *Patient Safety and Quality Improvement Act* establishing a voluntary IRS and providing privilege and confidentiality protections for reported patient safety information; the introduction of the *WHO Surgical Safety Checklist* (2008); and the *WHO Patient Safety Curriculum* (2011).

Fifteen years after the IOM report "*To Err is Human,*" the National Patient Safety Foundation (NPSF) convened an expert panel in 2015 to assess the state of the patient safety field and set the stage for the next 15 years of work. Among the recommendations[471] are: establishment of a total systems approach and a culture of safety, and calls for action by government, regulators, health professionals, and others to place higher priority on patient safety science and implementation. The Helsinki Declaration on Patient Safety in Anesthesiology[553] in 2010 from the European Board of Anesthesiology (EBA) and the European Society of Anesthesiology (ESA) emphasized the role of anesthesiology in promoting safe perioperative care in Europe.[371]

Institutions Engaging in Patient Safety

Several governmental and non-governmental patient safety institutions have emerged over the past two decades, including the National Patient Safety Foundation (NPSF), the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ), and the IHI in the United States; the National Patient Safety Agency (NPSA) in England; the Canadian Patient Safety Institute (CPSI); and many more.

Raising the Awareness for Patient Safety

In 2003 the NPSF initiated a patient safety awareness week that takes place yearly, highlighting different patient safety topics. Two years later, in 2005, the WHO launched a yearly Patient Safety Day for increasing the awareness of patient safety.

Certified Education in Patient Safety for Health Care Professionals

The NPSF created the Certified Professional in Patient Safety (CPPS) credential to establish core standards and benchmarking for the field and set an expected proficiency level for those seeking to become professionally certified in patient safety. By 2018, more than 2000 professionals have achieved the CPPS credential. They represent physicians, nurses, pharmacists, patient safety professionals, quality and risk management professionals, health care executives, nonclinical health care professionals, and others with the requisite background throughout the United States and nine other countries. The content of certification covers knowledge in the following five key elements: safety culture, leadership, patient safety risks and solutions, measuring and improving performance, and systems thinking and design/human factors. The VA National Center for Patient Safety, in cooperation with the VA Office of Academic Affiliations, offers one-year fellowships in patient safety to provide in-depth education in patient safety practice and leadership.

National and International Evaluation of the Benefits of Patient Safety Programs

Over the last years the focus of patient safety initiatives has been put more and more on the question of economy and efficiency. Two major reports demonstrate the cost benefits of patient safety programs: (1) The report provided by the AHRQ in 2016 displays interim data on national efforts from 2010 to 2015 to improve safety in health care.[44,554] The report showed that hospital acquired conditions (HACs) have been declining since 2010 with many fewer deaths and substantial dollar savings. (2) The report launched by the international Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) on the economics of patient safety in 2017. [472] The report estimated patient harm being the 14th leading cause of global disease burden and resulting in a considerable cost to patients, health care systems, and societies. Key messages emphasized the important role of leadership and the building of a positive safety culture. Similar economic success, but on the organizational level, was demonstrated in 2017 by Moffatt-Bruce and colleagues at an academic medical center.[41]

Patients for Patient Safety

Furthermore, more and more attention is drawn to the support of patient engagement as a vital contributing component of safe care. The WHO launched the safety program Patients for Patient Safety and provides several toolkits for patients. Several programs in Canada, Australia, and the United States, for example, have been launched, following the idea of patients being the extra sets of eyes and ears that should be integrated into the safety processes.[555-557] Patients are more likely to participate and speak up if they feel authorized and supported to do so by health care workers. As a consequence, the successful setup of patient empowerment strategies requires the understanding of benefit by health care workers to buy in and then requires their full support.

Conclusion and Outlook

Avoiding errors and harm to patients is crucial for every anesthesiologist. For the safety of the patients, but also for the psychological well-being of us as professionals, as professionals commonly suffer from patient harm as a second victim. Clinical knowledge and skills are not sufficient to harm any patient during care. This chapter has summarized, in regard to anesthesiology, how human performance issues matter. As can be gleaned from this chapter, there are many challenges to individual, team, and system performance that can degrade the ability to achieve safe and high-quality care. Knowing and teaching about these is the first of many steps to address them. Recurrent training and practice, with simulation as an important component, organizational learning after both successes and failures, and continuous fostering of a culture of safety and improvement will be needed. As Sir Liam Donaldson stated in 2004 to the Alliance for Patient Safety Conference in Washington: *"To err is human, to cover up is unforgivable, and to fail to learn is inexcusable."*

Anesthesia professionals can and should collaborate with their partners in surgery, nursing, and beyond; however, ultimately anesthesia professionals need to take responsibility for ensuring that we as individuals, the teams we work in, and our workplaces, are ever ready to provide the very best care.

Patient safety has generated a lot of momentum over the last 30 years. Many achievements have been made, although a lot of issues remain to be addressed satisfactorily in part because at their root are fundamental aspects of the way that health care is organized. Even countries that are pioneers in patient safety still struggle. In the developing world and low-resource settings, even basic aspects of patient safety still need to be addressed. Patient safety is a never ending battle, regardless of resources, and as Charles Vincent put it: "Safety in health care is a moving target."[558]

Many patient safety pioneers in medicine, including us (the authors), thought that many of the issues introduced in this chapter would be roughly a decade-long proposition. Now, with many of us being in our fourth decade of the patient safety journey, we know that the road goes ever on…

… and we all just have to keep on trucking.

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and Drs. Marcus Rall, David M. Gaba, and Peter Dieckmann would like to thank Dr. Steven K. Howard for his contribution to this chapter in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Valentin A, et al. *BMJ*. 2009;338:b814.
2. Pronovost P, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;355(26):2725–2732.
3. Lipshutz AKM, et al. *BMC Anesthesiology*. 2015;15:93.
4. Steyrer J, et al. *Health Care Manage Rev*. 2013;38(4):306–316.
5. Haerkens MH, et al. *Acta anaesthesiol Scand*. 2015;59(10):1319–1329.
6. Hunziker S, et al. *J Emerg Trauma Shock*. 2010;3(4):389–394.
7. Niles D, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(8):909–912.
8. Reader TW, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37(5):1787–1793.
9. Vincent C. *Patient Safety*. 2nd ed. Edinburgh: Wiley-Blackwell & BMJ Books; 2010.
10. Vincent C, Amalberti R. *Safer Healthcare. Strategies for the Real World*. Heidelberg, Germany: Springer; 2016.
11. Flin R, et al. *Safety at the Sharp End: A Guide to Nontechnical Skills*. Farnham, UK: Ashgate; 2008.
12. Leveson NG, et al. *Engineering a Safer World: Systems Thinking Applied to Safety*. Cambridge, Massachusetts & London, England: The MIT Press; 2016 (Reprint).
13. St Pierre M, et al. *Crisis Management in Acute Care Settings: Human Factors and Team Psychology in a High Stakes Environment*. New York: Springer; 2008.
14. Gaba DM, et al. *Crisis Management in Anesthesiology*. 2nd ed. Elsevier; 2014.
15. Carayon P, et al. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2014;23(3):196–205.
16. Weinger MB, Englund CE. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(5):995–1021.
17. Raghavendra Rao RS. *Ind j anaesth*. 2016;60(5):306–311.
18. Decker Bauer. *Min Inv Ther Allied Tech*. 2003;12(6):268–277.
19. Loeb RG, et al. In: Erenwerth J, Eisenkraft JB, Berry J, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applicaitons*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders; 2013:485–509.
20. Davis M, et al. *J Peri Prac*. 2016;26(12):274–280.
21. Cooper L, Nossaman B. *Intl Anesth Clin*. 2013;51(1):1–12.
22. Merry AF, et al. *Best Prac ResClinAnaesth*. 2011;25(2):145–159.
23. Merry AF, Anderson BJ. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21(7):743–753.
24. Jensen LS, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59(5):493-504.
25. Orser BA, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60(2):127–135.
26. Glavin RJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(1):76–82.
27. Prabhakar A, et al. *J Med Prac Mgmt*. 2015;30(6 Spec No):41–43.
28. World Health Organization (WHO). 2007;Volume 1. http://www.who.int/patientsafety/solutions/patientsafety/PS-Solution1.pdf. Accessed August 13, 2018.
29. World Health Organization (WHO). 2007;Volume 1. http://www.who.int/patientsafety/solutions/patientsafety/PS-Solution7.pdf. Accessed August 21, 2018.
30. Dolan SA, et al. *Am J Inf Cont*. 2013;41(11):1077–1082.
31. Gariel C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(3):563–570.
32. Mauger B, et al. *Am J Inf Cont*. 2014;42(suppl 10):S274–283.
33. Nanji KC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(1):25–34.
34. Rothschild JM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(8):1694–1700.
35. Wahr JA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(1):32–43.
36. Zimlichman E, et al. *JAMAInt Med*. 2013;173(22):2039–2046.
37. Cooper JB, et al. *Qual Saf Hlth Care*. 2002;11(3):277–282.
38. Williamson JA, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21(5):678–683.
39. Wu AW. *BMJ*. 2000;320(7237):726–727.
40. Cooper JB, Gaba D. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(6):1335–1337.
41. Moffatt-Bruce SD, et al. *Am J Med Qual*. 2017;32(1):5–11.
42. Neily J, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;304(15):1693–1700.
43. Schwartz ME, et al. *J Hlth Risk Mgmt*. 2018;38(1):17–37.
44. *Efforts To Improve Patient Safety Result in 1.3 Million Fewer Patient Harms*. ; 2014. http://www.ahrq.gov/professionals/quality-patient-safety/pfp/interimhacrate2013.html
45. Orasanu J, Connolly T. In: Klein GA, Calderwood R, eds. *Decision Making in Action: Models and Methods*. Norwood, NJ: Ablex Publishing Gorp.; 1993.
46. Gaba DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(5):670–676.
47. Banja J. *Bus Horiz*. 2010;53(2):139.
48. Odom-Forren J. *J Peri Anesth Nrsg*. 2011;26(3):216–219.
49. Prielipp RC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(5):1499–1502.
50. Price MR, Williams TC. *J Pat Saf*. 2018;14(1):1–2.
51. Engelmann C, et al. *Langenbeck's Arch Surg*. 2017;402(1):187–190.
52. Nurok M, et al. *Pat Saf Surg*. 2015;9(1):34.
53. Eichhorn JH. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60(2):111–118.
54. Perrow C. *Normal Accidents: Living with High-Risk Technologies*. New York, US: Princton University Press; 1984.
55. Kirsner K, Biddle C. *Int J Law Hlth Eth*. 2012;8(1).
56. Gaba DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(2):488–500.
57. *Production Pressures*. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ); 2007. https://psnet.ahrq.gov/webmm/case/150.
58. Hollnagel E. *The ETTO Principle : Efficiency-Thoroughness Trade-Off. Why Things that go Right Sometimes go Wrong*. Burlington, VT: Ashgate Publishing Company; 2009.
59. Reason JT. *Human Error*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 1990.
60. Riem N, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(5):723–728.
61. Stiegler MP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(2):229–235.
62. Cognitive biases in health care. *The Joint Commission*. 2016. https://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/23/Quick_Safety_Issue_28_2016.pdf
63. Phipps D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(3):333–343.
64. Manser T, et al. *Ergonomics*. 2007;50(2):246–260.
65. Slagle JM, Weinger MB. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(2):275–283.
66. Weinger MB, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2000;12(4):273–282.
67. Weinger MB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(1):144–155.
68. Slagle JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(1):44–54.
69. Mackenzie CF, et al. *J Clin Monitor*. 1995;11(5):335–341.
70. Xiao Y, et al. *Hum Factors*. 1996;38(4):636–645.
71. Friedman Z, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(4):304–310.
72. Weinger MB, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(2):136–144.
73. Lindekaer AL, et al. *Acta Anaesth Scan*. 1997;41(10):1280–1284.
74. Jacobsen J, et al. *Acta Anaesth Scan*. 2001;45(3):315–319.
75. Weinger MB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(3):475–489.
76. Byrne AJ, Jones JG. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(5):553–556.
77. Manser T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(5):1606–1615.
78. Howard SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(6):1345–1355.
79. Marshall SD, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(4):389–404.
80. Burtscher MJ, et al. *Hum Factors*. 2010;52(2):282–294.
81. Manser T. *Acta Anaesth Scan*. 2009;53(2):143–151.
82. Wacker J, Kolbe M. *TrendsAnaesth Crit Care*. 2014;4(6):200–205.
83. Lingard L, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(5):330–334.
84. Künzle B, et al. *Qual Saf Hlth Care*. 2010;19(6):e46-e46.
85. Künzle B, et al. *Euro J Work Organiz Psych*. 2010;19(5):505–531.
86. Cook RI, Woods DD. *Human Factors*. 1996;38(4):593–613.
87. Cook RI, Woods DD. *J Clin Anaesth*. 1996;8(suppl 3):29s–37s.
88. Loeb RG. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(3):527–533.
89. Manser T, Wehner T. *Analysing Action Sequences: Variations in Action Density in the Administration of Anaesthesia*. vol. 4. ; 2002.
90. Weinger MB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(1):77–92.
91. Weinger M, Slagle J. *J Am Med Inform Assoc*. 2002;9(suppl 6):S58–S63.
92. Weinger MB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(5):1419–1425.
93. Byrne AJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(6):767–771.
94. Gaba DM, Lee T. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71(4):354–361.
95. Pape TM, Dingman SK. *Plastic Surg Nrsg*. 2011;31(2):49–56.
96. Campbell G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(5):707–715.
97. Schulz CM, Schneider E, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(6):807–813.
98. Betza SM, et al. *Proceedings of the Human Factors and Ergonomics Society Annual Meeting*. 2016;60(1):608–612.
99. Smith AF, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58(11):1070–1078.
100. Broom MA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(3):175–179.
101. Cooper JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60(1):34–42.
102. Marcus R. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16(3):242–250.
103. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Standards and Guidelines: 2008 ASA Recommendations for Pre Anesthesia Checkout. https://www.asahq.org/resources/clinical-information/2008-asa-recommendations-for-pre-anesthesia-checkout. Accessed November 16, 2018.
104. Feldman JM, et al. *APSF Newsletter*. 2008;23(1):6–7.

105. Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (AAGBI). *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(6):660–668.
106. Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists (ANZCA). *Guidelines on Checking Anaesthesia Delivery Systems*; 2014. http://www.anzca.edu.au/documents/ps31-2014-guidelines-on-checking-anaesthesia-deliv.pdf
107. Merchant R, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2016;63(1):86–112.
108. Gaba DM. *Dynamic Decision-Making in Anesthesiology: Cognitive Models and Training Approaches*. Berlin, Heidelberg: 1992.
109. Gaba DM. *Intl Anesth Cin*. 1989;27(3):137–147.
110. Gaba DM, et al. *Hum Factors*. 1995;37(1):20–31.
111. Xiao Y, et al. *Incident Evolution And Task Demands: An Analysis And A Field Study Of 'Going Sour' Incidents*. vol. 36. ; 1995.
112. Norman DA. *Psychol Rev*. 1981;88(1):1–15.
113. Rasmussen J. *IEEE Trans Syst, Man, and Cybernetics*. 1983;SMC-13(3):257–266.
114. Klein GA. *Adv Man Machine Sys Res*. 1989;5:47–92.
115. Reason J, et al. *Generic Error-Modeling System (GEMS): A Cognitive Framework for Locating Common Human Error Forms*. Chichester, UK: Wiley; 1987.
116. Klemola UM, Norros L. *Med Educ*. 1997;31(6):449–456.
117. Hall KH. *Med Educ*. 2002;36(3):216–224.
118. Sarter NB, Woods DD. *Intl J Aviation Psych*. 1991;1(1):45–57.
119. Hartman BO, Secrist GE. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1991;62(11):1084–1089.
120. Tversky A, Kahneman D. *J Science*. 1974;185(4157):1124–1131.
121. Stiegler MP, Tung A. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(1):204–217.
122. Cook RI, et al. *Human Performance in Anesthesia: A Corpus of Cases*. Columbus, Ohio: Cognitive Systems Engineering Laboratory Report, prepared for Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation; 1991.
123. Reason JT, et al. *Qual Health Care*. 2001;10(suppl 2):ii21–25.
124. Klein GA. In: Orasanu J, Calderwood R, Zsambok CE, eds. *Decision Making in Action: Models and Methods*. Norwood: Ablex Publishing Corporation; 1993:138–147.
125. Schwid HA, O'Donnell D. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(4):495–501.
126. DeAnda A, Gaba DM. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(3):308–315.
127. Howard SK, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1992;63(9):763–770.
128. Gaba DM. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(4):491–494.
129. Wacker J, Staender S. *Curr Opin Anaesth*. 2014;27(6):649–656.
130. Stone M, et al. *Memory (Hove, England)*. 2001;9(3):165–176.
131. Dodhia RM, Dismukes RK. *Appl Cogn Psych*. 2009;23(1):73–89.
132. Dieckmann P, et al. *Ergonomics*. 2006;49(5-6):526–543.
133. Dismukes RK. *Curr Dir Psych Sci*. 2012;21(4):215–220.
134. Glavin RJ. *Best Prac Res Clin Anaesth*. 2011;25(2):193–206.
135. Schulz CM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(3):729–742.
136. Schulz CM, et al. *BMC Anesthesiology*. 2016;16:4.
137. De Keyser V, et al. *Fixation Errors in Dynamic and Complex Systems: Descriptive Forms, Psychological Mechanisms, Potential Countermeasures*. Brussles: Technical Report for NATO Division of Scientific Affairs. North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO); 1988.
138. De Keyser V, Woods DD. In: Colombo AG, Bustamante AS, eds. *Systems Reliability Assessment*. Dordrecht, Germany: Kluwer Academic; 1990:231–251.
139. Xiao Y, et al. *Decision Making in Dynamic Environments: Fixation Errors and Their Causes*. vol. 39. ; 1995.
140. Hart SG, Staveland LE. In: Hancock PA, Meshkati N, eds. *Human Mental Workload*. Amsterdam: Elsevier; 1988:139–183.
141. Edwards MS, et al. *Anx Stress Coping*. 2015;28(1):1–16.
142. Leedal JM, Smith AF. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94(6):702–709.
143. Byrne A. *Anesth Pain Med*. 2011;1(2):90–94.
144. Neily J, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2007;33(8):502–511.
145. Arriaga AF, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(3):246–253.
146. Yang CW, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2012;83(9):1055–1060.
147. Knudson MM, et al. *J Trauma*. 2008;64(2):255–263. discussion 263-254.
148. Rall M, et al. In: Kyle R, Murra BW, eds. *Clinical Simulation: Operations, Engineering, and Management*. Burlington: Academic Press; 2008:565–581.
149. Kenmoku K. *J Artif Org*. 2009;12(2):67–72.
150. Wickens CD. *Hum Factors*. 2008;50(3):449–455.
151. Regehr G, Mylopoulos M. *J Cont Ed Hlth Prof*. 2008;28(S1):19–23.
152. Byrne AJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(12):1266–1272.
153. Burtscher MJ, et al. *BMJ Sim Tech Enh Lrng*. 2018;4(4):165–170.
154. Schwid MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(6):1434–1444.
155. DeAnda A, Gaba DM. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71(1):77–82.
156. Henrichs B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:255–262.
157. McIntosh CA. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(1):6–9.
158. Lake Wobegon. In OxfordReference.com. Retrieved August 21, 2018, from http://www.oxfordreference.com/view/10.1093/oi/authority.20110810105237549.
159. Scherrer V, et al. *A & A Case Reports*. 2013;1(5):75–76.
160. Novick RJ, et al. *J Surg Ed*. 2015;72(2):302–309.
161. Mhyre JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(4):782–793.
162. Langerman A, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2014;219(6):1181–1186.
163. Dutton RP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(3):450–458.
164. Tschan F, et al. In: Boos M, Kolbe M, Kappeler P, Ellwart T, eds. *Coordination in Human and Primate Groups*. Heidelberg, Germany: Springer; 2011:93–115.
165. Weingart LR. *Res Org Behav*. 1997;19:189–239.
166. Kolbe M,B, et al. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2013;22(7):596–605.
167. Embrey ED, et al. *Anesthesia eJournal*. 2013;1(2).
168. Lyk-Jensen HT, et al. *AANA J*. 2016;84(2):122–127.
169. Gaba DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(1):8–18.
170. Fletcher G, et al. *Framework for Observing and Rating Anaesthetists' NonTechnical Skills. Anaesthetists' NonTechnical Skills (ANTS) System Handbook v1.0*. Aberdeen, Scottland: University of Aberdeen; 2012.
171. Fletcher GC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(3):418–429.
172. The Joint Commission. *Sentinel Event Statistics Released for 2014*; 2015. https://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/23/jconline_April_29_15.pdf
173. Cook TM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(5):617–631.
174. Kohn LT, et al. *To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System*; 2000.
175. Dieckmann P, et al. *Adv Simul*. 2017;2(1):21.
176. Human Factors and Ergonomics Society (HFES). *Definitions of Human Factors and Ergonomics*; 2016. http://cms.hfes.org/Resources/Educational-and-Professional-Resources/Educational-Resources/Definitions-of-Human-Factors-and-Ergonomics.aspx
177. Catchpole K, McCulloch P. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2010;16(6):618–622.
178. Holden RJ, et al. *Ergonomics*. 2013;56(11):1669–1686.
179. Carayon P, et al. *Qual Saf Hlth Care*. 2006;15(suppl 1):i50–i58.
180. Nestel D, et al. *Simul Hlthcare*. 2011;6(1):2–3.
181. Gaba DM. *Simul Hlthcare*. 2011;6(1):8–10.
182. Fletcher G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(5):580–588.
183. Flin R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(1):38–44.
184. Salas E, et al. *Human Res Mgmt*. 2014:24. Available at: https://orpca.org/APCM/Salas_et_al-2014-Human_Resource_Management%201%203.pdf.
185. Jepsen RMHG, et al. *Int J Med Ed*. 2015;6:17–25.
186. Spanager L, et al. *Danish Med J*. 2012;59(11):A4526.
187. Shields A, Flin R. *EMJ*. 2013;30(5):350–354.
188. Flin R, et al. *The Surgeon*. 2007;5(2):86–89.
189. Helmreich R, et al. *Vol NASA/UT Technical Manual 90-2, Revision 1*. Austin, TX: NASA/University of Texas Aerospace Crew Performance Project; 1991.
190. Graham J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(4):440–445.
191. Zwaan L, et al. *Adv Simul*. 2016;1(1):18.
192. Watkins SC, et al. *Simul Hlthcare*. 2017;12(2):69–75.
193. Gjeraa K, et al. *Acta Anaesth Scan*. 2016;60(1):36–47.
194. Jones CPL, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(suppl 1):12–24.
195. Flin R, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(8):817–825.
196. World Health Organization (WHO). Patient safety curriculum, Topic 2: "Why applying human factors is important for patient safety?". In: *WHO Multi-professional Patient Safety Curriculum Guide*. 2011: 111-107.
197. Brandimonte M, et al. *Prospective Memory: Theory and Applications*. Mahwah, NJ, US: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates Publishers; 1996.
198. Douglas HE, et al. *Appl Ergo*. 2017;59:45–55.
199. Ophir E, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106(37):15583–15587.
200. Uncapher MR, Wagner AD. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2018;115(40):9889–9896.
201. Feng SF, et al. *Cogn Affect Behav Neurosci*. 2014;14(1):129–146.
202. Weigl M, et al. *J Pat Saf*. 2013;9(1):18–23.
203. Rohrer D, Pashler HE. *Psych Bulletin Rev*. 2003;10(1):96–103.
204. Nijboer M, et al. *PLoS ONE*. 2013;8(11).
205. van Rensen ELJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(5):1183–1187.
206. Segall N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(1):102–115.
207. Endsley MR. *Human Factors*. 1995;37(1):32–64.
208. Endsley MR. *J Cogn Eng Dec Mak*. 2015;9(1):4–32.
209. Endsley MR. *Cogn Tech Work*. 2015;17(2).
210. Dekker S. *Cogn Tech Work*. 2015;17(2):159–161.
211. Dekker S, Hollnagel E. *Cogn Tech Work*. 2003;6:79–86.

212. Kahneman D. *Thinking, Fast and Slow*. New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux; 2012.
213. Bogdanovic J, et al. *BMC Hlth Serv Resch*. 2015;15:128.
214. Widmer LW, et al. *Wrld J Surg*. 2018;42(7):2011–2017.
215. Burtscher MJ, Manser T. *Safety Sci*. 2012;50:1344–1354.
216. Johnsen BH, et al. *Scand J Trauma Resuc Emg Med*. 2017;25(1):109.
217. Schmutz JB, Eppich WJ. *Acad Med*. 2017;92(11):1555–1563.
218. Fioratou E, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(1):83–90.
219. Gibbs NM. *Anaesth Intev Care*. 2017;45(3):289–290.
220. Fleisher LA. *Euro J Anaesth*. 2012;29(8):357–359.
221. Marewski JN, Gigerenzer G. *Dial Clin Neurosci*. 2012;14(1):77–89.
222. Kahneman D, Klein G. *Am Psychol*. 2009;64:515–526.
223. Gigerenzer G, et al. *Simple Heuristics that Make us Smart*. New York: Oxford University Press; 1999.
224. Gigerenzer G, Gray JA. *Better Doctors, Better Patients, Better Decisions : Envisioning Health Care 2020*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press; 2011.
225. Schlesinger JJ, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2018;36(1):99–116.
226. Nurok M, Cohen N. *Intnl Anesth Clin*. 2015;53(3):116–126.
227. Distracted Doctoring. *Returning to Patient-Centered Care in the Digital Age*. Springer; 2017.
228. Jorm CM, O'Sullivan G. *Anaesth Inten Care*. 2012;40(1):71–78.
229. Attri JP, et al. *Saudi J Anaesth*. 2016;10(1):87–94.
230. Ford DA. *AORN journal*. 2018;107(1):P13–P14.
231. Gill PS, et al. *Risk Mgmt Hlthcare Pol*. 2012;5:105–114.
232. van Pelt M, Weinger MB. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(1):347–350.
233. Pınar HU, et al. *BMC Anesthesiology*. 2016;16:88.
234. Domino KB, Sessler DI. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(6):1156–1158.
235. Stevenson RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(2):376–381.
236. Weinger MB, van Pelt M. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(1):347–350.
237. Allen K, Blascovich J. *JAMA*. 1994;272(11):882–884.
238. Weinger MB. *JAMA*. 1995;273(14):1090–1091.
239. Murthy VS, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(7):608–611.
240. Schneider W, Detweiler M. *Human Factors*. 1988;30(5):539–566.
241. Soto RG, et al. *Euro J Anaesth*. 2017;34(4):246–247.
242. Patterson P. *OR manager*. 2013;29(2):20–22.
243. Statement on use of cell phones in the operating room. *Bulletin of the American College of Surgeons*. 2008;93(9):33–34.
244. (AORN) *Position Statement on Managing Distractions and Noise During Perioperative Patient Care*; 2014. http://www.aorn.org/Clinical_Practice/Position_Statements/Position_Statements.aspx
245. The Joint Commission. Minimizing noise and distractions in the OR and procedural units. *Quick Safety*. 2017;(Issue 35). https://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/23/Quick_Safety_Issue_35_2017_Noise_in_OR_FINAL.pdf
246. Anthony K, et al. *Crit Care Nurse*. 2010;30(3):21–29.
247. Huber S, et al. 2016.
248. *International Bedroom Poll*. 2013. https://sleepfoundation.org/sleep-polls-data/other-polls/2013-international-bedroom-poll
249. Doran SM, et al. *Arch Italiennes de Biologie*. 2001;139(3):253–267.
250. Akerstedt T, Kecklund G. *J Sleep Research*. 2001;10(2):105–110.
251. Howard SK, et al. *Adad Med*. 2002;77(10):1019–1025.
252. Howard SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(5):1281–1294.
253. Biddle C, Aker J. *AANA Journal*. 2011;79(4):324–331.
254. Domen R, et al. *AANA Journal*. 2015;83(2):123–131.
255. The Joint Commission. Health care worker fatigue and patient safety. *Sentinel Event Alert*. 2011;48(48):1–4. https://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/18/SEA_48.pdf
256. Sinha A, et al. *J Anaesth, Clin Pharm*. 2013;29(2):151–159.
257. Gregory P, Edsell M. *Cont Ed Anaesth Crit Care Pain*. 2014;14(1):18–22.
258. Barger LK, et al. *PLoS Med*. 2006;3(12):e487.
259. Fletcher KE, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;141(11):851–857.
260. Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME). *The ACGME 2011 Duty Hour Standard: Enhancing Quality of Care*. Supervision and Resident Professional Development; 2011. https://www.acgme.org/Portals/0/PDFs/jgme-monograph[1].pdf
261. Blum AB, et al. *Nat Sci Sleep*. 2011;3:47–85.
262. Philibert I, et al. *Ann Rev Med*. 2013;64:467–483.
263. Landrigan CP, et al. *JAMA*. 2006;296(9):1063–1070.
264. Engelmann C, et al. *Surg Endoscopy*. 2011;25(4):1245–1250.
265. Cooper JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56(6):456–461.
266. Cooper JB. *J Clin Anesth*. 1989;1(3):228–231.
267. Smith-Coggins R, et al. *I Ann Emerg Med*. 2006;48(5):596-604, 604. e591-593.
268. Howard SK. *VA's Strategic Nap Program. TOPICS IN PATIENT SAFETY*. VA Palo Alto Health Care System;MAY/JUNE 2008.
269. Rendell PG, Craik FIM. *Appl Cogn Psych*. 2000;14(7):S43–S62.
270. Mienaltowski A. *Ann New York Acad Sci*. 2011;1235:75–85.
271. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). *TeamSTEPPS® 2.0 Pocket Guide*; 2014. 2018 https://www.ahrq.gov/sites/default/files/wysiwyg/professionals/education/curriculum-tools/teamstepps/instructor/essentials/pocketguide.pdf
272. Silverstein JH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79(2):354–375.
273. Bryson EO, Silverstein JH. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(5):905–917.
274. Jungerman FS, et al. *Braz J Anesth*. 2012;62(3):375–386.
275. Mayall RM. *BJA Educ*. 2016;16(7):236–241.
276. Booth JV, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(4):1024–1030.
277. Skipper GE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(3):891–896.
278. Berge KH, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2009;84(7):625–631.
279. Rossier RN. Hazardous Attitudes. Which one do you have?. https://www.aopa.org/news-and-media/all-news/1999/september/flight-training-magazine/hazardous-attitudes; 1999
280. Tucker AL, Edmondson AC. *Calif Mgmt Rev*. 2003;45(2):55–72.
281. Lingard L, et al. *Acad Med*. 2002;77(3):232–237.
282. Greenberg CC, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2007;204(4):533–540.
283. Kolbe M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:1099–1108.
284. The Joint Commission. Sentinel Event Alert: Inadequate hand-off communication. Issue 58. September 2017; https://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/18/SEA_58_Hand_off_Comms_9_6_17_FINAL_(1).pdf. Accessed November 16, 2018.
285. Edmondson AC. *Teaming: How Organizations Learn, Innovate, and Compete in the Knowledge Economy*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass; 2012.
286. Smith-Jentsch KA, et al. *Small Group Research*. 2008;39(3):303–327.
287. Rudolph JW, et al. *Academy Manage J*. 2009;34:733–756.
288. Schmutz J, et al. *Euro J Work Organiz Psych*. 2015;24(5):761–776.
289. Härgestam M, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2013;3(10).
290. Kolbe M. In: Salas E, Tannenbaum S, Cohen D, Latham G, eds. *Developing and Enhancing Teamwork in Organisations: Evidence-Based Best Practices and Guidelines*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass; 2013: 609–643.
291. El-Shafy IA, et al. *J Surg Educ*. 2018;75(1):58–64.
292. Hunter H, et al. *Periop Care OR Mgmt*. 2017;6:7–10.
293. Randmaa M, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7(8):e015038.
294. De Meester K, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2013;84(9):1192–1196.
295. Shahid S, Thomas S. *Safety in Health*. 2018;4(1):7.
296. Bagian JP, Paull DE. *JAMA*. 2018;319(2):125–127.
297. Saager L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(4):695–706.
298. Starmer AJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371(19):1803–1812.
299. Karamchandani K, et al. *Qual Mgmt Health Care*. 2018;27(4):215–222.
300. Jullia M, et al. *Euro J Anaesth*. 2017;34(7):471–476.
301. Kolbe M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(5):1099–1108.
302. Morrison EW. *Acad Mgmt Ann*. 2011;5(1):373–412.
303. Raemer DB, et al. *Acad Med*. 2016;91(4):530–539.
304. Schwappach DLB, Gehring K. *BMJ Open*. 2014;4(5).
305. Schwappach DL, Gehring K. *PLoS One*. 2014;9(8):e104720.
306. Schwappach DL, Gehring K. *BMC Hlth Serv Res*. 2014;14:303.
307. Okuyama A, et al. *BMC Hlth Serv Res*. 2014;14:61.
308. Detert J, Edmondson A. *Acad Mgmt J*. 2011;54(3):461–488.
309. Morrison EW. *Ann Rev Organiz Psychol*. 2014;1(1):173–197.
310. Kish-Gephart JJ, et al. *Res Organiz Behav*. 2009;29:163–193.
311. Souba W, et al. *Acad Med*. 2011;86(12):1492–1499.
312. St.Pierre M, et al. *Der Anaesthesist*. 2012;61(10):857–866.
313. Weiss M, et al. *Small Group Res*. 2014;45(3):290–313.
314. Vashdi DR, et al. *Acad Mgmt J*. 2013;56(4):945–971.
315. Edmondson AC. *Administrative Science Quarterly*. 1999;44(2):350–383.
316. Bould MD, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2015;62(6):576–586.
317. Liu W, et al. *J Appl Psych*. 2013;98(5):841–851.
318. Sydor DT, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(3):463–471.
319. Martin GP, et al. *BMJ Quality Amp; Saf*. 2018.
320. Farh CI, Chen G. *J Appl Psychol*. 2018;103(1):97–110.
321. Weiss M, et al. *We can do It! Inclusive Leader Language Promotes Voice Behavior in Multi-Professional Teams*; 2017.
322. Wei X, et al. *J Appl Psych*. 2015;100(5):1641–1652.
323. Weiss M, Morrison EW. *J Organz Behav*. 2018;0(Special Issue):1–15.
324. Cooper JB. *Anesthesiology*. 2018.
325. Salas E, et al. *Toward an Understanding of Team Performance and Training. Teams: Their Training and Performance*. Westport, CT: Ablex Publishing; 1992:3–29.
326. Schmutz J, Manser T. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(4):529–544.
327. Weiss M, et al. *Euro J Work Organiz Psych*. 2017;26(1):66–80.

328. St Pierre M, et al. *Der Anaesthesist*. 2016;65(9):681–689.
329. Team Cognition. *Understanding the Factors That Drive Process and Performance*. American Psychological Association; 2004.
330. Burtscher MJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(6):801–806.
331. Schmutz J, et al. In: Örtenblad A, Abrahamson C, Sheaff R, eds. *Management Innovations for Health Care Organizations. Adopt, Abandon or Adapt?*. New York: Routledge; 2016:359–377.
332. Burtscher MJ, et al. *J Exp Psych: Appl*. 2011;17:257–269.
333. Kolbe M, et al. *J Appl Psych*. 2014;99(6):1254–1267.
334. Künzle B, et al. *Eur J Work Organ Psychol*. 2010;19:505–531.
335. Künzle B, et al. *Safety Science*. 2010;48(1):1–17.
336. Morgeson FP, et al. *J Mgmt*. 2010;36(1):5–39.
337. Klein KJ, et al. *AdminSci Quar*. 2006;51(4):590–621.
338. Seelandt J, et al. *GIO*. 2017;48(1):69–78.
339. Tschan F, et al. *Trends Anaesth Crit Care*. 2014;4:36.
340. Fernandez Castelao E, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2013;28(4):504–521.
341. Foulk T, et al. *J Appl Psych*. 2016;101(1):50–67.
342. Riskin A, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2015;136(3):487–495.
343. Sagan SD. *J Contig Crisis Mgmt*. 1994;2(4):228–240.
344. Larsson J, Holmström IK. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(1):115–121.
345. Helmreich RL, et al. *Intl J Aviat Psych*. 1999;9(1):19–32.
346. Rall M, et al. *AINS*. 2001;36(6):321–330.
347. Gaba D, et al. *Simul Gaming*. 2001;32:175–193.
348. Gaba DM, et al. *Simul Gaming*. 2001;32(2):175–193.
349. Barnes CM, et al. *J Appl Psych*. 2008;93(3):529–539.
350. Sagan SD. *Risk Analysis*. 2004;24(4):935–946.
351. Nembhard IM, Edmondson AC. *J Organiz Behav*. 2006;27(7):941–966.
352. Hirak R, et al. *Leadership Quar*. 2012;23:107–117.
353. Rosenman ED, et al. *J Grad Med Educ*. 2016;8(3):332–340.
354. Rosenman ED, et al. *Acad Med*. 2014;89(9):1295–1306.
355. Mesmer-Magnus JR, Dechurch LA. *J Appl Psych*. 2009;94(2):535–546.
356. Bogenstätter Y, et al. *Human Factors*. 2009;51:115–125.
357. Christensen C, et al. *Med Dec Making*. 2000;20(1):45–50.
358. Larson JRJ, et al. *J Pers Soc Psychol*. 1998;75:93–108.
359. Chikkabbaiah V, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(12):1453-1453.
360. Pandit JJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72(2):150–155.
361. Berkenstadt H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(2):530–532.
362. Harrison TK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(3):551–556.
363. Burden AR, et al. *Simul Hlthcare*. 2012;7(1):1–9.
364. Bereknyei Merrell S, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2018;44(8):477–484.
365. Hilton G, et al. *Intl J Ob Anesth*. 2016;25:9–16.
366. Marshall SD, Mehra R. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(7):669–677.
367. Lingard L, et al. *Arch Surg (Chicago, Ill : 1960)*. 2008;143(1):12–17.
368. Krombach JW, et al. *Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;5(4):e26300.
369. Hepner DL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(2):384–392.
370. Marshall S. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1162–1171.
371. Mellin-Olsen J, et al. *Euro J Anaesth*. 2010;27(7):592–597.
372. Haynes AB, et al. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2009;360(5):491–499.
373. Neuhaus C, et al. *J Pat Saf*. 2017.
374. Levy MM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(suppl 11):S595–597.
375. Chu L, Fuller A. *Manual of Clinical Anesthesiology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2011.
376. Watkins SC, et al. *J Clin Monit Comp*. 2016;30(3):275–283.
377. Goldhaber-Fiebert SN, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2015;41(5):212–220.
378. Gaba DM. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1033–1036.
379. Tobin JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1178–1184.
380. Augoustides JG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1037–1038.
381. Goldhaber-Fiebert SN, Howard SK. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1149–1161.
382. Jenkins B. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(7):660–664.
383. Walker IA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(1):47–54.
384. Pugel AE, et al. *J Inf Publ Hlth*. 2015;8(3):219–225.
385. Close KL, et al. *BMJ Global Health*. 2017;2(suppl 4):e000430.
386. Treadwell JR, et al. *BMJ Qual Safety*. 2014;23(4):299–318.
387. Winters BD, et al. *Crit Care*. 2009;13(6):210-210.
388. Gillespie BM, Marshall A. *Implement Sci*. 2015;10:137.
389. Mahajan RP. *Best Prac Res Clin Anaesth*. 2011;25(2):161–168.
390. Clay-Williams R, Colligan L. *BMJ Qual Safety*. 2015;24(7):428–431.
391. Salas E, et al. *Theoret Iss Ergonom*. 2007;8(5):381–394.
392. Cooke NJ, et al. *J Exp Psychol Appl*. 2007;13(3):146–157.
393. Cooke NJ, et al. *Hum Factors*. 2000;42(1):151–173.
394. Cooke NJ. *CurrDir Psycho Sci*. 2015;24(6):415–419.
395. Salas E, et al. *Grp Organ Mgmt*. 2018;43(3):357–381.
396. Gjeraa K, et al. *Acta Anaesth Scand*. 2014;58(7):775–787.
397. Armour Forse R, et al. *Surgery*. 2011;150(4):771–778.
398. Deering S, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2011;37(8):350–356.
399. Capella J, et al. *J Surg Educ*. 2010;67(6):439–443.
400. Young-Xu Y, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2011;146(12):1368–1373.
401. Risser DT, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1999;34(3):373–383.
402. Morey JC, et al. *Hlth Serv Res*. 2002;37(6):1553–1581.
403. Rosen MA, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2008;15(11):1190–1198.
404. Birnbach DJ, Salas E. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2008;26(1):159–168. viii.
405. Sundar E, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2007;25(2):283–300.
406. Nielsen PE, et al. *Ob Gyn*. 2007;109(1):48–55.
407. Marshall DA, Manus DA. *AORN journal*. 2007;86(6):994–1011.
408. Dunn EJ, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2007;33(6):317–325.
409. Weaver SJ, et al. *BMJ Quality & Safety*. 2014;23(5):359–372.
410. Marlow SL, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2017;43(4):197–204.
411. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. TeamSTEPPS: Curriculum, Toolkit, further information and implementation guidelines, Online Training, Pocket Guide and Pocket Guide App, Webinars, Training Videos, Classroom slides, Measurement Tools. https://www.ahrq.gov/teamstepps/index.html.
412. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). *TeamSTEPPS® 2.0*; 2012. https://www.ahrq.gov/teamstepps/index.html
413. Veterans Affairs National Center for Patient Safety. Clinical Team Training (CTT). https://www.patientsafety.va.gov/professionals/training/team.asp. Accessed May, 06 2018.
414. Neily J, et al. *Lessons from the VA's Team Training Program. Perspectives on Safety*; 2011. https://psnet.ahrq.gov/perspectives/perspective/112
415. Canadian Patient Safety Foundation. *Report on Summary of Team Training Programs*; 2010. http://www.patientsafetyinstitute.ca/en/toolsResources/teamworkCommunication/Documents/Teamwork%20and%20Communications%20Final%20Summary%20of%20training%20programs.pdf
416. Moray NP, Senders JW. *Human Error: Cause, Prediction and Reduction*. Lawrence Erlbaum Associates Inc; 2008.
417. Hogan AM, Sanders RD. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(6):960–964.
418. Health and Safety Executive (HSE). Leadership and worker involvement toolkit. http://www.hse.gov.uk/construction/lwit/assets/downloads/human-failure.pdf; 2012
419. Arnstein F. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79(5):645–656.
420. Rasmussen J. *Information Processing and Human-Machine Interaction: An Approach to Cognitive Engineering*. New York, USA: Elsevier Science Ltd; 1986.
421. Helmreich RL. *BMJ*. 2000;320(7237):781–785.
422. Engelmann C, et al. *Langenbeck's Arch Surg*. 2017;402(1):187–190.
423. Vincent C, et al. *Br Med J*. 1998;316(7138):1154–1157.
424. Taylor-Adams S, Vincent C. *Clinical Risk*. 2004;10(6):211–220.
425. Nyssen AS, Blavier A. *Ergonomics*. 2006;49(5-6):517–525.
426. Mehl K, Wehner T. In: Bauer J, Harteis C, eds. *Human Fallibility: The Ambiguity of Errors for Work and Learning*. Dordrecht: Springer; 2012:91–106.
427. Dekker S. *The Field Guide to Understanding Human Error*. 2nd New edition. Aldershot (England) & Burlington, VT (USA): Ashgate Publishing Limited; 2006.
428. Reason J. *West J Med*. 2000;172(6):393–396.
429. Cook RI, Woods DD. *Human Error Med*. 1994:255–310.
430. Hidden A. *Clapham Junction Accident Investigation Report*. London: His/Her Majesty's Stationary Office; 1989.
431. Henriksen K, Kaplan H. *Qual Saf Hlth Care*. 2003;12(suppl 2):ii46–ii50.
432. Arkes HR. *Curr Dir Psych Sci*. 2013;22(5):356–360.
433. Hugh TB, Dekker S. Hindsight bias and outcome bias in the social construction of medical negligence. *A Review*. 2009; 16.
434. Institute of Medicine (IOM). *Crossing the Quality Chasm.: A New Health System for the 21st Century*. 2001.
435. Roberts KH. *Ind Crisis Quar*. 1989;3(2):111–125.
436. Laporte T, Consolini P. *Working in Practice But Not in Theory: Theoretical Challenges of "High-Reliability Organizations"*. 1991;1.
437. La Porte TR. *J Cont Crisis Mgmt*. 1996;4(2):60–71.
438. Weick K, Sutcliffe KM. *Managing the Unexpected: Resilient Performance in an Age of Uncertainty*. John Wiley & Sons; 2001.
439. Weick KE. *Calif Mgmt Rev*. 1987;29(2):112–127.
440. Weick KE. In: Staw BM, Cummings LL, eds. *Research in Organizational Behavior*. vol. 21. Greenwich, CT: JAI Press, Inc.; 1999:81–123.
441. Sutcliffe KM. *Best Prac Res Clin Anaesth*. 2011;25(2):133–144.
442. Leveson N, et al. *Organization Studies*. 2009;30(2-3):227–249.
443. Shrivastava S, et al. *Human Relations*. 2009;62(9):1357–1390.

444. Sagan SD. *The Limits of Safety. Organizations, Accidents, and Nuclear Weapons*. Vol 53. Princeton, New Jersey: Princeton University Press; 1993.
445. Gaba DM. Structural and organizational issues in patient safety: a comparison of health care to other high-hazard industries. *California Management Review*. 2000;43(1):83–102.
446. Snook SA. *Friendly Fire: The Accidental Shootdown of U.S. Blackhawks Over Northern Iraq*. Princeton: Princton University Press; 2000.
447. Hollnagel EW, et al. *Resilience Engineering - Concepts and Precepts*. Aldershot: Ashgate; 2006.
448. Fairbanks RJ, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Safety*. 2014;40(8):376–383.
449. Hollnagel E, et al. *Resilience Engineering in Practice: A Guidebook*. Ashgate: CRC Press; 2010.
450. Hollnagel E. In: Hollnagel E, Braithwaite J, Wears RL, eds. *Resilient Healthcare*. Farnham, UK: Ashgate; 2013:3–17.
451. Hollnagel E, Nemeth CP. In: Nemeth CP, Hollnagel E, Dekker SWA, eds. *Resilience Engineering Perspectives*. vol. 2. Farnham, UK: CRC Press; 2009:310.
452. Haavik TK, et al. *Safety Science*. 2016.
453. Gaba DM. *Anesth Patient Saf Found Newsl (Special Issue)*. 2003;18(13-14).
454. Roberts KH, et al. *J High Tech Mgmt Res*. 1994;5:141–161.
455. Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI). High reliability organization (HRO) principles. *Reference Sheet*. 2014. http://app.ihi.org/FacultyDocuments/Events/Event-2491/Presentation-10595/Document-8970/Tools_HRO_Principles.pdf
456. Rall M, Dieckmann P. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;19(4):539–557.
457. Hollnagel E. *Safety-I and Safety-II. The Past and Future of Safety Management*. Farnham, UK: Ashgate; 2014.
458. *From Safety-I to Safety-II: A White Paper. The Resilient Health Care Net.* Published simultaneously by the University of Southern Denmark, Australia, University of Florida, USA, and Macquarie University; 2015. https://www.england.nhs.uk/signuptosafety/wp-content/uploads/sites/16/2015/10/safety-1-safety-2-whte-papr.pdf
459. Hollnagel E. *FRAM, The Functional Resonance Analysis Method : Modelling Complex Socio-Technical Systems*. Burlington, VT: Ashgate; 2012.
460. Grote G. *Safety Science*. 2015;71:71–79.
461. Grote G. *Safety Management in Different High-Risk Domains – All the Same?*. 2012;50.
462. Grote G. *Ann Rev Control*. 2004;28:267–274.
463. Gilbert C, et al. *J Risk Research*. 2007;10(7):959–975.
464. Power M. *The Risk Management of Everything: Rethinking the Politics of Uncertainty*. London: Demos; 2004.
465. Grote G. *Management of Uncertainty. Theory and Application in the Design of Systems and Organizations*. London: Springer; 2009.
466. Grote G, et al. *OrganizPsychRev*. 2018;8(2-3):125–148.
467. Pedersen KZ. *Soc Hlth Illness*. 2016;38(7):1180–1193.
468. Vaughan D. *The Challenger Launch Decision: Risky Technology, Culture, and Deviance at NASA*. University of Chicago Press; 1997.
469. Cook R, Rasmussen JJ. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2005;14:130–134.
470. Hines S, et al. *Becoming a High Reliability Organization: Operational Advice for Hospital Leaders*. Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). AHRQ Publication No. 08-0022; 2008.
471. *Free from Harm: Accelerating Patient Safety Improvement Fifteen Years after To Err Is Human*. National Patient Safety Foundation; 2015. http://www.ihi.org/resources/Pages/Publications/Free-from-Harm-Accelerating-Patient-Safety-Improvement.aspx
472. Slawomirski L, et al. *The Economics of Patient Safety*; 2017.
473. Frankel AS, et al. *Hlth Serv Res*. 2006;41(4 Pt 2):1690–1709.
474. Schein EH. *Organizational Culture and Leadership: A Dynamic View*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass; 1985:1992.
475. The Joint Commission. *Sentinel Event Alert*. 2017;(57):1–8.
476. Sentinel Event Alert. Behaviors that undermine a culture of safety. *The Joint Commission*. 2008;(Issue 40). https://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/18/SEA_40.PDF
477. Sammer CE, et al. *J Nrsg Scholar*. 2010;42(2):156–165.
478. Xuanyue M, et al. *J Evidence-Based Med*. 2013;6(1):43–49.
479. Singer SJ, Tucker AL. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2014;23(10):789–800.
480. Singer SJ, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2013;39(8):349–360.
481. Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI). Develop a Culture of Safety. http://www.ihi.org/resources/Pages/Changes/DevelopaCultureofSafety.aspx. Accessed May 15, 2018.
482. *Leading a Culture of Safety: A Blueprint for Success. Work of an Expert Roundtable Convened by the American College of Healthcare Executives and the IHI/NPSF Lucian Leape Institute. American College of Healthcare Executives, Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI), National Patient Safety Foundation (NPSF)*. Lucian Leape Institute; 2017. https://www.npsf.org/page/cultureofsafety.
483. The Joint Commission. *Strategies for Creating, Sustaining, and Improving a Culture of Safety in Health Care. Real-World Solutions to Challenging Safety Culture Implementation Issues*. 2nd ed. ; 2017.
484. Weaver SJ, et al. *Ann Int Med*. 2013;158(5 0 2):369–374.
485. Khatri N, et al. *Health Care Manage Rev*. 2009;34(4):312–322.
486. Shorrock S, et al. *Systems Thinking for Safety: Ten Principles. A White Paper. Moving towards Safety-II*. European Organisation for the Safety of Air Navigation (EUROCONTROL); 2014.
487. Vincent CA. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(4):242–243.
488. Pronovost PJ, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2006;21(4):305–315.
489. Vincent C. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348(11):1051–1056.
490. Pronovost P, et al. *Int Care Med*. 2006;32(10):1467–1469.
491. Singer S, et al. *Health Serv Res*. 2009;44(2 Pt 1):399–421.
492. Singer S, et al. *Hlth Serv Res*. 2007;42(5):1999–2021.
493. Benzer JK, et al. *J Eval Clin Pract*. 2017;23(4):853–859.
494. Gaba DM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(1):314–316.
495. Gaba DM, et al. *Hum Factors*. 2003;45(2):173–185.
496. Flin R. *Safety Sci*. 2007;45:653–667.
497. Mardon RE, et al. *J Patient Saf*. 2010;6(4):226–232.
498. Hogden A, et al. *Safety Culture Assessment in Health Care: A Review of the Literature on Safety Culture Assessment Modes*. Sydney, Australia: Australian Commission on Quality and Safety in Health Care; 2017.
499. Carroll JS, Rudolph JW. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2006;15(suppl 1):i4–9.
500. Lipshitz R, et al. *J Appl Behav Sci*. 2002;38(1):78–98.
501. Donaldson L. *Lancet*. 2004;364(9445):1567–1568.
502. World Health Organization. *World Alliance for Patient Safety : WHO Draft Guidelines for Adverse Event Reporting and Learning Systems : from Information to Action*. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2005.
503. Patient Safety Primer: Detection of Safety Hazards. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ); Last updated August 2018. https://psnet.ahrq.gov/primers/primer/24. Accessed October 24, 2018.
504. Leape L. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347(20):1633–1638.
505. Vincent C. *BMJ*. 2007;334(51).
506. *Key Findings and Recommendations on Reporting and Learning Systems for Patient Safety Incidents Across Europe. Report of the Reporting and Learning Subgroup of the European Commission (PSQCWG)*. European Commission; 2014. https://ec.europa.eu/health/home_en
507. *Patient Safety Reporting Systems: A Literature Review of International Practice*. Health Quality & Safety Commission New Zealand; 2016. https://www.hqsc.govt.nz/assets/Reportable-Events/Publications/Patient-safety-reporting-systems-literature-review-Nov-2016.pdf
508. Health Quality Ontario. *Ontario Health Technology Assessment Series*. 2017;17(3):1–23.
509. Manser T, et al. *Intl J Qual Hlth Care*. 2017;29(3):349–359.
510. Dodds A, Kodate N. *J Pub Policy*. 2012;32(2):117–139.
511. Leistikow I, et al. *BMJ Quality Safety*. 2017;26(3):252–256.
512. Macrae C. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2016;25(2):71–75.
513. Howell AM, et al. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2017;26(2):150–163.
514. Mitchell I, et al. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2016;25(2):92–99.
515. Stavropoulou C, et al. How effective are incident-reporting systems for improving patient safety? *A Systematic Literature Review*. 2015;93.
516. Murff HJ, et al. *J Biomed Inform*. 2003;36(1-2):131–143.
517. Billings C. In: Cook RI, Woods DD, Miller CA, eds. *A Tale of Two Stories: Contrasting Views of Patient Safety*. North Adams, MA: US National Patient Safety Foundation; 1998:52–61.
518. Levtzion-Korach O, et al. *J Pat Safety*. 2009;5(1):9–15.
519. Nuckols TK, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2007;16(3):164–168.
520. Thomas EJ, et al. *Med Care*. 2000;38(3):261–271.
521. Reporting Patient Safety Events. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ); Last Updated August 2018. Accessed October 24, 2018.
522. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). *Incident Reporting: More Attention to the Safety Action Feedback Loop. Please*; 2011. https://psnet.ahrq.gov/perspectives/perspective/108/Incident-Reporting-More-Attention-to-the-Safety-Action-Feedback-Loop-Please
523. Leape LL. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347(20):1633–1638.
524. Merry AF. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63(4):337–339.
525. Mahajan RP. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(1):69–75.

526. Larizgoitia I, et al. *J Pub Hlth Res*. 2013;2(3):e29-e29.
527. Rall M, Dieckmann P. In: Bannister J, ed. *Euroanesthesia 2007*. Munich, Germany: European Society of Anaesthesiology; 2007: 179–186.
528. Firth-Cozens J, et al. *Clinical Risk*. 2004;10(5):184–190.
529. Evans SM, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2006;15(1):39–43.
530. Kelly N, et al. *Arch Dis Childhood*. 2016;101(9):788–791.
531. Rall M, et al. *[Article in German]*; 2014.
532. Dieckmann P, et al. *Work (Reading, Mass)*. 2009;33(2):135–143.
533. Anderson JE, Kodate N. *Safety Sci*. 2015;80.
534. Benn J, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2009;18(1):11–21.
535. Pham JC, et al. *J Public Health Res*. 2013;2(3):e27.
536. Macrae C, Vincent C. *J Royal Soc Med*. 2014;107(11):439–443.
537. Cook DA, et al. *Simul Hlthcare*. 2012;7(5):308–320.
538. Riley W, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2011;37(8):357–364.
539. Salas E, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2009;35(8):398–405.
540. Salas E, et al. In: Kraiger K, ed. *Creating, Implementing, and Managing Effective Training and Development: State-of-the-Art Lessons for Practice*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass; 2013:234–262.
541. Gaba DM. *Perspectives on Safety*. 2006.
542. Pratt SD, Sachs BP. *Team Training: Classroom Training vs. High-Fidelity Simulation*; 2006. https://psnet.ahrq.gov/perspectives/perspective/21/team-training-classroom-training-vs-high-fidelity-simulation
543. Umoren RA, et al. *Creative Nursing*. 2017;23(3):184–191.
544. Tschannen D. *J Cont Ed Nrsg*. 2017;48(11):525–532.
545. Carney BT, et al. *Am J Med Qual*. 2011;26(6):480–484.
546. VA National Center for Patient Safety. Clinical Team Training. https://www.patientsafety.va.gov/professionals/training/team.asp
547. van de Ven J, et al. *Euro J Ob Gyn Rep Biol*. 2017;216:130–137.
548. Rudolph JW, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2008;15(11):1010–1016.
549. Buist M, Middleton S. *BMJ*. 2013;347:f5800.
550. Landrigan CP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(22):2124–2134.
551. Gaba DM. *BMJ*. 2000;320(7237):785–788.
552. Jha AK, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2010;19(1):42–47.
553. European Society of Anaesthesiology (ESA). *Helsinki Declaration of Patient Safety*; 2010. https://www.esahq.org/patient-safety/patient-safety/helsinki-declaration/signed-helsinki-declaration/
554. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). *National Scorecard on Rates of Hospital-Acquired Conditions 2010 to 2015: Interim Data From National Efforts To Make Health Care Safer*. Rockville, MD; 2016.
555. National Patient Safety Foundation's Lucian Leape Institute. *Safety Is Personal: Partnering with Patients and Families for the Safest Care*; 2014.
556. Canadian Patient Safety Institute (CPSI). Engaging Patients in Patient Safety. A Canadian Guide. http://www.patientsafetyinstitute.ca/en/toolsResources/Patient-Engagement-in-Patient-Safety-Guide/Documents/Engaging%20patients%20as%20partners.pdf
557. Australian Commission on Safety and Quality in Health Care. *National Safety and Quali-ty Health Service Standard 2: Partnering with Consumers. Embedding partnerships in healthcare*. ; 2014. https://www.safetyandquality.gov.au/wp-content/uploads/2014/11/Partnering-with-Consumers-Embedding-partnerships-in-health-care.pdf
558. Vincent C, Amalberti R. *BMJ Quality. Safety*. 2015.
559. Rall M, Gaba DM. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone; 2005:3021–3072.
560. Roberts KH. *Organization Science*. 1990;1(2):160–176.
561. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). Culture of Safety. last updated June 2017 https://psnet.ahrq.gov/primers/primer/5/safety-culture
562. King H, et al. In: Henriksen K, Battles JB, Keyes M, et al., eds. *Advances in Patient Safety: New Directions and Alternative Approaches*. vol. 3. Rockville (MD): Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (US); 2008. Performance and Tools.
563. Rall M, et al. *Bulletin Royal Coll Anaesth*. 2008;(51):2614–2616.

APPENDIX 6.1 **Online Links and Valuable Public Sources**

- Links to patient safety and crisis resource management resources
  - National Patient Safety Foundation: www.npsf.org/
  - Veterans Affairs National Center for Patient Safety:
    - Patient Safety: www.patientsafety.va.gov
    - VA Clinical Team Training program (CTT): www.patientsafety.va.gov/professionals/training/team.asp
  - The Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations: www.jointcommission.org/
  - United Kingdom National Health Service National Patient Safety Agency: www.npsa.nhs.uk
  - Stanford School of Medicine, Center for Immersive and Simulation-based Learning https://cisl.stanford.edu/
  - Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ):
    - Patient Safety: www.ahrq.gov/patient-safety/index.html
    - TeamSTEPPS™: www.ahrq.gov/teamstepps/index.html
    - Patient Safety Organization Program: https://pso.ahrq.gov/
  - World Health Organization (WHO)
    - Patient Safety: www.who.int/patientsafety/en/
    - Multiprofessional Patient Safety Curriculum Guide (2011): www.who.int/patientsafety/education/mp_curriculum_guide/en/
    - Patient Safety Curriculum Guide for Medical Schools (2009): www.who.int/patientsafety/education/curriculum_guide_medical_schools/en/
    - The Conceptual Framework for the International Classification for Patient Safety (ICPS): www.who.int/patientsafety/implementation/taxonomy/ICPS-report/en/
    - Surgical Safety Checklist: www.who.int/patientsafety/topics/safe-surgery/checklist/en/
  - Patient Safety Education Program (PSEPTM): www.patientsafetyeducationproject.org/index.php
  - Australian Commission on Safety and Quality in Health Care: www.safetyandquality.gov.au/national-priorities/australian-safety-and-quality-framework-for-health-care/
- Links to different incident reporting systems and related topics
  - The American Society of Anesthesiologists Incident Reporting System (AIRS): www.aqihq.org/airs/airsIntro.aspx
  - United Kingdom National Health Service National Patient Safety Agency reporting system: www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/report-a-patient-safety-incident/
  - Pronovost's intensive care unit safety reporting system[85]
  - WHO Draft Guidelines for Adverse Event Reporting and Learning Systems—from Information to Action: www.who.int/iris/handle/10665/69797
  - U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs Patient Safety Reporting System (PSRS): https://psrs.arc.nasa.gov/
- Root Cause Analysis (RCA) Tools
  - United Kingdom National Healthcare Service: www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/collections/root-cause-analysis/
  - VA National Center for Patient Safety: www.patientsafety.va.gov/professionals/onthejob/rca.asp
- Failure modes and effects analysis (FMEA) tools https://www.patientsafety.va.gov/professionals/onthejob/HFMEA.asp

References

1. Valentin A, Capuzzo M, Guidet B, et al. Errors in administration of parenteral drugs in intensive care units: multinational prospective study. *BMJ*. 2009;338:b814.
2. Pronovost P, Needham D, Berenholtz S, et al. An intervention to decrease catheter-related bloodstream infections in the icu. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;355(26):2725–2732.
3. Lipshutz AKM, Caldwell JE, Robinowitz DL, Gropper MA. An analysis of near misses identified by anesthesia providers in the intensive care unit. *BMC Anesthesiology*. 2015;15:93.
4. Steyrer J, Schiffinger M, Huber C, Valentin A, Strunk G. Attitude is everything? The impact of workload, safety climate, and safety tools on medical errors: a study of intensive care units. *Health Care Manage Rev*. 2013;38(4):306–316.
5. Haerkens MH, Kox M, Lemson J, Houterman S, van der Hoeven JG, Pickkers P. Crew resource management in the intensive care unit: a prospective 3-year cohort study. *Acta anaesthesiol Scand*. 2015;59(10):1319–1329.
6. Hunziker S, Tschan F, Semmer N, Howell M, Marsch S. Human factors in resuscitation: lessons learned from simulator studies. *J Emerg Trauma Shock*. 2010;3(4):389–394.
7. Niles D, Sutton RM, Donoghue A, et al. "Rolling Refreshers": a novel approach to maintain CPR psychomotor skill competence. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(8):909–912.
8. Reader TW, Flin R, Mearns K, Cuthbertson BH. Developing a team performance framework for the intensive care unit. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37(5):1787–1793.
9. Vincent C. *Patient Safety*. 2nd ed. Edinburgh: Wiley-Blackwell & BMJ Books; 2010.
10. Vincent C, Amalberti R. *Safer Healthcare. Strategies for the Real World*. Heidelberg, Germany: Springer; 2016.
11. Flin R, O'Connor P, Crichton M. *Safety at the Sharp End: A Guide to NonTechnical Skills*. Farnham, UK: Ashgate; 2008.
12. Leveson NG, Nancy G, Leveson EaswSTatsR-pMPC, Massachusetts & London, England. ISBN 978-0262533690. *Engineering a safer world: Systems Thinking applied to safety*. Cambridge, Massachusetts & London, England: The MIT Press; 2016 (Reprint).
13. St Pierre M, Hofinger G, Buerschaper C. *Crisis Management in Acute Care Settings: Human Factors and Team Psychology in a High Stakes Environment*. New York: Springer; 2008.
14. Gaba DM, Fish K, Howard S, Burden A. *Crisis Management in Anesthesiology*. 2nd ed. Elsevier; 2014.
15. Carayon P, Xie A, Kianfar S. Human factors and ergonomics as a patient safety practice. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2014;23(3):196–205.
16. Weinger MB, Englund CE. Ergonomic and human factors affecting anesthetic vigilance and monitoring performance in the operating room environment. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(5):995–1021.
17. Raghavendra Rao RS. Ergonomical aspects of anaesthetic practice. *Ind j anaesth*. 2016;60(5):306–311.
18. Decker B. Ergonomics in the operating room - from the anesthesiologist's point of view. *MITAT : official journal of the Society for Minimally Invasive Therapy*. 2003;12(6):268–277.
19. Loeb RG, Weinger MB, Berry JM. Ergonomics of the anesthesia workspace. In: Erenwerth J, Eisenkraft JB, Berry J, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders; 2013:485–509.
20. Davis M, Hignett S, Hillier S, Hames N, Hodder S. Safer anaesthetic rooms: human factors/ergonomics analysis of work practices. *J Peri Prac*. 2016;26(12):274–280.
21. Cooper L, Nossaman B. Medication errors in anesthesia: a review. *Intl Anesth Clin*. 2013;51(1):1–12.
22. Merry AF, Shipp DH, Lowinger JS. The contribution of labelling to safe medication administration in anaesthetic practice. *Best Prac ResClinAnaesth*. 2011;25(2):145–159.
23. Merry AF, Anderson BJ. Medication errors--new approaches to prevention. *Paed Anaesth*. 2011;21(7):743–753.
24. Jensen LS, Merry AF, Webster CS, Weller J, Larsson L. Evidence-based strategies for preventing drug administration errors during anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59(5):493–504.
25. Orser BA, Hyland S, U D, Sheppard I, Wilson CR. Review article: improving drug safety for patients undergoing anesthesia and surgery. *Canadian journal of anaesthesia = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 2013;60(2):127–135.
26. Glavin RJ. Drug errors: consequences, mechanisms, and avoidance. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(1):76–82.
27. Prabhakar A, Malapero RJ, Gabriel RA, et al. Medication errors in anesthesia. *The Journal of medical practice management: MPM*. 2015;30(6 Spec No):41–43.
28. World Health Organization (WHO). *Patient Safety Solution 1: Sound-Alike, Look-Alike Medication Names*. vol. 1. 2007. http://www.who.int/patientsafety/solutions/patientsafety/PS-Solution1.pdf
29. World Health Organization (WHO). *Patient Safety Solution 7: Avoiding Catheter and Tubing Mis-Connections*. vol. 1. ; 2007. http://www.who.int/patientsafety/solutions/patientsafety/PS-Solution7.pdf
30. Dolan SA, Heath J, Potter-Bynoe G, Stackhouse RA. Infection prevention in anesthesia practice: a tool to assess risk and compliance. *Am J Inf Cont*. 2013;41(11):1077–1082.
31. Gariel C, Cogniat B, Desgranges FP, Chassard D, Bouvet L. Incidence, characteristics, and predictive factors for medication errors in paediatric anaesthesia: a prospective incident monitoring study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(3):563–570.
32. Mauger B, Marbella A, Pines E, Chopra R, Black ER, Aronson N. Implementing quality improvement strategies to reduce healthcare-associated infections: a systematic review. *Am J Inf Cont*. 2014;42(suppl 10):S274–283.
33. Nanji KC, Patel A, Shaikh S, Seger DL, Bates DW. Evaluation of perioperative medication errors and adverse drug events. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(1):25–34.
34. Rothschild JM, Landrigan CP, Cronin JW, et al. The critical care safety study: the incidence and nature of adverse events and serious medical errors in intensive care. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(8):1694–1700.
35. Wahr JA, Abernathy 3rd JH, Lazarra EH, et al. Medication safety in the operating room: literature and expert-based recommendations. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(1):32–43.
36. Zimlichman E, Henderson D, Tamir O, et al. Health care-associated infections: a meta-analysis of costs and financial impact on the US health care system. *JAMA Int Med*. 2013;173(22):2039–2046.
37. Cooper JB, Newbower RS, Long CD, McPeek B. Preventable anesthesia mishaps: a study of human factors. *Qual Saf Hlth Care*. 2002;11(3):277–282.
38. Williamson JA, Webb RK, Sellen A, Runciman WB, Van der Walt JH. The Australian incident monitoring study. Human failure: an analysis of 2000 incident reports. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21(5):678–683.
39. Wu AW. Medical error: the second victim. The doctor who makes the mistake needs help too. *BMJ*. 2000;320(7237):726–727.
40. Cooper JB, Gaba D. No myth: anesthesia is a model for addressing patient safety. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(6):1335–1337.
41. Moffatt-Bruce SD, Hefner JL, Mekhjian H, et al. What is the return on investment for implementation of a crew resource management program at an academic medical center? *American journal of medical quality : the official journal of the American College of Medical Quality*. 2017;32(1):5–11.
42. Neily J, Mills PD, Young-Xu Y, et al. Association between implementation of a medical team training program and surgical mortality. *JAMA*. 2010;304(15):1693–1700.
43. Schwartz ME, Welsh DE, Paull DE, et al. The effects of crew resource management on teamwork and safety climate at Veterans Health Administration Facilities. *Journal of healthcare risk management : the journal of the American Society for Healthcare Risk Management*. 2018;38(1):17–37.
44. *Efforts To Improve Patient Safety Result in 1.3 Million Fewer Patient Harms: Interim Update on 2013 Annual Hospital-Acquired Condition Rate and Estimates of Cost Savings and Deaths Averted From 2010 to 2013*. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ); 2014. http://www.ahrq.gov/professionals/quality-patient-safety/pfp/interimhacrate2013.html
45. Orasanu J, Connolly T. The reinvention of decision making. In: Klein GA, Calderwood R, eds. *Decision Making in Action: Models and Methods*. Norwood, NJ: Ablex Publishing Gorp.; 1993.
46. Gaba DM, Maxwell M, DeAnda A. Anesthetic mishaps: breaking the chain of accident evolution. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(5):670–676.
47. Banja J. The normalization of deviance in healthcare delivery. *Bus Horiz*. 2010;53(2):139.
48. Odom-Forren J. The normalization of deviance: a threat to patient safety. *J Peri Anesth Nurs*. 2011;26(3):216–219.
49. Prielipp RC, Magro M, Morell RC, Brull SJ. The normalization of deviance: do we (un)knowingly accept doing the wrong thing? *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(5):1499–1502.

50. Price MR, Williams TC. When doing wrong feels so right: normalization of deviance. *J Pat Saf*. 2018;14(1):1–2.
51. Engelmann C, Grote G, Geyer S, Ametowobla D. Operating lists are created by rational algorithms and use of power. What can a social scientific view offer surgeons? *Langenbeck's Arch Surg*. 2017;402(1):187–190.
52. Nurok M, Lee Y-y, Ma Y, Kirwan A, Wynia M, Segal S. Are surgeons and anesthesiologists lying to each other or gaming the system? A national random sample survey about "truth-telling practices" in the perioperative setting in the United States. *Pat Saf Surg*. 2015;9(1):34.
53. Eichhorn JH. Review article: practical current issues in perioperative patient safety. *Canadian journal of anaesthesia = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 2013;60(2):111–118.
54. Perrow C. *Normal Accidents: Living with High-Risk Technologies*. New York, US: Princton University Press; 1984.
55. Kirsner K, Biddle C. Production pressure and a culture of deviance in the insular operating room and the consequences of their "normalization": have we reached a hooper moment? *Int J Law Hlth Eth*. 2012;8(1).
56. Gaba DM, Howard SK, Jump B. Production pressure in the work environment. California anesthesiologists' attitudes and experiences. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(2):488–500.
57. *Production Pressures*. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ); 2007. https://psnet.ahrq.gov/webmm/case/150.
58. Hollnagel E. *The ETTO Principle : Efficiency-Thoroughness Trade-Off. Why Things that go Right Sometimes go Wrong*. Burlington, VT: Ashgate Publishing Company; 2009.
59. Reason JT. *Human Error*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 1990.
60. Riem N, Boet S, Bould MD, Tavares W, Naik VN. Do technical skills correlate with nontechnical skills in crisis resource management: a simulation study. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2012;109(5):723–728.
61. Stiegler MP, Neelankavil JP, Canales C, Dhillon A. Cognitive errors detected in anaesthesiology: a literature review and pilot study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(2):229–235.
62. Cognitive biases in health care. *The Joint Commission*. 2016. https://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/23/Quick_Safety_Issue_28_2016.pdf
63. Phipps D, Meakin GH, Beatty PCW, Nsoedo C, Parker D. Human factors in anaesthetic practice: insights from a task analysis. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2008;100(3):333–343.
64. Manser T, Dieckmann P, Wehner T, Rall M. Comparison of anaesthetists' activity patterns in the operating room and during simulation. *Ergonomics*. 2007;50(2):246–260.
65. Slagle JM, Weinger MB. Effects of intraoperative reading on vigilance and workload during anesthesia care in an academic medical center. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(2):275–283.
66. Weinger MB, Vredenburgh AG, Schumann CM, et al. Quantitative description of the workload associated with airway management procedures. *J Clin Anesth*. 2000;12(4):273–282.
67. Weinger MB, Herndon OW, Gaba DM. The effect of electronic record keeping and transesophageal echocardiography on task distribution, workload, and vigilance during cardiac anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(1):144–155. discussion 129A-130A.
68. Slagle JM, Porterfield ES, Lorinc AN, Afshartous D, Shotwell MS, Weinger MB. Prevalence of potentially distracting noncare activities and their effects on vigilance, workload, and nonroutine events during anesthesia care. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(1):44–54.
69. Mackenzie CF, Hu PF, Horst RL. An audio-video system for automated data acquisition in the clinical environment. LOTAS group. *J Clin Monitor*. 1995;11(5):335–341.
70. Xiao Y, Hunter WA, Mackenzie CF, Jefferies NJ, Horst RL. Task complexity in emergency medical care and its implications for team coordination. LOTAS group. Level one trauma anesthesia simulation. *Hum Factors*. 1996;38(4):636–645.
71. Friedman Z, Katznelson R, Devito I, Siddiqui M, Chan V. Objective assessment of manual skills and proficiency in performing epidural anesthesia--video-assisted validation. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(4):304–310.
72. Weinger MB, Gonzales DC, Slagle J, Syeed M. Video capture of clinical care to enhance patient safety. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(2):136–144.
73. Lindekaer AL, Jacobsen J, Andersen G, Laub M, Jensen PF. Treatment of ventricular fibrillation during anaesthesia in an anaesthesia simulator. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41(10):1280–1284.
74. Jacobsen J, Lindekaer AL, Ostergaard HT, et al. Management of anaphylactic shock evaluated using a full-scale anaesthesia simulator. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45(3):315–319.
75. Weinger MB, Banerjee A, Burden AR, et al. Simulation-based assessment of the management of critical events by board-certified anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(3):475–489.
76. Byrne AJ, Jones JG. Responses to simulated anaesthetic emergencies by anaesthetists with different durations of clinical experience. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 1997;78(5):553–556.
77. Manser T, Harrison TK, Gaba DM, Howard SK. Coordination patterns related to high clinical performance in a simulated anesthetic crisis. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(5):1606–1615.
78. Howard SK, Gaba DM, Smith BE, et al. Simulation study of rested versus sleep-deprived anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(6):1345–1355. discussion 1345A.
79. Marshall SD, Sanderson P, McIntosh CA, Kolawole H. The effect of two cognitive aid designs on team functioning during intra–operative anaphylaxis emergencies: a multi–centre simulation study. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(4):389–404.
80. Burtscher MJ, Wacker J, Grote G, Manser T. Managing nonroutine events in anesthesia: the role of adaptive coordination. *Hum Factors*. 2010;52(2):282–294.
81. Manser T. Teamwork and patient safety in dynamic domains of healthcare: a review of the literature. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(2):143–151.
82. Wacker J, Kolbe M. Leadership and teamwork in anesthesia – making use of human factors to improve clinical performance. *Trends Anaesth Crit Care*. 2014;4(6):200–205.
83. Lingard L, Espin S, Whyte S, et al. Communication failures in the operating room: an observational classification of recurrent types and effects. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(5):330–334.
84. Künzle B, Zala-Mezö E, Wacker J, Kolbe M, Spahn DR, Grote G. Leadership in anaesthesia teams: the most effective leadership is shared. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2010;19(6):e46-e46.
85. Künzle B, Zala-Mezö E, Kolbe M, Wacker J, Grote G. Substitutes for leadership in anaesthesia teams and their impact on leadership effectiveness. *Euro J Work Organiz Psych*. 2010;19(5):505–531.
86. Cook RI, Woods DD. Adapting to new technology in the operating room. *Hum Factors*. 1996;38(4):593–613.
87. Cook RI, Woods DD. Implications of automation surprises in aviation for the future of total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA). *J Clin Anaesth*. 1996;8(suppl 3):29s–37s.
88. Loeb RG. Monitor surveillance and vigilance of anesthesia residents. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(3):527–533.
89. Manser T, Wehner T. Analysing action sequences: variations in action density in the administration of anaesthesia. 2002;4.
90. Weinger MB, Herndon OW, Zornow MH, Paulus MP, Gaba DM, Dallen LT. An objective methodology for task analysis and workload assessment in anesthesia providers. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(1):77–92.
91. Weinger M, Slagle J. Human factors research in anesthesia patient safety: techniques to elucidate factors affecting clinical task performance and decision making. *J Am Med Inform Assoc*. 2002;9(suppl 6):S58–S63. https://doi.org/10.1197/jamia.M1229. (6 Suppl 1).
92. Weinger MB, Reddy SB, Slagle JM. Multiple measures of anesthesia workload during teaching and nonteaching cases. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(5):1419–1425. table of contents.
93. Byrne AJ, Oliver M, Bodger O, et al. Novel method of measuring the mental workload of anaesthetists during clinical practice. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2010;105(6):767–771.
94. Gaba DM, Lee T. Measuring the workload of the anesthesiologist. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71(4):354–361.
95. Pape TM, Dingman SK. Interruptions and distractions during anesthesia induction: a pilot study. *Plastic surgical nursing : official journal of the American Society of Plastic and Reconstructive Surgical Nurses*. 2011;31(2):49–56.
96. Campbell G, Arfanis K, Smith AF. Distraction and interruption in anaesthetic practice. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(5):707–715.
97. Schulz CM, Schneider E, Fritz L, et al. Visual attention of anaesthetists during simulated critical incidents. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(6):807–813.
98. Betza SM, Jurewicz KA, Neyens DM, Riggs SL, Abernathy JH, Reeves ST. Anesthesia maintenance and vigilance: examining task switching. *Proceedings of the Human Factors and Ergonomics Society Annual Meeting*. 2016;60(1):608–612.

99. Smith AF, Mort M, Goodwin D, Pope C. Making monitoring 'work': human-machine interaction and patient safety in anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58(11):1070–1078.
100. Broom MA, Capek AL, Carachi P, Akeroyd MA, Hilditch G. Critical phase distractions in anaesthesia and the sterile cockpit concept. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(3):175–179.
101. Cooper JB, Newbower RS, Kitz RJ. An analysis of major errors and equipment failures in anesthesia management: considerations for prevention and detection. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60(1):34–42.
102. Marcus R. Human factors in pediatric anesthesia incidents. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16(3):242–250.
103. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Standards and Guidelines: 2008 ASA Recommendations for Pre-Anesthesia Checkout. https://www.asahq.org/resources/clinical-information/2008-asa-recommendations-for-pre-anesthesia-checkout
104. Feldman JM, Olympio MA, Martin D, Striker A. New guidelines available for pre-anesthesia checkout. *APSF NEWSLETTER The Official Journal of the Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation*. 2008;23(1):6–7.
105. Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (AAGBI). Checking anaesthetic equipment 2012. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(6):660–668.
106. Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists (ANZCA). *Guidelines on Checking Anaesthesia Delivery Systems*; 2014. http://www.anzca.edu.au/documents/ps31-2014-guidelines-on-checking-anaesthesia-deliv.pdf
107. Merchant R, Chartrand D, Dain S, et al. Guidelines to the practice of anesthesia - revised edition 2016. *Canadian journal of anaesthesia = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 2016;63(1):86–112.
108. Gaba DM. *Dynamic Decision-Making in Anesthesiology: Cognitive Models and Training Approaches*. 1992. Berlin, Heidelberg.
109. Gaba DM. Human error in anesthetic mishaps. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1989;27(3):137–147.
110. Gaba DM, Howard SK, Small SD. Situation awareness in anesthesiology. *Hum Factors*. 1995;37(1):20–31.
111. Xiao Y, Milgram P, Doyle D. Incident Evolution And Task Demands: An Analysis And A Field Study Of 'Going Sour' Incidents. 1995;36.
112. Norman DA. Categorization of action slips. *Psychol Rev*. 1981;88(1):1–15.
113. Rasmussen J. Skills, rules, and knowledge; signals, signs, and symbols, and other distinctions in human performance models. *IEEE Transactions on Systems, Man, and Cybernetics*. 1983;SMC-13(3):257–266.
114. Klein GA. Recognition-primed decisions. *Adv Man Machine Sys Res*. 1989;5:47–92.
115. Reason J, Rasmussen J, Duncan K, Leplat J. *Generic Error-Modeling System (GEMS): A Cognitive Framework for Locating Common human Error Forms*. Chichester, UK: Wiley; 1987.
116. Klemola UM, Norros L. Analysis of the clinical behaviour of anaesthetists: recognition of uncertainty as a basis for practice. *Med Educ*. 1997;31(6):449–456.
117. Hall KH. Reviewing intuitive decision-making and uncertainty: the implications for medical education. *Med Educ*. 2002;36(3):216–224.
118. Sarter NB, Woods DD. Situation awareness: a critical but ill-defined phenomenon. *Int J Aviation Psych*. 1991;1(1):45–57.
119. Hartman BO, Secrist GE. Situational awareness is more than exceptional vision. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1991;62(11):1084–1089.
120. Tversky A, Kahneman D. Judgment under uncertainty: heuristics and biases. *Science*. 1974;185(4157):1124–1131.
121. Stiegler MP, Tung A. Cognitive processes in anesthesiology decision making. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(1):204–217.
122. Cook RI, Woods DD, McDonald JS. *Human Performance in Anesthesia: A Corpus of Cases*. Columbus, Ohio: Cognitive Systems Engineering Laboratory Report, prepared for Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation; 1991.
123. Reason JT, Carthey J, de Leval MR. Diagnosing "vulnerable system syndrome": an essential prerequisite to effective risk management. *Qual Health Care*. 2001;10(suppl 2):ii21–25.
124. Klein GA. A recognition-primed decision (RPD) model of rapid decision making. In: Orasanu J, Calderwood R, Zsambok CE, eds. *Decision Making in Action: Models and Methods*. Norwood: Ablex Publishing Corporation; 1993:138–147.
125. Schwid HA, O'Donnell D. Anesthesiologists' management of simulated critical incidents. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(4):495–501.
126. DeAnda A, Gaba DM. Role of experience in the response to simulated critical incidents. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(3):308–315.
127. Howard SK, Gaba DM, Fish KJ, Yang G, Sarnquist FH. Anesthesia crisis resource management training: teaching anesthesiologists to handle critical incidents. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1992;63(9):763–770.
128. Gaba DM. Improving anesthesiologists' performance by simulating reality. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(4):491–494.
129. Wacker J, Staender S. The role of the anesthesiologist in perioperative patient safety. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2014;27(6):649–656.
130. Stone M, Dismukes K, Remington R. Prospective memory in dynamic environments: effects of load, delay, and phonological rehearsal. *Memory (Hove, England)*. 2001;9(3):165–176.
131. Dodhia RM, Dismukes RK. Interruptions create prospective memory tasks. *Appl Cogn Psych*. 2009;23(1):73–89.
132. Dieckmann P, Reddersen S, Wehner T, Rall M. Prospective memory failures as an unexplored threat to patient safety: results from a pilot study using patient simulators to investigate the missed execution of intentions. *Ergonomics*. 2006;49(5-6):526–543.
133. Dismukes RK. Prospective memory in workplace and everyday situations. *Curr Dir Psych Sci*. 2012;21(4):215–220.
134. Glavin RJ. Human performance limitations (communication, stress, prospective memory and fatigue). Human performance limitations (communication, stress, prospective memory and fatigue). *Best Prac Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;25(2):193–206.
135. Schulz CM, Endsley MR, Kochs EF, Gelb AW, Wagner KJ. Situation awareness in anesthesia. concept and research. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(3):729–742.
136. Schulz CM, Krautheim V, Hackemann A, Kreuzer M, Kochs EF, Wagner KJ. Situation awareness errors in anesthesia and critical care in 200 cases of a critical incident reporting system. *BMC Anesthesiology*. 2016;16:4.
137. De Keyser V, Woods D, Masson M, Van Deele A. *Fixation Errors in Dynamic and Complex Systems: Descriptive Forms, Psychological Mechanisms, Potential Countermeasures.* Brussles: Technical Report for NATO Division of Scientific Affairs: North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO); 1988.
138. De Keyser V, Woods DD. Fixation errors: failures to revise situation assessment in dynamic and risky systems. In: Colombo AG, Bustamante AS, eds. *Systems Reliability Assessment*. Dordrecht, Germany: Kluwer Academic; 1990:231–251.
139. Xiao Y, Mackenzie C F, Group L. Decision Making in Dynamic Environments: Fixation Errors and Their Causes. 1995;39.
140. Hart SG, Staveland LE. Development of the NASA-TLX (Task Load Index): results of empirical and theoretical research. In: Hancock PA, Meshkati N, eds. *Human Mental Workload*. Amsterdam: Elsevier; 1988:139–183.
141. Edwards MS, Moore P, Champion JC, Edwards EJ. Effects of trait anxiety and situational stress on attentional shifting are buffered by working memory capacity. *Anxiety Stress Coping*. 2015;28(1):1–16.
142. Leedal JM, Smith AF. Methodological approaches to anaesthetists' workload in the operating theatre. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2005;94(6):702–709.
143. Byrne A. Measurement of mental workload in clinical medicine: a review study. *Anesth Pain Med*. 2011;1(2):90–94.
144. Neily J, DeRosier JM, Mills PD, Bishop MJ, Weeks WB, Bagian JP. Awareness and use of a cognitive aid for anesthesiology. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2007;33(8):502–511.
145. Arriaga AF, Bader AM, Wong JM, et al. Simulation-based trial of surgical-crisis checklists. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(3):246–253.
146. Yang CW, Yen ZS, McGowan JE, et al. A systematic review of retention of adult advanced life support knowledge and skills in healthcare providers. *Resuscitation*. 2012;83(9):1055–1060.
147. Knudson MM, Khaw L, Bullard MK, et al. Trauma training in simulation: translating skills from SIM time to real time. *J Trauma*. 2008;64(2):255–263. discussion 263-254.
148. Rall M, Stricker E, Reddersen S, et al. Mobile 'in-situ' crisis resource management training: simulator courses with video-assisted debriefing where participants work. In: Kyle R, Murra BW, eds. *Clinical Simulation: Operations, Engineering, and Management*. Burlington: Academic Press; 2008:565–581.
149. Kenmoku K. Importance of practical simulation training for troubleshooting the heart-lung machine. *Journal of artificial organs : the official journal of the Japanese Society for Artificial Organs*. 2009;12(2):67–72.
150. Wickens CD. Multiple resources and mental workload. *Hum Factors*. 2008;50(3):449–455.
151. Regehr G, Mylopoulos M. Maintaining competence in the field: Learning about practice, through practice, in practice. *J Contin Educ Health Prof*. 2008;28(S1):19–23.

152. Byrne AJ, Murphy A, McIntyre O, Tweed N. The relationship between experience and mental workload in anaesthetic practice: an observational study. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(12):1266–1272.
153. Burtscher MJ, Jordi Ritz E-M, Kolbe M. Differences in talking-to-the-room behaviour between novice and expert teams during simulated paediatric resuscitation: a quasi-experimental study. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2018;4(4):165–170.
154. Schwid H, Rooke GA, Carline JD, et al. Evaluation of anesthesia residents using mannequin-based simulation: a multiinstitutional study. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(6):1434–1444.
155. DeAnda A, Gaba DM. Unplanned incidents during comprehensive anesthesia simulation. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71(1):77–82.
156. Henrichs B, Avidan MS, Murray DJ, et al. Performance of certified registered nurse anesthetists and anesthesiologists in a simulation-based skills assessment. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:255–262.
157. McIntosh CA. Lake Wobegon for anesthesia…where everyone is above average except those who aren't: variability in the management of simulated intraoperative critical incidents. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(1):6–9.
158. Lake Wobegon. In Oxfordreference.com. Retrieved August 21, 2018, from http://www.oxfordreference.com/view/10.1093/oi/authority.20110810105237549.
159. Scherrer V, Compere V, Loisel C, Dureuil B. Cardiac arrest from local anesthetic toxicity after a field block and transversus abdominis plane block: a consequence of miscommunication between the anesthesiologist and surgeon. *A & A case reports*. 2013;1(5):75–76.
160. Novick RJ, Lingard L, Cristancho SM. The call, the save, and the threat: understanding expert help-seeking behavior during nonroutine operative scenarios. *J Surg Educ*. 2015;72(2):302–309.
161. Mhyre JM, Ramachandran SK, Kheterpal S, Morris M, Chan PS. Delayed time to defibrillation after intraoperative and periprocedural cardiac arrest. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(4):782–793.
162. Langerman A, Angelos P, Siegler M. The "call for help": intraoperative consultation and the surgeon-patient relationship. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2014;219(6):1181–1186.
163. Dutton RP, Lee LA, Stephens LS, Posner KL, Davies JM, Domino KB. Massive hemorrhage: a report from the anesthesia closed claims project. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(3):450–458.
164. Tschan F, Semmer NK, Vetterli M, Gurtner A, Hunziker S, Marsch SU. Developing observational categories for group process research based on task and coordination-requirement analysis: examples from research on medical emergency-driven teams. In: Boos M, Kolbe M, Kappeler P, Ellwart T, eds. *Coordination in Human and Primate Groups*. Heidelberg, Germany: Springer; 2011:93–115.
165. Weingart LR. How did they do that? The ways and means of studying group process. *Res Org Behav*. 1997;19:189–239.
166. Kolbe M, Burtscher MJ, Manser T. Co-ACT--a framework for observing coordination behaviour in acute care teams. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2013;22(7):596–605.
167. Embrey K, Yates K. The use of cognitive task analysis to improve anesthesia skills training for postoperative extubation. *Anesthesia eJournal*. 2013;1(2).
168. Lyk-Jensen HT, Dieckmann P, Konge L, Jepsen RM, Spanager L, Ostergaard D. Using a structured assessment tool to evaluate nontechnical skills of nurse anesthetists. *AANA journal*. 2016;84(2):122–127.
169. Gaba DM, Howard SK, Flanagan FB, Smith BE, Fish KJ, Botney R. Assessment of clinical performance during simulated crises using both technical and behavioral ratings. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(1):8–18.
170. Fletcher G, Flin R, Glavin RJ, Maran N. *Framework for Observing and Rating Anaesthetists' NonTechnical Skills. Anaesthetists' NonTechnical Skills (ANTS) System Handbook v1.0*. Aberdeen, Scotland: University of Aberdeen; 2012. https://www.rcoa.ac.uk/system/files/AaE-ANTS-HANDBOOK.pdf
171. Fletcher GC, McGeorge P, Flin RH, Glavin RJ, Maran NJ. The role of nontechnical skills in anaesthesia: a review of current literature. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(3):418–429.
172. The Joint Commission. *Sentinel Event Statistics Released for 2014*; 2015. https://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/23/jconline_April_29_15.pdf
173. Cook TM, Woodall N, Frerk C. Major complications of airway management in the UK: results of the fourth national audit project of the royal college of anaesthetists and the difficult airway society. part 1: anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(5):617–631.
174. Kohn LT, Corrigan JM, Donaldson MS. *To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System*; 2000.
175. Dieckmann P, Patterson M, Lahlou S, Mesman J, Nyström P, Krage R. Variation and adaptation: learning from success in patient safety-oriented simulation training. *Adv Simul*. 2017;2(1):21.
176. Human Factors and Ergonomics Society (HFES). *Definitions of Human Factors and Ergonomics*; 2016. http://cms.hfes.org/Resources/Educational-and-Professional-Resources/Educational-Resources/Definitions-of-Human-Factors-and-Ergonomics.aspx
177. Catchpole K, McCulloch P. Human factors in critical care: towards standardized integrated human-centred systems of work. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2010;16(6):618–622.
178. Holden RJ, Carayon P, Gurses AP, et al. SEIPS 2.0: a human factors framework for studying and improving the work of healthcare professionals and patients. *Ergonomics*. 2013;56(11):1669–1686.
179. Carayon P, Schoofs Hundt A, Karsh B-T, et al. Work system design for patient safety: the SEIPS model. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2006;15(suppl 1):i50–i58.
180. Nestel D, Walker K, Simon R, Aggarwal R, Andreatta P. Nontechnical skills: an inaccurate and unhelpful descriptor? *Simulation in healthcare : journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2011;6(1):2–3.
181. Gaba DM. Training and nontechnical skills: the politics of terminology. *Simulation in healthcare : journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2011;6(1):8–10.
182. Fletcher G, Flin R, McGeorge P, Glavin R, Maran N, Patey R. Anaesthetists' NonTechnical Skills (ANTS): evaluation of a behavioural marker system. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(5):580–588.
183. Flin R, Patey R, Glavin R, Maran N. Anaesthetists' nontechnical skills. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2010;105(1):38–44.
184. Salas E, Shuffler ML, Thyer AL, Bedwell WL, Lazarra EH. Understanding and improving teamwork in organizations: a scientifically based practical guide. *Human Res Mgmt*. 2014:24. Available at: https://orpca.org/APCM/Salas_et_al-2014-Human_Resource_Management%201%203.pdf.
185. Jepsen RMHG, Spanager L, Lyk-Jensen HT, Dieckmann P, Østergaard D. Customisation of an instrument to assess anaesthesiologists' nontechnical skills. *Int J Med Educ*. 2015;6:17–25.
186. Spanager L, Lyk-Jensen HT, Dieckmann P, Wettergren A, Rosenberg J, Ostergaard D. Customization of a tool to assess Danish surgeons nontechnical skills in the operating room. *Danish Med J*. 2012;59(11):A4526.
187. Shields A, Flin R. Paramedics' nontechnical skills: a literature review. *Emergency medicine journal : EMJ*. 2013;30(5):350–354.
188. Flin R, Yule S, Paterson-Brown S, Maran N, Rowley D, Youngson G. Teaching surgeons about nontechnical skills. *The surgeon : journal of the Royal Colleges of Surgeons of Edinburgh and Ireland*. 2007;5(2):86–89.
189. Helmreich R, Wilhelm J, Kello J, Taggart W, Butler R. *Reinforcing and Evaluating Crew Resource Management: Evaluator/LOS Instructor Reference Manual. Vol NASA/UT Technical Manual 90-2, Revision 1*. Austin, TX: NASA/University of Texas Aerospace Crew Performance Project; 1991.
190. Graham J, Hocking G, Giles E. Anaesthesia nontechnical skills: can anaesthetists be trained to reliably use this behavioural marker system in 1 day? *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(4):440–445.
191. Zwaan L, Tjon Soei Len L, Wagner C, van Groeningen D, Kolenbrander M, Krage R. The reliability and usability of the Anesthesiologists' NonTechnical Skills (ANTS) system in simulation research. *Adv Simul*. 2016;1(1):18.
192. Watkins SC, Roberts DA, Boulet JR, McEvoy MD, Weinger MB. Evaluation of a simpler tool to assess nontechnical skills during simulated critical events. *Simulation in healthcare : journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2017;12(2):69–75.
193. Gjeraa K, Jepsen RM, Rewers M, Ostergaard D, Dieckmann P. Exploring the relationship between anaesthesiologists' nontechnical and technical skills. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2016;60(1):36–47.
194. Jones CPL, Fawker-Corbett J, Groom P, Morton B, Lister C, Mercer SJ. Human factors in preventing complications in anaesthesia: a systematic review. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(suppl 1):12–24.
195. Flin R, Fioratou E, Frerk C, Trotter C, Cook TM. Human factors in the development of complications of airway management: preliminary evaluation of an interview tool. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(8):817–825.
196. World Health Organization (WHO). Patient Safety Curriculum, Topic 2: "Why applying human factors is important for patient safety?". In: (WHO) WHO, ed. *WHO Multi-professional Patient Safety Curriculum Guide*2011:111-107.
197. Brandimonte M, Einstein GO, McDaniel MA. *Prospective Memory: Theory and Applications*. Mahwah, NJ, US: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates Publishers; 1996.

198. Douglas HE, Raban MZ, Walter SR, Westbrook JI. Improving our understanding of multi-tasking in healthcare: drawing together the cognitive psychology and healthcare literature. *Appl Ergo*. 2017;59:45–55.
199. Ophir E, Nass C, Wagner AD. Cognitive control in media multitaskers. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106(37):15583–15587.
200. Uncapher MR, Wagner AD. Minds and brains of media multitaskers: current findings and future directions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2018;115(40):9889–9896.
201. Feng SF, Schwemmer M, Gershman SJ, Cohen JD. Multitasking vs. multiplexing: toward a normative account of limitations in the simultaneous execution of control-demanding behaviors. *Cogn Affect Behav Neurosci*. 2014;14(1):129–146.
202. Weigl M, Muller A, Sevdalis N, Angerer P. Relationships of multitasking, physicians' strain, and performance: an observational study in ward physicians. *J Pat Saf*. 2013;9(1):18–23.
203. Rohrer D, Pashler HE. Concurrent task effects on memory retrieval. *Psych Bulletin Rev*. 2003;10(1):96–103.
204. Nijboer M, Taatgen N, Brands A, Borst J, van Rijn H. Decision making in concurrent multitasking: do people adapt to task interference? *PLoS ONE*. 2013;8(11).
205. van Rensen ELJ, Groen EST, Numan SC, et al. Multitasking during patient handover in the recovery room. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(5):1183–1187.
206. Segall N, Bonifacio AS, Schroeder RA, et al. Can we make postoperative patient handovers safer? A systematic review of the literature. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(1):102–115.
207. Endsley MR. Towards a theory of situation awareness in dynamic systems. *Hum Factors*. 1995;37(1):32–64.
208. Endsley MR. Situation awareness misconceptions and misunderstandings. *J Cogn Eng Dec Mak*. 2015;9(1):4–32.
209. Endsley MR. Situation awareness: operationally necessary and scientifically grounded. *Cogn Tech Work*. 2015;17(2).
210. Dekker S. The danger of losing situation awareness. *Cogn Tech Work*. 2015;17(2):159–161.
211. Dekker S, Hollnagel E. Human factors and folk models. *Cogn Tech Work*. 2003;6:79–86.
212. Kahneman D. *Thinking, Fast and Slow*. New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux; 2012.
213. Bogdanovic J, Perry J, Guggenheim M, Manser T. Adaptive coordination in surgical teams: an interview study. *BMC health services research*. 2015;15:128.
214. Widmer LW, Keller S, Tschan F, et al. More than talking about the weekend: content of case-irrelevant communication within the OR team. *World J Surg*. 2018;42(7):2011–2017.
215. Burtscher MJ, Manser T. Team mental models and their potential to improve teamwork and safety: a review and implications for future research in healthcare. *Safety Sci*. 2012;50:1344–1354.
216. Johnsen BH, Westli HK, Espevik R, Wisborg T, Brattebo G. High-performing trauma teams: frequency of behavioral markers of a shared mental model displayed by team leaders and quality of medical performance. *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med*. 2017;25(1):109.
217. Schmutz JB, Eppich WJ. Promoting learning and patient care through shared reflection: a conceptual framework for team reflexivity in health care. *Academic medicine : journal of the Association of American Medical Colleges*. 2017;92(11):1555–1563.
218. Fioratou E, Flin R, Glavin R, Patey R. Beyond monitoring: distributed situation awareness in anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(1):83–90.
219. Gibbs NM. Anaesthesia, not for resuscitation orders, and shared decision-making. *Anaesth Intev Care*. 2017;45(3):289–290.
220. Fleisher LA. The application of evidence to clinical decision-making in anaesthesia as a means of delivering value to patients. *Euro J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29(8):357–359.
221. Marewski JN, Gigerenzer G. Heuristic decision making in medicine. *Dial Clin Neurosci*. 2012;14(1):77–89.
222. Kahneman D, Klein G. Conditions for intuitive expertise: a failure to disagree. *Am Psychol*. 2009;64:515–526.
223. Gigerenzer G, Todd PM, ABC Research Group. *Simple Heuristics that Make us Smart*. New York: Oxford University Press; 1999.
224. Gigerenzer G, Gray JA. *Better Doctors, Better Patients, Better Decisions : Envisioning Health Care 2020*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press; 2011.
225. Schlesinger JJ, Burdick K, Baum S, et al. Rethinking clinical workflow. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2018;36(1):99–116.
226. Nurok M, Cohen N. Distraction implications for the practice of anesthesia. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2015;53(3):116–126.
227. Distracted Doctoring. *Returning to Patient-Centered Care in the Digital Age*. Springer; 2017.
228. Jorm CM, O'Sullivan G. Laptops and smartphones in the operating theatre - how does our knowledge of vigilance, multi-tasking and anaesthetist performance help us in our approach to this new distraction? *Anaesth Inten Care*. 2012;40(1):71–78.
229. Attri JP, Khetarpal R, Chatrath V, Kaur J. Concerns about usage of smartphones in operating room and critical care scenario. *Saudi J Anaesth*. 2016;10(1):87–94.
230. Ford DA. Managing distractions to maintain focus on patients. *AORN journal*. 2018;107(1):P13–P14.
231. Gill PS, Kamath A, Gill TS. Distraction: an assessment of smartphone usage in health care work settings. *Risk Mgmt Hlthcare Pol*. 2012;5:105–114.
232. van Pelt M, Weinger MB. Distractions in the anesthesia work environment: impact on patient safety? report of a meeting sponsored by the Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(1):347–350.
233. Pınar HU, Karaca O, Doğan R, Konuk ÜM. Smartphone use habits of anesthesia providers during anesthetized patient care: a survey from Turkey. *BMC Anesthesiology*. 2016;16:88.
234. Domino KB, Sessler DI. Internet use during anesthesia caredoes it matter? *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(6):1156–1158.
235. Stevenson RA, Schlesinger JJ, Wallace MT. Effects of divided attention and operating room noise on perception of pulse oximeter pitch changes: a laboratory study. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(2): 376–381.
236. Weinger MB, van Pelt M. Distractions in the anesthesia work environment: impact on patient safety? Report of a meeting sponsored by the Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(1):347–350.
237. Allen K, Blascovich J. Effects of music on cardiovascular reactivity among surgeons. *JAMA*. 1994;272(11):882–884.
238. Weinger MB. Cardiovascular reactivity among surgeons: not music to everyone's ears. *JAMA*. 1995;273(14):1090–1091.
239. Murthy VS, Malhotra SK, Bala I, Raghunathan M. Detrimental effects of noise on anaesthetists. *Canadian journal of anaesthesia = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 1995;42(7):608–611.
240. Schneider W, Detweiler M. The role of practice in dual-task performance: toward workload modeling a connectionist/control architecture. *Hum Factors*. 1988;30(5):539–566.
241. Soto RG, Neves SE, Papadakos PJ, Shapiro FE. Personal electronic device use in the operating room: a survey of usage patterns, risks and benefits. *Euro J Anaesthesiol*. 2017;34(4):246–247.
242. Patterson P. Adopting a 'no interruption zone' for patient safety. *OR manager*. 2013;29(2):20–22.
243. Statement on use of cell phones in the operating room. *Bulletin of the American College of Surgeons*. 2008;93(9):33–34.
244. (AORN) *Position Statement on Managing Distractions and Noise During Perioperative Patient Care*; 2014. http://www.aorn.org/Clinical_Practice/Position_Statements/Position_Statements.aspx
245. The Joint Commission. Minimizing noise and distractions in the Or and procedural units. *Quick Safety*. 2017;(Issue 35). https://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/23/Quick_Safety_Issue_35_2017_Noise_in_OR_FINAL.pdf
246. Anthony K, Wiencek C, Bauer C, Daly B, Anthony MK. No interruptions please: impact of a No Interruption Zone on medication safety in intensive care units. *Crit Care Nurse*. 2010;30(3):21–29.
247. Huber S, Semmer N, Tschan F, et al. 2016.
248. *International Bedroom Poll*. 2013. https://sleepfoundation.org/sleep-polls-data/other-polls/2013-international-bedroom-poll
249. Doran SM, Van Dongen HP, Dinges DF. Sustained attention performance during sleep deprivation: evidence of state instability. *Arch Italiennes de Biologie*. 2001;139(3):253–267.
250. Akerstedt T, Kecklund G. Age, gender and early morning highway accidents. *J Sleep Res*. 2001;10(2):105–110.
251. Howard SK, Gaba DM, Rosekind MR, Zarcone VP. The risks and implications of excessive daytime sleepiness in resident physicians. *Academic medicine : journal of the Association of American Medical Colleges*. 2002;77(10):1019–1025.
252. Howard SK, Rosekind MR, Katz JD, Berry AJ. Fatigue in anesthesia: implications and strategies for patient and provider safety. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(5):1281–1294.
253. Biddle C, Aker J. The national study of sleep-related behaviors of nurse anesthetists: personal and professional implications. *AANA journal*. 2011;79(4):324–331.

254. Domen R, Connelly CD, Spence D. Call-shift fatigue and use of countermeasures and avoidance strategies by certified registered nurse anesthetists: a national survey. *AANA journal*. 2015;83(2):123–131.
255. The Joint Commission. Health care worker fatigue and patient safety. *Sentinel Event Alert*. 2011;48(48):1–4. https://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/18/SEA_48.pdf
256. Sinha A, Singh A, Tewari A. The fatigued anesthesiologist: a threat to patient safety? *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2013;29(2):151–159.
257. Gregory P, Edsell M. Fatigue and the anaesthetist. *Contin Educ Anaesth Crit Care Pain*. 2014;14(1):18–22.
258. Barger LK, Ayas NT, Cade BE, et al. Impact of extended-duration shifts on medical errors, adverse events, and attentional failures. *PLoS Med*. 2006;3(12):e487.
259. Fletcher KE, Davis SQ, Underwood W, Mangrulkar RS, McMahon Jr LF, Saint S. Systematic review: effects of resident work hours on patient safety. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;141(11):851–857.
260. Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME). *The ACGME 2011 Duty Hour Standard: Enhancing Quality of Care*. Supervision and Resident Professional Development; 2011. https://www.acgme.org/Portals/0/PDFs/jgme-monograph[1].pdf
261. Blum AB, Shea S, Czeisler CA, Landrigan CP, Leape L. Implementing the 2009 Institute of Medicine recommendations on resident physician work hours, supervision, and safety. *Nat Sci Sleep*. 2011;3:47–85.
262. Philibert I, Nasca T, Brigham T, Shapiro J. Duty-hour limits and patient care and resident outcomes: can high-quality studies offer insight into complex relationships? *Annu Rev Med*. 2013;64:467–483.
263. Landrigan CP, Barger LK, Cade BE, Ayas NT, Czeisler CA. Interns' compliance with accreditation council for graduate medical education work-hour limits. *JAMA*. 2006;296(9):1063–1070.
264. Engelmann C, Schneider M, Kirschbaum C, et al. Effects of intraoperative breaks on mental and somatic operator fatigue: a randomized clinical trial. *Surg Endosc*. 2011;25(4):1245–1250.
265. Cooper JB, Long CD, Newbower RS, Philip JH. Critical incidents associated with intraoperative exchanges of anesthesia personnel. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56(6):456–461.
266. Cooper JB. Do short breaks increase or decrease anesthetic risk? *J Clin Anesth*. 1989;1(3):228–231.
267. Smith-Coggins R, Howard SK, Mac DT, et al. Improving alertness and performance in emergency department physicians and nurses: the use of planned naps. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2006;48(5):596–604. 604.e591-593.
268. Howard SK. *VA's Strategic Nap Program. TOPICS IN PATIENT SAFETY*. VA Palo Alto Health Care System;MAY/JUNE 2008.
269. Rendell PG, Craik FIM. Virtual week and actual week: age-related differences in prospective memory. *Appl Cogn Psychol*. 2000;14(7):S43–S62.
270. Mienaltowski A. Everyday problem solving across the adult life span: solution diversity and efficacy. *Ann New York Acad Sci*. 2011;1235:75–85.
271. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). *TeamSTEPPS® 2.0 Pocket Guide*; 2014. 2018 https://www.ahrq.gov/sites/default/files/wysiwyg/professionals/education/curriculum-tools/teamstepps/instructor/essentials/pocketguide.pdf
272. Silverstein JH, Silva DA, Iberti TJ. Opioid addiction in anesthesiology. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79(2):354–375.
273. Bryson EO, Silverstein JH. Addiction and substance abuse in anesthesiology. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(5):905–917.
274. Jungerman FS, Palhares Alves HN, Carmona MJC, Conti NB, Malbergier A. Anesthetic drug abuse by anesthesiologists. *Braz J Anesthesiol*. 2012;62(3):375–386.
275. Mayall RM. Substance abuse in anaesthetists. *BJA Education*. 2016;16(7):236–241.
276. Booth JV, Grossman D, Moore J, et al. Substance abuse among physicians: a survey of academic anesthesiology programs. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(4):1024–1030. table of contents.
277. Skipper GE, Campbell MD, Dupont RL. Anesthesiologists with substance use disorders: a 5-year outcome study from 16 state physician health programs. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(3):891–896.
278. Berge KH, Seppala MD, Schipper AM. Chemical dependency and the physician. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2009;84(7):625–631.
279. Rossier RN. Hazardous attitudes. Which one do you have?. https://www.aopa.org/news-and-media/all-news/1999/september/flight-training-magazine/hazardous-attitudes; 1999
280. Tucker AL, Edmondson AC. Why hospitals don't learn from failures: organizational and psychological dynamics that inhibit system change. *Calif Mgmt Rev*. 2003;45(2):55–72.
281. Lingard L, Reznick R, Espin S, Regehr G, DeVito I. Team communications in the operating room: talk patterns, sites of tension, and implications for novices. *Academic medicine : journal of the Association of American Medical Colleges*. 2002;77(3):232–237.
282. Greenberg CC, Regenbogen SE, Studdert DM, et al. Patterns of communication breakdowns resulting in injury to surgical patients. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2007;204(4):533–540.
283. Kolbe M, Burtscher MJ, Wacker J, et al. Speaking-up is related to better team performance in simulated anesthesia inductions: an observational study. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:1099–1108.
284. The Joint Commission. Sentinel Event Alert: Inadequate hand-off communication. Issue 58. September 2017; https://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/18/SEA_58_Hand_off_Comms_9_6_17_FINAL_(1).pdf. Accessed November 16, 2018.
285. Edmondson AC. *Teaming: How Organizations Learn, Innovate, and Compete in the Knowledge Economy*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass; 2012.
286. Smith-Jentsch KA, Cannon-Bowers JA, Tannenbaum SI, Salas E. Guided team self-correction: impacts on team mental models, processes, and effectiveness. *Small Group Research*. 2008;39(3):303–327.
287. Rudolph JW, Morrison JB, Carroll JS. The dynamics of action-oriented problem solving: linking interpretation and choice. *Academy Manage J*. 2009;34:733–756.
288. Schmutz J, Hoffmann F, Heimberg E, Manser T. Effective coordination in medical emergency teams: the moderating role of task type. *Euro J Work Organiz Psychol*. 2015;24(5):761–776.
289. Härgestam M, Lindkvist M, Brulin C, Jacobsson M, Hultin M. Communication in interdisciplinary teams: exploring closed-loop communication during in situ trauma team training. *BMJ Open*. 2013;3(10).
290. Kolbe M. Five simple processes that improve high-risk team effectiveness. In: Salas E, Tannenbaum S, Cohen D, Latham G, eds. *Developing and Enhancing Teamwork in Organisations: Evidence-Based Best Practices and Guidelines*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass; 2013:609–643.
291. El-Shafy IA, Delgado J, Akerman M, Bullaro F, Christopherson NAM, Prince JM. Closed-loop communication improves task completion in pediatric trauma resuscitation. *J Surg Educ*. 2018;75(1):58–64.
292. Hunter H, Tara C, Wesley C, et al. Assessing SBAR during intraoperative handoff. *Periop Care OR Mgmt*. 2017;6:7–10.
293. Randmaa M, Engstrom M, Swenne CL, Martensson G. The postoperative handover: a focus group interview study with nurse anaesthetists, anaesthesiologists and PACU nurses. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7(8):e015038.
294. De Meester K, Verspuy M, Monsieurs KG, Van Bogaert P. SBAR improves nurse-physician communication and reduces unexpected death: a pre and post intervention study. *Resuscitation*. 2013;84(9):1192–1196.
295. Shahid S, Thomas S. Situation, background, assessment, recommendation (SBAR) communication tool for handoff in health care – a narrative review. *Safety in Health*. 2018;4(1):7.
296. Bagian JP, Paull DE. Handovers during anesthesia care: patient safety risk or opportunity for improvement? *JAMA*. 2018;319(2):125–127.
297. Saager L, Hesler BD, You J, et al. Intraoperative transitions of anesthesia care and postoperative adverse outcomes. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(4):695–706.
298. Starmer AJ, Spector ND, Srivastava R, et al. Changes in medical errors after implementation of a handoff program. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371(19):1803–1812.
299. Karamchandani K, Fitzgerald K, Carroll D, et al. A multidisciplinary handoff process to standardize the transfer of care between the intensive care unit and the operating room. *Qual Mgmt Health Care*. 2018;27(4):215–222.
300. Jullia M, Tronet A, Fraumar F, et al. Training in intraoperative handover and display of a checklist improve communication during transfer of care: an interventional cohort study of anaesthesia residents and nurse anaesthetists. *Euro J Anaesthesiol*. 2017;34(7):471–476.
301. Kolbe M, Burtscher MJ, Wacker J, et al. Speaking up is related to better team performance in simulated anesthesia inductions: an observational study. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(5):1099–1108.
302. Morrison EW. Employee voice behavior: integration and directions for future research. *Acad Mgmt Ann*. 2011;5(1):373–412.

303. Raemer DB, Kolbe M, Minehart RD, Rudolph JW, Pian-Smith MCM. Improving anesthesiologists' ability to speak up in the operating room: a randomized controlled experiment of a simulation-based intervention and a qualitative analysis of hurdles and enablers. *Acad Med*. 2016;91(4):530–539.
304. Schwappach DLB, Gehring K. 'Saying it without words': a qualitative study of oncology staff's experiences with speaking up about safety concerns. *BMJ Open*. 2014;4(5).
305. Schwappach DL, Gehring K. Silence that can be dangerous: a vignette study to assess healthcare professionals' likelihood of speaking up about safety concerns. *PLoS One*. 2014;9(8):e104720.
306. Schwappach DL, Gehring K. Trade-offs between voice and silence: a qualitative exploration of oncology staff's decisions to speak up about safety concerns. *BMC health services research*. 2014;14:303.
307. Okuyama A, Wagner C, Bijnen B. Speaking up for patient safety by hospital-based health care professionals: a literature review. *BMC health services research*. 2014;14:61.
308. Detert J, Edmondson A. Implicit voice theories: taken-for-granted rules of self-censorship at work. *Acad Mgmt J*. 2011;54(3):461–488.
309. Morrison EW. Employee voice and silence. *Annual Review of Organizational Psychology and Organizational Behavior*. 2014;1(1):173–197.
310. Kish-Gephart JJ, Detert JR, Trevino LK, Edmondson AC. Silenced by fear: the nature, sources, and consequences of fear at work. *Res Organiz Behav*. 2009;29:163–193.
311. Souba W, Way D, Lucey C, Sedmak D, Notestine M. Elephants in academic medicine. *Academic medicine : journal of the Association of American Medical Colleges*. 2011;86(12):1492–1499.
312. St.Pierre M, Scholler A, Strembski D, Breuer G. Äußern assistenzärzte und pflegekräfte sicherheitsrelevante Bedenken? [Do residents and nurses communicate safety relevant concerns? Simulation study on the influence of the authority gradient]. *Der Anaesthesist*. 2012;61(10):857–866.
313. Weiss M, Kolbe M, Grote G, et al. Agency and communion predict speaking up in acute care teams. *Small Group Research*. 2014;45(3):290–313.
314. Vashdi DR, Bamberger PA, Erez M. Can surgical teams ever learn? The role of coordination, complexity, and transitivity in action team learning. *Acad Mgmt J*. 2013;56(4):945–971.
315. Edmondson AC. Psychological safety and learning behavior in work teams. *Administrative Science Quarterly*. 1999;44(2):350–383.
316. Bould MD, Sutherland S, Sydor DT, Naik V, Friedman Z. Residents' reluctance to challenge negative hierarchy in the operating room: a qualitative study. *Canadian journal of anaesthesia = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 2015;62(6):576–586.
317. Liu W, Tangirala S, Ramanujam R. The relational antecedents of voice targeted at different leaders. *J Appl Psychol*. 2013;98(5):841–851.
318. Sydor DT, Bould MD, Naik VN, et al. Challenging authority during a life-threatening crisis: the effect of operating theatre hierarchy. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2013;110(3):463–471.
319. Martin GP, Aveling E-L, Campbell A, et al. Making soft intelligence hard: a multi-site qualitative study of challenges relating to voice about safety concerns. *BMJ Quality & Safety*. 2018.
320. Farh CI, Chen G. Leadership and member voice in action teams: test of a dynamic phase model. *J Appl Psychol*. 2018;103(1):97–110.
321. Weiss M, Kolbe M, Grote G, Spahn D, Grande B. *We can do it! Inclusive Leader Language Promotes Voice Behavior in Multi-Professional Teams*. 2017.
322. Wei X, Zhang ZX, Chen XP. I will speak up if my voice is socially desirable: a moderated mediating process of promotive versus prohibitive voice. *J Appl Psychol*. 2015;100(5):1641–1652.
323. Weiss M, Morrison EW. Speaking up and moving up: how voice can enhance employees' social status. *J Organz Behav*. 2018;0(Special Issue):1–15.
324. Cooper JB. Critical role of the surgeon–anesthesiologist relationship for patient safety. *Anesthesiology*. 2018.
325. Salas E, Dickinson TL, Converse SA, Tannenbaum SI. *Toward an Understanding of Team Performance and Training. Teams: Their Training and Performance*. Westport, CT, US: Ablex Publishing; 1992:3–29.
326. Schmutz J, Manser T. Do team processes really have an effect on clinical performance? A systematic literature review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(4):529–544.
327. Weiss M, Kolbe M, Grote G, Spahn DR, Grande B. Why didn't you say something? Effects of after-event reviews on voice behaviour and hierarchy beliefs in multi-professional action teams. *Euro J Work Organiz Psychol*. 2017;26(1):66–80.
328. St Pierre M, Breuer G, Strembski D, Schmitt C, Lütcke B. Briefing verbessert das management einer schwierigen maskenbeatmung beim säugling. [briefing improves the management of a difficult mask ventilation in infants: simulator study using web-based decision support]. *Der Anaesthesist*. 2016;65(9):681–689.
329. Cognition Team. *Understanding the Factors That Drive Process and Performance*. American Psychological Association; 2004.
330. Burtscher MJ, Manser T, Kolbe M, et al. Adaptation in anaesthesia team coordination in response to a simulated critical event and its relationship to clinical performance. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(6):801–806.
331. Schmutz J, Welp A, Kolbe M. Teamwork in healthcare organizations. In: Örtenblad A, Abrahamson C, Sheaff R, eds. *Management Innovations for Health Care Organizations. Adopt, Abandon or Adapt?*. New York: Routledge; 2016:359–377.
332. Burtscher MJ, Kolbe M, Wacker J, Manser T. Interactions of team mental models and monitoring behaviors predict team performance in simulated anesthesia inductions. *J Exp Appl Psychol Appl*. 2011;17:257–269.
333. Kolbe M, Grote G, Waller MJ, et al. Monitoring and talking to the room: autochthonous coordination patterns in team interaction and performance. *J Appl Psychol*. 2014;99(6):1254–1267.
334. Künzle B, Zala-Mezö E, Kolbe M, Wacker J, Grote G. Substitutes for leadership in anaesthesia teams and their impact on leadership effectiveness. *Eur J Work Organ Psychol*. 2010;19:505–531.
335. Künzle B, Kolbe M, Grote G. Ensuring patient safety through effective leadership behaviour: a literature review. *Safety Science*. 2010;48(1):1–17.
336. Morgeson FP, DeRue DS, Karam EP. Leadership in teams: a functional approach to understanding leadership structures and processes. *J Mgmt*. 2010;36(1):5–39.
337. Klein KJ, Ziegert JC, Knight AP, Xiao Y. Dynamic delegation: shared, hierarchical, and deindividualized leadership in extreme action teams. *AdminSci Quar*. 2006;51(4):590–621.
338. Seelandt J, Grande B, Kolbe M. Implizite führungstheorien in akutsituationen im gesundheitswesen: "kobra, übernehmen sie"! [implicit leadership theories of ad-hoc healthcare teams during non-routine situations: please take over!]. *Gruppe Interaktion Organisation Zeitschrift für Angewandte Organisationspsychologie (GIO)*. 2017;48(1):69–78.
339. Tschan F, Semmer NK, Hunziker S, Kolbe M, Jenni N, Marsch SU. Leadership in different resuscitation situations. *Trends Anaesth Crit Care*. 2014;4:36.
340. Fernandez Castelao E, Russo SG, Riethmuller M, Boos M. Effects of team coordination during cardiopulmonary resuscitation: a systematic review of the literature. *J Crit Care*. 2013;28(4):504–521.
341. Foulk T, Woolum A, Erez A. Catching rudeness is like catching a cold: the contagion effects of low-intensity negative behaviors. *J Appl Psychol*. 2016;101(1):50–67.
342. Riskin A, Erez A, Foulk TA, et al. The impact of rudeness on medical team performance: a randomized trial. *Pediatrics*. 2015;136(3):487–495.
343. Sagan SD. Toward a political theory of organizational reliability. *J Contig Crisis Mgmt*. 1994;2(4):228–240.
344. Larsson J, Holmström IK. How excellent anaesthetists perform in the operating theatre: a qualitative study on nontechnical skills. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2013;110(1):115–121.
345. Helmreich RL, Merritt AC, Wilhelm JA. The evolution of crew resource management training in commercial aviation. *Int J Aviat Psychol*. 1999;9(1):19–32.
346. Rall M, Manser T, Guggenberger H, Gaba DM, Unertl K. Patientensicherheit und fehler in der medizin: entstehung, prävention und analyse von zwischenfällen. [patient safety and errors in medicine: development, prevention and analyses of incidents]. *Anasthesiologie, Intensivmedizin, Notfallmedizin, Schmerztherapie : AINS*. 2001;36(6):321–330.
347. Gaba D, Howard S, Fish K, Smith B, Sowb Y. Simulation-based training in anesthesia crisis resource management (ACRM). a decade of experience. *Simul Gaming*. 2001;32:175–193.
348. Gaba DM, Howard SK, Fish KJ, Smith BE, Sowb YA. Simulation-based training in anesthesia crisis resource management (ACRM): a decade of experience. *Simul Gaming*. 2001;32(2):175–193.
349. Barnes CM, Hollenbeck JR, Wagner DT, DeRue DS, Nahrgang JD, Schwind KM. Harmful help: the costs of backing-up behavior in teams. *J Appl Psychol*. 2008;93(3):529–539.
350. Sagan SD. The problem of redundancy problem: why more nuclear security forces may produce less nuclear security. *Risk Analysis*. 2004;24(4):935–946.

351. Nembhard IM, Edmondson AC. Making it safe: the effects of leader inclusiveness and professional status on psychological safety and improvement efforts in health care teams. Special issue on healthcare: the problems are organizational not clinical. *J Organiz Behav*. 2006;27(7):941–966.
352. Hirak R, Peng A, Carmeli A, Schaubroeck J. Linking leader inclusiveness to work unit per-formance: the importance of psychological safety and learning from failures. *Leadership Quar*. 2012;23:107–117.
353. Rosenman ED, Branzetti JB, Fernandez R. Assessing team leadership in emergency medicine: the milestones and beyond. *J Grad Med Educ*. 2016;8(3):332–340.
354. Rosenman ED, Shandro JR, Ilgen JS, Harper AL, Fernandez R. Leadership training in health care action teams: a systematic review. *Academic medicine : journal of the Association of American Medical Colleges*. 2014;89(9):1295–1306.
355. Mesmer-Magnus JR, Dechurch LA. Information sharing and team performance: a meta-analysis. *J Appl Psychol*. 2009;94(2):535–546.
356. Bogenstätter Y, Tschan F, Semmer NK, Spychiger M, Breuer M, Marsch SU. How accurate is information transmitted to medical professionals joining a medical emergency? A simulator study. *Hum Factors*. 2009;51:115–125.
357. Christensen C, Larson JR, Abbott A, Ardolino A, Franz T, Pfeiffer C. Decision making of clinical teams: communication patterns and diagnostic error. *Med Dec Making*. 2000;20(1):45–50.
358. Larson JRJ, Christensen C, Franz TM, Abbott AS. Diagnosing groups: the pooling, management, and impact of shared and unshared case information in team-based medical decision making. *J Pers Soc Psychol*. 1998;75:93–108.
359. Chikkabbaiah V, French J, Townsley P, Bedforth N. Further reducing the risk of wrong site block. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(12):1453-1453.
360. Pandit JJ, Matthews J, Pandit M. "Mock before you block": an in–built action–check to prevent wrong–side anaesthetic nerve blocks. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72(2):150–155.
361. Berkenstadt H, Yusim Y, Ziv A, Ezri T, Perel A. An assessment of a point-of-care information system for the anesthesia provider in simulated malignant hyperthermia crisis. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(2):530–532.
362. Harrison TK, Manser T, Howard SK, Gaba DM. Use of cognitive aids in a simulated anesthetic crisis. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(3):551–556.
363. Burden AR, Carr ZJ, Staman GW, Littman JJ, Torjman MC. Does every code need a "reader"? Improvement of rare event management with a cognitive aid "reader" during a simulated emergency: a pilot study. *Simulation in healthcare : journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2012;7(1):1–9.
364. Bereknyei Merrell S, Gaba DM, Agarwala AV, et al. Use of an emergency manual during an intraoperative cardiac arrest by an interprofessional team: a positive-exemplar case study of a new patient safety tool. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2018;44(8):477–484.
365. Hilton G, Daniels K, Goldhaber-Fiebert SN, Lipman S, Carvalho B, Butwick A. Checklists and multidisciplinary team performance during simulated obstetric hemorrhage. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2016;25:9–16.
366. Marshall SD, Mehra R. The effects of a displayed cognitive aid on nontechnical skills in a simulated 'can't intubate, can't oxygenate' crisis. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(7):669–677.
367. Lingard L, Regehr G, Orser B, et al. Evaluation of a preoperative checklist and team briefing among surgeons, nurses, and anesthesiologists to reduce failures in communication. *Archives of surgery (Chicago, Ill : 1960)*. 2008;143(1):12–17. discussion 18.
368. Krombach JW, Edwards WA, Marks JD, Radke OC. Checklists and other cognitive aids for emergency and routine anesthesia care-a survey on the perception of anesthesia providers from a large academic us institution. *Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;5(4):e26300.
369. Hepner DL, Arriaga AF, Cooper JB, et al. Operating room crisis checklists and emergency manuals. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(2):384–392.
370. Marshall S. The use of cognitive aids during emergencies in anesthesia: a review of the literature. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1162–1171.
371. Mellin-Olsen J, Staender S, Whitaker DK, Smith AF. The Helsinki declaration on patient safety in anaesthesiology. *European Journal of Anaesthesiology (EJA)*. 2010;27(7):592–597.
372. Haynes AB, Weiser TG, Berry WR, et al. A surgical safety checklist to reduce morbidity and mortality in a global population. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360(5):491–499.
373. Neuhaus C, Spies A, Wilk H, Weigand MA, Lichtenstern C. "Attention everyone, time out!": safety attitudes and checklist practices in anesthesiology in Germany. a cross-sectional study. *J Patient Saf*. 2017.
374. Levy MM, Pronovost PJ, Dellinger RP, et al. Sepsis change bundles: converting guidelines into meaningful change in behavior and clinical outcome. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(suppl 11):S595–597.
375. Chu L, Fuller A. *Manual of Clinical Anesthesiology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2011.
376. Watkins SC, Anders S, Clebone A, et al. Paper or plastic? Simulation based evaluation of two versions of a cognitive aid for managing pediatric peri-operative critical events by anesthesia trainees: evaluation of the Society for Pediatric Anesthesia emergency checklist. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2016;30(3):275–283.
377. Goldhaber-Fiebert SN, Lei V, Nandagopal K, Bereknyei S. Emergency manual implementation: can brief simulation-based or staff trainings increase familiarity and planned clinical use? *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2015;41(5):212–220.
378. Gaba DM. Perioperative cognitive aids in anesthesia: what, who, how, and why bother? *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1033–1036.
379. Tobin JM, Grabinsky A, McCunn M, et al. A checklist for trauma and emergency anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1178–1184.
380. Augoustides JG, Atkins J, Kofke WA. Much ado about checklists: who says I need them and who moved my cheese? *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1037–1038.
381. Goldhaber-Fiebert SN, Howard SK. Implementing emergency manuals: can cognitive aids help translate best practices for patient care during acute events? *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1149–1161.
382. Jenkins B. Cognitive aids: time for a change? *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(7):660–664.
383. Walker IA, Reshamwalla S, Wilson IH. Surgical safety checklists: do they improve outcomes? *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2012;109(1):47–54.
384. Pugel AE, Simianu VV, Flum DR, Dellinger EP. Use of the surgical safety checklist to improve communication and reduce complications. *J Infect Public Health*. 2015;8(3):219–225.
385. Close KL, Baxter LS, Ravelojaona VA, et al. Overcoming challenges in implementing the WHO surgical safety checklist: lessons learnt from using a checklist training course to facilitate rapid scale up in Madagascar. *BMJ Global Health*. 2017;2(suppl 4):e000430.
386. Treadwell JR, Lucas S, Tsou AY. Surgical checklists: a systematic review of impacts and implementation. *BMJ Quality & Safety*. 2014;23(4):299–318.
387. Winters BD, Gurses AP, Lehmann H, Sexton JB, Rampersad CJ, Pronovost PJ. Clinical review: checklists - translating evidence into practice. *Crit Care*. 2009;13(6). 210-210.
388. Gillespie BM, Marshall A. Implementation of safety checklists in surgery: a realist synthesis of evidence. *Implementation Science : IS*. 2015;10:137.
389. Mahajan RP. The WHO surgical checklist. *Best Prac Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;25(2):161–168.
390. Clay-Williams R, Colligan L. Back to basics: checklists in aviation and healthcare. *BMJ Quality & Safety*. 2015;24(7):428–431.
391. Salas E, Rosen MA, King H. Managing teams managing crises: principles of teamwork to improve patient safety in the emergency room and beyond. *Theoret Iss Ergonom*. 2007;8(5):381–394.
392. Cooke NJ, Gorman JC, Duran JL, Taylor AR. Team cognition in experienced command-and-control teams. *J Exp Psychol Appl*. 2007;13(3):146–157.
393. Cooke NJ, Salas E, Cannon-Bowers JA, Stout RJ. Measuring team knowledge. *Hum Factors*. 2000;42(1):151–173.
394. Cooke NJ. Team cognition as interaction. *Curr Dir Psychol Sci*. 2015;24(6):415–419.
395. Salas E, Zajac S, Marlow SL. Transforming health care one team at a time: ten observations and the trail ahead. *Grp Organ Mgmt*. 2018;43(3):357–381.
396. Gjeraa K, Moller TP, Ostergaard D. Efficacy of simulation-based trauma team training of nontechnical skills. A systematic review. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58(7):775–787.
397. Armour Forse R, Bramble JD, McQuillan R. Team training can improve operating room performance. *Surgery*. 2011;150(4):771–778.
398. Deering S, Rosen MA, Ludi V, et al. On the front lines of patient safety: implementation and evaluation of team training in Iraq. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2011;37(8):350–356.
399. Capella J, Smith S, Philp A, et al. Teamwork training improves the clinical care of trauma patients. *J Surg Educ*. 2010;67(6):439–443.
400. Young-Xu Y, Neily J, Mills PD, et al. Association between implementation of a medical team training program and surgical morbidity. *Arch Surg*. 2011;146(12):1368–1373.

401. Risser DT, Rice MM, Salisbury ML, Simon R, Jay GD, Berns SD. The potential for improved teamwork to reduce medical errors in the emergency department. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1999;34(3):373–383.
402. Morey JC, Simon R, Jay GD, et al. Error reduction and performance improvement in the emergency department through formal teamwork training: evaluation results of the MedTeams project. *Health Serv Res*. 2002;37(6):1553–1581.
403. Rosen MA, Salas E, Wu TS, et al. Promoting teamwork: an event-based approach to simulation-based teamwork training for emergency medicine residents. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2008;15(11):1190–1198.
404. Birnbach DJ, Salas E. Can medical simulation and team training reduce errors in labor and delivery? *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2008;26(1):159–168. viii.
405. Sundar E, Sundar S, Pawlowski J, Blum R, Feinstein D, Pratt S. Crew resource management and team training. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2007;25(2):283–300.
406. Nielsen PE, Goldman MB, Mann S, et al. Effects of teamwork training on adverse outcomes and process of care in labor and delivery: a randomized controlled trial. *Obstet gynecol*. 2007;109(1):48–55.
407. Marshall DA, Manus DA. A team training program using human factors to enhance patient safety. *AORN journal*. 2007;86(6):994–1011.
408. Dunn EJ, Mills PD, Neily J, Crittenden MD, Carmack AL, Bagian JP. Medical team training: applying crew resource management in the Veterans Health Administration. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2007;33(6):317–325.
409. Weaver SJ, Dy SM, Rosen MA. Team-training in healthcare: a narrative synthesis of the literature. *BMJ Quality & Safety*. 2014;23(5):359–372.
410. Marlow SL, Hughes AM, Sonesh SC, et al. A systematic review of team training in health care: ten questions. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2017;43(4):197–204.
411. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. TeamSTEPPS: Curriculum, Toolkit, further information and implementation guidelines, Online Training, Pocket Guide and Pocket Guide App, Webinars, Training Videos, Classroom slides, Measurement Tools. https://www.ahrq.gov/teamstepps/index.html.
412. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). *TeamSTEPPS® 2.0*; 2012. https://www.ahrq.gov/teamstepps/index.html
413. Veterans Affairs National Center for Patient Safety. Clinical Team Training (CTT). https://www.patientsafety.va.gov/professionals/training/team.asp. Accessed May, 06 2018.
414. Neily J, Mills PD, Mazzia LM, Paull DE. *Lessons from the VA's Team Training Program. Perspectives on Safety*; 2011. https://psnet.ahrq.gov/perspectives/perspective/112
415. Canadian Patient Safety Foundation. *Report on Summary of Team Training Programs*; 2010. http://www.patientsafetyinstitute.ca/en/toolsResources/teamworkCommunication/Documents/Teamwork%20and%20Communications%20Final%20Summary%20of%20training%20programs.pdf
416. Moray NP, Senders JW. *Human Error: Cause, Prediction and Reduction*. Lawrence Erlbaum Associates Inc; 2008.
417. Hogan AM, Sanders RD. To err is human…: can the methods of cognitive neuroscience contribute to our understanding of errors in anaesthesia? *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(6):960–964.
418. Health and Safety Executive (HSE). Leadership and worker involvement toolkit. http://www.hse.gov.uk/construction/lwit/assets/downloads/human-failure.pdf; 2012
419. Arnstein F. Catalogue of human error. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79(5):645–656.
420. Rasmussen J. *Information Processing and Human-Machine Interaction: An Approach to Cognitive Engineering*. New York, USA: Elsevier Science Ltd; 1986.
421. Helmreich RL. On error management: lessons from aviation. *BMJ*. 2000;320(7237):781–785.
422. Engelmann C, Grote G, Geyer S, Ametowobla D. Operating lists are created by rational algorithms and use of power. What can a social scientific view offer surgeons? *Langenbeck's Arch Surg*. 2017;402(1):187–190.
423. Vincent C, Taylor-Adams S, Stanhope N. Framework for analysing risk and safety in clinical medicine. *BMJ : British Medical Journal*. 1998;316(7138):1154–1157.
424. Taylor-Adams S, Vincent C. Systems analysis of clinical incidents: the London protocol. *Clinical Risk*. 2004;10(6):211–220.
425. Nyssen AS, Blavier A. Error detection: a study in anaesthesia. *Ergonomics*. 2006;49(5-6):517–525.
426. Mehl K, Wehner T. Research on errors and learning from them: methodological perspectives. In: Bauer J, Harteis C, eds. *Human Fallibility: The Ambiguity of Errors for Work and Learning*. Dordrecht: Springer; 2012:91–106.
427. Dekker S. *The Field Guide to Understanding Human Error*. 2nd New edition. Aldershot (England) & Burlington, VT (USA): Ashgate Publishing Limited; 2006.
428. Reason J. Human error: models and management. *West J Med*. 2000;172(6):393–396.
429. Cook RI, Woods DD. *Operating at the Sharp End: The Complexity of Human Error. Human Error in Medicine*. Hillsdale, NJ, US: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Inc; 1994:255–310.
430. Hidden A. *Clapham Junction Accident Investigation Report*. London: His/Her Majesty's Stationary Office; 1989.
431. Henriksen K, Kaplan H. Hindsight bias, outcome knowledge and adaptive learning. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2003;12(suppl 2):ii46–ii50.
432. Arkes HR. The consequences of the hindsight bias in medical decision making. *Curr Dir Psychol Sci*. 2013;22(5):356–360.
433. Hugh TB, Dekker S. Hindsight bias and outcome bias in the social construction of medical negligence. A Review. 2009;16.
434. Institute of Medicine (IOM). *Crossing the Quality Chasm.: A New Health System for the 21st Century*. 2001.
435. Roberts KH. New challenges in organizational research: high reliability organizations. *Ind Crisis Quar*. 1989;3(2):111–125.
436. Laporte T, Consolini P. Working in practice but not in theory: theoretical challenges of "high-reliability organizations". 1991;1.
437. La Porte TR. High reliability organizations: unlikely, demanding and at risk. *J Cont Crisis Mgmt*. 1996;4(2):60–71.
438. Weick K, Sutcliffe KM. *Managing the Unexpected: Resilient Performance in an Age of Uncertainty*. John Wiley & Sons; 2001.
439. Weick KE. Organizational culture as a source of high reliability. *Calif Mgmt Rev*. 1987;29(2):112–127.
440. Weick KE, Sutcliffe KM, Obstfeld D. Organizing for high reliability: processes of collective mindfulness. In: Staw BM, Cummings LL, eds. *Research in Organizational Behavior*. vol. 21. Greenwich, CT: JAI Press, Inc.; 1999:81–123.
441. Sutcliffe KM. High reliability organizations (HROs). *Best Prac Res Clin Anaesth*. 2011;25(2):133–144.
442. Leveson N, Dulac N, Marais K, Carroll J. Moving beyond normal accidents and high reliability organizations: a systems approach to safety in complex systems. *Organization Studies*. 2009;30(2-3):227–249.
443. Shrivastava S, Sonpar K, Pazzaglia F. Normal accident theory versus high reliability theory: a resolution and call for an open systems view of accidents. *Human Relations*. 2009;62(9):1357–1390.
444. Sagan SD. *The Limits of Safety. Organizations, Accidents, and Nuclear Weapons*. vol. 53. Princeton, New Jersey: Princeton University Press; 1993.
445. Gaba DM. Structural and organizational issues in patient safety: a comparison of health care to other high-hazard industries. *California Management Review*. 2000;43(1):83–102.
446. Snook SA. *Friendly Fire: The Accidental Shootdown of U.S. Blackhawks Over Northern Iraq*. Princeton: Princton University Press; 2000.
447. Hollnagel EW, David D, Leveson N. *Resilience Engineering - Concepts and Precepts*. Aldershot: Ashgate; 2006.
448. Fairbanks RJ, Wears RL, Woods DD, Hollnagel E, Plsek P, Cook RI. Resilience and resilience engineering in health care. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Safety*. 2014;40(8):376–383.
449. Hollnagel E, Pariès J, Woods D, Wreathall J. *Resilience Engineering in Practice: A Guidebook*. Ashgate: CRC Press; 2010.
450. Hollnagel E. Making health care resilient: from safety-I to safety-II. In: Hollnagel E, Braithwaite J, Wears RL, eds. *Resilient Healthcare*. Farnham, UK: Ashgate; 2013:3–17.
451. Hollnagel E, Nemeth CP. Preparation and restoration. In: Nemeth CP, Hollnagel E, Dekker SWA, eds. *Resilience Engineering Perspectives*. vol. 2. Farnham, UK: CRC Press; 2009:310.
452. Haavik TK, Antonsen S, Rosness R, Hale A. HRO and RE: a pragmatic perspective. *Safety Science*. 2016.
453. Gaba DM. Safety first: ensuring quality care in the intensely productive environment – the HRO model. *Anesth Patient Saf Found Newsl (Special Issue)*. 2003;18(13-14).
454. Roberts KH, LaPorte TR. The culture of high reliability: quantitative and qualitative assessment aboard nuclear powered aircraft carriers. *J High Tech Mgmt Res*. 1994;5:141–161.

455. Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI). High reliability organization (HRO) principles. *Reference Sheet*. 2014. http://app.ihi.org/FacultyDocuments/Events/Event-2491/Presentation-10595/Document-8970/Tools_HRO_Principles.pdf
456. Rall M, Dieckmann P. Safety culture and crisis resource management in airway management: general principles to enhance patient safety in critical airway situations. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;19(4):539–557.
457. Hollnagel E. *Safety-I and Safety-II. The Past and Future of Safety Management*. Farnham, UK: Ashgate; 2014.
458. *From Safety-I to Safety-II: A White Paper. The Resilient Health Care Net.* Published Simultaneously by the University of Southern Denmark, Australia, University of Florida, USA, and Macquarie University; 2015. https://www.england.nhs.uk/signuptosafety/wp-content/uploads/sites/16/2015/10/safety-1-safety-2-whte-papr.pdf
459. Hollnagel E. *FRAM, the Functional Resonance Analysis Method : Modelling Complex Socio-Technical Systems*. Burlington, VT: Ashgate; 2012.
460. Grote G. Promoting safety by increasing uncertainty – implications for risk management. *Safety Science*. 2015;71:71–79.
461. Grote G. Safety management in different high-risk domains – all the same? vol. 50.
462. Grote G. Uncertainty management at the core of system design. *Ann Rev Control*. 2004;28:267–274.
463. Gilbert C, Amalberti R, Laroche H, Paries J. Errors and failures: towards a new safety paradigm. *J Risk Research*. 2007;10(7):959–975.
464. Power M. *The Risk Management of Everything: Rethinking the Politics of Uncertainty*. London: Demos; 2004.
465. Grote G. *Management of Uncertainty. Theory and Application in the Design of Systems and Organizations*. London: Springer; 2009.
466. Grote G, Kolbe M, Waller MJ. The dual nature of adaptive coordination in teams: balancing demands for flexibility and stability. *Organiz Psychol Rev*. 2018;8(2-3):125–148.
467. Pedersen KZ. Standardisation or resilience? The paradox of stability and change in patient safety. *Soc Hlth Illness*. 2016;38(7):1180–1193.
468. Vaughan D. *The Challenger Launch Decision: Risky Technology, Culture, and Deviance at NASA*. University of Chicago Press; 1997.
469. Cook R, Rasmussen JJ. "Going solid": a model of system dynamics and consequences for patient safety. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2005;14:130–134.
470. Hines S, Luna K, Lofthus J, Marquardt M, Stelmokas D. *Becoming a High Reliability Organization: Operational Advice for Hospital Leaders*. Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). AHRQ Publication No. 08-0022; 2008.
471. *Free from Harm: Accelerating Patient Safety Improvement Fifteen Years after To Err Is Human*. National Patient Safety Foundation; 2015. http://www.ihi.org/resources/Pages/Publications/Free-from-Harm-Accelerating-Patient-Safety-Improvement.aspx
472. Slawomirski L, Auraaen A, Klazinga NS. *The Economics of Patient Safety*; 2017.
473. Frankel AS, Leonard MW, Denham CR. Fair and just culture, team behavior, and leadership engagement: the tools to achieve high reliability. *Hlth Serv Res*. 2006;41(4 Pt 2):1690–1709.
474. Schein EH. *Organizational Culture and Leadership: A Dynamic View*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass; 1985:1992.
475. The Joint Commission. The essential role of leadership in developing a safety culture. *Sentinel Event Alert*. 2017;(57):1–8.
476. The Joint Commission. Sentinel Event Alert. Behaviors that undermine a culture of safety. *The Joint Commission*. 2008;(Issue 40). https://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/18/SEA_40.PDF
477. Sammer CE, Lykens K, Singh KP, Mains DA, Lackan NA. What is patient safety culture? A review of the literature. *Journal of nursing scholarship : an official publication of Sigma Theta Tau International Honor Society of Nursing*. 2010;42(2):156–165.
478. Xuanyue M, Yanli N, Hao C, Pengli J, Mingming Z. Literature review regarding patient safety culture. *J Evidence-Based Med*. 2013;6(1):43–49.
479. Singer SJ, Tucker AL. The evolving literature on safety walkrounds: emerging themes and practical messages. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2014;23(10):789–800.
480. Singer SJ, Rivard PE, Hayes JE, Shokeen P, Gaba D, Rosen A. Improving patient care through leadership engagement with frontline staff: a Department of Veterans Affairs case study. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2013;39(8):349–360.
481. Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI). Develop a Culture of Safety. http://www.ihi.org/resources/Pages/Changes/DevelopaCultureofSafety.aspx. Accessed May 15, 2018.
482. American College of Healthcare Executives, Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI), National Patient Safety Foundation (NPSF) Lucian Leape Institute. *Leading a Culture of Safety: A Blueprint for Success. Work of an Expert Roundtable Convened by the American College of Healthcare Executives and the IHI/NPSF Lucian Leape Institute*. 2017. https://www.npsf.org/page/cultureofsafety.
483. The Joint Commission. *Strategies for Creating, Sustaining, and Improving a Culture of Safety in Health Care. Real-World Solutions to Challenging Safety Culture Implementation Issues*. 2nd ed. ; 2017.
484. Weaver SJ, Lubomksi LH, Wilson RF, Pfoh ER, Martinez KA, Dy SM. Promoting a culture of safety as a patient safety strategy: a systematic review. *Ann Int Med*. 2013;158(5 0 2):369–374.
485. Khatri N, Brown GD, Hicks LL. From a blame culture to a just culture in health care. *Health Care Manage Rev*. 2009;34(4):312–322.
486. Shorrock S, Leonhardt J, Licu T, Peters C. *Systems Thinking for Safety: Ten Principles. A White Paper. Moving towards Safety-II*. European Organisation for the Safety of Air Navigation (EUROCONTROL); 2014.
487. Vincent CA. Analysis of clinical incidents: a window on the system not a search for root causes. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(4):242–243.
488. Pronovost PJ, Thompson DA, Holzmueller CG, et al. Toward learning from patient safety reporting systems. *J Crit Care*. 2006;21(4):305–315.
489. Vincent C. Understanding and responding to adverse events. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348(11):1051–1056.
490. Pronovost P, Martinez E, Rodriguez-Paz JM. Removing "orange wires": surfacing and hopefully learning from mistakes. *Int Care Med*. 2006;32(10):1467–1469.
491. Singer S, Lin S, Falwell A, Gaba D, Baker L. Relationship of safety climate and safety performance in hospitals. *Health Serv Res*. 2009;44(2 Pt 1):399–421.
492. Singer S, Meterko M, Baker L, Gaba D, Falwell A, Rosen A. Workforce perceptions of hospital safety culture: development and validation of the patient safety climate in healthcare organizations survey. *Health Serv Res*. 2007;42(5):1999–2021.
493. Benzer JK, Meterko M, Singer SJ. The patient safety climate in healthcare organizations (PSCHO) survey: short-form development. *J Eval Clin Pract*. 2017;23(4):853–859.
494. Gaba DM, Singer SJ, Rosen AK. Safety culture: is the "unit" the right "unit of analysis"? *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(1):314–316.
495. Gaba DM, Singer SJ, Sinaiko AD, Bowen JD, Ciavarelli AP. Differences in safety climate between hospital personnel and naval aviators. *Hum Factors*. 2003;45(2):173–185.
496. Flin R. Measuring safety culture in healthcare: a case for accurate diagnosis. *Safety Sci*. 2007;45:653–667.
497. Mardon RE, Khanna K, Sorra J, Dyer N, Famolaro T. Exploring relationships between hospital patient safety culture and adverse events. *J Patient Saf*. 2010;6(4):226–232.
498. Hogden A, Ellis LA, Churruca K, Bierbaum M. *Safety Culture Assessment in Health Care: A review of the literature on safety culture assessment modes*. Sydney, Australia: Australian Commission on Quality and Safety in Health Care; 2017.
499. Carroll JS, Rudolph JW. Design of high reliability organizations in health care. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2006;15(suppl 1):i4–9.
500. Lipshitz R, Popper M, Friedman VJ. A multifacet model of organizational learning. *J Appl Behav Sci*. 2002;38(1):78–98.
501. Donaldson L. When will health care pass the orange-wire test? *Lancet*. 2004;364(9445):1567–1568.
502. World Health Organization. *World Alliance for Patient Safety : WHO Draft Guidelines for Adverse Event Reporting and Learning Systems : from Information to Action*. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2005.
503. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). Patient Safety Primer: Detection of Safety Hazards. Last updated August 2018. https://psnet.ahrq.gov/primers/primer/24. Accessed October 24, 2018.
504. Leape L. Reporting of adverse events. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347(20):1633–1638.
505. Vincent C. Incident reporting and patient safety. *BMJ*. 2007;334(51).
506. *Key findings and recommendations on reporting and learning systems for patient safety incidents across Europe. Report of the reporting and learning subgroup of the European commission (PSQCWG)*. European Commission; 2014. https://ec.europa.eu/health/home_en

507. *Patient Safety Reporting Systems: A Literature Review of International Practice*. Health Quality & Safety Commission New Zealand; 2016. https://www.hqsc.govt.nz/assets/Reportable-Events/Publications/Patient-safety-reporting-systems-literature-review-Nov-2016.pdf
508. Health Quality Ontario. Patient safety learning systems: a systematic review and qualitative synthesis. *Ontario Health Technology Assessment Series*. 2017;17(3):1–23.
509. Manser T, Imhof M, Lessing C, Briner M. A cross-national comparison of incident reporting systems implemented in German and Swiss hospitals. *International journal for quality in health care : journal of the International Society for Quality in Health Care*. 2017;29(3):349–359.
510. Dodds A, Kodate N. Understanding institutional conversion: the case of the national reporting and learning system. *J Pub Policy*. 2012;32(2):117–139.
511. Leistikow I, Mulder S, Vesseur J, Robben P. Learning from incidents in healthcare: the journey, not the arrival, matters. *BMJ Quality & Safety*. 2017;26(3):252–256.
512. Macrae C. The problem with incident reporting. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2016;25(2):71–75.
513. Howell AM, Burns EM, Hull L, Mayer E, Sevdalis N, Darzi A. International recommendations for national patient safety incident reporting systems: an expert Delphi consensus-building process. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2017;26(2):150–163.
514. Mitchell I, Schuster A, Smith K, Pronovost P, Wu A. Patient safety incident reporting: a qualitative study of thoughts and perceptions of experts 15 years after 'To Err is Human'. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2016;25(2):92–99.
515. Stavropoulou C, Doherty C, Tosey P. How effective are incident-reporting systems for improving patient safety? A Systematic Literature Review. 2015;93.
516. Murff HJ, Patel VL, Hripcsak G, Bates DW. Detecting adverse events for patient safety research: a review of current methodologies. *J Biomed Inform*. 2003;36(1-2):131–143.
517. Billings C. Incident reporting systems in medicine and experience with the aviation reporting system. In: Cook RI, Woods DD, Miller CA, eds. *A Tale of Two Stories: Contrasting Views of Patient Safety*. North Adams, MA: US National Patient Safety Foundation; 1998:52–61.
518. Levtzion-Korach O, Alcalai H, Orav EJ, et al. Evaluation of the contributions of an electronic web-based reporting system: enabling action. *J Patient Saf*. 2009;5(1):9–15.
519. Nuckols TK, Bell DS, Liu H, Paddock SM, Hilborne LH. Rates and types of events reported to established incident reporting systems in two US hospitals. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2007;16(3):164–168.
520. Thomas EJ, Studdert DM, Burstin HR, et al. Incidence and types of adverse events and negligent care in Utah and Colorado. *Med care*. 2000;38(3):261–271.
521. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). Reporting Patient Safety Events. Last Updated August 2018. Accessed October 24, 2018.
522. *Incident Reporting: More Attention to the Safety Action Feedback Loop. Please*. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ); 2011. https://psnet.ahrq.gov/perspectives/perspective/108/Incident-Reporting-More-Attention-to-the-Safety-Action-Feedback-Loop-Please
523. Leape LL. Reporting of adverse events. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347(20):1633–1638.
524. Merry AF. Safety in anaesthesia: reporting incidents and learning from them. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63(4):337–339.
525. Mahajan RP. Critical incident reporting and learning. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2010;105(1):69–75.
526. Larizgoitia I, Bouesseau M-C, Kelley E. WHO efforts to promote reporting of adverse events and global learning. *J Pub Hlth Res*. 2013;2(3):e29-e29.
527. Rall M, Dieckmann P. Characteristics of effective incident reporting systems: to enhance patient safety, to learn from problems, errors and good solutions. In: Bannister J, ed. *Euroanesthesia 2007*. Munich, Germany: European Society of Anaesthesiology; 2007:179–186.
528. Firth-Cozens J, Redfern N, Moss F. Confronting errors in patient care: the experiences of doctors and nurses. *Clinical Risk*. 2004;10(5):184–190.
529. Evans SM, Berry JG, Smith BJ, et al. Attitudes and barriers to incident reporting: a collaborative hospital study. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2006;15(1):39–43.
530. Kelly N, Blake S, Plunkett A. Learning from excellence in healthcare: a new approach to incident reporting. *Arch Dis Childhood*. 2016;101(9):788–791.
531. Rall M, Oberfrank S, OpHey F, Gaubatz A. Die Sichere Anonymisierung und De-Identifikation von CIRS-Fallberichten. Ein Beitrag zur Erhöhung der Sicherheit von Mitarbeitern und Organisationen beim Betrieb von Critical Incident Reporting Systemen (CIRS). [Article in German]; 2014.
532. Dieckmann P, Rall M, Ostergaard D. The role of patient simulation and incident reporting in the development and evaluation of medical devices and the training of their users. *Work (Reading, Mass)*. 2009;33(2):135–143.
533. Anderson JE, Kodate N. Learning from patient safety incidents in incident review meetings: organisational factors and indicators of analytic process effectiveness. *Safety Sci*. 2015;80.
534. Benn J, Koutantji M, Wallace L, et al. Feedback from incident reporting: information and action to improve patient safety. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2009;18(1):11–21.
535. Pham JC, Girard T, Pronovost PJ. What to do with healthcare incident reporting systems. *J Public Health Res*. 2013;2(3):e27.
536. Macrae C, Vincent C. Learning from failure: the need for independent safety investigation in healthcare. *J Royal Soc Med*. 2014;107(11):439–443.
537. Cook DA, Brydges R, Hamstra SJ, et al. Comparative effectiveness of technology-enhanced simulation versus other instructional methods: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Simulation in healthcare : journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2012;7(5):308–320.
538. Riley W, Davis S, Miller K, Hansen H, Sainfort F, Sweet R. Didactic and simulation nontechnical skills team training to improve perinatal patient outcomes in a community hospital. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2011;37(8):357–364.
539. Salas E, Almeida SA, Salisbury M, et al. What are the critical success factors for team training in health care? *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2009;35(8):398–405.
540. Salas E, Burke CS, Cannon-Bowers JA. What we know about designing and delivering team training: tips and guidelines. In: Kraiger K, ed. *Creating, Implementing, and Managing Effective Training and Development: State-of-the-Art Lessons for Practice*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass; 2013:234–262.
541. Gaba DM. What does simulation add to teamwork training? *Perspectives on Safety*. 2006. https://psnet.ahrq.gov/perspectives/perspective/20
542. Pratt SD, Sachs BP. *Team Training: Classroom Training vs. High-Fidelity Simulation*; 2006. https://psnet.ahrq.gov/perspectives/perspective/21/team-training-classroom-training-vs-high-fidelity-simulation
543. Umoren RA, Poore JA, Sweigart L, et al. TeamSTEPPS virtual teams: interactive virtual team training and practice for health professional learners. *Creative Nursing*. 2017;23(3):184–191.
544. Tschannen D. Development of a virtual crew resource management training program to improve communication. *J Cont Ed Nrsg*. 2017;48(11):525–532.
545. Carney BT, West P, Neily JB, Mills PD, Bagian JP. Improving perceptions of teamwork climate with the Veterans Health Administration medical team training program. *American journal of medical quality : the official journal of the American College of Medical Quality*. 2011;26(6):480–484.
546. VA National Center for Patient Safety. Clinical Team Training. https://www.patientsafety.va.gov/professionals/training/team.asp
547. van de Ven J, van Baaren GJ, Fransen AF, van Runnard Heimel PJ, Mol BW, Oei SG. Cost-effectiveness of simulation-based team training in obstetric emergencies (TOSTI study). *Euro J Ob Gyn Rep Biol*. 2017;216:130–137.
548. Rudolph JW, Simon R, Raemer DB, Eppich WJ. Debriefing as formative assessment: closing performance gaps in medical education. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2008;15(11):1010–1016.
549. Buist M, Middleton S. What went wrong with the quality and safety agenda? An essay by Michael Buist and Sarah Middleton. *BMJ*. 2013;347:f5800.
550. Landrigan CP, Parry GJ, Bones CB, Hackbarth AD, Goldmann DA, Sharek PJ. Temporal trends in rates of patient harm resulting from medical care. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(22):2124–2134.
551. Gaba DM. Anaesthesiology as a model for patient safety in health care. *BMJ*. 2000;320(7237):785–788.
552. Jha AK, Prasopa-Plaizier N, Larizgoitia I, Bates DW. Patient safety research: an overview of the global evidence. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2010;19(1):42–47.
553. European Society of Anaesthesiology (ESA). *Helsinki Declaration of Patient Safety*; 2010. https://www.esahq.org/patient-safety/patient-safety/helsinki-declaration/signed-helsinki-declaration/

554. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). *National Scorecard on Rates of Hospital-Acquired Conditions 2010 to 2015: Interim Data From National Efforts To Make Health Care Safer*. Rockville, MD; 2016.
555. National Patient Safety Foundation's Lucian Leape Institute. *Safety Is Personal: Partnering with Patients and Families for the Safest Care*; 2014.
556. Canadian Patient Safety Institute (CPSI). Engaging Patients in Patient Safety. A Canadian Guide. http://www.patientsafetyinstitute.ca/en/toolsResources/Patient-Engagement-in-Patient-Safety-Guide/Documents/Engaging%20patients%20as%20partners.pdf
557. Australian Commission on Safety and Quality in Health Care. *National Safety and Quali-ty Health Service Standard 2: Partnering with Consumers. Embedding partnerships in healthcare*. 2014. https://www.safetyandquality.gov.au/wp-content/uploads/2014/11/Partnering-with-Consumers-Embedding-partnerships-in-health-care.pdf
558. Vincent C, Amalberti R. Safety in healthcare is a moving target. *BMJ Quality & Safety*. 2015.
559. Rall M, Gaba DM. Human performance and patient safety. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone; 2005:3021–3072.
560. Roberts KH. Some characteristics of one type of high reliability organization. *Organization Science*. 1990;1(2):160–176.
561. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). Culture of Safety. last updated June 2017 https://psnet.ahrq.gov/primers/primer/5/safety-culture
562. King H, Battles J, Baker D, et al. TeamSTEPPS™: team strategies and tools to enhance performance and patient safety. In: Henriksen K, Battles JB, Keyes M, et al., eds. *Advances in Patient Safety: New Directions and Alternative Approaches*. vol. 3. Rockville (MD): Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (US); 2008. Performance and Tools.
563. Rall M, Glavin R, Flin R. The '10-seconds-for-10-minutes principle' - why things go wrong and stopping them getting worse. *Bulletin of The Royal College of Anaesthetists - Special human factors issue*. 2008;(51):2614–2616.

7

Patient Simulation

STEPHANIE MARIA OBERFRANK, MARCUS RALL, PETER DIECKMANN,
MICHAELA KOLBE, and DAVID M. GABA

KEY POINTS

- Led by the discipline of anesthesiology, simulators and the use of simulation have become integral parts of many health care domains for various uses including training of novices, advanced residents, and experienced professionals; research about and with simulation; system probing; and performance assessment. Patient simulation can be part of an organization's patient safety strategy and supports building a culture of safety (see Chapter 6).
- A wide variety of simulators are now available. The pace of technical development and applications is fast. Nevertheless, technology alone does not teach. The use of simulators needs to be consistent with the target population and the learning objectives. Different simulators may be best suited for different purposes; for some scenarios and teaching goals a standardized patient (actor) may be more effective.
- The most widely used simulators in health care are computer screen-based simulators (microsimulators), and part-task trainers mocking parts of a human body or mannequin-based simulators most often used for resuscitation training and complex team training. Complex simulation team training with mannequin-based simulators are often referred to as "high-fidelity" or "full scale" patient simulation training.
- The development of mobile and less expensive simulator models allowed for substantial expansion of simulation training to areas and locales where this training could not previously be afforded or conducted (so-called in situ simulation training).
- When used for education and training, the simulator device alone does not teach. It is merely a tool to accomplish learning objectives that are difficult to achieve during real patient care. The design of programs, curricula, scenarios, and debriefings, as well as the ability of simulation instructors to create appropriate learning opportunities are the crucial factors that determine whether the simulation tool is effective in achieving the relevant goals.
- The greatest obstacles to providing effective and relevant (high-fidelity) patient simulation training are (1) obtaining access to the learner population for the requisite time, and (2) providing appropriately trained and skilled simulation instructors to prepare, conduct, debrief, and evaluate the simulation sessions.
- The most important component of high-fidelity patient simulation training is the self-reflective (often video-assisted) debriefing session after the clinical scenario. The quality of debriefing strongly depends on the training, skills, and experience of the instructors. Thus, special training for developing patient simulation instructors is needed that goes beyond the instructor qualifications for ordinary clinical teaching. Most methods of debriefing emphasize open-ended questions and inquiry to trigger self-reflection and insightful analysis, leading to deep learning by the learner group.
- Simulation scenarios need clear learning objectives for both clinical and nonclinical skills (human factors, see Chapter 6). Scenarios need to take into account the target population, learning goals, relevance, and in-scenario guidance. Maximum realism is not always needed. For high-fidelity patient simulation team training, the *anesthesia crisis resource management* course model (ACRM, often referred to as CRM, developed by one of the authors [David Gaba], see Chapter 6) is a popular approach worldwide for human factor–based simulation training in anesthesiology and health care. The 15 CRM key points help individuals and teams to be aware of human factor–related pitfalls, apply different safety strategies, and enhance human performance and patient safety.
- In terms of research, simulation has proven valuable to study relevant simulation aspects such as debriefing methods, scenario design and conduct, and program development. It also was found to be valuable to study human performance during anesthesia, including human factors and failure modes in care.
- In regard to system probing, simulation can be used successfully for the testing of an organization's structures and processes, such as the early detection of system failure modes and the preparedness for major events, the development of new treatment concepts (e.g., checklist design and use, telemedicine), and the support of bioengineering system development (e.g., device beta-testing, educating the manufacturers' workforce).
- With a view to assessment and evaluation of performance, a variety of assessment tools and behavioral markers have evolved that offer a new window on performance. Nevertheless, when simulation is used to assess and evaluate human performance, the unique constraints of simulation (which is never like the real thing) need to be taken into consideration.

What This Chapter Is About: An Overview

> *"Simulation training in all its forms will be a vital part of building a safer health care system" [p. 55].*[1]
>
> SIR LIAM DONALDSON, CMO ANNUAL REPORT (2008)

In concert with other modalities, simulation can improve patient safety by informing personnel about best practices, guiding established clinical practice, and strengthening human performance. Unfortunately, simulation in health care is still not used as widely and systematically as needed, compared to its use in other high-risk/high-reliability industries. From the authors' point of view, anesthesia professionals, anesthesia departments, and health care organizations need to strive to embrace the use of simulation for the many purposes mentioned in this chapter. Simulation, in combination with human factors training (CRM, see Chapter 6), has the potential to substantially improve the quality and safety of health care.

Anesthesiology has pioneered the field of simulation in health care. The rather new, mannequin-based patient simulators have been in regular use in anesthesiology since the early 1990s. Over the last two decades, there have been many technologic advances in simulation and a wide variety of applications of simulation in anesthesiology have been developed in the domains of education and training, research, system and equipment probing, and assessment. Considerable collective experience has already been achieved with simulation devices, sites, pedagogy, and assessment rubrics. What was once an arcane and small niche activity has expanded enormously. Simulation can be thought of like playing a musical instrument: almost everybody can somehow coax a tone out of it, but to play it well and use it optimally can only come about after considerable practice.

This chapter aims to provide the reader—whether a simulation participant or a novice or experienced instructor—with a solid and nuanced understanding of many aspects of patient simulation in anesthesiology and other parts of health care.

Modern simulation with advanced teaching concepts and the integration of human factors training (CRM) is much more than traditional basic life support and advanced cardiovascular life support ("megacode") training. Modern simulation team training is academically demanding, personally stimulating, and involves many disciplines and lines of thinking. As a simulation instructor, you are operating at the core of our profession!

READERS WILL LEARN

- … about the varying uses of simulation in anesthesiology and health care, mainly focusing on the topics of training and education, research, system equipment probing, and assessment and evaluation.
- … to distinguish and classify different types of patient simulators (e.g., part-task trainers, simulators for low- and high-fidelity simulation, patient actors/standardized patients, hybrid simulation) and to understand their strengths and weaknesses.
- … about the possibilities and limitations of different simulation-based training approaches regarding (1) simulation site (e.g., dedicated simulation center, "in situ" simulation, mobile simulation); (2) simulation time (e.g., scheduled events vs. events on-call); (3) simulation participants (e.g., single discipline, multidiscipline, interprofessional).
- … about educational and psychological factors that enable or inhibit learning in patient simulation, such as scenario design and conduct, the elements or phases of a simulation training, and debriefing techniques.
- … about different multifaceted tasks of a simulation instructor and the need to acquire special skills to teach more complex and nuanced single-discipline or interprofessional activities.
- … about the ecological validity of simulation and what is known about its benefits, costs, and cost-effectiveness.
- … about the use of simulation for assessment of clinician performance and some of the issues and limitations thereof.

To cover those aspects, the authors have tried to balance retaining classic references, where the intellectual content has only changed slightly over the years, with newer ones that reflect either changes in thinking or evidence, or newer reviews and syntheses of knowledge and experience. Since simulation has become a key tool in addressing issues of patient safety and human factors in anesthesiology there is some degree of complementarity between this chapter and Chapter 6.

In this chapter, the authors use "anesthesia professional" to refer to any anesthesia clinician taking care of a patient, whether a physician, certified registered nurse anesthetist (CRNA), or anesthesia assistant (or to similar positions in other countries).

WHAT THIS CHAPTER IS NOT ABOUT

This chapter mainly addresses simulation in anesthesiology and presents the overall picture as seen by anesthesia professionals, intensivists, or others. Simulation devices and activities outside of the scope of perioperative management, that are strictly about psychomotor aspects of invasive procedures or surgery, and part-task screen-based simulators (e.g., Gasman) are at most only touched on briefly.

The chapter describes simulation in anesthesiology generically and does not address separately simulation for specific subspecialties. There is a sizable body of international experience with simulation in pediatric settings now that may be of further interest to some readers.[2-9]

Organizational aspects of simulation training and the topic of organizational implementation and sustainability of simulation programs are covered in Chapter 6, where simulation programs are covered from an organization's view among other organizational improvements to enhance patient and system safety. For more information on this topic, the reader is referred to the back part of Chapter 6 (Box 6.13 in Chapter 6 gives an overview).

Simulation in Anesthesia: Why Is It Important?

See one—do one—teach one? Read one—do one—teach one? Many decades ago anesthesiology trainees might have been "given a long leash" (inadequately supervised) and asked to gain experience by "sink or swim," often with a clinical population of indigent patients. Using actual patients in this way as if they are expendable "simulators" is unethical, and the presumed learning experiences were extremely uneven. In the last few decades unacceptable practices have been eliminated, but it increasingly begs the question of how can clinicians at all levels of experience feel the difficulties of patient care, including managing very difficult situations, without putting patients at undue risk? How does someone go from a total novice to a fully competent independent anesthesia professional? And of increasing importance, how can clinicians—during both initial and recurrent training—learn and hone skills of dynamic decision making, situation awareness, leadership, communication, and teamwork?

Anesthesiology is a "hands-on" discipline. It is not likely for medical students and residents to learn simply by "looking," "time passing," or by "osmosis." The application of (rare) technical skills, the correct use of medical knowledge and algorithms, as well as the reliable utilization of anesthesia nontechnical skills (see Chapter 6)—such as teamwork, communication, and leadership behavior—need to be learned and then trained repeatedly. At the same time, experience is no substitute for excellence (see Chapter 6). This is especially true for nonroutine events, such as emergencies or rare complications. Not only trainees but also experienced clinicians require continuous education and training of their clinical and nontechnical skills in order to stay current and avoid bad habits or the normalization of deviance (see Chapter 6).

Health care, with anesthesiology as the pioneering discipline, borrowed and adapted alternative educational approaches to teach knowledge and gain procedural experience from years of successful service in other industries that faced similar problems. These approaches focused on "simulation." Simulation is a technique well known in the military, aviation, space flight, and nuclear power industries. Simulation refers to the artificial replication of sufficient elements of a real-world domain to achieve a stated goal. The goals include for example education and training of technical and nontechnical skills, system probing, testing of equipment and supplies, and assessment as well as evaluation of students and personnel. These different topics are covered in this chapter, even though there is a focus on simulation as a training and education tool.

In 2000, the National Academy of Medicine (then the Institute of Medicine) released a report, *"To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System,"* that suggested the use of simulation training in health care in order to reduce preventable errors.[10] The American College of Critical Care Medicine recommended the use of simulation to improve training in critical care.[11] With anesthesiologists being the pioneers for simulation-based training in health care, simulation in anesthesia already has a long tradition. At the same time, its comprehensive and profound implementation has come a long and rocky way over the last decades and, despite many benefits, still needs further implementation and continuous evaluation. Major recognition of simulation in anesthesia by the clinical world is highlighted by the fact that it is now a highly utilized training course for the practice improvement component of Maintenance of Certification in Anesthesiology (MOCA) in the United States.[12] In Australia and New Zealand, it is an integral part of anesthetic training.[13,14] In their reviews, Lorello and colleagues, [15] LeBlanc and colleagues,[16] and Higham and Baxendale[17] give an overview of simulation-based training in anesthesia. In many parts of the world, including industrial countries, the use of simulation is way behind the United States or Australia.

A fundamental part of the future vision for simulation is that clinical personnel, teams, and systems will undergo periodic and systematic simulation activities across their entire career using various modalities of simulation and for diverse purposes of education, training, performance assessment, refinement in practice, and system probing. This vision is inspired in part by the systems in place in various high-reliability industries, especially commercial aviation and nuclear power (see Chapter 6). Needless to say, using simulation as part of the process of revolutionizing health care is more complex than merely attempting to stick simulation training on top of the current system. Moreover, beyond training, simulation may provide indirect ways to improve safety, including facilitating recruitment and retention of skilled personnel, acting as a lever for culture change, and improving quality and risk management activities.

Application of Simulation in Anesthesia and Health Care

Simulation techniques can be applied across nearly all health care domains.[18] A few books are devoted solely to the topic of simulation and its use in and outside of anesthesiology.[19-24]

In the upcoming section, an overview of the main objectives of simulation in health care and anesthesiology are presented in the following sequence: (1) education and training of technical and nontechnical skills, (2) system probing, (3) testing of equipment and supplies, (4) assessment/evaluation, (5) research, and (6) further purposes.

USE OF PATIENT SIMULATION FOR TRAINING AND EDUCATION

With respect to the first objective—education and training—anesthesiology remains a driving force in the use of simulation in health care,[25] although simulation has spread to nearly every discipline and domain. As used in this chapter, *education* emphasizes conceptual knowledge, basic skills, and an introduction to nontechnical skills and work practices. *Training* emphasizes preparing individuals to perform actual tasks and work of the job.

Disciplines successfully applying simulation for training besides anesthesia[15,26] are, for example, emergency medicine and emergency field responders,[27-29] trauma care,[30,31] neonatology[32-34] and pediatric anaesthesia,[2,3,5,35] labor and delivery,[36-38] surgery,[39,40] radiation oncology,[41] intensive care,[42,43] and infectious disease.[44,45] Simulation serves almost all resuscitation trainings, which have advanced over the years.[46] Fig. 7.1 gives several impressions of simulation training.

Nearly every anesthesia residency program in the United States offers some cogent simulation training experiences,

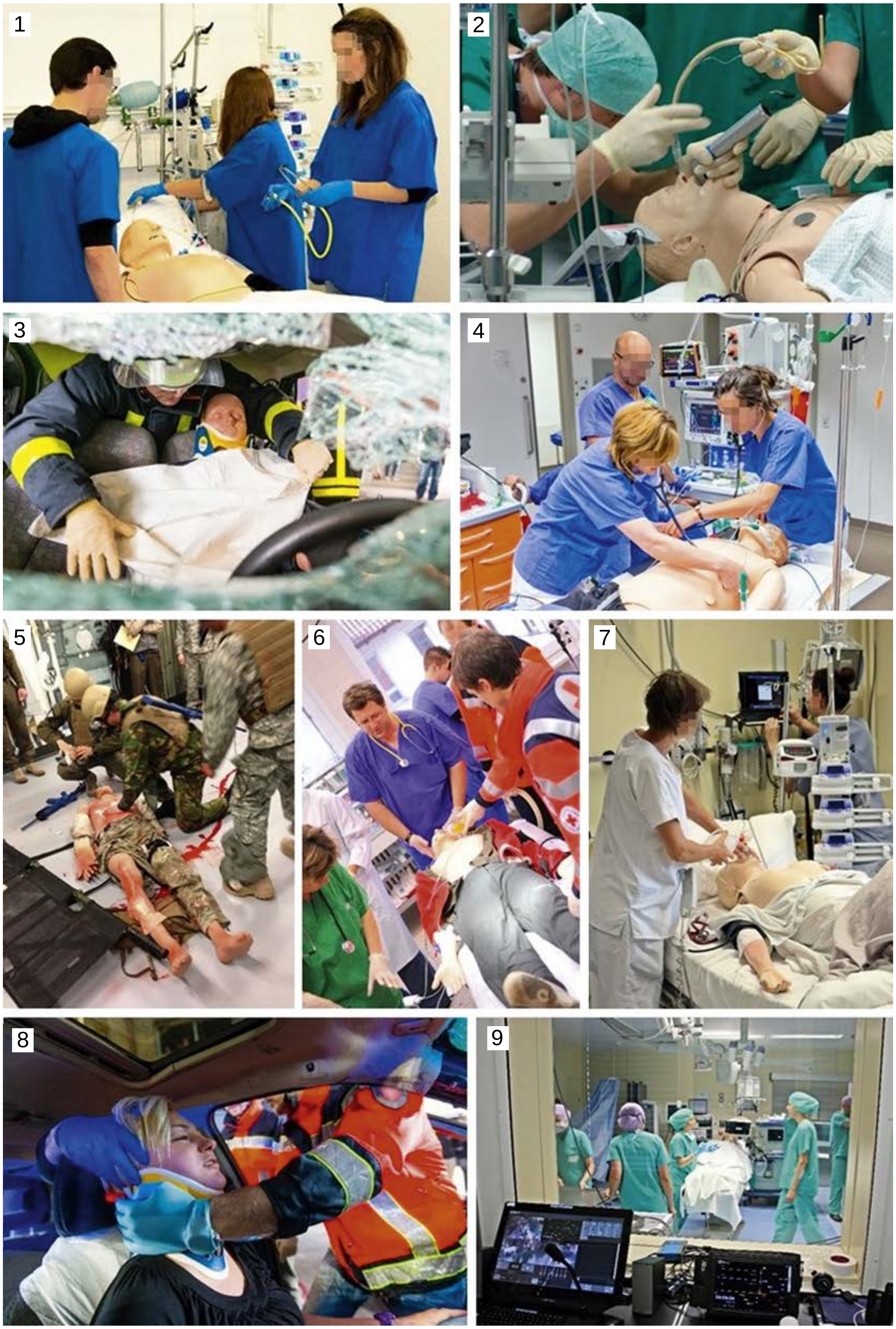


Fig. 7.1 Different impressions of simulation training sessions in different health care environments. Photos from left to right: (1) In situ simulation training on a ward. (2) In situ simulation team training in the anesthesia environment. (3) Simulation exercise during the annual simulation congress INSiM, Frankfurt Main, Germany. The photo shows a simulated patient that is rescued out of a crashed car. (4) Full-scale in situ simulation team training in the emergency department. (5) Military simulation training with Tactical Combat Casualty Training and Care under Fire conditions, *InPASS, Photo with permission by M. Rall.* (6) Simulation Training at the Simulation Center TüPASS in Tübingen, Germany. Shown is a handover moment where a traumatized patient is handed over from the ambulance team to the trauma team. *Photo with permission by director M. Rall 2010.* (7) Simulation training on the intermediate care unit. (8) Simulation exercise with a standardized patient that is rescued out of a crashed car. *Photo provided by M. Rall.* (9) In situ simulation training in an operating room (OR) showing the beginning of a full team obstetric scenario for emergency cesarean. The photo is taken through an OR window from the temporarily established simulation control room outside the OR. (*Photo provided by M. Rall.*)

although the scope, frequency, and target content vary. Other disciplines and other countries may not have adequate simulation training coverage during residency, as evidenced by a study by Hayes and colleagues.[47]

The military and the U.S. Department of Homeland Security also have been heavy users of simulation in health care; simulation has been applied to the initial training of new field medics and to the recurrent training of experienced clinicians and clinical teams.[48] In 2013, a first instructor course for the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) Special Operations Forces (SOF) was held at NATO headquarters in Brussels to bring together medical experts from the United States SOF, the NATO SOF, and some civilian instructor experts (including authors Rall and later Oberfrank).

Simulation is relevant from the earliest level of vocational or professional education (students) and during apprenticeship training (interns and residents), and it is increasingly used for experienced personnel undergoing periodic refresher training. Simulation can be applied regularly to practicing clinicians (as individuals, teams, or organizations; the latter for example for disaster drills, or for preparing to care for patients with Ebola virus disease[49]) regardless of their seniority, thus providing an integrated accumulation of experiences that should have long-term synergism. Thus, it is applicable to health care providers with a range of experience, including experts,[50] novices, advanced residents,[25] medical, nursing, other health care students,[51-57] and even children.[58-61] Simulation *rehearsals* are now being explored as adjuncts to actual clinical practice; for example, surgeons or an entire operative team can rehearse an unusually complex operation in advance by using a simulation of the specific patient.[62,63]

Many simulation centers offer continuing medical education (CME) and training for experienced practitioners, and many aspects of simulation training for residents can be expanded for this purpose. Several studies have shown that experienced anesthesiologists have deficiencies in the management of critical patient situations and make severe errors comparable to those of anesthesia residents.[64-71] Because crisis situations are rare during routine clinical work, these results are not startling. In addition, experience in terms of years on the job and hierarchy probably do not correspond to expertise and excellence. Crisis management training with patient simulation should be started early in education and training and applied on a recurring basis during practice.

Concerning education of health care professionals about patient safety, patient simulation can be a tool that contributes to changing the culture in an organization bottom-up to create a culture of safety. First, it allows hands-on training of junior and senior clinicians in practices that enact the desired culture of safety based on the principle of high reliability organizations (see Chapter 6).[72] Simulation can be a rallying point about culture change and patient safety that can bring together experienced clinicians from various disciplines and domains (who may be captured because the simulations are clinically challenging and show the need of change in direct relation to patient treatment), along with health care administrators, executives, managers,[73,74] risk managers,[75] and experts on human factors, organizational behavior, or institutional change. For these groups, simulation can convey the complexities of clinical work, and it can be used to exercise and probe the organizational practices of clinical institutions at multiple levels (see section on system probing). Various curricula and recommendations for curricula development for simulation training exist.[76-81]

USE OF PATIENT SIMULATION FOR SYSTEM PROBING AND PROTOCOL TESTING

In regard to the second objective, simulations that are conducted in actual patient treatment locations (referred to as "in situ" simulation, ISS) are powerful tools for testing (system probing) and evaluation of organizational practices (protocol testing).[75]

In a study comparing ISS to center-based simulations, ISS was related to more insights about processes in the organization and challenges with equipment.[82] Another study used simulation as a supplement to a Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA, see Chapter 6). In order to enhance system safety, FMEA is a risk management tool that proactively tries to enhance organizational learning by experts describing and identifying possible errors and their effects. Whereas adding simulation to that process did not result in more failure modes described, the process resulted in a richer description of how they would actually unfold in practice.[83]

Another way to probe the system is to identify active and latent failures during ISS of the treatment of patients. In Reason's famous error trajectory model to describe incident causation (known as the Swiss cheese model, see Chapter 6), incidents are seen as a combination of active (simplified: human) and latent (simplified: system) failures that interact to cause bad outcomes. Based on this model, a study[84] of 46 sessions of ISS training for handling emergencies was conducted with over 800 participants, with the goal to recognize and remedy active and latent failures in order to suggest where to invest resources. Of the total of 965 breaches, nearly 50% were classified as latent conditions, and the rest was classified as active failures. In another study, simulation was used to discover latent safety threats with the help of unannounced in situ simulation of critical patients in a pediatric emergency department.[85] Similarly, the "hemorrhage project" at Stanford assessed and trained the treatment protocol of life-threatening hemorrhage during several system-probing events using unannounced, simulation-based mock events, and successfully identified areas of improvement after probing.[75]

In 2016 simulation was used to demonstrate gaps in an organization's response system that could expose staff to Ebola once the emergency disaster response had been activated.[86] The simulation center had 12 hours to prepare simulations to evaluate hospital preparedness should a patient screen positive for Ebola exposure. Further simulation cycles were used during the next weeks to identify additional gaps and to evaluate possible solutions.

Furthermore, iterative simulation-based testing and redesign was shown to be of assistance when developing cognitive aids or protocols for all kind of crises, and to eliminate design failure. For instance, McIntosh and colleagues[87] used this approach to develop and test a new cognitive aid for the management of severe local anesthetic toxicity. Utilization of formative usability testing and simulation-based user-centered design resulted in a visually very different cognitive aid, reinforcing the importance of designing aids in the context in which they are to be used.

Simulation has a role in designing new hospitals and departments—whether in terms of the physical layouts or in terms of work processes. Simulation can help in evaluating design ideas. Simulation can be used to facilitate moving into a new location, for example moving with staff and patients into a new intensive care unit (ICU) or a new hospital.[88]

Simulation is increasingly appreciated as a tool for risk management. Driver, Lighthall, and Gaba[75] argue that from a risk management standpoint, simulation has a number of potential ways in which it might prevent claims or mitigate losses. They called simulation "*a data source about clinical performance*" [p. 356]. De Maria[25] and associates demonstrated that a simulation-based approach can identify system-wide practitioner gaps in anesthesiologists and create meaningful improvement plans.

USE OF PATIENT SIMULATION FOR TESTING EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES

With respect to the third objective—testing of equipment and supplies—patient simulation is being used in collaboration with biomedical industries. For example, some simulation centers offer training to executives, engineers, and sales representatives of equipment manufacturers. The simulator allows them to gain some understanding of the clinician's task demands during patient care situations (including those of unusual stress) in which their company's devices are useful.

Simulation has been used for research on human factor issues in the development of new monitoring and therapeutic devices. The simulator provides a unique test bed and demonstration modality for pre-procurement evaluation of the usability of medical devices from different manufacturers. In two of our affiliated hospitals (VA Palo Alto [DG] and Tübingen, Germany [MR]), simulation enabled us to conduct evaluations of prototype monitoring systems that were not yet approved for clinical use and could not be evaluated in a pre-procurement clinical trial.

Other industrial uses include training personnel in the use of novel pharmaceuticals. Simulators have been featured in a multifaceted approach to launch the opioid remifentanil in the United States and have been used to teach clinicians in the safe use of drugs, such as for example desflurane. Besides offering important educational benefits, industrial activities are an important source of income for simulation centers to help defray the costs of training students and residents.

USE OF PATIENT SIMULATION FOR PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT

With respect to the fourth objective, simulations have taken a central role in the evaluation and assessment of the performance and competence of health care students, residents, practicing physicians, and teams—for low-stakes or formative testing (education and training), to a lesser degree to-date for summative testing (certification, recertification, etc.), and for research on clinician decision-making or on care processes. Assessment of performance for both clinical and nonclinical skills can be made in a variety of health care settings.[64,69,89-98]

Anesthesiology has taken a leading role in the development of simulation-based assessment.[99] In a review study in 2012, Boulet and Murray[99] summarized simulation-based assessment for education specifically in anesthesia. In a more recent systematic review in 2016, Ryall and colleagues[100] summarize the use of simulation as an assessment tool of technical skills across health professional education. They concluded that simulation is an effective assessment tool, but pointed out that the effectiveness as a stand-alone assessment tool requires further research.

Assessment with simulation held and still holds several challenges for research and education. Those include: (1) to determine aspects of performance to be measured, (2) to create reliable and valid scores and measurement tools, and (3) to find measures for both clinical and nonclinical performance. Furthermore, simulation itself poses several unique challenges and pitfalls that need to be taken into account, as discussed later in this chapter. Several assessment measures and scoring systems exist.[99-102]

Organizationally, in the United States, the Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education made the use of simulation a required component for anesthesiology residency programs. Recognizing its benefits not only for education and teaching of novices and residents, but also for the continuous education of certified practicing anesthesiologists, more recently simulation-based training in managing challenging situations leading to practice improvement was adopted as a favored component of the American Board of Anesthesiology's (ABA's) MOCA program. Whereas simulation as a tool for the formative assessment of performance during training of students and residents is already widely used in anesthesiology, it has still penetrated only modestly for the formative assessment (and less so for summative assessment) of practicing anesthesiologists,[103] raising new questions as described in a study by Weinger and colleagues.[64]

Because performance assessment is closely related to human performance, many results of simulation studies with this focus were already discussed in Chapter 6, and the reader is referred there as well.

USE OF PATIENT SIMULATION FOR RESEARCH

In regard to the fifth objective—research—simulation-based research falls into two categories: (a) research *about* simulation—testing or improving the techniques, technologies, and didactics of simulation; and (b) research *that uses* simulation as a tool to study other things, such as human performance and clinical cognition (see Chapter 6), or clinical care processes.[104] Box 7.1 provides a sampling of these types of questions.

Regarding research about simulation, some examples would include the design of debriefing approaches such as Debriefing with Good Judgement,[105-107] Debriefing-Diamant,[108] PEARLS,[109] TeamGAINS,[110] and others[111-114]; methods for designing simulation scenarios such as PARTS[115]; the efficacy of using videos in debriefings[116-120]; the creation and maintenance of an inviting learning atmosphere[121]; the effective design of specific training interventions such as for resuscitation,[46,122,123] airway

BOX 7.1 Exemplary Research Issues That Can Be Addressed by Using Simulation

Cognitive Science of Dynamic Decision Making (see Chapter 6)

- What is the interaction of precompiled procedural knowledge (Type I thinking) versus deep medical knowledge and abstract reasoning (Type II thinking)?
- How does supervisory control of observation relate to vigilance, data overload, and visual scanning patterns?
- What is the information content and utility of watching the surgical field?
- How are optimal action planning and scheduling implemented?
- How does reevaluation fail and result in fixation errors?

Human-Machine Interactions

- What is the distraction penalty for false alarms?
- Do integrated monitors and displays have an advantage over multiple stand-alone devices and displays?
- How easy to use are the controls and displays of existing anesthesia equipment in standard case situations and in crisis situations?

Teaching Anesthesia in the Operating Room (see Chapter 6)

- How much teaching can be accomplished in the operating room without sacrificing the anesthesia crew's vigilance?
- How well can faculty members detect and categorize the performance of anesthesia trainees?
- What teaching styles are best integrated with case management in the operating room?

Issues of Non-Technical Skills/Teamwork on Anesthesiologist Performance

- How does an anesthesia crew interact during case and crisis management?
- How is workload distributed among individuals?
- How do crew members communicate with each other, and how do they communicate with other members of the operating room team?

Effects of Performance-Shaping Factors on Anesthesiologist Performance

- How do sleep deprivation, fatigue, aging, or the carryover effects of over-the-counter medications, coffee, or alcohol affect the performance of anesthesiologists?
- Can smart alarm systems or artificial intelligence provide correct and clinically meaningful decision support in the operating room or intensive care unit?

Development of New Devices and Applications: Research Regarding Techniques of Simulation

- How well can simulations re-create perioperative clinical settings? Can they provoke the same actions as used in real clinical care (ecologic validity of simulators)?
- How much does debriefing add to learning from simulation? Are specific techniques of debriefing, or combinations thereof, of greater applicability or utility, overall or for particular situations?
- How do various aspects of simulation scenarios influence aspects of perceived reality, and how do they influence transfer of training into the real world?
- Does simulation training lead to better clinical practice and improved clinical outcomes?

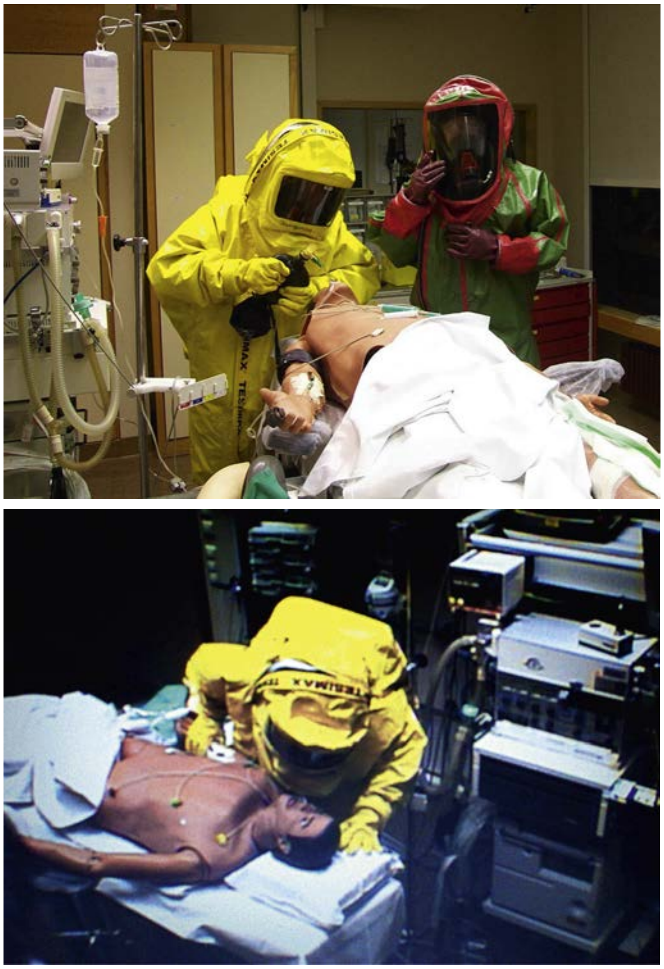


Fig. 7.2 Realistic patient simulation as a test bed for studying the performance of medical rescue teams in full chemical protection gear. Teams wore normal uniforms or full protection suits while performing basic resuscitation actions (e.g., placement of intravenous lines, drawing up drugs, intubation). With full protective gear, communication within the team and with the patient (while still conscious) is difficult. (*Photograph taken by M. Rall at the Center for Patient Safety and Simulation, Tübingen, Germany.*)

management,[124,125] and avoidance of catheter-related infections[126]; and testing of specific training interventions such as for facilitating speaking up,[50,127-129] briefings, [130] and feedback.[131]

Patient simulation is now used sometimes to address the medical management of chemical, biologic, or nuclear threats from accidents, weapons of mass destruction, or terrorism. One group in Germany, used simulation to test the constraints of treating patients in full chemical protection gear to optimize the strategies of the German Ministry of Internal Affairs for dealing with terror attacks or chemical plant disasters (Fig. 7.2). Several investigators have performed multidisciplinary studies with combined simulation modalities (script-based simulators, model-based mannequin simulators, and simulated acted patients) to teach the management of victims of an attack with weapons of mass destruction and terrorism.[132,133] The demand for such training is substantial in nations engaged in active military conflicts or with an ongoing need to prepare for war or terrorist attacks.

Regarding (b) simulation as a research tool, it offers some unique features, and it can be thought of as a complementary window on the clinical world relative to other modalities. It can be applied, for example, when complex phenomena such as medical team processes are studied. Examples are investigations of how teams adapt from routine to non-routine situations and how this adaptation is related to performance,[134-140] communication processes such as information processing,[141] talking to the room[142] and speaking up,[50,129,143-146] problem-solving and decision-making,[142,147-149] and coordination requirements during resuscitation.[139,140,150-154] Important milestones for simulation-based research of both types was the creation by the Society for Simulation in Healthcare (SSH) in 2007 of its flagship peer-reviewed journal, *Simulation in Healthcare* followed in later years by other peer-reviewed journals (e.g., *Advances in Simulation, BMJ Simulation & Technology Enhanced Learning, Clinical Simulation in Nursing*). In addition, for research that is linked tightly to a specific clinical domain, the traditional medical specialty journals have become more welcoming to articles about simulation or that use simulation as an experimental technique.

Cooperation between simulation directors or instructors and psychologists, human factors engineers, or educators has proved useful in research and training. Such collaborations have helped delineate the theoretical foundations of simulation-based experiential learning, improve the understanding of debriefing, and research on work psychology and human performance in health care.[155-161] Many institutions have integrated psychologists or educators, or both, into their simulation center staff.

OTHER USES OF PATIENT SIMULATION

Traditionally, simulation-based training is focused on health care professionals as the recipients. In recent years, simulation was opened up for new types of recipients. These studies are not conducted within anesthesia, but demonstrate innovative ways of thinking about simulation that might be adaptable in some form to anesthesia-oriented simulations. A study showed that the use of "standardized clinicians" to train patients to be more competent in their discharge conversations was feasible.[162] Patients interacted with role players in the role of the discharging clinician, practicing what to say and ask, as well as how to manage the medication they were supposed to take. The group around Kneebone involves patients in the design of simulations, opening simulation activities to them.[163] They use simulation in a demonstration mode that intends, for example, to give citizens an improved insight into what it is like to be in the hospital[164,165] or what care in the clinical context should feel like.[166] The aim is to diversify access to simulation beyond health care professionals.

Other unique applications of simulation have surfaced. Some centers use simulators for conducting outreach programs with high school or college students interested in health care. Patient simulators have been used to help produce educational videos on various patient safety issues. Simulation has sometimes been used to familiarize legislators or regulators with the realities and complexities of dynamic patient care.

Simulation has been used as adjuncts in medicolegal proceedings.[167] While current patient simulators cannot predict the exact physiologic behavior of a specific patient, simulations can be used to illustrate typical perioperative situations and the role of different monitors and therapeutic actions and to provide context for the patient management questions of the litigation.

The use of simulation training for strategic or operational coordination and decision making in health care logistics has been described.[168]

History, Development, and Types of Simulators and Simulation

The following section gives a short, non-exhaustive overview about the history and the development of the main simulators in health care and anesthesia. For a more in-depth examination of the topic, the reader is referred to further literature. Particularly the mannequin-based simulators that are in wide use have been well covered in several review articles[169-171] and a whole book chapter by Rosen written in 2013 is dedicated to the topic in detail.[172] Another comprehensive textbook on the history of simulation in health care tracing it back 1500 years was published by Owen.[173]

Simulation probably is as old as mankind. Simulation has probably been a part of human activity since prehistoric times. Rehearsal for hunting activities and warfare was most likely an occasion for simulating the behavior of prey or enemy warriors. In medieval times soldiers learned the art of swordsmanship on dummy soldiers. Hundreds of years ago, models were used to help teach anatomy and physiology, and simulators were used to train surgical procedures and to help midwives and obstetricians handle complications of childbirth. Italy was the major source of simulators early in the 18th century, but in the 19th century, dominance in clinical simulation moved to France, Britain, and then Germany.[174] In modern times, preparation for warfare has been an equally powerful spur to the development of simulation technologies, especially for aviation, navy and armored vehicles. These technologies have been adopted by their civilian counterparts, but they have attained their most extensive use in commercial aviation. The aircraft simulator achieved its modern form in the late 1960s, but it has been continuously refined.

Mannequin-based simulators (MBSs). In 1969, the first electromechanical mannequin-based simulator in modern health care—Sim One—was produced by an aerospace company working with an educator and an anesthesiologist at the University of Southern California.[175] It consisted of a mannequin comprising an intubatable airway and upper torso and arms, and in many respects was years ahead of its time. It was originally used as an aid for students or residents learning to intubate, as well as to induce anesthesia but the project died out in the early 1970s. In the following years, several other mannequin-based patient simulators were developed and introduced in the middle to late 1980s. Noteworthy among others is Harvey, a cardiology mannequin simulator released in 1976, which is able to simulate the arterial pulse, blood pressure, jugular venous wave, precordial movements, and heart sounds in normal and diseased states.[176] In 1986, a team at Stanford, headed at first by Gaba and DeAnda,[177] developed a full-scale simulator called the Comprehensive Anesthesia Simulation Environment (CASE); they used it initially to study the decision-making processes of anesthesia professionals during critical events,[68,178,179] but they were also interested in its use for training. Over a few years, with their recognition of the parallels with Crew/Crisis/Cockpit Resource Management (CRM) in aviation this team developed their flagship simulation training course Anesthesia Crisis Resource Management (ACRM, see Chapter 6).[180,181] Newer commercially-available mannequin-based patient simulators have been in use in anesthesiology since about 1995, and considerable collective experience with the devices already has been achieved. Currently, full-size mannequin-based simulation devices are used in most simulation centers (available now, for example, from the manufacturers Laerdal, Gaumard, CAE Healthcare, and others). Such devices allow the simulation of rapidly changing physiology and can support a variety of hands-on interventions (e.g., airway management, vascular cannulation, drug administration, electric countershock, or pacing). Some devices allow the system automatically to recognize injection of specific medications or therapeutic maneuvers, such as cardiac massage, and then—with or without instructor input—to respond in an appropriate manner.[182] Even though highly developed, mannequins still miss important features. Box 7.2 shows desirable features of future MBS systems.

PATIENT SIMULATION ACTION BOX

From a patient safety and teaching point of view, it is a mistake to focus too much on complicated and nice-to-have features that the latest device might offer. Those features and add-ons will not necessarily improve simulations or benefit participants. High-fidelity simulation may be useful, but that will not necessarily require a simulation device with complex features. It is critical pedagogically, and economically, to match the simulation device to the target population and objectives of the simulation activity.

(Computer) Screen-based simulators (microsimulators). Beginning in the mid-1980s, several screen-based, also called screen-only simulators (microsimulators), were developed by anesthesiologists. These included (1) screen-based part-task trainers that simulated isolated aspects of anesthesia, such as the uptake and distribution of anesthetic gases in the body given different physiologic and physical chemistry situations (e.g., the well-known Gasman program[183]); and (2) screen-based overall-task trainers that represented nearly all aspects of the patient and clinical environment. Originally, the patient was represented by drawings or animations, but increasingly in these systems the representation of the patient is by photographs or videos. Vital signs appearing on virtual monitors may mimic real clinical devices. Actions are selected typically using a graphic user interface, pointing and clicking on menus and buttons, and using sliders and numeric entry boxes to allow control of most kinds of interventions that clinicians use on a regular basis.

BOX 7.2 Desirable Features of Future Mannequin-Based Simulator Systems

- Ability to interface to or to mimic advanced brain monitoring such as: *AEP,* Auditory evoked potential; *BIS,* bispectral index; *EEG,* electroencephalographic; *PSI,* patient state index.
- Advanced skin signs such as: change in skin color to cyanotic or pale, improved diaphoresis, change in skin temperature (e.g., as a result of shock or fever), rash, hives, or generalized edema
- Regurgitation, vomiting, airway bleeding or secretions
- Physical coughing (currently only sounds are simulated)
- Realistic convulsions
- Purposeful movements of extremities
- Improved or possible support for spinal, epidural, or other regional anesthesia procedures
- Improved EEG signals (e.g., for BIS, AEP, PSI)
- Improved intracranial pressure
- Support for physical central venous and arterial cannulation
- Improved fetal and maternal cardiotocogram

Please note: *This list contains features that are not currently incorporated. Some features may be under development and could be available after publication of this book. In addition, some features are currently available as third-party or homemade add-ons.*

Part-task trainers and virtual procedural simulators. In the 21st century, advancements in engineering and computer science have stimulated a new era of simulator technology, including:

- Part-task trainers in the form of anatomic mock-up devices that are made from synthetic material to represent human body parts, such as models that allow training of central line placement, epidural catheter insertion, cricothyroidotomy, or chest drainage. Over several decades, tissue-based simulation—representing some sort of part-task trainer—has become more common, with trainees no longer learning procedural skills using animal models because of cost and issues of animal rights.
- Virtual simulators for surgical and procedural skills (i.e., hardware and software that provide haptic feedback for performing realistic laparoscopic cholecystectomy, bronchoscopy, colonoscopy, echocardiography, and endovascular procedures).[182] In these systems, the synthetic (virtual) environment exists solely in the computer. The real procedure is performed by using a video display that can be recreated by the simulator. The person simulating the procedure interacts with the video display through the eyes (without or with head-mounted glasses) and the ears, and usually the hands, if the simulator features special instruments, instrumented gloves, or sensors. For anesthesia, for example, there exist VR simulators to train the conduct of fiberoptic intubation[184,185] and regional anesthesia.[186,187] Two systematic reviews are available for more in-depth information on the general use of simulation teaching regional anesthesia.[188,189]

Virtual reality and augmented reality (usually via head-mounted displays). Both immersive *virtual reality* (VR), which fully integrates the human user into the computer's world, and *augmented reality* (AR), which adds computer-generated imagery onto or next to the real-world view, typically use head-mounted displays to either replace ordinary vision or to augment it. Both approaches have been described in the literature, often in prototype or research-only settings. This chapter will discuss only VR and not AR. The authors (DG in particular) have been evaluating commercially available systems for head-mounted display VR. For health care they seem to fall into two categories: (1) *visualization* of objects or spaces—typically for anatomical structures, or for architectural environments, and (2) *physically interactive clinical environments*—meaning the clinicians themselves can move with the space and interact directly with each other and the virtually presented patient, essentially the VR equivalent of physical mannequin-based simulation. Visualization applications are much more common and are direct applications of consumer VR hardware and software (e.g., visualizing the human heart in all its detail inside and out instead of, say, the Taj Mahal). Fully interactive VR makes use of commercial head-mounted displays and other gear but is more complex to create the clinical space, patient, and equipment while providing for multiple physical participants to interact with seamless head and body movements.

Both types of VR are still in quite early stages of practical implementation in health care and how these approaches can best be used in health care remains to be seen, but the tide is now turning away from arcane research or "vaporware" to an era of rapidly improving practical devices and applications. Although Gaba has previously written that VR would soon (by 2020-2025) completely replace all physical simulation, this now seems unlikely in that time frame; in fact, it is likely that VR will join the spectrum of simulation modalities each of which has a set of unique advantages and disadvantages relative to the others.

Virtual Environment/Virtual World. A related type of virtual simulation is the *virtual environment* or *virtual world.* According to Wikipedia, a virtual world is a computer-based simulated environment intended for its users to inhabit and interact through avatars (users' graphic representation of themselves). Such systems typically allow multiple participants to control their own avatars (including speech) simultaneously over a network and to interact verbally and by virtual physical actions within a commonly perceived virtual environment. This technology currently portrays the virtual world as perspective three-dimensional images (or possibly true 3D) on a computer screen with sound. Virtual worlds are most commonly used for computer games. In a medical virtual world, the patient may be an automated avatar controlled by the computer, or the patient may be an avatar inhabited by a human participant. Kleinert and colleagues published a review of such systems in 2015 and concluded that the development and validation of such simulators will need to be the subject of further research.[190]

Standardized patients. Standardized patients (SPs; in some countries referred to as "simulated patients") are actors/role players who are trained to represent a patient's condition (e.g., symptoms or social situation) and may be trained to score a participant's performance and to provide informative feedback. Over the last three decades, students increasingly learn skills in medical history taking and physical examinations using SPs.[170] Overviews of the use and implementation of SPs in anesthesia education are available.[191-193] SP-based simulations are increasingly being used for issues such as disclosure of bad news and other difficult conversation as well as in pain medicine. [194]

Hybrid simulation. Hybrid simulation means combining different types of simulation modalities during a simulation scenario. It can be used in different ways and serves several purposes: (1) *Pairing simulation devices in parallel.* This way, a training atmosphere can be established, in which different professions can have credible clinical work for their role. For example, when training the management of complications in the OR with surgeons and anesthesiologists together, it is helpful if both professions have clear functions during the scenario. For example, Kjellin et al. performed a multidisciplinary OR team training, where training was performed in a mock-up OR equipped with a mannequin-based patient simulator and a laparoscopic simulator.[195] Another option is to integrate manufactured life-like surgical models with the mannequin, as used by Weller et al. for multidisciplinary OR team training.[14] (2) *Pairing simulation devices in sequence.* This way, the best characteristics of each simulation modality can be used in a scenario and create a simulation that is more than the sum of the parts. For example, a scenario can start with a standardized patient/role player presenting in a patient bed or gurney; the simulation can be transferred to a mannequin at a critical point, such as when invasive activities are needed (e.g., intubation or CPR) or when giving birth. Cantrell and Deloney offer suggestions for integrating SPs into high-fidelity simulation scenarios.[192]

Simulation Fidelity and Classification of Simulators

Simulation is becoming more commonly used for education and training purposes as well as for continuing professional development. But people often have very different perceptions of the definition of the term simulation. This highlights the need for definitions of simulation modalities, simulation fidelity, a classification of the relevant technologies and features, and also a brief overview about the methods of teaching.

Simulation fidelity and simulator capability. In the simulation literature the term fidelity—which means how closely something replicates reality—is often used to refer to specific devices or products. In contrast, the authors believe strongly that this is a misnomer and that the concept of fidelity is a property of the simulation *activity* and not primarily of the device(s) or

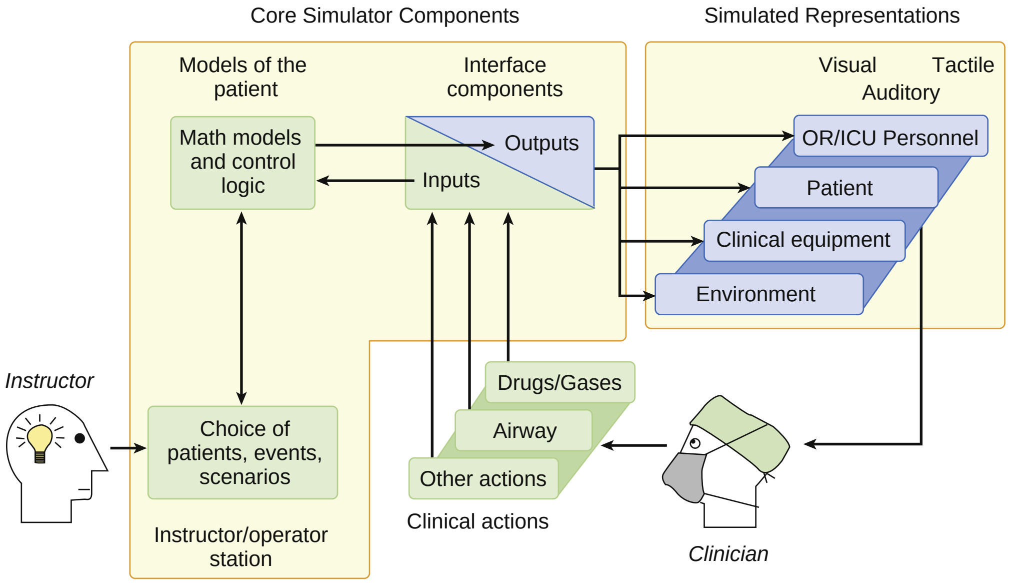


Fig. 7.3 Schematic diagram of the generic architecture of patient simulator systems. The simulator generates a representation of the patient and the work environment with appropriate interface hardware, display technologies, or both. The representation is perceived by the anesthesia professional, whose actions are input to the simulator through physical actions or input devices. The behavior of the simulated scenario is manipulated by the instructor or operator through a workstation that allows selection of different patients, abnormal events, and other features of the simulated patient. The control may be manual, script based, or model based with manual adaptation to reach optimal learning outcomes. *ICU*, Intensive care unit; *OR*, operating room. (*Diagram by D.M. Gaba.*)

products used. That is, fidelity is determined by the number of aspects that are replicated by the simulation (not only physical ones) and the applicable representation of each aspect relative to that of the real world (see subchapter on simulation realism). The fidelity required of a simulation depends on the stated goals and participant population. Some goals can be achieved with minimal and low fidelity, whereas others require very high fidelity.

Classification of simulators. For some purposes it is useful to compare the levels or specifics of the particular technological *capabilities* of simulator devices. There is no universally accepted classification scheme for describing simulators in anesthesia.[169] Any classification involves some overlapping and gray areas.[159] Cumin and Merry describe a classification that is based on the three pillars of (1) user interaction, (2) physiology base, and (3) use.[196] Gaba[171] classifies simulation modalities according to the following scheme: verbal simulation (i.e., "what-if" discussions, storytelling, trigger videos, role playing), SPs, part-task trainers (including realistic mock-up devices and tissue simulation), computer patient (i.e., VR simulation, microsimulators/screen-based simulators), and electronic patient.

In this chapter, a *patient simulator* (as opposed to a part-task trainer) is a system that presents an approximation of a whole patient (not only parts of it) and a clinical work environment of immediate relevance to anesthesiologists (e.g., operating room, postanesthesia care unit, ICU, etc.). A patient simulator system contains several components (Fig. 7.3).[159] Some of the currently available features of typical mannequin-based patient simulators are presented in Table 7.1.

In the following, the major education and teaching purposes of main simulator classifications are presented. The presentation is partly based on the idea of the Miller prism (also pyramid or triangle) of clinical competence. For a more elaborate overview the reader is referred to further literature.[75]

Miller's learning pyramid. For each simulation a variety of different learning objectives exist. Largely they can be aligned to the Miller pyramid[197] shown in Fig. 7.4. On the cognition level, simulations can be used to help learners acquire new knowledge and to better understand conceptual relations and dynamics ("knows," "knows how"). For example, physiologic simulations allow students to watch cardiovascular and respiratory functions unfold over time and how they respond to interventions—in essence, bringing textbooks, diagrams, and graphs to life. The next step on the spectrum is acquisition of isolated skills to accompany knowledge ("knows how," later "shows how"). Some skills follow swiftly from conceptual knowledge (e.g., cardiac auscultation) while others involve intricate and complex psychomotor activities (e.g., catheter placement or intubation). Isolated technical and non-technical skills must then be assembled into care processes and existing workflow concepts, creating a new layer of clinical practices ("shows how," later "does"). Over time those assembled skills get integrated into practice and become part of daily performance ("does"). The expert health care professional performs only in the "does" triangle, except when honing old skills or learning new ones. However, there may be a gap between the level of performance that individuals—or teams or work units—"do" compared to the optimal level. Often, clinicians might be able to demonstrate

TABLE 7.1 Functionality of Typical Current Mannequin-Based Simulator Systems*

Clinical Area	Features and Functions	Remarks
Airway	Appropriate pharyngeal and glottic anatomy	The airway often provides an acceptable seal for ETT; the seal for supraglottic airway devices can be variable, but it generally does allow positive pressure ventilation. The facemask seal is variable (plastic on plastic)
	Placement of facemask, ETT, supraglottic airway devices, Combitube	
	Laryngospasm, tongue and airway swelling, cervical immobility, jaw closure, breakable teeth	
	Cricothyrotomy	Cricothyrotomy of modest anatomic realism; the tissue does not feel like real skin and lacks a subcutaneous fat layer; no bleeding occurs; however, the simulation does allow going through the physical steps of inserting a subglottic surgical airway.
	Transtracheal jet ventilation	
	Bronchial anatomy (to the lobar bronchus level)	
Head	Eyelid movement, pupil dilation, and reaction to light or medications	
	Patient voice and sounds such as coughing and vomiting (through built-in loudspeaker)	A live voice is preferred to the prerecorded audio clips because of higher flexibility in scenarios.
	Palpable carotid pulses	
	Cyanosis represented by blue light at the edge of the mouth	The blue light is a cue that the patient is cyanotic, but it does not physically replicate the appearance of cyanosis.
	Tearing, sweating	
Chest	Physiologic and pathophysiologic heart and breath sounds Spontaneous breathing with chest wall movement	Breath and heart sounds through loudspeakers; sounds contain artifacts and mechanical noise. Often sound level depends on position of stethoscope relative to loudspeaker.
	Bronchospasm	
	Adjustable pulmonary compliance	
	Adjustable airway resistance	
	Pneumothorax	
	Needle thoracotomy and chest tube placement	As for cricothyrotomy the anatomy is not very realistic, but the mannequin may allow performance of these procedures.
	Defibrillation, transthoracic pacing ECG	
	Chest compressions	
Extremities	Palpable pulses (dependent on arterial pressure)	
	Cuff blood pressure by auscultation, palpation, or oscillometry	
	Modules for fractures and wound modules	
	Intravenous line placement	
	Thumb twitch in response to peripheral nerve stimulation	
	Arm movement	Most current simulators do not provide even limited robotic movement of limbs.
	Representations of tonic-clonic seizure activity	These representations are cues that lack anatomic reality.
Monitoring (waveforms or numeric readouts)	ECG (including abnormalities in morphology and rhythm) SpO_2	Most simulators provide a simulated virtual vital signs display; some can interface to actual clinical monitors.
	Invasive blood pressure	
	CVP, PAP, PCWP	
	Cardiac output	
	Temperature	
	CO_2 (may be actual CO_2 exhalation)	
	Anesthetic gases (may have actual uptake and distribution of agents)	
	Cardiopulmonary bypass	Some simulators include(d) a virtual cardiopulmonary bypass machine.
Automation and sensors	Chest compressions Ventilation rate and volume	
	Defibrillation and pacing (including energy measurement)	
	Gas analyzer (inspired O_2, anesthetics)	
	Drug recognition (drug identification and amount)	

CO_2, Carbon monoxide; *CVP*, central venous pressure; *ECG*, electrocardiogram; *ETT*, endotracheal tube; *O_2*, oxygen; *PAP*, positive airway pressure; *PCWP*, pulmonary capillary wedge pressure; *SpO_2*, saturation of peripheral oxygen.

*The features listed are each present in some existing simulators, but not all features are present on any single device. Sets of features depend on the device and model.

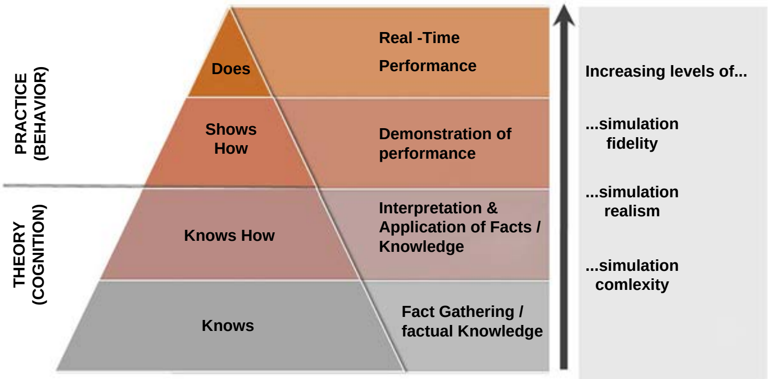


Fig. 7.4 Miller's learning pyramid, also known as Miller's prism of clinical competence.[197] Based on the Miller's learning pyramid, the clinical competence of an anesthesia professional is built on four different competence levels, that can be divided into theory (a person's cognition: "knows"-"knows how") and practice (a person's behavior: "shows how"-"does"). The most relevant clinical competence is the real time performance ("does"). Those four levels need to be considered when addressing learning goals as well as assessment goals of simulation. The figure is modified from a publication of Alinier,[368] indicating that simulation fidelity, simulation realism, and simulation complexity increase with different levels of competency.

"knows how"—"shows how" without necessarily being able to "do" under all relevant circumstances and occasions. Simulation can be a valuable tool to close such gaps.

PATIENT SIMULATION ACTION BOX

In the current health care system, for most invasive procedures, novices' first time performing a task is on a real patient, albeit under supervision, and similarly they will then climb the learning curve by working on real patients. Simulation offers the possibility of having novices practice both before their apprenticeship-like work as well as honing those skills with simulation in parallel with their clinical experiences. This is especially useful because simulation lets them gain experience even with uncommon anatomic or clinical presentations.

Non-technological simulation. Verbal simulations ("what-if" discussions), storytelling, paper and pencil exercises, and experiences with SPs require little or no technology, but can effectively evoke or recreate challenging clinical situations. Similarly, even pieces of fruit or simple dolls can be used for training in some manual tasks. Some education and training on teamwork can be accomplished with role playing or discussion of videos of relevant events.

(Computer) Screen-based simulators (microsimulators) that present the patient on the screen as drawings, photos, or videos, while allowing clinical actions or changes to be chosen can be used to teach basic concepts and technical material, such as the uptake and distribution of inhaled anesthetics or the pharmacokinetics of intravenous drugs. Such programs are inexpensive and easy to use. They allow the presentation of and practice with the concepts and procedures involved in managing normal and abnormal case situations, mostly targeting the parts of the Miller pyramid referred to as "knows" and "knows how," commonly for early learners.

Part-task trainers include artificial (and occasionally animal or human cadaver) models used to teach particular procedural skills, for example intubation, intravenous or intraosseous access, regional anesthesia techniques, thoracic drainage, and use of difficult airway management devices. These target "knows how" and "shows how." Such trainers are most commonly used with novices having little experience with the procedure, or to retrain experienced personnel in the application of the particular tools.

Mannequin-based simulators, representing most or all of a patient, can be used to capture the full complexity of the real task domain, including application of clinical skills and clinical algorithms in combination with human-machine interactions and the complications of working with multiple personnel. They can be used to address "shows how" extending into "does," at least in simulation (see later section on translational research levels). Therefore, MBS are appropriate to teach diagnosis and management of challenging situations as well as non-technical skills and human-factor-based behavior (see Chapter 6). These can be used, with different educational approaches, for all levels of learners. For early learners it is common to use a teacher in the room as an advisor or coach, and to control the simulation by "pause and reflect" allowing the scenario to be stopped and continued or restarted as necessary to maximize their learning.

PATIENT SIMULATION ACTION BOX

Compare to Miller's learning pyramid: If participants are not (yet) familiar with the clinical concepts, procedures, or tasks needed for the mannequin-based training, they should usually be taught those in other ways prior to full-scale simulation.

TABLE 7.2 Site of Simulation and the Related Advantages and Disadvantages

Site of Simulation	Advantages	Disadvantages
Dedicated center *(fixed facility not part of an actual clinical work unit)*	■ Equipment permanently installed, minimized setup time, high level of control and infrastructure ■ Facilitated use of complex audiovisual systems ■ Facilitated conduct of detailed debriefing of simulation involving video review ■ Ease of scheduling ■ No interference with actual clinical work, protects personnel from being pulled into real clinical work ■ Multipurpose use	■ Inability to recreate exact work unit, equipment, supplies of diverse target populations ■ Possible difficulties for clinicians to be off duty to attend training ■ Personnel not readily available for clinical work ■ Eventually remote from site of clinical work ■ Creating and maintaining a dedicated simulation center is expensive ■ Does not probe actual clinical setting
■ Temporary in situ simulation *(Actual work unit; temporary setup and takedown)*	■ Real clinical site ■ Probing/training of personnel in their actual work unit, using real equipment/supplies ■ Ready ability for clinicians to attend in proximity to their work ■ Probes actual clinical site(s) and system(s) ■ Less expensive than operating a dedicated simulation center	■ Vacant clinical space is not always available ■ Difficulties in scheduling—may need site for clinical use ■ Possible interference with actual clinical work; personnel readily drafted to return to clinical work ■ Distractions from onlookers is hard to control ■ Minimal audiovisual system, less audio-video recording capability ■ Great effort of setup and takedown
■ Residential in situ simulation *(Actual work unit; permanent facility)*	■ Same as temporary in situ ■ Minimized setup time ■ Complex audio-video system available ■ Easy scheduling	■ High cost of creating a permanent simulation bed in a clinical work unit ■ Possible interference with actual clinical work; personnel readily drafted to return to clinical work ■ Distractions from onlookers is hard to control
■ Peri-situ/off-site simulation *(simulation in a nonclinical environment such as a conference room, etc.)*	■ Good to schedule ■ Simulation can be used without clinical space or a dedicated simulation center needed ■ Every training is better than no training ■ Many supplies and some equipment can be used as if it was the real thing	■ Lack of ideal realism of bedside or in situ training ■ Minimal audiovisual system, less audio-video recording capability ■ Great effort of setup and takedown ■ No system probing
■ Sequential location simulation/“moving simulation” *(simulated transport of simulator from site to site)*	■ The challenging clinical work of transport itself ■ Replication of natural flow of patients and handoffs between teams	■ Requirement for multiple simulation sites ■ Technologic limitations of portable wireless simulators ■ Great effort of setup and takedown
■ Mobile simulation *(travel of simulation systems and instructor crew to client or neutral sites)*	■ Simulation expertise brought to those who cannot or wish not to invest in it themselves ■ For in situ use, all advantages thereof	■ Possibly high transport costs (driver, fuel, vehicle) ■ For in situ use, all disadvantages thereof plus even greater effort for setup and takedown

PATIENT SIMULATION ACTION BOX

Regardless of the device used, the simulator is only a teaching tool that must be coupled with an effective curriculum for its use.[198] The more complex simulations get (i.e., MBS) and the more a simulator represents a whole patient—to be treated by one or more teams—the more it is important to have qualified instructors with special training.[198]

Sites of Simulation

Some types of simulation such as nontechnological ones and those that use videos or computer programs can be conducted in the privacy of the learners' home or office using their own equipment. Part-task trainers and mannequin-based simulation are often used in a dedicated simulation center, but MBS is increasingly also done “in situ” (in place)—in a real patient room/bed—or “peri-situ” (near the place)—nearby elsewhere in the clinical work unit. For large-scale simulations (e.g., disaster drills[49,86]), the entire organization becomes the site of training, or in the case of a “moving” simulation, different parts of an organization become the site of training. If the simulation training takes place outside the organization, but uses the equipment and personnel of the organization, it is called “mobile” simulation.

Often simulation personnel that work in a dedicated center may either also conduct simulations “in situ,” “peri-situ,” “mobile,” and “moving patients exercises” or may mentor others who do so. The advantages and disadvantages of different simulation sites are discussed in each respective section and summarized in Table 7.2. Sørensen and associates give an overview of the advantages and disadvantages of different simulation sites in a recent publication in 2017.[199]

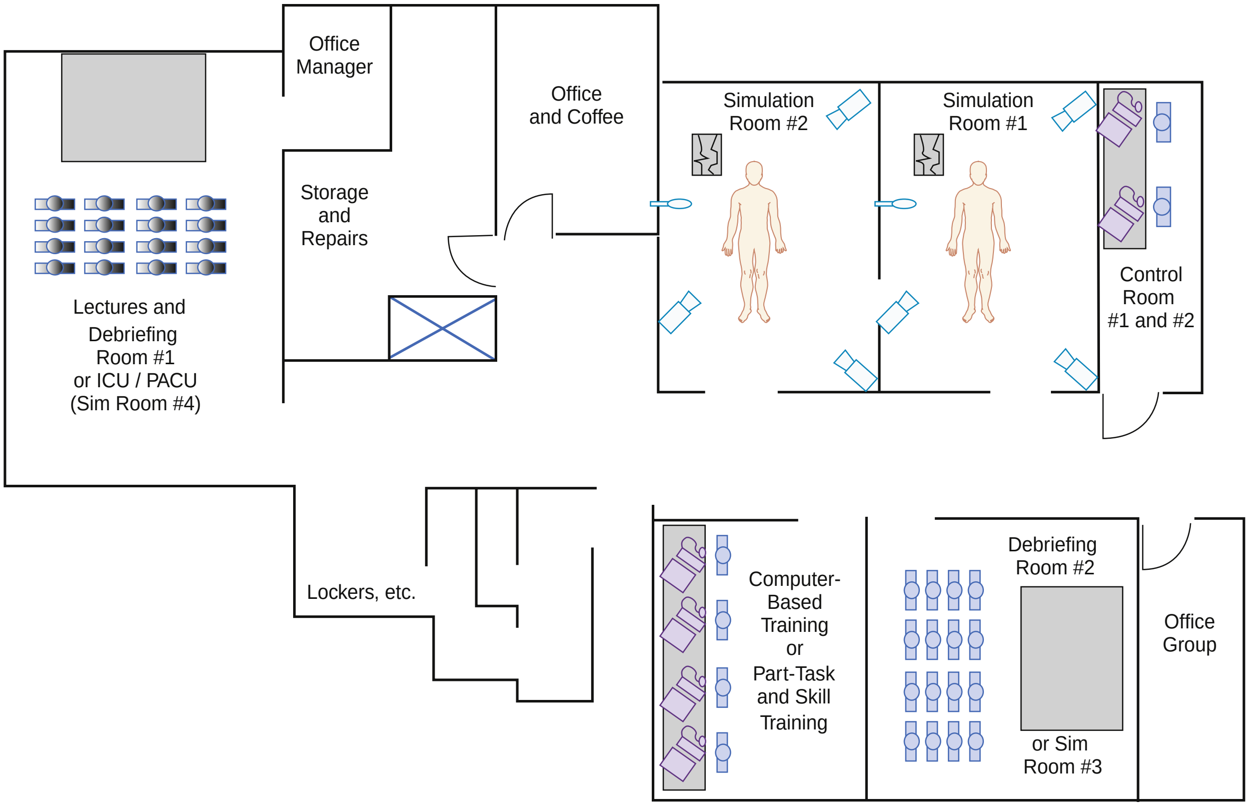


Fig. 7.5 Simulation Center Floor Plan. An intermediate-sized simulation center with four simulation rooms (sim room), a computer-based training room, and several multipurpose rooms, equipped with audio-video patch panels to adjust the room use flexibly to the needs of different training activities (e.g., the large seminar room can be used as a large intensive care unit *[ICU]* or postanesthesia care unit *[PACU]*). (*Figure by M. Rall & E. Stricker, Center for Patient Safety and Simulation [TuPASS], Tübingen, Germany.*)

DEDICATED SIMULATION CENTER

Many institutions have chosen to construct one or more complete simulation centers in which to conduct a variety of education and training sessions. At a few places entire “simulation hospitals” have been created (e.g., Miami, https://simhospital.sonhs.miami.edu/). Some useful websites of simulation centers and other resources are listed at the end of the chapter (Appendix 7.1). The cost structure of a simulation center is a complex issue (see later subchapter). But these programs and their managers in charge have already voted with their feet on the issue of cost versus benefit.

In a dedicated simulation center, one or more simulators may be used, typically in rooms that partially or fully replicate, in a relatively generic fashion, various clinical environments (e.g., operating room, ICU, labor and delivery, emergency department, etc.). Fig. 7.5 and Fig. 7.6 show the floorplan of a medium-sized and a large simulation center. Fig. 7.6 shows the floor plan of the Immersive Learning Center at Stanford University, a pioneering center for health care simulation.

Typically, simulation centers provide a separate control room to allow complex simulations to be presented without an instructor intruding on the simulated case. Fig. 7.7 shows a simulation control room. Many simulation centers have audio-video systems allowing the recording of multiple views during patient simulation. Some centers have computer-based systems to allow annotation of video on the fly and rapid search to the marked portions, but others have found that such mechanisms are not necessary to support debriefing. Dedicated centers typically provide one or more debriefing rooms, often with video replay capability. Ideally a center is located to be easily accessible to a variety of participant populations. Designing, equipping, and overseeing construction of a simulation center may benefit from special knowledge or prior experience.[200,201]

Universities and hospitals or hospital networks are increasingly constructing very large multidisciplinary and multimodal simulation facilities that often still have anesthesiologists in leadership positions. Often, these kind of facilities combine all the types of simulation and immersive learning in one large unit, including actors playing SPs (usually in clinic settings), mannequin-based simulation, part-task and surgical and procedural trainers, wet and dry work (e.g., plaster casting or procedures on food products), and different forms of VR. Sometimes these incorporate facilities for dissection of cadavers or the use of anesthetized animals but often these are in other pre-existing sites. Some institutions have many simulation centers, associated with different learner populations, in different locales, or featuring different kinds of simulation equipment.

Advantages and Disadvantages of Dedicated Simulation Centers. Simulation in a dedicated center facilitates scheduled training and allows the use of complex audiovisual gear and a variety of simulation and clinical equipment, with substantial storage. Devices can be preset, tested, and

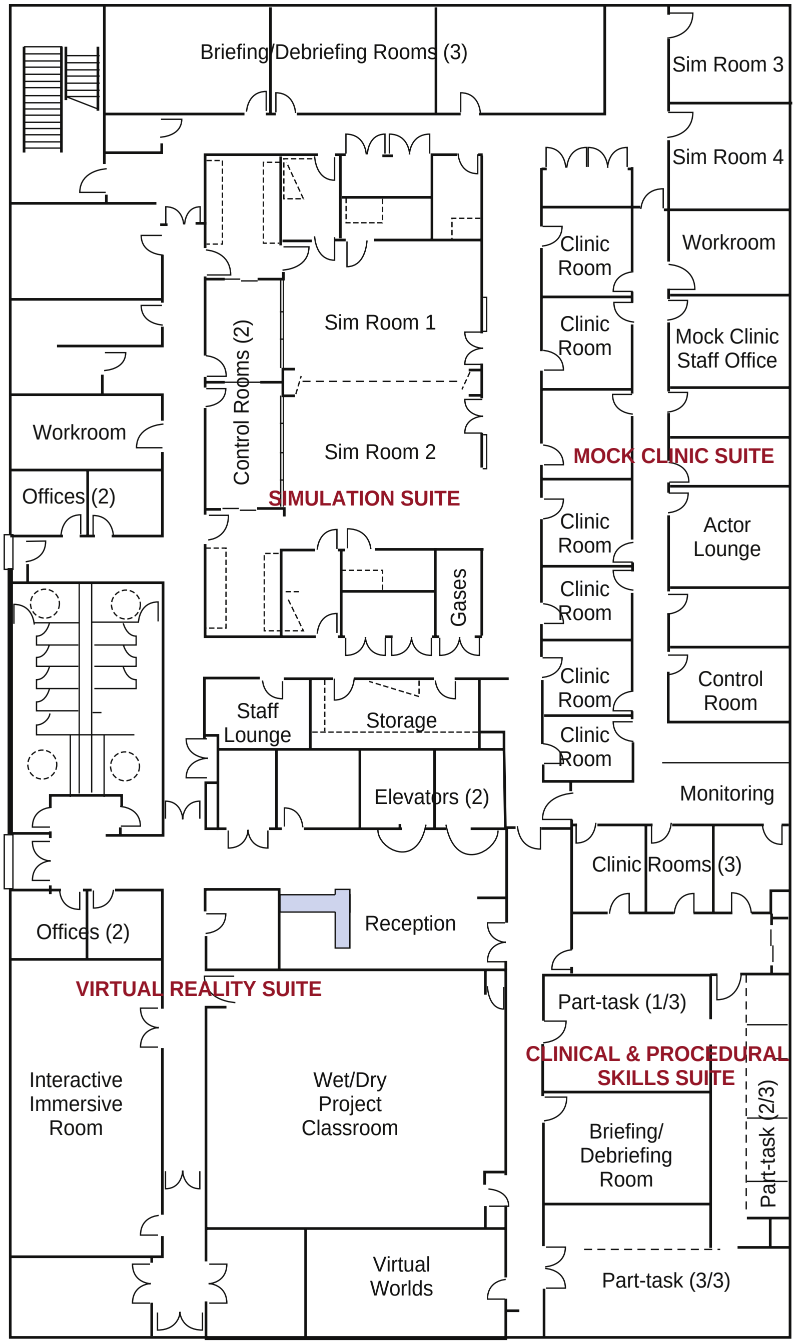

Briefing/Debriefing Rooms (3)
Sim Room 3
Sim Room 4
Workroom
Clinic Room
Clinic Room
Mock Clinic Staff Office
Sim Room 1
Sim Room 2
Control Rooms (2)
Workroom
Offices (2)
MOCK CLINIC SUITE
SIMULATION SUITE
Actor Lounge
Clinic Room
Clinic Room
Gases
Clinic Room
Clinic Room
Control Room
Staff Lounge
Storage
Elevators (2)
Monitoring
Clinic Rooms (3)
Offices (2)
Reception
VIRTUAL REALITY SUITE
Part-task (1/3)
CLINICAL & PROCEDURAL SKILLS SUITE
Interactive Immersive Room
Wet/Dry Project Classroom
Briefing/ Debriefing Room
Part-task (2/3)
Virtual Worlds
Part-task (3/3)

Fig. 7.6 Simulation Center Floor Plan. Floor plan of a large interdisciplinary simulation center for multiple domains (anesthesia, surgery, students) with several multipurpose simulation rooms (sim room) and skills laboratories. (*Figure by D. M. Gaba at the Immersive Learning Center at the Stanford School of Medicine, Stanford, California.*)

ready to go, with briefing and debriefing facilities immediately at hand. In a dedicated center inexpensive discarded, flawed, or outdated clinical equipment and supplies can be safely used. When a center incorporates all modalities of simulation in one place it fosters hybrid techniques, as when an actor playing a standardized patient is combined with a part-task trainer, or when a surgical simulator is combined with a mannequin-based patient simulator.

The main disadvantage of a dedicated center is its cost of construction and outfitting. Moreover, no matter how well equipped it is, it can never replicate the equipment, layout, and clinical processes of any specific clinical workplace. Also, participants know from the very beginning that the activity is a simulation and not the real thing.

TRAINING AND PROBING WHERE CLINICIANS WORK

There are several approaches to conducting simulations in or near actual sites of clinical work. By necessity institutions without a dedicated simulation center must use one of these approaches, but they are useful for many other reasons.

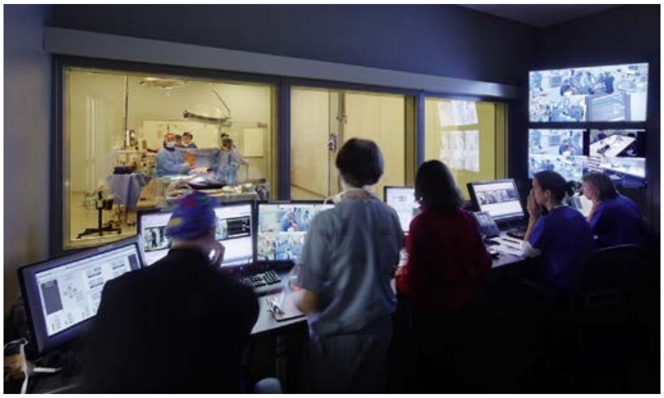


Fig. 7.7 Simulation control room. Through a window wall the simulation control room is separated from the actual simulation room. Several instructors can have a look on the simulation either via the windows, or via one of the several screens that show different views of the simulation room. In front of the instructors the workstation for control of the simulator system itself is placed, including an audio control desk with control of the simulated patient voice, the voice for in-scenario guiding, and several wireless headset channels. (*Photograph provided by D.M. Gab; control room of the Stanford Immersive Learning Center.*)

In Situ Simulation

In situ simulation is conducted in an actual bed/gurney/bay of a real clinical workplace, such as, for example, OR, ICU, trauma room, postanesthesia unit, or ward. ISS training is often used for complex patient simulation scenarios with experienced single-discipline or interprofessional staff. It is typically used for training in order to create high environmental fidelity and/or to probe procedures or the system (see earlier subchapter "Application of Simulation").[4,75,83-87,202] ISS can be a useful training option especially for training in unique workplaces that are difficult to recreate with adequate realism (see later subchapter on simulation realism) in a simulation center or elsewhere, such as a catheterization laboratory, a CT scanner, an ambulance, or an air rescue aircraft (Figs. 7.8 to 7.15).

Rosen and colleagues[203] reviewed the use of in situ simulation in the continuing education for health care professions. They summarized that a positive impact of ISS on learning and organizational performance has been demonstrated in a small number of studies. They also indicated that the evidence surrounding ISS efficacy is still emerging and that existing research is promising.

Most ISS is performed mobile as a temporary setup only for the training sessions. In very few institutions a simulator is permanently installed in a clinical workplace, for example, creating a simulation-specific patient room in the actual ICU.

Advantages and Disadvantages of In Situ Simulation. ISS seems ideal in that it probes and challenges personnel and systems as they actually exist, thus unmasking real issues of patient care. It is available, in principle, to all sites, even those without a dedicated center, and it is conducive to short courses and unannounced mock event drills.

Because it takes place in the actual work unit, it will eliminate travel time to a dedicated center and will put participants at ease. Some substantial disadvantages include potential distractions by ongoing clinical work, lack of privacy, logistics of setup and takedown, reduced availability of AV and simulation equipment, and supply costs (many ISS activities use the unit's real clinical supplies as needed).[204] ISS can be difficult to organize, schedule, and control. The clinical area planned for simulation may not be vacant or may be needed on short notice. Staff members engaged in the simulation are prone to being pulled into clinical duty, and training sessions may be interrupted. Raemer[204] summarized potential risks of ISS and amplified some of the safety hazards of simulation itself including maintaining control of simulated medications and equipment, limiting the use of valuable hospital resources, preventing incorrect learning from simulation shortcuts, and profoundly upsetting patients and their families. In our experience, patients and families are rarely upset and in fact often are pleased to see that such serious training is going on.

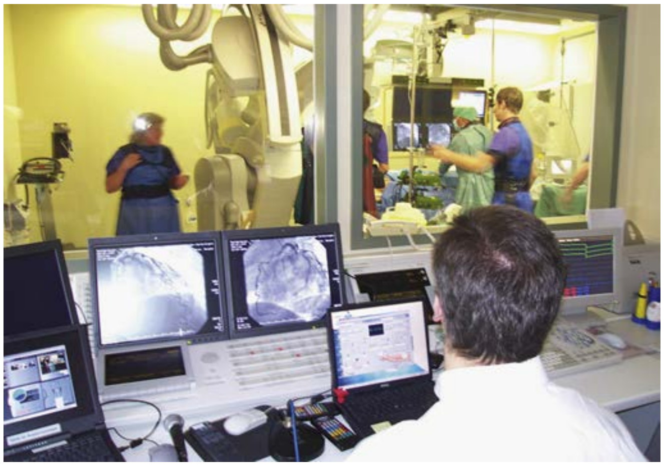


Fig. 7.8 In situ mobile simulation in a catheterization laboratory (cath lab). The simulator is placed on the cath lab table, surrounded by the x-ray equipment, thus complicating treatment of the patient by limiting space. The vital signs monitor provides relevant data to the clinical team. The simulator is controlled from the cath lab control room. Multiple mobile cameras and a scan converter for vital signs provide a live video transmission to a temporary debriefing area for the nonactive part of the training group and allows for crisis resource management–based debriefings. (*Photograph by M. Rall.*)

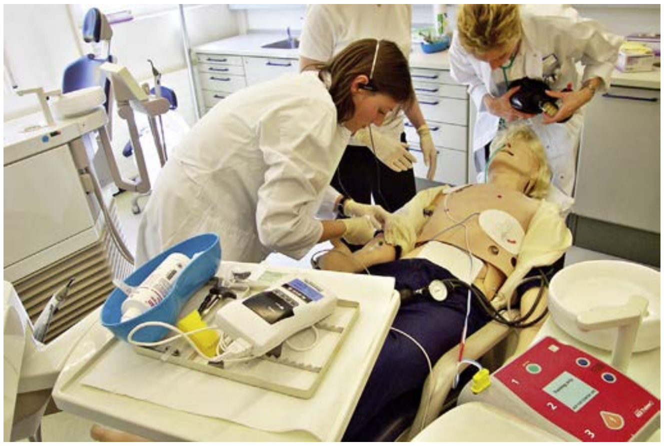


Fig. 7.9 In situ mobile simulation in a dentist chair. The simulator was equipped with artificial teeth gum and a chalk tooth to drill, thereby simulating the dentist's procedures. Then emergencies developed, allowing the team to respond. Training focused on crisis resource management key points and medical aspects including use of an automated external defibrillator. (*Photograph by M. Rall.*)

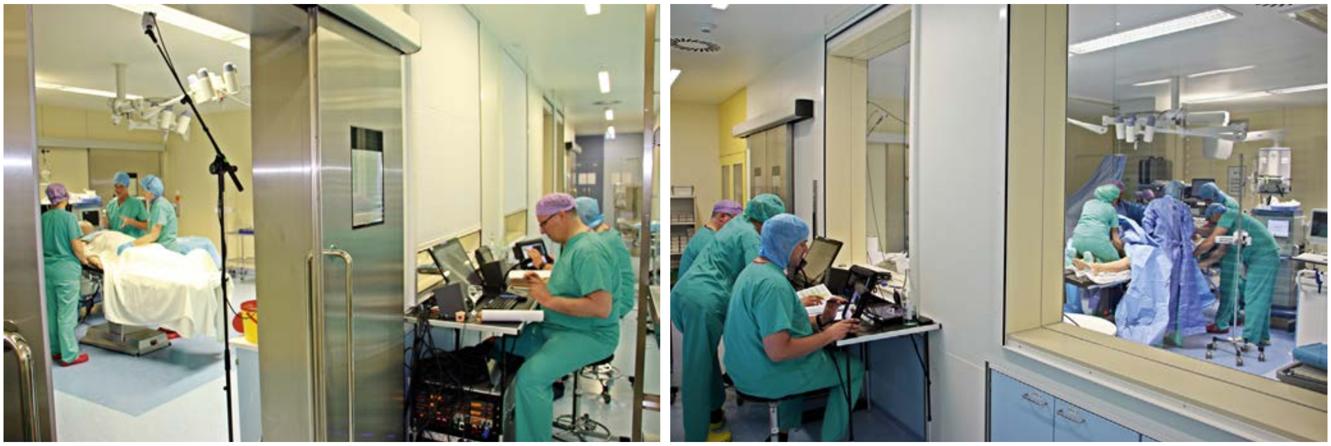


Fig. 7.10 In situ mobile simulation team training in the operating room (OR). The mobile simulation control room is set up outside the OR. The instructors can watch the simulation scenario either indirectly via live video coverage (left photo) or directly via the OR window (right photo). (*Photograph provided by M. Rall, InPASS in situ training in the OR at Scuol Hospital, Switzerland, Chairman: J. Koppenberg.*)

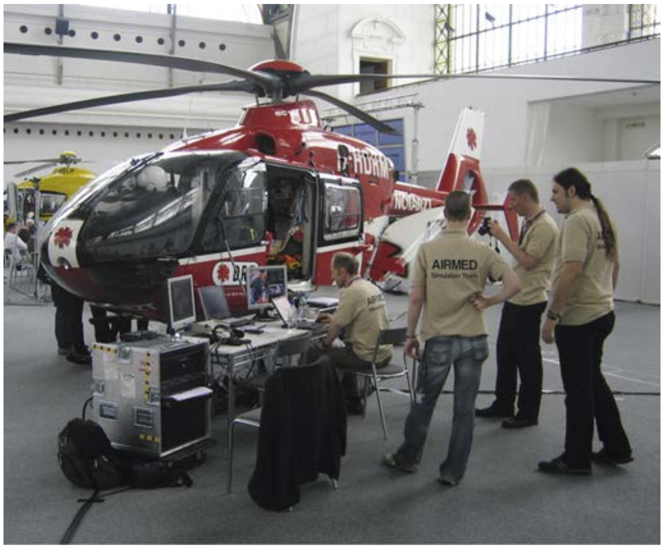


Fig. 7.11 In situ mobile simulation team training in a medical air rescue helicopter. The mobile simulation control room with several cameras and microphones is set up outside the helicopter and provides a multi-perspective view inside to monitor the scenario and react to activities performed. (*Photograph taken by M. Rall at Airmed 2008 with the German Air Rescue (DRF) team.*)

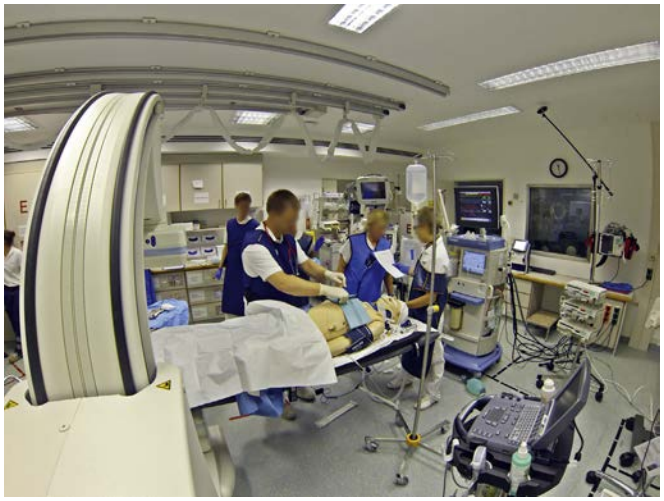


Fig. 7.12 In situ mobile simulation trauma team training at a large trauma center. (*Photo provided by M. Rall.*)

Peri-situ or Off-site Simulation

If simulation is, in principle, worthwhile, then doing simulation anywhere is probably better than not doing it at all. *Peri-situ simulation* (PSS) means simulating in the clinical work unit, but not in an actual patient room/bay/bed—for example in a conference room, or even hallway of the unit. This may be done when an ISS session is planned but there is no actual clinical spot available, or it may be done this way on purpose. PSS has some of the advantages of ISS in terms of locale, systems, and supplies, but it lacks the ideal realism of an actual bedside. When simulation is done outside a clinical unit (say a nonclinical conference room) or in a public area of a hospital it is referred to as *off-site simulation* (OSS).

Sequential Location Simulation

This is sometimes called *moving simulation* and it simulates the patient moving between different sites of care in one scenario, at each stop enacting what might transpire in that location. For example, the patient could be brought to the emergency department by ambulance; assessed and treated; then taken to CT scan, interventional radiology, or OR; and finally transferred to an ICU. Moving simulation may be best accomplished as ISS or PSS, but again, there will be some value to it even if each stop cannot be simulated perfectly. To do it with full veracity requires intensive coordination and complex choreography of simulation equipment and personnel. It is probably only worth it if done occasionally and primarily with a focus on systems probing and improvement. Moving simulations can address different specific issues at each stop, depending on the most important systems probing and learning issues for each.

Advantages and Disadvantages of Moving Simulation. Like all kinds of ISS, moving simulation is a powerful tool to detect latent threats in the system. Apart from a focus on latent threats in certain workspaces, this kind of ISS can detect challenges in the course of transport to those workspaces. As mentioned above, the organizational and technical preparations, the technical challenges, and the movement of the whole simulation gear paired with the clinical staff needed in order to make moving simulations work imply huge effort.

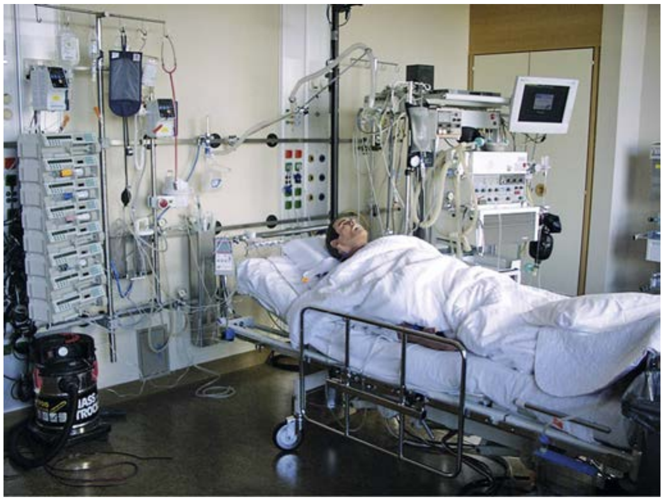


Fig. 7.13 In situ mobile simulation in an intensive care unit (ICU)/ intermediate medical care unit location. The training in clinical areas is especially useful for ICU-like surroundings. Crisis resource management–based trainings showcase these highly complex problems and the interactions needed to coordinate high-performing ICU teams. The training allows for checking the local arrangement of equipment and the readiness to react to certain emergencies. There are already a few examples of permanent in situ simulation facilities in ICUs (see text). (*Photograph by M. Rall.*)

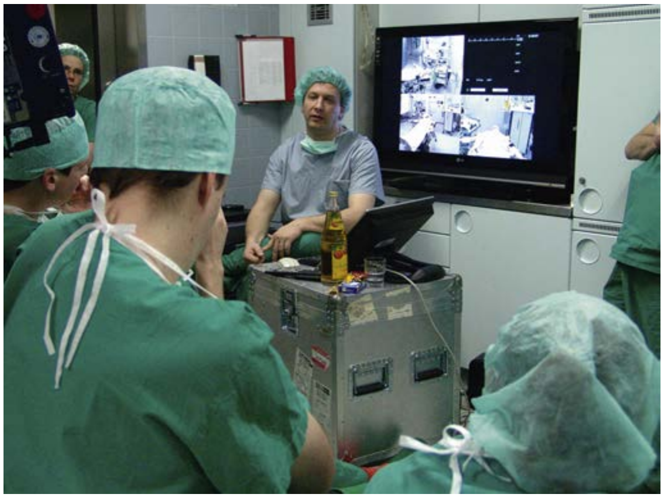


Fig. 7.14 In situ mobile crisis resource management (CRM)–focused simulation team training inside an operating room. This debriefing room is temporarily set up in an induction room. The use of videos for debriefing (here on a 42-inch flat panel placed over the basin) is feasible even in this setting. Training inside a hospital often includes training actual teams with the same setup, if possible conducting training for a large proportion of the relevant personnel. "En-bloc" training sessions may have a greater impact and longer-lasting effects of the lessons learned, including CRM behaviors. (*Photograph by team TuPASS [Center for Patient Safety and Simulation, University Hospital, Tübingen, Germany], who performed a full team training of the anesthesia department at Steinenberg Medical Center, Reutlingen, Germany.*)

MOBILE SIMULATION: "HAVE SIMULATOR, WILL TRAVEL"

Mobile simulation means that the simulator and the audiovisual gear are transported outside the originating institution for purposes of a simulation event. This makes simulation activities an option for clinical sites that lack a dedicated simulation center or the expertise to do ISS/PSS in their own institution.

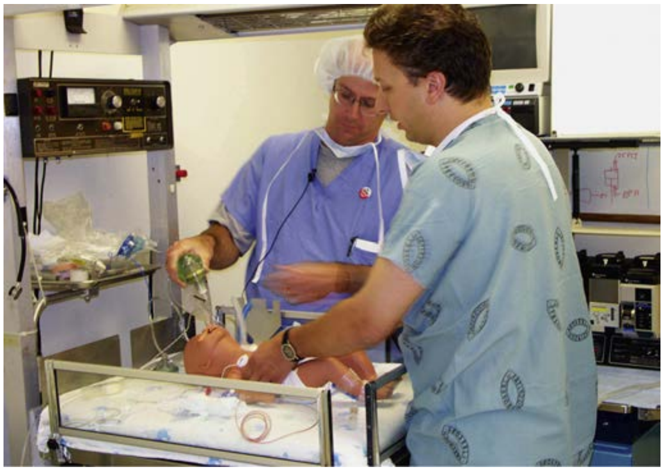


Fig. 7.15 Neonatal crisis resource management and resuscitation training at a neonatal emergency workplace. The experienced instructor (on the right side of the infant) is a confederate acting as part as the team, whereas others in the control room preside over simulation. (*Photograph taken at Stanford Simulation Center, Stanford University, Palo Alto, California; provided by M. Rall.*)

Mobile simulation can be conducted in clinical settings or in conference rooms, or even hotel meeting rooms. Mobile simulation can be provided by staff from simulation centers that have mobile simulator and audiovisual equipment and are equipped to travel with it. In some places there are small simulation centers built into a truck or bus.

Advantages and Disadvantages of Mobile Simulation. For clients who use mobile simulation, the construct of mobile simulation for sure is a great way to know the promise of simulation training and system probing without extra time and money for staff travelling. At the same time, mobile simulation offers the advantage of external peer feedback. This way normalizations of deviance (see Chapter 6) and pitfalls that are not noticed by internal personnel anymore can be detected by external instructors. Organizations that offer mobile simulation show a greater flexibility for training opportunities. Such organizations can not only offer training at nearly any workspace in their own organization, but also offer simulation to other organizations. This way, the organization's own simulation activities might be funded and vacant equipment and personnel capacities used.

Simulation Team Training Participants: Who Should Be Trained and in What Composition?

Each discipline in health care can be considered a *crew* containing one or more individuals. Several crews may work together closely as a *team*. The operating room team, for example, consists of an anesthesia crew, a surgery crew, and a nursing crew (and crews of technicians and support personnel). The members within a crew are likely to be more familiar with each other than with members of other crews. Such mutual professional (and private) "knowing about each other"—perhaps by enhancing their shared mental model—could be an important influence on their performance.[205]

Many simulation applications are targeted at individuals. These may be especially useful for teaching knowledge and basic skills or for practice on specific psychomotor tasks. As in other high-reliability industries (including anesthesiology, see chapter 6), individual skill is a fundamental building block, but empiric findings show that individual performance is not sufficient to achieve optimal overall performance, and to achieve optimal safety.[206] Performance and safety unfold in the interplay between people and in their interaction with each other, equipment, and organizational structures and processes. That is the reason why in high-reliability organizations a considerable emphasis is applied at higher organizational levels, in various forms of teamwork and communication training, and interpersonal relations. This approach is often summarized under the rubric of *crisis resource management* (see Chapter 6 and later section).[24,207,208] The importance of teamwork and team training is widely accepted in health care and anesthesia,[33,209-216] although team training is still not widely implemented. The prerequisites for effective teamwork (e.g., team leadership, mutual performance monitoring, back-up and speak-up behavior, adaptability and team orientation, the concept of team cognition, etc.) are discussed in Chapter 6. One of the special features of health care teams that poses several challenges is the frequently changing composition of teams with changing crews. Within a discipline, crew membership may fluctuate. For example, in anesthesia or the resuscitation team. Those teams or crews are also referred to as "action teams" (see Chapter 6).

When simulation is intended to go beyond specific medical and technical skills for individuals (as, for example, in CRM-oriented patient simulation) and to involve non-technical skills and teamwork, one can distinguish between single-discipline and multidiscipline approaches. CRM-based "team training" may be addressed first to *crews* (known as *single-discipline teams*), and then to *teams* (known as *multidiscipline teams*).[217] Commonly, in a broader sense and used this way in this chapter, the term "team training" refers to both single-discipline as well as multidiscipline training. For both approaches the best way to train and transfer learning for everyday instances at work is to arrange the training (1) interprofessional (doctors, nurses, allied health personnel, etc.) and (2) in realistic crew/team compositions and roles in regard to the learning objective ("train as you work"—see patient simulation action box below).

PATIENT SIMULATION ACTION BOX

"Train as you work." When conducting patient simulation training with more experienced personnel—beyond "early learners"—those who work together should train together when possible. Although built on a foundation of previous experience and crew-specific training, working together in simulation will hone the skills of coordinating tasks, goals, and strategies in the overall treatment of the patient.

Furthermore, teams exist in actual *work units* in an organization (e.g., a specific ICU), each of which can be its own target for training, and in *organizations* as a whole (e.g., entire hospitals or networks). Each unit can have specific characteristics, culture, etc., that will influence how receptive participants are for training and how easily they can apply in the clinical setting what they learned during simulation. Growing interest and experience have been shown in applying simulation to nonclinical personnel and work units in health care organizations (e.g., to managers, executives, informal leaders).[73,74]

Addressing teamwork in the single-discipline approach in contrast to the multidiscipline approach has advantages and disadvantages.[155] For maximal benefit, these approaches are used in a complementary fashion.

TRAINING INDIVIDUALS

Simulation-based training of individual skills can be used to educate learners (Miller learning pyramid "knows," "knows how," see Fig. 7.4), to promote psychomotor skills ("knows how," "shows how"), and to help integrate different kinds of skills into an effective whole. Usually, early learners need to start somewhere, as do experienced people trying to learn completely new skills or procedures. Whereas screen-based simulators can be used for educational purposes and the acquisition of basic procedural knowledge, part-task trainers promote psychomotor skills, and mannequin-based simulation allows training to bring different concepts together. When mannequin-based simulation is used for the training of individuals (who still perform as a crew!), the focus of patient simulation training lies either (1) on training an individual's clinical skills, for example following a treatment algorithm; or (2) on training non-technical skills such as leadership, communication, task management, etc.; or (3) both.

TRAINING CREWS: INTERPROFESSIONAL SINGLE-DISCIPLINE TEAM TRAINING

Training for crews (e.g., anesthesiologists) involves simulation scenarios, in which all participants are from a single discipline and in which the scenarios are highly relevant to the crew (both in regard to clinical and non-technical skills). The other team members' roles (i.e., surgeons, etc.) are either played by instructor personnel or clinically savvy actors; less critical team roles may be played by participants or, when necessary, not present at all. In this approach the interaction with specific types of behaviors by other crew or team members can be addressed by an instructor or an actor assuming that role as a confederate. These roles can be designed such that participants can be exposed to different kinds of challenges systematically.

This approach allows tailoring simulations to challenge skills, knowledge, and situations specific to the discipline, including material that may be of little relevance to other members of the team and in the context of a wide variety of clinical situations (e.g., cardiac, orthopedic, or general surgery; labor and delivery; intensive care). Single-discipline training can emphasize generic skills of dynamic decision making, resource management, leadership, and teamwork applicable to any challenging clinical situation that is relevant to the particular discipline.

The single-discipline approach may be of particular relevance and value for professionals who work in many different settings and who do not work in permanent crews or teams ("action teams," such as in anesthesia, see Chapter 6), and who therefore must acquire generic teamwork and communication skills that can be used with all co-workers. For dedicated center simulations, single-discipline sessions are simpler logistically because only one discipline needs to be present, rather than scheduling someone from each of the disciplines.

TRAINING TEAMS: INTERPROFESSIONAL MULTIDISCIPLINE TEAM TRAINING

In health care, interdisciplinary teams are becoming ubiquitous. At the same time, experts from each discipline do not necessarily combine to make an expert team.[218] The complementary approach is to conduct *multidiscipline team training* (also called *combined team training* or *interprofessional training [IPE]).* Here, the crews of different disciplines who might work together undergo training together, each acting in their own usual roles, and scenarios designed to challenge all of the disciplines. Multidiscipline team training allows for more natural team interactions and reinforces understanding across the disciplines. Successful examples of such undertakings have been reported in many fields where anesthesia professionals are involved, including the OR,[159,219] obstetrics[220-222] (combining obstetrics, anesthesia, nursing, and neonatology and pediatrics), intensive care (combining physicians from multiple disciplines with nursing, respiratory therapy, and pharmacy),[223] emergency department,[224,225] and trauma management.[30,31,90,226,227]

Depending on the training location (see earlier subchapter), the scheduling of the team training poses several challenges. Multidiscipline training, for example, can be difficult to schedule in a dedicated simulation center. Ideally, the sessions will have instructors from several disciplines especially to handle debriefing. Multidiscipline trainings are typically easier to organize as in situ trainings (see earlier subchapter), or as announced or unannounced “mock events” (see next subchapter) that activate the actual designated team (e.g., ward or unit team, rapid response team, or code team). In the latter situation, the team does not know it is a simulation until they arrive at the scene.

CROSS TRAINING: CHANGING ROLES

The course director of a simulation activity can choose whether to have all participants act in their own regular role, or to assume a different role. Each has its advantages. The philosophy of “train as you work and work as you train” would usually put everyone in their usual role,[82] but cross-training can provide an understanding of and sensitivity to the tasks, decision making, challenges, and responsibilities of another profession or discipline. Study results indicate that cross-training is an important determinant of effective teamwork process, communication, and performance,[228] enhanced shared team-interaction and mental models,[229] and helps to maintain team communication when faced with increased task demands.[230]

PATIENT SIMULATION ACTION BOX

If a cross-training scenario is conducted it is advisable to brief personnel to represent the other professional role in a rational manner without playing out particular personality quirks or go “over the top.” The debriefing should emphasize discussion on what individuals can learn from “walking in someone else’s shoes.” It would be foolish, for example, to debrief anesthesia professionals on their surgical skills or behavior as a surgeon. Acting out may be fun for play but it is disrespectful to others, and wastes valuable simulation time.

EN-BLOC TRAINING: AVOIDING SUB-THRESHOLD TRAINING EFFECTS

If patient simulation is used as an intervention to promote a patient safety initiative, for example the introduction of crisis resource management (see Chapter 6) to crews or teams, or the implementation of a new checklist, algorithm, etc., the organization/curriculum designer may arrange that all crew and team members are trained within a short period of time (i.e. several days or weeks). This would provide a more concentrated and uniform result. On the other hand, this may not be possible logistically or politically within the institution, and may or may not be worth the “political capital” to make it happen. As there are no data to demonstrate the strength of the en-bloc effect, it is necessary to gauge under what circumstances it is worth the effort.

Patient Simulation Timing: Announced in Advance Versus Unannounced in Advance

Regardless of site, simulations can be conducted as pre-scheduled exercises either for personnel in their regular-duty roles or for personnel on off-duty or education days. Typically, unannounced mock events (announced as if the real thing) would be implemented in a department after making potential participants aware of this possibility on a general level. Again, scheduled and unscheduled ISSs are complementary approaches, each with its own pros and cons. An obvious challenge is that it takes participants away from their actual patient care activities so that ground rules need to be established concerning when and how to abort the exercise when necessary. On the other hand, when done only occasionally and with appropriate safeguards, the clinical system needs to probe its ability to ensure good patient care when an emergency team is called to an event. In summary, the technique has high potential for organizational learning when done carefully.

A number of recent publications discuss the advantages and disadvantages of unannounced mock events as well as issues concerning the implementation of such programs.[199,231-233]

Scopes of Simulation in Health Care: The 12 Dimensions of Simulation

Many different aspects and variations of simulation have been presented so far; they represent examples of combinations of choices from 12 (originally 11[171]) different dimensions of the simulation universe. Each dimension has a variety of choices—a spectrum—to choose from (Fig. 7.16).

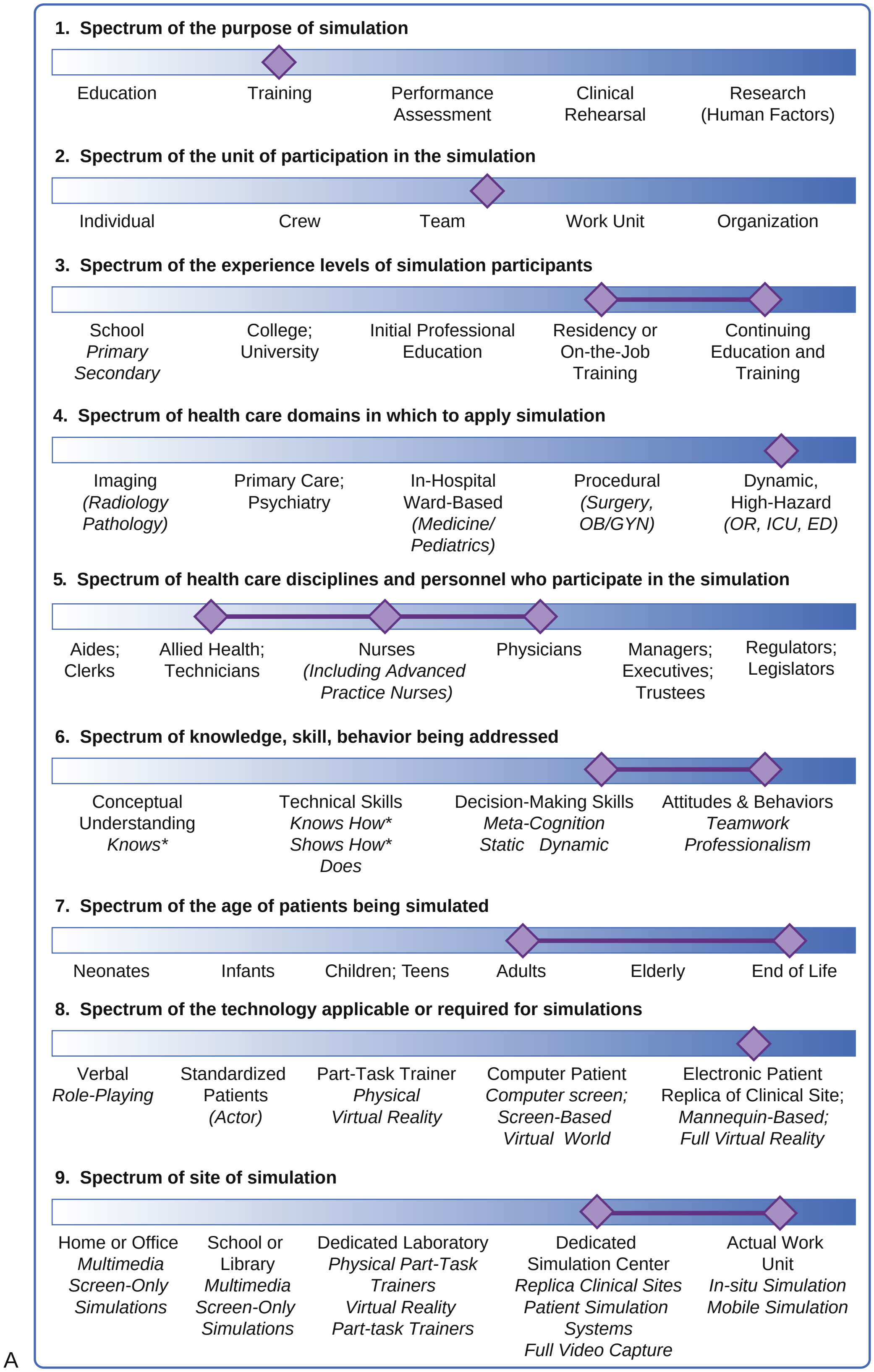

1. Spectrum of the purpose of simulation
Education
Training
Performance Assessment
Clinical Rehearsal
Research (Human Factors)
2. Spectrum of the unit of participation in the simulation
Individual
Crew
Team
Work Unit
Organization
3. Spectrum of the experience levels of simulation participants
School *Primary* *Secondary*
College; University
Initial Professional Education
Residency or On-the-Job Training
Continuing Education and Training
4. Spectrum of health care domains in which to apply simulation
Imaging *(Radiology Pathology)*
Primary Care; Psychiatry
In-Hospital Ward-Based *(Medicine/ Pediatrics)*
Procedural *(Surgery, OB/GYN)*
Dynamic, High-Hazard *(OR, ICU, ED)*
5. Spectrum of health care disciplines and personnel who participate in the simulation
Aides; Clerks
Allied Health; Technicians
Nurses *(Including Advanced Practice Nurses)*
Physicians
Managers; Executives; Trustees
Regulators; Legislators
6. Spectrum of knowledge, skill, behavior being addressed
Conceptual Understanding *Knows**
Technical Skills *Knows How** *Shows How** *Does*
Decision-Making Skills *Meta-Cognition* *Static Dynamic*
Attitudes & Behaviors *Teamwork* *Professionalism*
7. Spectrum of the age of patients being simulated
Neonates
Infants
Children; Teens
Adults
Elderly
End of Life
8. Spectrum of the technology applicable or required for simulations
Verbal *Role-Playing*
Standardized Patients *(Actor)*
Part-Task Trainer *Physical* *Virtual Reality*
Computer Patient *Computer screen;* *Screen-Based* *Virtual World*
Electronic Patient Replica of Clinical Site; *Mannequin-Based;* *Full Virtual Reality*
9. Spectrum of site of simulation
Home or Office *Multimedia* *Screen-Only* *Simulations*
School or Library *Multimedia* *Screen-Only* *Simulations*
Dedicated Laboratory *Physical Part-Task* *Trainers* *Virtual Reality* *Part-task Trainers*
Dedicated Simulation Center *Replica Clinical Sites* *Patient Simulation* *Systems* *Full Video Capture*
Actual Work Unit *In-situ Simulation* *Mobile Simulation*
A

Fig. 7.16 The 12 dimensions of simulation applications. (A) Dimensions 1-9. *These terms are used according to Miller's pyramid of learning.

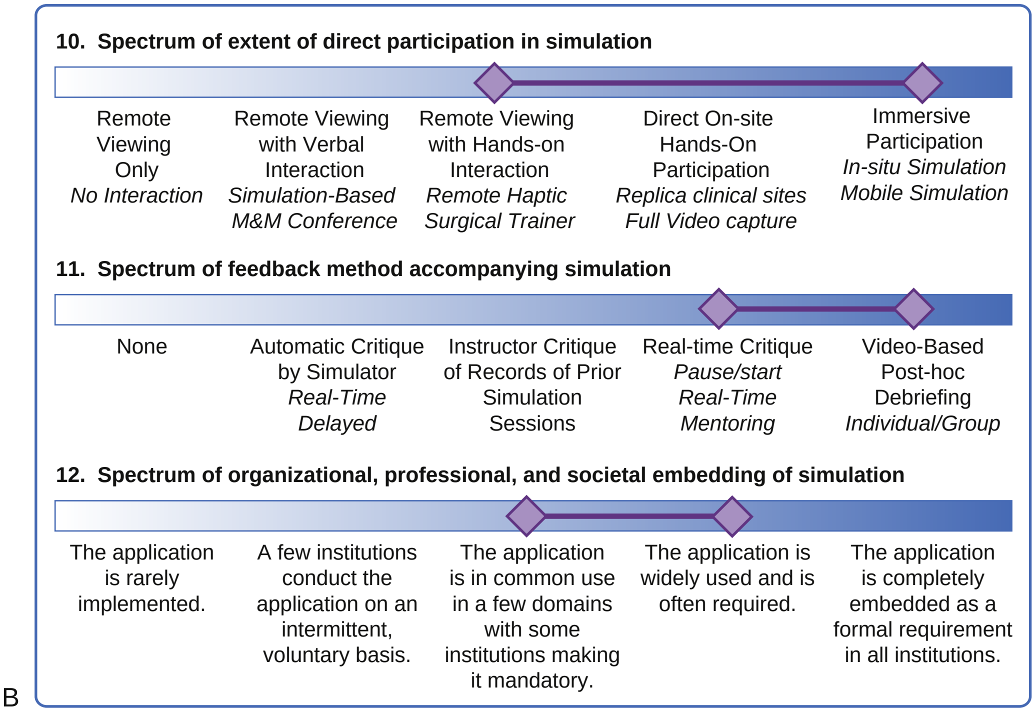

10. Spectrum of extent of direct participation in simulation
Remote Viewing Only *No Interaction*
Remote Viewing with Verbal Interaction *Simulation-Based M&M Conference*
Remote Viewing with Hands-on Interaction *Remote Haptic Surgical Trainer*
Direct On-site Hands-On Participation *Replica clinical sites* *Full Video capture*
Immersive Participation *In-situ Simulation* *Mobile Simulation*
11. Spectrum of feedback method accompanying simulation
None
Automatic Critique by Simulator *Real-Time* *Delayed*
Instructor Critique of Records of Prior Simulation Sessions
Real-time Critique *Pause/start* *Real-Time* *Mentoring*
Video-Based Post-hoc Debriefing *Individual/Group*
12. Spectrum of organizational, professional, and societal embedding of simulation
The application is rarely implemented.
A few institutions conduct the application on an intermittent, voluntary basis.
The application is in common use in a few domains with some institutions making it mandatory.
The application is widely used and is often required.
The application is completely embedded as a formal requirement in all institutions.
B

Fig. 7.16, cont'd. (B) Dimensions 10-12. Any particular application can be represented as a point or range on each spectrum (shown by *diamonds*). This figure illustrates a specific application: multidisciplinary crisis resource management (CRM)-oriented decision making and teamwork training for adult intensive care unit *(ICU)* personnel. *ED,* Emergency department; *M&M,* morbidity and mortality; *OB/GYN,* obstetrics and gynecology; *OR,* operating room.

Any particular simulation activity can be classified by delineating one or more characteristics in each of the 12 dimensions. The different attributes can be combined as needed to achieve the pursued objectives. Clearly, some combinations are useless or irrelevant, some are similar to each other, and others are redundant, but the total number of unique combinations across all dimensions is still very large and only some combinations have been implemented. Dimensions of particular relevance are the goals and purposes of the simulation, the target population, the modalities of simulation, and the pedagogical approach that is used.

The content of many dimensions has been addressed in detail in the earlier parts of the chapter. Therefore, for the sake of completeness, only a short description of the dimensions is given here and the reader is referred back to each section for more information. Those who seek a detailed description of the different dimensions are referred to other literature where the model is described as a whole in detail.[75,234]

Dimension 1: Purpose and Aims of the Simulation Activity. The most obvious applications of simulation have been described in the subchapter "Application of Simulators in Anesthesia and Health Care." For more detailed information the reader is referred back to this section. To summarize the main purposes shortly, they are (1) education, (2) training including clinical rehearsal, (3) performance assessment, (4) research about simulation, and (5) research with simulation, including (5a) testing of procedures, (5b) testing of equipment, and (5c) system probing.

Dimension 2: Unit of Participation in the Simulation. The units of participation have been described in the subchapter on the classification of simulation teams. For more detailed information the reader is referred back to this section.

Dimension 3: Experience Level of Simulation Participants. Simulation can be applied along the entire continuum of education of clinical personnel and the public at large. For more information see earlier subchapter on the use of simulation in education and training. As mentioned earlier, simulation training is applicable to health care providers with a range of experience, including experts,[2,50] novices and advanced residents,[2,90,178,235,236] medical/nursing/other healthcare profession students,[51,52,53-57] and even children.[58-61]

Dimension 4: Healthcare Domain in Which Simulation is Applied. Simulation techniques can be applied across nearly all health care domains.[18] A summary of the different domains was given in the earlier subchapter on "Use of simulation."

Dimension 5: Healthcare Disciplines of Personnel Participating in the Simulation. Simulation is applicable to a wide variety of professionals in health care, not only to physicians. In anesthesiology, simulation has been applied to novices and experienced trainees, board certified anesthesiologists, CRNAs, and anesthesia technicians. Simulation is not limited to clinical personnel. It may be directed at managers, executives, hospital trustees, regulators, and legislators.[73,74]

Dimension 6: Type of Knowledge, Skill, Attitudes, or Behavior Addressed in Simulation. Different types of competences can be addressed with simulation: knowledge, skill, attitudes, behavior. Based on the Miller pyramid (see corresponding subchapter), competences can be classified with regard to their level of appearance to "knows," "knows how," "shows how," and "does." Apart from the competences described by Miller,[197] Gaba[234] added cognitive skills such as decision-making processes, attitudes, and behaviors to the competences that can be addressed with the spectrum.

Dimension 7: Age of the Patient Being Simulated. Simulation is applicable to nearly every type and age of patient. Fully interactive neonatal and pediatric patient simulators are available. Simulation can address aspects of end-of-life issues for every age.

Dimension 8: Technology Applicable or Required For Simulations. To accomplish the different simulation goals listed in dimensions 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 various simulation technologies—including no technology—are relevant for simulation. An overview is given in the earlier subchapters "History and Development of Simulators," "Fidelity and Classification of Simulators," and "So many simulators and simulation options: which one to use…?".

Dimension 9: Site of Simulation Participation. The different sites of simulation have been described in detail in the correspondent subchapter. Video conferencing and advanced networking may allow even advanced types of simulation to be conducted remotely (see dimension 10).

Dimension 10: Extent of Direct Participation in Simulation. Not all learning requires direct participation. Some learning can occur merely by viewing a simulation involving others because the viewer can readily imagine being in the shoes of the participants.[237] A further step is to involve remote viewers with interaction in the simulation itself or verbal interaction in debriefings about what transpired. Several centers have been using videoconferencing to conduct simulation-based exercises, including morbidity and mortality conferences. Because the simulator can be paused, restarted, or otherwise controlled, the remote audience can readily obtain more information from the on-site participants, debate the proper course of action, and discuss with those in the simulator how best to proceed. Further steps of participation are personal involvement ("hands-on") either in a replicated clinical site or immersive personal participation in an in situ simulation.

Dimension 11: Feedback Method Accompanying Simulation. One can learn a great deal just from simulation experiences themselves, without any additional feedback.[238] For many simulations, specific feedback is provided to maximize learning. On-screen-based simulators or VR systems, as well as the simulator (part-task trainer or mannequin) itself, may provide feedback about the participant's actions or decisions, particularly for manual tasks for which clear metrics of performance are readily delineated. More commonly, human instructors provide feedback. This can be as simple as having the instructor review records of previous sessions that the learner has completed alone. For many target populations and applications, an instructor provides real-time guidance and real-time feedback to participants while the simulation is ongoing. The possibility to start, pause, and restart the simulation is valuable in this respect. Alternatively, brief post-hoc feedback is given by the instructor at the end of the simulation. For the most complex uses of simulation, especially when training experienced personnel, the typical form of feedback is provided by an instructor and is included in a detailed post-simulation debriefing session.[105,107,112,113,238] More discussion of debriefing is given later in the subchapter on "Debriefing."

Dimension 12: Embedding of Simulation in Relevant Organizational, Professional, and Societal Contexts. The final important dimension is how the simulation application is embedded into an overall context.[159] Being highly embedded may mean that the simulation is a formal requirement of the institution or is mandated by the governmental regulator. Another aspect of embedding may be that—for early learners—the initial (steep) part of the learning curve is required to occur in a simulation training before the learners are allowed to work on real patients under supervision. In addition, complete embedding of simulation into the workplace means that simulation training is a normal part of the work schedule, rather than being an add-on activity attended in the spare time of clinicians.

Crisis Resource Management (ACRM; CRM): Part of Modern Patient Simulation Team Training

In the last subchapters, the benefits and the effectiveness of simulation-based education were highlighted and its ecologic validity was considered. This subsequent section now explores the idea that simulation-based education for a variety of simulation curricula, especially for team training, needs to take into account not only medical and technical skills, but also what is called anesthesia crisis resource management (ACRM), also referred to as crisis resource management (CRM). For detailed information on CRM see Chapter 6.

THE ROOTS OF ANESTHESIA CRISIS RESOURCE MANAGEMENT TRAINING

In 1989, based on earlier work, Cooper,[239,240] Howard et al.,[181] and Gaba[241,242] of the VA-Stanford and their colleagues identified gaps in the training of anesthesiologists regarding several critical aspects of decision making and crisis management that were not systematically taught during standard residency or postgraduate education. These gaps were inadequate learning and skills of (1) precompiled plans for dealing with perioperative events; (2) metacognition and allocation of attention; and (3) resource management behavior, including leadership, communication, workload management, monitoring, and cross-checking of all available information.

Historically, it had been assumed that anesthesiologists would acquire these plans and non-technical skills (see Chapter 6) by osmosis, solely by experience and by observing role models who had these qualities, rather than specific education and training about them. But similar to aviation, medicine had to learn that those kind of (non-technical) skills were not acquired unless specifically taught. For flight crews, CRM training was originally created to address these issues. Especially for anesthesia, but for other health care domains as well, the VA-Stanford group modeled their training after aviation CRM and named it ACRM.[181] For a broader use in health care, oftentimes ACRM is also referred to solely as CRM. The ACRM approach has been highly influential. ACRM curricula and ACRM-like curricula are taught at simulation centers around the world, not only in anesthesia, but in many other domains of health care, including ICU, emergency medicine, labor and delivery, trauma, and field responders.[3,93,222,243-247]. Fig. 7.17 shows a typical CRM crew training scenario.

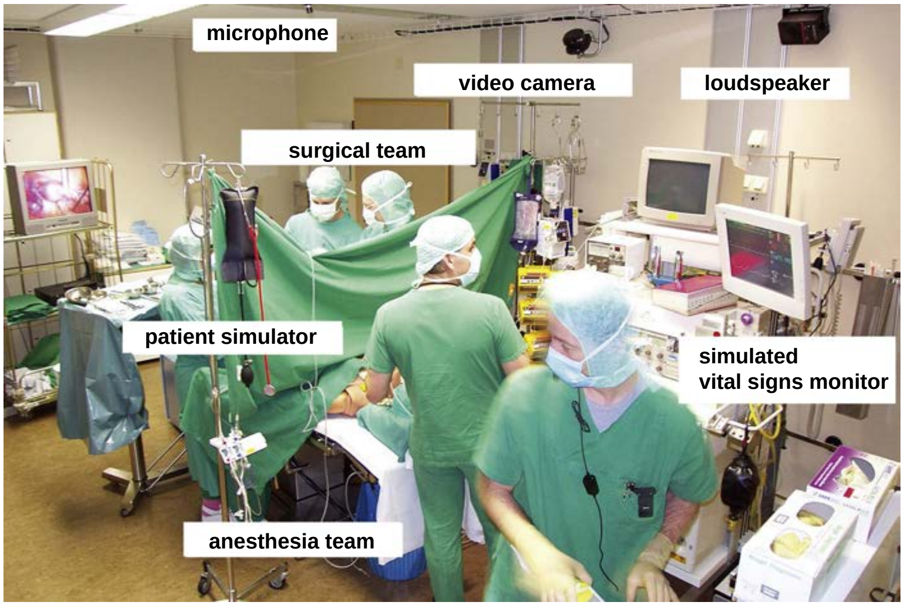


Fig. 7.17 Crisis resource management training scenario during crew training. The surgical team is performing a complicated endoscopic surgical procedure replayed on screen. The anesthesia team must solve a clinical problem and coordinate with the surgical team. Video cameras, microphones, and loudspeakers provide the necessary connectivity and later debriefing tools. (*Photograph taken by M. Rall at the Center for Patient Safety and Simulation, University Hospital, Tübingen, Germany.*)

ANESTHESIA CRISIS RESOURCE MANAGEMENT CURRICULA

A working group of the original ACRM centers (VA-Stanford, Boston CMS, Toronto Sunnybrook) promulgated a set of criteria to be met by a curriculum to be called either ACRM or ACRM-like. Box 7.3 presents an excerpt of the criteria.

Among others, these criteria delineate:

1. To target the above mentioned identified gaps in training, approximately 50% of the emphasis of ACRM is on the medical and technical management of specific high-risk perioperative situations, and about 50% is on generic principles of crisis management that apply to nearly every complex patient care situation. The key teaching points of ACRM are shown in Box 7.4. These points are emphasized during the ACRM simulation course, and their occurrence or omission is highlighted during the debriefing sessions.
2. Special training is needed for instructors in ACRM-like curricula. The authors' experience suggests that the most difficult aspect of ACRM instructing is debriefing, and new instructors require a significant period of experience, preferably under supervision by more senior instructors, before being ready to be fully independent instructors. Several groups working separately or collectively have developed comprehensive training programs on simulation instruction, including substantial modules on debriefing and scenario design (see later subchapter on instructor qualification).
3. ACRM-like curricula employ a variety of teaching modalities to achieve these goals, including the following:
   - Comprehensive textbook on anesthesia crisis management: *Crisis Management in Anesthesiology (now in an expanded second edition)*.[24] This book includes didactic material on ACRM principles and a comprehensive catalog of critical incidents in anesthesia that provides guidelines for preventing, recognizing, and managing 99 perioperative situations in a uniform format. The catalog section of the text is intended to provide study material to increase anesthesiologists' stock of precompiled response plans to common and uncommon situations. This textbook has been translated into Japanese, German (first edition), Spanish, and Portuguese (second edition).
   - Brief presentation and discussion reviewing the principles of CRM and patient safety.
   - Use of trigger videos meant to initiate discussion, sometimes from a non-health care setting (e.g., commercial aviation, British warship during the Napoleonic wars).
   - Group exercises analyzing a patient care event, presented as: (i) an actual patient care event captured on video or a reconstruction thereof; (ii) a video of a presentation as if from a morbidity and mortality conference; or (iii) a written report of the event.
   - The core of simulation activities in ACRM-like curricula will be several hours of different, complex, multifaceted, realistic simulation scenarios in which participants rotate through different roles, including for example primary anesthesiologist, first responder (called cold, with no knowledge of the situation), and scrub tech. Other instructors or actors play the roles of surgeons, nurses, and technicians as in a real perioperative setting. Each situation is followed by a detailed debriefing (see later in discussion on "Debriefing").

Several publications have detailed the response of participants with varying levels of experience to ACRM training or its equivalent.[181,248-250] Participants have

BOX 7.3 Characteristics of Anesthesia Crisis Resource Management-like Simulation Training

Objectives

- Learn generic principles of complex problem solving, decision making, resource management, and teamwork behavior.
- Improve participants' medical and technical, cognitive, and social skills in the recognition and treatment of realistic, complex medical situations.
- Enhance capacity for reflection, self-discovery, and teamwork and for building a personalized tool kit of attitudes, behaviors, and skills.

Aim

- Prevent, ameliorate, and resolve critical incidents.

Course Characteristics

- A realistic simulation environment replicates a relevant work setting (or an actual patient care setting with in situ simulation).
- Personnel will represent those persons found in the typical work environment of the participant, including nurses, surgeons, and technicians.
- The bulk of the training course consists of realistic simulations followed by detailed debriefings.
- Primary participants can request and receive help from other participants.
- Participants may rotate among various roles during different scenarios to gain fresh perspectives.
- Simulation scenarios may be supplemented by additional modalities, including activities such as assigned readings, didactic presentations, analysis of videotapes, role playing, or group discussions.
- Training involves significant time (>4 h, typically ≥8 h) and is conducted with a small group of participants.

Content Characteristics

- Scenarios require participants to engage in appropriate professional interactions.
- At least 50% of the emphasis of the course is on crisis resource management behavior (nontechnical skills) rather than medical or technical issues (non-technical skills are discussed in Chapter 6).
- Observation only is not equivalent to actual participation in one or more scenarios.

Faculty Characteristics

- Training is intense and entails a high level of involvement of faculty with the participants and a low participant-to-faculty ratio.
- Faculty members, especially those leading debriefing, have special training or experience in conducting crisis resource management–oriented training.

Debriefing Characteristics

- Debriefings are performed with the whole group of participants together and use (as appropriate) audio-video recordings of the simulation sessions.
- Debriefings emphasize constructive critique and analysis in which the participants are given the greatest opportunity possible to speak and to critique and to learn from each other.

BOX 7.4 Key Points in Anesthesia Crisis Resource Management

A detailed explanation of the crisis resource management key points is given in *Chapter 6*. The key points are derived from the publication of Rall and Gaba in the sixth edition of Miller's Anesthesia[367] and presented here in their updated, current version.

1. Know the environment.
2. Anticipate and plan.
3. Call for help early.
4. Establish leadership and followership with appropriate assertiveness.
5. Distribute the workload. Use 10 s for 10 min concept.
6. Mobilize all available resources.
7. Communicate effectively—speak up.
8. Use all available information.
9. Prevent and manage fixation errors.
10. Cross and double check. Never assume anything.
11. Use cognitive aids.
12. Reevaluate repeatedly. Apply 10 s for 10 min concept.
13. Use good teamwork. Coordinate with and support others.
14. Allocate attention wisely.
15. Set priorities dynamically.

been extremely positive about their experience in the ACRM course, and most believe that it contributes to their safe practice of anesthesia.[180] In training settings where "practice improvement" is a specific target such courses can trigger credible efforts at personal or system change.[248] At the Stanford residency, ACRM has been extended to a multilevel course conducted over several years (i.e., ACRM 1, 2, 3). As the course levels progress, the scenarios become more complex and involve subspecialties of anesthesia. Besides, additional teaching modules cover other important aspects of organizational safety, such as systems thinking in morbidity and mortality conference settings or peer review settings, follow-up response to severe adverse perioperative events, and disclosure to the patient or family of bad news after an adverse event.

ACRM courses and ACRM-like variants are now offered worldwide and are often mandatory for trainees (and in some cases for experienced personnel). Salas and colleagues published an excellent critical overview about prerequisites for effective CRM training.[251]

BENEFITS OF CRISIS RESOURCE MANAGEMENT-BASED SIMULATION TRAINING

The literature on published benefits of CRM training effects is large; here are a few examples. Knudson and colleagues found a significant improvement in overall and teamwork scores in surgical residents taking care of critically injured simulated trauma patients if the residents had undergone CRM-like simulation training.[90] In a simulation study, no-flow time rates were significantly lower after CRM training paralleled with improved leadership verbalization.[153] A study in a multidisciplinary obstetrical setting involving anesthesia professionals showed a significant improvement in interprofessional teamwork and improved stress recognition after a CRM intervention.[220] In a prospective 3-year cohort study Haerkens and colleagues showed a decline in serious complications and the standardized mortality ratio, decreasing occurrence of cardiac arrests, and improving cardiopulmonary resuscitation success rates

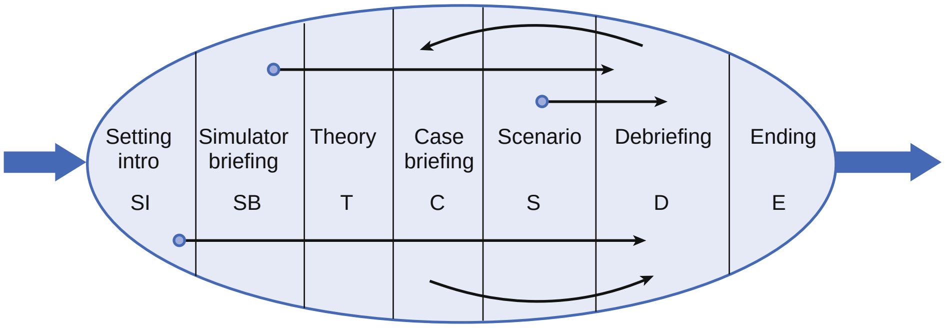


Fig. 7.18 Anatomy of the simulation exercise. A simulation exercise consists of different modules or different phases (e.g., simulation introduction *[SI]*, simulator and clinical environment briefing/"familiarization" *[SB]*, theory input *[T]*, case briefing *[C]*, scenario *[S]*, debriefing *[D]*, ending *[E]*). This figure shows a typical flow for a simulation course. If more than one scenario takes place during the course, the sequence form [C] to [D] is repeated for each scenario. The different modules are interrelated, and problems arising in one module can affect other modules *(thin arrows)*. (*Figure with courtesy of P. Dieckmann.*)

after a CRM-based intervention in a 32-bed ICU.[252] Moffatt-Bruce et al. published a significant reduction rate of adverse events and described return on investment after a system-wide implementation of CRM in 12 different hospital units including perioperative staff.[253]

Anatomy of a Patient Simulation Team Training Exercise

Whenever simulation is used it is important to consider its conceptual basis and the contextual factors that influence its use.[254,255] Therefore, with a focus on (CRM-oriented) mannequin-based patient simulation conducted for health care professionals, the next subchapters (1) give an overview of the training setting and important elements of a simulation exercise; discuss (2) the design of simulation scenarios and their execution; and (3) the modalities of the professionals' debriefing after a simulation scenario. Even though focused on the mannequin-based patient simulation conducted for health care professionals, many of the conceptual approaches presented below are identical or need to be modified only slightly to encompass other choices in the 12 dimensions of simulation.

Simulation activities vary in terms of goals and objectives. Most of the time, simulation scenarios are integrated into a multifaceted curriculum, which itself must be situated relative to the overall educational and training pathway of individuals and groups. Hence, for any given simulation activity both the conceptual and physical setting influence how the exercise is conducted, how it is perceived by participants, what participants learn, and which learned items are applicable in the clinical work domain.[255]

A simulation course/training itself can be divided analytically in different, interconnected phases as shown in Fig. 7.18.[255] Not all phases need to be present at each exercise and conversely some phases—like "scenario" and "debriefing"—may be repeated several times in a longer session.

Optimally the interconnected phases of the simulation exercise should be coordinated. If, for example, the briefing/familiarization is inadequate, participants may not be able to properly immerse themselves in the scenarios and debriefing might be impaired. The role of the simulation instructor changes throughout the different phases of the simulation training—from providing instruction in the beginning of a course to facilitating learning during debriefing. Based to a large extent on the work of Dieckmann,[255] the different phases of a simulation exercise (see Fig. 7.18) are discussed next, using the timeframe and elements of a simulation-based course as an example.

Pre-Briefing (PB). The pre-briefing introduces or reminds participants in advance about the course, its goals, and processes to appropriately situate the activity in their overall training, establish a positive attitude, and review the schedule of activities. An exercise that can be useful (stemming from advice from Ruokamo and Keskitalo from the University of Lapland) is to ask and discuss with participants "what do you want to learn or explore" in today's simulation course?, and similarly to ask the instructors "what are you interested in teaching or exploring?" This conversation engages the participants and demonstrates the instructors' interest in trying to address many of the preferences of the learners.

Simulation introduction (SI). An important aspect at the beginning of a session is to provide an overview about the course and the rules and norms of conduct for the set of exercises.[256] It is also important to provide a shared understanding for the simulation participants of the events that transpire during the course.[111] Besides, it is important to create a positive atmosphere to maximize learning, often referred to as *"psychological safety,"* or as recently published a *"safe container."*[121] Edmondson has defined psychological safety as *"the shared belief that the team is safe for interpersonal risk taking."*[257] Often this has a lot to do with ensuring the confidentiality of the simulation environment (i.e., "what happens here stays here") and that debriefings will "critique the performance, not the performer." Psychological safety *"is not about creating a comfortable space, it is about making it 'ok' to be uncomfortable."*[258]

Simulator and clinical environment briefing (SB) ("familiarization"). Participants need to be familiar with the simulator and the simulated environment in order to perform the closest to reality as possible, and they should not be distracted by technical or procedural uncertainty during the scenario. The participants can best master the scenario and actively engage in it if they know (1) how the simulator works ("normal" breathing sounds, "normal" pulses, intubation, intravenous access, etc.); (2) what it is able to do or not do; (3) how the simulated environment works (how to call for help, how to use the simulated equipment, etc.); and (4) what participants are able to perform on the simulator and what they need to pretend doing. Familiarization is characterized through explanations, demonstrations, and hands-on time for the participants themselves. This phase is very important in order to help the participants to make the best use of the simulation experience during the scenario. The plastic mannequin is on the way to being seen and treated as a patient. The more comfortable participants feel with the simulator and the simulation equipment, the less they will be scared or tense during the scenario. And more reflective learning about medical and non-technical skills can take place during the debriefing because the debriefing will not become about discussing the confusions and challenges regarding the simulation technology or environment. Therefore, it benefits both the instructor and the participants to have enough time for the familiarization process.

Presentation or discussion of theory (T). Theories of human performance or of clinical work processes might or might not be part of the course. Most exercises have didactic or theory components on relevant content information. Those components can either serve for transfer of (new) medical or technical knowledge, or for a refresher lecture on certain algorithms, but also for the introduction of (anesthesia) crisis resource management-related skills (ACRM, CRM) and patient safety issues (Chapter 6). Sometimes educational material is made available in advance through readings or online exercises. Sometimes lectures or group-work modules are put in place at different junctures of the training.

Breaks (B). For complex and long-lasting courses breaks are important for recreation and for socialization among participants and with instructors. Breaks provide a venue for informal sharing and storytelling, one of the many learning opportunities during a simulation training outside of a simulation scenario.

Case briefing (C). Because the simulator is not a real patient itself providing clinical information and because the environment of a simulation imposes several challenges, there are different ways to ensure that participants have certain relevant information concerning the case and the simulation reality before, or at the beginning of, the scenario. Sometimes it is natural for a participant to take over a case from another clinician (in fact in ACRM starting every case from the beginning would waste a lot of time). Such a handoff can be scripted to be complete or cursory as appropriate. In other cases the context information can be presented verbally or in written form by an instructor. Other information that would not be readily available in context might include the look or smell of the patient or the specific location of care (e.g., main OR vs. off-site ambulatory surgery center).

Simulation scenario (S). The scenario and—when possible—the debriefing together form the core of the learning experience during simulation. Simulation scenarios are more than clinical cases. They are the vehicle to reflect on medical knowledge as well as personal and team performance in a safe learning environment that elucidates similar behaviors as during real-world cases. Most simulation exercises involve a scenario that simulates a given clinical situation, challenging the participants to deal with the situation at hand. The scenario is designed in advance by the instructors in accordance with the learning objectives of the training (see later subchapter on scenario design). During the execution of the scenario, the instructor (or simulationist/simulation technician) regulates the responses of the simulator and adapts the scenario flow[259,260]; gives relevant patient, situation, or clinical information to the team that the simulator or clinical personnel does not provide itself[260,261] (see later subchapter on live in-scenario guiding); manages the exercise to enable participants to optimally act as if[259] treating a real patient (see later subchapter on scenario design).

Debriefing (D). Most training scenarios are immediately followed by some form of feedback or debriefing, respectively. Fanning and Gaba give an overview of the origin and background, the role, the models, the structural process, the elements, and several other modalities of debriefing in simulation-based learning in their recommended review.[238] The learning objectives, the target audience, and the simulation modalities drive the decision whether a debriefing is useful and if so how in-depth the debriefing process needs to be. In some courses, feedback is only minimal, whereas other courses have a dedicated debriefing session after each scenario that take as long, or even longer, than the scenario itself (see later subchapter on debriefing techniques). Several different debriefing methods exist.[24,105,109,110,238] Debriefing can be facilitated sometimes by strategically presenting snippets of the recording of the scenario.[117,238]

Ending (E). Especially for multiple-scenario courses, a separate final session may be included to end the course. This phase represents an opportunity to summarize issues that were covered and to reflect on how best to apply these lessons to real patient care.

Scenario Design and Execution: Knowing the Learning Objectives and Making It Real

The design of scenarios for interactive simulation team trainings can be tricky and typically differs from preparing training exercises for traditional curricula.

"The key is the program, not the hardware"[62] was a truth about simulation learned early in aviation simulation and similarly possesses validity for the scenario design and execution with patient simulation. Using simulation in a goal-oriented way is at least as much about the conceptual aspects of the technique as it is about the technology of the simulation devices. An understanding of the conceptual and theoretical aspects of simulation is helpful for determining the right applications of the technique and the important matchups to be made in the design and conduct of simulation exercises to obtain the best results. When used most effectively, simulation can be—to borrow a line from the music band U2—"…even better than the real thing."

In the following sections the design and conduct of scenarios for a patient simulation are touched on more closely, considering (1) establishing learning objectives; (2) applying cognitive load theory to scenario design; (3) pointing out constraints and limitations of the design, discussing

(4) conceptual issues of reality, realism, and relevance; and (5) in-scenario information and guiding.

There is a vast aggregation of literature concerning instructional design for all kinds of simulation applications. For detailed information the reader is referred to further literature.[23,77,115,177,262] The topic is covered extensively in most of the instructor training curricula that are offered at sites around the world. International and regional simulation meetings (e.g., the International Meeting on Simulation in Healthcare [IMSH] of the SSH, or the annual meeting of the Society in Europe for Simulation Applied to Medicine [SESAM]) often provide workshops on scenario design. The user groups of the major simulator manufacturers also have workshops on the topic.

The following sections can only serve as an introduction to the topic and again focus mainly on (CRM) mannequin-based patient simulation conducted for health care professionals.

GOAL ORIENTED: ESTABLISHING LEARNING OBJECTIVES

Learning objectives provide the reason and frame for the simulation scenario. They contain clinical and technical skills, or non-technical skills such as communication, leadership, teamwork, situation awareness, decision making, and task management (see Crisis Resource Management, CRM, Chapter 6). Optimally, scenarios are chosen that stress the individual's diagnostic and problem-solving abilities, the clinical and technical knowledge, and the core aspects of CRM.[75,217]

Learning objectives can be preset by a curriculum, determined via needs analysis, intuitively known by the simulation-savvy clinician educators, or learned about in instructor training or in the literature. Learning objectives operationalize relevant questions by defining who should be able to do what and in what situations.[78]

Simulation scenario design may be thought of in a stepwise, layered fashion. Research in work psychology suggests that, for the purpose of learning, it is helpful to de-construct complex tasks into phases and hierarchical levels. For example, the scenario "resuscitate the patient" includes three main goals: (1) diagnose cardiac arrest (subgoals: check pulse, check breathing, check "brain"), (2) oxygenate brain (subgoals: open airway, cardiac massage, ventilate), and (3) reestablish spontaneous circulation (subgoals: defibrillate, administer epinephrine) which require team members to coordinate (e.g., ensure that all team members know diagnosis, distribute task).[263] This insight into what behaviors are expected of a team during the scenario facilitates not only the design of the scenario as such,[115] but it also helps educators to direct their attention while observing the team's performance and possibly sharing the workload among them by distributing observational tasks in the co-debriefing setting.[264] Furthermore, it helps educators to guide the debriefing.[107] Learning objectives and performance expectations should be considered in advance in order to use the debriefing to close potential gaps and guide teams to maintain good performance.

COGNITIVE LOAD THEORY: NOT TOO MUCH, NOT TOO LITTLE

When designing and conducting simulations the learning opportunity would ideally match the abilities and learning needs of the participants. If the scenario is too difficult, participants' can be overwhelmed and their learning likely compromised. Conversely, if the scenario is too easy, participants will find no challenge, may be bored, and won't learn very much. Cognitive load theory[265] provides a framework to distinguish different aspects in a learning situation that illuminate the "difficulty" of a scenario so as to optimize it for learners. In this theory, three different forms of cognitive load are distinguished. The overall difficulty can be thought of as the sum of the following three parts: (1) Intrinsic cognitive load, which describes the complexity/difficulty of the material to be addressed. This depends somewhat on the learner's prior knowledge but beyond that some issues are just more complex than others for most. (2) Extraneous load, which stems from the presentation of the material to be learned, e.g., a well-structured textbook might make learning easier compared to a chaotic lecture. (3) Germane load, which describes the internal processes and the cognitive energy needed to process information.

Cognitive load theory would suggest, for example, that asking novice anesthesia professionals to manage both a complex clinical situation and a challenging interpersonal one may result in overload. Unfamiliarity with simulation will also raise the extrinsic load—participants have to interpret the pretend situation as if it is the real thing, making it difficult to concentrate on the lessons to be learned. The germane load might be increased when participants are concerned about being observed. They not only need to consider what the best course of action in the scenario might be, but, at the same time, also try to manage the impression that they make on the instructors and observers.

A good simulation scenario will take these different elements into account. Extraneous load can be optimized by carefully designing scenarios and by PB instructions.[255] Germane load might be optimized by helping participants become more familiar and comfortable being in simulations, for example, by well-designed simulation familiarization, or by increasing the complexity of scenarios slowly.

CONSTRAINTS AND LIMITATIONS OF SCENARIO DESIGN IDEAS

It is easy to suggest a scenario on paper but more difficult to translate it into an effective scenario for actual use. Limitations and constraints of the available simulators, personnel resources at hand, the props or external systems that would be needed, and the time needed to set up and run the proposed scenario must be considered. Most scenarios are first generated with a core idea, a "kernel" that is then fleshed out by discussion in an iterative fashion, with creative redesign or minor technical modifications. Ideally the new, redefined scenario is tested out first by instructors and technical staff, or pilot-tested with a volunteer group of participants from the target population. With highly experienced instructors a new scenario may need only a technical walkthrough before it is run for real participants. All scenarios can get better with time as glitches are found and refinements made.

SCENARIO DESIGN TEMPLATES AND SCENARIO TEMPLATES

Many centers have developed design templates for the development of their scenarios. Box 7.5 shows the key questions

BOX 7.5 Key Considerations for Simulation Scenario Scripts

Based on script templates provided by Dieckmann and Rall (https://www.inpass.de/downloadshtml/downloadscenarioscript/), the key information a scenario script should provide includes:

- Scenario name (quick reference)
- Major medical challenge of scenario
- Major cockpit resource management (CRM) challenge of scenario
- Learning goals (medical and [!] CRM)
- Brief narrative description of scenario
- Staffing (instructor/simulation team and participants)
- Case briefing (all participants together or separate briefings for different teams)
- Simulator setup and mannequin preparation
- Props needed
- Scenario "lifesavers"[259] for both excellent and bad performance of participants

Usually, the scenario script contains (1) a summary sheet with brief notes of the above mentioned topics and (2) a more detailed description of the scenario in regard to those questions on several other pages. The proper use of scenario scripts is a regular part of many instructor training courses.

for the design of scenarios. Long scenario templates that are freely available include Dieckmann and Rall's (https://www.inpass.de/downloadshtml/downloadscenarioscript/) and the Duke University template (https://anesthesiology.duke.edu/?page_id=825706). Some journals publish detailed scenario descriptions and some professional societies have created scenario repositories for members; the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Simulation Committee has a repository for scenarios to be shared among its ASA-endorsed simulation programs. By now, many scenario templates are freely available on the Internet. In general, long and detailed templates are only needed when a scenario is to be shared widely, or when there is a need to formally document it. Simpler templates will likely suffice for in-house use by a single simulation center.

REALITY VERSUS REALISM

Simulation is a complex social undertaking.[155] The concepts discussed in the upcoming section concern the nature and the impact of "fidelity" and "realism" as they apply to simulation and the goals of simulation. Both are terms widely used, and misused, in simulation design. In this chapter the concept of relevance is covered briefly. All three concepts are important components of engaging participants during simulation, an important aspect of conducting meaningful exercises.

A patient simulation exercise is itself a real occurrence that is actually happening. The exercise is a *reality*, but it is intended to represent another reality in the real world of patient care. Hence, it may or may not be perceived that way. *"Realism"* addresses the question of how closely a replication of a situation is needed to meaningfully represent this situation to participants. Aviation simulators, for example, are so realistic now that pilots with experience flying one aircraft are routinely certified to fly a totally new or different aircraft, even though they have never flown the actual aircraft before. Nestel, Krogh, and Kolbe explored realism in health care simulations in detail.[266] In their work, the authors also use the term *"meaningfulness"* in proposing strategies to help simulation educators make sense of decisions about realism.

There is an important distinction between the realism of a *simulator* (a device) and that of a *simulation* (the exercise). For example, a simulator could be indistinguishable from a real human being (e.g., an actor playing a standardized patient) and yet be used in an implausible and useless fashion, so that the simulation itself is not realistic. Conversely, certain kinds of simulation realism can be evoked by exercises that use simple simulators or even no simulator at all (see below).

It is naïve (though frequent) to think that greater realism of a simulation exercise will automatically lead to better achievement of its goals. Maximum "realism" is neither needed nor desired for every type of simulation endeavor. For some applications with some target populations, it can be highly advantageous to reduce the realism to heighten the learning experience.[157] On the other hand, merely creating a realistic simulation does not guarantee meaning or utility (e.g., learning) for the participants.[155,156] The different concepts and explanations with regard to this matter have been discussed repeatedly in the literature.[155-158,260,267-269] However, as "realism" is a complicated set of ideas in simulation, results of studies trying to investigate roots and effects of simulation realism are not conclusive, in part because each study may concentrate on a different aspect of the complex whole. Different fidelities and dimensions are used to describe or achieve the realism of simulation, as described in the following.

Different (practical) fidelities to create simulation realism. Alessi[270] defined fidelity as the "degree to which a simulation replicates reality" (p. 203). Several concepts about simulation fidelity exist.[198,260,271] These include physical fidelity (the device replicates physical aspects of the human body), environmental fidelity (the simulation room looks like the relevant clinical site), equipment fidelity (the clinical equipment works like or is the real thing), and psychological fidelity (the simulation evokes behaviors similar to the real situation). Realism is thought to be achieved by various forms of validity, such as face validity (looks and feels real to participants), content validity (the exercise covers content relevant to the target situation), construct validity (the simulation can replicate performance or behavior according to predefined constructs about work in real situations), and predictive validity (performance during a simulation exercise predicts performance in an analogous real situation.

Different (theoretical) dimensions to create simulation realism. In 2007, Dieckmann, Gaba, and Rall published an article attempting to clarify some issues about realism, reality, relevance, and how they influence the purpose of conducting simulations.[155] In their article, they applied the model of thinking about reality by the German psychologist Laucken to the realism and fidelity of simulation. Laucken described three modes of thinking about reality: physical, semantic, and phenomenal fidelity. Another publication on modes of thinking about reality was published by colleagues from Boston.[158] Apart from those definitions a variety of terms exist to describe conceptual simulation design, in particular with regard to fidelity. To gain a better understanding of the various terms and their meaning, Paige and Morin published a systematic review article on that matter and additionally suggested to divide the concepts of fidelity into physical (including environmental and equipment), conceptual, and psychological.[260] The ideas and concepts presented below are largely contributed by Dieckmann and his adaptation of broader psychological concepts to simulation in medicine:

Physical mode of realism. The physical mode concerns aspects of the simulation that can be measured in fundamental physical and chemical terms and dimensions (e.g., centimeters, grams, and seconds). For example, the weight of the mannequin, the force generated during chest compressions, and the duration of a scenario all are physical aspects of simulation reality. Despite their roughly human shape, existing mannequins have many unrealistic physical elements, for example they are made of plastic, not flesh and bone; they may have unusual mechanical noises detectable during auscultation of the chest; the "skin" does not change color.

The physical mode of simulation also relates to clinical equipment and the clinical environment. (1) Some equipment used in mannequin-based simulation is fully functional and physically identical to the real thing. Labeled syringes may contain only water instead of real medications. (2) An ISS in an actual hospital room and bed has a higher physical realism than does the same equipment in a conference room.

Semantic mode of realism. The semantic mode of realism concerns concepts and their relationships concerning clinical information and its meaning. For example, in a simulation of hemorrhagic shock, how does the participant make sense of what is going on? Within the semantic mode, a simulation of hemorrhage could be described in semantical terms as "bleeding" of flow rate x beginning at time y occurring at site z that is associated with a blood pressure of b that shows a decrease after some time from the prior value of a. It is semantically irrelevant how the information is transmitted or represented. The same pieces of *information* could be represented either using a vital signs monitor, a verbal description, or the tactile perception of decreasingly palpable pulses. The semantic mode allows the simulation exercise to represent a real situation. It allows lifeless, rosy, smiling simulators to be treated as if they were real patients. It allows water-filled syringes to be treated as if they contain effective drugs.

PATIENT SIMULATION ACTION BOX

If the right and sufficient clinical information is given to the participants at the right time, in their minds the inanimate mannequin can become a severely ill patient (see later section on "in-scenario information and guiding"). At the same time it is important for instructors to remember, in particular during the debriefing, that because meaningful simulation depends on interpreting information, it is not always interpreted by participants the way that the instructor imagines it will be.

Phenomenal mode of realism. The *phenomenal mode* deals with the learner's engagement and experience in the simulation including emotions, values, motivation, self-awareness, and beliefs. If participants are fully engaged in the simulation, then they are likely to act as if they are treating a real patient in the real clinical environment. For many purposes, providing high phenomenal realism is the key goal, but sufficient physical and semantic realism are means to this end.

PATIENT SIMULATION ACTION BOX

A good simulation scenario does not necessarily need to be designed as realistic as possible, for example having artificial blood all over the mannequin during a trauma scenario. A good simulation scenario can create the appropriate sense of realism by a combination of the following:

(1) … the simulator and environment used
(2) … the case presented, the team composition, and the professional role of each participant
(3) …clinical equipment used, or sufficient semantic equivalents
(4) … the briefing before the simulation case starts
(5) … instructor feedback when the simulator is examined (see later section, "live in-scenario information and guiding"). The application of those aspects is not trivial; they influence the way the simulation is perceived by clinical professionals.

SIMULATION REALISM AND SIMULATION RELEVANCE

The relevance of a simulation exercise concerns the match between the characteristics of the exercise and the reasons for which the exercise is conducted. Scenarios should be relevant to the trainees, but this depends on many factors, including the trainees' backgrounds and experience, the method of conducting the scenario, and related parts of the simulation course (e.g., familiarization with simulator and simulated environment, case briefing, etc.).

In fact, it is worth utilizing unrealistic elements ("unreality") in order to maximize the learning—a useful slogan is "the point is not to 'fool' them but rather to teach them." So, for example, when training on invasive procedures, it is typical to forego phenomenal realism and emphasize physical and semantic realism so that psychomotor skills can be the focus. Similarly, physical realism may be sacrificed when necessary by time compression or expansion. Boring parts of a case may be skipped for experienced personnel whereas for inexperienced clinicians situations that could become lethal extremely quickly (e.g., swap of N_2O for O_2 in the pipeline) may be slowed down so that inexperienced clinicians can try to think their way out of the problem. If such a situation were allowed to evolve at its normal speed, it would transition to management of cardiac arrest before the participants could deal with the original problem. Other uses of "unreality" include cognitive scaffolding, which provides various forms of assistance—sometimes a teacher or coach in the simulation room—or extra cues to help participants as they struggle with decision making and therapy selection.

IN-SCENARIO INFORMATION AND GUIDING

Although full-scale mannequins mimic a wide range of human features, they differ from the body of an actual patient. This gap implies a need for simulation instructors to provide in-scenario information to help participants understand scenarios. In-scenario information and guiding may also be needed to help (early) learners progress in the scenario if they are stuck or on the wrong path. Different terms such as clues, triggers, prompts, hints, and instructional support have been found in the literature associated with the concept of cueing in a simulation activity.[260] Dieckmann et al. used the unique phrase "scenario life savers."[259] Many cues and "life savers" can be used within the logic of the scenario in ways that do not disrupt the experience.

In general, one good way to feed information to participants in patient simulations about various phenomena that cannot be simulated physically is to announce the missing signs, symptoms, or examination results. Escher and colleagues summarized four methods that instructors used to provide such extra scenario information and how the different methods to convey information affected how scenarios played out.[261] The methods found included cues from (1) confederates, (2) bystanders, (3) loudspeakers from the control room to the scenario room, or via (4) an earpiece. Even though Escher et al. conclude that the mediation of information by a loudspeaker or an earpiece from the adjacent control room could be disturbing for team communication, the authors of this chapter see several advantages in the use of in-scenario audio guidance. In their opinion, audio guidance is especially helpful for feedback in those kind of situations: (a) physical examination results, such as (misleading) auscultation results, or results of abdominal palpation but usually only after the participant has credibly attempted to obtain that result physically; and (b) *immediate* correction of mental models that are not in line with the scenario (i.e., (misleading) auscultation apparently indicates pneumothorax, but there is in fact no pneumothorax).

This kind of in-scenario semantic information is incorporated by participants into their mental model of the situation at hand during the simulation and helps them to "stay in" the simulation despite physically treating a plastic mannequin.

Debriefing: Heart and Soul of Patient Simulation

As introduced in the section on the "anatomy of a simulation course" (see Fig. 7.18), conducting simulation training is not only about running the simulation scenario but equally about how, in debriefing, the participants are facilitated to reflect about what they experienced. The philosophy of teaching and learning in a debriefing of a CRM-based simulation course differs from the traditional clinical teaching style (Table 7.3).[238] For more information on debriefing in health care simulation the reader is referred to further literature.[24,105,109-111,113,238,272-276] This chapter can only serve as an introduction to the topic and focuses mainly on patient simulation with focus on (CRM) team training.

TABLE 7.3 Traditional Teaching Versus Facilitation in Simulation Training Courses

Traditional Teaching: "Teacher"	New way of teaching: "Facilitator"
Focus on theoretical or clinical knowledge only	Focus additionally on human factors/ CRM
Focus on "what" happened/"what" or "who" was *wrong*	Focus on "why" things went wrong (deeper analysis) *and* on "why" things went well
(T) is the (absolute, infallible) expert.	(I) possesses expertise, but moderates different ideas on eye level, uses knowledge and expertise of (P), discusses own views with peers.
(T) tells participants what to do better next time.	(I) helps (P) to find out root causes for their performance, examines possible solutions together.
(T) knows what is right / important for (P).	(I) helps to self-reflect, gain realistic self-awareness / consciousness; (I) guides debriefing toward interesting areas, but is open for topics relevant to (P).
(T) speaks the most during feedback.	(I) stimulates and guides discussion among participants during debriefing, but does not speak the most.
(T) is a domain expert.	(I) additionally is a CRM expert.
(T) has no special training in patient simulation-based learning.	(I) has special training and/or experience in patient simulation-based learning.
(T) makes no video-assisted feedback.	(I) makes strategic use of video when relevant to enhance debriefing.
(T) determines whether (P) has learned the intended lesson.	(I) gauges whether (P) is engaged in discussion and understands relevant issues but (P)'s experience is too complex to assess simply

CRM, Crisis Resource Management; *(I)*, Instructor/Facilitator; *(P)*, Participant; *(T)*, teacher.

SIMULATORS (DEVICES) DON'T TEACH

Most simulation training exercises involve some kind of feedback or debriefing that can be given in many different ways and settings.[111,113,238,272-275] The terms *debriefing* and *feedback* are often used synonymously, but there exists a difference in their meaning. *Feedback* is used with the intention to modify thinking and / or behavior and generally involves comparing the observed performance to a standard (whether formally or informally defined). Usually it is a one-directional flow of information about the performance from the instructor to simulation participants.[111] *Debriefing* refers to a special time and format for discussing an episode of action in the past; it is the counterpoint to a briefing, which occurs before an action or task. In contrast to feedback, debriefing is viewed as a bidirectional, interactive, and reflective discussion or conversation that *"may occur between simulation participants and facilitators [instructors], or among participants themselves, or some combination thereof"* [p. 209].[111]

In medicine, inspired by its use in aviation CRM, the debriefing concept was introduced to simulation training by Gaba and colleagues as part of ACRM simulation training for anesthesia teams.[181,217] Over the years debriefing after simulation training has been refined so that it has become an indispensable component of many simulation curricula.[273]

INSTRUCTION VERSUS FACILITATION—A NEW WAY OF TEACHING

In many learning contexts, the person who is in charge of the training usually is referred to as "instructor." In the debriefing idea described above, the instructor's role changes from an "instructor" to a "facilitator": instead of constantly instructing, the instructor's role is to *facilitate* the learning process. This is accomplished by *directing the participants* to the most interesting and important areas for consideration, *stimulating discussion* among participants to *find underlying issues* for their performance and *seeking individual solutions for future events* of similar type. For most instructors, *facilitation* is a new way of teaching and often must be learned, even if they have many years of traditional instructor teaching experience. In the simulation arena the term instructor refers to an individual who is responsible for overall direction of a simulation scenario; that person is often—but not always—one of the facilitators for the debriefing.

Fruitful discussion and learning can be triggered by reflecting on both aspects of performance that worked well and those that were difficult or problematic (see also "Safety II", chapter 6). In their paper Dieckmann et al.[277] describe the "learning from success" approach to simulation and debriefing drawing on several theoretical frameworks.

PATIENT SIMULATION ACTION BOX

Ideally, the clinical expertise of the simulation participants should be represented in the clinical expertise of the instructors. For an interprofessional trauma team training, for example, it would be best to have instructor(s)/debriefer(s) from each of the relevant professions and disciplines, especially from anesthesiology, nursing, and surgery.

DEBRIEFING TECHNIQUES

Although debriefing styles differ at institutions, sites, and individuals around the world, a common ground is shared by most simulation-based educators: debriefing should *stimulate self-reflection,* and it should unpack *how* and *why* things happened the way they did.

Reviews of debriefing techniques in simulation by Fanning and Gaba,[238] Cheng et al.,[113] and Sawyer et al.[111] indicate the broad range of literature available regarding debriefing, and highlight the many models and approaches that can be used. Debriefing most commonly occurs soon after a scenario run, but the same techniques can be used during pauses in the simulation. Although it is possible for participants to debrief themselves, this would come with limitations due to lack of structure. Usually a post-event debriefing is guided by a facilitator.[111]

A variety of approaches to debriefing exist, each with its own structural phases and several conversational structures.[238] These include Debriefing with Good Judgement,[105-107] The Diamond,[108] SHARP,[278] PEARLS,[109] TeamGAINS,[110] Alternatives and Pros & Cons,[238] and others.[111-114] These conversational structures guide the flow and the context of the debriefing and divide it into various phases, each serving a specific focus and purpose. Whereas the phases differ, Sawyer and colleagues summarize that most frameworks highlight the importance of guiding the conversation from a beginning, through an examination of events, and then relate the aspects most relevant for clinical practice.[111] An example of a debriefing structure is shown in Table 7.4.

Although it is clear that debriefing plays a crucial role in simulation exercises,[119,198,279-281] there is little evidence supporting one format over another. This should not be surprising because the goal is broad, the experience of simulation is intense, and participants' interpretations and discussion are rich.

A qualitative interview study[275] with 24 expert debriefers showed that for experienced debriefers it is not about the specific concept, but about the sets of ideas and beliefs that represent the values and teaching philosophy used: *"the debriefer is a facilitator, who must be dedicated, honest, genuinely curious and possess the abilities to facilitate a reflective debriefing [....] following the learners needs and objectives [...]"* (p. 3).[275]

Apart from applying a similar structure to the debriefing, revealing one's stance and frames, and creating a safe learning environment, most experienced debriefers blend several debriefing models and conversation techniques and adapt them dynamically, depending on personal preferences, the learners' perceived needs, and the scenario as experienced by the debriefer.[275] Asking open-ended questions in order to facilitate the discussion and foster self-reflection and self-assessment on the part of the participants as well as using silence after a question asked by the instructor are other key elements of facilitated debriefing.[111] During this silence, internal thinking processes on the part of the trainees are taking place. Open-ended questions cannot be answered with "yes" or "no" and therefore trigger the participant to explain the situation from his or her point of view. Some facilitators, especially when they are not highly experienced, use a debriefing script or a cognitive aid to help them lead the debriefing conversation effectively. On the other hand, sometimes the debriefer can just sit back and listen; the best debriefings may be when most of the discussion is purely between the participants themselves, addressing issues that are on target for the instructor's purposes, in which case the facilitator will need to use very few specific techniques of debriefing.

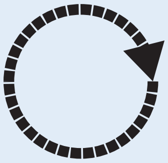
For instructors, preparing for a good debriefing starts during the conduct of the scenario. A key skill for the debriefer is to be able to watch and listen carefully to what is happening in the scenario while also attending to the tasks of running it (Fig. 7.19).

For immersive, simulation-based team training, the debriefing sessions usually last approximately as long as the scenarios themselves, although a complex scenario may well generate a nuanced conversation that could go on for much longer. For shorter simulation activities, such as unannounced mock resuscitations, debriefings have to be much shorter. The number of debriefers can vary. Some prefer to have a single debriefer (or there may be only one

TABLE 7.4

Phases of debriefings: Issues relevant to (anesthesia) crisis resource management-based simulation debriefing.

The listed phases do not necessarily all have to be followed in this time sequence and order. Depending on the scenario, the participants' performance, and the debriefing format, several phases have to be repeated within the debriefing, especially during the debriefing center part, as indicated with the circle. Sometimes phases overlap when discussing the scenario.

PHASE OF DEBRIEFING		Explanation
Pre-Debriefing	Ending the scenario	If possible, the (SC) should not be stopped too early. (P) should be allowed to realize the natural end of (SC). Ideally, (SC) should not be terminated when (P) are in the thick of it, e.g., still caring for the patient and applying treatment measures.
	Scenario-to-debriefing transition	Most sites use debriefings immediately following the simulation. This allows the (I) to hear and see (P)s' direct reactions. A variant is to give the (P)s a few minutes to discuss the (SC) itself while the (I) is planning the (D).
Debriefing Start	Emotional venting	All (HS) are given the opportunity to say how they *felt* during the (SC). This vents pent-up feelings and may be a time to deal with anomalies in the (SC) (e.g., simulator malfunction, simulation artifact, etc.). In this phase, (P)s also can critique the (SC)—critique that the (I) should acknowledge and take seriously.
	Descriptive phase	(P)s describe what happened (or portions of the audio-video recordings are replayed) and what the clinical problem in the scenario was. Different points of view are shared (e.g., doctor vs. nurse vs. first responder vs. surgeon, etc.).
	Self-identification of issues	It is sometimes useful to ask (P) to identify issues that did not go well or what they would do differently, in order to give them the opportunity to critique themselves before anyone else does. Nevertheless, the (I) can and should help identify what the underlying causes were and the pros and cons of alternate approaches.
Debriefing Center Part	Discussion of clinical content	Any major issues of clinical treatment and related CRM points should be covered. A (D) should not end without discussing and clarifying any significant clinical errors and ensuring that participants understand the correct clinical management.
	Analysis	(D) should provide considerable analysis of *why* things happened vis-à-vis the intentions of all parties, as well as alternatives and their pros and cons.
	Transfer to the "real world"	Participants can discuss how lessons from the scenario or debriefing can be applied in the real clinical world. They should discuss barriers to improvement and ways to overcome them.
	Opportunities for systems improvement	When applicable, based on the analyses, (P)s can be asked to suggest how the system can be changed to improve handling of similar situations in the future.
Debriefing End	"Take-Home-Message"	A summary of the learned key points of the (D), either by (I) or (P), can be useful.
	Terminating the debriefing	(D) are rich in content and easily can extend beyond the time available. Thus, giving a time frame for the (D) and officially marking its end is a useful transition to preparing for the next (SC) or the end-of-day activities.

"Hot Seats" (HS) = Participants (P) who were actively involved in the scenario (SC); Debriefing Room (DB); Simulation Room (SR); Simulation (S), Instructor (I), Debriefing (D), Crisis Resource Management (CRM).

Provided by M. Rall & P. Dieckmann as used in their own courses, derived from the original ACRM-course structure by D. Gaba and colleagues and used by many others around the world.

instructor) but often there are two or more "co-debriefers." Coordinating multiple facilitators can be tricky (it is sometimes described as being like dancing). Cheng et al.[264] described several effective strategies for co-debriefing.

Generally, faculty members intending to be debriefers in immersive simulation-based education need special training and practice in this teaching method[105,119,238,282,283] and continuous experience and training throughout their career.[275] Several simulation centers conduct instructor training that emphasizes debriefing skills, and debriefing is a frequent topic of workshops at large simulation conferences.

Box 7.6 shows a selection of the learning myths—especially in regard to the debriefing of patient simulation team

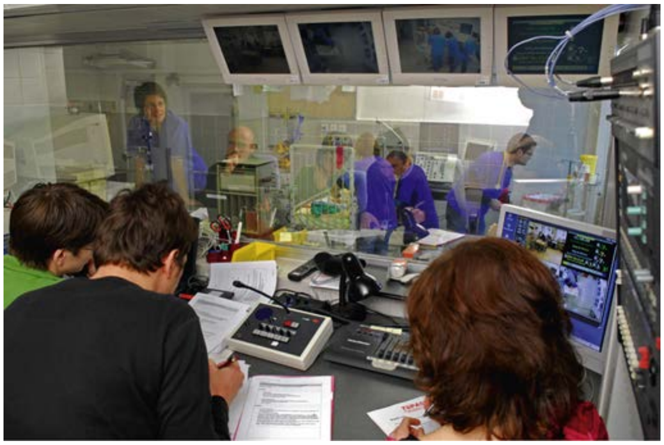


Fig. 7.19 High workload for instructors during a simulation case. The photograph shows the instructor team in front of the control panels and monitors in a control room during a simulation scenario. The control room is separated from the simulation room by a one-way mirror. The instructors have to operate the simulator, control the course of the scenario and the vital signs, give live in-scenario guiding, communicate with confederates who support the simulation in the scenario room, and at the same time take notes for the debriefing. These complex tasks need prior training or experience and good organization on the part of the instructor team. (*Photograph by B. Schaedle, Momentum Photo at University Hospital, Tübingen, Germany.*)

training—that seem to spread among medical educators, but are erroneous in the eyes of the authors, especially when training health care professionals.

USE OF RECORDED AUDIO-VIDEO SEQUENCES IN DEBRIEFINGS

In the initial ACRM simulation courses the debriefer and participants viewed the entire recording, pausing at points for discussion. This practice has been abandoned and today most debriefers use the recordings only strategically to trigger discussion of specific points.[111,119,202,283,284] Studies of debriefing provide varying results as to the utility of showing the recordings and there is no definitive proof that this deepens the debriefing experience.[116,118-120,285] Nonetheless, snippets of audio-video recordings are frequently used as a learning and self-awareness experience.[117,119,202,284] Some studies point toward a positive effect, others do not. As the process of debriefing is complex and the effects of simulation and debriefing are expected to be a long-term accumulation of learning, reflection, and change, it is not surprising that teasing out cause and effect is difficult.

One argument for the use of audio-video-triggered reflection is that anesthesia does not support much self-reflection during routine clinical work. Experienced anesthesiologists often work alone, and there is often little feedback from other anesthesia professionals or from other operating room personnel. Most cases are followed as quickly as possible with the next. The lack of peer feedback leaves a large gap between the way individuals think they perform and how they act in reality. Based on the experiential learning cycle of Kolb[286] (Fig. 7.20) the opportunity to witness one's own behavior via a recorded audio-video sequence can be more meaningful to clinicians than described behavior criticized by the instructor. Another argument is that viewing the live transmission of the simulated scenarios is

BOX 7.6 Erroneous Learning Myths in Simulation Training

Learning Myth No. 1: *"Participants always need to figure out themselves what they did wrong."* Although self-reflection can be powerful, instructors can and should be ready to point out examples of problematic decisions or actions that are relevant to the clinical setting and to stimulate discussion of the alternatives and their pros and cons. This may lead to better understanding of possible solutions and how different clinical contexts will affect which are preferred. If participants grasp the situation and possible solutions on their own that is great. But if not, debriefers should not make participants search for the answer they wish to hear (this is called a "guess what I'm thinking" question); rather, they can use their own experience to suggest approaches that have worked for them.

Learning Myth No. 2: *"You always have to say something positive before you criticize."* Educators describe the "sandwich" approach; the full sandwich has a filling of negative comment(s) sandwiched between two positive comments (a simpler "open-face" sandwich is also seen). Since debriefing is not "feedback" this is usually unnecessary. The discussion of what transpired and why should facilitate health care professionals learning from the analysis of all aspects of performance without special cushioning of the blows.

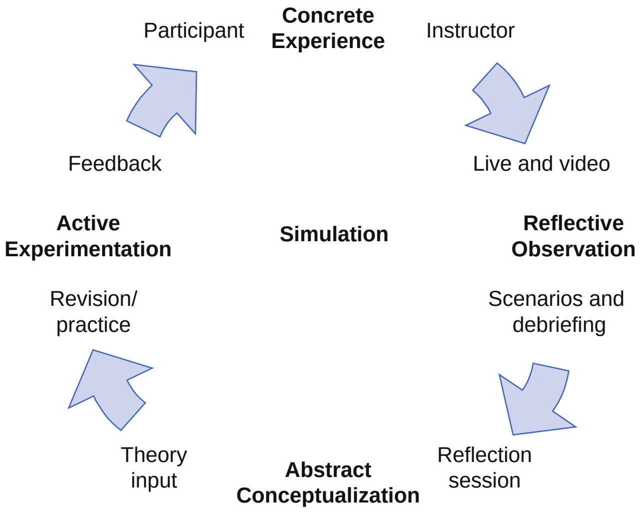


Fig. 7.20 Kolb's experimental learning cycle. Simulation team training with live video transmission and a debriefing with audio-video recordings demonstrates an ideal representation of Kolb's learning circle. During the scenario, actively involved trainees have a concrete "hands-on" experience. With the facilitation of the instructor and the own observation of audio-video sequences, the individual behavior can be actively reflected in the debriefing ("reflective observation"). The live video transmission to the non-active group during a scenario allows "reflective observation" during the scenario. During the debriefing, all trainees (active and non-active) have a phase of abstract conceptualization, in which the instructor uses generalizations of factors and root causes to show how behavior developed as it did in the scenario. With the instructor's theory input and the eventually triggered discussions, deep learning can take place and a plan can evolve during the debriefing, for both active and non-active trainees, of how to handle a similar situation next time. Active experimentation with the newly learned input and the drawn conclusions for the active as well as the non-active group can take place either during the next active scenarios or during real patient care. (Modified from Kolb DA. *Experiential learning: experience as the source of learning and development.* Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall; 1984.)

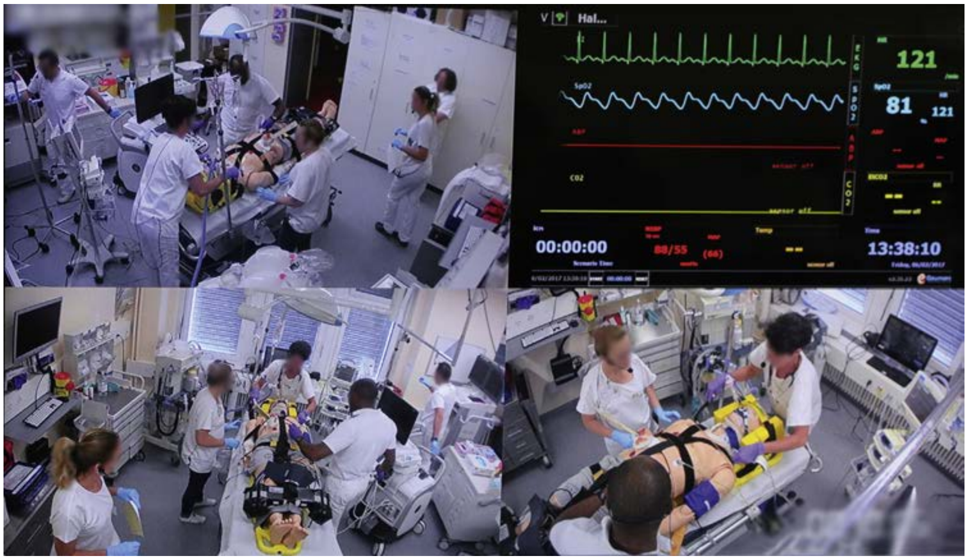


Fig. 7.21 Quad split monitor of a simulation exercise. The quad split of a simulation exercise shows the vital signs during the scenario and usually three different camera perspectives during a simulation scenario. The quad split can be used for the live transmission of the simulation scenario to the participants who are not directly involved in the scenario. And it also serves for the later audio-video-based debriefing to reflect what happened in a certain situation, providing the advantage of different angles of view and an isochronic view of the vital signs. (*Photograph provided by M. Rall, InPASS in-situ-training at Scuol Hospital, Switzerland, Chairman J. Koppenberg.*)

useful for participants who are not actively involved in a given scenario (see Fig. 7.20 and Fig. 7.21). There is evidence that observers of simulations can learn as much as participants.[287]

Advanced simulation course formats generally closely reflect Kolb's circle of adult experiential learning: (1) self-experience (participate in the scenario) or vicarious experience (observe scenario live), (2) reflect on experience (debriefing), (3) abstract conceptualization (debriefing, relate to theoretical material), and (4) active experimentation (future scenarios and use of skills in real cases).

When live transmission is used as an alternative to just watching, the observers can be given special tasks (e.g., look for assigned CRM key points, see Box 7.4) so that they are more engaged in the process. Use of sequences of the scenario recording for debriefing requires additional instructor judgment and high proficiency controlling the replay system.

EXCURSION: DEBRIEFING TECHNIQUES FOR DISCUSSION OF REAL CLINICAL CASES

Techniques of debriefing have also been applied to the analysis of real patient care events. Eppich and colleagues offer a guide to how this can be done in their article *"'Let's talk about it': translating lessons from healthcare simulation to clinical event debriefings and clinical coaching."*[288] Applying the debriefing techniques in short debriefing circles to involved clinical team has also proven quite valuable.[245,276,289-291] Clegg and MacKinnon[292] highlight in their paper *"Strategies for handling the aftermath of intraoperative death"* the need for a debriefing of the OR team after a critical incident in the OR and this concept is in accord with findings of other surveys.[293]

Debriefings after clinical cases can help teams learn.[288,294,295] This is particularly true for crews or action teams with short tenure and changing team membership that have limited time to develop and learn as a team.[296] Here, debriefings offer a useful structure for learning because members may apply the lessons learned from a debriefing of one action team to teamwork of another action team.[296] The advantages of team debriefings include a reduced number of mistakes, higher levels of speaking up and performance, and shorter work duration.[129,296-298]

However, there are barriers to achieving effective debriefings for formative assessment after real cases.[299] For example, teams are typically uncomfortable with explicit communication,[300] they tend to discuss already known instead of new information,[148] and dynamics in organizations foster "undiscussable" topics.[105,301] For example, the various debriefing systems provide useful structures for debriefings after clinical cases, although their particular logistics may have to be adapted to the clinical setting.[302] Unfortunately, most post-clinical event debriefings lack an appropriate setting, a trained debriefing facilitator, and sufficient time. [294] For example, after a cardiac arrest, (1) when resuscitation is successful many of the team members come from the ICU, so they will be busy transporting the patient or otherwise caring for them; or (2) whether or not the event was clinically successful, team members may well have been called away from important activities that need their attention, severely limiting their ability to debrief.

EXCURSION: DEBRIEFING TECHNIQUES FOR MORBIDITY AND MORTALITY CONFERENCES

Much of the philosophy and technique of debriefing applies to discussions of real cases such as morbidity and mortality (M&M) conferences. Both should be about exploring how and why things happened the way they did as opposed to the all-too-common emphasis on who was to blame. Both debriefing and M&M should aim not only to be educational for those participating but also to suggest ways to prevent or mitigate problems in the future, especially by correcting systems issues. Overall, both aim to be constructive, not destructive.

However, both debriefing and M&M conferences face the problem of "hindsight bias" (see also chapter 6). After an event it is often clear what the problem was and how it could have been avoided or best treated, making the original clinicians look foolish. Hindsight bias is very hard to avoid but effort should be made to analyze events from the standpoint of the professionals on the spot in terms of the information they had available at a given moment. Gaba sometimes will explicitly say, *"unfortunately our crystal ball for seeing the future was not operating that day."* Decisions that seem foolish in hindsight will often become totally understandable from this viewpoint.

Another common ground rule is to talk only about observable behaviors—the performance—not about individuals, personality, attitudes, assumptions, or interferences. If someone involved decides to disclose internal thoughts this can then become a topic of discussion. Using such philosophy and technique has a better chance of finding correctable systems issues, fostering a culture of safety, and making personnel comfortable in reporting and discussing problematic cases for the benefit of future patients.

DEBRIEFING IN DIFFERENT CULTURES

While debriefing is widely recognized as an important part of simulation-based training, how it unfolds in practice depends on various contextual considerations. Many of the debriefing models stem from North America and Europe—what might be called the Western cultures. Arguably, the whole idea of debriefing—verbal reflective discussions of actions—might be seen as a Western idea. With simulation spreading more around the world, different national cultures, traditions, habits, and patterns of interpretations become more relevant.[303] The relationship between the learner and the instructor will be influenced by the general customs about how people of different hierarchy levels interact with each other. A recent study, based on interviews with experienced simulation instructors in 28 different countries, showed a strong relation between "power distance" of countries and specific patterns of behavior during the debriefing. The higher the power distance, the more important is the debriefer, the more closed questions are used, and the more difficult it is for participants to discuss issues of non-technical skills and speaking-up.

Qualification and Certification of Simulation Instructors

It has been nearly 30 years since the first major wave of simulation in anesthesiology and other domains began. Over this time a variety of questions have surfaced, in general and at each institution, about how to create and sustain a cadre of simulation instructors. These include: (1) Do simulation instructors need special training? (2) Do they need continuous training after their primary training and if so how much and how often? (3) Do they need to be officially (re-) certified periodically? (4) How can the quality of an instructor be measured or differentiated? This section addresses these questions.

TASKS OF SIMULATION INSTRUCTORS—LEARNING OBJECTIVES FOR SIMULATION INSTRUCTOR COURSES

Sometimes, simulation teaching is completely analogous to bedside teaching, only with a simulated patient, and all the same skills apply. For other uses of simulation new skills may be needed,[112,272,299,304] especially for simulation activity that involves: (1) complex realistic scenarios, (2) with multiple personnel in crews and teams, (3) conducting debriefings in small groups (with or without video), (4) with a focus on human factors and CRM principles and feasible countermeasures. It is widely thought that the quality of the instructors is *the* essential element for any simulation training course, and for complex activities their competence as debriefers is the primary aspect of quality.

Most clinical educators do not necessarily have the skills most needed to be a fully capable simulation instructor. The key tasks include:

- Create relevant, plausible, meaningful clinical scenarios with the necessary realism to reach the intended learning goals (although some instructors who are excellent debriefers leave the design of scenarios to their colleagues).
- Establish an engaging learning context.[121]
- Brief/familiarize simulation participants about the simulator and the unfamiliar simulation environment.[121,299]
- Conduct (complex) clinical scenarios with the need for simultaneous control of (1) the simulator, (2) the simulation environment (i.e., in-scenario information,[261] etc.), (3) the simulation personnel (co-instructors, role-players, simulation technicians, etc.), and (4) the real-time adjustment of scenarios to offer optimal learning for all participants.
- Provide a structured post-scenario debriefing and feedback stimulating self-reflection, facilitating peer-discussion, creating deep and sustainable learning, and promoting transfer lessons to the real world.
- Act on adult learning principles, balancing facilitation and instruction during debriefing (i.e., Kolb's experimental learning cycle, see Fig. 7.20).
- Handle, as necessary, group dynamics as well as individual sensitivities during the training and the debriefing.[272]
- Use recorded audio and video strategically to facilitate debriefing (and/or for feedback especially about technical or procedural skills).
- Teach about crew resource management (CRM) decision making, situation awareness, task and team management, communication, and professionalism in addition to the transfer of medical knowledge.
- Highlight system optimization based on system theory principles of patient safety.

EDUCATION, TRAINING, AND CONTINUOUS DEVELOPMENT OF SIMULATION INSTRUCTORS

Instructor Education and Training

As described by Fanning and Gaba,[238] unlike a traditional teacher, the facilitators can position themselves not as an authority or expert, but rather as a peer and co-learner. Oftentimes, especially for experienced medical teachers,

BOX 7.7 Learning Objectives for Crisis Resource Management–Oriented Simulation Instructor Courses

- Understand how it feels to be a participant in a simulation scenario
- Understand how it feels to be debriefed in a group while others are watching or while seeing oneself on video
- Understand the interdependent influences of the different course phases ("anatomy of a simulation course," see Fig. 7.18) and apply this knowledge to a simulation exercise or course
- Reflect on the changing instructional styles that can be applicable to simulation courses (instruction versus facilitation)
- Understand basic concepts of human factors, crisis resource management (CRM), systems theory, and organizational safety (see Chapter 6)
- Be able to detect, explain, and discuss CRM key points during the debriefing of scenarios
- If using video sequences, use recorded video clips of scenarios well, and select the most relevant portions for replay and discussion
- Be able to conduct a structured debriefing and facilitate a debriefing in a nonjudgmental atmosphere with appropriate boundaries
- Understand how to manage the individual sensitivities and group dynamics of participants during debriefing
- Instead of discussing "who" made "what" "mistake," be able to focus debriefing on the analysis of "what happened," "why did it happen the way it did," "what lessons can be learned," and "how to apply these lessons to real patient care"
- Create a well-designed scenario with learning objectives appropriate for the population

Modified from the learning objectives of instructor courses by Gaba, Rall, and Dieckmann.

the most difficult task in learning this teaching approach is to stop lecturing and start listening and facilitating. At the same time, providing honest critique while holding the learner in high regard—what the authors call "critiquing the *performance* not the *performer*"—seems particularly challenging.[106,304] This is, among other things, why simulation-based educators usually need special education and training. Box 7.7 presents an example of learning objectives for an instructor training course.

Gaba, Howard, and Williams from Veterans Affairs Palo Alto Health Care System /Stanford School of Medicine (VAPAHCS/SU) pioneered CRM-oriented simulation instructor training in 1992, taking their homemade simulation system to Boston for 3 months and teaching approximately a dozen faculty of the Harvard Hospitals anesthesiology programs how to conduct ACRM courses. A few years later a consortium of the Veterans Affairs Palo Alto/Stanford (VAPAHCS/SU), the Boston Anesthesia Simulation Center (the forerunner to the Center for Medical Simulation), and the University of Toronto Sunnybrook Simulation Center created a formal instructor course, spreading the ideas and format of CRM simulation instructor training around the world. Rall has run instructor courses in cooperation with Dieckmann for more than 3000 international participants. Many institutions now offer different instructor courses nationally and internationally (ranging from 2 to 6 days in length, depending on the course and its scope). For further information about such courses the reader is referred to the simulation societies such as SSH or SESAM, or Internet searches targeting well-known simulation centers. In addition, shorter introductory courses on instructor skills are offered every year at the international health care simulation meetings (e.g., SSH's IMSH conference, or the SESAM annual meeting); many workshops at these meetings cover topics such as debriefing, instructor training, and CRM training.

Continuous Faculty Development

Recent research demonstrates the variety of challenges simulation educators perceive when conducting simulation-based training sessions.[272,304] For example, debriefings can include difficult situations such as learners who are unusually quiet, disengaged, or overwhelmed by emotions.[272] Faculty development is important to prepare simulation educators to design and conduct meaningful and respectful training sessions while anticipating potential problems, intervene proactively, and when necessary manage them with good sense and grace.[272,305] Since debriefings are considered particularly challenging, special emphasis is given to continuously improving these skills.[106,306-308]

Reflection can help simulation faculty identify how to improve their debriefing skills.[304] Observation of master debriefers, interactive learning experiences, practice, feedback by peers and experts, and mentoring can foster such improvement.[309-311]

Valid and reliable tools such as the Debriefing Assessment for Simulation in Healthcare (DASH)[307] and Objective Structured Assessment of Debriefing (OSAD)[312] can be used to monitor debriefing quality and provide data for feedback conversations for faculty development. DASH is available in a variety of languages (to date, English, German, French, Japanese, Spanish; https://harvardmedsim.org/debriefing-assessment-for-simulation-in-healthcare-dash/). DASH consists of six rating elements: (1) setting the stage for an engaging learning environment, (2) maintaining an engaging context for learning, (3) structuring the debriefing in an organized way, (4) provoking an in-depth discussion which allows for reflection, (5) identifying performance gaps and their reasons, and (6) helping to see how to improve or sustain good performance. The OSAD consists of eight categories: (1) approach, (2) environment, (3) engagement, (4) reaction, (5) reflection, (6) analysis, (7) diagnosis, and (8) application. Both tools can be applied from various perspectives (i.e., learners, colleagues, educators) which allow for a multifaceted view on debriefing quality.[313]

CERTIFICATION OF SIMULATION INSTRUCTORS

Since being a simulation instructor often requires special skills it is almost universally true that only a small fraction of an institution's faculty or staff are involved in this. For very long-standing simulation groups and centers, informal internal mechanisms have often been used to select and approve instructors. For the bulk of simulation groups and centers there has long been a desire for some formal professional recognition of who is qualified to develop, conduct, and/or debrief health care simulations which has led to different models of certification of qualified individuals. One model is that of the Academy of Medical Educators (AoME),[314] a UK-based organization of educators of medical, dental, or veterinary professionals, for which membership requires satisfying certain levels of achievement in the following five professional standard domains:

- Designing and planning learning
- Teaching and facilitating learning
- Assessment of learning
- Educational research and scholarship
- Educational management and leadership

For each domain, three levels are available that allow assessment and documentation of progress of a person. For more information the reader is referred to the AoME website (https://www.medicaleducators.org/).

The SSH offers a model that addresses more of the simulation-specific aspects of the educator role, and is applicable to all personnel, not just "medical" educators. There is a basic and an advanced level of certification. For more information about the certification for Certified Healthcare Simulation Educator (CHSE) and the Certified Healthcare Simulation Educator—Advanced (CHSE-A) the reader is referred to the society's webpage (https://www.ssih.org/Certification). These programs are rather general and do not fully address the details of qualifications applicable to specific courses. SSH certification has been far more popular for nursing personnel than for physicians; this probably accounts for the fact that few simulation instructors in anesthesiology have obtained formal certification. In another approach, while the U.S. ASA Simulation Education Network (SEN) program endorsement process does not yet certify instructors, when considering a site for endorsement it does examine the simulation background of the site's instructors, as well as the process by which each site trains and approves new instructors for their program.

It is likely that the skills and certification needed (if any) for an instructor will vary greatly with the particular course or curriculum being taught. Competence in conducting a video-based CRM debriefing would not be needed, and would not help, to teach specific manual procedures (e.g., airway management or central venous cannulation) using part-task trainers. Some sites use either a formal or informal system of tiered instructor categorization tied to the specific types of courses and roles each individual is capable of conducting. This also provides a defined process for advancement from novice instructor to grand master as experience and special training are acquired.

Accreditation of Simulation Programs, Sites, and Centers

Besides the qualification of the instructors, the physical and organizational infrastructure is important for the quality of simulation in health care. This aspect is discussed under the label of accreditation. The SESAM wrote: *"By seeking accreditation an institution can demonstrate its quality as having been judged and validated by an independent body who is internationally recognized as an opinion leader in the domain of simulation-based education in healthcare."*[315]

Several systems of program approval have emerged, some of them of particular interest to anesthesia professionals.

SESAM provides a model that has two levels of accreditation (www.sesam-web.org/accreditation/). The basic level is done based on the description of the program's work; the expanded level also includes a site visit.

BOX 7.8 **Simulation as Favored Option for Part IV of the U.S. Maintenance of Certification in Anesthesia Program by the American Board of Anesthesiology**

The simulation course must be held at a site endorsed by the Simulation Editorial Board of the American Society of Anesthesiologists, with a curriculum meeting minimum standards. Although not specifying anesthesia crisis resource management (ACRM) directly, the standards for the U.S. Maintenance of Certification in Anesthesia (MOCA) simulation are clearly derived from the ACRM simulation courses that have become common around the world:

- A minimum of 6 h of total course instruction
- Active participation in realistic (mannequin-based) simulation scenarios
- Post-scenario instructor-facilitated peer debriefing
- Management of difficult patient-care scenarios, including at least scenarios involving the following: (1) hemodynamic instability and (2) hypoxemia of any cause, including management of the difficult airway
- An emphasis on teamwork and communication
- All participants have at least one opportunity to be the primary anesthesiologist in charge (i.e., the "hot seat")
- The participant-to-instructor ratio must be no greater than 5:1
- At least one instructor must currently be in the MOCA process

The SSH provides an accreditation program, with separate but related accreditations for core standards plus one or more of the following areas of emphasis: teaching/education; assessment; research; systems integration. For more information, the reader is referred to their webpage (https://www.ssih.org/Accreditation/Full-Accreditation).

The U.S. ASA has a process to endorse anesthesia simulation programs (the ASA chose not to use the term accredit) qualifying them to be members of the ASA's SEN. Centers were originally endorsed for their ability to deliver high-quality CME to ASA members. After reaching agreement with the ABA in 2010, this ASA SEN rapidly transformed into a group of programs capable of conducting the semi-standardized Maintenance of Certification in Anesthesia (MOCA) Simulation Course. The course is a component of Part IV (practice improvement) of the ABA MOCA process. Box 7.8 shows the features of the U.S. Maintenance of Certification in Anesthesia (MOCA) simulation program.

As of November 2018, the ASA had endorsed more than 50 programs, each of which was reviewed and approved by the ASA Simulation Education Editorial Board after completion of a detailed application documenting the capability and experience of their simulation instructors, leadership, facilities, and procedures (for ASA members, see http://www.asahq.org/For-Members/Education-and-Events/Simulation-Education.aspx).

The American College of Surgeons (ACS) has a program of Accredited Education Institutes (AEI) that "*…educate and train practicing surgeons, surgical residents, medical students, and members of the surgical team using simulation-based education.*"[316] Many anesthesia simulation programs, especially those endorsed by the ASA-SEB, have a close collaborative relationship with their institution's ACS-AEI.

Benefits, Effectiveness, and Ecological Validity of Simulation Training

In the era of evidence-based medicine everyone wants to know *"does simulation work?"* and "*what is its cost effectiveness?"* This question has now been answered affirmatively, but only for a selected few circumstances. In fact, it seems clear that for many of the common, but most challenging arenas of health care, these questions may not be answerable for all practical purposes.[317] Some argue that the question of whether simulation works needs to be replaced by questions about *"when," "how,"* and *"under what conditions"* simulation "works," and finally *"how 'works' can be defined"* in a given context. In the following, the benefits of simulation are summarized, and some challenges to answer the above raised questions as well as some key findings in settings in which studies were feasible are reviewed.

BENEFITS

Simulation in health care has some fundamental advantages as a training tool. The following were modified and expanded based on the work of Gaba and DeAnda[177]:

- No risk is posed to a patient despite "hands-on" training.
- Routine clinical situations, emergency situations, and those involving uncommon but serious problems can be presented at will.
- Participants can learn to use actual complex devices, often in the relevant clinical context.
- The same situation can be presented independently to multiple subjects for evaluating individual or group performance.
- Errors can be allowed to occur and play out to their likely conclusion, whereas in a clinical setting they would require immediate intervention by a supervisor.
- To a reasonable degree, the training can be standardized and is reproducible.
- Training can be focused and allows for various forms of feedback or discussion that are difficult to embed into real patient care settings.
- "Clinical time" is under the control of the instructor; boring portions can be skipped or sped up while very difficult segments can use time dilation to allow unfamiliar individuals to have a full chance to grasp and handle the situation.
- Simulation can be stopped and restarted for teaching; time of physiological changes can be expanded or compressed, including "death-control."
- Recording, replay, and critique of performance are facilitated because patient safety or confidentiality is not an issue.

Simulation accelerates skill acquisition, improves skill retention, and reduces the extinction of skills.[26] Simulation has been heavily utilized to address non-technical skills (see Chapter 6) such as communication, teamwork, task management, leadership, situation awareness, and decision making. Those non-technical skills and human-factor-based training approaches are vital to conduct safe patient care, taking into account human performance strengths and weaknesses (see Chapter 6). Nevertheless, as mentioned below, such an arena will be the hardest to ever prove that simulation improves patient outcome.

Despite the many advantages of simulation in health care adverse effects of simulation are possible. A stimulating critical overview of medical education in general was written by Hodges and was provocatively titled "*Medical Education and the maintenance of Incompetence."*[318] The article points out that any type of education runs a risk of creating or maintaining incompetence in certain areas, especially areas that are ignored by the actual educational program. The authors recommend that all simulation instructors be especially cognizant of the risks that Hodges articulates.

EFFECTIVENESS

Challenge #1: Comparability of simulation research and evaluation of simulation. For the question of whether simulation works and how effective simulation is in regard to different aspects, evaluation concepts need to be defined and a common ground for the comparison of research in simulation needs to be produced. For the evaluation of learning and later performance outcomes, respectively, oftentimes the four-level model of Kirkpatrick as shown in Fig. 7.22 is cited.[319,320]

Another concept used to evaluate simulation is that of translational science—research designed to accelerate movement of results from the laboratory bench to the patient bedside. The concepts of a continuum of research from fundamental science through clinical trials to widespread use in patient care and of potential translational blocks were articulated originally by Sung and colleagues in 2003.[321] From this publication emerged various nomenclatures for the different levels of the research continuum in terms of increasing level of translation, called T Levels.

For education, translational science addresses how results achieved in the educational laboratory (T1) transfer to improved downstream patient care practices (T2) and improved patient and public health (T3).[322] McGaghie[322-324] first adapted the T levels of translational research to the arenas of medical education and simulation in health care, comprising T1, T2, T3, and T3′ (Table 7.5). The most important T levels for simulation interventions are T1: is performance improved when observed during simulation?; T2: does actual clinical behavior change in the workplace?; T3: is there a change in patient outcome?; and to a lesser extent T3′: is it cost-effective?

Based on those two concepts, for research purposes simple outcomes are Kirkpatrick level 1 (reactions of participants) and Kirkpatrick level 2 (change in self-confidence or of knowledge measurable via multiple choice questions). Both Kirkpatrick levels are represented by level T1. Rall et al.[325] later adapted additional T levels mentioned in other sources,[326,327] adding levels of T0, T4, T5, and T6 (see Table 7.5), and categorizing interventions by their intended outcomes. Researchers in simulation are now starting to use this terminology in describing and comparing their research protocols and results.

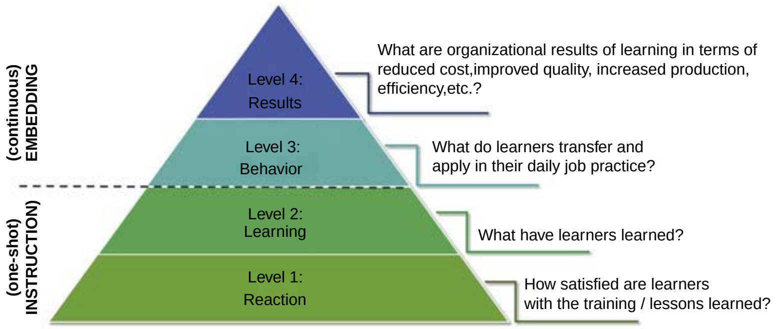

(continuous) EMBEDDING
(one-shot) INSTRUCTION)
Level 4: Results
Level 3: Behavior
Level 2: Learning
Level 1: Reaction
What are organizational results of learning in terms of reduced cost,improved quality, increased production, efficiency,etc.?
What do learners transfer and apply in their daily job practice?
What have learners learned?
How satisfied are learners with the training / lessons learned?

Fig. 7.22 Kirkpatrick's four-level training evaluation model. The model is composed of four levels: reaction—learning—behavior—and results.

TABLE 7.5 Translational Research Levels of Simulation-Based Training

Level	Description of Study Methodology	Comments/Examples
0	No measurement of learner performance	Questionnaire or multiple-choice test to assess reaction/change in knowledge
1	Performance measured during simulation only	Do participants do better in a subsequent simulation?
2	Performance measured during actual clinical care	Do participants do better in subsequent clinical practice?
3	Measurement of improvement in patient outcome	Do patients of those who had the training fare better?
3′	Measurement of cost of the intervention, the outcome, and the monetary benefit (= measuring "cost effectiveness")	Does intervention yield a net saving of money (with/without improving outcome)?
4	Measurement of dissemination of the intervention to sites beyond trial sites	Has the intervention spread elsewhere successfully?
5	Measurement of adoption of the intervention in regular practice	Has it been widely adopted?
6	Measurement of population health outcome	Has it made an impact on patient population as a whole?

Challenge #2: To define cost-effectiveness, expenses need to be put in context relative to return on investment. In simulation education the focus of evaluations historically has been mostly on qualitative instead of quantitative measures, and the suite of measurements needed to assess learning outcomes and patient outcomes are still in flux. Bukhari and colleagues published a framework for determining the return on investment of simulation-based education in health care.[328] Unfortunately, so far, evaluations that yield economic information about the return on investment are scarce.[329] And the expenses (see later section) vary (high cost to low cost) depending on many choices regarding the setup of the simulation training (see earlier section on "12 Dimensions of Simulation").

At this point, most studies of simulation-based learning are at level T0 or T1. At lower T levels simulation of various sorts has been shown to have small to medium positive effects.[330] A few studies have been at T2 and only a handful at T3 or T3′ patient outcome. Draycott and colleagues[331] showed positive effects of training that included some simulation components on neonatal outcome. Barsuk and colleagues[126] showed a reduction of central line complications and cost-efficacy after implementing simulation-based training on central venous cannulation. A series of studies from Tanzania shows that positive effects for patients is not necessarily related to the use of high-end simulation equipment.[38,332] Van de Ven and associates[333] concluded in their study that multiprofessional team training for obstetric emergencies in a medical simulation center is cost-effective in a scenario where repetition training sessions are performed on-site. Levels T4 and T5 can be considered implementation science, but few studies of simulation implementation have been performed.

Simulation researchers are encouraged to move toward studies at higher levels of translational research whenever possible. Admittedly, the cost and complexity of studies also rises non-linearly as one climbs the "T ladder." Since many applications of simulation in anesthesiology especially focus on preparing anesthesia professionals to prevent and manage uncommon but serious adverse events more effectively, the rarity of such events and the many confounding variables that affect patient outcome will make intervention studies very difficult to perform.[317]

These studies would per force need to be large, long, and complicated. To date, almost all studies have been too short and too unsystematic, with weak interventions and without adequate control of confounding variables. Unlike many types of clinical trials, which are funded by the pharmaceutical industry—which is willing to invest heavily even in complex trials because of the high direct payoff when a blockbuster drug is found—simulation interventions have no equivalent funding sources. Obtaining level 1A evidence—with multiple randomized controlled trials—of simulation's impact on patient outcome may well take studies of thousands to hundreds of thousands of patients, cared for by hundreds or thousands of clinicians, with simulation interventions that are powerful, comprehensive, sustained, and linked to performance assessment (and remediation) of individual clinicians. As yet, no agency or commercial firm is willing to fund these kinds of large, long, and complex studies.[317] And neither aviation nor nuclear power have assembled "level 1A" evidence that simulation saves airplanes, power plants, or lives. It is unlikely that aviation would ever attempt randomized trials and such studies would be nearly impossible, if not unethical.

Challenge #3: High-fidelity patient simulations can be effective and cost-effective, but work will be educationally effective only, if they meet certain criteria. Flanagan and associates provided a thorough review of the literature on the efficacy of simulation-based training for learning and assessment.[334] They concluded that "simulation makes a valuable contribution to learning for students, trainees, and clinicians. It enables learning of both routine and non-routine procedures and management of patients." In one study the effect between hours of simulation practice and learning outcomes equaled a dose-response relationship.[198]

Similarly to Flanagan, Cook and colleagues[330] concluded in their comparative review that simulation was typically more expensive but also more effective. In their summary, in comparison with other instructional methods, technology-enhanced simulation was associated with small to moderate positive effects. In another comparative review by Cook et al.[335] in which technology-enhanced simulation training in health professions education was compared to "usual practice," simulation was consistently associated with large effects for outcomes of knowledge, skills, and behaviors, and moderate effects for patient-related outcomes. Such findings were confirmed by Lorello et al.[15] in their most recent review; they and other authors[198,334] pointed to the heterogeneity of the studies, the sometimes limited robustness of their methods, and the occasional lack of a suitable control group.

A Best Evidence in Medical Education review by Issenberg and colleagues concluded that high-fidelity medical simulations are educationally effective, but only if the following conditions are met[198]:

- Educational feedback is provided.
- Repetitive practice is used or is allowed.
- Simulation is integrated sensibly into the standard curriculum.
- The range of task difficulty can be adapted to the level of the learner.

Challenge #4: Limitations of research on simulation effectiveness. Even the strongest of results come with caveats. First, it can be difficult to isolate the effects of simulation in the evaluation. In many cases simulation is only a part of a larger bundle of interventions, or concurrent with improvements in the clinical field as a whole ("secular change" as statisticians say). Second, as in the case of central venous cannulation, sometimes the clinical activity is circumscribed, the outcomes are relatively common, there is already ongoing surveillance for them, the relationship of the activity to negative outcomes is well-understood, and the intervention is itself narrow, proving an effect on patient outcome is easy. But for many arenas, especially for the anesthesia professional's management of unexpected adverse situations, the events are relatively rare; there is weak surveillance for negative outcomes, as well as many confounds between anesthesia professionals' actions and the final outcome; and the simulation interventions are complex. Proving an outcome improvement is difficult in such settings and likely would require long, complex trials involving many tens or hundreds of thousands of patients, thousands of clinicians, and a very long time horizon, as mentioned above. Further, it is unrealistic to expect that a single set of training can change complex behaviors and actions or affect patient outcome especially when there is little reinforcement in or linkage to performance assessment in actual clinical practice.

Challenge #5: Assessing the impact of simulation in health care as if it was a pharmaceutical. The assessment of the impact of simulation to date can be seen using the following analogy to drug development and testing that was introduced by Weinger[336] and expanded to address the related policy issues by Gaba.[317] Suppose one wished to test whether a purported antihypertensive drug actually succeeded in reducing blood pressure in patients and, more importantly, whether it reduced the occurrence of adverse cardiovascular events, such as myocardial infarction and stroke. Imagine then that one proceeds as follows: administer a relatively small dose of this drug only a few times per year. Acknowledge variable compliance in taking even these few doses of drug. Immerse all subjects in an environment full of stress and other factors predisposing to cardiovascular events. Use only a few patients, and follow them for a very short time.

Would anyone wonder if no significant effect was found even for a drug otherwise known to be effective? Simulation in health care has so far been tested in this way: very small, short-term studies of infrequent (often short) simulation sessions, whose lessons are not fully reinforced in real clinical environments full of production pressure and stress. In truth, the question is not "*Does one run through a simulation course make a practitioner better?*" To follow the lead of other industries of intrinsic hazard, such as commercial aviation or nuclear power production, the question is "*What is the impact on health care as an industry adopting a comprehensive integrated strategy of intensive simulation-based training and continued performance assessment of clinical personnel, over a long period of time?*" This is the approach in aviation, in which no matter how senior and how experienced pilots are, they still undergo training and assessment in simulation every year, for the entirety of their careers.

It seems unlikely that pilots would forgo simulation training and assessment when their own lives are on the line. For another thing, the public has come to expect a regulatory safety floor imposed by the government to ensure the competence of pilots. The regulator is unlikely to forgo its requirement for mandatory training and testing of pilots. If such requirements continue, there may be only two options: conduct these exercises in real airplanes, with the attendant costs (e.g., fuel) and risks; or conduct them using simulation. With health care heading in that direction,[92,222,226,245,337,338] one may be able to assess the impact of more effective simulation programs, although one may lose a control group that has never experienced simulation.

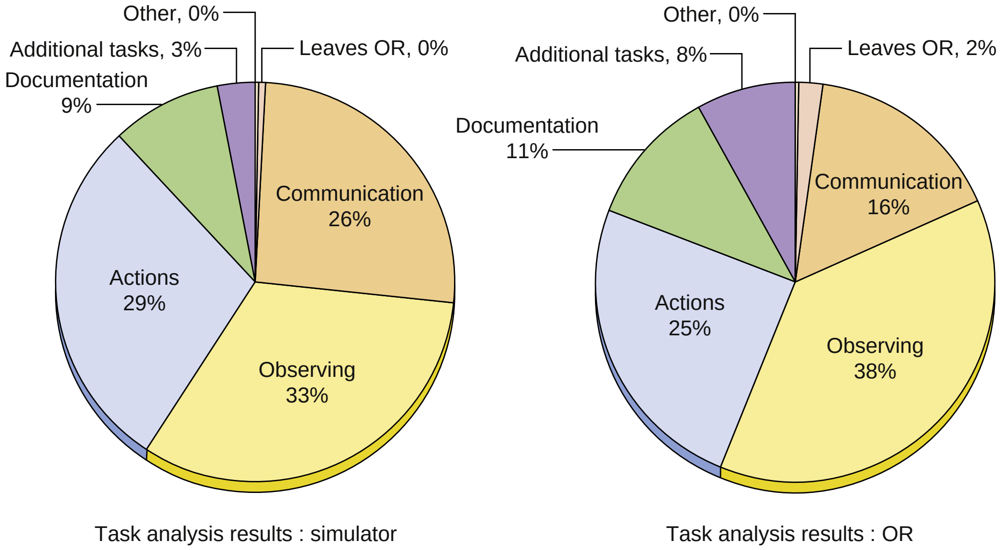


Fig. 7.23 Ecological validity of simulation versus the operating room *(OR)*. For study purposes[160], the same anesthesiologists were observed in the OR and in the simulation environment with full enactment of the OR personnel, surgical team, and anesthesia nurse. Even though the two settings have some interesting differences, the overall ecologic validity of the simulation is good. (*Courtesy of T. Manser, ETH Zurich, and University Hospital, Tübingen, Germany.*)

Other industries have a career-long set of simulation interventions that are considered to have a cumulative effect on ability. Social psychologists Helmreich and Foushee, two of the main architects of CRM training, wrote: *"Data indicate that even intensive initial CRM training constitutes only an awareness phase and introduction to the concepts, and that continuing reinforcement is essential to produce long-term changes in human factors practice."*[339] Similarly, United Airlines states in its CRM manual: *"Command/Leadership/Resource management [United's terminology for CRM] cannot be a one-shot approach. It has to be a coordinated long range program. It must therefore be an integral part of the entire training effort: new hire training, transition and upgrade programs, and recurrent training."*[340]

ECOLOGICAL VALIDITY OF PATIENT SIMULATION: IS THERE TRANSFERABILITY TO THE REAL WORLD?

When trying to translate behavior of professionals in the simulation to the behavior professionals might show during real clinical cases, one of the questions raised is the one about whether simulation can engage trainees the same way a real clinical case would. Simplified, in psychological science this is referred to as ecological validity. If actions and behavior in the simulation resemble the actions and behaviors in real-world clinical environments, it is likely that the results of research conducted in a simulation setting or lessons learned in a simulation training will be transferable to the context of actual patient care.

Patient simulation: A valid representation of the clinical reality? The question whether full-scale simulations are a valid representation of the real work environment tasks (e.g., tasks of an anesthetist in the OR, etc.) was investigated by an interdisciplinary research group in Tübingen, Germany and Zurich, Switzerland.[160] Each of the six anesthesiologists participating in the study was observed during two clinical cases and during three comparable simulator cases (one routine and two involving critical incidents). Analysis of the study showed good comparability of the different action categories as shown in Fig. 7.23. The interpretation of the group was that overall comparability between the operating room and the simulator setting is good, thereby indicating high validity for simulators in anesthesia.

Another more recent study by Weller and associates [341] examined the validity of the simulated environment with the question of whether anesthesia professionals show similar verbal communication patterns during a simulated and a real case. Seventeen anesthetists were observed via videorecordings during real cases and two simulated cases. Confirming the findings mentioned by the group in Tübingen and Zurich, the authors of the publication found no significant differences in communication patterns in the OR and the routine simulations. The participants themselves rated communication as realistic and considered their communications occurred with a similar frequency in the simulations as in comparable cases in the OR.

Those findings support the validity of the simulation environment and its value for transferable training and provide further objective confirmation of the favorable subjective impressions of realistic simulation scenarios by anesthesiologists of varying levels of experience.[65,68,69,178,179,181,342] Therefore, the evaluations presented in this chapter suggest that simulator-based training is a powerful technique that novice and experienced anesthesiologists believe to be highly beneficial, and that participants and instructors alike believe may improve clinical performance. As the developers of Sim One[175] pointed out, when simulation provides an opportunity to teach material that cannot be taught in another way, as for the systematic instruction of anesthesiologists in handling severe critical events such as cardiac arrest, anaphylaxis, or malignant hyperthermia, there is nothing with which to compare the simulator.

Simulation replacing clinical hours or case numbers during training? Because simulation offers a valid representation of real health care settings and behaviors, and also offers several advantages, in settings for which a certain number of clinical hours or patient cases are a prerequisite for certification or credentialing, simulations are sometimes allowed to replace some portion of the requirement. This is true in some states in Germany for prehospital emergency physicians (and possibly soon [pilot project] for paramedics) who are allowed to cover 25 of 50 mandatory prehospital cases within a specific 3-day simulation program.

For nursing, in the United States, 22 states allow some degree of simulation replacement of clinical hours required for final licensure as a registered nurse; the number or percentage of hours varies widely as does the specificity of the regulation and whether there are any standards for the intensity or quality of the simulation activities (see https://www.inacsl.org/sim-regulations/). A large and complex study of educational outcome (not patient outcome) provided evidence to support these practices,[343] although from Gaba's view there were some limitations concerning study methodology and the generalizability of the results.

Differences between simulated and real-world cases. Even though the mentioned studies showed high ecological validity of patient simulation, some differences between simulation and real patient care are inherent to simulation and need to be taken into account when debriefing and assessing the performance during a simulated scenario. Based on the findings of Manser and colleagues[160] variations were mostly the result of organizational factors (e.g., fewer additional tasks required in the simulator). At the same time, as described in the literature,[75] subjects (1) eventually become hypervigilant realizing that they are in a simulation, being more attentive or even doing more than they usually do (e.g., participants neglect documentation in the simulation while waiting for a disaster to happen, or scan the patient's documents at length before starting a simulated case so as not to miss an important hidden hint, or jump too quickly on signs of possible trouble); (2) conversely, will not or cannot take the situation serious because it is not a "real patient" and thus do not perform all the actions as they would for a real patient (e.g., acting sloppy, showing cavalier behavior, acting like it is a game).

Careful and creative scenario design and scenario conduct as well as proper introductory briefings may mitigate some of those effects (see earlier sections on those topics).[273]

Cost of Patient Simulation and Simulation Centers

COST OF PATIENT SIMULATION

An important question concerning simulator-based training in anesthesia is its cost effectiveness. This complicated question has two independent components. The first pertains to the impact and benefit of the training on the performance abilities of participants and patient outcome (discussed above), and the second is the cost to achieve that impact.

Although measuring the cost of simulation-based training depends on many factors, the cost may still be more easily estimated than is the impact of the training. Factors affecting the cost include:

- The type (or spectrum of types) of training involved
- The target populations for the training
- And perhaps most importantly, a variety of aspects of the organizational and financial structures and processes of the institution

The cost of simulation hardware and software varies greatly (and much simulation can be done with little to no technology). Screen-only simulators cost very little (a few hundred dollars), whereas the equivalent cost of a complete mannequin-based simulator or VR system is much higher. The price of a commercial mannequin-based simulator ranges from approximately $25,000 for intermediate-capability simulators to more than $150,000, depending on features; only the manufacturers can provide detailed information. This cost does not include any relevant clinical equipment (which, say, for an anesthesia machine is very high) and also of course the building and maintenance of a center's space.[344] Even these large expenditures do not dominate in the operational cost equation, however, because the construction cost is often borne by the institution itself, capital equipment can sometimes be donated or acquired used, and in general is amortized over a relatively long useful life, with appropriate provisions for service and upgrades.

The overall dominant cost for operating a center is likely to be the salary and benefits of its permanent personnel and the effort of expert instructors (which is typically borne directly or indirectly by their clinical department). These costs vary considerably across the spectrum of simulation activities and institutional arrangements. Usually an expert must oversee the curriculum (which may or may not impose direct costs), but the type of training and the target population will determine the amount of expert instruction required. A single faculty member can review the summaries of exercises performed by residents on a screen-based simulator in a few hours per resident per year. Non-physician instructors may be suitable for some task training or for drill and practice sessions. A single instructor can use the simulator to show pulmonary or cardiovascular physiology to a whole class of medical students. For training novice residents in basic anesthesia skills, it may be possible to have senior residents or fellows conduct the sessions at a low marginal cost. For training experienced residents and practitioners in complex material, such as the handling of critical events, it is likely no substitute expert instructors exist. The cost of expert instruction depends on the organizational arrangements of the institution. In a teaching institution where faculty members all have at least some time allocated for teaching or scholarly activities, some faculty may choose to fulfill this requirement by simulation-based teaching or scholarship. When further instructor effort is needed, payment—by the department or the center—for clinical release time may be needed.

Another organizational cost factor relates to providing access to participants for what can be complex, exhausting, and lengthy training sessions. Removing clinical personnel from revenue-producing work for training purposes is expensive. If simulation training could allow them to work more safely and efficiently, the benefit could outweigh the cost. Some research indicates that simulation team training can improve job satisfaction and effectiveness of routine care, as well as contributing to reduced illness leave and job fluctuations.[345] Some residency programs provide protected time for education of residents (e.g., one half day per week). In such cases, residents should already be available for simulation, but it might make faculty time even more scarce. In Australia and Germany, CME requirements are expressed in terms of points to be accrued.

Without question, simulation-based training is more costly than exhorting learners to read or putting them in a room with a lecturer. But when regarding credits for continuous medical education (CME), reading a short article and answering a handful of questions can only generate 1 hour of credit—or as in Australia and Germany only a small amount of CME points, as can sitting through a lecture. Simulation training is generally much more interactive and much more intensive than other activities and therefore professionals earn more credits or points, which may make simulation-based CME financially competitive relative to simpler methods.

Simulation-based training allows a host of issues to be addressed that cannot be easily tackled in other ways. It is the belief of the authors—one that has been borne out by programs "voting with their feet" since the 1990s—that if simulator-based training is deemed to be desirable, innovative changes in the organization will evolve to allow it to occur.

But other emerging aspects also make patient simulation a beneficial tool for addressing future organizations' needs. At the Harvard University hospitals, for example, the captive insurer, Harvard Risk Management Foundation, has taken unprecedented steps to link simulation-based continuous medical education training to discounts for medical malpractice premium rates for experienced clinicians in anesthesia and in obstetrics (J. Cooper, personal communication, 2005). This forward-thinking program is now being adopted by other malpractice carriers. In some jurisdictions, risk managers have chosen to invest directly in simulation activities at their institution, rather than to use the premium discount approach.

COST OF SIMULATION CENTERS

The cost varies greatly depending on the scope of the facility and its programs, the nature of the target populations, and the extent of use by the different possible stakeholder groups. How the costs are allocated to different elements of an institution or consortium is equally complicated and depends highly on local conditions. No one formula for success exists. In some models, the center is wholly responsible for its own costs but is completely free to generate and retain revenue. At the other extreme is a model whereby the host institution bears all costs of operating a central core facility, but it collects any and all revenues and may even tax components of the institution (e.g., departments) to offset the costs. Perhaps most common are mixed models in which the central authority bears the costs of initial construction and outfitting (often funded by philanthropy) and some portion of the ongoing infrastructure (simulation operations personnel, capital refurbishment, utilities), and each user (e.g., department) is responsible for providing instructors and paying for the marginal costs of any specific course or application. To date, few, if any, centers truly generate a profit, but many sites have successfully garnered external funds to offset some of the costs of training their own key target populations.

Using Simulation for Assessment of Clinical Performance

Although the dominant use of simulation is for education and training, the first simulators (both Sim One[175] and CASE[177]) were created to be research tools to assess and understand the performance of clinicians. Such assessment could address routine work in clinical environments[115,134,136,346,347] as well as performance when responding to critical events.[64,68]

Note: the terms "assessment" and "evaluation" are often used interchangeably even though they have slightly different meanings, so the authors chose to do so in this chapter, too.

For further information on the assessment of clinical performance that is related to the topics of human performance and patient safety the reader is referred to Chapter 6, where less simulation-related aspects of this topic are covered in more detail.

Performance can be divided into two components: (a) medical or technical performance, which is the appropriateness and thoroughness of the medical and technical response to the critical event; and (b) behavioral or nontechnical[348] performance, which is the appropriate use of sound crisis management behaviors (e.g., leadership, communication, distribution of workload, decision making, etc.) [24,349] (see Chapter 6).

There are a number of potential frameworks that can be referenced when defining clinical and nonclinical competencies for the performance assessment of health care professionals. In different countries, different frameworks are used to describe anesthesiologist's competencies, which provide the ground for assessment measures. Many countries build on the CanMed roles[350] (Canadian Medical Education Directives for Specialists) that describe seven roles for the competent physicians. Those roles are: medical expert, communicator, collaborator, leader/manager, health advocate, scholar, and professional. Other countries build on the six ACGME (Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education) core competencies, which include patient care, medical knowledge, practice-based learning and improvement, interpersonal and communication skills, professionalism, and systems-based practice. [102]

Assessment of medical, technical, and non-technical responses in simulation settings has resulted in a variety of tools for assessment and evaluation as suggested by different authors.[64,69,89-93,97,99,101,136,342,349,351-354]

For assessing the non-technical skills of anesthesiologists many investigators use the Anaesthesia Non-Technical Skills (ANTS) system.[91,353] In recent years, the early ANTS evaluation system was adapted to different countries, and modified for different cultures[351] and health care specialties.[355] However, there are other tools for measuring non-technical skills of anesthesia professionals. Of particular note is a rubric developed by Weinger, Gaba, and colleagues[64,356] which is simpler than ANTS but of equivalent capability.

BENEFITS OF SIMULATION-BASED PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT

Because the nature and cause of a simulated critical incident is known, one can construct in advance a list of appropriate technical activities.[357] Relative weighting of the importance of the different activities can be applied to reflect the fact that different activities, even if appropriate, differ in their importance. This weighting can be done either in advance of data collection, or post hoc (but in an appropriately blinded fashion). For example, when assessing medical or technical performance in managing malignant hyperthermia, termination of the trigger agent and administration of intravenous dantrolene would be highly important, indeed essential, items. Cooling measures, hyperventilation, and bicarbonate therapy would be among many appropriate (but less critical) responses. One can predict in advance specific technical errors to look out for. For example, for malignant hyperthermia management, these could include diluting dantrolene with the wrong diluent or an insufficient quantity of diluent.

Can the clinical outcome of a simulation predict how a real patient would have fared given the same care, and can this outcome be used in assessment? When watching a simulation scenario play out it seems tempting to think that the outcome of the patient—whether calculated by an underlying mathematical model of physiology (for a few simulators) or based on apparent adherence to patient care guidelines—can be the primary determinant of an individual assessment or a definitive prediction of what outcome a real patient would have had. Such a temptation is largely dangerous. Perhaps at the extremes of what transpired the apparent outcome could be reliable. If a patient is portrayed in ventricular fibrillation and nothing is done it is certain that they will die. If a healthy patient with substantial neuromuscular blockade receiving a FiO_2 of 50% oxygen is suddenly not ventilated for 30 seconds it is nearly certain that they will be fine. In between such extremes the exact outcome is very hard to predict. There will be isolated situations in which a mathematical model can predict certain physiologic variables, but the influence of those on other variables may be unknown. Why do some patients suffer an arrhythmia if their blood pressure falls below, say, systolic pressure of 50, 60, or 70 torr for a certain amount of time whereas others tolerate it fine? Why does one patient have return of spontaneous circulation after electric countershock applied at the same interval after dysrhythmia onset and another does not? Perfect decision making in resuscitation of a real patient cannot guarantee that electric countershock would successfully restore a normal cardiac rhythm. For the foreseeable future, any credible performance measurement technique must involve subjective judgments by clinical experts about the care process rather than about the calculated or presumed outcome.

PITFALLS OF SIMULATION-BASED PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT

Technical versus nontechnical (CRM) skills. As indicated in previous sections, it is feasible (if difficult) to assess a technical response to specific events and generic nontechnical behaviors (CRM). For which kinds of assessments is it appropriate to measure only technical performance, only nontechnical performance, or some combination of the two?

Number of scenarios. How many different scenarios are needed to achieve robust performance assessment of individuals in all relevant aspects (technical and nontechnical) of patient care? The literature suggests that the variability of individual performance across different scenarios is high, in fact greater than the variability across raters. If simulation is to be used to assess an individual a large number of scenarios would need to be conducted for each person. Having a larger number of scenarios is more effective in improving the reliability of ratings than is having a larger number of raters.[64,237,358]

Rating individuals versus rating crews or teams. Anesthesiologists work as individuals and in crews and teams with other anesthesiologists and with surgeons, nurses, technicians, and others. Should the performance of individuals working alone be assessed? Should anesthesiologists be able to call for and use help in solving problems? If so, can one still rate the individual when working with a team?

Performance fluctuation. How can performance that fluctuates substantially over time (i.e., during a simulation scenario) be aggregated into a single rating? This issue was recognized by Gaba and colleagues as a major apparent source of interrater disagreement.[349] It is not addressed by any current rating system.[91,359] One option is to conduct moment-by-moment rating to yield a high-resolution time series of the varying performance. A variety of mathematical techniques could then be applied to the time series to yield appropriate measures of aggregate performance and variation.

Criterion thresholds. What level of performance should be set as criterion thresholds for different purposes? Can benchmarks of performance be established by truly expert clinicians (recognizing that years of experience and hierarchic rank are not surrogates for expertise or skill)? Similarly, how does the rating system deal with single actions or behaviors that were lethal or harmful in the presence of otherwise good performance? If used for formative assessment, a rating system should indicate the successes of the examinee and the failures. If used for summative or high-stakes assessment, however, it may be critical to ensure that the examinee who risks harming a simulated patient cannot outscore another examinee whose overall performance is less strong but who at least did not endanger the patient. Not performing chest compressions in a cardiac arrest situation would be such criterion for exclusion.

Appropriate statistical analysis of validity, interrater reliability, and reproducibility of these assessments. Various statistical tests and approaches have been used to evaluate these characteristics. The data on performance show various levels of interrater variance and high interindividual (and inter-team) variability.[68,69,181,342,349,360] As detailed by Gaba and colleagues,[349] some interrater reliability statistics are more stringent than others, especially in terms of the nature of the "by chance" benchmark. No firm consensus has been reached regarding which tests are most appropriate to answer key questions about simulation-based performance assessment. Some of the rating systems (including ANTS) have used less stringent tests of interrater reliability. Generalizability theory[361] offers a set of statistical techniques to sort out the impact of scenario, subject, rater, number of scenarios, and other facets on such assessments. This technique specifies how comparisons can be made against reference performance levels or as relative comparisons between subjects without a fixed benchmark.

Although simulation should provide a useful window on performance assessment, it remains challenging to develop widely accepted performance measures of anesthesiologists' skills,[362] even if the simulator is used as a tool to present standardized scenarios.[363] Klemola and Norros[364] published a newer way of looking at performance that involves anesthesiologists' habit of actions. These authors distinguished between reactive habits (conservative, self-contained, reluctant to construct subjective evaluations) and interpretative habits (creative, interactive, continuous integrative reasoning). They showed that many issues must be considered when discussing the best method of education and evaluation. Additional issues include defining and assessing professional competence.

USING SIMULATION FOR THE EVALUATION AND TESTING OF ANESTHESIA PROFESSIONALS

The use of simulation as a tool for performance assessment has presumed advantages: scenarios are known, errors can be allowed to occur and play out, and intensive recording and archiving of performance is possible. Simulation provides a unique window on performance that is prospective and about challenging situations, whereas routine observation of real work is prospective but most commonly only sees less challenging situations, and case reports about performance may be of tough cases but are often incomplete and hindsight-based.[365] Scoring or certifying competence by using the simulator is more problematic than using the simulator as a teaching tool, however. Anesthesiologists have long discussed the possibility of using the simulator as a tool for examinations, either for graduation from a residency or for ABA certification. In Israel, a simulation examination has become part of the board certification process.[95]

Despite these difficulties, the use of anesthesia simulation to assist in evaluating performance is likely to increase in the future. Even though simulation is currently used for some high-stakes examinations, the challenges remain the same: (1) It requires independent evaluation of the simulation scenarios and assessment of the predictive power of the subjective judgments made by experts scoring the examinee. (2) There is a lack of any well-accepted standard for performance evaluation.

Another difficulty with using simulation for high-stakes testing at a neutral site is that the operating room equipment would rarely be the same as that used by the candidate, and the operating room staff's operational protocols could differ from the protocols familiar to the candidate. In the training situation, these difficulties can be overlooked as part of the global suspension of disbelief needed to maximize the benefits of simulation training. In the test situation, these differences potentially could skew the results. This issue could be addressed by allowing candidates preparing to take their examination to undergo sufficient practice sessions to familiarize themselves fully with the standard simulation environment used for the test.

Another application of simulation-based performance assessment would be for the evaluation of trainees or experienced clinicians who have been placed on probation or for whom dismissal from their position is already a distinct possibility. For these clinicians, the burden of proof is on them to show their skills. Simulation could offer a more controlled environment for these clinicians to do so. The same could be true for practitioners who wish to return to clinical work after a hiatus.

The existing systems of performance evaluation, which use a haphazard composite of subjective judgment of clinical competency in clinical work along with written and oral examinations, has itself never been validated. Many experts believe that the written examination does not correlate well with clinical ability, and the degree to which the oral examination process tests actual clinical skill is unknown. Simulation could offer candidates the opportunity to show their clinical abilities in a controlled clinical domain; appropriate scenarios can probe language skills and the ability to act as an effective consultant to other clinicians.[226,366]

The ABA transitioned in 2017 to a new format for the Part 2 Examination, named the APPLIED Examination, to include an Objective Standardized Clinical Examination (OSCE) component along with the traditional structured oral examination component. The OSCE stations do not include full-scale mannequin-based simulation but do include performance on task trainers and encounters with actors playing roles as patients or as clinical personnel (e.g., surgeon).

The methods currently used to assess the performance of clinicians in their actual clinical work are weak and inconsistent; systematically incompetent anesthesia professionals are not easily identified or removed from practice. Thus, reasonable arguments can be made that the field of performance assessment has advanced sufficiently to allow consideration of simulation-based examinations, including full mannequin-based simulations, even for high-stakes purposes, especially considering the limitations of the current systems of written and oral examination.[366] Nonetheless, simulation-based performance assessment remains a controversial topic for discussion in the simulation and clinical anesthesiology communities. The anesthesia professions should be careful about how they may introduce simulation-based performance evaluation. The controversy should not divert attention from the most common application of simulation, which is to improve clinical performance through training individuals and teams to prevent and manage adverse clinical events.

Simulation Societies and Simulation Journals

One measure of the evolving maturity of simulation in health care is the formation and growth of professional societies and associated peer-reviewed journals. Organizations such as the Society for Simulation in Health Care (SSH) and the SESAM (www.sesam-web.org) have been constantly striving to promote knowledge and use of simulation in health care. Although anesthesiology was the medical field that initiated work on the fully interactive mannequin-based simulator and that dominated the early developments in the field, simulation is a broad strategy that has now been widely adopted by many different disciplines and domains in health. For the most part, simulation professional societies have sprung up as explicitly multidisciplinary organizations, while clinical societies have also created committees and other bodies to oversee or facilitate the use of simulation in their settings. Major leadership roles in the multidisciplinary societies have been played by anesthesiologists and engineers associated with anesthesiology far more frequently than their prevalence in the clinician population would otherwise predict.

Periodic scientific congresses on simulation such as the Rochester Conferences on Simulation in Anesthesia have been under way since the mid-1990s although attendance was less than 100 people. The largest simulation organization is SSH, which was founded in 2004 as the outgrowth of the group that had operated the International Meeting on Medical Simulation for several years as a satellite to the annual meeting of the Society for Technology in Anesthesia. Under the auspices of SSH, the meeting was transformed into the IMSH, encompassing all health care disciplines and domains, not just medicine. Although starting with far fewer attendees, the annual meeting of SESAM now has around 850 attendees (2018). Similarly, for SSH, whereas the original IMMS had at most 200 attendees, IMSH in 2018 had more than 3000 attendees. For IMSH this number places it in the category of a medium-sized scientific meeting; to put this in the context of anesthesiology, it would rank as the third largest meeting in the United States, falling below only the ASA meeting (about 14,000 attendees) and the New York Postgraduate Assembly in Anesthesiology (PGA) conference (over 4000 attendees), but ranking ahead of the International Anesthesia Research Society (IARS) annual meeting (about 1000 attendees).

Another sign of the growing maturity of simulation in health care is the establishment and growth of peer-reviewed journals for the field. SSH has published *Simulation in Healthcare* in print and online every other month since 2006. This journal was approved for indexing by PubMed in 2008. Many organizations have become affiliates of SSH and most have made *Simulation in Healthcare* their official publication (for example the Australian SSH, and the Association of Standardized Patient Educators). The International Nursing Association for Clinical Simulation and Learning has published (online only) the *Journal of Clinical Simulation in Nursing* since 2006 although it rarely has papers concerning anesthesiology. The BMJ *Simulation and Technology-Enhanced Learning*, the journal of the UK Association for Simulated Practice in Healthcare, has been published (online only) since 2014. *Advances in Simulation*, the official journal of SESAM, has been published (online only) since 2016.

The Future of Patient Simulation in Anesthesia

The future is now—we are it.[234]

More than three decades of consistent development have passed; the field of simulation in health care could be described metaphorically as being in its adolescence or young adulthood. Thousands of simulators are in use around the world in thousands of clinical programs. Anesthesiology and critical care remain important mainstays in simulation, which is now a standard part of the training of anesthesia professionals, although these fields have now become minority users when compared to numerous users across all the rest of health care. Yet even in anesthesiology, with nearly 30 years of simulation under its belt, the fraction of anesthesia professionals who have undergone a serious simulation experience since completing their initial training is relatively small. For example, as of 2018 Gaba estimates that only about 25% of board-certified anesthesiologists in the United States have undergone the MOCA simulation course.

The modalities of simulation have expanded from completely nontechnological to fully virtual. MBS have become more sophisticated, easier to use, and more portable, and available in many different models from multiple manufacturers. On the other hand, considering that it is now nearly 25 years since the first commercial simulators were introduced, the overall improvement in the features, reliability, and clinical or physical realism has not advanced at nearly the rate as for computing equipment over the same period. In part this is due to the fact that improvements in simulators depend heavily on the demand for the devices in general, and for special features in particular. There is a steep tradeoff between features and many otherwise desirable improvements may be too costly for their expected impact or demand. Simulators that use complex mathematical models of physiology and pharmacology have largely retreated from the marketplace since many applications can be managed well with less complicated control systems.

In contrast to aeronautical engineers designing airplanes, anesthesia professionals or biomedical engineers do not design and build human beings. In aviation the fundamental differential equations of fluid mechanics and aerodynamics are firmly established, allowing supercomputers to provide technically meaningful simulations as replacements for many physical tests; furthermore, test flights of prototype aircraft are conducted with sophisticated instrumentation built in to test and carefully capture their behavior. Clinicians will never have this type of knowledge about the human body.

VR and AR are still in an early childhood phase, with rapid development under way but with maturity still far away. Many current (late 2018) VR systems address visualization of anatomy or physical structures. Only a few provide multiparticipant interaction in an immersive virtual environment. As far as the virtual patient is concerned they are only as good as the underlying engines—mathematical or otherwise—that drive their clinical responses. The coming decade(s) will likely see a continued proliferation of VR systems with substantial shakeout of techniques, technologies, and firms. Currently many users of simulation are beginning to try out VR and AR systems but it is still very early in their development and use.

VR proponents imagine a VR so realistic that it rivals, or is indistinguishable from, the real world. This would approach the *Star Trek* holodeck or the “brain in a vat” style of simulation in *The Matrix*. Although we once predicted that interactive VR could take over from physical simulation by 2020 to 2025, and the tide has indeed started to turn, we predict that it will still be a long time—if ever—before this happens. Whether there is indeed something fundamentally different about human professionals working together naturally in a physically realistic clinical environment versus doing the same via some sort of VR remains to be seen.

Patient simulation has now become a regular part of initial and recurrent training of most anesthesia professionals and many other clinicians in many countries in the developed world, and significant penetration into the developing world. Zero to low technology simulations are also being used successfully in low resource areas to address important health issues.

With patient simulation issues of human factors and patient safety, in part via the CRM concept, were introduced to health care as ACRM training and its equivalents in various clinical arenas. This has been an influential complement to traditional methods and content of teaching and learning in a large variety of health care domains, especially those that share the complex and dynamic work profile of anesthesiology—decision making playing out over seconds, minutes, and hours; working with action teams; wielding highly lethal interventions as described in Chapter 6. Since all of the pioneering work on mannequin-based simulation and its key applications was done in anesthesiology, our field can rightly claim to have given one more gift to all of health care, to accompany other gifts such as the Apgar score, modern pulse oximetry and capnography, blood gas analysis, mechanical ventilation, etc. Moreover, despite its wide spread beyond anesthesiology, anesthesia professionals and others working with them continue to play major leadership roles in multidisciplinary and multiprofessional simulation centers and organizations.

Fully integrated simulation team training with a significant focus on human factors and CRM may improve patient safety and quality in acute care settings, and it may increase employee satisfaction and effectiveness of routine work. Simulation team training is becoming more common, but is still not solidly embedded into the fabric of health care as a core part of how we do business as is the case for commercial aviation or nuclear power. While health care has a long way to go to achieve the full impact of simulation on the quality and safety of patient care, the authors no longer fear that the technique of simulation will be rejected in our field, and they believe it is worth it to remain on a path toward the comprehensive industrywide, career-long application of simulation to save as many hearts, brains, and lives as possible.

Appendix 7.1 Online Links and Useful Resources

- American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Simulation Education Network
  - Many resources on simulation and links to ASA-endorsed simulation centers
- Society for Simulation in Healthcare (SSH)
  - Homepage: www.ssih.org
  - Journal *Simulation in Healthcare*, Elsevier:https://journals.lww.com/simulationinhealthcare/pages/default.aspx
  - Website of the Instructor Certification program of SSH: https://www.ssih.org/Certification
  - Criteria for Accreditation of Simulation Centers by SSH: https://www.ssih.org/Accreditation
- Society in Europe for Simulation in Medicine (SESAM): www.sesam-web.org
- Stanford Simulation Site - Center for Immersive and Simulation-based Learning: cisl.stanford.edu
- Center for Advanced Pediatric and Perinatal Education (CAPE): cape.stanford.edu
- Center for Medical Simulation (CMS in Boston): harvardmedsim.org
- WISER Simulation Center—University of Pittsburgh Medical Center: www.wiser.pitt.edu

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and Drs. Marcus Rall, David M. Gaba, and Peter Dieckmann would like to thank Dr. Christoph Bernard Eich for contributing to this chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Donaldson L. London, UK: The Stationary Office. Online available from https://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/20130105045448/http://www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/documents/digitalasset/dh_096231.pdf. Accessed November 28, 2018;2008.
2. Mai CL, et al. In: Coté CJ, Lerman J, Anderson BJ, eds. *A Practice of Anesthesia for Infants and Children*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2019:1204–1211.e1202.
3. Eppich WJ, et al. *Curr opinped*. 2006;18(3):266–271.
4. Weinstock PH, et al. *SPediatr Crit Care Med* 2009;10(2):176-181.
5. Everett TC, et al. *Pediatric Anesthesia*. 2017;27(10):984–990.
6. Halamek LP, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2000;106(4):E45.
7. Eich C, et al. *BJA*. 2007;98(4):417–419.
8. Niles D, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(8):909–912.
9. Sutton RM, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(3):407–409.
10. Kohn LT, et al. National Academies Press. 2000.
11. Dorman T, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(1):263–272.
12. Gallagher CJ, Tan JM. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2010;48(3):83–99.
13. Weller J. In: Riley RH, ed. *Manual of Simulation in Healthcare*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2008.
14. Weller J, et al. *N Z Med J*. 2015;128(1418):40–51.
15. Lorello GR, et al. *BJA*. 2014;112(2):231–245.
16. LeBlanc VR, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2011;6(suppl):S24–S29.
17. Higham H, Baxendale B. *BJA*. 2017;119:i106–i114.
18. Salas E, et al. *BMJ Quality & Safety*. 2013;22(6):449–452.
19. *The Comprehensive Textbook of Healthcare Simulation*. corrected 2nd printing ed. New York, Heidelberg, Dordrecht, London: Springer; 2014.
20. *Defining Excellence in Simulation Programs*. 1st ed. Philadelphia, PA: Society for Simulation in Healthcare; 2014.
21. *Manual of Simulation in Healthcare*. 2nd ed. Oxford University Press; 2015.
22. Gallagher CJ, Issenberg SB. *Simulation in Anesthesia*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2006.
23. Kyle RR, Murray WB. *Clinical Simulation: Operations, Engineering and Management*. Amsterdam, Sydney, Boston: Academic Press Elsevier; 2008.
24. Gaba DM, et al. *Crisis Management in Anesthesiology*. 2nd ed. Elsevier; 2014.

25. DeMaria S, et al. *BMJ*. 2017.
26. Murray DJ. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2011;77(5):528–533.
27. Hicks CM, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2008;15(11):1136–1143.
28. Rosen MA, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2008;15(11):1190–1198.
29. Parsons JR, et al. *West J Emerg Med*. 2018;19(1):205–210.
30. Steinemann S, et al. *J Surg Educ*. 2011;68(6):472–477.
31. Härgestam M, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6(1).
32. Rubio-Gurung S, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2014;134(3):e790–e797.
33. Capella J, et al. *J Surg Educ*. 2010;67(6):439–443.
34. Campbell DM, et al. *Paediatr Child Health*. 2009;14(1):19–23.
35. Peacock PJ, et al. *Cureus*. 2016;8(9):e790-e790.
36. Lee MMH, et al. *BMJ*. 2017;3(4):142–148.
37. Gardner R, Raemer DB. *Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am*. 2008;35(1):97–127.
38. Nelissen E, et al. *BMC*. 2017;17(1):301.
39. Fann JI, et al. In: Levine AI, DeMaria Jr S, Schwartz AD, Sim AJ, eds. *The Comprehensive Textbook of Healthcare Simulation*. New York: Springer; 2014:299–313.
40. Maluf MA, et al. *Rev Brasil Cirur Card*. 2015;30(5):562–570.
41. Giuliani M, et al. *Radiation Oncology*. 2014;9:189.
42. Singleton MN, et al. *BMJ*. 2017.
43. Sandahl C, et al. *Int J Health Care Qual Assur*. 2013;26(2):174–188.
44. Phrampus PE, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2016;11(2):82–88.
45. Walsh K, et al. *BMJ*. 2018;4(1):1–3.
46. Hunt EA, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2014;85:945–951.
47. Hayes CW, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(7):1668–1672.
48. Hendrickse AD, et al. *J R Army Med Corps*. 2001;147(2):173–178.
49. Gaba DM. *Simul Healthc*. 2014;9(6):337–338.
50. Raemer DB, et al. *Acad Med*. 2016;91(4):530–539.
51. Szyld D, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2017;12(6):385–392.
52. Edwards SE, et al. *BMJ*. 2015;1(3):87–93.
53. Jowsey T, et al. *BMJ*. 2018.
54. Beal MD, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2017;12(2):104–116.
55. Paige JT, et al. *BMJ*. 2017;3(4):127–134.
56. Perdue TO, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2017;12(5):308–313.
57. Solanki P, et al. *BMJ*. 2017.
58. Stroobants J, et al. *Resuscitation*. 85(12):1769-1774.
59. Wilks J, Pendergast D. *Health Ed J*. 2017;76(8):1009–1023.
60. Böttiger BW, Van Aken H. *The Lancet*. 2015;385(9985):2353.
61. Van de Velde S, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2009;54(3):447–457.e445.
62. Meier AH, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2001;192(3):372–384.
63. Stefanich L, Cruz-Neira C. *BiomedSci Instru*. 1999;35:141–145.
64. Weinger MB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(3):475–489.
65. Schwid HA, O'Donnell D. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(4):495–501.
66. Lindekaer AL, et al. *Acta anaesthes Scand*. 1997;41(10):1280–1284.
67. Byrne AJ, Jones JG. *BJA*. 1997;78(5):553–556.
68. DeAnda A, Gaba DM. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(3):308–315.
69. Schwid MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(6):1434–1444.
70. Gardi T, et al. *Acta Anaesth Scand*. 2001;45(8):1032–1035.
71. Jacobsen J, et al. *Acta Anaesth Scand*. 2001;45(3):315–319.
72. Singer SJ, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2003;12(2):112–118.
73. Cooper JB, et al. *Simul Health*. 2011;6(4):231–238.
74. Singer SJ, et al. *Health Care Manage Rev*. 2011;36(2):188–200.
75. Driver JF, et al. In: Youngberg BJ, ed. *Principles of Risk Management and Patient Safety*. Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett Learning; 2011.
76. Barsuk JH, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2016;11(1):52–59.
77. Birsner ML, Satin AJ. *Sem Peri*. 2013;37(3):175–178.
78. Thomas PA, eds. *Curriculum Development for Medical Education*. 3rd ed. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press; 2015.
79. Gordon JA, Pawlowski J. *E Acad Med*. 2002;77(7):751–752.
80. Issenberg SB, Scalese RJ. *Perspect Biol Med*. 2008;51(1):31–46.
81. Murray DJ. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2014;27(6):610–615.
82. Sørensen JL, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2015;5(10).
83. Nielsen DS, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2014;9(1):48–55.
84. Riley W, et al. *Qual Safe Health Care*. 2010;19(suppl 3):i53–i56.
85. Patterson MD, et al. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2013;22(6):468–477.
86. Biddell EA, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2016;11(2):94–99.
87. McIntosh CA, et al. *BMJ*. 2018;4(1):4–12.
88. Gignon M, et al. *Int J Occup Saf Ergon*. 2017;23(4):589–591.
89. Howard SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(6):1345–1355.
90. Knudson MM, et al. *J Trauma*. 2008;64(2):255–263.
91. Fletcher G, et al. *Br j Anaesthes*. 2003;90(5):580–588.
92. Barsuk D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):803–809. able of contents.
93. Overly FL, et al. *Ped Emerg Care*. 2007;23(1):11–15.
94. Fehr JJ, al dt. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115(6):1308–1315.
95. Boulet JR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(6):1270–1280.
96. Ottestad E, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(3):769–775.
97. Boulet John R, Murray David J. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(4):1041–1052.
98. Murray D, Enarson C. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(5):895–896.
99. Boulet JR, Murray D. *Can J Anaesthes*. 2012;59(2):182–192.
100. Ryall T, et al. *J Multidisc Healthc*. 2016;9:69–82.
101. Byrne AJ, Greaves JD. *Br J Anaesthes*. 2001;86(3):445–450.
102. Tetzlaff MD, John E. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(4):812–825.
103. Lien CA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(3):410–412.
104. Cheng A, et al. *BMJ*. 2016;2(3):51–60.
105. Rudolph JW, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2007;25:361–376.
106. Rudolph JW, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2013;8:304–316.
107. Rudolph JW, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2008;15(11):1010–1016.
108. Jaye P, et al. *Clin Teacher*. 2015;12(3):171–175.
109. Eppich W, Cheng A. *Simul Healthc*. 2015;10.
110. Kolbe M, et al. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2013;22:541–553.
111. Sawyer T, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2016;11.
112. Eppich WJ, et al. *Acad Med*. 2015;90.
113. Cheng A, et al. *Med Educ*. 2014;48.
114. Kolbe M, et al. *Adv Simul*. 2016;1(1):29.
115. Schick CJ, et al. *Simul in Health*. 2015;10(3):178–187.
116. Farooq O, et al. *BMJ*. 2017;3(2):48–53.
117. Krogh K, et al. *Clin Simul Nursing*. 2015;11(3):180–187.
118. Reed SJ,A, et al. *Clin SimulNursing*. 2013;9:585–591.
119. Savoldelli GL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:279–285.
120. Sawyer T, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2012;7(4):213–221.
121. Rudolph JW, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2014;9(6):339–349.
122. Sullivan NJ, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2015;86:6–13.
123. Cheng A, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2015;93:142–149.
124. Grande B, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthes*. 2017;30(6):743–747.
125. Kennedy CC, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(1):169–178.
126. Barsuk JH, et al. *BMJ*. 2014;23(9):749–756.
127. Pian-Smith MCM, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2009;4(2):84–91.
128. O'Connor P, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2013;39:426–431.
129. Weiss M, et al. *Eur J Work Organ Psychol*. 2017;26(1):66–80.
130. St.Pierre M, et al. *Der Anaesthesist*. 2016;65(9):681–689.
131. Minehart RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(1):160–171.
132. Kobayashi L, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2006;1(2):72–78.
133. Kyle RR, et al. *JEPM*. 2004;6(1):E029-E029.
134. Burtscher MJ, et al. *J Exp Psychol Appl*. 2011;17:257–269.
135. Manser T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1606–1615.
136. Burtscher MJ, et al. *BrJ Anaesth*. 2011;106(6):801–806.
137. Schmutz J, et al. *Eur J Work Organ Psychol*. 2015;24:761–776.
138. Riethmüller M, et al. *Ergonomics*. 2012;55(1):55–68.
139. Künzle B, et al. *Eur J Work Organ Psychol*. 2010;19:505–531.
140. Künzle B, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2010;19:1–6.
141. Bogenstätter Y, et al. *Hum Factors*. 2009;51:115–125.
142. Tschan F, et al. *Small Group Research*. 2009;40:271–300.
143. Weiss M, et al. *Small Group Research*. 2014;45:290–313.
144. St.Pierre M, et al. *Der Anaesthesist*. 2012;61(10):857–866.
145. Kolbe M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:1099–1108.
146. Minehart RD, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2012;7:166–170.
147. Rudolph JW, et al. *Acad Manage J*. 2009;34:733–756.
148. Larson JRJ, et al. *J Pers Soc Psychol*. 1998;75:93–108.
149. Christensen C, et al. *Med Dec Making*. 2000;20(1):45–50.
150. Tschan F, et al. *Human Perform*. 2006;19:277–304.
151. Marsch SC, et al. *Eur J Anaesth*. 2005;22.
152. Hunziker S, et al. *BMC Emerg Med*. 2009;9(1):1–10.
153. Fernandez Castelao E, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2011;82:1338–1343.
154. Marsch SCU, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:963–967.
155. Dieckmann P. *Simul Healthc*. 2007;2(3):183–193.
156. Dieckmann P, et al. *J Cogn Eng DecMaking*. 2007;1(2):148–168.
157. Scerbo MW, Dawson S. *Simul Healthc*. 2007;2(4):224–230.
158. Rudolph JW, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2007;2(3):161–163.
159. Dieckmann P, Rall M. In: Cashman JN, Grounds RM, eds. *Recent Advances in Anaesthesia and Intensive Care*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2007:213–232.
160. Manser T, et al. *Ergonomics*. 2007;50(2):246–260.
161. Dieckmann P, et al. *Ergonomics*. 2006;49(5-6):526–543.
162. Wehbe-Janek H, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2015;10(1):4–13.
163. Kneebone R, et al. *Adv Simul*. 2016;1(1):19.

164. Huddy JR, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6(9):e011043.
165. Kneebone RL. *Adv Simul*. 2016;1(1):27.
166. Weldon SM, et al. *BMJ*. 2018;4(suppl 2). A21-A21.
167. Kofke WA, et al. *Med Law*. 2001;20(1):79–83.
168. Zhang C, et al. *AdvSimul*. 2018;3:15-15.
169. Cooper JB, Taqueti VR. *Qual SafHealthc*. 2004;13(suppl 1):i11–i18.
170. Rosen KR. *J Crit Care*. 2008;23(2):157–166.
171. Gaba DM. *Simul Healthc*. 2007;2(2):126–135.
172. Rosen K. In: Levine AI, DeMaria Jr S, Schwartz AD, Sim AJ, eds. *The Comprehensive Textbook of Healthcare Simulation*. New York: Springer; 2013:5–49.
173. Owen H. *Simulation in Healthcare Education. An extensive history*. Cham, Heidelberg, New York, Dordrecht, London: Springer International Publishing; 2016.
174. Owen H. *Simul Healthc*. 2012;7(2):102–116.
175. Abrahamson S, et al. *J Med Educ*. 1969;44(6):515–519.
176. Gordon MS, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1980;45(4):791–796.
177. Gaba DM, DeAnda A. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69(3):387–394.
178. DeAnda A, Gaba DM. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71(1):77–82.
179. Gaba DM, DeAnda A. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68(4):444–451.
180. Holzman RS, et al. *J Clin Anesthes*. 1995;7(8):675–687.
181. Howard SK, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1992;63(9):763–770.
182. Naik VN, Brien SE. *Can J Anaesthes*. 2013;60(2):192–200.
183. Philip JH. *Int J Clin Monit Comp*. 1986;3(3):165–173.
184. De Oliveira Jr GS, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(10):1053–1058.
185. Anesthesiology News. *Clinical Anesthesia: Virtual Reality Simulator Improves Intubation Success*; 2017. https://www.anesthesiologynews.com/Clinical-Anesthesiology/Article/12-17/Virtual-Reality-Simulator-Improves-Intubation-Success/45309. Accessed November 11, 2018.
186. Grottke O, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(4):594–600.
187. Ullrich S, et al. *Stud Health Technol Inform*. 2009;142:392–394.
188. Udani AD, et al. *Loc Reg Anesthes*. 2015;8:33–43.
189. Chen XX, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(6):741–750.
190. Kleinert R, et al. *J Med Internet Res*. 2015;17(4):e91.
191. Levine AI, Swartz MH. *J Crit Care*. 2008;23(2):179–184.
192. Cantrell MJ, Deloney LA. *Anesthes Clin*. 2007;25(2):377–383.
193. Nestel D, Bearman M. *Simulated Patient Methodology. Theory, Evidence and Practice*. Chichester: Wiley; 2015.
194. Hoelzer BC, et al. *Pain Med*. 2015;16(4):680–691.
195. Kjellin A, et al. *Scand J Surg*. 2014;103(4):232–236.
196. Cumin D, Merry AF. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(2):151–162.
197. Miller GE. *AcadMed*. 1990;65(suppl 9):S63–67.
198. Issenberg SB, et al. *Med Teach*. 2005;27(1):10–28.
199. Sørensen JL, et al. *BMC Med Ed*. 2017;17(1). 20-20.
200. Eagle A. *Health Facility Management Magazine*. November 1, 2017. https://www.hfmmagazine.com/articles/3184-principles-for-efficient-simulation-center-layouts. Accessed November 12, 2018.
201. Eagle A. *Health Facility Management Magazine*. November 1, 2017. https://www.hfmmagazine.com/articles/3182-the-reality-of-designing-simulation-centers. Accessed November 12, 2018.
202. Rall M, et al. In: Kyle R, Murray BW, eds. *Clinical Simulation: Operations, Engineering, and Management*. Burlington: Academic Press; 2008:565–581.
203. Rosen MA, et al. *J Cont Ed Hlth Prof*. 2012;32(4):243–254.
204. Raemer DB. *Simul Healthc*. 2014;9(3):153–155.
205. Gjeraa K, et al. *Acta Anaesthes Scand*. 2016;60(1):36–47.
206. Billings CE, Reynard WD. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1984;55(10):960–965.
207. Helmreich RL, et al. *Int J Aviat Psychol*. 1999;9(1):19–32.
208. Wiener EL, et al., eds. *Cockpit Resource Management*. San Diego: Academic Press; 1993.
209. Manser T. T*Acta Anaesth Scand*. 2009;53(2):143-151.
210. Weaver SJ, et al. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2014;23(5):359–372.
211. Armour Forse R, et al. *Surgery*. 2011;150(4):771–778.
212. Hughes A, et al. *J Appl Psychol*. 2016;101(9):1266–1304.
213. Baker DP, et al. In: Henriksen K, Battles J, Marks E, et al., eds. *Advances in Patient Safety: From Research to Implementation*. Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ); 2005.
214. Salas E, et al. *Human Res Manag*. 2014:24. Available at: https://orpca.org/APCM/Salas_et_al-2014-Human_Resource_Management%201%203.pdf.
215. Weaver SJ, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2010;36(3):133–142.
216. Salas E, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2008;15(11):1002–1009.
217. Gaba DM, et al. *Simul Gam*. 2001;32(2):175–193.
218. Burke CS, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(suppl 1):i96–104.
219. Tan SB, et al. *ANZ J Surg*. 2014;84(7-8):515–522.
220. Haller G, et al. *Int J Qual Health Care*. 2008;20(4):254–263.
221. Hilton G,D, et al. *Int J Ob Anesthes*. 2016;25:9–16.
222. Maslovitz S, et al. *Ob Gyn*. 2007;109(6):1295–1300.
223. Lighthall GK, Barr J. *J Intensiv Care Med*. 2007;22(5):257–269.
224. Shapiro MJ, et al. *Qual Saf Healthc*. 2004;13(6):417–421.
225. Wallin CJ, et al. *Med Educ*. 2007;41(2):173–180.
226. Berkenstadt H, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2007;25(1):65–74. viii-ix.
227. Murphy M, et al. *Injury*. 2018;49(5):953–958.
228. Volpe CE, et al. *Hum Factors*. 1996;38(1):87–100.
229. Marks MA, et al. *J Appl Psychol*. 2002;87(1):3–13.
230. Strang AJ, et al. *Proc Human Factors Erg Soc Annual Meeting*. 2012;56(1):1581–1585.
231. Walker ST, et al. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2013;22(6):453–458.
232. Lighthall GK, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2010;36(5):209–216.
233. Lighthall GK, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2013;39(4):157–166.
234. Gaba DM. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(suppl 1):i2–10.
235. Sidi A, et al. *J Pat Safety*. 2017.
236. Barsuk JH, et al. *Arch Int Med*. 2009;169(15):1420–1423.
237. Murray DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(4):1127–1134. table of contents.
238. Fanning RM, Gaba DM. *Simul Healthc*. 2007;2(2):115–125.
239. Cooper JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60(1):34–42.
240. Cooper JB, et al. *Qual Saf Healthc*. 2002;11(3):277–282.
241. Gaba DM. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1989;27(3):137–147.
242. Gaba DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(5):670–676.
243. Gaba D, et al. *Simul Gaming*. 2001;32:175–193.
244. Dunn EJ, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2007;33(6):317–325.
245. Weinstock PH, et al. *Ped Crit Care Med*. 2005;6(6):635–641.
246. Cooper JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(2):574–584.
247. Murphy JG, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2007;22(1):51–55.
248. Steadman RH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(5):1154–1169.
249. Weinger MB, et al. 00.*Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(3):655-659.
250. Kurrek MM, Fish KJ. *An J Anaesthes*. 1996;43(5):430–434.
251. Salas E, et al. *Hum Factors*. 2006;48(2):392–412.
252. Haerkens MH, et al. *Acta Anaesth Scand*. 2015;59(10):1319–1329.
253. Moffatt-Bruce SD, et al. *Am J Med Qual*. 2017;32(1):5–11.
254. Curran I. In: Kyle R, Murray BW, eds. *Clinical Simulation: Operations, Engineering, and Management*. Burlington: Academic Press; 2008:153–161.
255. Dieckmann P. In: Dieckmann P, ed. *Using Simulations for Education, Training and Research*. Lengerich, Germany: Pabst; 2009:40–138.
256. Der Sahakian G, et al. *Simul Gaming*. 2015;46(2):197–208.
257. Edmondson AC. *Admin Sci Qua*. 1999;44(2):350–383.
258. Nickson C. https://litfl.com/the-safe-container-rules-ok/. Accessed November 21, 2018.
259. Dieckmann P, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2010;5(4):219–225.
260. Paige JB, Morin KH. *Clin Simul Nurs*. 2013;9(11):e481–e489.
261. Escher C, et al. *Adv Simul*. 2017;2:25-25.
262. Choi W, et al. *BMJ*. 2017;3(suppl 1):S23–S32.
263. Tschan F, et al. In: Boos M, Kolbe M, Kappeler P, Ellwart T, eds. *Coordination in Human and Primate Groups*. Heidelberg: Springer; 2011:93–118.
264. Cheng A, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2015;10(2):69–75.
265. Young JQ, et al. *Med Teach*. 2014;36(5):371–384.
266. Nestel D, et al. In: Nestel D, Kelly M, Jolly B, Watson M, eds. *Healthcare Simulation Education: Evidence, Theory and Practice*. Wiley-Blackwell; 2017.
267. Salas E, et al. *Int J Avia Psychol*. 1998;8(3):197–208.
268. Salas E, Burke CS. *Qual Saf Healthc*. 2002;11(2):119–120.
269. Hays RT, Singer MJ. *Simulation Fidelity in Training System Design: Bridging the Gap Between Reality and Training*. New York: Springer; 1989.
270. Alessi S. In: O'Neil H, Andrews D, eds. *Aircrew Training and Assessment*. Mahwah, NJ: Erlbaum; 2000:197–222.
271. Feinstein AH, Cannon HM. *Simul Gaming*. 2002;33(4):425–440.
272. Grant VJ, et al. *Med Teach*. 2018:1–10.
273. Rall M, et al. *Euro J Anaesthesiol*. 2000;17(8):516–517.
274. Dieckmann P, et al. *MedTeach*. 2009;31(7):e287–e294.
275. Krogh K, et al. *Adv Simul*. 2016;1(1):12.
276. Dismukes RK, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2006;1(1):23–25.
277. Dieckmann P, et al. *Adv Simul*. 2017;2(1):21.
278. Brindley PG, Reynolds SF. *J Crit Care*. 2011;26(2):155–159.
279. McGaghie WC, et al. *Med Educ*. 2010;44(1):50–63.

280. Cantrell MA. *ClinSimul Nurs*. 2008;4(2):e19–e23.
281. Dreifuerst KT. *Nurs Ed Perspec*. 2009;30(2):109–114.
282. Dieckmann P, Rall M. In: Kyle R, Murray BW, eds. *Clinical Simulation: Operations, Engineering, and Management*. Burlington, MA: Academic Press; 2008:647–652.
283. Dieckmann P, et al. In: Kyle R, Murray BW, eds. *Clinical Simulation: Operations, Engineering, and Management*. Burlington, MA: Academic Press; 2008:667–676.
284. Raemer D, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2011;6(suppl):S52–57.
285. Ali AA, Miller ET. *J Nurs Ed*. 2018;57(1):14–20.
286. Kolb DA. *Experiential Learning: Experience as the Source of Learning and Development*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall; 1984.
287. Stegmann K, et al. *Med Educ*. 2012;46(10):1001–1008.
288. Eppich W, et al. *Clin Pediatr Emerg Med*. 2016.
289. Marshall DA, Manus DA. *AORN J*. 2007;86(6):994–1011.
290. Makary MA, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2006;32(7):407–410. 357.
291. Awad SS, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2005;190(5):770–774.
292. Clegg I, MacKinnon R. *Cont Ed Anaesth Crit Care Pain*. 2014;14(4):159–162.
293. Gazoni FM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(3):596–603.
294. Mullan PC, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;312(22):2333–2334.
295. Schmutz JB, Eppich WJ. *Acad Med*. 2017;92(11):1555–1563.
296. Vashdi DR, et al. *Acad Man J*. 2013;56:945–971.
297. Tannenbaum SI, Goldhaber-Fiebert S. In: Salas E, Frush K, eds. *Improving Patient Safety Through Teamwork and Team Training*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2013:249–256.
298. Tannenbaum SI, Cerasoli CP. *Hum Factors*. 2013;55(1):231–245.
299. Kolbe M, et al. *Best Prac Res: Clin Anaesthes*. 2015;29(1):87–96.
300. Hackman JR, Morris CG. In: Berkowitz L, ed. *Adv Exp Soc Psychol*. vol. 8. New York: Academic Press; 1975:45–99.
301. Argyris C. *Pub Admin Rev*. 1980:205–213.
302. Gardner R. *Semin Perinatol*. 2013;37(3):166–174.
303. Chung HS, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2013;8(3):166–170.
304. Kolbe M, Rudolph JW. *BMJ*. 2018.
305. Palaganas JC, et al., eds. *Defining Excellence in Simulation Programs*. Alphen aan den Rijn, Netherlands: Wolters Kluwer; 2014.
306. Cheng A, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2015;10(4):217–222.
307. Brett-Fleegler M, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2012;7:288–294.
308. Loo ME, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2018;13(1):52–60.
309. Kumar AH, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2018;13(1):72.
310. Cheng A, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2017;12(5):319–325.
311. Peterson DT, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2017;12(4):254–259.
312. Arora S, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256:982–988.
313. Hull L, et al. *BMJ*. 2017;3(1):9–16.
314. *Professional Standards for Medical, Dental and Veterinary Educators*. vol. 21. 3rd ed.. Cardiff, UK: Academy of Medical Educators; 2014.
315. SESAM. Accreditation. https://www.sesam-web.org/accreditation/. Accessed November 27, 2018.
316. American College of Surgeons. Accredited Education Institutes. https://www.facs.org/education/accreditation/aei. Accessed March 26, 2019.
317. Gaba DM. *Simul Healthc*. 2010;5(1):5–7.
318. Hodges B. *Med Teach*. 2006;28(8):690–696.
319. Kirkpatrick DL, Kirkpatrick JD. *Evaluating Training Programs. The Four Levels*. San Francisco, CA: Berrett-Koehler Publishers; 1994.
320. Kirkpatrick DL, Kirkpatrick JD. *Implementing the Four Levels*. San Francisco, CA: Berrett-Koehler Publishers; 2007.
321. Sung NS, et al. *JAMA*. 2003;289(10):1278–1287.
322. McGaghie WC, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2011;6(suppl):S42–47.
323. McGaghie WC. *Sci Trans Med*. 2010;2(19):19cm8.
324. McGaghie WC, et al. *Chest*. 2012;142(5):1097–1103.
325. Rall M, et al. In: Miller RD, Eriksson L, Fleisher L, Wiener-Kronish J, Neal C, William Y, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone; 2014.
326. Translational Research Working Group. *Public Roundtable II - Executive Summary*; 2006. https://www.cancer.gov/images/trwg/trwg-oct06rt-exsum-11-21-06.pdf
327. Khoury MJ, et al. *Gen Med*. 2007;9(10):665–674.
328. Bukhari H, et al. *INQUIRY*. 2017:54.
329. Maloney S, Haines T. *Adv Simul*. 2016;1(1):13.
330. Cook DA, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2012;7(5):308–320.
331. Draycott T, et al. *BJOG*. 2006;113(2):177–182.
332. Mduma ER, et al. *Int J Qual Healthc*. 2018;30(4):271–275.
333. van de Ven J, et al. *Euro J Ob Gyn Rep Bio*. 2017;216:130–137.
334. Flanagan B, et al. Melbourne, Australia: Department of Health; 2007.
335. Cook DA, et al. *JAMA*. 2011;306(9):978–988.
336. Weinger MB. *Simul Healthc*. 2010;5(1):8–15.
337. Ostergaard HT, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(suppl 1):i91–95.
338. Ziv A, Wolpe PR, Small SD, et al. *Acad Med*. 2003;78(8):783–788.
339. Helmreich RL. Paper presented at: Proceeding of the AIAA / NASA / FAA / HFS conference. January 1991; Vienna, VA.
340. Orlady HW. In: Wiener EL, Kanki BG, Helmreich RL, eds. *Cockpit Resource Management*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press; 1993.
341. Weller J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(1):142–148.
342. Forrest FC, et al. *BJA*. 2002;88(3):338–344.
343. Hayden JK, et al. *J Nurs Reg*. 2014;5(2):C1–S64.
344. Kurrek MM, Devitt JH. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44(11):1191–1195.
345. Meurling L, et al. *BMJ Qualamp; Safety*. 2013;22(6):485–494.
346. Kolbe M, et al. *J Appl Psychol*. 2014;99(6):1254–1267.
347. Phipps D, et al. *BJA*. 2008;100(3):333–343.
348. Gaba DM. *Simul Healthc*. 2011;6(1):8–10.
349. Gaba DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(1):8–18.
350. Frank JR, Danoff D. *Med Teach*. 2007;29(7):642–647.
351. Jepsen RM, et al. *Int J Med Ed*. 2015;6:17–25.
352. Lyk-Jensen HT, et al. *AANA journal*. 2016;84(2):122–127.
353. Fletcher G, et al. *Anaesthetists' Non-Technical Skills System Handbook v1.0*. Aberdeen, Scotland: University of Aberdeen; 2012. https://www.rcoa.ac.uk/system/files/AaE-ANTS-HANDBOOK.pdf
354. Scavone BM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(2):260–266.
355. Wisborg T, Manser T. *Acta Anaesth Scan*. 2014;58(7):773–774.
356. Watkins SC, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2017;12(2):69–75.
357. Schmutz J, et al. *Acad Med*. 2014;89(7):996–1005.
358. Boulet JR, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2011;6(suppl):S48–51.
359. Yule S, et al. *Med Educ*. 2006;40(11):1098–1104.
360. Weinger MB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(1):77–92.
361. Shavelson R. *Generalizability Theory: A Primer*. Newbury Park, CA: Sage Publications; 1991.
362. Myerson KR. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(11):1039–1040.
363. Kapur PA, Steadman RH. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(6):1157–1159.
364. Klemola UM, Norros L. *Med Educ*. 2001;35(5):455–464.
365. McIntosh CA. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(1):6–9.
366. Holmboe E, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2011;6(suppl):S58–62.
367. Rall M, Gaba DM. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone; 2005:3021–3072.
368. Alinier G. *Med Teach*. 2007;29(8):e243–250.

References

1. Donaldson L. *Safer Medical Practice: Machines, Manikins and Polo Mints. 150 years of the Annual Report of the Chief Medical Officer*. London, UK: The Stationary Office; 2008. Online available from https://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/20130105045448/http://www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/documents/digitalasset/dh_096231.pdf
2. Mai CL, Szyld D, Cooper JB. Simulation in pediatric anesthesia. In: Coté CJ, Lerman J, Anderson BJ, eds. *A Practice of Anesthesia for Infants and Children*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2019:1204–1211.e1202.
3. Eppich WJ, Adler MD, McGaghie WC. Emergency and critical care pediatrics: use of medical simulation for training in acute pediatric emergencies. *Current opinion in pediatrics*. 2006;18(3):266–271.
4. Weinstock PH, Kappus LJ, Garden A, Burns JP. Simulation at the point of care: reduced-cost, in situ training via a mobile cart. *Pediatric critical care medicine: a journal of the Society of Critical Care Medicine and the World Federation of Pediatric Intensive and Critical Care Societies*. 2009;10(2):176–181.
5. Everett TC, MacKinnon R, Beer D, Taylor M, Bould MD. Ten years of simulation-based training in pediatric anesthesia: the inception, evolution, and dissemination of the Managing Emergencies in Pediatric Anesthesia (MEPA) course. *Pediatric Anesthesia*. 2017;27(10):984–990.
6. Halamek LP, Kaegi DM, Gaba DM, et al. Time for a new paradigm in pediatric medical education: teaching neonatal resuscitation in a simulated delivery room environment. *Pediatrics*. 2000;106(4):E45.
7. Eich C, Timmermann A, Russo SG, et al. Simulator-based training in paediatric anaesthesia and emergency medicine – thrills, skills and attitudes. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2007;98(4):417–419.
8. Niles D, Sutton RM, Donoghue A, et al. "Rolling Refreshers": a novel approach to maintain CPR psychomotor skill competence. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(8):909–912.
9. Sutton RM, Nadkarni VM, Berg RA. Improving pediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation techniques on manikins: one small step for critical care medicine. one giant leap for mankind!. *Pediatric critical care medicine: a journal of the Society of Critical Care Medicine and the World Federation of Pediatric Intensive and Critical Care Societies*. 2009;10(3):407–409.
10. Kohn LT, Corrigan JM, Donaldson MS. *To Err Is Human: Building a Safer Health System*; 2000.
11. Dorman T, Angood PB, Angus DC, et al. Guidelines for critical care medicine training and continuing medical education. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(1):263–272.
12. Gallagher CJ, Tan JM. The current status of simulation in the maintenance of certification in anesthesia. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2010;48(3):83–99.
13. Weller J. Effective management of anaesthetic crises-design, development and evaluation of simulation based course. In: Riley RH, ed. *Manual of Simulation in Healthcare*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2008.
14. Weller J, Cumin D, Torrie J, et al. Multidisciplinary operating room simulation-based team training to reduce treatment errors: a feasibility study in New Zealand hospitals. *N Z Med J*. 2015;128(1418):40–51.
15. Lorello GR, Cook DA, Johnson RL, Brydges R. Simulation-based training in anaesthesiology: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2014;112(2):231–245.
16. LeBlanc VR, Manser T, Weinger MB, Musson D, Kutzin J, Howard SK. The study of factors affecting human and systems performance in healthcare using simulation. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2011;6(suppl):S24–S29.
17. Higham H, Baxendale B. To err is human: use of simulation to enhance training and patient safety in anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:i106–i114.
18. Salas E, Paige JT, Rosen MA. Creating new realities in healthcare: the status of simulation-based training as a patient safety improvement strategy. *BMJ Quality & Safety*. 2013;22(6):449–452.
19. *The Comprehensive Textbook of Healthcare Simulation*. corrected 2nd printing ed. New York, Heidelberg, Dordrecht, London: Springer; 2014.
20. *Defining Excellence in Simulation Programs*. 1st ed. Philadelphia, PA: Society for Simulation in Healthcare; 2014.
21. *Manual of Simulation in Healthcare*. 2nd ed. Oxford University Press; 2015.
22. Gallagher CJ, Issenberg SB. *Simulation in Anesthesia*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2006.
23. Kyle RR, Murray WB. *Clinical Simulation: Operations, Engineering and Management*. Amsterdam, Sydney, Boston: Academic Press Elsevier; 2008.
24. Gaba DM, Fish K, Howard S, Burden A. *Crisis Management in Anesthesiology*. 2nd ed. Elsevier; 2014.
25. DeMaria S, Levine A, Petrou P, et al. Performance gaps and improvement plans from a 5-hospital simulation programme for anaesthesiology providers: a retrospective study. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2017.
26. Murray DJ. Current trends in simulation training in anesthesia: a review. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2011;77(5):528–533.
27. Hicks CM, Bandiera GW, Denny CJ. Building a simulation-based crisis resource management course for emergency medicine, phase 1: results from an interdisciplinary needs assessment survey. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2008;15(11):1136–1143.
28. Rosen MA, Salas E, Wu TS, et al. Promoting teamwork: an event-based approach to simulation-based teamwork training for emergency medicine residents. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2008;15(11):1190–1198.
29. Parsons JR, Crichlow A, Ponnuru S, Shewokis PA, Goswami V, Griswold S. Filling the gap: simulation-based crisis resource management training for emergency medicine residents. *West J Emerg Med*. 2018;19(1):205–210.
30. Steinemann S, Berg B, Skinner A, et al. In situ, multidisciplinary, simulation-based teamwork training improves early trauma care. *J Surg Educ*. 2011;68(6):472–477.
31. Härgestam M, Lindkvist M, Jacobsson M, Brulin C, Hultin M. Trauma teams and time to early management during in situ trauma team training. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6(1).
32. Rubio-Gurung S, Putet G, Touzet S, et al. In situ simulation training for neonatal resuscitation: an RCT. *Pediatrics*. 2014;134(3): e790–e797.
33. Capella J, Smith S, Philp A, et al. Teamwork training improves the clinical care of trauma patients. *J Surg Educ*. 2010;67(6):439–443.
34. Campbell DM, Barozzino T, Farrugia M, Sgro M. High-fidelity simulation in neonatal resuscitation. *Paediatr Child Health*. 2009;14(1): 19–23.
35. Peacock PJ, Woodman A, McCay W, Bates SE. Resuscitation of the newborn: simulating for confidence. *Cureus*. 2016;8(9). e790-e790.
36. Lee MMH, Chan CN, Lau BYT, Ma TWL. Randomised controlled study to assess skill retention at 6 vs 12 months after simulation training in shoulder dystocia. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2017;3(4):142–148.
37. Gardner R, Raemer DB. Simulation in obstetrics and gynecology. *Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am*. 2008;35(1):97–127.
38. Nelissen E, Ersdal H, Mduma E, et al. Clinical performance and patient outcome after simulation-based training in prevention and management of postpartum haemorrhage: an educational intervention study in a low-resource setting. *BMC pregnancy and childbirth*. 2017;17(1):301.
39. Fann JI, Feins RH, Hicks GL. Simulation in cardiothoracic surgery. In: Levine AI, DeMaria Jr S, Schwartz A D, Sim AJ, eds. *The Comprehensive Textbook of Healthcare Simulation*. New York: Springer; 2014:299–313.
40. Maluf MA, Gomes WJ, Bras AM, et al. Cardiovascular surgery residency program: training coronary anastomosis using the arroyo simulator and UNIFESP models. *Revista Brasileira de Cirurgia Cardiovascular: órgão oficial da Sociedade Brasileira de Cirurgia Cardiovascular*. 2015;30(5):562–570.
41. Giuliani M, Gillan C, Wong O, et al. Evaluation of high-fidelity simulation training in radiation oncology using an outcomes logic model. *Radiation Oncology (London, England)*. 2014;9:189.
42. Singleton MN, Allen KF, Li Z, McNerney K, Naber UH, Braga MS. Rolling-refresher simulation improves performance and retention of paediatric intensive care unit nurse code cart management. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2017.
43. Sandahl C, Gustafsson H, Wallin CJ, et al. Simulation team training for improved teamwork in an intensive care unit. *Int J Health Care Qual Assur*. 2013;26(2):174–188.
44. Phrampus PE, O'Donnell JM, Farkas D, et al. Rapid development and deployment of ebola readiness training across an academic health system: the critical role of simulation education, consulting, and systems integration. *Simul Healthc*. 2016;11(2):82–88.

45. Walsh K, Sandars J, Nordquist J. Technology-enhanced learning for healthcare professionals: an essential response to infectious disease pandemics. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2018;4(1):1–3.
46. Hunt EA, Duval-Arnould JM, Nelson-McMillan KL, et al. Pediatric resident resuscitation skills improve after "Rapid Cycle Deliberate Practice" training. *Resuscitation*. 2014;85:945–951.
47. Hayes CW, Rhee A, Detsky ME, Leblanc VR, Wax RS. Residents feel unprepared and unsupervised as leaders of cardiac arrest teams in teaching hospitals: a survey of internal medicine residents. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(7):1668–1672.
48. Hendrickse AD, Ellis AM, Morris RW. Use of simulation technology in Australian Defence Force resuscitation training. *J R Army Med Corps*. 2001;147(2):173–178.
49. Gaba DM. Simulation as a critical resource in the response to ebola virus disease. *Simul Healthc*. 2014;9(6):337–338.
50. Raemer DB, Kolbe M, Minehart RD, Rudolph JW, Pian-Smith M. Improving faculty's ability to speak-up to others in the operating room: a simulation-based randomized controlled trial of an educational intervention and an qualitative analysis of hurdles and enablers. *Academic medicine: journal of the Association of American Medical Colleges*. 2016;91(4):530–539.
51. Szyld D, Uquillas K, Green BR, et al. Improving the clinical skills performance of graduating medical students using "WISE OnCall," a multimedia educational module. *Simul Healthc*. 2017;12(6):385–392.
52. Edwards SE, Platt S, Lenguerrand E, et al. Effective interprofessional simulation training for medical and midwifery students. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2015;1(3):87–93.
53. Jowsey T, Yu T-CW, Ganeshanantham G, et al. Ward calls not so scary for medical students after interprofessional simulation course: a mixed-methods cohort evaluation study. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2018.
54. Beal MD, Kinnear J, Anderson CR, Martin TD, Wamboldt R, Hooper L. The effectiveness of medical simulation in teaching medical students critical care medicine: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Simul Healthc*. 2017;12(2):104–116.
55. Paige JT, Garbee DD, Yu Q, Rusnak V. Team training of inter-professional students (TTIPS) for improving teamwork. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2017;3(4):127–134.
56. Perdue TO, Jackson JT, Herring C, et al. Medication simulation affects health provider students' attitudes about adherence and concordance. *Simul Healthc*. 2017;12(5):308–313.
57. Solanki P, Foster A, Evans L. Inter-professional student simulation to promote teamwork and leadership skills in undergraduate education in the UK. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2017.
58. Stroobants J, Monsieurs KG, Devriendt B, Dreezen C, Vets P, Mols P. Schoolchildren as BLS instructors for relatives and friends: Impact on attitude towards bystander CPR. *Resuscitation*. 85(12):1769-1774.
59. Wilks J, Pendergast D. Skills for life: First aid and cardiopulmonary resuscitation in schools. *Health Ed J*. 2017;76(8):1009–1023.
60. Böttiger BW, Van Aken H. Training children in cardiopulmonary resuscitation worldwide. *Lancet*. 2015;385(9985):2353.
61. Van de Velde S, Heselmans A, Roex A, Vandekerckhove P, Ramaekers D, Aertgeerts B. Effectiveness of nonresuscitative first aid training in laypersons: a systematic review. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2009;54(3):447–457.e445.
62. Meier AH, Rawn CL, Krummel TM. Virtual reality: surgical application--challenge for the new millennium. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2001;192(3):372–384.
63. Stefanich L, Cruz-Neira C. A virtual surgical simulator for the lower limbs. *Biomed Sci Instrum*. 1999;35:141–145.
64. Weinger MB, Banerjee A, Burden AR, et al. Simulation-based assessment of the management of critical events by board-certified anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(3):475–489.
65. Schwid HA, O'Donnell D. Anesthesiologists' management of simulated critical incidents. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(4):495–501.
66. Lindekaer AL, Jacobsen J, Andersen G, Laub M, Jensen PF. Treatment of ventricular fibrillation during anaesthesia in an anaesthesia simulator. *Acta anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41(10):1280–1284.
67. Byrne AJ, Jones JG. Responses to simulated anaesthetic emergencies by anaesthetists with different durations of clinical experience. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 1997;78(5):553–556.
68. DeAnda A, Gaba DM. Role of experience in the response to simulated critical incidents. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(3):308–315.
69. Schwid HA, Rooke GA, Carline J, et al. Evaluation of anesthesia residents using mannequin-based simulation: a multiinstitutional study. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(6):1434–1444.
70. Gardi T, Christensen UC, Jacobsen J, Jensen PF, Ording H. How do anaesthesiologists treat malignant hyperthermia in a full-scale anaesthesia simulator? *Acta anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45(8):1032–1035.
71. Jacobsen J, Lindekaer AL, Ostergaard HT, et al. Management of anaphylactic shock evaluated using a full-scale anaesthesia simulator. *Acta anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45(3):315–319.
72. Singer SJ, Gaba DM, Geppert JJ, Sinaiko AD, Howard SK, Park KC. The culture of safety: results of an organization-wide survey in 15 California hospitals. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2003;12(2):112–118.
73. Cooper JB, Singer SJ, Hayes J, et al. Design and evaluation of simulation scenarios for a program introducing patient safety, teamwork, safety leadership, and simulation to healthcare leaders and managers. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2011;6(4):231–238.
74. Singer SJ, Hayes J, Cooper JB, et al. A case for safety leadership team training of hospital managers. *Health Care Manage Rev*. 2011;36(2):188–200.
75. Driver JF, Lighthall GK, Gaba DM. The benefits of using simulation in risk management and patient safety. In: Youngberg BJ, ed. *Principles of Risk Management and Patient Safety*. Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett Learning; 2011.
76. Barsuk JH, Cohen ER, Wayne DB, Siddall VJ, McGaghie WC. Developing a simulation-based mastery learning curriculum: lessons from 11 years of advanced cardiac life support. *Simul Healthc*. 2016;11(1):52–59.
77. Birsner ML, Satin AJ. Developing a program, a curriculum, a scenario. *Semin Perinatol*. 2013;37(3):175–178.
78. Thomas PA, Kern DE, Hughes MT, Chen BY, eds. *Curriculum Development for Medical Education*. 3rd ed. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press; 2015.
79. Gordon JA, Pawlowski J. Education on-demand: the development of a simulator-based medical education service. *Academic medicine: journal of the Association of American Medical Colleges*. 2002;77(7):751–752.
80. Issenberg SB, Scalese RJ. Simulation in health care education. *Perspect Biol Med*. 2008;51(1):31–46.
81. Murray DJ. Progress in simulation education: developing an anesthesia curriculum. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2014;27(6):610–615.
82. Sørensen JL, Navne LE, Martin HM, et al. Clarifying the learning experiences of healthcare professionals with in situ and off-site simulation-based medical education: a qualitative study. *BMJ Open*. 2015;5(10).
83. Nielsen DS, Dieckmann P, Mohr M, Mitchell AU, Østergaard D. Augmenting health care failure modes and effects analysis with simulation. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2014;9(1):48–55.
84. Riley W, Davis S, Miller KM, Hansen H, Sweet RM. Detecting breaches in defensive barriers using in situ simulation for obstetric emergencies. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2010;19(suppl 3):i53–i56.
85. Patterson MD, Geis GL, Falcone RA, LeMaster T, Wears RL. In situ simulation: detection of safety threats and teamwork training in a high risk emergency department. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2013;22(6):468–477.
86. Biddell EA, Vandersall BL, Bailes SA, et al. Use of simulation to gauge preparedness for ebola at a free-standing children's hospital. *Simul Healthc*. 2016;11(2):94–99.
87. McIntosh CA, Donnelly D, Marr R. Using simulation to iteratively test and re-design a cognitive aid for use in the management of severe local anaesthetic toxicity. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2018;4(1):4–12.
88. Gignon M, Amsallem C, Ammirati C. Moving a hospital: simulation - a way to co-produce safety healthcare facilities. *International journal of occupational safety and ergonomics: JOSE*. 2017;23(4):589–591.
89. Howard SK, Gaba DM, Smith BE, et al. Simulation study of rested versus sleep-deprived anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(6):1345–1355. discussion 1345A.
90. Knudson MM, Khaw L, Bullard MK, et al. Trauma training in simulation: translating skills from SIM time to real time. *J trauma*. 2008;64(2):255–263. discussion 263-254.
91. Fletcher G, Flin R, McGeorge P, Glavin R, Maran N, Patey R. Anaesthetists' Non-Technical Skills (ANTS): evaluation of a behavioural marker system. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(5):580–588.

92. Barsuk D, Ziv A, Lin G, et al. Using advanced simulation for recognition and correction of gaps in airway and breathing management skills in prehospital trauma care. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):803–809. table of contents.
93. Overly FL, Sudikoff SN, Shapiro MJ. High-fidelity medical simulation as an assessment tool for pediatric residents' airway management skills. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2007;23(1):11–15.
94. Fehr JJ, Boulet JR, Waldrop WB, Snider R, Brockel M, Murray DJ. Simulation-based assessment of pediatric anesthesia skills. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115(6):1308–1315.
95. Boulet JR, Murray D, Kras J, Woodhouse J, McAllister J, Ziv A. Reliability and validity of a simulation-based acute care skills assessment for medical students and residents. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(6):1270–1280.
96. Ottestad E, Boulet JR, Lighthall GK. Evaluating the management of septic shock using patient simulation. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(3):769–775.
97. Boulet JR, Murray DJ. Simulation-based assessment in anesthesiology. Requirements for practical implementation. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(4):1041–1052.
98. Murray D, Enarson C. Communication and teamwork: essential to learn but difficult to measure. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(5):895–896.
99. Boulet JR, Murray D. Review article: assessment in anesthesiology education. *Canadian journal of anaesthesia = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 2012;59(2):182–192.
100. Ryall T, Judd BK, Gordon CJ. Simulation-based assessments in health professional education: a systematic review. *J Multidiscip Healthc*. 2016;9:69–82.
101. Byrne AJ, Greaves JD. Assessment instruments used during anaesthetic simulation: review of published studies. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86(3):445–450.
102. Tetzlaff JE. Assessment of competency in anesthesiology. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(4):812-825.
103. Lien CA, Warner MA, Rathmell JP. Simulation for assessment of the practice of board-certified anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(3):410–412.
104. Cheng A, Kessler D, Mackinnon R, et al. Reporting guidelines for health care simulation research: extensions to the CONSORT and STROBE statements. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2016;2(3):51–60.
105. Rudolph JW, Simon R, Rivard P, Dufresne RL, Raemer DB. Debriefing with good judgment: combining rigorous feedback with genuine inquiry. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2007;25:361–376.
106. Rudolph JW, Foldy EG, Robinson T, Kendall S, Taylor SS, Simon R. Helping without harming. The instructor's feedback dilemma in debriefing--a case study. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2013;8:304–316.
107. Rudolph JW, Simon R, Raemer DB, Eppich WJ. Debriefing as formative assessment: closing performance gaps in medical education. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2008;15(11):1010–1016.
108. Jaye P, Thomas L, Reedy G. 'The Diamond': a structure for simulation debrief. *Clin Teach*. 2015;12(3):171–175.
109. Eppich W, Cheng A. Promoting excellence and reflective learning in simulation (PEARLS): development and rationale for a blended approach to health care simulation debriefing. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2015;10.
110. Kolbe M, Weiss M, Grote G, et al. TeamGAINS: a tool for structured debriefings for simulation-based team trainings. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2013;22:541–553.
111. Sawyer T, Eppich W, Brett-Fleegler M, Grant V, Cheng A. More than one way to debrief: a critical review of healthcare simulation debriefing methods. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2016;11.
112. Eppich WJ, Hunt EA, Duval-Arnould JM, Siddall VJ, Cheng A. Structuring feedback and debriefing to achieve mastery learning goals. *Academic medicine: journal of the Association of American Medical Colleges*. 2015;90.
113. Cheng A, Eppich W, Grant V, Sherbino J, Zendejas B, Cook DA. Debriefing for technology-enhanced simulation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Med Educ*. 2014;48.
114. Kolbe M, Marty A, Seelandt J, Grande B. How to debrief teamwork interactions: using circular questions to explore and change team interaction patterns. *Adv Simul*. 2016;1(1):29.
115. Schick CJ, Weiss M, Kolbe M, et al. Simulation with PARTS (Phase-Augmented Research and Training Scenarios): a structure facilitating research and assessment in simulation. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2015;10(3):178–187.
116. Farooq O, Thorley-Dickinson VA, Dieckmann P, Kasfiki EV, Omer RMIA, Purva M. Comparison of oral and video debriefing and its effect on knowledge acquisition following simulation-based learning. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2017;3(2):48–53.
117. Krogh K, Bearman M, Nestel D. Expert practice of video-assisted debriefing: an Australian qualitative study. *Clinical Simulation in Nursing*. 2015;11(3):180–187.
118. Reed SJ, Andrews CM, Ravert P. Debriefing simulations: comparison of debriefing with video and debriefing alone. *Clinical Simulation in Nursing*. 2013;9:585–591.
119. Savoldelli GL, Naik VN, Park J, Joo HS, Chow R, Hamstra SJ. Value of debriefing during simulated crisis management: oral versus video-assisted oral feedback. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:279–285.
120. Sawyer T, Sierocka-Castaneda A, Chan D, Berg B, Lustik M, Thompson M. The effectiveness of video-assisted debriefing versus oral debriefing alone at improving neonatal resuscitation performance: a randomized trial. *Simul Healthc*. 2012;7(4):213–221.
121. Rudolph JW, Raemer DB, Simon R. Establishing a safe container for learning in simulation: the role of the pre-simulation briefing. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2014;9(6):339–349.
122. Sullivan NJ, Duval-Arnould J, Twilley M, et al. Simulation exercise to improve retention of cardiopulmonary resuscitation priorities for in-hospital cardiac arrests: a randomized controlled trial. *Resuscitation*. 2015;86:6–13.
123. Cheng A, Lockey A, Bhanji F, Lin Y, Hunt EA, Lang E. The use of high-fidelity manikins for advanced life support training—a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Resuscitation*. 2015;93:142–149.
124. Grande B, Kolbe M, Biro P. Difficult airway management and training: simulation, communication, and feedback. *Curr Opin Anesthesioly*. 2017;30(6):743–747.
125. Kennedy CC, Cannon EK, Warner DO, Cook DA. Advanced airway management simulation training in medical education: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(1):169–178.
126. Barsuk JH, Cohen ER, Potts S, et al. Dissemination of a simulation-based mastery learning intervention reduces central line-associated bloodstream infections. *BMJ Quality & Safety*. 2014;23(9):749–756.
127. Pian-Smith MCM, Simon R, Minehart RD, et al. Teaching residents the two-challenge rule: a simulation-based approach to improve education and patient safety. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2009;4(2):84–91.
128. O'Connor P, Byrne D, O'Dea A, McVeigh TP, Kerin MJ. "Excuse Me:" teaching interns to speak up. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2013;39:426–431.
129. Weiss M, Kolbe M, Grote G, Spahn DR, Grande B. Why didn't you say something? Using after-event reviews to affect voice behavior and hierarchy beliefs in multi-professional action teams. *Eur J Work Organ Psychol*. 2017;26(1):66–80.
130. St.Pierre M, Breuer G, Strembski D, Schmitt C, Lütcke B. Briefing improves the management of a difficult mask ventilation in infants. *Der Anaesthesist*. 2016;65(9):681–689.
131. Minehart RD, Rudolph J, Pian-Smith MCM, Raemer DB. Improving faculty feedback to resident trainees during a simulated case: a randomized, controlled trial of an educational intervention. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(1):160–171.
132. Kobayashi L, Suner S, Shapiro MJ, et al. Multipatient disaster scenario design using mixed modality medical simulation for the evaluation of civilian prehospital medical response: a "dirty bomb" case study. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2006;1(2):72–78.
133. Kyle RR, Via DK, Lowy RJ, Madsen JM, Marty AM, Mongan PD. A multidisciplinary approach to teach responses to weapons of mass destruction and terrorism using combined simulation modalities. *The journal of education in perioperative medicine: JEPM*. 2004;6(1). E029-E029.
134. Burtscher MJ, Kolbe M, Wacker J, Manser T. Interactions of team mental models and monitoring behaviors predict team performance in simulated anesthesia inductions. *J Exp Psychol Appl*. 2011;17:257–269.

135. Manser T, Harrison TK, Gaba DM, Howard SK. Coordination patterns related to high clinical performance in a simulated anesthetic crisis. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1606–1615.
136. Burtscher MJ, Manser T, Kolbe M, et al. Adaptation in anaesthesia team coordination in response to a simulated critical event and its relationship to clinical performance. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(6):801–806.
137. Schmutz J, Hoffman F, Heimberg E, Manser T. Effective coordination in medical emergency teams: the moderating role of task type. *Eur J Work Organ Psychol*. 2015;24:761–776.
138. Riethmüller M, Fernandez Castelao E, Eberhardt D, Timmermann A, Boos M. Adaptive coordination development in student anaesthesia teams: a longitudinal study. *Ergonomics*. 2012;55(1):55–68.
139. Künzle B, Zala-Mezö E, Kolbe M, Wacker J, Grote G. Substitutes for leadership in anaesthesia teams and their impact on leadership effectiveness. *Eur J Work Organ Psychol*. 2010;19:505–531.
140. Künzle B, Zala-Mezö E, Wacker J, Kolbe M, Grote G. Leadership in anaesthesia teams: the most effective leadership is shared. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2010;19:1–6.
141. Bogenstätter Y, Tschan F, Semmer NK, Spychiger M, Breuer M, Marsch SU. How accurate is information transmitted to medical professionals joining a medical emergency? A simulator study. *Hum Factors*. 2009;51:115–125.
142. Tschan F, Semmer NK, Gurtner A, et al. Explicit reasoning, confirmation bias, and illusory transactive memory. A simulation study of group medical decision making. *Small Group Research*. 2009;40:271–300.
143. Weiss M, Kolbe M, Grote G, et al. Agency and communion predict speaking up in acute care teams. *Small Group Research*. 2014;45:290–313.
144. St.Pierre M, Scholler A, Strembski D, Breuer G. Äussern Assistenzaerzte und Pflegekraefte sicherheitsrelevante Bedenken? [Do residents and nurses communicate safety relevant concerns? Simulation study on the influence of the authority gradient]. *Der Anaesthesist*. 2012;61(10):857–866.
145. Kolbe M, Burtscher MJ, Wacker J, et al. Speaking-up is related to better team performance in simulated anesthesia inductions: an observational study. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:1099–1108.
146. Minehart RD, Pian-Smith MCM, Walzer TB, et al. Speaking across the drapes: communication strategies of anesthesiologists and obstetricians during a simulated maternal crisis. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2012;7:166–170.
147. Rudolph JW, Morrison JB, Carroll JS. The dynamics of action-oriented problem solving: linking interpretation and choice. *Academy Manage J*. 2009;34:733–756.
148. Larson JRJ, Christensen C, Franz TM, Abbott AS. Diagnosing groups: the pooling, management, and impact of shared and unshared case information in team-based medical decision making. *J Pers Soc Psychol*. 1998;75:93–108.
149. Christensen C, Larson JR, Abbott A, Ardolino A, Franz T, Pfeiffer C. Decision making of clinical teams: communication patterns and diagnostic error. *Med Decis Making*. 2000;20(1):45–50.
150. Tschan F, Semmer NK, Gautschi D, Hunziker P, Spychiger M, Marsch SU. Leading to recovery: group performance and coordinative activities in medical emergency driven groups. *Human Performance*. 2006;19:277–304.
151. Marsch SC, Tschan F, Semmer N, Spychiger M, Breuer M, Hunziker PR. Unnecessary interruptions of cardiac massage during simulated cardiac arrests. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22.
152. Hunziker S, Tschan F, Semmer NK, et al. Hands-on time during cardiopulmonary resuscitation is affected by the process of teambuilding: a prospective randomised simulator-based trial. *BMC emergency medicine*. 2009;9(1):1–10.
153. Fernandez Castelao E, Russo SG, Cremer S, et al. Positive impact of crisis resource management training on no-flow time and team member verbalisations during simulated cardiopulmonary resuscitation: a randomized controlled trial. *Resuscitation*. 2011;82:1338–1343.
154. Marsch SCU, Tschan F, Semmer N, Spychiger M, Breuer M, Hunziker PR. Performance of first responders in simulated cardiac arrests. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:963–967.
155. Dieckmann P, Gaba D, Rall M. Deepening the theoretical foundations of patient simulation as social practice. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2007;2(3):183–193.
156. Dieckmann P, Manser T, Wehner T, Rall M. Reality and fiction cues in medical patient simulation: an interview study with anesthesiologists. *J Cogn Eng Decis Mak*. 2007;1(2):148–168.
157. Scerbo MW, Dawson S. High fidelity, high performance? *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2007;2(4):224–230.
158. Rudolph JW, Simon R, Raemer DB. Which reality matters? Questions on the path to high engagement in healthcare simulation. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2007;2(3):161–163.
159. Dieckmann P, Rall M. Simulators in anaesthetic training to enhance patient safety. In: Cashman JN, Grounds RM, eds. *Recent Advances in Anaesthesia and Intensive Care*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2007:213–232.
160. Manser T, Dieckmann P, Wehner T, Rall M. Comparison of anaesthetists' activity patterns in the operating room and during simulation. *Ergonomics*. 2007;50(2):246–260.
161. Dieckmann P, Reddersen S, Wehner T, Rall M. Prospective memory failures as an unexplored threat to patient safety: results from a pilot study using patient simulators to investigate the missed execution of intentions. *Ergonomics*. 2006;49(5-6):526–543.
162. Wehbe-Janek H, Hochhalter AK, Castilla T, Jo C. Feasibility of "standardized clinician" methodology for patient training on hospital-to-home transitions. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2015;10(1):4–13.
163. Kneebone R, Weldon S-M, Bello F. Engaging patients and clinicians through simulation: rebalancing the dynamics of care. *Adv Simul*. 2016;1(1):19.
164. Huddy JR, Weldon SM, Ralhan S, et al. Sequential simulation (SqS) of clinical pathways: a tool for public and patient engagement in point-of-care diagnostics. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6(9):e011043.
165. Kneebone RL. Simulation reframed. *Adv Simul*. 2016;1(1):27.
166. Weldon SM, Korkiakangas T, Kneebone R. SC15 'let me take care of you': utilising simulation to bridge the gap between dining and healthcare, generating a wider discussion on what care should feel like. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2018;4(suppl 2):A21-A21.
167. Kofke WA, Rie MA, Rosen K. Acute care crisis simulation for jury education. *Med Law*. 2001;20(1):79–83.
168. Zhang C, Grandits T, Härenstam KP, Hauge JB, Meijer S. A systematic literature review of simulation models for non-technical skill training in healthcare logistics. *Advances in simulation (London, England)*. 2018;3:15-15.
169. Cooper JB, Taqueti VR. A brief history of the development of mannequin simulators for clinical education and training. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(suppl 1):i11–i18.
170. Rosen KR. The history of medical simulation. *J Crit Care*. 2008;23(2):157–166.
171. Gaba DM. The future vision of simulation in healthcare. *Simul Healthc*. 2007;2(2):126–135.
172. Rosen K. The history of simulation: pioneers and profiles. In: Levine AI, DeMaria Jr S, Schwartz AD, Sim AJ, eds. *The Comprehensive Textbook of Healthcare Simulation*. New York: Springer; 2013:5–49.
173. Owen H. *Simulation in Healthcare Education. An extensive history*. Cham, Heidelberg, New York, Dordrecht, London: Springer International Publishing; 2016.
174. Owen H. Early use of simulation in medical education. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2012;7(2):102–116.
175. Abrahamson S, Denson JS, Wolf RM. Effectiveness of a simulator in training anesthesiology residents. *J Med Edu*. 1969;44(6):515–519.
176. Gordon MS, Ewy GA, DeLeon Jr AC, et al. "Harvey," the cardiology patient simulator: pilot studies on teaching effectiveness. *Am J Cardiol*. 1980;45(4):791–796.
177. Gaba DM, DeAnda A. A comprehensive anesthesia simulation environment: re-creating the operating room for research and training. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69(3):387–394.
178. DeAnda A, Gaba DM. Unplanned incidents during comprehensive anesthesia simulation. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71(1):77–82.
179. Gaba DM, DeAnda A. The response of anesthesia trainees to simulated critical incidents. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68(4):444–451.
180. Holzman RS, Cooper JB, Gaba DM, Philip JH, Small SD, Feinstein D. Anesthesia crisis resource management: real-life simulation training in operating room crises. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7(8):675–687.

181. Howard SK, Gaba DM, Fish KJ, Yang G, Sarnquist FH. Anesthesia crisis resource management training: teaching anesthesiologists to handle critical incidents. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1992;63(9):763–770.
182. Naik VN, Brien SE. Simulation: a means to address and improve patient safety. Review Article. *Canadian journal of anaesthesia = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 2013;60(2):192–200.
183. Philip JH. Gas Man--an example of goal oriented computer-assisted teaching which results in learning. *International journal of clinical monitoring and computing*. 1986;3(3):165–173.
184. De Oliveira Jr GS, Glassenberg R, Chang R, Fitzgerald P, McCarthy RJ. Virtual airway simulation to improve dexterity among novices performing fibreoptic intubation. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(10):1053–1058.
185. Anesthesiology News. *Clinical Anesthesia: Virtual Reality Simulator Improves Intubation Success*; 2017. https://www.anesthesiologynews.com/Clinical-Anesthesiology/Article/12-17/Virtual-Reality-Simulator-Improves-Intubation-Success/45309
186. Grottke O, Ntouba A, Ullrich S, et al. Virtual reality-based simulator for training in regional anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(4):594–600.
187. Ullrich S, Frommen T, Rossaint R, Kuhlen T. *Virtual Reality-Based Regional Anaesthesia Simulator for Axillary Nerve Blocks*. vol. 142. ; 2009.
188. Udani AD, Kim TE, Howard SK, Mariano ER. Simulation in teaching regional anesthesia: current perspectives. *Local Reg Anesth*. 2015;8:33–43.
189. Chen XX, Trivedi V, AlSaflan AA, et al. Ultrasound-guided regional anesthesia simulation training: a systematic review. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(6):741–750.
190. Kleinert R, Wahba R, Chang D-H, Plum P, Hölscher AH, Stippel DL. 3D immersive patient simulators and their impact on learning success: a thematic review. *J Med Internet Res*. 2015;17(4):e91.
191. Levine AI, Swartz MH. Standardized patients: the "other" simulation. *J Crit Care*. 2008;23(2):179–184.
192. Cantrell MJ, Deloney LA. Integration of standardized patients into simulation. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2007;25(2):377–383.
193. Nestel D, Bearman M. *Simulated Patient Methodology. Theory, Evidence and Practice*. Chichester: Wiley; 2015.
194. Hoelzer BC, Moeschler SM, Seamans DP. Using simulation and standardized patients to teach vital skills to pain medicine fellows. *Pain Med*. 2015;16(4):680–691.
195. Kjellin A, Hedman L, Escher C, Fellander-Tsai L. Hybrid simulation: bringing motivation to the art of teamwork training in the operating room. *Scandinavian journal of surgery: SJS: official organ for the Finnish Surgical Society and the Scandinavian Surgical Society*. 2014;103(4):232–236.
196. Cumin D, Merry AF. Simulators for use in anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(2):151–162.
197. Miller GE. The assessment of clinical skills/competence/performance. *Academic medicine: journal of the Association of American Medical Colleges*. 1990;65(suppl 9):S63–67.
198. Issenberg SB, McGaghie WC, Petrusa ER, Lee Gordon D, Scalese RJ. Features and uses of high-fidelity medical simulations that lead to effective learning: a BEME systematic review. *Med Teach*. 2005;27(1):10–28.
199. Sørensen JL, Østergaard D, LeBlanc V, et al. Design of simulation-based medical education and advantages and disadvantages of in situ simulation versus off-site simulation. *BMC medical education*. 2017;17(1). 20-20.
200. Eagle A. Principles for efficient simulation center layouts. Breaking programs down to zones can help in planning and design of sim centers. *Health Facility Management Magazine*. November 1, 2017. https://www.hfmmagazine.com/articles/3184-principles-for-efficient-simulation-center-layouts. Accessed November 12, 2018.
201. Eagle A. The reality of designing simulation centers: Re-creating authentic environments requires a great deal of configuration flexibility. *Health Facility Management Magazine*. November 1, 2017. https://www.hfmmagazine.com/articles/3182-the-reality-of-designing-simulation-centers. Accessed November 12, 2018.
202. Rall M, Stricker E, Reddersen S, et al. Mobile 'in-situ' crisis resource management training: simulator courses with video-assisted debriefing where participants work. In: Kyle R, Murray BW, eds. *Clinical Simulation: Operations, Engineering, and Management*. Burlington: Academic Press; 2008:565–581.
203. Rosen MA, Hunt EA, Pronovost PJ, Federowicz MA, Weaver SJ. In situ simulation in continuing education for the health care professions: a systematic review. *J Contin Educ Health Prof*. 2012;32(4):243–254.
204. Raemer DB. Ignaz Semmelweis redux? *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2014;9(3):153–155.
205. Gjeraa K, Jepsen RM, Rewers M, Ostergaard D, Dieckmann P. Exploring the relationship between anaesthesiologists' non-technical and technical skills. *Acta anaesthesiol Scand*. 2016;60(1):36–47.
206. Billings CE, Reynard WD. Human factors in aircraft incidents: results of a 7-year study. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1984;55(10):960–965.
207. Helmreich RL, Merritt AC, Wilhelm JA. The evolution of crew resource management training in commercial aviation. *Int J Aviat Psychol*. 1999;9(1):19–32.
208. Wiener EL, Kanki BG, Helmreich R, eds. *Cockpit Resource Management*. San Diego: Academic Press; 1993.
209. Manser T. Teamwork and patient safety in dynamic domains of healthcare: a review of the literature. *Acta anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(2):143–151.
210. Weaver SJ, Dy SM, Rosen MA. Team-training in healthcare: a narrative synthesis of the literature. *BMJ Quality & Safety*. 2014;23(5):359–372.
211. Armour Forse R, Bramble JD, McQuillan R. Team training can improve operating room performance. *Surgery*. 2011;150(4):771–778.
212. Hughes A, Gregory M, Joseph D, et al. Saving lives: a meta-analysis of team training in healthcare. *J Appl Psychol*. 2016;101(9):1266–1304.
213. Baker DP, Gustafson S, Beaubien M, Salas E, Barach P. Medical team training programs in health care. In: Henriksen K, Battles J, Marks E, et al., eds. *Advances in Patient Safety: From Research to Implementation*. Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ); 2005.
214. Salas E, Shuffler ML, Thyer AL, Bedwell WL, Lazarra EH. Understanding and improving teamwork in organizations: a scientifically based practical guide. *Human Resource Management*. 2014:24. Available at: https://orpca.org/APCM/Salas_et_al-2014-Human_Resource_Management%201%203.pdf.
215. Weaver SJ, Rosen MA, DiazGranados D, et al. Does teamwork improve performance in the operating room? A multilevel evaluation. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2010;36(3):133–142.
216. Salas E, DiazGranados D, Weaver SJ, King H. Does team training work? principles for health care. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2008;15(11):1002–1009.
217. Gaba DM, Howard SK, Fish KJ, Smith BE, Sowb YA. Simulation-based training in Anesthesia Crisis Resource Management (ACRM): a decade of experience. *Simulation & Gaming*. 2001;32(2):175–193.
218. Burke CS, Salas E, Wilson-Donnelly K, Priest H. How to turn a team of experts into an expert medical team: guidance from the aviation and military communities. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(suppl 1):i96–104.
219. Tan SB, Pena G, Altree M, Maddern GJ. Multidisciplinary team simulation for the operating theatre: a review of the literature. *ANZ journal of surgery*. 2014;84(7-8):515–522.
220. Haller G, Garnerin P, Morales M-A, et al. Effect of crew resource management training in a multidisciplinary obstetrical setting. *Int J Qual Health Care*. 2008;20(4):254–263.
221. Hilton G, Daniels K, Goldhaber-Fiebert SN, Lipman S, Carvalho B, Butwick A. Checklists and multidisciplinary team performance during simulated obstetric hemorrhage. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2016;25:9–16.
222. Maslovitz S, Barkai G, Lessing JB, Ziv A, Many A. Recurrent obstetric management mistakes identified by simulation. *Obstet gynecol*. 2007;109(6):1295–1300.
223. Lighthall GK, Barr J. The use of clinical simulation systems to train critical care physicians. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2007;22(5):257–269.
224. Shapiro MJ, Morey JC, Small SD, et al. Simulation based teamwork training for emergency department staff: does it improve clinical team performance when added to an existing didactic teamwork curriculum? *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(6):417–421.
225. Wallin CJ, Meurling L, Hedman L, Hedegard J, Fellander-Tsai L. Target-focused medical emergency team training using a human patient simulator: effects on behaviour and attitude. *Med Educ*. 2007;41(2):173–180.
226. Berkenstadt H, Erez D, Munz Y, Simon D, Ziv A. Training and assessment of trauma management: the role of simulation-based medical education. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2007;25(1):65–74. viii-ix.

227. Murphy M, Curtis K, Lam MK, Palmer CS, Hsu J, McCloughen A. Simulation-based multidisciplinary team training decreases time to critical operations for trauma patients. *Injury*. 2018;49(5):953–958.
228. Volpe CE, Cannon-Bowers JA, Salas E, Spector PE. The impact of cross-training on team functioning: an empirical investigation. *Hum Factors*. 1996;38(1):87–100.
229. Marks MA, Sabella MJ, Burke CS, Zaccaro SJ. The impact of cross-training on team effectiveness. *J Appl Psychol*. 2002;87(1):3–13.
230. Strang AJ, Funke GJ, Knott BA, Galster SM, Russell SM. Effects of cross-training on team performance, communication, and workload in simulated air battle management. *Proceedings of the Human Factors and Ergonomics Society Annual Meeting*. 2012;56(1):1581–1585.
231. Walker ST, Sevdalis N, McKay A, et al. Unannounced in situ simulations: integrating training and clinical practice. *BMJ Qual Saf*. 2013;22(6):453–458.
232. Lighthall GK, Poon T, Harrison TK. Using in situ simulation to improve in-hospital cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2010;36(5):209–216.
233. Lighthall GK, Mayette M, Harrison TK. An institutionwide approach to redesigning management of cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2013;39(4):157–166.
234. Gaba DM. The future vision of simulation in health care. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(suppl 1):i2–10.
235. Sidi A, Gravenstein N, Vasilopoulos T, Lampotang S. Simulation-based assessment identifies longitudinal changes in cognitive skills in an anesthesiology residency training program. *J Patient Saf*. 2017.
236. Barsuk JH, Cohen ER, Feinglass J, McGaghie WC, Wayne DB. Use of simulation-based education to reduce catheter-related bloodstream infections. *Arch Intern Med*. 2009;169(15):1420–1423.
237. Murray DJ, Boulet JR, Kras JF, McAllister JD, Cox TE. A simulation-based acute skills performance assessment for anesthesia training. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(4):1127–1134. table of contents.
238. Fanning RM, Gaba DM. The role of debriefing in simulation-based learning. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2007;2(2):115–125.
239. Cooper JB, Newbower RS, Kitz RJ. An analysis of major errors and equipment failures in anesthesia management: considerations for prevention and detection. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60(1):34–42.
240. Cooper JB, Newbower RS, Long CD, McPeek B. Preventable anesthesia mishaps: a study of human factors. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2002;11(3):277–282.
241. Gaba DM. Human error in anesthetic mishaps. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1989;27(3):137–147.
242. Gaba DM, Maxwell M, DeAnda A. Anesthetic mishaps: breaking the chain of accident evolution. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(5):670–676.
243. Gaba D, Howard S, Fish K, Smith B, Sowb Y. Simulation-based training in Anesthesia Crisis Resource Management (ACRM). A decade of experience. *Simulation and Gaming*. 2001;32:175–193.
244. Dunn EJ, Mills PD, Neily J, Crittenden MD, Carmack AL, Bagian JP. Medical team training: applying crew resource management in the Veterans Health Administration. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2007;33(6):317–325.
245. Weinstock PH, Kappus LJ, Kleinman ME, Grenier B, Hickey P, Burns JP. Toward a new paradigm in hospital-based pediatric education: the development of an onsite simulator program. *Pediatric critical care medicine: a journal of the Society of Critical Care Medicine and the World Federation of Pediatric Intensive and Critical Care Societies*. 2005;6(6):635–641.
246. Cooper JB, Blum RH, Carroll JS, et al. Differences in safety climate among hospital anesthesia departments and the effect of a realistic simulation-based training program. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(2):574–584. table of contents.
247. Murphy JG, Torsher LC, Dunn WF. Simulation medicine in intensive care and coronary care education. *J Crit Care*. 2007;22(1):51–55.
248. Steadman RH, Burden AR, Huang YM, Gaba DM, Cooper JB. Practice improvements based on participation in simulation for the maintenance of certification in anesthesiology program. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(5):1154–1169.
249. Weinger MB, Burden AR, Steadman RH, Gaba DM. This is not a test! Misconceptions surrounding the maintenance of certification in anesthesiology simulation course. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(3):655–659.
250. Kurrek MM, Fish KJ. Anaesthesia crisis resource management training: an intimidating concept, a rewarding experience. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43(5):430–434.
251. Salas E, Wilson KA, Burke CS, Wightman DC. Does crew resource management training work? An update, an extension, and some critical needs. *Hum Factors*. 2006;48(2):392–412.
252. Haerkens MH, Kox M, Lemson J, Houterman S, van der Hoeven JG, Pickkers P. Crew resource management in the intensive care unit: a prospective 3-year cohort study. *Acta anaesthesiol Scand*. 2015;59(10):1319–1329.
253. Moffatt-Bruce SD, Hefner JL, Mekhjian H, et al. What is the return on investment for implementation of a crew resource management program at an academic medical center? *American journal of medical quality: the official journal of the American College of Medical Quality*. 2017;32(1):5–11.
254. Curran I. Creating effective learning environments - key educational concepts applied to simulation training. In: Kyle R, Murray BW, eds. *Clinical Simulation: Operations, Engineering, and Management*. Burlington: Academic Press; 2008:153–161.
255. Dieckmann P. Simulation settings for learning in acute medical care. In: Dieckmann P, ed. *Using Simulations for Education, Training and Research*. Lengerich, Germany: Pabst; 2009:40–138.
256. Der Sahakian G, Alinier G, Savoldelli G, Oriot D, Jaffrelot M, Lecomte F. Setting conditions for productive debriefing. *Simulation & Gaming*. 2015;46(2):197–208.
257. Edmondson AC. Psychological safety and learning behavior in work teams. *Administrative Science Quarterly*. 1999;44(2):350–383.
258. Nickson C. The 'Safe Container' Rules, OK? last update September 3, 2018; https://litfl.com/the-safe-container-rules-ok/. Accessed November 21, 2018.
259. Dieckmann P, Lippert A, Glavin R, Rall M. When things do not go as expected: scenario life savers. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2010;5(4):219–225.
260. Paige JB, Morin KH. Simulation fidelity and cueing: a systematic review of the literature. *Clinical Simulation in Nursing*. 2013;9(11):e481–e489.
261. Escher C, Rystedt H, Creutzfeldt J, et al. Method matters: impact of in-scenario instruction on simulation-based teamwork training. *Advances in simulation (London, England)*. 2017;2:25-25.
262. Choi W, Dyens O, Chan T, et al. Engagement and learning in simulation: recommendations of the Simnovate Engaged Learning Domain Group. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2017;3(suppl 1):S23–S32.
263. Tschan F, Semmer NK, Vetterli M, Gurtner A, Hunziker S, Marsch SU. Developing observational categories for group process research based on task and coordination-requirement analysis: examples from research on medical emergency-driven teams. In: Boos M, Kolbe M, Kappeler P, Ellwart T, eds. *Coordination in Human and Primate Groups*. Heidelberg: Springer; 2011:93–118.
264. Cheng A, Palaganas J, Eppich W, Rudolph J, Robinson T, Grant V. Co-debriefing for simulation-based education: a primer for facilitators. *Simul Healthc*. 2015;10(2):69–75.
265. Young JQ, Van Merrienboer J, Durning S, Ten Cate O. Cognitive load theory: implications for medical education: AMEE Guide No. 86. *Med Teach*. 2014;36(5):371–384.
266. Nestel D, Krogh K, Kolbe M. Exploring realism in healthcare simulations. In: Nestel D, Kelly M, Jolly B, Watson M, eds. *Healthcare Simulation Education: Evidence, Theory and Practice*. Wiley-Blackwell; 2017.
267. Salas E, Bowers CA, Rhodenizer L. It is not how much you have but how you use it: toward a rational use of simulation to support aviation training. *Int J Aviat Psychol*. 1998;8(3):197–208.
268. Salas E, Burke CS. Simulation for training is effective when. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2002;11(2):119–120.
269. Hays RT, Singer MJ. *Simulation Fidelity in Training System Design: Bridging the Gap Between Reality and Training*. New York: Springer; 1989.
270. Alessi S. Simulation design for training and assessment. In: O'Neil H, Andrews D, eds. *Aircrew Training and Assessment*. Mahwah, NJ: Erlbaum; 2000:197–222.
271. Feinstein AH, Cannon HM. Constructs of simulation evaluation. *Simulation & Gaming*. 2002;33(4):425–440.
272. Grant VJ, Robinson T, Catena H, Eppich W, Cheng A. Difficult debriefing situations: a toolbox for simulation educators. *Med Teach*. 2018:1–10.
273. Rall M, Manser T, Howard SK. Key elements of debriefing for simulator training. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2000;17(8):516–517.
274. Dieckmann P, Molin Friis S, Lippert A, Østergaard D. The art and science of debriefing in simulation: ideal and practice. *Med Teach*. 2009;31(7):e287–e294.

275. Krogh K, Bearman M, Nestel D. “Thinking on your feet”—a qualitative study of debriefing practice. *Adv Simul*. 2016;1(1):12.
276. Dismukes RK, Gaba DM, Howard SK. So many roads: facilitated debriefing in healthcare. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2006;1(1):23–25.
277. Dieckmann P, Patterson M, Lahlou S, Mesman J, Nyström P, Krage R. Variation and adaptation: learning from success in patient safety-oriented simulation training. *Adv Simul*. 2017;2(1):21.
278. Brindley PG, Reynolds SF. Improving verbal communication in critical care medicine. *J Crit Care*. 2011;26(2):155–159.
279. McGaghie WC, Issenberg SB, Petrusa ER, Scalese RJ. A critical review of simulation-based medical education research: 2003-2009. *Med Educ*. 2010;44(1):50–63.
280. Cantrell MA. The importance of debriefing in clinical simulations. *Clinical Simulation In Nursing*. 2008;4(2):e19–e23.
281. Dreifuerst KT. The essentials of debriefing in simulation learning: a concept analysis. *Nurs Educ Perspect*. 2009;30(2):109–114.
282. Dieckmann P, Rall M. Becoming a simulator instructor and learning to facilitate the instructor and facilitation training (InFacT). In: Kyle R, Murray BW, eds. *Clinical Simulation: Operations, Engineering, and Management*. Burlington, MA: Academic Press; 2008:647–652.
283. Dieckmann P, Reddersen S, Zieger J, Rall M. A structure for video-assisted debriefing in simulator-based training of crisis resource management. In: Kyle R, Murray BW, eds. *Clinical Simulation: Operations, Engineering, and Management*. Burlington, MA: Academic Press; 2008:667–676.
284. Raemer D, Anderson M, Cheng A, Fanning R, Nadkarni V, Savoldelli G. Research regarding debriefing as part of the learning process. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2011;6(suppl):S52–57.
285. Ali AA, Miller ET. Effectiveness of video-assisted debriefing in health education: an integrative review. *J Nurs Educ*. 2018;57(1):14–20.
286. Kolb DA. *Experiential Learning: Experience as the Source of Learning and Development*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall; 1984.
287. Stegmann K, Pilz F, Siebeck M, Fischer F. Vicarious learning during simulations: is it more effective than hands-on training? *Med Educ*. 2012;46(10):1001–1008.
288. Eppich W, Mullan PC, Brett-Fleegler M, Cheng A. “Let’s talk about it”: translating lessons from healthcare simulation to clinical event debriefings and clinical coaching conversations. *Clin Pediatr Emerg Med*. 2016.
289. Marshall DA, Manus DA. A team training program using human factors to enhance patient safety. *AORN journal*. 2007;86(6):994–1011.
290. Makary MA, Holzmueller CG, Sexton JB, et al. Operating room debriefings. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2006;32(7):407–410. 357.
291. Awad SS, Fagan SP, Bellows C, et al. Bridging the communication gap in the operating room with medical team training. *Am J Surg*. 2005;190(5):770–774.
292. Clegg I, MacKinnon R. Strategies for handling the aftermath of intraoperative death. *Cont Ed Anaesth Crit Care Pain*. 2014;14(4):159–162.
293. Gazoni FM, Amato PE, Malik ZM, Durieux ME. The impact of perioperative catastrophes on anesthesiologists: results of a national survey. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(3):596–603.
294. Mullan PC, Kessler DO, Cheng A. Educational opportunities with postevent debriefing. *JAMA*. 2014;312(22):2333–2334.
295. Schmutz JB, Eppich WJ. Promoting learning and patient care through shared reflection: a conceptual framework for team reflexivity in health care. *Acad Med*. 2017;92(11):1555–1563.
296. Vashdi DR, Bamberger PA, Erez M. Can surgical teams ever learn? The role of coordination, complexity, and transitivity in action team learning. *Academy Manage J*. 2013;56:945–971.
297. Tannenbaum SI, Goldhaber-Fiebert S. Medical team debriefs: simple, powerful, underutilized. In: Salas E, Frush K, eds. *Improving Patient Safety Through Teamwork and Team Training*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2013:249–256.
298. Tannenbaum SI, Cerasoli CP. Do team and individual debriefs enhance performance? A meta-analysis. *Hum Factors*. 2013;55(1): 231–245.
299. Kolbe M, Grande B, Spahn DR. Briefing and debriefing during simulation-based training and beyond: content, structure, attitude, and setting. *Best Prac Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2015;29(1):87–96.
300. Hackman JR, Morris CG. Group tasks, group interaction process, and group performance effectiveness: a review and proposed integration. In: Berkowitz L, ed. *Adv Exp Soc Psychol*. vol. 8. New York: Academic Press; 1975:45–99.
301. Argyris C. Making the undiscussable and its undiscussability discussable. *Public Administrative Review*. 1980:205–213.
302. Gardner R. Introduction to debriefing. *Semin Perinatol*. 2013;37(3):166–174.
303. Chung HS, Dieckmann P, Issenberg SB. It is time to consider cultural differences in debriefing. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2013;8(3):166–170.
304. Kolbe M, Rudolph JW. What’s the headline on your mind right now? How reflection guides simulation-based faculty development in a master class. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2018.
305. Palaganas JC, Maxworthy J, Epps C, Mancini B, eds. *Defining Excellence in Simulation Programs*. Alphen aan den Rijn, Netherlands: Wolters Kluwer; 2014.
306. Cheng A, Grant V, Dieckmann P, Arora S, Robinson T, Eppich W. Faculty development for simulation programs: five issues for the future of debriefing training. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2015;10(4):217–222.
307. Brett-Fleegler M, Rudolph JW, Eppich WJ, et al. Debriefing assessment for simulation in healthcare. Development and psychometric properties. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2012;7:288–294.
308. Loo ME, Krishnasamy C, Lim WS. Considering face, rights, and goals: a critical review of rapport management in facilitator-guided simulation debriefing approaches. *Simul Healthc*. 2018;13(1):52–60.
309. Kumar AH, Howard SK, Udani AD. Tipping the scales: prioritizing mentorship and support in simulation faculty development. *Simul Healthc*. 2018;13(1):72.
310. Cheng A, Grant V, Huffman J, et al. Coaching the debriefer: peer coaching to improve debriefing quality in simulation programs. *Simul Healthc*. 2017;12(5):319–325.
311. Peterson DT, Watts PI, Epps CA, White ML. Simulation faculty development: a tiered approach. *Simul Healthc*. 2017;12(4):254–259.
312. Arora S, Ahmed M, Paige J, et al. Objective Structured Assessment of Debriefing (OSAD): bringing science to the art of debriefing in surgery. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256:982–988.
313. Hull L, Russ S, Ahmed M, Sevdalis N, Birnbach DJ. Quality of interdisciplinary postsimulation debriefing: 360° evaluation. *BMJ Simulation and Technology Enhanced Learning*. 2017;3(1):9–16.
314. *Professional Standards for Medical, Dental and Veterinary Educators*. vol. 21. 3rd ed. Cardiff, UK: Academy of Medical Educators; 2014.
315. SESAM. Accreditation. https://www.sesam-web.org/accreditation/. Accessed November 27, 2018.
316. American College of Surgeons. Accredited Education Institutes. https://www.facs.org/education/accreditation/aei. Accessed March 26, 2019.
317. Gaba DM. The pharmaceutical analogy for simulation: a policy perspective. *Simul Healthc*. 2010;5(1):5–7.
318. Hodges B. Medical education and the maintenance of incompetence. *Med Teach*. 2006;28(8):690–696.
319. Kirkpatrick DL, Kirkpatrick JD. *Evaluating Training Programs. The Four Levels*. San Francisco, CA: Berrett-Koehler Publishers; 1994.
320. Kirkpatrick DL, Kirkpatrick JD. *Implementing the Four Levels*. San Francisco, CA: Berrett-Koehler Publishers; 2007.
321. Sung NS, Crowley Jr WF, Genel M, et al. Central challenges facing the national clinical research enterprise. *JAMA*. 2003;289(10):1278–1287.
322. McGaghie WC, Draycott TJ, Dunn WF, Lopez CM, Stefanidis D. Evaluating the impact of simulation on translational patient outcomes. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2011;6(suppl):S42–47.
323. McGaghie WC. Medical education research as translational science. *Sci Transl Med*. 2010;2(19):19cm8.
324. McGaghie WC, Issenberg SB, Cohen ER, Barsuk JH, Wayne DB. Translational educational research: a necessity for effective healthcare improvement. *Chest*. 2012;142(5):1097–1103.
325. Rall M, Gaba DM, Dieckmann P, Eich C. Patient simulation. In: Miller RD, Eriksson L, Fleisher L, Wiener-Kronish J, Neal C, William Y, eds. *Miller’s Anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone; 2014.
326. Translational Research Working Group. *Public Roundtable II - Executive Summary*; 2006. https://www.cancer.gov/images/trwg/trwg-oct06rt-exsum-11-21-06.pdf
327. Khoury MJ, Gwinn M, Yoon PW, Dowling N, Moore CA, Bradley L. The continuum of translation research in genomic medicine: how can we accelerate the appropriate integration of human genome discoveries into health care and disease prevention? *Genetics in medicine: official journal of the American College of Medical Genetics*. 2007;9(10):665–674.

328. Bukhari H, Andreatta P, Goldiez B, Rabelo L. A framework for determining the return on investment of simulation-based training in health care. *INQUIRY: The Journal of Health Care Organization, Provision, and Financing*. 2017;54.
329. Maloney S, Haines T. Issues of cost-benefit and cost-effectiveness for simulation in health professions education. *Adv Simul*. 2016;1(1):13.
330. Cook DA, Brydges R, Hamstra SJ, et al. Comparative effectiveness of technology-enhanced simulation versus other instructional methods: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2012;7(5):308–320.
331. Draycott T, Sibanda T, Owen L, et al. Does training in obstetric emergencies improve neonatal outcome? *BJOG: an international journal of obstetrics and gynaecology*. 2006;113(2):177–182.
332. Mduma ER, Ersdal H, Kvaloy JT, et al. Using statistical process control methods to trace small changes in perinatal mortality after a training program in a low-resource setting. *International journal for quality in health care: journal of the International Society for Quality in Health Care*. 2018;30(4):271–275.
333. van de Ven J, van Baaren GJ, Fransen AF, van Runnard Heimel PJ, Mol BW, Oei SG. Cost-effectiveness of simulation-based team training in obstetric emergencies (TOSTI study). *European journal of obstetrics, gynecology, and reproductive biology*. 2017;216:130–137.
334. Flanagan B, Clavisi O, Nestel D. *Efficacy and Effectiveness of Simulation Based Training for Learning and Assessment in Health Care. Clinical skills and simulation. Victorian Government Health Information*. Melbourne, Australia: Department of Health; 2007.
335. Cook DA, Hatala R, Brydges R, et al. Technology-enhanced simulation for health professions education: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2011;306(9):978–988.
336. Weinger MB. The pharmacology of simulation: a conceptual framework to inform progress in simulation research. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2010;5(1):8–15.
337. Ostergaard HT, Ostergaard D, Lippert A. Implementation of team training in medical education in Denmark. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2004;13(suppl 1):i91–95.
338. Ziv A, Wolpe PR, Small SD, Glick S. Simulation-based medical education: an ethical imperative. *Academic medicine: journal of the Association of American Medical Colleges*. 2003;78(8):783–788.
339. Helmreich RL. The long and short term impact of crew resource management training. Challenges in aviation human factors. Paper presented at: Proceeding of the AIAA / NASA / FAA / HFS conference. January 1991; Vienna, VA.
340. Orlady HW. Airline pilot training today and tomorrow. In: Wiener EL, Kanki BG, Helmreich RL, eds. *Cockpit Resource Management*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press; 1993.
341. Weller J, Henderson R, Webster CS, et al. Building the evidence on simulation validity: comparison of anesthesiologists' communication patterns in real and simulated cases. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(1):142–148.
342. Forrest FC, Taylor MA, Postlethwaite K, Aspinall R. Use of a high–fidelity simulator to develop testing of the technical performance of novice anaesthetists. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2002;88(3):338–344.
343. Hayden JK, Smiley RA, Alexander M, Kardong-Edgren S, Jeffries PR. The NCSBN national simulation study: a longitudinal, randomized, controlled study replacing clinical hours with simulation in prelicensure nursing education. *J Nurs Regul*. 2014;5(2):C1–S64.
344. Kurrek MM, Devitt JH. The cost for construction and operation of a simulation centre. *Canadian journal of anaesthesia = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 1997;44(11):1191–1195.
345. Meurling L, Hedman L, Sandahl C, Felländer-Tsai L, Wallin C-J. Systematic simulation-based team training in a Swedish intensive care unit: a diverse response among critical care professions. *BMJ Quality & Safety*. 2013;22(6):485–494.
346. Kolbe M, Grote G, Waller MJ, et al. Monitoring and talking to the room: autochthonous coordination patterns in team interaction and performance. *J Appl Psychol*. 2014;99(6):1254–1267.
347. Phipps D, Meakin GH, Beatty PCW, Nsoedo C, Parker D. Human factors in anaesthetic practice: insights from a task analysis. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2008;100(3):333–343.
348. Gaba DM. Training and nontechnical skills: the politics of terminology. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2011;6(1):8–10.
349. Gaba DM, Howard SK, Flanagan FB, Smith BE, Fish KJ, Botney R. Assessment of clinical performance during simulated crises using both technical and behavioral ratings. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(1):8–18.
350. Frank JR, Danoff D. The CanMEDS initiative: implementing an outcomes-based framework of physician competencies. *Med Teach*. 2007;29(7):642–647.
351. Jepsen RM, Spanager L, Lyk-Jensen HT, Dieckmann P, Østergaard D. Customisation of an instrument to assess anaesthesiologists' non-technical skills. *Int J Med Educ*. 2015;6:17–25.
352. Lyk-Jensen HT, Dieckmann P, Konge L, Jepsen RM, Spanager L, Ostergaard D. Using a structured assessment tool to evaluate nontechnical skills of nurse anesthetists. *AANA journal*. 2016;84(2):122–127.
353. Fletcher G, Flin R, Glavin RJ, Maran N. *Framework for Observing and Rating Anaesthetists' Non-Technical Skills. Anaesthetists' Non-Technical Skills (ANTS) System Handbook v1.0*. Aberdeen, Scotland: University of Aberdeen; 2012. https://www.rcoa.ac.uk/system/files/AaE-ANTS-HANDBOOK.pdf
354. Scavone BM, Sproviero MT, McCarthy RJ, et al. Development of an objective scoring system for measurement of resident performance on the human patient simulator. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(2):260–266.
355. Wisborg T, Manser T. Assessment of non-technical skills in the operating room--one assessment tool per specialty? *Acta anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58(7):773–774.
356. Watkins SC, Roberts DA, Boulet JR, McEvoy MD, Weinger MB. Evaluation of a simpler tool to assess nontechnical skills during simulated critical events. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2017;12(2):69–75.
357. Schmutz J, Eppich WJ, Hoffmann F, Heimberg E, Manser T. Five steps to develop checklists for evaluating clinical performance: an integrative approach. *Academic medicine: journal of the Association of American Medical Colleges*. 2014;89(7):996–1005.
358. Boulet JR, Jeffries PR, Hatala RA, Korndorffer Jr JR, Feinstein DM, Roche JP. Research regarding methods of assessing learning outcomes. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2011;6(suppl):S48–51.
359. Yule S, Flin R, Paterson-Brown S, Maran N, Rowley D. Development of a rating system for surgeons' non-technical skills. *Med Educ*. 2006;40(11):1098–1104.
360. Weinger MB, Herndon OW, Zornow MH, Paulus MP, Gaba DM, Dallen LT. An objective methodology for task analysis and workload assessment in anesthesia providers. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(1):77–92.
361. Shavelson R. *Generalizability Theory: A Primer*. Newbury Park, CA: Sage Publications; 1991.
362. Myerson KR. Can we assess professional behaviour in anaesthetists? *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(11):1039–1040.
363. Kapur PA, Steadman RH. Patient simulator competency testing: ready for takeoff? *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(6):1157–1159.
364. Klemola UM, Norros L. Practice-based criteria for assessing anaesthetists' habits of action: outline for a reflexive turn in practice. *Med Educ*. 2001;35(5):455–464.
365. McIntosh CA. Lake Wobegon for anesthesia . . . where everyone is above average except those who aren't: variability in the management of simulated intraoperative critical incidents. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(1):6–9.
366. Holmboe E, Rizzolo MA, Sachdeva AK, Rosenberg M, Ziv A. Simulation-based assessment and the regulation of healthcare professionals. *Simulation in healthcare: journal of the Society for Simulation in Healthcare*. 2011;6(suppl):S58–62.
367. Rall M, Gaba DM. Human performance and patient safety. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone; 2005:3021–3072.
368. Alinier G. A typology of educationally focused medical simulation tools. *Med Teach*. 2007;29(8):e243–250.

8

Ethical Aspects of Anesthesia Care

GAIL A. VAN NORMAN and STANLEY H. ROSENBAUM

KEY POINTS

- Deontologic ("rules-based") ethical theory and utilitarian (outcome-based) theory clash in clinical scenarios in which the interests of individual patients are pitted against the interests of larger populations.
- In the United States, the predominant medical ethical principle is that of respect for the patient's autonomy, and its expression is in the informed consent of patients for medical therapy.
- Competent and autonomous individuals can make affirmative choices about their medical care and refuse any medical treatments, including lifesaving care. Competence is both functional and relative. Four elements of competent decision making are understanding, appreciation, reasoning, and evidence of a choice.
- Minor patients have varying degrees of decision-making capacity, and they may have legal rights to make certain decisions. Pediatric patients should be involved to the degree that they can be in medical decision making, particularly regarding elective therapy.
- Medical testing should follow the ethical principles of beneficence and nonmaleficence and should be based on clinically validated algorithms whenever possible. Medical tests with special social significance, such as pregnancy and human immunodeficiency virus testing, should be undertaken only with the patient's informed consent and should not be undertaken without sound evidence that they are necessary and beneficial.
- In general, the rights of pregnant women are weighed against the rights of fetuses in a decremental fashion as the fetus approaches and surpasses viable age. Laboring women are able to give informed consent, and the validity of "Ulysses directives" at the time of labor is ethically arguable.
- Use of restraints is antithetical to promotion of autonomy, and anesthesiologists have both ethical and legal obligations to determine whether such extreme intervention is warranted. Coercing or using physical or chemical means to force competent patients to undergo treatment they are refusing is both unethical and illegal.
- Respect for patients' autonomy requires that we disclose mistakes to release patients from misconceptions about their medical past and enhance their ability to share decision making about their medical care.
- An advance directive is a document executed by the patient before incapacity to provide the patient's physicians with guidance in medical decision making when the patient cannot communicate for himself or herself: these directives include, but are not limited to, durable powers of attorney, living wills, transfusion decisions, do-not-attempt-resuscitation (DNAR) directives, and decisions regarding organ donation.
- Surrogate decision makers explicitly act in "substituted judgment" to provide what the patient would have wanted and are not being asked merely for their own preferences. Surrogate decision makers at best only approximate the patient's decisions.
- Patients have moral and legal rights to refuse even life-sustaining therapy, including in the operating room. DNAR orders should not be automatically suspended for anesthesia and/or surgery, but rather require reconsideration of risks and benefits; the goals and decisions of competent patients should generally be honored.
- Terminal care requires special knowledge and experience on the part of the physician. It requires expertise in medically supportive therapy, management of problematic symptoms, knowledge about physiologic changes in the dying patient, support and counseling of patients and families, understanding and respect for the patient's autonomy and religious and cultural practices and beliefs, the ability to work within complex healthcare teams, the ability to communicate well, and empathy.
- Several interventions have special ethical implications—fluid and nutritional management; the administration of sedatives and/or narcotics that have the potential to hasten death; the institution of deep continuous sedation; the administration of neuromuscular blocking agents; and deactivating pacemakers, ventricular assist devices, and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators.

- Physician-assisted suicide (PAS) is the provision of medication and/or prescriptions to patients at their request for the purpose of ending their life. Euthanasia is the administration of medication by someone other than the patient for the express purpose of causing death. PAS and euthanasia are legal only in specific parts of the world, but they are strongly supported by the public.
- Brain death is legally and medically defined as the point at which all cardiorespiratory function irreversibly ceases *or* all function of the whole brain irreversibly stops.
- In donation after cardiac death (DCD), withdrawal of life support occurs with provisions for immediate organ donation after cardiac arrest. Controversies around DCD include concerns about when cardiopulmonary death can be declared and whether medications that preserve organ function but may hasten the donor's death can be administered.
- Research in human subjects must balance many conflicting interests such as the needs and rights of the research subject; the hypothetic interests of future patients; and the physician's financial, professional, and personal goals. The ethical conduct of research in human subjects follows three principles: (1) respect for autonomy, and the obligation to protect subjects with limited autonomy; (2) beneficence, with obligations to minimize risks, maximize benefits, and ensure that the research design is scientifically sound; and (3) justice, the obligation to treat each person with regard to what is morally right and to ensure fair distribution of benefits and burdens.
- Advances in understanding animal cognition have led most biologists to believe that many, if not all, animals are capable of feeling pleasure, pain, anticipation, and fear, and thus they experience both enjoyment and suffering. Allowing animal suffering because of pain, fear, sickness, or poor standards of care is a moral harm that must be avoided, mitigated, and weighed heavily against the benefits it produces.
- U.S. professional organizations for physicians have consistently stated that participation in executions by physicians is unethical, and the American Board of Anesthesiologists states that participation in executions would constitute unprofessional behavior that would result in investigation and possible decertification of anesthesiologists.
- "Conscientious objection" by physician to providing legally allowable medical care that violates their personal moral values is possible, but is limited and counterbalanced by a physician's professional obligations to put the patient's interests first.

Medicine is a respected profession with codes of behavior and definite rules of conduct. Modern medical practitioners have tremendous power, recognized social import, and powerful financial interactions that touch nearly everyone's lives. The American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) has established principles for the ethical management of patients.[1] This chapter examines the ethical bases of the practices of medicine and the implications for anesthesiologists.

Ethical Theory

VIRTUE ETHICS, UTILITARIANISM, AND DUTY-DRIVEN ETHICS

The classic "paternalism" of medical practice was derived from *virtue-based ethics.* In this view, the physician is a genuinely virtuous person with inherent qualities of competence, sincerity, confidentiality, and altruism, who naturally knows and does what is correct for the patient. The patient, uneducated about medicine, has to trust the physician to decide what is best. Western society and legal systems have changed substantially since paternalism flourished, giving way to practices based in the four "pillars" of medical ethics: respect for patient autonomy, beneficence, nonmaleficence, and justice. Many different ethical frameworks are applied in modern medicine, but two of the most prominent frameworks relevant to western medicine are utilitarian ethics and deontology.[2]

In *utilitarian ethics*, actions are judged right or wrong on the balance of their good and bad consequences. A "right" action produces the most good, based on a perspective that gives equal weight to the interests of all affected parties. Utilitarian theory is compelling but falls short in defining which benefits are most important. Is it the "good" that all reasonable people want or the "good" defined by the individual patient? What if the only way to maximize good is to commit an entirely immoral act? For example, what if the only way to win a war is to systematically torture children? Outcomes of actions continue to accumulate over time—when on that continuum is it appropriate to determine that an action was right or wrong? The "good" act of saving an individual's life today may be viewed through a completely different lens when, 20 years from now, that same individual is revealed as a mass murderer.

Utilitarian theory may be best when applied to analyzing broad-based policies, in decisions regarding rationing of resources, and when attempting to resolve conflicting ethical obligations between several equally interested parties.

The premise of Kantian-based ethics (also called deontologic—or *duty-based*—theory) is that features of actions other than their consequences make them right or wrong. *Intention* is more important than outcome. Furthermore, no person should use another exclusively as a means to an end, because each person *is* the end for which we should act. No person should be used to further the purposes of another person without that other person's autonomous consent. Kantian philosophy would forbid killing one innocent person to save another innocent person, for example.

Individualism and autonomy are valued highly in Western society, and people tend to turn to Kantian philosophy when ethical questions arise that balance the authority of the physician against the goals and values of individual patients.

Some of the toughest ethical questions in medical practice occur when the rights and desires of individual patients conflict with social policies. Clashes between deontologic and utilitarian principles are common in the intensive care unit (ICU), in managed care settings, in end-of-life care, in transplant medicine, in triage during civilian mass casualty events, and in the care of poor and older patients whose medical management is funded by the government. In each of these settings, the will of the individual patient may conflict with broader principles of minimizing expense, fairly allocating scarce resources, protecting the broader interests of many patients, and determining where and how society's healthcare dollars are best spent.

The political tradition of the United States provides a clear underpinning to individual freedom, and at the beginning of the 20th century, the concept of the autonomy of patients began to emerge.

Clinical Ethics

INFORMED CONSENT AND INFORMED REFUSAL

Legal and moral imperatives for informed consent are based on the ethical principle of respect for patient autonomy. *Autonomy* refers to the ability to choose without controlling interferences by others and without personal limitations that prevent meaningful choices, such as inadequate information or understanding.[2] Individuals have the right to determine what happens to them to the degree to which they are capable. In the United States, this right is rooted in constitutional guarantees of privacy and noninterference.[3] In 1914, the case of *Schloendorff v Society of New York Hospital* established that it was the right of "every human being of adult years and sound mind to determine what shall happen to his own body."[4] In 1957, the term *informed consent* was first used in the case of *Salgo v Trustees of Leland Stanford Hospital*, which established that it is not sufficient for physicians simply to secure consent; physicians have a duty to inform patients about the risks and alternatives to treatment, in addition to the procedures themselves and their consequences.[5]

Respect for the patient's autonomy requires physicians to respect decisions made by competent patients, but also to *promote* autonomy by removing barriers to competent participation in decisions. Such obstacles range from incomplete or inaccurate information to reversible medical conditions that impair a patient's ability to understand the information given to him or her.

Competence and Capacity

Autonomy to make medical decisions cannot exist in the absence of competence. In the United States, *competence* is a legal determination, and *capacity* describes the necessary skills to participate in medical decisions. Most often, the terms are used interchangeably.[3]

Impairments of capacity can be temporary or permanent. Examples include some mental illnesses, dementia, immaturity, anxiety, and pain. Medication effects can variously impede competence, or improve it, depending on their effects and the context in which they are given. Older patients, patients suffering from mental impairment, and children are particularly vulnerable to having their participation in medical decisions inappropriately curtailed or denied because their capacity to participate is frequently underestimated. Hearing loss, expressive aphasia, and other neurologic impairments can create the false impression that capacity is impaired. Many minors have the ability to make medical decisions but may be mistakenly excluded from the decision-making process solely because of their age. Language barriers can present significant challenges to communication.

Capacity is both relative and task specific. Patients may be able to understand and make decisions about medical issues while being unable to manage their financial affairs, for example.

Prejudice and paternalism permeate physician behavior in the informed consent process. Challenges to a patient's competence frequently occur because the patient and the physician have a difference of opinion or values,[3,6,7] and the majority of referred patients are found competent.[3] Unwarranted challenges of a patient's capacity may, intentionally or not, serve to allow the physician to dismiss, rather than solve, a dilemma regarding a difficult patient's wishes, since with a finding of incapacity, the physician's paternalism cannot then be trumped by patient autonomy. In a retrospective study, Katz and associates commented that referrals for urgent or serious treatment put pressure on a consulting psychiatrist to support the medical team's wishes for intervention by simply declaring the patient incompetent.[8] Treatment refusal may simply reflect a patient's prioritization of other things (e.g., dignity, privacy, independence) other than medical outcomes, and not a problem with capacity—or it might reflect manageable emotions and values that disproportionately affect a patient's choices, but do not necessarily rule out capacity.

Doctors are mistaken about patients' preferences regarding life-extending therapies and underestimate older patients' desires for life-extending therapies in 30% to 40% of cases.[9,10] Moreover, surveys indicate that physicians and other healthcare workers are likely to *act* on their personal prejudices regarding handicapped or impaired patients.[11]

Functional capacity for decision making must be judged separately from the perceived quality of the decision itself. Patients have the right to make "bad" decisions (i.e., decisions that *the physician* feels are less than optimal) if they are competent and have appropriate information.[7] Otherwise, the physician would merely prevail whenever a disagreement occurred, and patient autonomy in medical decision making would be nonexistent.

How do we recognize competence? Competence is defined *functionally*, and it *is task specific*.[2] It cannot be defined to be absent by the mere presence of specific diagnoses or medications.[12] Furthermore, evidence of *impairment* is not sufficient to prove *incompetency*. With such high value placed in the United States on autonomy and self-determination, incompetency is, and should be, a difficult bar to leap over, requiring that only persons with impairments "that place them at the very bottom of the performance curve" should be declared incompetent.[12] A "sliding scale" approach to competence determinations, rather than an all-or-none approach, is endorsed by the President's Commission for the Study of Ethical Problems in Medicine and Biomedical and Behavioral Research,[13] and generally reflects how courts deal with competency cases.[12]

Anesthesiologists frequently ask whether valid consent can be obtained after the patient has received premedication. Claims that premedications automatically invalidate consent demonstrate a lack of understanding of the concept of competence. If it were true that benzodiazepines and narcotics, for example, automatically invalidate consent, then we would have to consider the consent of almost all chronic pain patients invalid. In one study, 37.5% of geriatric patients presented for surgery having taken self-prescribed medications and over 25% of these were analgesics and benzodiazepines.[14] If competence were automatically invalidated by the presence of specific medications, then we would be forced to carry out drug testing on all preoperative patients before obtaining consent. While it is true that *sometimes* premedication can interfere with a patient's ability to give consent, in some circumstances, patients cannot give consent *without* premedication. A patient who is in severe pain, for example, is unlikely to be able to focus on detailed risks and alternatives of a proposed procedure without first receiving medication. In that case, treatment of severe pain may actually *improve* competence during the informed consent process.

How does the anesthesiologist determine if they are dealing with a competent patient? Multiple reviews by competency consultants agree that there are several functional elements to competence: (1) *Understanding* - Can the patient receive and understand treatment-related information? (2) *Appreciation* - Does the patient have insight about the disorder and its consequences and potential treatment options? Does the patient understand that treatment could be beneficial in some way? (3) *Reasoning* - Is the patient able to use logic to compare the risks and benefits of treatment alternatives? And, (4) *Evidence of a choice* - Can the patient communicate a choice?[3,12,15]

In respecting and promoting patient autonomy in medical decision making, the anesthesiologist has an ethical duty to treat reversible conditions that interfere with medical decision making when doing so would not delay the medical treatment so much that it becomes irrelevant. Elective surgery may have to be postponed until expert consultation for a determination of mental capacity or treatment of reversible conditions can occur. When surgery in an impaired patient is urgent, the anesthesiologist may have to rely on a surrogate decision maker or proceed with the best determination of the patient's interests in mind. It is important to note that the mere presence of an emergency does not invalidate a *competent* patient's rights to consent to or to refuse treatment. Overriding a competent patient's wishes is unethical, even in emergency situations.[16]

Disclosure

The informed consent process requires honest disclosure of medical information to the patient. U.S. courts generally rely on two standards of disclosure, termed the reasonable person (or objective person) standard and the subjective standard. In the reasonable person standard, the physician must disclose any information that a theoretically reasonable person would want to know, and the risks or cluster of risks to which a reasonable person in the patient's position would attach significance in deciding whether or not to forgo the proposed therapy.[17,18] This standard does not require an exhaustive recitation of facts, and it acknowledges that not all information related to the procedure is integral to making a decision about whether to undergo that procedure. The subjective standard recognizes that some patients may have special needs for specific information, and when that need is obvious or has been brought to the attention of the physician, the information must be disclosed. A concert violinist may have a specific need to know about the potential for nerve damage from an axillary block, while an opera singer may need to know that intubation may adversely affect the voice. In obtaining informed consent, the anesthesiologist should always ask the patient if there are any special concerns regarding the anesthetic, or anything he or she would want the provider to know. In general, legal and ethical standards now require that the physician (1) accurately discuss the therapy and its potential alternative—including no therapy—and (2) disclose the common risks, because they are more likely to happen, and the serious risks, because the consequences are severe.

The doctrine of *therapeutic privilege* is sometimes cited to avoid discussing risks, the reasoning being that discussing risks can psychologically or physically harm the patient by increasing stress. Studies of patients' stress during the informed consent process *do not* support this concept. These studies show that patient stress is generally reduced after risk discussions[19,20] and omission of such conversations is contrary to U.S. law. Although it is ethical to forgo or curtail risk discussions at the patient's request, it is not ethical for the physician to decide to do so unilaterally.

The physician-patient relationship is inherently unequal because of the physician's knowledge and authority and the patient's dependence on the physician for care. Physicians have ethical obligations to avoid exploiting their influence for the purpose of accomplishing their own ends. Although offering a rational basis for a medical choice is acceptable, it is always unethical to coerce or manipulate competent patients into decisions by presenting real or implied threats or by omitting or misrepresenting key information. In fact, such intentional manipulations are morally equivalent to lying to the patient, and thus invalidate the concept of informed consent entirely.[21]

Legal Implications of Informed Consent

The informed consent process does not prevent legal liability when adverse events occur. Flawed informed consent processes have been cited, however, as evidence of a lack of quality of care by the physician, and are associated with poorer litigation outcomes for the physician.[22] The ASA closed-claims database reveals that informed consent is cited in approximately 1% of cases, and cases with inadequate informed consent documentation are associated with larger monetary awards.[23] Studies show that the risk of a malpractice claim is directly related to the patient's perception of his or her relationship with the physician.[24] The informed consent process provides one of the few opportunities anesthesiologists have to establish that relationship, however brief, and the medicolegal importance of that process should not be underestimated.

Informed Refusal

The concept of informed consent is moot if the informed patient cannot refuse medical therapy, because every informed consent process would then have to end with the physician getting his or her way. Examples of informed refusals in anesthesiology include requests to withdraw or withhold life-supporting care in the ICU; do-not-attempt-resuscitation (DNAR) orders in the operating room; refusals of blood transfusions; and cases in which a patient refuses preoperative testing, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) or pregnancy testing.

Informed refusal has concerns and requirements similar to those of informed consent. When patients refuse medical care or insist on what the physician believes to be suboptimal care, disclosure of the risks and benefits becomes even more important because these decisions may veer from options that are already widely accepted and for which the risks are believed to be lowest. It is easier to justify agreeing to the unusual preferences of a well-informed patient than to justify subjecting a poorly informed patient to unorthodox care.

Despite full information, patients may sometimes request or demand care that is unreasonable, either because it will adversely affect the performance of a surgical procedure or because it would be associated with unreasonably high risks. When a patient demands a technique that is inappropriate or outside of the realm of reasonable practice, the anesthesiologist is under no ethical obligation to provide that care. No physician can be compelled by a patient to practice negligently.

Special Issues in Informed Consent and Informed Refusal

THE JEHOVAH'S WITNESS PATIENT

The classic example of a patient who refuses therapy in anesthesia practice is that of Jehovah's Witnesses, many of whom believe that accepting a blood transfusion violates a Biblical injunction. The Jehovah's Witness doctrine has been subject to change over time, with resulting inconsistencies in religious practice regarding which, if any, blood components may be acceptable. Individuals interpret religious doctrines in light of their own spiritual contexts, and not all believers hold to the same tenets with identical fervor. Church doctrines, like medical practices, evolve over time, and practices that are acceptable at one time may not be years later. Anesthesiologists and surgeons have cited individual and doctrinal inconsistencies as justification for ignoring the wishes of Jehovah's Witness patients, but to do so is no more logical than assuming that every hypertensive patient needs or will respond well to identical treatment or that optimal treatments will not evolve over time. Moreover, *any* patient has the right to refuse blood transfusion therapy, regardless of whether this desire is founded in religious preference. Such refusals have become more common in patients who are not Jehovah's Witnesses, as blood transfusion therapy has been connected to infection risk and other complications.

Because of the differing beliefs of Jehovah's Witness patients, the anesthesiologist must have a thorough and detailed preoperative discussion of possible therapies with the patient, and the conclusions should be documented in the patient's chart. A physician who cannot comply with a competent adult patient's desire to forgo transfusion has an ethical obligation to find an alternative caregiver whenever possible.[25,26]

The courts strongly support the rights of most adult patients to refuse blood products for themselves but have been inconsistent and have interfered in cases of some pregnant patients. Transfusion of pediatric Jehovah's Witness patients by court order is common. However, this may become ethically and legally less acceptable as alternative bloodless therapies to maintain oxygen-carrying capacity evolve, as the Jehovah's Witness church further defines its doctrines with regard to children, and as the capacity of children to consent to or refuse therapy is better understood.

THE PEDIATRIC PATIENT AND OTHER PATIENTS WITH IMPAIRED COMPETENCE

The ethical practice of medicine weighs heavily toward adherence to the respect for autonomy of competent patients or advance directives of patients who were previously competent. Medical care of individuals who have never been autonomous relies on principles such as respect for human dignity, beneficence, avoidance of harm, and adherence to the principle of justice.

Children are examples of persons who may or may not yet be autonomous. Laws in each state define the age at which children become legally competent to make medical decisions (usually 18 years), but many younger children have the mental and emotional capacity to make medical decisions. Forcing such individuals to undergo treatments they do not want is unethical and could be illegal as well.

Decision-making capacity in children is variable. Most 2-year-old children are clearly not able to make medical decisions. However, the range of capability in children as young as 7 or 8 years old is wide. In one study, children 6 through 9 years of age who were invited to participate in influenza vaccine research asked pertinent questions about individual risks and benefits and whether their community and other children would benefit.[27] Studies suggest that the average 12-year-old adolescent has capabilities that are required in medical decision-making, but differing influences of the brain's well-developed reward system coupled with underdevelopment of the brain's control systems suggest that decision-making capacity may in fact be diminished in specific contexts in this age group.[28]

Most states recognize "emancipated minor" status, in which a court determines that a minor can legally make medical decisions for himself or herself. Legal exceptions to the age of consent are recognized in most states when treatment is believed to be in the minor's best interest and when a requirement for parental consent would interfere with the child's ability to receive medical help. The law recognizes that, tragically, some conditions for which a minor seeks therapy may even be the result of parental abuse and seeking parental permission for treatment may actually further endanger the minor. One quarter of pregnant teens are at risk for physical or sexual assault, and the most common perpetrator is a member of their family.[29] Thus, minors are allowed in many states to consent for treatment for substance abuse, sexually transmitted disease, mental illness, and medical care affecting pregnancy, including abortion, without seeking parental consent. When a minor has decision-making capacity but is not "emancipated," a judge may declare the child to be a "mature minor" with decision-making rights.

Ideally, individuals of any age should be involved in medical decisions to the degree that their capacity allows. Children ages 7 to 17 have been shown to desire comprehensive perioperative information, including details of the procedure and anesthesia, risks, and complications.[30] A minor with capacity to make decisions should not be coerced or restrained under most circumstances.[31] Determining whether a minor has such capacity may require formal consultation and assessment. The American Academy of Pediatrics has stated that physicians who care for children "should give serious consideration to each patient's developing capacities for participating in decision making, including rationality and autonomy."[32] The term *assent* rather than *consent* is used to refer to agreement to treatment from children who do not fall into legal categories, such as age, that award adult rights. Recently, authors have suggested that informed *consent* rather than *assent* for medical research participation should be applied to children ages 12 and up.[33]

When children dissent from medical care, persistent refusals may be ethically binding, particularly in the case of participation in research. Medical personnel should respect the wishes of a patient who withholds assent and should try to gain a better understanding of the patient's situation or deal with his or her fears. "A patient's reluctance or refusal to assent should also carry considerable weight when the proposed intervention is not essential to his or her welfare and/or can be deferred without substantial risk."[32]

Ethical Challenges of Preoperative Testing

The ethical implications of genetic testing have been widely discussed in the literature, but the ethical implications of routine medical testing have been largely overlooked by professional societies. The performance of diagnostic tests does have ethical dimensions, however. We generally undertake such tests precisely because we intend to help the patient (beneficence) or to use the information to minimize other risks (nonmaleficence). Certain medical tests may also carry implications for the patient's autonomy, privacy, and even social justice.

ROUTINE PREOPERATIVE TESTING PROTOCOLS

Preoperative testing may help identify unrecognized or disguised conditions that could adversely affect anesthetic risk. All medical tests carry risks, however. False-positive and false-negative results may either label patients as having a condition they do not have or inappropriately assure patients that they do not have a condition that they do. Erroneous results may lead either to further testing or to inappropriate and unnecessary therapy associated with further complications. Errors can also cause patients to be deprived of important therapy they would otherwise receive. Tests sometimes have accompanying physical complications, and they are certainly always associated with economic costs. Systematic over-testing increases the costs of health care for entire populations, unnecessarily burdening an already costly system, and diverting badly needed funds to unnecessary enterprise. Medical tests may involve problems of conflicts of interest if the ordering physician has an economic relationship with the entity that carries out the tests. Additionally, not all medical tests are ethically equivalent. Certain tests, such as pregnancy testing and HIV testing, may have complex social consequences and can lead to serious, avoidable harms.

Modern medicine is a science that incorporates theories that are expected to be consistent and generalizable. Although all data are deeply theory laden, the practice of evidence-based medicine (EBM) is founded on the concept that conscientious, judicious, and explicit use of the best available medical evidence should be integrated with clinical experience derived from systematic research in making decisions about the medical care of individual patients. In general, nonsystematic clinical experience, anecdote, and untested theory are not sufficient grounds for clinical decision making.

EBM and medical ethics share common principles and goals: both are aimed at maximizing benefits and minimizing risks, as well as at involving the patient in shared decision making. Using EBM to guide clinical testing and therapy is supported by analysis of traditional therapies that were never subjected to rigorous testing and that, on examination, were shown to be not only unhelpful to patients but possibly harmful. One Cochrane review, for example, found that administration of human albumin, a mainstay of therapy for treatment of shock, may be associated with increased mortality.[34] Another Cochrane review demonstrated that although mammography screening will prolong the life of 1 in 2000 women over a 10-year period, it will lead to the false diagnosis of cancer and the institution of cancer treatment in 10 women during that same period; these findings raise serious questions about the benefits and risks of routine mammography.[35] Using systematic evaluation of medical diagnostic testing to develop principles of preoperative testing not only serves the ethical principles of beneficence and nonmaleficence, but also permits us to provide patients with accurate and up-to-date information on the potential benefits of tests to aid their understanding and input in their medical care—thus honoring the principle of respect for the patient's autonomy.

Conversely, EBM presents potentially significant ethical concerns. In relying on traditional medical experimentation, EBM may not sufficiently account for the role of social and cultural factors (e.g., poverty, ethnicity, spirituality, and gender) in health, and instead may rely too heavily on a narrowly drawn biomedical model of the patient's experience of health and disease. In the words of Rogers, "those with the greatest burden of ill health are disenfranchised, as there is little research that is relevant to them, there is poor access to treatments, and attention is diverted from activities that might have a much greater impact on their health."[36]

Despite its limitations, it nevertheless seems reasonable to believe that in trying to maximize beneficence and minimize nonmaleficence, EBM provides at least an improvement in the search for a rational, cost-effective approach to medical testing over simply adopting "traditional" therapies or protocols without evidence that they will contribute to accomplishing those goals. Applying medical tests inappropriately can cause very real harm to patients. Simply stated, if medical care is not valid, then it is not ethical.

Evidence that routine tests or traditional patterns of preoperative testing enhance perioperative outcomes is scant. Large population studies of many routine preoperative tests, such as coagulation screening,[37] chest radiography,[38] and electrocardiography,[39] have, on the contrary, found that these tests increase costs without necessarily positively affecting outcomes and can even lead to detrimental outcomes. The ASA Task Force for Preanesthesia Evaluation acknowledged that most routine testing is not necessary.[40] When evidence-based algorithms for preoperative testing are available and have been appropriately validated clinically, they should be used to guide clinical decision making.

ROUTINE PREOPERATIVE PREGNANCY AND HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS TESTING

Social risks of preoperative testing may not be as obvious to the physician as medical risks, but they can be the source of significant harm. Examples of tests that can produce social harm and are of limited preoperative utility are HIV and pregnancy tests. Both tests have serious ethical consideration; have limited, if any, beneficial impact in the setting of surgery; may have serious social and economic consequences for the patient beyond the operating room; and require the patient's informed consent.

HIV tests are often ordered for the purpose of singling out patients for whom extra universal precautions could be taken to reduce transmission in the operating room. Most surgeons and anesthesiologists believe that compulsory HIV testing would reduce their risk of exposure, and many believe incorrectly that this testing is the physician's prerogative and can be done without the patient's consent.[41]

However, HIV testing does not necessarily yield safer anesthetic management and is more costly than diligent application of universal precautions.[42] In low-prevalence populations, testing is more likely to give false-negative results that wrongly reassure operating room workers that a patient is not infected. This may paradoxically increase the risk of HIV transmission if relaxation in vigilance is the result.

HIV tests can result in loss of employment, insurance coverage, or both. Seropositive women can experience marital breakup, abandonment, verbal abuse, and physical violence if their status is disclosed.[43,44] The threat of compulsory HIV testing almost certainly would prevent some patients from seeking needed surgical care.[41]

Routine preoperative pregnancy testing has ethical ramifications analogous to those of HIV testing. Despite pervasive beliefs to the contrary, studies do not conclusively demonstrate that anesthetic agents lead to early fetal loss, and no anesthetics have been clearly associated with teratogenic effects.[44-47] Studies have also shown that even adolescent girls generally accurately report the possibility of pregnancy when asked privately.[48] Legal ramifications of not routinely testing for pregnancy preoperatively have been virtually nonexistent, and fewer than one third of practices in the United States require such testing.[49] A positive pregnancy test may have extremely negative consequences if a vulnerable patient is in a social situation in which pregnancy is not accepted. Up to two-thirds of sexual assault victims are minors, and some are the result of child rape within the home. Abandonment, negative family interactions, and violence to the patient or her fetus, or both, may all occur, as reactions to revelation of the pregnancy, attempts to hide a sexual domestic crime, or even in some cases as "honor killings."[50] Referral of pregnant adolescents to child protective services should be considered.[49] In many states, it is illegal to disclose or even insinuate a child's pregnancy status to her parents, regardless of her age. Therefore, the anesthesiologist who discovers an adolescent patient's pregnancy has few comfortable or legal options.

Many patients may choose not to undergo an elective surgical procedure if they know they are pregnant. However, *coercing* a female patient to have a test against her wishes and that she may find insulting explicitly violates the principle of the patient's autonomy. The physician's self-interest is not adequate justification for disregarding a patient's autonomy or violating a patient's privacy. The ASA Task Force on Preoperative Testing and the ASA Committee on Ethics jointly recommended that anesthesiologists offer the *choice* of preoperative pregnancy testing to any female patient who may desire it, explain the potential risks and benefits, and obtain informed consent or informed refusal for the test.[40]

Ethics of Anesthesia Involving Pregnant Women

MATERNAL-FETAL CONFLICTS

In general, the rights of pregnant women to refuse therapy, even if it will be detrimental to their fetuses, are protected under right-to-privacy provisions in the U.S. Constitution. Those rights are weighed against potential harms to the fetus in a decremental fashion as the fetus approaches and surpasses viable age. When the fetus is of nonviable age, the mother's rights prevail. Court decisions have consistently upheld the rights of pregnant women to have abortions, to not be subjected to drug testing, and to forgo transfusions early in pregnancy. Attempts to charge women with child abuse, child endangerment, drug trafficking, murder, and attempted murder for activities deemed dangerous to their fetuses have almost uniformly failed.[51] In general, women do not lose their rights to bodily integrity and informed consent when they become pregnant, and neither fetal "rights" nor state interests supersede a pregnant woman's right as medical decision maker.

The American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Ethics outlined conditions that in their view are necessary to override a mother's refusal of care: (1) the fetus *will* suffer irrevocable harm without the treatment, (2) the treatment is *clearly indicated* and likely to be effective, and (3) the risk to the woman is low.[52] The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists condemned the use of coercion in pregnant women and advocated counseling the patient carefully about risks, as well as consultation with an ethics committee.[53]

INFORMED CONSENT IN LABORING WOMEN

The validity of informed consent for epidural anesthesia in laboring women is a topic of concern to anesthesiologists, who periodically raise the question whether laboring women are able to consider and weigh the risks of labor analgesia sufficiently while they are in pain. Although ideal conditions for informed consent are often lacking during labor, it is important to realize that the ideal is seldom achieved even in elective surgical patients; therefore, it is crucial to distinguish between conditions that are not *ideal* from conditions that are not *adequate*.

Despite concerns by anesthesiologists, most studies show that laboring women have the same capacity to give informed consent as the general surgical population,[54,55] are able to recall details of the consent process long after labor is finished, and indicate that labor did not alter their decision making.[56] Furthermore, studies show that the presence or absence of labor pain has minimal effect on a woman's ability to recall analgesia risks and other elements of the informed consent process later.[55,57] Some investigators argue that it is only after the patient enters active labor and she can assess for herself the severity of pain and consequences of proceeding without analgesia that she can be fully informed.[54]

An ethical conflict can arise in the case of so-called Ulysses directives in which, before labor, a woman executes an advance directive that refuses epidural analgesia and instructs doctors to ignore her pleas for epidural anesthesia at the time of labor should she change her mind. Although some experts suggest that ignoring the Ulysses directive disrespects a woman's long-term preferences, others argue that "information and valid experience are critical prerequisites for autonomous decision making" and that only the current wish (to receive an epidural) is ethically relevant.[58] Such cases appear to have no clear and unequivocal ethical ground on which to proceed, and circumstances must guide the physician. However, if an anesthesia practice decides to disregard Ulysses directives routinely, this should obviously be disclosed to patients in advance of labor whenever possible.

The Uncooperative Patient—Coercion and Restraint

The use of physical restraint to control medical research subjects was first directly addressed in the Nuremberg Code following the Doctors' Trial in 1947 to 1949 and is a continuing subject of intense scrutiny.[59] For anesthesiologists, chemical restraints often replace physical ones, but the ethical issues are the same. Anesthesiologists are often asked by medical colleagues to chemically restrain uncooperative patients. Use of restraints is antithetical to promotion of autonomy, and anesthesiologists have both ethical and legal obligations to determine whether such extreme intervention is warranted. Coercing or using physical or chemical means to force a competent patient to undergo treatment that he or she is refusing is both unethical and illegal. Refusal of medical care and angry behavior are not proof of incompetence, intoxication, or inability to make medical decisions.[60]

When faced with the uncooperative adult patient, questions to ask include the following: (1) Is the patient clearly incompetent or merely angry and uncooperative? Does the patient show evidence of neurologic impairment, acute intoxication, or severe mental disability? (2) Is the patient in imminent danger? (3) Does the patient pose a direct threat to staff or other patients? (4) Does a compelling need to treat life-threatening injuries exist? In the absence of any of the foregoing, the use of coercion or physical or chemical restraints is neither ethical nor legal. Physicians may be forced in some situations to act within a time frame that does not permit lengthy evaluation of a patient's competence or a protracted search for a surrogate decision maker. The standard applied in such cases would be to do what a "reasonable" person would wish. Coercion or restraint (or both) in such situations is not ideal, but it may be necessary and ethically permissible.

The uncooperative child presents special ethical concerns. When a patient who does not have the capacity to make healthcare decisions dissents from medical care, the anesthesiologist is ethically required to provide care that is most likely to benefit the patient and prevent harm while preserving the dignity and safety of the patient. Although violation of respect for autonomy is technically not possible in a patient who does not have autonomy, violations of principles of beneficence, nonmaleficence, and respect for dignity certainly are. Indiscriminate use of physical or chemical restraints is not without physical risk, and the fear and anger provoked by such tactics can lead to future aversion of medical care and mistrust of healthcare providers. The American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Child Abuse and Neglect stated that restraint should not be used in pediatric care "unless it is necessary for proper diagnosis and treatment in a sick child, as in the case of a child with a high fever and potential ear infection, or in emergency situations."[61]

Behavioral control in the uncooperative child or incompetent adult should focus on alternatives to physical restraint, such as offering choices on how to go to sleep and use of fantasy or hypnotic suggestion. Despite many possible social, economic, and scheduling pressures to the contrary, delaying or rescheduling a surgical procedure in a hysterical patient is better than using coercion or force. Delaying elective surgery may reduce stress, allow adequate premedication, and promote safer induction conditions. If medical care is urgent, or if delay is unlikely to result in better conditions for the patient, then the anesthesiologist should proceed in a manner designed to preserve the patient's dignity and safety.

Truth Telling—Disclosure of Errors and Apology

Nonmaleficence has been a foundational principle for the medical profession since the time of Hippocrates, and this principle draws no distinction between deliberate and unintended harms. Medical care is fraught with uncertainty, risk, and error. Harms resulting from unexpected complications, accidents, systems issues, and medical mistakes are to be avoided with equal diligence whenever possible.

Wu and colleagues defined a medical mistake as "a commission or omission with potentially negative consequences for the patient that would have been judged wrong by skilled and knowledgeable peers at the time it occurred, independent of whether there are any negative consequences."[62] Medical errors occur in 3% to 5% of all hospitalizations.[63] More than 40% appear to be preventable, and more than 15% result in patients' deaths.[64] In 1999, the release of the Institute of Medicine's report *To Err Is Human* focused public and political attention on the terrible fallout of medical errors in the United States.[65]

Studies showed that 76% of physicians admitted to a serious medical error that they did not disclose to the patient,[66] and 22% of physicians indicated that they would not disclose an error that caused a patient's death.[67] Reasons cited for a physician's reluctance to disclose errors included personal shame, fear of loss of prestige in the physician's cohort, fear of direct reprisal, lack of experience in disclosing uncomfortable information, fear of causing further harm (emotional or psychological) to the patient and family, and fear of litigation. In many cases, legal advice to physicians has discouraged disclosure and apology in the erroneous belief that these tactics decrease medicolegal liability.

Obfuscating the root cause of a patient's complication when it is caused by a medical error is not difficult in the physician-patient relationship because the physician has unique expertise and is the recipient of unique trust. Furthermore, a minimum standard of disclosure simply does not exist. The Code of Ethics of the American Medical Association (AMA) states that patients have a right to be free of misconceptions about their medical condition and that physicians have ethical obligations to "inform the patient of all the facts necessary to ensure understanding of what has occurred."[68] However, the AMA Code of Ethics addresses only "harms" and not "errors, thus implying no duty to disclose medical errors that do not lead to harm. Although some experts state that physicians may have a lesser obligation to disclose harmless errors and/or "near misses," it is nevertheless arguable that they should consider doing so. The physician has little to lose, and such disclosures may enhance discussion of medical care with the patient and result in a strengthened doctor-patient relationship. Legalistically, some experts consider full disclosure of medical errors to be an extension of the legal principle underlying informed consent: "Clearly, if the patient is entitled to know the risks of a procedure and what could go wrong prior to giving their consent, it follows that they would be entitled to know if something has in fact gone wrong, regardless of whether it was unanticipated."[69]

Respect for patients' autonomy requires that we disclose mistakes that harm patients because in so doing we release patients from misconceptions about their medical past and enhance their ability to share decision making about their medical care. Disclosure prevents mistaken attribution by the patient of adverse consequences to noncontributory causes. Disclosure is usually necessary for informed consent for treatments to address complications of the error. Disclosure may enhance patients' trust in physicians. Moreover, disclosure may facilitate a patient's obtaining just and fair compensation for economic consequences of the injury, such as lost work and pay.

The concern that disclosure of errors to patients will increase litigation or decrease patients' trust, either in the doctor involved or in doctors in general, has not been borne out. Studies have suggested that full disclosure of a medical error reduces the likelihood that patients will change doctors, improves patients' satisfaction, increases trust in the physician, and leads to a more positive emotional response.[70] Studies also have demonstrated that patients take legal action because they want more honesty from their physicians and assurances that the physician has learned from the mistake and that future patients therefore are less likely to suffer.[71]

An often-ignored aspect of medical errors is the effect that errors and disclosures have on physicians and other healthcare workers, who experience anxiety, fear, guilt, shame, self-doubt, anger, and disappointment. Damage to physicians, nurses, and others can be both long-lasting and severe, particularly following serious errors, manifesting as substance abuse and suicide. In a survey of anesthesiologists, 84% had been involved in at least one unanticipated death or serious injury, 88% stated they needed extended time to recover, with 19% stating they never fully recovered after the event. Twelve percent considered a career change. Even though 67% considered their ability to provide care was compromised in the first 4 hours following the event, only 7% were given time off. Five percent admitted to turning to drugs or alcohol as a coping mechanism.[72] Most anesthesiologists report inadequate support from colleagues or their institution in coping with such events.[73]

Physicians benefit from a sense of relief after disclosure and, at least in many cases, the forgiveness of the patient.[74] Disclosure helps physicians learn and improve their practice. Failures to report errors, learn from errors, and communicate errors and their potential solutions within a healthcare system are major causes of medical errors themselves. One could argue that a physician who does not disclose a preventable error, such that it is repeated, bears responsibility for harm not only to his or her own patient, but also to all future patients in whom the error could have been prevented had it been disclosed.

Disclosure can present some harm to the physician: disclosure is stressful, litigation may result, malpractice premiums may increase, and future employment may be adversely affected. However, in the doctor-patient relationship, ethical frameworks hold that benefits and harms to the patient should hold more weight than benefits and harms to the physician.

Do we have an ethical duty to disclose the errors of others? Legally, some North American courts have held that we do not,[69] and social norms about "tattling" on others are powerful deterrents to such disclosures. The reporting physician may hesitate because of a lack of definitive information, potential accusations of interfering in the doctor-patient relationship of another, worry that professional interactions such as patient referrals and performance evaluations may be affected, and fear of libel suits. When a physician observes a medical error committed by another physician, the options include nondisclosure, recommendations to the involved physician to disclose the error, disclosure of the error to a third party such as a risk-management group, or direct disclosure to the patient. Although no strict legal guidelines are in place, ethical principles favor actions that lead the patient to have a full understanding of what has occurred during his or her medical care.

Apology (as opposed to disclosure) remains a controversial aspect of communication following medical errors, largely because of fear that it could be used as an admission of negligence in subsequent litigation. Yet apology appears in many cases to decrease the risk of subsequent litigation, and lack of apology is a commonly cited reason among malpractice plaintiffs for their legal action.[75] Spurred on by a desire to reduce litigation, many states have enacted "apology laws" that prohibit use of various types of apologies in court against physician defendants in malpractice cases. The impact of these laws and the impact of apologies on the incidence and outcomes of malpractice litigation remains unclear, although significant numbers of patients who have sued physicians indicate that an apology would have prevented them from doing so.

ADVANCE DIRECTIVES AND SURROGATE DECISION MAKERS

Critical decisions regarding medical care often arise when patients are too ill to formulate or express decisions regarding medical interventions. *Advance directives* were developed after several legal decisions affirmed that patients can refuse even lifesaving medical care and that clear and convincing evidence of the patient's wishes is needed to allow surrogate decision makers to request withdrawal of life-sustaining therapies.[76] An advance directive is a document executed by the patient before incapacity to provide the patient's physicians with guidance when the patient cannot communicate for himself or herself. Such directives include the following: living wills, which detail the therapies a patient would accept or refuse in the case of terminal incapacity; DNAR orders; and any other preferences regarding medical care decisions.

A surrogate decision maker is someone whom the patient has appointed to make healthcare decisions for him or her (a durable power of attorney [durable POA]) or an individual with other legally recognized authority by virtue of his or her relationship with the patient.

A durable POA for healthcare decisions may be given by the patient to a specific person he or she designates to make healthcare decisions for them if they become incapacitated. The authority vested in a POA supersedes most other decision makers, including family members, except a court-appointed guardian.

When the patient has not designated a durable POA, doctors rely on family members to make decisions for the patient. Many states have a legally defined hierarchy of decision makers. Commonly, the surrogate hierarchy is the spouse or legally recognized domestic partner, followed by the children, if all are in agreement, then parents, if both are in agreement, and then siblings, if all are in agreement. The anesthesiologist should familiarize himself or herself with the specific laws of the state in which they practice.

Surrogate decision makers are explicitly trusted to act in "substituted judgment" to provide what the patient would have wanted and theoretically are not asked merely for their own preferences. However, surrogate decision makers at best only approximate the patient's decisions because their interpretation is subject to their own biases, values, and psychological agendas. Incompetent patients can be emotionally and financially burdensome, and decision makers may have conflicts of interest that distort their beliefs and testimony about what the patient would have wanted.

Studies demonstrate that patients and their proxies only infrequently discuss issues and values involving life-sustaining technologies. Discrepancies between patients and proxies are often significant in the assessment of patients' emotional health and satisfaction. Neither physicians nor proxies can always accurately predict the patient's preferences for life-sustaining therapies.[77,78] Nevertheless, with all the imperfections, proxy decision making may be the only option if a patient has not left specific directives.

Medical Decisions That May Require a Court Order

Some medical treatments have intense cultural connotations, may involve limitation on private freedoms such as reproduction, or may have historically been subject to abuse. Decisions regarding these interventions *cannot* be made by a surrogate decision maker (even if one is available) and require a court review. Examples of such treatments in many states include sterilization and electroshock therapy.

The anesthesiologist should review the patient's record before taking the patient to the operating room and ascertain (1) whether the patient has advance directives, (2) who the patient's surrogate decision makers are, (3) whether the procedure is legally allowed with consent from a surrogate decision maker, and (4) in special cases, whether an appropriate court order has been obtained.

Do-Not-Attempt-Resuscitation Orders in the Operating Room

Up to 60% of anesthesiologists wrongfully believe that DNAR orders are automatically suspended during anesthesia and surgery. The ASA,[25] the American College of Surgeons,[79] the Association of Operating Room Nurses,[80] and The Joint Commission[81] all published practice guidelines requiring reconsideration, not abandonment, of the DNAR orders in the perioperative period.

The causes and outcomes expected with a cardiac arrest in the operating room are different from what may happen outside the operating room, although they are still poor, with a "viable" survival of only about 25%.[82] It is important, therefore, that patients be informed of the risks and benefits of cardiac resuscitation so that they can best determine whether to ask for their DNAR order to be suspended during the perioperative period.

Although the patient's primary care physician may have introduced the idea of DNAR orders to the patient or the surrogate decision maker, it is the anesthesiologist's duty to discuss the risks and benefits of resuscitation in the setting of anesthesia and surgery before undertaking the patient's care. The anesthesiologist should include in this discussion the following steps: (1) determine the patient's goals regarding surgery and resuscitation; (2) establish exactly what is meant by "resuscitation," in contrast to routine anesthetic care; (3) educate the patient about the risks and benefits of resuscitation in the operating room setting; and (4) document the agreements reached with the patient about which interventions commonly associated with resuscitation are acceptable to him or her. Such interventions could include, but are not limited to, intubation, administration of vasoactive drugs, administration of direct current countershock, and institution of chest compressions. Many patients who express reluctance about resuscitation during surgery actually most fear burdensome collateral outcomes, such as permanent neurologic impairment, rather than the process of resuscitation itself. Education and discussion may reassure these patients about the potential outcomes of resuscitation in the operating room and can establish ground rules for discontinuing interventions postoperatively if they do not lead to a chance of meaningful recovery.

Surgery depends on the cooperation of many caregivers with differing expertise, each with independent ethical obligations to the patient. Resuscitation agreements must be discussed with other members of the operating room team. This communication prevents crucial disagreements from occurring during a critical event when treatment decisions must be made quickly. It also allows "conscientious objectors" to withdraw from the healthcare team.

Advance directives are legally and ethically binding. Despite clear, consistent, and forceful legal decisions, physicians have ignored DNAR directives under the false assumption that the legal authority of advance directives and living wills is not binding in the operating room or that the physician has discretion in deciding when to follow or ignore such directives—and families have sued for significant monetary damages for the costs of continued health care and punitive damages for the pain, suffering, and mental anguish of the patients' survivors when DNAR instructions are ignored.[83,84]

In 1990, the U.S. Congress passed the Patient Self-Determination Act that recognizes a competent patient's right to refuse any medical therapy, including life-sustaining therapy, and requires medical institutions and providers to advise patients of these rights and ask about their preferences.[76] Compliance with the act is required in order to participate in Medicare and Medicaid reimbursements. Furthermore, in 2006, the American Civil Liberties Union filed suit against a group of New Mexico orthopedic surgeons who were requiring patients to sign away their rights to DNAR as a requirement of surgery, arguing that this not only violated the 1990 Patient Self-Determination Act, but denied patients their constitutional rights. The surgeons were required to desist in that practice, publicize the change in policy (to respect DNAR), and pay attorneys' fees and various other fines.[85]

Finally, DNAR orders must never be construed as an excuse to not "care" for the patient. A patient's decision to forgo resuscitation does not imply a wish to avoid other beneficial interventions. Placement of a pulmonary artery catheter, for example, may help ensure optimal management of a frail patient who has a DNAR order and enable the anesthesiologist to avoid situations in which the patient's DNAR status becomes pivotal.

END-OF-LIFE DECISION MAKING

A 1996 review by the AMA showed that the following end-of-life issues were of foremost importance to patients: control over the timing and location of death; management of symptoms such as pain, dyspnea, anxiety, and depression; financial management of medical care; and maintenance of therapeutic options, including physician-assisted suicide (PAS).[86]

Withdrawal or Withholding of Medical Therapies

Between 2000 and 2010, about one-third of deaths in the United States occurred in short-stay general hospitals.[87] Patients and doctors alike recognize that aggressive medical therapy may not be desired or even appropriate in the presence of advancing disease, and over time the use of hospice and palliative care facilities has increased.[88] Most deaths in ICUs occur after an explicit decision to withdraw or withhold treatments.[89]

Before the mid-20th century, the concept of beneficence in the eyes of physicians was strongly tied to preventing death. Ethical distinctions between acts of omission ("letting die") and acts of commission ("killing") were and remain confusing at best. Worse, physicians faced threats of criminal punishment if a patient's death resulted from withdrawal of medical treatments.[90] In 1976, the case of Karen Ann Quinlan established that patients have a right to forgo invasive treatments, even if lifesaving, and that surrogate decision makers could ask for withdrawal of lifesaving therapies if the surrogates could show that the patient would not have wanted them.[91] The right to forgo lifesaving treatments was later extended in the cases of Claire Convoy and Nancy Cruzan to include *any* treatment if the patient refused it or if clear and convincing evidence indicated that the patient would have refused therapy if he or she could speak for himself or herself.[76] These decisions were revisited and reconfirmed in the tragic case of Theresa Schiavo in 2005.[92]

Arguments that withdrawing or withholding life-sustaining therapy does not violate rules against killing patients are based on ethical differences between killing and letting die, and between acts of commission (e.g., lethal injection) and acts of omission (e.g., withdrawal or withholding of ventilator therapy).[93] Because such distinctions are confusing to both physicians and patients, a *principle of proportionality* is often applied when withholding or withdrawing treatments.[94] In this principle, treatment is indicated to the extent that it is likely to present more benefits than burdens to the patient based on the patient's perception of such medical, social, and psychological benefits and burdens. Of course, competent patients still always have the right to refuse therapy, even if lifesaving and otherwise indicated.

Two common settings in which anesthesiologists may be involved in withdrawing or withholding life-sustaining interventions are the ICU and the operating room before organ donation after cardiac death (DCD). In both cases, the issues and principles of withdrawing or withholding treatments are the same.

Withdrawal of life-sustaining interventions heralds the final phase of end-of-life care, and it is a socially critical phase in the life of the patient and family. Terminal care requires special knowledge and experience on the part of the physician. It requires expertise in medically supportive therapy, management of problematic symptoms, knowledge about physiologic changes in the dying patient, support and counseling of patients and families, understanding and respect for the patient's autonomy and religious and cultural practices and beliefs, the ability to work within complex healthcare teams, the ability to communicate well, and empathy. Anyone intimately involved in care of the dying patient should also be intimately familiar with ethical and legal standards.

Withdrawal of life-sustaining treatment begins with an assessment of the individual patient's physiology, level of dependence on therapy, degree of consciousness, preferences regarding sedation and analgesia, and preferences regarding privacy and level of involvement of family and other loved ones. All the patient's treatment orders should be reviewed to meet the new treatment goals. Treatments promoting the patient's comfort should generally be continued, whereas those directed only at physiologic maintenance may all be withdrawn. Family members and others attending the patient at the end of life should be educated about physical and mental changes they can expect to see as treatments are scaled back, including the possibility that death will not occur imminently once support is withdrawn.[95]

Several interventions have ethical implications and deserve special consideration—fluid and nutritional management; the administration of sedatives and narcotics that have the potential to hasten death; the administration of neuromuscular blocking drugs; and deactivation of pacemakers, ventricular assist devices, and implantable cardioverter-defibrillators (ICDs).

The issue of fluid and nutritional support is controversial. Burdens associated with continuation of fluid and nutritional support include prolongation of the dying process, and complications and suffering from placement and maintenance of intravenous or enteral access (or both). However, feeding and hydration may have important connotations for family members and members of the healthcare team by allowing a sense of nurturing and mitigating feelings that they are "abandoning" the patient.[95]

Pain, dyspnea, and depression are all common symptoms that cause suffering in the dying patient. Alleviating pain and dyspnea carry the risk of hastening death. Medical, legal, and religious authorities have all clearly accepted the principle of "double effect," in which an action intended to produce a benefit for the patient produces not only the expected benefit but also the potential for significant harm. It is entirely ethical and legal to administer high doses of pain medication and sedatives for the intended effect of relieving suffering, even if the treatment has the side effect of hastening death. However, to administer any medication with the explicit intention of hastening death is euthanasia, and not medical therapy.[95]

TERMINAL SEDATION

"Terminal Sedation," also known as "deep continuous sedation" (DCS), is an ethically controversial end-of-life strategy for patients who are suffering intolerable symptoms in the last stages of dying, and who do not respond well or completely to sedatives or pain medications that are being administered "as needed" in response to symptoms. In DCS, a decision is made with the patient or their appropriate surrogates to forgo reactive treatment of symptoms and to employ intravenous sedative/analgesic infusions with the intention of rendering the patient permanently unconscious until death occurs, but without the intention of causing death. While the goal of DCS—relief of suffering—is a laudable one, ethical questions nevertheless persist: the practice is plagued by vague and nonstandardized terminology and practice, a lack of outcomes research, an uncomfortable confusion with PAS and euthanasia, misunderstanding of the principle of double effect, and culturally diverse philosophies about the role of suffering and transcendence in the meaning of human life.[96] Opponents suggest that DCS is merely euthanasia in disguise, invented to circumvent legal sanctions and moral objections. Some ethicists have argued that DCS permanently deprives the patient of morally relevant aspects of "personhood" and therefore represents a form of killing. Disturbing studies show that many physicians employing DCS actually *do* intend to hasten death.[97,98]

A particularly controversial aspect of DCS is whether it can and should be allowed when the patient is suffering from severe and intractable *existential* suffering: fear, loneliness, anxiety, spiritual crises, and so forth. Professional guidelines regarding DCS and existential suffering at end of life differ greatly in their recommendations: the American Academy of Hospice and Palliative Medicine[99] and the American College of Physicians[100] do not make specific statements about DCS in existential suffering; the AMA Council on Ethical and Judicial Affairs opposes DCS for existential suffering;[101] the Royal Dutch Medical Association[102] and the Harvard University Community Ethics Committee[103] support the use of DCS in cases of existential suffering; and the Veterans Health Administration does not exclude it, but weighed against use of DCS for existential symptoms in their discussions.[104] Even more questions arise when DCS is instituted in pediatric patients.[96]

NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKING DRUGS

Neuromuscular blocking drugs have no anesthetic, analgesic, or sedative properties. Such drugs should not be initiated if withdrawal of ventilatory support is anticipated. Paralyzing the patient to comfort *the family* so that they see no disturbing movements or respirations as the patient dies is not justifiable. Even worse, it can mask symptoms and signs of distress and can thus prevent relief of suffering during the dying process.[95] When withdrawal of ventilator support is anticipated in a patient already receiving such drugs, they should be withheld in all but extraordinary cases.[105,106]

IMPLANTABLE CARDIAC DEVICES

When a patient who has a cardiac device requests withdrawal of life-sustaining interventions, questions can arise about whether it is ethical to deactivate or even explant such devices at the patient's request. In the case of ICDs, the question might well be whether it is ethical to *continue* such therapy in a patient who has opted for palliative care. Recent studies provide concerning information: in the MADIT II trial, only 15% of patients who died had their ICD deactivated, after receiving "many" shocks at the last days of their lives.[107] A post-mortem device interrogation study indicates that 31% of patients received shocks in the last 24 hours of life.[108] It is likely that patients receiving shocks in the final hours of their lives may be unable to communicate that they are suffering this painful experience and ask to have it stopped. In another study, only 27% of patients had discussed deactivation of the ICD at end-of-life,[109] raising concerns that failure to deactivate the device was due largely to failure of physician-to-patient communication that this was possible and should be considered. In some cases, physicians may lack the expertise or equipment to promptly deactivate such devices when inappropriate shocks are being delivered.[110]

Some experts have said that that these devices must be treated differently from other medical interventions because by virtue of implantation they have become a "biofixture," or literally a part of the patients themselves.[111] Such arguments are difficult to sustain when we consider that many people undergo implantation of medical devices and subsequent explantation of them when the devices are no longer working or do not serve the patient's purpose. Common examples include artificial joints, intraocular lenses, medication delivery devices, and orthopedic hardware. Furthermore, these devices are never uniquely a part of the patient in the same sense as DNA or their native organs. In fact, the ethical distinction between disabling a pacemaker in a pacer-dependent patient and turning off a ventilator for a ventilator-dependent patient is minimal if the request comes from a competent patient or the surrogate decision maker. Both actions involve discontinuance of artificial therapies that the patient no longer desires, and both may be followed by rapid death.

Consensus statements and guidelines by the Resuscitation Council of the UK, British Cardiovascular Society, and National Council for Palliative Care,[112] the European Heart Rhythm Association, and Heart Rhythm Society,[113] and the Canadian Cardiovascular Society[114] all recommend discussion with the patient of deactivation of implantable cardiac devices in end-of-life care.

The presence of a do-not-resuscitate order should not be taken as an automatic request by the patient to discontinue implantable device therapy. As with other end-of-life therapies, discontinuance of such devices should include due consideration of whether the decision is made by a competent patient and with full informed consent. Management of discontinuance of device therapy should always include planning for treatment of distressing symptoms and administration of appropriate comfort measures.

PHYSICIAN-ASSISTED SUICIDE AND EUTHANASIA

PAS is defined as the provision of medication or prescriptions by a physician to a patient at their specific request for the explicit purpose of ending their life. PAS requires a patient who is both competent and capable of communicating the request, as well as capable of self-administration. Euthanasia is defined as the administration of medication by someone other than the patient for the express purpose of causing death in the belief that this would be best for the patient, but not necessarily at the specific request of the patient. Both practices differ ethically from withdrawing or withholding life-supporting medical treatments. In withdrawal or withholding of life-supporting treatment, the primary intention is to discontinue treatments that are causing suffering with an understanding that death may or probably will result. In PAS and euthanasia, the primary intention is to cause death, which secondarily ends suffering.

Currently, euthanasia is legal only in the Netherlands, Belgium, and Luxembourg. Some confusion exists about the status of euthanasia in Colombia, which has been labeled as allowing "euthanasia," but appears in fact to have legalized PAS, reflecting a common misconception in the press about differences between the two practices.[115] In the United States, euthanasia remains illegal regardless of circumstance, but PAS is legal as of 2018 in the states of Oregon, Washington, Montana, Vermont, Colorado, California, and the District of Columbia. It narrowly missed ratification in New Mexico after being passed by both state houses in 2017, and it passed the Hawaii State House of Representatives in March of 2018. It is also under consideration in other states. Thirty-seven states have specific laws that make PAS illegal, and four states have no specific laws regarding PAS.[116] Internationally, PAS is legal only in the Netherlands, Belgium, Luxembourg, Germany, and Switzerland.[117]

Supporters of PAS argue that the right to privacy and respect for autonomy support a patient's right to determine the time, location, and circumstance of his or her own death. Patients consistently rate loss of autonomy and control, inability to pursue previously valued activities, and loss of dignity as the major concerns at the end of life. Adequate control of pain, anxiety, dyspnea, and other symptoms at the end of life remain a challenge to the medical profession, thereby fueling the desire for a means to end life when suffering cannot be controlled. Opponents argue that PAS "medicalizes" death, overly idealizes the physician-patient relationship, ignores possible personal and professional conflicts of interest, and leads to erosion of trust between dying patients and their doctors. Although many ethicists acknowledge that individual circumstances may make assisted suicide an ethically permissible action, most express concerns about potential abuse. Vulnerable members of society, such as the poor, old, and handicapped, could be pressed by financial and social factors into a suicide option in preference to palliative care. An additional argument against PAS or legalized euthanasia is that these approaches could provide solutions to the medical, social, and economic problems common to older and poor patients that are simpler and less expensive than seeking and requiring more difficult but definitive remedies.

Twenty years have passed since Oregon legalized and enacted PAS in 1997 and the Netherlands legalized both PAS and euthanasia, and significant data now provide some insights into whether these concerns about PAS and euthanasia are materializing. In recent polls, more than two thirds of the U.S. population polled favored legalizing PAS, and approximately 70% favored legalization of euthanasia.[118] The percentage of U.S. oncology patients favoring a PAS or euthanasia option in end-of-life care is approximately 65%,[119] whereas physicians frequently involved in end-of-life care, such as intensive care specialists, oncologists, and palliative care specialists, are the most uniformly opposed specialists.[120] This finding represents a significant discordance between physicians and their patients.

In Oregon, where PAS has been legalized for the longest period in the United States, data from 2015 (the most recent year available) remain consistent and show that patients who requested PAS were more likely to be white and had generally higher economic status and education. More than 99.2% were insured, and 92.2% were enrolled in hospice care. Most were more than 65 years old (78%), and 72% were suffering from cancer. As of 2015, 36% of patients receiving prescriptions for PAS (a total of 1545 patients over 20 years) never used them and ultimately died of their underlying disease—with many surviving significantly longer than predicted. More than 92% of patients enrolled in the Oregon program cited loss of autonomy as a primary reason for pursuing the option.[121] Some authors have suggested that the possession of a means to end their lives legally and humanely prevented "preemptive" suicides that could have occurred earlier and thus may have prolonged lives.[122]

Concerns regarding abuses of PAS and euthanasia will undoubtedly continue, but thus far, evidence of systematic abuse is lacking in places where PAS is legalized and regulated. As the population ages and patients desire greater control over end-of-life care and circumstances, debate over PAS and euthanasia in the United States can be expected to continue to grow.

ETHICAL ISSUES IN ORGAN TRANSPLANTATION

Two issues critical to vital organ transplantation that confront anesthesiologists are the concept of brain death and the linkage of withdrawal of life-sustaining therapies with organ retrieval and transplantation after cardiac death (DCD).

Brain Death

Before the 1960s, death was defined as the moment when the heartbeat stopped and respirations ceased. Advances in cardiopulmonary resuscitation and mechanical ventilation then made it possible to postpone death, seemingly indefinitely. In 1968, the Ad Hoc Committee of the Harvard Medical School proposed redefining death as the point at which all cardiorespiratory function had irreversibly ceased, *or* all function of the whole brain had irreversibly stopped (brain death).[123,124] The committee gave two explicit reasons for redefining death. The first was to allow patients to be declared dead and not maintained on machines—thus limiting expense; reallocating medical resources to other, salvageable patients; and allowing the social rituals surrounding death to occur. The second was to allow the donation of vital organs before circulation stopped.

Declaration of death further carries nonmedical consequences, such as the process of mourning, initiation of any criminal prosecutions, inheritance, taxation, and burial concerns. It was thus considered important that determinations of death follow consistent rules across state boundaries, and the National Conference on Uniform State Laws issued the Uniform Definition of Death Act in 1980, which was adopted by the states.[124]

The public has been slow to accept brain death, in part because it requires complete trust in physicians and ignores indicators of death that the public already understands. To nonphysicians, brain-dead donors are superficially indistinguishable in many ways from living persons, and nonphysicians must therefore rely completely on the physician for both accurate and honest information of a loved one's death. Recent court cases challenging declaration of death in patients who clearly did meet standard brain death criteria, such as that of Aden Hailu in Nevada, illustrate continued public uncertainty.[124]

Medical standards in diagnosing brain death are relatively straightforward, although variations in the definition of death itself persist throughout the United States.[124] In the United States, medical standards require demonstration that, in the absence of drugs, paralytic agents, hypothermia, and other reversible conditions that mimic loss of brain function, no cortical or brainstem function is present. The diagnosis is usually made either clinically, by demonstrating that cortical activity and brainstem reflexes are absent, or by radiographic studies demonstrating the complete absence of cerebral blood flow.

Although brain death is a *social* and not a *biologic* definition of death, medical, ethical, theological, and legal experts generally agree that brain death adequately defines a condition in which a person with ethical and legal rights and moral standing ceases to exist and should no longer be treated as though alive. Expensive medical interventions can be discontinued without legal ramifications, and vital organs can be donated for transplantation if the patient or the surrogate decision maker agrees.

Before assuming care of a brain-dead organ donor, the anesthesiologist is obligated to review the chart for documentation of the declaration of brain death and the criteria on which it was based. If any questions exist about the diagnosis, organ donation should be postponed until the anesthesiologist is satisfied that these concerns are addressed.

Donation after Cardiac Death

DCD occurs when a patient wishes to have life-sustaining medical therapies withdrawn and also wishes to proceed with vital organ donation after death. Controlling the time and place of death so that timing of organ donation can be optimized has obvious medical and ethical advantages. The decision to donate organs is made before death, thereby allowing time for discussion and informed consent. Organ ischemia time can be minimized. The dual decision to withdraw life-sustaining interventions and donate vital organs after death can create ethical conflicts, however. When a dying patient becomes an imminent organ donor, the risk is that the patient's interests will be minimized or ignored in favor of the organ recipient.

The National Academy of Medicine reviewed DCD in 1997[125] and 2000[126] and found serious ethical questions, such as determining how quickly after asystole organ donation can begin and whether medications can ethically be administered to the donor before death that are solely for the purpose of organ preservation.

Ethical, theological, and legal principles prohibit us from killing one person to benefit another, but the point at which actual death has occurred in DCD donors is unclear. Although expedient donation is the very purpose of DCD, doctors must never sacrifice any living patient in the process or even take significant risks of doing so; the mistrust this would engender among the public could place the entire concept of DCD at risk by reducing potential donors and ultimately harming future potential organ recipients.[127] Loss of consciousness occurs quickly after asystole, but brain function can continue for some time, and irreversible brain injury may not occur for many minutes. Yet some protocols call for organ retrieval to begin only 2 minutes after circulation has stopped, and in at least one institution, organ harvest is allowed to begin within seconds of cardiac arrest.[128] Scientific and philosophic uncertainty exists about when death is complete—this could even lead to accusations that physicians deliberately kill patients to obtain organs for transplantation. Mistakes have occurred in some cases of brain-dead organ donors for which clear clinical criteria exist; DCD organ donation is potentially even more prone to error because no such clinical guidelines are universally accepted.[129]

Donation of vital organs after brain death and DCD are both ethical and legal, but the interests of the dying patient must be absolutely protected until after death has occurred. Anesthesiologists can play a vital role in the organ donation process by helping hospitals develop reasonable and ethical policies for the management of brain-dead donors and DCD donors. Every anesthesiologist should be thoroughly familiar with brain death criteria and should review the process of brain death determination before accepting care of a brain-dead donor. It is inappropriate for anesthesiologists to be involved in organ DCD unless they have expertise in the relevant ethical, legal, and medical issues and are experienced in end-of-life care.

Research Ethics

HUMAN SUBJECT RESEARCH

The premise that the physician always puts the best interests of the patient first can be jeopardized when research objectives enter the doctor-patient relationship. Human subjects are asked to put aside their own interests to benefit some future, hypothetic group of patients. In extreme cases, the patient becomes a research "object" who will not benefit personally from the experiment at all. Two examples include experiments in healthy subjects and phase I cancer trials in terminally ill patients in which the goal is to determine the toxicity of treatment—not remission, palliation, or cure.

Human subject research must balance many conflicting interests, such as the needs and rights of the research subject, the hypothetic interests of future patients, and the physician's financial, professional, and personal goals. Academic or corporate advancement, personal prestige, and financial incentives may be disincentives to researchers who diligently protect patients' interests or who remain objective in designing protocols and analyzing and reporting their findings. Thus, human subject research is more closely regulated, supervised, and controlled than any other medical endeavor.

Regulation of research began after World War II, with the Nuremburg Code and the Helsinki Declaration outlining the ethical obligations of physicians engaged in human research. The United States was slow to awaken to the parallels between the concentration camp experiments and the sometimes gruesome treatment to which they subjected their own subjects in similar trials.[130] In the years that followed the Doctors' Trial at Nuremburg, Fox[131] and Beecher[132] found that researchers were aware of the standards set at Nuremberg but regularly did not comply with them. In 1974, the National Research Act established the National Commission for the Protection of Human Subjects of Biomedical and Behavioral Research, out of which the modern institutional review board was born.

The ethical conduct of human subject research follows three principles: (1) respect for autonomy and the obligation to protect subjects with limited autonomy; (2) beneficence, with obligations to minimize risks, maximize benefits, and ensure that the research design is scientifically sound; and (3) justice, the obligation to treat each person with regard to what is morally right and to ensure fair distribution of benefits and burdens.

In addition to the comprehensive presentation to research subjects of the risks and benefits of procedures or medications to which they will be subjected, disclosure must include the possibility of commercialization of the results, financial interests of the researchers, and any other actual or perceived conflicts of interest on the part of researchers and their institutions and sponsors. Subjects must be free to refuse or end participation at any time without penalty. *Situational coercion,* in which subjects feel that they are not truly free to refuse, should be avoided or mitigated. Examples of situational coercion include prisoners whose terms and experiences of incarceration may be affected by their decision to participate or refuse, and hospitalized patients who may believe that their care could be compromised if they do not cooperate with researchers.[130]

Monetary or other inducements to participate in research are probably permissible if they do not undermine the freedom of the subject to refuse under reasonable circumstances. Significant monetary awards may have adverse effects on the autonomy of subjects and may negatively affect the scientific quality of the research. If remuneration is high, for example, subjects could conceal factors that would otherwise disqualify them from participating, thus compromising the research results and exposing themselves to greater risks.

Researchers are obligated to maximize benefits and minimize potential harms, including physical, psychological, social, legal, and financial harms. The research must address a question of significant value to justify the level of risk and must follow the approved protocol. Findings must be promptly and accurately reported. The research must be terminated immediately if it is suspected to be harmful to the participants.

Anesthesiology research often involves the treatment or prevention of unpleasant symptoms, such as pain and nausea. When effective treatments are well established, such studies should be restricted to comparison of treatments with known efficacy, not placebo-controlled trials, and "escape" analgesics or antiemetics must be provided on the patient's request.

No population group should be unfairly subjected to research without having equal access to its benefits. Finally, the interests of the individual must always prevail over the interests of society.

Children as Research Subjects

Children are particularly vulnerable as research subjects because they may lack the ability to make mature decisions, are subject to the authority of others, may defer to their parents and others in ways that mask underlying dissent, and may have conditions requiring immediate decisions not consistent with informed consent.[133] Children's rights are frequently undervalued, whereas parental authority may be overvalued. Studies show that even children with decision-making capacity are often excluded from the consent process by both parents and physicians.[134]

If a minor child is "able" to assent, then assent must usually be obtained in addition to the consent of any legal surrogate decision makers. In the United States, federal law requires assent of any minor age 7 years and older to participate in medical research. Particularly for research in which no substantive individual benefit is expected, many ethicists believe that a child's dissent *must always be honored.*[134,135]

ETHICS OF ANIMAL RESEARCH

The animal rights movement in the United States has gained significant momentum since the 1980s, following in the wake of the U.S. civil rights movement and paralleling increasing awareness and concerns about the human impact on the environment and other animal species. In 1959, William Russell and Rex Burch published their sentinel book regarding the ethics of animal research, *The Principles of Humane Experimental Technique*, introducing the concept that humane treatment of animals was not merely an ethical imperative, but absolutely necessary to high-quality research.[136] Federal legislation protecting animal welfare began with the Laboratory Animal Welfare Act of 1966. In 1985, the Health Extension Act and amendments to the Animal Welfare Act required the establishment of Institutional Animal Care and Use Committees, which oversee conditions of laboratory animals; review and approve animal research protocols; educate and train investigators in ethical issues and aspects of animal handling such as anesthesia, analgesia, and euthanasia; and act as community liaisons.

Some researchers deny that animal experimentation could be subject to any moral reservations and assert that medical advances have been and continue to be completely dependent on continued animal research. Many animal welfare activists insist on the moral equivalence of animal experimentation to that of human experimentation and accuse researchers of being blind to or, even worse, actually unmoved by the suffering of animal subjects. The simplicity of these polarized views does not do justice to the complexity of the issues.

Advances in the understanding of animal cognition led most biologists to believe that many, if not all, animals are capable of feeling pleasure, pain, anticipation, and fear, and thus experience both enjoyment and suffering. Many bioethicists state that the higher animals therefore have adequate awareness to possess moral standing, although how much moral standing is intensely debated.[137,138] Allowing animal suffering as a result of pain, fear, sickness, or poor standards of care is a moral harm that must be avoided, mitigated, and weighed heavily against the benefits it produces. Ethicists maintain that cruelty to animals is immoral and that animals should be protected from it, not merely because they have moral standing, but because he who is cruel to animals is more likely to be cruel to humans.[139]

Researchers have obligations to provide clean and humane conditions and appropriate veterinary care for animal subjects. Researchers should mind the "Three Rs"—replacement, reduction, and refinement—that is, use animal subjects only when necessary, minimize any suffering incurred in the study, and seek nonanimate replacements for animal subjects.[99] Mediocre or repetitive research using animal subjects should not be allowed. It is the responsibility of the medical and scientific community to continue aggressively to seek and promote alternatives to the use of animal subjects.[139]

PHYSICIAN PARTICIPATION IN EXECUTIONS

U.S. professional organizations for physicians have consistently stated that physicians' participation in executions is unethical, yet many physicians admit that they would agree to be involved. The role of physicians in euthanasia and executions is of particular concern to anesthesiologists, who have been identified as ideal candidates for duties that involve killing because of their particular professional skills. Arguments in favor of physicians' involvement in executions usually cite the principle of beneficence in allowing a humane death.

Historically, however, beneficence arguments have led to "slippery slope" justifications for physicians to be involved in the killing of persons who have never faced an accuser or had a fair hearing—such killings have included persons with physical or mental handicaps and other "social flaws" for the "benefit" of the individual and of society as a whole. Once physicians accept a beneficence argument for participating in executions, it is difficult ethically to draw the line at participating in other state-sponsored activities, such as torture, coercion, and "medical incarceration," because these activities are also usually defended as being beneficial to society.[140]

When physicians agree to participate in an execution, they act as agents of the state while appearing to act on behalf of the "patient." This situation can lead to eventual erosion of public trust and respect. It also at times undoubtedly leads to physicians' participation in the killing of innocent persons.[141]

To avoid intolerable self-condemnation, virtually all executioners undergo "moral disengagement" in which they dehumanize the convicts and devalue their lives, thereby deflecting moral responsibility for the execution away from themselves by blaming juries, judges, governors, and "the law" rather than accept the responsibility they share in ending the prisoner's life.[142] It is difficult to reconcile the medical profession's overt ethical imperatives of valuing human life, respecting individuals, and accepting personal moral responsibility with participation in a process that requires a rejection of these very values.

In 1980, the AMA issued an opinion that physicians' involvement in capital punishment is unethical and defined "participation" broadly as including not only actions that themselves would lead to the death of the condemned but also any activity that assisted, supervised, or contributed to another's being able to do so.[143] However, no direct sanctions of any participating physician were addressed. In 2010, the American Board of Anesthesiology became the first organization of physicians not only to condemn participation in capital punishment as unethical but also to state that physicians who were certified by their board and who participated in lethal injection would be subject to disciplinary action that could include revocation of their diplomate status.[144]

MORAL INTEGRITY—CAN THE PHYSICIAN BE A CONSCIENTIOUS OBJECTOR IN MEDICINE?

Anesthesia care of patients can involve ethical controversy, legitimate disagreement, and moral ambiguity. How a physician resolves moral conflicts when their personal values run counter to acceptable ethical standards of care is a matter of much concern.[145,146] Medical professional societies recognize the right to conscientious objection in medical practice. The ASA, the British Medical Association, and the bioethics research institute, The Hastings Center, all have issued statements recognizing the physician's right to withdraw from situations in which ethical standards of patient care are in serious conflict with his or her personal values.[147] The ASA specifically recognizes conscientious withdrawal from patient care in the case of patients with DNAR orders or other directives that limit treatment.[25] These rights have limitations, however. Acceptance of moral objections to certain hotly contended issues such as abortion or PAS may be reasonable, but objections to well-established standards, such as informed consent, are not. Moral objections of physicians are also likely to carry more weight if they involve concepts that the physician believes supports him or her as an ethical doctor, and not just as an ethical person, because these concepts are more likely to be founded in professionally established standards than in personal beliefs.[147] When physicians' personal religious and other moral beliefs are allowed to supersede those of patients, the result has almost uniformly been barriers in health care to vulnerable groups, such as women, adolescents, and the elderly.[148,149]

In early 2018, the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services moved under conservative political leadership to strengthen doctors' rights to refuse to refer patients for legal medical treatments that they personally object to, such as abortion, transgender treatments, and birth control, for example. The AMA has raised concerns that the move both combines and illegally broadens laws that have not been subjected to public vote. Dr. Lainie Friedman Ross, physician and ethicist at the University of Chicago, points out that "it is very problematic because it forgets that doctors are powerful individuals and patients are vulnerable. The law is all about protecting doctors, not the individuals who need the protection—those who are sick and frightened."[150] It remains to be seen whether the new rules will withstand inevitable legal challenges. In the meantime, a Canadian court ruled in the opposite direction, that the requirement to refer patients to legal medical treatments in Ontario was "a reasonable limit on the religious freedom of doctors, necessary to prevent harm and inequitable access for patients."[150]

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Beauchamp TL, et al. The concept of autonomy. In: *Principles of Biomedical Ethics*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 1994:120.
2. Committee on Ethics. Guidelines for the ethical practice of anesthesiology. American Society of Anesthesiologists. ASA, Schaumburg IL Oct 16, 2013.
3. Leo RJ. *Prim Care Companion J Clin Psychiatry*. 1999;1:131–141.
4. *Schloendorff v Society of New York Hospital*, 311 NY 125, 127, 129; 105 NE 92, 93, 1914.
5. Salgo v Trustees of Leland *Stanford Hospital*, 154 Col App 2d 560, 317 P2d 170 Ct Appl, 1957.
6. Kontos N, et al. *Psychosomatics*. 2013;54:103.
7. Mclivennan CK, Swetz KM. *Amer J Bioeth*. 2016;8:13.
8. Katz M, et al. *Psychosomatics*. 1995;26:33.
9. Hamel M, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1999;130:116.
10. DesHarnais S, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2007;10:728.
11. Madorsky J. *West J Med*. 1997;166(6):410.
12. Appelbaum PS. *N Eng J Med*. 2007;357:1834.
13. President's Commission for the Study of Ethical Problems in Medicine and Biomedical and Behavioral Research. Vol. 1. Washington, DC: Government Printing Office; 1982.
14. Amanor-Boadu D. *Afr Med Med Sci*. 2002;31:49.
15. Grisso T, Appelbaum TS. *Assessing Competence to Treatment: a Guide for Physicians, and Other Health Professionals*. New York: Oxford University Press; 1998.
16. Brach C. *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 2016;35:739.
17. Derse AR. *J Law Med Ethics*. 2017;45:51.
18. Ginsberg MD. *J Law Med Ethics*. 2017;45:106.
19. Kain ZN. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(2):237.
20. Bergmann P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1093.
21. Cox CL, Fritz Z. *J Med Ethics*. 2016;42:632.
22. Vila-Nova de Silva DB, et al. *Aesthet Surg J*. 2015;35:477.
23. Caplan RA, Posner KL. *ASA Newslett*. 1995;59(6):9.
24. Beckman HB, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 1995;154(12):1365.
25. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Ethical Guidelines for the Anesthesia Care of Patients with Do-Not-Resuscitate Orders or Other Directives that Limit Treatment. Park Ridge, Ill*: 2013.
26. American Academy of Pediatrics. *Pediatrics*. 2009;124:1689.
27. Lewis CE, et al. *Am J Public Health*. 1978;68(11):1079.
28. Grootens-Wiegers P, et al. *BMC Pediatr*. 2017;17:120.
29. Berenson AB. *J Adolesc Health*. 1992;13:466.
30. Fortier MA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1085.
31. Mutcherson KM. *Cornell J Law Public Policy*. 2005;14(25):251.
32. American Academy of Pediatrics. *Pediatrics*. 1995;95(2):314.
33. Hein IM, et al. *BMC Med Ethics*. 2015;16:76.
34. Alderson P, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2002;(1):CD001208.
35. Gotzsche PC, Nielsen M. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;(1):CD001877.
36. Rogers WA. *J Med Ethics*. 2004;30:141.
37. Chee YL, et al. *Br J Haematol*. 2008;140(5):496.
38. Joo HS, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(6):568.
39. Noordzij PG, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2006;97(7):1103.
40. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force for Preanesthesia Evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):1.
41. Chapman K, et al. *AIDS Care*. 1995;7(2):125.
42. Lawrence VA, et al. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 1993;46(11):1219.
43. Lester P, et al. *J Aquir Immune Defic Syndr Hum Retrovirol*. 1995;10(3):341.
44. Gielen AC, et al. *Women Health*. 1997;25(3):19.
45. Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies for Health. CADTH; June 8, 2015
46. Mazze RI, Kallen B. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1989;161(5):1178.
47. Reedy MB, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1997;177(3):673.
48. Malviya S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(4):854.
49. Kempen PM. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9(7):546.
50. Benagiano G, et al. *Eur J Contracept Reprod Health Care*. 2010;15:220.
51. Harris LH, Paltrow L. *JAMA*. 2003;289:1697.
52. American Academy of Pediatrics. *Committee on Bioethics: Pediatrics*. 1999;103:1061.
53. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106:1127.
54. Jackson A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47:1068.
55. Burkle CM, et al. *J Clin Anaesth*. 2017;36:158.
56. Affleck PJ, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1998;10:141.
57. Cheng WY, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35:68.
58. Davies JM. In: Van Norman G, et al. eds. *Clinical Ethics in Anesthesiology: a Case-Based Textbook*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2011:44.
59. Shuster E. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337(20):1436.
60. Clarke JR, et al. *Hastings Cent Rep*. 1980;10(6):20.
61. Krugman RD, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1992;90(4):651.
62. Wu AW, et al. *J Gen Intern Med*. 1997;12(12):770.
63. Brennan TA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324(6):370.
64. Baker GR, et al. *CMAJ*. 2004;170(11):1678.
65. Kohn LT, ed. *To err is Human: Building a Safer Health System*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 2000.
66. Wu AW, et al. *JAMA*. 1991;265(16):2089.

67. Sweet MP, Bernat JL. *J Clin Ethics*. 1997;8:341.
68. American Medical Association. *Opinion of the Council on Ethical and Judicial Affairs, Ethical Responsibility to Study and Prevent Error and Harm in the Provision of Health care, Opinion 1-I-03*. Chicago: 2003.
69. Waite M. *Health Law J*. 2005;13:1.
70. Mazor KM, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;140(6):409.
71. Vincent C, et al. *Lancet*. 1994;343(8913):1609.
72. Gazoni F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:596.
73. McLennan SR, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2015;59:990.
74. Plews-Ogan M, et al. *Acad Med*. 2016;91:233.
75. McDonnell WM, Guenther E. *Ann Intern Med*. 2008;149(11):811.
76. Jonsen A, et al. *Source Book in Bioethics: a Documentary History*. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press; 1998.
77. Layde P, et al. *Arch Fam Med*. 1995;4(6):518.
78. Covinsky KE, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2000;48(Suppl 5):S187.
79. American College of Surgeons. *ACS Bull*. 1994;79(9):29.
80. AORN Position Statement. *Perioperative Care of Patients with Do-Not-Resuscitate Orders*. Denver: Association of Operating Room Nurses; 1995.
81. Joint Commission on accreditation of healthcare organizations: patient rights. In: *Manual of the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Health Care Organizations*. Chicago: Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations; 1994.
82. Kalkman S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:723.
83. Lynch AF, Mathes M, Sawicki N. *Compliance with Advance Directives: Wrongful Living and Tort Incentives*. ;17. University of Pennsylvania Law School Legal Scholarship Repository; 2008.
84. Span P. *The New York Times*. 2017.
85. *Following ACLU of New Mexico Lawsuit, Surgical Center Agrees to Honor Patients' end-of-life Wishes*. American Civil Liberties Union; 2006. https://www.aclu.org/news/following-aclu-new-mexico-lawsuit-surgical-center-agrees-honor-patients-end-life-wishes. Accessed 23.03.18.
86. Council on Scientific Affairs: American Medical Association. *JAMA*. 1996;275:474.
87. Hall MJ, et al. NCHS Data Brief No. 118, March 2013.
88. Teno JM, et al. *JAMA*. 2013;309:470.
89. Karlawish J. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1997;155(1):1.
90. Alpers A. *J Law Med Ethics*. 1998;26:308.
91. *In the matter of Karen Quinlan, an alleged incompetent*, 355 A2d 647 (NJ Super Ct Cir 1976).
92. *Schiavo v Schiavo*, No. 05–11628 (11th Cir, March 25, 2005).
93. Childress J. *Kennedy Inst Ethics J*. 1993;3:203.
94. Jonsen A, et al. *Clinical ethics*. 3rd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1992.
95. Cist A, et al. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2001;39:87.
96. Van Norman G. Ethics and clinical aspects of palliative sedation in the terminally ill child. In: Mason KP, ed. *Pediatric Sedation Outside of the Operating Room*. New York: Springer Science and Business Media; 2014:699–710.
97. Sercu M, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2014;47:1054.
98. Anquinet L, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2013;61:1768.
99. *American Academy of Hospice and Palliative Medicine Position Statement on Palliative Sedation*; AAHPM Chicago IL; Approved December 2014. http://aahpm.org/positions/palliative-sedation. Accessed 23.03.18.
100. Quill TE, Byock IR. *Ann Intern Med*. 2000;132:408.
101. Sedation to Unconsciousness in End-of-Life Care. Code of Medical Ethics Opinion 5.6. American Medical Association Council on Ethical and Judicial Affairs. 2018. http://aahpm.org/positions/palliative-sedation. Accessed 23.03.18.
102. *Guideline for Palliative Sedation*. The Netherlands: Royal Dutch Medical Association (KNMG). Ultrecht; 2009.
103. Powers CL, McLean PC. *Am J Bioeth*. 2011;11:65.
104. National Ethics Committee Veterans Health Administration. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 2007;23:483.
105. Truog RD, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2000;342:508.
106. Murray MJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:2079.
107. Sherazi S, et al. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 2013:1273.
108. Kinch Westerdahl A, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;129:422.
109. Goldstein NE, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;141:835.
110. Looi YC. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2006;31:1.
111. Morgenweck CJ. Discontinuing pacemakers, ventricular-assist devices, and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators in end-of-life care. In: Van Norman G, Jackson S, Rosenbaum S, Palmer S, eds. *Clinical ethics in Anesthesiology: a Case-Based Textbook*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2011:103.
112. Pitcher D, et al. *Heart*. 2016;102(suppl 7):A1.
113. Padeletti L, et al. *Europace*. 2010;12:1480.
114. Ezekowitz JA, et al. *Can J Cardiol 2017*. 2017;33:1342.
115. Suarez MP. *Colombian Doctors must now Provide Euthanasia by law Panampost.com*. 2015. https://panampost.com/maria-suarez/2015/06/04/colombian-public-doctors-must-now-provide-euthanasia-by-law/. Accessed 23.03.18.
116. *State-by-State Guide to Physician-Assisted Suicide ProCon.org*; 2017. Available at: https://euthanasia.procon.org/view.resource.php?resourceID=000132. Accessed 23.03.18.
117. *Euthanasia and Physician-Assisted Suicide (PAS) Around the World ProCon.org*; 2017. Available at: https://euthanasia.procon.org/view.resource.php?resourceID=000136. Accessed 28.03.18.
118. McCarthy J. Seven in 10 Americans Back Euthanasia. Gallup News; 2014. Available at: http://news.gallup.com/poll/171704/seven-americans-back-euthanasia.aspx. Accessed 23.03.18.
119. Yun YH, et al. *CMAJ*. 2011;183(10):E673.
120. McCormick R, et al. *Palliat Med*. 2012;26(1):23–33.
121. Oregon death with dignity act: 2015 data summary. Oregon Health Authority. Available at: http://www.oregon.gov/oha/ph/ProviderPartnerResources/EvaluationResearch/DeathwithDignityAct/Documents/year18.pdf. Accessed 23.03.18.
122. Lindsay RA. *Am J Bioeth*. 2009;9(3):19.
123. A definition of irreversible coma: a report of the ad hoc committee of the Harvard School of Medicine to examine the definition of brain death. *JAMA*. 1968;205:337.
124. Lewis A, et al. *J Law Med Ethics*. 2017:45112.
125. Herdman R, Potts J. *Non–Heart Beating Organ Transplantation: Medical and Ethical Issues in Procurement. A report of the Institute of Medicine*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 1997.
126. Cassel C, et al. *Non–Heart Beating Organ Transplantation: Practice and Protocols. A Report of the Committee on Non–HEART-Beating Transplantation II. Institute of Medicine*. Washington, DC: 2000. National Academy Press; 2000.
127. Menikoff J. *Issues Law Med*. 2002;18:3.
128. Stein R. *New Trend in Organ Donation Raises Questions*. The Washington Post; 2007.
129. Van Norman G. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(1):275.
130. Lerner BH. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356:1806.
131. *Final report of the Advisory Committee on Human Radiation Experiments*. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office; 1995.
132. Beecher H. *N Engl J Med*. 1966;74:1354.
133. Brody JL, et al. *Ethics Behav*. 2003;13(1):79.
134. Olechnowicz JQ, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2002;109:806.
135. Wendler DS. *J Med Ethics*. 2006;32(4):229.
136. Russell WMS, et al. *The Principles of Humane Experimental Technique* London: Methuen; 1959.
137. Francione GL. *J Law Med Ethics*. 2007;35(2):241.
138. Pluhar EB. *Theor Med Bioeth*. 2006;27(4):333.
139. Martin J. *J Med Ethics*. 1990;16:160.
140. Krass ME. *Can Med Assoc J*. 1978;119:1340.
141. Harmon TR, Lofquist WS. *Crime Delinquency*. 2005;51(4):498.
142. Osofsky MJ, et al. *Law Hum Behav*. 2005;29:371.
143. American Medical Association Council on Ethical and Judicial Affairs: Code of Medical Ethics opinion 9.7.3. Capital punishment. AMA. Available at: https://www.ama-assn.org/delivering-care/capital-punishment . Accessed 29.03.18.
144. American Board of Anesthesiology. Anesthesiologists and capital punishment. 2010. Available at: http://www.theaba.org/ABOUT/Policies-BOI. Accessed 29.03.18.
145. Hughes JA. *Bioethics*. 2018;32:126.
146. Savulescu J, Schuklenk U. *Bioethics*. 2017;31:162.
147. Wicclair M. *Bioethics*. 2000;14(3):205.
148. Morrel KM, Chaykin W. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;27:333.
149. Fiala C, Arthur JH. *Heath Hum Rights*. 2017;19:299.
150. Glauser W. *CMAJ*. 2018;190:E270.

References

1. Beauchamp TL, Childress JF. *Principles of Biomedical Ethics*. 7th ed. Oxford UK: Oxford University Press; 2009.
2. Committee on Ethics. Guidelines for the Ethical Practice of Anesthesiology. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Schaumburg IL: ASA; 2013.
3. Leo RJ. Competency and the capacity to make treatment decisions: a primer for primary care physicians. *Prim Care Companion J Clin Psychiatry*. 1999;1:131–141.
4. *Schloendorff v Society of New York Hospital*, 311 NY 125, 127, 129; 105 NE 92, 93, 1914.
5. *Salgo v Trustees of Leland Stanford Hospital*, 154 Col App 2d 560, 317 P2d 170 Ct Appl, 1957.
6. Kontos N, Feudenreich O, Querques J. Beyond capacity: identifying ethical dilemmas underlying capacity evaluation requests. *Psychosomatics*. 2013;54:103–110.
7. Mclivennan CK, Swetz KM. Lack of agreement with what we think is right does not necessarily equal an ethical problem: respecting patients' goals of care. *Amer J Bioeth*. 2016;8:13–15.
8. Katz M, Abbey S, Rydall A, Lowy F. Psychiatric consultation for competency to refuse medical treatment. A retrospective study of patient characteristic and outcome. *Psychosomatics*. 1995;26:33–41.
9. Hamel M, Teno JM, Goldman L, et al. Patient age and decisions to withhold life-sustaining treatments from seriously ill, hospitalized adults. *Ann Intern Med*. 1999;130:116–125.
10. DesHarnais S, Carter RE, Hennessy W, Kurent JE, Carter C. Lack of concordance between physician and patient: reports on end-of-life care discussions. *J Palliat Med*. 2007;10:728–740.
11. Madorsky J. Is the slippery slope steeper for people with disabilities? *West J Med*. 1997;166:410–411.
12. Appelbaum PS. Clinical practice. Assessment of patients' competence to consent to treatment. *N Eng J Med*. 2007;357:1834–1840.
13. President's Commission for the Study of Ethical Problems in Medicine and Biomedical and Behavioral Research. *Making Health care Decisions: A Report on the Ethical and Legal Implications of Informed Consent in the Patient-Practitioner Relationship*. Vol. 1. Washington, DC: Government Printing Office; 1982.
14. Amanor-Boadu D. Pattern of drug use in geriatric patients undergoing surgery under general anesthesia. *Afr Med Med Sci*. 2002;31: 49–51.
15. Grisso T, Appelbaum TS. *Assessing Competence to Treatment: a Guide for Physicians, and Other Health Professionals*. New York: Oxford University Press; 1998.
16. Brach C. Even in an emergency, doctors must make informed consent an informed choice. *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 2016;35:739–743.
17. Derse AR. Flying too close to the sun: lessons learned from the judicial expansion of the objective person standard for informed consent in Wisconsin. *J Law Med Ethics*. 2017;45:51–59.
18. Ginsberg MD. Beyond Canterbury: can medicine and law agree about informed consent? And does it matter? *J Law Med Ethics*. 2017;45:106–111.
19. Kain ZN. Perioperative information and parental anxiety: the next generation. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:237–239.
20. Bergmann P, Huber S, Machler H, et al. The influence of medical information on the perioperative course of stress in cardiac surgery patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1093–1099.
21. Cox CL, Fritz Z. Should non-disclosures be considered as morally equivalent to lies within the doctor-patient relationship? *J Med Ethics*. 2016;42:632–635.
22. Vila-Nova de Silva DB, Nahas FX, Ferriera LM. Factors influencing judicial decisions on medical disputes in plastic surgery. *Aesthet Surg J*. 2015;35:477–483.
23. Caplan RA, Posner KL. Informed consent in anesthesia liability. *ASA Newslett*. 1995;59:9–12.
24. Beckman HB, Markakis KM, Suchman AL, Frankel RM. The doctor-patient relationship and malpractice: lessons from plaintiff depositions. *Arch Intern Med*. 1994;154:1365–1370.
25. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Ethical guidelines for the Anesthesia care of Patients with Do-Not-Resuscitate Orders or other Directives that Limit Treatment*. Park Ridge, Ill: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 2013.
26. Committee on Bioethics, American Academy of Pediatrics. Policy statement—physician refusal to provide information or treatment on the basis of claims of conscience. *Pediatrics*. 2009;124:1689–1693.
27. Lewis CE, Lewis MA, Ifekwunigue M. Informed consent by children and participation in an influenza vaccine trial. *Am J Public Health*. 1978;68:1079–1082.
28. Grootens-Wiegers P, Hein IM, van den Broek JM, de Vries MC. Medical decision-making in children and adolescents: developmental and neuroscientific aspects. *BMC Pediatr*. 2017;17:120.
29. Berenson AB, San Miguel VV, Wilkinson GS. Prevalence of physical and sexual assault in pregnant adolescents. *J Adolesc Health*. 1992;13:466–469.
30. Fortier MA, Chroney JM, Rony RY, et al. Children's desire for perioperative information. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1085–1090.
31. Mutcherson KM. Whose body is it anyway? An updated model of healthcare decision-making rights for adolescents. *Cornell J Law Public Policy*. 2005;14:251–325.
32. Committee on Bioethics: American Academy of Pediatrics. Informed consent, parental permission, and assent in pediatric practice. *Pediatrics*. 1995;95:314–317.
33. Hein IM, de Vries MC, Troost PW, Meynen G, Van Goudoever JB, Lindauer RJ. Informed consent instead of assent is appropriate in children from the age of twelve: policy implications of new findings on children's competence to consent to clinical research. *BMC Med Ethics*. 2015;16:76.
34. Alderson P, Bunn F, Lefebvre C, et al. Human albumin solution for resuscitation and volume expansion in critically ill patients. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2002;1:CD00120835.
35. Gotzsche PC, Nielsen M. Screening for breast cancer with mammography. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;4:CD001877.
36. Rogers WA. Evidence based medicine and justice: a framework for looking at the impact of EBM upon vulnerable or disadvantaged groups. *J Med Ethics*. 2004;30:141–145.
37. Chee YL, Crawford JC, Watson HG, Greaves M. Guidelines on the assessment of bleeding risk prior to surgery or invasive procedures. *Br J Haematol*. 2008;140:496–504.
38. Joo HS, Wong J, Naik VN, Savoldelli GL. The value of screening preoperative chest x-rays: a systematic review. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:568–574.
39. Noordzij PG, Boersma E, Bax JJ, et al. Prognostic value of routine preoperative electrocardiography in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *Am J Cardiol*. 2006;97:1103–1106.
40. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force for Preanesthesia Evaluation. Practice advisory for preanesthesia evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1–17.
41. Chapman K, Meadows J, Catalan J, Gazzard B. Testing patients for HIV before surgery: the views of doctors performing surgery. *AIDS Care*. 1995;7:125–128.
42. Lawrence VA, Gafni A, Kroenke K. Preoperative HIV testing: is it less expensive than universal precautions? *J Clin Epidemiol*. 1993;46:1219–1227.
43. Lester P, Partridge JC, Cheesny MA, Cooke M. The consequences of a positive prenatal HIV antibody test for women. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr Hum Retrovirol*. 1995;10:341–349.
44. Gielen AC, O'Campo P, Faden RR, Eke A. Women's disclosure of HIV status: experiences of mistreatment and violence in an urban setting. *Women Health*. 1997;25:19–31.
45. Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies for Health. Anaesthetic agents in pregnant women undergoing non-obstetric surgical or endoscopic procedures: A review of the safety and guidelines. CADTH; June 8, 2015. Available at: https://www.cadth.ca/sites/default/files/pdf/htis/june-2015/RC0664%20Anaesthesia%20Safety%20in%20Pregnancy%20Final.pdf2015/RC0664%20Anaesthesia%20Safety%20in%20Pregnancy%20Final.pdf. Accessed 28.03.18.
46. Mazze RI, Kallen B. Reproductive outcome after anesthesia and operation during pregnancy: a registry study of 5405 cases. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1989;161:1178–1185.
47. Reedy MB, Kallen B, Kuehl TJ. Laparoscopy during pregnancy: a study of five fetal outcome parameters with use of the Swedish Health Registry. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1997;177:673–679.
48. Malviya S, D'Errico C, Reynolds P, Huntington J, Voepel-LewisT, Pandit UA. Should pregnancy testing be routine in adolescent patients prior to surgery? *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:854–858.
49. Kempen PM. Preoperative pregnancy testing: a survey of current practice. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:546–550.
50. Benagiano G, Carrara S, Filippi V. Social and ethical determinants of human sexuality: 2. Gender-based violence. *Eur J Contracept Reprod Health Care*. 2010;15:220–231.

51. Harris LH, Paltrow L. The status of pregnant women and fetuses in US criminal law. *JAMA*. 2003;289:1697–1699.
52. American Academy of Pediatrics: Committee on Bioethics. Fetal therapy: ethical considerations. *Pediatrics*. 1999;103(5pt1):1061–1063.
53. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Maternal decision making, ethics and the law. ACOG Committee opinion No. 321. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106(5pt1):1127–1137.
54. Davies JM. Consent in laboring patients. In: Van Norman G, Jackson S, Rosenbaum S, Palmer S, eds. *Clinical Ethics in Anesthesiology: A Case-Based Textbook*. Cambridge UK: Cambridge University Press; 2011:44–48.
55. Shuster E. Fifty years later: the significance of the Nuremberg Code. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:1436–1440.
56. Clarke JR, Sorenson JH, Hare JE. The limits of paternalism in emergency care. *Hastings Cent Rep*. 1980;10:20–22.
57. Krugman RD, Bays J, Chadwick D, et al. Behavior management of pediatric dental patients [letter]. *Pediatrics*. 1992;90:651–652.
58. Wu AW, Cavanaugh TA, McPhee SJ, Lo B, Micco GP. To tell the truth: ethical and practical issues in disclosing medical mistakes to patients. *J Gen Intern Med*. 1997;12:770–775.
59. Brennan TA, Leape LL, Laird NM, et al. Incidence of adverse events and negligence in hospitalized patients: results of the Harvard Medical Practice Study I. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324:370–376.
60. Baker GR, Norton PG, Flintoft V, et al. The Canadian Adverse Events Study: the incidence of adverse events among hospital patients in Canada. *CMAJ*. 2004;170:1678–1686.
61. Kohn LT, Corrigan JM, Donaldson MS, eds. *To Err is Human: Building a Safer Health System*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press; 2000.
62. Wu AW, Folkman S, McPhee SJ, Lo B. Do house officers learn from their mistakes? *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2003;12:221–226.
63. Sweet MP, Bernat JL. A study of the ethical duty of physicians to disclose errors. *J Clin Ethics*. 1997;8:341–348.
64. American Medical Association. *Opinion of the Council on Ethical and Judicial Affairs, Ethical Responsibility to Study and Prevent Error and Harm in the Provision of Health Care*; *Opinion 1-I-03*. Chicago: American Medical Association; 2003.
65. Waite M. To tell the truth: the ethical and legal implications of disclosure of medical error. *Health Law J*. 2005;13:1–33.
66. Mazor KM, Simon SR, Yood RA, et al. Health plan members' views about disclosure of medical errors. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;140:409–418.
67. Vincent C, Young M, Phillips A. Why do people sue doctors? A study of patients and relatives taking legal action. *Lancet*. 1994;343:1609–1613.
68. Gazoni F, Amato PE, Malik ZM, Durieux ME. The impact of perioperative catastrophes on anesthesiologists: results of a national survey. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:596–603.
69. McLennan SR, Engel-Glatter S, Meyer AH, Schwappach DL, Scheidegger DH, Elger BS. The impact of medical errors on Swiss anaesthesiologists: a cross-sectional survey. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2015;59:990–998.
70. Plews-Ogan M, May N, Owens J, Ardelt M, Shapiro J, Bell SK. Wisdom in medicine: what helps physicians after a medical error? *Acad Med*. 2016;91:233–241.
71. McDonnell WM, Guenther E. Narrative review: do state laws make it easier to say "I'm sorry? *Ann Intern Med*. 2008;149:811–816.
72. Jonsen A, Veatch R, Walters L. *Source Book in Bioethics: A Documentary History*. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press; 1998.
73. Layde P, Beam C, Broste S, et al. Surrogates' predictions of seriously ill patients' resuscitation preferences. *Arch Fam Med*. 1995;4:518–523.
74. Covinsky KE, Fuller JD, Yaffe K, et al. Communication and decision-making in seriously ill patients: findings of the SUPPORT project. The Study to Understand Prognoses and Preferences for Outcomes and Risks of Treatments. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2000;48(suppl 5):S187–S193.
75. American College of Surgeons. Statement on advance directives by patients: do not resuscitate in the operating room. *ACS Bull*. 1994;79:29.
76. AORN Position Statement. *Perioperative care of Patients with Do-Not-Resuscitate or Allow-Natural-Death Orders*. Denver: Association of Operating Room Nurses; 1995.
77. Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations: Patient rights. In: *Manual of the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Health Care Organizations*. Chicago: Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations; 1994.
78. Kalkman S, Hooft L, Meijerman JM, Knape JT, van Delden JJ. Survival after perioperative cardiopulmonary resuscitation: providing an evidence base for ethical management of do-not-resuscitate orders. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:723–729.
79. Lynch AF, Mathes M, Sawicki N. *Compliance with Advance Directives: Wrongful Living and Tort Incentives*; University of Pennsylvania Law School Legal Scholarship Repository; 2008.
80. Span P. The patients were saved and that's why families are suing. *The New York Times*. 2017.
81. *Following ACLU of new MEXICO Lawsuit, Surgical Center Agrees to Honor Patients' end-of-life Wishes*. American Civil Liberties Union; 2006. Available at: https://www.aclu.org/news/following-aclu-new-mexico-lawsuit-surgical-center-agrees-honor-patients-end-life-wishes. Accessed 23.03.18.
82. Council on Scientific Affairs: American Medical Association: good care of the dying patient. *JAMA*. 1996;275:474–478.
83. Hall MJ, Levant S, DeFrances CJ. Trends in Inpatient Hospital Deaths: National Hospital Discharge Survey, 2000-2010. NCHS Data Brief No. 118, March 2013. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/nchs/pressroom/calendar/2013_schedule.htm. Accessed 29.03.18
84. Teno JM, Gozalo PL, Bynum JPW, et al. Health care transitions in 2000, 2005, and 2009. *JAMA*. 2013;309:470–477.
85. Karlawish J, Hall JB. Managing death and dying in the intensive care unit. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1997;155:1–2.
86. *In the matter of Karen Quinlan, an alleged incompetent*, 355 A2d 647 (NJ Super Ct Cir 1976).
87. *Schiavo v Schiavo*, No. 05–11628 (11th Cir, March 25, 2005).
88. Childress J. Non–heart-beating donors of organs: are the distinctions between direct and indirect effects and between killing and letting die relevant and helpful? *Kennedy Inst Ethics J*. 1993;3:203–216.
89. Jonsen A, Siegler M, Winslade W. *Clinical Ethics*. 3rd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1992.
90. Cist A, Truog R, Brackett SE, Hurford WE. Practical guidelines on the withdrawal of life-sustaining therapies. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2001;39:87–102.
91. Van Norman G. Ethics and clinical aspects of palliative sedation in the terminally ill child. In: Mason KP, ed. *Pediatric Sedation Outside of the Operating Room*. New York: Springer Science and Business Media; 2014:699–710.
92. Sercu M, Pype P, Christiaens T, Derese A, Deveugele M. Belgian general practitioners' perspectives on the use of palliative sedation in end-of-life home care: a qualitative study. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2014;47:1054–1063.
93. Anquinet L, Rietjens JA, Vandervoort A, et al. Continuous deep sedation until death in nursing home residents with dementia: a case series. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2013;61:1768–1776.
94. *American Academy of Hospice and Palliative Medicine Position Statement on Palliative Sedation*. AAHPM Chicago IL; Approved December 2014. Available at: http://aahpm.org/positions/palliative-sedation. Accessed 23.03.18
95. Quill TE, Byock IR. American College of Physicians-American Society of Internal Medicine. Responding to intractable terminal suffering: the role of terminal sedation and voluntary refusal of food and fluids. End of Life Care Consensus Panel. *Ann Intern Med*. 2000;132:408–414.
96. Sedation to Unconsciousness in End-of-Life Care. Code of medical ethics opinion 5.6. American Medical Association Council on Ethical and Judicial Affairs. Available at: http://aahpm.org/positions/palliative-sedation. Accessed 23.03.18
97. *Guideline for Palliative Sedation*. The Netherlands: Royal Dutch Medical Association (KNMG). Ultrecht; 2009. Available at: https://palliativedrugs.com/do23,2018]wnload/091110_KNMG_Guideline_for_Palliative_sedation_2009__2_%5B1%5D.pdf. Accessed 23.03.18.
98. Powers CL, McLean PC. Harvard Community Ethics Committee. The community speaks: continuous deep sedation as caregiving versus physician-assisted suicide as killing. *Am J Bioeth*. 2011;11:65–66.
99. National Ethics Committee Veterans Health Administration. The ethics of palliative sedation as a therapy of last resort. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 2007;23:483–491.
100. Truog RD, Burns JP, Mitchell C, Johnson J, Robinson W. Pharmacologic paralysis and withdrawal of mechanical ventilation at the end of life. *N Eng J Med*. 2000;342:508–511.

101. Murray MJ, DeBlock H, Erstad B, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for sustained neuromuscular blockade in the adult critically ill patient. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:2079–2103.
102. Sherazi S, Mcnitt S, Aktas MK, et al. End-of-life care in patients with implantable cardioverter-defibrillators: a MADIT-II substudy. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 2013:1273–1279.
103. Kinch Westerdahl A, Sjoblom J, Mattiasson AC, Rosenqvist M, Frykman V. Implantable cardioverter-defibrillator therapy before death: high risk for painful shocks at end of life. *Circulation*. 2014; 129:422–429.
104. Goldstein NE, Lampert R, Gradley E, Lynn J, Krumholtz HM. Management of implantable cardioverter defibrillators in end-of-life care. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;141:835–838.
105. Looi YC. And it can go on and on and on. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2006;31:1–2.
106. Morgenweck CJ. Discontinuing pacemakers, ventricular-assist devices, and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators in end-of-life care. In: Van Norman G, Jackson S, Rosenbaum S, eds. *Clinical Ethics in Anesthesiology: A Case-Based Textbook*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2011:103–107.
107. Pitcher D, Soar J, Hogg K, et al. Cardiovascular implanted electronic devices in people towards the end-of-life, during cardiopulmonary resuscitation and after death: guidance from the Resuscitation Council (UK), British Cardiovascular Society and National Council for Palliative Care. *Heart*. 2016;102(suppl 7):A1–A17.
108. Padeletti L, Arnar DO, Boncinelli L, et al. EHRA expert consensus statement on the management of cardiovascular implantable electronic devices in patients nearing end of life or requesting withdrawal of therapy. *Europace*. 2010;12:1480–1489.
109. Ezekowitz JA, O'Meara E, McDonald MA, et al. 2017 Comprehensive update of the Canadian Cardiovascular Society guidelines for the management of heart failure. *Can J Cardiol*. 2017;33:1342–1433.
110. Suarez MP. Colombian doctors must now provide euthanasia by law. June 4, 2015. Panampost.com. Available at: https://panampost.com/maria-suarez/2015/06/04/colombian-public-doctors-must-now-provide-euthanasia-by-law/. Accessed 23.03.18.
111. *State-by-State Guide to Physician-Assisted Suicide. ProCon.org*; 2017. Available at: https://euthanasia.procon.org/view.resource.php?resourceID=000132. Accessed 23.03.18.
112. *Euthanasia and Physician-Assisted Suicide (PAS) Around the World. ProCon.org*; 2017. Available at: https://euthanasia.procon.org/view.resource.php?resourceID=000136. Accessed 28.03.18.
113. McCarthy J. *Seven in 10 Americans back euthanasia. Gallup News;* 2014. Available at: http://news.gallup.com/poll/171704/seven-americans-back-euthanasia.aspx. Accessed 23.03.18.
114. Yun YH, Han KH, Park S, et al. Attitudes of cancer patients, family care givers, oncologists and members of the general public toward critical interventions at the end of life of terminally ill patients. *CMAJ*. 2011;183:E673–E679.
115. McCormick R, Clifford M, Conroy M. Attitudes of UK doctors towards euthanasia and physician-assisted suicide: a systematic literature review. *Palliat Med*. 2012;26:23–33.
116. Oregon Death with Dignity act: 2015 data summary. Oregon Health Authority. Available at: http://www.oregon.gov/oha/ph/ProviderPartnerResources/EvaluationResearch/DeathwithDignityAct/Documents/year18.pdf. Accessed 23.03.18.
117. Lindsay RA. Oregon's experience: evaluating the record. *Am J Bioeth*. 2009;9:19–27.
118. A definition of irreversible coma: a report of the ad hoc committee of the Harvard School of Medicine to examine the definition of brain death. *JAMA*. 1968;205:337–340.
119. Lewis A, Cahn-Fuller K, Caplan A. Shouldn't dead be dead? The search for a uniform definition of death. *J Law Med Ethics*. 2017:45112–45128.
120. Herdman R, Potts J. *Non–Heart Beating Organ Transplantation: Medical and Ethical Issues in Procurement*. A Report of the Institute of Medicine. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 1997.
121. Cassel C, Allee M, Beasley C, et al. *Non–Heart Beating Organ Transplantation: Practice and Protocols. A Report of the Committee on Non–Heart-Beating Transplantation II*. Institute of Medicine. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 2000.
122. Menikoff J. The importance of being dead: non–heart beating organ donation. *Issues Law Med*. 2002;18:3–20.
123. Stein R. New trend in organ donation raises questions. *The Washington Post*. 2007.
124. Van Norman G. A matter of life and death: what every anesthesiologist should know about the medical, legal, and ethical aspects of declaring brain death. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:275–287.
125. Lerner B. Subjects or objects? Prisoners and human experimentation. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356:1806–1807.
126. *Final report of the Advisory Committee on Human Radiation Experiments*. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office; 1995.
127. Beecher H. Ethics and clinical research. *N Engl J Med*. 1966;274: 1354–1360.
128. Brody JL, Scherer DG, Annett RD, Pearson-Bish M. Voluntary assent in biomedical research with adolescents: a comparison of parent and adolescent views. *Ethics Behav*. 2003;13:79–95.
129. Olechnowicz JQ, Eder M, Simon C, Zyzanski S, Kodish E. Assent observed: children's involvement in leukemia treatment and research discussions. *Pediatrics*. 2002;109:806–814.
130. Wendler DS. Assent in paediatric research: theoretical and practical considerations. *J Med Ethics*. 2006;32:229–234.
131. Russell WMS, Burch R, Hume C. *The Principles of Humane Experimental Technique*. London: Methuen; 1959.
132. Francione GL. The use of nonhuman animals in biomedical research: necessity and justification. *J Law Med Ethics*. 2007;35:241–248.
133. Pluhar EB. Experimentation on humans and nonhumans. *Theor Med Bioeth*. 2006;27:333–355.
134. Martin J. The rights of man and animal experimentation. *J Med Ethics*. 1990;16:160–161.
135. Krass ME. How coercive is the medical profession? *Can Med Assoc J*. 1978;119:1340–1344.
136. Harmon TR, Lofquist WS. Too late for luck: a comparison of post-Furman exonerations and executions of the innocent. *Crime Delinquency*. 2005;51:498–520.
137. Osofsky MJ, Bandura A, Zimbardo PG. The role of moral disengagement in the execution process. *Law Hum Behav*. 2005;29: 371–393.
138. American medical association council on ethical and judicial affairs: Code of medical ethics opinion 9.7.3. Capital punishment. AMA. Available at: https://www.ama-assn.org/delivering-care/capital-punishment. Accessed 29.03.18.
139. American Board of Anesthesiology. *Anesthesiologists and Capital Punishment*; 2010. Available at: http://www.theaba.org/ABOUT/Policies-BOI. Accessed 29.03.18.
140. Hughes JA. Conscientious objection, professional duty and compromise: a response to Savulescu and Schuklenk. *Bioethics*. 2018;32:126–131.
141. Savulescu J, Schuklenk U. Doctors have no right to refuse medical assistance in dying, abortion or contraception. *Bioethics*. 2017;31:162–170.
142. Wicclair M. Conscientious objection in medicine. *Bioethics*. 2000;14:205–227.
143. Morrel KM, Chaykin W. Conscientious objection to abortion and reproductive healthcare: a review of recent literature and implications for adolescents. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;27:333–338.
144. Fiala C, Arthur JH. Refusal to treat patients does not work in any country—even if misleadingly labeled "conscientious objection". *Heath Hum Rights*. 2017;19:299–302.
145. Glauser W. Canada and US going opposite directions on conscientious objection for doctors. *CMAJ*. 2018;190:E270–E271.
146. Savulescu J, Schuklenk U. Doctors have no right to refuse medical assistance in dying, abortion or contraception. *Bioethics*. 2017; 31:162–170.
147. Wicclair R. *Bioethics*. 2000;14(3):205.
148. Morrel KM, Chaykin W. Conscientious objection to abortion and reproductive healthcare: a review of recent literature and implications for adolescents. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;27:333–338.
149. Fiala C, Arthur JH. Refusal to treat patients does not work in any country --even if misleadingly labeled "conscientious objection". *Heath Hum Rights*. 2017;19:299–302.
150. Glauser W. Canada and US going opposite directions on conscientious objection for doctors. *CMAJ*. 2018;190:E270–E271.

9

Consciousness, Memory, and Anesthesia

GEORGE A. MASHOUR and KANE O. PRYOR

KEY POINTS

- Mechanisms of consciousness and memory, and their interruption by general anesthetics, are important scientific problems that have clinical relevance for the practice of anesthesiology.
- Consciousness is characterized by both wakefulness (i.e., the brain being aroused) and awareness (i.e., subjective experience).
- Anesthetics act at structures in the brainstem, hypothalamus, and basal forebrain that regulate sleep-wake states, which may account for loss of wakefulness.
- Anesthetics disrupt connectivity and communication across cortical and thalamocortical networks, which may account for loss of awareness.
- Memory can be subdivided into explicit (conscious) and implicit (unconscious) recall; an example of explicit episodic recall is remembering a surgical event.
- Suppression of explicit episodic recall is one of the most potent effects of most general anesthetics.
- Effects on the hippocampus, amygdala, and prefrontal cortex—as well as the connectivity of these structures—may account for anesthetic-induced amnesia, even before loss of consciousness.

Introduction

SCIENTIFIC AND CLINICAL IMPORTANCE

Consciousness and memory are among the most fascinating and complex subjects in all of science. The richness of human consciousness and memory—and the ability to express this richness in language—is a defining characteristic of *homo sapiens*. Consciousness and memory also have clinical relevance for the anesthesiologist; together, the experience and explicit episodic recall of surgical events is known as the problem of "intraoperative awareness." When formally assessed, this complication occurs in approximately 1 to 2 cases per 1000[1-3] and is associated with a high incidence of posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD).[4,5] The incidence of intraoperative consciousness without recall is substantially higher.[6] To advance the field of perioperative brain monitoring, a detailed understanding of the neurobiology of consciousness, memory, and anesthesia is required.

Consciousness

DEFINITIONS

The field of consciousness studies has been plagued by the indiscriminate use of the term "consciousness." When we refer to consciousness, we mean *subjective experience*. In simple terms, it is what we lose when we have dreamless sleep and what we regain again in the morning upon awakening. There are, however, several important definitions and distinctions that should be considered.

1. **Awareness**: Cognitive neuroscientists and philosophers use the term "awareness" to mean *only* subjective experience. In clinical anesthesiology, we (inaccurately) use the term "awareness" to include *both* consciousness *and* explicit episodic memory[7] (the taxonomy of memory will be discussed in the next major section of the chapter).
2. **Connected versus disconnected consciousness**: Connected consciousness is the experience of environmental stimuli (such as surgery), whereas disconnected consciousness is an endogenous experience (such as a dream state).[8]
3. **Consciousness versus responsiveness**: An individual may fully experience a stimulus (such as the command "Open your eyes!") but not be able to respond (as when a patient is paralyzed but conscious during surgery).[9]

There have been a number of theories proposed to explain the mechanisms of consciousness and general anesthesia. Advances in neuroscience, however, have enabled us to move beyond speculative frameworks and focus on a systems-based approach to both subjects.[10] The remainder of this section on consciousness adopts such an approach by discussing (1) brainstem and hypothalamic nuclei regulating the sleep-wake cycle (and therefore arousal states) (Figs. 9.1 and 9.2); (2) the role of the thalamus in consciousness and anesthesia; (3) cortical-subcortical connectivity, with a focus on the thalamocortical system, which is thought to mediate the experiential component of consciousness; and (4) cortico-cortical communication.

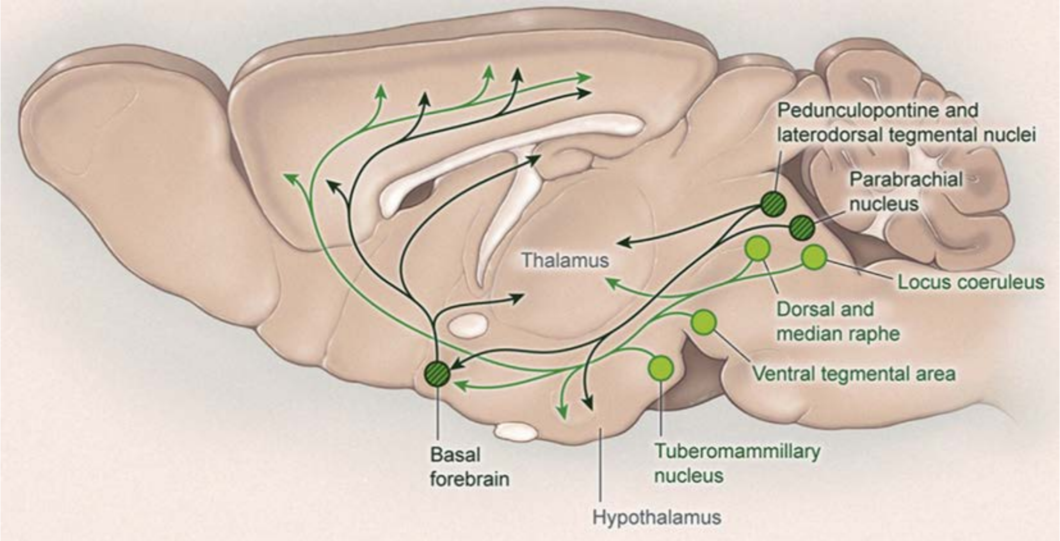

Pedunculopontine and laterodorsal tegmental nuclei
Parabrachial nucleus
Thalamus
Locus coeruleus
Dorsal and median raphe
Ventral tegmental area
Basal forebrain
Tuberomammillary nucleus
Hypothalamus

Fig. 9.1 Neurobiology of wakefulness. Multiple neurochemical systems in subcortical regions (shown here in rodent brain) promote arousal and activation of the cortex. Monoaminergic neurons *(light green)* in the rostral brainstem and caudal hypothalamus innervate the cortex as well as many subcortical regions including the hypothalamus and thalamus. These monoaminergic regions include noradrenergic neurons (locus coeruleus), serotonergic neurons (dorsal and median raphe nuclei), dopaminergic neurons (ventral tegmental area), and histaminergic neurons (tuberomammillary nucleus). Wake-promoting signals also arise from cholinergic regions *(dark green with hatching)*, including the pedunculopontine and laterodorsal tegmental nuclei and basal forebrain. General anesthetics have been demonstrated to suppress many of these regions. (Redrawn from Scammell TE, Arrigoni E, Lipton JO. Neural circuitry of wakefulness and sleep. *Neuron.* 2017;93[4]:747–765.)

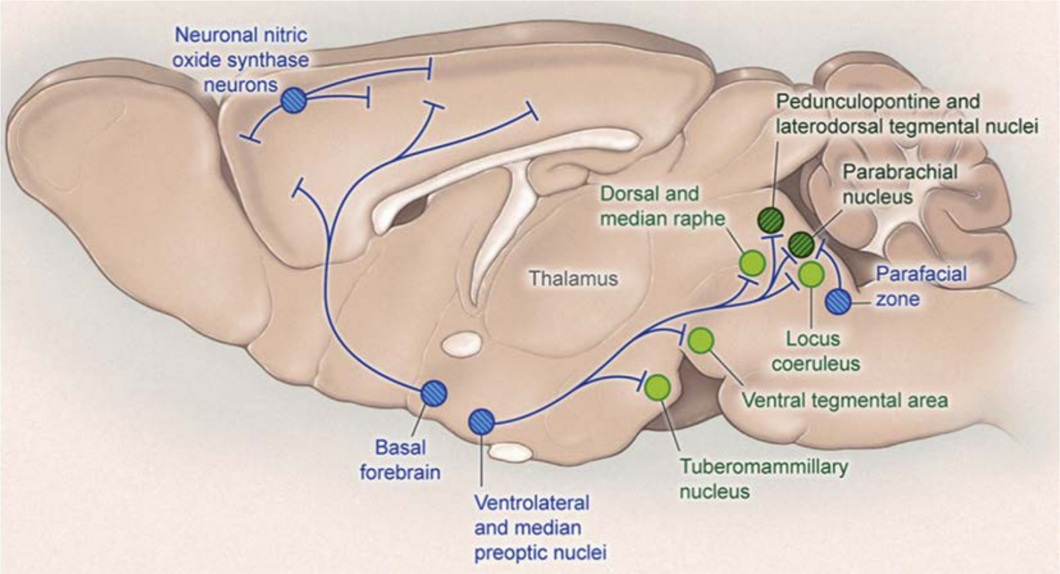

Neuronal nitric oxide synthase neurons
Pedunculopontine and laterodorsal tegmental nuclei
Parabrachial nucleus
Dorsal and median raphe
Thalamus
Parafacial zone
Locus coeruleus
Ventral tegmental area
Basal forebrain
Tuberomammillary nucleus
Ventrolateral and median preoptic nuclei

Fig. 9.2 Neurobiology of slow-wave sleep. GABA-ergic neurons in the ventrolateral preoptic area and median preoptic nucleus in the hypothalamus (shown here in rodent brain) promote sleep by inhibiting wake-promoting neurons in the caudal hypothalamus and brainstem. These hypothalamic nuclei are activated by general anesthetics. (Redrawn from Scammell TE, Arrigoni E, Lipton JO. Neural circuitry of wakefulness and sleep. *Neuron.* 2017;93[4]:747–765.)

SUBCORTICAL NUCLEI REGULATING AROUSAL

It was hypothesized in the mid-1990s that anesthetics suppress consciousness by actions at the subcortical nuclei that evolved to control sleep-wake cycles.[11] The past decades have supported the hypothesis that anesthetics interact with a number of these sleep-wake centers,[12,13] although precise interactions and contributions to the state of general anesthesia have yet to be elucidated. The following is a description of select subcortical nuclei in the brainstem and hypothalamus that mediate sleep-wake cycles[14] and, potentially, some traits of anesthesia.

Brainstem

Locus ceruleus. Norepinephrine is synthesized in the locus ceruleus (LC), which is located in the pons and projects widely throughout the cortex.[15] Like other monoaminergic neuronal populations, LC activity is highest during waking consciousness, decreased during nonrapid eye movement (NREM) sleep, and at its nadir during rapid eye movement (REM) sleep.[16,17] Thus LC is associated with cortical arousal only during wakefulness and not with the cortical activation during REM sleep. LC neurons are hyperpolarized by halothane.[18] The role of norepinephrine (generated by LC) in anesthesia is further supported by studies demonstrating that barbiturate anesthesia time is increased by antagonizing norepinephrine and reduced by agonizing it.[19,20] Norepinephrine transmission in the basal forebrain may be of particular relevance to anesthetic depth.[21] It has been found that LC noradrenergic neurons modulate the state of isoflurane anesthesia as well as emergence therefrom.[22] Of note, administration of ketamine is associated with an increase of activity in the LC[23] and appears to contribute to its anesthetic effects.[24]

LC and the role of norepinephrine in hypnosis are of particular interest due to the role of the α-2 agonist dexmedetomidine in clinical care. Microinjection of dexmedetomidine in the LC results in reduced levels of consciousness that can be prevented by coadministration of the α-2 antagonist atipamezole.[25] After exposure to dexmedetomidine, brain changes somewhat mimic NREM sleep in that the LC and tuberomammillary nucleus (TMN) are deactivated, whereas the ventrolateral preoptic nucleus (VLPO) is activated.[26] Data in dopamine-β-hydroxylase knockout mice (which lack the ability to synthesize norepinephrine) demonstrate a *hypersensitivity* to dexmedetomidine, suggesting alternative mechanisms of action.[27] However, selective knockdown of α-2A adrenergic receptors from LC prevent dexmedetomidine-induced loss of righting reflex,[28] a marker of general anesthesia in rodents.

Laterodorsal/pedunculopontine tegmentum. Along with the basal forebrain, the laterodorsal tegmentum (LDT) and pedunculopontine tegmentum (PPT) in the pons are the brain's source of acetylcholine.[29] There are direct projections to the thalamus from LDT/PPT with a known role in the generation of slow oscillations and sleep spindles,[30] which together represent a neurophysiologic sign that information transfer to the cortex is likely blocked.[31] As with the noradrenergic LC, activity of the LDT/PPT is high during waking consciousness and decreases during NREM sleep.[15] However, in contrast to the LC and other monoaminergic neurons, the cholinergic LDT/PPT is also active during REM sleep, during which the cortex is aroused. Furthermore, activation of cholinergic neurons in LDT or PPT induces REM sleep.[32] Thus, both states of cortical activation across the sleep-wake cycle are associated with high cholinergic tone. General anesthetics modulate cholinergic projections from the LDT/PPT. Sleep spindles occur during halothane anesthesia and are associated with decreased cholinergic transmission to the medial pontine reticular formation (PRF).[33,34] There is evidence that synaptic and extrasynaptic γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) receptors play a role in modulating LDT neurons,[35] which could provide a direct link to molecular mechanisms of numerous general anesthetics. However, there has been relatively little study of the role of LDT/PPT in anesthetic mechanisms, with a greater focus on cholinergic neurons in the basal forebrain.

Pontine reticular formation. The PRF is part of the reticular activating system, which plays an important role in cortical arousal. Although GABA is the primary inhibitory neurotransmitter in the brain, the actions of GABA in the PRF are associated with cortical arousal.[36] For example, there is increased time spent in the waking state when the GABA_A receptor agonist muscimol is microinjected in the PRF.[37] When the GABA_A antagonist bicuculline is microinjected, wakefulness is suppressed, but REM sleep (another state of cortical arousal) is triggered. Vanini and colleagues found that *decreased* levels of GABA in the PRF correlated with isoflurane-induced unconsciousness, muscular hypotonia, and decreased respiratory rate.[38] Since the effects of anesthetics are normally associated with a *potentiation* of GABA activity, these findings highlight that a specific neuroanatomic and neurochemical milieu can play a unique and unexpected role in the mechanisms of consciousness and anesthesia. In addition, Vanini and colleagues found that GABA-ergic transmission in the rat PRF modulates the loss of consciousness induced by isoflurane but does not appear to affect emergence,[39] providing evidence for asymmetry between the two processes.

The mesopontine tegmental anesthesia area is located in the PRF. When pentobarbital is microinjected in this area, a reversible state with anesthetic traits is induced.[40] More recently, this phenomenon has been defined with greater spatial resolution, with the identification of around 1900 neurons in this area that can induce general anesthesia.[41]

Ventral tegmental area. Dopaminergic neurons of the ventral tegmental area (VTA) in the midbrain have not classically been considered key mediators of the sleep-wake cycle because of relatively less evidence of state-dependent changes compared with neurons in other brainstem nuclei. This view has been challenged in sleep neurobiology.[42] A dopaminergic pathway regulating sleep-wake states has been identified in *Drosophila*[43] and dopaminergic neurons of the VTA have more recently been found to play a role in mammalian sleep.[44] There has been renewed interest in the ability of dopaminergic activity to reverse or accelerate recovery from general anesthesia. Studies of the dopamine agonist methylphenidate have revealed an ability to reverse the sedative effects of both isoflurane and propofol.[45,46] VTA appears to be the source of the dopaminergic transmission mediating arousal during exposure to anesthesia, as evidenced by the fact that electrical stimulation of the VTA or selective stimulation of VTA dopaminergic neurons can reverse anesthetic-induced unconsciousness.[47,48]

Hypothalamus

Ventrolateral preoptic nucleus. The anterior hypothalamus has long been hypothesized to play a role in sleep-wake regulation.[49] VLPO is a structure in this region that transmits GABA and galanin.[50] Neurons in VLPO are maximally active during NREM and REM sleep;[51,52] the median preoptic nucleus (MnPO) is also active during sleep. Of note, the activity profile of GABA-ergic neurons in VLPO correlates with sleep amount, whereas the activity of GABA-ergic neurons in MnPO correlates with homeostatic sleep pressure or propensity.[53] Importantly, activity of the VLPO during sleep is correlated with inhibition of other arousal centers in the brainstem and hypothalamus.[51,54] Given its potentially central role as a mediator of sleep, VLPO became an attractive candidate as a mediator of anesthetic-induced unconsciousness. Nelson and colleagues demonstrated activation of VLPO after systemic administration of propofol or pentothal[55]; recent studies have examined the mechanistic significance of these findings. Eikermann and colleagues conducted studies of rats with *chronic* lesions of

VLPO, finding that ablation of VLPO resulted in sleep deprivation (as expected) but conferred *increased sensitivity* to the effects of isoflurane.[56] This finding would argue against a critical role of VLPO in the mechanism of anesthesia. However, Moore and colleagues demonstrated that *acute* lesions of VLPO conferred *resistance* to the effects of isoflurane, an effect that appeared to be mediated specifically through the sleep-active neurons in VLPO.[57] These neurons are actually depolarized (i.e., activated) by isoflurane. Taken together, these data suggest that VLPO plays a role in anesthetic-induced unconsciousness (as evidenced by acute lesion data), but that the effects of sleep deprivation associated with chronic VLPO lesions could overwhelm this role. Curiously, direct administration of dexmedetomidine, an α-2-adrenergic agonist, to the VLPO can destabilize the state of isoflurane anesthesia.[58]

Orexinergic neurons. Orexinergic neurons are found in the lateral hypothalamus and provide an important arousal stimulus for the cortex. There are two types of orexin (A and B), which are also referred to as hypocretins. Orexinergic neurons innervate other arousal centers in the brainstem and basal forebrain, and fire maximally in the waking state, are suppressed during NREM sleep, and show occasional bursts during phasic REM sleep.[59,60] Dysfunction of the orexinergic system is associated with narcolepsy in both human and animal models.[61,62] The often dramatic delay of anesthetic emergence in narcoleptic patients[63] has motivated the study of orexin in anesthetic mechanism. Orexins attenuate the effects of isoflurane,[64] propofol,[65] ketamine,[66] and barbiturates,[67] using various measures. Local infusion of orexin in the basal forebrain is associated with electroencephalographic (EEG) arousal and decreased emergence time in animals anesthetized with sevoflurane[68] and isoflurane.[69] Microinjection of propofol in the perifornical region of the hypothalamus (the locus of orexinergic neurons) is associated with a decrease in cortical acetylcholine, an important mediator of arousal.[70] Importantly, both genetic and pharmacologic studies have demonstrated that orexins play an important role in emergence from sevoflurane and isoflurane anesthesia, but not induction.[71] This seminal study suggested that there is a distinct neurobiology of induction and emergence, and formed the basis for a theory of "neural inertia" across state transitions.[72] Of note, halothane did not show an effect on orexinergic neurons and emergence time was not altered in orexin knockout mice.[73] These findings have been confirmed for propofol anesthesia: propofol reduces activity in orexinergic neurons in rats and infusion of orexin in the basal forebrain affects emergence time, but not induction time.[74] Orexins might facilitate emergence from anesthesia through actions in the basal forebrain.[75]

Tuberomammillary nucleus. The TMN is located in the caudal hypothalamus and is the brain's source of histamine, an arousal-promoting transmitter. TMN activity and histamine levels are highest during wakefulness and lowest during sleep;[76] the TMN is thought to have a relationship of reciprocal inhibition with the sleep-promoting GABAergic neurons of the VLPO.[51,54,77] Histamine release in the anterior hypothalamus is depressed during sleep[78] and halothane anesthesia.[79] Systemic administration of propofol, pentothal, and the GABA agonist muscimol all result in decreased activity in the TMN.[55] Microinjection of histamine in the nucleus basalis magnocellularis of the basal forebrain reverses the depressant effects of isoflurane on the EEG, an effect likely mediated by H1 histamine receptors.[80] A recent study in which $GABA_A$ receptors were genetically removed demonstrated that histaminergic neurons are resistant to the effects of propofol.[81] However, at the behavioral level, there was no effect of propofol on loss-of-righting reflex, a surrogate for anesthetic-induced unconsciousness. Thus the role of TMN and histaminergic transmission in the mechanism of anesthesia is still unclear.

ROLE OF THE THALAMUS

The thalamus is composed of more than 50 nuclei and subnuclei that can be grossly classified as relays for sensory input from the periphery or multimodal, integrative regions that receive input from the cortex. Additionally, the thalamus is critical for transmitting arousal signals from the brainstem and for regulating cortical communication. The involvement of the thalamus in arousal, sensory processing, and cortical computation is likely critical for normal consciousness. As such, the thalamus has been of continued interest to those investigating mechanisms of anesthetic-induced unconsciousness.

The thalamus has been proposed as an ON/OFF switch for anesthetic state transitions.[82] This theory was generated based on the consistent metabolic depression of the thalamus by a number of inhaled and intravenous anesthetics[83-85] (with the exception of ketamine),[86] suggesting that it could serve as an effective OFF switch. The hyperpolarization of the thalamus would shift tonic firing to burst firing that—as with sleep—would prevent afferent sensory stimuli from arousing the cortex. Importantly, however, sensory nuclei in the thalamus (and their connectivity to the cortex) appear to be less involved in anesthetic-induced unconsciousness compared to the higher-order or "nonspecific" nuclei.[87,88]

Evidence for the thalamus as an ON switch has been derived primarily from animal experiments, in which stimulation of the centromedial thalamus by either nicotine or antibodies blocking voltage-gated potassium channels could reverse the effects of inhaled anesthetics.[89,90] Although microinjection of large doses of nicotine into the thalamus could precipitate anesthetic emergence, antagonism of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors in the same location did not appear to contribute to anesthetic-induced unconsciousness. Central thalamic activation results in behavioral improvement in humans with traumatic brain injury.[91] A study in humans demonstrated that (spontaneous) activation of the thalamus along with other subcortical structures is correlated with recovery from anesthesia, suggesting the involvement of the thalamus in the primitive or "core" consciousness observed at emergence.[92]

Nonspecific nuclei of the thalamus have been proposed as a computational blackboard for the cortex.[93] Thus if the mechanism of anesthetic-induced unconsciousness was achieved primarily by a suppression of cortical computation, a depressed thalamus should be the result. To address this question, Velly and colleagues conducted a neurophysiologic study using scalp EEG (reflecting cortical signals) and subthalamic nuclei electrodes (argued to reflect thalamic activity).[94] Induction of anesthesia with either propofol or sevoflurane was associated with cortical rather than subcortical changes, suggesting that the depression of the thalamus identified through neuroimaging studies reflected an effect rather than a cause of anesthetic-induced unconsciousness. Other case studies in humans suggest concurrent suppression of thalamus and cortex during induction of propofol.[95] Furthermore, more precise neurophysiologic recordings of thalamus and cortex in animal models suggest that effects of propofol on central thalamic activity precede effects on the cortex; interestingly this was found during the spontaneous induction of sleep as well.[96] Other animal studies have found that attenuation of high-frequency oscillations by propofol is more pronounced in the thalamus than the cortex.[97]

The prior two possibilities (thalamic switch or computational blackboard for the cortex) treat the thalamus as a passive player in general anesthesia. However, more recent data suggest that it might, instead, play an active role. A computational study using human EEG data and modeling suggested that the action of propofol on GABA receptors in the nucleus reticularis generates a hypersynchronous alpha rhythm (8-13 Hz) with the frontal cortex that blocks sensory input.[98] Hypersynchrony of alpha may block the flexible corticocortical communication required for normal consciousness.[99] A recent animal study identified alpha synchronization between thalamus and medial prefrontal cortex during propofol induction.[100] The potential role of thalamocortical interactions in anesthetic-induced unconsciousness prompts further discussion of the thalamus and its connectivity to the cortex.

CORTICAL-SUBCORTICAL CONNECTIVITY

The closely integrated function of the cortex and thalamus suggests that the two can be treated as a single *thalamocortical system*. The thalamocortical system undergoes state-dependent changes across the sleep-wake cycle, and is thought to play a critical role in consciousness. This role is defined by its ability to integrate the activities of functionally diverse cognitive modules, a property that is critical for subjective experience.[101]

Recent studies using functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) have refined the role of thalamocortical connectivity in anesthesia. One study identified a propofol-induced disruption of connectivity between the thalamus and lateral frontal-parietal networks.[102] Similarly, a study of the specific nuclei (linked to particular sensory modalities) and nonspecific nuclei (linked to integrative functions) found that disrupted connectivity between the nonspecific nuclei and the cortex best accounted for a reduction in the level of consciousness by propofol.[87] Recently, the inhaled anesthetic sevoflurane has been shown to functionally disconnect the thalamus and cortex, especially frontal cortex.[103,104] Notably, a consistent finding of neuroimaging studies is that the thalamocortical connectivity of primary sensory networks is relatively well preserved despite anesthetic-induced unconsciousness.

The finding of impaired thalamocortical connectivity in association with anesthetic-induced unconsciousness has not been universal. An fMRI study of propofol revealed more profound functional disconnections between the cortex and putamen, a subcortical structure in the basal ganglia.[105] In contrast, thalamic connectivity was relatively well preserved. The potential role of the striatum (composed of the putamen and caudate) in anesthetic-induced unconsciousness has been demonstrated in a study of rats undergoing isoflurane anesthesia.[106] This study was conducted with fMRI and found that the functional connection between the frontal cortex and the basal ganglia was disrupted during general anesthesia. A functional disconnection of association cortex and subcortical structures has also been shown by fMRI in a study of propofol-induced unconsciousness in humans.[107] With improved spatial resolution of 7T fMRI machines and templates for brainstem nuclei,[108] future studies can focus on identifying with greater precision the critical subcortical and cortical interactions or functional disconnections that contribute to anesthetic-induced unconsciousness.[109]

CORTICAL CONNECTIVITY AND DYNAMICS

The last three sections were organized according to a bottom-up approach to consciousness and anesthesia, starting with the brainstem, and then moving to the diencephalon and thalamocortical system. Sleep is clearly generated through such bottom-up mechanisms[14]; however, anesthetics may suppress the *level* of consciousness through bottom-up mechanisms and *content* of consciousness through top-down (i.e., cortical) mechanisms.[12]

Early studies using positron emission tomography (PET) demonstrated regional depression in cortical areas, including lateral and medial frontal-parietal networks.[110] Disruption of fMRI-based functional connectivity in frontal-parietal networks has been demonstrated during anesthetic-induced unconsciousness induced by drugs with distinct molecular mechanisms, including propofol,[102,111] sevoflurane,[103] and ketamine.[112] However, the cortex is amenable not only to fMRI but also neurophysiological techniques of assessing connectivity, enabling data on anesthetic-induced unconsciousness with improved temporal resolution. EEG can be used to measure functional connectivity (the statistical covariation of the activities of brain regions), and directional or effective connectivity (the presumed causal influence of one brain region on another).[113] Using such techniques applied to EEG (in some cases with concomitant fMRI), disruption of frontal-parietal connectivity and surrogates of information exchange in humans has been consistently observed after administration of a variety of anesthetics with diverse molecular targets.[104,114-117] It has been suggested that such disruption of frontal-parietal connectivity, with implications for impaired information transfer of relevance to consciousness, might be a common mediator and proximate cause of anesthetic-induced unconsciousness.[118]

The inhibition of frontal-parietal communication is likely representative of a more global disruption of cortical communication. A study using high-density EEG and transcranial magnetic stimulation revealed an inhibition of cortical-effective connectivity after midazolam-induced unconsciousness.[119] After administration of the benzodiazepine, local cortical activation could be observed at the site of magnetic stimulation, but robust evoked potentials

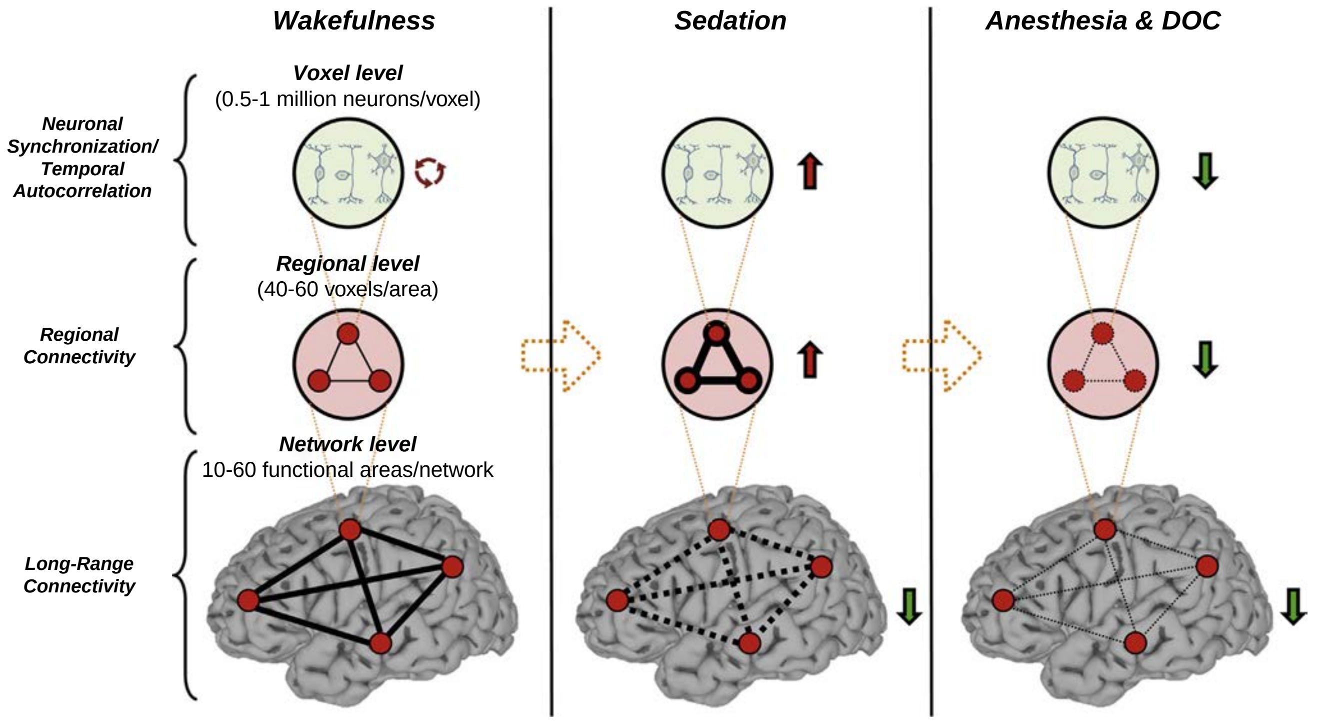


Fig. 9.3 Schematic summary of the consecutive stages of unconsciousness. Relative to the control state of wakefulness *(left column)*, sedation *(middle panel)* is marked by an increase of local/regional signal synchrony and consequent breakdown of global connectivity. Deep surgical anesthesia or disorders of consciousness *(DOC, right column)* is associated with collapse of both local/regional synchrony and global connectivity. (From Huang Z, Liu X, Mashour GA, Hudetz AG. Timescales of intrinsic BOLD signal dynamics and functional connectivity in pharmacologic and neuropathologic states of unconsciousness. *J Neurosci*. 2018;38[9]:2304–2317.)

were terminated at less than 100 milliseconds, and cortical communication was limited. Of note, this finding is consistent with findings in NREM sleep.[120] This perturbational approach determined that the complexity of cortical response to a stimulus decreased during sleep, general anesthesia, and disorders of consciousness.[121] The concordant findings across physiologic (sleep) and pharmacologic (anesthesia) states of unconsciousness may reflect a common neurophysiologic mechanism of disrupted cortical connectivity through slow oscillations, which share a number of characteristics in NREM sleep and general anesthesia.[122] A study of three epilepsy patients with intracranial neurophysiologic monitoring[123] revealed that, within 5 seconds of propofol-induced unconsciousness, there was a dramatic increase in the power of slow oscillations. Although single-unit neuronal activity was initially suppressed, it returned to baseline (or above baseline) but was fragmented into highly active and quiescent periods. Neural firing became coupled with the slow oscillation. However, the slow oscillations themselves demonstrated decay in phase coupling with increased distance across the cortex. Thus neuronal spike activity became fragmented into "on" and "off" periods, which became temporally uncoordinated across the cortex. These neurophysiologic conditions dramatically reduce the probability of meaningful corticocortical communication.

More recent trends of analyzing cortical changes during states of unconsciousness take a dynamic approach that reflects not just connectivity configurations but the repertoire of states that can be accessed during general anesthesia. For example, there is a contraction of dynamic repertoire and neural signal diversity during propofol-induced unconsciousness[124,125] that would preclude the kind of flexibility required for normal conscious experience. Dynamic patterns are impaired during general anesthesia and cortical dynamics are stabilized during general anesthesia.[126] This is likely a discrete, multistage process with distinct dynamic signatures during sedation and general anesthesia (Fig. 9.3).[127,128] Relating dynamics to connectivity, it appears that the repertoire of functional connectivity patterns in the primate brain becomes more tethered to structural/anatomical connectivity patterns during the anesthetized state.[129] Of note, animal studies suggest that the return of consciousness after general anesthesia is defined by discrete neural states that reconfigure during emergence.[130]

In the next section, we discuss memory, the thread that links conscious experiences together to form the narrative of "self."

Memory

HISTORY AND TERMINOLOGY

Modern understanding of the structure, function, and organization of human memory is deeply informed by the study of amnesia. The most renowned demonstration of this principle occurred in 1957, when Brenda Milner reported the remarkable case of Henry Gustav Molaison (1926–2008),[131] an amnesiac who would become known famously as H.M., and who would represent the single most influential case study in the history of neuroscience. In a procedure intended to treat a refractory seizure disorder, significant portions of the medial temporal lobe (MTL) were removed bilaterally—including the hippocampus, amygdala, and adjacent parahippocampal gyrus. H.M. developed profound and enduring anterograde amnesia, and was unable to establish any new conscious memory, irrespective of the sensory modality. He also developed a temporally graded window of retrograde amnesia, with impaired recall of events occurring during the 3 years preceding his surgery. However, most of his associated cognitive functions—perceptual processing, language, attention, access to semantic knowledge, and capacity to retain small packages of information in constant rehearsal—remained largely or entirely intact. Prior to this report, the prevailing theory—articulated by Canadian neuropsychologist Donald Hebb[132]—was that there was no brain region dedicated to memory function. Instead, memory processes were thought to be distributed and integrated into region-specific perceptual and cognitive functions. For example, the visual attribute of a memory would be wholly served within the striate and extrastriate cortical regions responsible for visual perception. The description of H.M. immediately disproved this model. It became clear that the MTL was a specialized and obligatory structure for the establishment and early maintenance of *all* conscious memory, irrespective of the modality. The trajectory of memory research was profoundly transformed. Initially, largely independent branches evolved to focus on the structural-functional organization of the MTL (Fig. 9.4*A*) and the nature of cellular-level neuroplastic processes—the latter notably marked by the description of long-term potentiation (LTP) by Timothy Bliss and Terje Lømo in 1973.[133] Subsequently, emerging technologies enabled the development and investigation of systems-level constructs. Examples include the use of EEG and magnetoencephalography to assess the role of oscillatory phase synchronization in neuronal assemblies,[134] fMRI to identify large-scale networks associated with specific memory functions,[135] and machine learning to classify complex neural network patterns predictive of memory.[136]

Amnesia is the term used to describe one of the cardinal properties of general anesthesia. As understood by most anesthesiologists and laypeople, this description is phenomenological; it states that patients do not recall the events that occur to them while receiving anesthesia. However, this usage confuses a critical mechanistic and semantic distinction. Patients in the deepest states of anesthesia are unable to process and bind perceptual elements into an integrated conscious experience. From the perspective of cognitive neuroscience, the "amnesia" of general anesthesia is not a primary failure of memory, but rather a failure of consciousness. It simply reflects that a conscious experience cannot be reconstructed by memory processes when it does not exist in the first place. Further confusion is added by the frequent use of the term *awareness*—a synonym for conscious perception—to describe the case in which a patient consciously recalls events occurring during the administration of an anesthetic. This ignores the fundamental principle that memory is functionally dissociable from consciousness. Awareness is *necessary* for the establishment of memory under anesthesia, but it is not *sufficient*. Conscious recall can occur only if awareness is accompanied by memory processes in the MTL and elsewhere that establish and preserve a representation that can be reconstructed later.

These important distinctions establish the axiom that patients who form memories while under anesthesia cannot have been truly unconscious; they must have possessed some conscious substrate from which the memory derives. However, the converse inference is not always true: the existence of consciousness will not necessarily lead to the existence of memory if an anesthetic drug is present. Evidence to support this statement is unambiguously encountered in everyday anesthetic practice—patients receiving a small dose of propofol or midazolam who engage in a cogent conversation that they are later unable to recall, or in patients emerging from general anesthesia who follow commands to demonstrate that extubation can proceed safely, yet later cannot recall anything related to this clearly conscious event. Anesthetic drugs must therefore have direct effects on memory processes that are dissociable from those on consciousness—and it is this observation that provides a framework for the systematic study of how anesthetic drugs affect memory.

Organization and Function of Normal Memory

MULTIPLE MEMORY SYSTEMS

When the term *memory* is used in everyday language, it almost always refers to declarative memory. Declarative memory is the representation of prior events and knowledge that is accessible to consciousness and can be manipulated by attention and executive function. It is the form of memory referred to in the context of anesthetic amnesia.

Further important organizational structure exists within declarative memory. The first is the distinction between episodic and semantic memory. *Episodic memory* is the recollection of events with a clear spatiotemporal context (as when recalling autobiographical events with a distinct sense of personal experience, time, and place), whereas *semantic memory* is the capacity to recall and apply meaning, facts, and knowledge without spatiotemporal context (as when recalling that Mount Everest is the tallest mountain in the world without any sense of time and place for the acquisition of that knowledge). The episodic memory system is fast-mapping and highly dependent on the MTL as well as frontal and parietal structures,[137,138] whereas the semantic memory system is slower and involves distributed cortical regions that closely map to the default mode network, a large-scale system that is active during the resting state and flow of spontaneous cognition.[135,139] The second organizational structure within episodic memory is the distinction between recollection and familiarity. *Recollection* involves remembering specific qualitative contextual details about a prior event, whereas in a *familiarity* judgment, there is a sense that an item has been encountered previously, but beyond that there are no added contextual details. The accepted understanding is that recollection and familiarity arise from distinct processes and neural architecture within the MTL. The perirhinal cortex receives input from sensory association areas and supports familiarity judgments through encoding and retrieval of the identifying qualities of an item (the "what" information). The parahippocampal cortex and entorhinal areas receive input from areas

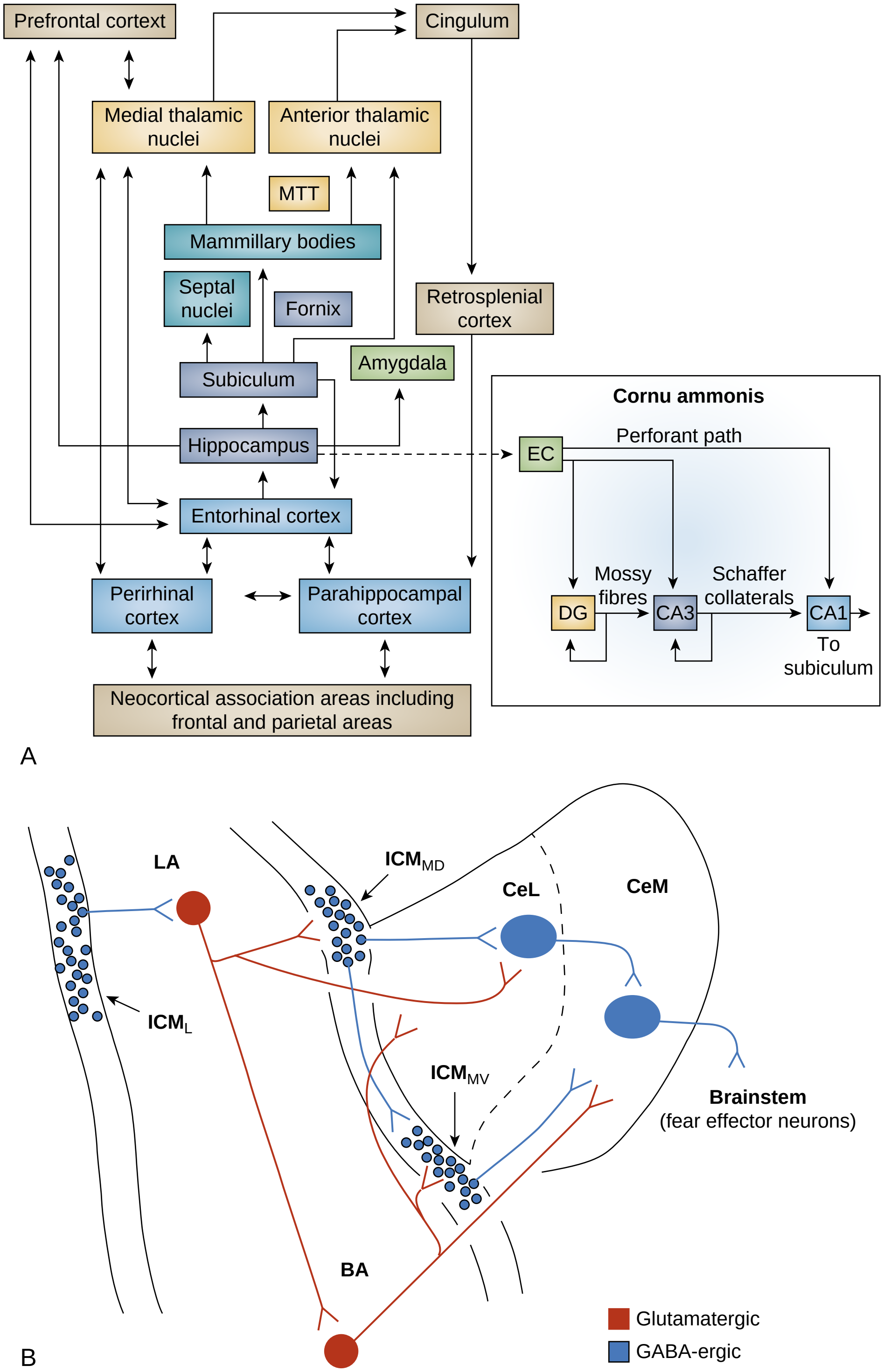

Prefrontal cortext
Cingulum
Medial thalamic nuclei
Anterior thalamic nuclei
MTT
Mammillary bodies
Septal nuclei
Fornix
Retrosplenial cortex
Subiculum
Amygdala
Hippocampus
Entorhinal cortex
Perirhinal cortex
Parahippocampal cortex
Neocortical association areas including frontal and parietal areas
Cornu ammonis
Perforant path
EC
Mossy fibres
Schaffer collaterals
DG
CA3
CA1
To subiculum
A
LA
ICM_{MD}
CeL
CeM
ICM_{L}
ICM_{MV}
Brainstem
(fear effector neurons)
BA
🟥 Glutamatergic
🟦 GABA-ergic
B

Fig. 9.4 Memory systems in the medial temporal lobe. (A) Representation of unidirectional and bidirectional network connectivity of structures in the medial temporal lobe, diencephalic nuclei, and neocortical association areas. *CA,* Cornu ammonis; *DG,* dentate gyrus; *EC,* entorhinal cortex; *MTT,* mammillothalamic tract. (B) Intrinsic connectivity of the amygdala. *BA,* Basal nucleus; *CeL,* central nucleus lateral segment; *CeM,* central nucleus medial segment; ICM_{L}, lateral intercalated cell mass; ICM_{MD}, dorsomedial intercalated cell mass; ICM_{MV}, ventromedial intercalated cell mass; *LA,* lateral nucleus. ([A] Modified from Bartsch T, Butler C. Transient amnesic syndromes. *Nat Rev Neurol.* 2013;9[2]:86–97, Figure 2. [B] Modified from Duvarci S, Pare D. Amygdala microcircuits controlling learned fear. *Neuron.* 2014;82[5]:966–980, Figure 2.)

processing spatial information (the "where" information), and support recollection through encoding and retrieval of context. The hippocampus links these two, binding item and context information, and appears necessary for recollection, but plays little or no role in familiarity.[140,141]

Other forms of memory are dissociable from declarative memory. Findings that amnesiacs could learn a hand-eye coordination skill even while possessing no memory of the task led to the distinction between declarative and *procedural* memory, which is dependent on the caudate nucleus.

Subsequently, memory-impaired patients were also found to have intact *priming*,[142] which is a nonconscious process in which exposure to a stimulus influences the response to a later stimulus—for example, amnesiacs can name pictures 100 milliseconds faster if they have seen them previously, despite having no declarative memory of the exposure.[143] The neural bases for priming effects are thought to arise within regions serving perceptual and contextual processing of the stimulus, and so vary with the nature of the task.[144] Lastly, a large body of work has extensively elucidated the *emotional memory* system. The classic experimental model is Pavlovian fear conditioning and its variants, wherein an emotionally neutral conditioned stimulus is paired with an aversive unconditioned stimulus, leading to an involuntary associative physiologic and/or behavioral response to the conditioned stimulus. The circuitry involves convergence of afferent information from all sensory modalities on the lateral nucleus of the amygdala, and the basolateral and central nuclei projecting widely to modulate processes in cortical and subcortical regions (see Fig. 9. 4*B*).[145,146] With the progressive description of these and other functional distinctions, the framework for understanding memory eventually shifted to models that contained multiple memory systems in the brain, distributed functionally and anatomically.[147]

Working memory refers to the capacity to maintain limited amounts of information in the stream of consciousness, which can be manipulated to perform complex cognitive tasks such as reasoning, comprehension, and learning.[148] The concept evolved from, and has largely replaced, earlier ideas about *short-term memory*, but the terms should not be used interchangeably, as working memory implies both a short-term memory store *and* the capacity for manipulation. The most influential current model, first proposed by Baddeley and Hitch in 1974,[149] divides working memory into capacity-limited component subsystems: a *phonological loop* that maintains information through vocal or subvocal rehearsal, such as when one holds a telephone number in mind; a *visuospatial sketchpad*, which holds and manipulates spatial, visual, and kinesthetic information; and a *central executive*, which is responsible for regulating selective attention and inhibition. A fourth subsystem, the *episodic buffer*, was later added to the model[150] and is responsible for the temporary storage of multidimensional representations and integration with declarative memory.

Working memory has long been understood to not involve the MTL,[151] although the belief that it has no role has recently been questioned in studies of spatial working memory.[152] Notwithstanding, current understanding of working memory suggests that it is served by persistent activity and flexible resource allocation in a distributed cortical network, with a critical hub in the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (DLPFC) interconnected with parietal cortex, thalamus, caudate, and globus pallidus.[153] The functional and structural distinction between working memory and the MTL does not mean that working memory and declarative memory systems do not interact. Working memory depends on declarative memory representations to provide semantic meaning and context. During working memory tasks, cortical perceptual areas associated with representations of declarative memory become activated and show increased synchrony with prefrontal regions.[154] Reciprocally, encoding of declarative memory is strongly influenced by the nature of processing occurring in working memory, with deeper levels of executive processing resulting in better learning.[155]

The transition of memory from short-term stores through to stable long-term stores is experienced as continuous and was assumed to reflect sequential transfer across systems. However, this model is challenged by rare case examples of patients who have a selective short-term memory deficit but intact declarative memory function, and recent studies have reinforced the view that memories are formed in multiple systems in parallel.[156]

LONG-TERM POTENTIATION, SYNAPTIC TAGGING, AND THE CONSOLIDATION MODEL OF MEMORY

The consolidation hypothesis of memory was first proposed by Müller and Pilzecker in 1900.[157] They noted that memory for new information could be disrupted by learning other information shortly after the initial training. This effect, called *retroactive interference*, is temporally graded such that the susceptibility of the memory is greatest immediately after learning and decreases with time. Müller and Pilzecker proposed that the memory trace must initially exist in a fragile state, but subsequently becomes stable through the process of *consolidation.* The consolidation hypothesis remains the framework for understanding the temporal course of memory processes and behavior.

For a memory trace to be consolidated, it must of course be created. The term used to describe this process is *encoding.* Encoding implies that the networks mediating the neural representation of an event as it is experienced do not immediately return to their previous state and are modified in such a way that potentiates reactivation of that representation. The *synaptic plasticity and memory hypothesis* states that activity-induced synaptic plasticity is both necessary and sufficient for the information storage underlying memory,[158] and within this framework encoding implies that some form of synaptic plasticity has been initiated. However, encoding cannot in itself assure the propagation of a memory trace. Encoding creates the potential for the formation of a long-term memory.

The minimal events that constitute the neural correlates of encoding are incompletely understood. Cellular models demonstrate that functional changes in synaptic strength can occur in the absence of any structural change in dendritic spines.[159] The perpetuation of these initial changes through structural and functional remodeling represents the neural correlate of memory consolidation. The prevailing cellular model for this is LTP,[160] which describes a durable increase in synaptic transmission efficiency following a stimulation protocol. It is now recognized that LTP occurs richly throughout the hippocampus, as well as in other afferent pathways.[161] LTP can be induced by nonphysiologic high-frequency stimulation, but also by stimulation protocols that resemble physiologic activity, the most important being bursts in the theta range (4-8 Hz).[162] This is of notable relevance to memory, as synchronized hippocampal theta oscillations appear critical to successful memory behaviors.[134]

The breadth and depth of literature on the mechanisms of LTP are far too voluminous to summarize here. Nonetheless, certain principles are essential and relevant to anesthesia studies and can be stated succinctly. The induction of most forms of LTP requires activation of postsynaptic *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors,[163] followed by influx of Na^+ and Ca^{2+}. This rise in intracellular Ca^{2+} is the critical trigger for LTP. Calcium-calmodulin-dependent kinase II (CaMKII) is then activated and autophosphorylated,[164,165] leading to cytoskeletal reconfiguration.[166] Activation of several other cell-signaling cascades also contribute to LTP. The terminal expression of LTP is protein synthesis, occurring in both the soma and local dendrites, and resulting in enduring structural changes at the synapse.[167] Protein synthesis inhibitors have been demonstrated to consistently prevent sustained LTP in vitro and learning in vivo.[168]

LTP thus proceeds in two phases: early LTP (E-LTP) is independent of protein synthesis and can be sustained across an interval of minutes to a short number of hours, while late LTP (L-LTP) is dependent on intracellular signaling and protein synthesis and can be sustained across many days. The *synaptic tagging and capture hypothesis* provides a mechanistic explanation for the observation that the persistence of synaptic potentiation (and memory) is influenced by events surrounding encoding.[169] In this model, synapses activated during E-LTP become tagged via a protein synthesis-independent mechanism. This tag establishes the potential for sustained L-LTP, but for the cascade to continue the tags must capture plasticity-related proteins (PRPs) synthesized in the soma or dendrites in response to neural activity. The synaptic tagging model explains how the thousands of dendrites of a single neuron can be engaged in memory stabilization processes in various states of evolution, because the tagging and PRP capture need not occur as a singular event.

RECONSOLIDATION

A major shift the in understanding of consolidation occurred in 2000, when Nader et al. reported that an old memory for auditory fear conditioning, which would normally not be sensitive to protein inhibitors, can be made newly sensitive if it is retrieved.[170] The implication is that retrieval of a memory renders it transiently plastic, after which it restabilizes. This process is termed *reconsolidation*, and the period of plasticity is termed the *reconsolidation window*. The mechanism shares many of the LTP processes that are associated with initial consolidation, but also has features that are quite distinct at both the cellular and systems level.[171] Reconsolidation serves as a modulatory process that enables the strengthening of an existing memory, but it is also clear that it provides a window within which an existing memory is malleable and can be updated with the addition of novel information, or diminished through interruption of restabilization processes.[172] These latter properties have generated significant translational interest because of repeated demonstrations of the ability to modify or even eliminate fear memory in animals through pharmacologic and behavioral interventions that interrupt reconsolidation.[173] Indeed, the erasure of fear memory in humans can be demonstrated through performance of a behavioral extinction procedure during the reconsolidation window.[174]

PHASE SYNCHRONIZATION AND COUPLING

The neurons in assemblies and networks undergo oscillatory activation and inhibition. Phase synchronization of these oscillations supports neural communication by creating transient and dynamic associations between different functional brain regions. Phase synchronization appears to be fundamental to neural plasticity and memory,[134] and numerous studies have demonstrated that dynamics of synchrony during memory tasks can be related to both long-term[175] and working memory[176] performance. Gamma-band (30-100 Hz) synchrony is believed to support an important form of Hebbian plasticity, termed spike-timing-dependent plasticity, in the hippocampus. Both computational models and experimental data provide evidence that rapid changes in the frequency and phase of gamma rhythms modulate this form of plasticity through coordination of presynaptic spikes in assemblies of neurons, effectively classifying which assemblies are interpreted as a single event.[177]

Another property of relevance to memory coding is the coupling of gamma oscillations to the phase of slower, synchronized oscillations within the theta-band (4-8 Hz).[178] Theta oscillations, which are prominent in the hippocampus and entorhinal cortex, undergo phase resetting in response to a stimulus. The phase reset involves widely distributed regions, and is thought to serve as an efficient mechanism for the optimization of interregional communication.[179] Theta phase resetting and synchrony in the hippocampal-entorhinal system are implicated in declarative memory,[180] and in the amygdala-hippocampal system in fear-based memory.[181] Coupling between theta phase and gamma amplitude is connected to declarative memory formation,[180,182] and, in an elegant model, is proposed to form a code for representing multiple items and spatial representations in an ordered way.[183] Coupling between theta phase and gamma phase enables a more precise temporal coordination of neuronal spikes, and may code for separated representations of multiple items in working memory.[184]

Effects of Anesthetic Drugs on Declarative Memory Function in Humans

There are multiple potential pathways by which anesthetic drugs could interfere with memory and cause amnesia. Most of these cannot be directly assessed in humans, but the plausibility of candidate mechanisms can be indirectly examined by designing experiments that are informed by the characteristics of known memory processes. Studies of anesthetic effects on memory are most informative when conceptualized and designed with reference to robust methods and findings taken from the larger body of memory research.

BEHAVIORAL STUDIES OF RETROGRADE MEMORY EFFECTS

Notwithstanding some isolated case reports, systematic investigations have found no evidence that anesthetic drugs cause retrograde amnesia in humans. There is no retrograde amnesia associated with induction doses of thiopental,[185] methohexital,[185] or propofol.[186] Adult patients have normal memory for visual stimuli presented 4 minutes before administration of midazolam at doses of 2, 5, and 10 mg.[187] Similarly, memory is normal for word lists learned in the preoperative holding area or operating room immediately before induction.[188] Studies in pediatric patients have shown normal memory for pictures presented immediately before sedation with midazolam,[189] propofol,[190] and dexmedetomidine.[191] In controlled laboratory settings using human volunteers and target-controlled infusions, studies have found no impairment of memory for pictures[192] or words[193,194] presented before sedative infusions of propofol, midazolam, thiopental, or dexmedetomidine.

There is some evidence from controlled studies that anesthetic drugs may instead lead to the opposite effect, in which memory for material presented prior to drug administration is enhanced—a phenomenon termed *retrograde facilitation*. In one study using a mildly sedative dose of propofol,[195] memory for words learned immediately prior to drug administration was enhanced throughout the testing period of 24 hours. Similar effects are described for midazolam and other benzodiazepines in the psychopharmacology literature.[196] The mechanistic explanation for retrograde facilitation can be framed by an understanding of *retrograde interference*—the observation that mental exertion inhibits the consolidation of recently formed memories, with the newest memories being most vulnerable.[197] The induction of new LTP interferes with recently formed LTP and memory performance, even when the tasks are unrelated.[198] However, when the induction of new LTP is blocked by administration of a selective NMDA antagonist after learning, interference with recently formed LTP does not occur, and memory performance improves.[199,200] A parsimonious explanation for the retrograde facilitation seen with propofol and benzodiazepines is that they similarly modulate the induction of new LTP via a GABA-ergic pathway, freeing consolidation resources that enhance survival of recently formed memory.

The findings of retrograde facilitation and absence of retrograde amnesia are suggestive that the key mechanisms of GABA-ergic anesthetic amnesia, at least in humans, involve very early processes in the consolidation cascade. It is more difficult to rationalize that downstream sequences represent principal targets. Were this the case, the expected effect would be interference with ongoing consolidation of memory for events occurring in the past, creating a window of retrograde amnesia. Nonetheless, an alternate model to the induction hypothesis suggests that GABA-ergic anesthetics exert a direct effect on downstream protein transcription processes,[201] based on evidence from rodent studies.[202]

The absence of pharmacologic retrograde amnesia does not dismiss the repeated finding that, in the clinical setting, a percentage of patients will not recall the immediate preanesthetic period—an effect that increases with age.[203] Although not systematically studied, the complex noradrenergic-mediated effects of acute stress and anxiety on memory may be contributory.[204]

MATHEMATICAL MODELING OF ANESTHETIC AMNESIA

Mathematical modeling of memory decay has been used to characterize the amnestic effects of multiple intravenous anesthetic drugs,[193] which are accurately described by a two-parameter power decay function:

$$m_t = \lambda t^{-\Psi}$$

where λ reflects the initial memory strength (an index of encoding), and ψ expresses the rate of decay (an index of consolidation). The drugs are characterized by marked differences in the way they modulate the two coefficients. Propofol is an archetypal amnestic drug—it permits robust encoding of material, but the information undergoes accelerated decay because of a failure of consolidation. In contrast, dexmedetomidine archetypally causes memory impairment because of a failure of information to be strongly encoded but has little or no effect on the subsequent consolidation of memories that are encoded. The benzodiazepine midazolam behaves like propofol at lower doses—selectively causing consolidation failure while leaving encoding intact—but with increasing dose a significant encoding impairment emerges. Thiopental in contrast causes marked encoding failure but demonstrates minimal effect on consolidation. The discrepant patterns observed imply that nonspecific $GABA_A$ agonism is not per se sufficient to explain the ability of a drug to cause consolidation failure.

ANESTHETIC EFFECTS ON ATTENTION AND AROUSAL AS MODULATORS OF ENCODING

The effect of anesthetic drugs on encoding processes is related to the modulation of attention. Selective attention is governed by distinct networks mediating alertness, target orientation, and executive control[205]; involves modulation of neuronal phase synchrony across short- and long-range connections[206]; and is necessary for the successful establishment of declarative memory.[207] The dominant effect of most anesthetic drugs on attention is decreased arousal, with the notable exception being the NMDA antagonist ketamine, which has dominant effects on orienting and selection.[208] Thiopental mimics the effect of an attentional challenge task in decreasing activation in the left inferior prefrontal cortex (LIPFC), an effect that is not seen with propofol.[209] When tested at 225 minutes, arousal is predictive of memory for thiopental and dexmedetomidine, while propofol causes a significantly greater loss of memory than would be predicted by modulation of arousal alone.[194] In mathematical modeling of anesthetic amnesia,[193] arousal predicts the coefficient of encoding strength with precision for a range of sedative concentrations of dexmedetomidine, thiopental, midazolam, and propofol. In sum, arousal is predictive of subsequent memory for drugs that impair memory dominantly through causing encoding failure.

NEUROIMAGING STUDIES OF CORTICAL ENCODING PROCESSES

A limited number of functional neuroimaging studies have evaluated the effect of anesthetics on cortical regional activation during memory encoding. An early PET study investigating sedative doses of propofol using a word memory task[210] identified that activation in LIPFC—a region associated with encoding and subsequent memory for language tasks—was conserved, suggesting that propofol did not block the processes required to support successful encoding. In contrast, activation in DLPFC—a region most associated with executive control functions and cognitive control of motor planning[211]—was decreased. In a subsequent investigation using an auditory depth of processing task, activation of LIPFC was found to be decreased by sedative doses of thiopental, but again was relatively unaffected by propofol.[209] However, other studies have identified decreased activation in encoding areas. An fMRI study of sentence comprehension during light sedation with propofol found that decreased memory for sentences was related to decreased activation in the left inferior frontal gyrus (LIFG, within the LIPFC) and the middle temporal gyrus.[212] Another study using a single-word encoding task showed decreased activation in LIFG at levels of propofol sedation causing memory loss, but also found intact connectivity between LIFG and a number of frontoparietal and temporal regions associated with verbal processing and memory tasks, including the middle temporal gyrus and precuneus.[213]

Some functional neuroimaging studies have used experimental tasks similar to memory encoding tasks while evaluating sedative doses of anesthetic drugs, but have not assessed memory encoding as a primary aim; these are informative, but must be interpreted with caution. An early PET study of sedative doses of midazolam using a tone detection paradigm reported a dose-dependent activation decrease in Brodmann areas 9, 10, and 46, which overlap regions of both DLPFC and LIPFC.[214] An fMRI study of semantic word processing during propofol sedation found a dose-dependent decrease in activation of the LIFG, despite intact behavioral responses.[215] An fMRI study of low-dose dexmedetomidine reported a generalized suppression of bilateral prefrontal activation in Brodmann areas 9 and 10 during an emotional picture memory task, but encoding performance was not specifically analyzed.[216] A recent study using music stimuli found decreased activation in primary and secondary auditory processing areas at sedative doses of dexmedetomidine and midazolam, but not with propofol.[217] Other neuroimaging studies evaluating resting state networks, or passive activation in response to stimuli at nonresponsive levels of sedation, should not be viewed as memory experiments.

Neuroimaging Studies of Medial Temporal Lobe Function

Two methodologically similar studies used event-related fMRI to evaluate MTL activation during low-dose infusions of propofol and dexmedetomidine. The degree of amnesia caused by propofol can be linearly related to decreased activation in the hippocampus bilaterally,[218] an effect that behaviorally corresponded to a failure of consolidation processes. In contrast, dexmedetomidine does not reduce the overall level of hippocampal activity, but the subsequent-memory effect is attenuated, and dynamics of hippocampal activation are less predictive of subsequent memory[216]; one interpretation is that this reflects a downstream effect from weakened cortical encoding processes. An earlier study of the benzodiazepine lorazepam and the cholinergic antagonist scopolamine found decreased memory to be correlated with decreased activation in the anterior hippocampus,[219] accompanied by decreased activation in the encoding-related regions in the fusiform gyrus and inferior frontal cortex. In a largely exploratory investigation, 0.25% sevoflurane was found to reduce hippocampal activation in response to auditory and visual stimuli, but no memory performance was assessed.[220]

A few studies have evaluated anesthetic effects using electrocorticography and depth electrodes implanted in epileptic patients, but none have been dedicated to memory function. One notable study evaluated the effects of mildly sedative concentrations of propofol on hippocampal spectral coherence and power characteristics at rest.[221] The main finding was a significant increase in hippocampal-rhinal spontaneous coherence in the delta-band, but minimal changes in other bands; cortico-hippocampal coherence was not assessed.

STUDIES OF CORTICAL EVENT-RELATED POTENTIALS

A number of memory-dedicated studies have used the event-related potential (ERP)—a small but stereotypic positive and negative signal fluctuation in the EEG time-locked to a stimulus, and which can be isolated through summation over multiple (usually at least 50) identical trials. ERPs are thought to emerge not because new oscillations are induced, but because of a stimulus-induced phase resetting of ongoing oscillations.[222]

An early ERP study[223] of scopolamine, lorazepam, and diphenhydramine suggested that drug-induced effects on arousal and memory may be electrophysiologically dissociable, although memory was not assessed directly. Changes in the P1N1 and N1P2 early complexes, associated with arousal, were seen for all three drugs. However, changes in later complexes associated with memory, notably the P3 and N2P3, were seen only with scopolamine and lorazepam, and not with diphenhydramine, an antihistamine that causes sedation but not amnesia. This work is extended by a series of studies evaluating intravenous anesthetics and using memory-specific experimental paradigms. In a verbal memory task, propofol amnesia was associated with decreased P300 amplitude at the time of the encoding task.[224] In a subsequent study in which multiple drugs were carefully dosed to equivalent levels of sedation,[225] the true amnestic drugs with memory effects independent of sedation—propofol and midazolam—caused decreased amplitude in the P300 and N2P3 components, with the latter being the best predictor of subsequent memory performance. Across all drugs studied, the N2 latency was related to reaction time, a surrogate measure of sedation.

Another study examined early- and mid-latency ERPs originating from the midline parietal precuneal region (Pz), and related them to coefficients describing the extent of encoding and consolidation failure.[226] Across drugs from multiple classes and at multiple doses, consolidation failure was closely correlated with the P2 amplitude and N2 latency observed at the time of encoding. As the visual P2N2 complex is known to originate from synchronous theta oscillations,[227] one possibility is that a common mechanism underlying the effect of anesthetic drugs on consolidation involves changes in theta oscillations across a distributed cortico-hippocampal network occurring at the time of consolidation induction. Further, the P2N2 and memory decay coefficient were also closely correlated with reaction time, which can be related to interregional synchrony.[228] Unfortunately, no direct measures of cortico-hippocampal theta synchrony have yet been performed in studies of pharmacologic amnesia. Another analysis[229] examined the *old-new effect*, a robust phenomenon in the parietal ERP that distinguishes the response to initial item exposure from subsequent exposures as a marker of memory strength. Propofol and midazolam caused a significant decrease in the old-new effect at 27 seconds, even though memory performance was maintained, demonstrating again an early marker of impaired memory processes that precedes behavioral detection.

Studies using very different experimental paradigms have evaluated auditory ERPs at multiple concentrations of propofol.[230,231] Propofol causes a dose-dependent decrease in mismatch negativity and early right anterior negativity, which are elicited in response to specific music signatures and are known to relate to associative memory operations. In contrast, the P1 complex, which derives from primary auditory processing, is not affected even at deep levels of sedation.

Nonhuman Studies of Anesthetic Effects on Memory Processes and Behavior in the Medial Temporal Lobe

ANESTHETIC EFFECTS ON MEDIAL TEMPORAL LOBE PLASTICITY

GABA-ergic interneurons project within and across subregions of the hippocampus,[232] providing an abundant density of possible targets for anesthetic drugs. In an early study using tetanic stimulation of the Schaffer collateral-commissural pathway,[233] isoflurane blocked the induction of LTP, and long-term depression (LTD) by low-frequency stimulation. These effects were reversed by the addition of the $GABA_A$ receptor antagonist picrotoxin, providing strong evidence that the effect of isoflurane on LTP is GABA-ergically mediated. In a similar protocol, amnestic concentrations of sevoflurane caused a failure of LTP which was prevented by the addition of the $GABA_A$ antagonist bicuculline.[234] A recent study of sevoflurane exposure in neonatal rats found reduced spine density of apical dendrites, synaptic ultrastructure damage, elevated expression of synaptic vesicle-associated proteins, and inhibition of LTP but not LTD.[235] One study of isoflurane, in which the hippocampus was studied 24 hours following anesthetic exposure, somewhat unexpectedly found improvement in cognitive performance, accompanied by evidence of upregulation of the 2B subunit of the NMDA receptor and enhanced LTP.[236]

A series of investigations have demonstrated that propofol inhibits the induction, but not the maintenance, of LTP, and has no effect on LTD. The effect is blocked by the addition of picrotoxin, implicating a $GABA_A$ receptor-mediated mechanism.[237,238] Notably, one study found that propofol inhibited LTP only at anesthetic, and not at amnestic concentrations.[238] Propofol has also been demonstrated to inhibit a number of component subprocesses of LTP.[239-241] Propofol reduces expression of activity-related cytoskeleton-associated protein (Arc) in the hippocampus in response to inhibitory avoidance training but does not appear to reduce Arc mRNA,[202] which is notable because it suggests a post-transcriptional mechanism.

The hippocampal $GABA_A$ergic interneuron population is notable for a high density of the α_5-subunit subtype. Of known significance to memory function, the α_5-$GABA_A$ receptor regulates the induction of LTP in response to a narrow range of frequencies in the theta range.[242] These observations have driven a series of anesthesia studies using α_5-$GABA_A$-knockout mice. Etomidate blocks LTP measured in CA1 neurons in wild-type mice, but not in α_5 –/– mutants, and behaviorally the α_5 –/– mutants are resistant to the amnestic effects of etomidate, but not to its general anesthetic effects.[243] Further, the effects of etomidate on LTP and memory behaviors are reversed by the addition of L-655,708, which selectively reduces the activity of α_5-$GABA_A$ receptors.[244] The behavioral findings were later replicated with exposure to 1 MAC of isoflurane, with memory deficits observed in wild-type mice, but not in α_5 –/– mutants or in wild types receiving L-655,708.[245,246] The increase in α_5-$GABA_A$ receptors caused by etomidate and isoflurane does not return to baseline for at least 1 week.[247]

The α_5-subunit subtype is not exclusive in its association with amnesia. α_4-$GABA_A$ receptors are concentrated in the dentate gyrus and dorsal thalamus, and α_4 knockouts are resistant to the amnestic effects of isoflurane but not to its general anesthetic effects.[248] More equivocally, β_3-$GABA_A$ receptor knockout mice have been reported to be resistant to the amnestic effects of isoflurane,[249] while in a study using β_3-$GABA_A$ receptor knock-in mutants, the β_3 subtype was not significantly associated with amnesia.[250] Similar equivocacy has been found in studies of the α_1 subtype.[251,252]

The effects of anesthetics on hippocampal theta oscillations in vivo have been studied. One study used a fear-conditioning paradigm to examine amnestic concentration of isoflurane, nitrous oxide, and halothane, and reported that suppression of hippocampal-dependent contextual conditioning was proportionate to slowing of theta peak frequency.[253] Another study also demonstrated that isoflurane caused slowing of theta oscillations in the CA1 neuronal bundle without changing absolute power,[254] while in contrast the nonimmobilizer F6, which causes amnesia without sedation or a loss of motor activity, caused a loss of theta oscillatory power without slowing. Scopolamine causes amnesia at doses associated with acceleration of theta oscillations, which might otherwise be expected to improve learning.[255] However, a significant loss of absolute power is also observed. Together these findings suggest that individual anesthetics may cause amnesia through distinct forms of hippocampal theta disruption.

Human and Nonhuman Studies of Anesthetic Effects on Fear Memory Systems

THE AMYGDALA-DEPENDENT FEAR SYSTEM

The amygdala is a cluster of interconnected nuclei sitting immediately anterior to the hippocampus, with afferent and efferent projections to a wide distribution of cortical and subcortical structures. It is critical to fear learning and memory, and the systematic study of amygdala-dependent classical (Pavlovian) fear conditioning has produced much information regarding the mechanisms and circuitry.[145,146] The basolateral nucleus of the amygdala (BLA) also modulates the encoding and consolidation of memory in the hippocampus and elsewhere in response to emotion, arousal, and stress.[256] The mechanism is dependent on noradrenergic projections terminating on both α and β receptors within the BLA,[257] and can be triggered by systemic stress mediators—notably glucocorticoids[258] and epinephrine.[259] Amygdalo-hippocampal connectivity occurs via direct and indirect projections, and is dependent on theta oscillatory synchrony.[181,260] The amygdala contains a number of rational targets for GABA-ergic anesthetic drugs.

STUDIES OF ANESTHETIC EFFECTS ON FEAR SYSTEMS IN NONHUMANS

As various forms of fear conditioning represent the dominant experimental method for studying memory in animal models, almost all studies of anesthetic effects on memory offer some insight into their effects on fear systems. Beyond the central conclusion from this sizeable body of literature that GABA-ergic anesthetics in general impair the acquisition of fear memory, a subset of studies are notable for their specific focus on fear circuitry and behavior.

There is substantial evidence that anesthetic effects on fear memory are mediated by GABA-ergic mechanisms in the amygdala. Selective injection of the BLA with midazolam blocks acquisition and stress enhancement of fear memory,[261] while lesions of the BLA block anterograde amnesia for an inhibitory avoidance task in rats receiving diazepam,[262] propofol,[263] and sevoflurane.[264] Further, injection of the BLA with the selective $GABA_A$ antagonist bicuculline blocks the effect of propofol[202] and midazolam.[265]

There are certain conditions under which anesthetic drugs can enhance fear memory. When propofol or ketamine is given immediately following conditioning, retention is enhanced,[266,267] which may represent a form of retrograde facilitation as described earlier, but retention is reduced when dexmedetomidine is similarly administered. In a rat model of PTSD, propofol and ketamine administered immediately after fear learning enhances long-term fear behavior, while dexmedetomidine has a neutral effect.[267] Midazolam given during extinction training, which normally inhibits learned fear expression, blocks the effect of extinction,[261] and also blocks fear-reducing effects when given during preconditioning contextual learning.[268] When sevoflurane is administered at a very low, nonsedating dose (0.11%), fear conditioning is enhanced.[269,270]

STUDIES OF ANESTHETIC EFFECTS ON FEAR SYSTEMS IN HUMANS

Three functional neuroimaging studies have directly addressed anesthetic effects on emotional memory. A study using PET and path analysis (Fig. 9.5 *lower panel*)[271] demonstrated that the superior memorability that negatively arousing emotional items have over neutral items was unaffected by 0.1% and 0.2% sevoflurane, but lost at 0.25%, and was associated with decreased effective connectivity projecting from the right amygdala to hippocampus, and also from the right nucleus basalis to hippocampus. Further, sevoflurane modulated emotional perception such that items were rated more neutrally. An fMRI study demonstrated that sedative doses of propofol do not reduce activation of the amygdala in response to negatively arousing items, but activation of the hippocampus is markedly attenuated (see Fig. 9.5 *upper panel*) and correlates with amnesia and loss of the superior memorability of emotional material.[218] This suggests that cortical and subcortical processes serving emotional interpretative functions and afferent amygdala activation are relatively spared by amnestic levels of propofol, while efferent processes underlying amygdala-dependent modulation of hippocampal plasticity are interrupted. An fMRI study of dexmedetomidine also reported no effect on activation of the amygdala in response to negatively arousing items,[216] but in contrast to propofol, emotional items retained superior memorability, and activation in the left amygdala and hippocampus were correlated with subsequent memory. Taken together, these studies imply that propofol may have a more targeted effect on the amygdalo-hippocampal modulatory axis. One potential explanation is that amygdalo-hippocampal connectivity is markedly interrupted by a loss of theta oscillatory synchrony caused by propofol, whereas α_{2A} antagonism at the LC causes only limited downstream attenuation of noradrenergic signaling in the BLA.

CLINICAL RELEVANCE

Amygdala reactivity is of importance in a number of fear-based psychopathologies, including anxiety, phobia, panic disorder, and PTSD.[272] The neurohumoral stress response to surgery and critical illness can cause complex changes in levels of catecholamines, glucocorticoids, and other potential promoters of plasticity in amygdala-dependent fear processes, occurring within a context that frequently contains emotional stressors. It is unclear under what specific conditions elevated (or depressed) levels of these mediators might contribute to long-term changes in neuropsychological functioning, although multiple studies in the critical care setting relate stress exposure, and exogenous administration of catecholamines, to negative long-term outcomes.[273] In a broad surgical population, the incidence of PTSD-complex symptoms related to surgery was reported to be 16%[5]—similar to that observed in victims of violence. The effect—or lack of effect—of anesthetic drugs on plasticity processes in the perioperative or critical care setting thus has a theoretical potential to impact long-term psychological sequelae, both positively and negatively. However, there is presently insufficient human data to inform specific recommendations.

Anesthetic Effects on Implicit Memory Function

Implicit (nondeclarative) memory processes do not axiomatically require a conscious substrate, and are not dependent on classic hippocampal plasticity. Therefore the effect of anesthetic drugs on implicit memory functions may have important distinction from those on declarative memory, and accordingly a number of investigations have sought evidence for implicit processing in unconscious subjects. Many studies have used auditory adaptations of the *word stem completion task*, or the more rigorous *process dissociation procedure*, in which subjects are asked to exclude items that have been presented; declarative memory will drive avoidance of the target word, while implicit memory will lead to a familiarity response favoring the target word.

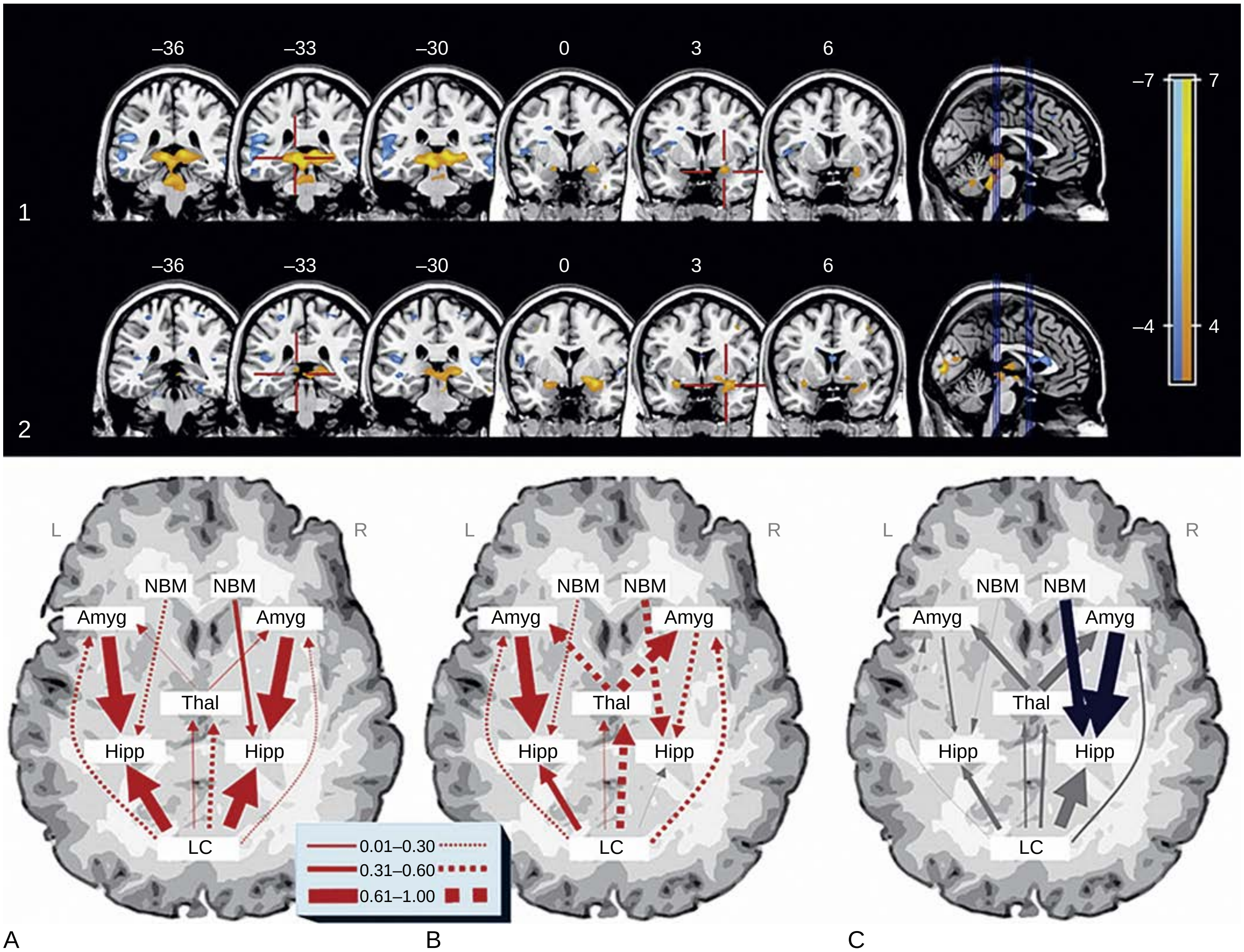


Fig. 9.5 Anesthetic effects on emotional memory systems. (*upper panel*) Functional magnetic resonance imaging scans showing the contrast in response to negatively arousing items relative to neutral items, with coronal slices through the amygdala (0, 3, 6) and hippocampus (–30, –33, –36). The control condition *(top row)* shows enhanced activation of both the amygdala and hippocampus in response to the added emotional information, while in subjects receiving propofol *(bottom row)* there is enhanced activation of the amygdala, but not of the hippocampus. (*lower panel*) Path diagrams of connectivity at rest, with positive influences of one region onto another shown as solid lines, negative influences shown as dotted lines, and width representing magnitude. In the control condition *(A)* there is a significant positive influence of the amygdala onto the hippocampus bilaterally. Administration of sevoflurane 0.25% *(B)* blocks emotional modulation behaviorally, and removes the positive influence of the right amygdala and nucleus basalis of Meynert on the hippocampus. Numerical differences in path weight *(C)* show these two paths to significantly contribute to the network model more in the control than sevoflurane state. *Amyg,* Amygdala; *Hipp,* hippocampus; *LC,* locus ceruleus; *NBM,* nucleus basalis of Meynert; *Thal,* thalamus. ([A] Modified from Pryor KO, Root JC, Mehta M, et al. Effect of propofol on the medial temporal lobe emotional memory system: a functional magnetic resonance imaging study in human subjects. *Br J Anaesth.* 2015;115[suppl 1]:i104–i113, Figure 3; [B] Modified from Alkire MT, Gruver R, Miller J, et al. Neuroimaging analysis of an anesthetic gas that blocks human emotional memory. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.* 2008;105[5]:1722–1727, Figure 5.)

Two early studies in patients undergoing coronary artery[274] and gynecologic[275] procedures showed evidence of implicit learning using word stem completion tasks. Another early study demonstrating implicit recall in cardiac surgery patients correlated performance with preservation of the midlatency auditory evoked potential, and most strongly with the early cortical Pa and Na complexes.[276] Later studies demonstrated implicit memory in both trauma patients[277] and patients undergoing an emergency cesarean section[278] using the process dissociation procedure, and further demonstrated that the degree of processing is related to the bispectral index. However, multiple more recent studies using similar procedures have either failed to show significant implicit priming effects or have been equivocal.[279-281] Synthesis of these disparate results into a cohesive conclusion is difficult. Although differences in patient populations and anesthetic regimens may be of relevance, methodological challenges may have driven both false positive and false negative results. Investigations evaluating implicit memory processes in pediatric patients under anesthesia have also offered conflicting results. One study reported an increased ability to distinguish a primed animal sound from white noise,[282] but other investigations found no evidence of priming.[283–285]

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Sandin RH, et al. *Lancet*. 2000;355:707.
2. Sebel PS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:833.
3. Mashour GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:717.
4. Leslie K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:823.
5. Whitlock EL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(1):87.
6. Sanders RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(2):214.
7. Mashour GA, Avidan MS. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(suppl 1):i20.
8. Sanders RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:946.
9. Noreika V, et al. *Brain Cogn*. 2011;77:327.
10. Brown EN, et al. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2011;34:601.
11. Lydic R, Biebuyck JF. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:506.
12. Mashour GA, Hudetz AG. *Front Neural Circuits*. 2017;11:44.
13. Franks NP. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9:370.
14. Scammell TE, et al. *Neuron*. 2017;93(4):747.
15. Jones BE. *Handb Clin Neurol*. 2011;98:131.
16. Aston-Jones G, Bloom FE. *J Neurosci*. 1981;1:876.
17. Takahashi K, et al. *Neurosci*. 2010;169:1115.
18. Sirois JE, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2000;20:6347.
19. Mason ST, Angel A. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1983;91:29.
20. Matsumoto K, et al. *Brain Res*. 1997;754:325.
21. Pillay S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:733.
22. Vazey EM, Aston-Jones G. *Proc Natl Acad Sci. U S A*. 2014;111(10): 3859.
23. Lu J, et al. *J Comp Neurol*. 2008;508:648.
24. Kushikata T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(6):924.
25. Correa-Sales C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:948.
26. Nelson LE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:428.
27. Hu FY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:1006.
28. Zhang Z, et al. *Nat Neurosci*. 2015;18(4):553.
29. Woolf NJ, Butcher LL. *Behav Brain Res*. 2011;221:488.
30. Steriade M. *Front Biosci*. 2003;8:d878.
31. Sleigh JW, et al. *Trends in anaesthesia and critical care*. 2011;1:263.
32. Van Dort CJ, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2015;112(2):584.
33. Keifer JC, et al. *Neuroreport*. 1994;5:577.
34. Keifer JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:945.
35. Kohlmeier KA, et al. *Neurosci*. 2010;171:812.
36. Vanini G, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2011;31:2649.
37. Flint RR, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2010;30:12301.
38. Vanini G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:978.
39. Vanini G, et al. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2014;40(1):2264.
40. Abulafia R, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2009;29:7053.
41. Minert A, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2017;37(38):9320.
42. Dahan L, et al. *Neuropsychopharmacol*. 2007;32:1232.
43. Ueno T, et al. *Nat Neurosci*. 2012;15:1516.
44. Eban-Rothschild A, et al. *Nat Neurosci*. 2016;19(10):1356.
45. Solt K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:791.
46. Chemali JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:998.
47. Solt K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(2):311.
48. Taylor NE, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2016.
49. von Economo C. *J Nerv Ment Dis*. 1930;71:248.
50. Gaus SE, et al. *Neurosci*. 2002;115:285.
51. Sherin JE, et al. *Sci*. 1996;271:216.
52. Szymusiak R, et al. *Brain Res*. 1998;803:178.
53. Gong H, et al. *J Physiol*. 2004;556:935.
54. Saper CB, et al. *Nature*. 2005;437:1257.
55. Nelson LE, et al. *Nat Neurosci*. 2002;5:979.
56. Eikermann M, et al. *Brain Res*. 2011;1426:30.
57. Moore JT, et al. *Curr Biol*. 2012;22:2008.
58. McCarren HS, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2014;34(49):16385.
59. Mileykovskiy BY, et al. *Neuron*. 2005;46:787.
60. Lee MG, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2005;25:6716.
61. Nishino S, et al. *Lancet*. 2000;355:39.
62. Lin L, et al. *Cell*. 1999;98:365.
63. Mesa A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1194.
64. Yasuda Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1663.
65. Zecharia AY, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2009;29:2177.
66. Tose R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:491.
67. Kushikata T, et al. *Neurosci*. 2003;121:855.
68. Dong H, et al. *Neuropeptides*. 2009;43:179.
69. Dong HL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1023.
70. Gamou S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:395.
71. Kelz MB, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:1309.
72. Friedman EB, et al. *PLoS One*. 2010;5:e11903.
73. Gompf H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1001.
74. Zhang LN, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:789.
75. Zhang LN, et al. *Neuropeptides*. 2016;58:7.
76. Chu M, et al. *Neurosci Res*. 2004;49:417.
77. Liu YW, et al. *J Physiol*. 2010;588:4103.
78. Strecker RE, et al. *Neurosci*. 2002;113:663.
79. Mammoto T, et al. *J Neurochem*. 1997;69:406.
80. Luo T, Leung LS. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:725.
81. Zecharia AY, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32:13062.
82. Alkire MT, et al. *Conscious Cogn*. 2000;9(3):370.
83. Alkire MT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:549.
84. Alkire MT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:701.
85. Fiset P, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1999;19:5506.
86. Langsjo JW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:258.
87. Liu X, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(1):59.
88. Mashour GA, Alkire MT. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(1):13.
89. Alkire MT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:264.
90. Alkire MT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:766.
91. Schiff ND, et al. *Nature*. 2007;448:600.
92. Langsjo JW, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32:4935.
93. Ward LM. *Conscious Cogn*. 2011;20:464.
94. Velly LJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:202.
95. Verdonck O, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2014;61(3):254.
96. Baker R, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2014;34(40):13326.
97. Reed SJ, Plourde G. *PLoS ONE*. 2015;10(4):e0123287.
98. Ching S, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:22665.
99. Supp GG, et al. *Curr Biol*. 2011;21:1988.
100. Flores FJ, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2017;114(32):E6660.
101. Tononi G. *BMC Neurosci*. 2004;5:42.
102. Boveroux P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:1038.
103. Palanca BJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(2):346.
104. Ranft A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(5):861.
105. Mhuircheartaigh RN, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2010;30:9095.
106. Liang Z, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32:10183.
107. Schroter MS, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32:12832.
108. Bianciardi M, et al. *Neuroimage*. 2017.
109. Song AH, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2017;37(29):6938.
110. Kaisti KK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1358.
111. Liu X, et al. *Brain Connect*. 2017;7(6):373.
112. Bonhomme V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(5):873.
113. Friston KJ. *Brain Connect*. 2011;1:13.
114. Lee U, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(6):1264.
115. Jordan D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119(5):1031.
116. Moon JY, et al. *PLoS Comput Biol*. 2015;11(4):e1004225.
117. Vlisides PE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(1):58.
118. Hudetz AG, Mashour GA. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(5):1228.
119. Ferrarelli F, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:2681.
120. Massimini M, et al. *Sci*. 2005;309:2228.
121. Casali AG, et al. *Sci Transl Med*. 2013;5(198). 198ra105.
122. Murphy M, et al. *Sleep*. 2011;34:283.
123. Lewis LD, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109:E3377.
124. Hudetz AG, et al. *Brain Connect*. 2015;5(1):10.
125. Lee H, et al. *Hum Brain Mapp*. 2017;10.
126. Solovey G, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2015;35(30):10866.
127. Ishizawa Y, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2016;36(29):7718.
128. Huang Z, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2018.
129. Barttfeld P, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2015;112(3):887.
130. Hudson AE, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2014;111(25):9283.
131. Scoville WB, Milner B. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1957;20(1):11.
132. Hebb DO. *The Organization of Behavior*. New York: Wiley; 1949.
133. Bliss TV, Lomo T. *J Physiol*. 1973;232(2):331.
134. Fell J, Axmacher N. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2011;12(2):105.
135. Binder JR, et al. *Cereb Cortex*. 2009;19(12):2767.
136. Polyn SM, et al. *Science*. 2005;310(5756):1963.
137. Simons JS, Spiers HJ. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2003;4:637.
138. Cabeza R, et al. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9:613.
139. Raichle ME. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2015;38:433.
140. Wixted JT, et al. *Trends Cogn Sci*. 2011;15:210.
141. Eichenbaum H, et al. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2007;30:123.
142. Tulving E, Schacter DL. *Sci*. 1990;247:301.
143. Cave CB, Squire LR. *J Exp Psychol Learn Mem Cogn*. 1992;18:509.
144. Henson RN. *Prog Neurobiol*. 2003;70(1):53.
145. Janak PH, Tye KM. *Nature*. 2015;517(7534):284.
146. Duvarci S, Pare D. *Neuron*. 2014;82(5):966.
147. Squire LR, Zola-Morgan S. *Trends Neurosci*. 1988;11:170.
148. Baddeley A. *Annu Rev Psychol*. 2012;63:1.

149. Baddeley A, Hitch GJ. Working memory. In: Bower GA, ed. *Recent advances in learning and motivation*. New York: Academic; 1974.
150. Baddeley A. *Trends Cogn Sci*. 2000;4:417.
151. Shrager Y, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2008;28:4818.
152. Jeneson A, Squire LR. *Learn Mem*. 2012;19(1):15.
153. Ma WJ, et al. *Nat Neurosci*. 2014;17(3):347.
154. Ruchkin DS, et al. *Behav Brain*. 2003;26:709. discussion 28.
155. Craik FIM, et al. *J Verbal Learn Verbal Behav*. 1972;11(671):1972.
156. Kitamura T, et al. *Sci*. 2017;356(6333):73.
157. Dudai Y, et al. *Neuron*. 2015;88(1):20.
158. Neves G, et al. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9(1):65.
159. Chater TE, Goda Y. *Front Cell Neurosci*. 2014;8:401.
160. Bliss TV, Collingridge GL. *Nature*. 1993;361(6407):31.
161. Lynch MA. *Physiological reviews*. 2004;84:87.
162. Larson J, et al. *Brain Res*. 1986;368:347.
163. Morris RG, et al. *Nature*. 1986;319:774.
164. Giese KP, et al. *Sci*. 1998;279:870.
165. Malenka RC, et al. *Nature*. 1989;340:554.
166. Cingolani LA, Goda Y. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9:344.
167. Costa-Mattioli M, et al. *Neuron*. 2009;61(1):10.
168. Hernandez PJ, Abel T. *Neurobiol Learn Mem*. 2008;89(3):293.
169. Rogerson T, et al. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2014;15(3):157.
170. Nader K, et al. *Nature*. 2000;406:722.
171. Tronson NC, Taylor JR. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2007;8(4):262.
172. Alberini CM. *Front Behav Neurosci*. 2011;5(12).
173. Monfils MH, et al. *Sci*. 2009;324(5929):951.
174. Agren T, et al. *Sci*. 2012;337(6101):1550.
175. Benchenane K, et al. *Neuron*. 2010;66:921.
176. Spellman T, et al. *Nature*. 2015;522(7556):309.
177. Jutras MJ, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2009;29(40):12521.
178. Canolty RT, et al. *Science*. 2006;313(5793):1626.
179. Mercier MR, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2015;35(22):8546.
180. Burke JF, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2013;33(1):292.
181. Seidenbecher T, et al. *Sci*. 2003;301:846.
182. Igarashi KM, et al. *Nature*. 2014;510(7503):143.
183. Lisman JE, Jensen O. *Neuron*. 2013;77(6):1002.
184. Sauseng P, et al. *Curr Biol*. 2009;19(21):1846.
185. Dundee JW, Pandit SK. *Br J Clin Pract*. 1972;26:164.
186. Hashimoto K, et al. *Masui*. 2007;56:920.
187. Bulach R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:300.
188. Ghoneim MM, Block RI. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51:1054.
189. Twersky RS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:51.
190. Rich JB, et al. *J Clin Exp Neuropsychol*. 1999;21:535.
191. Mason KP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(2):254.
192. Pryor KO, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:348.
193. Pryor KO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:313.
194. Veselis RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:831.
195. Pryor KO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:BOC09.
196. Reder LM, et al. *Psychon Bull Rev*. 2007;14:261.
197. Wixted JT. *Annu Rev Psychol*. 2004;55:235.
198. Moser EI, et al. *Sci*. 1998;281:2038.
199. Shinohara K, Hata T. *Neurobiol Learn Mem*. 2018;147:1.
200. Villarreal DM, et al. *Nat Neurosci*. 2002;5:48.
201. Alkire MT, Guzowski JF. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:768.
202. Ren Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(5):775.
203. Chen Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(4):1158.
204. Hurlemann R, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2005;25(27):6343.
205. Posner MI, Rothbart MK. *Annu Rev Psychol*. 2007;58:1.
206. Womelsdorf T, Fries P. *Curr Opin Neurobiol*. 2007;17(2):154.
207. Muzzio IA, et al. *J Physiol*. 2009;587(12):2837.
208. Musso F, et al. *Neuroimage*. 2011;58(2):508.
209. Veselis RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:213.
210. Veselis RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:329.
211. Cieslik EC, et al. *Cereb Cortex*. 2013;23(11):2677.
212. Davis MH, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104(41):16032.
213. Liu X, et al. *Hum Brain Mapp*. 2012;33(10):2487.
214. Reinsel RA, et al. *Int J Neuropsychopharmacol*. 2000;3(2):117.
215. Adapa RM, et al. *Human brain mapping*. 2014;35(7):2935.
216. Hayama HR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(5):981.
217. Frolich MA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(5):1603.
218. Pryor KO, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(suppl 1):i104.
219. Sperling R, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99:455.
220. Ramani R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:648.
221. Fell J, et al. *Biol Cybern*. 2005;92:92.
222. Sauseng P, et al. *Neurosci*. 2007;146:1435.
223. Curran HV, et al. *Psychopharmacol (Berl)*. 1998;135:27.
224. Reinsel RA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:674.
225. Veselis RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:295.
226. Pryor KO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(2):313.
227. Freunberger R, et al. *Neurosci Lett*. 2007;426:181.
228. Ghuman AS, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:8405.
229. Veselis RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(2):295.
230. Heinke W, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(3):617.
231. Simpson TP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(3):382.
232. Jinno S, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2007;27:8790.
233. Simon W, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:1058.
234. Ishizeki J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:447.
235. Xiao H, et al. *Int J Dev Neurosci*. 2016;48:38.
236. Rammes G, et al. *Neuropharmacol*. 2009;56(3):626.
237. Nagashima K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:318.
238. Takamatsu I, et al. *Neurosci Lett*. 2005;389:129.
239. Fibuch EE, Wang JQ. *Neurosci Bull*. 2007;23:119.
240. Kozinn J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(6):1182.
241. Gao J, et al. *Neurosci Lett*. 2014;560:62.
242. Martin LJ, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2010;30(15):5269.
243. Cheng VY, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2006;26(14):3713.
244. Martin LJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1025.
245. Saab BJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:1061.
246. Zurek AA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:845.
247. Zurek AA, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 2014;124(12):5437.
248. Rau V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1816.
249. Rau V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:500.
250. Liao M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:412. table of contents.
251. Sonner JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:107.
252. Sonner JM, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2005;68:61.
253. Perouansky M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:1299.
254. Perouansky M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1168.
255. Markowska AL, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1995;15:2063.
256. Roozendaal B, et al. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2009;10:423.
257. Buffalari DM, Grace AA. *J Neurosci*. 2007;27(45):12358.
258. Roozendaal B, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(17):6741.
259. Chen CC, Williams CL. *Frontiers in behavioral Neurosci*. 2012; 6:35.
260. Tovote P, et al. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2015;16(6):317.
261. Hart G, et al. *Learn Mem*. 2010;17(4):210.
262. Tomaz C, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89:3615.
263. Alkire MT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:708.
264. Alkire MT, Nathan SV. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:754.
265. Dickinson-Anson H, McGaugh JL. *Brain Res*. 1997;752(1-2):197.
266. Hauer D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(6):1380.
267. Morena M, et al. *Behav Brain Res*. 2017;329:215.
268. Pain L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(4):614.
269. Zhu QL, et al. *Brain Res*. 2018;1678:174.
270. Alkire MT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(6):1167.
271. Alkire MT, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:1722.
272. Mahan AL, Ressler KJ. *Trends Neurosci*. 2012;35(1):24.
273. Schelling G, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31:1971.
274. Bethune DW, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:197.
275. Block RI, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:170.
276. Schwender D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:493.
277. Lubke GH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:670.
278. Lubke GH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1029.
279. Munte S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:588.
280. Hadzidiakos D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:293.
281. Lequeux PY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(5):1174.
282. Phelan L, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2009;37:60.
283. Lopez U, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:379.
284. Pham X, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:1097.
285. Bonett E, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(3):290.
286. Bartsch T, Butler C. *Nat Rev Neurol*. 2013;9(2):86.

References

1. Sandin RH, Enlund G, Samuelsson P, Lennmarken C. Awareness during anaesthesia: a prospective case study. *Lancet*. 2000;355(9205):707–711.
2. Sebel PS, Bowdle TA, Ghoneim MM, et al. The incidence of awareness during anesthesia: a multicenter United States study. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(3):833–839; table of contents.
3. Mashour GA, Shanks A, Tremper KK, et al. Prevention of intraoperative awareness with explicit recall in an unselected surgical population: a randomized comparative effectiveness trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(4):717–725.
4. Leslie K, Chan MT, Myles PS, Forbes A, McCulloch TJ. Posttraumatic stress disorder in aware patients from the B-aware trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(3):823–828.
5. Whitlock EL, Rodebaugh TL, Hassett AL, et al. Psychological sequelae of surgery in a prospective cohort of patients from three intraoperative awareness prevention trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(1):87–95.
6. Sanders RD, Gaskell A, Raz A, et al. Incidence of connected consciousness after tracheal intubation: a prospective, international, multicenter cohort study of the isolated forearm technique. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(2):214–222.
7. Mashour GA, Avidan MS. Intraoperative awareness: controversies and non-controversies. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(suppl 1):i20–i26.
8. Sanders RD, Tononi G, Laureys S, Sleigh JW. Unresponsiveness not equal unconsciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(4):946–959.
9. Noreika V, Jylhankangas L, Moro L, et al. Consciousness lost and found: subjective experiences in an unresponsive state. *Brain Cogn*. 2011;77(3):327–334.
10. Brown EN, Purdon PL, Van Dort CJ. General anesthesia and altered states of arousal: a systems Neurosci analysis. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2011;34:601–628.
11. Lydic R, Biebuyck JF. Sleep neurobiology: relevance for mechanistic studies of anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72(5):506–508.
12. Mashour GA, Hudetz AG. Bottom-up and top-down mechanisms of general anesthetics modulate different dimensions of consciousness. *Front Neural Circuits*. 2017;11:44.
13. Franks NP. General anaesthesia: from molecular targets to neuronal pathways of sleep and arousal. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9(5):370–386.
14. Scammell TE, Arrigoni E, Lipton JO. Neural circuitry of wakefulness and sleep. *Neuron*. 2017;93(4):747–765.
15. Jones BE. Neurobiology of waking and sleeping. *Handb Clin Neurol*. 2011;98:131–149.
16. Aston-Jones G, Bloom FE. Activity of norepinephrine-containing locus coeruleus neurons in behaving rats anticipates fluctuations in the sleep-waking cycle. *J Neurosci*. 1981;1(8):876–886.
17. Takahashi K, Kayama Y, Lin JS, Sakai K. Locus coeruleus neuronal activity during the sleep-waking cycle in mice. *Neuroscience*. 2010;169(3):1115–1126.
18. Sirois JE, Lei Q, Talley EM, Lynch C, Bayliss DA. The TASK-1 two-pore domain K+ channel is a molecular substrate for neuronal effects of inhalation anesthetics. *J Neurosci*. 2000;20(17):6347–6354.
19. Mason ST, Angel A. Anaesthesia: the role of adrenergic mechanisms. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1983;91(1):29–39.
20. Matsumoto K, Kohno SI, Ojima K, Watanabe H. Flumazenil but not FG7142 reverses the decrease in pentobarbital sleep caused by activation of central noradrenergic systems in mice. *Brain Res*. 1997;754(1-2):325–328.
21. Pillay S, Vizuete JA, McCallum JB, Hudetz AG. Norepinephrine infusion into nucleus basalis elicits microarousal in desflurane-anesthetized rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115(4):733–742.
22. Vazey EM, Aston-Jones G. Designer receptor manipulations reveal a role of the locus coeruleus noradrenergic system in isoflurane general anesthesia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2014;111(10):3859–3864.
23. Lu J, Nelson LE, Franks N, Maze M, Chamberlin NL, Saper CB. Role of endogenous sleep-wake and analgesic systems in anesthesia. *J Comp Neurol*. 2008;508(4):648–662.
24. Kushikata T, Yoshida H, Kudo M, Kudo T, Kudo T, Hirota K. Role of coerulean noradrenergic neurones in general anaesthesia in rats. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(6):924–929.
25. Correa-Sales C, Rabin BC, Maze M. A hypnotic response to dexmedetomidine, an alpha 2 agonist, is mediated in the locus coeruleus in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(6):948–952.
26. Nelson LE, Lu J, Guo T, Saper CB, Franks NP, Maze M. The alpha2-adrenoceptor agonist dexmedetomidine converges on an endogenous sleep-promoting pathway to exert its sedative effects. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(2):428–436.
27. Hu FY, Hanna GM, Han W, et al. Hypnotic hypersensitivity to volatile anesthetics and dexmedetomidine in dopamine beta-hydroxylase knockout mice. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(5):1006–1017.
28. Zhang Z, Ferretti V, Guntan I, et al. Neuronal ensembles sufficient for recovery sleep and the sedative actions of alpha2 adrenergic agonists. *Nat Neurosci*. 2015;18(4):553–561.
29. Woolf NJ, Butcher LL. Cholinergic systems mediate action from movement to higher consciousness. *Behav Brain Res*. 2011;221(2):488–498.
30. Steriade M. The corticothalamic system in sleep. *Front Biosci*. 2003;8:d878–d899.
31. Sleigh JW, Scheib CM, Sanders RD. General anaesthesia and electroencephalographic spindles. *Trends Anaesth Crit Care*. 2011;1(5):263–269.
32. Van Dort CJ, Zachs DP, Kenny JD, et al. Optogenetic activation of cholinergic neurons in the PPT or LDT induces REM sleep. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2015;112(2):584–589.
33. Keifer JC, Baghdoyan HA, Becker L, Lydic R. Halothane decreases pontine acetylcholine release and increases EEG spindles. *Neuroreport*. 1994;5(5):577–580.
34. Keifer JC, Baghdoyan HA, Lydic R. Pontine cholinergic mechanisms modulate the cortical electroencephalographic spindles of halothane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(4):945–954.
35. Kohlmeier KA, Kristiansen U. GABAergic actions on cholinergic laterodorsal tegmental neurons: implications for control of behavioral state. *Neuroscience*. 2010;171(3):812–829.
36. Vanini G, Wathen BL, Lydic R, Baghdoyan HA. Endogenous GABA levels in the pontine reticular formation are greater during wakefulness than during rapid eye movement sleep. *J Neurosci*. 2011;31(7):2649–2656.
37. Flint RR, Chang T, Lydic R, Baghdoyan HA. GABA(A) receptors in the pontine reticular formation of C57BL/6J mouse modulate neurochemical, electrographic, and behavioral phenotypes of wakefulness. *J Neurosci*. 2010;30(37):12301–12309.
38. Vanini G, Watson CJ, Lydic R, Baghdoyan HA. Gamma-aminobutyric acid-mediated neurotransmission in the pontine reticular formation modulates hypnosis, immobility, and breathing during isoflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(6):978–988.
39. Vanini G, Nemanis K, Baghdoyan HA, Lydic R. GABAergic transmission in rat pontine reticular formation regulates the induction phase of anesthesia and modulates hyperalgesia caused by sleep deprivation. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2014;40(1):2264–2273.
40. Abulafia R, Zalkind V, Devor M. Cerebral activity during the anesthesia-like state induced by mesopontine microinjection of pentobarbital. *J Neurosci*. 2009;29(21):7053–7064.
41. Minert A, Yatziv SL, Devor M. Location of the mesopontine neurons responsible for maintenance of anesthetic loss of consciousness. *J Neurosci*. 2017;37(38):9320–9331.
42. Dahan L, Astier B, Vautrelle N, Urbain N, Kocsis B, Chouvet G. Prominent burst firing of dopaminergic neurons in the ventral tegmental area during paradoxical sleep. *Neuropsychopharmacology*. 2007;32(6):1232–1241.
43. Ueno T, Tomita J, Tanimoto H, et al. Identification of a dopamine pathway that regulates sleep and arousal in Drosophila. *Nat Neurosci*. 2012;15(11):1516–1523.
44. Eban-Rothschild A, Rothschild G, Giardino WJ, Jones JR, de Lecea L. VTA dopaminergic neurons regulate ethologically relevant sleep-wake behaviors. *Nat Neurosci*. 2016;19(10):1356–1366.
45. Solt K, Cotten JF, Cimenser A, Wong KF, Chemali JJ, Brown EN. Methylphenidate actively induces emergence from general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115(4):791–803.
46. Chemali JJ, Van Dort CJ, Brown EN, Solt K. Active emergence from propofol general anesthesia is induced by methylphenidate. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(5):998–1005.
47. Solt K, Van Dort CJ, Chemali JJ, Taylor NE, Kenny JD, Brown EN. Electrical stimulation of the ventral tegmental area induces reanimation from general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(2):311–319.
48. Taylor NE, Van Dort CJ, Kenny JD, et al. Optogenetic activation of dopamine neurons in the ventral tegmental area induces reanimation from general anesthesia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2016.
49. von Economo C. Sleep as a problem of localization. *J Nerv Ment Dis*. 1930;71(3):249–259.

50. Gaus SE, Strecker RE, Tate BA, Parker RA, Saper CB. Ventrolateral preoptic nucleus contains sleep-active, galaninergic neurons in multiple mammalian species. *Neuroscience*. 2002;115(1):285–294.
51. Sherin JE, Shiromani PJ, McCarley RW, Saper CB. Activation of ventrolateral preoptic neurons during sleep. *Science*. 1996;271(5246):216–219.
52. Szymusiak R, Alam N, Steininger TL, McGinty D. Sleep-waking discharge patterns of ventrolateral preoptic/anterior hypothalamic neurons in rats. *Brain Res*. 1998;803(1-2):178–188.
53. Gong H, McGinty D, Guzman-Marin R, Chew KT, Stewart D, Szymusiak R. Activation of c-fos in GABAergic neurones in the preoptic area during sleep and in response to sleep deprivation. *J Physiol*. 2004;556(Pt 3):935–946.
54. Saper CB, Scammell TE, Lu J. Hypothalamic regulation of sleep and circadian rhythms. *Nature*. 2005;437(7063):1257–1263.
55. Nelson LE, Guo TZ, Lu J, Saper CB, Franks NP, Maze M. The sedative component of anesthesia is mediated by GABA(A) receptors in an endogenous sleep pathway. *Nat Neurosci*. 2002;5(10):979–984.
56. Eikermann M, Vetrivelan R, Grosse-Sundrup M, et al. The ventrolateral preoptic nucleus is not required for isoflurane general anesthesia. *Brain Res*. 2011;1426:30–37.
57. Moore JT, Chen J, Han B, et al. Direct activation of sleep-promoting VLPO neurons by volatile anesthetics contributes to anesthetic hypnosis. *Curr Biol*. 2012;22(21):2008–2016.
58. McCarren HS, Chalifoux MR, Han B, et al. alpha2-Adrenergic stimulation of the ventrolateral preoptic nucleus destabilizes the anesthetic state. *J Neurosci*. 2014;34(49):16385–16396.
59. Mileykovskiy BY, Kiyashchenko LI, Siegel JM. Behavioral correlates of activity in identified hypocretin/orexin neurons. *Neuron*. 2005;46(5):787–798.
60. Lee MG, Hassani OK, Jones BE. Discharge of identified orexin/hypocretin neurons across the sleep-waking cycle. *J Neurosci*. 2005;25(28):6716–6720.
61. Nishino S, Ripley B, Overeem S, Lammers GJ, Mignot E. Hypocretin (orexin) deficiency in human narcolepsy. *Lancet*. 2000;355(9197):39–40.
62. Lin L, Faraco J, Li R, et al. The sleep disorder canine narcolepsy is caused by a mutation in the hypocretin (orexin) receptor 2 gene. *Cell*. 1999;98(3):365–376.
63. Mesa A, Diaz AP, Frosth M. Narcolepsy and anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(4):1194–1196.
64. Yasuda Y, Takeda A, Fukuda S, et al. Orexin a elicits arousal electroencephalography without sympathetic cardiovascular activation in isoflurane-anesthetized rats. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(6):1663–1666.
65. Zecharia AY, Nelson LE, Gent TC, et al. The involvement of hypothalamic sleep pathways in general anesthesia: testing the hypothesis using the GABAA receptor beta3N265M knock-in mouse. *J Neurosci*. 2009;29(7):2177–2187.
66. Tose R, Kushikata T, Yoshida H, et al. Orexin A decreases ketamine-induced anesthesia time in the rat: the relevance to brain noradrenergic neuronal activity. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(2):491–495.
67. Kushikata T, Hirota K, Yoshida H, et al. Orexinergic neurons and barbiturate anesthesia. *Neuroscience*. 2003;121(4):855–863.
68. Dong H, Niu J, Su B, et al. Activation of orexin signal in basal forebrain facilitates the emergence from sevoflurane anesthesia in rat. *Neuropeptides*. 2009;43(3):179–185.
69. Dong HL, Fukuda S, Murata E, Zhu Z, Higuchi T. Orexins increase cortical acetylcholine release and electroencephalographic activation through orexin-1 receptor in the rat basal forebrain during isoflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(5):1023–1032.
70. Gamou S, Fukuda S, Ogura M, Sakamoto H, Morita S. Microinjection of propofol into the perifornical area induces sedation with decreasing cortical acetylcholine release in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(2):395–402.
71. Kelz MB, Sun Y, Chen J, et al. An essential role for orexins in emergence from general anesthesia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(4):1309–1314.
72. Friedman EB, Sun Y, Moore JT, et al. A conserved behavioral state barrier impedes transitions between anesthetic-induced unconsciousness and wakefulness: evidence for neural inertia. *PLoS ONE*. 2010;5(7):e11903.
73. Gompf H, Chen J, Sun Y, Yanagisawa M, Aston-Jones G, Kelz MB. Halothane-induced hypnosis is not accompanied by inactivation of orexinergic output in rodents. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(5):1001–1009.
74. Zhang LN, Li ZJ, Tong L, et al. Orexin-a facilitates emergence from propofol anesthesia in the rat. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(4):789–796.
75. Zhang LN, Yang C, Ouyang PR, et al. Orexin-A facilitates emergence of the rat from isoflurane anesthesia via mediation of the basal forebrain. *Neuropeptides*. 2016;58:7–14.
76. Chu M, Huang ZL, Qu WM, Eguchi N, Yao MH, Urade Y. Extracellular histamine level in the frontal cortex is positively correlated with the amount of wakefulness in rats. *Neurosci Res*. 2004;49(4):417–420.
77. Liu YW, Li J, Ye JH. Histamine regulates activities of neurons in the ventrolateral preoptic nucleus. *J Physiol*. 2010;588(Pt 21):4103–4116.
78. Strecker RE, Nalwalk J, Dauphin LJ, et al. Extracellular histamine levels in the feline preoptic/anterior hypothalamic area during natural sleep-wakefulness and prolonged wakefulness: an in vivo microdialysis study. *Neuroscience*. 2002;113(3):663–670.
79. Mammoto T, Yamamoto Y, Kagawa K, et al. Interactions between neuronal histamine and halothane anesthesia in rats. *J Neurochem*. 1997;69(1):406–411.
80. Luo T, Leung LS. Basal forebrain histaminergic transmission modulates electroencephalographic activity and emergence from isoflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(4):725–733.
81. Zecharia AY, Yu X, Gotz T, et al. GABAergic inhibition of histaminergic neurons regulates active waking but not the sleep-wake switch or propofol-induced loss of consciousness. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32(38):13062–13075.
82. Alkire MT, Haier RJ, Fallon JH. Toward a unified theory of narcosis: brain imaging evidence for a thalamocortical switch as the neurophysiologic basis of anesthetic-induced unconsciousness. *Conscious Cogn*. 2000;9(3):370–386.
83. Alkire MT, Haier RJ, Shah NK, Anderson CT. Positron emission tomography study of regional cerebral metabolism in humans during isoflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(3):549–557.
84. Alkire MT, Pomfrett CJ, Haier RJ, et al. Functional brain imaging during anesthesia in humans: effects of halothane on global and regional cerebral glucose metabolism. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(3):701–709.
85. Fiset P, Paus T, Daloze T, et al. Brain mechanisms of propofol-induced loss of consciousness in humans: a positron emission tomographic study. *J Neurosci*. 1999;19(13):5506–5513.
86. Langsjo JW, Maksimow A, Salmi E, et al. S-ketamine anesthesia increases cerebral blood flow in excess of the metabolic needs in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(2):258–268.
87. Liu X, Lauer KK, Ward BD, Li SJ, Hudetz AG. Differential effects of deep sedation with propofol on the specific and nonspecific thalamocortical systems: a functional magnetic resonance imaging study. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(1):59–69.
88. Mashour GA, Alkire MT. Consciousness, anesthesia, and the thalamocortical system. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(1):13–15.
89. Alkire MT, McReynolds JR, Hahn EL, Trivedi AN. Thalamic microinjection of nicotine reverses sevoflurane-induced loss of righting reflex in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(2):264–272.
90. Alkire MT, Asher CD, Franciscus AM, Hahn EL. Thalamic microinfusion of antibody to a voltage-gated potassium channel restores consciousness during anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(4):766–773.
91. Schiff ND, Giacino JT, Kalmar K, et al. Behavioural improvements with thalamic stimulation after severe traumatic brain injury. *Nature*. 2007;448(7153):600–603.
92. Langsjo JW, Alkire MT, Kaskinoro K, et al. Returning from oblivion: imaging the neural core of consciousness. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32(14):4935–4943.
93. Ward LM. The thalamic dynamic core theory of conscious experience. *Conscious Cogn*. 2011;20(2):464–486.
94. Velly LJ, Rey MF, Bruder NJ, et al. Differential dynamic of action on cortical and subcortical structures of anesthetic agents during induction of anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(2):202–212.
95. Verdonck O, Reed SJ, Hall J, Gotman J, Plourde G. The sensory thalamus and cerebral motor cortex are affected concurrently during induction of anesthesia with propofol: a case series with intracranial electroencephalogram recordings. *Can J Anaesth*. 2014;61(3):254–262.
96. Baker R, Gent TC, Yang Q, et al. Altered activity in the central medial thalamus precedes changes in the neocortex during transitions into both sleep and propofol anesthesia. *J Neurosci*. 2014;34(40):13326–13335.

97. Reed SJ, Plourde G. Attenuation of high-frequency (50-200 Hz) thalamocortical EEG rhythms by propofol in rats is more pronounced for the thalamus than for the cortex. *PLoS ONE*. 2015;10(4):e0123287.
98. Ching S, Cimenser A, Purdon PL, Brown EN, Kopell NJ. Thalamocortical model for a propofol-induced alpha-rhythm associated with loss of consciousness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(52):22665–22670.
99. Supp GG, Siegel M, Hipp JF, Engel AK. Cortical hypersynchrony predicts breakdown of sensory processing during loss of consciousness. *Curr Biol*. 2011;21(23):1988–1993.
100. Flores FJ, Hartnack KE, Fath AB, et al. Thalamocortical synchronization during induction and emergence from propofol-induced unconsciousness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2017;114(32):E6660–E6668.
101. Tononi G, Boly M, Massimini M, Koch C. Integrated information theory: from consciousness to its physical substrate. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2016;17(7):450–461.
102. Boveroux P, Vanhaudenhuyse A, Bruno MA, et al. Breakdown of within- and between-network resting state functional magnetic resonance imaging connectivity during propofol-induced loss of consciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(5):1038–1053.
103. Palanca BJ, Mitra A, Larson-Prior L, Snyder AZ, Avidan MS, Raichle ME. Resting-state functional magnetic resonance imaging correlates of sevoflurane-induced unconsciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(2):346–356.
104. Ranft A, Golkowski D, Kiel T, et al. Neural correlates of sevoflurane-induced unconsciousness identified by simultaneous functional magnetic resonance imaging and electroencephalography. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(5):861–872.
105. Mhuircheartaigh RN, Rosenorn-Lanng D, Wise R, Jbabdi S, Rogers R, Tracey I. Cortical and subcortical connectivity changes during decreasing levels of consciousness in humans: a functional magnetic resonance imaging study using propofol. *J Neurosci*. 2010;30(27):9095–9102.
106. Liang Z, King J, Zhang N. Intrinsic organization of the anesthetized brain. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32(30):10183–10191.
107. Schroter MS, Spoormaker VI, Schorer A, et al. Spatiotemporal reconfiguration of large-scale brain functional networks during propofol-induced loss of consciousness. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32(37):12832–12840.
108. Bianciardi M, Strong C, Toschi N, et al. A probabilistic template of human mesopontine tegmental nuclei from in vivo 7T MRI. *Neuroimage*. 2017.
109. Song AH, Kucyi A, Napadow V, Brown EN, Loggia ML, Akeju O. Pharmacological modulation of noradrenergic arousal circuitry disrupts functional connectivity of the locus ceruleus in humans. *J Neurosci*. 2017;37(29):6938–6945.
110. Kaisti KK, Metsahonkala L, Teras M, et al. Effects of surgical levels of propofol and sevoflurane anesthesia on cerebral blood flow in healthy subjects studied with positron emission tomography. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(6):1358–1370.
111. Liu X, Lauer KK, Ward BD, et al. Fine-grained parcellation of brain connectivity improves differentiation of states of consciousness during graded propofol sedation. *Brain Connect*. 2017;7(6):373–381.
112. Bonhomme V, Vanhaudenhuyse A, Demertzi A, et al. Resting-state network-specific breakdown of functional connectivity during ketamine alteration of consciousness in volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(5):873–888.
113. Friston KJ. Functional and effective connectivity: a review. *Brain Connect*. 2011;1(1):13–36.
114. Lee U, Ku S, Noh G, Baek S, Choi B, Mashour GA. Disruption of frontal-parietal communication by ketamine, propofol, and sevoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(6):1264–1275.
115. Jordan D, Ilg R, Riedl V, et al. Simultaneous electroencephalographic and functional magnetic resonance imaging indicate impaired cortical top-down processing in association with anesthetic-induced unconsciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119(5):1031–1042.
116. Moon JY, Lee U, Blain-Moraes S, Mashour GA. General relationship of global topology, local dynamics, and directionality in large-scale brain networks. *PLoS Comput Biol*. 2015;11(4):e1004225.
117. Vlisides PE, Bel-Bahar T, Lee U, et al. Neurophysiologic correlates of ketamine sedation and anesthesia: a high-density electroencephalography study in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(1):58–69.
118. Hudetz AG, Mashour GA. Disconnecting consciousness: is there a common anesthetic end point? *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(5):1228–1240.
119. Ferrarelli F, Massimini M, Sarasso S, et al. Breakdown in cortical effective connectivity during midazolam-induced loss of consciousness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(6):2681–2686.
120. Massimini M, Ferrarelli F, Huber R, Esser SK, Singh H, Tononi G. Breakdown of cortical effective connectivity during sleep. *Science*. 2005;309(5744):2228–2232.
121. Casali AG, Gosseries O, Rosanova M, et al. A theoretically based index of consciousness independent of sensory processing and behavior. *Sci Transl Med*. 2013;5(198):198ra105.
122. Murphy M, Bruno MA, Riedner BA, et al. Propofol anesthesia and sleep: a high-density EEG study. *Sleep*. 2011;34(3):283A–291A.
123. Lewis LD, Weiner VS, Mukamel EA, et al. Rapid fragmentation of neuronal networks at the onset of propofol-induced unconsciousness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109(49):E3377–E3386.
124. Hudetz AG, Liu X, Pillay S. Dynamic repertoire of intrinsic brain states is reduced in propofol-induced unconsciousness. *Brain Connect*. 2015;5(1):10–22.
125. Lee H, Noh GJ, Joo P, et al. Diversity of functional connectivity patterns is reduced in propofol-induced unconsciousness. *Hum Brain Mapp*. 2017;10 (4980–4995).
126. Solovey G, Alonso LM, Yanagawa T, et al. Loss of consciousness is associated with stabilization of cortical activity. *J Neurosci*. 2015;35(30):10866–10877.
127. Ishizawa Y, Ahmed OJ, Patel SR, et al. Dynamics of propofol-induced loss of consciousness across primate neocortex. *J Neurosci*. 2016;36(29):7718–7726.
128. Huang Z, Liu X, Mashour GA, Hudetz AG. Timescales of intrinsic BOLD signal dynamics and functional connectivity in pharmacologic and neuropathologic states of unconsciousness. *J Neurosci*. 2018.
129. Barttfeld P, Uhrig L, Sitt JD, Sigman M, Jarraya B, Dehaene S. Signature of consciousness in the dynamics of resting-state brain activity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2015;112(3):887–892.
130. Hudson AE, Calderon DP, Pfaff DW, Proekt A. Recovery of consciousness is mediated by a network of discrete metastable activity states. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2014;111(25):9283–9288.
131. Scoville WB, Milner B. Loss of recent memory after bilateral hippocampal lesions. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1957;20(1):11–21.
132. Hebb DO. *The Organization of Behavior*. New York: Wiley; 1949.
133. Bliss TV, Lomo T. Long-lasting potentiation of synaptic transmission in the dentate area of the anaesthetized rabbit following stimulation of the perforant path. *J Physiol*. 1973;232(2):331–356.
134. Fell J, Axmacher N. The role of phase synchronization in memory processes. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2011;12(2):105–118.
135. Binder JR, Desai RH, Graves WW, Conant LL. Where is the semantic system? A critical review and meta-analysis of 120 functional neuroimaging studies. *Cereb Cortex*. 2009;19(12):2767–2796.
136. Polyn SM, Natu VS, Cohen JD, Norman KA. Category-specific cortical activity precedes retrieval during memory search. *Science*. 2005;310(5756):1963–1966.
137. Simons JS, Spiers HJ. Prefrontal and medial temporal lobe interactions in long-term memory. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2003;4(8):637–648.
138. Cabeza R, Ciaramelli E, Olson IR, Moscovitch M. The parietal cortex and episodic memory: an attentional account. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9(8):613–625.
139. Raichle ME. The brain's default mode network. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2015;38:433–447.
140. Wixted JT, Squire LR. The medial temporal lobe and the attributes of memory. *Trends Cogn Sci*. 2011;15(5):210–217.
141. Eichenbaum H, Yonelinas AP, Ranganath C. The medial temporal lobe and recognition memory. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2007;30:123–152.
142. Tulving E, Schacter DL. Priming and human memory systems. *Science*. 1990;247(4940):301–306.
143. Cave CB, Squire LR. Intact and long-lasting repetition priming in amnesia. *J Exp Psychol Learn Mem Cogn*. 1992;18(3):509–520.
144. Henson RN. Neuroimaging studies of priming. *Prog Neurobiol*. 2003;70(1):53–81.
145. Janak PH, Tye KM. From circuits to behaviour in the amygdala. *Nature*. 2015;517(7534):284–292.
146. Duvarci S, Pare D. Amygdala microcircuits controlling learned fear. *Neuron*. 2014;82(5):966–980.
147. Squire LR, Wixted JT. The cognitive Neurosci of human memory since H.M. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2011;34:259–288.
148. Baddeley A. Working memory: theories, models, and controversies. *Annu Rev Psychol*. 2012;63:1–29.

149. Baddeley A, Hitch GJ. Working Memory. In: Bower GA, ed. *Recent Advances in Learning and Motivation*. New York: Academic; 1974.
150. Baddeley A. The episodic buffer: a new component of working memory? *Trends Cogn Sci*. 2000;4(11):417–423.
151. Shrager Y, Levy DA, Hopkins RO, Squire LR. Working memory and the organization of brain systems. *J Neurosci*. 2008;28(18):4818–4822.
152. Jeneson A, Squire LR. Working memory, long-term memory, and medial temporal lobe function. *Learn Mem*. 2012;19(1):15–25.
153. Ma WJ, Husain M, Bays PM. Changing concepts of working memory. *Nat Neurosci*. 2014;17(3):347–356.
154. Ruchkin DS, Grafman J, Cameron K, Berndt RS. Working memory retention systems: a state of activated long-term memory. *Behav Brain Sci*. 2003;26(6):709–728. discussion 728-777.
155. Craik FI. Levels of processing: past, present. and future? *Memory*. 2002;10(5-6):305–318.
156. Kitamura T, Ogawa SK, Roy DS, et al. Engrams and circuits crucial for systems consolidation of a memory. *Science*. 2017;356(6333):73–78.
157. Dudai Y, Karni A, Born J. The consolidation and transformation of memory. *Neuron*. 2015;88(1):20–32.
158. Neves G, Cooke SF, Bliss TV. Synaptic plasticity, memory and the hippocampus: a neural network approach to causality. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9(1):65–75.
159. Chater TE, Goda Y. The role of AMPA receptors in postsynaptic mechanisms of synaptic plasticity. *Front Cell Neurosci*. 2014;8:401.
160. Bliss TV, Collingridge GL. A synaptic model of memory: long-term potentiation in the hippocampus. *Nature*. 1993;361(6407):31–39.
161. Lynch MA. Long-term potentiation and memory. *Physiological reviews*. 2004;84(1):87–136.
162. Larson J, Wong D, Lynch G. Patterned stimulation at the theta frequency is optimal for the induction of hippocampal long-term potentiation. *Brain Res*. 1986;368(2):347–350.
163. Morris RG, Anderson E, Lynch GS, Baudry M. Selective impairment of learning and blockade of long-term potentiation by an N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor antagonist, AP5. *Nature*. 1986;319(6056):774–776.
164. Giese KP, Fedorov NB, Filipkowski RK, Silva AJ. Autophosphorylation at Thr286 of the alpha calcium-calmodulin kinase II in LTP and learning. *Science*. 1998;279(5352):870–873.
165. Malenka RC, Kauer JA, Perkel DJ, et al. An essential role for postsynaptic calmodulin and protein kinase activity in long-term potentiation. *Nature*. 1989;340(6234):554–557.
166. Cingolani LA, Goda Y. Actin in action: the interplay between the actin cytoskeleton and synaptic efficacy. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9(5):344–356.
167. Costa-Mattioli M, Sossin WS, Klann E, Sonenberg N. Translational control of long-lasting synaptic plasticity and memory. *Neuron*. 2009;61(1):10–26.
168. Hernandez PJ, Abel T. The role of protein synthesis in memory consolidation: progress amid decades of debate. *Neurobiol Learn Mem*. 2008;89(3):293–311.
169. Rogerson T, Cai DJ, Frank A, et al. Synaptic tagging during memory allocation. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2014;15(3):157–169.
170. Nader K, Schafe GE, Le Doux JE. Fear memories require protein synthesis in the amygdala for reconsolidation after retrieval. *Nature*. 2000;406(6797):722–726.
171. Tronson NC, Taylor JR. Molecular mechanisms of memory reconsolidation. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2007;8(4):262–275.
172. Alberini CM. The role of reconsolidation and the dynamic process of long-term memory formation and storage. *Front Behav Neurosci*. 2011;5:12.
173. Monfils MH, Cowansage KK, Klann E, LeDoux JE. Extinction-reconsolidation boundaries: key to persistent attenuation of fear memories. *Sci*. 2009;324(5929):951–955.
174. Agren T, Engman J, Frick A, et al. Disruption of reconsolidation erases a fear memory trace in the human amygdala. *Science*. 2012;337(6101):1550–1552.
175. Benchenane K, Peyrache A, Khamassi M, et al. Coherent theta oscillations and reorganization of spike timing in the hippocampalprefrontal network upon learning. *Neuron*. 2010;66(6):921–936.
176. Spellman T, Rigotti M, Ahmari SE, Fusi S, Gogos JA, Gordon JA. Hippocampal-prefrontal input supports spatial encoding in working memory. *Nature*. 2015;522(7556):309–314.
177. Jutras MJ, Fries P, Buffalo EA. Gamma-band synchronization in the macaque hippocampus and memory formation. *J Neurosci*. 2009;29(40):12521–12531.
178. Canolty RT, Edwards E, Dalal SS, et al. High gamma power is phase-locked to theta oscillations in human neocortex. *Science*. 2006;313(5793):1626–1628.
179. Mercier MR, Molholm S, Fiebelkorn IC, Butler JS, Schwartz TH, Foxe JJ. Neuro-oscillatory phase alignment drives speeded multisensory response times: an electro-corticographic investigation. *J Neurosci*. 2015;35(22):8546–8557.
180. Burke JF, Zaghloul KA, Jacobs J, et al. Synchronous and asynchronous theta and gamma activity during episodic memory formation. *J Neurosci*. 2013;33(1):292–304.
181. Seidenbecher T, Laxmi TR, Stork O, Pape HC. Amygdalar and hippocampal theta rhythm synchronization during fear memory retrieval. *Science*. 2003;301(5634):846–850.
182. Igarashi KM, Lu L, Colgin LL, Moser MB, Moser EI. Coordination of entorhinal-hippocampal ensemble activity during associative learning. *Nature*. 2014;510(7503):143–147.
183. Lisman JE, Jensen O. The theta-gamma neural code. *Neuron*. 2013;77(6):1002–1016.
184. Sauseng P, Klimesch W, Heise KF, et al. Brain oscillatory substrates of visual short-term memory capacity. *Curr Biol*. 2009;19(21):1846–1852.
185. Dundee JW, Pandit SK. Studies on drug-induced amnesia with intravenous anaesthetic agents in man. *Br J Clin Pract*. 1972;26(4):164–166.
186. Hashimoto K, Okada T, Seo N. [Propofol does not induce retrograde amnesia at the hypnotic dose]. *Masui*. 2007;56(8):920–924.
187. Bulach R, Myles PS, Russnak M. Double-blind randomized controlled trial to determine extent of amnesia with midazolam given immediately before general anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94(3):300–305.
188. Ghoneim MM, Block RI. Immediate peri-operative memory. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51(8):1054–1061.
189. Twersky RS, Hartung J, Berger BJ, McClain J, Beaton C. Midazolam enhances anterograde but not retrograde amnesia in pediatric patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(1):51–55.
190. Rich JB, Yaster M, Brandt J. Anterograde and retrograde memory in children anesthetized with propofol. *J Clin Exp Neuropsychol*. 1999;21(4):535–546.
191. Mason KP, Kelhoffer ER, Prescilla R, et al. Feasibility of measuring memory response to increasing dexmedetomidine sedation in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(2):254–263.
192. Pryor K, Veselis R, Reinsel R, Feshchenko V. Enhanced visual memory effect for negative versus positive emotional content is potentiated at sub-anaesthetic concentrations of thiopental. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93(3):348–355.
193. Pryor KO, Reinsel RA, Mehta M, Li Y, Wixted JT, Veselis RA. Visual P2-N2 complex and arousal at the time of encoding predict the time domain characteristics of amnesia for multiple intravenous anesthetic drugs in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(2):313–326.
194. Veselis RA, Reinsel RA, Feshchenko VA, Johnson R. Information loss over time defines the memory defect of propofol: a comparative response with thiopental and dexmedetomidine. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(4):831–841.
195. Pryor KO, Proekt A, Blackstock-Bernstein AS, Wixted JT, Root JC. Administration of propofol after learning improves memory performance in human subjects via loss of competitive consolidation: evidence that propofol amnesia occurs at the induction of consolidation and reconsolidation. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:BOC09.
196. Reder LM, Oates JM, Dickison D, et al. Retrograde facilitation under midazolam: the role of general and specific interference. *Psychonc Bull Rev*. 2007;14(2):261–269.
197. Wixted JT. The psychology and Neurosci of forgetting. *Annu Rev Psychol*. 2004;55:235–269.
198. Moser EI, Krobert KA, Moser MB, Morris RG. Impaired spatial learning after saturation of long-term potentiation. *Science*. 1998;281(5385):2038–2042.
199. Shinohara K, Hata T. Post-acquisition hippocampal blockade of the NMDA receptor subunit GluN2A but not GluN2B sustains spatial reference memory retention. *Neurobiol Learn Mem*. 2018;147:1–8.
200. Villarreal DM, Do V, Haddad E, Derrick BE. NMDA receptor antagonists sustain LTP and spatial memory: active processes mediate LTP decay. *Nat Neurosci*. 2002;5(1):48–52.

201. Alkire MT, Guzowski JF. Hypothesis: suppression of memory protein formation underlies anesthetic-induced amnesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(5):768–770.
202. Ren Y, Zhang FJ, Xue QS, Zhao X, Yu BW. Bilateral inhibition of gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptor function within the basolateral amygdala blocked propofol-induced amnesia and activity-regulated cytoskeletal protein expression inhibition in the hippocampus. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(5):775–781.
203. Chen Y, Cai A, Fritz BA, et al. Amnesia of the operating room in the B-Unaware and BAG-RECALL Clinical Trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(4):1158–1168.
204. Hurlemann R, Hawellek B, Matusch A, et al. Noradrenergic modulation of emotion-induced forgetting and remembering. *J Neurosci*. 2005;25(27):6343–6349.
205. Posner MI, Rothbart MK. Research on attention networks as a model for the integration of psychological sci. *Annu Rev Psychol*. 2007;58:1–23.
206. Womelsdorf T, Fries P. The role of neuronal synchronization in selective attention. *Curr Opin Neurobiol*. 2007;17(2):154–160.
207. Muzzio IA, Kentros C, Kandel E. What is remembered? Role of attention on the encoding and retrieval of hippocampal representations. *J Physiol*. 2009;587(12):2837–2854.
208. Musso F, Brinkmeyer J, Ecker D, et al. Ketamine effects on brain function–simultaneous fMRI/EEG during a visual oddball task. *Neuroimage*. 2011;58(2):508–525.
209. Veselis RA, Pryor KO, Reinsel RA, Mehta M, Pan H, Johnson R. Low-dose propofol-induced amnesia is not due to a failure of encoding—Left inferior prefrontal cortex is still active. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(2):213–224.
210. Veselis RA, Reinsel RA, Feshchenko VA, Dnistrian AM. A neuroanatomical construct for the amnesic effects of propofol. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(2):329–337.
211. Cieslik EC, Zilles K, Caspers S, et al. Is there "one" DLPFC in cognitive action control? Evidence for heterogeneity from co-activation–based parcellation. *Cereb Cortex*. 2013;23(11):2677–2689.
212. Davis MH, Coleman MR, Absalom AR, et al. Dissociating speech perception and comprehension at reduced levels of awareness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104(41):16032–16037.
213. Liu X, Lauer KK, Ward BD, Rao SM, Li SJ, Hudetz AG. Propofol disrupts functional interactions between sensory and high-order processing of auditory verbal memory. *Hum Brain Mapp*. 2012;33(10):2487–2498.
214. Reinsel RA, Veselis RA, Dnistrian AM, Feshchenko VA, Beattie BJ, Duff MR. Midazolam decreases cerebral blood flow in the left prefrontal cortex in a dose-dependent fashion. *Int J Neuropsychopharmacol*. 2000;3(2):117–127.
215. Adapa RM, Davis MH, Stamatakis EA, Absalom AR, Menon DK. Neural correlates of successful semantic processing during propofol sedation. *Hum Brain Mapp*. 2014;35(7):2935–2949.
216. Hayama HR, Drumheller KM, Mastromonaco M, Reist C, Cahill LF, Alkire MT. Event-related functional magnetic resonance imaging of a low dose of dexmedetomidine that impairs long-term memory. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(5):981–995.
217. Frolich MA, Banks C, Ness TJ. The effect of sedation on cortical activation: a randomized study comparing the effects of sedation with midazolam, propofol, and dexmedetomidine on auditory processing. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(5):1603–1610.
218. Pryor KO, Root JC, Mehta M, et al. Effect of propofol on the medial temporal lobe emotional memory system: a functional magnetic resonance imaging study in human subjects. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(suppl 1):i104–i113.
219. Sperling R, Greve D, Dale A, et al. Functional MRI detection of pharmacologically induced memory impairment. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99(1):455–460.
220. Ramani R, Qiu M, Constable RT. Sevoflurane 0.25 MAC preferentially affects higher order association areas: a functional magnetic resonance imaging study in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(3):648–655.
221. Fell J, Widman G, Rehberg B, Elger CE, Fernandez G. Human mediotemporal EEG characteristics during propofol anesthesia. *Biol Cybern*. 2005;92(2):92–100.
222. Sauseng P, Klimesch W, Gruber WR, Hanslmayr S, Freunberger R, Doppelmayr M. Are event-related potential components generated by phase resetting of brain oscillations? A critical discussion. *Neuroscience*. 2007;146(4):1435–1444.
223. Curran HV, Pooviboonsuk P, Dalton JA, Lader MH. Differentiating the effects of centrally acting drugs on arousal and memory: an event-related potential study of scopolamine, lorazepam and diphenhydramine. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 1998;135(1):27–36.
224. Reinsel RA, Veselis RA, Wronski M, Marino P. The P300 event-related potential during propofol sedation: a possible marker for amnesia? *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74(6):674–680.
225. Veselis RA, Reinsel RA, Feshchenko VA. Drug-induced amnesia is a separate phenomenon from sedation: electrophysiologic evidence. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(4):896–907.
226. Pryor KO, Reinsel RA, Mehta M, Li Y, Wixted JT, Veselis RA. Visual p2-n2 complex and arousal at the time of encoding predict the time domain characteristics of amnesia for multiple intravenous anesthetic drugs in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(2):313–326.
227. Freunberger R, Klimesch W, Doppelmayr M, Holler Y. Visual P2 component is related to theta phase-locking. *Neurosci Lett*. 2007;426(3):181–186.
228. Ghuman AS, Bar M, Dobbins IG, Schnyer DM. The effects of priming on frontal-temporal communication. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(24):8405–8409.
229. Veselis RA, Pryor KO, Reinsel RA, Li Y, Mehta M, Johnson R. Propofol and midazolam inhibit conscious memory processes very soon after encoding: an event-related potential study of familiarity and recollection in volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(2):295–312.
230. Heinke W, Kenntner R, Gunter TC, Sammler D, Olthoff D, Koelsch S. Sequential effects of increasing propofol sedation on frontal and temporal cortices as indexed by auditory event-related potentials. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(3):617–625.
231. Simpson TP, Manara AR, Kane NM, Barton RL, Rowlands CA, Butler SR. Effect of propofol anaesthesia on the event-related potential mismatch negativity and the auditory-evoked potential N1. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(3):382–388.
232. Jinno S, Klausberger T, Marton LF, et al. Neuronal diversity in GABAergic long-range projections from the hippocampus. *J Neurosci*. 2007;27(33):8790–8804.
233. Simon W, Hapfelmeier G, Kochs E, Zieglgansberger W, Rammes G. Isoflurane blocks synaptic plasticity in the mouse hippocampus. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(6):1058–1065.
234. Ishizeki J, Nishikawa K, Kubo K, Saito S, Goto F. Amnestic concentrations of sevoflurane inhibit synaptic plasticity of hippocampal CA1 neurons through gamma-aminobutyric acid-mediated mechanisms. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108(3):447–456.
235. Xiao H, Liu B, Chen Y, Zhang J. Learning, memory and synaptic plasticity in hippocampus in rats exposed to sevoflurane. *Int J Dev Neurosci*. 2016;48:38–49.
236. Rammes G, Starker LK, Haseneder R, et al. Isoflurane anaesthesia reversibly improves cognitive function and long-term potentiation (LTP) via an up-regulation in NMDA receptor 2B subunit expression. *Neuropharmacology*. 2009;56(3):626–636.
237. Nagashima K, Zorumski CF, Izumi Y. Propofol inhibits long-term potentiation but not long-term depression in rat hippocampal slices. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(2):318–326.
238. Takamatsu I, Sekiguchi M, Wada K, Sato T, Ozaki M. Propofol-mediated impairment of CA1 long-term potentiation in mouse hippocampal slices. *Neurosci Lett*. 2005;389(3):129–132.
239. Fibuch EE, Wang JQ. Inhibition of the MAPK/ERK cascade: a potential transcription-dependent mechanism for the amnesic effect of anesthetic propofol. *Neurosci Bull*. 2007;23(2):119–124.
240. Kozinn J, Mao L, Arora A, Yang L, Fibuch EE, Wang JQ. Inhibition of glutamatergic activation of extracellular signal-regulated protein kinases in hippocampal neurons by the intravenous anesthetic propofol. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(6):1182–1191.
241. Gao J, Peng S, Xiang S, Huang J, Chen P. Repeated exposure to propofol impairs spatial learning, inhibits LTP and reduces CaMKIIalpha in young rats. *Neurosci Lett*. 2014;560:62–66.
242. Martin LJ, Zurek AA, MacDonald JF, Roder JC, Jackson MF, Orser BA. Alpha5GABAA receptor activity sets the threshold for long-term potentiation and constrains hippocampus-dependent memory. *J Neurosci*. 2010;30(15):5269–5282.
243. Cheng VY, Martin LJ, Elliott EM, et al. Alpha5GABAA receptors mediate the amnestic but not sedative-hypnotic effects of the general anesthetic etomidate. *J Neurosci*. 2006;26(14):3713–3720.
244. Martin LJ, Oh GH, Orser BA. Etomidate targets alpha5 gamma-aminobutyric acid subtype A receptors to regulate synaptic plasticity and memory blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(5):1025–1035.

245. Saab BJ, Maclean AJ, Kanisek M, et al. Short-term memory impairment after isoflurane in mice is prevented by the alpha5 gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptor inverse agonist L-655,708. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(5):1061–1071.
246. Zurek AA, Bridgwater EM, Orser BA. Inhibition of alpha5 gamma-Aminobutyric acid type A receptors restores recognition memory after general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(4):845–855.
247. Zurek AA, Yu J, Wang DS, et al. Sustained increase in alpha5GABAA receptor function impairs memory after anesthesia. *J Clin Invest*. 2014;124(12):5437–5441.
248. Rau V, Iyer SV, Oh I, et al. Gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptor alpha 4 subunit knockout mice are resistant to the amnestic effect of isoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(6):1816–1822.
249. Rau V, Oh I, Liao M, et al. Gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptor beta3 subunit forebrain-specific knockout mice are resistant to the amnestic effect of isoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(3):500–504.
250. Liao M, Sonner JM, Jurd R, et al. Beta3-containing gamma-aminobutyric acidA receptors are not major targets for the amnesic and immobilizing actions of isoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(2):412–418. table of contents.
251. Sonner JM, Cascio M, Xing Y, et al. Alpha 1 subunit-containing GABA type A receptors in forebrain contribute to the effect of inhaled anesthetics on conditioned fear. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2005;68(1):61–68.
252. Sonner JM, Werner DF, Elsen FP, et al. Effect of isoflurane and other potent inhaled anesthetics on minimum alveolar concentration, learning, and the righting reflex in mice engineered to express alpha1 gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptors unresponsive to isoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(1):107–113.
253. Perouansky M, Rau V, Ford T, et al. Slowing of the hippocampal theta rhythm correlates with anesthetic-induced amnesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(6):1299–1309.
254. Perouansky M, Hentschke H, Perkins M, Pearce RA. Amnesic concentrations of the nonimmobilizer 1,2-dichlorohexafluorocyclobutane (F6, 2N) and isoflurane alter hippocampal theta oscillations in vivo. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(6):1168–1176.
255. Markowska AL, Olton DS, Givens B. Cholinergic manipulations in the medial septal area: age-related effects on working memory and hippocampal electrophysiology. *J Neurosci*. 1995;15(3 Pt 1):2063–2073.
256. Roozendaal B, McEwen BS, Chattarji S. Stress, memory and the amygdala. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2009;10(6):423–433.
257. Buffalari DM, Grace AA. Noradrenergic modulation of basolateral amygdala neuronal activity: opposing influences of alpha-2 and beta receptor activation. *J Neurosci*. 2007;27(45):12358–12366.
258. Roozendaal B, Okuda S, Van der Zee EA, McGaugh JL. Glucocorticoid enhancement of memory requires arousal-induced noradrenergic activation in the basolateral amygdala. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(17):6741–6746.
259. Chen CC, Williams CL. Interactions between epinephrine, ascending vagal fibers, and central noradrenergic systems in modulating memory for emotionally arousing events. *Frontiers in Behavioral Neurosci*. 2012;6:35.
260. Tovote P, Fadok JP, Luthi A. Neuronal circuits for fear and anxiety. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2015;16(6):317–331.
261. Hart G, Harris JA, Westbrook RF. Systemic or intra-amygdala infusion of the benzodiazepine, midazolam, impairs learning, but facilitates re-learning to inhibit fear responses in extinction. *Learn Mem*. 2010;17(4):210–220.
262. Tomaz C, Dickinson-Anson H, McGaugh JL. Basolateral amygdala lesions block diazepam-induced anterograde amnesia in an inhibitory avoidance task. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(8):3615–3619.
263. Alkire MT, Vazdarjanova A, Dickinson-Anson H, White NS, Cahill L. Lesions of the basolateral amygdala complex block propofol-induced amnesia for inhibitory avoidance learning in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(3):708–715.
264. Alkire MT, Nathan SV. Does the amygdala mediate anesthetic-induced amnesia? Basolateral amygdala lesions block sevoflurane-induced amnesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(4):754–760.
265. Dickinson-Anson H, McGaugh JL. Bicuculline administered into the amygdala after training blocks benzodiazepine-induced amnesia. *Brain Res*. 1997;752(1-2):197–202.
266. Hauer D, Ratano P, Morena M, et al. Propofol enhances memory formation via an interaction with the endocannabinoid system. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(6):1380–1388.
267. Morena M, Berardi A, Peloso A, et al. Effects of ketamine, dexmedetomidine and propofol anesthesia on emotional memory consolidation in rats: consequences for the development of post-traumatic stress disorder. *Behav Brain Res*. 2017;329:215–220.
268. Pain L, Launoy A, Fouquet N, Oberling P. Mechanisms of action of midazolam on expression of contextual fear in rats. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(4):614–621.
269. Zhu QL, Luo Y, Xue QS, Zhang FJ, Yu BW. Different doses of sevoflurane facilitate and impair learning and memory function through activation of the ERK pathway and synthesis of ARC protein in the rat hippocampus. *Brain Res*. 2018;1678:174–179.
270. Alkire MT, Nathan SV, McReynolds JR. Memory enhancing effect of low-dose sevoflurane does not occur in basolateral amygdala-lesioned rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(6):1167–1173.
271. Alkire MT, Gruver R, Miller J, McReynolds JR, Hahn EL, Cahill L. Neuroimaging analysis of an anesthetic gas that blocks human emotional memory. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(5):1722–1727.
272. Mahan AL, Ressler KJ. Fear conditioning, synaptic plasticity and the amygdala: implications for posttraumatic stress disorder. *Trends Neurosci*. 2012;35(1):24–35.
273. Schelling G, Richter M, Roozendaal B, et al. Exposure to high stress in the intensive care unit may have negative effects on health-related quality-of-life outcomes after cardiac surgery. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31(7):1971–1980.
274. Bethune DW, Ghosh S, Gray B, et al. Learning during general anaesthesia: implicit recall after methohexitone or propofol infusion. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69(2):197–199.
275. Block RI, Ghoneim MM, Sum Ping ST, Ali MA. Human learning during general anaesthesia and surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66(2):170–178.
276. Schwender D, Kaiser A, Klasing S, Peter K, Poppel E. Midlatency auditory evoked potentials and explicit and implicit memory in patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(3):493–501.
277. Lubke GH, Kerssens C, Phaf H, Sebel PS. Dependence of explicit and implicit memory on hypnotic state in trauma patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(3):670–680.
278. Lubke GH, Kerssens C, Gershon RY, Sebel PS. Memory formation during general anesthesia for emergency cesarean sections. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(4):1029–1034.
279. Munte S, Schmidt M, Meyer M, et al. Implicit memory for words played during isoflurane- or propofol-based anesthesia: the lexical decision task. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(3):588–594.
280. Hadzidiakos D, Horn N, Degener R, Buchner A, Rehberg B. Analysis of memory formation during general anesthesia (propofol/remifentanil) for elective surgery using the process-dissociation procedure. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(2):293–301.
281. Lequeux PY, Hecquet F, Bredas P. Does anesthetic regimen influence implicit memory during general anesthesia? *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(5):1174–1179.
282. Phelan L, Sheppard SJ, Davidson AJ. A new degraded auditory stimulus test to measure implicit memory during anaesthesia in children. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2009;37(1):60–65.
283. Lopez U, Habre W, Laurencon M, et al. Does implicit memory during anaesthesia persist in children? *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(3):379–384.
284. Pham X, Smith KR, Sheppard SJ, Bradshaw C, Lo E, Davidson AJ. Implicit memory formation during routine anesthesia in children: a double-masked randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(5):1097–1104.
285. Bonett E, Pham X, Smith KR, Howard K, Sheppard S, Davidson A. Implicit memory formation using the word stem completion task during anesthesia in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(3):290–296.

10 Sleep Medicine

MATTHIAS EIKERMANN and SEBASTIAN ZAREMBA

KEY POINTS

- Sleep is a dynamic neuronal and behavioral state that can be characterized using specific electroencephalographic, electrophysiologic, and behavioral findings.
- Characteristics of sleep can be quantified using questionnaires, actigraphy, or respiratory polygraphy. However, polysomnography, including electroencephalogram, electrooculogram, submental electromyogram, and analysis of breathing, is required to describe the cortical characteristics and immediate physiological consequences.
- Activation of hypothalamic sleep-promoting pathways including the ventrolateral preoptic nucleus and the median preoptic nucleus produces the physiological switch from wakefulness to sleep.
- Sleep and anesthesia can look similar. Although small doses of anesthetics can induce sleep by activating sleep-promoting pathways, surgical anesthesia and immobilization cannot be induced by sleep-promoting pathways.
- Control of breathing is altered during sleep and anesthesia, typically leading to a decreased drive to upper airway dilator and respiratory pump muscles.
- Persistent respiratory depressant effects of anesthetics and neuromuscular blocking drugs increase the risk of postoperative respiratory complications, particularly in patients with obstructive sleep apnea.
- Anesthesia and surgery, as well as treatment in the intensive care unit and opioids, affect sleep duration and sleep architecture, which may lead to impaired outcome.

Probably the earliest mention of “overpowering sleep” as a metaphor describing what possibly characterizes anesthesia can be found in Genesis 2:21: “And the Eternal God caused an overpowering sleep to fall upon the man and he slept. He took one of his ribs and shut in flesh instead thereof.” Although this “overpowering sleep” allegedly occurred by divine intervention and did not represent the drug-induced unconsciousness and immobility that characterizes anesthesia, the basic narrative is an example of antiquarian history that implicates the concept that deep sleep may be the only viable condition that allows a surgical procedure to be completed successfully.[1]

In the 21st century, an increasing body of knowledge has revealed the common ground between sleep and anesthesia, as well as their fundamental differences in clinical picture and underlying mechanisms.

Sleep is required for survival. Rats deprived of sleep will die within 2 to 3 weeks, a time frame similar to death due to starvation.[2] In humans, sleepiness can be deadly. Approximately 100,000 motor vehicle accidents each year result from drivers who are “asleep at the wheel.” In a survey of drivers in New York State, approximately 25% reported they had fallen asleep at the wheel at some time.[3] In addition, sleep deprivation impairs the psychomotor performance of night shift workers, specifically surgeons and residents. In patients, perioperative sleep deprivation occurs frequently, particularly in critically ill patients, and there may be consequences on patients’ outcomes. Among sleep disorders, obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) has probably the most meaningful consequences for perioperative treatment.[4]

Therefore, high-quality physiologic sleep is a key domain of public health that needs to be considered in perioperative medicine from both a provider and a patient perspective.

Definition of Sleep

Sleep is the natural periodic suspension of consciousness during which the powers of the body are restored. A behavioral definition of sleep includes a species-specific posture and behavioral quiescence, as well as elevated arousal thresholds. However, sleep is much more than an absence of activity. The brain is highly active during sleep, especially during rapid eye movement (REM) sleep, during which atonia, phasic muscle movements (driven by different activation levels in distinct areas of the brain), and vivid dreaming occur. Sleep is not a simple electrophysiological phenomenon. At different stages of sleep, brain activities can be as distinct from each other as they are from wakefulness.[5] In humans and other vertebrates (see “Evolution”), sleep has two major stages: REM sleep and non-REM (NREM) sleep, with each of these further divided into substates. Most of sleep time is spent in NREM sleep, which is characterized by relatively low electroencephalographic (EEG) frequencies with higher amplitudes compared with awake EEG frequencies (Fig. 10.1). In the transition from wake to NREM sleep, the fast activity of waking disappears (α–θ transition), and then in the deeper stages of NREM large, slow waves (i.e., δ waves) emerge. Thus deep NREM sleep is also referred to as *slow-wave sleep*. NREM sleep is associated with waxing and waning muscle tone, as well as decreased body

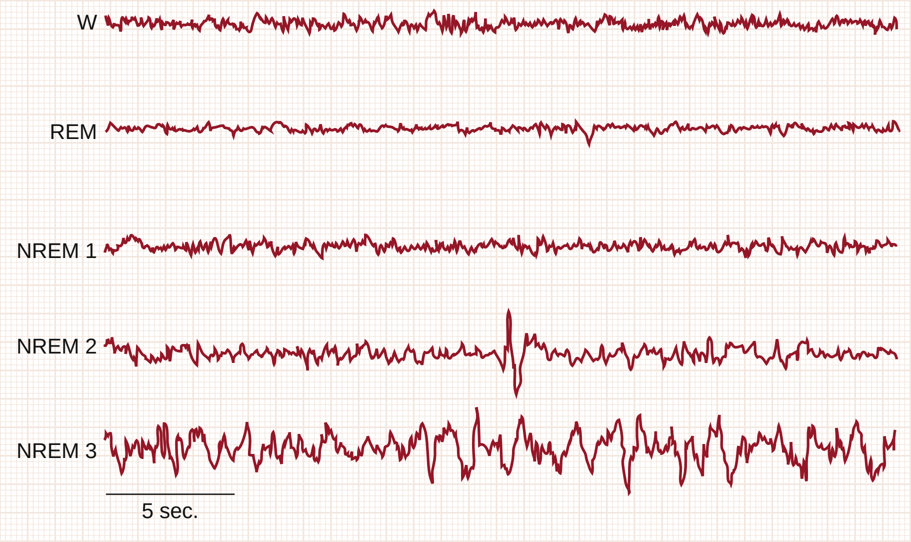


Fig. 10.1 Representative electroencephalogram activity seen during different behavioral states. Electroencephalogram recordings of one patient during wakefulness (eyes closed; *W*), rapid eye movement sleep *(REM)*, and non-REM *(NREM)* sleep stages 1 to 3.

temperature and heart rate. In contrast, REM sleep is characterized by muscle atonia, loss of slow waves in the EEG, and bursts of REMs that give this state its name.[6] Other prominent features of REM include marked irregularities of respiration and heart rate, as well as penile and clitoral erection. REM sleep is associated with the high likelihood of vivid dreaming. A distinct property of REM sleep is the operation of a system that suppresses motor activity, which is responsible for baseline atonia and suppression of motor commands that would otherwise result in acting out of dreams, a phenomenon known as *REM sleep behavior disorder*. This REM atonia system is not constant, as it periodically allows breakthrough muscle activity that comprises REM sleep and twitching of the extremities. REM sleep has therefore been subdivided into *tonic REM sleep* (i.e., a period with muscle atonia and without eye movements) and *phasic REM sleep*, which is interrupted by short phasic events of the eye and other movements.[7] The pattern and amounts of NREM sleep, REM sleep, and wakefulness throughout the night are referred to as *sleep architecture*, and there are many physiologic and pathophysiologic processes that can affect sleep architecture. For example, many antidepressant medications, benzodiazepines, and opioids selectively suppress REM sleep. A disease example is narcolepsy, in which individuals often transition rapidly from wake to REM, whereas normally REM is nearly always entered from a prolonged episode of NREM state.

Physiology

EVOLUTION

It is unknown why we sleep; however, one can imagine that evolutionary pressure would favor systems that are optimized for nature's rhythms.[8,9] In a rhythmic world, organisms must adapt to alternating changes in the environment, such as daily and seasonal rhythms in light intensity, ambient temperature, and humidity.

CIRCADIAN RHYTHMS

Species-dependent temporal behavior can be adapted depending on the environmental conditions: behaviorally, anatomically, and physiologically. Circadian rhythms affect almost every aspect of the body's function, including activity and rest patterns, cognitive function (e.g., learning and memory), cardiovascular and endocrine physiology (e.g., heart rate, metabolism, and hormone secretion), and gene expression (15% of the genes in the human body show daily rhythms).

Virtually all species show circadian rhythms that regulate periodic changes in behavioral and physiologic parameters within a period of approximately 24 hours.[10] These rhythms can be characterized as a synchronization of activity to the external light-dark cycle in the majority of living creatures. Bacteria, plants, animals, and humans exhibit such a behavior that helps them stay in tune with the environmental light-dark cycles.[11] Our sleep timing preference, or chronotype, is a manifestation of our internal biological clock. Variation in chronotype has been linked to sleep disorders, cognitive and physical performance, and chronic disease.[12]

Clock genes generate endogenous clock pulses in most (if not all) cells of the body, synchronized by regulatory pathways across the body to a superior rhythm generator (a so-called master clock). Desynchronization of these rhythms seems to be involved in the pathogenesis of metabolic, psychiatric, and other disorders.[11] The superior rhythm generator in humans is located in the suprachiasmatic nucleus that receives external inputs about light and darkness from the retinal cells and synchronizes inputs of melatonin levels. While this master clock synchronizes the behavioral and biological rhythms of the human body to the changing demands of the environment during the solar day, sleep itself entrains circadian rhythms,[11,13] and the temporal organization of circadian rhythms and nocturnal sleep must be preserved to accomplish a restful and refreshing experience that fulfills the sleep needs produced by the

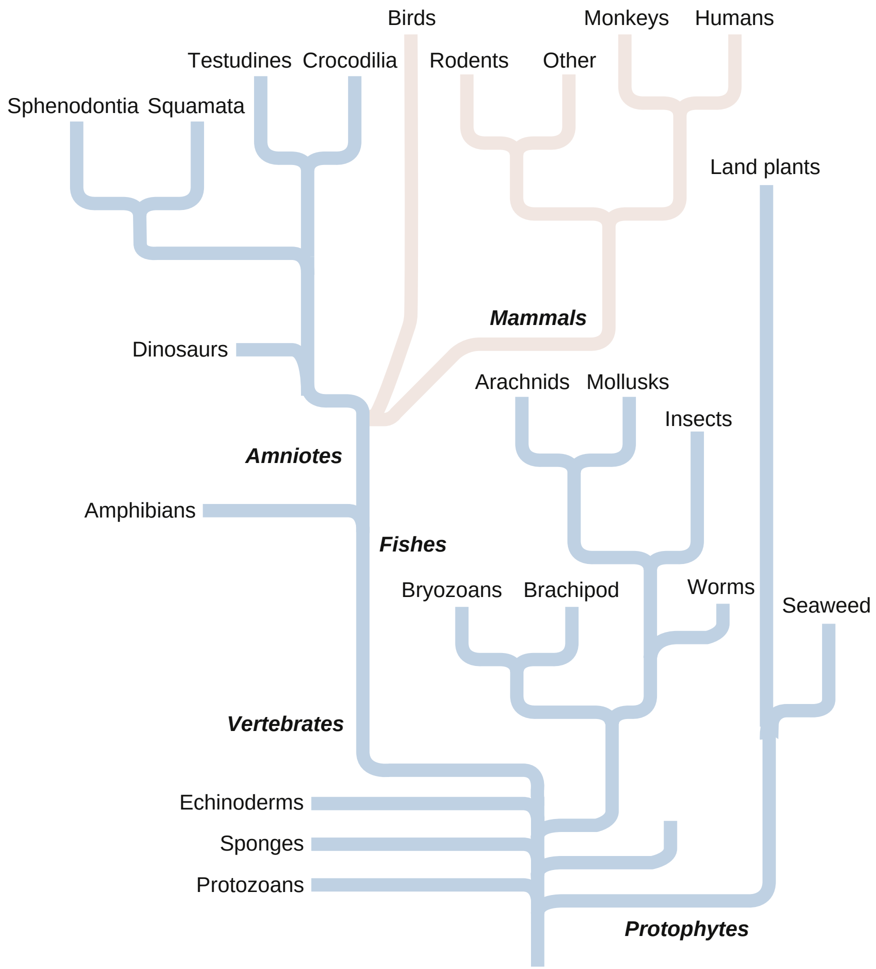


Fig. 10.2 Evolutionary tree. Circadian rhythms are common among all living beings. However, only mammals and birds *(red)* have integrated sleep with different stages. Fish, reptiles, insects, and plants *(blue)* manifest circadian rhythms as periods of activity and rest.

second major regulatory factor, sleep homeostasis. During waking, "sleep pressure" continuously increases, leading to an increased likelihood for the transition from wakefulness to sleep.[14] Increasing homeostatic sleep pressure can be partly offset by a sufficient circadian wakening stimulus during the circadian wake phase, but the circadian wake stimulus disappears in the presence of an overwhelming sleep pressure.[15] In this situation, sleep sufficient in quantity and quality is needed to reestablish proper functioning.

Although circadian and homeostatic regulation of sleep can be observed in almost all living organisms,[16] differentiation of sleep into NREM and REM sleep ("integrated sleep") probably has developed during the last 300 to 350 million years because it appears only in birds and the majority of terrestrial mammals (Fig. 10.2).[17,18]

Sleep Stages and Sleep Cycles

Sleep architecture—a structured temporal order of different sleep stages—is an important determinant of sleep quality. If tired individuals rest in their individual sleeping postures, the increasing level of drowsiness is paralleled by continuous EEG slowing from that seen during attention and cortical activation (16-30 Hz, "β activity") to slower frequencies, predominantly between (7.5 and 11 Hz, "α activity," typically observed in subjects with reduced attention and closed eyes). During this state of vigilance, the individuals do not sleep, and a full level of cognitive function can be established easily even without a strong sensory stimulus. The transition from α state to sleep is paralleled by a further decrease in α and β activity and an increase of EEG activity in the θ band (4.5-7.5 Hz; Fig.10.3).

This transition from α to θ activity is widely accepted as the EEG correlate of sleep onset.[19] At this transition from wakefulness to NREM sleep stage 1, heart rate and heat production decrease, resulting in a slight decrease in body temperature. Furthermore, respiration is regular and deep. As sleep deepens, EEG activity shows low amplitudes and θ activity with intermittent sleep spindles and K-complexes. The latter represents an activation of brainstem and subcortical brain areas during sleep[20,21] for selective processing of unexpected sensory inputs (e.g., sounds) that might require complete arousal and restoration of consciousness to address a potential threat.[22] In accordance with that hypothesis, in comatose patients with brain injury, the presence of K-complexes in response to an acoustic stimulus during coma seems to be a marker of a better outcome compared with comatose patients with no evoked K-complexes.[23] With increasing depth of sleep, during NREM sleep, electrical activity of the cortex measured by EEG is dominated by slower frequencies and high amplitudes, also referred to as *slow-wave sleep*.

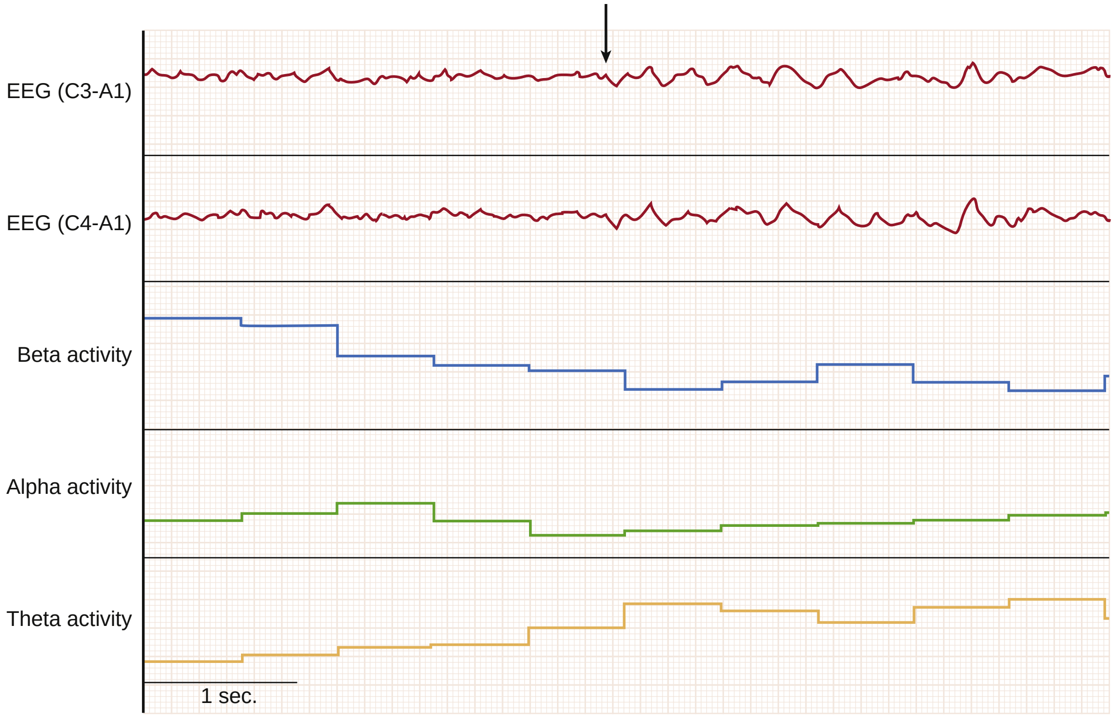


Fig. 10.3 Electroencephalogram recording during sleep onset *(arrow)*. The two top rows show bipolar electroencephalogram *(EEG)* signals from left (C3-A1) and right (C2-A1) frontal leads. Rows 3 to 5 show the relative amount (EEG power) of β, α, and θ activity calculated using fast Fourier transformation.

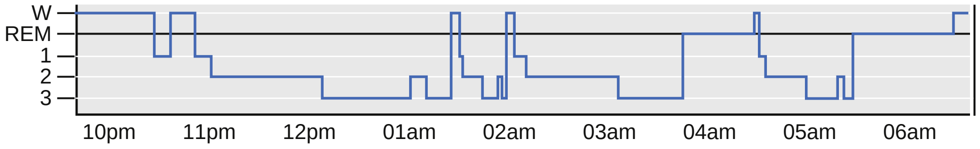


Fig. 10.4 Hypnogram of a night of physiologic sleep. During one night (time on x axis) of sleep, humans transition repetitively from one sleep stage to another with short episodes of occasional wakefulness (indicated on y axis). *REM,* Rapid eye movement sleep; *W,* awake; *1*, non-REM sleep stage 1; *2*, non-REM sleep stage 2; *3*, non-REM sleep stage 3 (slow wave sleep).

REM sleep, or paradoxical sleep, is associated with an alteration of homeostatic regulation, such as increased heart rate variability, irregular respiration, and impaired body temperature control. Brain metabolism increases while EEG recordings show similarities to wakefulness with low-voltage and mixed-frequency power spectra. Prominent θ waves generated by the hippocampus occur. These waves are not apparent in the scalp EEG recording from humans, but in rodents, in which the hippocampus is larger and closer to the brain surface, the EEG is dominated by θ during REM. This sleep state is associated with a decreased tone in skeletal muscles (except for extraocular muscles that control eye movement). Dreaming is a typical experience during REM sleep,[24] but can also happen during NREM sleep.[25] During physiologic sleep, an individual typically switches back and forth across sleep stages, interrupted by occasional arousals from sleep (Fig. 10.4).

NEUROANATOMY OF SLEEP

Sleep-Promoting and Arousal Pathways

Several neuronal pathways have evolved to maintain cortical activation and behavioral arousal during normal waking, and others have evolved to promote and maintain sleep (Fig. 10.5). It is the balance between these two systems that determines whether one is awake or asleep.

Ascending Arousal System. The ascending arousal system (AAS) is the main wakefulness-mediating network in the brain. Main pathways within the network receive cholinergic, monoaminergic, dopaminergic, and glutamatergic inputs. Cholinergic inputs originate from pedunculopontine and laterodorsal tegmental nuclei, innervate the lateral hypothalamus, prefrontal cortex, basal forebrain, and thalamic relay nuclei (i.e., medial and lateral geniculate nuclei; mediodorsal nucleus; pulvinar; anterior, ventral, and lateral thalamic cell groups).[26,27] Glutamatergic neurons that provide inputs to the AAS are mainly located within a small area just ventral of the locus ceruleus (LC), the preceruleus area, as well as in the parabrachial nuclei that mainly project to the basal forebrain and the lateral hypothalamus.[28,29] Monoaminergic inputs mainly come from noradrenergic neurons within the LC, histaminergic neurons of the tuberomammillary nuclei (TMN), serotoninergic neurons of the median and dorsal raphe nuclei,[30,31] as well as dopaminergic neurons adjacent to dorsal raphe nuclei.[24,32] Beside projections to the basal forebrain, multiple inputs are sent to the thalamus, mainly the interlaminar

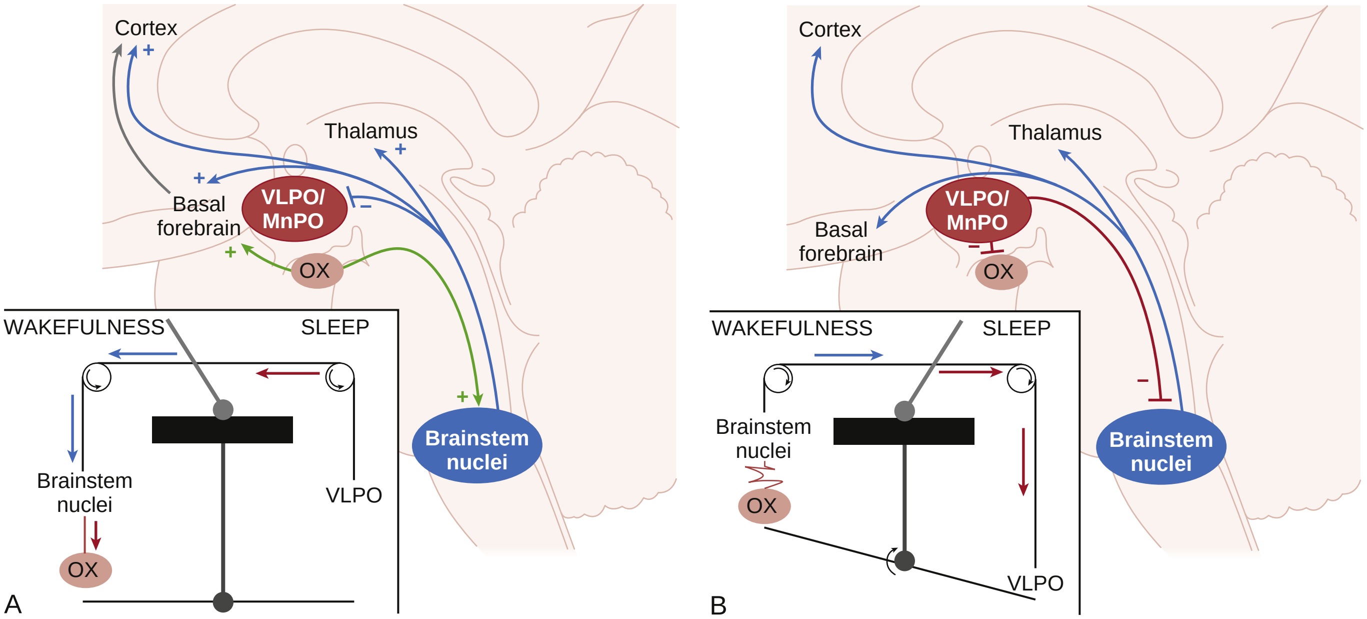


Fig. 10.5 Flip-Flop switch ensuring rapid transitions between wakefulness and sleep. During wakefulness (A), brainstem nuclei of the ascending arousal system (AAS) directly and indirectly provide excitatory input to the thalamus, basal forebrain, and the cerebral cortex, while they inhibit the ventrolateral *(VLPO)* and median *(MnPO)* preoptic nuclei (switch flips to wakefulness). The excitatory, wake-promoting stimulus is enforced by additional excitatory input of orexinergic neurons *(OX)* to the BF and the AAS. During sleep (B), neurons of VLPO and MnPO inhibit the brainstem and orexinergic neurons of the AAS (switch flops to sleep). (Modified from Saper CB, Scammell TE, Lu J. Hypothalamic regulation of sleep and circadian rhythms. *Nature.* 2005;437:1257–1263; and Saper CB, Fuller PM, Pedersen NP, Lu J, Scammell TE. Sleep state switching. *Neuron.* 2010;68:1023–1042.)

and reticular nuclei, as well as the amygdala and cerebral cortex. Furthermore, noradrenergic neurons of the LC project mainly to the posterior part of the lateral hypothalamus. In return, the latter area of the lateral hypothalamus projects to the LC and to the TMN.

Some neurons of the posterior hypothalamus produce orexin A and B, also known as hypocretin (HCRT) 1 and 2. These neurons project to the basal forebrain and the amygdala and cerebral cortex and other important arousal areas, and they are essential for stabilizing the waking state.[32] Orexin deficiency causes narcolepsy (severe daytime sleepiness) with cataplexy (abrupt loss of muscle tone),[33] a disorder showing some characteristics of REM sleep (i.e., REM sleep atonia during wakefulness [discussed later]).

Orexin System. Orexin and its cognate receptors (OX_1R and OX_2R) play a key role in sleep/wake regulation. This neurotransmitter system has a crucial involvement in the pathogenesis of narcolepsy, a disorder associated with chronic excessive daytime sleepiness, sleep attacks, and rapid transitions between vigilance states and sleep in humans.[34] Studies in mice recapitulating the narcolepsy phenotype by targeted mutagenesis of the HCRT gene encoding the prepropeptide precursor of orexin neuropeptides,[35] or the less pervasive phenotype of OX_2R knockout mice,[36] not only demonstrated the role of orexin signaling in sleep/wake regulation but also demonstrated biological proof of concept for the development of orexin receptor antagonists for the treatment of insomnia. In contrast, the activation of orexin pathways, either by exogenous administration of orexin receptor agonists or by optogenetic activation of orexinergic neurons in the lateral hypothalamus, increases arousal.[37,38] Orexinergic neurons are counteracted by inhibitory γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA)-ergic neurons originating from the ventrolateral preoptic nucleus (VLPO). OX_2R is expressed exclusively in the histaminergic TMN, whereas OX_1R is expressed preferentially in the noradrenergic LC, and both receptors are present in cholinergic pedunculopontine and laterodorsal tegmental nuclei.[38,39] Orexinergic tone at these hypothalamic and brainstem nuclei contributes to cortical arousal.[40] TMN, the predominant source of histamine in the brain responsible for cortical arousal, receives a prominent projection from orexinergic neurons[40,41] mediated predominantly by OX_2R. Orexin receptor antagonists promote sleep mainly via inhibition of the OX_2R receptor.[42-45]

Non-Rapid Eye Movement Sleep-Promoting Pathways. About 100 years ago during the epidemic of encephalitis lethargica, it was observed that lesions in the preoptic region around the rostral end of the third ventricle were associated with profound insomnia,[46] which was confirmed in neuroanatomic experiments (lesion studies) in rats and cats.[47,48] Neurons in the preoptic area are active during sleep.[49-51] Two key nuclei within this area are the VLPO as well as the median preoptic nucleus. VLPO neurons fire at a higher frequency during sleep compared with wakefulness.[52] Anatomically, the VLPO consists of a dense core of sleep-active, galanin-positive neurons innervating the TMN (which is part of the AAS) while being surrounded dorsally and medially by a more diffuse population of sleep-active, galanin-positive neurons that project to the dorsal raphe and LC.[53] Physiologically, the VLPO neurons constitute a sleep-promoting pathway that inhibits many components of the arousal system during sleep. Likewise, parts of the arousal system such as the laterodorsal tegmental nucleus and the pedunculopontine tegmental nucleus, as well as the LC, the parabrachial nucleus, the dorsal raphe nucleus, the PC, the ventral periaqueductal gray, and the TMN, are capable of inhibiting the VLPO. The mutually inhibitory relationship of the arousal and sleep-promoting pathways produces the conditions of a flip-flop switch, which can generate rapid and complete transitions between waking and sleeping states (see Fig. 10.5).[53,54] It also makes simultaneous activation of arousal and sleep circuits highly improbable.

Because animal experiments showed that even large lesions of the VLPO substantially reduce but do not completely erase sleep, other brain areas beside this nucleus are likely involved in promoting sleep.[55] Several basal forebrain areas,[49,51] as well as some GABA-ergic interneurons across the cerebral cortex,[56] have been implicated to function as sleep-active neurons. Nevertheless, the role of these brain regions in the promotion or regulation of sleep remains unclear.

Rapid Eye Movement Sleep-Promoting Pathways and Non-Rapid Eye Movement–Rapid Eye Movement Transition. During normal sleep that presents at onset as a sharp α–θ EEG activity transition, a similar sharp transition from NREM to REM sleep can be observed. Two groups of mutually inhibitory neurons located in the pons are involved in mediating the switch between NREM and REM sleep.[28] The first group consists of REM active inhibitory neurons of the sublaterodorsal nucleus and the PC region.[29,54,57] These neurons inhibit but are also inhibited by a second group of neurons that are located in ventrolateral periaqueductal gray and adjacent lateral pontine tegmentum. This mutually inhibitory relationship produces a REM-NREM flip-flop switch, promoting rapid and complete transitions between sleep states.[54]

Within the sublaterodorsal nucleus and PC, glutamatergic neurons are mixed within the population of REM-on GABA-ergic neurons. The glutamatergic sublaterodorsal nucleus neurons project to the spinal cord and are important for REM sleep atonia; the glutamatergic PC neurons activate forebrain pathways driving EEG desynchronization and hippocampal θ rhythms—characteristic EEG signs of REM-sleep.[58]

How to Assess Sleep

The complexity of signs and symptoms of sleep suggests that different instruments need to be applied to capture all the important elements of sleep.

QUESTIONNAIRES

Several questionnaires are used for the assessment of sleep duration, sleep quality, and the related physiologic and pathophysiologic consequences. Quality of sleep is a frequent target of generic health surveys for measuring patient-reported outcomes. Other questionnaires quantify the consequences of sleep deprivation, specific sleep disorders, or both (Table 10.1). The most commonly used instrument in sleep medicine is probably the Epworth Sleepiness Scale, a short questionnaire to assess symptoms of daytime sleepiness, expressed as intolerance to monotony. The questionnaire asks the subject to rate the probability of falling asleep on a scale of increasing probability from 0 to 3 for eight different situations, such as such as watching TV, reading, lying down in the afternoon, and so on.[59] Despite the fact that the Epworth Sleepiness Scale

TABLE 10.1 Sleep Questionnaires: Questionnaires Commonly Used for Clinical and Research Purposes and Their Focus

Questionnaire*	Focus	References
Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index (PSQI)	Sleep and sleep disorders	60,61
Sleep Quality Scale (SQS)	Sleep quality	66
Functional Outcome of Sleep Questionnaire (FOSQ)	Impact of daytime sleepiness on daily living	12,67
Pediatric Sleep Questionnaire	Sleep and SDB in children	68
Child Sleep Habits Questionnaire (CSHQ)	Sleep	69
Epworth Sleepiness Scale (ESS)	Daytime sleepiness	59,62,63
Sleep Diaries/Sleep Logs	Sleeping times, sleep duration	70,71
Morningness-Eveningness Questionnaire	Sleeping times, sleep duration, circadian rhythm	72
Loughborough Occupational Impact of Sleep Scale (LOISS)	Sleep quality	73
Insomnia Sleep Questionnaire (ISQ)	Insomnia	74
Berlin Questionnaire	SDB in surgical patients	66
STOP/STOP-Bang Questionnaire	Obstructive sleep apnea	75,76
Brief Insomnia Questionnaire (BIQ),	Insomnia	77
International Restless Legs Syndrome Study Group Rating Scale (IRLS)	Restless leg syndrome	78
Clinical Global Impression (CGI) Scale	Restless leg syndrome	67
Richard–Campbell Sleep Questionnaire	Sleep assessment in the ICU	79

*Recommended questionnaires are italicized.
ICU, Intensive care unit; *SDB*, sleep-disordered breathing; *STOP*, snoring, tiredness, observed apneas, and high blood pressure.

is reliable for detection of daytime sleepiness,[60,61] the instrument does not determine the mechanism of daytime sleepiness.[62,63]

Other clinically useful questionnaires that focus on the detection of signs and symptoms of sleep disorders are available,[59-79] which is important because the prevalence of sleep pathologies typically varies in a wide range across populations (see Table 10.1).

An effective process for clinical assessment of sleep-related diseases is a stepwise assessment using a screening tool first (e.g., Epworth Sleepiness Scale), followed by a more specific questionnaire that helps identify individual mechanisms or consequences of sleepiness.

A special form of sleep questionnaires comes in the form of sleep diaries and "morningness-eveningness" questionnaires that evaluate daily sleep habits, including sleep time, sleep duration, number of nocturnal awakenings, and subjective sleep quality.[80]

Although questionnaires allow a quick and easy screening for daytime symptoms of sleep disturbances, they do not quantify sleep architecture. Subjective methods of assessing sleep are influenced by the spectrum of disease within a tested group, actual clinical change over time, the testing conditions, and recall bias.[80] Clearly, a questionnaire cannot replace a medical history or objective assessment for sleep disorders. However, sleep questionnaires are important tools for measuring health improvement or decline, predicting medical expenses, assessing treatment effects, or comparing disease burden across populations.

ACTIGRAPHY

Actigraphy is used to study sleep-wake patterns by detecting motion of the wrist with linear accelerometers in single or multiple axes. Based on movement-derived data, predictions of the time spent during sleep and wakefulness can be made, and even assumptions on sleep staging are made. Actigraphy can be used conveniently in a patient's home for several nights, weeks, or longer,[81] but its validity for detecting transitions from wakefulness to sleep has been debated, especially in patients with high levels of sleep fragmentation.[81,82] In the clinical setting, actigraphy has been used to evaluate sleep patterns in patients with insomnia, for diagnosis of circadian rhythm disorders (including shift work), and in evaluating sleep in individuals who are less likely to tolerate polysomnography (PSG), such as infants and demented elderly. However, its accuracy is limited for patients with reduced mobility, such as nursing home or intensive care unit (ICU) patients. Actigraphy allows for convenient follow-up measurements to evaluate the effects of treatments designed to improve sleep architecture and circadian rhythm disorders.[83] In more recent years, an increasing number of wearable devices for the detection and analysis of activity and rest have been marketed. Although some have claimed to detect sleep accurately, as well as some sleep stages (mainly REM sleep),[84] none of the current models are yet approved or validated for clinical use.

RESPIRATORY POLYGRAPHY

Home respiratory polygraphy (RP) can be a cost-effective alternative to PSG for the diagnosis of sleep apnea-hypopnea syndrome. RP usually calculates airflow through nasal pressure changes taken via nasal cannulae. Thoracic and abdominal movements are measured by piezoelectric bands, which also measure body position and blood oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry. Using these parameters, RP can identify apnea and hypopnea, and categorize the pathophysiology of apnea into obstructive versus central. Furthermore, similar to actigraphy, RP provides some analysis of sleep duration and time spent awake, using its body position and light sensors. However, the quality of the latter can be more precisely evaluated by a combination of sleep diary and actigraphy. Nevertheless, EEG is required to decide whether a subject was awake or sleeping (Table 10.2).

TABLE 10.2 Pros and Cons of Different Methods of Sleep Evaluation

Method	Pros	Cons	Recommendation
Sleep questionnaire	Low cost Good compliance Easy to use	Recall bias Limited reliability in some populations Limited validity	Should be combined with interview
Sleep diary	Less recall bias Easy to administer Low cost Documentation of daily variability	Lower compliance compared with other questionnaires Biased by daily mood and expectations on sleep	Should be combined with other measurement of sleep duration (e.g., actigraphy)
Actigraphy	Provides objective information about daily variability and sleep duration Provides information on sleep habits at home Not influenced by patient expectations, recall bias, or memory impairments Lower cost than laboratory polysomnography	Limited assessment of sleep stages and sleep onset latency Higher cost than questionnaires	Should be combined with other measurement of sleep duration (e.g., sleep diary)

Continued

TABLE 10.2 Pros and Cons of Different Methods of Sleep Evaluation—cont'd

Method	Pros	Cons	Recommendation
Polygraphy	Lower cost than laboratory polysomnography Objective assessment of respiratory events Provide information on sleep habits at home	Limited assessment of sleep Higher cost than questionnaires Limited assessment of sleep disorders other than sleep-disordered breathing	Should be accompanied by questionnaires and clinical interview
Laboratory polysomnography	Objective assessment of sleep, sleep stages, and sleep disorders	High cost First-night effect Limited capacity No information about sleep habits at home	Should be last step in sleep evaluation with previous questionnaires and ambulatory screening (e.g., polygraphy)
Out-of-center polysomnography	Objective assessment of sleep, sleep stages, and sleep disorders Less first-night effect Lower cost than laboratory polysomnography Can provide information about sleep habits at home	Limited observation may lead to decreased recording quality	Good patient education mandatory If possible, surveillance recording preferred

Adapted in part from Martin JL, Hakim AD. Wrist actigraphy. *Chest*. 2011;139(6):1514–1527.

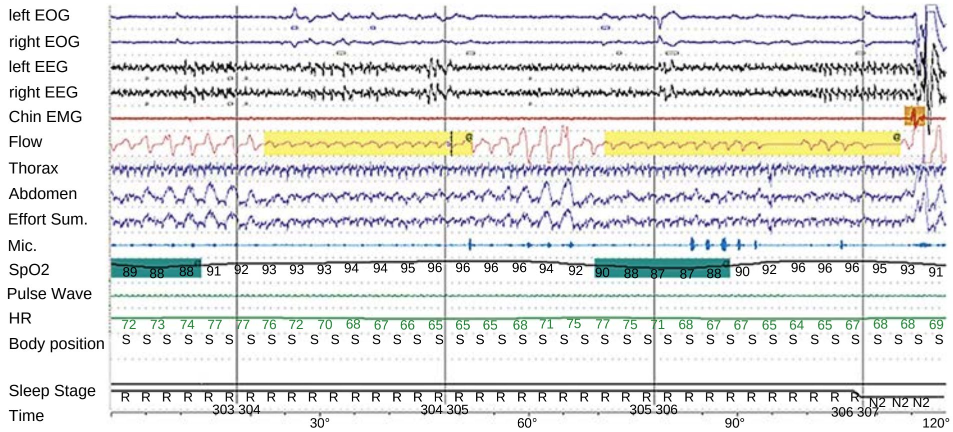


Fig. 10.6 Polysomnographic recording. Left and right electrooculogram *(EOG)*, two electroencephalogram *(EEG)* channels, and mental electromyogram *(Chin EMG)* allow scoring of sleep stage (REM sleep [R] with typical eye movements in the electrooculogram channels). Additional channels (e.g., respiratory flow *[Flow]*, respiratory effort of thorax *[Thorax]* and abdomen *[Abdomen]*, microphone *[Mic.]* oxygen saturation *[SpO_2]*) allow diagnosis of sleep disordered breathing. In this patient, apneas *(yellow boxes)* led to oxygen desaturation *(blue boxes)* and finally to arousal *(far right, brown box)*.

POLYSOMNOGRAPHY

PSG is the only method that can precisely determine the actual sleep stage and is a reference diagnostic tool (i.e., gold standard) that is required for the diagnosis of several sleep disorders.[85] PSG measurements include EEG, electrooculography for the measurement of eye movements, and at least electromyographic measurement of muscle activity of the chin.[86] These three measurements are typically supplemented by other channels for the detection of sleep-disordered breathing (SDB), such as a nasal sensor to detect apneas and hypopneas, oximetry, inductance plethysmography for respiratory effort of the chest and abdomen, and a body position sensor and leg electromyogram[87] to identify periodic limb movement syndrome or REM sleep behavior disorder, respectively.[88] A typical PSG recording is shown in Fig. 10.6.

Sleep Laboratory Testing

For several decades, PSG was performed only within a sleep laboratory. Sleep laboratory PSG is attended by a trained technician and is analyzed by a clinician trained in sleep medicine according to the published guidelines.[87,89-91] However, the high cost and requirement of an overnight stay can present socioeconomic challenges that affect the accessibility of this method. In-center PSG provides only a momentary view of the patient's sleep, and the measurements themselves can impair patients' sleep (the so-called first-night effect) and does not provide information about sleep at home. Multiple repeated measurements to tailor treatment over time are challenging or even impossible from a logistic and healthcare economics perspective. Therefore, an increasing number of out-of-center devices

TABLE 10.3 Polysomnographic Characteristic of the Different Behavioral States

	EEG and EOG Characteristics	AASM
Wakefulness	α rhythm (8-13 Hz) present in more than 50% of an epoch	W
Non-REM sleep stage 1	Lower amplitudes and activity in range of 4-7 Hz (vertex sharp waves,* slow eye movements*)	N1
Non-REM sleep stage 2	EEG of sleep stage 1 with additional a sleep spindles and K-complexes; slow waves not fulfilling the criteria for sleep stage 3	N2
Non-REM slow wave sleep	20%-50% of slow wave activity (0.5-2 Hz)	N3
REM sleep	EEG of low amplitude and mixed frequencies, low chin electromyogram activity, rapid eye movements	R

*Not necessary but may be present.

AASM, American Academy of Sleep Medicine criteria (see reference 87); *EEG,* electroencephalography; *EOG,* electrooculogram; *N1,* non-REM sleep stage 1; *N2,* sleep stage 2; *N3,* sleep stage 3; *R,* REM-sleep; *W,* wakefulness.

are now available, offering the possibility of recording PSG in almost every environment, such as at the patient's home, within the hospital or nursing home room, and even within the recovery room or ICU.

Out-of-Center Testing

Portable out-of-center PSG sleep monitors are a reasonable, reliable, and effective method for diagnosing OSA[92] compared with PSG recording performed within a sleep laboratory, when applied in preselected population at risk of moderate-to-severe OSA.[92-94] The Portable Monitoring Task Force of the American Academy of Sleep Medicine (AASM) supports the use of these devices in subjects for clinical and research purposes and indicates a comparable quality of PSG data.[92]

Scoring of Sleep and Sleep Disordered Breathing

More than 40 years ago, Rechtschaffen and Kales[86] standardized the method of scoring PSG recordings—the R&K criteria. Since then, major innovations in technology have transformed the science and clinical practice of sleep medicine. The latest criteria of the AASM[87,95] capture the full potential of innovations resulting from computerization of data, including automation of sleep scoring, recognition of disorders that occur during sleep, and integration with other procedures, such as positive airway pressure titration. Although the R&K criteria are still sufficient for clinical and research purposes, they are less commonly used in sleep centers around the world.

According to these criteria, the arousal states are categorized based on the EEG activity recorded from three different scalp locations and divided into wakefulness (W), REM sleep (R), and three NREM sleep stages (Table 10.3 and see Fig. 10.1).

Respiratory events during sleep are defined as follows:

1. *Apnea* with a decrease in respiratory flow of 90% or more from baseline for at least 10 seconds, whereas a minimum of 90% of the event duration has to meet the criteria of respiratory flow reduction
2. *Hypopneas*, in which the signal of respiratory flow measurement decreases at least 30%, whereas oxygen saturation (SpO_2) decreases by 4% or more compared with pre-event baseline for at least 90% of the duration (minimum of 10 seconds). Hypopneas can also be defined as a decrease in respiratory flow measurement of at least 40% with a decrease in SpO_2 of only 3%.
3. *Respiratory event-related arousal* is defined as a series of breaths not meeting the criteria for apnea or hypopnea lasting at least 10 seconds characterized by increasing respiratory effort or flattening of the nasal pressure waveform leading to an arousal from sleep.
4. *Hypoventilations* are defined as an increase of 10% or more in arterial carbon dioxide tension ($PaCO_2$).

Although the AASM 2007 criteria[87] are commonly used in many sleep centers for clinical and research purposes all over the world, questions about whether the new criteria should be used in children[96] and the scoring of some respiratory events are still unanswered.

Sleep and Breathing

RESPIRATORY REGULATION DURING SLEEP

Sleep puts breathing at risk. The upper airway dilator muscle activity is decreased during sleep compared with wakefulness, particularly at sleep onset and during REM sleep. Furthermore, the ventilatory response to hypoxia can be impaired, such that critical hypoxia levels can occur during sleep that can be offset only by arousal from sleep.

The major determinant of minute ventilation during wakefulness and sleep is $PaCO_2$. In contrast to wakefulness, where $PaCO_2$ is maintained close to 40 mm Hg, the chemo sensitivity to CO_2 decreases during sleep, as does the chemo sensitivity for oxygen. This leads to $PaCO_2$ values of 45 mm Hg commonly occurring during stable sleep, while ventilatory demand is decreased and the arousal threshold varies with sleep stages.

Accordingly, the changes in respiratory muscle activity, ventilatory demand, and arousal threshold observed from wakefulness to sleep and across sleep stages challenge ventilatory control and can lead to instability in breathing. A structured approach to evaluating breathing instabilities is the loop gain. This engineering term is used to describe the stability of a feedback-controlled system (in this case, the chemical feedback loop controlling an individual's ventilation). In the setting of ventilatory control, loop gain reflects the propensity of an individual to develop periodic (unstable) breathing. Patients with a high loop gain caused by a more sensitive respiratory controller (i.e., high controller gain), more effective CO_2 excretion (i.e., high plant gain), or

$$\text{AHI} = \frac{\text{Apneas (10 sec without flow) + Hypopneas (reduced flow with desaturation)}}{\text{Total sleep time (h)}}$$

$$\text{RDI} = \frac{\text{Apneas + Hypopneas + Arousals (in EEG) associated respiratory event}}{\text{Total sleep time (h)}}$$

Fig. 10.7 Definition of apnea hypopnea index *(AHI)* and respiratory disturbance index *(RDI)*.

an increased delay because of slowed CO_2 distribution from peripheral tissues to the central chemoreceptors based on, for example, reduced blood circulation (i.e., mixing gain) may be more vulnerable to disturbances of the feedback system, such as slight hypoventilation that occurs as a consequence of decreased upper airway dilator muscle activity during the transition from wakefulness to sleep.

High loop gain may contribute to severity of OSA. Moreover, subjects with a high loop gain have been shown to be more likely to develop breathing instabilities such as Cheyne-Stokes respiration (CSR; see "Central Sleep Apnea").

SLEEP-DISORDERED BREATHING

SDB refers to the respiratory signs and symptoms associated with sleep-associated respiratory dysfunction and is defined by the occurrence of respiratory events, which are cessations in breathing rhythm (apneas) or momentary or sustained reduction in the amplitude of respiratory flow (hypopnea) during the sleeping state, leading to arterial hypoxemia.[97] They are usually caused either by increases in upper-airway resistance due to reduction in intraluminal airway diameter (obstructive event), marked reduction or cessation of brainstem respiratory motor output (central event), or both. A specification of SDB into obstructive or central sleep apneas (CSA) is made based on the predominant type of respiratory events. The severity of SDB is usually quantified by the number of respiratory events per hour of sleep. This is necessary because a low number of short apneas and hypopneas can occur up to about five times per hour in healthy subjects. Two measures can be used for this purpose: the apnea hypopnea index (AHI) and the respiratory disturbance index (RDI). Typically the AHI (number of hypopneas and apneas per hour of sleep; Fig. 10.7, *top*) and RDI (number of hypopneas, apneas, and arousals related to respiratory events per hour of sleep; see Fig. 10.7, *bottom*) are used to quantify the severity of SDB.

Obstructive Sleep Apnea

Definition. OSA is the most common type of SDB and is diagnosed in patients with more than 15 predominantly obstructive events per hour of sleep, or with fewer respiratory events (i.e., 5-15 per hour) if daytime symptoms (i.e., sleepiness) or comorbidities such as hypertension or atrial fibrillation are present. These cutoff values have been used as an indication for treatment by clinicians based on the clinical guidelines and the international classification of sleep disorders.[87,88] The severity of sleep apnea is further characterized as mild in patients with less than 15 events per hour of sleep, as moderate with 15 to 30 or less events per hour of sleep, and as severe sleep apnea with 30 or more events per hour of sleep (Table 10.4).[88,90]

TABLE 10.4 Severity of Sleep Apnea Based on Respiratory Disturbance Index or Apnea Hypopnea Index

	RDI (Events Per Hour)	AHI (Events Per Hour)
No sleep apnea	<5	<5
Mild sleep apnea*	≥5 to <15	≥5 to <15
Moderate sleep apnea	≥15 to <30	≥15 to <30
Severe sleep apnea	≥30	≥30

*Only diagnosed if comorbidities like hypertension, atrial fibrillation of daytime sleepiness are present.

A respiratory disturbance index (RDI) less than 5 per hour is physiologic and found in healthy humans. Sleep apnea is mild with RDI between 5 and 15 per hour, moderate with RDI between 15 and 30 events per hour, and considered severe with an RDI of 30 and greater per hour of sleep. Equal cutoff values are similar for severity based on the apnea hypopnea index (AHI).

Epidemiology. OSA with daytime symptoms affects 0.3% to 5% of the general population.[98,99] As obesity is one of the major risk factors for OSA, the prevalence might continue to increase with higher rates of obesity in the general population.[100-102] The prevalence of SDB without daytime symptoms is even higher, with rates of up to 9% in women and 24% in men between the ages of 30 and 60 years, and is often unrecognized.[103,104]

Furthermore, the prevalence of OSA varies widely between different populations. Individuals with a high susceptibility to OSA include the obese, the elderly, and those with specific comorbidities (e.g., stroke, myocardial infarction). Depending on methodology, the rates of OSA in patients following surgery is between 45%[105] and 75%.[106] A recent study in patients undergoing bariatric surgery revealed an incidence of OSA of as high as 77.5% in this population,[107] while another study showed OSA to be prevalent in 50% of women undergoing gynecologic oncology surgery [108]

Clinical Symptoms. Approximately one-third of patients with OSA complain of typical signs and symptoms occurring during wakefulness. Waking with dry mouth or headache in the morning, daytime sleepiness, falling asleep during monotonous situations (e.g., watching television), as well as subjective impairment of cognitive function are frequently reported. This combination of OSA with daytime symptoms is usually referred to as OSA syndrome.[109,110]

Sleep-associated signs and symptoms of OSA include witnessed pauses in breathing or snoring, and a high number of nocturnal awakenings, mostly reported as pseudo-nocturia. Patients with OSA occasionally complain of tachycardia or respiratory distress upon nocturnal awakening (choking sensation) and other symptoms (Box 10.1).

Consequences and Comorbidities. OSA is associated with serious medical consequences, such as hypertension, myocardial infarction, stroke,[109,111,112] diabetes, diabetic neuropathy, as well as cognitive dysfunction resulting in occupational difficulties and motor vehicle accidents.[113,114] The development of cognitive impairment in patients with OSA[115] is associated with atrophy of brain structures relevant for cognition and memory (hippocampal areas)[116] that can be partially reversed by adequate treatment.[117] Whether the negative effects of OSA are due to impaired sleep architecture or effects of intermittent hypoxia remain unclear,[118] because data investigating the effect of intermittent hypoxia without other symptoms in OSA patients are limited. Nevertheless, recent findings suggest that even asymptomatic OSA might be associated with cardiovascular effects, such as altered daytime autonomic regulation (i.e., heart rate variability).[119]

BOX 10.1 Symptoms of Obstructive Sleep Apnea

Nighttime Symptoms

- Frequent awakening during the night (e.g., pseudo-nocturia)
- Awaking from own snoring with choking sensation
- Tachycardia
- Sleep that is not restorative

Daytime Symptoms

- Awaking with dry mouth
- Dull headache in the morning
- Daytime sleepiness
- Falling asleep during monotonic situations (e.g., watching television)
- Subjective impairment of cognitive function

Symptoms Reported by Bed Partner

- Snoring, especially when loud and arrhythmic
- Observed pauses in breathing during sleep

Given the frequent rate of complications associated with OSA, it is not surprising that OSA leads to increased socioeconomic costs because of significantly more frequent rates of health-related contacts and medication use, and even higher rates of unemployment.[120]

Risk Factors. Predisposing factors for OSA are obesity,[121] age,[121,122] male sex,[121] factors leading to swelling of the superficial tissue of the upper airway (smoking),[123] allergic rhinitis,[124] and decreased muscle tone of upper airway dilator muscles (e.g., central nervous system) caused by respiratory depressants.[125]

Pathophysiology. Respiratory events during OSA are characterized by decreased respiratory flow with persisting respiratory effort due to reduced intraluminal diameter of the upper airway up to complete pharyngeal airway collapse (see Fig. 10.6). The muscles involved in respiration are morphologically and functionally skeletal muscles and can be classified into two groups: upper airway dilator muscles and respiratory pump muscles.

Upper airway dilator muscles counterbalance the negative inspiratory pressure generated by the pump muscle to permit airflow during inspiration. Respiratory pump muscles are the collection of muscles responsible for generating inspiratory and expiratory forces in the thorax across the breathing cycle (Fig. 10.8). The patency of the upper airway is maintained by balancing dilating forces (generated by the upper airway dilator muscles) and collapsing forces (i.e., negative intraluminal pressure generated by the respiratory pump during inspiration and compressive extraluminal forces from the surrounding tissues).[126]

UPPER AIRWAY DILATOR MUSCLES. The most extensively studied of the upper airway dilating muscles are the genioglossus and the tensor palatini (Table 10.5). The genioglossus receives a variety of inputs, including phasic (inspiratory) and tonic (noninspiratory) drives, which are distributed differentially across the hypoglossal motoneurons.[127] In response to negative pharyngeal pressure created by the respiratory pump during inspiration, the

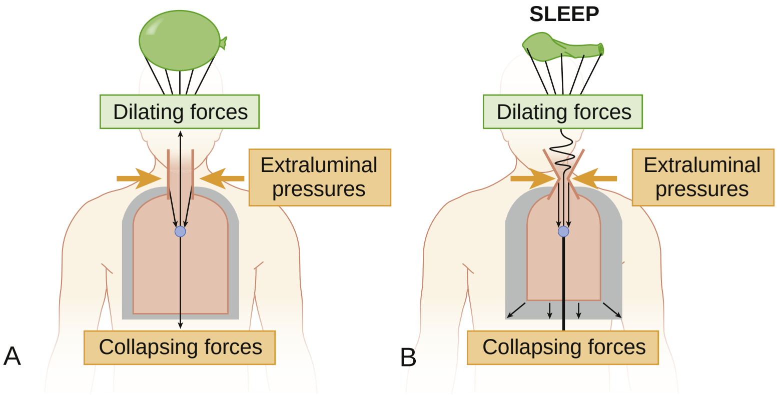


Fig. 10.8 Relationship of upper airway patency and respiratory pump activation. (A) During wakefulness, the force of the upper airway dilator muscles (*green balloon*, dilating forces) counterbalance the collapsing forces imposed on the upper airway by extraluminal pressures and negative inspiratory pressure generated by the respiratory pump muscles (represented by the orange counterweight [collapsing forces]). In obstructive sleep apnea, (B) sleep onset *(blue needle)* leads to decreased upper airway patency by reducing the dilating forces. (Modified from Sasaki N, Meyer MJ, Eikermann M. Postoperative respiratory muscle dysfunction: pathophysiology and preventive strategies. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:961–978.)

TABLE 10.5 Some Muscles of the Upper Airway Relevant for Upper Airway Stability

		PHASIC ACTIVITY	
Muscle	**Tonic Activity**	**Insp.**	**Exp.**
Tensor palatini[153]	+	+	–
Levator palatine[153]	+	+	–
Genioglossus[154]	+	+	–
Geniohyoid[155]	+	–	+
Thyrohyoid	X	X	X

+, Present; –, absent; *X*, insufficient data. Major muscles of the upper airway and their activity during breathing. Tonic activity, as well as inspiratory (Insp.) and expiratory (Exp.) muscle activity.

genioglossus reflexively stabilizes the upper airway in animals and humans.[128,129] This reflex is likely a product of signaling from inspiratory modulated motor units. Whereas the genioglossus responds to phasic input on top of its tonic activation, the tensor palatini is considered a tonic muscle with consistent tone throughout the respiratory cycle.[130]

Anatomic vulnerability to collapsing forces. The soft tissues of the pharynx are enclosed and stabilized by bony structures, such as the mandible and the spine, and complete collapse of the pharyngeal airway ordinarily requires extraluminal forces, such as hematoma, edema, peripharyngeal masses, or an airway trauma, for instance, as a consequence of prolonged endotracheal intubation.[131] Pharyngeal manifestation of obesity compresses the airway.[132] Craniofacial abnormalities can further increase the collapsing effects of excessive pharyngeal extraluminal soft tissue in obese patients.[133] The extraluminal soft tissue, as well as size and shape of the bony enclosure, are determinants of the extraluminal pressure that need to be antagonized by the upper airway dilator muscle contraction during inspiration, to avoid an upper airway obstruction–related apnea.[133] In addition, the upper airway is more vulnerable to collapse in the supine position than in the lateral or sitting positions, due to gravitational effects.[134,135]

Excessive intravenous fluid administration can affect upper airway patency. In awake, healthy volunteers, the inflation of antishock trousers displaced fluid from the lower extremities to increase neck circumference,[136] so that the upper airway had a lower threshold to collapse.[137] This concept is reinforced in studies of subjects with lower extremity venous insufficiency[138] and congestive heart failure (CHF).[139] These studies have shown nocturnal redistribution of fluid from the lower extremities into the neck increases upper airway collapsibility[138] and the severity of central apnea and OSA.[139] Similar effects may increase the risk for OSA during pregnancy and early after delivery.[139]

Another important component of airway patency is the interplay between lung volume and upper airway collapsibility. Higher end-expiratory lung volumes are associated with a decrease in upper airway resistance to airflow in awake healthy humans,[140] and an increase in upper airway lumen dimensions in subjects with and without OSA.[141] The mechanism for the interaction between upper airway patency and lung volume is thought to lie in the generation of longitudinal traction forces in the trachea.[142,143] Upon inspiration, the lung inflates and effectively forces the carina into a more caudal position, creating stretching forces on the fixed trachea.[142] These forces are transferred to the side walls of the upper airway.[143] Effectively, tracheal traction allows the respiratory pump muscles to contribute to upper airway opening.

Collapsing intraluminal pressure. The respiratory pump is the motorized action driving inspiration and expiration. It is the force that broadens the thoracic cavity and creates negative intrathoracic pressure to draw a breath in, and when needed, positive intrathoracic pressure to exhale rapidly. Inspiratory pump muscles are an anatomically diverse group, with the most studied being the intercostal muscles and the diaphragm. The diaphragm accounts for 60% to 70% of lung volume change during quiet respiration.[144] During inspiration, the volume of the thoracic cavity increases as a result of contraction of the diaphragm and the external intercostal muscles. The lungs expand secondarily to the increased negative intrathoracic pressure generated by these phasic actions of the inspiratory pump muscles. The negative intrathoracic pressure translates into a negative intraluminal pressure in the upper airway, forcing the airway to collapse as soon as this pressure drops below a critical value.[145]

Although this critical airway pressure (Pcrit) is typically negative (approximately −5 cm H_2O) in healthy controls, the upper airway in patients with OSA during sleep may even collapse at a positive Pcrit. Positive intraluminal pressure is required for reopening the paralyzed airway in patients with OSA.[146] Under normal conditions, the two compressing factors, (1) negative intraluminal pressure and (2) positive extraluminal pressure, need to be actively compensated by muscular activity of the upper airway dilator muscles to maintain airway patency.[97]

Wakefulness stimulus and sleep. Excitatory inputs to the upper airway motoneurons (e.g., hypoglossal motoneurons) include those from serotoninergic and noradrenergic neurons that fire predominantly during wakefulness,[147-150] resulting in a “wakefulness stimulus” that increases the activity of upper airway dilator muscles during this arousal state. With onset of sleep, this arousal-dependent neuronal input (active while awake versus less active, or inactive when asleep) disappears, leading to a decrease in upper airway muscle activity and causing increased upper airway resistance in healthy controls and airway collapse in patients with OSA.[151-153] The resulting retropalatal obstruction of the upper airway is reported to be the most common pathophysiological mechanism in OSA.[146]

One way valves in the upper airway. Observing the respiratory flow tracings in patients with OSA, one can find some respiratory events that do not show the characteristic progressive flow limitation ultimately resulting in complete upper airway occlusion, typically seen as a result of “collapsible tube pathophysiology” with variable compliance. In these cases, the flow tracings show normal expiratory flow and sudden reduction/cessation before reaching maximum inspiratory flow. This “rapid obstruction” only during the inspiratory phase occurred in approximately 20% to 30% of OSA patients.[154] Recent findings suggest that there are two one-way valves in the pharynx. While the epiglottic valve closes during inspiration, the soft palate may function as a second one-way valve limiting flow during expiration.[155]

Similar to the epiglottis, the soft palate hangs from the hard palate like a peninsula in the oropharynx and might

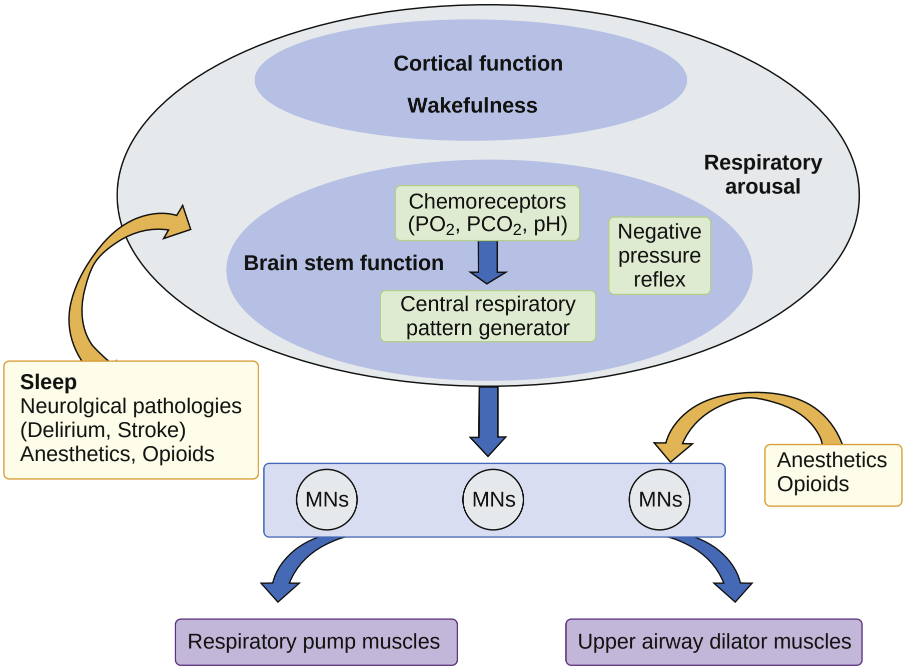


Fig. 10.9 Effects of respiratory arousal on upper airway dilator and respiratory pump muscles. Respiratory arousal is composed of three primary inputs: central respiratory pattern generator processing peripheral and central chemoreceptor afferents, reflex responsiveness to the magnitude of negative pressure in the airway generated by the respiratory pump muscles, and strength of the wakefulness stimulus. Different factors can impair respiratory arousal, such as sleep and neurologic pathologies, anesthetics, and opioids. Blue arrows indicate excitatory effect; yellow arrows indicate inhibitory effect. *MN*, Motor neuron. (Modified from Sasaki N, Meyer MJ, Eikermann M. Postoperative respiratory muscle dysfunction: pathophysiology and preventive strategies. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:961–978.)

occlude the upper airway during expiration.[156] A recent study found that sudden reduction of expiratory airflow immediately after peak expiratory flow occurs more often in OSA patients under positive pressure ventilation.[157] Similar expiratory flow limitation pattern was also reported in spontaneously breathing OSA patients, suggesting that this phenomenon is not unique to positive pressure ventilation.[158]

These findings may point to a second, slightly different mechanism underlying OSA than the pure collapsible tube pathophysiology in some OSA patients, which should be particularly important during anesthesia. Correct identification of the closure site in each OSA patient will enable the clinician to provide an individualized OSA treatment.[155]

RESPIRATORY AROUSAL. Respiratory arousal is arousal from sleep owing to cumulative and progressive increases in stimuli related to breathing (hypoxia, hypercapnia, and respiratory effort).[159]

Three primary inputs contribute to arousal-related restoration of breathing following an apnea (Fig. 10.9):

1. Peripheral and central chemoreceptors sensitive to partial pressures of oxygen and carbon dioxide[160]
2. Sensors in the upper airway responsive to negative pressure generated by the respiratory pump[128,129]
3. Cortical inputs directly related to state of consciousness or wakefulness[161]

Any of these inputs can restore respiratory muscle tone if the magnitude of stimulation is sufficient. Cortical awakening from sleep, identified by EEG signs of wakefulness, is an adequate stimulus for ventilation. However, obstructive apneas, such as upper airway collapse in OSA, can be terminated by an increased drive to the respiratory muscles not involving cortical arousal.[162] For example, hypercarbia resulting from sustained hypopnea[160] and elevated upper airway negative pressure[128,129] can independently restore tone to the respiratory muscles. The level of drive provided to the respiratory muscles depends on the summation of stimuli in the central respiratory pattern generator output, including peripheral and central chemo-responsiveness, reflex responsiveness to the negative airway pressure, and strength of the wakefulness drive.

Treatment. Adequate treatment of OSA improves nocturnal oxygen saturation as well as duration and quality of sleep, which translates to reduced daytime sleepiness, improvement of daytime functions, and improved quality of life. Successful treatment of OSA reduces cardiovascular risk, improves insulin sensitivity, and increases neurobehavioral performance.[163-165] Therefore, all patients with a diagnosis of OSA should be offered treatment as soon as the diagnosis of OSA has been established and its severity has been determined by objective testing (i.e., PSG).[88] Although different treatment options for OSA have been developed during the last decades (Table 10.6), continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) dose dependently increases upper airway diameter and is still the most effective treatment for OSA of all severities.[166-168] However, a recent study has questioned if CPAP treatment is able to prevent the long-term adverse cardiovascular events in OSA.[169]

POSITIVE AIRWAY PRESSURE TREATMENT. CPAP as a treatment for SDB is typically applied continuously with a nasal or oronasal mask, and can dose dependently reverse any sleep-associated upper airway obstruction, as outlined in Fig. 10.10. The CPAP level needed for treatment of OSA

TABLE 10.6 Treatment Possibilities for Obstructive Sleep Apnea

Treatment	Procedure/Device	Recommendation	References
Weight reduction	Reduction of body weight Weight-loss surgery (improves success of weight loss)	Medium to high, SU	170,171
Medication	Drug-based treatment (e.g., tricyclic antidepressants, serotonin reuptake inhibitors, cholinergic agonists, carbonic anhydrase inhibitors)	NR, ID	90
Surgical	Nasal surgery Palatal surgery and implants Tongue base surgery	Low, SU Low, MC Low, MC	172,173
Increase of muscle activity	Muscle training Hypoglossal nerve stimulation	ID ID	174
Nonsurgical	Oral appliance Positive airway pressure	High, AT High, GS	175 175

AT, Alternative treatment if positive airway pressure is not tolerated; *GS,* gold standard; *ID,* data not sufficient for recommendation; *MC,* may be concerned in carefully selected patients if conservative treatment fails; *NR,* not recommended; *SU,* supportive treatment.

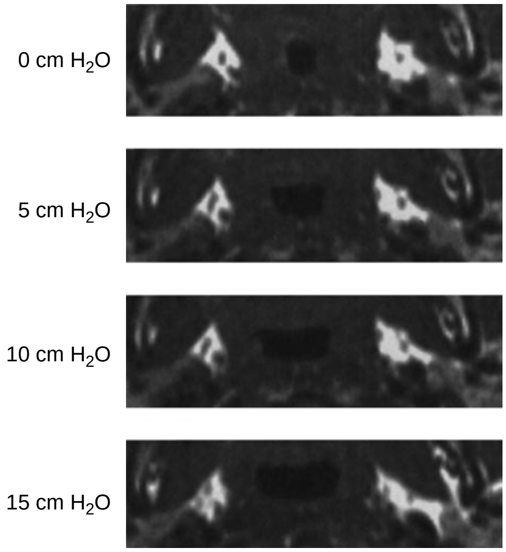


Fig. 10.10 Magnetic resonance imaging of the human upper airway during different levels of continuous positive airway pressure. **Magnetic resonance imaging of the upper airway during continuous positive airway pressure of 0, 5, 10, and 15 cm H_2O shows a dose-dependent increase in upper airway diameter.** (Obtained from Schwab RJ, Pack AI, Gupta KB, et al. Upper airway and soft tissue structural changes induced by CPAP in normal subjects. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 1996;154[4 pt 1]:1106–1116.)

varies mostly between 5 and 20 cm H_2O. However, home RP and titration of CPAP might be similarly effective in some but not all patients with suspected OSA.[176,177] After titration, the prescribed treatment pressure is applied continuously throughout the night. Although this treatment is efficient in reversing the underlying pathology, the impact of CPAP on outcome is limited by patient adherence,[112,178] mostly because of local side-effects at the nose or face, or discomfort caused by the mask.[179] When applied with high pressure, the amount of airflow can prevent the patient from falling asleep while using the treatment device. Some treatment devices offer a ramp or delay function that gradually increases treatment pressure from a low starting pressure to the prescribed pressure over a period of 5 to 45 minutes, allowing the patient to fall asleep more easily. Some patients report difficulties exhaling against high CPAP. To avoid this problem, bilevel treatment with reduced expiratory positive airway pressure and a sufficiently high inspiratory positive airway pressure can be used.

In some cases, one CPAP pressure level is not sufficient to treat sleep apnea. CPAP devices with dynamic pressure levels can improve treatment success, particularly in patients with a variable severity of sleep disordered breathing during different sleep stages. These automatic positive-airway pressure or auto-titrating devices measure different variables associated with hypopnea, such as oropharyngeal wall vibration, snoring, and inspiratory flow limitation, and increase the airway pressure until these signs and symptoms of hypopnea disappear. In addition, it is not entirely clear whether CPAP treatment is able to prevent the increased cardiovascular risk inherited by OSA.

CPAP is sufficient in the treatment of most patients with OSA. However, some patients may need different treatment methods. For example, patients with mixed apneas (obstructive and central) or predominantly central apneas need a more controlled (frequency or time controlled), noninvasive ventilation (NIV) with predefined minimal respiratory frequency or respiratory timing that automatically induces the next inspiration (ventilation) if the patient does not induce the next breath within preset parameters.

Alternative treatment options. Oral appliances (OAs) are possible treatment options in patients with mild to moderate OSA who do not tolerate CPAP therapy. Two major designs are currently used clinically: (1) mandibular repositioning appliance, which holds the mandible in an advanced position (a protrusion of at least 50% of the maximal possible extension is recommended for effective treatment),[179] and (2) tongue-retaining devices, leading to repositioning of the tongue into a forward position without any protrusion of the mandible. A multidisciplinary

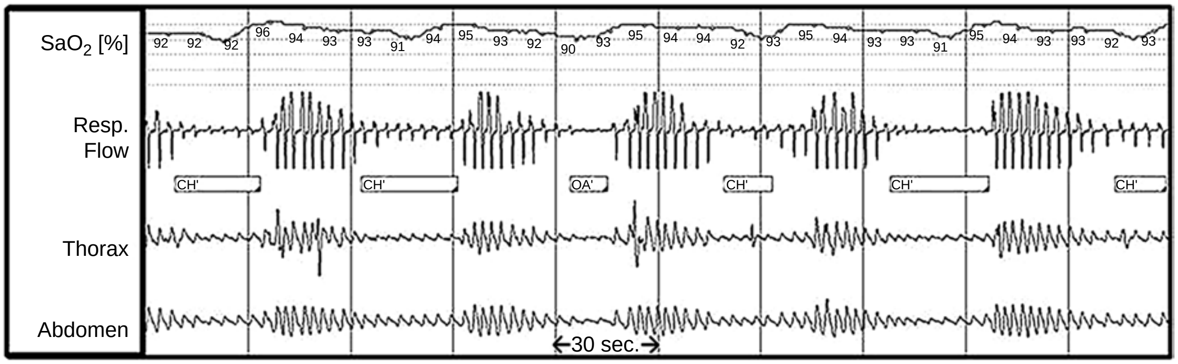


Fig. 10.11 Polysomnographic recording of an episode of Cheyne-Stokes respiration. *CH,* Central hypopnea; *OA,* obstructive apnea.

approach including a sleep physician and a dental technician experienced in OAs has been recommended for this purpose, because both factors are crucial for patient adherence and outcome from OA treatment.[109] OAs are recommended in patients with mild to moderate OSA who do not tolerate,[179] do not respond to, fail, or are not appropriate candidates for CPAP treatment.[88]

Historically, surgical treatment methods were the only approach to treatment of OSA, but the effectiveness of most of the nasopharyngeal surgical approaches for severe OSA remains unclear. However, tonsillectomy is beneficial in adult patients with OSA from tonsillar hypertrophy, and adenotonsillectomy is recommended in children with OSA and adenotonsillar hypertrophy.[180] Repeated sleep testing before and following surgery is recommended to ensure sufficient long-lasting therapeutic effects.[88,179,181]

Electrical stimulation of the upper airway muscles has been explored recently as a new approach to treatment of OSA. Hypoglossal nerve stimulation induces genioglossus muscle contractions, which dose dependently increase inspiratory airflow during OSA,[182] but the invasiveness of the procedure, the cost of the device, and the requirement for preimplantation endoscopy during anesthesia limit its use as a first-line treatment of OSA.[149]

While pharyngeal fat deposits led to a decrease in pharyngeal patency, underlining the risk factor of obesity,[183,184] weight loss leads to a reduction in Pcrit and the severity of OSA[145,171] and is recommended as adjunctive treatment in all overweight patients with OSA.[185] Because long-term weight reduction is more effective when accompanied by weight loss surgery, bariatric surgery may be considered as an adjunctive therapy in very obese patients (body mass index [BMI] ≥ 40 kg/m^2), as well as in those with important comorbidities and BMI of 35 kg/m^2 or greater and in whom dietary attempts at weight control have been ineffective.[88]

Oxygen is currently not recommended as primary treatment of OSA, but may be used as an adjunctive treatment in some patients, particularly in the postoperative period.[88,186]

Although OSA is more common in the older population, it occurs in children with a peak in the incidence between 2 and 5 years of age. Obesity predicts snoring and other signs of obstructive respiratory events in children.[109] Tonsillar and adenoidal hypertrophy is another important cause of OSA in children and can be treated surgically.[187]

Central Sleep Apnea

CSA impairs quality of life[188] and is associated with adverse outcome in heart failure patients.[189,190] CSA is defined as cessation of air flow without respiratory effort,[188] which separates it from OSA, where respiratory effort is maintained or even increased during an apnea. In clinical sleep apnea, considerable overlap between OSA and CSA occur that need to be identified and subsequently treated.[191]

CSA can be found in older patients and in patients with severe comorbidities such as CHF, stroke, or other neurologic disorders (e.g., amyotrophic lateral sclerosis). In a southern Pennsylvania cohort, CSA (AHI ≥ 20/hour) was found in 5% of men aged 65 years and older, but it was not found in younger men or in women of any age. For an AHI of 2.5 per hour and greater, the prevalence estimates in men younger than 45 years remains negligible, while CSA was found in 1.7% of men between 45 and 64 years, and 12% in men older than 65 years,[192] or 9% in individuals between 40 and 97 years, respectively.[193]

CSA mechanisms can be categorized into those with high and low loop gain. The most common subtype of CSA with an increased loop gain is CSR and is commonly seen in patients with CHF and left-ventricular systolic dysfunction. CSR is defined as a crescendo-decrescendo pattern of hyperventilation between 20 and 30 seconds in duration, followed by 10 to 40 seconds of hypopneas or apneas (Fig. 10.11), usually occurring during NREM sleep stage 1 and 2.[194] Nevertheless, CSR can also occur during exercise or wakefulness. Nearly one out of two patients with CHF shows CSR.[195] CSR is more common in men and worse in the supine body position.[161]

Potential respiratory therapies of CSR include oxygen, respiratory stimulants (e.g., CO_2, theophylline, and acetazolamide), and NIV such as bilevel positive airway pressure. The effectiveness of CPAP as therapy is controversial. Optimization of medical therapy is the best treatment, because CSR will often resolve with adequate treatment of CHF (cardiac resynchronization therapy and surgical treatment, such as heart transplant).[194]

Other Forms of Central Breathing Disorders. The term *periodic breathing* refers to altitude-induced breathing instability that occurs in subjects transferred to a high altitude, where ambient hypoxia caused by low barometric pressure leads to an increase in controller gain.[97] Idiopathic CSA, which is a relatively uncommon disorder at sea level, occurs more likely in individuals with an elevated hypercapnic ventilatory response (high controller gain) that leads to hypocapnia and respiratory control instability during sleep. Patients with idiopathic CSA tend to have low $PaCO_2$ levels, even during wakefulness.[196]

Obesity Hypoventilation Syndrome

Alveolar hypoventilation is defined as insufficient ventilation leading to hypercapnia (increased $PaCO_2$). Mechanisms of alveolar hypoventilation include central hypoventilation, chest wall deformities, neuromuscular disorders, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, as well as severe obesity (obesity hypoventilation syndrome [OHS]). OHS is defined as the combination of nocturnal and daytime hypoventilation, usually leading to hypercapnia in obese subjects (BMI $\geq$ 30 kg/m^2), in the absence of other causes of hypoventilation.

The prevalence of OHS is estimated to be up to 50% in obese patients with OSA. It can occur in up to 50% of patients with a BMI of 50 kg/m^2 or more,[197] compared with 0.15% to 0.3% in the general adult population. Ninety percent of patients with OHS also suffer from OSA.[198,199] OHS often remains undiagnosed, and the true prevalence remains unclear.

Severe obesity is associated with an increase in respiratory drive that helps maintain eucapnia in the presence of the abnormal chest wall mechanics and high work of breathing.[200,201] In OHS, this compensatory mechanism is abolished,[201,202] which in part might be explained by leptin resistance.[203-205] Typically, OHS manifests as a reduced lung capacity, vital and functional residual capacity, expiratory reserve volume, respiratory system compliance, and inspiratory muscle strength, whereas response to CO_2 might be reduced or normal. In addition, there is an increase in serum bicarbonate and alveolar PCO_2, as well as in the work of breathing and leptin levels.[205,206]

Impairment of the effectiveness of respiratory pump muscle function in patients with OHS can be explained by the effects of low lung volume because of central fat distribution, leading to a cranial displacement of the diaphragm when lying supine.[206,207] In addition, diaphragmatic myopathy might be a contributing factor of OHS.[205] Treatment options include weight loss and NIV.[207,208]

Sleep and Anesthesia: Two Unequal Twins Influencing Perioperative Medicine

CLINICAL PICTURE OF SLEEP AND ANESTHESIA

Although physiologic sleep and anesthesia share some clinical features (loss of consciousness and a modulation of brainstem autonomic function), major differences can be found when closer observations of both behavioral states are undertaken. In contrast to anesthesia, sleep shows spontaneous generation and termination, ready reversibility by noxious stimuli, and homeostatic regulation. Anesthesia does not share the stage-wise structure seen during physiologic sleep. In addition, functional imaging studies underline the fundamental differences during onset of anesthesia and wakefulness-sleep transition.

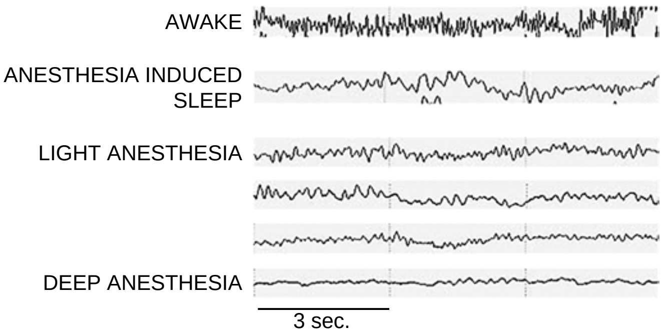


Fig. 10.12 Electroencephalographic recording during sedation and loss of consciousness induced by propofol. Compared with physiologic sleep (see Fig. 10.1), sedation shows electroencephalographic (EEG) traces comparable to slow wave sleep, indicating the sleep-inducing effect of anesthetics. Anesthesia-induced loss of consciousness (lower four traces), shows different EEG activity with reduced amplitudes and burst suppression. (Burst suppression is not shown in these traces.)

Although there are similarities in the EEG patterns between slow-wave sleep and anesthesia-induced unconsciousness, the EEG patterns during sleep and anesthesia are different,[209] with different frequencies and types of activation in EEG recorded during physiologic sleep and the uniform EEG picture observed during anesthesia-induced unconsciousness (Fig. 10.12).[210]

During anesthesia induction, the level of consciousness continuously decreases from fully awake through states of reduced response to external stimuli up to a completely unresponsive state.[211] This is in contrast to the sharp α–θ EEG transitions seen while an individual proceeds from wakefulness to sleep without any transient stages. Individuals in a steady state of physiologic sleep can be aroused with sufficient stimulation, whereas drug-induced unconsciousness needs at least some drug elimination to occur before individuals can be aroused.[212]

ACTIVATION OF SLEEP-PROMOTING PATHWAYS DURING ANESTHESIA

The role of the endogenous sleep-promoting system in the mechanism of action of general anesthetics has recently received much attention. This hypothesis is attractive because of the similarities of sleep and anesthesia and some evidence that anesthetically induced sleep could meet some of the homeostatic need for sleep.[213,214] It is even more attractive because, despite the large database of the molecular effects of anesthetics, how loss of consciousness occurs is still not explained. An important discovery is that some of the neurons that are active during sleep in the VLPO are also activated by certain anesthetics.[213-216] A second key observation is the inhibition of the arousal nuclei, the TMN, contributes to anesthesia.[215] This effect also implicates activation of VLPO because it provides the major source of inhibition of the TMN. The idea has emerged that anesthesia-induced loss of consciousness is mediated by effects of the anesthetics on the flip-flop switch centered in the VLPO that is responsible for the sharp transition from wakefulness to sleep and back (see earlier section).[212,217,218] However, there are a number of problems with this theory, including that rats and mice with complete lesions of the VLPO can still be anesthetized.[216,219] Although lesions of VLPO lead to a transient resistance to volatile anesthetics,[216] if some time elapses following a VLPO lesion, the animals show increased sensitivity to isoflurane anesthesia attributable to increased homeostatic sleep drive.[216,219-221] Another problem with the VLPO-TMN circuit hypothesis of anesthesia is that direct inhibition of the TMN produces sedation but not anesthesia.[215] Animals without VLPO neurons have profound insomnia. Therefore, interaction of anesthetics with these sleep-promoting nuclei alone is not sufficient to produce unconsciousness during anesthesia. During recent years, several studies provided evidence to extend the scientific framework of general anesthetics modulating sleep-promoting regions by the anesthetic depression of arousal-promoting nuclei, including the LC, GABAergic neurons of the pontine reticular formation, the pedunculopontine and laterodorsal tegmentum, the ventral tegmental area, as well as the perifornical area, the tuberomammillary nucleus, and the basal forebrain.[222,223] This "bottom-up" hypothesis of anesthesia-induced unconsciousness may be the result of the simultaneous interaction with the brainstem and diencephalic regions, including the AAS and endogenous sleep circuitry. Although, these mechanisms show similarities with sleep-promoting neuronal interactions, they are unlikely to be the only correlate of anesthesia-induced unconsciousness. Sleep, but not anesthesia, is easily reversed or prevented by real or perceived environmental threats. While interaction with sleep-promoting neurons work by inhibiting these arousal pathways, other neuronal networks crucial for consciousness (e.g., thalamocortical networks) remain active during sleep.[224] However, the finding that many anesthetics engage sleep pathways is still important and meaningful, as this is undoubtedly an important mechanism by which these classes of anesthetics promote sleep. Nevertheless, this effect does not and cannot prevent arousal to sufficient external stimuli. The unique property of anesthesia to do so has to be mediated by an additional mechanism.

PERIOPERATIVE INTERACTIONS BETWEEN ANESTHESIA AND SLEEP

Anesthesia and painful surgical procedures affect sleep and circadian rhythms[225-227] for as long as 6 months, depending on the complexity of the procedure performed.[228] A substantial decrease in REM sleep occurs on the first night after surgery and anesthesia, followed by a profound REM rebound phenomenon on the second to fourth postoperative nights, when REM sleep increases in both intensity and amount.[225,227] Although most anesthetics can lead to an impairment of sleep architecture, such as REM depression and reduced sleep quality during the early postoperative period, the extent of this impairment probably depends on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of the anesthetics and opioids used,[229,230] which affect the duration of REM sleep,[231,232] as well as surgery-induced stress.

The effect of propofol on sleep architecture and REM sleep is complex and dose dependent. In long-term ventilated, critically ill patients, propofol sedation abolishes REM sleep and diminishes sleep quality,[233] whereas with low-dose propofol, REM sleep is possible. The effects of ketamine sedation on sleep architecture have not been studied in detail, although it may have rather mild effects on REM duration.[234]

Anesthetics have strong effects on GABA and NMDA receptors, both of which are linked with circadian control. As a result, anesthetics may interfere with entrainment of the circadian rhythm; however, preclinical and human data show inconsistent results. A recent trial in honeybees suggested an anesthetically induced circadian shift. Inside the laboratory with no outdoor cues, daytime anesthesia disturbed the usual activity patterns in the hive for the next several days. In addition, cycles of clock gene activity showed a delay,[235,236] and inhibition of the period circadian protein (per)-2 gene expression (one of the core clock genes) was observed during anesthesia.[237] Of note, psychotropic nonanesthetics, such as opioids, have been shown to affect melatonin secretion indirectly, independent of the behavioral state anesthesia in a pig model.[238] Previous work in humans has shown that 3 hours of anesthetic exposure does not affect the circadian phase of the body temperature rhythm.[239]

In summary, the specific mechanisms of anesthetics effects on circadian rhythm are unclear. The ability to distinguish between effects occurring directly on the circadian pacemaker and those occurring downstream from the pacemaker on other physiologic control systems requires additional research under rigorous experimental conditions.

Surgical treatment itself impairs sleep, expressed as reduced REM sleep duration even in the absence of general anesthesia.[229,230] Pain, inflammation, stress immobility, and anxiety seem to be contributing factors.[240] After surgery, patients show a significant impairment of sleep quality and duration. Eventually, it will be known whether specific anesthetics are preferable to avoid the adverse effects of sleep deprivation.

SLEEP-DISORDERED BREATHING AND AIRWAY PATENCY DURING ANESTHESIA

Perioperative complications occur more often in patients with OSA than in healthy controls,[241,242] but the reasons for this observation are unclear. It is challenging to isolate the effect of OSA from the known adverse effects on perioperative outcome of typical OSA comorbidities, such as hypertension, diabetes, coronary artery disease, neurovascular vulnerability, and obesity. Fortunately, severe postoperative complications are uncommon. As a consequence, large trials are needed to isolate the causal relationship between SDB and perioperative complications, such as severe respiratory failure, thromboembolic complications, increased hospital length of stay, and mortality.

Independent of obesity, OSA is not associated with difficult tracheal intubation or mask ventilation.[243-245] However, recent metaanalyses reported a significantly higher risk of postoperative major cardiac and cerebrovascular events, newly detected postoperative atrial fibrillation and acute postoperative respiratory failure, compared with control subjects.[246-248] These findings need to be confirmed in future prospective studies with a larger sample size and a more homogenous population such that confounding factors can be controlled. OSA is associated with postoperative delirium,[241,249] which is an important perioperative complication associated with increased costs, morbidity, and mortality. However, it is currently unclear if this is due to repetitive hypoxia or sleep fragmentation. In contrast, a

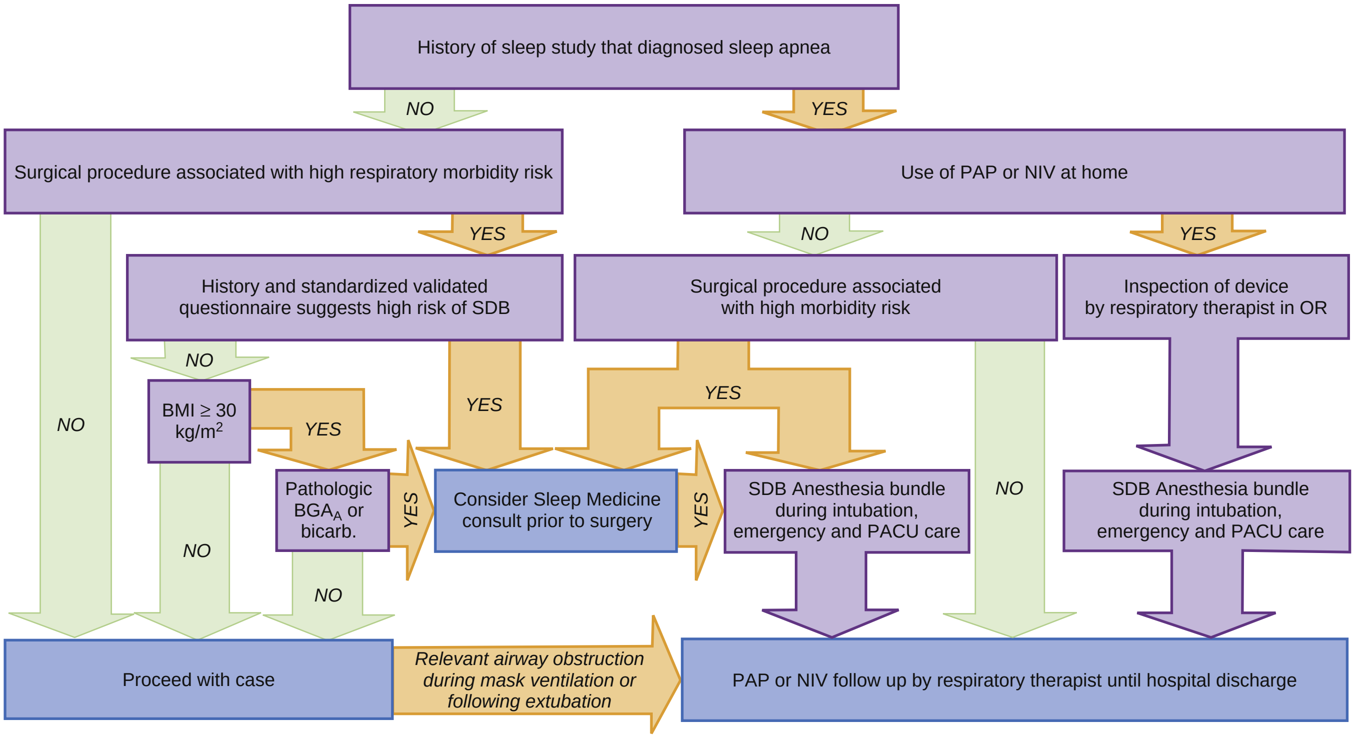

History of sleep study that diagnosed sleep apnea
NO
YES
Surgical procedure associated with high respiratory morbidity risk
Use of PAP or NIV at home
YES
NO
YES
History and standardized validated questionnaire suggests high risk of SDB
Surgical procedure associated with high morbidity risk
Inspection of device by respiratory therapist in OR
NO
BMI ≥ 30 kg/m²
YES
YES
YES
NO
Pathologic BGA_A or bicarb.
YES
Consider Sleep Medicine consult prior to surgery
YES
SDB Anesthesia bundle during intubation, emergency and PACU care
NO
SDB Anesthesia bundle during intubation, emergency and PACU care
NO
NO
Proceed with case
Relevant airway obstruction during mask ventilation or following extubation
PAP or NIV follow up by respiratory therapist until hospital discharge

Fig 10.13 Clinical pathway for perioperative management of patients with sleep disordered breathing. *BGA*$_A$, Arterial blood gas analysis; *bicarb*, venous bicarbonate level; *BMI*, body mass index; *NIV*, noninvasive ventilation; *SDB*, sleep-disordered breathing; *PACU*, postanesthesia care unit; *PAP*, positive airway pressure.

recent study using the Nationwide Inpatient Sample database analyzed data from 1,058,710 patients undergoing elective surgery. These authors showed that patients previously diagnosed with SDB had significantly higher rates of emergent mechanical ventilation, use of NIV, and CPAP, as well as increased rates of respiratory failure. Nevertheless, the study also showed that patients with SDB had better outcomes after emergent intubation and had lower care-associated costs compared with their non-SDB counterparts.[250] Similar findings were reported by the same group for data from 91,028 patients undergoing bariatric surgery.[251] In this study, patients with a previous diagnosis of SDB had a shorter hospital length of stay and lower total costs compared with non-SDB patients. The reasons for the differences are unclear. Patients with a known history of sleep apnea may receive more sophisticated perioperative monitoring and more aggressive treatment of their respiratory disease, which might also explain the higher rate of postoperative reintubation in SDB patients reported in the same group.[250] Another possible explanation relates to the consequences of chronic nocturnal desaturation, which can have preventive effects in terms of the consequences of perioperative acute hypoxia. Most importantly, these findings indicate that the association of SDB, and perioperative outcome is likely to be more than a unidirectional relationship. More likely is that SDB could have a dual effect, leading to increased rates of perioperative respiratory complications in patients with SDB, but additionally protecting the same population from the fatal consequences of these complications. The mechanism of the potential link between OSA and postoperative respiratory failure, as well as postoperative delirium, is probably multifactorial. Frequent episodes of airway collapse in OSA lead to hypoxia, disrupted sleep, daytime sleepiness, and increased arousal threshold from sleep, all of which can be considered as potential precipitating or augmenting factors of postoperative complications. It is intriguing to note that patients with OSA appear to be most vulnerable to hypoxia on postoperative night two or three, the time interval during which postoperative delirium most typically manifests.

One population that might deserve additional attention in perioperative care is patients with OHS who, compared with obese patients, are more likely to be admitted to a hospital and require more healthcare resources.[250,252] In addition, higher rates of ICU admission, lengthier long-term care requirements at discharge, and higher mechanical ventilation rates have been reported in patients with OHS compared with severe obese patients without OHS.[251-254]

In summary, patients with SDB are more vulnerable to developing severe perioperative complications. Nevertheless, it is currently unclear whether these complications translate to a poorer overall postoperative outcome for these patients.

PERIOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT IN PATIENTS WITH SLEEP-DISORDERED BREATHING

The standard of care for perioperative management of patients with SDB depends on the severity of the disease, comorbidities, and the threat associated with the planned surgical procedure. It is probably neither feasible nor necessary to conduct a sleep study in all obese patients at risk for sleep apnea who are scheduled for surgery; however, high-risk patients need to be identified and treated perioperatively. Fig. 10.13 shows an algorithm that is being developed by an interdisciplinary international group of clinicians. The algorithm is driven by the idea that patients who have been prescribed CPAP preoperatively should continue to use CPAP perioperatively. Patients who carry several risk factors (procedural and comorbidity-based) may need a preoperative sleep medicine consultation and/or a CPAP prescription.

Preoperative Screening

Several strategies need to be considered to identify patients with SDB adequately.[94,253,254] Although clinical examination is the easiest and most cost-effective method of assessment using predisposing physical characteristics, it has a poor sensitivity and specificity of only 50% to 60% to diagnose OSA accurately.[255,256] However, the clinical value of using questionnaires relates to the fact that they help to identify a high-risk perioperative population, independently of the question of whether an individual patient has OSA. For example, the STOP-Bang questionnaire basically screens for comorbidities of OSA that we know increase the risk of perioperative complications (hypertension, obesity, male sex, older age) rather than direct breathing disorder–associated characteristics. The Score for Prediction of Obstructive Sleep Apnea might also be a helpful tool to predict patients with OSA and its perioperative outcome based on comorbidities and easily available clinical data.[257]

PSG is required to identify SDB specifically, but it cannot be used for preoperative screening of surgical patients. PSG is expensive, may delay surgery, and is inconvenient for the patient. A multistep approach of preoperative screening is required. Preoperative assessment should include a screening for SDB and for the current use of NIV. OSA might not represent real risk in patients scheduled for low-risk procedures from a surgery and anesthesia point of view. The authors believe that patients with no previously diagnosed SDB undergoing a low-risk surgical procedure should receive standard perioperative monitoring and treatment.

Patients undergoing high-risk surgical procedures should receive further workup using a clinical examination combined with standardized and validated questionnaires (e.g., Berlin).[254,258] Although this diagnostic algorithm might be a sufficient screening for OSA, it might be insufficient to detect OHS.[251,253] A blood gas analysis should be considered as a method to detect hypercapnia as a major symptom of OHS (criterion: awake daytime hypercapnia $PaCO_2 \geq 45$ mm Hg). Alternatively, a venous bicarbonate concentration ≥ 27 mmol/L is highly sensitive (92%) for an increased $PaCO_2$, which combined with hypoxemia ($SpO_2 \leq 94\%$) indicates a high risk of OHS in these patients.[251,253,256,259] Of note, OHS is a diagnosis by exclusion. Severe obstructive airway diseases, severe interstitial lung disease, severe chest wall disorders (e.g., kyphoscoliosis), severe hypothyroidism, neuromuscular disease, and congenital central hypoventilation syndrome need to be excluded, and further evaluation of sleep by a sleep medicine specialist before anesthesia should be considered. In these cases, the sleep specialist should determine the optimal diagnostic instruments in cooperation with the perioperative team, prescribe the perioperative auto-titrating CPAP device, and offer in collaboration with respiratory therapy specialists to improve tolerability of perioperative CPAP therapy.

Perioperative Management of Patients with Possible Sleep-Disordered Breathing

Although the data on optimal intraoperative and perioperative management are still limited, and mainly based on studies with low sample size, the techniques and procedures summarized in Box 10.2 might be considered during the perioperative management of patients with SDB.[258] Patients with a history of SDB who are undergoing surgery and anesthesia with high risk of morbidity should receive an "OSA anesthesia bundle" (see Box 10.2) that includes special procedures and preparations during tracheal intubation, extubation, pain therapy, and perioperative CPAP therapy.

Tracheal Intubation. Patients with OSA are frequently obese, and obesity is a risk factor for difficult intubation.[244,259-261] Patients should be preoxygenated efficiently before injection of the anesthetic drug. Sniffing and reverse Trendelenburg position are preferred before intubation, which improves maintenance of the passive (i.e., paralyzed) pharyngeal airway in patients with OSA[260,262] and increases functional residual capacity. To reduce the duration of paralysis, nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs should be used with caution supported by quantitative neuromuscular transmission monitoring. Immediately after successful intubation, a lung recruitment maneuver and the application of positive end-expiratory pressure for maintaining lung volume during surgery should be considered.[261,263]

Intraoperative Treatment. Impaired upper airway patency is of special concern whenever anesthetics are administered without a device that bypasses the collapsible upper airway—for example, during sedation for endoscopy.[264,265] While the overall rate of overt sedation-related complications for such procedures (e.g., endoscopy) appears low,[266] patients who are vulnerable to respiratory complications may suffer from sequelae of increased upper airway collapsibility beyond the immediately observable after intervention.

Opioids and GABAergic sedatives/hypnotics impair upper airway patency without any meaningful difference between compounds given at an equipotent dose of analgesics.[267-270] Of note, the impairing effects of GABAergic drugs on airway patency can be reversed by the respiratory stimulants (Fig. 10.14).[266] Thus it is recommended not to extubate patients at risk of postoperative airway collapse during hypocarbia but rather at mildly hypercarbic conditions.

Ketamine abolishes the impairment of upper airway patency during loss of consciousness and sleep,[271] and may be a viable adjunct to achieve postoperative pain therapy in patients at high risk of airway collapse.

Nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs should be titrated optimally by quantitative neuromuscular transmission monitoring to avoid residual neuromuscular blockade, which increases the risk of postoperative respiratory complications.[272-275] The effects of neuromuscular blockade should be reversed only when present, because inappropriate reversal can impair upper airway function in animals and humans.[274-276]

BOX 10.2 Special Sleep-Disordered Breathing Anesthesia Bundle: Special Procedures Performed During Anesthesia in Patients With Diagnosed Sleep-Disordered Breathing and Positive Airway Pressure or Noninvasive Ventilation Treatment

Preanesthesia Period

- Consider regional anesthetic techniques that minimize the chance of postoperative sedation.

Induction Strategy

- Monitoring: capnogram, tidal volume measurement
- Sniffing position
- Reverse Trendelenburg position
- Consider intubation without nondepolarizing NMBA; consider succinylcholine.
- Triple airway maneuver with two hands
- Utilize lung recruitment maneuvers immediately after intubation and apply PEEP for maintaining lung volume during surgery.
- PCV with PEEP
- Short-acting anesthetics and narcotics preferred
- Avoid high-dose steroidal NMBA.
- Use neuromuscular transmission monitoring.

Intraoperative Management

- Whenever possible, use of sedatives and narcotics should be reduced.
- Agents with reduced impairing effect on upper airway patency might be considered (e.g., ketamine, pentobarbital).
- Neuromuscular blockade should be monitored.
- Residual neuromuscular blockade should be reversed.

Extubation and Postanesthetic Care Unit

- Patient should be able to cooperate before extubation. Consider positioning of patients in PACU bed: upper body should be elevated by 45 degrees; lateral position preferred to minimize gravitational effects on the upper airway.
- In case of impaired respiratory function, a plan needs to be defined and documented for monitoring and treatment, including the consideration of noninvasive ventilation.
- Patients will be discharged to an unmonitored environment or home when they meet discharge criteria:
  - Vital signs within 20% from baseline
  - Adequate treatment of nausea
  - Pain score ≤40%
  - Aldrete-score ≥8
  - Passed room air challenge test

Pain Therapy

- Consider nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs to reduce opioid use whenever possible, if not contraindicated.
- Use caution when combining opioids with sedatives or hypnotics.

NMBA, Neuromuscular blocking agents; *PACU,* postanesthesia care unit; *PCV,* patient-controlled ventilation; *PEEP,* positive end-expiratory pressure.

Postoperative Care. OSA occurs during sleep and sedation;[277,278] therefore, tracheal extubation should be delayed until complete recovery of consciousness. Patients should be positioned with the upper body elevated by 45 degrees, which improves airway patency[261,262] and functional residual capacity. The lateral body position is an alternative for patients who do not tolerate an elevated upper body position. NIV is a viable treatment of postoperative respiratory failure and helps prevent deoxygenation and the development of postoperative negative pressure pulmonary edema; it can also prevent the respiratory depressant effects of opioids.[276,279]

Before discharge from the post anesthesia care unit, a room air-challenge test should be conducted. Several noninvasive monitoring devices have been developed for patients with and without risk for OSA. However, it is currently unclear if these devices can help prevent postoperative complications, and this requires further investigation.[280,281]

Pain Therapy. Pain treatment is of special concern during the postoperative period. Opioids dose-dependently reduce respiratory drive, and special caution is recommended when opioids are combined with sedatives or hypnotics. If not contraindicated, regional anesthesia and nonopioid analgesics should be considered to reduce opioid use whenever possible. If opioids are used, CPAP treatment throughout the early postoperative period may be beneficial in patients with high risk for OSA.[282] Pain intensity typically decreases over time following surgery. Decreasing opioid doses are typically required to maintain the balance of decreasing and increasing effects on respiratory drive.

Patients with SDB being treated with CPAP at home should proceed with these treatments throughout the perioperative period. Sufficient functioning of the treatment device needs to be checked preoperatively (see Box 10.2).

KNOWLEDGE GAPS AND FUTURE RESEARCH

Although a bold body of evidence on the effect of sleep-disordered breathing throughout the perioperative period has been published during the last decades, there are still large gaps of knowledge.[283,284] Respiratory, cardiovascular, and neuropsychological complications, as well as unfavorable clinical outcomes, may be more or less common in patients with OSA. However, there are many comorbidities that are potential confounders, such as obesity, diabetes, dyslipidemia, coronary artery disease, and increasing age. OSA is a heterogeneous disease, and detailed physiologic phenotyping could identify pathophysiologic mechanisms that increase or decrease risk of perioperative complications of OSA. Multiple mechanistic pathways that can lead to OSA (e.g., compromised anatomy, dilator muscle dysfunction, low arousal threshold, elevated loop gain, inadequate lung volume tethering, and vascular leak) are potentially relevant in a perioperative setting.[125] In-depth physiological studies are required until phenotyping can be accomplished with less time-intensive studies or through PSG. Noninvasive and readily available physiological studies or clinical prediction models that can characterize patients who have high-risk phenotypes of OSA are an important area of future research.

In this context, adequate screening tools for OSA during the perioperative period need to be identified. As stated

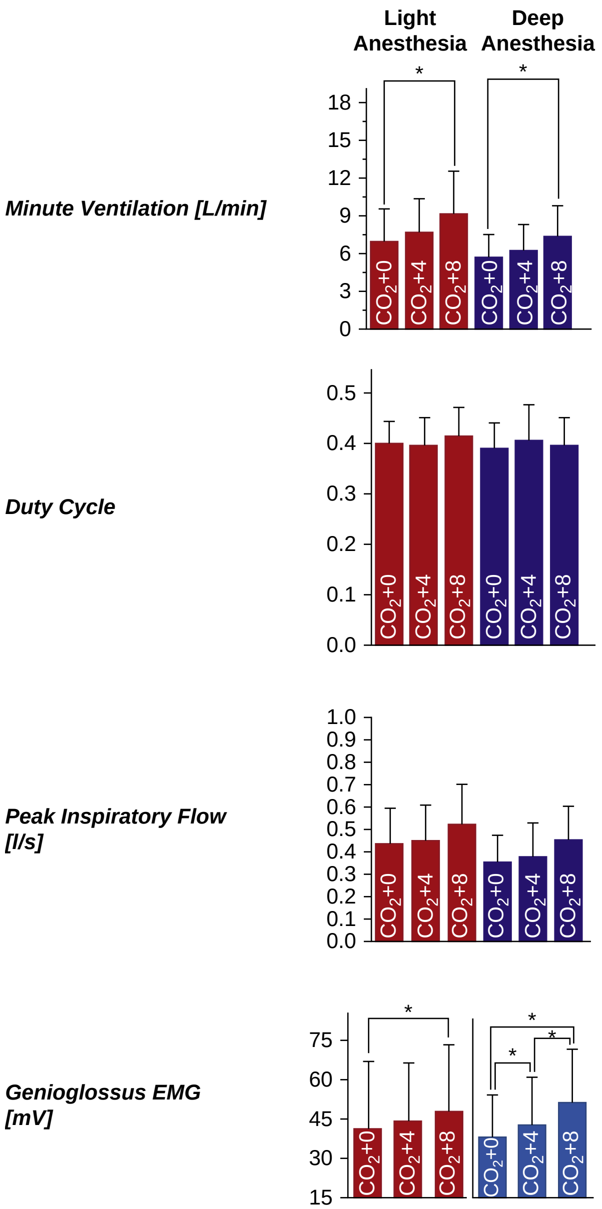


Fig. 10.14 Effect of carbon dioxide (CO2) level on genioglossus activity and respiratory function during anesthesia. Insufflation of CO2 to an increased pCO2 (+4 or +8 mm Hg) increases minute ventilation, peak inspiratory flow and upper airway dilating muscle activity (e.g. genioglossus muscle) in a dose-dependent fashion during deep (blue bars) and light (red bars) anesthesia. (Modified from Ruscic KJ, Bøgh Stokholm J, Patlak J, et al. Supplemental carbon dioxide stabilizes the upper airway in volunteers anesthetized with propofol. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129(1):37–46.)

previously, PSG is often challenging to schedule before surgery, and ambulatory technologies may be more useful and should be studied. It might even be more important to identify patients at increased risk of postoperative complications due to specific type of surgery, required mode and depth of anesthesia and opioids, as well as other comorbidities, rather than the presence of SDB per se. It is currently unclear to which extent the risk for perioperative complications associated with SDB are due to or modulated by these coexisting factors. In addition, more severe OSA may be developed by some patients with no or mild OSA prior to anesthesia. Challenging factors are opioids, body position, or intravenous fluids.

Some studies found early postoperative monitoring to detect patients with high risk for such aggravation of OSA severity. Additional research is needed to determine if and how postoperative monitoring is able to help stratify the risk for postoperative OSA. During the last few years, different approaches were made to improve postoperative management of patients with OSA (as discussed previously). However, open questions remain: What is the role of supplemental oxygen postoperatively? What are the barriers to CPAP adherence in the perioperative setting? Can patient adherence and positive airway pressure effectiveness be increased with educational resources? Should other respiratory support interventions be examined either in isolation or bundled with positive airway pressure? Is there a role for targeted positive airway pressure therapy, even with CPAP naive patients in very high risk groups? What are the medicolegal liability and patient safety factors to consider when starting CPAP in the hospital?[285]

Future research should aim to answer these questions to further improve the perioperative management of patients with sleep disordered breathing.[283] Testing a bundled approach to care (e.g., an algorithm of care including monitoring, positive airway pressure, education, and other respiratory supports) rather than each component individually might be more useful in initial clinical trials, as this may be more likely to be effective in improving outcomes.

The incidence of perioperative complications is low, and collaborative research networks are needed to identify a sufficient number of patients with OSA and answer the important research questions on perioperative outcomes. Patients with OHS might be at high risk. A minimal set of data elements required in prospective cohort studies should be identified to facilitate multisite collaboration and metaanalysis of independent studies. Case-control studies might also be nested within larger cohort studies. This would facilitate the choice of an appropriate control group. These studies may improve risk stratification and lead to novel targeted therapies. In addition, the identification of interventions that can optimize safety in this population is also important. Initial intervention trials should focus on patients at highest risk for sleep disordered breathing.[283]

Sleep and Sedation in the Intensive Care Unit

Impaired sleep is common in patients in the ICU,[286] with multiple contributing factors including noise, light, interruptions for medical procedures, and administration of fluids and nutrition, as well as endogenous factors such as pain, anxiety, and inflammation. Sleep duration in the ICU is variable depending on environmental conditions and the severity of the patient's disease.[287] Sleep fragmentation occurs consistently during sedation and mechanical ventilation.[288,289] The duration of deep NREM and REM sleep as well as circadian rhythms are severely reduced or abolished in ICU patients.[290-292] About 50% of sleep in these patients occurs during daytime hours.[286,287]. Altered EEG activity, not fitting into the standard criteria for sleep and wakefulness, was reported to occur in up to 70% of ICU patients who were receiving sedatives or being mechanically ventilated.[293] As a result, alternative classifications for sleep in the ICU have been developed;[294] however, these scoring classifications have not yet been validated.

TABLE 10.7 List of Studies Investigating Alteration of Circadian Rhythm and Sleep in Intensive Care Unit Patients

Measurement Method	Interactions	Reference
PSG studies	■ Increased arousal during nighttime and disrupted sleep, due to: ▪ noise ▪ dim light ▪ medical intervention	292,296
	■ Decrease N3- and REM-sleep ■ Increase arousals and awakenings	302-304
	■ Multiple discrete sleep episodes per 24 h ■ Atypical EEG signal: ▪ disrupted sleep ▪ nonphysiologic sleep ▪ architecture, or evidence of coma	287,290,292,294
Melatonin blood levels and urinary 6-sulfatoxymelatonin urine levels	■ Increasing chronodisruption with disease severity (rehabilitation patients, ICU patients, ICU patients with severe sepsis) ■ Delayed melatonin peak at night	292,304-312
	■ Reduced physiologic melatonin secretion at night, due to: ▪ sedation ▪ mechanical ventilation ▪ increased arousal	305,308,309
	■ Increased melatonin levels during the day, due to: ▪ dim light ▪ severe sepsis	306,311
Blood pressure variation	■ Reduced nocturnal blood pressure dip	305
Body temperature variation	■ Reduced temperature variation ■ Altered circadian rhythm with nadir dispersed widely across 24 h	23,305,313
Plasma cortisol level	■ Abolished circadian rhythm ■ Delayed peak of cortisol levels	305,310

EEG, Electroencephalography; *ICU*, intensive care unit; *N3,* sleep stage 3; *PSG,* polysomnography; *REM,* rapid eye movement.

NOISE AND LIGHT EXPOSURE

ICUs are among the most noisy areas in hospitals, with sound levels often exceeding those recommended by the World Health Organization (<45 dB).[289,295] Elbaz and associates[296] reported an increased incidence of arousals at sound levels above >77 dB in stable, mechanically ventilated ICU patients during the weaning phase. In the ICU setting, alarms from medical and monitoring devices were the most significant source of noise.

In addition to noise, changes in light exposure can alter sleep patterns and circadian rhythms. ICU patients are often exposed to dim light throughout the 24-hour cycle, resulting in increased light levels during the night and insufficient light exposure during the daytime.[297,298] This hinders the alignment (photoentrainment) of the internal circadian clock to the external 24-hour rhythm, potentially resulting in the disrupted sleep-wake pattern seen in many ICU patients.[299]

Impaired rhythmicity in melatonin secretion pattern in critically ill patients was reported in several studies (Table 10.7 for overview), and multiple factors influence melatonin rhythm in the ICU. Melatonin levels decrease with increasing age,[300] making older ICU patients more sensitive to circadian rhythm disruptions. Opioids increase melatonin levels throughout the 24-hour period.[301]

Similarly, β-agonists, including vasopressors, positive inotropes, and aerosolized albuterol, increase melatonin levels, whereas β-blockers decrease melatonin secretion. Also, endogenous production of catecholamines may induce periodic melatonin increases in patients with critical illness.[305] Benzodiazepines have inconsistent effects on melatonin.[314,315]

These interactive effects of critical illness and ICU treatment should be acknowledged while caring for ICU patients. Reduction of light and noise exposure during the night, and increased light levels during the day are recommended to improve sleep. In addition, earplugs and eye masks have been shown consistently to improve sleep quality in ICU patients and possibly reduce the risk of complications.[316-319]

MEDICATION AND MEDICAL PROCEDURES

Interruptions of sleep due to medical or nursing procedures are environmental factors in the ICU. Studies in different ICU settings found high numbers of interventions to be performed during the nighttime, ranging up to 60 interventions per night.[320-322]

Both NIV and ventilation via breathing tube impair sleep architecture and quality.[288,323] It is unclear how the issue of ICU-associated circadian disruption can be prevented or treated. Data suggest that weaning procedures during the daytime combined with assist control ventilation during the nighttime improve sleep, expressed as reduced numbers of arousal in patients requiring long-term ventilation.[291]

SLEEP AND SEDATION IN THE INTENSIVE CARE UNIT

Sedation is frequently required in the ICU to treat excessive agitation or to fulfill specific therapeutic needs; however, heavy sedation is associated with prolonged ICU and hospital stays.[324] GABA receptor agonists, such as propofol and benzodiazepines, may reduce REM sleep.[325,326]

Pain is a common experience for most patients in the ICU,[327] and failure to recognize pain can result in excessive administration of sedatives.[324] However, opioids have been shown to decrease REM-sleep and worsen sleep disorders, such as OSA in ICU patients.[131,328] Accordingly, an aggressive approach to managing pain while minimizing opioid utilization has been recommended.[329]

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT OF SLEEP DISTURBANCES IN INTENSIVE CARE UNIT PATIENTS

Medications currently used for the treatment of insomnia in the ICU interact with the GABA system. GABAergic neurotransmission has multiple functions throughout the brain, leading to daytime sedation, confusion, anterograde amnesia, and delirium.[330-332]

Melatonin has been selected as alternative sleep-promoting medication for critically ill patients in some countries. However, studies on the use of melatonin for the treatment of sleep disturbances and potential complications (e.g., delirium) in ICU patients have produced conflicting results. Administration of melatonin improved subjective and objective sleep quality in a small number of studies.[333-335] Melatonin may have side-effects such as dizziness, nausea, drowsiness, hypotension, and headache, potentially critical in the ICU setting. Recently melatonin receptor agonists have been developed and marketed for patients with circadian rhythm disorders.[336,337] These drugs may have fewer off-target effects than melatonin, but studies on their application in the ICU are very limited. It is therefore difficult to recommend treatment with melatonin agonists of any kind for ICU patients.[338]

The orexin receptor antagonist suvorexant has been approved by the FDA for the treatment of primary insomnia and might be another promising new approach for the treatment of insomnia in ICU patients. In a 4-week study in 254 patients with primary insomnia, suvorexant significantly improved sleep efficiency from the first night until the end of the study compared with placebo in a dose-dependent manner. In addition, suvorexant significantly improved wake after sleep onset and reduced sleep latency,[339] without an apparent delirium-promoting effect.[340] Additional research in the efficacy and safety of orexin receptor antagonists with critically ill patients is needed.

CONSEQUENCES OF SLEEP DISTURBANCE IN ICU PATIENTS

Compelling evidence links good sleep to proper metabolic, endocrine, immune, and neurobehavioral function.[341-345]

Regardless of controversies, the importance of a sufficient amount of good quality sleep for proper immunologic function, as well as the increased susceptibility for infection due to sleep loss, has gained increased acceptance.[346] Sleep deprivation during influenza vaccination delays the increase of antibody titers.[347,348] Sleep deprivation and insomnia is associated with decreased phagocytic activity of lymphocytes and natural killer T-cells, as well as lower levels of interleukin 2[349] and interleukin 7.[350] Interleukin 7 facilitates the transition of CD8þ effector to memory T-cells and lengthens survival of the T-cell memory cells.[351] Prolonged sleep deprivation, as may occur in long term ICU patients, may induce a persistent production of proinflammatory cytokines, producing a chronic low-grade inflammation, as well as immunodeficiency.[348]

Even short sleep deprivation in otherwise healthy young subjects has been shown to be associated with impaired glucose tolerance and insulin resistance, similar to levels usually seen in patients in the early course of diabetes mellitus.[352] In addition, sleep deprivation can induce the onset of a catabolic state: increased oxygen consumption, carbon dioxide production, and catecholamine levels, likely as signs of a stress response.[353] Changes in the activity of the hypothalamo-pituitary-adrenal axis with altered plasma levels of cortisol and thyrotropin,[354] as well as increased levels of inflammatory cytokines, are seen during sleep deprivation.[355]

It is likely that postoperative sleep deprivation also affects respiratory function, characterized as increased vulnerability to respiratory muscle fatigue,[356] decrease in ventilatory response to hypercapnia,[357] and greater upper airway collapsibility.[358]

Cognitive impairment after even short-term sleep deprived conditions is intuitive. Sleep deprivation causes bidirectional changes in brain activity and connectivity, thereby mainly affecting attention and working memory, and an increased vulnerability to delirium in critically ill patients.[359-361]

In addition, recent studies found beneficial effects of realignment of the sleep-wake cycles by pharmacologic and chronotherapeutic methods on the risk for delirium in these patients.[362-364] However, sleep-promoting agents per se can increase the vulnerability to delirium, and the optimal sleep-promoting agent that also minimizes the risk of delirium needs to be identified.

PERIOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF OTHER SLEEP DISORDERS

Narcolepsy

Narcolepsy is a neurologic sleep disorder with a prevalence of 0.05% to 0.8% in most ethnic groups.[365,366] It is characterized by excessive daytime sleepiness, involuntary daytime sleep episodes, disturbed nocturnal sleep, and sleep-associated muscular hypotension. Narcolepsy is divided into narcolepsy with or without cataplexy (sudden loss of muscle tone without loss of consciousness).[367]

An autoimmune pathology against hypothalamic orexin neurons may be involved in the pathogenesis of narcolepsy.[366] A mutation of the HCRT receptor 2 or loss of HCRT neurons have been shown to cause a narcolepsy-like state in animals,[368] and the deficiency of HCRT has been shown to be associated with narcolepsy in humans.[34] HCRT is involved in control of several biological functions such as feeding, cardiovascular regulation, upper airway stability, pain, locomotion, stress, and addiction.[369,370] Environmental factors play a key role in the pathogenesis of the disorder, as the disease concordance rate between monozygotic twins is only 20% to 35%.

Treatment of narcolepsy consists of behavioral treatment, as well as pharmacologic treatment for (1) daytime sleepiness and (2) cataplexies. Periodic and regular sleep times and scheduled daytime naps are recommended. Pharmaceutical treatments of daytime sleepiness include amphetamines, methylphenidate, modafinil, or selegiline (also effective for treatment of cataplexy), and cataplexies can be treated using tricyclic antidepressants, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, or γ-hydroxybutyrate/sodium oxybate. Medical treatment should always be accompanied by behavioral therapy.

Delayed emergence from anesthesia, postsurgical hypersomnia, and apneic episodes are in part related to an increased sensitivity to anesthetic drugs in narcolepsy patients.[371-373] Monitoring of anesthetic depth might be recommended in this patient population. Medical treatment of narcolepsy should be maintained during the preoperative period.[374,375] The most commonly used treatment of daytime sleepiness is modafinil, which acts via dopaminergic pathways and accelerates emergence from anesthesia.[376,377] Avoidance of sedative premedication and consideration of regional anesthesia may be indicated.[378] Of note, cataplectic events can also occur during regional anesthesia.[379]

Restless Legs Syndrome and Periodic Limb Movement Disorder

Restless legs syndrome, or Ekbom syndrome, is a neurologic disorder with a prevalence of 2% to 5% as defined by four cardinal features, including (1) the urge to move the limbs, usually associated with paresthesias or dysesthesias, (2) aggravating effects of rest, (3) ameliorating effects of physical activity, and (4) symptoms that worsen during the course of day, with a peak during the evening or at night. Patients with restless legs syndrome usually also complain about sensory symptoms in the legs.

Isolated periodic limb movement during sleep is a rare symptom, commonly referred to as *periodic limb movement disorder*. The characteristic periodic episodes of repetitive limb movements during sleep occur most often in the lower extremities, but occasionally in the upper extremities. These movements can be associated with frequent arousals leading to sleep disruption, causing excessive daytime sleepiness, which often is the only symptom reported by the patients themselves in most cases.[380]

Symptomatic restless legs syndrome can occur in patients with iron deficiency and uremia, during pregnancy,[381] or during the use of neurotropic medications (dopamine antagonists, neuroleptics, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, tricyclic antidepressants, antihistamines, caffeine, alcohol, nicotine). Although daytime symptoms of restless legs syndrome can be sufficiently diagnosed clinically (clinical examination in combination with standardized questionnaires), a PSG is recommended to rule out SDB, especially in patients complaining of daytime sleepiness or sleep fragmentation.

According to the most recent guidelines of the AASM, the first-line treatment of restless legs syndrome should consist of dopamine agonists (i.e., ropinirole and pramipexole) in the evening. Furthermore, gabapentin enacarbil, levodopa with dopa decarboxylase inhibitor, or opioids can be used. Medication impairing the dopaminergic system (dopamine antagonists, neuroleptics, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, and tricyclic antidepressants, antihistamines, caffeine, alcohol, and nicotine) should be avoided, if possible.

Exacerbation of restless legs syndrome may occur after general anesthesia,[382] and the urge to move the limbs may be misinterpreted as agitation or delirium.[383] The first manifestation of restless legs syndrome may occur after spinal anesthesia[384] or general anesthesia,[384] and the prevalence of restless legs syndrome after surgery seems to be higher than expected in this population.[382] To prevent perioperative exacerbation of symptoms, patients with restless legs syndrome should be scheduled for surgery early in the day. Restless legs syndrome medication should be continued until the day of surgery, whenever appropriate. Drugs that block the central dopamine transmission, such as neuroleptics, should be avoided. In contrast, ketamine might be the superior anesthetic drug for patients with restless legs syndrome.[385] In addition, intravenous or subcutaneous opioids and benzodiazepines during and after the surgery procedure might be beneficial in patients with restless legs syndrome. The best way to provide symptom relief in patients with restless legs syndrome might be early mobilization after surgery. In patients who are not eligible for mobilization, compression treatment[386] or intravenous administration of magnesium[387] and physiostigmine[388] have been shown to lead to relief of restless legs syndrome symptoms. Iron and ferritin blood levels should be monitored closely before, during, and after surgery, especially in surgical cases with iron loss (i.e., bleeding), to prevent symptomatic restless legs syndrome symptoms.

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and Drs. Sebastian Zaremba and Matthias Eikermann would like to thank Dr. Nancy L. Chamberlin for her contribution to this chapter in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Rosner F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1971;50:298.
2. Rechtschaffen A, et al. *Perspect Biol Med*. 1998;41:359.
3. Mukherjee S, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2015;191(12):1450.
4. Roesslein M, Chung F. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35(4):245.
5. Hobson JA. *Nature*. 2005;437(7063):1254.
6. Aserinsky E, Kleitman N. *Science*. 1953;118(3062):273.
7. Montgomery SM, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2008;28(26):6731.
8. Kronfeld-Schor N, Einat H. *Neuropharmacology*. 2012;62(1):101.
9. Kronfeld-Schor NaTD. *Biol Rhythm Res*. 2008;39(3):193.
10. Hastings MH, et al. *J Neuroendocrinol*. 2008;20(6):812.
11. Albrecht U. *Neuron*. 2012;74(2):246.
12. Lane JM, et al. *Nat Commun*. 2016;7:10889.
13. Danilenko KV, et al. *J Biol Rhythms*. 2003;18(2):170.
14. Borbely AA. *Hum Neurobiol*. 1982;1(3):195.
15. Dijk DJ, von Schantz M. *J Biol Rhythms*. 2005;20(4):279.
16. Hartse KM. *Handb Clin Neurol*. 2011;98:97.
17. Siegel JM. *Nature*. 2005;437(7063):1264.
18. Rial RV, et al. *Neurosci. Biobehav. Rev*. 2010;34(8):1144.
19. De Gennaro L, et al. *Neuroscience*. 2001;107(1):1.
20. Jahnke K, et al. *NeuroImage*. 2012;59(2):1631.
21. Kohsaka S, et al. *Neuroscience*. 2012;202:243.
22. Buckner RL, et al. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2008;1124:1.
23. Alster J, et al. *Brain Inj*. 1993;7(3):191.

24. Lu J, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2006;26(1):193.
25. Pagel JF. *Curr Opin Pulm Med*. 2012;18(6):574.
26. Hallanger AE, et al. *J Comp Neurol*. 1987;262(1):105.
27. Satoh K, Fibiger HC. *J Comp Neurol*. 1986;253(3):277.
28. Lu J, et al. *Nature*. 2006;441(7093):589.
29. Fuller PM, et al. *J Comp Neurol*. 2011;519(5):933.
30. Aston-Jones G, Bloom FE. *J Neurosci*. 1981;1(8):876.
31. Kocsis B, et al. *Proc Nat Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(4):1059.
32. Peyron C, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1998;18(23):9996.
33. Kornum BR, et al. *Curr opin Neurobiol*. 2011;21(6):897.
34. Nishino S, et al. *Lancet*. 2000;355(9197):39.
35. Chemelli RM, et al. *Cell*. 1999;98(4):437.
36. Willie JT, et al. *Neuron*. 2003;38(5):715.
37. Fujiki N, et al. *Sleep*. 2003;26(8):953.
38. Adamantidis AR, et al. *Nature*. 2007;450(7168):420.
39. Trivedi P, et al. *FEBS Lett*. 1998;438(1-2):71.
40. Saper CB, et al. *Nature*. 2005;437(7063):1257.
41. Torrealba F, et al. *Neuroscience*. 2003;119(4):1033.
42. Mang GM, et al. *Sleep*. 2012;35(12):1625.
43. Dugovic C, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2009;330(1):142.
44. Morairty SR, et al. *PLoS One*. 2012;7(7):e39131.
45. Gotter AL, et al. *Sci Rep*. 2016;6:27147.
46. von Economo C. *J Nerv Ment Dis*. 1930;71(3).
47. McGinty DJ, Sterman MB. *Science*. 1968;160(3833):1253.
48. Nauta WJ. *J Neurophysiol*. 1946;9:285.
49. Modirrousta M, et al. *Neuroscience*. 2004;129(3):803.
50. Hassani OK, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106(7):2418.
51. Takahashi K, et al. *Neuroscience*. 2009;161(1):269.
52. Sherin JE, et al. *Science*. 1996;271(5246):216.
53. Lu J, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2000;20(10):3830.
54. Saper CB, et al. *Neuron*. 2010;68(6):1023.
55. Anaclet C, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32(50):17970.
56. Gerashchenko D, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(29):10227.
57. Boissard R, et al. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2003;18(6):1627.
58. Lu J, et al. *Nature*. 2006;441(7093):589.
59. Johns MW. *Chest*. 1993;103(1):30.
60. Beaudreau SA, et al. *Sleep Med*. 2012;13(1):36.
61. Spira AP, et al. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2012;67(4):433.
62. Sil A, Barr G. *J Laryngol Otol*. 2012;126(4):372.
63. Hesselbacher S, et al. *Open Respir Med J*. 2012;6:20.
64. Beaudreau SA, et al. *Sleep Med*. 2012;13(1):36.
65. Spira AP, et al. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2012;67(4):433.
66. Chung F, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2007;19(2):130.
67. Aurora RN, et al. *Sleep*. 2012;35(8):1039.
68. Spruyt K, Gozal D. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2011;15(1):19.
69. Owens JA, et al. *Sleep*. 2000;23(8):1043.
70. Urfer-Maurer N, et al. *Sleep Med*. 2018;48:180.
71. Smarr BL. *J Biol Rhythms*. 2015;30(1):61.
72. Auger RR, et al. *Nat Sci Sleep*. 2013;5:125.
73. Kucharczyk E, et al. *Behav Sleep Med*. 2011;9(4):243.
74. Okun ML, et al. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2009;5(1):41.
75. Chung F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108(5):812.
76. Chung F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(5):768.
77. Kessler RC, et al. *Sleep*. 2010;33(11):1539.
78. Walters AS, et al. *Sleep Med*. 2003;4(2):121.
79. Richards KC, et al. *J Nurs Meas*. 2000;8(2):131.
80. Wright JG, Feinstein AR. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 1992;45(11):1201.
81. Martin JL, Hakim AD. *Chest*. 2011;139(6):1514.
82. Paquet J, et al. *Sleep*. 2007;30(10):1362.
83. Ancoli-Israel S, et al. *Sleep*. 2003;26(3):342.
84. Henriksen A, et al. *J Med Internet Res*. 2018;20(3):e110.
85. Kushida CA, et al. *Sleep*. 2005;28(4):499.
86. Rechtschaffen A, et al. *A Manual of Standardized Terminology, Techniques and Scoring Systems for Sleep Stages of Human Subjects*. Washington, DC: National Health Institutes; 1977.
87. Berry RB, et al. *For the American Academy of Sleep Medicine. The AASM Manual for the Scoring of Sleep and Associated Events: Rules, Terminology and Technical Specifications*. Darien, IL: American Academy of Sleep Medicine; 2017. Version 2.4.
88. Epstein LJ, et al. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2009;5(3):263.
89. Kuna ST, et al. *Proc Am Thorac Soc*. 2011;8(1):1.
90. Fleetham J, et al. *Can Respir J*. 2006;13(7):387.
91. Somers VK, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008;52(8):686.
92. Collop NA, et al. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2007;3(7):737.
93. Kuna ST, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;183(9):1238.
94. Finkel KJ, et al. *Sleep Med*. 2009;10(7):753.
95. Duce B, et al. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2014;10(7):803.
96. Novelli L, et al. *J Sleep Res*. 2010;19(1 Pt 2):238.
97. White DP. *Am J Resp Crit Care Med*. 2005;172(11):1363.
98. Lindberg E. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2000;4(5):411.
99. Vozoris NT. *Sleep Med*. 2012;13(6):637.
100. Young T, et al. *WMJ*. 2009;108(5):246.
101. Schonbeck Y, et al. *PLoS ONE*. 2011;6(11):e27608.
102. Wang YC, et al. *Lancet*. 2011;378(9793):815.
103. Young T, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328(17):1230.
104. Kapur V, et al. *Sleep Breath*. 2002;6(2):49.
105. Bryson GL, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012.
106. Stierer TL, et al. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2010;6(5):467.
107. Weingarten TN, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(1):131.
108. Bamgbade OA, et al. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2017;138(1):69.
109. Young T, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;165(9):1217.
110. Gottlieb DJ, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1999;159(2):502.
111. Redline S, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2010;182(2):269.
112. Carr GE, et al. *Chest*. 2012;141(3):798.
113. Selim B, et al. *Clin Chest Med*. 2010;31(2):203.
114. Tahrani AA, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012.
115. Yaffe K, et al. *JAMA*. 2011;306(6):613.
116. Torelli F, et al. *NeuroImage*. 2011;54(2):787.
117. Canessa N, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;183(10):1419.
118. Lal C, et al. *Chest*. 2012;141(6):1601.
119. Balachandran JS, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2012;109(1):140.
120. Jennum P. *Kjellberg J. Thorax*. 2011;66(7):560.
121. Block AJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1979;300(10):513.
122. Eikermann M, et al. *Chest*. 2007;131(6):1702.
123. Mak KK, et al. *Sleep Med*. 2010;11(3):268.
124. McNicholas WT, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1982;126(4):625.
125. Subramani Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(1):179.
126. Sasaki N, et al. *Anesthiology*. 2013.
127. Butler JE. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2007;159(2):115.
128. Pierce R, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 2007;30(2):345.
129. Chamberlin NL, et al. *J Physiol*. 2007;579(Pt 2):515.
130. Nicholas CL, et al. *Sleep*. 2012;35(5):699.
131. Timm FP, et al. *Sleep*. 2018;41(1).
132. Isono S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(5):1055.
133. Watanabe T, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;165(2):260.
134. Isono S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(4):780.
135. Tagaito Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(4):812.
136. Shiota S, et al. *Thorax*. 2007;62(10):868.
137. Su MC, et al. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2008;161(3):306.
138. Redolfi S, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;184(9):1062.
139. Yumino D, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;121(14):1598.
140. Series F, Marc I. *J Appl Physiol*. 1994;77(2):840.
141. Hoffstein V. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1984;130(2):175.
142. Graaff Van de WB. *J Appl Physiol*. 1991;70(3):1328.
143. Graaff Van de WB. *J Appl Physiol*. 1988;65(5):2124.
144. Mead J, Loring SH. *J Appl Physiol*. 1982;53(3):750.
145. Schwartz AR, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1991;144(3 Pt 1):494.
146. Isono S, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1997;82(4):1319.
147. Fogel RB, et al. *J Physiol*. 2003;550(Pt 3):899.
148. Jelev A, et al. *J Physiol*. 2001;532(Pt 2):467.
149. Jordan AS, White DP. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2008;160(1):1.
150. Gestreau C, et al. *Curr Opin Pulm Med*. 2008;14(6):512.
151. Fogel RB, et al. *J Physiol*. 2005;564(Pt 2):549.
152. Wilkinson V, et al. *Sleep*. 2008;31(4):525.
153. Lo YL, et al. *Thorax*. 2007;62(9):799.
154. Lan MC, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 2015;125(10):2408.
155. Isono S. *Eur Respir J*. 2017;50(3).
156. Safar P. *J Am Med Assoc*. 1958;167(3):335–341.
157. Sato S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(1):28.
158. Stanescu D, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 1996;9(10):2116.
159. Berry RB, Gleeson K. *Sleep*. 1997;20(8):654.
160. Pattinson KT. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(6):747.
161. Szollosi I, et al. *Sleep*. 2006;29(8):1045.
162. Jordan AS, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;184(10):1183.
163. Kushida CA, et al. *Sleep*. 2006;29(3):375.
164. Gay P, et al. *Sleep*. 2006;29(3):381.
165. Giles TL, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;3:CD001106. 2006.

166. Schwab RJ, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1996;154:1106.
167. McDaid C, et al. *Health Technol Assess*. 2009;13(4):143. iii, xi, 1.
168. Weaver TE, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012.
169. McEvoy RD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375(10):919.
170. Morong S, et al. *Sleep Breath*. 2014;18(4):851.
171. Anandam A, et al. *Sleep Breath*. 2013;17(1):227.
172. Gunbey E, et al. *J Craniofac Surg*. 2015;26(4):1287.
173. Halle TR, et al. *Chest*. 2017;152(6):1214.
174. Lorenzi-Filho G, et al. *Respirology*. 2017;22(8):1500.
175. Kushida CA, et al. *Sleep*. 2006;29(2):240.
176. Corral J, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;196(9):1181.
177. Malhotra A, et al. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2015;3(5):397.
178. Collop NA, et al. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2011.
179. Randerath WJ, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 2011;37(5):1000.
180. Reckley LK. *Nat Sci Sleep*. 2018;10:105.
181. Kang KT, et al. *JAMA. Otolayngol Head Neck Surg*. 2017;143(6):561.
182. Schwartz AR, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;185(4):420.
183. Shelton KE, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1993;148(2):462.
184. Oliven A, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 2008;32(5):1309.
185. Veasey SC, et al. *Sleep*. 2006;29(8):1036.
186. Morgenthaler TI, et al. *Sleep*. 2006;29(8):1031.
187. Roland PS, et al. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2011;145(suppl. 1):S1.
188. Malhotra A, Owens RL. *Respir Care*. 2010;55(9):1168.
189. Lanfranchi PA, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;99(11):1435.
190. Somers VK, et al. *Circulation*. 2008;118(10):1080.
191. Malhotra A, White DP. *Lancet*. 2002;360(9328):237.
192. Bixler EO, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2001;163(3 Pt 1):608.
193. Young T, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2002;162(8):893.
194. Naughton MT, Lorenzi-Filho G. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 2009;51(4):339.
195. MacDonald M, et al. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2008;4(1):38.
196. Xie A, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1950;152(6 Pt 1):1995.
197. Piper AJ. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2011;15(2):79.
198. Kessler R, et al. *Chest*. 2001;120(2):369.
199. Olson AL, Zwillich C. *Am J Med*. 2005;118(9):948.
200. Steier J, et al. *Thorax*. 2009;64(8):719.
201. Sampson MG, Grassino K. *Am J Med*. 1983;75(1):81.
202. Lopata M, Onal E. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1982;126(4):640.
203. Phipps PR, et al. *Thorax*. 2002;57(1):75.
204. Shimura R, et al. *Chest*. 2005;127(2):543.
205. Piper AJ, Grunstein RR. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;183(3):292.
206. Resta O, et al. *Respir Med*. 2000;94(3):240.
207. Zavorsky GS, Wilson B. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2010;170(1):120.
208. Ozsancak A, et al. *Chest*. 2008;133(5):1275.
209. Brown EN, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(27):2638.
210. Kochs E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(5):1026.
211. Alkire MT, et al. *Science*. 2008;322(5903):876.
212. Hillman DR, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2010;28(3):443.
213. Lu J, et al. *J Comp Neurol*. 2008;508(4):648.
214. Tung A, Mendelson WB. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2004;8:213.
215. Nelson LE, et al. *Nat Neurosci*. 2002;5(10):979.
216. Moore JT, et al. *Curr Biol*. 2008;22(21):2012.
217. Harrison NL. *Nat Neurosci*. 2002;5(10):928.
218. Franks NP. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9(5):370.
219. Eikermann M, et al. *Brain Res*. 2011;1426:30.
220. Tung A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(4):906.
221. Pal D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(2):302.
222. Brown EN, et al. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2011;34:601.
223. Leung LS, et al. *Prog Neurobiol*. 2014;122:24.
224. Guldenmund P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(4):674.
225. Gogenur I, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(1):45.
226. Gogenur I, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2009;23(5):1026.
227. Rosenberg J. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2001;5(2):129.
228. Rehberg S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(4):629.
229. Kjolhede P, et al. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2012;8(4):395.
230. Krenk L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012.
231. Axelin A, et al. *Eur J Pain*. 2010;14(7):752.
232. Wang D, Teichtahl H. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2007;11(1):35.
233. Kondili E, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012.
234. Gottschlich MM, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2011;32(5):535.
235. Mihara T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012.
236. Cheeseman JF, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109(18):7061.
237. Poulsen RC, et al. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2018;37:35.
238. Lewczuk B, et al. *Neuro Endocrinol Lett*. 1999;20(3-4):171.
239. Sessler DI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(6):985.
240. Vandekerckhove M, Cluydts R. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2010;14(4):219.
241. Gupta RM, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2001;76(9):897.
242. Zaremba S, et al. *F1000Res*. 2016;5.
243. Benumof JL. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2004;17(1):21.
244. Neligan PJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(4):1182.
245. Eikermann M, et al. *Open Respir Med J*. 2010;4:58.
246. Kaw R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012.
247. Kaw R, et al. *Chest*. 2012;141(2):436.
248. Nagappa M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(6):2030.
249. Bateman BT, Eikermann M. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(4):753.
250. Mokhlesi B, et al. *Chest*. 2013;144(3):903.
251. Mokhlesi B, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2013;23(11):1842.
252. Berg G, et al. *Chest*. 2001;120(2):377.
253. Cullen A, Ferguson A. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012.
254. Lakdawala L. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2011;26(1):15.
255. Nowbar S, et al. *Am J Med*. 2004;116(1):1.
256. Redline S, Strohl KP. *Clin Chest Med*. 1998;19(1):1.
257. Shin CH, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2017;17(1):71.
258. Memtsoudis SG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
259. Mokhlesi B, et al. *Sleep Breath*. 2007;11(2):117.
260. Juvin P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(2):595; table of contents.
261. Corso RM, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2011;77(1):99.
262. Isono S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(3):489.
263. Myers TR. *Respir Care*. 2007;52(10):1308; discussion 1327.
264. Atkins JH, Mandel JE. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2018;31(1):120.
265. Lo YL, et al. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2015;11(9):1011.
266. Ruscic KJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129(1):37.
267. Simons JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(3):525.
268. Overdyk FJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(1):259; author reply 260.
269. Hajiha M, et al. *J Physiol*. 2009;587(Pt 11):2677.
270. Eikermann M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(6):1327.
271. Eikermann M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(1):35.
272. Sundman E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(4):977.
273. Eikermann M, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2007;175(1):9.
274. Sauer M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(12):842.
275. Grosse-Sundrup M, et al. *BMJ*. 2012;345:e6329.
276. Eikermann M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(4):621.
277. Payne JP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52(1):69.
278. Fogel RB, et al. *Thorax*. 2004;59(2):159.
279. Zaremba S, et al. *Effects of CPAP treatment on respiratory function in the recovery room following weight loss-surgery: a cross-over design, randomized controlled trial*; 2013. ATS Abstract #43218 2013.
280. Zhang X, et al. *Front Med (Lausanne)*. 2017;4:26.
281. Rao Kadam V, Danesh M. *Sleep Sci*. 2016;9(3):142.
282. Zaremba S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(1):92.
283. Ayas NT, et al. *Ann Am Thorac Soc*. 2018;15(2):117.
284. Chung F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(2):452.
285. Gali B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(4):869.
286. Aurell J, Elmqvist D. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)*. 1985;290(6474):1029.
287. Freedman NS, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2001;163(2):451.
288. Parthasarathy S, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;166(11):1423.
289. Gabor JY, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2003;167(5):708.
290. Cooper AB, et al. *Chest*. 2000;117(3):809.
291. Bosma K, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(4):1048.
292. Gehlbach BK, et al. *Sleep*. 2012;35(8):1105.
293. Boyko Y, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2017;37:99.
294. Watson PL, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41(8):1958.
295. Tainter CR, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(1):147.
296. Elbaz M, et al. *Ann Intensive Care*. 2017;7(1):25.
297. Fan EP, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2017;40:11.
298. Patel J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(6):540.
299. Oldham MA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(1):207.
300. Touitou Y. *Exp Gerontol*. 2001;36(7):1083.
301. Govitrapong P, et al. *J Pineal Res*. 1992;13(3):124.
302. Friese RS, et al. *J Trauma*. 2007;63(6):1210.
303. Hardin KA, et al. *Chest*. 2006;129(6):1468.
304. Elliott R, Nathaney A. *Aust Crit Care*. 2014;27(3):151.
305. Paul T, Lemmer B. *Chronobiol Int*. 2007;24(1):45.
306. Mundigler G, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30(3):536.
307. Olofsson K, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48(6):679.
308. Frisk U, et al. *Clin Sci (Lond)*. 2004;107(1):47.
309. Perras B, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2007;33(11):1954.
310. Riutta A, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35(10):1720.
311. Verceles AC, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38(5):804.

312. Li CX, et al. *Mol Med Rep*. 2013;7(4):1117.
313. Gazendam JAC, et al. *Chest*. 2013;144(2):483.
314. Djeridane Y, Touitou Y. *Chronobiol Int*. 2003;20(2):285.
315. Morera AL, et al. *Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry*. 2009;33(6):1013.
316. Demoule A, et al. *Crit Care*. 2017;21(1):284.
317. Jones C, Dawson D. *Nurs Crit Care*. 2012;17(5):247.
318. Mills GH, Bourne RS. *Crit Care*. 2012;16(4):139.
319. Van Rompaey B, et al. *Crit Care*. 2012;16(3):R73.
320. Ugras GA, et al. *J Neurosci Nurs*. 2015;47(2):104.
321. Tamburri LM, et al. *Am J Crit Care*. 2004;13(2):102.
322. Celik S, et al. *J Clin Nurs*. 2005;14(1):102.
323. Ozsancak A, et al. *Crit Care Clin*. 2008;24(3):517. vi.
324. Kress JP, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;166(8):1024.
325. Trompeo AC, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2011;77(6):604.
326. Kondili E, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38(10):1640.
327. Turner JS, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1990;18(9):966.
328. Bonafide CP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108(4):627.
329. Shapiro BA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23(9):1596.
330. Otmani S, et al. *Hum Psychopharmacol*. 2008;23(8):693.
331. Roth T. *J Clin Psychiatry*. 2007;68(suppl 5):13.
332. Hoque R, Chesson AL. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2009;5(5):471.
333. Shilo L, et al. *Chronobiol Int*. 2000;17(1):71.
334. Ibrahim MG, et al. *Crit Care Resusc*. 2006;8(3):187.
335. Bourne RS, et al. *Crit Care*. 2008;12(2):R52.
336. Lockley SW, et al. *Lancet*. 2015;386(10005):1754.
337. Hatta K, et al. *Bellapart J, Boots R: Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(4):572.
338. Bellapart J, Boots R. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(4):572.
339. Herring WJ, et al. *Neurology*. 2012;79(23):2265.
340. Hatta K, et al. *J Clin Psychiatry*. 2017;78(8):e970.
341. Trinder J, et al. *Eur J Physiol*. 2012;463(1):161.
342. Imeri L. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2009;10(3):199.
343. Faraut B, et al. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2012;16(2):137.
344. Mullington JM, et al. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 2009;51(4):294.
345. Lange T, et al. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2010;1193:48.
346. Sareli AE, Schwab RJ. *Crit Care Clin*. 2008;24(3):613.
347. Spiegel K, et al. *JAMA*. 2002;288(12):1471.
348. Besedovsky L, et al. *Pflugers Arch*. 2012;463(1):121.
349. Irwin M, et al. *FASEB J*. 1996;10(5):643.
350. Benedict C, et al. *Brain Behav Immun*. 2007;21(8):1058.
351. Kaech SM, et al. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4(12):1191.
352. Schmid SM, et al. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2007;92(8):3044.
353. Scrimshaw NS, et al. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 1966;19(5):313.
354. Spiegel K, et al. *Lancet*. 1999;354(9188):1435.
355. Sauvet F, et al. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2010;108(1):68.
356. Chen HI, Tang YR. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1989;140(4):907.
357. White DP, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1983;128(6):984.
358. Phillips B, et al. *South Med J*. 1987;80(1):16.
359. Krause AJ, et al. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2017;18(7):404.
360. Weinhouse GL, et al. *Crit Care*. 2009;13(6):234.
361. Ely EW, et al. *JAMA*. 2004;291(14):1753.
362. Potharajaroen S, et al. *Psychiatry Res*. 2018;261:21.
363. Burry L, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7(3):e015420.
364. Luther R, McLeod A. *Nurs Crit Care*. 2017.
365. Longstreth WT, et al. *Sleep*. 2007;30(1):13.
366. Kornum BR, et al. *Curr Opin Neurobiol*. 2011;21(6):897.
367. Billiard M. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2007;11(5):377.
368. Lin L, et al. *Cell*. 1999;98(3):365.
369. Bonnavion P, de Lecea L. *Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep*. 2010;10(3):174.
370. Dauvilliers Y, et al. *Lancet*. 2007;369(9560):499.
371. Kelz MB, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(4):1309.
372. Burrow B, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17(1):21.
373. Mesa A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(4):1194.
374. Dahaba AA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(2):613.
375. Pelaez R, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18(2):201.
376. Galvin E, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54(2):154.
377. Larijani GE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(4):976.
378. Hu S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(1):233.
379. Soltanifar S, Russell R. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2010;19(4):440.
380. Aurora RN, et al. *Sleep*. 2012;35(8):1039.
381. Ohayon MM, O'Hara R. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2012;16(4):283.
382. Karroum EG, et al. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2010;29(12):920.
383. Shin YK. *South Med J*. 1987;80(2):278.
384. Hogl B, et al. *Neurology*. 2002;59(11):1705.
385. Kapur N, Friedman R. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(6):1558.
386. Krishna M. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(9):973.
387. Bartell S, Zallek S. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2006;2(2):187.
388. Alpert CC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(3):726; table of contents.

References

1. Rosner F, McCall DD, Berman SJ. Anesthesia in the bible and talmud. *Anesth Analg*. 1971;50(2):298–301. PMID 4928222.
2. Rechtschaffen A. Current perspectives on the function of sleep. *Perspect Biol Med*. 1998;41:359–390. PMID 9604368.
3. Mukherjee S, et al. An official American Thoracic Society statement: the importance of healthy sleep. Recommendations and future priorities. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2015;191(12):1450–1458. PMID 26075423.
4. Roesslein M, Chung F. Obstructive sleep apnoea in adults: peri-operative considerations: a narrative review. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35(4):245–255. PMID 29300271.
5. Hobson JA. Sleep is of the brain, by the brain and for the brain. *Nature*. 2005;437(7063):1254–1256. PMID 16251949.
6. Aserinsky E, Kleitman N. Regularly occurring periods of eye motility, and concomitant phenomena, during sleep. *Science*. 1953;118(3062):273–274.
7. Montgomery SM, Sirota A, Buzsaki G. Theta and gamma coordination of hippocampal networks during waking and rapid eye movement sleep. *J Neurosci*. 2008;28(26):6731–6741. PMID 18579747.
8. Kronfeld-Schor N, Einat H. Circadian rhythms and depression: human psychopathology and animal models. *Neuropharmacology*. 2012;62(1):101–114. PMID 21871466.
9. Kronfeld-Schor N, Dayan T. Activity patterns of rodents: the physiologocal ecology of biological rhythms. *Biological Rhythm Research*. 2008;39(3):193–211.
10. Hastings MH, Maywood ES, Reddy AB. Two decades of circadian time. *J Neuroendocrinol*. 2008;20(6):812–819. PMID 18601704.
11. Albrecht U. Timing to perfection: the biology of central and peripheral circadian clocks. *Neuron*. 2012;74(2):246–260. PMID 22542179.
12. Lane JM, et al. Genome-wide association analysis identifies novel loci for chronotype in 100,420 individuals from the UK Biobank. *Nat Commun*. 2016;7:10889. PMID 26955885.
13. Danilenko KV, Cajochen C, Wirz-Justice A. Is sleep per se a zeitgeber in humans? *J Biol Rhythms*. 2003;18(2):170. PMID 12693871.
14. Borbely AA. A two process model of sleep regulation. *Hum Neurobiol*. 1982;1(3):195–204. PMID 7185792.
15. Dijk DJ, von Schantz M. Timing and consolidation of human sleep, wakefulness, and performance by a symphony of oscillators. *J Biol Rhythms*. 2005;20(4):279–290. PMID 16077148.
16. Hartse KM. The phylogeny of sleep. *Handb Clin Neurol*. 2011;98:97–109. PMID 21056182.
17. Siegel JM. Clues to the functions of mammalian sleep. *Nature*. 2005;437(7063):1264–1271. PMID 16251951.
18. Rial RV, et al. Evolution of wakefulness, sleep and hibernation: from reptiles to mammals. *Neurosci Biobehav Rev* 2010;34(8):1144–1160. PMID 20109487.
19. De Gennaro L, Ferrara M, Bertini M. The boundary between wakefulness and sleep: quantitative electroencephalographic changes during the sleep onset period. *Neuroscience*. 2001;107(1):1–11. PMID 11744241.
20. Jahnke K, et al. To wake or not to wake? The two-sided nature of the human K-complex. *NeuroImage*. 2012;59(2):1631–1638. PMID 21945697.
21. Kohsaka S, et al. Activation of the brainstem precedes and outlasts the K-complex in humans. *Neuroscience*. 2012;202:243–251. PMID 22155495.
22. Buckner RL, Andrews-Hanna JR, Schacter DL. The brain's default network: anatomy, function, and relevance to disease. *Ann N. Y Acad Sci*. 2008;1124:1–38. PMID 18400922.
23. Alster J, Pratt H, Feinsod M. Density spectral array, evoked potentials, and temperature rhythms in the evaluation and prognosis of the comatose patient. *Brain Inj*. 1993;7(3):19–208. PMID 8508176.
24. Lu J, Jhou TC, Saper CB. Identification of wake-active dopaminergic neurons in the ventral periaqueductal gray matter. *J Neurosci*. 2006;26(1):193–202. PMID 16399687.
25. Pagel JF. What physicians need to know about dreams and dreaming. *Curr Opin Pulm Med*. 2012;18(6):574–579. PMID 22965274.
26. Hallanger AE, et al. The origins of cholinergic and other subcortical afferents to the thalamus in the rat. *J Comp Neurol*. 1987;262(1):105–124. PMID 2442206.
27. Satoh K, Fibiger HC. Cholinergic neurons of the laterodorsal tegmental nucleus: efferent and afferent connections. *J Comp Neurol*. 1986;253(3):277–302. PMID 2432101.
28. Lu J, et al. A putative flip-flop switch for control of REM sleep. *Nature*. 2006;441(7093):589–594. PMID 16688184.
29. Fuller PM, et al. Reassessment of the structural basis of the ascending arousal system. *J Comp Neurol*. 2011;519(5):933–956. PMID 21280045.
30. Aston-Jones G, Bloom FE. Activity of norepinephrine-containing locus coeruleus neurons in behaving rats anticipates fluctuations in the sleep-waking cycle. *J Neurosci*. 1981;1(8):876–886. PMID 7346592.
31. Kocsis B, et al. Serotonergic neuron diversity: identification of raphe neurons with discharges time-locked to the hippocampal theta rhythm. *Proc Nat Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103(4):1059–1064. PMID 16418294.
32. Peyron C, et al. Neurons containing hypocretin (orexin) project to multiple neuronal systems. *J Neurosci*. 1998;18(23):9996–10015. PMID 9822755.
33. Kornum BR, Faraco J, Mignot E. Narcolepsy with hypocretin/orexin deficiency, infections and autoimmunity of the brain. *Curr Opin Neurobiol*. 2011;21(6):897–903. PMID 21963829.
34. Nishino S, et al. Hypocretin (orexin) deficiency in human narcolepsy. *Lancet*. 2000;355(9197):39–40. PMID 10615891.
35. Chemelli RM, et al. Narcolepsy in orexin knockout mice: molecular genetics of sleep regulation. *Cell*. 1999;98(4):437–451. PMID 10481909.
36. Willie JT, et al. Distinct narcolepsy syndromes in oorexin receptor-2 and orexin null mice: molecular genetic dissection of non-REM and REM sleep regulatory processes. *Neuron*. 2003;38(5):715–730. PMID 12797957.
37. Fujiki N, et al. Effects of IV and ICV hypocretin-1 (orexin A) in hypocretin receptor-2 gene mutated narcoleptic dogs and IV hypocretin-1 replacement therapy in a hypocretin-ligand-deficient narcoleptic dog. *Sleep*. 2003;26(8):953–959. PMID 14746374.
38. Adamantidis AR, et al. Neural substrates of awakening probed with optogenetic control of hypocretin neurons. *Nature*. 2007;450(7168):420–424. PMID 17943086.
39. Trivedi P, et al. Distribution of orexin receptor mRNA in the rat brain. *FEBS Lett*. 1998;438(1-2):71–75. PMID 9821961.
40. Saper CB, Scammell TE, Lu J. Hypothalamic regulation of sleep and circadian rhythms. *Nature*. 2005;437(7063):1257–1263. PMID 16251950.
41. Torrealba F, Yanagisawa M, Saper CB. Colocalization of orexin a and glutamate immunoreactivity in axon terminals in the tuberomammillary nucleus in rats. *Neuroscience*. 2003;119(4):1033–1044. PMID 12831862.
42. Mang GM, et al. The dual orexin receptor antagonist almorexant induces sleep and decreases orexin-induced locomotion by blocking orexin 2 receptors. *Sleep*. 2012;35(12):1625–1635. PMID 23204605.
43. Dugovic C, et al. Blockade of orexin-1 receptors attenuates orexin-2 receptor antagonism-induced sleep promotion in the rat. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2009;330(1):142–151. PMID 19363060.
44. Morairty SR, et al. Dual hypocretin receptor antagonism is more effective for sleep promotion than antagonism of either receptor alone. *PLoS One*. 2012;7(7):e39131. PMID 22768296.
45. Gotter AL, et al. Orexin 2 receptor antagonism is sufficient to promote NREM and REM sleep from mouse to man. *Sci Rep*. 2016;6:27147. PMID 17156922.
46. von Economo C. Sleep as a problem of localization. *J Nerv Ment Dis*. 1930;71(3).
47. McGinty DJ, Sterman MB. Sleep suppression after basal forebrain lesions in the cat. *Science*. 1968;160(3833):1253–1255. PMID 5689683.
48. Nauta WJ. Hypothalamic regulation of sleep in rats; an experimental study. *J Neurophysiol*. 1946;9:285–316. PMID 20991815.
49. Modirrousta M, Mainville L, Jones BE. Gabaergic neurons with alpha2-adrenergic receptors in basal forebrain and preoptic area express c-Fos during sleep. *Neuroscience*. 2004;129(3):803–810. PMID 15541901.
50. Hassani OK, Lee MG, Jones BE. Melanin-concentrating hormone neurons discharge in a reciprocal manner to orexin neurons across the sleep-wake cycle. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106(7):2418–2422. PMID 19188611.
51. Takahashi K, Lin JS, Sakai K. Characterization and mapping of sleep-waking specific neurons in the basal forebrain and preoptic hypothalamus in mice. *Neuroscience*. 2009;161(1):269–292. PMID 19285545.

52. Sherin JE, et al. Activation of ventrolateral preoptic neurons during sleep. *Science*. 1996;271(5246):216–219. PMID 8539624.
53. Lu J, et al. Effect of lesions of the ventrolateral preoptic nucleus on NREM and REM sleep. *J Neurosci*. 2000;20(10):3830–3842. PMID 10804223.
54. Saper CB, et al. Sleep state switching. *Neuron*. 2010;68(6):1023–1042. PMID 21172606.
55. Anaclet C, et al. Identification and characterization of a sleep-active cell group in the rostral medullary brainstem. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32(50):17970–17976. PMID 23238713.
56. Gerashchenko D, et al. Identification of a population of sleep-active cerebral cortex neurons. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(29):10227–10232. PMID 18645184.
57. Boissard R, et al. Localization of the GABAergic and non-GABAergic neurons projecting to the sublaterodorsal nucleus and potentially gating paradoxical sleep onset. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2003;18(6):1627–1639. PMID 14511341.
58. Lu J, et al. A putative flip–flop switch for control of REM sleep. *Nature*. 2006;441(7093):589–594. PMID 16688184.
59. Johns MW. Daytime sleepiness, snoring, and obstructive sleep apnea. The Epworth Sleepiness Scale. *Chest*. 1993;103(1):30–36. PMID 8417909.
60. Beaudreau SA, et al. Validation of the Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index and the Epworth Sleepiness Scale in older black and white women. *Sleep Med*. 2012;13(1):36–42. PMID 22033120.
61. Spira AP, et al. Reliability and validity of the Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index and the Epworth Sleepiness Scale in older men. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2012;67(4):433–439. PMID 21934125.
62. Sil A, Barr G. Assessment of predictive ability of Epworth scoring in screening of patients with sleep apnoea. *J Laryngol Otol*. 2012;126(4):372–379. PMID 22152589.
63. Hesselbacher S, et al. Body mass index, gender, and ethnic variations alter the clinical implications of the Epworth Sleepiness Scale in patients with suspected obstructive sleep apnea. *Open Respir Med J*. 2012;6:20–27. PMID 22670164.
64. Beaudreau SA, et al. Validation of the Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index and the Epworth Sleepiness Scale in older black and white women. *Sleep Med*. 2012;13(1):36–42. PMID 22033120.
65. Spira AP, et al. Reliability and validity of the Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index and the Epworth Sleepiness Scale in older men. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2012;67(4):433–439. PMID 21934125.
66. Chung F, et al. Preoperative identification of sleep apnea risk in elective surgical patients, using the Berlin questionnaire. *J Clin Anesth*. 2007;19(2):130–134. PMID 17379126.
67. Aurora RN, et al. Update to the AASM clinical practice guideline: "The treatment of restless legs syndrome and periodic limb movement disorder in adults-an update for 2012: practice parameters with an evidence-based systematic review and meta-analyses". *Sleep*. 2012;35(8):1039. PMID 22851800.
68. Spruyt K, Gozal D. Pediatric sleep questionnaires as diagnostic or epidemiological tools: a review of currently available instruments. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2011;15(1):19–32. PMID 20934896.
69. Owens JA, Spirito A, McGuinn M. The Children's Sleep Habits Questionnaire (CSHQ): psychometric properties of a survey instrument for school-aged children. *Sleep*. 2000;23(8):1043–1051. PMID 11145319.
70. Urfer-Maurer N, et al. Correspondence of maternal and paternal perception of school-aged children's sleep with in-home sleep-electroencephalography and diary-reports of children's sleep. *Sleep Med*. 2018;48:180–186. PMID 29960212.
71. Smarr BL. Digital sleep logs reveal potential impacts of modern temporal structure on class performance in different chronotypes. *J Biol Rhythms*. 2015;30(1):61–67. PMID 25564433.
72. Auger RR, et al. Total sleep time obtained from actigraphy versus sleep logs in an academic sleep center and impact on further sleep testing. *Nat Sci Sleep*. 2013;5:125–131. PMID 24124399.
73. Kucharczyk E, et al. The Loughborough Occupational Impact of Sleep Scale (LOISS): a new instrument for research and clinical practice. *Behav Sleep Med*. 2011;9(4):243–256. PMID 22003978.
74. Okun ML, et al. Psychometric evaluation of the Insomnia Symptom Questionnaire: a self-report measure to identify chronic insomnia. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2009;5(1):41–51. PMID 19317380.
75. Chung F, et al. STOP questionnaire: a tool to screen patients for obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108(5):812–821. PMID 18431116.
76. Chung F, et al. High STOP-Bang score indicates a high probability of obstructive sleep apnoea. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(5):768–775. PMID 22401881.
77. Kessler RC, et al. Reliability and validity of the Brief Insomnia Questionnaire in the America insomnia survey. *Sleep*. 2010;33(11):1539–1549. PMID 21102996.
78. Walters AS, et al. Validation of the International Restless Legs Syndrome Study Group Rating Scale for restless legs syndrome. *Sleep Med*. 2003;4(2):121–132. PMID 14592342.
79. Richards KC, O'Sullivan PS, Phillips RL. Measurement of sleep in critically ill patients. *J Nurs Meas*. 2000;8(2):131–144. PMID 11227580.
80. Wright JG, Feinstein AR. A comparative contrast of clinimetric and psychometric methods for constructing indexes and rating scales. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 1992;45(11):1201–1218. PMID 1432001.
81. Martin JL, Hakim AD. Wrist actigraphy. *Chest*. 2011;139(6):1514–1527. PMID 21652563.
82. Paquet J, Kawinska A, Carrier J. Wake detection capacity of actigraphy during sleep. *Sleep*. 2007;30(10):1362–1369. PMID 17969470.
83. Ancoli-Israel S, et al. The role of actigraphy in the study of sleep and circadian rhythms. *Sleep*. 2003;26(3):342–392. PMID 12749557.
84. Henriksen A, et al. Using fitness trackers and smartwatches to measure physical activity in research: analysis of consumer wrist-worn wearables. *J Med Internet Res*. 2018;20(3):e110. PMID 29567635.
85. Kushida CA, et al. Practice parameters for the indications for polysomnography and related procedures: an update for 2005. *Sleep*. 2005;28(4):499–521. PMID 16171294.
86. Rechtschaffen A, Kales A. *A Manual of Standardized Terminology, Techniques and Scoring Systems for Sleep Stages of Human Subjects*. Washington, DC: National Health Institutes; 1977.
87. Berry RB, Brooks R, Gamaldo CE, et al. For the American Academy of Sleep Medicine. *The AASM Manual for the Scoring of Sleep and Associated Events: Rules, Terminology and Technical Specifications*. Darien, IL: *Am Academy Sleep Med;* 2017. Version 2.4.
88. Epstein LJ, et al. Clinical guideline for the evaluation, management and long-term care of obstructive sleep apnea in adults. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2009;5(3):263–276. PMID 19960649.
89. Kuna ST, et al. An official ATS/AASM/ACCP/ERS workshop report: research priorities in ambulatory management of adults with obstructive sleep apnea. *Proc Am Thorac Soc*. 2011;8(1):1–16. PMID 21364215.
90. Fleetham J, et al. Canadian Thoracic Society guidelines: diagnosis and treatment of sleep disordered breathing in adults. *Can Respir J*. 2006;13(7):387–392. PMID 17036094.
91. Somers VK, et al. Sleep apnea and cardiovascular disease: an American Heart Association/American College of Cardiology Foundation Scientific Statement from the American Heart Association Council for High Blood Pressure Research Professional Education Committee, Council on Clinical Cardiology, Stroke Council, and Council on Cardiovascular Nursing. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008;52(8):686–717. PMID 18725495.
92. Collop NA, et al. Clinical guidelines for the use of unattended portable monitors in the diagnosis of obstructive sleep apnea in adult patients. portable monitoring task force of the American Academy of Sleep Medicine. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2007;3(7):737–747. PMID 18198809.
93. Kuna ST, et al. Noninferiority of functional outcome in ambulatory management of obstructive sleep apnea. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;183(9):1238–1244. PMID 21471093.
94. Finkel KJ, et al. Prevalence of undiagnosed obstructive sleep apnea among adult surgical patients in an academic medical center. *Sleep Med*. 2009;10(7):753–758. PMID 19186102.
95. Duce B, et al. The AASM recommended and acceptable EEG montages are comparable for the staging of sleep and scoring of EEG arousals. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2014;10(7):803–809. PMID 25024660.
96. Novelli L, Ferri R, Bruni O. Sleep classification according to AASM and Rechtschaffen and Kales: effects on sleep scoring parameters of children and adolescents. *J Sleep Res*. 2010;19(1 Pt 2):238–247. PMID 19912509.
97. White DP. Pathogenesis of obstructive and central sleep apnea. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2005;172(11):1363–1370. PMID 16100008.
98. Lindberg E, Gislason T. Epidemiology of sleep-related obstructive breathing. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2000;4(5):411–433. PMID 17210275.

99. Vozoris NT. Sleep apnea-plus: prevalence, risk factors, and association with cardiovascular diseases using United States population-level data. *Sleep Med*. 2012;13(6):637–644. PMID 22475994.
100. Young T, et al. Burden of sleep apnea: rationale, design, and major findings of the Wisconsin Sleep Cohort study. *WMJ*. 2009;108(5):246–249. PMID 19743755.
101. Schonbeck Y, et al. Increase in prevalence of overweight in Dutch children and adolescents: a comparison of nationwide growth studies in 1980, 1997 and 2009. *PLoS ONE*. 2011;6(11):e27608. PMID 22110687.
102. Wang YC, et al. Health and economic burden of the projected obesity trends in the USA and the UK. *Lancet*. 2011;378(9793):815–825. PMID 21872570.
103. Young T, et al. The occurrence of sleep-disordered breathing among middle-aged adults. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328(17):1230–1235. PMID 8464434.
104. Kapur V, et al. Underdiagnosis of sleep apnea syndrome in U.S. communities. *Sleep Breath*. 2002;6(2):49–54. PMID 12075479.
105. Bryson GL, et al. Unplanned admission after day surgery: a historical cohort study in patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012. PMID 22766625.
106. Stierer TL, et al. Risk assessment of obstructive sleep apnea in a population of patients undergoing ambulatory surgery. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2010;6(5):467–472. PMID 20957847.
107. Weingarten TN, et al. Obstructive sleep apnoea and perioperative complications in bariatric patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(1):131–139. PMID 20959329.
108. Bamgbade OA, et al. Obstructive sleep apnea and postoperative complications among patients undergoing gynecologic oncology surgery. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2017;138(1):69–73. PMID 28346681.
109. Young T, Peppard PE, Gottlieb DJ. Epidemiology of obstructive sleep apnea: a population health perspective. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;165(9):1217–1239. PMID 11991871.
110. Gottlieb DJ, et al. Relation of sleepiness to respiratory disturbance index: the sleep heart health study. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1999;159(2):502–507. PMID 9927364.
111. Redline S, et al. Obstructive sleep apnea-hypopnea and incident stroke: the sleep heart health study. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2010;182(2):269–277. PMID 20339144.
112. Carr GE, Mokhlesi B, Gehlbach BK. Acute cardiopulmonary failure from sleep-disordered breathing. *Chest*. 2012;141(3):798–808. PMID 22396567.
113. Selim B, Won C, Yaggi HK. Cardiovascular consequences of sleep apnea. *Clin Chest Med*. 2010;31(2):203–2020. PMID 20488282.
114. Tahrani AA, et al. Obstructive sleep apnea and diabetic neuropathy: a novel association in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;186(5):434–441. PMID 22723291.
115. Yaffe K, et al. Sleep-disordered breathing, hypoxia, and risk of mild cognitive impairment and dementia in older women. *JAMA*. 2011;306(6):613–619. PMID 21828324.
116. Torelli F, et al. Cognitive profile and brain morphological changes in obstructive sleep apnea. *NeuroImage*. 2011;54(2):787–793. PMID 20888921.
117. Canessa N, et al. Obstructive sleep apnea: brain structural changes and neurocognitive function before and after treatment. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;183(10):1419–1426. PMID 21037021.
118. Lal C, Strange C, Bachman D. Neurocognitive impairment in obstructive sleep apnea. *Chest*. 2012;141(6):1601–1610. PMID 22670023.
119. Balachandran JS, et al. Effect of mild, asymptomatic obstructive sleep apnea on daytime heart rate variability and impedance cardiography measurements. *Am J Cardiol*. 2012;109(1):140–145. PMID 21945139.
120. Jennum P, Kjellberg J. Health, social and economical consequences of sleep-disordered breathing: a controlled national study. *Thorax*. 2011;66(7):560–566. PMID 21199816.
121. Block AJ, et al. Sleep apnea, hypopnea and oxygen desaturation in normal subjects. A strong male predominance. *N Engl J Med*. 1979;300(10):513–517. PMID 216912.
122. Eikermann M, et al. The influence of aging on pharyngeal collapsibility during sleep. *Chest*. 2007;131(6):1702–179. PMID 17413053.
123. Mak KK, et al. Smoking and sleep disorders in Chinese adolescents. *Sleep Med*. 2010;11(3):268–273. PMID 20176504.
124. McNicholas WT, et al. Obstructive apneas during sleep in patients with seasonal allergic rhinitis. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1982;126(4):625–628. PMID 7125355.
125. Subramani Y, et al. Understanding phenotypes of obstructive sleep apnea: applications in anesthesia, surgery, and perioperative medicine. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(1):179–191. PMID 27861433.
126. Sasaki N, Meyer MJ, Eikermann M. Postoperative respiratory muscle dysfunction: pathophysiology and preventive strategies. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(4):961–978. PMID 23429163.
127. Butler JE. Drive to the human respiratory muscles. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2007;159(2):115–126. PMID 17660051.
128. Pierce R, et al. Upper airway collapsibility, dilator muscle activation and resistance in sleep apnoea. *Eur Respir J*. 2007;30(2):345–353. PMID 17459896.
129. Chamberlin NL, et al. Genioglossus premotoneurons and the negative pressure reflex in rats. *J Physiol*. 2007;579(Pt 2):515–526. PMID 17185342.
130. Nicholas CL, et al. Discharge patterns of human tensor palatini motor units during sleep onset. *Sleep*. 2012;35(5):699–707. PMID 22547896.
131. Timm FP, et al. Effects of opioids given to facilitate mechanical ventilation on sleep apnea after extubation in the intensive care unit. *Sleep*. 2018;41(1). PMID 29182729.
132. Isono S, et al. Pharyngeal patency in response to advancement of the mandible in obese anesthetized persons. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(5):1055–1062. PMID 9366456.
133. Watanabe T, et al. Contribution of body habitus and craniofacial characteristics to segmental closing pressures of the passive pharynx in patients with sleep-disordered breathing. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;165(2):260–265. PMID 11790665.
134. Isono S, Tanaka A, Nishino T. Lateral position decreases collapsibility of the passive pharynx in patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(4):780–785. PMID 12357140.
135. Tagaito Y, et al. Sitting posture decreases collapsibility of the passive pharynx in anesthetized paralyzed patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(4):812–818. PMID 20823756.
136. Shiota S, et al. Alterations in upper airway cross-sectional area in response to lower body positive pressure in healthy subjects. *Thorax*. 2007;62(10):868–872. PMID 17442706.
137. Su MC, et al. Lower body positive pressure increases upper airway collapsibility in healthy subjects. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2008;161(3):306–312. PMID 18439881.
138. Redolfi S, et al. Attenuation of obstructive sleep apnea by compression stockings in subjects with venous insufficiency. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;184(9):1062–1066. PMID 21836140.
139. Yumino D, et al. Nocturnal rostral fluid shift: a unifying concept for the pathogenesis of obstructive and central sleep apnea in men with heart failure. *Circulation*. 2010;121(14):1598–1605. PMID 20351237.
140. Series F, Marc I. Influence of lung volume dependence of upper airway resistance during continuous negative airway pressure. *J Appl Physiol*. 1994;77(2):840–844. PMID 8002537.
141. Hoffstein V, Zamel N, Phillipson EA. Lung volume dependence of pharyngeal cross-sectional area in patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1984;130(2):175–178. PMID 6465671.
142. Van de Graaff WB. Thoracic traction on the trachea: mechanisms and magnitude. *J Appl Physiol*. 1991;70(3):1328–1336. PMID 2033000.
143. Van de Graaff WB. Thoracic influence on upper airway patency. *J Appl Physiol*. 1988;65(5):2124–2131. PMID 3209556.
144. Mead J, Loring SH. Analysis of volume displacement and length changes of the diaphragm during breathing. *J Appl Physiol Respir Environ Exerc Physiol*. 1982;53(3):750–755. PMID 6215387.
145. Schwartz AR, et al. Effect of weight loss on upper airway collapsibility in obstructive sleep apnea. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1991;144(3 Pt 1):494–498. PMID 1892285.
146. Isono S, et al. Anatomy of pharynx in patients with obstructive sleep apnea and in normal subjects. *J Appl Physiol*. 1997;82(4):1319–1326. PMID 9104871.
147. Fogel RB, et al. Within-breath control of genioglossal muscle activation in humans: effect of sleep-wake state. *J Physiol*. 2003;550(Pt 3):899–910. PMID 12807995.
148. Jelev A, et al. Microdialysis perfusion of 5-HT into hypoglossal motor nucleus differentially modulates genioglossus activity across natural sleep-wake states in rats. *J Physiol*. 2001;532(Pt 2):467–481. PMID 11306665.
149. Jordan AS, White DP. Pharyngeal motor control and the pathogenesis of obstructive sleep apnea. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2008;160(1):1–7. PMID 17869188.

150. Gestreau C, Bevengut M M, Dutschmann M. The dual role of the orexin/hypocretin system in modulating wakefulness and respiratory drive. *Curr Opin Pulm Med*. 2008;14(6):512–518. PMID 18812827.
151. Fogel RB, et al. The effect of sleep onset on upper airway muscle activity in patients with sleep apnoea versus controls. *J Physiol*. 2005;564(Pt 2):549–562. PMID 15695240.
152. Wilkinson V, et al. Discharge patterns of human genioglossus motor units during sleep onset. *Sleep*. 2008;31(4):525–533. PMID 18457240.
153. Lo YL, et al. Influence of wakefulness on pharyngeal airway muscle activity. *Thorax*. 2007;62(9):799–805. PMID 17389755.
154. Lan MC, et al. Lateral pharyngeal wall collapse associated with hypoxemia in obstructive sleep apnea. *Laryngoscope*. 2015;125(10):2408–2412. PMID 25582498.
155. Isono S. Two valves in the pharynx. *Eur Respir J*. 2017;50(3). PMID 28931669.
156. Safar P. Ventilatory efficacy of mouth-to-mouth artificial respiration, airway obstruction during manual and mouth-to-mouth artificial respiration. *J Am Med Assoc*. 1958;167(3):335–341. PMID 13538712.
157. Sato S, et al. Mask ventilation during induction of general anesthesia: influences of obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(1):28–38. PMID 27811485.
158. Stanescu D, et al. Expiratory flow limitation during sleep in heavy snorers and obstructive sleep apnoea patients. *Eur Respir J*. 1996;9(10):2116–2121. PMID 8902476.
159. Berry RB, Gleeson K. Respiratory arousal from sleep: mechanisms and significance. *Sleep*. 1997;20(8):654–675. PMID 9351134.
160. Pattinson KT. Opioids and the control of respiration. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(6):747–758. PMID 18456641.
161. Szollosi I, et al. Lateral sleeping position reduces severity of central sleep apnea/Cheyne-Stokes respiration. *Sleep*. 2006;29(8):1045–1051. PMID 16944673.
162. Jordan AS, et al. Termination of respiratory events with and without cortical arousal in obstructive sleep apnea. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;184(10):1183–1191. PMID 21836132.
163. Kushida CA, et al. Practice parameters for the use of continuous and bilevel positive airway pressure devices to treat adult patients with sleep-related breathing disorders. *Sleep*. 2006;29(3):375–380. PMID 16553024.
164. Gay P, et al. Evaluation of positive airway pressure treatment for sleep related breathing disorders in adults. *Sleep*. 2006;29(3):381–401. PMID 16553025.
165. Giles TL, et al. Continuous positive airways pressure for obstructive sleep apnoea in adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;3:CD001106. PMID 16437429.
166. Schwab RJ, et al. Upper airway and soft tissue structural changes induced by CPAP in normal subjects. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1996;154:1106–1116. PMID8887615.
167. McDaid C, et al. Continuous positive airway pressure devices for the treatment of obstructive sleep apnoea-hypopnoea syndrome: a systematic review and economic analysis. *Health Technol Assess*. 2009;13(4):iii-iv, xi-xiv, 1–119, 143–274. PMID 19103134.
168. Weaver TE, et al. CPAP treatment of sleepy patients with milder OSA: results of the CATNAP randomized clinical trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012. PMID 22837377.
169. McEvoy RD, et al. CPAP for prevention of cardiovascular events in obstructive sleep apnea. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375(10):919–931. PMID 27571048.
170. Morong S, et al. The effect of weight loss on OSA severity and position dependence in the bariatric population. *Sleep Breath*. 2014;18(4):851–856. PMID 24584563.
171. Anandam A, et al. Effects of dietary weight loss on obstructive sleep apnea: a meta-analysis. *Sleep Breath*. 2013;17(1):227–234. PMID 22374151.
172. Gunbey E, et al. Impact of multilevel surgical treatment on mean platelet volume in patients with obstructive sleep apnea syndrome. *J Craniofac Surg*. 2015;26(4):1287–1289. PMID 26080177.
173. Halle TR, et al. Surgical treatment of osa on cardiovascular outcomes: a systematic review. *Chest*. 2017;152(6):1214–1229. PMID 28923761.
174. Lorenzi-Filho G, Almeida FR, Strollo PJ. Treating OSA: current and emerging therapies beyond CPAP. *Respirology*. 2017;22(8):1500–1507. PMID 28901030.
175. Kushida CA, et al. Practice parameters for the treatment of snoring and obstructive sleep apnea with oral appliances: an update for 2005. *Sleep*. 2006;29(2):240–243. PMID 16494092.
176. Corral J, et al. Conventional polysomnography is not necessary for the management of most patients with suspected obstructive sleep apnea. Noninferiority, randomized controlled trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;196(9):1181–1190. PMID 28636405.
177. Malhotra A, Orr JE, Owens RL. on the cutting edge of obstructive sleep apnoea: where next? *Lancet Respir Med*. 2015;3(5):397–403. PMID 25887980.
178. Collop NA, et al. Obstructive sleep apnea devices for Out-Of-Center (OOC) testing: technology evaluation. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2011. PMID 22003351.
179. Randerath WJ, et al. Non-CPAP therapies in obstructive sleep apnoea. *Eur Respir J*. 2011;37(5):1000–1028. PMID 21406515.
180. Reckley LK. The effect of tonsillectomy on obstructive sleep apnea: an overview of systematic reviews. *Nat Sci Sleep*. 2018;10:105–110. PMID 29670412.
181. Kang KT, et al. Lingual tonsillectomy for treatment of pediatric obstructive sleep apnea: a meta-analysis. *JAMA Otolayngol Head Neck Surg*. 2017;143(6):561–568. PMID 28208178.
182. Schwartz AR, et al. Acute upper airway responses to hypoglossal nerve stimulation during sleep in obstructive sleep apnea. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;185(4):420–426. PMID 22135343.
183. Shelton KE, et al. Pharyngeal fat in obstructive sleep apnea. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1993;148(2):462–466. PMID 8342912.
184. Oliven A, et al. Collapsibility of the relaxed pharynx and risk of sleep apnoea. *Eur Respir J*. 2008;32(5):1309–1315. PMID 18550611.
185. Veasey SC, et al. Medical therapy for obstructive sleep apnea: a review by the Medical Therapy for Obstructive Sleep Apnea Task Force of the Standards of Practice Committee of the American Academy of Sleep Medicine. *Sleep*. 2006;29(8):1036–1044. PMID 16944672.
186. Morgenthaler TI, et al. Practice parameters for the medical therapy of obstructive sleep apnea. *Sleep*. 2006;29(8):1031–1035. PMID 16944671.
187. Roland PS, et al. Clinical practice guideline: polysomnography for sleep-disordered breathing prior to tonsillectomy in children. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2011;145(suppl 1):S1–S15. PMID 21676944.
188. Malhotra A, Owens RL. What is central sleep apnea? *Respir Care*. 2010;55(9):1168–1178. PMID 20799999.
189. Lanfranchi PA, et al. Prognostic value of nocturnal Cheyne-Stokes respiration in chronic heart failure. *Circulation*. 1999;99(11):1435–1440. PMID 10086966.
190. Somers VK, et al. Sleep apnea and cardiovascular disease: an American Heart Association/American College of Cardiology Foundation scientific statement from the American Heart Association Council for High Blood Pressure Research Professional Education Committee, Council on Clinical Cardiology, Stroke Council, and Council on CardioVascular Nursing. In collaboration with the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute National Center on Sleep Disorders Research (National Institutes of Health). *Circulation*. 2008;118(10):1080–1111. PMID 18725495.
191. Malhotra A, White DP. Obstructive sleep apnoea. *Lancet*. 2002;360(9328):237–245. PMID 12133673.
192. Bixler EO, et al. Prevalence of sleep-disordered breathing in women: effects of gender. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2001;163(3 Pt 1):608–613. PMID 11254512.
193. Young T, et al. Predictors of sleep-disordered breathing in community-dwelling adults: the sleep heart health study. *Arch Intern Med*. 2002;162(8):893–900. PMID 11966340.
194. Naughton MT, Lorenzi-Filho G. Sleep in heart failure. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 2009;51(4):339–349. PMID 19110135.
195. MacDonald M, et al. The current prevalence of sleep disordered breathing in congestive heart failure patients treated with beta-blockers. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2008;4(1):38–42. PMID 18350960.
196. Xie A, et al. Hypocapnia and increased ventilatory responsiveness in patients with idiopathic central sleep apnea. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1995;152(6 Pt 1):1950–1955. PMID 8520761.
197. Piper AJ. Obesity hypoventilation syndrome—the big and the breathless. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2011;15(2):79–89. PMID 20609602.
198. Kessler R, et al. The obesity-hypoventilation syndrome revisited: a prospective study of 34 consecutive cases. *Chest*. 2001;120(2):369–376. PMID 11502631.
199. Olson AL, Zwillich C. The obesity hypoventilation syndrome. *Am J Med*. 2005;118(9):948–956. PMID 16164877.

200. Steier J, et al. Neural respiratory drive in obesity. *Thorax*. 2009;64(8):719–725.
201. Sampson MG, Grassino K. Neuromechanical properties in obese patients during carbon dioxide rebreathing. *Am J Med*. 1983;75(1):81–90. PMID 6407317.
202. Lopata M, Onal E. Mass loading, sleep apnea, and the pathogenesis of obesity hypoventilation. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1982;126(4):640–645. PMID 6812471.
203. Phipps PR, et al. Association of serum leptin with hypoventilation in human obesity. *Thorax*. 2002;57(1):75–76. PMID 11809994.
204. Shimura R, et al. Fat accumulation, leptin, and hypercapnia in obstructive sleep apnea-hypopnea syndrome. *Chest*. 2005;127(2):543–549. PMID 15705994.
205. Piper AJ, Grunstein RR. Obesity hypoventilation syndrome: mechanisms and management. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;183(3):292–298. PMID 21037018.
206. Resta O, et al. Prevalence and mechanisms of diurnal hypercapnia in a sample of morbidly obese subjects with obstructive sleep apnoea. *Respir Med*. 2000;94(3):240–246. PMID 10783935.
207. Zavorsky GS, Wilson B. Sex, girth, waists and hips (what matters for gas exchange in extreme obesity?). *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2010;170(1):120–122. PMID 19896563.
208. Ozsancak A, D'Ambrosio C, Hill NS. Nocturnal noninvasive ventilation. *Chest*. 2008;133(5):1275–1286. PMID 18460530.
209. Brown EN, Lydic R, Schiff ND. General anesthesia, sleep, and coma. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(27):2638–2650. PMID 21190458.
210. Kochs E, et al. Surgical stimulation induces changes in brain electrical activity during isoflurane/nitrous oxide anesthesia. a topographic electroencephalographic analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(5):1026–1034. PMID 8017642.
211. Alkire MT, Hudetz AG, Tononi G. Consciousness and anesthesia. *Science*. 2008;322(5903):876–880. PMID 18988836.
212. Hillman DR, Platt PR, Eastwood PR. Anesthesia, sleep, and upper airway collapsibility. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2010;28(3):443–455. PMID 20850076.
213. Lu J, et al. Role of endogenous sleep-wake and analgesic systems in anesthesia. *J Comp Neurol*. 2008;508(4):648–662. PMID 18383504.
214. Tung A, Mendelson WB. Anesthesia and sleep. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2004;8(3):213–225. PMID 15144963.
215. Nelson LE, et al. The sedative component of anesthesia is mediated by GABA(A) receptors in an endogenous sleep pathway. *Nat Neurosci*. 2002;5(10):979–984. PMID 12195434.
216. Moore JT, et al. Direct activation of sleep-promoting VLPO neurons by volatile anesthetics contributes to anesthetic hypnosis. *Curr Biol*. 2012;22(21):2008–2016. PMID 23103189.
217. Harrison NL. General anesthesia research: aroused from a deep sleep? *Nat Neurosci*. 2002;5(10):928–929. PMID 12352979.
218. Franks NP. General anaesthesia: from molecular targets to neuronal pathways of sleep and arousal. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9(5):370–386. PMID 18425091.
219. Eikermann M, et al. The ventrolateral preoptic nucleus is not required for isoflurane general anesthesia. *Brain Res*. 2011;1426:30–37. PMID 22041226.
220. Tung A, et al. Sleep deprivation potentiates the onset and duration of loss of righting reflex induced by propofol and isoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(4):906–911. PMID 12357158.
221. Pal D, et al. State-specific effects of sevoflurane anesthesia on sleep homeostasis: selective recovery of slow wave but not rapid eye movement sleep. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(2):302–310. PMID 21239972.
222. Brown EN, Purdon PL, Van Dort CJ. General anesthesia and altered states of arousal: a systems neuroscience analysis. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2011;34:601–628. PMID 21513454.
223. Leung LS, et al. Brain areas that influence general anesthesia. *Prog Neurobiol*. 2014;122:24–44. PMID 25172271.
224. Guldenmund P, et al. Brain functional connectivity differentiates dexmedetomidine from propofol and natural sleep. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(4):674–684. PMID 29121293.
225. Gogenur I, Wildschiotz G, Rosenberg J. Circadian distribution of sleep phases after major abdominal surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(1):45–49. PMID 18037670.
226. Gogenur I, et al. Disturbances in the circadian pattern of activity and sleep after laparoscopic versus open abdominal surgery. *Surg Endosc*. 2009;23(5):1026–1031. PMID 18830755.
227. Rosenberg J. Sleep disturbances after non-cardiac surgery. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2001;5(2):129–137. PMID 12531050.
228. Rehberg S, et al. Sleep disturbances after posterior scoliosis surgery with an intraoperative wake-up test using remifentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(4):629–641. PMID 18813042.
229. Kjolhede P, et al. The impact of quality of sleep on recovery from fast-track abdominal hysterectomy. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2012;8(4):395–402. PMID 22893770.
230. Krenk L, Jennum P, Kehlet H. Sleep disturbances after fast-track hip and knee arthroplasty. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012. PMID 22831887.
231. Axelin A, et al. Effects of pain management on sleep in preterm infants. *Eur J Pain*. 2010;14(7):752–758. PMID 20018537.
232. Wang D, Teichtahl H. Opioids, sleep architecture and sleep-disordered breathing. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2007;11(1):35–46. PMID 17141540.
233. Kondili E, et al. Effects of propofol on sleep quality in mechanically ventilated critically ill patients: a physiological study. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012. PMID 22752356.
234. Gottschlich MM, et al. The effect of ketamine administration on nocturnal sleep architecture. *J Burn Care Res*. 2011;32(5):535–540. PMID 21912336.
235. Mihara T, et al. Day or night administration of ketamine and pentobarbital differentially affect circadian rhythms of pineal melatonin secretion and locomotor activity in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 2012. PMID 22886841.
236. Cheeseman JF, et al. General anesthesia alters time perception by phase shifting the circadian clock. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109(18):7061–7066. PMID 22509009.
237. Poulsen RC, et al. How does general anaesthesia affect the circadian clock? *Sleep Med Rev*. 2018;37:35–44. PMID 28162920.
238. Lewczuk B, Przybylska-Gornowicz B, Wyrzykowski Z. The effect of morphine on melatonin secretion in the domestic pig. In vivo and in vitro study. *Neuro Endocrinol Lett*. 1999;20(3-4):171–178. PMID 11462111.
239. Sessler DI, Lee KA, McGuire J. Isoflurane anesthesia and circadian temperature cycles in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(6):985–989. PMID 1741520.
240. Vandekerckhove M, Cluydts R. The emotional brain and sleep: an intimate relationship. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*. 2010;14(4):219–226. PMID 20363166.
241. Gupta RM, et al. Postoperative complications in patients with obstructive sleep apnea syndrome undergoing hip or knee replacement: a case-control study. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2001;76(9):897–905. PMID 11560300.
242. Zaremba S, Mojica JE, Eikermann M. Perioperative sleep apnea: a real problem or did we invent a new disease? *F1000Res*. 2016;5. PMID 27006758.
243. Benumof JL. Obesity, sleep apnea, the airway and anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2004;17(1):21–30. PMID 17021525.
244. Neligan PJ, et al. Obstructive sleep apnea is not a risk factor for difficult intubation in morbidly obese patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(4):1182–1186. PMID 19762747.
245. Eikermann M, et al. Do patients with obstructive sleep apnea have an increased risk of desaturation during induction of anesthesia for weight loss surgery? *Open Respir Med J*. 2010;4:58–62. PMID 20802806.
246. Kaw R, et al. Meta-analysis of the association between obstructive sleep apnoea and postoperative outcome. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012. PMID 22956642.
247. Kaw R, et al. Postoperative complications in patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Chest*. 2012;141(2):436–441. PMID 21868462.
248. Nagappa M, et al. Postoperative outcomes in obstructive sleep apnea patients undergoing cardiac surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis of comparative studies. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(6):2030–2037. PMID 29049073.
249. Bateman BT, Eikermann M. Obstructive sleep apnea predicts adverse perioperative outcome: evidence for an association between obstructive sleep apnea and delirium. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(4):753–755. PMID 22337163.
250. Mokhlesi B, et al. Sleep-disordered breathing and postoperative outcomes after elective surgery: analysis of the nationwide inpatient sample. *Chest*. 2013;144(3):903–914. PMID 23538745.
251. Mokhlesi B, et al. Sleep-disordered breathing and postoperative outcomes after bariatric surgery: analysis of the nationwide inpatient sample. *Obes Surg*. 2013;23(11):1842–1851. PMID 23690272.

252. Berg G, et al. The use of health-care resources in obesity-hypoventilation syndrome. *Chest*. 2001;120(2):377–383. PMID 11502632.
253. Cullen A, Ferguson A. Perioperative management of the severely obese patient: a selective pathophysiological review. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012. PMID 22833138.
254. Lakdawala L. Creating a safer perioperative environment with an obstructive sleep apnea screening tool. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2011;26(1):15–24. PMID 21276545.
255. Nowbar S, et al. Obesity-associated hypoventilation in hospitalized patients: prevalence, effects, and outcome. *Am J Med*. 2004;116(1):1–7. PMID 14706658.
256. Redline S, Strohl KP. Recognition and consequences of obstructive sleep apnea hypopnea syndrome. *Clin Chest Med*. 1998;19(1):1–19. PMID 9554214.
257. Shin CH, et al. Development and validation of a Score for Preoperative Prediction of Obstructive Sleep Apnea (SPOSA) and its perioperative outcomes. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2017;17(1):71. PMID 28558716.
258. Memtsoudis SG, et al. Society of Anesthesia and Sleep Medicine Guideline on Intraoperative Management of Adult Patients With Obstructive Sleep Apnea. *Anesth Analg*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000003434.
259. Mokhlesi B, et al. Obesity hypoventilation syndrome: prevalence and predictors in patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Sleep Breath*. 2007;11(2):117–124. PMID 17187265.
260. Juvin P, et al. Difficult tracheal intubation is more common in obese than in lean patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(2):595–600. PMID 12873960.
261. Corso RM, et al. Obstructive sleep apnea is a risk factor for difficult endotracheal intubation. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2011;77(1):99–100. PMID 21273972.
262. Isono S, et al. Sniffing position improves pharyngeal airway patency in anesthetized patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(3):489–494. PMID 16129972.
263. Myers TR. Positive expiratory pressure and oscillatory positive expiratory pressure therapies. *Respir Care*. 2007;52(10):1308–1326. PMID 17894901.
264. Atkins JH, Mandel JE. Drug-induced sleep endoscopy: from obscure technique to diagnostic tool for assessment of obstructive sleep apnea for surgical interventions. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2018;31(1):120–126. PMID 29206695.
265. Lo YL, et al. Bispectral index in evaluating effects of sedation depth on drug-induced sleep endoscopy. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2015;11(9):1011–1020. PMID 25979098.
266. Ruscic KJ, et al. Supplemental carbon dioxide stabilizes the upper airway in volunteers anesthetized with propofol. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129(1):37–46. PMID 29750662.
267. Simons JC, et al. Effects of depth of propofol and sevoflurane anesthesia on upper airway collapsibility, respiratory genioglossus activation, and breathing in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(3):525–534. PMID 27404221.
268. Overdyk FJ. Postoperative opioids remain a serious patient safety threat. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(1):259–260; author reply 260-1. PMID 20574235.
269. Hajiha M, et al. Opioid receptor mechanisms at the hypoglossal motor pool and effects on tongue muscle activity in vivo. *J Physiol*. 2009;587(Pt 11):2677–2692. PMID 19403616.
270. Eikermann M, et al. Pentobarbital dose-dependently increases respiratory genioglossus muscle activity while impairing diaphragmatic function in anesthetized rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(6):1327–1334. PMID 19417601.
271. Eikermann M, et al. Ketamine activates breathing and abolishes the coupling between loss of consciousness and upper airway dilator muscle dysfunction. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(1):35–46. PMID 22108392.
272. Sundman E, et al. The incidence and mechanisms of pharyngeal and upper esophageal dysfunction in partially paralyzed humans: pharyngeal videoradiography and simultaneous manometry after atracurium. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(4):977–984. PMID 10754616.
273. Eikermann M, et al. The predisposition to inspiratory upper airway collapse during partial neuromuscular blockade. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2007;175(1):9–15. PMID 17023729.
274. Sauer M, et al. The influence of residual neuromuscular block on the incidence of critical respiratory events. A randomised, prospective, placebo-controlled trial. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(12):842–848. PMID 21455074.
275. Grosse-Sundrup M, et al. Intermediate acting non-depolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents and risk of postoperative respiratory complications: prospective propensity score matched cohort study. *BMJ*. 2012;345:e6329. PMID 23077290.
276. Eikermann M, et al. Unwarranted administration of acetylcholinesterase inhibitors can impair genioglossus and diaphragm muscle function. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(4):621–629. PMID 17893459.
277. Payne JP, Hughes R, Al Azawi S. Neuromuscular blockade by neostigmine in anaesthetized man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52(1):69–76. PMID 7378232.
278. Fogel RB, Malhotra A, White DP. Sleep. 2: pathophysiology of obstructive sleep apnoea/hypopnoea syndrome. *Thorax*. 2004;59(2):159–163. PMID 14760159.
279. Zaremba S, et al. Continuous positive airway pressure mitigates opioid-induced worsening of sleep-disordered breathing early after bariatric surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:92–104. PMID 27171827.
280. Zhang X, et al. A brief review of non-invasive monitoring of respiratory condition for extubated patients with or at risk for obstructive sleep apnea after surgery. *Front Med (Lausanne)*. 2017;4:26. PMID 28337439.
281. Rao Kadam V, Danesh M. Post operative capnostream monitoring in patients with obstructive sleep apnoea symptoms—case series. *Sleep Sci*. 2016;9(3):142–146. PMID 28123650.
282. Zaremba S, et al. Continuous positive airway pressure mitigates opioid-induced worsening of sleep-disordered breathing early after bariatric surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(1):92–104. PMID 27171827.
283. Ayas NT, et al. Knowledge gaps in the perioperative management of adults with obstructive sleep apnea and obesity hypoventilation syndrome. An official American Thoracic Society workshop report. *Ann Am Thorac Soc*. 2018;15(2):117–126. PMID 29388810.
284. Chung F, et al. Society of Anesthesia and Sleep Medicine guidelines on preoperative screening and assessment of adult patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(2):452–473. PMID 27442772.
285. Gali B, et al. Identification of patients at risk for postoperative respiratory complications using a preoperative obstructive sleep apnea screening tool and postanesthesia care assessment. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(4):869–877. PMID 19293694.
286. Aurell J, Elmqvist D. Sleep in the surgical intensive care unit: continuous polygraphic recording of sleep in nine patients receiving postoperative care. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)*. 1985;290(6474):1029–1032. PMID 3921096.
287. Freedman NS, et al. Abnormal sleep/wake cycles and the effect of environmental noise on sleep disruption in the intensive care unit. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2001;163(2):451–457. PMID 11179121.
288. Parthasarathy S, Tobin MJ. Effect of ventilator mode on sleep quality in critically ill patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;166(11):1423–1429. PMID 12406837.
289. Gabor JY, et al. Contribution of the intensive care unit environment to sleep disruption in mechanically ventilated patients and healthy subjects. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2003;167(5):708–715. PMID 12598213.
290. Cooper AB, et al. Sleep in critically ill patients requiring mechanical ventilation. *Chest*. 2000;117(3):809–818. PMID 10713011.
291. Bosma K, et al. Patient-ventilator interaction and sleep in mechanically ventilated patients: pressure support versus proportional assist ventilation. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(4):1048–1054. PMID 17334259.
292. Gehlbach BK, et al. Temporal disorganization of circadian rhythmicity and sleep-wake regulation in mechanically ventilated patients receiving continuous intravenous sedation. *Sleep*. 2012;35(8):1105–1114. PMID 22851806.
293. Boyko Y, et al. Sleep in intensive care unit: the role of environment. *J Crit Care*. 2017;37:99–105. PMID 27660924.
294. Watson PL, et al. Atypical sleep in ventilated patients: empirical electroencephalography findings and the path toward revised ICU sleep scoring criteria. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41(8):1958–1967. PMID 23863228.
295. Tainter CR, et al. Noise levels in surgical ICUs are consistently above recommended standards. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(1):147–152. PMID 26457750.
296. Elbaz M, et al. Sound level intensity severely disrupts sleep in ventilated ICU patients throughout a 24-h period: a preliminary 24-h study of sleep stages and associated sound levels. *Ann Intensive Care*. 2017;7(1):25. PMID 28255956.

297. Fan EP, et al. Abnormal environmental light exposure in the intensive care environment. *J Crit Care*. 2017;40:11–14. PMID 28292665.
298. Patel J, et al. The effect of a multicomponent multidisciplinary bundle of interventions on sleep and delirium in medical and surgical intensive care patients. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(6):540–549. PMID 24813132.
299. Oldham MA, Lee HB, Desan PH. Circadian rhythm disruption in the critically ill: an opportunity for improving outcomes. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(1):207–217. PMID 26308428.
300. Touitou Y. Human aging and melatonin. Clinical relevance. *Exp Gerontol*. 2001;36(7):1083–1100. PMID 11404053.
301. Govitrapong P, Pariyanonth M, Ebadi M. The presence and actions of opioid receptors in bovine pineal gland. *J Pineal Res*. 1992;13(3):124–132. PMID 1336547.
302. Friese RS, et al. Quantity and quality of sleep in the surgical intensive care unit: are our patients sleeping?. *J Trauma*. 2007;63(6):1210–1214. PMID 18212640.
303. Hardin KA, et al. Sleep in critically ill chemically paralyzed patients requiring mechanical ventilation. *Chest*. 2006;129(6):1468–1477. PMID 16778263.
304. Elliott R, Nathaney A. Typical sleep patterns are absent in mechanically ventilated patients and their circadian melatonin rhythm is evident but the timing is altered by the ICU environment. *Aust Crit Care*. 2014;27(3):151–153. PMID 24556537.
305. Paul T, Lemmer B. Disturbance of circadian rhythms in analgosedated intensive care unit patients with and without craniocerebral injury. *Chronobiol Int*. 2007;24(1):45–61. PMID 17364579.
306. Mundigler G, et al. Impaired circadian rhythm of melatonin secretion in sedated critically ill patients with severe sepsis. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30(3):536–540. PMID 11990911.
307. Olofsson K, et al. Abolished circadian rhythm of melatonin secretion in sedated and artificially ventilated intensive care patients. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48(6):679–684. PMID 15196098.
308. Frisk U, et al. Low melatonin excretion during mechanical ventilation in the intensive care unit. *Clin Sci (Lond)*. 2004;107(1):47–53. PMID 14982491.
309. Perras B, Meier M, Dodt C. Light and darkness fail to regulate melatonin release in critically ill humans. *Intensive Care Med*. 2007;33(11):1954–1958. PMID 17609927.
310. Riutta A, Ylitalo P, Kaukinen S. Diurnal variation of melatonin and cortisol is maintained in non-septic intensive care patients. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35(10):1720–1727. PMID 19578832.
311. Verceles AC, et al. Circadian rhythm disruption in severe sepsis: the effect of ambient light on urinary 6-sulfatoxymelatonin secretion. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38(5):804–810. PMID 22286671.
312. Li CX, et al. Altered melatonin secretion and circadian gene expression with increased proinflammatory cytokine expression in early-stage sepsis patients. *Mol Med Rep*. 2013;7(4):1117–1122. PMID 23426900.
313. Gazendam JAC, et al. Altered circadian rhythmicity in patients in the ICU. *Chest*. 2013;144(2):483–489. PMID 23471224.
314. Djeridane Y, Touitou Y. Effects of diazepam and its metabolites on nocturnal melatonin secretion in the rat pineal and Harderian glands. a comparative in vivo and in vitro study. *Chronobiol Int*. 2003;20(2):285–297. PMID 12723886.
315. Morera AL, Abreu-Gonzalez P, Henry M. Zaleplon increases nocturnal melatonin secretion in humans. *Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry*. 2009;33(6):1013–1016. PMID 19463883.
316. Demoule A, et al. Impact of earplugs and eye mask on sleep in critically ill patients: a prospective randomized study. *Crit Care*. 2017;21(1):284. PMID 29157258.
317. Jones C, Dawson D. Eye masks and earplugs improve patient's perception of sleep. *Nurs Crit Care*. 2012;17(5):247–254. PMID 22897811.
318. Mills GH, Bourne RS. Do earplugs stop noise from driving critical care patients into delirium? *Crit Care*. 2012;16(4):139. PMID 22805535.
319. Van Rompaey B, et al. The effect of earplugs during the night on the onset of delirium and sleep perception: a randomized controlled trial in intensive care patients. *Crit Care*. 2012;16(3):R73. PMID 22559080.
320. Ugras GA, et al. The effect of nocturnal patient care interventions on patient sleep and satisfaction with nursing care in neurosurgery intensive care unit. *J Neurosci Nurs*. 2015;47(2):104–112. PMID 25700196.
321. Tamburri LM, et al. Nocturnal care interactions with patients in critical care units. *Am J Crit Care*. 2004;13(2):102–112; quiz 114–115. PMID 15043238.
322. Celik S, et al. Sleep disturbance: the patient care activities applied at the night shift in the intensive care unit. *J Clin Nurs*. 2005;14(1):102–106. PMID 15656854.
323. Ozsancak A, et al. Sleep and mechanical ventilation. *Crit Care Clin*. 2008;24(3):517–531, vi-vii. PMID 18538198.
324. Kress JP, Pohlman AS, Hall JB. Sedation and analgesia in the intensive care unit. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;166(8):1024–1028. PMID 12379543.
325. Trompeo AC, et al. Sleep disturbances in the critically ill patients: role of delirium and sedative agents. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2011;77(6):604–612. PMID 21617624.
326. Kondili E, et al. Effects of propofol on sleep quality in mechanically ventilated critically ill patients: a physiological study. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38(10):1640–1646. PMID 22752356.
327. Turner JS, et al. Patients' recollection of intensive care unit experience. *Crit Care Med*. 1990;18(9):966–968. PMID 2394120.
328. Bonafide CP, et al. Remifentanil inhibits rapid eye movement sleep but not the nocturnal melatonin surge in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108(4):627–633. PMID 18362594.
329. Shapiro BA, et al. Practice parameters for intravenous analgesia and sedation for adult patients in the intensive care unit: an executive summary. Society of Critical Care Medicine. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23(9):1596–1600. PMID 7664563.
330. Otmani S, et al. Effects of prolonged-release melatonin, zolpidem, and their combination on psychomotor functions, memory recall, and driving skills in healthy middle aged and elderly volunteers. *Hum Psychopharmacol*. 2008;23(8):693–705. PMID 18763235.
331. Roth T. A physiologic basis for the evolution of pharmacotherapy for insomnia. *J Clin Psychiatry*. 2007;68(suppl 5):13–18. PMID 17539704.
332. Hoque R, Chesson AL. Zolpidem-induced sleepwalking, sleep related eating disorder, and sleep-driving: fluorine-18-flourodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography analysis, and a literature review of other unexpected clinical effects of zolpidem. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2009;5(5):471–476. PMID 19961034.
333. Shilo L, et al. Effect of melatonin on sleep quality of COPD intensive care patients: a pilot study. *Chronobiol Int*. 2000;17(1):71–76. PMID 10672435.
334. Ibrahim MG, et al. A double-blind placebo-controlled randomised pilot study of nocturnal melatonin in tracheostomised patients. *Crit Care Resusc*. 2006;8(3):187–191. PMID 16930101.
335. Bourne RS, Mills GH, Minelli C. Melatonin therapy to improve nocturnal sleep in critically ill patients: encouraging results from a small randomised controlled trial. *Crit Care*. 2008;12(2):R52. PMID 18423009.
336. Lockley SW, et al. Tasimelteon for non-24-hour sleep-wake disorder in totally blind people (SET and RESET): two multicentre, randomised, double-masked, placebo-controlled phase 3 trials. *Lancet*. 2015;386(10005):1754–1764. PMID 26466871.
337. Hatta K, et al. Preventive effects of ramelteon on delirium: a randomized placebo-controlled trial. *JAMA Psychiatry*. 2014;71(4):397–403. PMID 24554232.
338. Bellapart J, Boots R. Potential use of melatonin in sleep and delirium in the critically ill. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(4):572–580. PMID 22419624.
339. Herring WJ, et al. Orexin receptor antagonism for treatment of insomnia: a randomized clinical trial of suvorexant. *Neurology*. 2012;79(23):2265–2274. PMID 23197752.
340. Hatta K, et al. Preventive effects of suvorexant on delirium: a randomized placebo-controlled trial. *J Clin Psychiatry*. 2017;78(8):e970–e979. PMID 28767209.
341. Trinder J, et al. Sleep and cardiovascular regulation. *Pflugers Archiv*. 2012;463(1):161–168. PMID 22038322.
342. Imeri L, Opp MR. How (and why) the immune system makes us sleep. *Nature reviews. Neuroscience*. 2009;10(3):199–210. PMID 19209176.
343. Faraut B, et al. Immune, inflammatory and cardiovascular consequences of sleep restriction and recovery. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2012;16(2):137–149. PMID 21835655.
344. Mullington JM, et al. Cardiovascular, inflammatory, and metabolic consequences of sleep deprivation. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 2009;51(4):294–302. PMID 19110131.

345. Lange T, Dimitrov S, Born J. Effects of sleep and circadian rhythm on the human immune system. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2010;1193:48–59. PMID 20398008.
346. Sareli AE, Schwab RJ. The sleep-friendly ICU. *Crit Care Clin*. 2008;24(3):613–626, viii. PMID 18538203.
347. Spiegel K, Sheridan JF, Van Cauter E. Effect of sleep deprivation on response to immunization. *JAMA*. 2002;288(12):1471–1472. PMID 12243633.
348. Besedovsky L, Lange T, Born J. Sleep and immune function. *Pflugers Arch*. 2012;463(1):121–137. PMID 22071480.
349. Irwin M, et al. Partial night sleep deprivation reduces natural killer and cellular immune responses in humans. *FASEB J*. 1996;10(5):643–653. PMID 8621064.
350. Benedict C, et al. Sleep enhances serum interleukin-7 concentrations in humans. *Brain Behav Immun*. 2007;21(8):1058–1062. PMID 17524612.
351. Kaech SM, et al. Selective expression of the interleukin 7 receptor identifies effector CD8 T cells that give rise to long-lived memory cells. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4(12):1191–1198. PMID 14625547.
352. Schmid SM, et al. Sleep loss alters basal metabolic hormone secretion and modulates the dynamic counterregulatory response to hypoglycemia. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2007;92(8):3044–3051. PMID 17519315.
353. Scrimshaw NS, et al. Effects of sleep deprivation and reversal of diurnal activity on protein metabolism of young men. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 1966;19(5):313–319. PMID 5923588.
354. Spiegel K, Leproult R, Van Cauter E. Impact of sleep debt on metabolic and endocrine function. *Lancet*. 1999;354(9188):1435–1439. PMID 10543671.
355. Sauvet F, et al. Effect of acute sleep deprivation on vascular function in healthy subjects. *J Appl Physiol*. 2010;108(1):68–75. PMID 19910332.
356. Chen HI, Tang YR. Sleep loss impairs inspiratory muscle endurance. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1989;140(4):907–909. PMID 2802378.
357. White DP, et al. Sleep deprivation and the control of ventilation. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1983;128(6):984–986. PMID 6418047.
358. Phillips B, et al. Effect of sleep loss on beta-endorphin activity, epinephrine levels, and ventilatory responsiveness. *South Med J*. 1987;80(1):16–20. PMID 2948280.
359. Krause AJ, et al. The sleep-deprived human brain. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2017;18(7):404–418. PMID 28515433.
360. Weinhouse GL, et al. Bench-to-bedside review: delirium in ICU patients—importance of sleep deprivation. *Crit Care*. 2009;13(6):234. PMID 20053301.
361. Ely EW, et al. Delirium as a predictor of mortality in mechanically ventilated patients in the intensive care unit. *JAMA*. 2004;291(14):1753–1762. PMID 15082703.
362. Potharajaroen S, et al. Bright light and oxygen therapies decrease delirium risk in critically ill surgical patients by targeting sleep and acid-base disturbances. *Psychiatry Res*. 2018;261:21–27. PMID 29276990.
363. Burry L, et al. Feasibility of melatonin for prevention of delirium in critically ill patients: a protocol for a multicentre, randomised, placebo-controlled study. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7(3):e015420. PMID 28363933.
364. Luther R, McLeod A. The effect of chronotherapy on delirium in critical care—a systematic review. *Nurs Crit Care*. 2017. PMID 28508438.
365. Longstreth WT, et al. The epidemiology of narcolepsy. *Sleep*. 2007;30(1):13–26. PMID 17310860.
366. Kornum BR, Faraco J, Mignot E. Narcolepsy with hypocretin/orexin deficiency, infections and autoimmunity of the brain. *Curr Opin Neurobiol*. 2011;21(6):897–903. PMID 21963829.
367. Billiard M. Diagnosis of narcolepsy and idiopathic hypersomnia. An update based on the International Classification of Sleep Disorders, 2nd edition. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2007;11(5):377–388. PMID 17646117.
368. Lin L, et al. The sleep disorder canine narcolepsy is caused by a mutation in the hypocretin (orexin) receptor 2 gene. *Cell*. 1999;98(3):365–376. PMID 10458611.
369. Bonnavion P, de Lecea L. Hypocretins in the control of sleep and wakefulness. *Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep*. 2010;10(3):174–179. PMID 20425032.
370. Dauvilliers Y, Arnulf I, Mignot E. Narcolepsy with cataplexy. *Lancet*. 2007;369(9560):499–511. PMID 17292770.
371. Kelz MB, et al. An essential role for orexins in emergence from general anesthesia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(4):1309–1314. PMID 18195361.
372. Burrow B, et al. Postoperative outcome of patients with narcolepsy. a retrospective analysis. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17(1):21–25. PMID 15721725.
373. Mesa A, Diaz AP, Frosth M. Narcolepsy and anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(4):1194–1196. PMID 10754642.
374. Dahaba AA, et al. Bispectral index monitoring of a narcolepsy-cataplexy episode during regional anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(2):613–615. PMID 19151297.
375. Pelaez R, et al. Narcolepsy and cardiac surgery: can anesthesia with propofol and remifentanil be safe? *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18(2):201–203. PMID 15073713.
376. Galvin E, et al. Modafinil reduces patient-reported tiredness after sedation/analgesia but does not improve patient psychomotor skills. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54(2):154–161. PMID 19719817.
377. Larijani GE, et al. Modafinil improves recovery after general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(4):976–981. PMID 15041583.
378. Hu S, et al. Anesthetic management of narcolepsy patients during surgery: a systematic review. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(1):233–246. PMID 29257771.
379. Soltanifar S, Russell R. Neuraxial anaesthesia for caesarean section in a patient with narcolepsy and cataplexy. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2010;19(4):440–443. PMID 20833530.
380. Aurora RN, et al. The treatment of restless legs syndrome and periodic limb movement disorder in adults-an update for 2012: practice parameters with an evidence-based systematic review and meta-analyses: an American Academy of Sleep Medicine clinical practice guideline. *Sleep*. 2012;35(8):1039–1062. PMID 22851801.
381. Ohayon MM, O'Hara R, Vitiello MV. Epidemiology of restless legs syndrome: a synthesis of the literature. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2012;16(4):283–295. PMID 21795081.
382. Karroum EG, et al. Acute exacerbation of restless legs syndrome during perioperative procedures: case reports and suggested management. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2010;29(12):920–924. PMID 21112730.
383. Shin YK. Restless legs syndrome: unusual cause of agitation under anesthesia. *South Med J*. 1987;80(2):278–279. PMID 3810235.
384. Hogl B, et al. Transient restless legs syndrome after spinal anesthesia: a prospective study. *Neurology*. 2002;59(11):1705–1707. PMID 12473756.
385. Kapur N, Friedman R. Oral ketamine: a promising treatment for restless legs syndrome. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(6):1558–1559. PMID 12032026.
386. Krishna M. Novel use of graded elastic compression stockings. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(9):973. PMID 17697242.
387. Bartell S, Zallek S. Intravenous magnesium sulfate may relieve restless legs syndrome in pregnancy. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2006;2(2):187–188. PMID 17557494.
388. Alpert CC, Tobin DP, Dierdorf SF. Physostigmine for the acute treatment of restless legs syndrome. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(3):726–727. PMID 16115982.

11

Cerebral Physiology and the Effects of Anesthetic Drugs

PIYUSH M. PATEL, JOHN C. DRUMMOND, and BRIAN P. LEMKUIL

KEY POINTS

- The brain has a high metabolic rate and receives approximately 12% to 15% of cardiac output. Under normal circumstances, cerebral blood flow (CBF) is approximately 50 mL/100 g/min. Gray matter receives 80% and white matter receives 20% of this blood flow.
- Approximately 60% of the brain's energy consumption supports electrophysiologic function. The remainder of the energy consumed by the brain is involved in cellular homeostatic activities.
- CBF is tightly coupled to local cerebral metabolism, a process called *neurovascular coupling*. When cerebral activity in a particular region of the brain increases, a corresponding increase in blood flow to that region takes place. Conversely, suppression of cerebral metabolism leads to a reduction in blood flow.
- CBF is autoregulated and remains constant over a mean arterial pressure (MAP) range estimated at 65 to 150 mm Hg, given normal venous pressure. CBF becomes pressure passive when MAP is either less than the lower limit or more than the upper limit of autoregulation. The lower and upper limits, as well as the range and slope of the plateau, manifest significant variability between individuals.
- CBF is also under chemical regulation. CBF varies directly with arterial carbon dioxide tension ($PaCO_2$) in the range of 25 to 70 mm Hg. When arterial partial pressure of oxygen (PaO_2) decreases to less than 60 mm Hg, CBF increases dramatically. Reductions in body temperature influence CBF primarily by the suppression of cerebral metabolism.
- Systemic vasodilators (e.g., nitroglycerin, nitroprusside, hydralazine, and calcium channel blockers) vasodilate the cerebral circulation and can, depending on the MAP, increase CBF. Vasopressors such as phenylephrine, norepinephrine, ephedrine, and dopamine do not have appreciable direct effects on the cerebral circulation. Their effect on CBF is via their effect on arterial blood pressure. When the MAP is less than the lower limit of autoregulation, vasopressors increase the MAP and thereby increase CBF. If the MAP is within the limits of autoregulation, then vasopressor-induced increases in systemic pressure have little effect on CBF.
- All volatile anesthetics suppress cerebral metabolic rate (CMR) and, with the exception of halothane, can produce burst suppression of the electroencephalogram. At that level, the CMR is reduced by approximately 60%. Volatile anesthetics have dose-dependent effects on CBF. In doses less than the minimum alveolar concentration (MAC), CBF is modestly decreased. In doses larger than 1 MAC, direct cerebral vasodilation results in an increase in CBF and cerebral blood volume (CBV).
- Barbiturates, etomidate, and propofol decrease the CMR and can produce burst suppression of the electroencephalogram. At that level, the CMR is reduced by approximately 60%. Because neurovascular coupling is preserved, CBF is decreased. Opiates and benzodiazepines effect minor decreases in CBF and CMR. In contrast, ketamine can increase CBF significantly, in association with a modest increase in CMR.
- Brain stores of oxygen and substrates are limited, and the brain is extremely sensitive to decreases in CBF. Severe decreases in CBF (<6-10 mL/100 g/min) lead to rapid neuronal death. Ischemic injury is characterized by early excitotoxicity and delayed apoptosis.
- Barbiturates, propofol, ketamine, volatile anesthetics, and xenon have neuroprotective efficacy and can reduce ischemic cerebral injury in experimental models. This anesthetic neuroprotection is sustained only when the severity of the ischemic insult is mild; with moderate-to-severe injury, long-term neuroprotection is not achieved. The neuroprotective efficacy of anesthetics in humans is limited. Administration of etomidate can decrease regional blood flow, which can exacerbate ischemic brain injury.

This chapter reviews the effects of anesthetic drugs and techniques on cerebral physiology—in particular, their effects on cerebral blood flow (CBF) and metabolism. The final section presents a brief discussion of pathophysiologic states, including cerebral ischemia and cerebral protection. Attention is directed to the rationale for selection and appropriate use of the anesthetic agents for neuroanesthetic management. Chapter 57 presents the clinical management of these patients in detail. Neurologic monitoring, including the effects of anesthetics on the electroencephalogram (EEG) and evoked responses, is reviewed in Chapter 39.

The Anatomy of the Cerebral Circulation

The arterial blood supply to the brain is composed of paired right and left internal carotid arteries, which give rise to the anterior circulation, and paired right and left vertebral arteries, which give rise to the posterior circulation. The connection of the two vertebral arteries forms the basilar artery. The internal carotid arteries and the basilar artery connect to form a vascular loop called the circle of Willis at the base of the brain that permits collateral circulation between both the right and left and the anterior and posterior perfusing arteries. Three paired arteries that originate from the circle of Willis perfuse the brain: anterior, middle, and posterior cerebral arteries. The posterior communicating arteries and the anterior communicating artery complete the loop. The anterior and the posterior circulations contribute equally to the circle of Willis.

Under normal circumstances, blood from the anterior and posterior circulations does not admix because the pressures in the two systems are equal. Similarly, side-to-side admixing of blood across the circle is limited. The vessels that originate from the circle provide blood flow to well-delineated regions of the brain. However, in pathologic circumstances during which occlusion of one of the arterial branches occurs, the circle of Willis can provide anterior-posterior or side-to-side collateralization to deliver flow to the region of the brain with reduced perfusion.

A complete circle of Willis is shown in Fig. 11.1*A*. However, substantial variability exists in the anatomy of the circle of Willis, and a significant proportion of individuals may have an incomplete circular loop.[1] The variations in the circle and their prevalence are shown in Fig. 11.1*B*.

Three sets of veins drain blood from the brain. The superficial cortical veins are within the pia mater on the brain's surface. Deep cortical veins drain the deeper structures of the brain. These veins drain into dural sinuses, of which the superior and inferior sagittal sinuses and the straight, transverse and sigmoid sinuses are the major dural sinuses. These ultimately drain into the right and left internal jugular veins.A schematic representation of the cerebral venous circulation is shown in Fig. 11.1*C*.

There is considerable asymmetry in the blood flow between the right and left internal jugular veins. In approximately 65% of patients, flow in the right IJV is greater than in the left; in the remainder, the left IJV is dominant.[2] The pattern of venous drainage may have implications for insertion of jugular venous catheters for the measurement of jugular venous oxygen saturation ($SjVO_2$). To ensure accurate measurement of $SjVO_2$, it has been advocated that the catheter be inserted into the dominant jugular vein. In most patients, the right IJV will be the dominant vein.

CEREBROSPINAL FLUID FORMATION AND CIRCULATION

Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) is produced primarily by the choroid plexus in the lateral, third, and fourth ventricles; there are small contributions from the endothelial cells and from fluid that is produced as a consequence of metabolic activity. CSF production is the result of hydrostatic efflux from capillaries into the perivascular space, and then active transport into the ventricles. CSF reabsorption occurs primarily via the arachnoid granulations present in the dural sinuses. A smaller proportion of CSF, which tracks along cranial and peripheral nerves, perivascular routes, and along white matter tracts, gains access to the cerebral venous system by transependymal flow. The total CSF space is approximately 150 mL and total daily CSF production averages 450 mL. Therefore, there is a substantial daily turnover of CSF. CSF production is also under the influence of the circadian rhythm, with the peak production of CSF occurring during sleep.[3]

Recently, the concept of the glymphatic pathway as a means by which waste products are removed from the brain has been advanced. Conceptually, the glymphatic pathway can be visualized as a system akin to the lymphatic system in the systemic circulation (note, however, that the brain does not contain lymphatics other than those present in the meninges). Functionally, CSF enters the periarterial space, a space that is bounded by the vessels and the end-feet of astrocytes. Aquaporin channels on the end-feet facilitate this water exchange. From the periarterial space, CSF is transported to the brain parenchyma, and from there to the perivenous space and on to the ventricles. As such, the glymphatic system serves as a waste disposal system.[3] Of considerable interest is the observation that the periarterial space increases significantly during sleep and during general anesthesia; hence, glymphatic transport and waste clearance is increased during these states. Among anesthetic agents, glymphatic transport is reduced by volatile agents but is less affected by dexmedetomidine.[4]

REGULATION OF CEREBRAL BLOOD FLOW

Anesthetic drugs cause dose-related and reversible alterations in many aspects of cerebral physiology, including CBF, cerebral metabolic rate (CMR), and electrophysiologic function (EEG, evoked responses). The effects of anesthetic drugs and techniques have the potential to adversely affect the diseased brain and are thus of clinical importance in patients with neurosurgical disease. Conversely, the effects of general anesthesia on CBF and CMR can be altered to improve both the surgical course and the clinical outcome of patients with neurologic disorders.

The adult human brain weighs approximately 1350 g and therefore represents approximately 2% of total body weight. However, it receives 12% to 15% of cardiac output. This high flow rate is a reflection of the brain's high metabolic rate. At rest, the brain consumes oxygen at an average

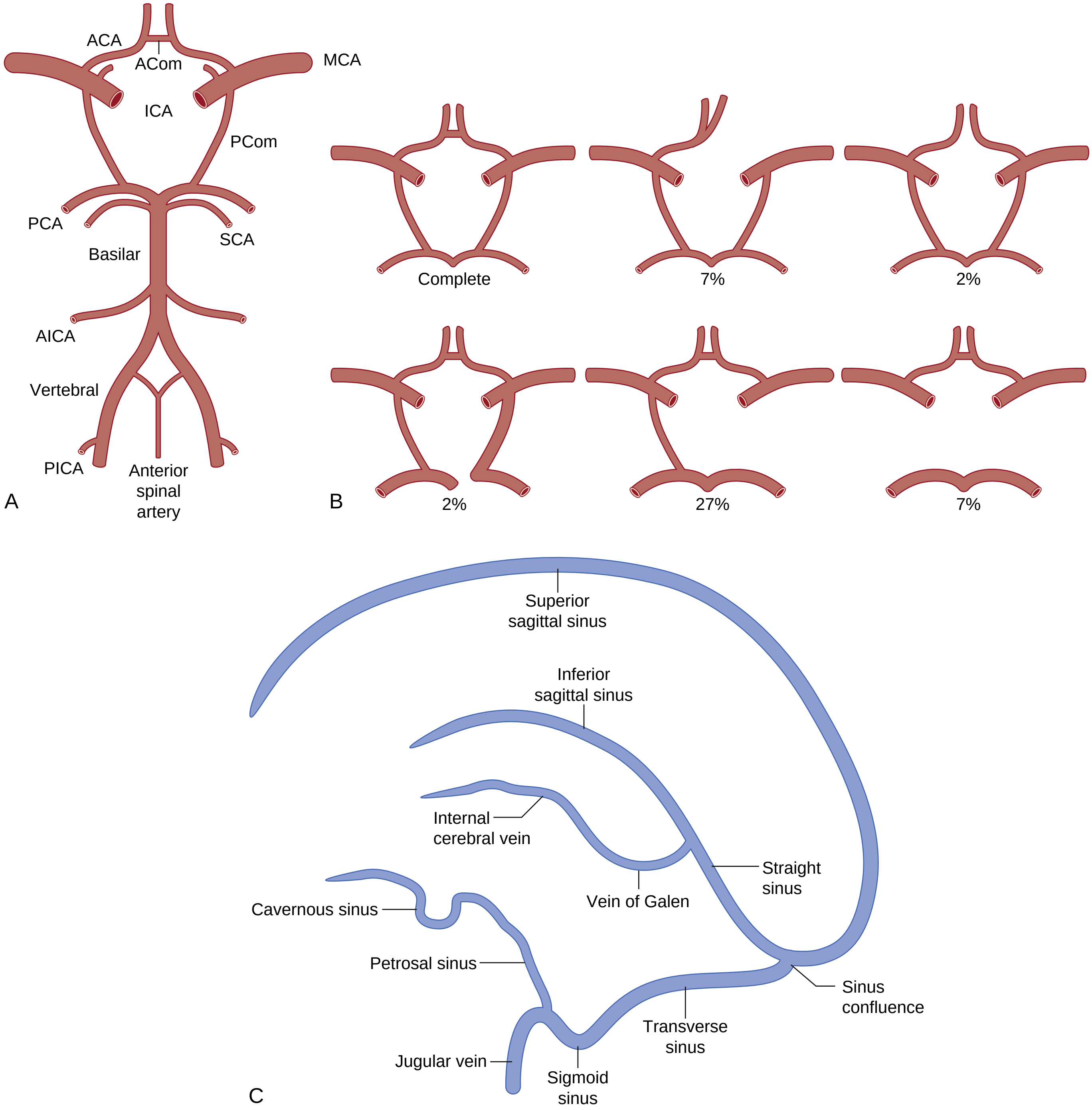

ACA
ACom
MCA
ICA
PCom
PCA
SCA
Basilar
AICA
Vertebral
PICA
Anterior spinal artery
A
Complete
7%
2%
B
2%
27%
7%
Superior sagittal sinus
Inferior sagittal sinus
Internal cerebral vein
Straight sinus
Vein of Galen
Cavernous sinus
Petrosal sinus
Sinus confluence
Transverse sinus
Jugular vein
Sigmoid sinus
C

Fig. 11.1 Vascular anatomy of the blood supply to and drainage from the brain. (A) Arterial input into a complete circle of Willis. *ACA,* Anterior cerebral artery; *ACom,* anterior communicating artery; *AICA,* anterior inferior cerebellar artery; *ICA,* internal carotid artery; *MCA,* middle cerebral artery; *PCA,* posterior cerebral artery; *PCom,* posterior communicating artery; *PICA,* posterior inferior cerebellar artery; *SCA,* superior cerebellar artery. (B) Variations in the anatomy of the circle of Willis. The prevalence of each of the variations, expressed as percentage of adult patients, is provided for each variant. (C) Venous drainage of the brain.

rate of approximately 3.5 mL of oxygen per 100 g of brain tissue per minute. Whole-brain oxygen consumption (50 mL/min) represents approximately 20% of total body oxygen utilization. Normal values for CBF, CMR, and other physiologic variables are provided in Box 11.1.

Approximately 60% of the brain's energy consumption supports electrophysiologic function. The depolarization-repolarization activity that occurs, reflected in the EEG, requires expenditure of energy for the maintenance and restoration of ionic gradients and for the synthesis, transport, release, and reuptake of neurotransmitters. The remainder of the energy consumed by the brain is involved in cellular homeostatic activities (Fig. 11.2). Local CBF and CMR within the brain are very heterogeneous, and both are approximately four times greater in gray matter than in white matter. The cell population of the brain is also heterogeneous in its oxygen requirements. Glial cells make up approximately one half of the

BOX 11.1 **Normal Cerebral Physiologic Values (Values Updated)**

CBF	
Global	45-55 mL/100 g/min
Cortical (mostly gray matter)	75-80 mL/100 g/min
Subcortical (mostly white matter)	8-20 mL/100 g/min
$CMRO_2$	3-3.5 mL/100 g/min
CVR	1.5-2.1 mm Hg/100 g/min/mL
Cerebral venous Po_2	32-44 mm Hg
Cerebral venous So_2	55%-70%
rSO2	55%-80%
$SjVo_2$	60%-70%
ICP (supine)	8-12 mm Hg

CBF, Cerebral blood flow; *$CMRO_2$,* cerebral metabolic rate of oxygen; *CVR,* cerebral vascular resistance; *ICP,* intracranial pressure; *Po_2,* partial pressure of oxygen; *rSO_2,* regional oxygen saturation measured by near-infrared spectroscopy; *So_2,* oxygen saturation; *$SjVo_2$,* jugular venous oxygen saturation.

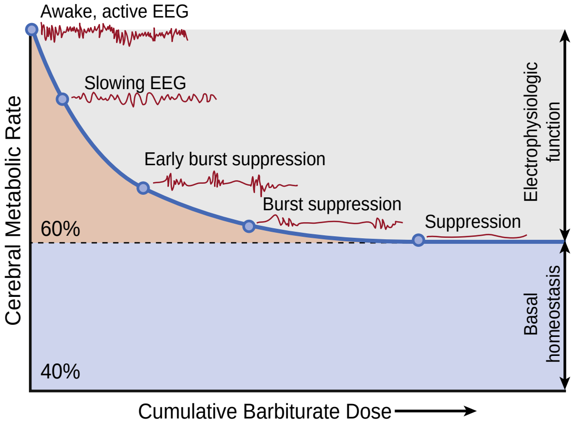


Fig. 11.2 Interdependency of cerebral electrophysiologic function and cerebral metabolic rate (CMR). Administration of various anesthetics, including barbiturates, results in a dose-related reduction in the CMR of oxygen ($CMRO_2$) and cerebral blood flow (CBF). The maximum reduction occurs with the dose that results in electrophysiologic silence. At this point, the energy utilization associated with electrophysiologic activity has been reduced to zero, but the energy utilization for cellular homeostasis persists unchanged. Additional barbiturates cause no further decrease in CBF or $CMRO_2$. *EEG,* Electroencephalogram.

brain's volume and require less energy than neurons. Besides providing a physically supportive latticework for the brain, glial cells are important in the reuptake of neurotransmitters, in the delivery and removal of metabolic substrates and wastes, and in blood-brain barrier (BBB) function.

Given the limited local storage of energy substrate, the brain's substantial demand for substrate must be met by adequate delivery of oxygen and glucose. However, the space constraints imposed by the noncompliant cranium and meninges require that blood flow not be excessive. Not surprisingly, elaborate mechanisms regulate CBF. These mechanisms, which include myogenic, chemical, and autonomic neural factors, are listed in Table 11.1.

TABLE 11.1 Factors Influencing Cerebral Blood Flow

Factor	Comment
CHEMICAL, METABOLIC, HUMORAL	
CMR	CMR influence assumes intact flow-metabolism coupling, the mechanism of which is not fully understood.
Anesthetics	
Temperature	
Arousal; seizures	
$Paco_2$	
Pao_2	
Cardiac output	
Vasoactive drugs	
Anesthetics	
Vasodilators	
Vasopressors	
MYOGENIC	
Autoregulation; MAP	The autoregulation mechanism is fragile; in many pathologic states, CBF is regionally pressure passive.
RHEOLOGIC	
Blood viscosity	
NEUROGENIC	
Extracranial sympathetic and parasympathetic pathways	Contribution and clinical significance are poorly defined.
Intraaxial pathways	

See text for discussion.

CBF, Cerebral blood flow; *CMR,* cerebral metabolic rate; *MAP,* mean arterial pressure; *$Paco_2$,* arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide; *Pao_2,* arterial partial pressure of oxygen.

MYOGENIC REGULATION (AUTOREGULATION) OF CEREBRAL BLOOD FLOW

The conventional view of autoregulation is that the cerebral circulation adjusts its resistance to maintain CBF relatively constant over a wide range of mean arterial pressure (MAP) values. In normal human subjects, CBF is autoregulated between 70 mm Hg (lower limit of autoregulation, LLA) and 150 mm Hg (upper limit of autoregulation, ULA) (Fig. 11.3).[5] There is, however, considerable variation between subjects in the autoregulation limits. Cerebral perfusion pressure is the difference between the MAP and the intracranial pressure (ICP). Because ICP is not usually measured in normal subjects, cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP = MAP − ICP) is rarely available. Assuming a normal ICP of 5 to 10 mm Hg in a supine subject, an LLA of 70 mm Hg expressed as MAP corresponds to a LLA of approximately 60 to 65 mm Hg expressed as CPP. Above and below the autoregulatory plateau, CBF is pressure-dependent (pressure-passive) and linearly varies with CPP. Autoregulation is influenced by the time course over which the changes in CPP occur. Even within the range over which autoregulation normally occurs, a rapid change in arterial pressure will result in a transient (i.e., 3-4 minute) alteration in CBF.

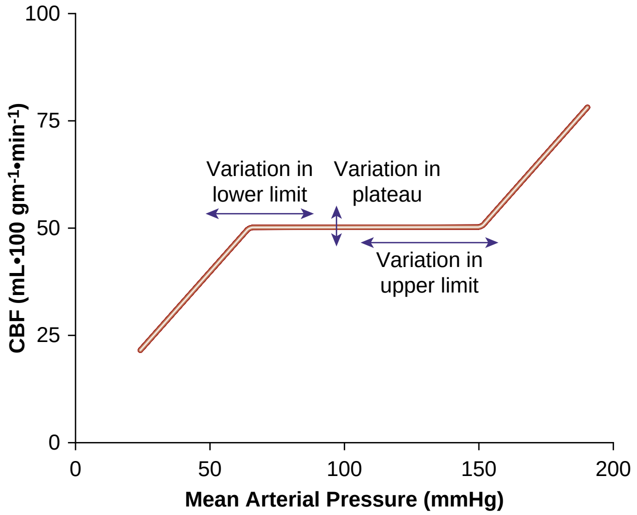


Fig. 11.3 The conventional view of cerebral autoregulation. Cerebral blood flow (CBF) is maintained within the normal range in the face of widely varying blood pressures. Below the lower limit of autoregulation, approximately 65 to 70 mm Hg in humans, and above the upper limit, approximately 150 mm Hg, the cerebral circulation is pressure passive and CBF decreases or increases, respectively, with corresponding changes in mean arterial pressure. Note that there is considerable intersubject variation in the limits of the autoregulatory plateau; the extent of this variation is depicted by the arrows. The autoregulatory curve should not be considered fixed and static but as a dynamically changing response to the cerebral circulation to changes in blood pressure.

The limits of autoregulation and the autoregulatory plateau are conceptual frameworks for the purpose of analysis. They do not represent physiologic "all-or-none" responses. There is considerable variability in the LLA and ULA as well as in the limits of the plateau (see the section on "An Integrated Contemporary View of Cerebral Autoregulation").

The precise mechanisms by which autoregulation is accomplished and its overlap with neurovascular coupling are not known. According to the myogenic hypothesis, changes in CPP lead to direct changes in the tone of vascular smooth muscle; this process appears to be passive. Nitric oxide (NO) and calcium channels may participate in the vasodilation associated with hypotension.

CHEMICAL REGULATION OF CEREBRAL BLOOD FLOW

Several factors, including changes in CMR, arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide ($Pa\text{CO}_2$), and arterial partial pressure of oxygen ($Pa\text{O}_2$) cause alterations in the cerebral biochemical environment that result in adjustments in CBF.

Cerebral Metabolic Rate

Regional CBF and metabolism are tightly coupled. They involve a complex physiologic process regulated, not by a single mechanism, but by a combination of metabolic, glial, neural, and vascular factors. Increased neuronal activity results in increased local brain metabolism, and this increase in the CMR is associated with a proportional change in CBF referred to as *neurovascular coupling*. The traditional view of neurovascular coupling is that it is a positive feedback mechanism wherein increased neuronal activity results in a demand for energy; this demand is met by an increase in CBF. More recent data indicate that coupling is based on a feed-forward mechanism wherein neuronal activity directly increases CBF, thereby increasing energy supply.[6] Although the precise mechanisms that mediate neurovascular coupling have not been defined, the data available implicate local by-products of metabolism (e.g., potassium ion [K^+], hydrogen ion [H^+], lactate, adenosine, and adenosine triphosphate [ATP]). Increased synaptic activity with the attendant release of glutamate leads to the downstream generation of a variety of mediators that affect vascular tone (Fig. 11.4). Glutamate, released with increased neuronal activity, results in the synthesis and release of NO, a potent cerebral vasodilator that plays an important role in neurovascular coupling. Glia also play an important role in neurovascular coupling. Their processes make contact with neurons, and these processes may serve as conduits for the coupling of increased neuronal activity to increases in blood flow. Glutamate activation of metabotropic glutamate receptors (mGluR) in astrocytes leads to arachidonic acid (AA) metabolism and the subsequent generation of prostaglandins and epoxyeicosatrienoic acids. Oxygen modulates the relative contribution of these pathways, and in the setting of reduced oxygen tension at the tissue level, the release of adenosine can contribute to vascular dilation. The net result therefore on vascular tone is determined by the relative contribution of multiple signaling pathways. In addition, nerves that innervate cerebral vessels release peptide neurotransmitters such as vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP), substance P, cholecystokinin, somatostatin, and calcitonin gene–related peptide. These neurotransmitters may also potentially be involved in neurovascular coupling.

CMR is influenced by several phenomena in the neurosurgical environment, including the functional state of the nervous system, anesthetic drugs, and temperature.

Functional state. CMR decreases during sleep and increases during sensory stimulation, mental tasks, or arousal of any cause. During epileptic activity, increases in the CMR may be extreme, whereas regionally, after brain injury and globally with coma, the CMR may be substantially reduced.

Anesthetic drugs. The effect of individual anesthetic drugs on the CMR is presented in greater detail in the second section of this chapter. In general, anesthetic drugs suppress the CMR, with the exception of ketamine and nitrous oxide (N_2O). The component of the CMR on which they act is electrophysiologic function. With several anesthetics, including barbiturates, isoflurane, sevoflurane, desflurane, propofol, and etomidate, increasing plasma concentrations cause progressive suppression of EEG activity and a concomitant reduction in the CMR. However, increasing the plasma level beyond what is required to first achieve suppression of the EEG results in no further depression of the CMR. The component of the CMR required for the maintenance of cellular integrity, the "housekeeping" component, is unaltered by anesthetic drugs (see Fig. 11.2).

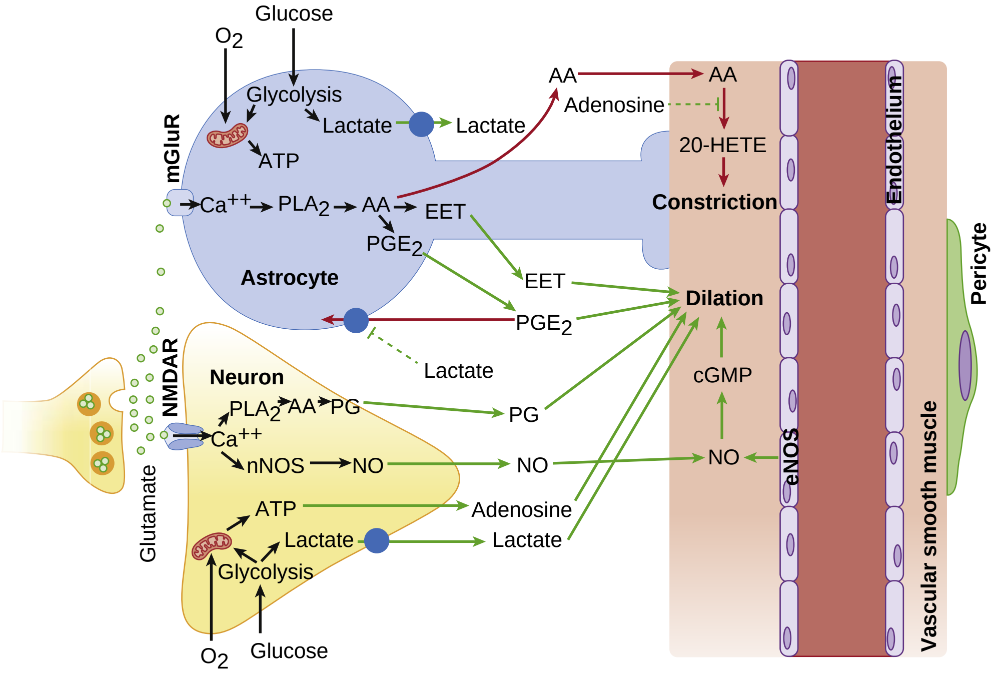


Fig. 11.4 Cerebral neurovascular coupling. Synaptic activity leads to glutamate release, activation of glutamatergic receptors, and calcium entry in neurons. This results in a release of arachidonic acid *(AA)*, prostaglandins *(PGs)*, and nitric oxide *(NO)*. Adenosine and lactate are generated from metabolic activity. These factors all lead to vascular dilation. Glutamate also activates metabotropic glutamate receptors *(mGluR)* in astrocytes, causing intracellular calcium entry, phospholipase A_2 *(PLA_2)* activation, release of AA and epoxyeicosatrienoic *(EET)* acid and prostaglandin E_2 *(PGE_2)*. The latter two AA metabolites contribute to dilation. By contrast, AA can also be metabolized to 20-hydroxyl-eicosatetraenoic acid *(20-HETE)* in vascular smooth muscle. 20-HETE is a potent vascular constrictor. *cGMP,* Cyclic guanosine monophosphate; *eNOS,* endothelial nitric oxide synthase; *NMDAR, N*-methyl D-aspartate (NMDA) glutamate receptor; *nNOS,* neuronal nitric oxide synthase. (Modified from Attwell D, Buchan AM, Charpak S, et al. Glial and neuronal control of brain blood flow. *Nature.* 2010;468(7321):232–243.)

When the complete suppression of EEG is achieved, the cerebral metabolic rate of oxygen ($CMRO_2$) is similar irrespective of the anesthetic agent used to achieve EEG suppression. Yet anesthetic-induced EEG suppression is not a single physiologic state and is influenced by the drug used to produce suppression. When barbiturates are administered to the point of EEG suppression, a uniform depression in the CBF and CMR occurs throughout the brain. When suppression occurs during the administration of isoflurane and sevoflurane, the relative reductions in the CMR and CBF are more intense in the neocortex than in other portions of the cerebrum. Electrophysiologic responsiveness also varies. Cortical somatosensory evoked responses to median nerve stimulation can be readily recorded at doses of thiopental far in excess of those required to cause complete suppression of the EEG but are difficult to elicit at concentrations of isoflurane associated with a burst-suppression pattern (~1.5 minimum alveolar concentration [MAC]). In addition, the EEG characteristics of the burst-suppression states that occur just before complete suppression differ among anesthetic drugs. These differences may be of some relevance to discussions of differences in the neuroprotective potential of drugs that can produce EEG suppression.

Temperature. The effects of hypothermia on the brain have been reviewed in detail.[7] The CMR decreases by 6% to 7% per degree Celsius of temperature reduction. In addition to anesthetic drugs, hypothermia can also cause complete suppression of the EEG (at approximately 18°C-20°C). However, in contrast to anesthetic drugs, temperature reduction beyond that at which EEG suppression first occurs *does* produce a further decrease in the CMR (Fig. 11.5). This decrease occurs because anesthetic drugs reduce only the component of the CMR associated with neuronal function, whereas hypothermia decreases the rate of energy utilization associated with both electrophysiologic function and the basal component related to the maintenance of cellular integrity. Mild hypothermia preferentially suppresses the basal component of the CMR. The $CMRO_2$ at 18°C is less than 10% of normothermic control values, which may explain the brain's tolerance for moderate periods of circulatory arrest at these and colder temperatures.

Hyperthermia has an opposite influence on cerebral physiologic function. Between 37°C and 42°C, CBF and CMR increase. However, above 42°C, a dramatic reduction in cerebral oxygen consumption occurs, an indication of a threshold for a toxic effect of hyperthermia that may occur as a result of protein (enzyme) denaturation.

$PaCO_2$. CBF varies directly with $Paco_2$ (Fig. 11.6*A*), especially within the range of physiologic variation of $Paco_2$. CBF changes 1 to 2 mL/100 g/min for each 1 mm Hg change in $Paco_2$ around normal $Paco_2$ values. This response is attenuated at a $Paco_2$ less than 25 mm Hg. Under normal circumstances, the sensitivity of CBF to changes in $Paco_2$ ($\Delta CBF/\Delta Paco_2$) is positively correlated with resting levels of CBF. Accordingly, anesthetic drugs that alter resting CBF cause changes in the response of the cerebral circulation

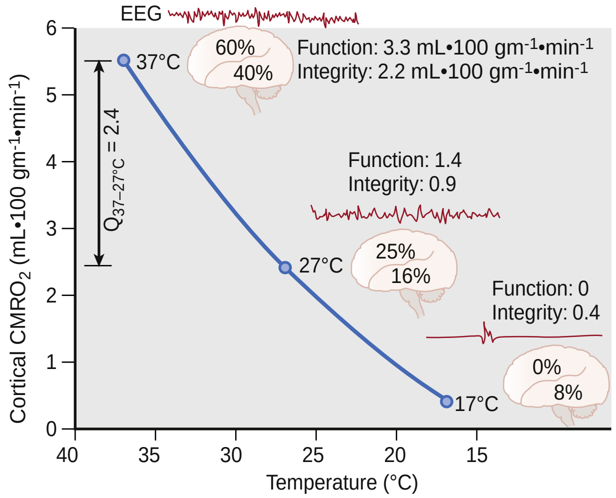


Fig. 11.5 Effect of temperature reduction on the cerebral metabolic rate of oxygen ($CMRO_2$) in the cortex. Hypothermia reduces both of the components of cerebral metabolic activity identified in Fig. 11.2—that associated with neuronal electrophysiologic activity (Function) and that associated with the maintenance of cellular homeostasis (Integrity). This is in contrast to anesthetics that alter only the functional component. The ratio of cerebral metabolic rate (CMR) at 37°C to that at 27°C, the Q10 ratio, is shown in the graph. Note that the $CMRO_2$ in the cortex (gray matter) is greater than global $CMRO_2$, considering the lower metabolic rate in white matter. *EEG*, Electroencephalogram. (Modified from Michenfelder JD. *Anesthesia and the brain: clinical, functional, metabolic, and vascular correlates*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1988.)

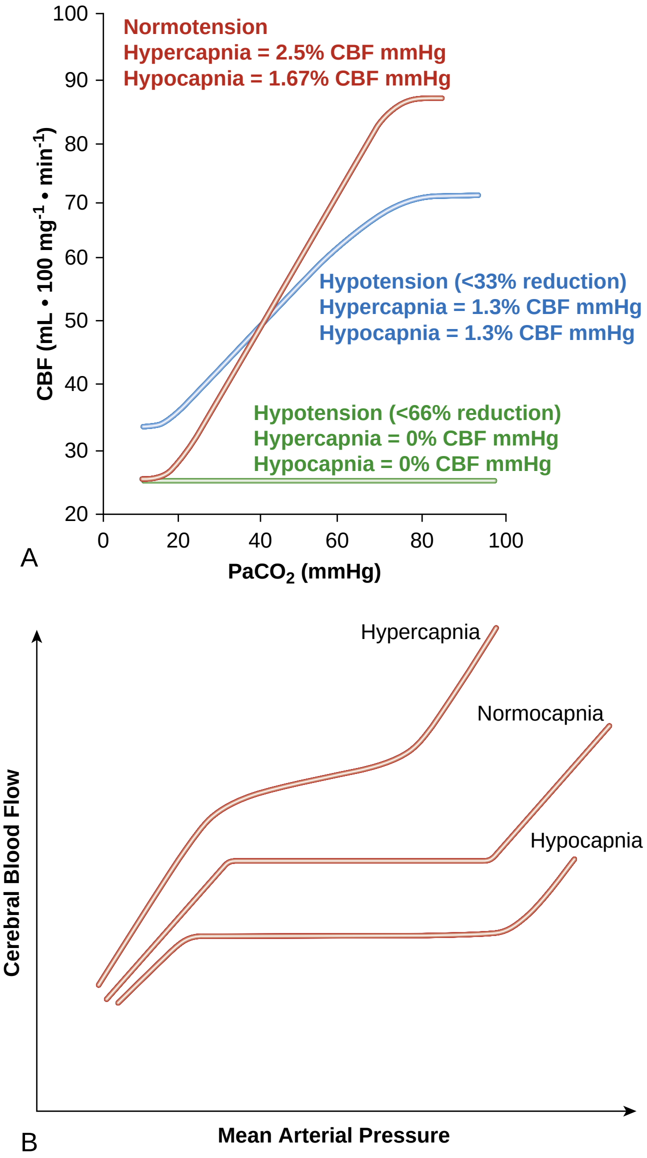


Fig. 11.6 *A,* Relationship between cerebral blood flow *(CBF)* and partial pressure of carbon dioxide *($Pa{CO_2}$)*. CBF increases linearly with increases in arterial $Pa{CO_2}$. Below a $Pa{CO_2}$ of 25 mm Hg, further reduction in CBF is limited. Similarly, the increase in CBF above a $Pa{CO_2}$ of approximately 75 to 80 mm Hg is also attenuated. The cerebrovascular responsiveness to $Pa{CO_2}$ is influenced significantly by blood pressure. With moderate hypotension (mean arterial pressure [MAP] reduction of <33%), the cerebrovascular responsiveness to changes in $Pa{CO_2}$ is attenuated significantly. With severe hypotension (MAP reduction of approximately 66%), CO_2 responsiveness is abolished. *B,* The effect of $Pa{CO_2}$ variation on cerebral autoregulation. Hypercarbia induces cerebral vasodilation and, consequently, the autoregulatory response to hypertension is less effective. By contrast, hypocapnia results in greater CBF autoregulation over a wider MAP variation. (Modified from Willie[8] and Rickards[9].)

to CO_2. The magnitude of the reduction in CBF caused by hypocapnia is more intense when resting CBF is increased (as might occur during anesthesia with volatile agents). Conversely, when resting CBF is reduced, the magnitude of the hypocapnia-induced reduction in CBF is decreased slightly. It should be noted that CO_2 responsiveness has been observed in normal brain during anesthesia with all the anesthetic drugs that have been studied.

The role of MAP in the CO_2 responsiveness of the cerebral circulation is further highlighted by the impact of modest and severe hypotension.[8] With the former, the increase in CBF attendant upon hypercarbia is significantly reduced, whereas hypocapnia-induced vasoconstriction is only modestly affected. When hypotension is severe, a cerebrovascular response to changes in $Pa{CO_2}$ is not observed (Fig. 11.6*A*). The level of $Pa{CO_2}$ also modulates cerebral autoregulation. With hypercarbia, cerebral autoregulatory response to hypertension is attenuated. By contrast, with the induction of hypocapnia, CBF is autoregulated over a wider MAP range (Fig 11.6*B*).[9]

The changes in CBF caused by $Pa{CO_2}$ are dependent on pH alterations in the extracellular fluid of the brain. NO, in particular NO of neuronal origin, is an important although not exclusive mediator of CO_2-induced vasodilation.[10] The vasodilatory response to hypercapnia is also mediated in part by prostaglandins. The changes in extracellular pH and CBF rapidly occur after $Pa{CO_2}$ adjustments because CO_2 freely diffuses across the cerebrovascular endothelium and the BBB. In contrast with *respiratory* acidosis, acute systemic *metabolic* acidosis has little immediate effect on CBF because the BBB excludes H^+ from the perivascular space. The CBF changes in response to alterations in $Pa{CO_2}$ rapidly occur, but they are not sustained. Despite the maintenance of an increased arterial pH, CBF returns toward normal over a period of 6 to 8 hours because the pH of CSF gradually returns to normal levels as a result of extrusion of bicarbonate (see Fig. 57.6). Consequently, a patient who has had a sustained period of hyperventilation or hypoventilation deserves special consideration. Acute restoration of a normal $Pa{CO_2}$ value will result in a significant CSF acidosis (after hypocapnia) or alkalosis (after hypercapnia). The

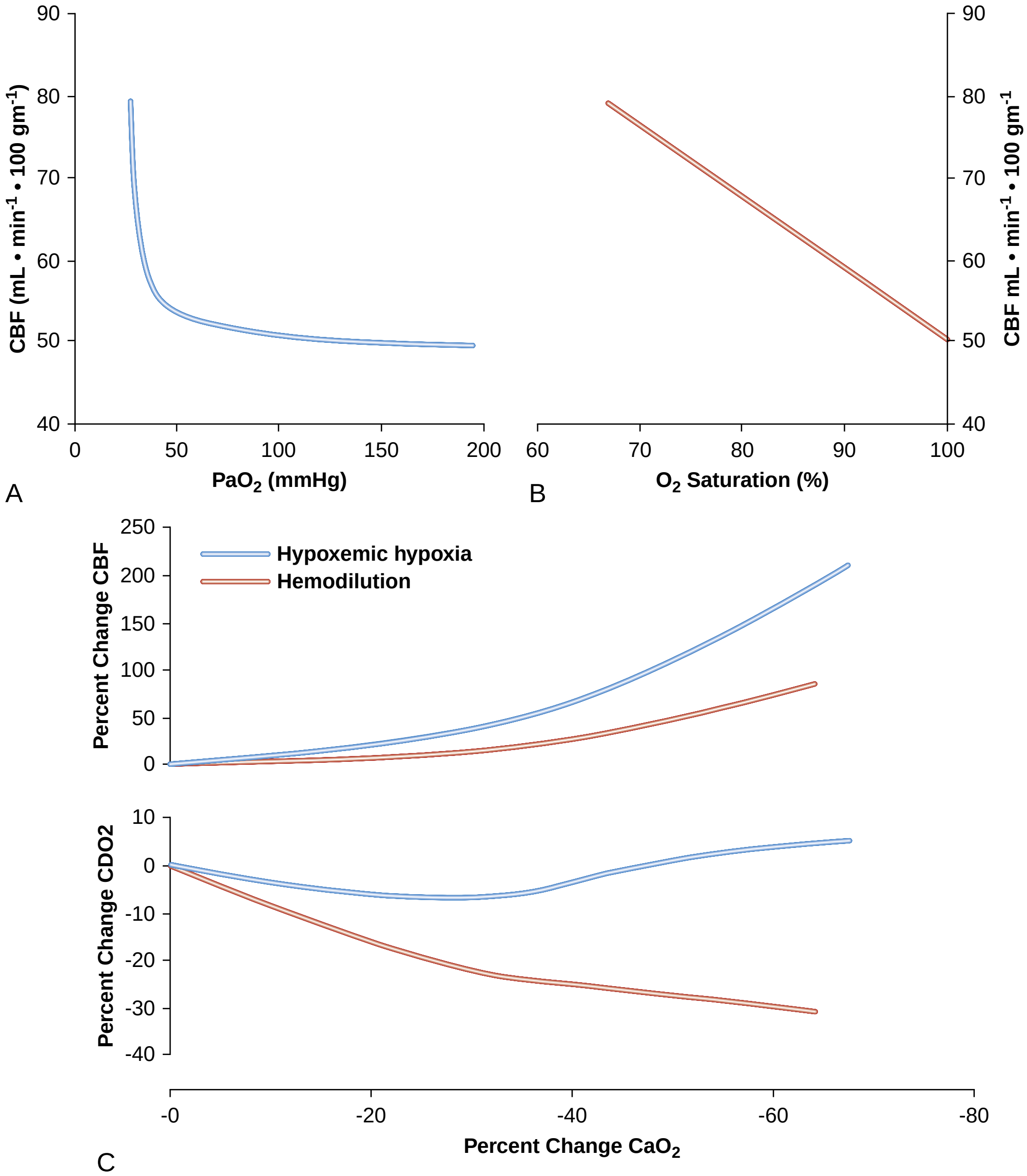


Fig. 11.7 (A) Relationship between cerebral blood flow *(CBF)* and partial pressure of oxygen *($Pa{O_2}$)*. Between the range of 60 and 200 mm Hg, $Pa{O_2}$ has little impact on CBF. A reduction in $Pa{O_2}$ to less than 60 mm Hg results in hemoglobin desaturation. There is significant cerebral vasodilation and a marked increase in CBF. (B) The relationship between hemoglobin saturation and CBF is inversely linear, with a gradual increase in CBF as saturation is decreased. (C) The impact of a reduction in cerebral oxygen delivery *(CDO_2)*, either by hypoxemic hypoxia or by hemodilution, is depicted. CBF increases significantly either with hypoxia or hemodilution; however, the CBF response is much greater with hypoxia *(upper panel)*. The total cerebral oxygen delivery is better maintained with hypoxia than hemodilution at a comparable level of arterial oxygen content *(CaO_2)* because of the greater CBF increase that occurs with the former. (Modified from Hoiland et al.[11] and Todd et al.[354,355].)

former results in increased CBF with a concomitant increase in ICP that depends on the prevailing intracranial compliance. The latter conveys a theoretic risk for ischemia.

$Pa{O_2}$. Changes in $Pa{O_2}$ from 60 to more than 300 mm Hg have little influence on CBF. A reduction in $Pa{O_2}$ below 60 mm Hg rapidly increases CBF (Fig. 11.7*A*). Below a $Pa{O_2}$ of 60 mm Hg, there is a rapid reduction in oxyhemoglobin saturation. The relationship between oxyhemoglobin saturation, as evaluated by pulse oximetry, and CBF is inversely linear (see Fig. 11.7*B*). The mechanisms mediating cerebral vasodilation during hypoxia may include neurogenic effects initiated by peripheral and neuraxial chemoreceptors, as well as local humoral influences. A reduction in arterial oxygen content, and therefore cerebral oxygen delivery, can be achieved either by a reduction in $Pa{O_2}$ (hypoxemic hypoxia) or by a reduction in hemoglobin concentration (anemia, hemodilution). Both hemodilution and hypoxemic hypoxia lead to cerebral vasodilation and an increase in CBF. Of the two variables, however, hypoxemic hypoxia is a far more potent variable in CBF augmentation than hemodilution. Cerebral oxygen delivery is better maintained during hypoxia when arterial content is equivalently reduced by hypoxia or hemodilution (see Fig. 11.7*C*). Deoxyhemoglobin plays a central role in hypoxia-induced increases in CBF by causing the release of NO and its metabolites, as well as ATP.[11] Hypoxia-induced opening of ATP-dependent K^+ channels in vascular smooth muscle leads to hyperpolarization and vasodilation. The rostral ventrolateral medulla (RVLM) serves as an oxygen sensor within the brain. Stimulation of the RVM by hypoxia results in an increase in CBF (but not CMR), and lesions of the RVLM suppress the magnitude of the CBF response to hypoxia. The response to hypoxia is synergistic with the hyperemia produced by hypercapnia and acidosis. At high PaO_2 values, CBF modestly decreases. At 1 atmosphere of oxygen, CBF is reduced by approximately 12%.

NEUROGENIC REGULATION OF CEREBRAL BLOOD FLOW

The cerebral vasculature is extensively innervated.[12] The density of innervation declines with vessel size, and the greatest neurogenic influence appears to be exerted on larger cerebral arteries. This innervation includes cholinergic (parasympathetic and nonparasympathetic), adrenergic (sympathetic and nonsympathetic), serotoninergic, and VIPergic systems of extraaxial and intraaxial origin. An extracranial sympathetic influence via the superior cervical ganglion, as well as parasympathetic innervation via the sphenopalatine ganglion, certainly exists in animals. The intraaxial pathways likely result from innervation arising from several nuclei, including the locus coeruleus, the fastigial nucleus, the dorsal raphe nucleus, and the basal magnocellular nucleus of Meynert. Evidence of the functional significance of neurogenic influences has been derived from studies of CBF autoregulation and ischemic injury. Hemorrhagic shock, a state of high sympathetic tone, results in less CBF at a given MAP than occurs when hypotension is produced with sympatholytic drugs. During shock, a sympathetically mediated vasoconstrictive effect shifts the lower end of the autoregulatory curve to the right. It is not clear what the relative contributions of humoral and neural mechanisms are to this phenomenon; however, a neurogenic component certainly exists because sympathetic denervation increases CBF during hemorrhagic shock. Moreover, sympathetic denervation produced by a blockade of the stellate ganglion can increase CBF in humans.[13] Activation of cerebral sympathetic innervation also shifts the ULA to the right and offers some protection against hypertension-induced increases in CBF (which can in certain circumstances lead to a breakdown of the BBB).[8] Experimental interventions that alter these neurogenic control pathways influence outcome after standardized ischemic insults, presumably by influences on vascular tone and therefore CBF. The nature and influence of such pathways in humans are not known, and their manipulation for the purposes of clinical management remains to be systematically investigated.

EFFECTS OF BLOOD VISCOSITY ON CEREBRAL BLOOD FLOW

Blood viscosity can influence CBF. Hematocrit is the single most important determinant of blood viscosity.[14] In healthy humans, variation of the hematocrit within the normal range (33%-45%) probably results in only modest alterations in CBF. Beyond this range, changes are more substantial. In anemia, cerebral vascular resistance is reduced and CBF increases. However, this may result not only from a reduction in viscosity but also as a compensatory response to reduced oxygen delivery.[15] Although arterial oxygen content can be reduced by both hypoxia and by hemodilution, the increase in CBF that accompanies hypoxia is of a greater magnitude than that by hemodilution induced reduction in oxygen delivery.[11] The effect of a reduction in viscosity on CBF is more important with focal cerebral ischemia, a condition in which vasodilation in response to impaired oxygen delivery is probably already maximal. In this situation, reducing viscosity by hemodilution increases CBF in the ischemic territory. In patients with focal cerebral ischemia, a hematocrit of 30% to 34% will result in optimal delivery of oxygen. However, manipulation of viscosity in patients with acute ischemic stroke is not of benefit in reducing the extent of cerebral injury. Therefore, viscosity is not a target of manipulation in patients at risk as a result of cerebral ischemia, with the possible exception of those with hematocrit values higher than 55%.

CARDIAC OUTPUT

The conventional view of cerebral hemodynamics is that perfusion pressure (MAP or CPP) is the primary determinant of CBF and that the influence of cardiac output is limited. More recent data suggest that cardiac output impacts cerebral perfusion. In several investigations in which central blood volume was modulated, either reduced by application of lower body negative pressure, or increased by the infusion of fluid, a linear relationship between cardiac output and CBF, as measured as middle cerebral artery flow velocity (MCAfv) by transcranial Doppler, was clearly demonstrated.[8,16-20] An analysis of the pooled data from these investigations indicates that a reduction in cardiac output of approximately 30% leads to a decrease in CBF by about 10%.[21] In patients undergoing hip arthroplasty under hypotensive epidural anesthesia, the administration of epinephrine led to a maintenance of CBF even though the MAP was below the LLA.[22] Presumably, this maintenance of CBF was due to an epinephrine-induced increase in cardiac output. An association between CO and CBF has also been observed in acute stroke, subarachnoid hemorrhage-induced vasospasm, and sepsis. However, the CO–CBF relationship has not been demonstrated uniformly; in fact, augmentation of CO does not increase CBF in several disease states, including traumatic head injury, neurologic surgery, and cardiac surgery.[21] Collectively, the available data suggest that CO does influence CBF and that this effect may be of particular relevance in situations in which circulating volume is reduced and in shock states.

AN INTEGRATED CONTEMPORARY VIEW OF CEREBRAL AUTOREGULATION

The conventional view of cerebral autoregulation is that CBF is held constant as MAP increases between the lower limit and ULA. The currently available data, however, indicate that this view is now outmoded and is in need of revision. As discussed previously, CBF and the cerebral vasculature are influenced by a variety of variables. Clearly, MAP (perfusion pressure) is a major determinant of CBF. Cardiac output is increasingly being recognized as an important determinant of CBF. Cardiac output in turn is dependent on adequate circulatory volume, cardiac preload, contractility, afterload, and heart rate and rhythm. The presence of cardiovascular disease, in particular congestive heart failure, will limit the capacity of autoregulatory mechanisms to maintain CBF in response to hypotension. Arterial blood gas tensions affect vasomotor tone, and both hypercarbia and hypoxia attenuate autoregulation. The contribution of the sympathetic nervous system is of importance in the cerebrovascular response to hypertension. At the same time, sympathetic nerves reduce the vasodilatory capacity of the cerebral vessels during hypotension. A variety of medications can impact autoregulation, either through modulation of sympathetic nervous system activity (β-antagonists, α_2-agonists) or by direct reduction of vasomotor tone (calcium channel antagonists, nitrates, angiotensin receptor blockers, angiotensin converting enzyme [ACE] inhibitors). Anesthetics modulate autoregulation by a number of means, including suppression of metabolism, alteration of neurovascular coupling to a higher flow–metabolism ratio, suppression of autonomic neural activity, and by direct effect on cerebral vasomotor tone, and alteration of cardiac function and systemic circulatory tone.

Cerebrovascular tone and CBF are therefore under the control of a complex regulatory system (Fig. 11.8). Given the multitude of factors that determine the capacity of the cerebral circulation to respond to changes in perfusion pressure, the premise that cerebral autoregulation is static is now untenable. Rather, cerebral autoregulation should be viewed as a dynamic process and that the morphologic form of the autoregulatory curve is the result of the integration of all the variables that affect cerebrovascular tone in an interdependent manner.[8,23] Therefore, a continuum of vascular responsiveness in both the lower and upper limits and in the plateau probably exists as the ability of the cerebrovascular bed to dilate or constrict is exhausted. In a review of the available data from investigations in humans, the range of pressures that defined the LLA spanned from 33 mm Hg to as high as 108 mm Hg.[5]

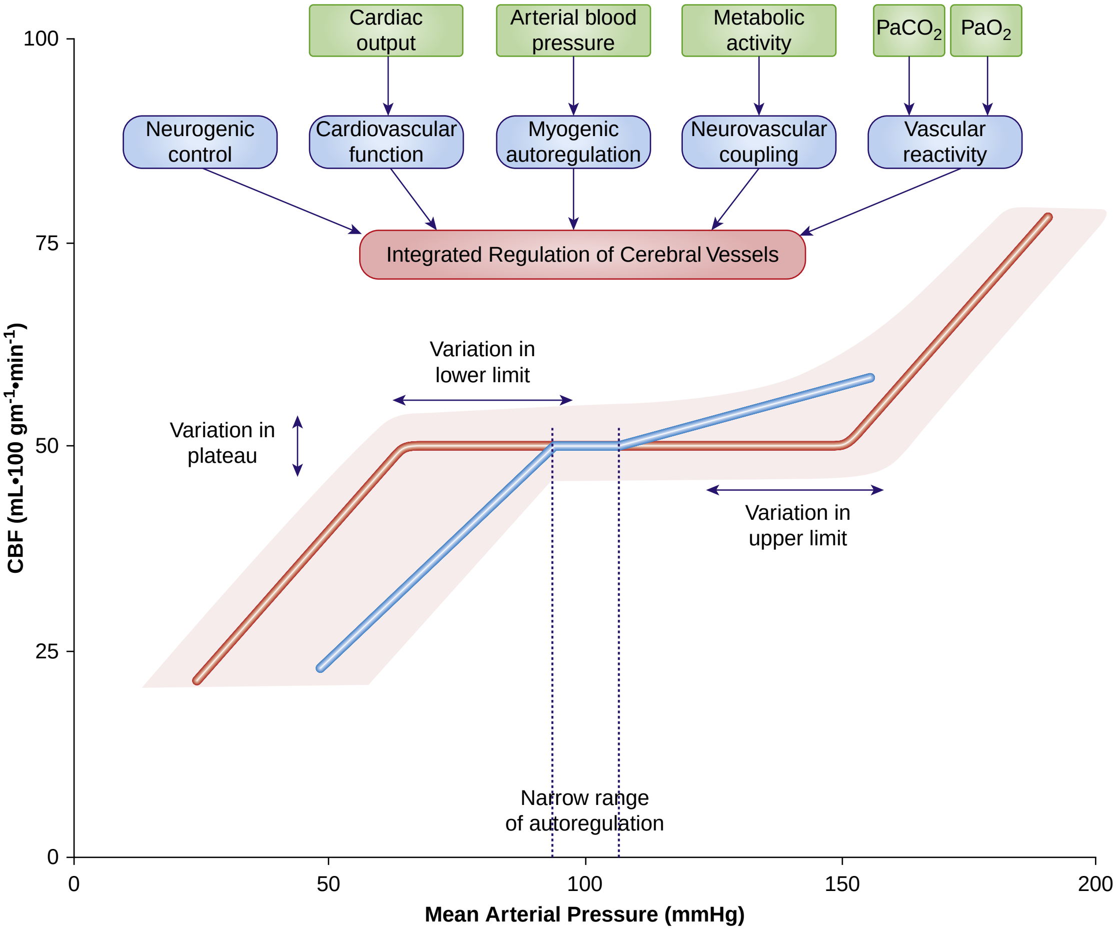


Fig. 11.8 Integrative regulation of cerebral blood flow *(CBF)*. The conventional view of cerebral autoregulation is that CBF is maintained constant with a variation in mean arterial pressure (MAP) of 65 to 150 mm Hg. A more contemporary view is that cerebral autoregulation is a dynamic process that is under the influence of a number of variables including myogenic autoregulation, neurovascular coupling, arterial CO_2 and O_2 tensions, autonomic (neurogenic) activity, and cardiovascular function. Anesthetic agents in particular affect autoregulation at multiple levels: suppression of metabolism, alteration in arterial blood gas tensions, direct cerebral vasodilation, suppression of autonomic activity, and modulation of cardiovascular function. Therefore, CBF at any given moment is a product of the composite of these variables. There is considerable variation in lower and upper limits as well as the plateau of the autoregulatory curve. The conventional autoregulatory curve is depicted in red. The red shaded area represents the range of variation in CBF. The autoregulatory curve depicted in blue was derived from 48 healthy human subjects. In that group, the lower limit of autoregulation was approximately 90 mm Hg and the range over which CBF remained relatively constant was only 10 mm Hg. *$Pa{CO_2}$*, Arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide; *$Pa{O_2}$*, arterial partial pressure of oxygen. (Modified from Tan et al.,[24] Willie et al.,[8] and Meng and Gelb.[23])

In healthy humans subjected to lower body negative pressure to reduce central blood volume and to reduce blood pressure, the autoregulatory plateau spanned a range of only 10 mm Hg (± 5 mm Hg from baseline)[24] as opposed to a range of 100 mm Hg in the once conventional representations of autoregulation. Above and below this narrow plateau, CBF was pressure passive. Even within this narrow plateau, a modest increase in CBF with increases in blood pressure is observable—that is, the plateau is not flat. The slope of the percentage change in MAP to percentage change in CBF relationship has been demonstrated to be 0.81 ± 0.77 with induction of hypotension and 0.21 ± 0.47 with the induction of hypertension. These data are consistent with the premise that the capacity of the cerebral circulation to adapt to increases in blood pressure is considerably greater than adaptation to hypotension.[8] Based on these more recent observations, the conventional view of autoregulation is probably not applicable to most subjects, and a revision of the framework of cerebral circulatory control along the lines of recent data is needed.[8,23] In this respect, it is the view of the authors that cerebral autoregulation should be accurately represented by a family of autoregulatory curves rather than a single static curve (see Fig. 11.8). In these dynamic autoregulatory curves, there is considerable heterogeneity in the LLA and ULA, as well as in the limits and slope of the plateau.

Clinical implications: Maintenance of cerebral perfusion is essential, and identification of a target range of MAP in individual patients is a key part of anesthetic management. Given the substantial variability in cerebral autoregulatory capacity, it may be difficult to identify the target range based on an LLA in most patients. Selection of the target range based on the baseline pressure, after due consideration of comorbid conditions that may impact cerebrovascular and cardiovascular performance, may be preferable. In attempts to maintain adequate perfusion pressure, the traditional approach of systemic vasoconstriction, for example with α_1-agonists, is reasonable. However, the adequate maintenance of circulatory volume and of cardiac output should also be considered; administration of agents that can also increase cardiac output may be of value. This may be of particular relevance in patients with compromised cardiac function.

VASOACTIVE DRUGS

Many drugs with intrinsic vascular effects are used in contemporary anesthetic practice, including both anesthetic drugs and numerous vasoactive drugs specifically used for hemodynamic manipulation. This section deals with the latter. The actions of anesthetics are discussed in the "Effects of Anesthetics on Cerebral Blood Flow and Cerebral Metabolic Rate" section.

Systemic Vasodilators

Most drugs used to induce hypotension, including sodium nitroprusside, nitroglycerin, hydralazine, adenosine, and calcium channel blockers (CCBs), also cause cerebral vasodilation. As a result, CBF either increases or is maintained at pre-hypotensive levels. In addition, when hypotension is induced with a cerebral vasodilator, CBF is maintained at lower MAP values than when induced by either hemorrhage or a noncerebral vasodilator. In contrast to direct vasodilators, the ACE inhibitor enalapril does not have any significant effect on CBF. Anesthetics that simultaneously vasodilate the cerebral circulation cause increases in cerebral blood volume (CBV) with the potential to increase ICP. The effects of these anesthetics on ICP are less dramatic when hypotension is slowly induced, which probably reflects the more effective interplay of compensatory mechanisms (i.e., shifts in CSF and venous blood) when changes occur more slowly.

Catecholamine Agonists and Antagonists

Numerous drugs with agonist and antagonist activity at catecholamine receptors (α_1, α_2, β_1, β_2, and dopamine) are in common use. The effects of these vasoactive drugs on cerebral physiology are dependent on basal arterial blood pressure, the magnitude of the drug-induced arterial blood pressure changes, the status of the autoregulation mechanism, and the status of the BBB. A drug may have direct effects on cerebral vascular smooth muscle or indirect effects mediated by the cerebral autoregulatory response to changes in systemic blood pressure (or both types of effects). When autoregulation is preserved, increases in systemic pressure should increase CBF if basal blood pressure is outside the limits of autoregulation. When basal pressure is within the normal autoregulatory range, an increase in systemic arterial pressure does not significantly affect CBF because the normal autoregulatory response to a rising MAP entails cerebral vasoconstriction (i.e., an increase in cerebral vascular resistance) to maintain a constant CBF. When autoregulation is defective, CBF will vary in direct relation to arterial pressure. The information in the following paragraphs and in Table 11.2 emphasizes data obtained from investigations of vasopressors in intact preparations, and gives priority to the results obtained in humans and higher primates.

α_1-Agonists. Will the administration of α_1-agonists (phenylephrine, norepinephrine) reduce CBF?

Studies in humans and nonhuman primates do not confirm this concern. Intracarotid infusions of norepinephrine in doses that significantly increase the MAP result in no change in CBF. Norepinephrine can increase CBF, but such increases might occur if autoregulation were defective or its limit exceeded. β-Mimetic drugs (norepinephrine has β_1 activity) may cause activation of cerebral metabolism[25] with a coupled increase in CBF. This effect is more apparent when these drugs can gain greater access to the brain parenchyma via a defective BBB (see Table 11.2). Administration of phenylephrine to patients undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass does not decrease CBF. In spinal cord–injured patients with relative hypotension, the administration of the α_1-agonist midodrine increased perfusion pressure and increased flow velocity in the middle cerebral artery (MCA) and the posterior cerebral artery.[26] In healthy patients,[27] and in those undergoing surgery in the beach chair position,[28] the administration of phenylephrine maintains or augments MCAfv. Collectively, these data suggest that norepinephrine and phenylephrine maintain cerebral perfusion.

TABLE 11.2 Best Estimates of the Influence of Pure Catecholamine Receptor Agonists and Specific Pressor Substances on Cerebral Blood Flow and Cerebral Metabolic Rate

Agonist	Cerebral Blood Flow	Cerebral Metabolic Rate
PURE		
α_1	0/–	0
α_2	–	–
β	+	+
β (BBB open)	+++	+++
Dopamine	++	0
Dopamine (high dose)	–	?0
Fenoldopam	–	?0
MIXED		
Norepinephrine	0/–	0/+
Norepinephrine (BBB open)	+	+
Epinephrine	+	+
Epinephrine (BBB open)	+++	+++

The number of symbols indicates the magnitude of the effect.
Where species differences occurred, data from primates were given preference. See text for complete discussion.
BBB, Blood-brain barrier; +, increase; –, decrease; 0, no effect.

The traditional view that CBF can be maintained by the administration of α_1-agonists without any adverse effect on cerebral oxygenation has been challenged. In anesthetized patients,[29-31] phenylephrine administration by bolus modestly reduced regional cerebral oxygen saturation (rSO_2), measured by near-infrared oximetry. Ephedrine, although increasing arterial blood pressure to a similar extent as phenylephrine, did not reduce rSO_2, presumably because of its ability to maintain cardiac output. In human volunteers, a norepinephrine-induced increase in arterial blood pressure slightly reduced MCAfv and cerebral oxygen saturation (Sco_2) and $SjVo_2$.[32] By contrast, although phenylephrine decreased rSO_2, MCAfv was increased and $SjVo_2$ was unchanged.[33] These data have led to the question of whether phenylephrine and norepinephrine administration negatively impact cerebral oxygenation. Several factors argue against this possibility.[34] The first concern is methodology. Near-infrared spectroscopy (NIRS) measures oxygenated and deoxygenated blood in a defined region of brain and is a composite of arterial, capillary, and venous blood. Vasopressors affect both arterial and venous tone. Even a minor change in the volume of arterial and venous volumes within the region of the brain can affect the rSO_2 measurement. Moreover, extracranial contamination is a significant component of the rSO_2 values reported by the currently available NIRS monitors.[35] This contamination is more important than the slight reduction in Sco_2 observed in these investigations. In the absence of direct measurement of brain tissue oxygenation, a modest reduction in Sco_2 in the face of increasing arterial blood pressure cannot be taken as evidence of impairment of cerebral oxygenation. In addition, phenylephrine did not decrease $SjVo_2$, a more global measurement of cerebral oxygenation. Although norepinephrine decreased $SjVo_2$ by approximately 3% (a mild reduction at best), its administration has been previously shown to increase the $CMRO_2$. Finally, the minor reduction in rSO_2 effected by phenylephrine is no longer apparent when an increase in the $CMRO_2$ is concurrent. Phenylephrine apparently does not prevent an increase in CBF when such an increase is warranted by increased brain metabolism.

These studies were conducted in patients with a normal central nervous system (CNS). Although unlikely, the concern is that α_1-agonists might reduce cerebral perfusion in the injured brain. In patients with a head injury, the administration of phenylephrine increased CPP and did not reduce regional CBF.[36] Transient changes may occur in CBF and rSO_2 (on the order of 2-5 minutes) in response to bolus doses of phenylephrine; however, with a continuous infusion, α_1-agonists have little direct influence on CBF and cerebral oxygenation in humans.[34] Thus maintenance of CPP with these vasopressors does not have an adverse effect on the brain.

α_2-Agonists. α_2-Agonists have both analgesic and sedative effects. This class of drugs includes dexmedetomidine and clonidine, with the latter being a significantly less specific and less potent α_2-agonist. Two investigations in human volunteers have confirmed the ability of dexmedetomidine to decrease CBF. Dexmedetomidine dose-dependently decreased MCAfv, with the maximum reduction being approximately 25%.[37] Dexmedetomidine (1 μg/kg loading dose and infusion at either 0.2 or 0.6 μg/kg/hr) decreased CBF by approximately 30%[38] in healthy human volunteers. In both these investigations, the CMR was not measured; whether the reduction in CBF was due to a direct vasoconstrictor activity of dexmedetomidine or to suppression of the CMR with a corresponding reduction in CBF is not clear. In a more recent study of dexmedetomidine during which both MCAfv and the CMR were measured in healthy humans, dexmedetomidine decreased MCAfv in parallel with a reduction in the CMR.[39] Similarly, in healthy patients[40] and those with traumatic brain injury[41] undergoing sedation with dexmedetomidine, the reduction in CBF was matched by a parallel reduction in CMR. Thus the effects of dexmedetomidine on CBF were primarily mediated by its ability to suppress the CMR; the reduction in CBF is commensurate with the reduction in CMR, and there is no evidence that dexmedetomidine causes cerebral ischemia. However, the well-known effect of dexmedetomidine in decreasing arterial blood pressure merits careful consideration if used in patients who are critically dependent on collateral perfusion pressure, especially in the recovery phase of an anesthetic.

β-Agonists. β-receptor agonists, in small doses, have little direct effect on the cerebral vasculature. In larger doses and in association with physiologic stress, they can cause an increase in the CMR with an accompanying increase in CBF. The β_1-receptor is probably the mediator of these effects. In doses that do not result in substantial changes in the MAP, intracarotid epinephrine does not change CBF in nonanesthetized humans. However, with larger doses that lead to an increase in the MAP, both CBF and $CMRO_2$ can increase by approximately 20%. A recent investigation has demonstrated that the administration of epinephrine in patients undergoing surgery under hypotensive epidural anesthesia can increase MCAfv, presumably by augmenting cardiac output (as discussed previously).[22]

Dobutamine can increase CBF and CMR by 20% and 30%, respectively. Dobutamine can increase CBF independent of its effect on blood pressure; the increase in CBF has been attributed to the augmentation of cardiac output by dobutamine.[36]

Evidence suggests that a defect in the BBB enhances the effect of β-agonists.[42] Intracarotid norepinephrine, which does not normally affect CBF and CMR, increases CBF and CMR when BBB permeability is increased with hypertonic drugs. Epinephrine caused an elevation in the $CMRO_2$, but only when the BBB was made permeable.[42] These observations beg the interpretation that β-agonists will increase CBF and CMR *only* when the BBB is injured. However, when epinephrine was given in doses that did not significantly increase the MAP, increases in CBF and CMR occurred. Accordingly, BBB injury may exaggerate but is not a necessary condition in humans for the occurrence of β-mediated increases in CBF and CMR.

β-Blockers. β-Adrenergic blockers either reduce or have no effect on CBF and CMR. In two investigations in humans, propranolol, 5 mg intravenously,[43] and labetalol, 0.75 mg/kg intravenously,[44] had no effect on CBF and cerebral blood flow velocity (CBFV), respectively. Modest reductions in CBF occur after the administration of labetalol to patients undergoing craniotomy who become hypertensive during emergence from anesthesia. Esmolol shortens seizures induced by electroconvulsive therapy (ECT), which suggests that esmolol does cross the normal BBB. Catecholamine levels at the time of β-blocker administration or the status of the BBB (or both) may influence the effect of these drugs. β-Adrenergic blockers are unlikely to have adverse effects on patients with intracranial pathology, other than effects secondary to changes in perfusion pressure.

Dopaminergic agents. Dopamine can be used for the treatment of hemodynamic dysfunction. It also augments the function of the normal cardiovascular system when an increase in the MAP is desired as an adjunct to the treatment of focal cerebral ischemia, especially in the setting of vasospasm. Nonetheless, its effects on CBF and CMR have not been defined with certainty. The likely predominant effect of dopamine in the normal cerebral vasculature, when administered in small doses, is probably slight vasodilation with a minimal change in the CMR.[45] Increased CMR in discrete regions of the brain, such as the choroid plexus and basal ganglia, can occur. However, overall cortical blood flow is not influenced. Vasoconstriction of the cerebral circulation is not observed even when dopamine is administered in doses of up to 100 μg/kg/min.[45] Fenoldopam is a dopamine agonist with activity at the DA_1-receptor and α_2-receptor. The administration of fenoldopam leads to systemic vasodilation and a decrease in arterial blood pressure. In humans, fenoldopam decreased systemic blood pressure to a level that was above the LLA; however, a modest (≈15%) reduction was observed in CBF that did not increase to normal levels when systemic blood pressure was supported.[46] The reason for the reduction of CBF is not clear.

Calcium channel blockers. CCBs are frequently used to treat acute hypertension in the neurologically injured patient population. Cerebral vessels are richly endowed with calcium channels, in particular the L-type calcium channel. CCBs therefore induce vasodilation of the pial and cerebral arteries. In healthy humans, intravenous administration of nimodipine does not change CBF; however, when the slight decrease in MAP and changes in $Paco_2$ are taken into consideration, CBF increased by approximately 5% to 10%.[47] CMR and CO_2 reactivity are maintained. Nimodipine in human subjects does, however, blunt autoregulation moderately.[48] Intraarterial nimodipine for the treatment of cerebral vasospasm after subarachnoid hemorrhage increased regional CBF significantly provided MAP was maintained, indicating that nimodipine is a cerebral vasodilator.[49]

Nicardipine is perhaps the most commonly used CCB for perioperative blood pressure control because of its short half-life and easy titratability. Nicardipine is a modest cerebral vasodilator and has repeatedly been shown to increase CBF or CBFV while reducing systemic MAP. Cerebral CO_2 reactivity appears to be well preserved in the presence of nicardipine.[50,51]

Clevidipine is a third generation dihydropyridine CCB that has an ultrashort half-life because it undergoes rapid esterase-mediated metabolism. Its use in both the cardiac and neurologic patient populations has increased significantly given its rapid titratability. In healthy volunteers, clevidipine did not increase MCAfv. However, a substantial reduction in MAP of approximately 25% occurred.[52] The lack of increase in MCAfv in the face of hypotension suggests that clevidipine is a cerebral vasodilator and, like nicardipine, probably attenuates autoregulation to a moderate extent. CO_2 reactivity is preserved.

The available data indicate that CCBs are moderate cerebral vasodilators. Their net impact on CBF is therefore dependent on the extent of systemic vasodilation and MAP. When MAP is maintained, increases in CBF should be expected.

Angiotensin II, Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme Inhibitors, and Angiotensin Receptor Antagonists

There has been a renaissance of the use of angiotensin II (AII) for the treatment of vasodilatory shock that is refractory to conventional vasopressor agents. In these shock states, AII increased MAP and reduced the need for other vasopressors including norepinephrine and vasopressin. The acute effect of AII on the cerebral circulation has received only modest attention. Acute administration of AII increases cerebral microvascular constriction without affecting CBF; this effect precedes its impact on blood pressure. However, AII attenuates regional hyperemia that occurs with an increase in regional metabolism, thereby adversely impacting neurovascular coupling.[53] Given that CBF is maintained in the face of increased blood pressure, autoregulation and CO_2 responsivity appear to be maintained.[54]

Both ACE inhibitors and angiotensin-receptor blockers (ARBs) are commonly used to treat hypertension. In the surgical setting and in the neurocritical care unit, these drugs are administered to control arterial blood pressure acutely. ACE inhibitors and ARBs reduce arterial blood pressure when hypertension is present. However, they do not affect resting CBF, and autoregulation is maintained.[55] However, acute administration of ACE inhibitors and ARBs decreases the LLA (left shift of the autoregulatory curve in experimental animals);[56] the significance of this finding in humans is not clear. In patients with acute stroke, ACE inhibitors and ARBs reduce arterial blood pressure but do not acutely affect CBF.[57,58] Apparently, these drugs do not reduce CBF when arterial blood pressure is modestly decreased.

AGE

The loss of neurons is progressive in the normally aging brain from young adulthood to advanced age. There is approximately 10% neuronal loss in healthy aged brain.[59] The loss of myelinated fibers results in reduced white matter volume.[60] By contrast, the loss of synapses in the aged brain is considerably greater. The majority of excitatory synapses in the brain are on dendritic spines. Dendrite branching and volume decrease progressively, and the number of dendritic spines is reduced by approximately 25% to 35%.[60] Concomitant with the loss of neuropil, both CBF and $CMRO_2$ decrease by 15% to 20% at the age of 80 years.[61] Cerebral circulatory responsiveness to changes in Paco_2 and to hypoxia are slightly reduced in the healthy aged brain.[4,62]

Effects of Anesthetics on Cerebral Blood Flow and Cerebral Metabolic Rate

This section discusses the effects of anesthetic drugs on CBF and CMR. It includes limited mention of the influences on autoregulation, CO_2 responsiveness, and CBV. Effects on CSF dynamics, the BBB, and epileptogenesis are discussed later in the chapter.

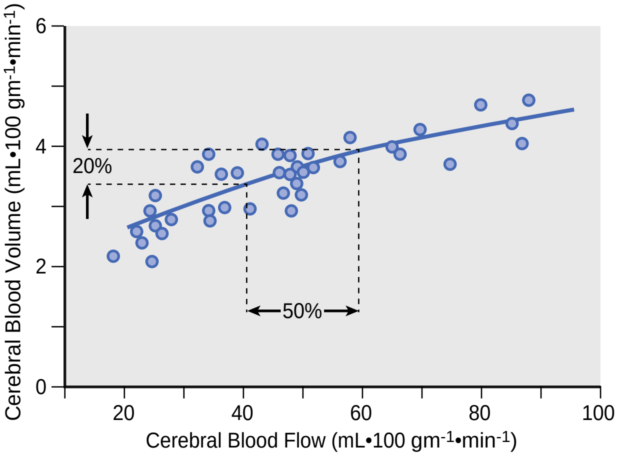


Fig. 11.9 Relationship between cerebral blood flow (CBF) and cerebral blood volume (CBV). Although a linear relationship exists between CBF and CBV, the magnitude of the change in CBV for a given change in CBF is considerably less. An increase in CBF of 50% results in a change in CBV of only 20%.

In the practice of neuroanesthesia, the manner in which anesthetic drugs and techniques influence CBF receives prime attention. The rationale is twofold. First, the delivery of energy substrates is dependent on CBF, and modest alterations in CBF can influence neuronal outcome substantially in the setting of ischemia. Second, control and manipulation of CBF are central to the management of ICP because as CBF varies in response to vasoconstrictor-vasodilator influences, CBV varies with it.[63] With respect to ICP, CBV is the more critical variable. In the normal brain, CBV is approximately 5 mL/100 g of brain, and over a Paco_2 range of approximately 25 to 70 mm Hg, CBV changes by approximately 0.049 mL/100 g for each 1 mm Hg change in Paco_2. In an adult brain weighing approximately 1400 g, this change can amount to 20 mL in total CBV for a Paco_2 range of 25 to 55 mm Hg. Because CBV is more difficult to measure than CBF few data exist, especially in humans.

Although CBV and CBF usually vary in parallel, the magnitude of change in CBV is less than the magnitude of change in CBF (Fig. 11.9). In addition, CBV and CBF vary independently under some circumstances. During cerebral ischemia, for example, CBV increases, whereas CBF is reduced significantly. Autoregulation normally serves to prevent MAP-related increases in CBV. In fact, as the cerebral circulation constricts to maintain a constant CBF in the face of an increasing MAP, CBV actually decreases. When autoregulation is impaired or its upper limit (≈150 mm Hg) is exceeded, CBF and CBV then increase in parallel as arterial blood pressure increases (see Fig. 11.8). A decreasing MAP results in a progressive increase in CBV as the cerebral circulation dilates to maintain constant flow, and exaggerated increases in CBV occur as the MAP decreases to less than the LLA. In normal subjects, the initial increases in CBV do not increase ICP because there is latitude for compensatory adjustments by other intracranial compartments (e.g., translocation of venous blood and CSF to extracerebral vessels and the spinal CSF space, respectively). When

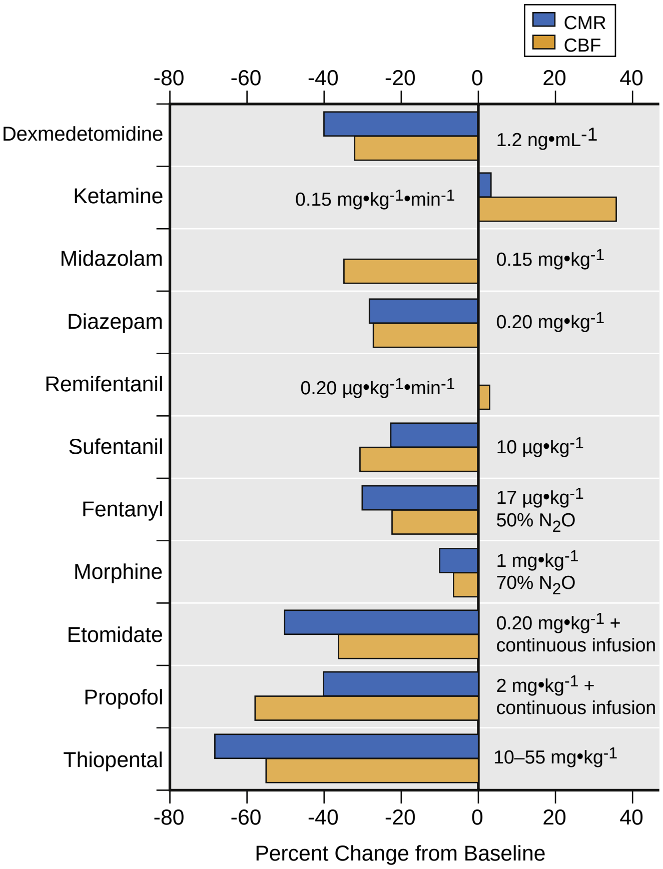


Fig. 11.10 Changes in cerebral blood flow *(CBF)* and the cerebral metabolic rate of oxygen ($CMRO_2$) caused by intravenous anesthetic drugs. The data are derived from human investigations and are presented as percent change from nonanesthetized control values. Dexmedetomidine CMR values were determined on a background of 0.5% isoflurane anesthesia (see the text for details). No data for the $CMRO_2$ effects of midazolam in humans are available. *CMR*, Cerebral metabolic rate. (Data from references 25, 47–59.)

intracranial compliance* is reduced, an increase in CBV can cause herniation or sufficiently reduce CPP to cause ischemia.

INTRAVENOUS ANESTHETIC DRUGS

The action of most intravenous anesthetics leads to parallel reductions in CMR and CBF. Ketamine, which causes an increase in the CMR and CBF, is the exception. The effects of selected intravenous anesthetic drugs on human CBF are compared in Fig. 11.10.[38,65-77]

Intravenous anesthetics maintain neurovascular coupling, and consequently changes in CBF induced by intravenous anesthetics are largely the result of the effects on the CMR with parallel (coupled) changes in CBF. Intravenous anesthetics have direct effects on vascular tone. Barbiturates, for example, cause relaxation of isolated cerebral vessels in vitro. However, *in vivo*, barbiturates suppress CMR, and the net effect at the point of EEG suppression is vasoconstriction and a substantial decrease in CBF.[78] In general, autoregulation and CO_2 responsiveness are preserved during the administration of intravenous anesthetic drugs.

Barbiturates

A dose-dependent reduction in CBF and CMR occurs with barbiturates. With the onset of anesthesia, both CBF and $CMRO_2$ are reduced by approximately 30%. When large doses of thiopental cause complete EEG suppression, CBF and CMR are reduced by approximately 50% to 60%.[78,79] Further increases in the barbiturate dose have no additional effect on the CMR.[78] These observations suggest that the major effect of nontoxic doses of depressant anesthetics is a reduction in the component of cerebral metabolism that is linked to electrical brain function (e.g., neurophysiologic activity) with only minimal effects on the second component, which is related to cellular homeostasis (see Fig. 11.2).

Tolerance to the CBF and CMR effects of barbiturates may quickly develop.[80] In patients with severe head injury in whom *barbiturate coma* was maintained for 72 hours, the blood concentration of thiamylal required to maintain EEG burst suppression was observed to be increased by the end of the first 24 hours and continued to increase over the next 48 hours.[81] During deep pentobarbital anesthesia, autoregulation and CO_2 responsiveness are maintained.

Propofol

The effects of propofol (2,6-diisopropylphenol) on CBF and CMR are similar to those of barbiturates. Both CBF and CMR decrease after the administration of propofol in humans.[82] In healthy volunteers, surgical levels of propofol reduced regional CBF by 53% to 79% in comparison with the awake state.[83,84] Cerebral glucose metabolism in volunteers was evaluated by positron-emission tomography (PET) before and during infusion of propofol to the point of unresponsiveness, and resulted in a decrease of the whole-brain metabolic rate of 48% to 58%, with limited regional heterogeneity.[85] When compared with isoflurane-fentanyl or sevoflurane-fentanyl anesthesia, a combination of propofol and fentanyl decreased subdural pressure in patients with intracranial tumors and decreased the arteriovenous oxygen content difference ($AVDO_2$).[86] Collectively, these investigations in human subjects indicate that propofol effects reductions in the CMR and secondarily decreases CBF, CBV, and ICP.

Both CO_2 responsiveness and autoregulation are preserved in humans during the administration of propofol,[87,88] even when administered in doses that produce burst suppression of the EEG.[89] The magnitude of the reduction in CBF during hypocapnia is decreased during propofol administration. This effect is probably due to the cerebral vasoconstriction induced by suppression of CMR, which limits further hypocapnia-mediated vasoconstriction.

Etomidate

The effects of etomidate on CBF and CMR are also similar to those of barbiturates. Roughly parallel reductions in CBF and CMR occur in humans,[65,90] and in general, they are accompanied by progressive suppression of the EEG.

---

*Note a well-entrenched misuse of terminology.[64] The "compliance" curve that is commonly drawn to describe the ICP-volume relationship (see Fig. 57-3) actually depicts the relationship $\Delta P/\Delta V$ (elastance) and not $\Delta V/\Delta P$ (compliance). References to "reduced compliance" in this text would more correctly be rendered as "increased elastance." However, because the existing literature most commonly uses the "compliance" terminology, the authors have left the misuse uncorrected herein.

Induction of anesthesia with either thiopental or etomidate resulted in a similar reduction in MCAfv by approximately 27%.[91] The changes in CBF and CMR are substantial. Etomidate, 0.2 mg/kg, reduced CBF and CMR by 34% and 45%, respectively, in adults.[65] As is the case with barbiturates, no further reduction in the CMR occurs when additional drug is administered beyond a dose sufficient to produce EEG suppression. Although this latter phenomenon has not been demonstrated in humans, etomidate has been demonstrated to reduce ICP only when EEG activity is well preserved; etomidate is ineffective in reducing ICP when EEG activity is suppressed in head injured patients.[92] The global CMR suppression attainable with etomidate is slightly less profound than that achieved with isoflurane and barbiturates. This finding is consistent with the observation that unlike barbiturates, which cause CMR suppression throughout the brain, the CMR suppression caused by etomidate is regionally variable and occurs predominantly in forebrain structures.

Etomidate is effective in reducing ICP without causing a reduction in CPP in patients with intracranial tumors[93] and patients with head injuries.[94] However, the administration of etomidate resulted in an exacerbation of brain tissue hypoxia and acidosis in patients in whom the MCA was temporarily occluded during surgery.[95] Additional concerns regarding the occurrence of adrenocortical suppression caused by enzyme inhibition and renal injury caused by the propylene glycol vehicle[96] will probably preclude more than episodic use.

Reactivity to CO_2 is preserved in humans during the administration of etomidate.[65,90] Autoregulation has not been evaluated. Myoclonus and epileptogenesis are discussed in the section, "Epileptogenesis."

Narcotics

Inconsistencies can be found in the available information, but narcotics likely have relatively little effect on CBF and CMR in the normal, unstimulated nervous system. When changes do occur, the general pattern is one of modest reductions in both CBF and CMR. The inconsistencies in the literature may largely arise because the control states entailed paralysis and nominal sedation in many studies, often with N_2O alone. In these studies, in which substantial reductions in CBF and CMR were frequently observed, the effect of the narcotic was probably a combination of the inherent effect of the drug plus a substantial component attributable to reduction of arousal. Comparable effects related to reduction of arousal may occur and can be clinically important. However, they should be viewed as nonspecific effects of sedation or pain control, or both, rather than specific properties of narcotics. The following discussion emphasizes investigations in which control measurements were unlikely to have been significantly influenced by arousal phenomena.

Morphine. When morphine (~1 mg/kg) was administered as the sole drug to humans, no effect on global CBF and a 41% decrease in the $CMRO_2$ were observed. The latter is a substantial reduction, and the absence of a simultaneous adjustment in CBF is surprising. No other investigations of morphine have been conducted in humans alone. Administration of morphine (1 mg/kg and 3 mg/kg) with 70% N_2O to patients did not significantly change CBF or CMR.[48] The N_2O that was used might be expected to have caused a tendency toward increases in CBF. The relative absence of *net* changes in these variables from awake control measurements suggests a small-to-moderate depressive effect of morphine on CBF and CMR at this large dose. However, morphine can cause a substantial release of histamine in individual patients. Histamine is a cerebral vasodilator that will cause an increase in CBV and a CBF effect that will vary, depending on the systemic blood pressure response.

Autoregulation was observed to be intact between MAP values of 60 and 120 mm Hg in human volunteers anesthetized with a combination of morphine, 2 mg/kg, and 70% N_2O.[97]

Fentanyl. Fentanyl, in a dose range of 12 to 30 (mean, 16) μg/kg, in combination with 50% N_2O, reduced CBF and CMR modestly, by 21% and 26%, respectively, in comparison to the awake control state. The data for fentanyl-N_2O presented in Fig. 11.10 are derived from these patients. In combination with 0.4 mg/kg of diazepam, high dose fentanyl (100 μg/kg) led to a reduction of CBF by 25%, although part of this effect may well have been a result of benzodiazepine (see later discussion in the section, "Benzodiazepine") rather than fentanyl *per se*. In sedative doses of 1.5 μg/kg, fentanyl increased CBF in the frontal, temporal, and cerebellar areas simultaneous with decreases in discrete areas associated with pain-related processing. CO_2 responsiveness and autoregulation are unaffected, and the hyperemic CBF response to hypoxia remains intact.

In conclusion, fentanyl will cause a moderate global reduction in CBF and CMR in the normal quiescent brain and will, similar to morphine, cause larger reductions when administered during arousal.

Alfentanil. Administration of alfentanil, 320 μg/kg, to pentobarbital-anesthetized dogs[98] did not affect CBF, CMR, CO_2 responsiveness, autoregulation, or CBF response to hypoxia. No studies of the effects of alfentanil on the CMR in humans have been conducted. In patients in whom anesthesia was induced with thiopental, administration of 25 to 50 μg/kg of alfentanil transiently decreased MCAfv, indicating a slight reduction in CBF.[99] By contrast,[100] no change in MCAfv was observed in response to 25 to 50 μg/kg of alfentanil given to patients during the maintenance of anesthesia with isoflurane-N_2O. An evaluation of the surgical field in patients undergoing craniotomy to whom alfentanil was administered did not reveal any adverse events.[101,102]

In general, alfentanil does not significantly impact the cerebral circulation, provided that alfentanil induced reduction in MAP is prevented.

Sufentanil. Studies in humans indicate that sufentanil causes, depending on the dose, either no change or a modest reduction in CBF and CMR. Induction of anesthesia with 10 μg/kg of sufentanil[68] resulted in a 29% reduction in CBF and a 22% reduction in $CMRO_2$. In healthy human volunteers, 0.5 μg/kg of sufentanil[103] does not affect CBF.

Sufentanil, at doses of 1.0 and 2.0 μg/kg, decreases MCAfv in head injured patients with increased ICP.

A logical conclusion is that no change and no reduction in ICP occur as a result of the administration of either sufentanil or alfentanil. However, in some investigations in humans, sufentanil was associated with modest increases in ICP. The increases in ICP associated with sufentanil are likely the consequence, in part, of a normal autoregulatory response to the sudden reduction in MAP that can occur as a consequence of sufentanil administration.[104] Therefore sufentanil and fentanyl should be administered in a manner that does not produce a sudden reduction of MAP. Such a decrease will reduce CPP and may increase ICP, each of which, in sufficient extreme, may be deleterious. However, ICP increases attributed to sufentanil are small. Furthermore, conditions in the surgical field, including pressure under brain retractors[101] and the state of brain relaxation, revealed no adverse influences attributable to sufentanil. Accordingly, sufentanil need not be viewed as contraindicated in any way, although its effect on MAP should be followed closely.

Remifentanil. Investigations of moderate doses of remifentanil in patients have revealed effects similar to those of other synthetic narcotics (with the exception of its substantially shorter duration of action). In patients undergoing craniotomy for supratentorial space-occupying lesions, 1 μg/kg of remifentanil caused no change in ICP.[105] In a second investigation in patients undergoing craniotomies, approximately 0.35 μg/kg/min of remifentanil resulted in CBF values comparable to those observed with moderately deep anesthesia with either isoflurane-N_2O or fentanyl-N_2O,[106] and CO_2 responsiveness was preserved. Greater doses of remifentanil may have more substantial effects. MCAfv decreased by 30% in response to 5 μg/kg, followed by 3 μg/kg/min of remifentanil at a constant MAP in patients being anesthetized for bypass surgery.[69] However, a lower dose of 2 μg/kg, followed by an infusion of 3 μg/kg/min, did not affect MCAfV. Quantitatively, the effects of remifentanil appear to be similar to those of sufentanil.

Remifentanil was administered with other drugs that might influence cerebral hemodynamics. More recent studies in human volunteers have demonstrated that the infusion of small (sedative) doses of remifentanil can increase CBF. A PET study in human subjects to whom remifentanil, 0.05 and 0.15 μg/kg/min, was administered revealed increases in CBF in the prefrontal, inferior parietal, and supplementary motor cortices; reductions in CBF were observed in the cerebellum, superior temporal lobe, and midbrain gray matter.[105] The relative increase in CBF was greater with the administration of the larger dose of remifentanil. Similar data were obtained by Lorenz and colleagues,[107] who used magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) to determine CBF.[107] In a PET investigation in human volunteers,[108] remifentanil-induced increases in regional CBF within the limbic system were observed. Although the underlying mechanisms of the increases in CBF are not clear, disinhibition produced by the small-dose remifentanil infusion, or perhaps the sensation of side effects (e.g., warmth, comfort, pruritus),[107] may have contributed. When combined with N_2O, CBF and CO_2 reactivity is similar in patients given remifentanil or fentanyl.[106] In conclusion, sedative doses of remifentanil alone can cause minor increases in CBF. With larger doses or with the concomitant administration of anesthetic adjuvants, CBF is either unaltered or modestly reduced.

Benzodiazepines

Benzodiazepines cause parallel reductions in CBF and CMR in humans. CBF and $CMRO_2$ decreased by 25% when 15 mg of diazepam was given to patients with head injuries. The effects of midazolam on CBF (but not on CMR) have also been studied in humans. Administration of 0.15 mg/kg of midazolam to awake healthy human volunteers resulted in a 30% to 34% reduction in CBF.[71,109] In an investigation using PET scanning, a similar dose of midazolam led to a global 12% reduction in CBF; the decreases occurred preferentially in the brain regions associated with arousal, attention, and memory.[110] CO_2 responsiveness was preserved.[111]

The available data indicate that benzodiazepines cause a moderate reduction in CBF in humans, which is coupled to metabolism. The extent of the maximal reductions of CBF and CMR produced by benzodiazepines is probably intermediate between the decreases caused by narcotics (modest) and barbiturates (substantial). It appears that benzodiazepines should be safe to administer to patients with intracranial hypertension, provided that respiratory depression (and an associated increase in $Pa{CO_2}$) or hypotension do not occur.

Flumazenil is a highly specific, competitive benzodiazepine receptor antagonist. It had no effect on CBF when administered to nonanesthetized human volunteers.[109,112] However, flumazenil reverses the CBF-, CMR-, and ICP-lowering effects of midazolam. When patients were aroused from midazolam anesthesia with flumazenil at the conclusion of craniotomy for brain tumor resection,[113] no change in either CBF or CMR was observed. By contrast, severe increases in ICP occurred when flumazenil was given to patients with severe head injury in whom ICP was not well controlled.[114] These latter observations are consistent with animal investigations during which flumazenil not only reversed the CBF and CMR effects of midazolam, but it also caused a substantial, although short-lived, overshoot above premidazolam levels in both CBF and ICP by 44% to 56% and 180% to 217%, respectively. The CMR did not rise above control levels, thus indicating that the increase in CBF was not metabolically coupled. The CBF overshoot effect is unexplained, but it may be a neurogenically mediated arousal phenomenon. Flumazenil should be used cautiously to reverse benzodiazepine sedation in patients with impaired intracranial compliance.

Droperidol

No human investigations of the CBF and CMR effects of droperidol have been conducted in isolation. However, the information available from animal investigations and combination drug administration in humans,[115] taken together, suggests that droperidol is not a cerebral vasodilator and probably has little effect on CBF and CMR in humans. The occasional increases in ICP that have been observed[115] probably reflect normal autoregulation-mediated vasodilation in response to an abrupt decrease in MAP.

Ketamine

Among the intravenous anesthetics, ketamine is unique in its ability to cause increases in both CBF and CMR.[116] Animal studies indicate that the changes in the CMR are regionally variable; substantial increases occur in limbic system structures with modest changes or small decreases in cortical structures.[117] PET studies in humans have demonstrated that subanesthetic doses of ketamine (0.2-0.3 mg/kg) can increase global CMR by approximately 25%.[118] The greatest increase in the CMR occurred in the frontal and anterior cingulate cortex. A relative reduction in the CMR in the cerebellum was also observed. Commercially available formulations of ketamine contain both the *(S)*- and *(R)*-ketamine enantiomers. The *(S)*-ketamine enantiomer substantially increases CMR, whereas the *(R)* enantiomer tends to decrease the CMR, particularly in the temporomedial cortex and in the cerebellum.[119] These changes in the CMR are accompanied by corresponding changes in CBF.[120] Global, as well as regional, increases in CBF in humans that were not accompanied by similar increases in the $CMRO_2$ after the administration of *(S)*-ketamine enantiomer have been observed. Both subanesthetic and anesthetic doses of ketamine increased global CBF by approximately 14% and 36%, respectively, without altering global $CMRO_2$. As expected, in the face of an unchanged CMR and increased CBF, the oxygen extraction ratio was reduced.[77] The majority of investigations indicate that autoregulation is maintained during ketamine anesthesia,[121] and CO_2 responsiveness is preserved. A recent metaanalysis concluded that, in humans, ketamine administration increases CBF, particularly in the anterior cingulate gyrus, medial prefrontal cortex, and occipital lobes. In aggregate, the available data indicate that ketamine does increase CBF, and the accompanying increase in CMR is at best modest. Ketamine does not increase CBV.[122]

The anticipated increase in ICP with an increase in CBF has not been confirmed to occur in humans. When examined in their entirety, the available data indicate that ketamine does not increase ICP in patients with nontraumatic neurologic illness[122] nor in patients with traumatic brain injury.[122] In fact, decreases in ICP occur when relatively large anesthetic doses of ketamine (1.5-5 mg/kg) are administered to patients with head injuries who are sedated with propofol.[123] However, it should be noted that, in most of the studies in which the ICP effects of ketamine have been evaluated, patients received sedative agents in addition to ketamine. It has been established that anesthetic drugs (diazepam, midazolam, isoflurane-N_2O, propofol, opioids, methohexital) blunt or eliminate the increases in ICP or CBF associated with ketamine.[116,124,125] Accordingly, although ketamine is probably best avoided as the sole anesthetic drug in patients with impaired intracranial compliance, it may be cautiously given to patients who are simultaneously receiving adjunctive sedative drugs.

Lidocaine

In nonanesthetized human volunteers, reductions in CBF and CMR of 24% and 20%, respectively, were observed after the administration of 5 mg/kg of lidocaine over a 30-minute period, followed by an infusion of 45 μg/kg/min.[126] When very large doses (160 mg/kg) were given to dogs maintained on cardiopulmonary bypass, the reduction in the $CMRO_2$ was apparently more than that observed with large-dose barbiturates.[127] The membrane-stabilizing effect of lidocaine probably reduces the energy required for the maintenance of membrane integrity.

The effectiveness of bolus doses of thiopental, 3 mg/kg, and lidocaine, 1.5 mg/kg, in controlling the acute increase in ICP that occurred after the application of a pin head holder or skin incision in patients undergoing craniotomies has been assessed.[128] The two regimens were equally effective in causing a reduction in ICP. However, the decrease in the MAP was greater with thiopental. Accordingly, a bolus dose of lidocaine is a reasonable adjunct to the prevention or treatment of acute increases in ICP and can prevent increases in ICP associated with endotracheal suctioning. Although large doses of lidocaine can produce seizures in humans, lidocaine-induced seizures have not been reported in anesthetized humans. Nonetheless, lidocaine doses should be adjusted to achieve serum levels less than the seizure threshold (>5-10 μg/mL) in awake humans. After a 2-mg/kg bolus, peak serum concentrations of 6.6 to 8.5 μg/mL are below the seizure threshold. Bolus doses of 1.5 to 2.0 mg/kg therefore seem appropriate.

INHALED ANESTHETICS

Volatile Anesthetics

The pattern of volatile anesthetic effects on cerebral physiology is quite different than that of intravenous anesthetics, which generally cause parallel reductions in CMR and CBF. All volatile anesthetics, in a manner similar to intravenous sedative-hypnotic drugs, suppress cerebral metabolism in a dose-related fashion.[129-132] Volatile anesthetics also possess intrinsic cerebral vasodilatory activity as a result of direct effects on vascular smooth muscle. The net effect of volatile anesthetics on CBF is therefore a balance between a reduction in CBF caused by CMR suppression and an augmentation of CBF caused by the direct cerebral vasodilation. When administered at a dose of 0.5 MAC, CMR suppression–induced reduction in CBF predominates, and net CBF decreases in comparison with the awake state. At 1 MAC, concentrations of isoflurane, sevoflurane, or desflurane, CBF remains unchanged; at this concentration, CMR suppression and vasodilatory effects are in balance. Beyond 1 MAC, the vasodilatory activity predominates, and CBF significantly increases, even though the CMR is substantially reduced (Fig. 11.11).[133] Vasodilation with increasing doses of volatile agents lead to an attenuation of cerebral autoregulation. With large doses, autoregulation is abolished and cerebral perfusion becomes pressure passive (Fig. 11.12).

The increase in CBF produced by volatile anesthetics at doses larger than 1 MAC has been referred to as reflecting a loss of neurovascular coupling. However, coupling (CBF adjustments paralleling changes in the CMR) persists during anesthesia with volatile anesthetics.[134-138] Accordingly, the conclusion should be that the CBF/CMR ratio is altered (increased) by volatile anesthetics. This alteration is dose related, and under steady-state conditions, increasing doses of volatile agents lead to greater CBF/$CMRO_2$ ratios[130,139]—that is, higher MAC levels cause greater luxury perfusion.

The important clinical consequences of the administration of volatile anesthetics are derived from the increases in

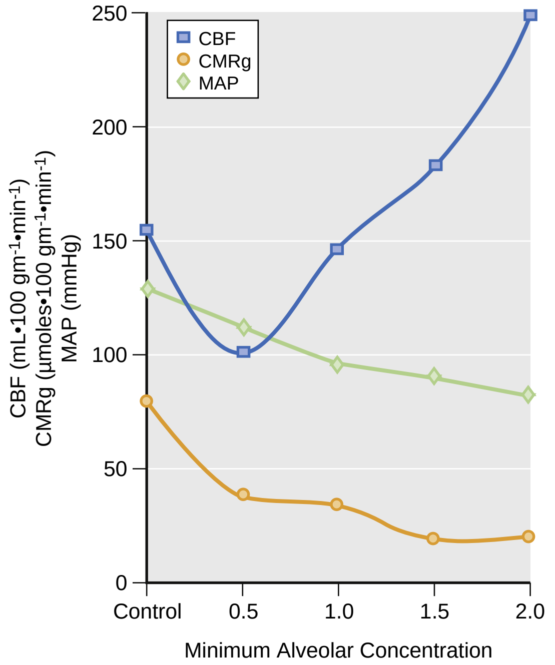


Fig. 11.11 Relationship between changes in the cerebral metabolic rate of glucose *(CMRg)* and cerebral blood flow *(CBF)* in the motor-sensory cortex in rats during isoflurane anesthesia. The majority of the suppression in the CMR caused by isoflurane has occurred by 1 minimum alveolar concentration; CBF is not increased in this concentration range. Thereafter, additional isoflurane causes little further reduction in the CMR, and cerebral vasodilation occurs. These data (± standard deviation) from Maekawa and colleagues[133] suggest the importance of metabolic coupling in determining the effects of isoflurane on CBF. *MAP,* Mean arterial pressure.

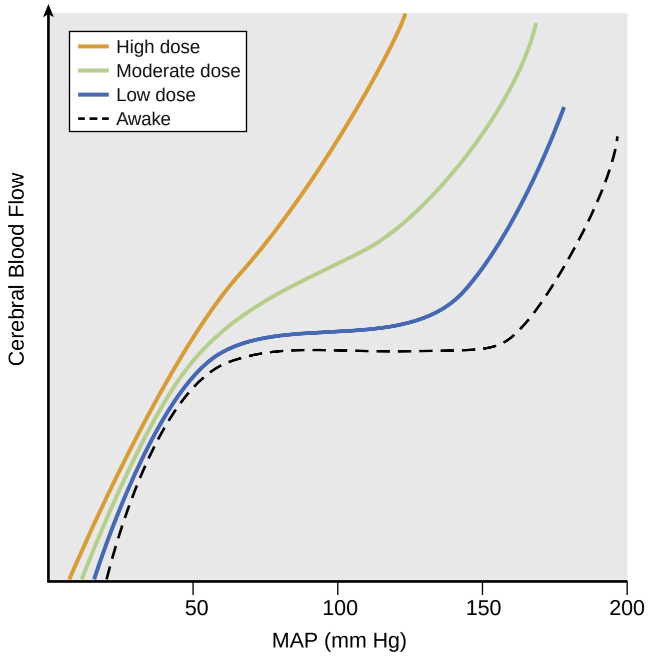


Fig. 11.12 Schematic representation of the effect of increasing concentrations of a typical volatile anesthetic drug on autoregulation of cerebral blood flow. Dose-dependent cerebral vasodilation results in attenuation of autoregulatory response to increasing mean arterial pressure *(MAP)*. Both the upper and lower thresholds are shifted to the left.

CBF and CBV—and consequently ICP—that can occur. Of the commonly used volatile anesthetics, the order of vasodilating potency is approximately halothane ≫ enflurane > desflurane ≈ isoflurane > sevoflurane.

Effects on cerebral blood flow. Volatile anesthetics possess intrinsic vasodilatory activity, and they not only modify cerebral autoregulation, but they also produce a dose-dependent decrease in arterial blood pressure. Hence, their effects on CBF and CMR are best evaluated when arterial blood pressure is maintained at a constant level. In addition, the cerebrovascular effects of volatile anesthetics are modulated by the simultaneous administration of other CNS-active drugs. The control state—awake, sedated, or anesthetized—against which the CBF and CMR effects of volatile anesthetics are compared, is important to recognize. The best information concerning the cerebrovascular effects of volatile anesthetics is obtained in studies during which a nonanesthetized (awake) control state is used.

Data on the cerebrovascular effects of halothane and enflurane are limited. Initial studies in humans demonstrated that the administration of 1 MAC halothane significantly increases CBF, even when systemic blood pressure is substantially reduced, in comparison with preanesthetic CBF. When the MAP is maintained at 80 mm Hg, 1.1 MAC levels of halothane increase CBF by as much as 191% and decrease the CMR by approximately 10% (Fig. 11.13).[140,141] When compared with awake values, 1.2 MAC enflurane also increased CBF and decreased CMR by 45% and 15%, respectively.[142] The dramatic increases in CBF with a simultaneous modest reduction in the CMR attest to the cerebral vasodilatory properties of halothane and enflurane. Isoflurane, by contrast, does not increase CBF as much as halothane or enflurane. At concentrations of 1.1 MAC, isoflurane increases CBF by approximately 19% when arterial blood pressure is maintained within the normal range. The CMR is reduced by approximately 45%.[137]

Both sevoflurane and desflurane can reduce CBF significantly in humans when compared with CBF in awake, nonanesthetized patients. At 1 MAC concentrations, sevoflurane[143] and desflurane[142] decreased CBF by 38% and 22% and CMR by 39% and 35%, respectively. These results, which suggest that the cerebral vasodilation produced by isoflurane is greater than that produced by sevoflurane and desflurane, were obtained with CBF measured by the Kety-Schmidt technique. This technique primarily measures CBF within the cortex and therefore may have substantially underestimated global CBF. PET studies in healthy humans have shown that sevoflurane dose-dependently suppresses the $CMRO_2$ and CBF; at 1 MAC levels, the reduction in CBF and $CMRO_2$ is approximately 50% and 50% to 60%, respectively.[83,84] Even with a significant reduction in CBF, the administration of sevoflurane does not cause a decrease in CBV. Other investigations in humans, most using the measurement of MCAfv by transcranial Doppler, indicate that differences in the effects of isoflurane, desflurane (Fig. 11.14*A*), and sevoflurane are modest.[144-147] Unfortunately, a strictly quantitative comparison among these volatile anesthetics is not possible because of the variations in arterial blood pressure among study group patients. In addition, some discrepancy exists among studies in the literature regarding the magnitude of the effects of volatile anesthetics on CBF. Much of this inconsistency may occur as a result of the interaction of regionally selective CBF methods with the heterogeneity within the cerebrum of the CBF effects of volatile anesthetics. (See the later section, "Distribution of Changes in Cerebral Blood Flow/Cerebral Metabolic Rate.")

The anesthetic properties of xenon were recognized several decades ago, but this anesthetic is only now being evaluated for possible use in patients. The MAC of xenon has been estimated to be 63% to 71%, with female patients having significantly lower MAC values (51%).[147] Xenon exerts its anesthetic effect via noncompetitive antagonism of the *N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptor (NMDAR),[148] although activation of the TREK two-pore K^+ channel may also play a role.[149] In healthy humans, the administration of 1 MAC xenon resulted in a reduction in CBF by approximately 15% in the cortex and by 35% in the cerebellum. Interestingly, CBF in white matter increased by 22%.[150] This reduction in CBF is accompanied by a parallel reduction of the cerebral metabolic rate of glucose (CMRg) by 26%.[151] Cerebral autoregulation and CO_2 reactivity are preserved during xenon anesthesia in animals.[152] Under background pentobarbital anesthesia in an experimental model of increased ICP, the administration of xenon did not increase ICP, and the response to both hypocapnia and hypercapnia was preserved.[153] Diffusion of xenon into air-containing spaces such as the bowel does occur, although the magnitude of air expansion is considerably less than that with N_2O.[154] Nonetheless, caution will have to be exercised with the use of xenon in patients with intracranial air. These data indicate that xenon has a favorable profile for neuroanesthesia.

Effects on cerebral metabolic rate. All volatile anesthetics cause reductions in CMR. The degree of reduction in $CMRO_2$ that occurs at a given MAC is less with halothane

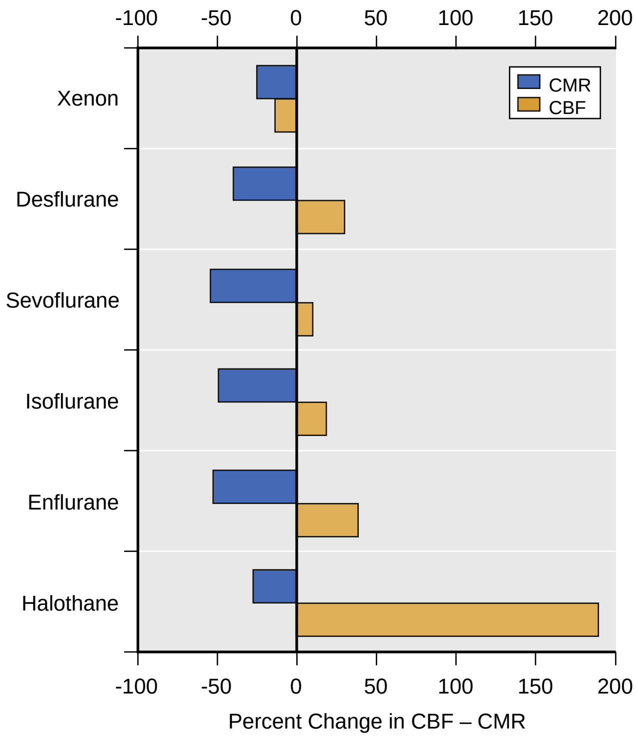


Fig. 11.13 Estimated changes in cerebral blood flow *(CBF)* and the cerebral metabolic rate of oxygen ($CMRO_2$) caused by volatile anesthetics. The CBF data for halothane, enflurane, and isoflurane were obtained during anesthesia (with blood pressure support) at 1.1 minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) in humans[356] and are expressed as percent change from awake control values. The $CMRO_2$ data for halothane, enflurane, and isoflurane were obtained in cats[130,140] and are expressed as percent change from N_2O-sedated control values. The data for sevoflurane were obtained during 1.1 MAC anesthesia in rabbits and are expressed as percent change from a morphine-N_2O–anesthetized control state.[132] CBF values were obtained in patients who received 1 MAC sevoflurane anesthesia.[143] Desflurane data were obtained in patients to whom 1 MAC desflurane was administered.[141] *CMR*, Cerebral metabolic rate.

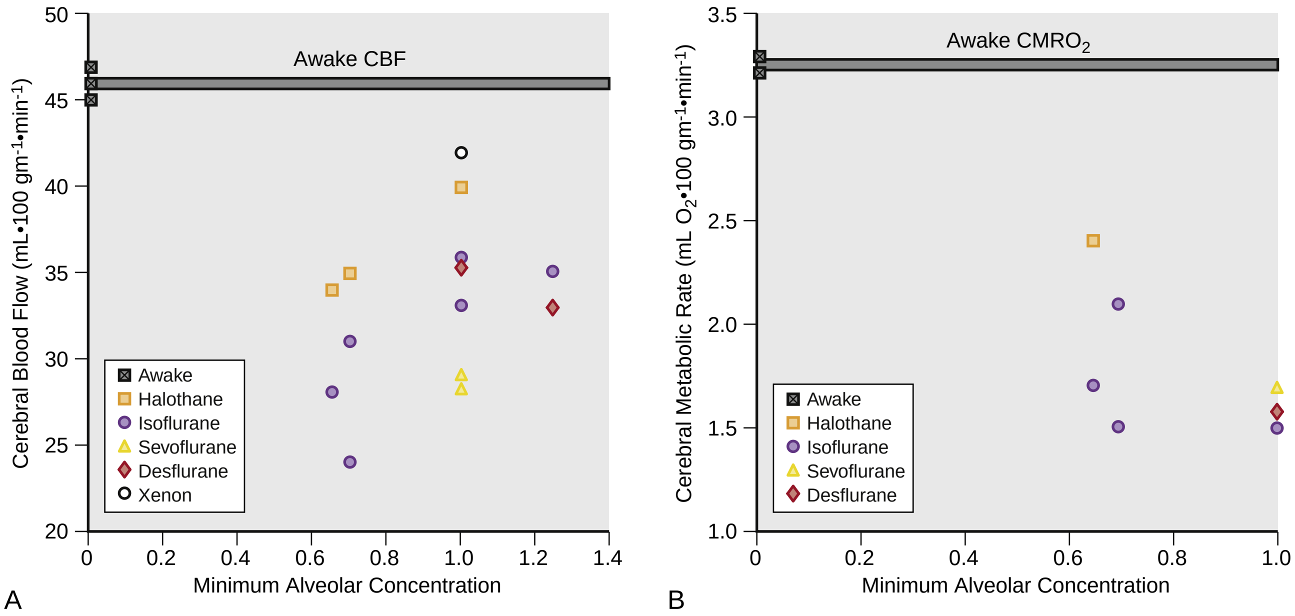


Fig. 11.14 Effect of volatile anesthetics on cerebral blood flow *(CBF)* (A) and the cerebral metabolic rate of oxygen *($CMRO_2$)* (B) in awake humans. The results are a composite of CBF and $CMRO_2$ values obtained from a number of separate investigations.[72,130,131,135-137,139-146,356-358] In these studies, arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide ($PaCO_2$) was maintained in the normocapnic range (~35-40 mm Hg), and mean arterial pressure was supported. In most of the investigations, CBF was measured by a radioactive xenon washout technique; this technique primarily measures cortical CBF and, as such, may underestimate global CBF. This, in addition to species differences, probably account for the disparities between the data on the CBF effects attributed to volatile agents in this figure and Fig. 11.13.

than with the other four anesthetics. Sevoflurane's effect on the CMRO$_2$ is very similar to that of isoflurane. The available information, derived in separate investigations, suggests that desflurane causes slightly less suppression of the CMRO$_2$ than isoflurane, especially at concentrations above 1 MAC.[131] Although a direct comparison of the CMRO$_2$ effects of all of the volatile anesthetics has not been performed in humans, doses of 1 MAC isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane clearly reduce the CMRO$_2$ by 25%,[155] 38%,[141] and 22%,[156] respectively. In PET studies, halothane (0.9 MAC) and isoflurane (0.5 MAC) can decrease the CMRg by 40% and 46%, respectively.[85,157] The decrease in the CMRO$_2$ is dose-related. With isoflurane (and almost certainly desflurane and sevoflurane as well), the maximal reduction is simultaneously attained with the occurrence of EEG suppression,[131] which occurs at clinically relevant concentrations, in the range of 1.5 to 2 MAC in humans. With additional isoflurane, 6% end-tidal concentration results in no further reduction in the CMR and no indication of metabolic toxicity. Halothane presents a contrast to this pattern. Halothane concentrations more than 4 MAC are required to achieve EEG suppression in animals, and additional halothane causes a further reduction in the CMRO$_2$ in concert with alterations in energy charge. The latter changes, which are reversible, suggest interference with oxidative phosphorylation by halothane.

Some nonlinearity exists in the CBF and CMR dose-response relationships for volatile anesthetics. The initial appearance of an EEG pattern associated with the onset of anesthesia with halothane, enflurane, and isoflurane is accompanied by a sharp decline in the CMRO$_2$.[131] Thereafter, the CMRO$_2$ declines in a slower dose-dependent manner. Such an effect has also been demonstrated for sevoflurane. In a dose escalation study in humans, the greatest reduction in entropy (i.e., a measure of anesthetic depth) was observed with 1 MAC sevoflurane anesthesia, with lesser reductions occurring at increasing concentrations.[158]

Distribution of changes in cerebral blood flow and cerebral metabolic rate. The regional distribution of anesthetic-induced changes in CBF and CMR differs significantly between halothane and isoflurane. Halothane produces relatively homogeneous changes throughout the brain. CBF is globally increased, and CMR is globally depressed. The changes caused by isoflurane are more heterogeneous. Increases in CBF are greater in subcortical areas and hindbrain structures than in the neocortex.[136,159] The converse is true for the CMR, with a larger reduction in the neocortex than in the subcortex.[133] In humans, 1 MAC sevoflurane (Fig. 11.15) results in a reduction in CBF within the cortex and the cerebellum. With an increase in sevoflurane dose, CBF within the cortex decreases further. By contrast, flow increases in the cerebellum with doses greater than 1.5 MAC.[83] These effects of sevoflurane are similar to those produced by isoflurane.[83,159] Desflurane has not been evaluated by local CBF studies. However, considering the similarity of its effects on the EEG (suggesting similar cortical CMR and CBF effects), an assumption of similar heterogeneity in CBF distribution seems reasonable, pending further investigation. These distribution differences may explain certain apparent contradictions in reported CBF effects in the existing literature for isoflurane. Methods that assess global hemodynamic effects reveal greater changes than those that emphasize the cortical compartment. For instance, when a xenon surface washout technique is employed (measurement of local cortical flow only), no increase in CBF occurred when isoflurane was administered to patients undergoing craniotomy.[160]

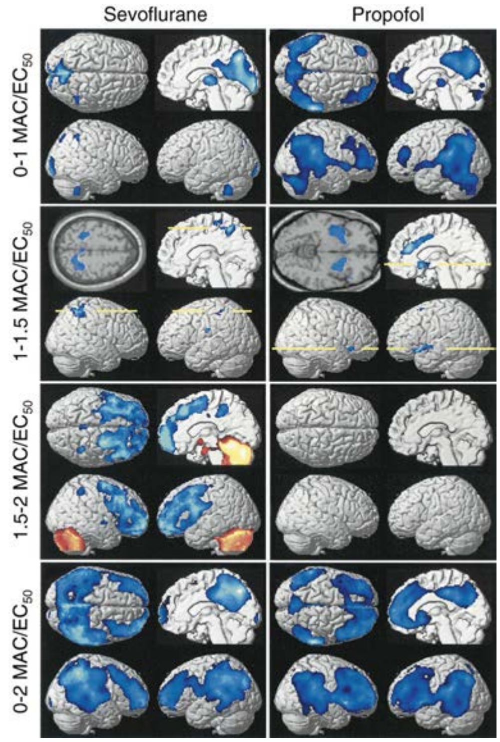


Fig. 11.15 Dose-dependent redistribution of cerebral blood flow (CBF) in humans. Positron-emission tomography (PET) scans demonstrate a dose-dependent reduction in CBF in both sevoflurane-anesthetized *(left)* and propofol-anesthetized *(right)* subjects. During sevoflurane anesthesia, there is a concentration dependent reduction in CBF within the cerebrum (indicated by blue color). An increase in concentration from 1.5 to 2 minimum alveolar concentration *(MAC)* leads to an increase in CBF within the cerebellum (indicated by the yellow-red color). A gradual reduction in the mean arterial pressure (MAP) occurred with increasing concentrations of sevoflurane, and the MAP was not supported. The CBF values would be expected to be considerably greater had blood pressure been maintained within the normal range. Therefore the CBF values represented in this figure probably *underestimate* true CBF during sevoflurane anesthesia. Propofol was administered in EC$_{50}$ equivalents, defined as the plasma concentration that prevented movement in response to a surgical stimulus in 50% of patients. The target plasma propofol concentrations were 0, 6, 9, and 12 μg/mL. In propofol-anesthetized subjects, CBF was uniformly decreased and redistribution of CBF was not observed. (Modified from Kaisti K, Metsähonkala L, Teräs M, et al. Effects of surgical levels of propofol and sevoflurane anesthesia on cerebral blood flow in healthy subjects studied with positron emission tomography. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1358–1370.)

Time dependence of cerebral blood flow effects. The effects of volatile anesthetics on CBF are time-dependent in animal investigations. After an initial increase, CBF decreases and reaches a steady state near pre–volatile agent levels between 2.5 and 5 hours after exposure.[161-163] The mechanism of this effect is not

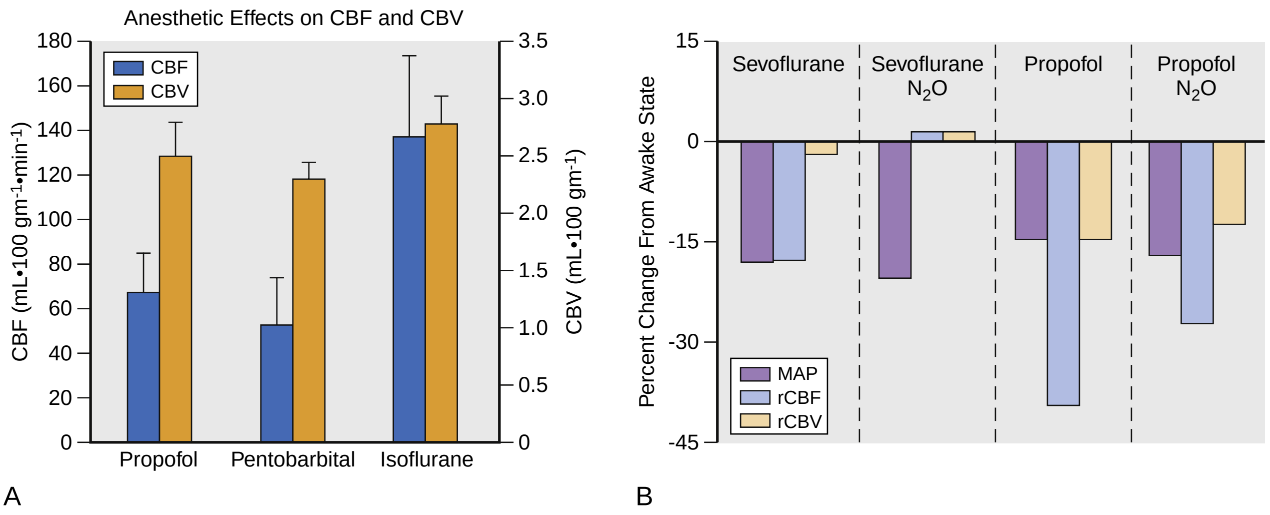


Fig. 11.16 Effect of anesthetic drugs on cerebral blood flow *(CBF)* and cerebral blood volume *(CBV)*. (A) When compared with isoflurane, propofol and pentobarbital effected substantial reductions in CBF. However, reductions in CBV were more modest.[151] (B) Although sevoflurane effected a significant reduction in regional CBF (rCBF), regional CBV (rCBV) was unchanged. Had blood pressure been supported to normal levels, rCBV may have been greater than the awake state. By contrast, propofol effected a significant reduction in both rCBF and rCBV. These data indicate that the magnitude of the effect of anesthetics on rCBF is substantially greater than on rCBV. Hence, decreases in rCBF may not lead to equivalent reductions in rCBV. *MAP,* Mean arterial pressure; *N_2O,* nitrous oxide.

understood, and the phenomenon was not evident in humans studied during a 3- or 6-hour exposure to halothane, isoflurane, desflurane, or sevoflurane.[146,164]

Cerebral blood volume. The extensive investigation of the influence of volatile anesthetics on CBF has been primarily based on the concern that the cerebral vasodilation produced by volatile anesthetics might increase ICP. However, it is CBV and not CBF, per se, that influences ICP. Most of the intracranial blood is within the cerebral venous circulation; although a reasonable correlation exists between vasodilation-induced increases in CBF and CBV, the magnitude of changes in CBF is considerably greater than that in CBV (see Fig. 11.9). Hence, changes in CBF do not reliably predict changes in CBV and, by extension, in ICP. CBV is considerably greater during isoflurane anesthesia than during propofol or pentobarbital anesthesia.[63] In human volunteers, 1 MAC sevoflurane reduced regional CBF but not regional CBV; by contrast, propofol reduced both regional CBF and regional CBV (Fig. 11.16).[84] In addition, CBV responds to changes in $PaCO_2$ by a reduction in CBV with hypocapnia and an increase in CBV with hypercapnia. The magnitude of the change in CBV is, however, less than the change in CBF. In aggregate, although the effect of anesthetics and interventions on CBF may parallel the effect on CBV, substantial qualitative and quantitative differences may well be observed.

Carbon dioxide responsiveness and autoregulation. CO_2 responsiveness is well maintained during anesthesia with all volatile anesthetics.[145,165,166] As with all vasodilators, CBF is preserved up to lower MAP values during the administration of volatile anesthetics with no evidence of differences among the various anesthetics. Direct comparisons of CBF with isoflurane, desflurane, and sevoflurane anesthesia during hypotension are not available. By contrast, autoregulation of CBF in response to increasing arterial blood pressure is impaired, which is most apparent with the anesthetics that cause the most cerebral vasodilation and are dose related. Sevoflurane may cause less impairment of the autoregulatory response to increasing blood pressure than other volatile anesthetics. Recent studies surprisingly report no change in MCAfv in response to phenylephrine-induced increases in the MAP during anesthesia with 1.2 to 1.5 MAC sevoflurane[167,168] or in CBF during hemorrhagic hypotension.[169] The autoregulatory response to increasing blood pressure may be pertinent during acute episodes of hypertension, such as during laryngoscopy or mismatch of surgical stimulation to anesthetic depth.

Cerebral vasodilation by anesthetics—clinical implications. Isoflurane, desflurane, and sevoflurane may have a modest cerebral vasodilating effect in the human cortex when administered at doses of 1 MAC or less. In fact, the administration of volatile anesthetics may produce a net decrease in CBF (see Fig. 11.14*A*). These data, however, should be interpreted with the knowledge that the critical variable of interest in the clinical setting is CBV. Although a direct correlation exists between CBF and CBV, as noted earlier, the relationship is not strictly 1:1. The magnitude of the changes in CBV is significantly less than the magnitude of the changes in CBF, and modest reductions in CBF may not necessarily be accompanied by reductions in CBV. This finding is exemplified by clinical investigations in which a significant increase in ICP (and by extension, CBV) was observed in patients to whom isoflurane was administered at doses that should reduce CBF.[170,171] Although induction of hypocapnia mitigated the increase in ICP, hyperventilation may not be effective in blunting isoflurane-induced increases in ICP in patients with intracranial tumors.[172] In experimental investigations of cerebral injury, volatile anesthetics significantly increased ICP, which was not ameliorated by hypocapnia.[173] Collectively, these data suggest that volatile anesthetics have modest effects on cerebral hemodynamics in patients with normal intracranial compliance. However, in patients with abnormal intracranial compliance, the potential for volatile anesthetic–induced increases in CBV and ICP exist. Accordingly, volatile anesthetics should be used with caution in the setting of large or rapidly expanding mass lesions, unstable ICP, or other significant cerebral physiologic derangements in which CO_2 responsiveness and neurovascular coupling may be impaired. When they occur (e.g., a somnolent, vomiting patient with papilledema; a large mass; compressed basal cisterns), the clinician may well be advised to use a predominantly intravenous technique until such time as the cranium and dura are open and the effect of the anesthetic technique can be directly evaluated. Such circumstances will be relatively uncommon in elective neurosurgery.

Situations in which the CMR has been decreased by drug administration or disease processes should also justify caution in the use of volatile anesthetics. As previously noted, the vasodilation mediated increase in CBF induced by a volatile anesthetic is in part, and at low doses, offset by an opposing metabolically mediated vasoconstriction (see Fig. 11.11). In situations in which the CMR is already reduced, the vasodilatory activity will predominate and, therefore, the increase in CBF will be greater. For example, when CMR is only slightly reduced by morphine, isoflurane does not cause significant increase in CBF. However, under thiopental anesthesia, the introduction of isoflurane significantly increases CBF.[135] Similarly, prior propofol anesthesia produces near maximal suppression of CMR; in this situation, introduction of any of the volatile agents leads to significant increases in CBF.[89] In essence, antecedent CMR suppression unmasks the vasodilatory action of volatile anesthetics. These data also suggest that caution must be exercised in the administration of volatile anesthetics in pathologic conditions, such as traumatic brain injury, in which metabolism is already reduced.

The net vasodilating effects of equi-MAC concentrations of isoflurane, desflurane, and sevoflurane are less in humans than that of halothane, and the former are probably therefore preferable if a volatile anesthetic is to be used in the setting of impaired intracranial compliance. When hypocapnia is established before the introduction of halothane, the increases in ICP that might otherwise occur in a normocapnic patient with poor intracranial compliance can be prevented or greatly attenuated. Nonetheless, isoflurane, desflurane, or sevoflurane are preferred because the margin for error is probably wider than with halothane.

Nitrous Oxide

N_2O can cause increases in CBF, CMR, and ICP. At least a portion of the increases in CBF and CMR may be the result of a sympathoadrenal-stimulating effect of N_2O. The magnitude of the effect considerably varies according to the presence or absence of other anesthetic drugs (Fig. 11.17).[174,175] When N_2O is administered alone, substantial increases in CBF and ICP can occur. In sharp contrast, when N_2O is administered in combination with intravenous drugs, including barbiturates, benzodiazepines, narcotics, and propofol, its cerebral-vasodilating effect is attenuated or even completely inhibited. The addition of N_2O to anesthesia established with a volatile anesthetic will result in moderate increases in CBF.

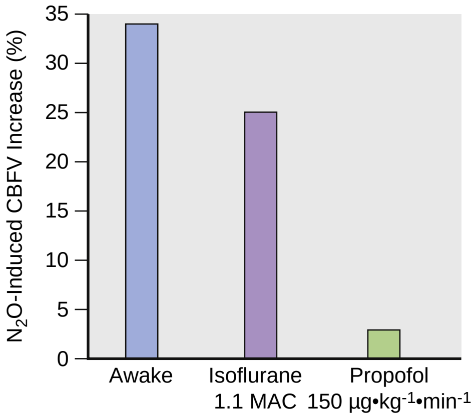


Fig. 11.17 Mean percent increases in cerebral blood flow velocity *(CBFV)* in the middle cerebral artery of normocapnic subjects exposed to 60% nitrous oxide (N_2O) after control recording in three conditions: awake;[174] 1.1 minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) of isoflurane;[179] and propofol, 150 µg/kg/min.[175]

The most dramatic increases in ICP or CBF in humans and experimental animals have occurred when N_2O was administered alone or with minimal background anesthesia. For instance, before and during spontaneous breathing of 66% N_2O by patients with intracranial tumors, mean ICP increased from 13 to 40 mm Hg.[176] The increases in CBF observed in humans are more modest than those observed in animals but are still substantial.[174] Whether these substantial increases represent the effects of N_2O, per se, or whether they reflect the nonspecific effects of a *second-stage* arousal phenomenon is not known.

When N_2O is administered in conjunction with certain intravenous anesthetics, its CBF effect may be considerably attenuated. In an investigation of patients with intracranial tumors and poor intracranial compliance (mean preinduction ICP, 27 mm Hg),[177] 50% N_2O introduced during barbiturate anesthesia and after the induction of hypocapnia had a negligible effect on ICP. Benzodiazepines administered alone have been shown to blunt the CBF response to N_2O in both animals and humans.[107] Narcotics appear to have a similar effect. Anesthesia with 1 mg/kg morphine and 70% N_2O resulted in no change in CBF from awake control values.[66] Because of the very minor effect of morphine on CBF, these data suggest that N_2O did not cause substantial cerebral vasodilation. Although the addition of N_2O to propofol anesthesia in children increased MCAfv in one study,[178] similar increases were not demonstrated by other investigators.[175]

In most investigations, including several in humans, during which N_2O has been added to a volatile anesthetic of 1 MAC or greater, substantial increases in CBF have been recorded.[179,180] A comparison of an approximately equi-MAC substitution of N_2O for isoflurane revealed that CBF was greater by 43% with 0.75 MAC isoflurane and 65% N_2O in comparison to 1.5 MAC isoflurane.[181] Several investigations have confirmed that CBF will be less with 1 MAC isoflurane than with a 1 MAC combination achieved with 50% to 65% N_2O and isoflurane.[179,181,182] These observations are consistent with a substantial additive vasodilating effect of N_2O in the presence of a volatile agent.

This vasodilating effect of N_2O may be positively correlated with the concentration of inhaled drug[180] and suggests that, in general, the increase in CBF caused by N_2O is exaggerated at higher concentrations of both halothane and isoflurane. Of importance, however, is the observation that the administration of 50% N_2O to healthy volunteers did not significantly alter CBV.[183] In support of this observation, N_2O did not have any effect on CBV when added to a background of 1 MAC sevoflurane anesthesia.[84] Although N_2O can increase CBF, these data indicate that its effect on CBV is modest.

Effects of nitrous oxide on cerebral metabolic rate. No uniform agreement has been reached concerning the effect of N_2O on the CMR. Parallel changes in CBF and CMR, increases in CBF without alteration of the CMR, and CMR alteration occurring without changes in CBF have all been reported. These findings are, doubtless, the product of differences in species, methods, depth of background anesthesia, and interactions with simultaneously administered anesthetics. In a recent investigation in humans, the administration of 70% N_2O on a background of either sevoflurane or propofol anesthesia resulted in modest increases in the $CMRO_2$, thus indicating that N_2O does indeed increase cerebral metabolism.[84]

The CBF response to CO_2 is preserved during the administration of N_2O.[184]

Clinical implications. Despite the inconsistencies that are evident, the vasodilatory action of N_2O can be clinically significant in neurosurgical patients with reduced intracranial compliance. However, N_2O-induced cerebral vasodilation can be considerably blunted by the simultaneous administration of intravenous anesthetics. By contrast, the addition of N_2O to a volatile drug–based anesthetic can modestly increase cerebral metabolism and blood flow. N_2O has been widely used in neurosurgery, and banishing it is inconsistent with the accumulated experience. Nonetheless, in circumstances wherein ICP is persistently elevated or the surgical field is persistently *tight*, N_2O should be viewed as a potential contributing factor. Because N_2O rapidly enters a closed gas space, it should be avoided or omitted when a closed intracranial gas space may exist or intravascular air is a concern.

MUSCLE RELAXANTS

Nondepolarizing Relaxants

The only recognized effect of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants on the cerebral vasculature occurs via the release of histamine. Histamine can result in a reduction in CPP because of the simultaneous increase in ICP (caused by cerebral vasodilation) and a decrease in the MAP. It is not entirely clear whether histamine directly causes cerebral vasodilation or whether it is a secondary (autoregulatory) response to a reduction in the MAP. *d*-Tubocurarine is the most potent histamine releaser among available muscle relaxants. Metocurine, atracurium, and mivacurium also release histamine in lesser quantities. This effect is likely to be clinically inconsequential unless these muscle relaxants are administered in the large doses necessary to achieve endotracheal intubation conditions rapidly. Of this group of drugs, cisatracurium has the least histamine-releasing effect. No evidence of histamine release was observed after the administration of 0.15 mg/kg of cisatracurium to neurosurgical patients in the intensive care unit.[185] Yet, cisatracurium's slow onset of action makes it less useful for a rapid sequence induction of anesthesia.

Vecuronium, in relatively large doses, does not have a significant effect on cerebral physiology in patients with brain tumors. The other aminosteroids, pipecuronium and rocuronium, should be similarly without direct effect, and no adverse events have been reported.

The indirect actions of relaxants may also have effects on cerebral physiology. Muscle relaxation may reduce ICP because coughing and straining are prevented, which decrease central venous pressure with a concomitant reduction in cerebral venous outflow impedance.

A metabolite of atracurium, laudanosine, may be epileptogenic. However, although large doses of atracurium caused an EEG arousal pattern in dogs, CBF, CMR, and ICP were unaltered.[186] In rabbits, the administration of laudanosine did not increase the severity of the epileptoid activity caused by the direct application of a cephalosporin to the cortical surface.[187] It appears highly unlikely that epileptogenesis will occur in humans with modest atracurium administration.[188]

In summary, vecuronium, pipecuronium, rocuronium, atracurium, mivacurium, cisatracurium, metocurine, and pancuronium (if acute MAP increases are prevented with the latter) are all reasonable muscle relaxants for use in patients with or at risk for intracranial hypertension. Doses of metocurine, atracurium, and mivacurium should be limited to ranges not associated with hypotension.

Rocuronium is increasingly being used for the induction of anesthesia, as well as for intraoperative relaxation. It has the most rapid onset time of any nondepolarizing muscle relaxant. With sugammadex, even a profound neuromuscular blockade can be rapidly reversed (see Chapters 27 and 28). The cerebrovascular effects of sugammadex have not yet been evaluated.

Succinylcholine

Succinylcholine can produce modest increases (~5 mm Hg) in ICP in lightly anesthetized humans. This effect appears to be the result of cerebral activation (as evidenced by EEG changes and increases in CBF) caused by afferent activity from the muscle spindle apparatus.[189] As might be expected with what appears to be an arousal phenomenon, deep anesthesia prevents succinylcholine-induced increases in ICP. The increase in ICP is also blocked by paralysis with vecuronium and by defasciculation with metocurine, 0.03 mg/kg.[190] The efficacy of other defasciculating anesthetics has not been examined in humans.

Although succinylcholine *can* produce increases in ICP, it can still be used for a rapid sequence induction of anesthesia. No change in ICP was observed after the administration of succinylcholine, 1 mg/kg, to 10 nonparalyzed, ventilated neurosurgical patients in the intensive care unit, 6 of whom had sustained a head injury.[191] Their observations are relevant because it is in precisely this population of patients that the issue of the use of succinylcholine arises most frequently. Considering that the ICP effects of succinylcholine may be an arousal phenomenon caused by increased afferent traffic from muscle spindles,[189] it is reasonable to assume that disease processes that substantially blunt the level of consciousness might similarly blunt this response. As with many anesthetics, the concern should

TABLE 11.3 Effects of Anesthetic Agents on the Rate of Cerebrospinal Fluid Secretion and Absorption

	Halothane	Enflurane	Isoflurane	Desflurane	Fentanyl	Etomidate
Secretion	↓	↑	—	↑	—	↓
Absorption	↓	↓	↑	—	↑	↑

Upward arrows indicate an increase in the rate of cerebrospinal fluid absorption or secretion, and downward arrows indicate a decrease. The information is presented nonquantitatively, and effects may vary with dose.

not be whether it is used but how it is used. When contraindications do not exist, with proper attention to the control of CO_2 tension, arterial blood pressure, and depth of anesthesia and after defasciculation, little hazard should attend succinylcholine administration.

Other Effects of Anesthetics on Cerebral Physiology

CEREBROSPINAL FLUID DYNAMICS

Anesthetics have been shown to influence both the rate of formation and the rate of reabsorption of CSF. Table 11.3 provides nonquantitative information about the direction of the influences of common anesthetic drugs. All the information has been derived from animals,[192-198] and these processes have not been examined in humans. Of the volatile anesthetics, halothane decreases the secretion of CSF, isoflurane has no effect, and enflurane and desflurane increase secretion. Absorption of CSF is reduced by halothane and enflurane, unchanged by desflurane, and increased by isoflurane. A theoretic concern might be in the setting of a prolonged closed-cranium procedure in a patient with poor intracranial compliance. The most deleterious potential combination of effects in a patient with poor intracranial compliance is increased CSF production and decreased reabsorption. This pattern occurs with enflurane in the dog, which is perhaps another reason (in addition to the potential for epileptogenesis in the presence of cerebral injury and hypocapnia) for omission of enflurane in this circumstance.

BLOOD-BRAIN BARRIER

In the majority of the body's capillary beds, fenestrations between endothelial cells are approximately 65 Å in diameter. In the brain, with the exception of the choroid plexus, in the pituitary, and in the area postrema, tight junctions reduce this pore size to approximately 8 Å. As a result, large molecules and most ions are prevented from entering the brain's interstitium (BBB). A limited number of studies of anesthetic effects on the BBB have been conducted. In experimental animals, 1% isoflurane leads to extravasation of albumin into the thalamus, indicating some compromise of the BBB integrity. At higher doses, isoflurane (3%) significantly increases protein extravasation, not only in the thalamus but also in the cortex.[199] This disruption of the BBB is quantitatively similar to that achieved by mannitol. In experimental models of brain injury, isoflurane has been reported to both exacerbate[200] and ameliorate[201] edema formation in the injured brain. Whether these effects are the result of isoflurane action at the BBB, *per se*, or to hemodynamic perturbations attendant upon anesthesia is not known. The clinical relevance of the potential BBB modulation by anesthetics is not clear. To the authors' knowledge, no peer-reviewed investigation has attempted a comparison of anesthetic effects on BBB function during anesthesia in normotensive humans.

EPILEPTOGENESIS

An extensive review of the pro- and anticonvulsant effects of anesthetics and adjuvants is available.[202,203] Several commonly used anesthetics have some epileptogenic potential, particularly in predisposed individuals. A concern is that seizure activity may go unrecognized in an anesthetized and paralyzed patient and may result in neuronal injury if substrate demand (CMR) exceeds supply for a prolonged period.[204] A second concern is that the epileptogenic effect will persist in the postanesthesia period when seizures may occur in less well-controlled circumstances than those that exist in the surgical unit. In practice, it appears that spontaneous seizures during or after anesthesia have been extremely rare events. Nonetheless, in patients with processes that might predispose them to seizures, the use of potentially epileptogenic drugs should be avoided in situations during which reasonable alternatives are available.

Volatile Anesthetics

Enflurane is potentially epileptogenic in clinical setting. Of particular relevance to neuroanesthesia is the observation that hypocapnia potentiates seizure-type discharges during enflurane anesthesia. A 50% decrease in the $CMRO_2$ was noted in human volunteers anesthetized with 3% enflurane; however, with the onset of seizure activity, the $CMRO_2$ returned to normal,[205] thus indicating preservation of neurovascular coupling. No evidence suggests that this type of EEG activity is deleterious when oxygen delivery is maintained during the event. However, because seizure activity can elevate brain metabolism by as much as 400%, the use of enflurane, especially at high doses and with hypocapnia, should probably be avoided in patients predisposed to seizures.

The EEG-activating property of enflurane has been used intraoperatively to activate and identify seizure foci that are to be surgically resected, and in this situation, spike activity not preoperatively present has been observed to persist after surgery.[206] However, adverse outcomes related to enflurane-induced seizures have not been reported.

Isoflurane can cause EEG spiking and myoclonus, but it has not been associated, in the experimental setting, with the frank epileptoid activity induced by enflurane. The clinical experience with isoflurane is extremely large, and unexplained seizure-like activity has been reported in only two patients. One occurrence was intraoperative,[207] and the other was immediately postoperative.[208] Therefore epileptogenesis does not appear to be a clinical concern with isoflurane. In fact, isoflurane has been successfully used to control EEG seizure activity in refractory status epilepticus.[209]

Seizures occur during the induction of anesthesia with high concentrations of sevoflurane in children, including those without a recognized seizure diathesis.[210] In two healthy humans, EEG burst suppression with 2 MAC sevoflurane was accompanied by epileptiform discharges that were observed during EEG monitoring.[211] These discharges were associated with a significant increase in CBF, thus demonstrating that neurovascular coupling was preserved. In patients with temporal lobe epilepsy, the administration of 1.5 MAC sevoflurane elicited widespread paroxysmal EEG activity. Of note was the observation that the paroxysmal activity was not restricted to the ictal focus and that the administration of sevoflurane did not provide any assistance in localizing the epileptogenic region of the brain.[212] The development of tonic-clonic movements suggestive of seizure activity has also been reported in otherwise healthy patients on emergence from sevoflurane anesthesia.[213,214] In all of the reported cases of seizure activity attributable to sevoflurane anesthesia, untoward sequelae have not been documented. These reports highlight sevoflurane's ability, albeit small, to evoke epileptiform activity; accordingly, the use of sevoflurane in patients with epilepsy should be undertaken with appropriate caution.

Methohexital

Myoclonic activity is sometimes observed with methohexital. Accordingly, this anesthetic has been used to activate seizure foci during cortical mapping.[211] In neurosurgical patients to whom larger doses of methohexital were administered to produce burst suppression of the EEG, refractory seizures have occurred.[215] Consequently, it appears that patients with seizures of temporal lobe origin, typically of the psychomotor variety or those to whom large doses are administered, are at risk for seizure activation by methohexital. However, prolonged seizure activity after single-dose methohexital administration has not been reported in patients who undergo ECT.

Ketamine

Ketamine can elicit seizures in patients with an epileptic diathesis.[216] Depth electrode recordings in epileptic patients have revealed the occurrence of isolated subcortical seizure activity originating in the limbic and thalamic areas during ketamine anesthesia and demonstrated that this subcortical activation may not be reflected in surface EEG recordings. On only two occasions, seizures have also been reported after ketamine anesthesia in subjects who were neurologically normal;[217,218] seizure thresholds may have been lowered by aminophylline in one of these instances. However, ketamine has also been employed for the purpose of controlling status epilepticus. Therefore, ketamine-induced seizure activity is not of significant concern.

Etomidate

Etomidate frequently produces myoclonus that is not associated with epileptiform activity on the EEG.[219] A single instance of severe, sustained myoclonus immediately after anesthesia with etomidate by infusion has been reported.[220] Etomidate has also been shown to precipitate generalized epileptic EEG activity in epileptic patients,[221] and its use in this population should probably be avoided. However, it has been electively used in low doses to activate seizure foci for the purposes of intraoperative EEG localization.[222] In the experience of the authors (unpublished), selective activation of a quiescent focus can be achieved with 0.1 mg/kg etomidate. Larger doses are more likely to lead to generalized activation.

Etomidate is also associated with longer seizures in response to ECT than seizures that occur after the administration of methohexital or propofol. Remarkably, etomidate, in the dose range of 0.15 to 0.3 mg/kg, does not cause dose-related seizure inhibition during ECT, as is readily demonstrated with methohexital or propofol.

The preceding information notwithstanding, no convincing reports indicate epileptogenesis in subjects who are neurologically normal, and the use of etomidate need not be restricted on this basis. In fact, etomidate has been used to control refractory status epilepticus.

Propofol

Abnormal body movements and opisthotonos can occur after propofol anesthesia. However, systematic studies in humans,[223] although identifying the occurrence of occasional dystonic and choreiform movements, have failed to confirm propofol as a proconvulsant. Furthermore, ECT seizures were shorter after induction with propofol than after induction with methohexital,[224] which is more consistent with an *anticonvulsant* effect. In addition, propofol sedation has been widely used during *awake* resection of seizure foci and other intracranial lesions. Although pronounced high-amplitude beta-frequency activity in the EEG has been observed,[225] unexpected incidences of seizures have not been reported.

Narcotics

Seizures or limbic system hypermetabolism (or both) can be readily elicited in some animal species with narcotics. Although an increase in CBF in deep brain structures associated with pain processing has been observed in human volunteers,[226] humans do not have a clinically apparent correlate of the hypermetabolism effect observed in animals. Several anecdotal accounts, unaccompanied by EEG recordings, have reported the occurrence of grand mal convulsions in patients who received both high and low doses of fentanyl. However, systematic investigations of EEG changes during the administration of relatively large doses of fentanyl, sufentanil, and alfentanil in humans have *not* documented neuroexcitatory activity,[227] and the seizures may have been an exaggerated rigidity phenomenon. There are exceptions. Partial complex seizures on the induction of anesthesia with fentanyl in patients undergoing anterior temporal lobectomy have been reported.[228] Eight of the nine patients displayed electrical seizure activity at a range of clinically relevant fentanyl doses (mean, 26 μg/kg).[228] Another study found that alfentanil, 50 μg/kg, augmented temporal lobe spike activity in patients with temporal lobe epilepsy.[229] Untreated rigidity may, itself, also have important CNS consequences. ICP elevation can occur during narcotic-induced rigidity, probably as a consequence of cerebral venous congestion.

NEONATAL ANESTHETIC NEUROTOXICITY

This subject is discussed in detail in Chapter 78.

Cerebral Physiology in Pathologic States

CEREBRAL ISCHEMIA—PATHOPHYSIOLOGIC CONSIDERATIONS

Critical Cerebral Blood Flow Thresholds

The brain has a high rate of energy utilization and very limited energy storage capacity. The brain is therefore extremely vulnerable in the event of interruption of substrate (e.g., oxygen, glucose) supply. Under normal circumstances, global CBF is maintained at approximately 50 mL/100 g/min. In the face of a declining CBF and therefore oxygen supply, neuronal function deteriorates in a progressive manner rather than in an all-or-none fashion (Fig. 11.18). There is substantial reserve below normal CBF levels, and not until EEG evidence of ischemia begins to appear is CBF decreased to approximately 20 mL/100 g/min. At a CBF level of approximately 15 mL/100 g/min, the cortical EEG is isoelectric. However, only when CBF is reduced to approximately 6 to 10 mL/100 g/min are indications of potentially irreversible membrane failure, such as increased extracellular potassium[230] and a loss of the direct cortical response, rapidly evident. As CBF decreases in the flow range between 15 and 10 mL/100 g/min, a progressive deterioration in energy supply occurs and eventually leads to membrane failure and neuronal death at a time course that may last hours rather than minutes. The brain regions falling within this CBF range (6-15 mL/100 g/min) encompass brain tissue in which neuronal dysfunction is temporarily reversible but within which neuronal death will occur if flow is not restored; such regions are referred to as the *ischemic penumbra*.[230,231] Studies defining progression to cerebral infarction within the penumbra have been performed principally in the cerebral cortex of primates, and the actual CBF levels at which the various decrements in function occur may vary with both anesthetic[232] and species. However, in humans anesthetized with halothane and N_2O, the CBF threshold for the initial EEG change[233] is similar to that observed in the animal investigations.

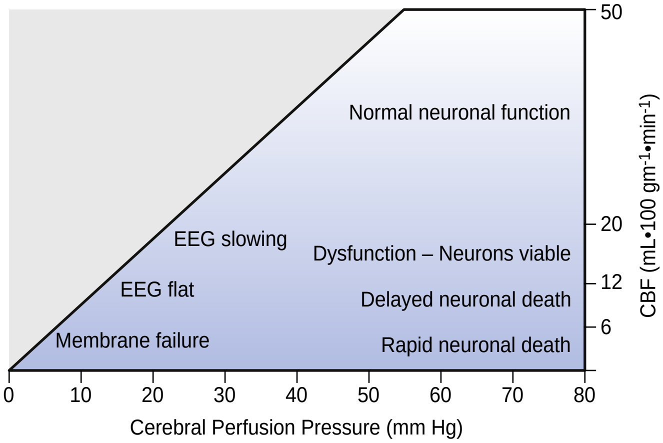


Fig. 11.18 Relationships between cerebral perfusion, cerebral blood flow *(CBF)*, the electroencephalogram *(EEG)*, and the functional status and viability of neurons. Note that in the approximate CBF range of 6 to 12 mL/100 g/min, the energy supply is insufficient to support electrophysiologic activity (i.e., flat EEG) but can prevent complete membrane failure and neuronal death for extended periods. These areas are referred to as the *ischemic penumbra*.[230] The data are derived from studies on the cerebral cortex of barbiturate-anesthetized baboons[230,359] and nonanesthetized monkeys.[360] The CBF and mean arterial pressure thresholds may vary with anesthetic and species.[232]

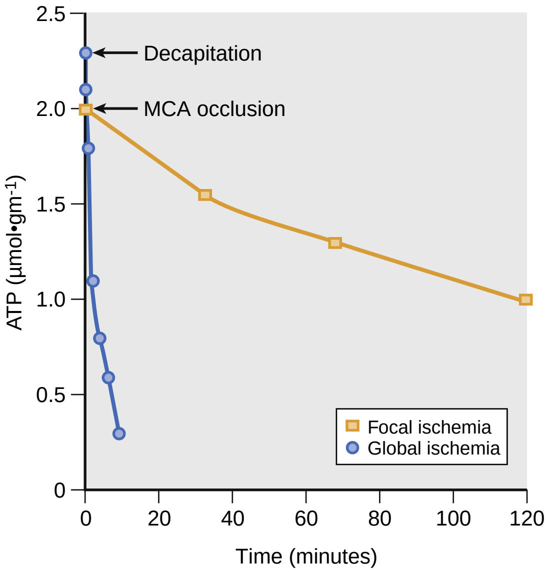


Fig. 11.19 Comparison of rates of failure of energy supply (adenosine triphosphate *[ATP]*) in complete global ischemia in dogs (produced by decapitation[235]) and in incomplete focal ischemia in monkeys (middle cerebral artery *[MCA]* occlusion[234]). In the presence of residual cerebral blood flow *(CBF)*, energy supply failure is substantially delayed.

Models of Cerebral Ischemia

How different is complete cerebral ischemia, as occurs during cardiac arrest, and incomplete cerebral ischemia, as may occur during occlusion of a major cerebral vessel or severe hypotension? From the clinician's vantage, the important difference is that the residual (i.e., collateral) blood flow during incomplete ischemia may result in enough delivery of oxygen to allow some generation of ATP and thereby stave off the catastrophic irreversible membrane failure that occurs within minutes during normothermic complete cerebral ischemia.[234] This difference in the rate of failure of the energy supply (Fig. 11.19)[234,235] can result in significantly greater apparent tolerance for focal or incomplete ischemia than for complete global ischemia (e.g., cardiac arrest).

Energy Failure and Excitotoxicity

Energy failure is the central event that occurs during cerebral ischemia.[236] ATP is required for the maintenance of the normal membrane ionic gradient, and energy failure is rapidly attended by membrane depolarization and influx of sodium (Na^+) and calcium (Ca^{2+}) into the neuron. Voltage-dependent Ca^{2+} channels are then activated, and Ca^{2+} gains entry into the cytosol. Depolarization of presynaptic terminals also results in the release of massive quantities of excitatory neurotransmitters, particularly glutamate, into the synaptic cleft. Activation of glutamatergic receptors, the NMDAR, and the α-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazopropionic acid receptors (AMPARs), adds to the influx of Na^+ and Ca^{2+} (Fig. 11.20). Initiation of cellular signaling by the activation of the mGluR leads to the release of stored Ca^{2+} from the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) via

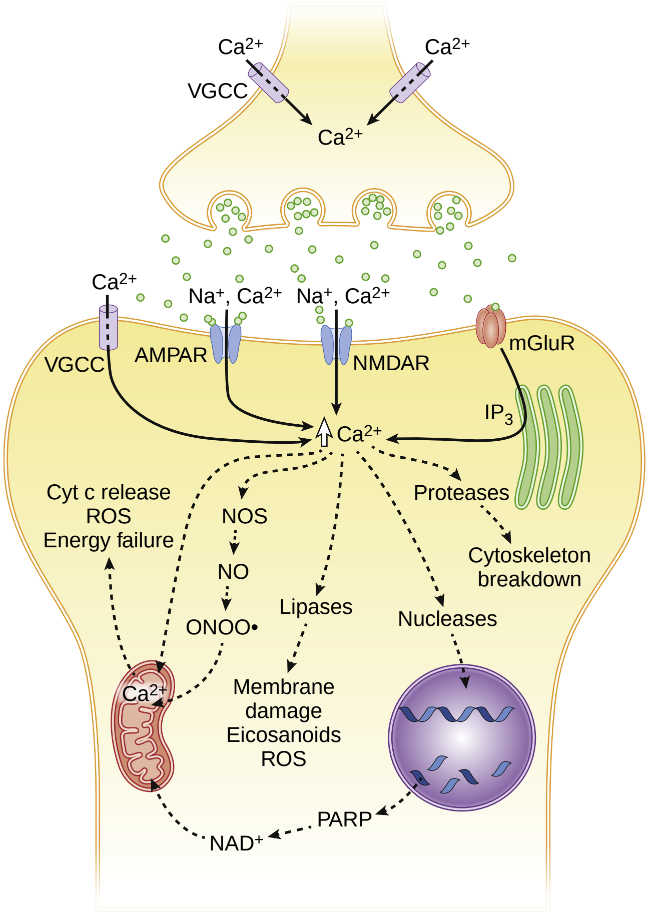


Fig. 11.20 During ischemia, depletion of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) leads to neuronal depolarization and the subsequent release of supranormal quantities of neurotransmitters, especially glutamate. Excessive stimulation of ligand-gated channels and the simultaneous opening of voltage-dependent calcium *(Ca^{2+})* channels permit rapid entry of Ca^{2+} into neurons. Stimulation of metabotropic glutamate receptors (mGluRs) generates inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate *(IP_3)*, which causes the release of Ca^{2+} from the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) and mitochondria. Activation of the α-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazopropionic acid receptors *(AMPAR)*–gated subset of glutamate receptors also permits excessive entry of sodium *(Na^+)*. Excessive free Ca^{2+} results in the activation of numerous enzymes: protease activation causes the breakdown of the cytoskeleton of the neuron; lipases damage plasma membrane lipids and release arachidonic acid (AA), which is metabolized by cyclooxygenases and lipoxygenases to yield free radicals and other mediators of cell injury; activation of nitric oxide synthase *(NOS)* leads to the release of nitric oxide *(NO)* and, in turn, the generation of peroxynitrite *(ONOO)*, a highly reactive free radical; and activated endonucleases damage DNA, thereby rendering the neuron susceptible to apoptosis. Injury to the mitochondria leads to energy failure, generation of free radicals, and the release of cytochrome *c* (*cyt c*) from the mitochondria; the latter is one of the means by which neuronal apoptosis is initiated. *mGluR,* Metabotropic glutamate receptor; *NAD^+,* oxidized form of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide; *NMDAR, N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptor; *PARP,* poly-ADP-ribose polymerase; *ROS,* reactive oxygen species; *VGCC,* voltage-gated calcium channel.

inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate (IP_3) receptors. Ionic influx is accompanied by an influx of water, and neuronal swelling rapidly occurs after membrane depolarization. The injury that is initiated by excessive glutamatergic activity is referred to as *excitotoxicity*.

Ca^{2+} is a ubiquitous second messenger in cells and is a cofactor required for the activation of a number of enzyme systems. The rapid, uncontrolled increase in cytosolic Ca^{2+} levels initiates the activation of a number of cellular processes that contribute to injury. Cytoskeletal proteins such as actin are cleaved by activated proteases. These enzymes also degrade a number of the protein constituents of the neuron. Lipases attack cellular lipids and produce membrane damage. An important lipase, phospholipase A_2, releases fatty acids such as AA from membranes. Metabolism of AA to prostaglandins and leukotrienes by cyclooxygenase and lipoxygenase is accompanied by the generation of superoxide free radicals. The latter, in combination with other free radicals generated in response to mitochondrial injury, can lead to lipid peroxidation and membrane injury. Prostaglandins and leukotrienes also evoke an inflammatory response and are powerful chemotactic drugs. Activation of platelets within cerebral microvessels, as well as an influx of white blood cells into damaged areas, aggravate the ischemic injury by occluding the vasculature.

Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) damage is also an important event during ischemic neuronal injury. Generation of free radicals from AA metabolism, from injured mitochondria, and from the production of peroxynitrite from NO leads to oxidative injury to DNA. Activation of endonucleases also produces DNA strand breaks. Under normal circumstances, DNA injury results in the activation of poly–adenosine diphosphate [ADP]–ribose polymerase (PARP), an enzyme that participates in DNA repair. With excessive DNA injury, PARP activity dramatically increases, which can lead to the depletion of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+), a substrate of PARP. NAD^+ is also an important coenzyme in energy metabolism, and its depletion further exacerbates energy failure.

Lactate formation is an additional element of the pathophysiologic process. Lactic acid is formed as a result of the anaerobic glycolysis that takes place after failure of the supply of oxygen. The associated decrease in pH contributes to the deterioration of the intracellular environment. An increased preischemic serum glucose level may accelerate this process by providing additional substrate for anaerobic glycolysis.

NO, which has emerged as a probable mediator of CBF changes in many normal physiologic states (see the section “Cerebral Metabolic Rate”), is also of relevance to pathophysiologic ischemia. NO is, in fact, a weak free radical that in turn leads to the generation of a more reactive species (peroxynitrite), and it is the *killer substance* used by macrophages. In cerebral ischemia, NO is probably both friend and foe. During a period of focal ischemia, the vasodilating effect of NO (probably constitutively elaborated NO of endothelial origin) probably serves to augment collateral CBF. However, in the postischemic phase, NO (probably derived from neurons or macrophages) contributes to neuronal injury.

Collectively, the simultaneous and unregulated activation of a number of cellular pathways overwhelms the reparative and restorative processes within the neuron and ultimately leads to neuronal death.

The Nature of Neuronal Death

The neuronal death that occurs in response to these processes has been categorized as necrotic or apoptotic in nature. Necrotic death mediated by excitotoxic injury, is characterized by rapid cellular swelling, condensation and pyknosis of the nucleus, and swelling of the mitochondria and ER. A characteristic of these necrotic neurons is the presence of acidophilic cytoplasm.[237] Necrotic neuronal death results in local infiltration of the brain by inflammatory cells. A considerable amount of collateral damage is a consequence of this inflammation.

Neuronal apoptosis, a form of *cellular suicide*, has also been demonstrated in a variety of models of cerebral ischemia. Apoptosis is characterized by chromatin condensation, involution of the cell membrane, swelling of mitochondria, and cellular shrinkage. In the later stages of apoptosis, neurons fragment into several apoptotic bodies, which are then cleared from the brain.[237] The lack of a substantial inflammatory response to apoptotic death limits injury to surrounding neurons that have survived the initial ischemic insult.

A number of biochemical pathways that lead to apoptosis have been described. Initiation of apoptosis by the release of cytochrome *c* from injured mitochondria has been studied extensively (Fig. 11.21). Cytochrome *c* is restricted from the cytoplasm by the outer mitochondrial membrane.[238] When mitochondria are injured, pores within the outer membrane allow cytochrome *c* to be released into the cytoplasm, where it interacts with procaspase-9 and apoptosis-activating factor (APAF) to produce an apoptosome. Procaspase-9 undergoes activation by proteolytic cleavage. Activated caspase-9 then activates caspase-3. The latter serves as an executor of apoptosis by cleaving a number of protein substrates that are essential in DNA repair (such as PARP). Activation of caspase-3 can also occur by inflammatory signaling via tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α) and the activation of caspase-8.[239] It should be noted that the neuronal injury that occurs in response to ischemia cannot be easily divided into necrosis or apoptosis. The nature of neuronal death probably encompasses a spectrum in which some neurons undergo either necrosis or apoptosis, whereas others undergo cell death that has features of both necrosis and apoptosis.

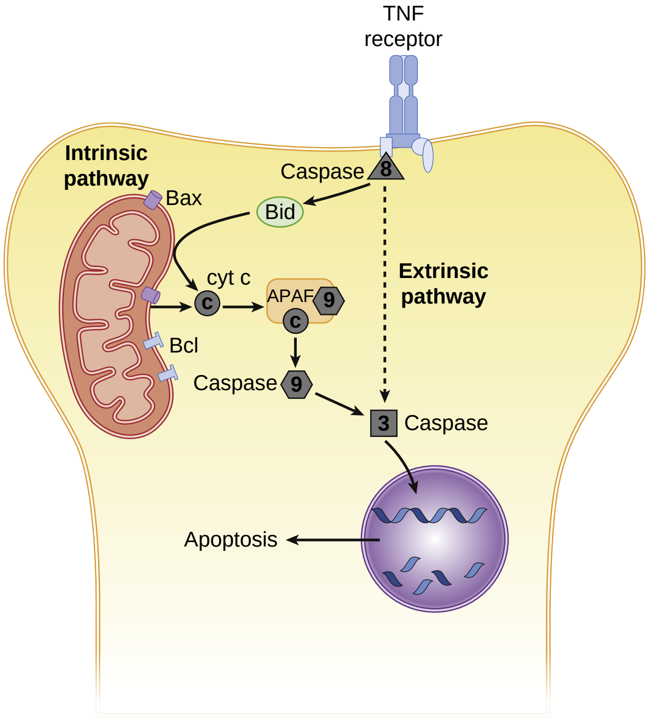


Fig. 11.21 Cellular processes that lead to neuronal apoptosis. Cytochrome *c (cyt c)*, which is normally restricted to the space between the inner and outer mitochondrial membranes, is released in response to mitochondrial injury. Cyt c, in combination with apoptosis-activating factor *(APAF)*, activates caspase-9 by proteolytic cleavage. Activated caspase-9 then leads to the activation of caspase-3. This enzyme cleaves a number of substrates, including those necessary for DNA repair. Within the mitochondria, Bax augments and Bcl prevents the release of cyt c. The release of cyt c can also be initiated by Bid, a substance that is activated by caspase-8 via tumor necrosis factor *(TNF)* signaling. In addition, caspase-8 can directly activate caspase-3. Excessive activation of poly-ADP-ribose polymerase, an enzyme integral to DNA repair, depletes cellular stores of oxidized nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+). Depletion of NAD^+ further exacerbates the energy failure because of its critical role in energy metabolism.

Timing of Neuronal Death

The traditional concept of ischemic injury was that neuronal death was restricted to the time of ischemia and during the early reperfusion period. However, more recent data indicate that postischemic neuronal injury is a dynamic process during which neurons continue to die for a long period after the initiating ischemic insult (Fig. 11.22).[240] This delayed neuronal death, which was first demonstrated in models of global cerebral ischemia, has been demonstrated during focal ischemia as well. The extent of delayed neuronal death depends on the severity of the ischemic insult. With severe ischemia, most neurons undergo rapid death. With more moderate insults, neurons that survive the initial insult undergo delayed death. This ongoing neuronal loss contributes to the gradual expansion of cerebral infarction after focal ischemia. In experimental studies, evidence of cerebral inflammation, which can theoretically contribute to further injury, has been demonstrated even 6 to 8 months after the primary ischemia.

The occurrence of delayed neuronal death has important implications for the evaluation of studies in which neuroprotective strategies are being investigated. A wide variety of interventions have shown neuroprotective efficacy in studies in which the extent of injury is evaluated within 3 to 4 days after ischemia. However, this neuroprotective efficacy may not be sustained. Recent data indicate that cerebral infarction undergoes gradual expansion and that a reduction in injury attributed to a particular therapeutic intervention is no longer apparent when the injury is evaluated after a long postischemic recovery period.[240] Long-term (>1 month) evaluation of the efficacy of a particular intervention is therefore important.

Much of the literature on the pathophysiologic process of cerebral ischemia has primarily been focused on neuronal injury. However, recent work has highlighted the importance of the contribution of astrocytes, microglia, vascular cells (e.g., endothelium, smooth muscle cells, pericytes), basement membranes, and extracellular matrix to stroke. These individual components in aggregate form the neurovascular unit. A detailed understanding of the contribution of each component of the neurovascular unit is a prerequisite, not only for the protection of the brain against ischemic and traumatic injury, but also for therapeutic approaches for the regeneration of the CNS.

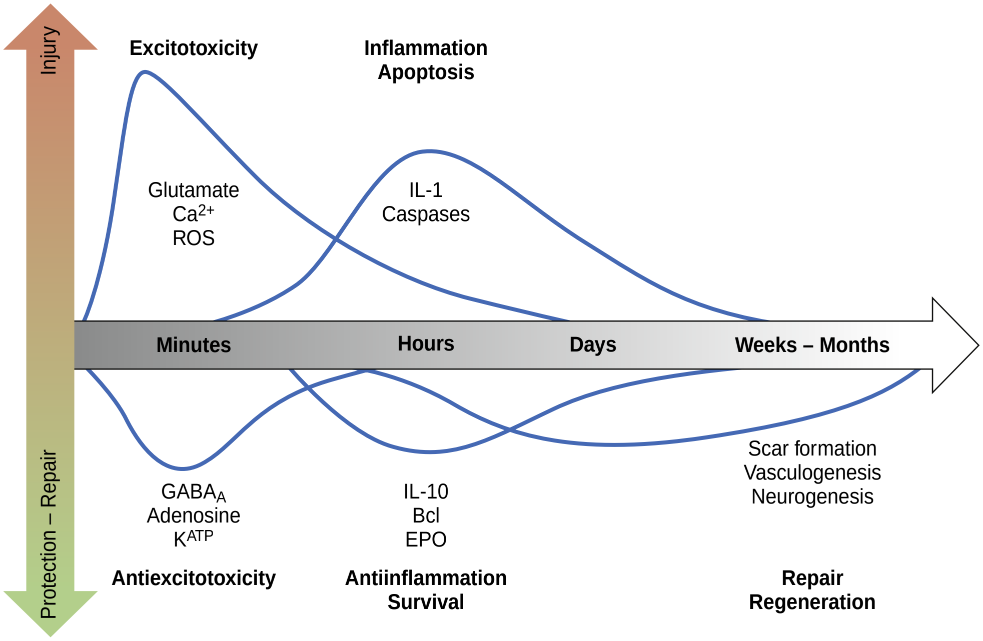


Fig. 11.22 Time course of neuronal death. Excitotoxic (glutamate-mediated) injury results in neuronal death within the first few hours after the onset of ischemia. Brain tissue injury elicits an inflammatory response—an important process in the removal of injured tissue and in healing—that leads to a substantial amount of collateral damage. Inflammation-mediated neuronal death can continue for several days. Neuronal apoptosis can occur in injured neurons that survived the initial insult. Apoptotic neuronal death has been demonstrated to occur for many days after the initiating ischemic insult. It is now apparent that ischemic neuronal death is a dynamic process during which neurons continue to die for a long period. *Ca^{2+},* Calcium; *EPO,* erythropoietin; *GABAA,* gamma-aminobutyric acid A; *K^{ATP}*, adenosine triphosphate–regulated potassium; *IL-1,* interleukin 1; *IL-10,* interleukin 10; *ROS,* reactive oxygen species. (Adapted from Dirnagl U, Iadecola C, Moskowitz M. Pathobiology of ischaemic stroke: an integrated view. *Trends Neurosci*. 1999;22:391–397.)

BRAIN PROTECTION

Despite intense investigative efforts, pharmacologic agents that can protect the brain against ischemic injury have not been identified. The mainstay in the reduction of brain injury in the setting of acute ischemic stroke is thrombolysis. Management of thrombolysis has been reviewed in guidelines for the early management of patients with acute ischemic stroke.[241] Intravenous alteplase is recommended for patients in whom the time from onset of symptoms to treatment is less than 3 hours. Contraindications to thrombolysis include inability to identify onset of symptoms, intracranial hemorrhage, previous stroke or head trauma within 3 months, recent intracranial or spinal surgery, gastrointestinal malignancy, or bleeding and coagulopathy.[241] The window of thrombolysis may be extended to 4.5 hours in selected patients.

The narrow window for thrombolysis has limited the number of patients who may benefit from clot removal. Mechanical thrombectomy has recently considerably expanded this window. Previously, endovascular treatment of acute ischemic stroke with large clot in large vessels was restricted to a time period of no more than 6 hours from the time that the patients were last known to be well. Two recent trials demonstrated improved neurologic outcome following internal carotid or proximal MCA thrombectomy in patients up to 16 and 24 hours from the time they were last known well. A key enrollment requirement was the presence of a substantial volume of ischemic, but not yet infarcted, tissue that might be amenable to salvage (substantial mismatch between ischemic and infarcted tissue, indicating that noninfarcted tissue could be salvageable).

The DAWN trial used strictly defined mismatch criteria based upon discrepancy between the clinical neurologic deficit (National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale score) and the volume of infarcted tissue.[242] The DEFUSE 3 trial utilized imaging (computed tomography perfusion or MRI diffusion–perfusion) to identify mismatch between ischemic and infarcted tissue.[243] In both studies, the outcome was more favorable in patients who underwent thrombectomy. These studies will increase the number of patients that are eligible for endovascular treatment following acute ischemic stroke. Consequently, the frequency of involvement of the anesthesiologist in the care of these patients will increase significantly.

The literature on cerebral ischemia and brain protection is vast, and a detailed discourse on this topic is beyond the scope of the present discussion. A number of excellent recent reviews on the subject are available.[244-253]

Considerations Relevant to Complete Global Ischemia (Cardiac Arrest)

Maintaining adequate perfusion pressure after cardiac arrest is of considerable importance. Hypotension developing after resuscitation from cardiac arrest may aggravate the microcirculatory and vasospastic processes occurring at this time and may increase brain damage. A late phase of intracranial hypertension may occur and is due to the development of extensive cerebral edema (probably both vasogenic and cytotoxic edema) associated with brain necrosis. Attempts to control this type of intracranial hypertension with osmotherapy are particularly effective.

Both barbiturates and CCBs have been administered after cardiac arrest. The former are ineffective. In a small cohort (51 patients) of patients after cardiac arrest, nimodipine was shown to improve CBF but not neurologic outcome.[254] In a second trial with approximately 150 patients after cardiac arrest, no overall benefit in neurologic outcome was observed.[255] However, a subset of patients in whom the initiation of advanced life support was delayed for longer than 10 minutes demonstrated improved survival. This single study cannot serve as justification for the administration of nimodipine after cardiac arrest, especially in the face of the unequivocally negative results of the multicenter lidoflazine cardiac arrest study.[256] Once again, the important therapeutic objectives are the maintenance of normocapnia and normotension, normalization of systemic pH, avoidance of hyperoxia,[257] avoidance of hyperthermia, and prevention and treatment of seizures.

Induced mild hypothermia is effective in reducing mortality and morbidity in patients who sustain a cardiac arrest that is followed by altered mental status with a Glasgow Coma Scale score of 7 or less.[258] Induction of mild hypothermia in the range of 32°C to 34°C for a period of approximately 24 hours improved neurologic outcome and survival 6 months after cardiac arrest in comparison with a normothermic group. Mild hypothermia was induced without difficulty. Passive rewarming of patients was slowly accomplished over a period of 8 hours. The incidence of complications was similar to that in the control normothermic group. This important study is one of the first to demonstrate the feasibility and efficacy of induced hypothermia as a treatment to reduce injury from global ischemia. In neonates who sustained hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy, induction of whole body hypothermia (33.5°C) for 72 hours resulted in a reduced incidence of mortality.[259] Long-term follow-up of patients enrolled in the study confirmed the potentially beneficial effects of mild hypothermia.[260] In many institutions, induced hypothermia has been added to the armamentarium for the treatment of cerebral complications of cardiac arrest or global neonatal hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy.

Considerations Relevant to Focal (Incomplete) Ischemia

Before discussing individual anesthetics, it should be noted that anesthesia, *per se*, is protective. For undefined reasons, reducing the level of systemic stress associated with a standardized experimental insult results in an improved outcome.[261,262] In reviewing the protection-by-anesthetics literature, readers should be conscious of the possibility that the protective benefit ascribed to an intervention with an anesthetic drug may, in fact, be the product of exaggeration of the injury in a high-stress control state, such as N_2O sedation.

Barbiturates. Numerous demonstrations have revealed the protective efficacy of barbiturates in focal cerebral ischemia in animals,[263-265] and a single demonstration confirmed the effectiveness in humans.[266] The effect has been attributed principally to suppression of CMR. However, the effects of CBF redistribution and free radical scavenging[267] may contribute, and evidence indicates that CMR suppression is not the sole mechanism.[268] Suppression of CMR might logically be expected to be of benefit to brain regions in which oxygen delivery is inadequate to meet normal demands but is sufficient to allow energy consumption by some ongoing electrophysiologic activity (i.e., in which the EEG was abnormal but not flat). Such regions are likely to be limited in size in the setting of focal ischemia, yet several of the animal investigations suggest a very substantial protective effect.[263,264] Review of these experiments reveals that the methods used to monitor and maintain temperature, although accepted at the time, were below the standards that have evolved from a more recent understanding of the effects of both deliberate[269,270] and inadvertent hypothermia. Unrecognized cerebral hypothermia may well have been a factor in some of the cited investigations, and it is therefore possible that the protective efficacy of barbiturates may have been overestimated. Although more recent publications involving suitable temperature control methods do, in fact, indicate a protective effect of barbiturates,[268,271,272] the magnitude of that effect was modest when compared with the results of earlier studies. Barbiturate-induced EEG suppression in an already anesthetized patient may still be logical therapy when it can be applied before or early in the course of a period of temporary focal ischemia (e.g., temporary occlusion during aneurysm surgery). However, the decision to institute such therapy should be made only after considering the risk of the occlusive event, the patient's cardiovascular status, and the physician's willingness to accept the possibility of delayed emergence, together with an objective view of the probable magnitude of the protective effect.

Numerous investigations in animals and humans have failed to demonstrate any protective effect of barbiturates in the setting of global cerebral ischemia (e.g., cardiac arrest).

Because CMR suppression has been the presumed mechanism of effect, barbiturates have traditionally been administered to produce maximal reduction of the CMR (which is nearly complete when EEG burst suppression has been achieved). However, the same protective benefit (expressed as a reduction of infarct volume) was observed in an animal investigation with one third of the burst-suppression dose.[268] This raises a clinically important issue. The various barbiturates (e.g., thiopental, thiamylal, methohexital, pentobarbital) have similar effects on the CMR and have generally been assumed to have equal protective efficacy. However, if the mechanism of protection is a pharmacologic effect other than a reduction in the CMR, then is it reasonable to assume equivalence among the barbiturates? Recent data suggest that the neuroprotective efficacy of barbiturates is not similar. In a direct comparison of three clinically used barbiturates, methohexital and thiopental, but not pentobarbital, reduced injury in an animal model of focal ischemia.[273] These data suggest that mechanisms other than or at least in addition to metabolic suppression may contribute to the protective effect of barbiturates.

Volatile anesthetics. Isoflurane is also a potent suppressant of CMR in the cerebral cortex, and EEG evidence suggestive of a protective effect in humans has been reported.[232] In comparison with the awake or N_2O-fentanyl–anesthetized state, isoflurane is neuroprotective in models of hemispheric,[274] focal,[275] and nearly complete ischemia.[276,277] Of substantial clinical relevance is the observation in a preclinical investigation that isoflurane's neuroprotective efficacy is not sustained.[278] When injury was evaluated 2 days after ischemia, a robust reduction in injury was observed with isoflurane anesthesia. However, by 14 days, this reduction in injury was no longer apparent. These data indicate that neuronal injury continues well into the postischemic recovery period and that the neuroprotective benefit that is evident shortly after ischemia may not persist for the long term. More recent data have shown that isoflurane treatment can improve neuronal survival when the severity of ischemia is limited and the restoration of blood flow after ischemia is complete.[279] The neuroprotective effect of isoflurane is not substantially different from that of other volatile anesthetics. Sevoflurane reduces ischemic injury in animal models of focal[280] and hemispheric ischemia;[281] its efficacy is not different from that of halothane. Desflurane also reduces neuronal injury to the same extent that isoflurane does.[282] The available data therefore suggest that adequate anesthesia, *per se*, may have a protective effect[261,262] versus the awake state, but there does not appear to be any difference in neuroprotective efficacy among the volatile anesthetics.

Xenon. The inert gas xenon exerts its anesthetic action by noncompetitive blockade of NMDAR. As such, it is logical to suspect that it might provide neuroprotection against excitotoxic injury. The neuroprotective efficacy of xenon has been demonstrated against focal ischemia in vivo in mice,[283] and cardiopulmonary bypass–induced cognitive dysfunction in rats.[284] Of interest are observations that simultaneous administration of *subanesthetic* doses of xenon in combination with either hypothermia or isoflurane[285] significantly reduces neuronal injury and improves neurologic function in experimental models; this protective effect was apparent as late as 30 days after injury in a model of neonatal asphyxia. Note should be made, however, that long-term neuroprotection with xenon has not yet been demonstrated in experimental adult subjects. Currently, data are not available to support the specific use of xenon for the purpose of neuroprotection in humans.

Propofol. EEG suppression can also be achieved with clinically feasible doses of propofol. One case series and informal colleague communications indicate that it is being used to provide *protection* during both aneurysm surgery[286] and carotid endarterectomy (CEA). Cerebral infarction was significantly reduced in propofol-anesthetized animals in comparison with awake animals.[287] Direct comparison of propofol to pentobarbital has also demonstrated that cerebral injury after focal ischemia is similar in animals anesthetized with the two drugs.[288] Similar to the situation with volatile anesthetics, initial investigations revealed that propofol protection is not sustained.[289]

Etomidate. Etomidate was proposed as a potential protective anesthetic in the setting of aneurysm surgery.[290] It also produces CMR suppression to an extent equivalent to barbiturates, and similar to the barbiturates, etomidate is an agonist at the (inhibitory) $GABA_A$ receptor. Nonetheless, in an experimental model of focal ischemia, the volume of injury was not reduced by etomidate relative to a 1.2 MAC halothane-anesthetized control group. In fact, the volume of injury with etomidate was significantly larger than that in the control group. In patients subjected to temporary intracranial vessel occlusion, the administration of etomidate results in greater tissue hypoxia and acidosis than equivalent desflurane anesthesia. The aggravation of injury produced by etomidate (an imidazole) may be related to direct binding of NO as a consequence of etomidate-induced hemolysis[291] combined with direct inhibition of the NO synthase enzyme by etomidate. Therefore, no scientific studies support the current use of etomidate for cerebral protection and, in fact, suggest that it may actually be deleterious in the setting of focal ischemia.

Calcium channel antagonists. Orally administering nimodipine (the intravenous preparation is not approved for clinical use in North America) for 21 days beginning as soon as possible after subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH) is now established clinical practice.[292] Other CCBs have reduced vasospasm after SAH but have not improved patient outcome, suggesting the benefit of nimodipine is a cellular rather than a vascular effect. However, by contrast with SAH, routinely administering nimodipine or any other CCB after neurologic stroke that has occurred in the surgical unit or in any other environment has not yet become standard practice. Despite favorable results in small trials, not all investigations of those who have sustained stroke have confirmed the benefits of nimodipine.[293] Although the administration of CCBs for the management of blood pressure is reasonable, their administration for the sole purpose of neuroprotection is not currently recommended.[241]

Other anesthetics. A remarkable number of anesthetics have shown neuroprotective efficacy in animal studies. However, to date, large-scale randomized trials of a variety of anesthetics in patients with stroke have not demonstrated neuroprotection for any drug. With the exception of tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) for thrombolysis, mechanical thrombectomy, and the CCBs nimodipine and nicardipine for the management of SAH, pharmacologic neuroprotective agents are not available for the treatment of patients with cerebral ischemia. Details about drugs that have undergone clinical trials and those that are currently being investigated in humans can be found at the Stroke Trials Registry (www.strokecenter.org/trials/clinicalstudies) of Washington University in St. Louis.

Cerebral Ischemia: Influence of Physiologic Variables

Cerebral perfusion pressure. Measures designed to augment CBF (an important determinant of energy supply) are also important. In the *ischemic penumbra* (described in the section "Critical Cerebral Blood Flow Thresholds"), small improvements in CBF have the potential to prolong neuronal survival substantially. Maintenance of high-normal CPP can augment collateral perfusion pressure and maintain CBF[294] and has been shown to result in improvement in neurologic function.[295] By contrast, hypotension can reduce CBF and exacerbate injury. In trials of nimodipine in patients with acute stroke, a reduction in blood pressure of 10% to 20% increased the probability of an adverse outcome (either death or dependency) fourfold,[296] thus emphasizing the adverse impact of blood pressure reduction on an injured brain. Therefore, in patients with cerebral ischemia, hypotension should be promptly treated and normotension restored. Although the target MAP should obviously be based on knowledge of a patient's preexisting blood pressure, data to provide specific guidelines are insufficient in humans.[241] In the majority of patients, maintenance of the MAP in the 70 to 80 mm Hg range should be adequate. The available data provide support for reducing blood pressure to less than 180/105 mm Hg in patients with stroke who have been treated with thrombolytic agents in the hope of reducing the incidence of hemorrhage into the ischemic brain.[241] In addition, blood pressure augmentation (after ensuring euvolemia) to a systolic pressure of approximately 180 mm Hg in patients with SAH-induced vasospasm[297] and to a CPP of 60 to 70 mm Hg in patients with traumatic brain injury[298] is reasonable.

Carbon dioxide tension. Hypercapnia has the potential to cause intracerebral steal and may worsen intracellular pH. Despite some support for the occurrence of a favorable so-called Robin Hood or inverse steal, hypocapnia has not generally proved effective in either laboratory or clinical settings. Pending further information and in the absence of a means of verifying the perfusion response to the manipulation of $\mathrm{Pa{CO_2}}$, normocapnia remains standard practice.[298]

Temperature. Hypothermia is the principal cerebral protective technique for circulatory arrest procedures. It unequivocally enhances cerebral tolerance for episodes of ischemia. For deep hypothermia, this effect is largely a function of the reduction in the CMR. Although barbiturates reduce only the component of the CMR associated with electrophysiologic work (approximately 60% of the $\mathrm{CMRO_2}$ in the awake state), hypothermia causes a reduction in both electrophysiologic energy consumption and energy utilization related to the maintenance of cellular integrity; mild hypothermia may preferentially suppress the latter.[299] A substantial number of laboratory studies have demonstrated that mild degree of hypothermia (2°C-4°C) during an episode of ischemia can confer substantial protection as histologically measured.[269,270] In addition, hypothermia initiated in the immediate postischemic period confers a protective benefit.[300]

In light of this dramatic protective effect of mild hypothermia in the laboratory, its use in the surgical setting has been advocated. Proponents of its use argue that hypothermia is readily achieved and not accompanied by significant myocardial depression or arrhythmias. In addition, the patient can be easily rewarmed in the surgical unit after the risk of ischemia has subsided. Results of a pilot study clearly demonstrated a trend toward improved neurologic outcome in hypothermic patients undergoing intracranial aneurysm clipping.[301] Unfortunately, the subsequent definitive Intraoperative Hypothermia for Aneurysm Surgery Trial (IHAST) did not demonstrate any improvement in outcome that could be attributable to hypothermia.[302] However, the majority of the patients in that study had SAH of grades I, II, and III. In addition, the number of patients who had temporary clips applied in excess of 20 minutes was quite small (five to six patients). Consequently, an argument has been advanced that mild hypothermia may be of benefit in patients with high-grade aneurysms or in those in whom the complexity of the aneurysm clipping is such that prolonged temporary clipping may be required. Considering that temperature reduction takes time, the decision to induce hypothermia must be made in advance. It is therefore our view that the therapeutic use of hypothermia may be considered in such high-risk patients.[297]

The application of mild hypothermia after head injury reduced ICP[303] and improved neurologic outcome[304] in pilot trials. Complications attributable to hypothermia were not observed. Two subsequent multicenter trials of hypothermia in patients with head injuries, however, failed to confirm the findings of the pilot studies.[305,306] Induction of mild hypothermia did not improve long-term neurologic outcome.

A number of clinical trials of induced hypothermia in a limited number of patients with stroke have been conducted. To date, these trials have demonstrated the feasibility of inducing hypothermia in the range of 33°C to 35°C, even in patients who are not subjected to endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation.[307] Hypothermia was associated with improved ICP and CPP. However, complications, particularly thrombocytopenia, bradycardia, ventricular ectopy, hypotension, and infection, are frequent. In addition, an intractable increase in ICP can occur during rewarming, even if the elevation in temperature is gradual and accomplished over a period of several hours. These side effects attest to the need to conduct randomized trials to evaluate properly the efficacy of mild hypothermia in patients with stroke. At the current time, however, hypothermia for purposes of neuroprotection in the setting of acute ischemic stroke is not recommended.[241]

Data regarding the application of mild hypothermia in survivors of cardiac arrest are more positive. Two recent trials have demonstrated that the induction of hypothermia (32°C-34°C) after successful resuscitation from cardiac arrest resulted in a significantly better neurologic outcome 6 months after the arrest.[258,308] These studies demonstrate the clinical efficacy of hypothermia for the purposes of reducing ischemic cerebral injury and provide indirect support for the use of intraoperative hypothermia in patients who are considered to be at high risk.

By contrast, increases in brain temperature during and after ischemia aggravate injury dramatically.[309] An increase of as little as 1°C can increase injury. Ischemia that normally results in scattered neuronal necrosis produces cerebral infarction when body temperature is elevated. Therefore, avoiding hyperthermia in patients who have suffered an ischemic insult or in those who are at risk for cerebral ischemia seems prudent. In the surgical setting, hyperthermia is seldom a problem. In patients at risk of ischemic cerebral injury, treatment of hyperthermia with antipyretics is currently recommended.[241]

Glucose. Withholding glucose-containing solutions in situations during which cerebral ischemia may occur is now an established practice. The practice is based on numerous demonstrations in animal models of brain and spinal cord ischemia that elevation of plasma glucose before episodes of either complete or incomplete ischemia results in the aggravation of neurologic injury. However, the majority of investigations involved adult animals and that certainty concerning the adverse effects of hyperglycemia in immature subjects, such as neonates, is less.[310] Furthermore, only some[311,312] and not all[313] of the investigations in humans have provided confirmation of an independent effect of serum glucose on neurologic outcome. Nonetheless, in long-term outcome studies, diabetic and nondiabetic hyperglycemia has been shown to be an independent predictor of poor outcome.[312] In the National Institutes of Health–sponsored recombinant tPA stroke trial, hyperglycemia was associated with significantly lower odds for desirable clinical outcomes and a higher incidence of intracranial hemorrhage.[314] These data prompted a randomized clinical trial of the efficacy of insulin administration to patients with acute stroke. The results showed that the administration of insulin to control blood glucose levels in patients with stroke did not improve outcome 3 months after stroke.[315] A recurrent theme in the discussion of these studies is that glucose elevation may be the *result* of the stress associated with a severe insult, either ischemic or traumatic, rather than its *cause.* In addition, the inevitable questions of whether and how quickly immediate pretreatment of an elevated plasma glucose level with insulin reduces risk to normoglycemic levels have not been thoroughly examined. Based on the lack of the benefit of restoration of glucose within the normal range (referred to as “tight” control), the current recommendations, which call for the maintenance of blood glucose values in the 140 to 180 mg/dL range, represent reasonable clinical objectives.[241]

By contrast, hypoglycemia is also associated with cerebral injury. With a gradual reduction in blood glucose values to approximately 40 mg/dL, a shift in EEG frequencies occurs from alpha and beta toward delta and theta.[316] Below a blood glucose level of 20 mg/dL, suppression of the EEG (flat) is observed. Persistence of this level of hypoglycemia results in seizure activity and neuronal injury, particularly to the hippocampus.

Seizures. Seizures cause dramatic increases in CMR and CBF. Sustained seizure activity can significantly augment injury in the damaged brain. Accordingly, seizures should be promptly treated with appropriate antiepileptics in the setting of acute stroke (see the section “Coma and Epilepsy” later in the chapter).[241]

Intravascular volume and hematocrit manipulation. Hemodilution has not proved effective in studies of human stroke. Although hemodilution was often instituted in patients with ischemia associated with vasospasm in SAH with the goal of increasing CBF, current practice is focused more on the maintenance of euvolemia and induction of modest increases in blood pressure rather than on hemodilution. In addition, the data do not currently justify routine hemodilution (a hematocrit of 30%-35% is the theoretic optimum) in patients in whom focal ischemia *might* occur in the surgical unit.[317] An increased hematocrit, because of viscosity effects, reduces CBF.[14] In anticipation of a procedure wherein incomplete ischemia might occur, such as CEA, preoperative phlebotomy should be considered when hematocrit is in excess of 55%.

Hyperoxia. Hypoxia has repeatedly been shown to adversely affect outcome in patients with brain injury from a variety of causes. In an attempt to prevent hypoxia, administration of supplemental oxygen often leads to relative hyperoxia, with $\text{Pa}O_2$ well in excess of normal values. Hyperoxia is associated with vasoconstriction and reduction in microvascular tissue flow, generation of reactive oxygen species, and augmentation of inflammation.[318] This has led to concerns about the potential adverse effects of excess oxygen in the injured brain.[319]

In patients who had sustained cardiac arrest and who were admitted to an intensive care unit after successful recovery of circulation, hyperoxia increased mortality.[320] The threshold $\text{Pa}O_2$ that leads to this increase in mortality is greater than 300 mm Hg; $\text{Pa}O_2$ in the range of 100 to 300 mm Hg was not associated with increased mortality.[321] By contrast, no adverse effect of hyperoxia on long-term outcome (12 months) was apparent among survivors of cardiac arrest.[322] In the setting of head injury, endothelial and tissue edema can reduce diffusion of oxygen to neurons. Hyperoxia improves cerebral metabolism but only in regions of the brain wherein metabolism has been significantly reduced.[323] Other investigations, however, have shown either worse outcomes in hyperoxic patients,[324] especially in those in whom $\text{Pa}O_2$ was excessive (>487 mm Hg), or no effect on long-term outcome.[325] In acute stroke, oxygen administration by nasal cannula, oxygen mask, and endotracheal tube is not associated with adverse outcomes.[326] Similarly, supplemental oxygen administration to patients with SAH does not impact outcomes.[327]

With these conflicting data, it is difficult to draw firm conclusions that can inform clinical decisions. The available data do not allow for the determination of a target $\text{Pa}O_2$, and this is not surprising, given the heterogeneous nature of cerebral injury. Consequently, oxygen administration should be customized in each patient, with the goal being the aggressive treatment of hypoxemia and avoidance of hyperoxia (>300 mm Hg) in patients in whom oxygenation is within normal limits.

Summary of Anesthetics and Neuroprotection

In comparison to the awake or lightly sedated state, the vulnerability of the brain to ischemic injury is reduced under anesthesia. Volatile anesthetics, barbiturates, propofol, xenon, and ketamine reduce injury in experimental models and may reduce injury in comparison with a pure N_2O-narcotic anesthetic. However, direct comparison has not demonstrated the superiority of any one anesthetic (or combination of anesthetics) over another. Therefore, based on the available data, the use of a specific anesthetic or anesthetic regimen for the purpose of brain protection in the clinical setting cannot be recommended.

There is a paucity of information about anesthetic neuroprotection in humans and the lack of clinical trials is understandable, considering the low frequency of stroke and ischemic injury in the perioperative setting. There are, however, a few clinical investigations from which inferences about anesthetic neuroprotection can be made. In the aforementioned IHAST aneurysm trial, a subset of patients received supplemental doses of thiopental, etomidate, or propofol for the purpose of neuroprotection. The neurologic outcome in these patients was no different than those who did not receive these anesthetics.[328] In the general anesthesia versus local anesthesia trial,[329] patients undergoing CEA were randomized to receive either general anesthesia or local anesthesia; in the latter group, patients were lightly sedated but were arousable during surgery. The outcome between the two groups was not different, indicating that the general anesthetic state did not provide any protective benefit.[329] Finally, in a recent retrospective trial of thrombolysis for acute stroke, patients who were anesthetized had a worse outcome than those who were only mildly sedated. Although the worse outcome with general anesthesia was attributed to a lower CPP in that group,[330] the results do not provide evidence of anesthetic neuroprotection. In aggregate, these data suggest that supplemental drugs that produce burst suppression of the EEG do not provide protection in anesthetized patients and that the state of general anesthesia does not improve neurologic outcome measurability.

The neuroprotective efficacy of anesthetic drugs in experimental studies is achieved only by rigorous maintenance of physiologic homeostasis; in fact, the potential for exacerbation of cerebral injury, either traumatic or ischemic, with physiologic mismanagement is significantly greater than the modest protection afforded by pharmacologic drugs—these are important observations. Accordingly, with respect to brain protection, efforts should be focused on the maintenance of physiologic parameters (e.g., perfusion pressure, oxygenation, normocapnia, temperature management, control of hyperglycemia, seizure prophylaxis) within the appropriate ranges and less on pharmacologic or anesthetic drugs to reduce cerebral injury.

Deferring Elective Procedures After Stroke

The risk of extension of cerebral infarction in the event of subsequent anesthesia and surgery has not been studied systematically. In patients who have suffered a stroke, CBF undergoes significant changes. Areas of both high and low CBF occur, and stabilization of regional CBF and CMR is apparent after approximately 2 weeks.[331] Loss of normal vasomotor responses (e.g., CO_2 responsiveness, autoregulation) in the early postinsult period is very common, and these changes persist beyond 2 weeks in a small percentage of patients with stroke. BBB abnormalities, as reflected by the accumulation of CT contrast material or brain scan isotopes, are still present 4 weeks after the insult,[332] and the histologic resolution of large infarcts is not complete for several months. Early CEA after stroke in patients with large strokes and neurologic disability was accompanied by an increased risk of intracerebral hemorrhage.[333] In a recent large cohort study, the occurrence of adverse cardiovascular events, including new stroke and myocardial infarction, was considerably greater in patients who underwent noncardiac surgery within 3 months of having a stroke; the complication rate stabilized 9 months after stroke.[334] Based on early experience with CEA, deferring CEA for at least 6 weeks after stroke is recommended.[333] A 6-week delay should give some assurance of the probable recovery of autoregulation, CO_2 responsiveness, and BBB integrity.

A delay in CEA after stroke, however, poses risks. In patients who have sustained a stroke, the incidence of a second stroke is approximately 12%.[335] The risk of a complete carotid occlusion is considerable with delayed surgery. In addition, early CEA can restore cerebral perfusion to the ischemic penumbra, possibly improving long-term functional recovery. However, the size and location of the infarction should be weighed. A small infarction in the silent cortex may offer wider latitudes than a large lesion that has resulted in a paresis that is still resolving. A small prospective study suggests that in patients with non-disabling stroke, early CEA can be performed safely within 2 weeks of the stroke.[336] Candidates for early CEA after stroke may include patients with relatively small cerebral infarctions, with complete or near complete resolution of neurologic symptoms, and those with ipsilateral carotid artery stenosis.[337] Delaying CEA in patients who have had large strokes with significant neurologic disability, reduced level of consciousness, and displaying a midline shift on the CT scan is generally preferable.

Outcome data to inform the decision about surgery for the patient after stroke, other than CEA, is lacking. With the extrapolation of the information from the CEA studies, pending other information, deferring elective surgery for at least 4 weeks after a cerebral vascular accident and preferably for 6 weeks from the point at which a stable postinsult neurologic state has been achieved seems reasonable.[334]

CHRONIC ARTERIAL HYPERTENSION

A recurrent concern is that of acceptable levels of arterial blood pressure reduction in patients who are chronically hypertensive. Firm guidelines have not been established. However, from the vantage of cerebral well-being, limiting elective MAP reduction 20% to 25% of resting mean levels seems appropriate for both hypertensive and normotensive patients. The same guidelines might apply in both populations, because in chronic hypertension, both the LLA and ULA are shifted to the right with apparently little distortion.[338]

The rationale for a limit of 20% to 25%% is as follows. MAP reductions of 50% in nonanesthetized patients, both normotensive and hypertensive, will commonly produce reversible symptoms of cerebral hypoperfusion.[338,339] Although even greater reductions will probably be tolerated provided that exposures are brief, the hematocrit is reasonable, and the cerebral vasculature is patent, the authors counsel against it. A reduction in the MAP of this magnitude will significantly increase the probability of CPP being close to or below the LLA, thereby reducing cerebrovascular reserve. It has been demonstrated that, on average, a 25% reduction in the MAP will bring both normotensive and hypertensive patients to the LLA.[338] As the reduction in the MAP exceeds 25% of baseline, CBF values will be below normal, albeit, in patients free of occlusive vascular disease, above the threshold for neurophysiologic dysfunction or injury (see Fig. 11.6). However, the physiologic reserve is being encroached upon, thereby leaving little margin for error or for other causes of impaired cerebral oxygen delivery such as low hematocrit or poor collateralization caused by congenital variation or unrecognized cerebrovascular disease.

In animals, treatment of chronic hypertension can restore the LLA to normal.[340, 341] A similar phenomenon has been observed in humans, although restoration was incomplete and had failed to occur after as long as 12 months of treatment in some patients.[338] It is an unexplored possibility that the extent of restoration of the LLA with antihypertensive therapy is agent dependent. Some may restore the LLA more effectively than others. In particular, ACE inhibitors have been shown to decrease the LLA acutely in both normotensive and hypertensive subjects.[342, 343]

Intracranial Hypertension

Control of intracranial hypertension is discussed in detail in Chapter 57.

BRAIN TUMORS

There are few data regarding the physiologic function of intracranial tumors. Measurement of CBF in cerebral tumors with laser Doppler technology revealed that tumors had lower CBF than the normal brain.[344] Autoregulation was occasionally apparent. Vascular responsiveness to changes in $\mathrm{PaO_2}$[345] and $\mathrm{PaCO_2}$[346] are generally preserved in patients with gliomas. Propofol reduces CBF in regions of the brain surrounding the tumor, and quantitatively, the reduction in CBF is similar to that in the contralateral normal hemisphere.[347] Measurement of regional CBF in the area of the tumor might also be a useful predictor of the grade of intracranial gliomas; both regional CBF and regional CBV are greater with high-grade gliomas.[348] Considerable edema is often associated with intracranial tumors, and the radiologic extent of the edema, which presumably represents the extent of abnormal vessel leakiness, correlates with the severity of the elevation in ICP that occurs in association with intubation-related hypertension.[349] Edema formation in the peritumoral region can be characterized as vasogenic with leakage of plasma proteins from the vascular space, hydrocephalic secondary to obstruction of CSF flow, or static as a result of venous obstruction by tumor.[350] Although the precise mechanisms by which edema formation occurs are not clear, the loss of integrity of the tight junctions of components of the BBB, an increased permeability induced by vascular endothelial growth factor expressed by tumors, and an increased expression of leukotriene C4 in peritumoral fluid probably play a role.[351] Osmotherapy with mannitol will effect a reduction in edema; however, with a permeable BBB, mannitol can diffuse into the peritumoral space and lead to rebound edema formation.[350] For acute reduction of ICP in the surgical unit, this concern is not significant. A reduction in osmotherapy-induced neuronal cell volume leads to the intraneuronal accumulation of “idiogenic” osmoles. The consequent increase in intraneuronal osmolarity leads to a reuptake of water into the cell in a compensatory attempt to restore cell volume. This process also contributes to the occurrence of rebound edema. The accumulation of idiogenic osmoles can be reduced significantly by loop diuretics such as bumetanide.[352] Dexamethasone remains the mainstay of treatment of tumor edema; it causes a reduction in edema formation with little effect on edema reabsorption. See Chapter 57 for a complete discussion.

COMA AND EPILEPSY

Regardless of its cause, coma reduces brain metabolism. In the case of lesions occurring in the reticular activating system, the reduction in the CMR probably represents a normal physiologic adjustment to reduced functional activity. During generalized seizure activity, CMR and CBF may increase dramatically.[187] The intensive motor and brain activity associated with generalized seizures leads to the development of systemic and cerebral acidosis, often accompanied by a reduction in arterial oxygenation, an increase in $\mathrm{PaCO_2}$, and peripheral lactic acidosis. If generalized seizure activity continues unabated, then arterial hypotension ensues. With muscular relaxation and measures ensuring adequate oxygenation and ventilation, the systemic acidosis and hypotension can be avoided and the severity of the cerebral acidosis diminished. During relatively brief episodes of continuous seizures, the brain seems able to meet the high metabolic demands.[204] However, even with effective ventilation and maintenance of perfusion pressure, when seizures continue for a prolonged period, they can lead to the development of irreversible neuronal damage.[353] Therapy aimed at interrupting the seizure and restoring a normal balance between cerebral metabolic demand and blood flow is indicated. Barbiturates, benzodiazepines, or other potent anticonvulsants are appropriate. Adequate ventilation, oxygenation, and maintenance of arterial blood pressure are important adjunctive measures. Muscle relaxants must be viewed as purely symptomatic therapy because they do not alter the abnormal cerebral electrical activity. There is, in addition, the concern that muscle paralysis may mask seizure activity, especially when the EEG is not monitored.

The potentially injurious nature of seizures justifies attention to prevention. Practices vary. However, any patient in whom a substantial cortical incision is planned is at risk, and prophylactic anticonvulsants in the perioperative setting should be considered.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Hartkamp MJ, et al. *Stroke*. 1999;30(12):2671.
2. Beards SC, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(7):627.
3. Benveniste H, et al. *Neuroscientist*. 2017. 1073858417691030.
4. Zhang N, et al. *Neurosci Biobehav Rev*. 2017;72:168.
5. Drummond JC. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(6):1431.
6. Attwell D, et al. *Nature*. 2010;468(7321):232.
7. Michenfelder JD. *Anesthesia and the Brain: Clinical, Functional, Metabolic, and Vascular Correlates*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1988.
8. Willie CK, et al. *J Physiol*. 2014;592(5):841.
9. Rickards CA. *Compr Physiol*. 2015;5(4):1585–1621.
10. Toda N, et al. *Can J Physiol Pharmacol*. 2009;87(8):581.
11. Hoiland RL, et al. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2016;310(5):R398.
12. Branston NM. *Cerebrovasc Brain Metab Rev*. 1995;7(4):338.
13. Gupta MM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(5):669.
14. Harrison MJ. *Cerebrovasc Brain Metab Rev*. 1989;1(1):55.
15. Cole DJ, et al. *J Neurol Sci*. 1994;124(1):15.
16. Brown CM, et al. *J Neurol Sci*. 2003;208(1-2):71.

17. Levine BD, et al. *Circulation*. 1994;90(1):298.
18. Ogawa Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(5):1389.
19. Ogoh S, et al. *J Physiol*. 2005;569(Pt 2):697.
20. van Lieshout JJ, et al. *Stroke*. 2001;32(7):1546.
21. Meng L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(5):1198.
22. Bombardieri AM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):226.
23. Meng L, Gelb AW. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(1):196.
24. Tan CO. *J Appl Physiol. 1985*. 2012;113(8):1194.
25. Nemoto EM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(6):1262.
26. Phillips AA, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2014;34(5):794.
27. Ogoh S, et al. *Clin Physiol Funct Imaging. November*. 2011;31(6):445.
28. Soeding PF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(2):229.
29. Meng L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(4):751.
30. Meng L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(2):209.
31. Nissen P, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2010;12(1):17.
32. Brassard P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(6):800.
33. Brassard P, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2010;108(6):1472.
34. Drummond JC. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(2):478.
35. Davie SN, Grocott HP. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(4):834.
36. Joseph M, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2003;53(5):1044.
37. Zornow MH, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1993;13(2):350.
38. Prielipp RC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(4):1052.
39. Drummond JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108(2):225.
40. Farag E, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2017;34(11):732.
41. Wang X, et al. *Brain Inj*. 2013;27(13-14):1617.
42. Artru AA, et al. *J Neurochem*. 1981;36(6):1941.
43. Madsen PL, et al. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1990;39(3):295.
44. Schroeder T, et al. *Neurol Res*. 1991;13(1):10.
45. Bandres J, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1992;4(4):250.
46. Prielipp RC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(1):45.
47. Schmidt J, et al. *Acta Neurochirurgica*. 1991;111:49.
48. Tzeng YC, MacRae BA. *J Appl Physiol. 1985*. 2013;114(7):888.
49. Ott S, et al. *Biomed Res Int*. 2014;2014:970741.
50. Abe K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76(6):1227.
51. Kawaguchi M, et al. *Stroke*. 1991;22(9):1170.
52. Lemkuil BP, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2016;28(4):337.
53. Capone C, et al. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2011;300(1):H397.
54. Kazama K, et al. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2003;285(5):H1890.
55. Estrup TM, et al. *J Renin Angiotensin Aldosterone Syst*. 2001;2(3):188.
56. Sigurdsson ST, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2014;34(3):467.
57. Nazir FS, et al. *Cerebrovasc Dis*. 2005;19(2):77.
58. Sare GM, et al. *J Hypertens*. 2008;26(6):1058.
59. Pakkenberg B, Gundersen HJ. *J Comp Neurol*. 1997;384(2):312.
60. Morrison JH, Baxter MG. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2012;13(4):240.
61. Aanerud J, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2012;32(7):1177.
62. Biagi L, et al. *J Magn Reson Imaging*. 2007;25(4):696.
63. Todd MM, Weeks J. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1996;8(4):296.
64. Lanier WL, Warner DO. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77(2):403.
65. Renou AM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50(10):1047.
66. Jobes DR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;47(1):16.
67. Vernhiet J, et al. *Ann Anesthesiol Fr*. 1977;18(10):803.
68. Stephan H, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 1991;40(3):153.
69. Paris A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(3):569.
70. Cotev S, Shalit MN. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43(1):117.
71. Forster A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56(6):453.
72. Pierce Jr EC, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1962;41:1664.
73. Takeshita H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;36(1):69.
74. Stephan H, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 1987;36(2):60.
75. Kofke WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(5):1229.
76. Zornow MH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70(6):624.
77. Langsjo JW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(2):258.
78. Michenfelder JD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41(3):231.
79. Astrup J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1984;28(5):478.
80. Gronert GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(2):110.
81. Sawada Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56(1):53.
82. Vandesteene A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43(Suppl):42.
83. Kaisti K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1358.
84. Kaisti KK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):603.
85. Alkire MT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(2):393.
86. Petersen KD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:329.
87. Fox J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77(3):453.
88. Craen RA, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1992;4:298.
89. Matta BF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(5):980.
90. Cold GE, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1985;29(5):490.
91. Kofke WA, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1994;6(2):89.
92. Bingham RM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57(9):843.
93. Modica PA, Tempelhoff R. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39(3):236.
94. Dearden NM, McDowall DG. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57(4):361.
95. Hoffman WE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(5):1188.
96. Levy ML, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1995;37(2):363.
97. Jobes DR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;42(1):30.
98. McPherson RW, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57(12):1232.
99. Schregel W, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 1992;41(1):21.
100. Mayberg TS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(2):288.
101. Herrick IA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(3):359.
102. From RP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(5):896.
103. Mayer N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(2):240.
104. Werner C, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1992;4:313.
105. Wagner K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:732.
106. Ostapkovich ND, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(2):358.
107. Lorenz IH, et al. *Neuroimage*. 2002;17(2):1056.
108. Kofke WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(1):167.
109. Forster A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(4):309.
110. Veselis RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(5):1106.
111. Forster A, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1983;3(2):246.
112. Wolf J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;34(8):628.
113. Knudsen L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67(3):277.
114. Chiolero RL, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1988;14(3):196.
115. Misfeldt BB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48(10):963.
116. Strebel S, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50(3):223.
117. Cavazzuti M, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1987;7(6):806.
118. Vollenweider FX, et al. *Eur Neuropsychopharmacol*. 1997;7(1):25.
119. Vollenweider FX, et al. *Eur Neuropsychopharmacol*. 1997;7(1):9.
120. Holcomb HH, et al. *Neuropsychopharmacology*. 2001;25(2):165.
121. Schmidt A, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47(5):569.
122. Zeiler FA, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2016;28(2):123.
123. Albanese J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(6):1328.
124. Mayberg TS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(1):84.
125. Sakai K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(2):377.
126. Lam AM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:A202.
127. Astrup J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(3):263.
128. Bedford RF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(6):435.
129. Michenfelder JD, Milde JH. *Stroke*. 1975;6:405.
130. Todd MM, Drummond JC. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60(4):276.
131. Lutz LJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(1):125.
132. Scheller MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68(4):548.
133. Maekawa T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(2):144.
134. Michenfelder JD, Cucchiara RF. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40(6):575.
135. Drummond JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(5):462.
136. Hansen TD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69(3):332.
137. Lenz C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(6):1480.
138. Drummond JC. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129(1):187.
139. Heath KJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(6):1284.
140. Todd MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:A332.
141. Mielck F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:155.
142. Sakabe T. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59(6):532.
143. Mielck F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:364.
144. Johnson J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:S214.
145. Ornstein E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79(3):498.
146. Kuroda Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(3):527.
147. Sanders RD, Maze M. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;18(4):405.
148. Franks NP, et al. *Nature*. 1998;396(6709):324.
149. Gruss M, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2004;65(2):443.
150. Laitio RM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(6):1128.
151. Rex S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(5):936.
152. Schmidt M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(10):960.
153. Schmidt M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(4):494.
154. Reinelt H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(3):475.
155. Fraga M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1085.
156. Milde LN, Milde JH. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68:S196.
157. Alkire MT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(3):549.
158. Maksimow A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60(9):862.
159. Reinstrup P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(2):359.
160. Eintrei C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(4):391.
161. Boarini DJ, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1984;15(3):400.
162. Warner DS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(3):243.
163. Albrecht RF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58(1):26.
164. Fleischer LH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:A167.
165. Madsen JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(3):332.
166. Drummond JC, Todd MM. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(3):268.

167. Gupta S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79:469.
168. Vavilala MS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(5):636.
169. Lu H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:854.
170. Adams RW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54(2):97.
171. Campkin TV, Flinn RM. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44(1):50.
172. Grosslight K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(5):533.
173. Scheller MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:507.
174. Field LM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70(2):154.
175. Eng C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77(5):872.
176. Henriksen HT, Jorgensen PB. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45(5):486.
177. Misfeldt BB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1974;46(11):853.
178. Wilson-Smith E, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47(3):307.
179. Lam AM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(3):462.
180. Strebel S, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39(5):653.
181. Algotsson L, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36(1):46.
182. Reinstrup P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(4):407.
183. Reinstrup P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(5):1079.
184. Drummond JC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(11):1083.
185. Schramm WM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(1):123.
186. Lanier WL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(6):589.
187. Tateishi A, et al. *Stroke*. 1989;20(8):1044.
188. Standaert FG. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(6):577.
189. Lanier WL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(2):392.
190. Stirt JA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(1):50.
191. Kovarik WD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(3):469.
192. Artru AA. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60(6):575.
193. Artru AA. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58(6):533.
194. Artru AA. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60(3):193.
195. Artru AA. *J Neurosurg*. 1984;60(2):252.
196. Artru AA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57(4):255.
197. Maktabi MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(1):72.
198. Artru AA. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1993;5(3):178.
199. Tetrault S, et al. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2008;28(7):1330.
200. Thal SC, et al. *PLoS One*. 2012;7(12):e50752.
201. Altay O, et al. *Stroke*. 2012;43(9):2513.
202. Modica PA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70(3):303.
203. Modica PA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70(4):433.
204. Kreisman NR, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1991;11(1):77.
205. Wollman H, et al. *Fed Proc*. 1967;28:356.
206. Flemming DC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;52(5):431.
207. Hymes JA. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64(3):367.
208. Harrison JL. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65(11):1235.
209. Kofke WA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71(5):653.
210. Komatsu H, et al. *Ann Acad Med Singapore*. 1994;23(suppl 6):130.
211. Kaisti K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1952;91(6):1999.
212. Hisada K, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2001;13:333.
213. Hilty CA, Drummond JC. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(5):1357.
214. Terasako K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(4):1239.
215. Todd MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61(5):495.
216. Bennett DR, et al. *Neurology*. 1973;23(5):449.
217. Steen PA, Michenfelder JD. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50(5):437.
218. Hirshman CA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56(6):464.
219. Ghoneim MM, Yamada T. *Anesth Analg*. 1977;56:479.
220. Laughlin TP, Newberg LA. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:80.
221. Ebrahim ZY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:1004.
222. Gancher S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:616.
223. Samra SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(4):843.
224. Rampton AJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70(3):412.
225. Drummond JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(4):652.
226. Firestone LL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82(6):1247.
227. Smith NT, et al. *J Clin Monit*. 1985;1(4):236.
228. Tempelhoff R, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;77(2):201.
229. Cascino GD, et al. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 1993;10(4):520.
230. Astrup J, et al. *Stroke*. 1977;8(1):51.
231. Hossmann KA. *Ann Neurol*. 1994;36(4):557.
232. Michenfelder JD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(3):336.
233. Sundt Jr TM, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1981;56(9):533.
234. Michenfelder JD, Sundt Jr TM. *Stroke*. 1971;2(4):319.
235. Michenfelder JD, Theye RA. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;33(4):430.
236. Siesjo BK. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;77:169.
237. Lipton P. *Physiol Rev*. 1999;79(4):1431.
238. Fiskum G, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1999;19(4):351.
239. Velier JJ, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1999;19(14):5932.
240. Kawaguchi M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(5):1335.
241. Powers WJ, et al. *Stroke*. 2018;49(3):e46–e110.
242. Nogueira RG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(1):11.
243. Albers GW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(8):708.
244. Dirnagl U, et al. *Trends Neurosci*. 1999;22(9):391.
245. Del Zoppo GJ. *Stroke*. 2013;44(1):263.
246. Dirnagl U. *Ann NY Acad Sci*. 2012;1268:21.
247. Heiss WD. *Ann NY Acad Sci*. 2012;1268:26.
248. Hossmann KA. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2012;32(7):1310.
249. van der Spuy WJ, et al. *Rev Neurosci*. 2012;23(3):269.
250. Kramer DR, et al. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2016;24:22.
251. Ma Y, et al. *Prog Neurobiol*. 2017;157:247.
252. Martin A, et al. *Ther Adv Neurol Disord*. 2018;11.1756286418774267.
253. Mayor D, Tymianski M. *Neuropharmacology*. 2018;134(Pt B):178.
254. Forsman M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68(4):436.
255. Roine RO, et al. *JAMA*. 1990;264(24):3171.
256. No authors listed. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324(18):1225.
257. Roberts BW, et al. *Circulation*. 2018;137(20):2114.
258. Hypothermia Group after Cardiac Arrest Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(8):549.
259. Shankaran S, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353(15):1574.
260. Shankaran S, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366(22):2085.
261. Hoffman WE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73(4):460.
262. Hoffman WE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76(2):279.
263. Smith AL, et al. *Stroke*. 1974;5(1):1.
264. Michenfelder JD, et al. *Arch Neurol*. 1976;33:345.
265. Nehls DG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:453.
266. Nussmeier NA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:165.
267. Shapiro HM. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:82.
268. Warner DS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:1475.
269. Busto R, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1987;7(6):729.
270. Sano T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(2):221.
271. Warner DS, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1991;11(5):794.
272. Drummond JC, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1995;37(4):742.
273. Cole DJ, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48(8):807.
274. Baughman VL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:192.
275. Soonthan-Brant V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:49.
276. Mackensen GB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(4):1102.
277. Nellgard B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(2):431.
278. Kawaguchi M, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2000;12:385.
279. Sakai H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(1):92.
280. Warner DS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:985.
281. Werner C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75(6):756.
282. Engelhard K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83(3).
283. Homi HM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(4):876.
284. Ma D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(3):690.
285. Ma D, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 2005;58(2):182.
286. Ravussin P, de Tribolet N. *Neurosurgery*. 1993;32(2):236. discussion 240.
287. Gelb AW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(5):1183.
288. Pittman JE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(5):1139.
289. Bayona NA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(5):1151.
290. Batjer HH, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;68:234.
291. Nebauer AE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69(1):58.
292. Pickard JD, et al. *BMJ*. 1989;298(6674):636.
293. No authors listed. *Lancet*. 1990;336(8725):1205.
294. Drummond JC, et al. *Stroke*. 1989;20(11):1538.
295. Young WL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:794.
296. Ahmed N, et al. *Stroke*. 2000;31(6):1250.
297. Connolly ES Jr, et al. *Stroke*. 2012;43(6):1711.
298. Carney N, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2017;80(1):6.
299. Nemoto EM, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1996;8(1):52.
300. Buchan A, Pulsinelli WA. *J Neurosci*. 1990;10(1):311.
301. Hindman BJ, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1999;44(1):23.
302. Todd MM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(2):135.
303. Shiozaki T, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1993;79:363.
304. Clifton GL, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 1993;10(3):263.
305. Clifton GL, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2011;10(2):131.
306. Clifton GL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344(8):556.
307. Kammersgaard LP, et al. *Stroke*. 2000;31(9):2251.
308. Bernard SA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(8):557.
309. Wass CT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(2):325.
310. Vannucci RC, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1996;16(5):1026.
311. Mullner M, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1997;17(4):430.
312. Weir CJ, et al. *BMJ*. 1997;314(7090):1303.
313. Matchar DB, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1992;117(6):449.
314. Bruno A, et al. *Neurology*. 2002;59(5):669.
315. Gray CS, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2007;6(5):397.
316. Auer RN. *Forensic Sci Int*. 2004;146(2-3):105.

317. Archer DP, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1994;6(1):51.
318. Dell'Anna AM, et al. *Crit Care*. 2014;18(5):555.
319. de Jonge E, et al. *Crit Care*. 2008;12(6):R156.
320. Kilgannon JH, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;303(21):2165.
321. Elmer J, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41(1):49.
322. Vaahersalo J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(6):1463.
323. Vilalta A, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2011;28(7):1139.
324. Davis DP, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2009;26(12):2217.
325. Brenner M, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2012;147(11):1042.
326. Roffe C, et al. *PLoS One*. 2011;6(5):e19113.
327. Lang M, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2016;78(4):540.
328. Hindman BJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(1):86.
329. Group GTC, et al. *Lancet*. 2008;372(9656):2132.
330. Davis MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(2):396.
331. Lenzi GL, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1982;2(3):321.
332. Olsen TS. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 1986;73(4):321.
333. Rockman CB, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2006;44(3):480.
334. Jorgensen ME, et al. Time elapsed after ischemic stroke and risk of adverse cardiovascular events and mortality following elective noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2014;312(3):269.
335. Rantner B, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2005;30(1):36.
336. Ballotta E, et al. *Surgery*. 2002;131(3):287.
337. Keldahl ML, Eskandari MK. *Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther*. 2010;8(10):1399.
338. Strandgaard S. *Circulation*. 1976;53(4):720.
339. Njemanze PC. *Stroke*. 1992;23(12):1743.
340. Vorstrup S, et al. *Stroke*. 1984;15(2):312.
341. Toyoda K, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1998;18(3):305.
342. Larsen FS, et al. *Stroke*. 1994;25(10):1985.
343. Waldemar G, et al. *J Hypertens*. 1989;7(3):229.
344. Arbit E, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1989;24(2):166.
345. Julien C, et al. *Br J Cancer*. 2004;91(2):374.
346. Packard SD, et al. *Neoplasia*. 2003;5(4):330.
347. Rasmussen M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(1):50.
348. Shin JH, et al. *AJR Am J Roentgenol*. 2002;179(3):783.
349. Bedford RF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61(5):430.
350. Kaal EC, Vecht CJ. *Curr Opin Oncol*. 2004;16(6):593.
351. Stummer W. *Neurosurg Focus*. 2007;22(5):E8.
352. McManus ML, Strange K. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(6):1132.
353. Wasterlain CG. *Epilepsia*. 1974;15(2):155.
354. Todd MM. *Adv Pharmacol*. 1994;31:595.
355. Todd MM, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1994;267(5 Pt 2):H2025.
356. Murphy FL, et al. *Abstracts Annual Meeting Am Soc Anesthesiol*. 1974;1974:62.
357. Werner C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(2):177.
358. Wollman H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1964;25:180.
359. Branston NM, et al. *Exp Neurol*. 1974;45(2):195.
360. Jones TH, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1981;54(6):773.

References

1. Hartkamp MJ, van Der Grond J, van Everdingen KJ, Hillen B, Mali WP. Circle of Willis collateral flow investigated by magnetic resonance angiography. *Stroke*. 1999;30(12):2671–2678.
2. Beards SC, Yule S, Kassner A, Jackson A. Anatomical variation of cerebral venous drainage: the theoretical effect on jugular bulb blood samples. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(7):627–633.
3. Benveniste H, Lee H, Volkow ND. The glymphatic pathway. *Neuroscientist*. 2017. 1073858417691030.
4. Zhang N, Gordon ML, Goldberg TE. Cerebral blood flow measured by arterial spin labeling MRI at resting state in normal aging and Alzheimer's disease. *Neurosci Biobehav Rev*. 2017;72:168–175.
5. Drummond JC. The lower limit of autoregulation: time to revise our thinking? *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(6):1431–1433.
6. Attwell D, Buchan AM, Charpak S, Lauritzen M, Macvicar BA, Newman EA. Glial and neuronal control of brain blood flow. *Nature*. 2010;468(7321):232–243.
7. Michenfelder JD. *Anesthesia and the Brain: Clinical, Functional, Metabolic, and Vascular Correlates*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1988.
8. Willie CK, Tzeng YC, Fisher JA, Ainslie PN. Integrative regulation of human brain blood flow. *J Physiol*. 2014;592(5):841–859.
9. Rickards CA. Cerebral blood-flow regulation during hemorrhage. *Compr Physiol*. 2015;5(4):1585–1621.
10. Toda N, Ayajiki K, Okamura T. Cerebral blood flow regulation by nitric oxide in neurological disorders. *Can J Physiol Pharmacol*. 2009;87(8):581–594.
11. Hoiland RL, Bain AR, Rieger MG, Bailey DM, Ainslie PN. Hypoxemia, oxygen content, and the regulation of cerebral blood flow. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2016;310(5):R398–R413.
12. Branston NM. Neurogenic control of the cerebral circulation. *Cerebrovasc Brain Metab Rev*. 1995;7(4):338–349.
13. Gupta MM, Bithal PK, Dash HH, Chaturvedi A, Mahajan RP. Effects of stellate ganglion block on cerebral haemodynamics as assessed by transcranial Doppler ultrasonography. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(5):669–673.
14. Harrison MJ. Influence of haematocrit in the cerebral circulation. *Cerebrovasc Brain Metab Rev*. 1989;1(1):55–67.
15. Cole DJ, Drummond JC, Patel PM, Marcantonio S. Effects of viscosity and oxygen content on cerebral blood flow in ischemic and normal rat brain. *J Neurol Sci*. 1994;124(1):15–20.
16. Brown CM, Dutsch M, Hecht MJ, Neundorfer B, Hilz MJ. Assessment of cerebrovascular and cardiovascular responses to lower body negative pressure as a test of cerebral autoregulation. *J Neurol Sci*. 2003;208(1-2):71–78.
17. Levine BD, Giller CA, Lane LD, Buckey JC, Blomqvist CG. Cerebral versus systemic hemodynamics during graded orthostatic stress in humans. *Circulation*. 1994;90(1):298–306.
18. Ogawa Y, Iwasaki K, Aoki K, Shibata S, Kato J, Ogawa S. Central hypervolemia with hemodilution impairs dynamic cerebral autoregulation. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(5):1389–1396. table of contents.
19. Ogoh S, Brothers RM, Barnes Q, et al. The effect of changes in cardiac output on middle cerebral artery mean blood velocity at rest and during exercise. *J Physiol*. 2005;569(Pt 2):697–704.
20. van Lieshout JJ, Pott F, Madsen PL, van Goudoever J, Secher NH. Muscle tensing during standing: effects on cerebral tissue oxygenation and cerebral artery blood velocity. *Stroke*. 2001;32(7):1546–1551.
21. Meng L, Hou W, Chui J, Han R, Gelb AW. Cardiac output and cerebral blood flow: the integrated regulation of brain perfusion in adult humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(5):1198–1208.
22. Bombardieri AM, Sharrock NE, Ma Y, Go G, Drummond JC. An observational study of cerebral blood flow velocity during hypotensive epidural anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):226–233.
23. Meng L, Gelb AW. Regulation of cerebral autoregulation by carbon dioxide. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(1):196–205.
24. Tan CO. Defining the characteristic relationship between arterial pressure and cerebral flow. *J Appl Physiol*. 2012;113(8):1194–1200.
25. Nemoto EM, Klementavicius R, Melick JA, Yonas H. Norepinephrine activation of basal cerebral metabolic rate for oxygen (CMRO2) during hypothermia in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(6):1262–1267.
26. Phillips AA, Warburton DE, Ainslie PN, Krassioukov AV. Regional neurovascular coupling and cognitive performance in those with low blood pressure secondary to high-level spinal cord injury: improved by alpha-1 agonist midodrine hydrochloride. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2014;34(5):794–801.
27. Ogoh S, Sato K, Fisher JP, Seifert T, Overgaard M, Secher NH. The effect of phenylephrine on arterial and venous cerebral blood flow in healthy subjects. *Clin Physiol Funct Imaging*. 2011;31(6):445–451.
28. Soeding PF, Hoy S, Hoy G, Evans M, Royse CF. Effect of phenylephrine on the haemodynamic state and cerebral oxygen saturation during anaesthesia in the upright position. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(2):229–234.
29. Meng L, Tran NP, Alexander BS, et al. The impact of phenylephrine, ephedrine, and increased preload on third-generation Vigileo-FloTrac and esophageal Doppler cardiac output measurements. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(4):751–757.
30. Meng L, Cannesson M, Alexander BS, et al. Effect of phenylephrine and ephedrine bolus treatment on cerebral oxygenation in anaesthetized patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(2):209–217.
31. Nissen P, Brassard P, Jorgensen TB, Secher NH. Phenylephrine but not ephedrine reduces frontal lobe oxygenation following anesthesia-induced hypotension. *Neurocrit Care*. 2010;12(1):17–23.
32. Brassard P, Seifert T, Secher NH. Is cerebral oxygenation negatively affected by infusion of norepinephrine in healthy subjects? *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(6):800–805.
33. Brassard P, Seifert T, Wissenberg M, Jensen PM, Hansen CK, Secher NH. Phenylephrine decreases frontal lobe oxygenation at rest but not during moderately intense exercise. *J Appl Physiol*. 2010;108(6):1472–1478.
34. Drummond JC. Cerebral blood flow and the alpha-1 agonist bogeyman. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(2):478–479. author reply 479.
35. Davie SN, Grocott HP. Impact of extracranial contamination on regional cerebral oxygen saturation: a comparison of three cerebral oximetry technologies. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(4):834–840.
36. Joseph M, Ziadi S, Nates J, Dannenbaum M, Malkoff M. Increases in cardiac output can reverse flow deficits from vasospasm independent of blood pressure: a study using xenon computed tomographic measurement of cerebral blood flow. *Neurosurgery*. 2003;53(5):1044–1051. discussion 1051-1042.
37. Zornow MH, Maze M, Dyck JB, Shafer SL. Dexmedetomidine decreases cerebral blood flow velocity in humans. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1993;13(2):350–353.
38. Prielipp RC, Wall MH, Tobin JR, et al. Dexmedetomidine-induced sedation in volunteers decreases regional and global cerebral blood flow. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(4):1052–1059. table of contents.
39. Drummond JC, Dao AV, Roth DM, et al. Effect of dexmedetomidine on cerebral blood flow velocity, cerebral metabolic rate, and carbon dioxide response in normal humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108(2):225–232.
40. Farag E, Kot M, Podolyak A, et al. The relative effects of dexmedetomidine and propofol on cerebral blood flow velocity and regional brain oxygenation: a randomised noninferiority trial. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2017;34(11):732–739.
41. Wang X, Ji J, Fen L, Wang A. Effects of dexmedetomidine on cerebral blood flow in critically ill patients with or without traumatic brain injury: a prospective controlled trial. *Brain Inj*. 2013;27(13-14):1617–1622.
42. Artru AA, Nugent M, Michenfelder JD. Anesthetics affect the cerebral metabolic response to circulatory catecholamines. *J Neurochem*. 1981;36(6):1941–1946.
43. Madsen PL, Vorstrup S, Schmidt JF, Paulson OB. Effect of acute and prolonged treatment with propranolol on cerebral blood flow and cerebral oxygen metabolism in healthy volunteers. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1990;39(3):295–297.
44. Schroeder T, Schierbeck J, Howardy P, Knudsen L, Skafte-Holm P, Gefke K. Effect of labetalol on cerebral blood flow and middle cerebral arterial flow velocity in healthy volunteers. *Neurol Res*. 1991;13(1):10–12.
45. Bandres J, Yao L, Nemoto EM, Yonas H, Darby J. Effects of dobutamine and dopamine on whole brain blood flow and metabolism in unanesthetized monkeys. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1992;4(4):250–256.
46. Prielipp RC, Wall MH, Groban L, et al. Reduced regional and global cerebral blood flow during fenoldopam-induced hypotension in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(1):45–52.
47. Schmidt J, Waldemar G, Paulson O. The acute effect of nimodipine on cerebral blood flow, its CO2 reactivity, and cerebral oxygen metabolism in human volunteers. *Acta Neurochirurgica*. 1991;111:49–53.
48. Tzeng YC, MacRae BA. Interindividual relationships between blood pressure and cerebral blood flow variability with intact and blunted cerebrovascular control. *J Appl Physiol*. 2013;114(7):888–895.

49. Ott S, Jedlicka S, Wolf S, et al. Continuous selective intra-arterial application of nimodipine in refractory cerebral vasospasm due to aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Biomed Res Int*. 2014;2014:970741.
50. Abe K, Iwanaga H, Shimada Y, Yoshiya I. The effect of nicardipine on carotid blood flow velocity, local cerebral blood flow, and carbon dioxide reactivity during cerebral aneurysm surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76(6):1227–1233.
51. Kawaguchi M, Furuya H, Kurehara K, Yamada M. Effects of nicardipine on cerebral vascular responses to hypocapnia and blood flow velocity in the middle cerebral artery. *Stroke*. 1991;22(9): 1170–1172.
52. Lemkuil BP, Gierl BT, Patel PM, et al. The effect of clevidipine on cerebral blood flow velocity and carbon dioxide reactivity in human volunteers. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2016;28(4):337–340.
53. Capone C, Faraco G, Park L, Cao X, Davisson RL, Iadecola C. The cerebrovascular dysfunction induced by slow pressor doses of angiotensin II precedes the development of hypertension. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2011;300(1):H397–H407.
54. Kazama K, Wang G, Frys K, Anrather J, Iadecola C. Angiotensin II attenuates functional hyperemia in the mouse somatosensory cortex. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2003;285(5):H1890–H1899.
55. Estrup TM, Paulson OB, Strandgaard S. No effect of angiotensin II AT(2)-receptor antagonist PD 123319 on cerebral blood flow autoregulation. *J Renin Angiotensin Aldosterone Syst*. 2001;2(3): 188–192.
56. Sigurdsson ST, Paulson OB, Hoj Nielsen A, Strandgaard S. Bradykinin antagonist counteracts the acute effect of both angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibition and of angiotensin receptor blockade on the lower limit of autoregulation of cerebral blood flow. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2014;34(3):467–471.
57. Nazir FS, Overell JR, Bolster A, Hilditch TE, Lees KR. Effect of perindopril on cerebral and renal perfusion on normotensives in mild early ischaemic stroke: a randomized controlled trial. *Cerebrovasc Dis*. 2005;19(2):77–83.
58. Sare GM, Gray LJ, Bath PM. Effect of antihypertensive agents on cerebral blood flow and flow velocity in acute ischaemic stroke: systematic review of controlled studies. *J Hypertens*. 2008;26(6): 1058–1064.
59. Pakkenberg B, Gundersen HJ. Neocortical neuron number in humans: effect of sex and age. *J Comp Neurol*. 1997;384(2): 312–320.
60. Morrison JH, Baxter MG. The ageing cortical synapse: hallmarks and implications for cognitive decline. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2012;13(4):240–250.
61. Aanerud J, Borghammer P, Chakravarty MM, et al. Brain energy metabolism and blood flow differences in healthy aging. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2012;32(7):1177–1187.
62. Biagi L, Abbruzzese A, Bianchi MC, Alsop DC, Del Guerra A, Tosetti M. Age dependence of cerebral perfusion assessed by magnetic resonance continuous arterial spin labeling. *J Magn Reson Imaging*. 2007;25(4):696–702.
63. Todd MM, Weeks J. Comparative effects of propofol, pentobarbital, and isoflurane on cerebral blood flow and blood volume. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1996;8(4):296–303.
64. Lanier WL, Warner DO. Intracranial elastance versus intracranial compliance: terminology should agree with that of other disciplines. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77(2):403–404.
65. Renou AM, Vernhiet J, Macrez P, et al. Cerebral blood flow and metabolism during etomidate anaesthesia in man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50(10):1047–1051.
66. Jobes DR, Kennell EM, Bush GL, et al. Cerebral blood flow and metabolism during morphine—nitrous oxide anesthesia in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;47(1):16–18.
67. Vernhiet J, Macrez P, Renou AM, Constant P, Billerey J, Caille JM. Effects of high doses of morphinomimetics (fentanyl and fentathienyl) on the cerebral circulation in normal subjects. *Ann Anesthesiol Fr*. 1977;18(10):803–810.
68. Stephan H, Groger P, Weyland A, Hoeft A, Sonntag H. The effect of sufentanil on cerebral blood flow, cerebral metabolism and the CO2 reactivity of the cerebral vessels in man. *Anaesthesist*. 1991;40(3):153–160.
69. Paris A, Scholz J, von Knobelsdorff G, Tonner PH, Schulte am Esch J. The effect of remifentanil on cerebral blood flow velocity. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(3):569–573.
70. Cotev S, Shalit MN. Effects on diazepam on cerebral blood flow and oxygen uptake after head injury. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43(1): 117–122.
71. Forster A, Juge O, Morel D. Effects of midazolam on cerebral blood flow in human volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56(6):453–455.
72. Pierce EC Jr, Lambertsen CJ, Deutsch S, et al. Cerebral circulation and metabolism during thiopental anesthesia and hyper-ventilation in man. *J Clin Invest*. 1962;41:1664–1671.
73. Takeshita H, Okuda Y, Sari A. The effects of ketamine on cerebral circulation and metabolism in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;36(1): 69–75.
74. Stephan H, Sonntag H, Schenk HD, Kohlhausen S. Effect of Disoprivan (propofol) on the circulation and oxygen consumption of the brain and CO2 reactivity of brain vessels in the human. *Anaesthesist*. 1987;36(2):60–65.
75. Kofke WA, Attaallah AF, Kuwabara H, et al. The neuropathologic effects in rats and neurometabolic effects in humans of large-dose remifentanil. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(5):1229–1236. table of contents.
76. Zornow MH, Fleischer JE, Scheller MS, Nakakimura K, Drummond JC. Dexmedetomidine, an alpha 2-adrenergic agonist, decreases cerebral blood flow in the isoflurane-anesthetized dog. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70(6):624–630.
77. Langsjo JW, Maksimow A, Salmi E, et al. S-ketamine anesthesia increases cerebral blood flow in excess of the metabolic needs in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(2):258–268.
78. Michenfelder JD. The interdependency of cerebral functional and metabolic effects following massive doses of thiopental in the dog. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41(3):231–236.
79. Astrup J, Rosenorn J, Cold GE, Bendtsen A, Moller Sorensen P. Minimum cerebral blood flow and metabolism during craniotomy. Effect of thiopental loading. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1984;28(5):478–481.
80. Gronert GA, Michenfelder JD, Sharbrough FW, Milde JH. Canine cerebral metabolic tolerance during 24 hours deep pentobarbital anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(2):110–113.
81. Sawada Y, Sugimoto H, Kobayashi H, Ohashi N, Yoshioka T, Sugimoto T. Acute tolerance to high-dose barbiturate treatment in patients with severe head injuries. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56(1):53–54.
82. Vandesteene A, Trempont V, Engelman E, et al. Effect of propofol on cerebral blood flow and metabolism in man. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43(Suppl):42–43.
83. Kaisti KK, Metsahonkala L, Teras M, et al. Effects of surgical levels of propofol and sevoflurane anesthesia on cerebral blood flow in healthy subjects studied with positron emission tomography. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(6):1358–1370.
84. Kaisti KK, Langsjo JW, Aalto S, et al. Effects of sevoflurane, propofol, and adjunct nitrous oxide on regional cerebral blood flow, oxygen consumption, and blood volume in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):603–613.
85. Alkire MT, Haier RJ, Barker SJ, Shah NK, Wu JC, Kao YJ. Cerebral metabolism during propofol anesthesia in humans studied with positron emission tomography. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(2):393–403. discussion 327A.
86. Petersen KD, Landsfeldt U, Cold GE, et al. Intracranial pressure and cerebral hemodynamic in patients with cerebral tumors: a randomized prospective study of patients subjected to craniotomy in propofol-fentanyl, isoflurane-fentanyl, or sevoflurane-fentanyl anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(2):329–336.
87. Fox J, Gelb AW, Enns J, Murkin JM, Farrar JK, Manninen PH. The responsiveness of cerebral blood flow to changes in arterial carbon dioxide is maintained during propofol-nitrous oxide anesthesia in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77(3):453–456.
88. Craen RA, Gelb A, Murkin JM, Chong KY. Human cerebral autoregulation is maintained during propofol aire/O2 anesthesia [abstract]. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1992;4:298.
89. Matta BF, Mayberg TS, Lam AM. Direct cerebrovasodilatory effects of halothane, isoflurane, and desflurane during propofol-induced isoelectric electroencephalogram in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(5):980–985. ; discussion 927A.
90. Cold GE, Eskesen V, Eriksen H, Amtoft O, Madsen JB. CBF and CMRO2 during continuous etomidate infusion supplemented with N2O and fentanyl in patients with supratentorial cerebral tumour. A dose-response study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1985;29(5):490–494.
91. Kofke WA, Dong ML, Bloom M, Policare R, Janosky J, Sekhar L. Transcranial Doppler ultrasonography with induction of anesthesia for neurosurgery. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1994;6(2):89–97.

92. Bingham RM, Procaccio F, Prior PF, Hinds CJ. Cerebral electrical activity influences the effects of etomidate on cerebral perfusion pressure in traumatic coma. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57(9):843–848.
93. Modica PA, Tempelhoff R. Intracranial pressure during induction of anaesthesia and tracheal intubation with etomidate-induced EEG burst suppression. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39(3):236–241.
94. Dearden NM, McDowall DG. Comparison of etomidate and althesin in the reduction of increased intracranial pressure after head injury. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57(4):361–368.
95. Hoffman WE, Charbel FT, Edelman G, Misra M, Ausman JI. Comparison of the effect of etomidate and desflurane on brain tissue gases and pH during prolonged middle cerebral artery occlusion. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(5):1188–1194.
96. Levy ML, Aranda M, Zelman V, Giannotta SL. Propylene glycol toxicity following continuous etomidate infusion for the control of refractory cerebral edema. *Neurosurgery*. 1995;37(2):363–369. discussion 369-371.
97. Jobes DR, Kennell E, Bitner R, Swenson E, Wollman H. Effects of morphine-nitrous oxide anesthesia on cerebral autoregulation. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;42(1):30–34.
98. McPherson RW, Krempasanka E, Eimerl D, Traystman RJ. Effects of alfentanil on cerebral vascular reactivity in dogs. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57(12):1232–1238.
99. Schregel W, Schafermeyer H, Muller C, Geissler C, Bredenkotter U, Cunitz G. [The effect of halothane, alfentanil and propofol on blood flow velocity, blood vessel cross section and blood volume flow in the middle cerebral artery]. *Anaesthesist*. 1992;41(1):21–26.
100. Mayberg TS, Lam AM, Eng CC, Laohaprasit V, Winn HR. The effect of alfentanil on cerebral blood flow velocity and intracranial pressure during isoflurane-nitrous oxide anesthesia in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(2):288–294.
101. Herrick IA, Gelb AW, Manninen PH, Reichman H, Lownie S. Effects of fentanyl, sufentanil, and alfentanil on brain retractor pressure. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(3):359–363.
102. From RP, Warner DS, Todd MM, Sokoll MD. Anesthesia for craniotomy: a double-blind comparison of alfentanil, fentanyl, and sufentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(5):896–904.
103. Mayer N, Weinstabl C, Podreka I, Spiss CK. Sufentanil does not increase cerebral blood flow in healthy human volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(2):240–243.
104. Werner C, Kochs E, Bause H, Hoffman WE, Schulte am Esch J. Effects of sufentanil on cerebral hemodynamics and intracranial pressure in patients with brain injury. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(4):721–726.
105. Wagner KJ, Willoch F, Kochs EF, et al. Dose-dependent regional cerebral blood flow changes during remifentanil infusion in humans: a positron emission tomography study. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(5):732–739.
106. Ostapkovich ND, Baker KZ, Fogarty-Mack P, Sisti MB, Young WL. Cerebral blood flow and CO2 reactivity is similar during remifentanil/N2O and fentanyl/N2O anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(2):358–363.
107. Lorenz IH, Kolbitsch C, Hormann C, et al. The influence of nitrous oxide and remifentanil on cerebral hemodynamics in conscious human volunteers. *Neuroimage*. 2002;17(2):1056–1064.
108. Kofke WA, Blissitt PA, Rao H, Wang J, Addya K, Detre J. Remifentanil-induced cerebral blood flow effects in normal humans: dose and ApoE genotype. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(1):167–175.
109. Forster A, Juge O, Louis M, Nahory A. Effects of a specific benzodiazepine antagonist (RO 15-1788) on cerebral blood flow. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(4):309–313.
110. Veselis RA, Reinsel RA, Beattie BJ, et al. Midazolam changes cerebral blood flow in discrete brain regions: an H2(15)O positron emission tomography study. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(5):1106–1117.
111. Forster A, Juge O, Morel D. Effects of midazolam on cerebral hemodynamics and cerebral vasomotor responsiveness to carbon dioxide. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1983;3(2):246–249.
112. Wolf J, Friberg L, Jensen J, Hansen PB, Andersen AR, Lassen NA. The effect of the benzodiazepine antagonist flumazenil on regional cerebral blood flow in human volunteers. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34(8):628–631.
113. Knudsen L, Cold GE, Holdgard HO, Johansen UT, Jensen S. Effects of flumazenil on cerebral blood flow and oxygen consumption after midazolam anaesthesia for craniotomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67(3):277–280.
114. Chiolero RL, Ravussin P, Anderes JP, Ledermann P, de Tribolet N. The effects of midazolam reversal by RO 15-1788 on cerebral perfusion pressure in patients with severe head injury. *Intensive Care Med*. 1988;14(3):196–200.
115. Misfeldt BB, Jorgensen PB, Spotoft H, Ronde F. The effects of droperidol and fentanyl on intracranial pressure and cerebral perfusion pressure in neurosurgical patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48(10):963–968.
116. Strebel S, Kaufmann M, Maitre L, Schaefer HG. Effects of ketamine on cerebral blood flow velocity in humans. Influence of pretreatment with midazolam or esmolol. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50(3):223–228.
117. Cavazzuti M, Porro CA, Biral GP, Benassi C, Barbieri GC. Ketamine effects on local cerebral blood flow and metabolism in the rat. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1987;7(6):806–811.
118. Vollenweider FX, Leenders KL, Oye I, Hell D, Angst J. Differential psychopathology and patterns of cerebral glucose utilisation produced by (S)- and (R)-ketamine in healthy volunteers using positron emission tomography (PET). *Eur Neuropsychopharmacol*. 1997;7(1):25–38.
119. Vollenweider FX, Leenders KL, Scharfetter C, et al. Metabolic hyperfrontality and psychopathology in the ketamine model of psychosis using positron emission tomography (PET) and [18F]fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG). *Eur Neuropsychopharmacol*. 1997;7(1):9–24.
120. Holcomb HH, Lahti AC, Medoff DR, Weiler M, Tamminga CA. Sequential regional cerebral blood flow brain scans using PET with H2(15)O demonstrate ketamine actions in CNS dynamically. *Neuropsychopharmacology*. 2001;25(2):165–172.
121. Schmidt A, Ryding E, Akeson J. Racemic ketamine does not abolish cerebrovascular autoregulation in the pig. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47(5):569–575.
122. Zeiler FA, Sader N, Gillman LM, Teitelbaum J, West M, Kazina CJ. The cerebrovascular response to ketamine: a systematic review of the animal and human literature. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2016;28(2):123–140.
123. Albanese J, Arnaud S, Rey M, Thomachot L, Alliez B, Martin C. Ketamine decreases intracranial pressure and electroencephalographic activity in traumatic brain injury patients during propofol sedation. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(6):1328–1334.
124. Mayberg TS, Lam AM, Matta BF, Domino KB, Winn HR. Ketamine does not increase cerebral blood flow velocity or intracranial pressure during isoflurane/nitrous oxide anesthesia in patients undergoing craniotomy. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(1):84–89.
125. Sakai K, Cho S, Fukusaki M, Shibata O, Sumikawa K. The effects of propofol with and without ketamine on human cerebral blood flow velocity and CO(2) response. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(2):377–382.
126. Lam AM, Donlon E, Eng CC. The effect of lidocaine on cerebral blood flow and metabolism during normocapnia and hypocapnia in humans [abstract]. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:A202.
127. Astrup J, Sorensen PM, Sorensen HR. Inhibition of cerebral oxygen and glucose consumption in the dog by hypothermia, pentobarbital, and lidocaine. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(3):263–268.
128. Bedford RF, Persing JA, Pobereskin L, Butler A. Lidocaine or thiopental for rapid control of intracranial hypertension? *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(6):435–437.
129. Michenfelder JD, Milde JH. Influence of anesthetics on metabolic, functional and pathological responses to regional cerebral ischemia. *Stroke*. 1975;6(4):405–410.
130. Todd MM, Drummond JC. A comparison of the cerebrovascular and metabolic effects of halothane and isoflurane in the cat. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60(4):276–282.
131. Lutz LJ, Milde JH, Milde LN. The cerebral functional, metabolic, and hemodynamic effects of desflurane in dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(1):125–131.
132. Scheller MS, Tateishi A, Drummond JC, Zornow MH. The effects of sevoflurane on cerebral blood flow, cerebral metabolic rate for oxygen, intracranial pressure, and the electroencephalogram are similar to those of isoflurane in the rabbit. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68(4):548–551.
133. Maekawa T, Tommasino C, Shapiro HM, Keifer-Goodman J, Kohlenberger RW. Local cerebral blood flow and glucose utilization during isoflurane anesthesia in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(2):144–151.
134. Michenfelder JD, Cucchiara RF. Canine cerebral oxygen consumption during enflurane anesthesia and its modification during induced seizures. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40(6):575–580.

135. Drummond JC, Todd MM, Scheller MS, Shapiro HM. A comparison of the direct cerebral vasodilating potencies of halothane and isoflurane in the New Zealand white rabbit. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(5):462–467.
136. Hansen TD, Warner DS, Todd MM, Vust LJ, Trawick DC. Distribution of cerebral blood flow during halothane versus isoflurane anesthesia in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69(3):332–337.
137. Lenz C, Rebel A, van Ackern K, Kuschinsky W, Waschke KF. Local cerebral blood flow, local cerebral glucose utilization, and flow-metabolism coupling during sevoflurane versus isoflurane anesthesia in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(6):1480–1488.
138. Drummond JC. Baseline cerebral metabolic rate is a critical determinant of the cerebral vasodilating potency of volatile anesthetic agents. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129(1):187–189.
139. Heath KJ, Gupta S, Matta BF. The effects of sevoflurane on cerebral hemodynamics during propofol anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(6):1284–1287.
140. Todd MM, Drummond JC, Shapiro HM. Comparative cerebrovascular and metabolic effects of halothane, enflurane and isoflurane [abstract]. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:A332.
141. Mielck F, Stephan H, Buhre W, Weyland A, Sonntag H. Effects of 1 MAC desflurane on cerebral metabolism, blood flow and carbon dioxide reactivity in humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81(2):155–160.
142. Sakabe T, Maekawa T, Fujii S, Ishikawa T, Tateishi A, Takeshita H. Cerebral circulation and metabolism during enflurane anesthesia in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59(6):532–536.
143. Mielck F, Stephan H, Weyland A, Sonntag H. Effects of one minimum alveolar anesthetic concentration sevoflurane on cerebral metabolism, blood flow, and CO2 reactivity in cardiac patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(2):364–369.
144. Johnson J, Sperry RJ, Lam AM, Artru AA. A phase III, randomized, open-label study to compare sevoflurane and isoflurane in neurosurgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80(supplj):S214.
145. Ornstein E, Young WL, Fleischer LH, Ostapkovich N. Desflurane and isoflurane have similar effects on cerebral blood flow in patients with intracranial mass lesions. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79(3):498–502.
146. Kuroda Y, Murakami M, Tsuruta J, Murakawa T, Sakabe T. Blood flow velocity of middle cerebral artery during prolonged anesthesia with halothane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(3):527–532.
147. Sanders RD, Maze M. Xenon: from stranger to guardian. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;18(4):405–411.
148. Franks NP, Dickinson R, de Sousa SL, Hall AC, Lieb WR. How does xenon produce anaesthesia? *Nature*. 1998;396(6709):324.
149. Gruss M, Bushell TJ, Bright DP, Lieb WR, Mathie A, Franks NP. Two-pore-domain K+ channels are a novel target for the anesthetic gases xenon, nitrous oxide, and cyclopropane. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2004;65(2):443–452.
150. Laitio RM, Kaisti KK, Laangsjo JW, et al. Effects of xenon anesthesia on cerebral blood flow in humans: a positron emission tomography study. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(6):1128–1133.
151. Rex S, Schaefer W, Meyer PH, et al. Positron emission tomography study of regional cerebral metabolism during general anesthesia with xenon in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(5):936–943.
152. Schmidt M, Marx T, Papp-Jambor C, Schirmer U, Reinelt H. Effect of xenon on cerebral autoregulation in pigs. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(10):960–966.
153. Schmidt M, Marx T, Armbruster S, Reinelt H, Schirmer U. Effect of xenon on elevated intracranial pressure as compared with nitrous oxide and total intravenous anesthesia in pigs. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(4):494–501.
154. Reinelt H, Schirmer U, Marx T, Topalidis P, Schmidt M. Diffusion of xenon and nitrous oxide into the bowel. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(3):475–477. discussion 476A.
155. Fraga M, Rama-Maceiras P, Rodino S, Aymerich H, Pose P, Belda J. The effects of isoflurane and desflurane on intracranial pressure, cerebral perfusion pressure, and cerebral arteriovenous oxygen content difference in normocapnic patients with supratentorial brain tumors. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(5):1085–1090.
156. Milde LN, Milde JH. Cerebral effects of sufentanil in dogs with reduced intracranial compliance. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68(suppl):S196.
157. Alkire MT, Haier RJ, Shah NK, Anderson CT. Positron emission tomography study of regional cerebral metabolism in humans during isoflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(3):549–557.
158. Maksimow A, Kaisti K, Aalto S, et al. Correlation of EEG spectral entropy with regional cerebral blood flow during sevoflurane and propofol anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60(9):862–869.
159. Reinstrup P, Ryding E, Algotsson L, Messeter K, Asgeirsson B, Uski T. Distribution of cerebral blood flow during anesthesia with isoflurane or halothane in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(2):359–366.
160. Eintrei C, Leszniewski W, Carlsson C. Local application of 133Xenon for measurement of regional cerebral blood flow (rCBF) during halothane, enflurane, and isoflurane anesthesia in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(4):391–394.
161. Boarini DJ, Kassell NF, Coester HC, Butler M, Sokoll MD. Comparison of systemic and cerebrovascular effects of isoflurane and halothane. *Neurosurgery*. 1984;15(3):400–409.
162. Warner DS, Boarini DJ, Kassell NF. Cerebrovascular adaptation to prolonged halothane anesthesia is not related to cerebrospinal fluid pH. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(3):243–248.
163. Albrecht RF, Miletich DJ, Madala LR. Normalization of cerebral blood flow during prolonged halothane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58(1):26–31.
164. Fleischer LH, Young WL, Ornstein E, Ostapkovich N. Cerebral blood flow in humans does not decline over time during isoflurane or desflurane anesthesia [abstract]. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:A167.
165. Madsen JB, Cold GE, Hansen ES, Bardrum B. The effect of isoflurane on cerebral blood flow and metabolism in humans during craniotomy for small supratentorial cerebral tumors. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(3):332–336.
166. Drummond JC, Todd MM. The response of the feline cerebral circulation to PaCO2 during anesthesia with isoflurane and halothane and during sedation with nitrous oxide. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(3):268–273.
167. Gupta S, Heath K, Matta BF. Effect of incremental doses of sevoflurane on cerebral pressure autoregulation in humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79(4):469–472.
168. Vavilala MS, Lee LA, Lee M, Graham A, Visco E, Lam AM. Cerebral autoregulation in children during sevoflurane anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(5):636–641.
169. Lu H, Werner C, Engelhard K, Scholz M, Kochs E. The effects of sevoflurane on cerebral blood flow autoregulation in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(4):854–858.
170. Adams RW, Cucchiara RF, Gronert GA, Messick JM, Michenfelder JD. Isoflurane and cerebrospinal fluid pressure in neurosurgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54(2):97–99.
171. Campkin TV, Flinn RM. Isoflurane and cerebrospinal fluid pressure—a study in neurosurgical patients undergoing intracranial shunt procedures. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44(1):50–54.
172. Grosslight K, Foster R, Colohan AR, Bedford RF. Isoflurane for neuroanesthesia: risk factors for increases in intracranial pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(5):533–536.
173. Scheller MS, Todd MM, Drummond JC, Zornow MH. The intracranial pressure effects of isoflurane and halothane administered following cryogenic brain injury in rabbits. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(4):507–512.
174. Field LM, Dorrance DE, Krzeminska EK, Barsoum LZ. Effect of nitrous oxide on cerebral blood flow in normal humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70(2):154–159.
175. Eng C, Lam AM, Mayberg TS, Lee C, Mathisen T. The influence of propofol with and without nitrous oxide on cerebral blood flow velocity and CO2 reactivity in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77(5):872–879.
176. Henriksen HT, Jorgensen PB. The effect of nitrous oxide on intracranial pressure in patients with intracranial disorders. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45(5):486–492.
177. Misfeldt BB, Jorgensen PB, Rishoj M. The effect of nitrous oxide and halothane upon the intracranial pressure in hypocapnic patients with intracranial disorders. *Br J Anaesth*. 1974;46(11):853–858.
178. Wilson-Smith E, Karsli C, Luginbuehl IA, Bissonnette B. The effect of nitrous oxide on cerebral blood flow velocity in children anesthetized with propofol. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47(3):307–311.
179. Lam AM, Mayberg TS, Eng CC, Cooper JO, Bachenberg KL, Mathisen TL. Nitrous oxide-isoflurane anesthesia causes more cerebral vasodilation than an equipotent dose of isoflurane in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(3):462–468.
180. Strebel S, Kaufmann M, Anselmi L, Schaefer HG. Nitrous oxide is a potent cerebrovasodilator in humans when added to isoflurane. A transcranial Doppler study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39(5):653–658.
181. Algotsson L, Messeter K, Rosen I, Holmin T. Effects of nitrous oxide on cerebral haemodynamics and metabolism during isoflurane anaesthesia in man. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36(1):46–52.

182. Reinstrup P, Ryding E, Algotsson L, Berntman L, Uski T. Regional cerebral blood flow (SPECT) during anaesthesia with isoflurane and nitrous oxide in humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(4):407–411.
183. Reinstrup P, Ryding E, Ohlsson T, Dahm PL, Uski T. Cerebral blood volume (CBV) in humans during normo- and hypocapnia: influence of nitrous oxide (N(2)O). *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(5):1079–1082.
184. Drummond JC, Scheller MS, Todd MM. The effect of nitrous oxide on cortical cerebral blood flow during anesthesia with halothane and isoflurane, with and without morphine, in the rabbit. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(11):1083–1089.
185. Schramm WM, Papousek A, Michalek-Sauberer A, Czech T, Illievich U. The cerebral and cardiovascular effects of cisatracurium and atracurium in neurosurgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(1):123–127.
186. Lanier WL, Milde JH, Michenfelder JD. The cerebral effects of pancuronium and atracurium in halothane-anesthetized dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(6):589–597.
187. Tateishi A, Fleischer JE, Drummond JC, et al. Nimodipine does not improve neurologic outcome after 14 minutes of cardiac arrest in cats. *Stroke*. 1989;20(8):1044–1050.
188. Standaert FG. Magic bullets, science, and medicine. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(6):577–578.
189. Lanier WL, Iaizzo PA, Milde JH, Sharbrough FW. The cerebral and systemic effects of movement in response to a noxious stimulus in lightly anesthetized dogs. Possible modulation of cerebral function by muscle afferents. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(2):392–401.
190. Stirt JA, Grosslight KR, Bedford RF, Vollmer D. "Defasciculation" with metocurine prevents succinylcholine-induced increases in intracranial pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(1):50–53.
191. Kovarik WD, Mayberg TS, Lam AM, Mathisen TL, Winn HR. Succinylcholine does not change intracranial pressure, cerebral blood flow velocity, or the electroencephalogram in patients with neurologic injury. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(3):469–473.
192. Artru AA. Relationship between cerebral blood volume and CSF pressure during anesthesia with isoflurane or fentanyl in dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60(6):575–579.
193. Artru AA. Relationship between cerebral blood volume and CSF pressure during anesthesia with halothane or enflurane in dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58(6):533–539.
194. Artru AA. Isoflurane does not increase the rate of CSF production in the dog. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60(3):193–197.
195. Artru AA. Effects of halothane and fentanyl anesthesia on resistance to reabsorption of CSF. *J Neurosurg*. 1984;60(2):252–256.
196. Artru AA, Nugent M, Michenfelder JD. Enflurane causes a prolonged and reversible increase in the rate of CSF production in the dog. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57(4):255–260.
197. Maktabi MA, Elbokl FF, Faraci FM, Todd MM. Halothane decreases the rate of production of cerebrospinal fluid. Possible role of vasopressin V1 receptors. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(1):72–82.
198. Artru AA. Rate of cerebrospinal fluid formation, resistance to reabsorption of cerebrospinal fluid, brain tissue water content, and electroencephalogram during desflurane anesthesia in dogs. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1993;5(3):178–186.
199. Tetrault S, Chever O, Sik A, Amzica F. Opening of the blood-brain barrier during isoflurane anaesthesia. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2008;28(7):1330–1341.
200. Thal SC, Luh C, Schaible EV, et al. Volatile anesthetics influence blood-brain barrier integrity by modulation of tight junction protein expression in traumatic brain injury. *PLoS One*. 2012;7(12):e50752.
201. Altay O, Suzuki H, Hasegawa Y, et al. Isoflurane attenuates blood-brain barrier disruption in ipsilateral hemisphere after subarachnoid hemorrhage in mice. *Stroke*. 2012;43(9):2513–2516.
202. Modica PA, Tempelhoff R, White PF. Pro- and anticonvulsant effects of anesthetics (Part I). *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70(3):303–315.
203. Modica PA, Tempelhoff R, White PF. Pro- and anticonvulsant effects of anesthetics (Part II). *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70(4):433–444.
204. Kreisman NR, Magee JC, Brizzee BL. Relative hypoperfusion in rat cerebral cortex during recurrent seizures. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1991;11(1):77–87.
205. Wollman H, Smith AL, Hoffman JC. Cerebral blood flow and oxygen consumption in man during electroencephalographic seizure patterns induced by anesthesia with Ethrane [abstract]. *Fed Proc*. 1967;28:356.
206. Flemming DC, Fitzpatrick J, Fariello RG, Duff T, Hellman D, Hoff BH. Diagnostic activation of epileptogenic foci by enflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;52(5):431–433.
207. Hymes JA. Seizure activity during isoflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64(3):367–368.
208. Harrison JL. Postoperative seizures after isoflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65(11):1235–1236.
209. Kofke WA, Young RS, Davis P, et al. Isoflurane for refractory status epilepticus: a clinical series. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71(5):653–659.
210. Komatsu H, Nogaya J, Ogli K. Volatile anaesthetics as central nervous system excitants. *Ann Acad Med Singapore*. 1994;23(suppl 6):130–138.
211. Kaisti KK, Jaaskelainen SK, Rinne JO, Metsahonkala L, Scheinin H. Epileptiform discharges during 2 MAC sevoflurane anesthesia in two healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(6):1952–1955.
212. Hisada K, Morioka T, Fukui K, et al. Effects of sevoflurane and isoflurane on electrocorticographic activities in patients with temporal lobe epilepsy. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2001;13(4):333–337.
213. Hilty CA, Drummond JC. Seizure-like activity on emergence from sevoflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(5):1357–1359.
214. Terasako K, Ishii S. Postoperative seizure-like activity following sevoflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(4):1239–1240.
215. Todd MM, Drummond JC, U HS. The hemodynamic consequences of high-dose methohexital anesthesia in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61(5):495–501.
216. Bennett DR, Madsen JA, Jordan WS, Wiser WC. Ketamine anesthesia in brain-damaged epileptics. Electroencephalographic and clinical observations. *Neurology*. 1973;23(5):449–460.
217. Steen PA, Michenfelder JD. Neurotoxicity of anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50(5):437–453.
218. Hirshman CA, Krieger W, Littlejohn G, Lee R, Julien R. Ketamine-aminophylline-induced decrease in seizure threshold. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56(6):464–467.
219. Ghoneim MM, Yamada T. Etomidate: a clinical and electroencephalographic comparison with thiopental. *Anesth Analg*. 1977;56(4):479–485.
220. Laughlin TP, Newberg LA. Prolonged myoclonus after etomidate anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64(1):80–82.
221. Ebrahim ZY, DeBoer GE, Luders H, Hahn JF, Lesser RP. Effect of etomidate on the electroencephalogram of patients with epilepsy. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65(10):1004–1006.
222. Gancher S, Laxer KD, Krieger W. Activation of epileptogenic activity by etomidate. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61(5):616–618.
223. Samra SK, Sneyd JR, Ross DA, Henry TR. Effects of propofol sedation on seizures and intracranially recorded epileptiform activity in patients with partial epilepsy. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(4):843–851.
224. Rampton AJ, Griffin RM, Stuart CS, Durcan JJ, Huddy NC, Abbott MA. Comparison of methohexital and propofol for electroconvulsive therapy: effects on hemodynamic responses and seizure duration. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70(3):412–417.
225. Drummond JC, Iragui-Madoz VJ, Alksne JF, Kalkman CJ. Masking of epileptiform activity by propofol during seizure surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(4):652–654.
226. Firestone LL, Gyulai F, Mintun M, Adler LJ, Urso K, Winter PM. Human brain activity response to fentanyl imaged by positron emission tomography. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82(6):1247–1251.
227. Smith NT, Westover CJ Jr, Quinn M, Benthuysen JL, Dec Silver H, Sanford TJ Jr. An electroencephalographic comparison of alfentanil with other narcotics and with thiopental. *J Clin Monit*. 1985;1(4):236–244.
228. Tempelhoff R, Modica PA, Bernardo KL, Edwards I. Fentanyl-induced electrocorticographic seizures in patients with complex partial epilepsy. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;77(2):201–208.
229. Cascino GD, So EL, Sharbrough FW, et al. Alfentanil-induced epileptiform activity in patients with partial epilepsy. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 1993;10(4):520–525.
230. Astrup J, Symon L, Branston NM, Lassen NA. Cortical evoked potential and extracellular K+ and H+ at critical levels of brain ischemia. *Stroke*. 1977;8(1):51–57.
231. Hossmann KA. Viability thresholds and the penumbra of focal ischemia. *Ann Neurol*. 1994;36(4):557–565.
232. Michenfelder JD, Sundt TM, Fode N, Sharbrough FW. Isoflurane when compared to enflurane and halothane decreases the frequency of cerebral ischemia during carotid endarterectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(3):336–340.
233. Sundt TM Jr, Sharbrough FW, Piepgras DG, Kearns TP, Messick JM Jr, O'Fallon WM. Correlation of cerebral blood flow and electroencephalographic changes during carotid endarterectomy: with results of surgery and hemodynamics of cerebral ischemia. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1981;56(9):533–543.

234. Michenfelder JD, Sundt TM Jr. Cerebral ATP and lactate levels in the squirrel monkey following occlusion of the middle cerebral artery. *Stroke*. 1971;2(4):319–326.
235. Michenfelder JD, Theye RA. The effects of anesthesia and hypothermia on canine cerebral ATP and lactate during anoxia produced by decapitation. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;33(4):430–439.
236. Siesjo BK. Pathophysiology and treatment of focal cerebral ischemia. Part I: pathophysiology. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;77(2):169–184.
237. Lipton P. Ischemic cell death in brain neurons. *Physiol Rev*. 1999;79(4):1431–1568.
238. Fiskum G, Murphy AN, Beal MF. Mitochondria in neurodegeneration: acute ischemia and chronic neurodegenerative diseases. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1999;19(4):351–369.
239. Velier JJ, Ellison JA, Kikly KK, Spera PA, Barone FC, Feuerstein GZ. Caspase-8 and caspase-3 are expressed by different populations of cortical neurons undergoing delayed cell death after focal stroke in the rat. *J Neurosci*. 1999;19(14):5932–5941.
240. Kawaguchi M, Kimbro JR, Drummond JC, Cole DJ, Kelly PJ, Patel PM. Isoflurane delays but does not prevent cerebral infarction in rats subjected to focal ischemia. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(5):1335–1342.
241. Powers WJ, Rabinstein AA, Ackerson T, et al. 2018 Guidelines for the early management of patients with acute ischemic stroke: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. *Stroke*. 2018;49(3):e46–e110.
242. Nogueira RG, Jadhav AP, Haussen DC, et al. Thrombectomy 6 to 24 hours after stroke with a mismatch between deficit and infarct. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(1):11–21.
243. Albers GW, Marks MP, Kemp S, et al. Thrombectomy for stroke at 6 to 16 hours with selection by perfusion imaging. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(8):708–718.
244. Dirnagl U, Iadecola C, Moskowitz MA. Pathobiology of ischaemic stroke: an integrated view. *Trends Neurosci*. 1999;22(9):391–397.
245. Del Zoppo GJ. Toward the neurovascular unit. A journey in clinical translation: 2012 Thomas Willis lecture. *Stroke*. 2013;44(1):263–269.
246. Dirnagl U. Pathobiology of injury after stroke: the neurovascular unit and beyond. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2012;1268:21–25.
247. Heiss WD. The ischemic penumbra: how does tissue injury evolve? *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2012;1268:26–34.
248. Hossmann KA. The two pathophysiologies of focal brain ischemia: implications for translational stroke research. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2012;32(7):1310–1316.
249. van der Spuy WJ, Pretorius E. Interrelation between inflammation, thrombosis, and neuroprotection in cerebral ischemia. *Rev Neurosci*. 2012;23(3):269–278.
250. Kramer DR, Fujii T, Ohiorhenuan I, Liu CY. Cortical spreading depolarization: pathophysiology, implications, and future directions. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2016;24:22–27.
251. Ma Y, Wang J, Wang Y, Yang GY. The biphasic function of microglia in ischemic stroke. *Prog Neurobiol*. 2017;157:247–272.
252. Martin A, Domercq M, Matute C. Inflammation in stroke: the role of cholinergic, purinergic and glutamatergic signaling. *Ther Adv Neurol Disord*. 2018;11. 1756286418774267.
253. Mayor D, Tymianski M. Neurotransmitters in the mediation of cerebral ischemic injury. *Neuropharmacology*. 2018;134(Pt B):178–188.
254. Forsman M, Aarseth HP, Nordby HK, Skulberg A, Steen PA. Effects of nimodipine on cerebral blood flow and cerebrospinal fluid pressure after cardiac arrest: correlation with neurologic outcome. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68(4):436–443.
255. Roine RO, Kaste M, Kinnunen A, Nikki P, Sarna S, Kajaste S. Nimodipine after resuscitation from out-of-hospital ventricular fibrillation. A placebo-controlled, double-blind, randomized trial. *JAMA*. 1990;264(24):3171–3177.
256. Brain Resuscitation Clinical Trial II Study Group. A randomized clinical study of a calcium-entry blocker (lidoflazine) in the treatment of comatose survivors of cardiac arrest. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324(18):1225–1231.
257. Roberts BW, Kilgannon JH, Hunter BR, et al. Association between early hyperoxia exposure after resuscitation from cardiac arrest and neurological disability: prospective multicenter protocol-directed cohort study. *Circulation*. 2018;137(20):2114–2124.
258. Hypothermia after Cardiac Arrest Study Group. Mild therapeutic hypothermia to improve the neurologic outcome after cardiac arrest. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(8):549–556.
259. Shankaran S, Laptook AR, Ehrenkranz RA, et al. Whole-body hypothermia for neonates with hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353(15):1574–1584.
260. Shankaran S, Pappas A, McDonald SA, et al. Childhood outcomes after hypothermia for neonatal encephalopathy. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366(22):2085–2092.
261. Hoffman WE, Cheng MA, Thomas C, Baughman VL, Albrecht RF. Clonidine decreases plasma catecholamines and improves outcome from incomplete ischemia in the rat. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73(4):460–464.
262. Hoffman WE, Thomas C, Albrecht RF. The effect of halothane and isoflurane on neurologic outcome following incomplete cerebral ischemia in the rat. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76(2):279–283.
263. Smith AL, Hoff JT, Nielsen SL, Larson CP. Barbiturate protection in acute focal cerebral ischemia. *Stroke*. 1974;5(1):1–7.
264. Michenfelder JD, Milde JH, Sundt TM Jr. Cerebral protection by barbiturate anesthesia. Use after middle cerebral artery occlusion in Java monkeys. *Arch Neurol*. 1976;33(5):345–350.
265. Nehls DG, Todd MM, Spetzler RF, Drummond JC, Thompson RA, Johnson PC. A comparison of the cerebral protective effects of isoflurane and barbiturates during temporary focal ischemia in primates. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(4):453–464.
266. Nussmeier NA, Arlund C, Slogoff S. Neuropsychiatric complications after cardiopulmonary bypass: cerebral protection by a barbiturate. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64(2):165–170.
267. Shapiro HM. Barbiturates in brain ischaemia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57(1):82–95.
268. Warner DS, Takaoka S, Wu B, et al. Electroencephalographic burst suppression is not required to elicit maximal neuroprotection from pentobarbital in a rat model of focal cerebral ischemia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(6):1475–1484.
269. Busto R, Dietrich WD, Globus MY, Valdes I, Scheinberg P, Ginsberg MD. Small differences in intraischemic brain temperature critically determine the extent of ischemic neuronal injury. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1987;7(6):729–738.
270. Sano T, Drummond JC, Patel PM, Grafe MR, Watson JC, Cole DJ. A comparison of the cerebral protective effects of isoflurane and mild hypothermia in a model of incomplete forebrain ischemia in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(2):221–228.
271. Warner DS, Zhou JG, Ramani R, Todd MM. Reversible focal ischemia in the rat: effects of halothane, isoflurane, and methohexital anesthesia. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1991;11(5):794–802.
272. Drummond JC, Cole DJ, Patel PM, Reynolds LW. Focal cerebral ischemia during anesthesia with etomidate, isoflurane, or thiopental: a comparison of the extent of cerebral injury. *Neurosurgery*. 1995;37(4):742–748. discussion 748-749.
273. Cole DJ, Cross LM, Drummond JC, Patel PM, Jacobsen WK. Thiopentone and methohexital, but not pentobarbitone, reduce early focal cerebral ischemic injury in rats. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48(8):807–814.
274. Baughman VL, Hoffman WE, Miletich DJ, Albrecht RF, Thomas C. Neurologic outcome in rats following incomplete cerebral ischemia during halothane, isoflurane, or N2O. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69(2):192–198.
275. Soonthon-Brant V, Patel PM, Drummond JC, Cole DJ, Kelly PJ, Watson M. Fentanyl does not increase brain injury after focal cerebral ischemia in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(1):49–55.
276. Mackensen GB, Nellgard B, Kudo M, Sheng H, Pearlstein RD, Warner DS. Periischemic cerebral blood flow (CBF) does not explain beneficial effects of isoflurane on outcome from near-complete forebrain ischemia in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(4):1102–1106.
277. Nellgard B, Mackensen GB, Pineda J, Wellons JC 3rd, Pearlstein RD, Warner DS. Anesthetic effects on cerebral metabolic rate predict histologic outcome from near-complete forebrain ischemia in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(2):431–436.
278. Kawaguchi M, Drummond JC, Cole DJ, Kelly PJ, Spurlock MP, Patel PM. Effect of isoflurane on neuronal apoptosis in rats subjected to focal cerebral ischemia. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(3):798–805. table of contents.
279. Sakai H, Sheng H, Yates RB, Ishida K, Pearlstein RD, Warner DS. Isoflurane provides long-term protection against focal cerebral ischemia in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(1):92–99. discussion 98-10.
280. Warner DS, McFarlane C, Todd MM, Ludwig P, McAllister AM. Sevoflurane and halothane reduce focal ischemic brain damage in the rat. Possible influence on thermoregulation. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79(5):985–992.

281. Werner C, Mollenberg O, Kochs E, Schulte JaE. Sevoflurane improves neurological outcome after incomplete cerebral ischaemia in rats. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75(6):756–760.
282. Engelhard K, Werner C, Reeker W, et al. Desflurane and isoflurane improve neurological outcome after incomplete cerebral ischaemia in rats. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83(3):415–421.
283. Homi HM, Yokoo N, Ma D, et al. The neuroprotective effect of xenon administration during transient middle cerebral artery occlusion in mice. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(4):876–881.
284. Ma D, Yang H, Lynch J, Franks NP, Maze M, Grocott HP. Xenon attenuates cardiopulmonary bypass-induced neurologic and neurocognitive dysfunction in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(3):690–698.
285. Ma D, Hossain M, Chow A, et al. Xenon and hypothermia combine to provide neuroprotection from neonatal asphyxia. *Ann Neurol*. 2005;58(2):182–193.
286. Ravussin P, de Tribolet N. Total intravenous anesthesia with propofol for burst suppression in cerebral aneurysm surgery: preliminary report of 42 patients. *Neurosurgery*. 1993;32(2):236–240. discussion 240.
287. Gelb AW, Bayona NA, Wilson JX, Cechetto DF. Propofol anesthesia compared to awake reduces infarct size in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(5):1183–1190.
288. Pittman JE, Sheng H, Pearlstein R, Brinkhous A, Dexter F, Warner DS. Comparison of the effects of propofol and pentobarbital on neurologic outcome and cerebral infarct size after temporary focal ischemia in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(5):1139–1144.
289. Bayona NA, Gelb AW, Jiang Z, Wilson JX, Urquhart BL, Cechetto DF. Propofol neuroprotection in cerebral ischemia and its effects on low-molecular-weight antioxidants and skilled motor tasks. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(5):1151–1159.
290. Batjer HH, Frankfurt AI, Purdy PD, Smith SS, Samson DS. Use of etomidate, temporary arterial occlusion, and intraoperative angiography in surgical treatment of large and giant cerebral aneurysms. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;68(2):234–240.
291. Nebauer AE, Doenicke A, Hoernecke R, Angster R, Mayer M. Does etomidate cause haemolysis? *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69(1):58–60.
292. Pickard JD, Murray GD, Illingworth R, et al. Effect of oral nimodipine on cerebral infarction and outcome after subarachnoid haemorrhage: British aneurysm nimodipine trial. *BMJ*. 1989;298(6674):636–642.
293. Randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of nimodipine in acute stroke. Trust Study Group. *Lancet*. 1990;336(8725):1205–1209.
294. Drummond JC, Oh YS, Cole DJ, Shapiro HM. Phenylephrine-induced hypertension reduces ischemia following middle cerebral artery occlusion in rats. *Stroke*. 1989;20(11):1538–1544.
295. Young WL, Solomon RA, Pedley TA, et al. Direct cortical EEG monitoring during temporary vascular occlusion for cerebral aneurysm surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71(5):794–799.
296. Ahmed N, Nasman P, Wahlgren NG. Effect of intravenous nimodipine on blood pressure and outcome after acute stroke. *Stroke*. 2000;31(6):1250–1255.
297. Connolly ES Jr, Rabinstein AA, Carhuapoma JR, et al. Guidelines for the management of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. *Stroke*. 2012;43(6):1711–1737.
298. Carney N, Totten AM, O'Reilly C, et al. Guidelines for the management of severe traumatic brain injury. 4th edition. *Neurosurgery*. 2017;80(1):6–15.
299. Nemoto EM, Klementavicius R, Melick JA, Yonas H. Suppression of cerebral metabolic rate for oxygen (CMRO2) by mild hypothermia compared with thiopental. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1996;8(1):52–59.
300. Buchan A, Pulsinelli WA. Hypothermia but not the N-methyl-D-aspartate antagonist, MK-801, attenuates neuronal damage in gerbils subjected to transient global ischemia. *J Neurosci*. 1990;10(1):311–316.
301. Hindman BJ, Todd MM, Gelb AW, et al. Mild hypothermia as a protective therapy during intracranial aneurysm surgery: a randomized prospective pilot trial. *Neurosurgery*. 1999;44(1):23–32. discussion 32-23.
302. Todd MM, Hindman BJ, Clarke WR, Torner JC. Intraoperative Hypothermia for Aneurysm Surgery Trial I. Mild intraoperative hypothermia during surgery for intracranial aneurysm. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(2):135–145.
303. Shiozaki T, Sugimoto H, Taneda M, et al. Effect of mild hypothermia on uncontrollable intracranial hypertension after severe head injury. *J Neurosurg*. 1993;79(3):363–368.
304. Clifton GL, Allen S, Barrodale P, et al. A phase II study of moderate hypothermia in severe brain injury. *J Neurotrauma*. 1993;10(3):263–271. discussion 273.
305. Clifton GL, Valadka A, Zygun D, et al. Very early hypothermia induction in patients with severe brain injury (the National Acute Brain Injury Study: Hypothermia II): a randomised trial. *Lancet Neurol*. 2011;10(2):131–139.
306. Clifton GL, Miller ER, Choi SC, et al. Lack of effect of induction of hypothermia after acute brain injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344(8):556–563.
307. Kammersgaard LP, Rasmussen BH, Jorgensen HS, Reith J, Weber U, Olsen TS. Feasibility and safety of inducing modest hypothermia in awake patients with acute stroke through surface cooling: a case-control study: the Copenhagen Stroke Study. *Stroke*. 2000;31(9):2251–2256.
308. Bernard SA, Gray TW, Buist MD, et al. Treatment of comatose survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest with induced hypothermia. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(8):557–563.
309. Wass CT, Lanier WL, Hofer RE, Scheithauer BW, Andrews AG. Temperature changes of > or = 1 degree C alter functional neurologic outcome and histopathology in a canine model of complete cerebral ischemia. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(2):325–335.
310. Vannucci RC, Brucklacher RM, Vannucci SJ. The effect of hyperglycemia on cerebral metabolism during hypoxia-ischemia in the immature rat. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1996;16(5):1026–1033.
311. Mullner M, Sterz F, Binder M, Schreiber W, Deimel A, Laggner AN. Blood glucose concentration after cardiopulmonary resuscitation influences functional neurological recovery in human cardiac arrest survivors. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1997;17(4):430–436.
312. Weir CJ, Murray GD, Dyker AG, Lees KR. Is hyperglycaemia an independent predictor of poor outcome after acute stroke? Results of a long-term follow up study. *BMJ*. 1997;314(7090):1303–1306.
313. Matchar DB, Divine GW, Heyman A, Feussner JR. The influence of hyperglycemia on outcome of cerebral infarction. *Ann Intern Med*. 1992;117(6):449–456.
314. Bruno A, Levine SR, Frankel MR, et al. Admission glucose level and clinical outcomes in the NINDS rt-PA Stroke Trial. *Neurology*. 2002;59(5):669–674.
315. Gray CS, Hildreth AJ, Sandercock PA, et al. Glucose-potassium-insulin infusions in the management of post-stroke hyperglycaemia: the UK Glucose Insulin in Stroke Trial (GIST-UK). *Lancet Neurol*. 2007;6(5):397–406.
316. Auer RN. Hypoglycemic brain damage. *Forensic Sci Int*. 2004;146(2-3):105–110.
317. Archer DP. The role of bloodletting in the prevention and treatment of asthenic apoplexy. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1994;6(1):51–53.
318. Dell'Anna AM, Lamanna I, Vincent JL, Taccone FS. How much oxygen in adult cardiac arrest? *Crit Care*. 2014;18(5):555.
319. de Jonge E, Peelen L, Keijzers PJ, et al. Association between administered oxygen, arterial partial oxygen pressure and mortality in mechanically ventilated intensive care unit patients. *Crit Care*. 2008;12(6):R156.
320. Kilgannon JH, Jones AE, Shapiro NI, et al. Association between arterial hyperoxia following resuscitation from cardiac arrest and in-hospital mortality. *JAMA*. 2010;303(21):2165–2171.
321. Elmer J, Scutella M, Pullalarevu R, et al. The association between hyperoxia and patient outcomes after cardiac arrest: analysis of a high-resolution database. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41(1):49–57.
322. Vaahersalo J, Bendel S, Reinikainen M, et al. Arterial blood gas tensions after resuscitation from out-of-hospital cardiac arrest: associations with long-term neurologic outcome. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(6):1463–1470.
323. Vilalta A, Sahuquillo J, Merino MA, et al. Normobaric hyperoxia in traumatic brain injury: does brain metabolic state influence the response to hyperoxic challenge? *J Neurotrauma*. 2011;28(7):1139–1148.
324. Davis DP, Meade W, Sise MJ, et al. Both hypoxemia and extreme hyperoxemia may be detrimental in patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurotrauma*. 2009;26(12):2217–2223.
325. Brenner M, Stein D, Hu P, Kufera J, Wooford M, Scalea T. Association between early hyperoxia and worse outcomes after traumatic brain injury. *Arch Surg*. 2012;147(11):1042–1046.

326. Roffe C, Ali K, Warusevitane A, et al. The SOS pilot study: a RCT of routine oxygen supplementation early after acute stroke—effect on recovery of neurological function at one week. *PLoS One*. 2011;6(5):e19113.
327. Lang M, Raj R, Skrifvars MB, et al. Early moderate hyperoxemia does not predict outcome after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurosurgery*. 2016;78(4):540–545.
328. Hindman BJ, Bayman EO, Pfisterer WK, Torner JC, Todd MM. No association between intraoperative hypothermia or supplemental protective drug and neurologic outcomes in patients undergoing temporary clipping during cerebral aneurysm surgery: findings from the Intraoperative Hypothermia for Aneurysm Surgery Trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(1):86–101.
329. GALA Trial Collaborative Group. General anaesthesia versus local anaesthesia for carotid surgery (GALA): a multicentre, randomised controlled trial. *The Lancet*. 2008;372(9656):2132–2142.
330. Davis MJ, Menon BK, Baghirzada LB, et al. Anesthetic management and outcome in patients during endovascular therapy for acute stroke. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(2):396–405.
331. Lenzi GL, Frackowiak RS, Jones T. Cerebral oxygen metabolism and blood flow in human cerebral ischemic infarction. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1982;2(3):321–335.
332. Olsen TS. Regional cerebral blood flow after occlusion of the middle cerebral artery. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 1986;73(4):321–337.
333. Rockman CB, Maldonado TS, Jacobowitz GR, Cayne NS, Gagne PJ, Riles TS. Early carotid endarterectomy in symptomatic patients is associated with poorer perioperative outcomes. *J Vasc Surg*. 2006;44(3):480–487.
334. Jorgensen ME, Torp-Pedersen C, Gislason GH, et al. Time elapsed after ischemic stroke and risk of adverse cardiovascular events and mortality following elective noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2014;312(3):269–277.
335. Rantner B, Pavelka M, Posch L, Schmidauer C, Fraedrich G. Carotid endarterectomy after ischemic stroke—is there a justification for delayed surgery? *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2005;30(1):36–40.
336. Ballotta E, Da Giau G, Baracchini C, Abbruzzese E, Saladini M, Meneghetti G. Early versus delayed carotid endarterectomy after a nondisabling ischemic stroke: a prospective randomized study. *Surgery*. 2002;131(3):287–293.
337. Keldahl ML, Eskandari MK. Timing of carotid surgery after acute stroke. *Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther*. 2010;8(10):1399–1403.
338. Strandgaard S. Autoregulation of cerebral blood flow in hypertensive patients. The modifying influence of prolonged antihypertensive treatment on the tolerance to acute, drug-induced hypotension. *Circulation*. 1976;53(4):720–727.
339. Njemanze PC. Critical limits of pressure-flow relation in the human brain. *Stroke*. 1992;23(12):1743–1747.
340. Vorstrup S, Barry DI, Jarden JO, et al. Chronic antihypertensive treatment in the rat reverses hypertension-induced changes in cerebral blood flow autoregulation. *Stroke*. 1984;15(2):312–318.
341. Toyoda K, Fujii K, Ibayashi S, et al. Attenuation and recovery of brain stem autoregulation in spontaneously hypertensive rats. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1998;18(3):305–310.
342. Larsen FS, Olsen KS, Hansen BA, Paulson OB, Knudsen GM. Transcranial Doppler is valid for determination of the lower limit of cerebral blood flow autoregulation. *Stroke*. 1994;25(10):1985.
343. Waldemar G, Schmidt JF, Andersen AR, Vorstrup S, Ibsen H, Paulson OB. Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibition and cerebral blood flow autoregulation in normotensive and hypertensive man. *J Hypertens*. 1989;7(3):229–235.
344. Arbit E, DiResta GR, Bedford RF, Shah NK, Galicich JH. Intraoperative measurement of cerebral and tumor blood flow with laser-Doppler flowmetry. *Neurosurgery*. 1989;24(2):166–170.
345. Julien C, Payen JF, Tropres I, et al. Assessment of vascular reactivity in rat brain glioma by measuring regional blood volume during graded hypoxic hypoxia. *Br J Cancer*. 2004;91(2):374–380.
346. Packard SD, Mandeville JB, Ichikawa T, et al. Functional response of tumor vasculature to PaCO2: determination of total and microvascular blood volume by MRI. *Neoplasia*. 2003;5(4):330–338.
347. Rasmussen M, Juul N, Christensen SM, et al. Cerebral blood flow, blood volume, and mean transit time responses to propofol and indomethacin in peritumor and contralateral brain regions: perioperative perfusion-weighted magnetic resonance imaging in patients with brain tumors. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(1):50–56.
348. Shin JH, Lee HK, Kwun BD, et al. Using relative cerebral blood flow and volume to evaluate the histopathologic grade of cerebral gliomas: preliminary results. *AJR Am J Roentgenol*. 2002;179(3):783–789.
349. Bedford RF, Morris L, Jane JA. Intracranial hypertension during surgery for supratentorial tumor: correlation with preoperative computed tomography scans. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61(5):430–433.
350. Kaal EC, Vecht CJ. The management of brain edema in brain tumors. *Curr Opin Oncol*. 2004;16(6):593–600.
351. Stummer W. Mechanisms of tumor-related brain edema. *Neurosurg Focus*. 2007;22(5):E8.
352. McManus ML, Strange K. Acute volume regulation of brain cells in response to hypertonic challenge. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(6):1132–1137.
353. Wasterlain CG. Mortality and morbidity from serial seizures. An experimental study. *Epilepsia*. 1974;15(2):155–176.
354. Todd MM. Cerebral blood flow during isovolemic hemodilution: mechanistic observations. *Adv Pharmacol*. 1994;31:595–605.
355. Todd MM, Wu B, Maktabi M, Hindman BJ, Warner DS. Cerebral blood flow and oxygen delivery during hypoxemia and hemodilution: role of arterial oxygen content. *Am J Physiol*. 1994;267(5 Pt 2):H2025–H2031.
356. Murphy FL, Kennell EM, Johnstone RE. The effects of enflurane, isoflurane, and halothane on cerebral blood flow and metabolism in man [abstract]. *Abstracts Annual Meeting Am Soc Anesthesiologists*. 1974;1974:62–63.
357. Werner C, Hoffman WE, Baughman VL, Albrecht RF, Schulte J. Effects of sufentanil on cerebral blood flow, cerebral blood flow velocity, and metabolism in dogs. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(2):177–181.
358. Wollman H, Alexander SC, Cohen PJ, Chase PE, Melman E, Behar MG. Cerebral circulation of man during halothane anesthesia: effects of hypocarbia and of D-tubocurarine. *Anesthesiology*. 1964;25:180–184.
359. Branston NM, Symon L, Crockard HA, Pasztor E. Relationship between the cortical evoked potential and local cortical blood flow following acute middle cerebral artery occlusion in the baboon. *Exp Neurol*. 1974;45(2):195–208.
360. Jones TH, Morawetz RB, Crowell RM, et al. Thresholds of focal cerebral ischemia in awake monkeys. *J Neurosurg*. 1981;54(6):773–782.

12

Neuromuscular Physiology and Pharmacology

J. A. JEEVENDRA MARTYN and MALIN JONSSON FAGERLUND

KEY POINTS

- The neuromuscular junction contains the distal nerve terminal, Schwann cell, synaptic cleft, and muscle end plate, which together provide an array of receptors and substrates for drug action. Neuromuscular transmission is predominantly dependent on acetylcholine as the natural transmitter. Acetylcholine, when released from the prejunctional nerve terminal, binds to acetylcholine receptors (AChRs) that are present either prejunctionally or postjunctionally within the neuromuscular junction (synapse) and, depending on their structural composition, are classified into the usual muscle subtype AChRs or a variety of neuronal subtype AChRs.
- Muscle relaxants have multiple sites of action. Although the major actions occur by mechanisms and at sites described as agonistic and antagonistic actions at postjunctional receptors for depolarizing and nondepolarizing muscle relaxants (NDMRs), this description of neuromuscular drug action is a simplistic one. Neuromuscular transmission is impeded by NDMRs because they prevent access of acetylcholine to its preferred recognition site on the postjunctional nicotinic AChRs.
- If the concentration of NDMR is increased, another, noncompetitive action—block of the ion channel—is superimposed. The postjunctional paralytic effects of muscle relaxants can be enhanced by the actions of the relaxant on prejunctional AChRs, which modulate the release of acetylcholine. The latter can be documented as *fade* that occurs with increased frequency of stimulation. Fade can also be seen when the postjunctional AChRs alone are functionally blocked (e.g., by bungarotoxin) or when the number of AChRs (e.g., myasthenia gravis) is decreased. Hence, the neuromuscular junction is a complex and dynamic system in which the phenomena produced by drugs are composites of actions that vary with the drug, dose, activity at the nerve terminal and muscle, time after administration, presence of anesthetics or other drugs, and age and condition of the patient.
- Inhibition of acetylcholinesterase enzyme by anticholinesterases (e.g., neostigmine) increases the concentration of acetylcholine in the synaptic cleft, which can compete with and displace the NDMRS and thus reverse the paralysis. These anticholinesterase drugs (e.g., neostigmine) also have other effects, including the nerve terminal and the receptor, by an allosteric mechanism. Acute bolus or prolonged administration of anticholinesterases can have deleterious effects on neuromuscular function in otherwise healthy patients. The modified cyclodextrin, sugammadex, is a novel and innovative class of compound that reverses paralysis of only steroidal muscle relaxants by encapsulation of this series of compounds.
- Depolarizing compounds (e.g., succinylcholine) initially react with the acetylcholine recognition site and, like the transmitter, open AChR ion channels during depolarization of the endplate membrane. Unlike the transmitter, they are not subject to hydrolysis by acetylcholinesterase and therefore remain in the junction. Soon after the administration of succinylcholine, some receptors are desensitized, and, although occupied by the agonist, they do not open to allow current to flow to depolarize the muscle membrane area.
- If the depolarizing relaxant is applied in higher-than-usual concentrations or is allowed to remain at the junction for a long time, then other neuromuscular effects occur; depolarizing relaxants in higher concentrations have effects on prejunctional structures, and the combination of prejunctional and postjunctional effects plus secondary ones on muscle and nerve homeostasis results in the complicated phenomenon known as *phase II block*. Some of the other drugs used clinically (e.g., Botox) have effects on the motor nerve and therefore indirectly on muscle. Systemic infection with clostridial toxins (*Clostridium botulinum*, gas gangrene) can lead to systemic paralysis as a result of decreased release of acetylcholine from the nerve terminal. NDMRs administered for 24 hours or longer can have effects on the postsynaptic receptor and simulate denervation state (chemical denervation) manifested by upregulated postsynaptic AChRs. Magnesium given to preeclamptic mothers decreases the release of acetylcholine with a potential for muscle weakness in the mother or newborn. In recognizing these sites and mechanisms, we begin to bring our theoretical knowledge closer to explaining the phenomena observed when these drugs are exposed to living humans.

Continued

- Contemporary research work has focused on the control of AChR expression on the postjunctional membrane in normal and diseased states. The presence or absence of the conventional mature and immature isoforms seems to complicate matters further. In certain pathologic states (e.g., denervation, stroke, sepsis, burns, immobilization, chronic use of NDMRs), AChRs are upregulated, with increased expression of the immature isoform and *de-novo* expression of the nicotinic α7 acetylcholine receptors (α7 AChRs). Altered functional and pharmacologic characteristics of the immature (fetal or γ-subunit–containing receptors) and α7 AChRs expressed in pathologic muscle wasting conditions result in increased sensitivity to succinylcholine with hyperkalemia and resistance (insensitivity) to NDMRs.
- An area of increasing attention is control of the expression of mature versus the other two receptor isoforms (immature γ- and α7 AChRs on the synapse). Re-expression of the immature γ- and α7 AChRs is probably related to aberrant growth factor signaling.
- Genetic mutations in the AChRs, that result in prolonged or fast open-channel time, can lead to a myasthenia-like state, even in the presence of normal receptor numbers. The weakness is usually related to ineffective depolarization or to the altered open-channel time, or to both.

Although cholinergic neurotransmission at the neuromuscular junction is the most widely studied synapse within the nervous system, complete knowledge of its workings has not yet been achieved. The physiology of neuromuscular transmission could be analyzed and understood at the simplest level by using the classic model of nerve signaling to muscle through the acetylcholine receptor (AChR). The mammalian neuromuscular junction and the nicotinic AChRs are the prototypical and most extensively studied synapse and receptor, respectively. Research has provided more detailed information on processes that, within the classic scheme, can modify neurotransmission and response to drugs. One example is the role of qualitative or quantitative changes in AChRs that modify neurotransmission and the response to drugs.[1-3] In myasthenia gravis, for example, the decrease in AChRs results in decreased efficiency of neurotransmission (and therefore muscle weakness)[4] and altered sensitivity to neuromuscular relaxants.[3] Another example is the importance of nerve-related (prejunctional) changes that alter neurotransmission and the response to muscle relaxants.[5-7] Yet, muscle relaxants act in ways that are not encompassed by the classic scheme of a unitary site of action. The observation that muscle relaxants can have prejunctional effects[5] or that some muscle relaxants can also have agonist-like stimulatory actions on the receptor,[8] whereas others have effects not explainable by purely postsynaptic actions on muscle,[9-11] has provided new insight into some previously unexplained observations. Although muscle relaxants are known to have effects on the presynaptic and postsynaptic receptors of the neuromuscular junction, recent evidence indicates that they can react with nicotinic and muscarinic AChRs other than those in muscle, including receptors on the carotid body, on the vagus to the heart, and on bronchial smooth muscle.[9-13] Although this multifaceted action-response scheme makes the physiologic and pharmacologic neurotransmission more complex, these added insights also bring experimentally derived knowledge much closer to clinical observations. This review dwells on the basic physiology and anesthesia-related pharmacology of the neuromuscular junction. Several reviews that provide more detailed insight into the physiological and pathological processes that alter function and pharmacology of the neuromuscular junction are available for the initiated reader.[14-19]

Neuromuscular Transmission

Neuromuscular transmission occurs by a fairly simple and straightforward mechanism. The nerve synthesizes acetylcholine and stores it in small, uniformly sized packages called *vesicles*. Stimulation of the nerve causes these vesicles to migrate to the surface of the nerve, rupture, and discharge acetylcholine into the cleft separating the nerve from muscle. AChRs in the end plate of the muscle respond by opening their channels for influx of sodium ions into the muscle to depolarize the muscle. The end-plate potential created is continued along the muscle membrane by the opening of sodium channels present throughout the muscle membrane to initiate a muscle contraction.[16,17] The acetylcholine immediately detaches from the receptor and is destroyed by the enzyme, acetylcholinesterase, which is also present in the cleft. Exogenous drugs that activate the nicotinic AChR, that is, agonists such as depolarizing muscle relaxants (e.g., succinylcholine or nicotine), can also act on these receptors and mimic the effect of acetylcholine and cause depolarization of the end plate. Nondepolarizing muscle relaxants (NDMRs) also act on the receptors, but they prevent acetylcholine from binding to the receptor and thus prevent depolarization by agonists. Because these NDMRs prevent the action of agonists (e.g., acetylcholine, carbachol, succinylcholine), they belong to the class of compounds known as *antagonists* at the muscle AChRs. Other compounds, frequently called *reversal drugs* or antagonists of neuromuscular paralysis (e.g., neostigmine, prostigmine), inhibit acetylcholinesterase and therefore impair the hydrolysis of acetylcholine. The increased accumulation of undegraded acetylcholine can effectively compete with NDMRs and thereby displace the latter from the receptor (i.e., law of mass action) and antagonize the effects of NDMRs.

MORPHOLOGY

The neuromuscular junction is specialized on both the nerve side and on the muscle side to transmit and receive chemical messages.[15-19] Each motor neuron runs without interruption from the ventral horn of the spinal cord or medulla to the neuromuscular junction as a large, myelinated axon (Fig. 12.1*A*). As the motor neuron approaches the muscle, the neuron repeatedly branches to contact many muscle

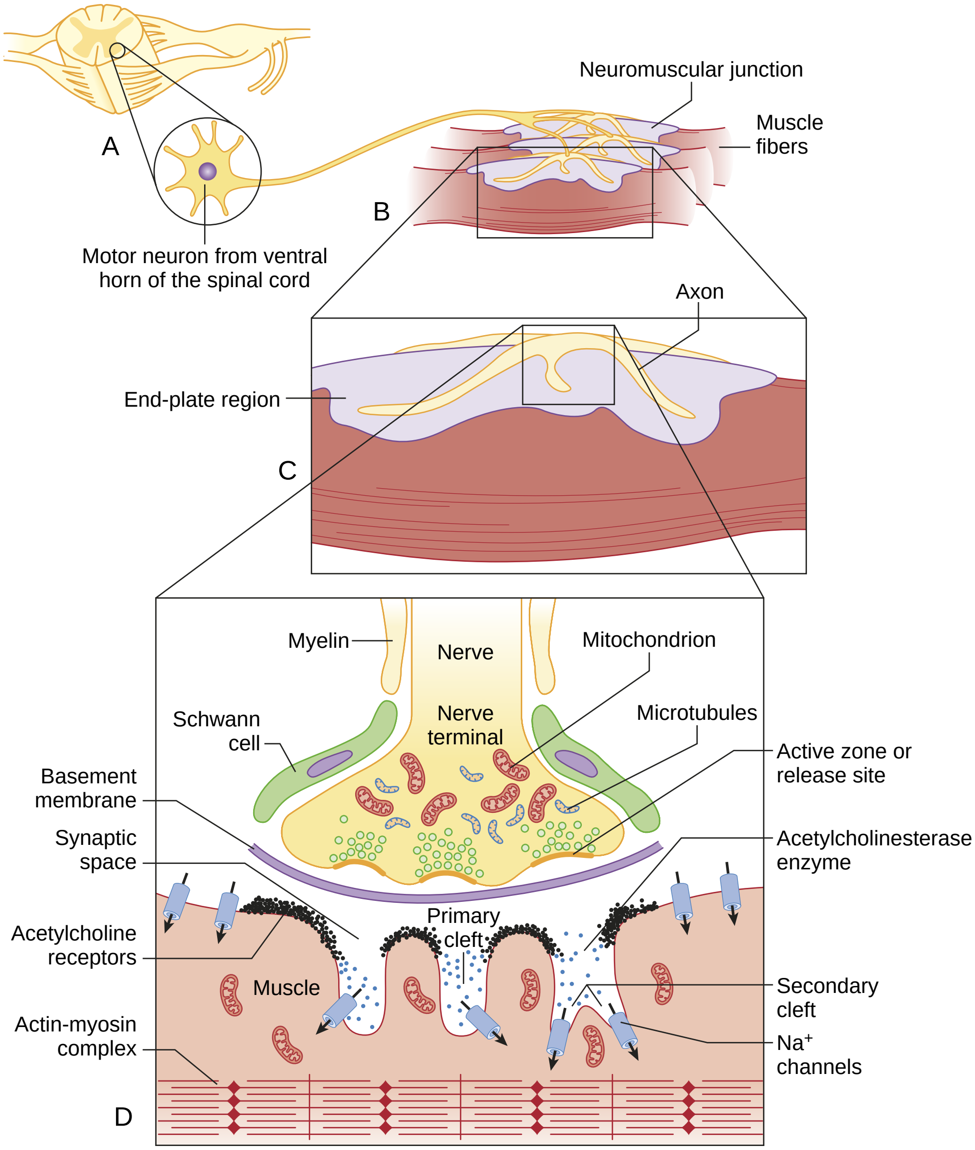

Neuromuscular junction
Muscle fibers
A
Motor neuron from ventral horn of the spinal cord
B
Axon
End-plate region
C
Myelin
Nerve
Mitochondrion
Schwann cell
Nerve terminal
Microtubules
Active zone or release site
Basement membrane
Synaptic space
Acetylcholinesterase enzyme
Primary cleft
Acetylcholine receptors
Muscle
Secondary cleft
Actin-myosin complex
Na+ channels
D

Fig. 12.1 Structure of the adult neuromuscular junction shows the three cells that constitute the synapse: the motor neuron (i.e., nerve terminal), muscle fiber, and Schwann cell. (A) The motor nerve originates in the ventral horn of the spinal cord or brainstem. (B) As the nerve approaches its muscle fibers and before attaching itself to the surface of the muscle fiber, the nerve divides into branches that innervate many individual muscle fibers. (C) Each muscle receives only one synapse. The motor nerve loses its myelin and further subdivides into many presynaptic boutons to terminate on the surface of the muscle fiber. (D) The nerve terminal, covered by Schwann cells, has vesicles clustered about the membrane thickenings, which are the active zones, toward its synaptic side and mitochondria and microtubules toward its other side. A synaptic gutter or cleft made up of a primary and many secondary clefts separate the nerve from the muscle. The muscle surface is corrugated, and dense areas on the shoulders of each fold contain acetylcholine receptors. Sodium (Na^+) channels are present at the bottom of the clefts and throughout the muscle membrane. The acetylcholinesterase and proteins and proteoglycans that stabilize the neuromuscular junction are present in the synaptic clefts.

cells and gather them into a functional group known as a *motor unit* (see Fig. 12.1*B*). The architecture of the nerve terminal is quite different from that of the rest of the axon. As the terminal reaches the muscle fiber, it loses its myelin, forms a spray of terminal branches against the muscle surface, and is covered by Schwann cells. This arrangement conforms to the architecture on the synaptic area of the muscle membrane (see Fig. 12.1*C*). The nerve is separated from the surface of the muscle by a gap of approximately 50 nm, called the *junctional cleft* or *synaptic cleft*. The nerve and muscle are held in tight alignment by protein filaments called *basal lamina* that span the cleft between the nerve and end plate. The muscle surface is heavily corrugated, with deep invaginations of the junctional cleft—the primary and secondary clefts—between the folds in the muscle membrane; thus, the end plate's total surface area is very large. The depths of the folds also vary between muscle types and species. Human neuromuscular junctions, relative to muscle size, are smaller than those of the mouse, although the junctions are located on muscle fibers that are much larger. Human junctions have longer junctional foldings and deeper gutters.[14,17] The sodium channels, which propagate the wave of depolarization, are located in the depths of the folds (see Fig. 12.1*D*). The shoulders of the folds are densely populated with AChRs, approximately 5 million of them in each junction. AChRs are sparse in the depths between the folds.

The trophic function of the nerve is vital for the development and maintenance of adequate neuromuscular function. Before birth, each muscle cell commonly has contacts with several nerves and has several neuromuscular junctions.[14,19] At birth, all but one of the nerves retract, and a single end plate remains (see section on "Neuromuscular Junction at the Extremes of Age"). Once formed, the nerve-muscle contact, especially the end plate, is durable. Even if the original nerve dies, the one replacing it innervates exactly the same region of the muscle. The nerve endings on fast muscles are larger and more complicated than those on slow muscles. The reason for this is unclear. These differences in the nerve endings on muscle surfaces may play a role in the difference in response of fast- and slow-twitch muscle fibers to muscle relaxants.

Because all the muscle cells in a unit are excited by a single neuron, stimulation of the nerve electrically or by an action potential originating from the ventral horn or by any agonist, including depolarizing relaxants (e.g., succinylcholine), causes all muscle cells in the motor unit to contract synchronously. Synchronous contraction of the cells in a motor unit is called *fasciculation* and is often vigorous enough to be observed through the skin. Although most adult human muscles have only one neuromuscular junction per cell, an important exception is some of the cells in extraocular muscles. The extraocular muscles are *tonic* muscles, and, unlike other mammalian striated muscles, they are multiply innervated with several neuromuscular junctions strung along the surface of each muscle fiber.[20-23] Quite in contrast to other muscles, even the adult ocular muscle contains mature and immature fetal receptors (see section on "Biology of Prejunctional and Postjunctional Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptors") segregated into distinct synapses on different fibers.[20-22] The ocular muscles slowly contract and relax rather than quickly as do other striated muscles; they can maintain a steady contraction, or contracture, the strength of which is proportional to the stimulus received. Physiologically, this specialization apparently holds the eye steadily in position. Ocular muscles are important to an anesthesiologist because depolarizing muscle relaxants (e.g., succinylcholine) affect them differently than they do on most skeletal muscles. Instead of causing a brief contraction, followed by paralysis, the depolarizing drug causes a long-lasting contracture response that pulls the eye against the orbit and could contribute to an increase in intraocular fluid pressure.[22,23] The clinical significance of the succinylcholine-induced increase in intraocular pressure has been questioned. Although many textbooks invoke the reported extrusion of intraocular contents with succinylcholine, the basis for this effect seems to be anecdotal.[24] Clinical studies, however, have indicated that succinylcholine-induced contractions of the extraocular muscles can last as long as 1 to 2 minutes and isometric tensions larger than 12 g can develop for each extraocular muscle.[23] Thus, succinylcholine probably should not be given to patients with open eye injuries.

The perijunctional zone is the area of muscle immediately beyond the junctional area and is critical to the function of the neuromuscular junction. The perijunctional zone contains a mixture of receptors, including a smaller density of AChRs and a high density of sodium channels (see Fig. 12.1*D*). The admixture enhances the capacity of the perijunctional zone to respond to the depolarization (i.e., end-plate potential) produced by the AChRs and to transduce it into the wave of depolarization that travels along the muscle to initiate muscle contraction. The density of sodium channels in the perijunctional area is richer than in more distal parts of the muscle membrane.[25,26] The perijunctional zone is close enough to the nerve ending to be influenced by transmitter released from it. Moreover, special variants (i.e., isoforms) of receptors and sodium channels can appear in this area at different stages of life and in response to abnormal decreases in nerve activity (see section on "Biology of Prejunctional and Postjunctional Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptors"). Congenital abnormalities in the AChRs or in the sodium and calcium channels (i.e., mutations) are also known.[25-27] These variabilities seem to contribute to the differences in response to relaxants that are observed in patients with different pathologic conditions and ages.[17,27]

QUANTAL THEORY

The contents of a nerve ending are not homogeneous. As illustrated in Figs. 12.1*C* and 12.2, vesicles are congregated in the portion toward the junctional surface, whereas microtubules, mitochondria, and other support structures are located toward the opposite side. The vesicles containing transmitter are ordered in repeating clusters alongside small, thickened, electron-dense patches of membrane referred to as *active zones* or *release sites*. This thickened area is a cross section of a band running across the width of the synaptic surface of the nerve ending that is believed to be the structure to which vesicles attach (active zones) before they rupture into the junctional cleft (see section on "Process of Exocytosis"). High-resolution scanning electron micrographs reveal small protein particles arranged alongside the active zone between vesicles. These particles are believed to be special channels—voltage-gated calcium channels—that allow calcium to enter the nerve and cause the release of vesicles.[28,29] The rapidity with which the neurotransmitter is released (200 μs) suggests that voltage-gated calcium channels are close to the release sites. Proteomic studies suggest that at least 26 genes encode presynaptic proteins, and mutations in 12 of them cause defects in presynaptic structure that can lead to decreased acetylcholine release and muscle weakness.[30] These defects can be related to exocytosis, endocytosis, formation of active and periactive zones, vesicle transport, and neuropeptide modulation.[30]

When observing the electrophysiologic activity of a skeletal muscle, small, spontaneous depolarizing potentials at neuromuscular junctions can be seen. These potentials have only one hundredth the amplitude of the evoked end-plate potential produced when the motor nerve is stimulated. Except for amplitude, these potentials resemble the end-plate potential in the time course and manner they are affected by drugs. These small-amplitude potentials are called *miniature end-plate potentials* (MEPPs). Statistical analysis led to the conclusion that they are unitary responses; that is, there is a minimum size for the MEPP, and the sizes of all MEPPs are equal to or multiples of this minimum size. Because MEPPs are too large to be produced by a single molecule of acetylcholine, it was deduced that they are produced by uniformly sized packages, or quanta, of transmitter released from the

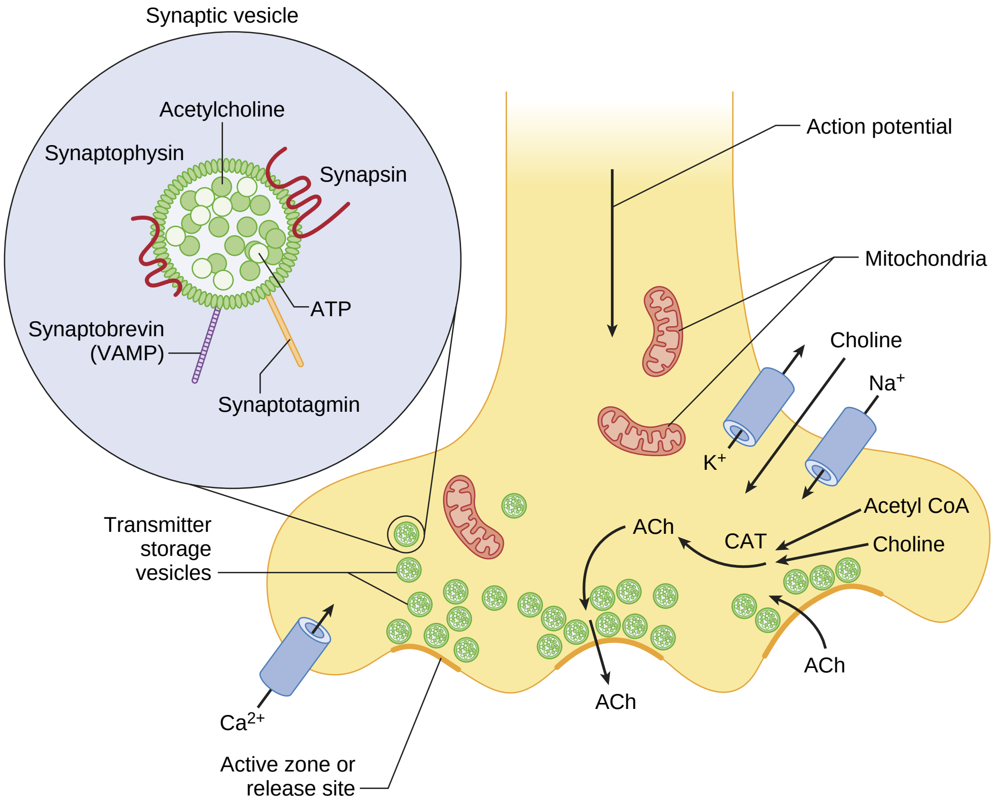


Fig. 12.2 The working of a chemical synapse, the motor nerve ending, including some of the apparatus for synthesis of transmitter, is illustrated. The large intracellular structures are mitochondria. Acetylcholine *(ACh)*, synthesized from choline and acetate by acetyl coenzyme A *(CoA)*, is transported into coated vesicles, which are moved to release sites. A presynaptic action potential that triggers the influx of calcium (Ca^{2+}) through specialized proteins (i.e., Ca^{2+} channels) causes the vesicles to fuse with the membrane and discharge transmitter. Membrane from the vesicle is retracted from the nerve membrane and recycled. Each vesicle can undergo various degrees of release of contents—from incomplete to complete. The transmitter is inactivated by diffusion, catabolism, or reuptake. The inset provides a magnified view of a synaptic vesicle. Quanta of ACh, together with adenosine triphosphate *(ATP)*, are stored in the vesicle and covered by vesicle membrane proteins. Synaptophysin is a glycoprotein component of the vesicle membrane. Synaptotagmin is the vesicle's calcium sensor. Phosphorylation of another membrane protein, synapsin, facilitates vesicular trafficking to the release site. Synaptobrevin (vesicle-associated membrane protein *[VAMP]*) is a SNARE protein involved in attaching the vesicle to the release-site proteins at the nerve terminal (see also Fig. 12.3). *CAT,* Choline acetyltransferase; *K^+*, potassium; *Na^+*, sodium.

nerve (in the absence of stimulation). The stimulus-evoked end-plate potential is the additive depolarization produced by the synchronous discharge of quanta from several hundred vesicles. The action potential that is propagated to the nerve ending allows the entry of calcium into the nerve through voltage-gated calcium channels, which causes vesicles to migrate to the active zone, fuse with the neural membrane at release sites, and discharge their acetylcholine into the junctional cleft.[28,29] Because the release sites are located immediately opposite the receptors on the postjunctional surface, little transmitter is wasted, and the response of the muscle is coupled directly with the signal from the nerve.[17,28]

Alignment of the presynaptic receptor site is achieved by adhesion molecules or specific cell-surface proteins located on both sides of the synapse that grip each other across the synaptic cleft and hold together the prejunctional and postjunctional synaptic apparatuses.[14,19,31] One such protein implicated in synapse adhesion is neurexin, which binds to neuroligins on the postsynaptic membrane. The amount of acetylcholine released by each nerve impulse is large, at least 200 quanta of approximately 5000 molecules each, and the number of AChRs activated by transmitter released by a nerve impulse is also large, approximately 500,000 molecules. The ions (mostly sodium and some calcium) that flow through the channels of activated (open) AChRs cause maximum depolarization of the end plate, which results in an end-plate potential that is greater than the threshold for stimulation of the muscle. This system is extremely vigorous. The signal is carried by more molecules of transmitter than are needed, and they evoke a response that is larger than needed. At the same time, only a small fraction of the available vesicles and receptors or channels are used to send each signal. Consequently, transmission has a substantial margin of safety, and, at the same time, the system has substantial capacity in reserve.[16-18,32]

Neuromuscular Junction

FORMATION OF NEUROTRANSMITTER AT MOTOR NERVE ENDINGS

The axon of the motor nerve carries electrical signals from the spinal cord to muscles and has all the biochemical apparatus needed to transform the electrical signal into a chemical one. All the ion channels, enzymes, other proteins, macromolecules, and membrane components needed by the nerve ending to synthesize, store, and release acetylcholine and other trophic factors are made in the cell body and transmitted to the nerve ending by axonal transport (see Fig. 12.2).[15,28,29] The simple molecules, choline and acetate, are obtained from the environment of the nerve ending, where choline is transported by a special system from extracellular fluid to the cytoplasm and acetate in the form of acetyl coenzyme A from mitochondria. The enzyme choline acetyltransferase brings about the reaction of choline and acetate to form acetylcholine. After synthesis, acetylcholine is stored in cytoplasm until it is transported and incorporated into vesicles, which are better positioned for release when an action potential reaches the nerve terminal.

NERVE ACTION POTENTIAL

During a nerve action potential, sodium from outside flows across the membrane, and the resulting depolarizing voltage opens the calcium channels, which allows entry of calcium ions into the nerve and causes acetylcholine to be released. A nerve action potential is the normal activator that releases the transmitter acetylcholine. The number of quanta released by a stimulated nerve is greatly influenced by the concentration of ionized calcium in extracellular fluid. If calcium is not present, then depolarization of the nerve, even by electrical stimulation, will not produce the release of transmitter. Doubling the extracellular calcium results in a 16-fold increase in the quantal content of an end-plate potential.[33] The calcium current persists until the membrane potential is returned to normal by outward fluxes of potassium from inside the nerve cell. Along with calcium channels on the nerve terminal are potassium channels, including the voltage-gated and calcium-activated potassium channels, whose function is to limit entry of calcium into the nerve and therefore depolarization.[26,32] The calcium current can be prolonged by potassium channel blockers (e.g., 4-aminopyridine, tetraethylammonium), which slow or prevent the efflux of potassium out of the nerve. The increase in quantal content produced in this way can reach astounding proportions.[17,34] An effect of increasing calcium in the nerve ending is also clinically observed as the so-called *posttetanic potentiation* (PTP), which occurs after a nerve of a patient paralyzed with an NDMR is stimulated at high, tetanic frequencies. Calcium enters the nerve with every stimulus, but it accumulates during the tetanic period because it cannot be excreted as quickly as the nerve is stimulated. Because the nerve ending contains more than the normal amount of calcium for some time after the tetanus, a stimulus applied to the nerve during this time causes the release of more than the normal amount of acetylcholine. The abnormally large amount of acetylcholine antagonizes the relaxant (temporarily) and causes the characteristic increase in the size of the twitch (i.e., post tetanic facilitation).

Calcium enters the nerve through specialized proteins called *calcium channels*.[15,35] Of the several types of calcium channels, two seem to be important for the release of transmitter: P channels and the slower L channels. P channels, probably the type responsible for the normal release of transmitter, are found only in nerve terminals.[13,35] In motor nerve endings, the calcium channels are located immediately adjacent to the active zones (see Fig 12.2). They are voltage-dependent and are opened and closed by changes in membrane voltage caused by the nerve action potential. In addition to calcium channels, several forms of potassium channels are present in the nerve terminal, including voltage-gated and calcium-activated potassium channels. Potassium channels limit the duration of nerve terminal depolarization and hence the entry of calcium and the release of transmitter.[26] Alterations in entry of calcium into the nerve ending can also alter the release of transmitter. The Eaton-Lambert myasthenic syndrome, which should not be confused with myasthenia gravis, is an acquired autoimmune disease in which antibodies are directed against voltage-gated calcium channels at nerve endings.[36] In this syndrome, decreased function of the calcium channel causes decreased release of transmitter, which results in inadequate depolarization and muscle weakness. Patients with Eaton-Lambert myasthenic syndrome exhibit increased sensitivity to depolarizing and nondepolarizing relaxants.[37]

Higher-than-normal concentrations of bivalent inorganic cations (e.g., magnesium, cadmium, manganese) can also block the entry of calcium through P channels and profoundly impair neuromuscular transmission. This mechanism is behind the typical muscle weakness and potentiation of the effect of muscle relaxants in a mother and fetus when magnesium sulfate is administered to treat preeclampsia. P channels, however, are not affected by calcium entry-blocking drugs such as verapamil, diltiazem, and nifedipine. These drugs have profound effects on the slower L channels present in the cardiovascular system. As a result, the L-type calcium channel blockers have no significant effect at therapeutic doses on the normal release of acetylcholine or on the strength of normal neuromuscular transmission. However, calcium entry-blocking drugs may increase the block in neuromuscular transmission induced by NDMRs. The effect is small, and not all investigators have been able to observe it. The explanation may lie in the fact that nerve endings also contain L-type calcium channels. The effects of calcium channels on depolarizing relaxants, if any, are unknown.

SYNAPTIC VESICLES AND RECYCLING

Two pools of vesicles seem to release acetylcholine, a readily releasable pool and a reserve pool, sometimes called VP1 and VP2, respectively.[38,39] Electron microscopic studies have demonstrated that the majority of synaptic vesicles (VP1) are sequestered in the reserve pool and tethered to the cytoskeleton in a filamentous network made up of primarily actin, synapsin (an actin-binding protein), synaptotagmin, and spectrin.[38,39] Vesicles in VP2 are a bit smaller and limited to an area very close to the nerve membrane, where they are bound to the active zones. These vesicles are the ones that ordinarily release transmitter. Release occurs when calcium ions enter the nerve through the P channels lined up on the sides of the active zones by soluble *N*-ethylmaleimide-sensitive attachment protein receptor (SNARE) proteins.[38,39] The SNARE proteins are involved in fusion, docking, and release of acetylcholine at the active zone. Calcium needs to move only a very short distance (i.e., a few atomic radii) to encounter a vesicle and activate the proteins in the vesicle wall involved in a process known as *docking* (see section on "Process of Exocytosis").[39] The activated proteins seem to react with the nerve membrane to form a pore through which the vesicle discharges its acetylcholine into the junctional cleft. Studies using fluorescent proteins

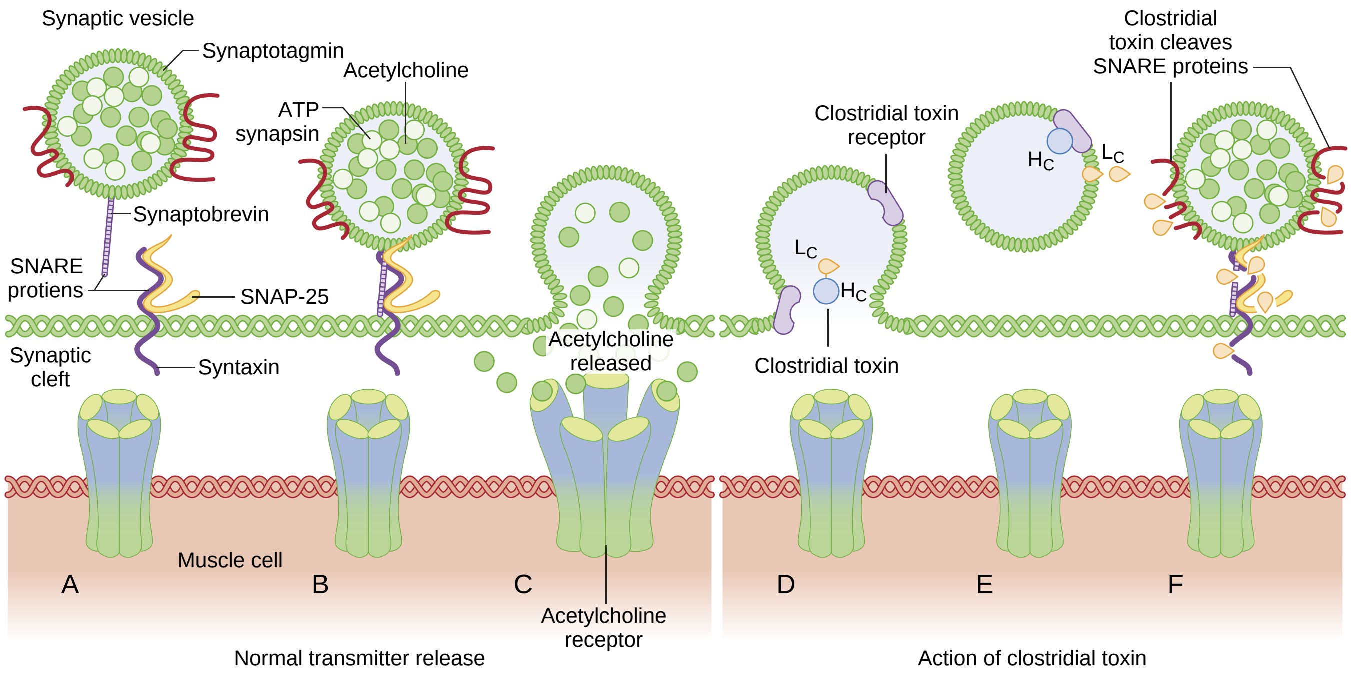


Fig. 12.3 Model of protein-mediated membrane fusion and exocytosis. (A) Release of acetylcholine from vesicles is mediated by a series of proteins collectively called *SNARE* proteins. Synaptotagmin is the neuronal calcium receptor that detects entry of calcium. Synaptobrevin (i.e., vesicle-associated membrane protein [VAMP]) is a filament-like protein on the vesicle. (B) During depolarization and entry of calcium, synapsin is also present on the vesicle membrane. Synaptobrevin on the vesicle unfolds and forms a ternary complex with syntaxin/SNAP-25 on the nerve terminal membrane. (C) Assembly of the ternary complex forces the vesicle in close apposition to the nerve membrane at the active zone with release of its contents, acetylcholine. The fusion is disassembled, and the vesicle is recycled. (D) Clostridial toxin, botulinum, inhibits the release of acetylcholine and causes paralysis of muscles. The toxin consists of a light chain *(L_c)* and a heavy chain *(H_c)*. The first stage in intoxication is the interaction of the toxin with a thus far unidentified receptor. (E) This interaction is followed by internalization of the toxin within the vesicle and the release of the L_c of toxin from the vesicle. (F) The liberated L_c cleaves a variety of SNARE proteins, depending on the type of toxin released, thereby preventing assembly of the fusion complex and thus blocking the release of acetylcholine. *ATP*, Adenosine triphosphate; *SNAP-25*, synaptosome-associated protein of 25-kd.

have visualized how synaptic vesicles fuse with release sites and release their contents, which are then retrieved. Some vesicles stay open briefly before retrieval and do not completely collapse into the surface membrane (“kiss and run”). Others stay open longer and probably do not completely collapse (“compensatory”). Still others completely collapse and are not retrieved until another stimulus is delivered (“stranded”).[38,39]

The larger reserve (VP1) vesicles, from their position deep from the nerve ending and firmly tethered to the cytoskeleton by many proteins, including actin, synapsin (an actin-binding protein), synaptotagmin, and spectrin,[37,38] may be moved to the readily releasable store to replace worn-out vesicles or to participate in transmission when the nerve is called on to work especially hard (e.g., when it is stimulated at very high frequencies or for a very long time). Under such strenuous circumstances, calcium may penetrate more deeply than normal into the nerve or may enter through L channels to activate calcium-dependent enzymes that break the synapsin links holding the vesicles to the cytoskeleton, thereby allowing the vesicles to be moved to the release sites. Repeated stimulation requires the nerve ending to replenish its store of vesicles filled with transmitter, a process known as *mobilization*. The term is commonly applied to the aggregate of all steps involved in maintaining the nerve ending’s capacity to release transmitter—everything from the acquisition of choline and the synthesis of acetate to the movement of filled vesicles to release sites. Uptake of choline and the activity of choline acetyltransferase, the enzyme that synthesizes acetylcholine, are probably the rate-limiting steps.[15,29]

PROCESS OF EXOCYTOSIS

The readily releasable pool of synaptic vesicles constitutes the vesicles directly available for release. During an action potential and calcium influx, neurotransmitter is released. Studies have shed some light on the inner workings by which the vesicle releases its contents. The whole process is called *exocytosis*. The SNARE proteins include (Fig. 12.3*A*) the synaptic-vesicle protein, synaptobrevin; the plasmalemma-associated protein, syntaxin; and the synaptosome-associated protein of 25-kd (SNAP-25).[38,39] The current model of protein-mediated membrane fusion in exocytosis is as follows. When there is an action potential and calcium ions enter, synapsin becomes phosphorylated, which frees the vesicle from its attachment to the cytoskeleton. Syntaxin and SNAP-25 are complexes attached to the plasma membrane. After the initial contact, the synaptobrevin on the vesicle forms a ternary complex with syntaxin and SNAP-25. Synaptotagmin is the protein on the vesicular membrane that acts as a calcium sensor, localizes the synaptic vesicles to synaptic zones rich in calcium channels, and stabilizes the vesicles in the docked state.[38] Assembly of the ternary complex forces the vesicle to move close to the underlying nerve terminal membrane (i.e., the active zone), and the vesicle is then ready for release (see Fig. 12.3*B*). The close proximity of release sites, calcium channels, and synaptic vesicles and the use of the calcium sensor lead to a burst of release of new transmitter synchronous with the stimulus (see Fig. 12.3*C*).[37-40] The vesicle can release part or all of its contents, some of which can be recycled to form new vesicles as previously described ("kiss and run," "compensatory," "stranded").[37-40]

Botulinum neurotoxin selectively digests one or all these SNARE proteins and blocks exocytosis of the vesicles,[41,42] which ultimately results in muscle weakness or more profound muscle paralysis. This toxin may produce a partial or complete chemical denervation. Botulinum toxin is therapeutically used to treat spasticity or spasm in several neurologic and surgical diseases, to prevent hyperhidrosis in patients with excessive sweating, and cosmetically to correct wrinkles.[43,44] Botulinum toxin consists of two protein segments known as heavy and light chains (see Fig. 12.3*D* and *E*). The heavy chain interacts with lipid molecules called *polysialogangliosides* in the cell membrane and synaptotagmin on the vesicle to enter the vesicle. Once in the vesicle, the light chain inactivates neuromuscular transmission by breakdown and thereby inhibits the function of SNARE proteins (see Fig. 12.3*F*). Some reports indicate an increased incidence of clostridial infections in both Canada and the United States, with *Clostridium botulinum* infection being particularly common after traumatic injuries, in drug abusers, and after musculoskeletal allografts.[6,7] Thus, systemic paralysis can occur after clostridial infection. Local injection for therapeutic purposes will usually result in localized paresis, although systemic effects have been reported.[7,45]

ACETYLCHOLINESTERASE

The acetylcholine released from the nerve diffuses across the junctional cleft and reacts with nicotinic AChRs in the end plate to initiate muscle contraction. Transmitter molecules that do not immediately react with a nicotinic AChR or those released after binding to the receptor are almost instantly destroyed by acetylcholinesterase in the junctional cleft. Acetylcholinesterase at the junction is the asymmetric or A12 form protein made in the muscle under the end plate. Acetylcholinesterase (enzyme classification 3.1.1.7) is type B carboxylesterase enzyme. A smaller concentration of the enzyme is found in the extrajunctional area. The enzyme is secreted from the muscle but remains attached to it by thin stalks of collagen fastened to the basement membrane.[15,37] Most of the molecules of acetylcholine released from the nerve initially pass between the enzymes to reach the postjunctional receptors; however, as they are released from the receptors, they invariably encounter acetylcholinesterase and are destroyed. Under normal circumstances, a molecule of acetylcholine reacts with only one receptor before it is hydrolyzed. Acetylcholine is a potent messenger, but its actions are very short lived because it is destroyed in less than 1 ms after it is released.

Some congenital and acquired diseases are caused by altered activity of acetylcholinesterase. The congenital absence of the secreted enzyme (in knock-out mice) leads to impaired maintenance of the motor neuronal system and organization of nerve terminal branches.[46] Many syndromes caused by congenital abnormalities in cholinesterase function have been described and result in neuromuscular disorders whose symptoms and signs usually resemble those of myasthenia gravis or myasthenic syndromes.[27,47] Denervation decreases acetylcholinesterase at the junctional and extrajunctional areas.[37] Other acquired diseases involving cholinesterases are related to chronic inhibition of acetylcholinesterase by organophosphate pesticides or nerve gas (e.g., sarin) or to chronic pyridostigmine therapy given as prophylaxis against nerve gas poisoning.[48,49] Symptoms ranging from chronic fatigue to muscle weakness have been attributed to chronic cholinesterase inhibition, thus underscoring the importance of acetylcholinesterase in normal and abnormal neuromuscular function. A rodent study confirms that the muscle weakness associated with chronic pyridostigmine therapy is related to both AChRs downregulation and to receptor-independent factors.[50]

POSTJUNCTIONAL ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTORS

The similarity of AChRs among many species and the abundance of AChRs from *Torpedo electric fish* have greatly facilitated research in this area. The availability of messenger RNA from humans and other species and DNA has allowed the study of the receptor in artificial systems such as oocytes from frogs and in mammalian cells that do not express the receptor, such as COS or fibroblast cells. Receptors can also be mutated by molecular techniques to simulate pathologic states; the receptor function in these artificial systems can then be studied. By using these and related techniques, much has been learned about the synthesis, composition, and biologic function and mechanisms that underlie the physiologic and pharmacologic responses in AChRs.[51-53] Three isoforms of postjunctional nicotinic AChRs exist: a junctional or mature receptor, an extrajunctional or immature (fetal) receptor, and the more recently described neuronal α7 nicotinic receptor (see section on "Biology of Prejunctional and Postjunctional Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptors").[2,16,18] The differences between receptor subtypes, however, can be neglected in a general discussion of the role of receptors in neuromuscular transmission.

AChRs are synthesized in muscle cells and are anchored to the end-plate membrane by a special 43-kd protein known as *rapsyn*. This cytoplasmic protein is associated with the AChR in a 1:1 ratio.[16-19] The receptors, formed of five subunit proteins, are arranged like the staves of a barrel into a cylindrical receptor with a central pore for ion channeling (the key features are illustrated in Fig. 12.4). The receptor protein has a molecular mass of approximately 250,000 daltons. The mature receptor consists of α1-, β1-, δ-, and ε-subunits, and the fetal (immature, extrajunctional) receptor consists of α1-, β1-, δ-, and γ-subunits; there are two subunits of α and one each of the others. The neuronal α7 AChR consists of five α7-subunits.[16,18] Each of all receptor subunits consists of approximately 400 to 500 amino acids. The receptor-protein complex passes entirely through the membrane and protrudes beyond the extracellular surface of the membrane and into the cytoplasm. The binding site for acetylcholine is on each of the α1- or α7- subunits, is located on the extracellular component of the α-subunit protein, and these are the sites of competition between receptor agonists and antagonists. Agonists and antagonists are attracted to the binding site, and either may occupy the site, which is located near cysteine residues

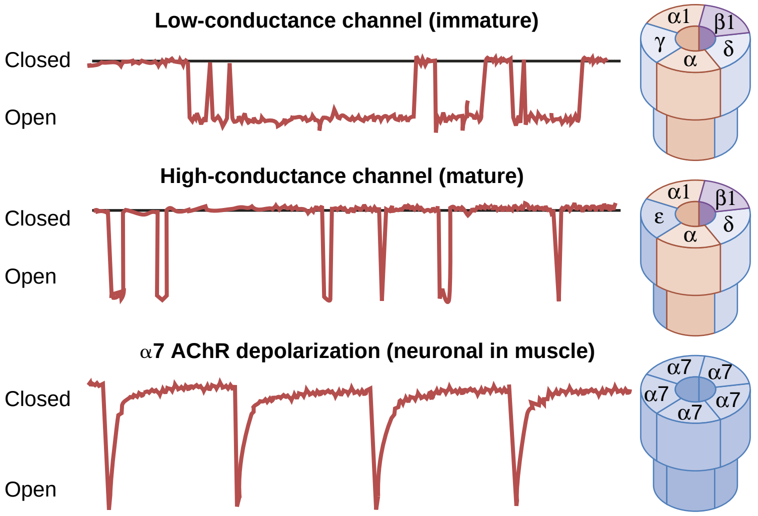

Low-conductance channel (immature)
Closed
Open
α1
β1
γ
δ
α
High-conductance channel (mature)
Closed
Open
α1
β1
ε
δ
α
α7 AChR depolarization (neuronal in muscle)
Closed
Open
α7
α7
α7
α7
α7

Fig. 12.4 Schematic illustration depicts acetylcholine receptor *(AChR)* channels *(right)* and tracings of cell-patch records of receptor channel openings *(left)*. The mature or junctional receptor consists of two α1-subunits and one each of β1-, δ-, and ε-subunits. The immature, extrajunctional, or fetal form consists of two α1-subunits and one each of β1-, δ-, and γ-subunits. The latter is thus called the γ-subunit receptor. Recently, a neuronal receptor consisting of five α7-subunits has been described in muscle. All the subunits are arranged around the central cation channel. The immature isoform containing the γ-subunit has long open times and low-amplitude channel currents. The mature isoform containing the ε-subunit has shorter open times and high-amplitude channel currents during depolarization. Substitution of the ε-subunit for the γ-subunit gives rise to the fast-gated, high-conductance channel type. As expected, application of acetylcholine to the α7 AChR also results in a fast, rapidly decaying inward current. All these depolarizing events are insensitive to treatment with muscarinic acetylcholine receptor antagonist, atropine, but sensitive to treatment with α-bungarotoxin or muscle relaxants, which block the flow of current. The affinity of the muscle relaxants to each of the three isoforms may be different, α7 AChR being the least sensitive to block.

(unique to the α-chain) at amino acid positions 192 to 193 of the α-subunit.[16-18] Radiolabeled α-bungarotoxin from the cobra, used to quantitate or fluorescent stain the receptor, binds to heptapeptide region 185 to 199 of the α-subunit.[54] Motor neuron-derived neuregulin-1β (NRβ-1), originally described as AChR-inducing activity (ARIA), induces AChR gene transcription in subsynaptic myonuclei by activating ErbB receptors.[16-19]

SYNTHESIS AND STABILIZATION OF POSTJUNCTIONAL RECEPTORS

Muscle tissue is formed from the mesoderm and initially appears as myoblasts. Myoblasts fuse to produce myotubes, which therefore have multiple nuclei. As the myotubes mature, the sarcomere, which is the contractile element of the muscle consisting of actin and myosin, develops.[55] The protein β-integrin seems to be essential for myoblast fusion and sarcomere assembly.[55] Shortly afterward, motor nerve axons grow into the developing muscle, and these axons bring in nerve-derived signals (i.e., growth factors), including agrin and neuregulins (NRβ-1 and NRβ-2), which are key to the maturation of myotubes to muscle.[19] Agrin is a protein from the nerve that stimulates postsynaptic differentiation by activating muscle-specific tyrosine kinase (MuSK), a tyrosine kinase expressed selectively in muscle. With signaling from agrin, the AChRs, which have been scattered throughout the muscle membrane, cluster at the area immediately beneath the nerve. Agrin, together with neuregulins and other growth factors, induce the clustering of other critical muscle-derived proteins, including MuSK, rapsyn, and ErbB proteins, all of which are necessary for maturation and stabilization of AChRs at the junction. In addition to the effects on postsynaptic differentiation, agrin and MuSK display effects on presynaptic differentiation as well. Agrin and MuSK induce retrograde signals that instruct axons to undergo neuron outgrowth and terminal differentiation.[19] Current understanding of presynaptic development of the neuromuscular junction, however, is significantly less advanced than the understanding of postsynaptic development. Just before and shortly after birth, the immature, γ-subunit-containing AChRs are replaced by the mature, ε-subunit-containing receptors. Although the mechanism of this change is unclear, a neuregulin, NRβ-1, also called *ARIA*, that binds to one of the ErbB receptors seems to play a role.[19,56]

BASIC ELECTROPHYSIOLOGY OF NEUROTRANSMISSION

Fig. 12.5 illustrates the results of the classic depolarizing action of acetylcholine on end-plate receptors. Normally, the pore of the channel is closed by approximation of the cylinders (i.e., subunits). When an agonist occupies both α-subunit sites, the protein molecule undergoes a conformational change with a twisting movement along the central axis of the receptor that results in the opening of the central channel through which ions can flow along a concentration gradient. When the central channel is open, sodium and calcium flow from the outside of the cell to the inside and potassium flows from the inside to the outside. The channel in the tube is large enough to accommodate many cations and electrically neutral molecules, but it excludes anions (e.g., chloride). The current transported by the ions depolarizes the adjacent membrane. The net current is depolarizing and creates the end-plate potential that stimulates the muscle to contract. In this instance, downward-going (i.e., depolarizing) current can be recorded by

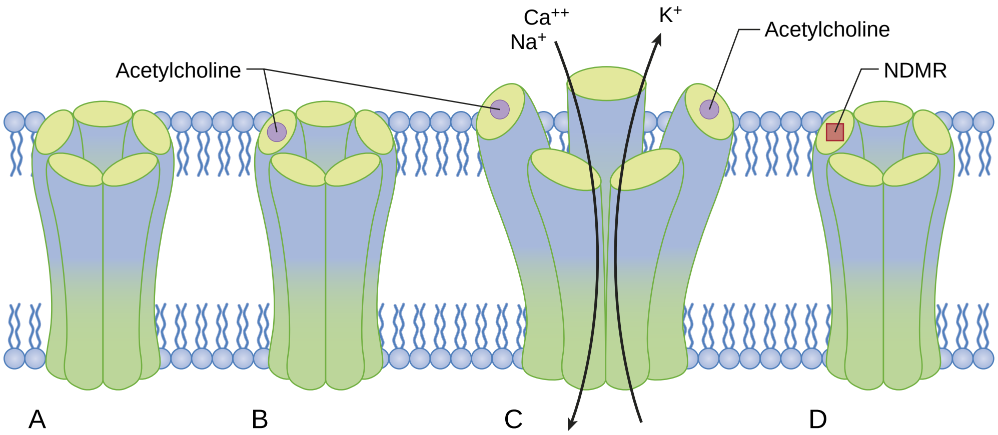


Fig. 12.5 Actions of acetylcholine or non-depolarizing muscle relaxant (NDMR) on end-plate receptors. (A) The ion channel is inactive and does not open in the absence of acetylcholine. (B) Although one acetylcholine molecule *(filled circle)* is binding to one of two binding sites, the central channel does not open. (C), When acetylcholine simultaneously binds to the recognition sites of both α-subunits *(filled circles)*, a conformation change is triggered that opens the channel and allows the cations to flow across the membrane. (D) Action of antagonists such as an NDMR *(filled square)*. Acetylcholine is in competition with NDMR for the receptor's recognition site but may also react with acetylcholinesterase. Inhibiting the acetylcholinesterase enzyme increases the lifetime of acetylcholine and the probability that it will react with a receptor. When one of the two binding (recognition) sites is occupied by an NDMR, the receptor will not open, even if the other binding site is occupied by acetylcholine. *Ca^{2++}*, Calcium ion; *K^+*, potassium ion; *Na^+*, sodium ion.

the patch-clamp electrophysiologic technique previously described (see Fig. 12.4).

The pulse stops when the channel closes by a reversed mechanical conformation (see earlier discussion), which is typically initiated when one or both agonist molecules detach from the receptor. In the activated, open state, the current that passes through each open channel is minuscule, only a few picoamperes (approximately 10^4 ions/ms). However, each burst of acetylcholine from the nerve normally opens approximately 500,000 channels simultaneously, and the total current is more than adequate to produce depolarization of the end plate and contraction of muscle. Opening of a channel causes conversion of chemical signals from a nerve to the flow of current on the muscle disease to cause end-plate potentials, thereby leading to muscle contraction. The end-plate potential has been viewed as a graded event that may be reduced in magnitude or extended in time by drugs, but, in reality, the end-plate potential is the summation of many all-or-nothing events simultaneously occurring at myriad ion channels. It is these tiny events that are affected by drugs.

Receptors that do not have two molecules of agonist (e.g., acetylcholine) bound remain closed. Both α-subunits must be simultaneously occupied by agonist; if only one of them is occupied, then the channel remains closed (see Fig. 12.5). This is the basis for preventing depolarization by antagonists. NDMRs act by binding to either or both α-subunits and thus preventing acetylcholine from binding and opening the channel. This interaction between agonists and antagonists is competitive, and the outcome—transmission or block—depends on the relative concentrations and binding characteristics of the drugs involved (see section on "Drug Effects on Postjunctional Receptors").

Individual channels are also capable of a wide variety of conformational states.[17,57] They may stay open or remain closed and thereby affect total current flow across the membrane, but they can do more. They may open for a longer or shorter time than normal, open or close more gradually than usual, open briefly and repeatedly (i.e., flickering), or pass fewer or more ions per opening than they usually do. Their function is also influenced by drugs, changes in fluidity of the membrane, temperature, electrolyte balance in the milieu, and other physical and chemical factors.[38,39] Receptor channels are dynamic structures that are capable of a wide variety of interactions with drugs and of entering a wide variety of current-passing states. All these influences on channel activity are ultimately reflected in the strength or weakness of neuromuscular transmission and contraction of a muscle.

Drug Effects on Postjunctional Receptors

CLASSIC ACTIONS OF NONDEPOLARIZING MUSCLE RELAXANTS

Neurotransmission occurs when acetylcholine released by the nerve action potential binds to nicotinic AChRs. All NDMRs impair or block neurotransmission by competitively preventing the binding of acetylcholine to the muscle AChR. The final outcome—block or transmission—depends on the relative concentrations of the chemicals and their comparative affinities for the receptor. Fig. 12.5 shows a system exposed to acetylcholine and the nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking compound. One receptor has attracted two acetylcholine molecules and has opened its channel, where current will flow to depolarize that segment of membrane. Another has attracted one molecule of NDMR; its channel will not open, and no current will flow, even if one acetylcholine molecule binds to the other site. The third receptor has acetylcholine on one α-subunit and nothing on the other. What will happen depends on which of the molecules binds. If acetylcholine binds, then the channel will open and the membrane will be depolarized; if a NDMR binds, then the channel will remain closed and the membrane will not be depolarized. At other times, one or two molecules of NDMR may attach to the receptor, in which case the receptor is not available to agonists; no current flow is recorded. In the presence of moderate concentrations of NDMR, the amount of current flowing through the entire end plate at any instant is reduced from normal, which results in a smaller end-plate potential and, if carried far enough, a block in neurotransmission or the production of neuromuscular paralysis.

Normally, acetylcholinesterase destroys acetylcholine and removes it from competition for a receptor; therefore, an NDMR has a better chance of inhibiting transmission. If, however, an inhibitor of acetylcholinesterase such as neostigmine is added, then the cholinesterase cannot destroy acetylcholine. The concentration of agonist in the cleft remains high, and this high concentration shifts the competition between acetylcholine and a NDMR in favor of the former, thereby improving the chance of two acetylcholine molecules binding to a receptor even though NDMR is still in the environment. This mechanism causes the cholinesterase inhibitors to overcome the neuromuscular paralysis produced by NDMRs. The channel opens only when acetylcholine attaches to both recognition sites. A single molecule of antagonist, however, is adequate to prevent depolarization of that receptor. This modifies the competition by strongly biasing it in favor of the antagonist (relaxant). Mathematically, if the concentration of a NDMR is doubled, then the concentration of acetylcholine must be increased fourfold if acetylcholine is to remain competitive. Paralysis produced by high concentrations of muscle relaxants (antagonist) is more difficult to reverse with cholinesterase inhibitors than that produced by low concentrations. After large doses of NDMRs, cholinesterase inhibitors may be ineffective until the concentration of relaxant in the perijunctional area decreases to a lower level by the redistribution or elimination of the drug. This is the molecular basis for the recommendation to not administer anticholinesterases too early (i.e., at a deep block). In contrast to reversal with a cholinesterase inhibitor, cyclodextrin encapsulation takes place at any concentration of a steroid-based compound, such as vecuronium or rocuronium, and reversal by this novel mechanism can therefore be achieved at any level of neuromuscular block provided the amount of cyclodextrin (sugammadex) is large enough.

CLASSIC ACTIONS OF DEPOLARIZING MUSCLE RELAXANTS

Depolarizing relaxants (e.g., succinylcholine, decamethonium) initially simulate the effect of acetylcholine and can be considered agonists, despite the fact that they block neurotransmission after the initial stimulation. Structurally, succinylcholine is very similar to the natural ligand acetylcholine and consists of two molecules of acetylcholine bound together through their backbones. It is thus not surprising that succinylcholine can mimic the effects of acetylcholine.

Succinylcholine or decamethonium can bind to the receptor, open the channel, pass current, and depolarize the end plate. These agonists, similar to acetylcholine, attach only briefly; each opening of a channel is very short in duration—1 ms or less. The response to acetylcholine, however, is over in milliseconds because of its rapid degradation by acetylcholinesterase, and the end plate resets to its resting state long before another nerve impulse arrives. In contrast, the depolarizing relaxants characteristically have a biphasic action on muscle—an initial contraction, followed by relaxation lasting from minutes to hours. Because they are not susceptible to hydrolysis by acetylcholinesterase, the depolarizing relaxants are not eliminated from the junctional cleft until after they are eliminated from plasma. The time required to clear the drug from the body is the principal determinant of how long the drug effect lasts. Whole-body clearance of the relaxant is very slow in comparison to acetylcholine, particularly when plasma (pseudo) cholinesterase is abnormal. Because the relaxant molecules are not quickly cleared from the cleft, compared with acetylcholine, they repeatedly react with receptors even with normal levels of plasma cholinesterase, almost immediately attaching to a receptor after separating from another, thereby repeatedly depolarizing the end plate and opening channels. For details on the effect of succinylcholine in patients with cholinesterase deficiency, also see Chapter 27.

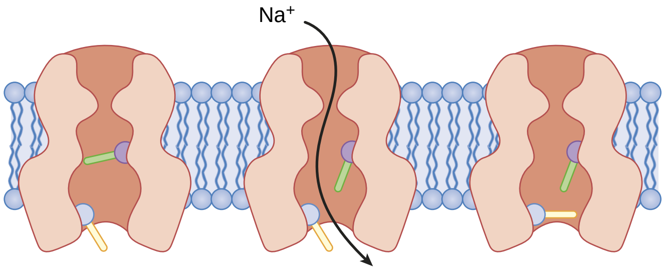


Fig. 12.6 Illustration of a sodium (Na^+) channel. The bars represent parts of the molecule that act as gates. The upper bar is voltage dependent; the lower bar is time dependent. The left side of the drawing represents the resting state. Once activated by a change in voltage, the molecule and its gates progress as illustrated *(left to right)*. See text for details.

The quick shift from excitation of muscle contraction to block of transmission by depolarizing relaxants occurs because the end plate is continuously depolarized. This comes about as a result of the juxtaposition of the edge of the end plate with a different kind of ion channel, the sodium channel that does not respond to chemicals but opens when exposed to a transmembrane voltage change. Just as the AChR, the sodium channel is also a cylindrical transmembrane protein through which sodium ions can flow. Two parts of its structure act as gates that allow or stop the flow of sodium ions.[58] Both gates must be open if sodium is to flow through the channel; closing of either cuts off the flow. Because these two gates act sequentially, a sodium channel has three functional conformational states and can progressively move from one state to another (Fig. 12.6). This whole process is short lived when depolarization occurs with acetylcholine.[58] The initial response of a depolarizing muscle relaxant resembles that of acetylcholine, but because the muscle relaxant is not rapidly hydrolyzed, depolarization of the end plate is not brief.

Depolarization of the end plate by the depolarizing relaxant initially causes the voltage gate in adjacent sodium channels to open, thereby producing a wave of depolarization that sweeps along the muscle and generates a muscle contraction. Shortly after the voltage-dependent gate opens, the time-dependent inactivation gate closes. Because the relaxant is not removed from the cleft, the end plate continues to be depolarized. Because the sodium channels immediately adjacent to the end plate are influenced by depolarization of the end plate, their voltage-dependent gates stay open and their inactivation gates stay closed. Since sodium cannot flow through a channel that has a closed inactivation gate, the perijunctional muscle membrane does not depolarize. When the flow of ions through sodium channels in the perijunctional zone stops because of a closure of the inactivation gates, the channels downstream (beyond the perijunctional zone) are freed of depolarizing influence. In effect, the perijunctional zone becomes a buffer that shields the rest of the muscle from events at the end plate. Consequently, the muscle membrane is separated into three zones: (1) the end plate, which is depolarized by succinylcholine; (2) the perijunctional muscle membrane, in which the sodium channels are frozen in an inactivated state; and (3) the rest of the muscle membrane, in which the sodium channels are in the resting state. Because a burst of acetylcholine from the nerve cannot overcome the inactivated sodium channels in the perijunctional zone, neuromuscular transmission is blocked. This phenomenon is also called *accommodation*. During accommodation, when the synapse is inexcitable through the nerve (transmitter), direct electrical stimulation of muscle causes muscle contraction because the sodium channels beyond the junctional area are in the resting excitable state.

The extraocular muscles are tonic muscles, which are multiply innervated and chemically excitable along most of their surfaces.[20-23] Despite their innervated state, the ocular muscles express both mature and immature receptors.[20,22] Accommodation does not occur, and these muscles can undergo a sustained contracture in the presence of succinylcholine. The tension that develops forces the eye against the orbit and accounts for part of the increase in intraocular pressure produced by depolarizing relaxants. The extraocular muscles contain a special type of receptor that does not become desensitized (see later discussion) during the continued presence of acetylcholine or other agonists.[21,23] A single dose of succinylcholine can cause contracture lasting several minutes.[23] Whether it is the immature γ-subunit AChR or the α7 AChR subunit that plays a role in this resistance to desensitization in the ocular muscles is unknown.

NONCLASSIC AND NONCOMPETITIVE ACTIONS OF NEUROMUSCULAR DRUGS

Several drugs can interfere with the receptor, directly or through its lipid environment, and can change transmission (Box 12.1). These drugs react with the neuromuscular receptor to change its function and impair transmission, but they do not act through the acetylcholine binding site. These reactions cause drug-induced changes in the dynamics of the receptor; instead of sharply opening and closing, the modified channels are sluggish. They open more slowly and stay open longer, or they close slowly and in several steps, or both. These effects on channels cause corresponding changes in the flow of ions and distortions of the end-plate potential. The clinical effect depends on the molecular events. For example, procaine, ketamine, inhaled anesthetics, or other drugs that dissolve in the membrane lipid may change the opening or closing characteristics of the channel.[57,59] If the channel is prevented from opening, then transmission is weakened. If, however, the channel is prevented from or slowed in closing, then transmission may be enhanced. These drugs do not fit the classic model, and the impaired neuromuscular function is not antagonized by increasing perijunctional acetylcholine concentrations with cholinesterase inhibitors. Such drugs can be involved in two clinically important reactions: receptor desensitization and channel block. The former occurs in the receptor molecule, whereas the latter occurs in the ion channel.

BOX 12.1 **Drugs That Can Cause or Promote Desensitization of Muscle Nicotinic Receptors**

- Volatile anesthetics
  - Halothane
  - Sevoflurane
  - Isoflurane
- Antibiotics
  - Polymyxin B
- Cocaine
- Alcohols
  - Ethanol
  - Butanol
  - Propanol
  - Octanol
- Barbiturates
  - Thiopental
  - Pentobarbital
- Agonists
  - Acetylcholine
  - Decamethonium
  - Carbachol
  - Succinylcholine
- Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors
  - Neostigmine
  - Pyridostigmine
  - Di-isopropyl-fluorophosphate
  - Edrophonium
- Local anesthetics
  - Dibucaine
  - Lidocaine
  - Prilocaine
  - Etidocaine
- Phenothiazines
  - Chlorpromazine
  - Trifluoperazine
  - Prochlorperazine
- Phencyclidine
- Calcium channel blockers
  - Verapamil

DESENSITIZATION BLOCK

The AChR, as a result of its flexibility and the fluidity of the lipid around it, is capable of existing in a number of conformational states.[57-61] Because the resting receptor is free of agonist, its channel is closed. The second state exists when two molecules of agonist are bound to the α-subunit of the receptor and the receptor has undergone the conformational change that opens the channel and allows ions to flow. These reactions are the bases of normal neuromuscular transmission. Some receptors that bind to agonists, however, do not undergo the conformational change to open the channel. Receptors in these states are called desensitized (i.e., they are not sensitive to the channel-opening actions of agonists). They bind agonists with exceptional avidity, but the binding does not result in the opening of the channel. The mechanisms by which desensitization occurs are not known. The receptor macromolecule, 1000 times larger by weight than most drugs or gases, provides many places at which the smaller molecules may act. The interface between lipid and receptor protein provides additional potential sites of reaction. Several different conformations of the protein are known, and because acetylcholine cannot cause the ion channel to open in any of them, they all are included in the functional term *desensitization*. Desensitization is accompanied by phosphorylation of a tyrosine unit in the receptor protein.[61,62]

Although agonists (e.g., succinylcholine) induce desensitization, the receptors are in a constant state of transition between resting and desensitized states, regardless of whether agonists are present. Agonists do promote transition to a desensitized state or, because they bind very tightly to desensitized receptors, trap a receptor in a desensitized state. NDMRs also tightly bind to desensitized receptors and can trap molecules in these states. This action of NDMRs is not competitive with that of acetylcholine; it may be augmented by acetylcholine if the latter promotes the change to a desensitized state. Desensitization can lead to significant misinterpretation of data. Superficially, the preparation seems to be normal, but its responsiveness to agonists or antagonists is altered. One variety occurs very rapidly, within a few milliseconds after application of an agonist, which may explain the increased sensitivity to nondepolarizing relaxant after the prior administration of succinylcholine. Desensitization may also be a part of the phenomenon known as *phase II block* (see section on “Phase II Block”), which is caused by a prolonged administration of depolarizing relaxants. Phase II block is frequently referred to as a desensitization block, but it should not be because desensitization of receptors is only one of many phenomena that contribute to the process.

Many other drugs used by anesthetists also promote the shift of receptors from a normal state to a desensitized state.[58-60] These drugs, some of which are listed in Box 12.1, can weaken neuromuscular transmission by reducing the margin of safety that normally exists at the neuromuscular junction, or they can cause an apparent increase in the capacity of NDMRs to block transmission. These actions are independent of the classic effects, based on competitive inhibition of acetylcholine. The presence of desensitized receptors means that fewer receptor channels than usual are available to carry transmembrane current. The production of desensitized receptors decreases the efficacy of neuromuscular transmission. If many receptors are desensitized, then insufficient normal ones are left to depolarize the motor end plate, and neuromuscular transmission will not occur. Even if only some receptors are desensitized, neuromuscular transmission will be impaired, and the system will be more susceptible to block by conventional antagonists such as atracurium or rocuronium.

CHANNEL BLOCK

Local anesthetics and calcium entry blockers prevent the flow of sodium or calcium through their respective channels, thus explaining the term *channel-blocking drugs*. Similarly, block of the flow of ions can occur at the AChR with concentrations of drugs used clinically and may contribute to some of the phenomena and drug interactions observed at the receptor. Two major types, closed-channel and open-channel block, can occur.[60,63,64] In a closed-channel block, certain drugs can occupy the mouth of the channel and prevent ions from passing through the channel to depolarize the end plate. The process can take place even when the channel is not open. In an open-channel block, a drug molecule enters a channel that has been opened by reaction with acetylcholine but does not necessarily penetrate all the way through. Open-channel block is a use-dependent block, which means that molecules can enter the channel only when it is open. In open- and closed-channel blocks, the normal flow of ions through the receptor is impaired, thereby resulting in the prevention of depolarization of the end plate and a weakened or blocked neuromuscular transmission. However, because the action is not at the acetylcholine recognition site, it is not a competitive antagonism of acetylcholine and is not relieved by anticholinesterases that increase concentrations of acetylcholine. Increasing the concentration of acetylcholine may cause the channels to open more often and, consequently, become more susceptible to block by use-dependent compounds. Evidence suggests that neostigmine and related cholinesterase inhibitors can act as channel-blocking drugs.[17,63]

Channel block may account for the antibiotic-, cocaine-, quinidine-, piperocaine-, tricyclic antidepressant-, naltrexone-, naloxone-, and histrionicotoxin-induced alterations in neuromuscular function. Muscle relaxants, in contrast, can bind to the acetylcholine recognition site of the receptor and occupy the channel. Pancuronium preferentially binds to the recognition site. Gallamine (not used clinically anymore) seems to act equally at the two sites (channel-blocking and acetylcholine-blocking sites). (Gallamine was synthesized by Daniel Bovet, a Swiss-born Italian pharmacologist and received the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine in 1957 for his work on cardiovascular and neuromuscular pharmacology.) Tubocurarine, the first NDMR used clinically, is in between; at small doses that clinically produce minimal blockage of transmission, the drug is essentially a pure antagonist at the recognition site; at larger doses, it also enters and blocks channels. Decamethonium and succinylcholine, as agonists, can open channels and, as slender molecules, also enter and block them. Decamethonium and some other long, thin molecules can penetrate all the way through the open channel and enter the cytoplasm of muscle cells. Whether prolonged administration of NDMRs, as used in an intensive care unit, can result in the NDMR occupation of the channel, and even entry of drug into the cytosol, is unknown.

PHASE II BLOCK

A phase II block is a complex phenomenon associated with a typical fade in muscle during continuous exposure to depolarizing drugs. This fade phenomenon is likely due to the interaction of depolarizing action of succinylcholine on distinct neuronal (prejunctional) AChRs; these prejunctional receptors are blocked by higher-than-usual concentrations of succinylcholine. This fade after succinylcholine is at least partly dependent on a presynaptic interaction with cholinergic transmission of importance for neurotransmitter mobilization and release. However, fade in muscle during repetitive nerve stimulation can also be attributable to postjunctional AChR block.[65]

Other factors may also be involved. The repeated opening of channels allows a continuous efflux of potassium and influx of sodium, and the resulting abnormal electrolyte balance distorts the function of the junctional membrane. Calcium entering the muscle through the opened channels can cause disruption of receptors and the sub-end-plate elements themselves. The activity of the sodium-potassium adenosine triphosphatase pump in the membrane increases with increasing intracellular sodium and, by pumping sodium out of the cell and potassium into it, works to restore the ionic balance and membrane potential toward normal. As long as the depolarizing drug is present, the receptor channels remain open and ion flux through them remains frequent.[66]

Factors influencing the development of a phase II block include the duration of exposure to the drug, the particular drug used and its concentration, and even the type of muscle (i.e., fast or slow twitch). Interactions with anesthetics and other agents also affect the process. All these drugs may also have prejunctional effects on the rate and amount of transmitter released and mobilized. With so many variables involved in the interference with neuromuscular transmission, a phase II block is a complex and ever-changing phenomenon. The reversal response of a phase II block produced by a depolarizing muscle relaxant to the administration of cholinesterase inhibitors is difficult to predict. It is therefore best that reversal by cholinesterase inhibitors not be attempted, although the response to tetanus or train-of-four stimulation resembles that produced by NDMRs.

Biology of Prejunctional and Postjunctional Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptors

POSTJUNCTIONAL CONVENTIONAL ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTORS IN MUSCLE VERSUS NEURONAL ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTORS IN MUSCLE

Currently, three variants of postjunctional AChRs have been identified. The AChR isoform present in the innervated, adult neuromuscular junction is referred to as the adult, mature, or junctional receptor. Another AChR isoform, also described more than 4 decades ago, is expressed when activity in muscle is decreased, as observed in the fetus before innervation or after chemically- or physically-induced immobilization; after lower or upper motor neuron injury, burns, or sepsis; or after other events that cause increased muscle protein catabolism, including sepsis or generalized inflammation.[1-3] In contrast with the mature or junctional receptors, the other isoform is referred to as the immature, extrajunctional, or fetal form of AChR. Some evidence suggests that the immature isoform is not observed in the muscle protein catabolism and wasting that occur with malnutrition.[67] Qualitative differences in the mature isoform can occur as a result of gene mutations, which therefore alters the subunit protein structure. These qualitative changes in AChR can also cause abnormalities in neurotransmission (e.g., slow- or fast-channel syndrome)[27,47] and therefore the response to muscle relaxants.

At the molecular level, the mature and immature receptors consist of five subunits (see Fig. 12.4).[1-3] The mature junctional receptor is a pentamer of two $\alpha1$-subunits and one each of the $\beta1$-, δ-, and ε-subunits. The immature receptor consists of two $\alpha1$-subunits and one each of the $\beta1$-, δ-, and γ-subunits; that is, in the immature receptor, the γ-subunit is present instead of the ε-subunit. The γ- and ε-subunits differ very little from each other in amino acid homology, but the differences are great enough to affect the physiologic function and pharmacologic characteristics of the receptor and its ion channel. Junctional receptors are always confined to the end-plate region of the muscle membrane. The immature, or extrajunctional, receptor may be expressed anywhere on the muscle membrane, although their junctional expression seems minimal.[16] During development and in certain pathologic states, junctional and extrajunctional receptors can coexist in the perijunctional area of the muscle membrane (Fig. 12.7).

Quite in contrast to the conventional muscle AChRs consisting of $\alpha1$-, $\beta1$-, δ-, and ε/γ-subunits described earlier, receptors formed of $\alpha7$ AChR subunits have recently been found in skeletal muscle during immobilization, sepsis, and denervation.[68,69] Two recent studies have evidenced the increased expression of $\alpha7$ AChR subunits in muscle by western blotting, ligand binding or genetic techniques after sepsis, and burn injury or immobilization, during which no overt denervation occurs.[16,70] These $\alpha7$ AChR subunits are homomeric (i.e., formed of the same subunits) channels arranged as pentameres (see Fig. 12.4). Ligand (drug)-binding pockets are thought to be formed at negative and positive faces of the $\alpha7$-subunit assembly interphases. As expected, the endogenous agonist, acetylcholine, binds to $\alpha7$ AChR subunits, and each of the five subunits has the potential to bind acetylcholine or succinylcholine molecules.[18,69] Other agonists, including nicotine and choline, and antagonists, including muscle relaxants, cobra toxin, and α-bungarotoxin, also bind to the $\alpha7$ AChR.[18,69-72]

The $\alpha7$ AChRs in muscle display unusual functional and pharmacologic characteristics when compared with conventional muscle ($\alpha1$, $\beta1$, δ, ε/γ) AChRs or neuronal $\alpha7$ AChRs in the brain. Choline, a precursor and metabolite of acetylcholine (and succinylcholine), is a weak agonist of conventional muscle AChRs but is a full agonist of muscle $\alpha7$ AChRs; that is, concentrations of choline that do not open conventional AChR channels will open $\alpha7$ AChR channels.[69] Furthermore, no desensitization of the $\alpha7$ AChRs occurs even during the continued presence of choline,[69] thus allowing a greater chance for potassium to efflux (approximately 145 mEq/L) from within the cell to the extracellular space, including plasma (approximately 4.5 mEq/L), down its concentration gradient. The chemical

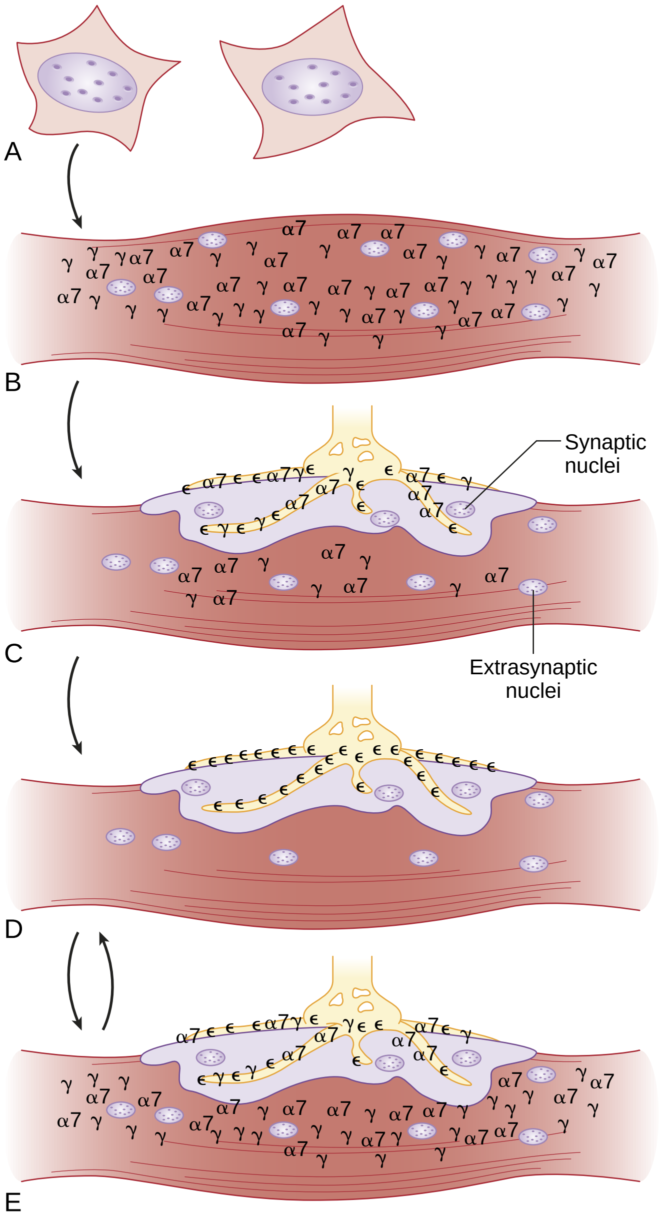


Fig. 12.7 Distribution of acetylcholine receptors in developing adult mature, denervated or immobilized muscle and in inflammation-induced catabolic muscle. (A and B) In the early fetal stage, mononucleated myoblasts, derived from the mesoderm, fuse with each other to form multinucleated myotubes. The γ-subunit-containing immature acetylcholine receptors (AChRs) and the neuronal α7-subunit AChRs are scattered throughout the muscle membrane before innervation. (C) As the nerve makes contact with muscle, clustering of the receptors occurs at the synapse and is associated with some loss of extrasynaptic receptors. (D) Maturation of the junction is said to occur when ε-subunit-containing receptors replace γ-subunit- and α7-subunit-containing AChRs at the neuromuscular junction. Even mature muscle is multinucleated, but it is devoid of extrasynaptic AChRs. (E) Denervation and some other pathologic states, even without anatomic denervation (e.g., burns, immobilization, chronic muscle relaxant therapy, stroke, sepsis), lead to the re-expression of the γ-subunit-containing AChRs mostly at the extrajunctional areas. The α7-subunit AChRs are expressed in the junctional areas and are also most likely in the extrajunctional areas. These receptor changes are potentially reversible if muscle immobilization, catabolism, and inflammation are restored to normal.

α-conotoxin GI from the snail specifically inhibits the conventional (mature and immature) AChRs in muscle but does not inhibit α7 AChRs. The important role of α7 AChRs in resistance to NDMRs is evidenced by the presence of immobilization-induced resistance in wild-type mice and the absence of resistance in α7 AChRs knockout mice.[73] The α7 AChRs expressed in neuronal tissue are also readily desensitized with choline, a feature that contrasts with muscle α7 AChRs, which do not desensitize with choline.[69] The α7 AChRs in muscle also have lower affinity for its antagonists, including pancuronium, rocuronium, atracurium, or α-bungarotoxin; higher concentrations of these drugs are therefore required to block agonist-induced depolarization in α7 AChRs in vitro or cause neuromuscular paralysis in vivo or ex vivo when α7 AChRs are upregulated.[69-72] In the conventional muscle AChRs, binding of even one of the α1-subunits by an antagonist results in inactivation of that receptor because acetylcholine needs both α1-subunits of the AChR for its activation. In α7 AChRs, however, even when three subunits are bound by an antagonist (e.g., muscle relaxant), two other subunits are still available for binding by agonist and cause depolarization. This feature may account for some of the resistance to muscle relaxants when α7 AChRs are expressed in muscle and other tissues in pathologic states.[69-73]

The clinical pharmacologic characteristics of the muscle α7 AChR have not yet been completely studied, but its basic composition also provides some insight into succinylcholine-related hyperkalemia. Chemical or physical denervation of muscle results in not only upregulation and qualitative (ε-subunit → γ-subunit) changes in AChRs, but it also results in upregulation of α7 AChRs in muscle. Succinylcholine, a synthetic analog of acetylcholine that consists of two molecules of acetylcholine joined together, is capable of depolarizing not only conventional AChRs but also α7 AChRs in muscle.[72] In addition, the metabolite of succinylcholine, choline, can depolarize α7 AChRs with little desensitization. The depolarizing effects of succinylcholine and choline on upregulated α7 AChRs can result in continued leakage of intracellular potassium and flooding of extracellular fluid, including plasma, thereby leading to hyperkalemia. Thus, differences in the subunit composition and increased numbers of the three isoforms junctionally and extrajunctionally expressed may account for aberrant responses to muscle relaxants clinically observed as resistant only to NDMRs and hyperkalemic response to succinylcholine.[2,72,73]

MAINTENANCE OF MATURE NEUROMUSCULAR JUNCTIONS

Quite unlike other cells, muscle cells are unusual in that they have many, usually hundreds, of nuclei per cell. Each nucleus has the genes to make all three isoform receptors. Multiple factors, including electrical activity, growth factor signaling (e.g., insulin, agrin, neuregulins), and the presence or absence of innervation, control the expression of the three types of receptor isoforms.[19,37] This control is most clearly observed in the developing embryo as the neuromuscular junction is formed. Before they are innervated, the muscle cells of a fetus synthesize only immature and α7 AChRs—hence the term *fetal isoform* for the former receptor. Synthesis is directed by nearly all of the nuclei in the cell, and the AChRs are expressed throughout the membrane of the muscle cell (see Fig. 12.7). As the fetus develops and the muscles become innervated, muscle cells begin to synthesize the mature isoform of receptors, which are exclusively inserted into the developing (future) endplate area.[14-19] The nerve releases several growth factors that influence the synthetic apparatus of the nearby nuclei. First, nerve-supplied factors induce the subsynaptic nuclei to increase synthesis of AChRs. Next, the nerve-induced electrical activity results in the repression of receptors in the extrajunctional area (see Fig. 12.7*B* and *C*). Nerve-derived growth factors, including agrin and ARIA/neuregulin, cause the receptors to cluster in the subsynaptic area and prompt the expression of the mature isoform.[19,37] Several lines of evidence indicate that clustering, expression, and stabilization of mature receptors are triggered by at least two growth factors: agrin, neuregulin/ARIA, and possibly calcitonin gene-related peptide.[56,74,75] Neuregulin and agrin are also released from muscle, but muscle-derived agrin is not as important in clustering and maturation of the receptor. ARIA is made in the nerve and plays a role in the maturation of vesicular arrangement and conversion of the γ-to-ε switch.[75] All of these growth factors interact with distinct membrane and cytosolic receptor proteins to cause phosphorylation and activation of nuclear (gene) transcriptional systems. Agrin signals through MuSK and neuregulins through ErbB receptors (Fig. 12.8). These receptors control qualitative and quantitative changes at the junction. Once begun, the process is very stable, and nuclei in the junctional area continue to express mature receptors. In certain pathologic state–induced insulin resistance, a concomitant proliferation of AChRs seems to occur beyond the junctional area. Conditions in which this form of insulin resistance (i.e., decreased growth factor signaling) has been observed include immobilization, burn injury, sepsis, and denervation[75-78]; in these conditions, not only does upregulation of total AChRs occur, but de novo upregulation of the immature and α7 AChR isoforms are also observed (see Fig. 12.7*D*).[1-3] This upregulation may be related to the lack of growth factor effects of agrin and possibly neuregulin, which signal via some of the same downstream signaling proteins as insulin (e.g., phosphoinositide 3-kinase).[56,76-79] Therefore, agrin and neuregulin signaling may be important for the suppression of α7 AChRs and immature AChRs in the normal neuromuscular junction.

Before innervation, as in the fetus, AChRs are present throughout the muscle membrane. After innervation, AChRs become more and more concentrated at the postsynaptic membrane and are virtually absent in the extrasynaptic area at birth. The innervation process progresses somewhat slowly during fetal life and matures during infancy and early childhood.[14-19] With time, the immature receptors diminish in concentration and disappear from the peripheral part of the muscle. In the active, adult, and normal innervated muscle, just the nuclei under and very near the end plate direct the synthesis of the receptor; only the genes for expressing mature receptors are active. Nuclei beyond the junctional area are not active, and therefore no receptors are expressed anywhere in the muscle cells beyond the perijunctional area. Conversion of all the γ-subunit- to ε-subunit-containing AChRs in the perijunctional area continues to take place after birth. In the rodent, conversion takes approximately 2 weeks.[14-19] In humans, this process takes longer. The timeframe for the disappearance of α7 AChRs in the fetus or newborn is also unknown. Proteins implicated in the linking of mature receptors to the cytoskeleton include integrin, syntrophin, utrophin, α- and β-dystroglycan, and rapsyn, just to name a few.[14-19]

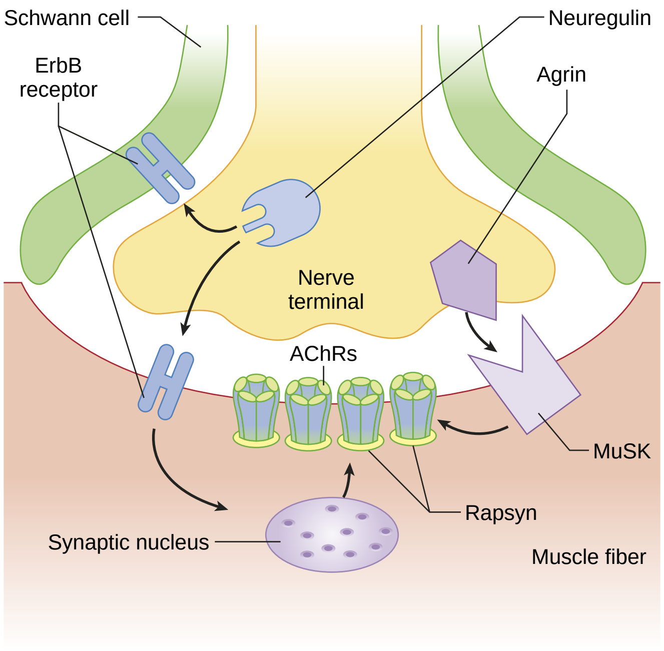


Fig. 12.8 Diagram of agrin- and acetylcholine receptor-inducing activity (ARIA)/neuregulin-dependent events during maturation of the neuromuscular junction. After the establishment of a nerve on the muscle, growth factors, including agrin and neuregulins, are released. Neuregulin signaling is essential for Schwann cell survival, and Schwann cells are essential for axonal maintenance. Agrin interacting with its receptor muscle-specific tyrosine kinase *(MuSK)* enhances the clustering of synaptic proteins, including acetylcholine receptors *(AChRs)*, rapsyn, and ErbB receptors. ARIA/neuregulin is the best candidate for the involvement in the conversion of γ-subunit-containing immature receptor to ε-subunit-containing mature (innervated) receptor, which is synapse specific and therefore not inserted in the extrajunctional area.

RE-EXPRESSION OF IMMATURE (FETAL) γ-SUBUNIT AND α7-SUBUNIT ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTORS IN ADULT LIFE

The extrajunctional immature receptors can reappear soon after upper and lower motor denervation and in certain pathologic states (e.g., burns, sepsis, immobilization, chronic muscle relaxant therapy or botulism, loss of muscle electrical activity). Stimulation of a denervated muscle with an external electrical stimulus can prevent the appearance of immature receptors. It has been suggested that the calcium that enters the muscle during activity is important in the suppression process.[16,17] In the pathologic states previously enumerated, if the process is severe and prolonged, then extrajunctional receptors are inserted all over the surface of the muscle, including the perijunctional area (see Fig. 12.7*D*). The junctional nuclei also continue to make mature receptors. The synthesis of immature receptors is initiated within hours of inactivity, but it takes several

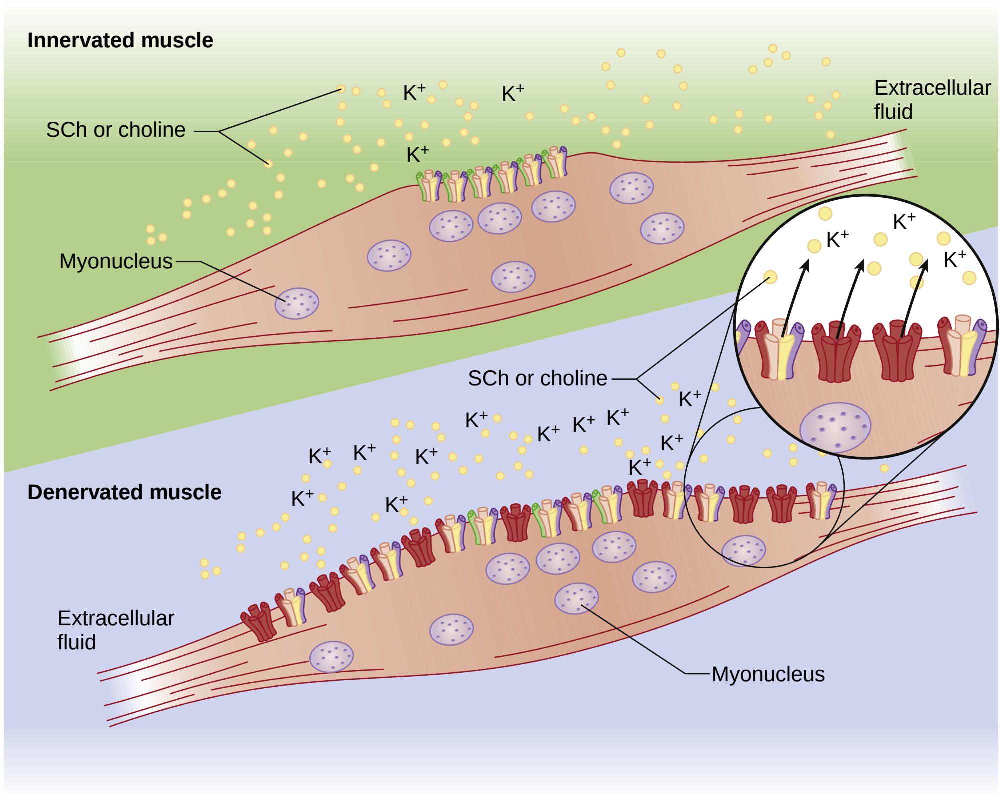


Fig. 12.9 Schematic of the succinylcholine (SCh)-induced potassium (K^+) release in an innervated *(top)* and denervated muscle *(bottom)*. In the innervated muscle, the systemically administered SCh reaches all the muscle membrane but depolarizes only the junctional (α1, β1, δ/ε) receptors because acetylcholine receptors (AChRs) are located only in this area. With denervation, the muscle nuclei express not only extrajunctional (α1, β1, δ/γ) AChRs but also α7-nicotinic AChRs throughout the muscle membrane. Systemic SCh, in contrast to acetylcholine released locally, can depolarize all the upregulated AChRs, which leads to massive efflux of intracellular K^+ into the circulation, resulting in hyperkalemia. The metabolite of SCh, choline, and possibly succinylmonocholine, can maintain this depolarization via α7-nicotinic AChRs, enhancing the K^+ release and maintaining the hyperkalemia. (From Martyn JAJ, Richtsfeld M. Succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia in acquired pathologic states: etiologic factors and molecular mechanisms. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:158–169, 2006.)

days for the whole muscle membrane to be fully covered with receptors. This upregulation of receptors has implications for the use of depolarizing and possibly NDMRs. The changes in α7 AChRs parallel the expression of immature receptors, although this has not been well studied.

The changes in subunit composition (γ vs. ε) in the receptor confer certain changes in electrophysiologic (functional), pharmacologic, and metabolic characteristics.[16-18] Mature receptors are metabolically stable, with a half-life approximating 2 weeks, whereas immature receptors have a metabolic half-life of less than 24 hours. Immature receptors have a smaller single-channel conductance and a twofold to tenfold longer mean channel open time than do mature receptors (see Fig. 12.4). The changes in subunit composition may also alter the sensitivity or affinity, or both, of the receptor for specific ligands. Depolarizing or agonist drugs such as succinylcholine and acetylcholine more easily depolarize immature receptors, thereby resulting in cation fluxes; doses one tenth to one hundredth of those needed for mature receptors can effect depolarization.[2] The potency of NDMRs is also reduced, as demonstrated by the resistance to their neuromuscular effects documented in patients with burns, denervation, sepsis, and immobilization.[1,3] In light of recent research, however, it seems that the resistance to nondepolarizers is more likely due to the junctional area expression of the α7 AChRs, which has a decreased affinity to NDMRs.[16,69-73] Some NDMRs may also cause a partial agonist response in immature receptors, thus explaining the decreased potency in conditions in which upregulation of AChRs occurs.[8] The upregulation of immature AChRs in the perijunctional and extrajunctional areas may have a buffering effect for diffusion of relaxants, contributing to resistance to NDMRs.[80]

The altered sensitivity to muscle relaxants may occur in only certain parts of the body or certain muscles if only some muscles are affected by the diminution in nerve activity (e.g., after a stroke). Sensitivity to relaxants can begin to change beyond 72 hours after an injury or hospitalization. The most serious side effect with the use of succinylcholine in the presence of upregulated AChRs in one or more muscles is hyperkalemia.[1-3] In these subjects, the receptors can be scattered over a large surface of the muscle. The AChR channels opened by the agonist (succinylcholine) allow potassium to escape from the muscle and enter the blood (Fig. 12.9).[2,3] If a large part of the muscle surface consists of upregulated (immature) receptor channels, each of which stays open for a longer time, then the amount of potassium that moves from muscle to blood can be considerable. The resulting hyperkalemia can cause dangerous disturbances in cardiac rhythm, including ventricular fibrillation. Moreover, hyperkalemia probably cannot be prevented by prior administration of NDMRs because large doses required to

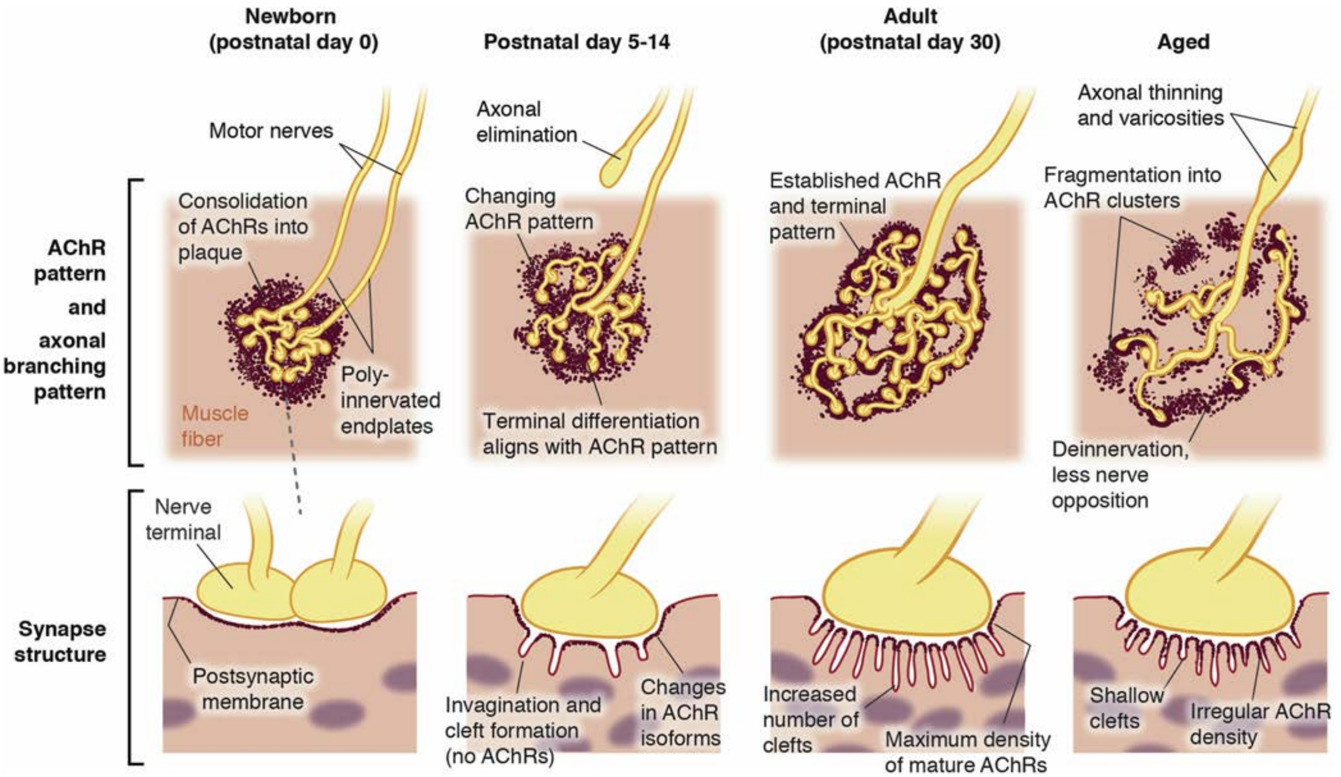

Newborn (postnatal day 0)
Postnatal day 5-14
Adult (postnatal day 30)
Aged
AChR pattern and axonal branching pattern
Motor nerves
Consolidation of AChRs into plaque
Poly-innervated endplates
Muscle fiber
Axonal elimination
Changing AChR pattern
Terminal differentiation aligns with AChR pattern
Established AChR and terminal pattern
Axonal thinning and varicosities
Fragmentation into AChR clusters
Deinnervation, less nerve opposition
Synapse structure
Nerve terminal
Postsynaptic membrane
Invagination and cleft formation (no AChRs)
Changes in AChR isoforms
Increased number of clefts
Maximum density of mature AChRs
Shallow clefts
Irregular AChR density

Fig. 12.10 Maturation of the postsynaptic apparatus. *Postnatal day 0 (Newborn)*: At the time of birth, the aggregates of acetylcholine receptors (AChRs) have consolidated to form an oval-like plaque with irregular borders. At this point, each junction may have more than one nerve terminal innervating it. *Postnatal day 5 to 14*: Approximately 5 to 14 days after birth, the postsynaptic membrane invaginates to form a gutter and small perforations develop on the plaque. These perforations reflect gaps due to the synaptic clefts (which do not have AChRs). During this time, the immature γ-subunit-containing AChRs are completely replaced by mature AChRs containing ε-subunit. The invaginations or clefts increase in numbers, resulting in more perforations in the synaptic AChRs giving it an almost pretzel-shaped junction. The perforations, as indicated, correspond to the synaptic clefts or folds. *Postnatal day 30*: The neuromuscular junction is completely developed (mature) at 30 days after birth with a larger pretzel-shaped appearance. The AChRs have maximal density. A distinct set of postsynaptic proteins and signaling molecules are selectively transcribed in the subsynaptic area, providing integrity to the neuromuscular junction and efficient neurotransmission. *Aged NMJ*: Examination of NMJ in the aged mice and humans reveal marked morphological changes. Some of the synapses undergo partial degeneration and synaptic staining becomes fainter. The synaptic folds are smaller in depth. The nerve terminals become thinner and appear swollen or bulbous with less apposition with the synapse. The Schwann cells seems to invade into the NMJ more (not shown). *NMJ,* neuromuscular junction.

block the AChRs, in and of itself, will cause paralysis, obviating the need for succinylcholine.[3] Larger-than-normal doses of NDMRs may attenuate the increase in blood potassium concentrations but cannot completely prevent it. In other words, no hyperkalemic response to succinylcholine has been seen earlier than 4 days after perturbations described previously.[50] However, hyperkalemia and cardiac arrest can occur after the administration of succinylcholine, even in the absence of denervation states. These effects are observed in certain congenital muscle dystrophies in which the muscle membrane is prone to damage by the depolarization produced by succinylcholine, resulting in potassium release via the membrane damage.[81]

PREJUNCTIONAL ACETYLCHOLINE RECEPTORS

Nicotinic AChRs exist in a variety of forms apart from that observed in muscle.[16,18] The classic muscle-type nicotinic AChR is postsynaptically present, whereas neuronal subtype receptors may be presynaptically and postsynaptically present. The neuronal subtype nicotinic AChRs expressed prejunctionally are usually heteromeric and built up by *only* α- and β-subunits. This family of nicotinic AChRs is widely expressed in the peripheral and central nervous systems, on autonomous nerves and ganglia on oxygen-sensing cells within the carotid bodies. There are also α7 AChRs in immune-competent cells, such as macrophages, microglia lymphocytes and granulocytes, and fibroblasts and chondrocytes.[16,18] Diverse genes encode the heterogeneous AChRs, and the ion channel is formed of multiple subunits (multimers). Seventeen AChR genes have been cloned from vertebrates. They include various combinations of α-subunits (α1 through α10) and β-subunits (β1 through β4) and one each of γ-, δ-, and ε-subunits. The γ-, δ-, and ε-subunits are found only in muscle.[16-18]

Prejunctional- or nerve terminal-associated cholinergic receptors have been demonstrated by morphologic pharmacologic and by molecular biologic techniques, but their form and functions are not as completely understood as those in the postjunctional area. Many drugs with an abundance of potential targets for drug action can affect the capacity of the nerve terminal to carry out its functions. The trophic function to maintain nerve-muscle contact involves the release and replenishment of acetylcholine together with other trophic factors that require signaling through many receptors, of which the prejunctional nicotinic AChR is just one. Succinylcholine produces fasciculations that can be prevented by NDMRs. Because a fasciculation is, by definition, the simultaneous contraction of the multitude of muscle cells in a single motor unit and because only the nerve can synchronize all the muscles in its motor unit, it became apparent that succinylcholine must also act on nerve endings. Because NDMRs prevent fasciculation, it was concluded that they acted on the same prejunctional receptor. Very small doses of cholinergic agonists (e.g., succinylcholine) and antagonists (e.g., NDMRs) affect nicotinic receptors on the nerve ending; the former by depolarizing the ending and sometimes inducing repetitive firing of the nerve and the latter by preventing the action of agonists.[5]

By the use of specific monoclonal antibodies, the presence of nicotinic α3-subunits has been demonstrated in the nerve terminal.[82] Another clue to the differences between prejunctional and postjunctional AChRs was the finding that some drugs (e.g., dihydro-β-erythroidine) bind only to prejunctional AChRs, whereas other drugs (e.g., α-bungarotoxin) bind only to postjunctional receptors.[65] Additional clues were found in the many demonstrations of quantitative differences in the reaction of prejunctional and postjunctional nicotinic receptors to other cholinergic agonists and antagonists.[65,82-84] For instance, it was known that tubocurarine, the first NDMR introduced to clinical practice in 1942 (not used in US or Europe), binds with lower affinity to the recognition sites of ganglionic nicotinic cholinoceptors and is not a competitive antagonist of acetylcholine at this site. Decamethonium (i.e., a depolarizing muscle relaxant no longer clinically used) is a selective inhibitor of the muscle receptor, and hexamethonium is a selective inhibitor of nicotinic receptors in the autonomic ganglia.[80-85] Instead, tubocurarine and hexamethonium can block the opened channels of these receptors and owe their ability to block ganglionic transmission to this property. The functional characteristics of prejunctional receptor channels may also be different. For example, the depolarization of motor nerve endings initiated by the administration of acetylcholine can be prevented by tetrodotoxin, a specific blocker of sodium flux with no effect on the end plate.

Specific information on the molecular organization of neuronal nicotinic receptors on the motor neuron terminal is still lacking. Some of the subunit composition is similar, but other subunits do not resemble those of the postjunctional receptor. Of the 16 different nicotinic AChR gene products identified, only 12 (α2 to α10 and β2 to β4) are thought to contribute nicotinic receptors expressed on neurons. Most strikingly, nervous tissue does not express γ-, δ-, or ε-receptor subunits; it contains genes only for the α- and β-subunits. The α- and β-subunit genes in nerve and muscle are not exactly the same; they are variants. To emphasize the distinction between neural and muscle nicotinic receptors, the former are sometimes designated *Nn* and the latter *Nm*. With so many different subunits available, possible combinations are many, and it is not known which combinations are found in motor nerves. Their physiologic roles have also not been completely characterized. Expression of neuronal nicotinic AChRs in *in vitro* systems has confirmed that muscle relaxants and their metabolites can bind to some of these neuronal AChRs.[53,83-85]

The nicotinic receptor on the junctional surface of the nerve (nerve terminal) senses transmitter in the cleft and, by means of a positive-feedback system, causes the release of more transmitter. In other parts of the nervous system, this positive feedback is complemented by a negative-feedback system that senses when the concentration of transmitter in the synaptic cleft has appropriately increased and shuts down the release system. It is believed that tetanic fade and train-of-four fade during neuromuscular block with NDMRs arise from presynaptic cholinergic autoreceptors at the motor nerved ending.[5,52]

The neuronal AChR subtype that is critically involved in acetylcholine release and subsequent fade phenomenon (as observed in tetanic or train-of-four stimulus patterns) has been identified as the α3β2-subtype nicotinic AChR.[10,84] When this prejunctional receptor is specifically blocked by a nondepolarizing relaxant such as tubocurarine, a reduction in neurotransmitter release occurs upon repeated stimulation with subsequent fade phenomenon. It should be noted, however, block of the prejunctional AChRs alone is not necessary and sufficient to induce fade; concomitant reduction in the safety of neurotransmission prejunctionally or postjunctionally must be present for it to be noticeable.[65] Although all clinically used nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs inhibit this prejunctional nicotinic AChR, as well as several other neuronal nicotinic AChRs, in the clinically relevant concentration range, succinylcholine neither activates nor inhibits the presynaptic α3β2 autoreceptor at clinically relevant concentrations.[53,85] However, the existence of the α3β2 autoreceptor at the prejunctional area has never been demonstrated by western blot or mRNA techniques. Thus, this prejunctional receptor has not been completely characterized.

This observation may be the reason for the typical lack of fade during succinylcholine-induced neuromuscular block. Succinylcholine, however, does not interact with α3β4 AChR found in autonomic ganglia.[53] It has also been shown that NDMRs reduce the hypoxic ventilatory response in partially paralyzed humans,[86] and the mechanism behind the depression might be related to inhibition of nicotine receptors on the carotid body.[11] Nicotinic α3, 7, and β2 AChRs have recently been documented in the human carotid body.[87] Whether the inhibition of these receptors plays a role in attenuated response to hypoxia drive needs further investigation. The motor nerve terminal is also known to bear several other receptors, such as opioid, adrenergic, dopamine, purine, and adenosine receptors, as well as receptors for endogenous hormones, neuropeptides, and a variety of proteins.[88,89] The physiologic roles of these receptors and the effects of anesthetics on them are unknown.

Neuromuscular Junction at Extremes of Age

NEWBORN

Just before birth, the AChRs are all clustered around the nerve in the junctional area, and minimal extrajunctional AChRs are present. The newborn postsynaptic membrane, itself, is not specialized, having almost no synaptic folds, a widened synaptic space, and a reduced number of AChRs.[14,19] The early postnatal AChR cluster appears as an oval plaque (Fig. 12.10). Within a few days, simplified folds appear. With continued maturation, the plaque is transformed to a multiperforated pretzel-like structure. The polyinnervated end plate is converted to a singly innervated junction because of a retraction of all but one terminal. In the adult, the terminals perfectly align with the AChR clusters. Morphologically, the postsynaptic membrane of the newborn and that from the patient with myasthenia gravis is not too different; the AChR number is decreased, and the postsynaptic folds are decreased. It is not surprising therefore that neurotransmission is not as efficient in the newborn and in patients with myasthenia gravis. For this reason, neonates and infants behave similar to patients with myasthenia gravis when NDMRs are administered to them.[90] In humans, maturation of the neuromuscular junction probably occurs at approximately 2 years of age.[90]

OLD AGE

With increasing life expectancy, typical changes associated with aging is a gradual loss of lean body mass and strength referred to as sarcopenia (Greek: sarco-flesh, penia- poverty), which has received increased attention recently.[91] These sarcopenic changes occur in association with denervation-like changes at the synapse and altered anabolic or growth factor signaling changes within muscle.[91-93] Old age-associated functional denervation, muscle wasting, and weakness is now well established.[91,92] Age-related morphologic changes include increase in length and area of the post-synaptic AChR, degenerating synaptic folds, and more invasion of synaptic folds by Schwann cells. The nerve terminals are thinned out and show terminal swelling with less apposition of the nerve to the synapse (see Fig. 12.10). Coupled with the morphologic changes in the neuromuscular junction that occur with aging, the functional changes that occur with it can include increased quantal content of neurotransmitter release and more rapid rundown of end-plate potential during stimulation of the preterminal neuron.[91-93] Regardless of these enumerated structured and functioned changes with aging, it appears that because of the superb margin of safety of neurotransmission, disability is not easily demonstrable by simple methods such as grip strength in most instances.[93] Despite the structural and functional changes associated with aging, the overall margin of safety is better in the older individual than in the neonate.[94] Even with these denervation-like changes in the elderly, there is no evidence that these patients are more prone to succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia. There are also no studies confirming increased or decreased sensitivity to nondepolarizing blockers due to the neuromuscular junction changes. Some nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers have prolonged effect in old age (e.g., vecuronium) due to pharmacokinetic causes.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Martyn JA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(suppl 1):1.
2. Martyn JA, Richtsfeld M. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:158.
3. Fagerlund MJ, Eriksson LI. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(1):108.
4. Gilhus NE. *Curr Opin Neurol*. 2012;25:523.
5. Bowman WC, et al. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1990;604:69.
6. Frick CG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1139.
7. Frick CG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:102.
8. Lape R, et al. *Nature*. 2008;454:722.
9. Paul M, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2002;438:35.
10. Vizi ES, Lendvai B. *Pharmacol Ther*. 1997;73:75.
11. Jonsson M, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2004;497:173.
12. Sunaga H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:892.
13. Fryer AD, Maclagan J. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol*. 1987;335:367.
14. Li L, et al. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 2018;80:159.
15. Tintignac LA, et al. *Physiol Rev*. 2015;95:809.
16. Lee S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(1):76–85.
17. Sine SM. *Physiol Rev*. 2012;92:1189.
18. Albuquerque EX, et al. *Physiol Rev*. 2009;89:73.
19. Shi L, et al. *Trends Neurosci*. 2012;35:441.
20. Fraterman S, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2006;47:3828.
21. Büttner-Ennever JA, Horn AK. *Mov Disord*. 2002;17(suppl 2):S2.
22. Kaminski HJ, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 1996;37:345.
23. Lennerstrand G, et al. *Acta Ophthalmol*. 2010;88:872.
24. Vachon CA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:220.
25. Catterall WA. *J Physiol*. 2012;590:2577.
26. Catterall WA, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2013;288:10742.
27. Engel AG, et al. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2012;1275:54.
28. Heuser JE, Reese TS. *J Cell Biol*. 1981;88:564.
29. Rash JE, et al. *J Electron Microsc Tech*. 1988;10(153).
30. Sieburth D, et al. *Nature*. 2005;436:510.
31. Littleton JT, Sheng M. *Nature*. 2003;423:931.
32. Rich MM. *Neuroscientist*. 2006;12:134.
33. Wang X, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2004;24:10687.
34. Katz B, Miledi R. *Proc R Soc Lond B Biol Sci*. 1979;215:369.
35. Uchitel OD, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89:3330.
36. van Sonderen A, et al. *Curr Treat Options Neurol*. 2013;15:224–239.
37. Naguib M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:202.
38. Sudhof TC. *Neuron*. 2012;75:11.
39. Jahn R, Fasshauer D. *Nature*. 2012;490:201.
40. Heidelberger R. *Nature*. 2007;450:623.
41. Turton K, et al. *Trends Biochem Sci*. 2002;27:552.
42. Restani L, et al. *PLoS Pathog*. 2012;8:e1003087.
43. Schurch B. *Drugs Today (Barc)*. 2004;40:205.
44. Schiavo G. *Nature*. 2006;444:1019.
45. Lange DJ, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 1991;14:672.
46. Heeroma JH, et al. *Neuroscience*. 2003;120:733.
47. Engel AG, Sine SM. *Curr Opin Pharmacol*. 2005;5:308.
48. Abraham RB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:989.
49. Karwa M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:S75.
50. Richtsfeld M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:412.
51. Kopta C, Steinbach JH. *J Neurosci*. 1994;14:3922.
52. Jonsson M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:521.
53. Jonsson M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:724.
54. Griesmann GE, et al. *J Neurochem*. 1990;54:1541.
55. Gullberg D. *Nature*. 2003;424:138.
56. Missias AC, et al. *Dev Biol*. 1996;179:223.
57. McCarthy MP, Stroud RM. *Biochemistry*. 1989;28:40.
58. Yamaoka K, et al. *Curr Pharm Des*. 2006;12:429.
59. Raines DE. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:663.
60. Gage PW. *Biophys Chem*. 1988;29:95.
61. Swope SL, et al. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1995;757:197.
62. Plested CP, et al. *Neurology*. 2002;59:1682.
63. Albuquerque EX, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1997;280:1117.
64. Maelicke A, et al. *J Recept Signal Transduct Res*. 1997;17:11.
65. Nagashima M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:994.
66. Creese R, et al. *J Physiol*. 1987;384:377.
67. Ibebunjo C, Martyn JAJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1243.
68. Fischer U, et al. *Eur J Neurosci*. 1999;11:2856.
69. Tsuneki H, et al. *J Physiol*. 2003;54(7):169.
70. Liu L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112:159.
71. Lindstrom JM. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2003;998:41.
72. Khan MA, et al. *Shock*. 2012;38:213.
73. Lee S, et al. *Alpha7 AChRs play a pivotal role in the immobilization-induced resistance to atracurium in mice*. Abstract A1007; Presented at the ASA Annual Meeting, 2012.
74. Placzek AN, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2004;66:169.
75. Tansey MG, et al. *J Cell Biol*. 1996;134:465.
76. Hirose M, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 2000;279:E1235.

77. Sugita M, et al. *Metabolism*. 2012;61:127.
78. Hirose M, et al. *Metabolism*. 2001;50:216.
79. Samuel MA, et al. *PLoS One*. 2012;7:e456663.
80. Dilger JP. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:792.
81. Gronert GA. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:523.
82. Tsuneki H, et al. *Neurosci Lett*. 1995;196:13.
83. Chiodini F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:643.
84. Faria M, et al. *Synapse*. 2003;49:77.
85. Martyn J, Durieux ME. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:633.
86. Eriksson LI. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:520.
87. Mkrtchian S, et al. *J Physiol*. 2012;590:3807.
88. Santafe MM, et al. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2003;17:119.
89. Wessler I. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 1989;10:110.
90. Goudsouzian NG, Standaert FG. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:1208.
91. Shafiee G, et al. *J Diabetes Metab Disord*. 2017;16:21.
92. Yang JC, Van Remmen H. *Exp Gerontol*. 2011;46(2-3):193.
93. Willadt, et al. *Ann NY Acad Sci*. 2018;1412:41–53.
94. Sanes JR, Lichtman JW. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2001;2:791.

References

1. Martyn JA, Jonsson M, Fagerlund MJ, et al. Basic principles of neuromuscular transmission. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(suppl 1):1–9.
2. Martyn JA, Richtsfeld M. Succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia in acquired pathologic states: etiologic factors and molecular mechanisms. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:158–169.
3. Fagerlund MJ, Eriksson LI. Current concepts in neuromuscular transmission. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(1):108–114.
4. Gilhus NE. Myasthenia and the neuromuscular junction. *Curr Opin Neurol*. 2012;25:523–529.
5. Bowman WC, Prior C, Marshall IG. Presynaptic receptors in the neuromuscular junction. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1990;604:69–81.
6. Frick CG, Richtsfeld M, Sahani ND, et al. Long-term effects of botulinum toxin on neuromuscular function. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1139–1146.
7. Frick CG, Fink H, Blobner M, Martyn JAJ. A single injection of botulinum toxin decreases the margin of safety of neurotransmission at local and distant sites. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:102–109.
8. Lape R, Colquhoun D, Sivilotti LG. On the nature of partial agonism in the nicotinic receptor superfamily. *Nature*. 2008;454:722–727.
9. Paul M, Kindler CH, Fokt RM, et al. Isobolographic analysis of non-depolarising muscle relaxant interactions at their receptor site. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2002;438:35–43.
10. Vizi ES, Lendvai B. Side effects of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants: relationship to their antinicotinic and antimuscarinic actions. *Pharmacol Ther*. 1997;73:75–89.
11. Jonsson M, Wyon N, Lindahl SGE. Neuromuscular blocking agents block carotid body neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2004;497:173–180.
12. Sunaga H, Zhang Y, Savarese JJ, Emala CW. Gantacurium and CW002 do not potentiate muscarinic receptor-mediated airway smooth muscle constriction in guinea pigs. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:892–899.
13. Fryer AD, Maclagan J. Pancuronium and gallamine are antagonists for pre- and post-junctional muscarinic receptors in the guinea-pig lung. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol*. 1987;335:367–371.
14. Li L, Xiong WC, Mei L. Neuromuscular junction formation, aging, and disorders. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 2018;80:159–188.
15. Tintignac LA, Brenner HR, Rüegg MA. Mechanisms regulating neuromuscular junction development and function and causes of muscle wasting. *Physiol Rev*. 2015;95:809–852.
16. Lee S, Yang HS, Sasakawa T, et al. Immobilization with atrophy induces de novo expression of neuronal nicotinic $\alpha 7$ acetylcholine receptors in muscle contributing to neurotransmission. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(1):76–85.
17. Sine SM. End-plate acetylcholine receptor: structure, mechanism, pharmacology, and disease. *Physiol Rev*. 2012;92:1189–1234.
18. Albuquerque EX, Pereira EF, Alkondon M, Rogers SW. Mammalian nicotinic acetylcholine receptors: from structure to function. *Physiol Rev*. 2009;89:73–120.
19. Shi L, Fu AK, Ip NY. Molecular mechanisms underlying maturation and maintenance of the vertebrate neuromuscular junction. *Trends Neurosci*. 2012;35:441–453.
20. Fraterman S, Khurana TS, Rubinstein NA. Identification of acetylcholine receptor subunits differentially expressed in singly and multiply innervated fibers of extraocular muscles. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2006;47:3828–3834.
21. Büttner-Ennever JA, Horn AK. Oculomotor system: a dual innervation of the eye muscles from the abducens, trochlear, and oculomotor nuclei. *Mov Disord*. 2002;17(suppl 2):S2.
22. Kaminski HJ, Kusner LL, Block CH. Expression of acetylcholine receptor isoforms at extraocular muscle endplates. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 1996;37:345–351.
23. Lennerstrand G, Bolzani R, Tian S, et al. Succinylcholine activation of human horizontal eye muscles. *Acta Ophthalmol*. 2010;88:872–876.
24. Vachon CA, Warner DO, Bacon DR. Succinylcholine and the open globe. Tracing the teaching. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:220–223.
25. Catterall WA. Voltage-gated sodium channels at 60: structure, function and pathophysiology. *J Physiol*. 2012;590:2577–2589.
26. Catterall WA, Leal K, Nanou E. Calcium channels and short-term synaptic plasticity. *J Biol Chem*. 2013;288:10742–10749.
27. Engel AG, Shen XM, Selcen D, Sine S. New horizons for congenital myasthenic syndromes. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2012;1275:54–62.
28. Heuser JE, Reese TS. Structural changes after transmitter release at the frog neuromuscular junction. *J Cell Biol*. 1981;88:564–580.
29. Rash JE, Walrond JP, Morita M. Structural and functional correlates of synaptic transmission in the vertebrate neuromuscular junction. *J Electron Microsc Tech*. 1988;10:153–185.
30. Sieburth D, Ch'ng Q, Dybbs M, et al. Systematic analysis of genes required for synapse structure and function. *Nature*. 2005;436:510–517.
31. Littleton JT, Sheng M. Neurobiology: synapses unplugged. *Nature*. 2003;423:931–932.
32. Rich MM. The control of neuromuscular transmission in health and disease. *Neuroscientist*. 2006;12:134–142.
33. Wang X, Engisch KL, Li Y, et al. Decreased synaptic activity shifts the calcium dependence of release at the mammalian neuromuscular junction in vivo. *J Neurosci*. 2004;24:10687–10692.
34. Katz B, Miledi R. Estimates of quantal content during "chemical potentiation" of transmitter release. *Proc R Soc Lond B Biol Sci*. 1979;205:369–378.
35. Uchitel OD, Protti DA, Sanchez V, et al. P-type voltage dependent calcium channel mediates presynaptic calcium influx and transmitter release in mammalian synapses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89:3330–3333.
36. van Sonderen A, Wirtz PW, Verschuuren JJ, et al. Paraneoplastic syndromes of the neuromuscular junction: therapeutic options in myasthenia gravis, Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome, and neuromyotonia. *Curr Treat Options Neurol*. 2013;15(2):224–239.
37. Naguib M, Flood P, McArdle JJ, Brenner HR. Advances in neurobiology of the neuromuscular junction: implications for the anesthesiologist. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:202–231.
38. Sudhof TC. The presynaptic active zone. *Neuron*. 2012;75:11–25.
39. Jahn R, Fasshauer D. Molecular machines governing exocytosis of synaptic vesicles. *Nature*. 2012;490:201–207.
40. Heidelberger R. Neuroscience: sensors and synchronicity. *Nature*. 2007;450:623–625.
41. Turton K, Chaddock JA, Acharya KR. Botulinum and tetanus neurotoxins: structure, function and therapeutic utility. *Trends Biochem Sci*. 2002;27:552–558.
42. Restani L, Giribaldi F, Manich M, et al. Botulinum neurotoxins A and E undergo retrograde axonal transport in primary motor neurons. *PLoS Pathog*. 2012;8:e1003087.
43. Schurch B. The role of botulinum toxin in neurourology. *Drugs Today (Barc)*. 2004;40:205–212.
44. Schiavo G. Structural biology: dangerous liaisons on neurons. *Nature*. 2006;444:1019–1020.
45. Lange DJ, Rubin M, Green PE, et al. Distant effects of locally injected botulinum toxin: a double-blind study of single fiber EMG changes. *Muscle Nerve*. 1991;14:672–675.
46. Heeroma JH, Plomp JJ, Roubos EW, Verhage M. Development of the mouse neuromuscular junction in the absence of regulated secretion. *Neuroscience*. 2003;120:733–744.
47. Engel AG, Sine SM. Current understanding of congenital myasthenic syndromes. *Curr Opin Pharmacol*. 2005;5:308–321.
48. Abraham RB, Rudick V, Weinbroum AA. Practical guidelines for acute care of victims of bioterrorism: conventional injuries and concomitant nerve agent intoxication. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:989–1004.
49. Karwa M, Currie B, Kvetan V. Bioterrorism: preparing for the impossible or the improbable. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:S75–95.
50. Richtsfeld M, Yasuhara S, Fink H. Prolonged administration of pyridostigmine impairs neuromuscular function with down-regulation of acetylcholine receptors with and without down-regulation. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:412–421.
51. Kopta C, Steinbach JH. Comparison of mammalian adult and fetal nicotinic acetylcholinic receptors stably expressed in fibroblasts. *J Neurosci*. 1994;14:3922–3933.
52. Jonsson M, Gulrey D, Dabrowski M, et al. Distinct pharmacologic properties of neuromuscular blocking agents on human neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors: a possible explanation for the train-of-four fade. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:521–533.
53. Jonsson M, Dabrowski M, Gurley DA, et al. Activation and inhibition of human muscular and neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors by succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:724–733.
54. Griesmann GE, McCormick DJ, De Aizpurua HJ, et al. Alpha-bungarotoxin binds to human acetylcholine receptor alpha-subunit peptide 185-199 in solution and solid phase but not to peptides 125-147 and 389-409. *J Neurochem*. 1990;54:1541–1547.

55. Gullberg D. Cell biology: The molecules that make muscle. *Nature*. 2003;424:138–140.
56. Missias AC, Chu GC, Klocke BJ, et al. Maturation of the acetylcholine receptor in skeletal muscle: regulation of the AChR gamma-to-epsilon switch. *Dev Biol*. 1996;179:223–238.
57. McCarthy MP, Stroud RM. Conformational states of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor from Torpedo californica induced by the binding of agonist, antagonists, and local anesthetics. Equilibrium measurements using tritium-hydrogen exchange. *Biochemistry*. 1989;28:40–48.
58. Yamaoka K, Vogel SM, Seyama I. Na+ channel pharmacology and molecular mechanisms of gating. *Curr Pharm Des*. 2006;12:429–442.
59. Raines DE. Anesthesia and nonanesthetic volatile compounds have dissimilar activities on nicotinic acetylcholine receptor desensitization kinetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:663–671.
60. Gage PW. Ion channels and postsynaptic potentials. *Biophys Chem*. 1988;29:95–101.
61. Swope SL, Qu Z, Huganir RL. Phosphorylation of nicotinic acetylcholine receptor by protein tyrosine kinases. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1995;757:197–214.
62. Plested CP, Tang T, Spreadbury I, et al. AChR phosphorylation and indirect inhibition of AChR function in seronegative MG. *Neurology*. 2002;59:1682–1688.
63. Albuquerque EX, Alkondon M, Pereira EF, et al. Properties of neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors: pharmacologic characterization and modulation of synaptic function. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1997;280:1117–1136.
64. Maelicke A, Coban T, Storch A, et al. Allosteric modulation of Torpedo nicotinic acetylcholine receptor ion channel activity by noncompetitive agonists. *J Recept Signal Transduct Res*. 1997;17:11–28.
65. Nagashima M, Yasuhara S, Martyn JAJ. Train-of-four and tetanic fade are not always a prejunctional phenomenon as evaluated by toxins having highly specific pre- and post-junctional actions. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:994–1000.
66. Creese R, Head SD, Jenkinson DF. The role of the sodium pump during prolonged end-plate currents in guinea-pig diaphragm. *J Physiol*. 1987;384:377–403.
67. Ibebunjo C, Martyn JAJ. Thermal injury induces greater resistance to d-tubocurarine in local than in distant muscles in the rat. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1243–1249.
68. Fischer U, Reinhardt S, Albuquerque EX, Maelicke A. Expression of functional alpha7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor during mammalian muscle development and denervation. *Eur J Neurosci*. 1999;11:2856–2864.
69. Tsuneki H, Salas R, Dani JA. Mouse denervation increases expression of alpha 7 nicotinic receptor with unusual pharmacology. *J Physiol*. 2003;54(7):169–170.
70. Liu L, Min S, Li W, et al. Pharmacodynamic changes with vecuronium in sepsis are associated with expression of α7- and γ-nicotinic acetylcholine receptor in an experimental rat model of neuromyopathy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(1):159–168.
71. Lindstrom JM. Nicotinic acetylcholine receptors of muscles and nerves: comparison of their structures, functional roles, and vulnerability to pathology. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2003;998:41–52.
72. Khan MA, Farkhondeh M, Crombie J, et al. Lipopolysaccharide upregulates α7 acetylcholine receptors: stimulation with GTS-21 mitigates growth arrest of macrophages and improves survival in burned mice. *Shock*. 2012;38:213–219.
73. Lee S, Yang HS, Sasakawa T, Martyn JAJ. *Alpha7 AChRs play a pivotal role in the immobilization-induced resistance to atracurium in mice*. Abstract A1007; Presented at the ASA Annual Meeting, 2012.
74. Placzek AN, Grassi F, Papke T, et al. A single point mutation confers properties of the muscle-type nicotinic acetylcholine receptor to homomeric alpha7 receptors. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2004;66:169–177.
75. Tansey MG, Chu GC, Merlie JP. ARIA/HRG regulates AChR epsilon subunit gene expression at the neuromuscular synapse via activation of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase and Ras/MAPK pathway. *J Cell Biol*. 1996;134:465–476.
76. Hirose M, Kaneki M, Martyn JAJ, et al. Immobilization depresses insulin signaling in skeletal muscle. *Am J Physiol*. 2000;279:E1235–1241.
77. Sugita M, Sugita H, Kim M, et al. Inducible nitric oxide synthase deficiency ameliorates skeletal muscle insulin resistance but does not alter unexpected lower blood glucose levels after burn injury in C57BL/6 mice. *Metabolism*. 2012;61:127–136.
78. Hirose M, Kaneki M, Martyn JAJ, et al. Long-term denervation impairs insulin receptor substrate (IRS)-1–mediated insulin signaling in skeletal muscle. *Metabolism*. 2001;50:216–222.
79. Samuel MA, Valdez G, Tapia JC, et al. Agrin and synaptic laminin are required to maintain adult neuromuscular junctions. *PLoS One*. 2012;7:e46663.
80. Dilger JP. Simulation of the kinetics of neuromuscular block: implications for speed of onset. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:792–802.
81. Gronert GA. Cardiac arrest after succinylcholine: mortality greater with rhabdomyolysis than receptor upregulation. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:523–529.
82. Tsuneki H, Kimura I, Dezaki K, et al. Immunohistochemical localization of neuronal nicotinic receptor subtypes at the pre- and postjunctional sites in mouse diaphragm muscle. *Neurosci Lett*. 1995;196:13–16.
83. Chiodini F, Charpantier E, Muller D, et al. Blockade and activation of the human neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors by atracurium and laudanosine. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:643–651.
84. Faria M, Oliveira L, Timoteo MA, et al. Blockade of neuronal facilitatory nicotinic receptors containing alpha 3 beta 2 subunits contribute to tetanic fade in the rat isolated diaphragm. *Synapse*. 2003;49:77–88.
85. Martyn J, Durieux ME. Succinylcholine: new insights into mechanisms of action of an old drug. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:633–634.
86. Eriksson LI. Reduced hypoxic chemosensitivity in partially paralysed man. A new property of muscle relaxants? *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:520–523.
87. Mkrtchian S, Kahlin J, Ebberyd A, et al. The human carotid body transcriptome with focus on oxygen sensing and inflammation-a comparative analysis. *J Physiol*. 2012;590:3807–3819.
88. Santafe MM, Salon I, Garcia N, et al. Modulation of ACh release by presynaptic muscarinic autoreceptors in the neuromuscular junction of the newborn and adult rat. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2003;17:119–127.
89. Wessler I. Control of transmitter release from the motor nerve by presynaptic nicotinic and muscarinic autoreceptors. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 1989;10:110–114.
90. Goudsouzian NG, Standaert FG. The infant and the myoneural junction. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:1208–1217.
91. Shafiee G, Keshtkar A, Soltani A, et al. Prevalence of sarcopenia in the world: a systematic review and meta-analysis of general population studies. *J Diabetes Metab Disord*. 2017;16:21.
92. Yang JC, Van Remmen H. Age-associated alterations of the neuromuscular junction. *Exp Gerontol*. 2011;46(2-3):193–198.
93. Willadt S, Nash M, Slater C. Age-related changes in the structure and function of mammalian neuromuscular junctions. *Ann NY Acad Sci*. 2018;1412:41–53.
94. Sanes JR, Lichtman JW. Induction, assembly, maturation and maintenance of a postsynaptic apparatus. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2001;2:791–805.

13

Respiratory Physiology and Pathophysiology

BRIAN P. KAVANAGH† and GÖRAN HEDENSTIERNA

KEY POINTS

- Removal of carbon dioxide (CO_2) is determined by alveolar ventilation, not by total (minute) ventilation.
- Dead space ventilation can be dramatically increased in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and pulmonary embolism to more than 80% of minute ventilation.
- Breathing at small lung volumes increases airway resistance and promotes closure of airways.
- Hypoxemia can be caused by alveolar hypoventilation, diffusion impairment, ventilation-perfusion mismatch, and right-to-left shunt.
- Almost all anesthetics reduce skeletal muscle tone, which decreases functional residual capacity (FRC) to levels close to the awake residual volume.
- Atelectasis during anesthesia is caused by decreased FRC and the use of high inspired oxygen concentrations (FiO_2), including breathing oxygen before induction of anesthesia.
- General anesthesia causes ventilation-perfusion mismatch (airway closure) and shunts (atelectasis).
- Venous admixture is due to $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch (response to increased FiO_2) and shunts (unresponsive to increased FiO_2).
- Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction is blunted by most anesthetics, and this results in increased ventilation-perfusion mismatching.
- Respiratory work is increased during anesthesia as a consequence of reduced respiratory compliance and increased airway resistance.

Respiratory Physiology Is Central to the Practice of Anesthesia

Respiratory function is inextricably linked to the practice of anesthesia. Adverse respiratory effects can occur during anesthesia,[1] and the most serious cases involve hypoxemia. These events range from intractable hypoxemia caused by loss of airway patency to postoperative respiratory depression from opioids or regional anesthesia.[2,3] In the absence of adverse outcomes, general anesthesia still has significant effects on respiratory function and lung physiology, documented by observations made in the operating and recovery rooms. Improved appreciation of anesthesia-induced physiologic alterations (e.g., mechanisms of bronchospasm,[4] impact of mechanical ventilation),[5] as well as pioneering developments in monitoring (e.g., pulse oximetry and capnography),[6] together are associated with the specialty of anesthesiology's emergence as a leader in patient safety.[7] Finally, integrative measures of respiratory function, ranging from exercise capacity,[8] spirometry to tissue oxygenation,[9] to global O_2 consumption,[8] may help predict outcomes following anesthesia and surgery.

Pulmonary Physiology in Health

The mechanisms by which anesthesia-associated respiratory dysfunction is caused can be determined with an examination of normal functions and mechanisms of respiration in health. We briefly review cellular respiration, whereby O_2 is consumed and CO_2 is produced, the transport of O_2 and CO_2 in the blood, and the principles by which the lung oxygenates blood and eliminates CO_2.

RESPIRATION IN THE CELL

The partial pressure of oxygen (PaO_2) in normal arterial blood is approximately 100 mm Hg, and decreases to 4 to 22 mm Hg in the mitochondrion, where it is consumed. Glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) is converted into pyruvate (CH_3COCOO^-) and H^+ by glycolysis in the cytoplasm, and the pyruvate diffuses into the mitochondria and forms the initial substrate for Krebs cycle, which in turn produces nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NADH), as well as adenosine triphosphate (ATP), CO_2, and H_2O. The NADH is a key electron (and H^+) donor in the process of oxidative phosphorylation, wherein O_2 and adenosine diphosphate are consumed and ATP and H_2O are produced. Thus the net effect is oxidation of glucose to produce energy (ultimately as ATP), H_2O, and CO_2.[10]

TRANSPORT OF O_2 IN THE BLOOD

O_2 reaches the cells following transport by arterial blood, and the overall delivery of O_2 ($\dot{D}O_2$) is the product of the arterial blood O_2 content (CaO_2) and blood flow (cardiac output, $\dot{Q}$) as

---

†Deceased.

$$\dot{D}O_2 = CaO_2 \times \dot{Q}$$

Oxygen is carried in the blood in two forms: O_2 bound to hemoglobin (the vast bulk), and O_2 dissolved in the plasma, and the content is expressed as the sum of these components:

$$CaO_2 = \begin{bmatrix} (SaO_2 \times Hb \times O_2 \ \ combining \ \ capacity \ \ of \ \ Hb) \\ + (O_2 \ \ solubility \times PaO_2) \end{bmatrix}$$

where CaO_2 (O_2 content) is the milliliters of O_2 per 100 mL of blood, SaO_2 is the fraction of hemoglobin (Hb) that is saturated with O_2, O_2-combining capacity of Hb is 1.34 mL of O_2 per gram of Hb, *Hb* is grams of Hb per 100 mL of blood, Pao_2 is the O_2 tension (i.e., dissolved O_2), and solubility of O_2 in plasma is 0.003 mL of O_2 per 100 mL plasma for each mm Hg Pao_2

The binding of O_2 to hemoglobin is a complex, allosteric mechanism. Important insights can be gained by understanding how characteristic abnormalities of blood O_2 carriage (e.g., carbon monoxide [CO] poisoning, methemoglobinemia) affect O_2 tension, content, and delivery.

Methemoglobin (MetHb), formed by the oxidation to Fe^{3+} (ferric) instead of the usual Fe^{2+} (ferrous) iron, is less able to bind O_2, resulting in diminished O_2 content and less O_2 delivery. Here, the Pao_2 (in the absence of lung disease) will be normal: if the O_2 content is calculated from the Pao_2, it will appear normal, but if directly measured, it will be low. In contrast, MetHb level will be elevated. In severe cases, lactic acidosis develops because of impaired O_2 delivery. In addition, because MetHb has a blue-brown color, the patient will appear blue, even if the fraction of MetHb is modest; specialized oximetry can separately measure MetHb levels.[11,12] The apparent cyanosis is not responsive to supplemental O_2, and therapy involves converting (i.e., reducing) the MetHb to Hb (e.g., by using methylene blue). Important medical causes of MetHb include benzocaine, dapsone, or in susceptible patients, inhaled nitric oxide (NO).

In CO poisoning, the CO binds to Hb, with far greater (over 200-fold) avidity than molecular O_2, tightly forming CO-Hb and resulting in two main effects.[13] First, formation of CO-Hb results in fewer sites available for O_2 binding, and this reduces the blood O_2 content. Second, the formation of CO-Hb causes conformational changes in the Hb molecule such that the tendency to release bound O_2 is reduced. This effect corresponds to a leftward shift of the Hb-O_2 dissociation curve, and although this aspect of CO binding does not reduce the O_2 content or "global" delivery of O_2, it does reduce the release of O_2 and its local delivery to the cells. Because the color of CO-Hb closely resembles that of O_2-Hb, the color of the blood (and the patient) is bright red; however, as with MetHb, the PaO_2 will be normal (assuming no pulmonary disease) as will be the calculated CaO_2; however, the measured CaO_2 will be low and if severe, a lactic acidosis will be present. Modern pulse oximeters can distinguish between Hb-O_2 and CO-Hb.[13]

Finally, the *Bohr effect* refers to a shift of the Hb-O_2 dissociation curve caused by changes in CO_2 or pH.[14] In the systemic capillaries, the Pco_2 is higher than in the arterial blood (and the pH correspondingly lower) because of local CO_2 production. These circumstances shift the Hb-O_2 dissociation curve to the right, which increases the offloading of O_2 to the tissues. The opposite occurs in the pulmonary capillaries; here, the Pco_2 is lower (and the pH correspondingly higher) because of CO_2 elimination, and the dissociation curve is shifted to the left to facilitate O_2 binding to Hb.

TRANSPORT OF CO_2 IN THE BLOOD

CO_2 is produced by metabolism in the mitochondria, where the CO_2 levels are highest. The transport path (involving progressively decreasing pressure gradients) is from mitochondria through cytoplasm, into venules, and finally, in mixed venous blood from where it is eliminated through the alveoli. In the blood, CO_2 is transported in three main forms: dissolved (reflected as $Paco_2$, partial pressure; accounts for approximately 5% of transported CO_2), bicarbonate ion (HCO_3–; almost 90%), and carbamino CO_2 (CO_2 bound to terminal amino groups in Hb molecules; approximately 5%).[10] The usual quantities of CO_2 in the arterial and (mixed) venous blood are approximately 21.5 and 23.3 mmol of CO_2 per liter of blood, respectively.

Breathing O_2 can sometimes induce hypercapnia, as occurs in patients with severe chronic lung disease who are breathing supplemental O_2. Although traditionally thought to occur because increased Pao_2 reduces ventilatory drive, this is now thought not to be the case,[15] resulting instead from the Haldane effect, as well as from impairment of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction (HPV). The Haldane effect[16] is the difference in the amount of CO_2 carried in oxygenated versus deoxygenated blood, and two mechanisms explain this. First, increased Pao_2 decreases the ability to form carbamino compounds—reducing the amount of CO_2 bound to Hb—thereby raising the amount of dissolved CO_2 (i.e., elevated Pco_2). Second, the amino acid histidine, which has an imidazole group that is an effective H^+ buffer at physiologic pH, is an important linking molecule between heme groups and the Hb chains. Increasing the partial pressure of oxygen (PO_2) increases the amount of O_2 bound to Hb; this changes the conformation of the Hb molecule, which in turn alters the heme-linked histidine and reduces its H^+ buffering capacity. Therefore, more H^+ is free (not buffered) and binds to HCO_3–, releasing stored CO_2. Impairment of HPV by elevated O_2 allows increased perfusion to poorly ventilated regions; this has the effect of decreasing perfusion (and delivery of CO_2) to better ventilated regions, diminishing the efficiency of CO_2 exhalation. Patients with impaired ability to increase alveolar ventilation ($\dot{V}_A$) cannot compensate for the increased CO_2 availability, and therefore, in these patients, adding supplemental O_2 can result in elevated $Paco_2$.

OXYGENATION IN THE PULMONARY ARTERY

Systemic venous blood (central venous blood) enters the right ventricle via the right atrium. The O_2 saturation (SO_2) differs among the major veins: higher venous SO_2 reflects greater blood flow, less tissue oxygen uptake, or both.[17] SO_2 is usually higher in the inferior vena cava (IVC) than in the superior vena cava (SVC), possibly because of the high renal and hepatic flow relative to O_2 consumption. In the right ventricle, the central venous blood ($S_{cv}O_2$) from the SVC and IVC is joined by additional venous blood from the coronary circulation (via the coronary sinuses). In the right ventricle, an additional small amount of venous drainage from the myocardium enters through the thebesian veins, and as all this

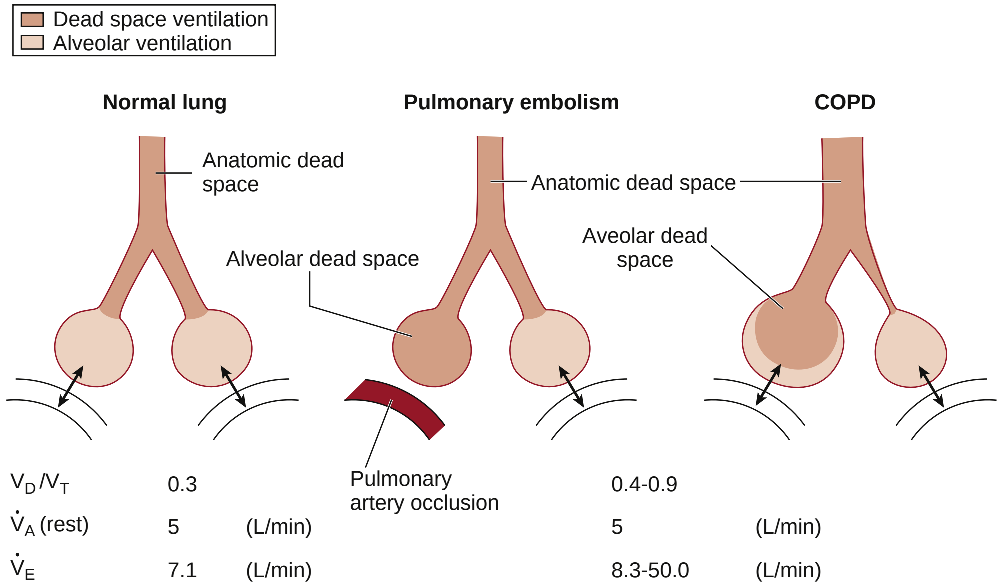


Fig. 13.1 Dead space and alveolar ventilation in normal and diseased lungs. Either cessation of blood flow or excessive alveolar ventilation relative to perfusion will cause an increase in dead space (V_D). If V_D is increased, a large compensatory increase in minute ventilation is required to preserve $\dot{V}_A$. V_D/V_T, dead space to tidal volume ratio; $\dot{V}_A$, alveolar ventilation; $\dot{V}_E$, minute ventilation. $\dot{V}_E = \dot{V}_A + f \times V_D$. *Double arrows* indicate normal CO_2 exchange. *COPD*, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. (From Hedenstierna G. *Respiratory measurement*. London: BMJ Books; 1998:184; see also book review of *Respiratory Measurement in Thorax* 1998;53:1096.)

venous blood enters the pulmonary artery, it is well mixed and is termed *mixed-venous blood* (S_vO_2); thus $S_vO_2 < S_{cv}O_2$, although the trends of each usually run in parallel.[18]

Ventilation

Ventilation refers to the movement of inspired gas into and exhaled gas out of the lungs.

ALVEOLAR VENTILATION

Fresh gas enters the lung by cyclic breathing at a rate and depth (tidal volume, V_T) determined by metabolic demand, usually 7 to 8 L/min.[19] While most inspired gas reaches the alveoli, some (100-150 mL) of each V_T remains in the airways and cannot participate in gas exchange. Such dead space (V_D) constitutes approximately one third of each V_T.[20] Anatomic V_D is the fraction of the V_T that remains in the "conducting" airways, and physiologic V_D is any part of a V_T that does not participate in gas exchange (Fig. 13.1).

For a single tidal volume (V_T, mL), the following is true:

$$V_T = V_A + V_D$$

The product of V_T (mL) times the respiratory rate (per minute) is the minute ventilation ($\dot{V}_E$). Aggregated over time, minute ventilation ($\dot{V}_E$, mL/min) is:

$$\dot{V}_E = \dot{V}_A + f \times V_D$$

The portion of the $\dot{V}_E$ that reaches the alveoli and respiratory bronchioles each minute and participates in gas exchange is called the *alveolar ventilation* ($\dot{V}_A$), and it is approximately 5 L/min. Because this is similar to the blood flow through the lungs (i.e., the cardiac output, also 5 L/min), the overall alveolar ventilation-perfusion ratio is approximately 1.

DEAD SPACE VENTILATION

Maintenance of $Pa{CO_2}$ is a balance between CO_2 production ($\dot{V}CO_2$, reflecting metabolic activity) and alveolar ventilation ($\dot{V}_A$). If $\dot{V}_E$ is constant but V_D is increased, $\dot{V}_A$ will naturally be reduced, and the $Pa{CO_2}$ will therefore rise. Therefore, if V_D is increased, $\dot{V}_E$ must also increase to prevent a rise in $Pa{CO_2}$. Such elevations in V_D occur when a mouthpiece or facemask is used, and in such cases, the additional V_D is termed "apparatus deadspace" (which can be up to 300 mL; anatomic V_D of the airways is 100-150 mL).[21]

Increases in the volume of the conducting airways (e.g., bronchiectasis) increase the overall V_D only slightly. Far more significant increases in V_D occur when perfusion to a large number of ventilated alveoli is interrupted, as occurs in a pulmonary embolus (see Fig. 13.1). Indeed, with multiple pulmonary emboli, V_D/V_T can exceed 0.8 (2.7-fold normal). In such a case, to maintain a normal $\dot{V}_A$ (5 L/min), the $\dot{V}_E$ would have to increase (also 2.7-fold) to almost 20 L/min. This effort would cause considerable dyspnea, in addition to the dyspnea induced by the lowered PaO_2.

Obstructive lung disease can result in diversion of inspired air into (nonobstructed) ventilated, but poorly perfused, regions of the lung. This results in local excesses of ventilation versus perfusion (high $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratio) in such regions,[22] which is equivalent to an increase in V_D/V_T (see Fig. 13.1). Patients with severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) may have a V_D/V_T ratio of up to 0.9, and would have to hyperventilate massively (30-50 L/min) to maintain normal $Pa{CO_2}$, which is not possible where ventilator reserve is diminished. Such patients demonstrate reduced $\dot{V}_A$ but often have an elevated $\dot{V}_E$. An important compensatory mechanism is that a lower level of $\dot{V}_A$ will maintain stable CO_2 excretion where the $Pa{CO_2}$ is increased (Box 13.1).

BOX 13.1 Alveolar Gas Equations

Alveolar Oxygen Tension (P_{AO_2})

$$P_{AO_2} = PIO_2 - \frac{P_{ACO_2}}{R} + \left[P_{ACO_2} \times FiO_2 \times \frac{1-R}{R}\right]$$

where PIO_2 is inspired oxygen tension, $PACO_2$ is alveolar CO_2 tension (assumed to equal arterial PCO_2), R is the respiratory exchange ratio (normally in the range of 0.8-1.0), and FiO_2 is the inspired oxygen fraction. The term within brackets compensates for the larger O_2 uptake than CO_2 elimination over the alveolar capillary membranes.

A simplified equation can be written without the compensation term:

$$P_{AO_2} = PIO_2 - \frac{P_{ACO_2}}{R}$$

Alveolar Ventilation

Alveolar ventilation ($\dot{V}_A$) can be expressed as

$$\dot{V}_A = f \times (V_T - V_{DS})$$

where *f* is breaths/min, V_T is tidal volume, and V_{DS} is physiologic dead space.

Alveolar ventilation can also be derived from:

$$\dot{V}_{CO_2} = c \times \dot{V}_A \times F_{ACO_2}$$

where $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$ is CO_2 elimination, *c* is a conversion constant, and $FACO_2$ is the alveolar CO_2 concentration.

If $\dot{V}_A$ is expressed in L/min, $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$ in mL/min, and $FACO_2$ is replaced by $PACO_2$ in mm Hg, *c* = 0.863. By rearranging:

$$\dot{V}_A = \frac{\dot{V}_{CO_2} \times 0.863}{P_{ACO_2}}$$

Static Lung Volumes—Functional Residual Capacity

The amount of air in the lungs after an ordinary expiration is called *functional residual capacity* (FRC; Fig. 13.2); it is usually 3 to 4 L and occurs because of the balance of inward (lung) forces and outward (chest wall) forces. The inward force is the "elastic recoil" of the lung and emanates from the elastic lung tissue fibers, contractile airway smooth muscle, and alveolar surface tension. The outward force is developed by passive recoil from the ribs, joints, and muscles of the chest wall. FRC is greater with increased height and age (loss of elastic lung tissue), and smaller in women and in obesity.[19,23]

There are two reasons why maintenance of gas in the lung at end-expiration (i.e., FRC) is important. First, inflating an already opened (inflated) lung is easier than when the lung is deflated. This is because complete collapse results in liquid-only surfaces interfacing in alveoli (high surface tension), whereas alveoli in partially inflated lung have air-liquid interfaces (lower surface tension). Second, although perfusion in the lung is phasic, the frequency is rapid and the oscillations in flow are low, resulting in nearly continuous flow. Ventilation is different: the frequency is far slower and the size of the oscillations far larger. If the lung (or large parts of it) completely deflate between breaths, the blood flowing from closed alveoli (that contain zero O_2) would have very low SO_2 (the same as mixed venous blood); this would mix into the overall blood flow from the lungs and cause a major O_2 desaturation after every exhalation.

Respiratory Mechanics

The study of respiratory mechanics tells us how inspired air is distributed within the lung and permits quantitation of the severity of lung disease. The components of overall impedance to breathing results from elastance (the reciprocal of compliance), resistance, and inertia.

COMPLIANCE OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

The lung is like a rubber balloon that can be distended by positive pressure (inside) or negative pressure (outside). Under normal circumstances, inflation of the lung is maintained because although the pressure inside (alveolar pressure) is zero, the outside pressure (i.e., the pleural pressure) is sufficiently negative. The net distending pressure, which is the difference of the (positive) airway pressure (P_{AW}) and the (negative) pleural pressure (P_{PL}) is termed the *transpulmonary pressure* (P_{TP}). Thus:

$$P_{TP} = P_{AW} - P_{PL}$$

Clearly, increasing the P_{AW} increases the P_{TP}. In addition, lowering the P_{PL} (which is usually negative and making it more negative) also increases the P_{TP}.

Compliance—the reciprocal of elastance—is the term that expresses how much distention (volume in liters) occurs for a given level of P_{TP} (pressure, cm H_2O); it is usually 0.2 to 0.3 L/cm H_2O.[24] However, although higher values of P_{TP} maintain greater levels of lung opening, the relationship—as with most elastic structures—between applied pressure and resultant volume is curvilinear (Fig. 13.3).[24] Lung compliance depends on the lung volume; it is lowest at an extremely low or high FRC (see Fig. 13.3). In lung diseases characterized by reduced compliance (e.g., ARDS, pulmonary fibrosis, or edema), the pressure-volume (PV) curve is flatter and shifted to the right (Fig. 13.4).[24] In contrast, although emphysema involves the loss of elastic tissue, the overall loss of lung tissue (as seen on computed tomography [CT] scanning)[25] means that the compliance is increased; the PV curve is therefore shifted to the left and is steeper (see Fig. 13.4).[24]

Chest wall impedance is not noticed during spontaneous breathing because the respiratory "pump" includes the chest wall. Chest wall mechanics can be measured only if complete relaxation of the respiratory muscles can be achieved[26]; however, during mechanical ventilation, the respiratory muscles can be completely relaxed. As the lung is inflated by P_{AW}, the properties of the chest wall will determine the resulting change in P_{PL}. Under these circumstances, the increase in lung volume per unit increase in P_{PL} is the chest wall compliance. Values of chest wall compliance are about the same as that of the lung and are reduced with obesity, chest wall edema, pleural effusions, and diseases of the costovertebral joints.[26]

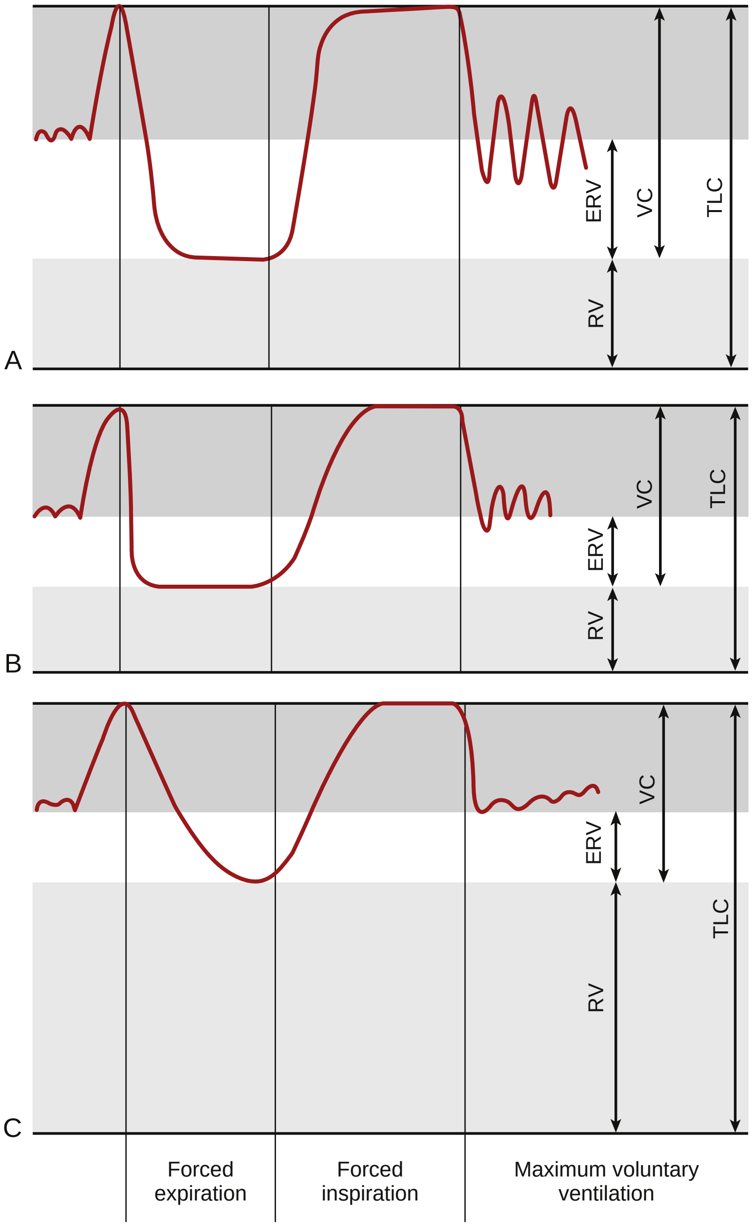


Fig. 13.2 (A) Ventilation and lung volumes in a healthy subject with normal lungs. (B) A patient with restrictive lung disease. (C) A patient with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). In restrictive disease, the vital capacity *(VC)* is decreased and expiratory flow rate is increased (i.e., steeper than the normal slope of the forced expiratory curve). In COPD, the residual volume *(RV)* is increased, the VC is reduced, and forced expiration is slowed. *ERV,* Expiratory reserve volume; *TLC,* total lung capacity. (From Hedenstierna G. *Respiratory measurement*. London: BMJ Books; 1998:184; see also book review of *Respiratory Measurement in Thorax* 1998;53:1096.)

RESISTANCE OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

Airways

Resistance impedes airflow into (and out of) the lung. The major component of resistance is the resistance exerted by the airways (large and small), and a minor component is the sliding of lung and the chest wall tissue elements during inspiration (and expiration).[27] Resistance is overcome by (driving) pressure. In spontaneous breathing, driving pressure will be the P_{PL}; in positive pressure ventilation, the driving pressure will be the difference between the pressures applied to the endotracheal tube (P_{AW}; "source") and the alveolus (P_{ALV}; "destination"). Resistance (R) is calculated as driving pressure (ΔP) divided by the resultant gas flow (F):

$$R = \frac{\Delta P}{F}$$

The value of airway resistance is approximately 1 cm H_2O/L/sec, and is higher in obstructive lung disease (e.g., COPD, asthma); in severe asthma, it is elevated approximately tenfold.[28] The presence of an endotracheal tube adds a resistance of 5 (or 8) cm H_2O/L/min for a tube with internal diameter of size 8 (or 7) cm.[29] For any tube for which the airflow is laminar (smooth, streamlined), the resistance increases in direct proportion to the tube length and increases dramatically (to the fourth power) as the diameter of the tube is reduced.

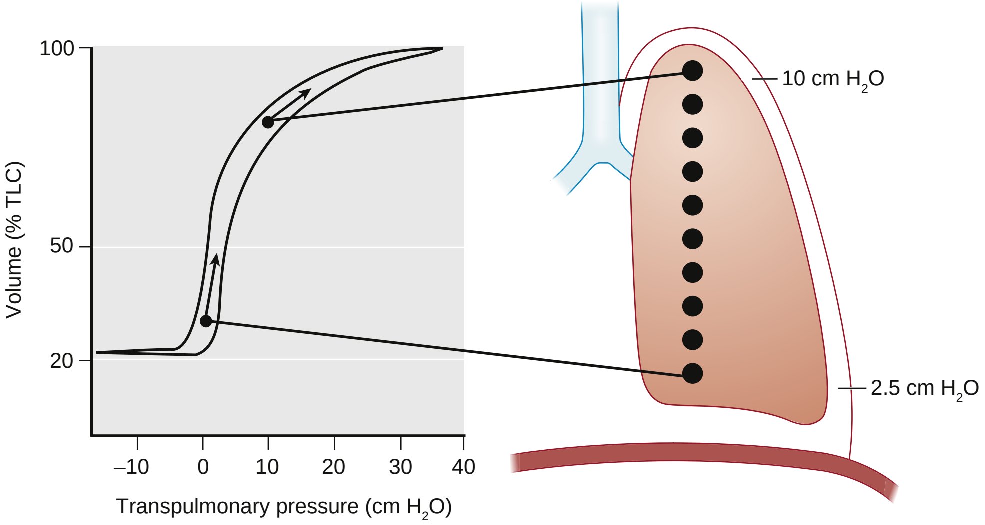


Fig. 13.3 The pressure-volume relationships of the lung. The relationship is curvilinear (typical for an elastic structure). The pleural pressure is lower (more subatmospheric) in the upper regions. In the upright subject, the transpulmonary pressure ($P_{TP} = P_{AW}–P_{PL}$) is higher in apical than in basal regions. This results in different positions on the pressure volume curve of the upper (flatter, less compliant) versus lower (steeper, more compliant) lung regions. Thus lower lung regions expand more (i.e., receive more ventilation) for a given increase in transpulmonary pressure than upper units. *TLC,* Total lung capacity.

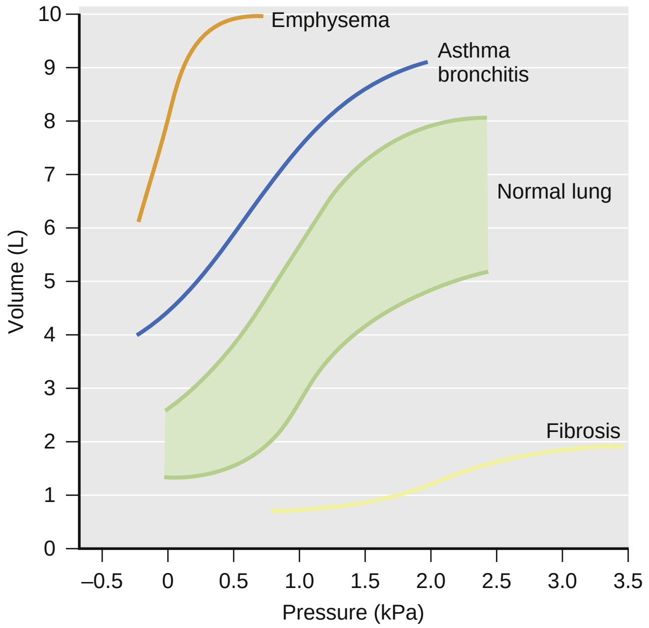


Fig. 13.4 Pressure-volume curves of the lung in healthy and lung-diseased patients. In fibrosis, the slope of the curve is flatter, reflecting considerable increases in pressure variation and in respiratory work. In asthma or bronchitis, there is a parallel *(upward)* shift of the pressure-volume curve, indicating an increase in lung volume but no change in compliance. In emphysema, the slope of the curve is steeper, reflecting tissue loss and possible increased compliance. However, in emphysema, asthma, or bronchitis, the airway resistance is increased; this increases work of breathing and overrides any benefit from increased compliance. (From Hedenstierna G. *Respiratory measurement.* London: BMJ Books; 1998:184; see also book review of *Respiratory Measurement in Thorax* 1998;53:1096.)

Two factors explain why most (approximately 80%) of the impedance to gas flow occurs in the large airways.[27] First, as bronchi progressively branch, the resistances are arranged in parallel and the total cross-sectional area at the level of the terminal bronchioles adds up to almost tenfold that at the trachea. Second, in tubes that are large, irregular or branched, the flow is often turbulent, not laminar. When flow is laminar:

$$F_{(lam)} = \frac{\Delta P}{R}$$

In contrast, when flow is turbulent:

$$F_{(turb)} = \frac{\Delta P}{R^2}$$

Therefore, for a given radius, far more pressure is required to achieve comparable flow where flow is turbulent; thus the effort required is greater and if prolonged or severe, respiratory failure is more likely.

Several factors can alter airflow resistance. First, resistance lessens as lung volume increases; this is intuitive, as increasing volume (positive pressure or spontaneous breathing) stretches the diameter of the airways. Because this is the key determinant of resistance, the resistance falls to a small extent. The opposite occurs with exhalation (Fig. 13.5). However, as lung volume approaches residual volume (RV)—as can happen during anesthesia—the airways are narrowed in parallel with the compressing lung tissue and the resistance rises exponentially. These effects are apparent with active or passive ventilation. Second, active ventilation has additional effects. Forced expiration can compress small airways (i.e., that do not contain cartilage).[27] In addition, forced expiration can cause turbulent flow in small airways in patients with COPD, precipitously dropping pressure in the lumen and thereby narrowing the bronchioles[30] and resulting in expiratory flow limitation and, after multiple breaths, eventual "dynamic hyperinflation."[31] Expiring against resistance (or pursed-lips breathing) is sometimes used by those with COPD to make breathing easier. This works by increasing expiratory resistance and slowing expiration. The slowed expiration reduces the pressure gradient driving expiration (i.e., pressure highest in the alveolus, lower toward the mouth). Therefore, the point along the airway tree at which pressure inside the airway has decreased to less than that outside the

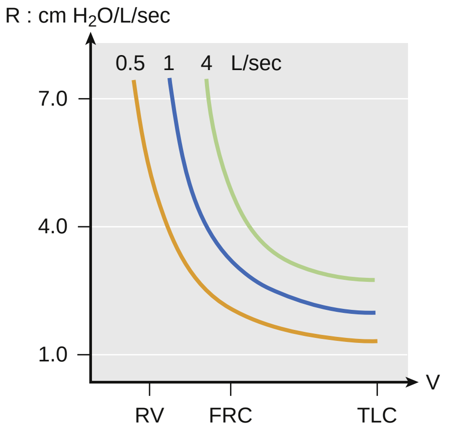


Fig. 13.5 Schematic drawing of airflow resistance against lung volume at different flow rates. As lung volume falls, the resistance to flow increases; the steepness of this increase is far greater at lung volumes below functional residual capacity *(FRC)*. In addition, higher airflow rates are associated with greater resistance. At extremely low lung volume, the resistance is comparable to values seen in moderate to severe asthma (6-8 cm $H_2O \times l^{-1} \times s$). *RV,* Residual volume; *TLC,* total lung capacity.

airway (equal to pleural pressure) is moved from smaller collapsible airways toward the mouth to noncollapsible, cartilaginous airways (Fig. 13.6); this prevents collapse of the smaller airways, which are vital for proper gas exchange.[32]

The large airways (i.e., pharynx, larynx, and trachea) are outside the chest wall. During inspiration, the intrathoracic airways are exposed to extraluminal pressure (i.e., P_{PL}) that is less than the lumen pressure; in contrast, the extrathoracic airways are exposed to lumen pressure that is less than the extraluminal (i.e., atmospheric) pressure.[27] This feature, coupled with downward stretch induced by inspiration, narrows the large extrathoracic airways; in the presence of preexisting narrowing (e.g., thyroid enlargement or tumor, paralyzed vocal cord, epiglottitis), this can critically reduce the cross-sectional area.

Tissue

Although not intuitively obvious, resistance of the lung tissue is the applied pressure on tissue divided by the resulting velocity of tissue movement. There are various approaches to determining this in humans, including separately

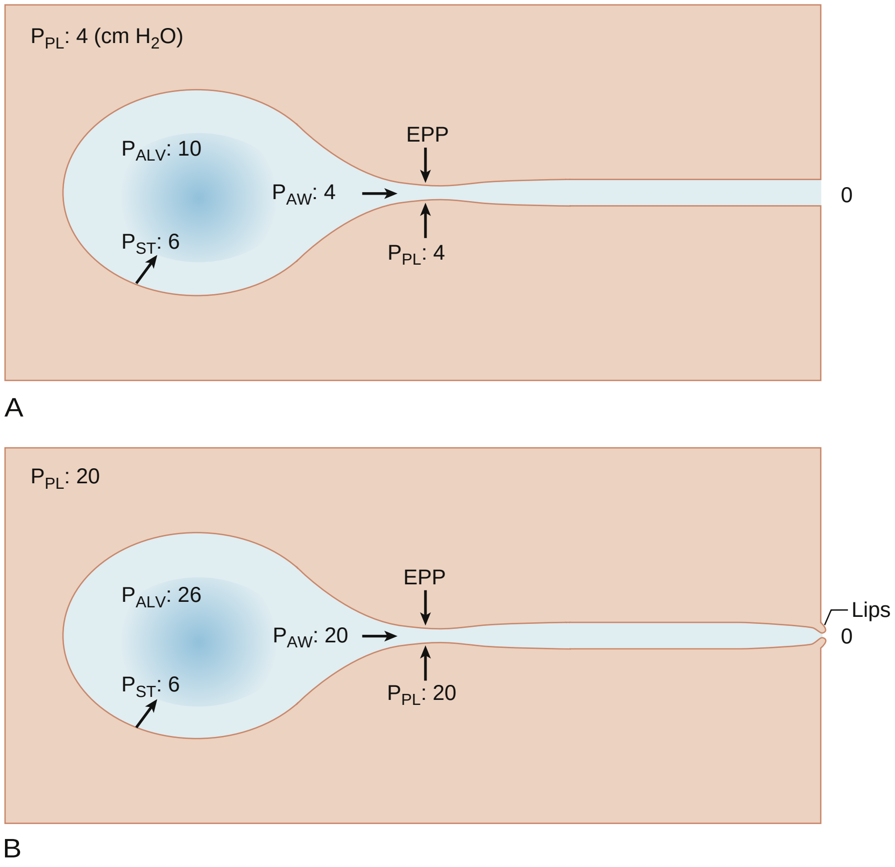


Fig. 13.6 Schematic drawings of the equal pressure point *(EPP)* concept and dynamic compression of airways. (A) Slightly forced expiration during otherwise normal conditions. With the application of some expiratory muscle effort, pleural pressure *(P_{PL})* is positive, 4 cm H_2O (0.4 kPa). The elastic recoil pressure *(P_{ST})* of the alveoli (6 cm H_2O) and the pleural pressure add together to yield intraalveolar pressure *(P_{ALV})* (10 cm H_2O). This causes expiratory flow. At some point downstream toward the airway opening, airway pressure *(P_{AW})* has dropped by 6 cm H_2O, so intraluminal pressure and pleural, extraluminal pressure are the same. This is the EPP. From this point to the mouth, intraluminal airway pressure is lower than the surrounding, extraluminal pressure and the airway may be compressed. (B) An attempt to stabilize the airway by so-called “pursed-lip” breathing. The increased resistance to expiratory flow requires increased expiratory effort to maintain gas flow. Thus pleural pressure is increased in comparison to the normal conditions (P_{PL} = 20 cm H_2O). Alveolar elastic recoil pressure (P_{ST}) is the same as in the earlier condition, provided that lung volume is the same. If expiratory flow is of the same magnitude as during normal breathing, pressure along the airway falls to the same extent as during normal breathing. Thus the EPP will have the same location as during normal breathing, and no stabilization of the airway has been achieved. The two ways of moving the EPP toward the mouth and to less collapsible airways is by raising alveolar recoil pressure (P_{ST}) by an increase in lung volume or by lowering the expiratory flow rate so that the pressure drop along the airway tree is slowed down.

considering the PV characteristics using plethysmography (where the area of the PV curve corresponds to work against total pulmonary resistance) and esophageal pressure (where the area of the PV curve corresponds to work against "tissue" resistance).[33] Alternative approaches mathematically model the lung responses to varying respiratory frequencies.[34] Lung tissue resistance amounts to 20% of the total resistance to breathing; it can be increased threefold or fourfold in chronic lung disease[35] and is reduced by panting respirations.[36] Finally, in adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) the chest wall resistance is increased.[37]

INERTIA OR ACCELERATION OF GAS AND TISSUE

A final component of the total impedance to breathing is inertance, or the pressure required to accelerate air and tissue during inspiration and expiration. This component is minor, however, and can hardly be measured under normal breathing, regardless of whether the lungs are healthy. Nonetheless, tissue inertia is large during rapid ventilation,[38] and it could be important during the rapid, shallow breathing characteristic of weaning failure or during high-frequency oscillation.

Distribution of Inspired Gas

Inspired gas is not evenly distributed throughout the lung; naturally, more gas enters those lung units that expand most during inspiration. In the resting lung, the basal (dependent) regions are less aerated than the apical (nondependent) regions; therefore, they have the capacity to undergo greater expansion. During inspiration, most gas goes to the basal units (dorsal, when supine; lower right lung when in the right lateral position).[39] This distribution is because of the compliance properties of the lung and the effects of position on the distribution of the distending pleural pressure (i.e., the P_{PL} gradient). These changes are not related to the properties of the inspired gas.

In the upright position, the P_{PL} is less negative at the base of the lung than at the apex. Because the alveolus pressure (P_A) is uniform throughout the lung, the distending P_{TP} is greater at the apex; therefore, before inspiration commences, the apical lung is more open (and is less compliant) than the basal lung (Figs. 13.3 and 13.7). With inspiration, the contracting diaphragm lowers the P_{PL} by a comparable amount in all areas of the pleural surface (because of the fluid-like behavior of normal lung[39]) and distends the basal more than the apical regions (see Figs. 13.3 and 13.7). Because the pleural pressure gradient is oriented according to gravity, the distribution of ventilation changes with body position.

The P_{PL} gradient exists because lung density, gravity, and conformation of the lung to the shape of the thorax[40] result in crowding of the basal lung tissue, making the local P_{PL} less negative in the basal regions. Because the density of normal lung is approximately 0.3, P_{PL} will become more positive by 0.3 cm H_2O for each downward vertical

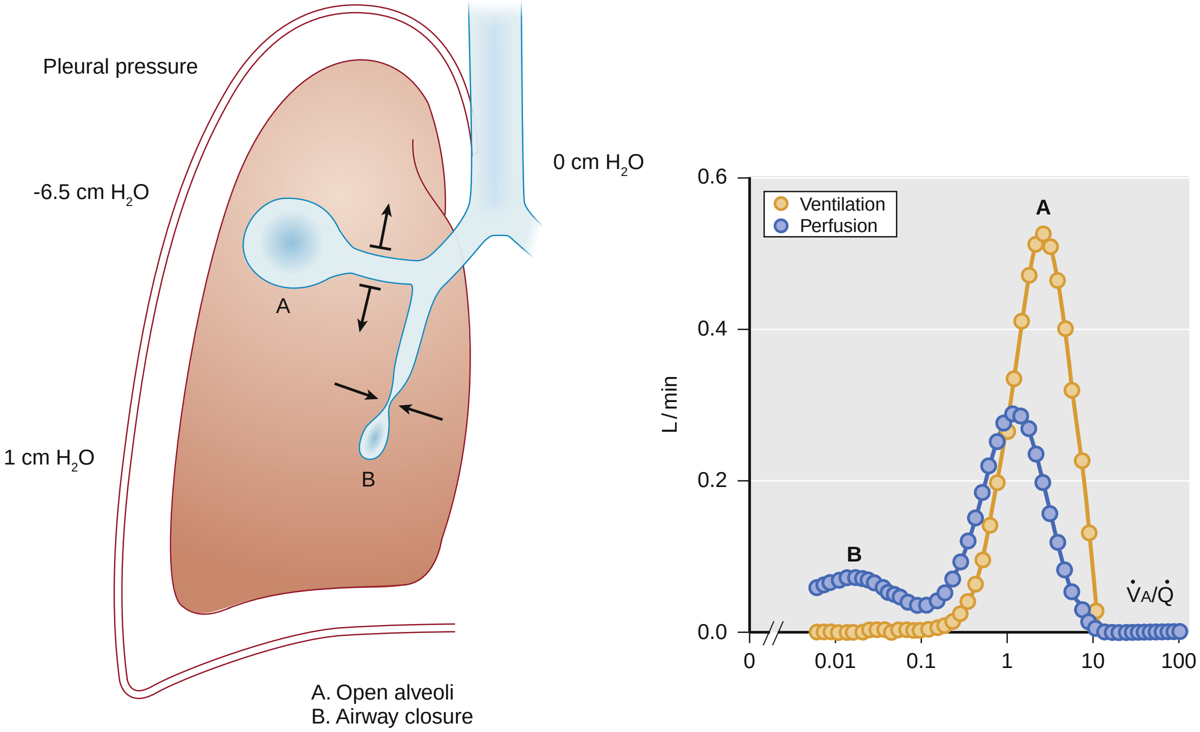


Fig. 13.7 Schematic of regional alveolar and airway volume at an upper *(A)* and a lower *(B)* lung level *(left panel)*. There is a vertical pleural pressure (P_{PL}) gradient between the uppermost and lowermost regions (–6.5 to 1 = –7.5 cm H_2O). Airway pressure (P_{AW}) is atmospheric, or 0 cm H_2O throughout; thus, in the upper regions, $P_{AW} > P_{PL}$ maintains airways open. In contrast, in the lower regions, $P_{PL} > P_{AW}$ causes airway closure—potentially exacerbated by subsequent alveolar gas absorption behind the occluded airway. The *right panel* shows the distribution of ventilation and perfusion ratios from the multiple inert gas elimination technique. A "normal" mode of ventilation and blood flow *(A)* can be seen corresponding to the open and ventilated alveoli in the upper parts of the lung. In addition, there is a range of low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratios with more perfusion than ventilation *(B)*. This pattern is compatible with intermittent airway closure during breathing.

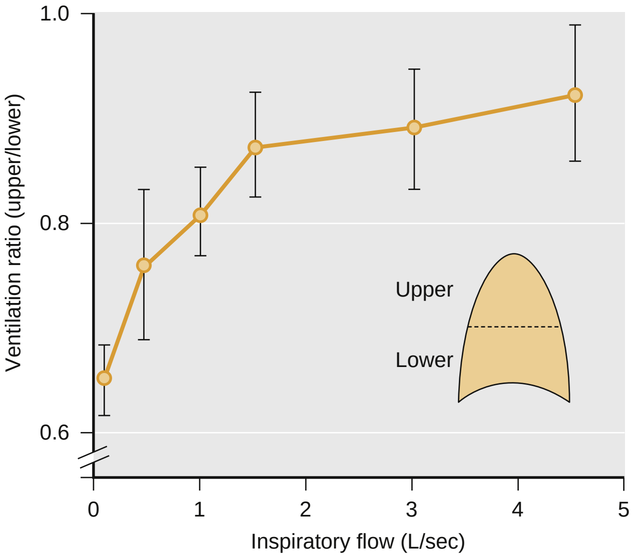


Fig. 13.8 Distribution of ventilation to upper versus lower lung regions as inspiratory flow is altered. At low flow, the bulk of the airflow goes to the lower regions. At higher flow rates (e.g., during exercise) the distribution is more even, ensuring more efficient use of all alveolar-capillary membranes for gas transfer (provided that pulmonary blood flow shows a similar distribution pattern).

centimeter, and more so with injured or edematous lungs. Indeed, experimentally induced weightlessness decreases inhomogeneity in the distribution of ventilation,[41] but does not eliminate it; therefore, nongravitational (e.g., tissue, airway) factors also play a role.[42]

Although the vertical height of the lung is the same in the prone and supine positions, the vertical gradient P_{PL} is less when prone,[43] perhaps because the mediastinum compresses the dependent lung when supine but rests on the sternum when prone.[44] A more even distribution of inspired gas—with improved oxygenation—in the prone position was predicted by Bryan in 1974[44]; this has been confirmed experimentally.[45,46]

During low-flow states (e.g., at rest), distribution is determined by differences in compliance and not by airway resistance. Because compliance at the start of inflation is less in the (already more aerated) apex, ventilation is preferentially directed to the base. In contrast, at high airflow, resistance (not compliance) is the key determinant of distribution; because the resistance is lower in upper, more expanded lung regions, increasing flow rate equalizes the distribution of ventilation, as shown by distribution of ^{133}Xe gas in humans (Fig. 13.8).[47,48] This is important during exercise or stress because greater amounts of the alveolar-capillary surface area will be used.

AIRWAY CLOSURE

Expiration causes the airways to narrow, and deep expiration can cause them to close. The volume remaining above RV where expiration below FRC closes some airways is termed *closing volume* (CV), and this volume added to the RV is termed the *closing capacity* (CC; i.e., the total capacity of the lung at which closing can occur).[49] Closure of airways during expiration is normal and is potentiated by increasing P_{PL}, especially with active expiration. When P_{PL} exceeds

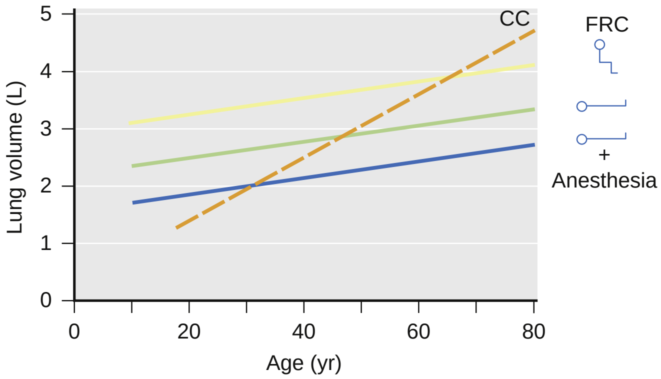


Fig. 13.9 Resting functional residual capacity *(FRC)* and closing capacity *(CC)*. FRC increases with age (because of loss of elastic tissue), and superimposed upon this is a step decrease in FRC with supine position (because of diaphragm elevation by abdominal contents), and a further decrease with anesthesia in the supine position. The CC is also increased with age, but far more steeply, causing airway closure above FRC in upright subjects (>65 yr) and in supine subjects (>45 yr). This relationship between CC and FRC explains decreasing oxygenation with age.

the P_{AW}, the airway—if collapsible—will tend to close, and this usually commences at the bases because the basal P_{PL} is greatest (see Fig. 13.7).

Three applications of this important principle are of key relevance to anesthesia. First, airway closure depends on age: in youth, the closure does not occur until expiration is at or near RV, whereas with older age, it occurs earlier in expiration (i.e., at higher lung volumes). This occurs because P_{PL} is on average more "positive" (i.e., atmospheric, equal to P_{AW}) as age increases. Closing can occur at or above FRC in individuals aged 65 to 70 years,[50] such that dependent regions will undergo closure during normal expiration. This may be the major reason why oxygenation decreases with age. Second, in the supine position, FRC is less than when upright, but CC is unchanged; therefore, exhalation of a usual V_T (from FRC) encroaches on CC in a supine 45-year-old, and closure may be continuous in a supine 70-year-old (Fig. 13.9). Finally, COPD increases the lung volume at which closure occurs, possibly exacerbated by airway edema and increased bronchial tone.[49]

DIFFUSION OF GAS

Gas moves in the large and medium-sized airways by bulk flow (i.e., convection), meaning that the gas molecules travel together at a given mean velocity according to a driving pressure gradient. Flow is through multiple generations of bronchi, and the net resistance falls with each division. After the 14th generation, airways merge with alveoli and participate in gas exchange (respiratory bronchioles). The cross-sectional area expands massively (trachea, 2.5 cm^2; 23rd generation bronchi, 0.8 m^2; alveolar surface, 140 m^2),[51] resulting in a sharp drop in overall resistance. Because the number of gas molecules is constant, the velocity falls rapidly, which by the time the gas enters the alveoli is miniscule (0.001 mm/s); it is zero when it reaches the alveolar membrane. The velocity of the gas entering the alveolus is slower than the diffusion rates of O_2 and CO_2; therefore, diffusion—not convection—is necessary for transport in the distal airways and alveoli. Indeed,

CO_2 is detectable at the mouth after just seconds of breath-holding, because of rapid diffusion and because of cardiac oscillations (i.e., mixing).

Gas mixing is complete in the alveoli of a normal lung during normal breathing. However, if the alveolus expands (e.g., emphysema), the diffusion distance may be too great to allow complete mixing, potentially leaving a layer of CO_2-rich gas lining the alveolar membrane and a core of O_2-rich gas in the alveolus. This represents a “micro” version of inhomogeneous distribution of ventilation.[52]

Perfusion

The pulmonary circulation differs from the systemic circulation: it operates at a five to tenfold lower pressure, and the vessels are shorter and wider. There are two important consequences of the particularly low vascular resistance. First, the downstream blood flow in the pulmonary capillaries is pulsatile, in contrast to the more constant systemic capillary flow.[53] Second, the capillary and alveolar walls are protected from exposure to high hydrostatic pressures; therefore, they can be sufficiently thin to optimize diffusion (i.e., exchange) of gas but not permit leakage of plasma or blood into the airspace. Whereas an abrupt increase in the pulmonary arterial (or venous) pressure can cause breaks in the capillaries,[54] slower increases (i.e., months to years) stimulate vascular remodeling.[55] This remodeling might protect against pulmonary edema[56] (and possibly against lung injury[57]), but diffusion will be impaired.

DISTRIBUTION OF LUNG BLOOD FLOW

Pulmonary blood flow depends on driving pressure and vascular resistance; these factors (and flow) are not homogenous throughout the lung. The traditional thinking about lung perfusion emphasized the importance of gravity;[58] however, factors other than gravity are also important.

DISTRIBUTION OF BLOOD FLOW IN THE LUNG: THE EFFECT OF GRAVITY

Blood has weight and therefore blood pressure is affected by gravity. The height (base to apex) of an adult lung is approximately 25 cm; therefore, when a person is standing, the hydrostatic pressure at the base is 25 cm H_2O (i.e., approximately 18 mm Hg) higher than at the apex. The mean pulmonary arterial pressure is approximately 12 mm Hg at the level of the heart, and the pulmonary artery pressure at the lung apex can therefore approach zero. Thus less blood flow will occur at the apex (versus the base), and in the setting of positive pressure ventilation, the apical alveoli can compress the surrounding capillaries and prevent any local blood flow.

Based on such gravitational distribution of pulmonary artery pressure, as well as the effect of alveolar expansion, West and colleagues[59] divided the lung into zones I to III (Fig. 13.10). This system is based on the principle that perfusion to an alveolus depends on the pressures in the pulmonary artery (P_{PA}), pulmonary vein (P_{PV}), and alveolus (P_{ALV}). In the apex (zone I), the key issue is that pulmonary arterial pressure is less than alveolar pressure; therefore, no perfusion occurs. Zone I conditions can exist during mechanical ventilation and be exacerbated by low P_{PA}. Whenever zone I conditions exist, the nonperfused alveoli constitute additional dead space (V_D). Below the apex in zone II, P_{PV} is less than alveolar pressure, and the veins are collapsed except during flow, as in a “vascular waterfall.” Although P_{ALV} is always greater than P_{PV}, perfusion occurs when P_{PA} exceeds P_{ALV} (i.e., intermittently, during systole). Below this zone is zone III, in which there are two important differences: P_{PA} and P_{PV} both always exceed P_{ALV}. As a result, there is perfusion throughout systole and diastole (and inspiration and expiration). Gravity results in equal increases in both P_{PA} and P_{PV} toward the lung base; therefore, gravity cannot affect flow throughout zone III by increasing the P_{PA} to P_{PV} pressure gradient alone. Nonetheless, it is possible that the greater weight of the blood nearer the base results in vessel dilatation, thereby lowering vascular resistance and increasing flow.[58] It was subsequently recognized that there is also a decrease in perfusion in the lung base, or zone IV, that is thought to occur because of the effects of gravity compressing the lung at the bases—and the blood vessels therein—and thereby increasing vascular resistance.[60]

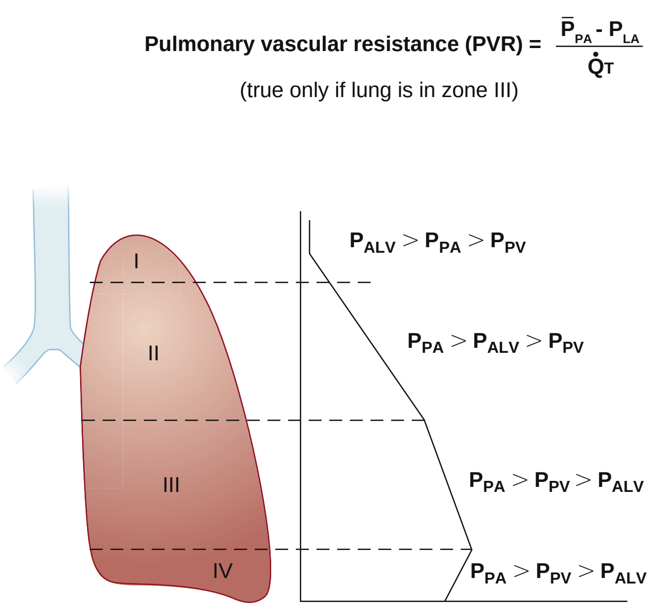

Pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) = $\frac{\bar{P}_{PA} - P_{LA}}{\dot{Q}_T}$
(true only if lung is in zone III)
I
II
III
IV
$P_{ALV} > P_{PA} > P_{PV}$
$P_{PA} > P_{ALV} > P_{PV}$
$P_{PA} > P_{PV} > P_{ALV}$
$P_{PA} > P_{PV} > P_{ALV}$

Fig. 13.10 Vertical distribution of lung blood flow. The so-called zones I, II, III, and IV are indicated. In zone I there is no perfusion, only ventilation. In zone II, pulmonary artery pressure exceeds alveolar pressure which in turn exceeds venous pressure; the driving pressure is $P_{PA}–P_{ALV}$. In zone III, arterial and venous pressures both exceed alveolar pressure, and here the driving pressure is $P_{PA}–P_{PV}$. In the lung base, blood flow is decreased possibly because of increased interstitial pressure that compresses extra alveolar vessels. P_{ALV}, intraalveolar pressure; P_{PV}, pulmonary vein pressure; P_{PA}, pulmonary artery pressure; Q_T, cardiac output.

Finally, additional evidence for the effect of gravity comes from volunteer experiments in which gravity was increased or abolished by altering the flight pattern of a jet aircraft.[61] In these experiments, zero gravity decreased cardiac oscillations of O_2 and CO_2 during a breath-hold, indicating development of more homogeneous perfusion. In contrast, more recent experiments of exhaled gas analysis (on the Mir space station) reported that the heterogeneity of lung perfusion was reduced, but not eliminated, in the presence of

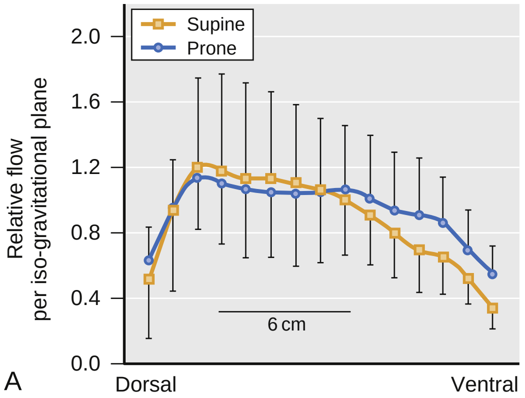


Fig. 13.11 Distribution of blood flow (ventral, dorsal) in supine versus prone position. The distributions from ventral to dorsal are similar, irrespective of position, suggesting that the anatomic features (and not simply gravity) determine the distribution of flow. The magnitude of the variability in either the prone (or in the supine) position (i.e., nongravitational inhomogeneity) is far greater than the differences in distribution between the prone and the supine positions (i.e., gravitational inhomogeneity). (From Glenny RW, Lamm WJ, Albert RK, Robertson HT. Gravity is a minor determinant of pulmonary blood flow distribution. *J Appl Physiol.* 1991;71:620–629.)

microgravity, indicating that gravity contributes to the heterogeneity of blood flow distribution but does not explain it entirely.[62] While the precise role of gravity is disputed, it is likely to play a smaller role when supine versus when upright.

DISTRIBUTION OF BLOOD FLOW IN THE LUNG: INFLUENCE OF FACTORS NOT RELATED TO GRAVITY

Key experiments have reconsidered the effects of gravity. Blood flow measured in the same gravitational plane was less per unit of lung tissue at the apex than at the base.[63] In addition, microsphere assessment demonstrated significant variability within iso-gravitational planes, and lung height appeared to account for less than 10% of the distribution of flow in either the prone or supine positions.[64] In addition, inhomogeneity in the horizontal planes can exceed that in the vertical direction (Fig. 13.11).[65] Other studies have reported a preponderance of perfusion to the central lung (versus peripheral) tissue,[66] which can be reversed by the application of positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP).[67] Although greater length of radial blood vessels was considered to explain this central-peripheral difference, others have suggested that it is not significant.[64] Finally, differences have been reported among lung regions in local vascular resistance.[68]

Fractal distribution of blood flow may be more important than the influence of gravity.[69] A fractal pattern of perfusion means that in any given region, there will be “spatial correlation” (similarity) of the blood flow between neighboring regions.

Although the methods to study lung perfusion are complex—and there is a spectrum of opinion[70]—the aggregate data suggest that factors other than gravity contribute to the heterogeneity of the distribution of perfusion.

HYPOXIC PULMONARY VASOCONSTRICTION

HPV is a compensatory mechanism that diverts blood flow away from hypoxic lung regions toward better oxygenated regions.[71] The major stimulus for HPV is low alveolar oxygen tension (P_AO_2), whether caused by hypoventilation or by breathing gas with a low PO_2, and is more potent when affecting a smaller lung region. The stimulus of hypoxic mixed venous blood is weaker.[72,73] Whereas in humans older volatile anesthetics were thought to inhibit HPV more than intravenously based anesthesia, modern volatile anesthetics, including sevoflurane[74] and desflurane,[75] have little effect. During intravenously based anesthesia, exposure of one lung to an FiO_2 of 1.0 and the contralateral lung to a hypoxic gas mixture (FiO_2, 0.12 to 0.05) reduced perfusion to the hypoxic lung to 30% of the cardiac output.[76] Pulmonary hypertension, because of vascular remodeling owing to ongoing HPV, can develop in humans at high altitude[77] or in the presence of chronic hypoxemic lung disease.

Clinical Assessment of Lung Function

SPIROMETRY—TOTAL LUNG CAPACITY AND SUBDIVISIONS

The gas volume in the lung after a maximum inspiration is called the *total lung capacity* (TLC; usually 6 to 8 L). TLC can be increased in COPD either by overexpansion of alveoli or by destruction of the alveolar wall, resulting in loss of elastic tissue, as in emphysema (see Fig. 13.4).[78] In extreme cases, TLC can be increased to 10 to 12 L. In restrictive lung disease, TLC is reduced, reflecting the degree of fibrosis, and can be as low as 3 to 4 L (see Fig. 13.4).[78]

Following maximum expiratory effort, some air is left in the lung and constitutes the RV (approximately 2 L). However, usually no region develops collapse because distal airways (<2 mm) close before alveoli collapse,[79] trapping gas and preventing further alveolar emptying. In addition, there is a limit to how much the chest wall, rib cage, and diaphragm can be compressed. The importance of preventing collapse of lung tissue was presented earlier (see Fig. 13.6).

The maximum volume that can be inhaled and then exhaled is the vital capacity (VC; 4-6 L), and this is the difference between TLC and RV. VC is reduced in both restrictive and obstructive lung disease. In restriction, VC reduction reflects the loss of lung volume, such as from the constricting (i.e., shrinking) effects of fibrosis. In obstructive lung disease, long-term trapping of air increases the RV and can occur either by encroaching on (and reducing) the VC or in association with a (proportionally smaller) increase in FVC.[78]

Tidal volume (V_T, usually 0.5 L) is inspired from the resting lung volume reached at end-expiration (FRC, 2.0 L). With increased ventilation, as in exercise, V_T is increased and FRC may be reduced by approximately 0.5 L. However, in airway obstruction, exhalation is impeded such that inspiration commences before the usual resting lung volume is reached; thus end-expiratory volume is increased.[78] Such air trapping reduces the resistance to gas flow in the narrowed airways, but because the lung tissue is hyperinflated and mechanically disadvantaged, the work of breathing overall is increased.

FRC increases with age as elastic lung tissue is lost; this reduces the lung recoil force countering the outward chest wall force, and the lung assumes a higher volume. The rate of this aging process is accelerated in COPD because of the contributions of chronic air trapping and marked loss of elastic tissue.[19] FRC is reduced in fibrotic lung diseases,[78] sometimes to 1.5 L (see Fig. 13.4). Lung resection also reduces FRC, but the remaining lung will expand to fill the lung tissue void partially; this is called *compensatory emphysema* (see Chapter 53).

DIFFUSING CAPACITY (DL_{CO})—DIFFUSION ACROSS ALVEOLAR-CAPILLARY MEMBRANES

The diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide (DL_{CO}) test integrates many phenomena that are central to respiratory physiology. The test and the factors affecting its interpretation are described here. In the lungs, O_2 and CO_2 diffuse passively: O_2 from alveolar gas into plasma and red cells, where it binds to hemoglobin, and CO_2 in the opposite direction, from plasma to the alveoli. The amount that can diffuse across a membrane in a given period is the diffusing capacity, and it is determined with the following equation:

$$Diffusing\ capacity = \frac{(SA \times \Delta P \times Sol)}{(h \times \sqrt{MW})}$$

where SA is the surface area of the membrane exposed to gas, ΔP is the gradient of partial pressure between administered gas versus blood tension, Sol is the solubility of the gas in the membrane, h is the thickness of the membrane, and MW is the molecular weight of the gas.

Assessment of diffusing capacity (sometimes called *transfer factor*) uses CO as the test gas; it is inhaled at a small concentration (0.3%) to TLC just after a maximal expiration, filling the lung as much as possible with the dilute CO. The breath is held and then deeply exhaled to RV. The difference between the quantity of CO exhaled versus inhaled will therefore either be taken up by the perfusing blood (i.e., hemoglobin) or remain in the lung (RV). The latter can be determined if the CO is coadministered with an insoluble gas (e.g., helium) that remains in the lung.

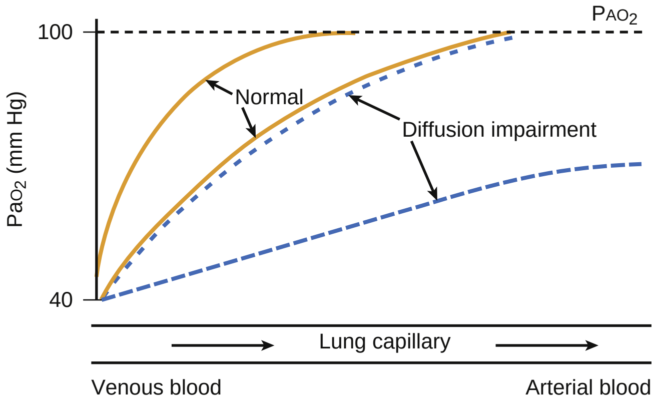


Fig. 13.12 Schematic of oxygenation of pulmonary capillary blood. In a healthy subject, there is a rapid equilibration (<30% capillary length) of the oxygen tension in capillary blood than that in alveolar gas; however, during exercise, the flow rate is greater (i.e., transit time shorter) and most of the capillary distance is used before equilibration is reached. This effect can be offset by distention and recruitment of pulmonary capillaries. If diffusion is impaired, equilibration takes longer, and it might not occur with exercise.

Surface Area

The surface area is taken as the area that is capable of exchanging gas on the alveolar and the capillary sides; thus it assumes a ventilated and perfused lung (i.e., not dead space). It will be lower in small lungs, lung fibrosis (restriction), after lung resection, or in cases of lung tissue destruction, such as emphysema.

Membrane Thickness

Thicker membranes reduce the CO transfer because the longer diffusion distance lowers the diffusion capacity, and the solubility of O_2 (and CO_2) is lower in fibrotic tissue than in plasma. Differentiating between effects of the volume of capillary blood and the membrane thickness can be difficult, but because oxygen and CO compete for binding to hemoglobin, distinguishing between these issues may be possible by measuring CO transfer with altered FiO_2 (see review by Hughes and colleagues).[80,81]

Pressure Gradient

The larger the O_2 or CO_2 tension difference (ΔP) between the gas phase (alveolus) and the plasma (capillary), the greater the rate of diffusion. The mixed venous blood entering the pulmonary capillary has a PO_2 of 40 mm Hg (5.3 kPa), and alveolar PO_2 is approximately 100 mm Hg (13.3 kPa); therefore, the driving pressure (ΔP) is 60 mm Hg (8 kPa).

When blood flows through the capillary, it takes up oxygen and delivers CO_2, but because oxygen pressure builds up in capillary blood, the diffusion rate slows down and becomes zero when pressure is equilibrated across the alveolar-capillary wall. At rest, equilibrium is usually reached within 25% to 30% of the capillary length, and almost no gas transfer occurs in the remaining capillary (Fig. 13.12). However, during exercise or stress (i.e., high cardiac output), blood flow through the capillary is faster, and a longer capillary distance is required before equilibrium is reached. Thickened alveolar-capillary membranes will also prolong the equilibration process and, if severe, can prevent equilibration occurring and increasing the propensity to hypoxemia. If the mixed venous PO_2 ($P_{mv}O_2$) is lower than normal, the driving pressure increases and partially compensates toward achieving equilibrium with alveolar O_2. The driving pressure is expressed:

$$\Delta P = (PaO_2 - P_{mv}O_2)\ mm\ Hg$$

Most of the oxygen that dissolves in plasma diffuses into the red cell and binds to hemoglobin; therefore, 1 L of blood (Hb 150 g/L) with a saturation of 98%—normal in arterial blood—carries 200 mL of Hb-bound O_2, compared with 3 mL that is dissolved (PaO_2 100 mm Hg). The Hb-bound oxygen creates no pressure in plasma, which is important because it allows much more oxygen to diffuse over the membranes before a pressure equilibration is reached. Anemia (or prior CO exposure) reduces—and polycythemia increases—diffusion capacity.

Molecular Weight and Solubility

The rate of diffusion of a gas is inversely related to the square root of its MW; the larger the molecule, the slower the diffusion. O_2 is a light gas (MW 32), and CO_2 is heavier (MW 44). However, diffusion is also directly proportional to solubility in tissue, and CO_2 is almost 30-fold more soluble than O_2. The aggregate effect is that CO_2 diffuses about 20-fold faster than O_2[82]; therefore, there is no lung disease compatible with life that measurably impairs CO_2 diffusion.

Intraoperative Respiratory Events

RESPIRATORY FUNCTION DURING ANESTHESIA

Anesthesia impairs pulmonary function, whether the patient is breathing spontaneously or is receiving mechanical ventilation. Impaired oxygenation of blood occurs in most subjects who are anesthetized,[83] and this is why supplemental O_2 (FiO_2 usually 0.3-0.5) is almost invariably used. Mild to moderate hypoxemia (SaO_2, 85% to 90%) is common and lasts from seconds to minutes; sometimes it is severe, and approximately 20% of patients may suffer from SaO_2 less than 81% for up to 5 minutes.[84] Indeed, greater than 50% of claims in anesthesia-related deaths relate to hypoxemia during anesthesia.[2] Beyond the operating room, the alterations in lung function acquired during anesthesia persist: clinically significant pulmonary complications can be seen in 1% to 2% of patients after minor surgery, and in up to 20% of patients after more major upper abdominal or thoracic surgery.[85] Such consequences of anesthesia place prime importance on ascertaining the causes of perioperative respiratory dysfunction and the clinical approaches to treatment.

In this section, we describe the effects of anesthesia and mechanical ventilation on lung function. The arrangement of this section parallels the sequence of events involved in oxygenating the blood and removing CO_2. Thus the first phenomenon that might be seen with anesthesia is loss of muscle tone with a subsequent change in the balance between outward forces (i.e., respiratory muscles) and inward forces (i.e., elastic tissue in the lung) leading to a fall in FRC. This causes or is paralleled by an increase in the elastic behavior of the lung (reduced compliance) and an increase in respiratory resistance. The decrease in FRC affects the patency of lung tissue with the formation of atelectasis (made worse with the use of high concentrations of inspired oxygen) and airway closure. This alters the distribution of ventilation and matching of ventilation and blood flow and impedes oxygenation of blood and removal of CO_2.

LUNG VOLUME AND RESPIRATORY MECHANICS DURING ANESTHESIA

Lung Volume

Resting lung volume (i.e., FRC) is reduced by almost 1 L by moving from upright to supine position; induction of anesthesia further decreases the FRC by approximately 0.5 L.[86] This reduces the FRC from approximately 3.5 to 2 L, a value close to RV. General anesthesia causes a fall in FRC (approximately 20%), whether breathing is controlled or spontaneous[87,88] and whether the anesthetic is inhalational or intravenous;[89] this is a major contributor to lowered oxygenation (discussed later). Muscle paralysis in the context of general anesthesia does not cause additional reduction in FRC.

The anatomic basis of the FRC reduction is not well understood. A landmark experiment on three volunteers using two-dimensional tomography suggested that a cephalad shift of the diaphragm, induced by anesthesia and paralysis, was responsible.[90] Recent studies using CT scanning also suggest cephalad diaphragm shift, as well as a decrease in the transverse chest area.[89,91] However, other data suggest little role for the diaphragm, with possible caudal (not cephalad) shift of its anterior aspect.[92] Simple CT suggests a cranial displacement, except in severe obstructive lung disease. Although the anatomic components of reduced FRC are debatable, the mechanism appears to be related to loss of respiratory muscle tone. FRC is maintained by a balance of the forces inward (lung recoil) versus forces outward (chest wall recoil, chest wall muscles, diaphragm). For example, maintenance of muscle tone using ketamine as the anesthetic does not reduce FRC.[89] Because patients are usually supine, the FRC will already have been reduced, and in elderly patients, this is particularly the case; in this context, the effects of anesthesia are more marked (see Fig. 13.9). As can be seen in the figure, FRC decreases with age assuming that weight does not change.

Compliance and Resistance of the Respiratory System

Static compliance of the total respiratory system (lungs and chest wall) is reduced on average from 95 to 60 mL/cm H_2O during anesthesia.[93] Most studies of lung compliance during anesthesia indicate a decrease compared with the awake state, and pooled data from several studies suggest that anesthesia is associated with a reduction in mean static compliance from almost 190 to approximately 150 mL/cm H_2O.[93] Data on changes in respiratory resistance are less clear. Although most studies suggest that anesthesia increases respiratory resistance, especially during mechanical ventilation,[93] no studies have corrected for lung volume and flow rates (both affect resistance considerably), and it is possible that changes in resistance occur merely because of volume (i.e., FRC) loss (Fig. 13.13).

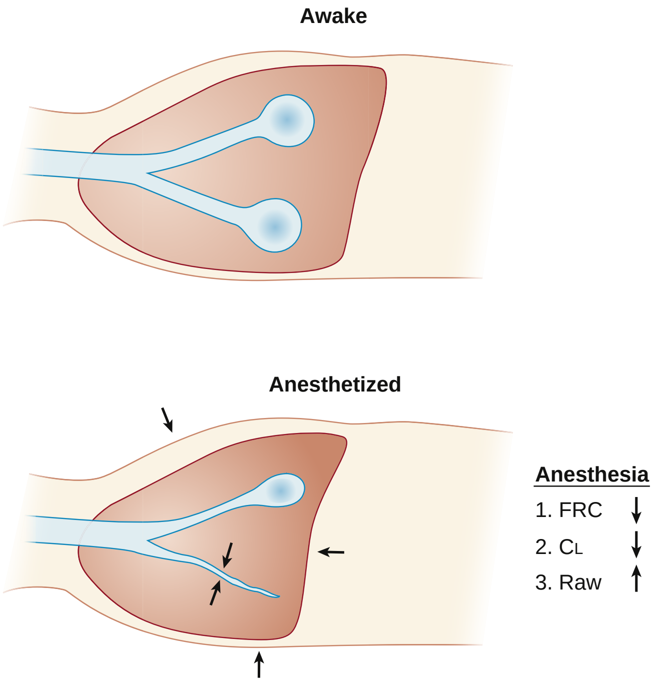


Fig. 13.13 Anesthesia induces cranial shift of the diaphragm and a decrease of transverse diameter of the thorax. These effects contribute to a lowered functional residual capacity *(FRC)*. The decreased ventilated volume (atelectasis and airway closure) can contribute to reduced compliance *(C_L)*. Decreased airway dimensions by the lowered FRC can contribute to increased airway resistance (Raw).

ATELECTASIS AND AIRWAY CLOSURE DURING ANESTHESIA

The classic article by Bendixen and colleagues[94] proposed "a concept of atelectasis" as a cause of impaired oxygenation and reduced respiratory compliance during anesthesia.[94] That study described a progressive decrease in compliance that paralleled decreases in oxygenation in both anesthetized humans and experimental animals, which was interpreted as progressive of atelectasis. However, others noticed an abrupt decrease in compliance and PaO_2 during induction of anesthesia, and yet atelectasis could not be shown on conventional chest radiography.

Since then, CT scanning has improved our knowledge of the nature of anesthesia-induced atelectasis, and the technique reveals prompt development of densities in the dependent regions of both lungs during anesthesia (data up to 1990 reviewed by Moller and associates).[84,95] Morphologic studies of these densities in various animals supported the diagnosis of atelectasis. An example of atelectasis as seen on a CT scan is shown in Fig. 13.14.

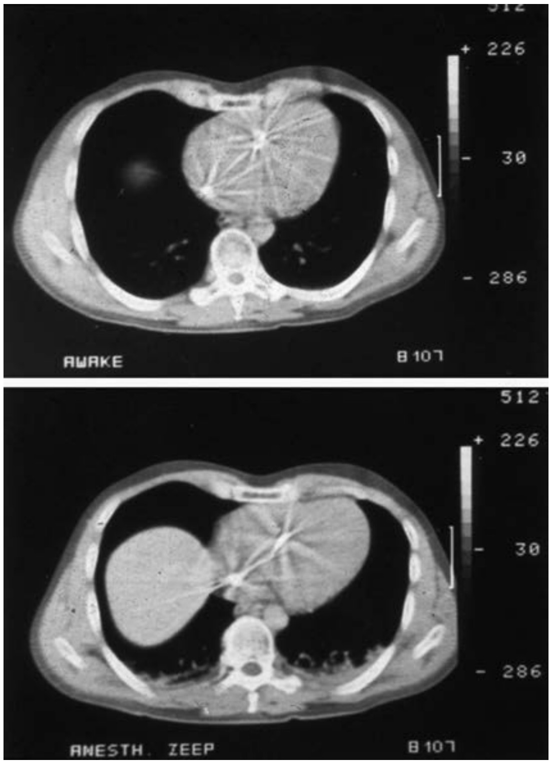


Fig. 13.14 Computed tomography with transverse exposures of the chest when the subject is awake *(upper panel)* and anesthetized *(lower panel)*. In the awake condition, the lung is well aerated (radiations from a pulmonary artery catheter are seen in the heart). During anesthesia, atelectasis has developed in the dependent regions *(grey/white irregular areas)*. The large grey/white area in the middle of the right lung field is caused by a cranial shift of the diaphragm and the underlying liver.

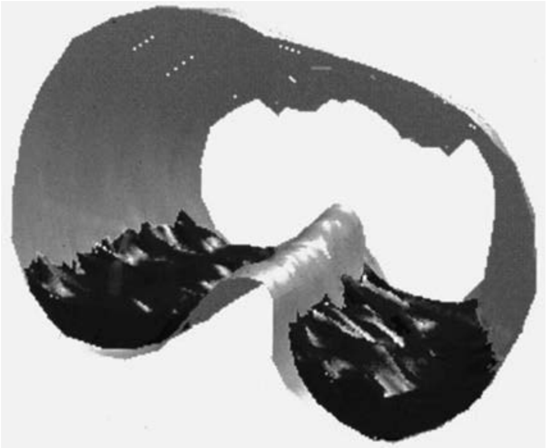


Fig. 13.15 A three-dimensional reconstruction of the thorax of an anesthetized patient with atelectasis in the dependent regions of both lungs. There is a slight decrease in the degree of atelectasis toward the apex (distal in this image). (Data from Reber A, Nylund U, Hedenstierna G. Position and shape of the diaphragm: implications for atelectasis formation. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53:1054–1061.)

Atelectasis develops in approximately 90% of patients who are anesthetized, but it is unrelated to the choice of anesthesia.[96] It is seen during spontaneous breathing and after muscle paralysis, and with either intravenous or inhaled anesthetics.[89] The atelectatic area near the diaphragm is usually 5% to 6% of the total lung area, but can easily exceed 20%. The amount of lung tissue that is collapsed is larger, because the atelectatic area consists mostly of lung tissue, whereas normal aerated lung consists of 20% to 40% tissue (the rest being air). Thus 15% to 20% of the lung is atelectatic during uneventful anesthesia, before surgery has commenced; it decreases toward the apex, which usually remains aerated (Fig. 13.15). However, this degree of atelectasis is larger (upward of 50% of lung volume) after thoracic surgery or cardiopulmonary bypass, and can last for several hours.[97] Abdominal surgery adds little to the atelectasis, but after such surgery, it can persist for several days.[98]

CT scan and vertical distribution of ventilation and perfusion
in the same lung segment

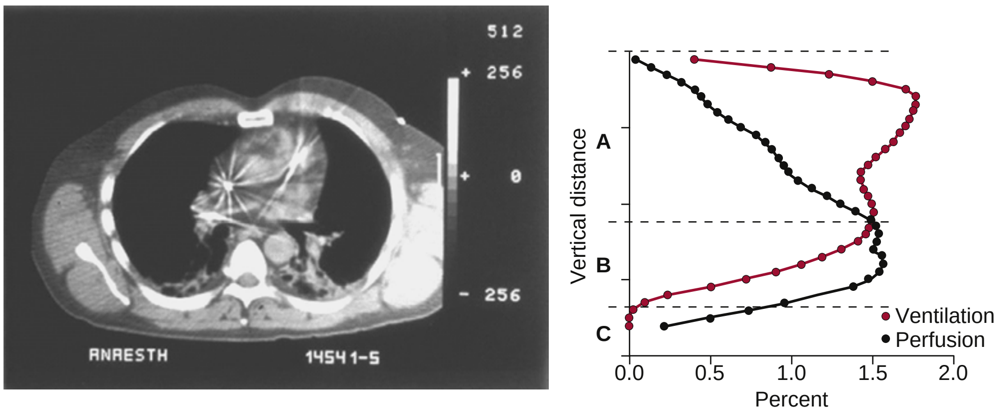


Fig. 13.16 Atelectasis and distribution of ventilation and blood flow. The *left panel* is a cross-sectional slice of a computed tomographic image of the chest of an anesthetized patient, illustrating atelectasis in the basal (dorsal) regions. The *right panel* illustrates the distribution of ventilation and perfusion throughout that slice. The bulk of the ventilation is to the upper lung region (zone *A*), in contrast to the awake subject without atelectasis, and it exceeds the level of local perfusion; this results in wasted ventilation (i.e., dead space) in the upper regions. In the lower region (zone *B*), the ventilation is less (probably because of intermittent airway closure) and is exceeded by the local perfusion, resulting in areas of low $\dot{V}_A/Q$, causing hypoxemia. In the next lowest region (zone *C*), there is complete cessation of ventilation because of atelectasis, but some perfusion exists and causes a shunt. The farther from the top of the lung, the higher the perfusion; however, in the lowermost regions perfusion decreases (see text). (Data from Hedenstierna G. Alveolar collapse and closure of airways: regular effects of anaesthesia. *Clin Physiol Funct Imaging.* 2003;23:123–129.)

Atelectasis is an important cause of hypoxemia: there is a strong and significant correlation between the degree of atelectasis and the size of the pulmonary shunt (R = 0.81), where atelectasis is expressed as the percentage of lung area just above the diaphragm on CT scan and shunt is expressed as the percentage of cardiac output using the multiple inert gas elimination technique (MIGET).[96] The site of the increased shunt has been colocalized to the areas of atelectasis, using a technique that combines CT scanning and single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT; Fig. 13.16).[99] In addition to shunt, atelectasis may form a focus of infection and can certainly contribute to pulmonary complications.[100]

Aside from anesthesia (and the type of surgery), it is difficult to predict the development of atelectasis. The magnitude of atelectasis is often directly related to the body mass index (BMI) and inspired oxygen concentration.[87,89] Moreover, neither age[96] nor the presence of COPD[101] predicts the development or extent of atelectasis. In COPD, it may be that airway closure precedes (and therefore prevents) alveolar closure. Alternatively, the greater loss of lung (elastic recoil) versus chest wall tissue may serve to protect against atelectasis.

PREVENTION OF ATELECTASIS DURING ANESTHESIA

Several interventions can help prevent atelectasis[95] or even reopen collapsed tissue, as discussed in the following sections.

Positive End-Expiratory Pressure

The application of PEEP (10 cm H_2O) has been repeatedly demonstrated to reexpand atelectasis in part (Fig. 13.17). Some atelectasis may persist and might require higher PEEP and inspiratory airway pressure.[89] The application of larger levels of PEEP can have complex effects. Reversal of hypoxemia is not proportionally associated with applied PEEP, and a threshold exists in many cases. In addition, SaO_2 may decrease during the application of increased PEEP for two reasons. First, the increased P_{PL} owing to the PEEP can impair venous return, especially in the presence of hypovolemia, lowering the cardiac output and oxygen delivery (DO_2) and thereby reducing mixed venous O_2 content (C_vO_2). In the presence of an intrapulmonary shunt, such as with atelectasis, the mixed venous blood is shunted directly into pulmonary venous blood causing arterial desaturation. Second, increased PEEP can cause redistribution of blood flow away from the aerated, expanded regions (distended by PEEP) toward atelectatic areas (not distended by PEEP; Fig. 13.18).[102] In this context, persisting atelectasis in a dependent lung receives a larger proportion of the total pulmonary blood flow than without PEEP.[58] Finally, anesthesia-induced atelectasis rapidly reemerges after discontinuation of PEEP.[89] Indeed, Hewlett and coworkers[103] in 1974 cautioned against the "indiscriminate use of PEEP in routine anesthesia."

To avoid negative circulatory effects, the magnitude of PEEP should just be enough to open up a collapsed lung. A PEEP of 7 cm H_2O in normal-weight patients (BMI < 25 kg/m^2) without cardiopulmonary disease will recruit most of the lung, and keep it open with better oxygenation than in a comparable group without PEEP.[104] Thus a forceful dedicated recruit maneuver should not be needed. This effect was seen in nonabdominal surgery, and whether similar beneficial effect will be seen in abdominal surgery remains to be shown.

Recruitment Maneuvers

A sigh maneuver, or a large V_T, has been suggested for reversing atelectasis[10]; however, atelectasis is not uniformly reduced by a V_T increase or sigh up to P_{AW} of 20 cm H_2O.[105] Instead, a P_{AW} of 30 cm H_2O is required for initial opening, and 40 cm H_2O for more complete reversal (Fig. 13.19). In the presence of normal lungs, such inflation is equivalent to a VC and can therefore be called a *VC*

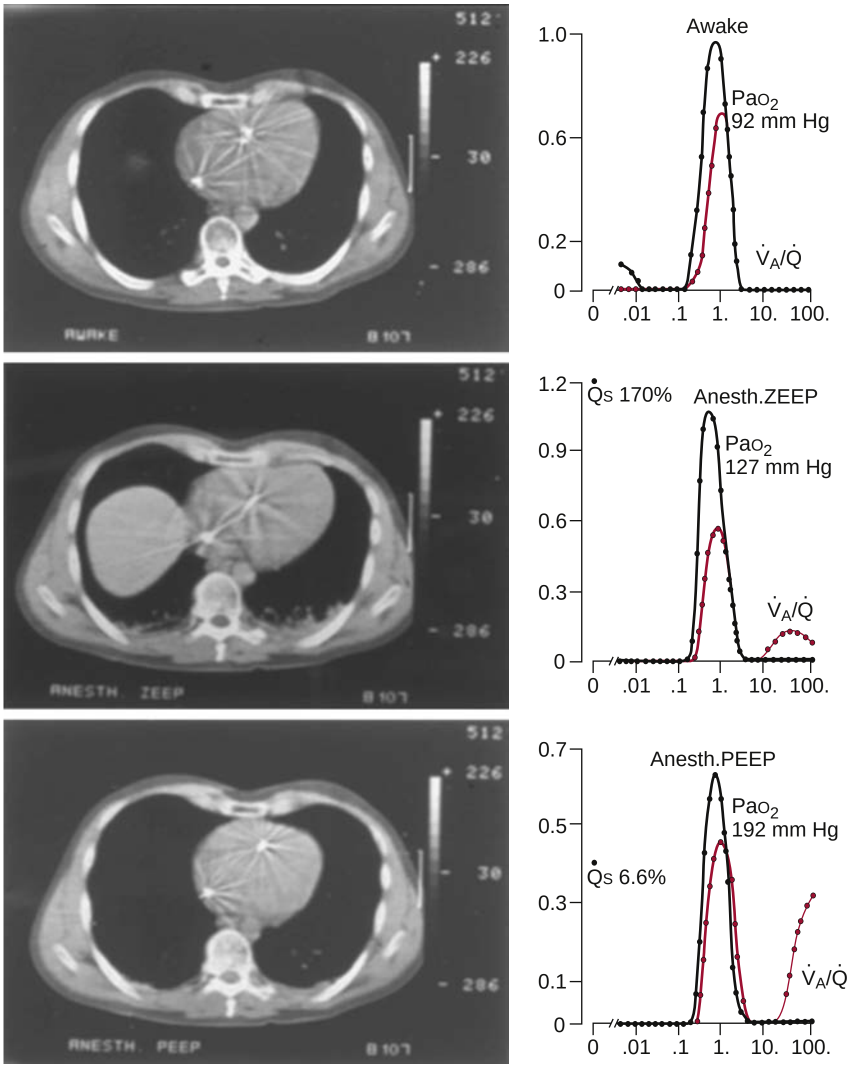


Fig. 13.17 Computed tomographic scans and $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ distributions in the lung of a healthy, awake subject during anesthesia (zero positive end-expiratory pressure *[ZEEP]*) and during anesthesia (10 cm H_2O positive end-expiratory pressure *[PEEP]*). In the awake state, there is no atelectasis and the corresponding minor low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ distribution (*left side* of plot) may reflect intermittent airway closure. During anesthesia with ZEEP, atelectasis is apparent in the lung bases (and the diaphragm has been pushed cranially). The low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ has been replaced by atelectasis and large shunt; in addition, a small "high" $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mode (*right side* of plot) may reflect alveolar dead space in upper lung regions. With the addition of PEEP during anesthesia, the collapsed lung tissue has been recruited and the shunt has been reduced considerably. Moreover, the "high" $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mode (*right side* of plot) has significantly increased; this may reflect additional inflation of nonperfused upper lung.

maneuver (albeit achieved with positive P_{AW}). In addition, a significant hemodynamic effect is likely if the VC maneuver is sustained; in fact, inflation with a P_{AW} of 40 cm H_2O for 7 to 8 seconds appears to successfully open almost all anesthesia-induced atelectasis.[106]

Minimizing Gas Resorption

Although recruitment of anesthesia-induced atelectasis is completely possible with either PEEP or a VC maneuver, continuous application of some level of PEEP is required to prevent rapid recurrence of the atelectasis.[107] However, nitrogen (N_2)—an insoluble gas that is not absorbed into the blood—can "splint" the alveolus if the alveolus is already opened. As a result, in anesthetized patients, a VC maneuver followed by ventilation with a gas mixture containing 60% N_2 (40% O_2) reduced the propensity for reaccumulation of atelectasis, with only 20% reappearing 40 minutes after recruitment.[107]

The same principles apply in the practice of preoxygenation of patients during induction of anesthesia. Here, the aim is to prevent O_2 desaturation (i.e., gain an O_2 safety margin) during induction before the airway has been secured when the anesthesiologist can better manage ventilation and oxygenation. Traditionally, the application of FiO_2 1.0 has been used. Although the SaO_2 is usually well maintained with this approach, atelectasis inevitably forms. The use of 30% versus 100% O_2 during induction was demonstrated in a clinical study to eliminate the formation of atelectasis.[108] Later, a comparison of breathing 100%, 80%, and 60% O_2 during induction demonstrated ubiquitous atelectasis with 100%, less with 80%, and even less with 60% O_2 (Fig. 13.20); however, the trade-off for less atelectasis was a shorter safety margin before occurrence of O_2 desaturation.[109]

An alternative approach may be continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP). Application of CPAP 10 cm

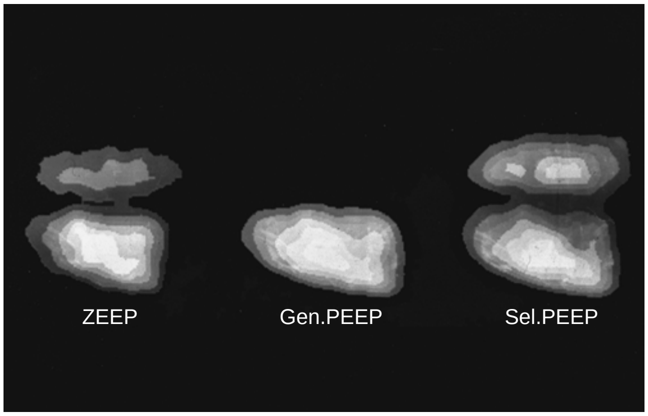


Fig. 13.18 Gamma camera images of lung blood flow in an anesthetized subject in the lateral position. During mechanical ventilation with zero end-expiratory pressure *(ZEEP)*, perfusion is predominantly (60%-70% of cardiac output) to the lower lung. Applying PEEP (10 cm H_2O) to both lungs forces more perfusion to the lower lung, leaving almost no perfusion to the upper lung (i.e., major increase in V_D). In contrast, selective application of PEEP to the lower lung causes redistribution of perfusion to the upper lung. Of course, the image presented is perfused tissue (not total anatomic lung tissue; in the right lateral position the upper-right lung would be larger). *PEEP*, Positive end-expiratory pressure. (From Hedenstierna G, Baehrendtz S, Klingstedt C, et al. Ventilation and perfusion of each lung during differential ventilation with selective PEEP. *Anesthesiology.* 1984;61:369–376.)

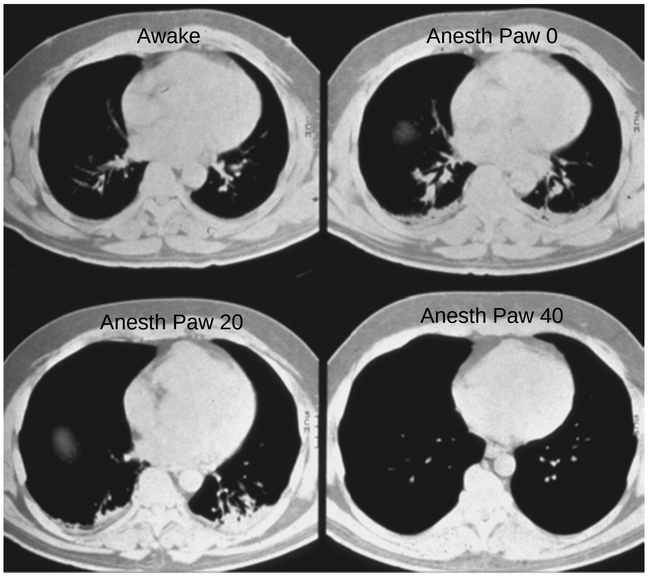


Fig. 13.19 Computed tomographic (CT) scans during awake and anesthetized states with altered airway pressure *(P_{AW})*. The CT scan in the awake subject *(upper left panel)* shows normal vasculature and no atelectasis. During anesthesia (P_{AW}, 0 cm H_2O; *upper right panel*), bilateral basal atelectasis is seen; the P_{AW} is increased in increments (20 cm H_2O shown), but the atelectasis is not reversed until a P_{AW} of 40 cm H_2O is applied (*lower right panel*). Thus a vital capacity maneuver was required to open the lung. (From Rothen HU, Sporre B, Engberg G, Wegenius G, Hedenstierna G. Re-expansion of atelectasis during general anaesthesia: a computed tomography study. *Br J Anaesth.* 1993;71:788–795.)

H_2O permitted the use of 100% inspired O_2 without formation of significant degrees of atelectasis.[110] This might provide an ideal combination of minimal risk of either O_2 desaturation or atelectasis, but it has not been repeatedly verified.

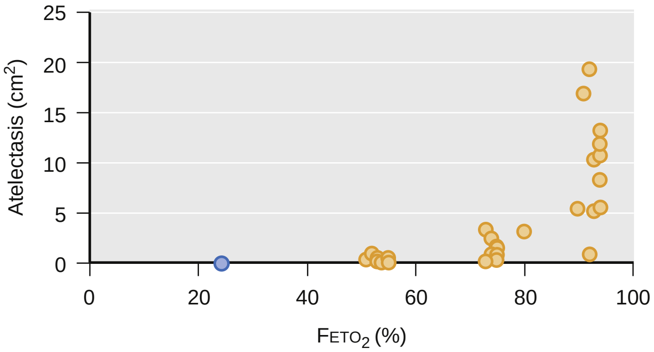


Fig. 13.20 Atelectasis formation in anesthetized subjects following preoxygenation with different inspired oxygen concentrations. Increasing the FiO_2 during preoxygenation increases the propensity to subsequent atelectasis (closed symbols), although there is much variability. The blue circle at around an expired oxygen concentration ($FETO_2$) of 25% represents data from anesthesia being induced while breathing 30% O_2. *$FETO_2$*, Expiratory oxygen fraction. (From Rothen HU, Sporre B, Engberg G, Wegenius G, Reber A, Hedenstierna G. Prevention of atelectasis during general anaesthesia. *Lancet.* 1995;345:1387–1391.)

Maintenance of Muscle Tone

Because loss of muscle tone in the diaphragm or chest wall appears to increase the risk of atelectasis, techniques that preserve muscle tone may have advantages. Intravenous ketamine does not impair muscle tone and is the only individual anesthetic that does not cause atelectasis. If neuromuscular blockade is added, atelectasis occurs as with other anesthetics.[90] Ketamine is an extremely useful anesthetic in special circumstances but has challenges with widespread use.

An experimental approach is restoration of respiratory muscle tone by diaphragm pacing. This approach is achieved with phrenic nerve stimulation, and it can modestly reduce the degree of atelectasis; however, the effect is minor and the approach is complicated.[111]

Atelectasis Following Surgery

Hypoxemia is common after anesthesia and surgery. It is enhanced by breathing oxygen before induction of anesthesia and suctioning of the airway (negative pressure) before extubation of the trachea. In addition, splinting and inhibition of coughing associated with pain can cause atelectasis postoperatively. Several approaches have been tried to address such atelectasis-associated hypoxemia following surgery. Administration of 100% O_2 coupled with a VC maneuver is not effective; this is probably because while the VC maneuver recruits the lung, the alveolar opening is not maintained (in fact closure is encouraged by the N_2-free O_2).[111] However, a VC maneuver followed by a lower O_2 concentration (40% O_2 in N_2) can maintain an open lung until the end of anesthesia.[106] Oxygenation is sustained for a longer period following ventilation with 50% O_2 in air (i.e., N_2) compared with 100%, following cardiopulmonary bypass.[113] In addition, use of 100% inspired oxygen before extubation increases the propensity to atelectasis[112] and treatment of postoperative hypoxemia, considered to be due to atelectasis, is associated with better outcomes when CPAP is used instead of 100% O_2.[114]

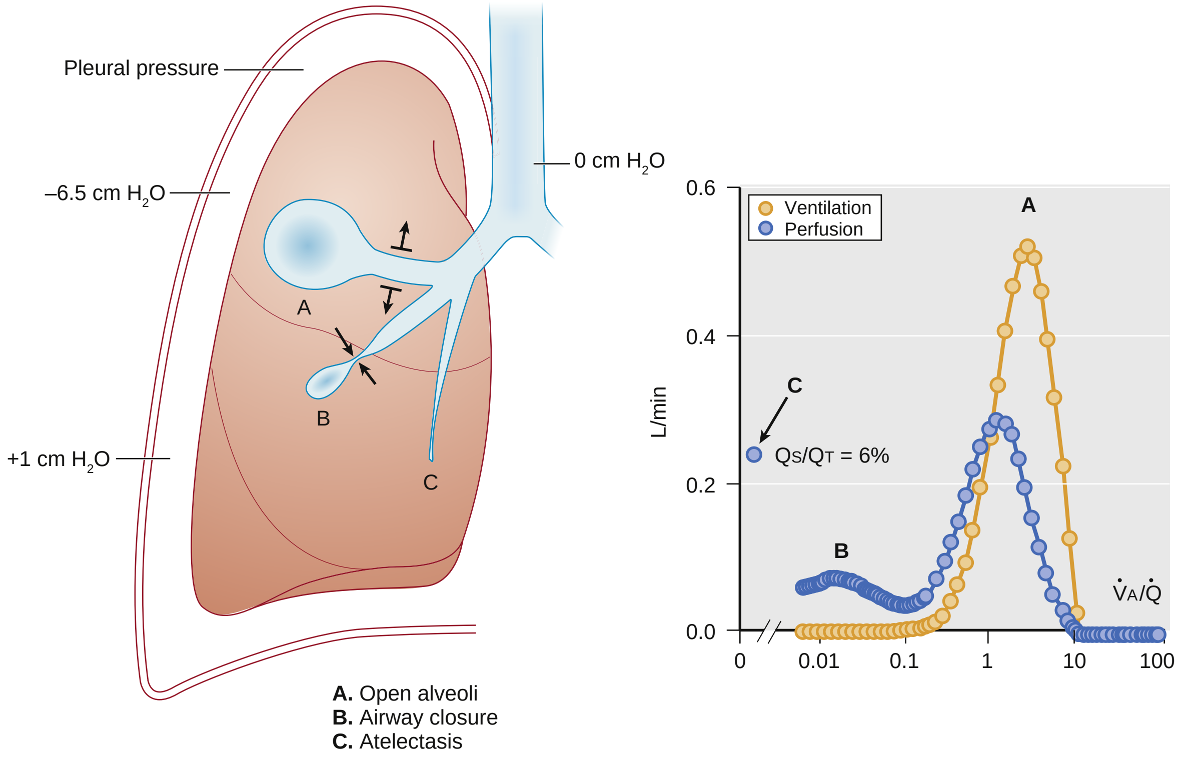


Fig. 13.21 A three-compartment model of ventilation and perfusion during anesthesia. In the upper regions, the alveoli and airways are open *(left panel, A)*. In the middle region, the airways are intermittently closed *(B)*, and atelectasis is present in the lower region *(C)*. The corresponding ventilation-perfusion distribution (multiple inert gas elimination technique) is illustrated in the *right panel*. Mode *A* reflects good ventilation and perfusion, whereas mode *B* reflects intermittent airway closure. In addition, there is a shunt in the atelectatic region (mode *C*). Q_S/Q_T, Venous admixture, or shunt equation.

AIRWAY CLOSURE

Intermittent airway closure reduces ventilation of the affected alveoli. Such lung regions can become regions of low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ if perfusion is maintained or is not reduced to the same degree as ventilation. The propensity to airway closure increases with age (see Fig. 13.9),[49] as does perfusion to low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ regions.[115] Anesthesia reduces FRC by about 0.5 L,[87] which increases airway closure during tidal ventilation.[116,117] In fact, the reduction in ventilation in the nonatelectatic lung (Fig. 13.21) is caused by airway closure. In addition, ventilation in these regions is less than perfusion (i.e., regions of low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$) and contributes to impaired oxygenation during anesthesia. Taken together, the combination of atelectasis and airway closure explain about 75% of the overall impairment in oxygenation.[88] In addition, where (CV–ERV) indicates the amount of airway closure occurring above FRC (and ERV is expiratory reserve volume), this value increased with induction of anesthesia, and there is good correlation between low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ and the extent of airway closure.[88] In summary, a simple three-compartment lung model (normal $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ matching regions, region of airway closure, and atelectatic lung) describes well the components contributing to impairment of oxygenation during anesthesia (see Fig. 13.21).

DISTRIBUTION OF VENTILATION AND BLOOD FLOW DURING ANESTHESIA

Distribution of Ventilation

Redistribution of inspired gas away from dependent to nondependent lung regions has been demonstrated, using isotope techniques in anesthetized supine humans. Radiolabeled aerosol and SPECT demonstrate that ventilation is distributed mainly to the upper lung regions, with a successive decrease toward the lower lung regions, and an absence of ventilation in the lower-most regions, a finding consistent with the atelectasis demonstrable using CT (see Fig. 13.16).[100]

Recruitment maneuvers increase dependent lung ventilation in anesthetized subjects in the lateral[118] and supine[119] positions, restoring the distribution of ventilation to that in the awake state. Thus restoration of overall FRC toward the awake level returns gas distribution toward the awake pattern. The explanations are recruitment of atelectatic lung, reopening of closed airways, and further expansion of already expanded (upper) lung regions, decreasing regional compliance and lessening incremental ventilation.

Distribution of Lung Blood Flow

The distribution of lung blood flow has been studied by injection of radioactively labeled macroaggregated albumin and SPECT.[99] During anesthesia, a successive increase in perfusion occurs from upper toward lower regions, with a slight drop in perfusion in the lowermost portion of the lung, which is atelectatic on simultaneous CT (see Fig. 13.16). PEEP will impede venous return to the right heart and reduce cardiac output. It can also affect pulmonary vascular resistance, although this would have little effect on cardiac output. In addition, PEEP redistributes blood flow toward dependent lung regions,[59,119] reducing flow (and increasing dead space) in the upper lung; the increased dependent flow may increase shunt through atelectatic lung.[102]

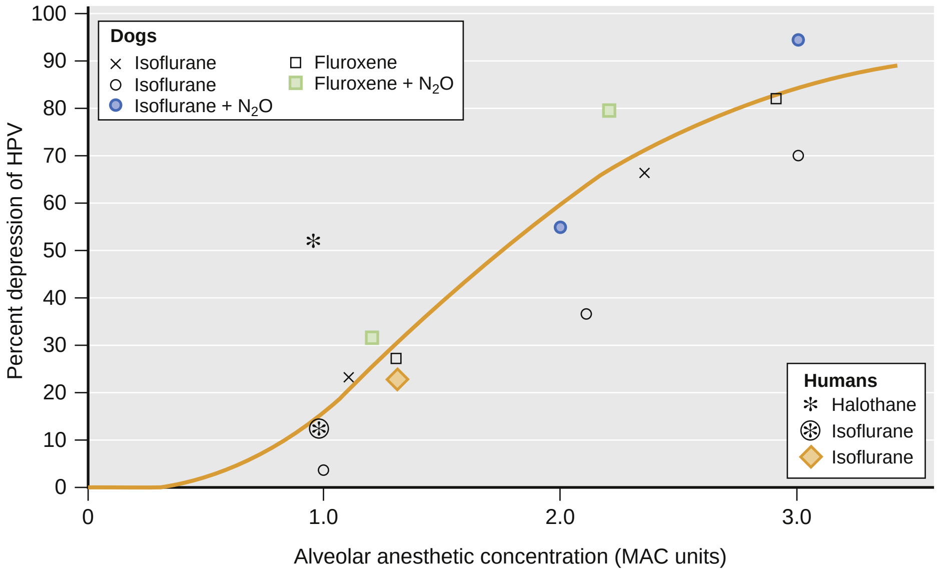


Fig. 13.22 Effect of inhaled anesthetics on hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction *(HPV)*. A concentration of 1 MAC causes a 20% to 30% depression of HPV, and the HPV depression decreases sharply with higher concentrations. The effect is that the shunt (i.e., perfusion through nonventilated regions) will be less reduced during inhalational anesthesia. *MAC*, Minimum alveolar concentration. (From Marshall BE. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl.* 1990;94:37–41.)

HYPOXIC PULMONARY VASOCONSTRICTION

Several inhaled—but not intravenous—anesthetics inhibit HPV in isolated lung preparations.[120] Human studies of HPV are complex with multiple parameters changing simultaneously, thereby confounding the HPV response with changes in cardiac output, myocardial contractility, vascular tone, blood volume distribution, pH, P_{CO_2}, and lung mechanics. However, studies with no obvious changes in cardiac output indicated that isoflurane and halothane depress the HPV response by 50% at a minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) of 2 (Fig. 13.22).[121]

Ventilation-Perfusion Matching During Anesthesia

DEAD SPACE, SHUNT, AND VENTILATION-PERFUSION RELATIONSHIPS

CO_2 Elimination

Anesthesia impairs CO_2 elimination and oxygenation of blood. The explanation for reduced CO_2 elimination is reduced minute ventilation ($\dot{V}_E$) because of respiratory depression, or where this is preserved, because of an increase in the V_D/V_T. Single-breath wash out recordings demonstrate that “anatomic” dead space is unchanged, indicating that increased V_D/V_T is alveolar and confirmed by MIGET scan (Fig. 13.23).[10] Such high $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ can be explained by the perfusion of small corner vessels in interalveolar septa in the upper lung regions, where alveolar pressure can exceed pulmonary vascular pressure (zone I).[84] The impaired CO_2 elimination is most easily corrected by increasing the ventilation and is seldom a problem in routine anesthesia with mechanical ventilation.

Oxygenation

The impairment in arterial oxygenation during anesthesia is more marked with increased age, obesity, and

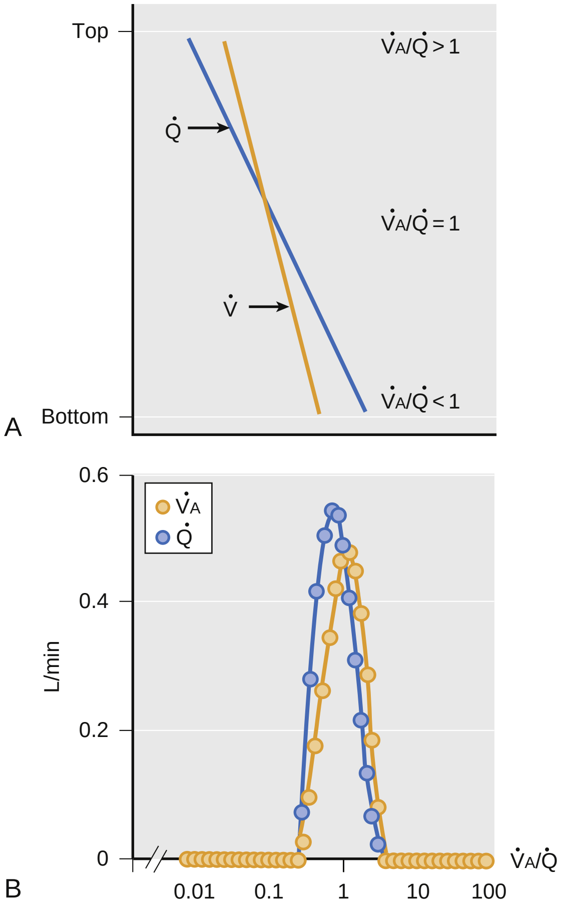


Fig. 13.23 A schematic drawing of (A) the vertical distributions of ventilation ($\dot{V}_A$) and blood flow through the lung ($\dot{Q}$) and (B) the resulting ventilation-perfusion distribution ($\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$). The $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ distribution is centered at a ratio of 1, corresponding to the intersection of the ventilation and perfusion distribution curves. The slightly larger ventilation than perfusion in upper lung regions contribute to the high $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratios greater than 1, whereas the larger perfusion than ventilation in the lower part of the lung is the cause of the lower $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratios, less than 1. Although there is a moderate increase in ventilation down the lung, the increase in perfusion is greater.

BOX 13.2 Derivation of the Venous Admixture (Shunt) Equation

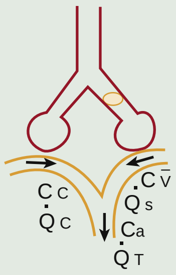
$$Ca \times \dot{Q}_T = \left(Cc' \times \dot{Q}_C\right) + \left(C_{\bar{v}} \times \dot{Q}_S\right) \qquad (1)$$

$$\dot{Q}_C = \dot{Q}_T - \dot{Q}_S \qquad (2)$$

By inserting Equation (2) (accounts for all blood flow through the lungs) into Equation (1) (accounts for all oxygen carriage through the lungs),

$$Ca \times \dot{Q}_T = \left(C_c \times \left[\dot{Q}_T - \dot{Q}_S\right]\right) + \left(C_{\bar{v}} \times \dot{Q}_S\right)$$

Rearranging,



$$\frac{\dot{Q}_S}{\dot{Q}_T} = \frac{Cc' - Ca}{Cc' - C\bar{v}}$$

where Cc′, Ca, and Cv are oxygen content in pulmonary end-capillary, arterial, and mixed venous blood, respectively; $\dot{Q}_T$ is cardiac output; $\dot{Q}_C$ is capillary flow; and $\dot{Q}_S$ is shunt.

smoking.[122,123] Venous admixture, as calculated by the standard oxygen shunt equation, is also increased during anesthesia to approximately 10% of cardiac output. However, this is an averaged calculation that considers hypoxia caused by pure shunt only, when actually it is due to a combination of "true" shunt (i.e., perfusion of nonventilated lung), poor ventilation of some regions, and regions that are ventilated but are perfused in excess of their ventilation (low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ regions). The combination of these effects is called *venous admixture*. The shunt equation (derived in Box 13.2) assumes that all blood flow through the lung goes to either of two compartments: in one (the non–shunt fraction), all the blood is oxygenated; and in the other (the shunt fraction), all blood is shunted.

The shunt equation (or venous admixture) can be written:[124]

$$\frac{\dot{Q}_S}{\dot{Q}_T} = \frac{(C_cO_2 - C_aO_2)}{(C_cO_2 - C_{\bar{v}}O_2)}$$

Because pulmonary end-capillary blood is assumed to be maximally saturated (therefore, $S_cO_2 = 1$), the quantity of dissolved O_2 can be ignored, and it can be the difference between $C_{\dot{v}}O_2$, and $C_{\dot{v}}O_2$ can be assumed to be small ($C_vO_2 = C_{\dot{v}}O_2$):

$$\frac{\dot{Q}_S}{\dot{Q}_T} = \frac{(1 - S_ao_2)}{(1 - S_vo_2)}$$

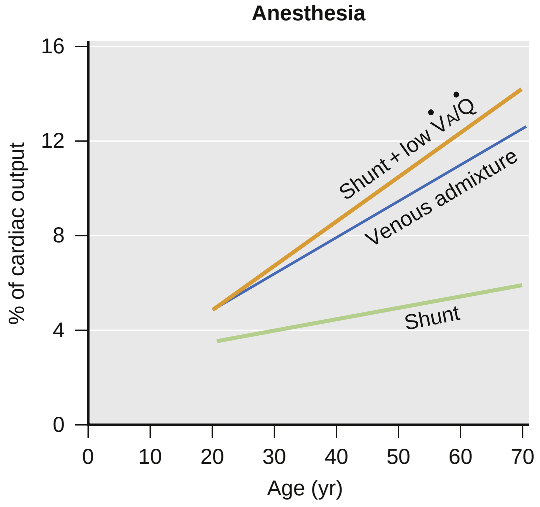


Fig. 13.24 The effect of age on oxygenation during anesthesia. The combination of shunt with low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ increases sharply with age (as does the degree of venous admixture). The increase in shunt with age, while significant, is less striking. (From Gunnarsson L, Tokics L, Gustavsson H, Hedenstierna G. Influence of age on atelectasis formation and gas exchange impairment during general anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth.* 1991;66:423–432.)

Thus the effect of interventions on estimated shunt can be calculated easily from the changes in SaO_2 and SvO_2.

The extent of venous admixture depends on the inspired oxygen fraction (FiO_2). The higher the inspired oxygen fraction, the less there are of the low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ regions. However, with high FiO_2, regions with low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ may collapse because of gas adsorption and be transformed to shunt regions.[125] A good correlation between venous admixture versus the sum of "true" shunt and perfusion of low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ regions was seen in a study involving 45 anesthetized subjects (Fig. 13.24).[97] Derivation of the "oxygen shunt" or venous admixture is shown in Box 13.2.

In young healthy volunteers during anesthesia with thiopental and methoxyflurane, both ventilation and perfusion were distributed to wider ranges of $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratios, which can be expressed as an increase in the logarithmic standard deviation of the perfusion distribution (log SD$\dot{Q}$). In a similar group of patients studied during halothane anesthesia and muscle paralysis, log SD$\dot{Q}$ was almost doubled (0.43 awake, 0.80 during anesthesia). In addition, true shunt was increased to a mean of 8%. A similar increase in shunt from 1% awake to a mean of 9% during anesthesia was recorded in a study on middle-aged (37 to 64 years) surgical patients, and there was a widening of the distribution (log SD$\dot{Q}$: 0.47 awake, 1.01 during anesthesia). In older patients with more severe impairment of lung function, halothane anesthesia with muscle paralysis, with or without nitrous oxide, caused considerable widening of the $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ distribution (log SD$\dot{Q}$ 0.87 awake, 1.73 during anesthesia). In addition, shunt increased to a mean of 15%, with large variation among patients (0% to 30%). Thus the most consistent findings during anesthesia are an increased $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch, expressed as an increased log SDQ, and an increase in shunt. For review, see the article by Hedenstierna.[83]

Spontaneous ventilation is frequently reduced during anesthesia because inhaled anesthetics[126] or barbiturates[127] reduce sensitivity to CO_2. The response is dose-dependent and ventilation decreases with deepening anesthesia. Anesthesia also reduces the response to hypoxia, possibly because of effects on the carotid body chemoreceptors.[128]

The effects of anesthesia on respiratory muscle function are becoming better understood.[129] The effects are not uniform. Rib cage excursions diminish with deepening anesthesia.[130] The predominant ventilatory response to CO_2 is produced by the intercostal muscles,[131, 132] but with no clear increase in rib cage motion with CO_2 rebreathing during halothane anesthesia. Thus the reduced ventilatory response to CO_2 during anesthesia is due to impeded function of the intercostal muscles.

Factors that Influence Respiratory Function During Anesthesia

SPONTANEOUS BREATHING

Most studies of lung function have been performed on anesthetized, mechanically ventilated subjects or animals. Spontaneous breathing has been studied rarely. FRC decreases to the same extent during anesthesia, regardless of whether a muscle relaxant is used,[90,91] and atelectasis occurs to almost the same extent in anesthetized, spontaneously breathing subjects as during muscle paralysis.[133] Furthermore, the cranial shift of the diaphragm, as reported by Froese and Bryan,[90] was of the same magnitude both during general anesthesia with spontaneous breathing and with muscle paralysis, even though a difference in movement of the diaphragm from the resting position was noted. Thus, during spontaneous breathing, the lower, dependent portion of the diaphragm moved the most, whereas with muscle paralysis, the upper, nondependent part showed the largest displacement.

All these findings have raised the question of whether regional ventilation is different between spontaneous breathing and mechanical ventilation and whether mechanical ventilation worsens $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ as a consequence of poor ventilation of well-perfused, dependent lung regions. However, there is not much support for worsening of gas exchange by muscle paralysis if the lungs are normal (in contrast to injured lungs); there is also little support from the few studies of $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ distribution that have been performed. Dueck and colleagues[134] found the same increase in $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch in anesthetized sheep during anesthesia, regardless of whether they were spontaneously breathing or ventilated mechanically. The log SDQ, indicating the degree of mismatch, increased (0.66 [awake], 0.83 [inhaled anesthesia with spontaneous breathing], 0.89 [mechanical ventilation]). Shunt is also increased during anesthesia from 1% (awake) to 11% (anesthetized, spontaneous breathing) or 14% (anesthetized, mechanical ventilation). In a study of anesthetized human subjects, shunt and log SDQ increased from 1% and 0.47 while awake to 6% and 1.03 during anesthesia with spontaneous breathing and 8% and 1.01 during mechanical ventilation.[83] Thus most of the gas exchange effects of anesthesia occurs during spontaneous breathing, with little or no further derangement added by muscle paralysis and mechanical ventilation.

INCREASED OXYGEN FRACTION

In the studies cited thus far, an inspired oxygen fraction (FiO_2) of approximately 0.4 was used. Anjou-Lindskog and colleagues[135] induced anesthesia in subjects breathing air (FiO_2, 0.21) in middle-aged to older patients during intravenous anesthesia before elective lung surgery and found only small shunts of 1% to 2%, although log SDQ increased from 0.77 to 1.13. When FiO_2 was increased to 0.5, the shunt increased (by 3% to 4%). In another study of older patients during halothane anesthesia,[83] an increase in FiO_2 from 0.53 to 0.85 caused an increase in shunt from 7% to 10% of cardiac output. Thus increasing FiO_2 increases shunt, possibly because of attenuation of HPV by increasing FiO_2[121] or further development of atelectasis and shunt in lung units with low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratios.[125]

BODY POSITION

FRC is reduced dramatically by the combined effect of the supine position and anesthesia. The effects on the FRC of inducing anesthesia in the upright position were tested by Heneghan and associates,[136] and there was no difference in oxygenation in the semirecumbent versus supine position. Decreased cardiac output and inhomogeneity of blood flow can outweigh any effects of posture. Fractional perfusion of the most dependent lung regions—likely poorly or not ventilated—may actually have been increased in the semirecumbent position. In the lateral position, differences in lung mechanics, resting lung volumes, and atelectasis formation between the dependent and nondependent portions of the lung have been demonstrated[137] and shown to result in further disturbance of the ventilation-perfusion match, with severe impairment in oxygenation. However, there are large and unpredictable inter-individual variations.[138] Using isotope techniques, an increase in $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch was also demonstrated in anesthetized, paralyzed patients in the lateral position,[139] and an improvement was noticed in the prone position.[140] In addition, the vertical inhomogeneity of perfusion distribution is less marked in the prone position,[68] possibly reflecting regional differences in vascular configuration that promote perfusion of dorsal lung regions, regardless of whether they are in a dependent or nondependent position. Finally, distribution of ventilation may be uniform in anesthetized subjects when prone.[141]

AGE

Oxygenation is less efficient in older patients.[10] However, the formation of atelectasis does not increase with age in adults, and the few CT studies of infants during anesthesia suggest greater degrees of atelectasis.[96] In addition, shunt is independent of age between 23 and 69 years. However, $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch increases with age, with enhanced perfusion of low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ regions when awake and when anesthetized. The major cause of impaired gas exchange during anesthesia in those younger than 50 years is shunt, whereas beyond 50 years, $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch (i.e., increased log SDQ) becomes increasingly important (see Fig. 13.24). Because the correlation between log SDQ and age during anesthesia is almost parallel with that during the awake state, it can be said that anesthesia worsens $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ matching to the same extent as 20 years of aging.

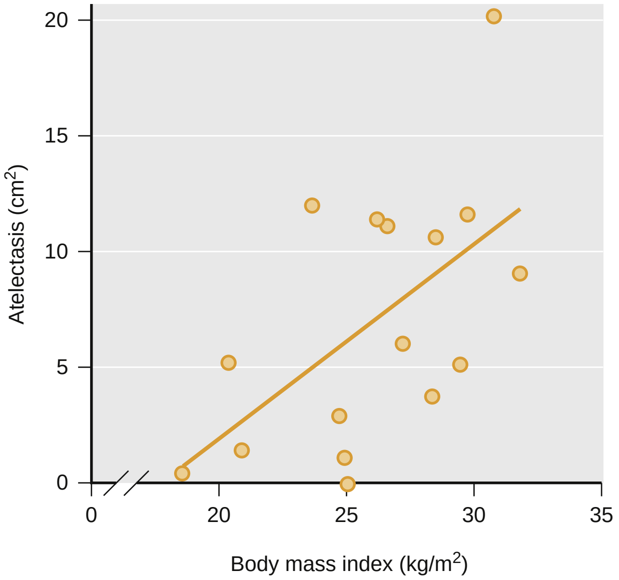


Fig. 13.25 Relationship between body mass index (BMI) and extent of atelectasis during general anesthesia. As BMI increases, so does the extent of atelectasis (although there is considerable variability). (From Rothen HU, Sporre B, Engberg G, Wegenius G, Hedenstierna G. Re-expansion of atelectasis during general anaesthesia: a computed tomography study. *Br J Anaesth.* 1993;71:788–795.)

OBESITY

Obesity worsens oxygenation[142,143] predominantly because of reduced FRC resulting in a greater propensity to airway closure.[144] In addition, the use of high inspired oxygen concentrations promotes rapid atelectasis formation in alveoli distal to closed airways,[87,109] and the atelectasis seems to be larger than in normal weight subjects (Fig. 13.25).[144,145]

Preventing a decrease in FRC by applying CPAP during induction of anesthesia probably reduces atelectasis formation, and thereby maintains oxygenation.[123,146,147] Indeed, the reduced “safety window” (the time taken to develop desaturation following breathing oxygen before induction of anesthesia) is much reduced in obese patients, and this may be prolonged by PEEP or CPAP[148] increasing lung volume and increasing the reservoir of O_2 available for diffusion into the capillary blood.

The use of high levels of inspired oxygen concentration, often almost 100%, to keep an acceptable level of oxygenation during anesthesia and surgery may be the simplest but not necessarily the best approach. It will promote further atelectasis formation,[108] and if the shunt is larger than 30%, which may be the case in these patients, additional oxygen will add little to arterial oxygenation.[149] The application of PEEP has been advocated, and it may reduce the atelectasis[122,144,146] but may also have adverse effects, such as propensity for aspiration, reduced cardiac output, and redistribution of blood flow toward residual collapsed lung regions. Ventilation with inflations close to VC to reopen collapsed tissue, followed by ventilation with added PEEP, is another option. Recruitment of the lung with inflation to 55 cm H_2O opened essentially all collapsed lung tissue in patients with a BMI of 40 kg/m² or more.[150] However, a recruitment alone did not keep the lung open for more than a few minutes. To keep the lung open, a PEEP of 10 cm H_2O after the recruitment was needed, and PEEP of 10 was not enough to open up the lung.[150] Body position can have a substantial effect on lung volume and should be considered to the extent that surgery allows.[151]

PREEXISTING LUNG DISEASE

Smokers and patients with chronic lung disease have impaired gas exchange in the awake state, and anesthesia-associated deterioration in oxygenation is greater than in healthy individuals.[10] Interestingly, smokers with moderate airflow limitation may have less shunt as measured by MIGET than in subjects with healthy lungs. Thus, in patients with mild to moderate bronchitis who were to undergo lung surgery or vascular reconstructive surgery in the leg, only a small shunt was noticed, but log SDQ was increased.[83] In patients with chronic bronchitis studied by MIGET and CT, no or limited atelectasis developed during anesthesia and no or only minor shunt;[101] however, a considerable mismatch was seen with a large perfusion fraction to low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ regions. Consequently, arterial oxygenation was more impaired than in lung-healthy subjects, but the cause was different from that in healthy subjects. A possible reason for the absence of atelectasis and shunt in these patients is chronic hyperinflation, which changes the mechanical behavior of the lungs and their interaction with the chest wall such that the tendency to collapse is reduced. It should be kept in mind that a patient with obstructive lung disease may have large regions with low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratios that can be converted over time to resorption atelectasis. Thus the protection against atelectasis formation during anesthesia by the obstructive lung disease might not last long. Regions with low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ can be replaced by atelectasis as a result of slow absorption of gas behind occluded airways later during surgery and in the postoperative period.

REGIONAL ANESTHESIA

The ventilatory effects of regional anesthesia depend on the type and extension of motor blockade. With extensive blocks that include all the thoracic and lumbar segments, inspiratory capacity is reduced by 20% and expiratory reserve volume approaches zero.[152,153] Diaphragmatic function, however, is often spared, even in cases of inadvertent extension of subarachnoid or epidural sensory block up to the cervical segments.[152] Skillfully handled regional anesthesia affects pulmonary gas exchange only minimally. Arterial oxygenation and CO_2 elimination are well maintained during spinal and epidural anesthesia. This is in line with the findings of an unchanged relationship of CC and FRC,[154] and unaltered distributions of ventilation-perfusion ratios as assessed by MIGET during epidural anesthesia.[83]

CAUSES OF HYPOXEMIA AND HYPERCAPNIA

In the previous sections, we discussed ventilation, gas distribution, and the respiratory mechanics that govern distribution, diffusion, and pulmonary perfusion. All these components of lung function can affect the oxygenation of blood, and all except diffusion can also measurably affect CO_2 elimination. The different mechanisms behind hypoxemia and CO_2 retention, or hypercapnia or hypercarbia, have been mentioned previously but will be analyzed in more detail here.

TABLE 13.1 Causes of Hypoxemia

Disturbance	Pao_2 (Breathing Air) at Rest	Pao_2 (Breathing Oxygen) at Rest	Pao_2 (Breathing Air) With Exercise (Versus Rest)	$Paco_2$
Hypoventilation	Reduced	Normal	No change or further decrease	Increased
$\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch	Reduced	Normal	No change or minor increase or decrease	Normal
Shunt	Reduced	Reduced	No change or further decrease	Normal
Diffusion impairment	Reduced	Normal	Small to large decrease	Normal

TABLE 13.2 Mechanisms of Hypoxemia in Different Lung Disorders

Disorder	Hypoventilation	Diffusion Impairment	$\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ Mismatch	Shunt
Chronic bronchitis	(+)	–	++	–
Emphysema	+	++	+++	–
Asthma	–	–	++	–
Fibrosis	–	++	+	+
Pneumonia	–	–	+	++
Atelectasis	–	–	–	++
Pulmonary edema	–	+	+	++
Pulmonary emboli	–	–	++	+
Acute respiratory distress syndrome	–	–	+	+++

+++ Most Important; ++ Important; + Somewhat Important; – Unimportant.

Causes of hypoxemia include hypoventilation, $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch, impaired diffusion, and right-to-left shunt (Table 13.1). Hypercapnia is usually caused by hypoventilation, although it can be caused by $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch and shunt (Table 13.2). Increased $\dot{V}CO_2$ occurs in hypermetabolic conditions (e.g., fever, malignant hyperthermia, thyroid crisis) or with the use of CO_2-generating buffers such as sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$).

HYPOVENTILATION

If ventilation is low relative to metabolic demand, elimination of CO_2 will be inadequate, and CO_2 will accumulate in the alveoli, blood, and other body tissues. Hypoventilation is often defined as ventilation that results in a $Paco_2$ greater than 45 mm Hg (6 kPa). Thus hypoventilation could be present even when minute ventilation is high, provided the metabolic demand or dead space ventilation is increased to a greater extent.

The increased alveolar Pco_2 reduces the alveolar space available for oxygen. Alveolar PO_2 (PAO_2) can be estimated by the alveolar gas equation (see Box 13.1). The simplified equation is expressed:

$$PAO_2 = P_IO_2 - \left(\frac{PACO_2}{R}\right)$$

Assuming that the respiratory exchange ratio (R) is 0.8 (more or less true at rest), PAO_2 can be estimated. In the ideal lung, PaO_2 equals PAO_2. For example, if PiO_2 is 149 mm Hg (19.9 kPa) and $Paco_2$ is 40 mm Hg (5.3 kPa), then PaO_2 is 99 mm Hg (13.2 kPa). If hypoventilation develops and the $Paco_2$ rises to 60 mm Hg (8 kPa) and there is no other gas exchange impairment, the PaO_2 will fall to 74 mm Hg (9.9 kPa). Clearly, a decrease in PaO_2 caused by hypoventilation is easily overcome by increasing PiO_2 (i.e., by increasing FiO_2). If there is a gap between the PAO_2 (estimated from this equation) and the measured (actual) PaO_2, then a cause of hypoxemia in addition to hypoventilation is present. These causes are discussed in the following sections.

VENTILATION-PERFUSION MISMATCH

For optimal gas exchange, ventilation and perfusion must match each other in all lung regions. At rest, both ventilation and perfusion increase downward through the lung. However, perfusion increases more than ventilation, the difference between the uppermost and lowermost 5-cm segments being threefold for ventilation and tenfold for perfusion. This change results in a mean $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratio of approximately 1 somewhere in the middle of the lung and a range of $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratios (0.5 at the bottom, 5.0 in the apex; see Fig. 13.23, upper panel, the perfusion distribution being a simplified drawing of Fig. 13.11).

Another way of showing the matching between ventilation and blood flow is by illustrating a multicompartmental analysis of ventilation and distribution of blood flow against $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratios. This can be achieved with MIGET.[155] In short, MIGET is based on the constant intravenous infusion of a number of inert gases (usually six) with differing solubilities in blood. When passing through the lung capillaries, the different gases are eliminated via the alveoli and expired in indirect proportion to their solubility. A poorly

TABLE 13.3 Mean (SD) Ventilation-Perfusion Relationships With No Cardiopulmonary Disease (Normal, $N = 45$), Awake and During General Anesthesia and Muscle Paralysis

	$\dot{Q}$ mean	log SD$\dot{Q}$	$\dot{V}$ mean	log SD$\dot{V}$	Shunt (% Q_T)	Dead Space (% V_T)	Pa_{O_2}/Fi_{O_2} (kPa)
Awake	0.76 (0-33)	0.68 (0.28)	1.11 (0.52)	0.52 (0.15)	0.5 (1.0)	34.8 (14.2)	59.5 (8.1)
Anesthetized	0.65 (0.34)	1.04 (0.36)	1.38 (0.76)	0.76 (0.31)	4.8 (4.1)	35.0 (9.9)	50.9 (15.2)

log SD$\dot{Q}$, Standard deviations of the logarithmic distribution of perfusion; log SD$\dot{V}$, standard deviations of the logarithmic distribution of ventilation; $\dot{Q}$ mean, mean $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ of the perfusion distribution; $\dot{V}$ mean, mean $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ of ventilation distribution. (Gunnarsson L, Tokics L, Gustavsson H, Hedenstierna G. Influence of age on atelectasis formation and gas exchange impairment during general anaesthesia. Br J Anaesth. 1991;66:423–432).

soluble gas will rapidly leave the bloodstream and be more or less completely eliminated and exhaled (e.g., sulfur hexafluoride); a gas with a high solubility in the blood will be almost completely retained in the blood and will not be exhaled (e.g., acetone); and a gas of intermediate solubility will be retained (and expired) to an intermediate extent (e.g., halothane).

As a result, the concentration of the different gases in arterial blood will differ, with higher concentrations of gases with high solubility. Retention can be calculated as the ratio between arterial and mixed venous blood concentrations. Similarly, the ratio of the concentrations (i.e., expired:mixed venous) can be calculated and gives the excretion for each gas. With knowledge of the retention, excretion, and solubility of each gas, an essentially continuous distribution of blood flow against $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratios can be constructed. The lower panel in Fig. 13.23 shows an example from a healthy subject. Note that ventilation and blood flow are well matched, being distributed to a limited number of compartments centered on a $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratio of 1. MIGET has a high discriminatory capacity of detecting different $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ disturbances, but does not provide topographic information. Several variables that reflect the degree of mismatch can be calculated and are shown in Table 13.3. In the following paragraphs, examples of $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch are discussed.

If ventilation and perfusion are not matched, gas exchange will be affected. The most common cause of impaired oxygenation is $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch. Low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ will impede oxygenation because ventilation is insufficient to fully oxygenate the blood, and the degree of impairment is dependent on the degree of $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch; in fact, even normal lung regions $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ (0.5-1) cannot completely saturate the blood. Thus PaO_2 cannot equal alveolar PO_2, and a difference (PAO_2–PaO_2) of 3 to 5 mm Hg (0.4-0.7 kPa) is normal. With greater $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch, the PAO_2–PaO_2 difference is further increased. The $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch can account for all the hypoxemia seen in a patient with severe obstruction.[115] Shunt ($\dot{Q}$, but no $\dot{V}_A$), which is often claimed to exist in patients with COPD, is mostly absent when analyzed with a more sophisticated technique such as MIGET. Indeed, shunt in a patient with obstruction likely represents a complicating factor in the disease (Fig. 13.26).

In severe asthma, a distinct bimodal pattern of low ratios occurs when using MIGET (see Fig. 13.26).[156] The reason may be that alveoli behind airways obstructed by edema (or a mucous plug or spasm) can still be ventilated by collateral ventilation (i.e., alveolar pores, interbronchial communications); these regions would otherwise be shunt (no $\dot{V}_A$, some $\dot{Q}$), resulting in the additional peak in $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ explaining the bimodal distribution. Such collateral ventilation might be part of the reason that true shunt is not normally seen in COPD. Of course, if the standard shunt equation is used to explain hypoxemia, there is no capacity to distinguish between the contributions of low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ versus shunt to hypoxemia (the net effect is best called *venous admixture*).

Airway obstruction is distributed unevenly, and a large variation in $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratios results. Indeed, ventilation is redistributed from regions with high airway resistance to other regions that can then become overventilated in proportion to their perfusion; this causes high $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratios. There are normally regions in the apex that have ratios of up to 5, but ratios of 100 or more exist in patients with obstruction, making the regions practically indistinguishable from true dead space; this is what causes the increase in physiologic dead space in obstructive lung disease. The effect of high $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ is also the same as for airway dead space—that is, ventilation that seems not to participate in gas exchange ("wasted ventilation"). Consequently, a patient with COPD has low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ (impedes oxygenation) and high $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ (mimics dead space, impedes CO_2 elimination). However, MIGET is a complex, research-orientated tool, and the calculation of dead space for clinical purposes relies instead on expired CO_2. Derivation of the CO_2 dead space is shown in Box 13.3.

$\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch exists to varying degrees in all patients with COPD, and it fully explains hypoxemia in most of them. Hypoventilation can also contribute, whereas impaired diffusion or shunt rarely contributes to hypoxemia. Diffusion capacity, or transfer test, can be reduced markedly in severe COPD, in particular in emphysema; in this case the decrease is not caused by thickened alveolar-capillary membranes but rather by reduced capillary blood volume and reduced area for diffusion.

Pulmonary vessels can be affected by lung disease and can cause $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch by impeding regional blood flow. Systemic diseases with vascular involvement can cause severe pulmonary dysfunction because of $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch, impaired diffusion, and shunt. $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch causes most of the hypoxemia in pulmonary fibrosis.[157] In addition, hypoxemia can be caused by impaired diffusion (in particular, during exercise, when it can dominate) and a varying degree of shunt (discussed later).

Pulmonary emboli cause $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch in three ways. First, vascular beds are occluded, causing extremely high $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ locally; this is manifest as increased dead space. Second, the occluded vascular bed diverts blood flow to other, already ventilated regions, thus converting these into low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ regions. Finally, if P_{PA} (pulmonary artery pressure) is markedly increased, then any propensity to shunt will be increased.[158] In patients with acute pulmonary embolism,[159] hypoxemia appears to be principally caused by increased variability of $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$, and this has been confirmed experimentally.[160]

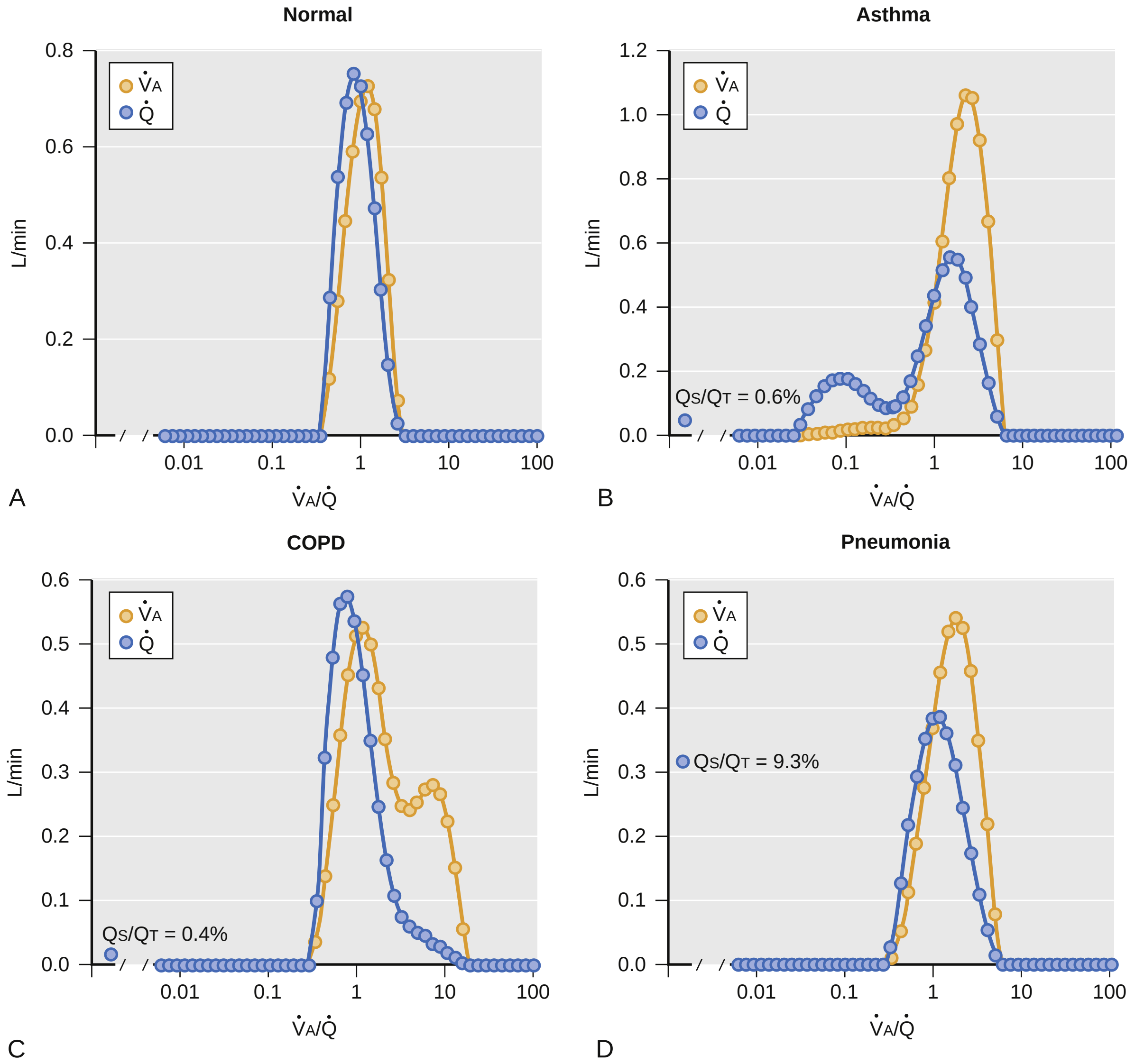


Fig. 13.26 Distribution of ventilation and perfusion in normal lungs, asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease *(COPD)*, and pneumonia. In normal lungs (A) there is good matching between ventilation *(orange circle)* and perfusion *(blue circle)* with a mode centered around a $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratio of 1. This results in near optimal oxygenation of blood and CO_2 removal. In asthma (B) there is broader distribution of $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ with some regions being ventilated well in excess of perfusion ($\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q} = 10$ and greater), with another mode of low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ centered around a ratio of 0.1. This mode can be explained by collateral ventilation maintaining gas exchange in alveoli behind occluded airways. There is no shunt seen in asthma. In COPD (C) the pattern is similar to asthma, but with an additional "high" $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mode that adds to dead space such as ventilation. Shunt is not present, and the pattern of $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ distribution is not associated with significant hypoxemia. In lobar pneumonia (D) the major finding is pure shunt (consolidated, perfused, and poorly ventilated lobe); there is only minor widening of the $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ distribution.

Pneumonia involving large areas of consolidated, edematous, or atelectatic (i.e., all non-aerated) lung involves significant shunt, and areas of partial aeration contribute to $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch (see Fig. 13.26).[149] In bacterial pneumonia, HPV appears to be inhibited, which is an important mechanism that worsens hypoxemia.[161,162]

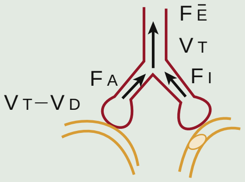
EFFECT OF $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ON CO_2 ELIMINATION

A common misconception is that although $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ impedes oxygenation, it has little effect on CO_2 clearance. Actually, elimination of CO_2 is even more limited by $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch than is oxygenation of blood[82]; however, this seldom results in hypercapnia because minimal increases in $\dot{V}_A$ rapidly correct $Pa{CO_2}$. If alveolar ventilation is already impaired and cannot be increased, the addition of $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch will increase $Pa{CO_2}$.

IMPAIRED DIFFUSION

Hypoxemia can occur because of impaired diffusion in fibrosis or vascular diseases because of severely thickened alveolar-capillary membranes. Diffusion is slowed down and the entire length of capillary may be required before the capillary blood has been fully oxygenated, even in resting conditions. On the other hand, this means that a diffusion barrier is unlikely to cause hypoxemia provided the perfusion time and distance permits O_2 equilibration (see Fig. 13.12); however, when these reserves are spent, PaO_2 begins to fall. This decrease is particularly noticeable in patients with

BOX 13.3 Derivation of the Physiologic Dead Space Equation



The quantity of CO_2 expired in an exhaled tidal volume = $F_ECO_2 \times V_T$

This comes from perfused lung and from nonperfused lung.

CO_2 exhaled from perfused lung = $F_ACO_2 \times V_A = F_ACO_2 \times (V_T - V_D)$

CO_2 from nonperfused (dead space) lung is derived from inspired gas = $F_ICO_2 \times V_D$

Thus, $F_ECO_2 \times V_T = F_ACO_2(V_T \bullet V_D) + (F_ICO_2 \times V_D)$

By rearranging,

$$\frac{V_{DS}}{V_T} = \frac{F_A - F_E}{F_A - F_I}$$

If $F_I = 0$, F is replaced by P, and P_A is replaced by Pa, for CO_2,

$$\frac{V_{DS}}{V_T} = \frac{PaCO_2 - PECO_2}{PaCO_2}$$

where F_E, F_A, and F_I are mixed expired, alveolar, and inspired gas concentration, respectively, and V_T, V_{DS}, and V_A are tidal volume, dead space, and part of the tidal volume to perfused alveoli, respectively.

pulmonary fibrosis, who might have normal PaO_2 at rest but show dramatic decreases during exercise.[82,115] Development of -or increasing- right-to-left shunting in the heart, such as with an atrial septal defect, can also cause this exercise-induced hypoxemia because the left-to-right shunt at rest becomes right-to-left (or a small right-to-left shunt increases) because of increased P_{PA}.

RIGHT-TO-LEFT SHUNT

If blood passes through the lung without contacting ventilated alveoli, then the blood will not oxygenate or release CO_2. This condition is called a *shunt*, and it lowers PaO_2 and can increase $PaCO_2$. Healthy people have a small shunt (2%-3% of cardiac output) that is caused by venous drainage of the heart muscle into the left atrium by the thebesian veins. In pathologic states, the shunt ranges from 2% to 50% of cardiac output.

Shunt is often confused with $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ mismatch. While a $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ of zero (some perfusion, no ventilation) constitutes a shunt, there are two clear and important differences between low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ and shunt. First, the anatomy of a shunt differs from an area of low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$. Regions with low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ are characterized by narrowing of the airways and vasculature, which reduces ventilation and blood flow in some regions and increases them in others. Examples are obstructive lung disease and vascular disorders. Shunt is caused by the complete cessation of ventilation in a region, usually as a result of collapse (atelectasis) or consolidation (e.g., pneumonia). Asthma or COPD does not involve the formation of a shunt[115]; if a shunt is present, it indicates a complication. Second, supplemental O_2 improves the hypoxemia caused by low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$, but it has little effect on hypoxemia caused by shunt. Although aeration may be poor in regions of low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$, aeration does exist in these regions, and the concentration of O_2 in these alveoli can be enriched by increasing FiO_2. In contrast, supplemental O_2 cannot access the alveoli in a true (anatomic) shunt.

Anatomic shunt and low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ usually coexist, and the net effect is sometimes referred to as *percent shunt* (per the standard shunt equation). In this situation, the low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ component will contribute to the response from increasing FiO_2, and the regions of anatomic (true) shunt will not; therefore, shunt will always lower PaO_2 (at any FiO_2). When the calculated fraction increases to 25%, the response to increased FiO_2 will be small; when it increases to 30% or greater, the response will be negligible.[149] This varying response is the net effect of mixing blood with normal pulmonary end-capillary PO_2 and shunt blood, which has the same PO_2 as mixed venous blood. If shunt is a large enough fraction of total lung blood flow, the additional O_2 that can be physically dissolved by the raised FiO_2 is so small that it is almost immeasurable; such a shunt is said to be refractory.

RESPIRATORY FUNCTION DURING ONE-LUNG VENTILATION

Oxygenation can be a challenge during one-lung surgery. One lung is not ventilated but is still perfused, and in the postoperative period, restoration of lung integrity and ventilation–perfusion matching can take time.[163]

The technique of one-lung anesthesia and ventilation means that only one lung is ventilated and that the lung provides oxygenation of—and elimination of CO_2 from—the blood. Persisting perfusion through the nonventilated lung causes a shunt and decreases PaO_2 (Fig. 13.27); measures can be taken to reduce this blood flow.[164,165]

During one-lung anesthesia, there are two main contributors to impaired oxygenation: (1) the persisting blood flow through nonventilated lung and (2) development of atelectasis in the dependent lung, resulting in local shunt and low $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$.[138] A recruitment maneuver can identify the influence of the dependent atelectasis;[166] serial increases in peak airway pressure and PEEP directed to the dependent, ventilated lung increased significantly the PaO_2, indicating that dependent atelectasis was an important cause of hypoxemia. In this situation, diversion of perfusion from the dependent (ventilated) to the nondependent (i.e., nonventilated) lung would have worsened oxygenation.

Recruitment can also affect V_D. Recruitment during one-lung anesthesia improved oxygenation, but also decreased V_D.[167] The slope of the CO_2 curve during a tidal expiration (phase III) was flatter, indicating a more even distribution of inspired gas throughout the lung and more synchronous alveolar emptying. Thus a secondary effect of recruiting collapsed lung tissue can be (presumably not when recruitment causes overinflation) more even distribution of ventilation and a decrease in the dead space fraction. This effect should facilitate the use of a smaller V_T. In contrast to an individual recruitment, the application of continuous elevated P_{AW} (PEEP titrated to optimal compliance in the ventilated lung) increased compliance by 10% but slightly worsened oxygenation, probably because of redistribution

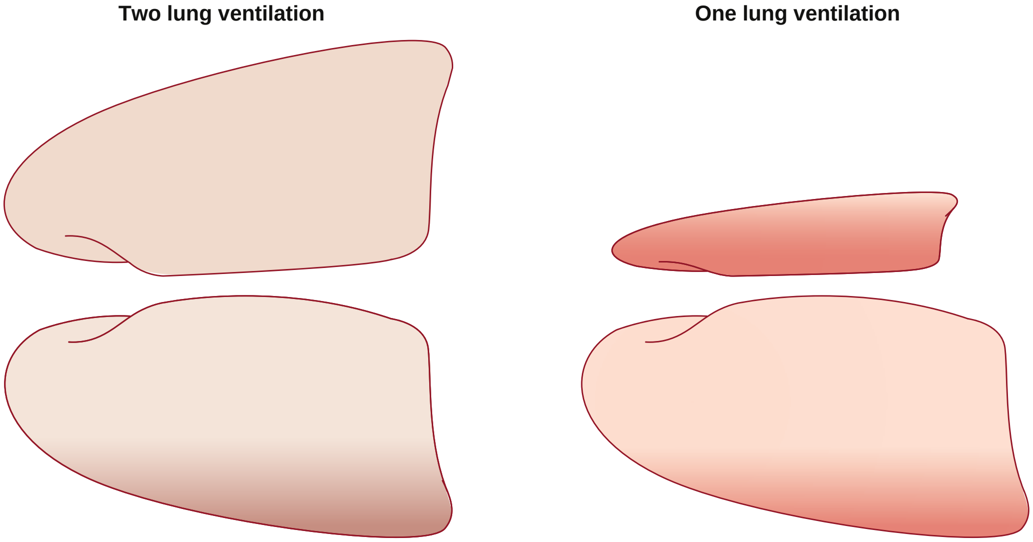


Fig. 13.27 Schematic drawing of the distribution of shunt during two-lung ventilation and one-lung ventilation during anesthesia. Shunt region is indicated by dark area in the lower lung during two-lung ventilation and in the lower lung—plus the entire upper lung—during one-lung ventilation.

of blood from the ventilated to the nonventilated (nondependent) lung.[168] The rationale for identifying and using optimal PEEP has also been reviewed.[169]

Maneuvers can also be applied to the nondependent lung. The effects of compressing the nondependent lung on oxygenation were examined using an intraarterial O_2 sensor, which provides instantaneous and continuous PaO_2.[170] Compression resulted in increased PaO_2, suggesting a shift of blood flow from the nondependent (nonventilated) to the dependent (ventilated) lung; development of complete absorption atelectasis in the nondependent lung may have similar effects.[171]

Inhaled NO (pulmonary vasodilator) and intravenous almitrine (pulmonary vasoconstrictor) have been studied alone and in combination. NO alone has little effect,[172] but oxygenation is improved when NO is combined with almitrine.[173,174] Almitrine alone also improves oxygenation[175] at a dose that does not alter P_{PA} or cardiac output. Although inhaled NO increases perfusion to already ventilated regions (increasing $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$), almitrine potentiates HPV, decreasing perfusion to nonventilated (i.e., shunt) areas (reducing shunt) and potentially diverting blood flow to ventilated regions of the lung. Selective pulmonary vasodilation is reviewed.[176,177]

Careful analysis of the mechanical obstruction caused by kinking of pulmonary vessels and by HPV has shown that HPV is the important determinant of diversion of blood flow away from nonventilated lung (though not complete).[178] Moreover, positioning of the patient can affect the degree of shunting.[179]

PNEUMOPERITONEUM

Laparoscopic operations are usually performed by insufflation of CO_2 into the abdominal cavity. The effects are twofold. First, the consequences of hypercapnic acidosis[180,181] include depressed cardiac contractility, sensitization of the myocardium to the arrhythmogenic effects of catecholamines pulmonary vasoconstriction and systemic vasodilation.[182] There can also be long-lasting postoperative effects on breathing control.[183] In addition, the physical effects of pneumoperitoneum are important. These include decreased FRC and VC,[184] formation of atelectasis,[185] reduced respiratory compliance,[186] and increased peak airway pressure.[187] Nonetheless, shunt is reduced and arterial oxygenation is mostly improved during CO_2 pneumoperitoneum.[188] This paradox—more atelectasis and less shunt—suggests that efficient redistribution of blood flow away from collapsed lung regions is attributable to hypercapnic acidosis CO_2 potentiating hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. Indeed, a recent experimental study showed that if the abdomen was inflated with air, a much larger shunt developed than if CO_2 had been used for inflation.[189]

Lung Function After Cardiac Surgery

Cardiac surgery produces the greatest degree of atelectasis in the postoperative period,[190] perhaps because both lungs are often collapsed. Spontaneous resolution of the atelectasis is gradual, leaving a residual shunt of up to 30% by day 1 or 2;[97,191] however, recruitment at the end of the case is possible. In some cases, 30 cm H_2O for 20 seconds is sufficient,[97] facilitated by the chest being open. A recruitment maneuver (with zero PEEP) causes transient increase in PaO_2 and end-expiratory lung volume (EELV), and with PEEP alone, EELV was increased but PaO_2 unchanged. However, a recruitment maneuver followed by PEEP resulted in a large and sustained increase in both PaO_2 and EELV.[192] The separation of effect whereby PEEP alone increases EELV to a greater extent than it increases oxygenation suggests further opening of an already opened lung rather than opening of atelectatic lung.

Head-to-head comparison of intermittent CPAP versus constant noninvasive pressure support ventilation reported intriguing findings. There was less radiographic evidence of atelectasis following pressure support, without differences in oxygenation of bedside pulmonary function testing.[193] Although the authors' conclusion was of no clinical benefit with noninvasive pressure support ventilation, differences in FiO_2 could cause differences in propensity to atelectasis. Recruitment maneuvers up to moderately high levels of airway pressure (46 cm H_2O) do not appear to affect the pulmonary vascular resistance or right ventricular afterload,[194] which is an issue of considerable importance following cardiac surgery. Nonetheless, it is prudent to consider RV loading and ejection in such circumstances, especially in the setting of diminished RV reserve or tricuspid regurgitation. Finally, many cardiac surgeries are now being performed "off pump," and the postoperative pulmonary effect is reduced, with less postoperative intrapulmonary shunt and correspondingly shorter hospital stays.[195]

Protective Ventilation

During the last few years, a concept of "protective ventilation" has appeared, based on three tools of ventilator support: (1) low tidal volume (assumed to reduce stress and strain of the lung), (2) recruitment maneuver (assumed to reopen any collapsed alveoli), and (3) PEEP (assumed to keep a recruited lung open during ongoing anesthesia and surgery).[196] These three tools have been adopted from intensive care, and one may ask whether they are equally useful in the mechanically ventilated, essentially lung healthy, anesthetized patient. As for (1) low tidal volume, a small tidal volume is reasonable, and a volume of 6 to 8 mL/kg/body weight, as is generally suggested, is the same size of what a normal subject is breathing spontaneously when awake. As for (2) recruitment maneuver and (3) PEEP, opening up and keeping the lung open is also reasonable and even important. Both a recruitment maneuver and PEEP will achieve this.

"Protective ventilation" has been claimed to reduce postoperative lung complications, although results vary between studies,[196,197] and which tool may be the most important remains also to be shown. Moreover, the protective ventilation concept covers the period from induction to emergence from anesthesia, and whether any positive effects remain in the postoperative period is unknown.[198] The atelectasis that develops intraoperatively may last for some days after surgery[199] and may be a cause of postoperative pulmonary complications. Further refinement of ventilatory support strategy may therefore rather be focused on the emergence from anesthesia and the postoperative period.

Postoperative Physiotherapy

Physiotherapy, much debated after surgery,[200] is associated with more effective lung recruitment (seen on thoracic CT) when involving deliberate approaches, such as flow bottles following exercise.[201] In effect, large and early inspiration following surgery may be key to preventing postoperative lung complications. Whether the deep inspiration needs to be accomplished with a specific forced breathing device is uncertain.

Intraoperative Hyperoxia

It has been suggested that ventilation with hyperoxic gas, 80% O_2, during anesthesia and for a couple of hours postoperatively will improve wound healing and reduce postoperative complications.[202] Based on a larger number of studies, the World Health Organization (WHO) presented guidelines in favor of perioperative hyperoxia.[203] However, the guidelines have met with criticism,[204] and large studies that have appeared after the publication of the guidelines do not support the use of hyperoxic gas.[205,206] Thus the potential advantage of elevating arterial oxygen tension may be offset by cellular responses with the formation of reactive oxygen species.[207]

Effect of Sleep on Respiration

Sleep has a major effect on many aspects of respiration, perhaps the most obvious being ventilation.[208] Sleep reduces V_T and inspiratory drive, and $\dot{V}_E$ falls by approximately 10%, depending on the sleep stage, with the most marked fall occurring during rapid-eye-movement (REM) sleep. Lung volume (i.e., FRC) is also reduced;[209] this commences almost immediately after the onset of sleep, and the lowest levels of FRC (down to 10% of resting levels) occur in REM sleep.[210] CT studies in healthy volunteers demonstrate that the sleep-induced decrease in FRC is accompanied by reduced aeration in the dependent lung.[211] Such loss in aeration was demonstrated in anesthetized patients when their FiO_2 was increased from 0.3 to 1.0; atelectasis developed rapidly. It is possible that during normal sleep, breathing with high levels of O_2 would also cause atelectasis.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, et al. *Lancet*. 2010;376:773.
2. Cook TM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:556.
3. Cheney FW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:932.
4. Woods BD, Sladen RN. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(suppl 1):i57.
5. Pinsky MR. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2007;13:528. 2007.
6. Buhre W, Rossaint R. *Lancet*. 2003;362:1839.
7. Moonesinghe SR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:891.
8. Hennis PJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:566.
9. Poeze M, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2000;26:1272.
10. Nunn JF: *Nunn's Applied Respiratory Physiology*. 4th ed. London: Butterworth Heinemann; 1993.
11. Caboot JB, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2012;47:808.
12. Shamir MY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:972.
13. Hampson NB, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;186:1095.
14. Bohr C, et al. *Arch Physiol*. 1904;16:401.
15. Hanson CW, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24:23.
16. Jensen FB. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 2004;182:215.
17. Barratt-Boyes BG, Wood EH. *J Lab Clin Med*. 1957;50:93.
18. Chawla LS, Zia H, et al. *Chest*. 2004;126:1891.
19. Quanjer PH, et al. *Eur Respir J Suppl*. 1993;16:5.
20. Astrom E, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 2000;16:659.
21. Broughton SJ, et al. *Physiol Meas*. 2006;27:99.
22. Wilschut FA, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 1999;14:166.
23. Roca J, et al. *Respir Med*. 1998;92:454.
24. Grassino AE, Roussos C. Static properties of the lung and chest wall. In: Crystal RG, West JB, Weibel ER, Barnes PJ, eds. *The Lung: Scientific Foundations*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1997:1187.
25. Goldin JG. *Radiol Clin North Am*. 2002;40:145.
26. Van Lith P, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1967;23:475.
27. Pedley TJ, Kamm RD. Dynamics of gas flow and pressure-flow relationships. In: Crystal RG, West JB, Weibel ER, Barnes PJ, eds. *The Lung: Scientific Foundations*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia, 1997, Lippincott Raven.
28. Slats AM, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2007;176:121.

29. Holst M, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1990;16:384.
30. O'Donnell DE, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1987;135:912.
31. Calverley PM, Koulouris NG. *Eur Respir J*. 2005;25:186.
32. Mead J, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1967;22:95.
33. Bachofen HJ. *Appl Physiol*. 1968;24:296.
34. Kaczka DW, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1997;82:1531.
35. Verbeken EK, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1992;72:2343.
36. Bachofen H, Scherrer M. *J Clin Invest*. 1967;46:133.
37. Tantucci C, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1992;145:355.
38. Frostell C, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1983;55:1854.
39. Milic-Emili J. Ventilation distrbution. In: Hammid Q, Shannon J, Martin J, eds. *Physiologic Bases of Respiratory Disease*. BC Decker: Hamilton, Ontario; 2005.
40. Hubmayr RD. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;165:1647.
41. Guy HJ, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1994;76:1719.
42. Prisk GK. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000;89:385.
43. Ganesan S, et al. *Respir Physiol*. 1989;78:281.
44. Bryan AC. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1974;110:143.
45. Mayo JR, et al. *J Thorac Imaging*. 1995;10:73.
46. Petersson J, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2004;96:1127.
47. Bryan AC, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1964;19:395.
48. Bake B, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1974;37:8.
49. Milic-Emili J, et al. *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2007;99:567.
50. Teculescu DB, et al. *Lung*. 1996;174(43).
51. Haefeli-Bleuer B, Weibel ER. *Anat Rec*. 1988;220:401.
52. Adaro F, Piiper J. *Respir Physiol*. 1976;26:195.
53. Dawson CA, Linehan JH. Dynamics of blood flow and pressure-flow relationships. In: Crystal RG, West JB, Weibel ER, Barnes PJ, eds. *The Lung: Scientific Foundations*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1997:1503.
54. Bachofen H, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1993;147:997.
55. Jeffery PK. *Proc Am Thorac Soc1*. 2004:176.
56. Townsley MI, et al. *Circ Res*. 1995;77:317.
57. Kornecki A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:1047.
58. Hughes JMB. In: Crystal RG, et al., ed. *The Lung: Scientific Foundations*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1997:1523.
59. West JB, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1964;19:713.
60. Hughes JM, et al. *Respir Physiol*. 1968;4:58.
61. Michels DB, West JB. *J Appl Physiol*. 1978;45:987.
62. Verbandt Y, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000;89:2407.
63. Reed JH Jr, Wood EH. *J Appl Physiol*. 1970;28:303.
64. Glenny RW, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1991;71:620.
65. Glenny RW, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1999;86:623.
66. Hakim TS, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;63:1114.
67. Hedenstierna G, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1979;47:938.
68. Hlastala MP, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81:1051.
69. Glenny RW, Robertson HT. *J Appl Physiol*. 1991;70:1024.
70. Glenny R. Counterpoint. *J Appl Physiol*. 2008;104(1533);5–6; discussion.
71. Sylvester JT, et al. *Physiol Rev*. 2012;92:367.
72. Marshall BE, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1994;20:379.
73. Moudgil R, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2005;98:390.
74. Kerbaul F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:440.
75. Kerbaul F, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48:760.
76. Hambraeus-Jonzon K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:308.
77. Sartori C, et al. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2007;159:338.
78. Pellegrino R, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 1997;10:468.
79. Leith DE, Mead J. *J Appl Physiol*. 1967;23:221.
80. Hughes JM, Bates DV. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2003;138:115.
81. Aguilaniu B, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 2008;31:1091.
82. West JB. *Respiratory Physiology—The Essentials*. Baltimore: Williams & Watkins; 1990.
83. Hedenstierna G. *Thorax*. 1995;50:85.
84. Moller JT, et al. *Lancet*. 1998;351:857.
85. Kroenke K, et al. *Chest*. 1993;104:1445.
86. Wahba RW. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38:384.
87. Rothen HU, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:681.
88. Westbrook PR, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1973;34:81.
89. Hedenstierna G, Edmark L. *Intensive Care Med*. 2005;31:1327.
90. Froese AB, Bryan AC. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41:242.
91. Reber A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53:1054.
92. Warner DO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:49.
93. Don H. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1977;15:113.
94. Bendixen HH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1963;269:991.
95. Duggan M, Kavanagh BP. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:838.
96. Gunnarsson L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:423.
97. Tenling A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:371.
98. Lindberg P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36:546.
99. Tokics L, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81:1822.
100. van Kaam AH, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2004;169:1046.
101. Gunnarsson L, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 1991;4:1106.
102. Musch G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:323.
103. Hewlett AM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1974;46:495.
104. Ostberg E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018.
105. Rothen HU, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:788.
106. Rothen HU, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:551.
107. Rothen HU, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:832.
108. Rothen HU, et al. *Lancet*. 1995;345:1387.
109. Edmark L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:28.
110. Rusca M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1835.
111. Hedenstierna G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:751.
112. Benoit Z, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1777–1781.
113. Sinha PK, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;20:136.
114. Squadrone V, et al. *JAMA*. 2005;293:589.
115. Agusti AG, Barbera JA. *Thorax*. 1994;49:924.
116. Hedenstierna G. *Clin Physiol Funct Imaging*. 2003;23:123.
117. Dueck R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:854.
118. Hedenstierna G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:369.
119. Hulands GH, et al. *Clin Sci*. 1970;38:451.
120. Marshall BE. *Effects of Anesthetics on Gas Exchange*. London: Kluwer Academic; 1989.
121. Marshall BE. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;94(suppl):37.
122. Pelosi P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1221.
123. Coussa M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1491; table of contents.
124. Walley KR. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;184:514.
125. Dantzker DR, et al. *J Physiol*. 1974;242:72P.
126. Sakai EM, et al. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2005;25:1773.
127. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:503.
128. Ide T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1084.
129. Sasaki N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:961.
130. Morton CP, Drummond GB. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:135.
131. Warner DO, Warner MA. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:20–31.
132. Warner DO, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1994;76:2802.
133. Strandberg A, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1986;30:154.
134. Dueck R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:55.
135. Anjou-Lindskog E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:485.
136. Heneghan CP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56:437.
137. Klingstedt C, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34:315.
138. Klingstedt C, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34:421.
139. Landmark SJ, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1977;43:993.
140. Mure M, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1998;157:1785.
141. Nyren S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:682.
142. Yoshino J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:742.
143. Brooks-Brunn JA. *Chest*. 1997;111:564.
144. Pelosi P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:654.
145. Eichenberger A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1788; table of contents.
146. Cressey DM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:680.
147. Gander S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:580.
148. Berthoud MC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:464.
149. Melot C. *Thorax*. 1994;49:1251.
150. Reinius H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:979.
151. Mynster T, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1996;51:225.
152. Warner DO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:761.
153. Yamakage M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36:569.
154. McCarthy GS. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:243.
155. Roca J, Wagner PD. *Thorax*. ;49. ; 1994:815.
156. Rodriguez-Roisin R, Roca J. *Thorax*. 1994;49:1027.
157. Agusti AG, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1991;143:219.
158. Manier G, Castaing Y. *Thorax*. ;49. ; 1994:1169.
159. Santolicandro A, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1995;152:336.
160. Altemeier WA, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1998;85:2337.
161. Light RB. *Semin Respir Infect*. 1999;14:218.
162. Light RB. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1986;134:520.
163. Benumof JL. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:821.
164. Karzai W, Schwarzkopf K. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1402.
165. Hedenstierna G, Reber A. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:2.
166. Tusman G, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;73:1204.
167. Tusman G, et al. *Analg*. 2004;98:1604; table of contents.
168. Mascotto G, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20:704.
169. Slinger PD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1096.
170. Ishikawa S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:21.

171. Pfitzer J. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:153; author reply -4.
172. Schwarzkopf K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:842.
173. Moutafis M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:1130.
174. Silva-Costa-Gomes T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:410.
175. Moutafis M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:830; table of contents.
176. Dembinski R, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2004;70:239.
177. Schilling T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:957; table of contents.
178. Friedlander M, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1994;41:26.
179. Choi YS, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;134:613.
180. McMahon AJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2000;356:1632.
181. Neudecker J, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2002;16:1121.
182. Gutt CN, et al. *Dig Surg*. 2004;21:95.
183. Bablekos GD, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2006;141:16.
184. Hirvonen EA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:961.
185. Andersson LE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:293.
186. Makinen MT, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45:865.
187. Sharma KC, et al. *Chest*. 1996;110:810.
188. Andersson L, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46:552.
189. Strang CM, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2013;79(6):617.
190. Hachenberg T, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36:800.
191. Hachenberg T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:809.
192. Dyhr T, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:187.
193. Pasquina P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1001; table of contents.
194. Reis Miranda D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:327.
195. Tschernko EM, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2002;124:732.
196. Futier E, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(5):428.
197. Las Vegas investigators. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2017;34(8):492.
198. Hedenstierna G. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(3):501.
199. Lindberg P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36(6):546.
200. Pasquina P, et al. *BMJ*. 2003;327:1379.
201. Westerdahl E, et al. *Chest*. 2005;128:3482.
202. Greif R, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342(3):161.
203. Allegranzi B, et al. *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2016;16(12):e288.
204. Hedenstierna G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(5):771.
205. Staehr-Rye AK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(1):140.
206. Kurz A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(3):434.
207. Turrens JF. *J Physiol*. 2003;552(Pt 2):335.
208. Douglas NJ, et al. *Thorax*. 1982;37:840.
209. Hudgel DW, Devadatta P. *J Appl Physiol*. 1984;57:1319.
210. Ballard RD, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1990;68:2034.
211. Appelberg J, et al. *Chest*. 2007;131:122.

References

1. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, et al. Risk assessment for respiratory complications in paediatric anaesthesia: a prospective cohort study. *Lancet*. 2010;376:773–783.
2. Cook TM, Scott S, Mihai R. Litigation related to airway and respiratory complications of anaesthesia: an analysis of claims against the NHS in England 1995-2007. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:556.
3. Cheney FW, Posner KL, Caplan RA. Adverse respiratory events infrequently leading to malpractice suits. A closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:932.
4. Woods BD, Sladen RN. Perioperative considerations for the patient with asthma and bronchospasm. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(suppl 1):i57.
5. Pinsky MR. Heart-lung interactions. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2007; 13:528.
6. Buhre W, Rossaint R. Perioperative management and monitoring in anaesthesia. *Lancet*. 2003;362:1839.
7. Moonesinghe SR, Mythen MG, Grocott MP. High-risk surgery: epidemiology and outcomes. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:891.
8. Hennis PJ, et al. Cardiopulmonary exercise testing predicts postoperative outcome in patients undergoing gastric bypass surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:566.
9. Poeze M, et al. Pre-operative tonometry is predictive for mortality and morbidity in high-risk surgical patients. *Intensive Care Med*. 2000;26:1272.
10. Nunn JF. *Nunn's Applied Respiratory Physiology*. 4th ed. London: Butterworth Heinemann; 1993.
11. Caboot JB, et al. Non-invasive measurements of carboxyhemoglobin and methemoglobin in children with sickle cell disease. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2012;47:808.
12. Shamir MY, Avramovich A, Smaka T. The current status of continuous noninvasive measurement of total, carboxy, and methemoglobin concentration. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:972.
13. Hampson NB, et al. Practice recommendations in the diagnosis, management, and prevention of carbon monoxide poisoning. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;186:1095.
14. Bohr C, Hasselbach K, Krogh A. Über einen in biologischer Beziehung wichtigen Einfluss, den die Kohlensäurespannung des Blutes auf dessen Sauerstoffbindung übt. *Arch Physiol*. 1904;16:401.
15. Hanson CW 3rd, Marshall BE, Frasch HF, Marshall C. Causes of hypercarbia with oxygen therapy in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24:23.
16. Jensen FB. Red blood cell pH, the Bohr effect, and other oxygenation-linked phenomena in blood O2 and CO2 transport. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 2004;182:215.
17. Barratt-Boyes BG, Wood EH. The oxygen saturation of blood in the venae cavae, right-heart chambers, and pulmonary vessels of healthy subjects. *J Lab Clin Med*. 1957;50:93.
18. Chawla LS, et al. Lack of equivalence between central and mixed venous oxygen saturation. *Chest*. 2004;126:1891.
19. Quanjer PH, et al. Lung volumes and forced ventilatory flows. Report working party standardization of lung function tests, European community for steel and coal. Official Statement of the European Respiratory Society. *Eur Respir J Suppl*. 1993;16:5.
20. Astrom E, et al. Partitioning of dead space—a method and reference values in the awake human. *Eur Respir J*. 2000;16:659.
21. Broughton SJ, et al. Problems in the measurement of functional residual capacity. *Physiol Meas*. 2006;27:99.
22. Wilschut FA, et al. Intrapulmonary gas mixing and the sloping alveolar plateau in COPD patients with macroscopic emphysema. *Eur Respir J*. 1999;14:166.
23. Roca J, et al. Prediction equations for plethysmographic lung volumes. *Respir Med*. 1998;92:454.
24. Grassino AE, Roussos C. Static properties of the lung and chest wall. In: Crystal RG, West JB, Weibel ER, Barnes PJ, eds. *The Lung: Scientific Foundations*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1997:1187.
25. Goldin JG. Quantitative CT of the lung. *Radiol Clin North Am*. 2002;40:145.
26. Van Lith P, Johnson FN, Sharp JT. Respiratory elastances in relaxed and paralyzed states in normal and abnormal men. *J Appl Physiol*. 1967;23:475.
27. Pedley TJ, Kamm RD. Dynamics of gas flow and pressure-flow relationships. In: Crystal RG, West JB, Weibel ER, Barnes PJ, eds. *The Lung: Scientific Foundations*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1997:1365.
28. Slats AM, et al. Bronchial inflammation and airway responses to deep inspiration in asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2007;176:121.
29. Holst M, Striem J, Hedenstierna G. Errors in tracheal pressure recording in patients with a tracheostomy tube–a model study. *Intensive Care Med*. 1990;16:384.
30. O'Donnell DE, et al. Effect of dynamic airway compression on breathing pattern and respiratory sensation in severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1987;135:912.
31. Calverley PM, Koulouris NG. Flow limitation and dynamic hyperinflation: key concepts in modern respiratory physiology. *Eur Respir J*. 2005;25:186.
32. Mead J, et al. Significance of the relationship between lung recoil and maximum expiratory flow. *J Appl Physiol*. 1967;22:95.
33. Bachofen H. Lung tissue resistance and pulmonary hysteresis. *Appl Physiol*. 1968;24:296.
34. Kaczka DW, et al. Partitioning airway and lung tissue resistances in humans: effects of bronchoconstriction. *J Appl Physiol*. 1997;82:1531.
35. Verbeken EK, et al. Tissue and airway impedance of excised normal, senile, and emphysematous lungs. *J Appl Physiol*. 1992;72:2343.
36. Bachofen H, Scherrer M. Lung tissue resistance in diffuse interstitial pulmonary fibrosis. *J Clin Invest*. 1967;46:133.
37. Tantucci C, et al. Flow and volume dependence of respiratory system flow resistance in patients with adult respiratory distress syndrome. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1992;145:355.
38. Frostell C, Pande JN, Hedenstierna G. Effects of high-frequency breathing on pulmonary ventilation and gas exchange. *J Appl Physiol*. 1983;55:1854.
39. Milic-Emili J. Ventilation distrbution. In: Hammid Q, Shannon J, Martin J, eds. *Physiologic Bases of Respiratory Disease*. BC Decker: Hamilton, Ontario; 2005.
40. Hubmayr RD. Perspective on lung injury and recruitment: a skeptical look at the opening and collapse story. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;165:1647.
41. Guy HJ, et al. Inhomogeneity of pulmonary ventilation during sustained microgravity as determined by single-breath washouts. *J Appl Physiol*. 1994;76:1719.
42. Prisk GK. Microgravity and the lung. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000;89:385.
43. Ganesan S, Lai-Fook SJ, Schurch S. Alveolar liquid pressures in nonedematous and kerosene-washed rabbit lung by micropuncture. *Respir Physiol*. 1989;78:281.
44. Bryan AC. Conference on the scientific basis of respiratory therapy. Pulmonary physiotherapy in the pediatric age group. Comments of a devil's advocate. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1974;110:143.
45. Mayo JR, et al. Measurement of lung water content and pleural pressure gradient with magnetic resonance imaging. *J Thorac Imaging*. 1995;10:73.
46. Petersson J, et al. Physiological evaluation of a new quantitative SPECT method measuring regional ventilation and perfusion. *J Appl Physiol*. 2004;96:1127.
47. Bryan AC, et al. Factors affecting regional distribution of ventilation and perfusion in the lung. *J Appl Physiol*. 1964;19:395.
48. Bake B, et al. Effect of inspiratory flow rate on regional distribution of inspired gas. *J Appl Physiol*. 1974;37:8.
49. Milic-Emili J, Torchio R, D'Angelo E. Closing volume: a reappraisal (1967-2007). *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2007;99:567.
50. Teculescu DB, et al. Computerized single-breath nitrogen washout: predicted values in a rural French community. *Lung*. 1996;174:43–55.
51. Haefeli-Bleuer B, Weibel ER. Morphometry of the human pulmonary acinus. *Anat Rec*. 1988;220:401.
52. Adaro F, Piiper J. Limiting role of stratification in alveolar exchange of oxygen. *Respir Physiol*. 1976;26:195.
53. Dawson CA, Linehan JH. Dynamics of blood flow and pressure-flow relationships. In: Crystal RG, West JB, Weibel ER, Barnes PJ, eds. *The Lung: Scientific Foundations*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1997:1503.
54. Bachofen H, Schurch S, Weibel ER. Experimental hydrostatic pulmonary edema in rabbit lungs. Barrier lesions. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1993;147:997.
55. Jeffery PK. Remodeling and inflammation of bronchi in asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Proc Am Thorac Soc 1*. 2004:176.
56. Townsley MI, et al. Pulmonary microvascular permeability. Responses to high vascular pressure after induction of pacing-induced heart failure in dogs. *Circ Res*. 1995;77:317.

57. Kornecki A, et al. Vascular remodeling protects against ventilator-induced lung injury in the in vivo rat. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108: 1047.
58. Hughes JMB. In: Crystal RG, et al., ed. *The Lung: Scientific Foundations*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1997:1523.
59. West JB, Dollery CT, Naimark A. Distribution of blood flow in isolated lung; relation to vascular and alveolar pressures. *J Appl Physiol*. 1964;19:713.
60. Hughes JM, et al. Effect of lung volume on the distribution of pulmonary blood flow in man. *Respir Physiol*. 1968;4:58.
61. Michels DB, West JB. Distribution of pulmonary ventilation and perfusion during short periods of weightlessness. *J Appl Physiol*. 1978;45:987.
62. Verbandt Y, et al. Ventilation-perfusion matching in long-term microgravity. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000;89:2407.
63. Reed JH Jr, Wood EH. Effect of body position on vertical distribution of pulmonary blood flow. *J Appl Physiol*. 1970;28:303.
64. Glenny RW, et al. Gravity is a minor determinant of pulmonary blood flow distribution. *J Appl Physiol*. 1991;71:620.
65. Glenny RW, et al. Gravity is an important but secondary determinant of regional pulmonary blood flow in upright primates. *J Appl Physiol*. 1999;86:623.
66. Hakim TS, Lisbona R, Dean GW. Gravity-independent inequality in pulmonary blood flow in humans. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;63:1114.
67. Hedenstierna G, White FC, Wagner PD. Spatial distribution of pulmonary blood flow in the dog with PEEP ventilation. *J Appl Physiol*. 1979;47:938.
68. Hlastala MP, et al. Pulmonary blood flow distribution in standing horses is not dominated by gravity. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81:1051.
69. Glenny RW, Robertson HT. Fractal modeling of pulmonary blood flow heterogeneity. *J Appl Physiol*. 1991;70:1024.
70. Glenny R. Counterpoint: gravity is not the major factor determining the distribution of blood flow in the healthy human lung. *J Appl Physiol*. 2008;104(1533):5–6; discussion.
71. Sylvester JT, et al. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. *Physiol Rev*. 2012;92:367.
72. Marshall BE, et al. Role of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction in pulmonary gas exchange and blood flow distribution. 2. Pathophysiology. *Intensive Care Med*. 1994;2:379.
73. Moudgil R, Michelakis ED, Archer SL. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. *J Appl Physiol*. 2005;98:390.
74. Kerbaul F, et al. Effects of sevoflurane on hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction in anaesthetized piglets. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:440.
75. Kerbaul F, et al. Sub-MAC concentrations of desflurane do not inhibit hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction in anesthetized piglets. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48:760.
76. Hambraeus-Jonzon K, et al. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction in human lungs. A stimulus-response study. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:308.
77. Sartori C, Allemann Y, Scherrer U. Pathogenesis of pulmonary edema: learning from high-altitude pulmonary edema. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2007;159:338.
78. Pellegrino R, Brusasco V. On the causes of lung hyperinflation during bronchoconstriction. *Eur Respir J*. 1997;10:468.
79. Leith DE, Mead J. Mechanisms determining residual volume of the lungs in normal subjects. *J Appl Physiol*. 1967;23:221.
80. Hughes JM, Bates DV. Historical review: the carbon monoxide diffusing capacity (DLCO) and its membrane (DM) and red cell (Theta.Vc) components. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2003;138:115.
81. Aguilaniu B, et al. European reference equations for CO and NO lung transfer. *Eur Respir J*. 2008;31:1091.
82. West JB. *Respiratory Physiology—The Essentials*. Baltimore: Williams & Watkins; 1990.
83. Hedenstierna G. Contribution of multiple inert gas elimination technique to pulmonary medicine. 6. Ventilation-perfusion relationships during anaesthesia. *Thorax*. 1995;50:85.
84. Moller JT, et al. Long-term postoperative cognitive dysfunction in the elderly ISPOCD1 study. ISPOCD investigators. International Study of Post-Operative Cognitive Dysfunction. *Lancet*. 1998;351:857.
85. Kroenke K, et al. Postoperative complications after thoracic and major abdominal surgery in patients with and without obstructive lung disease. *Chest*. 1993;104:1445.
86. Wahba RW. Perioperative functional residual capacity. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38:384.
87. Rothen HU, et al. Airway closure, atelectasis and gas exchange during general anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:681.
88. Westbrook PR, et al. Effects of anesthesia and muscle paralysis on respiratory mechanics in normal man. *J Appl Physiol*. 1973;34:81.
89. Hedenstierna G, Edmark L. The effects of anesthesia and muscle paralysis on the respiratory system. *Intensive Care Med*. 2005;31:1327.
90. Froese AB, Bryan AC. Effects of anesthesia and paralysis on diaphragmatic mechanics in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41:242.
91. Reber A, Nylund U, Hedenstierna G. Position and shape of the diaphragm: implications for atelectasis formation. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53:1054.
92. Warner DO, Warner MA, Ritman EL. Atelectasis and chest wall shape during halothane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:49.
93. Don H. The mechanical properties of the respiratory system during anesthesia. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1977;15:113.
94. Bendixen HH, Hedley-Whyte J, Laver MB. Impaired oxygenation in surgical patients during general anesthesia with controlled ventilation. A concept of atelectasis. *N Engl J Med*. 1963;269:991.
95. Duggan M, Kavanagh BP. Pulmonary atelectasis: a pathogenic perioperative entity. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:838.
96. Gunnarsson L, et al. Influence of age on atelectasis formation and gas exchange impairment during general anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:423.
97. Tenling A, et al. Atelectasis and gas exchange after cardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:371.
98. Lindberg P, et al. Atelectasis and lung function in the postoperative period. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36:546.
99. Tokics L, et al. V/Q distribution and correlation to atelectasis in anesthetized paralyzed humans. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81:1822.
100. van Kaam AH, et al. Reducing atelectasis attenuates bacterial growth and translocation in experimental pneumonia. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2004;169:1046.
101. Gunnarsson L, et al. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and anaesthesia: formation of atelectasis and gas exchange impairment. *Eur Respir J*. 1991;4:1106.
102. Musch G, et al. Mechanism by which a sustained inflation can worsen oxygenation in acute lung injury. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:323.
103. Hewlett AM, et al. Functional residual capacity during anaesthesia III: artificial ventilation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1974;46:495.
104. Ostberg E, Thorisson A, Enlund M, Zetterstrom H, Hedenstierna G, Edmark L. Positive end-expiratory pressure alone minimizes atelectasis formation in nonabdominal surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2018.
105. Rothen HU, et al. Re-expansion of atelectasis during general anaesthesia: a computed tomography study. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:788.
106. Rothen HU, et al. Dynamics of re-expansion of atelectasis during general anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:551–556.
107. Rothen HU, et al. Influence of gas composition on recurrence of atelectasis after a reexpansion maneuver during general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:832–842.
108. Rothen HU, et al. Prevention of atelectasis during general anaesthesia. *Lancet*. 1995;345:1387–1391.
109. Edmark L, et al. Optimal oxygen concentration during induction of general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:28–33.
110. Rusca M, et al. Prevention of atelectasis formation during induction of general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1835–1839.
111. Hedenstierna G, et al. Phrenic nerve stimulation during halothane anesthesia. Effects of atelectasis. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:751–760.
112. Benoit Z, et al. The effect of increased Fio(2) before tracheal extubation on postoperative atelectasis. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1777–1781.
113. Sinha PK, et al. Effect of lung ventilation with 50% oxygen in air or nitrous oxide versus 100% oxygen on oxygenation index after cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;20:136–142.
114. Squadrone V, et al. Continuous positive airway pressure for treatment of postoperative hypoxemia: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2005;293:589–595.
115. Agusti AG, Barbera JA. Contribution of multiple inert gas elimination technique to pulmonary medicine. 2. Chronic pulmonary diseases: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis. *Thorax*. 1994;49:924–932.
116. Hedenstierna G. Alveolar collapse and closure of airways: regular effects of anaesthesia. *Clin Physiol Funct Imaging*. 2003;23:123–129.

117. Dueck R, et al. The lung volume at which shunting occurs with inhalation anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:854–861.
118. Hedenstierna G, et al. Ventilation and perfusion of each lung during differential ventilation with selective PEEP. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:369–376.
119. Hulands GH, et al. Influence of anaesthesia on the regional distribution of perfusion and ventilation in the lung. *Clin Sci*. 1970;38:451–460.
120. Marshall BE. *Effects of Anesthetics on Gas Exchange*. London: Kluwer Academic; 1989.
121. Marshall BE. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;94(suppl):37–41.
122. Pelosi P, et al. Positive end-expiratory pressure improves respiratory function in obese but not in normal subjects during anesthesia and paralysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1221–1231.
123. Coussa M, et al. Prevention of atelectasis formation during the induction of general anesthesia in morbidly obese patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1491–1495; table of contents.
124. Walley KR. Use of central venous oxygen saturation to guide therapy. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;184:514–520.
125. Dantzker DR, Wagner PD, West JB. Proceedings: instability of poorly ventilated lung units during oxygen breathing. *J Physiol*. 1974;242:72P.
126. Sakai EM, Connolly LA, Klauck JA. Inhalation anesthesiology and volatile liquid anesthetics: focus on isoflurane, desflurane, and sevoflurane. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2005;25:1773–1788.
127. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, et al. Impact of depth of propofol anaesthesia on functional residual capacity and ventilation distribution in healthy preschool children. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:503–508.
128. Ide T, et al. Contribution of peripheral chemoreception to the depression of the hypoxic ventilatory response during halothane anesthesia in cats. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1084–1091.
129. Sasaki N, Meyer MJ, Eikermann M. Postoperative respiratory muscle dysfunction: pathophysiology and preventive strategies. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:961–978.
130. Morton CP, Drummond GB. Change in chest wall dimensions on induction of anaesthesia: a reappraisal. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:135–139.
131. Warner DO, Warner MA. Human chest wall function while awake and during halothane anesthesia. II. Carbon dioxide rebreathing. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:20–31.
132. Warner DO, Joyner MJ, Ritman EL. Anesthesia and chest wall function in dogs. *J Appl Physiol*. 1994;76:2802–2813.
133. Strandberg A, et al. Atelectasis during anaesthesia and in the postoperative period. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1986;30:154–158.
134. Dueck R, Rathbun M, Greenburg AG. Lung volume and VA/Q distribution response to intravenous versus inhalation anesthesia in sheep. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:55–65.
135. Anjou-Lindskog E, et al. Effects of intravenous anesthesia on VA/Q distribution: a study performed during ventilation with air and with 50% oxygen, supine and in the lateral position. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:485–492.
136. Heneghan CP, Bergman NA, Jones JG. Changes in lung volume and (PAO2-PaO2) during anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56:437–445.
137. Klingstedt C, et al. The influence of body position and differential ventilation on lung dimensions and atelectasis formation in anaesthetized man. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34:315–322.
138. Klingstedt C, Hedenstierna G, Baehrendtz S, et al. Ventilation-perfusion relationships and atelectasis formation in the supine and lateral positions during conventional mechanical and differential ventilation. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34:421–429.
139. Landmark SJ, et al. Regional pulmonary perfusion and V/Q in awake and anesthetized-paralyzed man. *J Appl Physiol*. 1977;43:993–1000.
140. Mure M, et al. Pulmonary gas exchange improves in the prone position with abdominal distension. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1998;157:1785–1790.
141. Nyren S, et al. Lung ventilation and perfusion in prone and supine postures with reference to anesthetized and mechanically ventilated healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:682–687.
142. Yoshino J, Akata T, Takahashi S. Intraoperative changes in arterial oxygenation during volume-controlled mechanical ventilation in modestly obese patients undergoing laparotomies with general anesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:742–750.
143. Brooks-Brunn JA. Predictors of postoperative pulmonary complications following abdominal surgery. *Chest*. 1997;111:564–571.
144. Pelosi P, et al. The effects of body mass on lung volumes, respiratory mechanics, and gas exchange during general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:654–660.
145. Eichenberger A, et al. Morbid obesity and postoperative pulmonary atelectasis: an underestimated problem. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1788–1792; table of contents.
146. Cressey DM, Berthoud MC, Reilly CS. Effectiveness of continuous positive airway pressure to enhance pre-oxygenation in morbidly obese women. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:680–684.
147. Gander S, et al. Positive end-expiratory pressure during induction of general anesthesia increases duration of nonhypoxic apnea in morbidly obese patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:580–584.
148. Berthoud MC, Peacock JE, Reilly CS. Effectiveness of preoxygenation in morbidly obese patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:464–466.
149. Melot C. Contribution of multiple inert gas elimination technique to pulmonary medicine. 5. Ventilation-perfusion relationships in acute respiratory failure. *Thorax*. 1994;49:1251–1258.
150. Reinius H, et al. Prevention of atelectasis in morbidly obese patients during general anesthesia and paralysis: a computerized tomography study. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:979–987.
151. Mynster T, et al. The effect of posture on late postoperative oxygenation. *Anaesthesia*. 1996;51:225–227.
152. Warner DO, Warner MA, Ritman EL. Human chest wall function during epidural anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:761–773.
153. Yamakage M, et al. Changes in ventilatory pattern and arterial oxygen saturation during spinal anaesthesia in man. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36:569–571.
154. McCarthy GS. The effect of thoracic extradural analgesia on pulmonary gas distribution, functional residual capacity and airway closure. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:243–248.
155. Roca J, Wagner PD. Contribution of multiple inert gas elimination technique to pulmonary medicine. 1. Principles and information content of the multiple inert gas elimination technique. *Thorax*. 1994;49:815–824.
156. Rodriguez-Roisin R, Roca J. Contributions of multiple inert gas elimination technique to pulmonary medicine. 3. Bronchial asthma. *Thorax*. 1994;49:1027–1033.
157. Agusti AG, et al. Mechanisms of gas-exchange impairment in idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1991;143:219–225.
158. Manier G, Castaing Y. Contribution of multiple inert gas elimination technique to pulmonary medicine. 4. Gas exchange abnormalities in pulmonary vascular and cardiac disease. *Thorax*. 1994;49:1169–1174.
159. Santolicandro A, et al. Mechanisms of hypoxemia and hypocapnia in pulmonary embolism. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1995;152:336–347.
160. Altemeier WA, et al. Pulmonary embolization causes hypoxemia by redistributing regional blood flow without changing ventilation. *J Appl Physiol*. 1998;85:2337–2343.
161. Light RB. Pulmonary pathophysiology of pneumococcal pneumonia. *Semin Respir Infect*. 1999;14:218–226.
162. Light RB. Indomethacin and acetylsalicylic acid reduce intrapulmonary shunt in experimental pneumococcal pneumonia. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1986;134:520–525.
163. Benumof JL. One-lung ventilation and hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction: implications for anesthetic management. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:821–833.
164. Karzai W, Schwarzkopf K. Hypoxemia during one-lung ventilation: prediction, prevention, and treatment. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1402–1411.
165. Hedenstierna G, Reber A. Manipulating pulmonary blood flow during one-lung anaesthsia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:2–4.
166. Tusman G, et al. Alveolar recruitment strategy increases arterial oxygenation during one-lung ventilation. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;73:1204–1209.
167. Tusman G, et al. Lung recruitment improves the efficiency of ventilation and gas exchange during one-lung ventilation anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1604–1609; table of contents.
168. Mascotto G, et al. Prospective, randomized, controlled evaluation of the preventive effects of positive end-expiratory pressure on patient oxygenation during one-lung ventilation. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20:704–710.

169. Slinger PD, et al. Relation of the static compliance curve and positive end-expiratory pressure to oxygenation during one-lung ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1096–1102.
170. Ishikawa S, Nakazawa K, Makita K. Progressive changes in arterial oxygenation during one-lung anaesthesia are related to the response to compression of the non-dependent lung. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:21–26.
171. Pfitzer J. Acute lung injury following one-lung anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:153; author reply, p4.
172. Schwarzkopf K, et al. Oxygenation during one-lung ventilation: the effects of inhaled nitric oxide and increasing levels of inspired fraction of oxygen. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:842–847.
173. Moutafis M, et al. The effects of inhaled nitric oxide and its combination with intravenous almitrine on Pao2 during one-lung ventilation in patients undergoing thoracoscopic procedures. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:1130–1135.
174. Silva-Costa-Gomes T, et al. Low- vs high-dose almitrine combined with nitric oxide to prevent hypoxia during open-chest one-lung ventilation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:410–416.
175. Moutafis M, et al. The effects of intravenous almitrine on oxygenation and hemodynamics during one-lung ventilation. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:830–834; table of contents.
176. Dembinski R, Henzler D, Rossaint R. Modulating the pulmonary circulation: an update. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2004;70:239–243.
177. Schilling T, et al. The pulmonary immune effects of mechanical ventilation in patients undergoing thoracic surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:957–965; table of contents.
178. Friedlander M, et al. Is hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction important during single lung ventilation in the lateral decubitus position? *Can J Anaesth*. 1994;41:26–30.
179. Choi YS, et al. Effects of head-down tilt on intrapulmonary shunt fraction and oxygenation during one-lung ventilation in the lateral decubitus position. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;134:613–618.
180. McMahon AJ, et al. Impact of laparoscopic cholecystectomy: a population-based study. *Lancet*. 2000;356:1632–1637.
181. Neudecker J, et al. The European Association for Endoscopic Surgery clinical practice guideline on the pneumoperitoneum for laparoscopic surgery. *Surg Endosc*. 2002;16:1121–1143.
182. Gutt CN, et al. Circulatory and respiratory complications of carbon dioxide insufflation. *Dig Surg*. 2004;21:95–105.
183. Bablekos GD, et al. Changes in breathing control and mechanics after laparoscopic vs open cholecystectomy. *Arch Surg*. 2006;141:16–22.
184. Hirvonen EA, Nuutinen LS, Kauko M. Ventilatory effects, blood gas changes, and oxygen consumption during laparoscopic hysterectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:961–966.
185. Andersson LE, et al. Effect of carbon dioxide pneumoperitoneum on development of atelectasis during anesthesia, examined by spiral computed tomography. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:293–299.
186. Makinen MT, Yli-Hankala A. Respiratory compliance during laparoscopic hiatal and inguinal hernia repair. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45:865–870.
187. Sharma KC, et al. Cardiopulmonary physiology and pathophysiology as a consequence of laparoscopic surgery. *Chest*. 1996;110:810–815.
188. Andersson L, et al. Effect of CO(2) pneumoperitoneum on ventilation-perfusion relationships during laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46:552–560.
189. Strang CM, et al. Improved ventilation-perfusion matching by abdominal insufflation (pneumoperitoneum) with CO2 but not with air. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2013;79(6):617.
190. Hachenberg T, et al. Gas exchange impairment and pulmonary densities after cardiac surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36:800–805.
191. Hachenberg T, et al. The ventilation-perfusion relation and gas exchange in mitral valve disease and coronary artery disease. Implications for anesthesia, extracorporeal circulation, and cardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:809–817.
192. Dyhr T, et al. Both lung recruitment maneuver and PEEP are needed to increase oxygenation and lung volume after cardiac surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:187–197.
193. Pasquina P, et al. Continuous positive airway pressure versus noninvasive pressure support ventilation to treat atelectasis after cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1001–1008; table of contents.
194. Reis Miranda D, et al. The open lung concept: effects on right ventricular afterload after cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:327–332.
195. Tschernko EM, et al. Intrapulmonary shunt after cardiopulmonary bypass: the use of vital capacity maneuvers versus off-pump coronary artery bypass grafting. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2002;124:732–738.
196. Futier E, Constantin JM, Paugam-Burtz C, et al. A trial of intraoperative low-tidal-volume ventilation in abdominal surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(5):428–437.
197. Las Vegas investigators. Epidemiology, practice of ventilation and outcome for patients at increased risk of postoperative pulmonary complications: LAS VEGAS - an observational study in 29 countries. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2017;34(8):492–507.
198. Hedenstierna G. Small tidal volumes, positive end-expiratory pressure, and lung recruitment maneuvers during anesthesia: good or bad? *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(3):501–503.
199. Lindberg P, Gunnarsson L, Tokics L, et al. Atelectasis and lung function in the postoperative period. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36(6):546–553.
200. Pasquina P, Tramer MR, Walder B. Prophylactic respiratory physiotherapy after cardiac surgery: systematic review. *BMJ*. 2003;327:1379.
201. Westerdahl E, et al. Deep-breathing exercises reduce atelectasis and improve pulmonary function after coronary artery bypass surgery. *Chest*. 2005;128:3482–3488.
202. Greif R, Akca O, Horn EP, et al. Outcomes Research G. Supplemental perioperative oxygen to reduce the incidence of surgical-wound infection. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342(3):161–167.
203. Allegranzi B, Zayed B, Bischoff P, et al. New WHO recommendations on intraoperative and postoperative measures for surgical site infection prevention: an evidence-based global perspective. *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2016;16(12):e288–e303.
204. Hedenstierna G, Perchiazzi G, Meyhoff CS, Larsson A. Who can make sense of the WHO guidelines to prevent surgical site infection? *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(5):771–773.
205. Staehr-Rye AK, Meyhoff CS, Scheffenbichler FT, et al. High intraoperative inspiratory oxygen fraction and risk of major respiratory complications. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(1):140–149.
206. Kurz A, Fleischmann E, Sessler DI, et al. Effects of supplemental oxygen and dexamethasone on surgical site infection: a factorial randomized trialdouble dagger. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(3):434–443.
207. Turrens JF. Mitochondrial formation of reactive oxygen species. *J Physiol*. 2003;552(Pt 2):335–344.
208. Douglas NJ, et al. Respiration during sleep in normal man. *Thorax*. 1982;37:840–844.
209. Hudgel DW, Devadatta P. Decrease in functional residual capacity during sleep in normal humans. *J Appl Physiol*. 1984;57:1319–1322.
210. Ballard RD, et al. Influence of sleep on lung volume in asthmatic patients and normal subjects. *J Appl Physiol*. 1990;68:2034.
211. Appelberg J, et al. Lung aeration during sleep. *Chest*. 2007;131:122.

14

Cardiac Physiology

LENA S. SUN and NICHOLAS A. DAVIS

KEY POINTS

- The cardiac cycle is the sequence of electrical and mechanical events during a single heartbeat.
- Cardiac output is determined by the heart rate, myocardial contractility, and preload and afterload.
- The majority of cardiomyocytes consist of myofibrils, which are rod-like bundles that form the contractile elements within the cardiomyocyte.
- The basic working unit of contraction is the sarcomere.
- Gap junctions are responsible for the electrical coupling of small molecules between cells.
- Action potentials have four phases in the heart.
- The key player in cardiac excitation-contraction coupling is the ubiquitous second messenger calcium.
- Calcium-induced sparks are spatially and temporally patterned activations of localized calcium release that are important for excitation-contraction coupling and regulation of automaticity and contractility.
- β-Adrenoreceptors stimulate chronotropy, inotropy, lusitropy, and dromotropy.
- Hormones with cardiac action can be synthesized and secreted by cardiomyocytes or produced by other tissues and delivered to the heart.
- Cardiac reflexes are fast-acting reflex loops between the heart and central nervous system that contribute to the regulation of cardiac function and the maintenance of physiologic homeostasis.

"To err, to be deceived, is human." This was William Harvey's gentle repudiation to fellow physicians in his 1628 "Exercitatio Anatomica de Motu Cordis et Sanguinis in Animalibus," in which he advanced the concepts of circulation with the heart as the central pump, a major break from the centuries-old anatomic teaching of Galen.[1,2] Modern cardiac physiology includes this as well as concepts of cellular and molecular biology of the cardiomyocyte and regulation of cardiac function by neural and humoral factors. This chapter focuses on the physiology of the heart, beginning with the intact heart and advancing to cellular cardiac physiology. Finally, the various factors that regulate cardiac function are briefly discussed.

The basic anatomy of the heart consists of two atria and two ventricles that provide two separate circulations in series. The pulmonary circulation, a low-resistance and high-capacitance vascular bed, receives output from the right side of the heart, and its chief function is bidirectional gas exchange. The left side of the heart provides output for the systemic circulation. It functions to deliver oxygen (O_2) and nutrients and to remove carbon dioxide (CO_2) and metabolites from various tissue beds.

Physiology of the Intact Heart

Understanding the mechanical performance of the intact heart begins with the knowledge of the phases of the cardiac cycle and the determinants of ventricular function.

CARDIAC CYCLE

The cardiac cycle is the sequence of electrical and mechanical events during a single heartbeat. Fig. 14.1 illustrates the electrical events of a single cardiac cycle represented by the electrocardiogram (ECG) with corresponding mechanical events. Left atrial and left ventricular pressures are shown correlated in time with aortic flow and ventricular volume.[3]

Intrinsic to the specialized cardiac pacemaker tissues is automaticity and rhythmicity. The cardiac cycle begins at the sinoatrial (SA) node with the initiation of the heartbeat. Because the SA node can generate impulses at the greatest frequency, it is the natural pacemaker.

Electrical Events and the Electrocardiogram

Electrical events of the pacemaker and the specialized conduction system are represented by the ECG at the body surface. The ECG is the result of differences in electrical potential generated by the heart at sites of the surface recording. The action potential initiated at the SA node is propagated to both atria by specialized conduction tissue that leads to atrial systole (contraction) and the P wave of the ECG. At the junction of the interatrial and interventricular septa, specialized atrial conduction tissue converges at the atrioventricular (AV) node, which is distally connected to the His bundle. The AV node is an area of relatively slow conduction, and a delay between atrial and ventricular contraction normally occurs at this locus. The PR interval represents the delay between atrial and ventricular contraction at the level of the AV node. From the distal His

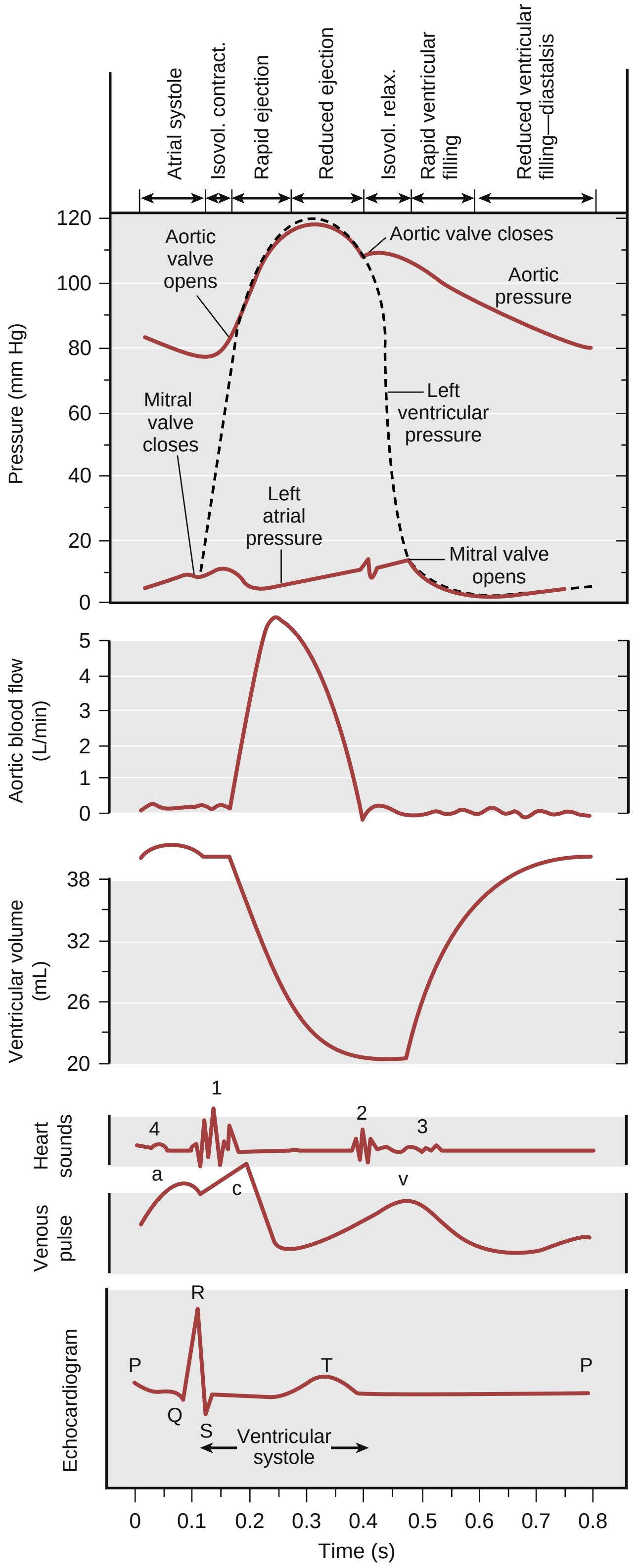


Fig. 14.1 Electrical and mechanical events during a single cardiac cycle. Aortic and atrial blood flow, ventricular volume, venous pulse, and the electrocardiogram are shown. (Berne RM, Levy MN: The cardiac pump. In *Cardiovascular physiology*, ed 8, St Louis, 2001, Mosby, pp 55-82.)

bundle, an electrical impulse is propagated through large left and right bundle branches and finally to the Purkinje system fibers, which are the smallest branches of the specialized conduction system. Finally, electrical signals are transmitted from the Purkinje system to individual ventricular cardiomyocytes. The spread of depolarization to the ventricular myocardium is exhibited as the QRS complex on the ECG. Depolarization is followed by ventricular repolarization and the appearance of the T wave on the ECG.[4]

Mechanical Events

The mechanical events of a cardiac cycle begin with the return of blood to the right and left atria from the systemic and pulmonary circulation, respectively. As blood accumulates in the atria, atrial pressure increases until it exceeds the pressure within the ventricle, and the AV valve opens. Blood passively flows first into the ventricular chambers, and such flow accounts for approximately 75% of the total ventricular filling.[5] The remainder of the blood flow is mediated by active atrial contraction or systole, known as the atrial "kick." The onset of atrial systole coincides with the depolarization of the SA node and the P wave. While the ventricles fill, the AV valves are displaced upward and ventricular contraction (systole) begins with closure of the tricuspid and mitral valves, which corresponds to the end of the R wave on the ECG. The first part of ventricular systole is known as isovolumic (or isometric) contraction. The electrical impulse traverses the AV region and passes through the right and left bundle branches into the Purkinje fibers, which leads to contraction of the ventricular myocardium and a progressive increase in intraventricular pressure. When intraventricular pressure exceeds pulmonary artery and aortic pressure, the pulmonic and aortic valves open and ventricular ejection occurs, which is the second part of ventricular systole.

Ventricular ejection is divided into the rapid ejection phase and the reduced ejection phase. During the rapid ejection phase, forward flow is maximal, and pulmonary artery and aortic pressure is maximally developed. In the reduced ejection phase, flow and great artery pressures taper with progression of systole. Pressures in both ventricular chambers decrease as blood is ejected from the heart, and ventricular diastole begins with closure of the pulmonic and aortic valves. The initial period of ventricular diastole consists of the isovolumic relaxation phase. This phase is concomitant with repolarization of the ventricular myocardium and corresponds to the end of the T wave on the ECG. The final portion of ventricular diastole involves a rapid decrease in intraventricular pressure until it decreases to less than that of the right and left atria, at which point the AV valve reopens, ventricular filling occurs, and the cycle repeats itself.

VENTRICULAR STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

Ventricular Structure

The specific architectural order of the cardiac muscles provides the basis for the heart to function as a pump. The ellipsoid shape of the left ventricle (LV) is a result of the laminar layering of spiraling bundles of cardiac muscles (Fig. 14.2). The orientation of the muscle bundle is longitudinal in the subepicardial myocardium and circumferential

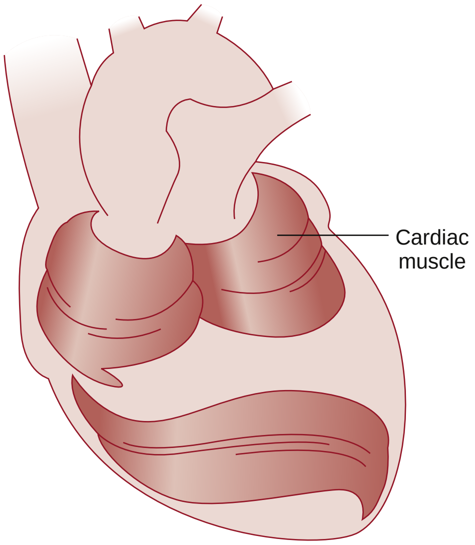


Fig. 14.2 Muscle bundles. (From Marieb EN. *Human Anatomy & Physiology*. 5th ed. San Francisco: Pearson Benjamin Cummings; 2001:684.)

in the middle segment and again becomes longitudinal in the subendocardial myocardium. Because of the ellipsoid shape of the LV, regional differences in wall thickness result in corresponding variations in the cross-sectional radius of the left ventricular chamber. These regional differences may serve to accommodate the variable loading conditions of the LV.[6] In addition, such anatomy allows the LV to eject blood in a corkscrew-type motion beginning from the base and ending at the apex. The architecturally complex structure of the LV thus allows maximal shortening of myocytes, which results in increased wall thickness and the generation of force during systole. Moreover, release of the twisted LV may provide a suction mechanism for filling of the LV during diastole. The left ventricular free wall and the septum have similar muscle bundle architecture. As a result, the septum moves inward during systole in a normal heart. Regional wall thickness is a commonly used index of myocardial performance that can be clinically assessed, such as by echocardiography or magnetic resonance imaging.

Unlike the LV, which needs to pump against the higher-pressure systemic circulation, the right ventricle (RV) pumps against a much lower pressure circuit in the pulmonary circulation. Consequently, wall thickness is considerably less in the RV. In contrast to the ellipsoidal form of the LV, the RV is crescent shaped; as a result, the mechanics of right ventricular contraction are more complex. Inflow and outflow contraction is not simultaneous, and much of the contractile force seems to be recruited from interventricular forces of the LV-based septum.

An intricate matrix of collagen fibers forms a scaffold of support for the heart and adjacent vessels. This matrix provides enough strength to resist tensile stretch. The collagen fibers are made up of mostly thick collagen type I fiber, which cross-links with the thin collagen type III fiber, the other major type of collagen.[7] Elastic fibers that contain elastin are in close proximity to the collagen fibers and account for the elasticity of the myocardium.[8]

Ventricular Function

The heart provides the driving force for delivering blood throughout the cardiovascular system to supply nutrients and to remove metabolic waste. Because of the anatomic complexity of the RV, the traditional description of systolic function is usually limited to the LV. Systolic performance of the heart is dependent on loading conditions and contractility. Preload and afterload are two interdependent factors extrinsic to the heart that govern cardiac performance.

Diastole is ventricular relaxation, and it occurs in four distinct phases: (1) isovolumic relaxation; (2) the rapid filling phase (i.e., the LV chamber filling at variable left ventricular pressure); (3) slow filling, or diastasis; and (4) final filling during atrial systole. The isovolumic relaxation phase is energy dependent. During auxotonic relaxation (phases 2 through 4), ventricular filling occurs against pressure. It encompasses a period during which the myocardium is unable to generate force, and filling of the ventricular chambers takes place. The isovolumic relaxation phase does not contribute to ventricular filling. The greatest amount of ventricular filling occurs in the second phase, whereas the third phase adds only approximately 5% of total diastolic volume and the final phase provides 15% of ventricular volume from atrial systole.

To assess diastolic function, several indices have been developed. The most widely used index for examining the isovolumic relaxation phase of diastole is to calculate the peak instantaneous rate of decline in left ventricular pressure ($-\mathrm{d}P/\mathrm{d}t$) or the time constant of isovolumic decline in left ventricular pressure (τ). The aortic closing-mitral opening interval and the isovolumic relaxation time and peak rate of left ventricular wall thinning, as determined by echocardiography, have both been used to estimate diastolic function during auxotonic relaxation. Ventricular compliance can be evaluated by pressure-volume relationships to determine function during the auxotonic phases of diastole.[9,10]

Many different factors influence diastolic function: magnitude of systolic volume, passive chamber stiffness, elastic recoil of the ventricle, diastolic interaction between the two ventricular chambers, atrial properties, and catecholamines. Whereas systolic dysfunction is a reduced ability of the heart to eject, diastolic dysfunction is a decreased ability of the heart to fill. Abnormal diastolic function is now recognized as the predominant cause of the pathophysiologic condition of congestive heart failure.[11]

Ventricular interactions during systole and diastole are internal mechanisms that provide feedback to modulate stroke volume (SV). Systolic ventricular interaction involves the effect of the interventricular septum on the function of both ventricles. Because the interventricular septum is anatomically linked to both ventricles, it is part of the load against which each ventricle has to work. Therefore, any changes in one ventricle will also be present in the other. In diastolic ventricular interaction, dilatation of either the LV or RV will have an impact on effective filling of the contralateral ventricle and thereby modify function.

Preload and Afterload. *Preload* is the ventricular load at the end of diastole, before contraction has started. First described by Starling, a linear relationship exists between

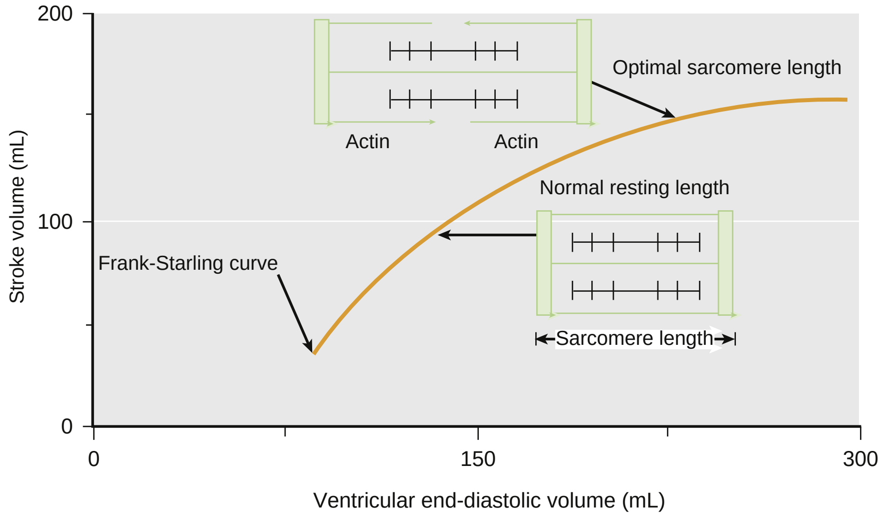


Fig. 14.3 Frank-Starling relationship. The relationship between sarcomere length and tension developed in cardiac muscles is shown. In the heart, an increase in end-diastolic volume is the equivalent of an increase in myocardial stretch; therefore, according to the Frank-Starling law, increased stroke volume is generated.

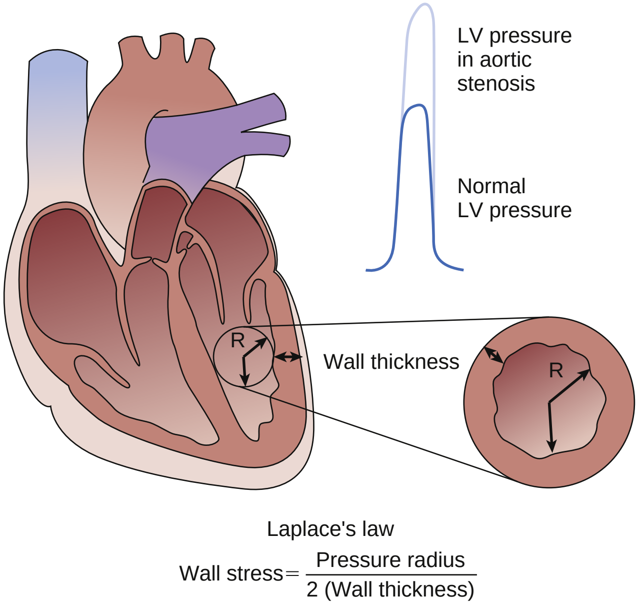
sarcomere length and myocardial force (Fig. 14.3). In clinical practice, surrogate representatives of left ventricular volume such as pulmonary wedge pressure or central venous pressure are used to estimate preload.[5] More direct measures of ventricular volumes can be made using echocardiography.

Afterload is the systolic load on the LV after contraction has begun. Aortic compliance is an additional determinant of afterload.[3] Aortic compliance is the ability of the aorta to give way to systolic forces from the ventricle. Changes in the aortic wall (dilation or stiffness) can alter aortic compliance and thus afterload. Examples of pathologic conditions that alter afterload are aortic stenosis and chronic hypertension. Both impede ventricular ejection, thereby increasing afterload. Aortic impedance, or aortic pressure divided by aortic flow at that instant, is an accurate means of gauging afterload. However, clinical measurement of aortic impedance is invasive. Echocardiography can noninvasively estimate aortic impedance by determining aortic blood flow at the time of its maximal increase. In clinical practice, the measurement of systolic blood pressure is adequate to approximate afterload, provided that aortic stenosis is not present.

Preload and afterload can be thought of as the wall stress that is present at the end of diastole and during left ventricular ejection, respectively. Wall stress is a useful concept because it includes preload, afterload, and the energy required to generate contraction. Wall stress and heart rate are probably the two most relevant indices that account for changes in myocardial O_2 demand. Laplace's law states that wall stress (σ) is the product of pressure (P) and radius (R) divided by wall thickness (h)[5]:

$$\sigma = P \times R/2h$$

The ellipsoid shape of the LV allows the least amount of wall stress such that as the ventricle changes its shape from ellipsoid to spherical, wall stress is increased. By using the ratio of the long axis to the short axis as a measure of the ellipsoid shape, a decrease in this ratio would signify a transition from ellipsoid to spherical.



$$\text{Wall stress} = \frac{\text{Pressure radius}}{2\ (\text{Wall thickness})}$$

Fig. 14.4 In response to aortic stenosis, left ventricular *(LV)* pressure increases. To maintain wall stress at control levels, compensatory LV hypertrophy develops. According to Laplace's law, wall stress = pressure · radius (*R*) ÷ (2 × wall thickness). Therefore, the increase in wall thickness offsets the increased pressure, and wall stress is maintained at control levels. (From Opie LH. Ventricular function. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:355–401.)

Thickness of the left ventricular muscle is an important modifier of wall stress. For example, in aortic stenosis, afterload is increased. The ventricle must generate a much higher pressure to overcome the increased load opposing systolic ejection of blood. To generate such high performance, the ventricle increases its wall thickness (left ventricular hypertrophy). By applying Laplace's law, increased left ventricular wall thickness will decrease wall stress, despite the necessary increase in left ventricular pressure to overcome the aortic stenosis (Fig. 14.4).[12] In a failing heart, the radius of the LV increases, thus increasing wall stress.

Frank-Starling Relationship. The Frank-Starling relationship is an intrinsic property of myocardium by which stretching of the myocardial sarcomere results in enhanced myocardial performance for subsequent contractions (see Fig. 14.3). In 1895, Otto Frank first noted that in skeletal muscle, the change in tension was directly related to its length, and as pressure changed in the heart, a corresponding change in volume occurred.[13] In 1914, E.H. Starling, using an isolated heart-lung preparation as a model, observed that "the mechanical energy set free on passage from the resting to the contracted state is a function of the length of the muscle fiber."[14] If a strip of cardiac muscle is mounted in a muscle chamber under isometric conditions and stimulated at a fixed frequency, then an increase in sarcomere length results in an increase in twitch force. Starling concluded that the increased twitch force was the result of a greater interaction of muscle bundles.

Electron microscopy has demonstrated that sarcomere length (2-2.2 μm) is positively related to the amount of actin and myosin cross-bridging and that there is an optimal sarcomere length at which the interaction is maximal. This concept is based on the assumption that the increase in cross-bridging is equivalent to an increase in muscle performance. Although this theory continues to hold true for skeletal muscle, the force-length relationship in cardiac muscle is more complex. When comparing force-strength relationships between skeletal and cardiac muscle, it is noteworthy that the reduction in force is only 10%, even if cardiac muscle is at 80% sarcomere length.[13] The cellular basis of the Frank-Starling mechanism is still being investigated and is briefly discussed later in this chapter. A common clinical application of Starling's law is the relationship of left ventricular end-diastolic volume and SV. The Frank-Starling mechanism may remain intact even in a failing heart.[15] However, ventricular remodeling after injury or in heart failure may modify the Frank-Starling relationship.

Contractility. Each Frank-Starling curve specifies a level of contractility, or the inotropic state of the heart, which is defined as the work performed by cardiac muscle at any given end-diastolic fiber. Factors that modify contractility will create a family of Frank-Starling curves with different contractility (Fig. 14.5).[12] Factors that modify contractility are exercise, adrenergic stimulation, changes in pH, temperature, and drugs such as digitalis. The ability of the LV to develop, generate, and sustain the necessary pressure for the ejection of blood is the intrinsic inotropic state of the heart.

In isolated muscle, the maximal velocity of contraction (V_{max}) is defined as the maximal velocity of ejection at zero load. V_{max} is obtained by plotting the velocity of muscle shortening in isolated papillary muscle at varying degrees of force. Although this relationship can be replicated in isolated myocytes, V_{max} cannot be measured in an intact heart because complete unloading is impossible. To measure the intrinsic contractile activity of an intact heart, several strategies have been attempted with varying success. Pressure-volume loops, albeit requiring catheterization of the left side of the heart, are currently the best way to determine contractility in an intact heart (Fig. 14.6).[12] The pressure-volume loop represents an indirect measure of the Frank-Starling relationship between force (pressure) and muscle length (volume). Clinically, the most commonly used noninvasive index of ventricular contractile function is the ejection fraction, which is assessed by echocardiography, angiography, or radionuclide ventriculography.

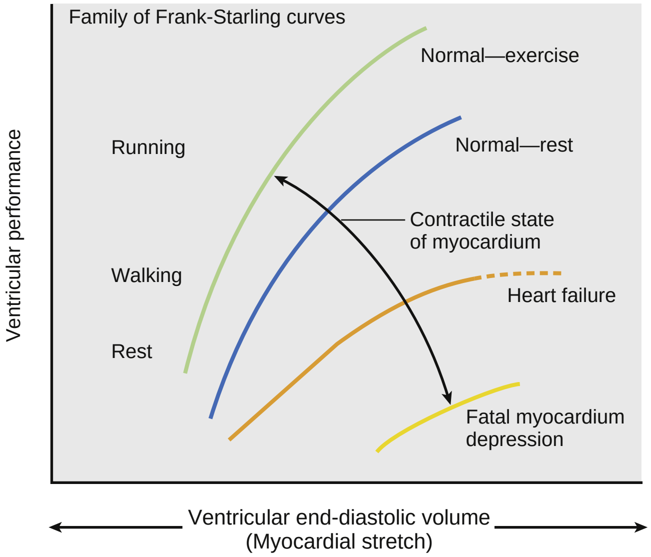


Fig. 14.5 A family of Frank-Starling curves is shown. A leftward shift of the curve denotes enhancement of the inotropic state, whereas a rightward shift denotes decreased inotropy. (From Opie LH. Ventricular function. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation.* 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:355–401.)

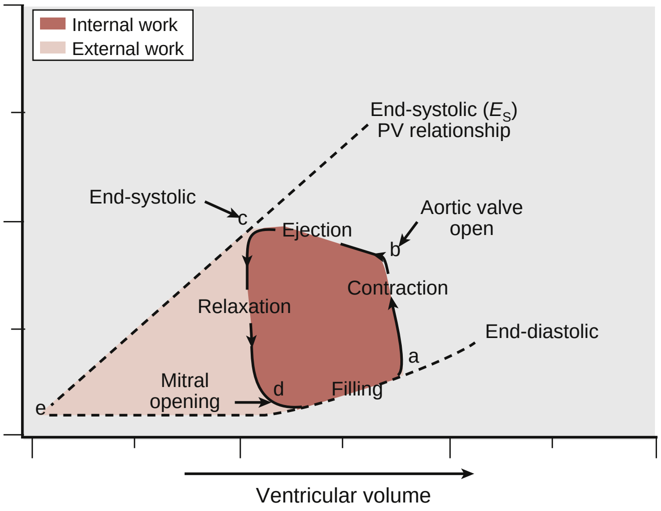


Fig. 14.6 Pressure-volume (PV) loop. Point *a* depicts the start of isovolumetric contraction. The aortic valve opens at point *b,* and ejection of blood follows *(points b→c).* The mitral valve opens at point *d,* and ventricular filling ensues. External work is defined by points *a, b, c,* and *d,* and internal work is defined by points *e, d,* and *c.* The PV area is the sum of external and internal work. (From Opie LH. Ventricular function. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation.* 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:355–401.)

$$\text{Ejection fraction} = (\text{LVEDV} - \text{LVESV})/\text{LVEDV}$$

where LVESV is left ventricular end-systolic volume.

Cardiac Work. The work of the heart can be divided into external and internal work. External work is expended to eject blood under pressure, whereas internal work is expended within the ventricle to change the shape of the heart and to prepare it for ejection. Internal work contributes to inefficiency in the performance of the heart. Wall stress is directly proportional to the internal work of the heart.[16]

External work, or stroke work, is a product of the SV and pressure (P) developed during ejection of the SV.

$$\text{Stroke work} = \text{SV} \times P \text{ or } (\text{LVEDV} - \text{LVESV}) \times P$$

The external work and internal work of the ventricle both consume O_2. The clinical significance of internal work is illustrated in the case of a poorly drained LV during cardiopulmonary bypass. Although external work is provided by the roller pump during bypass, myocardial ischemia can still occur because poor drainage of the LV creates tension on the left ventricular wall and increases internal work.

The efficiency of cardiac contraction is estimated by the following formula[10]:

$$\text{Cardiac efficiency} = \text{External work}/\text{Energy equivalent of } O_2\text{consumption}$$

The corkscrew motion of the heart for the ejection of blood is the most favorable in terms of work efficiency, based on the architecture in a normal LV (with the cardiac muscle bundles arranged so that a circumferentially oriented middle layer is sandwiched by longitudinally oriented outer layers). In heart failure, ventricular dilation reduces cardiac efficiency because it increases wall stress, which in turn increases O_2 consumption.[13]

Heart Rate and Force-Frequency Relationship. In isolated cardiac muscle, an increase in the frequency of stimulation induces an increase in the force of contraction. This relationship is termed the *treppe*, which means *staircase* in German, and is the phenomenon of the force-frequency relationship.[10,17] At between 150 and 180 stimuli per minute, maximal contractile force is reached in an isolated heart muscle at a fixed muscle length. Thus, an increased frequency incrementally increases inotropy, whereas stimulation at a lower frequency decreases contractile force. However, when the stimulation becomes extremely rapid, the force of contraction decreases. In the clinical context, pacing-induced positive inotropic effects may be effective only up to a certain heart rate, based on the force-frequency relationship. In a failing heart, the force-frequency relationship may be less effective in producing a positive inotropic effect.[10]

CARDIAC OUTPUT

Cardiac output is the amount of blood pumped by the heart per unit of time ($\dot{Q}$) and is determined by four factors: two factors that are intrinsic to the heart—heart rate and myocardial contractility—and two factors that are extrinsic to the heart but functionally couple the heart and the vasculature—preload and afterload.

Heart rate is defined as the number of beats per minute and is mainly influenced by the autonomic nervous system. Increases in heart rate escalate cardiac output if ventricular filling is adequate during diastole. *Contractility* can be defined as the intrinsic level of contractile performance that is independent of loading conditions. Contractility is difficult to define in an intact heart because it cannot be separated from loading conditions.[10,17] For example, the *Frank-Starling relationship* is defined as the change in intrinsic contractile performance, based on changes in preload. Cardiac output in a living organism can be measured with the Fick principle (a schematic depiction is illustrated in Fig. 14.7).[3]

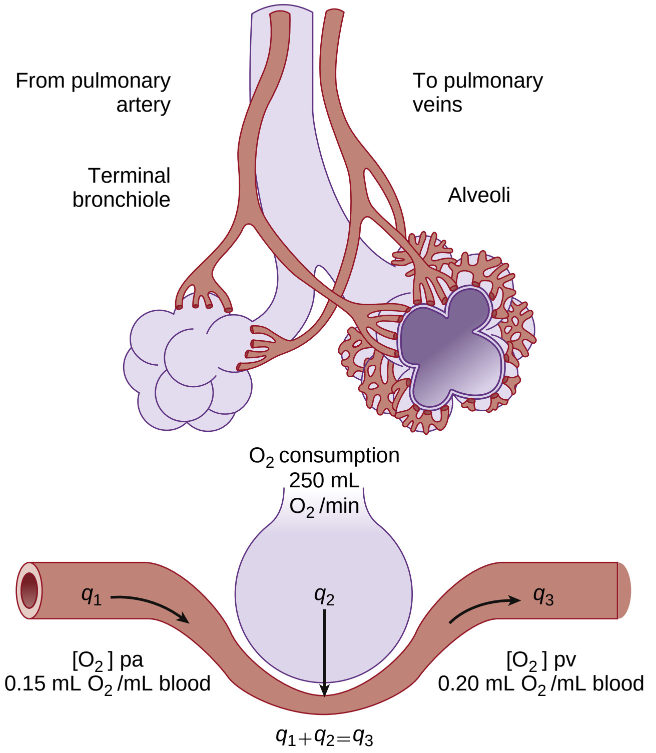

From pulmonary artery
To pulmonary veins
Terminal bronchiole
Alveoli
O_2 consumption 250 mL O_2/min
q_1
q_2
q_3
$[O_2]$ pa 0.15 mL O_2/mL blood
$[O_2]$ pv 0.20 mL O_2/mL blood
$q_1+q_2=q_3$

Fig. 14.7 Illustration demonstrates the principle of determination of cardiac output according to the Fick formula. If the oxygen (O_2) concentration in pulmonary arterial blood ($CpaO_2$), the O_2 concentration of the pulmonary vein ($CpvO_2$), and the O_2 consumption are known, then cardiac output can be calculated. *pa,* Pulmonary artery; *pv,* pulmonary vein. (Berne RM, Levy MN: The cardiac pump. In *Cardiovascular physiology*, ed 8, St Louis, 2001, Mosby, pp 55-82.)

The Fick principle is based on the concept of conservation of mass such that the O_2 delivered from pulmonary venous blood (q_3) is equal to the total O_2 delivered to pulmonary capillaries through the pulmonary artery (q_1) and the alveoli (q_2).

The amount of O_2 delivered to the pulmonary capillaries by way of the pulmonary arteries (q_1) equals total pulmonary arterial blood flow ($\dot{Q}$) times the O_2 concentration in pulmonary arterial blood ($CpaO_2$):

$$q_1 = \dot{Q} \times CpaO_2$$

The amount of O_2 carried away from pulmonary venous blood (q_3) is equal to total pulmonary venous blood flow ($\dot{Q}$) times the O_2 concentration in pulmonary venous blood ($CpvO_2$):

$$q_3 = \dot{Q} \times CpvO_2$$

The pulmonary arterial O_2 concentration is the mixed systemic venous O_2, and the pulmonary venous O_2

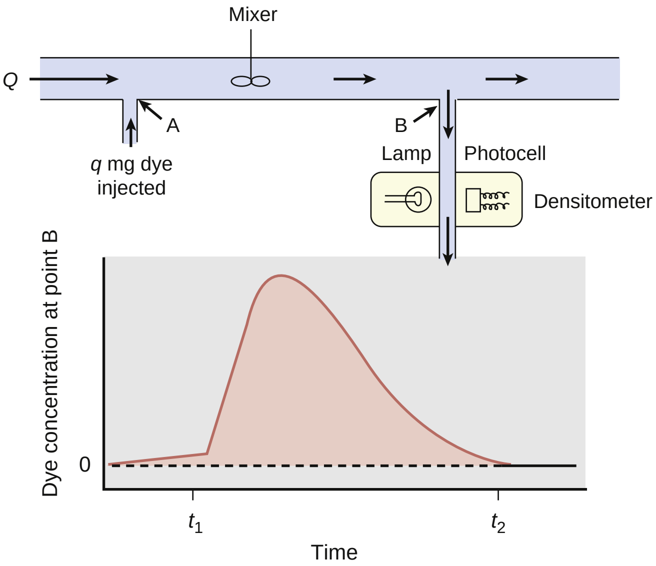


Fig. 14.8 Illustration demonstrates the principle of determining cardiac output with the indicator dilution technique. This model assumes that there is no recirculation. A known amount of dye *(q)* is injected at point *A* into a stream flowing at $\dot{Q}$ (mL/min). A mixed sample of the fluid flowing past point *B* is withdrawn at a constant rate through a densitometer. The change in dye concentration over time is depicted in a curve. Flow may be measured by dividing the amount of indicator injected upstream by the area under the downstream concentration curve. (Berne RM, Levy MN: The cardiac pump. In *Cardiovascular physiology*, ed 8, St Louis, 2001, Mosby, pp 55-82.)

concentration is the peripheral arterial O_2. O_2 consumption is the amount of O_2 delivered to the pulmonary capillaries from the alveoli (q_2). Because $q_1 + q_2 = q_3$,

$$\dot{Q}\,(CpaO_2) + q_2 = \dot{Q}\,(CpvO_2)$$

$$q_2 = \dot{Q}\,(CpvO_2) - \dot{Q}\,(CpaO_2)$$

$$q_2 = \dot{Q}\,(CpvO_2 - CpaO_2)$$

$$\dot{Q} = q_2/\,(CpvO_2 - CpaO_2)$$

Thus, if the $CpaO_2$, $CpvO_2$, and O_2 consumption (q_2) are known, then the cardiac output can be determined.

The indicator dilution technique is another method for determining cardiac output also based on the law of conservation of mass. The two most commonly used indicator dilution techniques are the dye dilution and the thermodilution methods. Fig. 14.8 illustrates the principles of the dye dilution method.[3]

Cellular Cardiac Physiology

CELLULAR ANATOMY

At the cellular level, the heart consists of three major components: cardiac muscle tissue (contracting cardiomyocytes), conduction tissue (conducting cells), and extracellular connective tissue. A group of cardiomyocytes with its connective tissue support network or extracellular matrix make up a myofiber (Fig. 14.9). Adjacent myofibers are connected by strands of collagen. The extracellular matrix is the synthetic product of fibroblasts and is made up of collagen, which is the main determinant of myocardial stiffness, and other major matrix proteins. One of the matrix proteins, elastin, is the chief constituent of elastic fibers. The elastic fibers account for, in part, the elastic properties of the myocardium.[8] Other matrix proteins include the glycoproteins or proteoglycans and matrix metalloproteinases. Proteoglycans are proteins with short sugar chains, and they include heparan sulfate, chondroitin, fibronectin, and laminin. Matrix metalloproteins are enzymes that degrade collagen and other extracellular proteins. The balance between the accumulation of extracellular matrix proteins by synthesis and their breakdown by matrix metalloproteins contributes to the mechanical properties and function of the heart.[8]

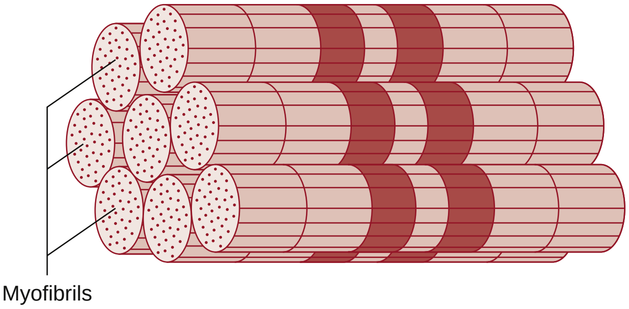


Fig. 14.9 Organization of cardiomyocytes. Fifty percent of cardiomyocyte volume is made up of myofibrils; the remainder consists of mitochondria, nucleus, sarcoplasmic reticulum, and cytosol.

CARDIOMYOCYTE STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

Individual contracting cardiomyocytes are large cells between 20 μm (atrial cardiomyocytes) and 140 μm (ventricular cardiomyocytes) in length. Approximately 50% of the cell volume in a contracting cardiomyocyte is made up of myofibrils, and the remainder consists of mitochondria, nucleus, sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR), and cytosol. The myofibril is the rod-like bundle that forms the contractile elements within cardiomyocytes. Within each contractile element are contractile proteins, regulatory proteins, and structural proteins. Contractile proteins make up approximately 80% of the myofibrillar protein, with the remainder being regulatory and structural proteins.[18,19] The basic unit of contraction is the sarcomere (see discussion under Contractile Elements later in this chapter).

The sarcolemma, or the outer plasma membrane, separates the intracellular and extracellular space. It surrounds the cardiomyocyte and invaginates into the myofibrils through an extensive tubular network known as *transverse tubules* or *T tubules*, and it also forms specialized intercellular junctions between cells.[20,21]

Transverse or T tubules are in close proximity to an intramembranous system and the SR, which plays an important role in the calcium (Ca^{2+}) metabolism that is critical in the excitation-contraction coupling (ECC) of the cardiomyocyte. The SR can be further divided into the longitudinal (or network) SR and the junctional SR. The longitudinal SR is involved in the uptake of Ca^{2+} for the initiation of relaxation. The junctional SR contains large Ca^{2+}-release channels (ryanodine receptors [RyRs]) that release SR Ca^{2+} stores in response to depolarization-stimulated Ca^{2+} influx through the sarcolemmal Ca^{2+} channels. The RyRs are not only

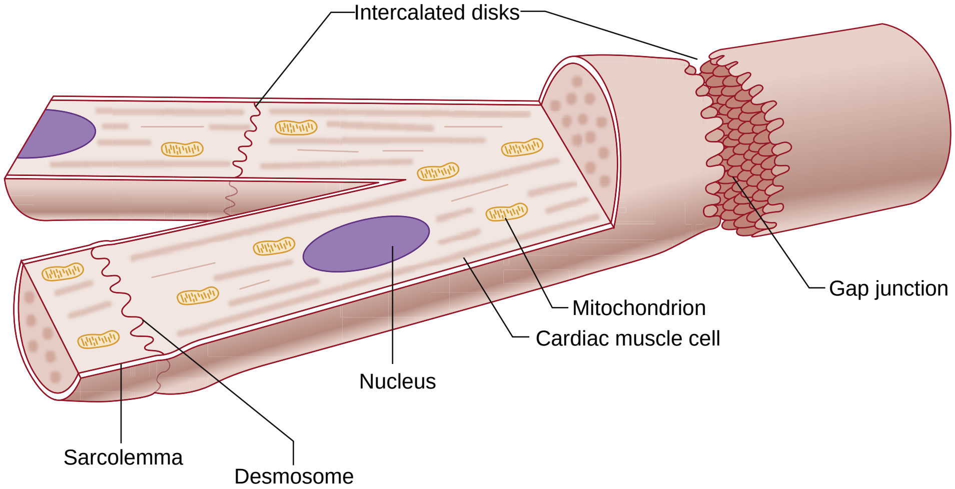


Fig. 14.10 The sarcolemma that envelops cardiomyocytes becomes highly specialized to form the intercalated disks where ends of neighboring cells are in contact. The intercalated disks consist of gap junctions and *spot* and *sheet* desmosomes.

Ca^{2+}-release channels, but they also form the scaffolding proteins that anchor many of the key regulatory proteins.[22]

Mitochondria are immediately found beneath the sarcolemma, wedged between myofibrils within the cell. They contain enzymes that promote the generation of adenosine triphosphate (ATP), and they are the energy powerhouse for the cardiomyocyte. In addition, mitochondria can also accumulate Ca^{2+} and thereby contribute to the regulation of the cytosolic Ca^{2+} concentration. Nearly all the genetic information is found within the centrally located nucleus. The cytosol is the fluid-filled microenvironment within the sarcolemma, exclusive of the organelles and the contractile apparatus and proteins.

Cardiac muscle cells contain three different types of intercellular junctions: gap junctions, *spot* desmosomes, and *sheet* desmosomes (or fasciae adherens) (Fig. 14.10).[20,23] Gap junctions are responsible for electrical coupling and the transfer of small molecules between cells, whereas desmosome-like junctions provide mechanical linkage. The adhesion sites formed by spot desmosomes anchor the intermediate filament cytoskeleton of the cell; those formed by the fasciae adherens anchor the contractile apparatus. Gap junctions consist of clusters of plasma membrane channels directly linking the cytoplasmic compartments of neighboring cells. Gap junction channels are constructed from connexins, a multigene family of conserved proteins. The principal connexin isoform of the mammalian heart is connexin 43; other connexins, notably connexins 40, 45, and 37, are also expressed but in smaller quantities.[22,23]

The conducting cardiomyocytes, or Purkinje cells, are cells specialized for conducting propagated action potentials. These cells have a low content of myofibrils and a prominent nucleus, and they contain an abundance of gap junctions. Cardiomyocytes can be functionally separated into (1) the excitation system, (2) the ECC system, and (3) the contractile system.

Excitation System

The cellular action potential originating in the specialized conduction tissue is propagated to individual cells where it initiates the intracellular event that leads to the contraction of the cell through the sarcolemmal excitation system.

Action Potential. Ion fluxes across plasma membranes result in depolarization (attaining a less negative membrane potential) and repolarization (attaining a more negative membrane potential). They are mediated by membrane proteins with ion-selective pores. Because these ion channel proteins open and close the pores in response to changes in membrane potential, the channels are voltage gated. In the heart, sodium (Na^+), potassium (K^+), Ca^{2+}, and chloride (Cl−) channels contribute to the action potential.

The types of action potential in the heart can be separated into two categories: (1) fast-response action potentials, which are found in the His-Purkinje system and atrial or ventricular cardiomyocytes; and (2) slow-response action potentials, which are found in the pacemaker cells in the SA and AV nodes. A typical tracing of an action potential in the His-Purkinje system is depicted in Fig. 14.11.[10] The electrochemical gradient for K^+ across the plasma membrane is the determinant for the resting membrane potential. Mostly as a result of the influx of Na^+, the membrane potential becomes depolarized, which leads to an extremely rapid upstroke (phase 0). As the membrane potential reaches a critical level (or threshold) during depolarization, the action potential is propagated. The rapid upstroke is followed by a transient repolarization (phase 1). Phase 1 is a period of brief and limited repolarization that is largely attributable to the activation of a transient outward K^+ current, i_{to}. The plateau phase (phase 2) occurs with a net influx of Ca^{2+} through L-type Ca^{2+} channels and the efflux of K^+ through several K^+ channels—the inwardly rectifying i_k, the delayed rectifier i_{k1}, and i_{to}. Repolarization (phase 3) is brought about when an efflux of K^+ from the three outward K^+ currents exceeds the influx of Ca^{2+}, thus returning the membrane to the resting potential. Very little ionic flux occurs during diastole (phase 4) in a fast-response action potential.

In contrast, during diastole (phase 4), pacemaker cells that show slow-response action potentials have the capability of spontaneous diastolic depolarization and generate the automatic cardiac rhythm. Pacemaker currents during phase 4 are the result of an increase in the three inward currents and a decrease in the two outward currents. The three

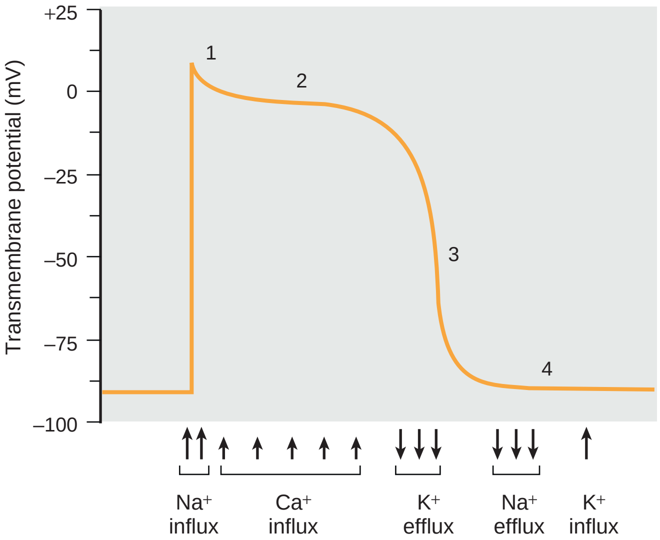


Fig. 14.11 Phases of cellular action potentials and major associated currents in ventricular myocytes. The initial phase (0) spike and overshoot (1) are caused by a rapid inward sodium (Na$^+$) current, the plateau phase (2) by a slow calcium (Ca^{2+}) current through L-type Ca channels, and repolarization (phase 3) by outward potassium (K$^+$) currents. Phase 4, the resting potential (Na$^+$ efflux, K$^+$ influx), is maintained by Na$^+$-K$^+$-adenosine triphosphatase (ATPase). The Na$^+$-Ca^{2+} exchanger is mainly responsible for extrusion of Ca^{2+}. In specialized conduction system tissue, spontaneous depolarization takes place during phase 4 until the voltage resulting in opening of the Na channel is reached. (From LeWinter MM, Osol G. Normal physiology of the cardiovascular system. In Fuster V, Alexander RW, O'Rourke RA, eds. *Hurst's the Heart.* 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001:63–94.)

inward currents that contribute to spontaneous pacemaker activity include two carried by Ca^{2+}, i_{CaL} and i_{CaT}, and one that is a mixed cation current, I_f.[24] The two outward currents are the delayed rectifier K$^+$ current, i_k, and the inward rectifying K$^+$ current, i_{k1}. When compared with the fast-response action potential, phase 0 is much less steep, phase 1 is absent, and phase 2 is indistinct from phase 3 in the slow-response action potential.[25] In SA node cells, the pacemaker I_f current is the principal determinant of duration diastolic depolarization, and it is encoded by four members of the hyperpolarization-activated cyclic nucleotide-gated gene (HCN1-4) family.[26]

During the cardiac action potential, movement of Ca^{2+} into the cell and Na$^+$ out of the cell creates an ionic imbalance. The Na$^+$-Ca^{2+} exchanger restores cellular ionic balance by actively transporting Ca^{2+} out of the cell against a concentration gradient while moving Na$^+$ into the cell in an energy-dependent manner.

Excitation-Contraction Coupling

Structures that participate in cardiac ECC include the sarcolemma, transverse tubules, SR, and myofilaments (Fig. 14.12A).[27] The process of ECC begins with depolarization of the plasma membrane and spread of electrical excitation along the sarcolemma of cardiomyocytes.

The ubiquitous second messenger Ca^{2+} is the key player in cardiac ECC (see Fig. 14.12B).[25] Cycling of Ca^{2+} within the structures that participate in ECC initiates and terminates contraction. Activation of the contractile system depends on an increase in free cytosolic Ca^{2+} and its subsequent binding to contractile proteins.

Ca^{2+} enters through plasma membrane channels concentrated at the T tubules, and such entry through L-type Ca^{2+} channels (dihydropyridine receptors) triggers the release of Ca^{2+} from the SR.[28] This evokes a *Ca^{2+} spark*. Ca^{2+} sparks are considered to be the elementary Ca^{2+} signaling event of ECC in heart muscle. A Ca^{2+} spark occurs with the opening of a cluster of SR RyRs to release Ca^{2+} in a locally regenerative manner. It, in turn, activates the Ca^{2+}-release channels and induces further release of Ca^{2+} from subsarcolemmal cisternae in the SR and thus leads to a large increase in intracellular Ca^{2+} (iCa^{2+}). These spatially and temporally patterned activations of localized Ca^{2+} release, in turn, stimulate myofibrillar contraction. The increase in iCa^{2+}, however, is transient, inasmuch as Ca^{2+} is removed by active uptake by the SR Ca^{2+} pump adenosine triphosphatase (ATPase), extrusion of Ca^{2+} from the cytosol by the Na$^+$-Ca^{2+} exchanger, and binding of Ca^{2+} to proteins.[29] Ca^{2+} sparks have also been implicated in pathophysiologic diseases such as hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, heart failure, and muscular dystrophy.[30-32]

The SR provides the anatomic framework and is the major organelle for the cycling of Ca^{2+}. It is the depot for iCa^{2+} stores. The cyclic release plus reuptake of Ca^{2+} by the SR regulates the cytosolic Ca^{2+} concentration and couples excitation to contraction. The physical proximity between L-type Ca^{2+} channels and RyRs at the SR membrane makes Ca^{2+}-induced Ca^{2+} release occur easily. The *foot* region of the RyR is the part that extends from the SR membrane to the T tubules, where the L-type Ca^{2+} channels are located.[19,29,33]

The SR is also concerned with the reuptake of Ca^{2+} that initiates relaxation or terminates contraction. The sarcoplasmic/endoplasmic reticulum Ca^{2+}-ATPase (SERCA) pump is the ATP-dependent pump that actively pumps the majority of the Ca^{2+} back into the SR after its release. SERCA makes up close to 90% of all the SR proteins and is inhibited by the phosphoprotein, phospholamban, at rest. Phospholamban is an SR membrane protein that is active in the dephosphorylated form. Phosphorylation by a variety of kinases as a result of β-adrenergic stimulation or other stimuli inactivates phospholamban and releases its inhibitory action on SERCA. Positive feedback ensues and leads to further phospholamban phosphorylation and greater SERCA activity. Active reuptake of Ca^{2+} by SERCA then promotes relaxation.[19,29,33]

Once taken up into the SR, Ca^{2+} is stored until it is released during the next cycle. Calsequestrin and calreticulin are two storage proteins in the SR. Calsequestrin is a highly charged protein located in the cisternal component of the SR near the T tubules. Because it lies close to the Ca^{2+}-release channels, the stored Ca^{2+} can be quickly discharged for release once the Ca^{2+}-release channels are stimulated. Cytosolic Ca^{2+} can also be removed by extrusion through the sarcolemmal Ca^{2+} pump and the activity of the Na$^+$-Ca^{2+} exchanger. The protein, calmodulin, is an important *sensor* and regulator of iCa^{2+}.[21]

Errors in Ca^{2+} Handling. Because of the ubiquity of Ca^{2+} in cardiac signaling, changes in Ca^{2+} handling can be associated with numerous maladaptive outcomes. There is an increase in Ca^{2+} leak from the SR in the failing heart, which may be associated with removal of Ca^{2+} from the cytosole.

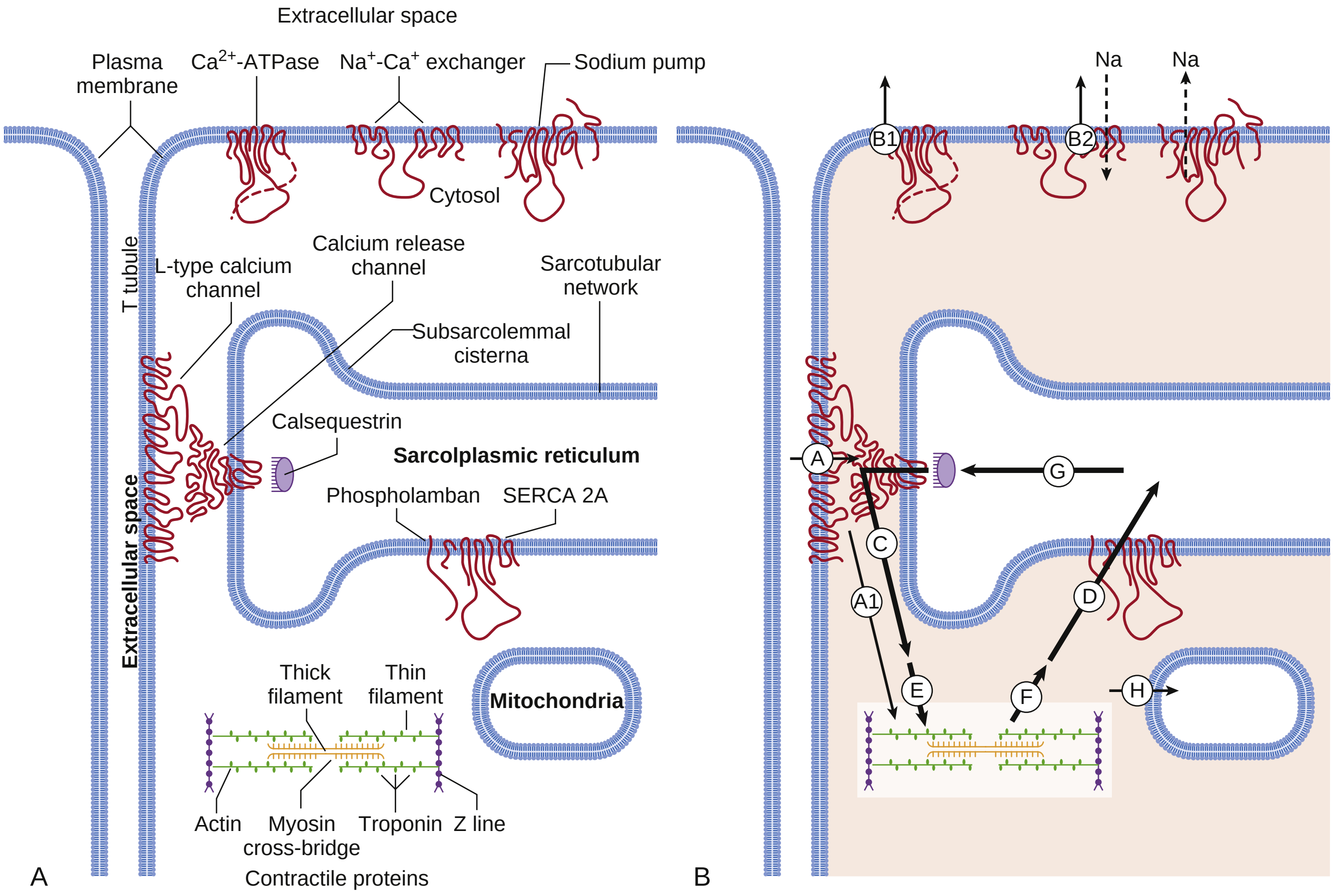


Fig. 14.12 (A) Diagram depicts the components of cardiac excitation-contraction coupling. Calcium pools are noted in **bold** letters. (B) Extracellular *(arrows A, B1, B2)* and intracellular calcium flux *(arrows C, D, E, F, G)* are shown. The thickness of the *arrows* indicates the magnitude of the calcium flux, and the vertical orientations describe their energetics: downward-pointing arrows represent passive calcium flux, whereas upward-pointing arrows represent energy-dependent calcium transport. Calcium entering the cell from extracellular fluid through L-type calcium channels triggers the release of calcium from the sarcoplasmic reticulum. Only a small portion directly activates the contractile proteins (*arrow A1*). Arrow B1 depicts active transport of calcium into extracellular fluid by means of the plasma membrane calcium adenosine triphosphatase (Ca^{2+}-ATPase) pump and the sodium-calcium (Na^{+}-Ca^{2+}) exchanger. Sodium that enters the cell in exchange for calcium *(dashed line)* is pumped out of the cytosol by the sodium pump. SR regulates calcium efflux from the subsarcolemmal cisternae *(arrow C)* and calcium uptake into the sarcotubular network *(arrow D)*. *Arrow G* represents calcium that diffuses within the SR. Calcium binding to *(arrow E)* and dissociation from *(arrow F)* high-affinity calcium-binding sites of troponin C activate and inhibit interactions of the contractile proteins. Arrow H depicts movement of calcium into and out of mitochondria to buffer the cytosolic calcium concentration. *SERCA 2A*, Sarcoplasmic/endoplasmic reticulum Ca^{2+}-ATPase. (From Katz AM. Calcium fluxes. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:232–233.)

This Ca^{2+} leak from the SR may significantly reduce contractile force in the heart and contributes to reduced inotropy in heart failure.[34,35] Uncoupling of β-AR activation of protein kinase A (PKA) and dysregulation of Ca^{2+} handling occurs in heart failure.[34] PKA, a cAMP-dependent protein kinase, is a key effector protein activated by β-AR agonists, which stimulates transsarcolemmal Ca^{2+} influx and its sequestration in the SR, leading to increased contractile function and lusitropy. Calcineurin, a Ca^{2+}-dependent signaling molecule, is consistently linked with myocardial hypertrophy via gene expression through a nuclear factor of activated T-cells pathway.[34,35] Calcium-calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II, in addition to calcineurin, is tightly coupled with Ca^{2+} homeostasis, and its prolonged activation can be proarrhythmic.

Contractile System

Contractile Elements. The basic working unit of contraction is the sarcomere. A *sarcomere* is defined as the distance between Z lines (Z is an abbreviation for the German word, *Zuckung*, meaning *contraction*), which join the sarcomeres in series. Each sarcomere consists of a central A band that is separated by one half of an I band from the Z lines on each side because the Z line bisects the I band. A schematic representation is depicted in Fig. 14.13.[10] Within each sarcomere are two principal contractile proteins (see the next section, Contractile Proteins) and one noncontractile protein, titin.[29] The two contractile proteins are actin, the thin filament, and myosin, the thick filament. Actin filaments and titin are both tethered to the Z line, but the thick myosin filaments do not actually reach the Z lines. Titin, the third filament protein, tethers the thick-filament myosin to the Z line. The Z lines at the two ends of the sarcomere are brought closer together during contraction as the thick-filament myosin heads interact with the thin actin filaments and slide over each other.[36,37]

Familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy is an inherited autosomal dominant sarcomeric disease[38] that is the most common cause of sudden death in otherwise healthy individuals. Its clinical features are left ventricular hypertrophy

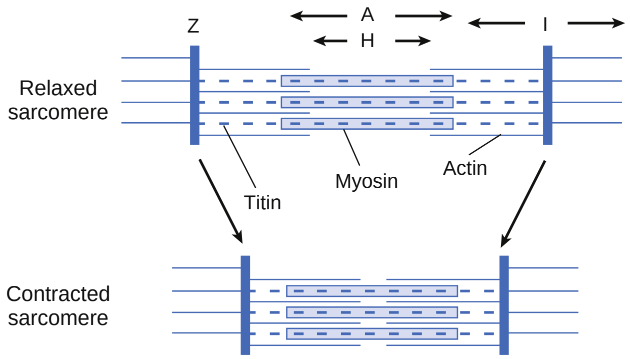


Fig. 14.13 The basic unit of contraction is the sarcomere. A contracted and relaxed sarcomere is depicted. Z lines are located at the ends of the sarcomere. The A band is the site of overlap between myosin and actin filaments. The I band is located on either side of the A band and contains only actin filament. The H zone is located in the center of the A band, and only myosin is present.

and myocyte and myofibrillar disarray. Mutations in at least eight different genes encoding sarcomere proteins have been identified as the molecular basis for the disorder. These genes are β-cardiac myosin heavy chain, cardiac troponin T (TnT), α-tropomyosin, cardiac myosin-binding protein C, essential or regulatory myosin light chain, cardiac troponin I (TnI), α-cardiac actin, and titin.[38]

Contractile Proteins. The contractile apparatus within the cardiomyocyte consists of contractile and regulatory proteins.[21,39,40] The thin-filament actin and the thick-filament myosin are the two principal contractile proteins. Actin contains two helical chains. Tropomyosin, a double-stranded α-helical regulatory protein, winds around the actin array and forms the backbone for the thin-filament actin. The thick-filament myosin is made up of 300 myosin molecules. Each myosin molecule has two functional domains: the body or filament and the bilobar myosin head. The myosin head is made up of one heavy chain and two light chains. The heavy head chain has two domains: the larger one interacts with actin at the actin cleft and has an ATP-binding pocket where myosin ATPase is located, and the other smaller one is flexible and attached to the two light chains. The regulatory troponin heterotrimer complex is found at regular intervals along tropomyosin. The heterotrimer troponins are made up of troponin C (TnC), the Ca^{2+} receptor; TnI, an inhibitor of actin-myosin interaction; and TnT, which links the troponin complex to tropomyosin. Tropomodulin is another regulatory protein. It is located at the end of the thin-filament actin and caps the end to prevent any excessive elongation of the thin filament.[36,37]

Myocyte Contraction and Relaxation. At rest, cross-bridge cycling and generation of force do not occur because either the myosin heads are blocked from physically reacting with the thin filament or they are only weakly bound to actin (Fig. 14.14).[18] Cross-bridge cycling is initiated on binding of Ca^{2+} to TnC, which increases TnC-TnI interaction and decreases the inhibitory TnI-actin interaction. These events, which ensue from the binding of Ca^{2+} to TnC, lead to conformational changes in tropomyosin and permit attachment of the myosin head to actin. Cross-bridging involves the detachment of the myosin head from actin and a reattachment of myosin to another actin on hydrolysis of ATP by myosin ATPase. Binding of ATP to the nucleotide pocket of the myosin head leads to the activation of myosin ATPase,[33,36,37] ATP hydrolysis, and changes in the configuration of the myosin head, all of which facilitate binding of the myosin head to actin and the generation of the power stroke of the myosin head. Based on this model, the rate of cross-bridge cycling is dependent on the activity of myosin ATPase.[40] Turnoff of cross-bridge cycling is largely initiated by the decrease in cytosolic Ca^{2+}.

Myocyte relaxation is an energy-dependent process because restoration of cytosolic Ca^{2+} to resting levels requires the expenditure of ATP. The decrease in cytosolic Ca^{2+} occurs through active reuptake of Ca^{2+} into the SR by SERCA and extrusion of Ca^{2+} by the Na^+-Ca^{2+} exchanger. This activity results in the release of Ca^{2+} binding to TnC and the separation of the myosin-actin cross-bridge. Myocyte relaxation is dependent on the kinetics of cross-bridge cycling, the affinity of Ca^{2+} for TnC, and the activity of the Ca^{2+}-reuptake mechanisms. Relaxation is enhanced by the increased kinetics of cross-bridge cycling, decreased Ca^{2+} affinity for TnC, and increased activity of Ca^{2+}-reuptake mechanisms.[29]

Titin is a giant string-like protein that acts as the third filament within the sarcomere. A single titin molecule spans one half of the sarcomere. Structurally, titin consists of an inextensible anchoring segment and an extensible elastic segment. Its two main functions involve muscle assembly and elasticity. Titin is the principal determinant of the passive properties of the myocardium at small ventricular volumes.[41]

The Frank-Starling relationship states that an increase in end-diastolic volume results in enhanced systolic function.[42,43] At the cellular level, the key component for the Frank-Starling relationship is a length-dependent shift in Ca^{2+} sensitivity.[44-46] Several possible mechanisms for this change in Ca^{2+} sensitivity have been implicated, including Ca^{2+} sensitivity: as a function of myofilament lattice spacing, involving positive cooperativity in cross-bridge binding to actin, and dependence on a strain of the elastic protein titin.[40,44]

Cytoskeleton Proteins. The cytoskeleton is the protein framework within the cytoplasm that links, anchors, or tethers structural components inside the cell.[18,21] Microfilaments (actin filaments), microtubules, and intermediate filaments are three classes of cytoskeleton proteins found in the cytoplasm. Microfilament proteins are actin filaments, either sarcomeric or cortical, depending on their location. Sarcomeric actin filaments are the thin filaments in the contractile machinery that have been previously described. Cortical actin filaments are found below the plasma membrane at the cell surface and are linked to several other microfilament proteins, including dystrophin, vinculin, and ankyrin. Microtubules assemble by polymerization of the α- and β-dimers of tubulin. They play a major role in intracellular transport and cell division.[47] Attachment of the ends of microtubules to cellular structures causes the microtubules to expand and contract, thereby pulling and pushing these structures around the cell. The intermediate filaments are relatively insoluble. They have been demonstrated to be important in normal mitochondrial function and behavior. The desmin intermediate filament in cardiomyocytes connects the nucleus to the plasma membrane and is important in the transmission of the stress and strain of contractile force between cells.[48]

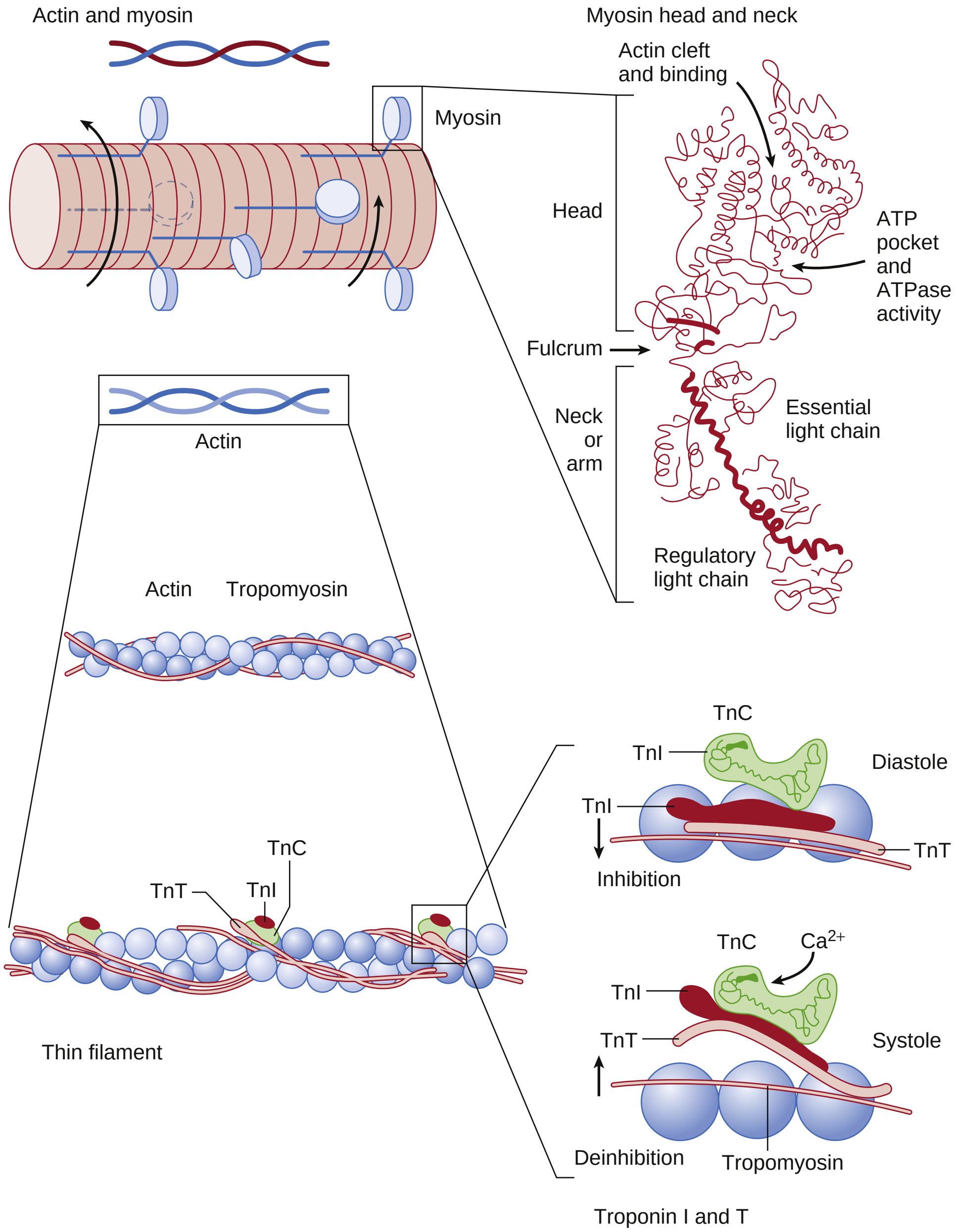

Actin and myosin
Myosin
Myosin head and neck
Actin cleft
and binding
Head
ATP
pocket
and
ATPase
activity
Fulcrum
Neck
or
arm
Essential
light chain
Regulatory
light chain
Actin
Actin
Tropomyosin
TnC
TnT
TnI
Thin filament
TnC
TnI
Diastole
TnI
Inhibition
TnT
TnC
Ca2+
TnI
TnT
Systole
Deinhibition
Tropomyosin
Troponin I and T

Fig. 14.14 Molecules of the contractile system, troponins C, I, and T (TnC, TnI, and TnT). *ATP*, Adenosine triphosphate; *ATPase*, adenosine triphosphatase. (From Opie LH. Ventricular function. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation.* 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:209–231.)

The cytoskeleton provides the organization of microenvironments within the cell for enzyme and protein activity and interaction.

Whereas familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy is a genetic sarcomeric disease, familial dilated cardiomyopathy (FDCM) is a disease of cytoskeleton proteins. The genetic basis of FDCM includes two genes for X-linked FDCM (dystrophin, G4.5) and four genes for the autosomal dominant form (actin, desmin, lamin A/C, and δ-sarcoglycan).[18]

Control of Cardiac Function

NEURAL REGULATION OF CARDIAC FUNCTION

The two limbs of the autonomic nervous system provide opposing input to regulate cardiac function.[49] The neurotransmitter of the sympathetic nervous system is norepinephrine, which provides positive chronotropic (heart rate), inotropic (contractility), and lusitropic (relaxation) effects. The parasympathetic nervous system has a more direct inhibitory effect in the atria and has a negative modulatory effect in the ventricles. The neurotransmitter of the parasympathetic nervous system is acetylcholine. Both norepinephrine and acetylcholine bind to seven-transmembrane-spanning G protein–coupled receptors (GPCRs) to transduce their intracellular signals and affect their functional responses (Fig. 14.15).[50] At rest, the heart has a tonic level of parasympathetic cardiac nerve firing and little, if any, sympathetic activity. Therefore, the major influence on the heart at rest is parasympathetic. During exercise or stress, however, the sympathetic neural influence becomes more prominent.

Parasympathetic innervation of the heart is through the vagal nerve. Supraventricular tissue receives significantly more intense vagal innervation than do the ventricles. The principal parasympathetic target neuroeffectors are the muscarinic receptors in the heart.[51,52] Activation of muscarinic receptors reduces pacemaker activity, slows AV conduction, directly decreases atrial contractile force, and exerts inhibitory modulation of ventricular contractile force. A total of five muscarinic receptors have been cloned.[53] M_2 receptors are the predominant subtype found in the mammalian heart. In the coronary circulation, M_3 receptors have been identified. Moreover, non-M_2 receptors have also been reported to exist in the heart. In general, for intracellular signaling, M_1, M_3, and M_5 receptors couple to $G_{q/11}$ protein and activate the phospholipase C-diacylglycerol-inositol phosphate system. On the other hand, the M_2 and M_4 receptors couple to the pertussis toxin-sensitive G protein, $G_{i/o}$, to inhibit adenylyl cyclase. M_2 receptors can couple to certain K^+ channels and influence the activity of Ca^{2+} channels, I_f current, phospholipase A_2, phospholipase D, and tyrosine kinases.

In contrast to vagal innervation, sympathetic innervation of the heart is more predominant in the ventricle than in the atrium. Norepinephrine released from sympathetic nerve terminals stimulates adrenergic receptors (adrenoreceptors [AdRs]) located in the heart. The two major classes of ARs are α and β, both of which are GPCRs that transduce their intracellular signals by means of specific signaling cascades (Fig. 14.16).

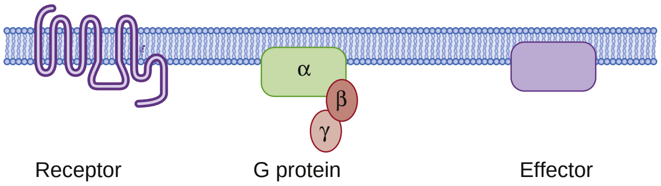


Fig. 14.15 General scheme for a G protein–coupled receptor consisting of receptor, the heterotrimeric G protein, and the effector unit. (Reprinted with permission from Bers DM. Cardiac excitation-contraction coupling. *Nature* 2002;415:198–205. Copyright MacMillan Magazines Ltd.)

β-ARs can be further divided into subpopulations of β_1, β_2, and β_3.[54] Although most mammalian hearts contain β1-ARs and β_2-ARs, β_3-ARs also exist in many mammalian ventricular tissues. The relative contribution of each β-AR subtype to modulation of cardiac function varies among species. In humans, β_1-ARs are the predominant subtype in both the atria and ventricles, but a substantial proportion of β_2-ARs are found in the atria, and approximately 20% of β_2-ARs are found in the LV. Much less is known about β_3-ARs, but they do exist in the human ventricle. Even though the β_1-AR population is more intense than the β_2-AR population, the cardiostimulant effect is not proportional to the relative densities of these two subpopulations, which is largely attributable to the tighter coupling of β_2-ARs than β_1-ARs to the cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) signaling pathway. Both β_1-ARs and β_2-ARs activate a pathway that involves the stimulatory G protein (Gs), activation of adenylyl cyclase, accumulation of cAMP, stimulation of cAMP-dependent PKA, and phosphorylation of key target proteins, including L-type Ca^{2+} channels, phospholamban, and TnI.

Both β_1-ARs and β_2-ARs are coupled to the G_s-cAMP pathway. Additionally, β_2-ARs can couple to G protein–independent pathways to modulate cardiac function, and also couple to the inhibitory G protein (Gi) to activate non–cAMP-dependent signaling pathways. β-AR stimulation increases both contraction and relaxation, as summarized in Fig. 14.17.

The two major subpopulations of α-ARs are α_1 and α_2. α_1-ARs and α_2-ARs can be further subdivided into different subtypes. α_1-ARs are GPCRs and include the α_{1A}, α_{1B}, and α_{1D} subtypes. The α_1-AR subtypes are products of separate genes and differ in structure, G protein coupling, tissue distribution, signaling, regulation, and function. Both

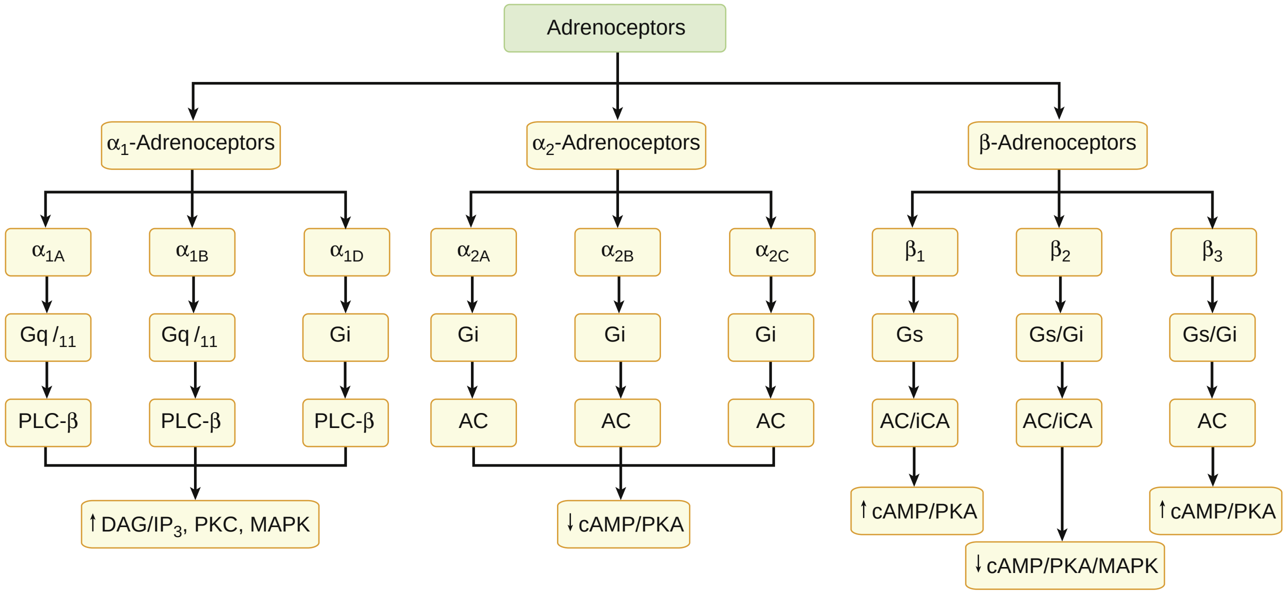


Fig. 14.16 Adrenoceptor signaling cascades involving G proteins and effectors are adenylyl cyclase *(AC)*, L-type calcium current *(iCA)*, and phospholipase β *(PLC-β)* in the heart. The intracellular signals are diacylglycerol *(DAG)*, inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate *(IP_3)*, protein kinase C *(PKC)*, cyclic adenosine monophosphate *(cAMP)*, protein kinase A *(PKA)*, and mitogen-activated protein kinase *(MAPK)*. *$Gq/_{11}$*, Heterotrimeric G protein; *Gi*, inhibitory G protein; *Gs*, stimulatory G protein.

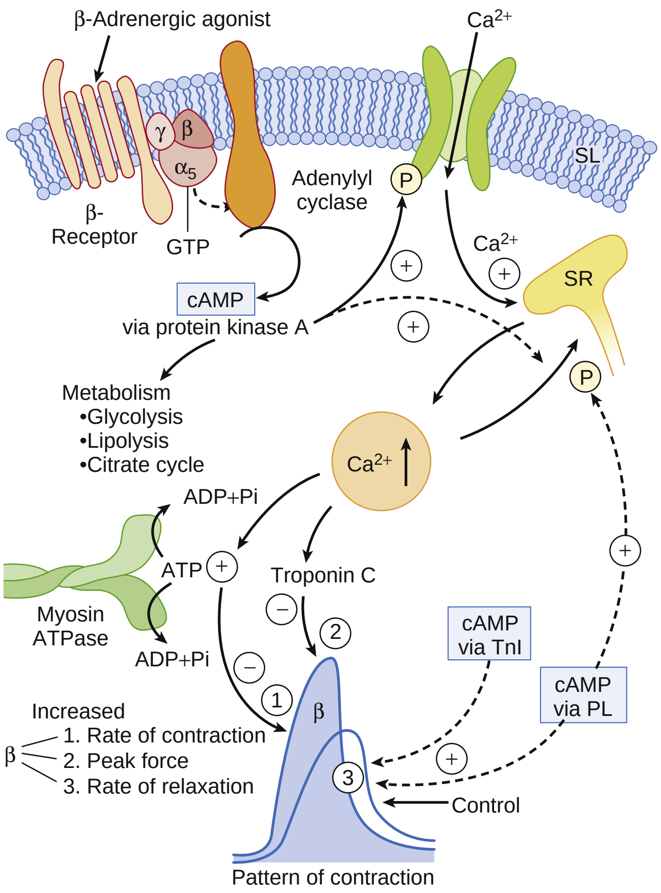


Fig. 14.17 The β-adrenoceptor signaling system leads to an increased rate and force of contraction and increased relaxation. *ADP*, Adenosine diphosphate; *ATP*, adenosine triphosphate; *ATPase*, adenosine triphosphatase; *cAMP*, cyclic adenosine monophosphate; *GTP*, guanosine triphosphate; *Pi*, phosphatidylinositol; *PL*, phospholipase; *SL*, sarcolemma; *SR*, sarcoplasmic reticulum; *TnI*, troponin I. (From Opie LH. Receptors and signal transduction. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation.* 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1998:195.)

α_{1A}-ARs and α_{1B}-ARs mediate positive inotropic responses. However, the positive inotropic effect mediated by α_1-ARs is believed to be of minor importance in the heart. α_1-ARs are coupled to phospholipase C, phospholipase D, and phospholipase A_2; they increase iCa^{2+} and myofibrillar sensitivity to Ca^{2+}.

Cardiac hypertrophy is primarily mediated by α_{1A}-ARs.[55,56] Cardiac hypertrophic responses to α_1-AR agonists involve activation of protein kinase C and mitogen-activated protein kinase through G_q-signaling mechanisms. Three subtypes of α_2-ARs are recognized: α_{2A}, α_{2B}, and α_{2C}. In the mammalian heart, α_2-ARs in the atrium play a role in the presynaptic inhibition of norepinephrine release. These prejunctional α_2-ARs are believed to belong to the α_{2C} subtype.

Neural regulation of cardiac function involves a complex interaction between the different classes and subpopulations of adrenoceptors and their signaling pathways. Targeted therapeutics in cardiovascular medicine involve the clinical application and manipulation of a basic understanding of adrenoceptor pharmacology.

HORMONES AFFECTING CARDIAC FUNCTION

Many hormones have direct and indirect actions on the heart (Table 14.1). Hormones with cardiac actions can be synthesized and secreted by cardiomyocytes or produced by other tissues and delivered to the heart. They act on specific receptors expressed in cardiomyocytes. Most of these hormone receptors are plasma membrane GPCRs. Non-GPCRs include the natriuretic peptide receptors, which are guanylyl cyclase-coupled receptors, and the glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid receptors, which bind androgens and aldosterone and are nuclear zinc finger transcription factors. Hormones can have activity in normal cardiac physiologic function or are active only in pathophysiologic conditions, or both situations can apply. Most of the new information regarding the action of hormones in the heart has been derived from the endocrine changes associated with chronic heart failure.[57]

Cardiac hormones are polypeptides secreted by cardiac tissues into the circulation in the normal heart. Natriuretic peptides,[58,59] aldosterone,[60] and adrenomedullin[61] are hormones secreted by cardiomyocytes. Angiotensin II, the effector hormone in the renin-angiotensin system, is also produced by cardiomyocytes.[62,63] The renin-angiotensin system is one of the most important regulators of cardiovascular physiology. It is a key modulator of cardiac growth and function. Angiotensin II stimulates two separate receptor subtypes, AT_1 and AT_2, both of which are present in the heart. AT_1 receptors are the predominant subtype expressed in the normal adult human heart. Stimulation of AT_1 receptors induces a positive chronotropic and inotropic effect. Angiotensin II also mediates cell growth and proliferation in cardiomyocytes and fibroblasts, and induces the release of the growth factors aldosterone and catecholamines through the stimulation of AT_1 receptors. Activation of AT_1 receptors is directly involved in the development of cardiac hypertrophy and heart failure, as well as adverse remodeling of the myocardium. In contrast, AT_2 receptor activation is counterregulatory and generally antiproliferative. Expression of AT_2 receptors, however, is relatively scant in the adult heart because AT_2 receptors are most abundant in the fetal heart and decline with development. In response to injury and ischemia, AT_2 receptors become upregulated. The precise role of AT_2 receptors in the heart remains to be defined.

The beneficial effects of blockade of the renin-angiotensin system with angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors in the treatment of heart failure have been attributed to an inhibition of AT_1-receptor activity. In addition to the renin-angiotensin system, other cardiac hormones that have been shown to play pathogenic roles in the promotion of cardiomyocyte growth and cardiac fibrosis, development of cardiac hypertrophy, and progression of congestive heart failure include aldosterone,[60] adrenomedullin,[64-66] natriuretic peptides,[58,59] angiotensin,[67-69] endothelin,[70] and vasopressin.[71,72]

Increased stretch of the myocardium stimulates the release of atrial natriuretic protein (ANP) and B-type natriuretic protein (BNP) from the atria and ventricles, respectively. Both ANP and BNP bind to natriuretic peptide receptors to generate the second messenger cyclic guanosine monophosphate and represent part of the cardiac

TABLE 14.1 Actions of Hormones on Cardiac Function

Hormone	Receptor	Cardiac Action	Increase (+) or Decrease (–) With CHF
Adrenomedullin	GPCR	+ Inotropy/+ chronotropy	+
Aldosterone	Cytosolic or nuclear MR		+
Angiotensin	GPCR	+ Inotropy/+ chronotropy	+
Endothelin	GPCR		+
Natriuretic peptides	GCCR		
ANP (ANF)			+
BNP			+
Neuropeptide Y[*]	GPCR	– Inotropy	+
Vasopressin	GPCR	+ Inotropy/+ chronotropy	+
Vasoactive intestinal peptide[†]	GPCR	+ Inotropy	No
Estrogen	ERα/ERβ	Indirect	No
Testosterone	AR	Indirect	No
Progesterone	PR	Indirect	No
Thyroid hormones	NR	+ Inotropy/+ chronotropy	–
Growth hormones	IGF-1	+ Inotropy/+ chronotropy	–

ANF, Atrial natriuretic factor; *ANP,* atrial natriuretic peptide; *AR,* androgen receptor; *BNP,* B-type natriuretic peptide; *CHF,* congestive heart failure; *ER,* estrogen receptor; *GCCR,* guanylyl cyclase-coupled receptor; *GPCR,* G protein-coupled receptor; *IGF-1,* insulin growth factor 1; *MR,* mineralocorticoid receptor; *NR,* nuclear receptor; *PR,* progesterone receptor.

[*] Data from Grundemar L, Hakanson R. Multiple neuropeptide Y receptors are involved in cardiovascular regulation. Peripheral and central mechanisms. *Gen Pharmacol.* 1993;24:785–796; and Maisel AS, Scott NA, Motulsky HJ, et al. Elevation of plasma neuropeptide Y levels in congestive heart failure. *Am J Med.* 1989;86:43–48.

[†] Data from Henning RJ, Sawmiller DR. Vasoactive intestinal peptide: cardiovascular effects. *Cardiovasc Res.* 2001;49:27–37.

endocrine response to hemodynamic changes caused by pressure or volume overload. They also participate in organogenesis of the embryonic heart and cardiovascular system.[58,59] In patients with chronic heart failure, increases of serum ANP and BNP levels are a predictor of mortality.[73]

Adrenomedullin is a recently discovered cardiac hormone that was originally isolated from pheochromocytoma tissue. It increases the accumulation of cAMP and has direct positive chronotropic and inotropic effects.[61,64,65] Adrenomedullin, with interspecies and regional variations, has also been shown to increase nitric oxide production, and it functions as a potent vasodilator.

Aldosterone is one of the cardiac-generated steroids, although its physiologic significance remains to be defined. It binds to mineralocorticoid receptors and can increase the expression or activity (or both) of cardiac proteins involved in ionic homeostasis or the regulation of pH, such as cardiac Na^+/K^+-ATPase, the Na^+-K^+ cotransporter, Cl^--bicarbonate (HCO_3^{2+}), and the Na^+-hydrogen (H^+) antiporter.[60] Aldosterone modifies cardiac structure by inducing cardiac fibrosis in both ventricular chambers and thereby leads to impairment of cardiac contractile function.

Other hormones such as the growth hormone,[74] thyroid hormones,[75] and sex steroid hormones (see the following text) can also have cardiac effects through direct actions of nuclear receptors or indirect effects.

Sex Steroid Hormones and the Heart

Cardiac contractility is more intense in premenopausal women than in age-matched men, and withdrawal of hormone replacement therapy in postmenopausal women leads to a reduction in cardiac contractile function. The gender dimorphism in heart function and its adaptive responses to injury and disease states are partly mediated by sex steroid hormones. Indeed, healthy premenopausal women exhibit a lower cardiovascular risk compared to men, which suggests a mechanism for sex hormones in the modulation of cardiac function.[76]

The most extensively studied sex steroid hormones are estradiol-17β (E2) and its bioactive metabolites. They bind and act on the two subtypes of estrogen receptors (ERs) in the heart: ERα and ERβ. Progesterone and testosterone (two other sex steroid hormones) and the enzyme aromatase, which converts testosterone to estrogen, are much less well investigated. Progesterone and testosterone bind and act on their respective progesterone receptors and androgen receptors in the heart. Sex steroid hormones interact with their receptors to affect postsynaptic target cell responses and to influence presynaptic sympathoadrenergic function. Cardiomyocytes are not only targets for the action of sex steroid hormones, but they are also the source of synthesis and the site of metabolism of these hormones.[77]

E2 is derived from testosterone and is primarily metabolized in the liver to form hydroxyestradiols, catecholestradiols, and methoxyestradiols. Estradiol metabolism also takes place in vascular smooth muscle cells, cardiac fibroblasts, endothelial cells, and cardiomyocytes. Cardiomyocytes express nuclear steroid hormone receptors that modulate gene expression and nonnuclear receptors for the nongenomic effects of sex steroid hormones. They interact with

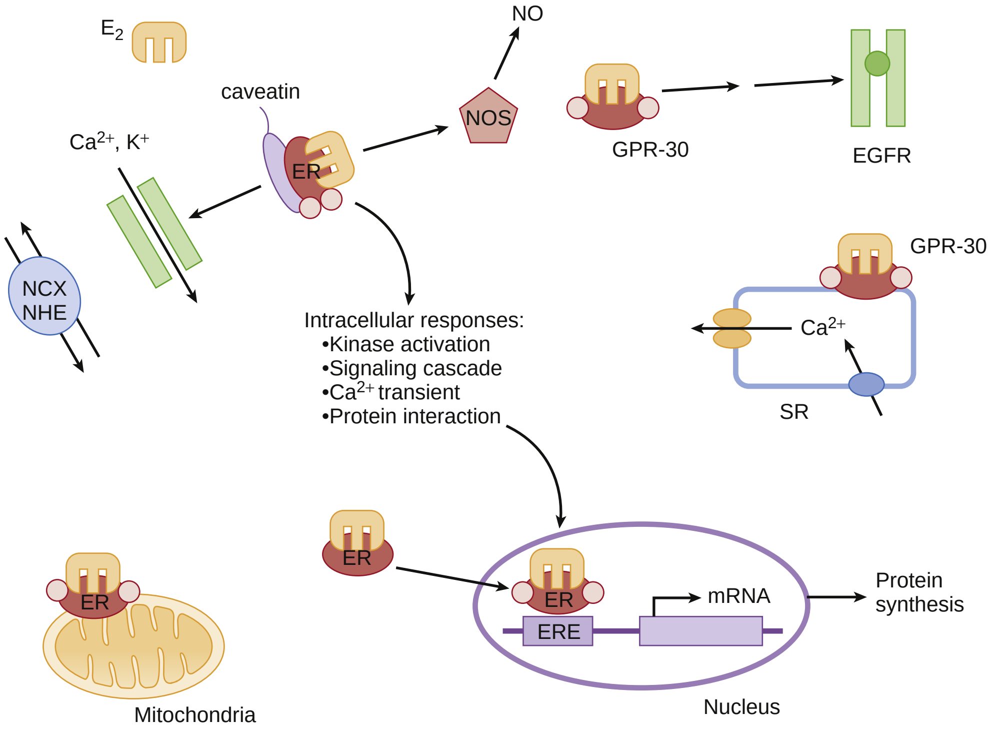


Fig. 14.18 Signaling mechanism of nuclear and nonnuclear localized estrogen receptor *(ER)* and the estrogen-binding receptor, GPR-30. Nuclear ER influences the transcription of target genes by binding to an ER-response element *(ERE)* within the promotor region of target genes. *E_2*, Estrogen; *EGFR,* epidermal growth factor receptor; *GFR,* growth factor receptor; *NCX,* Na^+-Ca^{2+} exchanger; *NHE,* Na^+-H^+ exchanger; *NO,* nitric oxide; *NOS,* nitric oxide synthase, *SR,* sarcoplasmic reticulum. (From Du XJ, Fang L, Kiriazis H. Sex dimorphism in cardiac pathophysiology: experimental findings, hormonal mechanisms, and molecular mechanisms. *Pharmacol Ther.* 2006;111:434–475.)

many different coregulators to confer tissue and temporal specificity in their transcriptional actions. These cell-specific coactivator and corepressor proteins are known as estrogen-related receptors.[78] Sex steroid hormones can activate rapid signaling pathways without changing gene expression (Fig. 14.18). One such example is stimulation of vascular endothelial nitric oxide synthase to mediate vascular dilation. Estrogen's vasodilatory effect might explain the lower systolic blood pressures of premenopausal women when compared with age-matched men. In men, aromatase-mediated conversion of testosterone to estrogen maintains normal vascular tone. In addition to sex steroid hormone stimulation of nuclear or nonnuclear receptors, sex steroid hormone receptors could also induce rapid signaling of growth factor pathways in the absence of ligands.

Gender differences exist in cardiac electrophysiologic function. The modulatory actions of estrogen on Ca^{2+} channels might be responsible for sex-based differences in repolarization of the heart, such as the faster resting heart rate of women, as well as the increased propensity of women to have prolonged QT syndrome.[79] Estrogen, through the activation of ERβ, confers protection after ischemia and reperfusion in murine models of myocardial infarction. In contrast, testosterone, in the same model, has the opposite effect. Aromatase also has protective effects, probably through its action to increase estrogen and to decrease testosterone.

Gender differences in cardiac physiology should include consideration of the cellular physiology of sex steroid hormones in males and females; intrinsic differences in the physiology of cardiomyocytes, vascular smooth muscle cells, and endothelial cells between males and females; and gender-based differences in the autonomic modulation of cardiac physiology.

CARDIAC REFLEXES

Cardiac reflexes are fast-acting reflex loops between the heart and the central nervous system (CNS) that contribute to regulation of cardiac function and the maintenance of physiologic homeostasis. Specific cardiac receptors elicit their physiologic responses by various pathways. Cardiac receptors are linked to the CNS by myelinated or unmyelinated afferent fibers that travel along the vagus nerve. Cardiac receptors are in the atria, ventricles, pericardium, and coronary arteries. Extracardiac receptors are located in the great vessels and carotid artery. Sympathetic and parasympathetic nerve input is processed in the CNS. After central processing, efferent fibers to the heart or the systemic circulation will provoke a specific reaction. The response of the cardiovascular system to efferent stimulation varies with age and duration of the underlying condition that elicited the reflex in the first instance.

Baroreceptor Reflex (Carotid Sinus Reflex)

The baroreceptor reflex is responsible for the maintenance of arterial blood pressure. This reflex regulates arterial pressure around a preset value through a negative-feedback loop (Fig. 14.19).[80,81] In addition, the baroreceptor reflex is capable of establishing a prevailing set point for arterial blood pressure when the preset value has been reset because of chronic hypertension. Changes in arterial blood pressure are monitored by circumferential and longitudinal stretch

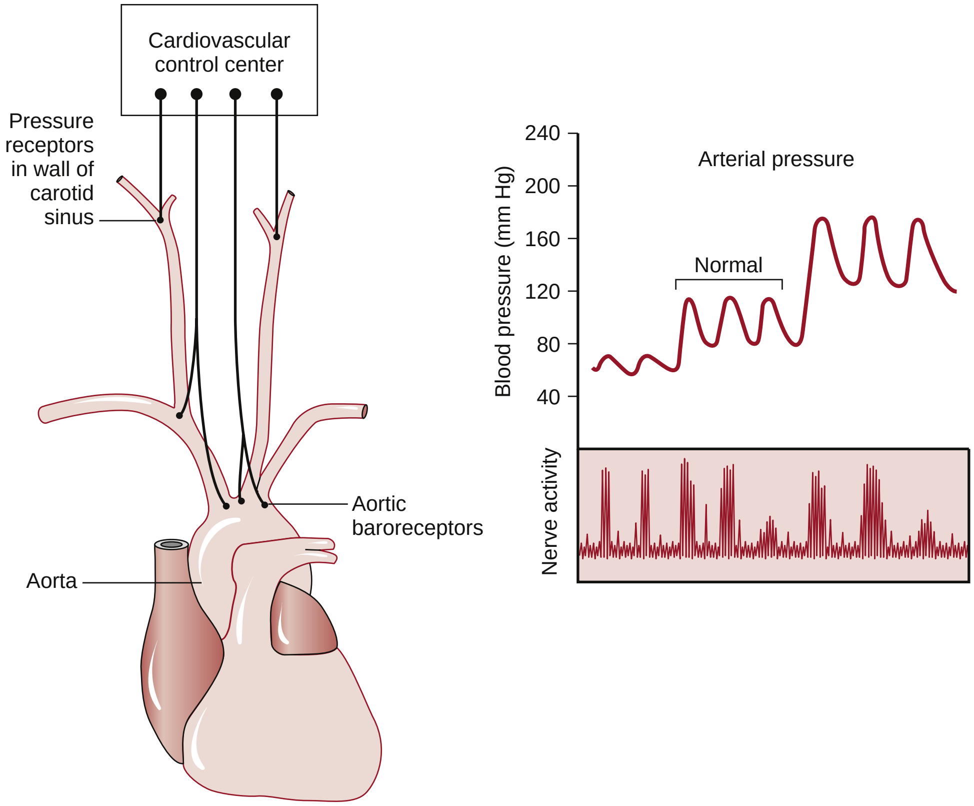


Fig. 14.19 Anatomic configuration of the baroreceptor reflex. Pressure receptors in the wall of the carotid sinuses and aorta detect changes in arterial pressure in the circulation. These signals are conveyed to afferent receptive regions of the medulla through the Hering and vagus nerves. Output from effector portions of the medulla modulates peripheral tone and heart rate. The increase in blood pressure results in increased activation of the reflex *(right)*, which affects a decrease in blood pressure. (From Campagna JA, Carter C. Clinical relevance of the Bezold-Jarisch reflex. *Anesthesiology.* 2003;98:1250–1260.)

receptors located in the carotid sinus and aortic arch. The nucleus solitarius, located in the cardiovascular center of the medulla, receives impulses from these stretch receptors through afferents of the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves. The cardiovascular center in the medulla consists of two functionally different areas; the area responsible for increasing blood pressure is laterally and rostrally located, whereas the area responsible for lowering arterial blood pressure is centrally and caudally located. The latter area also integrates impulses from the hypothalamus and the limbic system. Typically, stretch receptors are activated if systemic blood pressure is greater than 170 mm Hg. The response of the depressor system includes decreased sympathetic activity, leading to a decrease in cardiac contractility, heart rate, and vascular tone. In addition, activation of the parasympathetic system further decreases the heart rate and myocardial contractility. Reverse effects are elicited with the onset of hypotension.

The baroreceptor reflex plays an important beneficial role during acute blood loss and shock. However, the reflex arch loses its functional capacity when arterial blood pressure is less than 50 mm Hg. Hormonal status and therefore sex differences may alter baroreceptor responses.[82] Furthermore, volatile anesthetics (particularly halothane) inhibit the heart rate component of this reflex.[83] Concomitant use of Ca^{2+}-channel blockers, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, or phosphodiesterase inhibitors will lessen the cardiovascular response of raising blood pressure through the baroreceptor reflex. This lessened response is achieved by either their direct effects on the peripheral vasculature or, more importantly, their interference with CNS signaling pathways (Ca^{2+}, angiotensin).[84] Patients with chronic hypertension often exhibit perioperative circulatory instability as a result of a decrease in their baroreceptor reflex response.

Chemoreceptor Reflex

Chemosensitive cells are located in the carotid bodies and the aortic body. These cells respond to changes in pH status and blood O_2 tension. At an arterial partial O_2 pressure (PaO_2) of less than 50 mm Hg or in conditions of acidosis, the chemoreceptors send their impulses along the sinus nerve of Hering (a branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve) and the tenth cranial nerve to the chemosensitive area of the medulla. This area responds by stimulating the respiratory centers and thereby increasing ventilatory drive. In addition, activation of the parasympathetic system ensues and leads to a reduction in heart rate and myocardial contractility. In the case of persistent hypoxia, the CNS will be directly stimulated, with a resultant increase in sympathetic activity.

Bainbridge Reflex

The Bainbridge reflex[85-87] is elicited by stretch receptors located in the right atrial wall and the cavoatrial junction. An increase in right-sided filling pressure sends vagal afferent signals to the cardiovascular center in the medulla. These afferent signals inhibit parasympathetic activity, thereby increasing the heart rate. Acceleration of the heart rate also results from a direct effect on the SA node by stretching the atrium. The changes in heart rate are dependent on the underlying heart rate before stimulation.

Bezold-Jarisch Reflex

The Bezold-Jarisch reflex responds to noxious ventricular stimuli sensed by chemoreceptors and mechanoreceptors within the left ventricular wall by inducing the triad of hypotension, bradycardia, and coronary artery dilatation.[80] The activated receptors communicate along unmyelinated vagal afferent type C fibers. These fibers reflexively increase parasympathetic tone. Because it invokes bradycardia, the Bezold-Jarisch reflex is thought of as a cardioprotective reflex. This reflex has been implicated in the physiologic response to a range of cardiovascular conditions such as myocardial ischemia or infarction, thrombolysis, or revascularization and syncope. Natriuretic peptide receptors stimulated by endogenous ANP or BNP may modulate the Bezold-Jarisch reflex. Thus, the Bezold-Jarisch reflex may be less pronounced in patients with cardiac hypertrophy or atrial fibrillation.[88]

Valsalva Maneuver

Forced expiration against a closed glottis produces increased intrathoracic pressure, increased central venous pressure, and decreased venous return. Cardiac output and blood pressure will be decreased after the Valsalva maneuver. This decrease will be sensed by baroreceptors and will reflexively result in an increase in heart rate and myocardial contractility through sympathetic stimulation. When the glottis opens, venous return increases and causes the heart to respond by vigorous contraction and an increase in blood pressure. This increase in arterial blood pressure will, in turn, be sensed by baroreceptors, thereby stimulating the parasympathetic efferent pathways to the heart.

Cushing Reflex

The Cushing reflex is a result of cerebral ischemia caused by increased intracranial pressure. Cerebral ischemia at the medullary vasomotor center induces initial activation of the sympathetic nervous system. Such activation will lead to an increase in heart rate, arterial blood pressure, and myocardial contractility in an effort to improve cerebral perfusion. As a result of the high vascular tone, reflex bradycardia mediated by baroreceptors will ensue.

Oculocardiac Reflex

The oculocardiac reflex is provoked by pressure applied to the globe of the eye or traction on the surrounding structures. Stretch receptors are located in the extraocular muscles. Once activated, stretch receptors will send afferent signals through the short- and long-ciliary nerves. The ciliary nerves will merge with the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve at the ciliary ganglion. The trigeminal nerve will carry these impulses to the gasserian ganglion, thereby resulting in increased parasympathetic tone and subsequent bradycardia. The incidence of this reflex during ophthalmic surgery ranges from 30% to 90%. Administration of an antimuscarinic drug such as glycopyrrolate or atropine reduces the incidence of bradycardia during eye surgery.

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and Dr. Lena Sun would like to thank Drs. Johanna Schwarzenberger and Radhika Dinavahi for their contribution to this chapter in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Harvey W. *On the Motion of the Heart and Blood in Animals* [Willis R, Trans]. *Scientific Papers: Physiology, Medicine, Surgery, Geology*, vol. 38. P. F. Collier & Son; 1910.
2. Shultz SG. *News Physiol Sci*. 2002;17:175–180.
3. Berne RM, Levy MN. The cardiac pump. In: *Cardiovascular Physiology*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2001:55–82.
4. Berne RM, Levy MN. Electrical activity of the heart. In: *Cardiovascular Physiology*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2001:7–32.
5. Katz AM. The heart as a muscular pump. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:408–417.
6. Takayma Y, Costa KD, Covell JW. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2002;282:H1510.
7. Katz AM. Structure of the heart. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:1.
8. Opie LH. Heart cells and organelles. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:42.
9. Little WC. Assessment of normal and abnormal cardiac function. In: Braunwald E, ed. *Heart Disease*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2001:479.
10. LeWinter MM, Osol G. Normal physiology of the cardiovascular system. In: Fuster V, Alexander RW, O'Rourke RA, eds. *Hurst's the heart*. 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001:63.
11. Zile MR, Brutsaert DL. *Circulation*. 2002;105:1387.
12. Opie LH. Ventricular function. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:355.
13. Frank O. *Z Biol*. 1895;32:370.
14. Starling EH. *Linacre Lecture on the Law of the Heart*. London: Longmans Green; 1918.
15. Holubarsch CT, et al. *Circulation*. 1996;94:683.
16. Katz AM. The working heart. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:418.
17. Opie LH. Mechanisms of cardiac contraction and relaxation. In: Braunwald E, ed. *Heart Disease*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2001:443.
18. Roberts R. Principles of molecular cardiology. In: Alexander RW, O'Rourke RA, eds. *Hurst's the heart*. 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001:95.
19. Opie LH. Myocardial contraction and relaxation. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:221.
20. Severs NJ. *Bioessays*. 2000;22:188.
21. Katz AM. Contractile proteins and cytoskeleton. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:123.
22. Yeager M. *J Struct Biol*. 1998;121:231.
23. Severs NJ. *Adv Myocardiol*. 1985;5:223.
24. DiFrancesco D. *Circ Res*. 2010;106:434.
25. Fill M, Copella JA. *Physiol Rev*. 2002;82:893.
26. Baruscotti M, Difrancesco D. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2004;1015:111.
27. Kumar NM, Gilula NB. *Cell*. 1996;84:381.
28. Katz AM. The cardiac action potential. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:478.
29. Katz AM. Calcium fluxes. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:478.
30. Katz AM, Lorell BH. *Circulation*. 2000;102:69–74.
31. Cheng H, Lederer WJ. *Physiol Rev*. 2008;88:1491.
32. Cheng H, et al. *Cell Calcium*. 1996;20:129.
33. Bers DM. *Nature*. 2002;415:198.
34. Luo M, Anderson ME. *Circ Res*. 2013;113:690–708.

35. Hajjar RJ, Ishikawa K, Thum T. Molecular and cellular biology of the heart. In: Fuster V, Harrington RA, Narula J, Eapen ZJ. eds. Hurst's The Heart, 14e New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
36. Opie LH. Excitation-contraction coupling. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:159.
37. de Tombe PP. *J Biomech*. 2003;36:721.
38. Bonne GL, et al. *Circ Res*. 1998;83:580.
39. Solaro RJ, Rarick HM. *Circ Res*. 1998;83:417.
40. Fuchs F, Smith SH. *News Physiol Sci*. 2001;16:5.
41. Trinick J, Tskhovrebova L. *Trends Cell Biol*. 1999;9:377.
42. Moss RL, Fitzsimons DP. *Circ Res*. 2002;90:11.
43. Alvarez BV, et al. *Circ Res*. 1999;85:716.
44. Konhilas JP, et al. *Circ Res*. 2002;90:59.
45. Konhilas JP, et al. *J Physiol*. 2002;544:225.
46. Fukuda N, et al. *Circulation*. 2001;104:1639.
47. Capetanaki Y. *Trends Cardiovasc Med*. 2002;12:339.
48. Howard J, Hyman AA. *Nature*. 2003;422:753.
49. Opie LH. Receptors and signal transduction. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:187.
50. Rockman HA, et al. *Nature*. 2002;415:206.
51. Mendelowitz D. *News Physiol Sci*. 1999;14:155.
52. Brodde OE, Michel MC. *Pharmacol Rev*. 1999;51:651.
53. Dhein S, et al. *Pharmacol Res*. 2001;44:161.
54. Kaumann AJ, Molenaar P. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol*. 1997;355:667.
55. Endoh M. *Neurochem Res*. 1996;21:217.
56. Arteaga GMT, et al. *Ann Med*. 2002;34:248.
57. van der Horst IC, et al. *Neth Heart J*. 2010;18:190.
58. Cameron VA, Ellmers LJ. *Endocrinology*. 2003;144:2191.
59. de Bold AJ, et al. *Cardiovasc Res*. 1996;31:7.
60. Delcayre C, Silvestre JS. *Cardiovasc Res*. 1999;42:7.
61. Martinez A. *Microsc Res Tech*. 2002;57:1.
62. Dinh DT, et al. *Clin Sci*. 2001;100:481.
63. Schuijt MP, Jan Danser AH. *Am J Hypertens*. 2002;15:1109.
64. Kitamura K, et al. *Microsc Res Tech*. 2002;57:3.
65. Minamino N, et al. *Microsc Res Tech*. 2002;57:28.
66. Smith DM, et al. *Biochem Soc Trans*. 2002;30:432.
67. Mello De WC. *J Mol Med*. 2001;79:103.
68. Opie LH, Sack MN. *Circ Res*. 2001;88:654.
69. Scicchitano P, et al. *Molecules*. 2012;17:4225.
70. Kramer BK, et al. *J Mol Med*. 1997;75:886.
71. Chandrashekhar Y, et al. *J Mol Cell Cardiol*. 2003;35:495.
72. Walker BR, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1988;255:H261.
73. Giannakoulas G, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2010;105:869.
74. Palmeiro CR, et al. *Cardiol Rev*. 2012;20:197.
75. Danzi S, Klein I. *Med Clin North Am*. 2012;96:257.
76. Clerico A, et al. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2011;301:H12–H20.
77. Mendelsohn ME. *Science*. 2005;308:1583.
78. Du XJ, et al. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2006;111:434.
79. Pham TV, Rosen MR. *Cardiovasc Res*. 2002;53:740.
80. Campagna JA, Carter C. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1250.
81. Parlow JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:681.
82. Huikuri HV, et al. *Circulation*. 1996;94:122.
83. Keyl C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1629.
84. Devlin MG, et al. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2002;29:372.
85. Crystal GJ, Salem MR. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:520.
86. Hakumaki MO. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 1987;130:177.
87. Ludbrook J. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 1983;45:155.
88. Thomas CJ, Woods RL. *Hypertension*. 2003;41:279.

References

1. Harvey W. *On the Motion of the Heart and Blood in Animals* [Willis R, Trans]. *Scientific Papers; Physiology, Medicine, Surgery, Geology,* vol. 38. P. F. Collier & Son; 1910.
2. Shultz Stanley G. William Harvey and the circulation of the blood: the birth of a scientific revolution and modern physiology. *News Physiol Sci*. 2002;17:175–180.
3. Berne RM, Levy MN. The cardiac pump. In: *Cardiovascular Physiology*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2001:55–82.
4. Berne RM, Levy MN. Electrical activity of the heart. In: *Cardiovascular Physiology*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2001:7–32.
5. Katz AM. The heart as a muscular pump. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:408–417.
6. Takayma Y, Costa KD, Covell JW. Contribution of laminar myofiber architecture to load-dependent changes in mechanics of LV myocardium. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2002;282:H1510–H1520.
7. Katz AM. Structure of the heart. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:1–38.
8. Opie LH. Heart cells and organelles. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:42–69.
9. Little WC. Assessment of normal and abnormal cardiac function. In: Braunwald E, ed. *Heart Disease*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2001:479–502.
10. LeWinter MM, Osol G. Normal physiology of the cardiovascular system. In: Alexander RW, O'Rourke RA, eds. *Hurst's the Heart*. 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001:63–94.
11. Zile MR, Brutsaert DL. New concepts in diastolic dysfunction and diastolic heart failure. *Circulation*. 2002;105:1387–1393.
12. Opie LH. Ventricular function. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:355–401.
13. Frank O. Zur Dynamik des Herzmuskels. *Z Biol*. 1895;32:370.
14. Starling EH. *Linacre Lecture on the Law of the Heart*. London: Longmans Green; 1918.
15. Holubarsch C, Ruf T, Goldstein D, et al. Existence of the Frank-Starling mechanism in the failing human heart. *Circulation*. 1996;94:683–689.
16. Katz AM. The working heart. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:418–443.
17. Opie LH. Mechanisms of cardiac contraction and relaxation. In: Braunwald E, ed. *Heart Disease*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2001:443–478.
18. Roberts R. Principles of molecular cardiology. In: Alexander RW, O'Rourke RA, eds. *Hurst's the Heart*. 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001:95–112.
19. Opie LH. Myocardial contraction and relaxation. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:221–245.
20. Severs NJ. The cardiac muscle cell. *Bioessays*. 2000;22:188–199.
21. Katz AM. Contractile proteins and cytoskeleton. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:123–150.
22. Yeager M. Structure of cardiac gap junction inter-cellular channels. *J Struct Biol*. 1998;121:231–245.
23. Severs NJ. Intercellular junctions and the cardiac intercalated disk. *Adv Myocardiol*. 1985;5:223–242.
24. DiFrancesco D. The role of the funny current in pacemaker activity. *Circ Res*. 2010;106(3):434–446.
25. Fill M, Copella JA. Ryanodine receptor calcium release channels. *Physiol Rev*. 2002;82:893–922.
26. Baruscotti M, Difrancesco D. Pacemaker channels. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2004;1015:111–121.
27. Kumar NM, Gilula NB. The gap junction communication channel. *Cell*. 1996;84:381–388.
28. Katz AM. The cardiac action potential. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:478–516.
29. Katz AM. Calcium fluxes. In: *Physiology of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2001:478–516.
30. Katz AM, Lorell BH. Regulation of cardiac contraction and relaxation. *Circulation*. 2000;102:69–74.
31. Cheng H, Lederer WJ. Calcium sparks. *Physiol Rev*. 2008;88:1491–1545.
32. Cheng H, Lederer MR, Xiao RP, et al. Excitation-contraction coupling in heart: new insights from Ca2+ sparks. *Cell Calcium*. 1996;20:129–140.
33. Bers DM. Cardiac excitation-contraction coupling. *Nature*. 2002;415:198–205.
34. Luo M, Anderson ME. Mechanisms of altered Ca2+ handling in heart failure. *Circulation Research*. 2013;113:690–708.
35. Hajjar RJ, Ishikawa K, Thum T. Molecular and cellular biology of the heart. In: Fuster V, Harrington RA, Narula J, Eapen ZJ. eds. *Hurst's The Heart,* 14th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.
36. Opie LH. Excitation-contraction coupling. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:159–185.
37. de Tombe PP. Cardiac myofilaments: mechanics and regulation. *J Biomech*. 2003;36:721–730.
38. Bonne G, Carrier L, Richard P, et al. Familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, from mutations to functional defect. *Circ Res*. 1998;83:580–593.
39. Solaro RJ, Rarick HM. Troponin and tropomyosin. *Circ Res*. 1998;83:417–480.
40. Fuchs F, Smith SH. Calcium, cross-bridges, and the Frank-Starling relationship. *News Physiol Sci*. 2001;16:5–10.
41. Trinick J, Tskhovrebova L. Titin: a molecular control freak. *Trends Cell Biol*. 1999;9:377–380.
42. Moss RL, Fitzsimons DP. Frank-Starling relationship. *Circ Res*. 2002;90:11–13.
43. Alvarez BV, Perez NG, Ennis IL, et al. Mechanisms underlying the increase in force and Ca2+ transient that follow stretch of cardiac muscle. *Circ Res*. 1999;85:716–722.
44. Konhilas JP, Irving TC, de Tombe PP. Myofilament calcium sensitivity in skinned rat cardiac trabeculae. *Circ Res*. 2002;90:59–65.
45. Konhilas JP, Irving TC, de Tombe PP. Length-dependent activation in three striated muscle types of the rat. *J Physiol*. 2002;544:225–236.
46. Fukuda N, Sasaki D, Ishiwata S, Kurihara S. Length dependence of tension generation in rat skinned cardiac muscle. *Circulation*. 2001;104:1639–1645.
47. Capetanaki Y. Desmin cytoskeleton: a potential regulator of muscle mitochondrial behavior and function. *Trends Cardiovasc Med*. 2002;12:339–348.
48. Howard J, Hyman AA. Dynamics and mechanics of the microtubule plus end. *Nature*. 2003;422:753–758.
49. Opie LH. Receptors and signal transduction. In: *Heart Physiology From Cell to Circulation*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 2004:187.
50. Rockman HA, Koch WJ, Lefkowitz RJ. Seven-transmembrane-spanning receptors and heart function. *Nature*. 2002;415:206–212.
51. Mendelowitz D. Advances in parasympathetic control of heart rate and cardiac function. *News Physiol Sci*. 1999;14:155–161.
52. Brodde OE, Michel MC. Adrenergic and muscarinic receptors in the human heart. *Pharmacol Rev*. 1999;51:651–689.
53. Dhein S, Van Koppen CJ, Brodde OE. Muscarinic receptors in the mammalian heart. *Pharmacol Res*. 2001;44:161–182.
54. Kaumann AJ, Molenaar P. Modulation of human cardiac function through 4 beta-adrenoceptor populations. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol*. 1997;355:667–681.
55. Endoh M. Cardiac alpha(1)-adrenoceptors that regulate contractile function: subtypes and subcellular signal transduction mechanisms. *Neurochem Res*. 1996;21:217–229.
56. Arteaga GM, Kobayashi T, Solaro RJ. Molecular actions of drugs that sensitize cardiac myofilaments to Ca2+. *Ann Med*. 2002;34:248–258.
57. van der Horst IC, et al. Neurohormonal profile of patients with heart failure and diabetes. *Neth Heart J*. 2010;18(4):190–196.
58. Cameron VA, Ellmers LJ. Minireview: natriuretic peptides during development of the fetal heart and circulation. *Endocrinology*. 2003;144:2191–2194.
59. de Bold AJ, Bruneau BG, Kuroski de Bold M. Mechanical and neuroendocrine regulation of the endocrine heart. *Cardiovasc Res*. 1996;31:7–18.
60. Delcayre C, Silvestre JS. Aldosterone and the heart: towards a physiological function? *Cardiovasc Res*. 1999;42:7–12.
61. Martinez A. Biology of adrenomedullin. Introduction. *Microsc Res Tech*. 2002;57:1–2.
62. Dinh DT, et al. Angiotensin receptors: distribution, signalling and function. *Clin Sci*. 2001;100:481–492.
63. Schuijt MP, Jan Danser AH. Cardiac angiotensin II: an intracrine hormone? *Am J Hypertens*. 2002;15:1109–1116.
64. Kitamura K, Kangawa K, Eto T. Adrenomedullin and PAMP: discovery, structures, and cardiovascular functions. *Microsc Res Tech*. 2002;57:3–13.
65. Minamino N, Kikumoto K, Isumi Y. Regulation of adrenomedullin expression and release. *Microsc Res Tech*. 2002;57:28–39.

66. Smith DM, Coppock HA, Withers DJ, et al. Adrenomedullin: receptor and signal transduction. *Biochem Soc Trans*. 2002;30:432–437.
67. De Mello WC. Cardiac arrhythmias: the possible role of the renin-angiotensin system. *J Mol Med*. 2001;79:103–108.
68. Opie LH, Sack MN. Enhanced angiotensin II activity in heart failure. *Circ Res*. 2001;88:654–658.
69. Scicchitano P, Carbonara S, Ricci G, et al. HCN channels and heart rate. *Molecules*. 2012;17:4225–4235.
70. Kramer BK, Ittner KP, Beyer ME, et al. Circulatory and myocaridal effects of endothelin. *J Mol Med*. 1997;75:886–890.
71. Chandrashekhar Y, Prahash AJ, Sen A, et al. The role of arginine vasopressin and its receptors in the normal and failing rat heart. *J Mol Cell Cardiol*. 2003;35:495–504.
72. Walker BR, Childs ME, Adamas EM. Direct cardiact effects of vasopressin: role of V1 and V2 vasopressinergic receptors. *Am J Physiol*. 1988;255:H261–H265.
73. Giannakoulas G, Dimopoulos K, Bolger AP, et al. Usefulness of natriuretic peptide levels to predict mortality in adults with congenital heart disease. *Am J Cardiol*. 2010;105:869–873.
74. Palmeiro CR, Anand R, Dardi IK, et al. Growth hormone and the cardiovascular system. *Cardiol Rev*. 2012;20:197–207.
75. Danzi S, Klein I. Thyroid hormone and the cardiovascular system. *Med Clin North Am*. 2012;96(2):257–268.
76. Clerico Aldo, Giannoni Alberto, Vittorini Simona, Passino Claudio. Thirty years of the heart as an endocrine organ: physiological role and clinical utility of cardiac natriuretic hormones. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2011;301:H12–H20.
77. Mendelsohn ME. Molecular and celular basis of cardiovascular gender differences. *Science*. 2005;308:1583–1587.
78. Du XJ, Fang L, Kiriazis H. Sex dimorphism in cardiac pathophysiology: experimental findings, hormonal mechanisms, and molecular mechanisms. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2006;111:434–475.
79. Pham TV, Rosen MR. Sex, hormones and repolarization. *Cardiovasc Res*. 2002;53:740–751.
80. Campagna JA, Carter C. Clinical relevance of the Bezold-Jarisch reflex. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1250–1260.
81. Parlow JL, Begou G, Sagnard P, et al. Cardiac baroreflex during the postoperative period in patients with hypertension. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:681–692.
82. Huikuri HV, Pikkujamsa SM, Airaksinen KE, et al. Sex-related differences in autonomic modulation of heart rate in middle-aged subjects. *Circulation*. 1996;94:122–125.
83. Keyl C, Schneider A, Hobbhahn J, Bernardi L. Sinusoidal neck suction for evaluation of baroreflex sensitivity during desflurane and sevoflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1629–1636.
84. Devlin MG, Angus JA, Wilson KM, Wright CE. Acute effects of L- and T-type calcium channel antagonists on cardiovascular reflexes in conscious rabbits. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2002;29:372–380.
85. Crystal GJ, Salem MR. The Bainbridge and the "reverse" Bainbridge reflexes: history, physiology, and clinical relevance. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:520–532.
86. Hakumaki MO. Seventy years of the Bainbridge reflex. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 1987;130:177–185.
87. Ludbrook J. Reflex control of blood pressure during exercise. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 1983;45:155–168.
88. Thomas CJ, Woods RL. Guanylyl cyclase receptors mediate cardiopulmonary vagal reflex actions of ANP. *Hypertension*. 2003;41:279–285.

15

Gastrointestinal Physiology and Pathophysiology

LAURIE O. MARK and A. SASSAN SABOURI

KEY POINTS

- The gastrointestinal (GI) tract forms a long tube from mouth to anus and its main functions are motility, digestion, absorption, excretion, and circulation. Each component of the GI tract has specific functions.
- The layers of the GI tract wall are (outermost to innermost): serosa, longitudinal muscle, circular muscle, submucosa, and mucosa. Within the mucosa is (outermost to innermost): muscularis mucosae, lamina propria, and epithelium.
- The GI tract is innervated by the autonomic nervous system. The extrinsic nervous system consists of the sympathetic, which is primarily inhibitory, and parasympathetic, which is primarily excitatory on GI tract motility. The enteric nervous system controls motility, secretion, and blood flow.
- Mixing movements and propulsive movements are the two primary movements within and along the GI tract. The mechanisms for each are altered significantly in the diseased state and there are multiple modalities for evaluating these alterations.
- The effect of general anesthesia on the GI tract is multifaceted and everything from the medications administered to the hemodynamic side effects can alter GI tract function. Opioids, in particular, have an adverse effect on the bowel and there are many efforts underway to decrease the use of opioids in GI surgery.
- Hemodynamic changes, bowel manipulation, and open abdominal surgeries can produce major effects on the anatomy and function of the GI tract including postoperative ileus, inflammatory states, mesenteric ischemia, and partial or total disruption of myogenic continuity.
- The innervation of the GI organs up to the proximal transverse colon is supplied by the celiac plexus, whereas the innervation of the descending colon and distal GI tract comes from the inferior hypogastric plexus.
- The celiac plexus can be blocked via different approaches, including: transcrural, intraoperative, endoscopic ultrasound-guided, and peritoneal lavage.
- Epidural anesthesia can suppress sympathetic mediated GI reflexes and reduce the incidence of postoperative ileus.
- Pain management strategies that use regional anesthetic techniques and avoid the use of systemic opioids help reduce the incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting.
- The Enhanced Recovery after GI Surgery (ERAS) protocol and evidence-based practices helps to preserve natural GI physiology and is associated with shorter hospitalizations.
- The ERAS protocol focuses on: optimal perioperative pain control; nutrition; avoidance of unnecessary tubes, lines, and drains; temperature; fluid management; and early ambulation.

Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to gain an understanding of the various components of gastrointestinal (GI) anatomy and their respective functions. This understanding of the GI system in the healthy state will pave the way for an understanding of how it is affected in different and common disease states. The chapter then transitions into a discussion of perioperative considerations for the anesthetist, including the effects of various anesthetic medications and surgical conditions on bowel function and physiology. The remainder of the chapter will focus on gastrointestinal innervation and how various regional anesthesia and pain management strategies are used when dealing with GI conditions and surgeries.

Gastrointestinal Anatomy and Function

The GI tract constitutes approximately 5% of the total human body mass. Its main functions are motility, digestion, absorption, excretion, and circulation. This section is composed of two parts. In the first part, the basic anatomy and innervation common to all parts of the GI tract are discussed. In the second part the specific anatomy and function of the esophagus, stomach, small bowel, and large bowel are discussed. The pancreas, liver, and biliary tract are covered in Chapter 16.

Common to all parts of the GI tract are the layers of the wall, but the functions of each layer differ from organ to organ.

From outermost to innermost these layers are the serosa, longitudinal muscle layer, circular muscle layer, submucosa, and mucosa. Within the mucosa is (outermost to innermost) the muscularis mucosae, lamina propria, and epithelium. The serosa is a smooth membrane of thin connective tissue and cells that secrete serous fluid that serves to enclose the cavity and reduce friction between muscle movements. The longitudinal muscle layer contracts in order to shorten the length of the intestinal segment whereas the circular muscle layer contracts to decrease the diameter of the intestinal lumen. These two layers work together to allow for gut motility. Between these smooth muscle layers is the myenteric (Auerbach) plexus, which regulates the gut smooth muscle. The submucosa contains the submucosal (Meissner) plexus, which transmits information from the epithelium to the enteric and central nervous systems (CNS). The mucosa is composed of a thin layer of smooth muscle called the muscularis mucosa, which functions to move the villi; the lamina propria, which contains blood vessels, nerve endings, and immune and inflammatory cells; and the epithelium, which is where the GI contents are sensed and where secretion of enzymes, absorption of nutrients, and excretion of waste products occur.

The GI tract is innervated by the autonomic nervous system. This is composed of the extrinsic nervous system, which has sympathetic and parasympathetic components, and the enteric nervous system. The extrinsic sympathetic nervous system is primarily inhibitory as stimulation can decrease or cease GI motility. The preganglionic fibers originate at the T5 to L2 segments of the spinal cord. They travel to the sympathetic chain of ganglia and synapse with postganglionic neurons. Then they travel to the gut where they terminate at the enteric nervous system. The primary neurotransmitter is norepinephrine. Vasoactive intestinal polypeptide (VIP) also transmits sympathetic signals. The extrinsic parasympathetic nervous system is primarily excitatory as it activates GI motility and function. Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers originate in the medulla and sacral region of the spinal cord. Vagus nerve fibers innervate the esophagus, stomach, pancreas, small intestine, and the first half of the large intestine. Pelvic nerve fibers innervate the second half of the large intestine, sigmoid, rectal, and anal regions. The primary neurotransmitter is acetylcholine.

The enteric nervous system is the independent nervous system of the GI tract, which controls motility, secretion, and blood flow. Two plexuses constitute the enteric nervous system: the myenteric (Auerbach) plexus and the submucosal (Meissner) plexus. The myenteric plexus controls motility, which is carried out by enteric neurons, interstitial cells of Cajal (pacemaker cells that generate intrinsic electrical activity of the GI tract), and smooth muscle cells. The submucosal plexus controls absorption, secretion, and mucosal blood flow. Both of these plexuses respond to sympathetic and parasympathetic stimulation. Sympathetic stimulation is inhibitory so it will increase the tone of the intestinal wall whereas parasympathetic stimulation is excitatory and will induce intestinal contractions and movement. Additionally, there are a variety of reflexes in the enteric nervous system. For example, when there is sympathetic stimulation the tone of the wall increases, the sphincters contract, and, reflexively, the amount of excitatory acetylcholine released is reduced. The mechanism is via α-2 activation, which inhibits the release of acetylcholine and through β activation which contracts sphincter muscles and relaxes intestinal muscles. These two actions work together to slow the transit of contents through the GI tract.

This next section serves to briefly discuss the anatomy and function of the various components of the GI tract. Only the esophagus, stomach, small intestine, and large intestine are covered. See Table 15.1 for an overview of GI tract anatomy and function.

The esophagus is a muscular tube that connects the pharynx to the stomach. It is the first passageway for food entry into the digestive system. It is approximately 18 to 25 cm in length and extends from the level of the hypopharynx at the C6 vertebrae down to the gastroesophageal (GE) junction at the T11 level.[1] The esophagus has three regions: cervical, thoracic, and abdominal. The cervical esophagus is approximately 4 to 5 cm long and is surrounded by the trachea anteriorly, the vertebral column posteriorly, and the carotid sheaths and thyroid gland laterally. The thoracic esophagus spans from the suprasternal notch to the diaphragmatic hiatus and lies posterior to the trachea. At the level of the carina, it deviates right to allow room for the aortic arch and runs posteriorly and underneath the left mainstem bronchus. From T8 to the diaphragmatic hiatus (T10) the esophagus runs anterior to the aorta. The abdominal esophagus extends from the diaphragmatic hiatus to the cardia of the stomach. The upper one-third of the esophagus is composed of striated muscle and the remaining two-thirds is smooth muscle. There are two areas of high pressure: the upper esophageal sphincter (UES) and the lower esophageal sphincter (LES). The UES lies at the level of the cricoid cartilage and is made up of the cricopharyngeal, inferior constrictor, and circular esophageal muscles. Resting tone ranges from 30–200 mm Hg. Opening and closing of the UES is coordinated with the pharyngeal pushing of food downstream. The LES is formed intrinsically by circular esophageal muscle and extrinsically by the diaphragm muscle. It has both sympathetic and parasympathetic innervation. Resting tone is 10–45 mm Hg.[2]

The stomach is a J-shaped dilation of the alimentary tract. It is divided into four regions: the cardia, fundus, body or corpus, and antrum. The stomach has three main functions: store large quantities of food (up to 1.5–2 liters), mix food with gastric secretions to form chyme and break down particle size, and slow emptying into the small intestine. The proximal stomach is the reservoir for undigested food and produces smooth, tonic contractions. The distal stomach grinds, mixes, and sieves food particles via high-amplitude contractions. Notable cell types in the stomach that aid in digestion are the mucous cells, which protect against harsh hydrochloric acid; parietal cells, which secrete hydrochloric acid; chief cells, which secrete pepsin; and G cells, which secrete gastrin. Together these cells' secretions break down and partially digest the food into chyme as well as reduce particle dimension to an appropriate size (2 mm or less) before it enters the small intestine.[2]

TABLE 15.1 Table of Gastrointestinal Components, Locations, and Functions

Component	Location	Function
Esophagus	Extends from C6 to T11	Propels food from the pharynx to the stomach
Stomach	Left upper abdominal cavity. Diaphragm along the top, pancreas posteriorly, greater omentum laterally	Receives food from the esophagus and initiates digestion. Breaks down food into chyme through physical and chemical mechanisms
Duodenum	Inferior to stomach, approximately 25–30 cm long	Chemically digests chyme for absorption in the small intestine
Jejunum	Between duodenum and ileum	Absorption of nutrients from chyme
Ileum	Between jejunum and cecum	Further nutrient absorption
Cecum	Lower right quadrant of abdominal cavity, inferior and lateral to the ileum	A space for mixing of chyme with bacteria to form fecal matter
Ascending colon	Runs superiorly from the cecum to the right inferior border of the liver where it turns 90 degrees to become the transverse colon	Peristaltic waves move the feces superiorly where bacteria digest the waste and further nutrients, water, and vitamins are absorbed
Transverse colon	Crosses abdominal cavity right to left just below the stomach	Fecal formation
Descending colon	Runs inferiorly along the left side of the abdominal cavity	Stores fecal matter prior to elimination. Further absorbs water, nutrients, vitamins
Sigmoid colon	Lower left quadrant of the abdominal cavity	Stores fecal matter prior to elimination
Rectum	Posterior pelvic cavity. Along the anterior surface of the sacrum and coccyx	Stores fecal matter prior to elimination. Distention will activate stretch receptors allowing the internal anal sphincter to relax and allow for defecation.

The duodenum is the first and smallest section of the small intestine. It is between 25 and 30 cm long and it forms a C-shaped loop around the pancreas. Its main function is to chemically digest the chyme received from the stomach in preparation for absorption. The pancreas, liver, and gallbladder secrete digestive enzymes through the ampulla of Vater into the middle portion of the duodenum.[2]

The jejunum is the second section of the small intestine and its primary function is to absorb nutrients. The digested chyme from the duodenum enters the jejunum where it is mixed and circulated for exposure to the jejunal walls for nutrient absorption. The walls of the jejunum are folded many times over to increase its surface area and allow for maximal absorption of nutrients. By the time chyme enters the ileum, almost 90% of all available nutrients are absorbed.[2]

The ileum is the final section of the small intestine. It serves to absorb vitamin B12 and other products of digestion that were not previously absorbed in the jejunum. It ends at the ileocecal valve—a circular muscle that serves to prevent reflux of colonic contents into the small intestine. It contracts in response to colonic dilation and relaxes in response to ileal dilation.[2]

The large intestine is composed of the cecum, appendix, ascending colon, transverse colon, descending colon, sigmoid colon, and rectum. Briefly, the cecum is a pouch at the beginning of the large intestine that allows for mixing of the chyme from the small intestine with bacteria to form fecal matter. The ascending colon transports the fecal matter superiorly along the right side up to the transverse colon. Along the way the ascending colonic wall absorbs water, nutrients, and vitamins. The transverse colon, the longest portion of the large intestine, crosses the abdominal cavity. Its contractions serve to mix the feces and allow bacteria to ferment the waste. Further absorption of water and nutrients also take place. The feces then enter the descending colon, which stores the feces until it is ready for transport, inferiorly and along the left side of the abdominal cavity to the sigmoid colon. Again, the walls of the descending colon allow for further absorption of water and nutrients. The sigmoid colon is an S-shaped, curved region that stores then transports fecal matter from the descending colon to the rectum and anus for elimination. The final portion of the large intestine is the rectum where feces are stored until elimination. As fecal matter accumulates it exerts pressure on the walls of the rectum. This activates stretch receptors and leads to relaxation of the internal anal sphincter allowing for elimination.[2]

Transit Time in Health and Disease

This section serves to discuss motility in the esophagus, stomach, small intestine, and large intestine. Emphasis is placed on mechanism, how motility and transit are altered by various disease states, and methods for evaluating motility.

Mixing movements and propulsive movements are the two primary movements within and along the GI tract. Mixing movements keep the contents of the intestine appropriately and thoroughly mixed throughout, while the propulsive movements, consisting of periodic contractions of certain GI tract segments (peristalsis), move the contents of the intestine along the tract.

Transit through the esophagus starts with swallowing. Swallowing starts with the oropharynx pushing food backward and downward while the muscles of the nasopharynx prevent food from entering the nasal passages. When ready to be swallowed the food is squeezed and rolled into the posterior pharynx by the tongue. The epiglottis moves upward in a protective mechanism over the larynx and trachea to prevent aspiration. The act of swallowing inhibits the respiratory center to protect from aspiration but it is so short-lived it is unnoticeable. Food enters the esophagus through the UES, which then constricts to prevent reflux back into the pharynx. The UES produces pressures around 30–200 mm Hg. Two waves of peristalsis move the food into the stomach through the LES, which also produces pressures between 20 and 60 mm Hg. Afferent nerve fibers transmit to the dorsal vagal complex activating efferent fibers that terminate either on the striated muscle of the esophagus or on the nerves of the enteric nervous system. Release of acetylcholine contracts the muscle while VIP and nitric oxide (NO) relax it. The LES responds to esophageal distention via myogenic and neurohormonal mechanisms.

Diseases of the esophagus are varied. Etiologies can be grouped into anatomical, mechanical, and neurologic, although many disease states involve overlap between two or all three. Anatomical etiologies include the presence of diverticula, hiatal hernia, and changes associated with chronic acid reflux. These anatomical abnormalities interrupt the normal pathway of food as it travels to the stomach which, in turn, changes many of the pressure zones of the esophagus. This can have dangerous sequelae as the luminal pressures may increase enough to overcome the resting pressures of the UES and LES allowing for reflux. Mechanical etiologies include achalasia, diffuse esophageal spasm, and hypertensive LES. There is also a neurologic component to these diseases but the result is the same—the esophagus is unable to relax properly for food travel. In achalasia the smooth muscles are unable to relax and move food down and the increased tone of the LES does not allow for complete relaxation. This results in dysphagia, regurgitation, and significant pain. In diffuse esophageal spasm the muscle contractions are uncoordinated and, as a result, food does not properly move downward. A hypertensive LES is defined as an LES with a mean pressure of 45 mm Hg or higher leading to dysphagia and chest pain. Neurologic disorders such as stroke, vagotomy, or hormone deficiencies will alter the nerve pathways such that the appropriate sensing and feedback are disrupted. A common result of neurologic disorders in the esophagus is dysphagia.

In evaluating esophageal function, it is important to select a study with an appropriate clinical correlation—is it a problem with motility or is it an anatomical abnormality? If it is a questionable motility problem, then an esophageal manometry study is best. A special catheter detects changes in pressure in the esophagus at various levels. First the pressure of the LES is recorded. The catheter is then pulled back into the esophagus and pressure measurements are made at different levels. Esophageal motor function between swallows is also evaluated. Finally the motor function of the UES is recorded and then the catheter is pulled out. Questionable anatomical problems are best studied using an upper GI series and ingested barium. These evaluate the act of swallowing and visualize the lining of the esophagus for anatomic abnormalities.

Before discussing the transit of food through the stomach and small intestine it is important to understand their actions during the fasting state. The migrating motor complex (MMC) occurs only during fasting, and is composed of waves of electrical activity in regular cycles originating in the stomach and terminating in the distal ileum.[3] Vagal stimulation releases motilin, which triggers an MMC leading to peristaltic waves. They occur every 45 to 180 minutes and are composed of four phases. Phase I is a period of quiescence. Phase II is composed of increased action potentials and low-amplitude smooth muscle contractility. Phase III is the most active as it is the time of peak electrical and mechanical activity producing bursts of regular, high-amplitude contractions. Phase IV demonstrates declining activity and will merge into the following MMC's phase I. The MMC is significant because it moves residual undigested food through the GI tract and also moves bacteria from the small intestine to the large intestine. Feeding interrupts it, and this is discussed next.

As described previously, the stomach is a J-shaped sac that serves as a reservoir for large volumes of food, mixes and breaks down food to form chyme, and slows emptying into the small intestine. Solids must be broken down into 1 to 2 mm particles before entering the duodenum, and they take approximately 3 to 4 hours to empty from the stomach. Liquids empty faster than solids. The motility of the stomach is controlled by intrinsic and extrinsic neural regulation. Parasympathetic stimulation to the vagus nerve increases the number and force of contractions whereas sympathetic stimulation inhibits these contractions via the splanchnic nerve. The intrinsic nervous system provides the coordination for motility. Neurohormonal control is also at play in that gastrin and motilin will increase the strength and frequency of contractions and the gastric inhibitory peptide will inhibit them.

Emptying of the stomach is controlled by neural and hormonal mechanisms as well as the composition of ingested food. Gastric distention, gastrin, and NO will promote emptying. Duodenal distention decreases the gastric tone to slow emptying, and increased fat content triggers the release of cholecystokinin to further inhibit stomach motility.

Gastric motility disorders that slow its emptying can increase the incidence of GE reflux disease. These disorders can be drug-induced, neurologic, or a result of critical illness. Drug-induced conditions include the administration of opioids (to be discussed later in the chapter), and the use of vasoactive agents. Vasoactive drugs increase catecholamine concentrations leading to sympathetic stimulation and, therefore, decreased motility. These drugs are often given intraoperatively or to critically ill patients for blood pressure control. Neurologic disorders resulting in decreased gastric motility include vagal neuropathies and gastroparesis. Finally, conditions that are commonly present in severely compromised patients, such as those with hyperglycemia, increased intracranial pressure, and mechanical ventilation can decrease gastric motility. Efforts to increase motility using drugs like erythromycin and metoclopramide have been used with some success.

The most prevailing test to evaluate gastric motility is the gastric emptying study. The patient fasts for at least 4 hours prior to the study then consumes a meal with a tightly bound radiotracer, commonly egg albumin. Continuous or frequent imaging occurs for the next 60 to 120 minutes and the measurement of time for 50% of the ingested meal to empty is determined. It is important to note that while gastric emptying scintigraphy has long been the standard study, it is affected by multiple factors including meal composition and data acquisition parameters.[4] Gastric motility studies can also be paired with small intestinal motility studies such as the small bowel manometry test. This will be discussed later.

Small intestinal motility mixes the contents of the stomach with digestive enzymes, further reducing particle size and increasing solubility. However, the major function of the small intestine is to circulate the contents and expose them to the mucosal wall in order to maximize absorption of water, nutrients, and vitamins before entering the large intestine. Again, there are mixing contractions and propulsive contractions. The circular and longitudinal muscle layers work in a coordinated fashion to achieve segmentation. Segmentation occurs when two nearby areas contract and thereby isolate a segment of intestine. Then a contraction occurs in the middle of that isolated segment, further dividing it. Contractions in the middle of those segments continue to occur and the process ensues. Segmentation allows the contents to remain in the intestine long enough for the essential substances to be absorbed into the circulation. It is controlled mainly by the enteric nervous system with modulation of motility by the extrinsic nervous system.

When considering small bowel dysmotility it is helpful to distinguish etiologies based on reversible and nonreversible causes. For reversible causes, mechanical obstruction should be the first to come to mind. In this case, there is a physical obstruction the muscles of the intestine cannot overcome. Hernias, malignancy, adhesions, and volvuluses are all examples. Bacterial overgrowth should be another consideration. Although the large intestine is rich with bacteria, the small intestine usually has fewer than 100,000 organisms per milliliter. Disrupting this condition with bacterial overgrowth leads to alterations in absorptive function leading to diarrhea. It is treated with antibiotics. Other reversible causes include ileus, electrolyte abnormalities, and critical illness. Nonreversible causes can be classified as structural or neuropathic. In structural causes there may be abnormalities with the intestinal smooth muscle, in which it cannot produce proper contractions. This occurs in diseases such as scleroderma and connective tissue disorders. In patients with an inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), there is a structural abnormality in the mucosa leading to decreased absorption of nutrients. Short bowel syndrome can be considered a structural etiology in that a large portion of the small intestinal structure is simply not present. In patients who have had a section of their small bowel resected, the remaining portion may not provide sufficient functional compensation, resulting in diarrhea, malnutrition, and weight loss. Neuropathic etiologies can produce a pseudo-obstruction in which the intrinsic and extrinsic nervous systems are altered in such a way that the intestines can only produce weak or uncoordinated contractions. This leads to symptoms of bloating, nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain. Regardless of etiology, small intestinal dysmotility adversely affects nutrient absorption leading to malnutrition.

The most common test used to evaluate small intestine motility is small bowel manometry. This test is useful in patients with unexplained nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, and manifested signs of obstruction without a clear obstructive cause. Similar to esophageal manometry, this test uses a small catheter with pressure sensors to evaluate the contractions of the intestine. The study evaluates contractions during three periods: fasting, during a meal, and postprandial. Normally the recording time is four hours for fasting, followed by ingestion of a meal, and two hours postprandial. Abnormal results are grouped into myopathic and neuropathic causes. In myopathic results, the MMC is absent or phase III exhibits very low amplitudes (normal phase III amplitude is 40 mm Hg). In neuropathic results, the contraction amplitude is adequate but either the contractions are uncoordinated (enteric neuropathy) or there is an inappropriate postprandial response, meaning postprandial antral hypomotility is present (extrinsic neuropathy). This manometry test is reported to result in a change of diagnosis in 8% to 15% of patients with unexplained nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain.[5]

The large intestine acts as a reservoir for waste and indigestible material before elimination and extracts any remaining electrolytes and water. It plays an essential role in regulating defecation and consistency of stools. Distention of the ileum will relax the ileocecal valve to allow intestinal contents to enter the colon and subsequent cecal distention will contract it. The contractions of the colon are different from the rest of the gut. While there are still mixing and propulsive movements by the circular and longitudinal muscles, respectively, the colon also exhibits giant migrating complexes. The giant migrating complexes serve to produce mass movements across the large intestine. In the healthy state, these complexes occur approximately 6 to 10 times within 24 hours with mean amplitude of 115 mm Hg at a distance of about 1 cm/s for approximately 20 seconds each.[6] These complexes, as well as the mixing and propulsive movements, serve to transfer contents to the rectum. The giant migrating complexes that originate in the sigmoid colon will produce the urge to defecate. Rectal distention as well as VIP and NO release will promote relaxation of the internal anal sphincter and allow for defecation.

Colonic dysmotility manifests with two primary symptoms: altered bowel habits and intermittent abdominal cramping. The most common diseases associated with colonic dysmotility are irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) and IBD, both of which are clinical diagnoses. Rome II criteria define IBS as having abdominal pain/discomfort along with at least two of the following three features: defecation relieves pain or discomfort, onset of pain is associated with an abnormal frequency of stools (more than three times per day or fewer than three times per week), and onset of pain is associated with a change in the form of the stool.[7] In IBS with predominantly diarrheal symptoms, there is an increase in the frequency and amplitude of spontaneous giant migrating complexes, and this increase is directly proportional to the severity of symptoms. In IBS with predominantly constipation, there is a decreased amplitude and frequency of giant migrating complexes. In severe cases the giant migrating complexes may be completely absent. In addition, there is a depression of overall contractile activity in the colon leading to colonic distention and the sensation of pain. This phenomenon is exacerbated by stress in which there is significant motor dysfunction and visceral hypersensitivity as well as an increase in plasma norepinephrine stimulating the sympathetic nervous system. In IBD the mixing and propulsive movements as well as the tonic contractions are suppressed due to colonic wall compression by the inflamed mucosa, but the giant migrating complexes remain. There is an increased frequency of the giant migrating complexes and their large pressure effect further compresses the inflamed mucosa, which can lead to hemorrhage, thick mucus secretion, and significant erosions.

Methods of Evaluating Colonic Motility

Studies evaluating giant migrating complexes in patients with IBS and IBD are not routine but are performed only on patients with known diagnoses to help understand the physiology and mechanism causing them. There are, however, tests to evaluate the function and anatomy of the large intestine. The lower GI series, for example, involves the administration of a barium enema to a patient. The barium outlines the intestine and it is visible on radiograph. This allows for detection of colon and rectal anatomical abnormalities.

The Effects of General Anesthesia on Bowel Function

GI effects of the anesthetics are multifaceted and encompass a wide array of hemodynamic and physiological changes. This section is broken down into the various components that make up a general anesthetic and the GI effects of each of these components. Emphasis is placed on the effects of preoperative sedation, induction of anesthesia, hypnotic agents, volatile agents, paralysis, and reversal. Opioids will be discussed in another section. Please note that this discussion applies to the healthy state.

In the preoperative setting patients are often nervous and sympathetic stimulation is high. Inhibition of GI tract activity is directly proportional to the amount of norepinephrine secreted from sympathetic stimulation, so the higher the anxiety the higher the inhibition. Even though a good bedside manner and the use of behavioral approaches are beneficial, these may not be sufficient and patients are often given premedication with a benzodiazepine, usually midazolam, to alleviate anxiety. Midazolam acts by enhancing the effect of neurotransmitter, GABA, on GABA-A receptors. A study by Castedal and associates looked at the effect of midazolam on small bowel motility using antroduodenojejunal manometry.[8] The vast majority of the studied variables were not affected by the use of midazolam, but one significant change was noted—an increased duration of phase III of the MMC in the proximal and distal parts of the duodenum, which shortened the MMC by 27%. A clear explanation for this is not evident but there are a couple of considerations. One, the sedative effect of midazolam may be the reason for the change in MMC activity because MMC activity differs between awake and sleep states. Another consideration is that the resultant reduced anxiety decreases sympathetic stimulation allowing for less inhibition and higher activity. However, when applied clinically, there was no real difference seen in small intestinal motility patterns. Of the premedications, midazolam is widely used and considered well tolerated.

General anesthesia causes a loss of all protective reflexes. This is achieved with a variety of medications including opioids, hypnotics, and neuromuscular blocking agents. As mentioned, the effect of opioids will be discussed in a later section. Volatile anesthetics affect bowel function through various mechanisms including depression of spontaneous activity and changes in intestinal tissue oxygenation. Volatile anesthetics depress the spontaneous, electrical, contractile, and propulsive activity in the stomach, small intestine, and colon as demonstrated in many animal and human studies. The small intestine is the first part of the GI tract to recover, followed by the stomach in approximately 24 hours and then the colon 30 to 40 hours postoperatively. Between the various volatile anesthetics there are minor differences. One difference worth noting is that rapid increases in the concentration of desflurane induces greater sympathetic activation, as compared to other volatile agents, which coupled with sympathetic nervous system hyperactivity during surgical procedures can inhibit GI function and motility. In a study comparing desflurane and isoflurane, rapid increases in desflurane caused significantly greater effects on sympathetic and renin-angiotensin system activity as well as increases in blood pressure and heart rate as compared to isoflurane. However, this effect is short-lived as it is only seen with rapid increases in concentration and the surge in sympathetic stimulation tapers off quickly. This transient phenomenon is unlikely to have a lasting effect on bowel function.[9] The volatile anesthetics also affect splanchnic circulation and oxygenation in a dose-dependent manner, which is known to have an effect on bowel function. In horses receiving isoflurane for maintenance of anesthesia, microperfusion and intestinal tissue oxygenation decreased when isoflurane reached 2%.[10] In a human study by Muller and associates, the effects of desflurane and isoflurane on intestinal tissue oxygenation during colorectal surgery were evaluated. It was found that desflurane and isoflurane had comparable effects on intestinal tissue oxygenation. However, during periods of ischemia for resection and anastomosis, reactive hyperemia was better preserved in the patients given isoflurane.[11] This may have important implications in regaining coordinated and appropriate bowel function postoperatively and may determine maintenance with volatile versus total intravenous anesthesia. Whereas the volatile anesthetics depress spontaneous activity and affect blood flow, there is no clear-cut relationship between adverse GI effects and the use of volatile anesthetics. Also, when considering their use in clinical practice, there is very little difference between desflurane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane's effects on bowel function.

An alternative to maintenance with volatile anesthetics is total intravenous anesthesia. Propofol is the most common drug used for this purpose. When used intraoperatively, propofol-remifentanil anesthetic produced increased intestinal motility as compared to sevoflurane-remifentanil.[12] No adverse GI effects were reported, but it did cause a higher degree of surgeon dissatisfaction. A study by Jensen and colleagues looked at bowel recovery after open procedures and did not find a difference in overall recovery and bowel function when comparing isoflurane/nitrous oxide, propofol/air, and propofol/nitrous oxide.[13] Even in colorectal cancer patients there was no difference in inflammatory response among patients receiving either total intravenous anesthesia with propofol and remifentanil or inhalational anesthesia with sevoflurane and fentanyl.[14,15] There are few data on the effect of propofol on GI smooth muscle and many of the established studies show various and conflicting results when it comes to the recovery of bowel functions.

Nitrous oxide is 30 times more soluble than nitrogen in the blood and as such will diffuse into gas-containing cavities from the blood faster than the nitrogen already present in those cavities can diffuse out. This is especially important in the bowels as gut distention is correlated with the amount of gas already present in the bowel, the duration of nitrous oxide administration, and the concentration of nitrous oxide administered. Although it has been established that nitrous oxide causes bowel distention and it is prudent to avoid nitrous oxide in lengthy abdominal surgeries or when the bowel is already distended, the most recent ENIGMA trial did not relate the use of nitrous oxide to any significant adverse outcomes.[16]

Paralysis to achieve favorable surgical conditions is produced by administration of neuromuscular blocking agents. Neuromuscular blocking drugs only affect skeletal muscle so GI motility remains intact. However, special mention of the depolarizing neuromuscular blocker succinylcholine should be made. Succinylcholine mimics acetylcholine in that it produces an initial muscle contraction, which is visible as fasciculations. This contraction increases intragastric pressure, which may be so strong as to overcome the tone of the LES and allow reflux of gastric contents. Aspiration is certainly a concern, but this should not necessarily preclude the use of succinylcholine. Patient condition, including body habitus, technical difficulty of intubation, nothing by mouth (NPO) status, and comorbidities should be the determining factors in assessing the risk of aspiration.

Reversal of paralysis using the anticholinesterase, neostigmine, will increase parasympathetic activity and bowel peristalsis by increasing the frequency and intensity of contractions. In cases of fresh bowel anastomoses, this can be of concern as the increase in activity could result in dehiscence. This is partially offset by simultaneous administration of the anticholinergic medications, glycopyrrolate or atropine, which are used to attenuate the bradycardia from neostigmine. This effect is not seen with sugammadex, which may be a more prudent choice for reversal in situations of tenuous bowel anastomoses. There is some data to support the use of neostigmine in treating postoperative ileus but the adverse effects of bradycardia, vomiting, and abdominal cramps may preclude its use.

Surgical procedures on the GI tract produce an exaggerated stress response that may predispose to postoperative bowel dysfunction. Goals of anesthetic care should be to attenuate the stress response, optimize hemodynamic and fluid status, and maintain normothermia.[17,18] At present there is no evidence for recommendations on specific anesthetic and analgesic agents to avoid adverse GI effects.

Effect of Opioids on Bowel Function

Much attention has been given to the use and effects (beneficial and adverse) of opioid administration. There is a desire to only use adjunct techniques and nonopioid medications; however, opioids are often necessary to control perioperative pain. A major adverse effect, and one that is not associated with the development of opioid tolerance, is reduced GI motility and constipation. Opioids exert their function on both central and peripheral receptors, namely mu, delta, and kappa. It is the central effects that primarily mediate analgesia and produce the favorable effects. The peripheral effects are the adverse effects. There is a high density of peripheral mu-opioid receptors in the myenteric and submucosal plexuses. Activation of these mu-opioid receptors in the myenteric plexus has a dual effect on the neural pathways controlling motility—it inhibits excitatory pathways that depress peristaltic contraction and it also inhibits inhibitory pathways. These inhibitions increase GI muscular activity and increase resting muscle tone including tone in the ileocecal valve and internal anal sphincters. This produces spasm and nonrhythmic or propulsive motility. Activation of these receptors is also linked to the inhibition of acetylcholine release and promotion of nitrous oxide release that inhibits propulsive motility.[19] Together these effects will delay gastric emptying and slow transit through the intestine. Activation of these receptors in the submucosal plexus decreases nutrient secretion and increases fluid absorption. Coupled with reduced motility the stool will remain in the gut for a longer period of time and as more water is absorbed the stool becomes hard and dry leading to constipation.[20] Other adverse sequelae include nausea, anorexia, delayed digestion, abdominal pain, excessive straining during bowel movements, and incomplete evacuation.

Many efforts have been made and are currently underway to attenuate or avoid opioid-induced bowel dysfunction. The use of laxatives, stool softeners, and prokinetic agents, such as metoclopramide and neostigmine, have shown some success in alleviating opioid-induced constipation. Potentially switching to a different opioid is also offered as a treatment option. Tassinari and associates performed a meta-analysis demonstrating strong evidence supporting opioid switch in alleviating constipation, most strongly for morphine to transdermal fentanyl.[21] Another option is combining opioids with enteral opioid receptor antagonists. Naloxone was the first used. It is a nonselective, competitive opioid receptor antagonist. While its effect on the peripheral receptors in the gut produced favorable results of reversing gut motility inhibition, its nonselective profile meant it also worked on the central receptors and reversed the beneficial analgesic effect of opioids. Therefore, new attention is given to pure peripherally acting opioid receptor antagonists. Methylnaltrexone is a peripheral mu-opioid receptor antagonist and does not cross the blood-brain barrier. In healthy volunteers, the use of methylnaltrexone prevented delay in orocecal transit time after morphine administration.[22] Subsequent systematic reviews demonstrated that methylnaltrexone and alvimopan were better than placebo in reversing opioid-induced increased GI transit time and constipation.[23–25] However, long-term efficacy and safety have not been clearly established. Further studies are underway.

Effect of Open Abdominal Surgery, Ischemia, Stomas, and Bowel Anastomosis on Gastrointestinal Physiology and Function

The surgical procedure itself, even with purposes of correcting GI pathology, significantly affects GI physiology and function and predisposes to postoperative ileus. Recently, a standardized definition of postoperative ileus was established as "a transient cessation of coordinated bowel motility after surgical intervention, which prevents effective transit of intestinal contents and/or tolerance of oral intake."[26] Manipulation of the intestines is the main factor that initiates postoperative ileus. Additional contributors include immobility, electrolyte imbalance from fluid shifts and insensible losses, and intestinal wall swelling from excessive fluid administration. In open abdominal procedures, the surgical manipulation of the bowel induces a degree of trauma that sets in motion the whole process of postoperative ileus. There are two phases to uncomplicated postoperative ileus (i.e., in the absence of complications, such as perforation, bleeding, peritonitis). The first phase is an early neurogenic phase and the second is an inflammatory phase. In total, an uncomplicated postoperative ileus lasts about 3 to 4 days.[26]

The early neurogenic phase results when the intestine is manipulated, which is more extensive in open procedures than laparoscopic ones. This manipulation activates the sympathetic nervous system, increasing the inhibitory neural input that leads to decreased propulsive movements and almost complete cessation of GI motility. This lasts about 3 to 4 hours after surgery.

The late inflammatory phase also begins with surgical manipulation of the intestines. Surgical manipulation increases sympathetic stimulation of the myenteric plexus, which promotes the influx of leukocytes into the "traumatized" areas of the gut. Further release of cytokines, chemokines, and leukocytes as well as phagocytosis in the traumatized area occurs and eventually spreads through the entire GI tract. This inflammatory cascade increases permeability and allows for translocation of intraluminal bacteria, which further exacerbates the inflammatory process. However, peritonitis does not always develop because the mast cells and neutrophils are very effective in eliminating the translocated bacteria in the peritoneal cavity. This process occurs about 3 hours after intestinal manipulation and continues throughout the manipulated segment and the rest of the GI tract for the next 24 hours. It eventually subsides and within 3 to 4 days this uncomplicated ileus is usually resolved.[27,28]

Mesenteric ischemia, if left untreated, will lead to 100% mortality. This occurs when the supply of oxygen is insufficient to meet the oxygen demand of the intestines. It affects the small and large intestine and is classified as occlusive or nonocclusive. Etiologies of mesenteric ischemia include: strangulation, emboli (seen commonly in patients with atrial fibrillation), complications of aortic surgery or during cross-clamping, trauma, drug-induced, atherosclerosis, and inflammatory diseases. There are four stages of mesenteric ischemia. The first is the hyperactive stage when blood flow to the intestine is abruptly occluded. This produces severe pain and overactive peristalsis. There may be passage of loose stool with blood. The second stage is a paralytic stage that spreads diffusely across the intestines. The third stage involves leakage of fluid, proteins, and electrolytes through the bowel wall into the peritoneum. If the bowel becomes necrotic then peritonitis develops. The fourth stage is shock. End-organ damage is apparent and contributes to altered hemodynamics and critical illness. Treatment involves reperfusion of the occluded vessel through revascularization and possibly bowel resection.[29]

Bowel resections vary in terms of their effect on the remaining bowel. The degree of GI dysfunction depends on the portion of bowel resected. The colon primarily absorbs water and a full colonic resection is compatible with life. However, when the small intestine is resected the effect on the GI system is much more pronounced. The small intestine is responsible for absorbing vitamins and nutrients. This can be properly maintained if at least a third of the small bowel remains. The jejunum is the primary site for digestion and absorption of nutrients. After a jejunal resection, the ileum is usually able to adapt to fulfill its functions. The ileum absorbs vitamin B12 and bile salts. If the ileum is resected (especially more than 100 cm), the remaining small intestine cannot compensate for the loss of its function and severe malabsorption and diarrhea will result. The unabsorbed bile salts enter the colon and stimulate fat and water secretion. Small intestinal resection will increase gastric motility but this depends on the site and amount resected. If the terminal ileum and ileocecal valve are resected then intestinal content transit speeds up.[30]

Bowel anastomoses can significantly alter bowel function in that they disrupt normal motor activity. Partial transection usually preserves the wave of activity, though complete transection will interrupt it. There is a loss in myogenic continuity in that the intestine distal to the transection will no longer receive signals or respond to the pacemaker in the proximal duodenum. Now the part distal to transection has to rely on its own intrinsic slow-wave transmission. This can be attenuated by close approximation of the muscle layers. There is motor asynchrony across the anastomotic site but long-term studies report reasonable MMC activity is ultimately achieved with time. The mechanism explaining why this recovery occurs remains uncertain. The transection and anastomosis have little effect on intestinal homeostasis and are not associated with significant digestion or absorption side effects.[2]

Gastrointestinal System Nociception

Abdominal visceral pain and its associated symptoms are common in the GI perioperative period. For an understanding of GI nociception, a detailed knowledge of the anatomy and physiology of abdominal visceral innervation is essential.

ABDOMINAL VISCERA INNERVATION

Abdominal visceral pain signals are carried in both sympathetic and parasympathetic autonomic fibers.[31,32] Innervation of the parietal peritoneum, abdominal wall muscles, and skin is supplied by the ventral rami of thoracoabdominal nerves, which are part of the somatosensory system.

Sympathetic fibers for the upper abdomen, including the liver, stomach, pancreas, small bowel, and proximal part of the colon, originate from spinal cord segments T5 to L2. Those preganglionic fibers exit the cord as gray rami communicants to enter the sympathetic chain in the paravertebral region. These fibers terminate in the prevertebral (subdiaphragmatic) ganglia through splanchnic nerves and generate the celiac plexus, where they synapse with a large number of postganglionic, predominantly unmyelinated fibers. Postganglionic fibers will then innervate the

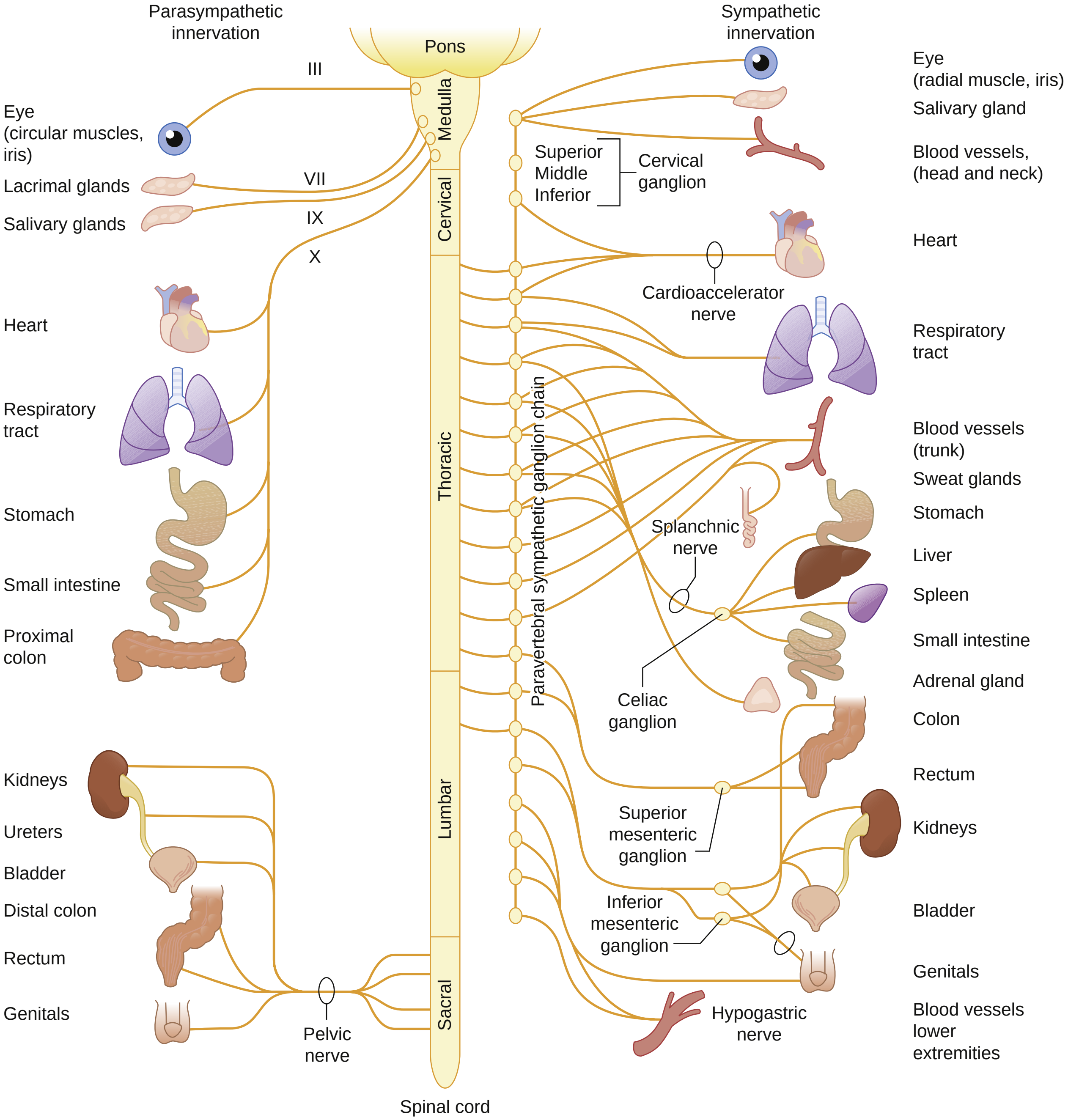

Parasympathetic innervation
Sympathetic innervation
Pons
Medulla
Cervical
Thoracic
Lumbar
Sacral
Spinal cord
III
VII
IX
X
Eye (circular muscles, iris)
Lacrimal glands
Salivary glands
Heart
Respiratory tract
Stomach
Small intestine
Proximal colon
Kidneys
Ureters
Bladder
Distal colon
Rectum
Genitals
Pelvic nerve
Superior
Middle
Inferior
Cervical ganglion
Cardioaccelerator nerve
Paravertebral sympathetic ganglion chain
Splanchnic nerve
Celiac ganglion
Superior mesenteric ganglion
Inferior mesenteric ganglion
Hypogastric nerve
Eye (radial muscle, iris)
Salivary gland
Blood vessels, (head and neck)
Heart
Respiratory tract
Blood vessels (trunk)
Sweat glands
Stomach
Liver
Spleen
Small intestine
Adrenal gland
Colon
Rectum
Kidneys
Bladder
Genitals
Blood vessels lower extremities

Fig. 15.1 Schematic diagram of sympathetic and parasympathetic innervation to the gastrointestinal (GI) tract. Sympathetic innervation of majority of the GI tract up to the rectum is supplied by the celiac plexus. (From Glick DB. The autonomic nervous system. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2010.)

organs (see Fig. 15.5).[33] Innervation of the lower abdomen including the descending colon, sigmoid and rectum, bladder, and lower ureter originates from T9 to L3 and forms the inferior mesenteric and hypogastric ganglia and plexus.

Sympathetic afferent fibers transmit visceral pain, whereas sympathetic efferent nerves inhibit peristalsis and gastric distention as well as cause GI vasoconstriction.[33]

The parasympathetic nervous system supplies the abdominal viscera proximal to the splenic flexure of the colon via the vagus nerve. Some of the vagal fibers pass through the prevertebral fibers (celiac plexus). The parasympathetic postganglionic neurons are located in the myenteric and submucosal plexuses. Visceral afferent parasympathetic nerve fibers transmit the sensations of satiety, nausea, and distention, whereas efferent parasympathetic nerve fibers increase functions such as secretion, sphincter relaxation, and peristalsis.[34–36]

The colon, rectum, internal and external genitalia, and bladder are innervated by fibers from spinal cord segments S2 to S4, which run with the pelvic nerves (Fig. 15.1).[37–40]

Some of the characteristics of abdominal visceral innervation are: (1) they are almost exclusively myelinated A-delta and unmyelinated C fibers; (2) they have “dual-function” properties (sensory that carry sensory evoked potentials and afferent that regulate autonomic flow);[42]

(3) there are an abundance of connections between nerves, ganglia, and plexuses; (4) there is not a fine and distinct nerve; (5) considerable variation in anatomy can be found; (6) visceral innervation anatomy is affected by intraabdominal pathology; and (7) visceral innervation distribution is diffuse and capable of amplification. Once stimulated, it could be difficult to stop (self-aggravation).[41–46]

In summary, the innervation of the GI organs up to the proximal transverse colon is supplied by the celiac plexus, and innervation of the descending colon and distal GI tract comes from the inferior hypogastric plexus. Although each organ looks like it is innervated from specific cord segments, the fibers frequently communicate with each other (Table 15.2).

CELIAC PLEXUS ANATOMY

The celiac plexus is normally composed of two or three splanchnic nerves:

The greater (superior thoracic) splanchnic nerve comes from T5 to T9 (fibers can arise as high as T1 and as low as T11). The greater splanchnic nerve is usually anterolateral to the T12 vertebral body. It perforates the crura of the diaphragm and enters the retroperitoneal space where it joins the celiac plexus.

The lesser splanchnic nerve is formed from T9 to T11. In 30% of cases this nerve is not present. Two or more celiac ganglia are generated, which lie ventrolaterally to the aorta between the origin of the celiac arterial trunk and the renal arteries.

The celiac ganglia can vary considerably in size and number on each side. Usually they are oval shaped and can vary from 0.5 to 4.5 cm in width.

Fusion of these ganglia form a fine nerve plexus that may extend to the inferior border of the T12 vertebra and lower border of L2. They are mostly located close to the celiac artery trunk.[46]

The plexus and related nervous structures are contained in the prevertebral retroperitoneal space along with the aorta, inferior vena cava (IVC), veins of azygos system, lymph nodes, the cisterna chyli, and diaphragmatic crura (Fig. 15.2).

ABDOMINAL VISCERAL PAIN

Despite the fact that abdominal pain of visceral origin is a very common finding during the perioperative period, our knowledge and practice to control this pain are very limited.[47]

Visceral pain is different from somatic pain in many aspects; not all organs respond similarly to stimuli, some organs are more sensitive. For example, the pancreas is more sensitive than the stomach. Tissue destruction, ischemia, and inflammation will not always cause pain.[48] The most remarkable difference between visceral and superficial structures is the fact that visceral pain is poorly localized, produces strong affective responses, and refers to other locations with intense regional or muscle spasms and autonomic instability.[49–51]

The referral properties of visceral pain have been attributed to the conjunction of visceral and somatic inputs to the spinal cord and CNS. For the same reason, visceral pain can have somatic components. Merging of these inputs can modify pain sensation distal to the site of visceral inflammation, or pain from one intraabdominal organ can refer to another.[40]

Visceral pain is fervently associated with emotional fluctuation. IBS is thought to be related to gut-brain interaction and autonomic dysregulation.[52]

It was found that induced sadness was attenuated by fatty acid infusion, and increased neural activity in the part of the brain processing emotions was also observed.[53] Probiotic bacteria are beneficial in stress-related disorders, such as anxiety and depression, and during the course of common comorbidities and some bowel disorders.[54]

VISCERAL PAIN TREATMENT

Opioids are still the mainstay of visceral pain treatment, although their usage has been limited by many side effects such as decreased gut motility and constipation, sedation, nausea, and vomiting. In addition, prolonged usage of narcotics is associated with opioid-induced hyperalgesia and tolerance.[55] Usage of acetaminophen, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, and serotonin components have been suggested, but the results are not specific.[56]

VISCERAL PAIN BLOCK TECHNIQUES

Noxious pain impulses originating from abdominal viscera can be blocked by the following regional anesthesia techniques (Fig. 15.3)

1. Spinal anesthesia extending to at least the level of T5
2. Epidural anesthesia covering T5 to Tl2 dermatomes
3. Paravertebral blocks comprising T5 to L2 spinal segments
4. Selective T5 to L2 sympathetic chain block
5. Celiac/splanchnic nerve block

TABLE 15.2 Summary of Visceral Innervation on Gastrointestinal Tract[47]

Organ	Sympathetic Sensory Supply	Parasympathetic Sensory Supply
Liver and biliary tract	T5-T10 via *Celiac plexus*	Vagus nerve
Stomach	T7-T9 via *Celiac plexus*	Vagus nerve
Pancreas	T6-T10 via *Celiac plexus*	Vagus nerve
Small bowel	T9-L1 via *Celiac plexus*	Vagus nerve
Cecum, ascending and transverse colon	T9-L1 via *Celiac plexus*	Vagus nerve
Descending colon	T9-T12 via *Celiac plexus*	S2-S4 via *Pelvic nerves*
Sigmoid, rectum	T11-L1 via *Inferior hypogastric plexus*	S2-S4 via *Pelvic nerves*

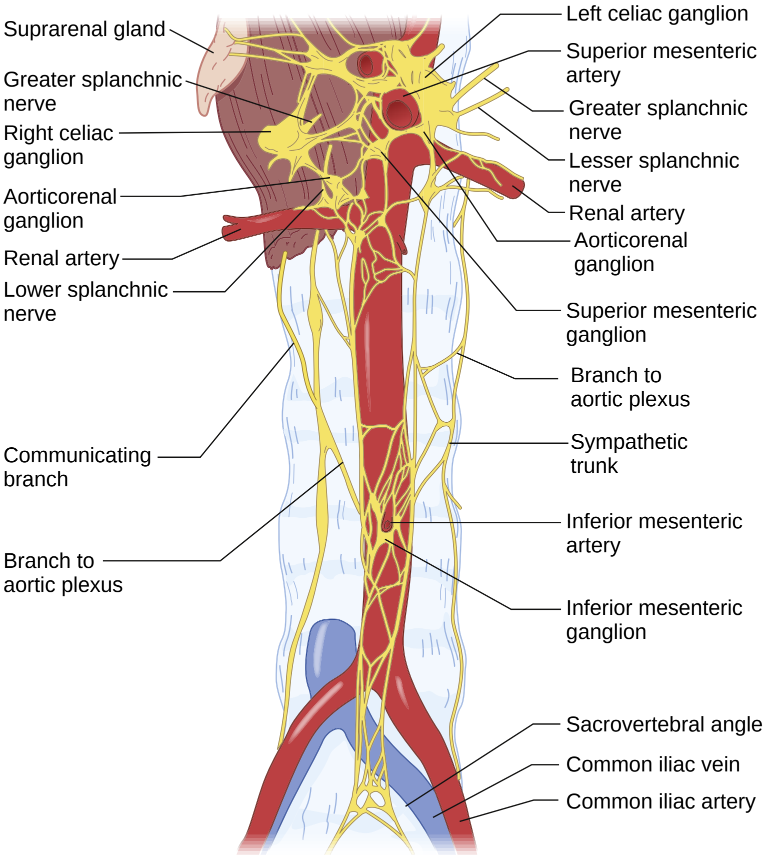

Suprarenal gland
Greater splanchnic nerve
Right celiac ganglion
Aorticorenal ganglion
Renal artery
Lower splanchnic nerve
Communicating branch
Branch to aortic plexus
Left celiac ganglion
Superior mesenteric artery
Greater splanchnic nerve
Lesser splanchnic nerve
Renal artery
Aorticorenal ganglion
Superior mesenteric ganglion
Branch to aortic plexus
Sympathetic trunk
Inferior mesenteric artery
Inferior mesenteric ganglion
Sacrovertebral angle
Common iliac vein
Common iliac artery

Fig. 15.2 **Anatomy of the abdominal sympathetic trunk.** (Redrawn from http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gray847.png#mediaviewer.)

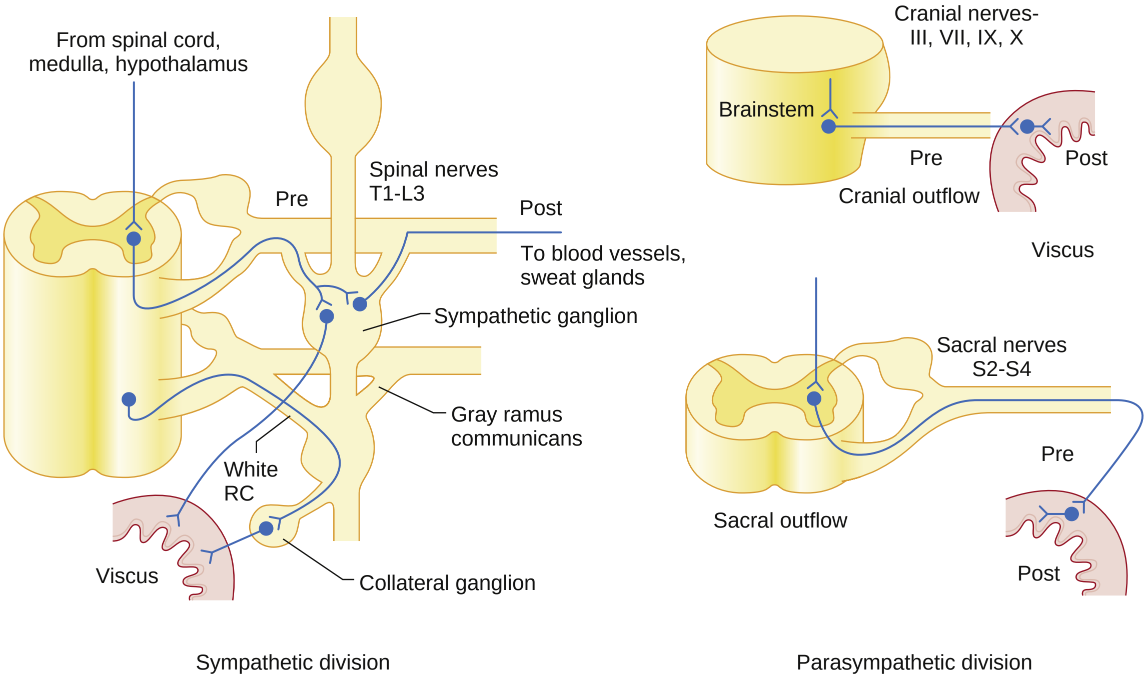

From spinal cord, medulla, hypothalamus
Pre
Spinal nerves T1-L3
Post
To blood vessels, sweat glands
Sympathetic ganglion
Gray ramus communicans
White RC
Viscus
Collateral ganglion
Sympathetic division
Cranial nerves- III, VII, IX, X
Brainstem
Pre
Post
Cranial outflow
Viscus
Sacral nerves S2-S4
Pre
Sacral outflow
Post
Parasympathetic division

Fig. 15.3 **Regional anesthetic techniques on gastrointestinal (GI) visceral sympathetic innervation: different regional techniques which can block sympathetic innervation of the GI tract at different levels.** (From Glick DB. The autonomic nervous system. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2010.)

Based on the type and extent of the regional technique, its effect on the GI physiology is different. Of note, the aforementioned regional anesthesia techniques are associated with the blockade of the sympathetic nervous system, whereas the parasympathetic system usually remains intact.

VISCERAL/CELIAC PLEXUS BLOCK

Blockage of the splanchnic/celiac plexus has been approached in many ways:

Intraperitoneal Regional Anesthesia or Peritoneal Lavage

Abdominal visceral pain can be blocked simply by instilling local anesthetic into the peritoneal cavity. A recent meta-analysis by Boddy and associates of intraperitoneal regional anesthesia in laparoscopic surgeries found an overall benefit, although there was no consistent analgesia, but also a remarkable absence of complications and side effects.[57]

Celiac Plexus Block—Posterior and Trans-Crural Approach

Radiography, fluoroscopy, or computed tomography scan is usually needed to perform this block safely, especially in lytic blocks.

This approach requires a special needle, usually a 15-cm, 20- or 22-G Chiba needle. The patient is in the prone or lateral position and the needle is inserted below the tip of the 12th rib on the left side. The needle is aimed at a 45-degree angle to touch the lateral side of the L1 vertebral body at a depth of 7 to 9 cm. Subsequently, the needle is nearly fully redirected 5 to 10 degrees and advanced to a depth of 11 to 14 cm. In this situation the pulsation of the aorta on the needle can sometimes be felt (Fig. 15.4).

Determination of the correct vertebral level is imprecise in patients with absence of the 12th rib, a markedly downsloping of the rib, or in other congenital abnormalities.

Celiac Plexus Block—Anterior Approach

The abdomen is opened and the left lobe of the liver is retracted upward. The stomach is pulled gently downward and to the left thereby exposing and stretching the lesser omentum. The index finger of the operator is then inserted at the highest possible point of the incision, palpating the pulsating aorta through the lesser omentum. The aorta is pushed aside to the left by passing the tip of the finger to the vertebrae whereby it is separated from the vena cava. A fine 22-G spinal needle is inserted alongside the finger and in the loose, retroperitoneal, prevertebral tissue between the IVC and aorta. Diluted local anesthetic is injected in this area after careful aspiration. The tip of the needle should be close to the diaphragm, above the origin of the celiac trunk, in the midline. A similar approach was described by Lillemoe in 1992 for postoperative pain control in pancreatic cancer patients: after lesser omentum exposure, the left index and middle fingers are placed on either side of the aorta and pulled caudad until the upper border of the pancreas is identified and 20 mL of solution is injected on either side of the aorta (Fig. 15.5).[58]

Endoscopic Ultrasound-Guided Celiac Plexus Block

Recent recognition that the celiac ganglia can be visualized and accessed by endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) now allows for a direct injection into the celiac plexus. The patient is placed in the left lateral decubitus position and under conscious sedation. From the posterior side of the lesser curvature of the gastric fundus EUS can visualize the aorta in a longitudinal plane. The aorta is traced distally to the celiac trunk, and the injection delivered around the celiac trunk. Meta-analysis has shown that EUS-guided celiac plexus blocks are safe and efficient (Fig. 15.6).[59]

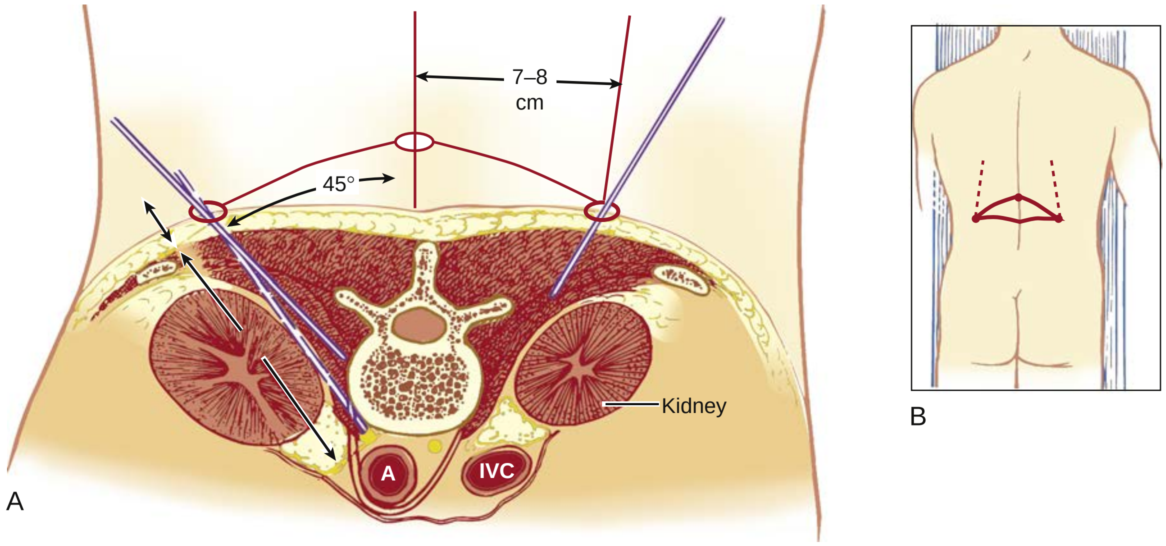


Fig. 15.4 (A) Schematic view of the posterior approach. Celiac plexus can be blocked by insertion of a 20- to 22-gauge 15-cm spinal needle (Chiba needle) at the level of T12. (B) Positioning and surface landmarks. (From Wedel DJ, Horlocker TT. Nerve blocks. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia.* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2010.)

TECHNICAL ASPECTS OF VISCERAL PLEXUS BLOCKS

There is no established standard technique. It is important to completely disrupt all of the impulse traffic in the visceral innervation, as these impulses are widely spread and can be reinstated via very fine nerves.

Unfortunately, the success of splanchnic nerve and celiac plexus blocks cannot be verified by any objective signs. Hypotension is not a regular finding. If patients do have upper abdominal pain, analgesia typically results within a few minutes after the block. Failure of pain to subside is not only due to inappropriate technique but also due to the involvement of visceral plexuses, such as the hypogastric plexus.

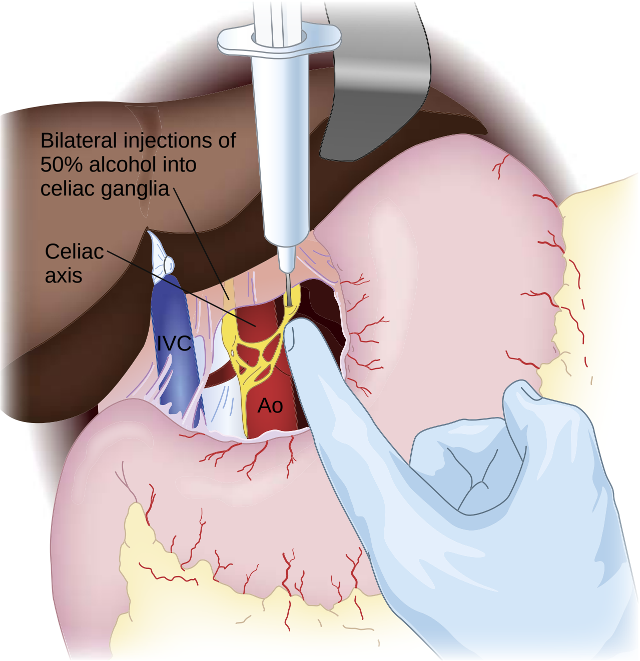


Fig. 15.5 Celiac plexus block (anterior approach): intraoperative celiac plexus block is performed using a 20- to 22-gauge spinal needle. Injection is performed at each side of the aorta and the level of celiac axis. (Redrawn from Lillemoe KD, Cameron JL, Kaufman HS, et al. Chemical splancnicectomy in patients with unresectable pancreatic cancer. A prospective randomized trial. *Ann Surg*. 1993;217:447–457.)

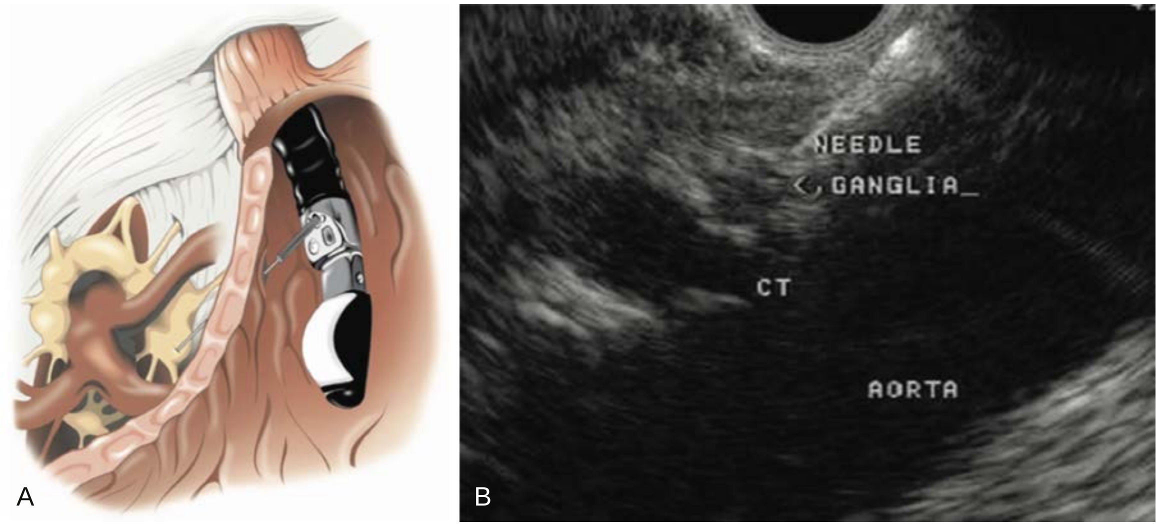


Fig. 15.6 Endoscopic ultrasound-guided celiac plexus block: (A) Ultrasound beams use lesser curvature of the gastric fundus as media to visualize the celiac trunk. (B) Ultrasonic image of celiac ganglia and needle during performance of endoscopic ultrasound-guided celiac plexus block. *CT*, Celiac trunk. (From Levy M, Wiersema M. EUS-guided celiac plexus neurolysis and celiac plexus block. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2003;57(7):923–930.)

BOX 15.1 Complications of Celiac Plexus Blocks

Hypotension
Diarrhea
Intravascular injection and vascular trauma
Subarachnoid or epidural injection and paraplegia
Renal injury
Pneumothorax
Chylothorax
Damage to surrounding structures and retroperitoneal hematoma
Peritonitis and abscess

There is little information about the duration of a successful block induced by local anesthetics. Most of the blocks have been a combination of local anesthetic and lytic therapy for chronic pain. In order to avoid toxic side effects, local anesthetic doses must be reduced when the block is combined with another major regional anesthetic technique such as abdominal wall blocks.

COMPLICATIONS OF VISCERAL PAIN BLOCKS

The complication rate is between 0.5% and 32%, depending on the method, as radiologic methods are associated with a reduced rate of complications (Box 15.1).

Dilation of the capacitance vessels in the splanchnic area will cause hypotension. Subarachnoid injection happens mostly with a posterior approach, and an alcohol injection can cause paraplegia.

A chylothorax can result from damage of the retroperitoneal lymph nodes.

The most devastating complication occurs with vascular trauma, thrombosis, and retroperitoneal hematoma.[60]

INDICATIONS FOR A VISCERAL PAIN BLOCK

Post-Laparatomy Pain Relief

Visceral pain blocks are usually associated with somatosensory pain controls using central neuroaxial regional anesthesia techniques, such as epidural analgesia or paravertebral analgesia. A combination of a celiac plexus block with any other regional anesthesia technique is rarely used.

Cancer Pain

Splanchnic/celiac plexus blocks have been used for biliary and pancreatic cancers. The details of this indication of visceral pain control are discussed in the chronic pain management chapter (Chapter 51).

EFFECTS OF REGIONAL ANESTHESIA ON GASTROINTESTINAL PHYSIOLOGY

The degree to which the GI tract is affected by regional anesthesia depends on the type and extent of the block. Epidural analgesia, especially thoracic epidural analgesia (TEA), has been used extensively for a wide variety of GI surgeries. The clinical outcome of TEA after GI surgeries has been reviewed extensively in the literature; the focus of this chapter is its effect on GI physiology.

Effect on Gastrointestinal Motility and Postoperative Ileus

As described, postoperative ileus is a very common phenomenon in patients who undergo major abdominal surgery. Postoperative ileus is a temporary state of GI motor dysfunction that occurs after surgery in the abdominal cavity. This includes disruption of normal coordinated movements of the GI tract,[61] nonmechanical obstruction of the bowel, activation of the inhibitory reflexes, inflammatory mediators, bowel manipulation, electrolyte disturbances, opioid administration, sympathetic overactivity with surgical pain, and postoperative pain.[62–66] Transit time of the stomach may extend 24 to 48 hours and colon transfer time may increase 48 to 72 hours. Some of these effects may continue for up to 3 to 4 days after surgery.[67,68]

The main pathophysiologic event in postoperative ileus is neuroimmune interaction, which is based on the bidirectional communication between the immune system within and outside the GI tract and the autonomic nervous system.[69]

Manipulation of the intestines and the stress response associated with postoperative pain are the key factors initiating postoperative ileus. The surgical stress response is a multifaceted, neurohumoral response to a surgical stimulation and can be associated with considerable morbidity, including a systemic inflammatory response syndrome, which is associated with the release of systemic inflammatory response and adrenaline and noradrenaline hormones. This sympathetic overactivity will constrain mobility and directly inhibit gut smooth muscle via activation of α- and β-adrenergic receptors resulting in postoperative ileus.[70] Epidural administration of local anesthetic or opioids has been shown to suppress these responses.[71–73]

Epidural block with deposition of local anesthetic within the epidural space results in blockade of the afferent and efferent sympathetic-mediated GI reflexes, but parasympathetic innervation is left intact. The effect of an imbalanced sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous system has been associated with improved GI blood flow and anastomotic mucosal perfusion. This controls pain and decreases the need for opioids.[74–78]

However, it should be noted that severe hypotension (>50% reduction in systolic blood pressure) may be associated with worsened local perfusion.[79,80] Vasoactive drugs, such as norepinephrine, can attenuate this effect and improve colonic perfusion.[81]

In general, epidural analgesia can effectively decrease the incidence of postoperative ileus. A Cochrane review showed that epidural usage reduces postoperative ileus by 36 hours when a local anesthetic regimen was used as compared to an opioid-based regimen.[82]

Effect on Enteric Anastomosis Dehiscence

Unopposed parasympathetic activity with blockage of sympathetic fibers has increased concerns among clinicians that the increased mobility and intraluminal pressures will lead to anastomotic leaks and possibly rupture.[83] However, animal studies have failed to show any difference in anastomotic bursting pressure when epidural anesthesia is compared to general anesthesia.[84] In fact, it could be argued that with improvement of GI blood flow and tissue oxygenation the neuroaxial block can actually reduce the risk of anastomotic breakdown. However, the effect of neuroaxial blocks after GI procedures and laparotomies on enteric anastomotic leakage is not supported in the literature.[81,85]

Effect on Nutrition

The early postoperative period after GI surgery is characterized by a systemic stress response and catabolic activity. This effect, in conjunction with a lack of nutrition, results in postoperative weakness and muscle wasting. As discussed previously, epidural analgesia has been shown to decrease opioid requirements and reduce postoperative ileus. This, in turn, enhances enteral feeding.[86] Therefore, blockade of afferent stimuli and the endocrine metabolic responses, as well as the improvement in catabolism seen with epidural analgesia, are part of an enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) protocol for major GI surgeries to facilitate oral nutrition.[87]

Effect on Postoperative Nausea and Vomiting

Pain management plays a large role in postoperative nausea and vomiting therapy.[88] Avoiding systemic opioids and the use of epidural analgesia helps to reduce the incidence of nausea and vomiting. However, in the setting of regional anesthesia, attention should be paid to unopposed vagal activity, local anesthetic systemic toxicity, hypotension, and medication administration.

Spinal anesthesia poses the highest risk for the development of nausea and vomiting and is seen in 20% of patients. The effects of spinal anesthesia, especially with T6 to L1 blockade, include sympathetic innervation and unopposed vagal activity and result in GI hyperperistalsis, nausea, and vomiting.[89] In addition, TEA or spinal anesthesia that results in systemic hypotension severe enough to cause cerebral ischemia can cause nausea and vomiting.[90]

Effect on Gastrointestinal Blood Flow and Volume

The degree of arterial hypotension induced by spinal or epidural anesthesia is directly related to the extent of the blockade, the dose of local anesthetic used, and baseline hemodynamics.[91] Lumbar epidural anesthesia leads to arterial and venous dilation at the segments affected by the anesthetic. The constriction of the proximal part of the splanchnic vasculature shifts blood volume from the splanchnic system into the systemic circulation and usually results in preservation of stressed volume and blood pressure. TEA is associated with pronounced mesenteric vasodilation and arterial hypotension, while intestinal blood flow and oxygen consumption are maintained**.** A study using labeled red cells demonstrated that epidural anesthesia with sensory block at T4 to T5 increased blood volume in both the intrathoracic and splanchnic vasculature. The addition of a vasoconstrictor decreased volume within the splanchnic region, but increased volume within the thorax. The authors estimated that the use of a vasoconstrictor during TEA led to a shift of approximately 1 L of blood from the splanchnic area into the thoracic and systemic circulation.[92] Infusion of fluid or the use of adrenergic agonists apparently increases stressed volume. Infusion of fluid increases total (stressed and unstressed) blood volume, whereas adrenergic agonists move existing blood volume from unstressed to stressed.[93] In many situations, the use of α-adrenergic agonists might be more beneficial than infusion of fluid. Because veins are much more sensitive to adrenergic stimulation than arteries are, small doses of α-adrenergic agonists in normovolemic patients would constrict veins (increasing stressed volume) without affecting arteries or jeopardizing tissue perfusion.

ENHANCED RECOVERY AFTER SURGERY FOR GASTROINTESTINAL PROCEDURES—PHYSIOLOGIC BASIS

ERAS is an interdisciplinary, multimodal concept aimed at accelerating postoperative convalescence and reducing general morbidity by simultaneously applying several interventions. ERAS represents a paradigm shift in perioperative care. It reexamines traditional practice by replacing it with evidence-based practices.[94]

ERAS for GI procedures highlights a perioperative regimen with emphasis on[95,96]:

1. Regional anesthesia
2. Avoidance of opioids
3. Multimodal analgesia
4. Nutrition and preoperative carbohydrates
5. Selective bowel preparation
6. Fluid optimization
7. Temperature control
8. Early removal of drains and tubes
9. Early mobilization
10. Early oral intake

The use of ERAS protocols has been associated with shorter hospitalizations.[97]

PHYSIOLOGIC BASIS OF ERAS

Perioperative Pain Control

Many aspects of regional anesthesia, opioid-sparing anesthesia, and multimodal analgesia have already been discussed. The effect of pain control on postoperative outcomes has also been evaluated in multiple studies and is an inseparable part of ERAS protocols for many surgeries including GI procedures.[98–100] The favorable physiologic effects on the respiratory and cardiovascular systems by epidural analgesia may serve as yet another reason as to why epidural analgesia is a devoted part of ERAS protocols.[101–102]

Preoperative Carbohydrate Loading and Early Postoperative Feeding

There is strong evidence in animal studies demonstrating that fed animals tolerate stress much better than fasted animals. Perioperative oral carbohydrates raise insulin sensitivity by 50%. This means there is 50% less insulin resistance in the postoperative period, which also ameliorates ilium barrier failure. There is also less risk of development of hyperglycemic events and an improvement in retention of protein and lean body mass.[103,105] Enteric feeding is associated with prevention of bacterial translocation[104] or gut barrier failure.[105] Carbohydrate loading shifts the cellular metabolism to an anabolic state that will support postoperative nutrition.[106–108]

Most of the national and international societies now recommend a 6-hour preoperative fast for solids and a

2-hour fast for clear fluids, which includes carbohydrate drinks.[109–112]

In order to maintain metabolic and nutritional homoeostasis, early postoperative feeding has been suggested. A small study on patients after major colorectal surgery showed that immediate postoperative enteral feeding does not result in a net loss of body nitrogen.[113]

Temperature Control

In addition to the adverse effects of hypothermia (<35°C) on coagulation, cardiac, respiratory, and neurologic function, hypothermia triggers a whole-body thermoregulatory vasoconstriction response. Consequently, it reduces cutaneous flow and can result in tissue hypoxia and failure of the humoral immune defense system.[114–116] Hypothermia is associated with a threefold increase in the incidence of surgical site infection.[117]

Nasogastric Tubes

Regular use of nasogastric tubes following major intraabdominal surgery is for gastric decompression, thereby preventing anastomotic leakage and promoting early return of bowel function. However, routine use has been questioned as it is very uncomfortable for the patient and there is an associated risk of developing pulmonary complications, delays in the return of bowel function, and increasing the rate of wound infections.[118] In addition, the presence of gastric tubes is associated with increased gastric secretion and motility—a physiologic response to the presence of a foreign body.

Bowel Preparation

Bowel preparation for major GI procedures has been implemented in order to reduce postoperative complications related to infected bowel content,[119] with polyethylene glycol a most popular preparation. Adverse physiologic effects of this bowel preparation include decreased exercise capacity, lower weight, increased plasma osmolality, decreased urea and phosphate, and reduced plasma calcium and potassium.[120] These effects along with fasting can produce a very unpleasant experience for the patient.

The routine use of bowel preparation has been questioned repeatedly. In fact, recent studies have shown that mechanical bowel preparation can be safely omitted before elective colorectal surgery.[121,122]

Drains

Intraabdominal drains are placed to prevent accumulations of intraabdominal collections, to quickly discover postoperative bleeding, to diagnose anastomotic leakage, and to drain intraabdominal abscesses. However, routine use of drains simply placed prophylactically after major abdominal surgeries has recently been questioned. These drains are not innocuous as they can be associated with bacterial contamination, wound infection, incisional hernia, intestinal obstruction and fistula formation, and bleeding.[123] There is insufficient evidence to support the notion that routine use of drainage after colorectal anastomoses can prevent anastomotic leakage or any other related complications.[124]

Fluid Management

All patients having elective surgery undergo a preoperative starvation period that results in a fluid deficit. Typically, it is not enough to produce major fluid shifts, but it may stimulate the production of antidiuretic hormone, atrial natriuretic peptide, the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, and an increase in sympathetic activity. This relative hypovolemia is also more pronounced in patients who receive bowel preparation, experience diarrhea or vomiting, are exposed to high temperatures, or have high nasogastric tube output.

Recent NPO guidelines allow patients to have clear fluids up to 2 hours prior to surgery.[125] Intraoperative fluid management takes into account the preoperative fluid deficit, the presence of a regional anesthesia technique, hemorrhage, and third-space losses. However, prudent administration of intravenous fluids is necessary as free and rapid administration of salt and water will increase capillary hydrostatic pressure, cause tissue and bowel edema, and adversely affect anastomotic integrity. Optimizing fluid administration should focus on increasing tissue perfusion and oxygen delivery, and modulation of the hormonal and inflammatory response.[126]

Mobilization and Early Ambulation

Early postoperative ambulation is recommended for prevention and treatment of postoperative ileus.[127,128] It is believed that early ambulation helps with the restoration of normal bowel function. However, studies demonstrate that GI myoelectrical activity patterns are not always expedited by early postoperative ambulation; at least there is no correlation with the extent of ambulation.[129] Yet, early ambulation confers many other advantages, specifically prevention of postoperative thromboembolism and pulmonary complications.[130,131]

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Matthias F. Stopfkuchen-Evans and Simon Gelman for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Agur A, et al. *Grant's Atlas of Anatomy*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005.
2. Andreoli TE, Carpenter CCJ, Cecil RL. *Andreoli and Carpenter's Cecil Essentials of Medicine*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2007. Print.
3. Quiqley EM, et al. *Braz J Med Biol Res*. 1998;31:889–900.
4. Seok JW. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil*. 2011;17(2):189–191.
5. Patcharatrakul T, Gonlachanvit S. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil*. 2013;19(3):395–404.
6. Sarna SK. *Colonic Motility: From Bench to Bedside*. San Rafael: Morgan & Claypool Life Sciences; 2010.
7. Thompson W, et al. *Gut*. 1999;45(suppl 2):1143–1147.
8. Castedal M, et al. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther*. 2000;14(5):571–577.
9. Weiskopf RB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(5):1035–1045.
10. Hopster K, et al. *Vet J*. 2015;205(1):62–68.
11. Muller M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(2):110–115.
12. Desmet M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica*. 2016.
13. Jensen AG, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39(9):938–943.

14. Tylman M, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2011;77:275–282.
15. Lee TL, et al. *Anesthesia & Analgesia*. 1999;89(5):1246–1249.
16. Leslie K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(2):387–393.
17. Patel S, et al. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2012;28(2):162–171.
18. Woerlee GM. *Common Perioperative Problems and the Anaesthetist. Developments in Critical Care Medicine and Anaesthesiology*. Vol. 18. Springer Netherlands; 1988.
19. Galligan J, Akbarali H. *Am J Gastroenterol Suppl*. 2014;2(1):17–21.
20. Leppert W. *Contem Oncol (Pozn)*. 2012;16(2):125–131.
21. Tassinari D, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2008;11:492–502.
22. Yuan CS, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1997;61: 467–475.
23. McNicol E, et al. *Pain Med*. 2008;9:634–659.
24. McNicol E, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2008;(2):CD006332.
25. Keller D, Stein SL. *Clin Colon Rectal Surg*. 2013;26(3):186–190.
26. Delaney C, et al. In: Bosker G, ed. *Clinical Consensus Update in General Surgery*. Roswell(GA): Pharmatecture, LLC; 2006.
27. Kumar C, Bellamy M. *Gastrointestinal and Colorectal Anesthesia*. New York: Taylor & Francis; 2006. Print.
28. Zeinali F, et al. *Can J Surg*. 2009;52:153–157.
29. Holzheimer RG, et al., eds. *Surgical Treatment: Evidence-Based and Problem-Oriented*. Munich: Zuckschwerdt; 2001.
30. Jeejeebhoy KN. *CMAJ*. 2002;166(10):1297–1302.
31. McSwiney BA. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 1944;(6):365–390.
32. Cervero F. *Physiol Rev. Jan*. 1994;74(1):95–138.
33. Scratchered T, Grundy D. *Br. J Anesth*. 1984;56:3–18.
34. Procacci P, et al. *Prog Brain Res*. 1986;67:21–28.
35. Paintal AS. *Prog Brain Res*. 1986;67:3–19.
36. Jänig W, Morrison JFB. *Prog Brain Res*. 1986;67:78–114.
37. Kuntz A. *The Autonomic Nervous System*. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger; 1953.
38. Bornica JJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1968;29:793–813.
39. Gebhart GF. *Gut*. 2000;47(suppl 4):iv54–iv55; discussion iv8. PMID 11076915.
40. Altschuler SM, et al. *J Comp Neurol*. 1989;283(2):248–268.
41. Sengupta JN, Gebhart GF. Mechanosensitive afferent fibres in the gastrointestinal and lower urinary tracts. In: Gebhart GF, ed. *Visceral Pain*. Seattle: IASP Press; 1995:75–98.
42. Langley JN. *Brain*. 1903;(26):1–16.
43. Michell GAC. *Anatomy of the Autonomous Nervous System*. Livingstone: Edinburgh; 1953.
44. Sengupta JN, Gebhart GF. *J Neurophysiol*. 1994;71(6):2046–2060.
45. Al-Chaer ED, Traub RJ. *Pain*. 2002;96(3):221–225.
46. Renck H. Management of abdomino-visceral pain by nerve block techniques. *H Mediglobe*. 1992.
47. Sikandar S, Dickenson AH. *Curr Opin Support Palliat Care*. 2012;6(1):17–26.
48. Fields HL, Liebeskind JC. *Pharmacological Approaches to the Treatment of Chronic Pain: New Concepts and Critical Issues*. Seattle: 1994:11–30.
49. Procacci P, Zoppi M, Maresca M. Visceral sensation. In: Cervero F, Morrison JFB, eds. *Progress in Pain Research*. Amsterdam: Elsevier; 1986;39:21–28.
50. Hardy JD, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1950;29(1):115–140.
51. Gebhart GF. *Visceral Pain, Progress in Pain Research and Management*. Seattle: IASP Press; 1995:3–23.
52. Mayer EA. *Am J Med*. 1999;107(5A). 12S–9S.
53. Van Oudenhove L, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 2011;121(8):3094–3099.
54. Mayer EA. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2011;12(8):453–466.
55. Chu LF, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2008;24(6):479–496.
56. Castro-Lopes J, Raja SN, Schmelz M. *Pain 2008 Refresher Course Syllabus*. Seattle: IASP Press; 2008:381–389.
57. Boddy AP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(3):682–688.
58. Lillemoe KD, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1993;217:447–457.
59. Puli SR, et al. *Dig Dis Sci*. 2009;54(11):2330–2337.
60. Rana MV, et al. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2014;18(2):394.
61. Liu SS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(4):757–765.
62. Leslie JB, et al. *Adv Prev Med*. 2011:1–10.
63. Yukioka H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:581–584.
64. Wilder-Smith CH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:639–647.
65. Ingram DM, Sheiner HJ. *Br J Surg*. 1981;68:572–576.
66. Nimmo WS, et al. *Br J Clin Pharm*. 1975;2:509–513.
67. Desborough JP. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85(1):109–117.
68. Guha A, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2002;19(09):652.
69. Boeckxstaens GE, de Jonge WJ. *Gut*. 2009;58:1300.
70. Desborough JP. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85(1):109–117.
71. Kehlet H. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;63:189–195.
72. Carli F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:729–734.
73. Kouraklis G, et al. *Int Surg*. 2000;85:353–357.
74. Liu S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(6):1474–1506.
75. Holte K, Kehlet H. *Br J Surg*. 2000;87(11):1480–1493.
76. Shi WZ, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58(8):923–932.
77. Steinbrook RA. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(4):837–844.
78. Guay J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(6):1591–1602.
79. Steinbrook RA. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:837–844.
80. Carpenter RL. *Reg Anesth*. 1996;21:13–17.
81. Michelet P, et al. *Chest*. 2005;128(5):3461–3466.
82. Jorgensen H, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2000;4:CD001893.
83. Holte K, Kehlet H. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26:111–117.
84. Schnitzler M, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1992;17:143–147.
85. Ryan P, et al. *Eur J Surg*. 1992;158:45–49.
86. Holte K, Kehlet H. *Clin Nutr*. 2002;21(3):199–206.
87. Lewis KS, et al. *Am J Hosp Pharm*. 1994;51(12):1539–1554.
88. Watcha MF, White PF. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77(1):162–184.
89. Carpenter RL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(6):906–916.
90. Freise H, Fischer LG. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22(5):644–648.
91. Clemente A, Carli F. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2008;74(10):549–563.
92. Stanton-Hicks M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(3):317–322.
93. Holte K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(2):281–286.
94. Ljungqvist O. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr*. 2014;38(5):559–566.
95. Varadhan KK, et al. *Clin Nutr*. 2010;29(4):434–440.
96. Ljungqvist O, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2017;152(3):292–298.
97. Nygren J, et al. *Current Opinion in Clinical Nutrition and Metabolic Care*. 2003;6:593–597.
98. Pöpping DM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259(6):1056–1067.
99. Hughes MJ, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2014;149(12):1224–12230.
100. Khan SA, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2013;27(7):2581–2591.
101. Popping DM, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2008;143:990–999; discussion 1000.
102. Popping DM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259:1056–1067.
103. Soop M, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2004;91(9):1138–1145.
104. Wildhaber BE, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2005;123(1):8–16.
105. Mosenthal AC, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30(2):396–402.
106. Wang ZG, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2010;97:317–327.
107. Yuill KA, et al. *Clin Nutr*. 2005;24:32–37.
108. Bardram L, et al. *Lancet*. 1995;345(8952):763–764.
109. Smith MD, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;8:CD009161.
110. American Society of Anesthesiologists Committee. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:495–511.
111. Soreide E, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:1041–1047.
112. Spies CD, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2003;52:1039–4.
113. Soop M, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2004;91:1138–1145.
114. Hart SR, et al. *Ochsner J*. 2011;11(3):259–270.
115. van Oss CJ, et al. *J Reticuloendothel Soc*. 1980;27(6):561–565. PubMed.
116. Sheffield CW, et al. *Wound Repair Regen*. 1996;4(3):339–345.
117. Kurz A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;334(19):1209–1215.
118. Nelson R, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2005;92(6):673–680.
119. Nichols RL, Condon RE. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1971;132(2):323–337.
120. Bucher P, et al. *Dis Colon Rectum*. 2004;47(8):1397–1402.
121. Slim K, et al. *Gastroenterol Clin Biol*. 2002;26:667–669. 8–9.
122. Guenaga KF, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2005;1:CD001544.
123. Jesus EC, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2004;4:CD002100.
124. Merad F, et al. *Surgery*. 1999;125(5):529–535.
125. Practice guidelines for preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration: application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Preoperative Fasting and the Use of Pharmacologic Agents to Reduce the Risk of Pulmonary Aspiration. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126 (3):376–393.
126. Scott MJ, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2015;59(10):1212–1231.
127. Story SK. *Chamberlain RS Dig Surg*. 2009;26(4):265–275.
128. Brieger GH. *Ann Surg*. 1983;197:443–449.
129. Waldhausen JH, Schirmer BD. *Ann Surg*. 1990;212(6):671–677.
130. Wenger NK. *Cardiovascular Clinics*. 1978;9(3):107–115.
131. Parker HG, et al. *Surg Clin N Am*. 1976;56(3):667–672.

References

1. Agur A, Dalley A. *Grant's Atlas of Anatomy*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005.
2. Andreoli TE, Charles C, Carpenter J, Cecil Russell L. *Andreoli and Carpenter's Cecil Essentials of Medicine*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2007.
3. Quiqley EM, Thompson JS. The effects of surgery on gastrointestinal motor activity. *Braz J Med Biol Res*. 1998;31:889–900.
4. Seok JW. How to interpret gastric emptying scintigraphy. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil*. 2011;17(2):189–191.
5. Patcharatrakul T, Gonlachanvit S. Technique of functional and motility test: how to perform antroduodenal manometry. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil*. 2013;19(3):395–404.
6. Sarna SK. *Colonic Motility: From Bench to Bedside*. San Rafael (CA): Morgan & Claypool Life Sciences; 2010.
7. Thompson W, Longstreth G, Drossman D, et al. Functional bowel disorders and functional abdominal pain. *Gut*. 1999;45(suppl 2):1143–1147.
8. Castedal M, Bjornsson E, Abrahamsson H. Effects of midazolam on small bowel motility in humans. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther*. 2000;14(5):571–577.
9. Weiskopf RB, Moore MA, Eger EI, et al. Rapid increase in desflurane concentration is associated with greater transient cardiovascular stimulation than with rapid increase in isoflurane concentration in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(5):1035–1045.
10. Hopster K, Hopster-Iversen C, Geburek F, et al. Temporal and concentration effects on isoflurane anaesthesia on intestinal tissue oxygenation and perfusion in horses. *Vet J*. 2015;205(1):62–68.
11. Muller M, Schindler E, Roth S, et al. Effects of desflurane and isoflurane on intestinal tissue oxygen pressure during colorectal surgery. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(2):110–115.
12. Desmet M, Vander Cruyssen P, Pottel H, et al. The influence of propofol and sevoflurane on intestinal motility during laparoscopic surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica*. 2016.
13. Jensen AG, Kalman SH, Nystrom PO, et al. Anaesthetic technique does not influence postoperative bowel function: a comparison of propofol, nitrous oxide and isoflurane. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39(9):938–943.
14. Tylman M, Sarbinowski R, Bengtson JP, Kvarnström A, Bengtsson A. Inflammatory response in patients undergoing colorectal cancer surgery: the effect of two different anesthetic techniques. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2011;77:275–282.
15. Lee TL, Ang SB, Dambisya YM, et al. The effect of propofol on human gastric and colonic muscle contractions. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(5):1246–1249.
16. Leslie K, et al. Nitrous oxide and long-term morbidity and mortality in the ENIGMA trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(2):387–393.
17. Patel S, Lutz J, Panchagnula U, et al. Anesthesia and perioperative management of colorectal surgical patients—a clinical review (Part 1). *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2012;28(2):162–171.
18. Woerlee GM. *Common Perioperative Problems and the Anaesthetist. Developments in Critical Care Medicine and Anaesthesiology*. Vol. 18. Springer Netherlands; 1988.
19. Galligan J, Akbarali H. Moleculary physiology of enteric opioid receptors. *Am J Gastroenterol Suppl*. 2014;2(1):17–21.
20. Leppert W. The impact of opioid analgesics on the gastrointestinal tract function and the current management possibilities. *Contem Oncol (Pozn)*. 2012;16(2):125–131.
21. Tassinari D, et al. Adverse effects of transdermal opiates treating moderate-severe cancer pain in comparison to long-acting morphine: a meta-analysis and systematic review of the literature. *J Palliat Med*. 2008;11:492–502.
22. Yuan CS, et al. The safety and efficacy of oral methynaltrexone in preventing morphine-induced delay in oral-cecal transit time. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1997;61: 467–475.
23. McNicol E, et al. Efficacy and safety of mu-opioid antagonists in the treatment of opioid-induced bowel dysfunction: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Pain Med*. 2008;9:634–659.
24. McNicol E, et al. Mu-opioid antagonists for opioid-induced bowel dysfunction. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2008;2:CD006332.
25. Keller D, Stein SL. Facilitating return of bowel function after colorectal surgery: alvimopan and gum chewing. *Clin Colon Rectal Surg*. 2013;26(3):186–190.
26. Delaney C, Kehlet H, Senagore A, et al. Postoperative ileus: profiles, risk factors, and definitions—a framework for optimizing surgical outcomes in patients undergoing major abdominal colorectal surgery. In: Bosker G, ed. *Clinical Consensus Update in General Surgery*. Roswell (GA): Pharmatecture, LLC; 2006.
27. Kumar C, Bellamy M. *Gastrointestinal and Colorectal Anesthesia*. New York: Taylor & Francis; 2006.
28. Zeinali F, Stulberg JJ, Delaney CP, Pharmacological management of postoperative ileus. *Can J Surg*. 2009;52:153–157.
29. Holzheimer RG, Mannick JA, eds. *Surgical Treatment: Evidence-Based and Problem-Oriented*. Munich; 2001.
30. Jeejeebhoy KN. Short bowel syndrome: a nutritional and medical approach. *CMAJ*. 2002;166(10):1297–1302.
31. McSwiney BA. Visceral functions of the nervous system. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 1944;6:365–390.
32. Cervero F. Sensory innervation of the viscera: peripheral basis of visceral pain. *Physiol Rev*. 1994;74(1):95–138.
33. Sengupta JN, Gebhart GF. Mechanosensitive afferent fibres in the gastrointestinal and lower urinary tracts. In: Gebhart GF, ed. *Visceral Pain*. Seattle: IASP Press; 1995:75–98.
34. Scratchered T, Grundy D. The physiology of intestinal motility and secretion. *Br J Anesth*. 1984;56:3–18.
35. Procacci P, Zoppi M, Maresca M. Clinical approach to visceral pain. *Prog Brain Res*. 1986;67:21–28.
36. Paintal AS. The visceral sensations—some basic mechanism. *Prog Brain Res*. 1986;67:3–19.
37. Jänig W, Morrison JFB. Functional properties of spinal visceral afferents supplying abdominal and pelvic organs with special emphasis on visceral nociception. *Prog Brain Res*. 1986;67:78–114.
38. Kuntz A. *The Autonomic Nervous System*. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger; 1953.
39. Bornica JJ. Autonomic innervation of the viscera in relation to nerve block. *Anesthesiology*. 1968;29:793–813.
40. Gebhart GF. Visceral pain-peripheral sensitisation. *Gut*. 2000;47(suppl 4): iv54– iv55; discussion iv8. PMID 11076915.
41. Altschuler SM, Bao XM, Bieger D, Hopkins DA, Miselis RR. Viscerotopic representation of the upper alimentary tract in the rat: sensory ganglia and nuclei of the solitary and spinal trigeminal tracts. *J Comp Neurol*. 1989;283(2):248–268.
42. Langley JN. The autonomic nervous system. *Brain*. 1903;(26):1–16.
43. Michell GAC. *Anatomy of the Autonomous Nervous System*. Edinburgh: Livingston; 1953.
44. Sengupta JN, Gebhart GF. Characterization of mechanosensitive pelvic nerve afferent fibers innervating the colon of the rat. *J Neurophysiol*. 1994;71(6):2046–2060.
45. Al-Chaer ED, Traub RJ. Biological basis of visceral pain: recent developments. *Pain*. 96(3):221–225.
46. Renck H. *Management of Abdomino-visceral Pain by Nerve Block Techniques*. H Mediglobe; 1992.
47. Sikandar S, Dickenson AH. Visceral pain – the ins and outs, the ups and downs. *Curr Opin Support Palliat Care*. 2012;6(1):17–26.
48. Fields HL, Liebeskind JC. *Pharmacological Approaches to the Treatment of Chronic Pain: New Concepts and Critical Issues*. Seattle: 1994:11–30.
49. Procacci P, Zoppi M, Maresca M. Visceral sensation. In: Cervero F, Morrison JFB, eds. *Progress in Pain Research*. Amsterdam: Elsevier; 1986;39:21–28.
50. Hardy JD, Wolff HG, Goodell H. Experimental evidence on the nature of cutaneous hyperalgesia. *J Clin Invest*. 1950;29(1):115–140.
51. Gebhart GF. *Visceral Pain, Progress in Pain Research and Management*. Seattle: IASP Press; 1995:3–23.
52. Mayer EA. Emerging disease model for functional gastrointestinal disorders. *Am J Med*. 1999;107(5A):12S–19S.
53. Van Oudenhove L, McKie S, Lassman D, et al. Fatty acid-induced gut-brain signaling attenuates neural and behavioral effects of sad emotion in humans. *J Clin Invest*. 2011;121(8):3094–3099.
54. Mayer EA. Gut feelings: the emerging biology of gut-brain communication. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2011;12(8):453–466.
55. Chu LF, Angst MS, Clark D. Opioid-induced hyperalgesia in humans: molecular mechanisms and clinical considerations. *Clin J Pain*. 2008;24(6):479–496.
56. Castro-Lopes J, Raja SN, Schmelz M. *Pain 2008 Refresher Course Syllabus*. Seattle: IASP Press; 2008:381–389.

57. Boddy AP, Mehta S, Rhodes M. The effect of intraperitoneal local anesthesia in laparoscopic cholecystectomy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(3):682–688.
58. Lillemoe KD, Cameron JL, Kaufman HS, et al. Chemical splanchnicectomy in patients with unresectable pancreatic cancer. A prospective randomized trial. *Ann Surg*. 1993;217:447–457.
59. Puli SR, Reddy JB, Bechtold ML, Antillon MR, Brugge WR. EUS-guided celiac plexus neurolysis for pain due to chronic pancreatitis or pancreatic cancer pain: a meta-analysis and systematic review. *Dig Dis Sci*. 2009;54(11):2330–2337.
60. Rana MV, Candido KD, Raja O, Knezevic NN. Celiac plexus block in the management of chronic abdominal pain. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2014;18(2):394.
61. Liu SS, Carpenter RL, Mackey DC, et al. Effects of perioperative analgesic technique on rate of recovery after colon surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(4):757–765.
62. Leslie JB, Viscusi ER, Pergolizzi JV, Panchal SJ. Anesthetic routines: the anesthesiologist's role in gi recovery and postoperative ileus. *Adv Prev Med*. 2011:1–10.
63. Yukioka H, Bogod DG, Rosen M. Recovery of bowel motility after surgery. Detection of time to first flatus from carbon dioxide concentration and patient estimate after nal- buphine and placebo. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:581–584.
64. Wilder-Smith CH, Hill L, Wilkins J, et al. Effects of morphine and tramadol on somatic and visceral sensory function and gastrointestinal motility after abdominal surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:639–647.
65. Ingram DM, Sheiner HJ. Postoperative gastric emptying. *Br J Surg*. 1981;68:572–576.
66. Nimmo WS, Heading RC, Wilson, et al. Inhibition of gastric emptying and drug absorption by narcotic analgesics. *Br J Clin Pharm*. 1975;2:509–513.
67. Desborough JP. The stress response to trauma and surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85(1):109–117.
68. Guha A, Scawn ND, Rogers SA, Pennefather SH, Russell GN. Gastric emptying in post-thoracotomy patients receiving a thoracic fentanyl-bupivacaine epidural infusion. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2002;19(09):652.
69. Boeckxstaens GE, de Jonge WJ. Neuroimmune mechanisms in postoperative ileus. *Gut*. 2009; 58:1300.
70. Desborough JP. The stress response to trauma and surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85(1):109–117.
71. Kehlet H. Surgical stress, the role of pain and analgesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;63:189–195.
72. Carli F, Webster J, Pearson M, et al. Protein metabolism after abdominal surgery: effect of 24 hour extradural block with local anaesthetic. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:729–734.
73. Kouraklis G, Glinavou A, Raftopoulos L, et al. Epidural analgesia attenuates the systemic response to upper abdominal surgery: a randomized trial. *Int Surg*. 2000;85:353–357.
74. Liu S, Carpenter RL, Neal JM. Epidural anesthesia and analgesia: their role in postoperative outcome. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(6):1474–1506.
75. Holte K, Kehlet H. Postoperative ileus: a preventable event. *Br J Surg*. 2000;87(11):1480–1493.
76. Shi WZ, Miao YL, Yakoob MY, et al. Recovery of gastrointestinal function with thoracic epidural vs. systemic analgesia following gastrointestinal surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58(8):923–932.
77. Steinbrook RA. Epidural anesthesia and gastrointestinal motility. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(4):837–844.
78. Guay J, Nishimori M, Kopp SL. Epidural local anesthetics versus opioid based analgesic regimens for postoperative gastrointestinal paralysis, vomiting, and pain after abdominal surgery: a Cochrane review. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(6):1591–1602.
79. Steinbrook RA. Epidural anesthesia and gastrointestinal motility. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:837–844.
80. Carpenter RL. Gastrointestinal benefits of regional anesthesia/analgesia. *Reg Anesth*. 1996;21:13–17.
81. Michelet P, D'Journo XB, Roch A, et al. Perioperative risk factors for anastomotic leakage after esophagectomy: influence of thoracic epidural analgesia. *Chest*. 2005;128(5):3461–3466.
82. Jorgensen H, Wetterslev J, Moiniche S, et al. Epidural local anesthetic versus opioid-based analgesic regimens on postoperative gastrointestinal paralysis, PONV and pain after abdominal surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2000;4:CD001893.
83. Holte K, Kehlet H. Epidural analgesia and risk of anastomotic leakage. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26:111–117.
84. Schnitzler M, Kilbride MJ, Senagore A. Effect of epidural analgesia on colorectal anastomotic healing and colonic motility. *Reg Anesth*. 1992;17:143–147.
85. Ryan P, Schweitzer SA, Woods RJ. Effects of epidural and general anesthesia compared with general anesthesia alone in large bowel anastomosis. A prospective study. *Eur J Surg*. 1992;158:45–49.
86. Holte K, Kehlet H. Epidural anaesthesia and analgesia—effects on surgical stress responses and implications for postoperative nutrition. *Clin Nutr*. 2002;21(3):199–206.
87. Lewis KS, Whipple JK, Michael KA, Quebbeman EJ. Effect of analgesic treatment on the physiological consequences of acute pain. *Am J Hosp Pharm*. 1994;51(12):1539–1554.
88. Watcha MF, White PF. Postoperative nausea and vomiting. Its etiology, treatment, and prevention. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77(1):162–184.
89. Carpenter RL, Caplan RA, Brown DL, Stephenson C, Wu R. Incidence and risk factors for side effects of spinal anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(6):906–916.
90. Freise H, Fischer LG. Intestinal effects of thoracic epidural anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22(5):644–648.
91. Clemente A, Carli F. The physiological effects of thoracic epidural anesthesia and analgesia on the cardiovascular, respiratory and gastrointestinal systems. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2008;74(10):549–563.
92. Stanton-Hicks M, Höck A, Stühmeier KD, Arndt JO. Venoconstrictor agents mobilize blood from different sources and increase intrathoracic filling during epidural anesthesia in supine humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(3):317–322.
93. Holte K, Foss NB, Svensén C, Lund C, Madsen JL, Kehlet H. Epidural anesthesia, hypotension, and changes in intravascular volume. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(2):281–286.
94. Ljungqvist O. ERAS—enhanced recovery after surgery: moving evidence-based perioperative care to practice. *J Parenter Enteral Nutr*. 2014;38(5):559–566.
95. Varadhan KK, Neal KR, Dejong CH, Fearon KC, Ljungqvist O, Lobo DN. The enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) pathway for patients undergoing major elective open colorectal surgery: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Clin Nutr*. 2010;29(4):434–440.
96. Ljungqvist O, Scott M, Fearon KC. Enhanced recovery after surgery: a review. *JAMA Surg*. 2017;152(3):292–298.
97. Nygren J, Thorell A, Ljungqvist O. New developments facilitating nutritional intake after gastrointestinal surgery. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care*. 2003;6:593–597.
98. Pöpping DM, Elia N, Van Aken HK, et al. Impact of epidural analgesia on mortality and morbidity after surgery: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259(6):1056–1067.
99. Hughes MJ, Ventham NT, McNally S, Harrison E, Wigmore S. Analgesia after open abdominal surgery in the setting of enhanced recovery surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA Surg*. 2014;149(12):1224–1230.
100. Khan SA, Khokhar HA, Nasr AR, Carton E, El-Masry S. Effect of epidural analgesia on bowel function in laparoscopic colorectal surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Surg Endosc*. 2013;27(7):2581–2591.
101. Popping DM, Elia N, Marret E, Remy C, Tramer MR. Protective effects of epidural analgesia on pulmonary complications after abdominal and thoracic surgery: a meta-analysis. *Arch Surg*. 2008;143:990–999; discussion 1000.
102. Popping DM, Elia N, Van Aken HK, et al. Impact of epidural analgesia on mortality and morbidity after surgery: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259:1056–1067.
103. Soop M, Carlson GL, Hopkinson J, et al. Randomized clinical trial of the effects of immediate enteral nutrition on metabolic responses to major colorectal surgery in an enhanced recovery protocol. *Br J Surg*. 2004;91(9):1138–1145.
104. Wildhaber BE, Yang H, Spencer AU, et al. Lack of enteral nutrition—effects on the intestinal immune system. *J Surg Res*. 2005;123(1):8–16.
105. Mosenthal AC, Xu D, Deitch EA. Elemental and intravenous total parenteral nutrition diet-induced gut barrier failure is intestinal site specific and can be prevented by feeding nonfermentable fiber. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30(2):396–402.
106. Wang ZG, Wang Q, Wang WJ, Qin HL. Randomized clinical trial to compare the effects of preoperative oral carbohydrate versus

placebo on insulin resistance after colorectal surgery. *Br J Surg*. 2010;97:317–327.

107. Yuill KA, Richardson RA, Davidson HI, Garden OJ, Parks RW. The administration of an oral carbohydrate-containing fluid prior to major elective upper-gastrointestinal surgery preserves skeletal muscle mass postoperatively–a randomised clinical trial. *Clin Nutr*. 2005;24:32–37.
108. Bardram L, Funch-Jensen P, Jensen P, Crawford ME, Kehlet H. Recovery after laparoscopic colonic surgery with epidural analgesia, and early oral nutrition and mobilisation. *Lancet*. 1995;345(8952):763–764.
109. Smith MD, McCall J, Plank L, Herbison GP, Soop M, Nygren J. Preoperative carbohydrate treatment for enhancing recovery after elective surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;8:CD009161.
110. American Society of Anesthesiologists Committee. Practice guidelines for preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration: application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Committee on Standards and Practice Parameters. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:495–511.
111. Soreide E, Eriksson LI, Hirlekar G, et al. Pre-operative fasting guidelines: an update. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:1041–1047.
112. Spies CD, Breuer JP, Gust R, et al. Klinik fur Anasthesiologie und operative Intensivmedizin C-UB [Preoperative fasting. An update]. *Anaesthesist*. 2003;52:1039–4.
113. Soop M, Carlson GL, Hopkinson J, et al. Randomized clinical trial of the effects of immediate enteral nutrition on metabolic responses to major colorectal surgery in an enhanced recovery protocol. *Br J Surg*. 2004;91:1138–1145.
114. Hart SR, Bordes B, Hart J, Corsino D, Harmon D. Unintended perioperative hypothermia. *Ochsner J*. 2011;11(3):259–270.
115. van Oss CJ, Absolom DR, Moore LL, Park BH, Humbert JR. Effect of temperature on the chemotaxis, phagocytic engulfment, digestion and O2 consumption of human polymorphonuclear leukocytes. *J Reticuloendothel Soc*. 1980;27(6):561–565.
116. Sheffield CW, Sessler DI, Hopf HW, et al. Centrally and locally mediated thermoregulatory responses alter subcutaneous oxygen tension. *Wound Repair Regen*. 1996;4(3):339–345.
117. Kurz A, Sessler DI, Lenhardt R. Perioperative normothermia to reduce the incidence of surgical-wound infection and shorten hospitalization. Study of wound infection and temperature group. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;334(19):1209–1215.
118. Nelson R, Tse B, Edwards S. Systematic review of prophylactic nasogastric decompression after abdominal operations. *Br J Surg*. 2005;92(6):673–680.
119. Nichols RL, Condon RE. Preoperative preparation of the colon. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1971;132(2):323–337.
120. Bucher P, Gervaz P, Soravia C, et al. Physiologic effects of bowel preparation. *Dis Colon Rectum*. 2004;47(8):1397–1402.
121. Slim K, Panis Y, Chipponi J. Mechanical colonic preparation for surgery or how surgeons fight the wrong battle. *Gastroenterol Clin Biol*. 2002;26:667–669.
122. Guenaga KF, Matos D, Castro AA, et al. Mechanical bowel preparation for elective colorectal surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2005;1:CD001544.
123. Jesus EC, Karliczek A, Matos D, et al. Prophylactic anastomotic drainage for colorectal surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2004;4:CD002100.
124. Merad F, Hay JM, Fingerhut A, et al. Is prophylactic pelvic drainage useful after elective rectal or anal anastomosis? A multicenter controlled randomized trial. French Association for Surgical Research. *Surgery*. 1999;125(5):529–535.
125. Practice guidelines for preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration: application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Preoperative Fasting and the Use of Pharmacologic Agents to Reduce the Risk of Pulmonary Aspiration. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(3):376–393.
126. Scott MJ, Baldini G, Fearon KC, et al. Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS) for gastrointestinal surgery, part 1: pathophysiological considerations. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2015;59(10):1212–1231.
127. Story SK, Chamberlain RS. A comprehensive review of evidence-based strategies to prevent and treat postoperative ileus. *Dig Surg*. 2009;26(4):265–275.
128. Brieger GH. Early ambulation a study in the history of surgery. *Ann Surg*. 1983;197:443–449.
129. Waldhausen JH, Schirmer BD. The effect of ambulation on recovery from postoperative ileus. *Ann Surg*. 1990;212(6):671–677.
130. Wenger NK. The physiologic basis for early ambulation after myocardial infarction. *Cardiovascular Clinics*. 1978;9(3):107–115.
131. Parker HG, et al. Changing patterns in fracture management emphasizing early motion and function. *Surg Clin N Am*. 1976;56(3):667–672.

16

Hepatic Physiology, Pathophysiology, and Anesthetic Considerations

DOLORES B. NJOKU, HOVIG V. CHITILIAN, and KATE KRONISH

KEY POINTS

- The liver is the largest abdominal organ and carries out a number of vital functions including metabolism and detoxification.
- The liver receives approximately 25% of the resting cardiac output. The hepatic artery is responsible for 25% to 30% of the blood supply to the liver while the portal vein is responsible for 70% to 75%. They each deliver 50% of the total oxygen to the liver.
- For the purpose of hepatic resection, the liver can be divided into eight segments based on independent blood supply and drainage of blood and bile. A segment can be resected without compromising the blood flow and biliary drainage of other segments.
- The acinus is the basic functional unit of the liver. It is organized around the flow of blood from the portal triad to the central vein through the sinusoids. Hepatocytes in the acinus are organized into zones based on their proximity to the portal triad or central vein. Zone 1 or periportal hepatocytes are closer to the portal triads and receive oxygen and nutrient-rich blood. Zone 3 or perivenous hepatocytes are closer to the central veins and receive oxygen-poor blood. Hepatocytes in different zones serve different anatomic functions.
- The liver plays an integral role in carbohydrate, protein, lipid, and bile metabolism. It is also responsible for protein synthesis. Albumin is the most abundant plasma protein produced by the liver.
- Drug and toxin excretion is carried out by the hepatocytes by first polarizing the molecules then conjugating them to make them more hydrophilic. Drugs excreted in the bile may be reabsorbed through enterohepatic circulation leading to prolonged effects.
- Standard laboratory panels used to evaluate the hepatobiliary system help define broad categories of hepatobiliary pathology: hepatitis, hepatobiliary dysfunction, or insufficient protein synthesis. Specific diagnoses often require clinical context and radiologic studies.
- Cirrhosis is the result of chronic hepatic disease and can ultimately result in portal hypertension and liver failure. Liver failure can lead to significant dysfunction in all organ systems, giving rise to coagulopathy, thrombocytopenia, hyperdynamic circulation, esophageal varices, hepatic encephalopathy, hepatopulmonary syndrome, portopulmonary hypertension, and hepatorenal syndrome. The definitive treatment for hepatic failure is liver transplantation.
- Volatile anesthetics reduce mean arterial pressure and cardiac output, leading to a reduction in portal blood flow in a dose-dependent manner. The hepatic arterial buffer response is preserved with isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane leading to the preservation total hepatic blood flow, but not with halothane.
- Advanced liver disease impairs the elimination of many drugs including vecuronium, rocuronium, morphine, meperidine, and benzodiazepines. Dosing should be adjusted in the setting of liver failure.
- Elective surgery is contraindicated in patients with acute hepatitis or liver failure. Patients with chronic hepatitis can safely undergo elective surgery. Hepatotoxic drugs should be avoided and hepatic perfusion maintained. Child-Turcotte-Pugh class and Model for End-Stage Liver Disease score can be used to predict risk of perioperative mortality.

Anatomy of the Liver

The liver is the second largest organ in the human body and is responsible for a host of functions to maintain homeostasis. The liver acts as the interface between the gastrointestinal tract and remainder of the body. It is responsible for metabolic, synthetic, immunologic, and hemodynamic functions. As a result, hepatic dysfunction has profound effects on all organ systems and introduces significant challenges to anesthetic management. It is therefore essential for the anesthesiologist to have a firm grasp of the anatomy, physiology, and pathophysiology of the liver.

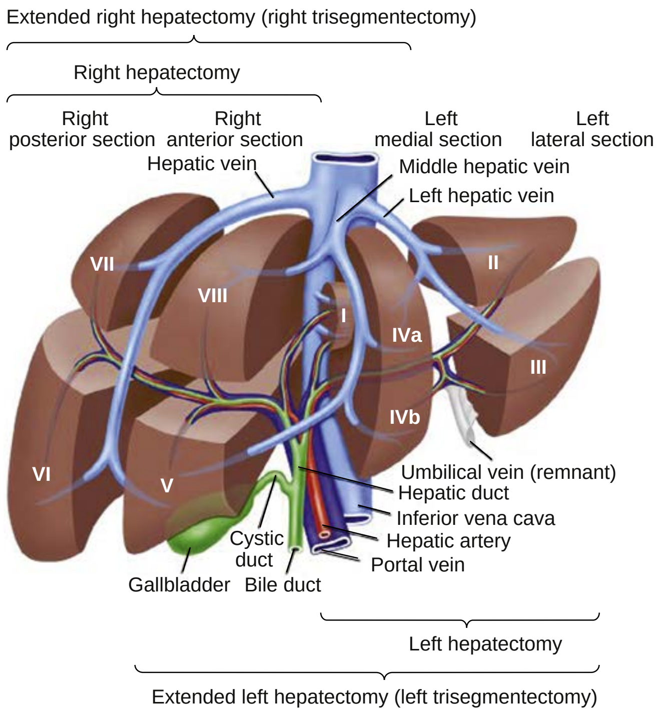


Fig. 16.1 **Schematic depiction of Couinaud segmental liver anatomy and the normal portal venous structures. Bracketed text shows hepatic segments resected during partial hepatectomies.** (Modified from Venook AP, Curley SA. Management of potentially resectable colorectal cancer liver metastases. http://www.uptodate.com/contents/management–of–potentially–resectable–colorectal–cancer–liver–metastases.)

SURGICAL ANATOMY, HEPATIC BLOOD FLOW, AND THE BILIARY TREE

The adult liver can range from around 600 to over 1800 g making the liver one of the heaviest organs in the body. In healthy females the liver ranges in size from 603 to 1767 g,[1] while in healthy males, the liver ranges in size from 968 to 1860 g.[2] In newborns, infants, and children, the liver is also one of the largest organs and the contribution of its weight to total body weight decreases with age. Thus the liver in a term 3 to 3.5 kg newborn can weigh 150 to 170 g,[3] which represents around 5% of the total body weight. In sharp contrast the adult liver represents 2% to 2.5% of the total body weight.

The liver receives approximately 25% of the resting cardiac output (CO).[4] The blood supply is through both the arterial and venous systems in the form of the hepatic artery and the portal vein (Fig. 16.1). The hepatic artery is responsible for 25% to 30% of the blood supply to the liver whereas the portal vein is responsible for 70% to 75%. The hepatic artery arises from the celiac trunk in 80% of the population. In the remainder, it arises from the superior mesenteric artery. After giving rise to the gastroduodenal artery, the common hepatic artery enters the hilum of the liver (porta hepatis) where it further branches into the right and left hepatic arteries, supplying the right and left sides of the liver, respectively. The right hepatic artery gives rise to the cystic artery that supplies the gallbladder.[4] The arteries continue to branch throughout the liver ultimately running through the portal tracts and terminating in the hepatic sinusoids (capillaries). Although part of the venous system, the portal vein is the primary source of oxygenated blood to the liver. The portal vein carries blood from the gastrointestinal tract, pancreas, and spleen to the liver. It drains the superior mesenteric, splenic, and inferior mesenteric veins. It also drains the gastric, cystic, and pancreaticoduodenal veins. The portal vein enters the hilum and, like the hepatic artery, branches into the right and left portal veins, supplying the respective sides of the liver.[4] The portal veins continue to branch throughout the liver in conjunction with the hepatic arteries. As with the arteries, they terminate in the hepatic sinusoids.

Venous drainage of the liver is through the hepatic veins directly into the inferior vena cava (IVC). The right and middle hepatic veins serve the right half and middle portions of the liver, respectively, while the left hepatic vein drains the left half of the liver. The biliary system removes bile from the liver and delivers it to the duodenum through the ampulla of Vater. The intrahepatic bile ducts typically travel with the portal veins, draining into right and left collections systems that ultimately form the common bile duct (CBD; see Fig. 16.1).[4]

From a historical perspective, the description of the gross anatomy of the liver has evolved from being rooted in the surface anatomy of the organ to its functional organization. Traditionally, the liver was divided into four lobes based on its surface features: right lobe, left lobe, quadrate, and caudate. The right and left lobes were divided by the falciform ligament, when viewed anteriorly. When viewed from below, the quadrate lobe was bounded by the porta hepatis posteriorly, the gallbladder fossa on the right, and the ligamentum teres on the left.[4] The caudate lobe was bounded by the porta hepatis anteriorly, the IVC on the right, and the ligamentum venosum fissure on the left. In the late 1800s, Sir James Cantlie demonstrated that the right and left hemilivers were defined by independent portal circulations and thus the functional midline of the liver was at the bifurcation of the portal vein, along a line connecting the gallbladder bed and the IVC ("Cantlie's line"), lateral to the falciform ligament. Cantlie recognized that the line defined a vascular watershed and described its implications for surgical resection of the liver.[5] With advances in hepatic surgery, anatomic descriptions of the liver were developed that further divided the hemilivers into segments based on the vascular distribution and biliary drainage. Each segment has its own independent vascular inflow and outflow, and biliary drainage. As a result, surgical resection of a segment does not compromise adjacent segments. The most commonly used organizational system was developed by Couinaud (see Fig. 16.1).[6] In the Couinaud model, the liver is divided into eight segments. The right and left hemilivers are divided at the bifurcation of the portal vein, along the middle hepatic vein. The right, middle, and left hepatic veins divide the liver vertically into four sectors: right posterior, right anterior, left medial, and left lateral sectors. The four sectors are divided in the horizontal plane by the branches of the portal vein, giving rise to the eight segments. In this system, the caudate lobe is referred to as segment 1 and the remainder of the segments are numbered in a clockwise fashion. Segments 2 and 3 are medial to the left hepatic vein, with segment 2 superior to segment 3. Segment 4 lies between the middle and left hepatic vein and is subdivided into 4a (superior) and 4b (inferior) subsegments. Segments 8 (superior) and 5 (inferior) are located between

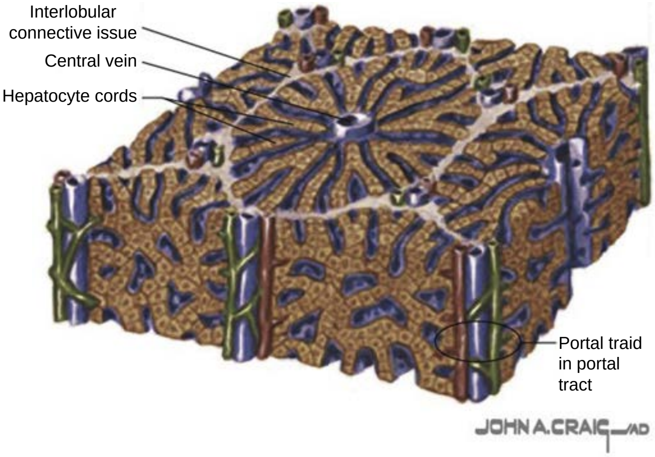


Fig. 16.2 Hepatic lobule. Liver arranged as a series of hexagonal lobules, each composed of a series of hepatocyte cords (plates) interspersed with sinusoids. Each lobule surrounds a central vein and is bounded by six peripheral portal triads (low magnification).

the middle and right hepatic veins. Segments 6 (inferior) and 7 (superior) are located between the right hepatic vein and the edge of the liver.[6] In clinical practice, contrast-enhanced computed tomography (CT) scanning and intraoperative ultrasound are used to define the anatomy unique to each individual and plan for the appropriate resection. To standardize the nomenclature used to describe hepatic resections, the International Hepatopancreatobiliary Association published consensus terminology in 2000 based on the Couinaud segments, known as the Brisbane 2000 terminology.[7] This system of terminology has gained traction but has not yet been uniformly adopted.[8,9]

CELLULAR ANATOMY

Liver Lobule and Acinus

The cellular architecture of the liver supports its functions of detoxifying the blood and metabolizing nutrients. Histologically, the liver parenchyma can be organized into anatomic units (liver lobules) or functional units (liver acinus). The liver lobule is the basic structural unit of the hepatic parenchyma (Fig. 16.2). The lobule typically appears hexagonal in shape with a portal canal at each corner and a hepatic venule (central vein) located in the center. Through each portal canal run the lymphatics, nerve fibers, and a portal triad. Each portal triad consists of a bile ductule, hepatic arteriole, and portal venule. From a functional standpoint, the acinus is the smallest unit of the liver (Fig. 16.3A). It is comprised of a portal tract at the center with central vein at the periphery. Oxygenated and nutrient-rich blood flows from the portal triads to the central hepatic veins through the hepatic sinusoids (see Fig. 16.3B). The walls of the sinusoids are composed of sinusoidal endothelial cells (SECs) that are separated by fenestrations of 50 to 150 nm in diameter. The fenestrations allow the passage of metabolites, plasma proteins, pharmaceutical molecules, lipoproteins, and other solutes into the space of Disse (SD) surrounding the sinusoids while retaining blood cells in the vessels. Larger macromolecules and potentially immunogenic peptides enter the SD by transcytosis through the SECs.[10] Once in the SD, the molecules are taken up by hepatocytes.

Hepatocytes

Hepatocytes make up 75% to 80% of the total cellular volume of the liver.[11] They are responsible for drug, protein, carbohydrate, lipid, and heme metabolism in addition to the synthesis of a variety of proteins necessary for the maintenance of homeostasis at baseline and in response to acute insults secondary to ischemia-reperfusion, viral and bacterial infections, and toxins. Hepatocytes are polarized with heterogenous plasma membranes to facilitate their varied functions. The basolateral (sinusoidal) portion of the membrane is in direct contact with the SD while the apical portion of the membrane makes up the bile canaliculus that drains bile to the ductules.[12] Hepatocytes are divided into different zones based on their proximity to the portal triad. Zone 1 is periportal, zone 3 is around the central vein (perivenous or pericentral), and zone 2 is in between (midzone). Zone 3 hepatocytes are furthest away from the portal tracts and thus receive blood with a lower oxygen tension and nutrient content.[13] The metabolic functions of the hepatocytes differ based on the zone in which they are located (see Fig. 16.3C). This metabolic zonation increases the efficiency of carbohydrate, amino acid, lipid, and xenobiotic metabolism. Periportal (zone 1) hepatocytes are the major sites of aerobic metabolism, and process such as glycogen synthesis and sulfation whereas perivenous (zone 3) hepatocytes are the major sites of anaerobic metabolism, glycolysis, and glucuronidation. By virtue of their location, zone 3 hepatocytes are most sensitive to hypoxia.[13]

Hepatic Stellate Cells

Hepatic stellate cells (HSCs) make up 8% to 10% of all resident liver cells.[14] These specialized cells reside in the SD between liver sinusoidal endothelial cells (LSECs) and the hepatocytes. In the normal liver, HSCs are believed to be in a quiescent state. In the setting of liver injury, these cells become activated in response to cytokines and chemokines generated by hepatocytes, LSECs, as well as leukocytes and Kupffer cells. The stellate cells proliferate and differentiate into myofibroblasts participating in hepatic inflammation and fibrosis.[15]

MYELOID CELLS

The myeloid cells that can be found in the liver consist primarily of Kupffer cells (20%-30%) also known as resident tissue macrophages, in addition to dendritic cells and myeloid-derived suppressor cells. At first glance, it may seem that these cells have a less important role than hepatocytes and LSEC. However, while Kupffer cells constitute around 20% to 30% of nonparenchymal cells, they constitute 80% to 90% of all tissue macrophages.[16] Kupffer cells reside in the portal and lobular liver sinusoids where they engulf both infectious and noninfectious particles by phagocytosis. Once phagocytosed, these particles are unable to induce proinflammatory responses in the liver. Thus by prevalence and location, these cells serve critical roles in innate and adaptive immunity by detoxification where they down-regulate potentially proinflammatory triggers that could disrupt hepatic homeostasis.[17]

Dendritic cells and myeloid-derived suppressor cells are the least abundant of myeloid cells. Hepatic dendritic cells are present in the normal liver and reside in the portal area and are believed to promote tolerance to phagocytosed

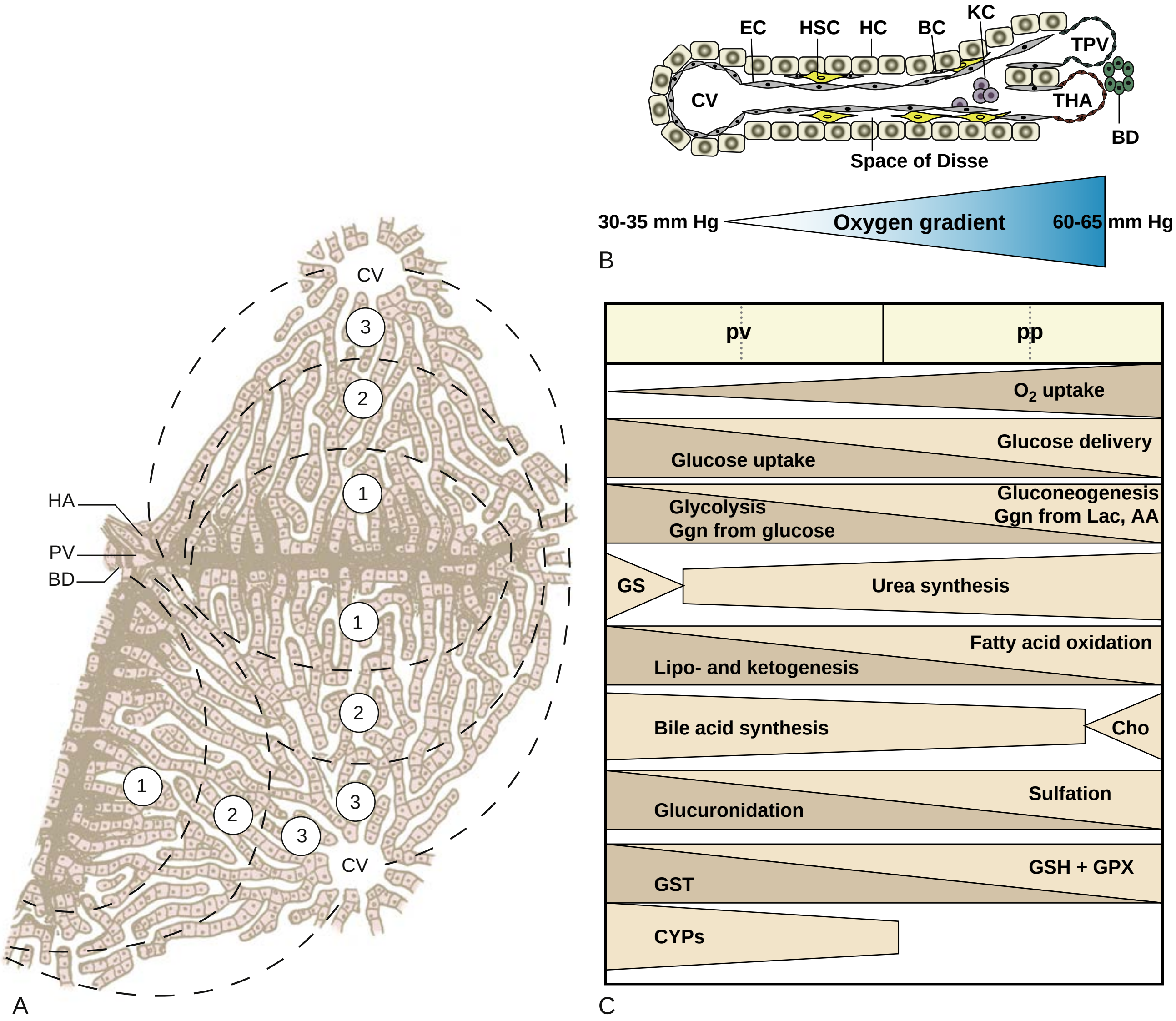

EC
HSC
HC
BC
KC
TPV
CV
THA
BD
Space of Disse
30-35 mm Hg
Oxygen gradient
60-65 mm Hg
B
CV
3
2
1
HA
PV
BD
1
2
3
1
2
3
CV
A
pv
pp
O_2 uptake
Glucose delivery
Glucose uptake
Glycolysis
Ggn from glucose
Gluconeogenesis
Ggn from Lac, AA
GS
Urea synthesis
Fatty acid oxidation
Lipo- and ketogenesis
Bile acid synthesis
Cho
Sulfation
Glucuronidation
GSH + GPX
GST
CYPs
C

Fig. 16.3 (A) Blood supply of a liver acinus. Schematic representation of the acinus and hepatocyte zones. Hepatocytes can be divided into three zones based on their location along the sinusoid from the portal triad *(PT)* to the central vein *(CV)*. Zone 1—Periportal zone—hepatocytes are closest to the portal triad; Zone 3—perivenous, pericentral, or perilobular zone—hepatocytes are closest to the central vein. Zone 2 (intermediary) hepatocytes are in between. (B) Diagram of the sinusoid. The sinusoid is lined with sinusoidal epithelial cells *(EC)* separated by fenestrations that control the passage of solutes into the space of Disse. The space of Disse contains hepatic stellate cells *(HSC)* and is bound by the basolateral (sinusoidal) portion of the plasma membranes of the hepatocytes *(HC)*. The apical portion of the plasma membranes makes up the bile canaliculus *(BC)*. Oxygen and nutrient-rich blood flows from the terminal hepatic artery *(THA)* and portal vein *(TPV)* through the sinusoid to the central vein *(CV)*. There is an oxygen gradient along the length of the sinusoid. Kupffer cells *(KC)* are resident hepatic macrophages and found in the sinusoids. (C) Hepatocyte zonation. The major metabolic pathways in the hepatocytes along the sinusoid differ based on their proximity to the portal triad or the central vein. Predominant metabolic pathways are listed for the periportal *(pp)* hepatocytes and the perivenous *(pv)* hepatocytes. *AA,* Amino acid; *Cho,* cholesterol synthesis; *CYPs,* cytochrome P450 enzymes; *Ggn,* glycogen; *GPX,* glutathione peroxidase; *GS,* glutamine synthesis; *GST,* glutathione transferase; *Lac,* lactate. ([B and C] From Kietzmann T. Metabolic zonation of the liver: the oxygen gradient revisited. *Redox Biol*. 2017;11:622–630.)

particles.[18] Hepatic myeloid-derived supressor cells suppress immune response in the liver. In acute hepatitis they reduce inflammation and limit tissue injury. Their immune suppressive function has been associated with adverse effects in certain pathologic conditions. In chronic viral hepatitis, they may promote viral persistence. They have also been associated with suppression of immune response to hepatic tumors.[17]

LYMPHOCYTES

Cells of lymphatic origin that can be detected in the liver include natural killer (NK) cells, NK T cells (NKT), mucosal-associated invariant T cells, and γδ T cells in addition to major histocompatibility restricted CD4+ T cells, CD8+T cells, and B cells. These cells are distributed throughout the liver parenchyma and serve critical roles in the innate (NK, NKT, mucosal-associated invariant T cells, and γδ T cells) and adaptive (major histocompatibility restricted CD4+ T cells, CD8+T cells, and B cells) immune responses. These cells work primarily to maintain hepatic homeostasis by promoting tolerance to foreign substances. However, when necessary, these MHC-restricted cells can promote the clearance of foreign substances by expanding in response to them while recruiting additional cells from extrahepatic sources such as the lymph nodes and the spleen.[17]

TABLE 16.1 List of Well-Known Substrates, Inhibitors, and Inducers for Phase I, II, and III Metabolism Pathways

Enzymes	Substrates	Inhibitors	Inducers
PHASE I			
CYP3A	Midazolam, buspirone, felodipine, lovastatin, eletriptan, sildenafil, simvastatin, triazolam	Ketoconazole, clarithromycin, itraconazole, saquinavir, fluconazole, grapefruit juice, tipranavir/ritonavir	Phenytoin, rifampin, St. John's wort, efavirenz, etravirine, nafcillin, prednisone
1A2	Alosetron, caffeine, duloxetine, melatonin, ramelteon, tacrine, tizanidine	Ciprofloxacin, enoxacin, fluvoxamine, oral contraceptives, phenylpropanolamine,	Montelukast, phenytoin, smoking components of cigarettes
2C8	Repaglinide, paclitaxel	Gemfibrozil, fluvoxamine, ketoconazole, trimethoprim	Rifampin
2C9	Celecoxib, warfarin, phenytoin	Amiodarone, fluconazole, miconazole, oxandrolone, capecitabine, etravirine, fluvastatin, metronidazole, sulfinpyrazone, tigecycline	Carbamazepine, rifampin, aprepitant, bosentan, phenobarbital, St. John's wort
PHASE II			
UGTs	Bilirubin, phenols, estradiols, opiates, and carboxylic acids	Paclitaxel, midazolam, cyclosporine A, ketoconazole, phenobarbital, and phenytoin	Bilirubin, phenobarbitone, rifampin
SULTs	Phenols, alcohols, and amines	Flavonoids, mefenamic acids, salicylic acids, clomiphene, and danazol	Retinoic acid, methotrexate
NATs	Para-aminobenzoic acid, para-aminosalicylic acids, para-aminoglutamate, sulfamethazine, isoniazid, hydralazine, and sulfonamides	Caffeic acid, esculetin, quercetin, genistein, scopoletin, and coumarin	Androgens, aminophylline
GSTs	Epoxides, quinone, sulfoxides, esters, and peroxides	Phenols, quinone, vitamin C derivatives, dopamine, and *trans*retinoic acid	Extracts of broccoli, cabbage, Brussels sprouts, and grapefruit
PHASE III			
P-gp	Digoxin, loperamide, vinblastine, talinolol	Amiodarone, azithromycin, cyclosporine, diltiazem, dronedarone, erythromycin, itraconazole, ketoconazole, lopinavir/ritonavir, quinidine, verapamil	Avasimibe, carbamazepine, phenytoin, rifampin, St John's wort, tipranavir/ritonavir

From Almazroo OA, Miah MK, Venkataramanan R. Drug metabolism in the liver. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2017;21:1–20. Elsevier.

Hepatic Physiology

DRUG METABOLISM

The vast majority of drugs used in the conduct of anesthesia are metabolized in the liver. A variety of enzymes convert drug molecules into more water-soluble (hydrophilic) molecules or compounds to facilitate their excretion. These enzymes are designated as being either part of the Phase I pathway or Phase II pathway based on the types of reactions they mediate. Phase I enzymes consist of the cytochrome P450 family of enzymes that convert lipophilic drug molecules to hydrophilic molecules primarily through oxidation, reduction, or hydrolysis. Non-CYP450 enzymes include monoamine oxidases, alcohol dehydrogenases, and aldo-keto reductase. The phase II pathway consists of the conjugation of the products of the phase I pathway with hydrophilic endogenous moieties to make them more water-soluble. Polar molecules may undergo Phase II metabolism without having undergone Phase I metabolism. The most common Phase II reaction is glucuronidation, which is the conjugation of the drug compound to glucuronic acid. This reaction is carried out by a family of enzymes known as uridine 5′-diphospho-glucuronosyltransferases. Other Phase II enzymes include sulfotransferases (SULT), glutathione S-transferases (GST), and catechol O-methyltransferases.[19] The phase III pathway involves the excretion of compounds into the sinusoids or canalicular bile by molecular transporters that are transmembrane proteins which facilitate the movement of large or ionized molecules across cell membranes. The majority of these transmembrane proteins are part of a superfamily of ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters that use ATP to actively transport molecules. Common ABC-transporters include multidrug resistance protein (MDR), cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator, and multidrug resistance–related protein (MRP).

Some orally administered medications undergo extensive metabolism in the gut or liver prior to entering the systemic circulation. This metabolism is termed the first-pass effect and is responsible for the lower oral bioavailability of these medications.[20]

Drug metabolism is affected by a number of factors including genetic polymorphisms of metabolic enzymes, age, gender, pregnancy, liver disease, and concomitantly administered medications. The expression and function of Phase I and Phase II enzymes are reduced in neonates. The activities of some CYP450 enzymes are increased in women compared to men. Genetic polymorphisms in drug metabolizing enzymes and transporters can lead to wide variations in the pharmacokinetics of some drugs such as warfarin, with some patients having lower rates of metabolism based on the specific CYP450 polymorphism they carry. The concomitant administration of medications may also influence drug metabolism. A number of commonly encountered medications can serve as inducers or inhibitors of the enzymes involved in the different phases of drug metabolism.[20] Table 16.1 lists some of the commonly used drugs, which are metabolized and excreted by each of the three phases along with drugs that may serve as inhibitors or inducers for each phase.

See the pharmacokinetics chapter for further discussion of hepatic extraction ratio.

PROTEIN METABOLISM

The liver is responsible for the synthesis and catabolism of proteins, amino acids, and peptides. It is the site of synthesis for 80% to 90% of the circulating proteins including hormones, coagulant factors, cytokines, and chemokines. As such it plays a significant role in the functioning of the body. Albumin is the predominant protein produced by the liver, accounting for over 50% of total plasma protein. It functions to transport lipids and hormones and maintain blood volume. The liver plays a central role in protein degradation. Amino acids are catabolized through one of two reactions: deamination or transamination. Both reactions lead to the production of ammonia, which the liver converts to urea through the urea cycle. Urea is then excreted by the kidneys in the urine.[21]

CARBOHYDRATE METABOLISM

The liver is primarily responsible for storing and releasing glucose to meet the body's needs. In the postprandial state, the liver stores glucose through glycogenesis. Once the glycogen stores are complete, the liver converts excess glucose into fat through lipogenesis. In the fasting state, the liver provides the body with glucose by breaking down glycogen (glycogenolysis) or by generating glucose from carbohydrate precursors (gluconeogenesis).[22]

LIPID METABOLISM

The liver plays an important role in lipid metabolism. Nonesterified fatty acids can arise from the lipase-mediated breakdown of complex lipids, or from thioesterase-mediated hydrolysis of fatty acid-CoA.[23] These fatty acids can enter the liver following oral intake or they can enter the liver following the breakdown of adipose tissue. In the liver, fatty acid oxidation is regulated by two main factors: the supply of fatty acids to the liver (via lipolysis), and the amount of microsomal esterification that occurs.[23] Lipid metabolism is also influenced by the carbohydrate metabolism, as the acetyl-CoA formed during carbohydrate metabolism can be utilized to synthesize fatty acids. Fatty acids can undergo biotransformation to supply energy for the needs of the body. Alternatively, the liver can convert amino acids and intermediate products of carbohydrates into fats and transport them to the adipose tissues.

BILE AND ENTEROHEPATIC CIRCULATION

The adult liver produces approximately 400 to 600 mL of bile each day. Bile facilitates the excretion of toxins as well as the absorption of dietary fats. It is the mechanism of excretion for compounds with molecular weights greater than 300 to 500 Daltons that are not readily excreted by the kidneys. It is used to excrete a host of endogenous and exogenous compounds, including bile acids, bilirubin, phospholipids, cholesterol, drugs, toxins, steroid hormones, and water-insoluble porphyrins. Box 16.1 lists drugs, chemicals, and their metabolites that are excreted in the bile. The other major function of bile is to assist in the digestion and absorption of dietary fats, cholesterol, and vitamins.[24] Bile is 95% water by volume, with the remainder consisting of bile acids, phospholipids, cholesterol, bilirubin, as well as other exogenous and endogenous substances. The two primary bile acids are cholic acid and chenodeoxycholic acid. Bile acids are synthesized by hepatocytes from cholesterol. They are then conjugated to reduce hepatotoxicity and increase solubility and secreted into the canaliculi. The canaliculi drain into the biliary ductules, which connect to form hepatic ducts. The walls of the intrahepatic bile ducts are made up of cholangiocytes that modify the volume and composition of the bile. The ducts ultimately form the left and right hepatic ducts, which join into the common hepatic duct. Bile is stored and concentrated in the gallbladder, which connects to the biliary tree through the cystic duct. The common hepatic duct and cystic duct join to form the CBD, which connects to the duodenum through the sphincter of Oddi (hepatopancreatic sphincter).[24] Following the ingestion of food, fatty acids in the duodenum stimulate the release of cholecystokinin (CCK) which causes the gallbladder to contract and the sphincter of Oddi to relax leading to the release of bile into the duodenum. The bile acids

BOX 16.1 **Drugs, Foreign Chemicals, and Their Metabolites That Are Excreted in the Bile**

Amiodarone[114]

Ampicillin[113,116]
Benzylpenicillin[118]

Bilirubin[120]
Bromocresol green[121]

Bromosulfophthalein[122]
Cefixime[124]
Ceftriaxone[127]

Cefatzidime[128]
Cephaloridine[113]
Cephamandole[118]
Cephazolin[118]
Chenodeoxycholic acid[122,125]
Chloramphenicol[118]
Chlortetracycline[118]
Clindamycin[117]
Demethylchlortetracycline[118]
Diazepam[113]

Digitoxin[113]

Digoxin[113]
Doxycycline[118]

Erythromycin[113]
Estradiol[125]

Estrone[115]

Ezetimibe[110]
2-Fluoro-β-alanine[119]
Gentamycin[118]
Glibenclamide (glyburide)[5]
Gliclazide[123]
Imipramine[125]
Indocyanine green[122]
Indomethacin[125]
Irinotecan[129]
Lanatoside C[118]
Lorazepam[130]
Lomnetazepam[6]

Methotrexate[113]
Metronidazole[117]
Mezlocillin[132]
Morphine[133]

Mycophenolic acid[135]
Mycophenolate mofetil[137,138]
Nortriptyline[131]
Novobiocin[131]

Oltiprazl[140]
Pethidine (meperidine)[113]

Phenol red[113]

Phenolphthalein[117]
Phenytoin[117]

Pivampicillin[118]
Rifamide[113]

Rifamycin[113]
Roquinimex[126]
Rose bengal[121]

Spironolactone[125]
Sulfamethoxazole[113]
Sulindac[125]
Sulbactam[116]
Temafloxacin[131]

Testosterone[125]
Tetracycline[113,118]
Thiamphenicol[113]
Tolfenamic acid[134]

Toremifene[136]

Troglitazone[139]

Trovafloxacin[7]
Ursodeoxycholic acid[122,125]
Valproic acid[125]
Warfarin[133]

Roberts MS, Magnusson BM, Bruczynski FJ. Enterohepatic circulation. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2002;41:751–790, Table II, page 767.

emulsify dietary fats and facilitate their absorption. The vast majority (95%) of the bile acids released into the duodenum are reabsorbed in the terminal ileum and returned to the liver to be reused. This pathway for recycling bile acids is known as the enterohepatic circulation (EHC).[25] Enterohepatic cycling can impact the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of drugs that undergo biliary excretion by increasing their bioavailability, reducing their elimination, as well as altering their plasma concentration curves. The effect of EHC on the properties of a drug depends on the physiologic activity of the excreted form of the drug (i.e., prodrug or activated form), the ease with which the excreted form is reabsorbed through the intestines, and whether it is recycled through the liver into the bile or the systemic circulation. In the case of some drugs, EHC can lead to secondary and tertiary peaks in plasma concentration as the drug is recycled into the system.[26]

ROLE OF THE LIVER IN COAGULATION

The liver plays a significant role in the coagulation system. It synthesizes all coagulation factors except factors III (thromboplastin), IV (calcium), and VIII (von Willebrand factor [vWF]). It also synthesizes proteins that regulate coagulation and fibrinolysis such as protein S, protein C, plasminogen activator inhibitor, and antithrombin III. Furthermore, it removes activated clotting and fibrinolysis products through the hepatic reticuloendothelial system. A number of factors require vitamin K to become active. Coagulation factors II, VII, IX, X, as well as protein C and protein S undergo posttranslational modification with vitamin K to become active. Briefly, glutamic acid in the amino terminus of these proteins is converted to gamma-carboxyglutamic acid. These gamma-carboxylated procoagulants can then bind calcium ions and form bridges to phospholipid surfaces that are essential for the formation of activation complexes.[27] Warfarin acts by inhibition gamma-carboxylation. In addition to these vitamin K–dependent factors, hepatocytes also synthesize factor V, XIII, fibrinogen, antithrombin, α_2 plasmin inhibitor, and plasminogen.[28] Thrombomodulin, tissue plasminogen activator, tissue factor plasma inhibitor, vWF, and urokinase are not synthesized in the liver. Instead these proteins are synthesized in endothelial cells, whereas urokinase is expressed by endothelial cells, macrophages, and renal epithelial cells. Tissue plasminogen activator is primarily removed from the bloodstream through the hepatic reticuloendothelial system.[29]

HEME METABOLISM, BILIRUBIN, AND PORPHYRIAS

The liver is involved in both heme synthesis and metabolism. Eighty to 90% of heme synthesis takes place in the bone marrow with the resultant heme used to produce hemoglobin. Most of the remainder of the heme is produced in the liver and used primarily to synthesize cytochrome P450 enzymes. Whereas the rate of heme synthesis in the bone marrow is a function of the availability of iron, the rate of synthesis in the liver is a function of the available free heme pool in the body.[30] Heme is synthesized through an eight-step enzymatic cascade known as the Shemin pathway. Synthesis begins with glycine and succinyl CoA and proceeds through porphyrinogen intermediaries. A deficiency in any of the enzymes involved in heme synthesis leads to the development of porphyria. The specific type of porphyria and its clinical manifestations depend on the specific enzyme that is deficient and the substrate that accumulates as a result. The most common porphyria is acute intermittent porphyria with an estimated incidence of 5 to 10 per 100,000. It is caused by a deficiency in porphobilinogen deaminase, which catalyzes the conversion of porphobilinogen to hydroxymethylbilane. Patients typically have adequate levels of the enzyme for heme homeostasis; however, in response to endogenous or exogenous triggers that induce the Shemin pathway, the capacity of the system is exceeded and they accumulate precursors leading to symptoms. Common triggers include erythromycin, trimethoprim, rifampicin, phenytoin, and barbiturates. Clinical symptoms of an attack include severe, poorly localized abdominal pain (in >90% of cases), nausea, vomiting, agitation, and confusion. Hyponatremia occurs in 40% of attacks. Change in urine color to dark red (especially on exposure to light) is a common finding. Treatment consists of discontinuing the triggering agent, administering pain medication, carbohydrates, and hematin.[30]

Bilirubin is a product of heme catabolism. The primary source is senescent erythrocytes that are phagocytosed by macrophages in the spleen, liver, and bone marrow. The released heme is metabolized by heme oxygenase into bilirubin, yielding carbon monoxide and iron in the process. Unconjugated bilirubin is water insoluble and thus tightly bound to albumin in the circulation. Hepatocytes convert bilirubin into a water-soluble form by conjugating it to glucuronic acid via the enzyme glucuronyl transferase. Conjugated bilirubin is then transported across bile canaliculi and excreted in the bile. In the colon, bilirubin is deconjugated, metabolized by bacteria, and converted into urobilinogen. Urobilinogens are either reabsorbed through the EHC or excreted in the urine and stool, giving urine and stool their characteristic colors.[31]

HEPATIC REGULATION OF HORMONES

The liver can participate in endocrine functions through hormone synthesis or hormone degradation. Hepatocytes synthesize hormones or prohormones such as hepcidin, insulin-like growth factor, and angiotensinogen, respectively. In addition to these hormones, thrombopoietin is also synthesized by hepatocytes and LSECs. These hormones and prohormones have specialized roles in the human body. Thus hepcidin is responsible for iron homeostasis and regulates intestinal iron absorption, plasma iron concentrations, and tissue iron distribution by inducing degradation of the hepcidin receptor, ferroportin.[32] Insulin-like growth factor promotes systemic growth, especially bone growth in children.[33] Angiotensinogen, the precursor of all angiotensin proteins, regulates the systemic blood pressure as well as the water and sodium composition of the body.[34] Thrombopoietin regulates platelet production by stimulating production and differentiation of megakaryocytes.[35] In addition to hormone synthesis, the liver participates in endocrine function by inactivating many hormones, including thyroxine, aldosterone, antidiuretic hormone, estrogens, androgens, and insulin.

TABLE 16.2 Liver Blood Tests and the Differential Diagnosis of Hepatobiliary Disorders

	PREDOMINANT ABNORMALITY		
Blood Test	**Bilirubin Overload (Hemolysis)**	**Hepatocellular Injury**	**Cholestasis**
Aminotransferases	Normal	Increased: May be normal or decreased in advanced stages	Normal: May be increased in advanced stages
Serum albumin	Normal	Decreased: May be normal in acute fulminant hepatic failure	Normal: May be decreased in advanced stages
Prothrombin time*	Normal	Prolonged	Normal: May be prolonged in advanced stages
Bilirubin (main form present)	Unconjugated (also mild increase in conjugates)	Conjugated	Conjugated
Alkaline phosphatase	Normal	Normal: May be increased by hepatic infiltrative disease	Increased
γ-Glutamyl transpeptidase 5′-nucleotidase	Normal	Normal	Increased
Blood urea nitrogen	Normal: May be increased by renal dysfunction	Normal: May be decreased by severe liver disease and normal kidney function	Normal
BSP/ICG (dye)	Normal	Retention of dye	Normal or retention of dye

*Used interchangeably with the international normalized ratio.
BSP/ICG, Bromsulphalein and indocyanine green.

Evaluation of the Liver

CLINICAL ASSESSMENT

There are often no signs or symptoms of liver disease until it is quite advanced. Even then, the only clues may be mild or nonspecific symptoms such as loss of appetite, fatigability, malaise, disrupted sleep patterns, or subtle cognitive changes. Major risk factors for liver disease include: alcohol use; illicit drug use; sexual promiscuity; blood transfusions; exposure to hepatotoxins; prior bouts of jaundice; and a family history of genetic diseases such as hemochromatosis, α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, and Wilson disease. Patients with advanced liver disease may have these nonspecific symptoms, as well as pruritus, easy bruising, and changes in urine or stool color. In advanced liver disease physical examination findings include jaundice, scleral icterus, ascites, spider angiomas, xanthelasma, asterixis, and palmar erythema.

STANDARD LABORATORY TESTS

Standard panels used to evaluate the hepatobiliary system are often called "liver function tests" (Table 16.2).[36] In fact, these tests do not measure specific liver functions. Instead, they help define broad categories of hepatobiliary pathology: hepatitis, hepatobiliary dysfunction, or insufficient protein synthesis.

DETECTION OF HEPATOCELLULAR INJURY

Aminotransferases

Serum alanine aminotransferase (ALT) and aspartate aminotransferase (AST), formerly named serum glutamic-pyruvic transaminase and serum glutamic-oxaloacetic transaminase, respectively, are most commonly elevated because of hepatocellular injury. Both are aminotransferases, enzymes involved in gluconeogenesis. ALT is mainly a cytoplasmic liver enzyme. In contrast, cytoplasmic and mitochondrial isozymes of AST are found in many extrahepatic tissues, including the heart, skeletal muscle, brain, kidney, pancreas, adipose, and blood. Therefore isolated elevations of AST likely represent non-liver sources, but concomitant elevations in AST and ALT usually represent liver injury. Rarely, elevations in AST and ALT levels may result from muscle injury.[37]

Practice guidelines provide recommendations for the evaluation of abnormal liver enzymes, based on the combination of clinical picture and degree of elevation of AST and ALT. Establishing normal reference ranges for AST and ALT have been complicated by studies with heterogeneous populations, since normal ranges differ with gender and body mass index (BMI). Nevertheless, multiple studies show that even mild elevations of AST and ALT above the upper limit of normal are associated with increased mortality. Some clinicians therefore argue that the normal limits should be lowered.[38]

Elevated ALT and AST levels are sometimes described in qualitative terms, ranging from mild (>100 IU/L), to extreme (>2000 IU/L). The extent of aminotransferase elevation can sometimes aid in the differential diagnosis. Mild elevations in AST and ALT can arise from any hepatocyte injury. Large elevations often reflect acute hepatocyte ischemia. Extreme elevations signify massive hepatic necrosis, such as from fulminant viral hepatitis, severe drug-induced liver injury, or shock liver.[51] However, aminotransferase levels do not reliably represent the extent of liver damage. Patients with so called "burnt out" livers, such as from chronic hepatitis, have insufficient functioning hepatocytes to bring about a transaminase increase.

The ratio of AST to ALT may help identify the cause of liver disease. Most causes of hepatic injury are associated with higher ALT than AST levels. However, Wilson disease and alcoholic liver disease are classically associated with an

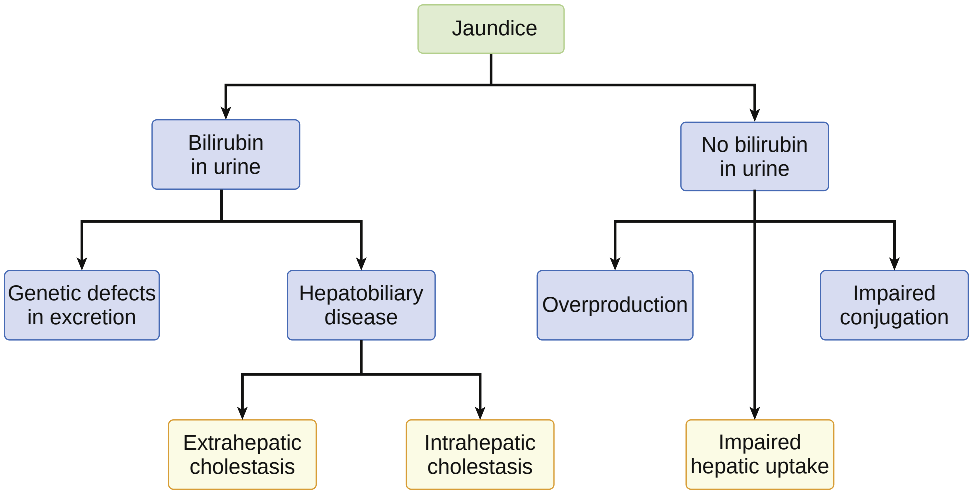


Fig. 16.4 Differential diagnosis of jaundice depending on whether bilirubin is or is not present in the urine.

AST-ALT ratio greater than 1; in some cases, a ratio of 4 has been documented. Chronic hepatitis with minimal fibrosis has a low AST-ALT ratio; however when cirrhosis develops the ratio is greater than 1. Although the AST-ALT ratio may have insufficient predictive value as a sole marker, it can be used in combination with other noninvasive tests to predict the degree of fibrosis in patients with chronic hepatitis.[39]

Lactate Dehydrogenase

Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) is a nonspecific marker of hepatocellular injury. Extremely elevated LDH signifies massive hepatocyte damage, usually from ischemia or drug-induced hepatotoxicity (such as acetaminophen overdose). These patients will also have extreme elevations in AST and ALT. Elevated LDH concomitant with elevated alkaline phosphatase (AP) suggests malignant infiltration of the liver. Extrahepatic disorders that cause LDH elevation include hemolysis, rhabdomyolysis, tumor necrosis, renal infarction, acute stroke, and myocardial infarction.[37]

Glutathione-S-Transferase

GST is a sensitive test for liver injury, with a half-life (60-90 minutes) much shorter than AST or ALT. Following hepatocyte damage, serum GST rises quickly and serial GST measurements can help monitor for disease recovery.[40] The enzymes AST and ALT are found primarily in periportal hepatocytes (acinar zone 1), whereas GST is present in hepatocytes throughout the acinar zones.[41] Since centrilobular/perivenous hepatocytes are most susceptible to hypoxic injury and acetaminophen toxicity, GST is a useful marker particularly in early stages of injury.

DETECTION OF CHOLESTATIC DISORDERS

Alkaline Phosphatase

AP isoenzymes are present in many tissues, including liver, bone, intestine, and placenta. In the liver, AP is present in the canalicular membranes of the hepatocytes. Mild elevations in AP may be normal, as AP varies with gender, age, blood type, and smoking status.[42] Nonhepatic causes of AP elevation include bone disorders such as Paget disease, osteomalacia, and tumors of the bone; normal growth spurts in children; the third trimester of pregnancy; sepsis; renal failure; and some medications. Elevated AP from a hepatobiliary source is most commonly due to cholestatic disease and typically manifests as an increase to 2 to 4 times the upper limit of normal. Rarely, patients with cholestasis can have extreme elevations in AP (10 times the upper limit of normal).[51] AP will also be elevated to a lesser extent in hepatocellular disease such as hepatitis. The ALT to AP ratio helps differentiate hepatocellular injury (ALT:AP > 5) from cholestatic disease (ALT:AP < 2) from a mixed picture.[38]

AP elevation from cholestasis could be a result of either intrahepatic or extrahepatic biliary obstruction. Common causes include primary biliary cirrhosis, choledocholithiasis, and hepatic malignancy compressing small intrahepatic bile ducts. With a half-life of about 1 week, AP will be normal immediately after the onset of biliary obstruction, and it will remain elevated for days after resolution of obstruction.[37]

The source of AP isoenzyme elevation can be determined by electrophoresis, but this test is expensive and not routinely available. More commonly clinicians confirm the hepatic origin of the AP elevation with other tests that indicate cholestatic disease. The enzymes 5′-nucleotidase and gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase are also elevated in cholestatic disorders, coincident with AP. Simultaneous elevation of these enzymes help identify liver as the source of AP elevation.

Serum Bilirubin

Serum bilirubin is the most commonly used test to monitor for excretory dysfunction of the liver. Bilirubin is measured in serum assays as either direct or indirect bilirubin. Direct bilirubin measures the water-soluble form, which interacts directly with the assay's reagents. While direct bilirubin correlates with conjugated bilirubin levels, and indirect with unconjugated levels, the two terms are not synonymous. The level of unconjugated bilirubin is typically underestimated by the indirect bilirubin test. Distinguishing conjugated from unconjugated bilirubin is key to the differential diagnosis. The presence of bilirubin in the urine can also help differentiate the clinical cause. Bilirubinuria usually reflects conjugated hyperbilirubinemia, since only the water-soluble conjugated form is excreted by the kidney (Fig.16.4).[37]

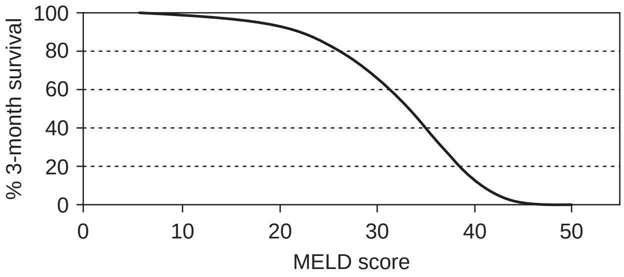


Fig. 16.5 Estimated 3-month survival as a function of the Model for End-Stage Liver Disease *(MELD)* score.

Elevation in the concentration of unconjugated bilirubin is either due to excessive heme breakdown, or the inability of the liver to conjugate bilirubin. One major cause is hemolysis, in which increased erythrocyte breakdown creates more unconjugated bilirubin than the liver is able to conjugate. Massive hemolysis will cause elevations in both forms of bilirubin, but with unconjugated predominance. Gilbert syndrome is a benign condition with genetically low levels of the hepatic enzyme glucuronyl transferase, associated with mild or intermittent elevation in unconjugated bilirubin. Various drugs may also produce unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia. High levels of unconjugated bilirubin are neurotoxic, particularly in infants.

Conjugated hyperbilirubinemia occurs due to either problems with the secretion of conjugated bilirubin from hepatocytes into canalicular bile or to the blockage of bile flow within the hepatobiliary tree. This can be due to a genetic defect in the excretion of bilirubin, or cholestasis (either intrahepatic or extrahepatic). Intrahepatic cholestasis is caused by an inflammatory or infiltrative process compressing small intrahepatic bile ducts, while extrahepatic cholestasis is due to biliary obstruction such as from stones or a pancreatic mass. Primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC) can involve both intra- and extrahepatic bile ducts.[43]

ASSESSMENT OF HEPATIC PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

Serum Albumin

The serum albumin concentration is used to evaluate chronic liver disease and hepatocellular function (protein synthesis). However, it has poor specificity. Hypoalbuminemia has many other causes besides decreased protein synthesis, including increased catabolism, expansion of the plasma volume, renal losses, and maldistribution of total body albumin. The half-life of albumin in the serum is 20 days. As a result, changes in the synthetic function of the liver are not acutely reflected by the serum albumin concentration. Prealbumin is another protein synthesized in the liver that is also involved in transport and binding. It has a much shorter half-life than albumin. However, the level of prealbumin reflects the status of protein nutrition to a greater degree than liver synthetic function given its high percentage of essential amino acids.[37]

Prothrombin Time

Hepatic synthetic function can also be assessed by measuring the levels of liver-derived coagulation factors. The liver synthesizes coagulation factors in great excess, thus the prothrombin time (PT) will remain normal until significant hepatic impairment occurs. Coagulation factors have shorter half-lives than albumin, ranging from 4 hours for factor VII to 4 days for fibrinogen. Thus when severe liver dysfunction occurs, PT (or the international normalized ratio [INR]) can reflect acute liver failure more quickly than can albumin. It is also used to monitor for restoration of hepatic function, often improving before other clinical signs of improvement occur. However, prolonged PT/INR is not specific for liver disease. It may also represent vitamin K deficiency, warfarin effect, or a genetic factor deficiency.[37]

TABLE 16.3 Interpretation of Hepatitis B Viral Serologies

Hepatitis B Virus Serologies	Interpretation
Hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)	Acute or chronic infection
Antibody to hepatitis B surface antigen (Anti-HBs)	Immunity due to recovery from infection or vaccination
IgM antibody to hepatitis B core antigen (Anti-HBc IgM)	Previous or ongoing infection
IgG antibody to hepatitis B core antigen (Anti-HBc IgG)	Acute infection
INTERPRETATION OF CONSTELLATION OF RESULTS	
HBsAg NEG Anti-HBs POS Anti-HBc IgG POS	Immune due to recovery
HBsAg NEG Anti-HBs POS Anti-HBc IgG NEG	Immune by vaccination
HBsAg POS Anti-HBs NEG Anti-HBc IgM POS	Acute hepatitis B infection
HBsAg POS Anti-HBs NEG Anti-HBc IgG POS Anti-HBc IgM NEG	Chronic hepatitis B infection
HBsAg NEG Anti-HBs NEG Anti-HBc IgG NEG	Not immune, potentially susceptible

TESTING FOR DIAGNOSIS OF SPECIFIC DISEASES

In addition to the above standard laboratory tests, targeted testing can aid in the diagnosis of specific hepatobiliary diseases. Such testing includes serologic testing for viral and autoimmune diseases, genetic testing, and tumor marker assays. Viral markers, including antibodies, antigens, and genetic material, are used to diagnose hepatitis from hepatotropic viruses (A, B, C, D, and E) and herpesviruses such as cytomegalovirus and Epstein-Barr virus. Patients with acute or chronic hepatitis B infection and those with immunity due to resolved infection or vaccination can be distinguished based on measurements of hepatitis B surface antigens and surface and core antibodies (Table 16.3). HBV DNA testing has also emerged to monitor treatment effect and the development of chronic hepatitis B after resolution of acute hepatitis.[44]

Testing for hepatitis C is recommended for those with various risk behaviors and exposures (such as history of intravenous drug use, long term hemodialysis, or HIV infection) and as part of an evaluation for unexplained liver disease. American guidelines also recommend one-time screening for hepatitis C in all persons in the United States born between 1945 and 1965, as this birth cohort has the highest prevalence of hepatitis C. Screening entails testing for antibodies to HCV; a positive screen indicates exposure to the virus. Active infection can then be confirmed with nucleic acid testing for HCV RNA. Sustained viral response to treatment is defined as the absence of HCV RNA detected at least 12 weeks after the completion of therapy.[45] Currently, patients also receive HCV genotype testing prior to the initiation of treatment. New direct antiviral agents are highly effective in achieving sustained viral response for most genotypes and most clinical conditions. Therefore genotype testing may soon no longer be routinely required.[46]

Rapid HCV antibody testing and point of care RNA tests are useful in community-based settings serving high-risk populations and remote settings without access to centralized laboratories. The measurement of HCV core antigen (HCVcAg) can diagnose active hepatitis C infection with high sensitivity and specificity as a single test, although it is currently not the standard of care. HCVcAg measurement is particularly useful as a rapid, single test for diagnosis in populations who are at high risk of loss to follow-up. However, it is not yet available as a point of care test.[47]

Markers of hepatic malignancy include alpha fetoprotein (AFP) and protein induced by vitamin K absence or antagonist-II (PIVKA-II).[48-50] AFP is a glycoprotein synthesized in the liver, fetal yolk sac, and GI tract. The normal value of AFP is less than 20 ng/mL. A significantly elevated concentration of AFP, often greater than 1000 ng/mL, is common in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). AFP is also elevated in testicular germ cell tumors, and less frequently in prostate and other gastrointestinal cancers. The concentration of AFP is used to monitor HCC disease progression and response to treatment. It is also widely used to screen for HCC in high-risk patients, along with ultrasound. However, AFP's role in HCC surveillance has recently been debated, as studies suggest that AFP has insufficient sensitivity as a screening tool for HCC, particularly for small and solitary tumors. AFP may be normal in 40% of HCC patients.[51,52] PIVKA-II, also known as des-γ-carboxylated prothrombin, is a biomarker for HCC with high specificity.[48,50] With a shorter half-life than AFP, PIVKA-II is useful in monitoring for treatment response and recurrence. PIVKA-II is also associated with worse survival. AFP and PIVKA-II combined can diagnose HCC with further increased sensitivity and specificity.[53]

TESTING IN MANAGEMENT AND PROGNOSIS OF LIVER DISEASE

Laboratory tests can help define the type of liver dysfunction, and even identify specific causes. In addition, some of these markers are used to assess disease severity, monitor disease progression and treatment, and predict mortality. Taken alone, thrombocytopenia is the earliest sign of cirrhosis among the routine serum tests, indicating both decreased hepatic function and splenic sequestration from portal hypertension.[54] Some markers are combined to create scoring systems, thereby improving the sensitivity and specificity of single tests. For example, the Model for End-Stage Liver Disease (MELD) score (a calculation that combines INR, bilirubin, and creatinine) was created to assess risk of mortality in cirrhotic patients undergoing transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS) procedures. The MELD score now is used for liver transplant listing, as it correlates with wait-list mortality. Standard tests such as INR, lactate and platelet count, as well as novel quantitative tests have been used to predict short-term outcome after liver transplantation.[55] The HCC-MELD score, which combines AFP, MELD, and tumor size, can predict survival after liver transplantation in HCC patients.[56] Elevated bilirubin predicts poor prognosis in acute or chronic liver disease, and AP and bilirubin together predict poor outcome in primary biliary cirrhosis.

Noninvasive Serum Testing for Fibrosis

Multiple models combining noninvasive measurements have been used to assess the severity of fibrosis. The goal of these models is to allow for disease staging (from mild fibrosis to cirrhosis) without requiring liver biopsy. Although liver biopsy remains the diagnostic gold standard, limitations include sampling error, subjectivity in interpretation, pain, bleeding, and cost.[54] These models include various combinations of standard tests such as aminotransferases, platelet count, and INR; as well serum markers of extracellular matrix turnover such as alpha-2-macroglobulin, apolipoprotein A1, and hyaluronic acid. New commercial panels test an array of direct markers of collagen turnover, which correlate with fibrosis.[39,57,58]

Quantitative Liver Tests

Quantitative liver function tests can estimate hepatocellular function by measuring the clearance of various substances metabolized by the liver. Two such substances are indocyanine green (ICG) and bromsulphalein. However, clearance techniques are imperfect tests, potentially influenced by extrahepatic uptake or clearance of the substance, changes in blood flow including portosystemic shunting, and other unknown factors. ICG is avidly extracted by the liver and undergoes minimal extrahepatic uptake and metabolism. Its elimination kinetics are expressed in the ICG plasma disappearance rate (PDR). It can be measured noninvasively by a transcutaneous method. The test is even sensitive to early changes in liver function, and it may be used to guide clinical management. By estimating functional hepatocellular mass, it may help predict outcomes after partial liver resections. It is also used as an early test of graft function following liver transplantation. However, like other highly extracted substances, ICG clearance is dependent on hepatic blood flow, and therefore reflects changes in both hepatic blood flow and hepatocyte function. In fact, ICG is also used specifically to test hepatic blood flow as discussed below. A drop in the ICG PDR may represent a reduction in hepatocellular function, a decrease in hepatic blood flow, or both. Bromsulphalein is another highly extracted substance that can be used to measure hepatic clearance. Bromsulphalein has been associated with severe systemic reactions, and therefore is largely no longer used.[59]

The capacity of the liver to metabolize drugs can also be measured by caffeine clearance, galactose elimination, aminopyrine breath test, and monoethylglycinexylidide (MEGX).[37,60-62] Caffeine clearance can be measured noninvasively through metabolites present in the saliva up to 24 hours after oral caffeine intake. MEGX is the primary metabolite of lidocaine and is measured in the serum after intravenous injection of lidocaine. MEGX concentration may be used to estimate liver function after partial hepatectomy and may have prognostic value in intensive care unit patients with liver dysfunction. MEGX was found to independently predict poor outcomes in patients with chronic hepatitis C, and it was more sensitive than standard liver tests in identifying these patients.[63] Expensive and time consuming, quantitative tests currently remain primarily research tools and require further validation.

MEASUREMENT OF HEPATIC BLOOD FLOW

Blood flow to the liver can be measured using clearance techniques, indicator dilution techniques, and direct measurements.

Clearance Techniques

Based upon the Fick principle, clearance techniques estimate the hepatic blood flow by measuring the rate of disappearance of substances that are exclusively and avidly cleared by the liver. Such substances with high extraction ratios include ICG, propranolol, lidocaine, and radiolabeled colloid particles. The primary limitation of clearance techniques is they assume normal hepatocyte function. Hepatic capacity to eliminate these substances can be variably or significantly diminished in liver disease. This is particularly problematic since liver dysfunction and altered hepatic flow are so often linked.[64]

The dual cholate test measures the clearance of cholate, a bile salt, given in both oral and intravenous form. The oral cholate undergoes a high first-pass extraction and allows for a calculation of portal circulation. Clearance from the systemic circulation is measured using the intravenous cholate. One can quantify the degree of portal-systemic shunting and calculate a disease severity index. This index correlates with degree of fibrosis on liver biopsy and can predict risk of cirrhosis and poor clinical outcomes.[63,65]

Indicator Dilution Techniques

Unlike clearance methods, indicator dilution techniques can measure hepatic blood flow even in the setting of liver dysfunction. A known quantity of a radiolabeled indicator (e.g., iodinated albumin) is injected into the portal system and hepatic artery. The concentration of that substance is then measured continuously from a hepatic vein. Hepatic blood flow can then be calculated by creating indicator dilution curves. The substance used should be resistant to hepatic clearance.[4] Indicator dilution techniques also presume uniform liver perfusion, and therefore results could be altered in patients with shunting. These techniques are invasive and are still primarily research tools as well.[64]

Direct Measurements

Blood flow through the portal vein or hepatic artery can be measured directly using electromagnetic or ultrasonic probes. These techniques are invasive and subject to significant error. The surgical procedures required to implant the probes can themselves alter hepatic blood flow. Once implanted, the probes are often left in place, and blood flow is then measured via telemetry. Implantable Doppler probes are sometimes used in patients immediately post-liver transplantation, and in patients who are at high risk for hepatic artery or portal vein thromboses.[64]

RADIOLOGIC METHODS

Radiologic techniques play important roles in diagnosing liver disease. Splenoportography evaluates the splenic and portal veins; it is useful in identifying varices and thromboses. Portal venography uses three-dimensional CT to create vascular maps of portosystemic collateral vessels. These noninvasive imaging techniques are particularly useful in surgical planning, such as before liver transplantation.[66]

Inexpensive and routinely available, ultrasound can help diagnose cirrhosis with high sensitivity and specificity. Ultrasonic signs of cirrhosis include surface nodularity, hepatomegaly, and hypertrophy of the caudate lobe, as well as signs of portal hypertension, such as ascites, splenomegaly, and increased portal vein diameter. Doppler ultrasonography can show diminished portal flow and portal venous flow reversal.[54,67,68] Fibrosis can also be estimated using elastography, a noninvasive measure of liver stiffness (LS). A shear wave is delivered across the liver via an ultrasound probe, and the wave propagation is then measured. Transient elastography is reproducible and easily performed in the office. Magnetic resonance elastography is especially useful in obese patients and those with ascites, where transient elastography is less accurate. Stiffness is a continuous measure which correlates with the histological stage of fibrosis, with high sensitivity and specificity.[67,69,70] The combination of serum tests along with elastography offers much improved accuracy in diagnosing fibrosis. These tests are now widely used in practice, although they have not yet supplanted the role of liver biopsy.

Patients with chronic liver disease and chronic hepatitis B virus carriers are at increased risk for developing HCC and require regular screening for the cancer. Ultrasound is the most widely used screening tool for HCC worldwide. Multiphasic, contrast-enhanced CT and MRI are used to evaluate focal liver lesions suspicious for HCC with high sensitivity and specificity. While normal liver parenchyma receives only 25% blood flow from the hepatic artery (the rest via the portal vein), HCC cells receive their blood supply primarily from the hepatic artery. Contrast-enhanced imaging reflects this fact with HCCs showing hyperintensity in the arterial phase and washout during the portal venous phase. The Liver Imaging Reporting and Data System (LI-RADS) is a standardized tool for the radiologic classification of liver lesions in patients with chronic liver disease. Use of the LI-RADS has improved radiologic diagnostic accuracy and reduced the need for biopsy in these patients. In fact, confirmatory biopsy is rarely used, even prior to liver transplantation for HCC.[54,71,72]

Hepatic Pathophysiology

CHOLESTATIC DISEASE

Cholestasis is the impairment of bile production or flow. Cholestatic disorders are characterized primarily by elevations of serum AP and gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT), with or without elevations in bilirubin. Cholestasis can present as an acute or chronic condition and is thought to affect up to 20% of the population.[73] The impairment of flow leads to an increase in the concentration of bile salts in the serum and hepatocytes. As the bile salts accumulate in the liver, they dissolve hepatocyte cell membranes, leading to the release of AP and GGT, resulting in an increase in the serum concentrations of these enzymes.[74] Serum concentrations of AST and ALT, which are found in the cytoplasm of hepatocytes, are not increased to as great an extent. As the disease progresses, the serum concentration of conjugated bilirubin increases, giving rise to jaundice.[31] The majority of cases of cholestasis are benign; however, severe and prolonged cholestasis can lead to cirrhosis.

Signs and symptoms of cholestasis include fatigue, pruritus, dark urine, and pale stools. An elevation of AP on screening laboratory studies may be the first indication in asymptomatic patients. The evaluation consists of a history and physical exam followed by abdominal ultrasonography. Abdominal ultrasonography is used to distinguish between extrahepatic and intrahepatic cholestasis. Extrahepatic cholestasis results from mechanical obstruction of the extrahepatic bile ducts, typically by stones, strictures, or masses leading to ductal dilation. Definitive diagnosis and treatment is by endoscopic retrograde pancreatography (ERCP). If the etiology is unclear, further imaging can be conducted using endoscopic ultrasound or magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography to identify the biliary lesion leading to obstruction.[75] Normal imaging results indicate intrahepatic cholestasis. Intrahepatic cholestasis can have several etiologies including immune-mediated, infectious, drug-induced, paraneoplastic, and ischemic. The first step in the evaluation is the measurement of antimitochondrial antibody (AMA) titers to rule out primary biliary cholangitis (PBC). Further evaluation may require ERCP and liver biopsy.

PRIMARY BILIARY CHOLANGITIS

Formerly known as primary biliary cirrhosis, PBC is an autoimmune disease that is characterized by the destruction of intrahepatic cholangiocytes and the presence of AMAs. It is one of the most common cholestatic liver disorders.[76] Reported prevalence rates vary from 20 to 490 cases per million inhabitants with the highest rates reported in the United States.[77] Over 90% of patients are female and the average age at diagnosis is typically in the sixth decade. The diagnosis is made based on an elevation of AP over 1.5 times the upper limit of normal for a duration greater than 24 weeks along with the presence of an AMA titer greater than 1:40.[76] A liver biopsy in these patients will reveal interlobular bile duct lesions. Up to 60% of patients may be asymptomatic at diagnosis. If present, the most common symptoms at presentation are fatigue and pruritus. A large number of patients may present with other autoimmune disorders such as keratoconjunctivitis sicca and Raynaud phenomenon. PBC may be associated with osteopenia as well as hyperlipidemia.[76] The disease develops as a result of the loss of tolerance to mitochondrial antigens, leading to autoimmune-mediated destruction of biliary epithelial cells (cholangiocytes). PBC can lead to cirrhosis and liver failure, ultimately requiring transplantation.

Treatment consists of ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA) administration. UDCA, a bile acid, is thought to act by modifying the bile acid pool and reducing inflammation. Approximately 60% to 70% of patients with PBC respond to UDCA with improvement in serum AP and bilirubin levels and a delay in the progression to cirrhosis and liver transplantation. Patients who have a suboptimal response to UDCA have an increased risk of developing complications and liver failure. In these patients, the administration of obeticholic acid, a farnesoid-X receptor agonist, has been shown to reduce the serum levels of AP. Fibrates and corticosteroids have also shown benefit when combined with UDCA in patients who are unresponsive to UDCA alone.[78-83]

PRIMARY SCLEROSING CHOLANGITIS

PSC is a rare cholestatic, immune-mediated disease that occurs most frequently in men aged 30 to 40 years old. It is characterized by inflammation and fibrosis of the bile ducts. The majority of patients with PSC have ulcerative colitis as well. Approximately half of the patients are asymptomatic at diagnosis. The most common presenting symptoms are fatigue and pruritus. Blood tests demonstrate a cholestatic pattern. Patients may also have hypergammaglobulinemia and elevations in serum autoantibodies. Diagnosis is made based on the presence of multifocal strictures and segmental biliary dilations on cholangiography, and the exclusion of a number of other possible etiologies including bacterial cholangitis, choledocholithiasis, and surgical biliary trauma.[84] Patients have an increased risk of developing hepatobiliary carcinoma. The disease is progressive, with biliary fibrosis leading to cirrhosis and ultimately end-stage liver disease (ESLD). Liver transplantation is the only effective therapy.

CIRRHOSIS

Cirrhosis is the common pathologic endpoint of a variety of mechanisms of hepatic injury. In the United States, it is the 14th most common cause of death and has a prevalence of 0.3%.[85] The most common causes of cirrhosis in western countries are alcoholic liver disease, hepatitis C, and nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. In the Asia-Pacific region the most common cause is hepatitis B.[86] The morbidity and mortality associated with cirrhosis result mainly from portal hypertension. Chronic liver disease promotes apoptosis and regeneration of hepatocytes. The resultant inflammation leads to parenchymal injury and fibrosis, causing distortion and obstruction of the hepatic vascular architecture. These structural changes increase hepatic resistance to portal blood flow (PBF) and give rise to portal hypertension. Hepatic vascular resistance is further increased due to hepatic endothelial dysfunction, which results in a reduction of vasodilator (primarily nitric oxide [NO]) production and an increase in vasoconstrictor (i.e., thromboxane) production.[87] Portal hypertension and the release of angiogenic factors lead to the development of gastroesophageal varices as well as portosystemic shunts. As portal hypertension worsens, the locally released NO and prostaglandins cause the splanchnic circulation to vasodilate. This further increases portal inflow and exacerbates portal hypertension. Splanchnic vasodilation also leads to systemic hypotension that, in turn, increases sympathetic tone, activates the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, and increases antidiuretic hormone release, leading to the development of ascites and the hepatorenal syndrome (HRS). Other significant complications of cirrhosis and portal hypertension are spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, encephalopathy, HRS, portopulmonary hypertension (PoPH), cirrhotic cardiomyopathy, and HCC.[88]

Laboratory abnormalities in cirrhotic patients include elevations in ALT, AST, AP, GGT, as well as serum bilirubin. Hypoalbuminemia and elevations in the PT are indications of hepatic synthetic dysfunction. Although liver biopsy is the gold standard for diagnosing cirrhosis, it is often not necessary in the presence of an appropriate patient history, and laboratory and radiologic data. In patients who are suspected of having cirrhosis, abdominal ultrasonography is used to aid in the diagnosis and evaluation for HCC and portal hypertension. Serologic studies and ultrasound-based techniques for evaluating hepatic fibrosis are also available.[89]

The risk stratification of patients with cirrhosis is based on the presence and degree of portal hypertension, gastroesophageal varices, and synthetic dysfunction.[90] There are two stages of cirrhosis: compensated and decompensated. Decompensated cirrhosis is characterized by the presence of ascites, variceal hemorrhage, and/or hepatic encephalopathy (HE). Compensated cirrhosis is characterized by the absence of these clinical conditions. While the median survival in patients with compensated cirrhosis is greater than 12 years, in those with decompensated cirrhosis it is approximately 2 years.[91] Patients with compensated cirrhosis can be further stratified based on their degree of portal hypertension. Portal hypertension is defined as a hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG) greater than 5 mm Hg. Patients with an HVPG greater than 10 mm Hg are deemed to have clinically significant portal hypertension. They are at increased risk of developing varices, overt hepatic decompensation, postsurgical decompensation, and HCC compared to those with mild portal hypertension (HVPG between 5 mm Hg and 10 mm Hg).[92-94] Although HVPG is the gold standard for monitoring portal hypertension, its invasive nature precludes its routine use. A noninvasive measure of clinically significant portal hypertension is LS using transient elastography, an ultrasound-based approach. An LS value greater than 20 kPa has been shown to effectively discriminate mild from clinically significant portal hypertension.[95] Liver Doppler ultrasound may also aid in the diagnosis. The presence of portosystemic collaterals or reversal of portal venous flow on ultrasound imaging is also sufficient to diagnose clinically significant portal hypertension.[96] In patients with clinically significant portal hypertension, the presence of gastroesophageal varices portends a worse prognosis.[97]

The management of patients with compensated cirrhosis who don't have gastroesophageal varices focuses on preventing the advancement of the disease by treating the underlying etiology.[90] Patients with varices are treated with nonspecific beta-blockers (i.e., propranolol, timolol), carvedilol or endoscopic variceal ligation to prevent variceal hemorrhage. Nonspecific beta-blocker therapy reduces HVPG.[98-100]

Acute variceal hemorrhage is a medical emergency. Management consists of airway protection, volume resuscitation, and endoscopy with variceal ligation. The concomitant initiation of antibiotic prophylaxis (ceftriaxone 1 g/24 h) and vasopressor infusion (somatostatin, octreotide, or terlipressin) has been shown to improve outcome and is the standard of care. Once stabilized, preemptive TIPS may be performed in patients who are at high risk of rebleeding.[90]

ASCITES

The presence of ascites is a marker of decompensated cirrhosis. The 1-year mortality rate of patients who develop ascites is 20%.[100] Patients who develop ascites are at increased risk of developing further complications including spontaneous bacterial peritonitis and acute kidney injury (AKI). Management consists of dietary sodium restriction, nonspecific beta-blocker therapy to reduce portal pressure, and diuretic administration (spironolactone, furosemide). Midodrine can be added for refractory ascites. TIPS can improve transplant-free survival in certain patients with refractory ascites.[86]

Renal Failure and Hepatorenal Syndrome

Up to 40% of patients admitted to the hospital with ESLD develop renal failure. Renal failure is a sign of advanced disease and has a poor prognosis in liver failure. Seventy to 80% of cases are precipitated by hypovolemia or bacterial infections. HRS is less common and associated with a worse prognosis.[101,102] The diagnosis of HRS is one of exclusion. It is characterized by AKI in the absence of any apparent cause (shock, nephrotoxic drugs, obstruction, renal parenchymal disease) that is unresponsive to volume expansion and diuretic withdrawal. AKI is defined as a rise in creatinine greater than or equal to 0.3 mg/dL within 48 hours or a greater than 50% increase from baseline within 7 days.[103] HRS is subcategorized into Type 1 and Type 2 based on the rapidity of onset and degree of injury. Type 1 is rapidly progressive with a doubling of serum creatinine within 2 weeks. It is usually associated with a precipitating factor and has a worse prognosis. The treatment for HRS is aimed at increasing perfusion pressure to the kidneys. For critically ill patients, norepinephrine infusion with albumin boluses can be used. In more stable patients, terlipressin (if available) or midodrine with octreotide is administered along with albumin.[104] Dialysis may be used in the absence of response to medical therapy. Liver transplantation is the definitive treatment for HRS.[105]

HEPATIC ENCEPHALOPATHY

HE is brain dysfunction secondary to hepatic insufficiency or portosystemic shunting. It is a sign of decompensated cirrhosis. It occurs in 30% to 40% of patients with cirrhosis and 50% of patients with portosystemic shunts.[106] The clinical presentation is variable and can range from mild changes in personality to disorientation, somnolence, and coma. Asterixis is usually present in the early to middle stages.[107] The severity of HE is typically graded from I to IV using the West Haven criteria with Grade I indicating mild symptoms and Grade IV, coma (Table 16.4).[108] Common precipitating factors of HE include infections, variceal hemorrhage, and diuretic overdose. Diagnosis is based on the exclusion of other causes of brain dysfunction and the application of clinical criteria. Treatment consists of amelioration of

TABLE 16.4 West Haven Criteria for Grading Hepatic Encephalopathy

Grade	Description
I	Trivial lack of awareness; shortened attention span; disordered sleep
II	Lethargy; behavioral change; asterixis
III	Somnolence; confusion; gross disorientation; bizarre behavior
IV	Coma

Modified from Table 2, Page 719 in: Vilstrup H, Amodio P, Bajaj J, et al. Hepatic encephalopathy in chronic liver disease: 2014 practice guideline by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases and the European Association for the Study of the Liver. *Hepatol*. 2014;60:715–735.

precipitating factors and the administration of lactulose, a nonabsorbable disaccharide. Rifaximin can be added on to prevent recurrence.[108]

PULMONARY COMPLICATIONS

Hepatopulmonary syndrome (HPS), PoPH, and hepatic hydrothorax (HH) are pulmonary conditions that can develop in patients with cirrhosis and advanced liver disease. HPS has been reported in up to 30% of patients presenting for liver transplantation evaluation and is associated with increased mortality independent of the severity of liver disease.[109] It is defined as abnormal alveolar to arterial oxygen gradient (≥15 mm Hg) while breathing room air in sitting position. It is caused by intrapulmonary vascular dilation in the setting of cirrhosis. Its severity is determined by the PaO_2: greater than 80 mm Hg is mild, 60 to 80 mm Hg is moderate, 50 to 60 mm Hg is severe, and less than 50 mm Hg is very severe.[110] Patients may present with dyspnea at rest or on exertion. Approximately 25% of patients have platypnea (dyspnea when moving from supine to standing) or orthodeoxia (decrease in PaO_2 more than 5% or 4 mm Hg when moving from supine to standing). In advanced disease, patients may exhibit digital clubbing and cyanosis. Patients can be screened with pulse oximetry ($SpO_2 < 96\%$ on room air) and diagnosed based on PaO_2 values. Contrast-enhanced transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) may demonstrate intrapulmonary vascular dilation. No medical therapy has been shown to change outcome in patients with HPS. Supplemental oxygen is provided to maintain SpO_2 over 88%. Liver transplantation is the only effective treatment.[111] As such, MELD exception points are granted for patients with severe HPS (PaO_2 50-60 mm Hg). Patients with very severe HPS (PaO_2 < 50 mm Hg) have an increased risk for complications and mortality following liver transplantation although this risk may be lower in experienced centers.[111,112]

PoPH is pulmonary arterial hypertension in the setting of portal hypertension.[113] It is found in 5% of patients presenting for liver transplant evaluation and, in the absence of treatment, is associated with a 1-year survival of 46%.[114,115] The diagnosis is made by right heart catheterization showing a mean pulmonary artery pressure (mPAP) greater than 25 mm Hg, pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) greater than 240 dynes/s/cm^5, and a pulmonary artery wedge pressure less than 15 mm Hg. PoPH is classified as mild (mPAP: 25-35 mm Hg), moderate (mPAP: 35-45 mm Hg), and severe (mPAP more than 45 mm Hg).[110] The pathophysiology of the disease remains to be elucidated. Patients are typically screened using TTE to measure right ventricular systolic pressure (RVSP). Those with RVSP greater than 50 mm Hg undergo right heart catheterization to confirm the diagnosis and determine the degree of PoPH. PoPH is treated with phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitors, prostacyclin analogs, and endothelin receptor antagonists to reduce PVR. mPAP greater than 45 mm Hg is an absolute contraindication to liver transplantation. MELD exception is considered for treatment-responsive PoPH.[110]

HH has a prevalence of 5% to 10% in cirrhotic patients.[116] It develops due to the passage of ascitic fluid from the peritoneal cavity into the pleural space through defects in the diaphragm, most often on the right side. Patients may present with dyspnea, cough, chest discomfort, and hypoxia. Chest radiography and thoracentesis are used for diagnosis. Medical therapy consists of sodium restriction and diuretic administration. Refractory HH is treated with TIPS placement. For patients who have failed TIPS, VATS with pleurodesis is an option.[117]

HEPATOCELLULAR CARCINOMA

HCC is the most common primary liver malignancy and the third most common cause of cancer death globally. It occurs with greater frequency in men than woman and with a higher incidence in Asia and Africa, although the incidence has been increasing in the United States.[118] Chronic liver disease is the most important risk factor for the development of HCC. Hepatitis B, hepatitis C, hemochromatosis, alcohol use, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, diabetes mellitus, and obesity all increase the risk of developing HCC.[119] Screening is recommended for all patients with cirrhosis at 6-month intervals using ultrasound with or without serum AFP measurement. Masses over 1 cm should be imaged with dynamic MRI or four-phase multidetector CT to make the diagnosis noninvasively. A percutaneous biopsy is obtained for nodules that have nontypical appearance on imaging.[120] Staging is based on the size of the tumor, degree of extension into adjacent structures, presence of metastases, liver function, and the patient's physical status. There is no universally accepted system for staging. The tumor, node, metastasis and the Barcelona staging system (BCLC) are two of the more commonly used systems.[120]

Surgical resection of HCC is the definitive treatment for the disease. However, the diagnosis of HCC is typically made late in the course of the disease. In patients with preserved liver function and a solitary tumor confined to the liver, treatment with surgical resection carries a 5-year survival rate from 40% to 75%.[121] Transplantation may be an option for patients with hepatic dysfunction and tumors confined to the liver that meet certain size criteria.[122] Nonsurgical options for patients who are ineligible for resection or transplantation include radiofrequency ablation, transarterial chemoembolization, and systemic therapy.[120]

HEPATIC EFFECTS OF ANESTHETIC AGENTS

Inhalational Anesthetics

(See also chapter on pharmacokinetics/dynamics of volatile anesthetics.)

The hepatic effects of volatile anesthetics result primarily from alterations in liver perfusion. Total hepatic blood flow (THBF) is the sum of PBF and hepatic arterial blood flow (HABF). Reductions in PBF are matched by increases in HABF to maintain THBF through the hepatic arterial buffer response (HABR).[123] Volatile anesthetics reduce mean arterial pressure (MAP) and CO, leading to a reduction in PBF in a dose-dependent manner. The HABR is preserved with isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane leading to preservation of THBF, but not with halothane.[124-126]

Xenon is an inert gas that can been used as an anesthetic.[127] It has favorable anesthetic properties including a low blood-gas partition coefficient (0.115) and a stable hemodynamic profile.[128,129] Hepatic perfusion during xenon anesthesia has been studied in pigs. In one study using radiolabeled microspheres, there was no difference in hepatic perfusion in pigs anesthetized with xenon when compared to propofol.[130] However, a second study using ICG reported a 17% reduction in portal venous blood flow in pigs anesthetized with a ketamine infusion that received a xenon anesthetic compared to controls. They reported no significant difference in hepatic arterial perfusion or hepatic function.[131] In a porcine model, the use of xenon anesthesia was associated with significantly higher hepatic venous oxygen content when compared with propofol.[132] It is not clear that there are relevant clinical consequences to these findings. The successful use of xenon anesthesia for the conduct of liver transplantation has been reported in a series of four cases.[133]

In general, intravenous anesthetics such as propofol, thiopental, etomidate, and methohexital do not adversely affect the liver. Furthermore, the pharmacokinetic properties of these agents are unchanged in patients with cirrhosis.[134-137] Cirrhotic patients may be more sensitive to their central nervous system depressant effects. Propofol has been found to increase hepatic blood flow and oxygen consumption in both animal and human studies that have measured flow using radiolabeled microspheres, Doppler, and electromagnetic flow meters.[138-141] Studies using ICG clearance to measure hepatic flow, however, have reported that propofol reduced hepatic flow.[142,143] These findings were confounded by the fact that propofol itself interferes with ICG clearance.[141,144] Clinically, propofol has no adverse effect on hepatic function. Midazolam elimination is impaired in liver dysfunction leading to prolongation of sedative effects.[145] Dexmedetomidine elimination is reduced in patients with hepatic impairment, necessitating dose reduction.[146]

In patients with significant cirrhosis, the metabolism of morphine, meperidine, and alfentanil is reduced and their durations of action are prolonged.[147-149] In patients with mild hepatic insufficiency, the pharmacokinetics of fentanyl, sufentanil, and remifentanil are unchanged when compared to normal controls.[150-152]

Reduced levels of pseudocholinesterase in patients with hepatic dysfunction may prolong the effects of succinylcholine and mivacurium.[153,154] The time to recovery from cisatracurium is unchanged as it is subject to Hoffman degradation.[155]

Aminosteroid neuromuscular blocking agents (vecuronium, rocuronium, pancuronium) have a larger volume of distribution in cirrhotic patients. They have a slower rate of onset and a longer duration of action, necessitating judicious dosing and close train-of-four monitoring.[156-158] Sugammadex has been shown to be effective for reversing rocuronium in patients with hepatic dysfunction.[159] The use of neostigmine for reversal is likewise unaffected by the presence of hepatic dysfunction.

Five studies have examined the effect of epidural anesthesia on hepatic blood flow. Four have shown a reduction in hepatic blood flow in response to lumbar or thoracic epidural anesthesia when measured using the PDR of ICG and transgastric hepatic vein Doppler. In one study, blood flow was restored with the infusion of colloid and dopamine.[160-162] Maintenance of MAP with ephedrine or norepinephrine further reduced hepatic blood flow. Unlike these studies, a study by Kortgen et al. found that thoracic epidural anesthesia increased hepatic blood flow when measured by PDR-ICG, whereas lumbar epidural anesthesia resulted in an overall reduction.[163] The clinical significance of these findings is uncertain.

Nonhepatic Surgery in Patients With Liver Disease

The preoperative evaluation of patients with liver disease should determine the severity of the disease and the presence of comorbid conditions associated with hepatic dysfunction. Given the mortality risk, elective surgery is contraindicated in patients with acute hepatitis or acute liver failure.[164] In the absence of cirrhosis and significant hepatic dysfunction, patients with chronic liver disease generally have no increased risk for undergoing elective surgery. Patients with cirrhosis who undergo nonhepatic surgery have a higher incidence of postoperative morbidity and mortality when compared to patients without cirrhosis.[165] A wide range of mortality rates has been reported in the literature (1%-50%), mostly in small, uncontrolled, institutional studies spanning 30 years. Mortality in these patients is a function of the severity of liver disease, its attendant comorbidities, and the type of surgical procedure.[165] The largest study of in-hospital mortality in patients with cirrhosis used data from the Nationwide Inpatient Sample. The outcomes of 22,569 cirrhotic patients undergoing one of four index operations (cholecystectomy, colectomy, coronary artery bypass grafting [CABG], and abdominal aortic aneurysm repair) from 1998 to 2005 were compared to those of 2.8 million control patients. It was found that 4214 of the cirrhotic patients had portal hypertension. Patients with cirrhosis had a three- to eight-fold increase in the risk of in-hospital mortality, depending on the operation, compared to control patients. Mortality risk worsened in those with more severe liver disease, ranging from 12- to 23-fold, depending on the specific operation. The greatest risk was seen in patients undergoing CABG.[166] A Taiwanese study comparing 24,282 cirrhotic patients undergoing major nonhepatic surgery with 97,128 matched control patients found an over two-fold increased risk of 30-day mortality in patients with cirrhosis (1.2% vs. 0.7%). Mortality was further increased in those cirrhotic patients with viral hepatitis, jaundice, ascites, gastrointestinal hemorrhage, and hepatic coma.[167]

In cirrhotic patients undergoing nonhepatic surgery, the Child-Turcotte-Pugh (CTP) and MELD scores have been shown to identify those who are at higher risk of morbidity and mortality.[168-172] The CTP score is calculated based on

TABLE 16.5 Child-Turcotte-Pugh (CTP) Score

	POINTS ASSIGNED		
	1	**2**	**3**
Ascites	Absent	Slight	Moderate
Bilirubin	<2 mg/dL	2-3 mg/dL	>3 mg/dL
Albumin	>3.5 g/dL	2.8-3.5 g/dL	<2.8 g/dL
PROTHROMBIN TIME			
Seconds over control	<4	4-6	>6
International normalized ratio	<1.7	1.7-2.3	>2.3
Encephalopathy	None	Grades 1-2	Grades 3-4
Point total	CTP class	Operative mortality	
5-6	A	2-10%	
7-9	B	12-31%	
10-15	C	12-82%	

The 30-day postoperative mortality predicted by the **Child-Turcotte-Pugh (CTP) score** is based on retrospective studies cited in text. Lower mortality rates have been reported in more recent studies.

From Pugh RN, Murray-Lyon IM, Dawson JL, et al. Transection of the oesophagus for bleeding oesophageal varices. *Br J Surg*. 1973;60(8):646–649. https://doi.org/.

the values of five variables: degree of HE, degree of ascites, INR, serum albumin, and total bilirubin (Table 16.5). The score is then used to classify the patient into one of three groups: Class A (score of 5-6), Class B (score of 7-9), and Class C (score > 10).[173] A higher CTP class is associated with a greater risk of mortality. The mortality risk associated with each CTP class has decreased in more recent studies. In early retrospective series of cirrhotic patients undergoing abdominal surgery, the mortality risks associated with CTP Class A, B, and C were 10%, 30%, and 73% to 82%, respectively.[174,175] In a more recent series of 194 patients undergoing 212 general surgical procedures, 30-day mortality was reported to be 6%, 13%, and 53% for CTP Classes A, B, and C, respectively.[169] The risk has been found to be even lower in patients undergoing laparoscopic procedures (Class A: 2%; Class B: 12%; Class C: 12%), suggesting that improvements in perioperative care and surgical techniques have made surgery safer for patients with cirrhosis.[170] A disadvantage of the CTP score is that the grading of encephalopathy and ascites is subjective. Furthermore, the score doesn't take into account other predictors of operative risk such as the type of surgery or the etiology of the cirrhosis.[176]

As described above, the MELD score, calculated using the patient's INR, serum creatinine, serum bilirubin, and etiology of liver disease (Fig. 16.5) [177] is a validated measure of mortality risk in patients with ESLD and is the basis of the liver allocation system for transplantation.[178] A number of studies have validated the MELD score as a predictor of risk in cirrhotic patients undergoing abdominal, orthopedic, and cardiac surgery.[168,179-181] In a large, retrospective study of cirrhotic patients undergoing major abdominal, orthopedic, or cardiac surgery, MELD score was a predictor for mortality at 30 days, 90 days, 1 year, and 5 years. The 30-day mortality ranged from 5.8% in patients with a MELD under 8 to over 50% in patients with a MELD score greater than 20.[182] The incorporation of serum sodium into the MELD score (MELD-Na) as well as a combination of serum sodium and patient age (integrated MELD or iMELD) have been shown to improve the accuracy of predictions of survival over MELD.[183,184] The use of MELD-Na and iMELD may allow more accurate prediction of mortality following nonhepatic surgery; however more studies are needed.[169,185,186]

Studies comparing the predictive power of CTP to MELD have yielded conflicting results likely due to small sample sizes and differences in primary outcome measures and surgical procedures. Small studies in cardiac and general surgical patients have found the abilities of CTP and MELD to predict postoperative mortality to be comparable.[168,179] A study in cirrhotic patients undergoing extrahepatic abdominal surgery found MELD to be a better predictor than CTP for mortality or hepatic decompensation within 90 days of surgery.[180] A more recent study found neither to be a good predictor for death and hepatic decompensation in cirrhotic patients undergoing elective surgery requiring general anesthesia.[171] It has been suggested that both scores should be used in conjunction with other available patient data when attempting to risk-stratify cirrhotic patients for nonhepatic surgery.[187]

Apart from the severity of cirrhosis and the specific surgical procedure, risk factors associated with increased postoperative morbidity and mortality in cirrhotic patients include emergency surgery, American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) physical status classification, the presence of renal insufficiency, male gender, and advanced age.[168,170,188]

In addition to determining the severity of cirrhosis, the preoperative evaluation should determine the presence and severity of comorbidities associated with cirrhosis, including HE, pulmonary disease, cardiac disease, and renal dysfunction (see previous discussion). Preoperative laboratory evaluation should include a complete blood count to evaluate for anemia, thrombocytopenia, and leukocytosis. Additionally, INR, fibrinogen, serum electrolytes, creatinine, glucose, transaminases, bilirubin, and albumin should be measured.

Anesthetic Considerations for Procedures Involving the Liver

Transjugular Intrahepatic Portosystemic Shunt. TIPS placement is a catheter-based, endovascular procedure during which a shunt is created between the portal and hepatic venous systems through the parenchyma of the liver (Fig. 16.6). The goal of the procedure is to reduce portal hypertension.[189] The main indications for TIPS are the secondary prevention of variceal hemorrhage and the management of refractory ascites.[190] During acute variceal hemorrhage in high-risk patients (HVPG > 20), TIPS placement following endoscopic intervention has been shown to be reduce rebleeding.[191] Contraindications to the procedure include congestive heart failure, tricuspid regurgitation, and moderate to severe pulmonary hypertension. During the procedure, a catheter is typically inserted through the right internal jugular vein into a hepatic venous branch. A needle is then passed through the hepatic vein into the portal vein. The tract is dilated and a stent is placed across it. HVPG should be

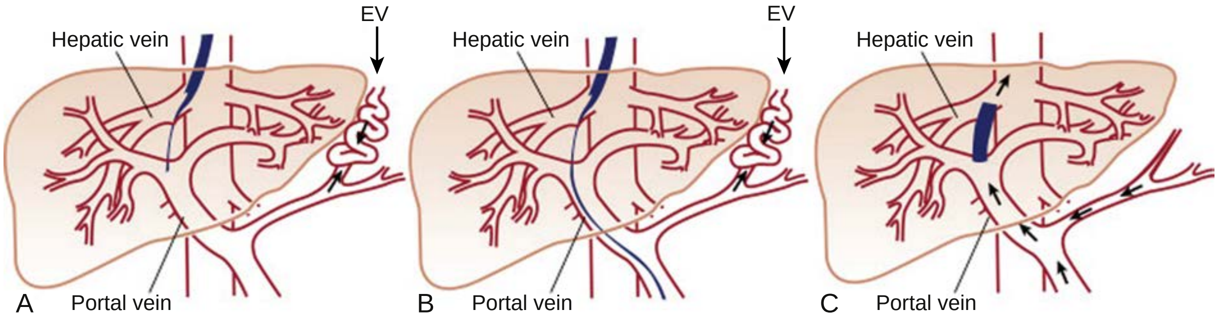


Fig. 16.6 Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt procedure. A stent (or stents) is passed through the internal jugular vein over a wire into the hepatic vein (A); dilated esophageal varices *(EV)* are apparent. The wire and stent or stents are then advanced into the portal vein (B), after which blood can pass through the portal vein into the hepatic vein and bypass and decompress dilated esophageal veins (C). (Reproduced with permission from University of Michigan Health System: www.med.umich.edu/1libr/topics/liver09.htm/ (not able to access/TG 9–21–18)

less than 12 mm Hg following the procedure. The incidence of major complications such as intra abdominal hemorrhage is on the order of 1% to 2%.[192]

TIPS may be carried out electively or emergently. The preoperative assessment should determine the extent of liver dysfunction and associated morbidity. Patients with advanced liver disease may be in a hyperdynamic state. They may have significant ascites with reductions in FRC as well as HH or HPS. Pulmonary function may be further compromised when the patient is in a supine position for the procedure. Patients may also have renal dysfunction, anemia, coagulopathy, and thrombocytopenia. Laboratory studies should screen for anemia, thrombocytopenia, and coagulopathy, as well as hyponatremia and elevations of creatinine and potassium. Patients should be transfused for a hemoglobin concentration less than 7 to 9 mg/dL, INR greater than 2, and a platelet count less than 50,000/μL.[193] The procedure can be conducted under local anesthesia, sedation, or general anesthesia. Consideration should be given to the acuity of the patient, their ability to tolerate supine positioning, and the anticipated length of the case. In patients with significant ascites or recent variceal hemorrhage, general anesthesia with rapid sequence induction for airway protection is preferred. Intraoperative pain may be experienced during the establishment of the intrahepatic shunt and the dilation of the stent. In a series of 150 patients undergoing TIPS with general anesthesia using TIVA, the authors reported a postoperative ICU admission rate of 6.6% primarily for intraoperative hemodynamic instability. They advocated for the use of general anesthesia for all TIPS procedures, given the concerns for airway protection, ability to maintain supine position, and pain associated with the procedure.[194] Postprocedure complications include heart failure due to increased venous return, HE, contrast-induced nephropathy, hemolytic anemia, and sepsis.[195,196]

Hepatic Resection. The most common indications for hepatic resection are for the treatment of secondary metastases (i.e., metastatic colon cancer), primary hepatic malignancies, biliary tract malignancies, and benign hepatic masses.[197] Hepatic resection is carried out along the functional segments of the liver. The liver is divided into eight functional segments based on the distribution of blood supply and biliary drainage. The left liver is comprised of segments II, III, and IV, while the right liver is comprised of segments V, VI, VII, and VIII. Segment I is the caudate lobe (see Fig.16.1). Right hepatectomy involves resection of segments V-VIII. Left hepatectomy involves resection of segments II-IV. Right lobectomy, also described as an extended right hepatectomy or right trisegmentectomy, involves resection of segments IV-VIII with or without segment I. An extended left hepatectomy (left trisegmentectomy) is the resection of segments II-V and VIII.[198] Mortality and morbidity rates are impacted by the extent of the resection. A review of the 4881 hepatic resections over a 5-year period in the American College of Surgeons – National Surgical Quality Improvement Program database reported 30-day mortality and morbidity rates of 1.9% and 13.1%, respectively, for patients undergoing partial hepatectomy. Those mortality and morbidity rates increased significantly for patients undergoing extended hepatectomies (lobectomies or trisegmentectomies) to 5.8% and 22.5%, respectively.[199,200] Other factors which have been shown to impact outcomes are the case volume of the performing center, patient age, history of cardiac, pulmonary or renal disease, blood loss, the presence of ascites, and reduced hepatic function.[199,200]

Laparoscopic hepatic resection is considered most appropriate for small (<5 cm), solitary lesions located in peripheral segments (II-VI), when performed in experienced institutions.[201,202] More extensive resections have been reported in experienced centers. A metaanalysis of 83 comparative case series (2900 patients) found a significantly lower rate of complications, transfusions, blood loss, and hospital stay in case-matched cohort of patients undergoing laparoscopic liver resection compared to open liver resection.[203] To date, the only randomized, controlled trial comparing laparoscopic to open liver resection found a significant reduction in postoperative complications in patients undergoing laparoscopic hepatic resection (19% vs. 31%; 95% confidence interval [CI], 1.67-21.8; $P = .021$) for colorectal cancer liver metastases requiring resection of fewer than three consecutive segments. Although the hospital length of stay was significantly shorter, there were no differences in blood loss or mortality.[204] Conversion from a laparoscopic to an open procedure is usually due to intraoperative hemorrhage and is reported to occur in 6% to 14% of cases. Risk factors for conversion include elevated BMI, increased age, diabetes mellitus, hypertension, and large tumor size.[205,206] A number of recent observational, retrospective studies have described the performance of robot-assisted hepatectomy for both minor and major resections.[207] A metaanalysis of seven studies published between 2010 and 2014, comparing laparoscopic to robotic hepatectomy, found that the laparoscopic approach is associated with significant reductions in blood loss and operative time without any difference in the conversion rate, postoperative morbidity, and the hospital length of stay.[208]

The preoperative evaluation of the patient should focus on determining the severity of liver disease and the presence of other comorbidities. Both cirrhosis and steatosis have been associated with increased mortality in patients undergoing liver resection. The decision to proceed is made based on the anticipated future liver remnant (FLR) that will remain following resection.[209,210] In patients with an anticipated FLR size that is considered unsafe, selective portal vein embolization (PVE) may be conducted in the weeks prior to the hepatic resection. Disruption of portal flow to the diseased portion of the liver leads to atrophy of the portion to be resected and hypertrophy of the FLR, allowing the patient to have adequate liver mass following resection. PVE is typically indicated for patients with an anticipated FLR less than 20% in the absence of cirrhosis, and less than 40% in the presence of cirrhosis.[120,211] Further preoperative evaluation and risk assessment should take place as outlined above. Laboratory investigations prior to hepatic resection should include a complete blood count, serum electrolytes, liver chemistries, albumin, coagulation studies, and a type and screen.

Strategies for Minimizing Blood Loss

Intraoperative blood loss during liver resection is associated with an increased risk of morbidity and mortality.[212-214] Several preoperative factors have been associated with an increased risk of transfusion. These include preoperative anemia, the need for an extrahepatic procedure, the need for caval exposure, major hepatectomy (>3 segments), tumor size, thrombocytopenia, cirrhosis, and a repeat operation.[215-217] For patients at increased risk of significant intraoperative hemorrhage, the use of techniques such as acute normovolemic hemodilution and intraoperative cell salvage have been shown to reduce the transfusion of allogeneic units.[218-221]

A number of strategies have been adopted to reduce blood loss in open hepatic resection and case series from high-volume centers routinely report losses less than 500 mL.[213,222,223] Such strategies include the use of temporary hepatic vascular occlusion and the intraoperative maintenance of low central venous pressure (CVP).[224,225]

Hepatic vascular occlusion techniques may be used by surgeons to limit blood loss by limiting blood flow to the liver. Although not routinely used in simple resections, familiarity with these techniques is important as they may be employed in more complex resections. The most commonly used vascular occlusion technique is occlusion of the hepatic artery and portal vein by clamping the hepatoduodenal ligament. Otherwise known as the Pringle maneuver, total hepatic inflow occlusion was first described in 1908 as a means of controlling hemorrhage in hepatic trauma (Fig.16.7A).[226] The drawback of this maneuver is the potential for hepatic ischemia and reperfusion injury.[227] To mitigate this effect, surgeons typically make use of intermittent clamping with 15- to 20-minute intervals of clamping interspersed with 5- to 10-minute intervals of unclamping for a total ischemic time of less than 120 minutes.[228] Tolerance of longer cumulative ischemic times has been reported.[229] The application of sevoflurane for 30 minutes of preconditioning prior to the Pringle maneuver has been shown in one single-center randomized, controlled trial to significantly reduce postoperative transaminitis and complications in cases with greater than 30 minutes of continuous inflow occlusion.[230] In a subsequent three-armed randomized controlled trial, the same group reported reductions in postoperative transaminitis and complications when sevoflurane was administered after the Pringle maneuver ("post-conditioning") or with the use of intermittent clamping.[231]

The utility of the Pringle maneuver for reducing blood loss in modern hepatic resection has been called into question. While two early randomized, controlled trials showed a significant reduction in blood loss with intermittent Pringle maneuver compared to no inflow occlusion, three, more recent, randomized controlled trials have reported no benefit.[232-236] The median blood loss values reported in these three more recent trials were much lower than those reported in the initial two studies. This finding suggests that in the context of current intraoperative approaches to hepatic resection, the routine use of the Pringle maneuver may not be necessary.[236,237]

An alternative technique that may be utilized is hemi-hepatic inflow occlusion. This maneuver involves exclusively clamping the branches of the portal vein and hepatic artery which supply the hemi-liver which is being resected in order to reduce ischemic injury to the remnant liver (see Fig. 16.7B and C).[238] Hemi-hepatic inflow occlusion hasn't been shown to reduce blood loss when compared to Pringle maneuver.[239-242] Total hepatic vascular exclusion (THVE) involves occlusion of the suprahepatic and infrahepatic IVC in addition to the portal vein and hepatic artery (see Fig. 16.7D)[243] THVE can result in significant hypotension due to the reduction in venous return as well as increased morbidity. It has not been shown to offer any benefit compared to the Pringle maneuver and its use is typically reserved for patients with tumor extension into the IVC. In such complex resections, it has been combined with hypothermic portal perfusion and venovenous bypass to mitigate the risks of hypotension and hepatic ischemia; however the reported mortality is high.[244,245] To avoid the hemodynamic effects of THVE, selective hepatic vascular exclusion (SHVE), which involves clamping the hepatic veins instead of the IVC, may be employed by the surgeon.[246] Some studies have shown that SHVE results in fewer complications than THVE; however it is technically demanding and has a limited role in uncomplicated hepatic resections.[247,248]

LOW CENTRAL VENOUS PRESSURE

While the Pringle maneuver occludes inflow to the liver, retrograde flow through the hepatic veins can still lead to substantial venous hemorrhage. The pressure in the hepatic veins is directly related to vena caval pressure, hence the strategy of maintaining a low CVP (<5 mm Hg) to minimize intraoperative blood loss.[249] Retrospective

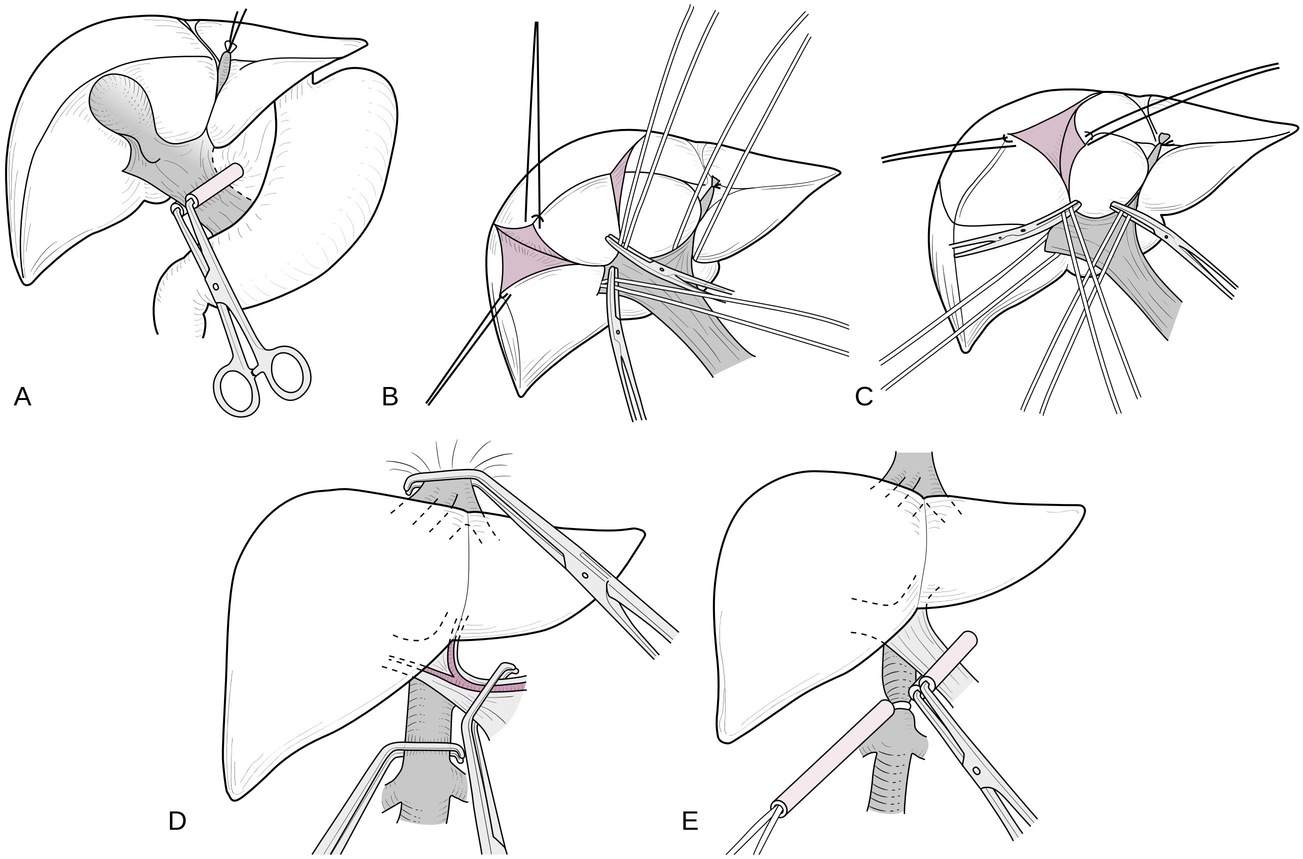


Fig. 16.7 (A–E) Vascular occlusion techniques in hepatic surgery. Surgical vascular occlusive techniques to reduce hemorrhage during hepatic resection include the Pringle maneuver (7A) during which a clamp is placed across the hepatoduodenal ligament to occlude hepatic arterial and portal venous inflow to the liver. Selective hepatic vascular exclusion (7B and C) involves clamping of the vessels perfusing the hemi-liver which is being resected. Total hepatic vascular exclusion (7D) is achieved by clamping the inferior vena cava above and below the liver along with the hepatoduodenal ligament. Another technique combines the application of a clamp across the infrahepatic IVC clamp with one across the hepatoduodenal ligament (7E). *IVC,* Inferior vena cava. (From Otsubo T. Control of the inflow and outflow system during liver resection. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Sci.* 2012;19:15–18.)

observational studies have reported reduced blood loss in patients managed with CVP less than 5 mm Hg without any significant adverse events.[250-253] Two randomized controlled trials comparing patients with CVP under 5 mm Hg with liberal volume administration have shown reductions in both intraoperative blood loss and the need for transfusion.[254,255] These studies have all been at risk for significant bias. Furthermore, in some of the trials the difference in estimated blood loss, though statistically significant, was clinically inconsequential.[256] Although standard practice in hepatic resections is to maintain low CVP, some studies have found no association between CVP and intraoperative blood loss. In retrospective studies of patients undergoing donor hepatectomies, no correlation was found between the CVP and intraoperative blood loss. This finding may be due to the fact that living liver donors are healthy patients with normal livers.[257,258] The largest of these studies consisted of over 900 patients. Although it found no correlation between CVP and estimated blood loss, nearly all of the patients were managed with CVPs less than 10 mm Hg, and the majority had CVPs in the 4 to 6 mm Hg range.[258]

A number of techniques have been described for reducing CVP during hepatic resection. The most commonly reported approach is the use of intraoperative fluid restriction with rates of 1 mL/kg/h. Vasopressors are used as needed to maintain SBP over 90 mm Hg and urine output more than 25 mL/h. Though seldom required, vasodilation using nitroglycerin or morphine, or forced diuresis with furosemide, can be instituted if fluid restriction is insufficient.[250,251,254,255,259] The use of milrinone, reverse Trendelenburg position, and epidural anesthesia have also been described, though there is insufficient data to recommend one particular approach.[256,260-262]

Clamping of the infrahepatic IVC (IIVC) has been described as a means of minimizing hemorrhage in the setting of an elevated CVP despite the interventions described earlier (see Fig. 16.7E).[263] A number of randomized controlled trials have demonstrated a significant reduction in blood loss and transfusion with the use of IIVC clamping in patients who tolerate the clamp or have a CVP greater than 5 mm Hg.[262,264-268] A metaanalysis of these trials, comprising of 714 patients, showed a significant reduction in intraoperative blood loss (mean difference −353 mL) with no difference in the rates of postoperative complications. Of note, in pooled analysis, there was no significant difference in reported CVP values between the two groups.[269]

OTHER APPROACHES TO REDUCE BLOOD LOSS

Two multicenter, randomized, placebo-controlled trials have examined the efficacy of prophylactic recombinant Factor VIIa (rFVIIa) administration to reduce transfusion patients undergoing hepatic resection. The studies found no benefit of prophylactic rFVIIa with respect to mortality, red blood cell transfusions, or adverse events.[270,271] A single randomized, controlled trial in 214 patients undergoing primarily minor hepatic resections (82% of cases) found that the administration of tranexamic acid (TXA) resulted in fewer transfusions and less blood loss compared to placebo. In the study group, 500 mg of TXA was administered intravenously prior to incision followed by 250 mg every 6 hours for 3 days.[272]

A recent Cochrane database analysis of 67 randomized clinical trials of methods to decrease blood loss during liver resection found a high risk of bias in all trials. Based on the outcomes that were available in more than one trial, there is low-quality evidence that the "clamp and crush" parenchymal resection technique may be associated with fewer adverse events than radiofrequency resection techniques. They reported very low quality evidence that blood loss, operating time, and total hospital stay were reduced with intraoperative low CVP management.[273]

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT

The anesthetic management of these cases should be tailored to the comorbidities of the patients, the surgical approach (open, laparoscopic), the anticipated extent of resection, and the need for vascular occlusive maneuvers. Adequate venous access should be obtained for the anticipated degree of hemorrhage. In cases where significant blood loss is anticipated, red blood cell salvage can be used and consideration should be given to the use of acute normovolemic hemodilution. In addition to standard ASA monitors, intra-arterial blood pressure monitoring should be used in cases during which significant hemorrhage or the need for vascular occlusion maneuvers is anticipated. Central venous catheters may be inserted for both vascular access and CVP monitoring, although some high-volume centers forgo the routine use of CVP monitoring.[274,275] Peripheral venous pressure monitoring may be considered as an alternative. Values are obtained through transduction of an antecubital vein and have been shown to correlate with the CVP in patients undergoing hepatic resection.[276,277] Stroke volume variation (SVV) has been investigated as an alternative to CVP for volume management in patients undergoing liver resection. A study of patients undergoing donor hepatectomy showed an SVV value ≤6% to be predictive of blood loss over 700 mL.[278] In two studies, targeting SVV values greater than 12% to 15% in patients undergoing open or laparoscopic hepatic resection yielded blood loss comparable to, or better than, maintaining low CVP.[279,280] In a study using milrinone to reduce CVP, SVV of 9% yielded a favorable surgical field. No correlation with CVP was noted in this study, possibly due to the lusitropic effects of milrinone.[281] The use of transesophageal echocardiography may be considered in patients with cardiac risk factors, although care must be taken in the presence of significant esophageal varices.

Hepatic resection may be associated with hemorrhage and, in extensive cases, the development of coagulopathy. There is insufficient data to recommend the routine use of viscoelastic hemostatic assays (rotational thromboelastography (TEG) or rotational thromboelastometry). A single randomized, controlled trial of TEG-guided transfusion in cirrhotic patients with coagulopathy (INR > 1.8 and/or platelet count $<50 \times 10^9$/L) undergoing invasive procedures found a significant reduction in blood product administration with TEG compared to the standard lab value–based group. However, only half of the patients enrolled in the trial were undergoing procedures associated with greater than 3% risk of hemorrhage.[282]

With respect to pain management, thoracic epidural analgesia is a highly effective means of pain control for hepatic resection.[283,284] Although its use for this purpose has been described in a number of case series, it remains controversial due to the development of postoperative coagulopathy and thrombocytopenia following hepatic resection and the associated risk of epidural hematoma.[276,285-288] Postoperative coagulopathy and thrombocytopenia occur in 21% to 100% of patients undergoing liver resection, depending on the volume of tissue resected. The INR peaks around postoperative day (POD) one or two while the platelet count is lowest on POD three or four. The values typically return to baseline by POD four or five; however in some patients they may remain elevated for up to a week, leading to delays in epidural catheter removal or the decision to transfuse FFP to facilitate catheter removal.[276,285-289] An additional concern is the accidental dislodgment of the epidural catheter while the patient is coagulopathic which has been reported to occur in up to 7% of patients.[276,286] The degree of coagulopathy is influenced by the extent of the resection. In a review of 759 patients undergoing hepatic resection, the incidence of coagulopathy was 39.1% in patients who had undergone major hepatectomies (>2 segments) versus 21.3% in patients who had undergone minor hepatectomies (≤2 segments).[289] Other factors that are independently associated with postoperative coagulopathy included preexisting cirrhosis, preoperative INR ≥ 1.3, preoperative platelet count <150,000/μL, estimated blood loss ≥ 1000 mL, and the duration of surgery.[285,287,289] Although no case series has reported the complication of an epidural hematoma, epidural hematoma is quite rare and the numbers of published cases may have been inadequate to detect its occurrence.[290,291]

Rapid sequence induction should be considered in patients with significant ascites. Maintenance of general anesthesia has been described with both volatile anesthetics and intravenous anesthetics. There is no compelling clinical evidence for the benefit of one specific agent over another.[292-294] Regardless of the approach, anesthetic dosing should be titrated to the patient's requirements, taking into account the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of common anesthetic agents in patients with liver disease. The anesthesiologist should understand the vascular occlusion strategies that may be employed during the operation along with their hemodynamic effects. The Pringle maneuver, both during open and laparoscopic hepatic resections, leads to an increase in MAP and systemic vascular resistance and a decrease in CO.[295,296] During open hepatic resection, portal triad clamping leads to a decrease in left ventricular (LV) end-diastolic area (i.e., LV preload). During laparoscopic hepatic resection, in the presence of pneumoperitoneum, PTC also increases LV end-systolic wall stress (i.e., LV afterload).[297]

ENHANCED RECOVERY AFTER SURGERY AND LIVER RESECTION

A number of randomized controlled trials have been conducted comparing the use of enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) protocols with traditional management in patients undergoing both open and laparoscopic liver resections.[250,298-301] Although ERAS Society consensus guidelines exist, these trials differed with respect to the number and nature of ERAS elements.[302] Most incorporated preoperative education, early enteral nutrition, and early mobilization. The implementation of an ERAS protocol for liver resection surgery has been shown to reduce minor adverse events, hospital length of stay, hospital cost, and to improve patient quality of life. A metaanalysis published by the Cochrane group found that the use of ERAS protocols resulted in a reduction in mild adverse events, hospital length of stay, and cost. However, all studies were at high risk of bias and the quality of available evidence was determined to be low.[303]

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Phillip S. Mushlin and Simon Gelman for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Molina DK, et al. *Am J Forensic Med Pathol*. 2015;36(3):182.
2. Molina DK, DiMaio VJM. *Am J Forensic Med Pathol*. 2012;33(4):368.
3. Pryce JW, et al. *BMC Clin Pathol*. 2014;14:(18).
4. Abdel–Misih SRZ, Bloomston M. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2010;90(4):643.
5. van Gulik TM, van den Esschert JW. *HPB (Oxford). England*; 2010;12:81.
6. Juza RM, Pauli EM. *Clin Anat*. 2014;27(5):764.
7. Strasberg SM. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat*. 2005;12(5):351.
8. Strasberg SM, Phillips C. *Ann Surg*. 2013;257(3):377.
9. Bismuth H. Revisiting liver anatomy and terminology of hepatectomies. *Ann Surg*. 2013;257(3):383.
10. Poisson J, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2017;66(1):212.
11. Blouin A, et al. *J Cell Biol*. 1977;72(2):441.
12. Treyer A, Müsch A. *Physiol*. 2013;3(1):243.
13. T K. Metabolic Zonation of the Liver: The Oxygen Gradient Revisited; 2018. PubMed - NCBI. https://phstwlp2.partners.org:2052/pubmed/28126520.
14. Geerts A. *Semin Liver Dis*. 2001;21(3):311.
15. Tsuchida SL, Friedman T. Mechanisms of Hepatic Stellate Cell Activation; 2018. PubMed - NCBI. https://phstwlp2.partners.org:2052/pubmed/28487545.
16. Li P, et al. *Mol Immunol*. 2017;85:222.
17. Robinson MW, et al. *Cell Mol Immunol*. 2016;13(3):267.
18. Lau AH, Thomson AW. *Gut*. 2003;52(2):307.
19. Njoku DB. *Int J Mol Sci*. 2014;15(4):6990.
20. Almazroo OA, et al. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2017;21(1):1.
21. Trefts E, et al. *Curr Biol*. 2017;27(21):r1151.
22. Adeva–Andany MM, et al. *Biosci Rep*. 2016;36(6).
23. Nguyen P, et al. *J Anim Physiol Anim Nutr (Berl)*. 2008;92(3):272.
24. Boyer JL. *Compr Physiol*. 2013;3(3):1035.
25. Roberts MS, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2002;41(10):751.
26. Malik MY, et al. *Drug Metab Rev*. 2016;48(2):281.
27. Borowski M, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1986;261(4):1624.
28. Dimova EY, Kietzmann T. *Thromb Haemost*. 2008;100(6):992.
29. Cesarman–Maus G, Hajjar KA. *Br J Haematol*. 2005;129(3):307.
30. Stein PE, et al. Update Review of the Acute Porphyrias; 2018.PubMed – NCBI. https://phstwlp2.partners.org:2052/pubmed/?term=27982422.
31. Sticova E, Jirsa M. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2013;19(38):6398–6407.
32. Ganz T, Nemeth E. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 2012;1823(9):1434.
33. Yakar S, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 2002;110(6):771.
34. Lu H, et al. *Hypertens Res*. 2016;39(7):492.
35. Jelkmann W. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2001;13(7):791.
36. Habib S, et al. Approach to jaundice and abnormal liver function test results. In: Sanyal AJ, et al., ed. *Zakim and Boyer's Hepatol: A Textbook of Liver Disease*. 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:99–116.
37. Pratt DS. Liver chemistry and function tests. In: Feldman M, et al. ed. *Sleisenger and Fordtran's Gastrointestinal and Liver Disease: Pathophysiology, Diagnosis, Management*. 10th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2016:1243–1253.
38. Kwo PY, et al. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2017;112(1):18.
39. Eminler AT, Ayyildiz T, Irak K, et al. AST/ALT ratio is not useful in predicting the degree of fibrosis in chronic viral hepatitis patients. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2015;27(12):1361.
40. Maina I, et al. *Jrnl App Lab Med*. 2016;1(2):119.
41. Redick JA, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1982;257(24):15200.
42. Siddique A, Kowdley KV. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2012;16(2):199.
43. Fargo MV, et al. *Am Fam Physician*. 2017;95(3):164.
44. Liang TJ, Hepatitis B. The virus and disease. *Hepatology*. 2009; 49(suppl 5):13.
45. AASLD/IDSA HCV Guidance Panel. *Hepatology*. 2015;62(3):932.
46. Fourati S, et al. *J Int AIDS Soc*. 2018;21(suppl 2):e25058.
47. Freiman JM, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2016;165(5):345.
48. Ajisaka H, et al. *J Surg Oncol*. 2003;84(2):89.
49. Fujioka M, et al. *Hepatology*. 2001;34(6):1128.
50. Sugimoto H, et al. *Liver Int*. 2003;23(1):38.
51. Wong RJ, et al. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2015;19(2):309.
52. Song P, et al. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2016;22(1):262.
53. Yuen M, Lai C. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol*. 2005;19(1):91.
54. Tapper EB, Lok AS. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377(23):2296.
55. Bolondi G, et al. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2016;22(26):5936.
56. Guerrini GP, et al. *Prog Transplant*. 2018;28(1):63.
57. Lin C, et al. *Intern Med*. 2008;47(7):569.
58. Younossi ZM, et al. *Hepatology*. 2018;68(1):349.
59. Sakka SG. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2007;13(2):207.
60. Denaro CP, et al. *Ther Drug Monit*. 1998;20(1):78.
61. Jover R, et al. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 1997;92(10):1905.
62. Wahlländer A, et al. *J Hepatol*. 1990;10(2):129.
63. Everson GT, et al. *Hepatology*. 2012;55(4):1019.
64. Chow PKH, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2003;112(1):1.
65. Helmke S, et al. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol*. 2015;31(3):199.
66. Kang HK, et al. *Radiographics*. 2002;22(5):1053.
67. Sharma S, et al. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2014;20(45).
68. Iranpour P, et al. *Ultrasonography*. 2016;35(1):3.
69. Barr RG, et al. *Radiology*. 2015;276(3):845.
70. Younossi ZM, et al. *Hepatology*. 2018;68(1):349.
71. Tang A, et al. *Radiology*. 2018;286(1):29.
72. Bialecki ES, Di Bisceglie AM. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2005;7(1):26.
73. Pollock G, Minuk GY. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2017;32(7):1303.
74. Popper H, Schaffner F. Pathophysiology of cholestasis. *Hum Pathol*. 1970;1(1):1.
75. EASL. *J Hepatol*. 2009;51(2):237.
76. Lleo A, et al. *Hepatol Int*. 2017;11(6):485.
77. Boonstra K, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2012;56(5):1181.
78. Trivedi HD, et al. *Frontline Gastroenterol*. 2017;8(1):29.
79. Poupon RE, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324(22):1548.
80. Corpechot C, et al. *Hepatology*. 2008;48(3):871.
81. Hirschfield GM, et al. *Gastroenterol*. 2015;148(4):61.e8.
82. Lens S, et al. *Liver Int*. 2014;34(2):197.
83. Rautiainen H, et al. *Hepatology*. 2005;41(4):747.
84. Karlsen TH, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2017;67(6):1298.
85. Scaglione S, et al. *J Clin Gastroenterol*. 2015;49(8):690.
86. Tsochatzis EA, et al. *Lancet*. 2014;383(9930):1749.
87. Garcia–Pagan JC, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2012;57(2):458.
88. Runyon BA. *Hepatology*. 2013;57(4):1651.
89. De Robertis R, et al. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2014;20(23):7231.
90. Garcia–Tsao G, et al. *Hepatology*. 2017;65(1):310.
91. D'Amico G, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2018;68(3):563.
92. Ripoll C, et al. *Gastroenterology*. 2007;133(2):481.
93. Ripoll C, et al. *J Hepatology*. 2009;50(5):923.
94. Abraldes JG, et al. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2014;18(4):779.

95. Shi KQ, et al. *Liver Int*. 2013;33(1):62.
96. Vilgrain V, et al. *Gastrointest Radiol*. 1990;15(3):218.
97. Zipprich A, et al. *Liver Int*. 2012;32(9):1407.
98. Gluud LL, Krag A , et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;8:CD004544.
99. Shah HA, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2014;60(4):757.
100. D'Amico G, et al. *Gastroenterology*. 2006;131(5):1611.
101. Carvalho GC, et al. *Ann Hepatol*. 2012;11(1):90.
102. Martin–Llahi M, et al. *Gastroenterology*. 2011;140(2):496.e4.
103. Angeli P, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2015;62(4):968.
104. de Mattos AZ, et al. *Ann Hepatol*. 2016;15(4):474.
105. Boyer TD, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2011;17(11):1328.
106. Nolte W, et al. *Hepatology*. 1998;28(5):1215.
107. Montagnese S, et al. *Metab Brain Dis*. 2004;19(3–4):281.
108. Vilstrup H, et al. *Hepatology*. 2014;60(2):715.
109. Swanson KL, et al. *Hepatology*. 2005;41(5):1122.
110. Krowka MJ, et al. *Transplantation*. 2016;100(7):1440.
111. Iyer VN, et al. *Hepatology*. 2013;57(6):2427.
112. Schiffer E, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2006;6(6):1430.
113. Simonneau G, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;62(suppl 25):34.
114. Krowka MJ, et al. Portopulmonary hypertension: Results from a 10–year screening algorithm. *Hepatology*. 2006;44(6):1502.
115. Swanson KL, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2008;8(11):2445.
116. Malagari K, et al. *Hepatogastroenterology*. 2005;52(62):558.
117. Machicao VI, et al. *Hepatology*. 2014;59(4):1627.
118. GBD 2016 Risk Factors Collaborators. *Lancet*. 2017;390(10100):1151.
119. Forner A, et al. *Lancet*. 2018;391(10127):1301.
120. Heimbach JK, et al. *Hepatology*. 2018;67(1):358.
121. Poon RT, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2002;235(3):373.
122. Mazzaferro V, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;334(11):693.
123. Lautt WW. *Am J Physiol*. 1985;249(5 Pt 1):549.
124. Gelman S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61(6):726.
125. Frink EJ Jr, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(1):85.
126. Hartman JC, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39(8):877.
127. Cullen SC, Gross EG. *Science*. 1951;113(2942):580.
128. Goto T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80(2):255.
129. Wappler F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(3):463.
130. Schmidt M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56(12):1154.
131. Iber T, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2008;74(10):511.
132. Reinelt H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(6):713.
133. Wilke HJ, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2011;43(7):2683.
134. Servin F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65(2):177.
135. Pandele G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59(2):123.
136. van Beem H, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1983;38(Suppl):61.
137. Duvaldestin P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35(2):159.
138. Carmichael FJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79(5):1051.
139. Wouters PF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(1):125.
140. Zhu T, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2008;55(6):364.
141. Meierhenrich R, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(11):1085.
142. Leslie K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80(5):1007.
143. Runciman WB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65(3):353.
144. Sear JW, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72(4):451.
145. MacGilchrist AJ, et al. *Gut*. 1986;27(2):190.
146. Weerink MAS, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2017;56(8):893.
147. Mazoit JX, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(4):293.
148. Klotz U, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1974;16(4):667.
149. Ferrier C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(4):480.
150. Haberer JP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1982;54(12):1267.
151. Chauvin M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68(1):1.
152. Dershwitz M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(4):812.
153. Devlin JC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71(2):227.
154. Viby–Mogensen J, Hanel HK. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1978;22(4):371.
155. De Wolf AM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76(5):624.
156. Lebrault C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(5):601.
157. Khalil M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(6):1241.
158. Duvaldestin P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50(11):1131.
159. Fujita A, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Taiwan*. 2014;52(2):54.
160. Tanaka N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(2):286.
161. Meierhenrich R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(4):1331.
162. Trepenaitis D, et al. *Medicina (Kaunas)*. 2010;46(7):465.
163. Kortgen, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26(2):111.
164. Friedman LS. *Trans Am Clin Climatol Assoc*. 2010;121:204. discussion 205.
165. de Goede B, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol*. 2012;26(1):47.
166. Csikesz NG, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2009;208(1):96.
167. Lin CS, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2013;100(13):1784.
168. Farnsworth N, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2004;188(5):580.
169. Neeff HP, et al. *Surgery*. 2014;155(4):623.
170. Telem DA, et al. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2010;8(5):7. quz e58.
171. Hoteit MA, et al. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2008;14(11):1774.
172. Pantel HJ, et al. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2016;20(8):1511.
173. Pugh RN, et al. *Br J Surg*. 1973;60(8):646.
174. Garrison RN, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1984;199(6):648.
175. Mansour A, et al. *Surgery*. 1997;122(4):6.
176. Kiamanesh D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(suppl 1):50.
177. Malinchoc M, et al. *Hepatology*. 2000;31(4):864.
178. Kamath PS, et al. *Hepatology*. 2001;33(2):464.
179. Suman A, et al. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2004;2(8):719.
180. Befeler AS, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2005;140(7):4. discussion 655.
181. Northup PG, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2005;242(2):244.
182. Teh SH, et al. *Gastroenterol*. 2007;132(4):1261.
183. Biggins SW, et al. *Gastroenterology*. 2006;130(6):1652.
184. Luca A, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(8):1174.
185. Cho HC, et al. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2011;23(1):51.
186. Kim DH, et al. *ANZ J Surg*. 2014;84(11):832.
187. Bhangui P, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2012;57(4):874.
188. Kim TH, et al. *Liver Int*. 2015;35(3):713.
189. Boyer TD, Haskal ZJ. *Hepatology*. 2010;51(1):306.
190. Parker R. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2014;18(2):319.
191. Monescillo A, et al. *Hepatology*. 2004;40(4):793.
192. Suhocki PV, et al. *Semin Intervent Radiol*. 2015;32(2):123.
193. Chana A, et al. *BJA Education*. 2016;16(12):405.
194. DeGasperi A, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2009;23(6):341.
195. Modha K, et al. *Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol*. 2018;41(4):564.
196. Suhocki PV, et al. *Semin Intervent Radiol*. 2015;32(2):123.
197. Dimick JB, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138(2):185.
198. Aragon RJ, Solomon NL. *J Gastrointest Oncol*. 2012;3(1):28.
199. Kneuertz PJ, et al. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2012;16(9):1727.
200. Chang CM, et al. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2014;93(12):e59.
201. Wakabayashi G, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2015;261(4):619.
202. Abu Hilal M, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2018;268(1):11.
203. Ciria R, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2016;263(4):761.
204. Fretland AA, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2018;267(2):199.
205. Cauchy F, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2015;102(7):785.
206. Goh BK, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2015;29(9):2636.
207. Nota CL, et al. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2016;18(2):113.
208. Montalti R, et al. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2015;21(27):8441.
209. Capussotti L, et al. *Eur J Surg Oncol*. 2005;31(9):986.
210. Reddy SK, et al. *Hepatology*. 2012;56(6):2221.
211. van Lienden KP, et al. *Cardiovasc Intervent Radiology*. 2013;36(1):25.
212. Kamiyama T, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2010;211(4):443.
213. Aramaki O, et al. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Sci*. 2014;21(8):585.
214. Katz SC, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2009;249(4):617.
215. McNally SJ, et al. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2012;14(4):236.
216. Nanashima A, et al. *Surg Today*. 2013;43(5):485.
217. Janny S, et al. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2015;17(4):357.
218. Fujimoto J, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1993;128(9):1065.
219. Matot I, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 2002;97(4):794.
220. Jarnagin WR, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2008;248(3):360.
221. Frankel TL, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;217(2):210–220.
222. Imamura H, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138(11):1206. discussion 1206.
223. Grazi GL, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2001;234(1):71.
224. Huntington JT, et al. *J Surg Oncol*. 2014;109(2):81.
225. Jiang B, et al. *Hepatol Res*. 2018;48(8):635.
226. Pringle JHV. *Ann Surg*. 1908;48(4):541.
227. Kim YI. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat*. 2003;10(3):195.
228. Hoekstra LT, et al. *Dig Surg*. 2012;29(1):35.
229. Torzilli G, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255(2):270.
230. Beck–Schimmer B, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2008;248(6):909.
231. Beck–Schimmer B, Breitenstein S, Bonvini JM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256(5):5.
232. Man K, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1997;226(6):3.
233. Man K, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2003;90(2):183.
234. Capussotti L, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2006;93(6):685.
235. Lee KF, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2012;99(9):1203.
236. Lee KF, et al. *World J Surg*. 2018.
237. Hanyong S, et al. *Eur J Surg Oncol*. 2015;41(2):243.
238. Makuuchi M, et al. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1987;164(2):155.
239. Figueras J, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2005;241(4):582.

240. Liang G, et al. *HepatoGastroenterology*. 2009;56(91–92):745.
241. Fu SY, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2011;201(1):62.
242. Ni JS, et al. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2013;17(8):1414.
243. Huguet C, et al. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1978;147(5):689.
244. Belghiti J, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1996;224(2):155.
245. Azoulay D, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2015;262(1):93.
246. Elias D, et al. *Br J Surg*. 1995;82(11):1535.
247. Smyrniotis VE, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2002;183(2):173.
248. Smyrniotis VE, et al. *World J Surg*. 2003;27(7):765.
249. Melendez JA, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1998;187(6):620.
250. Jones RM, et al. *Br J Surg*. 1998;85(8):1058.
251. Smyrniotis V, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2004;187(3):398.
252. Bui LL, et al. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2002;4(1):5.
253. Chen H, et al. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2000;4(2):162.
254. Wang WD, et al. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2006;12(6):935.
255. Liu Y, et al. *Chin–Germ J Clin Oncol*. 2008;7:7.
256. Hughes MJ, et al. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2015;17(10):863.
257. Chhibber A, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(4):537.
258. Kim YK, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(5):601.
259. Melendez JA, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1998;187(6):620.
260. Ryu HG, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2010;10(4):877.
261. Sand L, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55(9):1106.
262. Rahbari NN, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2011;253(6):1102.
263. Otsubo T, et al. *Surgery*. 2004;135(1):67.
264. Chen XP, et al. *Langenbecks Arch Surg*. 2006;391(3):209.
265. Kato M, et al. *World J Surg*. 2008;32(6):1082.
266. Zhu P, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2012;99(6):781.
267. Zhou YM, et al. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2016;95(27):e4159.
268. Ueno M, et al. *Surgery*. 2017;161(6):1502.
269. Fancellu A, et al. *J Gastrointest Surg*.2018;22(5):941.
270. Lodge JP, Jonas S, Oussoultzoglou E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(2):269.
271. Shao YF, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2006;191(2):245.
272. Wu CC, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2006;243(2):173.
273. Moggia E, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;10:CD010683.
274. Wax DB, et al. *Eur J Surg Oncol*. 2016;42(10):1608.
275. Niemann CU, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(2):266.
276. Choi SJ, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(10):1414.
277. Stephan F, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52(3):388.
278. Kim YK, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2011;43(5):1407.
279. Ratti F, et al. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2016;18(2):136.
280. Dunki–Jacobs EM, et al. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2014;21(2):473.
281. Lee J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(2):423.
282. De Pietri L, et al. *Hepatol*. 2016;63(2):566.
283. Schreiber KL, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(4):460.
284. Ali M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(3):292.
285. Matot I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(5):81.
286. Tsui SL, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2004;32(5):630.
287. Yuan FS, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24(5):398.
288. Elterman KG, Xiong Z. *J Anesth*. 2015;29(3):367.
289. Jacquenod P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(4):1142.
290. Christie IW, McCabe S. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(4):335.
291. Cook TM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(2):179.
292. Ko JS, et al. *Transpl Int*. 2010;23(7):736.
293. Toprak HI, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2012;44(6):1635.
294. Ko JS, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2008;14(8):1150.
295. Decailliot F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(3):493.
296. Delva E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(9):864.
297. Decailliot F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):864.
298. Ni CY, et al. *Eur J Surg Oncol*. 2013;39(6):542.
299. Qi S, et al. *J Clin Lab Anal*. 2018:e22434.
300. He F, et al. *Clin Transl Oncol*. 2015;17(9):694.
301. Liang X, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2018;32(6):2746.
302. Melloul E, et al. *World J Surg*. 2016;40(10):2425.
303. Bond–Smith G, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;2:CD011382.

References

1. Molina DK, DiMaio VJM. Normal organ weights in women: part II–the brain, lungs, liver, spleen, and kidneys. *Am J Forensic Med Pathol*. 2015;36(3):182–187.
2. Molina DK, DiMaio VJM. Normal organ weights in men: Part II–the brain, lungs, liver, spleen, and kidneys. *Am J Forensic Med Pathol*. 2012;33(4):368–372.
3. Pryce JW, Bamber AR, Ashworth MT, Kiho L, Malone M, Sebire NJ. Reference ranges for organ weights of infants at autopsy: results of >1,000 consecutive cases from a single centre. *BMC Clin Pathol*. 2014;14:18.
4. Abdel–Misih SRZ, Bloomston M. Liver anatomy. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2010;90(4):643–653.
5. van Gulik TM, van den Esschert JW. James Cantlie's Early Messages for Hepatic Surgeons: How the Concept of Pre–Operative Portal Vein Occlusion was Defined. *HPB (Oxford)*. 12(2):81–83, 2010. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1477–2574.2009.00124.x.
6. Juza RM, Pauli EM. Clinical and surgical anatomy of the liver: a review for clinicians. *Clin Anat*. 2014;27(5):764–769. https://doi.org/10.1002/ca.22350.
7. Strasberg SM. Nomenclature of hepatic anatomy and resections: a review of the brisbane 2000 system. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat*. 2005;12(5):351–355. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00534–005–0999–7.
8. Strasberg SM, Phillips C. Use and dissemination of the brisbane 2000 nomenclature of liver anatomy and resections. *Ann Surg*. 2013;257(3):377–382. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0b013e31825a01f6.
9. Bismuth H. Revisiting liver anatomy and terminology of hepatectomies. *Ann Surg*. 2013;257(3):383–386. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0b013e31827f171f.
10. Poisson J, Lemoinne S, Boulanger C, et al. Liver sinusoidal endothelial cells: physiology and role in liver diseases. *J Hepatol*. 2017;66(1):212–227.
11. Blouin A, Bolender RP, Weibel ER. Distribution of organelles and membranes between hepatocytes and nonhepatocytes in the rat liver parenchyma. A stereological study. *J Cell Biol*. 1977;72(2):441–455.
12. Treyer A, Müsch A. Hepatocyte polarity. *Compr Physiol*. 2013;3(1):243–287.
13. T K. Metabolic zonation of the liver: the oxygen gradient revisited – PubMed – NCBI; 2018. https://phstwlp2.partners.org:2052/pubmed/28126520.
14. Geerts A. History, heterogeneity, developmental biology, and functions of quiescent hepatic stellate cells. *Semin Liver Dis*. 2001;21(3):311–335.
15. Tsuchida T, Friedman SL. Mechanisms of hepatic stellate cell activation – PubMed – NCBI; 2018. https://phstwlp2.partners.org:2052/pubmed/28487545.
16. Li P, He K, Li J, Liu Z, Gong J. The role of kupffer cells in hepatic diseases. *Mol Immunol*. 2017;85:222–229.
17. Robinson MW, Harmon C, O'Farrelly C. Liver immunology and its role in inflammation and homeostasis. *Cell Mol Immunol*. 2016;13(3):267–276.
18. Lau AH, Thomson AW. Dendritic cells and immune regulation in the liver. *Gut*. 2003;52(2):307–314.
19. Njoku DB. Drug–induced hepatotoxicity: metabolic, genetic and immunological basis. *Int J Mol Sci*. 2014;15(4):6990–7003.
20. Almazroo OA, Miah MK, Venkataramanan R. Drug metabolism in the liver. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2017;21(1):1–20.
21. Trefts E, Gannon M, Wasserman DH. The liver. *Curr Biol*. 2017;27(21):r1151. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cub.2017.09.019.
22. Adeva–Andany MM, Perez–Felpete N, Fernandez–Fernandez C, Donapetry–Garcia C, Pazos–Garcia C. Liver glucose metabolism in humans. *Biosci Rep*. 2016;36(6). https://doi.org/10.1042/bsr20160385.
23. Nguyen P, Leray V, Diez M, et al. Liver lipid metabolism. *J Anim Physiol Anim Nutr (Berl)*. 2008;92(3):272–283.
24. Boyer JL. Bile formation and secretion. *Compr Physiol*. 2013;3(3):1035–1078. https://doi.org/10.1002/cphy.c120027.
25. Roberts MS, Magnusson BM, Burczynski FJ, Weiss M. Enterohepatic circulation: physiological, pharmacokinetic and clinical implications. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2002;41(10):751–790.
26. Malik MY, Jaiswal S, Sharma A, Shukla M, Lal J. Role of enterohepatic recirculation in drug disposition: cooperation and complications. *Drug Metab Rev*. 2016;48(2):281–327. https://doi.org/10.3109/03602532.2016.1157600.
27. Borowski M, Furie BC, Furie B. Distribution of gamma–carboxyglutamic acid residues in partially carboxylated human prothrombins. *J Biol Chem*. 1986;261(4):1624–1628.
28. Dimova EY, Kietzmann T. Metabolic, hormonal and environmental regulation of plasminogen activator inhibitor–1 (PAI–1) expression: lessons from the liver. *Thromb Haemost*. 2008;100(6):992–1006.
29. Cesarman–Maus G, Hajjar KA. Molecular mechanisms of fibrinolysis. *Br J Haematol*. 2005;129(3):307–321.
30. Stein PE ea. Update review of the acute porphyrias – PubMed – NCBI; 2018. https://phstwlp2.partners.org:2052/pubmed/?term=27982422.
31. Sticova E, Jirsa M. New insights in bilirubin metabolism and their clinical implications. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2013;19(38):6398–6407. https://doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v19.i38.6398.
32. Ganz T, Nemeth E. Hepcidin and iron homeostasis. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 2012;1823(9):1434–1443.
33. Yakar S, Rosen CJ, Beamer WG, et al. Circulating levels of IGF–1 directly regulate bone growth and density. *J Clin Invest*. 2002;110(6):771–781.
34. Lu H, Cassis LA, Kooi CWV, Daugherty A. Structure and functions of angiotensinogen. *Hypertens Res*. 2016;39(7):492–500.
35. Jelkmann W. The role of the liver in the production of thrombopoietin compared with erythropoietin. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2001;13(7):791–801.
36. Habib S, Shaikh OS. Approach to jaundice and abnormal liver function test results. In: Sanyal AJ, Boyer TD, Lindor KD, Terrault NH, eds. *Zakim and Boyer's Hepatology: A Textbook of Liver Disease*. 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:99–116.
37. Pratt DS. Liver chemistry and function tests. In: Feldman M, Friedman LS, Brandt LJ, eds. *Sleisenger and Fordtran's Gastrointestinal and Liver Disease: Pathophysiology, Diagnosis, Management*. 10th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2016:1243–1253.
38. Kwo PY, Cohen SM, Lim JK. ACG clinical guideline: evaluation of abnormal liver chemistries. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2017;112(1):18–35.
39. Eminler AT, Ayyildiz T, Irak K, et al. AST/ALT ratio is not useful in predicting the degree of fibrosis in chronic viral hepatitis patients. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2015;27(12):1361–1366. https://doi.org/10.1097/MEG.0000000000000468.
40. Maina I, Rule JA, Wians FH, Poirier M, Grant L, Lee WM. A–glutathione *S*–transferase: a new biomarker for liver injury? *Jrnl App Lab Med*. 2016;1(2):119. http://jalm.aaccjnls.org/content/1/2/119.abstract.
41. Redick JA, Jakoby WB, Baron J. Immunohistochemical localization of glutathione S–transferases in livers of untreated rats. *J Biol Chem*. 1982;257(24):15200–15203.
42. Siddique A, Kowdley KV. Approach to a patient with elevated serum alkaline phosphatase. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2012;16(2):199–229. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cld.2012.03.012.
43. Fargo MV, Grogan SP, Saguil A. Evaluation of jaundice in adults. *Am Fam Physician*. 2017;95(3):164–168.
44. Liang TJ. Hepatitis B: the virus and disease. *Hepatology*. 2009;49(5 Suppl):13. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.22881.
45. Hepatitis C guidance: AASLD–IDSA recommendations for testing, managing, and treating adults infected with hepatitis C virus. *Hepatology*. 2015;62(3):932–954. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.27950.
46. Fourati S, Feld JJ, Chevaliez S, Luhmann N. Approaches for simplified HCV diagnostic algorithms. *J Int AIDS Soc*. 2018;21(suppl 2):e25058. https://doi.org/10.1002/jia2.25058.
47. Freiman JM, Tran TM, Schumacher SG, et al. Hepatitis C core antigen testing for diagnosis of hepatitis C virus infection: a systematic review and meta–analysis. *Ann Intern Med*. 2016;165(5):345–355. https://doi.org/10.7326/M16–0065.
48. Ajisaka H, Shimizu K, Miwa K. Immunohistochemical study of protein induced by vitamin K absence or antagonist II in hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Surg Oncol*. 2003;84(2):89–93. https://doi.org/10.1002/jso.10298.
49. Fujioka M, Nakashima Y, Nakashima O, Kojiro M. Immunohistologic study on the expressions of alpha–fetoprotein and protein induced by vitamin K absence or antagonist II in surgically resected small hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology*. 2001;34(6):1128–1134. https://doi.org/10.1053/jhep.2001.29202.
50. Sugimoto H, Takeda S, Inoue S, Kaneko T, Watanabe K, Nakao A. Des–gamma–carboxy prothrombin (DCP) ratio, a novel parameter measured by monoclonal antibodies MU–3 and 19B7, as a new prognostic indicator for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Liver Int*. 2003;23(1):38–44.

51. Wong RJ, Ahmed A, Gish RG. Elevated alpha–fetoprotein: differential diagnosis—hepatocellular carcinoma and other disorders. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2015;19(2):309–323. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cld.2015.01.005.
52. Song P, Xia J, Inagaki Y, et al. Controversies regarding and perspectives on clinical utility of biomarkers in hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2016;22(1):262–274. https://doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i1.262.
53. Yuen M, Lai C. Serological markers of liver cancer. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol*. 2005;19(1):91–99. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bpg.2004.10.003.
54. Tapper EB, Lok AS. Use of liver imaging and biopsy in clinical practice. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377(23):2296–2297. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMc1712445.
55. Bolondi G, Mocchegiani F, Montalti R, Nicolini D, Vivarelli M, De Pietri L. Predictive factors of short term outcome after liver transplantation: a review. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2016;22(26):5936–5949. https://doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i26.5936.
56. Guerrini GP, Pinelli D, Marini E, et al. Value of HCC–MELD score in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma undergoing liver transplantation. *Prog Transplant*. 2018;28(1):63–69. https://doi.org/10.1177/1526924817746686.
57. Lin C, Chang C, Yang S, Yeh H, Lin C. Retrospective evaluation of serum markers APRI and AST/ALT for assessing liver fibrosis and cirrhosis in chronic hepatitis B and C patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Intern Med*. 2008;47(7):569–575.
58. Younossi ZM, Loomba R, Anstee QM, et al. Diagnostic modalities for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, nonalcoholic steatohepatitis, and associated fibrosis. *Hepatology*. 2018;68(1):349–360. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.29721.
59. Sakka SG. Assessing liver function. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2007;13(2):207–214. https://doi.org/10.1097/MCC.0b013e328012b268.
60. Denaro CP, Jacob P, Benowitz NL. Evaluation of pharmacokinetic methods used to estimate caffeine clearance and comparison with a bayesian forecasting method. *Ther Drug Monit*. 1998;20(1):78–87.
61. Jover R, Carnicer F, Sánchez–Payá J, Climent E, Sirvent M, Marco JL. Salivary caffeine clearance predicts survival in patients with liver cirrhosis. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 1997;92(10):1905–1908.
62. Wahlländer A, Mohr S, Paumgartner G. Assessment of hepatic function. Comparison of caffeine clearance in serum and saliva during the day and at night. *J Hepatol*. 1990;10(2):129–137.
63. Everson GT, Shiffman ML, Hoefs JC, et al. Quantitative liver function tests improve the prediction of clinical outcomes in chronic hepatitis C: results from the hepatitis C antiviral long–term treatment against cirrhosis trial. *Hepatology*. 2012;55(4):1019–1029.
64. Chow PKH, Yu W, Soo K, Chan STF. The measurement of liver blood flow: a review of experimental and clinical methods. *J Surg Res*. 2003;112(1):1–11.
65. Helmke S, Colmenero J, Everson GT. Noninvasive assessment of liver function. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol*. 2015;31(3):199–208.
66. Kang HK, Jeong YY, Choi JH, et al. Three–dimensional multi–detector row CT portal venography in the evaluation of portosystemic collateral vessels in liver cirrhosis. *Radiographics*. 2002;22(5):1053–1061.
67. Sharma S, Khalili K, Nguyen GC. Non–invasive diagnosis of advanced fibrosis and cirrhosis. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2014;20(45):16820–16830.
68. Iranpour P, Lall C, Houshyar R, et al. Altered Doppler flow patterns in cirrhosis patients: an overview. *Ultrasonography*. 2016;35(1):3–12.
69. Barr RG, Ferraioli G, Palmeri ML, et al. Elastography assessment of liver fibrosis: society of radiologists in ultrasound consensus conference statement. *Radiology*. 2015;276(3):845–861.
70. Younossi ZM, Loomba R, Anstee QM, et al. Diagnostic modalities for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, nonalcoholic steatohepatitis, and associated fibrosis. *Hepatology*. 2018;68(1):349–360. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.29721.
71. Tang A, Bashir MR, Corwin MT, et al. Evidence supporting LI–RADS major features for CT– and MR imaging–based diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma: a systematic review. *Radiology*. 2018;286(1):29–48.
72. Bialecki ES, Di Bisceglie AM. Diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2005;7(1):26–34.
73. Pollock G, Minuk GY. Diagnostic considerations for cholestatic liver disease. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2017;32(7):1303–1309. https://doi.org/10.1111/jgh.13738. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28106928.
74. Popper H, Schaffner F. Pathophysiology of cholestasis. *Hum Pathol*. 1970;1(1):1–24. https://doi.org/.
75. EASL clinical practice guidelines: management of cholestatic liver diseases. *J Hepatol*. 2009;51(2):237–267. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2009.04.009.
76. Lleo A, Marzorati S, Anaya JM, Gershwin ME. Primary biliary cholangitis: a comprehensive overview. *Hepatol Int*. 2017;11(6):485–499. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12072–017–9830–1.
77. Boonstra K, Beuers U, Ponsioen CY. Epidemiology of primary sclerosing cholangitis and primary biliary cirrhosis: a systematic review. *J Hepatol*. 2012;56(5):1181–1188. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2011.10.025.
78. Trivedi HD, Lizaola B, Tapper EB, Bonder A. Primary biliary cholangitis: new treatments for an old disease. *Frontline Gastroenterol*. 2017;8(1):29–36. https://doi.org/10.1136/flgastro–2016–100741.
79. Poupon RE, Balkau B, Eschwege E, Poupon R. A multicenter, controlled trial of ursodiol for the treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis. UDCA–PBC study group. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324(22):1548–1554. https://doi.org/10.1056/nejm199105303242204.
80. Corpechot C, Abenavoli L, Rabahi N, et al. Biochemical response to ursodeoxycholic acid and long–term prognosis in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology*. 2008;48(3):871–877. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.22428.
81. Hirschfield GM, Mason A, Luketic V, et al. Efficacy of obeticholic acid in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis and inadequate response to ursodeoxycholic acid. *Gastroenterology*. 2015;148(4):61.e8. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2014.12.005.
82. Lens S, Leoz M, Nazal L, Bruguera M, Pares A. Bezafibrate normalizes alkaline phosphatase in primary biliary cirrhosis patients with incomplete response to ursodeoxycholic acid. *Liver Int*. 2014;34(2):197–203. https://doi.org/10.1111/liv.12290.
83. Rautiainen H, Karkkainen P, Karvonen AL, et al. Budesonide combined with UDCA to improve liver histology in primary biliary cirrhosis: a three–year randomized trial. *Hepatology*. 2005;41(4):747–752. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.20646.
84. Karlsen TH, Folseraas T, Thorburn D, Vesterhus M. Primary sclerosing cholangitis – a comprehensive review. *J Hepatol*. 2017;67(6):1298–1323. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2017.07.022.
85. Scaglione S, Kliethermes S, Cao G, et al. The epidemiology of cirrhosis in the United States: a population–based study. *J Clin Gastroenterol*. 2015;49(8):690–696. https://doi.org/10.1097/mcg.0000000000000208.
86. Tsochatzis EA, Bosch J, Burroughs AK. Liver cirrhosis. *Lancet*. 2014;383(9930):1749–1761. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0140–6736(14)60121–5.
87. Garcia–Pagan JC, Gracia–Sancho J, Bosch J. Functional aspects on the pathophysiology of portal hypertension in cirrhosis. *J Hepatol*. 2012;57(2):458–461. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2012.03.007.
88. Runyon BA. Introduction to the revised American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases practice guideline management of adult patients with ascites due to cirrhosis 2012. *Hepatology*. 2013;57(4):1651–1653. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.26359.
89. De Robertis R, D'Onofrio M, Demozzi E, Crosara S, Canestrini S, Pozzi Mucelli R. Noninvasive diagnosis of cirrhosis: a review of different imaging modalities. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2014;20(23):7231–7241. https://doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v20.i23.7231.
90. Garcia–Tsao G, Abraldes JG, Berzigotti A, Bosch J. Portal hypertensive bleeding in cirrhosis: risk stratification, diagnosis, and management: 2016 practice guidance by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. *Hepatology*. 2017;65(1):310–335. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.28906.
91. D'Amico G, Morabito A, D'Amico M, et al. Clinical states of cirrhosis and competing risks. *J Hepatol*. 2018;68(3):563–576. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2017.10.020.
92. Ripoll C, Groszmann R, Garcia–Tsao G, et al. Hepatic venous pressure gradient predicts clinical decompensation in patients with compensated cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology*. 2007;133(2):481–488. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2007.05.024.
93. Ripoll C, Groszmann RJ, Garcia–Tsao G, et al. Hepatic venous pressure gradient predicts development of hepatocellular carcinoma

independently of severity of cirrhosis. *J Hepatol*. 2009;50(5):923–928. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2009.01.014.

94. Abraldes JG, Sarlieve P, Tandon P. Measurement of portal pressure. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2014;18(4):779–792. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cld.2014.07.002.
95. Shi KQ, Fan YC, Pan ZZ, et al. Transient elastography: a meta–analysis of diagnostic accuracy in evaluation of portal hypertension in chronic liver disease. *Liver Int*. 2013;33(1):62–71. https://doi.org/10.1111/liv.12003.
96. Vilgrain V, Lebrec D, Menu Y, Scherrer A, Nahum H. Comparison between ultrasonographic signs and the degree of portal hypertension in patients with cirrhosis. *Gastrointest Radiol*. 1990;15(3):218–222. https://doi.org/.
97. Zipprich A, Garcia–Tsao G, Rogowski S, Fleig WE, Seufferlein T, Dollinger MM. Prognostic indicators of survival in patients with compensated and decompensated cirrhosis. *Liver Int*. 2012;32(9):1407–1414. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1478–3231.2012.02830.x.
98. Gluud LL, Krag A. Banding ligation versus beta–blockers for primary prevention in oesophageal varices in adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;8:CD004544. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD004544.pub2.
99. Shah HA, Azam Z, Rauf J, et al. Carvedilol vs. esophageal variceal band ligation in the primary prophylaxis of variceal hemorrhage: a multicentre randomized controlled trial. *J Hepatol*. 2014;60(4):757–764. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2013.11.019.
100. D'Amico G, Garcia–Pagan JC, Luca A, Bosch J. Hepatic vein pressure gradient reduction and prevention of variceal bleeding in cirrhosis: a systematic review. *Gastroenterology*. 2006;131(5):1611–1624. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2006.09.013.
101. Carvalho GC, Regis Cde A, Kalil JR, et al. Causes of renal failure in patients with decompensated cirrhosis and its impact in hospital mortality. *Ann Hepatol*. 2012;11(1):90–95. https://doi.org/.
102. Martin–Llahi M, Guevara M, Torre A, et al. Prognostic importance of the cause of renal failure in patients with cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology*. 2011;140(2):496.e4. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2010.07.043.
103. Angeli P, Gines P, Wong F, et al. Diagnosis and management of acute kidney injury in patients with cirrhosis: revised consensus recommendations of the International Club of Ascites. *J Hepatol*. 2015;62(4):968–974. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2014.12.029.
104. de Mattos AZ, de Mattos AA, Mendez–Sanchez N. Hepatorenal syndrome: current concepts related to diagnosis and management. *Ann Hepatol*. 2016;15(4):474–481. https://doi.org/.
105. Boyer TD, Sanyal AJ, Garcia–Tsao G, et al. Impact of liver transplantation on the survival of patients treated for hepatorenal syndrome type 1. *Liver Transpl*. 2011;17(11):1328–1332. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.22395.
106. Nolte W, Wiltfang J, Schindler C, et al. Portosystemic hepatic encephalopathy after transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt in patients with cirrhosis: clinical, laboratory, psychometric, and electroencephalographic investigations. *Hepatology*. 1998;28(5):1215–1225. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.510280508.
107. Montagnese S, Amodio P, Morgan MY. Methods for diagnosing hepatic encephalopathy in patients with cirrhosis: a multidimensional approach. *Metab Brain Dis*. 2004;19(3–4):281–312. https://doi.org/.
108. Vilstrup H, Amodio P, Bajaj J, et al. Hepatic encephalopathy in chronic liver disease: 2014 practice guideline by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases and the European Association for the Study of the Liver. *Hepatology*. 2014;60(2):715–735. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.27210.
109. Swanson KL, Wiesner RH, Krowka MJ. Natural history of hepatopulmonary syndrome: impact of liver transplantation. *Hepatology*. 2005;41(5):1122–1129. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.20658.
110. Krowka MJ, Fallon MB, Kawut SM, et al. International Liver Transplant Society practice guidelines: diagnosis and management of hepatopulmonary syndrome and portopulmonary hypertension. *Transplantation*. 2016;100(7):1440–1452. https://doi.org/10.1097/tp.0000000000001229.
111. Iyer VN, Swanson KL, Cartin–Ceba R, et al. Hepatopulmonary syndrome: favorable outcomes in the MELD exception era. *Hepatology*. 2013;57(6):2427–2435. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.26070.
112. Schiffer E, Majno P, Mentha G, et al. Hepatopulmonary syndrome increases the postoperative mortality rate following liver transplantation: a prospective study in 90 patients. *Am J Transplant*. 2006;6(6):1430–1437. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600–6143.2006.01334.x.
113. Simonneau G, Gatzoulis MA, Adatia I, et al. Updated clinical classification of pulmonary hypertension. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;62(suppl 25):34. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2013.10.029.
114. Krowka MJ, Swanson KL, Frantz RP, McGoon MD, Wiesner RH. Portopulmonary hypertension: results from a 10–year screening algorithm. *Hepatology*. 2006;44(6):1502–1510. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.21431.
115. Swanson KL, Wiesner RH, Nyberg SL, Rosen CB, Krowka MJ. Survival in portopulmonary hypertension: Mayo Clinic experience categorized by treatment subgroups. *Am J Transplant*. 2008;8(11):2445–2453. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600–6143.2008.02384.x.
116. Malagari K, Nikita A, Alexopoulou E, et al. Cirrhosis–related intrathoracic disease. imaging features in 1038 patients. *HepatoGastroenterology*. 2005;52(62):558–562. https://doi.org/.
117. Machicao VI, Balakrishnan M, Fallon MB. Pulmonary complications in chronic liver disease. *Hepatology*. 2014;59(4):1627–1637. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.26745.
118. Global, regional, and national age–sex specific mortality for 264 causes of death, 1980–2016: a systematic analysis for the global burden of disease study 2016. *Lancet*. 2017;390(10100):1151–1210. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0140–6736(17)32152–9.
119. Forner A, Reig M, Bruix J. Hepatocellular carcinoma. *Lancet*. 2018;391(10127):1301–1314. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0140–6736(18)30010–2.
120. Heimbach JK, Kulik LM, Finn RS, et al. AASLD guidelines for the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology*. 2018;67(1):358–380. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.29086.
121. Poon RT, Fan ST, Lo CM, Liu CL, Wong J. Long–term survival and pattern of recurrence after resection of small hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with preserved liver function: implications for a strategy of salvage transplantation. *Ann Surg*. 2002;235(3):373–382. https://doi.org/.
122. Mazzaferro V, Regalia E, Doci R, et al. Liver transplantation for the treatment of small hepatocellular carcinomas in patients with cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;334(11):693–699. https://doi.org/10.1056/nejm199603143341104.
123. Lautt WW. Mechanism and role of intrinsic regulation of hepatic arterial blood flow: hepatic arterial buffer response. *Am J Physiol*. 1985;249(5 Pt 1):549. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpgi.1985.249.5.G549.
124. Gelman S, Fowler KC, Smith LR. Liver circulation and function during isoflurane and halothane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61(6):726–730. https://doi.org/.
125. Frink EJ Jr, Morgan SE, Coetzee A, Conzen PF, Brown BR Jr. The effects of sevoflurane, halothane, enflurane, and isoflurane on hepatic blood flow and oxygenation in chronically instrumented greyhound dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(1):85–90. https://doi.org/.
126. Hartman JC, Pagel PS, Proctor LT, Kampine JP, Schmeling WT, Warltier DC. Influence of desflurane, isoflurane and halothane on regional tissue perfusion in dogs. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39(8):877–887. https://doi.org/10.1007/bf03008300.
127. Cullen SC, Gross EG. The anesthetic properties of xenon in animals and human beings, with additional observations on krypton. *Science*. 1951;113(2942):580–582. https://doi.org/.
128. Goto T, Suwa K, Uezono S, Ichinose F, Uchiyama M, Morita S. The blood–gas partition coefficient of xenon may be lower than generally accepted. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80(2):255–256. https://doi.org/.
129. Wappler F, Rossaint R, Baumert J, et al. Multicenter randomized comparison of xenon and isoflurane on left ventricular function in patients undergoing elective surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(3):463–471. https://doi.org/.
130. Schmidt M, Marx T, Kotzerke J, et al. Cerebral and regional organ perfusion in pigs during xenon anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56(12):1154–1159. https://doi.org/.
131. Iber T, Hecker K, Vagts DA, et al. Xenon anesthesia impairs hepatic oxygenation and perfusion in healthy pigs. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2008;74(10):511–519. https://doi.org/.
132. Reinelt H, Marx T, Kotzerke J, et al. Hepatic function during xenon anesthesia in pigs. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(6):713–716. https://doi.org/.
133. Wilke HJ, Moench C, Lotz G, Bechstein W, Zacharowski K. Xenon anesthesia for liver transplant surgery: a report of four cases. *Transplant Proc*. 2011;43(7):2683–2686. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.transproceed.2011.06.029.

134. Servin F, Cockshott ID, Farinotti R, Haberer JP, Winckler C, Desmonts JM. Pharmacokinetics of propofol infusions in patients with cirrhosis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65(2):177–183. https://doi.org/.
135. Pandele G, Chaux F, Salvadori C, Farinotti M, Duvaldestin P. Thiopental pharmacokinetics in patients with cirrhosis. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59(2):123–126. https://doi.org/.
136. van Beem H, Manger FW, van Boxtel C, van Bentem N. Etomidate anaesthesia in patients with cirrhosis of the liver: pharmacokinetic data. *Anaesthesia*. 1983;38(suppl):61–62. https://doi.org/.
137. Duvaldestin P, Chauvin M, Lebrault C, Bertrand F, Karolak FT, Farinotti R. Effect of upper abdominal surgery and cirrhosis upon the pharmacokinetics of methohexital. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35(2):159–163. https://doi.org/.
138. Carmichael FJ, Crawford MW, Khayyam N, Saldivia V. Effect of propofol infusion on splanchnic hemodynamics and liver oxygen consumption in the rat. A dose–response study. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79(5):1051–1060. https://doi.org/.
139. Wouters PF, Van de Velde MA, Marcus MA, Deruyter HA, Van Aken H. Hemodynamic changes during induction of anesthesia with eltanolone and propofol in dogs. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(1):125–131. https://doi.org/.
140. Zhu T, Pang Q, McCluskey SA, Luo C. Effect of propofol on hepatic blood flow and oxygen balance in rabbits. *Can J Anaesth*. 2008;55(6):364–370. https://doi.org/10.1007/bf03021492.
141. Meierhenrich R, Gauss A, Muhling B, et al. The effect of propofol and desflurane anaesthesia on human hepatic blood flow: a pilot study. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(11):1085–1093. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365–2044.2010.06504.x.
142. Leslie K, Sessler DI, Bjorksten AR, Moayeri A. Mild hypothermia alters propofol pharmacokinetics and increases the duration of action of atracurium. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80(5):1007–1014. https://doi.org/.
143. Runciman WB, Mather LE, Selby DG. Cardiovascular effects of propofol and of thiopentone anaesthesia in the sheep. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65(3):353–359. https://doi.org/.
144. Sear JW, Diedericks J, Foex P. Continuous infusions of propofol administered to dogs: effects on ICG and propofol disposition. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72(4):451–455. https://doi.org/.
145. MacGilchrist AJ, Birnie GG, Cook A, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of intravenous midazolam in patients with severe alcoholic cirrhosis. *Gut*. 1986;27(2):190–195. https://doi.org/.
146. Weerink MAS, Struys M, Hannivoort LN, Barends CRM, Absalom AR, Colin P. Clinical pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of dexmedetomidine. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2017;56(8):893–913. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40262–017–0507–7.
147. Mazoit JX, Sandouk P, Zetlaoui P, Scherrmann JM. Pharmacokinetics of unchanged morphine in normal and cirrhotic subjects. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(4):293–298. https://doi.org/.
148. Klotz U, McHorse TS, Wilkinson GR, Schenker S. The effect of cirrhosis on the disposition and elimination of meperidine in man. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1974;16(4):667–675. https://doi.org/.
149. Ferrier C, Marty J, Bouffard Y, Haberer JP, Levron JC, Duvaldestin P. Alfentanil pharmacokinetics in patients with cirrhosis. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(4):480–484. https://doi.org/.
150. Haberer JP, Schoeffler P, Couderc E, Duvaldestin P. Fentanyl pharmacokinetics in anaesthetized patients with cirrhosis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1982;54(12):1267–1270. https://doi.org/.
151. Chauvin M, Ferrier C, Haberer JP, et al. Sufentanil pharmacokinetics in patients with cirrhosis. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68(1):1–4. https://doi.org/.
152. Dershwitz M, Hoke JF, Rosow CE, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of remifentanil in volunteer subjects with severe liver disease. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(4):812–820. https://doi.org/.
153. Devlin JC, Head–Rapson AG, Parker CJ, Hunter JM. Pharmacodynamics of mivacurium chloride in patients with hepatic cirrhosis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71(2):227–231. https://doi.org/.
154. Viby–Mogensen J, Hanel HK. Prolonged apnoea after suxamethonium: an analysis of the first 225 cases reported to the danish cholinesterase research unit. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1978;22(4):371–380. https://doi.org/.
155. De Wolf AM, Freeman JA, Scott VL, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of cisatracurium in patients with end–stage liver disease undergoing liver transplantation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76(5):624–628. https://doi.org/.
156. Lebrault C, Berger JL, D'Hollander AA, Gomeni R, Henzel D, Duvaldestin P. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of vecuronium (ORG NC 45) in patients with cirrhosis. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(5):601–605. https://doi.org/.
157. Khalil M, D'Honneur G, Duvaldestin P, Slavov V, De Hys C, Gomeni R. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of rocuronium in patients with cirrhosis. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(6):1241–1247. https://doi.org/.
158. Duvaldestin P, Agoston S, Henzel D, Kersten UW, Desmonts JM. Pancuronium pharmacokinetics in patients with liver cirrhosis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50(11):1131–1136. https://doi.org/.
159. Fujita A, Ishibe N, Yoshihara T, et al. Rapid reversal of neuromuscular blockade by sugammadex after continuous infusion of rocuronium in patients with liver dysfunction undergoing hepatic surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Taiwan*. 2014;52(2):54–58. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aat.2014.04.007.
160. Tanaka N, Nagata N, Hamakawa T, Takasaki M. The effect of dopamine on hepatic blood flow in patients undergoing epidural anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(2):286–290. https://doi.org/.
161. Meierhenrich R, Wagner F, Schutz W, et al. The effects of thoracic epidural anesthesia on hepatic blood flow in patients under general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(4):1331–1337. https://doi.org/10.1213/ane.0b013e3181966e6f.
162. Trepenaitis D, Pundzius J, Macas A. The influence of thoracic epidural anesthesia on liver hemodynamics in patients under general anesthesia. *Medicina (Kaunas)*. 2010;46(7):465–471. https://doi.org/.
163. Kortgen A, Silomon M, Pape–Becker C, Buchinger H, Grundmann U, Bauer M. Thoracic but not lumbar epidural anaesthesia increases liver blood flow after major abdominal surgery. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26(2):111–116. https://doi.org/10.1097/EJA.0b013e32831c8939.
164. Friedman LS. Surgery in the patient with liver disease. *Trans Am Clin Climatol Assoc*. 2010;121:204; discussion 205 https://doi.org/.
165. de Goede B, Klitsie PJ, Lange JF, Metselaar HJ, Kazemier G. Morbidity and mortality related to non–hepatic surgery in patients with liver cirrhosis: a systematic review. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol*. 2012;26(1):47–59. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bpg.2012.01.010.
166. Csikesz NG, Nguyen LN, Tseng JF, Shah SA. Nationwide volume and mortality after elective surgery in cirrhotic patients. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2009;208(1):96–103. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2008.09.006.
167. Lin CS, Lin SY, Chang CC, Wang HH, Liao CC, Chen TL. Postoperative adverse outcomes after non–hepatic surgery in patients with liver cirrhosis. *Br J Surg*. 2013;100(13):1784–1790. https://doi.org/10.1002/bjs.9312.
168. Farnsworth N, Fagan SP, Berger DH, Awad SS. Child–Turcotte–Pugh versus MELD score as a predictor of outcome after elective and emergent surgery in cirrhotic patients. *Am J Surg*. 2004;188(5):580–583. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amjsurg.2004.07.034.
169. Neeff HP, Streule GC, Drognitz O, et al. Early mortality and long–term survival after abdominal surgery in patients with liver cirrhosis. *Surgery*. 2014;155(4):623–632. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.surg.2013.11.009.
170. Telem DA, Schiano T, Goldstone R, et al. Factors that predict outcome of abdominal operations in patients with advanced cirrhosis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2010;8(5):7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cgh.2009.12.015. quz e58.
171. Hoteit MA, Ghazale AH, Bain AJ, et al. Model for end–stage liver disease score versus Child score in predicting the outcome of surgical procedures in patients with cirrhosis. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2008;14(11):1774–1780. https://doi.org/.
172. Pantel HJ, Stensland KD, Nelson J, et al. Should we use the model for end–stage liver disease (MELD) to predict mortality after colorectal surgery? *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2016;20(8):1511–1516. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11605–016–3167–2.
173. Pugh RN, Murray–Lyon IM, Dawson JL, Pietroni MC, Williams R. Transection of the oesophagus for bleeding oesophageal varices. *Br J Surg*. 1973;60(8):646–649. https://doi.org/.
174. Garrison RN, Cryer HM, Howard DA, Polk HC Jr . Clarification of risk factors for abdominal operations in patients with hepatic cirrhosis. *Ann Surg*. 1984;199(6):648–655. https://doi.org/.
175. Mansour A, Watson W, Shayani V, Pickleman J. Abdominal operations in patients with cirrhosis: still a major surgical challenge. *Surgery*. 1997;122(4):6. https://doi.org/.

176. Kiamanesh D, Rumley J, Moitra VK. Monitoring and managing hepatic disease in anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(suppl 1):50–61. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aet378.
177. Malinchoc M, Kamath PS, Gordon FD, Peine CJ, Rank J, ter Borg PC. A model to predict poor survival in patients undergoing transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts. *Hepatology*. 2000;31(4):864–871. https://doi.org/10.1053/he.2000.5852.
178. Kamath PS, Wiesner RH, Malinchoc M, et al. A model to predict survival in patients with end–stage liver disease. *Hepatology*. 2001;33(2):464–470. https://doi.org/10.1053/jhep.2001.22172.
179. Suman A, Barnes DS, Zein NN, Levinthal GN, Connor JT, Carey WD. Predicting outcome after cardiac surgery in patients with cirrhosis: a comparison of Child–Pugh and MELD scores. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2004;2(8):719–723. https://doi.org/.
180. Befeler AS, Palmer DE, Hoffman M, Longo W, Solomon H, Di Bisceglie AM. The safety of intra–abdominal surgery in patients with cirrhosis: Model for End–Stage Liver Disease score is superior to Child–Turcotte–Pugh classification in predicting outcome. *Arch Surg*. 2005;140(7):4. https://doi.org/10.1001/archsurg.140.7.650. dsusson 655.
181. Northup PG, Wanamaker RC, Lee VD, Adams RB, Berg CL. Model for end–stage liver disease (MELD) predicts nontransplant surgical mortality in patients with cirrhosis. *Ann Surg*. 2005;242(2):244–251. https://doi.org/.
182. Teh SH, Nagorney DM, Stevens SR, et al. Risk factors for mortality after surgery in patients with cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology*. 2007;132(4):1261–1269. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2007.01.040.
183. Biggins SW, Kim WR, Terrault NA, et al. Evidence–based incorporation of serum sodium concentration into MELD. *Gastroenterology*. 2006;130(6):1652–1660. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2006.02.010.
184. Luca A, Angermayr B, Bertolini G, et al. An integrated MELD model including serum sodium and age improves the prediction of early mortality in patients with cirrhosis. *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(8):1174–1180. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.21197.
185. Cho HC, Jung HY, Sinn DH, et al. Mortality after surgery in patients with liver cirrhosis: comparison of Child–Turcotte–Pugh, MELD and MELDNa score. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2011;23(1):51–59. https://doi.org/10.1097/MEG.0b013e3283407158.
186. Kim DH, Kim SH, Kim KS, et al. Predictors of mortality in cirrhotic patients undergoing extrahepatic surgery: comparison of Child–Turcotte–Pugh and Model for End–Stage Liver Disease–based indices. *ANZ J Surg*. 2014;84(11):832–836. https://doi.org/10.1111/ans.12198.
187. Bhangui P, Laurent A, Amathieu R, Azoulay D. Assessment of risk for non–hepatic surgery in cirrhotic patients. *J Hepatol*. 2012;57(4):874–884. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2012.03.037.
188. Kim TH, Um SH, Yim SY, et al. The risk of perioperative adverse events in patients with chronic liver disease. *Liver Int*. 2015;35(3):713–723. https://doi.org/10.1111/liv.12529.
189. Boyer TD, Haskal ZJ. The role of transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS) in the management of portal hypertension: update 2009. *Hepatology*. 2010;51(1):306. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.23383.
190. Parker R. Role of transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt in the management of portal hypertension. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2014;18(2):319–334. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cld.2013.12.004.
191. Monescillo A, Martinez–Lagares F, Ruiz–del–Arbol L, et al. Influence of portal hypertension and its early decompression by TIPS placement on the outcome of variceal bleeding. *Hepatology*. 2004;40(4):793–801. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.20386.
192. Suhocki PV, Lungren MP, Kapoor B, Kim CY. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt complications: prevention and management. *Semin Intervent Radiol*. 2015;32(2):123–132. https://doi.org/10.1055/s–0035–1549376.
193. Chana A, James M, Veale P. Anaesthesia for transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt insertion. *BJA Education*. 2016;16(12):405–409. https://doi.org/10.1093/bjaed/mkw022.
194. DeGasperi A, Corti A, Corso R, et al. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS): the anesthesiological point of view after 150 procedures managed under total intravenous anesthesia. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2009;23(6):341–346. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10877–009–9167–y.
195. Modha K, Kapoor B, Lopez R, Sands MJ, Carey W. Symptomatic heart failure after transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt placement: incidence, outcomes, and predictors. *Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol*. 2018;41(4):564–571. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00270–017–1848–1.
196. Suhocki PV, Lungren MP, Kapoor B, Kim CY. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt complications: prevention and management. *Semin Intervent Radiol*. 2015;32(2):123–132. https://doi.org/10.1055/s–0035–1549376.
197. Dimick JB, Cowan JA Jr, Knol JA, Upchurch GR Jr. Hepatic resection in the United States: indications, outcomes, and hospital procedural volumes from a nationally representative database. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138(2):185–191. https://doi.org/.
198. Aragon RJ, Solomon NL. Techniques of hepatic resection. *J Gastrointest Oncol*. 2012;3(1):28–40. https://doi.org/10.3978/j.issn.2078–6891.2012.006.
199. Kneuertz PJ, Pitt HA, Bilimoria KY, et al. Risk of morbidity and mortality following hepato–pancreato–biliary surgery. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2012;16(9):1727–1735. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11605–012–1938–y.
200. Chang CM, Yin WY, Su YC, et al. Preoperative risk score predicting 90–day mortality after liver resection in a population–based study. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2014;93(12):e59. https://doi.org/10.1097/md.0000000000000059.
201. Wakabayashi G, Cherqui D, Geller DA, et al. Recommendations for laparoscopic liver resection: a report from the Second International Consensus Conference held in Morioka. *Ann Surg*. 2015;261(4):619–629. https://doi.org/10.1097/sla.0000000000001184.
202. Abu Hilal M, Aldrighetti L, Dagher I, et al. The Southampton consensus guidelines for laparoscopic liver surgery: from indication to implementation. *Ann Surg*. 2018;268(1):11–18. https://doi.org/10.1097/sla.0000000000002524.
203. Ciria R, Cherqui D, Geller DA, Briceno J, Wakabayashi G. Comparative short–term benefits of laparoscopic liver resection: 9000 cases and climbing. *Ann Surg*. 2016;263(4):761–777. https://doi.org/10.1097/sla.0000000000001413.
204. Fretland AA, Dagenborg VJ, Bjornelv GMW, et al. Laparoscopic versus open resection for colorectal liver metastases: the OSLO–COMET randomized controlled trial. *Ann Surg*. 2018;267(2):199–207. https://doi.org/10.1097/sla.0000000000002353.
205. Cauchy F, Fuks D, Nomi T, et al. Risk factors and consequences of conversion in laparoscopic major liver resection. *Br J Surg*. 2015;102(7):785–795. https://doi.org/10.1002/bjs.9806.
206. Goh BK, Chan CY, Wong JS, et al. Factors associated with and outcomes of open conversion after laparoscopic minor hepatectomy: initial experience at a single institution. *Surg Endosc*. 2015;29(9):2636–2642. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00464–014–3981–0.
207. Nota CL, Rinkes IHB, Molenaar IQ, van Santvoort HC, Fong Y, Hagendoorn J. Robot–assisted laparoscopic liver resection: a systematic review and pooled analysis of minor and major hepatectomies. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2016;18(2):113–120. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.hpb.2015.09.003.
208. Montalti R, Berardi G, Patriti A, Vivarelli M, Troisi RI. Outcomes of robotic vs laparoscopic hepatectomy: a systematic review and meta–analysis. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2015;21(27):8441–8451. https://doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v21.i27.8441.
209. Capussotti L, Muratore A, Amisano M, Polastri R, Bouzari H, Massucco P. Liver resection for hepatocellular carcinoma on cirrhosis: analysis of mortality, morbidity and survival—a European single center experience. *Eur J Surg Oncol*. 2005;31(9):986–993. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejso.2005.04.002.
210. Reddy SK, Marsh JW, Varley PR, et al. Underlying steatohepatitis, but not simple hepatic steatosis, increases morbidity after liver resection: a case–control study. *Hepatology*. 2012;56(6):2221–2230. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.25935.
211. van Lienden KP, van den Esschert JW, de Graaf W, et al. Portal vein embolization before liver resection: a systematic review. *Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol*. 2013;36(1):25–34. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00270–012–0440–y.
212. Kamiyama T, Nakanishi K, Yokoo H, et al. Perioperative management of hepatic resection toward zero mortality and morbidity: analysis of 793 consecutive cases in a single institution. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2010;211(4):443–449. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2010.06.005.

213. Aramaki O, Takayama T, Higaki T, et al. Decreased blood loss reduces postoperative complications in resection for hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Sci*. 2014;21(8):585–591. https://doi.org/10.1002/jhbp.101.
214. Katz SC, Shia J, Liau KH, et al. Operative blood loss independently predicts recurrence and survival after resection of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Ann Surg*. 2009;249(4):617–623. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0b013e31819ed22f.
215. McNally SJ, Revie EJ, Massie LJ, et al. Factors in perioperative care that determine blood loss in liver surgery. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2012;14(4):236–241. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1477–2574.2011.00433.x.
216. Nanashima A, Abo T, Hamasaki K, et al. Predictors of intraoperative blood loss in patients undergoing hepatectomy. *Surg Today*. 2013;43(5):485–493. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00595–012–0374–7.
217. Janny S, Eurin M, Dokmak S, Toussaint A, Farges O, Paugam–Burtz C. Assessment of the external validity of a predictive score for blood transfusion in liver surgery. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2015;17(4):357–361. https://doi.org/10.1111/hpb.12376.
218. Fujimoto J, Okamoto E, Yamanaka N, et al. Efficacy of autotransfusion in hepatectomy for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Arch Surg*. 1993;128(9):1065–1069. https://doi.org/.
219. Matot I, Scheinin O, Jurim O, Eid A. Effectiveness of acute normovolemic hemodilution to minimize allogeneic blood transfusion in major liver resections. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(4):794–800. https://doi.org/.
220. Jarnagin WR, Gonen M, Maithel SK, et al. A prospective randomized trial of acute normovolemic hemodilution compared to standard intraoperative management in patients undergoing major hepatic resection. *Ann Surg*. 2008;248(3):360–369. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0b013e318184db08.
221. Frankel TL, Fischer M, Grant F, et al. Selecting patients for acute normovolemic hemodilution during hepatic resection: a prospective randomized evaluation of nomogram–based allocation. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;217(2):210–220. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2013.03.019.
222. Imamura H, Seyama Y, Kokudo N, et al. One thousand fifty–six hepatectomies without mortality in 8 years. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138(11):1206; discussion 1206.
223. Grazi GL, Ercolani G, Pierangeli F, et al. Improved results of liver resection for hepatocellular carcinoma on cirrhosis give the procedure added value. *Ann Surg*. 2001;234(1):71–78. https://doi.org/.
224. Huntington JT, Royall NA, Schmidt CR. Minimizing blood loss during hepatectomy: a literature review. *J Surg Oncol*. 2014;109(2):81–88. https://doi.org/10.1002/jso.23455.
225. Jiang B, Yan X, Zhang J. Meta–analysis of laparoscopic versus open liver resection for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatol Res*. 2018;48(8):635–663.
226. Pringle JHV. Notes on the arrest of hepatic hemorrhage due to trauma. *Ann Surg*. 1908;48(4):541–549. https://doi.org/.
227. Kim YI. Ischemia–reperfusion injury of the human liver during hepatic resection. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat*. 2003;10(3):195–199. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00534–002–0730–x.
228. Hoekstra LT, van Trigt JD, Reiniers MJ, Busch OR, Gouma DJ, van Gulik TM. Vascular occlusion or not during liver resection: the continuing story. *Dig Surg*. 2012;29(1):35–42. https://doi.org/10.1159/000335724.
229. Torzilli G, Procopio F, Donadon M, Del Fabbro D, Cimino M, Montorsi M. Safety of intermittent Pringle maneuver cumulative time exceeding 120 minutes in liver resection: a further step in favor of the radical but conservative policy. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255(2):270–280. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0b013e318232b375.
230. Beck–Schimmer B, Breitenstein S, Urech S, et al. A randomized controlled trial on pharmacological preconditioning in liver surgery using a volatile anesthetic. *Ann Surg*. 2008;248(6):909–918. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0b013e31818f3dda.
231. Beck–Schimmer B, Breitenstein S, Bonvini JM, et al. Protection of pharmacological postconditioning in liver surgery: results of a prospective randomized controlled trial. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256(5):5. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0b013e318272df7c.
232. Man K, Fan ST, Ng IO, Lo CM, Liu CL, Wong J. Prospective evaluation of Pringle maneuver in hepatectomy for liver tumors by a randomized study. *Ann Surg*. 1997;226(6):3. https://doi.org/.
233. Man K, Lo CM, Liu CL, et al. Effects of the intermittent Pringle manoeuvre on hepatic gene expression and ultrastructure in a randomized clinical study. *Br J Surg*. 2003;90(2):183–189. https://doi.org/10.1002/bjs.4027.
234. Capussotti L, Muratore A, Ferrero A, Massucco P, Ribero D, Polastri R. Randomized clinical trial of liver resection with and without hepatic pedicle clamping. *Br J Surg*. 2006;93(6):685–689. https://doi.org/10.1002/bjs.5301.
235. Lee KF, Cheung YS, Wong J, Chong CC, Wong JS, Lai PB. Randomized clinical trial of open hepatectomy with or without intermittent Pringle manoeuvre. *Br J Surg*. 2012;99(9):1203–1209. https://doi.org/10.1002/bjs.8863.
236. Lee KF, Wong J, Cheung SYS, et al. Does intermittent Pringle maneuver increase postoperative complications after hepatectomy for hepatocellular carcinoma? A randomized controlled trial. *World J Surg*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268–018–4637–3.
237. Hanyong S, Wanyee L, Siyuan F, et al. A prospective randomized controlled trial: comparison of two different methods of hepatectomy. *Eur J Surg Oncol*. 2015;41(2):243–248. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejso.2014.10.057.
238. Makuuchi M, Mori T, Gunven P, Yamazaki S, Hasegawa H. Safety of hemihepatic vascular occlusion during resection of the liver. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1987;164(2):155–158. https://doi.org/.
239. Figueras J, Llado L, Ruiz D, et al. Complete versus selective portal triad clamping for minor liver resections: a prospective randomized trial. *Ann Surg*. 2005;241(4):582–590. https://doi.org/.
240. Liang G, Wen T, Yan L, et al. A prospective randomized comparison of continuous hemihepatic with intermittent total hepatic inflow occlusion in hepatectomy for liver tumors. *HepatoGastroenterology*. 2009;56(91–92):745–750. https://doi.org/.
241. Fu SY, Lau WY, Li GG, et al. A prospective randomized controlled trial to compare Pringle maneuver, hemihepatic vascular inflow occlusion, and main portal vein inflow occlusion in partial hepatectomy. *Am J Surg*. 2011;201(1):62–69. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amjsurg.2009.09.029.
242. Ni JS, Lau WY, Yang Y, et al. A prospective randomized controlled trial to compare pringle manoeuvre with hemi–hepatic vascular inflow occlusion in liver resection for hepatocellular carcinoma with cirrhosis. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2013;17(8):1414–1421. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11605–013–2236–z.
243. Huguet C, Nordlinger B, Galopin JJ, Bloch P, Gallot D. Normothermic hepatic vascular exclusion for extensive hepatectomy. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1978;147(5):689–693. https://doi.org/.
244. Belghiti J, Noun R, Zante E, Ballet T, Sauvanet A. Portal triad clamping or hepatic vascular exclusion for major liver resection. A controlled study. *Ann Surg*. 1996;224(2):155–161. https://doi.org/.
245. Azoulay D, Lim C, Salloum C, et al. Complex liver resection using standard total vascular exclusion, venovenous bypass, and in situ hypothermic portal perfusion: an audit of 77 consecutive cases. *Ann Surg*. 2015;262(1):93–104. https://doi.org/10.1097/sla.0000000000000787.
246. Elias D, Lasser P, Debaene B, et al. Intermittent vascular exclusion of the liver (without vena cava clamping) during major hepatectomy. *Br J Surg*. 1995;82(11):1535–1539. https://doi.org/.
247. Smyrniotis VE, Kostopanagiotou GG, Gamaletsos EL, et al. Total versus selective hepatic vascular exclusion in major liver resections. *Am J Surg*. 2002;183(2):173–178. https://doi.org/.
248. Smyrniotis VE, Kostopanagiotou GG, Contis JC, et al. Selective hepatic vascular exclusion versus Pringle maneuver in major liver resections: prospective study. *World J Surg*. 2003;27(7):765–769. https://doi.org/.
249. Melendez JA, Arslan V, Fischer ME, et al. Perioperative outcomes of major hepatic resections under low central venous pressure anesthesia: blood loss, blood transfusion, and the risk of postoperative renal dysfunction. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1998;187(6):620–625. https://doi.org/.
250. Jones RM, Moulton CE, Hardy KJ. Central venous pressure and its effect on blood loss during liver resection. *Br J Surg*. 1998;85(8):1058–1060. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1365–2168.1998.00795.x.
251. Smyrniotis V, Kostopanagiotou G, Theodoraki K, Tsantoulas D, Contis JC. The role of central venous pressure and type of vascular control in blood loss during major liver resections. *Am J Surg*. 2004;187(3):398–402. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amjsurg.2003.12.001.
252. Bui LL, Smith AJ, Bercovici M, Szalai JP, Hanna SS. Minimising blood loss and transfusion requirements in hepatic resection. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2002;4(1):5–10. https://doi.org/10.1080/136518202753598672.
253. Chen H, Merchant NB, Didolkar MS. Hepatic resection using intermittent vascular inflow occlusion and low central venous pressure anesthesia improves morbidity and mortality. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2000;4(2):162–167. https://doi.org/.

254. Wang WD, Liang LJ, Huang XQ, Yin XY. Low central venous pressure reduces blood loss in hepatectomy. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2006;12(6):935–939. https://doi.org/.
255. Liu Y, Duan S, Peng X, Lai Y, Li Y. Effect of controlled low central venous pressure on renal function in major liver resection. *Chin–Germ J Clin Oncol*. 2008;7:7–9.
256. Hughes MJ, Ventham NT, Harrison EM, Wigmore SJ. Central venous pressure and liver resection: a systematic review and meta–analysis. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2015;17(10):863–871. https://doi.org/10.1111/hpb.12462.
257. Chhibber A, Dziak J, Kolano J, Norton JR, Lustik S. Anesthesia care for adult live donor hepatectomy: our experiences with 100 cases. *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(4):537–542. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.21074.
258. Kim YK, Chin JH, Kang SJ, et al. Association between central venous pressure and blood loss during hepatic resection in 984 living donors. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(5):601–606. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399–6576.2009.01920.x.
259. Melendez JA, Arslan V, Fischer ME, et al. Perioperative outcomes of major hepatic resections under low central venous pressure anesthesia: blood loss, blood transfusion, and the risk of postoperative renal dysfunction. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1998;187(6):620–625. https://doi.org/.
260. Ryu HG, Nahm FS, Sohn HM, Jeong EJ, Jung CW. Low central venous pressure with milrinone during living donor hepatectomy. *Am J Transplant*. 2010;10(4):877–882. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600–6143.2010.03051.x.
261. Sand L, Rizell M, Houltz E, et al. Effect of patient position and PEEP on hepatic, portal and central venous pressures during liver resection. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55(9):1106–1112. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399–6576.2011.02502.x.
262. Rahbari NN, Koch M, Zimmermann JB, et al. Infrahepatic inferior vena cava clamping for reduction of central venous pressure and blood loss during hepatic resection: a randomized controlled trial. *Ann Surg*. 2011;253(6):1102–1110. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0b013e318214bee5.
263. Otsubo T, Takasaki K, Yamamoto M, et al. Bleeding during hepatectomy can be reduced by clamping the inferior vena cava below the liver. *Surgery*. 2004;135(1):67–73. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0039.
264. Chen XP, Zhang ZW, Zhang BX, et al. Modified technique of hepatic vascular exclusion: effect on blood loss during complex mesohepatectomy in hepatocellular carcinoma patients with cirrhosis. *Langenbecks Arch Surg*. 2006;391(3):209–215. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00423–006–0043–7.
265. Kato M, Kubota K, Kita J, Shimoda M, Rokkaku K, Sawada T. Effect of infra–hepatic inferior vena cava clamping on bleeding during hepatic dissection: a prospective, randomized, controlled study. *World J Surg*. 2008;32(6):1082–1087. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268–007–9445–0.
266. Zhu P, Lau WY, Chen YF, et al. Randomized clinical trial comparing infrahepatic inferior vena cava clamping with low central venous pressure in complex liver resections involving the Pringle manoeuvre. *Br J Surg*. 2012;99(6):781–788. https://doi.org/10.1002/bjs.8714.
267. Zhou YM, Sui CJ, Zhang XF, Li B, Yang JM. Anterior approach combined with infrahepatic inferior vena cava clamping right hepatic resection for large hepatocellular carcinoma: a prospective randomized controlled trial. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2016;95(27):e4159. https://doi.org/10.1097/md.0000000000004159.
268. Ueno M, Kawai M, Hayami S, et al. Partial clamping of the infrahepatic inferior vena cava for blood loss reduction during anatomic liver resection: a prospective, randomized, controlled trial. *Surgery*. 2017;161(6):1502–1513. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.surg.2016.12.010.
269. Fancellu A, Petrucciani N, Melis M, et al. Usefulness of infra–hepatic inferior vena cava clamping during liver resection: a meta–analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2018;22(5):941–951. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11605–018–3720–2.
270. Lodge JP, Jonas S, Oussoultzoglou E, et al. Recombinant coagulation factor VIIa in major liver resection: a randomized, placebo–controlled, double–blind clinical trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(2):269–275. https://doi.org/.
271. Shao YF, Yang JM, Chau GY, et al. Safety and hemostatic effect of recombinant activated factor VII in cirrhotic patients undergoing partial hepatectomy: a multicenter, randomized, double–blind, placebo–controlled trial. *Am J Surg*. 2006;191(2):245–249. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amjsurg.2005.10.019.
272. Wu CC, Ho WM, Cheng SB, et al. Perioperative parenteral tranexamic acid in liver tumor resection: a prospective randomized trial toward a blood transfusion–free hepatectomy. *Ann Surg*. 2006;243(2):173–180. https://doi.org/10.1097/01.sla.0000197561.70972.73.
273. Moggia E, Rouse B, Simillis C, et al. Methods to decrease blood loss during liver resection: a network meta–analysis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;10:CD010683. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD010683.pub3.
274. Wax DB, Zerillo J, Tabrizian P, et al. A retrospective analysis of liver resection performed without central venous pressure monitoring. *Eur J Surg Oncol*. 2016;42(10):1608–1613. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejso.2016.03.025.
275. Niemann CU, Feiner J, Behrends M, Eilers H, Ascher NL, Roberts JP. Central venous pressure monitoring during living right donor hepatectomy. *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(2):266–271. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.21051.
276. Choi SJ, Gwak MS, Ko JS, et al. Can peripheral venous pressure be an alternative to central venous pressure during right hepatectomy in living donors? *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(10):1414–1421. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.21255.
277. Stephan F, Rezaiguia–Delclaux S. Usefulness of a central venous catheter during hepatic surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52(3):388–396. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399–6576.2007.01553.x.
278. Kim YK, Shin WJ, Song JG, Jun IG, Hwang GS. Does stroke volume variation predict intraoperative blood loss in living right donor hepatectomy? *Transplant Proc*. 2011;43(5):1407–1411. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.transproceed.2011.02.056.
279. Ratti F, Cipriani F, Reineke R, et al. Intraoperative monitoring of stroke volume variation versus central venous pressure in laparoscopic liver surgery: a randomized prospective comparative trial. *HPB (Oxford)*. 2016;18(2):136–144. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.hpb.2015.09.005.
280. Dunki–Jacobs EM, Philips P, Scoggins CR, McMasters KM, Martin RC. Stroke volume variation in hepatic resection: a replacement for standard central venous pressure monitoring. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2014;21(2):473–478. https://doi.org/10.1245/s10434–013–3323–9.
281. Lee J, Kim WH, Ryu HG, et al. Stroke volume variation–guided versus central venous pressure–guided low central venous pressure with milrinone during living donor hepatectomy: a randomized double–blinded clinical trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(2):423–430. https://doi.org/10.1213/ane.0000000000002197.
282. De Pietri L, Bianchini M, Montalti R, et al. Thrombelastography–guided blood product use before invasive procedures in cirrhosis with severe coagulopathy: a randomized, controlled trial. *Hepatology*. 2016;63(2):566–573. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.28148.
283. Schreiber KL, Chelly JE, Lang RS, et al. Epidural versus paravertebral nerve block for postoperative analgesia in patients undergoing open liver resection: a randomized clinical trial. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(4):460–468. https://doi.org/10.1097/aap.0000000000000422.
284. Ali M, Winter DC, Hanly AM, O'Hagan C, Keaveny J, Broe P. Prospective, randomized, controlled trial of thoracic epidural or patient–controlled opiate analgesia on perioperative quality of life. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(3):292–297. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aeq006.
285. Matot I, Scheinin O, Eid A, Jurim O. Epidural anesthesia and analgesia in liver resection. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(5):81; table of ontents https://doi.org/.
286. Tsui SL, Yong BH, Ng KF, Yuen TS, Li CC, Chui KY. Delayed epidural catheter removal: the impact of postoperative coagulopathy. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2004;32(5):630–636. https://doi.org/.
287. Yuan FS, Ng SY, Ho KY, Lee SY, Chung AY, Poopalalingam R. Abnormal coagulation profile after hepatic resection: the effect of chronic hepatic disease and implications for epidural analgesia. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24(5):398–403. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclinane.2011.11.005.
288. Elterman KG, Xiong Z. Coagulation profile changes and safety of epidural analgesia after hepatectomy: a retrospective study. *J Anesth*. 2015;29(3):367–372. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00540–014–1933–4.
289. Jacquenod P, Wallon G, Gazon M, et al. Incidence and risk factors of coagulation profile derangement after liver surgery: implications for the use of epidural analgesia–a retrospective cohort study. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(4):1142–1147. https://doi.org/10.1213/ane.0000000000002457.

290. Christie IW, McCabe S. Major complications of epidural analgesia after surgery: results of a six–year survey. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(4):335–341.
291. Cook TM, Counsell D, Wildsmith JA. Major complications of central neuraxial block: report on the third national audit project of the Royal College of Anaesthetists. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(2):179–190. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aen360.
292. Ko JS, Gwak MS, Choi SJ, et al. The effects of desflurane and sevoflurane on hepatic and renal functions after right hepatectomy in living donors*. *Transpl Int*. 2010;23(7):736–744. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1432–2277.2009.01050.x.
293. Toprak HI, Sahin T, Aslan S, Karahan K, Sanli M, Ersoy MO. Effects of desflurane and isoflurane on hepatic and renal functions and coagulation profile during donor hepatectomy. *Transplant Proc*. 2012;44(6):1635–1639. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.transproceed.2012.05.047.
294. Ko JS, Gwak MS, Choi SJ, et al. The effects of desflurane and propofol–remifentanil on postoperative hepatic and renal functions after right hepatectomy in liver donors. *Liver Transpl*. 2008;14(8):1150–1158. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.21490.
295. Decailliot F, Cherqui D, Leroux B, et al. Effects of portal triad clamping on haemodynamic conditions during laparoscopic liver resection. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(3):493–496. https://doi.org/.
296. Delva E, Camus Y, Paugam C, Parc R, Huguet C, Lienhart A. Hemodynamic effects of portal triad clamping in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(9):864–868. https://doi.org/.
297. Decailliot F, Streich B, Heurtematte Y, Duvaldestin P, Cherqui D, Stephan F. Hemodynamic effects of portal triad clamping with and without pneumoperitoneum: an echocardiographic study. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):864–868; table of ontents. https://doi.org/10.1213/01.ane.0000144592.20499.12.
298. Ni CY, Yang Y, Chang YQ, et al. Fast–track surgery improves postoperative recovery in patients undergoing partial hepatectomy for primary liver cancer: a prospective randomized controlled trial. *Eur J Surg Oncol*. 2013;39(6):542–547. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejso.2013.03.013.
299. Qi S, Chen G, Cao P, et al. Safety and efficacy of enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) programs in patients undergoing hepatectomy: a prospective randomized controlled trial. *J Clin Lab Anal*. 2018:e22434. https://doi.org/10.1002/jcla.22434.
300. He F, Lin X, Xie F, Huang Y, Yuan R. The effect of enhanced recovery program for patients undergoing partial laparoscopic hepatectomy of liver cancer. *Clin Transl Oncol*. 2015;17(9):694–701. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12094–015–1296–9.
301. Liang X, Ying H, Wang H, et al. Enhanced recovery care versus traditional care after laparoscopic liver resections: a randomized controlled trial. *Surg Endosc*. 2018;32(6):2746–2757. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00464–017–5973–3.
302. Melloul E, Hubner M, Scott M, et al. Guidelines for perioperative care for liver surgery: Enhanced Recovery after Surgery (ERAS) Society recommendations. *World J Surg*. 2016;40(10):2425–2440. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268–016–3700–1.
303. Bond–Smith G, Belgaumkar AP, Davidson BR, Gurusamy KS. Enhanced recovery protocols for major upper gastrointestinal, liver and pancreatic surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;2:CD011382. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD011382.pub2.

17

Renal Anatomy, Physiology, Pharmacology, and Evaluation of Function

RICHARD M. PINO and ABRAHAM SONNY

KEY POINTS

- A molecule in the plasma must pass in succession through the endothelial fenestration, glomerular basement membrane (GBM), and epithelial slit diaphragm to cross the filtration barrier and enter the tubular fluid. The capillary endothelium restricts the passage of cells, while the GBM restricts albumin and larger molecules. The negatively charged glycoproteins of the GBM limit the passage of other negatively charged proteins. Thus, the filtration barrier is size selective and charge selective. The epithelial cells maintain the integrity of this capillary bed by producing several key signaling molecules and endocytosis of membrane receptors.
- A primary determinant of glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is glomerular filtration pressure, which depends on renal artery perfusion pressure and the balance between afferent and efferent arteriolar tone. With decreases in afferent arteriolar pressure or blood flow, mediators such as catecholamines, angiotensin II, and arginine vasopressin (AVP) constrict efferent arterioles to maintain glomerular filtration pressure. This is reflected by an increase in GFR.
- Tubuloglomerular feedback is a critical mechanism for renal autoregulation. When GFR is increased, distal tubular NaCl delivery is enhanced and the increase in chloride concentration is sensed by the macula densa to trigger the renin-angiotensin cascade. The result is afferent arteriolar vaso constriction as efferent arteriolar vasoconstriction increases GFR. Autoregulation enables the kidney to maintain solute and water regulation independently of wide fluctuations in arterial blood pressure. Tubular water reabsorption determines urinary flow rate and is closely related to the hydrostatic pressure in the peritubular capillaries. Hypotension of any cause results in decreased urinary flow rate that may be correctable only when arterial blood pressure is restored toward normal.
- The tubule has an enormous capacity for reabsorption of water and NaCl. Each day, 180 L of protein-free glomerular ultrafiltrate is formed, of which almost 99% of the water and 99% of the sodium is reabsorbed. The ability of the kidney to concentrate urine is dependent on the interaction of at least three processes: (1) generation of a hypertonic medullary interstitium by the countercurrent mechanism and urea recycling, (2) concentration and then dilution of tubular fluid in the loop of Henle, and (3) the action of AVP, also known as antidiuretic hormone, in increasing water permeability in the last part of the distal tubule and collecting ducts. The juxtaglomerular apparatus provides an important regulating system for arterial blood pressure, salt, and water homeostasis.
- The interactions of the sympathoadrenal axis, renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, and AVP will respond to hypotension and hypovolemia by promoting vasoconstriction and the retention of salt and water. Prostaglandins and natriuretic peptides facilitate vasodilation and the excretion of salt and water excretion when there is hypertension and hypervolemia.
- Plasma osmolality is tightly controlled. The threshold for AVP secretion by the neurohypophysis between 280 and 290 mOsm/kg. Even mild dehydration results in rapid antidiuresis, and urine osmolality can increase from 300 to 1200 mOsm/kg. Decreases in intravascular volume stimulate AVP secretion.
- Serum creatinine reflects the balance between creatinine production from muscle and creatinine excretion by the kidney, which is dependent on GFR. Creatinine generation rate varies with muscle mass, physical activity, protein intake, and catabolism. However, when these processes are in equilibrium and renal function is stable, serum creatinine is a useful marker of GFR. The relationship between serum creatinine and GFR is inverse and exponential. A doubling of the serum creatinine implies a halving of GFR.

Introduction

The kidney exemplifies an exquisite structure-function relationship to regulate intravascular volume, osmolality, acid-base and electrolyte balance, and to excrete end products of metabolism and drugs. The kidney also produces hormones involved with fluid homeostasis (renin, prostaglandins, kinins), bone metabolism (1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol) and hematopoiesis (erythropoietin).[1] In addition to these multiple roles in the healthy patient, almost every systemic disease will affect renal function. This chapter will describe the normal anatomy and physiology of the kidney and the basics for the clinical evaluation of renal function.

Organization of the Kidney

THE NEPHRON

The fundamental unit of the kidney is the nephron (Figs. 17.1 and 17.2). The nephron is composed of a vascular network close to a series of tubules with distinct physiologic functions that empty into collecting ducts to form urine. There are approximately 1 million nephrons in the normal kidney. The kidneys receive about 20% of the cardiac output and are responsible for 7% of total body oxygen consumption, although they account for only 0.5% of the total body weight.[2] Afferent arterioles from the renal arteries branch extensively to supply the renal and peritubular capillaries. Kidney disease can result from perturbations of these vascular, glomerular, and tubular components (see Chapter 42). Knowledge of these factors is important to the anesthesiologist to limit decrements in renal function during the perioperative period.

The kidney is divided into an outer layer, the cortex, which receives 85% to 90% of the renal blood flow (RBF), and an inner medulla (see Fig. 17.1). In the cortex are glomeruli (see Figs. 17.2 and 17.3), tufts of capillaries originating from afferent arterioles. The glomerular capillary endothelial cells have fenestrations that are barriers to red blood cells but allow the transit of plasma proteins and smaller molecules (Fig. 17.4). Their glycocalyx is an anionic barrier that repels large macromolecules and albumin. Knowledge of this is through experimental studies and diseases where albuminuria is seen after alteration of anionic sites in the glomerular basement membrane (GBM).[3,4] During development, these capillaries invaginate epithelial cells to form tufts of visceral epithelial cells with footlike morphologies called podocytes that are rich in actin cytoskeletons. These podocytes anchor to the GBM, closely interdigitate, and envelope the renal capillaries (Fig. 17.5). A thin membrane called the slit diaphragm has an ultrastructural zipper-like complex that spans the space between each of the foot processes of the podocytes.[5] Additional epithelial cells and their extravascular matrix make up the parietal

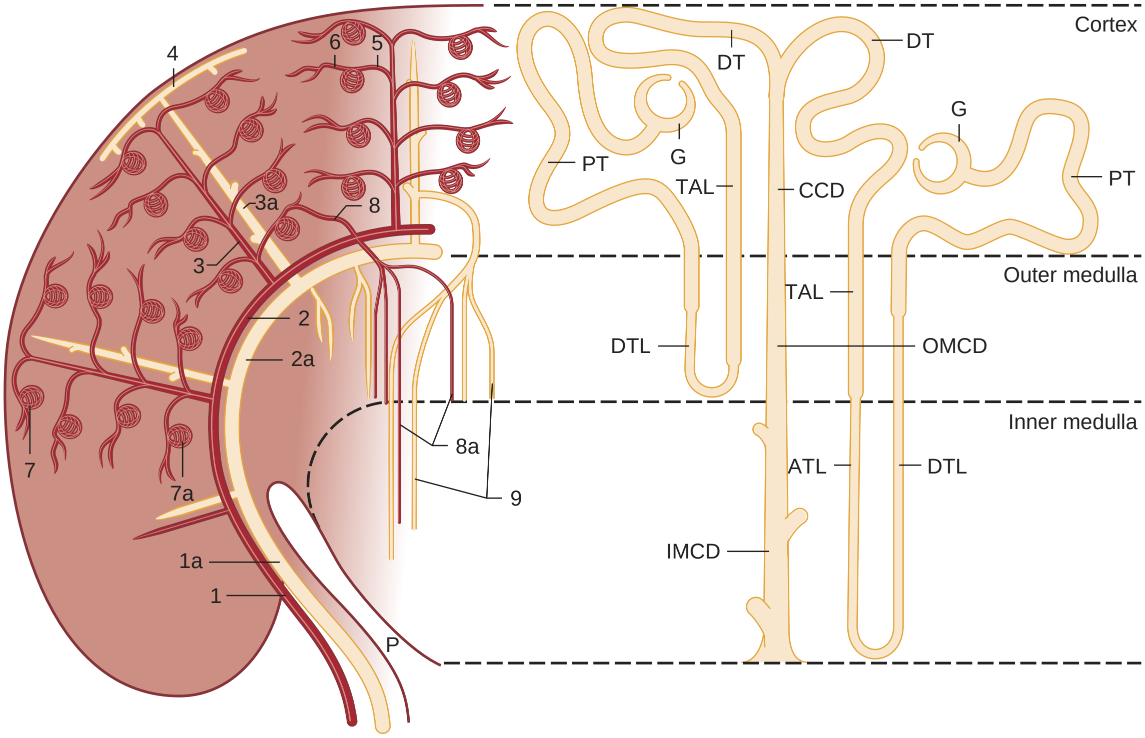


Fig. 17.1 Anatomic relationships of the nephron and the renal vasculature. The left side of the diagram represents the renal vasculature as distributed through the inner medulla, outer medulla, and cortex. Arteries are drawn as solid lines, veins as hollow tubes. The renal artery divides serially into interlobar arteries (1), arcuate arteries (2), and interlobular arteries (3). The afferent arterioles (5) branch off laterally and provide the capillary tufts of the renal glomeruli in the outer cortex (7a), whose efferent arterioles (6) supply the cortical capillary network (not shown). In the juxtamedullary zone (7b), the efferent arterioles become the vasa recta, which are closely applied to the long loops of Henle (8, 8a, 9). The venous drainage consists of stellate veins (4), interlobular veins (3a), arcuate veins (2a), and interlobar veins (1a). (Modified from Kriz W, Bankir L. A standard nomenclature for structures of the kidney. The Renal Commission of the International Union of Physiological Sciences (IUPS). *Kidney Int.* 1988;33[1]:1–7.)

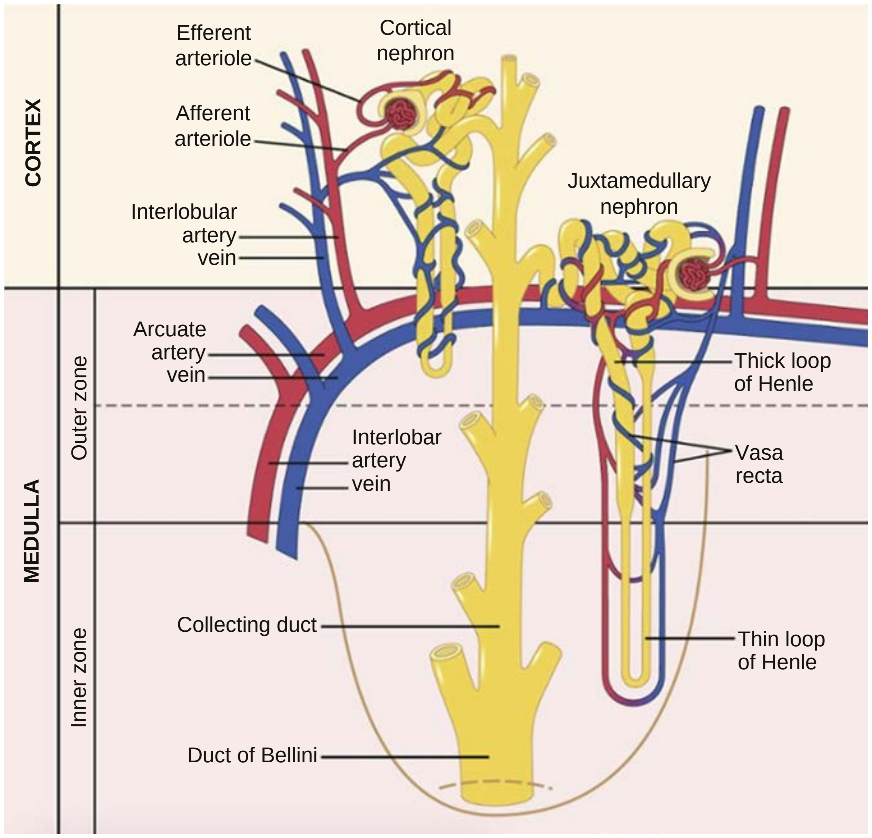

CORTEX
MEDULLA
Outer zone
Inner zone
Efferent arteriole
Cortical nephron
Afferent arteriole
Interlobular artery
vein
Juxtamedullary nephron
Arcuate artery
vein
Thick loop of Henle
Interlobar artery
vein
Vasa recta
Collecting duct
Thin loop of Henle
Duct of Bellini

Fig. 17.2 Schematic of relations between blood vessels and tubular structures. (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

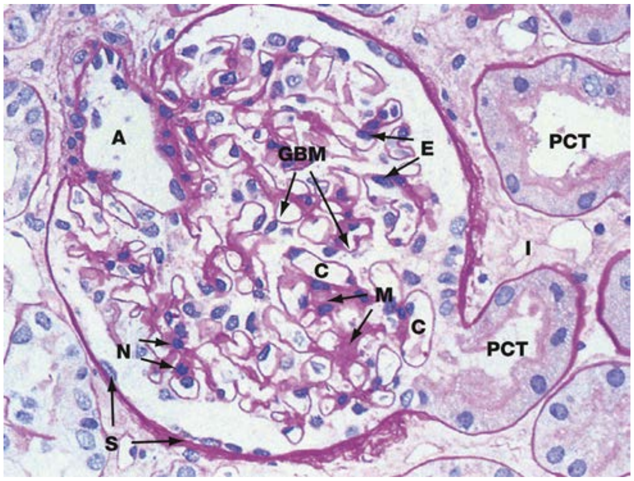

A
GBM
E
PCT
I
C
M
C
N
PCT
S

Fig. 17.3 Glomerulus. An afferent arteriole *(A)* enters the glomerulus and divides into numerous capillaries *(C)* adjacent to the glomerular basement membrane *(GBM)*. The squamous epithelial cells *(S)* lining Bowman space lead to the cuboidal proximal convoluted tubules *(PCT)* with brush borders. *E*, Nuclei of endothelial cells; *M*, mesangium; *N*, nuclei of mesangial cells. (From Young B, Woodford P, O'Dowd G. Urinary system. In: *Wheaton's Functional Histology. A Text and Colour Atlas*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone; 2014.)

epithelium that lines a pouch-like cistern, called Bowman space, which is the beginning of the renal tubular system.

The vasculature of the kidney is unique in that it has two capillary beds. Upon leaving the glomerulus, the glomerular capillary then forms the efferent artery that in turn leads to an anastomosing network of 10 to 25 long peritubular capillaries called vasa recta. The vasa recta are close around the ascending limb of the loop of Henle before anastomosis into veins that leave the kidney (see Fig. 17.2).

The endothelial and epithelial cells synthesize proteins that are essential components of the filtration barrier of the kidney, the GBM (see Fig. 17.5).[6] The GBM is rich in the anionic glycosaminoglycan heparin sulfate, Type IV collagen, and laminin.[6,7] The epithelial cells maintain the integrity of this capillary bed by producing several key molecules including vascular endothelial growth factor[8] and families of signaling proteins and receptors. The transmembrane protein nephrin supports the integrity of the slit pore diaphragms and its maintenance is dependent on the endocytosis of slit diaphragm proteins and plasma membrane components.[7,9,10] The interplay between the foot processes of the podocytes, slit diaphragms, and organization of the actin intracellular scaffolds is centered on nephrin and related proteins.[11] The functions of these numerous factors are often elucidated in experiential studies when found as etiologies of renal disease.[7,11]

THE RENAL TUBULES

The kidneys receive 20% of the total cardiac output but extract relatively little oxygen. The renal arteriovenous oxygen difference is only 1.5 mL/dL. However, there is marked dissimilarity between the renal cortex and medulla with regard to blood flow, oxygen delivery, and oxygen consumption (Table 17.1). The medulla receives only 6% of the

RBF and has an average oxygen tension (PO_2) of 8 mm Hg. Thus, severe hypoxia could develop in the medulla despite a relatively adequate total RBF; the metabolically active medullary thick ascending loop of Henle (mTAL) is particularly vulnerable.[12]

The terminology of the renal tubular system is based on morphology as seen with light microscopy. The system begins with the proximal convoluted tubule (PCT) that starts as a continuation of the parietal epithelium of the nephron (see Fig. 17.3). A high density of mitochondria and the extensive surface area of the apical (referred as the brush border) and basilar cell membranes mark the renal tubules and indicate high-energy requirements. In normal kidneys, 80% of the energy is required for Na^+/K^+-ATPase that maintains the osmotic gradient needed for the resorption of filtered molecules (Fig. 17.6).[2] In spite of this high-energy demand, the tubular system is supplied by only 10% to 15% of the RBF and is a key etiology for acute tubular necrosis after hypotension (see Chapter 42).

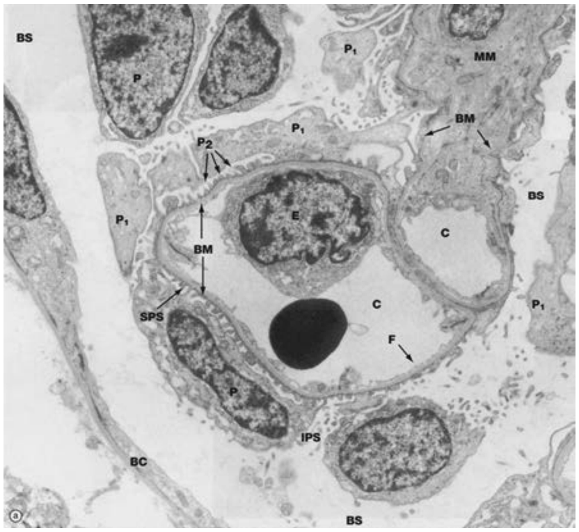


Fig. 17.4 Electron micrograph of glomerulus. The several glomerular capillaries *(C)* are lined by fenestrated endothelial cells. The podocytes *(P)* give rise to foot processes *(P_1, P_2)* that rest on the glomerular basement membrane *(BM)*. Mesangial cells *(M)* support the capillary loops. Bowman space *(BS)* is delineated by the podocyte bodies on one side and the parietal epithelial cells on the other. *E*, Nucleus of capillary; *IPS* interpodocyte space; *MM*, mesangial matrix; *SPS*, subpodocyte space. (From Young B, Woodford P, O'Dowd G. Urinary system. In: *Wheaton's Functional Histology. A Text and Colour Atlas.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone; 2014.)

A distal short straight length of the proximal tubule leads to the thinner epithelium of the descending thin limb of the loop of Henle. This makes a hairpin 180-degree turn to ascend toward the cortex and eventually becomes the medullary thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle (mTAL) and distal convoluted tube (see Fig. 17.2). Seventy to 80% of nephrons begin in the cortex and have short loops of Henle that enter only the outer margin of the medulla. The remaining juxtamedullary nephrons start at the corticomedullary junction and have elongated loops of Henle that descend into the most distal extent of the medulla. At the end of the distal tubule is the juxtaglomerular apparatus that is comprised of specialized epithelial cells, called the macula densa (by virtue of light microscopic image), cells of the afferent glomerular arteriole, and mesangial cells (Fig. 17.7). The juxtaglomerular apparatus is essential for the maintenance of blood pressure, as described later. The most distal end of the nephron is the collecting duct that empties the ultrafiltrate into the renal pelvis and then the ureters.

FORMATION OF URINE

Urine is formed by the interaction of three processes: glomerular filtration, tubular reabsorption, and tubular secretion.

Glomerular Filtration

The formation of the glomerular filtrate is dependent on the balance of Starling forces regulating fluid flux across the filtration barrier.[13] Central to this process is the pressure difference between the afferent and efferent arteries (Fig. 17.8). The hydrostatic pressure in the glomerular

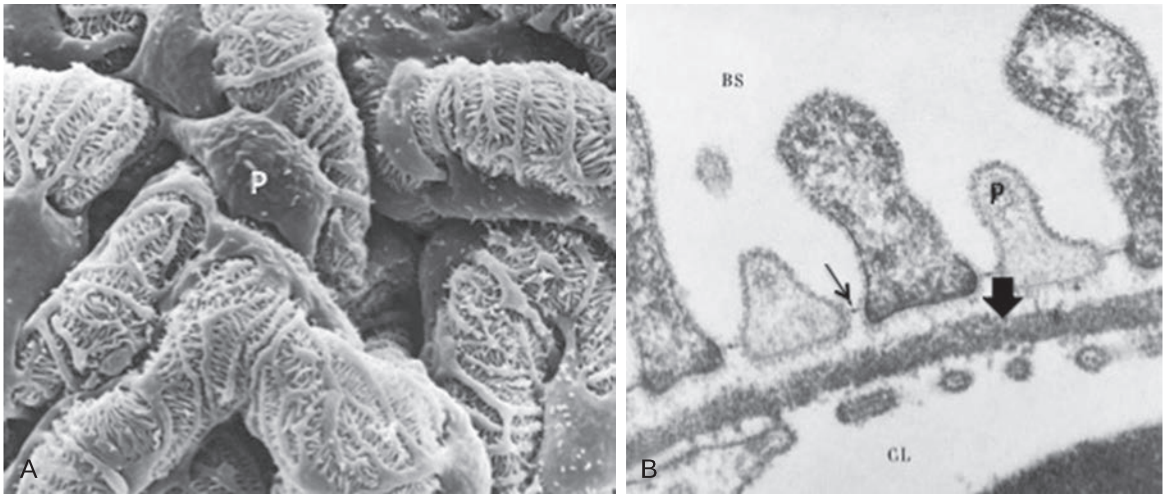


Fig. 17.5 (A) Scanning electron micrograph of podocytes *(P)* and their processes. (B) Electron micrograph of podocyte processes (P), the glomerular basement membrane, and glomerular capillaries. Slit diaphragms *(arrow)* span the podocyte processes. Large arrow points to the lamina densa of the glomerular basement membrane. *BS*, Bowman space; *CL*, glomerular capillary lumen. (Modified from Gartner LP. Urinary system. In: *Textbook of Histology.* 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2017.)

capillaries is 60 mm Hg, which is three times higher than in most capillary beds. This pressure difference drives plasma across the endothelial and epithelial filtration barriers (Table 17.2). A delicate balance in pressure maintenance is necessary because reduced pressures will decrease filtration, as increased pressures may cause renal damage. The glomerular filtration rate (GFR) depends upon the glomerular capillary pressure that is opposed by the hydrostatic pressure in Bowman space and the colloid osmotic pressure within the glomerular capillaries (Figs. 17.8 and 17.9). In healthy patients, the colloid osmotic pressure in Bowman

TABLE 17.1 Distribution of Renal Blood Flow Between Cortex and Medulla

	Cortex	Medulla*
Percentage of renal blood flow	94	6
Blood flow (mL/min/g)	5.0	0.03
PO2 (mm Hg)	50	8
O2 extraction ratio (VO2/DO2)	0.18	0.79

*The renal medulla receives only a small fraction of the total renal blood flow, and flow rates are extremely slow. As a result, the tissue oxygen tension is extremely low, and the medulla extracts almost 80% of the oxygen delivered to it. A very mild reduction in total and cortical renal blood flow may therefore induce ischemia and hypoxia in the renal medulla. *DO_2*, Oxygen delivery; *O_2*, oxygen; *PO_2*, oxygen tension; *VO_2*, oxygen consumption. Data from Brezis M, Rosen S, Epstein F. The pathophysiological implications of medullary hypoxia. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 1989;13:253–258.

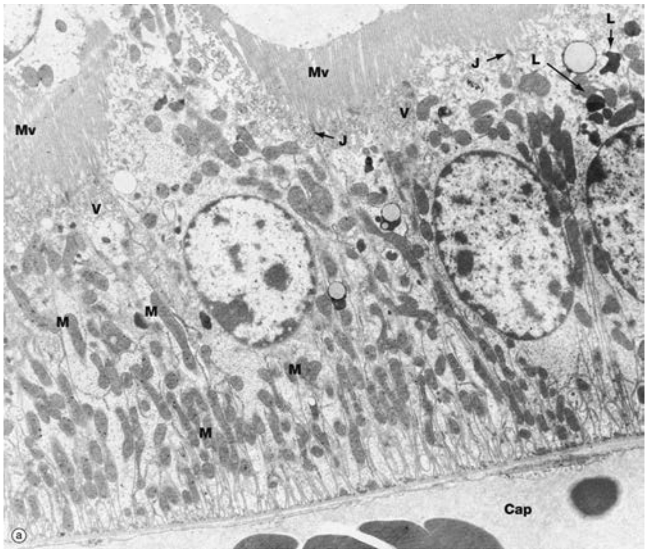


Fig. 17.6 Proximal convoluted tubule. The apical surface of the proximal convoluted tubule epithelium is marked by tall microvilli *(Mv)* that are seen as the brush border in light micrographs. The cytoplasm at the basal surface is filled with mitochondria *(M)* that are reflective of the high oxygen requirement needed for the maintenance of the basal lateral Na^+/K^+ ATPase. *Cap*, tubular capillary; *J*, tight intercellular junction; *L*, lysosome; *V*, vesicle. (From Young B, Woodford P, O'Dowd G. Urinary system. In: *Wheaton's Functional Histology. A Text and Colour Atlas*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone; 2014.)

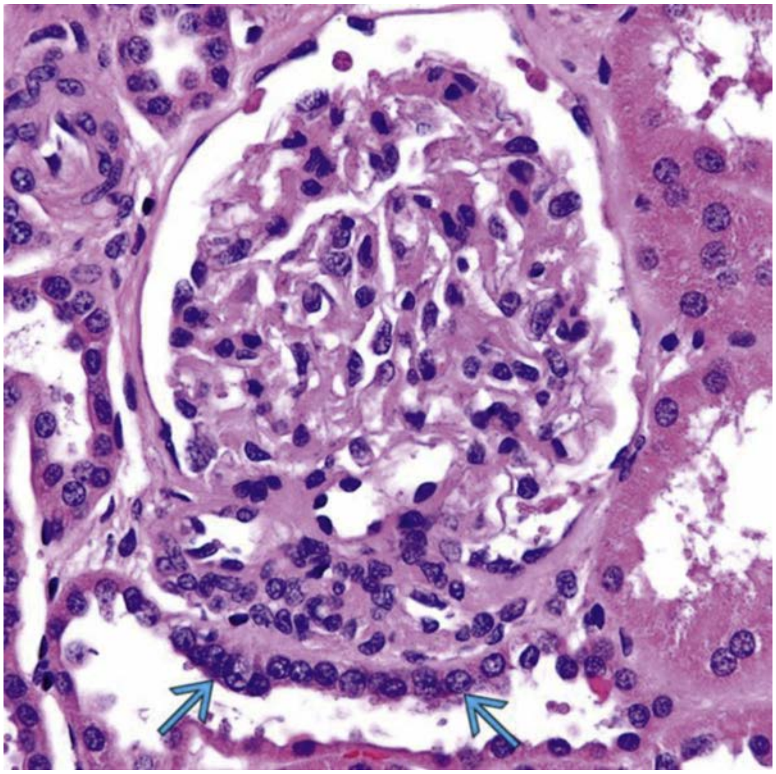


Fig. 17.7 The macula densa *(arrows)*. The cells of the macula densa represent a special portion of the distal tubule that is adjacent to the juxtaglomerular apparatus. (From Genitourinary and male genital tract. In: Lindberg MR, Lamps LW, eds. *Diagnostic Pathology: Normal Histology*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.)

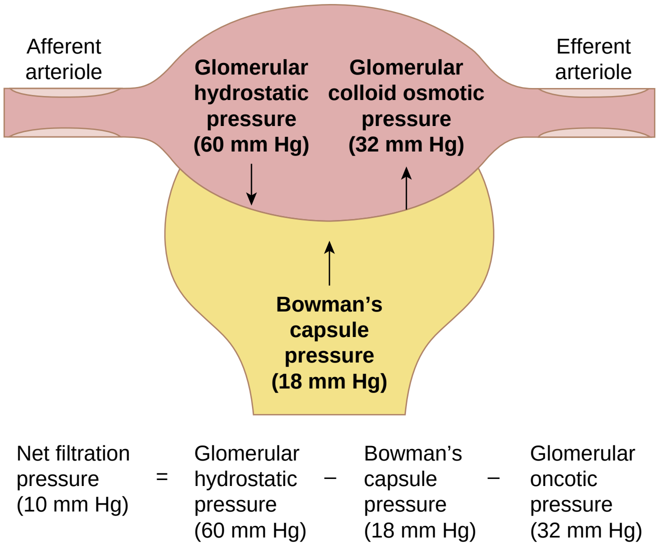

Afferent arteriole
Glomerular hydrostatic pressure (60 mm Hg)
Glomerular colloid osmotic pressure (32 mm Hg)
Efferent arteriole
Bowman's capsule pressure (18 mm Hg)
Net filtration pressure (10 mm Hg) = Glomerular hydrostatic pressure (60 mm Hg) − Bowman's capsule pressure (18 mm Hg) − Glomerular oncotic pressure (32 mm Hg)

Fig. 17.8 Summary of forces causing filtration by the glomerular capillaries. (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

TABLE 17.2 Approximate Pressures and Vascular Resistances in the Circulation of a Normal Kidney

	PRESSURE IN VESSEL (MM HG)		
Vessel	**Beginning**	**End**	**Percent of Total Renal Vascular Resistance**
Renal artery	100	100	≈0
Interlobar, arcuate, and interlobular arteries	≈100	85	≈16
Afferent arteriole	85	60	≈26
Glomerular capillaries	60	59	≈1
Efferent arteriole	59	18	≈43
Peritubular capillaries	18	8	≈10
Interlobar, arcuate, and interlobular veins	8	4	≈4
Renal vein	4	≈4	≈0

From Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.

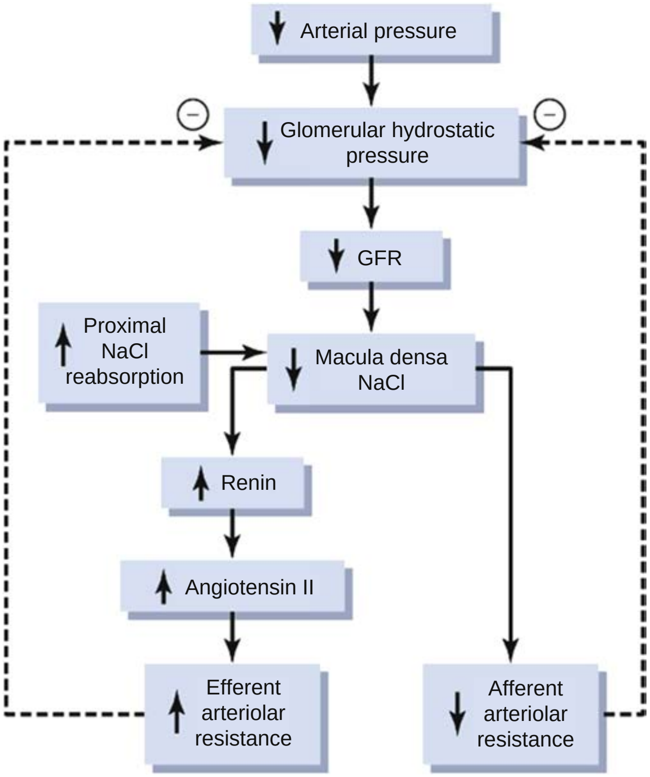
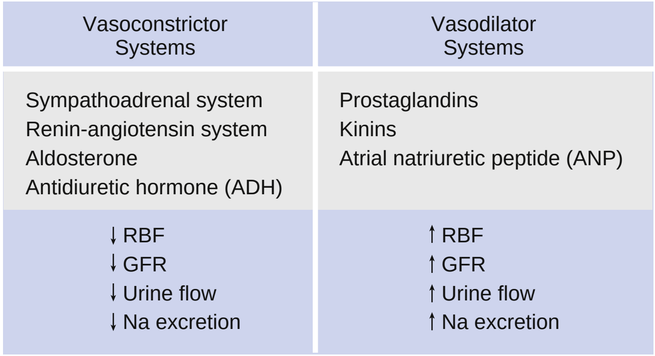

↓ Arterial pressure
↓ Glomerular hydrostatic pressure
⊖
⊖
↓ GFR
↑ Proximal NaCl reabsorption
↓ Macula densa NaCl
↑ Renin
↑ Angiotensin II
↑ Efferent arteriolar resistance
↓ Afferent arteriolar resistance

Fig. 17.9 Macula densa feedback mechanism for autoregulation of glomerular hydrostatic pressure and glomerular filtration rate *(GFR)* during decreased renal artery pressure. (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology.* 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)



Vasoconstrictor Systems	Vasodilator Systems
Sympathoadrenal system Renin-angiotensin system Aldosterone Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	Prostaglandins Kinins Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP)
↓ RBF ↓ GFR ↓ Urine flow ↓ Na excretion	↑ RBF ↑ GFR ↑ Urine flow ↑ Na excretion

Fig. 17.10 Neurohormonal renal regulatory systems. *GFR*, Glomerular filtration rate; *Na*, sodium; *RBF*, renal blood flow; ↓, decreased; ↑, increased. Modified from Sladen RN. Effect of anesthesia and surgery on renal function. *Crit Care Clin.* 1987;3(2):380–393.

space is negligible, since the GBM restricts the passage of proteins. The normal GFR is about 180 L/day.

Mediator Control of the Glomerular Filtration Rate

Control of this glomerular capillary pressure is exquisite. Hormones, peptides, and autacoids interact with receptors in the kidney to assure maintenance of RBF and GFR (Fig. 17.10).

α-Adrenergic Effect. The vascular myocytes of afferent and efferent arterioles have the pressure-dependent ability to contract or relax. This prevents increased diuresis, appropriately called pressure diuresis, when the blood pressure is elevated. Mild α-adrenergic stimulation constricts the efferent arteriole that preserves GFR (Fig. 17.11). Severe α-adrenergic activity decreases the filtration fraction by constricting the afferent and efferent arterioles to prevent a flow-induced decrease in GFR. This is the reason norepinephrine administration during sepsis may preserve diuresis. This is important to understand during shock, when the endogenous adrenergic response or the use of α agonists may worsen renal hypoperfusion and decrease the GFR. The kidney is relatively devoid of β2 receptors, so epinephrine release induces predominant vasoconstriction through α receptor or angiotensin activation.

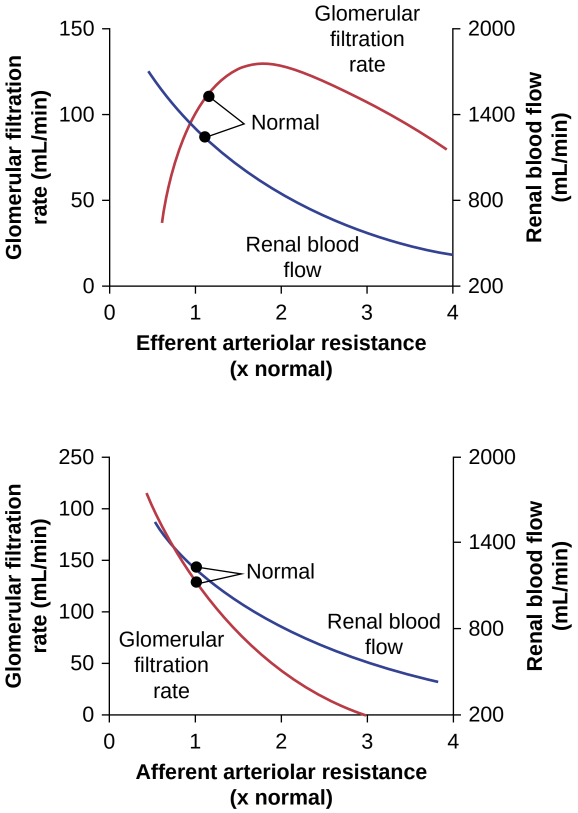


Fig. 17.11 Effect of change in afferent arteriolar resistance or efferent arteriolar resistance on glomerular filtration rate and renal blood flow. (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

Renin-Angiotensin. Adrenergic stimulation of the juxtaglomerular apparatus releases the enzyme renin from the cells of the macula densa and principal cells of the collecting ducts.[14] Renin, more appropriately called angiotensinogenase, converts the hepatic synthesized glycopeptide angiogensinogen to angiotensin I. Angiotensin-converting enzymes (ACEs) are present in diverse cell types,[12] including leukocytes and smooth muscle. The vascular endothelial cells of the kidney and lung are the major source of ACE that converts angiotensin I to angiotensin II.[12,15-17]

Angiotensin II stimulates two pathways that have opposing effects (Fig. 17.12). The principal receptor is AT_1 that is found on the luminal epithelial surface of the proximal tubular cell (PTC), mTAL, macula densa, distal tubules, and collecting ducts.[14,18] The angiotensin II-AT_1 interaction serves to maintain systemic blood pressure through vasoconstriction, and enhancement of tubular transport mechanisms to reabsorb sodium and water.[14,15,19] The binding of angiotensin II to "non-classical" receptors such as AT_7 opposes these actions and causes vasodilatation through nitric oxide (NO) and prostaglandin-mediated natriuresis, diuresis, and reduced oxidative stress.[19]

Angiotensin II is a potent vasoconstrictor of efferent arterioles, which increases the pressure difference and enhances filtration.[18] This maintains the glomerular filtration fraction in the face of mild to moderate decreases in RBF or perfusion pressure that may result from hypovolemia or systemic hypotension. Angiotensin II promotes systemic vasoconstriction at about one tenth of its renal effect. Renin secretion is stimulated by hypovolemia from hemorrhage, diuresis, or sodium loss/restriction and by reductions in perfusion as seen with positive pressure ventilation, congestive heart failure, sepsis, or cirrhosis with ascites. Angiotensin II feeds back to the juxtaglomerular apparatus to inhibit renin secretion. It also stimulates phospholipase A_2 to trigger the synthesis of vasodilatory prostaglandins.

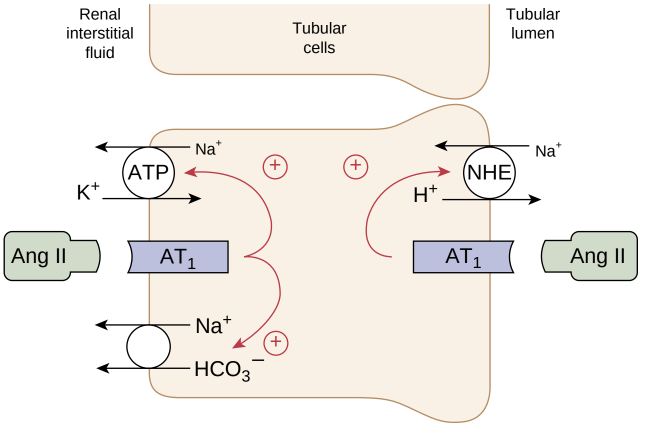


Fig. 17.12 Direct effects of angiotensin II *(Ang II)* to increase proximal tubular sodium reabsorption. Ang II stimulates sodium-hydrogen exchange *(NHE)* on the luminal membrane and the sodium-potassium ATPase transporter and sodium-bicarbonate co-transport on the basolateral membrane. *ATP*, Adenosine triphosphate. (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

Prostaglandins and Kinins. Intrarenal prostaglandins play an important role in endogenous renal protection by vasodilating juxtamedullary blood vessels and maintaining inner cortical blood flow.[20] Prostaglandins are called autacoids because, unlike true hormones, they are produced in minute amounts and have a local, evanescent action. Because their structure is based on a 20-carbon fatty acid, they are also referred to as eicosanoids, after *eicosa*, the Greek word for the number 20.

Phospholipase A_2 resides in the inner lipid layer of the cell membrane and controls prostaglandin production through its formation of the prime precursor, arachidonic acid. It is stimulated by ischemia, hypotension, norepinephrine, angiotensin II, and arginine vasopressin (AVP). Thus, the factors that induce and mediate the stress response simultaneously activate prostaglandins, which defend the kidney against their actions. Cyclooxygenase-1 acts on arachidonic acid to form the vasodilator prostaglandins that include PGD2, PGE2, and PGI2 (prostacyclin).[21] Vasodilation is through activation of cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) to oppose the action of catecholamines, angiotensin II, and AVP. Prostaglandins may be particularly important in decreasing the vasoconstrictor activity of angiotensin II on the afferent arteriole and mesangial cells. Drugs that inhibit prostaglandin synthesis, such as nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents, can upset this compensatory mechanism and result in medullary ischemia.

Kinins act directly as vasodilators, as well as stimulate phospholipase A_2, prostacyclin production, and endothelial cell NO formation.[22] Kinins are produced by cleavage of kininogen by the serine protease kallikrein. Over 90% of renal kallikrein is produced by the distal convoluted tubules

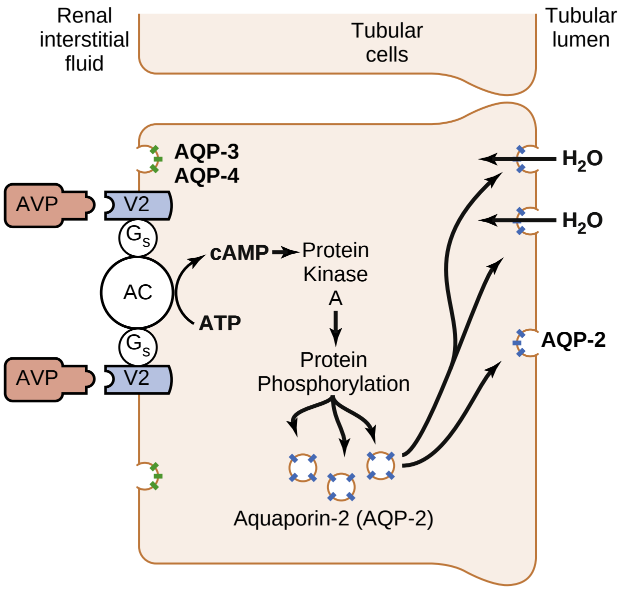


Fig. 17.13 Mechanism of action of arginine vasopressin. Arginine vasopressin *(AVP)* binds to receptors *(V_2)* that are coupled to G proteins *(G_s)* to activate adenylate cyclase *(AC)* and stimulate the formation of cyclic adenosine monophosphate *(cAMP)*. This will then activate protein kinase A to phosphorylate intracellular proteins and allow aquaporin-2 *(AQP-2)* to form water channels at the luminal side of the membrane. Other aquaporins *(AQP-3, AQP-4)* that are not controlled by AVP allow water to exit the cell at the basolateral cell membrane. *ATP*, Adenosine triphosphate. (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

in the cortex with decreased concentrations from outer to inner zones.[22] Renal kininase, which controls the level of bradykinin, is inhibited by ACE inhibitors and is the reason for angioedema.[23]

Arginine Vasopressin. AVP, also known as antidiuretic hormone (ADH), is produced by the posterior pituitary, and its release is stimulated by hyperosmolality or hypovolemia.[24] By far the most potent trigger for AVP release is systemic arterial hypotension, mediated by aortic and carotid baroreceptors. It overrides all other triggers, and plasma AVP may reach levels 10- to 1000-fold greater than normal. At these concentrations, AVP acts as a vasoconstrictor, especially in the outer renal cortex. It does so by stimulating the V_{1A} receptor that exists on vascular smooth muscle, glomerular mesangial cells, and the vasa recta and promotes vasoconstriction through the phosphatidylinositol pathway.[25] AVP maintains effective glomerular filtration pressure because it is an extremely potent constrictor of the efferent arteriole, and unlike catecholamines and angiotensin, it has little effect on the afferent arteriole, even at high plasma levels.[26] The binding to V_2 receptors on the medullary collecting ducts stimulates adenylate cyclase to form cAMP that enhances aquaporin-2 channels of the principal cells to increase water reabsorption (Fig. 17.13).[24,27] Anesthetics have little direct effect on AVP secretion, except via the changes that they induce in arterial blood pressure, venous volume, and serum osmolality. Surgical stimulation is a major stimulus to AVP secretion. This stress response, whether mediated by pain or by intravascular volume changes, is profound and lasts at least 2 to 3 days after the surgical procedure.

Natriuretic Peptides. Natriuretic peptides dilate vascular smooth muscle through activation of cyclic guanosine monophosphate by blocking the phospholipase C-linked receptors to the actions of norepinephrine and angiotensin II. Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP)[28] is released from atrial myocytes in response to atrial wall stretch and increased atrial volume, brain (B-type) natriuretic peptide is released in response to cerebral ventricle stretch, and C-type is released from the endothelium of major blood vessels. Urodilatin is secreted by the epithelium of the distal tubules and collecting ducts in response to increases in mean arterial pressure and blood volume.

The natriuretic peptides cause prompt, sustained increases in GFR and glomerular filtration fractions even when RBF is not increased or when arterial pressure is decreased. They promote afferent arteriolar dilatation with or without efferent arteriolar constriction, antagonize endothelin (the endogenous vasoconstrictor peptide produced by vascular endothelial cells), inhibit renin secretion, and decrease angiotensin-stimulated aldosterone. These peptides also inhibit the release of aldosterone in the adrenal cortex and block its actions at the distal tubules and collecting ducts. Moreover, they inhibit the secretion of AVP through their effects on the brain and pituitary, which can lead to an enhanced diuresis. NaCl is resorbed, and diuresis is promoted.[29] These actions are important in oliguric patients (such as those with acute renal failure and chronic renal failure) to increase urine output.

Aldosterone. Aldosterone is a steroid hormone secreted by the zona glomerulosa of the adrenal cortex in response to hyperkalemia or hyponatremia.[30] Angiotensin II and adrenocorticotropic hormone also trigger its release. It acts at the thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle, the principal cells of the distal tubule, and the collecting duct to increase active absorption of sodium and passive absorption of water, culminating in an expanded blood volume. Sodium retention in vessel walls appears to enhance their response to vasoconstrictor agents. In contrast to the immediate sympathetic angiotensin II response to hypovolemia, there is a delay of about 1 to 2 hours from the secretion of aldosterone to its action on sodium reabsorption.

Aldosterone forms a complex with a receptor at the cell membrane in the principal cells of the distal tubule (Fig. 17.14). The aldosterone-receptor complex travels to the cell nucleus, where it induces cytoplasmic transcription of messenger ribonucleic acid. This fosters synthesis of proteins that form sodium channels in the apical cell membrane and enhance the $Na^+/K^+/ATPase$ pump in the basolateral cell membrane.[31] Sodium is transported from the tubular fluid into the peritubular capillary in exchange for potassium. Long-standing stimulation of aldosterone secretion, characteristically induced by the intravascular volume depletion of chronic ascites, culminates in potassium depletion and hypokalemic alkalosis.

The Dopaminergic System

There are at least two subtypes of dopaminergic (DA) receptors.[32] DA1 receptors are present on the renal and splanchnic vasculature and also on the proximal tubule. Stimulation of the DA1 receptor activates cAMP and induces renal vasodilation, increased RBF and GFR, natriuresis, and diuresis. Dopamine inhibits the sodium-hydrogen antiporter system

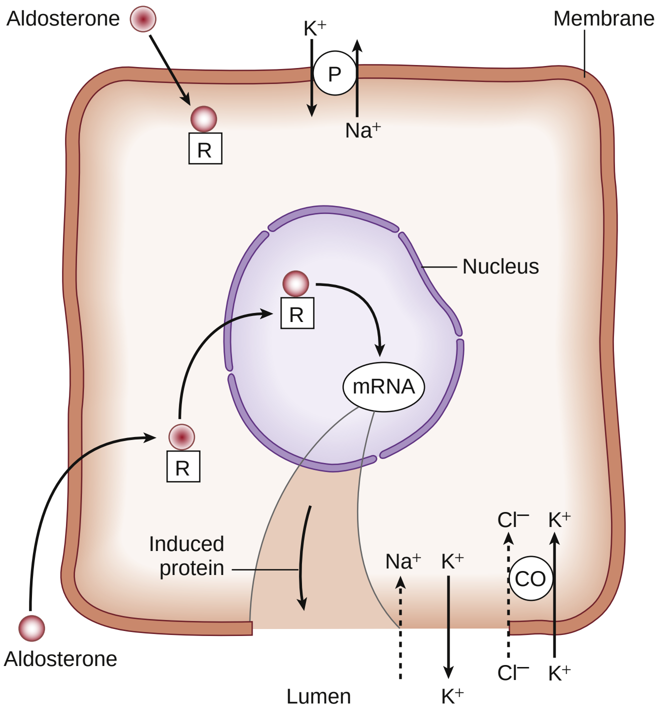


Fig. 17.14 Action of aldosterone. Aldosterone enters the distal tubular cytoplasm and attaches to a receptor, then migrates to the nucleus, where it induces the formation of messenger ribonucleic acid *(mRNA)*. The mRNA in turn induces the synthesis of a protein that enhances the permeability of the apical (luminal) membrane to sodium and potassium. The reabsorption of sodium stimulates the basolateral membrane Na-K-ATPase pump, the intracellular concentration of potassium rises, and it follows its concentration gradient out into the lumen. The net effect of aldosterone's action is sodium reabsorption and potassium loss. Cl^-, Chloride; *CO,* cotransporter (= symporter); K^+, potassium; Na^+, sodium; *P,* sodium-potassium ATPase pump; *R,* receptor. (From Wingard LB, Brody TM, Larner J, et al. Diuretics: drugs that increase excretion of water and electrolytes. In: Wingard LB, Brody TM, Larner J, et al., eds. *Human Pharmacology: Molecular-To-Clinical.* London: Wolfe Publishing Ltd; 1991:249, Fig. 19.4.)

at the brush-border membrane of the proximal tubule and the Na^+/K^+/ATPase pump at the basolateral membrane of the thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle to enhance NaCl reabsorption.

Stimulation of D2 receptors on the presynaptic terminal of postganglionic sympathetic nerves inhibits the release of norepinephrine from presynaptic vesicles to facilitate vasodilation. The DA system plays an integral role in the endogenous vasodilator-natriuresis system and the maintenance of normal blood pressure. Endogenous dopamine constitutively activates the DA2 receptor, which synergistically enhances the activation of the DA1 receptor and inhibits tubular Na^+/K^+-ATPase activity, especially when sodium intake is increased. It also opposes the anti-natriuretic effects of norepinephrine, angiotensin II, and aldosterone. Endogenous ANP acts via the renal dopamine system by recruiting "silent" DA1 receptors from the interior of the cell toward the plasma membrane and also enhances dopamine accumulation.[32,33]

Urinary dopamine excretion is increased with salt loading; decreased DA activity may contribute to the pathogenesis of idiopathic edema, which manifests as retention of salt and water in the upright position. There is evidence that the endogenous dopamine system is activated in compensated cirrhosis and helps to maintain renal sodium excretion.[32,33]

Adenosine

Adenosine is present in all tissues and in the extracellular space as a signaling molecule. It plays a role during conditions of cellular distress such as hypoxia, inflammation, and acute cellular injury.[34] Extracellular adenosine mainly exerts its biologic actions through activation of four adenosine receptors that lead to the attenuation or activation of intracellular cAMP levels through modulation of adenylate cyclase activity. This modulation of cAMP affects the production of nucleotides adenosine monophosphate, adenosine diphosphate (ADP), and adenosine triphosphate (ATP) that have essential roles in most cellular functions.[34] Adenosine is implicated in the regulation of RBF by tubuloglomerular feedback and protects the kidney from ischemia.[35] During periods of ischemia, there is a fivefold increase in extracellular adenosine. In animal models, receptors for adenosine have been effective in preventing or treating acute kidney injury (AKI) from ischemia.[35]

Nitric Oxide

Endogenous NO is a potent vasodilator of vascular smooth muscle. It is produced in many nephron segments including the cortical and medullary thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle (mTAL).[36] During oxidative stress, reactive oxygen species (ROS), including superoxide (O_2^-), hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), and the hydroxyl radical (OH), are produced. Under normal conditions, NO minimizes the influence of these ROS. NO acts at multiple points in the citric acid cycle and increases the efficiency of oxygen utilization within the kidney.[36] NO inhibits apical Na^+/H^+ cotransport and basolateral Na^+/K^+-ATPase activity in the proximal tubule, inhibits sodium reabsorption in the mTAL by blocking the $Na^+/K^+/2Cl^-$ cotransporter, and has a direct effect on apical sodium channels of the cortical collecting ducts to inhibit sodium transport.[36,37] NO produced in the epithelial cells of mTAL buffers the vasoconstriction in the medullary circulation in response to sympathetic stimulation and angiotensin II.[38] As for antagonism of O_2^- tubular activity, endogenous NO counteracts the vasoconstrictor effects of O_2^-.

Renal Tubular System Physiology

The renal tubular system compensates for the large glomerular filtration by resorption so that only 1.5 L/day of fluid is excreted as urine. The tubules also conserve and regulate molecules within appropriate physiologic ranges that are freely filtered such as ions, glucose, and amino acids (Table 17.3). Under most conditions, the kidneys excrete more than 95% of the ingested Na^+ at rates that match dietary Na^+ intake.[39] Approximately 65% of filtered sodium, chloride, and water is reabsorbed by the PCTs (Fig. 17.15). In the first segment of the PCT, sodium moves across the apical lumen by cotransport with amino acids, bicarbonate, and glucose and counter-transport mechanisms (Fig. 17.16). This reabsorption increases the concentration of chloride ions to 140 mEq/L from the initial filtrate concentration of 105 mEq/L and favors its diffusion through the intercellular junctions into the interstitial space. Organic acids and bases including waste products of metabolism, such as bile salts and urea, and multiple exogenous molecules are cleared by the PCT. This clearance has additional clinical importance since doses of drugs that are removed by the kidney, such as β-lactam antibiotics, will require dose

TABLE 17.3 Filtration, Reabsorption, and Excretion Rates of Different Substances by the Kidneys

	Amount Filtered	Amount Reabsorbed	Amount Excreted	Percent of Filtered Load Reabsorbed
Glucose (g/day)	180	180	0	100
Bicarbonate (mEq/day)	4,320	4,318	2	>99.9
Sodium (mEq/day)	25,560	25,410	150	99.4
Chloride (mEq/day)	19,440	19,260	180	99.1
Potassium (mEq/day)	756	664	92	87.8
Urea (g/day)	46.8	23.4	23.4	50
Creatinine (g/day)	1.8	0	1.8	0

From Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.

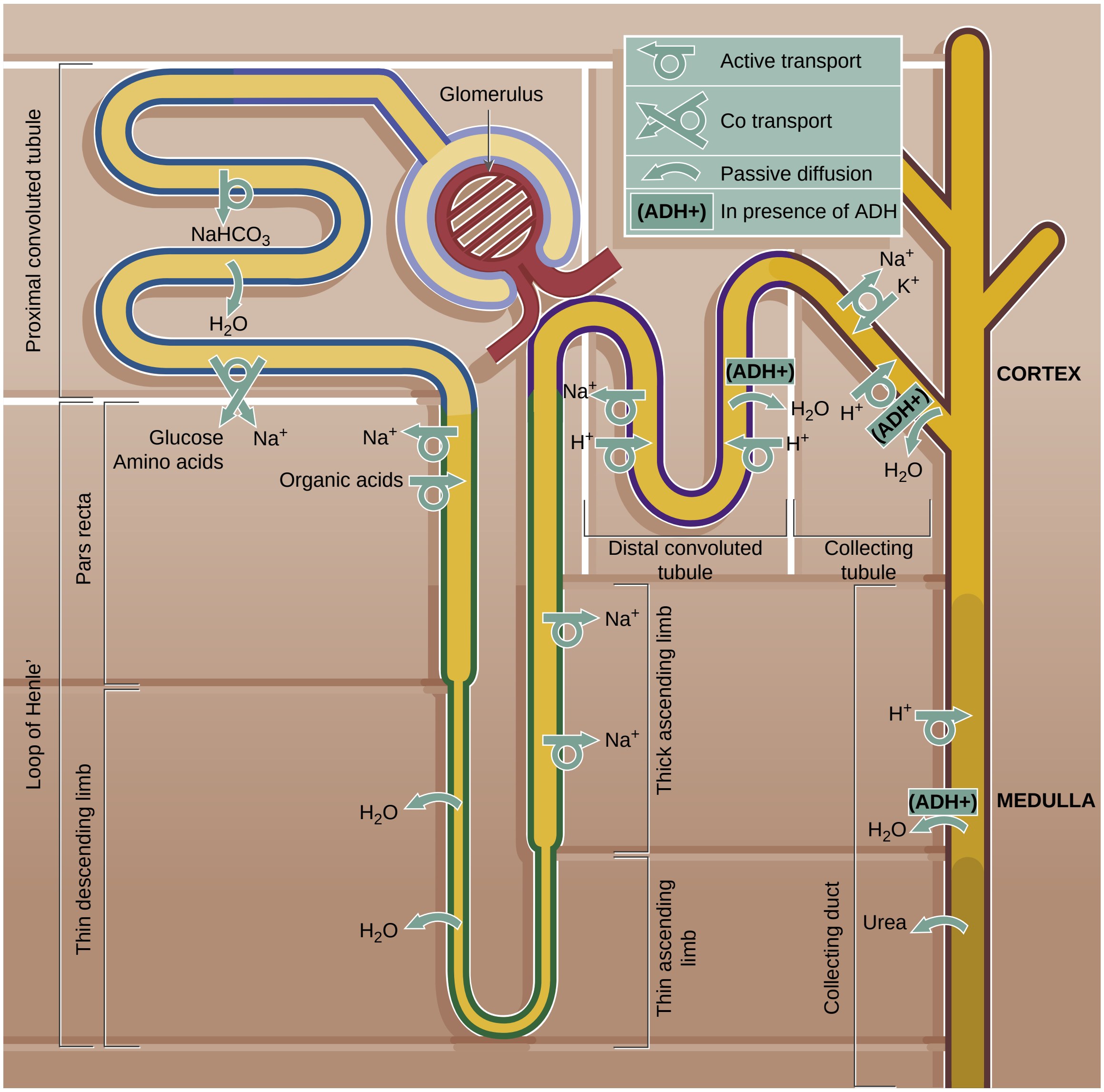

Active transport
Co transport
Passive diffusion
(ADH+) In presence of ADH
Glomerulus
Proximal convoluted tubule
$NaHCO_3$
H_2O
Glucose
Amino acids
Na^+
Na^+
Organic acids
Pars recta
Loop of Henle'
Thin descending limb
H_2O
H_2O
Na^+
H^+
(ADH+)
H_2O
H^+
H^+
Na^+
K^+
(ADH+)
H_2O
CORTEX
Distal convoluted tubule
Collecting tubule
Na^+
Na^+
Thick ascending limb
H^+
(ADH+)
H_2O
MEDULLA
Urea
Thin ascending limb
Collecting duct

Fig. 17.15 Summary of major activities of different parts of the renal tubule. The ability of the tubule to produce concentrated urine is dependent on the high osmolality of the renal medulla created by the counter-current multiplier mechanism. This is dependent upon the active transport of NaCl in the water-impermeable thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle NaCl, the action of arginine vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone, *ADH*) on the collecting tubule and duct, the high concentration of urea created by passive diffusion, and the reabsorption of water reabsorbed into the hyperosmolar medulla by the vasa recta. (Redrawn from Young B, Woodford P, O'Dowd G. Urinary system. *Wheaton's Functional Histology. A Text and Colour Atlas*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone; 2014.)

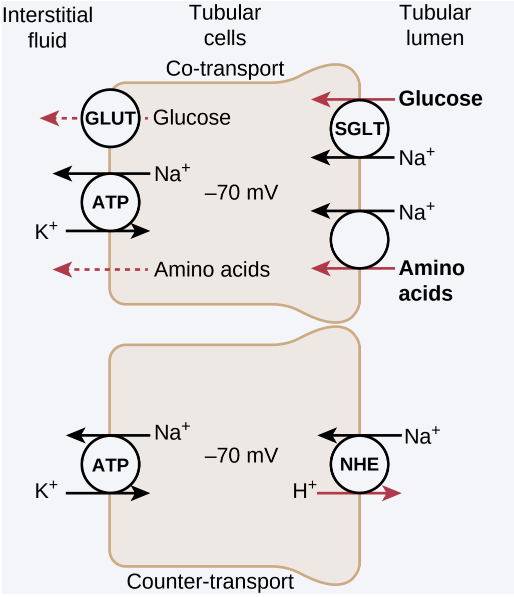


Fig. 17.16 Mechanism of secondary active transport. The upper cell shows the cotransport of glucose and amino acids along with Na^+ through the apical side of the tubular epithelial cells followed by facilitated diffusion through the basolateral membranes. The lower cell shows the counter-transport of hydrogen ions from the interior of the cell across the apical membrane and into the tubular lumen. The movement of sodium ions into the cell is down an electrochemical gradient established by the sodium-potassium pump at the basolateral membrane and provides the energy for transport of the hydrogen ions from the inside of the cell into the tubular lumen. *ATP*, Adenosine triphosphate; *GLUT*, glucose transporter; *NHE*, sodium hydrogen exchanger; *SGLT*, sodium-glucose co-transporter. (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

adjustments to achieve therapeutic levels or to prevent toxicity in other organs. Fig. 17.17 outlines changes in the concentrations of different substances in the tubular system relative to the concentration in plasma and the glomerular filtrate.

The Loop of Henle

The loop of Henle is comprised of a thin descending limb, thin ascending limb, a medullary thick ascending limb (mTAL) as well as a cortical portion that leads to the distal convoluted tubule. The macula densa (see Fig. 17.1) is an area of closely packed cells lining the wall of the distal tubule at the point where it meets the thick ascending limb.The major function of the loop of Henle is the maintenance of an osmotic gradient in the interstitium by a countercurrent system to allow the resorption of 40% of the filtered sodium and 25% of filtered water (see later).[39] Differential permeability to water, transport of ions, and urea carriers provide the interstitial environment to concentrate urine (see Fig. 17.15). The tubules of the descending loop of Henle are freely permeable to water and allow for the reabsorption of about 20% of the filtered water. Both the medullary and cortical thick limbs are impermeable to water and function to concentrate urine. Urea, which comprises 90% of waste nitrogen, is passively absorbed in the tubules by osmosis and is facilitated by specific transporters. An increased concentration of urea in the tubular lumen favors its movement into the interstitium to create an extremely high interstitial osmolality at the tip that approaches 1200 mOsm/kg. Since the tubules are less permeable to urea than water, most of the urea is excreted into the urine.

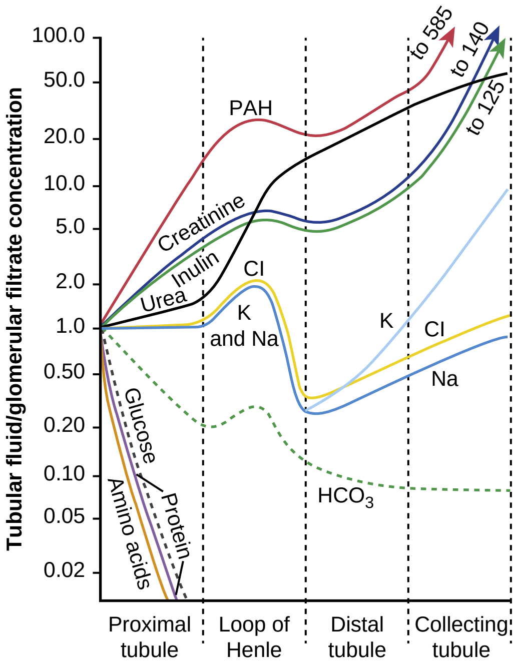


Fig. 17.17 Changes in the average concentrations of different substances at different points in the tubular system relative to the concentration of that substance in the plasma and in the glomerular filtrate. A value of 1.0 indicates that the concentration in the tubular fluid is the same as in the plasma, values below 1.0 indicate that the substance is reabsorbed more avidly than water, while values greater than 1.0 indicate that the substance is reabsorbed to a lesser extent than water or is secreted into the tubules. (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

As with the cells of the PCT, the mTAL cells have high metabolic activity. A $Na^+/K^+/2Cl^-$ cotransporter in this segment absorbs Na^+, Cl^-, and K^+ from the tubular lumen. Inhibition of this cotransporter is the mechanism of cationic (positively charged) loop diuretics such as furosemide. The positive charge of the tubular lumen compared to the interstitium allows the paracellular reabsorption of magnesium and calcium in addition to sodium and potassium. ATPase-dependent Na^+/K^+ pumps in the basilar membrane will reabsorb 25% of the filtered sodium and potassium.

DISTAL TUBULES AND MACULA DENSA

The first part of the distal tubule forms the macula densa of the juxtaglomerular apparatus. Approximately 5% of sodium is reabsorbed in the first part of the distal tubule by a sodium chloride cotransporter that moves ions from the tubular lumen into the cell and a Na^+/K^+ ATPase that moves Na^+ out of the cell.[39,40] Thiazide diuretics inhibit this cotransporter (see Fig. 17.16). The movement of chloride is passive. The permeability to water of the distal tubules, as well as the collecting tubules described later, is regulated by AVP (Fig. 17.18). With increased AVP, the tubules become more permeable and water is absorbed.

COLLECTING TUBULES

The collecting tubules are extensions of the distal tubules and have the same function of Na^+ resorption. The two cell types lining the collecting tubules are the principal

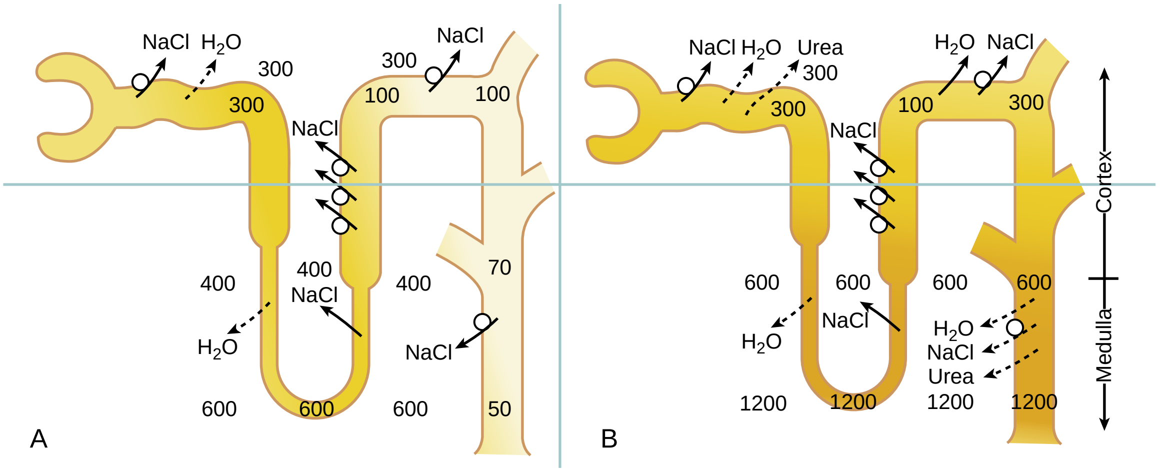


Fig. 17.18 Effect of arginine vasopressin on the formation of urine. (A) With low levels of arginine vasopressin (AVP), fluid in the ascending limb of the loop of Henle is dilute and becomes further diluted in the distal and collecting tubules by continued reabsorption of solutes (indicated as millimoles per liter) while water is not resorbed. (B) Urine is concentrated when AVP is high. Fluid leaving the loop of Henle becomes more concentrated as water is absorbed from the distal and collecting tubules. With high AVP levels, the osmolality of the urine (indicated as milliosmoles) is the same as in the renal medullary interstitial fluid. (Modified from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

cells and two types of intercalated cells. Principal cells use Na^+/K^+ ATPase to resorb Na^+ and K^+. These cells are the sites of action for the potassium-sparing diuretics such as spironolactone, a competitor of aldosterone. An additional mechanism is Na^+ channel blockade by diuretics such as amiloride.

Type A intercalated cells use H^+-ATPase and H^+/K^+-ATPase transporters to secrete hydrogen ions formed by carbonic anhydrase against a large concentration gradient. Bicarbonate ions are absorbed from the basolateral membrane. In contrast, the Type B intercalated cells transport hydrogen out of the cell on the basolateral side while bicarbonate is excreted into the tubular lumen. These cells are critical to the maintenance of acid-base balance, sodium reabsorption, and intravascular volume.[41]

COLLECTING DUCTS

The collecting ducts form as distal anastomoses of collecting tubules in the medulla and determine the final composition of urine. The principal cell of the collecting duct is a highly regulated epithelial cell. AVP controls water resorption. Urea is reabsorbed via transporters into the medullary interstitium, thereby raising the osmolality to assist in the concentration of urine. Hydrogen can also be secreted against a high concentration gradient to regulate acidosis.

RENAL AUTOREGULATION

The formation of urine is tightly controlled by complex autoregulation that maintains consistency of the RBF, GFR, and the resorption rate in tubules when there are changes in tubular flow. This autoregulation protects the kidney from injury secondary to elevated blood pressure by two mechanisms: autoregulation of RBF and tubuloglomerular feedback.[42]

Autoregulation of Renal Blood Flow

The smooth muscles of the afferent arterioles, as in other vascular beds, have the intrinsic ability to contract, called a myogenic response, to increases in blood pressure. The response can compensate for changes in pressure within 3 to 10 seconds over a mean arterial blood pressure range of 70 to 130 mm Hg.[43]

The Myogenic Mechanism of the Renal Blood Flow Autoregulation

Glomerulotubular balance compensates for increased GFR when blood pressure is elevated by preventing fluid loss through an augmented rate of tubular absorption in the PTC and loop of Henle. This process is more adaptable to slow changes in arterial pressure (>20 seconds) and more critical in maintaining GFR and RBF during sustained reductions in blood pressure (Fig. 17.19).[43] An increase in GFR provides enhanced NaCl delivery to the distal tubules. The increased chloride concentration is sensed by the macula densa and triggers the renin-angiotensin cascade to decrease the GFR through angiotensin II constriction of the afferent arteriole. This trigger is sent by the macula densa through the complex of mesangial cells to the smooth muscle of the vasculature by paracrine signaling. There are no intercellular connections between the macula densa, other components of the juxtaglomerular apparatus, and the blood vessels.[44] The increases in resorption proportionate to the GFR prevent distention of the distal tubular segments.

TUBULOGLOMERULAR FEEDBACK

The dynamic range of tubuloglomerular feedback is a NaCl concentration between 15 and 60 mmol/L with maximal responses at greater than 60 mmol/L.[44] In the tubules, more than 99% of water and most of the solutes are absorbed, pass through the interstitium, and enter the capillaries at a rate of 124 mL/min. As demonstrable for most capillary beds, the transit of fluids is dependent upon balance of hydrostatic and colloid forces (see Fig. 17.8). Intravascular pressure (13 mm Hg) and colloid osmotic pressure of the interstitium (15 mm Hg) oppose resorption, whereas the hydrostatic pressure in the interstitium (6 mm Hg), intravascular colloid osmotic pressure (32 mm Hg), and large surface area of the capillaries favor resorption.

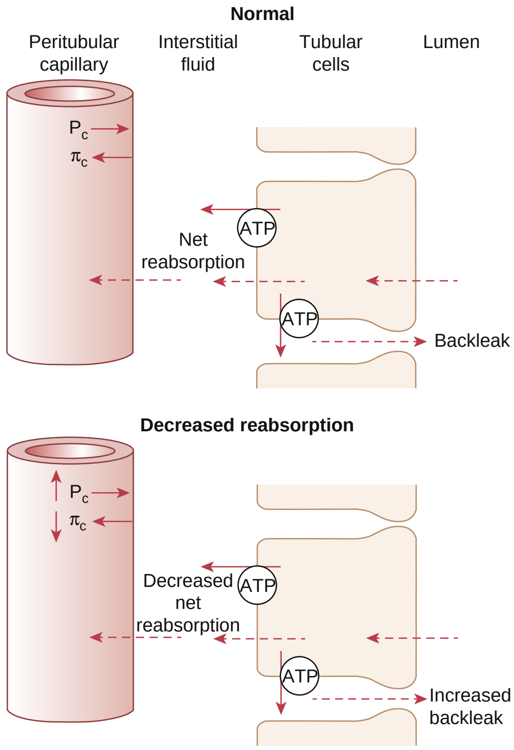


Fig. 17.19 Proximal and peritubular capillary reabsorption under normal conditions *(top)* and during decreased peritubular capillary reabsorption caused by increased hydrostatic pressure *(P_c)* or decreased colloid osmotic pressure *(π_c)*. As peritubular capillary reabsorption decreases, the net reabsorption of solutes and water is lowered by the increase in solutes and water that leak back into the tubular lumen through the tight junctions of the tubular epithelial cells. *ATP*, Adenosine triphosphate. (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

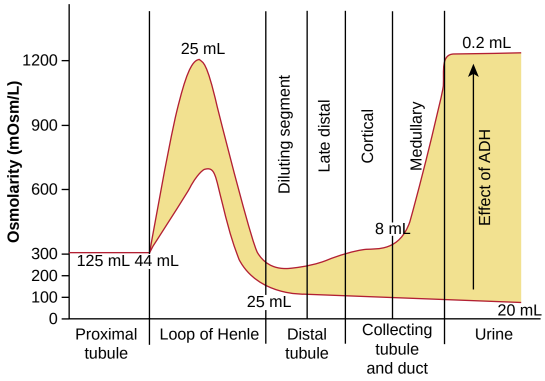


Fig. 17.20 Changes in osmolality of the tubular fluid as it passes through the different tubular segments (milliliters per minute) in the presence of high and low levels of arginine vasopressin (indicated here as the alternative term antidiuretic hormone *[ADH]*). (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

MAINTENANCE OF PLASMA OSMOLALITY

Definition

Prior to any description of this process, the definitions of osmolarity and osmolality should be reviewed. Osmolality is a measure of the osmoles (Osm) of solute per kilogram of solvent (Osm/kg) while osmolarity is defined as the number of osmoles of solute per liter of solution (Osm/L). Osmolarity is affected by changes in water content, temperature, and pressure. Osmolarity is slightly less than osmolality because the total solvent weight excludes any solutes. Clinically, the values for osmolarity and osmolality are very similar, and the terms are usually used interchangeably. The bedside calculation from laboratory data (2[Na^+ mmol/L] + 2[K^+ mmol/L] + BUN mg/dL/2.8 + glucose mg/dL/18) is in units of osmolarity. The clinical laboratory measurements determined with osmometers are reported as osmolality.

Regulation of Osmolality

Plasma osmolality is closely regulated between 275 and 300 mOsm/L. Acute alterations in osmolality, either hypoosmolality or hyperosmolality, can result in serious neurologic symptoms and death as the result of water movement in the brain. Normal patients can dilute and concentrate urine within the range of 40 to 1400 mOsm/L.[45] Maintenance of plasma osmolality is linked to the regulation of sodium concentration and water balance by the tubular system and the collecting ducts in concert with the vasa recta blood supply of the tubules through differences in tubular permeability to water and the control of sodium transport (Fig. 17.20). It is dependent on the interaction of at least three processes: the generation of a hypertonic medullary interstitium by the countercurrent mechanism and urea recycling, the concentration and then dilution of tubular fluid in the loop of Henle, and the action of AVP to increase water permeability in the last part of the distal tubule and collecting ducts.

ROLE OF PROXIMAL TUBULES AND LOOP OF HENLE

Osmosis, the spontaneous net movement of solvent molecules through a selectively permeable membrane into a region of higher solute concentration to equalize the solute concentrations on the two sides, takes place in the proximal tubule. Proximal tubule solutes and water are equally reabsorbed so that the fluid in the tubules is isosmotic with plasma. In contrast, the organization of the loop of Henle is designed to maintain hyperosmolality of the medullary interstitium that can approach 1200 mOsm/L. The major process for this is the active transport of Na^+ and co-transport of K^+ and Cl^- from the lumen of the thick limb of the loop of Henle that is impermeable to water to the interstitium. This allows for a concentration gradient of 200 mOsm/L.

Medullary Interstitium

The medullary interstitium becomes hypertonic by the countercurrent multiplier effect of the loop of Henle that is best understood diagrammatically (Fig. 17.21). The primary mechanism is by the combination of NaCl reabsorption and water impermeability in the ascending limb. The descending limb is freely permeable to water, which diffuses into the interstitium along the osmotic gradient, and the tubular fluid becomes progressively hyperosmotic at the bend of the loop.

Water entering the distal convoluted tubule after leaving the loop of Henle is dilute (about 100 mOsm/L).

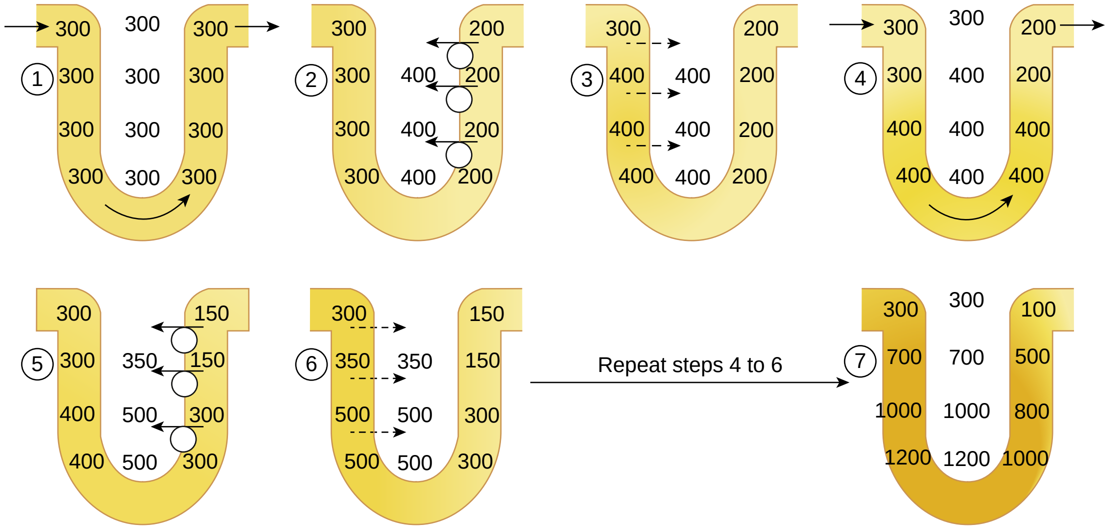

①
300 300 300
300 300 300
300 300 300
300 300 300
②
300 200
300 400 200
300 400 200
300 400 200
③
300 200
400 400 200
400 400 200
400 400 200
④
300 300 200
300 400 200
400 400 400
400 400 400
⑤
300 150
300 350 150
400 500 300
400 500 300
⑥
300 150
350 350 150
500 500 300
500 500 300
Repeat steps 4 to 6
⑦
300 300 100
700 700 500
1000 1000 800
1200 1200 1000

Fig. 17.21 Countercurrent multiplier system in the loop of Henle for producing a hyperosmotic (millimoles per liter) renal medulla. (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

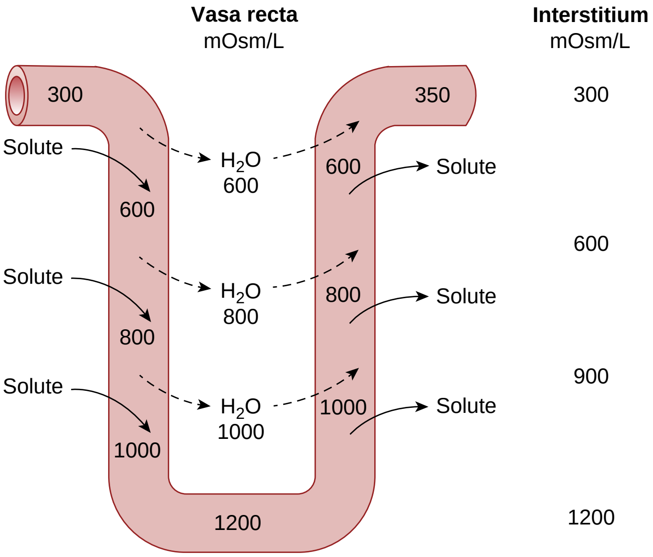

Vasa recta
mOsm/L
Interstitium
mOsm/L
300
350
300
Solute
H_2O
600
600
Solute
600
600
Solute
H_2O
800
800
Solute
800
900
Solute
H_2O
1000
1000
Solute
1000
1200
1200

Fig. 17.22 Countercurrent exchange in the vasa recta. Plasma flowing down the descending limb of the loop of the vasa recta becomes more hyperosmotic (in millimoles per liter) as water diffuses out of the blood while solutes from the interstitial fluid flow into the blood. In the ascending limb, solutes diffuse back to the interstitial fluid and water diffuses back into the vasa recta. (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

This dilution is increased because of the active transport of NaCl and the impermeability of the epithelium. In the collecting tubule, resorption of water is dependent upon the action of AVP (ADH), since the epithelium is normally impermeable to water. With the action of AVP, large amounts of water are reabsorbed into the interstitium of the cortex and removed by the peritubular capillaries (see Fig. 17.18).

Vasa Recta

The vasa recta or straight arterioles of kidney are a series of straight capillaries that lie parallel to the loops of Henle of the juxtamedullary nephrons (Fig. 17.22). Only 5% of the RBF is through the vasa recta, creating a sluggish flow. As the capillaries descend into the medulla, the blood becomes more concentrated by solute entry from the interstitium. This high concentration in the ascending vasa recta in turn facilitates the entry of water from the ascending tubules. The combined interactions of tubular permeability and the vasa recta create the standing osmotic gradients in the cortex (300 mOsm/L), juxtamedullary zone (600 mOsm/L), and deep medulla (1200 mOsm/L).

The Role of Urea

A healthy person excretes 20% to 50% of the filtered load of urea. The concentration of urea entering the tubular system is related to the prerenal plasma concentration and the GFR. Urea contributes 40% to 50% of the osmolality of the medullary interstitium. The PCT are freely permeable whereas the loop of Henle, distal tubules, and the collecting ducts have little permeability to urea (Fig. 17.23). As water absorption increases with AVP action, the concentration of urea in the tubules progressively increases. With this high concentration, urea diffuses into the interstitial fluid facilitated by specific urea transporters that are activated by AVP. The simultaneous movement of urea and water out of the inner medullary collecting ducts maintains a high concentration of urea in the tubular fluid. As the concentration of urea increases in the medullary interstitium, it diffuses through the thin limb of the loop of Henle and transits through the ascending system again before it is excreted. This recirculation enhances the increased osmotic pressure in the medulla.

RENAL CONTROL OF INTRAVASCULAR VOLUME

Hypovolemia

Patients with hypovolemia, for example, from hemorrhage, gastrointestinal loss, or preoperative fasting, are commonly encountered in the perioperative period. Contraction of the extracellular volume by hypovolemia increases sympathetic outflow, activates the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone response, and releases AVP. Initially, the GFR and filtered load of sodium decrease. Sodium reabsorption in the proximal tubule is increased from about 66% to 80%

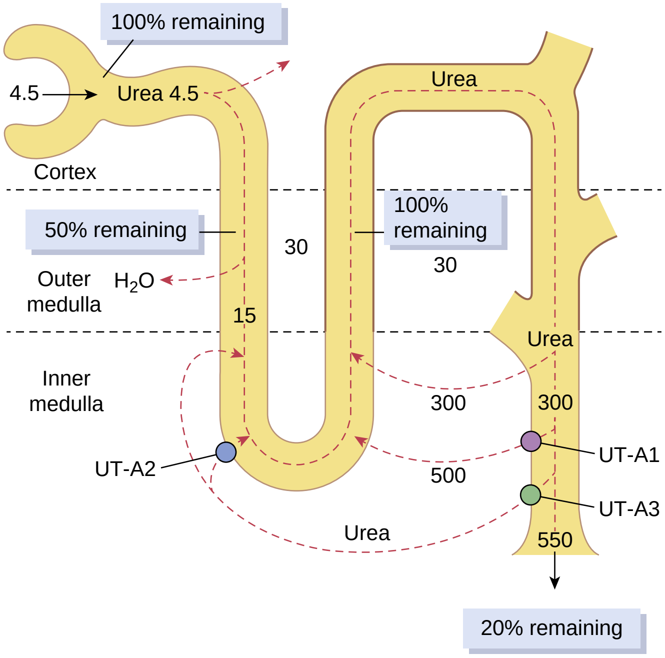


Fig. 17.23 Recirculation of urea absorbed from the medullary collecting duct into the interstitial fluid. Urea diffuses into the thin loop of Henle assisted by urea transporter UT-A2 through to the distal tubules and finally passes back to the collecting duct aided by urea transporters (*UT-A1* and *UT-A3*). This recirculation helps to trap urea in the renal medulla contributing to its hyperosmolality (millimoles per liter). Heavy lines indicate segments that are not very permeable to urea. (Redrawn from Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.)

by sympathetic activity and angiotensin II, as well as by the decline in peritubular capillary pressure induced by renal vasoconstriction. Sodium delivery to the thick ascending loop of Henle, distal tubule, and collecting duct is decreased, but aldosterone promotes reabsorption of sodium at these sites. Under the influence of AVP, water is also avidly reabsorbed in the collecting duct so that the urine becomes highly concentrated (osmolality 600 mOsm/kg) but with virtually no sodium (10 mEq/L).

Hypervolemia

Expansion of the extracellular volume by hypervolemia is countered by an increase in the GFR and filtered sodium load due to a combination of reflex decreases in sympathetic and angiotensin II activity and the release of ANP. Together with the increase in peritubular capillary hydrostatic pressure, these responses cause sodium reabsorption in the proximal tubule to decrease from 67% to 50%. The decline in plasma aldosterone decreases sodium absorption from the thick ascending loop of Henle to the collecting duct. The presence of ANP and absence of AVP impairs water absorption at the collecting duct so that a dilute urine (osmolality 300 mOsm/kg) with abundant sodium (80 mEq/L) is produced.

CLINICAL TESTS FOR RENAL FUNCTION[46,47]

Urine Output

The measurement of urine output is simple and has been the traditional intraoperative and postoperative clinical evaluation of renal function in the absence of laboratory data. By consensus, oliguria is defined as a urine flow rate less than 0.5 mL/kg/h; it is often interpreted as a sign of renal dysfunction[48] and was first described by Galen and Ephesus between 100 and 200 AD. Urine output was listed as one of the most widely used indicators for volume expansion with intravenous fluids by 77% to 83% of anesthesiologists surveyed and based on a survey of United States and European anesthesiologists.[49] However, studies have shown that low urine output was not necessarily associated with renal failure.[50] Reduced intraoperative urinary output (<1 mL/kg/h) for patients undergoing anesthesia for thoracic resections was not associated with postoperative renal dysfunction regardless of the amount of fluid administered.[51] Although traditionally oliguria is taken as a sign of hypovolemia and subsequent reduction in kidney perfusion, perioperative oliguria is not always abnormal, especially when no other signs of hypoperfusion are present. Tolerance of modest oliguria is necessary when considering the relatively recent push for fluid limitations with enhanced recovery after surgery protocols.[52] Targeting urine output does not affect 30-day mortality, and oliguria is not a modifiable risk factor for mortality.[53] Oliguria has been correlated with AKI and may be a better threshold for the guidance of fluid administration.[54]

In the perioperative period, transient oliguria is almost inevitable, whether induced by hypotension, as an appropriate prerenal response to intravascular hypovolemia, or as a manifestation of the physiologic response to surgical stress.[55] It is a relative condition that depends on *expected* urine flow, and it may bear little, if any, relationship to GFR. When arterial blood pressure and intravascular volume are restored to normal levels, normal urinary flow should resume. Complete, often abrupt, cessation of urine flow (anuria) suggests postrenal obstruction. For patients with indwelling urinary catheters, obstruction of the catheter by malposition, blood, or kinking is the first diagnosis that must be ruled out and corrected immediately if confirmed. When the catheter is patent, obstruction from the surgical field must be considered dependent upon the procedure.

Creatinine

Creatine phosphate in muscle transfers high-energy phosphate to ADP, creating ATP necessary for contraction, and creatine. Creatinine results from the metabolism of creatine in the liver. Serum creatinine is a reasonable approximation of GFR since it is freely filtered by the glomerulus, is soluble, distributes through the total body water, and is not reabsorbed by the tubules. Creatinine varies with muscle mass, rate of catabolism, protein intake, and physical activity. Low GFR tends to overestimate renal function since little creatinine is secreted. The relationship between serum creatinine and GFR is inverse and exponential; that is, a doubling of serum creatinine implies a halving of GFR. The normal serum creatinine range is 0.5 to 1.2 mg/dL. Muscle mass must be taken into consideration since a normal creatinine in a malnourished, cachectic patient may reflect reduced GFR.

Blood Urea Nitrogen

Urea is formed in the liver by the deamination of amino acids and conversion to ammonia by the arginine cycle. It is not an indicator of GFR since it is rapidly reabsorbed by the tubules. Absorption of blood from the gastrointestinal tract, steroids, and sepsis may increase the blood urea nitrogen (BUN), whereas malnutrition or liver disease might result in its decrease. The normal ratio of BUN to serum creatinine ratio is between 10 and 15 to 1. The BUN to creatinine ratio may be useful in the diagnosis of renal failure from prerenal causes versus acute tubular necrosis (see Chapter 42).

RENAL CLEARANCE TECHNIQUES

Clearance is the pharmacokinetic measurement of the volume of plasma that is removed of a specific substance over a period of time. Classic renal physiology experiments used the plant polysaccharide that is freely filtered by the glomerulus and not secreted or reabsorbed by the tubules. ^{131}I-iothalamate has the same renal properties as inulin and is used in radiographic studies to assess clearance.[56]

In routine clinical practice, GFR [urine creatinine (mg/dL) × volume of urine (mL)/plasma creatinine (mg/dL)] has been employed. The traditional collection period is 24 hours but since the collection of urine can sometimes be impractical, shorter intervals can be used for estimations. A volume of urine is carefully collected over a defined time period and the creatinine concentration is measured. A comparison is then made with a blood sample that is taken during the midpoint of urine flow to determine the creatinine. The GFR may decrease significantly before serum creatinine increases above normal and can be inaccurate due to its variable tubular secretion, extrarenal elimination, and variable rates of generation. For these reasons, estimated GFR (eGFR) that is based on age, sex, and race is often calculated using either the Modification of Diet in Renal Disease (MDRD) or the Chronic Kidney Disease Epidemiology Collaboration (CKD-EPI) equation.[57]

Both methods normalize for sex, age, and race and are based on a stable steady-state production of creatinine and are not accurate with AKI when creatinine clearance is in flux. The MDRD formula is normalized to an average adult 1.73 m^2 body surface area. The CKD-EPI equation is more accurate for values less than 60 mL/min/1.73 m^2. Clinical laboratories will state which method is used when eGFR is reported. Extremes of muscle mass, pregnancy, dietary intake, and comorbidities are factors that will lead to errors in eGFR. Creatinine clearance is more accurate when drugs are dosed based on renal function.[58]

Measurement of Tubular Function

When oliguria is present, tests of renal tubular function may be useful to distinguish dehydration (prerenal azotemia) from acute tubular necrosis. In dehydration, the tubules function normally to retain Na^+ and water to maintain the blood volume. The osmolality of plasma is 280 to 300 mOs/kg but with dehydration, the urine osmolality can increase to greater than 450 mOs/kg. Acute tubular necrosis is a pathologic state (see Chapter 42) in which the concentrating ability of the tubules is defective. Sodium and water may be lost in the urine if nonoliguric.

The most common method of assessing for tubular concentration ability is the fractional excretion of sodium (FE_{Na}), which is a measure of sodium clearance as a percentage of creatine clearance. FE_{Na} is calculated by the following from simultaneous samples of blood and urine collection:

$$FE_{Na} = (\text{urine Na/plasma Na}) / (\text{urine creatinine/plasma creatinine}) \times 100$$

Effect of Anesthetics on Renal Function

All general anesthetics tend to decrease GFR and intraoperative urine flow as a consequence of decreased cardiac output and arterial blood pressure.[59] Some drugs also decrease RBF, but filtration fraction is usually increased, which implies that angiotensin-induced efferent arteriolar constriction limits the decrease in GFR that resolves after emergence from anesthesia. Any anesthetic technique that induces hypotension will result in decreased urine flow because of altered peritubular capillary hydrostatic gradients, even if renal autoregulation is preserved. Injury to kidneys seldom occurs unless there is preexisting kidney disease, nephrotoxic injury, hypovolemia, or a combination thereof, which will exacerbate renal dysfunction.[60] Volatile anesthetics induce mild to moderate reductions in RBF and GFR, primarily because of their myocardial depression and vasodilatory effects[61] that can be attenuated by prior intravenous hydration. Opioid-based anesthetics are considerably more effective than volatile anesthetics in suppressing the release of catecholamines, angiotensin II, aldosterone, and AVP. Ketamine increases RBF but decreases urine flow rate, possibly through sympathetic activation; it preserves RBF during hemorrhagic hypovolemia.[62]

The potential for AKI after the breakdown of volatile anesthetics to free fluoride ions causing tubular lesions is now of only historical interest.[63] The "older" volatile drug isoflurane produces minimal peak fluoride levels (<4 μm/L).[64] Initial studies of sevoflurane in rats reported nephrotoxicity through the formation of Compound A, a vinyl ether formed by degradation of sevoflurane at low flow through carbon dioxide absorbents.[65] Clinically significant renal injury has not been shown with desflurane, sevoflurane, or propofol in patients even with moderate preexisting renal dysfunction.[66]

There is growing evidence to support anesthetics as agents that ameliorate ischemia-reperfusion injury in the kidney and other organs.[67] The volatile anesthetics desflurane, sevoflurane, isoflurane, and halothane attenuated the increase in serum creatinine compared with pentobarbital or ketamine in animal models.[68] The mechanism is related to an induction of cytoprotective factors and suppression of proinflammatory cytokine and chemokine activation in response to ischemia-reperfusion. There is experimental evidence that propofol can prevent renal ischemia-reperfusion injury through inhibition of oxidative stress pathways.[69]

EFFECTS OF MECHANICAL VENTILATION ON RENAL FUNCTION

Mechanical ventilation and positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) may cause decreases in RBF, GFR, sodium excretion, and urine flow rate through changes in hemodynamics.[70] The increased airway and intrapleural pressures lead to decreased venous return, cardiac filling pressures, and cardiac output. Positive pressure ventilation increases inferior vena caval pressure and through increased renal venous pressure, may increase peritubular capillary pressure to increase tubular sodium reabsorption. The decrease in cardiac output and systemic arterial pressure results in a carotid and aortic baroreceptor-mediated increase in sympathetic nerve tone to the kidney, with renal vasoconstriction, antidiuresis, and anti-natriuresis. Volume receptors in the atria respond to decreased filling by decreased ANP secretion, resulting in increased sympathetic tone, renin activation, and AVP activity.

The renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system undoubtedly augments the renal responses to positive pressure ventilation. An increase in PEEP can depress cardiac output, RBF, GFR, and urine volume, and increase renin and aldosterone. Although the extent of depression of renal function depends on the mean airway pressure, there is no difference in creatinine clearance and FE_{Na} between volume-controlled and pressure support ventilation.[71] Permissive hypercapnia as employed during acute respiratory distress syndrome may promote renal vasoconstriction.[70]

Induced Hypotension

During anesthesia with induced hypotension, substantial reduction of GFR and urine flow rate is common. Although earlier studies suggested that hypotensive anesthesia can be well tolerated without permanent impairment of renal function, a more recent retrospective analysis suggests that mean arterial pressures less than 60 mmHg for 11 to 20 min or less than 55 mmHg for more than 10 min are associated with acute kidney injury.[72] Vasodilators used to induce hypotension differ in their effect on RBF. Administration of sodium nitroprusside decreases renal vascular resistance but tends to shunt blood flow away from the kidney. Moreover, its administration is associated with marked renin-angiotensin activation and catecholamine release, which results in rebound hypertension if the infusion is suddenly discontinued. Nitroglycerin decreases RBF less than sodium nitroprusside.[73] The selective DA1-dopaminergic agonist fenoldopam is capable of providing induced hypotension without any significant decrease in RBF.[74] Nicardipine increased creatinine clearance and attenuated the increase in FE_{Na} in patients undergoing spine surgery under deliberate hypotension[75] and improved renal function when given to patients with preexisting renal insufficiency who had robotic-assisted radical prostatectomy.[76]

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. David McIlroy and Robert N. Sladen for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Jelkmann W. *J Physiol*. 2011;589:1251–1258.
2. Hansell P, et al. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2014;40:123–137.
3. Washinzawa K, et al. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 1993;7:1–5.
4. Raats CJ, et al. *Kidney Int*. 2000;57:385–400.
5. Rodewald R, Karnovsky MJ. *J Cell Biol*. 1974;217:423–433.
6. Farquhar MG. *J Clin Invest*. 2006;116:2090–2093.
7. Neal CR. *Front Endocrinol*. 2015:6–9.
8. Schrijvers BF, et al. *Kidney Int*. 2004;65:2003–2017.
9. Inoue K, Ishibe S. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2015;309:F398–F405.
10. Pulamen T, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2002;13:1766–1772.
11. New LA, et al. *Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens*. 2014;23:420–430.
12. Wu C-H, et al. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2018;38:e108–e116.
13. Koeppen BM, Stanton BA. Glomerular filtration and renal blood flow. In: Koeppen BM, Stanton BA, eds. *Renal Physiology*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Mosby Elsevier; 2007:31.
14. Navar LG, et al. *Hypertension*. 2011;57:355–362.
15. Wilson BA, et al. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2014;307:R487–R489.
16. Herichova I, Szantoova K. *Endocr Regul*. 2013;47:39–52.
17. Sparks MA, et al. *Compr Physiol*. 2014;4:1201–1228.
18. Li C, et al. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2011;300:F1255–F1261.
19. Chappell MC. *Compr Physiol*. 2012;2:2733–2752.
20. Hao C-M, Breyer MD. *Ann Rev Physiol*. 2008;70:357–377.
21. Kim G-H. *Electrolyte and Blood Pressure*. 2008;6:35–41.
22. Scicli AG, Carretero OA. *Kidney Int*. 1986;29:120–130.
23. Baram M, et al. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract*. 2013;1:442–445.
24. Kortenoeven ML, et al. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2015;15:F280–299.
25. Bayless PH. Posterior pituitary function in health and disease. *Clin Endocrin Metabolism*. 1983;12:747–770.
26. Edwards RM, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1989;256:F526–F534.
27. Olesen ET, Fenton RA. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2017;312:F744–F747.
28. de Bold AJ. *Can. J. Physiol. Pharmacol*. 2011;89:527–531.
29. Inoue T, et al. *Cardiovasc Res*. 2001;15:470–480.
30. Heras MM, et al. *J Diabetes Metab*. 2012;3:171.
31. Genuth SM. The adrenal glands. In: Berne RM, Levy EM, eds. *Physiology*. 4th ed. St Louis: Mosby; 1998:930–964.
32. Choi MR, et al. *Biomed Res Int*. 2014.
33. Sansoè G, et al. *Dig Dis Sci*. 2002;247:392–400.
34. Eltzschig HK. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:904–915.
35. Bauerle JD, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2011;22:14–20.
36. Evans RG, Fitzgerald SM. *Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens*. 2005;14:9–15.
37. Ortiz PA, Garvin JL. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2002;282:F777–F784.
38. Cowley AW Jr, et al. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2015;308:F179–F197.
39. Palmer LG, Schnermann J. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2015;10:676–687.
40. McCormick JA, Ellison DH. *Compr Physiol*. 2015;5:45–98.
41. Roy A, et al. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2015;10:305–324.
42. Carlström M, et al. *Physiol Rev*. 2015;95:405–511.
43. Burke M, et al. *Curr Vasc Pharmacol*. 2014;12:845–858.
44. Komlosi P, et al. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 2004;181:463–469.
45. Rose BD. Regulation of plasma osmolality. In: Rose BD, ed. *Clinical Physiology of Acid-Base and Electrolyte Disorders*. 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill; 1994:261–273.
46. Winter WE. *The Kidney*. In: *Laposata's Laboratory Medicine Diagnosis of Disease in Clinical Laboratory*. 2nd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2014:385–396.
47. Prowle JR, Forni LG. Functional biomarkers. In: Ronco C, Bellomo R, Kellum JA, Ricci Z, eds. *Critical Care Nephrology*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, Inc; 2019:141–145.
48. Kunst G, Ostermann M. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2017;119:1075–1077.
49. Cannesson M, et al. *Critical Care*. 2011;15:R197.
50. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:892–902.
51. Matot I, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2013;146:461–466.
52. Makaryus R, et al. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2018;120:376–383.
53. van der Zee EN, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2017;17:22.
54. Matot I, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2012;147:228–234.
55. Sladen RN. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2000;18:739–752. viii.
56. Seegmiller JC, et al. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2018;25:84–92.
57. http://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/communication-programs/nkdep/laboratory-evaluation/glomerular-filtration-rate/estimating.
58. Hermsen ED, et al. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2009;29:649–655.
59. Priano LL. Effects of anesthetic agents on renal function. In: Barash PG, ed. *Refresher Courses in Anesthesiology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott; 1985:143–156.
60. Fukazawa K, Lee T. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2014;25:884–892.

61. Gelman S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:557–565.
62. Priano LL. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:853–862.
63. Mazze RI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:247.
64. Mazze RI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40:536–542.
65. Higuchi H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:434–439.
66. Ebert TJ, Arain SR. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1401–1406.
67. Motayagheni N, et al. *Am J Nephrol*. 2017;46:380–389.
68. Lee HT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:1313–1324.
69. Li Y, et al. *Cell Physiol Biochem*. 2015;37:14–26.
70. Kuiper JW, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:1408–1415.
71. Botha J, et al. *Crit Care Resusc*. 2005;7:303–309.
72. Thompson GE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;48:91–96.
73. Colley PS, Silvarjan M. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:503–510.
74. Aronson S, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1991;5:29–32.
75. Park C, et al. *Clin Spine Surg*. 2017;30:E954–E958.
76. Huh H, et al. *J Int Med Res*. 2014;42:427–435.

References

1. Jelkmann W. Regulation of erythropoietin production. *J Physiol*. 2011;589:1251–1258.
2. Hansell P, Welch WJ, Blantz RC, Fredrik Palm. Determinants of kidney oxygen consumption and their relationship to tissue oxygen tension in diabetes and hypertension. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2014;40:123–137.
3. Washinzawa K, Kasai S, Mori T, Komiyama A, Shigematsu H. Ultrastructural alteration of glomerular anionic sites in nephrotic patients. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 1993;7:1–5.
4. Raats CJ, Van Den Born J, Berden JH. Glomerular heparan sulfate alterations: mechanisms and relevance for proteinuria. *Kidney Int*. 2000;57:385–400.
5. Rodewald R, Karnovsky MJ. Porous substructure of the glomerular slit diaphragm in the rat and mouse. *J Cell Biol*. 1974;217:423–433.
6. Farquhar MG. The glomerular basement membrane: not gone, just forgotten. *J Clin Invest*. 2006;116:2090–2093.
7. Neal CR. Podocytes…what's under yours? (Podocytes and foot processes and how they change in nephropathy). *Front Endocrinol*. 2015:6–9.
8. Schrijvers BF, Flyvbjerg A, De Vriese AS. The role of vascular endothelia growth factor (VEGF) in renal pathophysiology. *Kidney Int*. 2004;65:2003–2017.
9. Inoue K, Ishibe S. Podocyte endocytosis in the regulation of the glomerular filtration barrier. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2015;309:F398–F405.
10. Pulamen T, Lehtonen S, Ora A, et al. Interaction of endogenous nephrine and CD2-associated protein in mouse epithelia M-1 cell line. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2002;13:1766–1772.
11. New LA, Martin CE, Jones N. Advances in slit diaphragm signaling. *Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens*. 2014;23:420–430.
12. Wu C-H, Mohammadmoradi S, Chen JZ, Sawada H, Daugherty A, Lu HS. Renin-angiotensin system and cardiovascular functions. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2018;38:e108–e116.
13. Koeppen BM, Stanton BA. Glomerular filtration and renal blood flow. In: Koeppen BM, Stanton BA, eds. *Renal Physiology*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Mosby Elsevier; 2007:31.
14. Navar LG, Kobori H, Prieto MC, Gonzalez-Villalobos RA. Intratubular renin-angiotensin system in hypertension. *Hypertension*. 2011;57:355–362.
15. Wilson BA, Marshall AC, Alzayadneh EM, Chappell MC. The ins and outs of angiotensin processing within the kidney. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2014;307:R487–R489.
16. Herichova I, Szantoova K. Renin-angiotensin system: upgrade of recent knowledge and perspectives. *Endocr Regul*. 2013;47:39–52.
17. Sparks MA, Crowley SD, Gurley SB, Mirotsou M, Coffman TM. Classical renin-angiotensin system in kidney physiology. *Compr Physiol*. 2014;4:1201–1228.
18. Li C, Wang W, Rivard CJ, Lanaspa MA, Summer S, Schrier RW. Molecular mechanisms of angiotensin II stimulation on aquaporin-2 expression and trafficking. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2011;300:F1255–F1261.
19. Chappell MC. Nonclassical renin-angiotensin system and renal function. *Compr Physiol*. 2012;2:2733–2752.
20. Hao C-M, Breyer MD. The physiologic regulation of prostaglandins in the kidney. *Ann Rev Physiol*. 2008;70:357–377.
21. Kim G-H. Renal effects of prostaglandins and cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors. *Electrolyte and Blood Pressure*. 2008;6:35–41.
22. Scicli AG, Carretero OA. Renal kallikrein-kinin system. *Kidney Int*. 1986;29:120–130.
23. Baram M, Kommuri A, Sellers SA, Cohn JR. ACE inhibitor-induced angioedema. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract*. 2013;1:442–445.
24. Kortenoeven ML, Petersen NB, Rosenbaek LL, Fenton RA. Vasopressin regulation of sodium transport in the distal nephron and collecting duct. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2015;15:F280–299.
25. Bayless PH. Posterior pituitary function in health and disease. *Clin Endocrin Metabolism*. 1983;12:747–770.
26. Edwards RM, Rizna W, Kinter LB. Renal microvascular effects of vasopressin and vasopressin antagonist. *Am J Physiol*. 1989;256:F526–F534.
27. Olesen ET, Fenton RA. Aquaporin-2 membrane targeting: still a conundrum. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2017;312:F744–F747.
28. de Bold AJ. Thirty years of research on atrial natriuretic factor: historical background and emerging concepts. *Can J Physiol Pharmacol*. 2011;89:527–531.
29. Inoue T, Nonoguchi H, Tomita K. Physiological effects of vasopressin and atrial natriuretic peptide in the collecting duct. *Cardiovasc Res*. 2001;15:470–480.
30. Heras MM, del Castillo Rodrígues N, Navarro JF. The renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system in renal and cardiovascular disease and the effects of its pharmacological blockade. *J Diabetes Metab*. 2012;3:171. https://doi.org/10.4172/2155-6156.1000171.
31. Genuth SM. The adrenal glands. In: Berne RM, Levy EM, eds. *Physiology*. 4th ed. St Louis: Mosby; 1998:930–964.
32. Choi MR, Mikusic NLR, Kouyoumdzian NM, Kravetz MC, Fernández BE. Atrial natriuretic peptide and renal dopamineric system: a positive friendly relationship? *Biomed Res Int*. 2014. https://doi.org/10.1155/2014/710781.
33. Sansoè G, Ferrari A, Baraldi E, et al. Dopaminergic control of renal tubular function in patients with compensated cirrhosis. *Dig Dis Sci*. 2002;247:392–400.
34. Eltzschig HK. Adenosine: an old drug newly discovered. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:904–915.
35. Bauerle JD, Grenz A, Kim J-H, Lee HT, Eltzschig HK. Adenosine generation and signaling during acute kidney injury. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2011;22:14–20.
36. Evans RG, Fitzgerald SM. Nitric oxide and superoxide in the renal medulla: a delicate balancing act. *Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens*. 2005;14:9–15.
37. Ortiz PA, Garvin JL. Role of nitric oxide in the regulation of nephron transporet. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2002;282:F777–F784.
38. Cowley AW Jr, Abe M, Mori T, Connor PM, Ohsaki Y, Zheleznova NN. Reactive oxygen species as important determinants of medullary flow, sodium excretion, and hypertension. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2015;308:F179–F197.
39. Palmer LG, Schnermann J. Integrated control of Na transport along the nephron. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2015;10:676–687.
40. McCormick JA, Ellison DH. Distal convoluted tubule. *Compr Physiol*. 2015;5:45–98.
41. Roy A, Al-bataineh MM, Pastor-soler NM. Collecting duct intercalated cell function and regulation. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2015;10:305–324.
42. Carlström M, Wilcox CS, Arendshorst WJ. Renal autoregulation in health and disease. *Physiol Rev*. 2015;95:405–511.
43. Burke M, Pabbidi MR, Farley J, Roman RJ. Molecular mechanisms of renal blood flow autoregulation. *Curr Vasc Pharmacol*. 2014;12:845–858.
44. Komlosi P, Fintha A, Bell PD. Current mechanisms of macula densa signalling. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 2004;181:463–469.
45. Rose BD. Regulation of plasma osmolality. In: Rose BD, ed. *Clinical Physiology of Acid-Base and Electrolyte Disorders*. 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill; 1994:261–273.
46. Winter WE. *The Kidney*. In: *Laposata's Laboratory Medicine Diagnosis of Disease in Clinical Laboratory*. 2nd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2014:385–396.
47. Prowle JR, Forni LG. Functional biomarkers. In: Ronco C, Bellomo R, Kellum JA, Ricci Z, eds. *Critical Care Nephrology*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, Inc; 2019:141–145.
48. Kunst G, Ostermann M. Intraoperative permissive oliguria – how much is too much? *Brit J Anaesth*. 2017;119:1075–1077.
49. Cannesson M, Pestel G, Ricks C, Hoeft A, Perel A. Hemodynamic monitoring and management in patients undergoing high risk surgery: a survey among North American and European anesthesiologists. *Critical Care*. 2011;15:R197.
50. Kheterpal S, Tremper KK, Englesbe MJ, et al. Predictors of postoperative acute renal failure after noncardiac surgery in patients with previously normal renal function. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:892–902.
51. Matot I, Dery E, Bulgov Y, Cohen B, Paz J, Nesher N. Fluid management during video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery for lung resection: a randomized, controlled trial of effects on urinary output and postoperative renal function. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2013;146:461–466.
52. Makaryus R, Miller TE, Gan TJ. Current concepts of fluid management in enchanced recovery pathways. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2018;120:376–383.
53. van der Zee EN, Egal M, Gommers D, Groeneveld AB. Targeting urine output and 30-day mortality in goal-directed therapy: a systematic review with meta-analysis and meta- regression. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2017;17:22. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12871-017-0316-4.
54. Matot I, Paskaleva R, Eid L, et al. Effect of the volume of fluids administered on intraoperative oliguria in laparoscopic bariatric surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *Arch Surg*. 2012;147:228–234.

55. Sladen RN. Oliguria in the ICU. Systematic approach to diagnosis and treatment. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2000;18:739–752, viii.
56. Seegmiller JC, Eckfeldt JH, Lieske JC. Challenges in measuring glomerular filtration rate: a clinical laboratory perspective. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2018;25:84–92.
57. http://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/communication-programs/nkdep/laboratory-evaluation/glomerular-filtration-rate/estimating.
58. Hermsen ED, Maiefski M, Florescu MC, Qiu F, Rupp ME. Comparison of the modification of diet in renal disease and Cockcroft-Gault equations for dosing antimicrobials. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2009;29: 649–655.
59. Priano LL. Effects of anesthetic agents on renal function. In: Barash PG, ed. *Refresher Courses in Anesthesiology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott; 1985:143–156.
60. Fukazawa K, Lee T. Volatile anesthetics and AKI: risks, mechanisms, and a potential therapeutic window. *J AmSoc Nephrol*. 2014;25: 884–892.
61. Gelman S, Gowler KC, Smith LR. Regional blood flow during isoflurane and halothane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:557–565.
62. Priano LL. Alteration of renal hemodynamics by thiopental, diazepam and ketamine in conscious dogs. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:853–862.
63. Mazze RI, Trudell JR, Cousins MJ. Methoxyflurane metabolism and renal dysfunction: clinical correlation in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:247.
64. Mazze RI, Cousins MJ, Barr GA. Renal effects and metabolism of isoflurane in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40:536–542.
65. Higuchi H, Adachi Y, Arimura S, Kanno M, Satoh T. Compound A concentrations during low-flow sevoflurane anesthesia correlate directly with the concentration of monovalent bases in carbon dioxide absorbents. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:434–439.
66. Ebert TJ, Arain SR. Renal responses to low-flow desflurane, sevoflurane, and propofol in patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1401–1406.
67. Motayagheni N, Phan S, Eshraghi C, Nozari A, Atala A. A review of anesthetic effects on renal function: potential organ protection. *Am J Nephrol*. 2017;46:380–389.
68. Lee HT, Ota-Setlik A, Fu Y. Differential protective effects of volatile anesthetics against renal ischemia-reperfusion injury in vivo. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:1313–1324.
69. Li Y, Zhong D, Lei L, Jia Y, Zhou H, Yang B. Propofol prevents renal ischemia-reperfusion injury via inhibiting the oxidative stress pathways. *Cell Physiol Biochem*. 2015;37:14–26.
70. Kuiper JW, Groeneveld AB, Slutsky AS, Plotz FB. Mechanical ventilation and acute renal failure. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:1408–1415.
71. Botha J, Mudholkar P, Le Blanc V. The effect of changing from pressure support ventilation to volume control ventilation on renal function. *Crit Care Resusc*. 2005;7:303–309.
72. Thompson GE, Miller RD, Stevens WC, et al. Hypotensive anesthesia for total hip arthroplasty: a study of blood loss and organ function, brain, heart, liver and kidneys. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;48:91–96.
73. Colley PS, Silvarjan M. Regional blood flow in dogs during halothane anesthesia and controlled hypotension produced by nitroprusside or nitroglycerin. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:503–510.
74. Aronson S, Goldberg LI, Glock D, et al. Effects of fenoldopam on renal blood flow and systemic hemodynamics during isoflurane anesthesia. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1991;5:29–32.
75. Park C, Kim JY, Kim C, Chang CH. Nicardipine effects on renal function during spine surgery. *Clin Spine Surg*. 2017;30:E954–E958.
76. Huh H, Kim NY, Park SJ, Cho JE. Effect of nicardipine on renal function following robot-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy in patients with pre-existing renal insufficiency. *J Int Med Res*. 2014;42:427–435.

18 Basic Principles of Pharmacology

TAE KYUN KIM, SHINJU OBARA, and KEN B. JOHNSON

KEY POINTS

- Pharmacokinetics describes the relationship between drug dose and drug concentration in plasma or at the site of drug effect over time. For anesthetic drugs, the processes of distribution and elimination (metabolism and excretion) govern this relationship.
- The time course of intravenously administered drugs is a function of distribution volume and clearance. Estimates of distribution volumes and clearances, pharmacokinetic parameters, are derived from mathematical formulas fit to measured blood or plasma concentrations over time following a known drug dose.
- Front-end kinetics refer to alterations in cardiac output that substantially influence the pharmacokinetic behavior of anesthetic drugs in terms of onset and duration of effect. Context-sensitive decrement time, which is defined as the time required to reach a certain plasma concentration after a termination of long infusion, characterizes the back-end kinetics.
- Hysteresis refers to the time delay between changes in plasma concentration and drug effect. Hysteresis accounts for the time required for drug to diffuse from the plasma to the site of action plus the time required, once drug is at the site of action, to elicit a drug effect.
- Pharmacodynamics describes what the drug does to the body. In particular, pharmacodynamics describes the relationship between drug concentration and pharmacologic effect.
- The effect-site concentration describes a mathematically derived virtual location where an anesthetic drug exerts its effect. This approach cannot describe a mechanism of drug action (e.g., drug-receptor interaction).
- A single anesthetic drug has multiple effects (i.e., analgesia, ventilatory depression, loss of response to laryngoscopy, and changes in the electroencephalogram) that typically occur at various effect-site concentrations.
- The concentration range where changes in drug effect occur is known as the dynamic range. Concentrations outside the dynamic range do not yield much change in drug effect. Levels below the dynamic range are ineffective and those above the dynamic range do not provide additional effect.
- Anesthesia is the practice of applied drug interactions. Anesthetics rarely consist of one drug, but rather a combination of drugs to achieve desired levels of hypnosis, analgesia, and muscle relaxation. Hypnotics, analgesics, and muscle relaxants all interact with one another such that rarely does one drug, when administered in the presence of other drugs, behave as if it were administered alone.
- Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic principles characterize the magnitude and time course of drug effect, but because of complex mathematics, they have limited clinical utility. Advances in computer simulation have brought this capability to the point of real-time patient care in the form of drug displays.
- Special populations: many aspects of a patient's demographics and medical history are considered in finding the *correct dose*. Some of these include age; body habitus; gender; chronic exposure to opioids, benzodiazepines, or alcohol; presence of heart, lung, kidney, or liver disease; and the extent of blood loss or dehydration.
- Some patient characteristics (e.g., obesity and age) influence anesthetic drug behavior, while other patient characteristics (chronic opioid use, hepatic and renal failure) remain poorly described.

Introduction

The basic principles of pharmacology are fundamental to an anesthesia provider's knowledge base. The aim of this chapter is to provide an overview of key principles in clinical pharmacology used to describe anesthetic drug behavior. This chapter is divided into three major sections: pharmacokinetic principles, pharmacodynamic principles, and the importance of patient characteristics. Pharmacokinetics is the relationship between drug administration and drug concentration at the site of action. Core concepts include volumes of distribution, drug clearance, and transfer of drugs between plasma and tissues. The section on pharmacokinetics introduces both the physiologic processes that determine pharmacokinetics and the mathematical models used to relate dose to concentration.

Pharmacodynamics is the relationship between drug concentration and pharmacologic effect. An anesthetic rarely consists of only one drug. In fact, most anesthetics are a combination of several drugs with specific goals in analgesia, sedation, and muscle relaxation. This section reviews common pharmacodynamic interactions and how they influence anesthetic effect.

The last section briefly addresses patient demographics and how they influence anesthetic behavior. When formulating an anesthetic, the following factors need to be considered in determining the correct dose: age; body habitus; gender; chronic exposure to opioids, benzodiazepines, or alcohol; presence of heart, lung, kidney, or liver disease; and the extent of blood loss or dehydration. This section focuses on body habitus and age, both known to influence the pharmacology of many anesthetic drugs and both of which serve as excellent examples of altered pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics.

FUNDAMENTAL PHARMACOKINETIC CONCEPTS

Pharmacokinetics describes the relationship between drug dose and drug concentration in plasma or at the site of drug effect over time. The processes of absorption, distribution, and elimination (metabolism and excretion) govern this relationship. Absorption is not relevant to intravenously administered drugs but is relevant to all other routes of drug delivery. The time course of intravenously administered drugs is a function of distribution volume and clearance. Estimates of distribution volumes and clearances are described by pharmacokinetic parameters. Pharmacokinetic parameters are derived from mathematical formulas fit to measured blood or plasma concentrations over time following a known amount of drug dose.

Volume of Distribution

An over-simplified model of drug distribution throughout plasma and tissues is the dilution of a drug dose into a tank of water. The volume of distribution (Vd) is the apparent size of the tank in which a known amount of drug distributes to produce a measured drug concentration once the drug has had enough time to thoroughly mix within the tank (Fig 18.1). If an injected drug disperses and distributes instantaneously throughout the tank without any drug degradation, the distribution volume is estimated using the simple relationship between dose (e.g., mg) and measured concentration (e.g., mg/L) as presented in Eq. (18.1).

$$\text{Volume of distribution} = \frac{\text{Amount of dose}}{\text{Concentration}} \tag{18.1}$$

With an estimate of tank volume, drug concentration after any bolus dose can be calculated. Human bodies are not like water tanks. As soon as a drug is injected, it begins to be cleared from the body. To account for this in the schematic presented in Fig. 18.1, a faucet is added to the tank to mimic drug elimination from the body (Fig. 18.2). Considering the elimination of drug from the tank and the changes in concentration, the definition of distribution volume in Eq. (18.1) should be refined with the amount of drug and the concentration at a given time t.

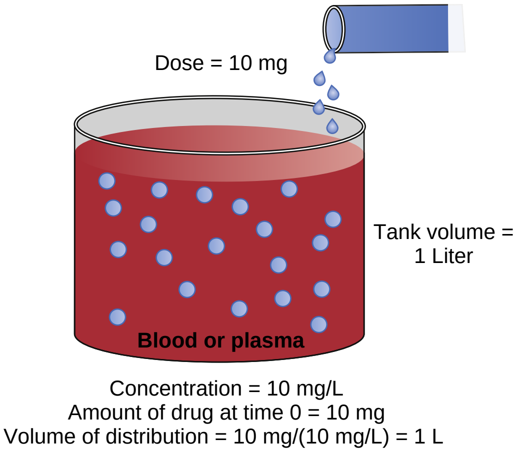

Dose = 10 mg
Tank volume = 1 Liter
Blood or plasma
Concentration = 10 mg/L
Amount of drug at time 0 = 10 mg
Volume of distribution = 10 mg/(10 mg/L) = 1 L

Fig. 18.1 Schematic of a single-tank model of distribution volume. The group of blue drops emerging from the pipe at the top right represent a bolus dose that, when administered to the tank of water, evenly distributes within the tank.

$$\text{Vd} = \frac{\text{Amount (t)}}{\text{Concentration (t)}} \tag{18.2}$$

If drug elimination occurs as a first-order process (i.e., elimination is proportional to the concentration at that time), in a tank model, the volume of distribution calculated by Eq. (18.2) will be constant (Fig. 18.3; see also Fig.18.2). When a drug is administered intravenously, some drug stays in the vascular volume, but most of the drug distributes to peripheral tissues. This distribution is often represented as additional tanks (peripheral distribution volumes) connected to a central tank (blood or plasma volume). Peripheral distribution volumes increase the total volume of distribution (Fig. 18.4). For the calculation of distribution volumes, peripheral tissue concentrations are difficult to measure whereas plasma concentrations are easily measured.

The schematic in Fig. 18.4 presents two tanks that represent plasma and peripheral tissue volumes. The peripheral tank represents the drug volume of distribution in peripheral tissues. There may be more than one peripheral tank (volume) to best describe the entire drug disposition in the body. The size of the peripheral volumes represents a drug's solubility in tissue relative to blood or plasma. The more soluble a drug is in peripheral tissue relative to blood or plasma, the larger the peripheral volumes of distribution.

An important point illustrated in Fig. 18.4 is that drug not only distributes to the peripheral tank and thus increases the volume of distribution, but it also binds to tissue in that tank. This process further lowers the measurable concentration in the central tank. Thus, the total volume of distribution may even be larger than the two tanks added together. In fact, some anesthetics have huge distribution volumes (e.g., fentanyl has an apparent distribution volume of 4 L/kg) that are substantially larger than an individual's vascular volume (0.07 L/kg) or extracellular volume (0.2 L/kg).

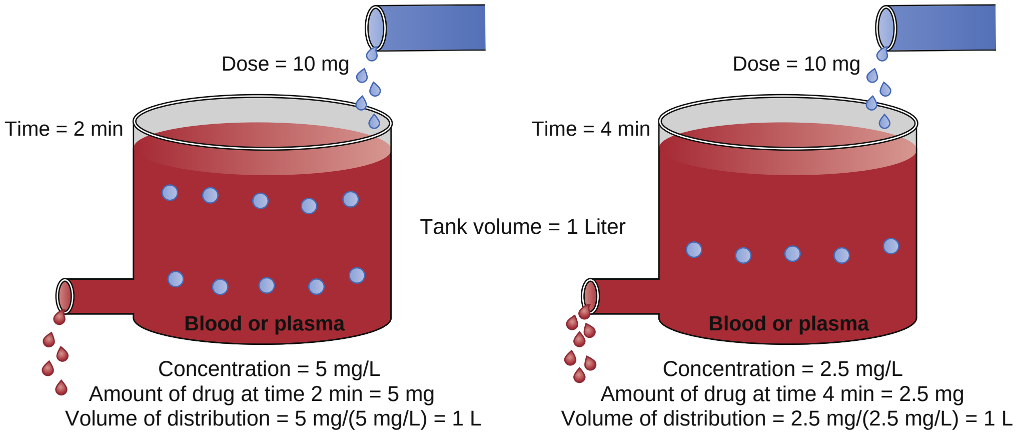

Dose = 10 mg
Time = 2 min
Blood or plasma
Concentration = 5 mg/L
Amount of drug at time 2 min = 5 mg
Volume of distribution = 5 mg/(5 mg/L) = 1 L
Tank volume = 1 Liter
Dose = 10 mg
Time = 4 min
Blood or plasma
Concentration = 2.5 mg/L
Amount of drug at time 4 min = 2.5 mg
Volume of distribution = 2.5 mg/(2.5 mg/L) = 1 L

Fig.18.2 Schematic of a single-tank model of elimination as a first-order process (eliminated at a rate of 50% to the amount of drug present at every two minutes). At 2 minutes *(left panel)* and 4 minutes *(right panel)* following a 10-mg drug bolus, tank concentrations are decreasing from 5 to 2.5 mg/mL. Accounting for elimination, estimates of the distribution volume at each time point are both 1 L.

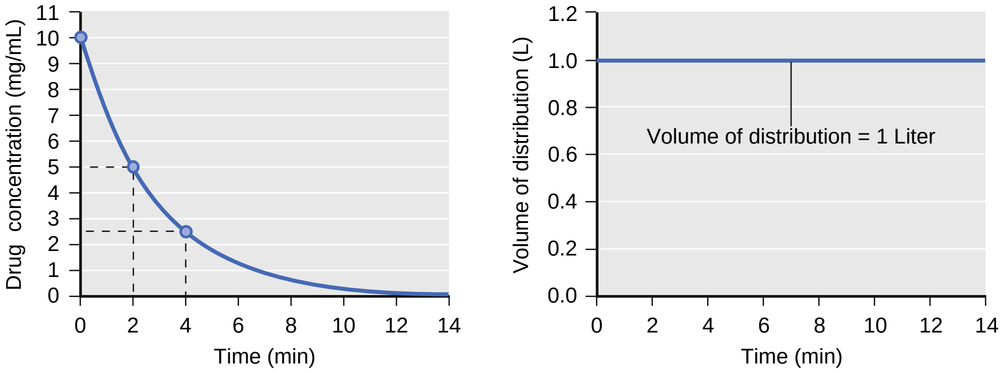


Fig.18.3 Simulation of concentration *(left panel)* and distribution volume *(right panel)* changes over time following a bolus dose for a single-tank (one-compartment) model. The distribution volume remains constant throughout.

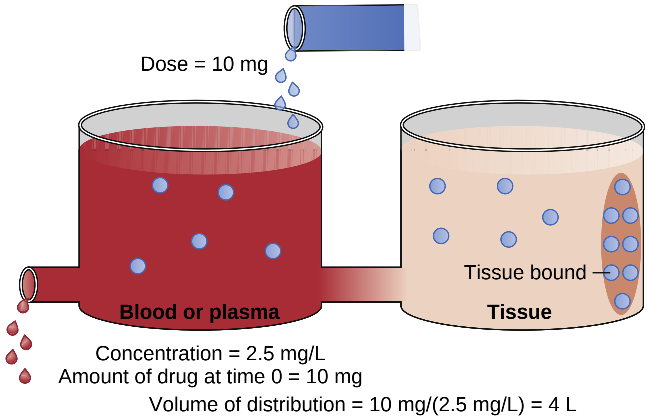

Dose = 10 mg
Blood or plasma
Tissue bound
Tissue
Concentration = 2.5 mg/L
Amount of drug at time 0 = 10 mg
Volume of distribution = 10 mg/(2.5 mg/L) = 4 L

Fig. 18.4 Schematic of a two-tank model. The total volume of distribution consists of the sum of the two tanks. The brown ellipse in the peripheral volume represents tissue that binds up drugs. The measured concentration in the blood or plasma is 2.5 mg/mL just after a bolus dose of 10 mg. Using Fig. 18.1, this leads to a distribution volume of 4 L.

With additional distribution volumes, the overall volume of distribution can change over time and is a function of how drug is administered as well (e.g., as a bolus or a continuous infusion). For example, consider simulations of concentrations and distribution volumes over time following a bolus dose or a continuous infusion of an intravenous anesthetic as presented in Fig. 18.5. For a bolus dose, assume that the volume of distribution is 1 L at time = 0 and that it then increases to 14 L as the plasma concentration falls over the next 10 minutes. The increase of the distribution volume is due to the distribution of drug to peripheral tissue and a decrease in the plasma concentration. For a constant infusion, assume the volume of distribution is again 1 L at time = 0 and that it then increases to 5 L as the plasma concentrations also increase to a steady-state concentration over the next several hours. This is known as the steady-state volume of distribution. It is estimated as the sum of the central and peripheral apparent distribution volumes.

Clearance

Clearance describes the rate of drug removal from the plasma/blood. Two processes contribute to drug clearance: systemic (removal from the tank) and intercompartmental (between tanks) clearance (Fig. 18.6). Systemic clearance permanently removes drug from the body, either by eliminating the parent molecule or by transforming it into metabolites. Intercompartmental clearance moves drug between plasma and peripheral tissue tanks. By way of clarification, in this chapter, the words compartment and tank are interchangeable.

Clearance is defined in units of flow, that is, the volume completely cleared of drug per unit of time (e.g., L/min).

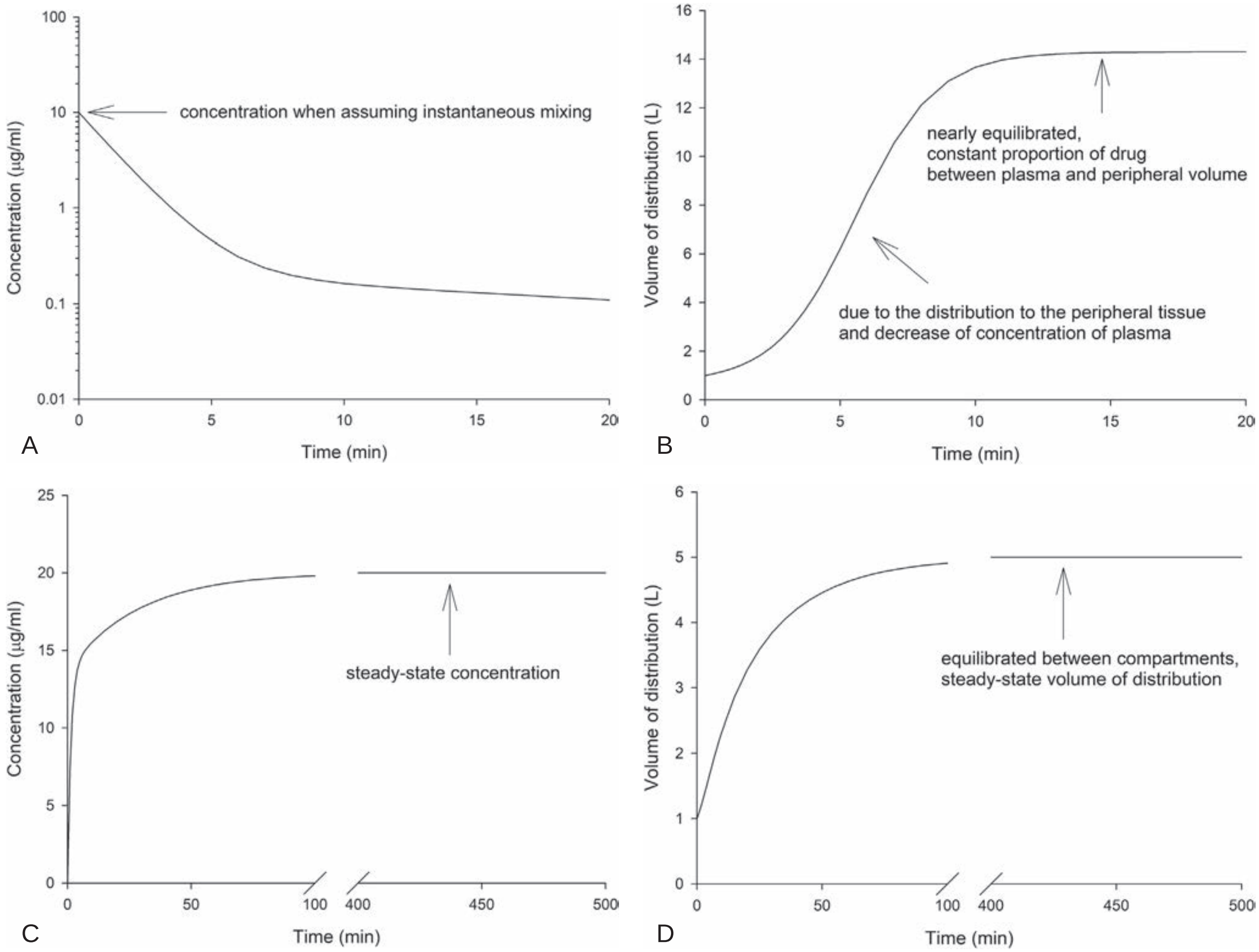


Fig. 18.5 Simulation of concentration and apparent distribution volume changes over time following a bolus dose for a two-tank (two-compartment) model. Panels A and C present drug concentrations over time. Panels B and D present the apparent distribution volume over time.

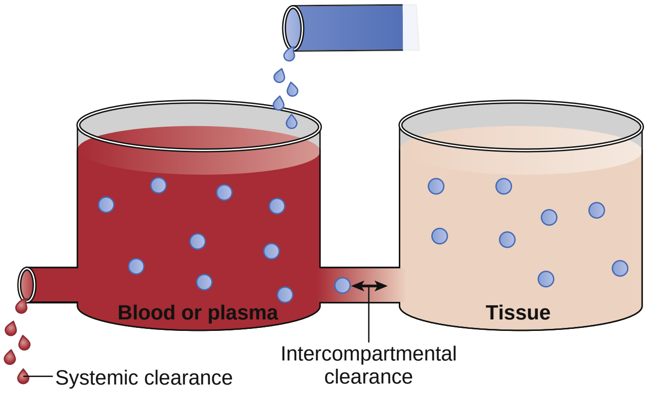


Fig. 18.6 Schematic of a two-tank model illustrating two sources of drug removal from the central tank (blood or plasma): systemic and intercompartmental clearance.

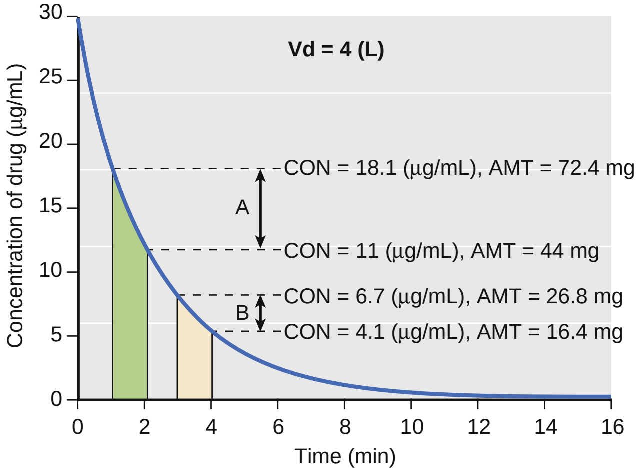


Fig.18.7 Simulation of drug concentration changes when a drug is administered to a single-tank model with first-order elimination (see Fig. 18.2). The concentration changes for two time windows are labeled with dashed lines from 1 to 2 minutes (time window *A*) and from 3 to 4 minutes (time window *B*), respectively. The concentrations *(CON)* at the beginning and end of each time window are used to calculate the amount *(AMT)* of drug that is eliminated (see text). *Vd*, Volume of distribution.

Clearance is not to be confused with elimination rate (e.g., mg/min). The elimination rate is not an accurate method of describing the mass of drug removed over time. For example, assuming a first-order process, when plasma concentrations are high, the rate of drug elimination is high. When low, the rate is also low. Clearance is a better descriptor as it is independent of drug concentration.

To illustrate this point, consider the simulation presented in Fig. 18.7. In this simulation, the total amount of drug at each time can be calculated from the known volume of distribution and measured concentration. The concentration change in time window A is larger than in time window B even though they are both 1 minute in duration. The elimination rates are 28.4 and 10.4 mg/min for time windows A and B, respectively. They are different, and neither can be used as a parameter to represent a measure of drug removal from the body. Because of this limitation with elimination rate, clearance was developed to provide a single number to describe the decay in drug concentration presented in Fig. 18.7.

For discussion purposes, assume that concentration is the power necessary to push drug out of the water tank. The higher the concentration, the larger the amount of drug eliminated. To standardize the elimination rate, the eliminated amount of drug is scaled to concentration. For example, when the elimination rate in time window A (28.4 mg/min) is scaled to the concentration at the middle of the time window (14.2 μg/mL), the clearance is 2 L/min. When the elimination rate in time window B (10.4 mg/min) is scaled to the concentration at the middle of the time window (5.2 μg/mL), the clearance is again 2 L/min. If the time interval is narrowed so that the time window approaches zero, the definition of clearance becomes:

$$\text{Clearance} = \frac{\frac{dA(t)}{dt}}{C(t)} \tag{18.3}$$

where dA(t)/dt is the rate of drug elimination at given time t, and C(t) is the corresponding concentration at that time. Rearranging Eq. (18.3) and integrating both numerator and denominator, the following relationship holds:

$$\text{Clearance} = \frac{\int_0^\infty dA(t)}{\int_0^\infty C(t)\,dt} \tag{18.4}$$

because the term $\int_0^\infty dA(t)$ is equal to the total amount of drug eliminated and $\int_0^\infty C(t)\,dt$ is the area under curve (AUC) in concentration versus time plot, then the following equation can be derived:

$$\text{Clearance} = \frac{\text{Dose}}{\text{AUC}} \tag{18.5}$$

With long infusions, drug concentrations reach a steady-state condition where the rate of drug elimination $\left(\frac{dA(t)}{dt}\right)$ is in equilibrium with the rate of drug administration (infusion rate). Clearance in a steady-state condition can be obtained using Eq. (18.3) as follows:

$$\text{Clearance} = \frac{\text{Infusion rate}}{\text{Css}} \tag{18.6}$$

where Css is the plasma concentration at steady state.

To illustrate the relationship between clearance and volume of distribution, consider the following simulation using a generic drug dosed in milligrams into a single compartment (tank) representing the distribution volume that has a clearance of 1 L/min. Assume that when drug is administered, the tank is well stirred and has instantaneous mixing throughout the entire volume. Assume the distribution volume is 4 L, the total dose of drug is 64 mg, and that drug elimination is proportional to the amount of drug present inside the tank at any given time. This rate of drug elimination is known as first-order elimination kinetics. When the drug is injected into the 4 L distribution volume, the drug will instantly evenly distribute throughout

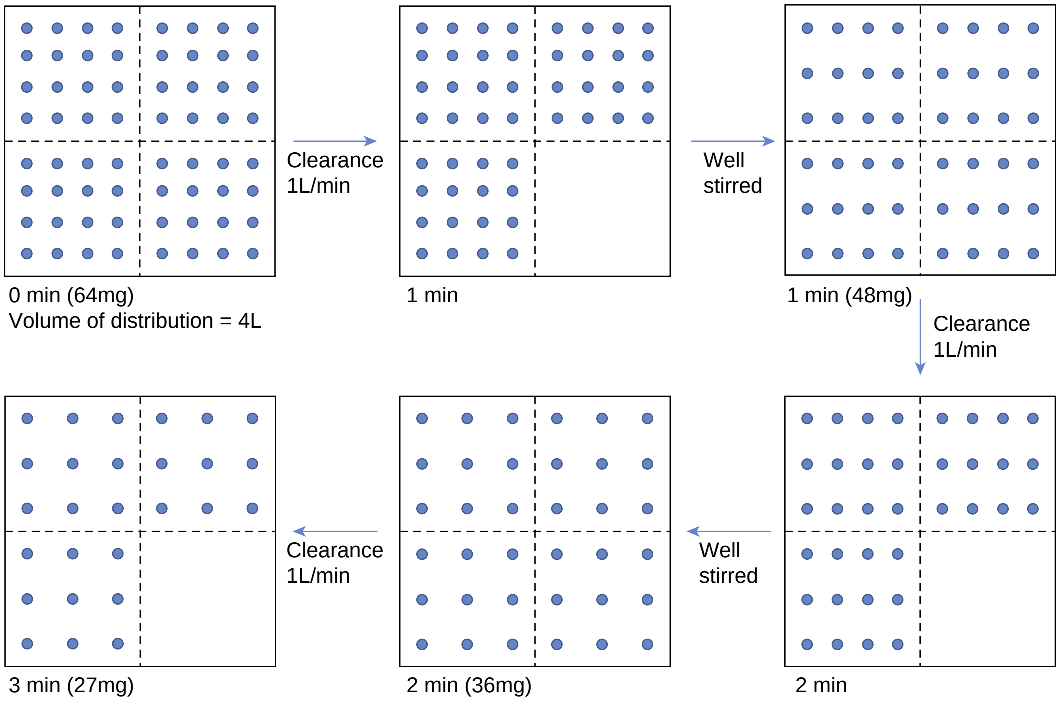


Fig. 18.8 Schematic representation of relationship among clearance, volume of distribution, and elimination rate constant. A generic drug dose of 64 mg is administered into a single compartment volume of 4 L that has a clearance of 1 L/min. Drug elimination is proportional to the amount of drug present inside the compartment at any given time, otherwise known as first-order elimination kinetics. At 1-minute intervals, one of the 4 L is cleared along with all drug contained in that liter. The drug amount decreases by 16, 12, and 9 mg at 1, 2, and 3 minutes.

the compartment (Fig. 18.8). With a clearance of 1 L/min, the amount of drug distributed to one fourth of compartment volume (1 L) will be cleared every minute. In the first minute, 16 mg drug is cleared. The remaining 48 mg will be redistributed evenly throughout the compartment. For the next minute, one fourth of the compartment volume (1 L) is again cleared. In the second minute, 12 mg of drug is cleared. This process repeats every minute. When assuming instantaneously mixing, the ratio of the amount of drug removed within the cleared portion of the distribution volume to the amount of drug within the total distribution volume will remain the same as illustrated in Eq. (18.7).

$$\frac{16\text{mg}}{64\text{mg}} = \frac{12\text{mg}}{48\text{mg}} = \frac{9\text{mg}}{36\text{mg}} = \frac{\text{cleared volume}}{\text{volume of distribution}} \qquad (18.7)$$

This ratio, known as the elimination rate constant (k), is described in Eq. (18.8).

$$\frac{\text{CL}}{\text{Vd}} = \text{k or CL} = \text{Vd} \times \text{k} \qquad (18.8)$$

Where CL is clearance with units of volume/time (L/min), Vd is the compartment distribution volume with units of liters (L), and k is the first-order elimination rate constant with units of inverse time (min^{-1}).

Physiologic Model for Clearance

Drug extraction by metabolic organs is illustrated in Fig. 18.9. This model contains a metabolic organ system responsible for drug elimination. According to mass balance, the rate at which drug flows *out* of metabolic organs is the rate at which drug flows *into* them minus the metabolic rate. The elimination rate (dA/dt) can be expressed as Q (C_{in} − C_{out}). Rearranging C(t) in Eq. (18.3) with C_{in}, clearance can be expressed as

$$\text{Clearance} = \frac{Q\,(C_{in} - C_{out})}{C_{in}} \qquad (18.9)$$

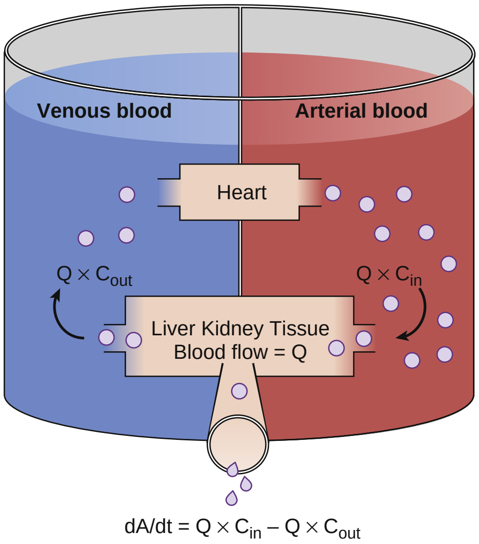


Fig. 18.9 Schematic of drug extraction. Q indicates blood flow. C_{in} and C_{out} indicate drug concentrations presented to and leaving metabolic organs. A indicates the amount of drug, and dA/dt is the drug elimination rate.

where Q is the blood flow to metabolic organs, C_{in} is the concentration of drug delivered to metabolic organs, and C_{out} is the concentration of drug leaving metabolic organs.

The fraction of inflowing drug extracted by the organ is $\frac{C_{in} - C_{out}}{C_{in}}$. This is called the extraction ratio (ER). Clearance can be estimated as organ blood flow multiplied by the ER. Eq. (18.9) can be simplified to

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Clearance} &= \frac{Q\,(C_{in} - C_{out})}{C_{in}} \\ &= Q \times \frac{C_{in} - C_{out}}{C_{in}} = Q \times \text{ER} \qquad (18.10)\end{aligned}$$

The total clearance is the sum of each clearance by metabolic organs such as the liver, kidney, and other tissues.

Hepatic clearance has been well characterized. For example, the relationship among clearance, liver blood flow, and the ER is presented in Fig. 18.10.[1] For drugs with an ER of nearly 1 (e.g., propofol), a change in liver blood flow produces a nearly proportional change in clearance. For drugs with a low ER (e.g., alfentanil), clearance is nearly independent of the rate of liver blood flow. If nearly 100% of the drug is extracted by the liver, this implies that the liver has a very large metabolic capacity for the drug. In this case, the rate-limiting step in metabolism is the flow of drug to the liver, and such drugs are said to be "flow limited." As a consequence, any reduction in liver blood flow due to circulatory effects of anesthetic agents or changes in circulatory volumes in cases of perioperative bleeding or other situations of excessive fluid loss can be expected to reduce liver-dependent drug clearance. However, moderate changes in hepatic metabolic function per se will have little

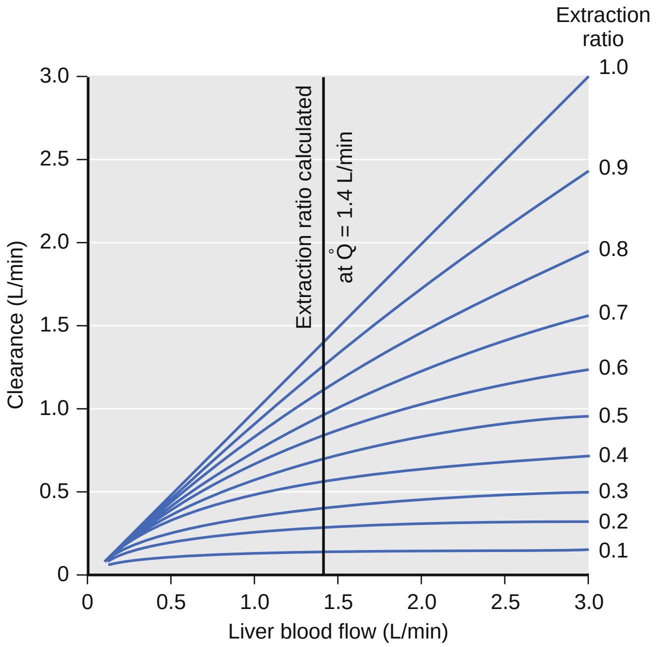


Fig. 18.10 Relationship among liver blood flow (Q), clearance, and extraction ratio. For drugs with a high extraction ratio, clearance is nearly identical to liver blood flow. For drugs with a low extraction ratio, changes in liver blood flow have almost no effect on clearance. (From Wilkinson GR, Shand DG. Commentary: a physiological approach to hepatic drug clearance. *Clin Pharmacol Ther.* 1975;18:377–390.)

impact on clearance because hepatic metabolic capacity is overwhelmingly in excess of demand.

For many drugs (e.g., alfentanil), the ER is considerably less than 1. For these drugs, clearance is limited by the capacity of the liver to take up and metabolize drug. These drugs are said to be "capacity limited." Clearance will change in response to any change in the capacity of the liver to metabolize such drugs, as might be caused by liver disease or enzymatic induction. However, changes in liver blood flow caused by the anesthetic regimen or other changes in splanchnic circulation usually have little influence on clearance because the liver handles only a fraction of the drug that it sees.

Although most anesthetic drugs are cleared by hepatic metabolism, remifentanil, succinylcholine, and esmolol are cleared in the plasma and tissues by ester hydrolysis, and pancuronium is cleared via the kidney. The relationship between metabolism and clearance is complex.

Hepatic Biotransformation

Most anesthetic drugs are cleared by hepatic biotransformation. The synthetic pathways for biotransformation are covered in detail in many biochemistry texts. Briefly, the liver metabolizes drugs through oxidation, reduction, hydrolysis, or conjugation. Oxidation and reduction occur in the cytochrome P450 system. These enzymes can be induced by exposure to certain drugs (e.g., the herbal remedy St. John's wort) and increase the liver's intrinsic metabolic capacity. Other drugs or hepatic disease can inhibit these enzymes (e.g., selected calcium channel blockers and selected antibiotics). Routes of oxidative metabolism include hydroxylation, dealkylation, deamination, desulfuration, epoxidation, and dehalogenation. Conjugation and hydrolysis often occur outside the P450 system, although glucuronidation involves the P450 system as well. The effect of conjugation is to transform hydrophobic molecules into water-soluble molecules through the addition of polar groups and thus render the metabolites easier to excrete via the kidneys. The metabolites generated by the liver are generally inactive, although some drugs (e.g., morphine, midazolam) have metabolites that are as potent as the parent drug. Genetic polymorphism can occur in all of these pathways, and this accounts for part of the variability in clearance in the population.

Pharmacokinetic Models

To create a framework from which to compare drugs and describe drug behavior, pharmacologists developed pharmacokinetic models to characterize drug concentrations as a function of time. These models provide estimates of drug concentrations over time in response to dosing regimens (e.g., bolus vs. infusion). Several types of pharmacokinetic models have been developed. Examples include complex physiologic models and the more common compartmental models.

Physiologic Models

Physiologic models are based on organ and tissue physiologic and anatomic data. Drug concentrations into and out of an organ, organ blood flow, and organ drug distribution volume are required. Capturing these metrics from all organs is nearly impossible in humans and very challenging in animal models. If obtained, this data is used to estimate volumes and clearances for each organ in the body. Individual organ models are assembled into a whole organism physiological model.[2] Once assembled, the combined models are complex and mathematically cumbersome. They may not offer a better prediction of plasma drug concentrations over time than simple compartmental models. If the intent of the model is to explore the ability of possible dosing regimens to achieve therapeutic plasma drug concentrations, compartmental models are usually adequate.

Compartmental Models

Compartmental models are built on the same basic concepts as physiologic models, but with significant simplifications. Compartment pharmacokinetic models are strictly empirical. They are based on fitting equations to measured plasma concentrations following a known dose. Kinetic models are transformed into models that characterize changes over time in terms of volumes and clearances. Part of the continuing popularity of pharmacokinetic models is that they can be transformed from an unintuitive exponential form to a more intuitive compartmental form as shown in Fig. 18.11.

Compartment models used to describe anesthetic drugs typically consist of one, two, or three compartments corresponding to the number of exponents in an equation needed to best fit the plasma versus concentration data (see Fig. 18.11). Exponents are difficult to work with and have little clinical meaning. Thus, they are converted into fictitious volumes and clearances. For example, in a three-compartment model, there is a central compartment and two peripheral compartments. The sum of the all volumes is the volume of distribution at steady state. Drug clearance

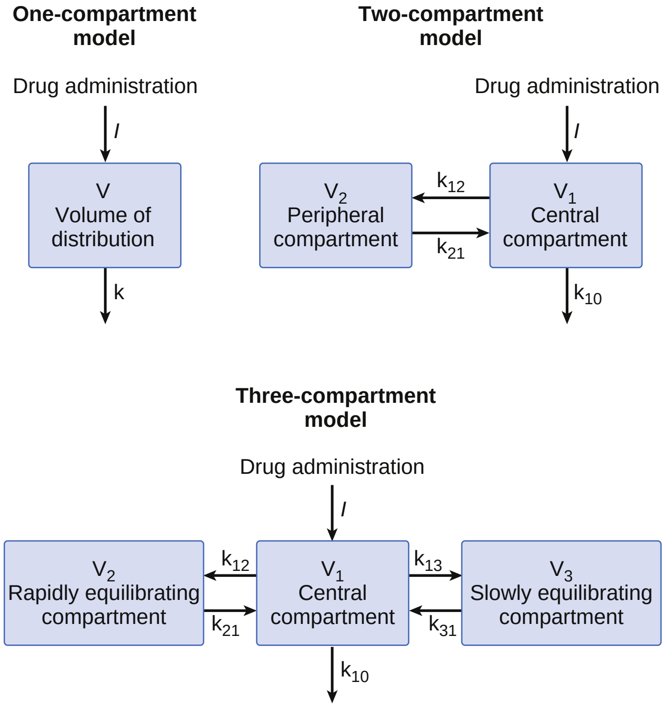


Fig. 18.11 One-, two-, and three-compartment mammillary models.

from the central compartment to the outside is the central clearance. Central clearance accounts for both metabolism and excretion. Clearances between the central and peripheral compartments is the "intercompartmental" clearance. Micro rate constants, expressed as k_{ij}, define the rate of drug transfer from compartment i to compartment j. For example, k_{10} is the micro rate constant describing drug transfer from central compartment to the outside. The intercompartmental micro rate constants (k_{12}, k_{21}, etc.) describe movement of drug between the central and peripheral compartments. Each peripheral compartment has at least two micro rate constants, one for drug entry and one for drug exit. The micro rate constants for the two- and three-compartment models are presented in Fig. 18.11.

Zero Versus First-Order Kinetics

Drug elimination can have one of two profiles, zero- and first-order kinetics. With zero-order kinetics, drug is eliminated at a constant rate. With first-order kinetics, drug is eliminated at a rate proportional to the amount of drug present at that time. These rates are expressed using the following equations.

$$\frac{dA(t)}{dt} = -k_0 \text{ for zero order kinetics} \qquad (18.11)$$

$$\frac{dA(t)}{dt} = -k_1 E(t) \text{ for first-order kinetics} \qquad (18.12)$$

where A(t) is the amount of drug at time t, dA(t) is the change in drug amount at time t. $-k_0$ is the zero-order elimination rate constant. Its units are mass/time (e.g., mg/min). $-k_1$ is the first-order elimination rate constant. Its units are the reciprocal time 1/time, (e.g., min^{-1}). Most anesthetic drugs have first-order kinetics. When the processes responsible for metabolism are saturated, the kinetics could change from first to zero order.

ONE-COMPARTMENT MODEL

For a one-compartment model with first-order kinetic elimination, the amount of drug at a given time t is described by Eq. (18.13).

$$A(t) = A_0 e^{-kt} \qquad (18.13)$$

where A_0 is the initial drug amount (i.e., the initial dose), k is the first-order kinetic elimination rate constant. Note that k must be greater than 0. With this equation, there is an exponential decrease in drug amount.

The distribution volume (Vd) is a function of drug concentration and the total amount of drug in the compartment. Dividing Eq. (18.13) on both sides by Vd yields the following equation:

$$\frac{A(t)}{Vd} = \frac{A_0}{Vd} e^{-kt} \qquad (18.14)$$

Drug concentration can be derived from this relationship with Eq. (18.15):

$$C(t) = C_0 \times e^{-kt} \qquad (18.15)$$

where C(t) is the concentration at time t, C_0 is the initial concentration at time 0.

Taking the natural logarithm on both sides, the following expression is obtained:

$$\log C(t) = \log C_0 - kt \qquad (18.16)$$

A plot of this equation shows a straight line with slope of –k and intercept of log C_0. To yield the time required for the concentration to decrease by half, replacing log C(t) in Eq. (18.16) to log $C_0/2$ and rearranging gives:

$$\log \frac{C_0}{2} = \log C_0 - kt \qquad (18.17)$$

Solving this equation gives

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{k} \qquad (18.18)$$

where $t_{1/2}$ is the elimination half-life.

Multicompartment Models

Plasma concentrations over time after an intravenous bolus resemble the curve in Fig. 18.12. This curve has the characteristics common to most drugs when given by intravenous bolus. First, the concentrations continuously decrease over time. Second, the rate of decline is initially steep but continuously becomes less steep, until we get to a portion that is "log-linear." For many drugs, three distinct phases can be distinguished, as illustrated in Fig. 18.12. A "rapid-distribution" phase *(blue line)* begins immediately after bolus injection. Very rapid movement of the drug from plasma to the rapidly equilibrating tissues characterizes this phase. Frequently there is a second "slow-distribution" phase *(red line)*, which is characterized by movement of drug into more slowly equilibrating tissues and return of drug to plasma from the most rapidly equilibrating tissues. The terminal phase *(green line)* is a straight line when plotted on a semilogarithmic graph. The terminal phase is often called the "elimination phase" because the primary mechanism for decreasing drug concentration during the terminal phase is elimination of drug from the body. The distinguishing

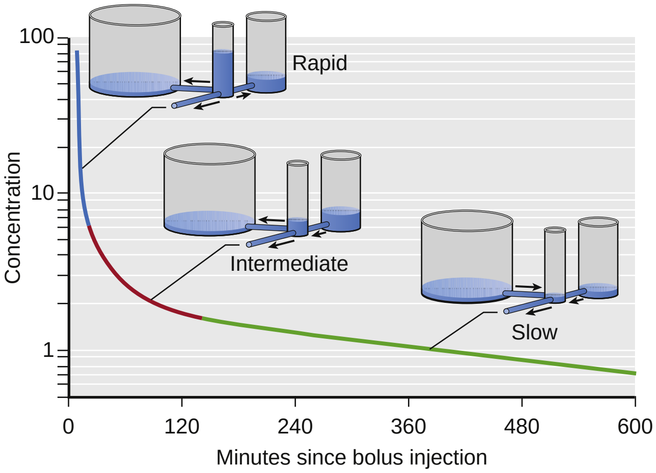


Fig. 18.12 Hydraulic model of fentanyl pharmacokinetics. Drug is administered into the central tank, from which it can distribute into two peripheral tanks, or it may be eliminated. The volume of the tanks is proportional to the volumes of distribution. The cross-sectional area of the pipes is proportional to clearance. (From Youngs EJ, Shafer SL. Basic pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic principles. In: White PF, ed. *Textbook of Intravenous Anesthesia*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1997.)

characteristic of the terminal elimination phase is that the plasma concentration is lower than tissue concentrations and the relative proportion of drug in plasma and peripheral volumes of distribution remains constant. During this terminal phase, drug returns from the rapid- and slow-distribution volumes to plasma and is permanently removed from plasma by metabolism or excretion.

The presence of three distinct phases after bolus injection is a defining characteristic of a three-compartment model.[3] A useful metaphor in describing the features of this model is hydraulics. This model has three tanks corresponding (from left to right) to the slowly equilibrating peripheral compartment, the central compartment (the plasma, into which drug is injected), and the rapidly equilibrating peripheral compartment. The horizontal pipes represent intercompartmental clearance or (for the pipe draining onto the page) metabolic clearance. The volumes of each tank correspond to the volumes of each compartment. The cross-sectional areas of the pipes correlate with fentanyl systemic and intercompartmental clearance. The height of water in each tank corresponds to drug concentration.

By using this hydraulic model, we can follow the processes that decrease drug concentration over time after bolus injection. Initially, drug flows from the central compartment to both peripheral compartments via intercompartmental clearance and completely out of the model via metabolic clearance. Because there are three places for drug to go, the concentration in the central compartment decreases very rapidly. At the transition between the blue line and the red line, a change occurs in the role of the most rapidly equilibrating compartment. At this transition, the concentration in the central compartment falls below the concentration in the rapidly equilibrating compartment, and the direction of flow between them is reversed. After this transition *(red line)*, drug in plasma has only two places to go: into the slowly equilibrating compartment or out the drain pipe. These processes are partly offset by the return of drug to plasma from the rapidly equilibrating compartment. The net effect is that once the rapidly equilibrating compartment has come to equilibration, the concentration in the central compartment falls far more slowly than before.

Once the concentration in the central compartment falls below both the rapidly and slowly equilibrating compartments *(green line)*, the only method of decreasing the plasma concentration is metabolic clearance, the drainpipe. Return of drug from both peripheral compartments to the central compartment greatly slows the rate of decrease in plasma drug concentration.

Curves that continuously decrease over time, with a continuously increasing slope (i.e., curves that look like Fig. 18.12), can be described by a sum of negative exponentials. In pharmacokinetics, one way of denoting this sum of exponentials is to say that the plasma concentration over time is

$$C(t) = Ae^{-\alpha t} + Be^{-\beta t} + Ce^{-\gamma t} \qquad (18.19)$$

where t is the time since the bolus, C(t) is the drug concentration after a bolus dose, and A, α, B, β, C, and γ are parameters of a pharmacokinetic model. A, B, and C are called coefficients, whereas α, β, and γ are called exponents. After a bolus injection, all six of the parameters in Eq. (18.19) will be greater than 0.

Special significance is often ascribed to the smallest exponent. This exponent determines the slope of the final log-linear portion of the curve. When the medical literature refers to the half-life of a drug, unless otherwise stated, the half-life will be the terminal half-life. Some literature occasionally refers to the half-life of the initial distribution phase as distribution half-life. The terminal half-life sets an upper limit on the time required for the concentrations to decrease by 50% after drug administration. Usually, the time needed for a 50% decrease will be much faster than that upper limit.

Special Interests in Anesthetic Pharmacokinetics

Front-End Kinetics

Front-end kinetics refers to the description of intravenous drug behavior immediately following administration. How a drug rapidly moves from the blood into peripheral tissues directly influences the peak plasma drug concentration. The amount of drug that moves to the peripheral tissue commonly surpasses the amount that is eliminated during the first few minutes after drug administration. As an example, consider a simulation of a propofol bolus that plots the accumulation of propofol in peripheral tissues and the amount eliminated over time (Fig. 18.13). During the first 4 minutes, the amount distributed to the peripheral tissue is larger than the amount eliminated out of the body. After 4 minutes, the amounts reverse.

With compartmental models, an important assumption is that an intravenous bolus instantly mixes in the central volume, with the peak concentration occurring at the moment of injection without elimination or distribution to peripheral tissues. For simulation purposes, the initial concentration and volume of distribution at time = 0 are extrapolated as if the circulation had been infinitely fast. This, of course, is not real. If drug is injected into an arm

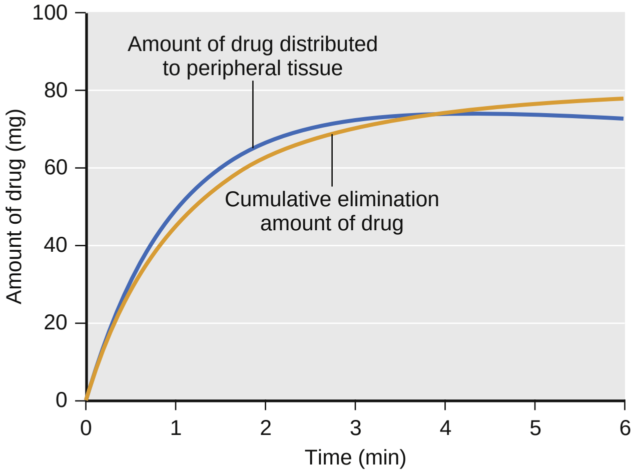


Fig.18.13 Simulation of propofol accumulation in the peripheral tissues *(blue line)* and the cumulative amount of propofol eliminated *(gold line)* following a 2-mg/kg propofol bolus to a 77-kg (170-lb), 53-year-old male who is 177 cm (5 ft 10 inch) tall, using published pharmacokinetic model parameters.[32] Drug indicates propofol.

vein and the initial concentration is measured in a radial artery, drug appears in the arterial circulation 30 to 40 seconds after injection. The delay likely represents the time required for drug to pass through the venous volume of the upper part of the arm, heart, great vessels, and peripheral arterial circulation. More sophisticated models (e.g., a recirculatory model)[4] account for this delay and are useful when characterizing the behavior of a drug immediately following bolus administration such as with induction agents where the speed of onset and duration of action are of interest (Fig. 18.14).

Back-End Kinetics

Using estimates of distribution volume and clearance, back-end kinetics is a useful tool that describes the behavior of intravenous agents when administered as continuous infusions. Back-end kinetics provides descriptors of how plasma drug concentrations decrease once a continuous infusion is terminated. An example is decrement time, which predicts the time required to reach a certain plasma concentration once an infusion is terminated. Decrement times are a function of infusion duration. Consider the example of decrement times for a set of continuous target- controlled infusions (TCIs; Fig. 18.15). In this simulation, TCI of propofol is set to maintain a concentration of 4 µg/mL for 30, 60, and 120 minutes. Once the infusion is stopped, the time to reach 0.5 µg/mL is estimated. As illustrated, the longer the infusion, the longer the time required to reach 0.5 µg/mL. This example demonstrates how drugs accumulate in peripheral tissues with prolonged infusions. This accumulation prolongs the decrement time.

Another use of decrement times is as a tool to compare drugs within a drug class (e.g., opioids). As a comparator, plots of decrement times are presented as a function of infusion duration. When used this way, decrement times are determined as the time required to reach a target percentage of the concentration just before the termination of a continuous infusion. Examples of 50% and 80% decrement times for selected opioids and sedatives are presented in Fig. 18.16. Of note, for shorter infusions, the decrement times are similar for both classes of anesthetic drugs. Once infusion duration exceeds 2 hours, the decrement times vary substantially. A popular decrement time is the 50% decrement time, also known as the context-sensitive half-time.[5] The term "context-sensitive" refers to infusion duration and the term "half-time" refers to the 50% decrement time.

Hysteresis

Hysteresis refers to the time delay between changes in plasma concentration and drug effect. Hysteresis accounts for the time required for drug to diffuse from the plasma to the site of action plus the time required, once drug is at the site of action, to elicit a drug effect. A simulation of various propofol bolus doses and their predicted effect on bispectral index are presented in Fig. 18.17. Of note, the time to peak effect for each dose is identical (approximately 1.5 minutes following the peak plasma concentration). The difference between each dose is the magnitude and duration of effect. A key principle here is that when drug concentrations are in flux (e.g., during induction and emergence), changes in drug effect will lag behind changes in plasma drug concentration. This lag between the plasma concentration and

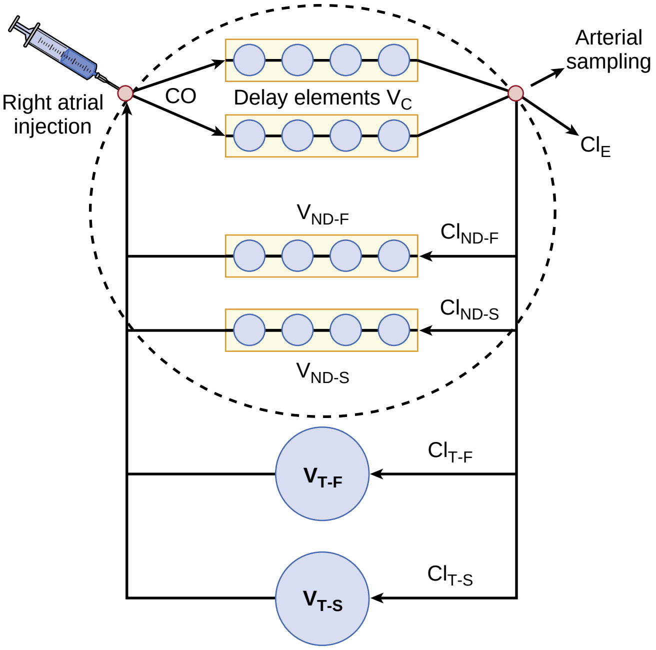


Fig. 18.14 A recirculatory model accounting for cardiac output *(CO)*, transit delays, pulmonary uptake (delay elements V and C), and nondistributive mixing pathways (V_{ND} and Cl_{ND}). All the components within the *dashed circle* are required to accurately model the central volume of distribution. In most situations, this complexity is not required, and the simpler approach of assuming instantaneous mixing within the central volume is an adequate approximation. Cl_{ND-F}, Fast nondistributive clearance; Cl_{ND-S}, slow nondistributive clearance; Cl_{T-F}, fast tissue clearance; Cl_{T-S}, slow tissue clearance; V_{ND-F}, fast nondistributive volume; V_{ND-S}, slow nondistributive volume; V_{T-F}, fast tissue volume; V_{T-S}, slow tissue volume. (From Krejcie TC, Avram MJ, Gentry WB. A recirculatory model of the pulmonary uptake and pharmacokinetics of lidocaine based on analysis or arterial and mixed venous data from dogs. J Pharmacokinet Biopharm. 1997;25:169–190.)

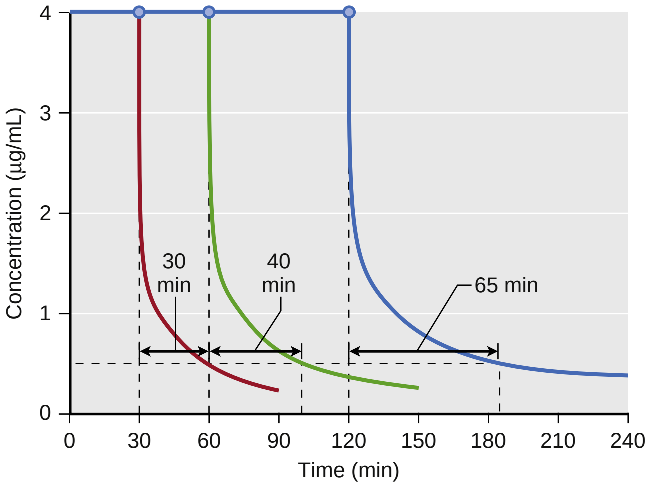


Fig. 18.15 Simulation of decrement times for a target-controlled infusion set to maintain a target propofol concentration of 4 µg/mL for 30, 60, and 120 minutes. Once terminated, the time required to reach 0.5 µg/mL was 30, 40, and 65 minutes for each infusion, respectively. Simulations of the decrement times used a published pharmacokinetic model. (From Schnider TW, Minto CF, Gambus PL, et al. The influence of method of administration and covariates on the pharmacokinetics of propofol in adult volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(5):1170–1182.)

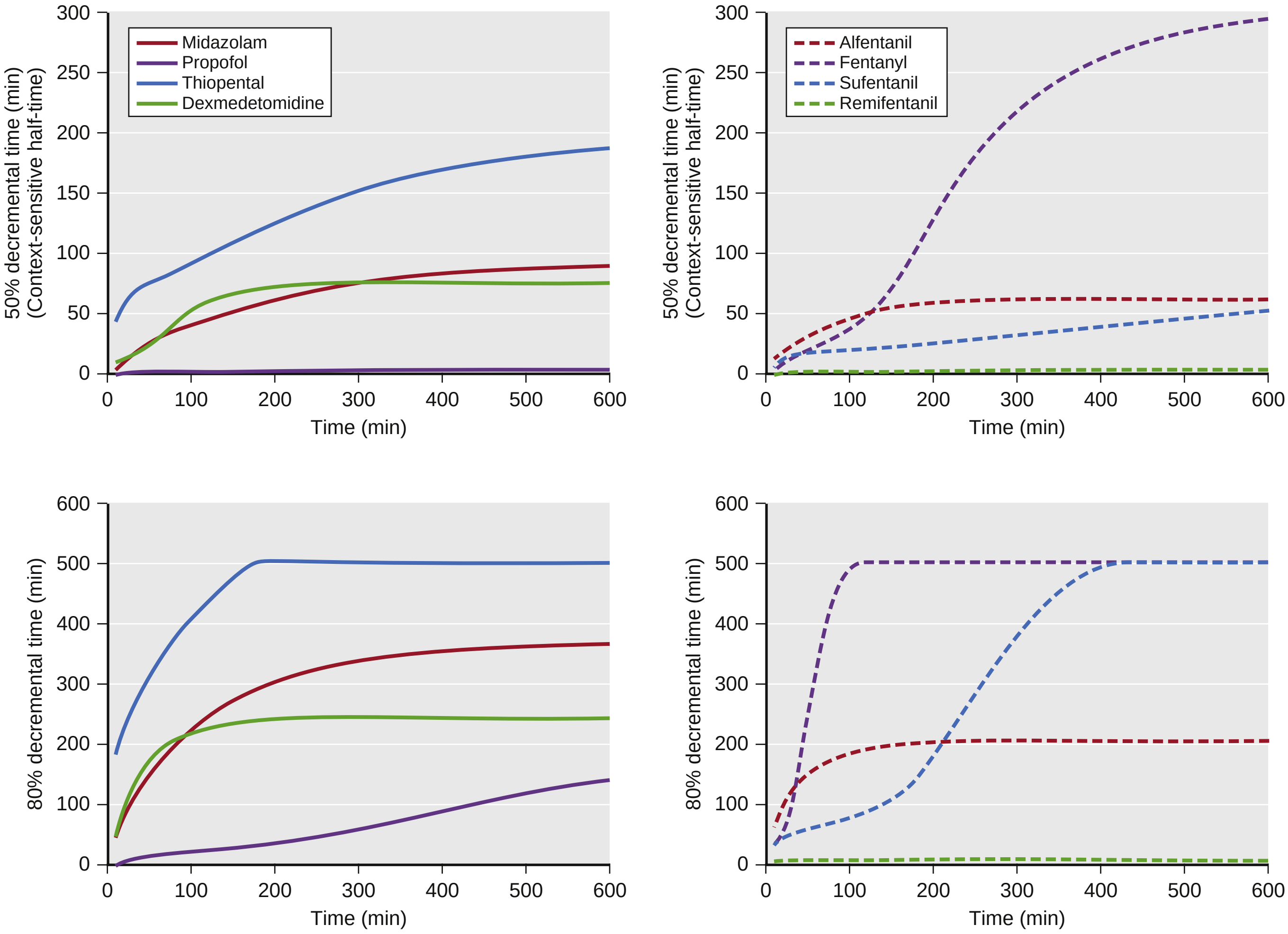


Fig. 18.16 Fifty percent and 80% decrement times for selected sedatives *(left side)* and opioids *(right side)*. The vertical axes refer to the time required to reach the desired decrement time. The horizontal axes refer to infusion duration. Simulations of the decrement times used published pharmacokinetic models for each sedative and analgesic. (Data from references 5, 43, 57, and 68-70.)

effect usually results in the phenomenon called hysteresis in which two different plasma concentrations correspond to one drug effect or one plasma concentration corresponds to two drug effects. Fig. 18.17 shows that different concentrations, C and c, correspond to the same bispectral index scale (BIS). To collapse the hysteresis between plasma concentration and effect and to match one plasma concentration to one drug effect, this lag is often modeled with an effect-site compartment added to the central compartment. Kinetic micro rate constants used to describe biophase include k_{1e} and k_{e0}. The k_{1e} describes drug movement from the central compartment to the effect site, and k_{e0} describe the elimination of drug from the effect-site compartment. There are two important assumptions with the effect-site compartment: (1) the amount of drug that moves from the central compartment to the effect-site compartment is negligible and vice versa, and (2) there is no "volume" estimate to the effect-site compartment.

Typically, the relationship between plasma and the site of drug effect is modeled with an "effect-site" compartment model, as shown in Fig. 18.18. The site of drug effect is connected to plasma by a first-order process. The equation that relates effect-site concentration to plasma concentration is

$$\frac{dCe}{dt} = k_{e0} \times (Cp - Ce) \qquad (18.20)$$

where Ce is the effect-site concentration, Cp is the plasma drug concentration, and k_{e0} is the rate constant for elimination of drug. The constant k_{e0} describes the rate of rise and offset of drug effect (Fig. 18.19).

In summary, although of interest to many clinicians, the conventional pharmacokinetic term *half-life* has limited meaning to anesthetic practice since the clinical behavior of drugs used in anesthesia is not well described by half-life. Instead, the pharmacokinetic principles discussed in this section (such as volume of distribution, clearance, elimination, front-end kinetics, back-end kinetics, context-sensitive half-time, and biophase) describe how drugs used in anesthesia will behave.

Pharmacodynamic Principles

Simply stated, pharmacokinetics describes what the body does to the drug, whereas pharmacodynamics describes what the drug does to the body. In particular, pharmacodynamics describes the relationship between drug concentration and pharmacologic effect.

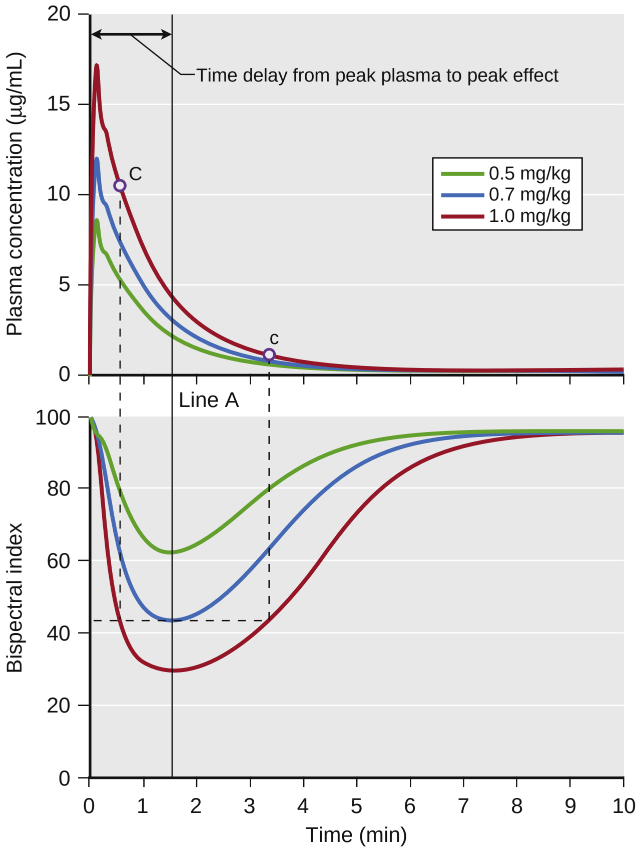


Fig. 18.17 Illustration of hysteresis. The top plot presents a simulation of three propofol doses and the resultant plasma concentrations. The bottom plot presents a simulation of the predicted effect on the bispectral index scale (BIS). These simulations assume linear kinetics: regardless of the dose, effects peak at the same time *(line A)* as do the plasma concentration. The time to peak effect is 1.5 minutes. Even the plasma concentrations of point *C* and *c* are different; the BIS of those two points are same. It shows the hysteresis between plasma concentration and BIS. Simulations used published pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic models. (Data from references 32 and 57.)

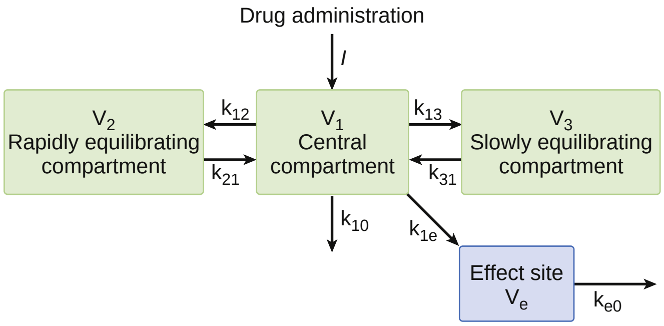


Fig. 18.18 A three-compartment model with an added effect site to account for the delay in equilibration between the rise and fall in arterial drug concentrations and the onset and offset of drug effect. The effect site is assumed to have a negligible volume.

Models used to describe the concentration-effect relationships are created in much the same way as pharmacokinetic models; they are based on observations and used to create a mathematical model. To create a pharmacodynamic model, plasma drug levels and a selected drug effect are measured

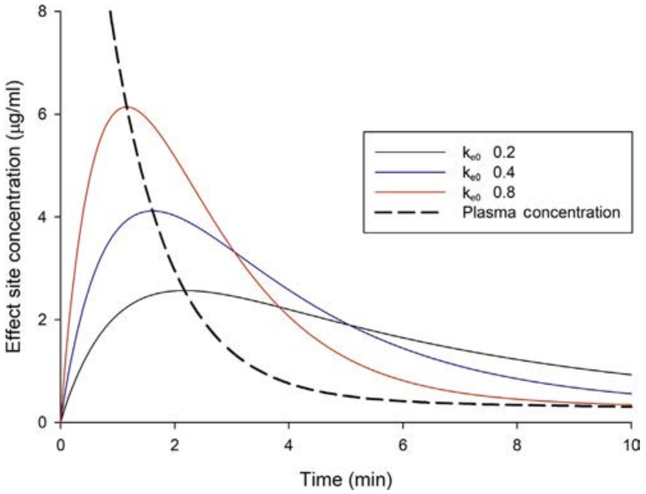


Fig. 18.19 Effect of the k_{e0} changes. As the k_{e0} decreases, the time to peak effect is prolonged. (Data from references 32, 57, 67.)

simultaneously. For example, consider the measured plasma concentrations of a drug following a bolus dose and the associated changes in the spectral edge from one individual presented in Fig. 18.20. Spectral edge is an easily captured metric used to quantify the electroencephalogram (EEG). Shortly after the plasma concentration peaks, the spectral edge starts to drop, reaches a nadir, and then returns to baseline as the plasma concentrations drop to near 0.

Combining data from several individuals and plotting the measured concentrations versus the observed effect (modified to be a percentage of the maximal effect across all individuals), the data create a hysteresis loop (Fig. 18.21). The ascending portion of the loop represents rising drug concentrations (see arrow). While rising, the increase in drug effect lags behind the increase in drug concentration. For the descending loop, the decrease in drug effect lags behind the decrease in drug concentration.

To create a pharmacodynamic model, the hysteresis loop is collapsed using modeling techniques that account for the lag time between plasma concentrations and the observed effect. These modeling techniques provide an estimate of the lag time, known as the $t_{1/2}k_{e0}$, and an estimate of the effect-site concentration (Ce) associated with a 50% probability of drug effect (C_{50}). Most concentration effect relationships in anesthesia are described with a sigmoid curve. The standard equation for this relationship is the “Hill Equation,” also known as the “sigmoid E_{max} relationship” (Eq. 18.21),

$$\text{Effect} = E_0 + \left(E_{max} - E_0\right) * \left(C^{g} / \left(C_{g}^{50} + C^{g}\right)\right) \qquad (18.21)$$

where E_0 is the baseline effect, E_{max} is the maximal effect, C is the drug concentration, and γ (gamma) represents the slope of the concentration-effect relationship. Gamma (γ) is also known as the “Hill coefficient.” For values of $\gamma < 1$, the curve is hyperbolic; for values of $\gamma > 1$, the curve is sigmoid. Fig. 18.22 presents an example of this relationship: a fentanyl effect-site concentration-effect curve for analgesia. This example illustrates how C_{50} and γ characterize the concentration-effect relationship.

Potency and Efficacy

Two important concepts are relevant to this relationship: potency and efficacy. Potency describes the amount of drug

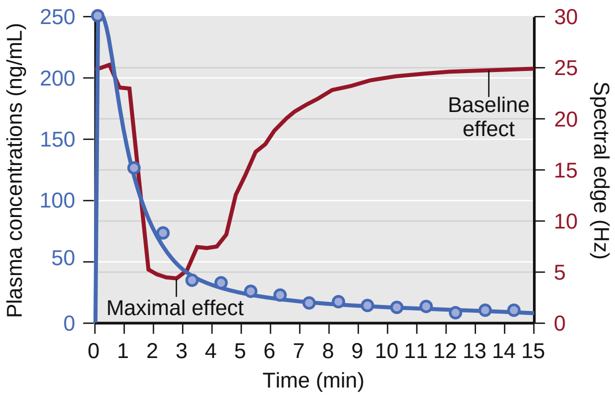


Fig. 18.20 Schematic representation of drug plasma concentrations *(blue circles)* following a bolus and the associated changes in the electroencephalogram's spectral edge *(red line)* measured in one individual. Note that changes in spectral edge lag behind changes in plasma concentrations.

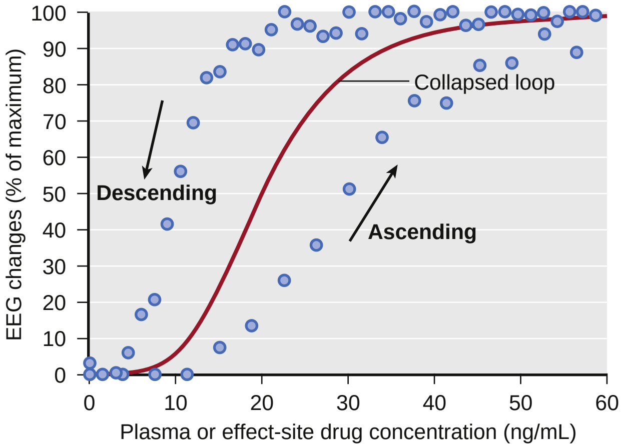


Fig.18.21 Schematic representation of plasma concentrations versus normalized spectral edge measurements (presented as a percentage of maximal effect) from several individuals *(blue circles)*. The black arrows indicate the ascending and descending arms of a hysteresis loop that coincide with increasing and decreasing drug concentrations. The red line represents the pharmacodynamic model developed from collapsing the hysteresis loop. *EEG*, Electroencephalogram.

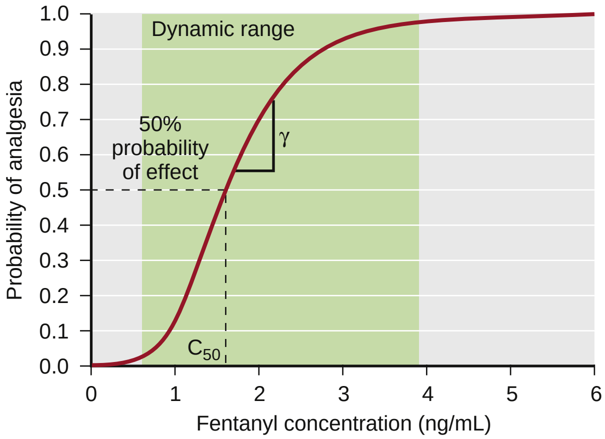


Fig.18.22 A pharmacodynamic model for the analgesic effect of fentanyl. The green area represents the dynamic range, the concentration range where changes in concentration lead to a change in effect. Concentrations above or below the dynamic range do lead to changes in drug effect. The C_{50} represents the concentration associate with 50% probability of analgesia. Gamma (γ) represents the slope of the curve in the dynamic range.

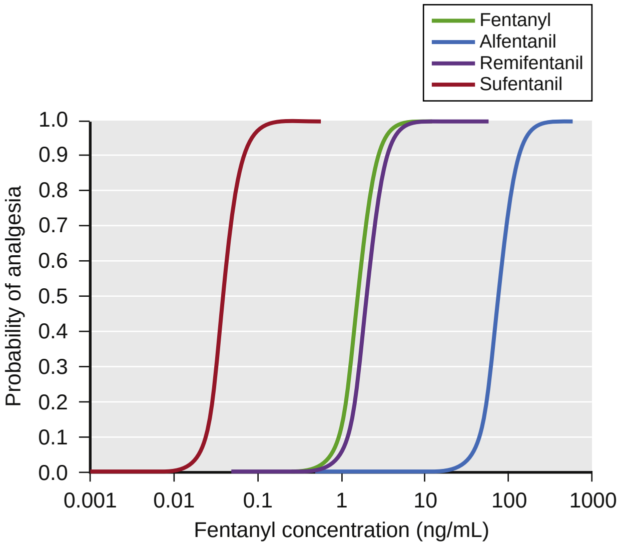


Fig. 18.23 Pharmacodynamic models for fentanyl congeners. The C_{50} for each drug is different, but the slope and maximal effect are similar. (From Egan TD, Muir KT, Hermann DJ, et al. The electroencephalogram (EEG) and clinical measures of opioid potency: defining the EEG-clinical potency relationship ("fingerprint") with application to remifentanil. *Int J Pharmaceut Med.* 2001;15(1):11–19.)

required to elicit an effect. The C_{50} is a common parameter used to describe potency. For drugs that have a concentration-versus-effect relationship that is shifted to the left (small C_{50}), the drug is considered to be more potent; the reverse is true for drugs that have a concentration-versus-effect relationship shifted to the right. For example, as illustrated in Fig. 18.23, the analgesia C_{50} for some of the fentanyl congeners ranges from small for sufentanil (0.04 ng/mL) to large for alfentanil (75 ng/mL). Thus, sufentanil is more potent than alfentanil.

Efficacy is a measure of drug effectiveness at producing an effect once it occupies a receptor. Similar drugs that work through the same receptor may have varying degrees of effect despite having the same receptor occupancy. For example, with G-protein coupled receptors, some drugs may bind the receptor in such a way as to produce a more pronounced activation of second messengers causing more of an effect than others. Drugs that achieve maximal effect are known as full agonists, and those that have an effect less than maximal effect are known as partial agonists.

Effective Versus Lethal Doses

A single drug can have multiple effects. The C_{50} concept is used to compare various drug effects for a single drug. For example, as illustrated in Fig. 18.24, fentanyl has a different C_{50} for analgesia (2 ng/mL), ventilatory depression (4 ng/mL), loss of response to laryngoscopy (15 ng/mL), and changes in the EEG (20 ng/mL).[6]

The concentration range where changes in drug effect occur is known as the *dynamic range*. In Fig. 18.22, the

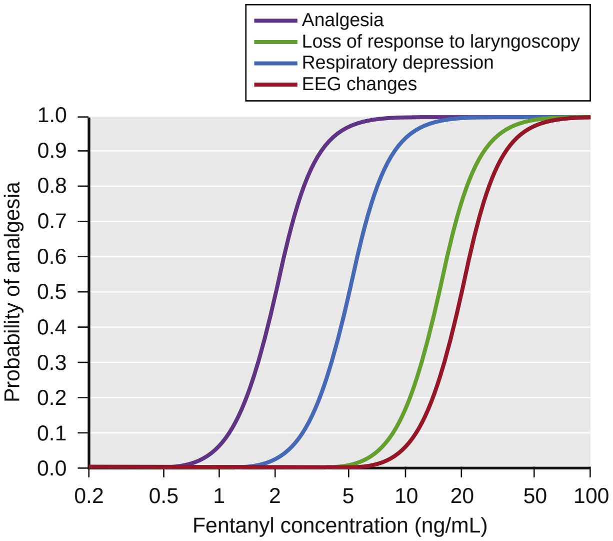


Fig. 18.24 Pharmacodynamic models for various fentanyl effects. *EEG*, **Electroencephalogram.** (From Egan TD, Muir KT, Hermann DJ, et al. The electroencephalogram (EEG) and clinical measures of opioid potency: defining the EEG-clinical potency relationship ("fingerprint") with application to remifentanil. *Int J Pharmaceut Med.* 2001;15(1):11–19.)

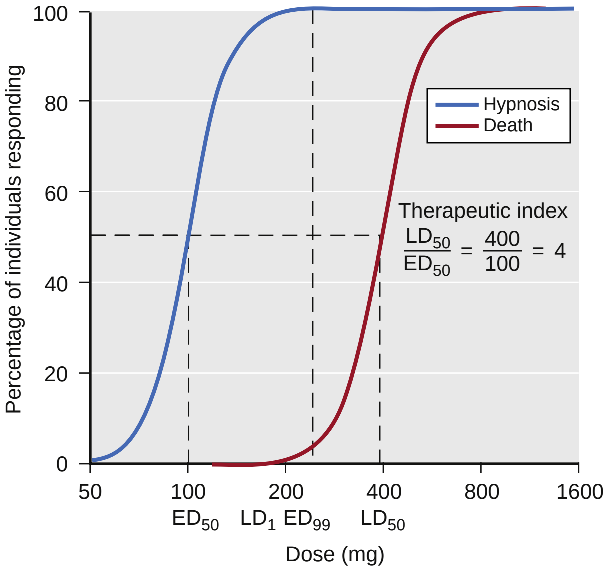


Fig. 18.25 Median effective dose (ED_{50}), median lethal dose (LD_{50}), and the therapeutic index. The blue curve represents the dose-effect relationship for a sedative hypnotic to achieve unresponsiveness. The red curve represents the dose-effect relationship for the same sedative hypnotic to achieve death. The therapeutic index is the ratio of the LD_{50}/ED_{50}, which in this example is 400. Also of interest are the ED_{99} and LD_1. The ED_{99} is the dose with a 99% probability of unresponsiveness, and the LD_1 is the dose with a 1% probability of death. In this example, the LD_1 is less than the ED_{99}, which is clinically unacceptable.

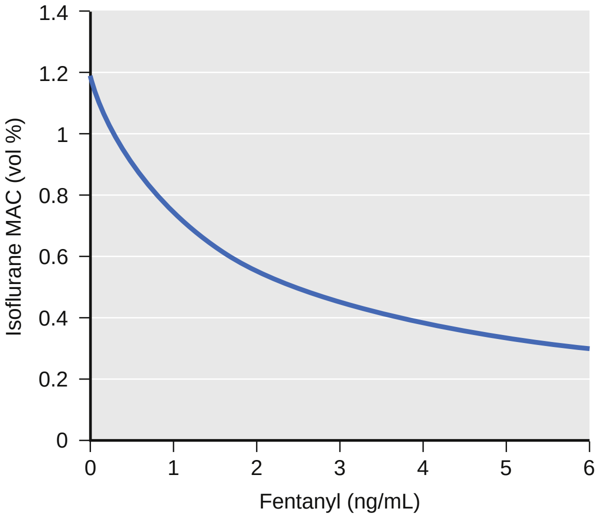


Fig. 18.26 The influence of fentanyl on the isoflurane minimal alveolar concentration *(MAC)* associated with a 50% probability of movement with skin incision. (Modified from McEwan AI, Smith C, Dyar O. Isoflurane minimum alveolar concentration reduction by fentanyl. *Anesthesiology.* 1993;78:864–869.)

dynamic range is from 0.6 to 3.9 ng/mL to cover a probability of analgesia ranging from 2% to 97%. Concentrations outside the dynamic range do not yield much change in drug effect. Levels below the dynamic range are ineffective, and those above the dynamic range do not provide additional effect.

Like other effects, the concentration-relationship for death is also described with a sigmoid E_{max} curve. The relationship between drug and effect is expressed differently in that the horizontal axis uses dose in place of concentration. Similar to the C_{50}, the ED_{50} is the dose at which there is a 50% probability of effect, and the LD_{50} is the dose with a 50% probability of death. The therapeutic index of a drug is defined as the ratio between the LD_{50} and the ED_{50} (Fig. 18.25). The larger the ratio, the safer the drug is for clinical use.

Anesthetic Drug Interactions

Anesthetics rarely consist of one drug, but rather a combination of drugs to achieve desired levels of hypnosis, analgesia, and muscle relaxation. Hypnotics, analgesics, and muscle relaxants all interact with one another such that rarely does one drug, when administered in the presence of other drugs, behave as if it were administered alone. For example, when administering an analgesic in the presence of a hypnotic, analgesia is more profound with the hypnotic than by itself and hypnosis is more profound with the analgesic than by itself. Thus, anesthesia is the practice of applied drug interactions. This phenomenon is likely a function of each class of drug exerting an effect on different receptors.

Early work by McEwan and associates described interactions between two drugs and is illustrated in Fig. 18.26.[7] It presents the interaction between isoflurane, a likely GABA agonist, and fentanyl, an opioid receptor agonist. This plot illustrates two key points: First, with a relatively low fentanyl concentration (<2 ng/mL), there is a substantial decrease (>50%) in the end tidal isoflurane concentration necessary to achieve minimal alveolar concentration (MAC) necessary to avoid movement with skin incision. Second, with fentanyl concentrations above 3 ng/mL, the end tidal concentration of isoflurane to maintain the MAC, although low, does not change much. Thus, there is a ceiling effect indicating that some isoflurane is necessary regardless of the fentanyl concentration to maintain a MAC of anesthesia.

A substantial body of work has been done to explore how anesthetic drugs interact with one another. As illustrated in Fig. 18.27, interactions have been characterized as antagonistic, additive, and synergistic. When drugs that have an

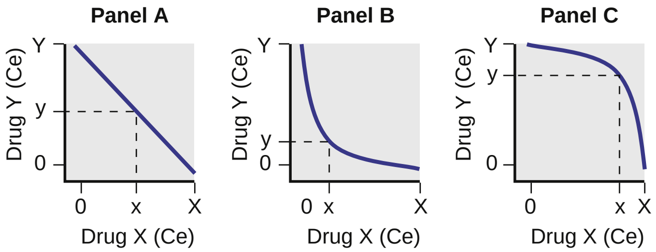


Fig. 18.27 Drug interactions. For two drugs, X and Y, Panel (A) represents additive, Panel (B) represents synergistic, and Panel (C) represents antagonistic interactions.

additive interaction are coadministered, their overall effect is the sum of the two individual effects. With antagonistic interactions, the overall effect is less than if the drug combination were additive; with synergistic interactions, the overall effect is greater than if the drug combination were additive.

A term used to characterize the continuum of drug concentrations across various combinations of drug pairs (X in combination with Y) is the isobole. The isobole is an isoeffect line for a selected probability of effect. A common isobole is the 50% isobole line. It represents all possible combinations of two-drug effect-site concentrations that would lead to a 50% probability of a given effect. Other isoboles are of more clinical interest. For example, the 95% isobole for loss of responsiveness represents the concentration pairs necessary to ensure a 95% probability of unresponsiveness. Similarly, the 5% isobole represents the concentration pairs in which the likelihood of that effect is low (i.e., most patients would be responsive). When formulating an anesthetic dosing regimen, dosing an anesthetic to achieve a probability of effect just above but not far beyond the 95% isobole is ideal (Fig. 18.28).

Hendrickx and colleagues surveyed the literature for work in both humans and animal models that described anesthetic drug interactions for opioids, sedative hypnotics, and inhalation agents for two anesthetic effects: (1) loss of responsiveness (humans) and loss of the righting reflex (animals) and (2) immobility defined as loss of movement in response to noxious stimulus in a nonparalyzed subject.[8] They found several interesting features of anesthetic drug combinations. First, inhalation agents when combined are strictly additive, suggesting a common mechanism of action, except for nitrous oxide, which has an infra-additive interaction with other inhalation agents. Second, interactions between various intravenous drugs and inhalation agents are synergistic except for nitrous oxide and GABA sedative hypnotics. Third, interactions between different classes of intravenous drugs (e.g., opioids and sedative hypnotics) are also primarily synergistic, except for ketamine and benzodiazepines (Fig. 18.29).

Several researchers have developed mathematical models that characterize anesthetic drug interactions in three dimensions. These models are known as response surface models and include effect-site concentrations for each drug, as well as a probability estimate of the overall effect. Fig. 18.30 presents the propofol–remifentanil interaction for loss of responsiveness as published by Bouillon and associates.[9] The response surface presents the full range of remifentanil-propofol isoboles (0%-100%) for loss of responsiveness. There are two common representations of the response surface model: the three-dimensional plot and the topographical plot. The topographical plot represents a top-down view of the response surface with drug concentrations on the vertical and horizontal axes. Drug effect is represented with selected isobole lines (i.e., 5%, 50%, and 95%).

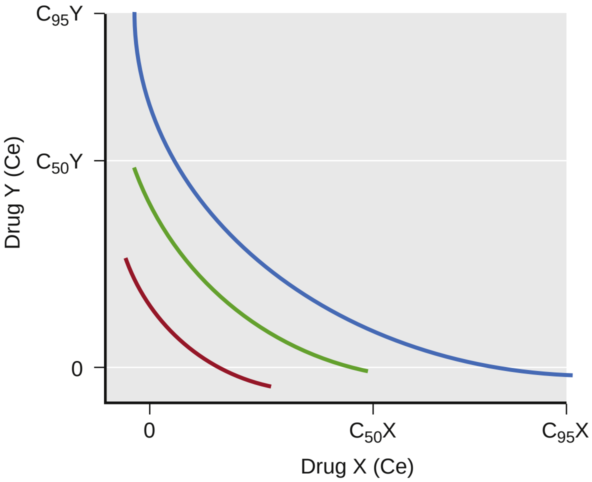
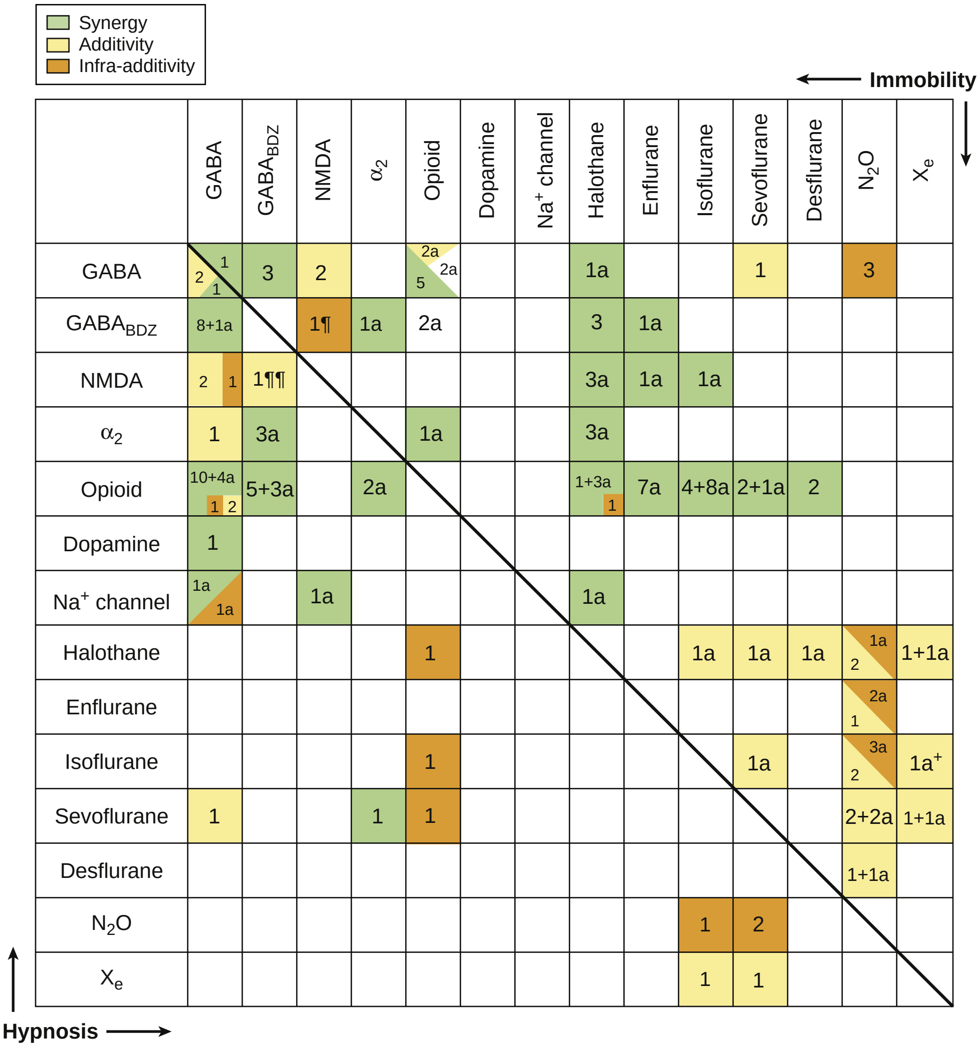


Fig. 18.28 Schematic illustration of iso-effect (isobole) lines. The red, green, and blue lines represent the 50% and 95% isoboles for a synergistic interaction between drugs X and Y. Isoboles represent concentration pairs with an equivalent effect. A set of 5%, 50%, and 95% isoboles can be used to describe the dynamic range of the concentrations for drugs X and Y for a given effect. As with single concentration effect curves, the ideal dosing leads to concentration pairs that are near the 95% isobole.

Response surface models have been developed for a variety of anesthetic effects to include responses to verbal and tactile stimuli, painful stimuli, hemodynamic or respiratory effects, and changes in electrical brain activity. For example, with airway instrumentation, response surface models have been developed for loss of response to placing a laryngeal mask airway,[10] laryngoscopy,[11,12] tracheal intubation,[13] and esophageal instrumentation[14] for selected combinations of anesthetic drugs. Although many response surface models exist, there are several gaps in available models covering all common combinations of anesthetic drugs and various forms of stimuli encountered in the perioperative environment.

Recent work characterizing the interaction between sevoflurane and remifentanil has been done for a variety of drug effects to include loss of responsiveness, loss of response to several surrogates of surgical pain such as electrical tetany (up to 50 mA), pressure algometry (50 PSI pressure on the anterior tibial), loss of response to laryngoscopy, and temperature.[12] Using end tidal measures of sevoflurane was found to be inaccurate under non-steady state conditions (i.e., with a change in vaporizer settings). This was because end tidal concentrations did not account for the hysteresis (or time lag) between end tidal and effect-site concentrations. Improved model predictions were achieved when using estimated effect site concentrations.[15] Overall, for sevoflurane-opioid interactions, analgesic effects are


Immobility
Hypnosis

🟩 Synergy
🟨 Additivity
🟧 Infra-additivity

	GABA	$GABA_{BDZ}$	NMDA	α_2	Opioid	Dopamine	Na^+ channel	Halothane	Enflurane	Isoflurane	Sevoflurane	Desflurane	N_2O	X_e
GABA	🟩 1 🟨 2 🟩 1	🟩 3	🟨 2		🟨 2a 2a 🟩 5			🟩 1a			🟨 1		🟧 3	
$GABA_{BDZ}$	🟩 8+1a		🟧 1¶	🟩 1a	2a			🟩 3	🟩 1a					
NMDA	🟨 2 🟧 1	🟨 1¶¶						🟩 3a	🟩 1a	🟩 1a				
α_2	🟨 1	🟩 3a			🟩 1a			🟩 3a						
Opioid	🟩 10+4a 🟧 1 🟨 2	🟩 5+3a		🟩 2a				🟩 1+3a 🟧 1	🟩 7a	🟩 4+8a	🟩 2+1a	🟩 2		
Dopamine	🟩 1													
Na^+ channel	🟩 1a 🟧 1a		🟩 1a					🟩 1a						
Halothane					🟧 1					🟨 1a	🟨 1a	🟨 1a	🟧 1a 🟨 2	🟨 1+1a
Enflurane													🟧 2a 🟨 1	
Isoflurane					🟧 1						🟨 1a		🟧 3a 🟨 2	🟨 $1a^+$
Sevoflurane	🟨 1			🟩 1	🟧 1								🟨 2+2a	🟨 1+1a
Desflurane													🟨 1+1a	
N_2O										🟧 1	🟧 2			
X_e										🟨 1	🟨 1			

Fig. 18.29 Summary of drug interactions in humans and animals for hypnosis (loss of responsiveness in humans, loss of righting reflex in animals) and immobility (loss of movement in response to a noxious stimulus). The numbers in each cell refer to the number of papers supporting the finding. α_2 Agonists include dexmedetomidine and clonidine. Opioid agonists include morphine, remifentanil, fentanyl, sufentanil, and alfentanil. Dopamine agonists include droperidol and metoclopramide. Na^+ (sodium) channel antagonists include lidocaine and bupivacaine. The letter "a" indicates the interaction was characterized in an animal model. The thick diagonal line separates studies characterizing drug-drug interactions of hypnosis *(bottom half)* and immobility *(top half)*. *GABA*, Gamma aminobutyric acid (GABA agonist drugs include propofol, thiopental, methohexital, and etomidate; $GABA_{BDZ}$ agonist drugs that work via benzodiazepine binding site include midazolam and diazepam); *NMDA*, N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA receptor antagonists include ketamine) (From Hendrickx J, Eger EI 2nd, Sonner JM, et al. Is synergy the rule? A review of anesthetic interactions producing hypnosis and immobility. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:494–506.)

markedly synergistic whereas sedative effects are somewhat synergistic.

Preliminary work has explored the adaptability of the sevoflurane-remifentanil interactions to other potent inhaled agent–opioid combinations using MAC and opioid equivalencies.[16] Predictions from sevoflurane-remifentanil models adapted to isoflurane-fentanyl correlated well with observed effects in patients undergoing elective general surgery procedures. Recent work has also explored the construction of models that characterize the interactions between three or more drugs.[17] For example, Vereecke and associates published a model that accounts for nitrous oxide, sevoflurane, and remifentanil.[18] This is of clinical relevance because most anesthetics consist of more than two anesthetic drugs.

Substantial work has explored interactions between sedative hypnotics and opioids, primarily propofol with alfentanil[19] or remifentanil[9,11,14,20,21] for a variety of effects. As with potent inhaled anesthetics and opioids, the interactions between sedative hypnotics and opioids for analgesic effects are markedly synergistic whereas sedative hypnotic effects are somewhat synergistic.

Some work has explored interactions between different types of sedative hypnotics. Two include midazolam combined with propofol[22,23] and propofol combined with a volatile anesthetic.[24–26] These interactions were found to be primarily additive.

Drug Displays

One major disadvantage to response surface models, as presented in the literature, is that they are complex and difficult to use in a clinical setting. Recent work has adapted these models to drug displays that allow clinicians to use them in real-time patient care settings.

These displays provide estimates of not only drug concentrations (both plasma and effect site) but various drug effects over time such as loss of responsiveness, analgesia, and reduction in response to peripheral train-of-four simulation (i.e., monitoring of muscle relaxant action), among others. With manual entry of patient demographics (age, gender, height, and weight) and drugs administered by syringe, either by bolus or continuous infusion along with automated data collection from an anesthesia machine (end tidal potent inhaled anesthetic concentrations and, in some instances, infusion pump information), drug displays provide predictions of drug concentration and effects. Drug displays are currently available from several anesthesia machine manufacturers (Navigator Suite from GE Healthcare, Wauwatosa, Wisconsin, USA, and SmartPilot View from Dräger, Lübeck, Germany). An example of a drug display is presented in Fig. 18.30. All drug display examples are based on response surface interaction models.

A unique feature of drug displays is that a given dosing regimen can be simulated prior to administration. This information may be useful in identifying the optimal dose in challenging patients, especially when more than one

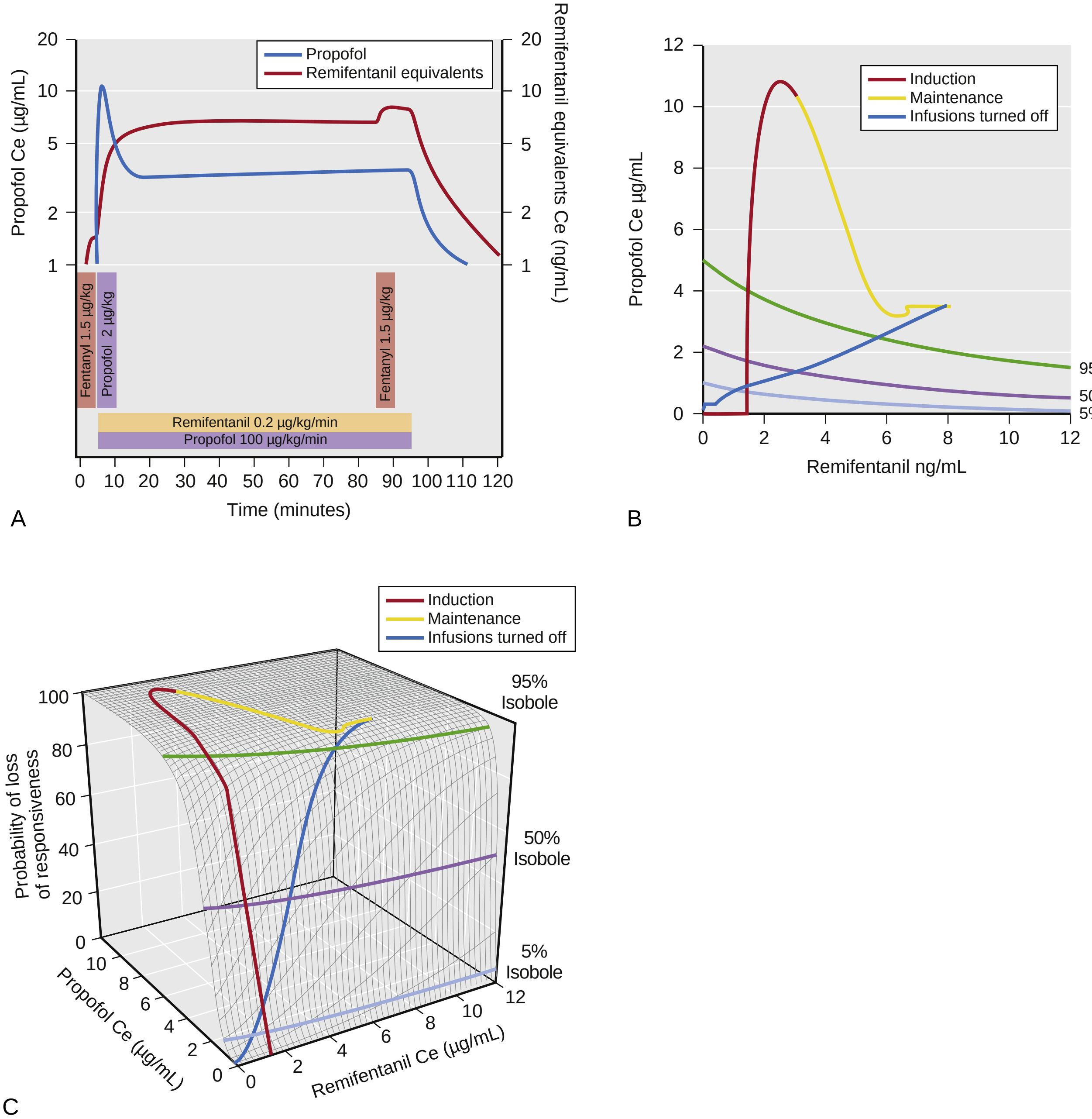


Fig. 18.30 (A–C) Simulation of a 90-minute total intravenous anesthetic consisting of propofol bolus (2 μg/kg) and infusion (100 μg/kg/min), remifentanil (0.2 μg/kg/min), and intermittent fentanyl boluses (1.5 μg/kg). (A) Resultant effect site concentrations (Ce) are presented. (B) Predictions of loss of responsiveness are presented on a topographical *(top-down)* view. (C) A three-dimensional response surface is shown. The light blue, purple, and green lines represent the 5%, 50%, and 95% isoboles. Each isobole presents the propofol-remifentanil pairs that yield the same effect. The inward bow of the isoboles indicates that the interaction is synergistic. The isoboles are in close proximity to one another indicating a steep transition from responsive to unresponsive.

drug is used. The drug displays use population models that, although generalizable, may not provide a good "fit" to every patient. For some drug display systems, observed patient responses are used to calibrate predictions of drug effect (Fig. 18.31). For example, with elderly or debilitated patients, smaller doses are often required to achieve a desired effect. Drug displays allow clinicians to identify concentrations that produce a desired response and can be used to titrate additional anesthetic.

There are several other advantages from using drug displays. When titrating an anesthetic, it is often difficult to appreciate when effect-site concentrations are near steady state. Clinicians may be tempted to administer additional drug assuming that drug concentrations have peaked (with bolus dosing) or are near steady-state conditions (with continuous infusions of potent inhaled anesthetics). Clinicians may also be impatient, assuming that drug concentrations are near zero when in fact they are still increased, even after terminating delivery (e.g., the end tidal potent inhaled agent concentration is 0 mm Hg but there is persistent unresponsiveness).

A second advantage is that drug displays provide a means of delivering passive TCI. Although widely used throughout the world, TCI is not used in the United States because of regulatory barriers.[27] TCI uses population pharmacokinetic models to drive infusion pumps. After entering the target plasma or effect-site concentration, a computer identifies the optimal infusion rate to achieve that concentration. With passive TCI, population models are used to display predicted effect-site concentrations and associated effects over time, but the models do not deliver information to drive infusion pumps as with TCI. With this approach,

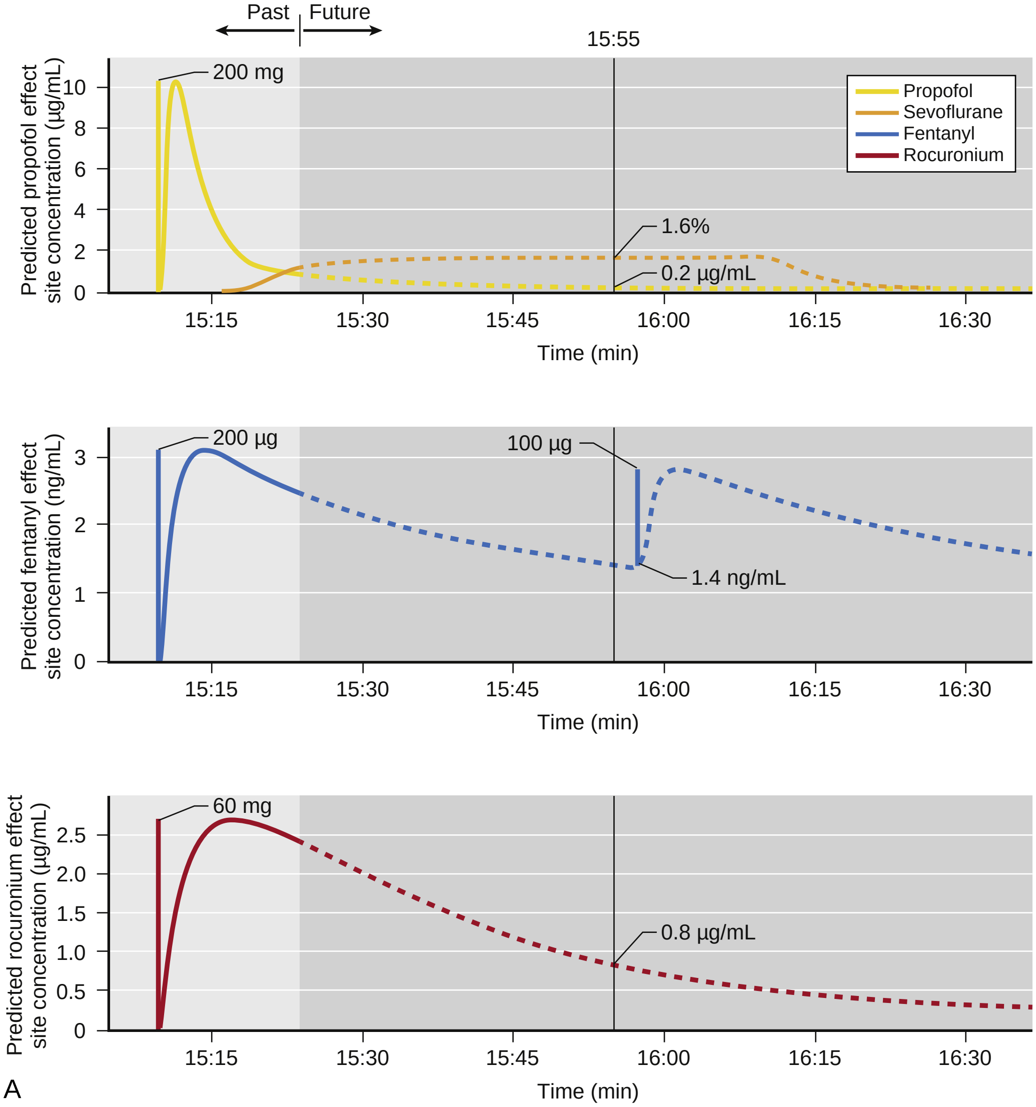


Fig. 18.31 (A) Example of a drug display. This example presents predictions of site effect concentrations (A) and drug effects (B) for a combined technique using fentanyl (2 µg/kg), propofol (2 mg/kg), and rocuronium (0.6 mg/kg) boluses and maintenance with sevoflurane (2%) and fentanyl bolus (1 µg/kg). This simulation assumes a 30-year-old, 100-kg male, 183 cm tall, with normal cardiac output and lung ventilation. (A) Predicted effect site concentrations for propofol *(bright yellow line)*, sevoflurane *(dark orange line)*, fentanyl *(blue line)*, and rocuronium *(red line)*. Bolus doses are represented as vertical lines, with the dose labeled adjacent to the line. Past predictions are solid lines and future predictions are dashed lines. The vertical black line represents a future prediction of effect site concentrations at 15:55 PM. Concentrations are reported.

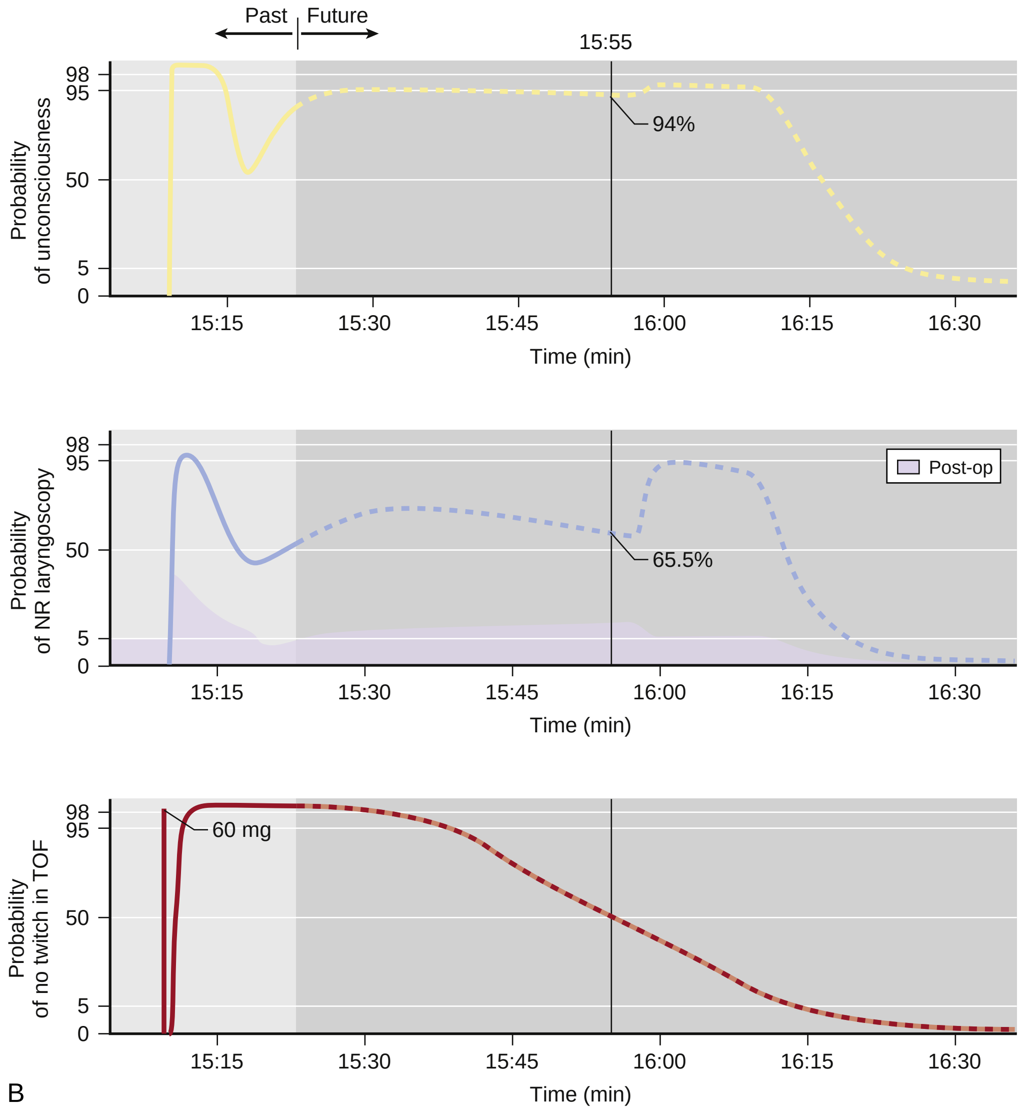


Fig. 18.31 Cont'd (B) Predicted drug effects. Probability of unresponsiveness *(yellow line)*, probability of no response to laryngoscopy *(blue line)*, and probability of loss of train-of-four *(red line)* from this combined technique. The white horizontal lines represent the 5%, 50%, 95%, and 98% probability of effect. The vertical black line represents a future prediction of drug effects at 15:55 PM. *NR*, No response to laryngoscopy; *TOF*, train-of-four. ([A] From Applied Medical Visualizations, Salt Lake City, Utah.)

clinicians can test out dosing regimens (bolus doses and infusion rates) before administering them to confirm they will achieve a desired effect. These features provide for a more consistent approach to drug delivery.

A third advantage is that they provide a better approach to dosing anesthetics. Instead of considering an anesthetic in terms of MAC, where 50% of patients may respond to surgical stimulus, drug displays provide a more refined characterization of anesthetic effect. Clinicians do not titrate an anesthetic to achieve a 50% probability of effect but rather aim for a 95% to 99% probability of effect. With response surfaces, anesthetic dosing regimens necessary to achieve this level of effect are easily visualized. Second, the concept of MAC does not fully embody the three elements of an anesthetic: analgesia, sedation and hypnosis, and muscle relaxation. Drug displays provide a means of visualizing all three effects simultaneously over a full 0% to 100% probability range.

Special Populations

When formulating an anesthetic, many aspects of patient demographics and medical history need to be considered to find the correct *dose*: age; body habitus; gender; chronic exposure to opioids, benzodiazepines, or alcohol; the presence of heart, lung, kidney, or liver disease; and the extent of blood loss or dehydration. Any of these factors can dramatically affect anesthetic drug kinetics and dynamics. Unfortunately, most studies characterizing anesthetic drug behavior have been conducted in healthy volunteers that rarely represent the general population presenting for surgery. Extensive work has explored how some patient characteristics (e.g., obesity) influence anesthetic drug behavior, whereas other patient characteristics remain difficult to assess (chronic opioid exposure). In addition, not all anesthetics have been studied. Most work has primarily focused on newer anesthetic drugs, such as propofol and remifentanil. This section will briefly summarize work that has been done to characterize the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics in a few unique special populations.

Influence of Obesity on Anesthetic Drugs

Obesity is a worldwide epidemic, and overweight patients frequently undergo anesthesia and surgery. Furthermore, pharmacologic alterations of anesthetics occur in obese individuals. In general, manufacturer dosing recommendations are on a per-kg basis according to the actual total body weight (TBW). Anesthesia providers rarely use mg/kg dosing in obese patients for fear of administering an excessive dose (e.g., a 136-kg patient does not require twice as much drug as a patient of the same height who weighs 68 kg). To resolve this problem, several weight scalars were developed to avoid excessive dosing or under dosing in this patient population. Some of these include lean body mass (LBM), ideal body weight (IBW), corrected body weight (CBW), and fat-free mass (FFM). Table 18.1 presents the formulas used to estimate these weight scalars. Table 18.2 shows samples of the resultant scaled weight for lean and obese individuals. In general, the aim of weight scalars is to match dosing regimens for obese patients with what is required for normal-size patients. These scaled weights are usually smaller than TBW in obese patients and thus help prevent excessive drug dosing (Fig. 18.32). Scaled weights have been used in place of TBW for both bolus (mg/kg) and infusion (mg/kg/hr) dosing and also for TCI.

This section will discuss the pharmacologic (primarily pharmacokinetic) alterations of select intravenous anesthetic drugs (propofol, remifentanil, and fentanyl) in obese patients, review examples of weight scalars and their shortcomings when used in bolus and continuous infusion dosing, and when data are available, briefly describe pharmacologic models used to drive TCI.

Propofol

Dosing propofol in obese patients can be a challenge. For bolus dosing and continuous infusions, the choice of weight scalar is specific to the dosing technique being used (i.e., one is best for bolus dosing and another for continuous infusions). Furthermore, of the available propofol pharmacokinetic models, the one built from observations in obese patients may be best for TCI.

The influence of obesity on propofol pharmacokinetics is not entirely clear. Generally, in obese patients, the blood distributes more to nonadipose than to adipose tissues. This may result in higher plasma drug concentrations in obese patients with mg/kg dosing than in normal patients with less adipose mass. Furthermore, propofol clearance increases because of the increased liver volume and/or liver blood flow associated with obesity (and increased cardiac output). Distribution likely influences concentration peaks with bolus dosing, and clearance likely influences concentrations during and following infusions.

TABLE 18.1 Common Weight Scalars (Modified Added Modified Fat-Free Mass)

Name	Equations
Ideal body weight	Male: 50 kg + 2.3 kg for each 2.54 cm (1 inch) over 152 cm (5 ft) Female: 45.5 kg + 2.3 kg for each 2.54 cm (1 inch) over 152 cm (5 ft)
Corrected body weight	IBW + 0.4 × (TBW–IBW)
Lean body mass	Male: $1.1 \times TBW - 128 \times (TBW/Ht)^2$ Female: $1.07 \times TBW - 148 \times (TBW/Ht)^2$
Fat-free mass[66]	Male: $(9.27 \times 10^3 \times TBW)/(6.68 \times 10^3 + 216 \times BMI)$ Female: $(9.27 \times 10^3 \times TBW)/(8.78 \times 10^3 + 244 \times BMI)$
Pharmacokinetic mass[46,47]	$52/[1+(196.4 \cdot e^{-0.025\ TBW} - 53.66)/100]$ (fentanyl only)
Modified fat-free mass[28,36]	FFM + 0.4 × (TBW–FFM)

BMI, Body mass index; *FFM*, fat free mass; *Ht*, height in centimeters; *IBW*, ideal body weight; *LBM*, lean body mass; *TBW*, total body weight in kg.

TABLE 18.2 Dosing Weights Based on Various Dosing Scalars (Values Per K Johnson)

	176-cm (6 FT) Male	
	68 kg BMI = 22	185 kg BMI = 66
Dosing Scalar	**Dosing Weight (kg)**	**Dosing Weight (kg)**
Total body weight (TBW)	68	185
Ideal body weight (IBW)	72	72
Corrected body weight (CBW)	70	117
Lean body mass (LBM)	56	62
Fat-free mass (FFM)	55	88
Modified fat-free mass (MFFM)	60	127

BMI, Body mass index (kg/m^2).

Dosing Scalars for Propofol. Simulations of an infusion using various weight scalars are presented in Fig. 18.33. The simulations predict propofol effect-site concentrations from a 60-minute infusion (167 μg/kg/min) in 176-cm (6-ft) males, obese (185 kg), and lean (68 kg). If dosed according to TBW, peak effect-site concentrations in a lean and obese individual are different; their respective peak propofol concentrations are approximately 5.2 and 7.1 μg/mL, respectively. If the obese individual is dosed to CBW, the peak concentration is near 4.5 μg/mL. The other weight scalars lead to much lower concentrations with the infusion.

Of the many available dosing scalars, authors recommend LBM[12] for bolus dosing (i.e., during induction) and TBW or CBW for infusions.[9,13] For continuous infusions, other weight scalars are likely inadequate (the most worrisome is LBM). When dosing to CBW, plasma concentrations may be lower than concentrations when dosed to TBW.

One concern with using TBW to dose continuous infusions is drug accumulation. Prior work, however, does not support this assumption. Servin and colleagues[28] performed pharmacokinetic analyses of propofol administration to normal and obese patients using TBW and CBW. The CBW was defined as the IBW + 0.4 × (TBW−IBW).[29] They found similar concentrations at eye opening in both groups

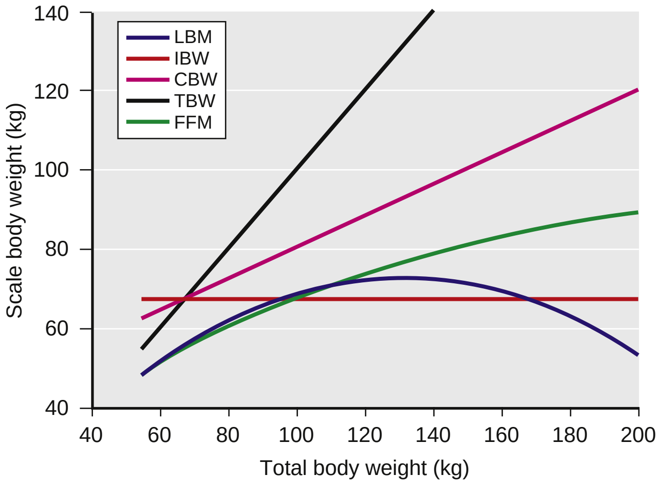


Fig. 18.32 Scaled weights as a function of total body weight *(TBW)*. Key points in this plot: IBW remains the same regardless of the TBW, and LBM starts to decline for weight increases above 127 kg. *CBW*, Corrected body weight; *FFM*, fat-free mass; *IBW*, Ideal body weight; *LBM*, lean body mass (for a 40-year-old male, 176 cm tall).

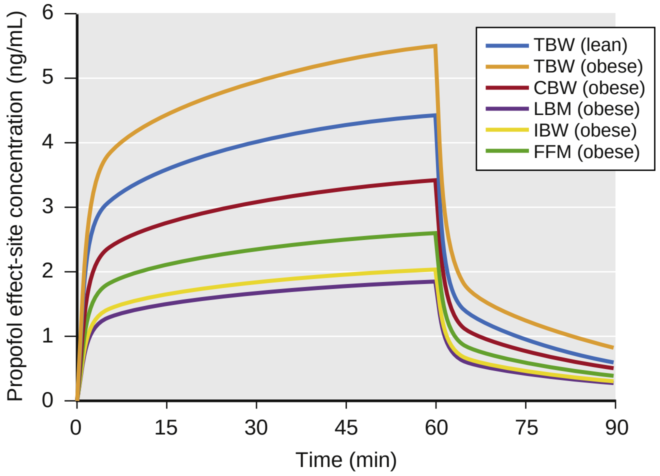


Fig. 18.33 Simulations of propofol effect site concentrations that result from a 60-minute infusion (10 mg/kg/h–167 μg/kg/min) to a 40-year-old male who is 176 cm tall. Simulations include the following dosing weights: total body weights *(TBW)* of 68 kg and 185 kg (body mass indices of 22 and 60, respectively) and scaled weights for the 185 kg weight to include Servin's corrected body weight *(CBW)*, lean body mass *(LBM)*, ideal body weight *(IBW)*, and fat-free mass *(FFM)*. Key points: At the 185-kg weight, when dosed to TBW, the infusion leads to high propofol concentrations, whereas when dosed to IBW or LBM, the infusion leads to low propofol concentrations. When the 185-kg individual is dosed using CBW, it best approximates the propofol concentrations that result from TBW in a lean individual. Predictions of propofol effect site concentrations were made using the Eleveld model.

and absence of propofol accumulation in obese patients; in fact, obese patients showed earlier awareness after the termination of propofol infusions than did the normal subjects. Data suggest that dosing infusions according to Servin's CBW may underdose obese patients.[30]

Propofol Kinetic Models Target-Controlled Infusions. Of the many available models, the two most widely used propofol kinetic models for TCI are those published by Marsh and associates and Schnider and associates.[31,32] In addition to model selection, as with bolus and continuous infusion dosing, identifying the ideal weight scalar to use is also important.

The Marsh model, although useful, was built from data collected in a pediatric population. Researchers have explored different dosing weights using this model in morbidly obese patients when coadministered with remifentanil with varied results. Albertin and colleagues[29] used CBW to dose a propofol TCI using the Marsh model. They found predicted substantially overestimated measured propofol concentrations and expressed concern for intraoperative awareness when using CBW with the Marsh TCI model. The same group[33] compared the predictive performance of the TCI using CBW versus TBW and found that CBW performed worse than TBW. They concluded that TBW, not CBW, should be used to administer propofol via TCI to morbidly obese patients. In contrast, recently, Cortinez and colleagues[34] evaluated the several pharmacokinetic models, and the use of CBW with the Marsh and Schnider models (described later) showed acceptable prediction performances. They stated that with both models using CBW is one of the best options for propofol TCI in obese patients, as their opinion. In any case, electroencephalographic monitoring is recommended to avoid the risk of awareness.

The Schnider model, although built from data collected in adults over a range of weights, heights, and ages, does not specifically include obese patients. This model uses the weight scalar LBM, which has limited application in morbidly obese patients.[32]

For comparison, the Marsh or the Schnider model has been applied on morbidly obese patients. Echevarria and colleagues[35] reported differences in effect-site propofol concentrations with a BIS of less than 60 between the two pharmacokinetic models when used for induction in morbidly obese patients. To achieve a 95% probability of effect, target concentrations of 4.2 and 5.5 μg/mL were required for the Marsh and Schnider models, respectively. This difference occurred because of the potential prediction errors in each pharmacokinetic model that was used (the actual drug concentrations in each patient are unknown).

Cortinez and colleagues used an international data repository called Open TCI (http://www.opentci.org) to build a model using propofol concentrations from a wide range of body weights.[36] They built a propofol kinetic model that scales normal-size to obese individuals using an empirically derived formula that uses allometric scaling. In this formula, TBW accounts for differences in distribution and clearances in obese patients. TBW is divided by a standard patient size (70 kg) and raised to the power of 1 for distribution volumes and by the power of 0.75 for clearances. Van Kralingen and colleagues[37] further modified this approach and reported better model performance with exponents of 0.71 for clearance. Eleveld and colleagues[38] constructed a general purpose allometric pharmacokinetic model for propofol using a large dataset containing data from young children, children, adults, elderly, and obese individuals (pharmacokinetic parameter estimates can be calculated by entering patient demographics at http://www.eurosiva.eu/tivatrainer/modeltranslate/calc_compartments.html; last accessed 2018/01/05). Cortinez and colleagues[34] evaluated the predictive performances of the five foregoing models (i.e., Marsh, Schnider, Cortinez, Van Kralingen, and Eleveld models) in data from obese patients and found that

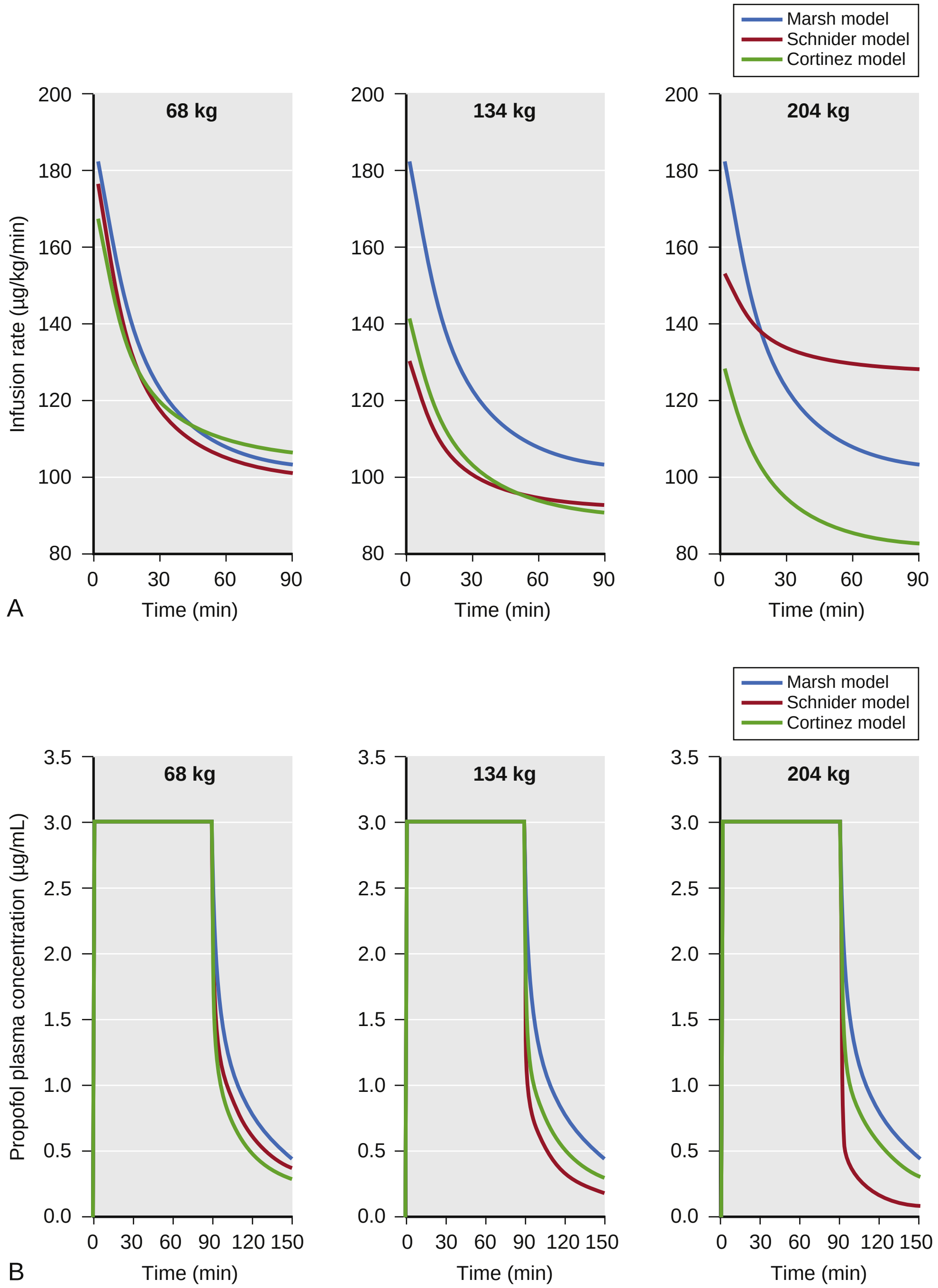


Fig.18.34 Simulations of a 90-minute propofol target-controlled infusion set to achieve and maintain a plasma concentration (Cp) of 3 µg/mL using four different published propofol pharmacokinetic models: Marsh and associates,[31] Schnider and associates,[32] Cortinez and associates,[36] and Eleveld and associates.[36,38] Simulations assumed 40-year-old males who are 176 cm tall and weigh 68, 134, or 204 kg. (A) Propofol infusion rates for each model at each weight. (B) Propofol plasma concentrations predicted by each model for each weight.

the Eleveld allometric pharmacokinetic model performed best. They stated that the Eleveld model using TBW is one of the best options for propofol TCI in obese patients.

Fig. 18.34 presents a simulation of propofol infusion rates and associated plasma concentrations using the Marsh, Schnider, Cortinez, and Eleveld models to drive a TCI to achieve a concentration of 3 µg/mL. Key points from this simulation include: TCI infusions based on the Marsh model are linear to TBW such that the infusion rates and plasma concentrations are identical across weights. With an increase in body weights, the degree of increase in total propofol amounts for TCI administrations is smaller with the Cortinez and Eleveld models than with the Marsh and Schnider models.

For propofol, the Eleveld model may be best suited for TCI in obese and morbidly obese patients. Unfortunately, this model is not yet available in many commercial TCI pumps. One caveat that is important to consider is that model differences are likely overshadowed by inter-individual variability. In sum, any one of the four models will likely yield similar clinical results if titrated to effect in conjunction with processed EEG monitoring.

Other Sedatives. Only limited information is available on the behavior of other sedatives (i.e., midazolam, ketamine, etomidate, dexmedetomidine, and barbiturates) in obese patients. In a study by Greenblatt and associates, the volume of distribution even when normalized to weight (e.g., L/kg) was larger in obese patients, suggesting that lean tissue may take up less midazolam than adipose tissue.[39] Thus, midazolam's distribution volume follows the TBW: as patient size increases, so does the distribution volume. In addition, midazolam elimination was the same in all study subjects (lean or obese). This suggests that regardless of dose, hepatic metabolism of midazolam is fixed and elimination will require more time in obese patients. Another interesting finding was that time to peak concentration and peak plasma drug concentrations were the same when administered in a weight-normalized fashion regardless of body habitus.

Although not clinically validated in obese patients, the authors recommend that bolus doses should be scaled to TBW and other dosing scalars may lead to inadequate effect. On the other hand, with a fixed elimination, continuous infusion rates should be dosed to IBW.[39]

Cortinez and colleagues[40] characterized the influence of obesity on pharmacokinetics of dexmedetomidine and found that fat mass is not related to a proportional increase in distribution volume and is associated with the impairment of clearance. Xu and colleagues[41] performed noncompartment pharmacokinetic analysis of dexmedetomidine with dosing calculated on TBW. In obese patients, higher initial concentrations and lower clearance per kg, and deeper sedation with lower SpO_2 values were observed. These results suggest that dosing of dexmedetomidine, which is calculated using TBW, can be overdosing in these populations.

OPIOIDS

With the exception of remifentanil, minimal work has explored the implication of obesity on the kinetic and dynamic behavior of opioids.

Remifentanil

In obese patients, largely due to its rapid metabolism by nonspecific esterases, the distribution volume and clearance of remifentanil are similar in lean and obese patients.[42] As with propofol, researchers have explored several scaled weights in an effort to optimize bolus dosing, continuous infusions, and TCIs.

Dosing Scalars

As previously noted with propofol, simulation is used to present the predicted remifentanil effect-site concentrations and analgesic effect for a variety of scaled weights in individuals 174 cm in height, some obese (185 kg, BMI of 60) and lean (68 kg, BMI of 22) (Fig. 18.35). Several key points are illustrated in these simulations:

1. For an obese patient, dosing scaled to FFM resulted in almost identical remifentanil effect-site concentrations as in the lean patient dosed according to TBW. Unlike propofol, dosing remifentanil to CBW *(red line)* leads to higher plasma concentrations compared with levels achieved when dosing to TBW in a lean individual.
2. Dosing scaled to LBM in the obese individual resulted in lower effect-site concentrations than those in a lean individual dosed according to TBW.

Remifentanil Kinetic Models for Target-Controlled Infusions

For remifentanil TCI, there is one available pharmacokinetic model published by Minto and associates.[43] Although built from data collected in adults over a range of weights, heights, and ages, obese patients and morbidly obese patients were not included. Many of the model parameters are scaled to LBM. As previously discussed, this may limit the application of this model in the morbidly obese. Kim and colleagues[44] developed a new population pharmacokinetic model for remifentanil that characterize the influence of

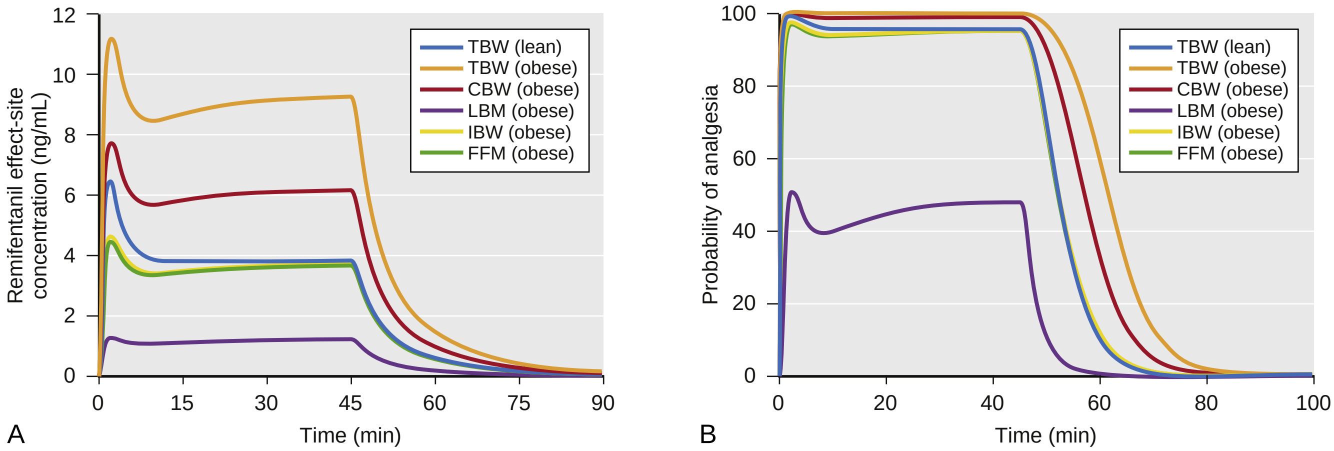


Fig. 18.35 (A and B) Simulations of remifentanil effect-site concentrations (A) and analgesic effect (B) that result from a 1 μg/kg bolus and a 60-minute infusion at a rate of 0.15 μg/kg/min to a 40-year-old male who is 176 cm tall. Simulations include the following dosing weights: total body weights *(TBW)* of 68 kg and 185 kg (body mass indices of 22 and 60, respectively) and scaled weights for the 185-kg weight to include Servin's corrected body weight *(CBW)*, lean body mass *(LBM)*, ideal body weight *(IBW)*, and fat free mass *(FFM)*. Remifentanil effect-site concentrations and estimates of analgesic effect were estimated using published pharmacokinetic models. (From Minto CF, Schnider TW, Egan TD, et al. Influence of age and gender on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of remifentanil. I. Model development. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(1):10–23.)

body weight using allometric body mass scaling in the general adult population.

Fig. 18.36 presents a simulation of the predicted remifentanil plasma concentrations based on the Minto and Kim models. The Minto model overestimates remifentanil concentrations with increasing weight. This is likely due to the use of LBM when estimating pharmacokinetic parameters.

In summary, available models (Minto or Kim) are appropriate for TCI in this patient group but will administer different amounts of remifentanil and require titration to achieve desired yet avoid adverse clinical effects.

FENTANYL

Despite widespread use in the clinical arena, relatively little work has explored how obesity impacts fentanyl pharmacokinetics. Published fentanyl pharmacokinetic models[45] tend to overestimate fentanyl concentrations as TBW increases. A fentanyl kinetic model based on data collected in obese subjects has not (yet) been published. Shibutani and colleagues[46,47] explored ways to improve predictions using published models by modifying demographic data (e.g., either height or weight). They characterized a nonlinear relationship between fentanyl clearance and TBW and recommended the use of a modified weight, called the pharmacokinetic mass, to improve the predictive performance of one of the many available fentanyl kinetic models, a model published by Shafer and colleagues. They explored the use of pharmacokinetic mass when dosing obese patients with fentanyl in a postoperative setting. They found that dosing based on TBW may be excessive.[36]

Other Opioids

Even less information regarding the impact of obesity on drug behavior is available for opioids other than remifentanil and fentanyl. Sufentanil has been studied in obese patients, where its volume of distribution increases linearly with TBW[48] and clearance was similar between lean and obese individuals. It was recommended that bolus dosing use TBW and “prudently reduced” dosing for continuous infusions. For TCI, Slepchenko and colleagues found model estimates of sufentanil concentrations accurately predicted measured concentrations in morbidly obese patients[49] using a previously published mode of sufentanil kinetics by Gepts and associates.[50] This is likely due to the fact that the kinetic model was built from measured concentrations in patients with a weight range of 47 to 94 kg. de Hoogd and colleagues[51] performed a population pharmacokinetic analysis of intravenous morphine in morbidly obese individuals. They found that morphine pharmacokinetics were comparable to those of healthy volunteers. They concluded that no weight-based dosing adjustments were necessary. However, they also found that the elimination of pharmacologically active metabolite was decreased, resulting in an increased exposure to active metabolite with prolonged administrations. They concluded that the clinical relevance of this phenomenon was not clear.

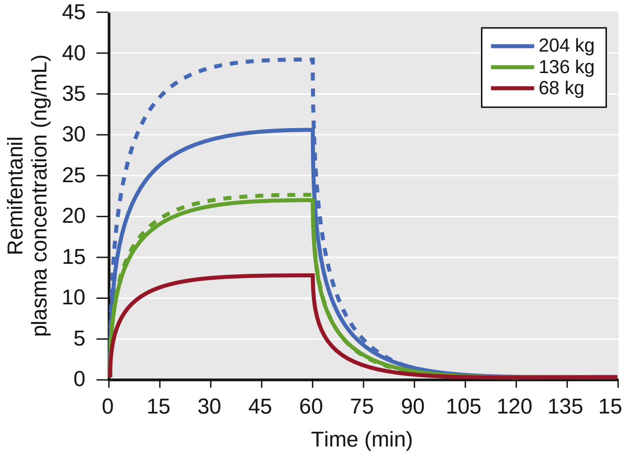


Fig. 18.36 Simulations of remifentanil plasma concentrations that result from a 60-minute infusion (0.5 μg/kg/min) in a 40-year-old male, 176 cm tall. The simulations include three total body weights: 68, 136, and 204 kg with body mass indices of 22, 44, and 66, respectively. Simulations were performed using pharmacokinetic parameters published by Minto and associates[43] *(dashed lines)* and Kim and colleagues[44] *(solid lines)*. In an extremely obese (204 kg) individual, Minto's model predicts very high remifentanil concentrations.

INHALED ANESTHETICS

The perception of volatile anesthetics is that they accumulate more in obese than in lean patients and that this leads to prolonged emergence. Studies on inhalation anesthetics in obese individuals, however, have not confirmed this perception.[52] Two phenomena contribute to this observation: first, blood flow to adipose tissue *decreases* with increasing obesity,[53] and second, the time required to fill adipose tissue with volatile anesthetics is long. The time required to achieve 63% of the final equilibrium within adipose tissue for desflurane and isoflurane are longer than 22 and 35 hours, respectively.[54,55]

INFLUENCE OF AGE ON ANESTHETIC DRUG PHARMACOLOGY

Clinicians are often faced with anesthetizing elderly adults and have long recognized that they usually require a smaller dosage of most anesthetics to produce the desired therapeutic effect while minimizing adverse effects. Age is one of the most valuable in covariates to consider when developing an anesthetic plan. The influence of age on pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of many anesthetics has been well described. As with obesity, both remifentanil and propofol can serve as prototypes to understand how age influences anesthetic drug behavior. Studies specifically designed to assess the influence of age on remifentanil and propofol have characterized the influence of age in quantitative terms.[32,38,43,44,56,57]

With remifentanil, elderly patients require less drug to produce an opioid effect. Reduced doses are primarily a function of changes in pharmacodynamics, but may involve pharmacokinetic changes as well.[43] The concentration required to produce electroencephalographic changes is decreased. Based on previously published pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic models built from measurements over a wide age range,[32,43,56,57] simulations can be performed to explore how age may influence dosing. For example, to achieve equipotent doses in 20- and 80-year-olds, the dose for the 80-year-old should be reduced by 55%. A similar analysis for propofol recommends that the dose for an 80-year-old should be reduced by 65% compared to that of a 20-year-old.

The mechanisms for these changes are not clear, especially for pharmacodynamic changes. One possible source of change in pharmacokinetic behavior may be due to decreased cardiac output. Lower cardiac output in the elderly[58] results in slower circulation and subsequent changes in drug distribution and redistribution. This may lead to high peak concentrations[58,59] and decreased drug delivery to metabolic organs and reduced clearance. This is consistent with what has been reported for many intravenous anesthetics (propofol, thiopental, and etomidate), which have slower clearance and a smaller volume of distribution.[32,60–62] Beyond age-related changes in cardiac output, it is important to consider comorbidities that may reduce cardiovascular function.[63] Taking this into account, anesthesiologists often consider a patient's "physiologic" age instead of solely relying on actual age.[64,65] For some older adult patients, such as those with no significant coexisting disease, normal body habitus, and good exercise tolerance, a substantial reduction in dose may not be warranted.

Summary

This chapter reviewed basic principles of clinical pharmacology used to describe anesthetic drug behavior: pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, and anesthetic drug interactions. These principles provide the information needed to make rational decisions about the selection and administration of anesthetics. From a practical aspect, these principles characterize the magnitude and time course of drug effect, but because of complex math requirements, they have limited clinical utility in everyday practice. Advances in computer simulation, however, have brought this capability to the point of real-time patient care. Perhaps one of the most important advances in our understanding of clinical pharmacology is the development of interaction models that describe how different classes of anesthetic drugs influence one another. This is especially relevant to anesthesiologists, given that they rarely use just one drug when providing anesthesia.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Wilkinson GR, Shand DG. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1975;18:377.
2. Ebling WF, Wada DR, Stanski DR. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1994;22:259.
3. Youngs EJ, Shafer SL. Basic pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic principles. In: White PF, ed. *Textbook of Intravenous Anesthesia*. Baltimore: William & Wilkins; 1997.
4. Krejcie TC, Avram MJ, Gentry WB. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1997;25:169.
5. Hughes MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(3):334.
6. Egan TD, et al. *Int J Pharm Med*. 2001;15(1):11.
7. McEwan AI, Smith C, Dyar O. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:864.
8. Hendrickx J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:494.
9. Bouillon TW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(6):1353.
10. Heyse B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(2):311.
11. Kern SE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(6):1373.
12. Manyam SC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(2):267.
13. Mertens MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(2):347.
14. LaPierre CD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(3):490.
15. Johnson KB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(2):387.
16. Syroid ND, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(2):380.
17. Minto CF, Schnider TW. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1603.
18. Vereecke HE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013.
19. Vuyk J, Lim T, Engbers FH. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(8).
20. Johnson KB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(2):471.
21. Zanderigo E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(4):742.
22. Fidler M, Kern SE. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(2):286.
23. Vinik HR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(2):354.
24. Harris RS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(6):1170.
25. Schumacher PM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(4):790.
26. Sebel LE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(6):1176.
27. Egan TD, Shafer SL. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(5):1039.
28. Servin F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(4):657.
29. Albertin A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(1):66.
30. Igarashi T, et al. *Masui*. 2002;51(11):1243.
31. Marsh B, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67(1):41.
32. Schnider TW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(5):1170.
33. La Colla L, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26(5):362.
34. Cortinez LI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(2):302.
35. Echevarria GC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(4):823.
36. Cortinez LI, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(4):448.
37. van Kralingen S, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;71(1):34.
38. Eleveld DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(6):1221.
39. Greenblatt DJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61(1):27.
40. Cortinez LI, et al. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 2015;71(12):1501.
41. Xu B, et al. *J Anesth*. 2017;31(6):813.
42. Egan TD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:562–573.
43. Minto CF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(1):10.
44. Kim TK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(6):1019.
45. Shafer SL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:1091–1102.
46. Shibutani K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(3):603.
47. Shibutani K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(3):377.
48. Schwartz AE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73(6):790.
49. Slepchenko G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(1):65.
50. Gepts E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(6):1194.
51. de Hoogd S, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2017;56(12):1577.
52. Cortinez LI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(1):70.
53. Lesser GT, Deutsch S. *J Appl Physiol*. 1967;23(5):621.
54. Eger EIn, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35(4):365.
55. Wahrenbrock EA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40(1):19.
56. Minto CF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(1):24.
57. Schnider TW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(6):1502.
58. Upton RN, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):545.
59. Krejcie TC, Avram MJ. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):541.
60. Arden JR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(1):19.
61. Homer TD, Stanski DR. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:714.
62. Stanski DR, Maitre PO. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(3):412.
63. Rodeheffer RJ, et al. *Circulation*. 1984;69(2):203.
64. Avram MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(3):403.
65. Williams TF. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1987;42(6):663.
66. Janmahasatian S, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2005;44(10):1051.
67. Doufas AG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:1112.
68. Lee S, et al. *J Clin Pharm Ther*. 2012;37:698.
69. Scott JC, Stanski DR. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1987;240:159.
70. Hudson RJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:426.

References

1. Wilkinson GR, Shand DG. Commentary: a physio- logical approach to hepatic drug clearance. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1975;18:377–390.
2. Ebling WF, Wada DR, Stanski DR. From piecewise to full physiologic pharmacokinetic modeling: applied to thiopental disposition in the rat. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1994;22:259–292.
3. Youngs EJ, Shafer SL. Basic pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic principles. In: White PF, ed. *Textbook of Intravenous Anesthesia*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1997.
4. Krejcie TC, Avram MJ, Gentry WB. A recirculatory model of the pulmonary uptake and pharmacokinetics of lidocaine based on analysis or arterial and mixed venous data from dogs. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1997;25:169–190.
5. Hughes MA, Glass PS, Jacobs JR. Context-sensitive half-time in multicompartment pharmacokinetic models for intravenous anesthetic drugs. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(3):334–341.
6. Egan TD, et al. The electroencephalogram (EEG) and clinical measures of opioid potency: defining the EEG-clinical potency relationship ('fingerprint') with application to remifentanil. *Int J Pharmaceut Med*. 2001;15(1):11–19.
7. McEwan AI, Smith C, Dyar O. Isoflurane minimum alveolar concentration reduction by fentanyl. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:864–869.
8. Hendrickx J, et al. Is synergy the rule? A review of anesthetic interactions producing hypnosis and immobility. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:494–506.
9. Bouillon TW, et al. Pharmacodynamic interaction between propofol and remifentanil regarding hypnosis, tolerance of laryngoscopy, bispectral index, and electroencephalographic approximate entropy. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(6):1353–1372.
10. Heyse B, et al. Sevoflurane remifentanil interaction: comparison of different response surface models. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(2):311–323.
11. Kern SE, et al. A response surface analysis of propofol-remifentanil pharmacodynamic interaction in volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(6):1373–1381.
12. Manyam SC, et al. Opioid-volatile anesthetic synergy: a response surface model with remifentanil and sevoflurane as prototypes. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(2):267–278.
13. Mertens MJ, et al. Predictive performance of computer-controlled infusion of remifentanil during propofol/remifentanil anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(2):132–141.
14. LaPierre CD, et al. An exploration of remifentanil-propofol combinations that lead to a loss of response to esophageal instrumentation, a loss of responsiveness, and/or onset of intolerable ventilatory depression. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(3):490–499.
15. Johnson KB, et al. An evaluation of remifentanil-sevoflurane response surface models in patients emerging from anesthesia: model improvement using effect-site sevoflurane concentrations. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(2):387–394.
16. Syroid ND, et al. Response surface model predictions of emergence and response to pain in the recovery room: an evaluation of patients emerging from an isoflurane and fentanyl anesthetic. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(2):380–386.
17. Minto CF, Schnider TW, Short TG. Response surface model for anesthetic drug interactions. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1603–1616.
18. Vereecke HE, et al. Interaction between nitrous oxide, sevoflurane, and opioids: a response surface approach. *Anesthesiology*. 2013.
19. Vuyk J LT, Engbers FH. The pharmacodynamic interaction of propofol and alfentanil during lower abdominal surgery in women. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:8–22.
20. Johnson KB, et al. An evaluation of remifentanil propofol response surfaces for loss of responsiveness, loss of response to surrogates of painful stimuli and laryngoscopy in patients undergoing elective surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(2):471–479. table of contents.
21. Zanderigo E, et al. The well-being model: a new drug interaction model for positive and negative effects. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(4):742–753.
22. Fidler M, Kern SE. Flexible interaction model for complex interactions of multiple anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(2):286–296.
23. Vinik HR, Bradley EL, Kissin I. Triple anesthetic combination: propofol-midazolam-alfentanil. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(2):354–358.
24. Harris RS, et al. Interaction of propofol and sevoflurane on loss of consciousness and movement to skin incision during general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(6):1170–1175.
25. Schumacher PM, et al. Response surface modeling of the interaction between propofol and sevoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(4):790–804.
26. Sebel LE, et al. Additive effects of sevoflurane and propofol on gamma-aminobutyric acid receptor function. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(6):1176–1183.
27. Egan TD, Shafer SL. Target-controlled infusions for intravenous anesthetics: surfing USA not! *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(5):1039–1041.
28. Servin F, et al. Propofol infusion for maintenance of anesthesia in morbidly obese patients receiving nitrous oxide. A clinical and pharmacokinetic study. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(4):657–665.
29. Albertin A, et al. Predictive performance of 'Servin's formula' during BIS-guided propofol-remifentanil target-controlled infusion in morbidly obese patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(1):66–75.
30. Igarashi T, et al. [Two cases of intraoperative awareness during intravenous anesthesia with propofol in morbidly obese patients]. *Masui*. 2002;51(11):1243–1247.
31. Marsh B, et al. Pharmacokinetic model driven infusion of propofol in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67(1):41–48.
32. Schnider TW, et al. The influence of method of administration and covariates on the pharmacokinetics of propofol in adult volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(5):1170–1182.
33. La Colla L, et al. No adjustment vs. adjustment formula as input weight for propofol target-controlled infusion in morbidly obese patients. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26(5):362–369.
34. Cortinez LI, et al. Performance of propofol target-controlled infusion models in the obese: pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(2):302–310.
35. Echevarria GC, et al. The effective effect-site propofol concentration for induction and intubation with two pharmacokinetic models in morbidly obese patients using total body weight. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(4):823–829.
36. Cortinez LI, et al. Influence of obesity on propofol pharmacokinetics: derivation of a pharmacokinetic model. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(4):448–456.
37. van Kralingen S, et al. Comparative evaluation of atracurium dosed on ideal body weight vs. total body weight in morbidly obese patients. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;71(1):34–40.
38. Eleveld DJ, et al. A general purpose pharmacokinetic model for propofol. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(6):1221–1237.
39. Greenblatt DJ, et al. Effect of age, gender, and obesity on midazolam kinetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61(1):27–35.
40. Cortinez LI, Anderson BJ, Penna A. et al: Influence of obesity on propofol pharmacokinetics: derivation of a pharmacokinetic model, *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(4):448–456.
41. Xu B, et al. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamics of intravenous dexmedetomidine in morbidly obese patients undergoing laparoscopic surgery. *J Anesth*. 2017;31(6):813–820.
42. Egan TD, et al. The pharmacokinetics of the new short-acting opioid remifentanil (GI87084B) in healthy adult male volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79(5):881–892.
43. Minto CF, et al. Influence of age and gender on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of remifentanil. I. Model development. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(1):10–23.
44. Kim TK, et al. Disposition of remifentanil in obesity: a new pharmacokinetic model incorporating the influence of body mass. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(6):1019–1032.
45. Shafer SL, et al. Pharmacokinetics of fentanyl administered by computer-controlled infusion pump. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(6):1091–1102.
46. Shibutani K, et al. Accuracy of pharmacokinetic models for predicting plasma fentanyl concentrations in lean and obese surgical patients: derivation of dosing weight ("pharmacokinetic mass"). *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(3):603–613.
47. Shibutani K, et al. Pharmacokinetic mass of fentanyl for postoperative analgesia in lean and obese patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(3):377–383.
48. Schwartz AE, et al. Pharmacokinetics of sufentanil in obese patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73(6):790–793.
49. Slepchenko G, et al. Performance of target-controlled sufentanil infusion in obese patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(1):65–73.
50. Gepts E, et al. Linearity of pharmacokinetics and model estimation of sufentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(6):1194–1204.
51. de Hoogd S, et al. Influence of morbid obesity on the pharmacokinetics of morphine, morphine-3-glucuronide, and morphine-6-glucuronide. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2017;56(12):1577–1587.

52. Cortinez LI, et al. Obesity does not influence the onset and offset of sevoflurane effect as measured by the hysteresis between sevoflurane concentration and bispectral index. *Anesth Analg.* 2011;113(1):70–76.
53. Lesser GT, Deutsch S. Measurement of adipose tissue blood flow and perfusion in man by uptake of 85Kr. *J Appl Physiol*. 1967;23(5):621–630.
54. Eger EIn, Bahlman SH, Munson ES. The effect of age on the rate of increase of alveolar anesthetic concentration. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35(4):365–372.
55. Wahrenbrock EA, et al. Anesthetic uptake—of mice and men (and whales). *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40(1):19–23.
56. Minto CF, Schnider TW, Shafer SL. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of remifentanil. II. Model application. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(1):24–33.
57. Schnider TW, et al. The influence of age on propofol pharmacodynamics. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(6):1502–1516.
58. Upton RN, et al. Cardiac output is a determinant of the initial concentrations of propofol after short-infusion administration. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):545–552.
59. Krejcie TC, Avram MJ. What determines anesthetic induction dose? It's the front-end kinetics, doctor! *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):541–544.
60. Arden JR, Holley FO, Stanski DR. Increased sensitivity to etomidate in the elderly: initial distribution versus altered brain response. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(1):19–27.
61. Homer TD, Stanski DR. The effect of increasing age on thiopental disposition and anesthetic requirement. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:714–724.
62. Stanski DR, Maitre PO. Population pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of thiopental: the effect of age revisited. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(3):412–422.
63. Rodeheffer RJ, et al. Exercise cardiac output is maintained with advancing age in healthy human subjects: cardiac dilatation and increased stroke volume compensate for a diminished heart rate. *Circulation*. 1984;69(2):203–213.
64. Avram MJ, Krejcie TC, Henthorn TK. The relationship of age to the pharmacokinetics of early drug distribution: the concurrent disposition of thiopental and indocyanine green. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(3):403–411.
65. Williams TF. Aging or disease? *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1987;42(6):663–665.
66. Janmahasatian S, et al. Quantification of lean bodyweight. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2005;44(10):1051–1065.
67. Doufas AG, et al. Induction speed is not a determinant of propofol pharmacodynamics. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:1112–1121.
68. Lee S, Kim BH, Lim K, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of intravenous dexmedetomidine in healthy Korean subjects. *J Clin Pharm Ther*. 2012;37:698–703.
69. Scott JC, Stanski DR. Decreased fentanyl and alfentanil dose requirements with age. A simultaneous pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic evaluation. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1987;240:159–166.
70. Hudson RJ, Bergstrom RG, Thomson IR, et al. Pharmacokinetics of sufentanil in patients undergoing abdominal aortic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:426–431.

19

Inhaled Anesthetics: Mechanisms of Action

MISHA PEROUANSKY, ROBERT A. PEARCE, HUGH C. HEMMINGS, and
NICHOLAS P. FRANKS

KEY POINTS

- Anesthesia consists of separable and independent components, each of which involves distinct, but possibly overlapping, mechanisms at different sites in the central nervous system.
- The potencies of general anesthetics correlate with their solubility in oil, indicating the importance of interactions with predominantly hydrophobic targets.
- General anesthetics act by binding directly to amphiphilic cavities in proteins. Binding sites have been identified by a combination of site-directed mutagenesis and high-resolution structural analysis of anesthetic binding.
- Mutations made to render putative protein targets insensitive to inhaled anesthetics have been expressed in mice but have not generated breakthroughs analogous to the success of this strategy with intravenous anesthetics.
- The effects of inhaled anesthetics cannot be explained by a single molecular mechanism. Rather, several targets contribute to the component actions comprising the anesthetic effects of each anesthetic. However, these effects do converge on a limited number of states underlying the behavioral effects.
- The immobilizing effect of inhaled anesthetics involves actions in the spinal cord, whereas sedation/hypnosis and amnesia involve supraspinal mechanisms that interact with endogenous memory, sleep, and consciousness pathways and networks.
- Volatile inhaled anesthetics enhance inhibitory synaptic transmission postsynaptically by potentiating ligand-gated ion channels activated by γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) and glycine, extrasynaptically by enhancing GABA receptors, and presynaptically by enhancing basal GABA release.
- Inhaled anesthetics suppress excitatory synaptic transmission presynaptically by reducing glutamate release (volatile anesthetics) and postsynaptically by inhibiting excitatory ionotropic receptors activated by glutamate (gaseous and to some extent volatile anesthetics).
- Inhaled anesthetics directly activate certain two-pore-domain potassium channels, which is likely to result in both pre- and post-synaptic effects.
- There is as yet no comprehensive theory of anesthesia that describes the sequence of events leading from the interaction between an anesthetic molecule and its targets to the behavioral effects.

Despite the widespread clinical use of general anesthetics, our current understanding of their molecular, cellular, and network mechanisms is incomplete. This critical gap in the pharmacology of one of medicine's most important drug classes not only impedes rational use of available anesthetics but also hinders the development of newer anesthetics that might selectively achieve the desirable end points of anesthesia with fewer adverse cardiovascular, respiratory, and possibly neuropathologic side effects. Although major progress has been made in understanding the pharmacology of the intravenous anesthetics by molecular genetic approaches, the actions of the inhaled anesthetics at the molecular and cellular levels are more enigmatic. It is still not possible to trace precisely the sequence of events that leads from inhaled anesthetic-target interactions, through ascending levels of biologic complexity, to the various behavioral effects that characterize the composite state of clinical anesthesia in humans. Nevertheless, investigations continue to reveal fundamental principles of action and have led to a framework for understanding anesthetic effects at different organizational levels.

The focus of this chapter is on the mechanisms involved in the principal therapeutic effects (anesthesia) and on the side effects of the inhaled anesthetics (Fig. 19.1), a chemically and pharmacologically diverse group that includes

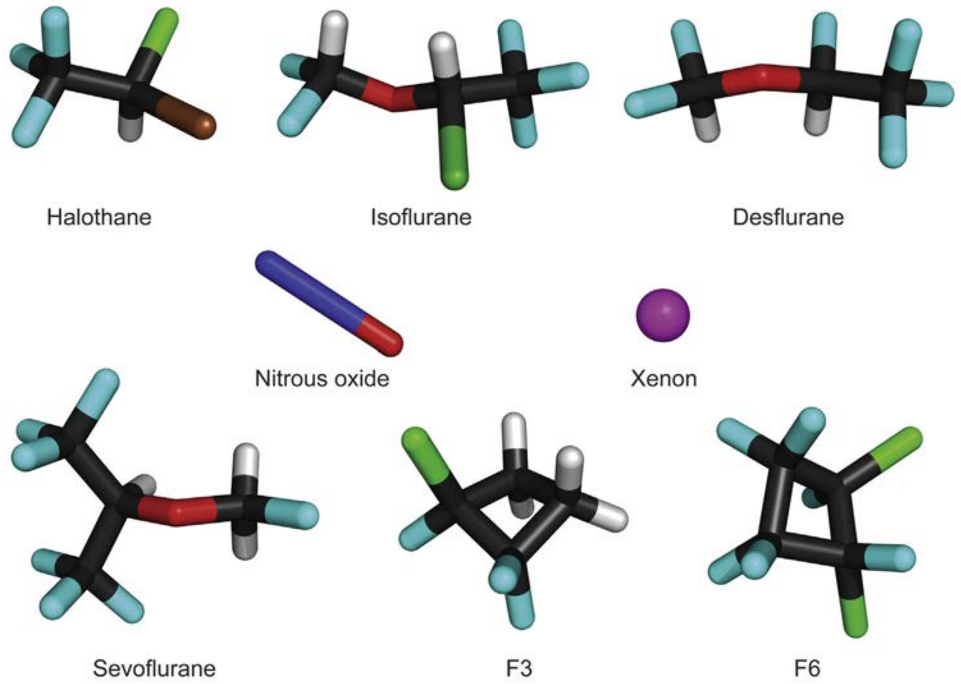


Fig. 19.1 Structures of some representative general anesthetics and a nonimmobilizer *(F6)*. The colors are bromine *(brown)*, carbon *(black)*, chlorine *(green)*, fluorine *(cyan)*, hydrogen *(gray)*, nitrogen *(blue)*, oxygen *(red)*, and xenon *(magenta)*. Note that halothane, isoflurane, desflurane, and *F3* all contain a chiral carbon; therefore each exists as two mirror-image enantiomers (only one enantiomer is shown). Also, the nonimmobilizer *F6* contains two chiral carbons and exists as two trans enantiomers and one cis stereoisomer (only one of the enantiomers is shown).

the potent halogenated ether (isoflurane, sevoflurane, desflurane, enflurane) and alkane (halothane) volatile anesthetics and the inorganic gaseous anesthetics (nitrous oxide and xenon). This critical summary of the current state of knowledge begins with an historical overview and a review of the behavioral end points of anesthesia. We then trace, where possible, inhaled anesthetic effects through ascending levels of organization from molecules, cells, circuits, networks, and organs to mammalian behavior. We also briefly address studies of anesthetic effects in very simple model organisms, with anesthetic end points being identified that as yet bear uncertain relationships to those in mammals.[1]

History

THE UNIFIED PARADIGM OF ANESTHETIC THEORIES

The first monograph reporting experimental work on anesthetic mechanisms, proposing a soon-to-be discredited lipid-elution theory of anesthetic action, was published only 6 months after Morton's public demonstration of ether anesthesia in Boston's Ether Dome. For decades thereafter, the phenomenon of anesthesia puzzled, inspired, and awed those who tried to understand it. An influential paradigm of anesthetic action formulated by Claude Bernard in the 1870s posited that anesthesia was a "unified" phenomenon—a unitary mechanism applicable to all forms of life. Although the anesthetized state could be brought about by a variety of agents, its essence was the same in all living creatures. In fact, Bernard thought that life itself was defined by susceptibility to anesthesia. Bernard also proposed a more specific theory of anesthesia, coagulation of protoplasm, which competed with a number of coexisting theories entertained by the scientific community. In a major work published in 1919, Hans Winterstein[2] summarized the perplexing diversity of anesthetic theories by listing more than 600 references, the majority to original laboratory work—a convincing testimony to the interest of the scientific world in this phenomenon. Of note, the work of Meyer and Overton at the end of the nineteenth century had only a limited effect on the trajectory of research until the 1960s. Only then was the striking simplicity of the Meyer-Overton correlation (Fig. 19.2*A*) of anesthetic potency with solubility in olive oil interpreted by the majority of researchers to indicate that lipids are likely to be the anesthetic target. This interpretation focused attention on anesthetic effects on the bulk physical properties of cell membranes, which were known to consist primarily of lipid molecules. Such nonspecific or "lipoid-based" anesthetic theories dominated the field from the 1960s to the 1980s.

MINIMUM ALVEOLAR CONCENTRATION—A BRIDGE BETWEEN PAST AND PRESENT

The potencies of inhaled anesthetics for immobilization were established in the classic studies in the 1960s of Eger and colleagues,[3,4] who defined the *minimum alveolar concentration* (MAC) as the inhaled anesthetic atmospheric pressure required to prevent movement in response to a defined noxious stimulus in 50% of subjects. The concept of MAC evolved within a unitary paradigm of anesthetic action and also reflected the priorities of clinical practice. As a result, prevention of movement (immobility) became a

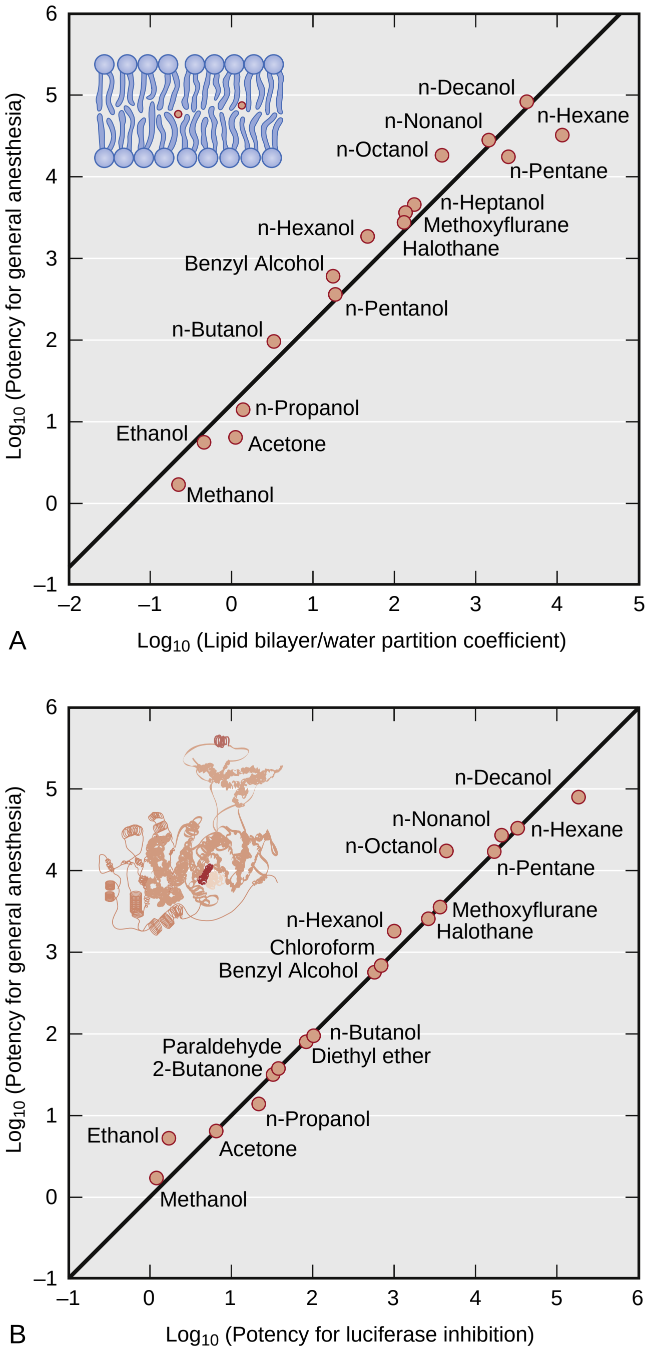


Fig. 19.2 General anesthetics act by binding directly to proteins. (A) The iconic Meyer-Overton correlation (c.1900) between anesthetic potency and the lipid-water partition coefficient was initially interpreted as evidence that lipids of nerve membranes were the principal anesthetic target sites. (B) Progress in the 20th century showed that general anesthetic potencies correlate equally well with their ability to inhibit activity of the soluble firefly enzyme luciferase, which is not a physiologically relevant anesthetic target itself but serves as a lipid-free model protein for anesthetic binding. *Inset*, The crystal structure of luciferase[110] with bound anesthetic *(red)*. (Reprinted with permission from Franks NP, Lieb WR. Molecular and cellular mechanisms of general anesthesia. *Nature*. 1994;367:607–614.)

universal yardstick for anesthetic effects, presumed to occur in the brain. Moreover, the simple elegance of the relationship between anesthetic potency and lipid solubility (see Fig. 19.2*A*) graphically illustrated Meyer and Overton's conclusion that "All chemically indifferent substances that are soluble in fat are anesthetics. Their relative potency as anesthetics will depend on their affinity to fat on the one hand and water on the other hand, that is, on the fat/water partition coefficient."[1] This was interpreted as favoring lipids as the primary targets of anesthetics and a single nonspecific theory to explain anesthesia. The appeal of a single unified mechanism to explain anesthesia was (and remains) intellectually appealing. This focused the bulk of research efforts on delineating how anesthetic interactions with lipid membranes might lead to the behavioral changes observed under anesthesia—the nonspecific lipoid theory.

Because inhaled anesthetic concentrations reflect concentrations in the tissues after equilibration, which is most rapidly achieved for well-perfused organs such as the brain and heart, MAC is analogous to the plasma concentration for 50% effect (EC_{50}) for intravenous anesthetics. In clinical applications, MAC is usually expressed as volume percent (vol%), which varies considerably with temperature owing to the large temperature dependence of partitioning between the gas phase and condensed phases (be they water, lipids, or proteins), whereas the equivalent condensed-phase molar concentrations are much less dependent on temperature.[5] The MAC concept provided researchers and clinicians with a universal standard whereby to measure a defined anesthetic end point (immobility), making meaningful comparisons of experimental results possible and accelerating clinical and laboratory research into anesthetic mechanisms. Today, a more nuanced understanding of MAC considers the structural and functional diversity of the physiologic targets for the different components of the anesthetic state.

SHIFT FROM LIPID- TO PROTEIN-CENTERED MECHANISMS

Lipid-centered mechanisms of anesthesia prevailed in the two decades after definition of the MAC concept. Alternative targets were occasionally proposed but largely neglected by the scientific mainstream. Experimental inconsistencies of lipid targets,[6-8] as well as evidence compatible with proteins as primary sites of action,[9,10] were largely ignored. A shift from lipid- to protein-centered mechanisms, however, began in the late 1970s, owing largely to the discoveries of Franks and Lieb,[11-15] who in an influential series of publications demonstrated that not only were lipids implausible targets but that protein targets were also compatible with the Meyer-Overton correlation (see Fig. 19.2*B*)—a proof of concept that, within a few years, redirected the bulk of research efforts toward proteins. As a corollary of this reorientation, evidence against lipid-based theories was recognized. Examples include the cutoff in anesthetic potency in homologous series of long-chain anesthetic alcohols[15,16] and the identification of hydrophobic drugs that do not obey the Meyer-Overton correlation.[1,17] The enantiomeric selectivity of several anesthetics further strengthened the case for specific binding sites on proteins because stereoselectivity is difficult to reconcile with lipid targets.[18-20] Today, there is widespread acceptance of the notion that lipid bilayers remain essentially unaffected by general anesthetics[11,21] and that critical signaling proteins (e.g., ion channels or ligand-gated receptors) are the relevant molecular targets of anesthetic action.[22] The exact identity of proteins contributing to specific anesthetic end points continues to be sought, with research addressing not only the "where" (target) but also the "how" (process) of anesthetic mechanisms.

DIVERSITY OF POTENTIAL ANESTHETIC TARGETS

At high concentrations in vitro, most inhaled anesthetics affect the functions of multiple proteins, several of which might be plausibly connected to the components of the anesthetic state or anesthetic side effects. However, when a specific anesthetic end point is considered, anesthetics are effective in vivo over a very narrow concentration range. This makes the concentration at which a relevant anesthetic effect is observed a critical consideration for deciding potential relevance. The mechanistic relevance of small effects observed in vitro at relevant concentrations is less clear; that is, what effect is too small to be considered relevant to anesthesia?[23-25]

Whether anesthesia results from the sum of minor perturbations at multiple sites or from substantial effects on a small number of targets remains to be determined. This should be resolved as more sophisticated molecular genetics experimental techniques are applied to test the relevance of putative targets. There are two reasons for believing that the number of relevant targets may be small. First, the extreme steepness of anesthetic concentration-response curves means that, for a given end point, substantial effects on two or three targets would be sufficient to account entirely for the in vivo effect. Second, the stereoselectivity observed in vivo[26] is comparable to the largest effects seen in putative targets in vitro,[18,20] suggesting that only a small number of targets are likely to be involved. Set against this logic is the experimental evidence that a rather large number of plausible target proteins are affected, albeit usually to small extents, and determining which of these are relevant to the various anesthetic end points remains a challenge.

ANESTHESIA: A COMPOSITE NEUROPHARMACOLOGIC STATE

Along with progress in identifying the molecular mechanisms of anesthesia, our understanding of the nature of the anesthetic state has evolved. Whereas a drug-induced coma-like state of general anesthesia can be induced by inhaled anesthetics administered at appropriate concentrations (approximately 1.3 times MAC, equivalent to the EC_{95} of an intravenous anesthetic), the use of such high concentrations can lead to short- and possibly long-term side effects. It is now clear that anesthesia consists of separable and at least partially independent components or substates, each of which involves distinct but possibly overlapping mechanisms in different regions of the central nervous system (CNS) and with variations in relative potencies between specific agents.[27] Immobilization, the core measure of MAC, is mediated largely at the level of the spinal cord by inhaled anesthetics[28,29] but not by barbiturates.[30] On the other hand, the spinal cord is clearly not the primary site of such phenomena as amnesia, sedation, and unconsciousness, which rather are produced by anesthetic effects on cerebral cortical function (Fig. 19.3). A functional separation between amnesia and sedation has been demonstrated for intravenous anesthetics,[31] and it seems likely that this will apply to inhaled anesthetics as well. The state commonly referred to as "unconsciousness" is in itself heterogeneous, with evidence for distinct states of unresponsiveness and unconsciousness.[32] These and similar findings have led to the concept that general anesthesia consists of multiple independent components that can be resolved experimentally and clinically.

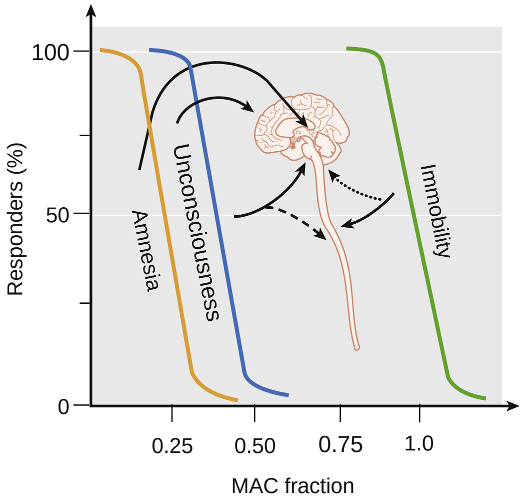


Fig. 19.3 Several behavioral end points and sites of action underlie inhaled anesthetic action. Amnesia, the most sensitive anesthetic end point, probably involves the hippocampus, amygdala, mediotemporal lobe, and other cortical structures. Unconsciousness likely involves the cerebral cortex, thalamus, and neuronal pathways of sleep and arousal. Sedation and hypnosis (loss of responsiveness) are part of the consciousness-unconsciousness continuum and are not shown. Immobility occurs by anesthetic action in the spinal cord, although supraspinal effects *(dotted arrow)* are likely to be important for some anesthetics. Anesthetic action in the spinal cord blunts ascending impulses arising from noxious stimulation and might indirectly contribute to anesthetic-induced unconsciousness and amnesia *(dashed arrow)*. Cardiovascular responses occur at even greater MAC fractions (not shown). (Courtesy Joseph Antognini, University of California, Davis, CA.)

In principle, each component of anesthesia can be preferentially induced in a concentration- and agent-specific manner using individual cellular/molecular pathways in various regions of the CNS. For example, injections of pentobarbital into discrete sites in the mesopontine tegmentum induce a comatose state,[33,34] whereas sedation induced by systemic administration of propofol can be reversed by microinjections of γ-aminobutyric acid $(GABA)_A$ receptor antagonists into the tuberomammillary nucleus, a sleep-regulating nucleus in the hypothalamus.[35] Thus general anesthetics produce separate identifiable anesthetic substates via agent-specific actions at discrete anatomic sites in the CNS through different molecular targets. An important consequence of this complexity is that MAC, which is based exclusively on a motor response, might not proportionately reflect other components of anesthesia. Although this heterogeneity of anesthetic actions complicates a mechanistic understanding, it does open the possibility of developing substate-specific drugs.

Integrated Effects on Central Nervous System Function

IMMOBILITY

Electroencephalography as a monitor of brain activity has been applied both to the study of anesthetic mechanisms and as a monitor of the anesthetic state. Failure to find a correlation between quantitative electroencephalographic activity and immobility in response to noxious stimulation led to the somewhat radical (at the time) hypothesis that immobility was not a cerebral cortex–mediated phenomenon.[36] Experimental demonstration that volatile anesthetics act on the spinal cord to suppress movement[28,29] supported this hypothesis and was a major factor leading to the contemporary separation of anesthetic substates, of which immobility requires the highest drug concentrations (see Fig. 19.3). Taking advantage of the atypical blood supply of goat CNS, which allows separate experimental perfusion of the brain and spinal cord, Antognini and colleagues[28,37] showed that immobility involves anesthetic effects at the spinal level because selective delivery of isoflurane or halothane only to the brain required 2.5-fold to 4-fold higher concentrations compared with delivery to the whole CNS. At the same time, experiments by Rampil and colleagues[29] that used surgical separation of the forebrain and midbrain from the spinal cord in rats led to the conclusion that immobilization involves primarily suppression of the nocifensive withdrawal reflex arc at the level of the spinal cord (Fig. 19.4).

In the 25 years since the identification of the spinal cord as the site of anesthetic-induced immobility, research has centered on pharmacologic, genetic, and complex network approaches. The conventional pharmacologic approach ("bulk" administration of agonists and antagonists into the CNS) to identify receptor-level contributions to isoflurane-induced immobility (isoflurane being the standard potent ether for experimental purposes) has severe limitations in the complex networks of the CNS. Nevertheless, it yielded at least one surprising insight—that actions at $GABA_A$ receptors appear not to be important for the end point of immobility, at least where inhalational agents are concerned.[38] Anesthetic-resistant transgenic mice confirmed that $GABA_A$ receptors containing α1- or α3-subunits do not contribute to the immobilizing action of isoflurane.[39,40] Perhaps less surprisingly, inhibition of central nicotinic acetylcholine receptors also plays no role in immobilization.[41] A role for voltage-gated sodium (Na^+) channels was suggested by the finding that intrathecal administration of a selective inhibitor of Na^+ channels potentiates anesthetic immobility (reduces MAC), whereas an enhancer of Na^+ channel activity does the opposite.[42]

In contrast, work in mutant mice suggests a potential role for tandem-pore domain potassium channels (K_{2P}) in anesthetic-induced immobility. Global knockout mice lacking the TASK-1, TASK-3, and TREK-1 K_{2P} channels are less sensitive to volatile but not intravenous anesthetics,[43-46] indicating a role for these channels possibly by a presynaptic mechanism.[47] An important limitation is that global knockout results almost invariably in wide-ranging compensatory changes in the molecular landscape of the organism with unpredictable consequences for the phenomenon under investigation.

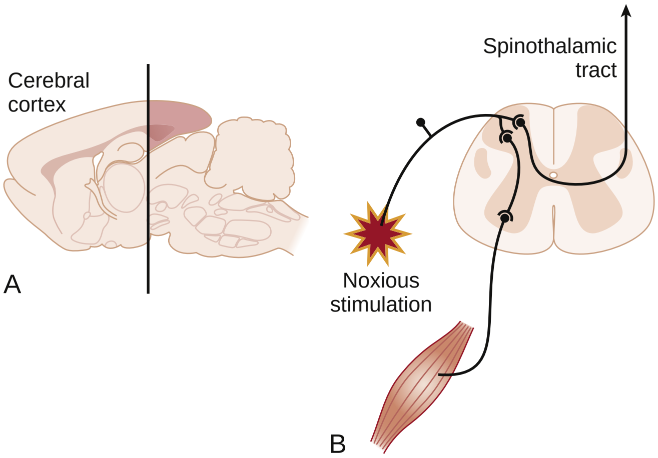


Fig. 19.4 Inhaled anesthetics produce immobility at the spinal level. (A) Decerebration by removal of the forebrain rostral to the *black line* does not alter the minimum alveolar concentration of isoflurane in rats, indicating that volatile anesthetic immobilization does not depend on the cerebral cortex.[28,29] (B) Anesthetics suppress the nocifensive withdrawal reflex response to noxious stimulation transmitted to the dorsal horn by sensory nerves at the spinal level. Current efforts are focused on identifying the molecular, cellular, and anatomic substrates for this effect.

Work with ex vivo preparations that attempt to preserve parts of the complex spinal cord circuitry suggests that anesthetic inhibition of afferent (noxious sensory) input to the dorsal horn plays a subordinate role to the suppression of the efferent (motor) output from the ventral horn, although this may vary by specific agent. This motor output is coordinated by neuronal networks organized in so-called central pattern generators that control the activity of cholinergic motoneurons.[48] Not unlike understanding the anesthetic effects on higher cognitive function, the key to understanding immobility will likely lie in resolving the effect of anesthetics on integrated spinal network activity after understanding the circuit physiology.

UNCONSCIOUSNESS

Compared with the other end points of anesthesia, research into the biologic basis of anesthetic-induced unconsciousness is relatively recent, but it has become an area of active investigation. Research is being conducted in animal models and human subjects and commercial interests are working to develop effective depth-of-anesthesia monitors. These efforts reflect increasing interest, and progress, in "consciousness science" in general.[49,50] Moreover, anesthetics are themselves being used as research tools to help unravel the neuronal underpinnings of consciousness.

Loss of consciousness (or hypnosis) is a hallmark of the onset of anesthesia. However, what is commonly referred to as *unconsciousness under anesthesia* might be more accurately described as *unresponsiveness,* a condition that could also encompass states of self-awareness without environmental awareness (as in dreaming) or environmental awareness without recall (e.g. conscious amnesia combined with neuromuscular paralysis during induction of anesthesia).[32,51]

Numerous theories have been advanced to explain anesthetic-induced unconsciousness. They can generally be divided into those that address "bottom-up" changes in the brain stem circuitry that controls arousal,[52,53] versus "top-down" changes in the thalamocortical circuits that integrate information.[54] Indeed, this distinction formed the basis for a recent suggestion that the *level* of consciousness reflects bottom-up processes whereas the *content* of consciousness reflects top-down processes—a notion with intuitive appeal.[55]

One of the most influential theories has been the "integrated information theory of consciousness (IITC)" of Tononi,[56] which emphasizes the need for simultaneous differentiation between brain states and their integration into a coherent whole.[57] Drugs or diseases that suppress consciousness could act through either process. Other information-based approaches use symbolic analysis,[58] transfer entropy,[59] chaos theory,[60] and more. The rich connectivity of the cerebral cortex and its hierarchical organization are especially suited to enable high levels of information integration in the human brain. Some brain areas present a "rich club" organization (i.e., highly connected nodes tend to be preferentially connected to other highly connected nodes), which has been suggested to be optimal for information integration.[61,62] These hubs are promising targets for the hypnotic action of general anesthetic drugs.

Anesthetics might act by interfering with the operational synchronicity and coherence of corticothalamic networks. Consequent disruption of functional and effective connectivity has been observed during natural slow-wave[63] and midazolam-induced loss of responsiveness.[64] This breakdown of cortical connectivity, rather than pharmacologic deafferentation from the environment, could underlie loss of consciousness.[65] Unconsciousness would then be characterized not by the absence but by the fragmentation of cortical processing.

Although the mechanism of "binding" (i.e., creating the unity of perception) is uncertain, synchronicity of neuronal activity in the 40- to 90-Hz range across functionally connected cortical areas (commonly referred to as 40-Hz- or γ-rhythm) is a viable candidate. Animal[66,67] and human[68] data implicate activity in the γ-band throughout the cortex as a network-level target of general anesthetics. Anesthetic actions on cortical information processing probably consist not merely of suppression of responses but of reduced complexity and variability reflected counterintuitively in the increased reliability and precision of evoked responses.[69,70]

A consistent and intriguing observation has been that anesthetics suppress descending more than ascending neural connectivity.[59,71] Within the framework of predictive coding,[72] this indicates that unconsciousness is associated with a reduction in internally generated predictions more than a suppression of incoming sensory information. The molecular and cellular mechanisms underlying this effect remain undefined, but the preferential suppression by isoflurane of cortico-cortical responses in brain slices in vitro[73,74] supports a top-down mechanism wherein the anesthetic acts directly on the thalamocortical circuitry.

By contrast, "bottom-up" theories attribute changes in consciousness to anesthetic modulation of subcortical arousal nuclei. An interesting theme has emerged from this line of research. There is substantial overlap between the centers whose activity is altered during natural slow-wave sleep and the state of general anesthesia.[35,75–77] That is, many anesthetics may induce unconsciousness, at least in part, by "hijacking" neural sleep[78,79] or arousal[80] pathways.

Thalamic theories of anesthetic-induced unconsciousness[81,82] incorporate aspects of both top-down and bottom-up mechanisms, reflecting not only the intermediate position of this structure in the hierarchical organization of the brain but also the different connection patterns of "sensory relay" versus higher-order "nonspecific" thalamic nuclei.[83]

LEARNING AND MEMORY

Anterograde amnesia, one of the core desirable anesthetic end points, is achieved at lower anesthetic concentrations (~0.25 MAC) than those required for unconsciousness (~0.5 MAC). Perhaps the closest analogue in rodents to explicit memory in humans is medial temporal lobe–dependent learning of temporal and spatial sequences known as *hippocampus-dependent spatial learning*. Other learning paradigms, such as fear conditioning to tone, are by contrast independent of the hippocampus. Spatial learning can be tested by a variety of experimental paradigms, including fear conditioning to context (Fig. 19.5). Isoflurane and the nonimmobilizer F6 both inhibit hippocampus-dependent learning at about half the concentration necessary for disrupting hippocampus-independent learning.[84] Similarly, anesthetic concentrations that inhibit explicit memory in humans (memory that can be explicitly recalled as opposed to motor learning, classical conditioning, and so on) are similarly lower than concentrations that impair implicit memory (not subject to willful recollection).[85] Taken together, these findings implicate effects on function of the medial temporal lobe, including the hippocampus, in the suppression of explicit memory by anesthetics. Effects on other structures, such as the amygdala, may be relevant to anesthetic impairment of implicit or other types of memory.[86]

Because inhaled anesthetics affect multiple cellular targets even at amnesic concentrations, it is likely that anesthetic-induced amnesia arises from multiple cellular-level changes. A quantitative comparison of the degree of change in synaptic inhibition in the hippocampus produced by equiamnestic concentrations of isoflurane versus etomidate indicated that the enhancement of GABAergic inhibition can account for a substantial portion of isoflurane's effect on memory.[87] Other contributing targets may include nAChRs,[88] HCN1 channels,[89] and excitatory glutamatergic synapses,[90] Conversely, it is also likely that suppression of learning and memory by drugs known to have different receptor affinities share common mechanisms at some level of integration. For example, θ-rhythms (4-12 Hz) are clearly important for hippocampus-dependent learning and memory.[91] Benzodiazepines[92] and cannabinoids[93] slow and suppress hippocampal θ-rhythms in proportion to their ability to impair hippocampus-dependent learning. Isoflurane and the nonimmobilizer F6 have comparable effects on θ-rhythms at amnesic concentrations while having different receptor-level profiles and opposite effects on sedation.[94] Thus alterations in neuronal synchrony may

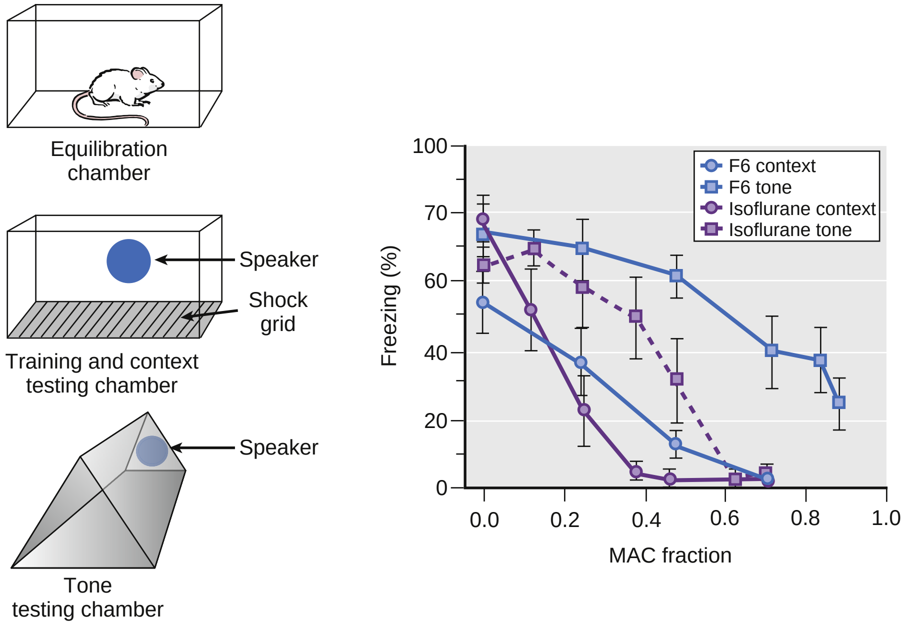


Fig. 19.5 Differential sensitivity of different types of learning to anesthetics and nonimmobilizers. Freezing in anticipation of a noxious stimulus is a measure of learning in rats; less freezing indicates less learning. *Left,* the learning protocol involves preequilibration of rats in the equilibration chamber to isoflurane or the nonimmobilizer *F6* at the desired concentration before placement into the training chamber. For testing of memory to context, the training and test chamber are identical. For testing of memory to tone, training and testing take place in different chambers. *Right,* hippocampus-dependent learning (fear conditioning to context, *closed symbols*) is inhibited by isoflurane *(purple circles)* at lower concentrations than hippocampus-independent learning (fear conditioning to tone, *purple squares*). This differential sensitivity is mirrored by the nonimmobilizer F6 (*blue circles* and *blue squares* for context and tone, respectively). (*Left panel* adapted with permission from Eger EI 2nd, Xing Y, Pearce R, et al. Isoflurane antagonizes the capacity of flurothyl or 1,2-dichlorohexafluorocyclobutane to impair fear conditioning to context and tone. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1010–1018; *right panel* data points reconstructed from Dutton RC, Maurer AJ, Sonner JM, et al. Short-term memory resists the depressant effect of the nonimmobilizer 1-2-dichlorohexafluorocyclobutane (2N) more than long-term memory. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:631–639; and Dutton RC, Maurer AJ, Sonner JM, et al. The concentration of isoflurane required to suppress learning depends on the type of learning. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:514–519.)

provide a common network-level substrate for memory impairment. The synchronization between amygdalar and hippocampal θ-rhythms that occurs during fear memory retrieval indicates that this principle might also apply to other forms of memory and their impairment by anesthetics.[95] As with other components of the anesthetic state, the precise mechanisms of memory impairment by anesthetics and of memory itself remain to be fully elucidated.

SEDATION

Sedation (defined as a decrease in activity, alertness, arousal, and/or vigilance), which is on a behavioral continuum leading to hypnosis, is achieved at anesthetic doses similar to those that produce amnesia (<0.5 MAC). There is no clear mechanistic or clinical separation between sedation and hypnosis. By contrast, even though sedation can be difficult to separate from amnesia, for intravenous anesthetics there may be separate but overlapping substrates for these two end points.[31] The mechanisms involved in these behavioral effects are likely to resemble those of less promiscuous drugs, for which genetic approaches have been informative. An amino acid knockin mutation (H101R) in mice that renders the α_1 GABA_A receptor subunit insensitive to modulation by benzodiazepines produces resistance to the sedative and amnesic effects of benzodiazepines while maintaining other behavioral effects, among them anxiolysis.[96] The α_1 subunit is abundantly expressed in the CNS, mainly in the cortical areas and thalamus. Volatile anesthetics have qualitatively similar effects on α_1-containing GABA_A receptors (but also those containing other subunits) at low concentrations. The observation that the nonimmobilizer F6, which is devoid of sedative properties,[94] is amnesic[97] but does not modulate benzodiazepine-sensitive α_1-containing GABA_A receptors,[98,99] is compatible with a role for α_1-containing receptors in volatile anesthetic-induced sedation, because few other targets are affected at purely sedative concentrations. Possible targets for the sedative effects of the gaseous anesthetics nitrous oxide and xenon, which do not affect GABA_A receptors, include *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonism[100] and K_{2P} channel activation.[101] Consistent with this distinct pharmacologic profile, nitrous oxide has strikingly different effects from those of benzodiazepines in behavioral tests aimed at evaluating sedation in mice.[102]

Recognizing that there may be more than a superficial similarity between natural sleep and anesthetic-induced sedation and hypnosis, the effects of some anesthetics apparently share natural sleep mechanisms by directly activating discrete sleep-promoting nuclei in the hypothalamus.[35] Indeed, the same neurons, or at least overlapping populations of neurons, that are activated by sleep deprivation are also activated during dexmedetomidine-induced sedation.[103] Electroencephalographic patterns during natural slow-wave sleep and anesthesia show similarities,[104] and recovery from sleep deprivation can occur under propofol[105,106] and inhalational anesthesia, supporting this concept. Anesthetic effects on other cortical[107] and subcortical structures[32] may also contribute to anesthetic-induced sedation and hypnosis.

Identification of Molecular Sites of Anesthetic Action

CRITERIA FOR IDENTIFYING SITES RELEVANT TO ANESTHESIA

Specific criteria have been proposed to evaluate the relevance of the many potential molecular targets of anesthetics.[108] These criteria include the following:

1. *Reversible alteration of target function at clinically relevant concentrations.* This criterion requires comparable in vivo and in vitro sensitivities and depends on the anesthetic end point under consideration. For example, targets involved in immobility must be sensitive to anesthetics near MAC, whereas targets mediating amnesia must be affected at a fraction of MAC. Recent evidence for persistent effects of inhaled anesthetics demonstrable in the absence of continued anesthetic exposure is challenging the notion of reversibility for certain effects.
2. *Expression of the target in appropriate anatomic locations to mediate the specific anesthetic end point.* For example, immobilization by inhaled agents appears to involve primarily actions in the spinal cord independent of actions in the brain.
3. *Concordant stereoselectivity of anesthetic effects in vivo and on the target in vitro.* Without a specific pharmacologic antagonist of anesthesia, correlation between the stereoselective actions of general anesthetics in vivo and in vitro is a useful test of pharmacologic relevance of putative molecular targets. Stereoselectivity data correlating in vivo potency and in vitro receptor actions implicate $GABA_A$ receptors as a target for the anesthetic actions of etomidate, pentobarbital, neurosteroid anesthetics, and isoflurane.
4. *Appropriate sensitivity or insensitivity to anesthetic and nonanesthetic compounds.* Anesthetic halogenated cyclobutanes together with structural analogs that do not produce anesthesia at concentrations predicted to be anesthetic by the Meyer-Overton correlation (nonimmobilizers) can be used to discriminate relevant volatile anesthetic targets in vitro. For example, the anesthetic F3 (1-chloro-1,2,2-trifluorocyclobutane), but not the structurally similar nonanesthetic F6 (1,2-dichlorohexa fluorocyclobutane), affect $GABA_A$, glycine, AMPA (α-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazolepropionic acid), kainate, and 5-HT3 receptors; and Na^+ channels, consistent with possible roles in immobility, whereas both F3 and F6 affect neuronal nicotinic, M1 muscarinic, 5-HT2C, and mGluR5 receptors, indicating that these targets are not involved in immobility. F6 is interesting in that it lacks sedative and immobilizing effects but does possess amnesic effects, hence use of the more accurate term *nonimmobilizer*, making it a useful pharmacologic tool for discriminating targets for these actions.
5. *Predictable effects of genetic manipulations targeted to putative molecular targets.* The effects of targeted deletion of specific molecules implicated as anesthetic targets (knockout mutations) or genetic engineering to introduce specific mutations that modify anesthetic sensitivity (knockin mutations) in model organisms provide powerful approaches to test the roles of putative molecular targets of anesthetic action. This approach has been particularly successful in implicating specific $GABA_A$ receptor subtypes in the effects of the GABAergic intravenous anesthetics propofol and etomidate, where single amino acid substitutions in specific receptor subtypes eliminate anesthetic effects both in vitro and in vivo.[109] Targeted mutations of putative anesthetic targets provide a bridge between in vitro observations and whole-animal experiments essential for demonstrating anesthetic end points. The existence of multiple targets and redundancy among ion channel subtypes makes this a more challenging experimental approach for inhaled anesthetics compared with intravenous anesthetics (discussed later).

PHYSICOCHEMICAL PROPERTIES OF ANESTHETIC BINDING SITES

A convergence of x-ray crystallography, molecular modeling, and structure-function studies indicates that inhaled anesthetics bind in the hydrophobic cavities formed within proteins.[22] The lipophilic (or hydrophobic) nature of these binding sites explains their adherence to the Meyer-Overton correlation. An element of amphiphilicity (possessing both polar and nonpolar characteristics) is also required for effective interaction with these cavities, as indicated by improvements in the Meyer-Overton correlation with more amphipathic solvents (possessing both hydrophobic and hydrophilic properties).[7]

FROM MODEL PROTEINS TO RECEPTORS

Identifying inhaled anesthetic binding sites on plausible target proteins is difficult because of their low-affinity interactions, the paucity of atomic resolution structures of pharmacologically relevant target proteins, and the lack of specific antagonists. Consequently most anesthetic binding sites have been identified in well-characterized model proteins for which three-dimensional atomic resolution structures—such as luciferase[110] and serum albumin[111]—are available but are not themselves relevant to anesthesia. These studies indicate that anesthetics bind in pockets with both nonpolar and polar noncovalent chemical interactions.[23,112] Binding involves weak hydrogen bond interactions with polar amino acid residues and water molecules, nonpolar van der Waals interactions, and a polarizing effect of the amphiphilic binding cavity on the relatively hydrophobic anesthetic molecules. Occupation of a site, or sites, by an anesthetic provides a plausible mechanism for alteration of receptor and ion channel function by selectively binding to a particular conformation (e.g., an open or inactivated state of an ion channel).[22] Studies of glycine, $GABA_A$, and NMDA receptors provide convincing evidence for the existence of anesthetic binding sites in critical neuronal signaling proteins.[113] It is likely that before long, high-resolution crystal structures of these receptors will be determined with inhaled anesthetic bound. However, because anesthetics act by binding only to certain transient conformational states, the relevance of necessarily static crystal structures will have to be assessed with care.

Structural studies using the more accessible prokaryotic homologues of eukaryotic ion channels have provided a powerful tool for the study of anesthetic binding sites in biologically plausible proteins. For example, both propofol and desflurane have been cocrystalized with *Gloebacter violaceus*, a bacterial homologue of eukaryotic inhibitory ligand-gated ion channels (glycine and $GABA_A$ receptors). Both anesthetics bind to a common preexisting site in the upper part of the transmembrane domain between the transmembrane segments of a single subunit (Fig. 19.6).[114] Molecular modeling based on structurally homologous proteins has also been used to identify putative anesthetic binding sites in the transmembrane domains of vertebrate $GABA_A$ and glycine receptors (Fig. 19.7). These models

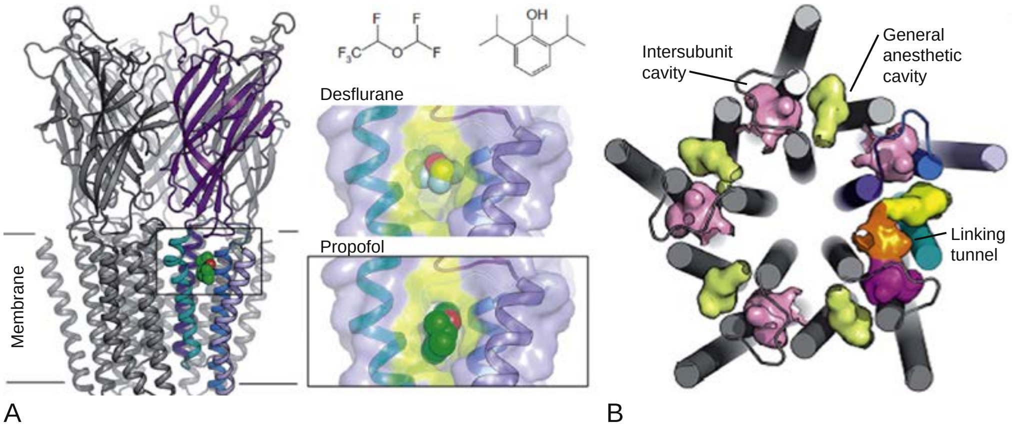


Fig. 19.6 X-ray structures of propofol and desflurane bound to a pentameric ligand-gated ion channel. (A) Cartoon of membrane-plane view of the bacterial homologue of mammalian pentameric ligand-gated ion channels *(Gloebacter violaceus)* with a bound general anesthetic molecule. (B) Molecular surface of the general anesthetic intrasubunit cavities *(yellow)* and neighboring intersubunit cavities *(pink)* of the whole pentameric channel. (Modified from Nury H, Van Renterghem C, Weng Y, et al. X-ray structure of general anaesthetics bound to a pentameric ligand-gated ion channel. *Nature.* 2011;469:428–433.)

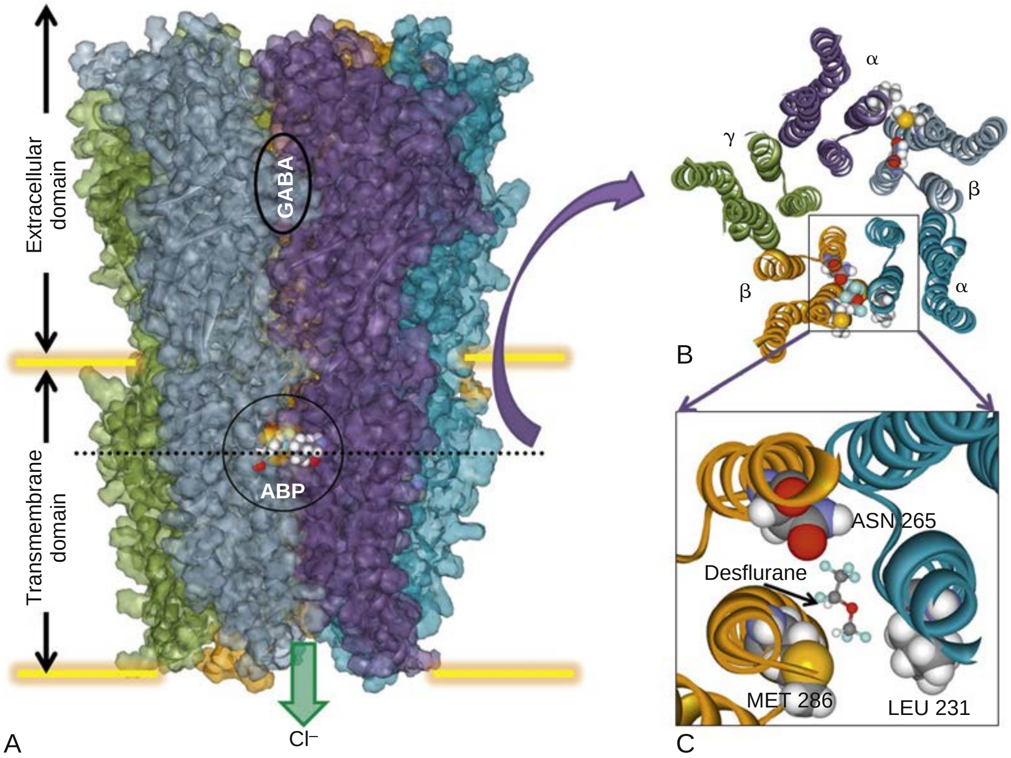


Fig. 19.7 Putative anesthetic binding sites on γ-aminobutyric acid (*$GABA_A$*) receptors identified by molecular modeling. (A) Molecular model of the mouse $GABA_A$ receptor built using homology modeling techniques with computational chemistry optimizations and molecular dockings. The amino acid backbone is displayed in ribbon format and outlined by the transparent solvent-accessible molecular surface. Each of the five subunits is colored uniquely. The *GABA* binding site is noted in the extracellular domain, whereas the putative anesthetic binding pocket *(ABP)* for potentiation is noted in the outer third of the transmembrane domain between the α and β subunits. Two binding sites are shown but only one has computationally docked desflurane. (B) A cross-section at the *dotted line* level in A showing orientation of subunits with pentameric symmetry about a central ion pore. (C) Magnified region of intersubunit anesthetic binding site derived from region in B showing relevant amino acid positions (in space-filling format) interacting with desflurane (in ball-and-stick format at the same scale). (Courtesy the Bertaccini laboratory, Stanford University, Stanford, CA.)

suggest that different drugs may either bind in different orientations within a single amphiphilic cavity or occupy different cavities within the protein, causing similar functional effects. Refinement of these molecular models will continue to provide new insights in the molecular basis for general anesthetic action that can be experimentally tested. For example, potential sites of interaction of xenon and isoflurane with the NMDA receptor have also been identified using this approach. One site, which can contain up to three xenon atoms or one molecule of isoflurane, overlaps the known binding site for the coagonist glycine in the NR1 subunit.[115] This suggests that two chemically dissimilar inhaled anesthetics inhibit NMDA receptors by direct competitive inhibition of coagonist binding.

Molecular Targets of Inhaled Anesthetics

Ion channels have emerged as the most promising molecular targets for inhaled anesthetics. Neurotransmitter-gated ion channels—in particular $GABA_A$, glycine, and NMDA-type glutamate receptors—are leading candidates owing to their appropriate CNS distributions, essential physiologic roles in inhibitory and excitatory synaptic transmission, and sensitivities to clinically relevant concentrations of anesthetics.[22,27,108,116] Other ion channels that are sensitive to inhaled anesthetics include the hyperpolarization-activated cyclic nucleotide (HCN)-gated family of channels that give rise to pacemaker currents[116] and regulate dendritic excitability, two-pore domain (K_{2P}) "leak" K^+ channels that maintain resting membrane potential in many cells,[117,118] and voltage-gated Na^+ and Ca^{2+} channels.[116]

LIGAND-GATED ION CHANNELS

Potentiation of Inhibitory $GABA_A$ and Glycine Receptors

The ether anesthetics (including isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane), the alkane anesthetic halothane, most intravenous anesthetics (including propofol, etomidate, barbiturates), and the neurosteroid anesthetics enhance $GABA_A$ and glycine receptor (GlyR) function. $GABA_A$ and GlyRs are members of the same cys-loop ligand-gated ion channel superfamily that also includes the cation-permeable nicotinic acetylcholine and $5HT_3$ receptors. $GABA_A$ receptors are the principal transmitter-gated Cl^- channels in the neocortex and allocortex, whereas GlyRs fulfill this function in the spinal cord, with some overlap in the diencephalon and brain stem. Activated receptors conduct chloride ions, driving the membrane potential toward the Cl^- equilibrium potential. Both receptors are inhibitory (except in some cases during development) because the Cl^- equilibrium potential is usually more negative than the normal resting potential. Channel opening also reduces membrane resistance and "shunts" excitatory responses. Most functional $GABA_A$ and GlyRs are heteropentamers, typically consisting of three different $GABA_A$ subunits (e.g., two α, two β, and one γ or ∂)[119] or two different GlyR subunits (three α and two β).[120] The subunit composition of $GABA_A$ receptors determines their physiologic and pharmacologic properties and varies between and within brain areas as well as between different compartments of individual neurons. Examples are the preferential expression of the α_5 subunit in the dendritic field of the hippocampal CA1 area (a region important for memory formation), of the α_4 subunit in the thalamus, and of the α_6 subunit in the cerebellum. Presence of a γ subunit is required for benzodiazepine modulation of $GABA_A$ receptors and can also influence modulation by inhaled anesthetics. Although the molecular mechanisms of receptor modulation by inhaled anesthetics are not clear, these receptors have been key to our understanding of anesthetic-receptor interactions. Using chimeric receptor constructs between anesthetic-sensitive $GABA_A$ and insensitive GlyR subunits, specific amino acid residues in transmembrane domains 2 and 3 critical to the action of inhaled anesthetics have been identified.[121] This laid the groundwork for the construction of anesthetic-resistant $GABA_A$ receptors and the generation of transgenic mice with altered anesthetic sensitivity (discussed later).

The related cation-permeable 5-hydroxytryptamine (serotonin)-3 ($5HT_3$) receptors are similarly potentiated by volatile anesthetics.[122,123] $5HT_3$ receptors are involved with autonomic reflexes and also probably contribute to the emetogenic properties of volatile anesthetics.

Inhibition of Excitatory Acetylcholine and Glutamate Receptors

Neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors (nnAChRs), like the other members of the cys-loop family, are heteropentameric ligand-gated ion channels but are cation-selective. They are composed of α and β subunits but functional homomeric receptors can be formed by certain α subunits. In the CNS, nnAChRs are localized primarily presynaptically.[124] Homomeric α_7 receptors have high permeability to Ca^{2+}, which can exceed that of NMDA receptors.[124] In contrast to $GABA_A$ and GlyRs, nnAChRs pass cations when activated and therefore depolarize the membrane potential. Receptors containing $\alpha_4\beta_2$ subunits are very sensitive to block by isoflurane.[125,126] Relevance of nnAChR block to immobilization, sedation, and unconsciousness by inhaled anesthetics is unlikely because nnAChRs are also blocked by nonimmobilizers, although it is possible that they do contribute to amnesia.

NMDA receptors are a major postsynaptic receptor subtype of inotropic receptors for glutamate, the principal excitatory neurotransmitter in the mammalian CNS.[127] Typical NMDA receptors, defined pharmacologically by their selective activation by the exogenous agonist NMDA, are heteromers consisting of an obligatory GluN1 subunit and modulatory GluN2 subunits. Channel opening requires glutamate (or another synthetic agonist such as NMDA) binding to the GluN2 subunit while the endogenous coagonist glycine binds to the GluN1 subunit. NMDA receptors also require membrane depolarization to relieve voltage-dependent block by Mg^{2+}. Depolarization is typically provided by the binding of glutamate to non-NMDA glutamate receptors (discussed later). Because of this requirement for both presynaptic transmitter release and postsynaptic depolarization, synaptic NMDA receptors function as coincidence detectors, and this characteristic is thought to be central to their role in learning and memory. NMDA receptors are also involved in the development of chronic pain, perhaps because of mechanisms similar to those underlying synaptic plasticity, and in ischemia-induced excitotoxicity by virtue of their capacity to allow entry of the ubiquitous intracellular signal Ca^{2+}. The nonhalogenated inhaled

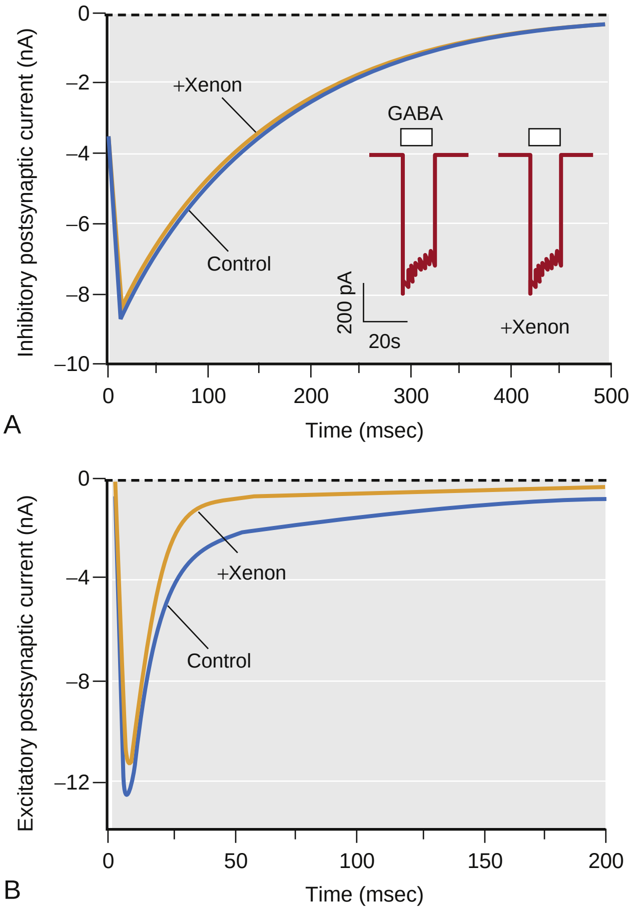


Fig. 19.8 The actions of xenon on inhibitory GABAergic and excitatory glutamatergic synapses in cultured rat hippocampal neurons. Xenon (3.4 mM, or 1 minimum alveolar concentration [MAC]) has no significant effect on the inhibitory postsynaptic current (A) but depresses the excitatory glutamatergic synaptic current, almost exclusively the slow *N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptor-mediated component of the current (B). In contrast, the principal effects of 1 MAC isoflurane are a prolongation in the inhibitory current decay and a reduction in excitatory current peak height, with little change in time course (not shown, see Fig. 19.10). (Reprinted in modified form by permission from de Sousa SLM, et al. Contrasting synaptic actions of the inhalational general anesthetics isoflurane and xenon. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1055–1066.)

anesthetics xenon, nitrous oxide, and cyclopropane have minimal effects on GABA$_A$ receptors but depress excitatory glutamatergic synaptic transmission postsynaptically via NMDA glutamate receptor blockade (Fig. 19.8).[128,129] Volatile anesthetics can also inhibit isolated NMDA receptors at higher concentrations.[130] Along with presynaptic inhibition of glutamate release, this might contribute to their depression of NMDA receptor–mediated excitatory transmission.

A second class of inotropic glutamate receptors includes the non-NMDA receptors, which are subdivided into AMPA and kainate receptors based again on their sensitivities to selective exogenous agonists.[127] Inhaled anesthetics only weakly inhibit AMPA receptors; hence this action is unlikely to be important in their actions.[131] Interestingly, kainate receptors are enhanced by inhaled anesthetics, but this is unlikely to be involved in immobility because MAC is not altered in mice deficient in the GluR6 receptor subunit.[132] Most evidence suggests that the principal mechanism for depression of glutamatergic transmission by volatile anesthetics is presynaptic, with minor contributions from postsynaptic receptor blockade[133-135] (see section on "Cellular Mechanisms").

VOLTAGE-GATED AND OTHER ION CHANNELS

Volatile anesthetics have diverse effects on a wide variety of ion channels that are critically involved in their neurophysiologic, cardiovascular, and respiratory actions. A detailed understanding of these interactions is crucial to a pharmacologic description of this essential drug class.

Na$^+$ Channels

Voltage-gated Na$^+$ channels are critical to axonal conduction, synaptic integration, and neuronal excitability. In contrast to findings in invertebrate giant axons,[136] axonal conduction in small (0.1-0.2 μm) unmyelinated hippocampal axons is depressed by volatile anesthetics,[137,138] and small reductions in preterminal action potential amplitude significantly depress transmitter release and hence postsynaptic responses at a mammalian synapse.[139] Heterologously expressed mammalian voltage-gated Na$^+$ channels are sensitive to clinically relevant concentrations of volatile anesthetics. The Na$^+$ channel family consists of nine homologous pore-forming α subunits with distinct cellular and subcellular distributions.[140,141] Isoflurane and other volatile anesthetics inhibit the major mammalian Na$^+$ channel isoforms, including neuronal (Na$_v$1.2), skeletal muscle (Na$_v$1.4), cardiac (Na$_v$1.5), and peripheral (Na$_v$1.8) isoforms.[142] Volatile anesthetics but not nonimmobilizers also inhibit native neuronal and nerve terminal Na$^+$ channels,[141,143-146] lending support to the notion that Na$^+$ channel blockade contributes to the depression of synaptic neurotransmitter release.[147] In contrast, xenon has no detectable effect on Na$^+$, Ca^{2+}, or K$^+$ channels in isolated cardiomyocytes.[148] The demonstration that NaChBac, a prokaryotic homologue of voltage-gated Na$^+$ channels, is also inhibited by volatile anesthetics opens the way for structure-function studies of these channels.[145] These studies suggest that volatile anesthetics affect channel gating, probably via at least two drug binding sites.[149-151]

Ca^{2+} Channels

Multiple cellular functions depend on the tightly controlled concentration of intracellular free Ca^{2+} ($[Ca^{2+}]_i$), which is determined by the integrated activities of voltage-gated Ca^{2+} channels, capacitative Ca^{2+} channels, plasma membrane and sarcoplasmic/endoplasmic reticulum (ER) Ca^{2+}-adenosine triphosphatases (pumps), Na$^+$/Ca^{2+} exchangers, mitochondrial Ca^{2+} sequestration, and cytoplasmic Ca^{2+}-binding proteins. Alteration of any of these mechanisms can affect the many cellular processes regulated by the second-messenger actions of Ca^{2+}, including synaptic transmission, gene expression, cytotoxicity, and muscle excitation-contraction coupling. Excitable cells translate their electrical activity into action by Ca^{2+} fluxes mediated primarily by voltage-gated Ca^{2+} channels in the plasma membrane. Distinct Ca^{2+} channel subtypes are expressed in various cells and tissues, and are classified pharmacologically and functionally by the degree of depolarization required to gate the channel as low voltage–activated

(LVA; T-type) or high voltage–activated (HVA; L-, N-, R-, and P/Q-type) channels. Cloning and sequencing to identify their pore-forming α subunits has allowed molecular classification of these functionally identified channel subtypes.[141] Considerable evidence indicates that volatile anesthetics inhibit certain Ca^{2+} channel isoforms but not others.

Inhibition of presynaptic voltage-gated Ca^{2+} channels coupled to transmitter release has been proposed as a mechanism by which volatile anesthetics reduce excitatory transmission.[152,153] Indeed, N-type ($Ca_v2.2$) and P-type ($Ca_v2.1$) channels, which mediate Ca^{2+} entry coupled to neurotransmitter release, are modestly sensitive to volatile anesthetics[154,155] but not in all neuron types,[156] suggesting the importance of auxiliary subunits, posttranslational modification, or other potential modulators of anesthetic sensitivity. A modest contribution of R-type Ca^{2+} channels ($Ca_v2.3$) to anesthesia is suggested by their sensitivity to volatile anesthetics and a small increase in MAC produced by genetic deletion in mice.[157] T-type Ca^{2+} channels are particularly sensitive to volatile anesthetics[158] and nitrous oxide.[159] However, mutant mice lacking a major neuronal T-type Ca^{2+} channel isoform ($Ca_v3.1$) have normal volatile anesthetic sensitivity, although the onset of anesthesia is delayed.[160] Thus the role that inhibition of these or other Ca^{2+} channels plays in the CNS effects of inhaled anesthetics is unclear.

At higher doses, a role for Ca^{2+} channel inhibition in the negative inotropic effects of volatile anesthetics is well established. The force of myocardial contraction is determined by the magnitude of cytosolic Ca^{2+} increase after electrical excitation, the responsiveness of the contractile proteins to Ca^{2+}, and sarcomere length. Negative inotropic effects of volatile anesthetics are mediated by reductions in Ca^{2+} availability, Ca^{2+} sensitivity of the contractile proteins, and rate of cytosolic Ca^{2+} clearance. Volatile anesthetics reduce the Ca^{2+} transient and shorten action potential duration in cardiomyocytes primarily by inhibiting L-type ($Ca_v1.2$) Ca^{2+} currents, resulting in a negative inotropic effect and arrhythmogenicity.[161-163] In contrast, xenon does not depress myocardial function or inhibit L-type Ca^{2+}, Na^+, or K^+ currents in isolated cardiomyocytes.[164,165] Inhibition of trans-sarcolemmal Ca^{2+} influx through cardiac L-type Ca^{2+} channels plays a major role in the negative inotropic effects of volatile anesthetics—greatest for halothane—along with contributions from effects on myofilament Ca^{2+} sensitivity and sarcolemmal Ca^{2+} release.[162,166]

In contrast to voltage-gated Ca^{2+} channels that regulate the influx of extracellular Ca^{2+}, intracellular Ca^{2+} channels regulate Ca^{2+} release from intracellular stores, particularly the ER and sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR). These include 1,4,5-inositol triphosphate receptors (IP_3Rs), regulated by the second messenger IP_3, and ryanodine receptors (RyRs); the latter mediate the release of SR Ca^{2+}, which is critical to excitation-contraction coupling in muscle. Volatile anesthetic–induced Ca^{2+} leak occurs by effects on both IP_3R and RyR channels, which leads to depletion of intracellular Ca^{2+} stores from the SR and ER. In brain, volatile anesthetic activation of IP_3Rs has been proposed as a mechanism for anesthetic neurotoxicity.[167] This blunts changes in intracellular Ca^{2+} in response to stimulation and contributes to the smooth muscle–relaxing properties of volatile anesthetics that underlie bronchodilation and vasodilation.[168] Malignant hyperthermia is a pharmacogenetic disorder that manifests as a potentially fatal hypermetabolic crisis triggered by volatile anesthetics, particularly halothane. It is often associated with mutations in RyR1 and the physically associated L-type Ca^{2+} channel ($Ca_v1.1$), which functions as the voltage sensor.[169] Volatile anesthetics activate the mutated RyRs, resulting in uncontrolled intracellular Ca^{2+} release from the SR, muscle contraction, and hypermetabolic activity.[170]

K^+, HCN, and TRP Channels

Potassium (K^+) channels are members of an extremely diverse ion channel family noted for their varied modes of activation. They regulate electrical excitability, muscle contractility, and neurotransmitter release. They are important in determining input resistance and in driving repolarization after action potentials; thus they determine excitability and action potential duration. Given the large diversity in K^+ channel structure, function, and anesthetic sensitivity, it is not surprising that there is considerable diversity in their sensitivity and response to inhaled anesthetics,[171] from relatively insensitive (voltage-gated K^+ channels $K_v1.1$, K_v3)[172] to sensitive (some members of the K_{2P} family), resulting in either inhibition, activation, or no effect on K^+ currents.

Volatile anesthetic activation of certain "leak" K^+ channels was first observed in the snail *Lymnaea*,[173] although the molecular identity of the affected ion channels was unknown. Activation of K_{2P} channels by volatile and gaseous anesthetics—including xenon, nitrous oxide, and cyclopropane—was subsequently observed in mammals.[118] Increased K^+ conductance can hyperpolarize neurons, reducing responsiveness to excitatory synaptic input and possibly altering network synchrony. Targeted deletion of the TASK-1, TASK-3, and TREK-1 K_{2P} channels in mice reduces sensitivity to immobilization by volatile anesthetics in an agent-specific manner, implicating these channels as contributory anesthetic targets in vivo.[44-47] The K^+ channel TREK-1 also contributes to the neuroprotective effects of xenon[174] and sevoflurane.[175]

Progress has recently been made in identifying anesthetic binding sites to K^+ channels using photoaffinity labeling, which has identified a sevoflurane binding site in the $K_v1.2$ channel; this is widely expressed in brain and positively modulated by volatile anesthetics.[176] Molecular modeling has also been used to identify likely binding sites in K_{2P} channels.[177]

The recognition that inherited channelopathies are arrhythmogenic and constitute an important contributor to sudden cardiac death,[178] particularly in young children,[179] highlights the importance of analyzing anesthetic modulation of cardiac ion channels. Recombinant hERG (human ether-a-go-go–related) channels are moderately inhibited by halothane, and their depression likely contributes to arrhythmogenic effects of volatile anesthetics[162,180]; they are also involved in acquired (drug-induced) and inherited long QT syndrome. Cardiac inward-rectifying (K_{IR}), voltage-gated (K_v), and Ca^{2+}-activated K^+ channels are generally relatively insensitive to clinical concentrations of volatile anesthetics and xenon.[162,164,181] In contrast, volatile anesthetics and xenon activate cardiac mitochondrial and sarcolemmal K_{ATP} channels,[182] which might contribute to anesthetic preconditioning to cardiac ischemia. Direct electrophysiologic effects of anesthetics with preconditioning properties have been demonstrated on both mitochondrial and sarcolemmal K_{ATP} channels, although the precise mechanisms remain to be clarified. The large conductance (BK) mitochondrial K^+ channel Slick of the *Slo2* gene family has been shown to be important for volatile anesthetic preconditioning in vivo.[183]

Volatile anesthetics also inhibit HCN pacemaker channels, reducing the rate of rise of pacemaker potentials and the bursting frequency of certain neurons that show autorhythmicity. They decrease the I_h conductance in neurons[184] and modulate recombinant HCN1 and HCN2 channel isoforms at clinically relevant concentrations.[185] Because HCN channels contribute to resting membrane potential, control action potential ring, dendritic integration, neuronal automaticity, and temporal summation, and also determine periodicity and synchronization of oscillations in many neuronal networks,[186] anesthetic modulation of these channels could play an important role in anesthetic effects on neuronal integrative functions. Selective knockout of HCN1 in mouse forebrain shows a role for these channels in the amnestic and hypnotic but not immobilizing effects of volatile anesthetics.[89]

INTRACELLULAR SIGNALING MECHANISMS

Cell signaling mechanisms are critical to all phases of organ and cellular function, which has made them attractive targets for producing the broad effects of general anesthetics on multiple organs. Anesthetics have complex actions on intracellular cell signaling pathways, which include processes downstream from cell surface receptors and ion channels, including effects on second messengers, protein phosphorylation pathways, and other regulatory mechanisms.[187]

G-Protein–Coupled Receptors

A variety of signals—including hormones, neurotransmitters, cytokines, pheromones, odorants, and photons—produce their intracellular actions by interactions with metabotropic receptors that activate heterotrimeric guanine nucleotide–binding proteins (G proteins). In contrast to inotropic receptors that directly couple to ion-selective channels, G proteins act as indirect molecular switches to relay information from activated plasma membrane receptors to appropriate intracellular targets.

Heterotrimeric G proteins consist of a large α-subunit and a smaller β/γ-subunit dimer, each expressed as multiple isoforms with distinct properties and downstream targets. G proteins regulate a plethora of downstream effectors to control the levels of cytosolic second messengers such as Ca^{2+}, cyclic adenosine monophosphate, and inositol triphosphate. These, in turn, regulate effector proteins such as ion channels and enzymes, either directly or via second messenger–regulated protein phosphorylation pathways. Ca^{2+} is a ubiquitous second messenger that regulates a number of downstream effectors, often mediated by the multifunctional Ca^{2+}-binding protein calmodulin. As volatile anesthetics have profound effects on intracellular Ca^{2+} concentrations via their effects on both plasma membrane and intracellular Ca^{2+} channels, transporters, and exchangers (see the section on ion channels earlier), many of the downstream effects of anesthetics are ultimately mediated by changes in the second-messenger actions of Ca^{2+}.

Drugs that act through G protein–coupled receptors (GPCRs) such as agonists for μ-opioid and α_2-adrenergic receptors can affect anesthetic sensitivity (reduce MAC). Inhaled anesthetics can also directly affect signaling via GPCRs.[188] For example, volatile anesthetics activate multiple olfactory GPCRs in the rat in vivo in a receptor- and agent-selective manner.[189] Analogous effects on related GPCRs more relevant to critical anesthetic end points are possible but remain to be demonstrated. The observation that both volatile anesthetics and nonimmobilizers inhibit mGluR5 glutamate receptors, 5-HT_{2A} serotonin receptors, and muscarinic acetylcholine receptors suggests that these GPCR effects do not contribute to anesthetic immobilization.[190-192]

Protein Phosphorylation

Phosphorylation of proteins on specific serine, threonine, or tyrosine hydroxyl groups, a posttranslational modification involved in the regulation of many anesthetic-sensitive receptors and ion channels, is pivotal to synaptic plasticity (e.g., long-term potentiation [LTP]). Phosphorylation is controlled by the balance of activity between protein kinases and phosphatases, several of which are plausible anesthetic targets. The protein kinase C (PKC) family of multifunctional protein kinases is activated by the lipid-signaling molecule diacylglycerol and is involved in the regulation of many ion channels and receptors. Halothane[193] and sevoflurane[194] enhance the activity of some PKC isoforms and stimulate phosphorylation of specific PKC substrates. Structural studies have identified a potential binding site in the diacylglycerol binding domain of PKCδ, consistent with the ability of certain anesthetics to mimic this natural regulator by binding to the activating site.[195] A specific role for a direct pharmacologically relevant effect related to general anesthesia mediated by anesthetic activation of PKC or of any other kinase has yet to be demonstrated. Intrathecal injection of isoform-specific inhibitors of PKC does not affect sensitivity to halothane in vivo.[196] Knockout mice lacking the PKCγ isoform show normal sensitivity to halothane and desflurane while isoflurane MAC was increased,[197] suggesting that PKC is not critical to volatile anesthetic immobilization.

An important role for effects of volatile anesthetics and xenon on cell signaling mechanisms has been discovered for anesthetic-induced preconditioning in the heart and brain against ischemic damage.[198-202] Anesthetic-induced and ischemic cardiac preconditioning share critical signaling mechanisms, including activation of multiple GPCRs (e.g., adenosine, opioid, adrenergic) and protein kinases (e.g., src kinase, PKCδ, PKCε, Akt, mitogen-activated protein kinases [MAPKs]), and their downstream targets, particularly sarcolemmal and/or mitochondrial K_{ATP} channels, possibly initiated by changes in reactive oxygen species as the critical second messenger.[203,204] Volatile anesthetics and xenon share cardioprotective and neuroprotective effects involving these signaling pathways.[202,205]

The effects of anesthetics on the phosphorylation of individual residues in specific substrates can be studied using phosphorylation state–specific antibodies that are able to detect the phosphorylated forms of kinase substrates. A comparison of the effects of three mechanistically diverse anesthetics (isoflurane, propofol, and ketamine) on critical intracellular protein phosphorylation signaling pathways that are known to integrate multiple second messenger systems reveals both shared and agent-specific actions in vivo.[206] All three anesthetics reduce phosphorylation of activating sites on NMDA and AMPA glutamate receptors and of the downstream extracellular signal-regulated kinase ERK2, all of which are known to be involved in synaptic plasticity, consistent with depression of normal glutamatergic synaptic transmission in the anesthetized mouse cerebral cortex. These effects are somewhat selective in that several other protein kinase A (PKA) substrates examined are not affected, indicating substrate-specific effects rather than a general inhibition of PKA activity.[207] Additional studies will be required to determine which anesthetic effects on kinase pathways represent direct effects, as occurs with PKC, and which are indirect because of anesthetic-induced alterations in signaling molecules known to regulate protein kinase and phosphatase activity such as Ca^{2+} and other second messengers.

Gene Expression

The ability of general anesthetics to alter gene expression in the brain was first observed for the highly reactive immediate early genes *c-fos* and *c-jun*.[208] Anesthetic effects on gene expression have since been observed for multiple anesthetics and organs.[209] In the hippocampus of aged rats, changes in gene expression persisted for up to 2 days in rats exposed to isoflurane and nitrous oxide,[210] and changes in protein expression have been observed 3 days after exposure to desflurane.[211] The significance of these changes in gene and protein expression persisting after recovery from the classic signs of anesthesia remains to be established (see review[212]). Recent findings suggest that certain anesthetic effects are mediated by epigenetic mechanisms involving specific posttranslational modifications of DNA-binding histone proteins by acetylase and deacetylase enzymes. For example, exposure of neonatal rats to general anesthesia led to reduced histone 3 acetylation and delayed cognitive deficits that could be reversed by a histone deacetylase inhibitor.[213]

Cellular Mechanisms

NEURONAL EXCITABILITY

Neuronal excitability is determined by resting membrane potential, threshold for action potential initiation, and input resistance (an indication of overall channel activity). Considerable diversity exists for each of these factors in different types of neurons, and membrane properties differ not only between neurons but also between compartments (e.g., soma versus dendrite). Moreover, anesthetic effects vary with the state of the individual neuron—that is, whether it is hyperpolarized or depolarized, stimulated by synaptic inputs, or quiescent. Therefore results obtained using model systems or reduced preparations (e.g. cultured neurons and brain slices) incompletely reflect anesthetic effects in vivo. Nevertheless much valuable information has been obtained using these approaches because they allow changes in neuronal activity to be attributed to specific cellular and molecular targets.

The intrinsic excitability of spinal motoneurons was reported to be little affected by halothane,[214] but changes in hippocampal pyramidal neuron excitability were shown to be substantial and complex. Threshold can be increased or decreased, and regional differences and dose-dependent effects on firing patterns have been observed.[215,216] Neurons in the ventral-posterior nucleus of the thalamus (possibly thalamic relay neurons) hyperpolarize in the presence of isoflurane and are less likely to fire action potentials because of a decrease in input resistance (increased shunting)—an effect that has been attributed to increased K^+ conductance.[217] Similar effects are observed in hypoglossal motoneurons and neurons from the locus coeruleus, where a TASK-type K_{2P} channel has been causally implicated.[218]

$GABA_A$ receptors located at extrasynaptic sites can also influence excitability by increasing membrane conductance and thereby "shunting" excitatory currents. These receptors have a high affinity for GABA; they are continually exposed to low ambient GABA concentrations and desensitize slowly.[219] Their importance to anesthesia, however, may hinge on exactly what these ambient concentrations are.[220] Tonic current in hippocampal pyramidal neurons arises primarily from α_5 subunit–containing $GABA_A$ receptors, which are highly sensitive to etomidate, propofol, midazolam, and isoflurane.[221-224] Thus they provide a potential substrate for the amnesic properties of anesthetics. These same receptors also contribute to slow phasic (synaptic) currents, which are produced by spillover of GABA from synapses.[225] Their slow time course and location, matching those of synaptic NMDA receptors, place them in an ideal position to modulate synaptic plasticity. Indeed, reducing or eliminating α_5-$GABA_A$ receptors by pharmacologic or genetic means attenuates the amnestic properties of the $GABA_A$ receptor-selective anesthetic etomidate. However, since elimination of α_5-$GABA_A$ receptors from pyramidal neurons does not reproduce this effect,[226] modulation of other cell types (interneurons or glia) may also play a role in anesthetic-induced amnesia and other anesthetic end points.

PRESYNAPTIC VERSUS POSTSYNAPTIC EFFECTS ON SYNAPTIC TRANSMISSION

General anesthetics have potent and specific effects on synaptic transmission, including presynaptic actions (by altering transmitter release) and postsynaptic actions (by altering the postsynaptic responses of neurons to specific transmitters). The relative contributions of presynaptic compared with postsynaptic anesthetic effects on synaptic transmission have been difficult to resolve, probably because the effects are transmitter- and synapse-specific. The net effect of anesthetics on synaptic transmission is determined by the relative magnitude and direction of both their presynaptic and postsynaptic effects. The general effects of inhaled anesthetics are to increase inhibitory synaptic transmission and to inhibit excitatory synaptic transmission (Fig. 19.9).

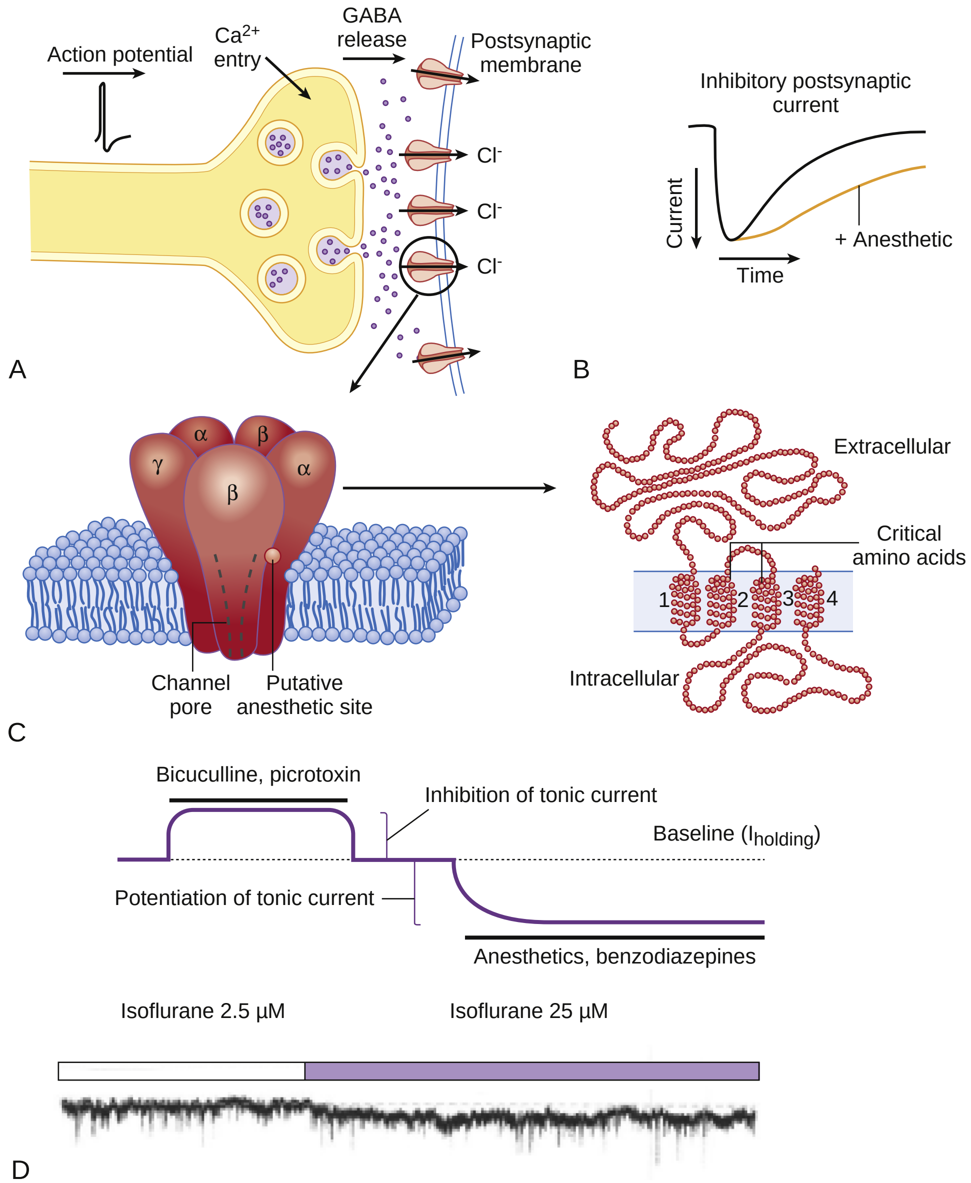

Action potential
Ca2+ entry
GABA release
Postsynaptic membrane
Cl-
Cl-
Cl-
A
Inhibitory postsynaptic current
Current
Time
+ Anesthetic
B
α
β
γ
β
α
Channel pore
Putative anesthetic site
Extracellular
Critical amino acids
1
2
3
4
Intracellular
C
Bicuculline, picrotoxin
Inhibition of tonic current
Baseline (Iholding)
Potentiation of tonic current
Anesthetics, benzodiazepines
Isoflurane 2.5 μM
Isoflurane 25 μM
D

Fig. 19.9 Synaptic and extrasynaptic γ-aminobutyric acid (*GABA*$_A$) receptors are targets for inhaled anesthetics. (A) On binding of GABA to the GABA$_A$ receptor, its chloride-permeable channel opens, usually leading to hyperpolarization. Volatile anesthetics have a relatively low potency but high efficacy at synaptic GABA$_A$ receptors and a high potency and low efficacy at extrasynaptic GABA$_A$ receptors. (B) General anesthetics prolong channel opening and increase postsynaptic inhibition. The cartoon illustrates the prolongation of miniature inhibitory synaptic currents by the slowing of current decay. (C) A pentameric GABA$_A$ receptor complex in the lipid bilayer membrane *(left),* with a blowup of a single subunit showing the location of residues critical to anesthetic efficacy in the second and third transmembrane domains *(right).* (D) A tonic inhibitory conductance is revealed by the application of a GABA$_A$ receptor antagonist (bicuculline or picrotoxin), as shown by the upward shift in the baseline current. Anesthetics and benzodiazepines increase the tonic conductance, as indicated by the inward shift in the current. (Modified from Hemmings HC Jr, Akabas MH, Goldstein PA, et al. Emerging molecular mechanisms of general anesthetic action. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2005;26:503–510.)

Excitatory synaptic excitation is generally decreased by volatile anesthetics (Fig. 19.10). Experiments in various slice preparations indicate that reduced excitation is primarily caused by presynaptic mechanisms.[87,133,214,227-229] A postsynaptic mechanism is also involved because the response to directly applied glutamate is reduced to some degree.[229-231] Volatile anesthetics have inconsistent effects on cloned AMPA or NMDA glutamate receptors, but they potentiate kainite receptors,[115,129,232,233] consistent with a predominantly presynaptic mechanism for glutamatergic synapses. By contrast, the effects of the nonhalogenated inhaled anesthetics (xenon, nitrous oxide, cyclopropane) appear to be mediated primarily by inhibition of postsynaptic NMDA receptors (discussed earlier). Under some circumstances, such as in patients with defects in mitochondrial complex 1[234] and in mice carrying mutations in mitochondrial complex 1,[235] inhaled agents suppress glutamate release by interfering with the energy-intensive glutamate recycling pathways,[236] thereby leading to extreme anesthetic sensitivity. Recent evidence from conditional knockout mice indicates this mechanism may contribute to various end points even in nonpathogenic states.[237]

Augmentation of GABAergic inhibition by most general anesthetics is mediated by both presynaptic and postsynaptic mechanisms. Enhancement of postsynaptic and extrasynaptic $GABA_A$ receptors is well recognized.[116] Volatile anesthetics increase spontaneous GABA release and inhibitory postsynaptic current (IPSC) frequency[238-242]—that is, their presynaptic effects at GABAergic terminals are distinct from those at glutamatergic synapses.

The mechanisms for the presynaptic effects of inhaled anesthetics, like those for their postsynaptic effects, are complex and involve multiple targets. Although a synapse-specific contribution of presynaptic Ca^{2+} channels is likely,[243] presynaptic Na^{+} channels are more sensitive than the Ca^{2+} channels coupled to glutamate release. This finding is consistent with observations that the predominant Ca^{2+} channel coupled to neurotransmitter release at hippocampal glutamatergic synapses (P/Q-type) is insensitive to isoflurane.[156] Other presynaptic mechanisms have been proposed, including actions on the vesicle fusion process, as demonstrated in the model organism *Caenorhabditis elegans*.[244,245] However, isoflurane effects on exocytosis in rat hippocampal neurons occur primarily upstream of vesicle fusion.[139,246]

Simple Circuits and Complex Networks

SIMPLE CIRCUIT PHENOMENA

The development of a mechanistic understanding of phenomena involving complex circuits has been greatly facilitated by the study of anatomically reduced (in vitro) or physiologically simplified (in vivo) preparations complemented by computer simulations (in silico). These approaches are essential for integrating reductionist observations of the multiple molecular effects of anesthetics into functional models relevant to behavioral end points. Anesthetic effects have been studied in acute brain slice preparations from various regions of the CNS (hippocampus, amygdala, cortex, thalamus, brain stem, and spinal cord)—most often from rodents. Brain slices preserve native connections but usually lack natural inputs and outputs. Slices from developing mammalian brain can also be cultured in vitro. These "organotypic slice cultures" preserve a high degree of synaptic connectivity and display spontaneous network activity, typically absent from "acute slices." Simplified in vivo preparations involve phenomena (typically evoked responses) with *relatively* well-understood circuitry. Computer models and simulations can assist in generating hypotheses for experimental testing and developing hypotheses based on experimental data.

Synaptic Plasticity

Paired-pulse depression and paired-pulse facilitation are examples of short-term plasticity in response to external stimulation. Synaptic inhibition is prolonged by volatile anesthetics in vivo[247] and in vitro,[248] in general agreement with the notion that anesthetics enhance functional inhibition in the CNS. Enhancement of paired-pulse facilitation has been attributed to the presynaptic depressant effect of volatile agents (Fig. 19.11).[133,228]

LTP, a cellular model of learning and memory, is a use-dependent strengthening of glutamatergic excitatory synaptic connections. Volatile anesthetic effects on LTP depend on the experimental preparation. Halothane, enflurane, and isoflurane do not block LTP induction in vivo, whereas ketamine and the NMDA antagonist CPP do.[247,249] By contrast, isoflurane blocks LTP in the hippocampal slice by enhancing $GABA_A$ receptor–mediated inhibition (Fig. 19.12)[250] or blocking neuronal nicotinic receptors,[88] Long-term depression, a use-dependent weakening of excitatory connections that is effectively a homeostatic counterpart of LTP, is also blocked by isoflurane in vitro.[250] The discrepancy between findings in vivo and in vitro remains unexplained.

Spontaneously Active Circuits

Spontaneous neuronal activity is decreased by volatile anesthetics both in vivo and in cortical brain slices. This effect is largely $GABA_A$ receptor-dependent and marked even at low sedative concentrations.[107] Because the cortical brain slices lack subcortical input, these results suggest that volatile anesthetics can cause some effects (e.g., sedation)

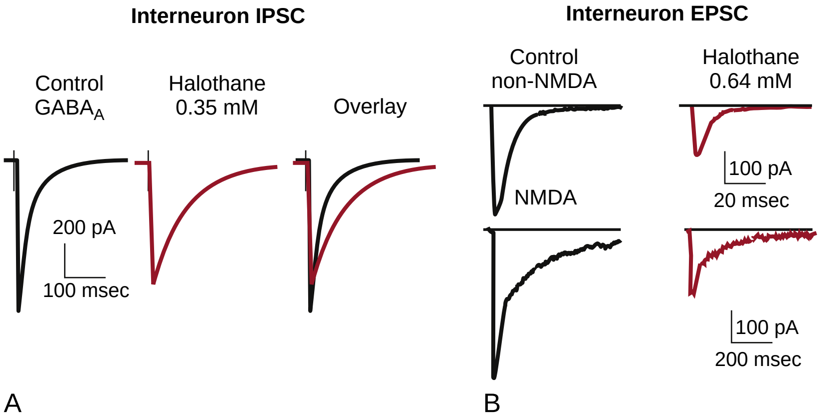


Fig. 19.10 Halogenated anesthetics enhance inhibitory and depress excitatory synaptic transmission. Halothane slows the decay of $GABA_A$ receptor–mediated inhibitory postsynaptic currents *(IPSCs)* (A) and depresses the amplitude of glutamatergic excitatory postsynaptic currents *(EPSCs)* without affecting the decay (B) in hippocampal interneurons. ([A] Redrawn with permission from Nishikawa K, MacIver MB. Membrane and synaptic actions of halothane on rat hippocampal pyramidal neurons and inhibitory interneurons. *J Neurosci*. 2000;20:5915–5923. [B] Redrawn with permission from Perouansky M, Baranov D, Salman M, Yaari Y. Effects of halothane on glutamate receptor-mediated excitatory postsynaptic currents. A patch-clamp study in adult mouse hippocampal slices. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:109–119.)

via direct cortical action. However, changes in raw neuronal firing rates do not provide a precise quantitative measure of higher cognitive function, which is better reflected by the relationship of firing patterns to the strength and phase of ongoing cortical rhythms (see next section). Anesthetic effects have also been tested on the circuitry underlying locomotion, a well-studied central pattern generator. Effects of isoflurane on in vitro lamprey and rat spinal cord preparations support the spinal cord as the primary target for volatile anesthetic–induced immobility.[251,252]

RHYTHMS AND SIMULATIONS

The brain perpetually generates complex electrical rhythms (oscillations in extracellular field potentials) that range in frequency from fractions to hundreds of Hertz (Hz; cycles per second), as recorded on the surface of the scalp as the electroencephalogram (EEG; the higher-frequency oscillations cannot be resolved in surface recordings). All oscillations are behavioral state–dependent and multiple oscillations coexist throughout the sleep-wake cycle. Lower-frequency rhythms allow for integration over longer time periods and typically engage larger areas of the brain. By contrast, higher-frequency rhythms allow for higher temporal resolution on local scales. Cross-frequency modulation allows for integration of both aspects of information processing. Although their physiologic roles are not clear, brain rhythms reflect, subserve, and/or constitute fundamental higher-order processing such that their modulation by anesthetics is of great interest. The current nomenclature of brain rhythms reflects historical conventions and is not based on underlying mechanisms.

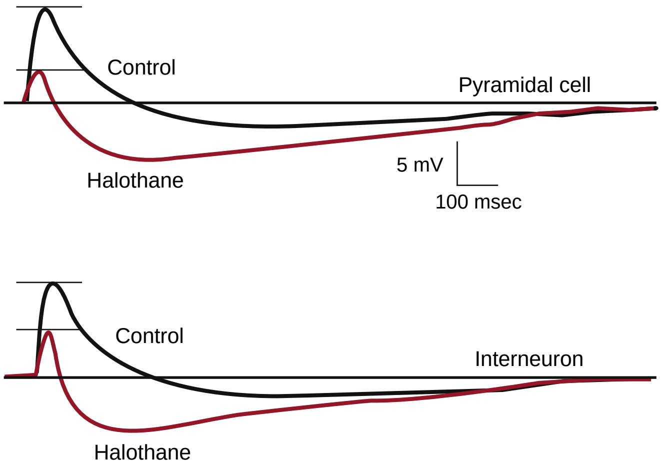


Fig. 19.11 Anesthetics affect excitation and inhibition simultaneously in opposite directions. Halothane depresses the excitatory depolarization and augments the inhibitory hyperpolarization in both hippocampal pyramidal cells and interneurons. The net result will depend on the underlying neuronal state as well as the neuronal network and its function. (Redrawn with permission form Nishikawa K, MacIver MB. Membrane and synaptic actions of halothane on rat hippocampal pyramidal neurons and inhibitory interneurons. *J Neurosci*. 2000;20:5915–5923.)

δ-Rhythms and Other Slow Rhythms

Oscillations with EEG frequencies from 1.5 to 4 Hz are generally referred to as δ-rhythms, and these oscillations are characteristic of deep sleep and are commonly observed under general anesthesia. Even slower rhythms (below 1 Hz) occur during non–rapid eye movement (NREM) sleep and appear at loss of consciousness induced by propofol[253] and sevoflurane.[254] During natural NREM sleep, δ-rhythms and sleep spindles are phase related to a slower oscillation, suggesting functional interaction.[255] Paroxysmal spindle-like waxing and waning oscillations overriding slower rhythms are also present in the cortical EEG under anesthesia. A change in δ-α phase relationships has been proposed as a "signature" of propofol-induced unconsciousness,[256] but how this comes about, whether similar changes occur for a wider range of anesthetics, and the underlying physiology and functional significance are unknown.

θ-Rhythms

θ-Rhythms, present in various cortical structures but most prominent in the hippocampus, are thought to signal the "online state." They are associated with sensorimotor and

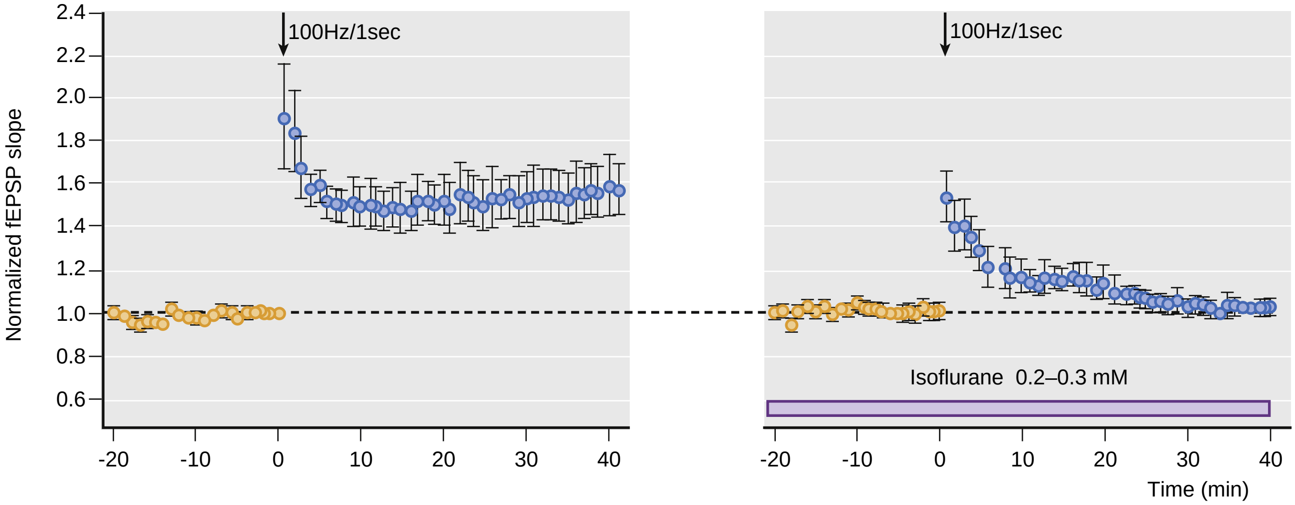


Fig. 19.12 Isoflurane blocks the induction of synaptic plasticity in vitro (a model of learning and memory). Long-term potentiation (an increase in synaptic strength), indicated by the increase in normalized excitatory postsynaptic potential *(EPSP)* slope, in hippocampal slices evoked by tetanic stimulation of excitatory synapses is blocked by 0.2 to 0.3 mM isoflurane. (Redrawn with permission from Simon W, Hapfelmeier G, Kochs E, et al. Isoflurane blocks synaptic plasticity in the mouse hippocampus. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:1058–1065.)

mnemonic functions during waking behavior.[257] One component of the θ-rhythm (type I or atropine-resistant) can be affected by amnestic concentrations of isoflurane as well as by the amnestic nonimmobilizer F6,[94] indicating a potential network-level signature effect for anesthetic-induced amnesia. Type II θ-rhythm (atropine-sensitive) can be evoked under anesthesia and is slowed and potentiated by halothane.[258] Interestingly, this halothane-induced oscillation disappears in TASK-3 knockout mice.[46]

γ-Rhythms

This designation includes an extremely broad and probably functionally and mechanistically heterogeneous spectrum of rhythms. It is frequently subdivided into slow γ (30-50 Hz; i.e., the spectrum above β-rhythms); γ (50-90 Hz), and fast-, ultra-γ, or ε-rhythms (>90 and up to hundreds of Hz). Fast $GABA_A$ ergic synaptic inhibition and the intrinsic resonant properties of neurons play important roles in γ-physiology, making these obvious candidates for anesthetic modulation. Isoflurane slows the frequency of evoked γ-oscillations (30-90 Hz, also known as "40-Hz rhythms") in humans.[259,260] Studies of γ-oscillations in vitro suggest that their frequency depends on the time constant of decay of $GABA_A$ receptor–mediated synaptic currents in inhibitory networks.[261] Isoflurane slows γ-rhythms in hippocampal[262] and neocortical slices[263] to a comparable degree as it does in humans,[259] providing a tentative link between receptor and circuit-level effects. However, the interaction between anesthetics and behaviorally relevant network effects is likely to be complex because flash-evoked γ-oscillations in the primary visual cortex are not affected by inhaled agents,[67] whereas feedback information transfer at γ-frequencies between the visual and frontal cortices is disrupted.[59,67] Moreover, many brain rhythms are interlinked (e.g., θ-rhythm modulates γ-oscillations (θ−γ nesting). The nature of their modulation by anesthetics as well as its relevance are far from clear.

Models and Simulations

On the macroscopic scale, computer simulations can provide an integrated picture of modulation of dynamic neuronal and network activity. "Bottom-up" neuron-by-neuron approaches are based on computational models of individual neurons, known *anesthetic effects* on intrinsic and synaptic membrane conductances, and simple network models. Computer simulations of anesthetic effects on integrated outputs can thereby be generated (e.g., the ring of pacemaker neurons).[264] These models obviously rely on the accuracy of the derived characteristics of real neurons and networks as well as knowledge of the effects of anesthetics; the scale of simulations is limited by the complexity of its elements.[265] An alternative is a "top-down" approach, such as mean-field modeling, in which molecular and cellular individual accuracy detail is sacrificed in favor of global dynamics. For example, global cortical phenomena, such as anesthetic-induced seizures, have been modeled as phase transitions based on mean interactions between populations of averaged neurons (analogous to the EEG signal that also averages the signals of neuronal populations).[266] This approach can be extended to other global cortical phenomena such as consciousness.[267] Neuronal modeling and computer simulations may gain importance in the future as bridges between theoretical and experimental studies of anesthesia.

Research Strategies for the Future

The search for anesthetic mechanisms is driven by advances in the basic sciences. Some strategies that should facilitate understanding of anesthetic mechanisms include use of agonists or antagonists in vivo, nonanesthetics or nonimmobilizers, high-resolution imaging of the functioning brain, transgenic animals, and the application of the latest techniques of molecular genetics.

PHARMACOLOGIC APPROACHES

Agonists, Antagonists, and Experimental Anesthetics

Use of receptor-specific agonists and antagonists provides a pharmacologic method for bridging in vitro with in vivo studies. In this approach, a receptor may be tested for its contribution to a specific end point (e.g., immobility) according to the criteria presented earlier. This approach was used to exclude an important role for NMDA receptor block in the immobilizing action of volatile anesthetics but did not yield conclusive results for the roles of $GABA_A$ and GlyR for immobilization,[267,268] probably owing to the intricacies of drug-receptor interactions on different levels of integration in complex networks like the spinal cord. A complementary pharmacologic approach using experimental anesthetics that inhibit NMDA receptors in vitro with different potencies supports the conclusion that NMDA receptor blockade does not contribute significantly to immobility by conventional volatile anesthetics.[269] Refinement of this strategy involves the anatomically discrete application of drugs to nuclei with known function. For example, the tuberomammillary nucleus (part of the endogenous sleep pathway) mediates the sedative component of anesthesia for some intravenous anesthetics (e.g., propofol).[35] A discrete site of general anesthetic action for GABAergic drugs in the mesopontine tegmentum has also been proposed based on this strategy.[33,34] However, these approaches suffer from the fact that, invariably, high concentrations of drugs have to be injected locally to observe pharmacologic effects (because of rapid redistribution), so that such observations need to be substantiated using more sophisticated approaches, such as genetic manipulations (see later).

Nonimmobilizers

Nonimmobilizers are compounds with physicochemical characteristics similar to those of conventional inhaled anesthetics, but their predicted anesthetizing concentrations (based on their lipid solubility and the Meyer-Overton correlation [MAC_{pred}]) do not induce immobility.[17] Initially termed *nonanesthetics*, the terminology was revised when it was discovered that at least some of them cause amnesia at similar MAC_{pred} fractions to classic volatile anesthetics.[98] If a molecular or cellular process is affected in similar ways by an anesthetic and a nonimmobilizer, that process is not relevant for the anesthetic state, with the notable exception of amnesia. Despite this elegant rationale, only a limited number of receptors have been excluded because, compared with volatile anesthetics, nonimmobilizers are relatively target selective. These compounds have the potential to provide insights beyond the initially envisaged receptor-level studies by allowing the separation of sedation from amnesia for the study of underlying network activity in vivo.[95]

Photoreactive Anesthetics

An approach that has proven to be very successful with intravenous drugs[270] is one in which an analog of an anesthetic is synthesized that bears a photoreactive group (often a tri-fluoro-diazirine) which, when irradiated at a wavelength of around 300 nm, reacts irreversibly with some amino acids in the anesthetic binding site. This approach, of course, requires that the pharmacologic profile of the analog is very similar to that of the parent compound, so that the relevant binding site is identified. Photoreactive analogs of inhaled anesthetics have been synthesized and four putative sites on $GABA_A$ receptors have been identified.[271]. One advantage of this approach over x-ray crystallography is that anesthetic binding to different conformational states of the receptor are, at least in principle, more accessible to analysis.

GENETIC APPROACHES

Whole-Organism Genetics

Genetic strategies on whole organisms take two forms: forward and reverse.[272] The reverse genetic approach focuses on a particular gene chosen because there are reasons to hypothesize that its product may be important to anesthesia. Examples of this strategy are targeted mutations that alter the sensitivity of specific neurotransmitter receptors to anesthetics.[121] Initially, these mutations were used to identify anesthetic binding sites. Subsequently, transgenic animals rendered resistant to anesthetics, either by deletion of a putative target protein from the genome or by expressing a target receptor engineered to be insensitive to an anesthetic, were used to test behavioral relevance of the altered gene product for the production of anesthesia. Forward genetics, by contrast, is a discovery process that involves the study of randomly generated mutations (either experimentally induced or naturally occurring polymorphisms) that affect the phenotype of interest (i.e., anesthetic end points) in a population. This approach, however, has not been widely used.

Molecular Genetics

A third genetic approach that is playing an increasing role in neuroscience is the selective modification of neuronal function using molecular genetics. Many different approaches are used, ranging from the selective knockdown of specific receptor populations using microRNA (a small noncoding piece of RNA that can selectively reduce protein expression), the block of neurotransmitter release from a population of neurons using tetanus toxin light chain, and the selective activation or inhibition of neuronal networks using optogenetics[273] or pharmacogenetics.[274] A powerful complement to these techniques is the ability to deliver artificial transgenes to defined neuronal populations using adeno-associated virus (AAV), and mouse lines that express Cre recombinase in particular cell types, which allow the selective expression of those genes in those specific cells. These approaches are only just beginning to be used to identify neuronal pathways that are involved in anesthetic action. For example, it has recently been shown that the sedative effects of propofol require the activation of the lateral habenula, an excitatory nucleus that lies close to the thalamus.[275] These approaches are likely to have an increasing impact on our understanding of the mechanisms of inhaled general anesthetics.

Knockout and Knockin Animals

In the knockout approach, expression of the gene encoding a protein of interest is disrupted by a specific deletion or insertion. Nearly all such studies have been carried out in mice. A well-recognized problem with the global knockout approach is that extensive compensatory changes can be induced, from anomalies that are lethal in utero to insidious (but experimentally confounding) influences that might be expressed only at maturity. A complementary strategy is the conditional knockout, in which the genetic deletion is restricted either anatomically (limited to certain brain regions) or temporally (at a known point in time). These strategies can minimize developmental anomalies and reduce the likelihood of compensatory changes. In the knockin approach, a mutation, usually of a single amino acid residue, is targeted to produce a protein with altered sensitivity to a drug of interest. Ideally, this mutation remains completely silent in the absence of the drug; that is, it does not perturb the normal expression and function of the protein of interest or alter the expression of other genes.

$GABA_A$ receptors. Results from transgenic animals illustrate both the utility and the difficulties of the genetic approach with respect to inhaled agents. The conditional forebrain-restricted $GABA_A$ receptor α_1-subunit knockout mouse was found to be less sensitive to isoflurane-induced amnesia than wild-type mice, which led to the conclusion that action at these receptors contributes to isoflurane's amnesic effects.[276] By contrast, a mouse harboring a mutation of the $GABA_A$ receptor α_1 subunit that renders the receptor insensitive to isoflurane in vitro did not show reduced sensitivity to either the amnesic or the immobilizing effects of isoflurane, leading to the conclusion that this subunit does not mediate the impairment of learning and memory by isoflurane.[40] Similar experiments indicate that action at the $GABA_A$ receptor β_3 subunit does not mediate immobility or amnesia by isoflurane.[39] This bottom-up genetic approach is a work-intensive but powerful tool that has yielded clear results with the receptor-specific intravenous anesthetics,[27] but it has proved challenging to apply it to the more promiscuous inhaled agents.

Glycine α1–containing receptors. Pharmacologic studies supported the notion that glycinergic neurotransmission might be the effector for the immobilizing action of inhaled anesthetics in the spinal cord, where glycine replaces GABA as the principal inhibitory transmitter. However, mice harboring mutations that render α_1 subunit–containing glycine receptors largely insensitive to alcohol and inhaled ether anesthetics did not demonstrate a concordant change in MAC values. Because α_1 is the most widely expressed subunit in adult animals, it is unlikely that action at glycine receptors plays an important part in the immobilizing action of inhaled anesthetics.[276]

Two-pore domain K^+ channels. Use of mice harboring knockout mutations of several two-pore domain K^+ channel (K_{2P}) family members (TASK-1, TASK-3, TREK-1) has demonstrated a role for these channels in volatile anesthesia.[44,45,47] For example, TREK-1 knockout mice are partially resistant to all volatile anesthetics tested with respect to both loss of righting reflex (a surrogate measure of consciousness) and immobility, but anesthesia can still be induced, albeit at higher anesthetic concentrations. Interestingly, responses to pentobarbital are unaffected, indicating that the mutation does not cause a generalized resistance to anesthesia.

FORWARD AND POPULATION GENETICS

The nematode *C. elegans* and the fruit fly *Drosophila melanogaster*, with 302 and 100,000 neurons, respectively, have also been used as model organisms in anesthesia research.[277] Mutations in a number of *C. elegans* genes affect sensitivity to volatile anesthetics,[278] most notably *unc-1*,[279] a close homologue of the mammalian protein stomatin.[280] Yeasts have also been used as model organisms, with even more obvious limitations with respect to identification of appropriate anesthetic end points.

Sensitivity to anesthetics is a quantitative trait (varying continuously in a population). Quantitative genetics is the study of the heritability of continuous traits. These traits are controlled by genes represented in quantitative trait loci (QTLs). A top-down population-based approach has been used to localize QTLs that govern susceptibility of individuals to anesthetics, in higher and lower organisms. Starting from the observation that inbred mouse strains vary in their sensitivity to isoflurane, microsatellite-based linkage analysis and, alternatively, single-nucleotide polymorphism–based analysis of genetic variation localized a QTL for isoflurane immobilization to the proximal part of mouse chromosome 7.[281] Genetic variability in the sensitivity of *D. melanogaster* to inhaled anesthetics has also been demonstrated.[282] This type of analysis promises to assist in defining the genetic basis for variability in the susceptibility to both primary anesthetic end points and side effects.

FUNCTIONAL IMAGING AND HIGH-DENSITY ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAPHY

Identification of the anatomic and functional substrates for anesthetic effects on consciousness, memory, and immobility is now approachable with improved imaging techniques. Imaging is based on mapping of either metabolic or hemodynamic changes as surrogate measures of neuronal activity, as in positron emission tomography (PET) and functional magnetic resonance imaging, or on mapping electrical activity with high-density EEG, magnetoencephalography, and low-resolution brain electromagnetic tomography. Properties of receptors can also be probed with radioactive ligands by PET. These techniques have the capacity to identify neuroanatomic substrates of drug action with method-specific limitations. Results from functional PET imaging suggest that propofol suppresses episodic memory by targeting the prefrontal and posterior parietal cortex as opposed to the medial temporal lobe[283] and that suppression of consciousness is caused by anesthetic action in the thalamus, parts of the medial and posterior parietal cortex, and/or the posterior cingulate and medial parietal cortex.[284] Although observations of regionally specific and global suppressive effects of anesthetics on metabolic activity are unlikely to provide a definitive mechanistic understanding, such information can facilitate hypotheses and experimentally testable predictions.

Advanced analytical approaches based on theories from mathematical and statistical sciences are being increasingly applied to enhance the power of existing technologies. Magnetic resonance images and high-density EEG recordings of the brain reveal strong interregional connections, but the considerable potential of this connectivity information to better understand the brain's response to anesthesia has only recently begun to be tapped. The growing use of invasive recording techniques (e.g., brain surface electrode grids and microelectrodes implanted deep into the brain for functional neurosurgical therapies) is also advancing the frontiers of neuroscience in general and the understanding of anesthetic mechanisms in particular.

Summary

The mechanisms of inhaled anesthetics have proved more difficult to explain than was envisaged a generation ago, when the paradigm shifted from lipids to amphiphilic cavities in proteins as targets for anesthetics. Despite a remarkable accumulation of information, a comprehensive theory of general anesthetic action has yet to be formulated. Progress toward this goal has been difficult for several reasons. Important pharmacologic characteristics of inhaled anesthetics that have impeded identification of their relevant molecular targets are their low potency (micromolar range), activity at multiple targets, lack of specific antagonists, and limitations in the neuroscience of memory and consciousness. This contrasts with the situation for intravenous anesthetics, which exhibit more conventional receptor pharmacology. Moreover, accumulating evidence indicates that no universal target exists to explain the actions of every general anesthetic or even of a single anesthetic agent. It is now clear that the composite state of anesthesia and its core components (amnesia, sedation/unconsciousness, immobility) are separable behavioral states in vivo. Resolution of these phenomena at the molecular and cellular levels represents the cutting edge of contemporary neuroscience. Of the multiple molecular and cellular anesthetic effects identified, it is unclear which are critical for the desired behavioral end points, which are harmless or beneficial side effects (e.g., preconditioning), and which, if any, could have long-lasting or delayed undesirable consequences (e.g., cell death, cognitive dysfunction). Progress in identifying the molecular targets of general anesthetics provides a foundation for identification of the network- and systems-level effects relevant to their behavioral and peripheral end points. As the biologic foundations of behaviors once thought to be exclusively the realm of psychology are unraveled, for which anesthetics provide a valuable investigative tool, a comprehensive theory of anesthesia will also develop.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Perouansky M. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:465.
2. Winterstein H. *Die Narkose in ihrer Bedeutung für die Allgemeine Physiologie*. Springer; 1919.
3. Eger EI. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:238–239.
4. Eger EI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:756–763.
5. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:716–720.
6. Boggs JM, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 1976;12:127–135.
7. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *Nature*. 1978;274:339–342.
8. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *J Mol Biol*. 1979;133:469–500.
9. Featherstone RM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1961;22:977–981.
10. Ueda I, Kamaya H. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;38:425–436.
11. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *Nature*. 1982;300:487–493.
12. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *Nature*. 1984;310:599–601.
13. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:235–237.
14. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *Nature*. 1981;292:248–251.
15. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *Nature*. 1985;316:349–351.
16. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1986;83:5116–5120.
17. Koblin DD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:1043–1048.
18. Hall AC, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1994;112:906–910.
19. Dickinson R, et al. *Biophys J*. 1994;66:2019–2023.
20. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *Science*. 1991;254:427–430.
21. Herold KF, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2017;114:3109–3114.
22. Franks NP. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9:370–386.
23. Eckenhoff RG. *Mol Interv*. 2001;1:258–268.
24. Eckenhoff RG, Johansson JS. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1537–1539.
25. Eger 2nd EI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:915–921.
26. Dickinson R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:837–843.
27. Rudolph U, Antkowiak B. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2004;5:709–720.
28. Antognini JF, Schwartz K. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:1244–1249.
29. Rampil IJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:707–712.
30. Stabernack C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:128–136.
31. Veselis RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:896–907.
32. Sanders RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:946–959.
33. Devor M, Zalkind V. *Pain*. 2001;94:101–112.
34. Minert A, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2017;37:9320–9331.
35. Nelson LE, et al. *Nat Neurosci*. 2002;5:979–984.
36. Rampil IJ, Laster MJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:920–925.
37. Antognini JF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:980–986.
38. Zhang Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:85–90.
39. Liao M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:412–418.
40. Sonner JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:107–113.
41. Raines DE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:573–577.
42. Zhang Y, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2010;159:872–878.
43. Heurteaux C, et al. *EMBO J*. 2004;23:2684–2695.
44. Linden AM, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2006;317:615–626.
45. Linden AM, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2007;323:924–934.
46. Pang DS, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:17546–17551.
47. Westphalen RI, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2007;152:939–945.
48. Jinks SL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:1016–1024.
49. Koch C, et al. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2016;17:307–321.
50. Mashour GA, Hudetz AG. *Trends Neurosci*. 2018;41:150–160.
51. Sanders RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:214–222.
52. Leung LS, et al. *Prog Neurobiol*. 2014;122:24–44.
53. Brown EN, et al. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2011;34:601–628.
54. Mashour GA. *Front Syst Neurosci*. 2014;8:115.
55. Mashour GA, Hudetz AG. *Front Neural Circuits*. 2017;11:44.
56. Tononi G. *Biol Bull*. 2008;215:216–242.
57. Tononi G, et al. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2016;17:450–461.
58. Lee U, et al. *Philos Trans A Math Phys Eng Sci*. 2015;373.
59. Imas OA, et al. *Neurosci Lett*. 2005;387:145–150.
60. MacIver MB, Bland BH. *Front Syst Neurosci*. 2014;8:203.
61. Bullmore E, Sporns O. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2012;13:336–349.
62. van den Heuvel MP, Sporns O. *J Neurosci*. 2011;31:15775–15786.
63. Massimini M, et al. *Science*. 2005;309:2228–2232.
64. Ferrarelli F, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:2681–2686.
65. Alkire MT, et al. *Science*. 2008;322:876–880.
66. Imas OA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:937–947.
67. Imas OA, et al. *Neurosci Lett*. 2006;402:216–221.
68. John ER, et al. *Conscious Cogn*. 2001;10:165–183.
69. Burlingame RH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:754–762.
70. Ter-Mikaelian M, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2007;27:6091–6102.
71. Lee U, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1264–1275.
72. Wacongne C, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:20754–20759.
73. Raz A, et al. *Front Syst Neurosci*. 2014;8:191.
74. Hentschke H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:685–696.
75. Kelz MB, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:1309–1314.
76. Moore JT, et al. *Curr Biol*. 2012;22:2008–2016.
77. McCarren HS, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2014;34:16385–16396.
78. Solt K. *Curr Biol*. 2012;22:R918–R919.
79. Scharf MT, Kelz MB. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2013;3:1–9.
80. Taylor NE, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2016.
81. Alkire MT, et al. *Conscious Cogn*. 2000;9:370–386.
82. Baker R, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2014;34:13326–13335.
83. Saalmann YB. *Front Syst Neurosci*. 2014;8:83.
84. Dutton RC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:514–519.
85. Brown EN, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:2638–2650.
86. Alkire MT, Nathan SV. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:754–760.
87. Dai S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:816–823.
88. Piao MH, et al. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2013;32:e135–e141.
89. Zhou C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:661–666.
90. Kuo MC, Leung LS. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:838–851.
91. Vertes RP. *Hippocampus*. 2005;15:923–935.
92. Pan WX, McNaughton N. *Brain Res*. 1997;764:101–108.
93. Robbe D, et al. *Nat Neurosci*. 2006;9:1526–1533.
94. Perouansky M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1168–1176.
95. Seidenbecher T, et al. *Science*. 2003;301:846–850.
96. Rudolph U, et al. *Nature*. 1999;401:796–800.
97. Kandel L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:321–326.
98. Mihic SJ, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 1994;46:851–857.
99. Zarnowska ED, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:401–406.
100. Jevtovic-Todorovic V, et al. *Nat Med*. 1998;4:460–463.
101. Gruss M, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2004;65:443–452.
102. Gries DA, et al. *Life Sci*. 2005;76:1667–1674.
103. Zhang Z, et al. *Nat Neurosci*. 2015;18:553–561.
104. Murphy M, et al. *Sleep*. 2011;34:283–291A.
105. Tung A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1419–1426.
106. Nelson AB, et al. *Sleep*. 2010;33:1659–1667.
107. Hentschke H, et al. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2005;21:93–102.
108. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *Nature*. 1994;367:607–614.
109. Zeller A, et al. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2008:31–51.
110. Franks NP, et al. *Biophys J*. 1998;75:2205–2211.
111. Bhattacharya AA, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2000;275:38731–38738.
112. Bertaccini EJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:318–324.
113. Howard RJ, et al. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2014;66:396–412.
114. Nury H, et al. *Nature*. 2011;469:428–431.
115. Dickinson R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:756–767.
116. Hemmings HC, et al. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2005;26:503–510.
117. Patel AJ, et al. *Nat Neurosci*. 1999;2:422–426.
118. Franks NP, Honore E. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2004;25:601–608.
119. Sieghart W. *Adv Pharmacol*. 2015;72:53–96.
120. Lynch JW. *Physiol Rev*. 2004;84:1051–1095.
121. Mihic SJ, et al. *Nature*. 1997;389:385–389.
122. Solt K, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2005;315:771–776.
123. Jenkins A, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1996;117:1507–1515.
124. Role LW, Berg DK. *Neuron*. 1996;16:1077–1085.
125. Flood P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:859–865.
126. Violet JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:866–874.
127. Dingledine R, et al. *Pharmacol Rev*. 1999;51:7–61.
128. Franks NP, et al. *Nature*. 1998;396:324.
129. de Sousa SL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1055–1066.
130. Solt K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1407–1411.
131. Harris RA, et al. *FASEB J*. 1995;9:1454–1462.
132. Sonner JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:143–148.
133. Maclver MB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:823–834.
134. Perouansky M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:470–472.
135. Winegar BD, MacIver MB. *BMC Neurosci*. 2006;7:5.
136. Haydon DA, Urban BW. *J Physiol*. 1983;341:429–439.
137. Berg-Johnsen J, Langmoen IA. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 1986;127:87–93.
138. Mikulec AA, et al. *Brain Res*. 1998;796:231–238.
139. Wu XS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:663–670.
140. Yu FH, Catterall WA. *Sci STKE*. 2004;2004:re15.
141. Catterall WA. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol*. 2000;16:521–555.

142. Herold KF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:591–599.
143. Ouyang W, Hemmings HC. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2005;312:801–808.
144. OuYang W, Hemmings HC. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:91–98.
145. Ouyang W, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2007;322:1076–1083.
146. Ratnakumari L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:529–541.
147. Herold KF, Hemmings HC. *Front Pharmacol*. 2012;3:50.
148. Tang JX, et al. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2011;7:521–531.e521.
149. Barber AF, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2014;111:6726–6731.
150. Kinde MN, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2016;113:13762–13767.
151. Sand RM, et al. *J Gen Physiol*. 2017;149:623–638.
152. Miao N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:593–603.
153. Pocock G, Richards CD. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:134–147.
154. Kameyama K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:402–411.
155. Study RE. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:104–116.
156. Hall AC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:117–123.
157. Takei T, et al. *Neurosci Lett*. 2003;350:41–45.
158. Joksovic PM, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2005;144:59–70.
159. Todorovic SM, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2001;60:603–610.
160. Petrenko AB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1177–1185.
161. Hanley PJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:999–1014.
162. Huneke R, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:547–561.
163. Rithalia A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1615–1622.
164. Huneke R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:999–1006.
165. Stowe DF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:516–522.
166. Davies LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1034–1044.
167. Joseph JD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:528–537.
168. Pabelick CM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:207–215.
169. Roberts MC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:716–725.
170. Mickelson JR, Louis CF. *Physiol Rev*. 1996;76:537–592.
171. Yost CS. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1186–1203.
172. Friederich P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:954–958.
173. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *Nature*. 1988;333:662–664.
174. Dickinson R, Franks NP. *Critical care*. 2010;14:229.
175. Tong L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:157–167.
176. Woll KA, et al. *ACS Chem Biol*. 2017;12:1353–1362.
177. Bertaccini EJ, et al. *ACS Chem Neurosci*. 2014;5:1246–1252.
178. Farwell D, Gollob MH. *Can J Cardiol*. 2007;23(suppl A):16A–22A.
179. Antzelevitch C. *J Electrocardiol*. 2001;34(suppl):177–181.
180. Li J, Correa AM. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:921–930.
181. Davies LA, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2000;131:223–230.
182. Stadnicka A, et al. *J Anesth*. 2007;21:212–219.
183. Wojtovich AP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:1065–1076.
184. Sirois JE, et al. *J Physiol*. 2002;541:717–729.
185. Chen X, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2005;25:5803–5814.
186. Robinson RB, Siegelbaum SA. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 2003;65:453–480.
187. Girault JA, et al. In: Hemmings HC, et al, eds. *Foundations of Anesthesia*. Mosby; 2005:31.
188. Rebecchi MJ, Pentyala SN. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:62–78.
189. Peterlin Z, et al. *Mol Cell Neurosci*. 2005;30:506–512.
190. Minami K, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 1998;53:148–156.
191. Minami K, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1997;281:1136–1143.
192. Minami K, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1997;339:237–244.
193. Hemmings HC. *Toxicol Lett*. 1998;100–101:89–95.
194. Hasegawa J, et al. *Acta Histochem Cytochem*. 2006;39:163–172.
195. Das J, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:37964–37972.
196. Shumilla JA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:82–84.
197. Sonner JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:1030–1034.
198. Inoue S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:75–81.
199. Rasmussen LS, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:1137–1143.
200. Fukuda S, Warner DS. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:10–17.
201. Turner CP, et al. *Neuroscience*. 2012;210:384–392.
202. Pratt PF, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;19:397–403.
203. Zaugg M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:551–565.
204. Ludwig LM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:532–539.
205. Song IA, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2016;16:13.
206. Snyder GL, et al. *Neuropharmacology*. 2007;53:619–630.
207. Hemmings HC, Adamo AI. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:147–155.
208. Marota JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:365–371.
209. Hamaya Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1177–1183.
210. Culley DJ, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2006;549:71–78.
211. Futterer CD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:302–308.
212. Durieux M, Davis PJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1265–1267.
213. Dalla Massara L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:1311–1327.
214. Kullmann DM, et al. *J Physiol*. 1989;412:277–296.
215. Fujiwara N, et al. *J Physiol*. 1988;402:155–175.
216. MacIver MB, Roth SH. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;60:680–691.
217. Ries CR, Puil E. *J Neurophysiol*. 1999;81:1802–1809.
218. Sirois JE, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2000;20:6347–6354.
219. Semyanov A, et al. *Trends Neurosci*. 2004;27:262–269.
220. Houston CM, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32:3887–3897.
221. Bai D, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2001;59:814–824.
222. Bieda MC, MacIver MB. *J Neurophysiol*. 2004;92:1658–1667.
223. Caraiscos VB, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:3662–3667.
224. Caraiscos VB, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2004;24:8454–8458.
225. Capogna M, Pearce RA. *Trends Neurosci*. 2011;34:101–112.
226. Rodgers FC, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2015;35:9707–9716.
227. Berg-Johnsen J, Langmoen IA. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36:350–355.
228. Kirson ED, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1998;124:1607–1614.
229. Richards CD, Smaje JC. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1976;58:347–357.
230. Wakamori M, et al. *J Neurophysiol*. 1991;66:2014–2021.
231. Yang J, Zorumski CF. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1991;625:287–289.
232. Dildy-Mayfield JE, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1996;276:1058–1065.
233. Minami K, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1998;273:8248–8255.
234. Morgan PG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1268–1270.
235. Quintana A, et al. *PLoS One*. 2012;7:e42904.
236. Zimin PI, et al. *Curr Biol*. 2016;26:2194–2201.
237. Ramadasan-Nair R, et al. *PLoS One*. 2017;12:e0188087.
238. Banks MI, Pearce RA. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:120–134.
239. Murugaiah KD, Hemmings HC. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:919–928.
240. Nishikawa K, MacIver MB. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:340–347.
241. Westphalen RI, Hemmings HC. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2003;304:1188–1196.
242. Westphalen RI, Hemmings HC. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2006;316:216–223.
243. Baumgart JP, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2015;112:11959–11964.
244. Nagele P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:768–778.
245. van Swinderen B, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96:2479–2484.
246. Hemmings HC, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2005;67:1591–1599.
247. Pearce RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:591–598.
248. Pearce RA. *J Physiol*. 1996;492(Pt 3):823–840.
249. Ballesteros KA, et al. *Int J Gen Med*. 2012;5:935–942.
250. Simon W, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:1058–1065.
251. Jinks SL, et al. *Neuroreport*. 2011;22:655–659.
252. Jinks SL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:567–575.
253. Lewis LD, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109:E3377–E3386.
254. Guidera JA, et al. *Front Neural Circuits*. 2017;11:36.
255. Steriade M, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1993;13:3266–3283.
256. Purdon PL, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2013;110:E1142–E1151.
257. Buzsaki G. *Neuron*. 2002;33:325–340.
258. Bland BH, et al. *Hippocampus*. 2003;13:38–47.
259. Munglani R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:633–641.
260. Madler C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:81–87.
261. Buzsaki G, Wang XJ. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2012;35:203–225.
262. Dickinson R, et al. *Neuropharmacology*. 2003;44:864–872.
263. Antkowiak B, Hentschke H. *Neurosci Lett*. 1997;231:87–90.
264. Gottschalk A, Haney P. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:548–564.
265. Storer KP, Reeke GN. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:780–790.
266. Wilson MT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:588–593.
267. Steyn-Ross ML, et al. *Prog Biophys Mol Biol*. 2004;85:369–385.
268. Zhang Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:1585–1589.
269. Zhang Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:123–127.
270. Forman SA, Miller KW. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:1263–1273.
271. Woll KA, et al. *FASEB J*. 2018: fj201701347R.
272. Nash HA. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:143–155.
273. Kim CK, et al. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2017;18:222–235.
274. Roth BL. *Neuron*. 2016;89:683–694.
275. Gelegen C, et al. *Curr Biol*. 2018;28:580–587. e585.
276. Sonner JM, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2005;68:61–68.
277. van Swinderen B, Kottler B. *Bioessays*. 2014;36:372–381.
278. Morgan PG, Sedensky MM. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:888–898.
279. Rajaram S, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:8761–8766.
280. Sedensky MM, et al. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol*. 2001;280:C1340–C1348.
281. Cascio M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:381–385.
282. Olufs ZPG, et al. *Sci Rep*. 2018;8:2348.
283. Veselis RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:329–337.
284. Alkire MT, Miller J. *Prog Brain Res*. 2005;150:229–244.

References

1. Perouansky M. The quest for a unified model of anesthetic action. A century in Claude Bernard's shadow. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:465–474.
2. Winterstein H. *Die Narkose in ihrer Bedeutung für die allgemeine Physiologie*. Springer; 1919.
3. Eger EI. A brief history of the origin of minimum alveolar concentration (MAC). *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:238–239.
4. Eger EI, et al. Minimum alveolar anesthetic concentration. A standard of anesthetic potency. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:756–763.
5. Franks NP, Lieb WR. Temperature dependence of the potency of volatile general anesthetics. implications for in vitro experiments. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:716–720.
6. Boggs JM, et al. Site and mechanism of anesthetic action. I. Effect of anesthetics and pressure on fluidity of spin-labeled lipid vesicles. *Mol Pharmacol*. 1976;12:127–135.
7. Franks NP, Lieb WR. Where do general anaesthetics act? *Nature*. 1978;274:339–342.
8. Franks NP, Lieb WR. The structure of lipid bilayers and the effects of general anaesthetics. An x-ray and neutron diffraction study. *J Mol Biol*. 1979;133:469–500.
9. Featherstone RM, et al. Interactions of inert anesthetic gases with proteins. *Anesthesiology*. 1961;22:977–981.
10. Ueda I, Kamaya H. Kinetic and thermodynamic aspects of the mechanism of general anesthesia in a model system of firefly luminescence in vitro. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;38:425–436.
11. Franks NP, Lieb WR. Molecular mechanisms of general anaesthesia. *Nature*. 1982;300:487–493.
12. Franks NP, Lieb WR. Do general anaesthetics act by competitive binding to specific receptors? *Nature*. 1984;310:599–601.
13. Franks NP, Lieb WR. Seeing the light. Protein theories of general anesthesia. 1984. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:235–237.
14. Franks NP, Lieb WR. Is membrane expansion relevant to anaesthesia? *Nature*. 1981;292:248–251.
15. Franks NP, Lieb WR. Mapping of general anaesthetic target sites provides a molecular basis for cutoff effects. *Nature*. 1985;316:349–351.
16. Franks NP, Lieb WR. Partitioning of long-chain alcohols into lipid bilayers. implications for mechanisms of general anesthesia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1986;83:5116–5120.
17. Koblin DD, et al. Polyhalogenated and perfluorinated compounds that disobey the Meyer-Overton hypothesis. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:1043–1048.
18. Hall AC, et al. Stereoselective and non-stereoselective actions of isoflurane on the GABAA receptor. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1994;112:906–910.
19. Dickinson R, et al. Can the stereoselective effects of the anesthetic isoflurane be accounted for by lipid solubility? *Biophys J*. 1994;66:2019–2023.
20. Franks NP, Lieb WR. Stereospecific effects of inhalational general anesthetic optical isomers on nerve ion channels. *Science*. 1991;254:427–430.
21. Herold KF, et al. Clinical concentrations of chemically diverse general anesthetics minimally affect lipid bilayer properties. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2017;114:3109–3114.
22. Franks NP. General anaesthesia. from molecular targets to neuronal pathways of sleep and arousal. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9:370–386.
23. Eckenhoff RG. Promiscuous ligands and attractive cavities. How do the inhaled anesthetics work? *Mol Interv*. 2001;1:258–268.
24. Eckenhoff RG, Johansson JS. What are "relevant" concentrations? *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1537–1539.
25. Eger EI, et al. Relevant concentrations of inhaled anesthetics for in vitro studies of anesthetic mechanisms. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:915–921.
26. Dickinson R, et al. Stereoselective loss of righting reflex in rats by isoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:837–843.
27. Rudolph U, Antkowiak B. Molecular and neuronal substrates for general anaesthetics. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2004;5:709–720.
28. Antognini JF, Schwartz K. Exaggerated anesthetic requirements in the preferentially anesthetized brain. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:1244–1249.
29. Rampil IJ, et al. Anesthetic potency (MAC) is independent of forebrain structures in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:707–712.
30. Stabernack C, et al. Thiopental produces immobility primarily by supraspinal actions in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:128–136.
31. Veselis RA, et al. Drug-induced amnesia is a separate phenomenon from sedation. Electrophysiologic evidence. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:896–907.
32. Sanders RD, et al. Unresponsiveness not equal unconsciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:946–959.
33. Devor M, Zalkind V. Reversible analgesia, atonia, and loss of consciousness on bilateral intracerebral microinjection of pentobarbital. *Pain*. 2001;94:101–112.
34. Minert A, et al. Location of the mesopontine neurons responsible for maintenance of anesthetic loss of consciousness. *J Neurosci*. 2017;37:9320–9331.
35. Nelson LE, et al. The sedative component of anesthesia is mediated by GABA(A) receptors in an endogenous sleep pathway. *Nat Neurosci*. 2002;5:979–984.
36. Rampil IJ, Laster MJ. No correlation between quantitative electroencephalographic measurements and movement response to noxious stimuli during isoflurane anesthesia in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:920–925.
37. Antognini JF, et al. Does the immobilizing effect of thiopental in brain exceed that of halothane? *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:980–986.
38. Zhang Y, et al. Gamma-aminobutyric acidA receptors do not mediate the immobility produced by isoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:85–90.
39. Liao M, et al. Beta3-containing gamma-aminobutyric acidA receptors are not major targets for the amnesic and immobilizing actions of isoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:412–418.
40. Sonner JM, et al. Effect of isoflurane and other potent inhaled anesthetics on minimum alveolar concentration, learning, and the righting reflex in mice engineered to express alpha1 gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptors unresponsive to isoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:107–113.
41. Raines DE, et al. Nonhalogenated anesthetic alkanes and perhalogenated nonimmobilizing alkanes inhibit alpha(4)beta(2) neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:573–577.
42. Zhang Y, et al. Bidirectional modulation of isoflurane potency by intrathecal tetrodotoxin and veratridine in rats. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2010;159:872–878.
43. Heurteaux C, et al. TREK-1, a K+ channel involved in neuroprotection and general anesthesia. *EMBO J*. 2004;23:2684–2695.
44. Linden AM, et al. The in vivo contributions of TASK-1-containing channels to the actions of inhalation anesthetics, the alpha(2) adrenergic sedative dexmedetomidine, and cannabinoid agonists. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2006;317:615–626.
45. Linden AM, et al. TASK-3 knockout mice exhibit exaggerated nocturnal activity, impairments in cognitive functions, and reduced sensitivity to inhalation anesthetics. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2007;323:924–934.
46. Pang DS, et al. An unexpected role for TASK-3 potassium channels in network oscillations with implications for sleep mechanisms and anesthetic action. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:17546–17551.
47. Westphalen RI, et al. Reduced inhibition of cortical glutamate and GABA release by halothane in mice lacking the K+ channel, TREK-1. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2007;152:939–945.
48. Jinks SL, et al. Volatile anesthetic effects on midbrain-elicited locomotion suggest that the locomotor network in the ventral spinal cord is the primary site for immobility. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:1016–1024.
49. Koch C, et al. Neural correlates of consciousness. progress and problems. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2016;17:307–321.
50. Mashour GA, Hudetz AG. Neural correlates of unconsciousness in large-scale brain networks. *Trends Neurosci*. 2018;41:150–160.
51. Sanders RD, et al. Incidence of connected consciousness after tracheal intubation. A prospective, international, multicenter cohort study of the isolated forearm technique. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:214–222.
52. Leung LS, et al. Brain areas that influence general anesthesia. *Prog Neurobiol*. 2014;122:24–44.
53. Brown EN, et al. General anesthesia and altered states of arousal. a systems neuroscience analysis. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2011;34:601–628.
54. Mashour GA. Top-down mechanisms of anesthetic-induced unconsciousness. *Front Syst Neurosci*. 2014;8:115.

55. Mashour GA, Hudetz AG. Bottom-up and top-down mechanisms of general anesthetics modulate different dimensions of consciousness. *Front Neural Circuits*. 2017;11:44.
56. Tononi G. Consciousness as integrated information. A provisional manifesto. *Biol Bull*. 2008;215:216–242.
57. Tononi G, et al. Integrated information theory. From consciousness to its physical substrate. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2016;17:450–461.
58. Lee U, et al. Assessing levels of consciousness with symbolic analysis. *Philos Trans A Math Phys Eng Sci*. 2015;373.
59. Imas OA, et al. Volatile anesthetics disrupt frontal-posterior recurrent information transfer at gamma frequencies in rat. *Neurosci Lett*. 2005;387:145–150.
60. MacIver MB, Bland BH. Chaos analysis of EEG during isoflurane-induced loss of righting in rats. *Front Syst Neurosci*. 2014;8:203.
61. Bullmore E, Sporns O. The economy of brain network organization. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2012;13:336–349.
62. van den Heuvel MP, Sporns O. Rich-club organization of the human connectome. *J Neurosci*. 2011;31:15775–15786.
63. Massimini M, et al. Breakdown of cortical effective connectivity during sleep. *Science*. 2005;309:2228–2232.
64. Ferrarelli F, et al. Breakdown in cortical effective connectivity during midazolam-induced loss of consciousness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:2681–2686.
65. Alkire MT, et al. Consciousness and anesthesia. *Science*. 2008;322:876–880.
66. Imas OA, et al. Volatile anesthetics enhance flash-induced gamma oscillations in rat visual cortex. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:937–947.
67. Imas OA, et al. Isoflurane disrupts anterio-posterior phase synchronization of flash-induced field potentials in the rat. *Neurosci Lett*. 2006;402:216–221.
68. John ER, et al. Invariant reversible QEEG effects of anesthetics. *Conscious Cogn*. 2001;10:165–183.
69. Burlingame RH, et al. Subhypnotic doses of isoflurane impair auditory discrimination in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:754–762.
70. Ter-Mikaelian M, et al. Transformation of temporal properties between auditory midbrain and cortex in the awake Mongolian gerbil. *J Neurosci*. 2007;27:6091–6102.
71. Lee U, et al. Disruption of frontal-parietal communication by ketamine, propofol, and sevoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1264–1275.
72. Wacongne C, et al. Evidence for a hierarchy of predictions and prediction errors in human cortex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:20754–20759.
73. Raz A, et al. Preferential effect of isoflurane on top-down vs. bottom-up pathways in sensory cortex. *Front Syst Neurosci*. 2014;8:191.
74. Hentschke H, et al. Disruption of cortical network activity by the general anaesthetic isoflurane. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:685–696.
75. Kelz MB, et al. An essential role for orexins in emergence from general anesthesia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:1309–1314.
76. Moore JT, et al. Direct activation of sleep-promoting VLPO neurons by volatile anesthetics contributes to anesthetic hypnosis. *Curr Biol*. 2012;22:2008–2016.
77. McCarren HS, et al. Alpha2-Adrenergic stimulation of the ventrolateral preoptic nucleus destabilizes the anesthetic state. *J Neurosci*. 2014;34:16385–16396.
78. Solt K. General anesthesia. activating a sleep switch? *Curr Biol*. 2012;22:R918–R919.
79. Scharf MT, Kelz MB. Sleep and anesthesia interactions. A pharmacological appraisal. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2013;3:1–9.
80. Taylor NE, et al. Optogenetic activation of dopamine neurons in the ventral tegmental area induces reanimation from general anesthesia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2016.
81. Alkire MT, et al. Toward a unified theory of narcosis. brain imaging evidence for a thalamocortical switch as the neurophysiologic basis of anesthetic-induced unconsciousness. *Conscious Cogn*. 2000;9:370–386.
82. Baker R, et al. Altered activity in the central medial thalamus precedes changes in the neocortex during transitions into both sleep and propofol anesthesia. *J Neurosci*. 2014;34:13326–13335.
83. Saalmann YB. Intralaminar and medial thalamic influence on cortical synchrony, information transmission and cognition. *Front Syst Neurosci*. 2014;8:83.
84. Dutton RC, et al. The concentration of isoflurane required to suppress learning depends on the type of learning. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:514–519.
85. Brown EN, et al. General anesthesia, sleep, and coma. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:2638–2650.
86. Alkire MT, Nathan SV. Does the amygdala mediate anesthetic-induced amnesia? Basolateral amygdala lesions block sevoflurane-induced amnesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:754–760.
87. Dai S, et al. Isoflurane enhances both fast and slow synaptic inhibition in the hippocampus at amnestic concentrations. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:816–823.
88. Piao MH, et al. Volatile anesthetic isoflurane inhibits LTP induction of hippocampal CA1 neurons through alpha4beta2 nAChR subtype-mediated mechanisms. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2013;32:e135–e141.
89. Zhou C, et al. HCN1 channels contribute to the effects of amnesia and hypnosis but not immobility of volatile anesthetics. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:661–666.
90. Kuo MC, Leung LS. Disruption of hippocampal multisynaptic networks by general anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:838–851.
91. Vertes RP. Hippocampal theta rhythm. a tag for short-term memory. *Hippocampus*. 2005;15:923–935.
92. Pan WX, McNaughton N. The medial supramammillary nucleus, spatial learning and the frequency of hippocampal theta activity. *Brain Res*. 1997;764:101–108.
93. Robbe D, et al. Cannabinoids reveal importance of spike timing coordination in hippocampal function. *Nat Neurosci*. 2006;9:1526–1533.
94. Perouansky M, et al. Amnesic concentrations of the nonimmobilizer 1,2-dichlorohexafluorocyclobutane (F6, 2N) and isoflurane alter hippocampal theta oscillations in vivo. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1168–1176.
95. Seidenbecher T, et al. Amygdalar and hippocampal theta rhythm synchronization during fear memory retrieval. *Science*. 2003;301:846–850.
96. Rudolph U, et al. Benzodiazepine actions mediated by specific gamma-aminobutyric acid(A) receptor subtypes. *Nature*. 1999;401:796–800.
97. Kandel L, et al. Nonanesthetics can suppress learning. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:321–326.
98. Mihic SJ, et al. Potentiation of gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptor-mediated chloride currents by novel halogenated compounds correlates with their abilities to induce general anesthesia. *Mol Pharmacol*. 1994;46:851–857.
99. Zarnowska ED, et al. The gamma-subunit governs the susceptibility of recombinant gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptors to block by the nonimmobilizer 1,2-dichlorohexafluorocyclobutane (F6, 2N). *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:401–406.
100. Jevtovic-Todorovic V, et al. Nitrous oxide (laughing gas) is an NMDA antagonist, neuroprotectant and neurotoxin. *Nat Med*. 1998;4:460–463.
101. Gruss M, et al. Two-pore-domain K+ channels are a novel target for the anesthetic gases xenon, nitrous oxide, and cyclopropane. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2004;65:443–452.
102. Gries DA, et al. Anxiolytic-like action in mice treated with nitrous oxide and oral triazolam or diazepam. *Life Sci*. 2005;76:1667–1674.
103. Zhang Z, et al. Neuronal ensembles sufficient for recovery sleep and the sedative actions of alpha2 adrenergic agonists. *Nat Neurosci*. 2015;18:553–561.
104. Murphy M, et al. Propofol anesthesia and sleep. A high-density EEG study. *Sleep*. 2011;34: 283–291A.
105. Tung A, et al. Recovery from sleep deprivation occurs during propofol anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1419–1426.
106. Nelson AB, et al. Effects of anesthesia on the response to sleep deprivation. *Sleep*. 2010;33:1659–1667.
107. Hentschke H, et al. Neocortex is the major target of sedative concentrations of volatile anaesthetics. Strong depression of firing rates and increase of GABAA receptor-mediated inhibition. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2005;21:93–102.
108. Franks NP, Lieb WR. Molecular and cellular mechanisms of general anaesthesia. *Nature*. 1994;367:607–614.
109. Zeller A, et al. Inhibitory ligand-gated ion channels as substrates for general anesthetic actions. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2008:31–51.
110. Franks NP, et al. Structural basis for the inhibition of firefly luciferase by a general anesthetic. *Biophys J*. 1998;75: 2205–2211.

111. Bhattacharya AA, et al. Binding of the general anesthetics propofol and halothane to human serum albumin. High resolution crystal structures. *J Biol Chem*. 2000;275:38731–38738.
112. Bertaccini EJ, et al. The common chemical motifs within anesthetic binding sites. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:318–324.
113. Howard RJ, et al. Seeking structural specificity. Direct modulation of pentameric ligand-gated ion channels by alcohols and general anesthetics. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2014;66:396–412.
114. Nury H, et al. X-ray structures of general anaesthetics bound to a pentameric ligand-gated ion channel. *Nature*. 2011;469:428–431.
115. Dickinson R, et al. Competitive inhibition at the glycine site of the N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor by the anesthetics xenon and isoflurane. evidence from molecular modeling and electrophysiology. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:756–767.
116. Hemmings HC, et al. Emerging molecular mechanisms of general anesthetic action. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2005;26:503–510.
117. Patel AJ, et al. Inhalational anesthetics activate two-pore-domain background K+ channels. *Nat Neurosci*. 1999;2:422–426.
118. Franks NP, Honore E. The TREK K2P channels and their role in general anaesthesia and neuroprotection. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2004;25:601–608.
119. Sieghart W. Allosteric modulation of GABAA receptors via multiple drug-binding sites. *Adv Pharmacol*. 2015;72:53–96.
120. Lynch JW. Molecular structure and function of the glycine receptor chloride channel. *Physiol Rev*. 2004;84:1051–1095.
121. Mihic SJ, et al. Sites of alcohol and volatile anaesthetic action on GABA(A) and glycine receptors. *Nature*. 1997;389:385–389.
122. Solt K, et al. General anesthetic-induced channel gating enhancement of 5-hydroxytryptamine type 3 receptors depends on receptor subunit composition. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2005;315:771–776.
123. Jenkins A, et al. Actions of general anaesthetics on 5-HT3 receptors in N1E-115 neuroblastoma cells. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1996;117:1507–1515.
124. Role LW, Berg DK. Nicotinic receptors in the development and modulation of CNS synapses. *Neuron*. 1996;16:1077–1085.
125. Flood P, et al. Alpha 4 beta 2 neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors in the central nervous system are inhibited by isoflurane and propofol, but alpha 7-type nicotinic acetylcholine receptors are unaffected. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:859–865.
126. Violet JM, et al. Differential sensitivities of mammalian neuronal and muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptors to general anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:866–874.
127. Dingledine R, et al. The glutamate receptor ion channels. *Pharmacol Rev*. 1999;51:7–61.
128. Franks NP, et al. How does xenon produce anaesthesia? *Nature*. 1998;396:324.
129. de Sousa SL, et al. Contrasting synaptic actions of the inhalational general anesthetics isoflurane and xenon. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1055–1066.
130. Solt K, et al. Differential modulation of human N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors by structurally diverse general anesthetics. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1407–1411.
131. Harris RA, et al. Actions of anesthetics on ligand-gated ion channels. Role of receptor subunit composition. *FASEB J*. 1995;9:1454–1462.
132. Sonner JM, et al. The effect of three inhaled anesthetics in mice harboring mutations in the GluR6 (kainate) receptor gene. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:143–148.
133. Maclver MB, et al. Volatile anesthetics depress glutamate transmission via presynaptic actions. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:823–834.
134. Perouansky M, et al. Anesthetic effects on glutamatergic neurotransmission. Lessons learned from a large synapse. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:470–472.
135. Winegar BD, MacIver MB. Isoflurane depresses hippocampal CA1 glutamate nerve terminals without inhibiting fiber volleys. *BMC Neurosci*. 2006;7:5.
136. Haydon DA, Urban BW. The effects of some inhalation anaesthetics on the sodium current of the squid giant axon. *J Physiol*. 1983;341:429–439.
137. Berg-Johnsen J, Langmoen IA. The effect of isoflurane on unmyelinated and myelinated fibres in the rat brain. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 1986;127:87–93.
138. Mikulec AA, et al. Halothane depresses action potential conduction in hippocampal axons. *Brain Res*. 1998;796:231–238.
139. Wu XS, et al. Isoflurane inhibits transmitter release and the presynaptic action potential. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:663–670.
140. Yu FH, Catterall WA. The VGL-chanome. A protein superfamily specialized for electrical signaling and ionic homeostasis. *Sci STKE*. 2004; 2004:re15.
141. Catterall WA. Structure and regulation of voltage-gated Ca2+ channels. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol*. 2000;16:521–555.
142. Herold KF, et al. Isoflurane inhibits the tetrodotoxin-resistant voltage-gated sodium channel Nav1.8. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:591–599.
143. Ouyang W, Hemmings HC. Depression by isoflurane of the action potential and underlying voltage-gated ion currents in isolated rat neurohypophysial nerve terminals. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2005;312:801–808.
144. Ouyang W, Hemmings HC. Isoform-selective effects of isoflurane on voltage-gated Na+ channels. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:91–98.
145. Ouyang W, et al. Isoflurane inhibits NaChBac, a prokaryotic voltage-gated sodium channel. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2007;322:1076–1083.
146. Ratnakumari L, et al. Differential effects of anesthetic and nonanesthetic cyclobutanes on neuronal voltage-gated sodium channels. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:529–541.
147. Herold KF, Hemmings HC. Sodium channels as targets for volatile anesthetics. *Front Pharmacol*. 2012;3:50.
148. Tang JX, et al. Anesthesia in presymptomatic Alzheimer's disease. a study using the triple-transgenic mouse model. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2011;7:521–531.e521.
149. Barber AF, et al. Modulation of a voltage-gated Na+ channel by sevoflurane involves multiple sites and distinct mechanisms. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2014;111:6726–6731.
150. Kinde MN, et al. Fluorine-19 NMR and computational quantification of isoflurane binding to the voltage-gated sodium channel NaChBac. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2016;113:13762–13767.
151. Sand RM, et al. Isoflurane modulates activation and inactivation gating of the prokaryotic Na(+) channel NaChBac. *J Gen Physiol*. 2017;149:623–638.
152. Miao N, et al. Volatile anesthetics depress Ca2+ transients and glutamate release in isolated cerebral synaptosomes. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:593–603.
153. Pocock G, Richards CD. Excitatory and inhibitory synaptic mechanisms in anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:134–147.
154. Kameyama K, et al. Isoflurane inhibits neuronal Ca2+ channels through enhancement of current inactivation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:402–411.
155. Study RE. Isoflurane inhibits multiple voltage-gated calcium currents in hippocampal pyramidal neurons. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:104–116.
156. Hall AC, et al. Insensitivity of P-type calcium channels to inhalational and intravenous general anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:117–123.
157. Takei T, et al. Increased sensitivity to halothane but decreased sensitivity to propofol in mice lacking the N-type Ca2+ channel. *Neurosci Lett*. 2003;350:41–45.
158. Joksovic PM, et al. Contrasting anesthetic sensitivities of T-type Ca2+ channels of reticular thalamic neurons and recombinant Ca(v)3.3 channels. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2005;144:59–70.
159. Todorovic SM, et al. Ca(v)3.2 channel is a molecular substrate for inhibition of T-type calcium currents in rat sensory neurons by nitrous oxide. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2001;60:603–610.
160. Petrenko AB, et al. Mutation of alpha1G T-type calcium channels in mice does not change anesthetic requirements for loss of the righting reflex and minimum alveolar concentration but delays the onset of anesthetic induction. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1177–1185.
161. Hanley PJ, et al. Excitation-contraction coupling in the heart and the negative inotropic action of volatile anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:999–1014.
162. Huneke R, et al. Effects of volatile anesthetics on cardiac ion channels. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:547–561.
163. Rithalia A, et al. The effects of halothane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane on Ca2+ current and transient outward K+ current in subendocardial and subepicardial myocytes from the rat left ventricle. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1615–1622.
164. Huneke R, et al. Effects of the anesthetic gases xenon, halothane, and isoflurane on calcium and potassium currents in human atrial cardiomyocytes. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:999–1006.

165. Stowe DF, et al. Xenon does not alter cardiac function or major cation currents in isolated guinea pig hearts or myocytes. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:516–522.
166. Davies LA, et al. Effects of isoflurane, sevoflurane, and halothane on myofilament Ca2+ sensitivity and sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca2+ release in rat ventricular myocytes. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1034–1044.
167. Joseph JD, et al. General anesthetic isoflurane modulates inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate receptor calcium channel opening. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:528–537.
168. Pabelick CM, et al. Effects of halothane on sarcoplasmic reticulum calcium release channels in porcine airway smooth muscle cells. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:207–215.
169. Roberts MC, et al. Autosomal dominant canine malignant hyperthermia is caused by a mutation in the gene encoding the skeletal muscle calcium release channel (RYR1). *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:716–725.
170. Mickelson JR, Louis CF. Malignant hyperthermia. excitation-contraction coupling, Ca2+ release channel, and cell Ca2+ regulation defects. *Physiol Rev*. 1996;76:537–592.
171. Yost CS. Potassium channels. basic aspects, functional roles, and medical significance. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1186–1203.
172. Friederich P, et al. Interaction of volatile anesthetics with human Kv channels in relation to clinical concentrations. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:954–958.
173. Franks NP, Lieb WR. Volatile general anaesthetics activate a novel neuronal K+ current. *Nature*. 1988;333:662–664.
174. Dickinson R, Franks NP. Bench-to-bedside review. Molecular pharmacology and clinical use of inert gases in anesthesia and neuroprotection. *Critical care*. 2010;14:229.
175. Tong L, et al. Activation of K(2)P channel-TREK1 mediates the neuroprotection induced by sevoflurane preconditioning. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:157–167.
176. Woll KA, et al. Photoaffinity ligand for the inhalational anesthetic sevoflurane allows mechanistic insight into potassium channel modulation. *ACS Chem Biol*. 2017;12:1353–1362.
177. Bertaccini EJ, et al. Molecular modeling of a tandem two pore domain potassium channel reveals a putative binding site for general anesthetics. *ACS chemical neuroscience*. 2014;5:1246–1252.
178. Farwell D, Gollob MH. Electrical heart disease. Genetic and molecular basis of cardiac arrhythmias in normal structural hearts. *Can J Cardiol*. 2007;23(suppl A):16A–22A.
179. Antzelevitch C. Molecular biology and cellular mechanisms of Brugada and long QT syndromes in infants and young children. *J Electrocardiol*. 2001;34(suppl):177–181.
180. Li J, Correa AM. Kinetic modulation of HERG potassium channels by the volatile anesthetic halothane. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:921–930.
181. Davies LA, et al. Effects of halothane on the transient outward K(+) current in rat ventricular myocytes. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2000;131:223–230.
182. Stadnicka A, et al. Volatile anesthetic-induced cardiac preconditioning. *J Anesth*. 2007;21:212–219.
183. Wojtovich AP, et al. Cardiac Slo2.1 Is required for volatile anesthetic stimulation of k+ transport and anesthetic preconditioning. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:1065–1076.
184. Sirois JE, et al. Convergent and reciprocal modulation of a leak K+ current and I(h) by an inhalational anaesthetic and neurotransmitters in rat brainstem motoneurones. *J Physiol*. 2002;541:717–729.
185. Chen X, et al. HCN subunit-specific and cAMP-modulated effects of anesthetics on neuronal pacemaker currents. *J Neurosci*. 2005;25:5803–5814.
186. Robinson RB, Siegelbaum SA. Hyperpolarization-activated cation currents. from molecules to physiological function. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 2003;65:453–480.
187. Girault JA, Hemmings HCJ. In: Hemmings HC, Hopkins PM, eds. *Foundations of Anesthesia*. Mosby; 2005:31.
188. Rebecchi MJ, Pentyala SN. Anaesthetic actions on other targets. protein kinase C and guanine nucleotide-binding proteins. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:62–78.
189. Peterlin Z, et al. Selective activation of G-protein coupled receptors by volatile anesthetics. *Mol Cell Neurosci*. 2005;30:506–512.
190. Minami K, et al. Effects of ethanol and anesthetics on type 1 and 5 metabotropic glutamate receptors expressed in Xenopus laevis oocytes. *Mol Pharmacol*. 1998;53:148–156.
191. Minami K, et al. Inhibition of 5-hydroxytryptamine type 2A receptor-induced currents by n-alcohols and anesthetics. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1997;281:1136–1143.
192. Minami K, et al. Inhibitory effects of anesthetics and ethanol on muscarinic receptors expressed in Xenopus oocytes. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1997;339:237–244.
193. Hemmings HC. General anesthetic effects on protein kinase C. *Toxicol Lett*. 1998:89–95, 100–101.
194. Hasegawa J, et al. Sevoflurane stimulates MAP kinase signal transduction through the activation of PKC alpha and betaII in fetal rat cerebral cortex cultured neuron. *Acta Histochem Cytochem*. 2006;39:163–172.
195. Das J, et al. Identification of a general anesthetic binding site in the diacylglycerol-binding domain of protein kinase Cdelta. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:37964–37972.
196. Shumilla JA, et al. Inhibition of spinal protein kinase C-epsilon or -gamma isozymes does not affect halothane minimum alveolar anesthetic concentration in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:82–84.
197. Sonner JM, et al. Mouse strain modestly influences minimum alveolar anesthetic concentration and convulsivity of inhaled compounds. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:1030–1034.
198. Inoue S, et al. Combination of isoflurane and caspase inhibition reduces cerebral injury in rats subjected to focal cerebral ischemia. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:75–81.
199. Rasmussen LS, et al. Postoperative cognitive dysfunction. true deterioration versus random variation. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:1137–1143.
200. Fukuda S, Warner DS. Cerebral protection. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:10–17.
201. Turner CP, et al. Strategies to defeat ketamine-induced neonatal brain injury. *Neuroscience*. 2012;210:384–392.
202. Pratt PF, et al. Cardioprotection by volatile anesthetics. New applications for old drugs? *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;19:397–403.
203. Zaugg M, et al. Anaesthetics and cardiac preconditioning. Part I. Signalling and cytoprotective mechanisms. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:551–565.
204. Ludwig LM, et al. Protein kinase C translocation and Src protein tyrosine kinase activation mediate isoflurane-induced preconditioning in vivo. potential downstream targets of mitochondrial adenosine triphosphate-sensitive potassium channels and reactive oxygen species. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:532–539.
205. Song IA, et al. The involvement of protein kinase C-epsilon in isoflurane induced preconditioning of human embryonic stem cell--derived Nkx2.5(+) cardiac progenitor cells. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2016;16:13.
206. Snyder GL, et al. General anesthetics selectively modulate glutamatergic and dopaminergic signaling via site-specific phosphorylation in vivo. *Neuropharmacology*. 2007;53:619–630.
207. Hemmings HC, Adamo AI. Effects of halothane and propofol on purified brain protein kinase C activation. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:147–155.
208. Marota JJ, et al. Selective effects of pentobarbital and halothane on c-fos and jun-B gene expression in rat brain. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:365–371.
209. Hamaya Y, et al. The effects of pentobarbital, isoflurane, and propofol on immediate-early gene expression in the vital organs of the rat. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1177–1183.
210. Culley DJ, et al. Altered hippocampal gene expression 2 days after general anesthesia in rats. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2006;549:71–78.
211. Futterer CD, et al. Alterations in rat brain proteins after desflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:302–308.
212. Durieux M, Davis PJ. The Safety of Key Inhaled and Intravenous Drugs in Pediatrics (SAFEKIDS). An update. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1265–1267.
213. Dalla Massara L, et al. General anesthesia causes epigenetic histone modulation of c-Fos and brain-derived neurotrophic factor, target genes important for neuronal development in the immature rat hippocampus. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:1311–1327.
214. Kullmann DM, et al. Reduction by general anaesthetics of group Ia excitatory postsynaptic potentials and currents in the cat spinal cord. *J Physiol*. 1989;412:277–296.
215. Fujiwara N, et al. Changes in spontaneous firing patterns of rat hippocampal neurones induced by volatile anaesthetics. *J Physiol*. 1988;402:155–175.

216. MacIver MB, Roth SH. Inhalation anaesthetics exhibit pathway-specific and differential actions on hippocampal synaptic responses in vitro. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;60:680–691.
217. Ries CR, Puil E. Ionic mechanism of isoflurane's actions on thalamocortical neurons. *J Neurophysiol*. 1999;81:1802–1809.
218. Sirois JE, et al. The TASK-1 two-pore domain K+ channel is a molecular substrate for neuronal effects of inhalation anesthetics. *J Neurosci*. 2000;20:6347–6354.
219. Semyanov A, et al. Tonically active GABA A receptors. modulating gain and maintaining the tone. *Trends Neurosci*. 2004;27:262–269.
220. Houston CM, et al. Are extrasynaptic GABAA receptors important targets for sedative/hypnotic drugs? *J Neurosci*. 2012;32:3887–3897.
221. Bai D, et al. Distinct functional and pharmacological properties of tonic and quantal inhibitory postsynaptic currents mediated by gamma-aminobutyric acid(A) receptors in hippocampal neurons. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2001;59:814–824.
222. Bieda MC, MacIver MB. Major role for tonic GABAA conductances in anesthetic suppression of intrinsic neuronal excitability. *J Neurophysiol*. 2004;92:1658–1667.
223. Caraiscos VB, et al. Tonic inhibition in mouse hippocampal CA1 pyramidal neurons is mediated by alpha5 subunit-containing gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:3662–3667.
224. Caraiscos VB, et al. Selective enhancement of tonic GABAergic inhibition in murine hippocampal neurons by low concentrations of the volatile anesthetic isoflurane. *J Neurosci*. 2004;24:8454–8458.
225. Capogna M, Pearce RA. GABA A,slow. Causes and consequences. *Trends Neurosci*. 2011;34:101–112.
226. Rodgers FC, et al. Etomidate impairs long-term potentiation in vitro by targeting alpha5-subunit containing gabaa receptors on nonpyramidal cells. *J Neurosci*. 2015;35:9707–9716.
227. Berg-Johnsen J, Langmoen IA. The effect of isoflurane on excitatory synaptic transmission in the rat hippocampus. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36:350–355.
228. Kirson ED, et al. Presynaptic and postsynaptic actions of halothane at glutamatergic synapses in the mouse hippocampus. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1998;124:1607–1614.
229. Richards CD, Smaje JC. Anaesthetics depress the sensitivity of cortical neurones to L-glutamate. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1976;58:347–357.
230. Wakamori M, et al. Effects of two volatile anesthetics and a volatile convulsant on the excitatory and inhibitory amino acid responses in dissociated CNS neurons of the rat. *J Neurophysiol*. 1991;66:2014–2021.
231. Yang J, Zorumski CF. Effects of isoflurane on N-methyl-D-aspartate gated ion channels in cultured rat hippocampal neurons. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1991;625:287–289.
232. Dildy-Mayfield JE, et al. Anesthetics produce subunit-selective actions on glutamate receptors. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1996;276:1058–1065.
233. Minami K, et al. Sites of volatile anesthetic action on kainate (Glutamate receptor 6) receptors. *J Biol Chem*. 1998;273:8248–8255.
234. Morgan PG, et al. Mitochondrial defects and anesthetic sensitivity. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1268–1270.
235. Quintana A, et al. Altered anesthetic sensitivity of mice lacking Ndufs4, a subunit of mitochondrial complex I. *PLoS One*. 2012;7:e42904.
236. Zimin PI, et al. Glutamatergic neurotransmission links sensitivity to volatile anesthetics with mitochondrial function. *Curr Biol*. 2016;26:2194–2201.
237. Ramadasan-Nair R, et al. Regional knockdown of NDUFS4 implicates a thalamocortical circuit mediating anesthetic sensitivity. *PLoS One*. 2017;12:e0188087.
238. Banks MI, Pearce RA. Dual actions of volatile anesthetics on GABA(A) IPSCs. Dissociation of blocking and prolonging effects. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:120–134.
239. Murugaiah KD, Hemmings HC Jr. Effects of intravenous general anesthetics on [3H]GABA release from rat cortical synaptosomes. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:919–928.
240. Nishikawa K, MacIver MB. Agent-selective effects of volatile anesthetics on GABAA receptor-mediated synaptic inhibition in hippocampal interneurons. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:340–347.
241. Westphalen RI, Hemmings HC. Selective depression by general anesthetics of glutamate versus GABA release from isolated cortical nerve terminals. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2003;304:1188–1196.
242. Westphalen RI, Hemmings HC. Volatile anesthetic effects on glutamate versus GABA release from isolated rat cortical nerve terminals. 4-aminopyridine-evoked release. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2006;316:216–223.
243. Baumgart JP, et al. Isoflurane inhibits synaptic vesicle exocytosis through reduced Ca2+ influx, not Ca2+-exocytosis coupling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2015;112:11959–11964.
244. Nagele P, et al. Volatile anesthetics bind rat synaptic snare proteins. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:768–778.
245. van Swinderen B, et al. A neomorphic syntaxin mutation blocks volatile-anesthetic action in Caenorhabditis elegans. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96:2479–2484.
246. Hemmings HC, et al. The general anesthetic isoflurane depresses synaptic vesicle exocytosis. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2005;67:1591–1599.
247. Pearce RA, et al. Effect of volatile anesthetics on synaptic transmission in the rat hippocampus. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:591–598.
248. Pearce RA. Volatile anaesthetic enhancement of paired-pulse depression investigated in the rat hippocampus in vitro. *J Physiol*. 1996;492(Pt 3):823–840.
249. Ballesteros KA, et al. Effects of inhaled anesthetic isoflurane on long-term potentiation of CA3 pyramidal cell afferents in vivo. *Int J Gen Med*. 2012;5:935–942.
250. Simon W, et al. Isoflurane blocks synaptic plasticity in the mouse hippocampus. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:1058–1065.
251. Jinks SL, et al. Anesthetic effects on fictive locomotion in the rat isolated spinal cord. *Neuroreport*. 2011;22:655–659.
252. Jinks SL, et al. Isoflurane disrupts central pattern generator activity and coordination in the lamprey isolated spinal cord. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:567–575.
253. Lewis LD, et al. Rapid fragmentation of neuronal networks at the onset of propofol-induced unconsciousness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109:E3377–E3386.
254. Guidera JA, et al. Sevoflurane induces coherent slow-delta oscillations in rats. *Front Neural Circuits*. 2017;11:36.
255. Steriade M, et al. Intracellular analysis of relations between the slow (< 1 Hz) neocortical oscillation and other sleep rhythms of the electroencephalogram. *J Neurosci*. 1993;13:3266–3283.
256. Purdon PL, et al. Electroencephalogram signatures of loss and recovery of consciousness from propofol. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2013;110:E1142–E1151.
257. Buzsaki G. Theta oscillations in the hippocampus. *Neuron*. 2002;33:325–340.
258. Bland BH, et al. Effect of halothane on type 2 immobility-related hippocampal theta field activity and theta-on/theta-off cell discharges. *Hippocampus*. 2003;13:38–47.
259. Munglani R, et al. A measure of consciousness and memory during isoflurane administration. the coherent frequency. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:633–641.
260. Madler C, et al. Sensory information processing during general anaesthesia. effect of isoflurane on auditory evoked neuronal oscillations. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:81–87.
261. Buzsaki G, Wang XJ. Mechanisms of gamma oscillations. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2012;35:203–225.
262. Dickinson R, et al. The effects of general anaesthetics on carbachol-evoked gamma oscillations in the rat hippocampus in vitro. *Neuropharmacology*. 2003;44:864–872.
263. Antkowiak B, Hentschke H. Cellular mechanisms of gamma rhythms in rat neocortical brain slices probed by the volatile anaesthetic isoflurane. *Neurosci Lett*. 1997;231:87–90.
264. Gottschalk A, Haney P. Computational aspects of anesthetic action in simple neural models. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:548–564.
265. Storer KP, Reeke GN. Gamma-Aminobutyric acid receptor type A receptor potentiation reduces firing of neuronal assemblies in a computational cortical model. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:780–790.
266. Wilson MT, et al. General anesthetic-induced seizures can be explained by a mean-field model of cortical dynamics. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:588–593.
267. Steyn-Ross ML, et al. Modelling general anaesthesia as a first-order phase transition in the cortex. *Prog Biophys Mol Biol*. 2004;85:369–385.
268. Zhang Y, et al. Both cerebral GABA(A) receptors and spinal GABA(A) receptors modulate the capacity of isoflurane to produce immobility. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:1585–1589.
269. Zhang Y, et al. Neither GABA(A) nor strychnine-sensitive glycine receptors are the sole mediators of MAC for isoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:123–127.

270. Forman SA, Miller KW. Mapping general anesthetic sites in heteromeric gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptors reveals a potential for targeting receptor subtypes. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:1263–1273.
271. Woll KA, et al. Identification of binding sites contributing to volatile anesthetic effects on GABA type A receptors. *FASEB J*. 2018:fj201701347R.
272. Nash HA. In vivo genetics of anaesthetic action. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:143–155.
273. Kim CK, et al. Integration of optogenetics with complementary methodologies in systems neuroscience. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2017;18:222–235.
274. Roth BL. DREADDs for neuroscientists. *Neuron*. 2016;89:683–694.
275. Gelegen C, et al. Excitatory pathways from the lateral habenula enable propofol-induced sedation. *Curr Biol*. 2018;28:580–587.e585.
276. Sonner JM, et al. Alpha 1 subunit-containing GABA type A receptors in forebrain contribute to the effect of inhaled anesthetics on conditioned fear. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2005;68:61–68.
277. van Swinderen B, Kottler B. Explaining general anesthesia. A two-step hypothesis linking sleep circuits and the synaptic release machinery. *Bioessays*. 2014;36:372–381.
278. Morgan PG, Sedensky MM. Mutations conferring new patterns of sensitivity to volatile anesthetics in Caenorhabditis elegans. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:888–898.
279. Rajaram S, et al. Unc-1. a stomatin homologue controls sensitivity to volatile anesthetics in Caenorhabditis elegans. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:8761–8766.
280. Sedensky MM, et al. Model organisms. new insights into ion channel and transporter function. Stomatin homologues interact in Caenorhabditis elegans. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol*. 2001;280:C1340–C1348.
281. Cascio M, et al. Mouse chromosome 7 harbors a quantitative trait locus for isoflurane minimum alveolar concentration. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:381–385.
282. Olufs ZPG, et al. Genetic variability affects absolute and relative potencies and kinetics of the anesthetics isoflurane and sevoflurane in Drosophila melanogaster. *Sci Rep*. 2018;8:2348.
283. Veselis RA, et al. A neuroanatomical construct for the amnesic effects of propofol. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:329–337.
284. Alkire MT, Miller J. General anesthesia and the neural correlates of consciousness. *Prog Brain Res*. 2005;150:229–244.

20

Inhaled Anesthetic Uptake, Distribution, Metabolism, and Toxicity

STUART A. FORMAN and YUMIKO ISHIZAWA

KEY POINTS

- The alveolar anesthetic concentration (F_A) or partial pressure (P_{alv}) is important because it is the driving force determining anesthetic uptake into blood and target tissues in the central nervous system, and it can be monitored as a readout of anesthetic dosage. P_{alv} is influenced by both delivery and uptake of anesthetic gas.
- Inhaled anesthetic delivery to patients can be increased with larger fresh carrier gas flows, vaporizer output settings, and minute ventilation.
- Initial anesthetic uptake into blood increases with greater pulmonary blood flow (cardiac output) and high blood solubility of anesthetic gas. Increased uptake (as with a highly blood-soluble drug or high cardiac output) slows anesthetic induction because it slows the rate of rise of P_{alv}. Conversely, low anesthetic solubility in blood is associated with rapid onset and offset of anesthesia.
- Uptake of anesthetic into blood slows as blood and tissue partial pressures increase, resulting in higher anesthetic partial pressure in mixed venous blood.
- The higher the inspired anesthetic concentration, the less it diminishes because of uptake (the concentration effect). At 100% inspired concentration of a gas, uptake reduces the volume of gas in alveoli, but does reduce P_{alv}. During inhalation of anesthetic mixtures containing high nitrous oxide (N_2O) concentrations, the reduction of alveolar volume produced by rapid N_2O uptake sustains or increases the concentrations of other alveolar gases (the second gas effect).
- Factors that affect anesthetic uptake similarly affect pulmonary clearance of anesthetics. The rate of clearance is also context sensitive—that is, equivalent drops in alveolar and brain anesthetic concentrations are slower after a long exposure to inhaled anesthetic compared to a short exposure of equal depth.
- Toxicities of inhaled anesthetics that last beyond the exposure period are primarily associated with their biotransformation (metabolism). These toxic effects are usually produced in the tissues, such as liver and kidney, in which metabolism occurs. Modern inhaled anesthetics undergo less metabolism than older drugs, resulting in less hepatic and renal toxicity.
- Halothane hepatitis is a potentially fatal syndrome of fulminant liver damage after exposure to reactive metabolites produced by oxidation of volatile anesthetics. These metabolites covalently modify liver proteins, creating neohaptens that elicit an immune response against hepatocytes. The incidence of the syndrome varies with different anesthetics, paralleling the extent of drug metabolism: halothane >> enflurane > isoflurane > desflurane.
- Defluorination of inhaled anesthetics occurs in both the liver and kidney, producing high fluoride concentrations in blood. Renal toxicity characterized by high-output renal failure is almost exclusively associated with prolonged exposure to methoxyflurane. Sevoflurane metabolism also results in high fluoride levels in blood but does not damage kidneys. Factors that enhance the toxicity of methoxyflurane relative to sevoflurane include its higher tissue solubility, slower clearance, and higher degree of renal metabolism, resulting in high intrarenal fluoride levels for an extended time.
- In laboratory mammals, including nonhuman primates, all general anesthetics alter synapse and neural circuit formation during critical periods of brain development, resulting in abnormal memory and behavior. Clinical studies in children suggest that lengthy (>4 hours) anesthetic exposures at under 2 years of age are associated with detectable but quite small neurocognitive deficits, relative to unexposed controls (also see Chapter 77. Postoperative delirium and cognitive decline/dysfunction (POCD) in elderly patients is also a growing concern (see Chapter 83). Based on animal and clinical studies, both postsurgical neuroinflammation and exposure to general anesthesia may contribute to POCD.
- Anesthetics react with strong bases, particularly potassium hydroxide (KOH), in carbon dioxide (CO_2) absorbents, resulting in production of several potentially toxic substances. Sevoflurane

degrades to form compound A, which is associated with renal damage in rodents, but not in humans. This differential toxicity is associated with differential renal metabolism in rodents versus humans. Dry CO_2 absorbents in the breathing circuit react with inhaled anesthetics, releasing carbon monoxide and heat. New CO_2 absorbent materials that lack strong base chemicals prevent these reactions and subsequent potential harm to patients.

- N_2O is unique among anesthetics in its ability to inhibit methionine synthase by oxidizing a cofactor, vitamin B_{12}. In certain susceptible patients or with multiple frequent exposures to N_2O, methionine synthase inhibition can lead to hematologic and neurologic dysfunction. After prolonged N_2O exposure, methionine synthase inhibition also increases blood homocysteine, which is hypothesized to increase vascular inflammation and the risk of thrombosis. Large clinical trials show that N_2O exposure does not increase the risk of cardiovascular morbidity in most patients, but N_2O should be avoided in patients with deficiencies in dietary B_{12} intake or absorption or B_{12}-dependent metabolism.
- Inhaled anesthetics, when scavenged and ejected into the atmosphere, contribute to both global warming and ozone depletion. Minimizing the environmental impact of inhaled anesthetics requires reducing waste, through the routine use of low fresh gas flows and/or by use of new technologies that trap scavenged anesthetic gases. Reprocessing and reusing trapped anesthetic gases further reduce the environmental impact of drug production.

Introduction

Modern inhaled anesthetics are important pharmacologic tools for reversibly altering central nervous system (CNS) functions in patients. Because inhaled anesthetics are both taken up and eliminated through alveolar blood-gas exchange, drug dosage can be monitored in expired alveolar gases and tissue-dependent metabolism is unnecessary for drug clearance. Optimal delivery of systemic drugs via inhalation requires a full understanding of the factors influencing how gas-phase compounds move into and out of various body tissues and how they are metabolized (pharmacokinetics) together with knowledge of where and how these drugs and their metabolism affect tissue functions. Reversible anesthetic effects on the nervous, respiratory, and cardiovascular systems (pharmacodynamics) are covered elsewhere in this book (see Chapters 11, 14, 19, and 21).

Uptake and Distribution of Inhaled Anesthetics

In the first part of this chapter, we review and apply some of the basic principles of chemical equilibria to illuminate major factors influencing inhaled anesthetic uptake and distribution in patients. For this, we use a physiologic model that closely simulates clinical observations. The model, an elaboration of that introduced in 1973 by Mapleson,[1] is described both qualitatively and quantitatively (using mathematical expressions) to convey important concepts to readers with different learning styles.

BIOPHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF INHALED ANESTHETICS: PARTIAL PRESSURE, HYDROPHOBICITY, AND PARTITION COEFFICIENTS

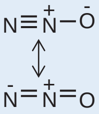
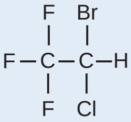
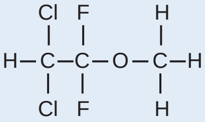
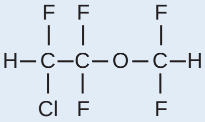
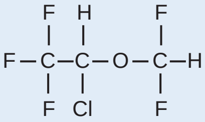
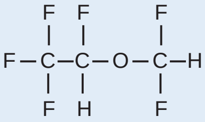
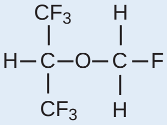
Inhaled anesthetics are administered as a component of a gas mixture. Biophysical properties of inhaled anesthetics are summarized in Table 20.1.[2-11] ***Partial pressure*** is the portion of total pressure contributed by one component of a gas mixture, where each component contributes pressure in direct proportion to its molar fraction. For example, 1.5% isoflurane in air (21% O_2 and 79% N_2) at 1 standard atmosphere (atm) (760 mm Hg) is a mixture of O_2 at 157.2 mm Hg, N_2 at 591.4 mm Hg, and isoflurane at 11.4 mm Hg. The partial pressure of an anesthetic gas is a measure of its thermodynamic activity and determines its pharmacologic effect. The partial pressure of an anesthetic is usually reported as the percentage (or fraction) of the delivered gas mixture, where atmospheric pressure is near 1 atm (760 mm Hg). Correcting these values to absolute partial pressure is important under conditions when local atmospheric pressure differs significantly from standard, such as at high altitude, underwater, or in a hyperbaric chamber. The same inhaled concentration of an anesthetic gas results in a reduced pharmacologic effect at higher altitudes because the partial pressure of the anesthetic is lower. Because partial pressure is the thermodynamic force for gas transfer between compartments in a system, anesthetics move from regions of high partial pressure to low partial pressure, unaffected by the other components of the gas mixture, and equilibrium is achieved when the partial pressure of an anesthetic is equal in the different compartments.

The maximum partial pressure of a volatile compound is its ***vapor pressure***; this is the partial pressure of volatile anesthetic (VA) within the drug reservoir of a vaporizer. Vapor pressure is unique to each anesthetic and increases with increasing temperature. VAs are defined by a vapor pressure less than 1 atm at 20°C and a boiling point above 20°C (see Table 20.1). Gaseous anesthetics are defined by a vapor pressure above 1 atm at 20°C and a boiling point below 20°C (see Table 20.1). VAs typically compose a small fraction of the gas mixture delivered to patients. In contrast, gaseous anesthetics such as nitrous oxide (N_2O) and xenon, because of their relatively low anesthetic potencies, typically compose a large fraction of an inhaled gas mixture, and thus produce additional effects (e.g., concentration effect, second gas effect, and airspace expansion) that are negligible with VAs.

Hydrophobicity is a molecular property of certain chemicals, including most general anesthetics that do not

Downloaded for alex arman davidson (arman@amazingstudy.tk) at Florida International University from ClinicalKey.com by Elsevier on October 21, 2019.
For personal use only. No other uses without permission. Copyright ©2019. Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

TABLE 20.1 Chemical Structures and Properties of Inhaled Anesthetics

Anesthetic	**Nitrous Oxide**	**Halothane**	**Methoxyflurane**	**Enflurane**	**Isoflurane**	**Desflurane**	**Sevoflurane**
Year Introduced into Clinic	**1840s**	**1956**	**1960**	**1966**	**1969**	**1990**	**1981**
Chemical structure							
Molecular weight	44	197.4	165.0	184.5	184.5	168	200.1
Boiling point (°C)	–88.5	50.2	104.8	56.5	48.5	22.8	58.6
Density (g/ml)	1.84×10^{-3}	1.86	1.42	1.52	1.5	1.45	1.50
Vapor pressure (mm Hg)	43,880	243	22.5	175	238	664	157
Oil/gas partition coefficient at 37°C	1.3	197	950	98.5	90.8	19	47-54
Blood/gas partition coefficient at 37°C	0.47	2.5	12	1.9	1.4	0.45	0.65
MAC-immobility (% atm/mm Hg)*	104/800	0.75/5.7	0.2/1.52	1.58/12.0	1.28/9.7	6.0/45.6	2.05/15.6
MAC-awake*	71/540	0.41/3.21	0.081/0.62	0.51/3.88	0.43/3.27	2.4/19	0.63/4.79

*MAC is minimal alveolar concentration for subjects approximately age 40 years.
Partition coefficients are from the following references[2-6]:
MAC-immobility and MAC-awake values are from the following references[2,7-11]:
Properties are measured at standard temperature (20°C) and pressure (1 atm) unless otherwise specified.

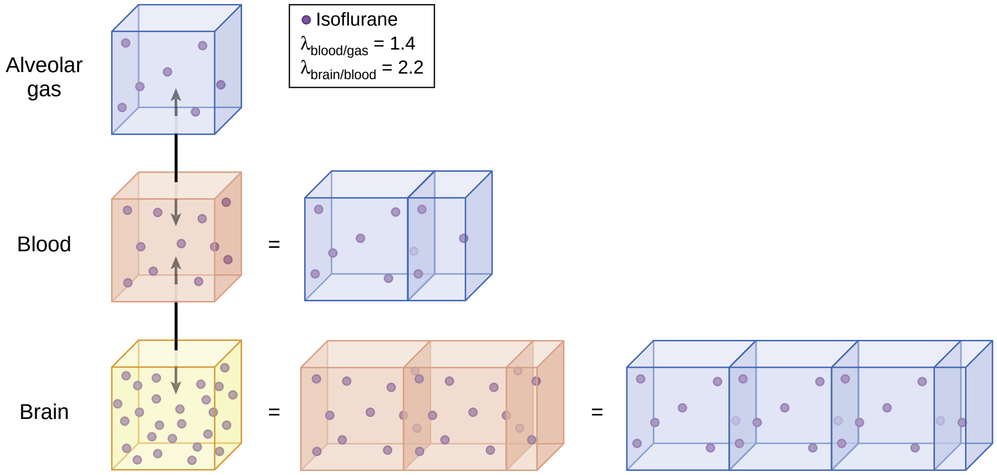


Fig. 20.1 Partitioning of anesthetic gases between different biophases. Left, Depicts the partitioning of isoflurane between gas phase *(blue)*, blood *(red)* and brain *(yellow)*. The blood:gas partition coefficient ($\lambda_{b/g}$) for isoflurane is 1.4 and the brain:blood partition coefficient ($\lambda_{CNS/blood}$) is 2.2 (see Table 20.2). At equilibrium, defined as equal isoflurane partial pressure in all compartments, a volume of blood contains 1.4-fold the quantity of isoflurane as the same volume of alveolar gas, whereas a volume of brain tissue contains 2.2-fold the quantity of isoflurane as the same volume of blood. Right, We also depict partition coefficients as effective (equivalent) volumes of another biophase. For example, 1 volume of blood contains the same amount of isoflurane as 1.4 volumes of alveolar gas, whereas 1 volume of brain contains the same amount of isoflurane as 2.2 volumes of blood or 3.1 volumes of gas.

readily form hydrogen bonds and therefore display low water solubility. Hydrophobic compounds are also usually *lipophilic*, demonstrating high solubility in low polarity solvents such as oils. Common measures of hydrophobicity are ***partition coefficients*** between water and olive oil (which is mostly oleic acid, an 18-carbon fatty acid) or between water and n-octanol. Usually represented by the Greek letter lambda (λ), a partition coefficient is the ratio of two solute concentrations *at* ***equilibrium*** (i.e., at equal partial pressure) in two separate but adjacent solvents or compartments such that the solute moves freely between the compartments (Fig. 20.1). Another useful way to conceptualize a partition coefficient is that it represents the *relative volume of two phases or compartments that contain an equal amount of the solute at equilibrium* (see Fig. 20.1).

Anesthetic partition coefficients between blood and gas ($\lambda_{b/g}$) and between tissue and blood ($\lambda_{t/b}$) are important factors in uptake and distribution of inhaled drugs as they move from pulmonary airspace to pulmonary blood and then from blood to various tissues (Tables 20.1 and 20.2).[6,12-15] The blood solubility of anesthetic gases (and other gases such as O_2, N_2, and CO_2) increases as temperature decreases.[16,17] Because most anesthetics are hydrophobic, they tend to display high solubility in tissues with high lipid content (e.g., fat), and also bind to many proteins that form hydrophobic or amphiphilic pockets.[13] Anesthetic partitioning into blood (blood solubility) increases after ingestion of fatty foods[18] and may decrease in anemic or malnourished patients. Methoxyflurane (no longer in clinical use) and halothane are notable for high blood solubility. N_2O, sevoflurane, and desflurane are characterized by low blood solubility.

ANESTHETIC DELIVERY, UPTAKE, AND DISTRIBUTION: A MULTICOMPARTMENTAL MODEL

Delivering an inhaled anesthetic agent to patients is analogous to an intravenous drug infusion with two major differences: (1) entry of drug into the body is via transalveolar exchange from gas to blood, and (2) clearance is mostly via the same route. Thus inhaled anesthetic delivery is dependent on pulmonary ventilation, whereas uptake and clearance of inhaled anesthetics are also dependent on pulmonary perfusion.

Upstream and Downstream Compartments and Anesthetic Transfer: Bulk Flow and Pressure Gradients

Uptake and distribution of inhaled anesthetic can be readily understood as a series of transfer steps from upstream compartments with high partial pressure to downstream compartments with low partial pressure as depicted in Fig. 20.2. First, drug is transferred from an anesthesia delivery device, typically an anesthesia machine with a vaporizer designed to deliver specified concentrations (in percent atm) of VA agent, into a fresh gas mixture flowing in a breathing circuit. Second, ventilation transfers gases from the circuit to the alveolar airspace in lung. Third, anesthetic moves by transcapillary diffusion into pulmonary venous blood. Fourth, arterial blood distributes anesthetic to various tissues including the primary target tissue, the CNS. Fifth, venous outflow from tissues converges in the pulmonary artery, and sixth, the mixed venous blood passes through alveolar capillaries where it again equilibrates with alveolar gases.

Gas flow from the anesthesia machine into the breathing circuit is unidirectional. Blood circulation is also largely unidirectional. In transfers from the anesthesia machine (the fresh gas outlet) to breathing circuit and then to alveolar airspace, anesthetic flow can simply be understood as exchange from upstream compartments into downstream compartments. In later steps, such as exchange between alveolar gases and pulmonary capillary blood, flow of anesthetic molecules occurs via diffusion between adjacent compartments separated by a permeable membrane. For simplicity, we have not treated blood as a separate compartment in our model. Distribution of anesthetic to and from various tissues involves both bulk transfer via blood flow

Downloaded for alex arman davidson (arman@amazingstudy.tk) at Florida International University from ClinicalKey.com by Elsevier on October 21, 2019. For personal use only. No other uses without permission. Copyright ©2019. Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

TABLE 20.2 Uptake and Distribution Model Parameters for Inhaled Anesthetics

Tissue	Blood		Heart			Kidney			Liver			CNS			Muscle			Fat			VPT		
	Blood Flow (L/min)	**Volume (L)**	**Blood Flow (L/min)**		**Volume (L)**	**Blood Flow (L/min)**		**Volume (L)**	**Blood Flow (L/min)**		**Volume (L)**	**Blood Flow (L/min)**		**Volume (L)**	**Blood Flow (L/min)**		**Volume (L)**	**Blood Flow (L/min)**		**Volume (L)**	**Blood Flow (L/min)**		**Volume (L)**
	5	**5**	0.2		0.28	1.07		0.32	1.2		3.9	0.62		1.43	0.75		30	0.5		13	0.35		7
Anesthetic Agent	V_{eff} (L)[*]		$\lambda_{\text{tissue/blood}}$	V_{eff} (L)	τ (min)	$\lambda_{\text{tissue/blood}}$	V_{eff} (L)	τ (min)	$\lambda_{\text{tissue/blood}}$	V_{eff} (L)	τ (min)	$\lambda_{\text{tissue/blood}}$	V_{eff} (L)	τ (min)	$\lambda_{\text{tissue/blood}}$	V_{eff} (L)	τ (min)	$\lambda_{\text{tissue/blood}}$	V_{eff} (L)	τ (min)	$\lambda_{\text{tissue/blood}}$	V_{eff} (L)	τ (min)
Nitrous oxide	2.35		0.87	0.24	1.2	0.93	0.3	0.3	1.1	4.1	3.4	1.1	1.6	2.6	1.2	36	48	2.3	30	60	1.4	9.9	29
Halothane	12.5		2.9	0.8	4.0	1.5	0.5	0.4	2.5	9.8	8.0	2.7	3.9	3.3	2.5	75	100	65	840	1700	2.3	16	47
Methoxyflurane	60		1.2	0.34	1.7	2.3	0.74	.69	2.5	9.8	8	2	2.9	4.7	1.6	48	64	76	980	1960	1.2	8.5	25
Enflurane	9		1.3	0.36	1.8	2.0	0.64	0.6	2.1	8.2	6.7	1.4	2.0	3.3	1.7	51	68	36	464	930	2	14	41
Isoflurane	7		1.3	0.36	1.8	2.3	0.74	0.69	2.4	9.4	7.6	1.5	2.1	3.5	2.9	87	116	45	580	1160	2	14	41
Desflurane	2.25		1.3	0.36	1.8	1.0	0.32	0.3	1.4	5.5	4.5	1.3	1.9	3.0	2.0	60	80	27	350	670	2	14	41
Sevoflurane	3.25		1.3	0.36	1.8	2.3	0.74	0.69	2.4	9.4	7.7	1.7	2.4	4.0	3.1	93	120	48	620	1240	2	14	41

Based on a 70 kg pt at rest. Blood and tissue partition coefficients are from references 6 and 12-14. Tissue volumes and blood flow values are approximate (Kennedy et al.[15] and Levitt[13]). Effective volumes are calculated as tissue volume × $\lambda_{\text{tissue/blood}}$ and exchange time constant (τ) for each compartment is V_{eff}/blood flow.

[*] Blood/gas partition coefficients for anesthetic agents are given in Table 20.1.

CNS, Central nervous system; *VPT*, vessel-poor tissues (e.g., skin, bone, and connective tissues).

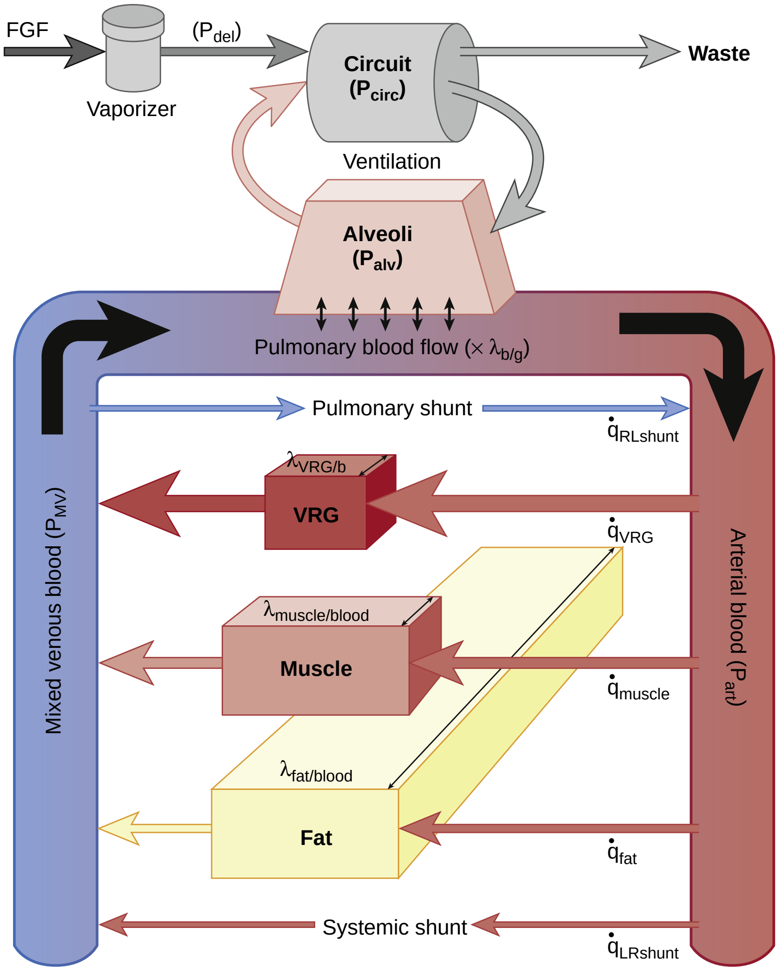


Fig. 20.2 Flow diagram for uptake and distribution of inhaled anesthetics. Major compartments for anesthetic flow are depicted, including the breathing circuit, alveolar gas space, and three major tissue compartments: vessel-rich group (VRG), muscle, and fat. The physiological volumes of the tissue compartments are approximately in proportion to the labeled face of the compartment, while the blood-tissue partition coefficients are depicted as the depth of the compartment. Thus the effective volume of the VRG is much smaller than that of muscle, which in turn is much smaller than that of fat. Carrier flows and exchange in different parts of the model are depicted by arrows: Fresh gas flow *(FGF)* moves anesthetic from the vaporizer to the circuit; ventilation drives exchange of anesthetic between the circuit and alveoli; pulmonary blood flow transfers anesthetic from alveoli into the circulation, which then distributes drug to different compartments depending on blood flow to various tissues. Relative blood flow is approximately proportional to the width of the arrows into and out of tissue compartments, as well as for shunts. The diagram depicts an early phase of anesthetic uptake when organs of the VRG, including the brain, are approaching equilibrium with alveolar and arterial anesthetic partial pressure, while anesthetic partial pressures in muscle and fat remain relatively low. Quantitative modeling of anesthetic gas movement in this system was performed using numerical integration of equations describing anesthetic flow into and out of each compartment (Eqs. 20.5, 20.8–20.11). Figs. 20.4–20.7, 26.9, 20.10, and 20.12 were all generated using this model. Standardized parameters used in the model are summarized in Table 20.2.

and diffusive equilibration across capillary membranes. Note that when anesthetic transfer occurs between gas and blood or between blood and tissue, the effective volume of the downstream compartment must be adjusted with the appropriate partition coefficient (see Table 20.2).

Rate of Wash-In of the Circuit: Equilibration Between Vaporizer and Circuit

Equipment for controlled delivery of inhaled anesthetic drugs are described elsewhere in this text (see Chapter 22). Wash-in of the ventilator breathing circuit represents an example of bulk transfer exchange, wherein the gas in circuit components is replaced by fresh gases emerging from the gas outlet of the anesthesia machine.

Anesthetic Delivery from the Vaporizer: VA delivery (in liters per minute of gaseous drug) from a vaporizer is closely approximated as the product of the delivered anesthetic concentration (fraction = F_{del} or partial pressure at 1 atm = P_{del}) of the anesthetic in a gas mixture and the fresh gas flow (FGF):

$$dVA_{del}/dt = P_{del} \times FGF. \tag{20.1}$$

Thus we can readily calculate the volume of delivered gas-phase anesthetic by simply integrating this function over time. In the simplest case where P_{del} and FGF remain constant,

$$VA_{del}(t) = P_{del} \times FGF \times t. \tag{20.2}$$

Fresh Gas Wash-In to the Breathing Circuit: The factors that affect the speed at which the gas mixture delivered from the anesthesia machine replaces gases in the breathing circuit (wash-in) are FGF and the breathing circuit volume (V_{circ}). Consider a typical situation where FGF at the beginning of an anesthetic is 6 L/min, and the gas volume inside the components of a breathing circuit is 6 L. If FGF is doubled to 12 L/min, then wash-in will proceed at twice the rate (halving the time). Conversely, if the V_{circ} doubles to 12 L, then wash-in will proceed at half the rate (doubling the time).

The gas exchange process is independent of the concentration of anesthetic in the circuit, because the exchange is simply through bulk flow and mixing. However, the *difference between the delivered concentration and that in the circuit determines the magnitude and direction of net anesthetic gas flow*. When the delivered anesthetic partial pressure (P_{del}) is greater than that in the circuit (P_{circ}), net anesthetic flow is into the circuit (and subsequently the patient). To remove anesthetic from the circuit, P_{del} must be less than P_{circ}. When there is no concentration gradient (i.e., equal partial pressures), bulk flow exchange may replace all the old anesthetic molecules with new ones, but there is no net flow and anesthetic concentrations in the circuit remain unchanged.

Mathematically, we can describe the breathing circuit exchange process as a differential equation that incorporates all of the above factors:

$$\frac{dP_{circ}}{dt} = \frac{FGF}{V_{circ}} \times (P_{del} - P_{circ}). \tag{20.3}$$

If P_{del} is constant, integrating this equation results in a single exponential function that defines P_{circ} at any given time following a change in P_{del} at t = 0:

$$P_{circ}(t) = P_{circ}(0) + (P_{del} - P_{circ}(0)) \times \left(1 - e^{-t/[V_{circ}/FGF]}\right) \tag{20.4}$$

P_{circ} approaches P_{del} following an exponential time course with a time constant of $\tau = V_{circ}/FGF$. Thus if V_{circ} = 6 L and FGF = 6 L/min, the exponential time constant will be 1 minute (Fig. 20.3). Each minute results in the fraction of old gas in the breathing circuit dropping by 63.1%, and after 4 minutes, less than 2% old gas remains. The half-life for the process (time for halving the vaporizer-circuit concentration difference) is $0.693 \times \tau$.

Breathing circuit components, such as CO_2 absorbents and the plastic or rubber of the circuit tubing and connectors, influence the rate of equilibration between vaporizer and circuit, because they absorb VAs, increasing the effective circuit volume.[19] The more hydrophobic VAs absorb more into circuit components, whereas absorption negligibly affects wash-in and wash-out of low-solubility anesthetics.

The clinical relevance of the wash-in process is readily appreciated. An example of the importance of FGF is "priming" the anesthetic circuit for a single-breath induction technique. The FGF setting and the circuit volume influence the required duration of priming. More generally, whenever the vaporizer settings are altered, the speed at which the new settings influence the wash-in or wash-out of the circuit (and subsequently the patient) will depend on FGF. Open (nonrebreathing) anesthetic breathing circuits are designed to have low exchange volumes and to be used with high fresh-gas flows. These features allow rapid changes in the delivered anesthetic concentration, while minimizing rebreathing of exhaled gases. The choice of an open versus rebreathing system influences the impact of various other factors that can affect uptake and distribution of inhaled anesthetics downstream from the breathing circuit. Some of the subsequent figures show models for both conditions.

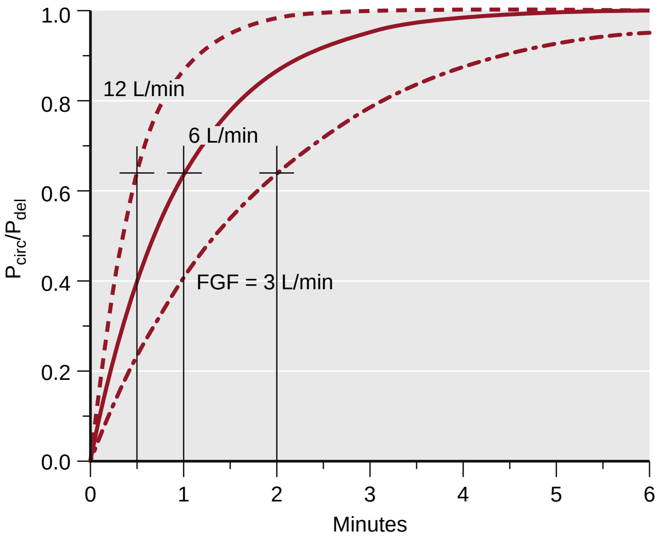


Fig. 20.3 Wash-in of the breathing circuit depends on fresh gas flow (FGF). The curves depict the rate of rise of anesthetic concentration (partial pressure) in a breathing circuit with 6 L gas volume, depending on FGF. Higher FGF results in more rapid exchange of circuit gases with fresh gas. The exponential time constant for the wash-in process is the circuit volume in liters divided by FGF flow in liters per minute (see Eq. 20.4). Cross marks overlaying the curves indicate time constants under different gas flow rates. Each time constant correlates with a 63.1% exchange.

Equilibration Between Circuit and Pulmonary Airspace

Transfer of anesthetic gases from the breathing circuit to the pulmonary airspace is another bulk exchange process similar to that from vaporizer to breathing circuit. In this case, gas flow via ventilation is cyclical and bidirectional, and the factors that determine the rate of anesthetic exchange are minute ventilation (MV) and total pulmonary airspace volume (V_{pulm}).[20] Because transfer from the circuit to the lungs represents anesthetic flow out of the circuit, we alter Eq. (20.3) to include both inflow to the circuit and outflow from the circuit,

$$\frac{dP_{circ}}{dt} = \frac{FGF}{V_{circ}} \times (P_{del} - P_{circ}) - \frac{MV}{V_{pulm}} \times (P_{circ} - P_{pulm}), \tag{20.5}$$

where P_{pulm} is a weighted average of the anesthetic partial pressure in dead space and alveolar space.

Eq. (20.5) describes how rebreathing affects the inhaled (breathing circuit) anesthetic concentration. Most inhaled anesthetics are delivered using a rebreathing circuit, which includes one-way flow valves and adsorbent material to chemically remove exhaled CO_2. Rebreathing depends primarily on the balance between fresh gas flow and MV. The anesthetic gas in the breathing circuit represents a mixture of fresh gas and exhaled gases. Increased fresh gas flow reduces rebreathing, whereas increased MV increases rebreathing.

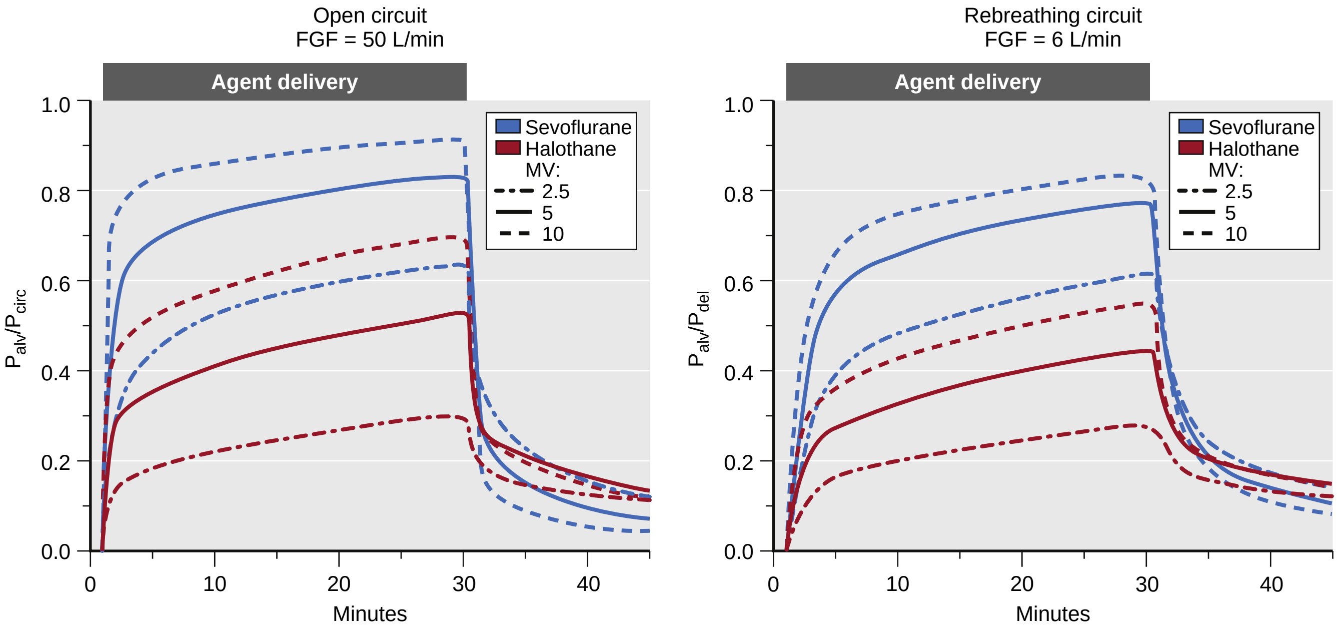


Fig. 20.4 Effect of ventilation on the rise of alveolar anesthetic partial pressure (P_{alv}). Left, A traditional open-circuit model with very high fresh gas flow *(FGF)* and therefore constant $P_{del} = P_{circ}$. Right, A more common clinical situation with constant vaporizer output (P_{del}) and partial rebreathing at a 6 L/min fresh gas flow rate. Raising minute ventilation accelerates the rise of P_{alv} by delivering more anesthetic to the lungs. The effect is seen whether anesthetic is highly soluble in blood (e.g., halothane) or relatively insoluble (e.g., sevoflurane). However, the relative size of the ventilation effect is greater for soluble agents. Increased ventilation also accelerates clearance of anesthetic agents after delivery ceases. *MV*, Minute ventilation; *P_{circ}*, Anesthetic partial pressure in the breathing circuit; *P_{del}*, delivered anesthetic partial pressure from the anesthesia machine gas outlet.

The Alveolar Anesthetic Concentration

The alveolar anesthetic concentration (P_{alv} or F_A) is a critically important factor in anesthetic uptake and distribution because (1) it is in rapid equilibrium with circulating blood and highly perfused tissues, including target tissues in the CNS, and (2) P_{alv} can be measured in exhaled end-tidal gases. Thus, except during periods of rapid change, P_{alv} in exhaled breath represents a useful estimate of the anesthetic concentration in the patient's CNS and other highly perfused organs.

Because only alveolar gas is relevant to transpulmonary exchange of anesthetic into and out of the body, *alveolar ventilation* ($\dot{V}_{alv}$) is the proper gas flow to calculate anesthetic exchange into this part of the pulmonary airspace,

$$\frac{dP_{alv}}{dt} = \frac{\dot{V}_{alv}}{V_{alv}} \times (P_{circ} - P_{alv}), \qquad (20.6)$$

where $\dot{V}_{alv}$ is MV corrected for dead space ventilation.

Alveolar Uptake of Anesthetic into Pulmonary Blood

During inhaled anesthetic induction, anesthetic flows from alveolar gas to pulmonary blood across the alveolar/capillary interface separating these compartments and is driven by the partial pressure gradient between alveolar gas (P_{alv}) and mixed venous blood (P_{MV}) entering the pulmonary arteries. The net flow of anesthetic reverses during anesthetic wash-out when P_{alv} drops below P_{MV}. Anesthetic uptake into blood also depends on the pulmonary blood flow (which is typically close to cardiac output, $\dot{Q}$) and the blood's capacity to solvate anesthetic from the gas state (the blood/gas partition coefficient, $\lambda_{b/g}$):

$$\text{uptake} = \dot{Q} \times \lambda_{b/g} \times (P_{alv} - P_{MV}). \qquad (20.7)$$

We therefore correct Eq. (20.6) to reflect both anesthetic inflow into alveolar airspace and its uptake into blood:

$$\frac{dP_{alv}}{dt} = \frac{\dot{V}_{alv}}{V_{alv}} \times (P_{circ} - P_{alv}) - \frac{\dot{Q} \times \lambda_{b/g}}{V_{alv}} \times (P_{alv} - P_{MV}). \qquad (20.8)$$

Thus, during an inhaled anesthetic induction, the rate of increase of P_{alv} relative to P_{circ} is governed by (1) alveolar ventilation, (2) cardiac output, and (3) anesthetic solubility in blood. Increased ventilation delivers more anesthetic from circuit to alveoli and increases P_{alv}/P_{circ} (Fig. 20.4). Importantly, increased pulmonary blood flow removes more anesthetic from alveoli, thereby decreasing the rate of increase in alveolar concentration of anesthetic (P_{alv}/P_{circ}) (Fig. 20.5). Indeed, significant decreases in cardiac output are suspected when end-tidal CO_2 ($ETCO_2$) decreases and end-tidal concentration of VA increases.[21] The more soluble an anesthetic is in blood (i.e., the higher its $\lambda_{b/g}$), the greater is the capacity for each volume of blood to take up anesthetic from alveolar gases (i.e., the larger the effective blood flow). Thus as $\lambda_{b/g}$ increases, P_{alv}/P_{circ} increases more slowly (Fig. 20.6).

Other Factors That Affect the Rate of Rise of P_{alv}

Other factors affecting alveolar uptake of anesthetic include ventilation-perfusion matching and the absolute concentration of anesthetic in alveolar gases.

Pulmonary Dead Space. Dead space (ventilated but not perfused pulmonary regions) reduces effective alveolar ventilation (see Eqs. 20.7 and 20.8), and thus slows anesthetic

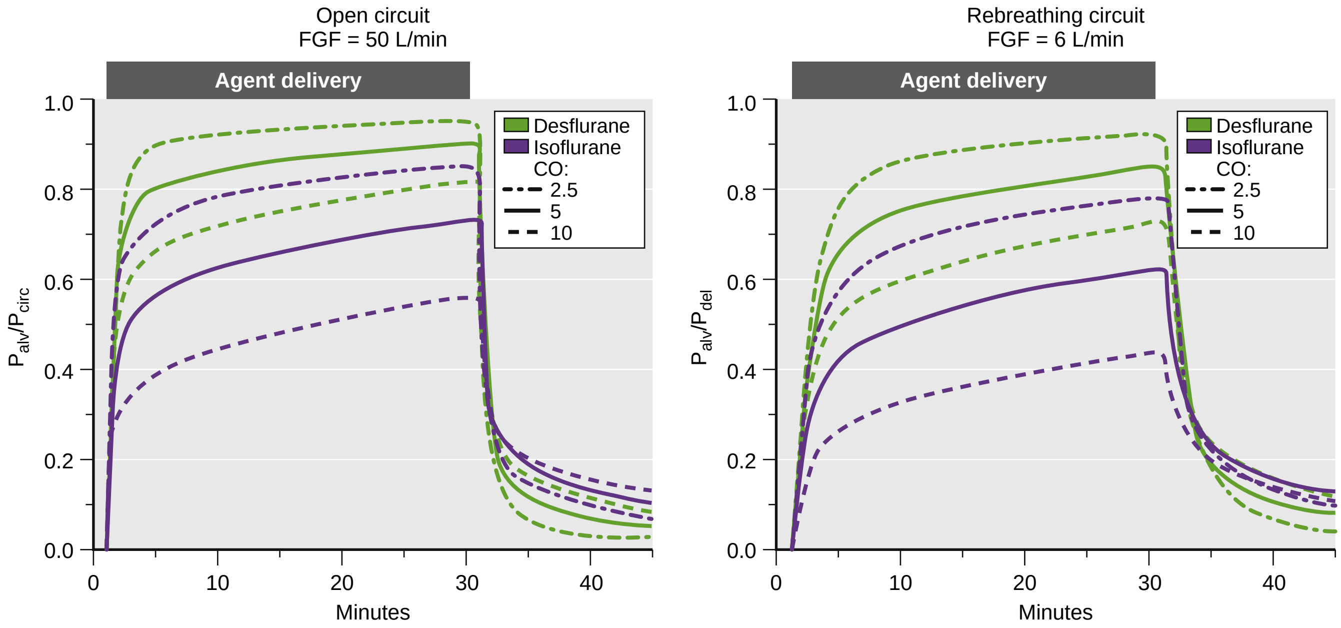


Fig. 20.5 Effect of cardiac output on the rise of alveolar anesthetic partial pressure (P_{alv}). Left, A traditional open-circuit model with very high fresh gas flows and therefore constant $P_{del} = P_{circ}$. Right, A more common clinical situation with constant vaporizer output (P_{del}) and partial rebreathing at a 6 L/min FGF. Increasing cardiac output slows the rise of P_{alv} by increasing anesthetic uptake into blood (removing anesthetic from alveolar gases). This effect is observed for both soluble (e.g., isoflurane) and relatively insoluble (e.g., desflurane) anesthetics, but the relative effect is greater for soluble agents. Cardiac output also affects clearance of anesthetics from the lungs in the same way it affects uptake (i.e., increased cardiac output slows anesthetic clearance rate). *CO*, Cardiac output; P_{circ}, anesthetic partial pressure in the breathing circuit; P_{del}, delivered anesthetic partial pressure from the anesthesia machine gas outlet.

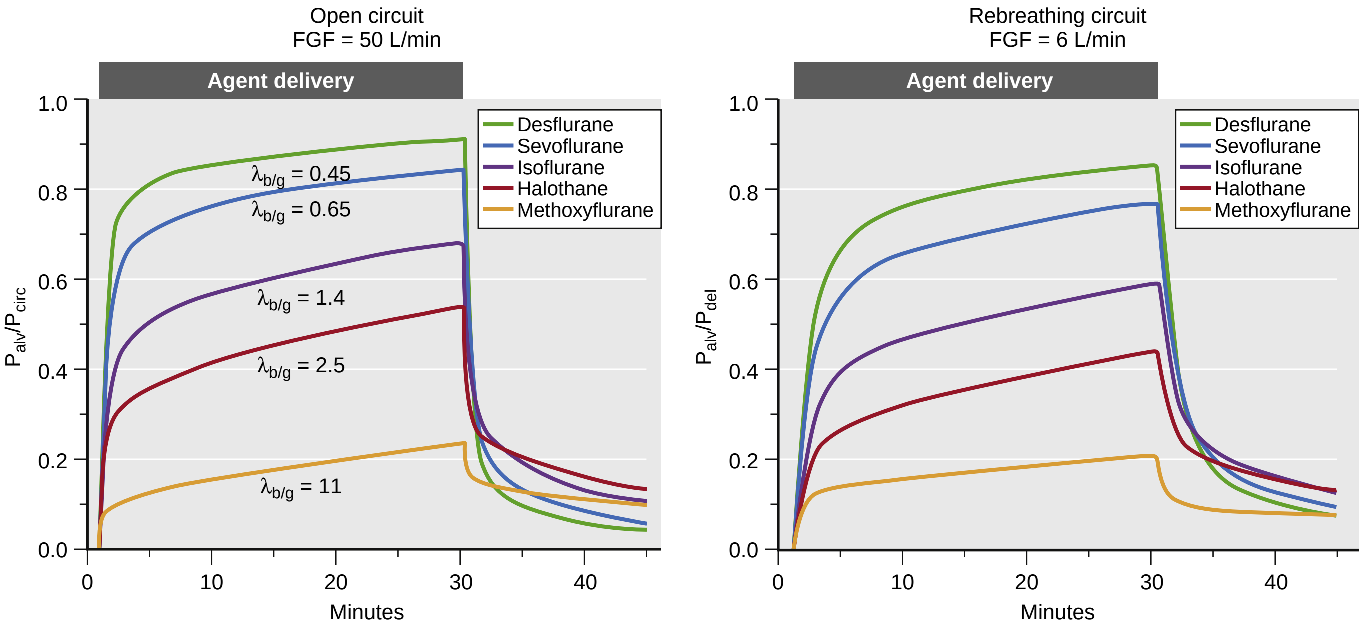


Fig. 20.6 Effect of blood solubility on the rise of alveolar anesthetic partial pressure (P_{alv}). Left, A traditional open-circuit model with very high fresh gas flow (FGF) and therefore constant $P_{del} = P_{circ}$. Right, A more common clinical situation with constant vaporizer output (P_{del}) and partial rebreathing at a 6 L/min FGF rate. As blood solubility ($\lambda_{b/g}$) increases, the rate of rise in P_{alv} slows, because uptake into blood is greater for high solubility agents. The major impact of blood solubility is the magnitude of the rapid initial rise in P_{alv}, which represents a balance between anesthetic delivery and uptake into pulmonary blood. Blood solubility similarly affects clearance from alveoli after anesthetic delivery ceases (i.e., increased blood solubility results in slower clearance from alveolar gas). P_{circ}, Anesthetic partial pressure in the breathing circuit; P_{del}, delivered anesthetic partial pressure from the anesthesia machine gas outlet.

uptake. This effect is strongest under conditions of high FGF and low blood-solubility agents, where alveolar ventilation is the limiting factor in uptake. Under conditions of low FGF and a highly blood-soluble agent, increased dead space, by reducing initial uptake, serves to maintain the inhaled anesthetic concentration (P_{circ}), which creates a compensatory increase in P_{alv} and subsequent uptake.

Pulmonary (Right to Left) Shunting. Pulmonary right to left shunting can be physiologic, pathologic, or iatrogenic, such as during one-lung ventilation. Right-to-left shunting results in a difference between P_{alv} and the partial pressure of anesthetic in arterial blood (P_{art}). This is because arterial blood represents a mixture of shunted mixed venous blood combined with blood that has equilibrated with alveolar gases (Eq. 20.9). Because such shunts also reduce transcapillary gas exchange in the lung and slow anesthetic uptake (Eqs. 20.7 and 20.8, after correcting pulmonary blood flow for shunt), right-to-left shunting sustains P_{circ}, an effect that is more pronounced for highly soluble drugs compared with insoluble anesthetics. Thus shunt reduces the ratio of P_{art}:P_{alv} more for insoluble anesthetics, such as N_2O (Fig. 20.7):[22,23]

$$P_{art} = P_{MV} \times \dot{q}_{RLshunt} + P_{alv} \times \left(\dot{Q} - \dot{q}_{RLshunt}\right). \quad (20.9)$$

Concentration and Second Gas Effects. The absolute concentration of anesthetic influences its uptake and that of other gases. In the previous discussion and illustrations, it was presumed that an inhaled anesthetic represents a small fraction of the inhaled gas mixture and that transalveolar uptake of the anesthetic results in a decrease in P_{alv} and negligible changes in alveolar gas volume. However, when the anesthetic represents a large fraction of the inhaled gas mixture, its rapid uptake results in a smaller relative alveolar anesthetic concentration drop, because the volume of alveolar gas also decreases. This is known as the ***concentration effect.***[24] In an imaginary situation where a patient is breathing 100% anesthetic, uptake into pulmonary blood reduces the volume of anesthetic gas in the alveoli without altering its concentration or partial pressure (oxygen-induced atelectasis occurs through a similar mechanism). A typical situation, illustrated in Fig. 20.8, is delivery of 66% N_2O with 33% O_2 and 1% isoflurane. Assuming cardiac output equals 5 L/min, the initial rate of N_2O uptake is given by Eq. (20.7) as 5000 mL/min × 0.47 × 0.66 atm = 1550 mL/min, indicating that a large fraction of N_2O is taken up into blood during the first few breaths. If we assume that half the N_2O and half the isoflurane are rapidly taken up following the first breath of this gas mixture, then alveolar volume drops by 33.5% and the remaining alveolar gas contains 33 parts N_2O, 33 parts O_2, and 0.5 parts isoflurane (49.6% N_2O, 49.6% O_2, and 0.8% isoflurane). Despite 50% uptake of N_2O, the significant reduction in alveolar gas volume results in a concentration of remaining alveolar N_2O that is only 24% less than its initial value.

The ***second gas effect*** is also evident in this example: the rapid uptake of N_2O and reduced alveolar gas volume sustains P_{iso} near its original inspired value and increases alveolar P_{O_2}, thereby augmenting uptake of these gases.[25] The rapid uptake of N_2O into blood also results in an effective increase in MV, because more gas from the breathing circuit is passively drawn into lung as alveolar gas is rapidly absorbed. These effects have been demonstrated in

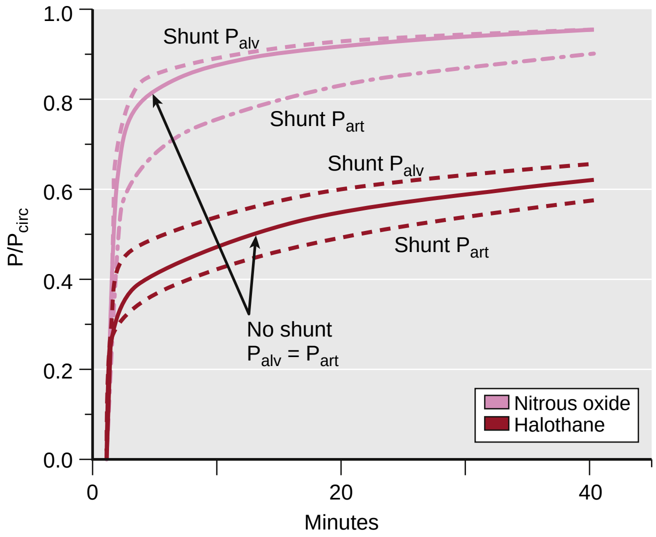


Fig. 20.7 Effect of right-to-left pulmonary shunt on the anesthetic partial pressure in alveolar gas and arterial blood. The curves represent anesthetic partial pressures in alveolar gases *(dashed lines)* and arterial blood *(dash-dot lines)* under conditions of 40% right-to-left shunt and no shunt *(solid lines)*. Pulmonary right-to-left shunting bypasses alveolar uptake, so less anesthetic is removed from pulmonary gases; this accelerates the rise in P_{alv}. In addition, the anesthetic partial pressure in arterial blood (P_{art}) is a mixture of pulmonary venous blood at P_{alv} and shunted mixed venous blood at P_{MV}. Thus P_{art}, which determines the rate of anesthetic uptake into tissues, rises more slowly than P_{alv} when R-to-L shunting is present. The shunt effect on P_{art} versus P_{alv} is larger for insoluble anesthetics (e.g., N_2O) than for soluble anesthetics (e.g., halothane). Other model parameters were set for open circuit delivery (constant P_{circ}) with MV = 6 L/min and CO = 5 L/min. *CO*, Cardiac output; *MV*, minute ventilation; *P_{MV}*, anesthetic partial pressure in mixed venous blood; *P/P_{circ}*.

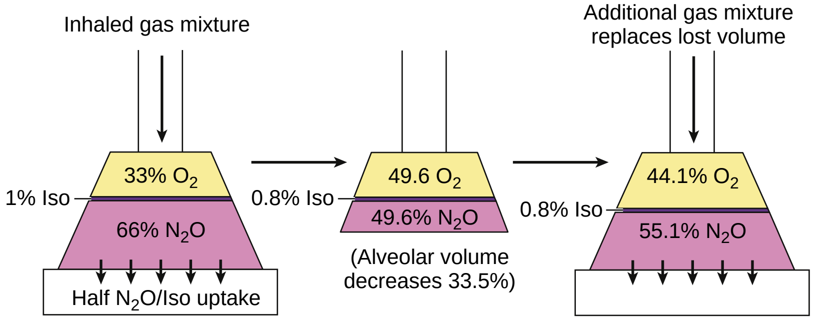


Fig. 20.8 Concentration and second gas effects. The figure depicts alveolar gases at the beginning of an anesthetic. After an initial inspiratory breath, alveoli are filled with the gas mixture in the circuit (66% N_2O, 33% O_2, 1% Isoflurane) at their normal end-inspiratory volume *(left panel)*. After half of the N_2O and isoflurane are absorbed into pulmonary blood, the alveolar gas volume is reduced by 33.5%. At this point, the volume of N_2O equals the volume of O_2 and the gas mixture is 49.6% N_2O, 49.6% O_2, 0.8% isoflurane. Inflow of additional inspired gas mixture returns alveolar volume to its original value, resulting in a gas mixture of 55.1% N_2O, 44.1% O_2, 0.8% isoflurane. The alveolar partial pressure of N_2O falls much less than the fractional uptake (the concentration effect). In addition, the partial pressure of O_2 *increases* relative to the inspired gas O_2 content, and the partial pressure of isoflurane is sustained close to the inspired value, increasing its rate of uptake (the second gas effect). *Iso*, Isoflurane; *N_2O*, nitrous oxide; *O_2*, oxygen.

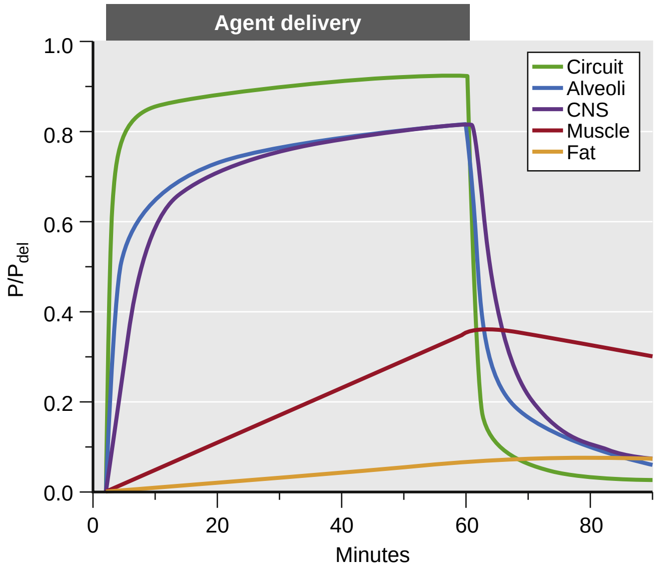


Fig. 20.9 The rate of anesthetic partial pressure rise in different tissue compartments. The curves represent model calculations for sevoflurane delivered at 6 L/min fresh gas flow, with 5 L/min ventilation and 5 L/min cardiac output. The anesthetic partial pressure in the central nervous system (*CNS*; *purple line*), part of the vessel rich group, equilibrates rapidly with P_{alv} *(blue line)*, although a lag-time of several minutes is evident when P_{alv} is rapidly rising or falling. The anesthetic partial pressures in both muscle *(red line)* and fat *(orange line)* rise and fall much more slowly, because muscle and fat compartments represent much larger effective volumes (see Fig. 20.2) and have lower blood flow than the vessel-rich group. Note that anesthetic partial pressure in fat continues to rise after anesthetic delivery stops, as long as partial pressure in alveolar gas (and arterial blood) is greater than that in the fat compartment.

humans[26] and lab animals.[25] Recent clinical studies and mathematical modeling indicate that, because of ventilation-perfusion heterogeneity, the second gas effect is greater in arterial blood than in expired gas, influenced by the blood solubility of VAs, and significantly affects anesthetic onset at relatively low rates of N_2O uptake.[27-29]

Distribution of Anesthetic into Tissues

Blood exiting the pulmonary capillaries enters the pulmonary vein and the left heart. Inhaled anesthetics are then distributed via arterial blood to various body tissues. The rate of increase of anesthetic partial pressure within each tissue is determined by tissue-specific arterial blood flow ($\dot{q}$), effective volume (the product of anatomic volume and tissue/blood partition coefficient, $\lambda_{t/b}$), and the anesthetic partial pressure gradient between arterial blood and the tissue,

$$\frac{dP_i}{dt} = \frac{\dot{q}_i}{V_i \times \lambda_{i/b}} \times (P_{art} - P_i), \qquad (20.10)$$

where i designates a particular organ or type of tissue. Values used in model calculations are summarized in Table 20.2. The time required for anesthetic partial pressure equilibration between arterial blood ($P_{art} = P_{alv}$) and a specified tissue is shorter if its blood flow is high, and longer if that tissue has a large effective volume (Figs. 20.2 and 20.9).

Traditionally, anesthetic distribution has been described for four distinct tissue groups. The ***vessel-rich group*** (VRG) includes the heart, brain, lungs, spinal cord, liver, and kidney. Together, these organs compose approximately 10% of the adult human body mass; however, they receive approximately 70% of cardiac output under normal resting conditions. As a result, time constants for anesthetic equilibration between blood and these organs are typically only a few minutes (see Table 20.2). Of particular interest is the equilibration time for the CNS, where anesthetic effects are mediated. After the highly perfused VRG tissues, ***skeletal muscle*** is the next compartment to equilibrate with inhaled anesthetics. Muscle composes approximately 40% of body mass in a healthy adult, making muscle the largest single compartment based on weight. Moreover, most inhaled anesthetics partition into muscle more than into brain, resulting in an increased effective volume for anesthetic uptake into this compartment. At rest, muscle receives about 10% to 15% of cardiac output (20 mL/kg/min), but this value can increase dramatically during exercise, stress, fever, or other states associated with high cardiac output.[30] Taken together, these factors generally result in slow equilibration between anesthetic in blood and muscle, with typical time constants of hours (see Table 20.2). The third tissue group is ***fat***, which in a healthy adult composes less than 25% of body mass and receives approximately 10% of cardiac output.[31] Potent VAs partition avidly into fat; therefore, fat represents the largest effective volume for uptake of these drugs (see Fig. 20.2, Table 20.2). The extremely large effective volume coupled with low blood flow results in very slow equilibration of anesthetics between blood and fat, with time constants approaching days. A fourth group, including skin, cortical bone, and connective tissue, is referred to as ***vessel poor tissues***. These tissues compose 10% to 15% of an average adult body while receiving less than 5% of cardiac output at rest. Induction of general anesthesia impairs normal sympathetic nervous function, resulting in increased blood flow to normally cool skin in the extremities.[32] The blood volume represents approximately 7% of body mass and may be considered another compartment for anesthetic uptake, while also conveying drug to other tissue compartments.

As stated previously, increased cardiac output results in increased anesthetic uptake and a slower rate of rise of P_{alv}. Clinical studies confirm that, other factors being equal, increasing cardiac output slows the induction of general anesthesia with inhaled anesthetics.[21,33] This result can seem counterintuitive when increasing cardiac output increases uptake of anesthetic into the patient's body and hastens its delivery to the tissues. However, during induction, the anesthetic partial pressure in blood and downstream tissue compartments cannot be higher than that in the upstream alveolar compartment. Increased cardiac output slows the rise of P_{alv} and thus also slows the rate of increase of the anesthetic partial pressure in blood (P_{art}), the CNS (P_{CNS}), and other highly perfused tissues. The extra anesthetic uptake is primarily into muscle, which is a large tissue compartment with a high capacity for anesthetic and is where much of the excess cardiac output flows. For example, a 50% increase in cardiac output can more than double muscle blood flow, diverting the majority of anesthetic to muscle, lowering P_{alv}, and thus slowing anesthetic uptake into target tissues in the CNS. If one could manipulate inhaled anesthetic delivery to maintain constant P_{alv}, which may be achievable with automated feedback control of vaporizer output and FGF,[34] then increased cardiac output might have a different effect. Model simulations where P_{alv} is maintained at a constant level show that uptake into VRG tissues, including brain tissue, increases more rapidly as cardiac output increases.[35]

In pediatric patients, the balance of cardiac output to various tissue beds differs from that in adults. Thus, although cardiac output per kilogram body weight is larger in children than in adults, anesthetic induction in young children is more rapid than in adults, because a disproportionate amount of perfusion goes to the vessel rich organs, such as the brain.[36]

The equilibrium distribution volumes for most inhaled anesthetics are extremely large, with the largest compartment by far being fat. However, equilibration with fat is so slow that this compartment usually plays a relatively minor role in the pharmacokinetics of inhaled anesthetics. During a typical general anesthetic lasting from 30 minutes to several hours, the blood, VRG organs, and muscle are the compartments into which inhaled anesthetics mostly distribute.

Although the model in Fig. 20.2 illustrates anesthetic distribution only via arterial blood flow, ***intertissue diffusion*** takes place between abutting tissues that have large interfacial surface areas. In particular, direct diffusion from organs with high anesthetic partial pressures to abutting tissues with low partial pressure and high capacity for anesthetic uptake may also contribute to drug distribution. Examples of this process include anesthetic diffusion from the heart, liver, and kidneys to surrounding fat in the pericardium and abdomen.[37,38]

The Mixed Venous Anesthetic Partial Pressure

The anesthetic partial pressure in mixed venous blood entering the pulmonary circulation is a weighted average of the venous outflows from all tissues and organs, which converge in the right ventricle:

$$P_{MV} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{\dot{q}_i}{\dot{Q}} \times P_i. \tag{20.11}$$

As P_{MV} rises, the gradient driving uptake of inhaled anesthetics from alveoli weakens. The difference between the delivered (inspired) and the alveolar (end-expiratory) anesthetic concentrations also shrinks, causing transpulmonary uptake to slow (Eq. 20.7). *Systemic (left to right) shunting* causes P_{MV} to increase more rapidly than it would in the absence of such shunts. When blood flow to other tissues remains normal and the left-to-right shunt simply represents excess cardiac output, the resulting increase in anesthetic uptake (Eq. 20.7) is offset by the increase in P_{MV}, resulting in a slight increase in the rate of anesthetic delivery or uptake into the brain, muscle, and other tissues. In cases where large left-to-right shunts result in reduced blood flow to other tissues, anesthetic equilibration in those tissues will be relatively slow.

Synthesis of the Model and Inhaled Anesthetic Induction: PK/PD

The earlier discussion emphasized the rate of equilibration (pharmacokinetics) of inhaled anesthetics among the various compartments involved in delivery to a patient: vaporizer, circuit, lung, blood, and various tissues. However, in a clinical setting, the goal of the anesthesia provider is the reversible production of certain desired effects (amnesia, unconsciousness, and immobility) in the patient within a reasonable period of time. To achieve this goal, pharmacokinetics must be combined with knowledge of the effects produced at different anesthetic partial pressures in target tissues (i.e., dose-response or pharmacodynamics).[39] The most relevant pharmacodynamic guidelines are minimum alveolar concentration (MAC)-immobility,[40] the alveolar anesthetic concentration preventing movement response to surgical stimulus in 50% of subjects, and MAC-awake,[7] the alveolar anesthetic concentration preventing perceptive awareness in 50% of subjects, both measured under conditions where P_{alv} is in equilibrium with anesthetic partial pressure in the CNS (P_{CNS}). MAC-awake for potent VAs is typically 0.34 × MAC-immobility,[41] whereas MAC-awake for N_2O is approximately 0.7 × MAC-immobility (see Table 20.1). During induction of anesthesia, the goal may be achieving a high probability of immobility following incision ($P_{CNS} \approx 1.2 \times$ MAC-immobility) within 15 minutes, while avoiding the deleterious effects of overly deep anesthesia. At the end of an anesthetic, return of consciousness is likely to occur when P_{CNS} decreases to less than MAC-awake. The targets used for this illustrative model patient are estimates. In clinical practice, the target for depth of general anesthesia should always minimize the risk of awareness (consciousness), but may vary, depending on patient factors, the presence of noxious stimuli, and other drugs that may be administered.

There are a variety of strategies to deliver inhaled anesthetics and to achieve the desired and reversible effects of anesthesia within a reasonable timeframe. The first important consideration is that P_{del} from the vaporizer must be higher than our target P_{alv} or P_{CNS} (***overpressure***). The more overpressure used, the more rapidly anesthetic is delivered. High fresh gas flows, large MV, and a low-solubility drug will also increase the rate of anesthetic delivery and the rate of rise of P_{alv} and P_{CNS}. These factors, and particularly overpressure, also increase the risk of delivering an overdose of anesthetic drug. A common strategy is to initiate inhaled anesthetic delivery with moderate to high fresh gas flows (≥ 6 L/min) and moderate overpressure (P_{del} = 2 × MAC-immobility), and reduce P_{del} after P_{alv} reaches or slightly exceeds the target level (Fig. 20.10, left). The need to maintain overpressure and slightly overshoot P_{alv} derives from the fact that distribution of drug to muscle maintains a high delivery requirement after the initial rapid phase of uptake. If P_{del} is decreased too quickly, then P_{alv} can decrease below the target. P_{del} or FGF is slowly adjusted downward as the anesthetic inspired-to-expired difference in anesthetic partial pressures ($P_{del}-P_{alv}$) decreases.

Closed-Circuit or Low-Flow Delivery of Anesthesia

The use of high or moderate fresh gas flows, while enabling use of less overpressure, results in far more anesthetic drug being delivered than being taken up into tissues. As illustrated in Fig. 20.10C, the amount of isoflurane delivered is 4.5-fold greater than that taken up, and delivered sevoflurane is 7.2-fold greater than absorbed drug. Thus more than 80% of delivered VA is waste using the moderately

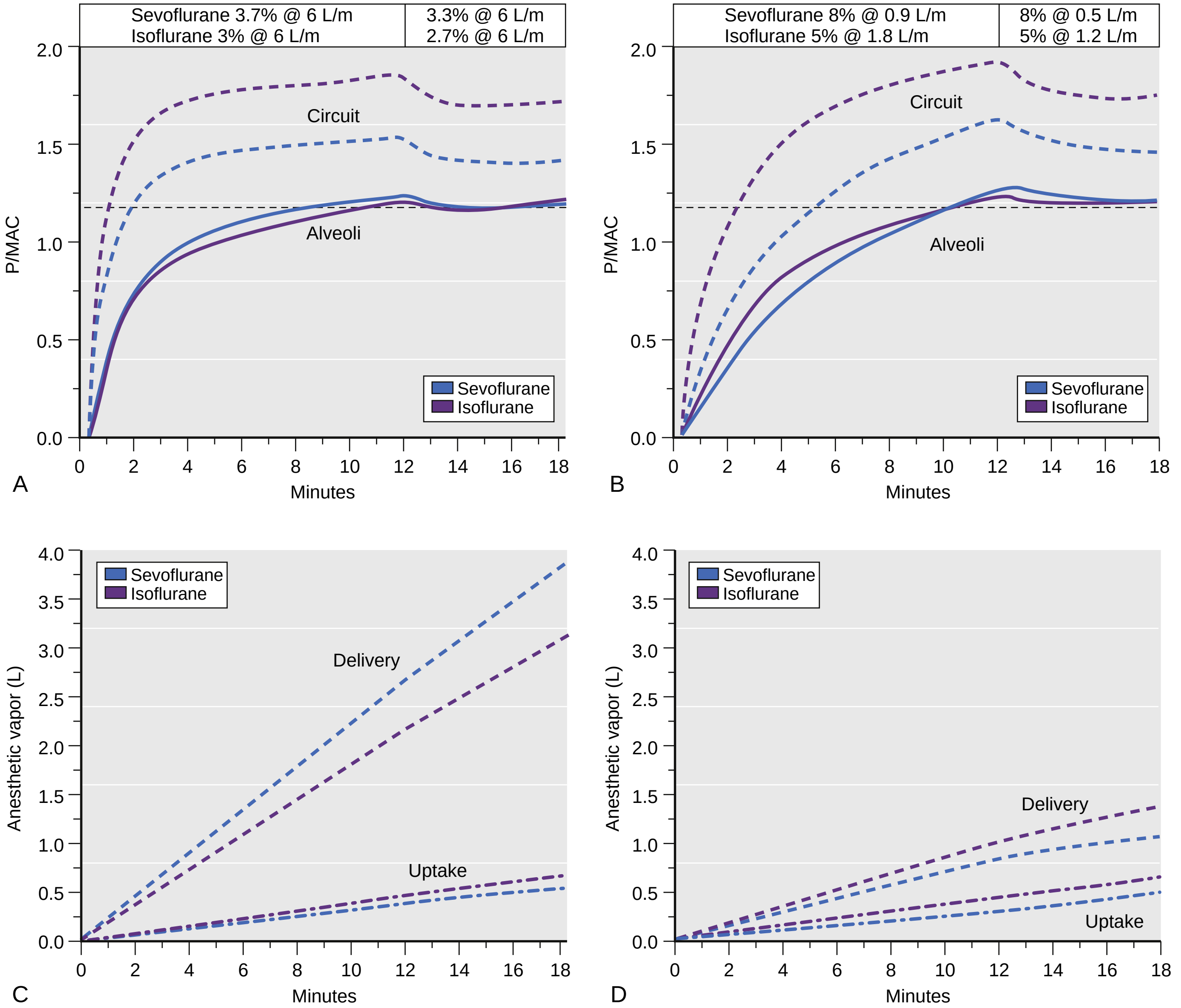


Fig. 20.10 Effect of induction technique on uptake and delivery of inhaled anesthetics. (A) Anesthetic partial pressures in both the circuit *(dashed lines)* and alveoli *(solid lines)* during inhalation induction with moderate (6 L/min) fresh gas flows and modest (twofold to threefold) overpressure for sevoflurane *(blue)* and isoflurane *(purple)*. P_{alv} reaches 1.2 × MAC in about 12 minutes, and approximately 10% downward adjustment of vaporizer settings results in maintenance of P_{alv} near this target level. Additional downward adjustments in vaporizer setting or fresh gas flows, or both, would be needed to further maintain this P_{alv} level. (B) Anesthetic partial pressures in both the circuit and alveoli during inhalation induction with low (<2 L/min) fresh gas flows and maximal (fourfold) overpressure for sevoflurane *(blue)* and isoflurane *(purple)*. P_{alv} reaches 1.2 × MAC in approximately 12 minutes, and a downward adjustment of fresh gas flow results in maintenance of P_{alv} near this target level. (C) The total anesthetic vapor delivered and taken up into the model patient from panel A. Note that delivery far exceeds uptake, more so for the low solubility anesthetic (sevoflurane). (D) The total amount of anesthetic vapor delivered and taken up into the model patient from panel B. Note that uptake is very similar to that in panel C, whereas delivery is much lower. The low fresh gas flow technique (panels B and D) reduces waste more so for anesthetics with low blood solubility (e.g., sevoflurane) than for soluble drugs (e.g., isoflurane). *MAC*, Minimum alveolar concentration; P_{alv}, alveolar anesthetic partial pressure.

high FGF approach illustrated in this example (settings are shown in Fig. 20.10*A*). Rebreathing circuits allow the use of fresh gas flows well below MV, which results in reduced anesthetic discharge into the waste-scavenging system. Less waste discharge translates into both reduced costs and reduced global environmental impact of anesthetic gases in the atmosphere, where they contribute to climate change (discussed later in this chapter). Additional benefits of low FGF and rebreathing include retention of expired heat and water vapor in rebreathed gas, improving airway epithelial health, and reducing accumulation of dried airway secretions.[42]

Closed-circuit anesthesia represents the ultimate limit of low gas flows, where fresh gases are delivered only in quantities sufficient to replace those taken up into tissues, metabolized (especially O_2), or otherwise lost to the environment, and the vast majority of gas in the breathing circuit undergoes rebreathing.[43] Achieving this goal requires a leak-free breathing circuit, complete removal of CO_2, and careful attention to the inspired-to-expired values of oxygen and anesthetic gases, and even to expired nitrogen that may slowly accumulate in the breathing circuit. Under these conditions, oxygen consumption in an anesthetized patient may be lower than 3 mL/kg/min, translating to

O_2 replacement of approximately 200 mL/min in a 70 kg patient. There are several significant limitations to this technique. Because all exhaled CO_2 must be removed by absorbents, closed-circuit anesthesia increases the risk of rebreathing CO_2 as absorbent capacity diminishes. Anesthetic breakdown products, carbon monoxide (CO), and slowly degassing nitrogen from blood can accumulate in the breathing circuit.[44] Clinicians must be aware that patient metabolism may deplete oxygen from the breathing circuit and result in delivery of a hypoxic gas mixture during use of closed circuit anesthesia. When using very low FGF values, changes in the vaporizer output (P_{del}) result in extremely slow changes in P_{circ} and the subsequent depth of anesthesia. Closed circuit anesthetic administration is often guided by the "square root of time rule," proposed by Severinghaus[45] and detailed in now classic descriptions.[46] This rule states that the rate of anesthetic uptake decreases approximately as the square root of delivery time. We can estimate the uptake of 1.2 MAC isoflurane during the first minute of anesthesia using Eq. (20.7). Thus cardiac output × $\lambda_{b/g}$ × 1.2 MAC = Initial uptake of isoflurane vapor (5000 mL/min × 1.4 × 0.0128 atm = 90 mL/min). Using the square-root of time rule, uptake at 4 minutes would be half of the initial rate (45 mL/min), and at 9 minutes, uptake would be one-third of the initial rate (30 mL/min). It should be noted that to deliver 90 mL/min of isoflurane vapor at a maximal vaporizer setting of 5% requires 1800 mL/min of FGF, far greater than the target FGF for closed circuit anesthesia. Anesthetists can overcome this limitation by directly injecting small volumes of liquid anesthetic into the expiratory limb of the breathing circuit;[47] however, this technique requires vigilant attention to the clock along with many other factors. In inexperienced hands, miscalculation or mistiming of anesthetic injection runs the risk of overdose.

Because of the challenges of closed-circuit administration, a more common practice is to use moderate to high fresh gas flows to achieve rapid changes during induction of anesthesia, reserving closed circuit anesthesia to periods where the P_{circ}−P_{alv} difference is small. Even so, changes in a patient's metabolism because of temperature variation, degree of muscle relaxation, or surgical stimulation can result in the need for frequent adjustments to oxygen flow and anesthetic depth, making anesthesia delivery in a closed circuit system relatively unstable and difficult.

Low-flow anesthetic delivery, typically with fresh gas flows of 0.5 to 1.0 L/min during the maintenance phase of an anesthetic, is a compromise between closed-circuit conditions and the use of high fresh gas flows. Much of the waste and other problems associated with high fresh gas flows are avoided, while the instability associated with a strict closed-circuit technique is also moderated. As noted earlier (see section on "Equilibration Between Circuit and Pulmonary Airspace"), the inspired anesthetic concentration (P_{circ}) depends on both P_{del} and P_{pulm} when rebreathing occurs. Thus, as FGF diminishes, P_{del} must be adjusted upward to compensate for diminished delivery. Given that the maximal output setting on most vaporizers is about 4 × MAC-immobility, anesthetic delivery at 1 L/min and maximal P_{del} is still far less than the previous example with 6 L/min and P_{del} = 2 × MAC isoflurane. Higher FGF or a less soluble anesthetic drug, or both, is needed to achieve target P_{CNS} in less than 15 minutes, but as uptake diminishes, FGF can be gradually reduced (Fig. 20.10, right panels). With soluble anesthetics like isoflurane, maximal vaporizer settings and FGF near 2 L/min is required for reasonably rapid induction. FGF can be incrementally decreased as P_{alv} reaches the target level, and eventually vaporizer output setting is decreased as well. With low solubility anesthetics like desflurane or sevoflurane, initial FGF values near 1.0 L/min can be used in combination with maximal vaporizer settings and a similar strategy of reducing FGF. These conditions result in reasonably rapid induction while minimizing waste of VAs. Low FGF can be maintained until high FGF is again needed to achieve emergence at the end of the anesthetic administration.

When using high vaporizer output settings, diligence must be maintained to avoid overdosing the patient by reducing FGF and the vaporizer setting in a timely and deliberate manner. Use of significant overpressure should be avoided in situations when other clinical issues require the attention of the anesthesia provider.

PHARMACODYNAMIC EFFECTS OF ANESTHETICS ON UPTAKE AND DISTRIBUTION

The pharmacodynamic effects of most inhaled anesthetics also include changes in ventilatory and cardiac function that thereby introduce dynamic changes in the drug pharmacokinetics. ***Spontaneous ventilation*** is reduced by inhalation of potent VAs in a dose-dependent manner.[48] As a result, spontaneously breathing patients will autoregulate to some degree by reducing their uptake of anesthetic agent as depth of anesthesia increases. This autoregulation provides a degree of safety that is absent in ventilated patients, who may be subjected to excessive delivery of inhaled anesthetics if a vaporizer is inadvertently set to deliver overpressure.[49] Inhaled anesthetics also reduce ***cardiac output***, a pharmacodynamic effect that leads to a more rapid increase in P_{alv}/P_{circ} and consequently a more rapid increase in the anesthetic partial pressure in heart, brain, and other highly perfused tissues.[50] Halothane is the anesthetic associated with the greatest reduction in cardiac output. If anesthetic delivery continues in the face of a falling cardiac output, this can lead to a positive feedback loop of worsening cardiac depression and a rapid descent toward hemodynamic collapse. More details on the effects of inhaled anesthetics on respiratory and circulatory systems are provided in Chapter 21.

THE EFFECT OF NITROUS OXIDE ON GAS-FILLED SPACES

Because N_2O is often used at high partial pressures, it diffuses into and accumulates in spaces containing air or other immobile gases, with potentially deleterious physiologic consequences. Clinically relevant examples include intravascular air emboli,[51] pneumothorax,[52] air in the inner chamber of the ear,[53] intravitreal gas bubbles,[54] intrathecal air, pneumoencephalus,[55] and air in the gastrointestinal tract.[52] Air-filled spaces contain mostly nitrogen, a gas that composes 78% of air but is 30-fold less soluble in blood than N_2O ($\lambda_{b/g}$ for N_2 is 0.015). Thus N_2O diffuses down its pressure gradient from blood and surrounding tissues into

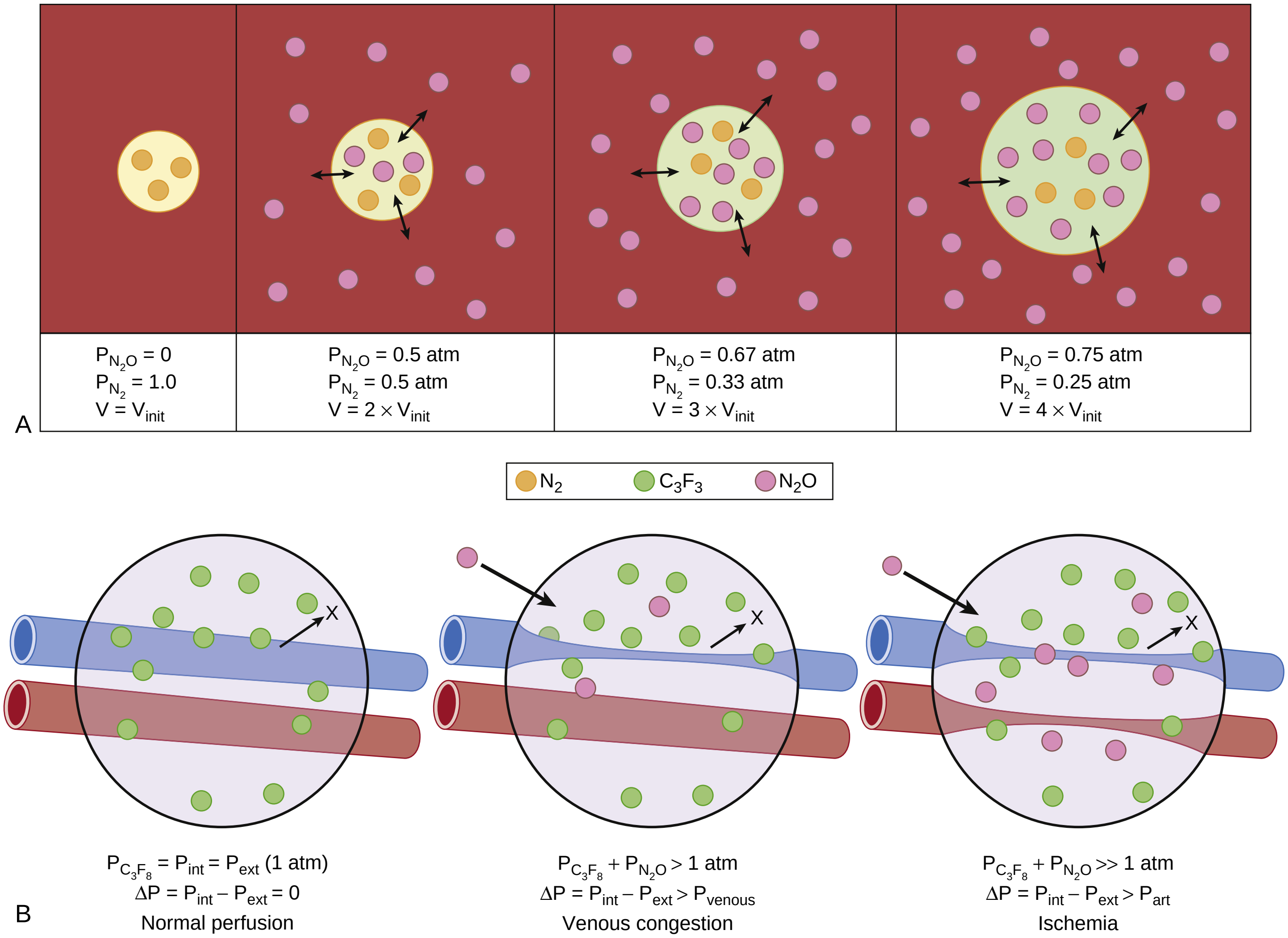


Fig. 20.11 Nitrous oxide accumulation in gas-filled spaces. A, Expansion of a compliant air-filled space (a small vascular air embolus) occurs as the partial pressure of nitrous oxide in surrounding blood increases. Each panel depicts the equilibrium condition with PN_2O inside the bubble equal to that in blood. Labels below each panel summarize the partial pressures of N_2O and N_2 in the bubble as well as the bubble volume relative to its initial value (Vinit). B, The increase in pressure inside a noncompliant, gas-filled compartment (e.g., an eye following perfluoropropane [C_3F_8] injection) with blood vessels passing through it. As N_2O accumulates, the pressure in the compartment increases, which can result in venous congestion (middle panel) or ischemia (right panel) in tissues that are perfused by the vessels in this compartment (e.g., the retina). *Atm*, Atmosphere; *ΔP*, difference between internal and external pressure; *N_2*, nitrogen; *N_2O*, nitrous oxide; *P_{art}*, arterial blood pressure; *PC_3F_8*, partial pressure of perfluoropropane; *P_{ext}*, pressure outside the compartment; *P_{int}*, internal compartment pressure; *PN_2*, partial pressure of nitrogen; *PN_2O*, partial pressure of N_2O; *P_{venous}*, venous blood pressure.

air-filled spaces, whereas N_2 elimination from these spaces is far slower, even with inspired $P_{N2} = 0$. As N_2O enters and the total number of gas molecules in an air space increases, it will expand in volume, increase in pressure, or both, depending on the compliance of the tissues surrounding the air-filled space.

In ***highly compliant air-filled spaces***, such as intravascular air bubbles or small pneumothoraces, N_2O accumulation increases the total volume of gas (Fig. 20.11*A*) with minimal changes in pressure. Air spaces expand as N_2O enters until the P_{N2O} within the air space matches that in surrounding blood, establishing equilibrium. The maximum potential gas volume expansion in a highly compliant space is

$$\frac{V}{V_{init}} = \frac{1}{1 - P_{N_2O}}. \qquad (20.12)$$

Thus administration of 50% N_2O can double air-space volume, whereas 67% can potentially triple air-space volume. N_2O can significantly worsen the cardiovascular or tissue consequences of intravascular air emboli, potentially making a nonlethal volume of venous air embolus become lethal.[51] Expansion of gastrointestinal gas volume by N_2O may impede surgical exposure or abdominal wound closure. Gas-space compartment compliance eventually decreases as volume expands, resulting in increased pressure. For example, N_2O may expand a small pneumothorax to a point where intrathoracic pressure rises, compressing lung, displacing the mediastinum, and reducing venous return (tension pneumothorax). N_2O is contraindicated in patients with intracranial air until after dural opening, in order to avoid intracranial hypertension.[56] The endotracheal tube cuff filled with air is also susceptible to expansion by N_2O. Increased tracheal cuff pressure may impair perfusion of surrounding mucosa.[57] Air-filled laryngeal mask airway cuffs[58] and the air-filled balloon of a Swan-Ganz catheter[59] may similarly expand during N_2O administration.

In ***noncompliant gas-filled spaces***, gas pressure rises as N_2O enters, until P_{N2O} within the air space matches that

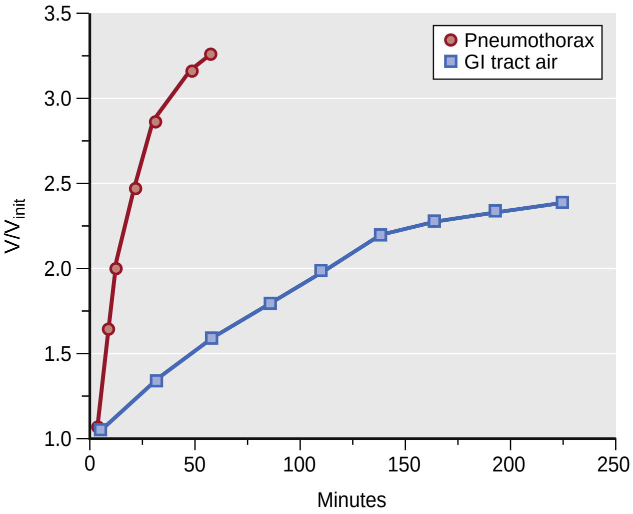


Fig. 20.12 The rate of air-space expansion during nitrous oxide administration. The rate and extent of expansion of air pockets injected into either the pleural space *(red circles)* or the gastrointestinal tract *(blue squares)* of dogs during the inhalation of a 25% oxygen/75% nitrous oxide gas mixture is shown. Air pockets in the stomach, small intestine, and colon expand more slowly than do those in a pneumothorax. *GI*, Gastrointestinal. (Data are approximations from the results reported in Eger EI II, Saidman LJ. Hazards of nitrous oxide anesthesia in bowel obstruction and pneumothorax. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:61–66.)

in blood. The maximal potential pressure in such a space, relative to surrounding ambient pressure, is therefore P_{N2O}. Thus, in a patient inhaling 50% N_2O, pressure in such a gas-filled compartment could approach 380 mm Hg, far greater than typical arterial perfusion pressures. A clinically important example is that of intravitreal sulfur hexafluoride (SF_6) or perfluoropropane (C_3F_8) bubbles, which are injected as the sclera is closed at the end of intraocular or retinal surgery (see Fig. 20.11*B*).[54] These gases persist even longer than N_2 does, because of their low blood solubility. If N_2O is administered to these patients at the time of intravitreal bubble injection, its diffusion into the bubble can rapidly increase intraocular pressure above that in retinal veins, producing retinal congestion. If the pressure in the eye further increases above systolic arterial pressure, retinal ischemia resulting in blindness may ensue.

The ***rate of N_2O diffusion into gas-filled spaces*** in the body depends on local blood flow and the surface to volume ratio of the space. Thus small air emboli expand within seconds, because they have high surface/volume ratios and are surrounded by a very high relative flow of blood containing dissolved N_2O. Larger air emboli expand more slowly, because their surface/volume ratios are smaller (spherical surface/volume is inversely proportional to radius). Small pneumothoraces typically have large surface/volume ratios and high local blood flow. Animal experiments show that inhalation of 75% N_2O approximately doubles pneumothorax volume in 10 minutes and triples it in 30 minutes (Fig. 20.12). Compared with a pneumothorax, gastrointestinal air pockets have lower surface/volume ratios and lower blood flow. Thus expansion of gas in the gastrointestinal tract is much slower than that in a pneumothorax. In animal studies (see Fig. 20.12), inhalation of 70% to 80% N_2O doubled intestinal gas volume after approximately 2 hours.[52]

N_2O use is contraindicated in patients with pneumothorax, pneumocephalus, and closed dura, or in those at high risk for vascular air embolus. Air-space expansion may impede surgery when substantial gastrointestinal air is present and N_2O exposure is prolonged, or it can be of little consequence when the initial volume of gas in the gut is small or when the surgery is brief.

RECOVERY FROM ANESTHESIA

Similarities and Differences to Induction

Clearance of inhaled anesthetics from target tissues (brain and spinal cord) is primarily via the same pathways used for anesthetic induction: anesthetic gases flow from tissue into venous blood and then to the lungs. If P_{alv} is less than P_{MV}, then the net flow of anesthetic will be out of the blood and into alveoli, where it is subsequently exhaled. To achieve the fastest clearance possible, P_{circ} must therefore be as low as possible, and this is achieved using high flows of nonanesthetic carrier gases (oxygen and air) after discontinuing delivery of anesthetic. The same factors that affect transalveolar anesthetic exchange during induction will also affect clearance via this route. Increasing ventilation will accelerate clearance (see Fig. 20.4), whereas increased cardiac output slows clearance, because more gas-exchange volumes are required to remove anesthetic from the larger blood flow (see Fig. 20.5). Highly blood-soluble anesthetics, which increase the *effective* blood flow, clear more slowly than insoluble anesthetics (see Fig. 20.6). Return-to-consciousness, which usually occurs after P_{CNS} decreases below MAC-awake, is faster following desflurane or sevoflurane anesthesia than after isoflurane anesthesia. N_2O, which is characterized by blood solubility similar to that of desflurane, provides an even faster return to consciousness, because of two additional advantages. First, the concentration effect works in reverse during clearance of N_2O, increasing effective alveolar ventilation and maintaining the gradient for flow from pulmonary blood to alveoli. Second, MAC-awake for N_2O (0.71 atm at 40 years old) is near typical inhaled concentrations during general anesthesia; therefore, elimination of only a small fraction of this drug is associated with return to consciousness. This is also why N_2O as the sole hypnotic drug is associated with a high risk of intraoperative awareness, which can be prevented by using a balanced gas mixture of N_2O together with end-tidal concentrations of about 1 × MAC-awake of a second potent inhaled anesthetic.

Body composition has an increasing impact as the length of anesthetic exposure increases, especially for highly soluble anesthetics. Compared with standard models, patients with increased muscle or fat will have larger volumes of anesthetic drug distribution over time, resulting in slower clearance rates.[60] One important difference between anesthetic uptake and clearance is that although overpressure can be utilized to hasten uptake and induction of anesthesia, the vaporizer setting cannot be set to less than zero. As a consequence, the most readily modifiable factors to affect the rate of anesthetic clearance are fresh gas flow and MV. Indeed, after prolonged (>4 hours) exposure to 1 × MAC inhaled anesthesia, maintenance of adequate ventilation should be a high priority, even after end-tidal anesthetic concentrations reach MAC-awake. Hypoventilation in this

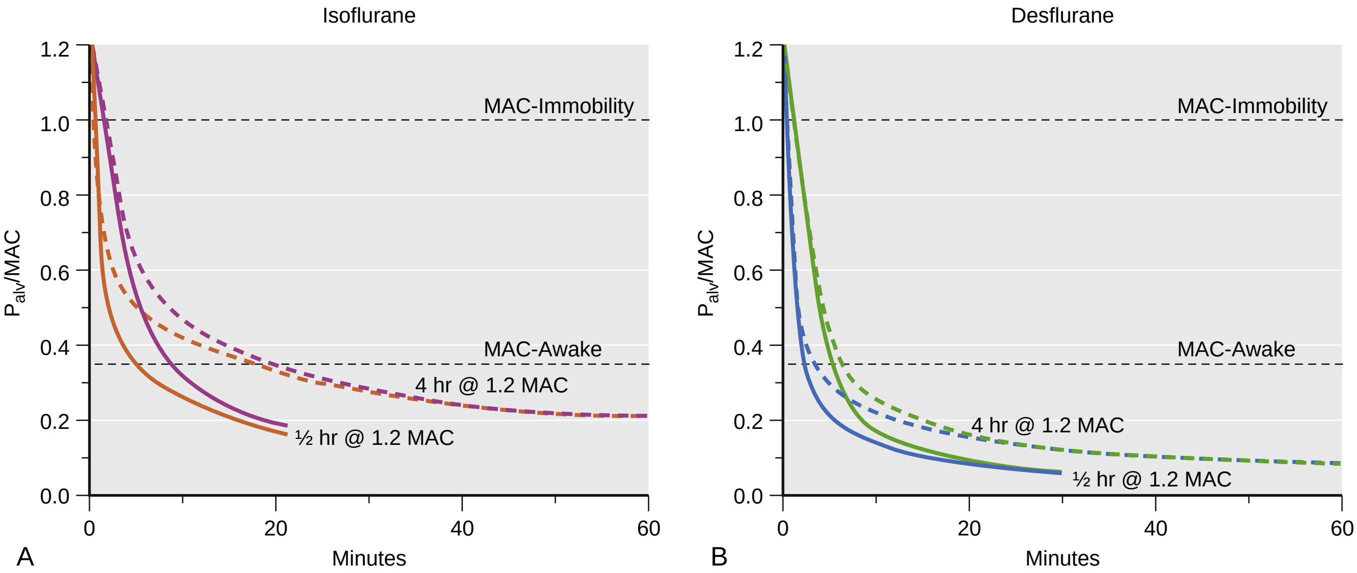


Fig. 20.13 Inhaled anesthetic wash-out and time to awakening depends on duration of anesthesia. The panels depict model calculations of P_{alv} and P_{CNS} normalized to MAC during wash-out at 10 L/min FGF and 5 L/min MV following anesthesia at approximately 1.2 × MAC-immobility for 30 minutes *(solid lines)* or 4 hours *(dashed lines)*. The MAC-awake (approximately 0.34 × MAC-immobility) is shown to indicate the threshold below which typical patients regain perceptive awareness after general anesthesia. Although P_{alv} drops earlier than P_{CNS}, the clinically relevant endpoint (return of consciousness) is predicted when P_{CNS} falls below MAC-awake. (A) Wash-out using a pharmacokinetic model for isoflurane (orange is P_{alv}, purple is P_{CNS}). The 30-minute isoflurane uptake was 990 mL of vapor, and the 4-hour isoflurane uptake was 3420 mL of vapor. Prolonged anesthesia with isoflurane dramatically increases the time required to wash-out sufficient drug to achieve awakening. After a 30-minute anesthetic, P_{CNS} (solid purple line) drops to MAC-awake in 9 minutes, whereas it takes more than 20 minutes of wash-out to reach the same P_{CNS} following a 4-hour anesthetic (dashed purple line). (B) Wash-out using a desflurane model (blue is P_{alv}, green is P_{CNS}). The 30-minute desflurane uptake was 1530 mL of vapor, and the 4-hour desflurane uptake was 4600 mL of vapor. The predicted times to awakening (solid versus dashed green lines reach MAC-awake at 5.2 and 6.3 minutes, respectively) are much closer following different durations of desflurane anesthesia, because of its low blood solubility. Clinical studies demonstrate that emergence and recovery (time to extubation) following isoflurane anesthesia nearly doubles when exposure increases from 20 to 75 minutes, whereas extubation is achieved in less than 10 minutes following desflurane anesthesia from 20 to 100 minutes' duration.[63] *FGF*, Fresh gas flow; *MAC*, minimum alveolar concentration; *MV*, minute ventilation; *P_{alv}*, Alveolar anesthetic partial pressure; *P_{CNS}*, anesthetic partial pressure in the central nervous system.

situation can result in reanesthetization caused by redistribution of anesthetic drug from muscle into blood and highly perfused tissues.[61]

Context Sensitive Recovery from Anesthesia

Although the concept of context sensitive half-time is typically applied to continuously infused anesthetics that distribute among multiple pharmacokinetic compartments, it also applies to inhaled anesthetics.[62] After a short period of inhalation and uptake, anesthetic clearance from blood is rapid through both exhalation and distribution to muscle and other tissues. As a result, P_{alv} decreases rapidly to a low value after discontinuing anesthetic delivery. After prolonged periods of inhalation and uptake, the anesthetic partial pressures in muscle and other compartments increase closer to that in blood, reducing the contribution of distributive clearance. Instead, clearance from the central blood compartment is slowed by the reverse flow of anesthetic from the high-capacity tissues. Thus, in comparison with a short period of inhalation, prolonged inhaled anesthesia is followed by a smaller initial decrease in P_{alv} and a more pronounced slow clearance phase, resulting in slower recovery from anesthesia (Fig. 20.13).[63] As with other factors, context sensitivity is exaggerated in highly soluble anesthetics, and it has less impact with anesthetics that display low blood and tissue solubilities.[63] The relative advantage of low blood solubility anesthetics increases with the duration of anesthesia. There is only a small (2.5 minutes) difference between predicted times to awakening after a short anesthetic with isoflurane versus desflurane, but significantly faster awakening can be achieved using the low-solubility drug for long cases.

Percutaneous and Visceral Anesthetic Loss

Aside from pulmonary exchange, some portion of inhaled anesthetics is lost by diffusion through other large area interfaces between the body and surrounding air. The skin surface area of an average human is about 2 m^2, and blood flow through skin during general anesthesia may be substantial because of inhibition of normal thermoregulatory vasoconstriction.[32] Nonetheless, transcutaneous losses of general anesthetics probably contribute negligibly to their clearance.[64,65] During open abdominal or thoracic surgery, visceral surfaces are also directly exposed to air, and under these circumstances, anesthetic losses via direct transfer and air movements are larger than those via skin, but still a small fraction of total clearance.[66]

Effect of the Anesthetic Circuit

As mentioned earlier, circuit components, including tubing, connectors, manual ventilation bag, and CO_2 absorbent material, absorb inhaled anesthetics, effectively creating another compartment that fills while anesthetic is flowing, and needs to be emptied during wash-out.[19] Low-level release of anesthetic gases from these components can continue for a considerable time.

Clearance via Metabolism of Anesthetics

Metabolism of inhaled anesthetics in tissues, particularly liver, contributes a variable degree to drug clearance. Metabolism of inhaled anesthetics is reviewed in detail in the second part of this chapter (see section on "Metabolism and Toxicity of Inhaled Anesthetics"). Methoxyflurane, a drug that is no longer in clinical use, and halothane, an older drug that is rarely used in the United States, are highly metabolized inhaled anesthetics. Methoxyflurane undergoes extensive metabolism in humans, with only 19% of an inhaled dose recovered in exhaled gases.[67] Approximately 20% to 25% of inhaled halothane is metabolized through biotransformation in the liver. A high rate of metabolism will reduce the anesthetic partial pressure in tissues, resulting in reduced P_{MV} and increased rates of overall anesthetic clearance. Tissue-dependent breakdown contributes less to clearance of newer inhaled anesthetics.

Additional Considerations and Possibilities

Modern inhaled anesthetics like sevoflurane and desflurane have low blood solubility, and therefore provide a distinct advantage for both anesthetic induction and recovery from anesthesia. However, they present no advantage over older drugs like isoflurane for maintenance of anesthesia during long cases and are far more expensive. What if anesthesia is induced with one drug, followed by a switch to isoflurane during the maintenance period, and then switched back to the more soluble drug, such as desflurane, for a period preceding emergence? This might allow for more rapid induction and wakeup than with isoflurane alone. Although a fast wakeup can be achieved by allowing sufficient time for near total washout of isoflurane and its replacement with desflurane, this type of crossover requires significant lead time and high fresh gas flows. As an illustration, Neumann and colleagues[68] compared 2-hour anesthetics at 1.25 × MAC (2 L/min FGF) with isoflurane alone, desflurane alone, or isoflurane with a crossover to desflurane during the last half hour. Although subjects awoke faster with desflurane alone, the crossover strategy did not result in acceleration of wakeup compared to isoflurane alone.

Diffusion Hypoxia

Diffusion hypoxia is another sequelae of rapid outgassing from the tissues of patients anesthetized with N_2O. During the initial 5 to 10 minutes after discontinuation of anesthesia, the flow of N_2O from blood into the alveoli can be several liters per minute, resulting in dilution of alveolar oxygen.[69] Another effect of rapid outgassing is reduction of alveolar P_{CO_2}, which may also reduce respiratory drive.[70] If the patient does not receive supplemental oxygen during this period, then the combined effects of respiratory depression from anesthesia, reduced alveolar P_{CO_2}, and reduced alveolar P_{O_2} can result in hypoventilation and oxyhemoglobin desaturation. This outcome is avoided by routinely providing supplemental O_2 for the first 5 to 10 minutes of recovery, together with vigilant attention to respiration and oxygenation.

Metabolism and Toxicity of Inhaled Anesthetics

This portion of the chapter focuses on adverse effects that are attributable to inhaled anesthetics, excluding most of the acutely reversible pharmacodynamic effects of inhaled anesthetics on various physiologic systems (see Chapters 11, 14, and 21).

The inhaled anesthetics are a unique group of drugs that can both enter and leave the body unchanged through the lungs. Thus chemical transformation of inhaled anesthetics is unrelated to their therapeutic activities such as amnesia, hypnosis, and immobilization. Nonetheless, the carbon-halogen and other bonds of volatile alkanes and ethers can break down under certain conditions: biotransformation by enzymes in various tissues, reactions with strong bases in CO_2 absorbents, and exposure to ultraviolet radiation in the environment. Anesthetic breakdown resulting from decomposition in tissues or the breathing circuit can produce toxic reactive intermediates, which in sufficient amounts can harm patients directly or indirectly. N_2O gas is not biotransformed, but selectively reacts with and inactivates vitamin B_{12} and perturbs B_{12}-dependent biochemical pathways. The breakdown of waste anesthetics in the atmosphere also has potential environmental and health consequences. There are potential long-term neurotoxic effects of anesthetic exposure in patients that are not associated with chemical breakdown. Potential neurotoxic properties of inhaled anesthetics are further described in Chapters 78 and 84.

BIOTRANSFORMATION OF INHALED ANESTHETICS

The extent and location of inhaled anesthetic metabolism depends on multiple chemical factors. Inhaled anesthetics undergo varying degrees of biotransformation (Table 20.3)[71] in various tissues. Methoxyflurane undergoes by far the greatest metabolism, estimated at 70%, and experiments indicate that only a small fraction of drug taken up into body tissues is exhaled.[67] Given the remarkable lipophilicity of methoxyflurane, respiratory clearance of this drug from muscle and fat extends over a period of days (see Tables 20.1 and 20.2). Halothane is the next most lipophilic drug and ranks second in metabolic clearance (see Table 20.3).[72-96] Thus prolonged residence in body tissues is an important factor in biotransformation of inhaled anesthetics. Chemical stability is another important factor. Isoflurane is an isomer of enflurane, and the two drugs display comparable respiratory uptake, distribution, and respiratory clearance. Nonetheless, isoflurane is metabolized only one tenth as much as enflurane. Although sevoflurane and desflurane represent another pair of anesthetics, both are characterized by rapid uptake, distribution, and respiratory clearance with 5% of sevoflurane biotransformed versus 0.02% of desflurane.

Of the major organs involved in anesthetic biotransformation, the liver and kidneys are exposed to the highest metabolite concentrations and thus are also most susceptible to damage from toxic metabolites. Clinically significant hepatotoxicity is primarily associated with exposure to halothane, and nephrotoxicity is associated with methoxyflurane.[71] Investigations into the mechanisms of these toxicities have influenced drug development and also provided important insights into human toxicology.[97]

TABLE 20.3 Metabolism of Halogenated Volatile Anesthetics

Anesthetic	Halothane	Methoxyflurane	Enflurane	Isoflurane	Desflurane	Sevoflurane
Extent of tissue metabolism (%)	25	70	2.5	0.2	0.02	5
Oxidizing enzymes	CYP2E1 CYP2A6	CYP2E1 CYP1A2, 2C9/10, 2D6	CYP2E1	CYP2E1	CYP2E1	CYP2E1
Oxidative metabolites	$F_3C-COOH$ HBr, HCl	$H_3C-O-CF_2-COOH$ $HCl_2C-COOH$ HOOC-COOH HF, HCl	$HF_2C-O-CF_2-COOH$ HCl, HF	$HF_2C-O-CO-CF_3$ $F_3C-COOH$ CF_2HOH HCl	$HF_2C-O-CO-CF_3$ $F_3C-COOH$ CF_2HOH HF	$HO-CH(CF_3)_2$ HF
Trifuoroacetylated hepatocellular proteins	+++++	n/a	++	+	+	none
Reducing enzymes	CYP2A6 CYP3A4	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	
Reductive metabolites	F^-, Br^- $F_2C=CHCl$ F_3C-CH_2Cl					
Tissue toxicities	Hepatic	Renal Hepatic	Renal Hepatic	Hepatic	Hepatic	Hepatic
Fulminant hepatitis incidence	1:20,000	Reported, incidence unknown	1:300,000	rare	rare	Few case reports
References	72-76	77-80	81-85	84,86-88	89-92	78,93-96

The plus signs indicate relative degree of protein modification. n/a, the specific enzymes are not identified in these cases. Kharasch ED. Adverse drug reactions with halogenated anesthetics. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2008;84:158–162.

Biotransformation in the Liver

The liver is the major site of metabolism for most drugs, particularly lipophilic drugs, which typically are transformed into hydrophilic metabolites that are more readily excreted. The liver is large and contains high concentrations of many drug-metabolizing enzymes. Other organs that contribute to drug metabolism and clearance include the gastrointestinal tract, kidneys, and lungs.[98,99] Drug biotransformation reactions include oxidation, hydrolysis, and conjugation. A single drug may be transformed into several metabolites, depending on the relative rates of various enzyme reactions, the drug concentration in different tissues expressing relevant enzymes, competition at enzyme sites with other drugs or endogenous substances, and other factors. Oxidation and hydrolysis are also known as *phase 1 reactions*, and they result in the introduction or exposure of a polar group on the drug. The phase 1 enzymes that metabolize inhaled anesthetics in the liver are various cytochrome P450 (CYP) isoforms in the endoplasmic reticulum of hepatocytes. These catalyze oxidation reactions such as dehalogenation, N- and O-dealkylation, N- and S-oxidation, and deamination. These reactions require oxygen and NADPH-dependent cytochrome P450 reductase as cofactors. Under hypoxic conditions, some P450 enzymes can also catalyze reductive reactions. More than 50 CYP isoforms are active in humans, and CYP3A4 and CYP3A5 are the most abundant. Conjugations are also known as *phase 2 reactions*, and they often append highly polar groups such as glucuronic acid, sulfate, or glycine to polar groups on phase 1 metabolites. The resulting hydrophilic products are readily excreted in urine via the kidneys or in bile via the gastrointestinal tract. N-Acetylation reactions are an exception that result in metabolites that are less water-soluble than the parent drug.

Many factors affect hepatic drug metabolism, including concomitant drugs, disease, age, and genetics.[100] Induction and inhibition of enzymes are associated with exposure to certain drugs or other exogenous substances. Induction of specific CYP isoforms is a gene-mediated response to chronic exposure to substances that often are substrates of the enzyme, resulting in accelerated enzyme production or slowed turnover. For example, phenobarbital use results in increased production of CYP3A4 as well as NADPH-cytochrome P450 reductase, leading to dramatically increased metabolism of all CYP3A4 substrates. Enhanced metabolism can reduce drug efficacy (and therefore is one mechanism of drug tolerance) or, in cases of prodrug transformation to active metabolites, increased efficacy. If metabolites are toxic, as is the case with VAs, enhanced metabolism may increase toxicity. Conversely, CYP inhibition leads to enhanced activity of parent drugs and reduced metabolite effects. CYP enzyme inhibition is associated with hepatic disease and exposure to certain substances. An important example is CYP3A4 inhibition by grapefruit juice.[100] Regarding VAs, the major oxidative enzyme CYP2E1 is inducible by ethanol and isoniazid and is inhibited by disulfiram.[101] Diseases such as hepatitis, various cirrhotic diseases, and hepatocarcinoma can also reduce enzymatic activity, as can cardiac failure with reduced hepatic perfusion.

Neonates have different dominant CYP isoforms than adults. Impaired hepatic metabolism is common in premature and full-term infants, notably in bilirubin glucuronidation, leading to hyperbilirubinemia of the newborn.[102,103] Pharmacogenomics is a growing area of pharmacologic research that has linked variable drug metabolism to genetic variability. A well-established example in anesthesiology is homozygous inheritance of atypical butyrylcholinesterase,

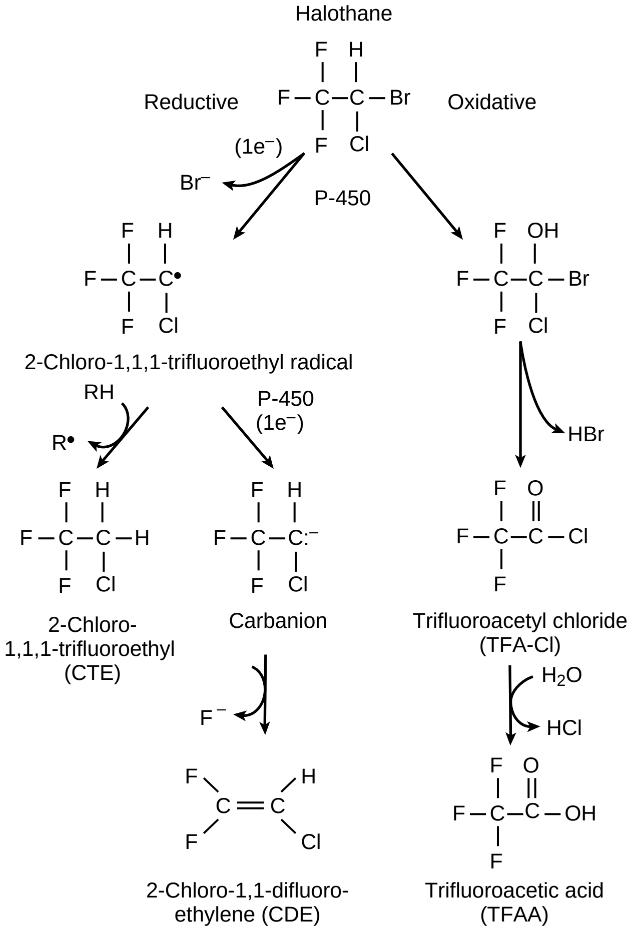

Halothane
Reductive
Oxidative
(1e⁻)
Br⁻
P-450
2-Chloro-1,1,1-trifluoroethyl radical
RH
R•
P-450
(1e⁻)
HBr
2-Chloro-1,1,1-trifluoroethyl (CTE)
Carbanion
Trifluoroacetyl chloride (TFA-Cl)
F⁻
H2O
HCl
2-Chloro-1,1-difluoroethylene (CDE)
Trifluoroacetic acid (TFAA)

Fig. 20.14 Oxidative and reductive metabolism of halothane. Major products of hepatic CYP2E1 catalyzed halothane metabolism are shown. Under normal conditions, 24% of halothane undergoes oxidative metabolism, and 1% undergoes reductive metabolism.

resulting in slow hydrolysis of succinylcholine.[104] Genetic variations in CYP2D6 have clarified the basis for widely varying efficacies and toxicities of codeine (a prodrug), metoprolol, nortriptyline, dextromethorphan, and other substrate drugs.[105]

Hepatic CYP2E1 is particularly important in the oxidative metabolism of halogenated inhaled anesthetics (see Table 20.3). Under conditions of systemic hypoxia or decreased blood flow, or in liver regions of low P_{O_2}, CYP2A6 and CYP3A4 catalyze breakdown of VAs via reductive pathways. Halothane metabolism is primarily oxidative, and under normal conditions, about 1% of halothane undergoes reductive metabolism. Oxidative metabolism of halothane releases chloride and bromide ions, resulting in trifluoroacetyl chloride, which reacts with water to form trifluoroacetic acid (Fig. 20.14). Reductive metabolism of halothane results initially in loss of bromide, and the intermediate either reacts with a hydrogen donor to form 2-chloro-1,1,1-trifluoroethane or captures an electron, further reducing the carbon-carbon bond to form 2-chloro-1,1-difluoroethylene (see Fig. 20.14). Halothane reduces hepatic blood flow and can cause hepatocellular hypoxia in some regions in the liver, potentially leading to an increase in its reductive metabolism.[71] All of the ether anesthetics undergo similar oxidative metabolism catalyzed by CYP2E1 (see Table 20.3, Fig. 20.15). Oxidative metabolism of these drugs results in the release of fluoride (F^-) and chloride (Cl^-) ions and the formation of reactive intermediates that react with water to form carboxylic acids. Isoflurane and desflurane both produce trifluoroacetic acid, whereas enflurane forms 2-difluoromethoxy-2,2-difluoroacetic acid. Oxidative metabolism of methoxyflurane may follow several paths, releasing either Cl^- or F^- in sequential steps and producing methoxy-difluoroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, and acetic acid (see Table 20.3).

Halothane Hepatotoxicity

The first modern halogenated VA, halothane, was introduced in 1955. Clinical exposure to halothane is associated with two distinct types of hepatic injury.[76,106,107] Subclinical hepatotoxicity occurs in 20% of adults who receive halothane. It is characterized by mild postoperative elevations in alanine aminotransferase (ALT) and aspartate aminotransferase (AST), but is reversible and innocuous. Anaerobic halothane reduction by CYP2A6 to a 2-chloro-1,1,1-trifluoroethyl radical (see Fig. 20.14) is thought to mediate this mild hepatic injury.[72] The fulminant form of hepatotoxicity, commonly known as halothane hepatitis, is characterized by elevated ALT, AST, bilirubin, and alkaline phosphatase levels, and massive hepatic necrosis following the administration of halothane. Halothane hepatitis is rare (1 in 5000-35,000 administrations in adults) but is fatal in between 50% to 75% of cases. Because of the potential for fatal hepatitis, halothane is no longer used in adult patients in most countries.

Halothane hepatitis is caused by a hypersensitivity reaction associated with oxidative metabolism of halothane. The highly reactive trifluoroacetyl chloride metabolite of halothane oxidation can react with nearby liver proteins (see Table 20.3). In most patients who developed hepatic necrosis after halothane anesthesia, antibodies against trifluoroacetyl-modified proteins were detected, suggesting that the hepatic damage is linked to an immune response against the modified protein, which acts as a neoantigen (Fig. 20.16). Accordingly, patients who develop halothane hepatitis often have a history of prior exposures to halothane or other VAs, together with symptoms suggestive of immune reactivity, such as fever, rash, arthralgia, and eosinophilia.[75] It is hypothesized that trifluoroacetyl-protein adducts induce a cytotoxic T-cell reaction in sensitized individuals, which leads to liver damage.[76] However, definitive evidence that liver injury is immune-mediated in halothane hepatitis is lacking.

Hepatotoxicity and massive hepatic necrosis after halothane anesthesia also occurs in children. However, two large retrospective studies have demonstrated that the clinical syndrome of halothane hepatitis is even more rare in pediatric patients (1 in 80,000-200,000) than in adults.[108-110] Halothane is metabolized to a similar degree in adults and children, and children are immune competent from birth. Pediatric cases of halothane hepatitis are also associated with multiple anesthetic exposures, suggesting a mechanism similar to that in adults. Why the incidence of halothane hepatitis is significantly higher in the adult population remains unknown.

Other VAs including enflurane, isoflurane, and desflurane have also been associated with fulminant hepatic necrosis,[92,111-115] but compared with halothane, the incidence of

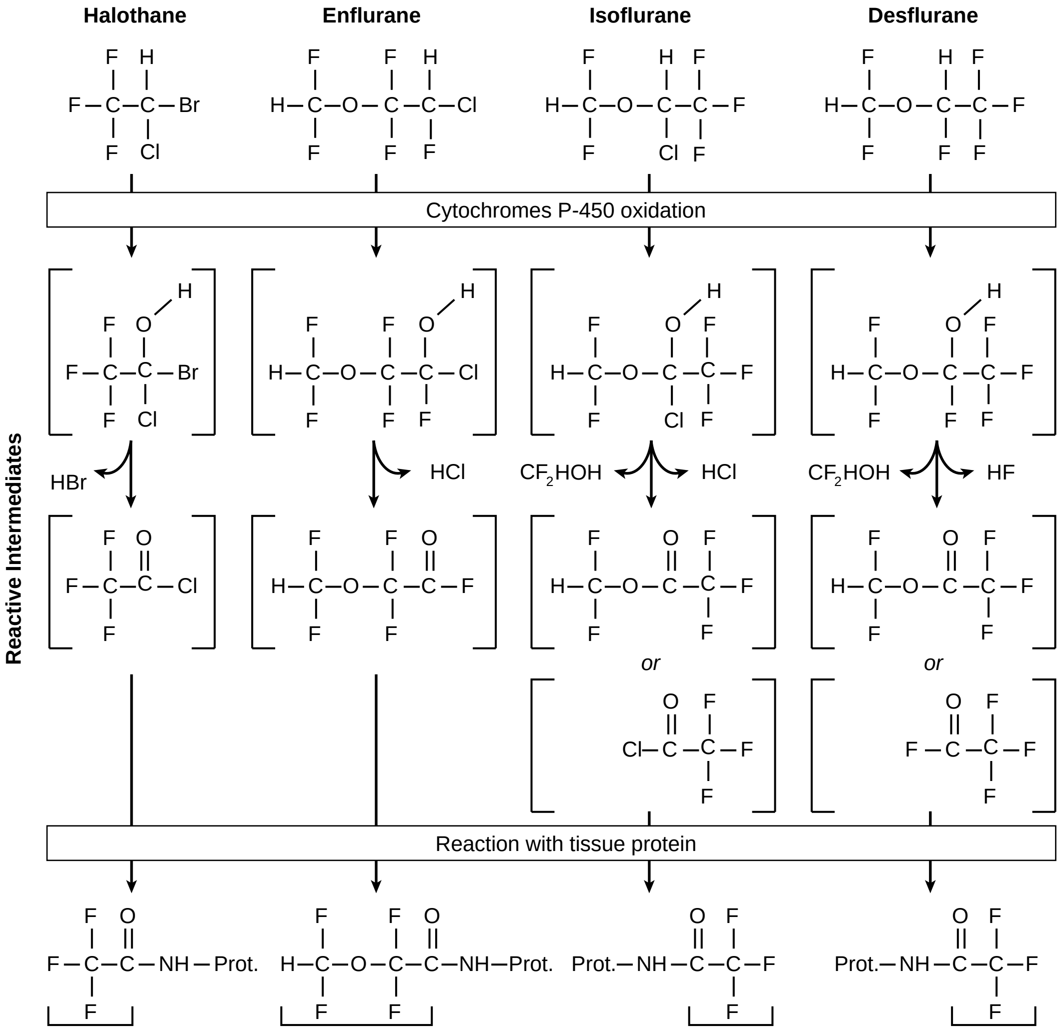

Halothane
Enflurane
Isoflurane
Desflurane
Cytochromes P-450 oxidation
Reactive Intermediates
HBr
HCl
CF_2HOH
HCl
CF_2HOH
HF
or
or
Reaction with tissue protein
Prot.

Fig. 20.15 Proposed pathways for inhaled anesthetic metabolism to reactive intermediates. CYP2E1 catalyzes oxidative metabolism of halothane, enflurane, isoflurane, and desflurane to a variety of reactive intermediates that can form adducts with hepatocellular proteins. Trifluoroacetylated proteins are identical after halothane, isoflurane, and desflurane, whereas adducts following enflurane are immunologically similar.

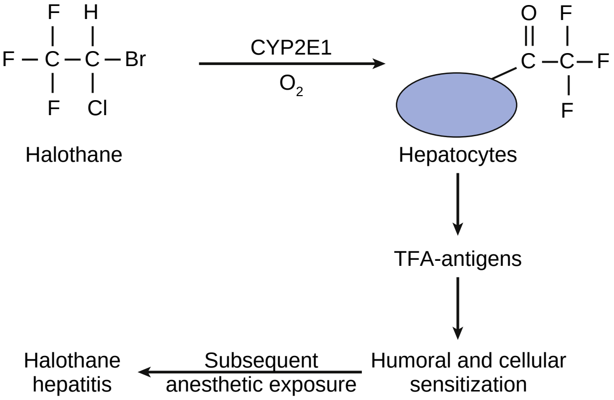

Halothane
CYP2E1
O_2
Hepatocytes
TFA-antigens
Humoral and cellular sensitization
Subsequent anesthetic exposure
Halothane hepatitis

Fig. 20.16 Pathways generating the immune response after exposure to inhaled anesthetics. Halothane is metabolized to a reactive trifluoroacetyl intermediate that forms an amide bond with hepatocellular proteins. The altered protein triggers an immune response, which on subsequent exposure to anesthetic results in hepatocellular damage and necrosis. A similar process may ensue after exposure to other fluorinated drugs metabolized to similar halo-acyl intermediates. TFA, Trifluoroacetic acid. (Modified from Njoku D, Laster MJ, Gong DH, et al. Biotransformation of halothane, endflurane, isoflurane and desflurane to trifluoroacetylated liver proteins: association between protein acylation and liver injury. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:173–178.)

this potentially fatal toxicity is very rare after administration of these newer VAs. The mechanism of severe hepatitis following enflurane, isoflurane, and desflurane may be the same as for halothane, because all of these drugs are oxidatively metabolized to highly reactive intermediates that can covalently modify hepatic proteins (see Fig. 20.15). As with halothane, case investigations usually reveal that patients have had prior exposure to VAs, and antibodies to modified hepatic proteins can be detected. The extremely infrequent incidence of severe hepatitis for modern VAs is likely because of their lower degree of oxidative metabolism and subsequent immune sensitization. In fact, hepatitis was also commonly reported soon after introduction of methoxyflurane, another anesthetic that is mostly metabolized to highly reactive acidic intermediates.[77,116] Unlike all other VAs, sevoflurane is oxidized at the fluoromethoxy C-H bond and forms hexafluoroisopropanol and inorganic F^- (see Table 20.3; Fig. 20.17).[117,118] Hexafluoroisopropanol is relatively stable, and modified liver proteins are not formed after sevoflurane anesthesia. Cases of hepatitis and rapid death after sevoflurane anesthesia have been reported, but there was no evidence of an immune-mediated mechanism.[96]

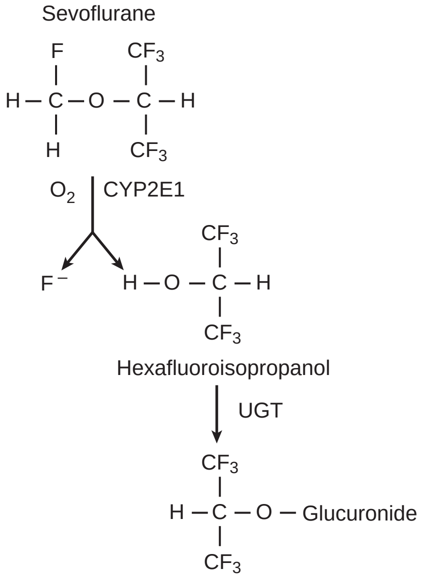


Fig. 20.17 Metabolic oxidation of Sevoflurane. CYP2E1 catalyzes phase 1 defluorination of sevoflurane, forming hexafluoroisopropanol. Phase 2 glucuronidation is catalyzed by uridine 5′-diphosphate glucuronosyltransferase (UGT).

Biotransformation in Kidneys

The kidneys are large organs that receive high blood flow. Renal physiologic activities include glomerular filtration of water-soluble metabolites, reabsorption of water and essential metabolites, urinary excretion of waste, and regulation of hormones involved in vascular tone (renin) and water balance (aldosterone). The kidneys clear most of the water-soluble metabolites resulting from biotransformation of inhaled anesthetics. Kidneys also contain CYP enzymes, including CYP2E1, that catalyze both phase 1 and phase 2 reactions and are therefore additional sites where inhaled anesthetic metabolism occurs. As in the liver, various CYPs in renal parenchyma may undergo induction or inhibition by exogenous substances.[119-122]

Fluoride-Associated Nephrotoxicity

The first modern halogenated ether anesthetic, methoxyflurane was introduced in 1959. Methoxyflurane causes polyuric renal insufficiency and is no longer used in clinical practice.[123] The nephrotoxic effect of methoxyflurane is attributed to inorganic fluoride (F^-) released during its metabolism. Investigations have provided significant insights into potential nephrotoxic mechanisms by fluorinated VAs and have influenced the development of subsequent halogenated anesthetic agents.

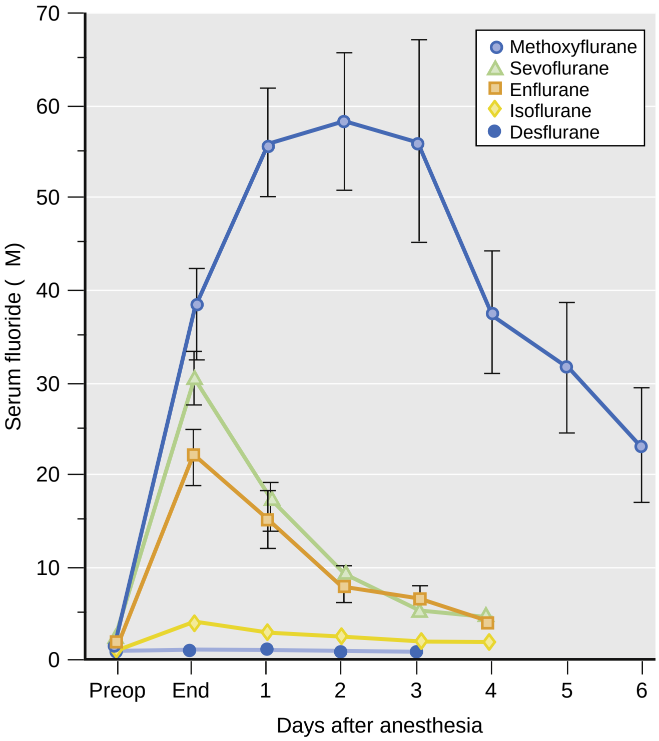


Fig. 20.18 Serum inorganic fluoride (F^-) exposure during and after methoxyflurane anesthesia is much greater than with other anesthetics. Points represent serum F^- measurements (mean ± SD) from multiple subjects. After 2 to 3 MAC-hours of methoxyflurane anesthesia, F^- rises during and after drug administration ends, peaks above 60 μmol/L on postanesthesia days 2 and 3, then declines slowly, remaining elevated for more than 1 week. Sevoflurane anesthesia (3.7 MAC-hours) produces an early peak F^- concentration averaging 31 μmol/L, which declines over 3 to 4 days. Enflurane anesthesia (2.7 MAC-hours) results in an early average peak of 22 μmol/L that declines in 3 to 4 days. Isoflurane and desflurane result in small and negligible rises in serum F^- concentrations. Only methoxyflurane is associated with fluoride-associated renal toxicity. *MAC*, Minimum alveolar concentration (immobility).

Absorbed methoxyflurane undergoes extensive biotransformation,[67] including cytochrome-catalyzed oxidation that releases inorganic fluoride ions (F^-) into blood. Animal studies provide clear evidence of the nephrotoxicity of methoxyflurane, which includes a strong relationship between methoxyflurane dose and renal injury,[124] increased nephrotoxicity with induction of CYP enzymes,[125,126] and decreased nephrotoxicity with inhibition of methoxyflurane metabolism.[84,127] Clinical data further indicate that severity of nephrotoxicity and mortality are associated with high plasma fluoride concentrations after methoxyflurane anesthesia.[128,129] Patients with serum inorganic fluoride levels below 50 μM had no evidence of renal injury, whereas patients with postmethoxyflurane serum F^- greater than 50 μM suffered high rates of renal dysfunction and increased mortality.[79,130] Moreover, serum F^- concentrations were significantly higher after the administration of methoxyflurane than with other halogenated VAs, which are not associated with nephrotoxicity (Fig. 20.18). Inorganic fluoride released during methoxyflurane metabolism probably causes renal injury, and the nephrotoxic threshold for plasma F^- is approximately 50 μM. Individual variability among patients in the degree of apparent renal injury after methoxyflurane exposure was observed. Genetic heterogeneity, drug interactions, and preexisting renal disease likely account for these differences.

Since the introduction of methoxyflurane, all prospective halogenated anesthetic agents have been extensively tested experimentally and clinically for their degree of defluorination and the resulting serum F^- concentrations. However, experience with newer drugs, particularly with sevoflurane, has caused investigators to reexamine the classical fluoride-induced nephrotoxicity hypothesis. Sevoflurane was initially synthesized in the 1970s, but because of its relatively large defluorination rate (2%-5%), its introduction into clinical practice was delayed. It was first widely used

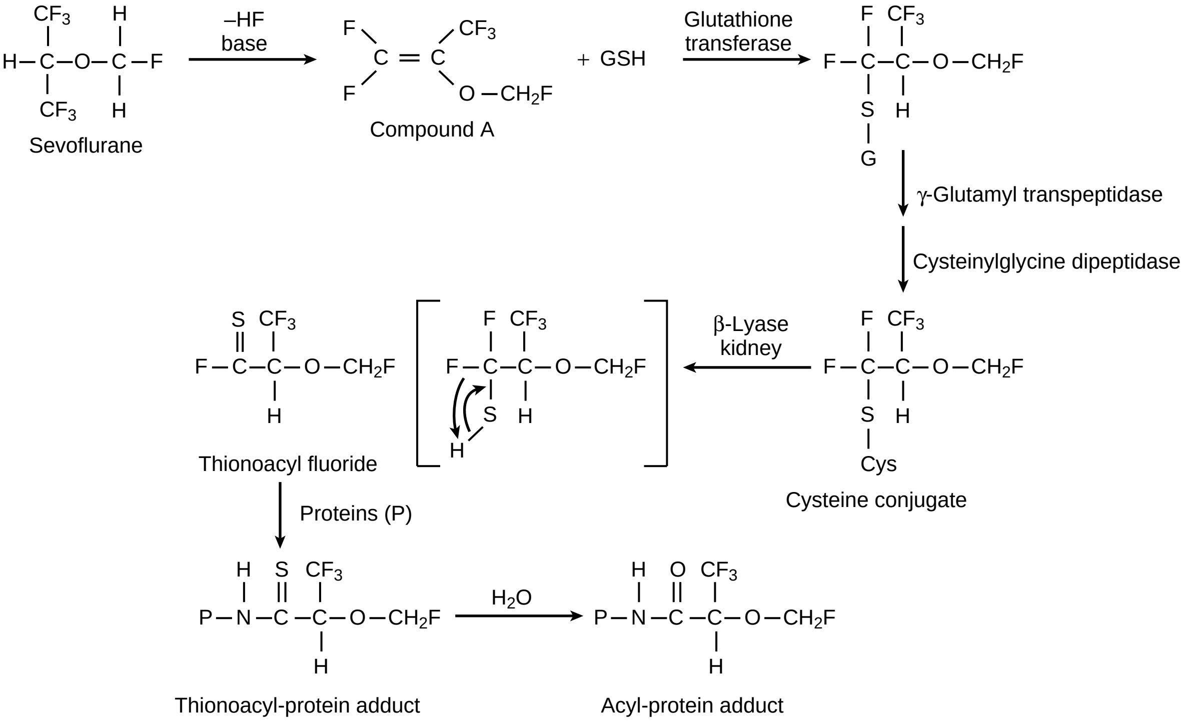


Fig. 20.19 Proposed pathway mediating nephrotoxic effects of compound A in rodents. Sevoflurane degrades to compound A in the presence of strong base in some CO_2 absorbent materials. Compound A itself is not nephrotoxic but undergoes hepatic S-conjugation with glutathione. In the kidney, additional metabolic steps produce a S-cysteine compound A conjugate, which is metabolized by β-lyase to a reactive thionoacyl fluoride that is proposed to damage proteins essential for kidney function. Humans have very low β-lyase activity, which is hypothetically the basis for the lack of reported nephrotoxicity in patients. *CO_2*, Carbon dioxide; *GSH*, glutathione; *HF*, hydrofluoric acid. (Adapted from Martin JL, Kandel L, Laster MJ, et al. Studies of the mechanism of nephrotoxicity of compound A in rats. *J Anesth*. 1997;11:32–37.)

in Japan in 1990. Subsequent clinical studies demonstrated no clinically significant nephrotoxicity after the administration of sevoflurane, even when the high peak blood F^- concentrations greater than 50 μM were confirmed.[117] Typical peak fluoride concentrations after 2 to 3 MAC-hours of sevoflurane anesthesia are 20 to 30 μM, and less than 5 μM after isoflurane and desflurane (see Fig. 20.18). Enflurane metabolism also often results in peak blood F^- concentrations greater than 20 μM. Isoflurane and desflurane are minimally metabolized and produce lower plasma fluoride concentrations. However, none of these anesthetics is associated with clinically significant renal toxicity, suggesting that methoxyflurane is unique in its ability to harm kidneys. One important difference between methoxyflurane and current VAs is its extreme lipophilicity and extremely long residence time in tissues. This results in prolonged elevated F^- concentrations in blood (see Fig. 20.18), suggesting that the length of F^- exposure is a key risk factor. However, prolonged moderate elevations of plasma fluoride (25-38 μM) during several days of isoflurane anesthesia without adverse renal effects have been documented.[131,132] Thus neither the peak level nor the duration of high plasma fluoride concentration entirely explains the nephrotoxic effects by the halogenated anesthetics. It is also not clear whether the integrated concentration multiplied by time exposure to inorganic F^- represents the key risk factor. However, methoxyflurane is metabolized to a large extent within kidney parenchyma, producing high intrarenal inorganic fluoride concentrations (likely much higher than those measured in blood), which are proposed to cause renal injury.[78,80] Thus, compared with methoxyflurane, the absence of renal toxicity with newer volatile halogenated agents likely derives from a combination of factors: (1) their lower tissue solubilities, particularly in kidney (see Table 20.2), resulting in lower intrarenal fluoride production; (2) lower overall degrees of biotransformation; and (3) more rapid respiratory clearance from the body.

ANESTHETIC DEGRADATION IN CARBON DIOXIDE ABSORBENTS

Sevoflurane, Compound A, and Renal Toxicity

Halogenated anesthetics can undergo chemical breakdown while interacting with carbon dioxide (CO_2) absorbents that contain strong bases such as sodium hydroxide (NaOH) and potassium hydroxide (KOH), which are present in soda lime and Baralyme.[133] Strong bases extract a proton from the isopropyl group of sevoflurane, primarily forming a haloalkene [fluoromethyl-2,2-difluoro-1-(trifluoromethyl) vinyl ether], known as *compound A* (Fig. 20.19). Compound A is volatile and can be absorbed via alveolar gas exchange. Compound A exposure is nephrotoxic in laboratory animals, causing proximal tubular necrosis and, with sufficient exposure, death. In rats, renal injury is observed with cumulative exposure to compound A above 150 parts per million (ppm)-hours (e.g., 50 ppm inhalation for 3 hours).[134,135] Moderately severe but reversible histopathologic damage was found in rats after 200 ppm-hour exposure, associated with increased blood and urea nitrogen (BUN), creatinine, and other measures of renal damage. Compound A exposure over 1000 ppm-hours is lethal in half of exposed rats.

Patients receiving sevoflurane anesthesia are routinely exposed to compound A in rebreathing circuits, and the inhaled concentration is dependent on the fresh gas flow rate and the type of CO_2 absorbent present. Fresh gas flows of 1 L/min result in maximal compound A concentrations around 20 ppm with soda lime and 30 ppm with Baralyme.[136] Higher FGF rates result in less compound A accumulation in the breathing circuit. However, compound A exposure is not associated with clinically significant nephrotoxicity in humans. There is no threshold exposure level known to cause more than subclinical renal damage. Numerous studies in which human subjects or patients were exposed to more than 200 ppm-hours of compound A have reported that clinical measures of renal function (BUN, creatinine, urinary protein or glucose, and urine concentrating ability) and laboratory tests for subtle renal damage (N-acetyl-β-glucoaminidase, alanine aminopeptidase, γ-GTP, and β2-microglobulin) remain unchanged.[81,86,137-139] Kharasch and colleagues[140] compared the effects of low-flow sevoflurane and isoflurane anesthesia in patients with stable renal insufficiency, and found no significant difference in postoperative renal function tests. Other studies have reported normal BUN and creatinine, but transient reversible abnormalities in other renal function test values following prolonged sevoflurane anesthesia at low FGF (>330 ppm-hour compound A exposure in one study).[141-144]

The evidence of nephrotoxicity in rats compared with the remarkably benign results in humans suggests that mechanisms of sevoflurane metabolism and toxicity differ between these species. The difference in the nephrotoxic effects of compound A between humans and rats may be attributed to the doses of compound A, interspecies differences in metabolic toxification, and sensitivity of the proximal tubular cells to compound A cytotoxicity.[71] Detailed studies show that in rats, compound A undergoes S-conjugation to cysteine, and that the resulting cysteine conjugate is metabolized by renal β-lyase to form a reactive thionoacyl fluoride intermediate that acylates proteins and has been proposed to mediate the nephrotoxic effect (see Fig. 20.19).[133,145] Human kidneys have far lower β-lyase activity than rat kidneys, accounting for the differential toxicity of compound A in the two species. Experiments testing whether inhibition of β-lyase with aminooxy-acetic acid (AOAA) protects rats from compound A nephrotoxicity have had mixed results.[146,147] Alternative mechanisms underlying compound A toxicity have been proposed, including formation of reactive sulfoxides catalyzed by CYP3A isozymes,[148] which are also more active in rat than human kidneys.

Although the mechanism underlying compound A toxicity in laboratory animals remains uncertain, the lack of significant sevoflurane nephrotoxicity in human clinical data is reassuring. Compound A exposure can be limited by careful selection of fresh gas flows, vaporizer output, and CO_2 absorbent materials. The use of 2 L/min fresh gas flows assures that for the vast majority of patients, exposure to compound A will be below the most conservative threshold for nephrotoxicity. Although clinical studies indicate that sevoflurane is most likely safe, even in patients with preexisting renal dysfunction, the drug should be administered in accordance with the approved package labeling guidelines.

Like sevoflurane, halothane degrades in the presence of CO_2 absorbents to form a reactive intermediate, bromochlorodifluoroethylene (BCDFE),[133] which has also been investigated as a possible nephrotoxin. Eger and colleagues[149] found that in comparison to compound A, BCDFE accumulates 20- to 40-fold less in breathing circuits and is 4-fold less reactive. Thus the risk of BCDFE nephrotoxicity is negligible.

TABLE 20.4 Composition of Base Chemicals and Water Content of Carbon Dioxide Absorbents

CO_2 absorbent	$Ca(OH)_2$ (%)	$Ba(OH)_2$ (%)	KOH (%)	NaOH (%)	LiOH (%)	H_2O (%)
Baralyme*	70	10	4.6	–	–	14
Soda lime I	80	–	2.6	1.3	–	15
Sodasorb	90	–	0.0005	3.8	–	16
Drägersorb 800 plus	82	–	0.003	2	–	16
Soda lime II/ Medisorb	81	–	0.003	2.6	–	16
Spherasorb	84.5	–	0.003	1.5	–	14
Amsorb	83.2	–	–	–	–	14.4
LofloSorb	84	–	–	–	–	16
Superia	79.5	–	–	–	–	17.5
Lithium hydroxide	–	–	–	–	99	1

*Baralyme was withdrawn from the market in 2004.

Various absorbents also contain other components, such as polyvinylpyrrolidine, calcium chloride, calcium sulfate, magnesium chloride, and aluminosilicate.

Data from Keijzer C, Perez RS, de Lange JJ. Compound A and carbon monoxide production from sevoflurane and seven different types of carbon dioxide absorbent in a patient model. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51:31–37, and Kharasch ED, Powers KM, Artru AA. Comparison of Amsorb, sodalime, and Baralyme degradation of volatile anesthetics and formation of carbon monoxide and compound A in swine in vivo. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:173–182.

Carbon Monoxide and Heat

In the presence of strong bases in dry CO_2 absorbents (water content <5%), some halogenated VAs undergo degradation, resulting in the formation of CO, trifluoromethane (CF_3H), and hydrogen fluoride (HF).[133] The factors that determine the amount of CO produced include the chemical makeup of CO_2 absorbent (KOH > NaOH >> $Ba(OH)_2$, $Ca(OH)_2$), dryness of the absorbent material, the concentration of volatile agent, and its chemical structure.[150] Baralyme contains 4.6% KOH, whereas soda lime contains 2.5% KOH and 1.3% NaOH, and reacts less vigorously with halogenated anesthetics. The relatively weak bases $Ba(OH)_2$ and $Ca(OH)_2$ are other major constituents in CO_2 absorbents, and do not catalyze CO formation (Table 20.4).[136,151] The anesthetics that contain a difluoromethyl group (difluoromethyl-ethyl ethers) are most susceptible to this degradation, and for these drugs CO production correlates with anesthetic concentration in the breathing circuit (desflurane > enflurane > isoflurane)[152] (Fig. 20.20).[152] Sevoflurane, methoxyflurane, and halothane also degrade in the presence of strong bases, but do not produce CO. Production of CO appears to require nearly complete desiccation (i.e., removal of moisture) of the CO_2 absorbent, and typically occurs after high-flow "flushing" of the breathing circuit for 1 to 2 days. Soda

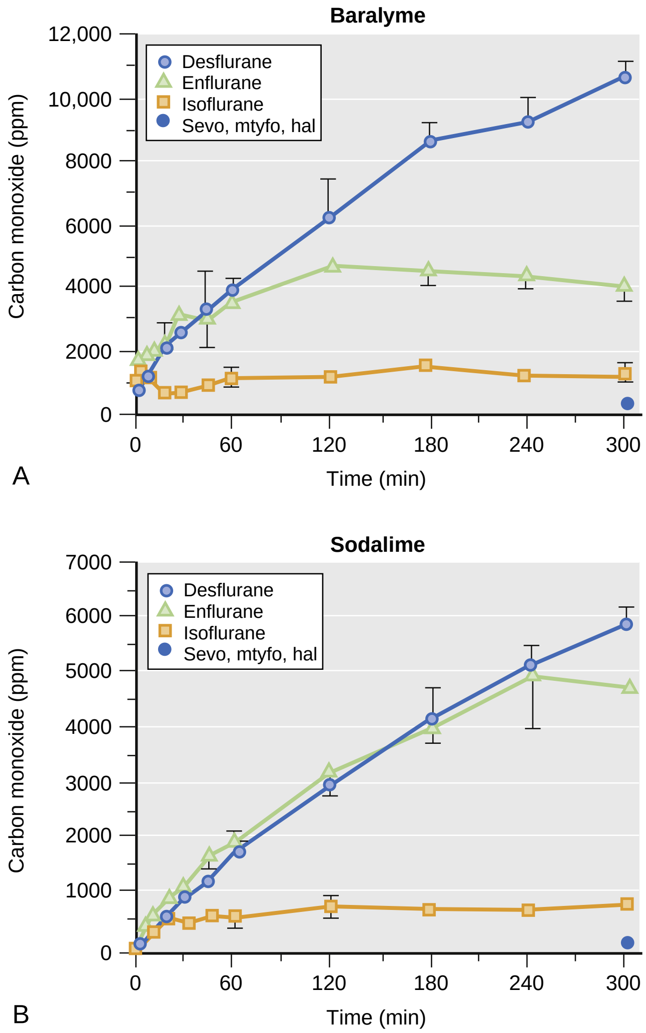


Fig. 20.20 Inhaled anesthetic degradation and carbon monoxide production. Points represent mean ± SD of three measurements with equivalent anesthetic doses (1.5 × MAC) in the presence of dry CO_2 absorbents at identical fresh gas flows. (A) Degradation and CO production with Baralyme. (B) Degradation and CO production with soda lime. Degradation and CO production was observed with anesthetics containing difluoromethoxy groups (desflurane, enflurane, and isoflurane), but not halothane *(hal)* or those with monofluoromethoxy groups such as sevoflurane *(sevo)* and methoxyflurane *(mtyfo)*. *CO,* Carbon monoxide; *MAC,* minimum alveolar concentration. (Adapted from Baxter PJ, Garton K, Kharasch ED. Mechanistic aspects of carbon monoxide formation from volatile anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:929–941.)

lime contains 15% water by weight, and Baralyme contains 13% water by weight (see Table 20.4). CO production is observed when the water content of soda lime or Baralyme falls below 1.4% and 5%, respectively.[153] High ambient temperatures also accelerate desiccation of CO_2 absorbent materials and may increase the rate of CO producing reactions. As noted with compound A, CO accumulation in the breathing circuit is inversely related to the fresh gas flow.

Anesthetic degradation in the breathing circuit has resulted in CO poisoning during clinical anesthesia.[154,155] CO has 250-fold greater affinity for hemoglobin than O_2 does; therefore, the formation of carboxyhemoglobin reduces blood oxygen carrying capacity and tissue oxygen delivery, and is difficult to reverse. The detrimental effects and signs of CO toxicity are well known. However, during general anesthesia, signs of patient exposure to CO are masked and hypoxia may be difficult to detect because most pulse oximetry equipment cannot distinguish between carboxyhemoglobin and oxyhemoglobin.

The degradation of VAs by bases in CO_2 absorbents is an exothermic reaction that results in the production of heat. Sevoflurane produces the most heat when it is used with desiccated CO_2 absorbent. The absorbent canister and anesthetic circuit can reach extremely high temperatures, which can lead to explosion or fire, or both.[156,157]

Current recommendations to minimize anesthetic degradation to CO and heat include machine maintenance measures to avoid desiccation of CO_2 absorbents and the use of absorbents that contain less KOH and NaOH. Newer CO_2 absorbents (see Table 20.4) contain little or no strong base and do not degrade VAs, regardless of hydration status.[136,158,159] The use of the newer CO2 absorbents also reduces the production of compound A during sevoflurane anesthesia.[160–162]

NITROUS OXIDE, VITAMIN B12, AND HOMOCYSTEINE

N_2O is unique among anesthetics in irreversibly inhibiting cobalamins (vitamin B12) by oxidizing the Co (I) ligand. Cobalamins are ingested or produced by bacteria in the gut and are critical cofactors together with 5-methyltetrahydrofolate in the activity of methionine synthase (Fig. 20.21). Methionine synthase catalyzes methylation of homocysteine to methionine, while demethylating 5-methlytetrahydrofolate to tetrahydrofolate. Methionine, converted to S-adenosylmethionine, is the major substrate for methylation in biochemical pathways involved in the synthesis of DNA, RNA, myelin, and catecholamines[163] Chronic vitamin B12 deficiency (as in pernicious anemia) results in hematologic and neurologic dysfunction. Long-term N_2O exposure, typically among individuals who frequently inhale it as a recreational drug, can also cause megaloblastic anemia, myelopathy (subacute combined degeneration), neuropathy, and encephalopathy, sometimes presenting as psychosis.[164–167] N_2O is the eighth most commonly used recreational substance in the United Kingdom.[168] Risk factors that increase susceptibility to N_2O toxicity include pernicious anemia or other gastrointestinal malabsorption syndromes, extremes of age, alcoholism, malnutrition, a strict vegetarian diet, and inborn deficiencies in cobalamin or tetrahydrofolate metabolism.[164] Inhibitors of folate metabolism, such as methotrexate, may also enhance sensitivity to N_2O toxicity.[169]

In healthy surgical patients, megaloblastic changes in the bone marrow are rare, and reported only after a prolonged period of exposure (>12 hours) to N_2O. Healthy pediatric patients exposed to N_2O for up to 8 hours during spine surgery do not develop evidence of megaloblastic anemia.[170] However, in seriously ill patients or those with risk factors noted earlier, shorter (or repetitive) periods of N_2O exposure may lead to significant subacute pathology. Megaloblastic bone marrow changes can be induced after a short period (2-6 hours) of N_2O exposure.[171] Vitamin B12 deficiency or reduced methionine synthase activity can also lead to subacute myelopathy and neuropathy.[172-175] A case highlighting the potential importance of inborn

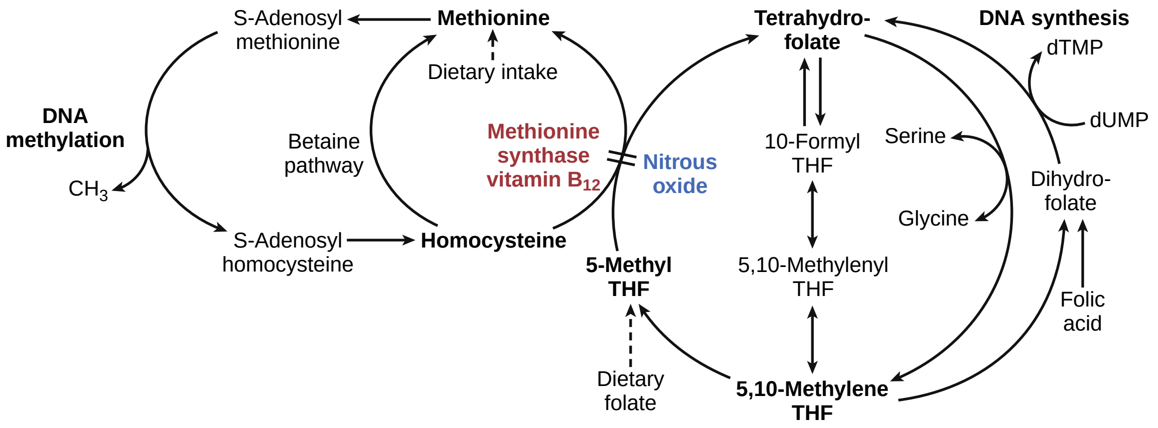


Fig. 20.21 Nitrous oxide inhibition of methionine synthase. Biochemical cycles involved in methylation reactions are shown. Methionine synthase *(red)* catalyzes methylation of homocysteine with 5-methyl tetrahydrofolate as the donor, producing methionine and tetrahydrofolate *(THF)*. Both vitamin B12 and folate are essential cofactors for methionine synthase. Nitrous oxide *(blue)* inhibits methionine synthase by oxidizing the cobalt of cobalamin (vitamin B_{12}). Methyl transfer pathways are important in synthesis of protein and DNA. *dTMP*, Deoxythymidine; *dUMP*, 2′-Deoxyuridine 5″-Monophosphate.

metabolism was reported by Selzer and colleagues.[176] In this case, a 4-month-old child developed an irreversibly and ultimately fatal seizure disorder several weeks after receiving N_2O during anesthesia. Autopsy revealed widespread brain atrophy and demyelination, and biochemical investigations revealed reduced methyltetrahydrofolate reductase (MTHFR) activity, which eventually were linked to several mutations in the gene encoding MTHFR.

Another consequence of reduced methionine synthase activity is accumulation of its substrate: homocysteine (see Fig. 20.21). Homocystinuria caused by severe inborn deficiency of methionine synthase activity is associated with extremely elevated blood homocysteine levels, early atherosclerosis of coronary and cerebral arteries, and premature death.[177] These observations led to the “homocysteine hypothesis,” which postulates that homocysteine stimulates inflammation and atherosclerosis, and is a key modifiable factor in vascular morbidity and mortality. Despite some evidence that increased homocysteine levels are an independent risk factor for cardiac and cerebrovascular morbidity,[178,179] the association between homocysteine levels and atherothrombotic disease is weak, as some large prospective studies have found.[180] Moreover, studies in which diet and vitamin supplementation was used to reduce homocysteine levels demonstrate improvement in some markers of vascular risk, but do not reduce the rate of myocardial infarction and atherosclerotic stroke.[180,181] Thus it appears that the importance of chronic *moderate* elevation in homocysteine to cardiovascular outcomes is tenuous, or perhaps only pertinent to limited patient populations.

Does the rapid increase of homocysteine levels during N_2O anesthesia influence the risk of cardiovascular and neurovascular morbidity following surgery and anesthesia? Badner and colleagues[182] reported that N_2O administration significantly increased homocysteine levels and increased myocardial risk in carotid endarterectomy patients. The Evaluation of Nitrous Oxide in a Gas Mixture for Anaesthesia (ENIGMA) trial in more than 2000 patients reported that avoidance of N_2O combined with increased inspired oxygen concentration during anesthesia decreased the incidence of a variety of complications after major surgery, but found no reduction in death, myocardial infarction, stroke, or hospital length of stay.[183] In a follow-up study of the ENIGMA trial, patients reported that those exposed to N_2O for more than 2 hours were at increased risk (odds ratio 1.6; 95% confidence interval, 1.01-2.5) of myocardial infarction up to 5.7 years after enrollment.[184] No difference in rates of death or stroke were found. Unfortunately, diagnosis of myocardial infarction in ENIGMA was often based on data obtained in telephone interviews, rather than established diagnostic criteria. However, a follow-up randomized trial in 7112 patients (ENIGMA-II) reported no difference in myocardial infarction, stroke, pulmonary embolism, or cardiac arrest risk within 30 days of surgery.[185] A recent post hoc study of 5133 enrollees in the Perioperative Ischemic Evaluation (POISE) trial[186] also found no increase in rates of death, myocardial infarction, or stroke in approximately 1500 patients who received N_2O.

Anecdotally, N_2O use is thought to contribute to myocardial infarction in patients with elevated homocysteine levels at baseline.[187] Homocysteine elevation following N_2O inhalation is a useful marker for assessing the sensitivity of methionine synthase and related biochemical pathways to N_2O inhibition. Nagele and colleagues[188] studied a small group of surgical patients with common mutations in the gene encoding MTHFR, and found that those with 667C→T and 1298A→C mutations were at risk of developing abnormally high homocysteine levels after N_2O exposures of at least 2 hours. However, a common gene variant (66A→G) associated with reduced methionine synthase reductase activity did not result in abnormally high homocysteine levels after anesthesia with N_2O[189] Preoperative infusions of vitamin B12 and folate do not prevent the normal elevation in homocysteine observed following anesthesia with N_2O.[190]

The continued value of N_2O, first used as an anesthetic in the early 19th century, has been questioned by some who view its known and potential toxicities as outweighing benefits such as rapid onset and offset and relative cardiovascular stability during anesthesia.[191,192] Currently available data indicate that N_2O does not alter the risk of cardiovascular morbidity in the vast majority of patients. The authors recommend careful screening of patients to identify the few most likely to suffer N_2O toxicity, and to avoid the drug in these cases.

TABLE 20.5 Atmospheric Lifetimes and Environmental Effects of Inhaled Anesthetics

Compound		Lifetime (years)	Ozone-Depleting Potential	Global Warming Potential (20 years)	Global Warming Potential (100 years)
CFC-12	CCl_2F_2	100	1	11,000	10,900
Carbon dioxide	CO_2	5-200	–§	1	1
Nitrous oxide	N_2O	114	0.017[212]	289	298
Halothane	$CF_3CHBrCl$	7[213]	0.36	–	218
Isoflurane	$CHF_2OCHClCF_3$	2.6-3.6[214]	0.01	1230-1401[214]	350
Sevoflurane	$CH_2FOCH(CF_3)_2$	1.2-5.2[214]	0	349-1980[214]	575
Desflurane	$CHF_2OCHFCF_3$	10[214]	0	3714[214]	–

Ozone depleting potential (ODP) is the ratio of integrated perturbations to total ozone relative to an equal emission of CFC-12. Global warming potential (GWP) is defined as the cumulative radiative retention integrated over a period of time from the emission of gas relative to reference gas (Carbon Dioxide). The data are based on the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fourth Assessment Report[215] unless otherwise indicated. § CO_2 unlikely reacts and depletes ozone. However, CO_2 producing the greenhouse effect in the troposphere is predicted to reduce stratospheric temperatures and cause further ozone depletion.[216] Computed value for halothane relative to GWP for CFC-12.

INHALED ANESTHETICS AND NEUROTOXICITY

For a comprehensive description of potential neurotoxic properties of inhaled anesthetics, see Chapter 78.

The ability of general anesthetics to reversibly ablate consciousness has benefitted millions of patients and enabled dramatic advances in health care. While inhaled agents were the first class of anesthetics and continue to be used in the vast majority of cases, accumulating evidence suggests potential long-lasting neurotoxic effects of inhaled and other general anesthetics in patients of extreme ages (see Chapter 78).[193,194] The greatest concern surrounds the impact of general anesthetics in the youngest patients during periods of rapid brain development. In a seminal study, Jevtovic-Todorovic and coworkers[195] demonstrated widespread neuronal death (apoptosis) in the brains of 7-day-old rats after exposure to midazolam, isoflurane, and N_2O, associated with long-lasting (up to 4.5 months) changes in neurophysiological correlates of learning and memory, and performance deficits in spatial learning tests. Other animal studies in various species, including nonhuman primates, demonstrate that during sensitive periods of early brain development, exposure to most general anesthetics is associated with accelerated neuronal apoptosis and degeneration.[196-200] Neonatal primate studies suggest that exposure to anesthetics for as little as 3 hours leads to neuro-apoptosis and neurocognitive problems.[197,199,201] Other studies suggest that low nonapoptotic concentrations of general anesthetics may inhibit normal synapse formation and damage developing neuronal networks.[202] Mechanisms underlying neurodevelopmental toxicity are potentially linked to the same ion channels hypothesized to mediate general anesthesia. General anesthetic actions are attributed in part to both antagonism of N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor and potentiation of $GABA_A$ receptor signal transduction, and drugs with either or both of these activities damage developing brains.[194,203,204]

Based on preclinical studies showing that anesthetic exposure consistently impairs neurodevelopment, the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) issued a safety announcement that repeated or lengthy exposures to general anesthetics and sedative drugs before the age of three have the potential to harm the development of children's brains (http://www.fda.gov/drugs/drugsafety/ucm532356.htm). Emerging clinical data, however, indicate either no or very modest associations between exposure to surgical procedures requiring general anesthesia and neurodevelopmental outcomes.[205–208] The Pediatric Anesthesia NeuroDevelopment Assessment (PANDA) trial compared a cohort of children who received general anesthesia for hernia repair before age 3 with siblings.[209] The neuropsychological outcomes showed no difference between groups. A randomized clinical study, the General Anesthesia Compared to Spinal Anesthesia (GAS) trial, compared infants who underwent hernia repair with awake-spinal versus inhaled general anesthesia. At age 2, cognitive scores in the two groups were equivalent,[210] whereas the primary outcome at age 5 has not been reported. Related clinical studies exploring a variety of long-term outcomes in children are underway, adding uncertainty to clinical decision making. A comprehensive examination of this topic is provided elsewhere in this textbook ("Pediatric Anesthesia," Chapter 78). For updated recommendations to healthcare providers and parents regarding exposure to anesthesia and surgery in early life, please consult https://smarttots.org/about/consensus-statement/. For a comprehensive description of long-term cognitive effects of surgery and anesthesia in adults, see Chapter 84.

INHALED ANESTHETICS AND ENVIRONMENTAL EFFECTS

Anesthetic gases in the workplace and in the outdoor environment have the potential to cause harm. An American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Task Force released a comprehensive document on environmentally sustainable anesthesia practice, including the choice of anesthetic gases and reduction of waste: https://www.asahq.org/resources/resources-from-asa-committees/environmental-sustainability/greening-the-operating-room.[211] Three potential sequelae have been investigated: global warming, ozone depletion, and health effects from workplace exposure (Table 20.5).[212–216]

Global Warming Effects

Atmospheric trapping of thermal radiation from the Earth's surface is known as the *greenhouse effect*, which the

Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change[217] deems a major contributor to global warming. Inhaled anesthetics are recognized greenhouse gases.[218,219] Isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane, the most widely used current inhaled anesthetics, are minimally metabolized in the body and are substantially eliminated through exhalation. Most anesthesia waste scavenging systems transfer these gases directly and unchanged into the atmosphere, which has drawn attention to the ecotoxicologic properties of inhaled anesthetics. The global warming potential (GWP) takes into account the heat-trapping efficiency and life-span of atmospheric gases (i.e., the time for removal by chemical reaction with radicals, photolysis, and deposition). The GWP of halogenated anesthetics is reported to range from 1230-fold (isoflurane) to 3714-fold (desflurane)—that of an equal mass of CO_2. Ryan and Nielsen[214] suggested that the most common VAs can significantly influence global warming, with the greatest impact produced by atmospheric desflurane.[214]

The GWP of N_2O is approximately 300-fold greater than that of an equal mass of CO_2.[220,221] N_2O is administered to patients in much larger quantities relative to VA gases and is remarkably stable, with an atmospheric life-span of approximately 120 years.[222] Atmospheric N_2O is produced by natural sources in soil and water, as well as human sources, including agriculture (nitrogen-based fertilizers) and combustion of fossil fuels. Sherman and Cullen[223] first reported that N_2O could contribute to global warming and estimated that approximately 1% of man-made N_2O production was for anesthesia. Anesthetic use may contribute 3.0% of total N_2O emissions in the United States.[219] Although the use of N_2O is declining in many countries, data on the worldwide medical use of N_2O are not available.

Ozone Depletion

The ozone layer of the Earth's atmosphere, which has been declining 4% per decade since the 1970s, absorbs damaging ultraviolet B light (UVB; wavelengths 280-315 nm). The biologic consequences of increasing UVB radiation include increases in skin cancer, cataracts, damage to plants, and reduction of oceanic plankton populations. Halogenated VAs are similar to chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), which are major ozone depleting pollutants. Ozone depletion by halocarbons depends on molecular weight, number and type of halogen atoms, and atmospheric life-span.[224] The atmospheric life-span of halogenated anesthetics is much shorter (4.0-21.4 years)[225] than that of many CFCs (up to 100 years). Fluorination is associated with longer atmospheric life-span because of the stability of carbon-fluorine (C-F) bonds. Chemicals with a lifetime of more than 2 years are believed to reach the stratosphere in significant quantities. There they are exposed to intense ultraviolet radiation that can break carbon-halogen bonds, creating halogen radicals that catalytically destroy ozone. Chlorine-containing anesthetics such as halothane, isoflurane, and enflurane may be more destructive to the ozone layer than sevoflurane and desflurane, which contain only C-F bonds. Carbon-hydrogen bonds are susceptible to attack by hydroxyl radicals (OH) in the troposphere,[226] making them less likely to reach the stratosphere. However, even compounds with a lifetime of a few months may potentially contribute to ozone destruction.[227] Contributions to total stratospheric ozone depletion were estimated as 1% for halothane and 0.02% for enflurane and isoflurane.[225]

N_2O is the primary source of stratospheric nitrogen oxides, NO and NO_2, and both destroy ozone. Because only 10% of N_2O is converted to NO_X, its ozone depleting potential is lower than that of an equal mass of CFCs. However, N_2O emission is reported to be the single largest ozone depleting human emission, and is expected to remain so for the rest of this century. [212] The use of N_2O could actually contribute additional environmental harm when used with halogenated anesthetics.

The environmental impact of all inhaled anesthetics could be reduced by 80% to 90% if closed circuit anesthesia is widely employed, and to a lesser degree if low carrier gas flow rates are routinely used (see Fig. 20.13). Technologies that trap anesthetics in waste gas flows have the potential to reduce emissions into the environment, and can reduce drug costs by reusing (after redistillation) the trapped drugs.[228] Physician education warning that the medical use of N_2O can significantly contribute to both the greenhouse effect and ozone depletion should be maintained. Avoiding N_2O when it provides no clinical advantage is suggested for a more environmentally sound anesthetic practice.[218]

Exposure to Waste Anesthetic Gases

Healthcare personnel can be exposed to waste anesthetic gases both in and out of the operating room environment. Possible adverse health effects by chronic exposure to trace concentrations of inhaled anesthetics has concerned healthcare professionals for many years.[229,230] Laboratory studies suggest reproductive abnormalities in animals exposed to high concentrations of N_2O (1000 ppm or greater).[231,232] Long-term occupational exposure to anesthetic gases may be associated with genomic alterations.[233] However, a long-term prospective study found no causal relationship between adverse health effects and exposure to waste anesthetic gases with or without a scavenging system.[234]

All inhaled anesthetics cross the placental-fetal exchange barrier. Teratogenicity, which has been demonstrated in animal fetuses chronically exposed to N_2O,[235,236] is of particular concern in pregnant healthcare workers, but there is no evidence of harm in humans. Furthermore, there is no definitive evidence of harm to fetuses of women anesthetized while pregnant,[237] although studies are underway addressing the possibility that anesthetics cause harm during critical phases of fetal brain development (see earlier section, "Inhaled Anesthetics and Neurotoxicity," and Chapter 78).[238] The US Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) recommends that no worker should be exposed to concentrations of halogenated anesthetic greater than 2 ppm for a period exceeding 1 hour during anesthesia administration (http://www.osha.gov/dts/osta/anestheticgases/index.html). OSHA also recommends that no worker should be exposed to 8-hour time-weighted average concentrations of N_2O greater than 25 ppm.

Potential postoperative exposure of healthcare workers to exhaled anesthetic gases in postanesthesia care units, intensive care units, and other patient care areas should also be recognized. Studies have documented excessive levels of waste anesthetic gases in poorly ventilated postanesthesia care areas.[239-241] However, no studies have documented significant adverse health effects.

Xenon and Other Noble Gases

Modern inhaled anesthetics represent vast improvements over earlier inhaled agents, with N_2O representing the longest surviving widely used anesthetic. The noble gas xenon was first shown to produce general anesthesia in 1951,[242] and subsequent studies have revealed that in comparison with other inhaled anesthetics, it approaches being the ideal agent.[243-245] It is most comparable to N_2O, but superior in a number of ways. Xenon is present as a minor constituent of air (50 parts per billion), and is isolated by distillation of liquefied air, along with liquefied nitrogen and oxygen. Xenon is entirely unreactive in the biosphere and is the only inhaled anesthetic that is not an environmental pollutant, although its distillation from air uses considerable energy and thus creates CO_2 and other pollutants as byproducts.[219] It is odorless, tasteless, nonflammable, and has a limitless shelf-life. Its solubility in blood ($\lambda_{b/g} = 0.14$) and body tissues is lower than that of any other inhaled anesthetic, including N_2O. As a result, it has extraordinarily rapid onset and respiratory clearance, with emergence times 2- to 3-fold faster when it replaces N_2O in clinical settings.[246-248] It undergoes no biotransformation or reactions with CO_2 absorbents or ultraviolet light. Moreover, xenon has favorable pharmacodynamic effects in comparison to most inhaled anesthetics. It produces minimal cardiovascular depression and is not arrhythmogenic.[248-251] As with N_2O, xenon has analgesic activity and reduces intraoperative opioid requirements.[252] It does not trigger malignant hyperthermia or produce any known toxicity.[253] In fact, xenon has been shown to have cardioprotective and neuroprotective activities in preclinical models.[243,245] Clinical trials in adult cardiac surgery patients,[254-256] partial nephrectomy patients,[257] and comatose survivors of cardiac arrest[258,259] have demonstrated that xenon reduces pressor requirements and modestly reduces the extent of organ damage, relative to other anesthetics. However, in these clinical settings and in others, xenon does not improve neurocognitive function or survival.[260-262]

Given all these advantages, why is xenon not a commonly used inhaled anesthetic? The main reason is its cost.[263] At more than $15/L in the gas form, xenon is greater than 100-fold more expensive than N_2O and far more expensive per patient than either desflurane or sevoflurane, which are currently the most expensive VAs. Xenon has a MAC-immobility of 0.61 atm, and even with a strict closed-circuit technique, greater than 10 L are needed to anesthetize a typical patient. To perform closed circuit anesthesia with xenon-oxygen also requires lengthy preanesthetic denitrogenation to prevent N_2 from accumulating in the rebreathing circuit.[264] Transitioning from 100% oxygen during denitrogenation to closed circuit xenon-oxygen anesthesia is another slow process because xenon is added to the circuit as oxygen is metabolized in the patient at 200 to 250 mL/min. High-flow xenon is otherwise necessary to make this transition short. To make xenon a more affordable anesthetic, specialized anesthesia machines have been designed to enable its efficient delivery,[265] and new waste-scavenging systems are being introduced with cryogenic traps that can condense xenon in a liquid form from waste gases.[266] This process allows relatively inexpensive recycling of xenon after it has been redistilled to a pure form.

In addition to cost, xenon presents a few other downsides. Xenon gas has a much higher density (5.9 g/L) than either N_2O (1.9 g/L) or air (1.2 g/L), resulting in increased flow resistance and work of breathing.[267] Thus it may be a poor choice for patients with compromised respiratory function. As with N_2O, high xenon partial pressures needed for anesthesia cause expansion of trapped air spaces and vascular air emboli.[268] Compared with propofol infusion or sevoflurane inhalation, xenon anesthesia results in a higher incidence of nausea and vomiting.[269,270]

Currently, xenon remains an experimental anesthetic, with clinical research focusing on its potential as an organ protectant, and the development of technologies to reduce its cost. Shifting the cost-benefit balance toward more xenon use in patients will depend on whether clinical studies end up supporting xenon's beneficial efficacy. Other noble gases also share some of xenon's neuroprotective actions in experimental model systems and are also under investigation as potential clinical anesthetics.[271]

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Mapleson WW. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45:319.
2. Bovill JG. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2008;182:121.
3. Eger 2nd EI. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:971.
4. Eger 2nd EI, Shargel R. *Anesthesiology*. 1963;24:625.
5. Cromwell TH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:401.
6. Yasuda N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:370.
7. Stoelting RK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;33(5).
8. Dwyer R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:888.
9. Gion H, Saidman LJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:361.
10. Rampil IJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:429.
11. Katoh T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:1012.
12. Steward A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45:282.
13. Levitt DG. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2002;2:5.
14. Wissing H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:443.
15. Kennedy RR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1616.
16. Munson ES, Eger 2nd EI. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;33:515.
17. Allott PR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45:294.
18. Munson ES, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1978;57:224.
19. Eger 2nd EI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1070.
20. Yamamura H, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1963;18:427.
21. Kennedy RR, Baker AB. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2001;29:535.
22. Eger 2nd EI, Severinghaus JW. *Anesthesiology*. 1964;25:620.
23. Stoelting RK, Longnecker DE. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;36:352.
24. Stoelting RK, Eger 2nd EI. *Anesthesiology*. 1969;30:273.
25. Epstein RM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1964;25:364.
26. Taheri S, Eger 2nd EI. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:774.
27. Hendrickx JF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:391.
28. Peyton PJ, Horriat M, Robinson GJ, Pierce R, Thompson BR. Magnitude of the second gas effect on arterial sevoflurane partial pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:381–387.
29. Korman B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129.
30. Barrett EJ, Rattigan S: Diabetes 61:2661
31. Larsen OA, et al. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 1966;66:337.
32. Matsukawa T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:662.
33. Watt SJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1996;51:24.
34. Westenskow DR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:555.
35. Van Zundert T, et al: Anaesth Intensive Care 38:76
36. Gallagher TM, Black GW. *Anaesthesia*. 1985;40:1073.
37. Carpenter RL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:575.
38. Yasuda N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:489.
39. Hendrickx J, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33:611.
40. Eger EI, Brandstater B. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:756.
41. Eger 2nd EI. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:947.
42. Hunter T, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15:750.
43. Baum JA. *Low flow anaesthesia: the theory and practice of low flow, minimal flow and closed system anaesthesia*. 3nd ed. Boston, Mass: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2001.

44. Levy RJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:747.
45. Severinghaus JW. *J Clin Invest*. 1954;33:1183.
46. Lowe H, Ernst E. *The quantitative practice of anesthesia: use of closed circuit*. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins; 1981.
47. Lerou JG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:230.
48. Munson ES, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;38:251.
49. Gibbons RT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1977;56:32.
50. Eger 2nd EI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;32:396.
51. Munson ES, Merrick HC. *Anesthesiology*. 1966;27:783.
52. Eger 2nd EI, Saidman LJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:61.
53. Perreault L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:325.
54. Wolf GL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:547.
55. Miller CF, Furman WR. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:281.
56. Singh M, et al. *J Surg Tech Case Rep*. 2015;7:20–22.
57. Stanley TH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41:256.
58. Algren JT, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1998;8:31.
59. Kaplan R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:71.
60. Lemmens HJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1864.
61. Leeson S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119:829.
62. Hendrickx JF, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2006;6:7.
63. Nordmann GR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:779.
64. Cullen BF, Eger 2nd EI. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;36:168.
65. Fassoulaki A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:479.
66. Laster MJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:209.
67. Yoshimura N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;44:372.
68. Neumann MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:914.
69. Fink BR. *Anesthesiology*. 1955;16:511.
70. Rackow H, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1961;16:723.
71. Kharasch ED, et al. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 2000;55:853.
72. Kenna JG. *J Hepatol*. 1997;26(suppl 1):5.
73. Kharasch ED, et al. *Lancet*. 1996;347:1367.
74. Garton KJ, et al. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 1995;23:1426.
75. Kenna JG. *J Hepatol*. 1997;26(suppl 1):5.
76. Gut J, et al. *Pharmacol Ther*. 1993;58(133).
77. Joshi PH, Conn HO. *Ann Int Med*. 1974;80:395.
78. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:689.
79. Cousins MJ, Mazze RI. *JAMA*. 1973;225:1611.
80. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:726.
81. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1511.
82. Christ DD, et al. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 1988;16:135.
83. Mazze RI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:5.
84. Kharasch ED, Thummel KE. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:795.
85. Christ DD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:833.
86. Mazze RI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:683.
87. Brunt EM, et al. *Hepatology*. 1991;13:1017.
88. Mazze RI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40:536.
89. Sutton TS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:180.
90. Martin JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:1125.
91. Jones RM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:482.
92. Anderson JS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1452.
93. Holaday DA, Smith FR. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:100.
94. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1379.
95. Kobayashi Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:753.
96. Turillazzi E, et al. *Toxicol Pathol*. 2007;35:840.
97. Terrell RC. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:531.
98. Krishna DR, Klotz U. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1994;26:144.
99. Lohr JW, et al. *Pharmacol Rev*. 1998;50:107.
100. Wilkinson GR. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:2211.
101. Kharasch ED. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 1996;47:7.
102. Weiss CF, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1960;262:787.
103. Young WS, Lietman PS. *J Pharmacol Exp Therap*. 1978;204:203.
104. Kalow W. *Hum Genomics*. 2004;1:375.
105. Ingelman-Sundberg M, et al. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 1999;20:342.
106. Summary of the national Halothane Study. Possible association between halothane anesthesia and postoperative hepatic necrosis. *JAMA*. 1966:197.
107. Ray DC, Drummond GB. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:84.
108. Warner LO, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:838.
109. Wark HJ. *Anaesthesia*. 1983;38:237.
110. Wark H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:1224.
111. Tung D, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:133.
112. Ihtiyar E, et al. *Ind J Gastroenterol*. 2006;25:41.
113. Peiris LJ, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24:477.
114. Turner GB, et al. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2000;12:955.
115. Lewis JH, et al. *Ann Int Med*. 1983;98:984.
116. Lischner MW, et al. *Arch Int Med*. 1967;120:725.
117. Kharasch ED. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:S27.
118. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1369.
119. Ronis MJ, et al. *Biochem Pharmacol*. 1998;55:123.
120. Hotchkiss JA, et al. *Toxicol Lett*. 1995;78:1.
121. Chen TL, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47:680.
122. Knights KM, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2013;76:587.
123. Mazze RI. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:843.
124. Mazze RI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;36:571.
125. Baden JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:203.
126. Mazze RI, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Therap*. 1974;190:523.
127. Cousins MJ, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Therap*. 1974;190:530.
128. Taves DR, et al. *JAMA*. 1970;214:91.
129. Mazze RI, et al. *JAMA*. 1971;216:278.
130. Mazze RI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:247.
131. Murray JM, Trinick TR. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:236.
132. Spencer EM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:731.
133. Anders MW. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2005;45:147.
134. Keller KA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:1220.
135. Gonsowski CT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:566.
136. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:173.
137. Bito H, Ikeda K. *Anesthesia Analg*. 1996;82:173.
138. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1238.
139. Bito H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1231.
140. Conzen PF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:578.
141. Eger 2nd EI, et al. *Anesthesia Analg*. 1997;85:1154.
142. Ebert TJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:601.
143. Higuchi H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:307.
144. Higuchi H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:650.
145. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:1183.
146. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:160.
147. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1624.
148. Altuntas TG, et al. *Chem Res Toxicol*. 2004;17:435.
149. Eger 2nd EI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:1164.
150. Wissing H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1205.
151. Keijzer C, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:815.
152. Baxter PJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:929.
153. Fang ZX, et al. *Anesthesia Analg*. 1995;80:1187.
154. Woehlck HJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:228.
155. Berry PD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:613.
156. Wu J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:534.
157. Laster M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:769.
158. Baum J, van Aken H. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2000;17:597.
159. Murray JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1342.
160. Kobayashi S, et al. *J Anesth*. 2004;18:277.
161. Struys MM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59:584.
162. Kobayashi S, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2003;15:33.
163. Sanders RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:707.
164. Reynolds E. *Lancet neurology*. 2006;5:949.
165. Doran M, et al. *BMJ*. 2004;328:1364.
166. Keddie S, et al. *J Neurol*. 2018.
167. Garakani A, et al. *Am J Addict*. 2016;25:358.
168. Kaar SJ, et al. *J Psychopharmacol*. 2016;30:395.
169. Fiskerstrand T, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Therap*. 1997;282:1305.
170. Duma A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120:1325.
171. Amos RJ, et al. *Lancet*. 1982;2:835.
172. Sesso RM, et al. *Neuroradiology*. 1999;41:588.
173. Hadzic A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:863.
174. McNeely JK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1549.
175. Ilniczky S, et al. *Eur J Neurol*. 2002;9:101.
176. Selzer RR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:45.
177. McCully KS. *Am J Pathology*. 1969;56:111.
178. Nygard O, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:230.
179. Mayer EL, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1996;27:517.
180. Kaul S, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2006;48:914.
181. Ntaios G, et al. *Arch Cardiovasc Dis*. 2009;102:847.
182. Badner NH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1073.
183. Myles PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:221.
184. Leslie K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:387.
185. Myles PS, et al. *Lancet*. 2014;384:1446.
186. Leslie K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013.
187. Indraratna P, et al. *Heart Lung Circ*. 2017;26:e41.
188. Nagele P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:36.

189. Nagele P, et al. *Pharmacogenet Genomics*. 2009;19:325.
190. Rao LK, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:710.
191. Nunn JF. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:3.
192. Myles PS, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2004;32:165.
193. Rappaport B, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:1387.
194. Hudson AE, Hemmings Jr HC. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:30.
195. Jevtovic-Todorovic V, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2003;23:876.
196. Loepke AW, Soriano SG. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1681.
197. Slikker Jr W, et al. *Toxicol Sci*. 2007;98:145.
198. Zou X, et al. *Neurotoxicol Teratol*. 2011;33:592.
199. Brambrink AM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:834.
200. Brambrink AM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:372.
201. Schenning KJ, et al. *Neurotoxicol Teratol*. 2017;60:63.
202. Gascon E, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:213.
203. Mellon RD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:509.
204. Vutskits L, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22:973.
205. Graham MR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:667.
206. Glatz P, et al. *JAMA Pediatr*. 2017;171:e163470.
207. Warner DO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129(1):89.
208. Davidson AJ, Sun LS. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:840.
209. Schneuer FJ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(6):528.
210. Davidson AJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2016;387:239.
211. Axelrod D, et al. *Greening the Operating Room and Perioperative Arena: Environmental Sustainability for Anesthesia Practice*. American Society of Anesthesiologists; 2014.
212. Ravishankara AR, et al. *Science*. 2009;326:123.
213. Langbein T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:66.
214. Ryan SM, Nielsen CJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:92.
215. *Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis*. New York: Cambridge University Press; 2007.
216. Austin J, et al. *Nature*. 1992;360:221.
217. Forster P, et al. In: Solomon S, Qin D, Manning M, eds. *Changes in Atmospheric Constituents and in Radiative Forcing, Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis*. Cambridge: Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change; 2007.
218. Ryan S, Sherman J. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:921.
219. Ishizawa Y. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:213.
220. Gutierrez MJF, et al. *Waste Manag Res*. 2005;23:133.
221. Maskell K, et al. *Lancet*. 1993;342:1027.
222. Schmeltekopf AL, et al. *Geophys Res Lett*. 1975;2:393.
223. Sherman SJ, Cullen BF. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:816.
224. Hammitt JK, et al. *Nature*. 1987;330:711.
225. Langbein T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:66.
226. Brown AC, et al. *Nature*. 1989;341:635.
227. *Executive summary. scientific assessment of ozone depletion: 2002*. Geneva: World Meteorological Organization; 2002. Global Ozone Research and Monitoring Project Report No. 47.
228. Barwise JA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1064.
229. McGregor DG. *Mayo Clinic*. 2000;75:273.
230. Burm AG. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2003;17:147.
231. Vieira E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:175.
232. Fujinaga M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:401.
233. Yilmaz S, Calbayram NC. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;35:326.
234. Spence AA. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:96.
235. Szyfter K, et al. *J Appl Genet*. 2004;45:369.
236. Friedman JM. *Teratology*. 1988;37:69.
237. Kuczkowski KM. *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 2004;59:52.
238. Reitman E, Flood P. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(suppl 1):i72.
239. Sessler DI, Badgwell JM. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:1083.
240. McGregor DG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:472.
241. Krenzischek DA, et al. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2002;17:227.
242. Cullen SC, Gross EG. *Science*. 1951;113:580.
243. Preckel B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:187.
244. Sanders RD, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:709.
245. Sanders RD, Maze M. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;18:405.
246. Goto T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1273.
247. Rossaint R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:6.
248. Law LS, Lo EA, Gan TJ. Xenon Anesthesia: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:678–697.
249. Goto T, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59:1178.
250. Wappler F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:463.
251. Baumert JH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:605.
252. Lachmann B, et al. *Lancet*. 1990;335(1413).
253. Wappler F. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:417.
254. Al Tmimi L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:1118.
255. Al Tmimi L, et al. *Trials*. 2015;16:449.
256. Hofland J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:918.
258. Arola O, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;70:2652.
259. Laitio R, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;315:1120.
260. Coburn M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:756.
261. Coburn M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22:870.
262. Coburn M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:127.
263. Nakata Y, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1999;11:477.
264. Rawat S, Dingley J. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:101.
265. Dingley J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:173.
266. Dingley J, Mason RS. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1312.
267. Zhang P, et al. *Can J Anaesthesia = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 1995;42:547.
268. Lockwood G. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:282.
269. Coburn M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:787.
270. Fahlenkamp AV, et al. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0153807.
271. Dickinson R, Franks NP. *Crit Care*. 2010;14:229.

References

1. Mapleson WW. Circulation-time models of the uptake of inhaled anaesthetics and data for quantifying them. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45:319–334.
2. Bovill JG. Inhalation anaesthesia: from diethyl ether to xenon. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2008:121–142.
3. Eger EI 2nd. Partition coefficients of I-653 in human blood, saline, and olive oil. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:971–973.
4. Eger EI 2nd, Shargel R. The solubility of methoxyflurane in human blood and tissue homogenates. *Anesthesiology*. 1963;24:625–627.
5. Cromwell TH, Eger EI 2nd, Stevens WC, Dolan WM. Forane uptake, excretion, and blood solubility in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:401–408.
6. Yasuda N, Targ AG, Eger EI 2nd. Solubility of I-653, sevoflurane, isoflurane, and halothane in human tissues. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:370–373.
7. Stoelting RK, Longnecker DE, Eger EI 2nd. Minimum alveolar concentrations in man on awakening from methoxyflurane, halothane, ether and fluroxene anesthesia: MAC awake. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;33:5–9.
8. Dwyer R, Bennett HL, Eger EI 2nd, Heilbron D. Effects of isoflurane and nitrous oxide in subanesthetic concentrations on memory and responsiveness in volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:888–898.
9. Gion H, Saidman LJ. The minimum alveolar concentration of enflurane in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:361–364.
10. Rampil IJ, Lockhart SH, Zwass MS, et al. Clinical characteristics of desflurane in surgical patients: minimum alveolar concentration. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:429–433.
11. Katoh T, Suguro Y, Kimura T, Ikeda K. Cerebral awakening concentration of sevoflurane and isoflurane predicted during slow and fast alveolar wash-out. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:1012–1017.
12. Steward A, Allott PR, Cowles AL, Mapleson WW. Solubility coefficients for inhaled anaesthetics for water, oil and biological media. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45:282–293.
13. Levitt DG. PKQuest: volatile solutes—application to enflurane, nitrous oxide, halothane, methoxyflurane and toluene pharmacokinetics. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2002;2:5.
14. Wissing H, Kuhn I, Rietbrock S, Fuhr U. Pharmacokinetics of inhaled anaesthetics in a clinical setting: comparison of desflurane, isoflurane and sevoflurane. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:443–449.
15. Kennedy RR, French RA, Spencer C. Predictive accuracy of a model of volatile anesthetic uptake. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1616–1621.
16. Munson ES, Eger EI 2nd. The effects of hyperthermia and hypothermia on the rate of of induction of anesthesia: calculations using a mathematical model. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;33:515–519.
17. Allott PR, Steward A, Flook V, Mapleson WW. Variation with temperature of the solubilities of inhaled anaesthetics in water, oil and biological media. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45:294–300.
18. Munson ES, Eger EI 2nd, Tham MK, Embro WJ. Increase in anesthetic uptake, excretion, and blood solubility in man after eating. *Anesth Analg*. 1978;57:224–231.
19. Eger EI 2nd, Ionescu P, Gong D. Circuit absorption of halothane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1070–1074.
20. Yamamura H, Wakasugi B, Okuma Y, Maki K. The effects of ventilation on the absorption and elimination of inhalation anaesthetics. *Anaesthesia*. 1963;18:427–438.
21. Kennedy RR, Baker AB. The effect of cardiac output changes on end-tidal volatile anaesthetic concentrations. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2001;29:535–538.
22. Eger EI 2nd, Severinghaus JW. Effect of uneven pulmonary distribution of blood and gas on induction with inhalation anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1964;25:620–626.
23. Stoelting RK, Longnecker DE. The effect of right-to-left shunt on the rate of increase of arterial anesthetic concentration. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;36:352–356.
24. Stoelting RK, Eger EI 2nd. An additional explanation for the second gas effect: a concentrating effect. *Anesthesiology*. 1969;30:273–277.
25. Epstein RM, Rackow H, Salanitre E, Wolf GL. Influence of the concentration effect on the uptake of anesthetic mixtures: the second gas effect. *Anesthesiology*. 1964;25:364–371.
26. Taheri S, Eger EI 2nd. A demonstration of the concentration and second gas effects in humans anesthetized with nitrous oxide and desflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:774–780.
27. Hendrickx JF, Carette R, Lemmens HJ, De Wolf AM. Large volume N2O uptake alone does not explain the second gas effect of N2O on sevoflurane during constant inspired ventilation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:391–395.
28. Peyton PJ, Horriat M, Robinson GJ, Pierce R, Thompson BR. Magnitude of the second gas effect on arterial sevoflurane partial pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:381–387.
29. Korman B, Dash RK, Peyton PJ. Can mathematical modeling explain the measured magnitude of the second gas effect? *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129.
30. Barrett EJ, Rattigan S: Muscle perfusion: its measurement and role in metabolic regulation. *Diabetes*. 61: 2661–2668.
31. Larsen OA, Lassen NA, Quaade F. Blood flow through human adipose tissue determined with radioactive xenon. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 1966;66:337–345.
32. Matsukawa T, Sessler DI, Sessler AM, et al. Heat flow and distribution during induction of general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:662–673.
33. Watt SJ, Cook LB, Ohri S, Lockwood GG. The relationship between anaesthetic uptake and cardiac output. *Anaesthesia*. 1996;51:24–28.
34. Westenskow DR, Zbinden AM, Thomson DA, Kohler B. Control of end-tidal halothane concentration. Part A: anaesthesia breathing system and feedback control of gas delivery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:555–562.
35. Van Zundert T, Hendrickx J, Brebels A, De Cooman S, Gatt S, De Wolf A. Effect of the mode of administration of inhaled anaesthetics on the interpretation of the F(A)/F(I) curve—a GasMan simulation. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 38:76–81.
36. Gallagher TM, Black GW. Uptake of volatile anaesthetics in children. *Anaesthesia*. 1985;40:1073–1077.
37. Carpenter RL, Eger 2nd EI, Johnson BH, Unadkat JD, Sheiner LB. Pharmacokinetics of inhaled anesthetics in humans: measurements during and after the simultaneous administration of enflurane, halothane, isoflurane, methoxyflurane, and nitrous oxide. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:575–582.
38. Yasuda N, Lockhart SH, Eger EI 2nd, et al. Kinetics of desflurane, isoflurane, and halothane in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:489–498.
39. Hendrickx J, Peyton P, Carette R, De Wolf A. Inhaled anaesthetics and nitrous oxide: complexities overlooked: things may not be what they seem. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33:611–619.
40. Eger EI, Brandstater B. Minimul alveolar anesthetic concentration: a standard of anesthetic potency. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:756–763.
41. Eger EI 2nd. Age, minimum alveolar anesthetic concentration, and minimum alveolar anesthetic concentration-awake. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:947–953.
42. Hunter T, Lerman J, Bissonnette B. The temperature and humidity of inspired gases in infants using a pediatric circle system: effects of high and low-flow anesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15:750–754.
43. Baum JA. *Low Flow Anaesthesia: The Theory and Practice of Low Flow, Minimal Flow and Closed System Anaesthesia*. 2nd ed. Boston, MA: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2001.
44. Levy RJ, Nasr VG, Rivera O, et al. Detection of carbon monoxide during routine anesthetics in infants and children. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:747–753.
45. Severinghaus JW. The rate of uptake of nitrous oxide in man. *J Clin Invest*. 1954;33:1183–1189.
46. Lowe H, Ernst E. *The Quantitative Practice of Anesthesia: Use of Closed Circuit*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1981.
47. Lerou JG, Dirksen R, Beneken Kolmer HH, Booij LH, Borm GF. A system model for closed-circuit inhalation anesthesia. II. Clinical validation. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:230–237.
48. Munson ES, Eger EI 2nd, Bowers DL. Effects of anesthetic-depressed ventilation and cardiac output on anesthetic uptake: a computer nonlinear stimulation. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;38:251–259.
49. Gibbons RT, Steffey EP, Eger EI 2nd. The effect of spontaneous versus controlled ventilation on the rate of rise of alveolar halothane concentration in dogs. *Anesth Analg*. 1977;56:32–34.
50. Eger EI 2nd, Smith NT, Stoelting RK, Cullen DJ, Kadis LB, Whitcher CE. Cardiovascular effects of halothane in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;32:396–409.
51. Munson ES, Merrick HC. Effect of nitrous oxide on venous air embolism. *Anesthesiology*. 1966;27:783–787.

52. Eger EI 2nd, Saidman LJ. Hazards of nitrous oxide anesthesia in bowel obstruction and pneumothorax. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:61–66.
53. Perreault L, Normandin N, Plamondon L, et al. Tympanic membrane rupture after anesthesia with nitrous oxide. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:325–326.
54. Wolf GL, Capuano C, Hartung J. Nitrous oxide increases intraocular pressure after intravitreal sulfur hexafluoride injection. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:547–548.
55. Miller CF, Furman WR. Symptomatic pneumocephalus after translabrynthine acoustic neuroma excision and nitrous oxide anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:281–283.
56. Singh M, Vasudeva VS, Rios Diaz AJ, Dunn IF, Caterson EJ. Intraoperative development of tension pneumocephalus in a patient undergoing repair of a cranial-dural defect under nitrous oxide anesthesia. *J Surg Tech Case Rep*. 2015;7:20–22.
57. Stanley TH, Kawamura R, Graves C. Effects of nitrous oxide on volume and pressure of endotracheal tube cuffs. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41:256–262.
58. Algren JT, Gursoy F, Johnson TD, Skjonsby BS. The effect of nitrous oxide diffusion on laryngeal mask airway cuff inflation in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1998;8:31–36.
59. Kaplan R, Abramowitz MD, Epstein BS. Nitrous oxide and air-filled balloon-tipped catheters. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:71–73.
60. Lemmens HJ, Saidman LJ, Eger EI 2nd, Laster MJ. Obesity modestly affects inhaled anesthetic kinetics in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1864–1870.
61. Leeson S, Roberson RS, Philip JH. Hypoventilation after inhaled anesthesia results in reanesthetization. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119:829–835.
62. Hendrickx JF, Lemmens HJ, Shafer SL. Do distribution volumes and clearances relate to tissue volumes and blood flows? A computer simulation. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2006;6:7.
63. Nordmann GR, Read JA, Sale SM, Stoddart PA, Wolf AR. Emergence and recovery in children after desflurane and isoflurane anaesthesia: effect of anaesthetic duration. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:779–785.
64. Cullen BF, Eger EI 2nd. Diffusion of nitrous oxide, cyclopropane, and halothane through human skin and amniotic membrane. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;36:168–173.
65. Fassoulaki A, Lockhart SH, Freire BA, et al. Percutaneous loss of desflurane, isoflurane, and halothane in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:479–483.
66. Laster MJ, Taheri S, Eger EI 2nd, Liu J, Rampil IJ, Dwyer R. Visceral losses of desflurane, isoflurane, and halothane in swine. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:209–212.
67. Yoshimura N, Holaday DA, Fiserova-Bergerova V. Metabolism of methoxyflurane in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;44:372–379.
68. Neumann MA, Weiskopf RB, Gong DH, Eger EI 2nd, Ionescu P. Changing from isoflurane to desflurane toward the end of anesthesia does not accelerate recovery in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:914–921.
69. Fink BR. Diffusion anoxia. *Anesthesiology*. 1955;16:511–519.
70. Rackow H, Salanitre E, Frumin MJ. Dilution of alveolar gases during nitrous oxide excretion in man. *J Appl Physiol*. 1961;16:723–728.
71. Kharasch ED. Adverse drug reactions with halogenated anesthetics. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2008;84:158–162.
72. Kharasch ED, Hankins DC, Fenstamaker K, Cox K. Human halothane metabolism, lipid peroxidation, and cytochromes P(450)2A6 and P(450)3A4. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 2000;55:853–859.
73. Kharasch ED, Hankins D, Mautz D, Thummel KE. Identification of the enzyme responsible for oxidative halothane metabolism: implications for prevention of halothane hepatitis. *Lancet*. 1996;347:1367–1371.
74. Garton KJ, Yuen P, Meinwald J, Thummel KE, Kharasch ED. Stereoselective metabolism of enflurane by human liver cytochrome P450 2E1. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 1995;23:1426–1430.
75. Kenna JG. Immunoallergic drug-induced hepatitis: lessons from halothane. *J Hepatol*. 1997;26(suppl 1):5–12.
76. Gut J, Christen U, Huwyler J. Mechanisms of halothane toxicity: novel insights. *Pharmacol Ther*. 1993;58:133–155.
77. Joshi PH, Conn HO. The syndrome of methoxyflurane-associated hepatitis. *Ann Intern Med*. 1974;80:395–401.
78. Kharasch ED, Hankins DC, Thummel KE. Human kidney methoxyflurane and sevoflurane metabolism. Intrarenal fluoride production as a possible mechanism of methoxyflurane nephrotoxicity. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:689–699.
79. Cousins MJ, Mazze RI. Methoxyflurane nephrotoxicity. A study of dose response in man. *JAMA*. 1973;225:1611–1616.
80. Kharasch ED, Schroeder JL, Liggitt HD, Park SB, Whittington D, Sheffels P. New insights into the mechanism of methoxyflurane nephrotoxicity and implications for anesthetic development (part 1): identification of the nephrotoxic metabolic pathway. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:726–736.
81. Kharasch ED, Frink EJ Jr, Artru A, Michalowski P, Rooke GA, Nogami W. Long-duration low-flow sevoflurane and isoflurane effects on postoperative renal and hepatic function. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1511–1520; table of contents.
82. Christ DD, Satoh H, Kenna JG, Pohl LR. Potential metabolic basis for enflurane hepatitis and the apparent cross-sensitization between enflurane and halothane. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 1988;16:135–140.
83. Mazze RI, Woodruff RE, Heerdt ME. Isoniazid-induced enflurane defluorination in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:5–8.
84. Kharasch ED, Thummel KE. Identification of cytochrome P450 2E1 as the predominant enzyme catalyzing human liver microsomal defluorination of sevoflurane, isoflurane, and methoxyflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:795–807.
85. Christ DD, Kenna JG, Kammerer W, Satoh H, Pohl LR. Enflurane metabolism produces covalently bound liver adducts recognized by antibodies from patients with halothane hepatitis. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:833–838.
86. Mazze RI, Callan CM, Galvez ST, Delgado-Herrera L, Mayer DB. The effects of sevoflurane on serum creatinine and blood urea nitrogen concentrations: a retrospective, twenty-two-center, comparative evaluation of renal function in adult surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:683–688.
87. Brunt EM, White H, Marsh JW, Holtmann B, Peters MG. Fulminant hepatic failure after repeated exposure to isoflurane anesthesia: a case report. *Hepatology*. 1991;13:1017–1021.
88. Mazze RI, Cousins MJ, Barr GA. Renal effects and metabolism of isoflurane in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40:536–542.
89. Sutton TS, Koblin DD, Gruenke LD, et al. Fluoride metabolites after prolonged exposure of volunteers and patients to desflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:180–185.
90. Martin JL, Plevak DJ, Flannery KD, et al. Hepatotoxicity after desflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:1125–1129.
91. Jones RM, Koblin DD, Cashman JN, Eger EI 2nd, Johnson BH, Damask MC. Biotransformation and hepato-renal function in volunteers after exposure to desflurane (I-653). *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:482–487.
92. Anderson JS, Rose NR, Martin JL, Eger EI, Njoku DB. Desflurane hepatitis associated with hapten and autoantigen-specific IgG4 antibodies. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1452–1453; table of contents.
93. Holaday DA, Smith FR. Clinical characteristics and biotransformation of sevoflurane in healthy human volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:100–106.
94. Kharasch ED, Armstrong AS, Gunn K, Artru A, Cox K, Karol MD. Clinical sevoflurane metabolism and disposition. II. The role of cytochrome P450 2E1 in fluoride and hexafluoroisopropanol formation. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1379–1388.
95. Kobayashi Y, Ochiai R, Takeda J, Sekiguchi H, Fukushima K. Serum and urinary inorganic fluoride concentrations after prolonged inhalation of sevoflurane in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:753–757.
96. Turillazzi E, D'Errico S, Neri M, Riezzo I, Fineschi V. A fatal case of fulminant hepatic necrosis following sevoflurane anesthesia. *Toxicol Pathol*. 2007;35:840–845.
97. Terrell RC. The invention and development of enflurane, isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:531–533.
98. Krishna DR, Klotz U. Extrahepatic metabolism of drugs in humans. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1994;26:144–160.
99. Lohr JW, Willsky GR, Acara MA. Renal drug metabolism. *Pharmacol Rev*. 1998;50:107–141.
100. Wilkinson GR. Drug metabolism and variability among patients in drug response. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:2211–2221.
101. Kharasch ED. Metabolism and toxicity of the new anesthetic agents. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 1996;47:7–14.
102. Weiss CF, Glazko AJ, Weston JK. Chloramphenicol in the newborn infant. A physiologic explanation of its toxicity when given in excessive doses. *N Engl J Med*. 1960;262:787–794.

103. Young WS, Lietman PS. Chloramphenicol glucuronyl transferase: assay, ontogeny and inducibility. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1978;204:203–211.
104. Kalow W. Human pharmacogenomics: the development of a science. *Hum Genomics*. 2004;1:375–380.
105. Ingelman-Sundberg M, Oscarson M, McLellan RA. Polymorphic human cytochrome P450 enzymes: an opportunity for individualized drug treatment. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 1999;20:342–349.
106. Summary of the National Halothane Study. Possible association between halothane anesthesia and postoperative hepatic necrosis. *JAMA*. 1966;197:775–788.
107. Ray DC, Drummond GB. Halothane hepatitis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:84–99.
108. Warner LO, Beach TP, Garvin JP, Warner EJ. Halothane and children: the first quarter century. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:838–840.
109. Wark HJ. Postoperative jaundice in children. The influence of halothane. *Anaesthesia*. 1983;38:237–242.
110. Wark H, O'Halloran M, Overton J. Prospective study of liver function in children following multiple halothane anaesthetics at short intervals. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:1224–1228.
111. Tung D, Yoshida EM, Wang CS, Steinbrecher UP. Severe desflurane hepatotoxicity after colon surgery in an elderly patient. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:133–136.
112. Ihtiyar E, Algin C, Haciolu A, Isiksoy S. Fatal isoflurane hepatotoxicity without re-exposure. *Indian J Gastroenterol*. 2006;25:41–42.
113. Peiris LJ, Agrawal A, Morris JE, Basnyat PS. Isoflurane hepatitis-induced liver failure: a case report. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24:477–479.
114. Turner GB, O'Rourke D, Scott GO, Beringer TR. Fatal hepatotoxicity after re-exposure to isoflurane: a case report and review of the literature. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2000;12:955–959.
115. Lewis JH, Zimmerman HJ, Ishak KG, Mullick FG. Enflurane hepatotoxicity. A clinicopathologic study of 24 cases. *Ann Intern Med*. 1983;98:984–992.
116. Lischner MW, MacNabb GM, Galambos JT. Fatal hepatic necrosis following surgery. Possible relation to methoxyflurance anesthesia. *Arch Intern Med*. 1967;120:725–728.
117. Kharasch ED. Biotransformation of sevoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:S27–38.
118. Kharasch ED, Karol MD, Lanni C, Sawchuk R. Clinical sevoflurane metabolism and disposition. I. Sevoflurane and metabolite pharmacokinetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1369–1378.
119. Ronis MJ, Huang J, Longo V, Tindberg N, Ingelman-Sundberg M, Badger TM. Expression and distribution of cytochrome P450 enzymes in male rat kidney: effects of ethanol, acetone and dietary conditions. *Biochem Pharmacol*. 1998;55:123–129.
120. Hotchkiss JA, Kim H, Hahn FF, Novak RF, Dahl AR. Pyridine induction of Sprague-Dawley rat renal cytochrome P4502E1: immunohistochemical localization and quantitation. *Toxicol Lett*. 1995;78:1–7.
121. Chen TL, Chen TG, Tai YT, et al. Propofol inhibits renal cytochrome P450 activity and enflurane defluorination in vitro in hamsters. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47:680–686.
122. Knights KM, Rowland A, Miners JO. Renal drug metabolism in humans: the potential for drug-endobiotic interactions involving cytochrome P450 (CYP) and UDP-glucuronosyltransferase (UGT). *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2013.
123. Mazze RI. Methoxyflurane revisited: tale of an anesthetic from cradle to grave. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:843–846.
124. Mazze RI, Cousins MJ, Kosek JC. Dose-related methoxyflurane nephrotoxicity in rats: a biochemical and pathologic correlation. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;36:571–587.
125. Baden JM, Rice SA, Mazze RI. Deuterated methoxyflurane anesthesia and renal function in Fischer 344 rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:203–206.
126. Mazze RI, Hitt BA, Cousins MJ. Effect of enzyme induction with phenobarbital on the in vivo and in vitro defluorination of isoflurane and methoxyflurane. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1974;190:523–529.
127. Cousins MJ, Mazze RI, Kosek JC, Hitt BA, Love FV. The etiology of methoxyflurane nephrotoxicity. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1974;190:530–541.
128. Taves DR, Fry BW, Freeman RB, Gillies AJ. Toxicity following methoxyflurane anesthesia. II. Fluoride concentrations in nephrotoxicity. *JAMA*. 1970;214:91–95.
129. Mazze RI, Shue GL, Jackson SH. Renal dysfunction associated with methoxyflurane anesthesia. A randomized, prospective clinical evaluation. *JAMA*. 1971;216:278–288.
130. Mazze RI, Trudell JR, Cousins MJ. Methoxyflurane metabolism and renal dysfunction: clinical correlation in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:247–252.
131. Murray JM, Trinick TR. Plasma fluoride concentrations during and after prolonged anesthesia: a comparison of halothane and isoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:236–240.
132. Spencer EM, Willatts SM, Prys-Roberts C. Plasma inorganic fluoride concentrations during and after prolonged (greater than 24 h) isoflurane sedation: effect on renal function. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:731–737.
133. Anders MW. Formation and toxicity of anesthetic degradation products. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2005;45:147–176.
134. Keller KA, Callan C, Prokocimer P, et al. Inhalation toxicity study of a haloalkene degradant of sevoflurane, compound A (PIFE), in Sprague-Dawley rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:1220–1232.
135. Gonsowski CT, Laster MJ, Eger EI 2nd, Ferrell LD, Kerschmann RL. Toxicity of compound A in rats. Effect of increasing duration of administration. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:566–573.
136. Kharasch ED, Powers KM, Artru AA. Comparison of Amsorb, sodalime, and Baralyme degradation of volatile anesthetics and formation of carbon monoxide and compound a in swine in vivo. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:173–182.
137. Bito H, Ikeda K. Renal and hepatic function in surgical patients after low-flow sevoflurane or isoflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:173–176.
138. Kharasch ED, Frink Ej Jr, Zager R, Bowdle TA, Artru A, Nogami WM. Assessment of low-flow sevoflurane and isoflurane effects on renal function using sensitive markers of tubular toxicity. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1238–1253.
139. Bito H, Ikeuchi Y, Ikeda K. Effects of low-flow sevoflurane anesthesia on renal function: comparison with high-flow sevoflurane anesthesia and low-flow isoflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1231–1237.
140. Conzen PF, Kharasch ED, Czerner SF, et al. Low-flow sevoflurane compared with low-flow isoflurane anesthesia in patients with stable renal insufficiency. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:578–584.
141. Eger EI 2nd, Gong D, Koblin DD, et al. Dose-related biochemical markers of renal injury after sevoflurane versus desflurane anesthesia in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:1154–1163.
142. Ebert TJ, Frink EJ Jr. Kharasch ED. Absence of biochemical evidence for renal and hepatic dysfunction after 8 hours of 1.25 minimum alveolar concentration sevoflurane anesthesia in volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:601–610.
143. Higuchi H, Sumita S, Wada H, et al. Effects of sevoflurane and isoflurane on renal function and on possible markers of nephrotoxicity. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:307–322.
144. Higuchi H, Adachi Y, Wada H, Kanno M, Satoh T. The effects of low-flow sevoflurane and isoflurane anesthesia on renal function in patients with stable moderate renal insufficiency. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:650–655.
145. Kharasch ED, Schroeder JL, Sheffels P, Liggitt HD. Influence of sevoflurane on the metabolism and renal effects of compound A in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:1183–1188.
146. Kharasch ED, Thorning D, Garton K, Hankins DC, Kilty CG. Role of renal cysteine conjugate beta-lyase in the mechanism of compound A nephrotoxicity in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:160–171.
147. Kharasch ED, Hoffman GM, Thorning D, Hankins DC, Kilty CG. Role of the renal cysteine conjugate beta-lyase pathway in inhaled compound A nephrotoxicity in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1624–1633.
148. Altuntas TG, Park SB, Kharasch ED. Sulfoxidation of cysteine and mercapturic acid conjugates of the sevoflurane degradation product fluoromethyl-2,2-difluoro-1-(trifluoromethyl)vinyl ether (compound A). *Chem Res Toxicol*. 2004;17:435–445.
149. Eger EI 2nd, Ionescu P, Laster MJ, Gong D, Weiskopf RB, Kerschmann RL. Quantitative differences in the production and toxicity of CF2=BrCl versus CH2F-O-C(=CF2)(CF3) (compound A): the safety of halothane does not indicate the safety of sevoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:1164–1170.
150. Wissing H, Kuhn I, Warnken U, Dudziak R. Carbon monoxide production from desflurane, enflurane, halothane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane with dry soda lime. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1205–1212.
151. Keijzer C, Perez RS, de Lange JJ. Carbon monoxide production from desflurane and six types of carbon dioxide absorbents in a patient model. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:815–818.

152. Baxter PJ, Garton K, Kharasch ED. Mechanistic aspects of carbon monoxide formation from volatile anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:929–941.
153. Fang ZX, Eger EI 2nd, Laster MJ, Chortkoff BS, Kandel L, Ionescu P. Carbon monoxide production from degradation of desflurane, enflurane, isoflurane, halothane, and sevoflurane by soda lime and Baralyme. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:1187–1193.
154. Woehlck HJ, Dunning M 3rd, Connolly LA. Reduction in the incidence of carbon monoxide exposures in humans undergoing general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:228–234.
155. Berry PD, Sessler DI, Larson MD. Severe carbon monoxide poisoning during desflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:613–616.
156. Wu J, Previte JP, Adler E, Myers T, Ball J, Gunter JB. Spontaneous ignition, explosion, and fire with sevoflurane and barium hydroxide lime. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:534–537.
157. Laster M, Roth P, Eger EI 2nd. Fires from the interaction of anesthetics with desiccated absorbent. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:769–774; table of contents.
158. Baum J, van Aken H. Calcium hydroxide lime—a new carbon dioxide absorbent: a rationale for judicious use of different absorbents. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2000;17:597–600.
159. Murray JM, Renfrew CW, Bedi A, McCrystal CB, Jones DS, Fee JP. Amsorb: a new carbon dioxide absorbent for use in anesthetic breathing systems. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1342–1348.
160. Kobayashi S, Bito H, Morita K, Katoh T, Sato S. Amsorb Plus and Dragersorb Free, two new-generation carbon dioxide absorbents that produce a low compound A concentration while providing sufficient CO2 absorption capacity in simulated sevoflurane anesthesia. *J Anesth*. 2004;18:277–281.
161. Struys MM, Bouche MP, Rolly G, et al. Production of compound A and carbon monoxide in circle systems: an in vitro comparison of two carbon dioxide absorbents. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59:584–589.
162. Kobayashi S, Bito H, Obata Y, Katoh T, Sato S. Compound A concentration in the circle absorber system during low-flow sevoflurane anesthesia: comparison of Dragersorb Free, Amsorb, and Sodasorb II. *J Clin Anesth*. 2003;15:33–37.
163. Sanders RD, Weimann J, Maze M. Biologic effects of nitrous oxide: a mechanistic and toxicologic review. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:707–722.
164. Reynolds E. Vitamin B12, folic acid, and the nervous system. *Lancet Neurol*. 2006;5:949–960.
165. Doran M, Rassam SS, Jones LM, Underhill S. Toxicity after intermittent inhalation of nitrous oxide for analgesia. *BMJ*. 2004;328:1364–1365.
166. Keddie S, Adams A, Kelso ARC, et al. No laughing matter: subacute degeneration of the spinal cord due to nitrous oxide inhalation. *J Neurol*. 2018.
167. Garakani A, Jaffe RJ, Savla D, et al. Neurologic, psychiatric, and other medical manifestations of nitrous oxide abuse: a systematic review of the case literature. *Am J Addict*. 2016;25:358–369.
168. Kaar SJ, Ferris J, Waldron J, Devaney M, Ramsey J, Winstock AR. Up: the rise of nitrous oxide abuse. An international survey of contemporary nitrous oxide use. *J Psychopharmacol*. 2016;30:395–401.
169. Fiskerstrand T, Ueland PM, Refsum H. Folate depletion induced by methotrexate affects methionine synthase activity and its susceptibility to inactivation by nitrous oxide. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1997;282:1305–1311.
170. Duma A, Cartmill C, Blood J, Sharma A, Kharasch ED, Nagele P. The hematological effects of nitrous oxide anesthesia in pediatric patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120:1325–1330.
171. Amos RJ, Amess JA, Hinds CJ, Mollin DL. Incidence and pathogenesis of acute megaloblastic bone-marrow change in patients receiving intensive care. *Lancet*. 1982;2:835–838.
172. Sesso RM, Iunes Y, Melo AC. Myeloneuropathy following nitrous oxide anesthaesia in a patient with macrocytic anaemia. *Neuroradiology*. 1999;41:588–590.
173. Hadzic A, Glab K, Sanborn KV, Thys DM. Severe neurologic deficit after nitrous oxide anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:863–866.
174. McNeely JK, Buczulinski B, Rosner DR. Severe neurological impairment in an infant after nitrous oxide anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1549–1550.
175. Ilniczky S, Jelencsik I, Kenez J, Szirmai I. MR findings in subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord caused by nitrous oxide anaesthesia—two cases. *Eur J Neurol*. 2002;9:101–104.
176. Selzer RR, Rosenblatt DS, Laxova R, Hogan K. Adverse effect of nitrous oxide in a child with 5,10-methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase deficiency. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:45–50.
177. McCully KS. Vascular pathology of homocysteinemia: implications for the pathogenesis of arteriosclerosis. *Am J Pathol*. 1969;56:111–128.
178. Nygard O, Nordrehaug JE, Refsum H, Ueland PM, Farstad M, Vollset SE. Plasma homocysteine levels and mortality in patients with coronary artery disease. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:230–236.
179. Mayer EL, Jacobsen DW, Robinson K. Homocysteine and coronary atherosclerosis. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1996;27:517–527.
180. Kaul S, Zadeh AA, Shah PK. Homocysteine hypothesis for atherothrombotic cardiovascular disease: not validated. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2006;48:914–923.
181. Ntaios G, Savopoulos C, Grekas D, Hatzitolios A. The controversial role of B-vitamins in cardiovascular risk: an update. *Arch Cardiovasc Dis*. 2009;102:847–854.
182. Badner NH, Beattie WS, Freeman D, Spence JD. Nitrous oxide-induced increased homocysteine concentrations are associated with increased postoperative myocardial ischemia in patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1073–1079.
183. Myles PS, Leslie K, Chan MT, et al. Avoidance of nitrous oxide for patients undergoing major surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:221–231.
184. Leslie K, Myles PS, Chan MT, et al. Nitrous oxide and long-term morbidity and mortality in the ENIGMA trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:387–393.
185. Myles PS, Leslie K, Chan MT, et al. The safety of addition of nitrous oxide to general anaesthesia in at-risk patients having major non-cardiac surgery (ENIGMA-II): a randomised, single-blind trial. *Lancet*. 2014;384:1446–1454.
186. Leslie K, Myles P, Devereaux PJ, et al. Nitrous oxide and serious morbidity and mortality in the POISE trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2013.
187. Indraratna P, Alexopoulos C, Celermajer D, Alford K. Acute ST-elevation myocardial infarction, a unique complication of recreational nitrous oxide use. *Heart Lung Circ*. 2017;26:e41–e43.
188. Nagele P, Zeugswetter B, Wiener C, et al. Influence of methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase gene polymorphisms on homocysteine concentrations after nitrous oxide anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:36–43.
189. Nagele P, Zeugswetter B, Eberle C, Hupfl M, Mittlbock M, Fodinger M. A common gene variant in methionine synthase reductase is not associated with peak homocysteine concentrations after nitrous oxide anesthesia. *Pharmacogenet Genomics*. 2009;19:325–329.
190. Rao LK, Francis AM, Wilcox U, Miller JP, Nagele P. Pre-operative vitamin B infusion and prevention of nitrous oxide-induced homocysteine increase. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:710–715.
191. Nunn JF. Clinical aspects of the interaction between nitrous oxide and vitamin B12. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:3–13.
192. Myles PS, Leslie K, Silbert B, Paech MJ, Peyton P. A review of the risks and benefits of nitrous oxide in current anaesthetic practice. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2004;32:165–172.
193. Rappaport B, Mellon RD, Simone A, Woodcock J. Defining safe use of anesthesia in children. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:1387–1390.
194. Hudson AE, Hemmings HC Jr. Are anaesthetics toxic to the brain? *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:30–37.
195. Jevtovic-Todorovic V, Hartman RE, Izumi Y, et al. Early exposure to common anesthetic agents causes widespread neurodegeneration in the developing rat brain and persistent learning deficits. *J Neurosci*. 2003;23:876–882.
196. Loepke AW, Soriano SG. An assessment of the effects of general anesthetics on developing brain structure and neurocognitive function. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1681–1707.
197. Slikker W Jr, Zou X, Hotchkiss CE, et al. Ketamine-induced neuronal cell death in the perinatal rhesus monkey. *Toxicol Sci*. 2007;98:145–158.
198. Zou X, Liu F, Zhang X, et al. Inhalation anesthetic-induced neuronal damage in the developing rhesus monkey. *Neurotoxicol Teratol*. 2011;33:592–597.
199. Brambrink AM, Evers AS, Avidan MS, et al. Isoflurane-induced neuroapoptosis in the neonatal rhesus macaque brain. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:834–841.
200. Brambrink AM, Evers AS, Avidan MS, et al. Ketamine-induced neuroapoptosis in the fetal and neonatal rhesus macaque brain. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:372–384.

201. Schenning KJ, Noguchi KK, Martin LD, et al. Isoflurane exposure leads to apoptosis of neurons and oligodendrocytes in 20- and 40-day old rhesus macaques. *Neurotoxicol Teratol*. 2017;60:63–68.
202. Gascon E, Klauser P, Kiss JZ, Vutskits L. Potentially toxic effects of anaesthetics on the developing central nervous system. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:213–224.
203. Mellon RD, Simone AF, Rappaport BA. Use of anesthetic agents in neonates and young children. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:509–520.
204. Vutskits L, Davis PJ, Hansen TG. Anesthetics and the developing brain: time for a change in practice? A pro/con debate. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22:973–980.
205. Graham MR, Brownell M, Chateau DG, Dragan RD, Burchill C, Fransoo RR. Neurodevelopmental assessment in kindergarten in children exposed to general anesthesia before the age of 4 years: a retrospective matched cohort study. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:667–677.
206. Glatz P, Sandin RH, Pedersen NL, Bonamy AK, Eriksson LI, Granath F. Association of anesthesia and surgery during childhood with long-term academic performance. *JAMA Pediatr*. 2017;171:e163470.
207. Warner DO, Zaccariello MJ, Katusic SK, et al. Neuropsychological and behavioral outcomes after exposure of young children to procedures requiring general anesthesia: the Mayo Anesthesia Safety in Kids (MASK) study. *Anesthesiology*. 2018.
208. Davidson AJ, Sun LS. Clinical evidence for any effect of anesthesia on the developing brain. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:840–853.
209. Schneuer FJ, Bentley JP, Davidson AJ, et al. The impact of general anesthesia on child development and school performance: a population-based study. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018.
210. Davidson AJ, Disma N, de Graaff JC, et al. Neurodevelopmental outcome at 2 years of age after general anaesthesia and awake-regional anaesthesia in infancy (GAS): an international multicentre, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2016;387:239–250.
211. Axelrod D, Bell C, Feldman J, et al. *Greening the Operating Room and Perioperative Arena: Environmental Sustainability for Anesthesia Practice*. American Society of Anesthesiologists; 2014.
212. Ravishankara AR, Daniel JS, Portmann RW. Nitrous oxide (N2O): the dominant ozone-depleting substance emitted in the 21st century. *Science*. 2009;326:123–125.
213. Langbein T, Sonntag H, Trapp D, et al. Volatile anaesthetics and the atmosphere: atmospheric lifetimes and atmospheric effects of halothane, enflurane, isoflurane, desflurane and sevoflurane. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:66–73.
214. Ryan SM, Nielsen CJ. Global warming potential of inhaled anesthetics: application to clinical use. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:92–98.
215. *Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis*. New York: Cambridge University Press; 2007.
216. Austin J, Butchart N, Shine KP. Possibility of an arctic ozone hole in a double-CO2 climate. *Nature*. 1992;360:221–225.
217. Forster P, Ramaswamy V, Artaxo P, et al. In: Solomon S, Qin D, Manning M, eds. *Changes in Atmospheric Constituents and in Radiative Forcing, Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis*. Cambridge: Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change; 2007.
218. Ryan S, Sherman J. Sustainable anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:921–923.
219. Ishizawa Y. Special article: general anesthetic gases and the global environment. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:213–217.
220. Gutierrez MJF, Baxter D, Hunter C, Svoboda K. Nitrous oxide (N2O) emissions from waste and biomass to energy plants. *Waste Manag Res*. 2005;23:133–147.
221. Maskell K, Mintzer IM, Callander BA. Basic science of climate change. *Lancet*. 1993;342:1027–1031.
222. Schmeltekopf AL, Goldan PD, Henderson WR, et al. Measurements of stratospheric CFCl3, CF2Cl2, and N2O. *Geophys Res Lett*. 1975;2:393–396.
223. Sherman SJ, Cullen BF. Nitrous oxide and the greenhouse effect. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:816–817.
224. Hammitt JK, Camm F, Connell PS, et al. Future emission scenarios for chemicals that may deplete stratospheric ozone. *Nature*. 1987;330:711–716.
225. Langbein T, Sonntag H, Trapp D, et al. Volatile anaesthetics and the atmosphere: atmospheric lifetimes and atmospheric effects of halothane, enflurane, isoflurane, desflurane and sevoflurane. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:66–73.
226. Brown AC, Canosa-Mas CE, Parr AD, Pierce JM, Wayne RP. Tropospheric lifetimes of halogenated anaesthetics. *Nature*. 1989;341:635–637.
227. Executive Summary. *Scientific Assessment of Ozone Depletion: 2002*. Geneva: World Meteorological Organization; 2002. Global Ozone Research and Monitoring Project Report No. 47.
228. Barwise JA, Lancaster LJ, Michaels D, Pope JE, Berry JM. Technical communication: an initial evaluation of a novel anesthetic scavenging interface. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1064–1067.
229. McGregor DG. Occupational exposure to trace concentrations of waste anesthetic gases. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2000;75:273–277.
230. Burm AG. Occupational hazards of inhalational anaesthetics. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2003;17:147–161.
231. Vieira E, Cleaton-Jones P, Austin JC, Moyes DG, Shaw R. Effects of low concentrations of nitrous oxide on rat fetuses. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:175–177.
232. Fujinaga M, Mazze RI, Baden JM, Fantel AG, Shepard TH. Rat whole embryo culture: an in vitro model for testing nitrous oxide teratogenicity. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:401–404.
233. Yilmaz S, Calbayram NC. Exposure to anesthetic gases among operating room personnel and risk of genotoxicity: a systematic review of the human biomonitoring studies. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;35:326–331.
234. Spence AA. Environmental pollution by inhalation anaesthetics. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:96–103.
235. Szyfter K, Szulc R, Mikstacki A, Stachecki I, Rydzanicz M, Jaloszynski P. Genotoxicity of inhalation anaesthetics: DNA lesions generated by sevoflurane in vitro and in vivo. *J Appl Genet*. 2004;45:369–374.
236. Friedman JM. Teratogen update: anesthetic agents. *Teratology*. 1988;37:69–77.
237. Kuczkowski KM. Nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy: what are the risks of anesthesia? *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 2004;59:52–56.
238. Reitman E, Flood P. Anaesthetic considerations for non-obstetric surgery during pregnancy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(suppl 1):i72–i78.
239. Sessler DI, Badgwell JM. Exposure of postoperative nurses to exhaled anesthetic gases. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:1083–1088.
240. McGregor DG, Senjem DH, Mazze RI. Trace nitrous oxide levels in the postanesthesia care unit. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:472–475.
241. Krenzischek DA, Schaefer J, Nolan M, et al. Phase I collaborative pilot study: waste anesthetic gas levels in the PACU. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2002;17:227–239.
242. Cullen SC, Gross EG. The anesthetic properties of xenon in animals and human beings, with additional observations on krypton. *Science*. 1951;113:580–582.
243. Preckel B, Weber NC, Sanders RD, Maze M, Schlack W. Molecular mechanisms transducing the anesthetic, analgesic, and organ-protective actions of xenon. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:187–197.
244. Sanders RD, Franks NP, Maze M. Xenon: no stranger to anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:709–717.
245. Sanders RD, Maze M. Xenon: from stranger to guardian. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;18:405–411.
246. Goto T, Saito H, Shinkai M, Nakata Y, Ichinose F, Morita S. Xenon provides faster emergence from anesthesia than does nitrous oxide-sevoflurane or nitrous oxide-isoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1273–1278.
247. Rossaint R, Reyle-Hahn M, Schulte Am Esch J, et al. Multicenter randomized comparison of the efficacy and safety of xenon and isoflurane in patients undergoing elective surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:6–13.
248. Law LS, Lo EA, Gan TJ. Xenon anesthesia: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:678–697.
249. Goto T, Hanne P, Ishiguro Y, Ichinose F, Niimi Y, Morita S. Cardiovascular effects of xenon and nitrous oxide in patients during fentanyl-midazolam anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59:1178–1183.
250. Wappler F, Rossaint R, Baumert J, et al. Multicenter randomized comparison of xenon and isoflurane on left ventricular function in patients undergoing elective surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:463–471.
251. Baumert JH, Hein M, Hecker KE, Satlow S, Neef P, Rossaint R. Xenon or propofol anaesthesia for patients at cardiovascular risk in non-cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:605–611.

252. Lachmann B, Armbruster S, Schairer W, et al. Safety and efficacy of xenon in routine use as an inhalational anaesthetic. *Lancet*. 1990;335:1413–1415.
253. Wappler F. Anesthesia for patients with a history of malignant hyperthermia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:417–422.
254. Al Tmimi L, Devroe S, Dewinter G, et al. Xenon as an adjuvant to propofol anesthesia in patients undergoing off-pump coronary artery bypass graft surgery: a pragmatic randomized controlled clinical trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:1118–1128.
255. Al Tmimi L, Van de Velde M, Herijgers P, et al. Xenon for the prevention of postoperative delirium in cardiac surgery: study protocol for a randomized controlled clinical trial. *Trials*. 2015;16:449.
256. Hofland J, Ouattara A, Fellahi JL, et al. Effect of xenon anesthesia compared to sevoflurane and total intravenous anesthesia for coronary artery bypass graft surgery on postoperative cardiac troponin release: an international, multicenter, phase 3, single-blinded, randomized noninferiority trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:918–933.
257. Stevanovic A, Schaefer P, Coburn M, et al. Renal function following xenon anesthesia for partial nephrectomy-an explorative analysis of a randomized controlled study. *PLoS One*. 2017;12:e0181022.
258. Arola O, Saraste A, Laitio R, et al. Inhaled xenon attenuates myocardial damage in comatose survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest: the xe-hypotheca trial. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;70:2652–2660.
259. Laitio R, Hynninen M, Arola O, et al. Effect of inhaled xenon on cerebral white matter damage in comatose survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2016;315:1120–1128.
260. Coburn M, Baumert JH, Roertgen D, et al. Emergence and early cognitive function in the elderly after xenon or desflurane anaesthesia: a double-blinded randomized controlled trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:756–762.
261. Coburn M, Kunitz O, Baumert JH, Hecker K, Rossaint R. Patients' self-evaluation after 4-12 weeks following xenon or propofol anaesthesia: a comparison. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22:870–874.
262. Coburn M, Sanders RD, Maze M, et al. The hip fracture surgery in elderly patients (HIPELD) study to evaluate xenon anaesthesia for the prevention of postoperative delirium: a multicentre, randomized clinical trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:127–137.
263. Nakata Y, Goto T, Niimi Y, Morita S. Cost analysis of xenon anesthesia: a comparison with nitrous oxide-isoflurane and nitrous oxide-sevoflurane anesthesia. *J Clin Anesth*. 1999;11:477–481.
264. Rawat S, Dingley J. Closed-circuit xenon delivery using a standard anesthesia workstation. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:101–109.
265. Dingley J, Findlay GP, Foex BA, Mecklenburgh J, Esmail M, Little RA. A closed xenon anesthesia delivery system. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:173–176.
266. Dingley J, Mason RS. A cryogenic machine for selective recovery of xenon from breathing system waste gases. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1312–1318; table of contents.
267. Zhang P, Ohara A, Mashimo T, Imanaka H, Uchiyama A, Yoshiya I. Pulmonary resistance in dogs: a comparison of xenon with nitrous oxide. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42:547–553.
268. Lockwood G. Expansion of air bubbles in aqueous solutions of nitrous oxide or xenon. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:282–286.
269. Coburn M, Kunitz O, Apfel CC, Hein M, Fries M, Rossaint R. Incidence of postoperative nausea and emetic episodes after xenon anaesthesia compared with propofol-based anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:787–791.
270. Fahlenkamp AV, Stoppe C, Cremer J, et al. Nausea and vomiting following balanced xenon anesthesia compared to sevoflurane: a post-hoc explorative analysis of a randomized controlled trial. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0153807.
271. Dickinson R, Franks NP. Bench-to-bedside review: molecular pharmacology and clinical use of inert gases in anesthesia and neuroprotection. *Crit Care*. 2010;14:229.

21

Pulmonary Pharmacology and Inhaled Anesthetics

OLEG V. EVGENOV, YAFEN LIANG, YANDONG JIANG, and
JAMES L. BLAIR

KEY POINTS

- Inhaled anesthetics affect every part of physiology of the lungs and their pulmonary pharmacology is complex.
- Volatile anesthetics produce bronchodilation through decreases in cytoplasmic ionized calcium concentration and/or a reduction in calcium sensitivity of airway smooth muscle. Volatile anesthetics also attenuate an increase in pulmonary airway resistance induced by chemical and mechanical stimulation.
- Inhaled anesthetics reduce the rate of mucous clearance and affect function of type II alveolar cells; these effects can potentially contribute to postoperative pulmonary complications.
- Volatile anesthetics produce a biphasic response in pulmonary vascular smooth muscle. Although inhibition of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction by volatile anesthetic is an overall small effect, it can contribute to worsening of hypoxemia in patients with underlying pulmonary disease.
- Volatile anesthetics depress respiratory function through a diminished respiratory drive and an increase in upper airway collapsibility. Following extubation, even at residual concentrations, volatile anesthetics can severely impair peripheral chemoreceptor inputs and hypoxic arousal reflexes.
- Volatile anesthetics produce dose-dependent reductions in tidal volume and minute ventilation, cause tachypnea, and blunt ventilatory response to hypercapnia and hypoxia.
- During anesthesia with volatile agents, diaphragmatic function remains relatively well preserved, whereas inspiratory rib cage muscles are significantly depressed resulting in insufficiency of breathing or paradoxical breathing.
- Volatile anesthetics can compromise upper airway patency. Even at low concentrations, upper airway obstruction can occur in susceptible patients, including elderly, obese, or critically ill patients.
- Volatile anesthetics vary in their ability to irritate airways and augment defensive airway reflexes. Sevoflurane causes the least amount of subjective airway irritation and is the anesthetic of choice for inhaled induction of anesthesia in infants and children.
- Preclinical and clinical evidence suggests therapeutic potential of isoflurane and sevoflurane in acute lung injury.
- Although concerns have been recently raised regarding the use of nitrous oxide, a lack of strong evidence does not justify abandoning it from clinical practice, especially considering its favorable cost-effectiveness.
- Xenon produces a fast on and off action and is a promising alternative for sedation in the critical care setting.

Introduction

Pulmonary pharmacology of inhaled anesthetics is complex. This chapter focuses in depth on pulmonary pharmacology of isoflurane, sevoflurane, desflurane, nitrous oxide, and xenon. The older anesthetics (including halothane, enflurane, and ether) are no longer in use in the developed countries, and are discussed here only for comparison. The lungs are unique in their exposure to a wide variety of physical forces including ventilation, blood flow, and surface tension as well as derangements of function caused by disease and environmental factors. The effects of inhaled anesthetics on ventilatory control, airway tone, mucociliary function, surfactant production, pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR), and acute lung injury (ALI) are examined in detail in this chapter.

The physical properties of commonly used inhalational anesthetics and clinical concerns are presented in Table 21.1.

Inhaled Anesthetics

ASTHMA AND BRONCHOSPASM OVERVIEW

Asthma is a chronic airway disease with an estimated worldwide annual death rate of 250,000. Asymptomatic asthma patients have relatively infrequent perioperative respiratory complications; however, bronchospasm

TABLE 21.1 The Physical Properties of Commonly Used Inhalational Anesthetics and Their Clinical Concerns

Property	Halothane	Isoflurane	Sevoflurane	Desflurane	Nitrous oxide	Xenon
Boiling point (°C)	50.2	49	59	24	–88	−108
Vapor pressure (mm Hg) at 20°C	241	238	157	669	38,770	–
Blood:gas partition coefficient	2.5	1.46	0.65	0.42	0.46	0.115
Oil:gas partition coefficient	224	91	47	19	1.4	1.9
Minimal alveolar concentration (MAC)	0.74	1.17	1.8	6.6	104	63-71
Metabolized in the body (%)	25	0.2	2-4	0.02	0	0
Clinical concerns	Hepatotoxicity		Compound A	Airway irritation	Gas expansion	Apnea

develops in about 9% of asthmatics in the perioperative period.[1] Twenty-five percent of asthmatics may present with wheezing after induction of anesthesia,[2] and 1.7% of asthma patients sustain a poor respiratory outcome.[3] In addition, acute bronchospasm can occur at induction, intubation, or during maintenance of anesthesia without prior history of asthma or COPD. According to the ASA Closed Claims Project[4] 40 cases of bronchospasm resulted in settled malpractice claims, with 88% involving brain damage or death. Importantly, only half of the patients had preexisting asthma or COPD. Adverse respiratory events accounted for 28% of claims related to anesthesia-related brain damage and death in the United States; they were associated with the highest mean cost per closed claim. In France, 7% of anesthesia-related deaths were also attributed to bronchospasm.[5] A nonallergic mechanism was involved in nearly 80% of cases. Although bronchospasm caused by airway irritation occurred more frequently in patients who had one or more predisposing factors including asthma, heavy tobacco smoking, or bronchitis, only 50% and 60% of patients with nonallergic and allergic bronchospasm, respectively, had history of asthma.

PHYSIOLOGY OF BRONCHIAL SMOOTH MUSCLE

Airway resistance is increased, at least in part, by an increase in bronchiolar smooth muscle (BSM) tone. BSM extends down to the terminal bronchioles and is controlled primarily by autonomic nervous system activity. Nonadrenergic, noncholinergic mechanisms, activated by the stimulation of the afferent bronchopulmonary sensory C fibers, play a role in BSM constriction to tachykinins, vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP), adenosine, and calcitonin gene-related peptides.

Asthmatic bronchiolar constriction involves complex interactions of airway nerves, smooth muscle, epithelium, and inflammatory cells. In contrast, reflex bronchoconstriction caused by airway irritation is mediated by sensory afferents in the nucleus of the solitary tract (NTS), projecting to vagal preganglionic neurons (VPN). Glutamate modulates stimulation of NTS and VPN, whereas γ aminobutyric acid (GABA) is inhibitory from NTS projecting to VPN. VPN projections to the airways release acetylcholine (ACh) predominantly onto M3 receptors, inducing bronchoconstriction. Baseline airway tone is also mediated by the vagus nerve. The muscarinic acetylcholine receptors (mAChRs, M1-M5) on BSM are G protein-coupled receptors, three of which (M1, M2, and M3) are expressed in the lungs of humans and of most mammals.[6] Belmonte and colleagues[7] reviewed the essentials of muscarinic control of mAChRs in the lungs. Neuronal inhibitory M2 muscarinic ACh receptors on parasympathetic nerves are responsible for limiting ACh release from these nerves (Fig. 21.1).

ROLE OF CALCIUM

Alterations in cytoplasmic ionized calcium concentration (ICa^{+2}) and calcium (Ca^{+2}) influx result from the interplay of cyclic nucleotides in BSM that alters myosin light chain (MLC) and MLC kinase activity. Ca^{+2}/calmodulin-dependent MLC kinase is critical for tonic smooth muscle contraction.[8] Agonist activation of BSM also involves a second messenger, cADP ribose, resulting in inositol triphosphate (IP_3)-mediated release of Ca^{+2} from sarcoplasmic reticulum via activated ryanodine channels.[9] This release is followed by an increase in sodium (Na^+) influx across the cell membrane. This localized increase in Na^+ may switch the Na^+/Ca^{2+} exchanger into reverse mode, leading to even more Ca^{2+} influx and greater bronchial constriction. Several different cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) signaling compartments exist in airway smooth muscle that are responsive to different hormones and neurotransmitters.[10] The mechanical stretch of human BSM cells also causes contraction via an influx of Ca^{2+} through unique stretch-activated nonselective cation channels.[11] Adenosine indirectly enhances contraction of airway smooth muscle via the activation of mast cells and via nerves by directly stimulating adenosine type I receptors on airway smooth muscle, thereby rapidly mobilizing ICa^{2+} stores through G proteins and IP_3 signaling. Agonist-induced stimulation of *particulate* guanylyl cyclase relaxes bronchial smooth muscle by attenuating inward Ca^{2+} current, whereas stimulation of *soluble* guanylyl cyclase by substances such as nitric oxide (NO) reduces ICa^{2+} concentration and Ca^{2+} sensitivity.[12]

HISTAMINE

Release of histamine in the airway produces reflex bronchoconstriction from actions on H1 receptors on BSM, eliciting activation of phospholipase C and protein kinase C (PKC) downstream mediators, leading to release of Ca^{2+} from intracellular stores. This leads to calcium ion entry through calcium channels, cation channels of the transient receptor potential (TRP1) channel type, and stimulation of a Na^+/

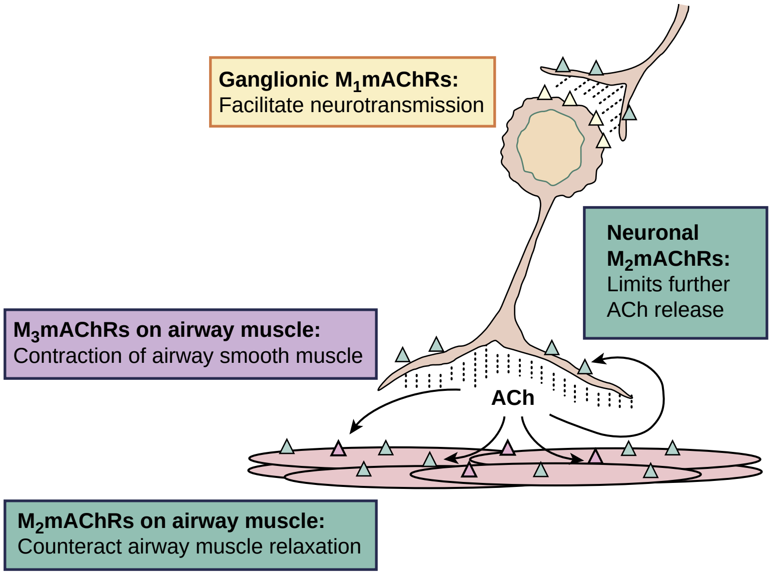

Ganglionic M_1mAChRs: Facilitate neurotransmission
Neuronal M_2mAChRs: Limits further ACh release
M_3mAChRs on airway muscle: Contraction of airway smooth muscle
ACh
M_2mAChRs on airway muscle: Counteract airway muscle relaxation

Fig. 21.1 Muscarinic acetylcholine receptors *(mAChRs)* on pulmonary parasympathetic nerves (PSN) and airway smooth muscle (ASM). Acetylcholine (ACh) released by PSN stimulates M2 mAChRs on ASM resulting in contraction. M2 mAChRs on ASM facilitate M3 mAChR-mediated contraction by counteracting the cyclic adenosine monophosphate relaxant pathway. Release of ACh by nerves is tightly controlled by M2 mAChRs found on PSN endings. M1 mAChRs found within parasympathetic ganglia are thought to facilitate cholinergic neurotransmission that is mediated primarily by nicotinic Ach receptors.[7] (Redrawn from Belmonte KE. Cholinergic pathways in the lungs and anticholinergic therapy for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Proc Am Thorac Soc.* 2005;2(4):297–304. Used with permission.)

Ca^{2+} exchanger. Nicotinic acid adenine dinucleotide phosphate has also been suggested as a potential second messenger in histamine-induced Ca^{2+} release from lysosome-like acidic compartments, functionally coupled to the endoplasmic reticulum via H1 receptor in endothelial cells.[13] This increase in bronchomotor tone is attenuated by the cholinergic antagonist atropine. The histamine-degrading enzyme, histamine N-methyltransferase, has been localized to human airway epithelium and may play a protective role against histamine-mediated bronchoconstriction.[14] Histamine-induced bronchoconstriction, measured as altered pulmonary resistance (RL) and dynamic pulmonary compliance (C_{dyn}) in response to intravenous (IV) histamine was studied in dogs to determine the bronchodilatory effects of halothane, sevoflurane, isoflurane, and enflurane. All the volatile anesthetics demonstrated an inhibitory effect on increases in RL and decreases in C_{dyn} caused by histamine.[15]

ADRENERGIC RECEPTORS

Adrenergic receptors in BSM are classified into α and β_2 types. The α2 agonists clonidine and dexmedetomidine have been shown to produce bronchodilation in central airways,[16] which may be mediated through α2 central vagolytic effects. Clinically, the β_2-receptor subtypes play an important role in BSM responsiveness. Stimulation of β_2 adrenoceptors causes cAMP-mediated relaxation via activation of protein kinase A and subsequent Ca^{2+} efflux out of the cell and into the SR. Interestingly, asthma, as well as allergy- and methacholine-induced bronchospasm, do not appear to be genetically linked to a dominant β_2-adrenoceptor gene.[17]

Respiratory epithelium releases substances that modulate BSM tone. Removal of the epithelium enhances contractile responses to ACh, histamine, or serotonin in large airways and decreases relaxation responses to isoproterenol in small airways. These responses are similar to the effect of endothelial damage on vascular smooth muscle tone. Notably, cardiopulmonary bypass does significantly affect porcine bronchiolar epithelium-mediated bronchomotor activity, in contrast to vascular endothelium-mediated smooth muscle dysfunction.[18] While endogenous epithelial factors have been identified, endogenous NO produced in respiratory epithelium likely plays a bronchodilatory role similar to that of vascular endothelium. Endothelin-1 is a potent constrictor of vascular smooth muscle and BSM that activates the IP_3 pathway and produces greater pulmonary effects compared to the systemic circulation.[19] Clinically, evaluation of the effects of the inhalational agents may be framed against a background of the major physiologic mechanisms governing normal and pathophysiologic BSM activity. These include airway disease (asthma and COPD), the overarching complex chemistry of calcium release as the BSM stimulus-contraction coupler, intrinsic factors (afferent and efferent ACh signaling, α2 receptor signaling, NO and endothelin-1, allergy and histamine release), and extrinsic factors (physical and chemical irritants, e.g., endotracheal tubes), capable of promoting reflex bronchoconstriction.

Effects of Inhaled Anesthetics

In general, all volatile anesthetics are bronchodilators, making them a good choice for patients with increased airway resistance. Using computed tomography (CT), Brown and colleagues demonstrated that halothane causes dose-dependent bronchodilation in a dog (Fig. 21.2).[20]

Eliminating indirect effects of arterial carbon dioxide (CO_2) tension is important when examining the actions of volatile anesthetics on bronchial tone, especially during spontaneous ventilation. This is because hypercapnia-induced bronchodilation and hypocapnia-induced bronchoconstriction are both attenuated by isoflurane.[21] Thus a concentration-dependent bronchodilator effect

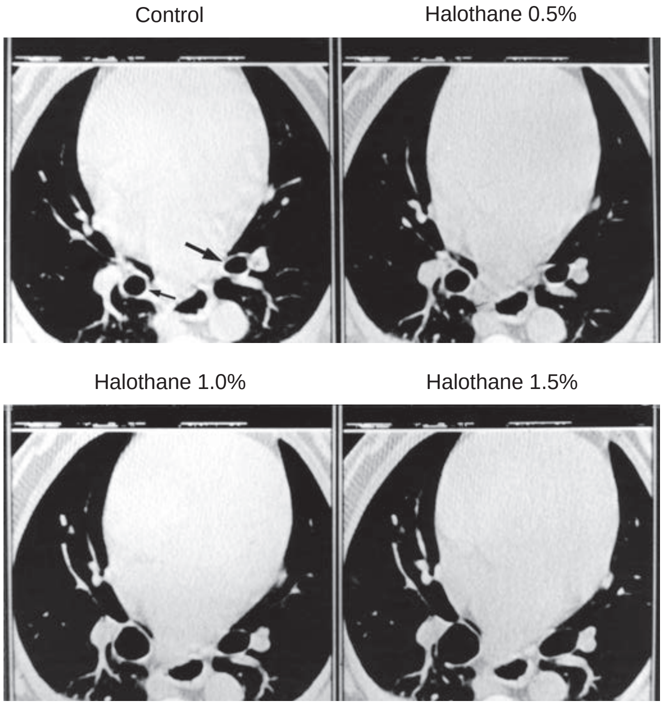


Fig. 21.2 High-resolution computed tomography scans from one dog. *Upper left:* Control. *Upper right:* During 0.5% halothane. *Lower left:* During 1.0% halothane. *Lower right:* During 1.5% halothane. Note the progressive dilation of the airways as indicated by the *arrows.* (Reproduced from Brown RH, Mitzner W, Zerhouni E, et al. Direct in vivo visualization of bronchodilation induced by inhalational anesthesia using high-resolution computed tomography. *Anesthesiology.* 1993;78:295. Used with permission.)

of volatile anesthetics may be indirectly attributable to increase in CO_2 tension. The structure of the respiratory epithelium changes from pseudostratified columnar cells of the large airways to thinner, cuboidal cells of the bronchioles, and thus a relatively large amount of histologic heterogeneity exists between these regions. The specific effects of volatile anesthetics on the bronchioles depend on the location in and the structure of the respiratory tree. In vitro, isoflurane preferentially relaxes the bronchioles rather than the bronchi.[22] Isoflurane and halothane dilate fourth order bronchi at equivalent minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) values.[23] Similarly, at up to 1 MAC, isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane attenuate methacholine-induced bronchoconstriction in open-chest, pentobarbital-anesthetized rats.[24] Isoflurane and sevoflurane also appear to have greater inhibitory effects on bronchial contraction as compared with tracheal smooth muscle contraction.[25] Furthermore, halothane, desflurane, and isoflurane relax distal airways (e.g., bronchioles) to a greater extent than proximal airways (e.g., bronchi).[26] These differential effects appear to be related to the type of voltage-dependent Ca^{2+} (VDC) channels that are present in these regions.

Inhalation of 1 or 2 MAC halothane, enflurane, sevoflurane, and isoflurane did not alter baseline pulmonary resistance and dynamic pulmonary compliance, but these anesthetics significantly attenuated increases in airway resistance and decreases in dynamic respiratory compliance in response to intravenous histamine. Halothane was the most effective bronchodilator, whereas responses to isoflurane, enflurane, and sevoflurane were similar.[15] In an isolated lung model, desflurane produced bronchodilation at 1 MAC but increased airway resistance at 2 MAC,[27] presumably resulting in part from significant increases in inspired gas density at higher MAC. Isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane at 1.0, 1.5, and 2.0 MAC in 25% O_2 were all examined in a two-chamber test lung model with fixed resistance. All anesthetics demonstrated increased density and calculated resistance at higher MAC, with desflurane producing the highest increase in resistance at 2.0 MAC.[28] In a randomized clinical trial evaluating the same agents at 1.0 and 1.5 MAC, total inspiratory resistance (R[rs]), minimal resistance (R[min]), and effective resistance (D[Rrs]) were calculated using the end-inspiratory occlusion technique. No significant differences of those parameters were observed during administration of the three agents at 1 MAC for 30 min. At 1.5 MAC, desflurane caused a maximum increase in R(rs) by 26% and in R(min) by 30% above baseline, in contrast to isoflurane and sevoflurane, which did not have a significant effect on R(rs) and R(min).[29] Presumably, this increased resistance is due at least in part to the greater net viscosity of the higher absolute concentration of desflurane at 1.5 MAC. Other factors may also cause the reduction in the bronchodilation of desflurane at higher concentrations, especially in smokers.[30] Halothane, enflurane, and sevoflurane are equivalent at dilating third- or fourth-generation bronchi as directly measured with a fiberoptic bronchoscope in vivo.[31]

It appears that desflurane can both augment or inhibit bronchoconstriction (see below). At 1 MAC desflurane and sevoflurane blocked, to a similar degree, the increase in central airway resistance after a cholinergic challenge in rabbits. Both anesthetics reduced basal bronchial tone by 30% to 40%. This effect was consistently observed in the presence or absence of allergic airway inflammation and bronchial hyperresponsiveness.[32] When the mechanism of constriction is centrally mediated, such as with a cholinergic challenge,[22,24,33,34] desflurane appears to play a beneficial role in attenuating bronchoconstriction. However, when the mechanism of airway constriction is due to nonadrenergic, noncholinergic activation with tachykinins, desflurane may augment and worsen constriction.[35,36] Thus clinicians tend to avoid using desflurane in patients with reactive airway disease.

EFFECTS OF INHALED ANESTHETICS ON BRONCHOMOTOR TONE IN HUMANS AND THE WORK OF BREATHING

Sevoflurane (1 MAC) reduced respiratory system resistance by 15% in patients undergoing elective surgery, whereas desflurane had no effect.[30] Rooke and associates[37] compared the bronchodilating effects of halothane, isoflurane, sevoflurane, desflurane, and thiopental–nitrous oxide in healthy patients undergoing induction of anesthesia and tracheal intubation. In contrast to thiopental–nitrous oxide, all volatile agents with the exception of desflurane significantly reduced respiratory resistance (Fig. 21.3).

The work of breathing is defined as pressure or force multiplied by the tidal volume during inspiration. Respiratory work is further divided into elastic work (required to overcome the recoil of the lung) and resistive work (required

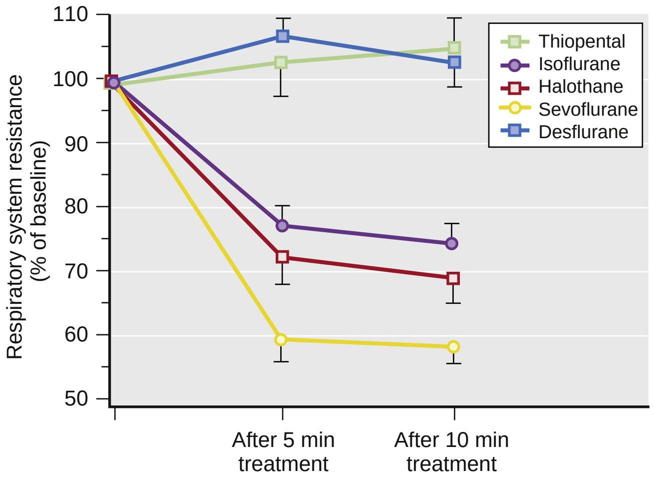


Fig. 21.3 Percent change in respiratory system resistance in patients after 5 and 10 minutes of maintenance anesthesia with either 0.25 mg/kg/min thiopental plus 50% nitrous oxide or 1.1 minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) sevoflurane, halothane, or isoflurane, or approximately 1 MAC desflurane. All volatile anesthetics except desflurane decreased resistance. Sevoflurane decreased resistance more than isoflurane. (Modified from Rooke GA, Choi JH, Bishop MJ. The effect of isoflurane, halothane, sevoflurane, and thiopental/nitrous oxide on respiratory system resistance after tracheal intubation. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1294; and Goff MJ, Arain SR, Ficke DJ, et al. Absence of bronchodilation during desflurane anesthesia: a comparison to sevoflurane and thiopental. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:404. Used with permission.)

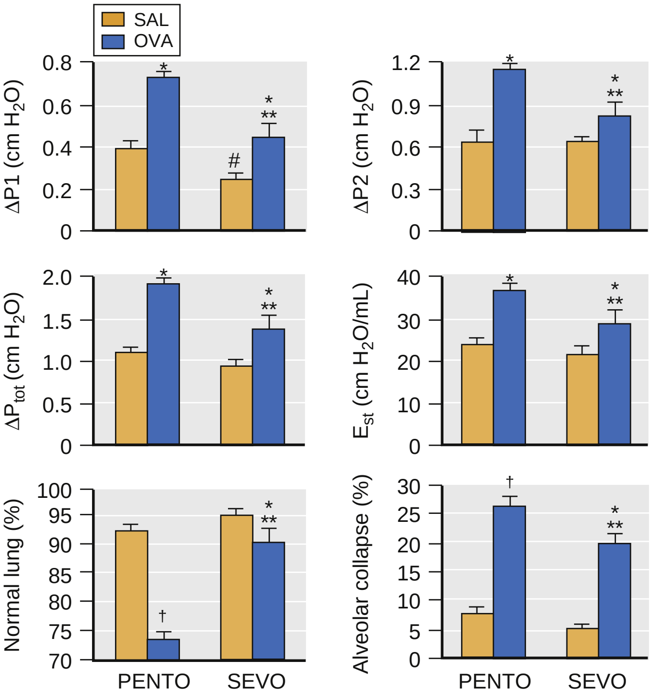


Fig. 21.4 Mean ± standard error of the mean for pressure to overcome airway resistance (ΔP1), viscoelastic lung properties (ΔP2), total of ΔP1 and ΔP2 (ΔP_{tot}), and static lung elastance (E_{st}). Also shown are the percent of normal area and the percent of alveolar collapse in mice repeatedly challenged with intratracheal instillation of saline *(SAL)* or ovalbumin *(OVA)*. Animals were anesthetized with pentobarbital sodium *(PENTO)* or sevoflurane *(SEVO)*, 1 minimum alveolar concentration (MAC). *$*P < .05$* versus corresponding SAL group; *$**P < .001$* versus OVA-PENTO group; *$\#P < .05$* versus SAL-PENTO group; $^{\dagger}P < .01$ versus the SAL-PENTO group. (Modified from Burburan SM, Xisto DG, Ferreira HC, et al. Lung mechanics and histology during sevoflurane anesthesia in a model of chronic allergic rhinitis. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:631. Used with permission.)

to overcome airway flow resistance and viscoelastic resistance of pulmonary tissues). The work of breathing is usually derived from transpulmonary pressure volume curves. Volatile anesthetics increase the work of breathing in adults and children. In rats, sevoflurane reduced pulmonary compliance at the lung periphery rather than at the airway level, thereby increasing viscoelastic and elastic pressures in the lung.[38] In addition, in a murine model of chronic asthma, sevoflurane significantly decreased resistance in central and distal airways and also lowered resistance in the lung periphery. These data suggest that sevoflurane exerts a beneficial effect in the presence of chronic airway obstruction and indicate that sevoflurane might reduce the work of breathing in comparison to other drugs (Fig. 21.4).[39]

Studies in humans demonstrate a ceiling effect where low concentrations of volatile anesthetics significantly reduce *upper airway resistance*, reflecting changes in airway smooth muscle tone in the major airways. In contrast, distal airways and lung parenchyma lack a smooth muscle component (with *lower airway and alveolar resistance* being more a measure of viscoelastic changes in the lung). Increasing concentrations of inhalational agents have diminished effect on these more distal pulmonary components and thus do not further reduce total lung resistance (Fig. 21.5).[40]

Expiration is passively affected by the recoil characteristics of the lung during normal breathing. In anesthetized patients, the ventilatory response to expiratory resistance is reduced to a greater extent than the response to inspiratory resistance. Conscious and anesthetized humans exhibit decreases in respiratory rate when expiratory resistive loads are applied, but only anesthetized subjects develop rib cage–abdominal wall motion dyssynchrony that causes less effective ventilation and reduction in minute alveolar ventilation. This concept may be particularly important in spontaneously breathing anesthetized patients who demonstrate expiratory obstruction, such as in cases of asthma, COPD, airway secretions, or during hypopharyngeal obstruction or partial breathing circuit occlusion.

Experimental studies demonstrating the equal potency of sevoflurane and isoflurane and the higher potency of halothane for bronchodilation must be extrapolated with caution because histamine-mediated experimental bronchospasm may not closely mimic tracheal intubation–induced bronchospasm in humans. Indeed, Arakawa and colleagues[41] showed that similar inspired concentrations of halothane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane produced nearly identical reductions in airway resistance in a patient with status asthmaticus. Volatile anesthetics may thus be an effective therapeutic modality in status asthmaticus when conventional therapy has failed.[42,43]

β-Adrenoceptor agonists may be beneficial for treating acute bronchospasm in patients anesthetized with halothane,[44,45] but their use may not be beneficial with other volatile anesthetics. For example, the β_2-adrenergic agonist fenoterol reduced respiratory system resistance after endotracheal intubation but did not further decrease resistance when administered in the presence of 1.3% isoflurane.[46] These findings should be interpreted with caution because the technique used to determine respiratory system resistance incorporates alterations in lung and chest wall resistance, as well as tissue viscosity. The most important functional change that occurs in the presence of lung disease is increased resistance. Resistance to airflow is

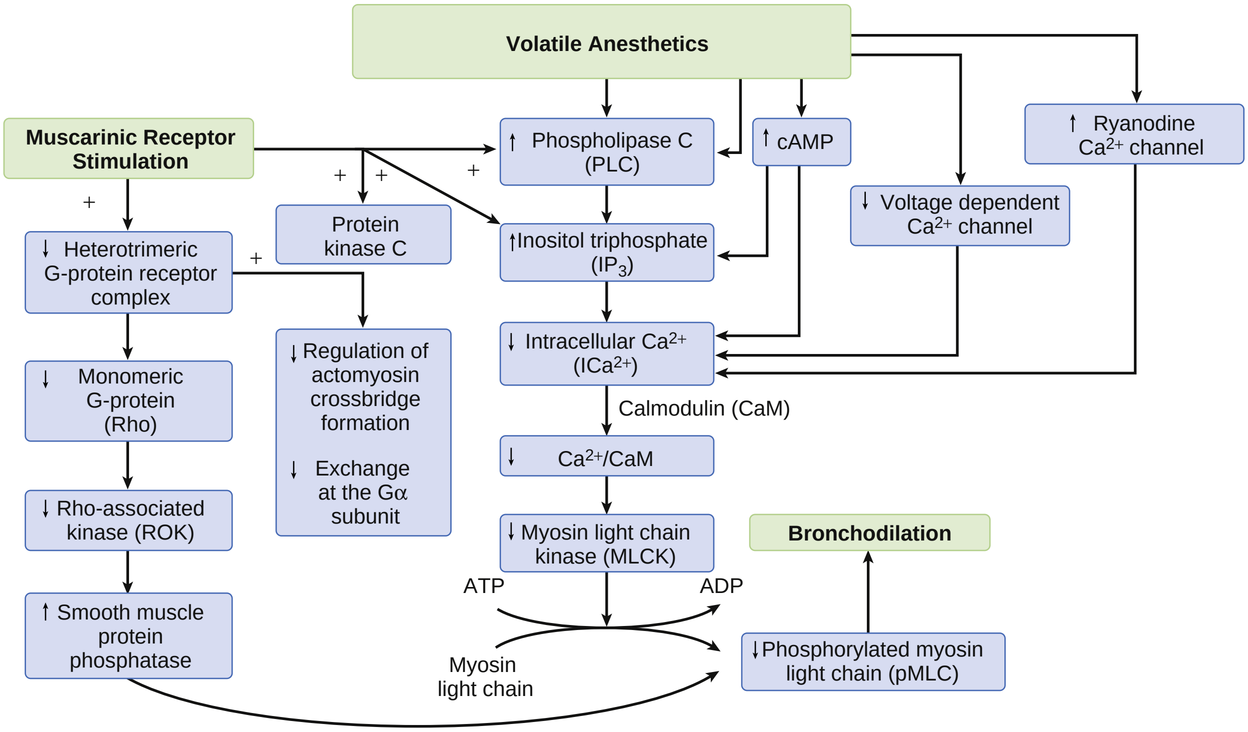

Volatile Anesthetics
Muscarinic Receptor Stimulation
+
+
+
+
+
↑ Phospholipase C (PLC)
↑ cAMP
↑ Ryanodine Ca2+ channel
↓ Voltage dependent Ca2+ channel
Protein kinase C
↑Inositol triphosphate (IP3)
↓ Heterotrimeric G-protein receptor complex
↓ Regulation of actomyosin crossbridge formation
↓ Exchange at the Gα subunit
↓ Intracellular Ca2+ (ICa2+)
Calmodulin (CaM)
↓ Monomeric G-protein (Rho)
↓ Ca2+/CaM
↓ Rho-associated kinase (ROK)
↓ Myosin light chain kinase (MLCK)
Bronchodilation
ATP
ADP
↑ Smooth muscle protein phosphatase
Myosin light chain
↓Phosphorylated myosin light chain (pMLC)

Fig. 21.5 Isoflurane (ISO) at 0.6% reduced respiratory system elastance (E in cm H_2O/L) and resistance (R in cm H_2O/L/s). *Total* represents the total respiratory system (lung and chest wall). Values are mean ± standard deviation (SD). No further reductions with increasing concentrations of isoflurane were observed. **P* < .05 versus baseline; *ADP,* adenosine diphosphate; *ATP,* adenosine triphosphate; *cAMP,* cyclic adenosine monophosphate. (Modified from Ruiz P, Chartrand D. The effect of isoflurane 0.6% on respiratory mechanics in anesthetized-paralyzed humans is not increased at concentrations of 0.9% and 1.2%. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:67. Used with permission.)

typically thought of as being determined by the flow rate and airway smooth muscle tension. However, nonmuscle elements, such as lung inflammation, airway thickening, altered lung volumes, lung recoil, airway wall remodeling, mucous hypersecretion, and loss of lung elastance, also play a clinically significant role in the amount of airway narrowing. The role of volatile anesthetics in altering many of these non–smooth-muscle elements responsible for airway resistance needs further elucidation.

The effects of volatile anesthetics on bronchomotor tone are also dependent on the substance used to produce contraction in vitro.[47] Relaxation of tracheal smooth muscle by halothane and isoflurane is greatest in the presence of the endogenous mediator serotonin (resulting from anaphylactoid or immunologic reactions) compared with ACh (representing the neutrally derived mediator of reflex bronchospasm). Thus inhaled anesthetics may remain effective bronchodilators, even in the presence of severe serotonin- or histamine-induced bronchospasm that is refractory to β_2-adrenoceptor therapy. It is important to note that in anesthetized patients, volatile anesthetic–induced decreases in bronchomotor tone and neurally mediated airway reflexes may be partially opposed by a simultaneous reduction in functional residual capacity (FRC). The well-known increased risk for morbidity and mortality in patients with asthma may be at least partially attributed to these FRC-mediated increases in airway resistance. Low temperature abolished the inhibitory effects of volatile anesthetics on carbachol-induced contraction of airway smooth muscle in dogs,[48] suggesting that intraoperative hypothermia may also attenuate volatile anesthetic–induced bronchodilation.

Bronchospasm may occur in conditions and with respiratory diseases other than asthma. For example, healthy patients undergoing surgical stimulation of lung parenchyma or airways including tracheal stimulation by an endotracheal tube are at risk of developing bronchospasm. Preoperative medications, sedatives, neuromuscular blockers, and volatile anesthetics are all important factors that may trigger or attenuate bronchospasms. Regardless of the airway sensitivity prior to induction, the different pathways involved in an individual patient may yield different responses to the volatile anesthetics. Iwasaki and colleagues[49] demonstrated that sevoflurane-induced relaxation of airway smooth muscle and VDC channels were dependent on the type of hyperreactive airway model. Sevoflurane had smaller effects in a model of chronic tobacco smoking (enlarged alveolar ducts and less muscarinic hyperreactivity), compared with an antigen-acute asthmatic (ovalbumin-sensitized) model. The morphologic changes in the peripheral airway may be responsible to some degree for a decrease in the efficacy of volatile anesthetics as bronchodilators in tobacco smokers, but sevoflurane and isoflurane still decrease respiratory system resistance in patients with COPD.[50]

In children undergoing elective imaging studies, sevoflurane produced progressive reductions in the cross-sectional area of upper airway, resulting in pharyngeal airway collapse[51] (also see Chapter 93). As observed with isoflurane in animal models, the effects of sevoflurane were not uniformly distributed along the upper airway. In healthy children, sevoflurane slightly decreased airway resistance, but desflurane had the opposite effect, presumably via reduced airway size.[52]

Children with documented airway susceptibility, such as those with asthma or a recent upper respiratory tract infection, exhibit significant increases in airway resistance. In these pediatric patients, desflurane should be avoided.

MECHANISMS OF ACTION OF VOLATILE ANESTHETICS

Volatile anesthetics attenuate airway smooth muscle tone by reducing smooth muscle contractility. This action is the result of the direct effects on bronchial epithelium and airway smooth muscle cells, combined with the indirect inhibition of reflex neural pathways. Several intracellular mediators responsible for Ca^{2+} mobilization are potential sites for the action for volatile anesthetics. Inhibition of cell membrane-associated VDC channels reduces Ca^{2+} entry into the cytosol.[53] Volatile anesthetic–induced increases in cAMP concentrations cause decreases in intracellular-free Ca^{2+} by stimulating Ca^{2+} efflux and increasing Ca^{2+} uptake into the sarcoplasmic reticular (SR). In addition, a decrease in Ca^{2+} sensitivity attributable to inhibition of PKC activity, inhibition of G-protein function, and attenuation of Rho/Rho-kinase signaling pathways also play important roles.[53,54] Volatile anesthetics may also alter pulmonary resistance by affecting the density of the gas mixture.[28] In an experimental lung model of fixed pulmonary resistance, high concentrations of volatile anesthetics increased the density of the gas mixture and the calculated resistance, with desflurane producing the largest increase (Fig. 21.6).[28] Such an effect is particularly profound for ^{55}xenon which has a molecular weight of 131.2 Daltons, making it four times as dense as room air.[55]

The effects of volatile anesthetics on proximal, compared with distal, airways may be related to the differential effects on VDC channels and the relative distribution of these channels. Long-lasting (L-type) VDC channels appear to be the predominant mechanism for Ca^{2+} entry in tracheal smooth muscle, whereas both transient (T-type) and L-type VDC channels are present in bronchial smooth muscle.[25,56] Isoflurane and sevoflurane inhibit both types of VDC channels in a dose-dependent fashion, and their effects on T-type VDC channels in bronchial smooth muscle are even more pronounced (Fig. 21.7).[25]

The differential effects of volatile anesthetics on tracheal smooth muscle, compared with bronchial smooth muscle, may also be related to actions on Ca^{2+}-activated chloride channel activity[57,58] or differential sensitivities of K^+ channel subtypes.[57]

The proposed signaling pathways underlying volatile anesthetic–induced bronchodilation are depicted in Fig. 21.8.[59,60]

Volatile anesthetic–induced reductions in ICa^{2+} result from the inhibition of both VDC and receptor-gated Ca^{2+} channels. In addition, volatile anesthetics deplete Ca^{2+} stores in SR by increasing Ca^{2+} leakage. Ca^{2+} influx occurring in response to depleted SR Ca^{2+} stores is known as store-operated Ca^{2+} entry (SOCE). By depleting Ca^{2+} stores in SR, volatile anesthetics may be expected to enhance SOCE. Nevertheless, at clinically relevant concentrations, volatile anesthetics (isoflurane more than sevoflurane) also inhibit SOCE in airway smooth muscle to further reduce available Ca^{2+}.[61]

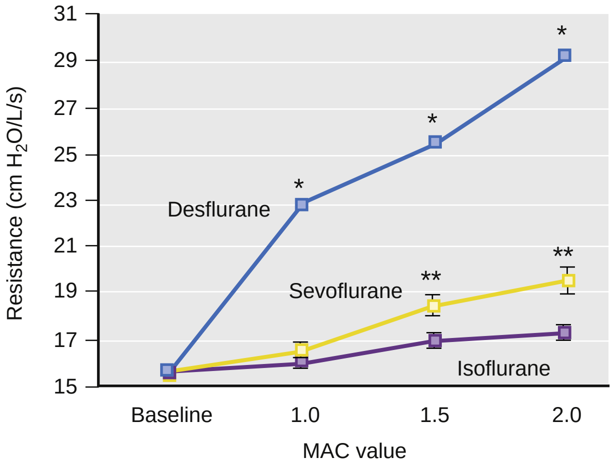


Fig. 21.6 Comparison of the effect of different volatile anesthetics at equivalent concentrations on total pulmonary resistance. At 1 minimum alveolar concentration (MAC), only desflurane significantly increased pulmonary resistance, compared with isoflurane and sevoflurane. At 1.5 and 2 MAC, sevoflurane significantly increased total pulmonary resistance compared with isoflurane, whereas desflurane caused a more pronounced increase than the other two agents. *Increased pulmonary resistance in comparison with sevoflurane and isoflurane; **increased pulmonary resistance in comparison with isoflurane. (Reproduced from Nyktari VG, Papaioannou AA, Prinianakis G, et al. Effect of the physical properties of isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane on pulmonary resistance in a laboratory lung model. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1202. Used with permission.)

Volatile anesthetic–induced reductions in SR Ca^{2+} appear to occur through enhancement of IP_3[62] and ryanodine-receptor channel activities.[59] Kai and coworkers[53] demonstrated that halothane attenuates ACh-induced Ca^{2+} sensitization in canine tracheal smooth muscle to a greater extent than does sevoflurane, whereas isoflurane has effect at concentrations equivalent to 2 MAC. This effect appears to be mediated, at least in part, by an increase in smooth muscle protein phosphatase,[60] modulation of G proteins (specifically G_q and G_I that exert actions on cyclic guanosine monophosphate [cGMP]),[53] or modulation of the Rho/Rho-kinase signaling pathways.[63,64] Volatile anesthetics interact with the muscarinic receptor–heterotrimeric G protein complex to prevent agonist-promoted nucleotide exchange at the $G\alpha$ subunit of the G protein.[65,66] Halothane, sevoflurane, and, minimally, isoflurane exert direct effects on muscarinic receptor–mediated contraction of isolated airway smooth muscle.[67] The inhibitory effects of volatile agents on the biochemical coupling between the M_3 muscarinic receptor and the $G\alpha_q$ heterotrimeric G protein is completely reversible with time. Isoflurane-induced relaxation of precontracted bronchial smooth muscles is significantly augmented by pretreatment with a Rho-kinase inhibitor, whereas sevoflurane-inhibited guanosine-5′-triphosphate (GTP) γ S-stimulated contraction and membrane translocation of both Rho and Rho-kinase in a concentration-dependent manner. These latter actions play important roles in Ca^{2+} sensitization.[54] The final pathway in airway smooth muscle contraction is the generation of force and shortening of smooth muscles regulated by myosin cross-bridge number and kinetics. Isoflurane modulates both cross-bridge number and cycling rates of isolated rat airway smooth muscle.[67]

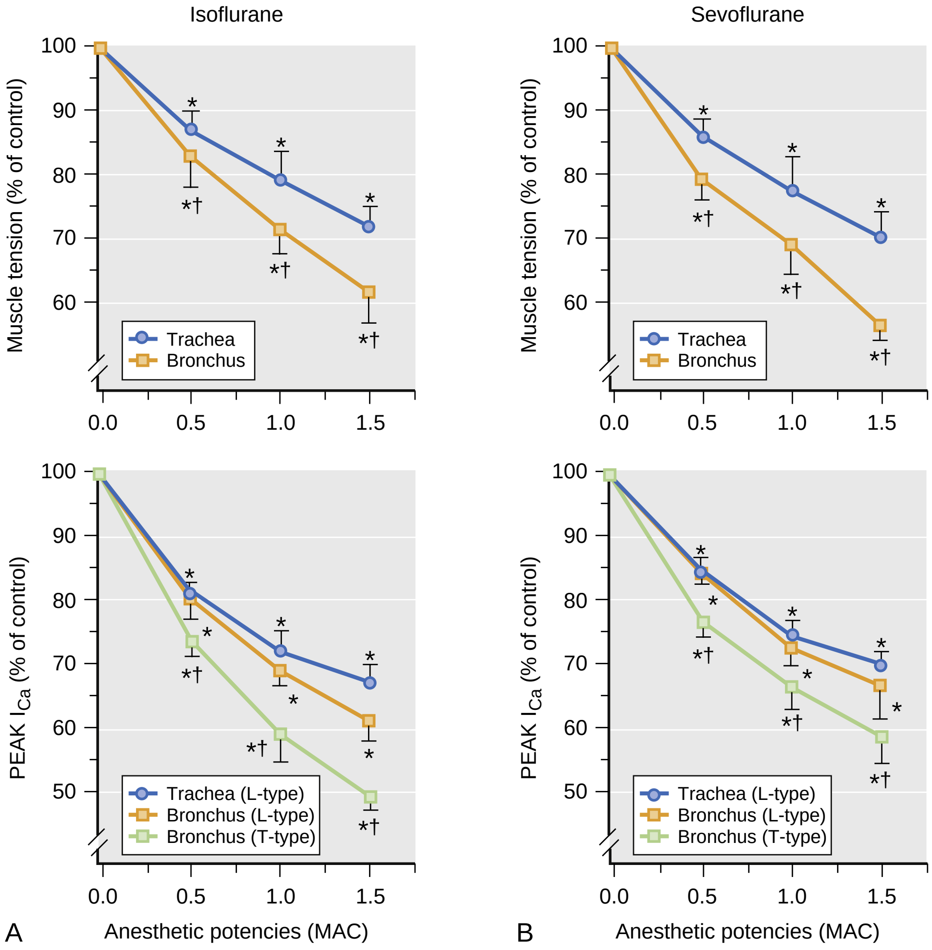


Fig. 21.7 Effect of isoflurane and sevoflurane on porcine tracheal versus bronchial smooth muscle tension or inward calcium (Ca^{2+}) current intercellular calcium (ICa^{2+}) through T- and L-type voltage-dependent Ca^{2+} (VDC) channels. No differences were observed in the inhibition of L-type VDC channels. Both anesthetics had greater inhibitory effects on T-type VDC channels in bronchial smooth muscle. Symbols represent mean ± standard deviation (SD). (A) *$P < .05$ versus 0 minimum alveolar concentration *(MAC)*. $^{\dagger}P < .05$ versus tracheal smooth muscle. (B) $^{\dagger}P < .05$ versus L-type VDC channels. (Reproduced from Yamakage M, Chen X, Tsujiguchi N, et al. Different inhibitory effects of volatile anesthetics on T- and L-type voltage dependent Ca^{2+} channels in porcine tracheal and bronchial smooth muscles. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:683. Used with permission.)

The bronchodilatory effect of volatile anesthetics is also mediated by GABA A (GABA$_A$) receptors in the brainstem or GABA B (GABA$_B$) receptors on preganglionic cholinergic nerves in the lung similar to the observations with propofol.[68] Indeed, GABA$_A$ and GABA$_B$ receptors, as well as glutamic decarboxylase (enzyme responsible for GABA synthesis), are located in airway epithelial and smooth muscle cells. GABA levels increase and localize to airway smooth muscle after contractile stimuli in upper airways. Furthermore, a GABA agonist reversed augmentation of cholinergic-induced tracheal ring contraction.[68,69]

Inhaled but not intravenous halothane attenuated bronchoconstricting effects of low inhaled concentrations of CO$_2$ in rat distal bronchi, suggesting that halothane exerts a direct action on airway muscle tone or local neural reflex arcs rather than centrally controlled reflex pathways. Consistent with this hypothesis, halothane-, isoflurane-, sevoflurane-, and desflurane-induced dilation of distal bronchial segments is partially dependent on the presence of bronchial epithelium.[23,70] Prostanoids (e.g., prostaglandin E$_2$ or I$_2$) or NO may be responsible for the bronchodilatory effects of volatile anesthetics under these conditions. Focal epithelial damage or inflammation may occur in small airways in patients with asthma or allergen exposure, resulting in a reduced bronchodilatory response to volatile anesthetics.[71] Nevertheless, the most pronounced bronchodilatory action of volatile anesthetics in patients with chronic reactive airway disease occurs primarily in the proximal rather than distal airways.

Direct stimulation of intrinsic airway nerves in vitro produces a contractile response that is inhibited by atropine. Volatile anesthetic–induced bronchodilation also occurs by modulation of this airway cholinergic neural transmission mediated through prejunctional and postjunctional mechanisms.[72,73] The combination of atropine and halothane did not increase airway caliber over that attained with either drug alone, suggesting that halothane dilates airways by blocking vagal tone during unstimulated conditions.[74] Potent tracheal constriction also occurs in response to the endogenously produced endothelin-1. Isoflurane attenuated the endothelin-1–induced airway smooth muscle contraction in rat tracheal rings, suggesting another potential mechanism for airway smooth muscle relaxation.[75]

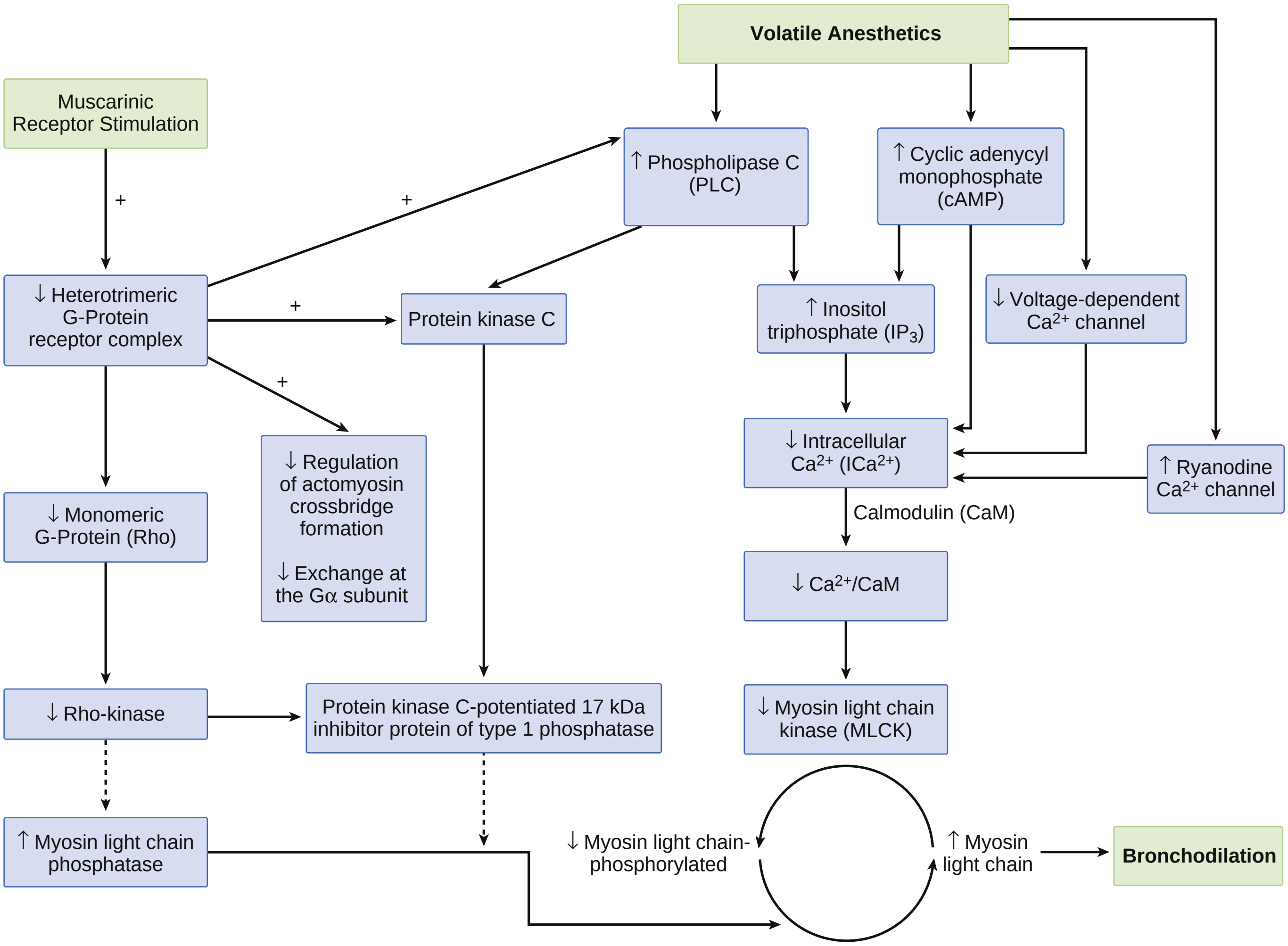

Volatile Anesthetics
Muscarinic Receptor Stimulation
+
+
↑ Phospholipase C (PLC)
↑ Cyclic adenycyl monophosphate (cAMP)
↓ Heterotrimeric G-Protein receptor complex
+
Protein kinase C
↑ Inositol triphosphate (IP_3)
↓ Voltage-dependent Ca^{2+} channel
+
↓ Regulation of actomyosin crossbridge formation
↓ Exchange at the Gα subunit
↓ Intracellular Ca^{2+} (ICa^{2+})
↑ Ryanodine Ca^{2+} channel
↓ Monomeric G-Protein (Rho)
Calmodulin (CaM)
↓ Ca^{2+}/CaM
↓ Rho-kinase
Protein kinase C-potentiated 17 kDa inhibitor protein of type 1 phosphatase
↓ Myosin light chain kinase (MLCK)
↑ Myosin light chain phosphatase
↓ Myosin light chain-phosphorylated
↑ Myosin light chain
Bronchodilation

Fig. 21.8 Proposed signaling pathways underlying volatile anesthetic-induced bronchodilation and/or inhibition of muscarinic agonist–induced contraction of airway smooth muscle. +, Excitatory action of muscarinic-receptor agonist. ↑, Activation or increase attributable to the volatile anesthetic. ↓, Inhibition or decrease attributable to the volatile anesthetic. Volatile anesthetics play a role in decreasing intracellular calcium (ICa^{2+}) levels and decreasing calcium (Ca^{2+}) sensitivity.

Mucociliary Function and Surfactant

NORMAL MUCOCILIARY FUNCTION

The upward clearance of mucus from the tracheobronchial tree is responsible for removal of foreign particulate matter, microorganisms, and dead cells and is a primary pulmonary defense mechanism. Although ciliated respiratory epithelium cells are present throughout the respiratory tree, the density of ciliated respiratory epithelium progressively decreases from the trachea to the terminal bronchioles. Cilia are hair-like appendages, consisting of hundreds of proteins organized around a microtubular architecture. They are anchored to the apical cytoplasm by a basal body and extend from the cell surface into the extracellular space.[76,77] Cilia are classified as either motile or immotile (primary). Motile cilia were thought to be responsible for generating extracellular fluid movement or propelling individual cells, whereas primary cilia were believed to be vestigial. However, primary cilia are important environmental sensors. In human bronchial epithelium, they play a key role in sensing and transducing extracellular mechanochemical signals and are also capable of identifying smooth muscle injury.[78] Indeed, ciliopathies are responsible for a variety of pediatric disorders such as primary ciliary dyskinesia and autosomal recessive polycystic kidney disease.[76,79] Christopher et al. studied the effects of temperature (15°C-37°C) with varying combinations with fentanyl, dexmedetomidine, and isoflurane on the cilia of mouse tracheal epithelia. There was a linear correlation between cilia motility and temperature. Fentanyl exerted stimulatory effects on cilia, while dexmedetomidine and isoflurane both inhibited cilia function. When added together, fentanyl, dexmedetomidine, and isoflurane were all cilia inhibitory. In contrast, fentanyl plus dexmedetomidine did not significantly alter ciliary function, with results suggesting complex drug-drug and drug-temperature interactions not predicted by simple summation of effects.[80]

Ciliary motion consists of a rapid stroke in a cephalad direction, followed by a slower caudal recovery stroke. Movements of cilia are closely coordinated to move matter efficiently toward the trachea in a wave motion known as *metachronism*. Each motile cilium is organized in nine peripheral microtubule pairs surrounding a central pair (9+2). During a beat, dynein arms undergo an adenosine triphosphate (ATP)–dependent attachment, retraction, and release cycle with the adjacent doublet, which results in a sliding motion. The basal bodies of the motile cilia are anchored to the microtubules, nexin links, and radial spokes and are further restricted by the ciliary membrane. This anatomic constraint converts the sliding motion into a bend.

The quantity and physical properties of the mucous layer may also promote the coordination of ciliary beats. Mucus is a mixture of water, electrolytes, and macromolecules (e.g., lipids, mucins, enzymes) secreted by goblet cells and mucosal glands. Thicker layers of mucus slow the removal of surface particles from the airway, whereas low-viscosity mucus promotes more rapid ciliary transport. Impaired mucociliary function in the upper airways correlates with low levels of nasal NO, although the clinical significance of this finding is unclear.[81] Direct nervous system control of ciliary coordination has not been demonstrated in vertebrates, but mucociliary clearance is closely related to autonomic nervous system activity, most likely related to changes in physical characteristics of respiratory secretions (also see Chapter 103).[82]

Several factors affect mucociliary function in mechanically ventilated patients contributing to lung atelectasis and hypoxemia. For example, insufficiently humidified inspired gases reduce ciliary movement and desiccate mucus. In dogs, the flow rate of tracheal mucous was maintained within the basal range during a 40-minute exposure to inspired dry air at a temperature higher than 32°C. However, 3 hours of inhalation of dry air caused a complete cessation of the flow of tracheal mucus, which was restored by the subsequent use of inspired gases with 100% relative humidity at 38°C. Several anesthesia-related factors also reduce the rate of mucous movement, including high-inspired oxygen (O_2) concentrations, adjuvant medications (e.g., corticosteroids, atropine, β-adrenoreceptor antagonists) that affect bronchial tone, the presence of an endotracheal tube, and positive-pressure ventilation.[83]

EFFECTS OF INHALED ANESTHETICS ON MUCOCILIARY FUNCTION

Volatile anesthetics and nitrous oxide diminish the rates of mucous clearance by decreasing ciliary beat frequency, disrupting metachronism, and altering the physical characteristics or quantity of mucus. In contrast to many intravenous anesthetics,[84,85] halothane, enflurane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane all reduce ciliary movement and beat frequency in vitro.[84-87] Among the volatile anesthetics, sevoflurane exhibited the weakest cilioinhibitory effects in rat cultured tracheal epithelial cells in vitro (Fig. 21.9).[87]

Gamsu and colleagues[88] measured the rate of tantalum (a powder that adheres to airway mucus) clearance from the lungs of postoperative patients who received general anesthesia for intraabdominal or lower extremity surgeries. Tantalum retention was closely correlated with the retention of mucus and shown for as long as 6 days after intraabdominal surgery. The administration of halothane (1%-2%) and nitrous oxide (60%) rapidly decreased the rate of mucous movement in females undergoing gynecologic surgery. Little or no mucous motion was observed after 90 minutes of halothane–nitrous oxide inhalation.[89] Bronchial mucosal transport velocity was also determined using radiolabeled albumin microspheres distally deposited in the mainstem bronchi using a fiberoptic bronchoscope in healthy patients. In contrast to the findings of the study with halothane, mucous velocity was unchanged during the administration of 1.5 MAC isoflurane.[90]

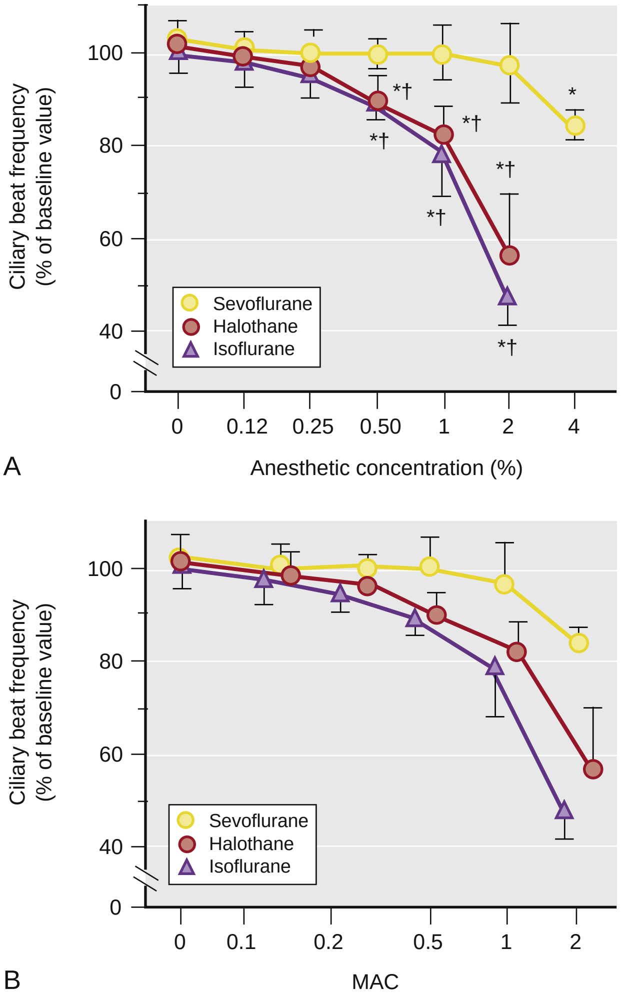


Fig. 21.9 Effects of sevoflurane, halothane, and isoflurane on ciliary beat frequency (CBF) in cultured rat tracheal epithelial cells. CBF was measured at baseline and 30 minutes after exposure to various anesthetic concentrations. Values represent mean ± standard deviation. (A) Plot of percent baseline CBF versus anesthetic concentration. $^{*}P < .05$ versus 0% vehicle. $^{\dagger}P < .05$ versus sevoflurane at the same concentration. (B) Percent baseline CBF versus minimum alveolar concentration *(MAC)*. (Modified from Matsuura S, Shirakami G, Iida H, et al. The effect of sevoflurane on ciliary motility in rat cultured tracheal epithelial cells: a comparison with isoflurane and halothane. *Anesth Analg.* 2006;102:1703. Used with permission.)

Impairment of ciliary beat frequency, mucociliary clearance, and bronchial mucous transport contribute to pulmonary complications, including retention of secretions, atelectasis, and lower respiratory tract infection. A reduction in bronchial mucous transport of as little as 3.5 mm/min (normally 10 mm/min) was associated with an increase in pulmonary complications in patients who were mechanically ventilated for 4 days in the intensive care unit (ICU).[91] Thus pulmonary therapy directed at enhancing clearance of secretions from the airways may be beneficial in the immediate postoperative period, regardless of the type of volatile anesthetic chosen.

Compared to nonsmokers, tobacco smokers have significantly slower bronchial mucous transport velocities and are prone to more frequent pulmonary complications when undergoing major abdominal or thoracic surgeries.[92] The specific effects of volatile anesthetics on mucous movement in smokers have not been well studied. However, it is likely that an additive or synergistic negative effect on mucous transport may be present. Impairment of mucociliary function also occurs after lung transplantation. The mechanism for this dysfunction may be related to alterations in the surface properties of mucus and significant impairment of mucociliary transport distal to bronchial transection and re-anastomosis.[93] The effects of volatile anesthetics on mucous transport in lung transplant patients have not been described, but the baseline reductions in mucociliary movement would certainly predispose to postoperative respiratory complications.

EFFECTS OF INHALED ANESTHETICS ON SURFACTANT

Pulmonary surfactant decreases the work of breathing by reducing surface tension at the fluid-gas interface. Surfactant is a mixture of proteins and phospholipids synthesized by alveolar type II cells. Similar to mucus, surfactant plays a role in removing foreign particles from airways while also enhancing the bactericidal actions of alveolar macrophages. Halothane[94] and isoflurane[95] produced a transient dose-dependent reduction in phosphatidylcholine (a major component of surfactant) synthesis by alveolar cells during a 4-hour exposure. High concentrations of halothane also disrupted the energy metabolism of cultured alveolar cells as indicated by reduced ATP content and enhanced glycolytic metabolism. Halothane and isoflurane potentiated a hydrogen peroxide–induced reduction of phosphatidylcholine content in alveolar type II cells[95,96] by affecting cell energetics. Halothane decreased the Na^+/K^+–adenosine triphosphatase (Na^+/K^+-ATPase), and Na^+ channel activity in alveolar type II cells, probably related to alterations in ICa^{2+} or ATP depletion. A similar decrease in type II alveolar cell Na^+/K^+-ATPase occurs after the administration of isoflurane.[97] Transepithelial Na^+ transport helps regulate alveolar fluid balance, and, as a result, impairment of this transport system may contribute to alveolar edema. This observation may be especially relevant in surgical patients because volatile anesthetics decrease alveolar epithelial fluid clearance.[98]

The phospholipid composition of surfactant is critical to its functional integrity. Another crucial component of surfactant is the hydrophobic surfactant-associated protein C synthesized by alveolar type II cells. This protein facilitates the adsorption and spreading of phospholipids to form the surfactant monolayer and enhances the lipid uptake into alveolar type II cells. Exogenous surfactants that contain surfactant-associated protein C are effective at decreasing barotrauma and mortality in vivo. Clinically relevant concentrations of halothane increase surfactant-associated protein C messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) in vitro but cause the opposite effect in mechanically ventilated rats.[99] Extrapolation of these findings to patients should be approached with caution, but halothane and mechanical ventilation may play a potentially additive and deleterious role on surfactant production and homeostasis of the alveolar space, particularly in the presence of ALI. In a rat model, sevoflurane produced deterioration in surfactant composition and viscosity with impaired lung mechanics promoting alveolar collapse[100]; again, caution is warranted in extrapolating these findings to humans. Bilgi and colleagues compared the effects of low-flow and high-flow inhalational anesthesia with nitrous oxide and desflurane on mucociliary activity and pulmonary function tests in humans. The forced vital capacity and forced expiratory volume and mucociliary clearance of saccharin powder were better preserved with low-flow rather than a high-flow technique, suggesting that heated and humidified gases may have a greater impact than the inhaled anesthetics themselves.[101]

Prolonged administration of volatile anesthetics may produce mucous pooling and impair alveolar cell surfactant metabolism. These actions may result in adverse effects on pulmonary function including development of atelectasis and infections. Patients with excessive or abnormal mucous or surfactant production and patients with ALI, chronic bronchitis, asthma, cystic fibrosis, and chronic mechanical ventilation are at the greatest risk. Clinical studies of the effects of volatile anesthetics on mucociliary function, surfactant metabolism, and immunomodulation in patients with compromised pulmonary function are still sparse.

PULMONARY VASCULAR RESISTANCE

Regulation of Pulmonary Vascular Tone

The pulmonary vascular bed is a low-pressure, high-flow system. Normal pulmonary arterial (PA) pressure is approximately one-fifth of the systemic arterial pressure. Correspondingly, PVR is lower than systemic vascular resistance. The main pulmonary artery and its major branches have a thinner media and less vascular smooth muscle than the aorta and major proximal arterial vessels. Changes in pulmonary vascular smooth muscle tone alter PVR by affecting the slope of pressure-flow relation. Such direct changes may be produced by a rapid rise in cytoplasmic ICa^{2+} of the pulmonary vascular smooth muscle cell or by alterations in sympathetic nervous system activity, arterial O_2 and CO_2 tension, acid-base balance, or plasma catecholamine concentrations. Hypercapnia at constant pH (i.e., isohydria) does not alter tone in isolated pulmonary arteries, but normocapnic acidosis relaxes isolated pulmonary arteries by an endothelium-independent mechanism.[102] However, pulmonary endothelial dysfunction potentiates hypercapnia-induced vasoconstriction.[103] Changes in PA pressure and PVR exert important effects on pulmonary gas or fluid exchange. An increase in PVR occurring in conjunction with a corresponding increase in PA pressure promotes interstitial fluid transudation. An acute increase in PVR can be caused by large tidal volumes, high positive end-expiratory pressure, alveolar hypoxia, hypercarbia, acidosis, and critical closing pressure. Hypoxia and acidosis have a synergistic effect increasing PVR. In contrast to acute pulmonary hypertension, the development of chronic pulmonary hypertension involves endothelial dysfunction with persistent vasoconstriction due to imbalance between endogenous vasoconstrictors (including thromboxane A_2, angiotensin 2, and endothelin 1) and vasodilators (including NO and prostacyclin), smooth muscle proliferation, platelet aggregation, vascular remodeling and thrombosis, and formation of plexiform lesions that irreversibly obliterate pulmonary arterioles. Clinically, the use of positive inotropic medications (e.g., milrinone) or expanded blood volume can passively decrease PVR by increasing cardiac output. Volatile anesthetics may also have indirect effects on PVR through a reduction in lung volumes during spontaneous ventilation. To assess the total effect of the volatile anesthesia, the volume status and mechanical ventilation on the pulmonary pressures, and right heart function, either transthoracic or transesophageal echocardiography should be considered.

Endogenously produced NO plays an important role in the regulation of PVR both in the healthy, normoxic lung and during hypoxia. NO is generated via oxidation of a terminal guanidinium nitrogen on the amino acid L-arginine. The reaction utilizes molecular O_2 and NADPH as substrates, requires the presence of tetrahydrobiopterin, flavoproteins, calmodulin, and thiols as cofactors, and yields NO in addition to the co-product L-citrullin.[104] This oxidation is catalyzed by a single enzyme protein, NO synthase (NOS), which exists in three distinct isoforms. Constitutive calcium-dependent isoforms of the enzyme were originally purified from neuronal tissue (nNOS) and vascular endothelium (eNOS).[105,106] When stimulated by bacterial endotoxin and proinflammatory cytokines, a third calcium-independent isoform (iNOS) is induced in various cell types including endothelial and vascular smooth muscle cells, macrophages, and fibroblasts. Once expressed, iNOS is independent of calcium, and NO production continues at a maximum rate. All three NOS isoforms are widely distributed in the lung, extensively involved in vascular homeostasis, and intimately linked to the pulmonary O_2 environment.[107]

NO diffuses away from its point of synthesis and interacts with various intracellular molecular sites both within the generating cells and the target cells. The best-characterized target for NO is iron, bound within certain proteins, either as a heme group or as an iron-sulfur complex. The interaction of NO with the heme component of soluble guanylate cyclase stimulates enzymatic conversion of guanosine triphosphate to cGMP.[104] In turn, increased intracellular levels of cGMP cause relaxation of systemic and pulmonary vascular and nonvascular smooth muscles by several mechanisms. Besides lowering free intracellular calcium and attenuating calcium transients, cGMP causes hyperpolarization of muscle cells through activation of potassium channels.

Inhalation of gaseous NO produces selective pulmonary vasodilation in well-ventilated lung areas and may be beneficial in the treatment of neonatal pulmonary hypertension resulting from a variety of congenital heart diseases, hypoplastic lung, and meconium aspiration. Inhaled NO has also some benefits in the treatment of acute pulmonary hypertension in adults, provided that the PVR is not fixed by remodeling and hypertrophy of pulmonary vasculature. Additionally, the use of inhaled NO to reduce PVR in pediatric and adult patients during cardiac surgeries has become common (also see Chapters 67, 94, and 104).[108]

Prostacyclin is another endogenous vasodilator produced by the endothelium that causes smooth muscle relaxation through adenylyl cyclase stimulation and production of cAMP. Prostacyclin is used in inhaled or injected formulations to produce pulmonary vasodilation in patients with chronic PA hypertension. Another group of pulmonary vasodilators, including sildenafil and tadalafil, acts by inhibiting cGMP-specific phosphodiesterase type 5 (an enzyme that is responsible for cGMP degradation) and is used for therapy of refractory PA hypertension. Finally, riociguat, a novel drug that directly stimulates soluble guanylate cyclase independently of NO, has been recently approved for treating patients with chronic pulmonary hypertension and chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension.[109]

MECHANISMS OF HYPOXIC PULMONARY VASOCONSTRICTION

Changes in PVR affect the regional distribution of blood flow within the lung and produce changes in ventilation-perfusion matching and gas exchange. The distribution of PA blood flow and ventilation in the lung is mainly a gravity-dependent phenomenon that is primarily mediated by the asymmetric branching of airways and blood vessels, thereby establishing regional heterogeneity.[110] An increase in PVR occurring within an area of atelectasis optimizes gas exchange by shifting blood flow away from the atelectatic segment to well-ventilated regions of the lung. This phenomenon, termed hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction (HPV), is unique to the pulmonary circulation because other vascular beds (e.g., coronary and cerebral) dilate in response to hypoxia. Thus HPV maintains oxygenation, while medications (including volatile anesthetics) that interfere with HPV may adversely affect gas exchange. HPV plays an especially important role in the presence of atelectasis, pneumonia, reactive airway disease, acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), or one-lung ventilation (OLV). It usually does not contribute to pulmonary blood flow heterogeneity under normal conditions in supine humans.[111]

HPV is a locally mediated phenomenon that occurs when alveolar O_2 tension falls below approximately 60 mm Hg and is maximal when O_2 tension is approximately 30 mm Hg. HPV was first identified in 1894, and the precise mechanism is only now becoming clear. Specialized O_2-sensing cells modulate respiratory and circulatory function to maintain a normal O_2 supply. Hypercapnia-induced acidosis increases PVR in intact animals and in isolated, perfused lungs. Acidosis-induced increases in PVR are relatively small at normal alveolar O_2 tensions but are dramatically enhanced during alveolar hypoxia. Local acidosis and increases in alveolar CO_2 tension augment HPV and further improve arterial oxygenation in healthy lungs. High CO_2 concentrations reduce NO levels,[112] but whether this action plays a part in hypercarbia-induced improvements in the ventilation-perfusion ratio is unclear.[113]

Although the hypoxia-mediated endothelial-derived vasoconstrictor has yet to be identified,[114] hypoxia releases Ca^{2+} from smooth muscle SR via ryanodine receptors,[115] enhances Ca^{2+} sensitization,[114-116] and modulates voltage-gated K^+ channels in smooth muscles.[117] Other mediators of the hypoxic-response coupling have been identified.[116,118]

Wang and colleagues[119] have recently demonstrated that both connexin 40-mediated retrograde endothelial signal conduction for O_2 sensing, as well as Ca^{2+} influx at TRP1 channel V4 on pulmonary arterioles[120] are required for HPV. Ultimately, there are a number of contenders for the role of HPV oxygen sensor, yet there is still no consensus on how this happens in vivo, with most of the proposed mechanisms interlinked, depending on the phase of HPV, the degree of hypoxia, involvement of anesthetic or other agents.[121]

INHALED ANESTHETICS AND HYPOXIC PULMONARY VASOCONSTRICTION

All volatile anesthetics dilate the pulmonary vascular bed. In a thorough review, Akata[122] discussed the mechanisms by which inhaled anesthetics produce this vasodilation, including a reduction in free cytosolic Ca^{2+} and inhibition of myofilament Ca^{2+} sensitivity. However, the vasodilator effect of volatile anesthetics is modest in normal lungs, and the small attenuation of PVR is usually offset by a concomitant reduction in cardiac output. The net effect of these hemodynamic changes results in minor, if any, changes in PA pressure concomitant with a small decrease in total pulmonary blood flow. In contrast to their action as direct pulmonary vasodilators, volatile anesthetics also attenuate K_{ATP} channel-mediated and endothelium-dependent pulmonary vasodilation in chronically instrumented dogs.[123-125] This inhibition of pulmonary vasodilation is not a uniform observation under all experimental conditions. For example, isoflurane and halothane, but not enflurane, enhance isoproterenol-mediated vasodilation.[126,127] Unlike the findings with other volatile anesthetics, K_{ATP} channel–mediated pulmonary vasodilation in response to a K^+ channel agonist (lemakalim) is preserved during sevoflurane anesthesia.[125] Indeed, evidence suggests that halothane, enflurane, and isoflurane, but not sevoflurane, differentially modulate pulmonary vascular tension through Ca^{2+}-activated or voltage-sensitive K^+ channels, at least in isolated rabbit lungs.[128] Halothane- and enflurane-induced constriction of pulmonary vessels was potentiated by voltage-gated potassium (Kv) channel inhibition in this isolated rabbit lung preparation. In contrast, isoflurane did not affect pulmonary vessels when Kv channels were inhibited. Further, sevoflurane dilated pulmonary vessels and this dilation was unaffected by K^+ channel subtype inhibitors (Fig. 21.10).[128]

Smooth muscle TASK-1 channels also appear to contribute to volatile anesthetic–induced PA dilation.[129] Rather than causing immediate vasodilation, volatile anesthetics produce a paradoxical initial dose-dependent increase in force in isolated PA strips as a result of Ca^{2+} release from intracellular stores (Fig. 21.11).[122,130,131] Subsequently, a decrease in force, associated with a Ca^{2+}/calmodulin–dependent protein kinase II activation, occurs.[130,131] Extrapolation of these results to humans must be approached with caution, but these studies suggest that vasodilatory responses of volatile anesthetics may be more profound in patients with reduced SR Ca^{2+} stores (e.g., neonates) or those with depressed protein kinase activity (e.g., primary pulmonary hypertension).

In general, all volatile anesthetics attenuate HPV in isolated perfused lungs or in an in situ preparation with constant perfusion (Fig. 21.12),[121,132] whereas most intravenous anesthetics do not have such an effect.[118] The combined administration of a Ca^{2+}-channel blocker and a volatile anesthetic further reduces HPV by up to 40%, compared with either drug alone, suggesting that these drugs inhibit HPV through differing mechanisms. The mechanisms of HPV inhibition by volatile anesthetics are unclear but may be related to arachidonic acid metabolites[133]

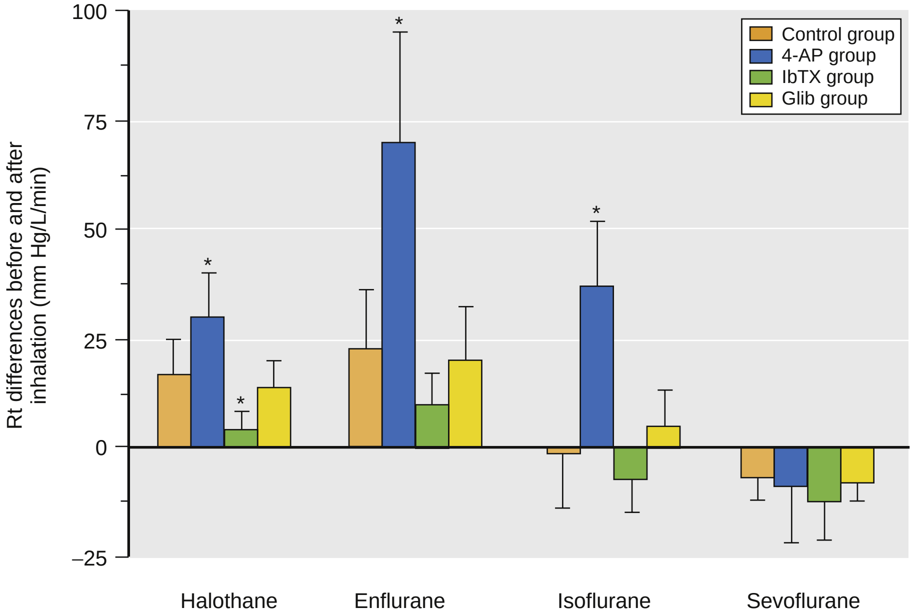


Fig. 21.10 Total pulmonary vascular resistance *(Rt)* before and after anesthetic inhalation. Data are mean ± standard deviation. *$P < .01$ versus control group. *4AP,* voltage-sensitive K^+ channel inhibitor; *Glib,* glibenclamide, an adenosine triphosphate–sensitive K^+ channel inhibitor; *IbTX,* calcium-activated K+ channel inhibitor; *Rt difference,* resistance after the administration of anesthetic minus resistance before administering the anesthetic. (Modified from Liu R, Ishibe Y, Okazaki N, et al. Volatile anesthetics regulate pulmonary vascular tensions through different potassium channel subtypes in isolated rabbit lungs. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:301. Used with permission.)

or endothelial-derived vasodilating factors.[134] However, other evidence suggests that anesthetic-induced inhibition of HPV may occur independent of pulmonary vascular endothelium, NO, or guanylate cyclase.[135,136] Volatile anesthetics also disrupt Ca^{2+} homeostasis in vascular smooth muscle and thereby interfere with pulmonary vasoconstriction. Halothane and isoflurane attenuated endothelium-dependent vasodilation by inhibiting cGMP accumulation[137] and a K_{ATP} channel-mediated interaction between NO and prostacyclin in isolated canine PA rings.[138] In contrast, isoflurane modulated the HPV response, at least in part, through Ca^{2+}-activated and voltage-sensitive K^+ channels. Attenuation of HPV by sevoflurane occurred independent of K^+-channel function.[139]

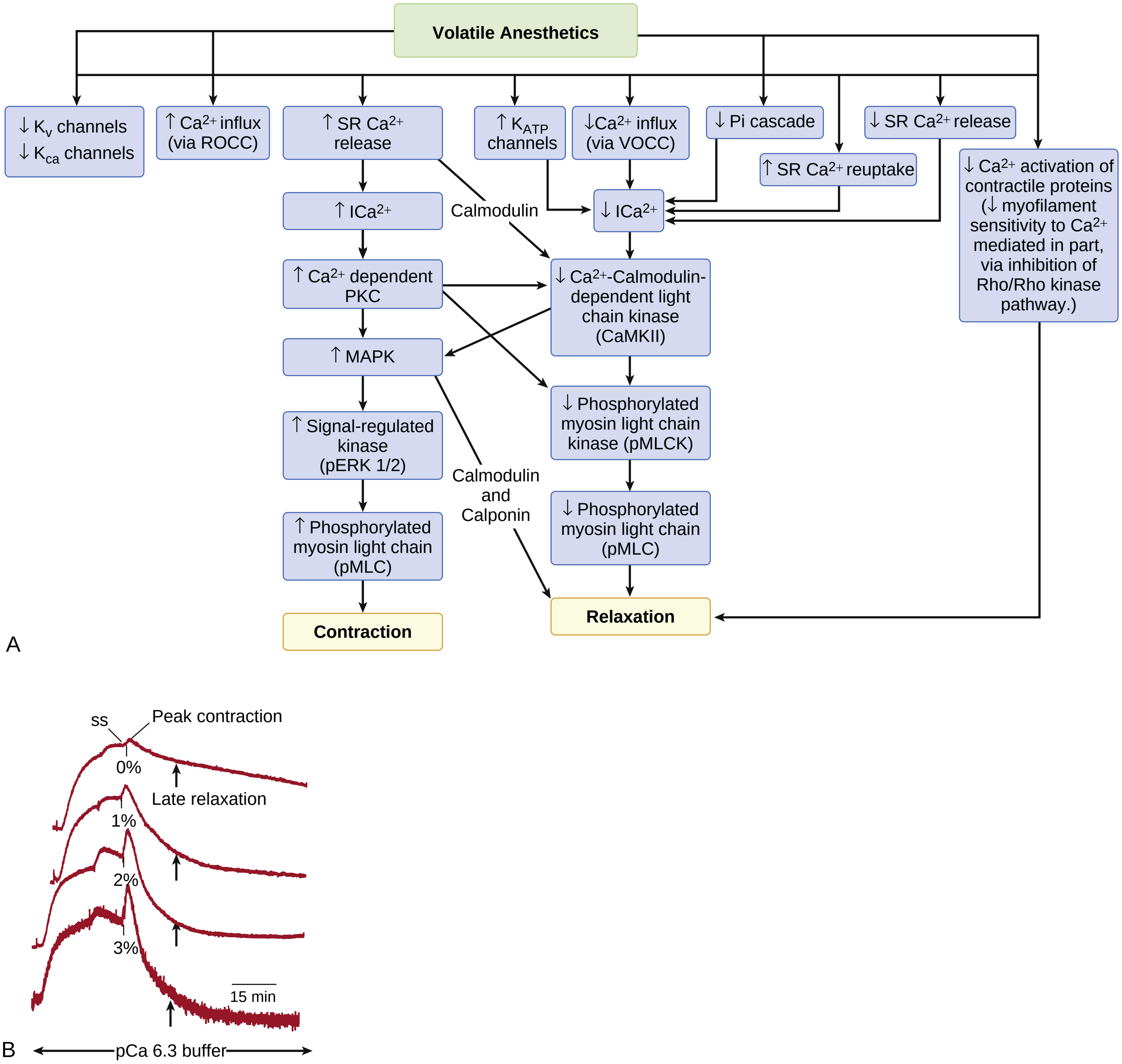

Volatile Anesthetics
↓ K_v channels
↓ K_{ca} channels
↑ Ca^{2+} influx (via ROCC)
↑ SR Ca^{2+} release
↑ K_{ATP} channels
↓Ca^{2+} influx (via VOCC)
↓ Pi cascade
↓ SR Ca^{2+} release
↑ SR Ca^{2+} reuptake
↓ Ca^{2+} activation of contractile proteins (↓ myofilament sensitivity to Ca^{2+} mediated in part, via inhibition of Rho/Rho kinase pathway.)
↑ ICa^{2+}
Calmodulin
↓ ICa^{2+}
↑ Ca^{2+} dependent PKC
↓ Ca^{2+}-Calmodulin-dependent light chain kinase (CaMKII)
↑ MAPK
↑ Signal-regulated kinase (pERK 1/2)
↓ Phosphorylated myosin light chain kinase (pMLCK)
Calmodulin and Calponin
↑ Phosphorylated myosin light chain (pMLC)
↓ Phosphorylated myosin light chain (pMLC)
Contraction
Relaxation
A
ss
Peak contraction
0%
Late relaxation
1%
2%
3%
15 min
B
pCa 6.3 buffer

Fig. 21.11 (A) Proposed signaling pathways underlying volatile anesthetic-induced contraction and relaxation in pulmonary artery smooth muscle. Intracellular calcium *(ICa^{2+})* may be increased by release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum *(SR)*, by the inhibition of voltage-sensitive potassium *(K_v)* or calcium-activated potassium *(K_{ca})* channels, or by receptor-operated Ca^{2+} channels *(ROCC)*. Increased ICa^{2+} results in an initial dose-dependent increase in force (associated with activation of protein kinase C *[PKC]* and increased mitogen-activated protein kinase *[MAPK]*). Volatile anesthetics also decrease ICa^{2+} by activating adenosine triphosphate–regulated potassium *(K_{ATP})* channels, thereby inhibiting Ca^{2+} influx via voltage-operated Ca^{2+} channels *(VOCC)*, decreasing SR-induced release of Ca^{2+}, inhibiting the phosphatidylinositol *(Pi)* cascade, and enhancing SR-mediated reuptake of Ca^{2+}. The resultant decrease in force is associated with activation of Ca^{2+}-calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II *(CaMKII)*. It is important to note that there are many agent-specific effects of volatile anesthetics on each component of these pathways. *pERK,* Phosphorylated extracellular signal-regulated kinase. (B) Example of a biphasic (contraction/relaxation) effect of halothane on pulmonary arterial smooth muscle. *0%, 1%, 2%,* and *3%,* Halothane concentrations; *ss,* control force at steady state before halothane. Halothane dose dependently enhanced Ca^{2+}-activated peak force and late relaxation. (Data from Akata,[122] Su and Vo,[130] and Zhong and Su.[131])

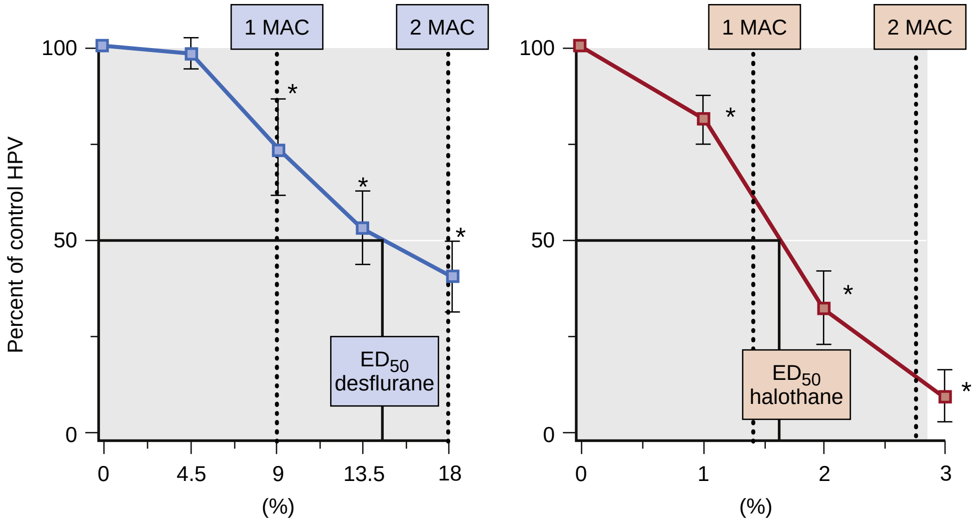


Fig. 21.12 Concentration-dependent inhibition of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction *(HPV)* in isolated rabbit lungs by desflurane *(blue squares)* and halothane *(red squares)*. Values are mean ± standard error of the mean and expressed as a percentage of control. *$P < .05$ versus control HPV. The 50% effective dose (ED_{50}) values were within the range of 1 and 2 minimum alveolar concentrations *(MAC)* (for rabbits) for both agents. (Reproduced from Loer SA, Scheeren T, Tarnow J. Desflurane inhibits hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction in isolated rabbit lungs. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:552. Used with permission.)

The relative efficacy of volatile anesthetics on HPV in vivo is difficult to assess because several other factors impair HPV, including temperature, pH, CO_2 tension, degree of hypoxia, size of the hypoxic area, surgical trauma, and medications. During OLV, the direct inhibitory effects of volatile anesthetics on HPV may increase perfusion in the nonventilated lung and worsen hypoxemia. However, volatile anesthetics may also affect HPV, lung perfusion, and oxygenation by indirect actions on cardiac output and mixed venous O_2 saturation.[140] Baseline PA blood flow and pressure also modulate the effects of HPV. Elevated PA pressures may cause passive distension of constricted vascular beds and thereby reverse HPV. Alternatively, reflex pulmonary and systemic vasoconstriction in response to hypotension may increase PVR in healthy lung segments, leading to a shift of pulmonary blood flow to hypoxic areas of lung.[121]

Early studies suggested that nitrous oxide attenuates HPV in animal models in vivo. As opposed to the findings with isoflurane,[133] sevoflurane or desflurane did not inhibit HPV in chronically instrumented dogs subjected to gradual occlusion of the right main PA (Fig. 21.13).[141] Nitrous oxide,[142] desflurane, and isoflurane,[143] but not xenon,[142] reduced the mixed venous O_2 saturation, cardiac output, and arterial oxygenation during OLV in pigs. However, nitrous oxide,[142] xenon,[142] desflurane,[143,144] and isoflurane[143,145] did not alter perfusion of the nonventilated lung or reduce the shunt fraction during OLV. In animals with a preexisting impairment of gas exchange attributable to a pneumoperitoneum, sevoflurane, but not isoflurane, caused more profound abnormalities in gas exchange than did propofol.[146] Thus although reductions in HPV by volatile anesthetics have been relatively small in vivo, preexisting pulmonary disease may worsen anesthetic-induced gas exchange abnormalities.

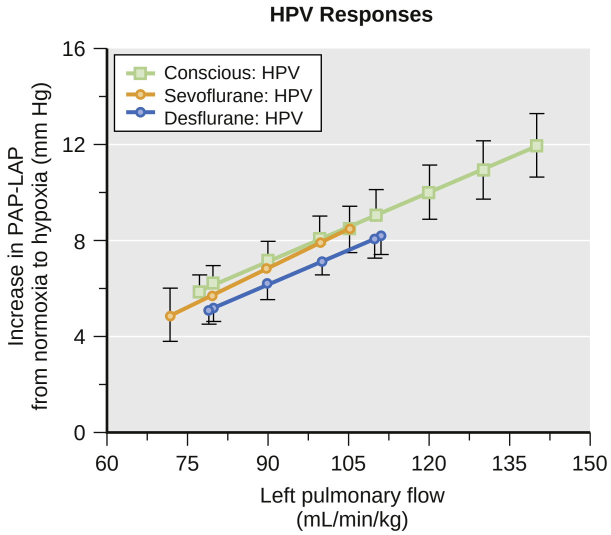


Fig. 21.13 Composite hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction *(HPV)* responses (increase in pulmonary artery pressure *[PAP]* minus left atrial pressure *[LAP]* as a function of left pulmonary flow in the same seven chronically instrumented dogs in the conscious state and during sevoflurane and desflurane anesthesia. Neither anesthetic affected the magnitude of HPV when compared with the response in the conscious state. (From Lesitsky MA, Davis S, Murray PA. Preservation of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction during sevoflurane and desflurane anesthesia compared to the conscious state in chronically instrumented dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1501. Used with permission.)

EFFECTS OF VOLATILE ANESTHETICS ON PULMONARY VASCULATURE IN HUMANS

General anesthesia often impairs pulmonary gas exchange. In addition to specific effects of volatile anesthetics, many other factors including gravity, posture, atelectasis, differences in vessel conductance between lung regions, intrathoracic pressure, and HPV may all affect the distribution of pulmonary blood flow and ventilation during the administration of volatile anesthetics. Alterations in regional ventilation are related to variations in alveolar compliance, inspiratory rate, flow rate, pleural pressures, and ventilatory modes.[147] In spontaneously breathing healthy volunteers, sevoflurane (1 MAC for 20 minutes) administered via a facemask did not alter the relative distribution of either ventilation or perfusion in a ventral to dorsal direction measured by single photon–emission CT.[147] Similarly, no change in the distribution of ventilation, as measured by using electrical impedance tomography, occurred in spontaneously breathing adults receiving 0.7 MAC of sevoflurane via a laryngeal mask airway (LMA).[145] Interestingly, sevoflurane reduced regional heterogeneity of the perfusion distribution and increased regional heterogeneity of the ventilation/perfusion ($\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$) ratio with a tendency toward lower ratios in spontaneously breathing volunteers.[147] This alteration may contribute to less effective pulmonary gas exchange, but these effects were relatively small compared with alterations in $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ distribution that occur during mechanical ventilation.[148,149] Either pressure-controlled or pressure-supported ventilation with sevoflurane caused similar ventral redistributions of ventilation.[148]

Isoflurane produces no clinically significant effects on pulmonary shunt in healthy patients even at concentrations that cause systemic hypotension.[150] Thoracic surgeries are usually performed in the lateral position with an open chest and dramatically affect the relative distribution of ventilation and perfusion. Under these conditions, a diseased, nondependent lung may affect the pulmonary vascular response to hypoxia, as may surgical manipulation of the lung itself. Most studies in animal models or patients undergoing OLV did not demonstrate clinically significant attenuation of HPV by volatile anesthetics. Differences in shunt fraction, PVR, or oxygenation between isoflurane and sevoflurane anesthesia in patients undergoing OLV for lobectomy for lung cancer do not appear to be significant.[151] Some studies also demonstrated that shunt fraction is similar in patients receiving propofol or either isoflurane[152] or sevoflurane[153,154] during OLV. No significant differences in shunt fraction or arterial O_2 tension were observed during intravenous infusions of ketamine, which does not inhibit HPV, and inhalation of enflurane. In contrast, isoflurane[155,156] and sevoflurane[156] impaired oxygenation and increased shunt fraction more than an intravenous infusion of propofol during OLV. However, the differences in oxygenation observed in these studies were small and clinically insignificant. The relative depth of anesthesia may affect interpretation of the differences in oxygenation between intravenous and volatile anesthetics in these studies. When doses of propofol and sevoflurane were chosen based on a similar depth of anesthesia, assessed by a bispectral index monitor, similar reductions in arterial oxygenation were observed in patients undergoing OLV.[154] Similar changes in shunt fraction and oxygenation were shown to occur with halothane,[157] isoflurane,[151,157,158] desflurane,[158] and sevoflurane in patients undergoing thoracotomy and OLV (Fig. 21.14).[151,156-158]

Convincing evidence suggests that all volatile anesthetics may be safely used in patients undergoing thoracotomy and OLV. The increase in shunt and the decrease in oxygenation caused by halothane or isoflurane[157] were consistent with an approximately 20% inhibition of HPV at 1 MAC. Instead of the expected 50% reduction in pulmonary blood flow in a hypoxic lung in the absence of a volatile anesthetic, blood flow decreases by 40% during hypoxia in the presence of 1 MAC isoflurane. This change in flow corresponds to an increase in pulmonary shunt by approximately 4% of the cardiac output. Carlsson and colleagues[159] applied multiple inert gas elimination techniques to measure the true shunt fraction in humans anesthetized with volatile anesthetics and demonstrated a 2% to 3% increase in shunt fraction corresponding to approximately 20% HPV inhibition at 1.5% isoflurane. In addition, no significant effects on arterial oxygenation occurred with clinically relevant concentrations of isoflurane or enflurane. Indeed, the use of total intravenous anesthesia with propofol and alfentanil did not reduce the occurrence of hypoxemia during OLV, compared with a volatile anesthetic.[152]

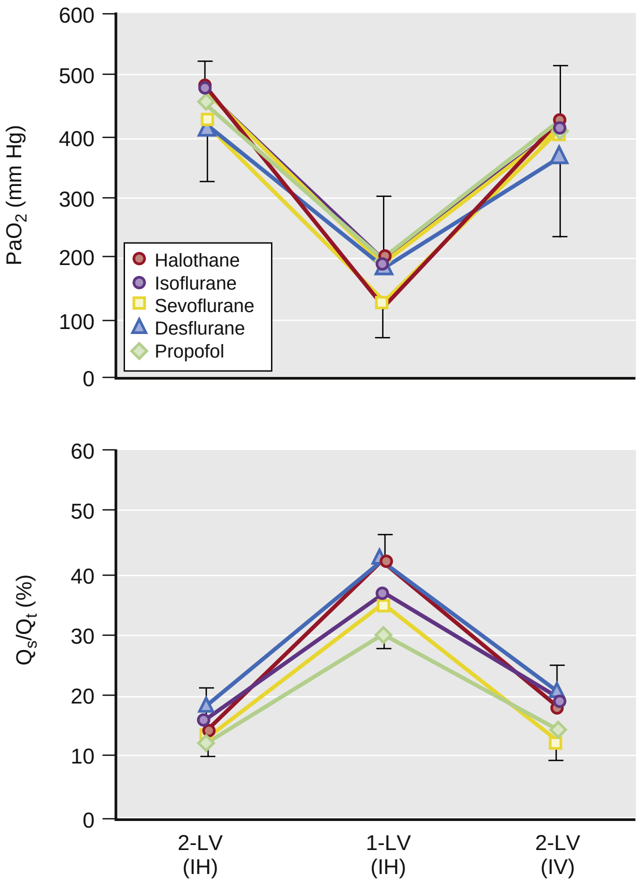


Fig. 21.14 Partial arterial pressure of oxygen *(PaO_2)* and intrapulmonary shunt fraction *(Q_s/Q_t)* in patients with both lungs ventilated *(2-LV)* or with one lung ventilated *(1-LV)*. Patients received an inhaled agent *(IH)* halothane, isoflurane, sevoflurane, or desflurane or the intravenous *(IV)* anesthetic propofol. Note the minimal effect on PaO_2 and shunt fraction that occurs in changing from a volatile anesthetic to an IV agent. (Data modified from Abe and colleagues,[148,153] Benumof and colleagues,[154] and Pagel and colleagues.[155])

Functionally, volatile anesthetics exert only mild, if any, inhibitory effects on HPV and oxygenation.[160,161] The relatively small inhibition of HPV should not significantly influence clinical decision making, especially considering the efficacy of drugs such as the peripheral chemoreceptor agonist, almitrine[162] (which enhances HPV), or inhaled NO (which selectively increases perfusion to adequately ventilated pulmonary regions). In addition, ventilatory strategies (e.g., nondependent lung continuous positive airway pressure, permissive hypercapnia) and fiberoptic bronchoscopy to ensure proper positioning of a double-lumen endotracheal tube help alleviate hypoxemia. The net effect of volatile anesthetics on HPV is multifactorial and depends on the direct effects of these agents not only on pulmonary vasomotor tone, but also by indirect actions that occur during anesthesia and surgery.

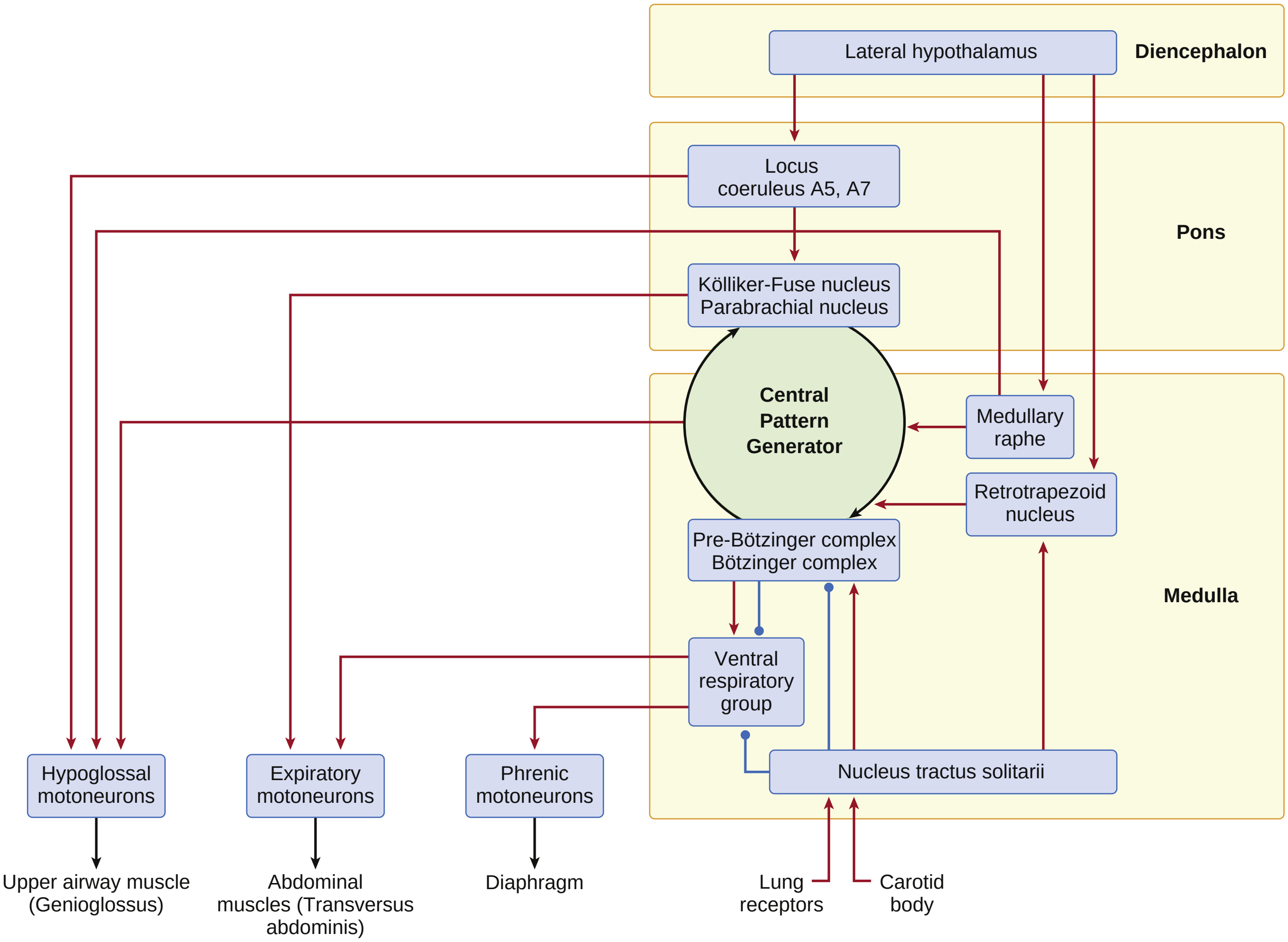

Lateral hypothalamus
Diencephalon
Locus coeruleus A5, A7
Pons
Kölliker-Fuse nucleus Parabrachial nucleus
Central Pattern Generator
Medullary raphe
Retrotrapezoid nucleus
Pre-Bötzinger complex Bötzinger complex
Medulla
Ventral respiratory group
Nucleus tractus solitarii
Hypoglossal motoneurons
Expiratory motoneurons
Phrenic motoneurons
Upper airway muscle (Genioglossus)
Abdominal muscles (Transversus abdominis)
Diaphragm
Lung receptors
Carotid body

Fig. 21.15 Anatomic components of the respiratory system and the main nuclei involved in the generation of respiration from chemoreception to motoneuron activation (see text for details). Wakefulness drive is derived from the lateral hypothalamus. The *central pattern generator*, where respiratory drive is converted into a respiratory pattern, is thought to consist of several nuclei in the medulla and pons. Potential sites of central chemoreception are the locus coeruleus, areas A5 and A7, in the pons, and the medullary raphé and retrotrapezoid nucleus in the medulla. Expiratory and inspiratory excitatory drive is relayed to premotor neurons (ventral respiratory group), which project to expiratory motoneurons and inspiratory motoneurons (e.g., phrenic nerve) in the spinal cord. These motor nerves innervate abdominal muscles (expiratory) and diaphragm (inspiratory). Respiratory pattern and chemoreception are influenced by afferents from the lungs and carotid bodies. Excitatory inputs *(red arrows)*; inhibitory inputs *(blue buttons)*.

CONTROL OF RESPIRATION

Components of the Respiratory Regulatory System

The regulation of respiratory function is very complex, occurs both on unconscious and conscious levels, and is precisely controlled by neuronal circuits, which are mainly located in the brainstem and include the medulla oblongata, pons, and midbrain (Fig. 21.15).

The neuronal networks in these areas are sufficient to generate involuntary, automatic breathing, which may be superseded by cortical centers for voluntary efforts such as speech, swallowing, laughing, sneezing, and coughing. Respiration per se is to ensure adequate gas exchange in order to meet metabolic demand during various levels of activity. Reflex inputs from the upper airways, lungs, and carotid bodies modulate respiration when inadequacy of gas exchange is sensed. Connections to the lateral hypothalamus also convey wakefulness drive to the respiratory center. Physiological status like sleep and pregnancy alter the respiratory function; so does nonphysiological status such as sedation. This chapter is not intended to discuss respiratory physiology in detail. Rather, its focus is on the major regulatory components of the respiratory system and how they are affected by inhalational anesthetics (Fig. 21.16).

Readers are referred to Chapters 13 and 41 for a detailed discussion of respiratory physiology and monitoring.

In general, respiratory drive is suppressed by all inhalational anesthetics except nitrous oxide.[163,164] Volatile anesthetics decrease glutamatergic excitatory drive to bulbospinal respiratory neurons and increase $GABA_A$ergic inhibitory mechanisms at the postsynaptic neuronal membrane.[165] In hypoglossal upper airway motor neurons, volatile anesthetics hyperpolarize neuronal membrane resting potential by activating K^+ channels that are linked to serotonin or norepinephrine receptors.[166,167] The magnitude of respiratory depression by volatile anesthetics may also depend on the position of the neuron in the neuronal hierarchy, which extends from the neurons generating excitatory respiratory drive to the respiratory pattern generator

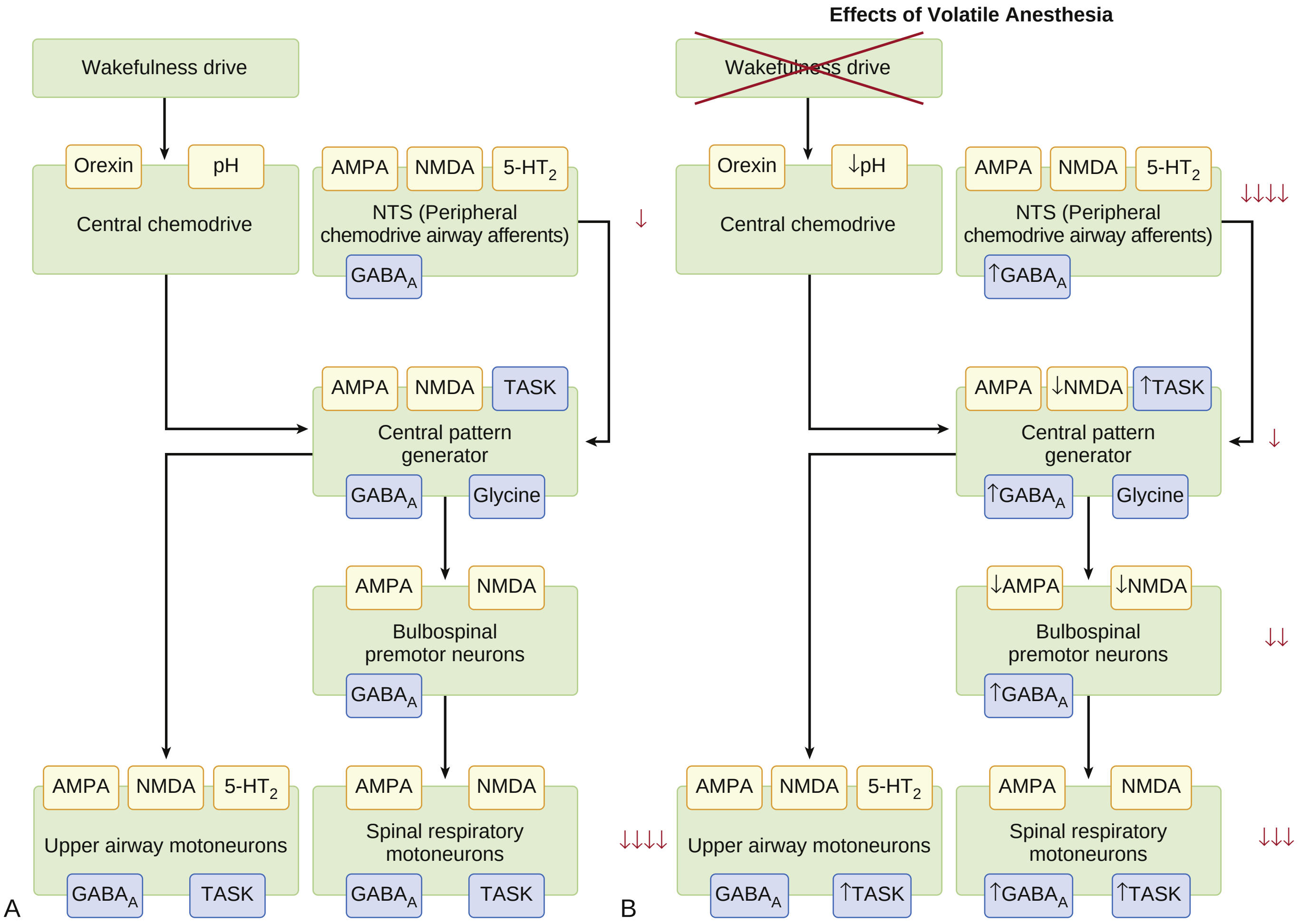

Effects of Volatile Anesthesia
Wakefulness drive
Orexin
pH
Central chemodrive
AMPA
NMDA
5-HT2
NTS (Peripheral chemodrive airway afferents)
GABAA
TASK
Central pattern generator
Glycine
Bulbospinal premotor neurons
Upper airway motoneurons
Spinal respiratory motoneurons
↓
↓pH
↑GABAA
↓NMDA
↑TASK
↓AMPA
↓↓↓↓
↓↓
↓↓↓
A
B

Fig. 21.16 (A) Ligand-gated receptors and ion channels on respiratory-related neurons. Excitatory receptors and channels are marked in *yellow*, inhibitory in *blue*. Opening of pH sensitive channels excites the neuron, whereas the opening of two-pore domain, acid-sensitive potassium (K^+) *(TASK)* channels causes membrane hyperpolarization and inhibition of neuronal discharge. (B) Effects of volatile anesthetics on respiratory-related neurons. Volatile anesthetics eliminate wakefulness drive to the respiratory system *(red cross out)*. *Black arrows* indicate changes in receptor function (*up*, increase; *down*, decrease) that have been published in the literature. Volatile anesthetics reduce the presynaptic release of glutamate and γ-aminobutyric acid A *($GABA_A$)* in respiratory premotor neurons. The cumulative anesthetic effects on the respective neuron groups are depicted *(red arrows)*. The relative magnitude of the depressant effect is visualized *(number of arrows)*. In humans, peripheral chemodrive is significantly more depressed than central chemodrive. Upper airway motoneurons are significantly more depressed than inspiratory motoneurons. *$5\text{-}HT_2$*, 5-Hydroxytryptamine; *AMPA*, alpha-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazolepropionate acid; *NMDA*, *N*-methyl-D-aspartate; *NTS*, nucleus of the solitary tract.

and down to the phrenic and hypoglossal respiratory output motor neurons (see Fig. 21.16). Consequently, volatile anesthetics, which strongly affect synaptic neurotransmission, have a greater depressant effect on polysynaptic neuronal circuits that include many synapses, compared with those comprised of only few neurons (paucisynaptic). Fortunately, most connections between the single components of the respiratory system seem to be paucisynaptic, which may explain a relative resistance of automatic breathing to the depressant effects of volatile anesthetics.

The depressant effect of inhalational anesthetics on respiratory system may be further demonstrated at the molecular and genetic levels. Heterozygous paired-like homeobox 2b (PHOX2B) gene mutations have been found in the majority of patients diagnosed with late-onset central hypoventilation syndrome and may increase sensitivity of those patients to anesthetic-induced depression of breathing.[168] A recent study demonstrated that isoflurane can potentiate aggregation and mislocalization of PHOX2B variants, alter protein folding, and induce endoplasmic reticulum stress, indicating a mechanism by which these agents may affect respiratory neuronal function after surgery and promote the onset of the neurologic respiratory disease.[169]

Importantly, most data on respiratory regulatory systems are derived from animal models and may not directly translate to humans, as summarized in a review by Forster and Smith.[170] This section will therefore cover important animal study results to help understand the basic respiratory structure and function, as well as present recent clinical studies demonstrating the correlation of those findings to clinical practice.

CENTRAL CHEMORECEPTION

For many years, the prevailing view was that CO_2/H^+ sensitivity was due exclusively to the central chemoreceptors. Recent studies showed that central chemoreceptors contribute about two thirds of the ventilatory response to CO_2/H^+, while peripheral chemoreceptors contribute about one third.[170] These excitatory chemodrive mechanisms ensure automatic breathing under normoxic, normocapnic conditions in healthy individuals.[170] Central chemoreceptors discharge in response to the decrease in extracellular pH or an increase in [H$^+$]. In addition, they project to other areas of the respiratory system where they form excitatory synapses. This pathway is well recognized, but its exact location remains to be defined. Animal studies have pointed to multiple chemosensitive sites in the brainstem[171] including the retrotrapezoid nucleus (RTN), medullary raphé, locus coeruleus, nucleus tractus solitarius (NTS), lateral hypothalamus, and caudal ventrolateral medulla. The RTN is a particularly strong candidate as the absence of RTN likely causes severe central apneas in congenital central hypoventilation syndrome. Glial cells in these areas may also theoretically contribute to chemoreception through their effect on extracellular pH or by hypoxia- or CO_2-induced ATP release potentially altering the function of chemosensitive neurons.[172]

Central chemoreceptors also promote excitatory drive to neurons regulating upper airway patency and arousal from sleep.[171] The genioglossus muscle, considered a typical representative for the muscles maintaining upper airway patency, receives significant tonic and phasic excitatory drive in the conscious state. Genioglossal muscle activity is reduced during sleep, but high levels of inspiratory CO_2 (>5%) are capable of recruiting near-normal levels of phasic activity. This phenomenon does not occur during rapid eye movement (REM) sleep because genioglossal muscle activity is absent, and therefore the upper airway collapses and hypoventilation follows.

Hypercapnia secondary to upper airway obstruction and hypoventilation may recruit the normal phasic activity of genioglossal muscle through central chemoreceptors and function as another mechanism (aside from hypoxia) by which patients with obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) arouse from sleep and reestablish airway patency. Residual subanesthetic concentrations of volatile anesthetics, which may be present for hours in postoperative patients, inhibit both peripheral hypoxic[173] and CO_2 chemosensitivity[174] and may also substantially impair the spontaneous arousal and resolution of upper airway obstruction that would otherwise occur with severe hypoxia or hypercarbia. This is a particularly important issue to recognize for same-day surgery patients, especially with a history of OSA.[175]

CENTRAL PATTERN GENERATOR

The cyclic breathing pattern is controlled by the central pattern generator (CPG). A recent review by Abdala and colleagues nicely summarizes the progress in the field.[176] Even though several models of the CPG network have been proposed, many of the circuit interactions and their functionalities remain unknown. CPG is believed to be located in nuclei of the pontomedullary network (see Fig. 21.15).[177] In the related nuclei, the network consists of excitatory and inhibitory neurons that control the inspiratory and expiratory phase of breathing. The breathing cycle is complexly regulated, and the type of neurons and the related neurotransmitters have been well illustrated (Fig. 21.17). This neuronal circuit can be pharmacologically modulated by inhaled anesthetics, affecting respiratory rate, upper airway patency, and relative contributions of the chest wall versus the diaphragm to tidal volume and minute alveolar ventilation.

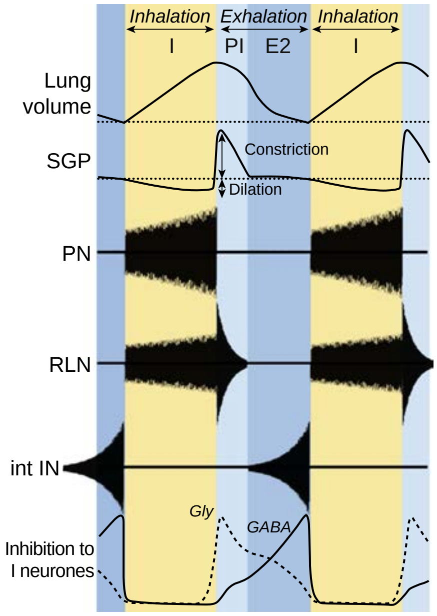


Fig. 21.17 Schematic diagram of a three–phase respiratory cycle and its neuro–mechanical components. Top schematic plots and neurograms represent lung volume, subglottal pressure *(SGP)*, phrenic *(PN)*, recurrent laryngeal *(RLN)*, and internal intercostal *(int IN)* nerve activities during the three phases of a respiratory cycle, i.e., inspiration *(I)*, postinspiration *(PI)*, and late expiration *(E2)*. Note that RLN conveys outputs from both abductor and adductor motoneurones, which fire respectively during inspiration (to dilate the glottis during inhalation) and postinspiration (to narrow the glottis during exhalation). Bottom overlay plots represent hypothetical time courses of glycine– *(Gly, dotted line)* and GABA–mediated *(continuous line)* inhibition to inspiratory (I) neurones during the respiratory cycle. These time courses reflect the activity of medullary postinspiratory (PI) inhibitory neurones, thought to be predominantly glycinergic, and GABAergic augmenting expiratory (E–AUG) inhibitory neurones active during E2 phase, both of which inhibit inspiratory neurones during expiration. Phasic inhibition of inspiratory neurones is minimal during inspiration, when active inspiratory neurones inhibit expiratory neurones, but rises abruptly during PI to orchestrate the inspiratory–expiratory phase transition and initiate exhalation. (Redrawn from Abdala AP, Paton JF, Smith JC. Defining inhibitory neurone function in respiratory circuits: opportunities with optogenetics? *J Physiol.* 2015;593[14]:3033–3046. Used with permission.)

INTEGRATION OF PERIPHERAL INPUTS

Afferent inputs from the periphery reach the brainstem respiratory center and influence respiratory drive. These inputs include the carotid body chemoreceptors, vagal inputs from the lungs and airways, and pulmonary baroreceptor inputs. The carotid body is the major peripheral chemoreceptor. It senses hypoxia or hypercapnia, which in turn increases carotid sinus nerve discharge. This information then reaches the RPG via NTS glutamatergic neurons, which also targets rostral ventrolateral medulla presympathetic neurons thereby raising sympathetic nerve activity (SNA). Chemoreceptors also regulate presympathetic neurons and cardio VPN indirectly via inputs from the RPG.[178] In essential hypertension, OSA, and congestive heart failure, chronically elevated carotid body afferent activity contributes to increasing SNA but breathing remains unchanged or becomes periodic.

The function of the carotid body was discovered nearly 80 years ago, and for a long time it was thought that the carotid body chemoreceptors function independently from central chemoreceptors.[179] However, more recent studies suggested that the peripheral and central chemoreceptors are not functionally separate but are interdependent. The sensitivity of the medullary chemoreceptors is critically determined by input from the peripheral chemoreceptors and possibly other breathing-related reflex afferents as well.[170] This effect might be mediated through interactions within the NTS and/or through NTS projections to parafacial respiratory group/RTN integrating neurons and/or through projections to neurons of a raphe-pontomedullary respiratory network.

Afferent vagal inputs from the lungs and airways are also relayed through the NTS. Pulmonary baroreceptor inputs project to second-order pump neurons in the NTS, which can provide both excitatory and inhibitory inputs to various parts of the medullary respiratory column. In general, pulmonary baroreceptor inputs promote the phase switch from inspiration to expiration. This vagal expiratory-facilitating reflex (Hering-Breuer reflex) is most prominent in immature mammals but also modulates respiratory phase-timing during resting ventilation in adult humans.[180] Although some of these inputs directly influence the CPG, others are integrated at the level of the bulbospinal or premotor neurons, which project to the motor neurons in the spinal cord.

RESPIRATORY MOTOR OUTPUT AND UPPER AIRWAY PATENCY

The pontomedullary respiratory network generates the respiratory pattern and then projects to and controls respiratory motor outputs in the brainstem and spinal cord. The phrenic motor neurons are the main inspiratory neurons in the spinal cord. They are located at the levels C_3 to C_5 of the spinal cord and innervate the diaphragm.[177] Phrenic motor neurons are also directly depressed by volatile anesthetics.[181] Expiratory motor neurons are located at approximately T_7-T_{12} of the spinal cord and innervate truncal abdominal muscles that aid with forceful expiration and with expiratory expulsive efforts such as coughing. Expiratory motor neurons receive inputs from expiratory bulbospinal neurons and the pons.[177] The spinal motor neurons are the final neurons in the respiratory neuronal hierarchy. Their activity tends to be reduced by the cumulative effect of anesthetics on all previous steps of chemoreception and neurotransmission.

To ensure effective ventilation, inspiratory muscle activity needs to be closely coordinated with upper airway muscles that maintain airway patency. Central respiratory motor output almost simultaneously engages both the phrenic motor neurons (serving chest wall pump muscles) and hypoglossal motor neurons (serving pharyngeal muscle dilators).[182,183] The hypoglossal motor nerve innervates upper airway muscles, particularly the genioglossal muscle. The strength of excitatory and inhibitory drive to hypoglossal motor neurons strongly depends on the level of consciousness and differs between the REM and non-REM sleep phases.

The onset of the sleeping state results in a reduced tonic activation of upper airway dilator musculature and enhances collapsibility. This effect is especially problematic for patients with OSA whose airway is narrower, longer, and more collapsible than that of those without OSA. Patients with OSA critically rely on compensatory activation of airway dilator muscles to maintain patency during wakefulness. The reduced lung volumes in obese recumbent patients during sleep also decrease caudal traction on the trachea, promoting pharyngeal collapse.[184,185] In addition, the loss of wakefulness removes an important vigilance component in the ventilatory control system, leaving the regulation of central respiratory motor output largely under chemoreceptor and mechanoreceptor feedback control.

The mechanisms of airway collapse during sleep and anesthesia are closely related. Hypoventilation and/or hypoxia secondary to upper airway collapse during anesthesia/sedation represent a significant challenge for anesthesia care providers, particularly in ambulatory surgery patients. The effect of inhalational anesthetics on pharyngeal airway collapsibility can best be illustrated by visualizing the changes as the depth of sedation increases.

EFFECTS OF INHALED ANESTHETICS ON RESTING VENTILATION

Volatile anesthetics suppress conscious control of breathing at concentrations of less than 1 MAC and completely abolish conscious breathing drive at higher concentrations. Breathing is then largely controlled by automatic brainstem mechanisms and chemoreflex inputs. All volatile anesthetics also cause a dose-dependent decrease in minute ventilation at concentrations greater than 1 MAC because of a decrease in tidal volume. However, in a pressure chamber, Hornbein and colleagues demonstrated that nitrous oxide does not significantly reduce minute ventilation within 1.5 MAC (well beyond an atmosphere).[186] The respiratory rate typically increases for all inhalational agents tested, except for xenon, which causes a significant reduction in respiratory rate (Fig. 21.18). Indeed, there are several reports indicating that xenon can cause hypopnea or apnea.[187,188]

Most volatile anesthetics cause an increase in respiratory rate by producing a decrease in both inspiratory and expiratory duration, whereas opioids cause a very prominent decrease in respiratory rate that primarily results from a large increase in expiratory duration. However, the observed modest decrease in minute ventilation with volatile anesthetics could underestimate the magnitude of the respiratory depressant effects of these agents. This is due to volatile anesthetic–induced hypoventilation increasing $PaCO_2$ in a closed central chemoreflex feedback loop. In turn, central chemoreceptors are stimulated, thereby increasing central chemodrive to the respiratory center and increasing minute ventilation.[199-202]

EFFECTS OF INHALED ANESTHETICS ON CHEMOREFLEXES

Volatile anesthetics impair peripheral chemoreceptor responses to hypoxia and hypercarbia in a dose dependent manner. In the presence of volatile anesthetic concentrations of 1 MAC or higher, breathing in humans is entirely dependent on the automatic control from the pontomedullary respiratory center and afferent excitatory inputs from the central chemoreceptors. These anesthetic concentrations lead to a complete depression of the peripheral chemoreflex loop with further respiratory depression rather than

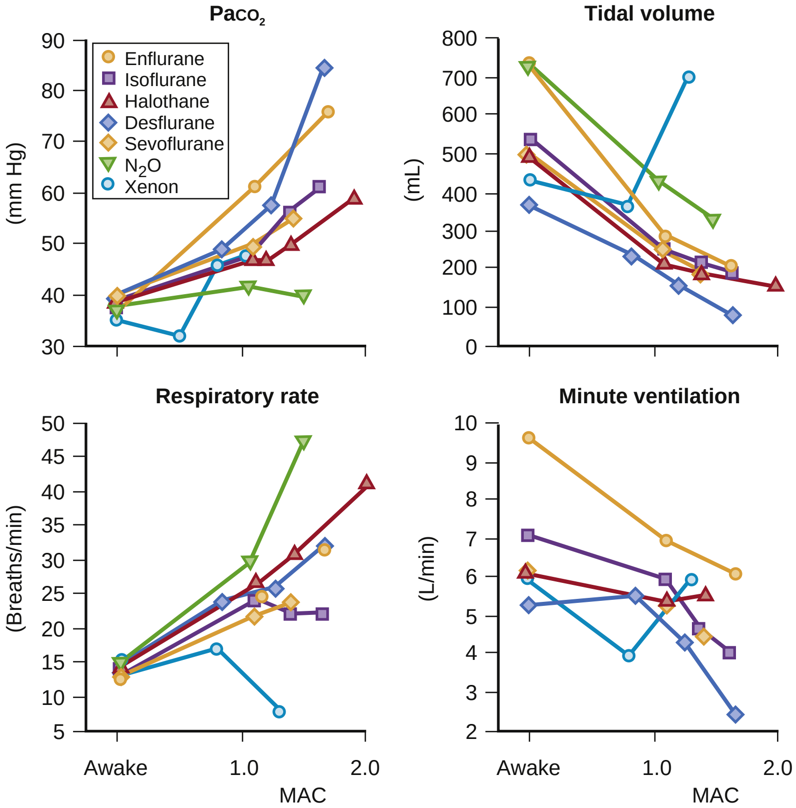


Fig. 21.18 Comparison of mean changes in resting partial arterial pressure of carbon dioxide ($PaCO_2$), tidal volume, respiratory rate, and minute ventilation in patients anesthetized with various inhaled agents. Most agents cause dose-dependent tachypnea, decreases in minute ventilation and tidal volume, and an increase in $Paco_2$. *MAC,* Minimum alveolar concentration, *N_2O,* nitrous oxide.[189-194] *Note: data for xenon has been extrapolated from references.*[195-198]

stimulation in response to hypoxia.[203] Even very low concentrations of the agent (0.1 MAC of isoflurane and sevoflurane) depress the peripheral chemoreflex loop, without affecting the central chemoreflex loop. Desflurane at the same MAC showed no effect on peripheral and central CO_2 sensitivity.[204] A loss of upper airway muscle tone and function accompanies this process, as does differential depression of neurotransmission at the level of the spinal cord.[205]

The effect of inhaled anesthetics on respiratory drive may not be clinically relevant in the patient undergoing controlled ventilation. However, it does matter in spontaneously breathing patients. Because the suppressive effect of inhaled anesthetics on respiratory drive is synergetic with narcotics and frequently these two drug classes are administered concurrently, the suppression on the hypoxic and hypercarbic drive can increase the risk of postoperative respiratory complications.

EFFECTS OF INHALED ANESTHETICS ON THE HYPERCAPNIC VENTILATORY RESPONSE

In awake humans, about one third of the CO_2-mediated respiratory drive is through peripheral chemoreceptors and other two thirds through the central chemoreceptors. The respiratory drive mediated by the peripheral chemoreceptors is augmented by hypoxia.[206] However, the hypoxia-mediated component is abolished by the majority of volatile anesthetics at concentration even under 1 MAC. When the anesthetic concentration increases above 1 MAC, the peripheral chemoreceptor-mediated portion of the CO_2 responsive respiratory drive are abolished, and only the central chemoreceptor loop remains functional.[173,207-209] Depression of the respiratory drive is often described in a quantitative manner by plotting the CO_2 response curve (an increase in $PaCO_2$ vs. an increase in minute alveolar ventilation). Volatile anesthetics also cause a rightward shift of the apneic threshold,[210] that is the minimum $PaCO_2$ required to initiate spontaneous respiration. Thus spontaneous breathing efforts do not occur if mechanical or assisted ventilation efforts drive the $PaCO_2$ levels below the CO_2 threshold during anesthesia.[211]

Patients under general anesthesia with volatile anesthetics become hypercarbic if they are spontaneously breathing without any ventilatory support. Pressure support ventilation is often used to counteract the suppression of the respiratory drive by the volatile anesthetics. However, it remains to be determined if an increase in pressure support would lead to a proportional increase in minute alveolar ventilation as the intrinsic CO_2 response curve at a given level of sedation is not altered. An increase in minute alveolar ventilation secondary to increased tidal volumes from pressure support may result in a decreased respiratory rate and therefore minute alveolar ventilation may not be increased as much as expected.

EFFECTS OF VOLATILE ANESTHETIC ON THE HYPOXIC VENTILATORY RESPONSE IN HUMANS

Hypoxic ventilatory response (HVR) is rarely encountered in conscious healthy humans at sea level. However, for

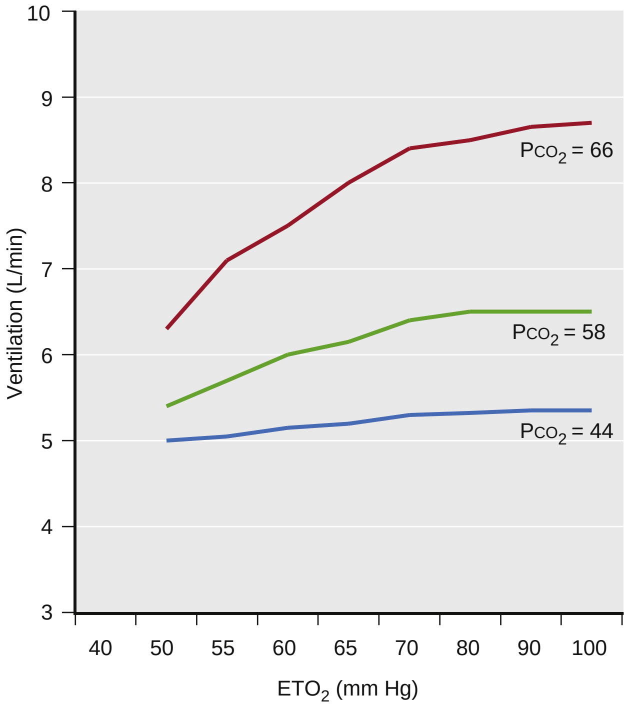


Fig. 21.19 Effects of halothane anesthesia on the hypoxic ventilatory response in humans at three steady-state levels of partial pressure of carbon dioxide (PCO_2). Halothane anesthesia (1.1 minimum alveolar concentration) completely eliminates the hypoxic ventilatory response and the hypoxic hypercapnic interaction at the peripheral chemoreceptors. *ETO_2*, End-tidal oxygen. (Modified from Knill RL, Gelb AW. Ventilatory responses to hypoxia and hypercapnia during halothane sedation and anesthesia in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49:244. Used with permission.)

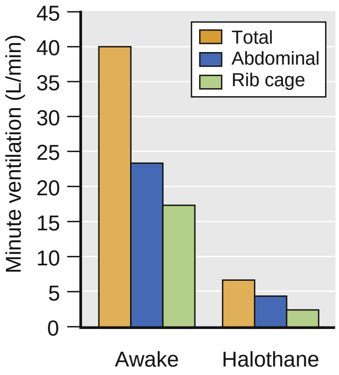


Fig. 21.20 Effects of halothane anesthesia on rib cage and abdominal ventilation during hypercapnia (calculated ventilation at partial arterial pressure of carbon dioxide [$PaCO_2$] of 55 mm Hg). Compared with being awake, halothane anesthesia strongly depresses minute ventilation. Halothane depresses the rib cage component to ventilation more than the abdominal component (diaphragmatic). Data are means. (Graph is based on data from Warner DO, Warner MA, Ritman EL. Mechanical significance of respiratory muscle activity in humans during halothane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:309.)

special occupations, such as tunnel workers at sea level, or mountain climbers staying at high attitude, hypoxia does occur and therefore the HVR becomes an important mechanism to compensate for low inspired O_2 concentrations. One example is humans living at high altitude. At the top of Mt. Everest (8848 m), the partial pressure of O_2 of ambient air is only about 50 mm Hg compared with 159.6 mm Hg at sea level. The corresponding arterial blood PaO_2 is only 37.6 mm Hg, which is lower than the partial pressure of O_2 in the mixed venous blood in healthy resting adults living at sea level. The estimated minute ventilation is approximately 166 L/min as a result of severe hypoxic hyperventilation.[212] However, this powerful compensation mechanism is significantly comprised under anesthesia with volatile anesthetics under 1 MAC and completely abolished at 1.1 MAC of halothane (Fig. 21.19). It is important to realize that even a subanesthetic concentration (0.1 MAC) of inhalational anesthetics profoundly diminishes hypoxic respiratory drive without concurrent use of narcotics.[213] The potency of the suppression of HVR has been proposed as the following order: halothane > enflurane > sevoflurane > isoflurane > desflurane.[173]

Certain patient populations are particularly vulnerable to the inhibition of hypoxic respiratory drive at subanesthetic concentrations, including premature infants and patients with OSA.[214,215] The depressant effect on the HVR is due to selective inhibition of the peripheral chemoreflex loop. The carotid body appears to be the most likely target. However, the mechanisms by which subanesthetic concentrations of volatile anesthetics attenuate hypoxic ventilatory drive are not completely understood. Interestingly, acute pain and central nervous system arousal do not restore impaired HVR during sevoflurane sedation. Thus compromise of the central nervous system arousal state per se does not contribute to the impairment of the acute HVR by sevoflurane.[216] Additionally, audiovisual stimulation does not prevent the blunting of acute HVR by low-dose halothane, but by isoflurane. This finding raises the possibility that volatile anesthetics might differently affect the hypoxic chemoreflex loop.[217]

EFFECTS OF INHALED ANESTHETICS ON RESPIRATORY MUSCLE ACTIVITY

Humans are bipeds and very different from the quadruped mammals in terms of contribution of various muscle groups, particularly the truncal muscles, to the normal respiratory effort, probably due to differences in posture. Thus the results of respiratory control studies in animals could not be directly extrapolated to humans, whether under normal resting conditions or under anesthesia. At quiet breathing in supine and conscious nonpregnant adult humans, scalene and parasternal inspiratory activity is universally present, but abdominal expiratory activity is absent.[218,219] This means that at quiet breathing, expiration is mostly passive and likely occurs via recoiling of chest wall and lungs. When breathing is stimulated by inhaling CO_2, the inspiratory activity is enhanced and expiratory muscles are recruited.

Volatile anesthetics, such as halothane, depress various respiratory muscles differently (Fig. 21.20). The diaphragm, as the main inspiratory muscle, is unique in that regard because it is relatively spared from the respiratory depression by volatile anesthetics, probably because of its low position in the hierarchy of the neurotransmission system. At 1 MAC of halothane, the tidal volume was reduced by 59%, respiratory rate was increased by 146%, and FRC was decreased by 335 ± 75 mL. The decrease in minute ventilation could be because of rib cage/chest wall activity but is not because of a reduction in abdominal breathing, and the contribution of the diaphragm is also substantially less affected.[220] Abdominal expiratory activity is routinely recruited during halothane anesthesia in male subjects.

The depressive effect of halothane on respiratory muscle is also gender dependent. Of note, pregnancy significantly alters the physiology and contribution of each respiratory muscle groups. The reduction in FRC is from both remaining activity of expiratory transverse abdominal muscles, which reduces thoracic volume, and cephalad motion of diaphragm. Paradoxical rib cage motion develops in some subjects during halothane anesthesia, such that the rib cage continues to expand during the first portion of expiration. Such paradoxical rib cage motion is exaggerated during a CO_2-stimulated rebreathing.[218,220]

EFFECTS OF INHALED ANESTHETICS ON THE UPPER AIRWAY

Inspiratory upper airway patency is maintained by the cortical wakefulness drive, fully preserved chemical chemoreceptor sensitivity and chemodrive transmission, and an optimal reflex feedback from upper airway receptors in the conscious state. These upper airway receptors are activated by the negative pressure and airflow[221,222] that are generated by the inspiratory muscles (e.g., diaphragm, respiratory chest wall muscles). During sleep or volatile anesthesia, the cortical wakefulness drive is absent, and the sensitivity of the chemoreceptors and upper airway receptors is decreased. Thus both phasic and tonic inspiratory excitatory drives to the upper airway muscles are decreased or entirely absent. The loss of tone in the upper airway muscles (genioglossus and other pharyngeal muscles) predisposes individuals with anatomic limitations to upper airway obstruction.[223,224] Even in the presence of subanesthetic concentrations of volatile anesthetics (frequently in immediate postoperative period), the cortical wakefulness drive, the drive from peripheral chemoreceptors, and excitatory inputs from upper airway mechanoreceptors are all significantly impaired. This may lead to partial or even complete upper airway obstruction, a situation that can be further complicated by inhibition of hypoxia-mediated arousal reflexes.[203]

EFFECTS OF INHALED ANESTHETICS ON DEFENSIVE AIRWAY REFLEXES

Humans have very effective protective mechanisms to prevent aspiration by closing glottis and coughing. Volatile anesthetics (≥1-1.3 MAC) progressively abolish defensive airway reflexes. The loss of airway protection against gastroesophageal reflux with consequent aspiration of orogastric content into the trachea can be catastrophic. However, lower concentrations of volatile anesthetics may paradoxically enhance and prolong the duration of protective defensive reflexes. Laryngospasm is the sustained and complete reflex glottic closure in response to foreign material (e.g., oral secretions) contacting the vocal cords, or to a poorly timed noxious stimulus (e.g., pain from incision, venipuncture) during the administration of inadequately low concentrations of a volatile anesthetic. This occurs during induction before anesthesia reaches adequate depth and during emergence when the agent is washing out but not completely eliminated. A recent study also showed that laryngospasm could still be observed in 18% of children under deep anesthesia with sevoflurane, but higher concentration (4.7% = MAC_{ED95} intubation) provided better protection from laryngospasm as compared with lower concentration (2.5% = 1 MAC).[225]

Not all volatile anesthetics are equally prone to elicit unwanted sustained defensive airway reflexes. Desflurane and isoflurane appear to be the most irritating to the airways; neither anesthetic is recommended for an inhaled induction of anesthesia. The maintenance and emergence from desflurane anesthesia caused more severe adverse airway events than did isoflurane anesthesia in spontaneously breathing infants and children with an LMA, especially when the LMA was removed before emergence.[226] Sevoflurane has the most favorable profile and is frequently used for inhalational induction in the pediatric population.

INHALED ANESTHETICS AND ACUTE LUNG INJURY

Pathophysiology of Sepsis-Induced Acute Lung Injury

ALI represents the pulmonary manifestation of a global inflammatory process that is commonly associated with gram-negative bacterial sepsis.[227-230] Derangements of pulmonary hemodynamics,[231] fluid filtration, and gas exchange are pathophysiological manifestations.[232] Bacterial endotoxin often triggers ALI.[233] In addition, other humoral and cellular cascades are involved, such as eicosanoids,[234] cytokines, O_2 free radicals, endothelin,[235] NO, as well as the coagulation, the NOTNOT complement,[236] the fibrinolytic, and the kinin/kallikrein systems,[237] as well as degradation fragments of NOT extracellular matrix.[238]

It is now well established that NO is involved in the pathogenesis of sepsis and sepsis-induced ALI. In hyperdynamic sepsis, increased iNOS-dependent formation of NO and, subsequently, cGMP is associated with myocardial depression, reduced contractile responses to vasoconstrictor agents, and circulatory shock.[239] In addition, NO may mediate cytotoxic effects following its reaction with the superoxide anion to yield the strong oxidant anion peroxynitrite and eventually its breakdown cytotoxic product OH•.[240] Large amounts of NO may also activate enzymes in the cyclooxygenase pathway and modify gene expression.[241] Interaction of NO with many molecular targets represents a pathway for its breakdown and inactivation. The most important is the reaction of NO with molecular O_2 to form nitrite, which in the presence of hemoproteins (i.e., hemoglobin) is oxidized further to nitrate.[242]

Moreover, NO may attenuate HPV, thereby contributing to derangement of gas exchange.[243] The latter changes may cause tissue hypoxia and microvascular damage that may result in multiple organ failure and death. However, in less extreme conditions, generation of minute amounts of NO by eNOS and/or iNOS might be protective. Vasodilatation may enhance tissue perfusion. NO inhibition of platelet adhesion and aggregation may produce antithrombotic effects. NO scavenging of superoxide anions and other free radicals and inhibition of leukocyte-endothelial cell adhesion may prevent crucial steps in the inflammatory reactions. Finally, stimulation of cGMP production may preserve the integrity of the microvascular barrier.[244,245]

EFFECTS OF INHALED ANESTHETICS ON EXPERIMENTAL SEPSIS-INDUCED ACUTE LUNG INJURY

There is a substantial debate surrounding the choice of anesthetic regimens for patients with ALI that require surgery. Animal studies suggest an important antiinflammatory role of volatile anesthetics in ALI. Pretreatment with sevoflurane significantly reduced the inflammatory response and attenuated LPS-induced chemotaxis of neutrophils from alveolar type II cells.[246] Compared with thiopental anesthesia, pigs anesthetized with sevoflurane exhibited decreased expression of TNFα and IL-1β in lung tissue.[247] Volatile anesthetics exert other antiinflammatory effects including reduction of proinflammatory cytokine production in alveolar type II cells, reduction of neutrophil migration into the lung interstitium and alveolar space, and decreased protein leakage and pulmonary edema.[248-250] In a rat model, LPS-induced ALI was markedly attenuated by sevoflurane compared with propofol anesthesia. Rats receiving sevoflurane demonstrated improved gas exchange, reduced amounts of albumin and total cell count in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid, and lower cytokine levels in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid and RNA levels in lung tissue compared with rats receiving propofol. Sevoflurane, but not propofol, also decreased the amount of pulmonary edema most likely through a reduction in edema formation rather than water reabsorption.[249] When administered after the onset of oleic acid–induced ALI in dogs, sevoflurane reduced the elevated PA pressure and PVR, attenuated pulmonary edema as evidenced by reduced extravascular lung water index, and decreased TNFα production and diffuse alveolar damage score compared with propofol. However, despite of these effects, sevoflurane worsened systemic oxygenation possibly via inhibition of HPV.[251] In a rat model of cecal ligation and puncture (CLP)–induced sepsis, both sevoflurane and isoflurane attenuated inflammatory response, lipid peroxidation, oxidative stress, and improved survival. Furthermore, sevoflurane was more effective in modulating sepsis-induced inflammatory response.[252] Induction of heme oxygenase-1 and suppression of iNOS expression provide cytoprotection in lung and vascular injury. In a rat model of ALI induced by CLP, the isoflurane posttreatment reduced pulmonary microvascular permeability, as well as lung injury as assessed by histological and immunohistochemical examinations. Furthermore, isoflurane decreased iNOS and increased heme oxygenase-1 expression in lung tissue. These findings suggest that the protective role of isoflurane postconditioning against CLP-induced ALI may be associated with its role in upregulating heme oxygenase-1.[253]

INHALED ANESTHETICS AND VENTILATOR-INDUCED LUNG INJURY

Mechanical ventilation is a life-saving clinical treatment, but it can also produce pulmonary inflammatory changes and injury known as ventilator-induced lung injury (VILI). Cyclic stretching of the lung during mechanical ventilation releases proinflammatory cytokines such as IL-1 and MIP-2 leading to pulmonary neutrophil accumulation; enhances activity of phospholipase A_2, which degrades surfactant; and results in pulmonary edema, hyaline membrane formation, and cellular infiltration.[254] Volatile anesthetics have been shown to attenuate lung injury due to mechanical ventilation. In mice, mechanical ventilation led to induction of lung injury, reactive O_2 species production, proinflammatory cytokine release, and neutrophil influx. Sevoflurane posttreatment reduced histological signs of VILI, as well as prevented increased production of reactive O_2 species, release of IL-1β and MIP-1β, and neutrophil transmigration.[255] Similarly, isoflurane reduced VILI in mice, as indicated by reduced inflammation, transmigration of neutrophils, and cytokine levels. Phosphorylation of Akt protein was significantly increased during mechanical ventilation with isoflurane. Inhibition of phosphoinositide 3-kinase/Akt signaling before mechanical ventilation completely reversed the lung-protective effects of isoflurane. These findings suggest that isoflurane-mediated pulmonary protection is mediated via phosphoinositide 3-kinase/Akt signaling.[256] Moreover, in a murine two-hit model of LPS-induced inflammation followed by VILI, isoflurane exposure before initiation of mechanical ventilation ameliorated VILI by improving both lung mechanics and vascular leakage. In addition, isoflurane prevented a decrease of a key tight junction protein (zona occludens 1) in lung tissue and lung epithelial cells.[257] In another study in murine VILI, animals anesthetized with isoflurane and sevoflurane showed thinner alveolar septa, lower VILI scores, lower polymorph neutrophil counts, lower IL-1β concentrations, less reactive O_2 species production, and higher glutathione contents compared to ketamine-anesthetized mice. Unexpectedly, desflurane-ventilated mice showed signs of lung injury similar to mice receiving ketamine anesthesia. Desflurane also failed to inhibit inflammatory responses and reactive O_2 species production in lung tissue.[258]

INHALED ANESTHETICS AND LUNG ISCHEMIA-REPERFUSION

Lung ischemia-reperfusion (IR) injury is a hallmark of many lung diseases, and it also occurs during surgical procedures such as lung transplantation. The re-establishment of blood flow and O_2 delivery into the previously ischemic lung exacerbates the ischemic injury and leads to increased microvascular permeability and PVR as well as activation of the immune response. These events trigger ALI with subsequent edema formation that can result in systemic hypoxemia and multiorgan failure. Reactive O_2 and nitrogen species have been suggested as crucial mediators of such responses during IR in the lung.[259] Isoflurane attenuated increases in PVR and the filtration coefficient and the wet-to-dry ratio in isolated rabbit lungs subjected to IR.[260] Isoflurane also protected against warm IR injury in an isolated, perfused rat lung model when it was administered after the onset of ischemia.[261] Moreover, reductions in inflammatory responses and oxidative stress were observed during sevoflurane compared with propofol anesthesia in a porcine model of IR injury.[262] In a rat lung transplantation model, preconditioning and postconditioning using sevoflurane significantly improved the oxygenation of lung grafts and decreased pulmonary edema. Sevoflurane treatment also reduced levels of

IL-1β, IL-6, and TNFα. In addition, sevoflurane significantly inhibited cell apoptosis by a decrease in cytochrome C release into cytosol and caspase-3 cleavage.[263] In contrast, pretreatment with desflurane exacerbated IR injury in isolated rabbit lungs perfused with saline by increasing pulmonary microvascular permeability and NO production.[264] Furthermore, postconditioning with xenon during prolonged ex vivo lung perfusion did not improve graft function in a porcine warm ischemic lung injury model.[265]

CLINICAL EVIDENCE

Clinical evidence supports potential beneficial effects of volatile anesthetics in ALI. For example, short-term positive pressure ventilation with high tidal volumes did not affect cytokine production in the lungs of healthy patients anesthetized with isoflurane.[266] Several studies investigated the effects of volatile anesthetics in patients undergoing thoracic surgery with OLV.[267-269] OLV is associated with hypoxia-reoxygenation injury in the deflated and subsequently reventilated lung. OLV increased the release of proinflammatory mediators in both the dependent and the nondependent lung.[268] Sevoflurane suppressed local alveolar inflammatory responses and cytokine release compared with propofol. Furthermore, the antiinflammatory effects of sevoflurane were greater in the dependent compared with the nondependent lung.[268,269] Patients receiving sevoflurane also had an improved postoperative course as indicated by a shorter ICU stay and fewer adverse events including pneumonia, pleural effusion, and bronchopleural fistula compared with those anesthetized with propofol.[267] In addition, a recent meta-analysis in cardiac surgical patients demonstrated that volatile as opposed to intravenous anesthesia is associated with a significant reduction in pulmonary complications and overall mortality.[270] However, in a randomized multicenter controlled trial in patients scheduled for surgery with OLV, the incidence of major complications during hospitalization and within 6 months from surgery was similar in propofol and desflurane groups.[271] This finding seems to be in agreement with an earlier study demonstrating that in healthy surgical patients desflurane increased lipid peroxidation as measured in BALF, indicating injury to the pulmonary alveolar membranes. Sevoflurane caused less pronounced effects, suggesting that it may exert a protective effect compared with desflurane.[272] Proinflammatory response and elevated levels of TNFα, IL-1β, and IL-6 in healthy patients undergoing tympanoplasty were also more evident following desflurane anesthesia compared with sevoflurane.[273]

In a recent parallel, open-label, single-center randomized controlled trial, adult patients with moderate-to-severe ARDS were randomized to receive either intravenous midazolam or inhaled sevoflurane for 48 hours. On day 2, PaO_2/FiO_2 ratio was significantly higher in the sevoflurane group than in the midazolam group. There was also a significant reduction in cytokines and the soluble form of the receptor for advanced glycation end-product levels in the sevoflurane group, compared with the midazolam group. No serious adverse events were observed with sevoflurane. This study suggests therapeutic utility of inhaled sevoflurane in patients with ARDS.[274] Moreover, the use of inhaled anesthetics in the ICU is conceptually appealing as they offer a safe, effective, and easily titratable method of sedation. A recent retrospective analysis of patients receiving inhaled sedation in the ICU suggests an association between its use and reductions in one-year and in-hospital mortality, perhaps related to a significant increase in ventilator-free days compared to sedation with intravenous agents.[275] Prospective randomized clinical trials are needed to further elucidate the therapeutic potential of inhaled anesthetics in intubated patients with ALI/ARDS and ICU patients requiring long term sedation.

Nonvolatile Inhaled Agents

The pharmacokinetics of all inhalational anesthetics follow the same principle. At initial uptake, the dynamic change of the ratio of the fraction of a gas in alveoli (FA) to its fraction in the inspiratory gas (FI) (FA/FI) is dependent on initial FI, solubility of the anesthetic, minute alveolar ventilation, and cardiac output. Fig. 21.21

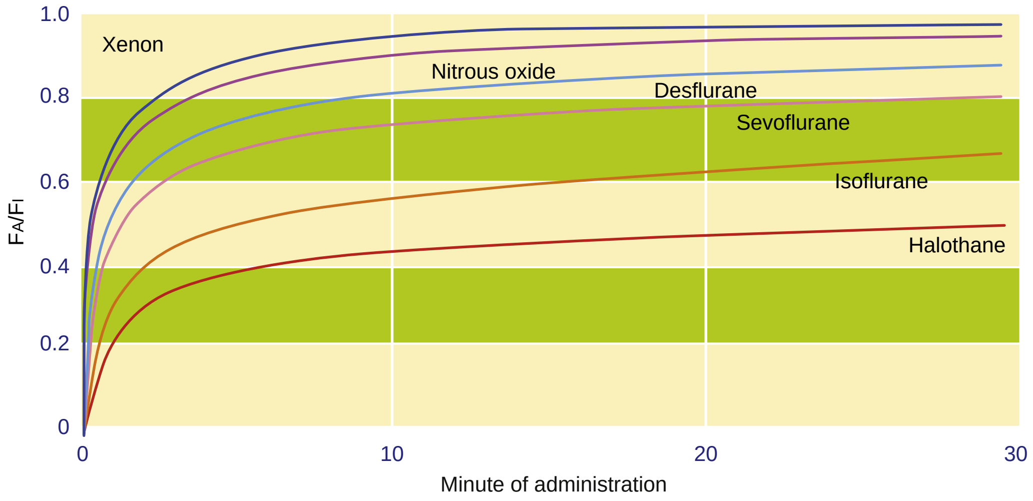


Fig. 21.21 Pharmacokinetics of the inhalational anesthetics. The rise in alveolar (FA) anesthetic concentration towards inspired (FI) is most rapid with the least soluble anesthetic, N2O, and slowest with the most soluble, methoxyflurane. All data from human studies (Data from Yashuda N, Lockhart SH, Eger EI II, et al. Kinetics of desflurane, isoflurane and halothane in humans. Anesthesiology 74:489-498, 1991; & Anesth Analg 72:316-24, 1991; Data for Xenon only recently available.

demonstrates the dynamic changes in FA/FI of inhalational anesthetics during the phase of uptake. Because xenon has the lowest solubility among the all inhalational anesthetics, it reaches equilibrium quickly, and even faster than nitrous oxide. The speed of washout of anesthetics also follows the same principle but in the reverse direction. Among the four factors affecting washout (solubility, fresh gas flow rate, minute alveolar ventilation, and cardiac output), fresh gas flow is the only one the provider can fully control besides partially controlling minute alveolar ventilation. Adequate fresh gas flow plays an important role in preventing rebreathing expired gas and affects the rate of its elimination. Fresh gas flow has to be higher than the peak inspiratory flow rate for the adult breathing circuit. If a tidal volume is 500 mL, respiratory rate is 10, and I:E ratio is 1:2, the inspiratory phase is 4 seconds. The mean inspiratory flow rate is 500 mL/4 seconds, 125 mL/s, or 7500 mL/min. Therefore maximal O_2 flow rate of 10 to 15 L/min for any given modern ventilator should be large enough to prevent rebreathing expired gas. For circuits used in pediatric patients, the minimal fresh gas flow rate for preventing rebreathing is dependent on the type of the circuit. In the following section, two commonly used nonvolatile gases, xenon and nitrous oxide, are discussed with focus on their clinically related aspects.

NITROUS OXIDE

Advantages of nitrous oxide (N_2O) are well established including the ability to quickly reach its target MAC value and quick washout. N_2O does not significantly interfere with respiratory drive and has no negative impact on bronchial mucosa or bronchial smooth muscle activity in healthy individuals. N_2O enhances catecholamine release and does not reduce systemic vascular resistance or cardiac output, maintaining hemodynamic stability. Because its MAC value is 104%, N_2O cannot be used as a sole anesthetic at 1 atmosphere pressure to achieve adequate sedation. However, because it is odorless, it is often used as an adjuvant at the beginning of inhalational induction, especially in pediatric patients, prior to administration of volatile anesthetics. It is also commonly used for analgesia and sedation for dental procedures.[276] Its use for labor pain has faded but it is still used for labor analgesia in some centers.[277]

Sedative and Analgesic Effects

Nitrous oxide has both sedative and analgesic effects. Because MAC is determined as the threshold of an individual's response to the painful stimulation of skin incision, and N_2O is analgesic, it is difficult to dissect its sedative from analgesic effects. Therefore the sedative potency of N_2O at equal MAC values is different from other inhalational anesthetics which do not possess analgesic effects. The MAC of N_2O and other inhalational anesthetics are additive relative to a subjects' movement in response to nociceptive stimulation, but not necessarily when it comes to the level of sedation. For most volatile anesthetics, MAC awake is approximately 0.3 MAC value.[278] However, the MAC awake of N_2O is 0.61 MAC (63.3%).[278] Even at 50% of N_2O or 0.48 MAC, the majority of adults may be conscious. Clinicians often use N_2O at the end anesthesia in order to facilitate washout of a volatile anesthetic. Even though the sum of the MAC values of the volatile anesthetic and that of N_2O is above the MAC awake value of the volatile anesthetic alone, this does not guarantee the unconsciousness of the patient. Awareness may occur even though it may not be associated with postoperative recall.[279]

In humans, the analgesic effect of 66% to 70% of N_2O is equal to that of an intravenous infusion of remifentanil at 0.085 to 0.17 mg/kg/min, or a whole-blood concentration of 2 ng/mL.[280,281] Analgesic potency of N_2O can be attenuated by sevoflurane (Fig. 21.22).[282] The detailed pathway of its analgesic action remains to be determined. However, animals tolerant to N_2O are cross-tolerant to morphine,[283] and the analgesic effect of N_2O can be reversed by naloxone.[284] This means that at least in part, the analgesic action of N_2O occurs via the mu opioid receptor. Small animals develop tolerance quickly (6-24 hours) following continuous administration of N_2O.[284] Humans can also develop acute tolerance to N_2O in only 40 minutes.[285] In clinical practice, N_2O is commonly administered for several hours. However, it is to be determined whether its sedative and/or analgesic effects remain during prolonged administration.

Gas Volume Expansion

Nitrous oxide has greater diffusibility across tissues than nitrogen. Therefore N_2O would diffuse into any closed air-containing space, more specifically any nitrogen-containing space, more quickly than nitrogen diffuses out, resulting in gas volume expansion. One of the major concerns related to this gas expansion effect is bowel dilatation.[286] However, this observation is based on surgical procedures lasting 3 hours. The increase in pressure and volume in a closed space due to accumulation of N_2O is dependent of the duration of exposure and pressure

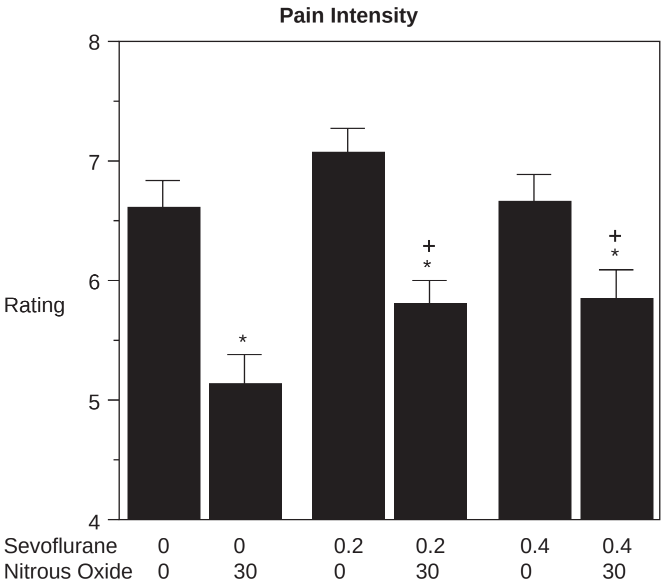


Fig. 21.22 Effects of sevoflurane and nitrous oxide on ratings of pain intensity to cold. Each bar is the mean across all subjects. *Brackets* represent SEM. *Significant decrease from placebo (0% sevoflurane/0% nitrous oxide) ratings. $^+$Significant increase from the 0% sevoflurane/30% nitrous oxide ratings. (Redrawn from Janiszewski DJ, Galinkin JL, Klock PA, et al. The effects of subanesthetic concentrations of sevoflurane and nitrous oxide, alone and in combination, on analgesia, mood, and psychomotor performance in healthy volunteers. *Anesth Analg.* 1999;88(5):1149-1154. With permission.)

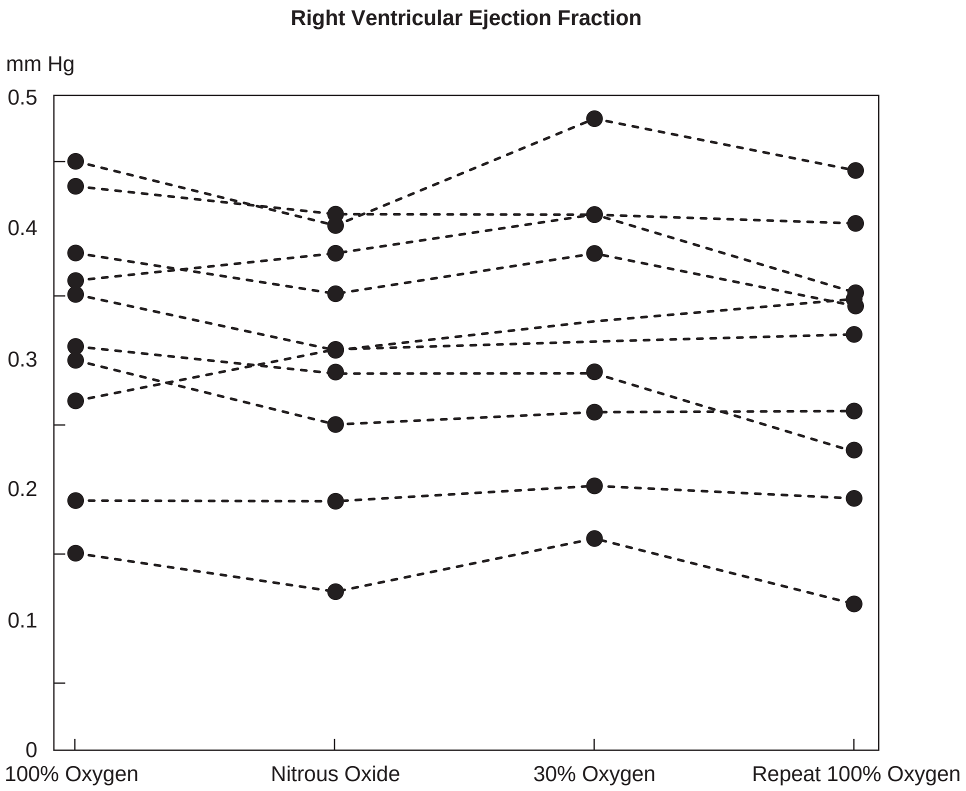


Fig. 21.23 Individual patient responses in mean pulmonary arterial pressure (mm Hg) to nitrous oxide administration. (Redrawn from Konstadt SN, Reich DL, Thys DM. Nitrous oxide does not exacerbate pulmonary hypertension or ventricular dysfunction in patients with mitral valvular disease. *Can J Anaesth.* 1990;37(6):613-617. With permission.)

gradient of N_2O. Briefly using N_2O for periods of 15 to 20 minutes during emergence enhances washout of volatile anesthetics and may not lead to clinically relevant bowel dilation.

Nausea And Vomiting

Postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV) is a common complication of N_2O.[287] However, a recent meta-analysis demonstrated that N_2O–related PONV is clinically insignificant following a less than 1 hour exposure.[288] The authors suggested that a minor risk of PONV should not preclude N_2O use for a limited time period, such as for minor or ambulatory surgeries. Even though others questioned the methodology of the meta-analysis,[289,290] the trend consistently suggests that the incidence of PONV is associated primarily with the *duration* of N_2O exposure. Therefore clinicians can take advantage of the beneficial properties of N_2O, especially at the end of an anesthetic, to facilitate the washout of volatile agents and shorten the time of emergence.

Pulmonary Hypertension

Several studies were conducted to test whether N_2O worsens pulmonary hypertension with no consistent conclusions due to variation of the experimental protocols. In an earlier study, Konstadt and colleagues demonstrated no significant changes in PA pressure and cardiac output in patients with pulmonary hypertension when 70% N_2O versus 70% nitrogen was used (Fig. 21.23).[291] The authors concluded that N_2O does not have adverse effects on the pulmonary circulation or right ventricular function, and may be used with appropriate monitoring in patients with pulmonary hypertension. This conclusion should be interpreted with caution in patients with elevated PVR, particularly in the presence of right ventricular dysfunction and/or right coronary artery disease.[292] More recently, the ENIGMA II study, a large randomized clinical trial, demonstrated no difference in the risk of death or cardiovascular complications with N_2O.[293]

Potential Neurotoxicity of Nitrous Oxide

Prolonged use of N_2O can cause nitrous oxide–induced blockade of N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors and can manifest as swelling of neuronal organelles including mitochondria and endoplasmic reticulum,[294] presenting as neurotoxicity[295] with an acute neuropathy postoperatively.[296] Nitrous oxide also increases plasma homocysteine levels[297] caused by oxidation of methionine synthase.[298] As homocysteine can be easily measured in blood, it can be used as a biomarker of N_2O-induced modulation of methionine synthase activity. After an 8-hour exposure to N_2O, an eight-fold increase in blood homocysteine levels was detected.[299] Increased homocysteine may be prevented by continuous infusion of vitamin B_{12}, which is an enzyme cofactor of methionine synthase.[300]

XENON

Xenon has been suggested as an ideal inhalational anesthetic. It is stable, nonbiotransformable, nontoxic, nonflammable, nonirritant, and has a low blood–gas partition coefficient. Because of its specific molecular properties, xenon (Xe^{129}) can be hyperpolarized, with ventilation

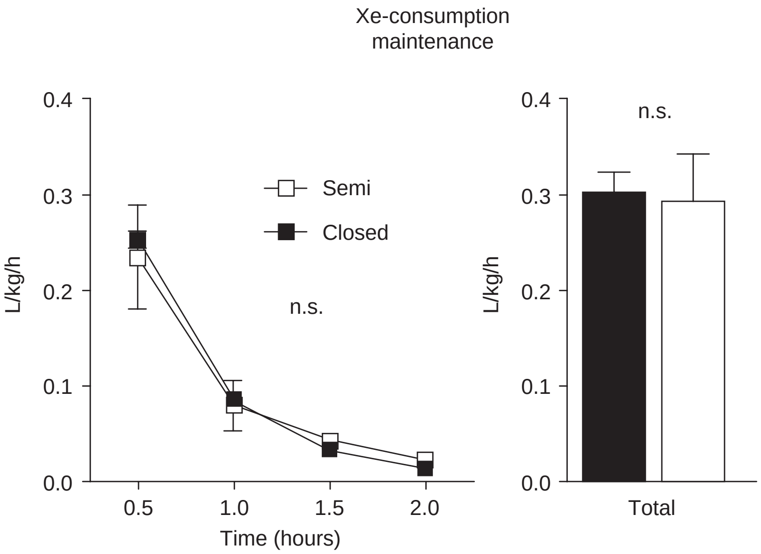


Fig. 21.24 Xenon consumption during the maintenance phase in a semi-closed and closed circuit, shown for 30 minute intervals and in total for 2 hours. ***n.s.*, not significant.** (Redrawn from Roehl AB, Goetzenich A, Rossaint R, et al. A practical rule for optimal flows for xenon anaesthesia in a semi-closed anaesthesia circuit. *Eur J Anaesthesiol.* 2010;27(7), 660–665. With permission.)

distribution and gas uptake yielding a highly selective tool for 3D MRI evaluation of lung disease.[301] Therefore xenon is used more frequently as an agent for imaging rather than as an inhalational anesthetic. However, its sedative effect is unique and mainly conferred by the inhibition of NMDA receptors in the central nervous system. In 1969, Cullen and colleagues determined the MAC of xenon to be 71% in O_2.[302] Using more modern measurements, Nakata and colleagues determined the MAC to be 63.1%.[303] A recent meta-analysis concluded that xenon anesthesia provides more stable intraoperative blood pressure, lower heart rate, and faster emergence from anesthesia than volatile agents and propofol, but xenon is associated with a higher risk of PONV (Fig. 21.24).[304]

Speed of Emergence and Postoperative Cognitive Dysfunction with Xenon

Compared with volatile anesthetics and propofol, anesthetic emergence is faster with xenon. It shortens time to extubation by approximately 4 minutes.[304] However, the shortening of emergence is not associated with the reduction in length of PACU or hospital stays. There is some evidence suggesting that, compared with other general anesthetic agents, xenon is associated with better neurological outcomes.[305] Therefore it might reduce the occurrence of postoperative cognitive dysfunction. A recent study did show that compared with sevoflurane, xenon was associated with faster emergence and with better early postoperative cognitive recovery.[306] However, such a benefit did not extend beyond 2 to 3 days post operation.[307] Xenon did not show benefits in postoperative cognitive dysfunction in elderly patients compared with desflurane[308] or propofol.[309] Therefore its neuro-protective potential remains debatable for patients undergoing general anesthesia.

Intraoperative Hemodynamics and Postoperative Outcome

Multiple studies have demonstrated that xenon produces a more stable intraoperative hemodynamic response. Xenon is a sympathetic stimulant and better maintains systolic, diastolic, and mean arterial blood pressures and reduces heart rate.[310] Such a favorable hemodynamic profile is very unique and beneficial in contrast to most volatile anesthetics that reduce systemic vascular resistance and perfusion pressure and increase heart rate. Hofland and colleagues recently demonstrated that compared with total intravenous anesthesia or anesthesia with sevoflurane, xenon reduces postoperative cardiac troponin I release and was noninferior to sevoflurane in low-risk, on-pump coronary artery bypass graft surgery patients.[311] However, the benefit of xenon as a cellular protectant observed in vitro[312] has not yet been demonstrated in human studies.

Use of Xenon in Critical Care

Sedation in the ICU usually lasts much longer than it does in anesthesia. Xenon could potentially be an ideal agent for sedation in the critical care setting, provided that its neuroprotective effect demonstrated in preclinical studies will be confirmed in humans.[313] However, there is currently a lack of clinical trials to determine the outcome of sedation with xenon compared to conventional sedation regimens in the ICU. A recent study by Bedi and colleagues[314] demonstrated the safety and feasibility of its use in critical care. Compared with a conventional propofol sedation regimen, similar sedation can be achieved at xenon concentrations of 28 ± 9.0% (range 9%-62%).[315]

Postoperative Nausea and Vomiting

Xenon is a potent antagonist at the 5-HT3 receptor,[316] and could theoretically exert intrinsic antiemetic properties. However, a previous study demonstrated that xenon causes an increase in risk of PONV by 72% (34.4% vs. 19.9%) when compared with volatile and propofol anesthesia.[304] In contrast, Schaefer and colleagues recently assessed the risk of nausea and vomiting among several anesthetic regimens and concluded that xenon causes nausea and vomiting no more frequently than other regimens.[317]

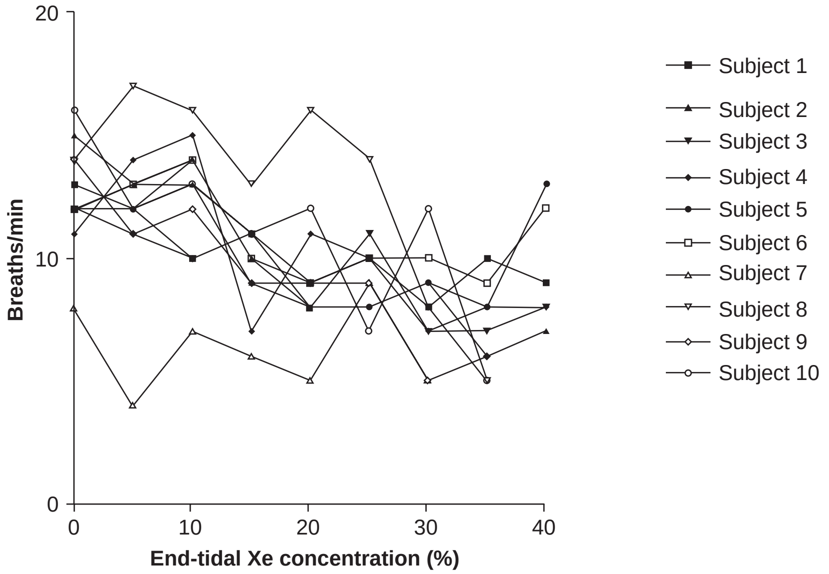


Fig. 21.25 The respiratory rate (breath/min) for individual subjects at increasing end-tidal concentration of xenon in oxygen. (Redrawn from Bedi A, McCarroll C, Murray JM, et al. The effects of subanaesthetic concentrations of xenon in volunteers. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(3):233–241. With permission.)

Airway Resistance

Xenon has a high density and viscosity. Therefore when using xenon, airway resistance is greater compared to other inhalational anesthetics at equivalent MAC values. The increase in airway resistance with 70% xenon mixed with 30% O_2 compared to 70% nitrogen mixed with 30% O_2 was minimal in healthy lungs in a pig model. However, the airway resistance was further increased in a bronchoconstriction model of asthma. Increased airway resistance is an intrinsic property of xenon and probably not a result of bronchoconstriction. The increase in airway resistance does not negatively affect oxygenation[318] and is not associated with decreased airway diameter.[319] Similar results were also reached in a dog model.[320] A human study with 33% xenon and 67% O_2 showed a significant increase in airway pressure but no alteration in oxygenation was reported.[321]

Apnea

Xenon is the only inhalational anesthetic that causes a decrease in respiratory rate(Fig. 21.25).[187] There are a few case reports describing prolonged apnea occurring in spontaneously breathing patients, even with subanesthetic concentrations of xenon.[188]

TABLE 21.2 Comparison of Xenon and Nitrous Oxide

	Nitrous oxide	Xenon
Pharmacodynamics	Comparable	Comparable
Sedation mechanism	NMDA	NMDA
Analgesic effect	Yes	Yes
Gas expansion	Yes	No
Nausea and vomiting	Yes	Yes
Increase in airway resistance	No	Yes
Increase in pulmonary vasculature resistance	Maybe	No
Diffusion hypoxia	Yes	No
MAC value	104%	63.1%-71%
MAC awake	63.3%	32.6%
Use as a sole anesthetic at ambient pressure at sea level	No	Yes
Respiratory rate	No effect	Decrease
Maintain hemodynamic stability	Yes	Yes
Acute tolerance	Yes	Unknown
Cost-efficiency	Favorable	Not favorable at present

MAC, Minimum alveolar concentration; *NMDA,* N-methyl-D-aspartate.

COMPARISON OF NITROUS OXIDE AND XENON

Both N_2O and xenon are nonvolatile inhaled anesthetics. Their pharmacodynamics are similar, although the solubility of N_2O is higher than that of xenon. The site of action of xenon[322,323] and N_2O[324,325] are believed to be the same: the NMDA receptor. However, imaging studies show that xenon and N_2O do not work on the same regions of the brain.[326,327] In addition, their sedative[328] and analgesic[329,330] properties, and their side effects[331,332] are not the same. Recently, concern has been raised for air pollution associated with the use of N_2O, and whether it should be routinely used in anesthesia. Since N_2O has not been shown to be associated with an increased rate of wound infections and its cost-effectiveness is favorable, there is no evidence to support abandoning N_2O for routine inhalational anesthetic use. On the other hand, since the superiority of xenon over the volatile anesthetics and N_2O remains to be determined and its cost is high, routine use of xenon as anesthetic is not recommended(Table 21.2).[333-335]

Summary

Even though the popularity of total intravenous anesthesia has been growing over the last two decades, inhalational anesthetics remain the most commonly used agents for general anesthesia. At least in part, this is due to our current thorough understanding of the pharmacology of these agents and their cost-efficiency. Measurement of the expiratory gas concentrations is readily available in any modern anesthesia machine and therefore the depth of sedation is much easier to determine and monitor, compared with intravenous anesthesia. Thus inhalational anesthesia will remain in the mainstream of anesthesia practice for the foreseeable future. Careful selection of a particular agent based on the mechanism of its action can improve quality of patient care. Such care will continue to be based on an individual's needs, with consideration of the pharmacokinetics and interactions of these agents with the respiratory system. Further research into the clinical utility of the inhalational agents is essential for advancing the goals of precision medicine in anesthesia.

Acknowledgment

This chapter is a consolidation of two chapters in the eighth edition, Chapter 27 Inhaled Anesthetics: Pulmonary Pharmacology and Chapter 28 Inhaled Anesthetics: Cardiovascular Pharmacology. The editors and publisher would like to thank the following authors: Neil E. Farber, Eckehard A.E. Stuth, Astrid G. Stucke, and Paul S. Pagel for their contributions to the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Kumeta Y, et al. *Masui*. 1995;44:396.
2. Pizov R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1111.
3. Forrest JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:3.
4. Cheney FW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:932.
5. Auroy Y, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:366.
6. Caulfield MP, Birdsall NJ. *Pharmacol Rev*. 1998;50(2):279.
7. Belmonte KE. *Proc Am Thorac Soc*. 2005;2(4):297. discussion 311.
8. Zhang WC, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:5522.
9. Prakash YS, et al. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol*. 1998;274:C1653.
10. Bogard AS, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2011;337:209.
11. Ito S, et al. *Am J Resp Cell Mol Biol*. 2008;38:407.
12. Rho EH, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;92:257.
13. Panula P, et al. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2015;67(3):601.
14. Tamaoki J, et al. *Mediators Inflamm*. 1994;3:125.
15. Katoh T, Ikeda KCJA. *Can J Anaesth*. 1994;41:1214.
16. Yamakage M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2008;25(1):67.
17. Emala CW, et al. *Chest*. 2002;121:722.
18. Park KW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:778.
19. Fehr JJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28:1884.
20. Brown RH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:1097.
21. D'Angelo E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:604.
22. Mazzeo AJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:948.
23. Park KW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1078.
24. Habre W, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:348.
25. Yamakage M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:683.
26. Cheng EY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:162.
27. Dikmen Y, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58:745.
28. Nyktari VG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1202.
29. Nyktari V, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(3):454.
30. Goff MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:404.
31. Hashimoto Y, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1996;10:213.
32. Myers CF, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58:1007.
33. Lele E, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50:1145.
34. Lele E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(6):1257.
35. Satoh J, Yamakage M. *J Anesth*. 2009;23:620.
36. Satoh JI, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:704.
37. Rooke GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1294.
38. Correa FCF, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2001;91:803.
39. Burburan SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:631.
40. Ruiz P, Chartrand D. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:67.
41. Arakawa H, et al. *J Asthma*. 2002;39:77.
42. Johnston RG, et al. *Chest*. 1990;97(3):698–701.
43. Koninckx M, et al. *Paediatr Respir Rev*. 2013;14(2):78.
44. Morimoto N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:328.
45. Tobias JD, Hirshman CA. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:105.
46. Wu RSC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:238.
47. Yamamoto K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:1102.
48. Yamakage M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:179.
49. Iwasaki S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:753.
50. Volta CA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:348.
51. Crawford MW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:1147.
52. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:216.
53. Kai T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1543.
54. Yu J, Ogawa K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:646.
55. Lynch C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(3):865.
56. Janssen LJ. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol*. 1997;272:C1757.
57. Chen X, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:458.
58. Yamakage M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:84.
59. Pabelick CM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:207.
60. Hanazaki M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:129.
61. Ay B, et al. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2006;290(2):L278.
62. Jude JA, et al. *Proc Am Thorac Soc*. 2008;5(1):15.
63. Wettschureck N, Offermanns S, et al. *J Mol Med (Berl)*. 2002;80(10):629.
64. Iizuka K, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2000;406(2):273.
65. Sakihara C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:120.
66. Nakayama T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:313.
67. Duracher C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:136.
68. Gallos G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:748.
69. Gallos G, et al. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Moll Physiol*. 2011;302:L248.
70. Park KW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:646.
71. Mougdil GC. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44:R77.
72. Warner DO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:1057.
73. Wiklund CU, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:422.
74. Brown RH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:295.
75. Akhtar S, Brull SJ. *Pulm Pharmacol Ther*. 1998;11:227.
76. Berbari NF, et al. *Curr Biol*. 2009;19:R526.
77. Czarnecki PG, Shah JV. *Trends Cell Biol*. 2012;22:201.
78. Wu J, et al. *Chest*. 2009;136:561.
79. Ferkol TW, Leigh MW. *J Pediatr*. 2012;160:366.
80. Christopher AB, et al. *Front Pediatr*. 2014;2:111.
81. Lindberg S, et al. *Acta Otolaryngol*. 1997;117:728.
82. Lund VJ. *Allergy Asthma Proc*. 1996;17:179.
83. Keller C, Brimacombe J. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1280.
84. Raphael JH, Butt MW. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79:473.
85. Iida H, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:242.
86. Raphael JH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:116.
87. Matsuura S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1703.
88. Gamsu G, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1976;114:673.
89. Lichtiger M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;42:753.
90. Konrad F, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 1997;46:403.
91. Konrad F, et al. *Chest*. 1994;105:237.
92. Konrad FX, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1993;5:375.
93. Rivero DH, et al. *Chest*. 2001;119:1510.
94. Molliex S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:668.
95. Yang T, et al. *Drug Metabol Drug Interact*. 2001;18:243.
96. Patel AB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:943.
97. Li Y, et al. *Drug Metabol Drug Interact*. 2004;20:175.
98. Rezaiguai-Delclaux S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:751.
99. Paugam-Burtz C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:805.
100. Malacrida L, et al. *Pulm Pharmacol Ther*. 2014;28(2):122.
101. Bilgi M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(4):279.
102. Sweeney M, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1998;85:2040.
103. Myers JL, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;62:1677.
104. Moncada S. *Pharmacol Rev*. 1991;43(2):109.
105. Bredt DS, et al. *Neuron*. 1991;7(4):615.
106. Lamas S, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(14):6348.

107. Moncada S, Palmer RM. *Semin Perinatol*. 1991;15(1):16.
108. Ichinose F. *Circulation*. 2004;109(25):3106.
109. Lian TY. *Drug Des Devel Ther*. 2017;11:1195.
110. Galvin I, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:420.
111. Arai TJ, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2009;106:1057.
112. Adding LC, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1999;167:167.
113. Yamamoto Y, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2001;91:1121.
114. Robertson TP, et al. *Cardiovasc Res*. 2001;50:145.
115. Morio Y, McMurtry IF. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;92:527.
116. Evans AM, et al. *Current Opinions Anesthesiology*. 2011;24:13.
117. Firth AL, et al. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2008;295:L61.
118. Nagendran J, et al. *Current Opinions Anesthesiology*. 2006;19:34.
119. Wang L, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 2012;122(11):4218.
120. Goldenberg NM. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(6):1338–1348.
121. Lumb AB, Slinger P. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(4):932.
122. Akata T. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:365.
123. Gambone LM, et al. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 1997;272:H290.
124. Seki S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:923.
125. Nakayama M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1023.
126. Lennon PF, Murray PA. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:723.
127. Sato K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:478.
128. Liu R, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:301.
129. Olschewski A. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2010;661:459.
130. Su JY, Vo AC. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:207.
131. Zhong L, Su JY. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:148.
132. Loer SA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(3):552.
133. Lennon PF, Murray PA. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:404.
134. Johns RA. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:1381.
135. Marshall C, Marshall BE. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:A1238.
136. Marshall C, Marshall BE. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:441.
137. Jing M, et al. *Life Sci*. 1995;56(1):19.
138. Gambone LM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:936.
139. Liu R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:939.
140. Eisenkraft JB. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65:63.
141. Lesitsky MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1501.
142. Schwarzkopf K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:335.
143. Schwarzkopf K, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17:73.
144. Karzai W, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:215.
145. Schwarzkopf K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1434.
146. Kleinsasser A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1422.
147. Nyren S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:1370.
148. Radke OC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1186.
149. Bindlsev L, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1981;25:360.
150. Nishiwaki K, et al. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 1992;262:H1331.
151. Abe K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:266.
152. Reid CW, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1996;10:860.
153. Beck DH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:38.
154. Pruszkowski O, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:539.
155. Kellow NH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75:578.
156. Abe K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:1164.
157. Benumof JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:910.
158. Pagel P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:800.
159. Carlsson AJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:312.
160. Ng A, Swanevelder J. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:761.
161. Karzai W, Schwarzkopf K. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1402.
162. Dalibon N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:590.
163. Teppema LJ, Baby S. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2011;177:80.
164. Stuth EAE, et al. Central Effects of General Anesthesia. In: Denham S, Ward ADLJT, eds. *Pharmacology and Pathophysiology of the Control of Breathing*. Boca Raton, FL: Tayor and Francis Group; 2005:571.
165. Stuth EA, et al. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2008;164:151.
166. Sirois JE, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2000;201:6347.
167. Sirois JE, et al. *J Physiol*. 2002;541:717.
168. Trochet D, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2008;177:906–911.
169. Coghlan M, Richards E. *ER Trafficking*. 2018;8(1):5275.
170. Forster HV, Smith CA. *J Appl Physiol*. 2010;108:989.
171. Nattie E, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2011;110:1.
172. Erlichman JS, et al. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2010;173:305.
173. Pandit JJ. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:632.
174. Pandit JJ. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60:461.
175. Baugh R, et al. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2013;148(5):867.
176. Abdala AP, et al. *J. Physiol*. 2015;593(14):3033.
177. Rybak IA, et al. *J Neurophysiol*. 2008;100:1770.
178. Smith CA, et al. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2010;173:288.
179. von Euler US LG, Zotterman Y. *Scand Arch Physiol*. 1939;83:132.
180. BuSha BF, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;93:903.
181. Lazarenko RM, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2010;30:7691.
182. Haxhiu MA, et al. *Respir Physiol*. 1987;70(2):183–193.
183. Horner RL. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2008;164:179.
184. Begle RL, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1990;141(4 Pt 1):854.
185. Tagaito Y, et al. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2007;103(4):1379.
186. Hornbein TF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61(7):553.
187. Bedi A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(3):233.
188. Cormack JR, Gott J, Kondogiannis S, et al. *A A Case Rep*. 2017;8(4):90.
189. Fourcade HE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35(1):26.
190. Calverley RK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1978;57(6):610.
191. Lockhart SH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74(3):484.
192. Doi M, Ikeda K, et al. *J Anesth*. 1987;1(2):137.
193. Hickey RF, Severinghaus JW. Regulation of breathing: drug effects. In: Hornbein TF, ed. *Regulation of Breathing - Pt. 2*. New York, NY: Marcel Dekker; 1981:1251–1312.
194. Eger EI. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(5):559.
195. Fujii Y, et al. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2001;39(2):95.
196. Winkler SS, et al. *J Comput Assist Tomogr*. 1987;11(3):496.
197. Winkler STP, et al. Xenon effects on CNS control of respiratory rate and tidal volume-the danger of apnea. In: Hartmann AHS, ed. *Cerebral Blood Flow and Metabolism Measurement*. Berlin: Springer-Verlag; 1985:356–360.
198. Holl K, et al. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 1987;87(3-4):129.
199. Ballantyne D, Scheid P. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2001;499:17.
200. Ballantyne D, Scheid P. *Respir Physiol*. 2001;129:5.
201. Branco LG, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2009;106:1467.
202. Heeringa J, et al. *Respir Physiol*. 1979;37:365.
203. Knill RL, Gelb AW. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49:244.
204. van den Elsen M. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80(2):174.
205. Kammer T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1416.
206. Barnard P, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;63:685.
207. Dahan A, Teppema L. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:199.
208. Sarton E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1288.
209. van den Elsen MJLJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:860.
210. Hickey RF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:32.
211. Nakayama H, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;165:1251.
212. West JB. *Respiration physiology*. 1983;52(3):265.
213. Dahan A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:727.
214. Chung F, Liao P. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(2):287.
215. Chung F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(2):299–311.
216. Sarton E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:295.
217. Pandit JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(6):1409.
218. Warner DO. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(2):309.
219. Warner DO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:6.
220. Warner DO, Warner MA. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:20.
221. Gauda EB, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1994;76:2656.
222. Wheatley JR, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1991;70:2242.
223. Schwartz AR, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1998;157(4 Pt 1):1051.
224. Kuna ST, et al. *Med Clin North Am*. 1985;69(6):1221.
225. Erb TO, et al. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2017;27(3):282.
226. Lerman J, et al. *Paediatric Anaesth*. 2010;20:495.
227. Ulevitch RJ. *Adv Immunol*. 1993;53:267.
228. Chow JC, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1999;274(16):10689.
229. Marini JJ, Evans TW. *Intensive Care Med*. 1998;24(8):878.
230. Meyrick B, et al. *Prog Clin Biol Res*. 1989;308:91.
231. Brigham KL. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1987;136(3):785.
232. Bulger EM, Maier RV. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(suppl 4):N27.
233. Ermert L, et al. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2000;278(4):L744.
234. Quinn JV, Slotman GJ. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27(11):2485.
235. Langleben D, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1993;148(6 Pt 1):1646.
236. Suffredini AF, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1992;145(6):1398.
237. O'Grady NP, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2001;163(7):1591.
238. Bachofen M, Weibel ER. *Clin Chest Med*. 1982;3(1):35.
239. Kumar A, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1999;276(1 Pt 2):R265.
240. McQuaid KE, Keenan AK. *Exp Physiol*. 1997;82(2):369.
241. Salvemini D. *Cell Mol Life Sci*. 1997;53(7):576.
242. Ignarro LJ, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90(17):8103.
243. Weissmann N, et al. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2000;279(4):L683.
244. Singh S, Evans TW. *Eur Respir J*. 1997;10(3):699.
245. Westendorp RG, et al. *J Vasc Res*. 1994;31(1):42.
246. Suter D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(3):638.
247. Takala RS, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50(2):163.

248. Giraud O, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(1):74.
249. Voigtsberger S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(6):1238.
250. Schlapfer M, et al. *Clin Exp Immunol*. 2012;168(1):125.
251. Du G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(5):1555.
252. Bedirli N, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2012;178(1):e17.
253. Dong X, et al. *Exp Lung Res*. 2013;39(7):295.
254. Beitler JR, et al. *Clin Chest Med*. 2016;37(4):633.
255. Wagner J, et al. *PLoS One*. 2018;13(2):e0192896.
256. Faller S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(4):747.
257. Englert JA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(2):377.
258. Strosing KM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(1):143.
259. Pak O, et al. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2017;967:195.
260. Liu R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):561.
261. Fujinaga T, et al. *Transplantation*. 2006;82:1168.
262. Casanova J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:742.
263. Ohsumi A, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2017;103(5):1578.
264. Oshima Y, et al. *Springerplus*. 2016;5(1):2031.
265. Martens A, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2016;201(1):44.
266. Wrigge H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1413.
267. De Conno E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1316.
268. Schilling T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:65.
269. Sugasawa Y, et al. *J Anesth*. 2012;26:62.
270. Uhlig C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(6):1230.
271. Beck-Schimmer B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(2):313.
272. Koksal GM, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21(3):217.
273. Koksal GM, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(6):835.
274. Jabaudon M, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;195(6):792.
275. Bellgardt M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33(1):6.
276. Wilson KE. *Dent Update*. 2013;40(10):822, 826.
277. Likis FE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(1):153.
278. Goto T. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(5):1188.
279. Mashour GA, Avidan MS. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(suppl 1):i20.
280. Mathews DM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(1).
281. Lee LH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(2):398.
282. Janiszewski DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(5):1149.
283. Berkowitz BA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51(4):309.
284. Berkowitz BA, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1977;203(3):539.
285. Ramsay DS, et al. *Pain*. 2005;114(1-2):19.
286. Akca O, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48(7):894.
287. Fernandez-Guisasola J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(4):379–387.
288. Peyton PJ, Peyton PJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(5):1137.
289. Pace NL. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(6):1356.
290. Zhou L, Chen C, Yu H. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(6):1356.
291. Konstadt SN, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37(6):613.
292. Schulte-Sasse U, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57(1):9.
293. Beattie WS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
294. Jevtovic-Todorovic V, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(2):143.
295. Savage S, Ma D. *Brain Sci*. 2014;4(1):73.
296. Morris N, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 2015;51(4):614.
297. Myles PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(4):657.
298. Drummond JT, Matthews RG. *Biochemistry*. 1994;33(12):3742.
299. Nagele P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(4):843.
300. Kiasari AZ, et al. *Oman Med J*. 2014;29(3):194.
301. Mugler JP, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(50):21707.
302. Cullen SC. *Anesthesiology*. 1969;31(4):305.
303. Nakata Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(4):611.
304. Law LS. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(3):678.
305. Law LS, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2018;65(9):1041.
306. Bronco A, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27(10):912.
307. Cremer J, et al. *Med Gas Res*. 2011;1(1):9.
308. Coburn M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(6):756.
309. Hocker J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(5):1068.
310. Neukirchen M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(6):887.
311. Hofland J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(6):918.
312. Petzelt C, et al. *BMC Neurosci*. 2004;5:55.
313. Sacchetti ML. *Stroke*. 2008;39(6):1659.
314. Bedi A, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31(10):2470.
315. Roehl AB, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27(7):660.
316. Suzuki T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(3):699.
317. Schaefer MS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(1):61.
318. Calzia E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(3):829.
319. Baumert JH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(4):540.
320. Zhang P. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(6):547.
321. Rueckoldt H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1999;43(10):1060.
322. Dickinson R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(5):756.
323. Kratzer S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):673.
324. Nagele P, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101(23):8791.
325. Richardson KJ, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2015;352(1):156.
326. Hagen T, et al. *J Comput Assist Tomogr*. 1999;23(2):257.
327. Reinstrup P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(2):396.
328. Yagi M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74(6):670.
329. Petersen-Felix S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81(5):742.
330. Utsumi J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(6):1372.
331. Yonas H. *J Comput Assist Tomogr*. 1981;5(4):591.
332. Kamp HD. *Klin Anasthesiol Intensivther*. 1993;42:17.
333. de Vasconcellos K, Sneyd JR. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(6):877.
334. Imberger G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(3):410.
335. Myles PS, et al. *Lancet*. 2014;384(9952):1446.

References

1. Kumeta Y, Hattori A, Mimura M, Kishikawa K, Namiki A. [A survey of perioperative bronchospasm in 105 patients with reactive airway disease]. *Masui*. 1995;44(3):396–401.
2. Pizov R, Brown RH, Weiss YS, et al. Wheezing during induction of general anesthesia in patients with and without asthma. A randomized, blinded trial. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(5):1111–1116.
3. Forrest JB, Rehder K, Cahalan MK, Goldsmith CH. Multicenter study of general anesthesia. III. Predictors of severe perioperative adverse outcomes. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(1):3–15.
4. Cheney FW, Posner KL, Caplan RA. Adverse respiratory events infrequently leading to malpractice suits. A closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(6):932–939.
5. Auroy Y, Benhamou D, Pequignot F, Bovet M, Jougla E, Lienhart A. Mortality related to anaesthesia in France: analysis of deaths related to airway complications. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(4): 366–370.
6. Caulfield MP, Birdsall NJ. International Union of Pharmacology. XVII. Classification of muscarinic acetylcholine receptors. *Pharmacol Rev*. 1998;50(2):279–290.
7. Belmonte KE. Cholinergic pathways in the lungs and anticholinergic therapy for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Proc Am Thorac Soc*. 2005;2(4):297–304. discussion 311-292.
8. Zhang WC, Peng YJ, Zhang GS, et al. Myosin light chain kinase is necessary for tonic airway smooth muscle contraction. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285(8):5522–5531.
9. Prakash YS, Kannan MS, Walseth TF, Sieck GC. Role of cyclic ADP-ribose in the regulation of [Ca2+]i in porcine tracheal smooth muscle. *Am J Physiol*. 1998;274(6 Pt 1):C1653–1660.
10. Bogard AS, Xu C, Ostrom RS. Human bronchial smooth muscle cells express adenylyl cyclase isoforms 2, 4, and 6 in distinct membrane microdomains. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2011;337(1):209–217.
11. Ito S, Kume H, Naruse K, et al. A novel Ca2+ influx pathway activated by mechanical stretch in human airway smooth muscle cells. *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol*. 2008;38(4):407–413.
12. Rho EH, Perkins WJ, Lorenz RR, Warner DO, Jones KA. Differential effects of soluble and particulate guanylyl cyclase on Ca(2+) sensitivity in airway smooth muscle. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2002;92(1):257–263.
13. Panula P, Chazot PL, Cowart M, et al. International Union of Basic and Clinical Pharmacology. XCVIII. Histamine receptors. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2015;67(3):601–655.
14. Tamaoki J, Chiyotani A, Tagaya E, Isono K, Konno K. Histamine N-methyltransferase modulates human bronchial smooth muscle contraction. *Mediators Inflamm*. 1994;3(2):125–129.
15. Katoh T, Ikeda K. A comparison of sevoflurane with halothane, enflurane, and isoflurane on bronchoconstriction caused by histamine. *Can J Anaesth*. 1994;41(12):1214–1219.
16. Deleted in proofs
17. Emala CW, McQuitty CK, Eleff SM, et al. Asthma, allergy, and airway hyperresponsiveness are not linked to the beta(2)-adrenoceptor gene. *Chest*. 2002;121(3):722–731.
18. Park KW, Sato K, Dai HB, Comunale ME, Sellke FW. Epithelium-dependent bronchodilatory activity is preserved in pig bronchioles after normothermic cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(4):778–783.
19. Fehr JJ, Hirshman CA, Emala CW. Cellular signaling by the potent bronchoconstrictor endothelin-1 in airway smooth muscle. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(6):1884–1888.
20. Brown RH, Zerhouni EA, Hirshman CA. Comparison of low concentrations of halothane and isoflurane as bronchodilators. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(6):1097–1101.
21. D'Angelo E, Calderini IS, Tavola M. The effects of CO2 on respiratory mechanics in anesthetized paralyzed humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(4):604–610.
22. Mazzeo AJ, Cheng EY, Bosnjak ZJ, Coon RL, Kampine JP. Differential effects of desflurane and halothane on peripheral airway smooth muscle. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76(6):841–846.
23. Park KW, Dai HB, Lowenstein E, Kocher ON, Sellke FW. Isoflurane- and halothane-mediated dilation of distal bronchi in the rat depends on the epithelium. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(5):1078–1087; discussion 1023A-1024A.
24. Habre W, Petak F, Sly PD, Hantos Z, Morel DR. Protective effects of volatile agents against methacholine-induced bronchoconstriction in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(2):348–353.
25. Yamakage M, Chen X, Tsujiguchi N, Kamada Y, Namiki A. Different inhibitory effects of volatile anesthetics on T- and L-type voltage-dependent Ca2+ channels in porcine tracheal and bronchial smooth muscles. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(4):683–693.
26. Cheng EY, Mazzeo AJ, Bosnjak ZJ, Coon RL, Kampine JP. Direct relaxant effects of intravenous anesthetics on airway smooth muscle. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(1):162–168.
27. Dikmen Y, Eminoglu E, Salihoglu Z, Demiroluk S. Pulmonary mechanics during isoflurane, sevoflurane and desflurane anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58(8):745–748.
28. Nyktari VG, Papaioannou AA, Prinianakis G, Mamidakis EG, Georgopoulos D, Askitopoulou H. Effect of the physical properties of isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane on pulmonary resistance in a laboratory lung model. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(6):1202–1207.
29. Nyktari V, Papaioannou A, Volakakis N, Lappa A, Margaritsanaki P, Askitopoulou H. Respiratory resistance during anaesthesia with isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane: a randomized clinical trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(3):454–461.
30. Goff MJ, Arain SR, Ficke DJ, Uhrich TD, Ebert TJ. Absence of bronchodilation during desflurane anesthesia: a comparison to sevoflurane and thiopental. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(2):404–408.
31. Hashimoto Y, Hirota K, Ohtomo N, Ishihara H, Matsuki A. In vivo direct measurement of the bronchodilating effect of sevoflurane using a superfine fiberoptic bronchoscope: comparison with enflurane and halothane. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1996;10(2):213–216.
32. Myers CF, Fontao F, Janosi TZ, Boda K, Petak F, Habre W. Sevoflurane and desflurane protect cholinergic-induced bronchoconstriction of hyperreactive airways in rabbits. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58(11):1007–1015.
33. Lele E, Petak F, Fontao F, Morel DR, Habre W. Protective effects of volatile agents against acetylcholine-induced bronchoconstriction in isolated perfused rat lungs. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50(9):1145–1151.
34. Lele E, Petak F, Carnesecchi S, Virag K, Argiroffo CB, Habre W. The protective effects of volatile anesthestics against the bronchoconstriction induced by an allergic reaction in sensitized rabbit pups. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(6):1257–1264.
35. Satoh J, Yamakage M. Desflurane induces airway contraction mainly by activating transient receptor potential A1 of sensory C-fibers. *J Anesth*. 2009;23(4):620–623.
36. Satoh JI, Yamakage M, Kobayashi T, Tohse N, Watanabe H, Namiki A. Desflurane but not sevoflurane can increase lung resistance via tachykinin pathways. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(5):704–713.
37. Rooke GA, Choi JH, Bishop MJ. The effect of isoflurane, halothane, sevoflurane, and thiopental/nitrous oxide on respiratory system resistance after tracheal intubation. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(6):1294–1299.
38. Correa FC, Ciminelli PB, Falcao H, et al. Respiratory mechanics and lung histology in normal rats anesthetized with sevoflurane. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2001;91(2):803–810.
39. Burburan SM, Xisto DG, Ferreira HC, et al. Lung mechanics and histology during sevoflurane anesthesia in a model of chronic allergic asthma. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(3):631–637.
40. Ruiz P, Chartrand D. The effect of isoflurane 0.6% on respiratory mechanics in anesthetized-paralyzed humans is not increased at concentrations of 0.9% and 1.2%. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50(1):67–70.
41. Arakawa H, Takizawa T, Tokuyama K, Mochizuki H, Morikawa A. Efficacy of inhaled anticholinergics and anesthesia in treatment of a patient in status asthmaticus. *J Asthma*. 2002;39(1):77–80.
42. Deleted in proofs
43. Deleted in proofs
44. Morimoto N, Yamamoto K, Jones KA, Warner DO. Halothane and pertussis toxin-sensitive G proteins in airway smooth muscle. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(2):328–334.
45. Tobias JD, Hirshman CA. Attenuation of histamine-induced airway constriction by albuterol during halothane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(1):105–110.
46. Wu RS, Wu KC, Wong TK, et al. Isoflurane anesthesia does not add to the bronchodilating effect of a beta 2-adrenergic agonist after tracheal intubation. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(2):238–241.
47. Yamamoto K, Morimoto N, Warner DO, Rehder K, Jones KA. Factors influencing the direct actions of volatile anesthetics on airway smooth muscle. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(6):1102–1111.
48. Yamakage M, Tsujiguchi N, Hattori J, Kamada Y, Namiki A. Low-temperature modification of the inhibitory effects of volatile anesthetics on airway smooth muscle contraction in dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(1):179–188.

49. Iwasaki S, Yamakage M, Satoh J, Namiki A. Different inhibitory effects of sevoflurane on hyperreactive airway smooth muscle contractility in ovalbumin-sensitized and chronic cigarette-smoking guinea pig models. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(4):753–763.
50. Volta CA, Alvisi V, Petrini S, et al. The effect of volatile anesthetics on respiratory system resistance in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):348–353.
51. Crawford MW, Arrica M, Macgowan CK, Yoo SJ. Extent and localization of changes in upper airway caliber with varying concentrations of sevoflurane in children. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(6):1147–1152; discussion 1145A.
52. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, Saudan S, Petak F, Hantos Z, Habre W. Desflurane but not sevoflurane impairs airway and respiratory tissue mechanics in children with susceptible airways. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108(2):216–224.
53. Kai T, Jones KA, Warner DO. Halothane attenuates calcium sensitization in airway smooth muscle by inhibiting G-proteins. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(6):1543–1552.
54. Yu J, Ogawa K, Tokinaga Y, Hatano Y. Sevoflurane inhibits guanosine 5'-[gamma-thio]triphosphate-stimulated, Rho/Rho-kinase-mediated contraction of isolated rat aortic smooth muscle. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):646–651.
55. Lynch C, Baum J, Tenbrinck R. Xenon anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(3):865–868.
56. Janssen LJ. T-type and L-type Ca2+ currents in canine bronchial smooth muscle: characterization and physiological roles. *Am J Physiol*. 1997;272(6 Pt 1):C1757–1765.
57. Chen X, Yamakage M, Namiki A. Inhibitory effects of volatile anesthetics on K+ and Cl- channel currents in porcine tracheal and bronchial smooth muscle. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(2):458–466.
58. Yamakage M, Chen X, Kimura A, Iwasaki S, Namiki A. The repolarizing effects of volatile anesthetics on porcine tracheal and bronchial smooth muscle cells. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(1):84–88; table of contents.
59. Pabelick CM, Prakash YS, Kannan MS, Warner DO, Sieck GC. Effects of halothane on sarcoplasmic reticulum calcium release channels in porcine airway smooth muscle cells. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(1):207–215.
60. Hanazaki M, Jones KA, Perkins WJ, Warner DO. Halothane increases smooth muscle protein phosphatase in airway smooth muscle. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(1):129–136.
61. Ay B, Iyanoye A, Sieck GC, Prakash YS, Pabelick CM. Cyclic nucleotide regulation of store-operated Ca2+ influx in airway smooth muscle. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2006;290(2):L278–283.
62. Jude JA, Wylam ME, Walseth TF, Kannan MS. Calcium signaling in airway smooth muscle. *Proc Am Thorac Soc*. 2008;5(1):15–22.
63. Wettschureck N, Offermanns S. Rho/Rho-kinase mediated signaling in physiology and pathophysiology. *J Mol Med (Berl)*. 2002;80(10):629–638.
64. Iizuka K, Shimizu Y, Tsukagoshi H, et al. Evaluation of Y-27632, a rho-kinase inhibitor, as a bronchodilator in guinea pigs. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2000;406(2):273–279.
65. Sakihara C, Perkins WJ, Warner DO, Jones KA. Anesthetics inhibit acetylcholine-promoted guanine nucleotide exchange of heterotrimeric G proteins of airway smooth muscle. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(1):120–126.
66. Nakayama T, Penheiter AR, Penheiter SG, et al. Differential effects of volatile anesthetics on M3 muscarinic receptor coupling to the Galphaq heterotrimeric G protein. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(2):313–324.
67. Duracher C, Blanc FX, Gueugniaud PY, et al. The effects of isoflurane on airway smooth muscle crossbridge kinetics in Fisher and Lewis rats. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(1):136–142; table of contents.
68. Gallos G, Gleason NR, Virag L, et al. Endogenous gamma-aminobutyric acid modulates tonic guinea pig airway tone and propofol-induced airway smooth muscle relaxation. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(4):748–758.
69. Gallos G, Yim P, Chang S, et al. Targeting the restricted alpha-subunit repertoire of airway smooth muscle GABAA receptors augments airway smooth muscle relaxation. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2012;302(2):L248–256.
70. Park KW, Dai HB, Lowenstein E, Sellke FW. Epithelial dependence of the bronchodilatory effect of sevoflurane and desflurane in rat distal bronchi. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(3):646–651.
71. Moudgil GC. The patient with reactive airways disease. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44(5 Pt 2):R77–89.
72. Warner DO, Vettermann J, Brichant JF, Rehder K. Direct and neurally mediated effects of halothane on pulmonary resistance in vivo. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(6):1057–1063.
73. Wiklund CU, Lim S, Lindsten U, Lindahl SG. Relaxation by sevoflurane, desflurane and halothane in the isolated guinea-pig trachea via inhibition of cholinergic neurotransmission. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83(3):422–429.
74. Brown RH, Mitzner W, Zerhouni E, Hirshman CA. Direct in vivo visualization of bronchodilation induced by inhalational anesthesia using high-resolution computed tomography. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(2):295–300.
75. Akhtar S, Brull SJ. Effect of isoflurane on endothelin-1 mediated airway smooth muscle contraction. *Pulm Pharmacol Ther*. 1998;11(2-3):227–230.
76. Berbari NF, O'Connor AK, Haycraft CJ, Yoder BK. The primary cilium as a complex signaling center. *Curr Biol*. 2009;19(13):R526–535.
77. Czarnecki PG, Shah JV. The ciliary transition zone: from morphology and molecules to medicine. *Trends Cell Biol*. 2012;22(4):201–210.
78. Wu J, Du H, Wang X, Mei C, Sieck GC, Qian Q. Characterization of primary cilia in human airway smooth muscle cells. *Chest*. 2009;136(2):561–570.
79. Ferkol TW, Leigh MW. Ciliopathies: the central role of cilia in a spectrum of pediatric disorders. *J Pediatr*. 2012;160(3):366–371.
80. Christopher AB, Ochoa S, Krushansky E, et al. The effects of temperature and anesthetic agents on ciliary function in murine respiratory epithelia. *Front Pediatr*. 2014;2:111.
81. Lindberg S, Cervin A, Runer T. Low levels of nasal nitric oxide (NO) correlate to impaired mucociliary function in the upper airways. *Acta Otolaryngol*. 1997;117(5):728–734.
82. Lund VJ. Nasal physiology: neurochemical receptors, nasal cycle, and ciliary action. *Allergy Asthma Proc*. 1996;17(4):179–184.
83. Keller C, Brimacombe J. Bronchial mucus transport velocity in paralyzed anesthetized patients: a comparison of the laryngeal mask airway and cuffed tracheal tube. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(6):1280–1282.
84. Raphael JH, Butt MW. Comparison of isoflurane with propofol on respiratory cilia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79(4):473–475.
85. Iida H, Matsuura S, Shirakami G, Tanimoto K, Fukuda K. Differential effects of intravenous anesthetics on ciliary motility in cultured rat tracheal epithelial cells. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53(3):242–249.
86. Raphael JH, Strupish J, Selwyn DA, Hann HC, Langton JA. Recovery of respiratory ciliary function after depression by inhalation anaesthetic agents: an in vitro study using nasal turbinate explants. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76(6):854–859.
87. Matsuura S, Shirakami G, Iida H, Tanimoto K, Fukuda K. The effect of sevoflurane on ciliary motility in rat cultured tracheal epithelial cells: a comparison with isoflurane and halothane. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(6):1703–1708.
88. Gamsu G, Singer MM, Vincent HH, Berry S, Nadel JA. Postoperative impairment of mucous transport in the lung. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1976;114(4):673–679.
89. Lichtiger M, Landa JF, Hirsch JA. Velocity of tracheal mucus in anesthetized women undergoing gynecologic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;42(6):753–756.
90. Konrad F, Marx T, Schraag M, Kilian J. [Combination anesthesia and bronchial tranport velocity. Effects of anesthesia with isoflurane, fentanyl, vecuronium and oxygen-nitrous oxide breathing on bronchial mucus transport]. *Anaesthesist*. 1997;46(5):403–407.
91. Konrad F, Schreiber T, Brecht-Kraus D, Georgieff M. Mucociliary transport in ICU patients. *Chest*. 1994;105(1):237–241.
92. Konrad FX, Schreiber T, Brecht-Kraus D, Georgieff M. Bronchial mucus transport in chronic smokers and nonsmokers during general anesthesia. *J Clin Anesth*. 1993;5(5):375–380.
93. Rivero DH, Lorenzi-Filho G, Pazetti R, Jatene FB, Saldiva PH. Effects of bronchial transection and reanastomosis on mucociliary system. *Chest*. 2001;119(5):1510–1515.
94. Molliex S, Crestani B, Dureuil B, et al. Effects of halothane on surfactant biosynthesis by rat alveolar type II cells in primary culture. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(3):668–676.
95. Yang T, Li Y, Liu Q, Tao J, Wu W, Huang H. Isoflurane aggravates the decrease of phosphatidycholine synthesis in alveolar type II cells induced by hydrogen peroxide. *Drug Metabol Drug Interact*. 2001;18(3-4):243–249.
96. Patel AB, Sokolowski J, Davidson BA, Knight PR, Holm BA. Halothane potentiation of hydrogen peroxide-induced inhibition of surfactant synthesis: the role of type II cell energy status. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(4):943–947; table of contents.

97. Li Y, Yang T, Liu Q, Tao J, Wu W, Huang H. Effect of isoflurane on proliferation and Na+,K+-ATPase activity of alveolar type II cells injured by hydrogen peroxide. *Drug Metabol Drug Interact*. 2004;20(3):175–183.
98. Rezaiguia-Delclaux S, Jayr C, Luo DF, Saidi NE, Meignan M, Duvaldestin P. Halothane and isoflurane decrease alveolar epithelial fluid clearance in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(3): 751–760.
99. Paugam-Burtz C, Molliex S, Lardeux B, et al. Differential effects of halothane and thiopental on surfactant protein C messenger RNA in vivo and in vitro in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(3):805–810.
100. Malacrida L, Reta G, Piriz H, et al. Sevoflurane anesthesia deteriorates pulmonary surfactant promoting alveolar collapse in male Sprague-Dawley rats. *Pulm Pharmacol Ther*. 2014;28(2):122–129.
101. Bilgi M, Goksu S, Mizrak A, et al. Comparison of the effects of low-flow and high-flow inhalational anaesthesia with nitrous oxide and desflurane on mucociliary activity and pulmonary function tests. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(4):279–283.
102. Sweeney M, Beddy D, Honner V, Sinnott B, O'Regan RG, McLoughlin P. Effects of changes in pH and CO2 on pulmonary arterial wall tension are not endothelium dependent. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1998;85(6):2040–2046.
103. Myers JL, Wizorek JJ, Myers AK, et al. Pulmonary arterial endothelial dysfunction potentiates hypercapnic vasoconstriction and alters the response to inhaled nitric oxide. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;62(6): 1677–1684.
104. Moncada S, Palmer RM, Higgs EA. Nitric oxide: physiology, pathophysiology, and pharmacology. *Pharmacol Rev*. 1991;43(2):109–142.
105. Bredt DS, Glatt CE, Hwang PM, Fotuhi M, Dawson TM, Snyder SH. Nitric oxide synthase protein and mRNA are discretely localized in neuronal populations of the mammalian CNS together with NADPH diaphorase. *Neuron*. 1991;7(4):615–624.
106. Lamas S, Marsden PA, Li GK, Tempst P, Michel T. Endothelial nitric oxide synthase: molecular cloning and characterization of a distinct constitutive enzyme isoform. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89(14):6348–6352.
107. Moncada S, Palmer RM. Biosynthesis and actions of nitric oxide. *Semin Perinatol*. 1991;15(1):16–19.
108. Ichinose F, Roberts JD, Zapol WM. Inhaled nitric oxide: a selective pulmonary vasodilator: current uses and therapeutic potential. *Circulation*. 2004;109(25):3106–3111.
109. Lian TY, Jiang X, Jing ZC. Riociguat: a soluble guanylate cyclase stimulator for the treatment of pulmonary hypertension. *Drug Des Devel Ther*. 2017;11:1195–1207.
110. Galvin I, Drummond GB, Nirmalan M. Distribution of blood flow and ventilation in the lung: gravity is not the only factor. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(4):420–428.
111. Arai TJ, Henderson AC, Dubowitz DJ, et al. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction does not contribute to pulmonary blood flow heterogeneity in normoxia in normal supine humans. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2009;106(4):1057–1064.
112. Adding LC, Agvald P, Persson MG, Gustafsson LE. Regulation of pulmonary nitric oxide by carbon dioxide is intrinsic to the lung. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 1999;167(2):167–174.
113. Yamamoto Y, Nakano H, Ide H, et al. Role of airway nitric oxide on the regulation of pulmonary circulation by carbon dioxide. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2001;91(3):1121–1130.
114. Robertson TP, Ward JP, Aaronson PI. Hypoxia induces the release of a pulmonary-selective, Ca(2+)-sensitising, vasoconstrictor from the perfused rat lung. *Cardiovasc Res*. 2001;50(1):145–150.
115. Morio Y, McMurtry IF. Ca(2+) release from ryanodine-sensitive store contributes to mechanism of hypoxic vasoconstriction in rat lungs. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2002;92(2):527–534.
116. Evans AM, Hardie DG, Peers C, Mahmoud A. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction: mechanisms of oxygen-sensing. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24(1):13–20.
117. Firth AL, Yuill KH, Smirnov SV. Mitochondria-dependent regulation of Kv currents in rat pulmonary artery smooth muscle cells. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2008;295(1):L61–70.
118. Nagendran J, Stewart K, Hoskinson M, Archer SL. An anesthesiologist's guide to hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction: implications for managing single-lung anesthesia and atelectasis. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;19(1):34–43.
119. Wang L, Yin J, Nickles HT, et al. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction requires connexin 40-mediated endothelial signal conduction. *J Clin Invest*. 2012;122(11):4218–4230.
120. Goldenberg NM, Wang L, Ranke H, Liedtke W, Tabuchi A, Kuebler WM. TRPV4 is required for hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(6):1338–1348.
121. Lumb AB, Slinger P. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction: physiology and anesthetic implications. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(4):932–946.
122. Akata T. General anesthetics and vascular smooth muscle: direct actions of general anesthetics on cellular mechanisms regulating vascular tone. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(2):365–391.
123. Gambone LM, Fujiwara Y, Murray PA. Endothelium-dependent pulmonary vasodilation is selectively attenuated during isoflurane anesthesia. *Am J Physiol*. 1997;272(1 Pt 2):H290–298.
124. Seki S, Sato K, Nakayama M, Murray PA. Halothane and enflurane attenuate pulmonary vasodilation mediated by adenosine triphosphate-sensitive potassium channels compared to the conscious state. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(4):923–935.
125. Nakayama M, Kondo U, Murray PA. Pulmonary vasodilator response to adenosine triphosphate-sensitive potassium channel activation is attenuated during desflurane but preserved during sevoflurane anesthesia compared with the conscious state. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(4):1023–1035.
126. Lennon PF, Murray PA. Isoflurane and the pulmonary vascular pressure-flow relation at baseline and during sympathetic alpha- and beta-adrenoreceptor activation in chronically instrumented dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(3):723–733.
127. Sato K, Seki S, Murray PA. Effects of halothane and enflurane anesthesia on sympathetic beta-adrenoreceptor-mediated pulmonary vasodilation in chronically instrumented dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(2):478–487.
128. Liu R, Ishibe Y, Okazaki N, Ueda M, Hirosawa J. Volatile anesthetics regulate pulmonary vascular tension through different potassium channel subtypes in isolated rabbit lungs. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50(3):301–304.
129. Olschewski A. Targeting TASK-1 channels as a therapeutic approach. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2010;661:459–473.
130. Su JY, Vo AC. Ca(2+)-calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II plays a major role in halothane-induced dose-dependent relaxation in the skinned pulmonary artery. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(1):207–214.
131. Zhong L, Su JY. Isoflurane activates PKC and Ca(2+) -calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II via MAP kinase signaling in cultured vascular smooth muscle cells. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(1):148–154.
132. Loer SA, Scheeren TW, Tarnow J. Desflurane inhibits hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction in isolated rabbit lungs. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(3):552–556.
133. Lennon PF, Murray PA. Attenuated hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction during isoflurane anesthesia is abolished by cyclooxygenase inhibition in chronically instrumented dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(2):404–414.
134. Johns RA. Endothelium, anesthetics, and vascular control. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79(6):1381–1391.
135. Marshall CM,BE. Inhalational anesthetics directly inhibit hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:A1238.
136. Marshall C, Marshall BE. Endothelium-derived relaxing factor is not responsible for inhibition of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction by inhalational anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(3):441–448.
137. Jing M, Hart JL, Masaki E, Van Dyke RA, Bina S, Muldoon SM. Vascular effects of halothane and isoflurane: cGMP dependent and independent actions. *Life Sci*. 1995;56(1):19–29.
138. Gambone LM, Murray PA, Flavahan NA. Isoflurane anesthesia attenuates endothelium-dependent pulmonary vasorelaxation by inhibiting the synergistic interaction between nitric oxide and prostacyclin. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(4):936–944.
139. Liu R, Ueda M, Okazaki N, Ishibe Y. Role of potassium channels in isoflurane- and sevoflurane-induced attenuation of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction in isolated perfused rabbit lungs. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(4):939–946.
140. Eisenkraft JB. Effects of anaesthetics on the pulmonary circulation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65(1):63–78.
141. Lesitsky MA, Davis S, Murray PA. Preservation of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction during sevoflurane and desflurane anesthesia compared to the conscious state in chronically instrumented dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(6):1501–1508.
142. Schwarzkopf K, Schreiber T, Gaser E, et al. The effects of xenon or nitrous oxide supplementation on systemic oxygenation and pulmonary perfusion during one-lung ventilation in pigs. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):335–339.

143. Schwarzkopf K, Schreiber T, Preussler NP, et al. Lung perfusion, shunt fraction, and oxygenation during one-lung ventilation in pigs: the effects of desflurane, isoflurane, and propofol. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17(1):73–75.
144. Karzai W, Haberstroh J, Priebe HJ. The effects of increasing concentrations of desflurane on systemic oxygenation during one-lung ventilation in pigs. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(1):215–217.
145. Schwarzkopf K, Schreiber T, Bauer R, et al. The effects of increasing concentrations of isoflurane and desflurane on pulmonary perfusion and systemic oxygenation during one-lung ventilation in pigs. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(6):1434–1438; table of contents.
146. Kleinsasser A, Lindner KH, Hoermann C, Schaefer A, Keller C, Loeckinger A. Isoflurane and sevoflurane anesthesia in pigs with a preexistent gas exchange defect. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(6):1422–1426.
147. Nyren S, Radell P, Mure M, et al. Inhalation anesthesia increases V/Q regional heterogeneity during spontaneous breathing in healthy subjects. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(6):1370–1375.
148. Radke OC, Schneider T, Heller AR, Koch T. Spontaneous breathing during general anesthesia prevents the ventral redistribution of ventilation as detected by electrical impedance tomography: a randomized trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(6):1227–1234.
149. Bindslev L, Hedenstierna G, Santesson J, Gottlieb I, Carvallhas A. Ventilation-perfusion distribution during inhalation anaesthesia. Effects of spontaneous breathing, mechanical ventilation and positive end-expiratory pressure. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1981;25(4):360–371.
150. Nishiwaki K, Nyhan DP, Rock P, et al. N omega-nitro-L-arginine and pulmonary vascular pressure-flow relationship in conscious dogs. *Am J Physiol*. 1992;262(5 Pt 2):H1331–1337.
151. Abe K, Mashimo T, Yoshiya I. Arterial oxygenation and shunt fraction during one-lung ventilation: a comparison of isoflurane and sevoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(6):1266–1270.
152. Reid CW, Slinger PD, Lenis S. A comparison of the effects of propofol-alfentanil versus isoflurane anesthesia on arterial oxygenation during one-lung ventilation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1996;10(7):860–863.
153. Beck DH, Doepfmer UR, Sinemus C, Bloch A, Schenk MR, Kox WJ. Effects of sevoflurane and propofol on pulmonary shunt fraction during one-lung ventilation for thoracic surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86(1):38–43.
154. Pruszkowski O, Dalibon N, Moutafis M, et al. Effects of propofol vs sevoflurane on arterial oxygenation during one-lung ventilation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(4):539–544.
155. Kellow NH, Scott AD, White SA, Feneck RO. Comparison of the effects of propofol and isoflurane anaesthesia on right ventricular function and shunt fraction during thoracic surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75(5):578–582.
156. Abe K, Shimizu T, Takashina M, Shiozaki H, Yoshiya I. The effects of propofol, isoflurane, and sevoflurane on oxygenation and shunt fraction during one-lung ventilation. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(5):1164–1169.
157. Benumof JL, Augustine SD, Gibbons JA. Halothane and isoflurane only slightly impair arterial oxygenation during one-lung ventilation in patients undergoing thoracotomy. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(6):910–915.
158. Pagel PS, Fu JL, Damask MC, et al. Desflurane and isoflurane produce similar alterations in systemic and pulmonary hemodynamics and arterial oxygenation in patients undergoing one-lung ventilation during thoracotomy. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(4):800–807.
159. Carlsson AJ, Bindslev L, Hedenstierna G. Hypoxia-induced pulmonary vasoconstriction in the human lung. The effect of isoflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(3):312–316.
160. Ng A, Swanevelder J. Hypoxaemia associated with one-lung anaesthesia: new discoveries in ventilation and perfusion. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(6):761–763.
161. Karzai W, Schwarzkopf K. Hypoxemia during one-lung ventilation: prediction, prevention, and treatment. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(6):1402–1411.
162. Dalibon N, Moutafis M, Liu N, Law-Koune JD, Monsel S, Fischler M. Treatment of hypoxemia during one-lung ventilation using intravenous almitrine. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(3):590–594; table of contents.
163. Teppema LJ, Baby S. Anesthetics and control of breathing. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2011;177(2):80–92.
164. Stuth EAEZE, Stucke AG. Effects of general anesthesia. In: Denham SWAL, ed. *Pharmacology and Pathophysiology of the Control of Breathing*. Boca Raton, FL: Taylor and Francis Group; 2005:571.
165. Stuth EA, Stucke AG, Brandes IF, Zuperku EJ. Anesthetic effects on synaptic transmission and gain control in respiratory control. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2008;164(1-2):151–159.
166. Sirois JE, Lei Q, Talley EM, Lynch C, Bayliss DA. The TASK-1 two-pore domain K+ channel is a molecular substrate for neuronal effects of inhalation anesthetics. *J Neurosci*. 2000;20(17):6347–6354.
167. Sirois JE, Lynch C, Bayliss DA. Convergent and reciprocal modulation of a leak K+ current and I(h) by an inhalational anaesthetic and neurotransmitters in rat brainstem motoneurones. *J Physiol*. 2002;541(Pt 3):717–729.
168. Trochet D, de Pontual L, Straus C, et al. PHOX2B germline and somatic mutations in late-onset central hypoventilation syndrome. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2008;177(8):906–911.
169. Coghlan M, Richards E. Inhalational anesthetics induce neuronal protein aggregation and affect. *ER Trafficking*. 2018;8(1):5275.
170. Forster HV, Smith CA. Contributions of central and peripheral chemoreceptors to the ventilatory response to CO2/H+. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2010;108(4):989–994.
171. Nattie E, Julius H, Comroe. distinguished lecture: central chemoreception: then ... and now. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2011;110(1):1–8.
172. Erlichman JS, Leiter JC, Gourine AV. ATP, glia and central respiratory control. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2010;173(3):305–311.
173. Pandit JJ. The variable effect of low-dose volatile anaesthetics on the acute ventilatory response to hypoxia in humans: a quantitative review. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(7):632–643.
174. Pandit JJ. Effect of low dose inhaled anaesthetic agents on the ventilatory response to carbon dioxide in humans: a quantitative review. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60(5):461–469.
175. Baugh R, Burke B, Fink B, Garcia R, Kominsky A, Yaremchuk K. Safety of outpatient surgery for obstructive sleep apnea. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2013;148(5):867–872.
176. Abdala AP, Paton JF, Smith JC. Defining inhibitory neurone function in respiratory circuits: opportunities with optogenetics? *J Physiol*. 2015;593(14):3033–3046.
177. Rybak IA, O'Connor R, Ross A, et al. Reconfiguration of the pontomedullary respiratory network: a computational modeling study with coordinated in vivo experiments. *J Neurophysiol*. 2008;100(4):1770–1799.
178. Smith CA, Forster HV, Blain GM, Dempsey JA. An interdependent model of central/peripheral chemoreception: evidence and implications for ventilatory control. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2010;173(3):288–297.
179. von Euler US LG, Zotterman Y. The excitation mechanism of the chemoreceptors of the carotid body. *Scand Arch Physiol*. 1939;83:132–152.
180. BuSha BF, Stella MH, Manning HL, Leiter JC. Termination of inspiration by phase-dependent respiratory vagal feedback in awake normal humans. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2002;93(3):903–910.
181. Lazarenko RM, Willcox SC, Shu S, et al. Motoneuronal TASK channels contribute to immobilizing effects of inhalational general anesthetics. *J Neurosci*. 2010;30(22):7691–7704.
182. Haxhiu MA, van Lunteren E, Mitra J, Cherniack NS. Comparison of the response of diaphragm and upper airway dilating muscle activity in sleeping cats. *Respiration physiology*. 1987;70(2):183–193.
183. Horner RL, Liu X, Gill H, Nolan P, Liu H, Sood S. Effects of sleep-wake state on the genioglossus vs.diaphragm muscle response to CO(2) in rats. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2002;92(2):878–887.
184. Begle RL, Badr S, Skatrud JB, Dempsey JA. Effect of lung inflation on pulmonary resistance during NREM sleep. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1990;141(4 Pt 1):854–860.
185. Tagaito Y, Isono S, Remmers JE, Tanaka A, Nishino T. Lung volume and collapsibility of the passive pharynx in patients with sleep-disordered breathing. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2007;103(4):1379–1385.
186. Hornbein TF, Eger EI, Winter PM, Smith G, Wetstone D, Smith KH. The minimum alveolar concentration of nitrous oxide in man. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61(7):553–556.
187. Bedi A, McCarroll C, Murray JM, Stevenson MA, Fee JP. The effects of subanaesthetic concentrations of xenon in volunteers. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(3):233–241.
188. Cormack JR, Gott J, Kondogiannis S. Profound hypopnea with xenon anesthesia in a free diver. *A A Case Rep*. 2017;8(4):90.
189. Fourcade HE, Stevens WC, Larson CP, et al. The ventilatory effects of Forane, a new inhaled anesthetic. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35(1):26–31.

190. Calverley RK, Smith NT, Jones CW, Prys-Roberts C, Eger EI. Ventilatory and cardiovascular effects of enflurane anesthesia during spontaneous ventilation in man. *Anesth Analg*. 1978;57(6):610–618.
191. Lockhart SH, Rampil IJ, Yasuda N, Eger EI, Weiskopf RB. Depression of ventilation by desflurane in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74(3):484–488.
192. Doi M, Ikeda K. Postanesthetic respiratory depression in humans: a comparison of sevoflurane, isoflurane and halothane. *J Anesth*. 1987;1(2):137–142.
193. Hickey RF, Severinghaus JW. Regulation of breathing: drug effects. In: Hornbein TF, ed. *Regulation of Breathing - Pt. 2*. New York, NY: Marcel Dekker; 1981:1251–1312.
194. Eger EI. Isoflurane: a review. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(5):559–576.
195. Fujii Y. Respiratory effects of xenon. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2001;39(2):95–103.
196. Winkler SS, Nielsen A, Mesina J. Respiratory depression in goats by stable xenon: implications for CT studies. *J Comput Assist Tomogr*. 1987;11(3):496–498.
197. Winkler STP, Holden J, et al. Xenon effects on CNS control of respiratory rate and tidal volume-the danger of apnea. In: Hartmann AHS, ed. *Cerebral Blood Flow and Metabolism Measurement*. Berlin: Springer-Verlag; 1985:356–360.
198. Holl K, Nemati N, Kohmura E, Gaab MR, Samii M. Stable-xenon-CT: effects of xenon inhalation on EEG and cardio-respiratory parameters in the human. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 1987;87(3-4):129–133.
199. Ballantyne D, Scheid P. Central respiratory chemosensitivity: cellular and network mechanisms. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2001;499:17–26.
200. Ballantyne D, Scheid P. Central chemosensitivity of respiration: a brief overview. *Respiration physiology*. 2001;129(1-2):5–12.
201. Branco LG, Moreira TS, Guyenet PG, et al. Commentaries on viewpoint: central chemoreception is a complex system function that involves multiple brain stem sites. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2009;106(4):1467–1470.
202. Heeringa J, Berkenbosch A, de Goede J, Olievier CN. Relative contribution of central and peripheral chemoreceptors to the ventilatory response to CO2 during hyperoxia. *Respiration Physiology*. 1979;37(3):365–379.
203. Knill RL, Gelb AW. Ventilatory responses to hypoxia and hypercapnia during halothane sedation and anesthesia in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49(4):244–251.
204. Deleted in proofs
205. Kammer T, Rehberg B, Menne D, Wartenberg HC, Wenningmann I, Urban BW. Propofol and sevoflurane in subanesthetic concentrations act preferentially on the spinal cord: evidence from multimodal electrophysiological assessment. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(6):1416–1425.
206. Barnard P, Andronikou S, Pokorski M, Smatresk N, Mokashi A, Lahiri S. Time-dependent effect of hypoxia on carotid body chemosensory function. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1987;63(2):685–691.
207. Dahan A, Teppema L. Influence of low-dose anaesthetic agents on ventilatory control: where do we stand? *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83(2):199–201.
208. Sarton E, van der Wal M, Nieuwenhuijs D, Teppema L, Robotham JL, Dahan A. Sevoflurane-induced reduction of hypoxic drive is sex-independent. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(5):1288–1293.
209. van den Elsen MJ, Dahan A, Berkenbosch A, DeGoede J, van Kleef JW, Olievier IC. Does subanesthetic isoflurane affect the ventilatory response to acute isocapnic hypoxia in healthy volunteers?. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(4):860–867; discussion 826A.
210. Hickey RF, Fourcade HE, Eger EI, et al. The effects of ether, halothane, and Forane on apneic thresholds in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35(1):32–37.
211. Nakayama H, Smith CA, Rodman JR, Skatrud JB, Dempsey JA. Effect of ventilatory drive on carbon dioxide sensitivity below eupnea during sleep. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;165(9):1251–1260.
212. West JB. Climbing Mt. Everest without oxygen: an analysis of maximal exercise during extreme hypoxia. *Respir Physiol*. 1983;52(3):265–279.
213. Dahan A, van den Elsen MJ, Berkenbosch A, et al. Effects of subanesthetic halothane on the ventilatory responses to hypercapnia and acute hypoxia in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(4):727–738.
214. Chung F, Liao P, Yegneswaran B, Shapiro CM, Kang W. Postoperative changes in sleep-disordered breathing and sleep architecture in patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(2):287–298.
215. Chung F, Liao P, Elsaid H, Shapiro CM, Kang W. Factors associated with postoperative exacerbation of sleep-disordered breathing. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(2):299–311.
216. Sarton E, Dahan A, Teppema L, et al. Acute pain and central nervous system arousal do not restore impaired hypoxic ventilatory response during sevoflurane sedation. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(2):295–303.
217. Pandit JJ, Moreau B, Donoghue S, Robbins PA. Effect of pain and audiovisual stimulation on the depression of acute hypoxic ventilatory response by low-dose halothane in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(6):1409–1416.
218. Warner DO, Warner MA, Ritman EL. Mechanical significance of respiratory muscle activity in humans during halothane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(2):309–321.
219. Warner DO, Warner MA, Ritman EL. Human chest wall function while awake and during halothane anesthesia. I. Quiet breathing. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(1):6–19.
220. Warner DO, Warner MA. Human chest wall function while awake and during halothane anesthesia. II. Carbon dioxide rebreathing. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(1):20–31.
221. Gauda EB, Carroll TP, Schwartz AR, Smith PL, Fitzgerald RS. Mechano- and chemoreceptor modulation of respiratory muscles in response to upper airway negative pressure. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1994;76(6):2656–2662.
222. Wheatley JR, Kelly WT, Tully A, Engel LA. Pressure-diameter relationships of the upper airway in awake supine subjects. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1991;70(5):2242–2251.
223. Schwartz AR, O'Donnell CP, Baron J, et al. The hypotonic upper airway in obstructive sleep apnea: role of structures and neuromuscular activity. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1998;157(4 Pt 1):1051–1057.
224. Kuna ST, Remmers JE. Neural and anatomic factors related to upper airway occlusion during sleep. *Med Clin North Am*. 1985;69(6):1221–1242.
225. Erb TO, von Ungern-Sternberg BS, Moll J, Frei FJ. Impact of high concentrations of sevoflurane on laryngeal reflex responses. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(3):282–289.
226. Lerman J, Hammer GB, Verghese S, et al. Airway responses to desflurane during maintenance of anesthesia and recovery in children with laryngeal mask airways. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20(6):495–505.
227. Ulevitch RJ. Recognition of bacterial endotoxins by receptor-dependent mechanisms. *Adv Immunol*. 1993;53:267–289.
228. Chow JC, Young DW, Golenbock DT, Christ WJ, Gusovsky F. Toll-like receptor-4 mediates lipopolysaccharide-induced signal transduction. *J Biol Chem*. 1999;274(16):10689–10692.
229. Marini JJ, Evans TW. Round table conference: acute lung injury, 15th-17th March 1997 Brussels, Belgium. *Intensive Care Med*. 1998;24(8):878–883.
230. Meyrick B, Johnson JE, Brigham KL. Endotoxin-induced pulmonary endothelial injury. *Prog Clin Biol Res*. 1989;308:91–99.
231. Brigham KL. Conference summary: lipid mediators in the pulmonary circulation. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1987;136(3):785–788.
232. Bulger EM, Maier RV. Lipid mediators in the pathophysiology of critical illness. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(suppl 4):N27–36.
233. Ermert L, Ermert M, Duncker HR, Grimminger F, Seeger W. In situ localization and regulation of thromboxane A(2) synthase in normal and LPS-primed lungs. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2000;278(4):L744–753.
234. Quinn JV, Slotman GJ. Platelet-activating factor and arachidonic acid metabolites mediate tumor necrosis factor and eicosanoid kinetics and cardiopulmonary dysfunction during bacteremic shock. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27(11):2485–2494.
235. Langleben D, DeMarchie M, Laporta D, Spanier AH, Schlesinger RD, Stewart DJ. Endothelin-1 in acute lung injury and the adult respiratory distress syndrome. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1993;148(6 Pt 1):1646–1650.
236. Suffredini AF, Shelhamer JH, Neumann RD, Brenner M, Baltaro RJ, Parrillo JE. Pulmonary and oxygen transport effects of intravenously administered endotoxin in normal humans. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1992;145(6):1398–1403.
237. O'Grady NP, Preas HL, Pugin J, et al. Local inflammatory responses following bronchial endotoxin instillation in humans. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2001;163(7):1591–1598.
238. Bachofen M, Weibel ER. Structural alterations of lung parenchyma in the adult respiratory distress syndrome. *Clin Chest Med*. 1982;3(1):35–56.

239. Kumar A, Brar R, Wang P, et al. Role of nitric oxide and cGMP in human septic serum-induced depression of cardiac myocyte contractility. *Am J Physiol*. 1999;276(1 Pt 2):R265–276.
240. McQuaid KE, Keenan AK. Endothelial barrier dysfunction and oxidative stress: roles for nitric oxide? *Exp Physiol*. 1997;82(2):369–376.
241. Salvemini D. Regulation of cyclooxygenase enzymes by nitric oxide. *Cell Mol Life Sci*. 1997;53(7):576–582.
242. Ignarro LJ, Fukuto JM, Griscavage JM, Rogers NE, Byrns RE. Oxidation of nitric oxide in aqueous solution to nitrite but not nitrate: comparison with enzymatically formed nitric oxide from L-arginine. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90(17):8103–8107.
243. Weissmann N, Tadic A, Hanze J, et al. Hypoxic vasoconstriction in intact lungs: a role for NADPH oxidase-derived H(2)O(2)? *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2000;279(4):L683–690.
244. Singh S, Evans TW. Nitric oxide, the biological mediator of the decade: fact or fiction? *Eur Respir J*. 1997;10(3):699–707.
245. Westendorp RG, Draijer R, Meinders AE, van Hinsbergh VW. Cyclic-GMP-mediated decrease in permeability of human umbilical and pulmonary artery endothelial cell monolayers. *J Vasc Res*. 1994;31(1):42–51.
246. Suter D, Spahn DR, Blumenthal S, et al. The immunomodulatory effect of sevoflurane in endotoxin-injured alveolar epithelial cells. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(3):638–645.
247. Takala RS, Soukka H, Salo MS, Kirvela O, Kaapa P, Aantaa R. Gene expression of pulmonary cytokines after sevoflurane or thiopentone anaesthesia in pigs. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50(2):163–167.
248. Giraud O, Molliex S, Rolland C, et al. Halogenated anesthetics reduce interleukin-1beta-induced cytokine secretion by rat alveolar type II cells in primary culture. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(1):74–81.
249. Voigtsberger S, Lachmann RA, Leutert AC, et al. Sevoflurane ameliorates gas exchange and attenuates lung damage in experimental lipopolysaccharide-induced lung injury. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(6):1238–1248.
250. Schlapfer M, Leutert AC, Voigtsberger S, Lachmann RA, Booy C, Beck-Schimmer B. Sevoflurane reduces severity of acute lung injury possibly by impairing formation of alveolar oedema. *Clin Exp Immunol*. 2012;168(1):125–134.
251. Du G, Wang S, Li Z, Liu J. Sevoflurane posttreatment attenuates lung injury induced by oleic acid in dogs. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(5):1555–1563.
252. Bedirli N, Demirtas CY, Akkaya T, et al. Volatile anesthetic preconditioning attenuated sepsis induced lung inflammation. *J Surg Res*. 2012;178(1):e17–e23.
253. Dong X, Hu R, Sun Y, Li Q, Jiang H. Isoflurane post-treatment improves pulmonary vascular permeability via upregulation of heme oxygenase-1. *Exp Lung Res*. 2013;39(7):295–303.
254. Beitler JR, Malhotra A, Thompson BT. Ventilator-induced lung injury. *Clin Chest Med*. 2016;37(4):633–646.
255. Wagner J, Strosing KM, Spassov SG, et al. Sevoflurane posttreatment prevents oxidative and inflammatory injury in ventilator-induced lung injury. *PLoS One*. 2018;13(2):e0192896.
256. Faller S, Strosing KM, Ryter SW, et al. The volatile anesthetic isoflurane prevents ventilator-induced lung injury via phosphoinositide 3-kinase/Akt signaling in mice. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(4):747–756.
257. Englert JA, Macias AA, Amador-Munoz D, et al. Isoflurane ameliorates acute lung injury by preserving epithelial tight junction integrity. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(2):377–388.
258. Strosing KM, Faller S, Gyllenram V, et al. Inhaled anesthetics exert different protective properties in a mouse model of ventilator-induced lung injury. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(1):143–151.
259. Pak O, Sydykov A, Kosanovic D, et al. Lung ischaemia-reperfusion injury: the role of reactive oxygen species. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2017;967:195–225.
260. Liu R, Ishibe Y, Ueda M, Hang Y. Isoflurane administration before ischemia and during reperfusion attenuates ischemia/reperfusion-induced injury of isolated rabbit lungs. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):561–565.
261. Fujinaga T, Nakamura T, Fukuse T, et al. Isoflurane inhalation after circulatory arrest protects against warm ischemia reperfusion injury of the lungs. *Transplantation*. 2006;82(9):1168–1174.
262. Casanova J, Garutti I, Simon C, et al. The effects of anesthetic preconditioning with sevoflurane in an experimental lung autotransplant model in pigs. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(4):742–748.
263. Ohsumi A, Marseu K, Slinger P, et al. Sevoflurane attenuates ischemia-reperfusion injury in a rat lung transplantation model. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2017;103(5):1578–1586.
264. Oshima Y, Sakamoto S, Yamasaki K, et al. Desflurane inhalation before ischemia increases ischemia-reperfusion-induced vascular leakage in isolated rabbit lungs. *Springerplus*. 2016;5(1):2031.
265. Martens A, Montoli M, Faggi G, et al. Argon and xenon ventilation during prolonged ex vivo lung perfusion. *J Surg Res*. 2016;201(1):44–52.
266. Wrigge H, Zinserling J, Stuber F, et al. Effects of mechanical ventilation on release of cytokines into systemic circulation in patients with normal pulmonary function. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(6):1413–1417.
267. De Conno E, Steurer MP, Wittlinger M, et al. Anesthetic-induced improvement of the inflammatory response to one-lung ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(6):1316–1326.
268. Schilling T, Kozian A, Senturk M, et al. Effects of volatile and intravenous anesthesia on the alveolar and systemic inflammatory response in thoracic surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115(1):65–74.
269. Sugasawa Y, Yamaguchi K, Kumakura S, et al. Effects of sevoflurane and propofol on pulmonary inflammatory responses during lung resection. *J Anesth*. 2012;26(1):62–69.
270. Uhlig C, Bluth T, Schwarz K, et al. Effects of volatile anesthetics on mortality and postoperative pulmonary and other complications in patients undergoing surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(6):1230–1245.
271. Beck-Schimmer B, Bonvini JM, Braun J, et al. Which anesthesia regimen is best to reduce morbidity and mortality in lung surgery?: a multicenter randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(2):313–321.
272. Koksal GM, Sayilgan C, Aydin S, Uzun H, Oz H. The effects of sevoflurane and desflurane on lipid peroxidation during laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21(3):217–220.
273. Koksal GM, Sayilgan C, Gungor G, et al. Effects of sevoflurane and desflurane on cytokine response during tympanoplasty surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(6):835–839.
274. Jabaudon M, Boucher P, Imhoff E, et al. Sevoflurane for sedation in acute respiratory distress syndrome. a randomized controlled pilot study. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;195(6):792–800.
275. Bellgardt M, Bomberg H, Herzog-Niescery J, et al. Survival after long-term isoflurane sedation as opposed to intravenous sedation in critically ill surgical patients: retrospective analysis. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33(1):6–13.
276. Wilson KE. Overview of paediatric dental sedation: 2. Nitrous oxide/oxygen inhalation sedation. *Dent Update*. 2013;40(10):822–824. 826-829.
277. Likis FE, Andrews JC, Collins MR, et al. Nitrous oxide for the management of labor pain: a systematic review. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(1):153–167.
278. Goto T, Nakata Y, Ishiguro Y, Niimi Y, Suwa K, Morita S. Minimum alveolar concentration-awake of xenon alone and in combination with isoflurane or sevoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(5):1188–1193.
279. Mashour GA, Avidan MS. Intraoperative awareness: controversies and non-controversies. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(suppl 1):i20–i26.
280. Mathews DM, Gaba V, Zaku B, Neuman GG. Can remifentanil replace nitrous oxide during anesthesia for ambulatory orthopedic surgery with desflurane and fentanyl?. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(1):101–108; table of contents.
281. Lee LH, Irwin MG, Lui SK. Intraoperative remifentanil infusion does not increase postoperative opioid consumption compared with 70% nitrous oxide. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(2):398–402.
282. Janiszewski DJ, Galinkin JL, Klock PA, Coalson DW, Pardo H, Zacny JP. The effects of subanesthetic concentrations of sevoflurane and nitrous oxide, alone and in combination, on analgesia, mood, and psychomotor performance in healthy volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(5):1149–1154.
283. Berkowitz BA, Finck AD, Hynes MD, Ngai SH. Tolerance to nitrous oxide analgesia in rats and mice. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51(4):309–312.
284. Berkowitz BA, Finck AD, Ngai SH. Nitrous oxide analgesia: reversal by naloxone and development of tolerance. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1977;203(3):539–547.
285. Ramsay DS, Leroux BG, Rothen M, Prall CW, Fiset LO, Woods SC. Nitrous oxide analgesia in humans: acute and chronic tolerance. *Pain*. 2005;114(1-2):19–28.
286. Akca O, Lenhardt R, Fleischmann E, et al. Nitrous oxide increases the incidence of bowel distension in patients undergoing elective colon resection. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48(7):894–898.

287. Fernandez-Guisasola J, Gomez-Arnau JI, Cabrera Y, del Valle SG. Association between nitrous oxide and the incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting in adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(4):379–387.
288. Peyton PJ, Wu CY. Nitrous oxide-related postoperative nausea and vomiting depends on duration of exposure. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(5):1137–1145.
289. Pace NL. Questioning a relationship between nitrous oxide duration of exposure and postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(6):1356–1358.
290. Zhou L, Chen C, Yu H. Nitrous oxide-related postoperative nausea and vomiting depends on duration of exposure: more questions than answers. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(6):1356.
291. Konstadt SN, Reich DL, Thys DM. Nitrous oxide does not exacerbate pulmonary hypertension or ventricular dysfunction in patients with mitral valvular disease. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37(6):613–617.
292. Schulte-Sasse U, Hess W, Tarnow J. Pulmonary vascular responses to nitrous oxide in patients with normal and high pulmonary vascular resistance. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57(1):9–13.
293. Beattie WS, Wijeysundera DN, Chan MTV, et al. Implication of major adverse postoperative events and myocardial injury on disability and survival: a planned subanalysis of the ENIGMA-II trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
294. Jevtovic-Todorovic V, Absalom AR, Blomgren K, et al. Anaesthetic neurotoxicity and neuroplasticity: an expert group report and statement based on the BJA Salzburg Seminar. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(2):143–151.
295. Savage S, Ma D. The neurotoxicity of nitrous oxide: the facts and “putative” mechanisms. *Brain Sci*. 2014;4(1):73–90.
296. Morris N, Lynch K, Greenberg SA. Severe motor neuropathy or neuronopathy due to nitrous oxide toxicity after correction of vitamin B12 deficiency. *Muscle Nerve*. 2015;51(4):614–616.
297. Myles PS, Chan MT, Kaye DM, et al. Effect of nitrous oxide anesthesia on plasma homocysteine and endothelial function. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(4):657–663.
298. Drummond JT, Matthews RG. Nitrous oxide inactivation of cobalamin-dependent methionine synthase from Escherichia coli: characterization of the damage to the enzyme and prosthetic group. *Biochemistry*. 1994;33(12):3742–3750.
299. Nagele P, Tallchief D, Blood J, Sharma A, Kharasch ED. Nitrous oxide anesthesia and plasma homocysteine in adolescents. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(4):843–848.
300. Kiasari AZ, Firouzian A, Baradari AG, Nia HS, Kiasari SH. The effect of Vitamin B12 infusion on prevention of nitrous oxide-induced homocysteine increase: a double-blind randomized controlled trial. *Oman Med J*. 2014;29(3):194–197.
301. Mugler JP, Altes TA, Ruset IC, et al. Simultaneous magnetic resonance imaging of ventilation distribution and gas uptake in the human lung using hyperpolarized xenon-129. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107(50):21707–21712.
302. Cullen SC, Eger EI, Cullen BF, Gregory P. Observations on the anesthetic effect of the combination of xenon and halothane. *Anesthesiology*. 1969;31(4):305–309.
303. Nakata Y, Goto T, Ishiguro Y, et al. Minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) of xenon with sevoflurane in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(4):611–614.
304. Law LS, Lo EA, Gan TJ. Xenon anesthesia: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(3):678–697.
305. Law LS, Lo EA, Chan CC, Gan TJ. Neurologic and cognitive outcomes associated with the clinical use of xenon: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized-controlled trials. *Can J Anaesth*. 2018.
306. Bronco A, Ingelmo PM, Aprigliano M, et al. Xenon anaesthesia produces better early postoperative cognitive recovery than sevoflurane anaesthesia. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27(10):912–916.
307. Cremer J, Stoppe C, Fahlenkamp AV, et al. Early cognitive function, recovery and well-being after sevoflurane and xenon anaesthesia in the elderly: a double-blinded randomized controlled trial. *Med Gas Res*. 2011;1(1):9.
308. Coburn M, Baumert JH, Roertgen D, et al. Emergence and early cognitive function in the elderly after xenon or desflurane anaesthesia: a double-blinded randomized controlled trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(6):756–762.
309. Hocker J, Stapelfeldt C, Leiendecker J, et al. Postoperative neurocognitive dysfunction in elderly patients after xenon versus propofol anesthesia for major noncardiac surgery: a double-blinded randomized controlled pilot study. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(5):1068–1076.
310. Neukirchen M, Hipp J, Schaefer MS, et al. Cardiovascular stability and unchanged muscle sympathetic activity during xenon anaesthesia: role of norepinephrine uptake inhibition. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(6):887–896.
311. Hofland J, Ouattara A, Fellahi JL, et al. Effect of xenon anesthesia compared to sevoflurane and total intravenous anesthesia for coronary artery bypass graft surgery on postoperative cardiac troponin release: an international, multicenter, phase 3, single-blinded, randomized noninferiority trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(6):918–933.
312. Petzelt C, Blom P, Schmehl W, Muller J, Kox WJ. Xenon prevents cellular damage in differentiated PC-12 cells exposed to hypoxia. *BMC Neurosci*. 2004;5:55.
313. Sacchetti ML. Is it time to definitely abandon neuroprotection in acute ischemic stroke? *Stroke*. 2008;39(6):1659–1660.
314. Bedi A, Murray JM, Dingley J, Stevenson MA, Fee JP. Use of xenon as a sedative for patients receiving critical care. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31(10):2470–2477.
315. Roehl AB, Goetzenich A, Rossaint R, Zoremba N, Hein M. A practical rule for optimal flows for xenon anaesthesia in a semi-closed anaesthesia circuit. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27(7):660–665.
316. Suzuki T, Koyama H, Sugimoto M, Uchida I, Mashimo T. The diverse actions of volatile and gaseous anesthetics on human-cloned 5-hydroxytryptamine3 receptors expressed in Xenopus oocytes. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(3):699–704.
317. Schaefer MS, Apfel CC, Sachs HJ, et al. Predictors for postoperative nausea and vomiting after xenon-based anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(1):61–67.
318. Calzia E, Stahl W, Handschuh T, et al. Continuous arterial P(O2) and P(CO2) measurements in swine during nitrous oxide and xenon elimination: prevention of diffusion hypoxia. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(3):829–834.
319. Baumert JH, Reyle-Hahn M, Hecker K, Tenbrinck R, Kuhlen R, Rossaint R. Increased airway resistance during xenon anaesthesia in pigs is attributed to physical properties of the gas. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(4):540–545.
320. Zhang P, Ohara A, Mashimo T, Imanaka H, Uchiyama A, Yoshiya I. Pulmonary resistance in dogs: a comparison of xenon with nitrous oxide. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(6):547–553.
321. Rueckoldt H, Vangerow B, Marx G, et al. Xenon inhalation increases airway pressure in ventilated patients. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1999;43(10):1060–1064.
322. Dickinson R, Peterson BK, Banks P, et al. Competitive inhibition at the glycine site of the N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor by the anesthetics xenon and isoflurane: evidence from molecular modeling and electrophysiology. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(5):756–767.
323. Kratzer S, Mattusch C, Kochs E, Eder M, Haseneder R, Rammes G. Xenon attenuates hippocampal long-term potentiation by diminishing synaptic and extrasynaptic N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor currents. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):673–682.
324. Nagele P, Metz LB, Crowder CM. Nitrous oxide (N(2)O) requires the N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor for its action in Caenorhabditis elegans. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101(23):8791–8796.
325. Richardson KJ, Shelton KL. N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor channel blocker-like discriminative stimulus effects of nitrous oxide gas. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2015;352(1):156–165.
326. Hagen T, Bartylla K, Piepgras U. Correlation of regional cerebral blood flow measured by stable xenon CT and perfusion MRI. *J Comput Assist Tomogr*. 1999;23(2):257–264.
327. Reinstrup P, Ryding E, Algotsson L, Berntman L, Uski T. Effects of nitrous oxide on human regional cerebral blood flow and isolated pial arteries. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(2):396–402.
328. Yagi M, Mashimo T, Kawaguchi T, Yoshiya I. Analgesic and hypnotic effects of subanaesthetic concentrations of xenon in human volunteers: comparison with nitrous oxide. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74(6):670–673.
329. Petersen-Felix S, Luginbuhl M, Schnider TW, Curatolo M, Arendt-Nielsen L, Zbinden AM. Comparison of the analgesic potency of xenon and nitrous oxide in humans evaluated by experimental pain. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81(5):742–747.
330. Utsumi J, Adachi T, Miyazaki Y, et al. The effect of xenon on spinal dorsal horn neurons: a comparison with nitrous oxide. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(6):1372–1376.

331. Yonas H, Grundy B, Gur D, Shabason L, Wolfson SK, Cook EE. Side effects of xenon inhalation. *J Comput Assist Tomogr*. 1981;5(4): 591–592.
332. Kamp HD. [Side effects and risks in the use of nitrous oxide in the course of general anesthesia]. *Klin Anasthesiol Intensivther*. 1993;42: 17–24.
333. de Vasconcellos K, Sneyd JR. Nitrous oxide: are we still in equipoise? A qualitative review of current controversies. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(6):877–885.
334. Imberger G, Orr A, Thorlund K, Wetterslev J, Myles P, Moller AM. Does anaesthesia with nitrous oxide affect mortality or cardiovascular morbidity? A systematic review with meta-analysis and trial sequential analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(3):410–426.
335. Myles PS, Leslie K, Chan MT, et al. The safety of addition of nitrous oxide to general anaesthesia in at-risk patients having major noncardiac surgery (ENIGMA-II): a randomised, single-blind trial. *Lancet*. 2014;384(9952):1446–1454.

22

Inhaled Anesthetics: Delivery Systems

MICHAEL P. BOKOCH and STEPHEN D. WESTON

KEY POINTS

- The modern anesthesia workstation has evolved into a complex device with a number of safety features. However, if there is any possibility that the workstation or the breathing circuit is a potential cause of difficulty with ventilation or oxygenation, ventilating the patient using an oxygen cylinder and a manual ventilation bag is an appropriate decision. *When in doubt, ventilate and oxygenate the patient first via another method—troubleshoot later.*
- The most important part of the preanesthesia workstation checkout procedure is to verify the presence of a self-inflating resuscitation bag and that an alternative oxygen source (E-cylinder) is available.
- The Diameter Index Safety System (DISS) is designed to prevent the misconnection of hospital gas supply lines to the anesthesia workstation. The Pin Index Safety System (PISS) is designed to prevent incorrect gas cylinder connections in the anesthesia workstation. Quick coupling systems may be utilized to connect to the central gas supply. No system is immune to misconnection.
- In the event of hospital pipeline crossover or contamination, two actions must be taken: the backup oxygen cylinder valve must be opened, and the wall supply sources must be disconnected. Otherwise, the suspect hospital pipeline gas will continue to flow to the patient.
- The oxygen flush valve provides a high flow of 100% oxygen directly to the patient's breathing circuit, allowing the anesthesia provider to overcome circuit leaks or to rapidly increase inspired oxygen concentration. Improper use can be associated with barotrauma or patient awareness.
- When using nitrous oxide, there is a risk of delivering a hypoxic mixture to the patient. "Fail-safe" valves and nitrous oxide/oxygen proportioning systems help minimize this risk, but they are not truly fail-safe. Delivery of a hypoxic mixture to the fresh gas outlet can result from (1) the wrong supply gas, (2) a defective or broken safety device, (3) leaks downstream from these safety devices, (4) administration of a fourth inert gas (e.g., helium), and (5) dilution of the inspired oxygen concentration by high concentrations of inhaled anesthetic agents (e.g., desflurane).
- The low-pressure section (LPS) of the gas supply system includes the flow control valves, flowmeters or flow sensors, and the anesthetic vaporizers. This section of the anesthesia workstation is most vulnerable to leaks, which can cause delivery of a hypoxic gas mixture or an inadequate concentration of anesthetic agent to the patient. The workstation must be checked for leaks before delivery of an anesthetic.
- The oxygen analyzer is the only protection against a hypoxic mixture within the low-pressure section of the pneumatic system.
- Anesthesia workstations with a one-way check valve in the LPS require a manual negative-pressure leak test. On machines without a check valve in this location, manual positive-pressure testing or automated testing is used to test the LPS for leaks.
- On machines with manually controlled anesthetic vaporizers, internal vaporizer leaks can be detected only when the vaporizer is turned on. This is true even during automated machine self-tests. Machines with electronically controlled vaporizers (e.g., the GE/Datex-Ohmeda Aladin cassette vaporizer, Maquet FLOW-i anesthesia workstation vaporizer) can check the installed vaporizer during self-test.
- Variable bypass vaporizers route a portion of the fresh gas flow into a vaporizing chamber to create the desired anesthetic concentration. Injection-type vaporizers utilize microprocessor control to inject small amounts of anesthetic liquid into an evaporating chamber.
- Desflurane's low boiling point and high vapor pressure make it unsuitable for a variable bypass vaporizer. Misfilling a variable bypass vaporizer with desflurane could theoretically cause delivery of a hypoxic mixture and a massive overdose of inhaled desflurane.
- The major advantage of the *circle breathing system* is the capability to rebreathe exhaled gas, including volatile anesthetic. The major disadvantage is its complex design with multiple connections.
- Before an anesthetic agent is administered, the circle system must be checked both to rule out *leaks* and to verify *flow*. To test for leaks, a static test is performed: the circle system is pressurized and the airway pressure gauge is observed not to fall. An automated test may perform this

function on many modern machines. To rule out obstruction or faulty valves, a dynamic test is performed, ventilating a test lung (usually a breathing bag) using the anesthesia workstation's ventilator, and observing for appropriate "lung" motion.

- Increasing the fresh gas flow rate into the circle breathing system causes less rebreathing of volatile anesthetic gas and more waste gas. To avoid rebreathing of carbon dioxide, a carbon dioxide absorbent is essential to the circle system's function.
- Inhaled anesthetic agents can interact with carbon dioxide absorbents and produce potentially harmful degradation products. Sevoflurane can form compound A, especially at low fresh gas flows. Several volatile anesthetics, though especially desflurane, can lead to release of carbon monoxide when exposed to desiccated absorbents. Carbon dioxide absorbents without strong bases such as potassium hydroxide or sodium hydroxide decrease this risk.
- The Mapleson breathing circuits are simple, lightweight breathing systems that support both spontaneous and manual ventilation. The particular circuit design has implications on the required fresh gas flow to avoid rebreathing of exhaled gases. None are economical for volatile anesthetic use, as they do not support carbon dioxide absorbent use.
- Anesthesia ventilators differ from intensive care unit ventilators in that they must support the rebreathing of exhaled gases. Types of anesthesia ventilators include bellows, piston, volume reflector, and turbine. Each design has its own benefits and limitations. Contemporary anesthesia ventilators support a wide variety of ventilation modes similar to intensive care unit ventilators.
- For bellows-type anesthesia ventilators, ascending bellows (bellows that ascend during the expiratory phase) are safer than descending bellows (bellows that descend during the expiratory phase) because disconnections are readily manifested by failure of ascending bellows to refill.
- Piston ventilators can potentially draw room air into the breathing circuit if a leak is present. The Maquet FLOW-i volume reflector compensates for leaks with 100% oxygen. Both are susceptible to lower than expected levels of inhaled anesthetic.
- On older anesthesia machines, the portion of fresh gas flow that occurs during inspiration is added to the tidal volume. Therefore increased fresh gas flow leads to increased tidal volume and increased airway pressure during positive-pressure ventilation. Newer-generation anesthesia workstations either *decouple* the fresh gas flow from the inspired tidal volume, or *compensate* for the fresh gas flow in calculating the amount of gas to deliver as tidal volume. Anesthesia providers should know whether their machines compensate for changes in fresh gas flow.
- The anesthesia gas scavenging system protects the operating room from waste anesthesia gases. Active systems, which apply vacuum suction to the scavenge system, are most common in contemporary operating rooms. Obstruction of, or inadequate vacuum to, the scavenging system transfer tubing can result in increased breathing circuit pressure or discharge of waste anesthesia gases to the operating room, depending on design.
- The American Society of Anesthesiologists *Recommendations for Pre-Anesthesia Checkout Procedures (2008)* serves as an excellent template for the creation of machine-specific checkout procedures. However, it is not a one-size-fits-all checklist.

Although the modern anesthesia workstation bears little resemblance to the ether-soaked rags of the mid-1800s, it is at its heart a device for delivering inhaled anesthesia. Early inhaled anesthetics provided no certainty regarding the delivered concentration of anesthetic, relied on spontaneous breathing of room air, possessed little more than the vigilance of the anesthesia provider for safety systems, and exposed the operating room to the anesthetic vapor. The evolution of the anesthesia workstation has provided increasingly sophisticated solutions to each of these problems. Today, anesthesia workstations are designed to do all of the following:

- Deliver volatile anesthetic gas at precise concentrations.
- Individually meter oxygen and two or more other breathing gases, and continuously enrich the inhaled gas with anesthetic vapor.
- Allow the patient to be ventilated manually ("bag" ventilation) with adjustable breathing circuit pressure.
- Ventilate the patient mechanically, with sophisticated ventilator modes comparable to the intensive care unit (ICU).
- Allow rebreathing of the exhaled anesthetic gases after removing carbon dioxide.
- Eliminate ("scavenge") excess gas from the patient's breathing circuit and remove this gas from the room.
- Continuously measure and display the inspired oxygen concentration, as well as ventilatory parameters such as respiratory rate and tidal volume.
- Prevent hypoxic gas mixtures caused by operator error or gas supply failure.
- Provide a breathing circuit manual oxygen flush feature.
- Possess a backup supply of oxygen.
- Display gas pipeline and backup tank supply pressures.
- Provide an integrated platform for displaying anesthetic, hemodynamic, and respiratory parameters, and for collecting this data into an electronic medical record.

The sheer number of tasks and solutions for which the anesthesia workstation is designed explains its complexity. Newcomers to the specialty often find the anesthesia machine to be both mysterious and intimidating, even though they sometimes have had experience with other ventilation equipment, such as ICU ventilators. Understanding the anesthetic workstation is important because the workstation is one of the most essential pieces of equipment used by anesthesia care providers. Nevertheless, it is worth emphasizing that if there is any doubt about the correct functioning of an anesthesia workstation, and there is difficulty with ventilation or oxygenation, then ventilating the patient with an alternative source of oxygen such as an E-cylinder is of top priority. Troubleshooting the anesthesia machine can commence once the patient is safe.

While some of the design and engineering innovations in anesthesia workstations make the anesthesia provider's job easier or more efficient, many of the innovations aim to enhance patients' safety. Closed claims analysis of adverse anesthetic outcomes related to anesthetic gas delivery equipment shows that such claims now account for only approximately 1% of the claims in the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) closed claims database.[1] Further, the severity of the events leading to the claims has tended to decrease compared with closed claims analysis of earlier decades, with more reports of awareness under anesthesia, and fewer reports of death or permanent brain injury.[1,2]

To prevent mishaps, anesthesia providers must be aware of the operational characteristics and functional anatomy of their anesthesia workstations. Many workstations and their components share very similar characteristics, but the variation among them is growing. Similarly, the operational and pre-use checkout procedures are becoming more divergent, thus mandating device-specific familiarity. Unfortunately, a lack of knowledge pertaining to the anesthesia workstation and a lack of understanding and application of a proper pre-use check are common.[3-7] Contemporary machines have automated pre-use checkout procedures, but performance adherence is uneven.[6] More importantly, machines can pass automated checkouts despite the presence of unsafe conditions.[8,9] Safe use requires a solid generic understanding of any anesthesia workstation, as well as machine-specific knowledge of features and checkout procedures.

Providing a detailed description of each gas system, subsystem component, and patient breathing circuit is not practical within the scope of a single chapter. However, because anesthesia workstations must adhere to basic standards, a generic approach to all machines will be presented. Although several subsystems are described in detail in this chapter, anesthesia providers must acquire a functional understanding of their own workstations and ensure that their local pre-use checkout procedures are suitable for their machines. This chapter will review guidelines for anesthesia workstations; functional anatomy including gas supply, vaporizers, breathing circuits, ventilators, and scavenging; and the anesthesia machine pre-use checkout.

Standards and Guidelines for Anesthesia Workstations

Standards for medical devices and anesthesia workstations provide guidelines for manufacturers regarding device minimum performance, design characteristics, and safety requirements. For the anesthesia workstation, many of these requirements are outlined in the standards of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO). The ISO is a developer of international voluntary consensus standards based on global expert opinion, including industry and academia, as well as governments, consumer organizations, and other nongovernmental organizations.[10] The current standards are defined within the *Particular Requirements for Basic Safety and Essential Performance of an Anesthetic Workstation*, ISO 80601-2-13, of 2011.[11] The ISO standards also reference a large number of other components such as: electrical standards, device construction and performance, and even software standards. The relevant standards promulgated by the ASTM International (formerly known as the American Society for Testing and Materials), were withdrawn in 2014 because they had not been updated. Additional key standards for machine subsystems arise from the Compressed Gas Association and the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers.

The ISO standards for the anesthetic workstation—or "anesthesia workstation," or "anesthesia machine," all used interchangeably in this chapter—include standards for numerous aspects of the design and construction of the workstation, including the anesthetic gas delivery system and anesthetic breathing system, as well as for monitoring equipment, alarm systems, and protection devices. The focus of this chapter is on design and functional aspects of the anesthesia workstation relevant to the delivery of inhaled anesthesia.

The ASA publishes several guidelines pertaining to the anesthesia workstation.[11a] The *Recommendations for Pre-Anesthesia Checkout*, which was updated last in 2008, serves as a general guideline for individual departments and practitioners to design checkout procedures specific to their anesthetic delivery systems.[11b] The ASA *Guidelines for Determining Anesthesia Machine Obsolescence* helps assist anesthesia providers and other healthcare personnel, administrators, and regulatory bodies to determine when an anesthesia machine is obsolete by applying both absolute and relative criteria.[11c] Finally, the ASA publishes *Standards for Basic Anesthetic Monitoring*, which outlines minimal monitoring standards pertaining to oxygenation, ventilation, circulation, body temperature, and the requirements for the presence of anesthesia personnel.[11d] Standards and recommendations pertaining to the anesthesia workstation are published by several other international anesthesiology societies.[11e,11f]

Functional Anatomy of the Anesthesia Workstation

GAS SUPPLY SYSTEM

Modern anesthesia machines are often largely electronically controlled, such that the clinician's relationship with

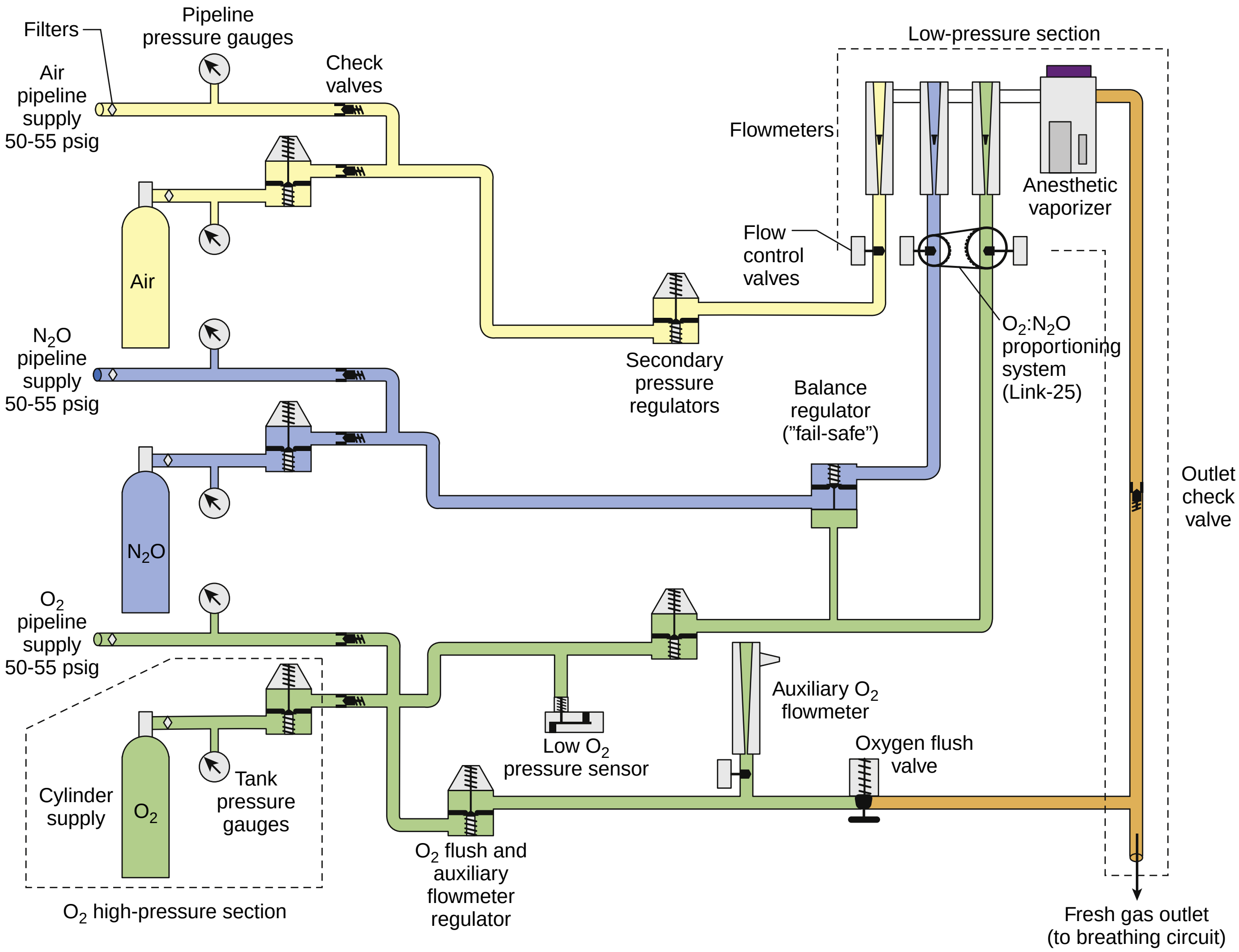

Filters
Pipeline pressure gauges
Air pipeline supply 50-55 psig
Check valves
Air
N$_2$O pipeline supply 50-55 psig
N$_2$O
O$_2$ pipeline supply 50-55 psig
Cylinder supply
O$_2$
Tank pressure gauges
O$_2$ high-pressure section
O$_2$ flush and auxiliary flowmeter regulator
Low O$_2$ pressure sensor
Secondary pressure regulators
Balance regulator ("fail-safe")
Auxiliary O$_2$ flowmeter
Oxygen flush valve
Low-pressure section
Flowmeters
Anesthetic vaporizer
Flow control valves
O$_2$:N$_2$O proportioning system (Link-25)
Outlet check valve
Fresh gas outlet (to breathing circuit)

Fig. 22.1 The GE Healthcare Aespire anesthesia workstation gas supply system. The high-pressure system extends from the gas cylinders to the high-pressure regulators (*dashed lines* around O$_2$ high-pressure section only). The intermediate-pressure section extends from the high-pressure regulators to the flow control valves and also includes the tubing and components originating from the pipeline inlets. The low-pressure section *(dashed lines)* extends from the flow control valves to the breathing circuit. See text for additional details. (From Datex-Ohmeda. *S/5 Aespire Anesthesia Machine: Technical Reference Manual.* Madison, WI: Datex-Ohmeda; 2004.)

the pneumatic system is no longer mediated by a flowmeter, but rather by a touchscreen. However, the interior of the anesthesia machine remains a pneumatic system. It is where breathing gases are delivered from their supply sources, measured, mixed, passed through an anesthetic vaporizer, and delivered to the patient's breathing circuit. The details of this gas supply system may differ between the various manufacturers' anesthesia workstations, but their overall schematic is similar. Fig. 22.1 presents the gas supply system of a more traditional anesthesia machine, without electronic controls. Fig. 22.2 demonstrates a typical contemporary workstation with electronic controls.

The gas supply system consists of the following elements: oxygen, air, and nitrous oxide may enter the anesthesia machine from either the hospital gas pipeline system, or from E-cylinders mounted on the back of the anesthesia machine. The gases flow through pressure regulators to reach flow control valves before reaching flowmeters, anesthetic vaporizers, and the patient's breathing circuit via the fresh gas outlet. There are a number of safety mechanisms in place along this route to avoid delivering a hypoxic gas mixture at the fresh gas outlet. In addition, the system is designed to be able to rapidly fill the patient's breathing circuit with 100% oxygen (oxygen flush valve), and to provide 100% oxygen from a flowmeter; both of these features are active even when the machine is off or without power.

The gas supply system can be divided into three sections: high-pressure, intermediate-pressure, and low-pressure. The only high-pressure elements in the anesthesia machine are the auxiliary gas tanks (E-cylinders) on the back of the anesthesia machine. The pressure in these tanks (approximately 2000 pounds per square inch gauge [psig] for air and oxygen, 745 psig for nitrous oxide) is immediately stepped down to an intermediate pressure. The hospital's gas pipelines are themselves of intermediate pressure (50-55 psig), so the intermediate pressure section starts from the pipelines or from the stepped-down input from the E-cylinders, and extends up to the flowmeter control valves. The low-pressure section begins at the flowmeter control valves, includes the flowmeters and anesthetic vaporizer, and ends at the fresh gas outlet.

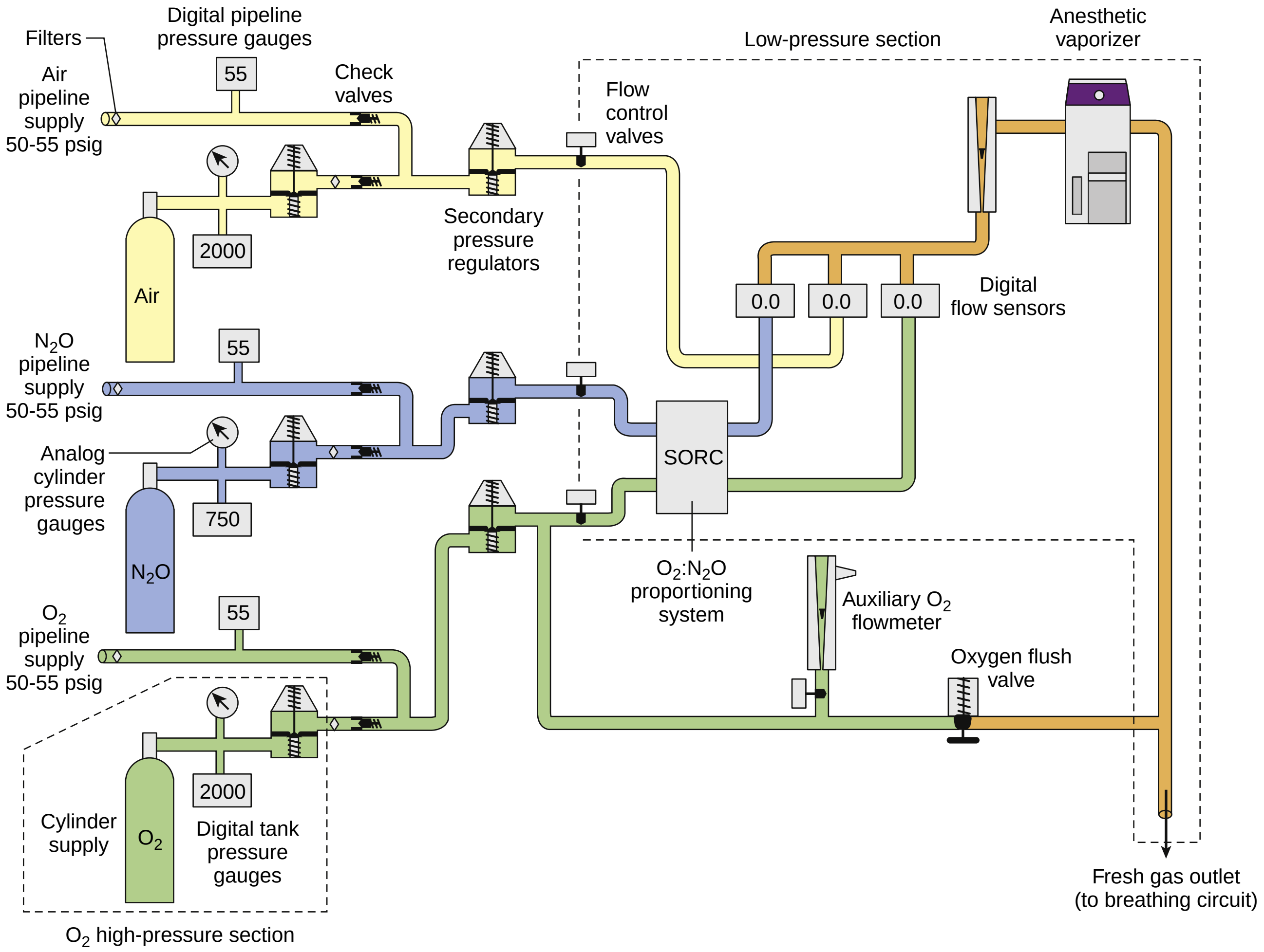

Filters
Digital pipeline pressure gauges
Low-pressure section
Anesthetic vaporizer
Air pipeline supply 50-55 psig
55
Check valves
Flow control valves
2000
Air
Secondary pressure regulators
0.0
0.0
0.0
Digital flow sensors
N_2O pipeline supply 50-55 psig
55
Analog cylinder pressure gauges
SORC
750
N_2O
O_2:N_2O proportioning system
Auxiliary O_2 flowmeter
O_2 pipeline supply 50-55 psig
55
Oxygen flush valve
2000
Cylinder supply
O_2
Digital tank pressure gauges
Fresh gas outlet (to breathing circuit)
O_2 high-pressure section

Fig. 22.2 Dräger Apollo anesthesia workstation gas supply system. The high-pressure system extends from the gas cylinders to the high-pressure regulators (*dashed lines* around O_2 high-pressure section only). The intermediate-pressure section extends from the high-pressure regulators to the flow control valves and also includes the tubing and components originating from the pipeline inlets. The low-pressure section *(dashed lines)* extends from the flow control valves to the breathing circuit. See text for additional details. (From Dräger Medical. *Instructions for Use: Apollo.* Telford, PA: Dräger Medical; 2012.)

High-Pressure Section

Auxiliary E-Cylinder Inlet. During normal operation, the high-pressure section of the anesthesia machine is not active, because the hospital's central gas supply system serves as the primary gas source for the machine. However, it is a requirement to have at least one attachment for an oxygen cylinder to serve as a backup oxygen source in case of failure of the hospital supply. Many machines have up to three and sometimes four E-cylinder attachment points to accommodate oxygen, air, and nitrous oxide. Some machines have attachments for two oxygen tanks, and some rare systems can accommodate carbon dioxide (CO_2) or helium tanks used for special applications. The cylinders are mounted to the anesthesia machine by the hanger yoke assembly, as seen in Fig. 22.3. The hanger yoke assembly orients and safely supports the cylinder, provides a gas-tight seal, and ensures unidirectional flow of gases into the machine.[12,13] Each yoke assembly must have a label designating which gas it is intended to accept. Each hanger yoke is also equipped with the Pin Index Safety System (PISS), which is a safeguard to reduce the risk of a medical gas error caused by interchanging cylinders. Two metal pins on the yoke assembly are arranged to project precisely into corresponding holes on the cylinder head–valve assembly of the tank. Each gas or combination of gases has a specific pin arrangement.[14] Although infrequent, failures of the PISS have been reported, and like all safety systems, the PISS should be considered partial protection. Conditions in which failure occurred have included the following: excessive seating (jamming) of the pins back into the hanger yoke; the presence of bent or broken pins; and an excessive use of washers between the cylinder and the yoke that can override pin alignment, yet allow for a gas-tight seal.[15-17] Medical gas cylinder errors can have tragic outcomes, so it is critical to ensure that the proper gas is being connected to the proper inlet by also checking the tank and yoke labels.[18]

Once a gas cylinder valve is opened by the operator, gas flows first through a filter to entrap any particulate matter from the tank inflow. The maximum pressure in full E-cylinders (approximately 750 psig for nitrous oxide, 2200 psig for air, and 2200 psig for oxygen) is much higher than the normal hospital pipeline supply pressure of 50 to 55 psig. A *high-pressure regulator* reduces the variable high pressure in the E-cylinder to a constant pressure slightly lower than

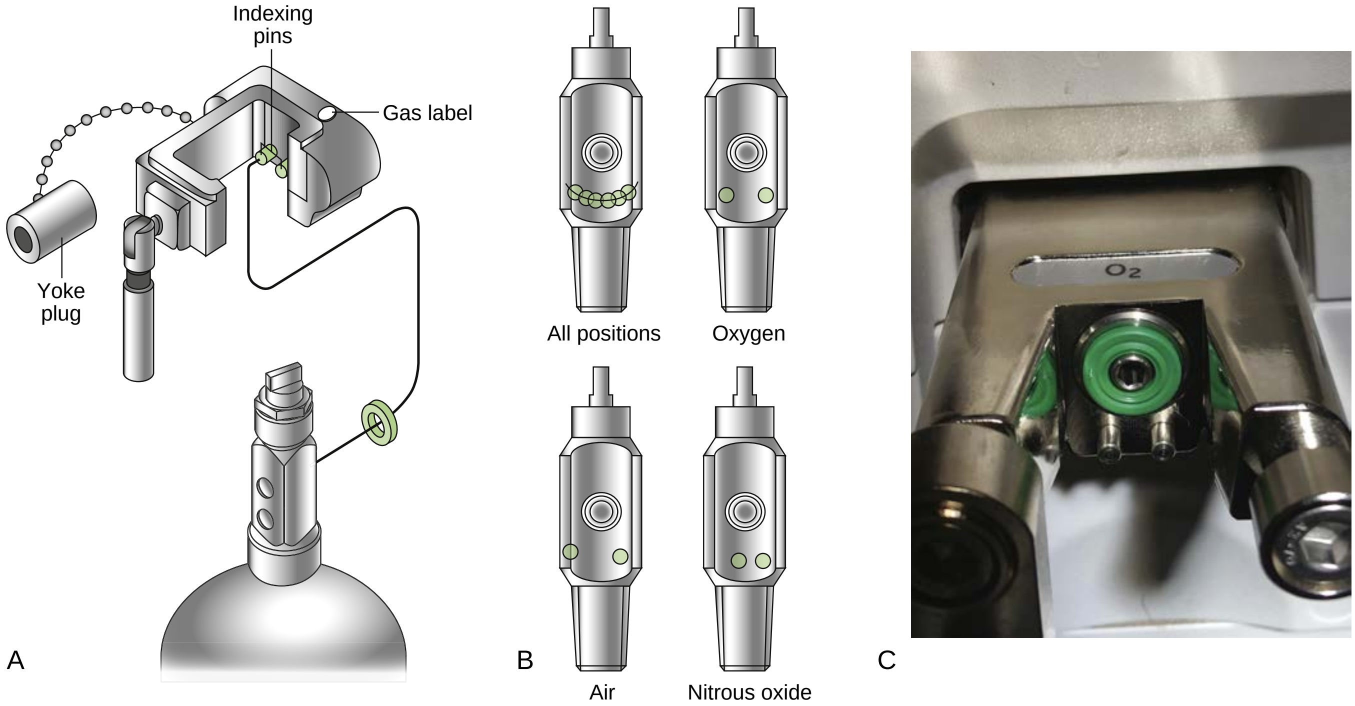


Fig. 22.3 E-cylinder hanger yoke assembly. (A) Standard E-cylinder hanger yoke assembly highlighting the gas-specific indexing pins, sealing gasket, and yoke plug. The yoke plug should be inserted when a tank is not in place. (B) Pin Index Safety System holes machined into the cylinder head–valve mechanism of the compressed gas cylinders. (C) Oxygen yoke with indexing pins. (A and B, From Yoder M. Gas supply systems. In: *Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems.* Telford, PA: Dräger Medical; 2009.)

the normal pipeline supply pressure, approximately 40 to 45 psig (depending on the specific anesthesia machine)[13] (see the O_2 high-pressure section in Fig. 22.1). The lower pressure is a safety feature: if both the E-cylinder and the oxygen pipeline are connected and the E-cylinder is open, the anesthesia machine will draw its gas from the pipeline rather than the E-cylinder, thereby preserving the contents of the E-cylinder in case of pipeline failure. Fluctuations in the pipeline pressure below 40 to 45 psig could allow the E-cylinder to be drained, as could silent leaks in the high-pressure system, so E-cylinders should be closed during normal operation. One implication of this design warrants emphasis: in case of known or suspected pipeline contamination or crossover leading to delivery of a hypoxic gas mixture (as might be caused by nitrous oxide in the oxygen pipeline), backup oxygen from the E-cylinder will not flow unless the anesthesia machine is disconnected from the pipeline. Merely turning the backup tank on will not help, if the pipeline pressure remains higher than the high-pressure regulator's output.[13,18a]

After the high-pressure regulator, cylinder gas flows through a one-way valve called the cylinder check valve, which prevents any backflow of machine gas out through an empty yoke or back into a nearly empty cylinder (see Fig. 22.1). If the anesthesia machine allows two oxygen E-cylinders to be mounted on a common manifold, then each mount must have a check valve. On some machines, a single high pressure regulator is downstream from the two check valves; on others, each mount on the manifold has its own high pressure regulator and check valve. In either configuration, transfer of gas from a full tank to an empty tank is prevented, and the system allows for a cylinder to be exchanged while the other cylinder on the manifold continues to supply gas to the anesthesia machine.

As noted on Fig. 22.1, there are a number of pressure gauges in the system. The pressure in each of the gas pipelines and each of the auxiliary E-cylinder manifolds must be displayed on the front of the anesthesia machine. The E-cylinder pressures are accurate only when the tank is open; in the case of a two-tank manifold, the pressure of the open tank with higher pressure will be displayed. In systems with electronic pressure displays, the pipeline and tank pressures are visible only when the machine is on.

Two points about the safe use of the auxiliary E-cylinder system should be noted. First, checking the E-cylinders is *not* part of an automatic machine checkout. The practitioner must manually open each cylinder and check the pressure gauges on the front of the machine. In the case of a two-tank oxygen manifold, the tanks must be serially opened and checked. The oxygen flush valve may be used to vent the pressure from the system after closing the first tank, so the pressure in the second tank can be accurately assessed. Second, it is imperative to keep the auxiliary E-cylinders closed during normal operation using pipeline gases because of the possibility of small leaks in the high-pressure system, or fluctuations in pipeline pressures allowing flow from the cylinder to be activated. An open oxygen cylinder may allow the anesthesiologist to be unaware of catastrophic pipeline failure. When the oxygen cylinder is closed, the immediate result of oxygen pipeline failure is a low oxygen pressure alarm. The auxiliary E-cylinder can then be opened, ensuring continued flow of oxygen to the patient while troubleshooting occurs. If the oxygen tank is *already open* when pipeline failure occurs, there may be only a subtle indication from the anesthesia machine that the oxygen source has

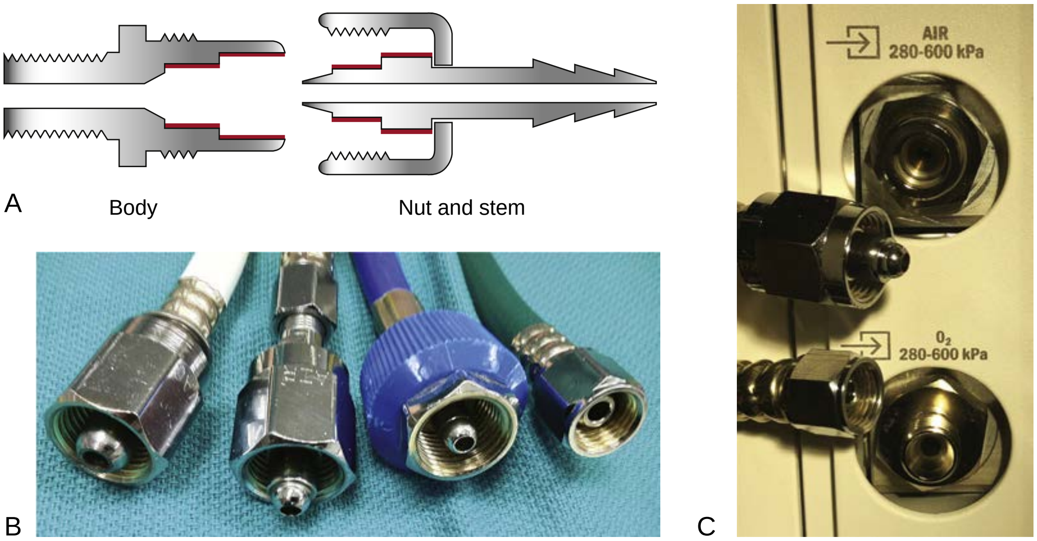


Fig. 22.4 Diameter Index Safety System. Diameter Index Safety System (DISS) connectors are used for noninterchangeable, removable medical gas connections at pressures less than 200 psig. They are also used for suction and waste gas connections. Indexing is accomplished through differing diameters of the connection components, resulting in key-like fitting when matched connectors come together. The oxygen connector is additionally distinguished from the other gas connectors by a unique threaded fitting diameter and a unique thread count. (A) DISS connector cross section. (B) Nut and stem connectors for (*left* to *right*) vacuum, air, nitrous oxide, and oxygen. (C) DISS connections at the back of an anesthesia workstation. (A, Modified from Yoder M. Gas supply systems. In: *Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems*. Telford, PA: Dräger Medical; 2009.)

switched from pipeline to auxiliary tank. In this case, the low oxygen pressure alarm only occurs once the auxiliary tank has been depleted, nullifying the utility of the backup system.[12,19]

Intermediate-Pressure Section

Gas Pipeline Inlet: Central Gas Supply Source. Three gases are typically piped into the operating room by the hospital's central gas supply system: oxygen, air, and nitrous oxide. The main supply source of oxygen in a large hospital usually is a large cryogenic bulk oxygen storage system. These are refilled on site from a truck carrying liquid oxygen. Smaller hospitals may use liquid oxygen tanks that can be replaced rather than refilled on site, or even a bank of oxygen H-cylinders connected by a manifold. Oxygen storage systems must have backup supply and alarm systems in place.[14] Most hospitals use compressors to deliver cleaned, dried air to a pressurized reservoir for delivery to the pipeline system. Centrally supplied nitrous oxide arises either from a bank of H-type cylinders, or a bulk liquid storage system similar to that for oxygen.[14]

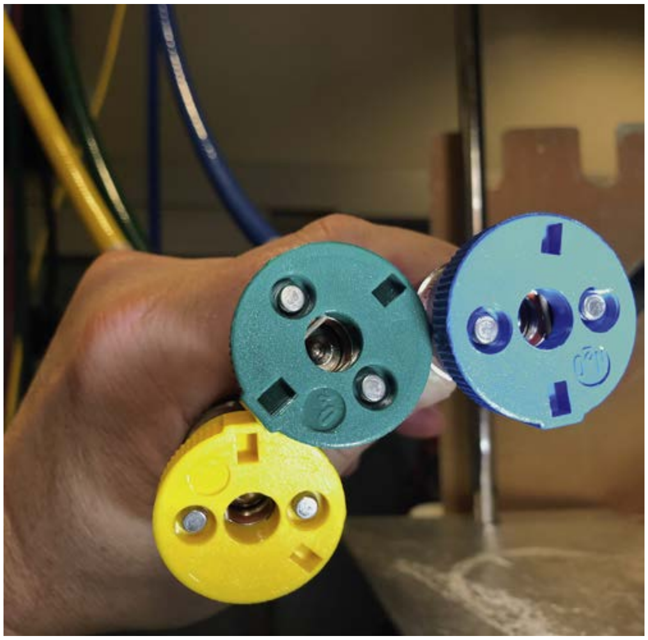


Fig. 22.5 Quick couplers. Quick couplers, like Diameter Index Safety System connectors, are used for noninterchangeable, removable medical gas, suction, and waste gas connections. Indexing is accomplished by the configuration of pins on one plate which match to recesses on the other plate (shown). The two plates lock together, allowing an airtight connection. A twist to the housing of the male plate allows the two plates to be disengaged.

The gas pipeline terminates in patient care areas of the hospital with one of two types of connector: the Diameter Index Safety System (DISS) connector system, or the quick coupler system. Within each type, the connectors for oxygen, air, and nitrous oxide are mutually incompatible, which helps to minimize the potential for connecting to the wrong gas. DISS connectors (as seen in Fig. 22.4) rely on matching diameters in the male and female connections to properly seat and thread the connection.[14,20] The quick couplers (Fig. 22.5) utilize pins and corresponding slots on the male and female ends, respectively, in order to ensure correct connections. Because these connectors can be plugged together or released with a simple twisting motion, they are especially appealing for equipment that needs to be moved between locations. In addition, in both systems the wall plates and hoses are color-coded for ease of identification.

The final medical gas pipeline connection to the anesthesia workstation is always through a DISS connector (Fig. 22.4C). Once the gas enters the machine, it encounters a filter followed by a pipeline check valve. This one-way valve prevents reverse flow of gas from the machine into the medical gas pipeline system or into the atmosphere from an open inlet. Interposed between the DISS inlet and the pipeline check valves is a sample port to measure pipeline oxygen pressure. The pipeline pressure must always be clearly visible on the front of the machine.

Oxygen Flush Valve. The oxygen flush valve is probably one of the oldest safety features on the machine and remains a machine standard today.[11,20,21] The oxygen flush valve allows manual delivery of a high flow rate of 100% oxygen directly to the patient's breathing circuit in order to overcome circuit leaks or to rapidly increase the inhaled oxygen concentration. Flow from the oxygen flush valve bypasses the anesthetic vaporizers (see Fig. 22.1). The intermediate-pressure segment of the gas supply system feeds the valve, which remains closed until the operator opens it. The feature is usually available even when the machine is not turned on because the valve is located upstream from the machine's pneumatic power switch. Flow from the oxygen flush valve enters the low-pressure circuit downstream from the vaporizers at a rate between 35 and 75 L/min, depending on the machine and operating pressure.[11,20,21]

Several hazards have been reported with the oxygen flush valve. A defective or damaged valve can stick in the fully open position and result in barotrauma.[22] Oxygen flow from a valve sticking in a partially open position or overzealous oxygen flushing can dilute the inhaled anesthetic agent concentration, potentially resulting in awareness under anesthesia.[23,24,24a] Oxygen flushing during the inspiratory phase of positive-pressure ventilation can produce barotrauma if the anesthesia machine does not incorporate a fresh gas decoupling feature or an appropriately adjusted inspiratory pressure controller. Fresh gas decoupling prevents the fresh gas inflow from either the flowmeters or the oxygen flush valve from increasing the delivered ventilator tidal volume presented to the patient's lungs (see section on fresh gas flow compensation and fresh gas decoupling). With most older anesthesia breathing circuits, excess volume could not be vented during the inspiratory phase of mechanical ventilation because the ventilator relief valve was closed and the breathing circuit adjustable pressure-limiting (APL) valve was either out of circuit or closed.[25]

Although the oxygen flush valve can potentially provide a high-pressure, high-flow oxygen source at the machine's fresh gas outlet suitable for jet ventilation, it has potential limitations. In some machines, the fresh gas outlet is no longer easy to access, and not all machines are capable of generating pressures at the outlet that are sufficient to deliver jet ventilation.[26,27] An alternate source of high-flow oxygen should be sought if jet ventilation is needed and cannot be supported by the machine's oxygen flush function.

Pneumatic Safety Systems. One of the primary safety goals of contemporary anesthesia machines is to guard against the potential of delivering an excessive concentration of nitrous oxide relative to oxygen (hypoxic mixture). ISO standards require delivery of a nonhypoxic gas mixture to the patient, or generation of an alarm condition.[11] Several safety devices discussed below have been introduced to prevent generating a hypoxic mixture.

OXYGEN SUPPLY FAILURE ALARM SENSOR. Within the oxygen circuit of the intermediate-pressure section of the machine is a sensor that provides an audible and visual warning to the clinician if the oxygen pressure drops below a manufacturer-specified minimum. The alarm is an ISO requirement[11]; under ASTM guidelines, it cannot be silenced until the pressure is restored to the minimum value.[20] The alarm is triggered by a loss of or significant decrease in pipeline pressure, or a nearly empty oxygen tank if the tank was the oxygen source. During normal operation this alarm signal serves as a prompt for the operator to open the oxygen E-cylinder on the machine and troubleshoot the oxygen pipeline source. The minimum threshold pressure for an alarm condition differs among manufacturers and models, because pipeline pressure standards vary significantly throughout the world. The conditions that trigger the alarm should be delineated in the manufacturer's instructions.[11] Numerous types of pneumatic-electrical switches serve as this sensor. Older machines had a purely pneumatic device that gave an audible signal when oxygen pressure dropped (the "Ritchie whistle").[27a] Current machines integrate the output from electronic pressure transducers to create an alarm if pressures drop below predetermined minimums.[21]

OXYGEN SUPPLY FAILURE PROTECTION DEVICES. In addition to generating an alarm condition, oxygen failure influences the flow of other gases within the gas supply system. Sometimes called "fail-safe valves," the oxygen supply failure protection devices are safeguards intended to link the flow of other gases in the gas supply system to the pressure of oxygen. They are an ISO standard.[11] In response to low oxygen pressure within the intermediate-pressure section of the anesthesia machine, the oxygen supply failure protection device either shuts off (binary valve), or reduces (proportional valve) the flow of other gases such as nitrous oxide or air. Unfortunately, the term *fail-safe* as it pertains to these valves is a misnomer and has led to the misconception that they can independently prevent the administration of a hypoxic mixture. If a gas other than oxygen pressurizes the oxygen circuit as a result of hospital pipeline contamination or crossover, the fail-safe valves will remain open. In such a case, only the inspired oxygen concentration monitor and clinical acumen would protect the patient.

Auxiliary Oxygen Flowmeter. Although auxiliary oxygen flowmeters are not mandatory, they are commonly encountered. During normal operation, the auxiliary flowmeter is a convenience feature that allows the use of low-flow oxygen for devices independent of the patient's breathing circuit. Similar to the oxygen flush feature, oxygen flow from the flowmeter is usually accessible even when the machine is not turned on, because the flowmeter is typically fed before the pneumatic power switch in the intermediate-pressure section. As long as oxygen is available from the pipeline inlet or from an attached E-cylinder, the auxiliary oxygen flowmeter can serve as a source of oxygen delivery for use with a manually powered resuscitation bag in the case of a system power failure. The auxiliary oxygen flowmeter may also potentially serve as gas source for a manual jet ventilator; however, not all machines can generate sufficient working pressure.[26,28] Some auxiliary oxygen flowmeters have a DISS connector that would be a better source for manual jet ventilation.[13]

The operator should be aware that the source of oxygen for the auxiliary flowmeter is the same as for the other oxygen flow control valves. This is an important consideration in cases of suspected hospital oxygen pipeline contamination or crossover. If the pipeline oxygen supply line is connected to the machine and the pressure is sufficient, the gas source will be the pipeline even if the auxiliary oxygen tank valve is opened. In a simulation experiment, a nitrous oxide–oxygen pipeline crossover situation was created whereby the inspired oxygen concentration became alarmingly low, and the "patient" became hypoxemic after turning the nitrous oxide flow off. Researchers noted that many study participants tried to make inappropriate use of the auxiliary oxygen flowmeter and oxygen E-cylinders on the machine as an external source of oxygen without disconnecting the pipeline source.[29] The participant's suboptimal management was attributed to a lack of knowledge of the anesthesia machine and its gas supply.

Second-Stage Pressure Regulators. Some machines have second-stage regulators located downstream from the gas supply sources in the intermediate-pressure circuit. These regulators supply constant pressure to the flow control valves and the proportioning system regardless of potential fluctuations in hospital pipeline pressures. They are adjusted to lower pressure levels than the pipeline supply, usually between 14 and 35 psig, depending on the workstation.[30,31,31a]

Low-Pressure Section

The purpose of the high- and intermediate-pressure sections of the anesthesia machine is to deliver a reliable source of breathing gases at a stable and known working pressure to the low-pressure section of the gas supply system. The low-pressure section of the gas supply system begins at the flow control valves and ends at the fresh gas outlet (see Figs. 22.1 and 22.2). The breathing circuit, including the circle system, breathing bag, and ventilator, will be treated separately. Key components include the flow control valves, the flowmeters or flow sensors, the vaporizer manifold, and the anesthetic vaporizers. The low-pressure section is the most vulnerable section to leaks within the gas supply system.

Flow Control Assemblies. The flow control valves on the anesthesia workstation allow the operator to select a *total fresh gas flow* of known composition that enters the low-pressure section of the anesthesia workstation. These valves separate the intermediate-pressure section from the low-pressure section. After leaving the flowmeters, the mixture of gases travels through a common manifold and may be directed through an anesthetic vaporizer if selected. The total fresh gas flow and the anesthetic vapor then travel toward the fresh gas outlet (see Figs. 22.1 and 22.2).[12,19]

ELECTRONIC FLOW SENSORS. Newer anesthesia workstations are increasingly equipped with electronic flow sensors instead of flow tubes. These systems may employ conventional control knobs or an entirely electronic interface to control gas flow. Flows can be displayed numerically or sometimes graphically in the form of a virtual, digitalized flowmeter. Numerous types of flow sensor technologies can be applied, such as hot-wire anemometers, a differential pressure transducer method, or mass flow sensors. An example of an electronic mass flow sensor is seen in Fig. 22.6. The illustrated device relies on the principle of specific heat to measure gas flow.[30] As gas flows through a heated chamber of known volume, a specific amount of electricity is required to maintain the chamber temperature. The amount of energy required to maintain the temperature is proportional to the flow and specific heat of the gas. Regardless of the mechanism of flow measurement, these systems depend on electrical power to provide a display of gas flow. When electrical power is totally interrupted, some backup mechanical means usually exists to control (mechanical flow control) and display (flow tube) oxygen gas flow.

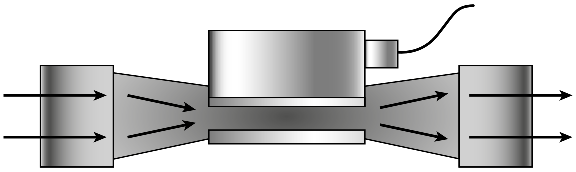


Fig. 22.6 Electronic mass flow sensor. Gas flows past a heated chamber of known volume. The amount of heat (electrical energy) that is required to maintain a set chamber temperature is proportional to the specific heat of the gas and its rate of flow through the chamber. Because the specific heat of the gas is relevant to the calculation, each gas must have its own mass flow sensor. Flow is accurately extrapolated from the energy required to keep the chamber at a constant temperature. (Modified from Yoder M. Gas supply systems. In: *Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems*. Telford, PA: Dräger Medical; 2009.)

MECHANICAL FLOWMETER ASSEMBLIES. Mechanical flow control and flow display still remain common, even on some newer workstations, either as primary or backup systems.[31a,31b]

FLOW CONTROL VALVES. The flow control valve assembly consists of a flow control knob, a tapered needle valve, a valve seat, and a pair of valve stops (Fig. 22.7).[12] The inlet pressure to the assembly is determined by the pressure characteristics of the machine's intermediate-pressure segment. The location of the needle valve in the valve seat changes to establish different orifices when the flow control valve is adjusted. Gas flow increases when the flow control valve is turned counterclockwise, and it decreases when the valve is turned clockwise. Because their use is frequent and the consequences of damage are significant, the controls must be constructed so extremes of rotation will not cause disassembly or disengagement.

Contemporary flow control valve assemblies have numerous safety features. The oxygen flow control knob is physically distinguishable from the other gas knobs. It is distinctively fluted, may project beyond the control knobs of the other gases, and is larger in diameter than the flow control knobs of other gases.[11] All knobs are color coded for the appropriate gas, and the chemical formula or name of the gas must be permanently marked on each knob. Flow control knobs are recessed or protected with a shield or barrier to minimize inadvertent change from a preset position. If a single gas has two flow tubes, the tubes are arranged in series and are controlled by a single flow control valve.[20]

FLOW TUBES. With a traditional flowmeter assembly, the flow control valve regulates the amount of flow that enters a tapered, transparent flow tube known as a *variable orifice flowmeter* or *Thorpe tube*. These glass tubes are narrowest at the bottom and widen at the top. A mobile indicator float inside the calibrated flow tube indicates the amount of flow passing through the associated flow control valve. The quantity of flow is indicated on a scale specific to the

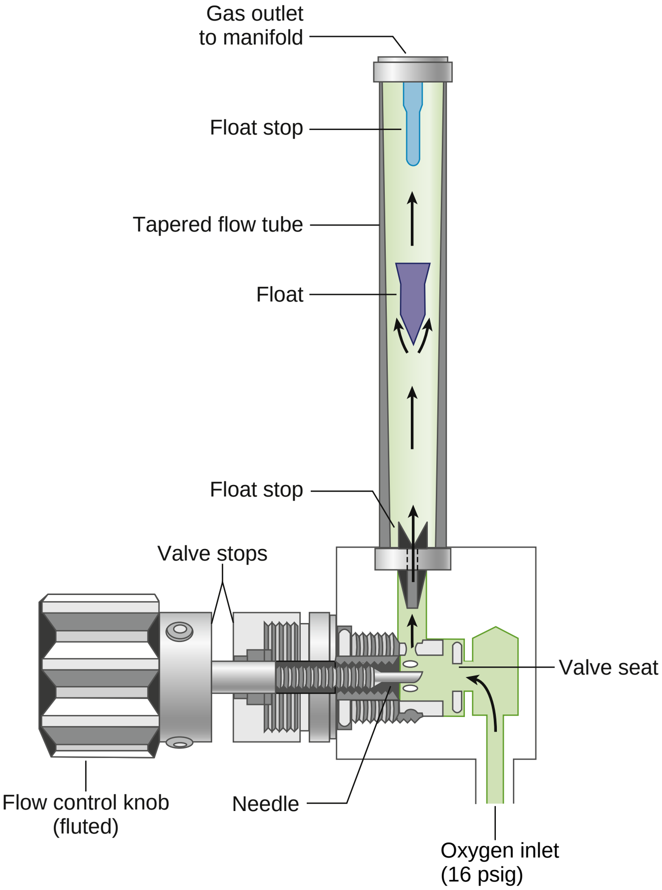


Fig. 22.7 Oxygen flowmeter assembly. The oxygen flowmeter assembly is composed of the flow control valve assembly and the flowmeter subassembly. (From Bowie E, Huffman LM. *The Anesthesia Machine: Essentials for Understanding.* Madison, WI: Ohmeda, BOC Group; 1985.)

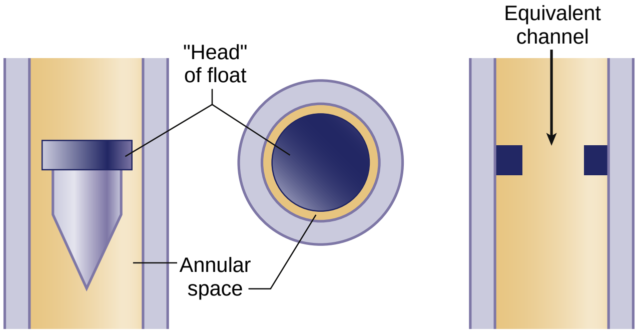


Fig. 22.8 The annular space. The clearance between the head of the float and the flow tube is known as the annular space. It can be considered equivalent to a circular channel of the same cross-sectional area. (Redrawn from Macintosh R, Mushin WW, Epstein HG, eds. *Physics for the Anaesthetist.* 3rd ed. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific; 1963.)

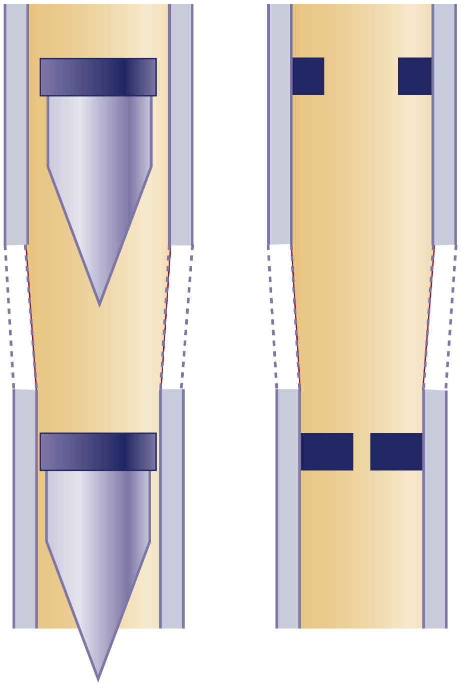


Fig. 22.9 Flow tube constriction. The *lower pair* of illustrations represents the lower portion of a flow tube. The clearance between the head of the float and the flow tube is narrow. The equivalent channel is tubular because its diameter is less than its length. Viscosity is dominant in determining the gas flow rate through this tubular constriction. The *upper pair* of illustrations represents the upper portion of a flow tube. The equivalent channel is orificial because its length is less than its diameter. Density is dominant in determining the gas flow rate through this orificial constriction. (Redrawn from Macintosh R, Mushin WW, Epstein HG, eds. *Physics for the Anaesthetist.* 3rd ed. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific; 1963.)

flow tube.[12,19] Opening the flow control valve allows gas to travel through the space between the float and the flow tube. This space is known as the *annular space*, and it varies in size depending on the position in the tube (Fig. 22.8). The indicator float hovers freely in an equilibrium position in the tube where the upward force resulting from gas flow equals the downward gravity force on the float at a given flow rate. The float moves to a new equilibrium position in the tube when flow is changed. These flowmeters are commonly referred to as *constant-pressure* flowmeters because the decrease in pressure across the float remains constant for all positions in the tube.[12,32,33]

Flow through the annular space can be laminar or turbulent, depending on the gas flow rate (Fig. 22.9). The characteristics of a gas that influence its flow rate through a given constriction are viscosity (laminar flow) and density (turbulent flow). Because the annular space behaves as a tube at low flow rates, laminar flow is present, and *viscosity* determines the gas flow rate. At high flow rates, the annular space behaves like an orifice. Turbulent gas flow is present and gas *density* predominantly influences the flow. Because the viscosity and density of the gas affect flow through annular space around the float, the calibrated flow tubes are gas specific. The tube, the float, and the scale are inseparable. Although temperature and barometric pressure can influence gas density and viscosity, under normal clinical circumstances, flow tube accuracy is not significantly affected by mild changes in temperature or pressure.

The float or bobbin within the flow tube is usually constructed so that it rotates to indicate that gas is flowing and that the indicator is not stuck in the tube. A stop at the top of the flowmeter tube prevents the float from occluding the outlet. Two flowmeter tubes are sometimes placed in series, with a fine flow tube displaying low flows and a coarse flow tube indicating higher flows.

Problems With Flowmeters. Flow measurement error can occur even when flowmeters are assembled properly. Dirt or static electricity can cause a float to stick and misrepresent actual flow. Sticking of the indicator float is more common in the low-flow ranges because the annular space is smaller. A damaged float can cause inaccurate readings because the precise relationship between the float and the flow tube is altered. Backpressure from the breathing circuit can cause a float to drop so that it reads less than the actual flow. Finally, if flowmeters are not aligned properly in the vertical position (plumb), readings can be inaccurate because tilting distorts the annular space.[12,34,35]

The flow tube has historically been a very fragile component of the anesthesia workstation. Subtle cracks and chips may be overlooked and can cause errors in delivered flow.[34] Leaks can also occur at the O-ring junctions between the glass flow tubes and the metal manifold. Flow tube leaks are a potential hazard because the flowmeters are located downstream from all hypoxemia safety devices, except the breathing circuit oxygen analyzer.[33,36,37] Fig. 22.10 shows an example where an unused air flow tube develops a large leak. When the nitrous oxide flowmeter is in the downstream position (Fig. 22.10*A* and *B*), a hypoxic mixture can occur because a substantial portion of the oxygen flow passes through the leak in the air flow tube, and mainly nitrous oxide is directed to the common gas outlet. Safer configurations are shown in Fig. 22.10*C* and *D*, in which the oxygen flowmeter is located in the downstream position. A portion of the nitrous oxide flow escapes through the leak, and the remainder goes toward the common gas outlet. A hypoxic mixture is less likely because all the oxygen flow is advanced by the nitrous oxide (this principle is known as the Eger flow sequence). It has been an industry standard that oxygen be delivered downstream of all other gases,[20] although current ISO standards require only that oxygen be at either end of a bank of flowmeters.[11] It is important to remember that in the case of a leak in the oxygen flow tube, a hypoxic mixture may result even when oxygen is located in the downstream position.[34]

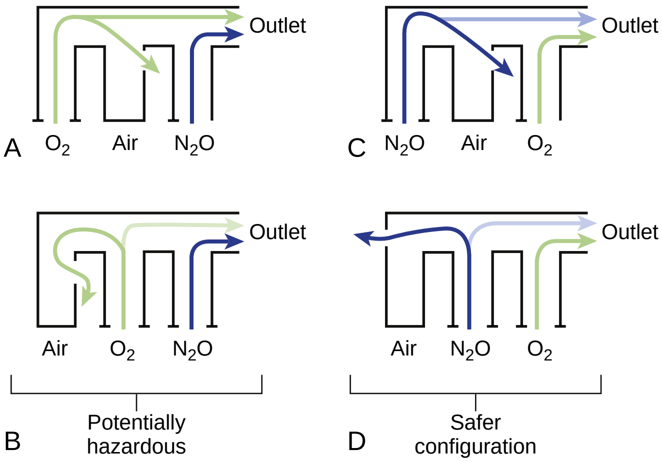


Fig. 22.10 The flowmeter sequence is a potential cause of hypoxia. In the event of a flowmeter leak, a potentially dangerous arrangement exists when nitrous oxide is located in the downstream position (A and B). A safer configuration exists when oxygen is located in the downstream position (C and D). See text for details. (Modified from Eger EI II, Hylton RR, Irwin RH, et al. Anesthetic flowmeter sequence: a cause for hypoxia. *Anesthesiology.* 1963;24:396.)

PROPORTIONING SYSTEMS. Anesthesia workstations are equipped with an oxygen failure protection device in the intermediate-pressure section that, in response to reduced oxygen pressure, either proportionally reduces or completely inhibits nitrous oxide. However, this system does not prevent the user from selecting a hypoxic gas mixture for delivery to the fresh gas outlet. On anesthesia workstations with electronically controlled gas flow, the machine is programmed to prevent the user from selecting a hypoxic gas mixture for delivery to the fresh gas outlet. For mechanically controlled flowmeters, the concern is that a user could mistakenly select oxygen and nitrous oxide flows that would result in a hypoxic mixture. According to the ISO, an alarm condition is insufficient and the machine must have a system to prevent delivery of a hypoxic mixture.[11] This is accomplished by a pneumatic-mechanical interface between the oxygen and nitrous oxide flows or by mechanically linking the oxygen and nitrous oxide flow control valves. This way, no matter how high the operator attempts to turn up the nitrous oxide, or how low the operator tries to turn down the oxygen flow, when nitrous oxide is running, the machine will automatically adjust the ratio of these flows so that a hypoxemic gas mixture cannot be delivered. The specific devices used to accomplish this control vary among manufacturers. Two examples are briefly discussed here.

The North American Dräger sensitive oxygen ratio controller system (SORC) is a pneumatic-mechanical, oxygen–nitrous oxide interlock system designed to maintain a ratio of no less than 25% oxygen to 75% nitrous oxide flow into the breathing circuit by limiting the nitrous oxide flow when necessary.[21] The SORC, located after the flow control valves, consists of an oxygen chamber with a diaphragm, a nitrous oxide chamber with a diaphragm, and a nitrous oxide proportioning valve (Fig. 22.11). All are interconnected by a mobile horizontal shaft. As oxygen flows out of the SORC, it encounters a resistor that creates backpressure in the oxygen chamber, which causes the diaphragm to move to the right, thereby opening the nitrous oxide proportioning valve. As the oxygen flow is increased, so too is the backpressure and the rightward motion of the shaft. If the nitrous oxide flow is now turned on, it will also flow into the SORC, through the proportioning valve, and past its resistor to create backpressure that will press on the diaphragm in its respective chamber. The counterbalance between the two gas flows (backpressures) determines the positioning of the nitrous oxide proportioning valve.[21] If the oxygen is turned down too low (<1/3 of the nitrous oxide flow), the shaft will move to the left and thus limit the nitrous oxide flow. If the operator tries to turn up the nitrous oxide too high relative to the oxygen flow, the SORC will limit the nitrous oxide flow because of the nitrous oxide backpressure and leftward movement of the valve. If the oxygen flow is decreased to less than 200 mL/min, the proportioning valve will close completely.[38]

A mechanical proportioning system that remains in use today on many anesthesia machines is the GE/Datex-Ohmeda Link-25 system. The system provides mechanical integration of the nitrous oxide and oxygen flow control valves to maintain a minimum oxygen concentration with a maximum nitrous oxide:oxygen flow ratio of 3:1. Independent adjustment of either valve is allowed as long as the minimum threshold is met. The Link-25 automatically increases oxygen flow when the nitrous oxide flow is increased above the 3:1 ratio. It also will lower nitrous oxide flow if oxygen flow is decreased below that ratio. Fig. 22.12 shows the Link-25 system. A 15-tooth sprocket is attached to the nitrous oxide flow control valve, a 29-tooth sprocket is attached to the oxygen flow control valve and a chain physically links the sprockets. When the nitrous oxide flow control valve is turned through two revolutions, the oxygen flow control valve will revolve once because of the 2:1 gear ratio. The final 3:1 flow ratio results because the flow control valve needle for nitrous oxide has a faster taper than does the oxygen valve needle. The Link-25 system uses a stop tab on each valve stem to allow for independent adjustment of oxygen or nitrous oxide as long as the mixture is at least 25% oxygen; attempting to turn the valve controller past that point will engage the chain and effect a change in the other gas. In addition, the system is designed so that nitrous oxide cannot flow unless the oxygen flow is at least 200 mL/min.[38a]

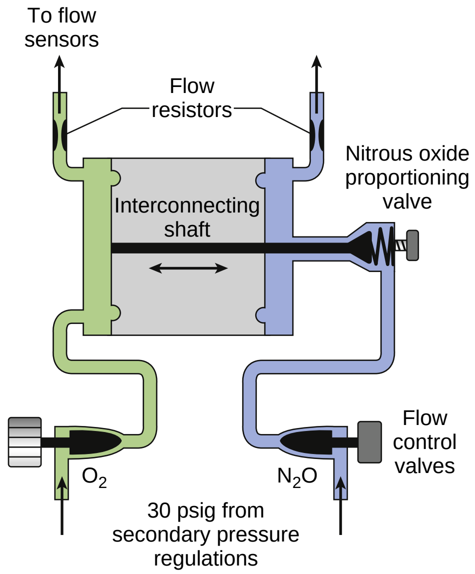


Fig. 22.11 North American Dräger sensitive oxygen ratio controller system (SORC) (Dräger Medical, Telford, PA). The SORC is a pneumatic-mechanical interlock system designed to maintain a ratio of no less than 25% oxygen/75% nitrous oxide regardless of operator input. Differential oxygen and nitrous oxide flows and the resultant chamber backpressures determine the position of the nitrous oxide proportioning valve. The SORC requires a minimum oxygen flow of 200 mL/min for the nitrous oxide proportioning valve to open. See text for details. (Modified from Yoder M. Gas supply systems. In: *Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems*. Telford, PA: Dräger Medical; 2009.)

Although both proportioning systems are designed to prevent delivery of a hypoxic gas mixture to the common gas outlet, their effect on the output may be different. If the operator turns down oxygen flow below 25% oxygen, both the Link-25 and SORC systems will respond by decreasing the flow of nitrous oxide. If the operator subsequently increases the set oxygen flow, the nitrous oxide flow will remain at the new, lower value with the Link-25 system, because the mechanical linkage will have physically changed the nitrous oxide control valve setting. With the SORC system, on the other hand, the nitrous oxide flow will return to the higher, previously set value when adequate oxygen flow is restored. If the operator increases nitrous oxide flow beyond the set safe range, the Link-25 system will increase the oxygen flow by changing the setting on the oxygen control valve. The SORC system will instead prevent the increase in nitrous oxide flow from occurring. If the operator subsequently reduces the nitrous oxide flow setting, the oxygen flow will remain at the new, higher level with the Link-25, and will remain unchanged with the SORC.

PROPORTIONING SYSTEM MALFUNCTION. Proportioning systems are not immune from failure, and workstations equipped with proportioning systems can still deliver a hypoxic mixture under certain conditions. Many case reports have described proportioning system malfunction.[39-43] Other situations that may defeat the purpose of the proportioning system require operator vigilance. Both mechanical and pneumatic proportioning systems can be defeated if a gas other than oxygen is present in the oxygen pipeline. Proportioning systems such as the Link-25 function at the level of the flow control valves. A leak downstream from these devices, such as a broken

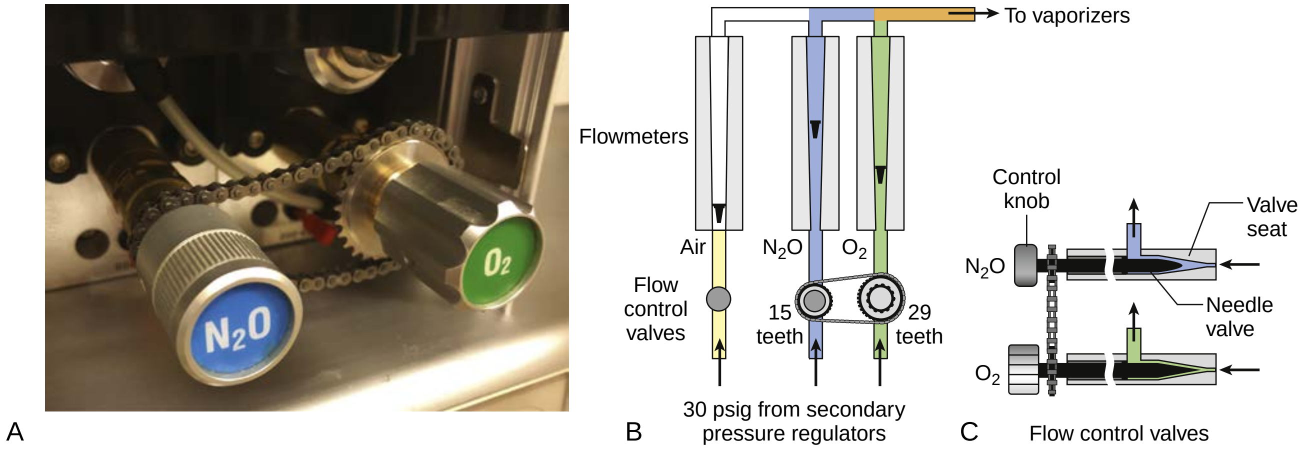


Fig. 22.12 GE/Datex-Ohmeda Link-25 nitrous oxide: oxygen proportioning system. The system prevents the operator from selecting more than a 75% nitrous oxide–25% oxygen (3:1) mixture by two separate but interdependent means. (A) Link-25 proportioning system on a GE Healthcare Aestiva anesthesia workstation with front panel removed. (B) Mechanical linkage of the control valves maintains no more than a 2:1 ratio. (C) A faster taper of the nitrous oxide valve needle allows more gas flow through the valve per turn relative to flow through the oxygen valve per turn, thus resulting in the maximal 3:1 ratio. A stable and equal pressure supply to the valves is provided by the secondary pressure regulator for oxygen and a balance regulator for nitrous oxide. See text for additional details. (Datex-Ohmeda: Aestiva anesthesia machine: technical reference manual, Madison, Wis: Datex-Ohmeda 2006.)

oxygen flow tube, could result in delivery of a hypoxic mixture to the common gas outlet. In this situation, oxygen escapes through the leak, and the predominant gas delivered is nitrous oxide. Finally, volatile inhaled anesthetic agents are added to the mixed gases downstream from both the flowmeters and the proportioning system. Concentrations of less potent inhaled anesthetic agents such as desflurane may account for a larger percentage of the total fresh gas composition than is the case with more potent agents. Because significant percentages of these inhaled anesthetic agents may be added downstream of the proportioning system, the resulting gas-vapor mixture may contain an inspired oxygen concentration less than 21% despite a functional proportioning system. The additional complexity of the circle system (discussed below) means that the oxygen concentration of the fresh gas flow delivered to the breathing circuit may be very different from the patient's actual fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2). In each case, the presence of a functioning oxygen analyzer in the patient's breathing circuit is the last protection against a hypoxic gas mixture.

Vaporizer Mount and Interlock System

VAPORIZER MOUNTING SYSTEMS. Removable modern vaporizer mounts allow for rapid replacement or exchange of anesthetic vaporizers. This allows for ease of maintenance, fewer required vaporizer positions on the workstation, and the ability to remove the vaporizer if malignant hyperthermia is suspected.[44] Detachable mounting systems can lead to problems such as low-pressure systems leaks or fresh gas flow obstruction as a result connection-related failures.[44-49] After adding or changing a vaporizer on the anesthesia machine, the operator should make sure it is seated properly and cannot be dislodged once locked. The operator should then perform a vaporizer leak test, if required by the manufacturer.

VAPORIZER INTERLOCK DEVICES. All anesthesia workstations must prevent fresh gas from flowing through more than one vaporizer at time.[11] The design of vaporizer interlock devices varies significantly. Operators should be aware that these devices are not immune from failure, and anesthetic overdose can be a potential consequence.[50-53]

Outlet Check Valve. Many older Datex-Ohmeda anesthesia machines and a few contemporary workstations (e.g., GE/Datex-Ohmeda Aestiva and Aespire) have a one-way check valve located between the vaporizer and the common gas outlet in the mixed-gas pipeline (see Fig. 22.1). The purpose of this valve is to prevent backflow into the vaporizer during positive-pressure ventilation, thereby minimizing the effects of intermittent fluctuations in downstream pressure on the concentration of inhaled anesthetics (see the discussion of intermittent backpressure in the section on anesthetic vaporizers). The presence or absence of this check valve historically influenced which *manual* leak test of the low-pressure system was indicated because it precluded positive-pressure tests to detect for leaks upstream of the valve (see the section on checking your anesthesia workstation).

ANESTHETIC VAPORIZERS

In 1846, William T. G. Morton performed the first public demonstration of ether anesthesia using an ingenious, yet simple inhaler (Fig. 22.13).[54-56] Although the device was effective in delivering anesthetic vapor, Morton's ether inhaler had no means of regulating output concentration or compensating for temperature changes caused by vaporization of the liquid anesthetic and the ambient environment. These two issues were central to the subsequent development and evolution of modern anesthetic vaporizers. Modern variable bypass–type vaporizers are temperature compensated and can maintain desired outputs accurately over a wide range of input gas flow rates. In 1993, with the introduction of desflurane to the clinical setting, an even more sophisticated vaporizer was introduced to handle the unique physical properties of this agent. Vaporizers blending both old technology and computer control have emerged as "cassette" vaporizer systems. An injection-type vaporizer has also been reintroduced. This vaporizer injects precise amounts of liquid anesthetic agent into the fresh gas stream. Before discussing these systems in detail, a brief review of physical/chemical principles is necessary to understand the operation, construction, and design of contemporary anesthetic vaporizers.

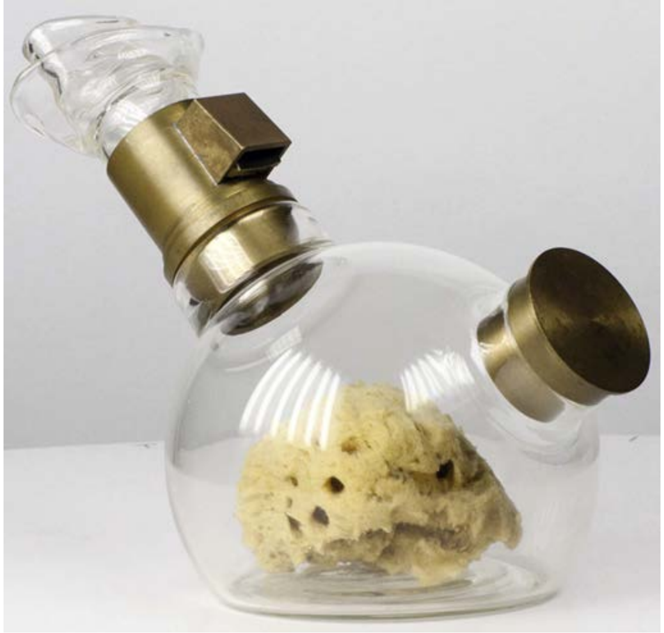


Fig. 22.13 Morton's ether inhaler: A replica of the inhaler used by William T. G. Morton during his public demonstration of ether anesthesia in October of 1846 at Massachusetts General Hospital in Boston. (Courtesy the Wood Library–Museum of Anesthesiology, Park Ridge, IL.)

Physics

The Ideal Gas Law. When sealed in a container, gas molecules collide with the walls and exert a force or pressure. This pressure is directly proportional to the number of molecules or moles *(n)* of gas present within the container and to the temperature *(T)* in degrees kelvin, and inversely proportional to the volume *(V)* that confines the gas. (One mole of a substance is equal to 6.022×10^{23} [Avogadro's number] molecules of that substance.) The ideal gas law is:

$$PV = nRT$$

R (the universal gas constant) = 8.314 L kPa/mol *K or 62.364 L mm Hg/mol*K

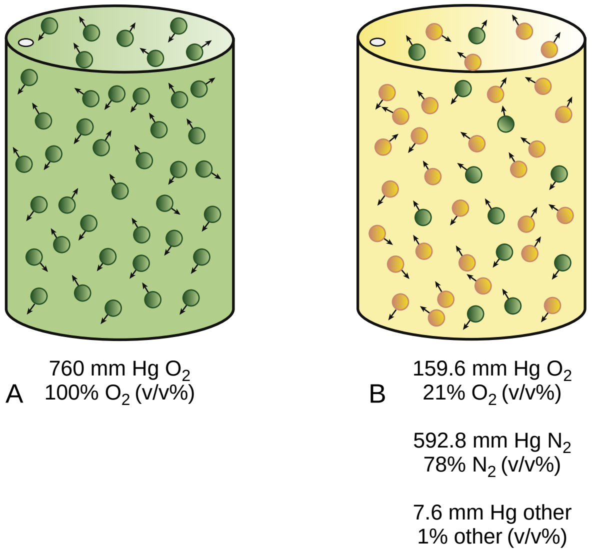


Fig. 22.14 Partial pressures. (A) Theoretical container filled with 100% oxygen at 1 atm pressure (760 mm Hg). The oxygen molecules account for the entirety of the pressure. $P_{total} = P_{oxygen} = 760$ mm Hg. (B) Pure oxygen is replaced with air, and now the nitrogen, oxygen, and other rare gases each contribute to the total pressure in proportion to their volume percent (v/v%). $P_{total} = P_{oxygen} + P_{nitrogen} + P_{other} = 760$ mm.

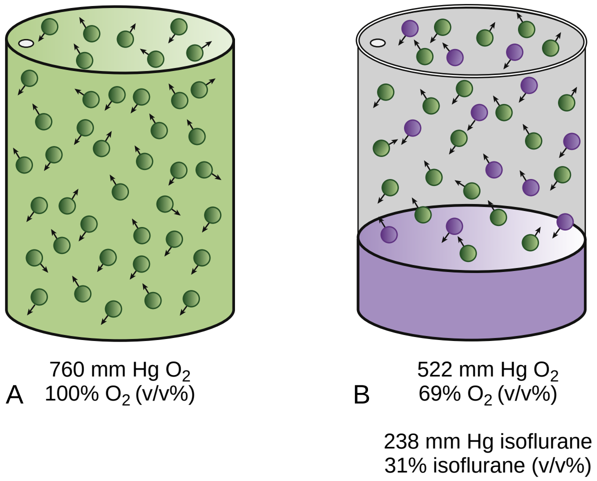


Fig. 22.15 Evaporation (vaporization) and vapor pressure. (A) Theoretical container with 100% oxygen. $P_{total} = P_{oxygen} = 760$ mm Hg, see Fig. 22.14. (B) Isoflurane is added to the container, and the temperature is maintained at 20°C (68°F). Evaporation commences, and isoflurane molecules begin to displace oxygen molecules out of the container. When the rate of vaporization is equal to the rate of condensation, the gas above the liquid is said to be "saturated" with isoflurane. The partial pressure of the isoflurane at this point is called the saturated vapor pressure (SVP), which at this temperature equals 238 mm Hg. $P_{total} = P_{oxygen} + P_{isoflurane} = 760$ mm.

The ideal gas law provides an important framework for understanding the behavior of anesthetic gases within vaporizers, anesthesia delivery equipment, and the pulmonary alveolus. Key assumptions of this law are that gas molecules (1) behave as points in space and (2) undergo perfectly elastic collisions without attracting or repelling one another or the walls of the container. These assumptions are valid for dilute anesthetic gases at normal operating conditions.

Dalton's Law of Partial Pressures. When a mixture of ideal gases exists in a container, each gas creates its own pressure, which is the same pressure as if the individual gas occupied the container alone. The total pressure may be calculated by simply adding together the pressures of each gas. This is known as Dalton's law of partial pressures, where the individual pressures (P_i) exerted by each of the constituent gases are referred to as *partial pressures*:[57,58]

$$P_{total} = P_1 + P_2 + P_3 + \ \ldots$$

Another useful expression, which can be derived by combining Dalton's law with the ideal gas law, is:

$$P_A = (n_A/n_{total})\,P_{total} = (v/v\%)\,P_{total}$$

which states that the partial pressure of gas A can be calculated by multiplying the total pressure of the mixture by the mole fraction (n_A/n_{total}), or the volume percent ($v/v\%$), of gas A. The volume percent tends to be more useful in day-to-day anesthesia practice (see below).

As a first step to understanding vaporizer function, it is useful to look at an example of Dalton's law of partial pressures. In Fig. 22.14*A*, pure oxygen fills a theoretical container that is open to the environment through a very small hole. The pressure in the container is equal to the ambient pressure, which at sea level is 760 mm Hg or 1 atm or 101.325 kPa, and generated entirely by the oxygen molecules. In Fig. 22.14*B*, the container is filled with air, and the total pressure is generated by the additive partial pressures of oxygen, nitrogen, and trace amounts of rare gases.

Evaporation and Vapor Pressure. Volatile liquids, such as inhaled anesthetic agents, are characterized by a high propensity to enter the gas phase, or *vaporize*. When a volatile liquid is exposed to air or other gases, molecules at the liquid surface with sufficient kinetic energy escape and enter the vapor phase. This process is known as *evaporation*, which is purely a surface phenomenon (in contrast to *boiling*, which occurs throughout the liquid). If liquid volatile anesthetic is placed within a contained space, such as a vaporizer, molecules will escape into the vapor phase until the rate of evaporation equals the rate of return to the liquid phase (a process known as *condensation*). When this equilibrium is reached, the gas above the liquid is said to be "saturated" with anesthetic (Fig. 22.15). The anesthetic molecules in the gas phase create a partial pressure known as the *saturated vapor pressure*, or simply *vapor pressure*. Liquids with a greater tendency to evaporate and generate higher vapor pressures are described as "more volatile."

Vapor pressure is an unique physical property of a substance at any given temperature (Fig. 22.16). Vapor pressure is *not* affected by changes in atmospheric pressure.[59] As illustrated in Fig. 22.17 for the isoflurane, evaporation is diminished at colder temperatures because fewer molecules possess sufficient kinetic energy to escape into the vapor phase. Conversely, at warmer temperatures, evaporation is enhanced and vapor pressure increases. Although

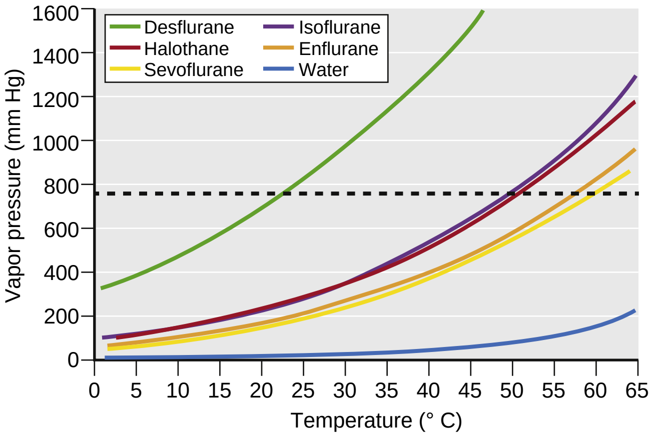


Fig. 22.16 Vapor pressure-versus-temperature curves for desflurane, isoflurane, halothane, enflurane, sevoflurane, and water. Note that the curve for desflurane differs dramatically from that of the other inhaled anesthetic agents. Also note that all inhaled agents are more volatile than water. Dashed line indicates 1 atm (760 mm Hg) of pressure, which illustrates the boiling point at sea level (normal boiling point). (From inhaled anesthetic package insert equations and Susay SR, Smith MA, Lockwood GG. The saturated vapor pressure of desflurane at various temperatures. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:864–866.)

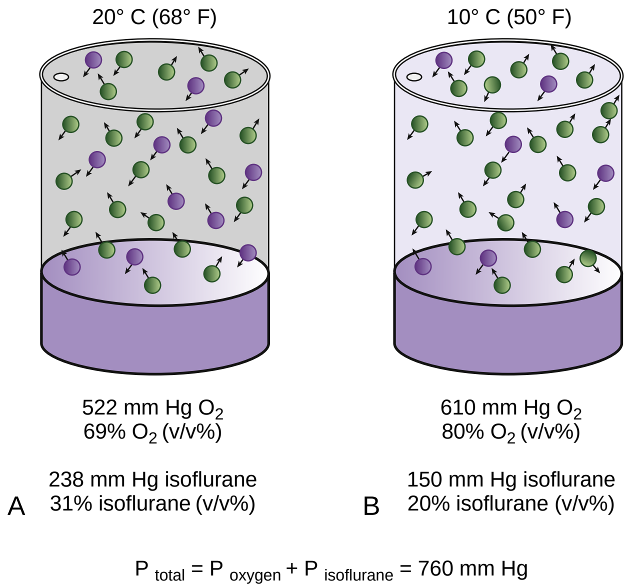


Fig. 22.17 The impact of temperature on vapor pressure. (A) Chamber containing oxygen and isoflurane at its saturated vapor pressure (SVP) at 20°C (68°F). At evaporative equilibrium, the SVP of isoflurane in the container represents 31% of the entire gas composition by volume (*v/v*%). (B) Decreasing the temperature to 10°C (50°F) substantially lowers the isoflurane vapor pressure to 150 mm Hg and causes isoflurane to represent only 20% of the entire gas volume (*v/v*%). This example assumes that some oxygen can enter the container through a tiny hole to replace the condensed isoflurane molecules.

operating room (ambient) temperature can raise or lower liquid anesthetic vapor pressure, the cooling influence of evaporation (the latent heat of vaporization, *see below*) has a far more pronounced and dynamic effect. The impact of evaporative temperature change on vaporizer and anesthetic inhaler output has been recognized since the mid-1800s, and addressing this phenomenon has been one of the principal factors influencing design of anesthetic vaporizers.

Because vapor pressures are unique to each liquid anesthetic agent, vaporizers must be constructed in an agent-specific manner. If a vaporizer is inadvertently filled with the incorrect liquid anesthetic agent, the vaporizer output will change (see the discussion of misfilling in the section on variable bypass vaporizers).[60,61]

Expressing Gas Concentrations and Minimum Alveolar Concentration. When describing a mixture of gases, we can quantify the proportion of an individual gas by either its *partial pressure* (mm Hg), or by the percentage of volume occupied by the gas relative to the sum of all gases present, which is known as *volume percent* or *volume-volume percent* (*v*/*v*%)[62]:

$$\text{Volume percent}(v/v\%) = (\text{volume of gas } x/\text{total gas volume}) * 100\%$$

The volume that an ideal gas occupies at a given temperature and pressure is related to the number of molecules of gas present, but not the size or identity of the molecules. This statement is known as the *Avogadro Hypothesis*. Using the ideal gas law, it is easy to calculate that at 1 atm (760 mm Hg) of pressure and 20°C (68°F or 293°K), conditions that might be found in a typical operating room, 1 mole of an ideal gas occupies a volume of about 24 L. The same is true for any mixture of ideal gases containing a total of 1 mole of gas molecules. Therefore, because partial pressure is directly proportional to the number of molecules of a gas present in the mixture, we can also use partial pressures to calculate the volume percent of any constituent gas[63]:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Volume percent } (v/v\,\%) &= \\ &(\text{partial pressure of gas } x/\text{total pressure}) * 100\% \\ &= (P_x/P_{\text{total}}) * 100\%\end{aligned}$$

Using air at sea level ($P_{\text{total}} = P_{\text{atm}} = 760$ mm Hg) as an example:

Knowing the partial pressures of the constituent gases of air…

$$P_{\text{atm}} = P_{\text{oxygen}} + P_{\text{nitrogen}} + P_{\text{other}}$$

$$P_{\text{atm}} = 760\text{ mm Hg} \approx (160\text{ mm Hg oxygen}) + (592\text{ mm Hg nitrogen}) + (8\text{ mm Hg other gases})$$

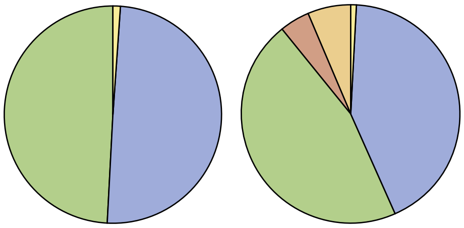
… we can then calculate the volume percent (*v*/*v*%) of oxygen…

$$\text{Oxygen } (v/v\%) \sim P_{\text{oxygen}}/P_{\text{amt}} \sim 160\text{ mm Hg}/760\text{ mm Hg} \sim 21\%$$

When anesthesiologists describe inhaled and exhaled anesthetic concentrations, they typically use volume percent. One percent isoflurane is equal to 7.6 mm Hg isoflurane at sea level. The amount of oxygen and nitrous oxide in the breathing gas is also typically described in terms of volume percent. However, CO_2 content (i.e., end-tidal carbon dioxide [ETCO_2]) is usually displayed as a partial pressure (mm Hg). This was probably adopted because of the relatively close correlation between ETCO_2 and arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide (PaCO_2), and the latter's common expression as a partial pressure. Fig. 22.18 illustrates a typical composition of the breathing gases during anesthesia in terms of concentration (*v*/*v*%) and partial pressures.

The minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) is described in terms of volume percent. MAC is the concentration of anesthetic that prevents movement from surgical stimulus in 50% of individuals.[64] MAC is an age-dependent phenomenon,[65] and it can also be affected by other variables. MAC is a clinically useful value given that vaporizer control knobs are marked and calibrated in terms of anesthetic concentration. However, it is actually the anesthetic partial pressure (mm Hg) value in the brain that is responsible for anesthetic depth. The corresponding partial pressure for each MAC value is known as the minimal alveolar partial pressure (MAPP), as listed in Table 22.1.[66] When discussing anesthetic vaporizers, it is useful to think about their output in terms of partial pressure and how it relates to volume percent and MAC, especially when considering changes in ambient pressure.

Latent Heat of Vaporization. When a liquid such as a volatile anesthetic evaporates into the gas phase, energy is required to overcome the attractive intermolecular forces between molecules in the liquid phase (a property known as *cohesion*). The needed energy is absorbed from the surroundings in the form of *heat*, and is the reason why the human body is cooled by the evaporation of sweat. The amount of energy absorbed by a specific liquid during evaporation is referred to as the *latent heat of vaporization*. It is more precisely defined as the amount of energy in joules or calories (1 calorie = 4.184 joules) required to change 1 g of liquid into vapor at a constant temperature. In a well-insulated container, the energy for vaporization must come from the liquid itself. In the absence of an outside heat source, the remaining liquid cools as vaporization progresses. This leads to significant reductions in vapor pressure (see Fig. 22.16) and therefore the number of volatile anesthetic molecules in the gas phase (see Fig. 22.17).[44,59,67] If vaporizer design does not mitigate and compensate for evaporative cooling, output will decrease.



Gas	Inhalation		Exhalation	
	mm Hg	v/v%	mm Hg	v/v%
Sevoflurane	9	1.2	8	1.1
Oxygen	378	50	323	42
N_2O	373	49	347	46
CO_2	–	–	35	4.5
H_2O	–	–	47*	6.2
Total	760	100	760	100

*Saturated vapor pressure of water at body temperature.

Fig. 22.18 Common units of measure for breathing circuit gases: typical values for an oxygen-nitrous oxide-sevoflurane anesthetic. Anesthetic agent, oxygen, and nitrous oxide concentrations are typically expressed in volume percent (*v/v%*). Carbon dioxide is commonly described as a partial pressure (mm Hg).

Boiling Point. The *boiling point* of a liquid is defined as the temperature at which vapor pressure equals atmospheric pressure and the liquid begins to undergo rapid vaporization.[44,67] From the definition above, it is important to note that the boiling point changes depending on atmospheric pressure. Whereas evaporation is a surface phenomenon, boiling is a bulk phenomenon that occurs throughout the interior of the liquid. The boiling point of a liquid is inversely related to volatility. For example, water is not particularly volatile (see Fig. 22.16) and its boiling point of 100°C (212°F) at sea level is much higher than all of the inhaled anesthetic agents. Table 22.1 lists the *normal boiling point* (defined as the boiling point at a pressure of 1 atm) of the common volatile anesthetic agents. While most inhaled anesthetics boil in the range of 48° to 59°C (118°-138°F), desflurane has a normal boiling point close to room temperature (22.8°C or 73°F).

The boiling point of contemporary volatile anesthetic agents is not relevant to vaporizer design under most clinical situations. Desflurane, however, has a high saturated vapor pressure and boils at a temperature commonly encountered in clinical settings. These properties mandate a special vaporizer design to control agent delivery (see section on desflurane vaporizer). Isoflurane and halothane could theoretically boil at high altitudes and very high

TABLE 22.1 Physical Properties of Inhaled Volatile Anesthetic Agents

Property	Halothane	Isoflurane	Sevoflurane	Desflurane
SVP[*] @ 20°C (mm Hg)	243	238	157	669
SVC[†] @ 20°C at 1 atm[‡] (*v/v%*)	32	31	21	88
MAC[§] at age 40 year (*v/v%*)	0.75	1.2	1.9	6.0
MAPP[¶] (mm Hg)	5.7	9.1	14.4	45.6
Boiling point @1 atm (°C)	50.2 (122.4°F)	48.5 (119.3°F)	58.6 (137.3°F)	22.8 (73°F)

[*] *SVP*, Saturated vapor pressure. From anesthetic prescribing information.

[†] *SVC*, Saturated vapor concentration: the percentage of anesthetic agent relative to ambient pressure within an equilibrated (saturated) container (SVP/ambient pressure).

[‡] *1 atm*, 1 atmosphere = ambient pressure at sea level (760 mm Hg).

[§] *MAC*, Minimum alveolar concentration: the alveolar concentration that produces immobility in response to a noxious stimulus in 50% of subjects.[64] The denominator is approximately sea level pressure (760 mm Hg).

[¶] *MAPP*, Minimum alveolar partial pressure. The alveolar partial pressure that produces immobility in response to a noxious stimulus in 50% of subjects (the numerator in the MAC calculation).[66] Not affected by altitude. Calculated as MAC (fraction) × 760 mm Hg (i.e., for isoflurane = 0.012 × 760 mm Hg).

v/v%, Volume percent.

temperatures. At least one vaporizer manufacturer specifies a maximum safe operating temperature for these anesthetic agents.[68]

Specific Heat. The *specific heat* is the amount of energy required to increase the temperature of 1 g of a substance by 1°C.[44,67] Water, for example, has a specific heat of exactly 1 calorie g^{-1} deg^{-1}. The concept of specific heat is important to the design, operation, and construction of vaporizers in two ways. First, the specific heat of a liquid anesthetic determines how much heat must be supplied to maintain a constant temperature due to the latent heat of vaporization. Second, vaporizers are built from materials with a high specific heat in order to better resist temperature changes associated with evaporative cooling.

Thermal Conductivity. Thermal conductivity is a property that describes how well heat flows through a substance. The higher the thermal conductivity, the better a substance conducts heat.[44] Vaporizers are constructed of metals with relatively high thermal conductivity, which helps maintain a uniform internal temperature during evaporation by allowing efficient heat absorption from the environment. By contrast, coffee mugs should be made of materials with a low thermal conductivity to slow heat loss to the environment.

Modern Vaporizer Types

Vaporizer nomenclature can be somewhat confusing, especially if the historical context of vaporizer, workstation, and breathing circuit evolution is not considered (Table 22.2). Vaporizers are first designated as *in-circuit* or *out-of-circuit*, which describes their relationship to the patient's breathing circuit. Virtually all modern vaporizers are out-of-circuit, and their controlled output is introduced into the breathing circuit through a fresh gas line. In-circuit vaporizers are found mainly within the so-called *draw-over* anesthesia systems, which are of great historical significance in anesthesiology.

The second designation involves the specific types of vaporizers, and these currently include the variable bypass vaporizer (e.g., GE/Datex-Ohmeda Tec 7), the dual-circuit vaporizer (e.g., the classic GE/Datex-Ohmeda Tec 6 desflurane vaporizer), the cassette vaporizer (e.g., GE/Datex-Ohmeda Aladin cassette), the injection vaporizer (e.g., the Maquet vaporizer), and the now historical measured-flow vaporizer (e.g., Copper Kettle). Variable bypass vaporizers can be subcategorized as plenum type, which are out-of-circuit and have relatively high internal flow resistance (the term "plenum" refers to a chamber where gas flows under positive pressure), or draw-over type, which are in-circuit and have low internal resistance. Most modern variable bypass vaporizers are plenum type and are located out-of-circuit, like those seen in Figs. 22.1 and 22.2. Draw-over type vaporizers are uncommon today, but remain an option for providing anesthesia in resource-poor environments.[68a] Variable bypass vaporizers carry additional designations such as agent-specific, flow-over, temperature-compensated, and pressure-compensated, which are discussed later.

Variable Bypass Vaporizers. When volatile anesthetic agents evaporate, their resultant saturated gas concentrations greatly exceed those used clinically, so these concentrations must be diluted to safe ranges (see Table 22.1). *Variable bypass* refers to the method of diluting gas fully saturated with anesthetic agent with a more voluminous flow of gas. A diagram of a variable bypass vaporizer is shown in Fig. 22.19. Basic vaporizer components include a vaporizer inlet port (fresh gas inlet), the concentration control dial, the bypass chamber, the vaporizing chamber, the vaporizer outlet port, and the filling assembly. The maximum safe level of the vaporizer corresponds to the filling port, which is positioned to minimize the chance of overfilling. A concentration control dial determines the ratio of gas that flows through the bypass chamber and the vaporizing chamber, and a temperature-compensating device further adjusts that ratio. Vaporizer concentration control dials are labeled to set vaporizer output in terms of volume percent (*v*/*v*%), and the vaporizers are calibrated at sea level.

Fig. 22.20 illustrates volatile anesthetic equilibrium concentrations within a theoretical vaporizing chamber of a variable bypass vaporizer. As can be seen, the saturated vapor concentration of sevoflurane within the chamber (21%) far exceeds the clinical concentration. Fig. 22.20 also depicts the volume of anesthetic vapor that is added to the gas stream as it flows through the chamber. These properties are essential for a quantitative understanding of variable bypass vaporizer function (Box 22.1). Although this example and others in the chapter imply that the gas flowing through the vaporizing chamber becomes fully saturated with anesthetic vapor, this is actually not the case. There is insufficient time to reach evaporative equilibrium due to the constant inflow of fresh gas. As a result, the vaporizing chamber becomes only partially saturated with volatile anesthetic.[69] However, for the purposes of this discussion, it is useful to assume that full saturation occurs.

TABLE 22.2 Concise Summary of Modern Vaporizer Nomenclature

Type	Subtype(s)	Characteristics
Variable bypass vaporizers		
	Plenum type	Out-of-circuit, high resistance, gas flow under positive pressure
	Draw-over type	In-circuit, low resistance, gas flow under negative pressure; may be portable
Cassette vaporizer	GE Aladin and Aladin2	Computer-controlled variable bypass vaporizer
Dual-circuit (desflurane) vaporizer	GE Tec 6 and Dräger D-Vapor	Gas-vapor blender, heated & pressurized
Injection vaporizer	Maquet and Dräger DIVA	Direct injection of volatile anesthetic
Anesthetic reflector	AnaConDa, Mirus	Adsorption to and release from a carbon filter

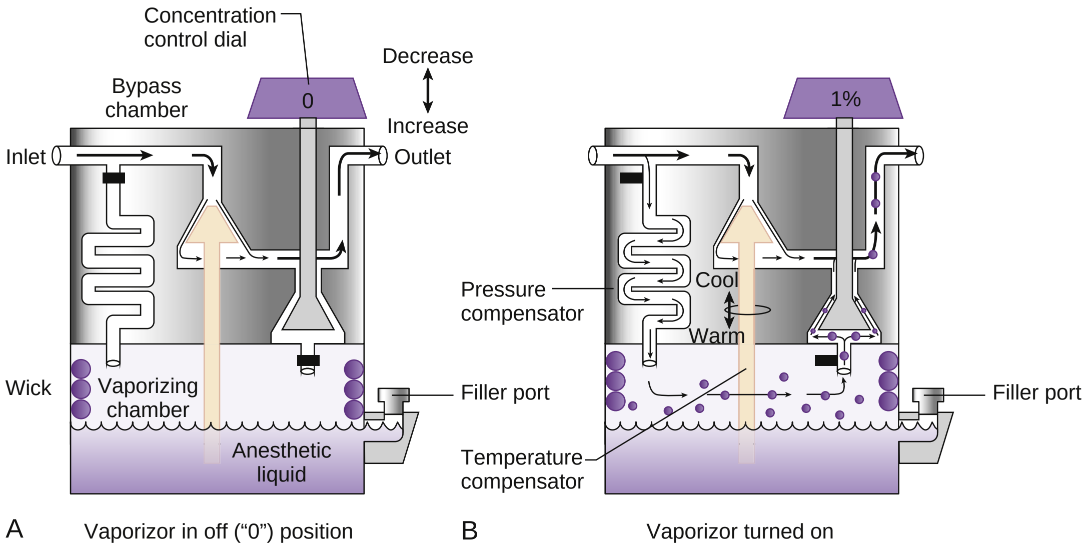


Fig. 22.19 Variable bypass vaporizer. (A) Basic components. Vaporizer in the off or "0" position. Fresh gas from the flowmeter assembly enters the vaporizer and then flows through the bypass chamber, around the temperature compensator, and out the vaporizer without passing through the vaporizing chamber. (B) Selecting a vaporizer output (turning the vaporizer "on") diverts an agent-specific ratio of gas through the pressure-compensating labyrinth, into the vaporizing chamber where it becomes saturated with anesthetic vapor, and then past the concentration cone where it reunites with the fresh gas stream. The temperature compensation device further adjusts the ratio of bypass to vaporizing chamber flow, to compensate for changes in anesthetic vapor pressure resulting from temperature changes. As the liquid anesthetic cools by evaporation, more gas is diverted to the vaporizing chamber to compensate for the decrease in vapor pressure. The labyrinth compensates for pressure fluctuations within the vaporizer from the gas supply side and the breathing circuit side to stabilize vaporizer output; it is *not* present to compensate for changes in atmospheric pressure. Please see text for additional details.

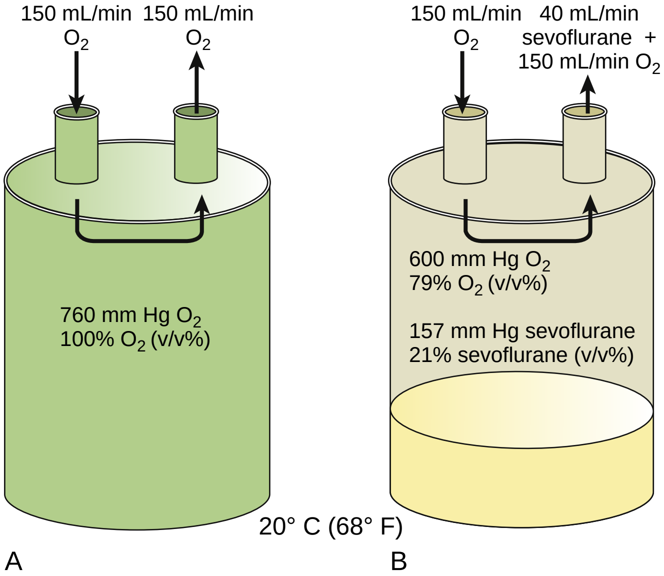


Fig. 22.20 Theoretical vaporizing chamber demonstrating the volume of anesthetic gas added to the gas flow stream as a result of evaporation: (A) Pure oxygen flows through the chamber. (B) Liquid sevoflurane is added to the chamber and evaporates to saturated vapor pressure (see Box 22.1 for details).

Fig. 22.21 illustrates a modern variable bypass vaporizer set to deliver 2% sevoflurane. Note how the majority of fresh gas flows straight through the bypass chamber. The bypass flow and vaporizing chamber output combine to create the desired output concentration. The fresh gas that is diverted to the vaporizing chamber becomes saturated with anesthetic gas by flowing through the wicks and over the liquid agent (hence the designation *flow-over*). The wicks and baffles serve to increase the surface area available for vaporization and promote mixing of the carrier gas with anesthetic vapor.[69a,69b] The specific ratio of fresh gas flow divided between the bypass chamber and the vaporizing chamber is determined by the concentration control dial setting and the temperature compensation device (see the later discussion of temperature compensation). Because the physical properties and clinical concentrations of each agent are unique, the diverting ratios are specific to each agent and dial setting (hence the designation *agent-specific*). The approximate variable bypass diverting or "splitting ratios" for the common anesthetic agents at 20°C are shown in Table 22.3. Variable bypass vaporizers cannot be used to deliver desflurane, because of this agent's unique physical properties (see section on the desflurane vaporizer).

Virtually all variable bypass vaporizers are equipped with a mechanism that helps maintain constant vaporizer output over a wide range of operating temperatures (hence the designation *temperature-compensated*). This mechanism automatically alters the ratio of gas flowing through the bypass and vaporizing chambers. Temperature compensation is accomplished by an expansion-contraction element, as seen in Fig. 22.19, or a bimetallic strip (Fig. 22.22). At cooler temperatures, the vapor pressure of liquid anesthetic decreases (Fig. 22.16), and it is necessary to reduce the splitting ratio to maintain output. In Fig. 22.19*B*, as the liquid anesthetic agent cools, the temperature-compensating cone moves upward, restricts bypass flow, and diverts more gas to the vaporizing chamber, thereby maintaining relatively stable vaporizer output. The inverse is also true: warmer temperatures cause the cone to move downward, increasing bypass flow, and diverting less gas to the vaporizing chamber. The most important function of temperature compensation devices is to correct for the effect of evaporative cooling on the liquid anesthetic.

BOX 22.1 Calculation of the Volume of Gas Added to a Fresh Gas Flow, and Proof of the Splitting Ratio

Step 1: Calculate the amount of volatile anesthetic added to the fresh gas stream that makes up a vaporizer chamber output.

- Assume that 150 mL/min of oxygen flows through a vaporizer chamber at 1 atm (760 mm Hg) pressure and 20°C (68°F) (Fig. 22.20*A*).
- Liquid sevoflurane is then added to the vaporizer chamber (Fig. 22.20*B*).
- Sevoflurane evaporates to its saturated vapor pressure (SVP) of 157 mm Hg, which displaces oxygen from the gas mixture. At this point, sevoflurane has a saturated vapor concentration (SVC) of 157 mm Hg/760 mm Hg ~21% (see Table 22.1).
- Sevoflurane makes up 21% of the gas flowing out of the vaporizer, and oxygen makes up 79%.
  - To calculate the amount of sevoflurane added to the fresh gas flow through the vaporizer, set up the simple proportion:
    - (*x* mL/min sevoflurane)/21% = (150 mL/min oxygen)/79%
  - Solve for *x*:
    - *x* = (150 mL/min) * 21%/79% ~ 40 mL/min sevoflurane
- Therefore 40 mL/min of sevoflurane is added to the vaporizer output, for a total of 190 mL/min (Fig. 22.20*B*).

Step 2: Prove the splitting ratio for a variable bypass vaporizer.

Building on the example in **Step 1**, consider a sevoflurane vaporizer with 2000 mL/min of fresh gas inflow. Prove that the splitting ratio must be ~12:1 in order to deliver 2% sevoflurane.

- A splitting ratio of 12:1 means that ~150 mL/min of fresh gas is diverted to the vaporizer chamber, and ~1850 mL/min flows through the bypass chamber (see Fig. 22.21).
- 40 mL/min of sevoflurane is added to the vaporizer output (see **Step 1**).
- The total vaporizer output is 2040 mL/min.
- Sevoflurane makes up (40 mL/min)/(2040 mL/min) ~2% of the total vaporizer output.

Variable bypass vaporizers are also constructed from materials with high specific heat, yielding temperature stability, and high thermal conductivity, which allows rapid transfer of ambient heat. Additionally, the vaporizer wick systems are located in contact with the metal walls to facilitate absorption of environmental heat.

FACTORS THAT INFLUENCE VARIABLE BYPASS VAPORIZER OUTPUT. An ideal variable bypass vaporizer would maintain a constant concentration output at a given setting regardless of variables such as the fresh gas flow rate, temperature, intermittent backpressure from the breathing circuit, carrier gas composition, and barometric pressure. ISO standards state that the average output should not deviate from the dial setting by +30% or −20% or more than +7.5% or −5% of the maximum setting.[11] Although modern vaporizers generally have excellent performance characteristics, it is important to understand how these challenges could potentially influence vaporizer output.

IMPACT OF GAS FLOW RATE. This factor is notable only at the extremes of flow rates and at higher concentration control dial settings. At low flow rates (<250 mL/min), the output tends to be slightly less than the dial setting due to the relatively high density of volatile anesthetic agents. Insufficient turbulence is generated in the vaporizing chamber to advance the vapor molecules upward. At high flow rates (such as 15 L/min), the output of most variable bypass vaporizers is somewhat less than the dial setting. This discrepancy is due to: cooling during rapid evaporation, incomplete mixing, and failure to saturate the carrier gas in the vaporizing chamber. In addition, the resistance characteristics of the bypass chamber and the vaporizing chamber can vary as flow increases.[68,70]

IMPACT OF TEMPERATURE CHANGE. Despite the impact of evaporative cooling and variation in ambient conditions, modern vaporizers maintain fairly constant concentration output over a wide range of common working temperatures. However, the linear change in the temperature-compensating mechanisms does not precisely match the shape of the

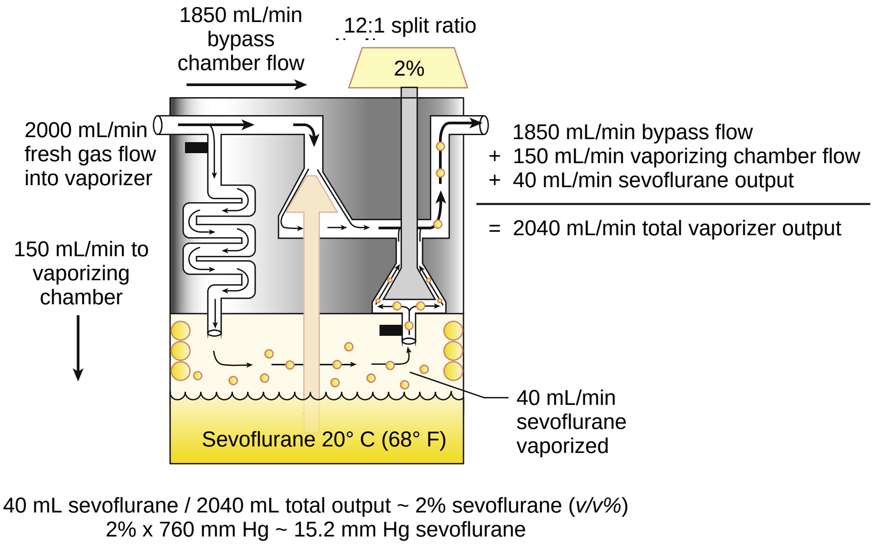

1850 mL/min bypass chamber flow
12:1 split ratio
2%
2000 mL/min fresh gas flow into vaporizer
150 mL/min to vaporizing chamber
1850 mL/min bypass flow
+ 150 mL/min vaporizing chamber flow
+ 40 mL/min sevoflurane output
= 2040 mL/min total vaporizer output
40 mL/min sevoflurane vaporized
Sevoflurane 20° C (68° F)
40 mL sevoflurane / 2040 mL total output ~ 2% sevoflurane (v/v%)
2% x 760 mm Hg ~ 15.2 mm Hg sevoflurane

Fig. 22.21 Vaporizer set to deliver 2% sevoflurane at 1 atm (760 mm Hg): 2% sevoflurane requires a splitting ratio of 12:1 (see Table 22.3 and Box 22.1).

TABLE 22.3 Variable Bypass Vaporizer Splitting Ratios

Concentration Control Dial Setting (v/v%)	BYPASS CHAMBER–TO–VAPORIZING CHAMBER SPLITTING RATIOS AT 20°C (68°F)*		
	Halothane	**Isoflurane**	**Sevoflurane**
1	46:1	45:1	25:1
2	23:1	22:1	12:1
3	15:1	14:1	8:1

*Ratio of fresh gas flowing through the bypass chamber relative to the vaporizing chamber for the listed output concentrations. The temperature compensation device may alter the actual ratio. This applies to variable bypass vaporizers only. Calculated from: % volatile agent output = 100 × $P_V \times F_V/F_T\ (P_A - P_V)$ where P_A = atmospheric pressure, P_V = vapor pressure at 20°C, F_V = flow of fresh gas through vaporizing chamber (mL/min), and F_T = total fresh gas flow (mL/min).

From *Prescribing Information Forane [Isoflurane, USP]*. Deerfield, IL: Baxter Healthcare; 2009.

v/v%, Volume percent.

vapor pressure curves.[19,68] As a result, a slight correlation between vaporizer temperature and delivered concentration remains. This correlation is mainly apparent at higher temperatures and higher concentrations (Fig. 22.23). A dangerous but highly unlikely circumstance could occur if the boiling point of a volatile agent within a variable bypass vaporizer were reached. In this situation, the vaporizer output would be impossible to control by any compensatory mechanism. Although it would be rare to reach ambient temperatures around 50°C at sea level (see Table 22.1), at higher altitudes, where boiling points are lower, this is theoretically more likely. In fact, the Dräger Vapor 2000 user's manual decreases the high-altitude operating specification for the vaporizer from 9880 to 4800 feet if halothane or isoflurane is used at higher ambient temperatures. Manufacturers' published vaporizer operating temperatures range from 10°C to 40°C (50°F-104°F), although the specific ranges vary.[68,70-74]

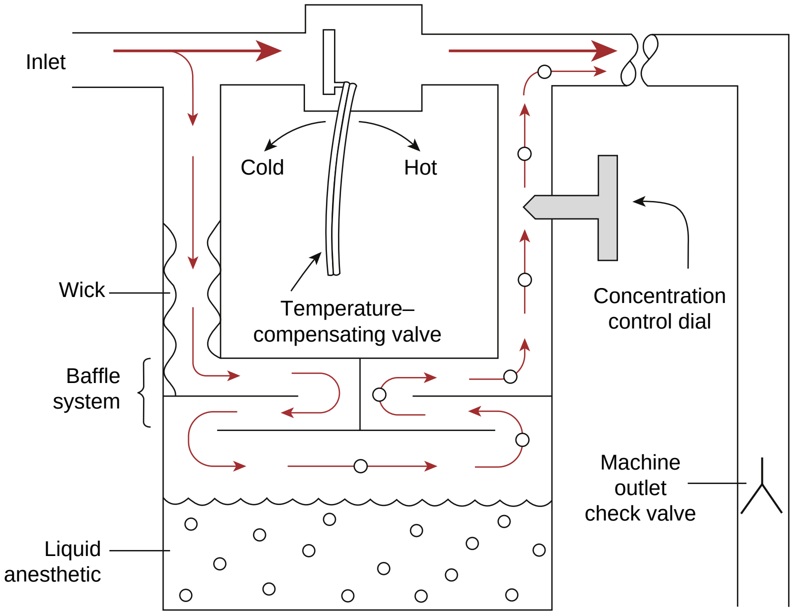

Inlet
Cold
Hot
Wick
Temperature–compensating valve
Concentration control dial
Baffle system
Machine outlet check valve
Liquid anesthetic

Fig. 22.22 Temperature compensation with a bimetallic strip. At cooler temperatures, the strip bends one way and diverts more flow through the vaporizing chamber. At warmer temperatures, the strip bends the opposite way and allows more flow through the bypass chamber. (From Chakravarti S, Basu S. Modern anaesthesia vapourisers. *Ind J Anaesth*. 2013;57[5]:464–471.)

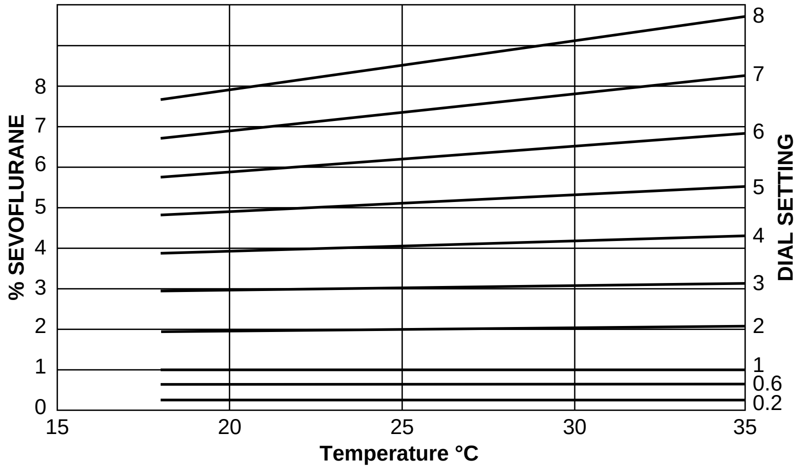


Fig. 22.23 Effect of ambient temperature on vaporizer output. See text for explanation. (Redrawn from Datex-Ohmeda. *Tec 7 Vaporizer: User's Reference Manual*. Madison, WI: Datex-Ohmeda; 2002.)

IMPACT OF INTERMITTENT BACKPRESSURE. The intermittent backpressure that results from either positive-pressure ventilation or use of the oxygen flush valve may lead to higher than expected vaporizer output. This phenomenon, known as the *pumping effect*, is more pronounced at low flow rates, low dial settings, and low levels of liquid anesthetic in the vaporizing chamber.[44,68,75-77] Additionally, the pumping effect is increased by rapid respiratory rates, high peak inspiratory pressures (PIPs), the use of anesthesia machines without fresh gas decoupling, and rapid drops in pressure during expiration.[44,59,67,68,78,79] Although contemporary variable bypass vaporizers are not highly vulnerable to the pumping effect, the proposed mechanism and preventative design features should be understood. The pumping effect is caused by retrograde transmission of pressure from the patient circuit to the vaporizer during the inspiratory phase of positive-pressure ventilation or use of the oxygen flush function. Gas molecules are compressed in both the bypass and vaporizing chambers. When the backpressure is suddenly released during the expiratory phase, vapor exits the vaporizing chamber both antegrade through the outlet and retrograde through the inlet. This occurs because the output resistance of the bypass chamber is lower than that of the vaporizing chamber, particularly at low dial settings. The enhanced output concentration results from the increment of vapor that travels in the retrograde direction to the bypass chamber.[68,76,77,80]

To decrease the pumping effect, modern vaporizing chambers are smaller than those of early variable bypass vaporizers so that only a small volume of vapor can be discharged retrograde into the bypass chamber.[77] Additionally, some vaporizers have a long spiral tube or labyrinth that serves as the inlet to the vaporizing chamber (see Fig. 22.19).[77] When the pressure in the vaporizing chamber is released, the vapor does not flow back into the bypass chamber because of tube length.[59] This serpentine passage also dampens pressure fluctuations and compensates for fluctuations in gas supply pressure. Other designs may also include an extensive baffle system in the vaporizing chamber. Finally, a one-way check valve can be inserted after the vaporizers and before the breathing circuit inlet to minimize the pumping effect (see the discussion of the gas supply system). This check valve can attenuate but does not eliminate the increase in pressure, because gas still flows from the flowmeters to the vaporizer during the inspiratory phase of positive-pressure ventilation.[44,81] Although intermittent backpressure can result in transient rises in anesthetic concentration at the common gas outlet, the effects are mitigated by dilution within the much larger anesthetic breathing circuit.[82] The goal of all these pressure-compensating mechanisms is to provide an even flow of gas through the vaporizing chamber despite changes in pressure, giving the vaporizers the additional designation *pressure-compensated*.

IMPACT OF CARRIER GAS COMPOSITION. Variable bypass vaporizer output can be influenced by fresh gas composition. This phenomenon is the result of differences in the solubility of carrier gases in volatile anesthetic liquids. This effect is most pronounced when nitrous oxide is introduced or removed as a carrier gas.[68,83-90] In the experimental example seen in Fig. 22.24, a change in carrier gas from 100% oxygen to 100% nitrous oxide results in a sudden decrease in halothane output (expressed as volume percent) followed by a slow increase to a new, lower, steady-state (see Fig. 22.24, label *B*).[88,89] Because nitrous oxide is more soluble than oxygen in the liquid anesthetic within the vaporizer sump, more of the carrier gas dissolves, and the volume output from the vaporizing chamber is transiently reduced.[88] Once the anesthetic liquid becomes saturated with nitrous oxide, the vaporizing chamber output increases and achieves a new steady state.

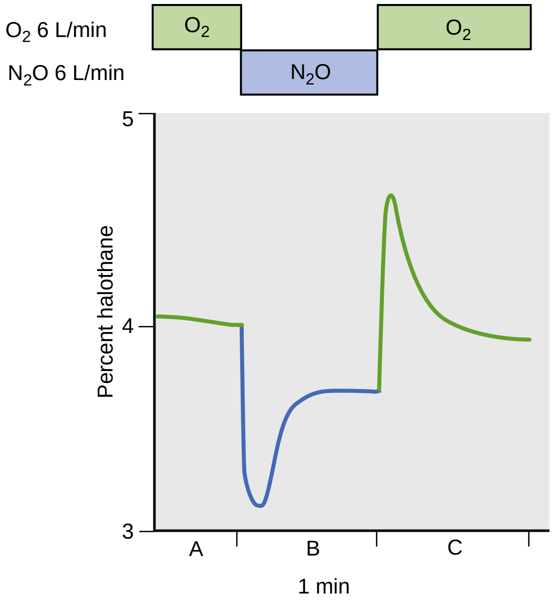


Fig. 22.24 Halothane output of a North American Dräger Vapor 19.n vaporizer (Dräger Medical, Telford, PA) with different carrier gases. The initial output concentration is approximately 4% halothane when oxygen is the carrier gas at flows of 6 L/min *(A)*. When the carrier gas is quickly switched to 100% nitrous oxide *(B)*, the halothane concentration decreases to 3% within 8 seconds. A new steady-state concentration of approximately 3.5% is then attained within about 1 minute. When O_2 flow is reestablished, halothane output increases abruptly and then settles back to baseline *(C)*. See text for details. (Modified from Gould DB, Lampert BA, MacKrell TN. Effect of nitrous oxide solubility on vaporizer aberrance. *Anesth Analg.* 1982;61:939.)

The explanation for the new steady-state output value is less well understood.[90] Differences in density and viscosity between oxygen and nitrous oxide are likely responsible[90a] because these physical properties affect the relative amount of gas flow through the bypass and vaporizing channels.[86,89,91] Helium, a gas with far lower density than either oxygen or nitrous oxide, has been shown to have variable effect on vaporizer output, depending on the vaporizer model and study design (although the changes tend to be minimal).[92,93]

Although the carrier gas composition can be demonstrated experimentally to affect vaporizer output, deviations are often within specified accuracy ranges. Vaporizer user's manuals usually specify the anticipated response to a change in carrier gas relative to the calibration gas, which may be air or oxygen, depending on the vaporizer model.[68,70,71,94]

IMPACT OF BAROMETRIC PRESSURE CHANGES. Understanding the influence of barometric pressure on variable bypass vaporizer output is probably more important for comprehending vaporizer function than for actual clinical reasons. With variable bypass vaporizers, the depth of anesthesia at a given dial setting is relatively independent of atmospheric pressure, and no adjustments need to be made (Table 22.4).[68]

TABLE 22.4 Comparative Performance of an Isoflurane Variable Bypass Vaporizer and the Tec 6 Desflurane Vaporizer During Changes in Barometric Pressure

		Isoflurane Variable Bypass Vaporizer With Dial Setting of 0.89% (v/v)			Tec 6 Desflurane Vaporizer With Dial Setting of 6%
Atm	**Ambient Pressure (mm Hg)**	**mL Isoflurane Vapor Entrained by 100 mL O_2**	**Vaporizer Isoflurane Output (v/v%)**	**Vaporizer Isoflurane Output (mm Hg)**	**Vaporizer Desflurane Output (mm Hg)**
0.66	500 (≈10,000 ft)	91	1.7	8.8	30
0.74	560 (≈8200 ft)	74	1.5	8	33.6
0.8	608 (≈6000 ft)	64	1.2	7.6	36.5
1.0	760 (sea level)	46	0.89	6.8	45.6
1.5*	1140	26	0.5	5.9	68.4
2*	1520	19	0.36	5.5	91.2
3*	2280	12	0.23	5.2	136

*ATA or *atmospheres absolute*. ATA = *atmospheric pressure* + *water pressure*. Hyperbaric oxygen chamber protocols apply ATA. Many protocols use depths from 2.0 to 2.5 ATA, but some conditions such as gas embolus or carbon monoxide poisoning may require depths to 3.0 ATA.[238] 2 ATA ≈ 33 feet of sea water (fsw) ≈ 1520 mm Hg *ambient pressure*.

atm, Atmospheres (1 atm = 760 mm Hg); *v/v%,* volume percent.

Modified from Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft J. Anesthesia vaporizers. In: Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft J, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1993:69–71.

HIGHER ALTITUDE. As previously discussed, vapor pressure is independent of barometric pressure. Therefore as altitude increases and barometric pressure declines, the partial pressure of anesthetic agent in the vaporizing chamber remains constant despite decreases in the partial pressures of other constituent breathing gases and the total ambient pressure. This situation results in significantly increased volume percent concentration of anesthetic agent within the vaporizing chamber and at the outlet of the vaporizer (see Table 22.4). However, because anesthetic depth is determined by the *partial pressure* of volatile agent in the brain, the clinical impact is minor (see MAPP in Table 22.1).

Let us consider an example of moving a vaporizer from sea level to higher altitude. With a constant dial setting of 0.89%, at 1 atm, a well-calibrated isoflurane variable bypass vaporizer would deliver 0.89 *v*/*v*% isoflurane, and the partial pressure of isoflurane output would be 6.8 mm Hg. Assume that we maintain the same dial setting and lower the atmospheric pressure to 0.66 atm or 502 mm Hg (roughly equivalent to an elevation of 10,000 feet. This results result in an increase in the isoflurane concentration output to 1.75% (a 97% increase), but the partial pressure increases to only 8.8 mm Hg (a 29% increase). A similar change in output partial pressure at sea level, in terms of volume percent, would correspond to an isoflurane concentration increase of only 0.2%. So while the anesthetic concentration (*v*/*v*%) changes significantly in this example, it is the partial pressure of volatile agent in the brain that is ultimately responsible for anesthetic depth, and that change is minimal.

As described earlier, MAC values for contemporary inhalational anesthetic agents were determined at sea level. Similarly, anesthetic vaporizers are calibrated at sea level, thus ensuring that vaporizer output (*v*/*v*%) matches the dial setting. Using the isoflurane data shown in Table 22.4 as an example, one can see how confusion may arise when thinking of MAC in terms of volume percent and considering barometric change.

The MAPP at altitude is the same as at sea level because it is a partial pressure, whereas the MAC increases because it is a simple concentration. Table 22.4 shows that the *partial pressure output* of a variable bypass vaporizer changes proportionally less than the volume percent concentration as altitude increases. Because the partial pressure of volatile agent determines anesthetic depth, the operator *does not* need to adjust the dial to a higher setting to compensate for barometric pressure. This holds true for variable bypass vaporizers, but not for the desflurane Tec 6–style vaporizer (see later).

HYPERBARIC CONDITIONS. Although anesthesia is sometimes delivered in *hyperbaric conditions*, intravenous anesthesia is easier to deliver in this setting. Under hyperbaric conditions, the partial pressure of volatile anesthetic in the vaporizing chamber remains constant despite an increase in ambient pressure and the partial pressure of the other gases. The net theoretical effects on variable bypass vaporizers are a significant decrease in anesthetic concentration (*v*/*v*%) and a mild decrease in partial pressure output. However, the partial pressure of halothane was noted to increase slightly with increasing barometric pressure under experimental conditions.[95] Possible explanations for this finding include the effect of increased atmospheric gas density on the flow of gas through the vaporizer and the increased thermal conductivity of air at higher pressure. The clinical significance of these small changes in partial pressure output under hyperbaric conditions is unclear.

OTHER SAFETY FEATURES. Contemporary variable bypass vaporizers incorporate many other safety features. Agent-specific, keyed filling devices help prevent filling with the wrong agent. Overfilling is minimized by locating the filler port at the maximum safe liquid level. Modern vaporizers are firmly secured to a manifold on the anesthesia workstation to prevent tipping. Contemporary interlock systems prevent the administration of more than one inhaled anesthetic agent. However, virtually all safety systems have vulnerabilities, so it remains important to understand these potential hazards.

MISFILLING. Misfilling of anesthetic vaporizers with the wrong agent can result in an overdose or underdose of volatile anesthetic.[96,97] Vaporizer output in these circumstances depends on the erroneous agent's saturated vapor pressure and the splitting ratio of the misfilled vaporizer, since these key parameters must normally be matched to ensure accurate agent delivery (see earlier discussion). Similarly, mixtures of anesthetic agents can also result in harmful dosing.[60] Agent-specific filling devices have reduced, but not eliminated, misfilling. The potential for misfilling exists even in vaporizers equipped with keyed fillers,[98-100] and current standards do not mandate their use.[20] The use of breathing circuit gas analysis may alert the user to misfilling. If a variable bypass vaporizer for isoflurane or sevoflurane is misfilled with desflurane, a substantial overdose could occur because of the high vapor pressure of desflurane (see Fig. 22.16).

CONTAMINATION. Although rarely reported, contamination of anesthetic vaporizer contents has occurred. In one instance, organic contaminants (some volatile) in a bottle of isoflurane were detected because of an abnormal acrid odor emanating from the vaporizer.[101] In another report, water accumulation within sevoflurane vaporizers allowed bacteria *(Staphylococcus epidermidis)* to grow and metabolize liquid sevoflurane to volatile and potentially toxic compounds.[101a]

TIPPING. Tipping of a variable bypass vaporizer can occur when it is incorrectly removed, transported, or replaced. Excessive tipping can allow the liquid agent to enter the bypass chamber and cause an extremely high output.[102] Although some vaporizers are more sensitive than others, most should not be used after tipping until they have been flushed for a period of time at high flow rates. Manufacturers' instructions differ regarding their post-tipping procedures, so it is best to refer to each specific user manual.[68,70,71,94] A gas analyzer should be used to assess vaporizer output before replacing into clinical use. The Dräger Vapor and D-Vapor series vaporizers have a transport ("T") dial setting that isolates the vaporizer chamber from the bypass chamber to eliminate the possibility of internal overflow during transport.[68]

OVERFILLING. Improper filling procedures, combined with failure of the vaporizer sight glass, can cause patient overdose. If overfilled, liquid anesthetic may enter the bypass chamber, and a harmful dose of vapor could be delivered to the common gas outlet.[103] It is a requirement that contemporary vaporizers be designed so that they cannot be overfilled when they are used in a normal operating position.[20] Side-fill variable bypass vaporizers, as opposed to top-fill devices, largely prevent overfilling because the maximum safe level is predetermined by the position of the filler port (see Fig. 22.19). In addition, some vaporizers are equipped with an overflow hole as an additional safeguard.[68] Overfilling can still occur if the vaporizer is tipped or turned on while filling, or air enters at the bottle neck and filler adapter caused by a loose or faulty seal.[103-106]

LEAKS. Vaporizers and the vaporizer-machine interface are potential sources of gas leaks that can result in patient awareness during inhaled anesthesia. Loose filler caps, filler plugs, and drain valves are probably the most common sources of leaks. Such a leak may be obvious (e.g., an audible gas leak with spillage of anesthetic agent) or have a more subtle presentation (such as a lower than expected inhaled agent concentration, or the odor of anesthetic gas).[107,108] Another common source of gas leak occurs at the junction of the vaporizer and the mounting bracket or manifold, where broken mounting assemblies or foreign bodies can compromise the seal between the vaporizer and its point of attachment.[109-112] Gas leaks can also occur within the vaporizer itself as a result of mechanical failure.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSIDERATIONS. Anesthesia delivery has become more common outside the operating rooms, and one challenging location is the magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) suite. The presence of a powerful magnetic field, significant noise pollution, and limited access to the patient during the procedure all complicate care in this setting. The anesthesia provider must appreciate the extremely powerful magnetic fields in these locations and know that only nonferrous (MRI-compatible) equipment can be used. Although some anesthesia vaporizers may appear nonferrous by testing with a horseshoe magnet, they may indeed contain substantial internal ferrous components. Inappropriate use of such devices in an MRI suite may turn them into dangerous missiles if left unsecured.[113]

Desflurane Vaporizer. Because of its unique physical characteristics, accurate delivery of desflurane required a different approach to vaporizer design. The Datex-Ohmeda Tec 6 vaporizer was released into clinical use in the early 1990s. The Tec 6 is an electrically heated, pressurized device specifically designed to deliver desflurane (Fig. 22.25).[114,115] Dräger Medical received approval from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the D-Vapor, its version of the desflurane vaporizer in 2004. The operating principles apply to either system, although the discussion refers to the Tec 6 specifically. The Datex-Ohmeda Aladin cassette vaporizer and the Maquet vaporizers are discussed separately because their operating principles are different.

UNSUITABILITY OF CONTEMPORARY VARIABLE BYPASS VAPORIZERS FOR CONTROLLED VAPORIZATION OF DESFLURANE. Desflurane's high volatility and moderate potency (see Table 22.1) preclude its use with contemporary variable bypass vaporizers for three main reasons[114]:

1. *Desflurane's high rate of evaporation would require excessive diluting gas (bypass chamber) flow.* The vapor pressure of desflurane is 669 mm Hg at 20°C (68°F), which is significantly higher than other inhaled anesthetic agents (see Fig. 22.16).[116] At 1 atm and 20°C, 100 mL/min passing through the vaporizing chamber would entrain 735 mL/min of desflurane (as compared with 29, 46, and 47 mL/min of enflurane, isoflurane, and halothane, respectively).[114] To produce a 1% desflurane output, the amount of bypass flow required to dilute the large volume of desflurane-saturated anesthetic vapor would be approximately 73 L/min (in contrast to 5 L/min or less for the other three agents). Prohibitively high bypass chamber flow rates would be required to dilute the vaporizing chamber output to clinical concentrations.
2. *Desflurane's high rate of evaporation would cause substantial anesthetic cooling.* Variable bypass vaporizers require ambient heat to offset evaporative cooling. Although the latent heat of vaporization for desflurane

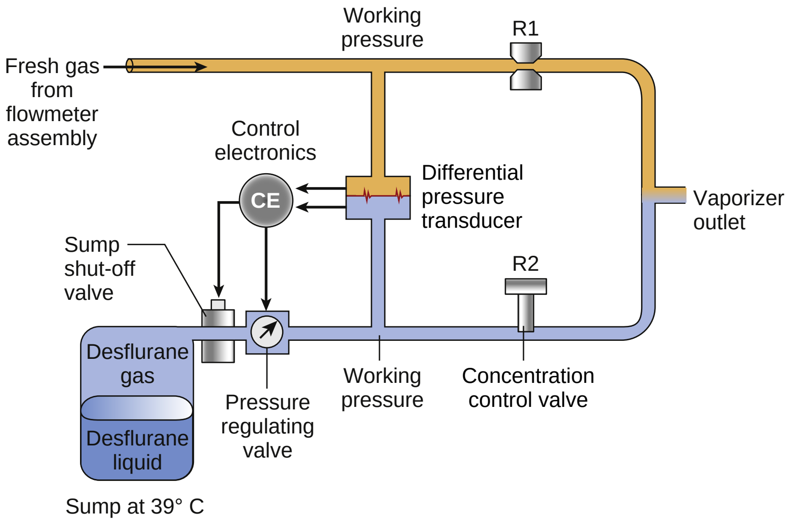


Fig. 22.25 Simplified schematic of the Tec 6 desflurane vaporizer (Datex-Ohmeda, Madison, WI). See text for details. (From Andrews JJ. *Operating Principles of the Ohmeda Tec 6 Desflurane Vaporizer: A Collection of Twelve Color Illustrations.* Washington, DC: Library of Congress; 1996.)

is approximately equal to that of enflurane, isoflurane, and halothane, its MAC is much higher. The amount of desflurane required to be vaporized over a given period is considerably greater than that of the other inhaled anesthetics. Supplying desflurane in equivalent MAC concentrations would lead to excessive cooling of the vaporizer and reduced output without an external heat source. Because of the broad range of temperatures seen in the clinical setting and desflurane's steep vapor pressure–versus-temperature curve (see Fig. 22.16), desflurane delivery would not be stable in a conventional variable bypass vaporizer.[114]

3. *Desflurane is more likely to boil.* The boiling point of desflurane is 22.8°C (73°F) at 1 atm. This temperature is at the higher end of normal operating room temperatures. If the anesthetic agent were to boil within a variable bypass–type vaporizer, the output would be uncontrollable. The amount of vapor produced would be limited only by heat transfer to the desflurane liquid, which depends upon the specific heat and thermal conductivity of the vaporizer (see discussion above).[114]

OPERATING PRINCIPLES OF THE TEC 6 AND TEC 6 PLUS. The Tec 6 desflurane vaporizer was the first clinically available vaporizer to be electrically heated and pressurized, making many aspects of the internal design and operating principles radically different from variable bypass vaporizers, The Tec 6 is probably more accurately described as a dual-gas blender than as a vaporizer. A simplified schematic of the Tec 6 is shown in Fig. 22.25. The vaporizer has two independent gas circuits arranged in parallel. The fresh gas circuit is shown in *orange*, and the vapor circuit is shown in *blue.* Fresh gas from the flowmeters enters at the fresh gas inlet, passes through a fixed restrictor (R1), and exits at the vaporizer gas outlet. The vapor circuit originates at the desflurane sump, which is a reservoir of desflurane vapor. It is electrically heated to 39°C, a temperature much higher than desflurane's boiling point. At 39°C, the vapor pressure in the sump is approximately 1300 mm Hg (~2 atm).[117] Just downstream from the sump is the shut-off valve. After the vaporizer warms up, the shut-off valve fully opens when the concentration control valve is turned to the "on" position.

TABLE 22.5 Fresh Gas Flow Rate Versus Working Pressure in the Tec 6 Desflurane Vaporizer

Fresh Gas Flow Rate (L/min)	Working Pressure at R1 and R2 (mm Hg)
1	7.4
5	37.0
10	74.0

From Andrews JJ, Johnston RV Jr. The new Tec 6 desflurane vaporizer. *Anesth Analg.* 1993;76:1338.

A pressure-regulating valve located downstream from the shut-off valve down regulates the pressure to the pressure of the background gas. The operator controls the output of desflurane by adjusting the concentration control valve (R2), which is a variable restrictor.[114]

The vapor flow through R2 joins the fresh gas flow through R1 at a point downstream from the restrictors. Until this point, the two circuits are physically separated. They are interfaced pneumatically and electronically, however, through differential pressure transducers, a control electronics system, and a pressure-regulating valve. When fresh gas flows past the fixed restrictor R1, a specific backpressure proportional to the flow rate pushes against the diaphragm of the differential pressure transducer. The transducer relays the pressure difference between the fresh gas circuit and the desflurane vapor circuit to the control electronics system. The control system tunes the pressure-regulating valve so that the pressure in the vapor circuit equals the pressure in the fresh gas circuit. This equalized pressure supplying R1 and R2 is the working pressure, which is constant at a fixed fresh gas flow rate. If the operator increases the fresh gas flow rate, more backpressure will be exerted on the diaphragm of the pressure transducer, and the working pressure of the vaporizer will increase.[114] Table 22.5 shows the linear relationship between fresh gas flow rate and working pressure for a typical Tec 6 vaporizer.

The following are two specific examples to demonstrate the operating principles of the Tec 6:[114]

TABLE 22.6 Dial Setting Versus Flow Through Restrictor R2 at 1 L/min Fresh Gas Flow in the Tec 6 Desflurane Vaporizer

Dial Setting (vol%)	Approximate Vapor Flow Rate Through R2 (mL/min)
1	10
6	64
12	136
18	220

From Andrews JJ, Johnston RV Jr. The new Tec 6 desflurane vaporizer. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:1338.

Example A: *Constant fresh gas flow rate of 1 L/min with an increase in the dial setting.* With a fresh gas flow rate of 1 L/min, the pressure supplying R1 and R2 is 7.4 mm Hg. As the operator increases the dial setting, the opening at R2 becomes larger, thereby allowing more vapor to pass through R2. Specific vapor flow values at different dial settings are shown in Table 22.6.

Example B: *Constant dial setting with an increase in fresh gas flow from 1 to 10 L/min.* At a fresh gas flow rate of 1 L/min, the working pressure is 7.4 mm Hg, and at a dial setting of 6%, the vapor flow rate through R2 is 64 mL/min (see Tables 22.5 and 22.6). With a 10-fold increase in the fresh gas flow rate, the working pressure increases to 74 mm Hg. Because R2 is supplied by 10 times more pressure, the vapor flow rate through R2 increases 10-fold to 640 mL/min. Both fresh gas flow and vapor flow increase proportionally, so vaporizer output is constant.

FACTORS THAT INFLUENCE TEC 6 DESFLURANE VAPORIZER OUTPUT. Barometric pressure and carrier gas composition influence the Tec 6 vaporizer output.

HIGHER ALTITUDE. Although ambient pressure changes affect the volume percent output of *variable bypass vaporizers* significantly, the effect on partial pressure output is minimal (and recall that the partial pressure of volatile agent in brain tissue is the main determinant of anesthetic depth). By contrast, the partial pressure output of Tec 6 style desflurane vaporizers is significantly affected by altitude, as can be seen in Table 22.4. One must remember that the Tec 6 device is more accurately described as a dual-gas blender than a vaporizer. Regardless of ambient pressure, the Tec 6 will maintain a constant volume percent output (*v*/*v*%), *not a constant partial pressure*. This means that at high altitudes, the partial pressure of desflurane will decrease in proportion to the reduction in atmospheric pressure divided by the calibration pressure (normally 760 mm Hg) per the following formula:

$$\text{Required dial setting } (\%) = \text{Normal dial setting} \times (760 \text{ mm Hg}) \;/\; [\text{Ambient pressure (mm Hg)}]$$

For example, at an altitude of 2000 m, or 6564 feet, where the ambient pressure is 608 mm Hg, the operator must advance the concentration control dial from 10% to 12.5% to maintain the required anesthetic partial pressure. In hyperbaric settings, the operator must decrease the dial setting to prevent delivery of an overdose. At 2 atm or 1520 mm Hg of pressure, the desflurane output in mm Hg is twice that at sea level (91.2 vs. 45.6 mm Hg).

CARRIER GAS COMPOSITION. Vaporizer output most closely matches the dial setting when oxygen is the carrier gas because the Tec 6 vaporizer is calibrated with 100% oxygen. When a carrier gas other than 100% oxygen is used at low flow rates, a clear trend toward reduction in vaporizer output emerges. This reduction correlates with the decrease in viscosity of the carrier gas. Nitrous oxide is less viscous than oxygen, and generates lower backpressure upstream of resistor R1 (see Fig. 22.25). As a result, the working pressure is reduced. At low flow rates with nitrous oxide as the carrier gas, vaporizer output is approximately 20% less than the dial setting.

SAFETY FEATURES. Because desflurane's vapor pressure is nearly 1 atm, misfilling a variable bypass vaporizer with desflurane could theoretically result in both overdose and creation of a hypoxic gas mixture. Like most of its contemporaries, the desflurane vaporizer has a unique, anesthetic-specific filling system to minimize this potential hazard. Each desflurane bottle has a "SAF-T-FILL" adapter intended to prevent use with traditional vaporizers. The SAF-T-FILL is essentially a spring-loaded valve that seals the bottle until the bayonet fitment is fully engaged in the filler port of a desflurane vaporizer.[119] This mechanism also helps guard against evaporative loss of agent during storage. The adapter has an O-ring on the tip to minimize spillage during filling.[119a] Thus the SAF-T-FILL system helps prevent both misfilling of variable bypass vaporizers and leakage of desflurane to the atmosphere.[119b]

Major vaporizer faults cause the shut-off valve located just downstream from the desflurane sump (see Fig. 22.25) to close and terminate output. The valve closes, and a no-output alarm is activated, if any of the following conditions occur: (1) the anesthetic level decreases to less than 20 mL, (2) the vaporizer is tilted, (3) a power failure occurs, or (4) the pressure difference between the vapor and fresh gas circuits exceeds a specified tolerance. Although such automated safeguards can enhance patient safety, they may have unintended consequences. For example, a previous generation of Datex-Ohmeda D-Tec Plus vaporizer was reported to be incompatible with a certain model of Dräger anesthesia machine.[120] By design, this workstation interrupted fresh gas flow during the inspiratory phase of volume control ventilation as a means of fresh gas decoupling. These purposeful fresh gas flow interruptions caused an alarm and inappropriate termination of vaporizer output. Although the vaporizer was subsequently modified, this example serves as a reminder that new technology can bring about new problems.

SUMMARY. The Tec 6 and Dräger D-Vapor vaporizers are electrically heated, thermostatically controlled, constant-temperature, pressurized, electromechanically coupled dual-circuit, gas vapor blenders. The pressure in the vapor circuit is electronically regulated to equal the pressure in the fresh gas circuit. At a constant fresh gas flow rate, the operator regulates vapor flow with a conventional concentration control dial. When the fresh gas flow rate increases, the working pressure increases proportionally. For a given concentration setting, even when varying the fresh gas flow rate, the vaporizer output is constant because the amount of flow through each circuit remains proportional.[114]

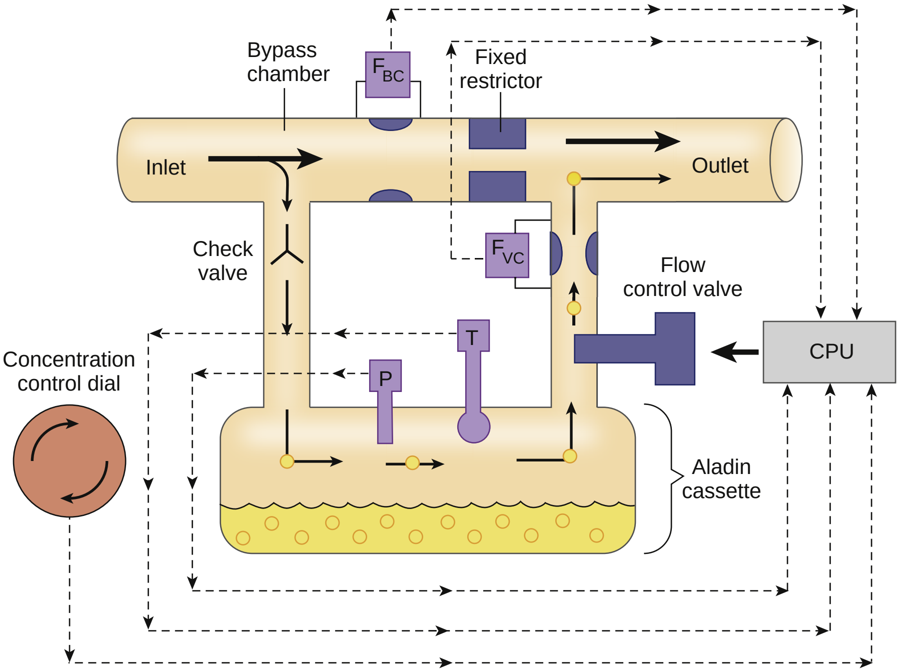


Fig. 22.26 Simplified schematic of Datex-Ohmeda Aladin cassette vaporizer (Datex-Ohmeda, Madison, WI). The black arrows inside the vaporizer represent flow from the flowmeters, and the yellow circles represent anesthetic vapor. The heart of the vaporizer is the electronically controlled flow control valve located in the outlet of the vaporizing chamber. *CPU,* Central processing unit; *F_{BC},* flow measurement unit that measures flow through the bypass chamber; *F_{VC},* flow measurement unit that measures flow through the vaporizing chamber; *P,* pressure sensor; *T,* temperature sensor. Please see text for additional details. (Modified from Andrews JJ. *Operating Principles of the Datex-Ohmeda Aladin Cassette Vaporizer: A Collection of Color Illustrations.* Washington, DC: Library of Congress; 2000.)

GE/Datex-Ohmeda Aladin and Aladin2 Cassette Vaporizers. The vaporizer system used in the GE Aisys anesthesia workstations (and some former Datex-Ohmeda models) is unique in that a single electronically controlled vaporizer is designed to deliver several different inhaled anesthetic agents. The vaporizer consists of a permanent internal control unit housed within the workstation and interchangeable cassettes that contain anesthetic liquid and serve as vaporizing chambers. The Aladin cassettes (now superseded by the Aladin2) are filled using agent-specific fillers and color-coded: red (halothane), orange (enflurane), purple (isoflurane), yellow (sevoflurane), and blue (desflurane). They are also magnetically coded to allow the anesthesia workstation to identify which cassette has been inserted.

Operationally, the Aladin cassette vaporizing system is best described, during most circumstances, as a computer-controlled variable bypass vaporizer (Fig. 22.26). It consists of a bypass section and vaporizing chamber, the latter of which is contained within the interchangeable cassette (Fig. 22.27). A fixed restrictor located in the bypass chamber causes gas flow from the inlet to split into two streams. One stream passes through the bypass chamber, and the other is diverted to the vaporizing chamber where it passes through a one-way check valve. This valve prevents retrograde flow of anesthetic vapor into the bypass chamber, and its presence is unique to the Aladin system. The one-way check valve is essential for precise delivery of desflurane (see below). Failure of the check valve to close can result in anesthetic overdose due to retrograde flow into the bypass chamber.

Within the cassette, anesthetic agent vaporizes freely to saturated vapor pressure. A flow control valve, modulated by a central processing unit (CPU), precisely meters the amount of gas flow through the vaporizing chamber, which then rejoins the bypass flow.[44] The CPU receives input from multiple sources: the concentration control dial, pressure and temperature sensors inside the vaporizing chamber, and flow sensors in the bypass and vaporizing chambers. The CPU also receives input from the flowmeters regarding the carrier gas composition, which can affect vaporizer output as described above. Using these data, the CPU precisely regulates fresh gas flow through the vaporizing chamber to obtain the desired vapor concentration output.[121]

As mentioned in the discussion of the Tec 6, controlled vaporization of desflurane presents a unique challenge, particularly when room temperature is higher than the boiling point (22.8°C [73°F]). If the desflurane were to boil, the pressure inside the vaporizing chamber would exceed ambient pressure. When vaporizing chamber pressure exceeds that in the bypass chamber, the one-way check valve closes and prevents carrier gas from entering the cassette. Carrier gas passes straight through the bypass chamber and its flow sensor. Under these conditions, the CPU adjusts the flow control valve to meter in the appropriate flow of pure desflurane vapor needed to achieve the desired final concentration. The vaporizer then begins functioning as an injector, as opposed to resembling a variable bypass unit.

During delivery of inhaled agents at high fresh gas flow rates and/or high dial settings, large quantities of anesthetic liquid are rapidly vaporized. As a result, the temperature of the vaporizer sump decreases due to evaporative

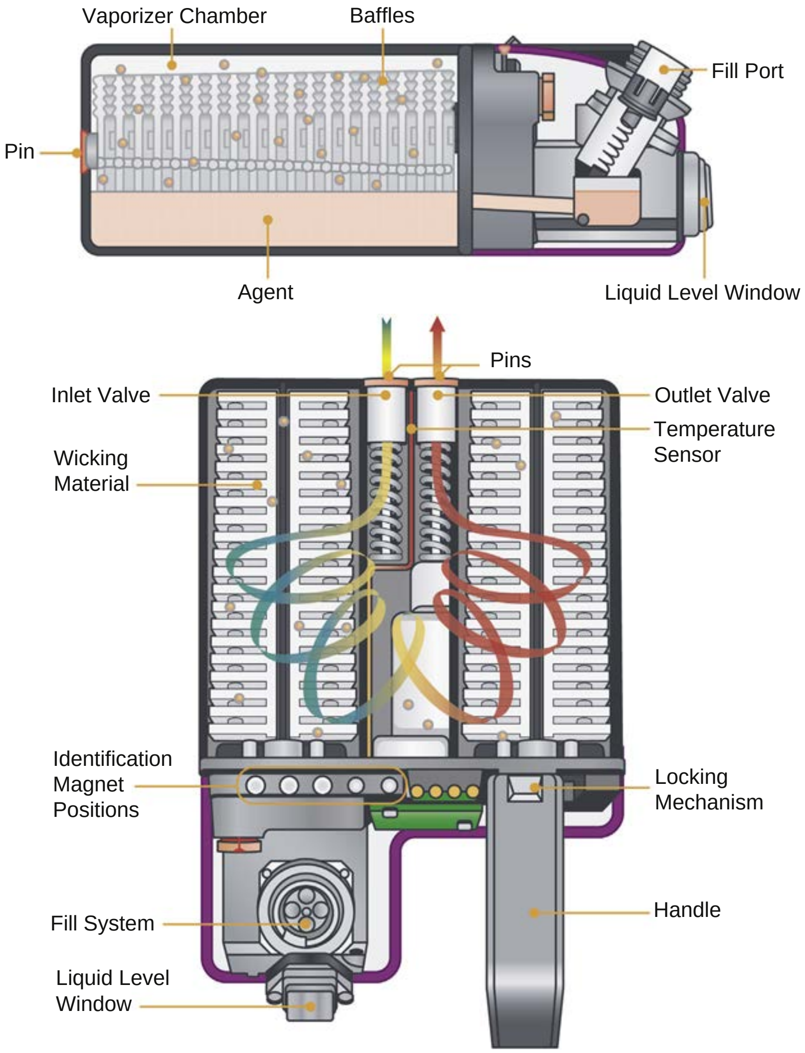


Fig. 22.27 Gas flow and safety features of the Aladin2 cassette. Top, side view illustrating filling system and baffles. Bottom, top view showing safety features, wicks, and gas flow during vapor uptake. (From GE HealthCare.)

cooling. To offset this cooling effect, some workstations are equipped with a fan that forces warmed air from a resistor across the cassette to raise its temperature when necessary. The fan is activated during two common clinical situations: (1) desflurane induction and maintenance and (2) sevoflurane induction.

The Aladin vaporizing system incorporates many important safety features. Electronic control of the carrier gas ratio guards against delivery of a hypoxic gas mixture. This ensures that no less than 25% oxygen is delivered at the common gas outlet regardless of carrier gas composition *and* concentration of anesthetic agent. This feature is unique, since conventional oxygen–nitrous oxide proportioning systems are not affected by the concentration of potent inhaled anesthetic agents. The system is also equipped with a safety relief valve that opens when cassette pressure exceeds 2.5 atm (1899 mm Hg). When the Aladin cassette is removed from the workstation, valves close to prevent loss of fresh gas. Another valve prevents liquid anesthetic from entering the fresh gas line. The system also has an overfilling protection mechanism.[121a] Finally, the Aladin cassette is immune to tipping and has no restrictions on orientation during handling or storage.[121]

Injection-Type Vaporizers: Maquet and Dräger Direct Injection of Volatile Anesthetic. The Maquet vaporizer is an electronically controlled, injection-type vaporizer that is used exclusively with Maquet FLOW-i anesthesia workstations. Because these vaporizers are located upstream from the patient's breathing circuit, they are designated as out-of-circuit vaporizers, similar to the desflurane vaporizers and most variable bypass vaporizers. The Maquet injection vaporizers are agent-specific and available for isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane. Externally, the device has a lid, filling port, electronic level indicator, and alert indicators, but no concentration control dial. Vaporizer output adjustments are accomplished through an electronic interface on the workstation.

The Maquet vaporizer principle of operation is illustrated in Fig. 22.28. Gas from the anesthesia machine enters through the drive gas inlet and pressurizes a reservoir of liquid anesthetic. This pressure provides the force to drive

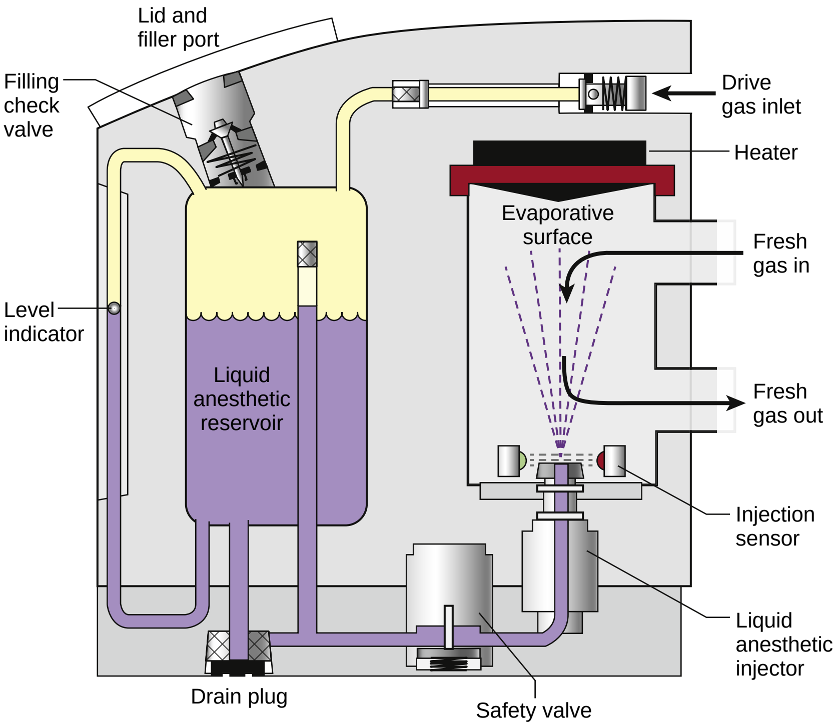


Fig. 22.28 The Maquet anesthetic vaporizer. Drive gas from the anesthesia machine is used to pressurize a liquid anesthetic reservoir. Under microprocessor control, liquid agent is injected into a vaporizing chamber. Injection is carefully monitored. A heated surface within the vaporizing chamber facilitates evaporation of the anesthetic agent. Fresh gas flows through the chamber and is enriched with anesthetic gas. A safety valve stops the flow of liquid agent in the case of vaporizer malfunction. (Personal communication, illustration adapted with permission from Maquet Critical Care, Solna, Sweden, January 14, 2013.)

liquid through the injector (and also minimizes evaporation within the reservoir chamber). Liquid anesthetic is injected into a heated vaporizing chamber in pulses that are under microprocessor control. Rapid evaporation occurs. Injection continues in small increments until the desired volume is obtained. The total amount injected in any given interval is based on the desired anesthetic concentration and the fresh gas flow through the vaporizer. A dedicated gas analysis line downstream from the vaporizer monitors the output. An optical sensor in the vaporizer monitors the integrity of the anesthetic injections (personal communication, Maquet Critical Care, January 14, 2013).

Fresh gas from the anesthesia workstation flows through the vaporizing chamber and is enriched with anesthetic agent. Although some of the injected liquid anesthetic evaporates while in flight within the vaporizing chamber, the remainder is deposited on a heated surface that ensures immediate evaporation. Heating of the evaporative surface is carefully regulated to compensate for evaporative cooling (personal communication, Maquet Critical Care, January 14, 2013).

During the daily workstation pre-use check, Maquet vaporizers are automatically tested with respect to functionality and leaks. A safety valve stops the flow of liquid agent in the event of vaporizer malfunction. The vaporizer is not vulnerable to tipping because it has no wicks to saturate, and agent cannot spill into the vaporizing chamber. The vaporizer can be filled during use, although no vaporizer output occurs during filling. An alarm triggers when the liquid anesthetic level is less than 10%, and a higher-priority alarm triggers when it reaches 5%. Limited data is available on the Maquet vaporizer's performance with different fresh gas flow rates,[121b] but the impact of changing barometric pressure, temperature, and fresh gas composition has not been reported.

Some Dräger anesthesia workstations are also equipped with vaporizers that function by the direct injection of volatile anesthetic (DIVA) principle (Fig. 22.29). Dräger DIVA vaporizers are agent specific. They consist of an interchangeable vaporizing module and a gas supply arrangement that is part of the workstation.[69a,121c] Liquid anesthetic agent is held in a reservoir. The liquid flows by gravity into a dosing chamber, where it is pressurized by gas supply from the workstation. The liquid passes through a dosing valve, and it is sprayed by a fuel injector into a heated vaporizing chamber. The anesthetic agent evaporates rapidly to its vapor pressure and is then conducted into the patient's breathing circuit under microprocessor control. The feedback control unit may be set to target a certain volatile agent concentration as a percentage of either the fresh gas stream or the patient's end-tidal gas.

Draw-Over Vaporizers in Contemporary Practice. As described above, most modern anesthesia workstations incorporate *plenum-type variable-bypass* vaporizers or other sophisticated units that require pressurized flow of carrier gases to drive vaporization and delivery. However, compressed medical gases (oxygen or air) are not available in many resource-constrained environments. *Draw-over* vaporizers remain a popular option for delivering anesthesia in such settings, including military field operations.[121d] They are characterized by (1) *in-circuit* location, (2)

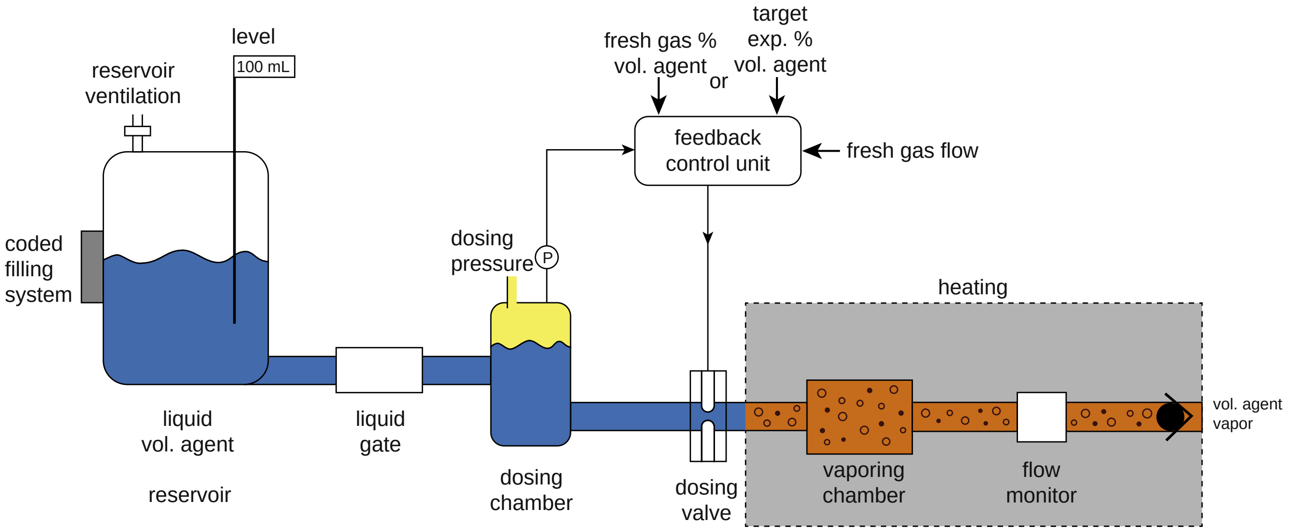


Fig. 22.29 Schematic of the Dräger DIVA vaporizer (Drägerwerk AG & Co. KGaA. Diagram reprinted with permission). The vaporizer consists of two modules: an interchangeable vaporizing module, and a gas supply module that is part of the anesthesia workstation. The vaporizing module includes a reservoir for liquid agent and a dosing chamber. The gas supply module consists of a feedback control unit that provides dosing pressure and control, as well as a system of valves. The valves may target vapor injection into either a mixing chamber (to mix with fresh gas flow) or directly into the breathing system (injection independent of fresh gas flow). See text for details.

low-resistance to gas flow, and (3) gas flow that is driven by negative downstream pressure (typically arising from the patient's respiratory effort, but potentially from a bellows or compressible bag). For a more thorough discussion of *draw-over* anesthesia technique in resource-limited settings, please see Chapter 2, Section 3. The basic design principles are worth a brief illustration.

The Oxford Miniature Vaporizer (OMV) is a stainless steel, variable-bypass, draw-over vaporizer that has been in use since 1968 and is particularly popular in the British Armed Forces.[121e] It has a robust, simple, and portable design and holds up to 50 mL of liquid anesthetic.[69b] A calibrated dial controls flow through an aperture between a slide valve and obturator located in the bypass chamber (Fig. 22.30).[121f] Closing the aperture directs more flow into the vaporizing chamber and increases output. Metal mesh wicks increase the surface area for vaporization yet add little resistance to gas flow. The OMV is not temperature compensated and output varies significantly with ambient temperature.[121g] It does feature a heat sink of water and ethylene glycol ("antifreeze") housed in the base to resist temperature swings. The OMV is not agent-specific, and different calibrated dials are available for halothane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane.[44] In order to deliver sufficient sevoflurane concentration for an inhaled induction, two OMVs must be used in series.[121h] Recently, the *Diamedica Draw-Over Vaporizer* (*DDV*) has been developed. Although similar in design to the OMV, the DDV tends to deliver more accurate results across a range of dial settings and ambient temperatures.[69a] It also has a larger reservoir (150 mL) for liquid agent and is available in two versions (halothane/isoflurane and sevoflurane).[121i]

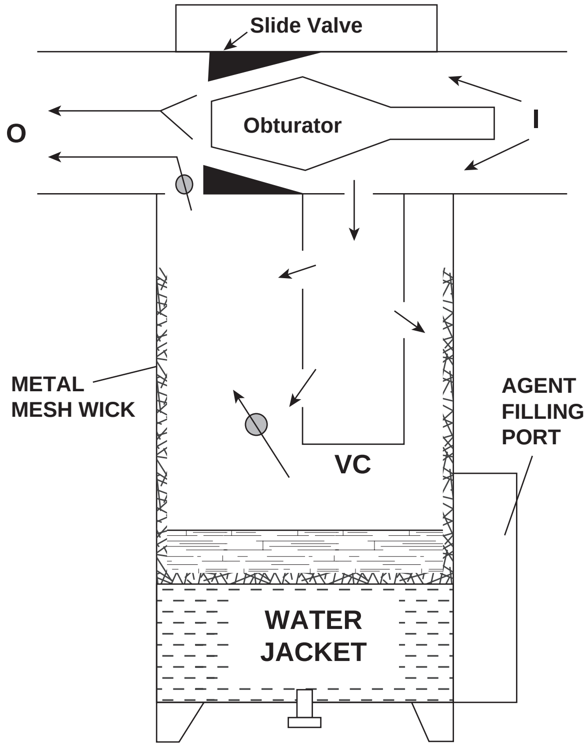


Fig. 22.30 **Oxford miniature vaporizer.** Gas flows from the inlet, *I*, through a slide valve and towards the outlet, *O*. A dial controls motion of an obturator that diverts flow to the vaporizing chamber, *VC*, and determines vaporizer output. (Redrawn from Dhulkhed V, Shetti A, Naik S, et al. Vapourisers: physical principles and classification. *Ind J Anaesth*. 2013;57[5]:455–419.)

Volatile Anesthetic Reflectors: AnaConDa and Similar Devices. There has been a resurgence of interest in providing inhaled volatile anesthetics to patients in locations outside of the operating room, such as the ICU, where commercial anesthesia workstations are not readily available.[121j] Indications for ICU delivery of volatile anesthetics include refractory bronchospasm and status epilepticus (see also Chapter 79), as well as a potential alternative to intravenous sedation.[121k] Barriers to providing volatile anesthesia in the intensive care setting include (1) rapid

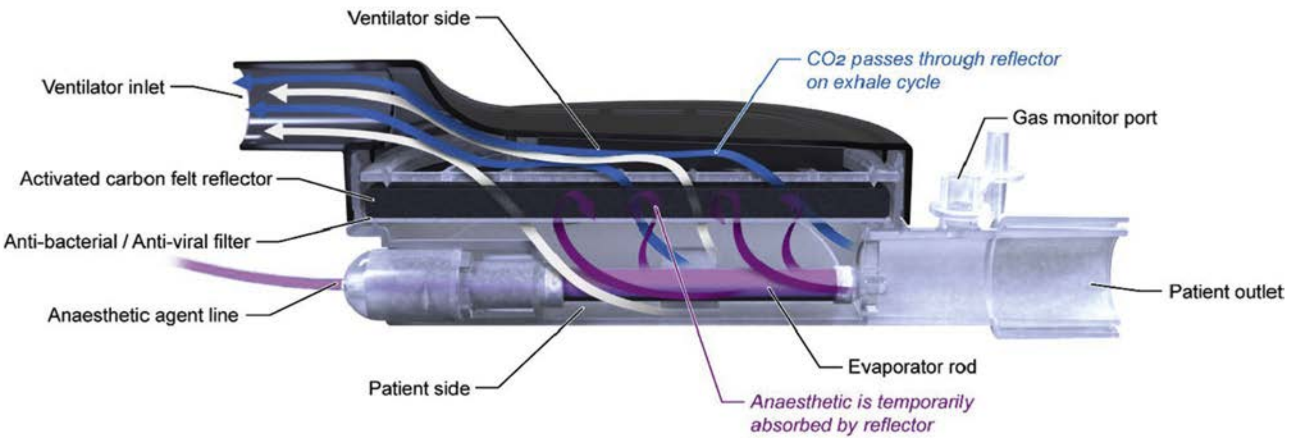

Ventilator side
Ventilator inlet
CO2 passes through reflector on exhale cycle
Gas monitor port
Activated carbon felt reflector
Anti-bacterial / Anti-viral filter
Patient outlet
Anaesthetic agent line
Evaporator rod
Patient side
Anaesthetic is temporarily absorbed by reflector

Fig. 22.31 **Anesthetic conserving device (AnaConDa) showing the flow of gas during exhalation.** (From Farrell R, Oomen G, Carey P. A technical review of the history, development and performance of the anaesthetic conserving device "AnaConDa" for delivering volatile anaesthetic in intensive and postoperative critical care. *J Clin Monitor Comput*. 2018;32[4]:595–604.)

consumption of volatile anesthetics due to the high gas flow rates of modern ICU ventilators, and (2) environmental safety and occupational health hazards due to atmospheric contamination and ineffective scavenging of waste gases.

One possible solution for ICU delivery of volatile anesthetics are *reflector*-style devices such as the *anesthetic conserving device* (AnaConDa) and *Mirus* device.[121l,121m] The AnaConDa is a single-use device based on a heat and moisture exchanger (HME) filter and does not require a power source or an anesthesia workstation (Fig. 22.31).[121n] Liquid volatile anesthetic (either isoflurane or sevoflurane) is injected into the device using a standard syringe pump and vaporized through a porous evaporator rod. The patient breathes in the anesthetic vapor normally. Upon exhalation, the breathing gases pass through several layers of filter. The first is an antimicrobial layer typical of HME filters. The second layer is activated carbon that rapidly adsorbs exhaled volatile anesthetic with high efficiency, while CO_2 and other exhaled gases pass through. Upon the next inspiratory cycle, the adsorbed volatile anesthetic molecules are released from the carbon filter and "reflected" towards the patient for re-breathing. The efficiency of the device is approximately 90%, with only 10% loss of vapor passing through the reflector to the ventilator waste gases. A gas sampling port allows for monitoring of end-tidal volatile agent concentration and titration of the syringe pump infusion rate. The Mirus device works on a similar concept, but is capable of delivering desflurane, and incorporates automatic control of end-tidal concentrations.[121l]

ANESTHETIC BREATHING CIRCUITS

Fresh gas departs from the supply system and enters the anesthetic breathing circuit through the fresh gas line. The functions of the breathing circuit are to deliver oxygen and other gases to the patient and to eliminate CO_2. The breathing system must contain a low-resistance conduit for gas flow, a reservoir that can meet the patient's inspiratory flow demand, and an expiratory port or valve to vent excess gas.[122] Beyond these fundamentals, circuits are categorized as those that use an absorber to eliminate CO_2 (the circle system) and those that do not (the Mapleson circuits).[123] Circle systems are the most common breathing circuits used for anesthetic delivery. However, certain Mapleson systems are used in anesthesia workstations, particularly in pediatrics, and they are often used by anesthesia providers during transport of patients, procedural sedation, liberation from tracheal intubation (the T-piece), and preoxygenation during out-of-the-operating-room airway management. Therefore both systems are discussed.

Leaks and obstruction represent the two most important hazards associated with the breathing circuit. Most of the time, these problems can be detected during the pre-use checkout of the workstation. However, a firm understanding of the components and function of the breathing system is critical if one is to perform a proper checkout and troubleshoot acute problems. The operator should also be aware of the various standards and alarms associated with this critical part of the anesthesia workstation.

Circle Breathing Systems

The circle breathing system is so named because it allows circular, unidirectional flow of gas facilitated by one-way valves. For many years, the overall design of the classic circle system changed little. Most anesthesia workstations had circle systems with similar schematics and components (Figs. 22.32–22.34). More recently, however, circle breathing systems have evolved along with the technological complexity of workstations. These changes have resulted from efforts to improve patient safety with features such as integrated fresh gas decoupling during positive-pressure ventilation.

The circle system consists of several essential components, including (1) a fresh gas inflow source, (2) inspiratory and expiratory unidirectional valves, (3) inspiratory and expiratory corrugated tubes, (4) a Y-piece that connects to the patient, (5) an overflow or APL or "pop-off" valve, (6) a reservoir or breathing bag, and (7) a canister containing a CO_2 absorbent (see Fig. 22.32). Several additional components are added to enhance patient safety, including a circuit pressure sensor, a pressure gauge, an expiratory (and possibly an inspiratory) flow sensor, and an inspired oxygen concentration sensor. A separate positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) valve may be present. Circle

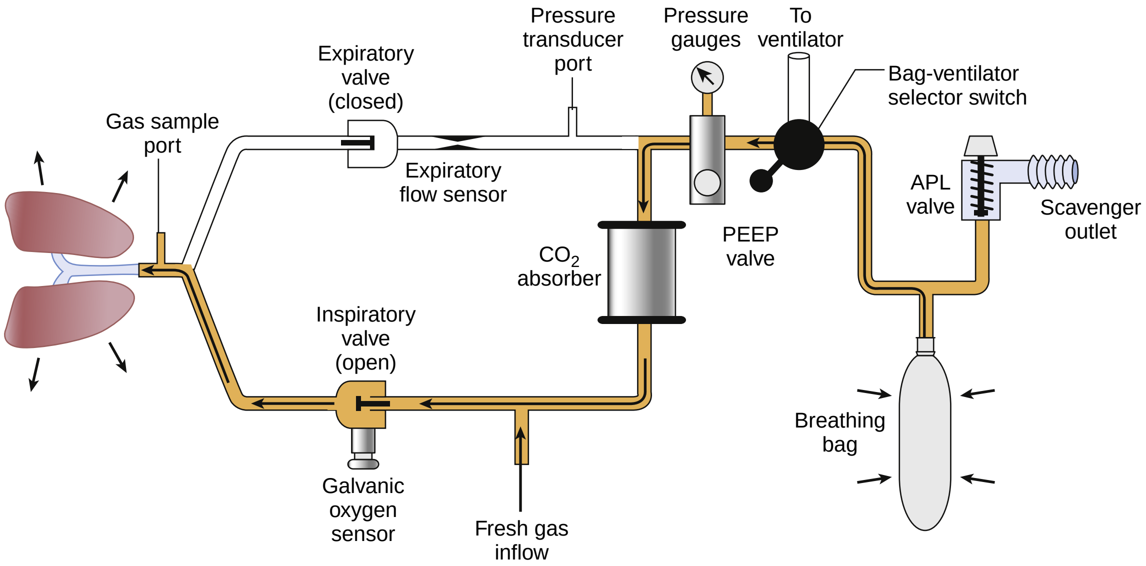

Gas sample port
Expiratory valve (closed)
Pressure transducer port
Pressure gauges
To ventilator
Bag-ventilator selector switch
Expiratory flow sensor
APL valve
Scavenger outlet
PEEP valve
CO_2 absorber
Inspiratory valve (open)
Breathing bag
Galvanic oxygen sensor
Fresh gas inflow

Fig. 22.32 Classic circle breathing system. Spontaneous breathing-inspiratory phase (ventilator not shown). Gas is drawn by the patient from the breathing bag and through the carbon dioxide *(CO_2)* absorber. It is then mixed with the fresh gas inflow from the gas supply system, traverses the inspiratory valve, and flows to the patient. The expiratory valve prevents rebreathing by not allowing flow to bypass the CO_2 absorber. *APL,* Adjustable pressure-limiting; *PEEP,* positive end-expiratory pressure. (Courtesy Dr. Michael A. Olympio; modified with his permission.)

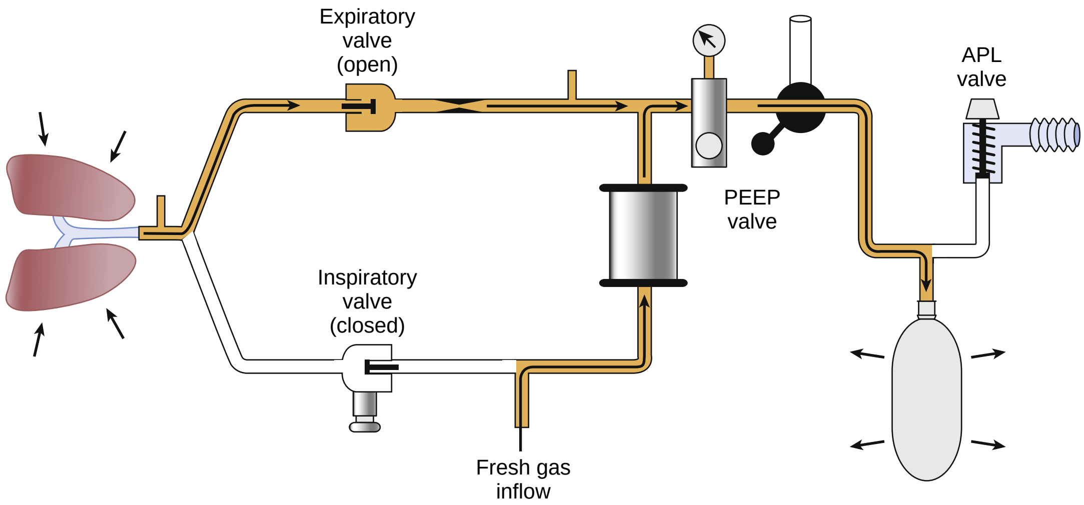

Expiratory valve (open)
APL valve
PEEP valve
Inspiratory valve (closed)
Fresh gas inflow

Fig. 22.33 Spontaneous breathing: early expiratory phase. The inspiratory unidirectional valve ensures that all exhaled carbon dioxide (CO_2)–containing gas flows toward the breathing bag and adjustable pressure-limiting *(APL)* valve before being scrubbed of CO_2. Fresh gas continues to flow, but now in retrograde fashion, and combines with the exhaled breath. The APL valve remains closed in this example because circuit pressure is still lower than the practitioner-set APL valve pressure threshold (i.e., 10 cm H_2O). *PEEP,* Positive end-expiratory pressure. (Courtesy Dr. Michael A. Olympio; modified with his permission.)

systems must allow for spontaneous ventilation, manual ventilation, and positive-pressure mechanical ventilation, and therefore must function with both the anesthesia reservoir bag and ventilator. The fresh gas inflow enters the circle by a connection from the common gas outlet of the anesthesia machine.

Some of the main advantages of the circle system include (1) maintenance of relatively stable inspired gas concentrations; (2) conservation of respiratory heat and moisture, and anesthetic gases; (3) elimination of CO_2; and (4) prevention of operating room pollution. The capability to rebreathe exhaled gases is a unique aspect of circle systems as compared with ICU ventilators. Carbon dioxide is efficiently removed to allow safe rebreathing of exhaled gases. Waste gas, which is composed of excess carrier gas, anesthetic agent, and CO_2, is scavenged and eliminated.

Circle breathing systems have several disadvantages. First, they have a complex design that may consist of ten or more individual connections. These multiple links set the stage for misconnections, disconnections, obstructions, and leaks. In a closed-claim analysis of adverse anesthetic outcomes arising from gas delivery equipment, 39% of malpractice claims resulted from breathing circuit misconnections or disconnection.[124] Malfunction of unidirectional valves can be life-threatening. The circle breathing system is large and compliant when compared with the Mapleson systems, and this property may compromise tidal volume

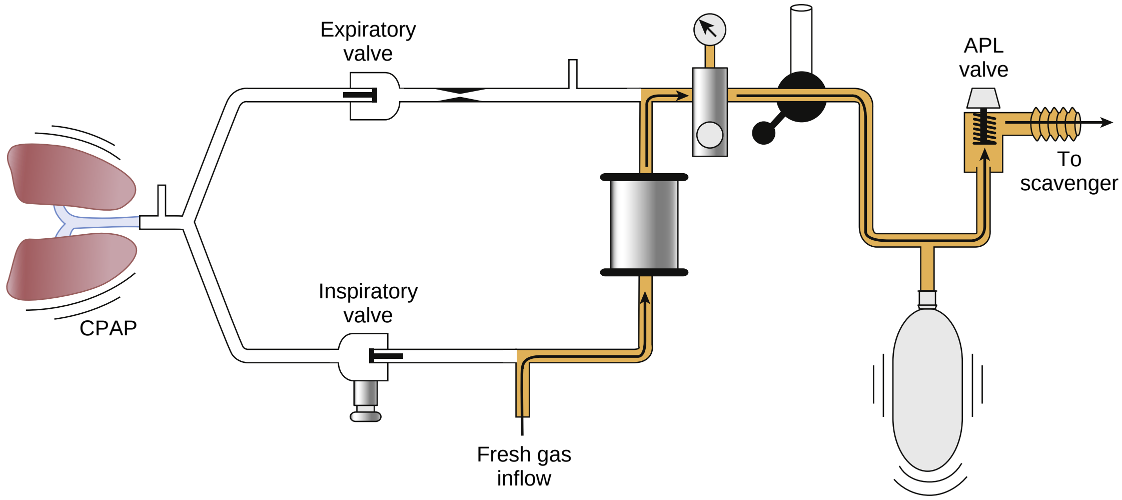


Fig. 22.34 Spontaneous breathing: end-expiratory phase with continuous positive airway pressure *(CPAP)*. Fresh gas continues to flow into the circuit generating pressure that maintains distention of the lungs (CPAP) and the breathing bag. Once the circuit pressure exceeds the adjustable pressure-limiting *(APL)* valve's set threshold (i.e., 10 cm H_2O), the valve opens, and excess gas flow is vented to the scavenger. (Courtesy Dr. Michael A. Olympio; modified with his permission.)

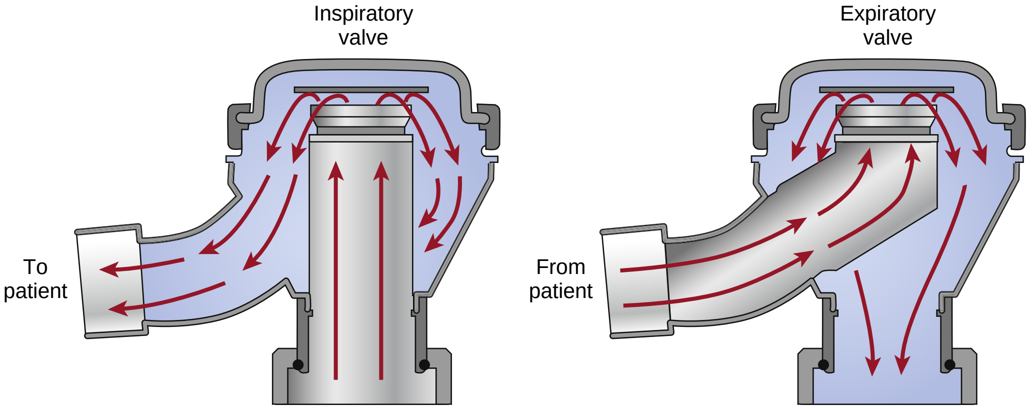


Fig. 22.35 Circle breathing system unidirectional valves. (Modified from Yoder M. Absorbers and breathing systems. In: *Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems*. Telford, PA: Dräger Medical; 2009:83–126.)

delivery during controlled ventilation. Finally, because circle breathing systems use a CO_2 absorber, anesthetic degradation can occur (see section on Carbon Dioxide Absorbers).[125] Specific perils associated with each component of the circle system are discussed in detail in the sections to follow.

Mechanical Components of the Circle Breathing System

Unidirectional Valves. The one-way valves are essential elements of the circle breathing system (Fig. 22.35). They are constructed to resist the humidity that sometimes accumulates in the breathing system. However, these usually reliable valves can occasionally fail during use. The expiratory valve seems to be more vulnerable because it is subject to greater moisture exposure. If a unidirectional valve sticks in the open position, inappropriate rebreathing of CO_2 may occur.[125a] Capnography may help with diagnosis, as each valve demonstrates a characteristic CO_2 waveform when incompetent.[126,126a] If the valves are stuck shut, total occlusion of the circuit can result. An expiratory valve stuck in the closed position can lead to barotrauma. Assessing for proper unidirectional valve function should be part of the anesthesia workstation pre-use check out procedure. Anesthesia machines are constructed so that valve function and motion can either be visibly assessed, or malfunction is indicated by the workstation.[11]

Adjustable Pressure-Limiting Valve. The APL valve is an operator-adjustable relief valve that vents excess breathing circuit gas to the scavenging system and provides control of the breathing system pressure during spontaneous and manual modes of ventilation. Switching the workstation to a ventilator mode excludes or closes the valve.[127] Several other common names exist for these devices, including "pop-off" valve and pressure relief valve.[122] The two basic types of APL valves are the variable-orifice (or variable-resistor) type and the pressure-regulating type. The variable-orifice type functions as a needle valve, much like a flow control valve (Fig. 22.36). The operator adjusts the outlet orifice size, so the resultant breathing system pressure at any given adjustment is directly related to the fresh gas flow rate. Modern machines now mostly use pressure-regulating type APL valves (Fig. 22.37). This type of APL valve has an adjustable internal spring and an external scale indicating the approximate opening pressure. When the pressure in the system exceeds spring tension, a disk opens and gas is vented (see Fig. 22.37*B*). Waste gas is prevented from returning from the scavenging system by a downstream check valve. By adjusting spring tension, the operator can choose the desired maximal circuit pressure in manual mode.[38,122] Unlike variable-orifice type valves, the pressure-regulating APL valves are designed to maintain stable circuit pressure even as fresh gas flow is increased. This type of valve usually has a fully open (to atmosphere) position for spontaneous breathing (see Fig. 22.37*C*). Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) can be more reliably controlled using this type of APL valve.

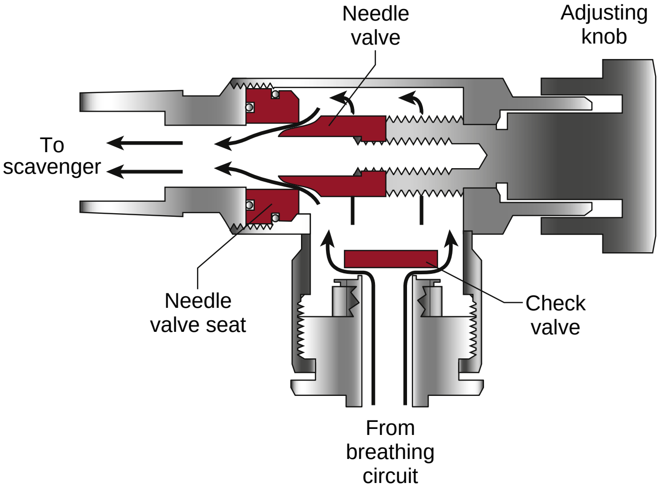


Fig. 22.36 Adjustable pressure-limiting valve: variable orifice type. A weighted check valve prevents gas from flowing backward after being sent to the scavenger. A variable orifice needle valve controls rate of gas egress from the breathing circuit, thereby controlling the circuit pressure. At any given adjusted valve orifice, the pressure in the circuit will depend on the fresh gas flow rate. (Modified from Yoder M. Absorbers and breathing systems. In: *Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems*. Telford, PA: Dräger Medical; 2009:83–126.)

While APL valves are designed as a safety feature to allow precise control of circuit pressures during manual ventilation, problems do occur. A comparison of two modern anesthesia machines demonstrated that not all APL valves have equivalent linear behavior, and with certain valves the PIPs may routinely exceed set values.[127a] This serves as a reminder that the operator must vigilantly monitor circuit pressure during manual ventilation. Mechanical failures of APL valves have been reported due to breakage or trapping of gas sampling lines under the edge of the control knob.[127b,127c]

Anesthesia Reservoir Bag or "Breathing Bag." The anesthesia reservoir bag, or "breathing bag," provides several important functions, including (1) serving as a reservoir for exhaled gas and excess fresh gas, (2) providing a means of delivering manual ventilation or assisting spontaneous breathing, (3) serving as a visual or tactile means of monitoring a patient's spontaneous breathing efforts, and (4) partially protecting the patient from excessive positive pressure in the breathing system, such as in the case of inadvertent closure of the APL valve or an obstruction of the scavenge line [Fig. 22.38*A*]). Standard adult breathing bags have a nominal volume of 3 L; pediatric bags are available as small as 0.5 L. The reservoir bag is the most compliant part of the breathing system. The pressure-volume characteristics of standard bags are such that they inflate to a maximal pressure, and then slightly decrease to a plateau as filling continues to higher volumes (Fig. 22.38*B*).[122,128,129,129a] Anesthesia reservoir bags must adhere to pressure standards, which mandate a minimum pressure of approximately 30 cm H_2O and a maximum pressure of approximately 60 cm H_2O when the bag is filled to four times its stated capacity.[130] Although most bags adhere to these standards, some latex-free bags have exceeded the upper pressure limit.[129] Classically, the reservoir bag was excluded from the breathing circuit when the ventilator was in use. However, on most contemporary Dräger workstations,

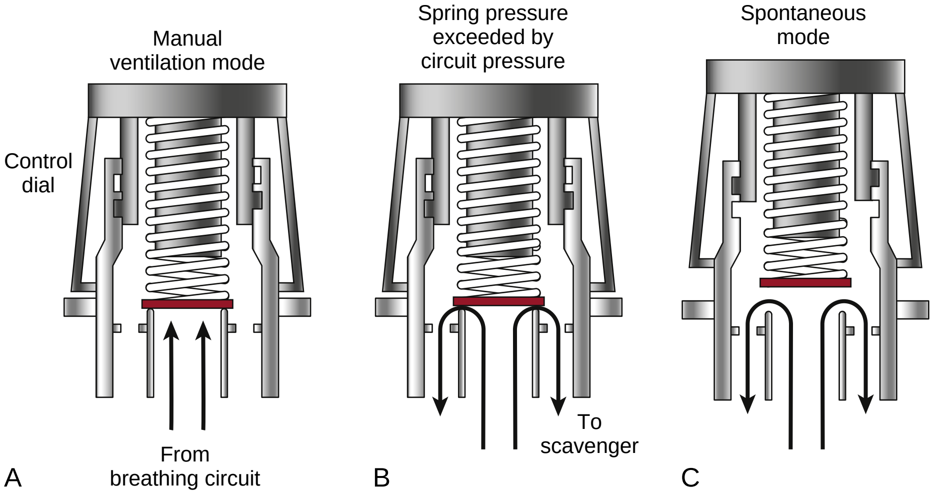


Fig. 22.37 Adjustable pressure-limiting valve: pressure-regulating type. (A) In the "manual" setting, the operator adjusts spring tension, thereby adjusting valve opening pressure. In this image the breathing circuit pressure has not yet exceeded spring tension. (B) Breathing circuit pressure has exceeded the set pressure (spring tension), and gas is vented to the scavenger. With the pressure regulating type of adjustable pressure-limiting valve, circuit pressure is independent of the fresh gas flow rate. (C) When the valve is placed in the spontaneous mode, the disk is lifted off the valve seat, and gas flows freely to the scavenger. A check valve downstream prevents waste gas from returning to the breathing circuit.

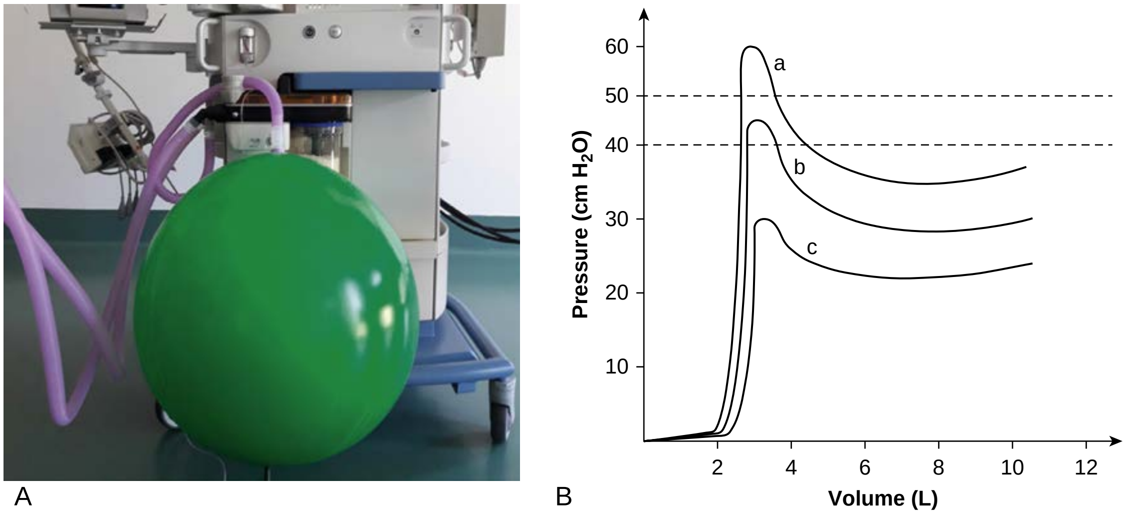


Fig. 22.38 Safety function of the breathing circuit reservoir bag when overdistended. The standard for reservoir bags is that the maximum pressure should not exceed approximately 60 cm H_2O at four times the stated capacity.[130] However, the pressure inside many reservoir bags peaks at a lower volume, and all should maintain a plateau pressure with further expansion.[128] (A) A breathing bag distended to a diameter of ~66 cm and volume of ~150 L. The pressure inside the bag is 34 cm H_2O. (B) Pressure versus volume filling curves for three different reservoir bags demonstrating a peak and plateau pressure. Vigilance should prevent overfilling from occurring because the continuing positive pressure alarm should be sounding while the bag is inflating. (From Križmarić M. Functions of anesthesia reservoir bag in a breathing system. *Slov Med J*. 2017;86:226–235.)

the reservoir bag is integral to circuit function during mechanical ventilation, where it serves as an exhaled and fresh gas reservoir.[31b,38,131,131a]

Corrugated Breathing Circuit Tubing. The breathing circuit tubing, which accounts for most of the volume within the circle system, has certain vulnerabilities. First, these circuits are compliant, and some of the volume intended for delivery to the patient during positive-pressure ventilation is lost to distention of the tubing. Many modern anesthesia workstations perform a compliance test to compensate for this effect. Alternatively, the workstation may compensate for discrepancies in the set versus delivered tidal volume. It is important that these tests be performed with the actual circuit that is to be used for anesthesia delivery. For instance, if a circuit extension is to be used to facilitate turning the operating room table 180 degrees, the compliance, leak, and flow tests should be performed with the extension in place. Circuit tubing may also be a source of leaks or obstruction (see below).

Y-Piece. The Y-piece is the distal (nearest the patient) part of the circuit that merges the inspiratory and expiratory limbs. It has a 15-mm inner diameter to connect to an endotracheal tube or elbow connector, and a 22-mm outer diameter to connect to a face mask. The dead space in the circle breathing system begins at the Y-piece and continues to the patient (i.e., the portions of the circuit with bidirectional gas flow, compare Figs. 22.32 and 22.33).[131b] On modern anesthesia machines, the gas sampling port is located at or near the Y-piece to allow monitoring of both inspiratory and expiratory gases.

Filters and Heat and Moisture Exchangers. The use of HMEs and filters within the anesthesia breathing circuit is common. HMEs help replace the normal warming and humidifying function of the upper airway, which is often bypassed by an artificial airway during anesthesia.[132] Filters are used to prevent the transmission of microbes from the patient to the machine and hence potentially to other patients. No consensus agreement pertaining to their use exists. Current ASA recommendations endorse the use of filters only in the context of patients with tuberculosis.[133] If a filter is to be used for this purpose, it should have an efficiency rating higher than 95% for particle sizes larger than 0.3 μm. The filter should be placed between the endotracheal tube and the Y-piece.[134]

Sensors

Inspired Oxygen Concentration Monitor. The ASTM standards state that the workstation must be equipped with a sensor to monitor the oxygen concentration in the inspiratory limb or at the Y-piece of the breathing circuit. A low oxygen concentration alarm must sound within 30 seconds if the fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2) drops below a set limit, which cannot be adjustable to less than 18% *v*/*v*%.[20] The oxygen sensor is truly the patient's last line of defense from receiving a hypoxemic gas mixture. *Galvanic cell oxygen analyzers* are often used for this purpose, but they have a finite life span and are prone to drift.[134a] They therefore require daily calibration during the workstation pre-use check. A common location for galvanic sensors is in the housing of the inspiratory unidirectional valve (see Fig. 22.32). Modern anesthesia workstations (e.g., Dräger Apollo) increasingly use *side-stream multigas analyzers at the Y-piece* as the exclusive inspiratory oxygen monitor.[131a,134c] *Paramagnetic oxygen analyzers*, which require less frequent calibration, are typically used in these monitors.

Flow Sensors. Flow sensors are used on the anesthesia machine primarily to measure tidal volume. The workstation must have a device that monitors the patient's exhaled tidal volume, minute ventilation, or both.[11] These sensors may also be used to display flow waveforms and/or flow-volume loops. Finally, some workstations use flow sensor measurements as a feedback signal to maintain stable tidal volume delivery at varying fresh gas flow rates. Although early flow sensors were usually mechanical respirometers, contemporary machines may use differential pressure sensors, heated-wire anemometers, ultrasonic flow sensors, or variable-orifice flow sensors. The location of the flow sensor can vary, but a sensor for exhaled gas flow is required at a minimum.

Breathing Circuit Pressure Sensors. The continuous measurement of airway pressure in the breathing circuit is critical to patient safety. Several requirements must be met. First, anesthesia workstations must continuously display pressure in the breathing system. Second, operator-adjustable alarms must be present for *high pressure* as well as for *continuous positive pressure* lasting 15 seconds or longer. Excessive high pressure or prolonged positive airway pressure can compromise venous return, decrease cardiac output, interfere with ventilation, or cause barotrauma. An alarm must also sound if *negative pressure below* -10 *cm* H_2O occurs in the breathing circuit for more than 1 second. Finally, when automatic ventilation is in use, the machine must alarm whenever the breathing pressure falls below a preset or adjustable *threshold pressure* for more than 20 seconds. This alarm may serve as a disconnection alarm, but low-volume or exhaled CO_2 monitoring may also be used (see below).[11] The location of pressure sensors in the breathing system varies. They are often located in the nondisposable portion of either the inspiratory or expiratory limb near one of the unidirectional valves.[134b] Dräger machines transduce pressure from the CO_2 absorber system.[131a] It is important to remember that the breathing circuit pressure may not accurately represent the patient's airway pressure, especially if the pressure sensor is located far from the Y-piece.[134b] Older machines have a mechanical pressure gauge, while newer models may display a digital representation of this gauge.

Circle System Function—Semiclosed, Semiopen, and Closed Systems. Circle system function is illustrated in Figs. 22.32–22.34. The extent of rebreathing, and therefore the conservation of exhaled gases, depends on the fresh gas flow rate. Higher fresh gas flow rates result in less rebreathing and greater waste gas. Contemporary circle systems are usually operated in a *semiclosed* manner, meaning that some rebreathing occurs, but some waste flow is vented through the APL or waste gas valve of the ventilator. The delivery of *low-flow* anesthesia (≤1.0 L/min fresh gas flow) with a circle system exemplifies a *semiclosed* system. *Low-flow* anesthesia generally refers to a technique where fresh gas flow is less than minute ventilation, and at least 50% of expired gas is rebreathed after carbon dioxide removal.[131b]

A circle system operated in a *semiopen* manner implies a higher fresh gas flow rate with minimal rebreathing and more venting of waste gas. The advantages of conducting *low-flow* or *minimal-flow* (≤0.5 L/min) anesthesia include the decreased use of volatile anesthetic agents, improved temperature and humidity control, and reduced environmental pollution. The disadvantages include difficulty in rapidly adjusting anesthetic depth and the theoretical possibility of accumulating unwanted exhaled gases (e.g., carbon monoxide, acetone, methane) or volatile anesthetic degradation products (e.g., compound A, carbon monoxide—see section on carbon dioxide absorbers later).[135]

A *closed* system is one in which the rate of oxygen inflow exactly matches metabolic demand, rebreathing is complete, and no waste gas is vented. A volatile anesthetic agent is added to the breathing circuit in liquid form in precise amounts or is initially introduced through the vaporizer.[136] Closed-circuit anesthesia maximizes the advantages of *low-* and *minimal-flow* anesthesia. However, the vigilance demanded by this technique make it impractical for routine use with contemporary equipment; thus it is rarely employed.[137]

Potential Circle System Problems

LEAKS AND DISCONNECTIONS. Breathing circuit leaks and disconnections continue to cause critical incidents in anesthesia.[140] Common sources of leaks include disposable tubing and components, as well as points of connection within the breathing circuit and at the CO_2 absorber canister.[141] Although leaks can develop during the course of anesthesia, such as a partial disconnection, most can be detected during a thorough workstation pre-use checkout. Leaks can be small, and easily overcome by increasing fresh gas flow to compensate for lost volume, or they can be very large and render ventilation impossible. No matter the size, *all leaks should be investigated*. Several monitors can assist the anesthesia provider in detecting a leak or circuit disconnection during the course of anesthetic care (Table 22.7).

Breathing circuit pressure monitoring is an extremely important aid in diagnosing leaks and disconnections. As discussed earlier, breathing circuit pressure monitoring is a required feature of anesthesia workstations. The *threshold pressure* (or *low peak inspiratory pressure*) alarm is useful for detecting leaks and disconnections. When using a controlled ventilation mode, an audible and visual alarm is generated if the breathing system pressure drops below the threshold limit for more than 20 seconds (Fig. 22.39*A*). Visual alarm examples include "Apnea Pressure," "Check Breathing Circuit," and "Low Pressure."[38,141a,141b] The specific times required before sounding the alarm may vary slightly between machines. The *threshold pressure alarm* limit is operator-adjustable on some machines, and may also have an "autoset" feature that applies an algorithm to set an appropriate limit based on current airway pressures.[131,141c] As can be seen in Fig. 22.39*B*, setting the threshold limit too low may allow a partial disconnection (leak) to go unrecognized. Conversely, setting the threshold limit too high can result in an erroneous alarm.

Respiratory volume monitors (flow sensors) are useful in detecting leaks or disconnections. Low exhaled tidal volume and/or low minute ventilation alarms may first alert the operator to these problems. The user should bracket the minute ventilation alarms slightly higher and lower than the patient's requirements. An autoset feature may be available for minute ventilation monitoring as well.[131] Some workstations will alarm if a significant disparity exists between inhaled and exhaled tidal volumes, or when the measured tidal volume does not achieve the set tidal volume.[142]

Finally, all modern workstations have integrated gas monitoring with alarms for *exhaled* CO_2. Total loss of the

TABLE 22.7 Methods of Detecting Leaks and Disconnections During the Course of Anesthesia

Method	Leak Indications
Breathing circuit pressure sensors	*Threshold pressure alarm** Pressure waveform evaluation Trend of peak pressures
Workstation tidal volume sensors	Low minute ventilation or low tidal volume alarm Failure to deliver set tidal volume Disparity between inhaled and exhaled tidal volumes Decreasing trend of tidal volume and minute ventilation
Exhaled gas analysis	Exhaled carbon dioxide automated monitoring Abnormal appearance and trend of capnography tracing
Physiologic sensors (e.g., SpO_2, HR, BP)	*Late detection* of significant leaks and disconnections because the patient is already decompensating
A vigilant practitioner	Assesses breath sounds and chest wall excursion Pays close attention to alarms and responds promptly Observes workstation and physiologic monitors Notes that ventilator bellows is not refilling completely and tidal volumes are decreasing Notes that flow rate requirements are increasing to refill an ascending bellows Senses that breathing bag motion and feel are not normal Detects the odor of anesthetic gas Follows his or her instinct that something is not right

*ISO standard.
BP, Blood pressure; *HR,* heart rate; *SpO_2,* saturation of peripheral oxygen.

capnogram should alert the operator to a loss of ventilation and possible circuit disconnect. More subtle changes in capnogram amplitude or waveform may indicate a leak.

MISCONNECTIONS. Unfortunately, misconnections of the breathing system are not rare. Anesthesia workstations, breathing systems, ventilators, and scavenging systems incorporate many diameter-specific connections. Despite the efforts of standards committees to assign different diameters to various circuit connections, misconnections continue to occur. The ingenuity of some individuals in outwitting these "foolproof" systems has led to various hoses being adapted or forcefully fitted to inappropriate terminals, and even to various other solid cylindrical protrusions of the anesthesia machine.[143,144] Operators and technicians should be properly trained on their respective workstations and modifications should be discouraged.

OBSTRUCTION. Occlusion (obstruction) of the breathing circuit may occur and can have severe consequences. Tracheal tubes may kink. Breathing circuit valves or other components can malfunction. Hoses throughout the breathing circuit are subject to occlusion by internal obstruction or external mechanical forces that can impinge on flow. Blockage of HMEs by secretions can also cause significant obstruction.[145] Case reports describe bilateral tension pneumothorax caused by blockage of a bacterial filter in the expiratory limb,[146] or a misplaced disk in an expiratory valve.[147] Because retained CO_2 absorber canister wrappings have caused circuit obstruction, ASTM standards now require that absorbers be packaged in a way that immediately identifies the presence of a wrapper.[127,148,149] Defects associated with disposable circuit components or the tubing itself have caused severe circuit obstruction and sometimes injury to the patient.[150-154] Misplaced Luer caps have made their way into the elbow connector of the circuit because of packaging or processing and have caused obstruction.[155,156] Incorrect insertion of flow direction-sensitive components

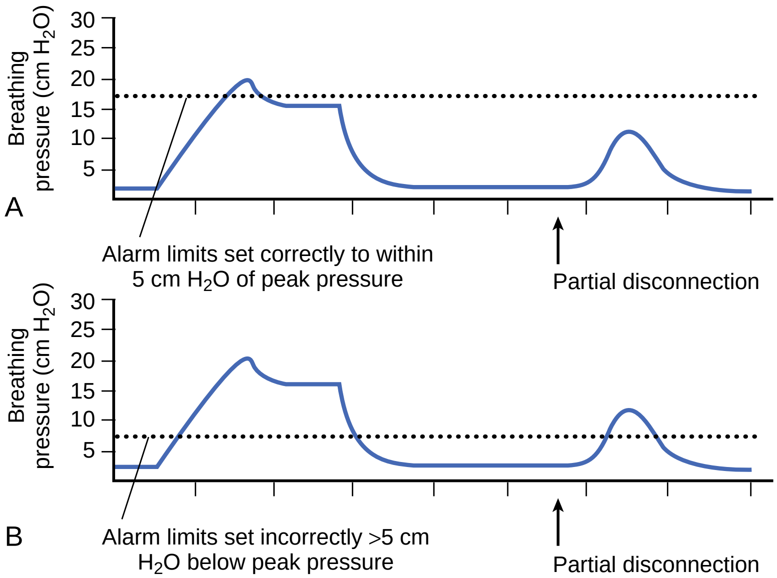


Fig. 22.39 Threshold pressure alarm limit. (A) The threshold pressure alarm limit *(dotted line)* has been set appropriately. An alarm is actuated when partial disconnection occurs *(arrow)* because the threshold pressure alarm limit is not exceeded by the breathing circuit pressure. (B) Partial disconnection is unrecognized by the pressure monitor because the threshold pressure alarm limit has been set too low. (Redrawn from North American Dräger. *Baromed Breathing Pressure Monitor: Operator's Instruction Manual.* Telford, PA: North American Dräger; 1986.)

can result in a no-flow state. Examples of these components include some older PEEP valves and cascade humidifiers. Only the performance of a manual circuit flow test, or a similar automated test, during the pre-use checkout will reliably detect an obstruction. *If you are struggling to ventilate a patient and are unsure why, do not delay in switching to a self-inflating resuscitation bag.* Ventilate the patient first, troubleshoot later.

Variations in Circle Breathing System Design. Numerous variations of the circle system are possible, depending on the relative positions of the unidirectional valves, the APL valve, the reservoir bag, the CO_2 absorber, and the site of fresh gas entry. However, to prevent rebreathing of CO_2 in a traditional circle system, three rules must be followed: (1) a unidirectional valve must be located between the patient and the reservoir bag on both the inspiratory and expiratory limbs, (2) the fresh gas inflow cannot enter the circuit between the expiratory valve and the patient, and (3) the APL valve cannot be located between the patient and the inspiratory valve. If these rules are followed, any arrangement of the other components will prevent rebreathing of CO_2.[125] Design departures from the traditional circle breathing system are becoming more common as workstations evolve. Some of these designs are driven by strategies to eliminate the impact of varying fresh gas flow rates or oxygen flush on inspiratory tidal volume and airway pressure during mechanical ventilations (fresh gas decoupling or compensation). These variations are addressed later, in section on anesthesia ventilators.

Carbon Dioxide Absorbers

Circle breathing systems require a means of CO_2 removal from the exhaled gases to avoid rebreathing and hypercapnia. Although increasing the fresh gas inflow to high levels can dilute out most CO_2 in the circle system, this is a very inefficient way to conduct an anesthetic. Because typical gas flows through the anesthesia machine are less than minute ventilation (*semiclosed* system), absorption of CO_2 is essential. If one could design an ideal CO_2 absorbent, its characteristics would include a lack of reactivity with common anesthetics, an absence of toxicity, low resistance to airflow, minimal dust production, low cost, ease of handling, and high efficiency. It should also be easy to assess for absorbent depletion (i.e., a diminished ability to remove CO_2). Finally, the container that houses the absorbent should be easy to remove and replace, should maintain breathing circuit integrity if quickly replaced during use, and should impose minimal risk of causing breathing system leaks or obstruction. Carbon dioxide absorbers are not unique to anesthesiology. They are also used in certain military and commercial diving equipment, submarines, space operations, mining and rescue operations, and hyperbaric facilities. In these environments, CO_2 absorbers are often referred to as *CO_2 scrubbers*.

Absorber Canister. Although CO_2 absorber canister configurations vary, they must be visible to the operator and transparent to monitor for absorbent presence and color. On traditional anesthesia machines, the absorber consists of a single clear plastic canister (or two canisters arranged in series). Opening a traditional canister assembly abolishes the integrity of the breathing circuit. If the absorbent needs to be changed in the course of anesthesia, and apnea cannot be tolerated, it is necessary to ventilate by other means. These older canisters are a common source of leaks due to their multiple components and compression assembly method.[141] The canisters are filled either with loose bulk absorbent or with factory-supplied disposable cartridges called *prepacks*. Loose granules from bulk absorbent may lodge between the canister and the O-ring gasket of the absorber and create a clinically significant leak. Leaks have also been caused by defective prepacks or those that were larger than factory specifications.[154,157] Prepacks can also cause total obstruction of the circle system if the clear plastic shipping wrapper is not removed before use.[148] Problems with rebreathing CO_2 have been caused by canister apparatus reassembly issues.[158-160]

Many modern workstations now use single canister absorbers that are disposable and easily replaceable. Increasingly, workstation design allows the canister to be replaced during anesthesia without interfering with breathing system integrity, sometimes referred to as a *bypass* feature.[141a] A potential risk imposed by this feature is that the machine may pass an automated or manual leak test *without* the absorber attached.

Chemistry of Absorbents. Carbon dioxide is removed from the breathing circuit through absorption by chemicals within the absorber canister. Through a series of reactions, CO_2 is transformed into water, heat, and other byproducts through a chemical process that neutralizes an acid (CO_2 or carbonic acid) with one or more basic compounds. Most absorbents use calcium hydroxide [$Ca(OH)_2$] to react with the expired CO_2, producing insoluble calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) (Box 22.2). However, because CO_2 does not react quickly with $Ca(OH)_2$, water and small amounts of stronger base catalysts are required to speed up the reaction. Calcium hydroxide-based absorbents vary in content of water, strong base

BOX 22.2 Carbon Dioxide Absorber Reactions (Net and Sequential)

Carbon Dioxide Reaction With Soda Lime

Net Reaction

$$CO_2 + Ca(OH)_2 \rightarrow CaCO_3 + H_2O + \text{heat}$$

Sequential Reactions

1. $CO_{2\ (gas)} + H_2O_{\ (liquid)} \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_{3\ (aqueous)}$
2. $H_2CO_3 + 2NaOH \text{ (or KOH)} \rightarrow Na_2CO_3 \text{ (or } K_2CO_3) + 2H_2O + \text{heat}$
3. $Na_2CO_3 \text{ (or } K_2CO_3) + Ca(OH)_2 \rightarrow CaCO_3 + 2NaOH^* \text{ (or KOH}^*) + \text{heat}$

Carbon Dioxide Reaction With Lithium Hydroxide Monohydrate

$$2\ LiOH{\bullet}H_2O + CO_2 + \text{heat} \rightarrow Li_2CO_3 + 3H_2O$$

*Note: Sodium hydroxide (NaOH) and potassium hydroxide (KOH) are catalysts in this reaction mechanism (they are neither created nor destroyed). *LiOH*, Lithium hydroxide.

catalysts (e.g., sodium hydroxide or potassium hydroxide), humectants (e.g., calcium chloride), and hardening agents such as silica. Newer absorbents only have trace amounts of potassium hydroxide (KOH) or sodium hydroxide (NaOH) because these bases have been associated with anesthetic degradation. One absorbent brand replaces $Ca(OH)_2$ entirely with lithium hydroxide (LiOH), which does not require any additional catalysts to react with CO_2. Key differences in absorbents include their capacity for CO_2 and their propensity to react with volatile anesthetics and produce potentially harmful degradation products (e.g., carbon monoxide and compound A). The composition of several absorbents is shown in Table 22.8.[161-166]

Soda lime is a mixture of chemicals that contains about 80% $Ca(OH)_2$, also known as *slaked lime*, along with water and small amounts of strong base (see Box 22.2). First, CO_2 reacts with liquid water present on and within the absorbent granules to yield carbonic acid (H_2CO_3). This step requires water and explains why all $Ca(OH)_2$-based absorbents contain approximately 15% H_2O by mass. Second, the strong base additives NaOH and KOH react quickly with H_2CO_3 to yield the soluble salts sodium carbonate (Na_2CO_3) and potassium carbonate (K_2CO_3). All available active strong base is quickly depleted. Third, the carbonates react with $Ca(OH)_2$ to yield insoluble $CaCO_3$. Note that NaOH and KOH are regenerated in this step and therefore meet the definition of catalysts. Since additional CO_2 cannot dissolve in water until H_2CO_3 is consumed by strong base (step 2), the rate of NaOH and KOH regeneration (step 3) is the rate-limiting step.[166a] Some CO_2 may react directly with $Ca(OH)_2$, but as mentioned, this reaction is slower. Byproducts of the entire process are water and heat.[167,168]

Unlike soda lime and the $Ca(OH)_2$-based absorbents, LiOH-based absorbents do not require catalysts. LiOH is a strong base and reacts quickly with CO_2. Although liquid water is not required to generate carbonic acid as in the classic $Ca(OH)_2$ reaction, some water molecules are still required for the CO_2 reaction with LiOH. These water molecules are supplied by humidity in the exhaled breathing gases and combine with the crystal lattice of LiOH in a 1:1 ratio through a process called "hydration."[168a] LiOH that does not contain water is referred to as *lithium hydroxide anhydrous.* LiOH chemically bound to water is called *lithium hydroxide monohydrate* ($LiOH{\bullet}H_2O$). Because the hydration reaction is *exothermic* (gives off heat), absorbents composed of *LiOH anhydrous* generate heat as they extract humidity during use. *LiOH monohydrate*-based absorbents are hydrated at the factory and therefore generate less heat when used in circle breathing systems. Once hydrated, LiOH removes CO_2 from the breathing circuit through an endothermic reaction (absorbs heat) that produces insoluble lithium carbonate (see Box 22.2).

Interactions of Inhaled Anesthetics With Absorbents

FORMATION OF POTENTIALLY HARMFUL DEGRADATION PRODUCTS. Volatile anesthetic agents have long been known to interact with the strong bases (KOH and NaOH) found in $Ca(OH)_2$-based absorbents to form degradation products. For historical perspective, trichloroethylene, a volatile anesthetic introduced to clinical use in 1940, was found to be associated with neurologic toxicity (particularly cranial nerve neuropathies and encephalitis).[169,170] Experimental investigation determined that dichloroacetylene, a toxin, was being formed by a base-catalyzed reaction with prior formulations of soda lime. This reaction was more likely to occur if the soda lime had a high content of strong base and was dry. Today, the main degradation products of concern are compound A, associated with the use of sevoflurane, and carbon monoxide (CO), mainly associated with the use of desflurane, enflurane, and isoflurane.[171] Other degradation products include formaldehyde and methanol, but these are not discussed here.[165]

TABLE 22.8 Carbon Dioxide Absorber Comparisons

Absorbent (Reference)	$Ca(OH)_2$ (%)	LiOH (%)	H_2O (%)	NaOH (%)	KOH (%)	Other (%)
Classic soda lime (165)	80	0	16	3	2	–
Baralyme (164)*	73	0	11-16	0.0	5	11 $Ba(OH)_2$
Sodasorb (161)*	76.5	0	18.9	2.25	2.25	–
Dragersorb 800 Plus (162, 166)*	82	0	16	2	0.003	–
Medisorb (166)*	81	0	18	1-2	0.003	–
New soda lime*	73	0	<19	<4	0	–
Sodasorb LF (163)	>80	0	15-17	<1	0	–
Dragersorb Free (161, 164)	74-82	0	14-18	0.5-2	0	3-5 $CaCl_2$
Sofnolime*	>75	0	12-19	<3	0	–
Amsorb Plus (161, 165)	>75	0	14.5	0	0	<1 $CaCl_2$ and $CaSO_4$
Litholyme*	>75	0	12-19	0	0	<3 LiCl
SpiraLith*	0	≈95	0†	0	0	≤5 PE

*Materials Safety Data Sheets, Occupational Safety and Health Administration, U.S. Department of Labor.

†Up to 60% of LiOH is chemically bound 1:1 with H_2O as lithium hydroxide monohydrate (see text for details).

$Ba(OH)_2$, Barium hydroxide; *$CaCl_2$,* calcium chloride; *$Ca(OH)_2$,* calcium hydroxide; *$CaSO_4$,* calcium sulfate; *KOH,* potassium hydroxide; *LiCL,* lithium chloride; *LiOH,* lithium hydroxide; *NaOH,* sodium hydroxide; *PE,* polyethylene.

COMPOUND A PRODUCTION. Sevoflurane can undergo a base-catalyzed degradation into fluoromethyl-2,2-difluoro-1-(trifluoromethyl) vinyl ether, known as *compound A.* Compound A is nephrotoxic to rats at concentrations that can occur in the breathing circuit during clinical conditions.[169,172] Moreover, in a limited number of volunteer studies, sevoflurane was associated with transient albuminuria and glucosuria.[173,174] To date, however, mounting data show no relationship between sevoflurane use and postoperative renal dysfunction in humans (including patients with preoperative renal insufficiency).[169,175-180] The sevoflurane package insert states that patient exposure should not exceed 2 MAC-hours at flow rates between 1 and 2 L/min in order to minimize risk from compound A. Flow rates less than 1 L/min are not officially recommended, although these recommendations predate several studies demonstrating safety at lower flow rates.

Several physical factors may predispose to higher concentrations of compound A in the breathing circuit, including the following:

- Low-flow or closed-circuit anesthetic techniques
- Higher concentrations of sevoflurane
- Type of absorbent (KOH or NaOH-containing)
- Higher absorbent temperatures
- Fresh absorbent[171,172,175,181]

The type and ratio of strong bases within the CO_2 absorbent affects the degree of sevoflurane degradation. KOH seems to cause more breakdown than NaOH.[164,166] For example, classic soda lime and Baralyme (which was voluntarily withdrawn from the market) both contain significant amounts of KOH and have a greater propensity to generate compound A than newer absorbents (see Table 22.8).[166] LiOH-based absorbents and newer $Ca(OH)_2$-based absorbents that are free of KOH and NaOH generate zero or negligible amounts of compound A.[162,163,166,182,182a,182b] Given the safe track record of sevoflurane and ongoing improvements in CO_2 absorbents, it may be concluded that compound A poses minimal risk to patients during routine clinical practice.

CARBON MONOXIDE PRODUCTION. Strong-base containing absorbents that are extremely dry (desiccated) can also degrade inhaled anesthetics to clinically significant concentrations of CO.[164] Under certain conditions, this process can produce blood carboxyhemoglobin levels of 35% or greater in an exposed patient.[184] A typical scenario involving a dangerous CO exposure would be the first case on a Monday morning, after high continuous gas flows had accidentally been left on throughout the weekend and desiccated the absorbent.[185,186] Machines in remote locations are more frequently found with desiccated absorbent.[186] Prolonged fresh gas flow rates of 5 L/min or greater are sufficient to cause critical drying of the absorbent, especially when the breathing bag is left off the circle system. Because the inspiratory valve leaflet produces some resistance to flow, fresh gas tends to flow retrograde through the absorber and out the breathing bag mount (the path of least resistance). The presence of a breathing bag allows slight pressure build-up that resists this flow (see the classic circle breathing system in Fig. 22.32).[184] Desiccation of absorbent is unlikely to occur during anesthesia delivery since CO_2 absorption produces water (and patients exhale humidified gas).

Several factors increase the production of CO and risk of carboxyhemoglobinemia:

- Inhaled anesthetic used (for a given MAC multiple, the magnitude of carbon monoxide production is desflurane ≥ enflurane > isoflurane >> halothane = sevoflurane)
- Degree of desiccation of the absorbent
- Type of absorbent (KOH or NaOH-containing)
- Higher temperature
- Higher concentrations of anesthetic[187]
- Low fresh gas flow rates
- Smaller patient size[188,189]

As with compound A production, the presence of strong bases (KOH and NaOH) in the desiccated absorbent correlates with the propensity to degrade certain anesthetics and liberate CO. Therefore Baralyme (now withdrawn) and to a lesser extent soda lime were more likely to produce CO when desiccated than newer-generation absorbents (see Table 22.8).[190] Omission of NaOH and KOH from the $Ca(OH)_2$-based absorbents reduces or eliminates the potential to produce CO or compound A without significant impact on the capacity for CO_2 absorption.[182,191] LiOH absorbent produces essentially no CO and maintains excellent CO_2 absorption.[162,182b,191a]

ABSORBENT HEAT PRODUCTION. One extremely rare but potentially life-threatening complication related to CO_2 absorbent is the development of extreme exothermic reactions that lead to fires and explosions.[192-194] Specifically, this seems to occur when desiccated strong base absorbents (particularly Baralyme) interact with sevoflurane. Under experimental conditions, desiccated Baralyme absorbers exceeded 200°C (392°F) and higher, and fire was noted in some of the breathing circuits.[195] The buildup of very high temperatures, flammable degradation products (formaldehyde, methanol, and formic acid), and oxygen- or nitrous oxide-rich gases within the absorber provide all the ingredients necessary for combustion.[196] Avoiding the use of sevoflurane with strong base-rich absorbents (e.g., the now discontinued Baralyme), especially when desiccated, is the best way to prevent such complications. Anhydrous LiOH may also generate high temperatures by reacting with moisture from expired gas, but formulations of LiOH monohydrate do not.

A consensus statement established by the Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation provides recommendations to reduce the risk of volatile anesthetic degradation by desiccated CO_2 absorbents[164]:

- Turn off all gas flow when the machine is not in use
- Change the absorbent regularly
- Change the absorbent if color change indicates exhaustion
- Change all absorbent (not just one canister in a two-canister system)
- Change the absorbent when uncertain about the state of hydration (e.g., if fresh gas flow is left on for an extensive or indeterminate period of time)
- If compact canisters are used, change them more frequently

Given the improvements in absorbent chemistry detailed above, it seems prudent to select an absorbent that minimizes risk of adverse reactions whenever possible. Finally, educating anesthesia personnel about these hazards and preventive measures may also reduce the likelihood of adverse events.

Indicators. Conventional absorbents contain an indicator dye, *ethyl violet*, that allows anesthesia personnel to visually assess the functional integrity of the absorbent. Ethyl violet is a substituted triphenylmethane dye that undergoes a color change around pH 10.3.[168] When the absorbent is fresh, the pH exceeds 10.3 and the dye is colorless. As the absorbent becomes exhausted, the pH drops below 10.3 and the dye becomes purple. The color change indicates that the absorptive capacity of the material has been depleted. Unfortunately, ethyl violet may not always be a reliable indicator. For example, prolonged exposure of ethyl violet to fluorescent light can photodeactivate the dye. When this occurs, the absorbent will remain white even when exhausted.[197] Similarly, color reversion (purple back to white) can occur with some absorbents due to the strongly alkaline nature of NaOH. Many newer indicators are resistant to color reversion, and several now endorse permanent color change. At least one absorbent contains no indicator and relies upon the detection of inspired CO_2 by the gas analyzer and/or a time schedule to trigger replacement.

Absorbent desiccation is impossible to detect by visual inspection. Therefore some newer generation $Ca(OH)_2$ absorbents also include desiccation indicators. Users should refer to the product manufacturer's literature to determine whether their absorbent uses this type of indicator.

Carbon Dioxide Removal Capacity and Absorber Resistance. The ability of the workstation's absorber to remove CO_2 is related to three main factors: (1) the amount of absorbent surface area exposed to the exhaled gas, (2) the intrinsic capacity of the absorbent to remove CO_2, and (3) the amount of nonexhausted absorbent remaining. The size and shape of the absorptive granules are intended to maximize surface area while minimizing resistance to airflow.[198] The smaller the granule size, the greater the surface area that is available for absorption. However, as particle size decreases, airflow resistance increases. The size and shape of the granules is proprietary, but most absorbents have a granule size between 4 and 8 mesh-a size at which surface area and resistance are optimized. (Mesh size refers to the number of openings per linear inch in a sieve through which the granular particles can pass. For example, a 4-mesh screen means that there are four quarter-inch openings per linear inch.[167]) The presence of excess liquid water within the canister can decrease the exposed granule surface area and therefore the efficiency of CO_2 absorption.

As the absorbent granules stack up in canisters, small passageways inevitably form. These passages allow gas to flow preferentially through low-resistance areas. This phenomenon, known as *channeling*, may substantially decrease the functional absorptive capacity.[199] Recently, a nongranular polymer matrix product was released that binds particles together in a solid sheet of absorbent that has molded airflow channels, eliminating the phenomenon of channeling (personal communication, Micropore, Inc., Elkton, MD, June 3, 2014).

If completely reacted, a pound of $Ca(OH)_2$ has the capacity to absorb 0.59 lb of CO_2. LiOH has a higher capacity of 0.91 lb of CO_2 per pound.[199a] Consequently, LiOH absorbents typically neutralize or "scrub" more CO_2 per unit weight (which is of great importance when planning submarine missions or space travel).[199a,199b]

Mapleson Breathing Systems

In 1954, Mapleson described and analyzed five different breathing circuits, designated A through E (Fig. 22.40).[200] In 1975, Willis and coauthors described the F system, which was added to the original five.[201] The Mapleson systems share certain features with the circle breathing system: they accept fresh gas flow, supply the patient with gas from a reservoir to meet inspiratory flow and volume requirements, and eliminate CO_2. They differ from the circle system by having bidirectional gas flow and lacking an absorber. To eliminate CO_2 and prevent rebreathing, these systems depend on a higher rate of fresh gas inflow. The Mapleson systems consist of several common components, including a connection point to a facemask or endotracheal tube, reservoir tubing, fresh gas inflow tubing, and an expiratory pop-off valve or port. All the circuits except for Mapleson E use a bag as an additional reservoir. The Mapleson A, B, and C systems are rarely used today, but the D, E, and F systems are commonly used. In the United States, the most popular representatives from the DEF group are the Bain circuit and the Jackson-Rees circuit.

Three distinct functional groups can be seen: A, BC, and DEF groups. The Mapleson A, also known as the "Magill circuit," has a spring-loaded pop-off valve located near the facemask. It is the only Mapleson circuit where fresh gas flow enters from the end of the circuit opposite the patient (in this case, near the reservoir bag). The Mapleson A is functionally quite different from the other circuits, and has drastically different performance when used for spontaneous versus controlled ventilation (see later). In the B and C systems, both the pop-off valve and fresh gas inlet tubing are located near the patient. The Mapleson C is known as the "Waters to-and-fro" circuit and lacks a corrugated tube. The reservoir tubing and breathing bag serve as a blind limb where fresh gas, dead space gas, and alveolar gas can collect. Finally, in the Mapleson D, E, and F, or "T-piece" group, fresh gas enters near the patient, and excess gas is vented off at the opposite end of the circuit. The Mapleson F circuit is known as the "Jackson-Rees" modification of the Mapleson E (also known as "Ayre's T-piece").

Even though the components and their arrangement are simple, functional analysis of the Mapleson systems is complex.[202,203] The amount of CO_2 rebreathing with each system is multifactorial and affected by: (1) the fresh gas inflow rate, (2) minute ventilation, (3) ventilation mode (spontaneous or controlled), (4) tidal volume, (5) respiratory rate, (6) the inspiratory-to-expiratory ratio, (7) the duration of the expiratory pause, (8) peak inspiratory flow rate, (9) the volume of reservoir tubing, (10) the volume of the breathing bag, (11) the airway device being used (mask or endotracheal tube), and (12) the CO_2 sampling site.

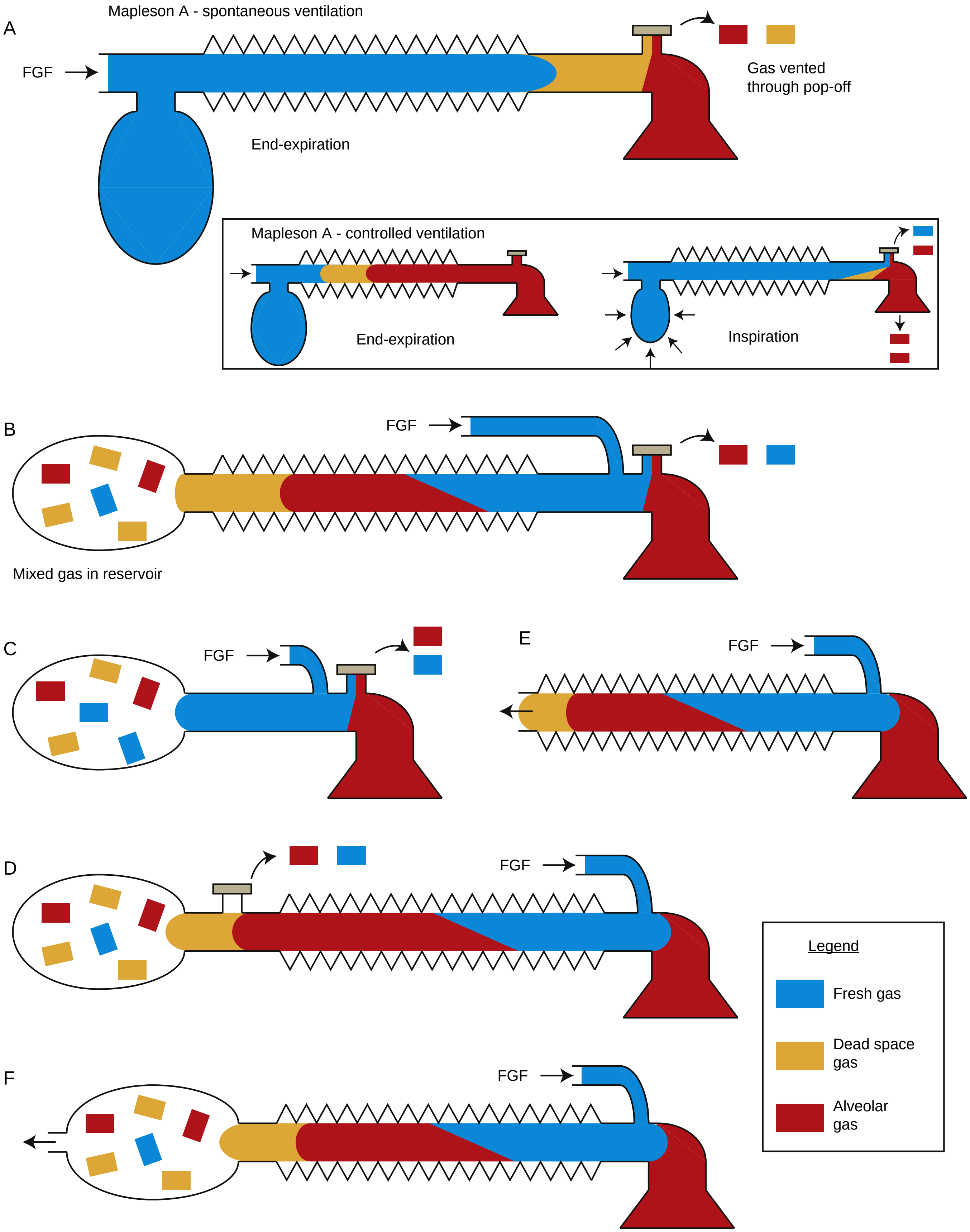

A
Mapleson A - spontaneous ventilation
FGF
Gas vented through pop-off
End-expiration
Mapleson A - controlled ventilation
End-expiration
Inspiration
B
FGF
Mixed gas in reservoir
C
FGF
E
FGF
D
FGF
F
FGF
Legend
Fresh gas
Dead space gas
Alveolar gas

Fig. 22.40 Mapleson breathing systems. (A) Mapleson A system during spontaneous ventilation with gas distribution at end-expiration. A, *Inset,* Mapleson A system during controlled ventilation. (B–F) Mapleson systems B through F with gas distribution at end-expiration. *FGF,* Fresh gas flow. (Redrawn after Sykes MK. Rebreathing circuits. *Br J Anaesth*. 1968;40[9]:666–674; and Kaul TK, Mittal G. Mapleson's breathing systems. *Ind J Anaesth*. 2013;57[5]:507–519.)

Analysis of Gas Flow in the Mapleson A System. The performance of the Mapleson systems is best understood by studying the expiratory phase of the respiratory cycle.[204] Illustrations of the gas distribution at end-expiration is shown for each system (see Fig. 22.40).[204,204a] Of all the circuits, only the Mapleson A has markedly different performance when used for spontaneous versus controlled ventilation. During spontaneous ventilation, exhaled alveolar gas is vented through the pop-off during the expiratory phase (Fig. 22.40*A*). With the next inspiration, the patient primarily draws in fresh gas (and a small amount of dead space gas). Thus the Mapleson A has the best efficiency of the six systems for spontaneous breathing. A fresh gas inflow rate of greater than or equal to minute ventilation is sufficient to prevent rebreathing of CO_2.[205]

However, the Mapleson A has the worst efficiency during controlled ventilation. As the reservoir bag is squeezed to initiate inspiration, exhaled alveolar gas first flows into the patient (Fig. 22.40*A*, *inset*). The pop-off valve then opens and vents significant amounts of the fresh gas stream away from the patient during the inspiratory phase.[204a,205a] Significant rebreathing of CO_2 occurs unless minute ventilation is very high (>20 L/min). The key factor determining Mapleson A performance is the timing when the pop-off valve opens: during expiration for spontaneous ventilation, and during inspiration for controlled ventilation.[206] Due to the location of the fresh gas inflow near the patient, the gas flow patterns of the other Mapleson systems (Fig. 22.40*B–F*) do not differ as markedly between spontaneous and controlled ventilation as that of the Mapleson A.

Relative Efficiencies. The "T-piece" systems DEF are slightly more efficient than systems BC. To prevent rebreathing CO_2, the DEF systems require a fresh gas inflow rate of approximately 2 to 2.5 times minute ventilation, whereas the fresh gas inflow rates required for BC systems are somewhat higher.[203] The reason for this improved efficiency is the location of the pop-off valve relative to the fresh gas inflow. With the BC systems, significant fresh gas is vented through the pop-off at end-expiration (Fig. 22.40*B* and *C*). With the DEF systems, fresh gas flow drives exhaled alveolar gas away from the patient to minimize rebreathing (Fig. 22.40*E* and *F*).[204,205] The relative efficiency of different Mapleson systems with respect to prevention of rebreathing are: A > DFE > CB during spontaneous ventilation, and DFE > BC > A during controlled ventilation.[200,203]

Advantages and Disadvantages. Mapleson systems have low resistance to gas flow, they are small and contain few parts, and changes in the fresh gas flow composition result in rapid changes in the breathing circuit. In addition, the volatile anesthetic agents within a Mapleson breathing circuit have no chance of degradation because of the absence of a CO_2 absorber. However, given their need for higher gas flows to prevent rebreathing, they are not as economical with regards to carrier gas and volatile anesthetic usage as the circle system. Conservation of heat and humidity is less efficient. Finally, scavenging of waste gas can be challenging, with the exception of the Mapleson D, which has the pressure-limiting valve located away from the patient.[205]

Bain Circuit

The Bain circuit is a coaxial circuit and a modification of the Mapleson D system (Fig. 22.41). Fresh gas flows through a narrow inner tube nested within the outer corrugated hose.[207] The central fresh gas tubing enters the corrugated hose near the reservoir bag, but the fresh gas actually empties into the circuit at the patient's end. Exhaled gases pass down the corrugated hose, around the central tubing, and are vented through the pop-off valve near the reservoir bag.[205] Exhaled gases passing down the outer corrugated hose add warmth to the inspired fresh gases by countercurrent heat exchange.

The main hazards related to use of the Bain circuit are an unrecognized disconnection or kinking of the inner fresh gas hose. These problems can cause hypercapnia as a result of inadequate gas flow or increased respiratory resistance. The outer corrugated tube should be transparent to allow ongoing inspection of the inner tube. The integrity of the inner tube can be assessed by sending high-flow oxygen into the circuit while the patient's end is occluded until the reservoir bag is filled.[208] The patient's end is then opened, while oxygen is flushed into the circuit. If the inner tube is intact, the Venturi effect at the patient's end causes a decrease in

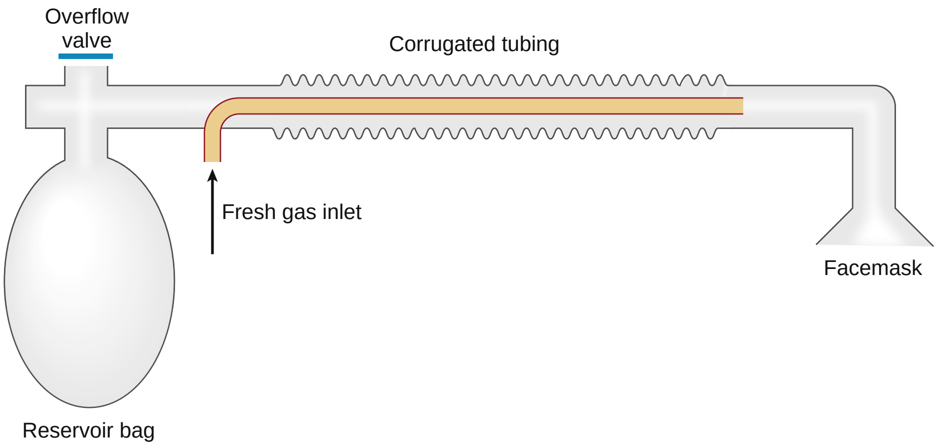


Fig. 22.41 The Bain circuit. (Redrawn from Bain JA, Spoerel WE. A streamlined anaesthetic system. *Can Anaesth Soc J.* 1972;19:426.)

pressure within the circuit, and the reservoir bag deflates. A leak in the inner tube allows fresh gas to escape into the expiratory limb, and the reservoir bag remains inflated. This test is recommended as part of the preanesthesia check if a Bain circuit is used.

Jackson-Rees Circuit. The Mapleson F circuit, also known as the "Jackson-Rees modification of the T-piece," has function similar to the Mapleson D. It incorporates a hole in the end of the reservoir bag distal to the patient for venting of gases (Fig. 22.40*F*). The hole may be occluded by the operator's hand to control bag distension and pressure, or fitted with a pop-off or PEEP valve for more precise control. The Jackson-Rees circuit is convenient for patient transport and preoxygenation during ICU or out-of-the-operating room procedures. The reservoir bag allows for easy tactile and visual monitoring of the patient's respiratory effort. This circuit may be used for spontaneous (with the venting hole open), or assisted/controlled ventilation (with the venting hole partially or totally occluded). The Jackson-Rees is effective when connected to a face mask, endotracheal tube, laryngeal mask airway, or tracheostomy tube.

Like the Bain circuit, the Jackson-Rees has many advantages. It is lightweight, convenient, and potentially reusable (if sterilized). Being a Mapleson system, it has low resistance work of breathing. Fresh gas flows required to prevent rebreathing are approximately 2.5 to 3 times minute volume for spontaneous breathing, and 1.5 to 2 times minute volume for controlled ventilation.[204a] Scavenging of gases from the expiratory valve is possible because the hole or valve is located away from the patient. Caution is advised when using HME filters between these Mapleson circuits and an endotracheal tube. Filters increase resistance and direct fresh gas flow away from the patient. An obstructed antimicrobial filter may produce hypoventilation and hypoxemia and mimic the signs and symptoms of severe bronchospasm.[209]

Self-Inflating Manual Resuscitators

While rarely used for delivery of inhaled anesthetics in modern practice, the manual resuscitation bag (e.g., Ambu bag, Laerdal resuscitator, or simply bag-valve-mask device) is an essential part of every anesthesia workstation. The key feature of this device is a compressible reservoir, typically made of silicone, that automatically expands upon release. Unlike the Mapleson circuits, the self-inflating manual resuscitator may be used for hand ventilation in the absence of an oxygen or air source. These devices are ubiquitous for patient transport, cardiopulmonary resuscitation, and for emergency back-up should the anesthesia machine ventilator or oxygen supply fail (see section on Checking Your Anesthesia Workstation).

In addition to the self-inflating reservoir bag, the manual resuscitator has several key components.[134b] (1) A T-shaped *nonrebreathing valve* is located between the bag and the patient in order to direct gas flow throughout the respiratory cycle. During inspiration, the valve opens to allow flow from the reservoir bag to the patient, and the expiratory port is blocked (see Fig. 22.42). During exhalation, the inspiratory port (to the bag) is blocked, and the expiratory port opens to vent alveolar gas to atmosphere. A variety of valve types exist (e.g., spring-disc, fishmouth). (2) An *inlet valve* permits refilling of the bag with reservoir gas or room air. (3) A *pop-off* valve may be present to limit the PIP, which can easily reach high levels with these devices.[209a] ISO standards require that manual resuscitators designed for infants or children have a valve to limit PIP to 45 cm H_2O.[209b] An override feature must be present should higher pressures be required (in case of poor lung compliance or high endotracheal tube resistance), and use of a manometer is recommended.

While manual resuscitators are extremely useful, portable, and convenient, they do have potential hazards.[134b] Dangerously high inspiratory pressures may be generated if the operator is untrained, uncareful, or if valve failure occurs.[209c] High pressures may lead to barotrauma or gastric insufflation. Similar to Mapleson circuits, significant variation of tidal volume, PIP, and PEEP is likely to occur when manual resuscitators are compared with mechanical ventilators.[209d] Finally, the nonrebreathing valves generate resistance and may significantly increase the work of breathing during spontaneous ventilation.

ANESTHESIA VENTILATORS

Automatic ventilation began to be added to anesthesia machines after the Second World War.[209e] Historical drawover systems relied only on spontaneous breathing by the patient. Later, breathing bags were added to anesthetic delivery devices to allow positive-pressure ventilation. Today's anesthesia workstation ventilators incorporate ICU-like capabilities, including a variety of ventilation modes and the ability to allow for patient triggering. While ICU ventilators are simply open circuit, using entirely fresh gas for each breath, and venting all exhaled gas into the atmosphere, the anesthesia workstation must incorporate a means of collecting and redelivering the patient's exhaled gas in the semi-closed circle system. This requirement presents unique engineering challenges in the design and control of the anesthesia ventilator. Historically the most common solution to this challenge has been the inclusion of a bellow in the anesthesia workstation. Alternative engineering solutions to allow rebreathing include piston-type ventilators, the Maquet volume reflector, or the Draeger Perseus' turbine ventilator. The following discussion focuses on the classification, operating principles, and hazards associated with contemporary anesthesia ventilators.

Classification

Modern anesthesia ventilators can be best classified as either bellows or nonbellows. In bellows ventilators, the bellows serves as a volume reservoir for breathing gas, and the ventilator uses a double-circuit "bag in a bottle" design to deliver breaths. The bellows are typically driven pneumatically. Bellows-type ventilators can be subclassified as ascending or descending. The direction of bellows movement during the *expiratory phase* determines the bellows classification. An ascending (standing) bellows *ascends* during the expiratory phase, whereas a descending (hanging) bellows *descends* during the expiratory phase. Both types of bellows ventilators are illustrated in Fig. 22.43*A* and *B*. In nonbellows machines, the reservoir function may be served by the breathing bag itself (as in Draeger piston

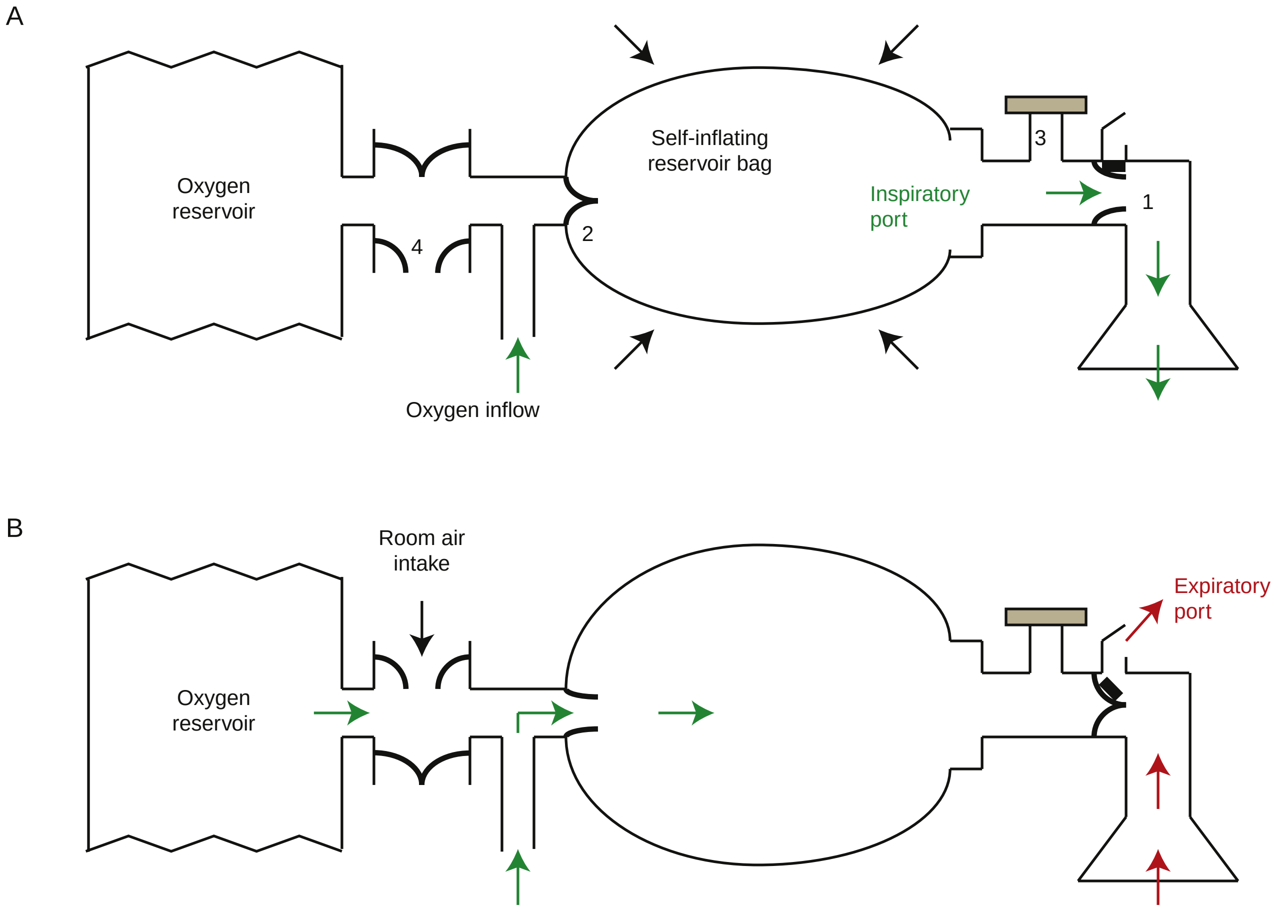


Fig. 22.42 Self-inflating manual resuscitator. (A) Flow of gas during inspiration. (1) Nonrebreathing valve, (2) bag inlet valve, (3) pop-off or pressure limiting valve (standard for pediatric and infant devices), and (4) outflow or excess-oxygen venting valve. (B) Flow of gas during expiration. See text for details. (Redrawn after Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. The anesthesia machine. In Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment.* 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:83, Chapter 10 Manual Resuscitators; and Lien S, Verreault DJ, Alston TA. Sustained airway pressure after transient occlusion of a valve venting a self-inflating manual resuscitator. *J Clin Anesth.* 2013;25[5]:424–425.)

[see Fig. 22.43*C*] or turbine ventilators) or by the "volume reflector," in the Maquet Flow-i anesthesia workstation. The drive mechanism of piston and turbine ventilators is mechanical, while the Maquet ventilator is pneumatically driven.

Additional classifications involve the modes of ventilation that are available. Older anesthesia machine ventilators operated only in a time-cycled manner, or as "controller ventilators," without the ability to respond to a patient's spontaneous breathing efforts. Modern machines that offer synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (SIMV), assist/control (A/C), and pressure support ventilation (PSV) must offer the ability for the patient to trigger breaths, and are referred to as "controller/noncontroller" ventilators. In contemporary anesthesia workstations, the responsiveness to patient triggering efforts is comparable to ICU ventilators, but the clinician should be on the lookout for evidence of asynchrony in modes that allow triggering.[209f,209g] Contemporary anesthesia ventilators can function in volume-controlled or pressure-controlled modes. Finally, even though some ventilators may be pneumatically driven, all modern ventilators are under electronic control. The design of different anesthesia ventilators, with an emphasis on the integration between the ventilator and the circle breathing system, using specific workstations as examples are discussed below.

Pneumatically Driven Bellows Ventilator

The operating principle of the bellows ventilator is that it functions in a rigid airtight housing and serves as a reservoir for the patient's breathing gas. The driving force used to move gas from the bellows back to the patient is pressurized gas that flows into the bellows' housing under electropneumatic control. The bellows fills with the patient's exhalation and fresh gas flow. Once the bellows is refilled, excess circuit gas is vented to the scavenging system during the expiratory pause. The mechanisms that vent breathing circuit waste gas during mechanical ventilation with bellows ventilators differ among manufacturers and models. The bellows ventilator is traditionally designated as a *double circuit*, meaning that the ventilator drive gas and the breathing gas exist in two separate circuits. The bellows serves as the interface between the breathing gas and the drive gas, much like the reservoir bag serves as the interface between the breathing gas and the anesthesia care provider's hands.[209h] Figs. 22.44 and 22.45 illustrate the inspiratory and expiratory phases of mechanical ventilation with an ascending bellows ventilator on the GE Aisys workstation. Note that the bellows ventilator uses pressurized gas from the intermediate-pressure section of the anesthesia machine to drive the bellows. On older bellows ventilators,

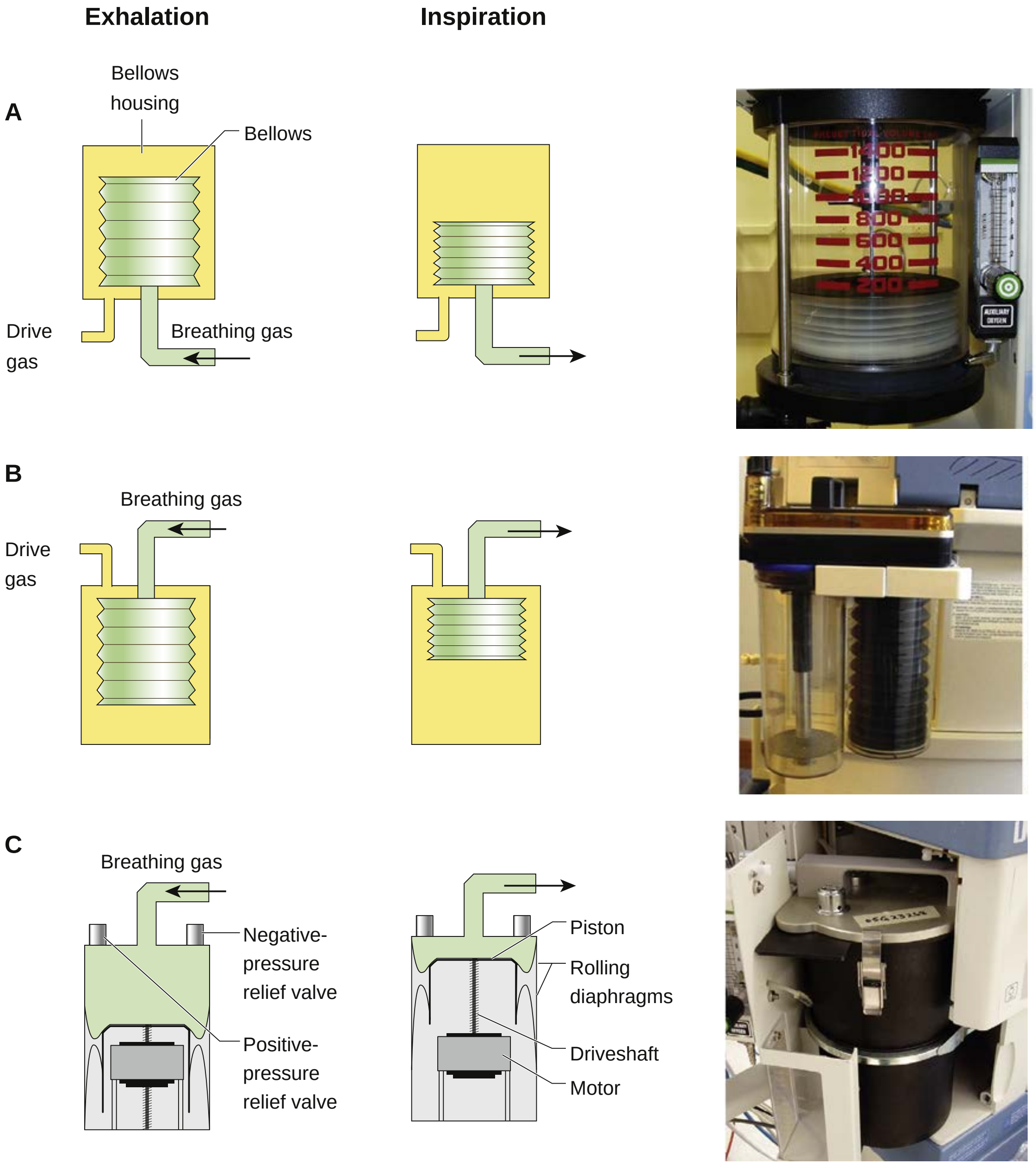

Exhalation
Inspiration
A
Bellows housing
Bellows
Drive gas
Breathing gas
1400
1200
1000
800
600
400
200
B
Breathing gas
Drive gas
C
Breathing gas
Negative-pressure relief valve
Positive-pressure relief valve
Piston
Rolling diaphragms
Driveshaft
Motor

Fig. 22.43 Three types of anesthesia ventilators during exhalation *(left)* and inhalation *(middle)*, with photo *(right)*. To allow rebreathing and conservation of anesthetic gases, the anesthesia workstation ventilator must have a reservoir for the patient's exhaled breathing gas, just as the breathing bag does in manual and spontaneous modes of ventilation. This is a unique requirement of ventilators in anesthesia workstations. Intensive care unit ventilators, conversely, can simply vent exhaled gases into the environment. In the diagrams, breathing gas is green and ventilator drive gas is yellow. (A) Ascending bellows. (B) Descending (hanging) bellows. (C) Piston ventilator. See text for additional details. (Piston ventilator diagram modified from Yoder M. Ventilators. In: *Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems.* Telford, PA: Dräger Medical; 2009.)

the user selected a tidal volume by setting a physical stop that restricted the bellows' filling (return stroke) to that point, making it a volume control ventilator.[131a] The modern bellows ventilator has primary control over the pressure applied to the bellows, and uses data integrated from the flow sensors to create volume control breaths.

The source of the drive gas for the bellows is either oxygen or air, which is obtained from the gas supply section of the workstation. Some workstations allow for the selection of either oxygen or air as the ventilator drive gas, and some can entrain room air through a Venturi effect into the oxygen drive gas flow, thereby decreasing the oxygen gas requirement. Knowing the type of gas used to drive the bellows ventilator can be important in oxygen failure emergencies. If oxygen is used as the drive gas, then the amount of oxygen consumed by the anesthesia machine will equal the amount of oxygen selected for fresh gas flow *plus* an amount approximately equal to the minute ventilation being delivered by the ventilator. Whereas a full E-cylinder can provide 10 hours of use with oxygen fresh gas flow of 1 L/min and manual ventilation through the circle system, that same E-cylinder will provide less than 2 hours' supply in an adult patient when oxygen is used as the ventilator drive gas.

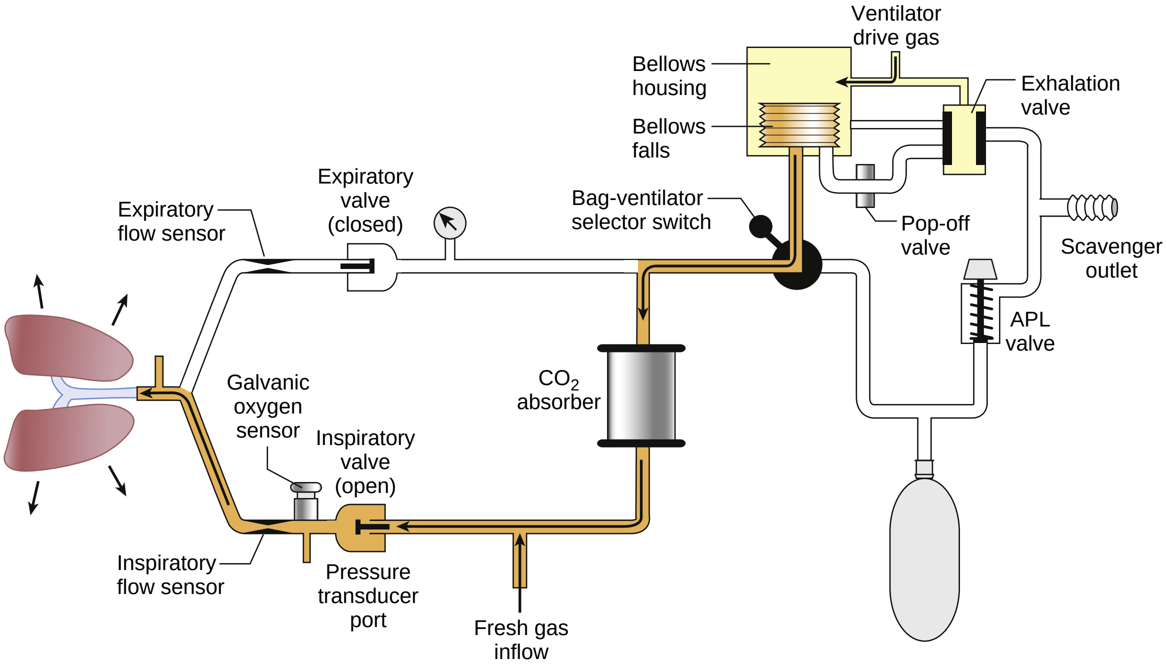

Ventilator drive gas
Bellows housing
Exhalation valve
Bellows falls
Expiratory valve (closed)
Expiratory flow sensor
Bag-ventilator selector switch
Pop-off valve
Scavenger outlet
APL valve
Galvanic oxygen sensor
CO_2 absorber
Inspiratory valve (open)
Inspiratory flow sensor
Pressure transducer port
Fresh gas inflow

Fig. 22.44 Inspiratory phases of ventilation with an ascending bellows ventilator represented by GE Aisys anesthesia workstation. The ventilator drive gas circuit is located outside the bellows, and the patient's breathing circuit is inside the bellows. During the inspiratory phase the electronically controlled ventilator driving gas enters the bellows chamber and causes the pressure to increase, thereby compressing the bellows, which delivers gas to the patient's lungs. The drive gas also closes the exhalation valve and prevents the breathing gas from escaping into the scavenging system. Compensation for the impact of fresh gas flow on tidal volume accuracy is accomplished by monitoring the inhaled tidal volumes and adjusting ventilator drive gas volumes accordingly. *APL,* Adjustable pressure-limiting; *CO_2,* carbon dioxide. (Image courtesy Dr. Michael A. Olympio; modified with his permission. Adapted from Datex-Ohmeda. *Aisys Anesthesia Machine: Technical Reference.* Madison, WI: Datex-Ohmeda; 2005.)

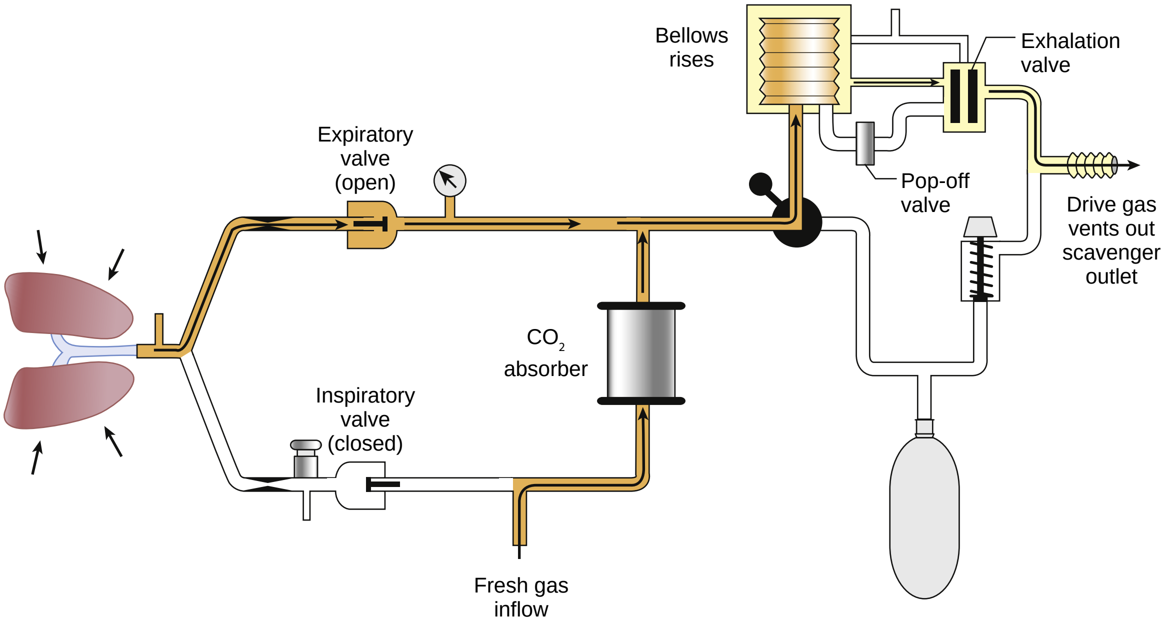

Bellows rises
Exhalation valve
Expiratory valve (open)
Pop-off valve
Drive gas vents out scavenger outlet
CO_2 absorber
Inspiratory valve (closed)
Fresh gas inflow

Fig. 22.45 During the early expiratory phase, the patient is able to exhale into the bellows because the ventilator exhalation valve is now open, thus allowing the drive gas in the bellows housing to vent through the scavenger outlet. The pop-off or ventilator relief valve prevents bellows gas from escaping at this point so the bellows can fill. In the late expiratory phase, positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) is provided by pressurization of the bellows housing and pressure modulation of the expiratory valve. (Courtesy Dr. Michael A. Olympio; modified with his permission. Adapted with permission from Datex-Ohmeda. *Aisys Anesthesia Machine: Technical Reference.* Madison, WI: Datex-Ohmeda; 2005.)

As described earlier, bellows-type ventilators can be classified according to the direction that they move during patient exhalation. Ascending bellows rise with exhalation, and descending bellows fall with exhalation (see Fig. 22.43). Older pneumatic ventilators and some newer anesthesia workstations use weighted descending bellows, but most contemporary bellows ventilators employ an ascending bellows design. Of the two configurations, the ascending bellows is considered safer. An ascending bellows will not fill if total disconnection occurs, or it may only partially fill if a circuit leak exceeds the fresh gas flow rate, providing an important visual cue for a circuit disconnect or leak. The bellows of a descending bellows ventilator, on the other hand, will continue its regular upward and downward movement despite patient disconnection: the drive gas pushes the bellows upward during the inspiratory phase, and during the expiratory phase the bellows "fills" with entrained room air instead of the patient's exhaled gas, because of the weighted bellows. The pressure monitor and the volume monitor may be fooled even if disconnection is complete.[36] An essential safety feature of any anesthesia workstation that uses a descending bellows is an integrated CO_2 apnea alarm that cannot be disabled while the ventilator is in use.

Problems With Bellows Ventilators. Correct function of the bellows ventilator requires that both the bellows housing and the bellows itself be free of leaks. Improper seating of the plastic bellows housing can result in inadequate ventilation because a portion of the driving gas is vented to the atmosphere.[209i] A hole in the bellows can lead to alveolar hyperinflation and possibly barotrauma in some ventilators because high-pressure driving gas can enter the patient's circuit. The oxygen concentration of the patient's gas may increase when the driving gas is 100% oxygen, or it may decrease if the driving gas is composed of air or an air-oxygen mixture.[210]

The ventilator relief valve (sometimes called the "exhalation valve"; see Fig. 22.44) can potentially cause problems. The function of this valve is to open during exhalation once the bellows has refilled, venting excess gas to the scavenger outlet. Hypoventilation can occur if the valve becomes incompetent because anesthetic gas is delivered to the scavenging system instead of to the patient during the inspiratory phase. Ventilator relief valve incompetency can result from a disconnected pilot line, a ruptured valve, or a damaged flapper valve.[211,212] A ventilator relief valve stuck in the closed or partially closed position can cause either barotrauma or undesired PEEP.[213] Excessive suction from the scavenging system can draw the ventilator relief valve to its seat and close the valve during both the inspiratory and expiratory phases.[37] In this case, breathing circuit pressure escalates because the excess anesthetic gas cannot be vented. A number of manufacturers' bellows-style anesthesia workstations send the used ventilator drive gas to the anesthesia gas scavenging system during exhalation. Under certain conditions, notably high fresh gas flows combined with high minute ventilation, the scavenging system can be overwhelmed, causing inadvertent high PEEP levels and/or pollution of the operating room with waste anesthetic gases (see section on scavenging systems). Other mechanical problems that can occur include leaks within the system, faulty pressure regulators, and faulty valves.

Mechanically Driven Piston Ventilator

Mechanically driven, electronically controlled piston-type ventilators use a computer-controlled stepper motor instead of compressed drive gas to deliver tidal volume (see Fig. 22.43). These are *single-circuit* ventilators, because there is not a separate ventilator drive gas circuit. The piston operates much like the plunger of a syringe in a cylinder of essentially zero compliance.[131a] The ventilator has primary control over the volume displaced in the circuit and uses the data from pressure sensors to create pressure control breaths. The computerized controls can support a variety of ventilator modes, including pressure or volume limited breaths, in controlled, synchronized, or spontaneous modes.

Because the patient's mechanical breath is delivered without the use of compressed gas to actuate a bellows, these systems consume dramatically less compressed gas during ventilator operation than do traditional pneumatic ventilators. This improvement in efficiency may have clinical significance when the anesthesia workstation is used in a setting where no pipeline gas supply is available (e.g., remote locations or office-based anesthesia practices). Another advantage of the piston ventilator is the potential for very accurate tidal volume delivery, because of the low compliance of the piston chamber. This is in contrast to bellows-type ventilators, in which the drive gas can be subject to varying degrees of compression. With either piston or bellows ventilators, feedback mechanisms that help maintain stable tidal volume delivery include circuit compliance compensation and the use of inspired tidal volume measurement as a feedback signal.

Figs. 22.46 and 22.47 illustrate the inspiratory and expiratory phases of mechanical ventilation with a piston ventilator, the Dräger Fabius workstation. Note the location of the ventilator within the breathing circuit between the fresh gas inflow and the inspiratory valve. The breathing bag participates in the circuit during mechanical ventilation, acting as the reservoir for rebreathing. The circuit employs a *fresh gas decoupling valve* to exclude fresh gas from being added to the tidal volume during inspiration. Therefore during inspiration the fresh gas is added to the breathing bag. During the expiratory phase, the breathing bag initially fills with exhaled gas; then, as the piston returns to its starting position, the fresh gas decoupling valve opens, and fresh gas flow plus gas from the breathing bag refill the piston chamber.

The piston in a piston ventilator tends to be fully or partially concealed from view, unlike the bellows on a bellows ventilator. The piston ventilator therefore does not naturally provide the visual feedback of a circuit disconnect or leak that is provided by the ascending bellows. However, the breathing bag, which serves as the reservoir during mechanical ventilation, moves with patient ventilation and can visually alert the provider to disconnect.

Additional feedback mechanisms have been incorporated on particular machines. For example, the Dräger Fabius Tiro has a transparent piston housing so that the user can visualize the motion of the piston, and the Dräger Apollo can be programmed to emit a breathing sound with the movement of the piston to provide an auditory cue.

A potential hazard associated with piston ventilators is that, like descending bellows ventilators, they will refill

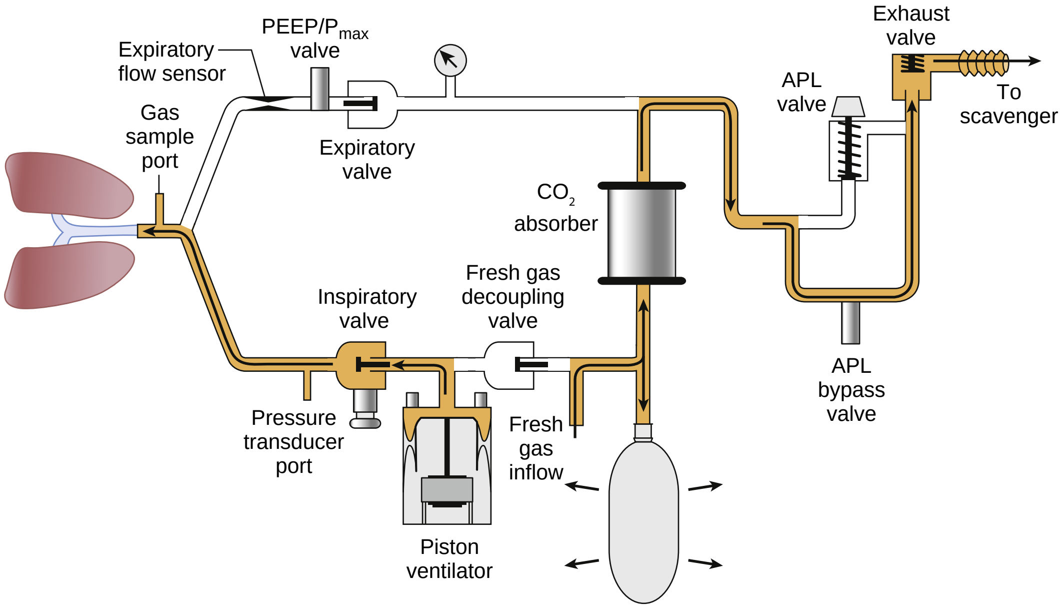

Expiratory flow sensor
PEEP/P$_{max}$ valve
Gas sample port
Expiratory valve
Exhaust valve
APL valve
To scavenger
CO$_2$ absorber
Fresh gas decoupling valve
Inspiratory valve
Pressure transducer port
Fresh gas inflow
Piston ventilator
APL bypass valve

Fig. 22.46 Inspiratory phase of ventilation with a piston ventilator represented by Dräger Fabius anesthesia workstation. During inspiration, the positive end-expiratory pressure *(PEEP)*/maximum pressure *(P_{max})* valve is held closed. The pressure in the breathing circuit that is generated by the ventilator closes the fresh gas decoupling valve. This directs fresh gas flow toward the breathing bag during inspiration so it does not interfere with tidal volume accuracy. Excess fresh gas flows past the open adjustable pressure-limiting *(APL)* bypass valve, through the exhaust check valve, and to the scavenger. Note how the breathing bag is integral to circuit function during mechanical ventilation. In the manual and spontaneous modes of ventilation, the piston ventilator is held in the upward position, and the APL bypass valve closes, thus making the APL valve operable. (Courtesy Dr. Michael A. Olympio; modified with his permission. Adapted from Dräger Medical. *Dräger Technical Service Manual: Fabius GS Anesthesia System.* Telford, PA: Rev: E, Dräger Medical; 2002.)

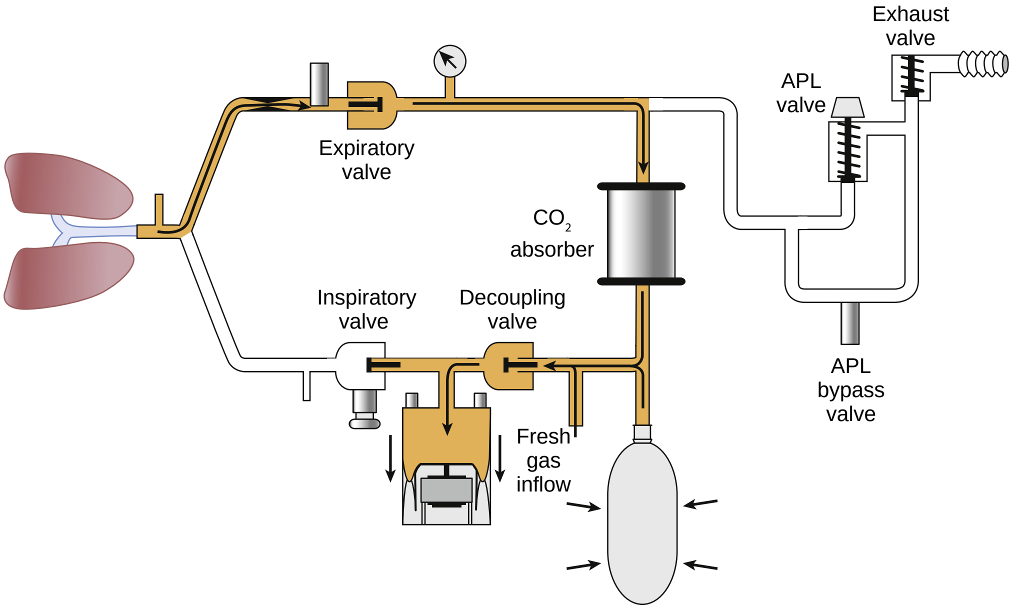

Exhaust valve
APL valve
Expiratory valve
CO$_2$ absorber
Inspiratory valve
Decoupling valve
APL bypass valve
Fresh gas inflow

Fig. 22.47 During the initial phase of exhalation, before the piston begins moving back to starting position and the decoupling valve opens, the patient exhales into the breathing bag, and fresh gas continues to flow retrograde (not pictured). Once the decoupling valve opens, the piston's movement back to its starting position draws in gas stored within the breathing bag and fresh gas from the fresh gas inflow. Positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) is maintained by the PEEP/maximum pressure valve, which also prevents the ventilator from pulling in gas from the lungs. Once the piston reaches the bottom of its stroke, fresh gas flow reverses course and flows in retrograde fashion toward the breathing bag and the absorber (as in Fig. 22.46). Excess gas vents through the exhaust valve to the scavenger (Fig. 22.46). *APL,* Adjustable pressure-limiting. (Courtesy Dr. Michael A. Olympio; modified with his permission. Adapted from Dräger Medical. *Dräger Technical Service Manual: Fabius GS Anesthesia System.* Telford, PA: Rev: E, Dräger Medical; 2002.)

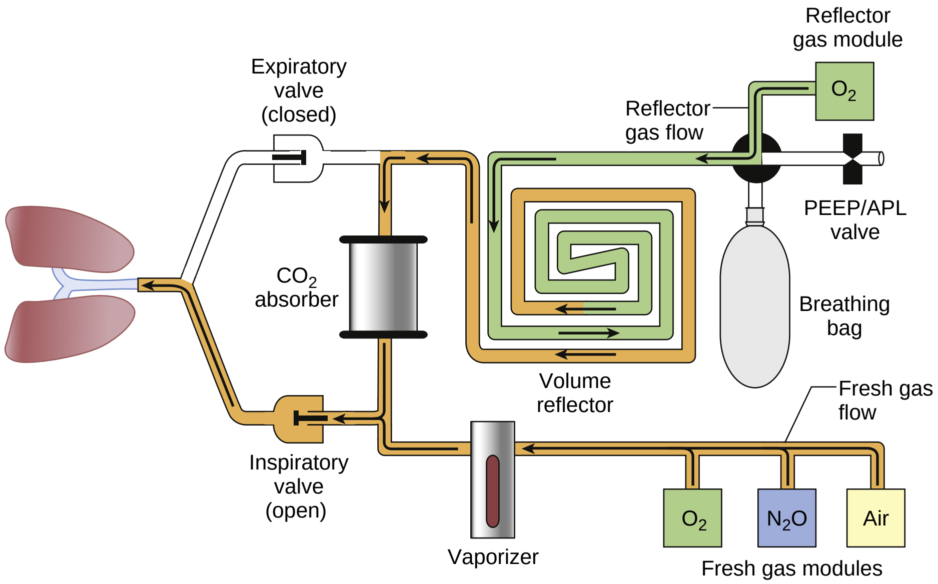


Fig. 22.48 Simplified schematic of the Maquet FLOW-i anesthesia workstation breathing circuit and gas supply system during inspiration in a controlled ventilation mode. The reflector gas module provides the driving force for ventilation by pushing gas out of the volume reflector to the patient. Volume reflector gas combines with the fresh gas flow downstream from the carbon dioxide *(CO_2)* absorber. *APL,* Adjustable pressure-limiting; *N_2O,* nitrous oxide; *O_2,* oxygen; *PEEP,* positive end-expiratory pressure. See text for additional details. (Adapted from Maquet Critical Care. *User's Manual: FLOW-i 1.2 Anesthesia System.* Solna, Sweden: Rev: 11, Maquet Critical Care; 2011.)

even if a circuit disconnection occurs. Similarly, if a circuit leak is present, piston ventilators may entrain room air through the leak, thereby diluting oxygen and anesthetic agent. The associated risks are hypoxemia and awareness. The Dräger Fabius series piston ventilator will entrain room air through an auxiliary air valve, seen in Fig. 22.43, to fill the piston chamber if the fresh gas flow fails or is inadequate (instead of causing negative pressure in the breathing circuit). However, if this occurs, an alarm will alert the operator. A positive-pressure relief valve on the ventilator prevents excessively high breathing circuit pressure (60-80 cm H_2O).[131a]

Maquet FLOW-i Anesthesia System With Volume Reflector

The Maquet FLOW-i anesthesia workstation uses a novel device called the *volume reflector* (Figs. 22.48 and 22.49) to act as the reservoir. The volume reflector is essentially a long plastic tube with a volume of 1.2 L, coiled compactly to fit in the anesthesia workstation. The volume reflector is functional and "in-circuit" during all modes of ventilation. It is interposed between the patient and the reflector gas module during positive-pressure ventilation or between the patient and the breathing bag during spontaneous or assisted ventilation. The volume reflector therefore acts as a volume reservoir while at the same time preventing mixing between the gas at the two ends of the tube.

Mechanical ventilation is powered by the r*eflector gas module*, a solenoid-controlled oxygen flow source, which pushes gas out of the volume reflector through the CO_2 absorber and to the patient during inspiration, much like a piston (see Fig. 22.48). To understand the function of the volume reflector and reflector gas module, it is convenient to start with the expiratory phase (see Fig. 22.49), where exhaled patient gas fills the volume reflector's proximal end (nearest the patient), displacing reflector gas module gas out the PEEP valve and into the scavenging system. At the end of exhalation, the volume reflector is filled at the patient end with exhaled gas and is filled distally with a mixture of exhaled gases and reflector gas. The coiled design of the volume reflector prevents significant mixing between these gases of different compositions. The inspired tidal volume is generated by a combination of gas from the fresh gas modules and the reflector gas module, which work together in a coordinated manner to control gas flow and pressure in the breathing circuit so that operator-determined ventilation parameters are maintained. During mechanical ventilation on the FLOW-i, the fresh gas flow is not constant, but rather occurs primarily during inspiration. The inhaled anesthetic, if chosen, is injected into this flow (see earlier section on **Injection-Type Vaporizers**). All the gas modules use feedback loop–controlled, solenoid-actuated, pneumatic valves similar in function to those found in a servo-controlled ICU ventilator.[214]

When the workstation is in the spontaneous mode of ventilation, the breathing bag is enabled, and the reflector gas module is disabled. The patient breathes in and out of the volume reflector, and circuit pressure is controlled by the operator-adjustable APL valve. Excess gases in controlled and spontaneous modes of ventilation are vented to the scavenger through the dual-function PEEP-APL valve.

The FLOW-i system can compensate for breathing system leaks by increasing reflector gas module flow. The operator is informed if this occurs. Because the reflector gas module provides only 100% oxygen, dilution of anesthetic gas occurs in this circumstance. The machine is nearly entirely electronically interfaced; therefore an emergency manual ventilation backup mode is provided for cases of system failure. This emergency backup mode provides an oxygen flow meter and mechanical APL valve linked to the patient circuit.[214]

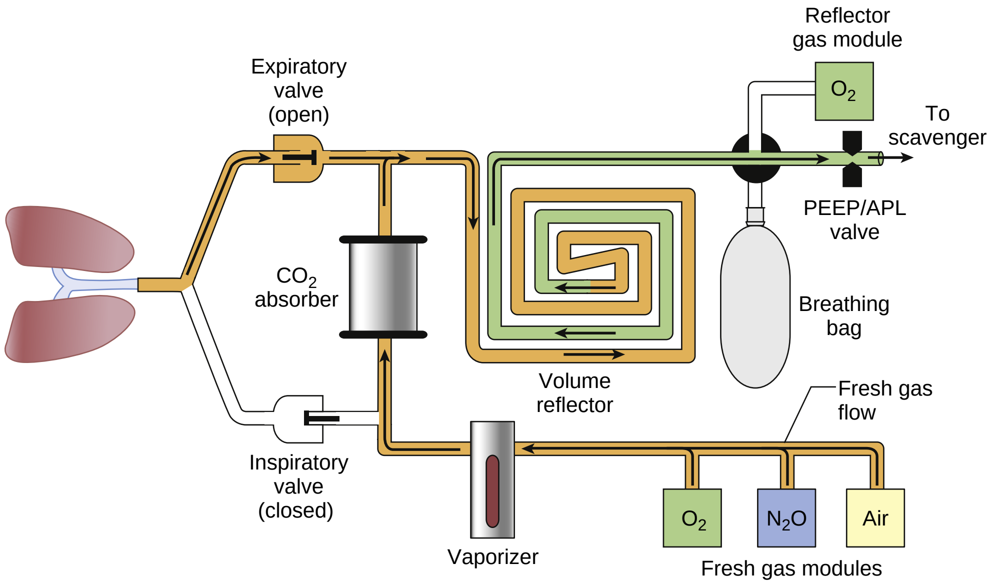


Fig. 22.49 Maquet FLOW-i breathing circuit and gas supply during exhalation in a controlled ventilation mode. The patient exhales into the volume reflector, which serves as an exhalation reservoir. The patient only partially fills the volume reflector. Fresh gas flows in retrograde fashion and combines with the exhaled gas. Excess gas is vented to the scavenger through the positive end-expiratory pressure *(PEEP)*/adjustable pressure-limiting *(APL)* valve, which also controls breathing circuit pressure (PEEP). When the machine is placed in the manual mode of ventilation, the breathing bag is enabled and the reflector gas module is disabled. In the manual mode, the patient breathes in and out of the volume reflector and can be assisted with the breathing bag. The PEEP/APL valve vents excess gas to the scavenger and controls breathing circuit pressure (continuous positive airway pressure). *CO_2,* Carbon dioxide, *N_2O,* nitrous oxide; *O_2,* oxygen. (Adapted from Maquet Critical Care. *User's Manual: FLOW-i 1.2 Anesthesia System.* Solna, Sweden: Rev: 11, Maquet Critical Care; 2011.)

Dräger Anesthesia Systems With Turbine Ventilators

A number of newer ventilators designed for the ICU utilize turbine technology to generate mechanical ventilation. Turbine ventilators use mechanical energy to spin a small turbine (fan) at very high speeds to create pressure and flow. Some possible functional advantages of turbine-based ventilators mentioned in bench testing include better responsiveness to patient triggering, more effective PSV, and, in some cases, more accurate tidal volume delivery under high ventilatory workload.[214a,214b,214c]

The Dräger Zeus and Perseus workstations incorporate turbine-type ventilators (Figs. 22.50 and 22.51). In constructing an anesthesia workstation, the major advantage of the turbine is that it can be placed directly within the circle system. Unlike the bellows or volume reflector, it does not require a separate quantity of gas to move the patient's tidal volume; and unlike a piston, it does not require refilling. During inspiration (see Fig. 22.50), the turbine blower generates flow and pressure directed into the inspiratory limb of the patient circuit, drawing gas from the breathing bag, which serves as a reservoir during mechanical ventilation. The fresh gas flow is incorporated as part of this inspiratory flow. During exhalation (see Fig. 22.51), exhaled gas fills the bag before escaping to the scavenge system, and that portion of the fresh gas flow that occurs during exhalation travels in the reverse direction toward the bag as well. As in the piston ventilators, the breathing bag is an integral part of the circuit during mechanical ventilation, continuing to serve a reservoir function. Unlike the piston ventilators, the turbine ventilator design implies that the breathing bag empties during inspiration and refills during expiration. The bag's motion may serve as a visual indicator of ventilation, and depending on set fresh gas flow, of circuit leak.

Unlike the piston, the turbine is primarily a pressure generator. The ventilator utilizes flow sensors and electronic controls to generate a number of modes of mechanical ventilation, including volume and pressure control, pressure support, and airway pressure release ventilation. In the spontaneous mode of ventilation, the operator may dial in a CPAP level.

Target-Controlled Inhalational Anesthesia

During traditional operation of the anesthetic workstation, the anesthesia provider controls the composition of the fresh gas flow that is added to the circle system every minute. Since this fresh gas mixes with the gases already in the circle breathing system, there may be a significant difference between the composition of the fresh gas flow and the final concentration of the inspired (or expired) gases. As the fresh gas flow is decreased, there may be a greater difference between the fresh gas composition and the actual inspired concentrations. If the oxygen in the fresh gas flow is less than the patient's metabolic oxygen requirement, then the amount of oxygen extracted from the circle breathing circuit every minute is more than the amount added, and the inspired gas will eventually become hypoxic.[214d] Reducing the fresh gas flow reduces the total amount of anesthetic agent used, which reduces cost and the environmental footprint. However, low-flow anesthesia can be challenging in practice, as it is easier to control the patient's actual inspired gas composition when the fresh gas flow is high.

On anesthesia workstations where the flow control valves and the anesthetic vaporizers are under electronic

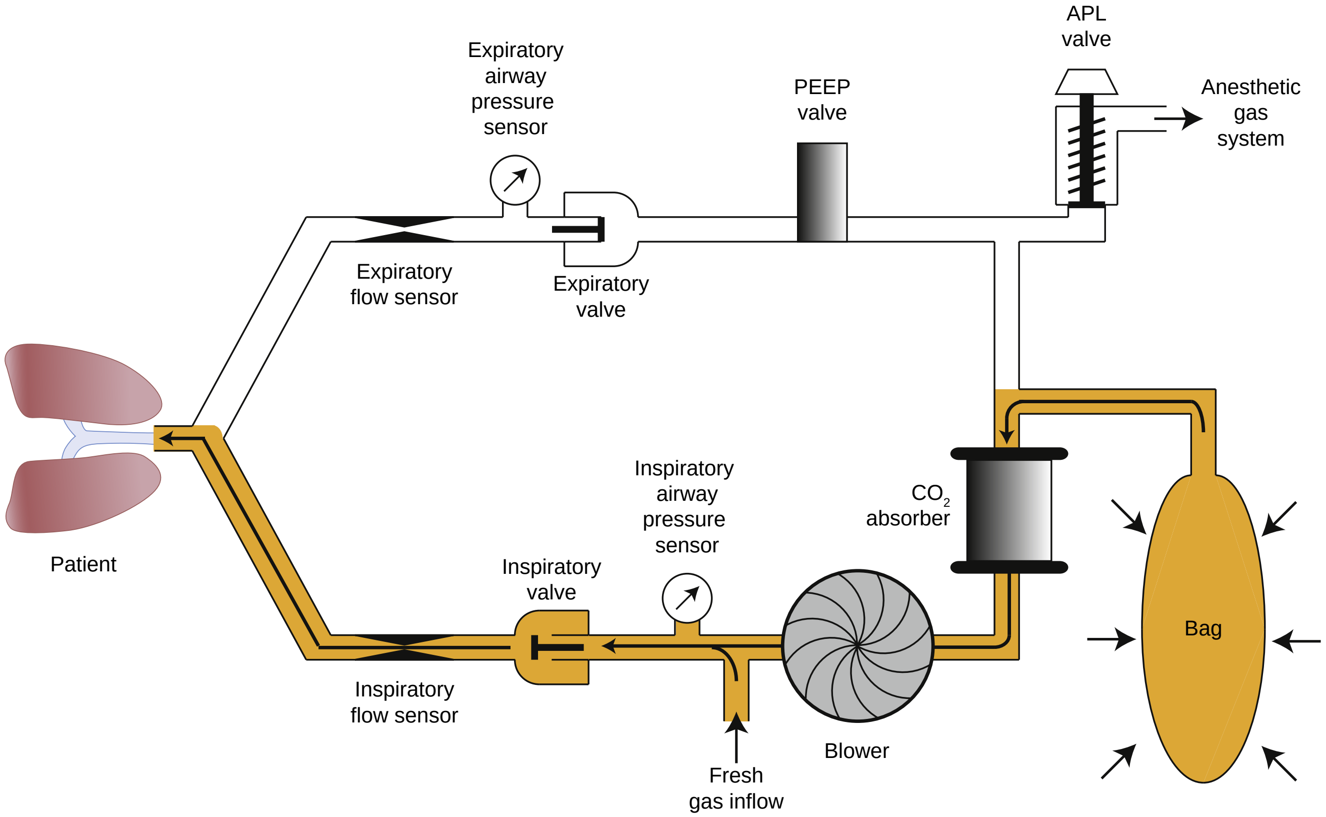

Expiratory airway pressure sensor
PEEP valve
APL valve
Anesthetic gas system
Expiratory flow sensor
Expiratory valve
Patient
Inspiratory airway pressure sensor
CO_2 absorber
Inspiratory valve
Bag
Inspiratory flow sensor
Blower
Fresh gas inflow

Fig. 22.50 Simplified schematic of the Dräger Perseus anesthesia workstation breathing circuit and gas supply system. During inspiration the positive end-expiratory pressure *(PEEP)* valve is held closed and pressure is generated by the turbine blower. There is no fresh gas decoupling valve. The flow generated by the blower draws gas from the breathing bag, which acts as a reservoir during mechanical ventilation, through the carbon dioxide *(CO_2)* absorber, and to the patient. In the manual and spontaneous modes of ventilation, the blower is passive, allowing the adjustable pressure-limiting *(APL)* valve to control the pressure in the breathing circuit. (Adapted from Drägerwerk AG & Co. *Technical Documentation IPM: Perseus A500 and Perseus A500 Ceiling*. Lübeck, Germany: Rev: 5.0; n.d.)

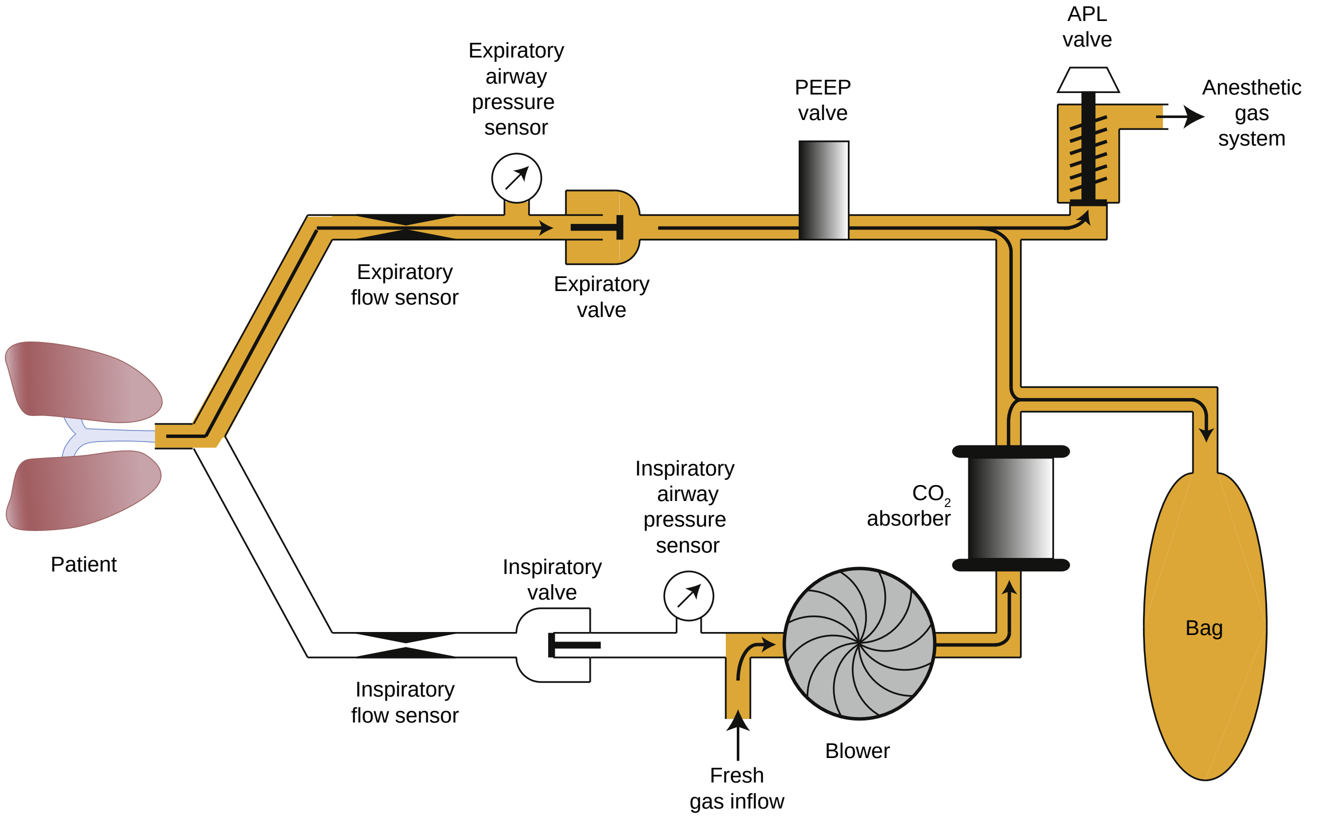

Expiratory airway pressure sensor
PEEP valve
APL valve
Anesthetic gas system
Expiratory flow sensor
Expiratory valve
Patient
Inspiratory airway pressure sensor
CO_2 absorber
Inspiratory valve
Bag
Inspiratory flow sensor
Blower
Fresh gas inflow

Fig. 22.51 Dräger Perseus anesthesia workstation breathing circuit and gas supply system during exhalation phase of controlled ventilation. The exhalation phase begins when the positive end-expiratory pressure *(PEEP)* valve opens and exhaled gas fills the breathing bag. The portion of fresh gas that flows during the exhalation phase also flows retrograde toward the breathing bag. Excess flow is vented to the anesthetic gas system (scavenge). Note that the adjustable pressure-limiting *(APL)* valve is not active during controlled ventilation. PEEP is maintained by a separate valve. *CO2,* **Carbon dioxide.** (Adapted from Drägerwerk AG & Co. *Technical Documentation IPM: Perseus A500 and Perseus A500 Ceiling*. Lübeck, Germany, n.d., Rev: 5.0.)

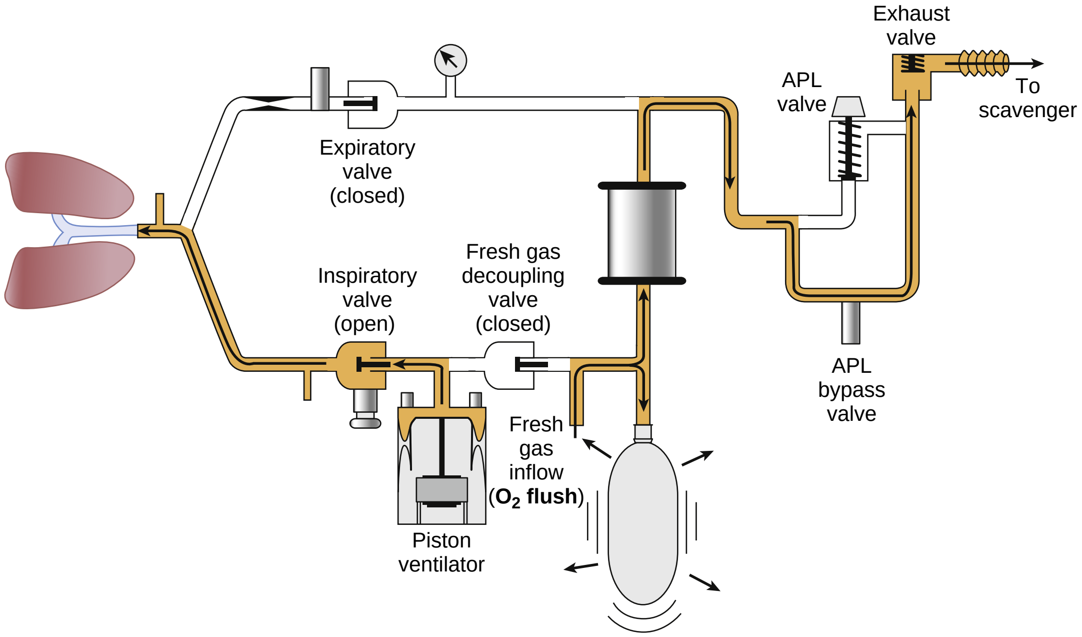


Fig. 22.52 Fresh gas decoupling during an oxygen *(O_2)* flush shown on the Dräger Fabius workstation. During inspiration the positive end-expiratory pressure/maximum pressure valve is held closed. The pressure in the breathing circuit that is generated by the ventilator closes the fresh gas decoupling valve. This directs the high-volume oxygen flush flow toward the breathing bag during inspiration so it does not contribute to inhaled tidal volume and breathing circuit pressure. The O_2 flush gas also flows past the open adjustable pressure-limiting *(APL)* bypass valve, through the exhaust check valve, and to the scavenger. (Modified image courtesy of Dr. Michael A. Olympio. Adapted from Dräger Medical: *Dräger Technical Service Manual: Fabius GS Anesthesia System.* Rev: E. Telford, PA: Dräger Medical; 2002.)

control, it is possible to implement *target-controlled inhalational anesthesia.* The targets subject to control are the end-tidal anesthetic agent and the end-tidal oxygen concentration. Currently, Dräger, GE, and Maquet all have target-controlled systems available. The major advantage of the target control is reduced consumption of anesthetic agent.[214f-214h] These systems rely on proprietary algorithms, and the actual savings may depend on how fast the algorithm tries to achieve the desired anesthetic depth. The target-controlled system might actually prioritize rapid achievement of set anesthetic agent (requiring high initial fresh gas flow) over reducing fresh gas flow and anesthetic agent consumption.[214i] The benefits of low-flow anesthesia could be realized by a vigilant anesthesia provider, but at the expense of significantly more key-strokes per case.[214h] Although the target-controlled modes of inhalational anesthesia seem likely to reduce anesthetic agent use, and to provide an additional layer of patient safety in low-flow anesthesia, none are currently approved by the FDA for use in the United States.

Fresh Gas Flow Compensation and Fresh Gas Decoupling

On older bellows-type anesthesia workstations, the portion of fresh gas flow that occurred during an inspiratory cycle was added to the set tidal volume, leading to variation in tidal volume depending on the set fresh gas flow. During the inspiratory phase of mechanical ventilation, the ventilator relief valve (also known as the ventilator pop-off valve) is typically closed, and the breathing system's APL valve is most commonly out of circuit. Therefore during positive-pressure ventilation, the patient's lungs received the volume from the bellows in addition to that from the flowmeters during the inspiratory phase. The amount of excess volume (and pressure) that the patient received was proportional to the direction and magnitude of the change in the fresh gas flow rate. As the practitioner turned up the fresh gas flow, the tidal volume increased. The opposite would occur if the flow rate were decreased from the baseline. It was therefore common knowledge that the operator needed to adjust the set tidal volume on the ventilator if the total fresh gas flow rate was changed to maintain stable tidal volumes and airway pressure.

Newer workstations have engineering features that provide compensation of fresh gas flow to maintain stable tidal volume delivery. Broadly speaking, the workstation will either exclude the fresh gas from the inspiratory limb of the circuit during inspiration, or it will use electronic controls to compensate for the fresh gas flow's contribution. The precise manner in which this is accomplished accounts for much of the variation in breathing system design. On the Dräger Fabius workstation, a principle called *fresh gas decoupling* is used to prevent changes in the fresh gas flow rate from altering positive-pressure tidal volumes and breathing circuit pressures. During the inspiratory phase of ventilation, a decoupling valve located upstream from the piston ventilator diverts the fresh gas stream toward the breathing bag and scavenge outlet during each positive-pressure breath (Fig. 22.52). The GE Aisys system, on the other hand, uses inspiratory tidal volume measurement as a feedback signal for the automatic adjustment of ventilator drive gas volume to compensate for changes in fresh gas flow and leaks.[214j]

On workstations without a fresh gas decoupling feature, inappropriate activation of the oxygen flush valve during the inspiratory phase of mechanical ventilation can add a substantial amount of volume to the circuit and can result in baro- and/or volutrauma because excess pressure and volume may not be able to be vented from the breathing circuit.[25] Although the circuit high-pressure alarm may provide warning, unless an adjustable inspiratory pressure limiter is set to a relatively low value, high pressures can be realized. On workstations equipped with adjustable inspiratory pressure limiters, maximal inspiratory pressure may be set by the user to a desired peak airway pressure. An adjustable pressure relief valve opens when the predetermined user-selected pressure is reached. This theoretically prevents the generation of excessive airway pressure. However, this feature depends on having preset the appropriate pop-off pressure. If the setting is too low, insufficient pressure for ventilation may be generated and can result in inadequate minute ventilation; if set too high, the excessive airway pressure may still occur and result in patient harm. Some machines may also include a factory-preset inspiratory pressure safety valve that opens at a preset airway pressure, such as 60 to 80 cm H_2O, to minimize the risk of barotrauma. Therefore modern workstations without fresh gas decoupling usually reach a maximum pressure limit and terminate ventilation, release pressure, or sustain at the pressure limit.[215] In machines with a fresh gas decoupling feature, the oxygen flush inflow is diverted away from the patient during positive-pressure ventilation, thereby maintaining stable volumes and pressures.

SCAVENGING SYSTEMS

Scavenging is the collection and subsequent removal of waste anesthetic gases from both the anesthesia machine and the anesthetizing location. Scavenging is required because the fresh gas flow rates used during most anesthetic regimens deliver more anesthetic agent than necessary, as well as more oxygen than is being consumed. Without scavenging, operating room personnel could be exposed to anesthetic gases, and there could be an increased risk of an oxygen-rich environment supporting combustion.

In 1977, the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) prepared a document entitled *Criteria for a Recommended Standard: Occupational Exposure to Waste Anesthetic Gases and Vapors.*[216] Although it was maintained that a minimal safe level of exposure could not be defined, the NIOSH proceeded to issue the recommendations shown in Table 22.9. These same criteria remain in place today. Contemporary scavenging systems are governed by standards set forth by the ISO.[11,216a] In 1999, the ASA Task Force on Trace Anesthetic Gases developed a booklet entitled *Waste Anesthetic Gases: Information for Management in Anesthetizing Areas and the Postanesthesia Care Unit.* This publication describes the role of regulatory agencies, reviews scavenging and monitoring equipment, and provides recommendations.[217] Finally, the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) publishes *Anesthetic Gases: Guidelines for Workplace Exposures* on its website; this document does not establish legal standards, but is a repository of information, guidelines, and references.[217a]

The two major causes of waste gas contamination in the operating room are the anesthetic technique used and equipment issues.[217,218] Regarding the anesthetic technique, causes of operating room contamination include: (1) failure to turn off the gas flow control valves or the vaporizer when the circuit is disconnected from the patient; (2) use of poorly fitting masks; (3) flushing of the circuit into the room; (4) filling of anesthetic vaporizers, particularly if spillage occurs; (5) use of uncuffed endotracheal tubes; and (6) use of breathing circuits other than the circle system. Equipment failure or lack of understanding of proper equipment use can also contribute to operating room contamination. Leaks can occur in the high-pressure hoses, the nitrous oxide tank mounting, the high- or low-pressure circuits of the anesthesia machine, or the circle system, particularly at the CO_2 absorber assembly. The anesthesia care provider must be certain that the room suction and scavenging system is operational and adjusted properly to ensure adequate scavenging. Waste flow from a side-stream gas analyzer (50-250 mL/min) must also be directed to the scavenging system or returned to the breathing system to prevent pollution of the operating room.[217,218]

TABLE 22.9 National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health Recommendations for Trace Anesthetic Gas Levels

Anesthetic Gas	Maximum TWA Concentration (ppm)*
Halogenated agent alone	2
Nitrous oxide	25
Combination of halogenated agent plus nitrous oxide	
Halogenated agent	0.5
Nitrous oxide	25
Dental facilities (nitrous oxide alone)	50

*Time-weighted average sampling, also known as time-integrated sampling, is a sampling method that evaluates the average concentration of anesthetic gas over a prolonged period, such as 1 to 8 hours.

TWA, Time-weighted average.

From U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare. *Criteria for a Recommended Standard: Occupational Exposure to Waste Anesthetic Gases and Vapors*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare; 1977.

Classifications and Components

Waste anesthesia gas scavenging systems can be classified as: *active* or *passive*. In active systems, the scavenging system is connected to a vacuum source, such as the hospital's suction system. Passive systems simply vent the waste gas into a heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) system or through a hose to the building's exterior through a wall, ceiling, or floor. Passive systems rely only on the slight positive pressure of the gases leaving the gas-collecting assembly to provide the flow. If the passive system vents to an HVAC system, it is mandatory that it be a *nonrecirculating* system. Passive systems are less common in contemporary operating rooms.

Scavenging systems may also be *open* or *closed*. An open scavenging system allows for room air to be entrained into the flow of waste gas, whereas a closed system does not.[219] This distinction is discussed more thoroughly below.

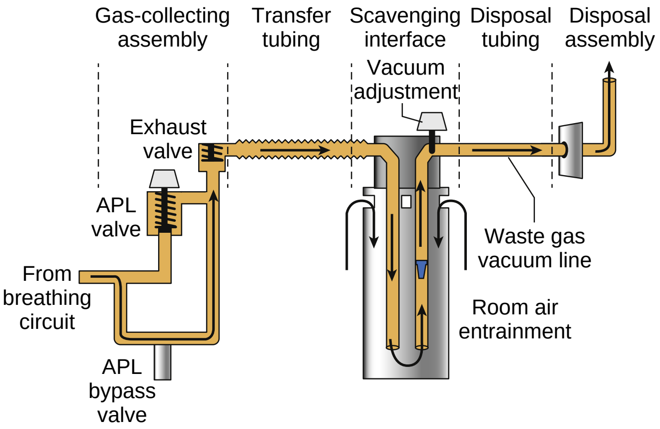


Fig. 22.53 Components of a scavenging system using the example of a Dräger Fabius system (Dräger Medical, Telford, PA) connected to an open, active scavenging system. The transfer tubing has a connector size distinct from the breathing circuit to prevent misconnections. Obstructions in the gas-collecting assembly or transfer tubing can cause high pressure in the breathing circuit. Leaks, inadequate suction, or failure of the scavenging interface can cause environmental contamination. *APL,* Adjustable pressure-limiting. See text for details. (From Brockwell RC. Delivery systems for inhaled anesthesia. In: Barash PG, ed. *Clinical Anesthesia.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006:589.)

Scavenging systems classically have five components (Fig. 22.53): (1) the gas-collecting assembly, (2) the transfer tubing, (3) the scavenging interface, (4) the gas disposal assembly tubing, and (5) an active or passive gas disposal assembly.[220]

Gas-Collecting Assembly. The gas-collecting assemblies are where waste gas exit from the breathing circuit and connect to the transfer tubing. Waste anesthetic gases are vented from the anesthesia system either through the APL valve or through some sort of ventilator relief valve. Excess patient exhaled gas must exit the breathing system through one of these valves or be shed into the room (e.g., poor face-mask fit, endotracheal tube leak, machine leak). Ventilator drive gas on contemporary bellows-type ventilators, as well as the flow from the reflector gas module on the Maquet FLOW-i, are vented via the scavenging system as well. This is significant because under conditions of high fresh gas flow and high minute ventilation, the gases flowing into the scavenging interface may overwhelm the evacuation system. If this occurs, waste anesthetic gases may overflow the system through the positive-pressure relief valve (closed systems) or through the atmospheric vents (open systems) and pollute the operating room. This scenario is less likely with pneumatically driven ventilators that exhaust their drive gas (100% oxygen or oxygen/air mixture) into the operating room through a small vent on the back of the ventilator control housing.

Transfer Tubing. The transfer tubing carries excess gas from the gas-collecting assembly to the scavenging interface. As specified by ISO standard 80601-2-13, the scavenging system must have 30-mm connectors, or some other proprietary connector that will prevent the scavenging system from connecting to other elements on the workstation.[11] Some manufacturers color-code the transfer tubing with yellow bands to distinguish it from 22-mm breathing system tubing. The tubing must be sufficiently rigid to prevent kinking to minimize the chance of occlusion, or it must contain some means of pressure relief in case of occlusion. Occlusion of the transfer tubing can be very problematic because it is upstream from the pressure-limiting features of the scavenging interface. If the transfer tubing is occluded by kinking or misconnection, breathing circuit pressure will increase and barotrauma can occur.[144,221-223] On machines that have separate transfer tubes for the APL valve and for the ventilator relief valve, the two tubes merge before or at the scavenging interface.

Scavenging Interface. The scavenging interface is the most important component of the system because it protects the breathing circuit or ventilator from excessive positive or negative pressure.[220] The interface should limit the pressure immediately downstream from the gas-collecting assembly to between −0.5 and +3.5 cm H_2O under normal working conditions.[11] Positive-pressure relief is mandatory irrespective of the type of disposal system used, so the system can vent excess gas in case of occlusion (or inadequate suction with active systems) downstream from the interface. If the disposal system is an active system, negative-pressure relief will also be necessary to protect the breathing circuit or ventilator from excessive subatmospheric pressure. Subatmospheric pressure in the scavenging system could induce gas flow from the patient's breathing system. A reservoir is highly desirable with active systems because it stores waste gases until the evacuation system can remove them.

OPEN INTERFACES. The open scavenge interface sets up a continual flow into the disposal tubing using an active interface. If the amount of waste gas being discharged from the anesthesia workstation is less than the continual flow in the scavenging system, then the balance of that flow is obtained from entrained room air. Because the anesthesia machine discharges waste gas intermittently in surges, peak flow may overwhelm the flow of the scavenging system, so open systems also require a reservoir canister (Fig. 22.54).[219] Waste gas enters the system at the top of the canister and travels to the bottom through an inner tube, where a vacuum line removes waste gases. When adjusted properly, the vacuum rate should exceed the rate of waste gas flow into the chamber, and some room air should also be drawn into the canister through the relief port. The vacuum flow rate is usually adjusted on the scavenging interface using a flow control valve and flowmeter. Adjusting the scavenger vacuum flow rate is an important part of the workstation daily pre-use checkout procedure. If vacuum flow is inadequate, waste gas can spill out into the room through the relief ports. The open system does not require positive- or negative-pressure relief valves because the canister is open to the atmosphere. Relief ports on the top of the canister provide positive- and negative-pressure relief. Some open scavenging systems can incorporate a reservoir bag instead of a canister.

CLOSED INTERFACES. Closed scavenging interfaces are isolated from the environment by pressure relief valves, so the relationship of waste gas flow, vacuum flow, and the size of the system's reservoir bag determines the effectiveness of the gas elimination. All closed interfaces must have a positive-pressure relief valve to vent excess system pressure in

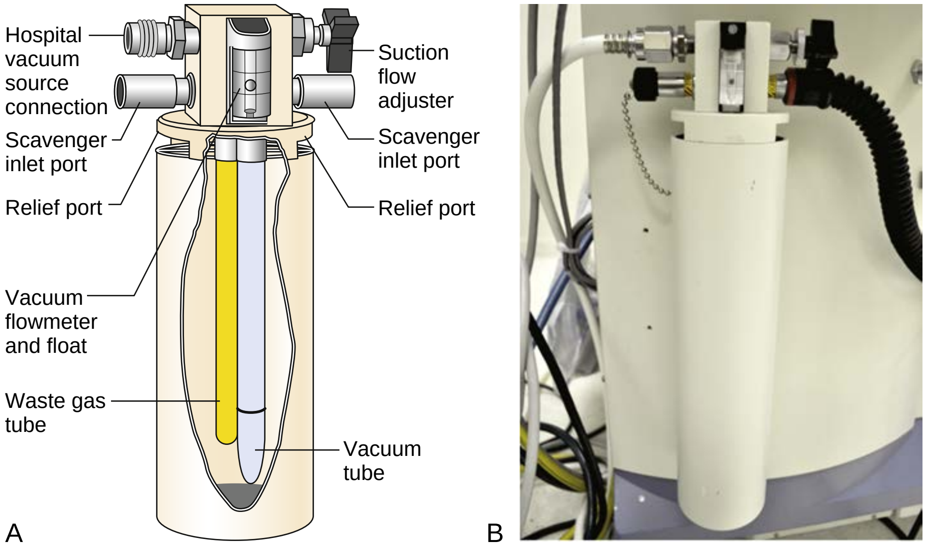

Hospital
vacuum
source
connection
Scavenger
inlet port
Relief port
Vacuum
flowmeter
and float
Waste gas
tube
Suction
flow
adjuster
Scavenger
inlet port
Relief port
Vacuum
tube
A
B

Fig. 22.54 (A and B) Open scavenge interface. When adjusted properly, room air is continually entrained via the relief port the top of the cannister. See text for details.

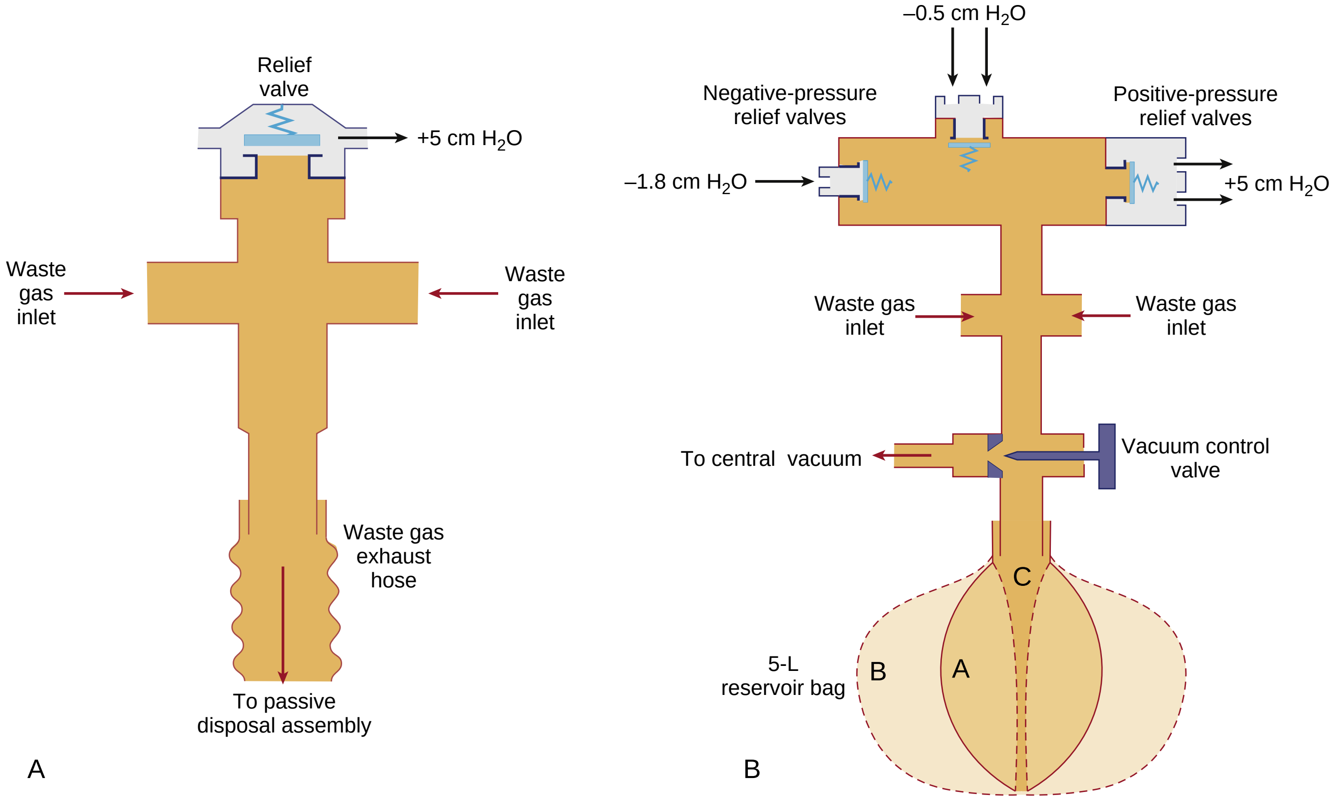

Relief
valve
+5 cm H_2O
Waste
gas
inlet
Waste
gas
inlet
Waste gas
exhaust
hose
To passive
disposal assembly
A
–0.5 cm H_2O
Negative-pressure
relief valves
Positive-pressure
relief valves
–1.8 cm H_2O
+5 cm H_2O
Waste gas
inlet
Waste gas
inlet
To central vacuum
Vacuum control
valve
C
5-L
reservoir bag
B
A
B

Fig. 22.55 Closed scavenging interfaces. (A) Interface used with a passive disposal system. (B) Interface used with an active system. In Panel B the labels on the 5-L reservoir bag refer to proper adjustment (A), over-distention (B), and completely deflated (C). See text for additional details. (A, Modified from North American Dräger. *Scavenger Interface for Air Conditioning: Instruction Manual.* Telford, PA: North American Dräger; 1984; B, From North American Dräger. *Narkomed 2A Anesthesia System: Technical Service Manual.* Telford, PA: North American Dräger; 1985.)

case of obstruction and a negative-pressure relief valve to protect the breathing system from subatmospheric pressure if an active disposal system is used.[220]

Two types of closed interfaces are used in clinical practice. One is used with passive scavenging systems and has positive-pressure relief only; the other is used with active scavenging systems and has both positive- and negative-pressure relief.

POSITIVE-PRESSURE RELIEF ONLY. A *closed, passive* scavenging system requires only a single positive-pressure relief valve (Fig. 22.55*A*). Waste gas enters the interface at the waste gas inlets. Transfer of the waste gas from the interface to the disposal system relies on the slight positive pressure of the gases leaving the patient's breathing system because a negative-pressure evacuation system is not used. Waste gases are then passively vented to a nonrecirculating HVAC system or to the outdoors. The positive-pressure relief valve opens at a preset value (such as 5 cm H_2O) if an obstruction between the interface and the disposal system occurs.[224] With this type of system, a reservoir bag is not required.

POSITIVE- AND NEGATIVE-PRESSURE RELIEF. A *closed, active* scavenging system requires a positive-pressure relief valve and at least one negative-pressure relief valve, in addition to a reservoir bag. Fig. 22.55*B*, is a schematic of Dräger Medical's closed scavenge interface for active suction systems. A variable volume of waste gas intermittently enters the interface through the waste gas inlets. The reservoir bag intermittently accumulates excess gas until the evacuation system eliminates it. The operator must adjust the vacuum control valve so that the reservoir bag remains properly inflated (see Fig. 22.55*B*, label *A*), and neither overdistended (label *B*) nor completely deflated (label *C*). Gas is vented to the operating room atmosphere through the positive-pressure relief valve if the system pressure exceeds a preset pressure (varies depending on manufacturer). Room air is entrained through the negative-pressure relief valve if the system pressure is more negative than that valve's opening pressure, approximately −0.5 cm H_2O. Some systems have a backup negative-pressure relief valve that opens at −1.8 cm H_2O if the primary negative-pressure relief valve becomes occluded by dust or other causes. The effectiveness of a closed system in preventing spillage depends on the rate of waste gas inflow, the evacuation flow rate, and the size of the reservoir. Leakage of waste gases into the atmosphere occurs only when the reservoir bag becomes fully inflated and the pressure increases sufficiently to open the positive-pressure relief valve. A "high PEEP" or sustained airway pressure alarm is often encountered in this circumstance.

Gas Disposal Assembly Conduit or Extract Flow. The gas disposal assembly conduit conducts waste gas from the scavenging interface to the receiving end of the gas disposal system (see Fig. 22.53). It should be collapse-proof and should run overhead, if possible, to minimize the chance of accidental occlusion. The connection to the scavenging interface can be a permanent or proprietary connector, but the connection to an active gas disposal system should be a DISS-type connector.[225]

Gas Disposal System. The gas disposal assembly ultimately eliminates excess waste gas (see Fig. 22.53). The two types of environmental disposal mechanisms, active and passive, have been described.

Hazards

Scavenging systems minimize operating room pollution, yet they add complexity to the anesthesia system. A scavenging system functionally extends the anesthesia circuit all the way from the anesthesia machine to the ultimate disposal site. This extension increases the potential for problems. Excessive vacuum applied to a scavenging system can cause undesirable negative pressures within the breathing system. Obstruction of scavenging pathways can cause excessive positive pressure in the breathing circuit. Even when the patient is protected from barotrauma by positive-pressure relief valves, alarm conditions can contribute to potentially unsafe conditions.[226] Inadequate vacuum to the interface can cause venting of waste gas into the operating room. An unusual report linked fires in engineering equipment rooms to design of some waste gas scavenging systems in which the waste gases were vented into machine rooms that have vents opening to the outside as opposed to directly outside.[21,230]

BOX 22.3 **Requirements for Safe Delivery of Anesthesia Care**

- Reliable delivery of oxygen at any appropriate concentration up to 100%.
- Reliable means of positive-pressure ventilation.
- Backup ventilation equipment available and functioning.
- Controlled release of positive pressure from the breathing circuit.
- Anesthesia vapor delivery (if intended as part of the anesthetic plan).
- Adequate suction.
- Means to conform to standards for patient monitoring.

From Sub-Committee of American Society of Anesthesiologists Committee on Equipment and Facilities: *Recommendations for Pre-Anesthesia Checkout Procedures* (2008).

Checking Your Anesthesia Workstation

A complete preanesthesia checkout procedure (PAC) must be performed each day before the anesthesia workstation is first used, and an abbreviated version should be performed before each subsequent case. Box 22.3 lists seven basic requirements for safe delivery of anesthesia care drawn from the ASA's *Recommendations for Pre-Anesthesia Checkout Procedures.*[11b] The anesthesia provider must have assurance prior to commencing any anesthetic that these requirements have been met. Institutions should develop and detail local procedures for meeting these basic safety requirements. These local procedures have taken on increased importance as increasing machine diversity make the applicability of a single, generic PAC remote.

Despite the fact that a PAC has been a mandatory part of anesthesia practice for over 30 years,[228] evidence suggests that anesthesia providers frequently do not perform a complete PAC,[6,229] and may miss faults even when explicitly looking for them on a sabotaged machine.[3] Furthermore, all contemporary anesthesia workstations have automated checkout procedures, none of which can assure that all the basic safety requirements for delivery of anesthetic care have been met.[8,231] In their 2008 *Recommendations*, the ASA suggests that many anesthesia providers are not fully aware of what elements are checked by the automated procedures.[11b] Even review of user's manuals does not always make it obvious.

The ASA's *Recommendations for Pre-Anesthesia Checkout Procedures*, summarized in Box 22.4, focus on ensuring the *availability* of key equipment, and assessing the *function* of that equipment. The *Recommendations* also give guidance as to which items may be carried out by a technician (such as an anesthesia technician or biomedical technician). When the party responsible is listed as "provider and technician," then the provider must perform that task; the task may *also* be assigned to the technician as an added layer of safety. Each institution should develop their own procedures in which the specific duties are delineated.

BOX 22.4 Summary Recommendations of the 2008 Preanesthesia Checkout Procedures

Items to Be Completed *Daily*

Item #	Task	Responsible Parties?
1	Verify that auxiliary oxygen cylinder and self-inflating manual ventilation device are available and functioning	Provider *and* technician
2	Verify that patient suction is adequate to clear the airway	Provider *and* technician
3	Turn on the anesthesia delivery system and confirm that AC power is available	Provider *or* technician
4	Verify the availability of required monitors, including alarms	Provider *or* technician
5	Verify that pressure is adequate on the spare oxygen cylinder mounted on the anesthesia machine	Provider *and* technician
6	Verify that the piped gas pressures are ≥50 psig	Provider *and* technician
7	Verify that vaporizers are adequately filled and, if applicable, that the filler ports are tightly closed	Provider *only*
8	Verify that the gas supply lines have no leaks between the flowmeters and the common gas outlet	Provider *or* technician
9	Test the scavenging system function	Provider *or* technician
10	Calibrate, or verify the calibration of, the oxygen monitor, and check the low-oxygen alarm	Provider *or* technician
11	Verify that carbon dioxide absorbent is not exhausted	Provider *or* technician
12	Perform breathing system pressure and leak testing	Provider *and* technician
13	Verify that gas flows properly through the breathing circuit during both inspiration and exhalation	Provider *and* technician
14	Document the completion of checkout procedures	Provider *and* technician
15	Confirm the ventilator settings, and evaluate readiness to deliver anesthesia care (Anesthesia Time Out)	Provider *only*

Items to Be Completed Before Each Procedure

Item #	Task	Responsible Parties?
1	Verify that patient suction is adequate to clear the airway	Provider *and* technician
2	Verify the availability of required monitors, including alarms	Provider *or* technician
3	Verify that vaporizers are adequately filled and, if applicable, that the filler ports are tightly closed	Provider only
4	Verify that carbon dioxide absorbent is not exhausted	Provider *or* technician
5	Perform breathing system pressure and leak testing	Provider *and* technician
6	Verify that gas flows properly through the breathing circuit during both inspiration and exhalation	Provider *and* technician
7	Document the completion of checkout procedures	Provider *and* technician
8	Confirm the ventilator settings, and evaluate readiness to deliver anesthesia care (Anesthesia Time Out)	Provider only

Modified from Sub-Committee of American Society of Anesthesiologists Committee on Equipment and Facilities: *Recommendations for Pre-Anesthesia Checkout Procedures* (2008).

2008 RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PRE-ANESTHESIA CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

The items in Box 22.4 are reviewed here. Fifteen items are required before commencing the day's anesthesia procedures. Eight items (see Box 22.4, items 2, 4, 7, 11-15) are required before each case.

Item 1: Verify Auxiliary Oxygen Cylinder and Self-Inflating Manual Ventilation Device Are Available and Functioning

Frequency: Daily
Responsible parties: Provider and technician

The anesthesia provider must always be prepared to keep the patient alive without the assistance of the anesthesia machine. The most important safety check in any anesthesia location prior to commencing the day's procedures is the presence of a self-inflating manual ventilation device and a source of oxygen that is separate from the anesthesia workstation and hospital pipeline oxygen supply. These items must be present at every anesthetizing location. The *Recommendations* advise checking the function of the self-inflating ventilation device; this can typically be done without opening the packaging. Note that the presence of a non–self-inflating Mapleson-type breathing circuit is *not* adequate to meet this item.

The auxiliary oxygen tank, typically an E-cylinder, should be checked to make sure it is full, and also for the presence of an attached flowmeter and a means to open the cylinder valve. After check, the valve should be closed to prevent inadvertent loss of the contents. Ensuring the presence of properly filled portable cylinders with attached flowmeters and cylinder wrenches benefits from the logistical support of support staff, but must ultimately be verified by the anesthesia provider.

Item 2: Verify Patient Suction Is Adequate to Clear the Airway

Frequency: Before each use
Responsible parties: Provider and technician

"Safe anesthetic care requires the immediate availability of suction to clear the airway if needed."[11b] Adequate suction with tubing of appropriate length and an oral suctioning tool (e.g., Yankauer suction tip) are necessary before the start of any case. Since these are normally changed with every case, this item is often shared between provider and technician. The provider must verify this item prior to commencing the anesthetic.

Item 3: Turn on Anesthesia Delivery System and Confirm That AC Power Is Available

Frequency: Daily
Responsible party: Provider or technician

Contemporary anesthesia workstations have backup battery power if wall power should fail. If a case is inadvertently started on battery backup power, the first obvious sign of power failure can be catastrophic system shutdown when the backup batteries are exhausted. Prior to commencing the day's anesthetic procedures, functioning AC power should be verified. The ASA also recommends verifying power supply to component subsystems such as desflurane vaporizers. This item may be completed by technician or provider.

Item 4: Verify Availability of Required Monitors and Check Alarms

Frequency: Before each use
Responsible party: Provider or technician

The ASA *Recommendations* include in this item both the presence of monitoring supplies (blood pressure cuffs of appropriate sizes, pulse oximetry probes, etc.), functional tests of critical monitoring equipment (pulse oximeter and capnography), and functional tests of alarm conditions. The importance of an audible alarm is emphasized.

Some elements of this item are straightforward, such as verifying the availability of the monitoring equipment and making sure that monitors are on and cables are properly plugged in. However, the process of checking alarm thresholds, and possibly resetting them, can be tedious. Monitor alarm settings may possibly vary within individual facilities as a result of provider manipulation of alarms for case requirements, a lack of standard default settings, and failure to reset alarm limits routinely. Departmental alarm default settings can be established and programmed into anesthesia workstation monitors. Alarm limit settings also include anesthesia machine alarms such as volume, pressure, and inspired oxygen concentration limits. The practitioner should ensure that critical alarm limits are set to values that permit these alarms to do what they were intended to do. Here, anesthesia technicians can improve the quality of the pre-use checkout by checking the function of standard monitors and confirming that critical alarm thresholds are set to established default values.

Item 5: Verify That Pressure Is Adequate on the Spare Oxygen Cylinder Mounted on the Anesthesia Machine

Frequency: Daily
Responsible parties: Provider and technician

In addition to verifying the presence of a separate source of cylinder oxygen (Item 1), the anesthesia provider should verify the presence of an adequately filled oxygen cylinder mounted on the anesthesia workstation. Verification of oxygen cylinder pressure is accomplished by opening the oxygen cylinder or cylinders on the back of the machine and evaluating the tank gauge pressure. The current recommendations do not provide a specific value that would prompt replacing the tank, but some manufacturer's manuals suggest changing the oxygen cylinder when the pressure is below 1000 psi.[31a]

The *Recommendations* affirm that other gas supply cylinders such as air, nitrous oxide, etc., need to be checked only if that gas is required for the anesthetic.

Item 6: Verify That Piped Gas Pressures Are 50 psig or Higher

Frequency: Daily
Responsible parties: Provider and technician

A daily check of adequate pipeline pressures is specified in the *Recommendations for Pre-Anesthesia Checkout Procedures*; this item should be performed by the provider even if it is part of the technician's workflow.

A more detailed daily pre-use check of the pipeline system may be part of institutional protocols. For example, a quick daily inspection of connections, supply hoses, gas pressures, and the presence of more than 90% oxygen in the inspiratory limb greatly minimizes risk. An important safety item on all machines is an audible and visual alarm that warns the operator of diminishing oxygen supply pressure. The only way to evaluate this safety device is to disconnect the wall oxygen supply and shut off the oxygen supply tank or tanks, in order to generate the alarm condition. The 2008 *Recommendations* do not mandate this maneuver.

Item 7: Verify That Vaporizers Are Adequately Filled and, If Applicable, That the Filler Ports Are Tightly Closed

Responsible parties: Provider (and technician if redundancy desired)

The anesthesia provider should verify that there is an adequate supply of anesthetic agent in the vaporizer if an inhaled anesthetic is planned. Because not every anesthetic utilizes an inhaled agent, alarm defaults may not include a low agent alarm. The risk of light anesthesia and recall can be mitigated by checking agent levels prior to proceeding.

Loose caps on vaporizer filler ports may be a source of leaks when the vaporizer is on. Because the breathing system pressure and leak test (see Item 12 below) is carried out with the vaporizer off, this source of leak may go otherwise undetected. Some vaporizers are designed to automatically close when the filling adapter is removed. Although not part of the 2008 PAC guidelines, some manufacturers recommend a check of their machine's vaporizer interlock system, which, if present, prevents more than one vaporizer from being activated simultaneously.

Item 8: Verify That No Leaks Are Present in the Gas Supply Lines Between the Flowmeters and the Common Gas Outlet

Frequency: Daily and whenever a vaporizer is changed
Responsible party: Provider or technician

As discussed above, the low-pressure section of the anesthesia workstation, from the flow control valves, through the vaporizers, and to the common gas outlet, is the most vulnerable to leaks. Leaks in this section of the machine can be associated with hypoxemia or patient awareness under anesthesia.[22,24]

Two areas of the low-pressure leak test deserve emphasis. First, some anesthesia workstations include an outlet check valve (see Fig. 22.1). The implication of this check valve is that positive pressure in the breathing circuit *cannot* be

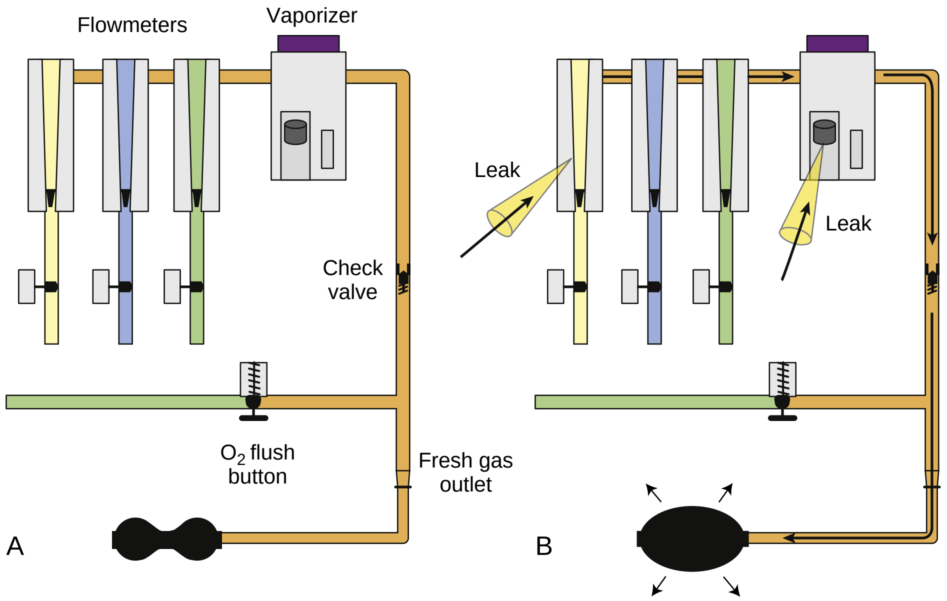


Fig. 22.56 The negative-pressure "universal" low-pressure system leak test. (A) A specially configured suction bulb is connected to the common (fresh) gas outlet and collapsed. Subatmospheric pressure is created in the low pressure circuit, thus opening the outlet check valve (if present) and exposing the vaporizers, tubing, and associated piping and connections to the vacuum. In a system without a leak, the bulb stays deflated. (B) Leaks in the system draw in ambient air and cause the suction bulb to inflate. *O$_2$,* Oxygen.

used to check for leaks upstream in the low-pressure system, because the pressure will not be transmitted past the check valve. On these machines, a negative pressure test must be performed. Second, most vaporizer leaks are not detected unless the vaporizer is on. Therefore a thorough low-pressure leak test can require testing multiple vaporizers, depending on machine configuration. Some workstations (Maquet anesthesia machines and GE Healthcare workstations) do perform automated vaporizer leak testing on their unique vaporizers (ADU vaporizer).

In machines with an outlet check valve, a negative-pressure test must be performed. The negative-pressure leak test is simple to perform and is highly sensitive, detecting leaks as small as 30 mL/min. This simple test requires that the flow control valves be fully closed to prevent any flow of gas into the low-pressure circuit. A specially configured suction bulb, which can either be constructed or obtained from the manufacturer, is then attached to the common gas outlet (Fig. 22.56). The bulb is then squeezed repeatedly until it is fully collapsed. If the bulb does not stay collapsed for a specified period of time, then air is being sucked by the bulb into the machine through a leak that will allow gas to escape when the machine is pressurized. The same maneuver is carried out with each vaporizer opened in turn to check for associated leaks.

The negative-pressure test *can* be performed on machines without a check valve. For this reason, the negative-pressure test is sometimes referred to as the "universal leak test." Several mishaps have resulted from application of the wrong leak test to the wrong machine.[231-234] When in doubt, the negative-pressure test is therefore preferred. However, many of the newer-generation anesthesia machines do not have an accessible common gas outlet; therefore negative-pressure low-pressure system testing cannot be performed. On these machines, either manual positive-pressure testing of the low-pressure system (and vaporizers) is performed during the pre-use checkout, or low-pressure testing is accomplished as part of an automated checkout feature. Note that the automated low-pressure test on some machines needs to be specifically selected.[214j]

Item 9: Test Scavenging System Function

Frequency: Daily
Responsible party: Provider or technician

Evaluation of the scavenging system is a manual maneuver. No automated checks are conducted. A test of the scavenging system begins by checking the proper assembly and integrity of each component and connection within the system including the gas transfer tubes leading from the APL valve and the ventilator relief valve to the scavenging interface. In the case of many modern machines, a single transfer tube may lead from a compact breathing system to the scavenge interface. The integrity of the vacuum tubing leading from the wall outlet to the scavenging interface should also be checked.

To test a closed, passive scavenger system (as seen in Fig. 22.55*A*), one creates high flow within the breathing system by occluding the patient "Y-piece" (or short-circuiting the inspiratory and expiratory limbs of the breathing circuit with breathing hose), occluding the exhaust hose outlet on the scavenging interface, and ensuring that the flow of gas exits the system through the positive-pressure safety relief valve so excess pressure does not build up in the breathing circuit (e.g., <10 cm H_2O). To test a closed, active scavenger system (as seen in Fig. 22.55*B*), two steps are required. A check of positive-pressure relief is conducted as just described for the passive, closed scavenger. Some manufacturers recommend that the suction needle valve be turned off for this step. A check of negative-pressure relief is conducted by setting scavenge interface suction to a routine setting, turning off all flow control valves on the anesthesia machine, and occluding inflow into the patient's breathing circuit at the patient's Y-piece (or short circuiting the inspiratory and expiratory limbs of the breathing circuit with breathing hose) and at the breathing bag mount. At this point, the breathing pressure gauge should indicate a negligible negative pressure (e.g., no lower than −1.0 cm H_2O). Generally speaking, the scavenging suction on active systems should be adjusted so the reservoir bag is never overinflated or underinflated, but it should remain slightly inflated during routine use. Because the volume of gas being passed into the scavenging system varies, it may be necessary to adjust the needle valve. Given the diversity of breathing systems, this check serves as another instance in which users must consider manufacturer-specified protocols when developing a local PAC.

Checking the function of an open, active system as seen in Fig. 22.54 is relatively simple compared with checking a closed, active system. After ensuring that all gas transfer tubes and the suction lines are properly connected, the scavenger suction needle valve is adjusted to place the flowmeter bobbin between the indicator lines. A positive-pressure test and a negative-pressure test are then conducted as described earlier.

Item 10: Calibrate, or Verify Calibration of, the Oxygen Monitor and Check the Low Oxygen Alarm

Frequency: Daily
Responsible party: Provider or technician

The oxygen concentration analyzer is one of the most important monitors on the anesthesia workstation. Older anesthesia workstations used a galvanic cell oxygen sensor located near the patient's breathing circuit inspiratory valve. These devices have a finite life span, which is inversely proportional to the amount of oxygen exposure.[234a] They are also vulnerable to drift. Therefore daily verification of calibration (and recalibration, if necessary) is recommended. Newer anesthesia workstations rely on side-stream multi-gas analyzers to measure the inspired oxygen concentration. The multi-gas analyzer is an irremovable and permanent component of the workstation. Thus it fulfills the requirement imposed on the manufacturer to provide inspired oxygen concentration monitoring. These monitors do not require daily calibration. Nevertheless, the function of the sensor should be checked in room air, to verify that the it reads 21%.

The function of the low-oxygen concentration alarm should be tested daily. This may be done by manually setting the low oxygen concentration alarm limit to more than 21% while exposing the analyzer to room air, generating the alarm condition. A prudent default setting would be somewhere between 25% and 30%, unless oxygen concentrations lower than this value are used routinely. In any case, it is wise to keep it set to at least 21%. These steps may be carried out by a technician, according to local protocols.

Item 11: Verify Carbon Dioxide Absorbent Is Not Exhausted

Frequency: Before each use
Responsible party: Provider or technician

In order to utilize rebreathed gas, the anesthesia circle system requires a CO_2 absorber. Prior to each anesthetic, the absorbent should be assessed for exhaustion. It is important for providers to know that absorbent color change is not as reliable as is the presence of *inspired* CO_2 on capnography in identifying exhausted absorbent. Capnometry should be used with every anesthetic that uses the circle system, and the provider should be vigilant for inspired CO_2 concentration greater than 0. A normal-appearing but nonfunctional absorbent is difficult to detect during the pre-use checkout procedure. It is no longer advised for providers to breathe in and breathe out of the breathing circuit manually to assess the functionality of the absorbent before a case.

Item 12: Breathing System Pressure and Leak Testing

Frequency: Before each use
Responsible parties: Provider and technician

This PAC item verifies that positive pressure can be developed and sustained in the breathing circuit, and that the APL ("pop-off") valve properly relieves pressure in the circuit. It is not rare for either the disposable breathing circuit components or the fixed anesthesia machine components to leak. Therefore a leak check of the breathing system is of paramount importance. Traditionally, this test has been performed manually after an inspection of the breathing circuit, removal of the gas sampling line, and capping of the gas sampling line port. With the machine set in the "bag" or the manual mode of ventilation, the gas flows are set to zero, the APL valve is closed, the patient's Y-piece is occluded, and breathing system is pressurized with the O_2 flush button to approximately 30 cm H_2O (Fig. 22.57). The circuit passes the leak test if it holds this pressure for at least 10 seconds. A decrease in pressure during the test should prompt a check of all plug-in, push-fit, and screw connectors, the seal of the absorber canister, and a careful inspection of the disposable tubing. One of the most common locations of a circuit leak is at the absorber canister, and it is particularly important for the anesthesia provider to apply this check rigorously immediately after the absorbent has been changed.

On many modern anesthesia machines, breathing circuit leak testing is an automated feature, although manual steps are still required for test preparation. Circuit compliance is often also automatically assessed on some machines during this phase to guide ventilator tidal volume delivery. Therefore the test should be performed with the circuit that is going to be used. The automated circuit leak test may be performed by a technician, but its completion should be verified by the provider. The importance of the leak test, on which depends the ability to deliver positive pressure ventilation, implies that it must be the provider's responsibility.

The APL valve should also be assessed at this time by opening it widely after the pressure test and ensuring that the breathing circuit pressure decreases rapidly to zero. A prompt pressure drop should occur regardless of APL valve design. The ability of the pressure-limiting type APL valve to maintain stable circuit pressure can be easily assessed, if required, by setting the APL valve to 30 cm H_2O, occluding the patient's Y-piece in a manual mode of ventilation, increasing gas flow to approximately 5 L/min, and ensuring the circuit pressure, once stable, remains within a range close to that set on the APL valve.

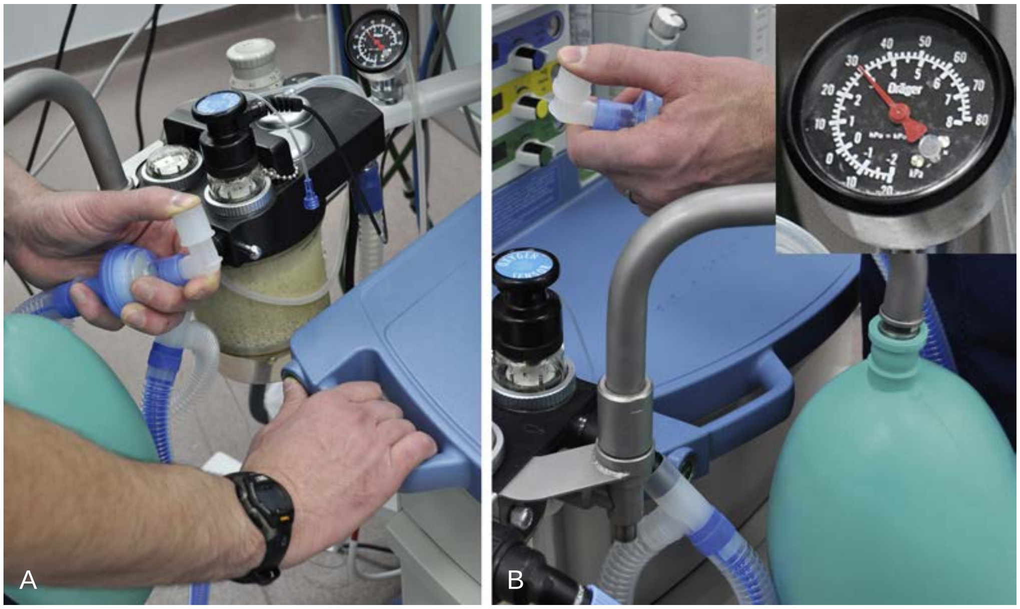


Fig. 22.57 Manual breathing system pressure and leak testing. Breathing system pressure and leak testing should be performed with the circuit configuration that will be used during anesthetic delivery. (A) The patient Y-piece or elbow is occluded, and the oxygen flush button is used to pressurize the breathing circuit to approximately 30 cm H_2O. (B) The circuit should hold pressure at this level for at least 10 seconds. It is important to ensure that the gas flows are set to zero (or their minimal values), the gas sample line is removed, and its circuit port is occluded.

Item 13: Verify That Gas Flows Properly Through the Breathing Circuit During Both Inspiration and Exhalation

Frequency: Before each use
Responsible parties: Provider and technician

This item assesses the circle breathing system for unobstructed flow and proper function of the unidirectional valves. This test of circuit flow is easily accomplished by placing a "test lung" or an extra breathing bag at the patient Y-piece. In the "bag" or a manual mode of ventilation, the operator ventilates the artificial "lung" with the breathing bag, then actively "exhales" (squeezes) the test lung back to the breathing bag in a to-and-fro motion (Fig. 22.58). This is the so-called *flow test*. The inspiratory valve should open and the expiratory valve should close during inspiration, and vice versa for exhalation. Obstruction to inspiratory flow during the flow test manifests as a "tight" breathing bag on "inspiration," whereas expiratory limb obstructions cause impeded "exhalation." Some form of flow test should be conducted because leak testing does not reliably identify circuit obstruction or unidirectional valve malfunction. Undetected circuit obstructions are particularly ominous and can manifest dramatically and sometimes immediately following induction.[147,148,150] Subtle circuit obstruction may not be appreciable except by capnometry.

Automated machine checks may not assess for (or detect) obstruction to flow within the breathing circuit. A number of complications and near-misses involving an obstructed breathing circuit have been reported despite the performance of the automated circuit check.[9,231,234b,234c] Although most user's manuals for machines that perform automated aspects of the pre-use checkout describe a leak test function, few specifically describe a flow test or an assessment of unidirectional valve function. In fact, some modern machines that incorporate automated checkout steps, including a leak test, recommend a manual assessment of the inspiratory and expiratory valves.[214,31a] In the experience of this chapter's authors, a full checkout procedure with test lung is uncommon in this era of automated machine checks. If this test is omitted, providers must be cognizant of the fact that unidirectional valve malfunction and breathing circuit obstruction have not been ruled out before starting the case.

Item 14: Document Completion of Checkout Procedures

Responsible parties: Provider and technician

Documentation of completion of the anesthetic checkout procedure by *providers* should occur within the anesthetic record. Currently, no guidance is available regarding where anesthesia or biomedical technician documentation of checkout procedures should occur. However, it would be prudent to maintain a detailed departmental log as a quality assurance tool.

Item 15: Confirm Ventilator Settings and Evaluate Readiness to Deliver Anesthesia Care (Anesthesia Time Out)

Frequency: Immediately before initiating the anesthetic regimen
Responsible parties: Provider

The authors of the 2008 *Recommendations* include as the last step in the PAC an "anesthesia time out." The time out asks the anesthesia provider to confirm 6 items:

- Monitors functional?
- Capnogram present?
- Oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry measured?
- Flowmeter and ventilator settings proper?
- Manual/ventilator switch set to manual?
- Vaporizer(s) adequately filled?[11b]

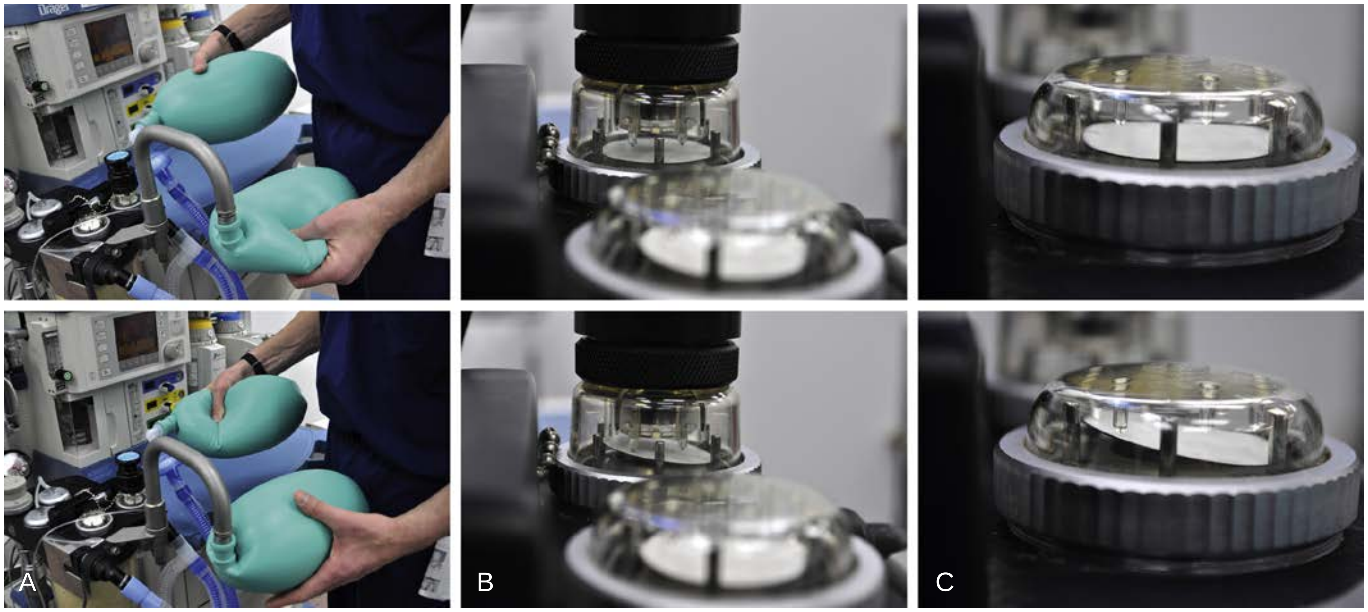


Fig. 22.58 (A–C) Verification that gas flows properly through the breathing circuit during both inspiration and exhalation with the to-and-fro "flow test." Top row, A test lung or second reservoir bag is placed on the patient elbow piece. A squeeze of the breathing bag should cause flow through the inspiratory limb, open the inspiratory valve, fill the test lung, and hold the expiratory valve closed. Bottom row, A reciprocal squeeze of the test lung should cause flow through the expiratory limb, open the expiratory valve, fill the breathing bag, and hold the inspiratory valve closed. Circuit flow during the test should be smooth and unimpeded.

This last step serves as a recommended final preinduction check list of the machine and other important items including the application of essential monitors. Verifying appropriate ventilator settings is an important safety check, especially in practices with mixed adult and pediatric cases. Many contemporary anesthesia workstations can be programmed to offer adult and pediatric "profiles" that adjust the anesthesia ventilator's default tidal volume and respiratory rate. Some older machines are more likely to retain the previous patient's settings, with the potential for under- or over-ventilation. Spending time adjusting ventilator settings in the immediate postinduction period can be distracting.

The checklist above focuses on the anesthesia workstation but does not include other key equipment such as medications, intubation supplies, monitoring transducers, etc. Some providers rely on final check mnemonic devices such as the MS MAIDS checklist (Box 22.5). Regardless of the specific steps, a final checklist that verifies the presence and function of key safety items is fundamental to the safe delivery of anesthesia.

BOX 22.5 The MS MAIDS Checklist*

- **Machine:** The machine checkout is complete; the vaporizers are filled, closed, and set to "0"; all gas flows knobs are set to zero flow; the ventilator and pressure settings are appropriate for the upcoming patient, with the machine in manual/spontaneous breathing mode, and the adjustable pressure-limiting valve is open.
- **Suction:** Patient suction is adequate to clear the airway.
- **Monitors:** All required standard monitors are present and ready to go.
- **Airway:** Primary airway equipment and appropriate backup equipment are ready to go.
- **Intravenous:** Intravenous lines, fluids, and associated equipment are ready to go.
- **Drugs:** All necessary medications are available and are properly labeled.
- **Special:** Any special or unique items (i.e., additional monitors) required for the case are available and ready.

*An example mnemonic for an "Anesthesia Time Out," which ensures that all appropriate checks have been completed, all essential equipment is available, and the machine is properly configured for the next patient.

Additional Comments Pertaining to the ASA's Pre-Anesthesia Checkout Procedure Recommendations (2008)

Although the 2008 PAC procedures are comprehensive, several steps that were part of the earlier PAC recommendations[228,235] did not appear in the current recommendations. Some of these are still found in machine user's manuals. The use of these steps should be based on local needs or requirements because the 2008 recommendations are not restrictive nor intended to be limiting. Some of these items are:

1. Disconnecting the central oxygen supply line to assess the low–oxygen supply pressure alarm and to purge the tank pressure gauges to zero
2. Inspecting the gas supply hoses for cracks or wear
3. Testing the flowmeters for smooth operation
4. Testing the proportioning system by attempting to create a hypoxic oxygen–nitrous oxide mixture

AUTOMATED ANESTHESIA MACHINE CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

Important points to consider regarding automated PAC features or "self-tests" are that (1) they differ between manufacturers and models; (2) it is sometimes difficult to determine precisely which segments or components are actually being checked by reading the user's manual, and (3) *no* machine automatically checks all the items on an effective PAC. At least some manual steps are required. Investigators have suggested that many providers do not understand exactly what is being checked by automated checks, or they make false assumptions regarding their respective machine's automated checkout procedure. It is easy to understand why the authors of the ASA's 2008 *Recommendations for Pre-Anesthesia Checkout Procedures* warned about an overreliance on the automated machine checkout. For example, one manufacturer's self-test screen reports a "leakage" amount, but the display or manual does not specify which section is responsible (e.g., the breathing circuit or the LPS). The operator must make an assumption that the low-pressure system is also being tested for leaks, and the manual does not state that any vaporizer should be turned "on" during leak testing. Finally, it was not clear in this manual whether the circuit is assessed for proper unidirectional flow or obstruction. When developing a local PAC procedure, providers should gain familiarity with their machine's automated checkout procedure through the user's manual. If an important item is not actually part of the described self-check or is not suggested in the user's manual, it should not be assumed that it can be neglected. Not requiring that conventional vaporizers be opened during a leak test of the low-pressure system is such an example.

MACHINE-EMBEDDED PREANESTHESIA MACHINE CHECKOUT CHECKLISTS

Some anesthesia machines have embedded PAC checklists, which are displayed during machine checkout. Like their paper counterparts, they help guide users through manual and self-test functions. If an embedded checklist provides a complete solution for a department, then it can be used exclusively. However, local requirements may exceed or depart from the embedded checklist. In these cases, the use of the embedded checklist (or a modification thereof) can become a line item within the local PAC checklist.

DEVELOPING A LOCAL PREANESTHESIA MACHINE CHECKOUT CHECKLIST

The goal of a PAC is to evaluate and configure the anesthesia workstation properly so it performs its functions safely and smoothly. The objectives of the PAC *checklist* are to guide the operator through an effective PAC and to promote compliance through ease of use. A PAC checklist can also serve as a quality control tool by codifying important items onto an organized list used by all providers.[236] The checkout procedure should be ergonomically ordered to minimize redundant movements and save time by placing procedures in a rational sequence.[237] Finally, the checklist should be as short as possible, yet be detailed enough so critical items are not omitted.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Steven G. Venticinque and J. Jeffrey Andrews for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Mehta SP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:788.
2. Caplan R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:741.
3. Larson ER, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:154.
4. Olympio MA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:618.
5. Armstrong-Brown A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47:974.
6. O'Shaughnessy SM, Mahon P. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70:1005.
7. Mayor AH, Eaton JM. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:866.
8. Berry N, Mills P. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:927–927.
9. Yang KK, Lewis IH. *A A Case Rep*. 2014;2:143–146.
10. Organisation Internationale de Normalisation (ISO) n.d. Retrieved from https://www.iso.org/developing-standards.html Accessed 12/20/18.
11. International Organization for Standardization, 2011. ISO 80601-2-13:2011(en), https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#iso:std:iso:80601:-2-13:ed-1:v1:en.

11a. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Standards and Guidelines*. n.d. https://www.asahq.org/standards-and-guidelines.

11b. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Recommendations for Pre-Anesthesia Checkout Procedures*; 2008.

11c. Dorsch JA. *ASA Monitor*. 2004;68:27–28.

11d. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Standards for Basic Anesthetic Monitoring*. 1986.

11e. Association of Anesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland. *Checking Anesthetic Equipment 2012*; 2012.

11f. Australian and New Zealand College of Anesthetists. *Guidelines on Checking Anesthesia Delivery Systems*; 2014.

12. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. The anesthesia machine. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:83.
13. Eisenkraft JB. The Anesthesia Machine and Workstation. In: Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft JB, Berry JR, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders; 2013:25–63.
14. Malayaman SN, Mychaskiw G II, Ehrenwerth J. Medical Gases: Storage and Supply. In: Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft JB, Berry JR, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders; 2013:3–24.
15. Hogg CE. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;38:85.
16. Donaldson M, et al. *J Am Dent Assoc*. 2012;143:134–143.
17. Goebel WM. *Anesth Prog*. 1980;28:188–191.
18. Rose G, et al. *APSF Newsl*. 2010;25(16).

18a. Anderson WR, Brock-Utne JG. *J Clin. Monit*. 1991;7:39–41.

19. Bowie E, Huffman LM. *The Anesthesia Machine: Essentials for Understanding*. Madison, Wis: Ohmeda, BOC Group; 1985.
20. ASTM. Standard specification for particular requirements for anesthesia workstations and their components (ASTM F1850-00). In: *Medical Devices and Services*. vol. 13.01. Conshohocken, Pa: ASTM International; 2005:913.
21. Yoder M. Pneumatic safety system components. In: *Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems*. Telford, Pa: Dräger Medical; 2009:23.
22. Anderson CE, Rendell-Baker L. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:328.
23. Mann D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(558).
24. Internal leakage from anesthesia unit flush valves. *Health Devices*. 1981;10(172).

24a. Mun SH, No MY. Internal leakage of oxygen flush valve. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2013;64:550–551.

25. Andrews JJ. Understanding your anesthesia machine and ventilator. In: *1989 Review Course Lectures*. Cleveland, Ohio: International Anesthesia Research Society; 1989:59.
26. Fassl J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(94).
27. Gaughan SD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:800.

27a. Loader J. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:574–574.

28. Doi T, et al. *BioMed Res. Int*. 2015:454807.
29. Mudumbai SC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1292.
30. Yoder M. Gas supply systems. In: *Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems*. Telford, Pa: Dräger Medical; 2009:1.
31. Datex-Ohmeda. *S/5 Aespire Anesthesia Machine: Technical Reference Manual*. Madison, Wis: Datex-Ohmeda; 2004.

31a. Mindray DS. *Operating Instructions: A7 Anesthesia System*. 2016. Mahwah, NJ; 2016.

31b. Draegerwerk AG & Co., n.d. *Perseus A500 and Perseus A500 Ceiling Technical Documentation IPM*. Lubeck, Germany: Draegerwerk AG & Co.: n.d.

32. Adriani J. Clinical application of physical principles concerning gases and vapor to anesthesiology. In: 2nd ed. Adriani J, ed. *The Chemistry and Physics of Anesthesia*. Springfield, Ill: Charles C Thomas; 1962:58.

33. Macintosh R, et al. Flowmeters. In: 3rd ed. Macintosh R, Mushin WW, Epstein HG, eds. *Physics for the Anaesthetist*. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific; 1963:196.
34. Eger II EI, Epstein RM. *Anesthesiology*. 1964;24:490.
35. Rendell-Baker L. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1982;20(1).
36. Schreiber P. *Safety Guidelines for Anesthesia Systems*. Telford, Pa: North American Dräger; 1984.
37. Eger II EI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1963;24:396.
38. Dräger Medical. *Dräger technical Service manual: Fabius GS anesthesia system*, rev E. Telford, PA: Dräger Medical: 2002.
39. Gordon PC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:598.
40. Cheng CJ, Garewal DS. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:913.
41. Ishikawa S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1672.
42. Paine GF, Kochan 3rd JJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1374.
43. Richards C. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:997.
44. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. Vaporizers. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:121.
45. Kim HJ, Kim MW. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2010;59:270.
46. Liew WL, Jayamaha J. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:399.
47. Ong BC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1038.
48. Lum ME, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1992;20:501.
49. Aggarwal R, Kumar A. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2018;34:135.
50. Webb C, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60:628.
51. Mitchell AM. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35:804.
52. Jagannathan VK, Nortcliffe SA. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2008;25:165.
53. Viney JP, Gartrell AD. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:781.
54. Haridas RP. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2009;37(suppl 1):30.
55. King AC. *Br Med J*. 1946;2:536.
56. Desbarax P. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:463.
57. Macintosh R, et al. Gas pressure: pressure in gaseous mixtures. In: Macintosh R, Mushin WW, Epstein HG, Jones PL, eds. *Physics for the Anaesthetist*. 4th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific; 1987:73.
58. Ocasio I. *Principles of Chemistry*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
59. Macintosh R, et al. Gas pressure: pressure in gaseous mixtures. In: Macintosh R, Mushin WW, Epstein HG, Jones PL, eds. *Physics for the Anaesthetist*. 4th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific; 1987:101.
60. Block Jr FE, Schulte GT. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 1999;15:57.
61. Korman B, Ritchie IM. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(152).
62. Eisenkraft JB. Anesthesia vaporizers. In: Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft JB, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1993:57.
63. Middleton B, et al. *Physics in Anesthesia*. Banbury, United Kingdom: Scion; 2012.
64. Eger 2nd EI. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:947.
65. Nickalls RWD, Mapleson WW. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:170.
66. James MF, White JF. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:1097.
67. Adriani J. Principles of physics and chemistry of solids and fluids applicable to anesthesiology. In: Adriani J, ed. *The Chemistry and Physics Of Anesthesia*. 2nd ed. Springfield, Ill: Charles C Thomas; 1962:7.
68. Dräger Medical: *Dräger Vapor 2000: anaesthetic vaporizer instructions for use*, ed 11. Lubeck, Germany: Dräger Medical; 2005.
68a. English WA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:84.
69. Yoder M, Vaporizers: In: *Understanding modern anesthesia systems*. Telford, PA: Dräger Medical; 2009:55.
69a. Chakravarti S, Basu S. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2013;57:464.
69b. Dhulkhed V, et al. *Indian J Anaesth*. 57: 455.
70. Datex-Ohmeda. *Tec 7 Vaporizer: User's Reference Manual*. Madison, Wis: Datex-Ohmeda; 2002.
71. Penlon. *Sigma Delta Vaporizer user Instruction Manual*. Abingdon, United Kingdom: Penlon; 2002.
72. Dräger Medical. *D-Vapor: desflurane vaporizer instructions for use*. Lubeck, Germany: Dräger Medical; 2004.
73. Datex-Ohmeda. *Anesthesia delivery unit: user's reference manual*. Bromma, Sweden: Datex-Ohmeda; 2003.
74. Maquet Critical Care. *Users manual: FLOW-i 1.2 anesthesia system*. rev 11. Solna, Sweden: Maquet Critical Care; 2011.
75. Schreiber P. *Anaesthetic equipment: performance, classification, and safety*. New York: Springer;1972.
76. Hill DW, Lowe HJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1962;23:291.
77. Hill DW. The design and calibration of vaporizers for volatile anaesthesia agents. In: Scurr C, Feldman S, eds. *Scientific Foundations of Anaesthesia*. 3rd ed. London: William Heineman; 1982:544.
78. Deleted in proofs.
79. Deleted in proofs.
80. Hill DW. *Br J Anaesth*. 1968;40:648.
81. Morris LE. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1974;12:199.
82. Loeb RG. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:888.
83. Stoelting RK. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:215.
84. Diaz PD. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:387.
85. Nawaf K, Stoelting RK. *Anesth Analg*. 1979;58(30).
86. Prins L, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1980;27:106.
87. Lin CY. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(359).
88. Gould DB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:938.
89. Palayiwa E, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:1025.
90. Scheller MS, Drummond JC. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65(88).
90a. Habre, W., et al. *Br. J. Anaesth*. 87: 602.
91. Synnott A, Wren WS. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:1055.
92. Deleted in proofs.
93. Carvalho B, Sanders D. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:711.
94. Spacelabs Healthcare. *Blease Datum anesthesia vaporizers user's manual*. rev C. Issaquah, WA: Spacelabs Healthcare;1999.
95. Severinghaus J. *Anesthesia and Related drug Effects in Fundamentals of Hyperbaric Medicine*. Washington, DC: National Academy of Sciences; 1966:116.
96. Abel M, Eisenkraft JB. *J Clin Monit*. 1996;12:119.
97. Andrews JJ, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:71.
98. Riegle EV, Desertspring D. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:353–354.
99. Broka SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:1194.
100. Keresztury MF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(124).
101. Lippmann M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:1175.
101a. Wallace AW. *A A Case Rep*. 2016;6:399.
102. Munson WM. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:235.
103. Craig DB. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:1005.
104. Pratap JN, Harding L. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26:90.
105. Fernando PM, Peck DJ. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56(1009).
106. Daniels D. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:288.
107. Vohra SB. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:606.
108. Lewis SE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1221.
109. Terry L, da Silva EJ. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21:382.
110. Deleted in proofs.
111. Krishna KB, et al. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;27:415.
112. Garstang JS. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:915.
113. Zimmer C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(1329).
114. Andrews JJ, Johnston Jr RV. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:1338.
115. Weiskopf RB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:474.
116. Eger EI. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:906.
117. Susay SR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:864.
118. Deleted in proofs.
119. Jolly DT, Young J. *Anesth. Analg.* 2000;90:742.
119a. Jolly DT, Young J. *Can J Anesth*. 1999;46:709.
119b. Uncles DR, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 49: 547.
120. Kimatian SJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1533.
121. Hendrickx JF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:391.
121a. Sansom GG. Arrangement for preventing overfill of anesthetic liquid. US6745800B1.
121b. Leijonhufvud F, et al. *F1000Research*. 2017;6:1997.
121c. Meyer JU, et al. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2008;182:451–470.
121d. Gegel BT. *AANA J*. 2008;76(3):185–187.
121e. Eales M, Cooper R. *Anaesth Intensive Care Med*. 2007;8:111–115.
121f. Donovan A, Perndt H. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:609–614.
121g. Craig GR, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 50: 789–793.
121h. Brook PN, Perndt H. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2001;29:616–618.
121i. Payne T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:763–767.
121j. Kim HY, et al. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2017;96:e8976.
121k. Marcos-Vidal JM, et al. *Heart Lung Vessels*. 2014;6:33–42.
121l. Bomberg H, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69:1241–1250.
121m. Farrell R, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2018;32:595–604.
121n. Enlund M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:429–432.
122. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. The breathing system: general principles, common components, and classifications. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:191.
123. Miller DM. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1995;23:281.
124. Metzner J, et al. *Clinical Anaesthesiology*. 2011;25:263.
125. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. The circle systems. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:223.
125a. Lee C, et al. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2013;65:337.

126. Eskaros SM, et al. Respiratory monitoring. In: Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleisher LA, et al., eds. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:1411.
126a. Kodali BS. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:192.
127. ASTM: Standard specification for minimum performance and safety requirements for anesthesia breathing systems (ASTM F1208-89), In: *Medical Devices and Services*, vol. 13.01. Conshohocken, PA: ASTM International;2005: 474.
127a. Thomas J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72:28–34.
127b. Chaturvedi AU, Potdar MP. *Clin Pharmacol*. 2017;33:264.
127c. Oprea AD, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2011;23:58–60.
128. Johnstone RE, Smith TC. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;38:192.
129. Blanshard HJ, Milne MR. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59(177).
129a. Križmarić M. *Slov Med J*. 2017;86:226.
130. International Standards Organization: ISO 5362:2006: Anesthetic reservoir bags ISO 5362. In: ISO 11.040.11: *Anaesthetic, respiratory and reanimation equipment*. http://www.iso.org/iso/home/store/catalogue_ics.htm/ Accessed 3/30/14.
131. Dräger Medical. *Operating instructions Apollo*. ed 2. Lubeck, Germany: Dräger Medical;2008.
131a. Yoder M, Ventilators: In *Understanding modern anesthesia systems*, Telford, Pa, 2009, Dräger Medical, p 145.
131b. Parthasarathy S. *Indian J Anaesth* 2013;57:516.
132. Wilkes AR. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:31.
133. American Society of Anesthesiologists. In: *Standards, guidelines, statements, and other documents*. <http://www.asahq.org/For-Members/Standards-Guidelines-and-Statements.aspx/> (Accessed 30.03.14).
134. Paulsen A, Klauss G. *APSF Newsl*. 2009;24(14).
134a. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. Gas Monitoring. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:685–727.
134b. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008.
134c. Yoder, JM. Draeger Medical. 2009;189.
135. Brattwall M, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59:785.
136. Holzman R, Linter R. Principles and practice of closed circuit anesthesia. In: Sandberg W, Urman R, Ehrenfeld J, eds. *The MGH Textbook of Anesthetic Equipment*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2011.
137. Baum J. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 1990;41:239.
138. Deleted in proofs.
139. Cassidy CJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:879.
140. Dain S. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48:840.
141. Ianchulev SA, Comunale ME. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:774.
141a. Healthcare Spacelabs. *Arkon Anesthesia System User Manual, 070-241-00/rev A*. Issaquah, WA: Spacelabs Healthcare; 2012:212.
141b. Maquet Critical Care. *Users manual: FLOW-i 1.2 anesthesia system*, rev 11. Solna, Sweden: Maquet Critical Care;2011: 149.
142. Datex-Ohmeda. *Aisys user's reference manual*, software revision 7.x. Madison, WI: Datex-Ohmeda, p 7.
143. Hamad M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58:719.
144. Khorasani A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1501.
145. Wilkes AR. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(40).
146. McEwan AI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:440.
147. Dean HN, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1971;50(195).
148. Norman PH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:425.
149. Ransom ES, Norfleet EA. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:703.
150. Monteiro JN, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21:743.
151. Yang CH, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Taiwan*. 2012;50:35.
152. Smith CE, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1991;3:229.
153. Bajwa SJ, Singh A. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2012;28:269.
154. Ramarapu S, Ramakrishnan U. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:477.
155. Nichols K, et al. *APSF Newsl*. 2004;19:35.
156. Krensavage TJ, Richards E. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:207.
157. Kshatri AM, Kingsley CP. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:475.
158. Agrawal P, et al. *J Anesth*. 2010;24:976.
159. Peters G, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:860.
160. Phillips J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:300.
161. Kobayashi S, et al. *J Anesth*. 2004;18:277.
162. Keijzer C, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51:31.
163. Yamakage M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:287.
164. Olympio MA. *APSF Newsl*. 2005;20(25).
165. Marini F, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51:625.
166. Higuchi H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:434.
166a. The Sodasorb manual of CO_2 absorption. https://www.shearwater.com/?s=sodasorb+manual. Accessed 8-22-19 TG.
167. Adriani J. Carbon dioxide absorption. In: Adriani J, ed. *The Chemistry and Physics of Anesthesia*. 2nd ed. Springfield, Ill: Charles C Thomas; 1962:151.
168. Dewey & Almy Chemical Division. *The Sodasorb Manual of CO_2 Absorption*. New York: Grace; 1962.
168a. Wang TC, Bricker JL. *Environ. Int*. 1979; 2:425.
169. Anders MW. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2005;45:147.
170. Totonidis S. *Kathmandu Univ Med J (KUMJ)*. 2005;3(181).
171. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:173.
172. Fang ZX, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:775.
173. Eger 2nd EI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(1154).
174. Eger 2nd EI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(160).
175. Frink Jr EJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:1064.
176. Conzen PF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:578.
177. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1511.
178. Higuchi H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:650.
179. Obata R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1262.
180. Mazze RI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:683.
181. Morio M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:1155.
182. Versichelen LF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:750.
182a. Förster H, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2000;49(106).
182b. Stabernack CR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(1428).
183. Deleted in proofs.
184. Berry PD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:613.
185. Baxter PJ, Kharasch ED. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1061.
186. Woehlick HJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:228.
187. Fang ZX, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80.
188. Holak E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:757.
189. Bonome C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:909.
190. Coppens MJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61:462.
191. Neumann MA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:768.
191a. Keijzer C1, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:815.
192. Fatheree RS, Leighton BL. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:531.
193. Wu J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:534.
194. Castro BA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(537).
195. Laster M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:769.
196. Holak E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:757.
197. Andrews JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(59).
198. Hunt HE. *Anesthesiology*. 1955;16(190).
199. Brown ES. *Anesthesiology*. 1959;20(41).
199a. Daley T. Submarine Air Monitoring and Atmosphere Purification Conference 2009, San Diego, CA.
199b. Wang TC. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1981;52:104.
200. Mapleson WW. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80:263.
201. Willis BA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47:1239.
202. Rose DK, Froese AB. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1979;26:104.
203. Froese AB, Rose DK. A detailed analysis of T-piece systems. In: Steward DJ, ed. *Some Aspects of Paediatric Anaesthesia*. Amsterdam: Elsevier North-Holland Biomedical Press; 1982:101.
204. Sykes MK. *Br J Anaesth*. 1968;40:666.
204a. Kaul T, Mittal G. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2013;57:507.
205. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. Mapleson breathing systems. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:209.
205a. Kain ML, Nunn JF. *Anesthesiology*. 1968;29:964–974.
206. Andersen PK, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1989;33:439.
207. Bain JA, Spoerel WE. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1972;19:426.
208. Pethick SL. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1975;22:115.
209. Aarhus D, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52:992.
209a. Hussey SG. *Arch Dis Child - Fetal Neonatal Ed*. 2004;89:F490–F493.
209b. ISO 10651-4:2002, Lung ventilators -- Part 4: Particular requirements for operator-powered resuscitators, 2002.
209c. Lien S, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2013;25:424–425.
209d. Lucy MJ, et al. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2018;28:788–794.
209e. Haupt J. *The History of Anesthesia at Draeger*. Lubeck, Germany: Draegerwerk AG; 1996.
209f. Jaber S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:944–952.
209g. Sáez JA. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:922.
209h. Modak RK, Olympio MA. Anesthesia Ventilaors. In: Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft JB, Berry JM, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders; 2013.
209i. Saied N, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2012;7:380–389.
210. Feeley TW, Bancroft ML. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1982;20(83).
211. Khalil SN, et al. *Anaesth Analg*. 1987;66:1334.
212. Sommer RM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:999.
213. Bourke D, Tolentino D. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:492.

214. Maquet Critical Care. F*LOW-i 4.2 User's Manual.* Solna, Sweden: Maquet Critical Care;2015.
214a. Thille AW, et al. *Int Care Med*. 2009;35:1368.
214b. Boussen S, et al. *Respir Care*. 2013;58:1911–1922.
214c. Delgado C, et al. *Respir Care*. 2017;62:34–41.
214d. Walker SG, et al. Breathing Circuits. In: *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders; 2013:95–124.
214e. Deleted in proofs.
214f. Carette R, et al. *J.Clin Monit Comput*. 2016;30:341–346.
214g. De Cooman S, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2008;8:4.
214h. Singaravelu S, Barclay P. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:561–566.
214i. Wetz AJ, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2017;61:1262–1269.
214j. Datex-Ohmeda. *Aisys CS2 User's Reference Manual.* Madison, WI: Datex-Ohmeda; 2016.
215. Riutort KT, et al. The anesthesia workstation and delivery systems. In: 6th ed. Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, eds. *Clinical Anesthesia*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:644.
216. U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare. *Criteria for a Recommended Standard: Occupational Exposure to Waste Anesthetic Gases and Vapors*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare; 1977.
216a. International Standards Organization, 2007. ISO 7396-2.
217. McGregor DG. Waste anesthetic gases: information for management in anesthetizing areas and the postanesthesia care unit (PACU). ASA Task Force on Trace Anesthetic Gases. Park Ridge, IL: American Society of Anesthesiologists;1999: 3.
217a. Anesthetic Gases: Guidelines for Workplace Exposures | Occupational Safety and Health Administration https://www.osha.gov/dts/osta/anestheticgases/index.html (Accessed 12.20.18).
218. Kanmura Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:693.
219. Eisenkraft JB, McGregor DG. Waste Anesthetic Gases and Scavenging Systems. In: Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft JB, Berry JM, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders; 2013:125–147.
220. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. Controlling trace gas levels. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:373.
221. Carvalho B. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:532.
222. Elakkumanan LB, et al. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2012;28:270.
223. Joyal JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1162.
224. North American Dräger. *Scavenger Interface for air Conditioning: Instruction Manual*. Telford, Pa: North American Dräger; 1984.
225. ASTM: Standard specification for anesthetic gas scavenging systems: transfer and receiving systems (ASTM F1343-02). In: *Medical devices and services.* vol. 13.01. Conshohocken, PA: ASTM International;2005: 554.
226. Saxena S, et al. *Anesth Patient Saf Found*. 2016;31:17.
227. Deleted in proofs.
228. Carstensen P. *APSF Newsl*. 1986;1:13–20.
229. Langford R, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:1050–1056.
230. Allen M, Lees DE. ASA Newsl. 2004;68:22.
231. Moreno-Duarte I, et al. *A A Case Rep*. 2017;8:192–196.
231a. Deleted in proofs.
232. March MG, Crowley JJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:724.
233. Lees DE. *APSF Newsl*. 1991;6(25).
234. Withiam-Wilson MJ. *APSF Newsl*. 1991;6(25).
234a. Eisenkraft JB, et al. Respiratory Gas Monitoring. In: *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders; 2013:191–222.
234b. Cohen JB, Chaudhry T. *Anesth Patient Saf Found Newsl 27*. 2012.
234c. Huang J, et al. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2012;28:230–231.
235. Anesthesia apparatus checkout recommendations. *Fed Regist*. 94–16618, 1994.
236. Degani A, Wiener EL. *Hum Factors*. 1993;35(345).
237. Federal Aviation Administration, Office of Integrated Safety Analysis, Human Factors Analysis Division: Human performance considerations in the use and design of aircraft checklists.
238. Tibbles PM, Edelsberg JS. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;3341642.

References

1. Mehta SP, Eisenkraft JB, Posner KL, Domino KB. Patient Injuries from anesthesia gas delivery equipment: a closed claims update. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:788–795. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0b013e3182a10b5e.
2. Caplan R, Vistica MF, Posner KL, Cheney FW. Adverse anesthetic outcomes arising from gas delivery equipment: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:741–748.
3. Larson ER, Nuttal GA, Ogren BD, et al. A prospective study on anesthesia machine fault identification. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:154–156.
4. Olympio MA, Goldstein MM, Mathes DD. Instructional review improves performance of anesthesia apparatus checkout procedures. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:618–622.
5. Armstrong-Brown A, Devitt JH, Kurrek M, et al. Inadequate preanesthesia equipment checks in a simulator. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47:974–979.
6. O'Shaughnessy SM, Mahon P. Compliance with the automated machine check. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70:1005–1006. https://doi.org/10.1111/anae.13159.
7. Mayor AH, Eaton JM. Anaesthetic machine checking practices: a survey. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:866–868.
8. Berry N, Mills P. The importance of the anaesthetic machine check. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67. 927–927 https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2044.2012.07243.x.
9. Yang KK, Lewis IH. Mask induction despite circuit obstruction: an unrecognized hazard of relying on automated machine check technology. *A A Case Rep*. 2014;2:143–146. https://doi.org/10.1213/XAA.0000000000000026.
10. Organisation Internationale de Normalisation (ISO) [WWW Document], n.d. URL https://www.iso.org/developing-standards.html (accessed 12.20.18).
11. International Organization for Standardization, 2011. ISO 80601-2-13:2011(en), Medical electrical equipment — Part 2-13: Particular requirements for basic safety and essential performance of an anaesthetic workstation [WWW Document]. URL https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#iso:std:iso:80601:-2-13:ed-1:v1:en (accessed 9.23.18).

11a. American Society of Anesthesiologists: Standards and Guidelines [WWW Document], n.d. URL https://www.asahq.org/standards-and-guidelines (accessed 12.20.18).

11b. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Recommendations for Pre-Anesthesia Checkout Procedures*; 2008a.

11c. Dorsch JA. Anesthesia machine obsolescence guidelines published. ASA Monitor 2004; 68:27-28.https://monitor.pubs.asahq.org/article.aspx?articleid=2489174. Accessed 8-13-19 TG.

11d. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Standards for Basic Anesthetic Monitoring*; 1986. https://monitor.pubs.asahq.org/article.aspx?articleid=2489174. affirmed 2015.

11e. Association of Anesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland. *Checking Anesthetic Equipment 2012*; 2012. https://anaesthetists.org/Home/Resources-publications/Guidelines/Checking-Anaesthetic-Equipment. https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1111/j.1365-2044.2011.06957.x.

11f. Australian and New Zealand College of Anesthetists. *Guidelines on Checking Anesthesia Delivery Systems*; 2014. http://www.anzca.edu.au/documents/ps31-2014-guidelines-on-checking-anaesthesia-deliv.pdf.

12. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. The anesthesia machine. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:83–118.
13. Eisenkraft JB. The anesthesia machine and workstation. In: Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft James B, Berry James R, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders; 2013:25–63.
14. Malayaman SN, Mychaskiw G II, Ehrenwerth J. Medical gases: storage and supply. In: Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft JB, Berry JR, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders; 2013:3–24.
15. Hogg CE. Pin-indexing failures. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;38:85–87.
16. Donaldson M, Donaldson D, Quarnstrom FC. Nitrous oxide-oxygen administration: when safety features no longer are safe. *J Am Dent Assoc*. 2012;143:134–143.
17. Goebel WM. Failure of nitrous oxide and oxygen pin-indexing. *Anesth Prog*. 1980;28:188–191.
18. Rose G, Durbin K, Eichorn J. An example of yet another medication error– of sorts! Gas cylinder colors are not an FDA Standard!. *APSF Newsl*. 2010;25:16.

18a. Anderson WR, Brock-Utne JG. Oxygen pipeline supply failure: a coping strategy. *J Clin Monit*. 1991;7:39–41.

19. Bowie E, Huffman LM. *The Anesthesia Machine: Essentials for Understanding*. Madison, Wis: Ohmeda, BOC Group; 1985.
20. ASTM. Standard specification for particular requirements for anesthesia workstations and their components (ASTM F1850-00). In: *Medical devices and services*. vol. 13.01. Conshohocken, Pa: ASTM International; 2005:913–944.
21. Yoder M. Pneumatic safety system components. In: *Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems*. Telford, Pa: Dräger Medical; 2009:23–54.
22. Anderson CE, Rendell-Baker L. Exposed O_2 flush hazard. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:328.
23. Mann D, Ananian J, Alston T. Oxygen flush valve booby trap. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:558.
24. Internal leakage from anesthesia unit flush valves. *Health Devices*. 1981;10(172).

24a. Mun SH, No MY. Internal leakage of oxygen flush valve. *Korean J.Anesthesiol.* 2013;64:550–551. https://doi.org/10.4097/kjae.2013.64.6.550.

25. Andrews JJ. Understanding your anesthesia machine and ventilator. In: *1989 Review Course Lectures*. Cleveland, Ohio: International Anesthesia Research Society; 1989:59.
26. Fassl J, Jenny U, Nikiforov S, et al. Pressures available for transtracheal jet ventilation from anesthesia machines and wall-mounted oxygen flowmeters. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:94–100.
27. Gaughan SD, Benumof JL, Ozaki GT. Can an anesthesia machine flush valve provide for effective jet ventilation? *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:800.

27a Loader J. Would you recognize the Ritchie whistle?. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64. 574–574 https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2044.2009.05923.x.

28. Doi T, Miyashita T, Furuya R, Sato H, Takaki S, Goto T. 2015. Percutaneous transtracheal Jet ventilation with various upper airway obstruction. *BioMed Res. Int.* 2015:454807. https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/454807.
29. Mudumbai SC, Fanning R, Howard SK, et al. Use of medical simulation to explore equipment failures and human-machine interactions in anesthesia machine pipeline supply crossover. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1292–1296.
30. Yoder M. Gas supply systems. In: *Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems*. Telford, Pa: Dräger Medical; 2009:1–23.
31. Datex-Ohmeda. *S/5 Aespire Anesthesia Machine: Technical Reference Manual*. Madison, Wis: Datex-Ohmeda; 2004.

31a. Mindray DS, USA. *Operating Instructions: A7 Anesthesia System*; 2016. Mahwah, NJ.

31b. Draegerwerk AG & Co., n.d. *Perseus A500 and Perseus A500 Ceiling Technical Documentation IPM*. Lubeck, Germany: Draegerwerk AG & Co.: n.d. https://www.draeger.com/en_in/Hospital/Products/Anaesthesia-Workstations/Anaesthesia-Machines/Perseus-A500#literature. Accessed 8-14-19.

32. Adriani J. Clinical application of physical principles concerning gases and vapor to anesthesiology. In: 2th ed. Adriani J, ed. *The Chemistry and Physics of Anesthesia*. Springfield, Ill: Charles C Thomas; 1962:58.
33. Macintosh R, Mushin WW, Epstein HG. Flowmeters. In: 3rd ed. Macintosh R, Mushin WW, Epstein HG, eds. *Physics for the Anaesthetist*. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific; 1963:196.
34. Eger II EI, Epstein RM. Hazards of anesthetic equipment. *Anesthesiology*. 1964;24:490.
35. Rendell-Baker L. Problems with anesthetic and respiratory therapy equipment. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1982;20(1).
36. Schreiber P. *Safety Guidelines for Anesthesia Systems*. Telford, Pa: North American Dräger; 1984.
37. Eger II EI, Hylton RR, Irwin RH, et al. Anesthetic flowmeter sequence: a cause for hypoxia. *Anesthesiology*. 1963;24:396.
38. Dräger Medical. *Dräger Technical Service Manual: Fabius GS Anesthesia System* rev 11. Telford, PA: Dräger Medical; 2002.

38a. Datex-Ohmeda. *Aestiva Anesthesia Machine Technical Reference Manual*; 2006. Madison, WI.

39. Gordon PC, James MF, Lapham H, Carboni M. Failure of the proportioning system to prevent hypoxic mixture on a Modulus II Plus anesthesia machine. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:598–599.

40. Cheng CJ, Garewal DS. A failure of the chain-link mechanism on the Ohmeda Excel 210 anesthetic machine. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:913–914.
41. Ishikawa S, Nakazawa K, Makita K. Hypoxic gas flow caused by malfunction of the proportioning system of anesthesia machines. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1672.
42. Paine GF, Kochan 3rd JJ. Failure of the chain-link mechanism of the Ohmeda Excel 210 anesthesia machine. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1374. author reply 1374.
43. Richards C. Failure of a nitrous oxide-oxygen proportioning device. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:997–998.
44. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. Vaporizers. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:121–190.
45. Kim HJ, Kim MW. Interruption in the supply of breathing gas during general anesthesia due to malposition of the vaporizer: a case report. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2010;59:270–274.
46. Liew WL, Jayamaha J. Anaesthetic machine leak from desflurane vaporiser. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:399–400.
47. Ong BC, bin Katjo J, Tan BL, et al. Acute failure of oxygen delivery. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1038–1039.
48. Lum ME, Ngan Kee WD, Robinson BJ. Fault in a Selectatec manifold resulting in awareness. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1992;20:501–503.
49. Aggarwal R, Kumar A. Leak in anesthesia workstation: An unusual cause. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2018;34:135–136. https://doi.org/10.4103/0970-9185.17339450.
50. Webb C, Ringrose D, Stone A. Faulty interlock on Dräger vaporisers. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60:628–629.
51. Mitchell AM. Failure to wake due to faulty interlock system allowing two vaporisers to run. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35:804–805.
52. Jagannathan VK, Nortcliffe SA. Potentially fatal vaporizer incident. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2008;25:165–166.
53. Viney JP, Gartrell AD. Incorrectly adjusted vaporizer exclusion system. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:781.
54. Haridas RP. William TG Morton's early ether inhalers: a tale of three inhalers and their inscriptions. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2009;37(suppl 1):30–35.
55. King AC. The history and development of anaesthetic apparatus. *Br Med J*. 1946;2:536–539.
56. Desbarax P. Morton's design of the early ether vaporisers. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:463–469.
57. Macintosh R, Mushin WW, Epstein HG, Jones PL. Gas pressure: pressure in gaseous mixtures. In: Macintosh R, Mushin WW, Epstein HG, eds. *Physics for the Anaesthetist*. 4th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific; 1987:73–100.
58. Ocasio, I. (WCS) Principles of Chemistry. 4th ed. John Wiley & Sons; Aug 18, 2004. 1176 pages. ISBN-10:0471712450.
59. Macintosh R, Mushin WW, Epstein HG, Jones PL. Gas pressure: pressure in gaseous mixtures. In: Macintosh R, Mushin WW, Epstein HG, Jones PL, eds. *Physics for the Anaesthetist*. 4th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific; 1987:101–124.
60. Block Jr FE, Schulte GT. Observations on use of wrong agent in an anesthesia agent vaporizer. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 1999;15:57–61.
61. Korman B, Ritchie IM. Chemistry of halothane-enflurane mixtures applied to anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:152–156.
62. Eisenkraft JB. Anesthesia vaporizers. In: Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft JB, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1993:57–88.
63. Middleton B, Philips J, Thomas R, Stacey S, eds. *Physics in Anesthesia*. Banbury, United Kingdom: Scion; 2012.
64. Eger 2nd EI. Age, minimum alveolar anesthetic concentration, and minimum alveolar anesthetic concentration-awake. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:947–953.
65. Nickalls RWD, Mapleson WW. Age-related iso-MAC charts for isoflurane, sevoflurane and desflurane in man. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:170–174. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aeg132.
66. James MF, White JF. Anesthetic considerations at moderate altitude. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:1097–1105.
67. Adriani J. Principles of physics and chemistry of solids and fluids applicable to anesthesiology. In: 2nd ed. Adriani J, ed. *The Chemistry and Physics of Anesthesia*. Springfield, Ill: Charles C Thomas; 1962:7.
68. Dräger Medical: *Dräger Vapor 2000: anaesthetic vaporizer instructions for use*, ed 11. Lubeck, Germany: Dräger Medical;2005.
68a. English WA, Tully R, Muller GD, Eltringham RJJ. The Diamedica Draw-Over Vaporizer: a comparison of a new vaporizer with the oxford miniature vaporizer. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:84–92. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2044.2008.05739.x.
69. Yoder M. *Vaporizers: In Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems*. Telford, PA: Dräger Medical; 2009:55–82.
69a. Chakravarti S, Basu S. Modern anaesthesia vapourisers. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2013;57:464. https://doi.org/10.4103/0019-5049.120142.
69b. Dhulkhed V, Shetti A, Naik S, Dhulkhed P. Vapourisers: Physical principles and classification. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2013;57:455. https://doi.org/10.4103/0019-5049.120141.
70. Datex-Ohmeda. *Tec 7 Vaporizer: User's Reference Manual*. Madison, Wis: Datex-Ohmeda; 2002.
71. Penlon. *Sigma Delta Vaporizer User Instruction Manual*. Abingdon, United Kingdom: Penlon; 2002.
72. Dräger Medical. *D-Vapor: Desflurane Vaporizer Instructions for Use*. Lubeck, Germany: Dräger Medical; 2004.
73. Datex-Ohmeda. *Anesthesia Delivery Unit: User's Reference Manual*. Bromma, Sweden: Datex-Ohmeda; 2003.
74. Maquet Critical Care: *Users manual: FLOW-i 1.2 anesthesia system*, , rev 11, Solna, Sweden, 2011, Maquet Critical Care.
75. Schreiber P. *Anaesthetic Equipment: Performance, Classification, and Safety*. New York: Springer; 1972.
76. Hill DW, Lowe HJ. Comparison of concentration of halothane in closed and semi-closed circuits during controlled ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 1962;23:291.
77. Hill DW. The design and calibration of vaporizers for volatile anaesthesia agents. In: Scurr C, Feldman S, eds. *Scientific Foundations of Anaesthesia*. 3rd ed. London: William Heineman; 1982:544.
78. Deleted in proofs.
79. Deleted in proofs.
80. Hill DW. The design and calibration of vaporizers for volatile anaesthetic agents. *Br J Anaesth*. 1968;40:648.
81. Morris LE. Problems in the performance of anesthesia vaporizers. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1974;12:199.
82. Loeb RG. The output of four modern vaporizers in the presence of helium. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:888–891.
83. Stoelting RK. The effects of nitrous oxide on halothane output from Fluotec Mark 2 vaporizers. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:215.
84. Diaz PD. The influence of carrier gas on the output of automatic vaporizers. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:387.
85. Nawaf K, Stoelting RK. Nitrous oxide increases enflurane concentrations delivered by ethrane vaporizers. *Anesth Analg*. 1979;58:30.
86. Prins L, Strupat J, Clement J. An evaluation of gas density dependence of anaesthetic vaporizers. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1980;27:106.
87. Lin CY. Assessment of vaporizer performance in low-flow and closed-circuit anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:359.
88. Gould DB, Lampert BA, MacKrell TN. Effect of nitrous oxide solubility on vaporizer aberrance. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:938.
89. Palayiwa E, Sanderson MH, Hahn CEW. Effects of carrier gas composition on the output of six anaesthetic vaporizers. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:1025.
90. Scheller MS, Drummond JC. Solubility of N_2O in volatile anesthetics contributes to vaporizer aberrancy when changing carrier gases. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:88.
90a. Habre W, Asztalos T, Sly PD, Petak F. Viscosity and density of common anaesthetic gases: implications for flow measurements. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:602–607. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/87.4.602.
91. Synnott A, Wren WS. Effect of nitrous oxide on the output of three halothane vaporizers. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:1055–1058.
92. Deleted in proofs.
93. Carvalho B, Sanders D. The output of two sevoflurane vaporizers in the presence of helium. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:711–713.
94. Healthcare Spacelabs. *Blease Datum Anesthesia Vaporizers User's Manual, rev C*. Issaquah, Wash: Spacelabs Healthcare; 1999.
95. Severinghaus J. *Anesthesia and Related Drug Effects in Fundamentals of Hyperbaric Medicine*. Washington, DC: National Academy of Sciences; 1966:116.
96. Abel M, Eisenkraft JB. Performance of erroneously filled sevoflurane, enflurane and other agent-specific vaporizers. *J Clin Monit*. 1996;12:119–125.
97. Andrews JJ, Johnston Jr RV, Kramer GC. Consequences of misfilling contemporary vaporizers with desflurane. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:71–76.
98. Riegle EV, Desertspring D. Failure of the agent-specific filling device. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:353–354.

99. Broka SM, Gourdange PA, Joucken KL. Sevoflurane and desflurane confusion. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:1194.
100. Keresztury MF, Newman AG, Kode A, Wendling WW. A surprising twist: an unusual failure of a keyed filling device specific for a volatile inhaled anesthetic. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:124–125.
101. Lippmann M, Foran W, Ginsburg R, et al. Contamination of anesthetic vaporizer contents. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:1175.
101a. Wallace AW. Sevoflurane contamination: water accumulation in sevoflurane vaporizers can allow bacterial growth in the vaporizer. *A A Case Rep*. 2016;6:399–401. https://doi.org/10.1213/XAA.0000000000000330.
102. Munson WM. Cardiac arrest: hazard of tipping a vaporizer. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:235.
103. Craig DB. Vaporizer overfilling. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:1005–1006.
104. Pratap JN, Harding L. Critical overfilling of a vaporizer. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26:90–91.
105. Fernando PM, Peck DJ. An uncommon cause of vaporiser failure. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:1009–1010.
106. Daniels D. Overfilling of vaporisers. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:288.
107. Vohra SB. Leaking vaporiser. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:606–608.
108. Lewis SE, Andrews JJ, Long GW. An unexpected penlon sigma elite vaporizer leak. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1221–1224.
109. Terry L, da Silva EJ. Faulty spring causing a gas leak. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21:382–383.
110. Deleted in proofs.
111. Krishna KB, Anand T, Dinesh K, Sindhu B. Leaks in the vaporizer unit: still a possibility. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;27:415.
112. Garstang JS. Gas leak from TEC 5 isoflurane vaporiser. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:915.
113. Zimmer C, Janssen M, Treschan T, Peters J. Near-miss accident during magnetic resonance imaging. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1329.
114. Andrews JJ, Johnston Jr RV. The new Tec 6 desflurane vaporizer. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:1338.
115. Weiskopf RB, Sampson D, Moore MA. The desflurane (Tec 6) vaporizer: design, design considerations and performance evaluation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:474.
116. Eger EI. New inhaled anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:906.
117. Susay SR, Smith MA, Lockwood GG. The saturated vapor pressure of desflurane at various temperatures. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:864–866.
118. Deleted in proofs.
119. Jolly DT, Young J. Suspected malfunction of the SAF-T-FILLTM valve assembly of the suprane® (Desflurane, USP) refill bottle. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:742. https://doi.org/10.1097/00000539-200003000-00043.
119a. Jolly DT, Young J. Suprane® bottles with damaged O-rings. *Can J Anesth*. 1999;46. 709–709 https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03013970.
119b. Uncles DR, Sibell DM, Conway NE. Desflurane and the TEC 6 filler system. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49:547–548. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2044.1994.tb03545.x.
120. Kimatian SJ. With technology comes responsibility: intraoperative failure of an anesthetic vaporizer. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1533–1534.
121. Hendrickx JF, De Cooman S, Deloof T, et al. The ADU vaporizing unit: a new vaporizer. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:391–395.
121a. Sansom, G.G., 2004. Arrangement for preventing overfill of anesthetic liquid. US6745800B1.
121b. Leijonhufvud F, Jöneby F, Jakobsson JG. 2017. The impact of fresh gas flow on wash-in, wash-out time and gas consumption for sevoflurane and desflurane, comparing two anaesthesia machines, a test-lung study. *F1000Research*. 1997;6. https://doi.org/10.12688/f1000research.13064.1.
121c. Meyer JU, Kullik G, Wruck N, Kück K, Manigel J. 2008. Advanced technologies and devices for inhalational anesthetic drug dosing. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2008;(182):451–470. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-540-74806-9_21.
121d. Gegel BT. A field-expedient Ohmeda Universal Portable Anesthesia Complete draw-over vaporizer setup. *AANA J*. 2008;76(3):185–187.
121e. Eales M, Cooper R. Principles of anaesthetic vaporizers. *Anaesth Intensive Care Med*. 2007;8:111–115. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mpaic.2006.12.013.
121f. Donovan A, Perndt H. Oxford Miniature Vaporiser output with reversed gas flows. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:609–614. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2044.2007.05029.x.
121g. Craig GR, Berry CB, Yeats MJ. An evaluation of the Universal PAC and oxford miniature vaporizers for paediatric field anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50:789–793. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2044.1995.tb06142.x.
121h. Brook PN, Perndt H. Sevoflurane drawover anaesthesia with two oxford miniature vaporizers in series. *Anaesth. Intensive Care*. 2001;29:616–618.
121i. Payne T, Neighbour R, Eltringham R. Modification of a draw-over vaporizer for use with sevoflurane. *Br J Anaesth.* 2012;108:763–767. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aes020.
121j. Kim Ha Yeon, Lee JE, Kim Ha Yan, Kim J. Volatile sedation in the intensive care unit: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2017;96:e8976. https://doi.org/10.1097/MD.0000000000008976.
121k. Marcos-Vidal JM, González R, Garcia C, Soria C, Galiana M, De Prada B. Sedation with sevoflurane in postoperative cardiac surgery: influence on troponin T and creatinine values. *Heart Lung Vessels*. 2014;6:33–42.
121l. Bomberg H, Glas M, Groesdonk VH, Bellgardt M, Schwarz J, Volk T, Meiser A. A novel device for target controlled administration and reflection of desflurane - the Mirus TM. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69:1241–1250. https://doi.org/10.1111/anae.12798.
121m. Farrell R, Oomen G, Carey P. A technical review of the history, development and performance of the anaesthetic conserving device “AnaConDa” for delivering volatile anaesthetic in intensive and post-operative critical care. *J Clin Monit Comput.* 2018;32:595–604. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10877-017-0097-9.
121n. Enlund M, Wiklund L, Lambert H. A new device to reduce the consumption of a halogenated anaesthetic agent*. *Anaesthesia.* 2001;56:429–432. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1365-2044.2001.01900.x.
122. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. The breathing system: general principles, common components, and classifications. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:191–208.
123. Miller DM. Breathing systems reclassified. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1995;23:281–283.
124. Metzner J, Posner KL, Lam MS, Domino KB. Closed claims’ analysis. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;25:263–276.
125. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. The circle systems. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:223–281.
125a. Lee C, Lee KC, Kim HY, et al. Unidirectional valve malfunction by the breakage or malposition of disc - two cases report -. *Korean J Anesthesiol.* 2013;65:337. https://doi.org/10.4097/kjae.2013.65.4.337.
126. Eskaros SM, Papadakos PJ, Lachmann B. Respiratory monitoring. In: Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleisher LA, et al., eds. *Miller’s Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:1411–1441.
126a. Kodali BS. Capnography outside the operating rooms. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:192–201. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0b013e318278c8b6.
127. ASTM. Standard specification for minimum performance and safety requirements for anesthesia breathing systems (ASTM F1208-89). In: *Medical Devices and Services*. vol. 13.01. Conshohocken, Pa: ASTM International; 2005:474–486.
127a. Thomas J, Weiss M, Schmidt AR, Buehler PK. Performance of adjustable pressure-limiting (APL) valves in two different modern anaesthesia machines. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72:28–34. https://doi.org/10.1111/anae.13689.
127b. Chaturvedi AU, Potdar MP. Malfunction of adjustable pressure limiting valve. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol.* 2017;33:264. https://doi.org/10.4103/joacp.JOACP_243_16.
127c. Oprea AD, Ehrenwerth J, Barash PG. A case of adjustable pressure-limiting (APL) valve failure. *J. Clin. Anesth.* 2011;23:58–60. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclinane.2009.10.020.
128. Johnstone RE, Smith TC. Rebreathing bags as pressure-limiting devices. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;38:192–194.
129. Blanshard HJ, Milne MR. Latex-free reservoir bags: exchanging one potential hazard for another. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59:177–179.
129a. Križmarić. Functions of anesthesia reservoir bag in a breathing system. *Slov Med J*. 2017;86:226–235.
130. International Standards Organization: ISO 5362:2006: Anesthetic reservoir bags ISO 5362. In ISO 11.040.11: *Anaesthetic, respiratory and reanimation equipment*. <http://www.iso.org/iso/home/store/catalogue_ics.htm/> (Accessed 30.03.14.)
131. Dräger Medical: Operating instructions Apollo, ed 2, Lubeck, Germany, 2008, Dräger Medical. 2008.

131a. Yoder M. Ventilators: In *Understanding modern anesthesia systems*. Telford, PA. 2009, Dräger Medical, p 145-188.

131b. Parthasarathy S. The closed circuit and the low flow systems. *Indian J. Anaesth.* 2013;57:516. https://doi.org/10.4103/0019-5049.120149.

132. Wilkes AR. Heat and moisture exchangers and breathing system filters: their use in anaesthesia and intensive care. Part 1. History, principles and efficiency. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:31–39.

133. American Society of Anesthesiologists: Recommendations for infection control for the practice of anesthesiology. In Standards, guidelines, statements, and other documents. <http://www.asahq.org/For-Members/Standards-Guidelines-and-Statements.aspx/> (Accessed 30.03.14.)

134. Paulsen A, Klauss G. Cross contamination via anesthesia equipment? *APSF Newsl*. 2009;24:14–16.

134a. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. Gas monitoring. In: 5th ed. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*Baltimore: Wiliams & Wilkins; 2008:685–727. 685-727.

134b. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008.

134c. Yoder, JM. Understanding Modern Anesthesia Systems. Telford. PA. Draeger Medical: 2009:189-208.

135. Brattwall M, Warrén-Stomberg M, Hesselvik F, Jakobsson J. Brief review: theory and practice of minimal fresh gas flow anesthesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59:785–797.

136. Holzman R, Linter R. Principles and practice of closed circuit anesthesia. In: Sandberg W, Urman R, Ehrenfeld J, eds. *The MGH Textbook of Anesthetic Equipment*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2011.

137. Baum J. Clinical applications of low flow and closed circuit anesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 1990;41:239–247.

138. Caplan R, Vistica MF, Posner KL, Cheney FW. Adverse anesthetic outcomes arising from gas delivery equipment: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:741–748.

139. Cassidy CJ, Smith A, Arnot-Smith J. Critical incident reports concerning anaesthetic equipment: analysis of the UK National Reporting and Learning System (NRLS) data from 2006-2008*. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:879–888.

140. Dain S. Breathing circuit disconnections: averting catastrophes. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48:840–843.

141. Ianchulev SA, Comunale ME. To do or not to do a preinduction check-up of the anesthesia machine. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:774–776.

141a. Healthcare Spacelabs. *Arkon Anesthesia System User Manual, 070-241-00/rev A*. Issaquah, Wash: Spacelabs Healthcare; 2012:212.

141b. Maquet Critical Care: Users manual: FLOW-i 1.2 anesthesia system, rev 11. Solna, Sweden, 2011, Maquet Critical Care. 149.

141c. Mindray DS, USA: Operating instructions: A5/A3 anesthesia system, rev G. Mahwah, NJ, 2011, Mindray DS USA. 6-11.

142. Datex-Ohmeda: *Aisys user's reference manual*, software Revision 7.x. Madison, Wis, Datex-Ohmeda, pp 7-11.

143. Hamad M, Morgan-Hughes NJ, Beechey AP. Expiratory obstruction caused by inappropriate connection of the expiratory limb of a breathing circuit. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58:719–720.

144. Khorasani A, Saatee S, Khader RD, Nasr NF. Inadvertent misconnection of the scavenger hose: a cause for increased pressure in the breathing circuit. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1501–1502.

145. Wilkes AR. Heat and moisture exchangers and breathing system filters: their use in anaesthesia and intensive care. Part 2. Practical use, including problems, and their use with paediatric patients. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:40–51.

146. McEwan AI, Dowell L, Karis JH. Bilateral tension pneumothorax caused by a blocked bacterial filter in an anesthesia breathing circuit. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:440–442.

147. Dean HN, Parsons DE, Raphaely RC. Case report: bilateral tension pneumothorax from mechanical failure of anesthesia machine due to misplaced expiratory valve. *Anesth Analg*. 1971;50:195–198.

148. Norman PH, Daley MD, Walker JR, Fusetti S. Obstruction due to retained carbon dioxide absorber canister wrapping. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:425–426.

149. Ransom ES, Norfleet EA. Obstruction due to retained carbon dioxide absorber canister wrapping. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:703.

150. Monteiro JN, Ravindran MN, D'Mello JB. Three cases of breathing system malfunction. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21:743–745.

151. Yang CH, Chen KH, Lee YE, Lin CR. Anesthetic breathing circuit obstruction mimicking severe bronchospasm: an unusual manufacturing defect. *Acta Anaesthesiol Taiwan*. 2012;50:35–37.

152. Smith CE, Otworth JR, Kaluszyk P. Bilateral tension pneumothorax due to a defective anesthesia breathing circuit filter. *J Clin Anesth*. 1991;3:229–234.

153. Bajwa SJ, Singh A. Failed ventilation due to heat and moisture exchanger filters malfunction. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2012;28:269–270.

154. Ramarapu S, Ramakrishnan U. An unusual cause of anesthesia circuit blockade by Sodasorb Pre-Pak. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:477. discussion 477-8.

155. Nichols K, Thomas D, Barker C. Circuit obstruction mimics bronchospasm. *APSF Newsl*. 2004;19:35.

156. Krensavage TJ, Richards E. Sudden development of anesthesia circuit obstruction by an end-tidal CO_2 cap in the gas sampling elbow. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:207.

157. Kshatri AM, Kingsley CP. Defective carbon dioxide absorber as a cause for a leak in a breathing circuit. *Anesthesiology*. 1996; 84:475.

158. Agrawal P, Gupta B, D'Souza N. An unusual cause of carbon dioxide rebreathing in a circle absorber system. *J Anesth*. 2010;24:976–977.

159. Peters G, Broome I, McDonald A. Rebreathing after incorrect assembly of sodalime canisters on Blease Sirius anaesthetic machines. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:860.

160. Phillips J, Jones K, Parekh NS. Rebreathing due to incorrectly fitted seal on an Aestiva S/5. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:300.

161. Kobayashi S, Bito H, Morita K, et al. Amsorb Plus and Drägersorb Free, two new-generation carbon dioxide absorbents that produce a low compound A concentration while providing sufficient CO_2 absorption capacity in simulated sevoflurane anesthesia. *J Anesth*. 2004;18:277–281.

162. Keijzer C, Perez RS, de Lange JJ. Compound A and carbon monoxide production from sevoflurane and seven different types of carbon dioxide absorbent in a patient model. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51:31–37.

163. Yamakage M, Takahashi K, Takahashi M, et al. Performance of four carbon dioxide absorbents in experimental and clinical settings. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:287–292.

164. Olympio MA. Carbon dioxide absorbent dessication safety conference convened by APSF. *APSF Newsl*. 2005;20:25–29.

165. Marini F, Bellugi I, Gambi D, et al. Compound A, formaldehyde and methanol concentrations during low-flow sevoflurane anaesthesia: comparison of three carbon dioxide absorbers. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51:625–632.

166. Higuchi H, Adachi Y, Arimura S, et al. Compound A concentrations during low-flow sevoflurane anesthesia correlate directly with the concentration of monovalent bases in carbon dioxide absorbents. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:434–439.

166a. *The Sodasorb manual of CO_2 absorption*. https://www.shearwater.com/?s=sodasorb+manual Accessed 8-22-19 TG.

167. Adriani J. Carbon dioxide absorption. In: 2nd ed. Adriani J, ed. *The chemistry and physics of anesthesia*Springfield, Ill: Charles C Thomas; 1962:151.

168. Dewey & Almy Chemical Division. *The Sodasorb Manual of CO2 Absorption*. New York: Grace; 1962.

168a. Wang TC, Bricker JL. Combined temperature and water vapor effects on the lithium hydroxide-carbon dioxide reaction in underwater life support systems. Environ. Int. 1979; 2:425.

169. Anders MW. Formation and toxicity of anesthetic degradation products. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2005;45:147–176.

170. Totonidis S. A role for trichloroethylene in developing nation anaesthesia. *Kathmandu Univ Med J (KUMJ)*. 2005;3:181–190.

171. Kharasch ED, Powers KM, Artru AA. Comparison of Amsorb, sodalime, and Baralyme degradation of volatile anesthetics and formation of carbon monoxide and compound a in swine in vivo. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:173–182.

172. Fang ZX, Kandel L, Laster MJ, et al. Factors affecting production of compound-A from the interaction of sevoflurane with Baralyme and soda lime. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:775.

173. Eger 2nd EI, Gong D, Koblin DD, et al. Dose-related biochemical markers of renal injury after sevoflurane versus desflurane anesthesia in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:1154–1163.

174. Eger 2nd EI, Koblin DD, Bowland T, et al. Nephrotoxicity of sevoflurane versus desflurane anesthesia in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:160–168.

175. Frink Jr EJ, Malan TP, Morgan SE, et al. Quantification of the degradation products of sevoflurane in two CO_2 absorbents during low-flow anesthesia in surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:1064.

176. Conzen PF, Kharasch ED, Czerner SF, et al. Low-flow sevoflurane compared with low-flow isoflurane anesthesia in patients with stable renal insufficiency. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:578–584.
177. Kharasch ED, Frink Jr EJ, Artru A, et al. Long-duration low-flow sevoflurane and isoflurane effects on postoperative renal and hepatic function. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1511–1520.
178. Higuchi H, Adachi Y, Wada H, et al. The effects of low-flow sevoflurane and isoflurane anesthesia on renal function in patients with stable moderate renal insufficiency. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:650–655.
179. Obata R, Bito H, Ohmura M, et al. The effects of prolonged low-flow sevoflurane anesthesia on renal and hepatic function. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1262–1268.
180. Mazze RI, Callan CM, Galvez ST, et al. The effects of sevoflurane on serum creatinine and blood urea nitrogen concentrations: a retrospective, twenty-two-center, comparative evaluation of renal function in adult surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:683–688.
181. Morio M, Fujii K, Satoh N, et al. Reaction of sevoflurane and its degradation products with soda lime. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77(1155).
182. Versichelen LF, Bouche MP, Rolly G, et al. Only carbon dioxide absorbents free of both NaOH and KOH do not generate compound A during in vitro closed-system sevoflurane: evaluation of five absorbents. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:750–755.
182a. Förster H, Behne M, Warnken UH, et al. The use of lithium hydroxide for carbon dioxide absorption prevents formation of compound A during sevoflurane anesthesia. *Anaesthesist*. 2000;49:106–112.
182b. Stabernack CR, Brown R, Laster MJ, et al. Absorbents differ enormously in their capacity to produce compound A and carbon monoxide. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1428–1435.
183. Deleted in proofs.
184. Berry PD, Sessler DI, Larson MD. Severe carbon monoxide poisoning during desflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:613.
185. Baxter PJ, Kharasch ED. Rehydration of desiccated baralyme prevents carbon monoxide formation from desflurane in an anesthesia machine. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1061.
186. Woehlick HJ, Dunning M, Connolly LA. Reduction in the incidence of carbon monoxide exposures in humans undergoing general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(228).
187. Fang ZX, Eger EI, Laster MJ, et al. Carbon monoxide production from degradation of desflurane, enflurane, isoflurane, halothane, and sevoflurane by soda lime and Baralyme. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80.
188. Holak E, Mei D, Dunning III M, et al. Carbon monoxide production from sevoflurane breakdown. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:757.
189. Bonome C, Belda J, Alavarez-Refojo F, et al. Low-flow anesthesia and reduced animal size increase carboxyhemoglobin levels in swine during desflurane and isoflurane breakdown in dried soda lime. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:909.
190. Coppens MJ, Versichelen LF, Rolly G, et al. The mechanisms of carbon monoxide production by inhalational agents. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61:462–468.
191. Neumann MA, Laster MJ, Weiskopf RB, et al. The elimination of sodium and potassium hydroxides from desiccated soda lime diminishes degradation of desflurane to carbon monoxide and sevoflurane to compound A but does not compromise carbon dioxide absorption. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:768.
191a. Keijzer C1, Perez RS, de Lange JJ. Carbon monoxide production from desflurane and six types of carbon dioxide absorbents in a patient model. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:815–818.
192. Fatheree RS, Leighton BL. Acute respiratory distress syndrome after an exothermic Baralyme-sevoflurane reaction. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:531–533.
193. Wu J, Previte JP, Adler E, et al. Spontaneous ignition, explosion, and fire with sevoflurane and barium hydroxide lime. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:534–537.
194. Castro BA, Freedman LA, Craig WL, Lynch 3rd C. Explosion within an anesthesia machine: baralyme, high fresh gas flows and sevoflurane concentration. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:537–539.
195. Laster M, Roth P, Eger II E. Fires from the interaction of anesthetics with desiccated absorbent. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:769.
196. Holak E, Mei D, Dunning III M, et al. Carbon monoxide production from sevoflurane breakdown. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:757.
197. Andrews JJ, Johnston Jr RV, Bee DE, et al. Photodeactivation of ethyl violet: a potential hazard of Sodasorb. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(59).
198. Hunt HE. Resistance in respiratory valves and canisters. *Anesthesiology*. 1955;16:190.
199. Brown ES. Performance of absorbents: continuous flow. *Anesthesiology*. 1959;20:41.
199a. Daley T. *A new Approach to Nonregenerative CO2 Removal. Submarine Air Monitoring and Atmosphere Purification Conference*. San Diego: CA; 2009. http://www.analox.biz/articles/SAMAP_09_PAPER_Micropore.pdf
199b. Wang TC. Residence time and carbon dioxide scrubbing efficiency in life support systems. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1981;52:104–108.
200. Mapleson WW. The elimination of rebreathing in various semi-closed anaesthetic systems. 1954. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80:263–269.
201. Willis BA, Pender JW, Mapleson WW. Rebreathing in a T-piece: volunteer and theoretical studies of the Jackson-Rees modification of Ayre's T-piece during spontaneous respiration. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47:1239–1246.
202. Rose DK, Froese AB. The regulation of $Paco_2$ during controlled ventilation of children with a T-piece. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1979;26:104–113.
203. Froese AB, Rose DK. A detailed analysis of T-piece systems. In: Steward DJ, ed. *Some aspects of paediatric anaesthesia*. Amsterdam: Elsevier North-Holland Biomedical Press; 1982:101.
204. Sykes MK. Rebreathing circuits: a review. *Br J Anaesth*. 1968;40:666.
204a. Kaul T, Mittal G. Mapleson's breathing systems. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2013;57:507. https://doi.org/10.4103/0019-5049.120148.
205. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. Mapleson breathing systems. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:209–222.
205a. Kain ML, Nunn JF. Fresh gas economics of the Magill circuit. *Anesthesiology*. 1968;29:964–974.
206. Andersen PK, Olsen JE, Jensen A, Stokke DB. Carbon dioxide distribution in Mapleson A and D systems: an experimental study. *Acta Anaesthesiol. Scand.* 1989;33:439–443. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399-6576.1989.tb02942.x.
207. Bain JA, Spoerel WE. A streamlined anaesthetic system. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1972;19:426.
208. Pethick SL. Letter to the editor. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1975;22:115.
209. Aarhus D, Holst-Larsen E, Holst-Larsen H. Mechanical obstruction in the anaesthesia delivery-system mimicking severe bronchospasm. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52:992.
209a. Hussey SG. Comparison of three manual ventilation devices using an intubated mannequin. *Arch. Dis. Child. - Fetal Neonatal Ed.* 2004;89:F490–F493. https://doi.org/10.1136/adc.2003.047712.
209b. ISO 10651-4:2002, Lung ventilators -- Part 4: Particular requirements for operator-powered resuscitators, 2002.
209c. Lien S, Verreault DJ, Alston TA. Sustained airway pressure after transient occlusion of a valve venting a self-inflating manual resuscitator. *J Clin Anesth.* 2013;25:424–425. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclinane.2013.02.008.
209d. Lucy MJ, Gamble JJ, Peeling A, Lam JTH, Balbuena L. Artificial ventilation during transport: a randomized crossover study of manual resuscitators with comparison to mechanical ventilators in a simulation model. *Pediatr. Anesth.* 2018;28:788–794. https://doi.org/10.1111/pan.13389.
209e. Haupt J. *The History of Anesthesia at Draeger*. Lubeck, Germany: Draegerwerk AG; 1996.
209f. Jaber S, Tassaux D, Sebbane M, et al. Performance characteristics of five new anesthesia ventilators and four intensive care ventilators in pressure-support mode: a comparative bench study. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:944–952.
209g. Sáez JA. Patient-ventilator asynchrony during anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:922. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0000000000000603.
209h. Modak RK, Olympio MA. Anesthesia Ventilaors. In: Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft JB, Berry JM, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders; 2013.
209i. Saied N, Booker R, Weinger M. Misassembled bellows housing leading to failure of mechanical ventilation during general anesthesia. *Simul Healthc.* 2012;7:380–389. https://doi.org/10.1097/SIH.0b013e3182306033.
210. Feeley TW, Bancroft ML. Problems with mechanical ventilators. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1982;20(83).
211. Khalil SN, Gholston TK, Binderman J, et al. Flapper valve malfunction in an Ohio closed scavenging system. *Anaesth Analg*. 1987;66:1334.
212. Sommer RM, Bhalla GS, Jackson JM, et al. Hypoventilation caused by ventilator valve rupture. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:999.

213. Bourke D, Tolentino D. Inadvertent positive end-expiratory pressure caused by a malfunctioning ventilator relief valve. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:492.

214. FLOW-i 4.2 User's Manual. *Maquet Critical Care*. Sweden: Solna; 2015.

214a. A bench study of intensive-care-unit ventilators: new versus old and turbine-based versus compressed gas-based ventilators. Thille AW, Lyazidi A, Richard JC, Galia F, Brochard L. Intensive Care Med. 2009 Aug;35(8):1368-76.

214b. Boussen S, Gainnier M, Michelet P. 2013. Evaluation of Ventilators Used During Transport of Critically Ill Patients: A Bench Study. *Respir Care*. 58, 1911–1922. https://doi.org/10.4187/respcare.02144.

214c. Delgado C, Romero JE, Puig J, Izquierdo A, Ferrando C, Belda FJ, Soro M. 2017. Performance of the New Turbine Mid-Level Critical Care Ventilators. *Respir Care*. 62, 34–41. https://doi.org/10.4187/respcare.04938.

214d. Walker SG, Smith TC, Sheplock G, Acquaviva MA, Horn N. 2013. Breathing Circuits, in: Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications. Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, pp. 95–124.

214e. Deleted in proofs.

214f. Carette R, De Wolf AM, Hendrickx JFA. 2016. Automated gas control with the Maquet FLOW-i. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 30, 341–346. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10877-015-9723-6.

214g. De Cooman S, De Mey N, Dewulf BB, Carette R, Deloof T, Sosnowski M, De Wolf AM, Hendrickx JF. 2008. Desflurane Consumption During Automated Closed-circuit Delivery is Higher Than When a Conventional Anesthesia Machine is Used With a Simple Vaporizer-O_2-N_2O Fresh Gas Flow Sequence. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 8, 4. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2253-8-4.

214h. Singaravelu S, Barclay P. 2013. Automated control of end-tidal inhalation anaesthetic concentration using the GE Aisys CarestationTM. *Br J Anaesth*. 110, 561–566. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aes464.

214i. Wetz AJ, Mueller MM, Walliser K, Foest C, Wand S, Brandes IF, Waeschle RM, Bauer M. 2017. End-tidal control vs. manually controlled minimal-flow anesthesia: a prospective comparative trial. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 61, 1262–1269. https://doi.org/10.1111/aas.12961.

214j. Datex-Ohmeda, 2016. Aisys CS2 User's Reference Manual. Madison, WI.

215. Riutort KT, Eisenkraft JB. *The anesthesia workstation and delivery systems for inhaled anesthetics*/ In Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, editors: Clinical anesthesia, ed 6, Philadelphia, 2009, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, p 644.

216. U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare: *Criteria for a recommended standard: occupational exposure to waste anesthetic gases and vapors*, Washington, DC, 1977, U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare.

216a. International Standards Organization, 2007. ISO 7396-2.

217. McGregor DG. *Waste Anesthetic Gases: Information for Management in Anesthetizing Areas and the Postanesthesia Care Unit (PACU)*. Park Ridge, Ill: ASA Task Force on Trace Anesthetic Gases, American Society of Anesthesiologists; 1999.

217a. Anesthetic Gases: Guidelines for Workplace Exposures | Occupational Safety and Health Administration [WWW Document], n.d. URL https://www.osha.gov/dts/osta/anestheticgases/index.html (accessed 12.20.18).

218. Kanmura Y, Sakai J, Yoshinaka H, et al. Causes of nitrous oxide contamination in operating rooms. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:693.

219. Eisenkraft JB, McGregor DG. Waste Anesthetic Gases and Scavenging Systems. In: Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft JB, Berry JM, eds. *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders; 2013:125–147.

220. Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. Controlling trace gas levels. In: Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE, eds. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2008:373–403.

221. Carvalho B. Hidden hazards of scavenging. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:532–533.

222. Elakkumanan LB, Vasudevan A, Krishnappa S, et al. Obstruction to scavenging system tubing. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2012;28:270–271.

223. Joyal JJ, Vannucci A, Kangrga I. High end-expiratory airway pressures caused by internal obstruction of the Draeger Apollo® scavenger system that is not detected by the workstation self-test and visual inspection. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1162–1164.

224. North American Dräger. *Scavenger Interface for Air Conditioning: Instruction Manual*. Telford, Pa: North American Dräger; 1984.

225. ASTM. Standard specification for anesthetic gas scavenging systems: transfer and receiving systems (ASTM F1343-02). In: *Medical Devices and Services*. vol. 13.01. Conshohocken, Pa: ASTM International; 2005:554–562.

226. Saxena S, Laykish M, Mangione MP, Knauf K. Safety issues with gas scavenging system in GE Avance and GE aespire anesthesia machines. *Anesth Patient Saf Found*. 2016;31:17.

227. Deleted in proofs.

228. Carstensen P. FDA issues pre-use checkout. *APSF Newsl*. 1986;1:13–20.

229. Langford R, Gale TCE, Mayor AH. Anaesthetic machine checking guidelines: have we improved our practice? *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:1050–1056. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0265021506002377.

230. Allen M, Lees DE. Fires in medical vacuum pumps: do you need to be concerned? ASA Newsl. 2004;68:22.

231. Moreno-Duarte I, Montenegro J, Balonov K, Schumann R. Increased resistance to flow and ventilator failure secondary to faulty CO2 absorbent insert not detected during automated anesthesia machine check: a case report. *A A Case Rep*. 2017;8:192–196. https://doi.org/10.1213/XAA.0000000000000464.

231a Deleted in proofs.

232. March MG, Crowley JJ. An evaluation of anesthesiologists' present checkout methods and the validity of the FDA checklist. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:724–729.

233. Lees DE. FDA preanesthesia checklist being evaluated, revised. *APSF Newsl*. 1991;6:25–36.

234. Withiam-Wilson MJ. FDA pre-use equipment checklist spurred by accidents, studies. *APSF Newsl*. 1991;6:25–36.

234a. Eisenkraft JB, Jaffe MB, Ehrenwerth J, Eisenkraft JB, Berry JM. Respiratory gas monitoring. In: *Anesthesia Equipment: Principles and Applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders; 2013:191–222.

234b. Cohen JB, Chaudhry T. Kinked inspiratory limb of coaxial circuit mimics bronchospasm. *Anesth Patient Saf Found Newsl*. 2012;27.

234c. Huang J, Dodwani K, Simon P, Zhou J. Complete bacterial filter blockage by a plastic film. *J Anaesthesiol. Clin Pharmacol*. 2012;28:230–231. https://doi.org/10.4103/0970-9185.94902.

235. Anesthesia apparatus checkout recommendations. *Fed Regist*. 1994;18:94–166. http://www.federalregister.gov/articles/1994-/07/11/94-16618/anesthesia-apparatus-checkout-recommendations-1993-availability

236. Degani A, Wiener EL. Cockpit checklists: concepts, design, and use. *Hum Factors*. 1993;35:345–359.

237. Federal Aviation Administration, Office of Integrated Safety Analysis, Human Factors Analysis Division: Human performance considerations in the use and design of aircraft checklists, . <http://www.faa.gov/other_visit/aviation_industry/airline_operators/airline_safety/info/all_infos/media/2008/info08041.pdf>, 1995 (Accessed 27.05.14.).

238. Tibbles PM, Edelsberg JS. Hyperbaric-oxygen therapy. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;334(1642):1642.

23 Intravenous Anesthetics

JAAP VUYK, ELSKE SITSEN, and MARIJE REEKERS

KEY POINTS

- The introduction of thiopental into clinical practice in 1934 marked the beginning of modern intravenous (IV) anesthesia. Today, IV anesthetics are used for induction and maintenance of anesthesia and sedation in a wide variety of circumstances.
- The most commonly used IV anesthetic is propofol, an alkylphenol presently formulated in a lipid emulsion. Propofol provides rapid onset and offset with context-sensitive decrement times of approximately 10 minutes when infused for less than 3 hours and less than 40 minutes when infused for up to 8 hours. Its mechanism of action is likely the enhancement of gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)-induced chloride currents. Propofol causes a dose-dependent decrease in arterial blood pressure predominantly through a decrease in systemic vascular resistance and causes moderate respiratory depression. A unique action of propofol is its antiemetic effect, even at concentrations less than those producing sedation. A growing body of evidence suggests propofol may have antitumor potential.
- Barbiturates were the most commonly used IV drugs administered to induce anesthesia prior to the introduction of propofol. Thiopental provides rapid onset and offset when used as a single dose, but it accumulates rapidly with repeated or prolonged administration thus postponing recovery from anesthesia. Methohexital has a rapid onset and offset similar to propofol for procedures lasting less than 2 hours. The barbiturates are administered as sodium salts diluted in a water base at an alkaline pH. Similar to propofol, the barbiturates provide their hypnotic effects largely through action on the GABAA receptor. Barbiturates provide cerebral protection and are, apart from induction of anesthesia, used primarily for this purpose. They cause a moderate dose-dependent decrease in arterial blood pressure (primarily as a result of peripheral vasodilation) and respiratory drive. The barbiturates are contraindicated in patients with porphyria.
- The benzodiazepines are used primarily for anxiolysis and amnesia or for conscious sedation. The water-soluble benzodiazepine midazolam is most frequently used intravenously because of its rapid onset and offset compared with other benzodiazepines (e.g., diazepam). The onset time of midazolam is slower than that of propofol and barbiturates, and its offset, especially with larger doses or a prolonged infusion, is considerably longer than that of propofol or methohexital and may be prolonged in hepatic and renal failure. The benzodiazepines act through the GABA receptor. Flumazenil is a specific benzodiazepine antagonist. It can be used to reverse the effects of benzodiazepines but should be used with caution because its antagonizing effect often lasts shorter than the benzodiazepine effect that it is supposed to antagonize. The benzodiazepines generally produce only a mild decrease in arterial blood pressure and mild-to-moderate respiratory depression. Remimazolam is the most recent benzodiazepine with an ultrashort duration of action due to its rapid clearance through plasma esterases.
- Ketamine is a phencyclidine derivative that acts primarily, but not entirely, as antagonist of the N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor. It produces a dissociative state of hypnosis and analgesia. It has been used for induction and maintenance of anesthesia. Ketamine is associated with significant adverse psychological effects from larger doses and has several other side effects. It is used now primarily for its analgesic properties. It has rapid onset and relatively rapid offset, even after an infusion of several hours. It has sympathomimetic effects that preserve cardiac function. Ketamine has minimal effect on respiration and tends to preserve autonomic reflexes. In addition, ongoing research suggests ketamine may play a role as an antidepressant.
- Etomidate is an imidazole derivative used primarily for induction of anesthesia, especially in elderly patients and patients who are cardiovascularly compromised. It has a rapid onset of effect and a rapid offset even after a continuous infusion. A dose used to induce anesthesia results in inhibition of adrenocortical synthesis and possible mortality in intensive care unit (ICU) patients. The major advantage of etomidate is its minimal effect on the cardiovascular and respiratory systems.
- Dexmedetomidine is the most recently released IV anesthetic. It is a highly selective α_2-adrenergic agonist that produces sedation, sympatholysis, hypnosis, and analgesia. Dexmedetomidine is approved for ICU sedation of initially intubated and mechanically ventilated patients, up to 24 hours. It may be advantageous for its ability to prevent delirium. Its second indication is procedural sedation of nonintubated patients. With increasing frequency dexmedetomine finds its use as a sedative during invasive or radiological procedures and as an adjunct in central or peripheral neural blockade. Its primary action is as an agonist on α_2-receptors in the locus caeruleus. It has minimal effect on respiration. Heart rate and cardiac output show a concentration-dependent decrease.

- Droperidol, a butyrophenone and major tranquilizer, was initially used to produce a state of neuroleptanesthesia. Its prolongation of the QT interval has resulted in its withdrawal in several countries and its limitation to the treatment of postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV) with a black box warning in the United States. Because the use of low-dose droperidol (<1.25 mg) for PONV has not been approved by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA), the black box warning does not relate to this use. Clinically significant prolongation of the QT interval by doses used for PONV (0.625 to 1.25 mg) has been challenged by several editorials, and this effect has not been substantiated by review of the reported cases or other literature. Low-dose droperidol remains an effective antiemetic therapy and is used as such in many European countries (also see Chapter 80).

Intravenous (IV) anesthesia can be traced back to 1656 with Percival Christopher Wren's and Daniel Johann Major's first experiments with the IV using a goose quill and bladder to inject wine and ale into a dog's vein. In 1665 German naturalist and physician Sigismund Elsholz made the first attempt at IV anesthesia in humans and investigated the possibilities of IV injection with opiates. IV anesthesia further evolved when Fedoroff started using hedonal in St. Petersburg in 1905 and entered the era of modern anesthesia with the release of thiopental in 1936.[1] Since these beginnings, and in particular during the past three decades, the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of IV anesthetics and their interactions have been described in increasingly greater detail. This body of knowledge and the availability of increasingly shorter-acting drugs now allow the anesthesia provider to administer anesthesia not on the basis of the needs of the population but to focus anesthesia on the individual needs of the patient. Today's anesthesia provider is supported by modern IV drug administration techniques like target-controlled infusion and central nervous system (CNS) monitoring devices to further optimize and individualize the application of IV anesthesia. This chapter describes the current status of the pharmacology of IV anesthetics and their place in modern anesthesia.

Propofol

HISTORY

Since its introduction in the 1970s, propofol has become the most used IV hypnotic today. Building on work on the sedative properties of phenol derivates in mice, propofol was developed in the United Kingdom by Imperial Chemical Industries as ICI 35868. The initial solution of propofol, as released in 1977 in Cremophor EL,[2] was withdrawn because of anaphylactic reactions, and replaced and reformulated as an emulsion of a soya oil/propofol mixture in water and relaunched in 1986. Propofol is used for induction and maintenance of anesthesia and for sedation in and outside the operating room.

PHYSICOCHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Propofol (Fig. 23.1) is one of a group of alkylphenols that were explored for their hypnotic properties in animals.[3-5] The alkylphenols are highly lipid soluble and are insoluble in an aqueous solution.[6] Numerous formulations of propofol are marketed today. The formulation most used is that of 1% propofol, 10% soybean oil, and 1.2% purified egg phospholipid added as emulsifier, with 2.25% of glycerol as a tonicity-adjusting agent, and sodium hydroxide to change the pH. Following concerns regarding microbial growth in the emulsion, EDTA was added for its bacteriostatic activities. Propofol has a pH of 7 and appears as a slightly viscous, milky white substance, a result of small lipid droplets in solution. In Europe, a 2% formulation and a formulation in which the emulsion contains a mixture of medium-chain and long-chain triglycerides also are available. All formulations commercially available are stable at room temperature, are not light sensitive, and may be diluted with 5% dextrose in water. Propofol concentrations may be measured both in whole blood and in the exhaled air.[7-10]

In December 2008 the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved fospropofol disodium (Lusedra) for monitored anesthesia care in adult patients undergoing diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. Fospropofol is a water-soluble prodrug of propofol that is metabolized by alkaline phosphatases in the liver to the active metabolite propofol. One millimole (mmol) of propofol is generated for each mmol of fospropofol sodium administered. About 1.86 mg of fospropofol sodium is the molar equivalent of 1 mg propofol. In April 2010, six studies on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of fospropofol were retracted as a result of an analytical assay inaccuracy that was discovered after publication of these studies.[11,12] Since then, few data on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of fospropofol have been published. Although fospropofol remains available for monitored anesthesia care, data now available are scarce and most pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic data that are available come from the United States as described in a recent review.[13] In contrast to propofol, fospropofol is not associated with pain on injection, although mild to moderate perineal paresthesias and pruritis minutes after a bolus injection of fospropofol have been reported and may be due to a phosphate metabolite.

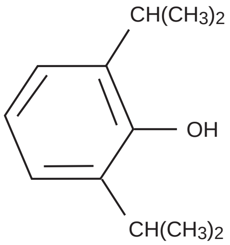


Fig. 23.1 Structure of propofol, an alkylphenol derivative.

PHARMACOKINETICS

Propofol is oxidized to 1,4-diisopropyl quinol in the liver. Propofol and 1,4-diisopropyl quinol are conjugated with glucuronic acid to propofol-1-glucuronide, quinol-1-glucuronide, and quinol-4-glucuronide, which then may be excreted by the kidneys.[14,15] After a 2.5-hour anesthetic with propofol, patients excrete propofol and propofol metabolites for over 60 hours.[15] Less than 1% propofol is excreted unchanged in urine, and only 2% is excreted in feces. The metabolites of propofol are thought to be inactive. Because clearance of propofol (>1.5 L/min) exceeds hepatic blood flow, extrahepatic metabolism or extrarenal elimination may occur. Extrahepatic metabolism has been confirmed during the anhepatic phase of patients receiving a transplanted liver with the determination of propofol metabolites after propofol administration in the absence of liver tissue. The most important extrahepatic site for propofol metabolism is the kidney.[16,17] Renal metabolism of propofol accounts for up to 30% of propofol clearance, which explains the rapid clearance of propofol, which exceeds liver blood flow. The lungs also may play a role in the extrahepatic propofol metabolism.[18,19] In sheep, the lungs are responsible for approximately 30% of the uptake and first-pass elimination after a bolus dose. In humans, a 20% to 30% decrease in propofol concentration measured across the lung exists with a higher concentration of the metabolite 2,6-diisopropyl 1,4-quinol on the arterial side of the circulation.

Propofol is generally known for its hemodynamic depressant effects and may reduce hepatic blood flow. As such, it may reduce the clearance of other drugs metabolized by the liver, in particular those with a high extraction ratio.[20] In addition, propofol is known as a CYP3A4 inhibitor.[21] In contrast to enzyme induction that may take several days or weeks to develop, competitive inhibition of CYP activity may occur almost instantaneously due to the competition of two drugs (e.g., propofol and midazolam) for the enzyme's active site. A short-term exposure to propofol at a blood concentration of 3 μg/mL already reduces the CYP3A4 activity by about 37%.

Fospropofol[22-28,28a] is a water-soluble prodrug of propofol and is chemically described as phosphono-*O*-methyl-2, 6-diisopropylphenol, disodium salt ($C_{13}H_{19}O_5PNa_2$). Fospropofol is metabolized by alkaline phosphatases to propofol, formaldehyde, and phosphate. Formaldehyde is further metabolized to formate which is then eliminated, primarily by oxidation to carbon dioxide. Over 71% of fospropofol is recovered in the urine within 192 hours following a single 400 mg IV dose. Renal elimination is <0.02% and total body clearance in the order of 0.28 L/h/kg. The terminal elimination half-life of fospropofol is 0.88 hours. The pharmacokinetics of fospropofol and liberated propofol are not affected by race, sex, or mild to moderate renal impairment. Furthermore, fospropofol pharmacokinetics are not affected by age or alkaline phosphatase concentration. So far, no pharmacokinetic interactions have been found between fospropofol and fentanyl, midazolam, morphine, or with propofol. This is probably because fospropofol is not subject to cytochrome P450 enzyme mediated metabolism.[13]

The pharmacokinetics of propofol have been described by two-compartment and three-compartment models (Table 23.1).[28b] After a single bolus dose, whole blood propofol levels decrease rapidly as a result of redistribution and elimination (Fig. 23.2). The initial distribution half-life of propofol is 2 to 8 minutes. Studies in which the disposition of propofol is described by a three-compartment model give initial and slow distribution half-lives of 1 to 8 minutes and 30 to 70 minutes and an elimination half-life of 4 to 23.5 hours.[29-34] The context-sensitive half-time for propofol (Fig. 23.3) for infusions of up to 8 hours is less than 40 minutes.[35] Because the required decrease in concentration for awakening after anesthesia or sedation with propofol is generally less than 50%, recovery from propofol remains rapid even after prolonged infusion. The volume of distribution of the central compartment has been calculated between 6 and 40 L, and the volume of distribution at steady state has been calculated as 150 to 700 L. The

TABLE 23.1 Pharmacokinetic Variables for Commonly Used Intravenous Anesthetics

Elimination	Elimination Half-Life (h)	Clearance (mL/kg/min)	Vd_{SS} (L/kg)
Dexmedetomidine	2-3	10-30	2-3
Diazepam	20-50	0.2-0.5	0.7-1.7
Droperidol	1.7-2.2	14	2
Etomidate	2.9-5.3	18-25	2.5-4.5
Flumazenil	0.7-1.3	5-20	0.6-1.6
Ketamine	2.5-2.8	12-17	3.1
Lorazepam	11-22	0.8-1.8	0.8-1.3
Methohexital	2-6	10-15	1.5-3
Midazolam	1.7-2.6	6.4-11	1.1-1.7
Propofol	4-7	20-30	2-10
Thiopental	7-17	3-4	1.5-3

Vd_{SS}, Apparent volume of distribution at steady state.
From Reves JG, Glass P, Lubarsky DA, et al. Intravenous anesthetics. In: Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleischer LA, et al, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia,* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010: 719–768.

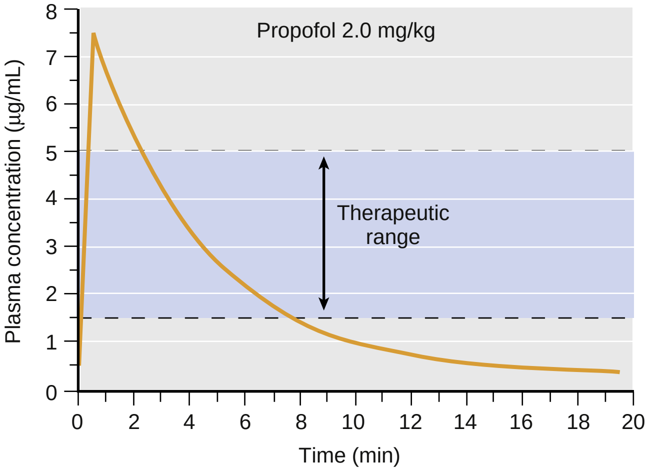


Fig. 23.2 Simulated time course of whole blood levels of propofol after an induction dose of 2 mg/kg. Blood levels required for anesthesia during surgery are 2 to 5 μg/mL, with awakening usually occurring at a blood level less than 1.5 μg/mL.

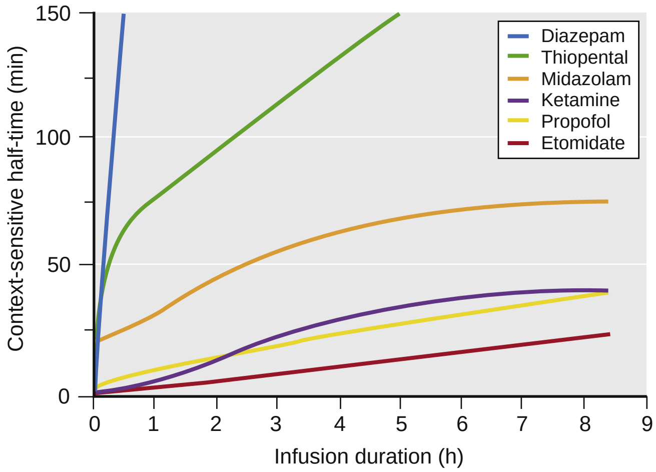


Fig. 23.3 The context-sensitive half-times for commonly used IV anesthetic drugs. The context-sensitive half-time is the time for the plasma level of the drug to decrease 50% after cessation of infusion. The duration of infusion is plotted on the horizontal axis. The rapidity with which the drug level decreases is directly related to the time of infusion (i.e., the longer the drug is infused, the longer the half-time). Etomidate, propofol, and ketamine have significantly shorter half-times than thiopental and diazepam, which makes them more suitable for prolonged infusion.

central compartment generally is smaller in the elderly as a result of the reduced cardiac output in these patients. A reduced cardiac output is associated with a higher peak plasma concentration, which is reflected by a smaller central compartment in the pharmacokinetic analysis. The clearance of propofol is extremely high—1.5 to 2.2 L/min. As discussed earlier, this exceeds hepatic blood flow, and extrahepatic metabolism has been shown.

The equilibrium constant for propofol based on suppression of the activity in the electroencephalogram (EEG) is about 0.3 min, and the half-life of equilibrium ($T½_{ke0}$) between plasma concentration and EEG effect is 2.5 minutes. The time to peak effect is 90 to 100 seconds. The onset of EEG effect with propofol seems to be independent of age. The onset of decreasing arterial blood pressure is much slower (double the time) and increases with age.[36] For EEG and blood pressure changes, elderly patients show a concentration dependent increasing sensitivity. The pharmacokinetics of propofol may be altered by various factors (e.g., gender, weight, preexisting disease, age, and concomitant medication).[37-39] Some studies suggest that propofol may exhibit nonlinear pharmacokinetics.[40] Because propofol has a high extraction ratio, this may impair its own clearance by decreasing cardiac output and thus hepatic blood flow.[41] As a result, a doubling of the dose of propofol may lead to a drug concentration that may be more than twice that initially experienced. In contrast, an increase in cardiac output induced by sympaticomimetic administration may lead to a decrease in the propofol plasma concentration. In a hemorrhagic shock model propofol concentrations increased 20% until uncompensated shock occurred, when there was a rapid and marked increase in propofol concentrations.[42]

In term and preterm neonates, variability of propofol clearance was accounted for largely by postmenstrual and postnatal age with very fast maturation of clearance in neonatal life. Dosing in these neonates needs to be calculated with extreme care.[43,44] Women have a larger volume of distribution and higher clearance rates, but the elimination half-life is similar for males and females. Elderly individuals have decreased clearance rates and a smaller central compartment volume.[45] Both may be the result of a reduced cardiac output. Because of this and because of an increased sensitivity to the propofol effect in the elderly, patients aged 80 years or older generally need 50% of the propofol dose of patients aged 20 years old to target the same level of sedation or hypnosis.[29,38,45,46] Children have a relatively larger central compartment volume (50%) and a more rapid clearance (25%).[31,47] In children older than 3 years, volumes and clearances should be weight adjusted (also see Chapter 77). Children younger than 3 years of age also show weight-proportional pharmacokinetic parameters, but with larger central compartment and systemic clearance values than in adults or older children. This finding explains the larger dose requirements in this age group.[48,49] Hepatic disease seems to result in larger steady state and central compartment volumes; clearance is unchanged, but the elimination half-life is slightly prolonged, as is time to recovery.[50,51] In clinical practice, no significant dose adjustment is required in case of hepatic disease. The extrahepatic clearance of propofol that may compensate for a reduced hepatic function may be responsible for this.

Midazolam affects the pharmacokinetics of propofol.[52] In the presence of a sedative midazolam concentration of 200 ng/mL, the blood propofol concentrations become elevated by about 25%. Midazolam reduces propofol metabolic clearance from 1.94 to 1.61 L/min, Cl_2 from 2.86 to 1.52 L/min, and Cl_3 from 0.95 to 0.73 L/min. The high extraction ratio of propofol of 0.79 to 0.92 suggests that the metabolic clearance of propofol may not be affected by enzyme inhibition but may be susceptible to changes in hepatic perfusion. The changes in the pharmacokinetics of propofol induced by midazolam thus may be the result of the hemodynamic alterations induced by the coadministration of midazolam.

Propofol in its turn affects midazolam pharmacokinetics as well.[20] In the presence of sedative concentrations of propofol, plasma midazolam concentrations increased by 27%. In the presence of propofol, midazolam is administered in a smaller central compartment from which midazolam is cleared and distributed less rapidly to peripheral tissues. For example, alfentanil[53] has been shown to increase blood propofol concentrations through a reduction in the elimination and distribution clearance of propofol. This is in line with other pharmacokinetic interactions between hypnotics and opioids when combined with propofol. Propofol has been shown to increase alfentanil concentrations by decreasing the elimination and the rapid and slow distribution clearances of alfentanil. Coadministration of propofol increased remifentanil concentrations via both a decrease in the central volume of distribution and distributional clearance of remifentanil by 41% and elimination clearance by 15%. Propofol kinetics is unaltered by renal disease.

As previously stated, pharmacokinetic data on the disposition of fospropofol are scarce. Phase I and phase II studies were conducted in Europe when a detection error became apparent resulting in the retraction of six published manuscripts. Currently, no further pharmacokinetic studies have been initiated. The pharmacokinetics of fospropofol in humans remains largely unknown.

Fospropofol protein binding is extensive (98%).[13] It has a small volume of distribution of 0.3 L/kg, a total body clearance of 0.36 L/kg/h with a terminal elimination half-life of 0.88 hours. After a bolus dose of 6 mg/kg of fospropofol, the parent drug peaks at 4 minutes and is rapidly metabolized to propofol with a peak plasma propofol concentration at 12 minutes after administration of fospropofol. With this fospropofol dose the highest plasma concentration reached (Cmax) of fospropofol was 78.7 μg/mL and the Cmax of propofol was 1.08 μg/mL. The total body clearance of fospropofol and propofol were 0.36 and 3.2 L/kg/h. The terminal half-lives were 0.88 and 1.13 hours, respectively.

Pharmacodynamics

EFFECTS ON THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

The hypnotic action of propofol is mostly mediated by enhancing γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA)-induced chloride current through its binding to the β-subunit of $GABA_A$ receptor. Sites on the β_1-subunit, β_2-subunit, and β_3-subunit of the transmembrane domains are crucial for the hypnotic action of propofol.[54,55] The α-subunit and γ_2-subunit subtypes also seem to contribute to modulating the effects of propofol on the GABA receptor. The effect of propofol has been described in two manners—indirect and direct. Propofol exhibits an indirect effect by potentiation of the ion channel activation by GABA, shifting the concentration-response relationship to the left. At higher propofol concentrations, propofol is also thought to directly activate $GABA_A$ receptor channels.[56-58] The exact mechanism and location of changes that are associated with the change from consciousness to the unconscious state are not yet fully understood. Some experts suggest that a proper functioning of the brain stem-thalamo-cortical arousal circuits are critical while others state that consciousness is more related to fronto-parietal association cortex activity. Propofol, through its action on $GABA_A$ receptors[59] in the hippocampus, inhibits acetylcholine release in the hippocampus and prefrontal cortex. The α_2-adrenoreceptor system also seems to play an indirect role in the sedative effects of propofol.[60] Resting state fMRI studies suggest that propofol's action may be related to a CNS that reduces its discriminable state and switches into stereotypic patterns of firing under propofol sedation.[61] The so called default mode network (DMN), including the posterior cingulated, the medial frontal cortex, and bilateral parietal cortices, is the anatomical substrate in which these stereotypical patterns become visible. Using positron emission tomography, propofol hypnosis is related with reduced activity in the thalamic and precuneus regions. These regions likely play an important role in propofol-induced unconsciousness.[62]

Propofol results also in widespread inhibition of the *N*-methyl-d-aspartate (NMDA) subtype of glutamate receptor through modulation of sodium channel gating, an action that also may contribute to the drug's CNS effects.[63,64] Propofol has a direct depressant effect on neurons of the spinal cord. In acutely dissociated spinal dorsal horn neurons, propofol acts on $GABA_A$ and glycine receptors.[65] The sense of well-being in patients with propofol is related to the increase in dopamine concentrations in the nucleus accumbens (a phenomenon noted with drugs of abuse and pleasure-seeking behavior).[66] Propofol's antiemetic action may be explained by the decrease in serotonin levels it produces in the area postrema, probably through its action on GABA receptors.[67]

The onset of hypnosis after a dose of 2.5 mg/kg is rapid (one arm–brain circulation), with a peak effect seen at 90 to 100 seconds. The median effective dose (ED_{50}) of propofol for loss of consciousness is 1 to 1.5 mg/kg after a bolus. The duration of hypnosis is dose-dependent, being 5 to 10 minutes after 2 to 2.5 mg/kg. Age markedly affects the induction dose, which is largest at ages younger than 2 years (ED_{95} 2.88 mg/kg) and decreases with increasing age. This is a direct result of the altered pharmacokinetics in children and elderly. Children exhibit a relatively larger central compartment and therefore need a higher dose to assure a similar blood-drug concentration.[68-70] In addition, the rapid clearance of propofol in children requires a larger maintenance dose as well. Increasing age decreases the propofol concentration required for loss of consciousness.

At subhypnotic doses, propofol provides sedation and amnesia. Propofol infusions of at least 2 mg/kg/h were necessary to provide amnesia in unstimulated volunteers. Awareness during surgery at higher infusion rates has been reported. During surgical procedures, extremely high infusion rates producing blood propofol concentrations in excess of 10 μg/mL may be necessary to prevent awareness if propofol is used as the sole anesthetic. Propofol also tends to produce a general state of well-being. Hallucinations, sexual fantasies, and opisthotonos occur after propofol administration.

The effect of propofol on the EEG, as assessed after 2.5 mg/kg followed by an infusion, shows an initial increase in alpha rhythm followed by a shift to gamma and theta frequency. Rapid infusion rates produce burst suppression at blood propofol concentrations higher than 8 μg/mL. Propofol causes a concentration-dependent decrease in the bispectral index (BIS), with 50% and 95% of patients unable to respond to a verbal command at a BIS of 63 and 51, respectively. The propofol concentration at which 50% of volunteers failed to respond to verbal command was 2.35 μg/mL. Lack of recall was observed in 95% of patients at a BIS value of 77.[71] Propofol effect site concentrations provide similar correlation with decreases in the spectral entropy variable derived from the EEG as it does with BIS, and a similar ability to titrate propofol anesthetic effect. The effect of propofol on epileptogenic EEG activity is controversial. Propofol may suppress seizure activity via GABA agonism, inhibition of NMDA receptors, and modulation of slow calcium ion channels. However, the same GABA agonism and glycine antagonism may also induce clinical seizures and EEG epileptiform changes.[72] This especially may occur during induction of and emergence from anesthesia. Propofol has a dose-dependent anticonvulsant. Propofol has even been used to treat epileptic seizures. Yet propofol can cause grand mal seizures and has been used for cortical mapping of epileptogenic foci.[73]

Unfortunately, propofol can be addictive. An important issue in the potential of abuse is the development of tolerance. Tolerance to a drug creates circumstances for abuse. Propofol is being used as a sedative in the intensive care unit (ICU); in 20% to 40% of patients, the propofol dosage regimen needs to be repeatedly adjusted upward in order to maintain the same effect.[74] Data on propofol abuse in the general public are unknown but the incidence of abuse is likely to be low compared to other substances. For healthcare workers, propofol is easy to access and case reports of lethal self-administration do occur. Some have suggested that there are more frequent incidences of propofol abuse by healthcare providers[75,76] and support stricter propofol regulation. In contrast to propofol, fospropofol was classified in 2009 by the US Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) as a controlled substance.

Propofol decreases intracranial pressure (ICP) in patients with either normal or increased ICP (also see Chapter 57). The decrease in ICP (30% to 50%) is associated with significant decreases in cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP).[77] The use of propofol in head-injured patients should be restricted to doses providing mild-to-moderate sedation (i.e., blood concentration of 2 μg/mL, infusion of 25 to 75 μg/kg/min).[78] Anesthetics are neuroprotective because they reduce the metabolic oxygen use that is beneficial for the balance between energy supply and demand and because they increase the tolerance to hypoxia by the neuronal tissue. Propofol has no direct preconditioning effect but may attenuate glutamate-mediated excitotoxicity.[79-81] Propofol acutely reduces intraocular pressure by 30% to 40%. Compared with thiopental, propofol produces a larger decrease in intraocular pressure and is more effective in preventing an increase in intraocular pressure secondary to succinylcholine and endotracheal intubation. Normal cerebral reactivity to carbon dioxide and autoregulation are maintained during a propofol infusion.

The neuroprotective effects of propofol remain controversial.[82] In an incomplete ischemia model in rats, propofol administered to burst suppression results in significantly better neurologic outcome and less brain tissue injury compared with fentanyl. Propofol administered at sedative concentrations started either immediately after or at 1 hour after an ischemic insult significantly reduced infarct size compared with awake controls infused with intralipid.[83,84] Subanesthetic doses of propofol also induce neuroapoptosis in the infant mouse brain.[85] In addition, anesthetic doses of propofol in rats[86] induce complex changes that are accompanied by cell death in the cortex and thalamus of the developing rat brain. The neuronal protective effect of propofol may be due to the attenuation of changes in adenosine triphosphate, calcium, sodium, and potassium caused by hypoxic injury and its antioxidant action by inhibiting lipid peroxidation. Current evidence indicates that propofol can protect neurons against ischemic injury caused by excitotoxicity, but neuroprotection may be sustained only if the ischemic insult is relatively mild and is not sustained after a prolonged recovery period. Prolonged propofol sedation in children is associated with adverse neurologic sequelae.[87]

Many anesthetic-related drugs decrease the required dose or blood concentrations of propofol's pharmacologic action. The "required dose" is usually directly related to the required concentration for a given effect. The propofol Cp_{50} (blood concentration needed for 50% of subjects to not respond to a defined stimulus) for loss of response to verbal command in the absence of any other drug is 2.3 to 3.5 μg/mL.[88-90] The propofol Cp_{50} to prevent movement on skin incision is 16 μg/mL; this is markedly reduced by increasing concentrations (i.e., doses) of fentanyl or alfentanil. The propofol Cp_{50} for skin incision when combined with benzodiazepine premedication (lorazepam, 1 to 2 mg) and 66% nitrous oxide is 2.5 μg/mL (venous).[91] This concentration is reduced to 1.7 μg/mL when morphine (0.15 mg/kg) rather than lorazepam is used for premedication. The concentration of propofol (when combined with 66% nitrous oxide) required during minor surgery is 1.5 to 4.5 μg/mL, and the concentration for major surgery is 2.5 to 6 μg/mL.[92] Awakening usually occurs at concentrations less than 1.6 μg/mL and orientation occurs at concentrations less than 1.2 μg/mL when the propofol concentration is decreasing. Not surprisingly, awakening is postponed in the presence of high blood concentrations of opioids. Optimal propofol blood concentrations have been defined when combined with several opioids including remifentanil, alfentanil, sufentanil, and fentanyl that assure adequate anesthesia and the most rapid return to consciousness, postoperatively (Table 23.2). In the presence of remifentanil, a relatively large-dose opioid anesthetic is recommended. Yet, with fentanyl an accompanying large dose of propofol should be used to assure rapid return to recovery postoperatively (Fig. 23.4). When equilibration between blood and effect site is allowed, however, awakening concentrations (2.2 μg/mL) are similar to concentrations associated with loss of verbal command.[93]

EFFECTS ON THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

Apnea occurs after administration of an induction dose of propofol; the incidence and duration of apnea depend on dose, speed of injection, and concomitant premedication.[94] An induction dose of propofol results in a 25% to 30% incidence of apnea from the respiratory depressant effects of propofol and yet a normal partial pressure of carbon dioxide in the blood ($PaCO_2$) at induction in the absence of surgical stimulation. Metabolic depression further prevents the $PaCO_2$ to increase. Yet, the duration of apnea occurring with propofol may be prolonged to more than 30 seconds. The incidence of prolonged apnea (>30 seconds) is increased further by addition of an opiate, either as premedication or just before induction of anesthesia.[92,95] A maintenance infusion of propofol (100 μg/kg/min) results in a 40% decrease in tidal volume and a 20% increase in respiratory frequency, with an unpredictable change in minute ventilation. Doubling the infusion rate from 100 to 200 μg/kg/min causes a further moderate decrease in tidal volume but no change in respiratory frequency.[96] As with other hypnotic drugs, spontaneous ventilation is the result of the respiratory depressant effects of the hypnotic agents and the decrease in CO_2 production resulting from the metabolic depression versus the stimulatory effects of the increasing $PaCO_2$ resulting from apnea and the level of nociception. Propofol (50-120 μg/kg/min) also depresses the ventilatory response to hypoxia, presumably by a direct action on carotid body chemoreceptors.[97] Propofol induces bronchodilation in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Propofol attenuates vagal (at low concentrations) and methacholine-induced (at high concentrations) bronchoconstriction and seems to have a direct action on muscarinic receptors. Propofol inhibits the receptor-coupled signal transduction pathway through inositol phosphate

TABLE 23.2 Infusion Schemes of Propofol and the Opioids Required to Maintain Effect-Site Concentrations of These Agents*

Opioid	**Alfentanil EC50-EC95 (90-130 ng/mL)**	**Fentanyl EC50-EC95 (1.1-1.6 ng/mL)**	**Sufentanil EC50-EC95 (0.14-0.20 ng/mL)**	**Remifentanil EC50-EC95 (4.7-8.0 ng/mL)**
Bolus	25-35 µg/kg in 30 sec	3 µg/kg in 30 sec	0.15-0.25 µg/kg in 30 sec	1.5-2 µg/kg in 30 sec
Infusion 1	50-75 µg/kg/h for 30 min	1.5-2.5 µg/kg/h for 30 min	0.15-0.22 µg/kg thereafter	13-22 µg/kg/h for 20 min
Infusion 2	30-42.5 µg/kg/h thereafter	1.3-2 µg/kg/h up to 150 min		11.5-19 µg/kg/h thereafter
Infusion 3		0.7-1.4 µg/kg/h thereafter		
Propofol	**Propofol EC_{50}-EC_{95} (3.2-4.4 µg/mL)**	**Propofol EC_{50}-EC_{95} (3.4-5.4 µg/mL)**	**Propofol EC_{50}-EC_{95} (3.3-4.5 µg/mL)**	**Propofol EC_{50}-EC_{95} (2.5-2.8 µg/mL)**
Bolus	2.0-2.8 mg/kg in 30 s	2.0-3.0 mg/kg in 30 s	2.0-2.8 mg/kg in 30 s	1.5 mg/kg in 30 s
Infusion 1	9-12 mg/kg/h for 40 min	9-15 mg/kg/h for 40 min	9-12 mg/kg/h for 40 min	7-8 mg/kg/h for 40 min
Infusion 2	7-10 mg/kg/h for 150 min	7-12 mg/kg/h for 150 min	7-10 mg/kg/h for 150 min	6-6.5 mg/kg/h for 150 min
Infusion 3	6.5-8 mg/kg/h thereafter	6.5-11 mg/kg/h thereafter	6.5-8 mg/kg/h thereafter	5-6 mg/kg/h thereafter

These optimal infusion schemes have been derived from data in female patients undergoing lower abdominal surgery. These should be used as guidelines and be adjusted to the individual needs of the patient.

Reproduced from Vuyk J, Mertens MJ, Olofsen E, et al. Propofol anesthesia and rational opioid selection: determination of optimal EC50-EC95 propofol-opioid concentrations that assure adequate anesthesia and a rapid return of consciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1549–1562, with permission from Lippincott Williams and Wilkins©, 1997; and Kataria BK, Ved SA, Nicodemus HF, et al. The pharmacokinetics of propofol in children using 3 different data-analysis approaches. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:104–122.

*When given in combination, within +/– 15% of the effect-site concentrations that are associated with a 50% and 95% probability of no response to surgical stimuli and the most rapid possible return of consciousness after termination of the infusions.

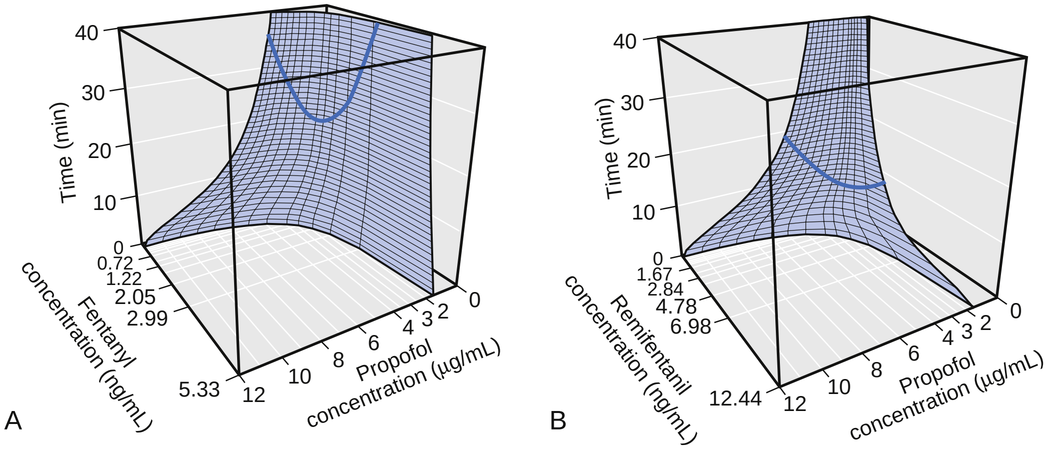


Fig. 23.4 Computer simulation of effect-site propofol and fentanyl (A) or remifentanil (B) concentrations vs. time during the first 40 min after termination of target-controlled infusions of propofol and fentanyl or remifentanil that had been maintained for 300 min at constant target blood or plasma concentration combinations associated with a 50% probability of no response to surgical stimuli. These concentration combinations are represented by the curved line on the bottom of the figure in the *x–y* plane. The decrease in concentrations following the intraoperative propofol-fentanyl and propofol-remifentanil combinations is represented by the curves running upward from the *x–y* plane. The curved lines in parallel to the *x–y* plane represent consecutive 1-min time intervals. The bold lines within the two figures represent the propofol-fentanyl-time and propofol-remifentanil-time relationships at which consciousness is regained in 50% of the patients. (Reproduced from Vuyk J, Mertens MJ, Olofsen E, et al. Propofol anesthesia and rational opioid selection: determination of optimal EC50-EC95 propofol-opioid concentrations that assure adequate anesthesia and a rapid return of consciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1549–1562, with permission from Lippincott Williams and Wilkins©, 1997.)

generation and inhibition of Ca^{2+} mobilization. The preservative used with propofol is important regarding its bronchodilator activity. Propofol with metabisulfite (compared with propofol without metabisulfite) does not inhibit vagal or methacholine-induced bronchoconstriction. Propofol potentiates hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction, an effect caused by inhibition of K(+) (ATP)-mediated pulmonary vasodilatation. Propofol has an impact on the pulmonary pathophysiology of adult respiratory distress syndrome. In an animal model of septic endotoxemia, propofol (10 mg/kg/h) significantly reduced free radical mediated and cyclooxygenase catalyzed lipid peroxidation. In addition, PaO_2 and hemodynamics were maintained closer to baseline. These benefits of propofol have not yet been confirmed in humans.

EFFECTS ON THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

The cardiovascular effects of propofol for induction and maintenance of anesthesia have been evaluated (Table 23.3).[98] The most prominent effect of propofol is a decrease in arterial blood pressure during induction of

TABLE 23.3 Hemodynamic Changes % After Induction of Anesthesia With Nonbarbiturate Hypnotics

	Diazepam	Droperidol	Etomidate*	Ketamine	Lorazepam	Midazolam	Propofol
HR	−9 ± 13	Unchanged	−5 ± 10	0-59	Unchanged	−14 ± 12	−10 ± 10
MBP	0-19	0-10	0-17	0 ± 40	−7 to 20	−12 to 26	−10 to 40
SVR	−22 ± 13	−5 to 15	−10 ± 14	0 ± 33	−10 to 35	0-20	−15 to 25
PAP	0-10	Unchanged	−9 ± 8	+44 ± 47	—	Unchanged	0-10
PVR	0-19	Unchanged	−18 ± 6	0 ± 33	Unchanged	Unchanged	0-10
PAO	Unchanged	+25 ± 50	Unchanged	Unchanged	—	0-25	Unchanged
RAP	Unchanged	Unchanged	Unchanged	+15 ± 33	Unchanged	Unchanged	0-10
CI	Unchanged	Unchanged	−20 ± 14	0 ± 42	0 ± 16	0-25	−10 to 30
SV	0-8	0-10	0-20	0-21	Unchanged	0-18	−10 to 25
LVSWI	0-36	Unchanged	0-33	0 ± 27	—	−28 to 42	−10 to 20
dP/dt	Unchanged	—	0-18	Unchanged	—	0-12	Decreased

*The larger deviations are in patients with valvular disease.

CI, Cardiac index; *dP/dt,* first derivative of pressure measured over time; *HR,* heart rate; *LVSWI,* left ventricular stroke work index; *MBP,* mean blood pressure; *PAO,* pulmonary artery occluded pressure; *PAP,* pulmonary artery pressure; *PVR,* pulmonary vascular resistance; *RAP,* right atrial pressure; *SV,* stroke volume; *SVR,* systemic vascular resistance.

From Reves JG, Glass P, Lubarsky DA, et al. Intravenous anesthetics. In: Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleischer LA, et al, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia,* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010: 719–768.

anesthesia.[98a] Independent of the presence of cardiovascular disease, an induction dose of 2 to 2.5 mg/kg produces a 25% to 40% reduction of systolic blood pressure. Similar changes are seen in mean and diastolic blood pressure. The decrease in arterial blood pressure is associated with a decrease in cardiac output/cardiac index (±15%), stroke volume index (±20%), and systemic vascular resistance (15%-25%). Left ventricular stroke work index also is decreased (±30%). When looking specifically at right ventricular function, propofol produces a marked reduction in the slope of the right ventricular end-systolic pressure-volume relationship.

In patients with valvular heart disease, pulmonary artery and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure also are reduced, a finding that implies the resultant decrease in pressure is due to a decrease in preload and afterload. Although the decrease in systemic pressure after an induction dose of propofol is due to vasodilation, the direct myocardial depressant effects of propofol are more controversial. The decrease in cardiac output after propofol administration may be via its action on sympathetic drive to the heart. The hemodynamic response to propofol lags significantly behind that of the hypnotic effect. The effect-site equilibration half-life of propofol is in the order of 2 to 3 minutes for the hypnotic effect and about 7 minutes for the hemodynamic depressant effect.[36] This implies that hemodynamic depression increases in a few minutes after a patient has lost consciousness from an induction of anesthesia.

High concentrations of propofol abolish the inotropic effect of α- but not β-adrenoreceptor stimulation and enhance the lusitropic (relaxation) effect of β stimulation. Clinically, the myocardial depressant effect and the vasodilation are dose-dependent and plasma concentration-dependent.[99] Propofol is a vasodilator due to a reduction in sympathetic activity. The mechanism of this activity is a combination of a direct effect on intracellular smooth muscle calcium mobilization, inhibition of prostacyclin synthesis in endothelial cells, reduction in angiotensin II–elicited calcium entry,[100,101] activation of K adenosine triphosphate channels, and stimulation of nitric oxide. The stimulation of nitric oxide may be modulated by any intralipid rather than propofol itself.

Heart rate does not change significantly after an induction dose of propofol. Propofol either may reset or may inhibit the baroreflex, reducing the tachycardic response to hypotension. Propofol also decreases cardiac parasympathetic tone in a dose-dependent manner. Propofol has a minimal direct effect on sinoatrial node function or on normal atrioventricular and accessory pathway conduction. Propofol attenuates the heart rate response to atropine in a dose-dependent manner. Propofol suppresses atrial (supraventricular) tachycardias and probably should be avoided during electrophysiologic studies. The peak plasma concentrations obtained after a bolus dose are substantially higher than the concentrations seen with a continuous infusion and may reach concentrations up to 80 to 100 μg/mL. Because the vasodilatory and myocardial depressant effects are concentration-dependent, the decrease in arterial blood pressure from propofol during the infusion phase (maintenance of anesthesia) is much less than that seen after induction of anesthesia by an intravenous bolus administration of propofol. An infusion of propofol reduces myocardial blood flow and oxygen consumption. Thus, global myocardial oxygen supply-to-demand ratio is likely preserved. The cardioprotective effect of propofol versus volatile anesthetics in patients having cardiac surgery on- or off-cardiopulmonary bypass is less debatable. In two large studies comparing propofol with sevoflurane in patients undergoing cardiac surgery, postoperative troponin levels were lower and hemodynamic function better in patients receiving sevoflurane. A study comparing desflurane with propofol in patients undergoing off-pump coronary artery bypass showed similar results. In contrast, administration of a large-dose of propofol (120 μg/kg/min) or small-dose of propofol (60 μg/kg/min) during cardiopulmonary bypass, or titrating isoflurane throughout surgery, showed improved troponin levels and better hemodynamic function in the large-dose propofol group compared to the isoflurane or small-dose propofol group. This study suggests that cardio protection with propofol is dose-dependent.[102] Lastly, combinations of propofol with inhaled anesthetics may offer an optimal pre- and postconditioning strategy in patients scheduled for coronary bypass surgery. Isoflurane preconditioning combined with propofol postconditioning acts synergistically in attenuating postischemic myocardial reperfusion injury as determined by surrogate markers of myocardial injury and function.[103] Heart rate changes are variable when anesthesia is maintained with propofol. The extent of hypotension, the ability for the patient to compensate, and the use of any other concomitant drugs are likely the most important factors in determining what happens to the heart rate after propofol administration.

OTHER EFFECTS

Propofol, similar to thiopental, does not enhance neuromuscular blockade produced by neuromuscular blocking drugs. Propofol produces no effect on the evoked electromyogram or twitch tension; however, good or acceptable tracheal intubating conditions after propofol alone have been reported. Propofol does not trigger malignant hyperthermia and is an appropriate choice in patients with this condition.[104-106] Propofol after a single dose or a prolonged infusion does not affect corticosteroid synthesis or alter the normal response to adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) stimulation. Propofol in the emulsion formulation does not alter hepatic, hematologic, or fibrinolytic function. Lipid emulsion per se reduces in vitro platelet aggregation, however. Anaphylactoid reactions to the present formulation of propofol have been reported. In at least some patients, the immune response was entirely due to propofol and not to the lipid emulsion. Most patients developing the anaphylactoid response to propofol had a previous history of allergic responses. Perhaps propofol should not be used in patients with multiple drug allergies.[107-109] Propofol alone in intralipid does not trigger histamine release. Fospropofol is metabolized to propofol and formate. Formate concentrations do not increase after fospropofol administration. Propofol also possesses significant antiemetic activity with small (subhypnotic) doses (i.e., 10 mg in adults). The median concentration of propofol with an antiemetic effect was 343 ng/mL, which also causes a mild sedative effect.[110] This concentration can be achieved by an initial dose of propofol infusion of 10 to 20 mg followed by 10 μg/kg/min. Propofol used as a maintenance anesthetic during breast surgery was more effective than 4 mg of ondansetron given as prophylaxis in preventing postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV) (also see Chapter 80). Propofol as an infusion of 1 mg/kg/h (17 μg/kg/min) also has provided excellent antiemetic action after anticancer chemotherapy. At subhypnotic doses, propofol relieves cholestatic pruritus and is likely as effective as naloxone in treating pruritus induced by spinal opiates.

Propofol decreases polymorphonuclear leukocyte chemotaxis, but not adherence phagocytosis and killing. This action contrasts with the effect of thiopental, which inhibits all these chemotactic responses. However, propofol inhibits phagocytosis and killing of *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Escherichia coli*. There have been life-threatening systemic infections associated with the use of propofol.[111] In hospitals where these infections occurred, opened vials and syringes of propofol had positive cultures. The intralipid that acts as the solvent for propofol is an excellent culture medium. Disodium edetate or metabisulfite has been added to the formulation of propofol in an attempt to retard such bacterial growth. Strict aseptic technique still must be observed. The administration of propofol is associated with the development of pancreatitis,[112] which may be related to hypertriglyceridemia. Patients who developed hypertriglyceridemia tended to be older, had a longer ICU stay, and received propofol for a longer duration. If propofol is being used for prolonged sedation or at higher infusion rates (especially in elderly patients), serum triglyceride concentrations should be routinely monitored.

BOX 23.1 **Uses and Doses of Intravenous Propofol**

Induction of general anesthesia	1-2.5 mg/kg IV, dose reduced with increasing age
Maintenance of general anesthesia	50-150 μg/kg/min IV combined with N_2O or an opiate
Sedation	25-75 μg/kg/min IV
Antiemetic action	10-20 mg IV, can repeat every 5-10 min or start infusion of 10 μg/kg/min

IV, Intravenously; *N_2O,* nitrous oxide.

From Reves JG, Glass P, Lubarsky DA, et al. Intravenous anesthetics. In Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleischer LA, et al, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia,* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010: 719–768.

Uses

INDUCTION AND MAINTENANCE OF ANESTHESIA

Propofol is suitable for the induction and maintenance of anesthesia (Box 23.1). The intravenous induction dose is 1 to 2.5 mg/kg. Physiologic characteristics that best determine the appropriate dose to induce anesthesia are age, lean body mass, and central blood volume.[113] Propofol may be titrated on the basis of the BIS value for maintenance of anesthesia and to assure adequacy of anesthesia and prevention of overdosing. Premedication with an opiate or a benzodiazepine, or both, markedly reduces the necessary induction dose.[114-116] The induction dose needs to be reduced in elderly patients and a dose of 1 mg/kg (with premedication) to 1.75 mg/kg (without premedication) is recommended for inducing anesthesia in patients older than 60. Furthermore, older and sicker (ASA class III to IV) patients develop more profound hypotension, especially when propofol islcombined with an opiate (also see Chapter 65). To prevent hypotension in sicker patients or in patients presenting for cardiac surgery, intravenously administered fluids should be given as tolerated, and propofol titrated to achieve the desired anesthetic state. In general, for both pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic reasons elderly patients (>80 years old) require half the dose of young patients (<20 years)[117]. For induction in children, the ED_{95} (2-3 mg/kg) is increased, primarily because of pharmacokinetic differences. Children demonstrate a smaller central compartment, an increased metabolic clearance, and larger volumes of distribution of propofol relative to adult patients.[69] Propofol, when used for induction of anesthesia in short-lasting procedures, results in a significantly quicker recovery and an earlier return of psychomotor function compared with thiopental or methohexital, regardless of the anesthetic used for maintenance of anesthesia.

Several infusion schemes have been used to achieve adequate plasma concentrations of propofol. After an induction dose, an infusion of 100 to 200 μg/kg/min is usually needed. The infusion rate is titrated to individual requirements and the surgical stimulus. When combined with propofol, the required infusion rate and concentration of opiates, midazolam, clonidine, or ketamine should be reduced.[20,118] Because opioids alter the concentration of propofol required for adequate anesthesia, the time to awakening and recovery can be influenced by these drug combinations. Also, opioids affect both the pharmacokinetics and the pharmacodynamics of propofol. Alfentanil decreases the elimination clearance of propofol from 2.1 L/min to 1.9 L/min, the distribution clearance from 2.7 L/min to 2.0 L/min, and the peripheral volume of distribution from 179 L to 141 L. The pharmacokinetic parameters of propofol are affected by cardiac output, heart rate, and plasma alfentanil concentration.[39] Similarly, midazolam reduces propofol's metabolic clearance from 1.94 to 1.61 L/min, Cl_2 from 2.86 to 1.52 L/min, and Cl_3 from 0.95 to 0.73 L/min. Consequently, in the presence of both midazolam and alfentanil propofol concentrations become elevated by 20% to 30%.[53] The infusion rate required to achieve the combination with the shortest recovery is propofol, 1 to 1.5 mg/kg followed by 140 μg/kg/min for 10 minutes followed by 100 μg/kg/min, and alfentanil, 30 μg/kg followed by an infusion of 0.25 μg/kg/min, or fentanyl, 3 μg/kg followed by 0.02 μg/kg/min.

As indicated previously, increasing age is associated with a decrease in propofol infusion requirements, whereas these requirements are larger in children and infants. The blood levels of propofol alone for loss of consciousness are 2.5 to 4.5 μg/mL, and the blood concentrations (when combined with nitrous oxide) required for surgery are 2.5 to 8 μg/mL. Similar concentrations are necessary when propofol is combined with an opioid for a total IV technique. The knowledge of these levels and of the pharmacokinetics of propofol has enabled the use of pharmacokinetic model–driven infusion systems to deliver propofol as a continuous infusion for the maintenance of anesthesia. A meta-analysis of recovery data after either propofol for maintenance or the newer volatile anesthetics indicated only minor differences in times to reach recovery goals; however, the incidence of nausea and vomiting remained significantly less frequent in the patients given propofol for maintenance of anesthesia.

Propofol can be used as a maintenance of anesthesia infusion regimen for cardiac surgery. Using reduced and titrated doses of propofol for induction of anesthesia and titrated infusion rates of 50 to 200 μg/kg/min combined with an opioid for maintenance, propofol provides intraoperative hemodynamic control and ischemic episodes similar to those with either enflurane/opioid or a primary opioid technique.

Blood propofol concentrations increase in the presence of hemorrhagic shock. Shock affects the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of propofol. Shock results in slower intercompartmental clearances and shock shifts the concentration effect relationship to the left, demonstrating a 2.7-fold decrease in the effect-site concentration required to achieve 50% of the maximal effect in the BIS.[119] These pharmacokinetic changes may be reversed with intravenous fluid resuscitation. The propofol doses needed to reach a 50% decrease from baseline BIS, and no movement after noxious stimuli, are reduced by hemorrhagic shock by 54% and 38%, respectively. Hemorrhagic shock decreases the effect-site concentration that produced 50% of the maximal BIS effect from 11.6 ± 3.8 to 9.1 ± 1.7 μg/mL and that producing a 50% probability of movement from 26.8 ± 1.0 to 20.6 ± 1.0 μg/mL.[120]

SEDATION

Propofol has been evaluated for sedation during surgical procedures and for patients receiving mechanical ventilation in the ICU.[120a] As noted earlier, tolerance can occur with propofol. Increased propofol requirement occurs with repeated anesthetic administration in a limited time period in individual patients and an increased infusion requirement when propofol is infused for prolonged periods.[74] Infusion rates required for sedation to supplement regional anesthesia in healthy patients are half or less than the rates required for general anesthesia (i.e., 30-60 μg/kg/min). In elderly patients (>65 years old) and in sicker patients, the infusion rates that are necessary are markedly reduced up to 50% compared to 20-year-old patients. The infusion should be individually titrated to the desired effect. The pharmacokinetic profile of propofol makes it a suitable choice for long-term (days) sedation. This should always be weighed, though, against the hemodynamic side effects, tolerance, and rare occurrences of hypertriglyceridemia (and potential pancreatitis) or propofol infusion syndrome. Maintaining the smallest possible dose required for the desired level of sedation with potential "sedation holidays" should be considered as part of a long-term propofol sedation regimen. In addition, the FDA has specifically recommended against the use of propofol for the prolonged sedation of pediatric patients. The sedation guidelines of the American College of Critical Care Medicine also recommend "that patients receiving propofol for long-term sedation should be monitored for unexplained metabolic acidosis or arrhythmias. Drugs other than propofol should be considered for patients with escalating vasopressor or inotrope requirements or cardiac failure during large-dose propofol infusions." The recommended maximal dose of propofol infusion rate is 80 μg/kg/min (<5 mg/kg/h).[121] Generally, at propofol infusion rates more rapid than 30 μg/kg/min, patients are amnesic.

SIDE EFFECTS AND CONTRAINDICATIONS

In December 2016 the FDA issued a warning raising concerns about the potential risks to fetal brain development with general anesthetics, including propofol. Animal studies show that prolonged or repetitive propofol exposure to the developing fetal brain may be related to propofol neurotoxicity. Minimizing fetal exposure to propofol and other general anesthetics is therefore important and advisable.[121a,121b]

Next to its hypnotic effects, accumulating evidence suggests that propofol may affect cancer development through direct and indirect manners. Propofol exerts antitumor potential partly due to regulation of the expression and transfer of miRNAs. In addition, propofol impacts the degree of immunosuppression by modulating immune cells and cytokines. This results in reduced cancer cell mobility in some cancers and increased apoptosis of cancer cells in others. The clinical impact of the cancer-modulating effects of propofol needs further investigation.[121c] Induction of anesthesia with propofol is often associated with pain on injection, myoclonus, apnea, hypotension, and, rarely, thrombophlebitis of the vein into which propofol is injected.[122] Pain on injection is reduced by using a large vein, avoiding veins in the dorsum of the hand, and adding lidocaine to the propofol solution or changing the propofol formulation. Multiple other drugs and distraction techniques have been investigated to reduce the pain on injection of propofol. Pretreatment with a small dose of propofol, opiates, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, ketamine, esmolol/metoprolol, magnesium, a flash of light, clonidine/ephedrine combination, dexamethasone, and metoclopramide all have been tested with variable efficacy.

Propofol infusion syndrome is a rare but lethal syndrome associated with infusion of propofol at 4 mg/kg/h or more for 48 hours or longer.[123] Yet, cases have been reported with smaller dosage schemes given for only 3 hours.[124] It was first described in children, but subsequently has been observed in critically ill adults.[125,126] The clinical features of propofol infusion syndrome are acute refractory bradycardia leading to asystole, in the presence of one or more of the following: metabolic acidosis (base deficit >10 mmol/L^{-1}), rhabdomyolysis, hyperlipidemia, and enlarged or fatty liver. Other features include cardiomyopathy with acute cardiac failure, skeletal myopathy, hyperkalemia, hepatomegaly, and lipemia. The symptoms and signs are the result of muscle injury and of the release of intracellular toxic contents. The major risk factors for its development are poor oxygen delivery, sepsis, serious cerebral injury, and large propofol dosage. Predisposing factors for the propofol infusion syndrome are likely genetic disorders impairing fatty acid metabolism, such as medium-chain acyl CoA (MCAD) deficiency and low carbohydrate supply. Because lipemia has been noted, a failure of hepatic lipid regulation, possibly related to poor oxygenation or a lack of glucose, may be the cause. In some cases, an increasing lipemia was the first indication of impending propofol infusion syndrome onset, so lipemia is a sign.

Barbiturates

HISTORY

Barbiturates were discovered in the early twentieth century. The first barbiturate to cause loss of consciousness within one arm-brain circulation time was hexobarbital. After the clinical introduction of thiopental by Waters and Lundy in 1934, thiopental became preferred clinically because of its rapid onset of action and short duration, without the excitatory effects of hexobarbital.[127] Although criticized after many casualties during the attack on Pearl Harbor as “the cause of more fatal casualties among the servicemen at Pearl Harbor than were the enemy bombs,” the barbiturates continued to be widely used in clinical practice.[128] Many other barbiturate derivatives have been synthesized throughout the past decades, yet none have enjoyed the clinical success and popularity of thiopental.

Physicochemical Characteristics

CHEMISTRY AND FORMULATION

Barbiturates are hypnotically active drugs that are derivatives of barbituric acid (2,4,6-trioxohexahydropyrimidine), a hypnotically inactive pyrimidine nucleus that is formed by the condensation of malonic acid and urea (Fig. 23.5). The two major classes of barbiturates are the oxybarbiturates and thiobarbiturates with either an oxygen at position 2 or with a sulfur in position 2, respectively. Through keto-enol tautomerization, the oxygen or sulfur in position 2 becomes a reactive species in the enol form. This allows for the formation of water-soluble barbiturate salts in alkaline solutions and permits the IV use of barbiturates. Although tautomerization to the enol form allows for the creation of salts, the substitution of the hydrogen attached to the carbon atom in position 5 with aryl or alkyl groups gives the barbiturates their hypnotic activity. Only thiopental and thiamylal, thiobarbiturates, and methohexital, an oxybarbiturate, have been used for induction of anesthesia (Fig. 23.6). The formulation of barbiturates involves preparation as sodium

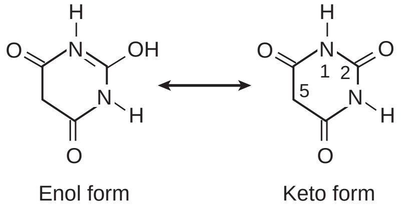


Fig. 23.5 The keto and enol tautomeric forms of barbituric acid with the sites of substitution in the hypnotically active barbiturates identified as 1, 2, and 5.

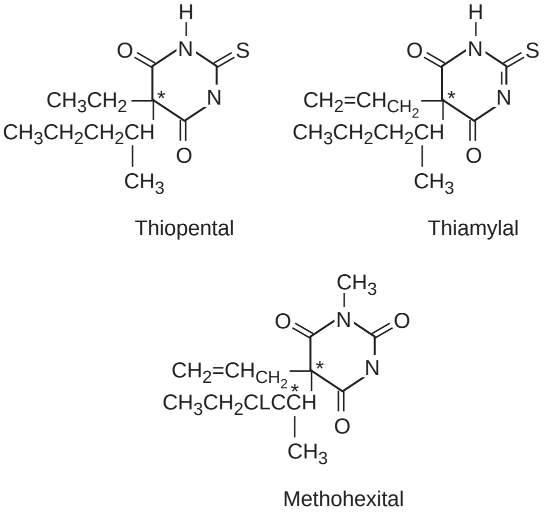


Fig. 23.6 Hypnotically active barbiturates commonly used for induction, with their asymmetric centers indicated by an asterisk.

salts (mixed with 6% by weight anhydrous sodium carbonate) and then reconstitution with either water, glucose 5%, or normal saline to produce a 2.5% solution of thiopental, a 2% solution of thiamylal, or a 1% solution of methohexital. The thiobarbiturates are stable for 1 week if refrigerated after reconstitution, and methohexital remains available for use for 6 weeks after reconstitution. Barbiturates cannot be reconstituted with lactated Ringer solution or mixed with other acidic solutions, as a decrease in the alkalinity of the solution can result in precipitation of the barbiturates as free acids. Examples of drugs that are not to be coadministered or mixed in solution with the barbiturates are atracurium, vecuronium, rocuronium, suxamethonium, alfentanil, sufentanil, dobutamine, dopamine, esketamine, and midazolam. Mixing of thiopental with vecuronium or pancuronium results in the formation of precipitate that may occlude the IV line during a rapid sequence induction of anesthesia.[129]

Structure-Activity Relationships

As noted earlier, substitutions at the 5, 2, and 1 positions confer different pharmacologic activities to the barbiturate nucleus. Substitutions at position 5 with either aryl or alkyl groups produce hypnotic and sedative effects, whereas substitution at C5 with a phenyl group produces anticonvulsant activity. An increase in length of one or both side chains of an alkyl group at C5 increases hypnotic potency. Barbiturates used in clinical practice have either an oxygen or sulfur at C2. Substitution of a sulfur at position 2 produces a more rapid onset of action, as with thiopental. The addition of a methyl or ethyl group at position 1 also may produce a more rapid onset of action, as with methohexital. However, excitatory side effects, including tremor, hypertonus, and involuntary movement, may occur upon administration.

Pharmacokinetics

METABOLISM

The barbiturates (with the exception of phenobarbital) are metabolized hepatically. The metabolites are almost all inactive, water-soluble, and excreted in the urine. Barbiturates are biotransformed by four processes: (1) oxidation of the aryl, alkyl, or phenyl moiety at C5; (2) *N*-dealkylation; (3) desulfuration of the thiobarbiturates at C2; and (4) destruction of the barbituric acid ring.[130] Oxidation is the most important pathway, producing polar (charged) alcohols, ketones, phenols, or carboxylic acids. These metabolites are readily excreted in the urine or as glucuronic acid conjugates in the bile. Hydrolytic cleavage of the barbituratic acid ring forms a minimal contribution to the total metabolism of barbiturates, since the ring is stable in vivo. Drugs that induce oxidative microsomes or long-term administration enhance the metabolism of barbiturates. The hepatic enzyme induction by barbiturates is the reason that they are not recommended for administration to patients with acute intermittent porphyria. Barbiturates may precipitate an attack by stimulating γ-aminolevulinic acid synthetase, the enzyme responsible for the production of porphyrins.[131]

As mentioned earlier, hepatic metabolism accounts for the elimination of all of the barbiturates with the exception of phenobarbital. Renal excretion accounts for 60% to 90% of phenobarbital excretion in an unchanged form. The alkalinization of urine with bicarbonate enhances the renal excretion of phenobarbital. Other barbiturates are excreted unchanged by the kidney only in trivial amounts.

Methohexital is metabolized in the liver by oxidation to an alcohol and *N*-dealkylation. Methohexital exhibits similar distribution half-lives, volumes of distribution, and protein bindings as thiopental. A marked difference exists, however, in plasma disappearance and elimination half-lives (4 hours for methohexital and 12 hours for thiopental). This difference is due to the threefold more rapid rate of hepatic clearance of methohexital (mean 7.8-12.5 mL/kg/min).[132] The hepatic extraction ratio of methohexital (clearance to hepatic blood flow) is approximately 0.5, indicating that the liver extracts 50% of the drug presented to it. This ratio differs from the smaller hepatic extraction ratio of thiopental (0.15).

Barbiturate pharmacokinetics have been described in physiologic and compartmental models.[133] Both of these pharmacokinetic models describe rapid redistribution as the primary mechanism that terminates the action of a single induction dose. Physiologic models of barbiturates describe a rapid mixing of the drug within the central blood volume followed by a quick distribution of the drug to highly perfused, low-volume tissues (i.e., brain) with a slower redistribution of the drug to lean tissue (muscle), which terminates the effect of the initial (induction of anesthesia) dose. In these models, adipose tissue uptake and metabolic clearance (elimination) play only a minor role in the termination of the effects of the induction dose. This is a result of the minimal perfusion ratio of adipose tissue compared with other tissues and the slow rate of removal. Compartmental model values for thiopental and methohexital, the most commonly used barbiturates for induction of anesthesia, are given in Table 23.1. The compartmental model explains the delay of recovery when a continuous infusion of a barbiturate is used. This model describes how the termination of effect becomes increasingly dependent on the slower process of uptake into and redistribution from adipose tissue and elimination clearance through hepatic metabolism. After prolonged infusions, the pharmacokinetics of barbiturate metabolism is best approximated by nonlinear Michaelis-Menten metabolism. In usual doses (4-5 mg/kg), thiopental exhibits first-order kinetics (i.e., a constant *fraction* of drug is cleared from the body per unit time); however, at very high doses of thiopental (300-600 mg/kg) with receptor saturation, zero-order kinetics occur (i.e., a constant *amount* of drug is cleared per unit time). The volume of distribution is slightly larger in female patients, causing a longer elimination half-life.[134] Pregnancy also increases the volume of distribution of thiopental, prolonging the elimination half-life.[135] Even at advanced stages of liver cirrhosis, the clearance of thiopental is not altered. Because of its lipophilicity, relatively large volume of distribution, and low rate of hepatic clearance, thiopental can accumulate in tissues, especially if given in large doses over a prolonged period. The plasma drug level increases when repeated doses of drug are given. Although not used in routine clinical practice, appropriately designed infusion schemes ensure constant blood levels, maintaining the desired hypnotic effect.

Pharmacology

MECHANISM OF ACTION

The mechanisms of action of barbiturates on the CNS are largely unknown, with the exception of their action on the $GABA_A$ receptor.[136,137] Perhaps the NMDA receptors are involved with the effects of barbiturates.[138-140] The effects of barbiturates on the CNS have been grouped into two categories: (1) enhancement of the synaptic actions of *inhibitory* neurotransmitters, and (2) blockade of the synaptic actions of *excitatory* neurotransmitters.[141] GABA is the principal inhibitory neurotransmitter in the mammalian CNS, and the $GABA_A$ receptor is the only site proven to be involved in barbiturate-induced anesthesia.[137] The $GABA_A$ receptor is a chloride ion channel, composed of five subunits, with specific sites of action for GABA, barbiturates, benzodiazepines, and other molecules. The binding sites are at the interface of the specific subunits, where the combination of the adjacent subunits determine the affinity and selectivity for drugs like propofol, etomidate, or pentobarbital. Of each subunit multiple types exist, leading to various compositions of the $GABA_A$ receptor. Progressive insights in the composition of these binding sites may be useful in developing novel clinical anesthetics.[141a] Barbiturate binding to the $GABA_A$ receptor enhances and mimics the action of GABA by increasing chloride conductance through the ion channel. This causes hyperpolarization of the cell membrane and increases the threshold of excitability of the postsynaptic neuron. At low concentrations barbiturates enhance the effects of GABA, decreasing the rate of dissociation of GABA from its receptor and increasing the duration of GABA-activated chloride ion channel openings. This enhancement of the action of GABA is likely responsible for the sedative-hypnotic effects of the barbiturates. At larger concentrations, the barbiturates activate the chloride channels directly, without the binding of GABA, acting as the agonist itself. The GABA-mimetic effect at slightly higher concentrations may be responsible for what is termed barbiturate anesthesia.[137]

The second mechanism of action of barbiturates involves the inhibition of the synaptic transmission of excitatory neurotransmitters, such as glutamate and acetylcholine. The actions of the barbiturates to block excitatory CNS transmission are specific for synaptic ion channels. Thiopental, however, may exert GABA-independent effects on the glutaminergic-NMDA system. In two studies on effects in the rat prefrontal cortex, thiopental decreased extracellular glutamate levels in the CNS and decreased NMDA-gated currents in a concentration-dependent manner.[139,140]

Effects on Cerebral Metabolism (Also see Chapter 57)

Barbiturates, like other CNS depressants, have potent effects on cerebral metabolism. A dose-related depression of cerebral metabolic oxygen consumption rate ($CMRO_2$) progressively slows the EEG, reduces the rate of adenosine triphosphate consumption, and enhances protection from partial cerebral ischemia. The relationship between depressed metabolism and drug requirement was shown when thiopental was not eliminated (i.e., sustained with an extracorporeal circulation pump).[142] When the EEG became isoelectric, a point at which cerebral metabolic activity is roughly 50% of baseline,[143] no further decreases in $CMRO_2$ occurred. These findings support the hypothesis that metabolism and function of the brain are coupled. Barbiturates reduce the metabolic activity concerned with neuronal signaling and impulse traffic, not the metabolic activity corresponding to basal metabolic function. The only way to suppress baseline metabolic activity concerned with cellular activity is via hypothermia.[143] The effect of barbiturates on cerebral metabolism is maximized at a 50% depression of cerebral function, leaving all metabolic energy for the maintenance of cellular integrity. With the reduction in $CMRO_2$, there is a parallel reduction in cerebral perfusion, which is seen in decreased cerebral blood flow (CBF) and ICP. With reduced $CMRO_2$, cerebral vascular resistance increases, and CBF decreases.[144] The ratio of CBF to $CMRO_2$ remains unchanged. Even though the mean arterial pressure (MAP) decreases, barbiturates do not compromise the overall CPP because the CPP equals MAP minus ICP. In this relationship, ICP decreases more than MAP after barbiturate administration, preserving CPP.

Pharmacodynamics

Sufficient doses of barbiturates cause loss of consciousness, amnesia, and respiratory and cardiovascular depression, known as general anesthesia. The response to pain and other noxious stimulation during general anesthesia seems to be depressed. Pain studies reveal that barbiturates may decrease the pain threshold. This antianalgesic effect occurs only with low blood levels of barbiturates, which might be achieved with small doses of thiopental for induction of anesthesia or after emergence from thiopental. The amnesic effect of barbiturates is less pronounced than that produced by benzodiazepines.

Effects on the Central Nervous System

Drugs with high lipid solubility and a low degree of ionization cross the blood-brain barrier rapidly, producing a fast onset of action.[137] Most barbiturates exist in a nonionized form. Thiopental and methohexital are more lipid soluble than pentobarbital, which is clinically reflected by the more rapid onset of action of thiopental and methohexital compared to pentobarbital.[145] Only the nonionized form of a drug can directly traverse the cellular membranes. Thiopental has a pK_a of 7.6. Approximately 50% of thiopental is nonionized at physiologic pH, which accounts partly for the rapid accumulation of thiopental in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) after IV administration.[146] Methohexital is 75% nonionized at pH 7.4, which may explain the slightly more rapid effect of methohexital compared to thiopental. As pH decreases, with poor perfusion, barbiturates have a larger fraction of nonionized drug available to cross the blood-brain barrier.[146]

The onset of action in the CNS is affected by protein binding, because only unbound drug (free drug) can cross the blood-brain barrier.[147] Barbiturates are highly bound to albumin and other plasma proteins, where the thiobarbiturates are more highly protein bound than are the oxybarbiturates. The degree of protein binding of a drug is influenced by the physiologic pH and disease states, which alter the absolute amount of protein. Most barbiturates tend to experience peak protein binding at or around pH 7.5. The final factor governing the rapidity of drug penetration of the blood-brain barrier is the plasma drug concentration, causing a concentration gradient. The two primary determinants of the plasma concentration are the *dose* administered and the *rate* (speed) of administration. As the dose of thiopental over the same time is increased, an increased percentage of patients will be anesthetized.[148] Concerning absolute dose, 2 mg/kg produced anesthesia in 20% of patients, whereas a dose of 2.4 mg/kg produced anesthesia in 80% of patients. Similarly, the speed of injection influences the effect of thiopental. A smaller amount of drug is required to produce anesthesia when the dose rate of the administration is over 5 seconds as opposed to over 15 seconds.

Because of the equilibrium between brain concentration and plasma concentration, factors that determine the rate of onset of barbiturate effects also affect their termination. Lipid solubility, degree of ionization, and CSF drug concentration affect the movement of drug from the CSF to plasma. As plasma levels decrease, drug levels in the brain and CSF decrease. The most important factors in the termination of drug effect are those that govern plasma disappearance of the drug. These are generally divided into a rapid redistribution phase and a slow metabolic and second redistribution phase. In a classic pharmacologic study, Brodie and coworkers[149] showed that awakening from thiopental occurred because the plasma concentration rapidly declined. They further showed that the cause of the rapid plasma decay of thiopental was not metabolism of the drug but was rather due to a redistribution of the drug to other tissues throughout the body. The relationship of the plasma drug level and drug redistribution to the onset and termination of effect is illustrated in Fig. 23.7. Clinically, patients awake from a single dose of thiopental 5 to 10 minutes after administration, as the drug is redistributed from highly perfused CNS tissues to well-perfused lean tissues. The termination of effect after multiple drug administrations or constant infusion depends on the elimination of the drug from the blood, which becomes increasingly more dependent on first-order metabolism than redistribution and is a function of its context-sensitive decrement time (see Fig. 23.3). Awakening may be delayed in older patients because of increased CNS sensitivity, alterations in metabolism, or decreased central volume of distribution relative to younger adults.[150] The initial volume of distribution is less in elderly patients than in young patients, which explains a smaller dose requirement for the onset effect. Pediatric patients (<13 years old) seem to have a more rapid rate of total clearance and a shorter rate of plasma thiopental clearance than do adults, which theoretically might result in earlier awakening, especially after multiple doses of the drug.[151] There is little difference in distribution of thiopental and methohexital, which may explain the similar wakeup times. There is, however, a difference in the rate of total body clearance, being more rapid for methohexital. This disparity explains the difference found in the psychomotor skills of patients and the earlier full recovery after methohexital. Despite some residual effects, methohexital is cleared more rapidly than thiopental, which explains why methohexital is preferred for use by some clinicians when rapid awakening is desirable, such as in outpatient anesthesia. Prolongation of early and late recovery by the barbiturates is the primary reason behind the fact that they have been largely replaced by propofol.

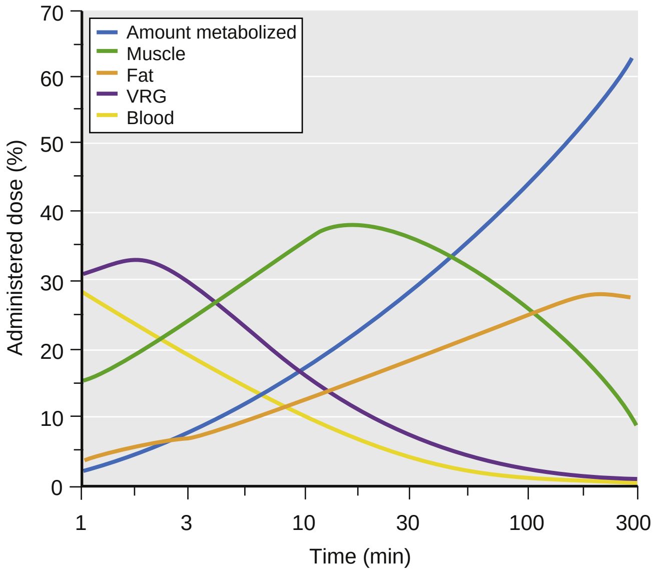


Fig. 23.7 After delivery of an IV bolus, the percentage of thiopental remaining in blood rapidly decreases as drug moves from blood to body tissues. The time to attainment of peak tissue levels is a direct function of tissue capacity for barbiturate relative to blood flow. A larger capacity or smaller blood flow is related to a longer time to a peak tissue level. Initially, most thiopental is taken up by the vessel-rich group *(VRG)* of tissues because of their high blood flow. Subsequently, drug is redistributed to muscle and to a lesser extent to fat. Throughout this period, small but substantial amounts of thiopental are removed and metabolized by the liver. In contrast to removal by tissues, this removal is cumulative. The rate of metabolism equals the early rate of removal by fat. The sum of this early removal by fat and metabolism is the same as the removal by muscle. (Redrawn from Saidman LJ. Uptake, distribution and elimination of barbiturates. In: Eger EI [ed]. *Anesthetic Uptake and Action*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1974.)

Effects on the Respiratory System

Barbiturates produce dose-related central respiratory depression. The evidence for central depression is a correlation between EEG suppression and diminished minute ventilation. Peak respiratory depression (as measured by the slope of carbon dioxide concentration in the blood) and maximum depression of minute ventilation after delivery of thiopental (3.5 mg/kg) occurs 1 to 1.5 minutes after administration. These variables return to predrug levels rapidly, and within 15 minutes the drug effects are barely detectable.[152] Patients with chronic lung disease are slightly more susceptible to the respiratory depression of thiopental. The ventilatory pattern with thiopental induction has been described as "double apnea," that is an initial apnea of a few seconds occurring upon drug administration, succeeded by a few breaths of reasonably adequate tidal volume, which is followed by a more prolonged period of apnea, typically of approximately 25 seconds. This apnea occurs in at least 20% of cases. During the induction of anesthesia with thiopental, ventilation must be assisted or controlled to provide adequate respiratory exchange. Like thiopental, methohexital is a central respiratory system depressant.[152] Induction doses (1.5 mg/kg) significantly decrease the slope of the ventilatory response to carbon dioxide, with a maximal reduction at 30 seconds after drug administration.[153] The peak decrease in tidal volume occurs 60 seconds after methohexital administration. All variables return to baseline within 15 minutes. In contrast to the effects on ventilation, patients awaken within about 5 minutes after the administration of methohexital (1.5 mg/kg).

Effects on the Cardiovascular System

Cardiovascular depression from barbiturates is a result of central and peripheral (direct vascular and cardiac) effects. The primary cardiovascular effect of a barbiturate during induction of anesthesia is peripheral vasodilation causing a pooling of blood in the venous system. Mechanisms for the decrease in cardiac output include (1) direct negative inotropic action, due to a decrease of calcium influx into the cells, (2) decreased ventricular filling, due to increased capacitance, and (3) transiently decreased sympathetic outflow from the CNS.[154] The increase in heart rate (10% to 36%) that accompanies thiopental administration probably results from the baroreceptor-mediated sympathetic reflex stimulation of the heart in response to the decrease in output and pressure. The cardiac index, as well as the MAP, is unchanged or reduced. Hemodynamic changes are dependent on the infusion rate of thiopental. In the dose ranges hitherto studied, no relationship between plasma thiopental level and hemodynamic effect has been found. There is little difference in the responses after thiopental and methohexital administration in patients with heart disease. The increase in heart rate (11%-36%) encountered in patients with coronary artery disease anesthetized with thiopental (1-4 mg/kg) is potentially deleterious because of the obligatory increase in myocardial oxygen consumption that accompanies the increased heart rate. In a study in dogs, thiopental prolonged the QT interval, flattened T waves, and increased QT dispersion during and after induction.[150] Thiopental may not be the most appropriate choice for patients with a susceptibility to ventricular dysrhythmias or a prolonged QT interval, such as acidotic patients or conditions that prolong the QT interval, such as long-term dialysis or advanced cirrhosis. Patients who have normal coronary arteries have no difficulty in maintaining adequate coronary blood flow to meet the increased myocardial oxygen consumption.[155] Thiopental should be avoided in hypovolemic patients because there is a significant reduction in cardiac output (69%) and a significant decrease in arterial blood pressure.[156] Patients without adequate compensatory mechanisms may have serious hemodynamic depression with a thiopental induction of anesthesia.

Other Effects

The side effects of injecting barbiturates include a garlic or onion taste (40% of patients), allergic reactions, local tissue irritation, and rarely, tissue necrosis. A transient urticarial rash may develop on the head, neck, and trunk. More severe reactions such as facial edema, hives, bronchospasm, and anaphylaxis can occur. Treatment of anaphylaxis is symptomatic. Thiopental and thiamylal produce fewer excitatory symptoms with induction than methohexital, which produces cough, hiccups, tremors, and twitching approximately five times more often. Tissue irritation and local complications may occur more frequently with the use of thiopental and thiamylal than with methohexital.

The consequences of accidental arterial injection may be severe. The degree of injury is related to the concentration of the drug. Treatment consists of (1) dilution of the drug by the administration of saline into the artery, (2) heparinization to prevent thrombosis, and (3) brachial plexus block. Overall, the proper administration of thiopental intravenously is remarkably free of local toxicity.

Phenobarbital is used experimentally as an inducer of the cytochrome P450 (CYP) system in rodents, in particular of the CYP2B enzymes. In human hepatocyte culture, phenobarbital acts as an inducer of the CYP2B6, CYP2C9, CYP2C19, and CYP3A4 enzymes. This phenomenon may cause changes in the metabolism of drugs that are administered concomitantly.[157] On the other hand, the metabolism of thiopental can be influenced by concomitant drugs like selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs). These drugs are used frequently by patients who are treated by electroconvulsive therapy, in whom an induction with thiopental or thiamylal is performed.[158]

Uses

INDUCTION AND MAINTANANCE OF ANESTHESIA

Barbiturates are used clinically for induction and maintenance of anesthesia and premedication. Methohexital is the drug of choice for providing anesthesia during electroconvulsive therapy.[159] Other barbiturates used in this field are thiopental and thiamylal. Less frequently, barbiturates are used to provide cerebral protection in patients at risk of developing incomplete ischemia. The three barbiturates that are used most commonly for IV anesthesia induction and maintenance are thiopental, thiamylal, and methohexital. Thiopental is an excellent drug to use for induction of anesthesia. The prompt onset (15-30 seconds) of action and smooth induction are advantages for this drug. The rapid emergence, particularly after single use for induction, also was a reason for the widespread use of thiopental in this setting. Thiopental can be used to maintain general anesthesia because repeated doses reliably sustain unconsciousness and contribute to amnesia but should not be the drug of first choice as the hypnotic component in balanced anesthesia. A review of the role of anesthetics on the risk of awareness during surgery show that benzodiazepines reduce awareness compared to thiopental, ketamine, and placebo. Wakefulness is reduced by ketamine and etomidate, compared with thiopental. The evidence is not strong due to the risk of bias, the very small event rate, and the heterogeneity in definition of awareness.[160]

Methohexital is the only IV barbiturate used for induction of anesthesia that can compete with thiopental. With a dose of 1 to 2 mg/kg, induction and emergence from anesthesia is rapid. Methohexital also may be used as a hypnotic component to maintain anesthesia. Similar to thiopental, it is not an analgesic. Additional opioids or volatile anesthetics are required to provide a balanced technique satisfactory for general anesthesia during surgery. Because methohexital is

TABLE 23.4 Recommended Doses of Barbiturates for Anesthesia Induction and Maintenance

Drug	Induction Dose (mg/kg)*,†	Onset (s)	Intravenous Maintenance Infusion
Thiopental	3-4	10-30	50-100 mg every 10-12 min
Methohexital	1-1.5	10-30	20-40 mg every 4-7 min

*Adult and pediatric intravenous doses are roughly the same in milligrams per kilogram.

†Methohexital can be given rectally in pediatric patients as a 20 to 25 mg/kg/dose.

From Reves JG, Glass P, Lubarsky DA, et al. Intravenous anesthetics. In: Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleischer LA, et al, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia,* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010: 719–768.

cleared more rapidly than thiopental, it may be preferred to thiopental for the maintenance of anesthesia, as accumulation and saturation of peripheral sites takes longer. For brief infusion (<60 minutes), recovery from a methohexital infusion titrated to maintain hypnosis (50-150 µg/kg/min) is similar to that provided by propofol. There are probably upper limits of safe infusion doses yet to be defined, but seizures have occurred in neurosurgical patients after large doses of methohexital (24 mg/kg).[154] Methohexital may be given rectally and is absorbed rapidly, and can be used as a premedication drug in pediatric patients. The dose recommended for this use is 25 mg/kg rectal instillation (10% solution through a 14F catheter, 7 cm into rectum).[161] With this method of administration, sleep onset is rapid: mean peak plasma levels occur within 14 minutes.

Dosing

Dosing for the two most commonly used barbiturates is listed in Table 23.4. The usual doses of thiopental (3-4 mg/kg) and thiamylal (3-4 mg/kg) are about twice the dose of methohexital (1-2 mg/kg). In dose-response studies, the ED_{50} for thiopental ranged from 2.2 to 2.7 mg/kg, and the ED_{50} for methohexital was 1.1 mg/kg.[147] There is less interpatient variability in the dose response to barbiturates than to benzodiazepines when used for anesthesia induction, but there still is significant variability in the dose of thiopental required to induce anesthesia.[148] Interpatient dose variability is related to the presence of hemorrhagic shock, cardiac output, lean body mass, obesity, gender, and age. Hemorrhagic shock, lean body mass, age, and obesity explain variability of patient response owing to a decrease in the central volume of distribution. Finally, patients who have severe anemia, burns, malnutrition, widespread malignant disease, uremia, ulcerative colitis, or intestinal obstruction also require smaller induction doses of barbiturates.

Contraindications

The following conditions should be considered a contraindication for the use of IV barbiturates: (1) when there is respiratory obstruction or an inadequate airway, thiopental may worsen respiratory depression; (2) severe cardiovascular instability or shock contraindicate its use; (3) status asthmaticus is a condition in which airway control and ventilation may be worsened further by thiopental; (4) porphyria may be precipitated or acute attacks may be accentuated by the administration of thiopental; and (5) without proper induction equipment (IV instrumentation) and airway equipment (means of artificial ventilation), thiopental should not be administered.

Benzodiazepines

INTRODUCTION

The benzodiazepines have become a category of drugs widely used in anesthesia as anxiolytics, sedatives, and hypnotics. They exert their action through $GABA_A$ receptors, which are the key targets that mediate most of the clinically important effects of IV anesthetics.[162] In the clinical practice of daily anesthesia, midazolam is often used immediately before induction of anesthesia. The other agonists, diazepam, lorazepam, temazepam, and the antagonist flumazenil are sometimes used. Remimazolam, an ultrashort-acting $GABA_A$ receptor agonist, may be a useful new benzodiazepine in future anesthetic practice. Benzodiazepines are widely prescribed, and addiction to these drugs is a worldwide concern. Research is ongoing to elucidate the neural mechanism of the reward-related effects of benzodiazepines. Reynolds and associates conclude in their findings that α_2- and α_3-subunit–containing $GABA_A$ receptors are implicated as key mediators of the reward-related effects of benzodiazepines. This finding has important implications for the development of new drugs with less addictive properties.[163]

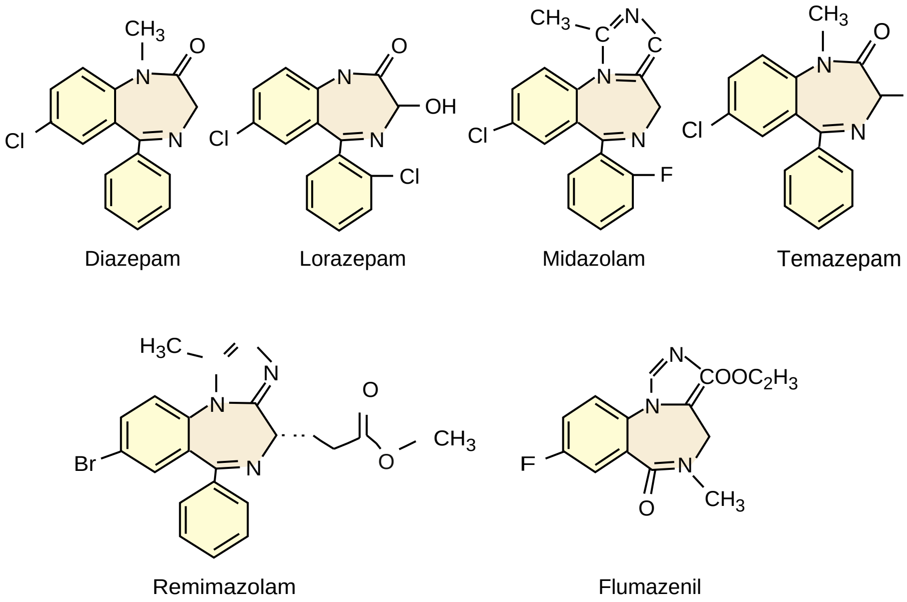
Surgical treatment of tumors is often the first line for several types of cancer. Several factors influence the metastatic spread of residual cancer cells. Midazolam is widely used during general anesthesia. Research in vitro and in vivo conclude that midazolam in contrast to dexmedetomidine has antitumorigenic properties in certain types of cancer in supraclinical dosage.[163a]

Benzodiazepines were discovered in 1954 by Sternbach and in 1959 chlordiazepoxide (Librium) was the first benzodiazepine patented. Diazepam was synthesized in 1963 in a search for a better compound and was used intravenously to induce anesthesia in 1965.[164] Oxazepam (Seresta), a metabolite of diazepam, was synthesized in 1961 by Bell. Lorazepam (Ativan), a 2′chloro-substitution product of oxazepam, was synthesized in 1971 in an attempt to produce a more potent benzodiazepine. The next major achievement was Fryer and Walser's synthesis in 1976 of midazolam (Versed, Dormicum), the first clinically used water-soluble benzodiazepine, produced primarily for use in anesthesia.[165] An ultrashort-acting benzodiazepine, remimazolam, is in its phase III trial and is promising.[166]

Physicochemical Characteristics

Four benzodiazepine receptor agonists are commonly used in anesthesia: midazolam, diazepam, lorazepam, and temazepam (Fig. 23.8). The physicochemical characteristics of the benzodiazepines used in anesthesia are listed in Table 23.5. These six molecules are relatively small and are lipid soluble at physiologic pH.

Of the clinically used benzodiazepines, midazolam is the most lipid soluble in vivo,[167] but because of its pH-dependent solubility, it is water soluble when formulated in a buffered acidic medium (pH 3.5). The imidazole ring of midazolam accounts for its stability in solution and its lipophilicity due



Diazepam Lorazepam Midazolam Temazepam

Remimazolam Flumazenil

Fig. 23.8 The structures of six benzodiazepines.

TABLE 23.5 Physicochemical Characteristics of Benzodiazepines

	Molecular Weight	**pK_a**	**Water Solubility**	**Lipid Solubility**
	Da		**g/L**	**Log P**
Diazepam	284.7	3.4	0.051	2.801
Lorazepam	321.2	1.3	0.12	2.382
Temazepam	300.7	1.6, 11.7	0.28	2.188
Midazolam	325.8 (hydrochloride 362.2)	6.0	0.004 (2.0, pH 1)	3.798
Remimazolam	439.3 (besylate 597.5)	5.3	0.008 (7.5, pH 1)	3.724
Flumazenil	303.3	0.86	0.042	2.151

Water solubility values are in unbuffered water, maximal solubility at acidic pH in parenthesis. Data from http://scifinder.cas.org. pKa, dissociation constant. From Saari TI, Uusi-Oukari M, Ahonen J, Olkkola KT. Enhancement of GABAergic activity: neuropharmacological effects of benzodiazepines and therapeutic use in anesthesiology. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2011;63(1):243–267.

to rapid closing of the imidazole ring at physiological pH. The high lipophilicity of the compounds accounts for the rapid CNS effect and relatively large volumes of distribution.

Pharmacokinetics

The four benzodiazepines used in anesthesia are classified as short-acting (midazolam), intermediate-acting (lorazepam, temazepam), and long-acting (diazepam), according to their metabolism and plasma clearance (Table 23.6). The plasma disappearance curves of all benzodiazepines can be best described by a two- or three-compartment model.

Protein binding and volumes of distribution are not much different among these four benzodiazepines, but the clearance is significantly different. Factors that may influence the pharmacokinetics of benzodiazepines are age, gender, race, enzyme induction, and hepatic and renal disease. In addition, the pharmacokinetics of the benzodiazepines are affected by obesity. The volume of distribution is increased as drug diffuses from the plasma into the adipose tissue. Although clearance is not altered, elimination half-lives are prolonged, owing to the increased volume of distribution and delayed return of the drug to the plasma in obese patients.[168] Generally, sensitivity to benzodiazepines in some patient groups, such as elderly patients, is greater despite relatively modest pharmacokinetic changes; factors other than pharmacokinetics must be considered when these drugs are used.

Midazolam: After oral ingestion midazolam is absorbed completely and the peak plasma concentration is achieved in 30 to 80 minutes.[169] The bioavailability is less than 50% due to a significant first-pass metabolism in the intestinal wall and the liver.[169,170] After IV administration, midazolam is rapidly distributed, with a distribution half-life of 6 to 15 minutes.[170] The plasma protein binding is high: 94% to 98%.

The hepatic extraction ratio is low, ranging from 0.30 to 0.44, but is higher than the unbound free fraction of midazolam in plasma.[169] Thus, the protein binding is not a restrictive factor in drug extraction by the liver. With this intermediate hepatic extraction ratio, the metabolic clearance of midazolam may be susceptible both to changes in enzyme activity and to changes in hepatic blood flow.

The elimination half-life ranges from 1.7 to 3.5 hours.[170,171] The plasma clearance ranges from 5.8 to 9.0 mL/kg/min and is higher compared to that of the other benzodiazepines. This is due to the fused imidazole ring, which is rapidly oxidized in vivo—much more rapidly than the methylene group of the diazepine ring of other benzodiazepines.[172]

The pharmacokinetics of midazolam are affected by obesity, age, hepatic cirrhosis, and severity of critical illness. Because of its high lipophilicity (at physiological pH), midazolam distributes preferably to adipose tissue resulting in

TABLE 23.6 Pharmacokinetic Parameters of the Benzodiazepines

	Elimination half-life (h)	Clearance (mL/kg/min)	Vd (L/kg)	Plasma Protein Binding (%)	Reference
Midazolam	1.7-3.5	5.8-9.0	1.1-1.7	94-98	Dundee et al. (1984)
Diazepam	20-50	0.2-0.5	0.7-1.7	98-99	Greenblatt et al. (1980)
Lorazepam	11-22	0.8-1.5	0.8-1.3	88-92	Greenblatt et al. (1979)
Temazepam	6-8	1.0-1.2	1.3-1.5	96-98	Fraschini and Stankov (1993)
Remimazolam*	0.4	4521 mL/min	36.4 L	N.A.	Upton et al. (2010)
Flumazenil	0.7-1.3	13-17	0.9-1.9	40-50	Klotz and Kanto (1998)

*Noncompartmental analysis results from sheep.
N.A. is not available.
From Saari TI, Uusi-Oukari M, Ahonen J, Olkkola KT. Enhancement of GABAergic activity: neuropharmacological effects of benzodiazepines and therapeutic use in anesthesiology. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2011;63(1):243–267.

a prolonged elimination half-life in obese patients.[168] Liver cirrhosis reduces plasma clearance of midazolam due to decreased metabolism.[173]

Midazolam is metabolized by CYP3A4 and CYP3A5[174] to 1-hydroxymethylmidazolam (= α-hydroxymidazolam) and 4-hydroxymidazolam.[175] These metabolites possess similar sedative activities compared to the parent compound and, when given over a longer time, these metabolites may accumulate. These metabolites are rapidly conjugated and excreted in the urine and have, like midazolam, a marked increase in peripheral volume of distribution in obese/overweight adolescents.[175a] In comparison, 1-hydroxymethylmidazolam is less potent than its parent compound, the affinity to the receptor is about 60%, and weaker than that of midazolam. The metabolites are cleared more rapidly than midazolam itself, making them of little concern in patients with normal hepatic and renal function. In patients with renal impairment, though, they can cause profound sedation.[176]

Diazepam: After oral ingestion the bioavailability is about 94%.[177] Time to peak plasma concentrations after oral ingestion is approximately 60 minutes.[178] Diazepam is extensively bound to plasma proteins; the volume of distribution ranges from 0.7 to 4.7 L/kg. The plasma clearance of diazepam ranges from 0.2 to 0.5 mL/kg/min.[179]

The pharmacokinetics of diazepam are affected by obesity and liver dysfunction and particularly by age. Increasing age reduces the clearance of diazepam significantly.[180]

Metabolism occurs in the liver and is mediated mainly by CYP2C19 and CYP3A4. This accounts for 80% of the biotransformation of diazepam.[181-183] The metabolite N-desmethyldiazepam has pharmacodynamic characteristics similar to those of diazepam, but has a much slower elimination half-life extending to 200 hours. N-desmethyldiazepam is further metabolized to oxazepam, which is also pharmacologically active.

Temazepam, another metabolite of diazepam, is mainly conjugated to temazepam glucuronide and a smaller part is demethylated to oxazepam and thereafter conjugated to oxazepam-glucuronide.[184]

Lorazepam: The oral bioavailability is high, nearly 90%. Peak plasma concentrations are reached approximately 2 hours after oral ingestion, the mean elimination half-life is 15 hours, with a range of 8 to 25 hours.[185] Lorazepam has a large volume of distribution from 0.8 to 1.3 L/kg,[186] and it is highly bound to plasma proteins (>90%).

The clearance of lorazepam is 0.8 to 1.8 mL/kg/min. Lorazepam is conjugated in the liver to an inactive glucuronide and up to 70% is excreted in urine. The pharmacokinetics of lorazepam is little altered by age, and not altered by gender or renal disease, but clearance is decreased by hepatic dysfunction.[187]

Remimazolam (CNS 7056)

Remimazolam, a new short-acting $GABA_A$ receptor agonist with high affinity to the GABA receptor, is rapidly degraded in plasma by nonspecific esterases to its carboxylic acid metabolite CNS 7054. The incorporation of a carboxylic ester moiety into the benzodiazepine core of remimazolam renders it susceptible to nonspecific tissue esterases.[188] Preclinical studies in sheep showed a more rapid onset of action, greater depth of sedation, and more rapid recovery than midazolam. In sheep, remimazolam showed no dose-dependent depth of sedation like propofol.[189] In humans, remimazolam is eliminated by first-order pharmacokinetics, with no clear relationship registered between body weight and elimination clearance. Accumulation after prolonged infusion is unlikely. The clearance of remimazolam was rapid (overall mean clearance 70.3 ± 13.9 L/hr) and the volume of distribution moderately large (steady-state volume of distribution is 34.8 ± 9.4 L). No clear relation exists between body weight and systemic clearance. Level and duration of sedation are dose-dependent in humans.[190] Remimazolam trials conclude a safe administration for procedural sedation; it allows a faster recovery of neuropsychiatric function compared to midazolam. Possible benefit compared to propofol is the safe administration by endoscopists instead of healthcare providers trained in anesthesia.

Pharmacodynamics

Benzodiazepines act selectively at the $GABA_A$ receptor, which mediates fast inhibitory synaptic transmission in the CNS. Benzodiazepines enhance the response to GABA by facilitating the opening of the GABA-activated chloride channels resulting in hyperpolarization. A series of compounds are candidates as endogenous ligand of the $GABA_A$ receptor, such as diazepam binding inhibitor and other substances. This is an area of ongoing research.[191]

Translocator protein (TSPO, 18 kDa), first described as a peripheral binding site for benzodiazepines, which are not associated with GABA receptors, are expressed throughout the body and brain. While their precise function and pharmacologic significance remain only partly known, the TSPO role has many proposed functions depending on the tissue, like cholesterol transport, regulatory role in the heart, and immunomodulation related to inflammatory activation.[192]

EFFECTS ON THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

All benzodiazepines have hypnotic, sedative, anxiolytic, amnesic, anticonvulsant, and centrally produced muscle-relaxing properties. They may differ to some extent in their potency and efficacy with regard to some of these pharmacodynamic actions (e.g., anticonvulsive action). The neurotransmitter GABA is an inhibitory neurotransmitter and controls the state of a chloride ion channel. Activation of this chloride ion channel results in neuronal hyperpolarization (increased membrane potential in the direction away from the threshold potential) and accounts for the classification of the GABA system as "inhibitory." Benzodiazepines bind to their receptors with high affinity; the binding is stereospecific and saturable; the order of receptor affinity (potency) of three agonists is lorazepam > midazolam > diazepam. Midazolam is approximately 3 to 6 times, and lorazepam 5 to 10 times, as potent as diazepam.[193] As indicated previously, the mechanism of action of benzodiazepines is reasonably well understood.[194,195] The interaction of benzodiazepine ligands with the $GABA_A$ receptor is one of the few examples in which the complex systems of biochemistry, molecular pharmacology, genetic mutations, and clinical behavioral patterns can to some extent be explained. $GABA_A$ subtypes mediate the different effects (amnesic, anticonvulsant, anxiolytic, and sleep).[195] The $GABA_A$ receptor is a pentameric assembly built from 18 or more subunits (Fig. 23.9). Many different combinations of this pentameric assembly occur in different parts of the brain; linking this diversity to physiological function and pharmacologic specificity may be possible. The α-subunit of the pentameric complex occurs in six isoforms (α_1-α_6).[187] Sedation, anterograde amnesia, and anticonvulsant properties are mediated via α_1-subunits of the $GABA_A$ receptors,[195] and anxiolysis and muscle relaxation are mediated via the α_2-subunits. The "benzodiazepine receptors" are found in highest densities in the olfactory bulb, cerebral cortex, cerebellum, hippocampus, substantia nigra, and inferior colliculus, where lower densities in the striatum, lower brainstem, and spinal cord are found. Spinal cord benzodiazepine receptors can play an important role in analgesia; however, further elucidation of the mechanism of action of this drug class is required.[196] Intrathecal midazolam reduces excitatory GABA-mediated neurotransmission in interneurons, leading to a decrease in the excitability of spinal dorsal horn neurons.[196] A meta-analysis shows that intrathecal midazolam improves perioperative analgesia and reduces nausea and vomiting.[197]

The benzodiazepines reduce the $CMRO_2$ in a dose-related manner. Midazolam and diazepam maintain a relatively normal ratio of CBF to $CMRO_2$. [198] Midazolam, diazepam, and lorazepam all increase the seizure initiation threshold to local anesthetics and decrease the mortality rate in mice exposed to lethal doses of local anesthetics. Midazolam has neuroprotective effects by preventing lipid peroxidation and mitochondrial damage. There are indications in rats that the peripheral benzodiazepine receptor is involved in these actions.[199]

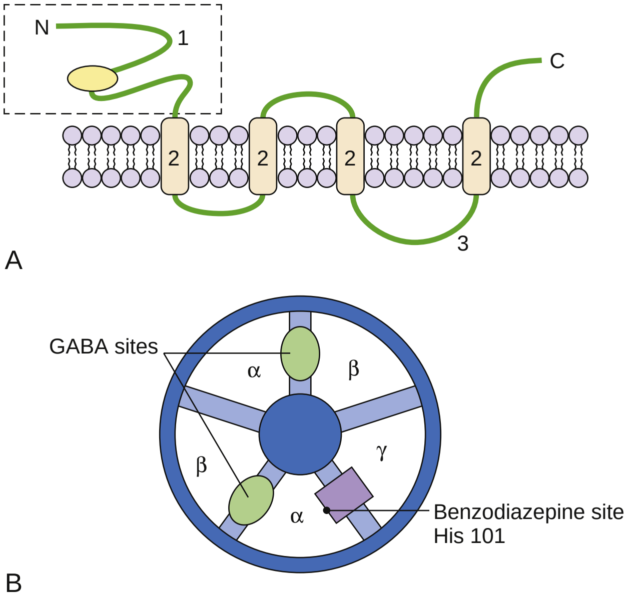


Fig. 23.9 Schematics of GABAA receptor structure and function. (A) topography of a GABAA receptor subunit partially embedded in the lipid bilayer. *1*, N-terminal extracellular domain responsible for transmitter and ligand binding and coupling of the binding sites with ion channel. This part is also important for the assembly of various receptor subunits into functional receptors. *2*, four transmembrane segments forming the anion channel are responsible for binding of hydrophobic ligands, ion selectivity, and channel binding sites. *3*, intracellular loop between transmembrane segments 3 and 4 forms the domain for regulatory phosphorylation sites and for the intracellular factors anchoring the receptors in appropriate locations. (B) hypothetical binding sites for GABA and benzodiazepines ligands in a pentameric receptor complex. (From Saari TI, Uusi-Oukari M, Ahonen J, Olkkola KT. Enhancement of GABAergic activity: neuropharmacological effects of benzodiazepines and therapeutic use in anesthesiology. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2011;63[1]:243–267.)

Effects on the Respiratory System

Benzodiazepines, similar to most IV anesthetics, produce dose-related central respiratory system depression. The benzodiazepines affect respiration in two different ways. First, they have an effect on the muscular tone leading to an increased risk of upper airway obstruction.[200] Second, they flatten the response of the respiratory curve to carbon dioxide.[201] In addition, sedative doses of midazolam depress the hypoxic ventilatory response in humans.[202]

Benzodiazepines and opioids produce additive or supra-additive (synergistic) respiratory depression, even though they act at different receptors.[203] Old age, debilitating disease, and other respiratory depressant drugs increase the incidence and degree of respiratory depression and apnea by benzodiazepines.

Effects on the Cardiovascular System

The hypothalamic paraventricular nucleus (PVN) is an important site for autonomic and endocrine homeostasis of the cardiovascular system. The PVN integrates afferent stimuli to regulate blood volume; the rostral ventrolateral medulla is the dominant brain region for tonic regulation of arterial blood pressure.[204] Under normal circumstances, the sympathetic nervous system is tonically inhibited. This inhibition is dependent on GABAergic signaling and nitric oxide.[205]

Benzodiazepines, when used alone, have modest hemodynamic effects. The predominant hemodynamic change is a modest decrease in arterial blood pressure, resulting from a decrease in systemic vascular resistance. The mechanism by which benzodiazepines maintain relatively stable hemodynamics involves the preservation of homeostatic reflex mechanisms. The hemodynamic effects of midazolam and diazepam are dose related, however, there is a plateau plasma drug effect above which little change in arterial blood pressure occurs. The plateau plasma level for midazolam is 100 ng/mL, and that for diazepam is about 900 ng/mL. Heart rate, ventricular filling pressures, and cardiac output are maintained after induction of anesthesia with benzodiazepines. More recent studies using heart rate variability variables as measurements to evaluate the effect of benzodiazepines on autonomic neurocardiac regulation conclude a biphasic effect. First, the vagal tone reduces and second, the cardiac pacemaker may decrease using intravenous premedication doses. In patients with increased left ventricular filling pressures, diazepam and midazolam produce a "nitroglycerin-like" effect by decreasing the filling pressure and increasing cardiac output. Notably, the stress of endotracheal intubation and surgery are not blocked by midazolam.

Drug Interactions

PHARMACOKINETIC DRUG INTERACTIONS

The pharmacokinetics of benzodiazepines may be altered by drug interactions. As cytochrome P450 is often involved in the metabolism of the benzodiazepines, drugs inducing or inhibiting CYP function often cause alterations in the pharmacokinetics of the benzodiazepines.

CYP-mediated drug interactions have extensively been examined utilizing midazolam, which is almost completely metabolized by CYP, particularly CYP3A4.

The inhibition of CYP3A by concomitantly administered drugs like—among many others—the azole antifungal agents, results in significant inhibition of the metabolism of midazolam.[206] Orally administered midazolam is especially affected by these inhibitors due to reduction of the first-pass metabolism elimination.[207]

Diazepam is primarily metabolized by CYP2C19 and CYP3A4. Different CYP2C19 alleles have varying activity, which results in ultra-rapid, extensive, intermediate, and poor metabolizer genotypes.[208,209] Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics vary among these different metabolizers.[210,211] Strong inhibitors of CYP3A4 have a minor effect on the pharmacokinetics of diazepam.[212,213] Inhibitors of CYP2C19 like omeprazole, fluvoxamine, and ciprofloxacin consequently increase the plasma half-life of diazepam substantially.[214-216] The clearance of lorazepam is affected by probenecid and valproic acid, both of which decrease the formation clearance of lorazepam-glucuronide.[217,218] Remimazolam is not metabolized by CYP-dependent mechanisms, which decreases the chances of significant drug interactions occurring.

PHARMACODYNAMIC DRUG INTERACTION

All benzodiazepines act on the CNS and interact with other drugs targeting the CNS, in particular those causing CNS depression.

In anesthetic practice, opioids are often combined with benzodiazepines, which interact in a synergistic manner.[219] The interaction between midazolam and ketamine is additive,[220] while the interaction between the hypnotic effects of thiopental and midazolam and of propofol and midazolam are synergistic.[20,221]

Uses

PREMEDICATION

Benzodiazepines are the most commonly applied drugs for premedication. The goals of this application are anxiolysis, sedation, amnesia, vagolysis, and sympathicolysis, and reduction of PONV.[222] The amnestic effects are anterograde; retrograde memory is not affected.

Diazepam, lorazepam, and midazolam are given orally or intravenously for preoperative sedation. Midazolam is the most frequently used benzodiazepine for premedication in both adults and children.[223] The usual oral dose for adults ranges from 7.5 to 15 mg for midazolam, from 5 to 10 mg for diazepam, and from 10 to 20 mg for temazepam.[224] Many factors like age, ASA physical status, level of anxiety, and type and length of surgery determine the dose. Lorazepam is mostly used when a prolonged and intense anxiolysis is pursued, like in cardiac surgery. Typically, 2 to 4 mg lorazepam is administered orally 2 hours before anesthesia and surgery.[225]

For pediatric patients midazolam is available in several preparations (including a formulation for intranasal administration in some countries) and well tolerated. The dose is effective from 0.025 mg/kg and produces sedation and anxiolysis in 10 to 20 minutes.

Midazolam has minimal effects on respiration and oxygen saturation in adults, even in doses up to 1.0 mg/kg with a maximum of 20 mg.

Sedation

Relief of anxiety and lack of recall of unpleasant events during minor surgical and diagnostic procedures are the primary objectives of good sedation. Appropriately used sedation improves patient satisfaction.[222] Patients are seemingly conscious and coherent during sedation with benzodiazepines, yet they are amnesic for the procedure and events.[226] For this use drugs should be given by titration; end points of titration are adequate sedation or dysarthria (Table 23.7). The onset of action is rapid with midazolam, usually with a peak effect reached within 2 to 3 minutes of administration; time to peak effect is slightly longer with diazepam and even longer still with lorazepam. The duration of action of these drugs are dose-dependent. Although the onset is more rapid with midazolam than with diazepam after bolus administration, the recovery is similar, probably because both drugs have similar early plasma decay (redistribution) patterns.[227] (also see Fig. 23.10). With lorazepam, sedation and particularly amnesia are slower in onset and are longer lasting than with the other two benzodiazepines.[228] Lorazepam is particularly unpredictable with regard to duration of amnesia, and this is undesirable in patients who wish or need to have recall in the immediate postoperative period. The degree of sedation, the reliable amnesia, and the preservation of respiratory and hemodynamic function are better with benzodiazepines than with other sedative-hypnotic drugs used for conscious sedation. When midazolam is compared with propofol for sedation during procedures, the two are generally similar except that emergence or wake-up is more rapid with propofol. Sedation with propofol is safe in the hands of well-trained non-anesthetic professionals.[229,230]

There are studies showing that remimazolam has a favorable profile as a sedative for upper gastrointestinal endoscopy in patients as the time to recovery was shorter and more consistent than that observed after the use of midazolam.[188,190] The use of midazolam for sedation during regional and epidural anesthesia requires vigilance with regard to depth of sedation and respiratory function.[231]

Two studies report the use of midazolam during cesarean section either for sedation in preeclamptic parturients or prevention of nausea and vomiting; they showed that a single IV dose of midazolam was a safe practice, with no detriment in Apgar scores, neurobehavioral scores, continuous oxygen saturation, or the ability of the mother to recall the birth events.[232] Nitsun and associates found that 0.005% of the maternal dose of midazolam is transferred into the breast milk during a 24-hour milk collection.[233] Although verification of these findings is needed, they highlight an important clinical use of midazolam that may be safe for mother and infant.

TABLE 23.7 Uses and Doses of Intravenous Benzodiazepines

	Midazolam	Diazepam	Lorazepam
Induction	0.05-0.15 mg/kg	0.3-0.5 mg/kg	0.1 mg/kg
Maintenance	0.05 mg/kg prn	0.1 mg/kg prn	0.02 mg/kg prn
	1 µg/kg/min		
Sedation*	0.5-1 mg repeated	2 mg repeated	0.25 mg repeated
	0.07 mg/kg IM		

*Incremental doses given until desired degree of sedation is obtained.
IM, Intramuscular; *prn,* as required to keep patient hypnotic and amnesic.
From Reves JG, Glass P, Lubarsky DA, et al. Intravenous anesthetics. In: Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleischer LA, et al, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia,* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010: 719–768.

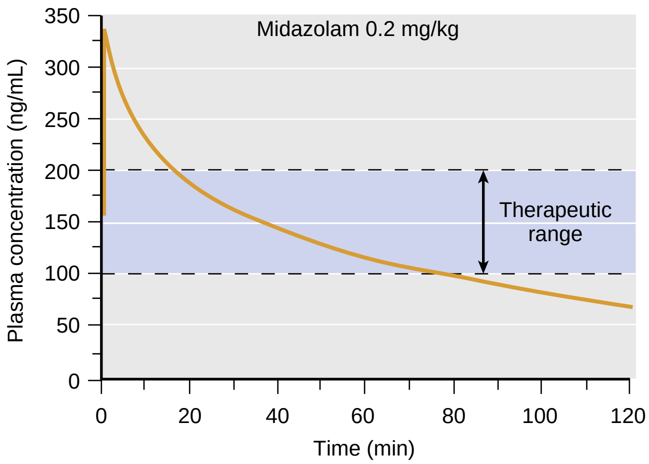


Fig. 23.10 Simulated time course of plasma levels of midazolam after an induction dose of 0.2 mg/kg. Plasma levels required for hypnosis and amnesia during surgery are 100 to 200 ng/mL, with awakening usually occurring at levels less than 50 ng/mL.

Sedation for longer periods, such as in the ICU, can also be accomplished with benzodiazepines. Prolonged infusion may result in accumulation of drug and, in the case of midazolam, significant concentration of the active metabolite. Reviews have pointed out both concerns and advantages of benzodiazepine sedation.[234] The main advantages are the amnesia and hemodynamic stability, where the disadvantage is the potential lingering sedative effect after termination of the infusion when compared with propofol and a higher prevalence of delirium compared to dexmedetomidine. In 2013, the Society of Critical Care Medicine's (SCCM) American College of Critical Care Medicine (ACCM) published a revised version of its pain, agitation, and delirium (PAD) clinical practice guidelines for adult ICU patients. These guidelines suggest that sedation strategies using non-benzodiazepine sedatives may be preferred over sedation with benzodiazepines, either midazolam or lorazepam, to improve clinical outcome in mechanically ventilated ICU patients.[235] To prevent overdosing and prolonged mechanical ventilation, evidence-based sedation algorithms have evolved. Daily interruption of sedation has not proven to decrease the time to extubation of the trachea or length of hospital stay.[236]

Induction and Maintenance of Anesthesia

Midazolam is the benzodiazepine of choice for induction of anesthesia. Numerous factors influence the rapidity of action of midazolam and the other benzodiazepines when used for induction of general anesthesia, including dose, speed of injection, degree of premedication, age, ASA physical status, and concurrent anesthetic drugs. The usual induction dose of midazolam is 0.1 to 0.2 mg/kg in premedicated patients, and up to 0.3 mg/kg in unpremedicated patients. The onset of anesthesia is within 30 to 60 seconds. The half-time of equilibrium between the plasma concentration and the EEG effects is about 2 to 3 minutes.[237]

Elderly patients require smaller doses of midazolam than younger patients (Fig. 23.11).[238]

When midazolam is combined with other anesthetic drugs (coinduction), often a synergistic interaction occurs, similar to that seen with propofol. This synergy is observed when midazolam is used with opioids or other hypnotics, similar to propofol in combination with opioids (Fig 23.12).[20,52,239]

Emergence time is related to the dose of midazolam and to the dose of adjuvant anesthetic drugs.

Benzodiazepines lack analgesic properties and must be used with other anesthetic drugs to provide sufficient analgesia; however, as maintenance anesthetic drugs during general anesthesia, benzodiazepines provide hypnosis and amnesia. The amnesic period after an anesthetic dose is about 1 to 2 hours.

A plasma level of more than 50 to 100 ng/mL occurs when used with adjuvant opioids (e.g., fentanyl) or inhaled anesthetics (e.g., nitrous oxide, volatile anesthetics) by a bolus initial dose of 0.05 to 0.15 mg/kg and a continuous infusion of 0.25 to 1 µg/kg/min.[240] This plasma level is sufficient to keep the patient asleep and amnesic but arousable at the end of surgery. Smaller infusion doses may be required in some patients or in combination with opioids. Midazolam, diazepam, and lorazepam accumulate in the blood after repeated bolus administrations or with continuous infusion. If the benzodiazepines do accumulate with repeated administration, prolonged arousal time can be anticipated. This is less of a problem with midazolam than with diazepam and lorazepam because of the shorter context-sensitive half-time and greater clearance of midazolam. Remimazolam might be a good alternative; it is rapidly metabolized and has a faster recovery profile than midazolam in sheep.[189,190]

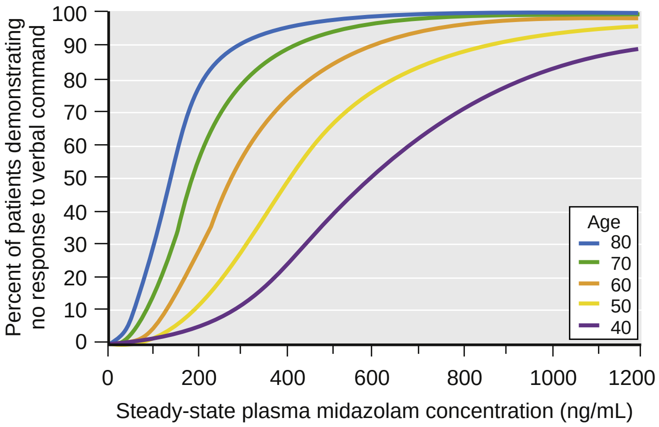


Fig. 23.11 Spectrum of the intrinsic activities of benzodiazepine receptor ligands, which range from agonists to inverse agonists. Structures of agonist, partial agonist, antagonist, partial inverse agonist, and inverse agonist compounds are shown. Intrinsic activity is greatest among agonists and is least among inverse agonists. Intrinsic activities are schematically indicated as positive by a plus sign and as negative by a minus sign, with 0 indicating a lack of intrinsic activity. *GABA*, γ-aminobutyric acid. (Redrawn with modification from Mohler H, Richards JG. The benzodiazepine receptor: a pharmacological control element of brain function. *Eur J Anaesthesiol.* 1988;Suppl 2:15–24.)

Nausea and Vomiting Prophylaxis

Numerous studies have highlighted the role that benzodiazepines, and specifically midazolam, may play in the prevention of PONV. A recent meta-analysis on the effect of intravenous midazolam on PONV concludes a significant decrease in overall PONV and rescue antiemetic drug. Jung and colleagues found that in women undergoing middle ear surgery, IV midazolam, 0.075 mg/kg after induction of anesthesia, reduced the incidence of PONV and the need for rescue antiemetics with no difference from placebo in pain intensity or drowsiness.[241] Furthermore, the combination of midazolam with dexamethasone proved more effective in preventing PONV than midazolam alone.[242] The incidence of PONV after minor gynecologic or urologic surgery was the same when comparing IV ondansetron, 4 mg, and IV midazolam, 2 mg.[243]

In children, IV midazolam, 0.05 mg/kg, reduced PONV significantly after pediatric (4-12 years old) strabismus surgery compared with placebo or IV dexamethasone 0.5 mg/kg. No child vomited with midazolam alone or with the midazolam dexamethasone combination.[244,245]

Finally, in a 2010 three-arm, placebo-controlled, double-blind clinical trial, Fuji and associates compared midazolam 0.050 mg/kg with 0.075 mg/kg in patients undergoing laparoscopic gynecologic surgery regarding PONV prophylaxis. The two doses of midazolam were not significantly different with regard to PONV (30% vs. 27% of patients experienced PONV) and both proved better than placebo (67%).[246]

Side Effects and Contraindications

Benzodiazepines have limited allergenic effects and do not suppress the adrenal gland. The most significant side effect with midazolam is respiratory depression. The major side effects of lorazepam and diazepam in addition to respiratory depression are venous irritation and thrombophlebitis, problems related to aqueous insolubility and requisite solvents.[165] When used as sedative or for induction and

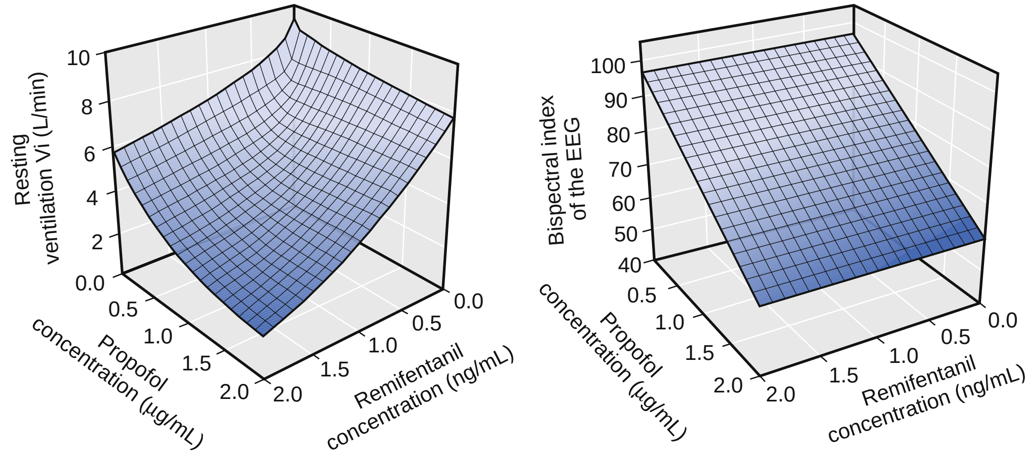


Fig. 23.12 Response surface modeling of the interaction of remifentanil and propofol on resting ventilation and the bispectral index of the electroencephalogram (BIS). Population response surface showing that the propofol–remifentanil interaction on respiration is synergistic and on BIS is inert since remifentanil had no effect on bispectral index irrespective of the propofol concentrations. Over this dose range, propofol causes a linear decrease in bispectral index with a 25% decrease occurring at 1.4 µg/mL. (From Nieuwenhuijs DJ, Olofsen E, Romberg RR, et al. Response surface modeling of remifentanil-propofol interaction on cardiorespiratory control and bispectral index. *Anesthesiology*. 2003; 98:312–322.)

maintenance of anesthesia, benzodiazepines may produce an undesirable degree or prolonged interval of postoperative amnesia, sedation, and, rarely, respiratory depression. These residual effects can be reversed with flumazenil.[247]

Flumazenil

Flumazenil (Anexate, Romazicon) is the first benzodiazepine antagonist approved for clinical use.[248] It is a benzodiazepine receptor ligand with high affinity, great specificity, and by definition minimal intrinsic effect. Flumazenil, similar to the agonists it replaces at the benzodiazepine receptor, interacts with the receptor in a concentration-dependent manner. It is a competitive antagonist at the benzodiazepine receptor and produces antagonism that is reversible and surmountable. In humans, flumazenil has minimal agonist activity, which means that its benzodiazepine receptor agonist effects are very weak, significantly less than those of clinical agonists.[249] Flumazenil, similar to all competitive antagonists at receptors, does not displace the agonist, but rather occupies the receptor when an agonist dissociates from the receptor. The half-time (or half-life) of a receptor-ligand bond is a few milliseconds to a few seconds, and new ligand receptor bonds are immediately formed. This dynamic situation accounts for the ability of either an agonist or an antagonist to readily occupy the receptor. The ratio of agonist to total receptors produces the effects of the agonist drug, but the antagonist can alter this ratio, depending on its concentration and dissociation constant. Flumazenil, which is an avid (high-affinity) ligand, replaces a relatively weak agonist, such as diazepam, as long as it is given in sufficient dose. Flumazenil is rapidly metabolically cleared, however, and the proportion of receptors occupied by the agonist then increases again, and the potential for rebound sedation and respiratory suppression exists (Fig. 23.13). This situation is less likely to occur when flumazenil is used to reverse midazolam, which has a more rapid clearance than other benzodiazepine agonists. Another important finding is that in the presence of extremely large doses of agonist (e.g., when a mistake in dosing has occurred, or suicide by means of an overdose is attempted), a small dose of flumazenil attenuates the deep CNS depression (loss of consciousness, respiratory depression) by reducing the fractional receptor occupancy by the agonist without decreasing the agonist effects that occur at low fractional receptor occupancy (drowsiness, amnesia).

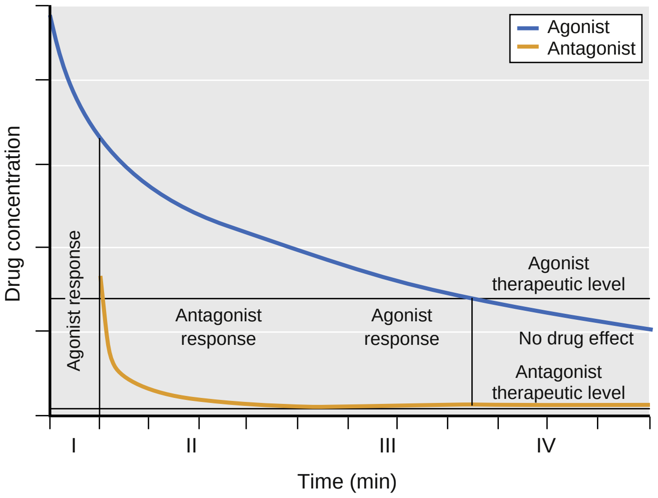


Fig. 23.13 Schematic representation of the interaction of a short-acting antagonist with a longer-acting agonist resulting in resedation. The upper curve shows disappearance of agonist from blood, and the lower curve shows disappearance of antagonist from plasma. Four conditions are represented: I, agonist response; II, antagonist response (the antagonist reverses the agonist effect); III, agonist response (resedation or resumption of agonist response with disappearance of short-lasting antagonist); and IV, no drug effect, with disappearance of agonist and antagonist (both drugs are below the therapeutic level).

Conversely, large doses of flumazenil in the presence of small doses of agonist completely reverse all the agonist effects. Flumazenil can precipitate withdrawal symptoms in animals or in humans physically dependent on a benzodiazepine receptor agonist.[250] However, this is not a problem when flumazenil is used to reverse clinical effects of benzodiazepine receptor agonists applied in the practice of anesthesia.

PHYSICOCHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Flumazenil is similar to midazolam and other classic benzodiazepines except for the absence of the phenyl group, which is replaced by a carbonyl group (see Fig. 23.8). It forms a colorless, crystalline powder; has a dissociation constant of 1.7; and has weak but sufficient water solubility to permit its preparation in aqueous solution. Its octanol/aqueous buffer (pH 7.4) partition coefficient is 14, showing moderate lipid solubility at pH 7.4.[251]

PHARMACOKINETICS

Flumazenil, similar to the other benzodiazepines, is completely (99%) metabolized in the liver; is rapidly cleared from the plasma; and has three known metabolites: *N*-desmethylflumazenil, *N*-desmethylflumazenil acid, and flumazenil acid.[252] The metabolic end product, that is, flumazenil acid, has no pharmacologic activity. The major metabolites identified in urine are the de-ethylated free acid and its glucuronide conjugate. Flumazenil is a short-lived compound. Box 23.2 includes a summary of its pharmacokinetics, which are described in various clinical settings. The volume of distribution is high and extravascular distribution is rapid.

Compared with most benzodiazepine receptor agonists, flumazenil has a very rapid clearance and short elimination half-life.[253] Only remimazolam has a more rapid clearance and shorter half-life. The plasma half-life of flumazenil is

BOX 23.2 Uses and Doses of Flumazenil

Reversal of benzodiazepines	0.2 mg repeated up to 3 mg
Diagnosis in coma	0.5 mg repeated up to 1 mg

*The dose required to reverse each benzodiazepine (BZD) depends on residual BZD and the particular BZD (i.e., higher doses are required for more potent BZDs) (see text).

†The degree of reversal should be titrated by repeating 0.2-mg increments every 1 to 2 min until the desired level of reversal is achieved.

From Reves JG, Glass P, Lubarsky DA, et al. Intravenous anesthetics. In Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleischer LA, et al, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia,* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010: 719–768.

about 1 hour—it is the shortest lived of all benzodiazepines used in anesthetic practice. The rapid blood clearance of flumazenil approaches hepatic blood flow, a finding that indicates that liver clearance partially depends on hepatic blood flow. Compared with other benzodiazepines, flumazenil has a high proportion of unbound drug; plasma protein binding is about 40%. The potential exists for the antagonist to be cleared, leaving sufficient concentrations of agonist at the receptor site to cause resedation.[254] To maintain a constant therapeutic blood level over a prolonged time, either repeated administration or a continuous infusion is required. An infusion rate of 30 to 60 μg/min (0.5-1 μg/kg/min) has been used for this purpose.[255]

PHARMACODYNAMICS

When given in the absence of a benzodiazepine receptor agonist, flumazenil has little discernible CNS effect. When given to healthy subjects and patients in clinically relevant doses, flumazenil has no effect on the EEG or cerebral metabolism. Flumazenil is free of anticonvulsant properties, and reverses the anticonvulsant properties of benzodiazepines in local anesthetic-induced seizures.[256] When administered to patients who have benzodiazepine-induced CNS depression, flumazenil produces rapid and dependable reversal of unconsciousness, respiratory depression, sedation, amnesia, and psychomotor dysfunction.[257] Flumazenil can be given before, during, or after the agonist to block or reverse the CNS effects of the agonist.

Flumazenil has successfully reversed the effects of benzodiazepines like midazolam, diazepam, lorazepam, and flunitrazepam. It has also been used successfully to reverse the effects of chloralhydrate and cannabis intoxication in children, [258,259] carbamazepine and alcohol overdose,[260] and antihistamines overdose.[261] The onset is rapid, with peak effect occurring in 1 to 3 minutes, which coincides with the detection of C-flumazenil in the human brain.[257] Flumazenil reverses the agonist by replacing it at the benzodiazepine receptor, and its onset and duration are governed by the law of mass action. When flumazenil is given in the presence of agonists, there are significant respiratory effects because it reverses respiratory depression caused by the agonists (e.g., when given to volunteers made apneic with midazolam). For example, the reversal of midazolam-induced (0.13 mg/kg) respiratory depression with flumazenil (1 mg) lasts 3 to 30 minutes. Other agonists and other doses would have different durations of antagonism of respiratory depression.

Incremental doses up to 3 mg intravenously in patients with ischemic heart disease had no significant effect on cardiovascular variables.[257,262] Administration of flumazenil to patients given agonists is remarkably free of cardiovascular effects, in contrast to the experience of opioid reversal with naloxone.[263] Although flumazenil does reverse sedation, it does not increase blood concentrations of catecholamines. However, catecholamine levels may increase when arousal is more rapid after flumazenil.[264] The reversal of sedation by midazolam with flumazenil also restores the attenuated cardiac baroreflex function.[265]

In healthy subjects, flumazenil did not alter intraocular pressure but reversed the decrease in intraocular pressure observed after administration of midazolam (Romazicon package insert; www.fda.gov).

Uses and Doses

Application of a benzodiazepine antagonist (see Box 23.2) includes the diagnostic and therapeutic reversal of benzodiazepine receptor agonists. For diagnostic use in suspected benzodiazepine overdose, flumazenil may be given in incremental IV doses of 0.2 to 0.5 mg up to 3 mg. More commonly in anesthesia, flumazenil is used to reverse the residual sedation of a patient after administration of a benzodiazepine for premedication of a short surgical procedure, conscious sedation, or for general anesthesia. Flumazenil reliably reverses the sedation, respiratory depression, and amnesia caused by benzodiazepines. There are differential reversal effects on the different agonist actions. Flumazenil tends to reverse the hypnotic and respiratory effects more than the amnesic effects of the benzodiazepine agonist.[266,267]

The dose varies with the particular benzodiazepine being reversed, and the duration of reversal depends on the kinetics of the agonist and of flumazenil. Surveillance is recommended if a long-lasting benzodiazepine is reversed with a single administration of flumazenil because of the relatively short-lived effect. If a patient shows no signs of recurrent sedation within 2 hours after a 1-mg reversal dose of flumazenil, serious recurrent sedation at a later time is unlikely. Flumazenil may be administered by continuous infusion to prevent recurrent sedation by longer lasting benzodiazepine receptor agonists. The pharmacokinetic profile of flumazenil is unaltered in the presence of benzodiazepine agonists (diazepam, flunitrazepam, lormetazepam, midazolam) and vice versa.

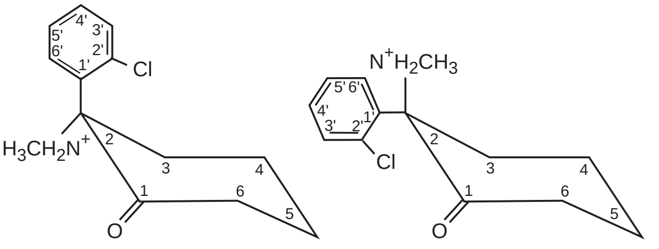
Side Effects and Contraindications

Flumazenil has been given in large oral and IV doses with remarkably few toxic reactions.[257] It is free of local or tissue irritant properties, and there are no known organotoxicities. Similar to all benzodiazepines, it apparently has a high safety margin, probably higher than the safety margins of the agonists, because it does not produce prominent CNS depression. In patients using large doses of benzodiazepines over several weeks or longer, the administration of flumazenil may elicit symptoms of benzodiazepine withdrawal, including seizures.

Phencyclidines (Ketamine)

HISTORY

Ketamine (Ketalar) was synthesized in 1962 by Stevens and was first used in humans in 1965 by Corssen and Domino. Ketamine was released for clinical use in 1970 and is still used in various clinical settings. It produces dissociative anesthesia rather than generalized depression of the CNS through antagonistic actions at the phencyclidine (PCP) site of the N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor (NMDAR). Ketamine is a racemic mixture of the isomers R(-)-ketamine and S(+)-ketamine. It usually does not depress the cardiovascular and respiratory systems, but it does possess some of the adverse psychological effects found with the other phencyclidines.[268] The S(+)-isomer (Ketanest) is 3 to 4 times more potent as an analgesic with a faster clearance and recovery and with fewer psychomimetic side effects. Still, S-ketamine produces—besides analgesia—psychotropic effects, cognitive impairment, memory impairment, and a reduced



S_1(+) Ketamine hydrochloride R_1(–) Ketamine hydrochloride

Fig. 23.14 Stereoisomers of ketamine as it is formulated.

reaction time. Interest in ketamine has increased more recently because of its effects on hyperalgesia and opiate tolerance, use in chronic pain states, potential neuroprotective effects, increasing popularity of total IV anesthesia, and the availability in some countries of S(+) ketamine.[269] Lastly, ketamine receives growing interest because of its antidepressant effects.

PHYSICOCHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Ketamine (Fig. 23.14) has a molecular weight of 238 kD, is partially water soluble, and forms a white crystalline salt with a pK_a of 7.5. It has a lipid solubility 5 to 10 times that of thiopental. Ketamine is only 12% bound to proteins. Its bioavailability is 93% after parenteral administration but only 20% after oral use, due to its high first-pass metabolism.[270]

PHARMACOKINETICS

Ketamine is metabolized by hepatic microsomal enzymes.[271,272] The major pathway involves *N*-demethylation to form norketamine (metabolite I), which is then hydroxylated to hydroxynorketamine, which is further conjugated to water-soluble glucuronide derivates and excreted in the urine. The activity of the principal metabolites of ketamine has not been well studied, but norketamine (metabolite I) has significantly less (20%-30%) activity than the parent compound. More recent modeling of norketamine suggests that it contributes in prolonging the analgesia provided by either a bolus or infusion of ketamine, although this conclusion is being questioned.[271,273,274] In contrast to previous reports, S-norketamine may have a negative contribution to S-ketamine-induced analgesia but shows absence of contribution to the cognitive impairment. This may explain the observation of ketamine-related excitatory phenomena (such as hyperalgesia and allodynia) upon the termination of ketamine infusions.[271,273,274]

Ketamine's pharmacokinetics have been examined after bolus administration of anesthetizing doses (2-2.5 mg/kg IV), after a subanesthetic dose (0.25 mg/kg IV), and after continuous infusion (steady-state plasma level 2000 ng/mL).

Regardless of the dose, ketamine plasma disappearance can be described by a two-compartment model. Table 23.1 contains the pharmacokinetic values from bolus administration studies. Of note is the rapid distribution reflected in the relatively brief distribution half-life of 11 to 16 minutes (Fig. 23.15). The high lipid solubility of ketamine is reflected in its large volume of distribution of nearly 3 L/kg.[272,275] Clearance also is high, 890 to 1227 mL/min, which accounts for the short elimination half-life of 2 to 3 hours. The mean total body clearance (1.4 L/min) is approximately equal to liver blood flow. Low-dose alfentanil increases the volume of distribution and clearance of ketamine. In addition, alfentanil increases the distribution of ketamine into the brain. The pharmacokinetic model of Clements provided the best accuracy when used to administer low-dose ketamine to volunteers using a target-controlled infusion device. The pharmacokinetics of the two isomers is different. S(+) ketamine has a larger elimination clearance and larger volume of distribution than R(−) ketamine. When the pharmacokinetics of S(+) ketamine were tested in a target-controlled infusion device for procedures of 1 hour and in combination with propofol, the authors found that the accuracy of the pharmacokinetic parameters was improved with a much smaller Vc[*] (167 mL/kg).[276] They also noted that ketamine clearance was not normally distributed, and this was not related to age. The S(+) enantiomer also seems to be more potent in suppressing the EEG than either R(−) or the racemic mixture. Ketamine is increasingly being given by alternative routes, especially orally and via an intranasal spray. Administration by either of these routes is subject to significant first-pass metabolism. The bioavailability via oral administration is 20% to 30%, and via the intranasal route is approximately 40% to 50%. In clinical and experimental studies hyperalgesic responses have been noted after the withdrawal of *S*(+)-ketamine.[273-275,277,278] Furthermore, no delay between concentration and effect has been observed for any of the antinociceptive end points. This indicates an almost immediate passage of S(+)-ketamine across the blood-brain barrier and rapid receptor kinetics.

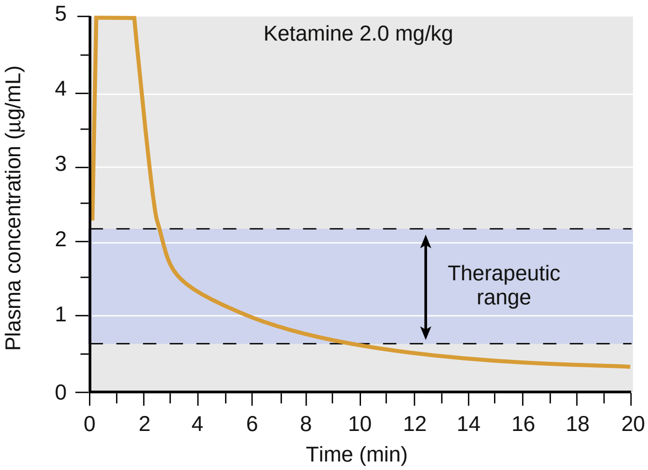


Fig. 23.15 Simulated time course of plasma levels of ketamine after an induction dose of 2 mg/kg. Plasma levels required for hypnosis and amnesia during surgery are 0.7 to 2.2 μg/mL, with awakening usually occurring at levels less than 0.5 μg/mL.

Pharmacodynamics

EFFECTS ON THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

Ketamine produces dose-related unconsciousness and analgesia. Ketamine acts at multiple receptors including the NMDAR, opioid receptors, and monoaminergic receptors.

---

[*] Vc (central compartment volume of a three compartment model).

At high ketamine concentrations, sigma opioid receptors are also affected, muscarinic receptors are blocked, and GABAergic neurotransmission is facilitated. Its most important action is the inhibition of NMDAR-mediated glutamergic input to the GABAergic system leading to a changing excitatory activity in the cortex and limbic system that in the end results in unconsciousness. At the spinal cord level, ketamine has potent antinociceptive effects on NMDAR and inhibits acetylcholine release.[273-275] The anesthetized state has been termed *dissociative anesthesia* because patients who receive ketamine alone appear to be in a cataleptic state, in contrast with other states of anesthesia that resemble normal sleep. Patients anesthetized with ketamine have profound analgesia, but keep their eyes open and maintain many reflexes. Corneal, cough, and swallow reflexes all may be present, but should not be assumed to be protective. There is no recall of surgery or anesthesia, but amnesia is not as prominent with ketamine as with the benzodiazepines. Because ketamine has a low molecular weight, a pK_a near the physiologic pH, and relatively high lipid solubility, it crosses the blood-brain barrier rapidly and has an onset of action within 30 to 60 seconds of administration. The maximal effect occurs in about 1 minute.

After ketamine administration, pupils dilate moderately, and nystagmus occurs. Lacrimation and salivation are common, as is increased skeletal muscle tone, often with coordinated but seemingly purposeless movements of the arms, legs, trunk, and head. Although there is great inter-individual variability, plasma levels of 0.6 to 2 μg/mL are considered the minimum concentrations for general anesthesia; children may require slightly higher plasma levels (0.8-4 μg/mL). The duration of ketamine anesthesia after a single IV administration of a general anesthetic dose (2 mg/kg) is 10 to 15 minutes (see Fig. 23.15), and full orientation to person, place, and time occurs within 15 to 30 minutes. The S(+) enantiomer enables quicker recovery (by a couple of minutes) than the racemic mixture.[279,280] This is due to the smaller dose necessary to produce an equi-anesthetic effect and to the 10% faster hepatic biotransformation. Because there is a good correlation between blood concentration of ketamine and CNS effect, the relatively short duration of action of ketamine is probably due to its redistribution from the brain and blood to the other tissues in the body.

Concomitant administration of benzodiazepines, which is a common practice, may prolong the effect of ketamine. When used in combination with a benzodiazepine, the S(+) enantiomer was no different in terms of awareness at 30 minutes, but it was significantly better at 120 minutes than the racemic mixture. Analgesia occurs at considerably lower blood concentrations than loss of consciousness.

Ketamine provides important postoperative analgesia. The plasma level at which pain thresholds are elevated is 0.1 μg/mL or greater.[277,281,282] This means there is a considerable period of postoperative analgesia after ketamine general anesthesia, and subanesthetic doses can consequently be used to produce analgesia. Ketamine inhibits nociceptive central hypersensitization. Ketamine also attenuates acute tolerance after opiate administration. The NMDAR plays an important role in the induction of hyperalgesia and antinociceptive tolerance as induced by opioids. Preventive ketamine administration may thus prevent central sensitization and long-lasting enhancement in pain sensitivity as induced by opioids. Ketamine, just as other NMDAR antagonists, may thus prevent opioid-induced hyperalgesia.[283] The primary site of CNS action of ketamine seems to be the thalamoneocortical projection system. The drug selectively depresses neuronal function in parts of the cortex (especially association areas) and thalamus, while stimulating parts of the limbic system, including the hippocampus. This process creates what is termed a *functional disorganization* of nonspecific pathways in midbrain and thalamic areas. Ketamine acts via antagonism of the excitatory glutamatergic NMDA receptor. The NMDA receptor has a high expression in the temporal cortex, hippocampus, basal ganglia, cerebellum, and brainstem, all regions significantly affected by ketamine. There is also evidence that ketamine depresses transmission of impulses in the medial medullary reticular formation, which is important for transmission of the affective-emotional components of nociception from the spinal cord to higher brain centers. In volunteers experiencing heat pain, functional magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) studies showed ketamine produced a dose-dependent effect on pain processing by decreasing activation of the secondary somatosensory cortex (S2), insula, and anterior cingulate cortex. Ketamine occupies opiate receptors in the brain and spinal cord, and this property could account for some of the analgesic effects.[284,285] The S(+) enantiomer has some opioid μ-receptor activity, accounting for part of its analgesic effect. NMDA receptor interaction may mediate the general anesthetic effects and some analgesic actions of ketamine. The spinal cord analgesic effect of ketamine is postulated to be due to inhibition of dorsal horn wide dynamic range neuronal activity. In a resting state fMRI study, low-dose ketamine induced connectivity changes in brain areas involved in motor function, psychedelic effects, and pain processing. Ketamine's analgesic effect may arise from multiple pathways; a decreased connectivity in regions of the pain matrix responsible for the perception of pain (pain sensing) and the affective processing of pain. In addition, ketamine affected connectivity in brain areas involved in endogenous pain inhibition.[286,287]

Although some drugs have been used to antagonize ketamine, no specific receptor antagonist reverses all the CNS effects of ketamine.

Ketamine increases cerebral metabolism, CBF, and ICP. Because of its excitatory CNS effects, which can be detected by generalized EEG development of theta wave activity and by petit mal seizure-like activity in the hippocampus, ketamine increases $CMRO_2$. There is an increase in CBF, which appears higher than the increase in $CMRO_2$ would mandate. With the increase in CBF and the generalized increase in sympathetic nervous system response, there is an increase in ICP after ketamine. The increase in $CMRO_2$ and CBF can be blocked by the use of thiopental or diazepam. Cerebrovascular responsiveness to carbon dioxide seems to be preserved with ketamine; reducing $PaCO_2$ attenuates the increase in ICP after ketamine.

S(+) ketamine may influence the expression of apoptosis-regulating proteins in rat brains 4 hours after cerebral ischemia/reperfusion. The neuroprotection observed with ketamine may involve antiapoptotic mechanisms in addition to reducing necrotic cell death.

In contrast, ketamine and other anesthetics like propofol and volatile anesthetics, accentuate apoptosis in the brain of newborn animals and cause changes in the morphology of dendritic spines. This finding has sparked controversy over the use of ketamine in neonates. An editorial in the journal *Anesthesiology* and the Anesthetic and Life Support Drugs Advisory Committee of the FDA cautioned changing clinical practice based on present available data.

Ketamine, similar to other phencyclidines, produces undesirable psychological reactions, which occur during awakening from ketamine anesthesia and are termed *emergence reactions*. The common manifestations of these reactions, which vary in severity and classification, are vivid dreaming, extracorporeal experiences (sense of floating out of body), and illusions (misinterpretation of a real, external sensory experience). These incidents of dreaming and illusion are often associated with excitement, confusion, euphoria, and fear. They occur in the first hour of emergence and usually abate within 1 to several hours. The psychic emergence reactions occur secondary to ketamine-induced depression of auditory and visual relay nuclei, leading to misperception or misinterpretation of auditory and visual stimuli. The incidence of the psychic emergence reactions ranges from 3% to 100%. A clinically relevant range is probably 10% to 30% of adult patients who receive ketamine as a sole or major part of the anesthetic technique. Factors that affect the incidence of emergence reactions are age, dose, gender, psychological susceptibility, and concurrent drugs. Pediatric patients do not report as high an incidence of unpleasant emergence reactions as do adult patients; men also report a less frequent incidence compared with women. Larger doses and rapid administration of large doses seem to predispose patients to a frequent incidence of adverse effects. Finally, certain personality types seem prone to the development of emergence reactions. Patients who score high in psychotism on the Eysenck Personality Inventory are prone to develop emergence reactions, and individuals who commonly dream at home are more likely to have postoperative dreams in the hospital after ketamine. While numerous drugs have been used to reduce the incidence and severity of postoperative reactions to ketamine, the benzodiazepines seem to be the most effective group of drugs. Next to the undesirable psychological reactions, increasingly ketamine is described for its antidepressant effects. The dose often used for this indication is 0.5 mg/kg, given as a 40-minute infusion. This often results in a dramatic mood change within a day, often lasting for 3 to 12 days. A maintenance dose every 2 to 4 days may lengthen this effect.[288] The precise mechanism of action of the antidepressant effects of ketamine remain unknown.

EFFECTS ON THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

Ketamine has minimal effects on the central respiratory drive as reflected by an unaltered response to carbon dioxide. There can be a transient (1-3 minutes) decrease in minute ventilation after the bolus administration of an induction dose of ketamine (2 mg/kg intravenously). Unusually large doses can produce apnea, but this is seldom seen. In a μ-opioid knockout mouse model, though, at supraspinal sites S(+) ketamine interacts with the μ-opioid receptor system. This interaction contributes significantly to S(+) ketamine-induced respiratory depression and supraspinal antinociception.[289,290] With the use of adjuvant sedatives or anesthetic drugs, respiratory depression may become clinically significant. Ketamine depresses ventilatory control in children especially with bolus doses. Ketamine is a bronchial smooth muscle relaxant. When it is given to patients with reactive airway disease and bronchospasm, pulmonary compliance is improved.

Ketamine is as effective as halothane or enflurane in preventing experimentally induced bronchospasm. The mechanism for this effect is probably a result of the sympathomimetic response to ketamine, but there are isolated bronchial smooth muscle studies showing that ketamine can directly antagonize the spasmogenic effects of carbachol and histamine. Owing to its bronchodilating effect, administration of ketamine can treat status asthmaticus unresponsive to conventional therapy. A potential respiratory problem, especially in children, is the increased salivation that follows ketamine administration, which can be modulated by an anticholinergic drug such as atropine or glycopyrolate.

EFFECTS ON THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Ketamine increases arterial blood pressure, heart rate, and cardiac output in a biphasic manner. It produces a direct cardiodepressive, negative inotropic effect next to an indirect stimulatory effect due to activation of the sympathetic system. Ketamine causes the systemic release of catecholamines, inhibition of the vagal nerve, inhibition of norepinephrine reuptake at peripheral nerves and non-neuronal tissues such as the myocardium, and norepinephrine release from sympathetic ganglia.[291] Cardiodepression precedes stimulation after large-dose ketamine administration or occurs after repeated administrations when presynaptic catecholamine stores become depleted. Cardiovascular stimulation already occurs after small-dose ketamine infusion and is characterized by tachycardia, systemic and pulmonary hypertension, increases in cardiac output, and myocardial oxygen consumption. Whereas the cardiovascular stimulatory effects of ketamine generally are dominant, after termination of S-ketamine infusion, cardiovascular depression may become evident as cardiac output may decrease below pre-infusion values.[273] The cardiovascular stimulatory effects of S(+) ketamine are characterized by an increase in the cardiac output of 1 L/min in the presence of 243 ng/ml S(+) ketamine.[273] The cardiovascular stimulatory effect of S(+) ketamine is induced very rapidly with a half-life for onset/offset of the effect of ketamine on cardiac output of 1 to 2 minutes. The increase in hemodynamic variables is associated with increased work and myocardial oxygen consumption. The healthy heart increases oxygen supply by increased cardiac output and decreased coronary vascular resistance, so that coronary blood flow is appropriate for the increased oxygen consumption. In patients with congenital heart disease, there are no significant changes in shunt directions or fraction, or systemic oxygenation after ketamine induction of anesthesia. In patients who have increased pulmonary artery pressure (as with mitral valvular and some congenital lesions), ketamine causes a more pronounced increase in pulmonary than systemic vascular resistance. Ketamine injected directly into the CNS produces an immediate sympathetic nervous system hemodynamic response. Ketamine also causes the sympathoneuronal release of norepinephrine, which can be detected in venous blood. Blockade of this effect is possible with barbiturates, benzodiazepines, and droperidol. The centrally mediated sympathetic responses to ketamine usually override the direct depressant effects of ketamine. Some peripheral nervous system actions of ketamine play an undetermined role in the hemodynamic effects of the drug. Ketamine inhibits intraneuronal uptake of catecholamines in a cocaine-like effect and inhibits extraneuronal norepinephrine uptake.

Stimulation of the cardiovascular system is not always desirable, and certain pharmacologic methods have been used to block the ketamine-induced tachycardia and systemic hypertension. Probably the most fruitful approach has been prior administration of benzodiazepines. Modest doses of diazepam, flunitrazepam, and midazolam all attenuate the hemodynamic effects of ketamine. It also is possible to decrease the tachycardia and hypertension caused by ketamine by using a continuous infusion technique with or without a benzodiazepine. Inhalation anesthetics and propofol blunt the hemodynamic effect of ketamine.

Uses

The many unique features of ketamine pharmacology, especially its propensity to produce unwanted emergence reactions in 10% to 20% of patients, have limited its use for routine anesthesia. Nevertheless, ketamine has an important niche in the practice of anesthesiology when its unique sympathomimetic activity and bronchodilating capabilities are indicated during induction of anesthesia. It is used for premedication, sedation, induction, and maintenance of general anesthesia. There has been increased interest in the use of ketamine in small doses for preventive analgesia, for the treatment or prevention of opiate tolerance and hyperalgesia, and in treatment of acute and chronic pain.

Induction and Maintenance of Anesthesia

The cardiovascular stimulatory effects make ketamine a desirable drug for the induction of anesthesia in unstable cardiovascular patients suffering from hypovolemia, hemorrhagic shock, or cardiovascular depression in sepsis. Ketamine bronchodilation and profound analgesia allowing the use of high oxygen concentrations make ketamine an excellent choice for induction of anesthesia in patients with reactive airway disease. Trauma patients with extensive blood loss are typical candidates for rapid-sequence anesthesia induction with ketamine. Patients with septic shock also may benefit from ketamine. The intrinsic myocardial depressant effect of ketamine may manifest in this situation if trauma or sepsis has caused depletion of catecholamine stores before the patient's arrival in the operating room. Use of ketamine in these patients does not obviate the need for appropriate preoperative preparation, including restoration of intravascular blood volume. Other cardiac diseases that can be well managed with ketamine anesthesia are cardiac tamponade and restrictive pericarditis. The finding that ketamine preserves heart rate and right atrial pressure through its sympathetic stimulating effects makes ketamine an excellent anesthetic induction and maintenance drug in this setting. Ketamine also is often used in patients with congenital heart disease, especially patients in whom the propensity for right-to-left shunting exists. Ketamine has been successfully used in a patient susceptible to malignant hyperthermia. Ketamine combined with propofol or midazolam can be given by continuous infusion to produce satisfactory cardiac anesthesia for patients with valvular and ischemic heart disease. The combination of a benzodiazepine or of a benzodiazepine plus sufentanil with ketamine attenuates or eliminates the unwanted tachycardia and hypertension and postoperative psychological derangements. With this technique, there are minimal hemodynamic perturbations, profound analgesia, dependable amnesia, and an uneventful convalescence. The use of propofol plus small-dose ketamine also has gained increasing popularity as a total IV anesthesia technique for patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. The advantages of this combination are maintenance of stable hemodynamics and minimal ventilatory depression when allowing spontaneous ventilation.

Pain Management

Postoperative pain is a major concern of many patients and inadequately treated in as many as 30% to 50% of all postoperative patients. Multimodal analgesia combining various analgesic agents that act through different pathways is the way to manage postoperative pain. Ketamine is increasingly used as one of the constituents of this multimodal analgesia therapy. Over the years the ketamine dose used for perioperative analgesia has gradually been decreasing. Ketamine administered in small doses decreases postoperative analgesic consumption by 33%. Several meta-analyses of the use of small-dose ketamine (20 to 60 mg) perioperatively have been performed. These meta-analyses showed an overall decrease in opiate use or improved analgesia and a decrease in opiate-induced side effects, especially PONV. Side effects, especially psychomimetic effects, were minimal, especially if a benzodiazepine also was administered.

The epidural/caudal administration of ketamine (0.5 to 1 mg/kg) is effective. Although the efficacy of these doses of ketamine seems to be established, the safety of this technique has not yet received regulatory approval. The preservative of racemic mixture is potentially neurotoxic, whereas studies to date indicate preservative-free S(+) ketamine may be safe. Epidural preservative-free S(+) ketamine has been shown to be safe and of value in adjunct to corticosteroids in patients for the treatment of chronic low back pain secondary to radiculopathy.[292] The favorable hemodynamic effects and conservation of respiration makes intravenously and even intranasally administered ketamine useful for analgesia after extremity fractures.

The action of ketamine on opiate tolerance and hyperalgesia combined with its direct analgesic activity has led to its use in chronic pain states. Ketamine may be effective in the treatment of cancer pain, chronic peripheral and central neuropathic pain, phantom and ischemic limb pain, fibromyalgia, complex regional pain syndrome, visceral pain, and migraine. Multiple open-label studies conclude positively on the analgesic properties of ketamine in cancer pain. Randomized controlled trials, though, so far could not prove a clinical benefit of ketamine for this indication.[293] Thus, while ketamine is effective for relief of postoperative pain, causing reduced opioid consumption, ketamine for most other indications appears to have limited efficacy and results in no beneficial effects.

BOX 23.3 Uses and Doses of Ketamine

Induction of general anesthesia*	0.5-2 mg/kg IV 4-6 mg/kg IM
Maintenance of general anesthesia	0.5-1 mg/kg IV with N_2O 50% in O_2 15-45 μg/kg/min IV with N_2O 50%-70% in O_2 30-90 μg/kg/min IV without N_2O
Sedation and analgesia	0.2-0.8 mg/kg IV over 2-3 min 2-4 mg/kg IM
Preemptive or preventive analgesia	0.15-0.25 mg/kg IV

*Lower doses are used if adjuvant drugs such as midazolam or thiopental also are given. *IM,* Intramuscular; *IV,* intravenous; *N_2O,* nitrous oxide.

From Reves JG, Glass P, Lubarsky DA, et al. Intravenous anesthetics. In: Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleischer LA, et al, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia,* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010: 719–768.

Sedation

Often, ketamine is combined with premedication of a barbiturate or benzodiazepine and an antisialagogue (e.g., glycopyrrolate) to facilitate management. The premedications reduce the dose requirement for ketamine, and the antisialagogue reduces the sometimes troublesome salivation. In adults and children, ketamine can be used as a supplement or an adjunct to regional anesthesia, extending the usefulness of the primary (local anesthetic) form of anesthesia. Also, in the emergency department ketamine is increasingly used for short painful procedures. The dose used then is between 0.1 to 0.6 mg/kg. As previously described, ketamine also may be considered for sedation of patients in a critical care unit because of its combined sedative and analgesic properties and favorable effects on hemodynamics. Ketamine can even be used safely in head injury patients when they are adequately ventilated.[294,295]

Ketamine is particularly suitable for sedation of pediatric patients undergoing procedures outside of the operating room. Pediatric patients have fewer adverse emergence reactions than adults, and this feature makes the use of ketamine in pediatric patients more versatile.

Doses and Routes of Administration

Ketamine has been administered intravenously, intramuscularly, transcutaneously, orally, nasally, and rectally, and as a preservative-free solution epidurally or intrathecally. Most clinical use involves the IV and intramuscular (IM) routes, by which the drug rapidly achieves therapeutic concentrations. The dose depends on the desired therapeutic effect and on the route of administration. Box 23.3 contains general recommended doses for the IV and IM administration of ketamine for various therapeutic goals. Intranasal administration has an onset closer to IV administration; an oral dose of 3 to 10 mg/kg generates a sedative effect in 20 to 45 minutes. For sedation, ketamine may be given in an IM dose of 2 to 4 mg/kg. It also has been administered orally in doses of 3 to 10 mg/kg, with 6 mg/kg providing optimal conditions in 20 to 25 minutes in one study and 10 mg/kg providing sedation in 87% of children within 45 minutes in another study.

Side Effects and Contraindications

Contraindications to ketamine relate to specific pharmacologic actions and patient diseases. In patients with increased ICP and breathing spontaneously, ketamine should be used with caution because it can increase ICP and has been reported to cause apnea. There is increasing clinical use of ketamine in emergency airway management in brain injury patients with or without other body injuries. In this setting, the current knowledge on safe management of increased ICP is continuing to grow.[294,295]

In mechanically ventilated patients, ketamine retains the response of CBF to carbon dioxide, which makes it useful in head-injured patients because of its potential neuroprotective effect. Ketamine may be contraindicated in patients with an open eye injury or other ophthalmologic disorder, in which a ketamine induced increase in intraocular pressure would be detrimental. Because ketamine has a propensity to cause hypertension and tachycardia, with a commensurate increase in myocardial oxygen consumption, it may be contraindicated as the sole anesthetic in patients with ischemic heart disease. Likewise, it is unwise to give ketamine to patients with vascular aneurysms because of the possible sudden change in arterial blood pressure. Psychiatric disease, such as schizophrenia, and a history of adverse reaction to ketamine or one of its congeners also are contraindications. One also should consider carefully using ketamine when there is a possibility of postoperative delirium from other causes (e.g., delirium tremens, possibility of head trauma), and a ketamine-induced psychomimetic effect would confuse the differential diagnosis.

As mentioned earlier, ketamine or other NMDA receptor antagonists accentuate apoptosis in the newborn brain of animals, and the clinical implications of this are unknown. Finally, because ketamine's preservative—chlorobutanol—is neurotoxic, this formulation of ketamine for subarachnoid or epidural administration is contraindicated. S(+) ketamine is available in a preservative-free solution. The FDA has not approved the use of intrathecal or epidural ketamine. Caudal ketamine has been used for perioperative analgesia in children and neonates with 0.5 mg/kg as the optimal dose. Caudal analgesia, by combinations of ketamine and a local anesthetic, prolongs analgesia from 2.26 to 5.3 hours and reduces the need for nonopioid analgesics.[296-300]

Lastly, liver and renal toxicity occurs in the recreational abuse of ketamine. In addition, when ketamine is repeatedly administered in the treatment of chronic pain in patients with complex regional pain syndrome type 1 (CRPS), hepatotoxicity developed in patients that received two 100-hour infusions of S(+)-ketamine with a 16-day interval.[298,301,302]

Etomidate

HISTORY

The first report on etomidate was published in 1965.[303] Etomidate was introduced into clinical practice in 1972. The unique properties of etomidate include hemodynamic stability, minimal respiratory depression, cerebral protection, favorable toxicity profile, and pharmacokinetics enabling rapid recovery after either a single dose or a continuous infusion. In the 1970s, these beneficial properties led to widespread use of etomidate for induction, for maintenance of anesthesia, and for prolonged sedation in critically

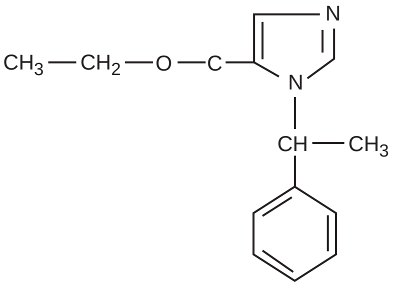


Fig. 23.16 **Structure of etomidate, an imidazole derivative.**

ill patients. The enthusiasm among clinicians for etomidate was tempered in the 1980s by reports that the drug can cause temporary inhibition of steroid synthesis after single doses and infusions.[304,305] This effect, combined with other minor disadvantages (e.g., pain on injection, superficial thrombophlebitis, myoclonus, and a frequent incidence of nausea and vomiting), led to several editorials questioning the role of etomidate in modern anesthetic practice.[306,307] Use of the drug decreased after those editorials, but its use has expanded again as a result of the rediscovery of etomidate's beneficial physiologic profile and a widening use in emergency departments and intensive care departments, combined with a lack of novel reports describing clinically significant adrenocortical suppression after induction or brief duration infusions.

PHYSICOCHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Etomidate is an imidazole derivative (R-(+)-pentylethyl-1H-imidazole-5 carboxylate sulfate). Its chemical structure is illustrated in Fig. 23.16. Etomidate has a pK_a of 4.2 and is hydrophobic at physiologic pH. To increase its solubility it is formulated as a 0.2% solution either in 35% propylene glycol (Amidate; Hospira Inc., Lafe Forest, IL) or in a lipid emulsion (Etomidate-Lipuro; B. Braun, Melsungen, Germany).[308]

PHARMACOKINETICS

The pharmacokinetics of etomidate have been determined after single bolus doses and after continuous infusion. The time course of plasma disappearance after a 0.3 mg/kg bolus is shown in Fig. 23.17. The pharmacokinetics of etomidate are best described by an open three-compartment model.[309]

The drug has an initial distribution half-life of 2.7 minutes, a redistribution half-life of 29 minutes, and an elimination half-life of 2.9 to 5.3 hours.[310] Clearance of etomidate by the liver is high (18-25 mL/kg/min), with a hepatic extraction ratio of 0.5 ± 0.9.[309] Because redistribution is the mechanism whereby the effect after a bolus of etomidate is dissipated (Box 23.4), hepatic dysfunction should not appreciably alter recovery from a single induction dose. Etomidate is 75% protein bound.

A hemorrhagic shock model in pigs bled to a MAP of 50 mm Hg did not alter etomidate pharmacokinetics or pharmacodynamics.[311] This finding contrasts with the marked changes seen in this same model with other IV anesthetics. In patients with cirrhosis, the volume of distribution is doubled, whereas clearance is normal; the result is an elimination half-life that is twice normal.[312] The initial distribution half-life and clinical effect are likely unchanged. Increasing age is associated with a smaller initial volume of distribution and a decreased clearance of etomidate.[313]

The short elimination half-life and the rapid clearance of etomidate make it suitable for administration in a single dose, in multiple doses, or in a continuous infusion with its context sensitive half-time being shorter than that of propofol.[314] Continuous infusion was practiced in the first decade of its clinical availability, but the now widely recognized adrenal suppression limits this application. Etomidate is metabolized in the liver primarily by ester hydrolysis to the corresponding carboxylic acid of etomidate (major metabolite) and an ethanol leaving group.[315] The main metabolite is inactive. Only 2% of the drug is excreted unchanged, the remaining part being excreted as metabolites by the kidney (85%) and bile (13%). Pathologic conditions altering serum proteins (e.g., hepatic or renal disease) affect the amount of the free (unbound) fraction and may cause a dose to have an exaggerated pharmacodynamic effect.[316]

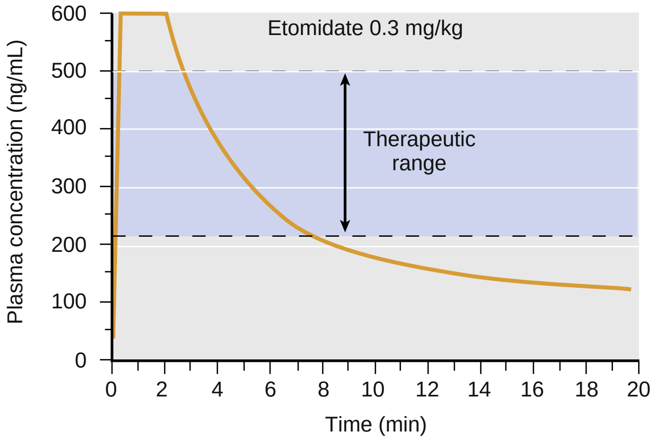


Fig. 23.17 Simulated time course of plasma levels of etomidate after an induction dose of 0.3 mg/kg. Plasma levels required for hypnosis during surgery are 300 to 500 ng/mL, with awakening usually occurring at levels less than 225 ng/mL.

BOX 23.4 Uses and Doses of Etomidate

Induction of general anesthesia	0.2-0.6 mg/kg IV
Sedation and analgesia	Limited to periods of brief sedation because of inhibition of corticosteroid synthesis

IV, Intravenous; *N_2O,* nitrous oxide.

From Reves JG, Glass P, Lubarsky DA, et al. Intravenous anesthetics. In Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleischer LA, et al, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia,* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010: 719–768.

Pharmacodynamics

EFFECTS ON THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

The primary action of etomidate on the CNS is through the $GABA_A$ receptor and results in hypnosis,[317,318] which is achieved in one arm–brain circulation after a normal induction dose (0.3 mg/kg). The mechanism by which etomidate produces hypnosis is almost exclusively through

$GABA_A$ receptor facilitation.[318,319] This includes two effects produced by different concentrations of etomidate. The first is the positive modulation of the $GABA_A$ receptor: activation of the receptor by agonists at concentrations associated with clinical doses. A lower dose of GABA is required in the presence of etomidate to activate the $GABA_A$ receptor.[320] The second action is called the direct activation or allosteric agonism. In supraclinical concentrations etomidate can directly, thus in absence of GABA, activate the $GABA_A$ receptor.[321] These two actions suggest two independent binding sites at the $GABA_A$ receptor.[318] These two binding sites on the $\alpha1\beta2\gamma2$ $GABA_A$ receptor contribute equally and non-cooperatively to drug interaction and gating effects. At a dose of 0.2 to 0.3 mg/kg, etomidate reduces CBF by 34% and $CMRO_2$ by 45% without altering MAP. CPP is maintained or increased, and there is a beneficial net increase in the cerebral oxygen supply-to-demand ratio.[322] Etomidate, given in doses sufficient to produce EEG burst suppression, acutely decreases ICP by 50% in patients with already increased ICP, returning increased ICP to almost normal values.[323] The decrease in ICP is maintained in the period immediately after intubation. To maintain the effects of etomidate on ICP, high infusion rates (60 μg/kg/min) are necessary. Controversy remains on the neuroprotective qualities of etomidate. There is a dose-dependent increase in latency and a decreasing amplitude of the auditory evoked potentials.[324]

Preliminary animal experiments suggest that in a case of acute fetal distress and hypoxic injury propofol and midazolam may be preferred over etomidate to protect the fetal brain as the first choice anesthetic in cesarean delivery.[199,325,326] Etomidate has been associated with grand mal seizures and produces increased EEG activity in epileptogenic foci. This feature has proven useful for intraoperative mapping of seizure foci before surgical ablation.[327,328] BIS monitor values decrease after etomidate bolus administration and return to baseline during recovery.[329] During etomidate infusion, the BIS values reliably predict the depth of sedation and hypnosis.[330]

Effects on the Respiratory System

Etomidate has less effect on ventilation than other anesthetics used to induce anesthesia. It does not induce histamine release in healthy patients or in patients with reactive airway disease.[331] Ventilatory response to carbon dioxide is depressed by etomidate, but the ventilatory drive at any given carbon dioxide tension is greater than that following an equipotent dose of methohexital.[153] Induction with etomidate produces a brief period of hyperventilation, sometimes followed by a similarly brief period of apnea,[332] which results in a slight (±15%) increase in $PaCO_2$, but no change in the partial pressure of arterial oxygen (PaO_2).[333] Etomidate's action on pulmonary vascular tone is similar to the actions observed with ketamine and propofol; that is, they attenuate the vasorelaxant responses to acetylcholine and bradykinine.[334]

Effects on the Cardiovascular System

The hemodynamic stability seen with etomidate is due to its lack of effect on the sympathetic nervous system and on the function of the baroreceptor. The effect of etomidate on the $\alpha2$-adrenoceptors generates an increase in blood pressure in vivo; this may contribute to the cardiovascular stability after induction of anesthesia. The minimal effect of etomidate on cardiovascular function sets it apart from other rapid-onset anesthetics.[335,336] Etomidate has proven useful in patients with valvular or ischemic heart disease undergoing noncardiac surgery and in patients with poor cardiac function.[337,338] In patients receiving etomidate during induction of anesthesia, more hypertension and tachycardia occurs after etomidate compared to propofol.[339] The myocardial oxygen supply-to-demand ratio is well maintained.[340] Etomidate lacks analgesic efficacy, however, and needs to be combined with an opiate to prevent hemodynamic perturbations during laryngoscopy and intubation.

In the setting of a hemorrhagic shock, etomidate provides advantages for induction of anesthesia. In contrast to other drugs, in a pig model of hemorrhagic shock the pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics of etomidate were minimally altered.[311]

Endocrine Effects

In 1983 Ledingham and Watt reported retrospective data showing increased mortality among intensive care patients receiving long-term etomidate infusion compared to patients receiving benzodiazepines.[304] They postulated that adrenal cortical suppression could be the cause of this increased mortality.

Soon after this publication, clinical investigators confirmed the adrenocortical suppression by etomidate.[305,341]

The specific endocrine effects manifested by etomidate are a dose-dependent reversible inhibition of the enzyme 11β-hydroxylase, which results in decreased biosynthesis of cortisol. The blockade of the cytochrome P450-dependent enzyme 11β-hydroxylase also results in decreased mineralocorticoid production and an increased formation of intermediaries (11-deoxycorticosterone) (Fig. 23.18). Subsequent research showed that etomidate is far more potent as an inhibitor of steroid synthesis than as a sedative hypnotic agent.[341,342] The etomidate concentrations associated with adrenal cortical suppression are less than 10 ng/mL, which are much lower than the concentrations needed for hypnosis (more than 200 ng/mL). The disparate concentrations for hypnosis and adrenotoxicity may explain the dramatic difference in duration of these two actions.[57]

The concerns about the use of etomidate and etomidate-induced adrenal toxicity in critically ill patients is still a matter of strong debate in the critical care community. A Cochrane review in 2015 of single-dose etomidate versus other induction agents for endotracheal intubation in critically ill patients reveals no conclusive evidence that etomidate increases mortality.[343] As indicated earlier, etomidate is associated with suppression of adrenal steroidogenesis, which can last up to 72 hours. However, the clinical impact of this adrenal suppressive effect is not certain.[344]

The Corticosteroid Therapy of Septic Shock (CORTICUS) study followed 500 patients with septic shock, who were randomized to receive either low-dose corticosteroid therapy or placebo. Twenty percent of the patients received etomidate. The study concluded that there was no benefit of low-dose corticosteroid therapy to long-term outcome.[345] Retrospective analyses of the CORTICUS population suggest that patients receiving etomidate before enrollment

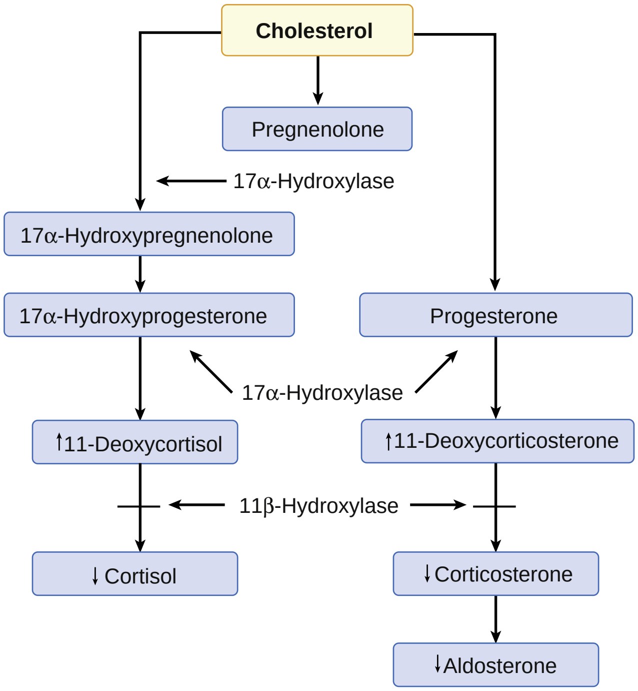


Fig. 23.18 Pathway for the biosynthesis of cortisol and aldosterone. The sites at which etomidate affects cortisol-aldosterone synthesis by its action on 11β-hydroxylase (major site) and 17α-hydroxylase (minor site) are illustrated.

had a 28-day mortality significantly higher and that steroid supplements provided no benefit.[346,347] Other studies designed to evaluate the effect of etomidate on morbidity and mortality and hospital and ICU length of stay are not conclusive.[348-351] In conclusion, the impact of the use of a single dose of etomidate in critically ill patients remains unclear.

Uses

INDUCTION OF ANESTHESIA

The induction dose of etomidate is 0.2 to 0.6 mg/kg.[352] The induction dose is reduced by premedication with an opiate, a benzodiazepine, or a barbiturate. Onset of anesthesia after a routine induction dose of 0.3 mg/kg of etomidate is rapid (one arm–brain circulation). Various infusion schemes have been devised to use etomidate as a maintenance anesthetic for the hypnotic component of anesthesia in the past. After the publications on the adrenocortical suppressive effects of etomidate, continuous infusion has been abandoned.

Etomidate is most appropriate in patients with cardiovascular disease, reactive airway disease, intracranial hypertension, or any combination of disorders indicating the need for an induction agent with limited or beneficial physiologic side effects. The hemodynamic stability of etomidate is unique among the rapid onset anesthetics used to induce anesthesia. In multiple studies, etomidate has been used for induction in patients with a compromised cardiovascular system who are undergoing coronary artery bypass surgery or valve surgery, and in patients requiring induction of general anesthesia for percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty, aortic aneurysm repair, and thoracic surgery. For cardioversion, the rapid onset, quick recovery, and maintenance of arterial blood pressure in these sometimes hemodynamically tenuous patients, combined with continued spontaneous respiration, make etomidate an acceptable choice.[353] Etomidate has been successfully used in neurosurgical procedures such as giant aneurysm clippings, making it a reasonable choice during neurosurgical induction.[354] In addition, etomidate should be considered as an anesthetic induction agent to reduce increased ICP when maintenance of cerebral or coronary perfusion pressure is also important.

Trauma patients with questionable intravascular volume status may be well served by an induction of anesthesia with etomidate. When using etomidate in trauma patients, loss of consciousness by itself can be associated with decreased adrenergic output, and controlled ventilation can exacerbate the cardiovascular effects of a decreased preload. Both of these factors may cause a significant decrease in arterial blood pressure during induction of anesthesia despite etomidate having no direct cardiovascular drug effect.

Short-term sedation with etomidate is useful in hemodynamically unstable patients, such as patients requiring cardioversion or patients requiring sedation after an acute myocardial infarction or with unstable angina for a minor operative procedure.[353] When used during electroconvulsive therapy, etomidate can produce longer seizures compared with other hypnotics.[355,356] Induction of anesthesia with etomidate is an independent risk factor in the development of an emergence delirium.[357]

Treatment in Hypercortisolemia

Etomidate has a special place in the treatment of endogenous hypercortisolemia. It is proven to be an effective parenteral treatment for this indication. In patients with unstable hemodynamics, patients with a sepsis, or patients with a psychosis, treatment should be performed under intensive care conditions.[358]

Side Effects

Although etomidate provides stable hemodynamics and minimal respiratory depression, it is associated with several adverse effects when used for induction, including PONV, pain on injection, myoclonic movement, and hiccups. More recently, etomidate in a lipid emulsion was associated with an equal or an increased incidence of postoperative nausea compared with propofol.[359-361]

The lipid formulation of etomidate is associated with a much less frequent incidence of pain on injection, thrombophlebitis, and histamine release.[362,363] Pain on injection may be reduced by injecting lidocaine, 20 to 40 mg immediately before injection of etomidate.

The incidence of muscle movement (myoclonus) and of hiccups is highly variable (0%-70%), but myoclonus is reduced by premedication with a hypnotic like midazolam or a small dose of magnesium 60 to 90 seconds before the induction dose of etomidate is given.[364,365]

Novel Etomidate Derivatives

Etomidate is a well-known and widely used anesthetic for induction of anesthesia. The limitations of etomidate are, as mentioned earlier, adrenocortical suppression, myoclonus, and PONV. Modifying etomidate could improve its clinical utility and produce etomidate derivatives with a better profile. Methoxycarbonyl etomidate (MOC) is an etomidate derivative and is rapidly metabolized to methoxycarbonyl etomidate carboxylic acid (MOC-ECA). MOC has almost equal hypnotic potency as etomidate, and the duration of the induced anesthesia is short due to rapid metabolization by nonspecific esterase enzymes. In preclinical studies MOC may not act as an inhibitor of adrenal steroid synthesis.[366] The accumulation of metabolites, leading to delayed recovery, makes it less than ideal for infusion.

Carboetomidate, another derivative, contains a five-membered pyrrole ring instead of an imidazole. In tadpoles and rats, carboetomidate reduces the adrenal suppression potency by three orders. Carboetomidate has potent hypnotic properties by activating $GABA_A$ receptors, which causes minimal hemodynamic changes.[367] Another potential benefit is its inhibition of the 5-HT3 receptor in a rat model; carboetomidate may have decreased emetogenic properties.

Another etomidate derivative, methoxycarbonyl-carboetomidate (MOC-carboetomidate), combines the favorable effects with no adrenal suppression and potency of the parent compound, but has a longer duration of action and makes it disadvantageous for longer infusions.

Cyclopropyl-methoxycarbonyl metomidate (CPMM) and dimethyl-methoxycarbonyl metomidate (DMMM) are the newest derivatives of etomidate. They have a higher potency and fast recovery time after infusion duration of 2 hours. So far, they are most promising in animal studies and inflammatory sepsis models.

Dexmedetomidine

HISTORY

The α_2-adrenergic receptor agonists have sedative, anxiolytic, hypnotic, analgesic, and sympatholytic effects. Its potential for use in anesthesia was recognized in patients who were treated with clonidine.[368] Soon a reduction of the minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) of halothane by clonidine was described.[369] Dexmedetomidine is a more selective α_2-agonist with a selectivity ratio for the α_2-receptor compared with the α_1-receptor of 1600:1, as compared to a ratio of 220:1 for clonidine. It was introduced in clinical practice in the United States in 1999 and approved by the FDA only as a short-term (<24 hours) sedative for mechanically ventilated adult ICU patients. Dexmedetomidine is used for prolonged sedation and anxiolysis in the ICU, as well as outside of the ICU in various settings, including sedation and adjunct analgesia in the operating room, sedation in diagnostic and procedure units, and for other applications such as withdrawal/detoxification amelioration in adult and pediatric patients.[370,371]

PHYSICOCHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Dexmedetomidine is the S-enantiomer of medetomidine, a substance that has been used for sedation and analgesia in veterinary medicine for many years.[372] It shows a high ratio of specificity for the α_2-receptor ($\alpha_2/\alpha_1 = 1600{:}1$) compared with clonidine ($\alpha_2/\alpha_1 = 220{:}1$), making it a complete α_2-agonist.[373] The pK_a is 7.1. Dexmedetomidine belongs to the imidazole subclass of α_2-receptor agonists, similar to clonidine, and its structure is illustrated in Fig. 23.19. It is freely soluble in water and available as a clear isotonic solution containing 100 µg per mL and 9 mg sodium chloride per mL of water. Before infusion, this solution is diluted to a concentration of 4 µg/mL or 8 µg/mL by adding either saline, 5% glucose, mannitol, or Ringer lactate solution. It is not to be combined with amfoteracine B, amfoteracine B in liposomes, diazepam, phenytoin, gemtuzumab, irinotecan, or pantoprazole.

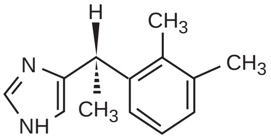


Fig. 23.19 Chemical structure of dexmedetomidine.

METABOLISM AND PHARMACOKINETICS

Dexmedetomidine undergoes almost complete biotransformation with very little unchanged dexmedetomidine excreted in urine and feces. Biotransformation involves both direct glucuronidation as well as cytochrome P450–mediated metabolism. The major metabolic pathways of dexmedetomidine are: direct N-glucuronidation to inactive metabolites, hydroxylation (mediated primarily by CYP2A6), and N-methylation. Polymorphism in CYP2A6 does not influence clinical dosing regimens.[374] Dexmedetomidine is 94% protein bound, and its concentration ratio between whole blood and plasma is 0.66. Dexmedetomidine has effects on cardiovascular variables, potentially causing bradycardia, transient hypertension or hypotension, and may alter its own pharmacokinetics. With large doses, there is marked vasoconstriction, which probably reduces the drug's volumes of distribution. The observed hypertension may be avoided by decreasing the loading dose or by increasing the time of administration.

In essence, dexmedetomidine displays nonlinear pharmacokinetics.[375] Its pharmacokinetics in volunteers are best described by a three-compartment model (see Table 23.1). Many subsequent studies in various patient populations have investigated the clinical pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, the results of which are reviewed and summarized by Weerink and colleagues.[376] One of the findings is that the bodyweight adjustment dosing that is currently applied is only justified in a non-obese population. For obese patients, fat-free mass may be more appropriate, but this is still subject to investigation.

In subjects with varying degrees of hepatic impairment (Child-Pugh Class A, B, or C), clearance values for dexmedetomidine are slower than in healthy subjects. The mean clearance values for patients with mild, moderate, and severe hepatic impairment are 74%, 64%, and 53% of those observed in the normal healthy subjects, respectively.

The pharmacokinetics of dexemedetomidine are not influenced by renal impairment (creatinine clearance <30 mL/min) or age. In patients with severe renal disease, the sedative effect may be stronger, due to a lower

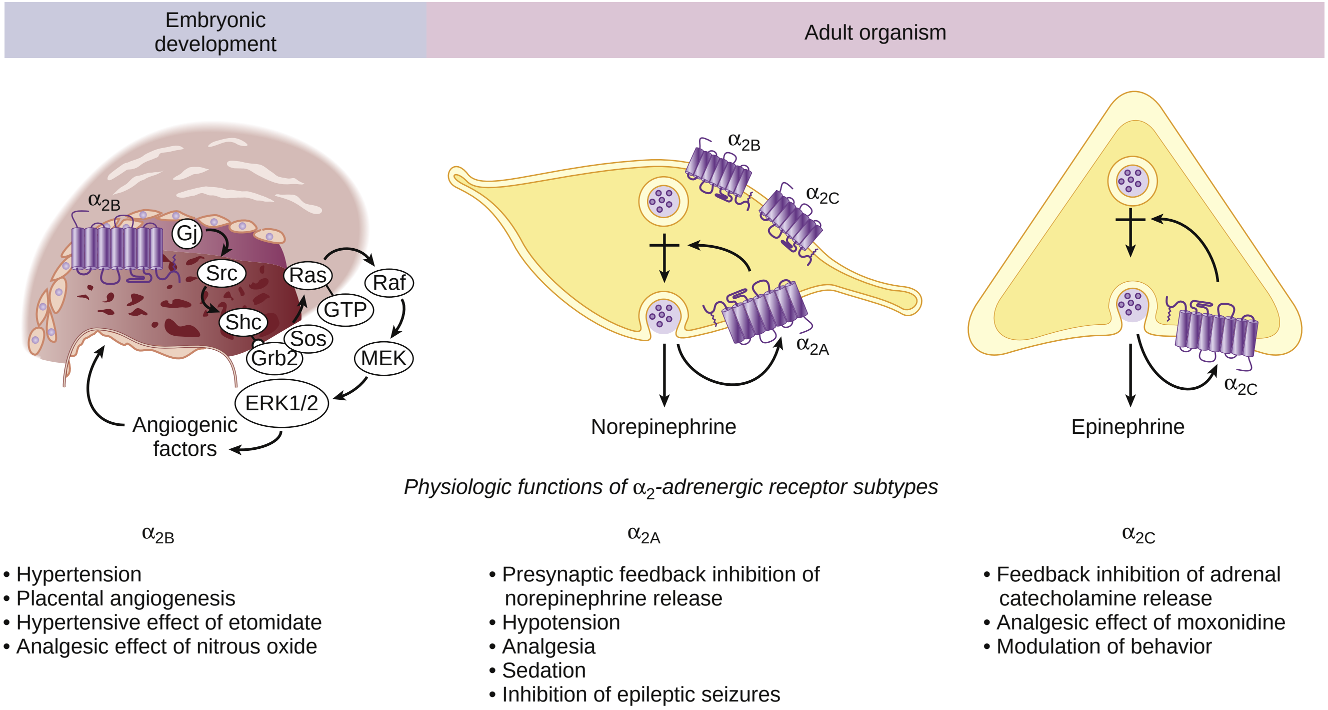

Embryonic development
Adult organism
α2B
Gj
Src
Ras
Raf
GTP
Shc
Sos
Grb2
MEK
ERK1/2
Angiogenic factors
α2B
α2C
α2A
Norepinephrine
α2C
Epinephrine
Physiologic functions of α_2-adrenergic receptor subtypes
α2B
• Hypertension
• Placental angiogenesis
• Hypertensive effect of etomidate
• Analgesic effect of nitrous oxide
α2A
• Presynaptic feedback inhibition of norepinephrine release
• Hypotension
• Analgesia
• Sedation
• Inhibition of epileptic seizures
α2C
• Feedback inhibition of adrenal catecholamine release
• Analgesic effect of moxonidine
• Modulation of behavior

Fig. 23.20 The different physiologic functions of α2 adrenoreceptors. The top panel depicts the three α2 receptor subtypes acting as presynaptic inhibitory feedback receptors to control the release of norepinephrine and epinephrine from peripheral or central adult neurons. Also, a negative feedback loop has been seen in the adrenal gland. Alpha2B receptors have been involved in the development of the placental vascular system during prenatal development. The lower panel lists a series of physiologic effects with its associated α2 adrenoreceptors. (From Paris A, Tonner PH. Dexmedetomidine in anaesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;18:412-418.)

degree of plasma protein binding. Clearance is a function of height.[375,377] The elimination half-life of dexmedetomidine is 2 to 3 hours, with a context-sensitive half-time ranging from 4 minutes after a 10-minute infusion to 250 minutes after an 8-hour infusion. Postoperative patients sedated with dexmedetomidine display similar pharmacokinetics to the pharmacokinetics seen in volunteers.[378] No clinically relevant cytochrome P450–mediated drug interaction has been found.

PHARMACOLOGY

Dexmedetomidine acts as a nonselective α_2-agonist on membrane bound G-protein coupled α_2-adrenoreceptors. Intracellular pathways include inhibition of adenylate cyclase and modulation of calcium and potassium ion channels. Three subtypes of α_2 adrenoreceptors have been described in humans: α_{2A}, α_{2B}, and α_{2C} (Fig. 23.20).[379] The α_{2A} adrenoreceptors are primarily distributed in the periphery, whereas α_{2B} and α_{2C} are in the brain and spinal cord. Postsynaptically located α_2 adrenoreceptors in peripheral blood vessels produce vasoconstriction, whereas presynaptic α_2 adrenoreceptors inhibit the release of norepinephrine, potentially attenuating the vasoconstriction. The overall response to α_2 adrenoreceptor agonists is related to the stimulation of α_2 adrenoreceptors located in the CNS and spinal cord. These receptors are involved in the sympatholysis, sedation, and antinociceptive effects of α_2 adrenoreceptors.[380] The α_2 agonists have the advantage that their effects are readily reversible by α_2-adrenergic antagonists (e.g., atipamezole).[381] Atipamezole is currently not approved for use in humans.

Effects on the Central Nervous System

SEDATION

The α_2 agonists produce their sedative-hypnotic effect by an action on α_2 receptors in the locus caeruleus and an analgesic action at α_2 receptors within the locus caeruleus and within the spinal cord.[382] Dexmedetomidine produces a decrease in activity of the projections of the locus caeruleus to the ventrolateral preoptic nucleus. As a result GABAergic and galanin release in the tuberomammillary nucleus is increased, producing a decrease in histamine release in cortical and subcortical projections.[383] The α_2 agonists inhibit ion conductance through L-type or P-type calcium channels and facilitate conductance through voltage-gated calcium-activated potassium channels. Dexmedetomidine induces sedation through different receptors than the sedative drugs propofol or benzodiazepines, which exert their action through the GABA system. The sedative effect of dexmedetomidine acts through the endogenous sleep-promoting pathways, generating natural sleep patterns (Fig. 23.21).[384] Patients have been described as being very easy to wake up and having the ability to follow commands and cooperate while being tracheally intubated. Undisturbed, patients were noted to fall asleep momentarily.[385] This characteristic allows for “daily wake up” tests to be done in a safe fashion. This critical test—when ventilated ICU patients are taken off all sedatives to assess their mental status and titrate sedation—shortens their ventilated and ICU length of stay.[386,387] The plasma concentration at which significant yet rousable sedation is achieved is about

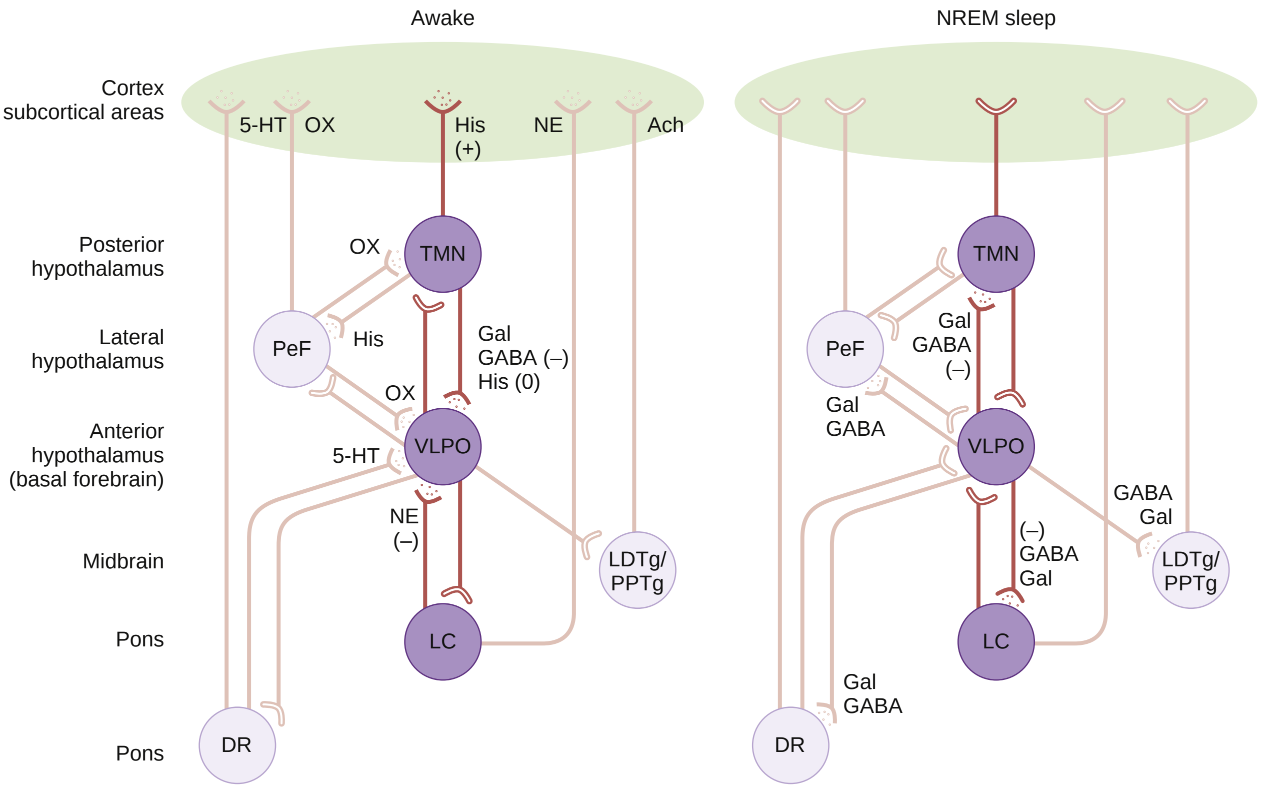


Fig. 23.21 Dexmedetomidine has been shown to induce a non–rapid eye movement sleeping pattern *(NREM)*. The stimulation of the locus caeruleus *(LC)* by dexmedetomidine (right diagram) releases the inhibition the LC has over the ventrolateral preoptic nucleus *(VLPO)*. The VLPO subsequently releases γ-aminobutyric acid *(GABA)* onto the tuberomammillary nucleus *(TMN)*. This inhibits the release of the arousal-promoting histamine on the cortex and forebrain, inducing the loss of consciousness. (From Ebert T, Maze M. Dexmedetomidine: another arrow for the clinician's quiver. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:569–570.)

0.2 to 0.3 ng/mL. Unarousable deep sedation is thought to occur at plasma concentrations above 1.9 ng/mL.[388]

The number of patients experiencing delirium in the ICU is significantly lower when sedated with dexmedetomidine, compared to propofol or lorazepam,[389] or midazolam.[390]

Although the precise mechanism by which dexmedetomidine preserves cognition is still unclear, there are data that suggest that the suppression of $\alpha 5$ γ-aminobutyric acid type A receptor expression after exposition to an anesthetic may play a role.[391]

ANALGESIA

The analgesic effect of the α_2 agonists is mediated through stimulation of the α_{2C} and α_{2A} receptor in the dorsal horn, directly suppressing pain transmission by reducing the release of pronociceptive transmitters, substance P and glutamate, and hyperpolarization of interneurons.[392] Systemic use of dexmedetomidine has an opioid sparing effect during surgery and postoperatively.[393] This is advantageous in patients who are prone to postoperative apnea or hypoventilation, as with patients undergoing bariatric surgery.[394] In the postoperative ICU setting, narcotic requirements are reduced by 50% when patients are receiving a dexmedetomidine drip compared with placebo.[385] During general anesthesia, it reduces the MAC of inhaled anesthetics.[395,396]

Like clonidine, dexmedetomidine is frequently used as an adjuvant in central or peripheral neural blockade. When administered caudally, 1 µg/kg as adjuvant to bupivacaine 0.25% 1 mL/kg, in children undergoing inguinal hernia repair, response to hernial sac traction is reduced and postoperative analgesia is prolonged.[397] Dexmedetomidine has been investigated in volunteers when administered as an adjuvant to ropivacaine in ulnar nerve block[398] and tibial nerve block.[399] Both studies showed intensification and foremost prolongation of the sensory blockade. This effect is likely elicited by prolonged hyperpolarization of the unmyelinated C-fibers (sensory), and to a lesser extent of the A-fibers (motor function).

Central Nervous System Protection and Other Central Nervous System Effects

The CNS protective effects are not well defined. Dexmedetomidine in animal models of incomplete cerebral ischemia and reperfusion reduces cerebral necrosis and improves neurologic outcome. The prevalent idea is that dexmedetomidine reduces the intracerebral catecholamine outflow during injury. The neuroprotection may be attributed to modulation of proapoptotic and antiapoptotic proteins.[400] Also, the reduction of the excitatory neurotransmitter glutamate during injury may explain some of the protective effects.[401]

In patients undergoing transsphenoidal hypophysectomy, dexmedetomidine has no effect on lumbar cerebral fluid pressure.[402] In other studies, CBF velocity at the middle cerebral artery, as measured by transcranial Doppler, decreased with increasing concentrations of dexmedetomidine but CO_2 responsiveness and autoregulation were preserved.[403,404] The decrease in CBF is not accompanied by a reduction in $CRMO_2$. More recently, in a study in six normal volunteers, the administration of dexmedetomidine to achieve serum levels of 0.6 ng/mL and 1.2 ng/mL (with and without hyperventilation) produced the predicted reduction of CBF with a concomitant reduction in $CRMO_2$.[405] This finding suggests that on the maintenance of the cerebral oxygen supply-to-demand relationship, further work in injured brains needs to be done.

Dexmedetomidine has been used in neurosurgical procedures involving neurophysiologic monitoring. Cortical evoked potentials, amplitudes, and latencies were minimally affected when using dexmedetomidine intraoperatively. It may also be suitable as an anesthetic adjunct during seizure surgery, since the epileptiform activity of seizure foci was not reduced by dexmedotomidine.[406]

EFFECTS ON THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

In spontaneous breathing volunteers, dexmedetomidine at concentrations producing significant sedation reduces minute ventilation, but results in no change in arterial oxygenation, pH, or the slope in the CO_2 ventilatory response curve. In a study comparing the effects of remifentanil and dexmedetomidine on respiratory parameters in normal volunteers, the hypercapnic ventilatory response was unaffected even at doses that produced unresponsiveness to vigorous stimulation.[407] Dexmedetomidine exhibited a hypercarbic arousal phenomenon, which has been described during normal sleep.

EFFECTS ON THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Ebert and colleagues performed a study in volunteers using a target-controlled infusion system to provide increasing concentrations (0.7 to 15 ng/mL) of dexmedetomidine (Fig. 23.22). The lowest two concentrations produced a decrease in MAP (13%) followed by progressive increase (12%). Increasing concentrations of dexmedetomidine also produce progressive decreases in heart rate (maximum 29%) and cardiac output (35%). The most commonly reported hemodynamic adverse reactions associated with dexmedetomidine in a phase III trial in 401 patients were hypotension (30%), hypertension (12%), and bradycardia (9%).[372] The initial increase in arterial blood pressure is probably due to the vasoconstrictive effects of dexmedetomidine

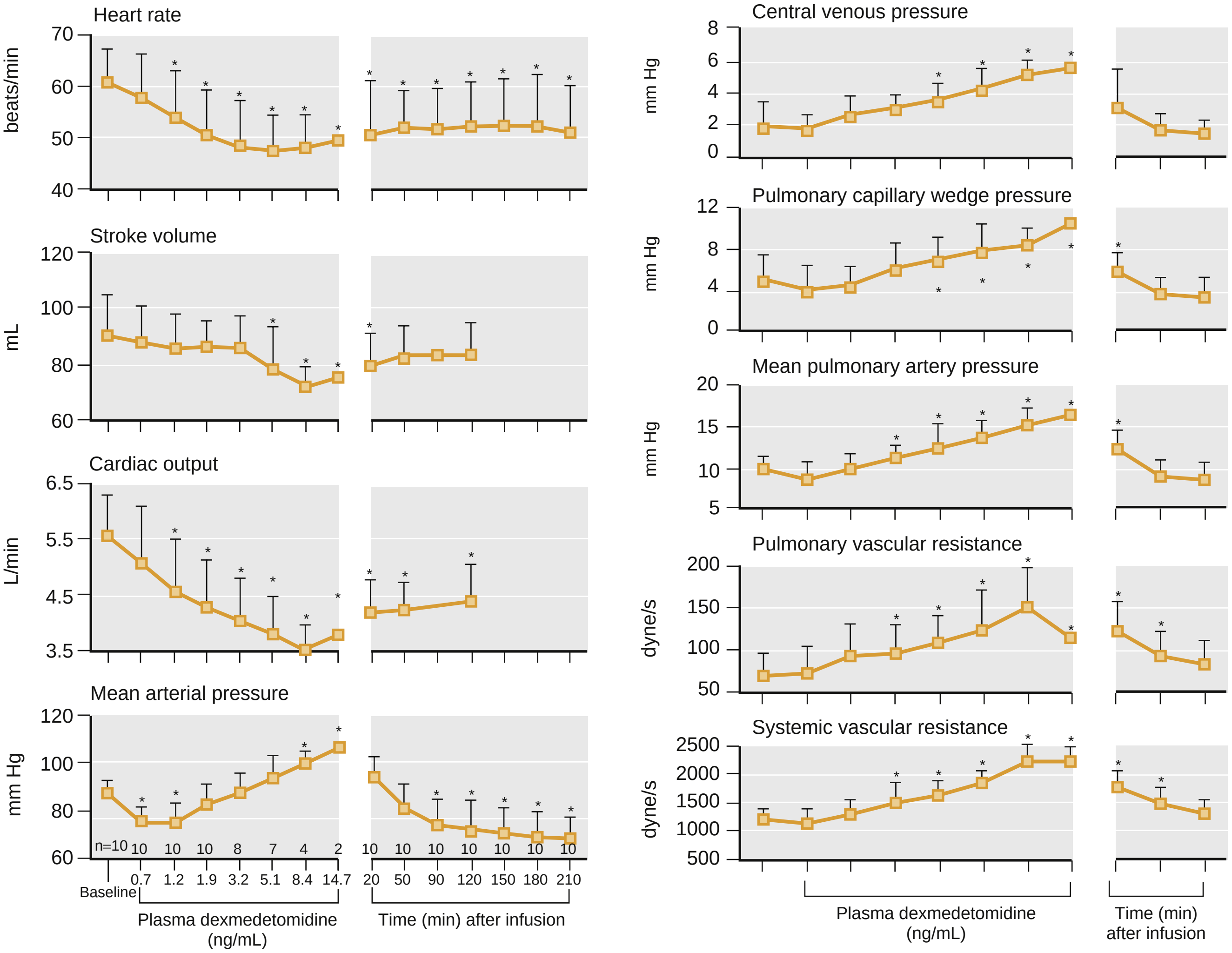


Fig. 23.22 Effects of increasing plasma concentrations of dexmedetomidine.

when stimulating peripheral α_2 receptors. The incidence of hypotension and bradycardia may be related to the administration of a large intravenous "loading" dose. Omitting the loading dose or not giving more than 0.4 µg/kg reduces the incidence of hypotension or makes it less pronounced. Giving the loading dose over 20 minutes also minimizes the transient hypertension.[408] In several studies after IM and IV administration, dexmedetomidine caused, in a small percentage of patients, profound bradycardia (<40 beats/min) and occasionally sinus arrest/pause. Generally, these episodes resolved spontaneously or were readily treated without adverse outcome by anticholinergics. No rebound effects have been found when discontinuing a dexmedetomidine infusion, even when it was given for more than 24 hours.[409] As clonidine and dexmedetomidine have shown to reduce perioperative oxygen consumption and blunt the sympathetic response to surgery, cardiac outcome may be improved.[410,411] However, more studies are needed to determine whether dexmedetomidine is beneficial in decreasing the risk of myocardial ischemia.

USES

Dexmedetomidine has been approved as a short-term sedative for adult intubated patients in the ICU. Given its well-documented beneficial effects of anxiolysis, sedation, analgesia, and sympatholysis with minimal respiratory depression, it also has been used in various other clinical scenarios. It is registered for use as a sedative during radiological or invasive procedures. Two studies, comprising 140 children 1 to 7 years old, reported successful sedation for MRI scans compared with midazolam or propofol.[412] For a thorough review of a wide range of studies on various procedures under sedation in different populations, we refer to Gerlach et al.[413]

As a premedicant, dexmedetomidine, at IV doses of 0.33 to 0.67 µg/kg given 15 minutes before surgery, seems efficacious, while minimizing the cardiovascular side effects of hypotension and bradycardia.[396] Dexmedetomidine has a high bioavailability when administered nasally or buccally. This improves compliance and absorption in younger children. A dose of 3 to 4 µg/kg 1 hour before surgery is safe and effective.

In a study comparing the efficacy of dexmedetomidine or propofol as a sedative agent in a group of 40 patients receiving local anesthesia or regional blocks, dexmedetomidine (1 µg/kg given over 10 minutes) when used for intraoperative sedation resulted in a slower onset than propofol (75 µg/kg/min for 10 minutes) but had similar cardiorespiratory effects when titrated to equal sedation. The average infusion rate of dexmedetomidine intraoperatively to maintain a BIS value of 70 to 80 was 0.7 µg/kg/min. Sedation was more prolonged after termination of the infusion, as was recovery of arterial blood pressure. Dexmedetomidine can also produce profound sedation, and it has been used as a total IV anesthetic when given at 10 times the normal sedation concentration range.[414] This characteristic, combined with the cooperative status of the patient at a lighter sedative level, and its analgesic effect with sparing of respiratory function, makes the drug suitable as a hypnotic during surgical procedures like awake craniotomy, deep brain stimulation, surgery near speech areas, or awake carotid endarterectomies, with fewer fluctuations from the desired sedation level and more stable hemodynamics.[403] A recent study shows that dexmedetomidine may be advantageous by improving the quality of emergence from general anaesthesia in avoiding coughing, agitation, hypertension, tachycardia, and shivering. This may be achieved by administration of dexmedetomidine 1 µg/kg intravenously at the end of surgery. Time to extubation is not prolonged.[415] The opioid-sparing effects are advantageous in the performance of bariatric surgery in patients who are prone to postoperative respiratory depression.[394]

Dexmedetomidine can be employed for addiction treatment; it has been described for use in rapid opioid detoxification, cocaine withdrawal, and iatrogenic-induced benzodiazepine and opioid tolerance after prolonged sedation.[416] The use in opioid/benzodiazepine withdrawal therapy in pediatric patients during mechanical ventilation in intensive care areas has been described as well.[417]

Dexmedetomidine may produce dry mouth due to a decrease in salivation. Combined with the sparing effect on respiratory function, this effect is beneficial for the facilitation of awake fiberoptic intubation, an application which is rapidly emerging.[418] Furthermore, dexmedetomidine decreases intraocular pressure and decreases the shivering threshold.[419]

The role of general anaesthesia in oncological surgery is still under debate. Studies of the in vitro and in vivo effects on lung carcinoma and neuroglioma cell lines have shown that dexmedetomidine enhanced cancer proliferation and migration, primarily by the upregulation of anti-apoptotic proteins. The clinical relevance of these findings remains to be determined.[163a]

INTENSIVE CARE UNIT

Dexmedetomidine may have advantages over propofol for sedation in mechanically ventilated postoperative patients. Heart rate was slower in the dexmedetomidine group, whereas MAP was similar. The PaO_2/FiO_2 ratio was significantly higher in the dexmedetomidine group. Time to extubation of the trachea after discontinuation of the infusion was similar at 28 minutes. Patients receiving dexmedetomidine had greater recall of their stay in the ICU, but all described this as pleasant overall.[421] Several other studies have confirmed the decreased requirement for opioids (>50%) when dexmedetomidine is used for sedation compared with propofol or benzodiazepines. Hemodynamics during weaning are more stable, which benefits patients with high risk for myocardial ischemia.[422] For sedation in the ICU, loading doses of 0.5 to 1 µg/kg have been used. Omitting the bolus dose or giving the lower dose has been associated with fewer episodes of severe bradycardia and other hemodynamic perturbations. Infusion rates of 0.1 to 1 µg/kg/h are generally needed to maintain adequate sedation. Delirium in the ICU is a risk factor for increased length of stay and increased mortality.[423] In a double-blind, randomized controlled trial of sedation in ventilated patients with dexmedetomidine versus lorazepam, it was found that using dexmedetomidine infusions provided more days alive without delirium or coma and a greater amount of time spent at the appropriate sedation level compared with lorazepam.[389] It also improved the patient's ability to communicate pain, compared to midazolam or propofol in two recent trials.[386] The unique characteristics of dexmedetomidine, that is providing adequate sedation with minimal respiratory depression, make this selective α_2-adrenoceptor agonist very useful when weaning patients from the ventilator.[424] While the FDA approved the use of dexmedetomidine infusions for 24 hours or less, multiple studies have shown the safety of using this agent for longer periods, even up to 30 days.[390]

Droperidol

HISTORY

Janssen[298,301] synthesized haloperidol, the first member of the butyrophenones, which became the primary neuroleptic component in neuroleptanesthesia. In 1959, DeCastro and Mundeleer combined haloperidol with phenoperidine (a meperidine derivative also synthesized by Janssen) in the forerunner to the practice of neuroleptanesthesia. Droperidol, a derivative of haloperidol, and fentanyl (a phenoperidine congener), both synthesized by Janssen, were used by DeCastro and Mundeleer in a combination they reported to be superior to haloperidol and phenoperidine. This neuroleptanesthesia combination produced more rapid onset of analgesia, less respiratory depression, and fewer extrapyramidal side effects. The fixed combination of droperidol and fentanyl, marketed as Innovar in the United States, was the drug primarily used for neuroleptanesthesia. The use of neuroleptanesthesia has largely disappeared in modern anesthetic practice. The primary use of droperidol in anesthesia has been as an antiemetic and to a lesser extent as a sedative and antipruritic. In addition, droperidol is used as an antipsychotic agent and to reduce agitation.[425]

In 2001, the FDA issued a black box warning regarding the use of droperidol and its potential for fatal arrhythmias and recommended that it be administered only during continuous electrocardiogram monitoring. With the withdrawal of droperidol in certain countries and more stringent labeling regarding potentially lethal dysrhythmias in others, the use of droperidol has decreased markedly. The validity of the risk of low-dose droperidol in causing QT prolongation, dysrhythmias, and death has been challenged by numerous editorials, articles, and letters reviewing the cases that prompted this action.[298,426-430] In Europe, 19 out of 25 countries with council members in the European Society of Anesthesiologists reported that droperidol is regularly used in a dosage of 0.5 to 2.5 mg for the prevention of PONV. Furthermore, in 2007, an international consensus panel recommended droperidol despite the FDA warning as a first-line antiemetic.[298,431]

Droperidol is a butyrophenone, a fluorinated derivative of phenothiazines (Fig. 23.23). Butyrophenones produce CNS depression, characterized by marked apparent tranquility and cataleptic immobility and are potent antiemetics. Droperidol is a potent butyrophenone, and, similar to the others, it produces its action centrally at sites where dopamine, norepinephrine, and serotonin act.[298,432] It has been postulated that butyrophenones may occupy GABA receptors on the postsynaptic membrane, reducing synaptic transmission and resulting in a build-up of dopamine in the synaptic cleft. In particular, droperidol results in a submaximal inhibition of the $GABA_A$ α_1, β_1, and γ_2 acetylcholine receptors and full inhibition of α_2 acetylcholine receptors. This submaximal inhibition of GABA receptors by droperidol may explain the anxiety, dysphoria, and restlessness that may occur with its administration.[298,433] An imbalance in dopamine and acetylcholine is thought to occur with subsequent alteration in normal transmission of signals in the CNS. The chemoreceptor trigger zone is the emetic center, and "red" astrocytes transport neurolept molecules from the capillary to dopaminergic synapses in the chemoreceptor trigger zone, where they occupy GABA receptors. This is thought to be the mechanism by which droperidol exerts its antiemetic effect.

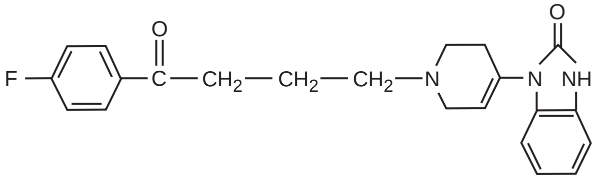


Fig. 23.23 Structure of droperidol, a butyrophenone derivative.

PHARMACOKINETICS

Droperidol is biotransformed in the liver into two primary metabolites. Its plasma decay can be described by a two-compartment model. The pharmacokinetics[298,434] is shown in Table 23.1.

Pharmacodynamics

EFFECTS ON THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

The effects of neurolept anesthetics on human CBF and $CMRO_2$ have not been studied. In dogs, droperidol causes potent cerebral vasoconstriction, producing a 40% reduction in CBF. No significant change in $CMRO_2$ occurs during droperidol administration. The EEG in conscious patients shows some reduction in frequency, with occasional slowing. Low-dose droperidol also has been shown to cause balance disturbances at the time of discharge after doses used for antiemetic prophylaxis. Droperidol may produce extrapyramidal signs and worsen symptoms of Parkinson disease, which is why the drug should be used with great caution in patients with this degenerative disorder. It also rarely may precipitate malignant neuroleptic syndrome.

EFFECTS ON THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

When used alone, droperidol has little effect on the respiratory system. Droperidol (0.044 mg/kg) given to surgical patients produced a slight reduction in respiratory rate, and IV droperidol (3 mg) had no significant effect on tidal volume in volunteers. More detailed respiratory studies are unavailable.

EFFECTS ON THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Similar to most antipsychotics, droperidol may prolong the QT interval by delaying myocardial repolarization and precipitating torsades de pointes.[298,435] This seems to be dose dependent and may be of clinical significance when other causes of QT prolongation also are present. Droperidol also may possess some antiarrhythmic effects that are similar to those of quinidine. Droperidol produces vasodilation with a decrease in blood pressure (see Table 23.3). This effect is considered to be a result of moderate α-adrenergic blockade. The dopamine-induced increase in renal blood flow (renal artery flowmeter methodology) is not significantly impaired by administration of droperidol. Droperidol has little effect on myocardial contractility.

USES

Use of droperidol today in the perioperative period is largely restricted to its antiemetic and sedative effects. It is an effective antiemetic; the dose for this use ranges from 10 to 20 μg/kg IV (typically 0.6-1.25 mg for a 70-kg individual).[298,436] Because droperidol in dosages below 1 mg produce antiemetic effects and because the cardiac side effects may be dose-dependent, an IV dose below 1 mg for prevention of PONV is advisable.[437] These doses of droperidol, given at the start of anesthesia for operations lasting 1 hour, reduce the incidence of nausea and vomiting by about 30%. These doses given at induction have little effect on wake-up time, but should they be given at the end of surgery, there could be some residual hypnotic effect. Overall, antiemetic efficacy of droperidol alone is equal to that of ondansetron and results in an equal number of side effects, but droperidol is more cost-effective. The efficacy of droperidol as an antiemetic is enhanced when used in combination with serotonin antagonists or dexamethasone, or both. Droperidol also has been shown to be effective in the treatment and prevention of pruritus secondary to opioid administration. It has been given intravenously and into the epidural space for this purpose. When used in this fashion, droperidol also effectively reduces nausea, but it increases sedation. The safety of droperidol administration into the epidural space has not been fully evaluated, however, and it is not approved for administration via this route.

Summary

Many different IV drugs are available for use in the care of patients requiring general anesthesia or sedation. The selection of a particular drug, but more often of a combination of drugs, must be based on the individual patient's need for hypnosis, amnesia, and analgesia. Drug selection must match the physiology and/or pathophysiology of the individual patient with the pharmacology of the particular drug(s). In addition, based on the pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic interactions now described, optimal dosage of hypnotic-analgesic combinations may be selected. A patient in shock who requires induction of anesthesia should receive the drug that produces rapid onset of effect without causing further hemodynamic compromise. The knowledge of the clinical pharmacology of each of the IV anesthetic drugs enables the clinician to induce and maintain sedation or general anesthesia safely and effectively. There is no single perfect drug for any particular patient, but rather the informed practitioner wisely employs the appropriate drug or drugs in the practice of good anesthesia care.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. J.G. Reeves, Peter S.A. Glass, David A. Lubarsky, Matthew D. McEvoy, and Richardo Martinez-Ruiz for contributing a chapter on this topic in a previous edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Jarman R. *Postgrad Med*. 1946;22:311.
2. Glen JB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1982;54:231.
3. Adam HK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52:743.
4. Glen JB. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52:230.
5. Glen JB. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52:731.
6. James R, Glen JB. *J Med Chem*. 1980;23:1350.
7. Grossherr M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:608.
8. Grossherr M, et al. *Xenobiotica*. 2009;39:782.
9. Liu B, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2012;26:29.
10. Cowley NJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:870.
11. Struys MMRF, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:395.
12. Struys MMRF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:1056.
13. Garnock-Jones KP, Scott LJ. *Drugs*. 2010;70:469.
14. Vree TB, et al. *J Chromatogr B Biomed Sci Appl*. 1999;721:217.
15. Bleeker C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:207.
16. Takizawa D, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2004;76:648.
17. Takizawa D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:327.
18. Kuipers JA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1780.
19. Reekers M, et al. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2003;523:19.
20. Lichtenbelt BJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1597.
21. Chen TL, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:558.
22. Candiotti K, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38:U268.
23. Candiotti KA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:550.
24. Gan TJ, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22:260.
25. Cohen LB, et al. *J Clin Gastroenterol*. 2010;44:345.
26. Abdelmalak B, et al. *Curr Pharm Des*. 2012;18:6241.
27. Patwardhan A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:837.
28. Sneyd JR, Rigby-Jones AE. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:246.
28a. Feng AY, et al. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2017;33(1):9.
28b. van den Berg JP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(Issue 5):918.
29. Vuyk J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:183.
30. Schnider TW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1502.
31. Marsh B, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:41.
32. Marsh BJ, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:S97.
33. Gepts E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:1256.
34. Schuttler J, Ihmsen H. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:727.
35. Hughes MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:334.
36. Kazama T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1517.
37. Shafer A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:348.
38. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1557.
39. Mertens MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:795.
40. Leslie K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:1007.
41. Upton RN, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:545.
42. Kazama T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1156.
43. Allegaert K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:864.
44. Allegaert K, et al. *Neonatology*. 2007;92:291.
45. Kirkpatrick T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;60:146.
46. Vuyk J. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 2001;52:445.
47. Kataria BK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:104.
48. Murat I, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:A1131.
49. Murat I, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:526.
50. Servin F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:887.
51. Servin F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65:177.
52. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1522.
53. Mertens MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:949.
54. Krasowski MD, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 1998;53:530.
55. Krasowski MD, et al. *Neuropharmacology*. 2001;41:952.
56. Forman SA, Ruesch D. *Biophys J*. 2003;84:87A.
57. Forman SA. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:695.
58. Ruesch D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:47.
59. Franks NP. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9:370.
60. Kushikata T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1201.

61. Stamatakis EA, et al. *PLoS One*. 2010;5:e14224.
62. Xie G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:548.
63. Lingamaneni R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1460.
64. Lingamaneni R, Hemmings HC. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:199.
65. Dong XP, Xu TL. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:907.
66. Pain L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:915.
67. Gelb AW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:A752.
68. Rigby-Jones AE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1393.
69. Rigby-Jones AE, Sneyd JR. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:247.
70. Murray DM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:318P.
71. Glass PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:836.
72. San-Juan D, et al. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2010;121:998.
73. Hodkinson BP, et al. *Lancet*. 1987;2:1518.
74. Wilson C, et al. *Clin Toxicol*. 2010;48:165.
75. Kirby RR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1182.
76. Wischmeyer PE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1066.
77. Noterman J, et al. *Neurochirurgie*. 1988;34:161.
78. Steiner LA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:572.
79. Adembri C, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:A24.
80. Adembri C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:80.
81. Adembri C, et al. *CNS Drug Rev*. 2007;13:333.
82. Kotani Y, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2008;28:354.
83. Gelb AW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1183.
84. Gelb AW. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:33.
85. Cattano D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1712.
86. Pesic V, et al. *Int J Dev Neurosci*. 2009;27:279.
87. Lanigan C, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:810.
88. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:3.
89. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:288.
90. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1549.
91. Spelina KR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:1080.
92. Smith C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:820.
93. Kazama T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:872.
94. Dahan A, et al. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2003;523:81.
95. Nieuwenhuijs DJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:312.
96. Goodman NW, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:1497.
97. Jonsson MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:110.
98. Larsen R, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43(suppl):25.
98a. de Wit F, et al. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2016;116(6):784.
99. Pagel PS, Warltier DC. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:100.
100. Samain E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:U169.
101. Samain E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:546.
102. Xia ZY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:527.
103. Huang ZY, et al. *Clin Sci*. 2011;121:57.
104. Denborough M, Hopkinson KC. *Lancet*. 1988;1:191.
105. Denborough MA. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:156.
106. Foster PS, et al. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 1992;19:183.
107. Mertes PM, Laxenaire MC. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:821.
108. Laxenaire MC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:275.
109. Laxenaire MC. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 1994;13:498.
110. Gan TJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:779.
111. Bennett SN, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333:147.
112. Devlin JW, et al. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2005;25:1348.
113. Kazama T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:299.
114. Mertens MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:347.
115. Minto CF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1603.
116. Short TG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:162.
117. Reich DL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:622.
118. Lichtenbelt BJ, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2004;43:577.
119. Johnson KB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:647.
120. Kurita T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:398.
120a. Reade MC, Finfer S. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:444.
121. Jacobi J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:119.
121a. Olutoyin OA, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2018;218:98.
121b. Malhotra A, et al. *Brain Sci*. 2017;7(8):107.
121c. Jiang S, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2018;831:1.
122. Jalota L, et al. *BMJ*. 2011;342:d1110.
123. Roberts R, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:A180.
124. Fodale V, La Monaca E. *Drug Saf*. 2008;31:293.
125. Otterspoor LC, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2008;21:544.
126. Fudickar A, Bein B. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2009;75:339.
127. Lundy JS. *J Am Assoc Nurse Anesth*. 1966;34:95.
128. Bennetts FE. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75:366.
129. Mahisekar UL, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1994;6:55.
130. Mark L. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1963;4:504.
131. Granick S. *J Biol Chem*. 2012;238:PC2247.
132. Breimer DD. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:643.
133. Henthorn TK, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1989;45:56.
134. Christensen JH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52:913.
135. Morgan DJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:474.
136. Downie DL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:774.
137. Tomlin SL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1714.
138. Fredriksson A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:427.
139. Liu H, Yao S. *Exp Brain Res*. 2005;167:666.
140. Liu H, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:442.
141. Judge SE. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:191.
141a. Forman SA, Miller KW. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(5):1263.
142. Stullken EH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:28.
143. Baughman VL. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2002;20(vi):315.
144. Albrecht RF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;47:252.
145. Pancrazio JJ, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1993;265:358.
146. Mark LC, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1957;119:35.
147. Burch PG, Stanski DR. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:146.
148. Stella L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51:119.
149. Brodie BB, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1960;130:20.
150. Homer TD, Stanski DR. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:714.
151. Sorbo S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:666.
152. Gross JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:540.
153. Choi SD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:442.
154. Todd MM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:681.
155. Sonntag H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1975;19:69.
156. Dundee JW, Moore J. *Anaesthesia*. 1961;16:50.
157. Touw DJ. *Drug Metabol Drug Interact*. 1997;14:55.
158. Bajwa SJ, et al. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;27:440.
159. Ding Z, White PF. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1351.
160. Messina AG, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;10:CD007272.
161. Rodriguez E, Jordan R. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2002;20:199.
162. Winsky-Sommerer R. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2009;29:1779.
163. Reynolds LM, et al. *Neuropsychopharmacology*. 2012;37(11):2531.
163a. Wang C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129:1000–1014.
164. Stovner J, Endresen R. *Lancet*. 1965;2:1298.
165. Reves JG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:310.
166. Wesolowski AM, et al. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2016;36(9):1021–1027.
167. Greenblatt DJ, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1983;8:233.
168. Greenblatt DJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:27.
169. Thummel KE, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1996;59:491.
170. Allonen H, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1981;30:653.
171. Greenblatt DJ, et al. *Pharmacology*. 1983;27:70.
172. Dundee JW, et al. *Drugs*. 1984;28:519.
173. Pentikainen PJ, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 1989;29:272.
174. Wandel C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:658.
175. Heizmann P, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1983;16(suppl 1):43S–49S.
175a. van Rongen A, et al. *Br J Clin Pharnacol*. 2015;80:1185.
176. Bauer TM, et al. *Lancet*. 1995;346:145–147.
177. Divoll M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62:1.
178. Gamble JA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1975;30:164.
179. Greenblatt DJ, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1980;27:301.
180. Klotz U, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1975;55:347.
181. Andersson T, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1994;38:131.
182. Jung F, et al. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 1997;25:133.
183. Yang TJ, et al. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 1999;27:102.
184. Locniskar A, Greenblatt DJ. *Biopharm Drug Dispos*. 1990;11:499.
185. Greenblatt DJ, et al. *J Pharm Sci*. 1979;68:57.
186. Greenblatt DJ. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1981;6:89.
187. Saari TI, et al. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2011;63:243.
188. Rogers WK, McDowell TS. *IDrugs*. 2010;13:929.
189. Upton RN, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:848.
190. Antonik LJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:274.
191. Tsukagoshi E, et al. *J Pharmacol Sci*. 2011;115:221.
192. Ostuni MA, et al. *Inflamm Bowel Dis*. 2010;16:1476.
193. Mould DR, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1995;58:35.
194. Mohler H, Richards JG. *Eur J Anaesthesiol Suppl*. 1988;2:15.
195. Mohler H, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2002;300:2.
196. Kohno T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:338.
197. Ho KM, Ismail H. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2008;36:365.
198. Forster A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:453.
199. Harman F, et al. *Childs Nerv Syst*. 2012;28:1055.
200. Norton JR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1155.
201. Sunzel M, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1988;25:561.
202. Alexander CM, Gross JB. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:377.

203. Tverskoy M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68:282.
204. Coote JH. *Exp Physiol*. 2007;92:3.
205. Li YF, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 2006;291:H2847.
206. von Moltke LL, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 1996;36:783.
207. Olkkola KT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:511.
208. Goldstein JA. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2001;52:349.
209. Sim SC, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2006;79:103.
210. Ishizaki T, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1995;58:155.
211. Qin XP, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1999;66:642.
212. Ahonen J, et al. *Fundam Clin Pharmacol*. 1996;10:314.
213. Luurila H, et al. *Pharmacol Toxicol*. 1996;78:117.
214. Kamali F, et al. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1993;44:365.
215. Andersson T, et al. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1990;39:51.
216. Perucca E, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1994;56:471.
217. Abernethy DR, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1985;234:345.
218. Samara EE, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 1997;37:442.
219. Vinik HR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:213.
220. Hong W, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:1227.
221. McClune S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:240.
222. Bauer KP, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2004;16:177.
223. Kain ZN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1147.
224. Hargreaves J. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61:611.
225. Pollock JS, Kenny GN. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70:219.
226. George KA, Dundee JW. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1977;4:45.
227. Cole SG, et al. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 1983;29:219.
228. McNulty SE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:404.
229. Lee SH. *Dig Dis Sci*. 2012;57:2243.
230. Garewal D, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev(6)*. 2012:CD007274.
231. Tverskoy M, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1996;21:209.
232. Frolich MA, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:79.
233. Nitsun M, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2006;79:549.
234. Walder B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:975.
235. Barr J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41:263.
236. Mehta S, et al. *JAMA*. 1985;308:2012.
237. Breimer LT, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1990;18:245.
238. Jacobs JR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:143.
239. Melvin MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:238.
240. Theil DR, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1993;7:300.
241. Jung JS, et al. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2007;137:753.
242. Heidari SM, et al. *Adv Biomed Res*. 2012;1:9.
243. Lee Y, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:18.
244. Riad W, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:697.
245. Riad W, Marouf H. *Middle East J Anesthesiol*. 2009;20:431.
246. Fujii Y, Itakura M. *Clin Ther*. 2010;32:1633.
247. Rinehart JB, et al. *Neurologist*. 2012;18:216.
248. Brogden RN, Goa KL. *Drugs*. 1991;42:1061.
249. File SE, Pellow S. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 1986;88:1.
250. Cumin R, et al. *Experientia*. 1982;38:833.
251. Haefely W, Hunkeler W. *Eur J Anaesthesiol Suppl*. 1988;2:3.
252. Klotz U, Kanto J. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1988;14:1.
253. Klotz U, et al. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1984;27:115.
254. Lauven PM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:61.
255. Kleinberger G, et al. *Lancet*. 1985;2:268.
256. Yokoyama M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:87.
257. Amrein R, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1988;16(suppl):S5.
258. Rubio F, et al. *Lancet*. 1993;341:1028.
259. Donovan KL, Fisher DJ. *BMJ*. 1989;298:1253.
260. Zuber M, et al. *Eur Neurol*. 1988;28:161.
261. Lassaletta A, et al. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2004;20:319.
262. Rouiller M, et al. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 1987;6:1.
263. Duka T, et al. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 1986;90:351.
264. Nilsson A. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1990;92:51.
265. Ueda K, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2013;57:488.
266. Weinbrum A, Geller E. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1990;92:65.
267. Ghoneim MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:899.
268. White PF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:119.
269. Bovill JG. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1186.
270. Bovill JG, et al. *Lancet*. 1971;1:1285.
271. Nimmo WS, Clements JA. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:186.
272. Clements JA, Nimmo WS. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:27.
273. Olofsen E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:536.
274. Olofsen E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:353.
275. Dahan A, et al. *Eur J Pain*. 2011;15:258.
276. White M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:330.
277. Sigtermans M, et al. *Eur J Pain*. 2010;14:302.
278. Noppers I, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1435.
279. Kharasch ED, Labroo R. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:1201.
280. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:1208.
281. Sigtermans M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:892.
282. Sigtermans MJ, et al. *Pain*. 2009;145:304.
283. Weinbroum AA. *Pharmacol Res*. 2012;65:411.
284. Niesters M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:1063.
285. Niesters M, et al. *Pain*. 2011;152:656.
286. Niesters M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:868.
287. Niesters M, Dahan A. *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol*. 2012;8:1409.
288. Lee EE, et al. *Gen Hosp Psychiatry*. 2015;37(2):178.
289. Nieuwenhuijs D, et al. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2002;29:A77.
290. Sarton E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1495.
291. Timm C, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2008;57:338.
292. Amr YM. *Pain Physician*. 2011;14:475.
293. Jonkman K, et al. *Curr Opin Support Palliat Care*. 2017;11(2):88.
294. Bar-Joseph G, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37:A402.
295. Bar-Joseph G, et al. *J Neurosurg Pediatr*. 2009;4:40.
296. Dahmani S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:636.
297. Dahmani S. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:1081.
298. Schnabel A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:601.
299. Walker SM, Yaksh TL. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:638.
300. Walker SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:450.
301. Janssen PA. *Int J Neuropsychiatry*. 1967;3(suppl 1):S10.
302. Noppers IM, et al. *Pain*. 2011;152:2173.
303. Godefroi EF, et al. *J Med Chem*. 1965;8:220.
304. Ledingham IM, Watt I. *Lancet*. 1983;1:1270.
305. Wagner RL, White PF. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:647.
306. Longnecker DE. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:643.
307. Owen H, Spence AA. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56:555.
308. Doenicke A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79:386.
309. Van Hamme MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49:274.
310. Schuttler J, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1985;2:133.
311. Johnson KB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1360.
312. van Beem H, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1983;38(suppl):61.
313. Arden JR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:19.
314. Sear J. Total intravenous anesthesia. In: Longnecker DE, Brown DL, Newman MF, Zapol WM, eds. *Anesthesia*. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical; 2008:897.
315. Heykants JJ, et al. *Arch Int Pharmacodyn Ther*. 1975;216:113.
316. Meuldermans WE, Heykants JJ. *Arch Int Pharmacodyn Ther*. 1976;221:150.
317. Evans RH, Hill RG. *Experientia*. 1978;34:1325.
318. Guitchounts G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1235.
319. Cheng VY, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2006;26:3713.
320. Carlson BX, et al. GABA-A receptors and anesthesia. In: Yaksh TL, Lynich C, Zapol WM, et al., eds. *Anesthesia: Biologic Foundations*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1998:259.
321. Rusch D, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:20982.
322. Cold GE, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1986;30:159.
323. Modica PA, Tempelhoff R. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:236.
324. Thornton C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:554.
325. Drummond JC, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1995;37:742.
326. Flower O, Hellings S. *Emerg Med Int*. 2012;2012:637171.
327. Ebrahim ZY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:1004.
328. Pastor J, et al. *Epilepsia*. 2010;51:602.
329. Lallemand MA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:341.
330. Kaneda K, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;51:482.
331. Guldager H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1985;29:352.
332. Morgan M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1977;49:233.
333. Colvin MP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51:551.
334. Ogawa K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:668.
335. Gooding JM, Corssen G. *Anesth Analg*. 1977;56:717.
336. Gooding JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1979;58:40.
337. Bovill JG. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;10:43.
338. Sprung J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:68.
339. Möller PA, Kamenik M. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:388.
340. Larsen R, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 1988;37:510.
341. Fragen RJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:839.
342. Diago MC, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43:644.
343. Bruder EA, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;1:CD010225.
344. Cherfan AJ, et al. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2012;32:475.
345. Sprung CL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:111.
346. Lipiner-Friedman D, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:1012.
347. Cuthbertson BH, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35:1868.

348. Hildreth AN, et al. *J Trauma*. 2008;65:573.
349. Tekwani KL, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2009;16:11.
350. Ray DC, McKeown DW. *Crit Care*. 2007;11:R56.
351. Jung B, et al. *Crit Care*. 2012;16:R224.
352. Nimmo WS, Miller M. *Contemp Anesth Pract*. 1983;7:83.
353. Canessa R, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1991;5:566.
354. Kim TK, Park IS. *J Korean Neurosurg Soc*. 2011;50:497.
355. Wang N, et al. *J ECT*. 2011;27:281.
356. Avramov MN, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:596.
357. Radtke FM, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2010;76:394.
358. Preda VA, et al. *Eur J Endocrinol*. 2012;167:137.
359. St Pierre M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2000;17:634.
360. Mayer M, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 1996;45:1082.
361. Wu J, et al. *Contraception*. 2013;87:55.
362. Doenicke AW, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:464.
363. Nyman Y, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:536.
364. Huter L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1298.
365. Un B, et al. *J Res Med Sci*. 2011;16:1490.
366. Cotten JF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:240.
367. Cotten JF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:637.
368. Maze M, Tranquilli W. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:581.
369. Bloor BC, Flacke WE. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:741.
370. Gerlach AT, Dasta JF. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2007;41:245.
371. Tobias JD. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8:115.
372. Bhana N, et al. *Drugs*. 2000;59:263.
373. Virtanen R, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1988;150:9.
374. Wang L, et al. *Expert Rev Clin Pharmacol*. 2018;11(9):917.
375. Dyck JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:821.
376. Weerink MAS, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2017;56(8):893.
377. De Wolf AM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1205.
378. Venn RM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:669.
379. Aantaa R, Jalonen J. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2006;23:361.
380. Paris A, Tonner PH. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;18:412.
381. Aho M, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1993;5:194.
382. Guo TZ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:873.
383. Nelson LE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:428.
384. Angst MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:744.
385. Venn RM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1999;54:1136.
386. Jakob SM, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;307:1151.
387. Kress JP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:1471.
388. Ebert TJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(2):382.
389. Pandharipande PP, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;298:2644.
390. Riker RR, et al. *JAMA*. 2009;301:489.
391. Wang D-S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129:477.
392. Ishii H, et al. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2008;27:3182.
393. McCutcheon CA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:668.
394. Hofer RE, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:176.
395. Aho M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:997.
396. Aantaa R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:230.
397. Xiang Q, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:420.
398. Marhofer D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:438.
399. Rancourt MP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:958.
400. Engelhard K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:524.
401. Talke P, Bickler PE. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:551.
402. Talke P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:358.
403. Bekker A, Sturaitis MK. *Neurosurgery*. 2005;57:1.
404. Zornow MH, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1993;13:350.
405. Drummond JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:225.
406. Talke P, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2007;19:195.
407. Hsu YW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:1066.
408. Riker RR, Fraser GL. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2005;25:8S.
409. Venn M, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29:201.
410. Jalonen J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:331.
411. Talke P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:620.
412. Koroglu A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:63.
413. Gerlach AT, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2009;43(12):2064.
414. Ramsay MA, Luterman DL. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:787.
415. Aouad MT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
416. Maccioli GA. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:575.
417. Phan H, Nahata MC. *Paediatr Drugs*. 2008;10:49.
418. Maroof M, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:776.
419. Yazbek-Karam VG, Aouad MM. *Middle East J Anesthesiol*. 2006;18:1043.
420. Deleted in proofs.
421. Venn RM, Grounds RM. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:684.
422. Triltsch AE, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:1007.
423. Ely EW, et al. *JAMA*. 2004;291:1753.
424. Siobal MS, et al. *Respir Care*. 2006;51:492.
425. Khokhar MA, Rathbone J. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;12:CD002830.
426. Dershwitz M. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14:598.
427. Gan TJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:287.
428. Gan TJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1809.
429. White PF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1101.
430. White PF, Abrao J. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:386.
431. Gan TJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1615.
432. Gan TJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2006:47–51.
433. Flood P, Coates KM. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:987.
434. Fischler M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:486.
435. Wooltorton E. *CMAJ*. 2002;166:932.
436. Hill RP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:958.
437. Schaub I, et al. *Eur J Anesthesiol*. 2012;29:286.

References

1. Jarman R. History of intravenous anaesthesia with ten years' experience in the use of pentothal sodium. *Postgrad Med J*. 1946;22:311–318.
2. Glen JB, Hunter SC, Thomson DS. The role of cremophor El in anaphylactoid reactions to IV anesthetics. *Br J Anaesth*. 1982;54:231–232.
3. Adam HK, Glen JB, Hoyle PA. Pharmacokinetics in laboratory-animals of Ici 35-868, a new IV anesthetic agent. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52:743–746.
4. Glen JB. Animal pharmacology of Ici-35-868—new IV anesthetic agent. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52:230.
5. Glen JB. Animal studies of the anesthetic activity of Ici 35-868. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52:731–742.
6. James R, Glen JB. Synthesis, Biological Evaluation, and Preliminary Structure-Activity Considerations of A Series of Alkylphenols As Intravenous Anesthetic Agents. *J Med Chem*. 1980;23:1350–1357.
7. Grossherr M, Hengstenberg A, Meier T, et al. Propofol concentration in exhaled air and arterial plasma in mechanically ventilated patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:608–613.
8. Grossherr M, Hengstenberg A, Dibbelt L, et al. Blood gas partition coefficient and pulmonary extraction ratio for propofol in goats and pigs. *Xenobiotica*. 2009;39:782–787.
9. Liu B, Pettigrew DM, Bates S, Laitenberger PG, Troughton G. Performance evaluation of a whole blood propofol analyser. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2012;26:29–36.
10. Cowley NJ, Laitenberger P, Liu B, Jarvis J, Clutton-Brock TH. Evaluation of a new analyser for rapid measurement of blood propofol concentration during cardiac surgery. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:870–874.
11. Struys MMRF, Fechner J, Schuttler J, Schwilden H. Requested retraction of six studies on the PK/PD and tolerability of fospropofol. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:395.
12. Struys MMRF, Fechner J, Schuttler J, Schwilden H. Erroneously Published Fospropofol Pharmacokinetic-Pharmacodynamic Data and Retraction of the Affected Publications (Retracted Article). *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:1056–1057.
13. Garnock-Jones KP, Scott LJ. Fospropofol. *Drugs*. 2010;70:469–477.
14. Vree TB, Lagerwerf AJ, Bleeker CP, de Grood PMRM. Direct high-performance liquid chromatography determination of propofol and its metabolite quinol with their glucuronide conjugates and preliminary pharmacokinetics in plasma and urine of man. *J Chromatogr B*. 1999;721:217–228.
15. Bleeker C, Vree T, Lagerwerf A, Bree EWV. Recovery and long-term renal excretion of propofol, its glucuronide, and two di-isopropylquinol glucuronides after propofol infusion during surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:207–212.
16. Takizawa D, Hiraoka H, Nakamura K, Yamamoto K, Horiuchi R. Propofol concentrations during the anhepatic phase of living-related donor liver transplantation. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2004;76:648–649.
17. Takizawa D, Hiraoka H, Goto F, Yamamoto K, Horiuchi R. Human kidneys play an important role in the elimination of propofol. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:327–330.
18. Kuipers JA, Boer F, Olieman W, Burm AG, Bovill JG. First-pass lung uptake and pulmonary clearance of propofol: assessment with a recirculatory indocyanine green pharmacokinetic model. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1780–1787.
19. Reekers M, Boer F, Vuyk J. Basic concepts of recirculatory pharmacokinetic modelling. *Advances in Modelling and Clinical Application of Intravenous Anaesthesia*. 2003;523:19–26.
20. Lichtenbelt BJ, Olofsen E, Dahan A, van Kleef JW, Struys MM, Vuyk J. Propofol reduces the distribution and clearance of midazolam. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1597–1606.
21. Chen TL, Ueng TH, Chen SH, Lee PH, Fan SZ, Liu CC. Human cytochrome P450 mono-oxygenase system is suppressed by propofol. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:558–562.
22. Candiotti K, Gan T, Young C, et al. Safety and tolerability of fospropofol for patients requiring intubation and mechanical ventilation in the Icu: randomized, open-label study vs propofol. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38:U268.
23. Candiotti KA, Gan TJ, Young C, et al. A Randomized, Open-Label Study of the Safety and Tolerability of Fospropofol for Patients Requiring Intubation and Mechanical Ventilation in the Intensive Care Unit. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:550–556.
24. Gan TJ, Berry BD, Ekman EF, Muckerman RC, Shore N, Hardi R. Safety evaluation of fospropofol for sedation during minor surgical procedures. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22:260–267.
25. Cohen LB, Cattau E, Goetsch A, et al. A Randomized, Double-blind, Phase 3 Study of Fospropofol Disodium for Sedation During Colonoscopy. *J Clin Gastroenterol*. 2010;44:345–353.
26. Abdelmalak B, Khanna A, Tetzlaff J. Fospropofol, A New Sedative Anesthetic, and Its Utility in the Perioperative Period. *Current Pharmaceutical Design*. 2012;18:6241–6252.
27. Patwardhan A, Edelmayer R, Annabi E, Price T, Malan P, Dussor G. Receptor Specificity Defines Algogenic Properties of Propofol and Fospropofol. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:837–840.
28. Sneyd JR, Rigby-Jones AE. New drugs and technologies, intravenous anaesthesia is on the move (again). *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:246–254.

28a. Feng AY, Kaye AD, Kaye RJ, Belani K, Urman RD. Novel propofol derivatives and implications for anesthesia practice. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2017;33(1):9–15.

28b. van den Berg JP, Eleveld DJ, De Smet T, et al. Influence of Bayesian optimization on the performance of propofol target-controlled infusion. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(5):918–927.

29. Vuyk J, Oostwouder CJ, Vletter AA, Burm AGL, Bovill JG. Gender differences in the pharmacokinetics of propofol in elderly patients during and after continuous infusion. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:183–188.
30. Schnider TW, Minto CF, Shafer SL, et al. The influence of age on propofol pharmacodynamics. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1502–1516.
31. Marsh B, White M, Morton N, Kenny GN. Pharmacokinetic model driven infusion of propofol in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:41–48.
32. Marsh BJ, Morton NS, White M, Kenny GN. A computer controlled infusion of propofol for induction and maintenance of anaesthesia in children. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:S97.
33. Gepts E, Camu F, Cockshott ID, Douglas EJ. Disposition of propofol administered as constant rate intravenous infusions in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:1256–1263.
34. Schuttler J, Ihmsen H. Population pharmacokinetics of propofol: a multicenter study. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:727–738.
35. Hughes MA, Glass PS, Jacobs JR. Context-sensitive half-time in multicompartment pharmacokinetic models for intravenous anesthetic drugs. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:334–341.
36. Kazama T, Ikeda K, Morita K, et al. Comparison of the effect-site k(eO)s of propofol for blood pressure and EEG bispectral index in elderly and younger patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1517–1527.
37. Shafer A, Doze VA, Shafer SL, White PF. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of propofol infusions during general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:348–356.
38. Vuyk J, Schnider T, Engbers F. Population pharmacokinetics of propofol for target-controlled infusion (TCI) in the elderly. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1557–1560.
39. Mertens MJ, Olofsen E, Burm AGL, Bovill JG, Vuyk J. Mixed-effects modeling of the influence of alfentanil on propofol pharmacokinetics. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:795–805.
40. Leslie K, Sessler DI, Bjorksten AR, Moayeri A. Mild hypothermia alters propofol pharmacokinetics and increases the duration of action of atracurium [see comments]. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:1007–1014.
41. Upton RN, Ludbrook GL, Grant C, Martinez AM. Cardiac output is a determinant of the initial concentrations of propofol after short-infusion administration. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:545–552.
42. Kazama T, Kurita T, Morita K, Nakata J, Sato S. Influence of hemorrhage on propofol pseudo-steady state concentration. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1156–1161.
43. Allegaert K, Peeters MY, Verbesselt R, et al. Inter-individual variability in propofol pharmacokinetics in preterm and term neonates. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:864–870.
44. Allegaert K, Verbesselt R, Naulaers G, de Hoon J, Devlieger H. Inter-individual variability of propofol clearance in neonates. *Neonatology*. 2007;92:291.

45. Kirkpatrick T, Cockshott ID, Douglas EJ, Nimmo WS. Pharmacokinetics of propofol (diprivan) in elderly patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;60:146–150.
46. Vuyk J. Clinical interpretation of pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic propofol-opioid interactions. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 2001;52:445–451.
47. Kataria BK, Ved SA, Nicodemus HF, et al. The Pharmacokinetics of Propofol in Children Using 3 Different Data-Analysis Approaches. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:104–122.
48. Murat I, Zaouter M, Granados M, Souron R, Farinotti R. Pharmacokinetics of Propofol Children Under 3 Years of Age. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:A1131.
49. Murat I, Billard V, Vernois J, et al. Pharmacokinetics of propofol after a single dose in children aged 1-3 years with minor burns—comparison of three data analysis approaches. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:526–532.
50. Servin F, Desmonts JM, Haberer JP, Cockshott ID, Plummer GF, Farinotti R. Pharmacokinetics and Protein-Binding of Propofol in Patients with Cirrhosis. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:887–891.
51. Servin F, Cockshott ID, Farinotti R, Haberer JP, Winckler C, Desmonts JM. Pharmacokinetics of Propofol Infusions in Patients with Cirrhosis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65:177–183.
52. Vuyk J, Lichtenbelt BJ, Olofsen E, van Kleef JW, Dahan A. Mixed-effects modeling of the influence of midazolam on propofol pharmacokinetics. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1522–1530.
53. Mertens MJ, Vuyk J, Olofsen E, Bovill JG, Burm AG. Propofol alters the pharmacokinetics of alfentanil in healthy male volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:949–957.
54. Krasowski MD, Koltchine VV, Rick CE, Ye Q, Finn SE, Harrison NL. Propofol and other intravenous anesthetics have sites of action on the gamma-aminobutyric acid type a receptor distinct from that for isoflurane. *Molecular Pharmacology*. 1998;53:530–538.
55. Krasowski MD, Nishikawa K, Nikolaeva N, Lin A, Harrison NL. Methionine 286 in transmembrane domain 3 of the GABA(A) receptor beta subunit controls a binding cavity for propofol and other alkylphenol general anesthetics. *Neuropharmacology*. 2001;41:952–964.
56. Forman SA, Ruesch D. Two general anesthetic actions in GABA(A) Rs attributable to altered gating. *Biophysical Journal*. 2003;84:87A.
57. Forman SA. Clinical and molecular pharmacology of etomidate. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:695–707.
58. Ruesch D, Neumann E, Wulf H, Forman SA. An Allosteric Coagonist Model for Propofol Effects on alpha 1 beta 2 gamma 2L gamma-Aminobutyric Acid Type A Receptors. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:47–55.
59. Franks NP. General anaesthesia: from molecular targets to neuronal pathways of sleep and arousal. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2008;9:370–386.
60. Kushikata T, Hirota K, Yoshida H, Kubota T, Ishihara H, Matsuki A. Alpha-2 adrenoceptor activity affects propofol-induced sleep time. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1201–1206.
61. Stamatakis EA, Adapa RM, Absalom AR, Menon DK. Changes in Resting Neural Connectivity during Propofol Sedation. *Plos One*. 2010;5.
62. Xie G, Deschamps A, Backman SB, et al. Critical involvement of the thalamus and precuneus during restoration of consciousness with physostigmine in humans during propofol anaesthesia: a positron emission tomography study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:548–557.
63. Lingamaneni R, Birch ML, Hemmings HC. Widespread inhibition of sodium channel-dependent glutamate release from isolated nerve terminals by isoflurane and propofol. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1460–1466.
64. Lingamaneni R, Hemmings HC. Differential interaction of anaesthetics and antiepileptic drugs with neuronal Na+ channels, Ca2+ channels, and GABA(A) receptors. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:199–211.
65. Dong XP, Xu TL. The actions of propofol on gamma-aminobutyric acid-A and glycine receptors in acutely dissociated spinal dorsal horn neurons of the rat. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:907–914.
66. Pain L, Gobaille S, Schleef C, Aunis D, Oberling P. In vivo dopamine measurements in the nucleus accumbens after nonanesthetic and anesthetic doses of propofol in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:915–919.
67. Gelb AW, Diab T, Cechetto DF. Effects of Propofol on Neuronal-Activity in the Area Postrema of the Rat. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:A752.
68. Rigby-Jones AE, Nolan JA, Priston MJ, Wright PMC, Sneyd JR, Wolf AR. Pharmacokinetics of propofol infusions in critically ill neonates, infants, and children in an intensive care unit. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1393–1400.
69. Rigby-Jones AE, Sneyd JR. Propofol and children—what we know and what we do not know. *Pediatric Anesthesia*. 2011;21:247–254.
70. Murray DM, Rigby-Jones AE, Tonucci D, et al. Propofol blood levels, clinical sedation scores and electrophysiological variables in children emerging from propofol infusion anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:318P.
71. Glass PS, Bloom M, Kearse L, Rosow C, Sebel P, Manberg P. Bispectral analysis measures sedation and memory effects of propofol, midazolam, isoflurane, and alfentanil in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:836–847.
72. San-Juan D, Chiappa KH, Cole AJ. Propofol and the electroencephalogram. *Clinical Neurophysiology*. 2010;121:998–1006.
73. Hodkinson BP, Frith RW, Mee EW. Proprofol and the Electroencephalogram. *Lancet*. 1987;2:1518.
74. Wilson C, Canning P, Caravati EM. The abuse potential of propofol. *Clinical Toxicology*. 2010;48:165–170.
75. Kirby RR, Colaw JM, Douglas SMM. Death from Propofol: Accident, Suicide, or Murder? *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1182–1184.
76. Wischmeyer PE, Johnson BR, Wilson JE, et al. A survey of propofol abuse in academic anesthesia programs. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1066–1071.
77. Noterman J, Berre J, Vandesteene A, Brotchi J. Intracranial-Pressure Monitoring in the Postoperative Period of Cerebral Aneurysms. *Neurochirurgie*. 1988;34:161–163.
78. Steiner LA, Johnston AJ, Chatfield DA, Menon DK, et al. The effects of large-dose propofol on cerebrovascular pressure autoregulation in head-injured patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:572–576.
79. Adembri C, Venturi L, De Gaudio RA. Propofol is neuroprotective in a rat model of focal cerebral ischemia when administered after the insult. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:A24.
80. Adembri C, Venturi L, Tani A, et al. Neuroprotective effects of propofol in models of cerebral ischemia—inhibition of mitochondrial swelling as a possible mechanism. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:80–89.
81. Adembri C, Venturi L, Pellegrini-Giampietro DE. Neuroprotective effects of propofol in acute cerebral injury. *CNS Drug Reviews*. 2007;13:333–351.
82. Kotani Y, Nakajima Y, Hasegawa T, et al. Propofol exerts greater neuroprotection with disodium edetate than without it. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2008;28:354–366.
83. Gelb AW, Bayona NA, Wilson JX, Cechetto DF. Propofol anesthesia compared to awake reduces infarct size in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1183–1190.
84. Gelb AW. Drug choices for neuroanesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:33–35.
85. Cattano D, Young C, Straiko MMW, Olney JW. Subanesthetic doses of propofol induce neuroapoptosis in the infant mouse brain. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1712–1714.
86. Pesic V, Milanovic D, Tanic N, et al. Potential mechanism of cell death in the developing rat brain induced by propofol anesthesia. *Int J Dev Neurosci*. 2009;27:279–287.
87. Lanigan C, Sury M, Bingham R, Howard R, Mackersie A. Neurological Sequelae in Children After Prolonged Propofol Infusion. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:810–811.
88. Vuyk J, Engbers FH, Lemmens HJ, et al. Pharmacodynamics of propofol in female patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:3–9.
89. Vuyk J, Engbers FH, Burm AGL, et al. Pharmacodynamic interaction between propofol and alfentanil when given for induction of anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:288–299.
90. Vuyk J, Mertens MJ, Olofsen E, Burm AG, Bovill JG. Propofol anesthesia and rational opioid selection: determination of optimal EC50-EC95 propofol-opioid concentrations that assure adequate anesthesia and a rapid return of consciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1549–1562.
91. Spelina KR, Coates DP, Monk CR, Prysroberts C, Norley I, Turtle MJ. Dose Requirements of Propofol by Infusion During Nitrous-Oxide Anesthesia in Man .1. Patients Premedicated with Morphine-Sulfate. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:1080–1084.
92. Smith C, McEwan AI, Jhaveri R, et al. The interaction of fentanyl on the Cp50 of propofol for loss of consciousness and skin incision. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:820–828.

93. Kazama T, Ikeda K, Morita K, Katoh T, Kikura M. Propofol concentration required for endotracheal intubation with a laryngoscope or fiberscope and its interaction with fentanyl. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:872–879.
94. Dahan A, Nieuwenhuijs DJF, Olofsen E. Influence of propofol on the control of breathing. *Advances in Modelling and Clinical Application of Intravenous Anaesthesia*. 2003;523:81–92.
95. Nieuwenhuijs DJ, Olofsen E, Romberg RR, et al. Response surface modeling of remifentanil-propofol interaction on cardiorespiratory control and bispectral index. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:312–322.
96. Goodman NW, Black AMS, Carter JA. Some ventilatory effects of propofol as sole anesthetic agent. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:1497–1503.
97. Jonsson MM, Lindahl SGE, Eriksson LI. Effect of propofol on carotid body chemosensitivity and cholinergic chemotransduction. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:110–116.
98. Larsen R, Rathgeber J, Bagdahn A, Lange H, Rieke H. Effects of propofol on cardiovascular dynamics and coronary blood flow in geriatric patients. A comparison with etomidate. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43(suppl):25–31.
98a. de Wit F, van Vliet AL, de Wilde RB, et al. The effect of propofol on haemodynamics: cardiac output, venous return, mean systemic filling pressure, and vascular resistances. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116(6):784–789.
99. Pagel PS, Warltier DC. Negative Inotropic Effects of Propofol As Evaluated by the Regional Preload Recruitable Stroke Work Relationship in Chronically Instrumented Dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:100–108.
100. Samain E, Clichet A, Bouillier H, Marty J, Renaud JF. Effect of propofol on the vascular action of norepinephrine in hypertension. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:U169.
101. Samain E, Bouillier H, Marty J, Safar M, Dagher G. The effect of propofol on angiotensin II-induced Ca2+ mobilization in aortic smooth muscle cells from normotensive and hypertensive rats. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:546–552.
102. Xia ZY, Huang ZY, Ansley DM. Large-dose propofol during cardiopulmonary bypass decreases biochemical markers of myocardial injury in coronary surgery patients: a comparison with isoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:527–532.
103. Huang ZY, Zhong XW, Irwin MG, et al. Synergy of isoflurane preconditioning and propofol postconditioning reduces myocardial reperfusion injury in patients. *Clinical Science*. 2011;121:57–69.
104. Denborough M, Hopkinson KC. Propofol and Malignant Hyperpyrexia. *Lancet*. 1988;1:191.
105. Denborough MA. Malignant hyperthermia. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:156–157.
106. Foster PS, Hopkinson KC, Denborough MA. Propofol Anesthesia in Malignant Hyperpyrexia Susceptible Swine. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 1992;19:183–186.
107. Mertes PM, Laxenaire MC. Unrecognised fatal anaphylactic reaction to propofol or fentanyl. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:821–822.
108. Laxenaire MC, Matabermejo E, MoneretVautrin DA, Gueant JL. Life-Threatening Anaphylactoid Reactions to Propofol (Diprivan(R)). *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:275–280.
109. Laxenaire MC. Use of Diprivan(R) in the Allergic Patient. *Annales Francaises D Anesthesie et de Reanimation*. 1994;13:498–502.
110. Gan TJ, Glass PS, Howell ST, Canada AT, Grant AP, Ginsberg B. Determination of plasma concentrations of propofol associated with 50% reduction in postoperative nausea. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:779–784.
111. Bennett SN, Mcneil MM, Bland LA, et al. Postoperative Infections Traced to Contamination of An Intravenous Anesthetic, Propofol. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 1995;333:147–154.
112. Devlin JW, Lau AK, Tanios MA. Propofol-associated hypertriglyceridemia and pancreatitis in the intensive care unit: an analysis of frequency and risk factors. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2005;25:1348–1352.
113. Kazama T, Morita K, Ikeda T, Kurita T, Sato S. Comparison of predicted induction dose with predetermined physiologic characteristics of patients and with pharmacokinetic models incorporating those characteristics as covariates. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:299–305.
114. Mertens MJ, Olofsen E, Engbers FHM, Burm AGL, Bovill JG, Vuyk J. Propofol reduces perioperative remifentanil requirements in a synergistic manner—response surface modeling of perioperative remifentanil-propofol interactions. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:347–359.
115. Minto CF, Schnider TW, Short TG, Gregg KM, Gentilini A, Shafer SL. Response surface model for anesthetic drug interactions. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1603–1616.
116. Short TG, Plummer JL, Chui PT. Hypnotic and anaesthetic interactions between midazolam, propofol and alfentanil. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:162–167.
117. Reich DL, Hossain S, Krol M, et al. Predictors of hypotension after induction of general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:622–628.
118. Lichtenbelt BJ, Mertens M, Vuyk J. Strategies to optimise propofol-opioid anaesthesia. *Clinical Pharmacokinetics*. 2004;43:577–593.
119. Johnson KB, Egan TD, Kern SE, McJames SW, Cluff ML, Pace NL. Influence of hemorrhagic shock followed by crystalloid resuscitation on propofol—a pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:647–659.
120. Kurita T, Takata K, Morita K, et al. The Influence of Hemorrhagic Shock on the Electroencephalographic and Immobilizing Effects of Propofol in a Swine Model. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:398–404.
120a. Reade MC, Finfer S. Sedation and Delirium in the Intensive Care Unit. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:444–463.
121. Jacobi J, Fraser GL, Coursin DB, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for the sustained use of sedatives and analgesics in the critically ill adult. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:119–141.
121a. Olutoyin OA, Baker BW, Belfort BA, et al. Food and Drug Administration warning on anesthesia and brain development: implications for obstetric and fetal surgery. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2018;218:98–102.
121b. Malhotra A, Yosh E, Xiong M. Propofol's Effects on the Fetal Brain for Non-Obstetric Surgery. *Brain Sci*. 2017;7(8):107.
121c. Jiang S, Liu Y, Huang L, et al. Effects of propofol on cancer development and chemotherapy: potential mechanisms. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2018;831:1–106.
122. Jalota L, Kalira V, George E, et al. Prevention of pain on injection of propofol: systematic review and meta-analysis. *British Medical Journal*. 2011:342.
123. Roberts R, Devlin JW, Schutnaker G, et al. Incidence of the Propofol Infusion Syndrome in Critically Ill Adults. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:A180.
124. Fodale V, La Monaca E. Propofol infusion syndrome—an overview of a perplexing disease. *Drug Safety*. 2008;31:293–303.
125. Otterspoor LC, Kalkman CJ, Cremer OL. Update on the propofol infusion syndrome in ICU management of patients with head injury. *Current Opinion in Anesthesiology*. 2008;21:544–551.
126. Fudickar A, Bein B. Propofol infusion syndrome: update of clinical manifestation and pathophysiology. *Minerva Anestesiologica*. 2009;75:339–344.
127. Lundy JS. From this point in time: some memories of my part in the history of anesthesia. *J Am Assoc Nurse Anesth*. 1966;34:95–102.
128. Bennetts FE. Thiopentone anaesthesia at Pearl Harbor. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75:366–368.
129. Mahisekar UL, Callan CM, Derasari M, Kirkpatrick AF. Infusion of large particles of thiopental sodium during anesthesia induction. *J Clin Anesth*. 1994;6:55–58.
130. Mark L. Metabolism of barbiturates in man. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1963;4:504–530.
131. Granick S. Induction of the synthesis of d-amino-levulinic acid synthetase in liver parenchyma cells in culture by chemicals that induce porphyria. *J Biol Chem*. 2012;238:PC2247–PC2249.
132. Breimer DD. Pharmacokinetics of methohexitone following intravenous infusion in humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:643–649.
133. Henthorn TK, Avram MJ, Krejcie TC. Intravascular mixing and drug distribution: the concurrent disposition of thiopental and indocyanine green. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1989;45:56–65.
134. Christensen JH, Andreasen F, Jansen JA. Pharmacokinetics of thiopentone in a group of young women and a group of young men. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52:913–918.
135. Morgan DJ, Blackman GL, Paull JD, Wolf LJ. Pharmacokinetics and plasma binding of thiopental. II: studies at cesarean section. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:474–480.
136. Downie DL, Franks NP, Lieb WR. Effects of thiopental and its optical isomers on nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:774–783.
137. Tomlin SL, Jenkins A, Lieb WR, Franks NP. Preparation of barbiturate optical isomers and their effects on GABA(A) receptors. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1714–1722.

138. Fredriksson A, Ponten E, Gordh T, Eriksson P. Neonatal exposure to a combination of N-methyl-D-aspartate and gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptor anesthetic agents potentiates apoptotic neurodegeneration and persistent behavioral deficits. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:427–436.
139. Liu H, Yao S. Thiopental sodium reduces glutamate extracellular levels in rat intact prefrontal cortex. *Exp Brain Res*. 2005;167:666–669.
140. Liu H, Dai T, Yao S. Effect of thiopental sodium on N-methyl-D-aspartate-gated currents. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:442–448.
141. Judge SE. Effect of general anaesthetics on synaptic ion channels. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:191–200.

141a. Forman SA, Miller KW. Mapping General Anesthetic Sites in Heteromeric γ-Aminobutyric Acid Type A Receptors Reveals a Potential For Targeting Receptor Subtypes. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(5):1263–1273.

142. Stullken EH, Milde JH, Michenfelder JD, Tinker JH. The nonlinear responses of cerebral metabolism to low concentrations of halothane, enflurane, isoflurane, and thiopental. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:28–34.
143. Baughman VL. Brain protection during neurosurgery. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2002;20:315–327. vi.
144. Albrecht RF, Miletich DJ, Rosenberg R, Zahed B. Cerebral blood flow and metabolic changes from induction to onset of anesthesia with halothane or pentobarbital. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;47:252–256.
145. Pancrazio JJ, Frazer MJ, Lynch C. Barbiturate anesthetics depress the resting K+ conductance of myocardium. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1993;265:358–365.
146. Mark LC, Burns JJ, Campomanes CI, et al. The passage of thiopental into brain. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1957;119:35–38.
147. Burch PG, Stanski DR. The role of metabolism and protein binding in thiopental anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:146–152.
148. Stella L, Torri G, Castiglioni CL. The relative potencies of thiopentone, ketamine, propanidid, alphaxalone and diazepam. A statistical study in man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51:119–122.
149. Brodie BB, Kurz H, Schanker LS. The importance of dissociaton constant and lipid-solubility in influencing the passage of drugs into the cerebrospinal fluid. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1960;130: 20–25.
150. Homer TD, Stanski DR. The effect of increasing age on thiopental disposition and anesthetic requirement. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:714–724.
151. Sorbo S, Hudson RJ, Loomis JC. The pharmacokinetics of thiopental in pediatric surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:666–670.
152. Gross JB, Zebrowski ME, Carel WD, Gardner S, Smith TC. Time course of ventilatory depression after thiopental and midazolam in normal subjects and in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:540–544.
153. Choi SD, Spaulding BC, Gross JB, Apfelbaum JL. Comparison of the ventilatory effects of etomidate and methohexital. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:442–447.
154. Todd MM, Drummond JC, HS U. The hemodynamic consequences of high-dose thiopental anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:681–687.
155. Sonntag H, Hellberg K, Schenk HD, et al. Effects of thiopental (Trapanal) on coronary blood flow and myocardial metabolism in man. *Acta AnaesthesiolScand*. 1975;19:69–78.
156. Dundee JW, Moore J. Thiopentone and methohexital, a comparison as main anaesthetic agents for a standard operation. *Anaesthesia*. 1961;16:50–60.
157. Touw DJ. Clinical implications of genetic polymorphisms and drug interactions mediated by cytochrome P-450 enzymes. *Drug Metabol Drug Interact*. 1997;14:55–82.
158. Bajwa SJ, Jindal R, Kaur J, Singh A. Psychiatric diseases: need for an increased awareness among the anesthesiologists. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;27:440–446.
159. Ding Z, White PF. Anesthesia for electroconvulsive therapy. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1351–1364.
160. Messina AG, Wang M, Ward MJ, et al. Methods to prevent people waking during surgery and remembering surgical events. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;10:CD007272.
161. Rodriguez E, Jordan R. Contemporary trends in pediatric sedation and analgesia. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2002;20:199–222.
162. Winsky-Sommerer R. Role of GABAA receptors in the physiology and pharmacology of sleep. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2009;29:1779–1794.
163. Reynolds LM, Engin E, Tantillo G, et al. Differential roles of GABAA receptor subtypes in benzodiazepine-induced enhancement of brain-stimulation reward. *Neuropsychopharmacology*. 2012;37(11):2531–2540.

163a. Wang C, Datoo T, Zhao H, et al. Midazolam and dexmedetomidine affect neuroglioma and lung carcinoma cell biology in vitro and in vivo. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129:1000–1014. doi: 10.1097/ALN.0000000000002401.

164. Stovner J, Endresen R. Diazepam in intravenous anesthesia. *Lancet*. 1965;2:1298–1299.
165. Reves JG, Fragen RJ, Vinik HR, Greenblatt DJ. Midazolam: pharmacology and uses. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:310–324.
166. Wesolowski AM, Zaccagnino MP, Malapero RJ, et al. Remimazolam: pharmacologic considerations and clinical role in anesthesiology. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2016;36(9):1021–1027.
167. Greenblatt DJ, Divoll M, Abernethy DR, Ochs HR, Shader RI. Clinical pharmacokinetics of the newer benzodiazepines. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1983;8:233–252.
168. Greenblatt DJ, Abernethy DR, Locniskar A, Harmatz JS, Limjuco RA, Shader RI. Effect of age, gender and obesity on midazolam kinetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:27–35.
169. Thummel KE, O'Shea D, Paine MF, et al. Oral first-pass elimination of midazolam involves both gastrointestinal and hepatic CYP3A-mediated metabolism. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1996;59:491–502.
170. Allonen H, Ziegler G, Klotz U. Midazolam kinetics. *ClinPharmacol. Ther*. 1981;30:653–661.
171. Greenblatt DJ, Divoll M, Abernethy DR, Locniskar A, Shader RI. Pharmacokinetics of Benzodiazepine Hypnotics. *Pharmacology*. 1983;27:70–75.
172. Dundee JW, Halliday NJ, Harper KW, Brogden RN, Midazolam. A review of its pharmacological properties and therapeutic use. *Drugs*. 1984;28:519–543.
173. Pentikainen PJ, Valisalmi L, Himberg JJ, Crevoisier C. Pharmacokinetics of midazolam following intravenous and oral administration in patients with chronic liver disease and in healthy subjects. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 1989;29:272–277.
174. Wandel C, Bocker R, Bohrer H, Browne A, Rugheimer E, Martin E. Midazolam is metabolized by at least three different cytochrome P450 enzymes. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:658–661.
175. Heizmann P, Eckert M, Ziegler WH. Pharmacokinetics and bioavailability of midazolam in man. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1983;16(suppl 1). 43S–49S.

175a. van Rongen A, Vaughns JD, Moorthy GS, et al. Population pharmacokinetics of midazolam and its metabolites in overweight and obese adolescents. *Br J Clin Pharnacol* 2015;80:1185 doi: 10.1111/bcp.12693. Epub 2015 Sep 10.

176. Bauer TM, Ritz R, Haberthur C, et al. Prolonged sedation due to accumulation of conjugated metabolites of midazolam. *Lancet*. 1995;346:145–147.
177. Divoll M, Greenblatt DJ, Ochs HR, Shader RI. Absolute bioavailability of oral and intramuscular diazepam: effects of age and sex. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62:1–8.
178. Gamble JA, Dundee JW, Assaf RA. Plasma diazepam levels after single dose oral and intramuscular administration. *Anaesthesia*. 1975;30:164–169.
179. Greenblatt DJ, Allen MD, Harmatz JS, Shader RI. Diazepam disposition determinants. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1980;27:301–312.
180. Klotz U, Avant GR, Hoyumpa A, Schenker S, Wilkinson GR. The effects of age and liver disease on the disposition and elimination of diazepam in adult man. *J Clin Invest*. 1975;55:347–359.
181. Andersson T, Miners JO, Veronese ME, Birkett DJ. Diazepam metabolism by human liver microsomes is mediated by both S-mephenytoin hydroxylase and CYP3A isoforms. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1994;38:131–137.
182. Jung F, Richardson TH, Raucy JL, Johnson EF. Diazepam metabolism by cDNA-expressed human 2C P450s: identification of P4502C18 and P4502C19 as low K(M) diazepam N-demethylases. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 1997;25:133–139.
183. Yang TJ, Krausz KW, Sai Y, Gonzalez FJ, Gelboin HV. Eight inhibitory monoclonal antibodies define the role of individual P-450s in human liver microsomal diazepam, 7-ethoxycoumarin, and imipramine metabolism. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 1999;27:102–109.
184. Locniskar A, Greenblatt DJ. Oxidative versus conjugative biotransformation of temazepam. *Biopharm Drug Dispos*. 1990;11:499–506.

185. Greenblatt DJ, Shader RI, Franke K, et al. Pharmacokinetics and bioavailability of intravenous, intramuscular, and oral lorazepam in humans. *J Pharm Sci*. 1979;68:57–63.
186. Greenblatt DJ. Clinical pharmacokinetics of oxazepam and lorazepam. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1981;6:89–105.
187. Saari TI, Uusi-Oukari M, Ahonen J, Olkkola KT. Enhancement of GABAergic activity: neuropharmacological effects of benzodiazepines and therapeutic use in anesthesiology. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2011;63:243–267.
188. Rogers WK, McDowell TS. Remimazolam, a short-acting GABA(A) receptor agonist for intravenous sedation and/or anesthesia in day-case surgical and non-surgical procedures. *IDrugs*. 2010;13:929–937.
189. Upton RN, Martinez AM, Grant C. Comparison of the sedative properties of CNS 7056, midazolam, and propofol in sheep. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:848–857.
190. Antonik LJ, Goldwater DR, Kilpatrick GJ, Tilbrook GS, Borkett KM. A placebo- and midazolam-controlled phase I single ascending-dose study evaluating the safety, pharmacokinetics, and pharmacodynamics of remimazolam (CNS 7056): Part I. Safety, efficacy, and basic pharmacokinetics. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:274–283.
191. Tsukagoshi E, Kawaguchi M, Shinomiya T, et al. Diazepam enhances production of diazepam-binding inhibitor (DBI), a negative saliva secretion regulator, localized in rat salivary gland. *J Pharmacol Sci*. 2011;115:221–229.
192. Ostuni MA, Issop L, Peranzi G, et al. Overexpression of translocator protein in inflammatory bowel disease: potential diagnostic and treatment value. *Inflamm Bowel Dis*. 2010;16:1476–1487.
193. Mould DR, DeFeo TM, Reele S, et al. Simultaneous modeling of the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of midazolam and diazepam. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1995;58:35–43.
194. Mohler H, Richards JG. The benzodiazepine receptor: a pharmacological control element of brain function. *Eur J Anaesthesiol Suppl*. 1988;2:15–24.
195. Mohler H, Fritschy JM, Rudolph U. A new benzodiazepine pharmacology. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2002;300:2–8.
196. Kohno T, Wakai A, Ataka T, Ikoma M, Yamakura T, Baba H. Actions of midazolam on excitatory transmission in dorsal horn neurons of adult rat spinal cord. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:338–343.
197. Ho KM, Ismail H. Use of intrathecal midazolam to improve perioperative analgesia: a meta-analysis. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2008;36:365–373.
198. Forster A, Juge O, Morel D. Effects of midazolam on cerebral blood flow in human volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:453–455.
199. Harman F, Hasturk AE, Yaman M, et al. Neuroprotective effects of propofol, thiopental, etomidate, and midazolam in fetal rat brain in ischemia-reperfusion model. *Childs Nerv Syst*. 2012;28:1055–1062.
200. Norton JR, Ward DS, Karan S, et al. Differences between midazolam and propofol sedation on upper airway collapsibility using dynamic negative airway pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1155–1164.
201. Sunzel M, Paalzow L, Berggren L, Eriksson I. Respiratory and cardiovascular effects in relation to plasma levels of midazolam and diazepam. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1988;25:561–569.
202. Alexander CM, Gross JB. Sedative doses of midazolam depress hypoxic ventilatory responses in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:377–382.
203. Tverskoy M, Fleyshman G, Ezry J, Bradley EL, Kissin I. Midazolam-morphine sedative interaction in patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68:282–285.
204. Coote JH. Landmarks in understanding the central nervous control of the cardiovascular system. *Exp Physiol*. 2007;92:3–18.
205. Li YF, Jackson KL, Stern JE, Rabeler B, Patel KP. Interaction between glutamate and GABA systems in the integration of sympathetic outflow by the paraventricular nucleus of the hypothalamus. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2006;291:H2847–H2856.
206. von Moltke LL, Greenblatt DJ, Schmider J, et al. Midazolam hydroxylation by human liver microsomes in vitro: inhibition by fluoxetine, norfluoxetine, and by azole antifungal agents. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 1996;36:783–791.
207. Olkkola KT, Ahonen J, Neuvonen PJ. The effects of the systemic antimycotics, itraconazole and fluconazole, on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of intravenous and oral midazolam. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:511–516.
208. Goldstein JA. Clinical relevance of genetic polymorphisms in the human CYP2C subfamily. *BrJClinPharmacol*. 2001;52:349–355.
209. Sim SC, Risinger C, Dahl ML, et al. A common novel CYP2C19 gene variant causes ultrarapid drug metabolism relevant for the drug response to proton pump inhibitors and antidepressants. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2006;79:103–113.
210. Ishizaki T, Chiba K, Manabe K, et al. Comparison of the interaction potential of a new proton pump inhibitor, E3810, versus omeprazole with diazepam in extensive and poor metabolizers of S-mephenytoin 4'-hydroxylation. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1995;58:155–164.
211. Qin XP, Xie HG, Wang W, et al. Effect of the gene dosage of CgammaP2C19 on diazepam metabolism in Chinese subjects. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1999;66:642–646.
212. Ahonen J, Olkkola KT, Neuvonen PJ. The effect of the antimycotic itraconazole on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of diazepam. *Fundam Clin Pharmacol*. 1996;10:314–318.
213. Luurila H, Olkkola KT, Neuvonen PJ. Interaction between erythromycin and the benzodiazepines diazepam and flunitrazepam. *Pharmacol Toxicol*. 1996;78:117–122.
214. Kamali F, Thomas SH, Edwards C. The influence of steady-state ciprofloxacin on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of a single dose of diazepam in healthy volunteers. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1993;44:365–367.
215. Andersson T, Andren K, Cederberg C, Edvardsson G, Heggelund A, Lundborg P. Effect of omeprazole and cimetidine on plasma diazepam levels. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1990;39:51–54.
216. Perucca E, Gatti G, Cipolla G, et al. Inhibition of diazepam metabolism by fluvoxamine: a pharmacokinetic study in normal volunteers. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1994;56:471–476.
217. Abernethy DR, Greenblatt DJ, Ameer B, Shader RI. Probenecid impairment of acetaminophen and lorazepam clearance: direct inhibition of ether glucuronide formation. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1985;234:345–349.
218. Samara EE, Granneman RG, Witt GF, Cavanaugh JH. Effect of valproate on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of lorazepam. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 1997;37:442–450.
219. Vinik HR, Bradley EL, Kissin I. Midazolam-alfentanil synergism for anesthetic induction in patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:213–217.
220. Hong W, Short TG, Hui TW. Hypnotic and anesthetic interactions between ketamine and midazolam in female patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:1227–1232.
221. McClune S, McKay AC, Wright PM, Patterson CC, Clarke RS. Synergistic interaction between midazolam and propofol. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:240–245.
222. Bauer KP, Dom PM, Ramirez AM, O'Flaherty JE. Preoperative intravenous midazolam: benefits beyond anxiolysis. *J Clin Anesth*. 2004;16:177–183.
223. Kain ZN, Mayes LC, Wang SM, Caramico LA, Hofstadter MB. Parental presence during induction of anesthesia versus sedative premedication: which intervention is more effective? *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1147–1156.
224. Hargreaves J. Benzodiazepine premedication in minor day-case surgery: comparison of oral midazolam and temazepam with placebo. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61:611–616.
225. Pollock JS, Kenny GN. Effects of lorazepam on oxygen saturation before cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70:219–220.
226. George KA, Dundee JW. Relative amnesic actions of diazepam, flunitrazepam and lorazepam in man. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1977;4:45–50.
227. Cole SG, Brozinsky S, Isenberg JI. Midazolam, a new more potent benzodiazepine, compared with diazepam: a randomized, double-blind study of preendoscopic sedatives. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 1983;29:219–222.
228. McNulty SE, Gratch D, Costello D, Heropoulos M, Kim JY. The effect of midazolam and lorazepam on postoperative recovery after cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:404–407.
229. Lee SH. Non-anesthesiologist administered propofol with or without midazolam for moderate sedation-the problem is not "which regimen" but "who's regimen". *Dig Dis Sci*. 2012;57:2243–2245.
230. Garewal D, Powell S, Milan SJ, Nordmeyer J, Waikar P. Sedative techniques for endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;6:CD007274.
231. Tverskoy M, Shifrin V, Finger J, Fleyshman G, Kissin I. Effect of epidural bupivacaine block on midazolam hypnotic requirements. *Reg Anesth*. 1996;21:209–213.

232. Frolich MA, Burchfield DJ, Euliano TY, Caton D. A single dose of fentanyl and midazolam prior to Cesarean section have no adverse neonatal effects. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:79–85.
233. Nitsun M, Szokol JW, Saleh HJ, et al. Pharmacokinetics of midazolam, propofol, and fentanyl transfer to human breast milk. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2006;79:549–557.
234. Walder B, Elia N, Henzi I, Romand JR, Tramer MR. A lack of evidence of superiority of propofol versus midazolam for sedation in mechanically ventilated critically ill patients: a qualitative and quantitative systematic review. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:975–983.
235. Barr J, Fraser GL, Puntillo K, et al. Clinical Practice Guidelines for the Management of Pain, Agitation, and Delirium in Adult Patients in the Intensive Care Unit. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41:263–306.
236. Mehta S, Burry L, Cook D, et al. Daily sedation interruption in mechanically ventilated critically ill patients cared for with a sedation protocol: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1985–1992.
237. Breimer LT, Hennis PJ, Burm AG, et al. Quantification of the EEG effect of midazolam by aperiodic analysis in volunteers. Pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic modelling. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1990;18:245–253.
238. Jacobs JR, Reves JG, Marty J, White WD, Bai SA, Smith LR. Aging increases pharmacodynamic sensitivity to the hypnotic effects of midazolam. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:143–148.
239. Melvin MA, Johnson BH, Quasha AL, Eger EI. Induction of anesthesia with midazolam decreases halothane MAC in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:238–241.
240. Theil DR, Stanley TE, White WD, et al. Midazolam and fentanyl continuous infusion anesthesia for cardiac surgery: a comparison of computer-assisted versus manual infusion systems. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1993;7:300–306.
241. Jung JS, Park JS, Kim SO, et al. Prophylactic antiemetic effect of midazolam after middle ear surgery. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2007;137:753–756.
242. Heidari SM, Talakoub R, Yaraghi Z. Comparing the preventive effect of midazolam and midazolam-dexamethasone on postoperative nausea and vomiting in elective middle ear surgery. *Adv Biomed Res*. 2012;1:9.
243. Lee Y, Wang JJ, Yang YL, Chen A, Lai HY. Midazolam vs ondansetron for preventing postoperative nausea and vomiting: a randomised controlled trial. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:18–22.
244. Riad W, Altaf R, Abdulla A, Oudan H. Effect of midazolam, dexamethasone and their combination on the prevention of nausea and vomiting following strabismus repair in children. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:697–701.
245. Riad W, Marouf H. Combination therapy in the prevention of PONV after strabismus surgery in children: granisetron, ondansetron, midazolam with dexamethasone. *Middle East J Anesthesiol*. 2009;20:431–436.
246. Fujii Y, Itakura M. A prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study to assess the antiemetic effects of midazolam on postoperative nausea and vomiting in women undergoing laparoscopic gynecologic surgery. *Clin Ther*. 2010;32:1633–1637.
247. Rinehart JB, Baker B, Raphael D. Postoperative global amnesia reversed with flumazenil. *Neurologist*. 2012;18:216–218.
248. Brogden RN, Goa KL, Flumazenil. A reappraisal of its pharmacological properties and therapeutic efficacy as a benzodiazepine antagonist. *Drugs*. 1991;42:1061–1089.
249. File SE, Pellow S. Intrinsic actions of the benzodiazepine receptor antagonist Ro 15-1788900. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 1986;88:1–11.
250. Cumin R, Bonetti EP, Scherschlicht R, Haefely WE. Use of the specific benzodiazepine antagonist, Ro 15-1788, in studies of physiological dependence on benzodiazepines. *Experientia*. 1982;38:833–834.
251. Haefely W, Hunkeler W. The story of flumazenil. *Eur J Anaesthesiol Suppl*. 1988;2:3–13.
252. Klotz U, Kanto J. Pharmacokinetics and clinical use of flumazenil (Ro 15-1788). *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1988;14:1–12.
253. Klotz U, Ziegler G, Reimann IW. Pharmacokinetics of the selective benzodiazepine antagonist Ro 15-1788 in man. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1984;27:115–117.
254. Lauven PM, Schwilden H, Stoeckel H, Greenblatt DJ. The effects of a benzodiazepine antagonist Ro 15-1788 in the presence of stable concentrations of midazolam. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:61–64.
255. Kleinberger G, Grimm G, Laggner A, Drume W, Lenz K, Schneeweiss B. Weaning patients from mechanical ventilation by benzodiazepine antagonist Ro15-1788. *Lancet*. 1985;2:268–269.
256. Yokoyama M, Benson KT, Arakawa K, Goto H. Effects of flumazenil on intravenous lidocaine-induced convulsions and anticonvulsant property of diazepam in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:87–90.
257. Amrein R, Hetzel W, Bonetti EP, Gerecke M. Clinical pharmacology of dormicum (midazolam) and anexate (flumazenil). *Resuscitation*. 1988;16(suppl):S5–27.
258. Rubio F, Quintero S, Hernandez A, et al. Flumazenil for coma reversal in children after cannabis. *Lancet*. 1993;341:1028–1029.
259. Donovan KL, Fisher DJ. Reversal of chloral hydrate overdose with flumazenil. *BMJ*. 1989;298:1253.
260. Zuber M, Elsasser S, Ritz R, Scollo-Lavizzari G. Flumazenil (Anexate) in severe intoxication with carbamazepine (Tegretol). *Eur Neurol*. 1988;28:161–163.
261. Lassaletta A, Martino R, Gonzalez-Santiago P, Torrijos C, Cebrero M, Garcia-Frias E. Reversal of an antihistamine-induced coma with flumazenil. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2004;20:319–320.
262. Rouiller M, Forster A, Gemperle M. [Assessment of the efficacy and tolerance of a benzodiazepine antagonist (Ro 15-1788)]. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 1987;6:1–6.
263. Duka T, Ackenheil M, Noderer J, Doenicke A, Dorow R. Changes in noradrenaline plasma levels and behavioural responses induced by benzodiazepine agonists with the benzodiazepine antagonist Ro 15-1788. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 1986;90:351–357.
264. Nilsson A. Autonomic and hormonal responses after the use of midazolam and flumazenil. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1990;92: 51–54.
265. Ueda K, Ogawa Y, Aoki K, et al. Antagonistic effect of flumazenil after midazolam sedation on arterial-cardiac baroreflex. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2013;57(4):488–94: 10.1111/aas.12035. Epub 2012 Dec 6.
266. Weinbrum A, Geller E. The respiratory effects of reversing midazolam sedation with flumazenil in the presence or absence of narcotics. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1990;92:65–69.
267. Ghoneim MM, Dembo JB, Block RI. Time course of antagonism of sedative and amnesic effects of diazepam by flumazenil. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:899–904.
268. White PF, Way WL, Trevor AJ. Ketamine—its pharmacology and therapeutic uses. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:119–136.
269. Bovill JG. Anesthetic pharmacology: reflections of a section editor. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1186–1190.
270. Bovill JG, Dundee JW, Coppel DL, Moore J. Current Status of Ketamine Anaesthesia. *Lancet*. 1971;1:1285.
271. Nimmo WS, Clements JA. Pharmacokinetics of Ketamine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:186.
272. Clements JA, Nimmo WS. Pharmacokinetics and Analgesic Effect of Ketamine in Man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:27–30.
273. Olofsen E, Sigtermans M, Noppers I, et al. The Dose-Dependent Effect of S(+)-Ketamine on Cardiac Output in Healthy Volunteers and Complex Regional Pain Syndrome Type 1 Chronic Pain Patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:536–546.
274. Olofsen E, Noppers I, Niesters M, et al. Estimation of the Contribution of Norketamine to Ketamine-induced Acute Pain Relief and Neurocognitive Impairment in Healthy Volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:353–364.
275. Dahan A, Olofsen E, Sigtermans M, et al. Population pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic modeling of ketamine-induced pain relief of chronic pain. *Eur J Pain*. 2011;15:258–267.
276. White M, de Graaff P, Renshof B, van Kan E, Dzoljic M. Pharmacokinetics of S(+) ketamine derived from target controlled infusion. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:330–334.
277. Sigtermans M, Noppers I, Sarton E, et al. An observational study on the effect of S(+)-ketamine on chronic pain versus experimental acute pain in Complex Regional Pain Syndrome type 1 patients. *Eur J Pain*. 2010;14:302–307.
278. Noppers I, Olofsen E, Niesters M, et al. Effect of Rifampicin on S-ketamine and S-norketamine Plasma Concentrations in Healthy Volunteers after Intravenous S-ketamine Administration. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1435–1445.
279. Kharasch ED, Labroo R. Metabolism of Ketamine Stereoisomers by Human Liver-Microsomes. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:1201–1207.

280. Kharasch ED, Herrmann S, Labroo R. Ketamine As A Probe for Medetomidine Stereoisomer Inhibition of Human Liver Microsomal Drug-Metabolism. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:1208–1214.
281. Sigtermans M, Dahan A, Mooren R, et al. S(+)-ketamine effect on experimental pain and cardiac output: a population pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic modeling study in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:892–903.
282. Sigtermans MJ, van Hilten JJ, Bauer MC, et al. Ketamine produces effective and long-term pain relief in patients with Complex Regional Pain Syndrome Type 1. *Pain*. 2009;145:304–311.
283. Weinbroum AA. Non-opioid IV adjuvants in the perioperative period: Pharmacological and clinical aspects of ketamine and gabapentinoids. *Pharmacological Research*. 2012;65:411–429.
284. Niesters M, Hoitsma E, Sarton E, Aarts L, Dahan A. Offset Analgesia in Neuropathic Pain Patients and Effect of Treatment with Morphine and Ketamine. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:1063–1071.
285. Niesters M, Dahan A, Swartjes M, et al. Effect of ketamine on endogenous pain modulation in healthy volunteers. *Pain*. 2011;152: 656–663.
286. Niesters M, Khalili-Mahani N, Martini C, et al. Effect of Subanesthetic Ketamine on Intrinsic Functional Brain Connectivity A Placebo-controlled Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging Study in Healthy Male Volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:868–877.
287. Niesters M, Dahan A. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic considerations for NMDA receptor antagonists in the treatment of chronic neuropathic pain. *Expert Opin Drug Metab*. 2012;8:1409–1417.
288. Lee EE, Della Selva MP, Liu A, Himelhoch S. Ketamine as a novel treatment for major depressive disorder and bipolar depression: a systematic review and quantitative meta-analysis. *Gen Hosp Psychiatry*. 2015;37(2):178–184.
289. Nieuwenhuijs D, Romberg R, Sarton E, Teppema L, Dahan A. Influence of S(+) ketamine on respiration in mu-opioid receptor knockout mice. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2002;29:A77.
290. Sarton E, Teppema LJ, Olievier C, et al. The involvement of the mu-opioid receptor in ketamine-induced respiratory depression and antinociception. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1495–1500.
291. Timm C, Linstedt U, Weiss T, Zenz M, Maier C. Sympathomimetic effects of low-dose S(+)-ketamine. Effect of propofol dosage. *Anaesthesist*. 2008;57:338.
292. Amr YM. Effect of addition of epidural ketamine to steroid in lumbar radiculitis: one-year follow-up. *Pain Physician*. 2011;14: 475–481.
293. Jonkman K, van de Donk T, Dahan A. Ketamine for cancer pain: what is the evidence? *Curr Opin Support Palliat Care*. 2017;11(2):88–92.
294. Bar-Joseph G, Guilburd Y, Guilburd J. Ketamine Effectively Prevents Intracranial Pressure Elevations During Endotracheal Suctioning and Other Distressing Interventions in Patients with Severe Traumatic Brain Injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37:A402.
295. Bar-Joseph G, Guilburd Y, Tamir A, Guilburd JN. Effectiveness of ketamine in decreasing intracranial pressure in children with intracranial hypertension Clinical article. *J Neurosurg Pediatr*. 2009;4:40–46.
296. Dahmani S, Michelet D, Abback PS, et al. Ketamine for perioperative pain management in children: a meta-analysis of published studies. *Pediatric Anesthesia*. 2011;21:636–652.
297. Dahmani S. Use of ketamine in children—may be the last step. *Pediatric Anesthesia*. 2011;21:1081–1082.
298. Schnabel A, Poepping DM, Kranke P, Zahn PK, Pogatzki-Zahn EM. Efficacy and adverse effects of ketamine as an additive for paediatric caudal anaesthesia: a quantitative systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:601–611.
299. Walker SM, Yaksh TL. Neuraxial Analgesia in Neonates and Infants: A Review of Clinical and Preclinical Strategies for the Development of Safety and Efficacy Data. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:638–662.
300. Walker SM, Grafe M, Yaksh TL. Intrathecal Clonidine in the Neonatal Rat: Dose-Dependent Analgesia and Evaluation of Spinal Apoptosis and Toxicity. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:450–460.
301. Janssen PAJ. Pharmacology of Haloperidol. *International Journal of Neuropsychiatry*. 1967;S 3:S10.
302. Noppers IM, Niesters M, Aarts LPHJ, et al. Drug-induced liver injury following a repeated course of ketamine treatment for chronic pain in CRPS type 1 patients: a report of 3 cases. *Pain*. 2011;152:2173–2178.
303. Godefroi EF, Janssen PA, Vandereycken CA, Vanheertum AH, Niemegeers CJ. Dl-1-(1-Arylalkyl)imidazole-5-carboxylate esters. a novel type of hypnotic agents. *J Med Chem*. 1965;8:220–223.
304. Ledingham IM, Watt I. Influence of sedation on mortality in critically ill multiple trauma patients. *Lancet*. 1983;1:1270.
305. Wagner RL, White PF. Etomidate inhibits adrenocortical function in surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:647–651.
306. Longnecker DE. Stress free: to be or not to be? *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:643–644.
307. Owen H, Spence AA. Etomidate. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56:555–557.
308. Doenicke A, Roizen MF, Hoernecke R, Mayer M, Ostwald P, Foss J. Haemolysis after etomidate: comparison of propylene glycol and lipid formulations. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79:386–388.
309. Van Hamme MJ, Ghoneim MM, Ambre JJ. Pharmacokinetics of etomidate, a new intravenous anesthetic. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49:274–277.
310. Schuttler J, Schwilden H, Stoeckel H. Infusion strategies to investigate the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of hypnotic drugs: etomidate as an example. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1985;2:133–142.
311. Johnson KB, Egan TD, Layman J, Kern SE, White JL, McJames SW. The influence of hemorrhagic shock on etomidate: a pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96. 1360–8, table.
312. van BH, Manger FW, van BC, van BN. Etomidate anaesthesia in patients with cirrhosis of the liver: pharmacokinetic data. *Anaesthesia*. 1983;38(suppl):61–62.
313. Arden JR, Holley FO, Stanski DR. Increased sensitivity to etomidate in the elderly: initial distribution versus altered brain response. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:19–27.
314. Sear J. *Total Intravenous Anesthesia*. In: Longnecker DE, Brown DL, Newman MF, and Zapol WM, eds. 1st ed. New York: McGraw Hill Medical; 2008:897–917.
315. Heykants JJ, Meuldermans WE, Michiels LJ, Lewi PJ, Janssen PA. Distribution, metabolism and excretion of etomidate, a short-acting hypnotic drug, in the rat. Comparative study of (R)-(+)-(–)-Etomidate . *Arch Int Pharmacodyn Ther*. 1975;216:113–129.
316. Meuldermans WE, Heykants JJ. The plasma protein binding and distribution of etomidate in dog, rat and human blood. *Arch Int Pharmacodyn Ther*. 1976;221:150–162.
317. Evans RH, Hill RG. GABA-mimetic action of etomidate. *Experientia*. 1978;34:1325–1327.
318. Guitchounts G, Stewart DS, Forman SA. Two etomidate sites in alpha1beta2gamma2 gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptors contribute equally and noncooperatively to modulation of channel gating. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1235–1244.
319. Cheng VY, Martin LJ, Elliott EM, et al. Alpha5GABAA receptors mediate the amnestic but not sedative-hypnotic effects of the general anesthetic etomidate. *J Neurosci*. 2006;26:3713–3720.
320. Carlson BX, Hales TG, Olsen RW. *GABA-A Receptors and Anesthesia, Anesthesia Biologic Foundations* Yaksh TL, ynch C, apol WM, aze M, iebuyk JF, and aidman LJ. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1998:259–276.
321. Rusch D, Zhong H, Forman SA. Gating allosterism at a single class of etomidate sites on alpha1beta2gamma2L GABA A receptors accounts for both direct activation and agonist modulation. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:20982–20992.
322. Cold GE, Eskesen V, Eriksen H, Blatt LB. Changes in CMRO2, EEG and concentration of etomidate in serum and brain tissue during craniotomy with continuous etomidate supplemented with N2O and fentanyl. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1986;30:159–163.
323. Modica PA, Tempelhoff R. Intracranial pressure during induction of anaesthesia and tracheal intubation with etomidate-induced EEG burst suppression. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:236–241.
324. Thornton C, Heneghan CP, Navaratnarajah M, Bateman PE, Jones JG. Effect of etomidate on the auditory evoked response in man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:554–561.
325. Drummond JC, Cole DJ, Patel PM, Reynolds LW. Focal cerebral ischemia during anesthesia with etomidate, isoflurane, or thiopental: a comparison of the extent of cerebral injury. *Neurosurgery*. 1995;37:742–748.
326. Flower O, Hellings S. Sedation in traumatic brain injury. *Emerg Med Int*. 2012;2012:637171.
327. Ebrahim ZY, DeBoer GE, Luders H, Hahn JF, Lesser RP. Effect of etomidate on the electroencephalogram of patients with epilepsy. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:1004–1006.

328. Pastor J, Wix R, Meilan ML, et al. Etomidate accurately localizes the epileptic area in patients with temporal lobe epilepsy. *Epilepsia*. 2010;51:602–609.
329. Lallemand MA, Lentschener C, Mazoit JX, Bonnichon P, Manceau I, Ozier Y. Bispectral index changes following etomidate induction of general anaesthesia and orotracheal intubation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:341–346.
330. Kaneda K, Yamashita S, Woo S, Han TH. Population pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of brief etomidate infusion in healthy volunteers. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;51:482–491.
331. Guldager H, Sondergaard I, Jensen FM, Cold G. Basophil histamine release in asthma patients after in vitro provocation with Althesin and etomidate. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1985;29:352–353.
332. Morgan M, Lumley J, Whitwam JG. Respiratory effects of etomidate. *Br J Anaesth*. 1977;49:233–236.
333. Colvin MP, Savege TM, Newland PE, et al. Cardiorespiratory changes following induction of anaesthesia with etomidate in patients with cardiac disease. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51:551–556.
334. Ogawa K, Tanaka S, Murray PA. Inhibitory effects of etomidate and ketamine on endothelium-dependent relaxation in canine pulmonary artery. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:668–677.
335. Gooding JM, Corssen G. Effect of etomidate on the cardiovascular system. *Anesth Analg*. 1977;56:717–719.
336. Gooding JM, Weng JT, Smith RA, Berninger GT, Kirby RR. Cardiovascular and pulmonary responses following etomidate induction of anesthesia in patients with demonstrated cardiac disease. *Anesth Analg*. 1979;58:40–41.
337. Bovill JG. Intravenous anesthesia for the patient with left ventricular dysfunction. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;10:43–48.
338. Sprung J, Ogletree-Hughes ML, Moravec CS. The effects of etomidate on the contractility of failing and nonfailing human heart muscle. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:68–75.
339. Moller PA, Kamenik M. Bispectral index-guided induction of general anaesthesia in patients undergoing major abdominal surgery using propofol or etomidate: a double-blind, randomized, clinical trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012.
340. Larsen R, Lange H, Rathgeber J. Myocardial-metabolism after administration of propofol in geriatric-patients—a comparison with etomidate. *Anaesthesist*. 1988;37:510–516.
341. Fragen RJ, Weiss HW, Molteni A. The effect of propofol on adrenocortical steroidogenesis: a comparative study with etomidate and thiopental. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:839–842.
342. Diago MC, Amado JA, Otero M, Lopez-Cordovilla JJ. Anti-adrenal action of a subanaesthetic dose of etomidate. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43:644–645.
343. Bruder EA, Ball IM, Ridi S, et al. Single induction dose of etomidate versus other induction agents for endotracheal intubation in critically ill patients. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;1:CD010225.
344. Cherfan AJ, Arabi YM, Al-Dorzi HM, Kenny LP. Advantages and disadvantages of etomidate use for intubation of patients with sepsis. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2012;32:475–482.
345. Sprung CL, Annane D, Keh D, et al. Hydrocortisone therapy for patients with septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:111–124.
346. Lipiner-Friedman D, Sprung CL, Laterre PF, et al. Adrenal function in sepsis: the retrospective Corticus cohort study. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:1012–1018.
347. Cuthbertson BH, Sprung CL, Annane D, et al. The effects of etomidate on adrenal responsiveness and mortality in patients with septic shock. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35:1868–1876.
348. Hildreth AN, Mejia VA, Maxwell RA, Smith PW, Dart BW, Barker DE. Adrenal suppression following a single dose of etomidate for rapid sequence induction: a prospective randomized study. *J Trauma*. 2008;65:573–579.
349. Tekwani KL, Watts HF, Rzechula KH, Sweis RT, Kulstad EB. A prospective observational study of the effect of etomidate on septic patient mortality and length of stay. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2009;16:11–14.
350. Ray DC, McKeown DW. Effect of induction agent on vasopressor and steroid use, and outcome in patients with septic shock. *Crit Care*. 2007;11:R56.
351. Jung B, Clavieras N, Nougaret S, et al. Effects of etomidate on complications related to intubation and on mortality in septic shock patients treated with hydrocortisone: a propensity score analysis. *Crit Care*. 2012;16:R224.
352. Nimmo WS, Miller M. Pharmacology of etomidate. *Contemp Anesth Pract*. 1983;7:83–95.
353. Canessa R, Lema G, Urzua J, Dagnino J, Concha M. Anesthesia for elective cardioversion: a comparison of four anesthetic agents. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1991;5:566–568.
354. Kim TK, Park IS. Comparative Study of Brain Protection Effect between Thiopental and Etomidate Using Bispectral Index during Temporary Arterial Occlusion. *J Korean Neurosurg Soc*. 2011;50:497–502.
355. Wang N, Wang XH, Lu J, Zhang JY. The effect of repeated etomidate anesthesia on adrenocortical function during a course of electroconvulsive therapy. *J ECT*. 2011;27:281–285.
356. Avramov MN, Husain MM, White PF. The comparative effects of methohexital, propofol, and etomidate for electroconvulsive therapy. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:596–602.
357. Radtke FM, Franck M, Hagemann L, Seeling M, Wernecke KD, Spies CD. Risk factors for inadequate emergence after anesthesia: emergence delirium and hypoactive emergence. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2010;76:394–403.
358. Preda VA, Sen J, Karavitaki N, Grossman AB. Etomidate in the management of hypercortisolaemia in Cushing's syndrome: a review. *Eur J Endocrinol*. 2012;167:137–143.
359. St Pierre M, Dunkel M, Rutherford A, Hering W. Does etomidate increase postoperative nausea? A double-blind controlled comparison of etomidate in lipid emulsion with propofol for balanced anaesthesia. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2000;17:634–641.
360. Mayer M, Doenicke A, Nebauer AE, Hepting L. [Propofol and etomidate-Lipuro for induction of general anesthesia. Hemodynamics, vascular compatibility, subjective findings and postoperative nausea]. *Anaesthesist*. 1996;45:1082–1084.
361. Wu J, Yao S, Wu Z, et al. A comparison of anesthetic regimens using etomidate and propofol in patients undergoing first-trimester abortions: double-blind, randomized clinical trial of safety and efficacy. *Contraception*. 2013;87:55–62.
362. Doenicke AW, Roizen MF, Hoernecke R, Lorenz W, Ostwald P. Solvent for etomidate may cause pain and adverse effects. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:464–466.
363. Nyman Y, von HK, Palm C, Eksborg S, Lonnqvist PA. Etomidate-Lipuro is associated with considerably less injection pain in children compared with propofol with added lidocaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:536–539.
364. Huter L, Schreiber T, Gugel M, Schwarzkopf K. Low-dose intravenous midazolam reduces etomidate-induced myoclonus: a prospective, randomized study in patients undergoing elective cardioversion. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1298–1302. table.
365. Un B, Ceyhan D, Yelken B. Prevention of etomidate-related myoclonus in anesthetic induction by pretreatment with magnesium. *J Res Med Sci*. 2011;16:1490–1494.
366. Cotten JF, Husain SS, Forman SA, et al. Methoxycarbonyl-etomidate: a novel rapidly metabolized and ultra-short-acting etomidate analogue that does not produce prolonged adrenocortical suppression. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:240–249.
367. Cotten JF, Forman SA, Laha JK, et al. Carboetomidate: a pyrrole analog of etomidate designed not to suppress adrenocortical function. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:637–644.
368. Maze M, Tranquilli W. Alpha-2 adrenoceptor agonists: defining the role in clinical anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:581–605.
369. Bloor BC, Flacke WE. Reduction in halothane anesthetic requirement by clonidine, an alpha-adrenergic agonist. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:741–745.
370. Gerlach AT, Dasta JF. Dexmedetomidine: an updated review. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2007;41:245–252.
371. Tobias JD. Dexmedetomidine: applications in pediatric critical care and pediatric anesthesiology. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8:115–131.
372. Bhana N, Goa KL, McClellan KJ. Dexmedetomidine. *Drugs*. 2000;59:263–268.
373. Virtanen R, Savola JM, Saano V, Nyman L. Characterization of the selectivity, specificity and potency of medetomidine as an alpha 2-adrenoceptor agonist. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1988;150:9–14.
374. Wang L, Wang S, Qi J, et al. Impact of CYP2A6 gene polymorphism on the pharmacokinetics of dexmedetomidine for premedication. *Expert Rev Clin Pharmacol*. 2018;11(9):917–922.
375. Dyck JB, Maze M, Haack C, Azarnoff DL, Vuorilehto L, Shafer SL. Computer-controlled infusion of intravenous dexmedetomidine hydrochloride in adult human volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:821–828.

376. Weerink MAS, Struys MMRF, Hannivoort LN, et al. Clinical Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Dexmedetomidine. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2017;56(8):893–913.
377. De Wolf AM, Fragen RJ, Avram MJ, Fitzgerald PC, Rahimi-Danesh F. The pharmacokinetics of dexmedetomidine in volunteers with severe renal impairment. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1205–1209.
378. Venn RM, Karol MD, Grounds RM. Pharmacokinetics of dexmedetomidine infusions for sedation of postoperative patients requiring intensive caret. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:669–675.
379. Aantaa R, Jalonen J. Perioperative use of alpha2-adrenoceptor agonists and the cardiac patient. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2006;23:361–372.
380. Paris A, Tonner PH. Dexmedetomidine in anaesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;18:412–418.
381. Aho M, Erkola O, Kallio A, Scheinin H, Korttila K. Comparison of dexmedetomidine and midazolam sedation and antagonism of dexmedetomidine with atipamezole. *J Clin Anesth*. 1993;5:194–203.
382. Guo TZ, Jiang JY, Buttermann AE, Maze M. Dexmedetomidine injection into the locus ceruleus produces antinociception. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:873–881.
383. Nelson LE, Lu J, Guo T, Saper CB, Franks NP, Maze M. The alpha2-adrenoceptor agonist dexmedetomidine converges on an endogenous sleep-promoting pathway to exert its sedative effects. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:428–436.
384. Angst MS, Ramaswamy B, Davies MF, Maze M. Comparative analgesic and mental effects of increasing plasma concentrations of dexmedetomidine and alfentanil in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:744–752.
385. Venn RM, Bradshaw CJ, Spencer R, et al. Preliminary UK experience of dexmedetomidine, a novel agent for postoperative sedation in the intensive care unit. *Anaesthesia*. 1999;54:1136–1142.
386. Jakob SM, Ruokonen E, Grounds RM, et al. Dexmedetomidine vs midazolam or propofol for sedation during prolonged mechanical ventilation: two randomized controlled trials. *JAMA*. 2012;307:1151–1160.
387. Kress JP, Pohlman AS, O'Connor MF, Hall JB. Daily interruption of sedative infusions in critically ill patients undergoing mechanical ventilation. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:1471–1477.
388. Ebert TJ, Hall JE, Barney JA, et al. The effects of increasing plasma concentrations of dexmedetomidine in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(2):382–394.
389. Pandharipande PP, Pun BT, Herr DL, et al. Effect of sedation with dexmedetomidine vs lorazepam on acute brain dysfunction in mechanically ventilated patients: the MENDS randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2007;298:2644–2653.
390. Riker RR, Shehabi Y, Bokesch PM, et al. Dexmedetomidine vs midazolam for sedation of critically ill patients: a randomized trial. *JAMA*. 2009;301:489–499.
391. Wang D-S, Kaneshwaran K, Lei G, et al. Dexmedetomidine Prevents Excessive γ-Aminobutyric Acid Type A Receptor Function after Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129:477.
392. Ishii H, Kohno T, Yamakura T, Ikoma M, Baba H. Action of dexmedetomidine on the substantia gelatinosa neurons of the rat spinal cord. *Eur J Neurosci*. 2008;27:3182–3190.
393. McCutcheon CA, Orme RM, Scott DA, Davies MJ, McGlade DP. A comparison of dexmedetomidine versus conventional therapy for sedation and hemodynamic control during carotid endarterectomy performed under regional anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:668–675.
394. Hofer RE, Sprung J, Sarr MG, Wedel DJ. Anesthesia for a patient with morbid obesity using dexmedetomidine without narcotics. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:176–180.
395. Aho M, Lehtinen AM, Erkola O, Kallio A, Korttila K. The effect of intravenously administered dexmedetomidine on perioperative hemodynamics and isoflurane requirements in patients undergoing abdominal hysterectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:997–1002.
396. Aantaa R, Kanto J, Scheinin M, Kallio A, Scheinin H. Dexmedetomidine, an alpha 2-adrenoceptor agonist, reduces anesthetic requirements for patients undergoing minor gynecologic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:230–235.
397. Xiang Q, Huang DY, Zhao YL, et al. Caudal dexmedetomidine combined with bupivacaine inhibit the response to hernial sac traction in children undergoing inguinal hernia repair. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012.
398. Marhofer D, Kettner SC, Marhofer P, Pils S, Weber M, Zeitlinger M. Dexmedetomidine as an adjuvant to ropivacaine prolongs peripheral nerve block: a volunteer study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012.
399. Rancourt MP, Albert NT, Cote M, Letourneau DR, Bernard PM. Posterior tibial nerve sensory blockade duration prolonged by adding dexmedetomidine to ropivacaine. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:958–962.
400. Engelhard K, Werner C, Eberspacher E, et al. The effect of the alpha 2-agonist dexmedetomidine and the N-methyl-D-aspartate antagonist S(+)-ketamine on the expression of apoptosis-regulating proteins after incomplete cerebral ischemia and reperfusion in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:524–531. table.
401. Talke P, Bickler PE. Effects of dexmedetomidine on hypoxia-evoked glutamate release and glutamate receptor activity in hippocampal slices. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:551–557.
402. Talke P, Tong C, Lee HW, Caldwell J, Eisenach JC, Richardson CA. Effect of dexmedetomidine on lumbar cerebrospinal fluid pressure in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:358–364.
403. Bekker A, Sturaitis MK. Dexmedetomidine for neurological surgery. *Neurosurgery*. 2005;57:1–10.
404. Zornow MH, Maze M, Dyck JB, Shafer SL. Dexmedetomidine decreases cerebral blood flow velocity in humans. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1993;13:350–353.
405. Drummond JC, Dao AV, Roth DM, et al. Effect of dexmedetomidine on cerebral blood flow velocity, cerebral metabolic rate, and carbon dioxide response in normal humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:225–232.
406. Talke P, Stapelfeldt C, Garcia P. Dexmedetomidine does not reduce epileptiform discharges in adults with epilepsy. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2007;19:195–199.
407. Hsu YW, Cortinez LI, Robertson KM, et al. Dexmedetomidine pharmacodynamics: part I: crossover comparison of the respiratory effects of dexmedetomidine and remifentanil in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:1066–1076.
408. Riker RR, Fraser GL. Adverse events associated with sedatives, analgesics, and other drugs that provide patient comfort in the intensive care unit. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2005;25:8S–18S.
409. Venn M, Newman J, Grounds M. A phase II study to evaluate the efficacy of dexmedetomidine for sedation in the medical intensive care unit. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29:201–207.
410. Jalonen J, Hynynen M, Kuitunen A, et al. Dexmedetomidine as an anesthetic adjunct in coronary artery bypass grafting. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:331–345.
411. Talke P, Li J, Jain U, et al. Effects of perioperative dexmedetomidine infusion in patients undergoing vascular surgery. The Study of Perioperative Ischemia Research Group. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:620–633.
412. Koroglu A, Teksan H, Sagir O, Yucel A, Toprak HI, Ersoy OM. A comparison of the sedative, hemodynamic, and respiratory effects of dexmedetomidine and propofol in children undergoing magnetic resonance imaging. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:63–67. table.
413. Gerlach AT, Murphy CV, Dasta JF. An updated focused review of dexmedetomidine in adults. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2009;43(12):2064–2074.
414. Ramsay MA, Luterman DL. Dexmedetomidine as a total intravenous anesthetic agent. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:787–790.
415. Aouad MT, Zeeni C, Al Nawwar R, et al. Dexmedetomidine for improved quality of emergence from general anesthesia: a dose-finding study. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
416. Maccioli GA. Dexmedetomidine to facilitate drug withdrawal. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:575–577.
417. Phan H, Nahata MC. Clinical uses of dexmedetomidine in pediatric patients. *Paediatr Drugs*. 2008;10:49–69.
418. Maroof M, Khan RM, Jain D, Ashraf M. Dexmedetomidine is a useful adjunct for awake intubation. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:776–777.
419. Yazbek-Karam VG, Aouad MM. Perioperative uses of dexmedetomidine. *Middle East J Anesthesiol*. 2006;18:1043–1058.
420. Deleted in proofs.
421. Venn RM, Grounds RM. Comparison between dexmedetomidine and propofol for sedation in the intensive care unit: patient and clinician perceptions. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:684–690.
422. Triltsch AE, Welte M, von HP, et al. Bispectral index-guided sedation with dexmedetomidine in intensive care: a prospective, randomized, double blind, placebo-controlled phase II study. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:1007–1014.

423. Ely EW, Shintani A, Truman B, et al. Delirium as a predictor of mortality in mechanically ventilated patients in the intensive care unit. *JAMA*. 2004;291:1753–1762.
424. Siobal MS, Kallet RH, Kivett VA, Tang JF. Use of dexmedetomidine to facilitate extubation in surgical intensive-care-unit patients who failed previous weaning attempts following prolonged mechanical ventilation: a pilot study. *Respir Care*. 2006;51:492–496.
425. Khokhar MA, Rathbone J. Droperidol for psychosis-induced aggression or agitation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;12:CD002830.
426. Dershwitz M. Droperidol: should the black box be light gray? *Journal of Clinical Anesthesia*. 2002;14:598–603.
427. Gan TJ, White PF, Scuderi PE, Watcha MF, Kovac A. FDA "black box" warning regarding use of droperidol for postoperative nausea and vomiting: Is it justified? *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:287.
428. Gan TJ. "Black box" warning on droperidol: a report of the FDA convened expert panel. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1809.
429. White PF, Song DJ, Abrao J, Klein KW, Navarette B. Effect of low-dose droperidol on the QT interval during and after general anesthesia—a placebo-controlled study. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1101–1105.
430. White PF, Abrao J. Drug-induced prolongation of the QT interval: what's the point? *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:386–387.
431. Gan TJ, Meyer TA, Apfel CC, et al. Society for ambulatory anesthesia guidelines for the management of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1615–1628.
432. Gan TJ, Kovac AL, Lubarsky DA, Philip BK. Management of postoperative nausea and vomiting: tackling the practical issues. *Anesth Analg*. 2006:47–51.
433. Flood P, Coates KM. Droperidol inhibits GABA(A) and neuronal nicotinic receptor activation. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:987–993.
434. Fischler M, Bonnet F, Trang H, et al. The Pharmacokinetics of Droperidol in Anesthetized Patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:486–489.
435. Wooltorton E. Droperidol: cardiovascular toxicity and deaths. *Can Med Assoc J*. 2002;166:932.
436. Hill RP, Lubarsky DA, Phillips-Bute B, et al. Cost-effectiveness of prophylactic antiemetic therapy with ondansetron, droperidol, or placebo. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:958–967.
437. Schaub I, Lysakowski C, Elia N, Tramer MR. Low-dose droperidol (<= 1 mg or <= 15 mu g kg(-1)) for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting in adults: quantitative systematic review of randomised controlled trials. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29:286–294.

24 Opioids

MARK SCHUMACHER and KAZUHIKO FUKUDA

KEY POINTS

- Opioids are a vital part of providing the analgesic component of anesthesia and often form the foundation for postoperative pain management.
- Opioids suppress pain by targeting multiple sites throughout the nervous system including action in brain, spinal cord, and peripheral nervous systems.
- An increased understanding of the molecular pharmacology of opioid receptors and opioid-induced cellular responses allows utilization of innovative techniques for analgesia.
- Opioids also affect multiple organ systems, including the respiratory and cardiovascular systems, and can cause a variety of adverse effects. Proper dosing and monitoring may allow these adverse effects to be minimized.
- Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic properties of opioids are affected by a variety of factors, such as age, body weight, organ failure, shock, and drug interactions. To administer opioids, these factors should be taken into consideration.
- Although new opioid delivery systems such as transdermal patches provide certain clinical advantages, they can also pose additional risks such as respiratory depression.
- Opioid analgesics serve a critical role in acute pain management but their role in the long-term treatment of chronic noncancer pain has been called into question due to increased risks of overdose and addiction.

Introduction

The remarkable beneficial effects of opioids, as well as their toxic side effects and addictive potential, have been known for centuries. The term opioid refers broadly to all compounds related to opium. The word opium originates from *opos*, the Greek word for juice, the drug being derived from the juice of the opium poppy, *Papaver somniferum*. In contrast, the term opiate refers to natural products derived from the opium poppy and includes morphine, codeine, and thebaine.

The first undisputed reference to opium is found in the writings of Theophrastus in the third century B.C. During the Middle Ages, many of the uses of opium were appreciated. Opium contains more than 20 distinct alkaloids. In 1806, Sertürner reported the isolation of a pure substance in opium that he named morphine, after Morpheus, the Greek god of dreams. By the middle of the nineteenth century, the use of pure alkaloids rather than crude opium preparations began to spread throughout the medical world. Since then, there have been ongoing efforts to develop semisynthetic and synthetic opioid analgesics without the adverse side effects. Unfortunately, many of the synthetic opioids share side effects of natural opioids. The search for new opioid agonists led to the synthesis of opioid antagonists and compounds with mixed agonist/antagonist properties, which further expanded therapeutic options and provided important tools for exploring mechanisms of opioid actions. Although new methods of opioid administration, including patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) and computer-based infusion techniques, have been developed, opioids continue to act on common binding sites throughout the nervous system.

Pharmacology of Opioids

CLASSIFICATION OF OPIOID COMPOUNDS

Opioids can be classified as naturally occurring, semisynthetic, and synthetic (Box 24.1). The naturally occurring opioids can be divided into two chemical classes, phenanthrenes (morphine and codeine) and benzylisoquinolines (papaverine). The semisynthetic opioids are morphine derivatives in which one of several changes has been made. Synthetic opioids are classified into four groups, the morphinan derivatives (levorphanol), the diphenyl or methadone derivatives (methadone, *d*-propoxyphene), the benzomorphans (phenazocine, pentazocine), and the phenylpiperidine derivatives (meperidine, fentanyl, sufentanil, alfentanil, and remifentanil). Structures of opioid compounds are shown in Fig. 24.1[1] and Table 24.1.[1]

Opioids can be classified as agonists, partial agonists, mixed agonist-antagonist, and antagonists on the basis of their interaction with the opioid receptors.

BASIC STUDIES ON OPIOID RECEPTORS

In 1973, three independent teams of investigators described the presence of opioid binding sites in the nervous system from the radioligand binding assays. From pharmacologic experiments, three types of opioid receptors were postulated. They were named μ for morphine type, κ for the ketocyclazocine type, and σ for the SKF10047 (*N*-allylnormetazocine) type. In addition, a high-affinity receptor for enkephalins was found in the mouse vas deferens, and was named the δ-receptor. Furthermore, an ε-receptor was

BOX 24.1 Classification of Opioid Compounds

- Naturally occurring
  - Morphine
  - Codeine
  - Papaverine
  - Thebaine
- Semisynthetic
  - Heroin
  - Dihydromorphone, morphinone
  - Thebaine derivatives (e.g., etorphine, buprenorphine)
- Synthetic
  - Morphinan derivatives (e.g., levorphanol, butorphanol)
  - Diphenylpropylamine derivatives (e.g., methadone)
  - Benzomorphan derivatives (e.g., pentazocine)
  - Phenylpiperidine derivatives (e.g., meperidine, fentanyl, sufentanil, alfentanil, remifentanil)

From Bailey PL, Egan TD, Stanley TH. Intravenous opioid anesthetics. In: Miller RD, ed. *Anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2015. An imprint of Elsevier Inc., p. 865.

proposed as the binding site for β-endorphin in the rat vas deferens. Pharmacologic actions of opioids and the involved receptors have been analyzed (Table 24.2).

Since the early 1990s, molecular biologic studies have elucidated the molecular structures and signal transduction mechanisms of the opioid receptors. Four different complementary DNAs (cDNAs) have been isolated as members of the opioid receptor family.[2] Investigators demonstrated that three of them correspond to the pharmacologically defined μ-, δ-, and κ-opioid receptors. The fourth receptor did not bind with opioid ligands with high affinities. Later, a novel peptide, nociceptin/orphanin FQ, was identified as an endogenous agonist of the fourth member of the opioid receptor family.[3,4] The μ-, δ-, and κ-opioid receptors and the nociceptin receptor share approximately 50% amino acid sequence homology with each other. Characteristics of three opioid receptors and the nociceptin/orphanin FQ receptor are listed in Table 24.3. Hydropathy analysis of the primary structures of the opioid receptors predicted that the opioid receptors possess seven transmembrane domains (Fig. 24.2). This is a characteristic structural[5] feature of G-protein-coupled receptors. Crystallographic analysis revealed that the μ-, δ-, and κ-opioid receptors and the nociceptin receptor actually possess seven transmembrane domains and the agonist binds deeply within a large pocket (Fig. 24.3).[6] Furthermore, analysis of the crystal structure of the murine opioid receptor revealed agonist-induced conformational changes in detail, providing the basis for the development of new ligands.[7]

The σ (sigma) receptor, which was previously classified as a member of the opioid receptor, was shown to be an endoplasmic reticulum-resident protein, and has been implicated in many diseases, ranging from cocaine or alcohol addiction to the most recently reported familial adult or juvenile amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. The amino acid sequence of the σ-1 receptor does not resemble that of any other mammalian proteins.[8]

Further pharmacologic classification of the μ-receptor as the μ_1, μ_2, and μ_3 subtypes has been proposed, but the molecular identity of these receptor subtypes still remains to be clarified. Several possible molecular models of opioid receptor subtypes exist, including alternate splicing of a common gene product, receptor dimerization, and interaction of a common gene product with other receptor or signaling molecules.[9] Multiple μ-opioid receptor species can be produced from a gene product of the μ-opioid receptor gene by alternate splicing (Fig. 24.4).[10,11] Analysis of the alternate splicing products reveals differences in ligand binding and G-protein activation. However, their physiologic, pharmacologic, or clinical implications remain to be elucidated. Interestingly, it was recently reported that the analgesic action of 3-iodobenzoyl-6β-naltrexamide, a potent analgesic against thermal, inflammatory, and neuropathic pain, is mediated by its interaction with mMOR-1G, a truncated splice variant possessing only six transmembrane segments, in mice.[12]

G-protein-coupled receptors can form dimers, homodimers (same receptor), and heterodimers (different receptor types). The existence of these homodimers and heterodimers has been shown in cultured cells and *in vivo.* Among opioid receptors (μ, δ, κ, and nociception receptors), various combinations of the molecules have been shown to form dimers, and the dimer formation has been shown to affect the ligand binding properties and signal transduction mechanisms.[13] Physiologic and clinical implications of dimer formation of opioid receptors will be further clarified. For example, it is interesting that a bivalent ligand containing μ-agonist and δ-antagonist pharmacophores effectively bridges μ-δ opioid receptor heterodimers and exhibits enhanced efficacy and a reduced tendency for tolerance in mice.[14] However, in the peripheral nervous system, μ and δ receptors are apparently expressed in different sensory neuronal subpopulations.[15,16]

Taken together, the overwhelming evidence of opioid receptor diversity in structure, ligand binding, and distribution supports the concept they serve both essential and complex signaling roles throughout the nervous system.

GENETIC VARIATIONS WHICH INFLUENCE OPIOID EFFECTS

Several single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) have been identified in the human μ-opioid receptor gene (Fig. 24.5).[17] The A118G mutation, the most common of these SNPs, leads to a change in the gene product in the human μ-opioid receptors, which is an A-to-G substitution in exon 1 that results in an amino acid exchange at position 40 from asparagine to aspartate (N40D). Patients with cancer who are homozygous for the A118G variant required higher doses of oral morphine for long-term treatment of their pain.[18] A118G mutation of the human μ-opioid receptor gene reduces analgesic responses to morphine-6-glucuronide (M6G), but it does not significantly affect the respiratory depression induced by M6G.[19] Furthermore, morphine consumption with intravenous PCA after total abdominal hysterectomy is significantly greater in women homozygous for the A118G variant than in other patients.[20] In a meta-analysis involving 18 studies and more than 4600 patients, carriers of A118G were observed to exhibit higher opioid analgesic requirements.[21] Another meta-analysis showed significant association between A118G polymorphism and susceptibility to opioid dependence or addiction in Asian populations.[22]

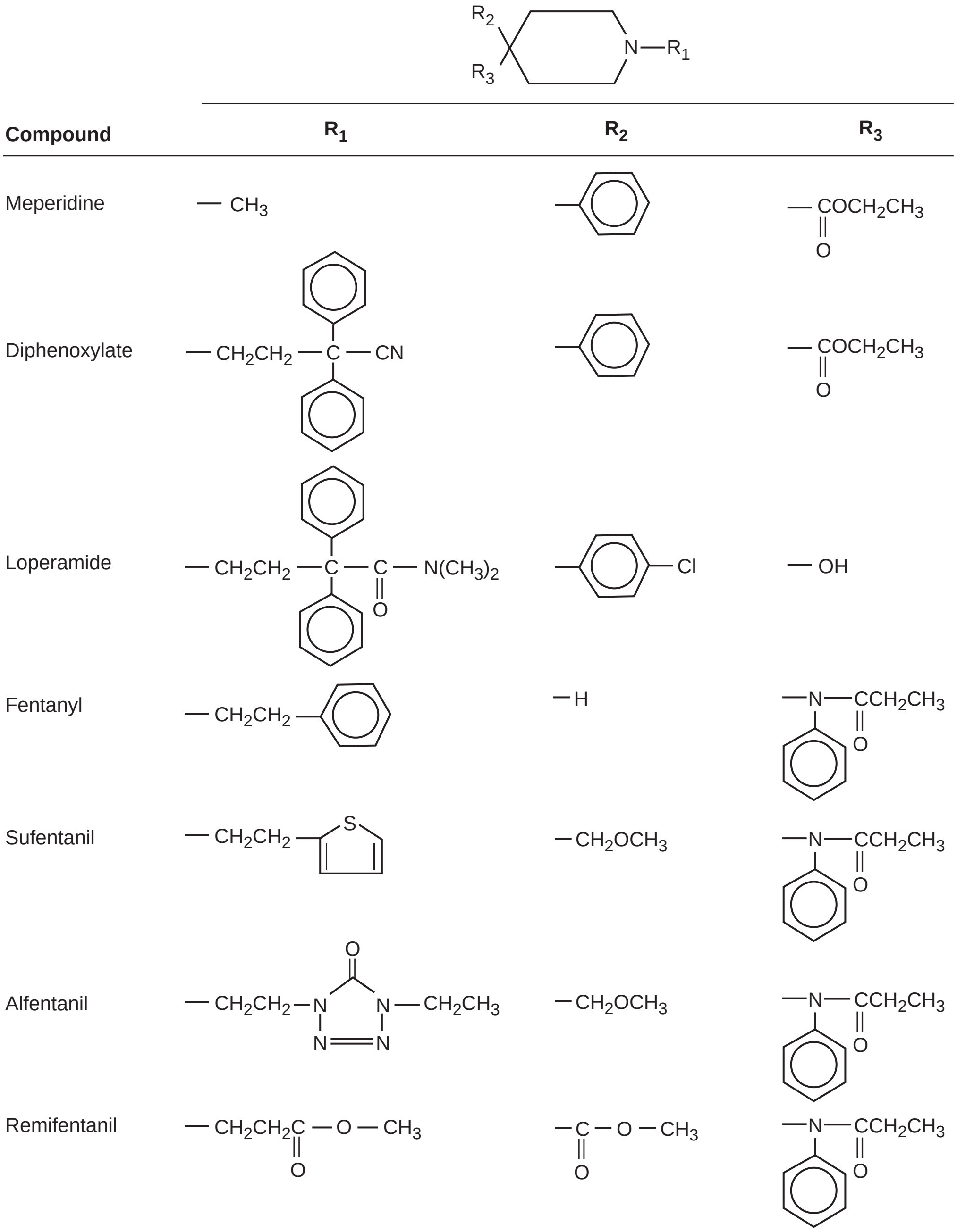


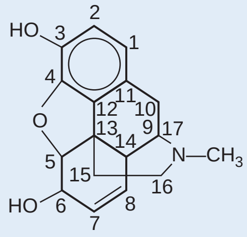
Fig. 24.1 **Chemical structures of piperidine and phenylpiperidine analgesics.** (From Gutstein HB, Akil H. Opioid analgesics. In: Hardman JG, Limbird LE, eds. *Goodman and Gilman's the Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001:569–619.)

In vitro experiments show that the variant receptors with A118G mutation are associated with higher binding affinity to and potency of β-endorphin, but lower potency of morphine.[23] Studies in mouse models with analogous substitution of human A118G showed reduced analgesic response to morphine in some regions of the mouse brain with the GG genotype when compared with the AA genotype.[24] A study also showed that 118A messenger RNA was 1.5- to 2.5-fold more abundant than the 118G messenger RNA in heterozygous brain autopsy tissues.[25]

Overall, these findings suggest that the 118G allele may result in changes in abundance and/or function of the μ-opioid receptor leading to differences in antinociceptive potency of opioid analgesics. This in turn could misdirect healthcare providers in providing the most effective and safe opioid-based analgesic plan.

The C17T mutation of the human μ-opioid receptor, located in exon 1, causes an amino acid exchange from alanine to valine at receptor protein position 6 of the extracellular receptor terminal. This mutation has been reported to occur in a higher overall proportion of opioid-dependent persons, but the effects of the C17T polymorphism on analgesic responses are unknown. A recent study using cultured cells reported that adenylate inhibition via the C17T polymorphism was decreased for many opioids, including the clinically significant drugs morphine, buprenorphine,

TABLE 24.1 Structures of Opioids and Opioid Antagonists Chemically Related to Morphine



Morphine

	CHEMICAL RADICALS AND POSITION*			
Nonproprietary Name	**3**	**6**	**17**	**Other Changes†**
Morphine	—OH	—OH	—CH$_3$	—
Heroin	—OCOCH$_3$	—OCOCH$_3$	—CH$_3$	—
Hydromorphone	—OH	=O	—CH$_3$	(1)
Oxymorphone	—OH	=O	—CH$_3$	(1), (2)
Levorphanol	—OH	—H	—CH$_3$	(1), (3)
Levallorphan	—OH	—H	—CH$_2$CH=CH$_2$	(1), (3)
Codeine	—OCH$_3$	—OH	—CH$_3$	—
Hydrocodone	—OCH$_3$	=O	—CH$_3$	(1)
Oxycodone	—OCH$_3$	=O	—CH$_3$	(1), (2)
Nalmefene	—OH	=CH$_2$	—CH$_2$—<	(1), (2)
Nalorphine	—OH	—OH	—CH$_2$CHKCH$_2$	—
Naloxone	—OH	=O	—CH$_2$CH=CH$_2$	(1), (2)
Naltrexone	—OH	=O	—CH$_2$—<	(1), (2)
Buprenorphine	—OH	—OCH$_3$	—CH$_2$—<	(1), (4)
Butorphanol	—OH	—H	—CH$_2$—◆	(1), (2), (3)
Nalbuphine	—OH	JOH	—CH$_2$—◆	(1),(2)

*The numbers 3, 6, and 17 refer to positions in the morphine molecule, as shown above.
†Other changes in the morphine molecule are as follows:
(1)Single instead of double bond between C7 and C8.
(2)OH added to C14.
(3)No oxygen between C4 and C5.
(4)Endoetheno bridge between C6 and C14; 1-hydroxy-1,2,2-trimethylpropyl substitution on C7.
From Gutstein HB, Akil H: Opioid analgesics. In: Hardman JG, Limbird LE, eds. *Goodman and Gilman's the Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001: 569–619.

and fentanyl, as well as endogenous opioids,[26] suggesting that this polymorphism may affect individual responses to opioid therapy, while the possible disruption of the endogenous opioid system may contribute to susceptibility to substance abuse.

It is known that genetic variation of genes other than opioid receptor genes can affect sensitivity to opioids. It has been demonstrated that the Val158Met polymorphism of the human catechol-*O*-methyltransferase (COMT) gene has contributed to differences in opioid consumption in patients treated for chronic cancer pain,[27] and is associated with variability in opioid consumption in postoperative nephrectomy patients.[28] COMT metabolizes biogenic amines including catecholamines such as dopamine, epinephrine, and norepinephrine, thereby acting as a key modulator of dopaminergic and adrenergic neurotransmission, and can affect the pharmacologic effects of opioids. Some studies have explored the relationship between gene-gene interactions and opioid responses. Kolesnikov and associates have demonstrated that the heterozygous patients with μ-opioid receptor A118G and COMT G1974A mutation consumed significantly less morphine compared with homozygous patients of A118.[29] As investigation into the clinical impact of genetic variability continues, it is revealing that even greater complexity exists between gene-gene interactions and postoperative morphine consumption.[30]

ENDOGENOUS OPIOID PEPTIDES

Enkephalin, β-endorphin, and dynorphin were identified as endogenous agonists for the δ-, μ-, and κ-opioid receptors, respectively. Following purification of these peptides from mammalian tissues, cDNAs for the precursors of these peptides were cloned. cDNA cloning and amino acid determination of preproopiomelanocortin demonstrated that the cleavage of this precursor protein produces not only β-endorphin but also several other neuropeptides including methionine-enkephalin, adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), and α-melanocyte stimulating hormone. Amino acid sequence of preproenkephalin indicates that four methionine enkephalins and one leucine-enkephalin are cleaved from this precursor. Furthermore, the primary structure of preprodynorphin, the precursor of dynorphin, gives rise to dynorphin, leumorphin, and neoendorphin—ligands for the κ-opioid receptor.

Orphanin FQ or nociceptin, a novel endogenous opioid peptide with a significant sequence homology to dynorphin, was isolated in 1995[3,4] and so named because it lowered pain threshold under certain conditions in contrast to other endogenous opioid peptides. Pharmacologic and physiologic studies have demonstrated that orphanin FQ/nociceptin has behavioral and pain modulatory properties distinct from those of the three classic opioid peptides.[31] However, studies of the effect of orphanin FQ/nociceptin on pain sensitivity have produced conflicting results, which may suggest that the effects of orphanin FQ/nociceptin on pain sensitivity depend on the underlying behavioral state of the animal. Prepronociceptin, the precursor of orphanin FQ/nociceptin, was cloned, and its amino acid sequence suggested the existence of prepronociceptin-derived neuropeptides other than orphanin FQ/nociception.[32]

TABLE 24.2 Pharmacologic Actions of Opioids and Opioid Receptors in Animal Models

		ACTIONS OF	
	Receptor	**Agonists**	**Antagonists**
ANALGESIA			
Supraspinal	μ, δ, κ	Analgesic	No effect
Spinal	μ, δ, κ	Analgesic	No effect
Respiratory function	μ	Decrease	No effect
Gastrointestinal tract	μ, κ	Decrease transit	No effect
Psychotomimesis	κ	Increase	No effect
Feeding	μ, δ, κ	Increase feeding	Decrease feeding
Sedation	μ, κ	Increase	No effect
Diuresis	κ	Increase	
HORMONE SECRETION			
Prolactin	μ	Increase release	Decrease release
Growth hormone	μ and/or δ	Increase release	Decrease release
NEUROTRANSMITTER RELEASE			
Acetylcholine	μ	Inhibit	
Dopamine	δ	Inhibit	

The search for endogenous ligand binding with the μ receptor with high affinity and high selectivity led to the discovery of a class of novel endogenous opioids termed endomorphin-1 and endomorphin-2.[33] These peptides are tetrapeptides with the sequence Tyr-Pro-Trp-Phe and Tyr-Pro-Phe-Phe, respectively. An endomorphin gene has yet to be cloned, and much remains to be learned about the anatomic distribution, mode of interaction with the opioid receptors, function in vivo, and potential existence of other related peptides that are highly selective for each of the opioid receptors. It was recently demonstrated that both endomorphin-1 and endomorphin-2 given centrally and peripherally produced potent antiallodynic activities in a mouse model of neuropathic pain,[34] and downregulation of endomorphin-2 correlates with mechanical allodynia in a rat bone cancer pain model.[35]

INTRACELLULAR SIGNAL TRANSDUCTION MECHANISM OF OPIOID RECEPTORS

The opioid receptors belong to the G-protein-coupled receptor family. It has been demonstrated that activation of the opioid receptors leads to activation of the pertussis toxin-sensitive G proteins (G_i or G_o or both). Expression of the cloned opioid receptors in cultured cells by transfection of the cloned cDNAs has facilitated analysis of the intracellular signal transduction mechanisms activated by the opioid receptors (Fig. 24.6).[2] Adenylate cyclase is inhibited by opioid receptor activation, with a resulting reduction of the cellular cyclic adenosine monophosphate (AMP) content. Electrophysiologically, the voltage-gated Ca^{2+}

TABLE 24.3 Characteristics of Opioid Receptors

	μ	**δ**	**κ**	**Nociceptin**
Tissue bioassay	Guinea pig ileum	Mouse vas deferens	Rabbit vas deferens	—
Endogenous ligand	β-Endorphin, Endomorphin	Leu-enkephalin, Met-enkephalin	Dynorphin	Nociceptin
Agonist	Morphine, Fentanyl, DAMGO	DPDPE, Deltorphin	Buprenorphine, Pentazocine, U50488H	—
Antagonist	Naloxone, Naltrexone	Naloxone, Naltrindole	Naloxone, NorBNI	—
Coupled G protein	$G_{i/o}$	$G_{i/o}$	$G_{i/o}$	$G_{i/o}$
Adenylate cyclase	Inhibition	Inhibition	Inhibition	Inhibition
Voltage-gated Ca^{2+} channels	Inhibition	Inhibition	Inhibition	Inhibition
Inward rectifier K^+ channels	Activation	Activation	Activation	Activation

DAMGO, [d-Ala^2, MePhe^4, Gly-ol^8]enkephalin; *DPDPE*, [D-penicillamine^2, D-penicillamine^5]enkephalin; *NorBNI*, norbinaltorphimine.

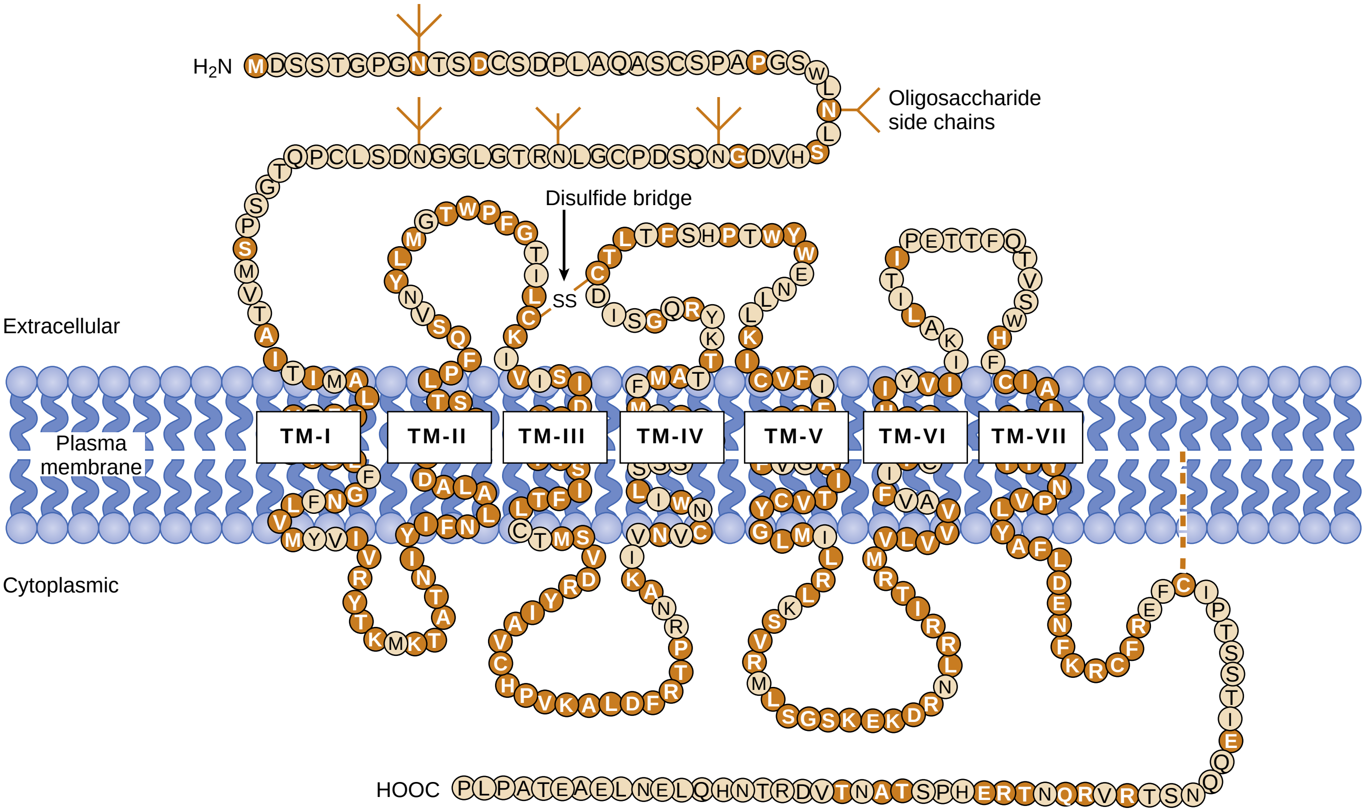

H2N
MDSSTGPGNTSDCSDPLAQASCSPAPGSW
Oligosaccharide side chains
Disulfide bridge
SS
Extracellular
Plasma membrane
Cytoplasmic
TM-I
TM-II
TM-III
TM-IV
TM-V
TM-VI
TM-VII
HOOC
PLPATEAELNELQHNTRDVTNATSPHERTNQRVRTSNQ

Fig. 24.2 Proposed structure of the μ-opioid receptor. *Black circles* indicate amino acid residues identical in the μ- and δ-opioid receptors. *TM-I* to *VII* show putative transmembrane segments composed of hydrophobic amino acid residues.

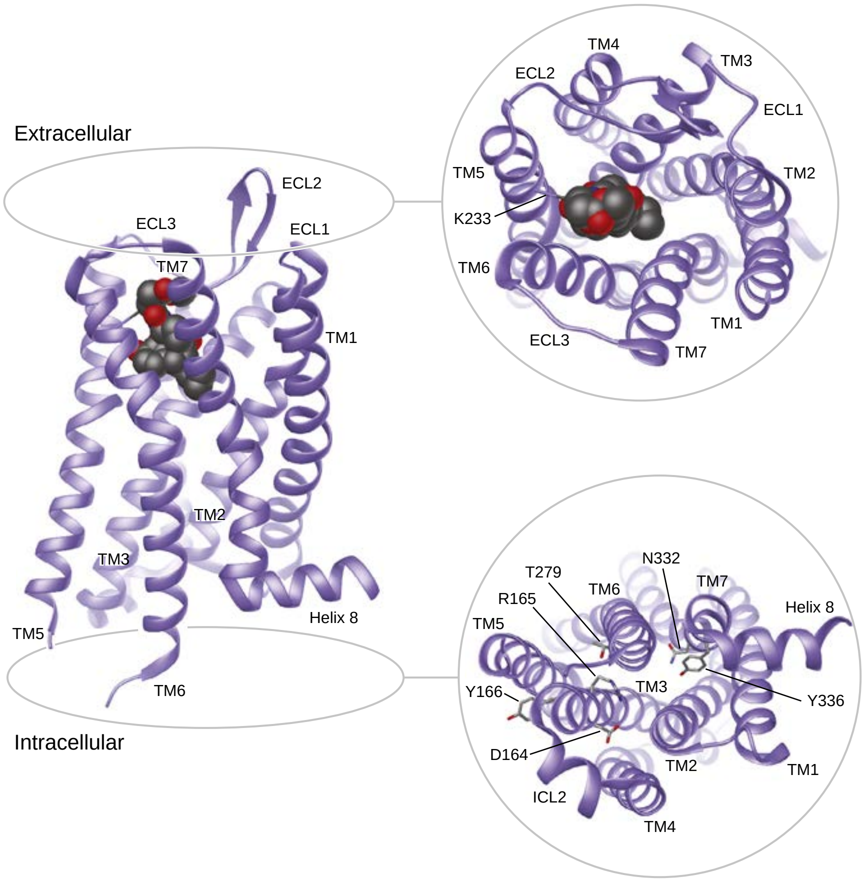

Extracellular
ECL2
ECL3
ECL1
TM7
TM1
TM2
TM3
TM5
Helix 8
TM6
Intracellular
TM4
TM3
ECL2
ECL1
TM5
TM2
K233
TM6
TM1
ECL3
TM7
N332
T279
TM7
R165
TM6
Helix 8
TM5
TM3
Y166
Y336
D164
TM2
TM1
ICL2
TM4

Fig. 24.3 Overall view of the μ-opioid receptor structure. Views from within the membrane plane *(left)*, extracellular side *(top)*, and intracellular side *(bottom)* show the typical 7-transmembrane G-protein-coupled receptor architecture of the μ-opioid receptor. β-FNA, a semisynthetic opioid antagonist derived from morphine, is shown in black spheres. (From Manglik A, Kruse AC, Kobilka TS, et al. Crystal structure of the μ-opioid receptor bound to a morphinan antagonist. *Nature.* 2012;485:321–326.)

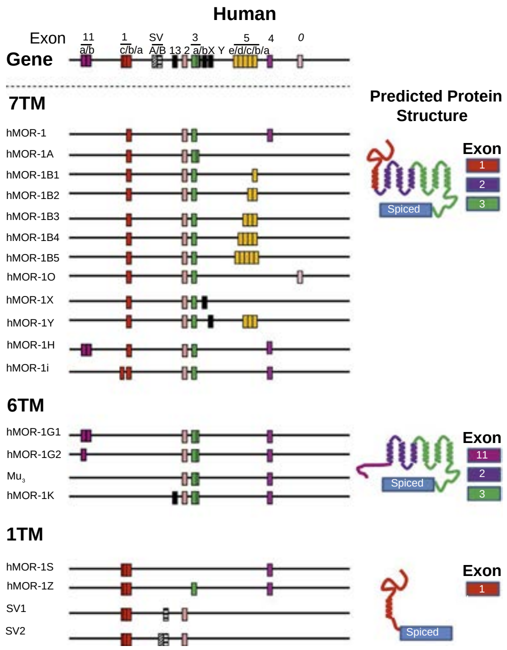


Fig. 24.4 μ-opioid receptor splicing in humans. Variants are grouped as full length, 7-transmembrane *(7TM)*, 6-transmembrane *(6TM)*, and 1-transmebrane *(1TM)* with the predicted structure shown to the right and the exons color-coded to match the splicing schematic. (From Pasternak GW, Pan YX. Mu opioids and their receptors: evolution of a concept. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2013;65:1257–1317.)

channel is inhibited and the inwardly rectifying potassium (K^+) channels are activated by the opioid receptors. As a result, neuronal excitability is reduced by activation of the opioid receptors. However, the role of adenylate cyclase in opioid receptor activation is complex. For example, long-term tolerance to opioids has been thought to be associated with superactivation of adenylyl cyclase activity, which is a counterregulatory response to the decrease in cyclic AMP levels seen after acute opioid administration.[36] That this effect is prevented by pretreatment of cells with pertussis toxin demonstrates involvement of G proteins (G_i or G_o or both).

Beyond adenylate cyclase, other regulatory components participate in the coupling of opioid receptor binding and a cellular response. It was shown that extracellular signal-related kinase, a class of mitogen-activated protein kinases, is activated by the opioid receptors.[37] Opioid-induced activation of extracellular signal-related kinase can lead to increase in arachidonate release[37] and expression of immediate early genes, c-fos and junB.[38]

Chronic exposure of the opioid receptors to agonists induces cellular adaptation mechanisms, which may be involved in opioid tolerance, dependence, and withdrawal symptoms. Several investigators have shown that short-term desensitization probably involves phosphorylation of the opioid receptors through protein kinase C.[39] A number of other kinases also have been implicated, including protein kinase A and β-adrenergic receptor kinase (BARK), a member of the G-protein-coupled receptor kinase (GRK).[40] BARKs selectively phosphorylate agonist-bound receptors and thereby promote interactions with β-arrestins, which interfere with G-protein coupling and promote receptor internalization. β-Arrestin 2 functions as a scaffolding protein that interacts with signal transducers, and the recruitment of β-arrestin 2 induced by opioid receptor activation is involved in the regulation of activity of c-Src, Akt, and mitogen-activated protein kinases (Fig. 24.7).[41] The c-Src inhibitor, dasatinib, attenuated and reversed morphine-induced tolerance in mice, suggesting that c-Src recruited by β-arrestin 2 is involved in the morphine-induced tolerance.[42] Acute morphine-induced analgesia was enhanced in mice lacking β-arrestin 2, suggesting that this protein contributes to regulation of responsivity to opioids *in vivo*.[43] Therefore, β-arrestin modification by associated kinases serves a critical role in the coupling between agonist binding to opioid receptors and their ability to develop and sustain an analgesic response.

Like other G-protein-coupled receptors, the opioid receptors can undergo rapid agonist-mediated internalization by a classic endocytic pathway.[44,45] These processes may be induced differentially as a function of the class of the ligand. For example, certain agonists, such as etorphine and enkephalins, cause rapid internalization of the μ receptor, whereas morphine, which decreases adenylyl cyclase activity equally well, does not cause μ receptor internalization in all cell types such as HEK293 cells.[46] Although these findings may suggest that different ligands induce different conformational changes in the receptor that lead to divergent intracellular events, they also have revealed that rapid morphine–dependent μ receptor endocytosis is still possible in subpopulations of central nervous system (CNS) neurons such as striatal neurons.[47] Taken together, they may help provide an explanation for differences in the efficacy and abuse potential of various opioids.[48]

BIASED AGONISM

Chemically distinct ligands binding to the same G-protein–coupled receptor can stabilize the receptor in multiple active conformations. In this way, differential activation of G-protein–coupled cell signaling pathways may produce divergent physiologic outcomes, a phenomenon known as biased agonism. Biased agonism can be exploited to design drugs that selectively activate desired signaling pathways, while minimizing other signaling pathways via the same receptor subtype and associated side effects.

Morphine binds to the μ-opioid receptor protein to form an active complex with signaling proteins, including $G_{i/o}$ and β-arrestin. The $G_{i/o}$ signaling pathway is thought to mediate analgesic action of morphine, whereas β-arrestin signaling results in unwanted side effects including euphoria, which can lead to addiction, respiratory depression, and gastrointestinal effects. Consistently, it was shown that the analgesic properties of morphine were enhanced but morphine-induced respiratory depression and constipation were attenuated in β-arrestin 2 knockout mice.[49] Emerging research in this evolving field includes a report by Manglik and associates, who computationally screened 3 million molecules, resulting in the compound PZM21, which showed high $G_{i/o}$-biased signaling and suppressed pain in mice without constipation, respiratory depression, hyperlocomotion, and addiction–related behaviors.[50] The clinical importance of these findings awaits further confirmation given other reports showing little difference in adverse effect profiles between morphine and PZM21 in

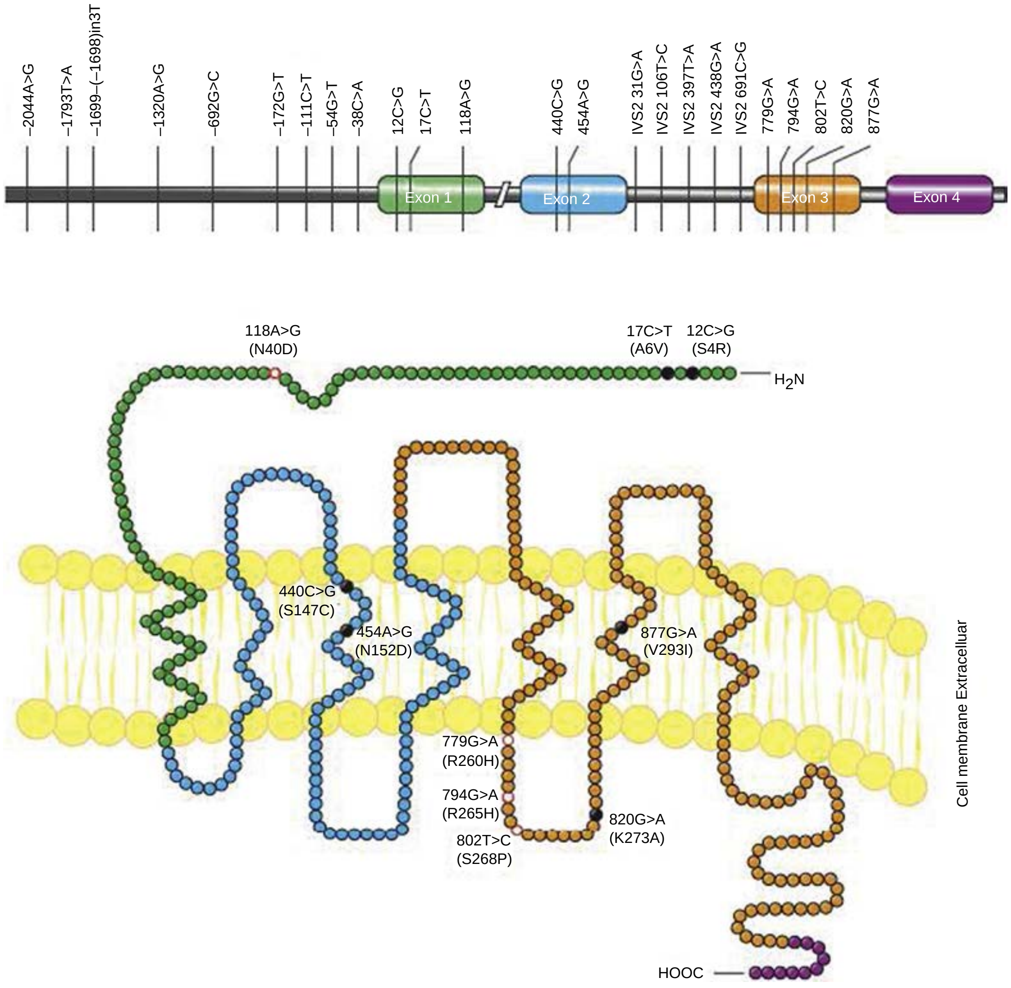

−2044A>G
−1793T>A
−1699–(−1698)in3T
−1320A>G
−692G>C
−172G>T
−111C>T
−54G>T
−38C>A
12C>G
17C>T
118A>G
440C>G
454A>G
IVS2 31G>A
IVS2 106T>C
IVS2 397T>A
IVS2 438G>A
IVS2 691C>G
779G>A
794G>A
802T>C
820G>A
877G>A
Exon 1
Exon 2
Exon 3
Exon 4
118A>G
(N40D)
17C>T
(A6V)
12C>G
(S4R)
H2N
440C>G
(S147C)
454A>G
(N152D)
877G>A
(V293I)
779G>A
(R260H)
794G>A
(R265H)
802T>C
(S268P)
820G>A
(K273A)
HOOC
Cell membrane Extracelluar

Fig. 24.5 Reported mutations in the μ-opioid receptor related to the exonic organization of the gene. Twenty-four mutations that produce an amino acid exchange and are frequently reportedly (>1%) or are proposed to have functional consequences are indicated in the gene. Amino acids are symbolized as circles, colored according to the exons by which they are coded. *Black circles* represent a naturally occurring mutation at the respective position, and *red circles* when functional consequences are shown at molecular level. Mutations are indicated by the nucleotide exchange and the resulting amino acid exchange. (From Lötsch J, Geisslinger G. Are μ-opioid receptor polymorphisms important for clinical opioid therapy? *Trends Mol Med*. 2005;11:82–89.)

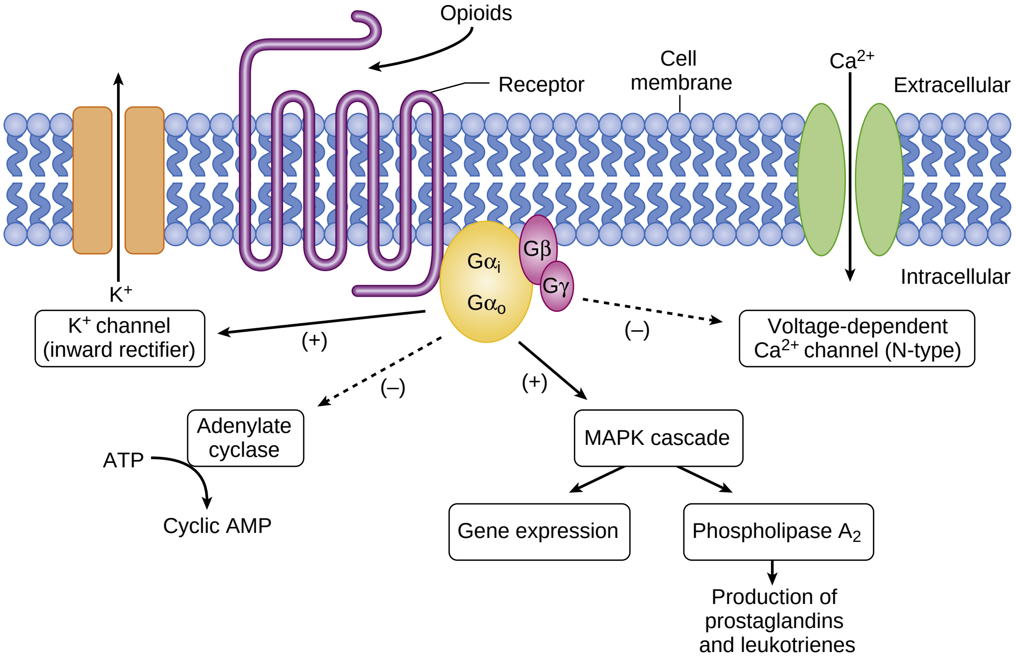

Opioids
Receptor
Cell membrane
Ca2+
Extracellular
Intracellular
K+
Gαi
Gαo
Gβ
Gγ
K+ channel (inward rectifier)
(+)
(–)
Voltage-dependent Ca2+ channel (N-type)
(–)
(+)
Adenylate cyclase
ATP
Cyclic AMP
MAPK cascade
Gene expression
Phospholipase A2
Production of prostaglandins and leukotrienes

Fig. 24.6 Intracellular signal transduction mechanisms linked with the opioid receptors. Opioid agonists bind with the opioid receptors, leading to activation of the G protein. Activity of adenylate cyclase and the voltage-dependent calcium *(Ca^{2+})* channels is suppressed. On the other hand, inward rectifier potassium *(K^+)* channels and mitogen-activated protein kinase *(MAPK)* cascade are activated. *AMP*, Adenosine monophosphate; *ATP*, adenosine triphosphate.

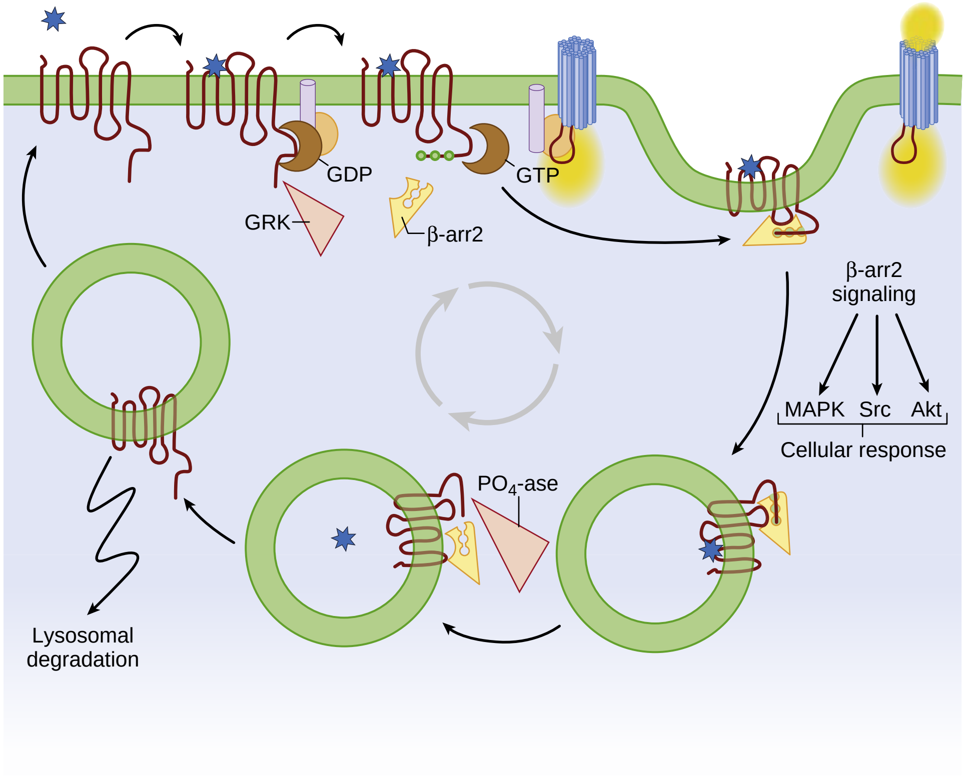


Fig. 24.7 β-Arrestin 2 and G protein in μ-opioid receptor recycling, signaling, and degradation. The *blue star* represents an opioid agonist and the trimeric membrane-associated complex in *brown*, *green*, and *blue* represents G protein α, β, and γ subunits, respectively. The α subunit is shown associated with guanosine diphosphate (*GDP*; resting state) or guanosine triphosphate (*GTP*; activated state). The βγ dimer interacts directly with the voltage-activated Ca^{2+} channel to inhibit calcium (Ca^{2+}) influx (indicated in *yellow*). β-arr2, β-arrestin 2; *GRK*, G-protein-coupled receptor kinase; *MAPK*, mitogen-activated protein kinase; *PO$_4$-ase*, phosphatase. (From Hales TG. Arresting the development of morphine tolerance and dependence. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:653–655.)

mice.[51] However, TRV130, a "G protein-biased" μ-opioid ligand with G-protein–coupling efficacy similar to that of morphine, but markedly reduced receptor phosphorylation, recruitment of β-arrestin 2, and internalization, was tested in a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover study in healthy volunteers.[52] TRV130 produced greater analgesia than morphine, but less respiratory depression and less severe nausea (Fig. 24.8). As additional biased-agonist candidates of the μ-opioid receptor emerge, so does the hope for a new generation of clinically effective analgesics with a reduced profile of harm.

MECHANISM OF OPIOID ANALGESIA

Brain

Pain control by opioids needs to be considered in the context of brain circuits modulating analgesia and the functions of the various types of receptors in these circuits.[53] It is well established that the analgesic effects of opioids arise from their ability to inhibit directly the ascending transmission of nociceptive information from the spinal cord dorsal horn and to activate pain control circuits that descend from the midbrain, through the rostral ventromedial medulla (RVM), to the spinal cord dorsal horn. Petrovic and colleagues used an experimental pain model and positron emission tomography (PET) to study mechanisms of action of the short-acting μ-opioid agonist remifentanil and found drug-induced activation of the rostral anterior cingulate cortex, insula, orbitofrontal cortex, and brainstem areas.[54]

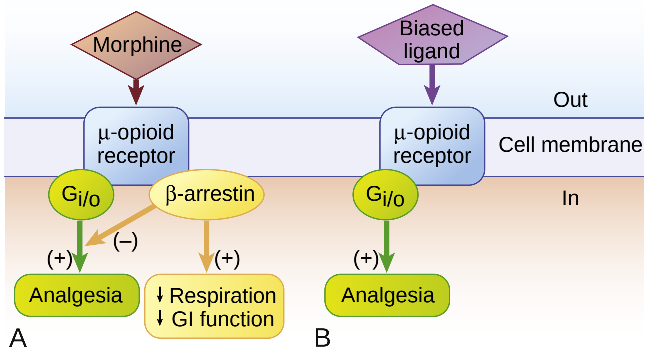


Fig. 24.8 Biased agonism. (A) Morphine binding to the μ-opioid receptor not only activates the G protein ($G_{i/o}$) analgesic effect, but also recruits β-arrestins, which inhibits G protein coupling and promotes hypoventilation and gastrointestinal dysfunction. (B) *TRV130*, a G protein–biased agonist, engages G-protein coupling similarly to morphine but with less β-arrestin recruitment, resulting in analgesic effect similar to morphine and less effects on respiratory and gastrointestinal function.

The activated brainstem regions overlapped with brain areas that have been implicated in pain modulation, such as the periaqueductal gray (PAG). Interestingly, placebo analgesia acts similarly on the activity of these brain areas, presumably via endogenous opioid release.[55]

Immunohistochemical studies and in situ hybridization analysis have demonstrated that opioid receptors are expressed in various areas in the CNS.[56] These areas include the amygdala, the mesencephalic reticular formation, the PAG, and the RVM. However, the role of the opioid receptors in all of these areas has not been completely clarified.

Microinjection of morphine into the PAG or direct electrical stimulation of this area produces analgesia that can be blocked by naloxone. Opioid actions at the PAG influence RVM, which in turn modulates nociceptive transmission in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord through the action of the descending inhibition pathway. Thus, opioids produce analgesia by direct actions on the spinal cord, as well as by neurally mediated action in the region separated from the site of opioid administration. Interestingly, a study by Dogrul and Seyrek reported that spinal serotonin 5-HT7 receptors play an important role on the antinociceptive effects of systemic morphine.[57]

It is well known that the actions of opioids in bulbospinal pathways are critical to their analgesic efficacy. It is clear that opioid actions in the forebrain contribute to analgesia, because decerebration prevents analgesia when rats are tested for pain sensitivity using the formalin test,[58] and microinjection of opioids into several forebrain regions are analgesic in this test.[59] Analgesia induced by systemic administration of morphine in both the tail-flick and formalin tests was disrupted either by lesioning or reversibly inactivating the central nucleus of the amygdala, thereby demonstrating that opioid actions in the forebrain contribute to analgesia after tissue damage, as well as after acute phasic nociception.[60]

The distribution of opioid receptors in descending pain control circuits indicates substantial overlap between μ and κ receptors. Interactions between the κ receptor and the μ receptor may be important for modulating nociceptive transmission from higher nociceptive centers, as well as in the spinal cord dorsal horn. The μ receptor produces analgesia within descending pain control circuits, at least in part, by the removal of γ-aminobutyric acidergic inhibition of RVM-projecting neurons in the PAG and spinally projecting neurons in the RVM.[53] The actions of μ-receptor agonists are invariably analgesic, whereas those of κ-receptor agonists can be either analgesic or antianalgesic. The pain-modulating effects of the κ-receptor agonists in the brainstem appear to oppose those of μ-receptor agonists.[61]

Spinal Cord

Analgesic actions of systemic morphine are in part mediated by a net inhibitory effect from the PAG and RVM on nociceptive processing in the spinal dorsal horn. It was demonstrated that morphine increased 5-HT release in the spinal dorsal horn by activation of serotonergic neurons in the RVM, and intrathecal pretreatment with ondansetron attenuated the analgesic effect of morphine in normal rats, suggesting the involvement of the 5-HT$_3$ serotonergic receptor in morphine analgesia.[62]

Local spinal mechanisms, in addition to descending inhibition, underlie the analgesic action of opioids. In the spinal cord, opioids act at synapses either presynaptically or postsynaptically. Opioid receptors are abundantly expressed in the substantia gelatinosa, where glutamate and substance P release from the primary sensory neuron is inhibited by opioids. Histamine receptors are known to participate in spinal cord nociceptive transmission, and previous studies have suggested that histaminergic receptors are also involved in the analgesic effects of morphine. An H$_1$ antagonist and H$_3$ agonist were found to potentiate the analgesic and antiedematogenic effects of morphine, suggesting that histaminergic and opioid spinal systems may be explored for means of improving analgesia, as well as peripheral antiinflammatory effects.[63]

Opioid-receptor ligand binding has been identified in both presynaptic and postsynaptic sites in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. It is well known that opioids decrease the pain-evoked release of tachykinins from primary afferent nociceptors. However, the degree that opioids can suppress tachykinin signaling in response to noxious stimulation remains controversial.[64] These results suggest that although opioid administration may reduce tachykinin release from primary afferent nociceptors, the reduction may not be a major modulator on the actions of tachykinins on postsynaptic pain-transmitting neurons.

Peripheral Mechanism

Opioids may also produce analgesia through the peripheral mechanism.[65] Immune cells infiltrating the inflammation site may release endogenous opioid-like substances, which act on the opioid receptors located on the primary sensory neuron.[65] Interestingly, in cannabinoid receptor type 1 and type 2 knockout mice, the antinociceptive effect of morphine injected into the paw in the inflammatory phase of the formalin test was decreased by 87% and 76%, respectively.[66] This finding may suggest the possibility that the release of endogenous cannabinoids in structures along the pain pathway is involved in opioid analgesia by the peripheral mechanism.

Acupuncture

Acupuncture and electroacupuncture have been shown to block pain by activating a variety of bioactive chemicals through peripheral, spinal, and supraspinal mechanisms. Mechanistically, endogenous opioids and opioid receptors have been shown to be involved in acupuncture- and electroacupuncture-induced analgesia in various pain models.[67] Studies in carrageenan-induced inflammatory rat pain models show that an intraplantar injection of naloxone or selective antagonists against μ-, δ-, or κ-opioid receptors 1 hour before electroacupuncture treatment at acupoint *Zusanli* (ST36) dose-dependently blocked electroacupuncture-produced inhibition of mechanical hyperalgesia assessed through paw-pressure threshold.[68] In a capsaicin-induced inflammatory hind paw pain model, stimulation by 2 Hz of four-train pulses with 100 Hz of intratrain frequency at *Houxi* (SI3) and *San-yangluo* (TE8) on the forelimb significantly raised the mechanical pain threshold of the injected paw. This analgesic effect was blocked by intrathecal μ- or δ-opioid receptor antagonists but not by a κ-opioid receptor antagonist.[69] Precise mechanisms for acupuncture and electroacupuncture, including the involvement of physiologic systems other than the opioid receptors, remain to be elucidated.

MECHANISM OF MOOD ALTERATIONS AND REWARDING PROPERTIES

The mechanisms by which opioids produce euphoria, tranquility, and other alterations of mood (including rewarding properties) remain an area of active investigation, especially given the expanding scope of opioid diversion and misuse. Behavioral and pharmacologic evidence points to the role of dopaminergic pathways, particularly involving the nucleus accumbens (NAcc), in drug-induced reward. Functional magnetic resonance imaging studies demonstrated that a small intravenous dose (4 mg) of morphine induces positive signal changes in reward structures, including the NAcc, sublenticular extended amygdala, orbitofrontal cortex, and hippocampus, and decreases signal in cortical areas similar to the action of sedative-hypnotics such as propofol and midazolam.[70] These observations are consistent with results of pharmacologic studies.

The shell of the NAcc is the site that may be involved directly in the emotional and motivational aspects of drug-induced reward. All three opioid receptor types are present on the NAcc and are thought to mediate, at least in part, the motivational effects of opioid drugs.[56] Selective μ- and δ-receptor agonists are rewarding when defined by place preference and intracranial self-administration paradigms. Conversely, selective κ-receptor agonists produce aversive effects. Positive motivational effects of opioids are partially mediated by dopamine release at the level of the NAcc.

The locus ceruleus contains both noradrenergic neurons and high concentrations of opioid receptors and is postulated to play a critical role in feelings of alarm, panic, fear, and anxiety. Neural activity in the locus ceruleus is inhibited by both exogenous opioids and endogenous opioid peptides.

ANALYSIS OF KNOCKOUT MICE

The physiologic roles of the opioid receptors and endogenous opioid peptides have been investigated mainly by pharmacologic and physiologic methods. However, it has been difficult to analyze functional roles of these proteins. With analysis of knockout mice, in which a specific gene is inactivated by molecular biologic methods, additional insight into the physiologic role of the respective opioid receptors and/or endogenous opioid peptide precursors can be determined.[71]

In the μ-receptor knockout mice, analgesia, the reward effect, and the withdrawal effect of morphine were lost.[72] Morphine-induced respiratory depression was not observed in the μ-receptor knockout mice.[73] Therefore, the μ-receptor is a mandatory component of the opioid system for morphine action. In the μ-receptor knockout mice, ketamine-induced respiratory depression and antinociception are diminished,[74] a finding suggesting that ketamine interacts with the μ receptor to lead to these phenomena. Furthermore, minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) of sevoflurane was significantly higher in the μ-receptor knockout mice than wild-type mice, an observation suggesting the involvement of the μ receptor in the anesthetic potency of sevoflurane.[73] The δ-receptor knockout mice displayed a markedly reduced analgesic effect of opioids selective for δ-receptors at the spinal cord level.[75] However, at the supraspinal level, analgesia could be induced by δ-receptor agonists in δ-receptor knockout mice, a finding suggesting the existence of a second δ-like analgesic system. Disruption of the κ receptor abolished the analgesic, hypolocomotor, and aversive actions of the κ-receptor agonists and induced hyperreactivity in the abdominal constriction test; this finding indicates that the κ receptor is involved in the perception of visceral chemical pain.[76] Using gene knockout mice, a pharmacologic study demonstrated that the antinociceptive effect of N_2O may not be mediated by μ-receptor[77]; rather N_2O exerts its antinociceptive action and reduces MAC of volatile anesthetics in mice through complex mechanisms including activation of the κ receptor and the descending inhibitory pathway in the spinal cord, whereas its hypnotic potency is not dependent on κ-receptor activation.[78]

In the mice lacking β-endorphin, morphine induced normal analgesia, but naloxone-reversible stress-induced analgesia could not be observed.[79] The preproenkephalin knockout mice were more anxious than wild-type mice, and males displayed increased offensive aggressiveness.[80] The mutant mice showed marked difference from controls in supraspinal, but not in spinal, responses to painful stimuli.

Thus, the functional roles of individual components of the opioid system continue to be elucidated by analysis of knockout mice. The μ-opioid receptor continues to be recognized as a predominant signaling receptor for both the affective and antinociceptive action of opioid agonism.

ACTIONS OF OPIOIDS ON TARGETS OTHER THAN OPIOID RECEPTORS

Molecular pharmacologic analyses have shown that opioids can interact with molecules other than the opioid receptors. In cardiac myocytes, morphine can inhibit voltage-dependent sodium (Na^+) current in a naloxone-insensitive manner, a finding suggesting the existence of a signal transduction mechanism that is not dependent on the opioid receptors.[81] Buprenorphine, a partial μ-opioid receptor agonist, also has a local anesthetic property and blocks voltage-gated Na^+ channels through the local anesthetic binding site.[82] Meperidine is an agonist of both μ and κ receptors. In addition, meperidine can block voltage-dependent Na^+ channels in amphibian peripheral nerves,[83] as well as in the *Xenopus* oocyte expression system.[84] Furthermore, meperidine exerts agonist activity at the α_{2B}-adrenoreceptor subtype.[85] Yamakura and associates have shown that high concentrations of opioids, including meperidine, morphine, fentanyl, codeine, and naloxone, directly inhibit the *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor expressed in *Xenopus* oocytes.[86] Methadone is clinically used as a racemic mixture of the *l* and *d* isomers. The opioid-like activity of the racemate seems to be almost entirely the result of *l*-methadone, whereas *d*-methadone acts as an NMDA antagonist.[87] The commercially available remifentanil solution (Ultiva), which contains glycine, directly activates the NMDA receptor expressed in *Xenopus* oocytes.[88] Furthermore, an electrophysiologic study in rat spinal cord showed that remifentanil hydrochloride does not directly activate NMDA receptors, the NMDA current recorded after application of Ultiva is related to the presence of glycine, and the glycine-induced NMDA current is potentiated by application of remifentanil hydrochloride through a pathway involving the μ-opioid receptor.[89] The serotonin type 3A ($5\text{-}HT_{3A}$) receptor, which is directly and indirectly linked to gastrointestinal motility, visceral pain, nausea, and vomiting, is competitively inhibited by morphine and hydromorphone, as well as naloxone; however, fentanyl-like opioids did not significantly affect activity of the 5-HT_{3A} receptor.[90,91] The mechanism for tramadol analgesia is complex and appears to be composed of two actions that include reuptake inhibition of the noradrenergic serotonergic system and activation of the μ-opioid receptor. Tramadol's analgesic effect is only partially reversed by the μ-opioid receptor antagonist, naloxone. Furthermore, tramadol also acts as an agonist of transient receptor potential vanilloid-1 (TRPV1) heterologously expressed in cultured cells.[92] Tramadol may activate TRPV1 in sensory neurons, followed by local release of vasoactive neuropeptides and marked desensitization of the afferent fibers. Inhibition of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor by tramadol has also been reported.[93] It remains to be clarified which of these "off-target" actions of opioids have physiologic or clinical implications.

PHYSIOLOGIC ROLE OF NOCICEPTIN/ ORPHANIN FQ

Nociceptin or orphanin FQ is a 17-amino-acid peptide, the sequence of which resembles those of opioid peptides. Nociceptin or orphanin FQ precursor mRNA and peptide are present throughout the descending pain control circuits. In the spinal cord, nociceptin or orphanin FQ-receptor mRNA expression is stronger in the ventral horn than in the dorsal horn, but higher levels of ligand binding occur in the dorsal horn. Targeted disruption of the nociceptin or orphanin FQ receptor in mice had little effect on basal pain sensitivity in several measures, whereas targeted disruption of the N nociceptin or orphanin FQ precursor consistently elevated basal responses in the tail-flick test, findings suggesting an important role for nociceptin or orphanin FQ in regulating basal pain sensitivity.[94,95] Intrathecal injections of nociceptin or orphanin FQ have been shown to be analgesic[96]; however, supraspinal administration has produced hyperalgesia, antiopioid effects, or a biphasic hyperalgesic-analgesic response.[97] Nociceptin or orphanin FQ inhibits both pain-facilitating and analgesia-facilitating neurons in the RVM.[98] The effects of nociceptin or orphanin FQ on pain responses appear to depend on the preexisting state of pain in the animal. Involvement of nociceptin or orphanin FQ in physiologic functions such as regulation of feeding, body weight homeostasis, and stress response, and in psychiatric disorders such as depression, anxiety, and drug or alcohol dependence has also been reported.[99]

Systemic administration of nonpeptide nociceptin or orphanin FQ receptor agonists revealed that such compounds were effective analgesics in animal pain models. It was reported that a nociceptin or orphanin FQ receptor agonist, Ro64-6198, has antinociceptive and antiallodynic potency and efficacy without side effects of opioids such as itching, respiratory depression, and addiction in monkeys.[100] As nociceptin or orphanin FQ and opioid receptor agonists modulate pain by different targets, combining both mechanisms may constitute a novel approach for the development of innovative analgesics. Cebranopadol, a newly synthesized compound possessing nociceptin or orphanin FQ and opioid receptor agonist activity, exhibits highly potent and efficacious antinociceptive and antihyperalgesic effects in several rat models of acute and chronic pain (tail-flick, rheumatoid arthritis, bone cancer, spinal nerve ligation, diabetic neuropathy).[101] In a phase 1 clinical trial, it was shown that cebranopadol produced respiratory depression with a ceiling effect, in contrast to apnea produced by full μ-opioid receptor agonists.[102]

Expression of opioid receptors on peripheral blood mononuclear cells is controversial. Williams and associates reported that human peripheral blood mononuclear cells express the nociceptin receptor, but not μ-, δ-, or κ-opioid receptors.[103] Nociceptin, produced by the peripheral blood mononuclear cells, is involved in the control of immune functions.

Neurophysiologic Effects of Opioids

CHARACTERISTICS OF THE ANALGESIC ACTION OF OPIOIDS

In human beings, morphine-like drugs produce analgesia, drowsiness, changes in mood, and mental clouding. A significant feature of opioid analgesia is that it is not typically associated with loss of consciousness. When morphine in the same dose is given to a normal, pain-free individual, the experience may be unpleasant. The relief of pain by morphine-like opioids is relatively selective, in that other sensory modalities are not affected. Patients frequently report that the pain is still present, but that they feel more comfortable. It is also important to distinguish between pain caused by stimulation of nociceptive receptors and transmitted over intact neural pathways (nociceptive pain) and pain that is caused by damage to neural structures, often involving neural supersensitivity (neuropathic pain). Although nociceptive pain usually is responsive to opioid analgesics, neuropathic pain may respond poorly to opioid analgesics and require higher doses of drug.[104]

The analgesic effects, as well as side effects, of opioids vary greatly among individuals. A pharmacogenomic twin study has shown that the interindividual variations in opioid effects are likely the result of genetic and environmental factors.[105,106] Animal and human studies indicate the existence of sex-related differences in opioid-mediated behavior.[107] Sarton and associates examined the influence of morphine on experimentally induced pain in healthy volunteers, and demonstrated the gender differences in morphine analgesia, with greater morphine potency but slower speed of onset and offset in women.[108] In contrast, in a study examining interindividual variability in alfentanil analgesic sensitivity in experimental pain models in humans, no gender differences were detected.[109] In a study examining the effects of genetic factors on pain sensitivity, it was shown that males had higher pain thresholds in both thermal skin pain and muscle pressure pain than females.[110] The mechanism of the gender difference in pain sensitivity and opioid effects remains to be clarified.

The pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic characteristics of opioids often vary throughout the day, as demonstrated for oral morphine in chronic pain.[111] The duration of intrathecal sufentanil analgesia exhibited a temporal pattern, with 30% variation throughout the day in women in the first stage of labor.[112] Scavone and colleagues reported that the time of day of administration does not seem to influence duration of labor analgesia with spinal-epidural administration of fentanyl or with systemic hydromorphone administration.[113] The potential impact of chronobiology on clinical practice is not clear, and research on the influence of circadian rhythms on the actions of opioids is warranted.

Some controversy remains regarding analgesia produced by peripheral actions of opioids. One review concluded from meta-analysis that intraarticularly administered morphine has a definite but mild analgesic effect.[114] It may be dose dependent, and a systemic effect cannot be completely excluded. The addition of opioids in brachial plexus block improves the success rate and postoperative analgesia.[115] In contrast, the addition of sufentanil may not prolong the duration of brachial plexus block.[116]

Despite variations in effect ascribed to the type of pain stimuli, genetics, gender, time of administration, or site of action (central versus peripheral), opioids remain one of the most potent classes of analgesic drugs.

EFFECTS OF OPIOIDS ON CONSCIOUSNESS

Cortical acetylcholine originates in the basal forebrain and is essential for maintaining normal cognition and arousal. Injection of morphine to the substantia innominata or intravenous morphine administration significantly decreased acetylcholine release within the prefrontal cortex in the rat, and this effect may be the neurochemical basis of opioid-induced change in consciousness.[117] Although unconsciousness in humans can be produced with high doses of opioids alone, opioid-based anesthesia can be unpredictable and inconsistent.[118] Therefore, opioids are not suitable as sole intravenous induction agents.[119] The anesthetic potential of opioids was tested by measurement of MAC.[120] Fentanyl can reduce the MAC of isoflurane at skin incision in patients by at least 80%.[121] The relationship between the plasma fentanyl concentration and reduction in MAC is not linear, and fentanyl has a sub-MAC ceiling effect on reduction of the MAC of isoflurane. The MAC of sevoflurane was also dose dependently reduced by fentanyl, with 3 ng/mL resulting in a 61% reduction in MAC.[122] A ceiling effect was observed for MAC; 6 ng/mL fentanyl provided only an additional 13% reduction in the MAC of sevoflurane. Even potency ratios have been established for the “reduction of volatile anesthetic MAC” for most opioids such as sufentanil, fentanyl, remifentanil, and alfentanil. However, the MAC-reducing capabilities of the opioids are not complete; that is, these are not complete anesthetics. The opioids must be combined with other anesthetics to produce a “complete anesthetic.”[121,123-125] Esmolol, a short-acting β_1-receptor antagonist, significantly decreased the MAC of isoflurane in the presence of alfentanil, although it did not significantly affect this parameter in the absence of alfentanil.[126] The mechanism of the interaction is unknown. Epidural fentanyl infusion reduces the awakening concentration of isoflurane more than does intravenous fentanyl infusion despite the lower plasma concentration, possibly by modulating the afferent nociceptive inputs in the spinal cord.[127]

The MAC that prevents movement in response to laryngoscopy and tracheal intubation in 50% of patients (MAC-TI) is higher than the MAC that prevents movement in response to surgical incision (MAC). The MAC-TI of sevoflurane was 3.55% and was reduced markedly to 2.07%, 1.45%, and 1.37% by the addition of fentanyl 1, 2, and 4 μg/kg, respectively, with no significant difference in the reduction between 2 and 4 μg/kg, thus showing a ceiling effect.[128] The MAC that prevents sympathetic responses to surgical incision in 50% of patients (MAC-BAR) decreased with increasing concentrations of fentanyl in plasma, and the initial steep reduction followed by a ceiling effect.[122]

The bispectral index (BIS) is often used to determine the level of consciousness under anesthesia. In the presence of fentanyl, alfentanil, remifentanil, or sufentanil, loss of consciousness occurred at a lower effect-site concentration of propofol and at a higher BIS value as compared with propofol alone.[129] Furthermore, Wang and associates reported that infusion of remifentanil (0.1-0.4 μg/kg/min) did not significantly change the median effective concentration (EC_{50}) of propofol necessary to lower the BIS value to 50 or less.[130] These results suggest that the hypnotic effect of propofol is enhanced by analgesic concentrations of opioids without changes in the BIS value. Conversely, infusion of remifentanil (effect-site target concentrations of 0.25, 2.5, and 10 ng/mL), combined with propofol infusion adjusted to a BIS of approximately 60, dose dependently decreased the BIS, thus suggesting a sedative or hypnotic effect of remifentanil.[131] Response surface analysis showed considerable synergy between opioids and hypnotics for sedation and suppression of responses to various noxious stimuli.[132] In contrast to the effect of opioids administered during anesthesia on the BIS, the impact of chronic opioid use on BIS is unknown. It was recently reported that the end-tidal concentration of sevoflurane necessary to maintain the BIS under 50 was 0.84% for chronic opioid users who received a stable dose of oral morphine of at least 60 mg/day according to the morphine equivalent daily dose for at least 4 weeks, which was lower than for opioid-naïve patients (1.18%).[133]

Opioids administered as a mainstay of postsurgical pain management can inhibit sleep on the first night after surgery. However, the effects of opioids on sleep and circadian rhythm are not clearly understood. A human study demonstrated that an overnight constant infusion of remifentanil inhibited rapid eye movement sleep without suppressing the nocturnal melatonin surge, findings that may suggest a minimal effect of opioids on the circadian pacemaker.[134]

Taken together, perioperative opioids have consistently been shown to dose dependently reduce the MAC and are well known to synergize with hypnotics to produce sedation; however, their ability to effect the BIS may vary depending on the context of opioid administration.

HALLUCINATION

Opioid-induced hallucination is an uncommon yet significant adverse effect of opioid treatment, frequently attributed to underlying psychiatric disease or personality disorder rather than a direct neurobiologic effect of opioids.[135] Hallucinations attributed to opioids have been typically described as auditory, visual, or rarely, tactile hallucinations. Although many reports have cited morphine as the causative agent, there is no evidence that across a population, one particular class of opioid is associated with a lower incidence of hallucinations. Moreover, there are reports of fentanyl, methadone, tramadol, hydromorphone, buprenorphine, pentazocine, and/or oxycodone–associated hallucinations and/or changes in mental status. Nevertheless, accumulation of morphine metabolites, particularly morphine-3-glucoronide, has been linked to the development of neurologic phenomena.[136] Many hypotheses have been advanced to explain the etiology of opioid-induced hallucinations. One common feature of these hypotheses involves opioid-induced dopamine dysregulation. Overactivation of the dopaminergic pathways is thought to result in auditory and visual hallucinations.[137] The simplest treatment for opioid-induced hallucination is discontinuing opioid therapy if practical. There are reports describing the successful use of naloxone and κ-selective opioid antagonists in the treatment of hallucinations associated with schizophrenia, although such κ-selective agents are known to be associated with hallucinations in subjects or patients without a diagnosis of mental illness.[138]

ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAPHY

Increasing concentrations of inhaled anesthetics produce a continuum of electroencephalogram (EEG) changes and eventually result in burst suppression and a flat EEG. In contrast, a ceiling effect is reached with opioids. Once this ceiling has been obtained, increasing opioid dosage does not further affect the EEG.[139]

Although the potency and rate of equilibrium between plasma and brain are different among opioids, the effects of fentanyl, alfentanil, sufentanil, and remifentanil are consistent (Fig. 24.9).[140] Small doses of fentanyl (2-5 μg/kg) produce minimal EEG changes, whereas higher doses (30-70 μg/kg) result in high-voltage slow (δ) waves suggesting a state consistent with anesthesia. Although transient isolated (usually frontotemporal) sharp wave activity can be observed after large doses of fentanyl and other opioids, it is not generalized. In a study examining the effect of morphine (3-10 mg) on EEG in patients (14.8 ± 2.8 years) who stayed overnight for pain relief after otologic surgery, it was demonstrated that morphine reduced high-frequency β_1 (13.5-20 Hz) and β_2 (20-30 Hz) EEG powers and decreased coherence between frontal and occipital β_2 EEG activities compared to wakefulness and non–rapid eye movement sleep, indicating that morphine induced a deep sedative state (Fig. 24.10).[141] Khodayari-Rostamabad and associates studied the effect of remifentanil administration on resting EEG functional connectivity and its relationship to cognitive function and analgesia in healthy volunteers.[142] Remifentanil administration was associated with significant changes in functional cortical connectivity, which seem to disrupt the complex cortical network subserving normal brain function and can have the potential to be a biomarker for the sedative effects of opioids.

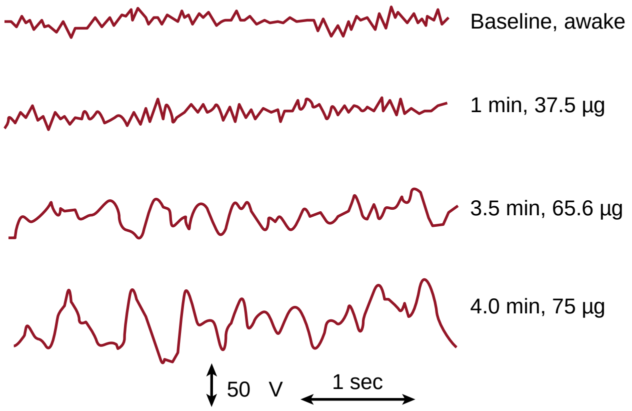


Fig. 24.9 Representative 4-s electroencephalogram (EEG) tracings during infusion of sufentanil (total dose shown in the right *column*). The awake baseline EEG consists of mixed β and α activity. At 1 minute, the EEG showed loss of β activity and the presence of primarily α waves (8-13 Hz). At 3.5 minutes, the EEG consisted of mixed θ (4-7 Hz) and δ (<4 Hz) waves, and at 4.0 min, it consisted of δ waves of high amplitude. (From Scott JC, Cooke JE, Stanski DR. Electroencephalographic quantitation of opioid effect: comparative pharmacodynamics of fentanyl and sufentanil. *Anesthesiology.* 1991;74:34–42.)

As an effect-site measure, EEG can be employed to assess onset of drug action and drug potency ratios. The spectral edge and serum concentration are closely parallel for remifentanil,[143] whereas a significant time lag is found for recovery of the spectral edge for fentanyl and sufentanil (Fig. 24.11).[144] In healthy volunteers, approximate entropy derived from a parietal montage showed significant correlation with remifentanil concentration, and it was shown to be appropriate for the assessment of the remifentanil effect on the EEG.[145] Potency ratios based on EEG studies are similar to those obtained from studies determining the plasma drug levels of each opioid necessary to reduce the MAC of isoflurane by 50%. Overall, opioids produce dose-dependent changes in the EEG that can mimic those of volatile anesthetics, however opioids show a ceiling effect at higher doses.

EVOKED RESPONSES

Because opioids do not appreciably alter sensory-evoked potentials elicited at the posterior tibial or median nerve, sensory-evoked potentials can be used for spinal cord function monitoring during anesthesia using opioids.[146] Although remifentanil produced dose-dependent reduction in auditory-evoked potentials,[147] it was also reported that remifentanil infusion (target plasma concentrations of 1, 2, and 3 ng/mL) did not affect evoked potential amplitudes and latencies.[148] In healthy human volunteers receiving 3 μg/kg fentanyl, amplitude and latency of motor-evoked responses to transcranial stimulation were not significantly affected.[149] This is consistent with the report by Kawaguchi and colleagues that intraoperative myogenic motor-evoked potential monitoring is feasible during isoflurane or sevoflurane anesthesia with fentanyl.[150]

Middle latency auditory-evoked potentials (MLAEPs) and their derivatives are increasingly used as a surrogate measure of the level of anesthesia. Changes in MLAEPs following the administration of opioids occur and may result from either a direct depressant effect of opioids on MLAEPs itself or an indirect effect reflecting the action of opioids in attenuating CNS arousal associated with noxious stimuli. Wright and associates examined the effect of remifentanil (1 or 3 μg/kg/min) on MLAEPs in tracheally intubated and nonintubated patients and showed that remifentanil has an effect on MLAEPs in attenuating the arousal associated with tracheal intubation but had no effect in the absence of a stimulus.[151] Similarly, Schraag and associates found no significant contribution of remifentanil alone on MLAEPs,

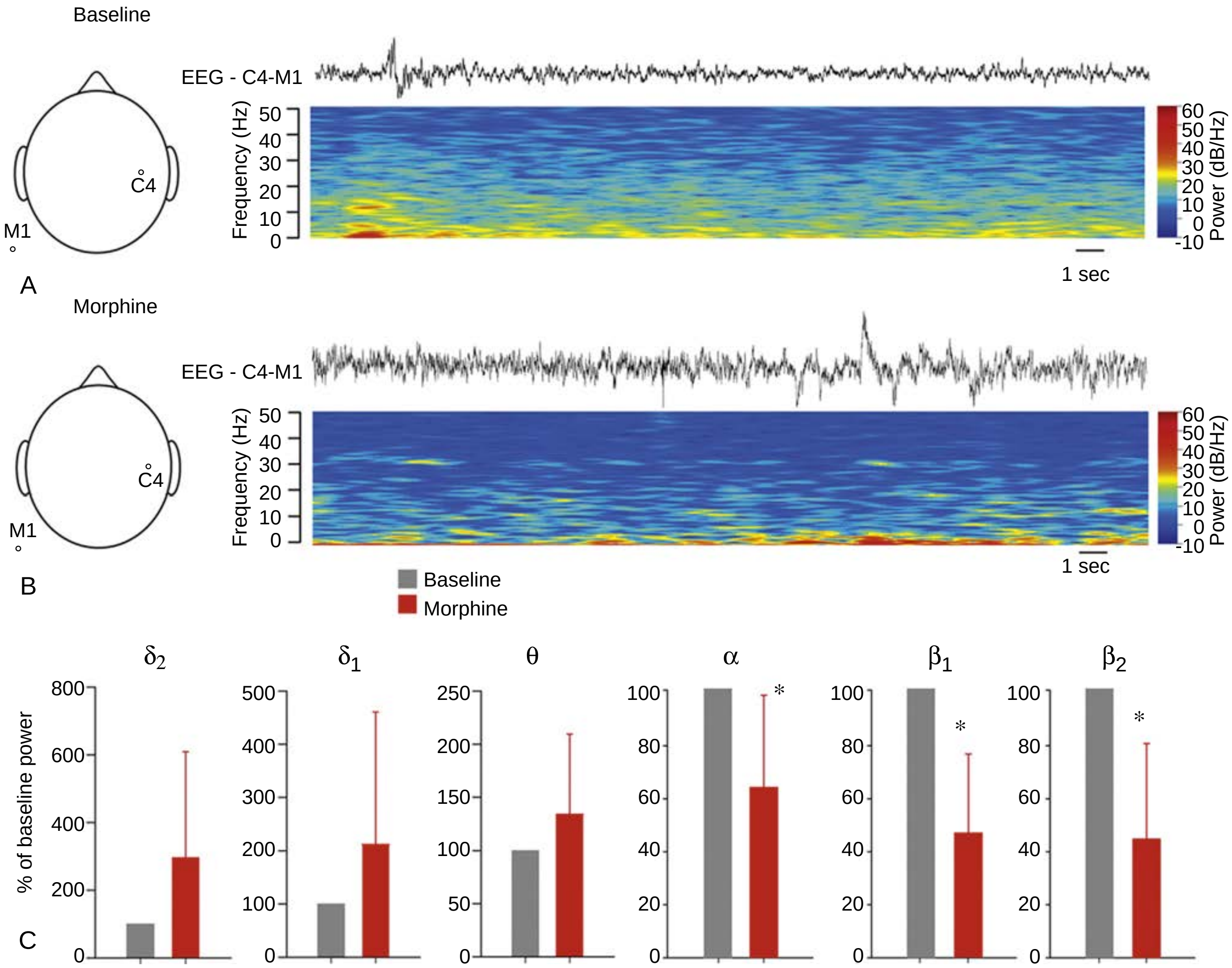


Fig. 24.10 Impacts of morphine on electroencephalography *(EEG)* spectral content. EEG activity of a representative 30-s epoch and power spectrograms of *C4-M1* (C4 = central electrode; M1 = mastoid electrode) derivation at baseline and after morphine administration. In a representative patient (A) and in the analyzed group data (B and C), high-frequency power (α, β_1, and β_2) was decreased by morphine. Mean data for 10 patients showed that morphine decreased α ($P = .039$, $n = 10$), β_1 ($P = .003$, $n = 10$), and β_2 ($P = .020$, $n = 10$) powers but did not change δ_2 ($P = .375$, $n = 10$), δ_1 ($P = .922$, $n = 10$), and θ ($P = .331$, $n = 10$) powers. Data are shown as mean ± 95% CI. *mean values significantly different from baseline with a $P < .05$. (From Montandon G, Cushing SL, Campbell F, et al. Distinct cortical signatures associated with sedation and respiratory rate depression by morphine in a pediatric population. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:889–903.)

whereas increasing the concentration of remifentanil led to a significant decrease of the calculated propofol effect-site concentrations necessary for unconsciousness.[152]

CEREBRAL BLOOD FLOW AND CEREBRAL METABOLIC RATE

Opioids generally produce modest decreases in cerebral metabolic rate and intracranial pressure (ICP), although the changes are influenced by the concomitant administration of other agents and anesthetic drugs, as well as by the patients' conditions. When vasodilation is produced by coadministered anesthetics, opioids are more likely to cause cerebral vasoconstriction. Opioids also decrease cerebral blood flow (CBF) when they are combined with nitrous oxide (N_2O). When opioids are administered alone or when the coadministered anesthetics cause cerebral vasoconstriction, opioids usually have no influence or result in a small increase in CBF.

Endogenous opioid activity is present in the cerebral arteries, although exogenously administered opioids were found to exert little effect on pial artery diameter in several animal models.[153] In the piglet, fentanyl, alfentanil, and sufentanil decreased arteriolar diameter in a dose-dependent naloxone-reversible manner.[154] In human volunteers, PET demonstrated that CBF changes induced by fentanyl are regionally heterogenous.[155]

In healthy volunteers, sufentanil (0.5 μg/kg intravenously [IV]) produces no significant effect on CBF.[156] Alfentanil (25-50 μg/kg IV), administered to patients receiving isoflurane (0.4%-0.6%)-N_2O anesthesia, produces minimal reductions in middle cerebral artery flow velocity.[157] A PET study in human volunteers showed that remifentanil induced dose-dependent changes in relative regional CBF in areas involved in pain processing, such as the lateral prefrontal cortex, inferior parietal cortex, and supplementary motor area.[158] In patients scheduled to undergo a supratentorial tumor surgical procedure and receiving N_2O,

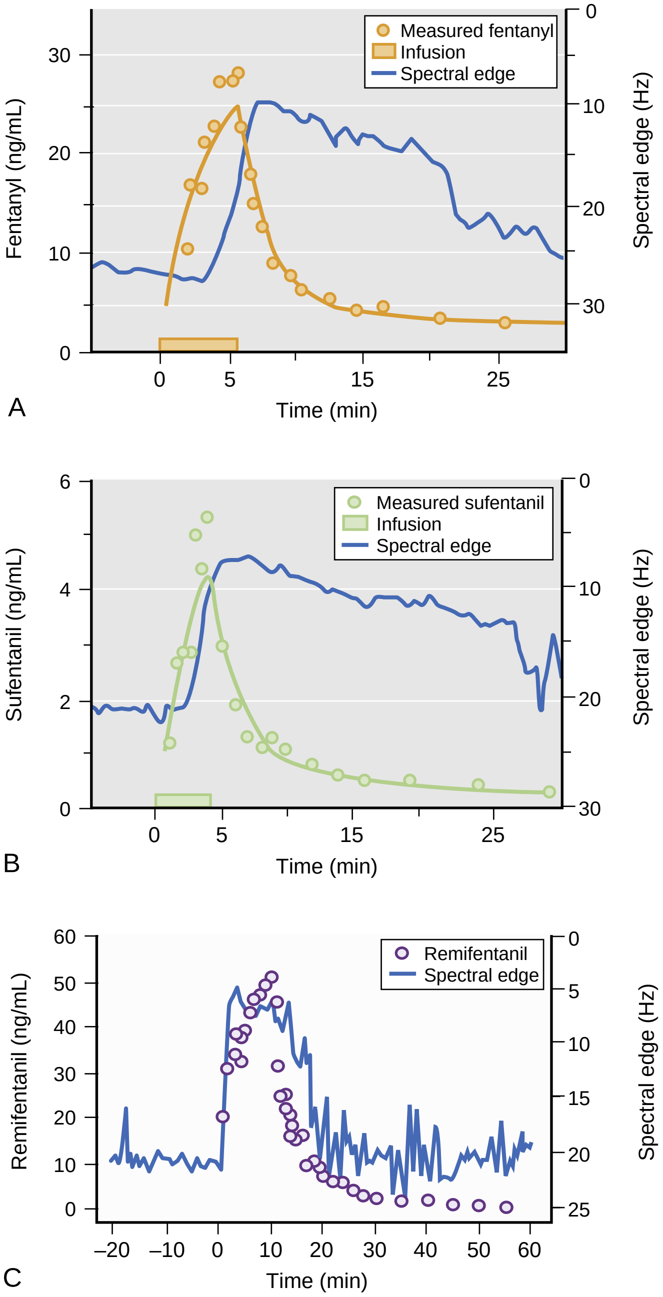


Fig. 24.11 Time course of spectral edge and serum opioid concentration. Fentanyl (A) and sufentanil (B) were infused at 150 μg/min and 18.75 μg/min, respectively. Remifentanil (C) was administered at 3 μg/kg/min for 10 minutes. The spectral edge changes lag behind the serum concentration changes in the case of fentanyl and sufentanil, whereas the spectral edge and serum concentration closely parallel in the cases of remifentanil. (From Scott JC, Ponganis KV, Stanski DR. EEG quantitation of narcotic effect: the comparative pharmacodynamics of fentanyl and alfentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:234–241; and Egan TD, Minto CF, Hermann DJ, et al. Remifentanil versus alfentanil: comparative pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics in healthy adult male volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:821–833.)

remifentanil (1 μg/kg/min), similar to fentanyl (2 μg/kg/min), reduced CBF and did not significantly affect cerebrovascular carbon dioxide (CO_2) reactivity.[159]

Opioid-induced neuroexcitation and focal seizure activity can cause regional increases in brain metabolism. Regional increases in glucose use induced by high doses of alfentanil in the rat were associated not only with epileptiform activity but also with neuropathic lesions.[160] In humans, PET evaluation demonstrated that a 1 to 3 μg/kg/min infusion of remifentanil induces significant increase in the cerebral metabolic rate for glucose.[161] In summary, opioids, in general, do not significantly effect measures of CBF.

INTRACRANIAL PRESSURE

Opioids are generally thought to affect ICP minimally under conditions of controlled ventilation. When given with background anesthesia (isoflurane-N_2O), opioids do not cause significant increases in ICP undergoing craniotomy for supratentorial space-occupying lesions.[162,163] Opioid sedation does not alter ICP in patients with head injuries.[164] Light sedation with remifentanil (4.2 ± 1.8 μg/kg/h) does not result in higher ICP than that observed with propofol (4.3 ± 2.5 mg/kg/h) in patients undergoing stereotactic brain tumor biopsy, and cerebral perfusion pressure might be better preserved with remifentanil.[165]

Opioids may produce increases in ICP in patients undergoing craniotomy for excision of supratentorial space-occupying lesions, especially if intracranial compliance is compromised. In a study of patients with severe head injury who have preserved and impaired autoregulation, morphine (0.2 mg/kg) and fentanyl (2 μg/kg) moderately increased ICP, a finding suggesting that mechanisms other than vasodilation could be implicated in the opioid-induced ICP elevation.[166] Investigators also demonstrated no change in ICP in hydrocephalic children after administration of alfentanil (70 μg/kg).[167] Whether these discrepancies of the opioid effects on ICP reflect pressure assessment methods or the effects of other drugs is not clear. If opioids do increase ICP, whether cerebrovascular dilatation is directly induced by opioids or indirectly resulted from opioid-induced decrease in blood pressure is not known.

NEUROPROTECTION

Although certain early studies suggested potentially adverse effects of μ-opioid agonists on ischemic brain, other studies documented that certain opioid agents, such as the κ-agonists, can be neuroprotective in animal models of focal ischemia.[168] Investigators also showed that activation of δ-opioid receptors increases survival time of mice during lethal hypoxia.[169] An in vitro study using rat cerebellar brain slices demonstrated that pretreatment with morphine at clinically relevant concentrations induced acute neuroprotection mediated by activation of the δ_1-opioid receptors, activation of adenosine triphosphate (ATP)-sensitive K^+ channels, and free radical production in mitochondria.[170] In the rat focal ischemia model, fentanyl neither increased nor decreased brain injury compared with awake unanesthetized rats.[171] It was demonstrated that at a supraclinical concentration remifentanil had no pronecrotic effect but exerted ex vivo antiapoptotic action on the immature mouse brain, involving the opioid and NMDA receptors, and the mitochondrial-dependent apoptotic pathway.[172] A recent study reported that κ-opioid receptors were upregulated and played a critical role in brain ischemia and reperfusion in mice, and that κ-opioid receptor activation could potentially protect the brain and improve neurologic outcome via blood-brain barrier protection, apoptosis reduction, and inflammation inhibition.[173] Although there is contradicting evidence for a potential neuroprotection in animal models, there is no clear evidence for neuroprotective effects in humans.

MUSCLE RIGIDITY

Opioids can increase muscle tone and may cause muscle rigidity. The incidence of rigidity noted with opioid anesthetic techniques varies greatly because of differences in dose and speed of opioid administration, the concomitant use of N_2O, the presence or absence of muscle relaxants, and the patient's age. Opioid-induced rigidity is characterized by increased muscle tone that sometimes progresses to severe stiffness and associated clinical challenges (Table 24.4). Clinically significant opioid-induced rigidity usually begins just as, or after, a patient loses consciousness. Mild manifestations of rigidity, such as hoarseness, can occur in conscious patients. Vocal cord closure is primarily responsible for the difficult ventilation with bag and mask that follows the administration of opioids. Although opioids are generally thought to affect ICP minimally, it was demonstrated that alfentanil-induced rigidity can cause increase in ICP in rats.[174] Delayed or postoperative rigidity may be related to second peaks that can occur in plasma opioid concentrations, similar to the recurrence of respiratory depression.

The precise mechanism by which opioids cause muscle rigidity is not clearly understood. Muscle rigidity is not the result of a direct action on muscle fibers because it can be decreased or prevented by pretreatment with muscle relaxants. Mechanisms of opioid-induced muscle rigidity involving the CNS have been postulated. The nucleus raphe pontis within the reticular formation and the caudate nucleus within the basal ganglia have been implicated mechanistically.[175] Pharmacologic investigation using selective agonists and antagonists suggests that systemic opioid-induced muscle rigidity is primarily caused by the activation of central μ-receptors, whereas supraspinal δ_1 and κ_1 receptors may attenuate this effect.[176] Some aspects of opioid-induced catatonia and rigidity (increased incidence with age, muscle movements resembling extrapyramidal side effects) are similar to Parkinson disease and suggest similarities in neurochemical mechanisms. Patients with Parkinson disease, particularly if they are inadequately treated, may experience reactions such as dystonia following opioid administration.[177]

Pretreatment with or concomitant use of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants can decrease the incidence and severity of rigidity. Opioid-induced muscle rigidity can also be reversed with the μ-receptor antagonist naloxone. Induction doses of sodium thiopental and subanesthetic doses of diazepam and midazolam can prevent, attenuate, or successfully treat rigidity.

TABLE 24.4 Potential Problems Associated With Opioid-Induced Rigidity

System	Problem
Hemodynamic	↑CVP, ↑ PAP, ↑ PVR
Respiratory	↓ Compliance, ↓ FRC, ↓ ventilation Hypercarbia, Hypoxemia
Miscellaneous	↑ Oxygen consumption, ↑Intracranial pressure, ↑ Fentanyl plasma levels

CVP, Central venous pressure; *FRC*, functional residual capacity; *PAP*, pulmonary artery pressure; *PVR*, pulmonary vascular resistance.

Modified from Bailey PL, Egan TD, Stanley TH. Intravenous opioid anesthetics. In: Miller RD, ed. *Anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2015. An imprint of Elsevier Inc., p. 876.

NEUROEXCITATORY PHENOMENA

Fentanyl causes seizure activity seen on the EEG in animals, but EEG evidence of seizure activity after fentanyl, alfentanil, or sufentanil is generally lacking in humans. Remifentanil induced generalized tonic-clonic seizure-like activity in an otherwise healthy adult.[178] Morphine produces tonic-clonic activity after epidural and intrathecal administration.[179] Focal neuroexcitation on the EEG (e.g., sharp and spike wave activity) occasionally occurs in humans after large doses of fentanyl, sufentanil, and alfentanil.

The mechanisms underlying opioid-induced neuroexcitatory phenomena are not completely clear. Excitatory opioid actions may be related to coupling to mitogen-activated protein kinase cascades.[180] Local increases in CBF and metabolism are also of theoretic concern because prolonged seizure activity, even if focal, could lead to neuronal injury and/or cellular death. Fentanyl, alfentanil, and sufentanil in large doses also induced hypermetabolism and histopathologic alterations of the limbic system in rats.[181] Experimental study using excised mouse hippocampus showed that the proseizure effect of morphine is mediated by selective stimulation of the μ- and κ-opioid receptors but not the activation of the δ-opioid receptor.[182] In rats, midazolam, naloxone, and phenytoin prevented EEG seizure activity and histologically evident brain damage induced by large doses of fentanyl.[183]

Measurement of CBF by magnetic resonance imaging in human volunteers indicated that the cingulate cortex is the most susceptible to activation by remifentanil (0.05-0.2 μg/kg/min), and susceptibility is affected by the apolipoprotein E genotype.[184] These findings support the notion that neuroactivation of limbic areas by the perioperative use of opioids may have a role in the genesis of postoperative cognitive dysfunction.

PUPIL SIZE

Morphine and most μ− and κ−agonists cause constriction of the pupil by an excitatory action on the parasympathetic nerve innervating the pupil. Light induces excitation of the Edinger-Westphal nucleus leading to pupillary constriction, which is inhibited by hypercarbia, hypoxia, and nociception. Opioids release the effect of inhibitory neurons on the Edinger-Westphal nucleus, resulting in papillary constriction (Fig. 24.12).[185] After intravenous administration of morphine (0.125 mg/kg) in one report, a 26% decrease in pupil diameter occurred at 1 hour, and a period of more than 6 hours was necessary for complete recovery of pupil diameter.[186] The pupillary dilatation reflex has been successfully used to assess the analgesic component of a balanced anesthetic regimen. The pupillometer may be a valuable tool to

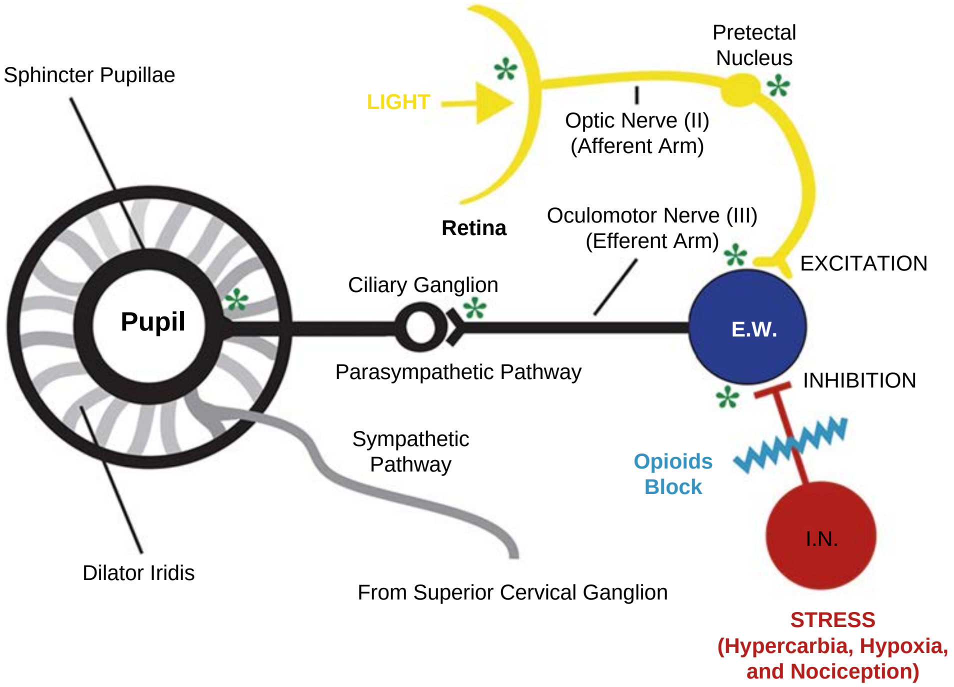


Fig. 24.12 Pathways and nerve centers that control pupil size and the pupillary light reflex in humans. *Colored* structures are the central nerve centers and pathways that modify the pupillary light reflex. Edinger-Westphal *(E.W.)* nucleus neurons are pacemaker cells that are modified by excitatory and inhibitory inputs. Opioids block the inhibition of the EW nucleus. Green asterisks (*) show locations where hypercarbia, hypoxia, and opioids might potentially interfere with the light reflex. * = locations where hypercarbia, hypoxia, and opioids might potentially interfere with the light reflex. *IN*, Inhibitory neuron. (From Rollins MD, Feiner JR, Lee JM, et al. Pupillary effects of high-dose opioid quantified with infrared pupillometry. *Anesthesiology.* 2014;84:1037–1044.)

guide morphine administration in the immediate postoperative period.[187] A prospective randomized study evaluated the impact of intraoperative pupillometry monitoring on perioperative opioid consumption in major gynecologic surgery. It was demonstrated that the use of pupillometry to guide intraoperative analgesia reduced intraoperative remifentanil consumption and postoperative morphine requirements.[188] Pupillary unrest is the fluctuation in pupil diameter, and pupillary unrest under ambient light (PUAL) is present even in well-rested individuals. Although the underlying mechanisms are unknown, PUAL is depressed by opioids. Administration of fentanyl to healthy volunteers diminishes PUAL, and the decrease is proportionally larger than the change in pupil diameter.[189] The pretreatment magnitude of PUAL is correlated with the analgesic response to opioid therapy, and patients who exhibit higher levels of PUAL change after opioid administration have a more beneficial analgesic effect from opioids.[190]

Pupillary constriction represents a well-known phenomenon following opioid administration and the use of pupillometry may help guide intraoperative opioid dosing to optimize analgesia.

THERMOREGULATION AND SHIVERING

Opioid-based anesthesia probably reduces thermoregulatory thresholds to a degree similar to that of the potent inhaled anesthetics.[191] However, meperidine is unique among opioids in its ability to effectively terminate or attenuate shivering. The antishivering effect of meperidine is primarily related to a reduction in the shivering threshold,[192] and seems to be mediated by meperidine's activity on the κ receptor.[193] However, the relatively specific κ-receptor agonist, nalbuphine, did not show significant antishivering activity.[194] Meperidine exerts agonist activity at the α_{2B}-adrenoreceptor subtype, a finding suggesting the involvement of this action in the antishivering action of meperidine.[85] Alfentanil, morphine, and fentanyl are not as effective as meperidine in the treatment of postoperative shivering. However, alfentanil and nefopam, a centrally acting analgesic, additively reduce the shivering threshold in humans.[195] Tramadol (0.5 mg/kg) suppressed postepidural anesthetic shivering in parturients as effectively as meperidine (0.5 mg/kg).[196] A quantitative systematic review of randomized controlled trials found that meperidine 12.5 to 35 mg and tramadol 35 to 220 mg were more effective than control for parenteral pharmacologic interventions for the prevention of postoperative shivering.[197]

Remifentanil is associated with an increased incidence of postanesthetic shivering, which is not related with intraoperative hypothermia. The higher incidence of postanesthetic shivering with higher doses of remifentanil probably reflects acute opioid tolerance and stimulation of the NMDA receptors.[198] A small dose of ketamine, 0.5 mg/kg at induction of anesthesia followed by infusion at 0.3 mg/kg/hour, can prevent remifentanil-induced postanesthetic shivering.

PRURITUS

Opioid-induced pruritis is one of several perpetual challenges associated with opioid-based analgesia. With the possible exception of morphine, histamine release, once thought to underlie this phenomenon, is not causative because non-histamine-releasing opioids also produce pruritus. Both central and peripheral nervous system mechanisms have been explored. Facial itching may not necessarily be a manifestation of direct opioid action at the level of the trigeminal nucleus, but rather, it may be a reflection of opioid-triggered neural transmission at a distant site. It is not known why the face is prone to pruritus even after spinal opioids. Interestingly, pruritus due to cholestasis is ameliorated by opioid antagonists.[199] Intrathecal morphine-induced itching in monkeys was suggested to be mediated by the μ receptor.[200] Activation of a μ-opioid receptor isoform MOR1D[11] by morphine induced activation of the gastrin-releasing peptide receptor that heterodimerized with MOR1D, thus resulting in activation of phospholipase β3 and intracellular Ca^{2+} increase in neurons leading to itch sensation in mice.[201]

Naloxone reverses opioid-induced itching, but opioid antagonists are not ideal therapeutic agents against pruritus because opioid analgesia is often reversed by these agents. A subcutaneous administration (12 mg) of methylnaltrexone bromide, a peripherally acting μ-opioid antagonist, did not reduce the overall severity or incidence of pruritus in women having elective cesarean section under spinal anesthesia with intrathecal morphine 100 μg, suggesting that peripheral mechanisms do not significantly contribute to spinal opioid-induced pruritus.[202] Ondansetron, a serotonin 5-HT_3 receptor antagonist has been proposed to treat spinal or epidural morphine-induced pruritus,[203] and a meta-analysis has demonstrated that prophylactic use of 5-HT_3 antagonists significantly reduced the severity and the need for treatment of pruritus.[204] Another meta-analysis showed that prophylactic intravenous administration of 8 mg ondansetron does not decrease the incidence of fentanyl- or sufentanil-induced pruritus but may decrease the need for pruritus rescue medication.[205] The application of mixed or partial opioid agonists, such as nalbuphine and butorphanol, are growing in popularity as antipruritics because they may partially antagonize μ receptor function with intact κ actions to maintain analgesia.[206] In fact, activation of the κ-opioid receptor inhibits pruritus evoked by subcutaneous and intrathecal morphine in animal models.[207]

Other agents that have been investigated include pentazocine (15 mg), an agonist of the κ-opioid receptor and partial agonist of the μ-opioid receptor. Pentazocine has been found to be superior to 4 mg of ondansetron for the treatment of pruritus induced by intrathecal morphine in parturients undergoing cesarean delivery.[208] It was recently reported that the antipruritic effect of κ-receptor agonists may not require interaction between the κ receptor and β-arrestins.[209] Tenoxicam, a nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug (NSAID), was reported to be effective for pruritus induced by epidural fentanyl.[210] Other approaches include intravenous administration of droperidol (1.25 mg), propofol (20 mg), or alizapride (100 mg), which reduced the incidence of pruritus induced by the use of morphine 0.2 mg intrathecally in patients undergoing cesarean section under spinal anesthesia.[211] Preoperative gabapentin prevents pruritus induced by intrathecal morphine in patients undergoing lower limb surgery with spinal anesthesia.[212]

As opioid-induced pruritis continues to be a clinical challenge, current strategies have shifted away from the consequences of histamine release (morphine) and are focused on exploiting partial blockade/activation of the μ-opioid receptor, activation of the κ-receptor, and non-opioid receptor pathways.

OPIOID-INDUCED HYPERALGESIA

There is growing evidence that opioid-induced hyperalgesia (OIH) can represent a major adverse effect of opioid administration, especially when driven by potent formulations and escalating dosages. Experimentally, opioids have elicited hyperalgesia in animal models after repeated opioid administration or continuous delivery.[213] A systematic review to evaluate the clinical implication of OIH demonstrated that high intraoperative doses of remifentanil are associated with small but significant increases in acute pain after surgery as assessed by: pain intensity at rest 24 hours after surgery, 24-hour morphine use, pain intensity on movement, and hyperalgesia measured after an operation.[214] In a randomized, double-blind, crossover study with 24 healthy male volunteers, it was demonstrated that when compared with low-dose (1 μg/kg) fentanyl, high-dose fentanyl (10 μg/kg) increased the area of hyperalgesia from 4.5 to 6.5 hours after fentanyl administration. This result suggests that fentanyl can also produce OIH in humans.[215]

OIH was shown to be due to spinal sensitization to glutamate and substance P.[216] Activation of glycogen synthase kinase-3β (GSK-3β) contributes to remifentanil-induced hyperalgesia by regulating NMDA receptor plasticity in the spinal dorsal horn,[217] and further demonstrated that GSK-3β inhibition prevented remifentanil-induced postoperative hyperalgesia via regulating α-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazolepropionic acid receptor (AMPAR) expression and function in the spinal dorsal horn.[218] Importantly, abrupt withdrawal of opioid administration may also contribute to induction of OIH, although its mechanism is not clear. In contrast to the high incidence of hyperalgesia induced after abrupt withdrawal of remifentanil (administered at 2.5 ng/mL for 30 minutes), no hyperalgesia was observed after gradual withdrawal by 0.6 ng/mL every 5 minutes.[219]

There have been reports that OIH and subsequent acute opioid tolerance can be prevented by ketamine, suggesting the involvement of the NMDA receptor.[220,221] Methadone is unique in possessing both μ-opioid receptor activating and NMDA antagonist properties. Opioid-induced hyperalgesia resulted from the presence in the racemate of the *l*-methadone (μ-opioid agonist) and was antagonized by the presence of the *d*-methadone (NMDA antagonist).[222] Low-dose buprenorphine (25 μg/h for 24 h), an opioid with NMDA antagonist activity, in patients receiving remifentanil infusion during major lung surgery prevented postoperative secondary hyperalgesia.[223] Butorphanol (0.2 μg/kg) was also effective for prevention of postoperative hyperalgesia after laparoscopic cholecystectomy performed with remifentanil (0.3 μg/kg/min).[224] N_2O, an inhalation anesthetic, is an effective NMDA antagonist. Intraoperative 70% N_2O administration significantly reduced postoperative opioid-induced hyperalgesia in patients receiving propofol (approximately 120 μg/kg/min) and remifentanil (0.3 μg/kg/min).[225] A randomized, double-blind, prospective study showed that a relatively high dose of remifentanil (0.2 μg/kg/min) enhances periincisional hyperalgesia in patients undergoing thyroidectomy, and intraoperative magnesium sulfate (30 mg/kg at induction followed by 10 mg/kg/h) can prevent remifentanil-induced hyperalgesia.[226]

Other strategies have focused on the upregulation of spinal cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) and increased prostaglandin E2 release in the spinal cord after morphine withdrawal in rats.[227] In humans, hyperalgesia after a 30-minute intravenous infusion of remifentanil (0.1 μg/kg/min) can be prevented by administration of parecoxib, a COX-2 inhibitor, before remifentanil infusion,[228] suggesting the involvement of COX-2 in OIH. Alternatively, it was reported that an ultra-low dose of naloxone blocked remifentanil-induced hyperalgesia but did not change opioid tolerance in rats under inhaled anesthesia, and that the MAC increase associated with hyperalgesia was also blocked by naloxone.[229] In patients undergoing elective thyroid surgery, intraoperative use of naloxone (0.05 μg/kg/h) reduced postoperative hyperalgesia after remifentanil infusion of 4 ng/mL.[230]

Genetic variants of the β_2-adrenergic receptor gene may explain some part of the differences between various strains of mice to develop OIH, and the selective β_2-adrenergic receptor antagonist butoxamine was shown to dose dependently reverse OIH.[231] In mice, systemic or intrathecal injection of the 5-HT_3 receptor antagonist, ondansetron, was shown to prevent or reverse opioid-induced tolerance or hyperalgesia.[232]

Interestingly, the occurrence of OIH might be affected by general anesthetics coadministered with opioids. When women undergoing breast cancer surgery were anesthetized with sevoflurane or propofol to keep BIS value at 40 to 50, postoperative hyperalgesia induced by intraoperative remifentanil infusion (effect-site target 4 ng/mL) was significant with sevoflurane anesthesia, but not apparent with propofol anesthesia.[233]

A follow-up study on the postoperative course of cardiac surgery demonstrated that intraoperative remifentanil was predictive for chronic thoracic pain 1 year after surgery in a dose-dependent manner.[234] It can be anticipated that hyperalgesia during the perioperative period is linked to peripheral and central pain sensitization and thereby correlates with the development of postoperative chronic pain.[235] This suggests that hyperalgesia due to remifentanil in the early postoperative period may explain the higher incidence of chronic pain.

Overall, human data generally support the existence of OIH in a few specific settings. Clinically relevant mechanisms of OIH include involvement of the NMDA receptor with ketamine as an appealing remedy. Although all potent opioids such as fentanyl are apparently capable of inducing OIH, ultrapotent opioid agonists such as remifentanil may pose even greater risks. The conditions under which OIH is expressed should be clarified and the extent of its clinical significance remains to be elucidated.[236]

Respiratory Effects of Opioids

The respiratory depressant actions of opioids represent their most serious adverse effect. Although some early studies indicated the involvement of both μ- and δ-opioid receptors, activation of the μ-opioid receptor in the caudal medullary raphe region, which is important for regulating pain and respiration, inhibits the ventilatory response to hypercapnia in anesthetized rats.[237] Furthermore, administration of morphine or M6G did not produce significant respiratory depression in the μ-opioid receptor knockout mice.[238] Polymorphism of the μ-opioid receptor at nucleotide position 118, which is known to affect M6G-induced analgesia, does not significantly change the susceptibility of respiratory depressive effect of M6G.[19] This result suggests that analgesia and respiratory depression may be mediated by different signal transduction mechanisms activated by the μ-opioid receptor.

EFFECTS ON AIRWAYS

The antitussive actions of opioids are well known and central in origin. Opioids blunt or eliminate somatic and autonomic responses to tracheal intubation. They allow patients to tolerate endotracheal tube placement without coughing or "bucking." Conversely, two successive doses of 1.5 μg/kg fentanyl did not effectively prevent laryngospasm in children aged 2 to 6 years old who were anesthetized with sevoflurane.[239] Opioids can also help avoid increases in bronchomotor tone in asthma. In addition, fentanyl also has antimuscarinic, antihistaminergic, and antiserotoninergic actions and may be more effective than morphine in patients with asthma or other bronchospastic diseases.

Nevertheless, several studies have reported a depressant effect of morphine on respiratory mucus transport, which is one of the most important defenses against respiratory tract infections. However, morphine had no effect on the beating frequency of nasal cilia in vitro.[240] Opioids can affect pharyngeal function, airway protection, and coordination of breathing and swallowing. A sedative dose of morphine (0.1 mg/kg) was associated with increased incidence of pharyngeal dysfunction and discoordinated breathing and swallowing, a combination impairing airway protection and potentially increasing the risk for pulmonary aspirations.[241]

More potent opioids such as remifentanil (effect-site concentration of 2 ng/mL) can suppress coughing induced by extubation after propofol or sevoflurane anesthesia.[242] In contrast, fentanyl, sufentanil, and alfentanil curiously elicit a brief cough in up to 50% of patients when the drug is injected by intravenous bolus. Fentanyl, administered through a peripheral intravenous cannula, provoked cough when it was injected rapidly, but the incidence of cough decreased significantly as the injection time was increased,[243] as well as by the administration of 1.5 mg/kg lidocaine 1 minute before fentanyl administration.[244] A meta-analysis showed that the lowest effective dose of lidocaine on the risk of opioid-induced cough was 0.5 mg/kg.[245] It was also reported that preemptive use of fentanyl 25 μg, administered 1 minute before bolus injection of fentanyl (125 or 150 μg), can effectively suppress fentanyl-induced cough.[246] Propofol, α_2 agonists (clonidine, dexmedetomidine), inhalation of β_2 agonists (terbutaline, salbutamol), and NMDA-receptor antagonists (ketamine, dextromethorphan) were also effective for suppression of fentanyl-induced cough.[247] A prospective randomized controlled study demonstrated that a huffing maneuver, consisting of a forced expiration against open glottis, just before intravenous fentanyl administration significantly reduced the incidence and severity of fentanyl-induced coughing in the majority of the patients.[248] Li and associates reported that nonsmoking women undergoing gynecological surgery who develop fentanyl-induced cough during induction of anesthesia have a higher incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV).[249]

In summary, opioids engender potent antitussive properties that can help blunt airway responsiveness to endotracheal intubation. However, depending on the class of opioid and rate of administration, they may evoke a brief cough that can be subverted through the use of preadministered agents such as lidocaine. Ultimately, caution should be exercised in the administration of opioids as they can also interfere with protective aspects of airway physiology.

RESPIRATORY DEPRESSION

The lack of adequate pain relief can cause shallow respiration leading to postoperative respiratory dysfunction including atelectasis, and therefore opioids can serve as a foundational component of postoperative analgesia to prevent or correct respiratory impairment. However, opioids can also dose dependently depress respiration, representing the most feared adverse effect. The incidence of opioid-induced respiratory depression varies from 0.1% to 37%, depending on the route of opioid administration, the type of opioid, the definition and method of monitoring opioid-induced respiratory depression, and the prospective versus retrospective nature of the study, and is a significant cause of death and brain damage in the perioperative period.[250]

Opioids activating the μ receptor cause dose-dependent depression of respiration, primarily through a direct action on brainstem respiratory centers.[251] The stimulatory effect of CO_2 on ventilation is significantly reduced by opioids. Hypercapnic responses can be separated into central and peripheral components. In one report, morphine-induced changes in the central component were equal in men and women, whereas changes in the peripheral component were larger in women.[252] In addition, the apneic threshold and pressure of end-tidal carbon dioxide ($PETCO_2$) are increased by opioids (Fig. 24.13). Opioids also decrease hypoxic ventilatory drive.

Respiratory rate is usually drastically decreased in opioid overdose, although hypoxic CNS insult can counter this effect. The prolonged expiratory time in the respiratory cycle induced by opioids frequently results in greater reductions in respiratory rate than in tidal volume. Monitoring of breath intervals can sensitively detect fentanyl-induced respiratory depression and can be used as a measure of dynamic opioid effect.[253] High doses of opioids usually eliminate spontaneous respirations without necessarily producing unconsciousness. Patients receiving high doses of opioids may still be responsive to verbal command and often breathe when they are directed to do so.

Peak onset of respiratory depression after an analgesic dose of morphine is slower than after comparable doses of fentanyl, and respiratory depression induced by small doses of morphine usually lasts longer than after equipotent doses of fentanyl. Plasma fentanyl concentrations of 1.5 to 3.0 ng/mL are associated with significant decreases in CO_2 responsiveness. With higher doses of fentanyl (50-100 μg/kg), respiratory depression can persist for many hours. When moderately large doses (20-50 μg/kg or greater) of fentanyl are used, the potential need for postoperative mechanical ventilation should be anticipated. The effects of remifentanil are attenuated rapidly and completely within 5 to 15 minutes following termination of its administration. In healthy humans, the EC_{50} for depression of minute ventilation with remifentanil and alfentanil was 1.17 ng/mL and 49.4 ng/mL, respectively.[254] In healthy volunteers, fentanyl 1 μg/kg and remifentanil 0.5 μg/kg had similar maximum decreases in minute ventilation (~50%), but the onset of and recovery from ventilatory depression were faster with remifentanil.[255] Naloxone has been accepted as a standard therapy for opioid-induced respiratory depression. However, reports have noted naloxone-resistant respiratory depression after intrathecal morphine administration.[256]

A major component of the excitatory synaptic drive necessary for respiratory rhythmogenesis and activation of respiratory motoneurons is *via* the amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazolepropionate (AMPA) type of glutamate receptors.[257] This finding has led to investigations of ampakine (positive modulators of AMPA receptors) therapy to alleviate opioid-induced respiratory depression.[258] 5-HT released from the raphe nuclei potently alters the excitability of respiratory motoneurons, the preBötzinger complex (preBötC), and other brainstem respiratory nuclei. The activation of $5\text{-}HT_{1A}$ receptors with befiradol alleviates fentanyl-induced respiratory depression in rats.[259] PreBötC, the main region of respiratory rhythm–pattern generation, is the main target of opioid-induced respiratory depression.

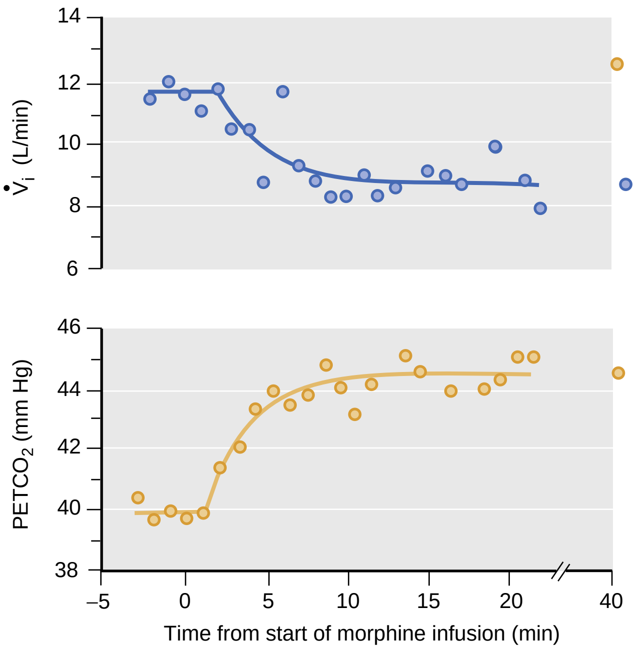


Fig. 24.13 Influence of morphine administration (bolus dose of 100 μg/kg given at the start of the infusion [0 minute], followed by a continuous infusion of 30 μg/kg/h) on resting inspired minute ventilation *(V_i)* and resting pressure of end-tidal carbon dioxide *($PETCO_2$)* in a single subject. A one-component exponential was fitted to the data. The estimated time constant for the V_i data is 3.0 minutes and for $PETCO_2$ data is 2.6 minutes. The time delays are between 1 and 2 minutes. (From Sarton E, Teppema L, Dahan A. Sex differences in morphine-induced ventilatory depression reside within the peripheral chemoreflex loop. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1329–1338.)

However, it has been demonstrated that preBötC partially mediates opioid effects on respiratory phase timing, but does not mediate the opioid-induced depression of respiratory rate.[260] By the use of knockout mice and pharmacologic approaches, G-protein–gated inwardly rectifying κ channels were shown to contribute to respiratory depression by μ-opioid receptors and opioids.[261] In healthy humans, GAL021, a calcium-activated potassium (BKCa) channel blocker possessing a stimulatory effect on ventilation at the carotid bodies, was preliminarily shown to reverse alfentanil-induced respiratory depression.[262]

FACTORS AFFECTING OPIOID-INDUCED RESPIRATORY DEPRESSION

Many factors affect the magnitude and duration of opioid-induced respiratory depression (Box 24.2).

Older patients are more sensitive to the anesthetic and respiratory depressant effects of opioids and experience higher plasma concentrations of opioids administered on a weight basis. In addition, morphine can produce greater respiratory depression on a weight basis in neonates than adults, because morphine easily penetrates the brain of neonates and infants with incomplete blood-brain barriers.

The respiratory depressant effects of opioids are increased or prolonged (or both) when these drugs are administered with other CNS depressants, including potent inhaled anesthetics, alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines, most intravenous sedatives, and hypnotics. However, droperidol, scopolamine, and clonidine do not enhance the respiratory depressant effects of fentanyl or other opioids. Curiously, Setnik and associates observed a decrease in end-tidal CO_2 when 0.7 g/kg ethanol was administered in addition to 80 mg oral morphine, suggesting a stimulatory effect of ethanol on opioid-induced respiratory depression.[263] However, it was reported that ethanol (1 g/L of breath ethanol concentration) caused a significant increase in the apneic events and increased end-tidal CO_2 induced by 20 mg oxycodone per os in opioid-naïve healthy volunteers.[264]

Although opioid action is usually dissipated by redistribution and hepatic metabolism, rather than by urinary excretion, the adequacy of renal function may influence the duration of opioid activity. In renal insufficiency, the respiratory depressant properties of morphine and hydromorphone, as well as of the morphine metabolite M6G, become evident as these accumulate.

Hypocapnic hyperventilation enhances and prolongs postoperative respiratory depression after fentanyl (10 and 25 μg/kg). Intraoperative hypercarbia produces the opposite effects. Possible explanations for these findings include increased brain opioid penetration (increased un-ionized fentanyl with hypocarbia) and removal (decreased CBF with hypocarbia). In patients who hyperventilate because of anxiety or pain, even small doses of intravenous opioids can result in transient apnea because of acute shifts in apneic thresholds. Respiratory depression by remifentanil (50 μg infused over 60 seconds) was more pronounced in hyperoxia (inhaling 50% O_2) than normoxia as determined by minute ventilation, end-tidal PCO_2, and respiratory rate.[265] During hyperoxia, respiratory depression may be masked when measuring SpO_2 as pulse oximetry remains in normal values during the first minutes of respiratory depression.

All opioid agonists with a longer plasma half-life than naloxone have a hypothetical potential to show renarcotization with time, especially when a bolus dose of naloxone is used to treat opioid-induced respiratory depression.

Overall, opioids exert their primary respiratory depressant effects through μ-receptor activation in the brainstem respiratory center, although other pathways have been defined. Dose-dependent opioid respiratory depression increases the apneic threshold, and reduces the respiratory stimulatory drive of CO_2 and hypoxia. Research efforts to block or reverse opioid-induced respiratory depression are ongoing and include a focus on AMPA, 5-HT_{1A}, and calcium-activated potassium channels. The μ-receptor antagonist, naloxone, continues to be the most commonly used clinical intervention to reverse opioid-induced respiratory depression, however its effectiveness may be limited if the administered opioid has a greater binding affinity and/or half-life than naloxone.

BOX 24.2 **Factors Increasing the Magnitude and/or Duration of Opioid-Induced Respiratory Depression**

- High dose
- Sleep
- Old age
- Central nervous system depressant
  - Inhaled anesthetics, alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines
- Renal insufficiency
- Hyperventilation, hypocapnia
- Respiratory acidosis
- Decreased clearance
  - Reduction of hepatic blood flow
- Secondary peaks in plasma opioid levels
  - Reuptake of opioids from muscle, lung, fat, and intestine
- Pain

Cardiovascular Effects of Opioids

Numerous reports have demonstrated that large doses of opioid, administered as the sole or primary anesthetic, result in hemodynamic stability throughout the operative period. This remarkable physiologic state is a result of a number of complementary mechanisms.

NEUROLOGIC MECHANISMS

Key areas of the brainstem that integrate cardiovascular responses and maintain cardiovascular homeostasis are the nucleus solitarius, the dorsal vagal nucleus, the nucleus ambiguous, and the parabrachial nucleus. The nucleus solitarius and parabrachial nucleus play an important role in the hemodynamic control of vasopressin secretion. Enkephalin-containing neurons and opioid receptors are distributed in these regions. The direct administration of μ-agonists into the CNS of rats most commonly, but not always, produces hypotension and bradycardia.[266] The ventrolateral PAG region, a key central site mediating opioid analgesia, also affects hemodynamic control.[267] In addition, opioids can modulate the stress response through receptor-mediated actions on the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. Most opioids reduce sympathetic and enhance vagal and parasympathetic tone. Patients who are volume depleted, or individuals depending on high sympathetic tone or exogenous catecholamines to maintain cardiovascular function, are predisposed to hypotension after opioid administration.

The predominant and usual effect of opioids on heart rate is bradycardia resulting from stimulation of the central vagal nucleus. Blockade of sympathetic actions may also play a role in opioid-induced bradycardia. Meperidine, in contrast to other opioids, rarely results in bradycardia, but it can cause tachycardia. Tachycardia after meperidine may be related to its structural similarity to atropine, to normeperidine, its principal metabolite, or to early manifestations of its toxic CNS effects.

CARDIAC MECHANISMS

The direct cardiac actions of opioids, in particular the effects on myocardial contractile mechanisms, are significantly less pronounced than are those of many other intravenous and inhaled anesthetics. However, opioid receptors exist in cardiac myocytes of several species.

Contractility

Morphine decreases Ca^{2+} transients but not cardiac contraction and enhances myofilament Ca^{2+} sensitivity through the action on the δ_1-opioid receptor expressed in the heart.[268] In rabbit ventricular myocytes, morphine prolonged action potential duration by increasing L-type Ca^{2+} current, an effect mediated by δ- and κ-opioid receptors, and hyperpolarized cardiac resting membrane potential by increasing the inwardly rectifying K^+ current, which is not mediated by opioid receptors.[269] Conversely, investigators demonstrated that morphine decreased the isometric force of contraction in atrial muscles from nonfailing and failing human hearts through a naloxone-insensitive mechanism.[270] Fentanyl produces little or no change in myocardial contractility.[271] Usually, most hemodynamic variables remain unchanged after large doses of fentanyl. Alfentanil, at concentrations achieved in clinical practice, increases contraction in ventricular cells by a mechanism involving an increase in the sensitivity of the contractile apparatus to Ca^{2+}.[272] The negative inotropic effect of tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) and interleukin-1β (IL-1β) on ventricular myocytes caused by disruption of sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca^{2+} handling and Ca^{2+} transient was reported to be ameliorated by alfentanil, but this response may not be mediated by opioid receptors.[273] A study using transthoracic echocardiography demonstrated that continuous target-controlled infusion of remifentanil (target effect-site concentration 2 ng/mL, infusion rate 0.08-0.09 μg/kg/min) did not affect systolic and diastolic left ventricular function in young healthy subjects during spontaneous breathing.[274]

Cardiac Rhythm Conduction

Opioid-induced bradycardia is primarily mediated by the CNS. However, there have been reports on direct effects of opioids on cardiac pacemaker cells. Fentanyl may depress cardiac conduction by a mechanism mediated by direct membrane actions, as opposed to opioid receptor interactions.[275] During induction of anesthesia in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery, the QT interval increased significantly after the injection of fentanyl.[276] However, pretreatment with fentanyl 2 μg/kg or remifentanil 1 μg/kg significantly attenuated QTc prolongation associated with laryngoscopy and tracheal intubation during propofol or sevoflurane induction.[277,278] Both sufentanil and alfentanil have been demonstrated to be devoid of electrophysiologic effects on the normal or accessory pathways in patients with Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome.[279,280] Clinically, cardiac conduction disturbances attributable to opioids are rare, but they may be more likely to occur in the presence of Ca^{2+} channel or β-adrenergic blockers.

The overall effect of opioid anesthesia is antiarrhythmic. Naloxone, morphine, and levorphanol protected against arrhythmia induced by coronary artery occlusion in rats.[281] A direct effect on ionic currents in cardiac muscle was suggested as the mechanism of antiarrhythmic activity of opioids. It was also reported that opioid antagonists are more antiarrhythmogenic than agonists in rats.[282] Some of the electrophysiologic actions of opioids resemble those of class III antiarrhythmogenic drugs.

Myocardial Ischemia

Determining the effects and consequences of opioid action on myocardial ischemia is complex because results can depend on such factors as the species studied and experimental design. In an experimental model of myocardial ischemia in rabbits, fentanyl had antiarrhythmic and antiischemic action with central and peripheral opioid receptor involvement.[283] Opioids can mimic ischemic preconditioning. Opioid receptor stimulation results in a reduction in infarct size similar to that produced by ischemic preconditioning.[284] Although the preconditioning effect of opioids is mediated mainly by the cardiac κ- and δ-opioid receptors,[285] part of the protective effect of remifentanil may be produced by μ-agonist activity outside the heart.[286] Preconditioning with small doses of intrathecal morphine can provide comparable cardioprotection to myocardial ischemic preconditioning and preconditioning with intravenous morphine, and the effect seems to involve μ-, δ-, and κ-opioid receptors.[287] Late preconditioning, in which cardioprotective effects can be observed 24 hours after drug administration, was also produced by morphine-induced activation of the opioid receptor in rat hearts.[288]

It was found that remote preconditioning by brief ischemia of other distant organs, such as intestine, kidney, and limb, similarly provides cardioprotection that is as effective as classic ischemic preconditioning. The myocardial κ-opioid receptors were demonstrated to mediate cardioprotection by remote preconditioning.[289] Brief cycles of ischemia and reperfusion during the early phase of reperfusion protect the heart from infarction. This phenomenon, termed postconditioning, was shown to be induced by activation of the δ-opioid receptor in the heart.[290] Volatile anesthetics may also be capable of producing protection against ischemic injury when these drugs are administered solely on reperfusion. This anesthetic-induced postconditioning can be enhanced by morphine through the activation of phosphatidyl-3-kinase and opioid receptors.[291] It has been shown that brief exposure to exercise (1-3 days of moderate-intensity exercise) preconditions the heart against tissue injury and death resulting from myocardial ischemia–reperfusion. It was demonstrated that endogenous opioids produced in the heart mediate exercise-induced cardioprotection against ischemia–reperfusion injury through its action on the δ-opioid receptor in rats.[292] Stimulation of δ_1-opioid receptor also generates oxygen radicals through mitochondrial ATP-sensitive K^+ channels, with resulting attenuation of oxidant stress and cell death in cardiomyocytes.[293] Involvement of adenosine A1 receptor and protein kinase C in the cardioprotective effect of opioids was also suggested.[294,295] Whether the experimental results showing protective effects of opioid against myocardial ischemia will translate into reductions in morbidity and mortality in patients with coronary artery disease has yet to be established by clinical trials.[296] Clinically, high doses of opioids can maintain myocardial perfusion and the O_2 supply-demand ratio as well or better than can inhalation-based techniques.

Coronary Circulation

Opioids appear to have no significant effect on coronary vasomotion or myocardial metabolism, do not produce steal phenomena, nor diminish the ability of large coronary arterioles to respond to vasoactive agents.[297] Coronary conductance is regulated by arterial baroreflex control, and vasodilator response is induced by a rise in aortic pressure. This baroreflex control is enhanced by low plasma concentration of fentanyl (1-2 ng/mL), but appears to be depressed at increased concentrations of fentanyl.[298]

Circulatory Reflexes

In an experiment examining baroreceptor reflex responses induced by perfusion of the carotid sinus at predetermined levels, baroreceptor reflexes were well preserved by moderate doses of fentanyl while high doses of fentanyl depressed baroreceptor reflexes.[299] The oculocardiac reflex, which is caused by traction of extraocular muscles during strabismus surgery, was significantly augmented by fentanyl, sufentanil, and remifentanil.[300] Among pediatric patients undergoing strabismus surgery, anesthetized with propofol (12 mg/kg/h) and alfentanil (0.04 mg/kg/h), virtually all patients developed oculocardiac reflex and atrioventricular rhythm disorders were frequent.[301]

HISTAMINE RELEASE

It is well known that morphine causes histamine release and sympathoadrenal activation. Increases in plasma histamine after morphine cause dilation of terminal arterioles and direct positive cardiac chronotropic and inotropic actions. In patients pretreated with both H_1- and H_2-antagonists, the cardiovascular responses are significantly attenuated despite comparable increases in plasma histamine concentrations. Codeine and meperidine are examples of other opioids that can induce mast cell activation with the release of histamine, probably by a mechanism other than the μ-opioid receptors.[302] Unlike morphine or meperidine, the opioids fentanyl, alfentanil, sufentanil, and remifentanil do not produce increases in plasma histamine, subsequently hypotension is less frequent with their administration.

VASCULAR MECHANISMS

The pharmacologically defined opioid receptor subtype μ_3 is expressed in human endothelial cells and coupled to vasodilation via nitric oxide (NO) production. Although μ_3 is opiate alkaloid sensitive it is insensitive to opioid peptides including peptides previously shown to have affinities for the μ-opioid receptors. Morphine-induced vasodilation may be partially caused by activation of the μ_3 receptor.[303] Other pharmacologic studies evaluating alfentanil, fentanyl, and sufentanil in the dog also demonstrate direct peripheral vessel smooth muscle relaxation although exact mechanism(s) remains under study.[304,305] For example, measurement of forearm blood flow after infusion of sufentanil into the brachial artery indicated that sufentanil has a direct vasodilatory effect on human vascular tissue that is likely independent of a neurogenic or systemic mechanism.[306] A supraclinical dose of alfentanil attenuates the phenylephrine-induced contraction via an inhibitory effect on calcium influx by blocking the L-type calcium channels in the rat aortic vascular smooth muscle.[307] Remifentanil can cause transient instability in hemodynamic variables. However, this change may not be solely the result of autonomic or central nervous system inhibition or of centrally mediated vagal stimulation. A pharmacologic study using rat thoracic aortic rings indicated that remifentanil vasodilates by an endothelium-dependent mechanism, involving prostacyclin and NO released from the endothelium, and an endothelium-independent vasodilation probably mediated by the suppression of voltage-sensitive Ca^{2+} channels.[308] In patients with a total artificial heart in which cardiac output is preload-independent, remifentanil induces a dose-dependent and significant systemic vasodilation without significant effects on capacitance vessels.[309]

Opioids may affect the pulmonary vasculature as well as systemic circulation. It was shown that phenylephrine-induced contraction of canine pulmonary artery is primarily mediated by α_{1B}-adrenergic receptor activation, and is attenuated by fentanyl by binding to and directly inhibiting the α_{1B}-adrenergic receptor.[310] Pharmacologic studies in cats demonstrated that sufentanil and remifentanil have potent vasodepressor activity in the pulmonary vascular bed and these responses may be mediated by histamine and opioid receptor-sensitive pathway.[311,312]

OPIOIDS IN SHOCK

Opioids are often administered for patients requiring surgical intervention for the control of hemorrhage. An animal study demonstrated that pretreatment with morphine before inducing shock state decreases leukocyte adhesion and vascular permeability in the microcirculation of the mesenteric venule, suggesting the survival benefit for use of morphine during acute resuscitation.[313]

It has been shown that endogenous opioids contribute to the pathophysiology of hypovolemic shock through central and peripheral sympathetic inhibition and contributes to hypotension during severe hemorrhage. Liu et al. reported that the selective δ-opioid receptor antagonist (ICI 174,864) may be beneficial for the early management of traumatic hemorrhagic shock in rats, suggesting a pathophysiological role of the δ-opioid receptor in hemorrhagic shock.[314]

Endocrinologic Effects of Opioids

Opioids can induce a variety of endocrinological responses (Table 24.5).[315] In humans, opioids generally increase growth hormone, thyroid stimulating hormone, and prolactin, and decrease luteinizing hormone, testosterone, estradiol, and oxytocin. The effects of opioids on arginine vasopressin and ACTH are conflicting. The primary endocrine disorder that results from opioid misuse is hypogonadism, particularly in males.

Hormonal and metabolic responses to surgery are often extreme and are thought to contribute to operative mortality. Opioids are capable of reducing the stress response by modulating nociception at several levels of the neuraxis, as well as by influencing centrally mediated neuroendocrine responses. The main components of the neuroendocrine stress response are the corticotropin-releasing hormone brain centers (e.g., paraventricular hypothalamic nucleus) and the locus ceruleus-norepinephrine/autonomic nervous system. Increased levels of stress hormones are considered undesirable because they promote hemodynamic instability and intraoperative and postoperative metabolic catabolism. Opioids are potent inhibitors of the pituitary-adrenal axis.[316] Endogenous opioid peptides may serve as stress hormones themselves and not just as modulators of other hormones' secretion. This is suggested by the finding that β-endorphin and ACTH are derived from the same precursor preproopiomelanocortin and cosecreted during stress.

Morphine modifies hormonal responses to surgical trauma in a dose-related fashion through blockade of ACTH release, suppression of surgically induced increases in plasma cortisol, and attenuation of the pituitary-adrenal response to surgical stress. Morphine can increase some stress-responding hormones due to increases in plasma histamine release, adrenal medullary release mechanisms, and catecholamine release from sympathetic nerve endings.

TABLE 24.5 Summary of the Effects of Acute and Chronic Opioids on the Endocrine Systems of Animals and Humans

	ACUTE		CHRONIC	
Hormone	**Animals**	**Humans**	**Animals**	**Humans**
GH	↑	↑	=	?
PRL	↑	↑	↑	↑/=
TSH	↓	↑	?	?/=
ACTH	↑	↓	↓/↑	↓/=
LH	↓	↓↓	↓	↓↓
FSH	=	=	=	=
Estradiol	↓	↓↓	=	↓=
Testosterone	↓	↓↓	↓	↓↓
AVP	↑/↓	↑/↓	↑/↓	↑/↓
OT	↓	↓	↓/=	↓/=

↑, Stimulation; ↓, inhibition; ↑↓, conflicting; =, no change; ?, not studied.

ACTH, Adrenocorticotropic hormone; *AVP*, arginine vasopressin; FSH, follicle stimulating hormone; *GH*, growth hormone; *LH*, luteinizing hormone; *OT*, oxytocin; *PRL*, prolactin; *TSH*, thyroid stimulating hormone. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2852206/

From Vuong C, Van Uum SH, O'Dell LE, et al. The effects of opioids and opioid analogs on animal and human endocrine systems. *Endocr Rev*. 2010;31:98–132.

Fentanyl and its congeners are more effective than morphine in modifying hormonal responses to surgery. The efficacy of fentanyl in controlling the hormonal manifestations of the stress response can be dose-dependent. Fentanyl doses greater than or equal to 50 μg/kg can help to reduce the hyperglycemic response to cardiac surgery in pediatric patients to less than 200 mg/dL throughout operation.[317] In contrast, it has been demonstrated that neither fentanyl nor sufentanil alone can completely block sympathetic and hormonal stress responses and that perhaps no dose-response relationship exists for opioid-associated stress response control.[318] A randomized controlled trial showed that remifentanil (0.85 μg/kg/min), when compared with fentanyl (total doses of 15 and 28 μg/kg), blunts the hypertensive responses and cortisol excretion associated with cardiac surgery but is associated with more hypotension.[319]

STRESS REDUCTION AND OUTCOME

Anesthetic techniques or agents that minimize the stress response may reduce morbidity and mortality in a variety of circumstances. Anand and Hickey[320] evaluated the impact of sufentanil versus morphine-halothane anesthesia on hormonal and metabolic responses and morbidity and mortality in neonates undergoing cardiac surgery. Most strikingly, a difference in postoperative mortality was observed (0 of 30 given sufentanil versus 4 of 15 given halothane plus morphine). Mangano et al.[321] also reported that, after myocardial revascularization, patients receiving intense postoperative analgesia with sufentanil (1 μg/kg/h) experience a decrease in the incidence and severity of electrocardiographically documented ischemia compared with patients receiving intermittent IV morphine (2.2 ± 2.1 mg/h) for postoperative analgesia. It was also shown that large-dose opioids (remifentanil 0.85 μg/kg/min or fentanyl 28 μg/kg) were associated with a decreased rate of myocardial infarction after cardiac surgery.[319]

Many different hormonal changes induced by surgery have been described. However, the concomitant neural, cellular, immune, and biochemical changes have been less well defined, and little is understood or proven with regard to how modifying hormonal responses alters outcome.[322] Additional studies are necessary for complete elucidation of the relationship between control of the surgery-induced hormonal responses and outcome.

In summary, the mechanisms underlying the ability of opioids to provide perioperative cardiovascular stability include: a reduced sympathetic tone and enhanced parasympathetic activity often producing bradycardia; minimal changes in cardiac contractility; function generally as an antiarrhythmic; potentially function as cardioprotective agents to reduce the effect of ischemia by mimicking an endogenous opioid-peptide/preconditioning pathway; have no significant effect on the coronary circulation; produce modest vascular smooth muscle relaxation with the exception of a morphine-induced histaminergic mechanism; reduce the surgical stress response through the nervous system and adrenal-pituitary axis—depending on the opioid class.

OPIOID TOLERANCE

The precise mechanism(s) that drive opioid dependence and tolerance are not known, however they appear to encompass a range of factors including: genetic, molecular, cellular, physiologic, and functional. In the locus ceruleus, the major noradrenergic nucleus in the brain, long-term opioid exposure results in inhibition of adenylyl cyclase, reduced activity of protein kinase A, and upregulation of the cyclic AMP pathway.[323] Changes in μ-receptor density that occur prior to or during the development of tolerance do not appear to be essential for development of opioid tolerance.[324] Possible mechanisms involve protein kinase signal transduction cascades that link extracellular signals to cellular changes by regulating target gene expression. Central glucocorticoid receptors (GRs) have been implicated in the cellular mechanism of neuronal plasticity that has many cellular steps in common with the mechanism of opioid tolerance. It was shown that the development of tolerance to the antinociceptive effect of morphine was substantially attenuated when the GR antagonist was coadministered with morphine but the GR agonist dexamethasone facilitated the development of morphine tolerance, suggesting an important role of spinal GRs in the cellular mechanisms of morphine tolerance in rats.[325] Cholecystokinin and NMDA-NO system were also shown to be involved in development of acute tolerance to opioids,[326] which is also affected by spinal serotonin activity.[327] Neuroinflammation driven by chemokines may represent one of the major mechanisms underlying pathologic pain. A chemokine, CXCL1, was upregulated in both opioid-tolerant patients and rodents, and the onset and extent of opioid tolerance was affected by antagonizing intrathecal CXCL1/CXCR2 signaling.[328] A chemokine, CXCL12, was significantly upregulated in the cerebrospinal fluid of opioid-tolerant patients, and CXCL12 neutralizing antibody and antagonist for CXCR4, a receptor which interacts with CXCL12, attenuated morphine tolerance in rats.[329]

Morphine tolerance occurs more rapidly in younger rats than older rats and is unlikely to be the result of differences in drug metabolism or clearance, suggesting that aging may impact molecular processes involved in development of tolerance.[330] It has been suggested that activation of glial cells, including astrocytes and microglia, at the level of the spinal cord plays an important role in the development of opioid tolerance.[331,332] However, the mechanism for opioid-induced activation of glial cells is not completely understood.

Although the notion that opioid tolerance and dependence occur only after chronic administration has been widespread, it has now become recognized that tolerance can also develop rapidly after acute opioid exposure in animals and humans.[333,334] Intraoperative remifentanil infusion (0.3 μg/kg/min) in patients undergoing major abdominal surgery under desflurane anesthesia increased postoperative pain and morphine requirement compared with low-dose remifentanil (0.1 μg/kg/min), suggesting the development of acute remifentanil tolerance.[335] In contrast, there is a report that target-controlled infusion of alfentanil and remifentanil for postoperative analgesia does not lead to opioid tolerance.[336] In human volunteers, continuous infusion of remifentanil (0.08 μg/kg/min) for 3 hours did not decrease the pain threshold.[337] On the other hand, intraoperative use of 0.3 μg/kg/min remifentanil for approximately 3 hours did not induce acute tolerance, but the administration of 0.6 and 0.9 μg/kg/min remifentanil to young children resulted in acute tolerance for 24 hours after surgery revealed by increased use of postoperative fentanyl in an apparently dose-related manner.[338] Differences in these outcomes may reflect divergent methodologies and limited sample size and are an area of ongoing investigation.

Differential opioid tolerance, an important phenomenon in clinical opioid pharmacology, proposes that different targets of opioid drugs do not develop tolerance at the same rate and to the same degree.[339] In a study using rhesus monkeys, acute morphine administration predictably induced dose-dependent analgesia, and chronic morphine administration induced dose-dependent tolerance to the analgesic effect, while no tolerance development to the respiratory depressive effect could be demonstrated in the chronically opioid-treated animals (Fig. 24.14).[340] In humans, patients receiving chronic opioids for pain control, especially at high doses, most likely have developed opioid tolerance. However, there is little data to help predict the magnitude or clinical impact of an individual's loss of opioid-induced analgesia or potentially their resistance/vulnerability to the respiratory depressive effects of opioids. As discussed later, individuals chronically consuming opioids are dose dependently at increased risk for overdose and death.

MANAGEMENT OF OPIOID-DEPENDENT PATIENTS

A variety of problems should be taken into consideration for anesthetic management of opioid-dependent patients or patients suffering from opioid use disorder (OUD).[341] Complications in opioid-addicted patients include cardiopulmonary problems, renal problems, and anemia. Long-term morphine administration causes adrenal hypertrophy and impairs corticosteroid secretion. Viral and nonviral hepatitis, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, osteomyelitis, muscle weakness, and neurologic complications may be found in patients suffering from OUD or poly substance use disorder. As it is common to underestimate and undertreat pain in opioid-dependent patients, it is important to identify the goals in their acute pain management (Box 24.3).[342] Anesthetic management for the opioid-dependent or patient with OUD should include adequate premedication with opioids, administration of supplemental intraoperative and postoperative opioids, and providing nonopioid analgesics and neural blockade. There is no ideal anesthetic agent or technique to employ in the patient with OUD or in the patient with an acute opioid overdose—with the possible exception of judicious use of an opioid antagonist as indicated. As mentioned previously, combined techniques utilizing regional anesthetic approaches, as well as concurrent use of low-dose ketamine and α2-agonists have been successful. Support of the circulatory system with fluids and monitoring of arterial blood gases and pulmonary function are essential.

Owing to the high risk of relapse, overdose, and death in individuals with OUD, medication-assisted treatment (MAT) in which opioids with different pharmacokinetic

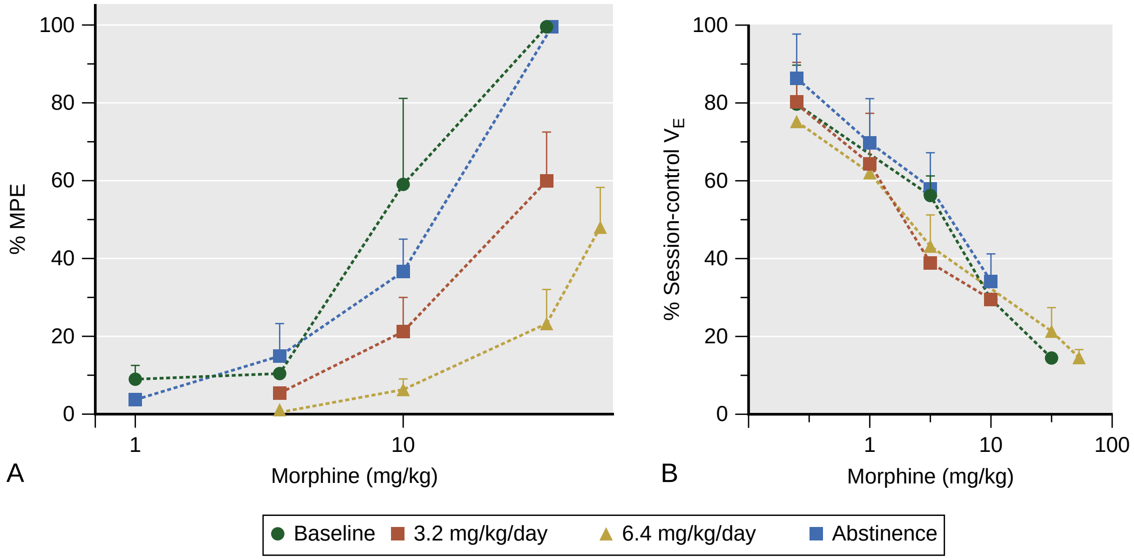


Fig. 24.14 The effects of chronic opioid administration on analgesia and respiratory response in rhesus monkeys. The animals were studied under baseline conditions, after receiving 3.2 or 6.4 mg/kg/day for 4 weeks, and after abstinence. After each treatment course, they were challenged with various doses of morphine, and analgesic and respiratory responses were assessed. Analgesic effects were assessed by tail withdrawal latency and shown as percentage of maximum possible effect *(MPE)*; respiratory depression was shown as decrease in minute ventilation *(V_E)*. The results show development of reversible tolerance to the analgesic effects of opioids (A), but no tolerance development to the respiratory depression (B). (From Paronis CA, Woods JH. Ventilation in morphine-maintained rhesus monkeys. ii: tolerance to the antinociceptive but not the ventilatory effects of morphine. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1997;282:355–362.)

BOX 24.3 **Goals of Acute Pain Management in Opioid-Dependent Patients**

1. Identification of the population of at-risk patients receiving long-term opioid therapy for various chronic pain situations (musculoskeletal disease, neuropathic conditions, sickle cell disease, HIV-related disease, palliative care), persons recovering in opioid maintenance programs
2. Prevention of withdrawal symptoms and complications
3. Symptomatic treatment of psychological affective disorders such as anxiety
4. Effective analgesic treatment in the acute phase
5. Rehabilitation to an acceptable and suitable maintenance opioid therapy

HIV, Human immunodeficiency virus.

and pharmacodynamic properties such as methadone or buprenorphine are commonly prescribed. Because of the injection-deterring potential of naloxone hydrochloride and a better safety profile compared with methadone, daily administration of combined buprenorphine and naloxone is becoming a first-line choice for MAT in a number of countries.[343] Other treatment approaches have emerged including rapid opioid detoxification with high-dose naloxone or naltrexone. For this treatment, general anesthesia is induced before the start of opioid antagonization and maintained for several hours to prevent perception of withdrawal symptoms by the patient.[344,345] Blockade of μ-opioid receptors by naloxone (total dose of 12.4 mg) in opioid-addicted patients induces sympathetic neural activation, including increase in plasma catecholamine concentration and cardiovascular stimulation, which can be managed in part by α_2-agonists.[346] Long-term opioid abstinence is not guaranteed, even with an ongoing program that includes MAT, given the neurobiology, societal factors involved in addiction, and potential for repeat exposure—often medically in the perioperative period.[347]

Renal and Urodynamic Effects of Opioids

Opioids can have significant effects on renal function. μ-receptor activation causes antidiuresis and decreases electrolyte excretion. κ-receptor stimulation predominantly produces diuresis with little change in electrolyte excretion. Indirect actions may involve inhibiting or altering the secretion of ADH and atrial natriuretic peptide. The absence of increases in plasma ADH, renin, and aldosterone indicate that fentanyl, sufentanil, alfentanil, and probably remifentanil most likely preserve or minimally alter renal function in humans. If renal function does change during opioid anesthesia and surgery, it is probably due to secondary changes in systemic and renal hemodynamics.

The mechanism by which opioids cause urinary retention is incompletely understood. Opioid effects on the lower urinary tract include disturbances of micturition characterized by urinary retention, especially after intrathecal opioid administration. Intrathecal administration of morphine and sufentanil caused dose-dependent suppression of detrusor contractility and decreased sensation of urge.[348] Mean times to recovery of normal lower urinary tract function were 5 and 8 hours after 10 or 30 μg sufentanil and 14 and 20 hours after 0.1 or 0.3 mg morphine, respectively. Not all opioid agonists behave similarly, and morphine appears to be particularly potent with regard to producing urodynamic problems. Malinovsky et al. compared urodynamic effects of intravenously administered morphine (10 mg), buprenorphine (0.3 mg), fentanyl (0.35 mg), and nalbuphine (20 mg).[349] It was shown that all of the opioids altered bladder sensations, but that detrusor contraction decreased only after administration of fentanyl and buprenorphine. Urinary retention induced by intravenous infusion of remifentanil, 0.15 μg/kg/min could be reversed by a single intravenous dose of methylnaltrexone 0.3 mg/kg or naloxone 0.01 mg/kg.[350] Reversal of urinary retention by methylnaltrexone indicates that peripheral mechanisms may play a role in opioid-induced bladder dysfunction.

A retrospective study for adult patients with chronic kidney disease undergoing orthopedic surgery estimated glomerular filtration rate during the postoperative period was significantly higher in the group in which remifentanil was used for anesthesia management than the group in which remifentanil was not used. This finding may suggest that anesthesia management using remifentanil may have a renal protective effect in adult patients with chronic kidney disease.[351]

Effects of Opioids on Digestive Organs

EFFECTS ON GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT

The adverse gastrointestinal effects of exogenous opioid treatment include nausea, vomiting, altered fluid dynamics, inhibited gastric emptying, inhibited intestinal coordinated propulsive activity, and increased transit time, all of which may contribute to postoperative ileus (Table 24.6).[352] Opioid-dependent mechanisms driving these effects are complex and those involving GI motility are believed to involve opioid receptors expressed throughout the myenteric plexus. Several opioid receptor types can be demonstrated on myenteric neurons, and both κ- and μ-receptor agonists regulate cholinergic transmission in the myenteric plexus. κ-Agonists appear to modulate acetylcholine release more potently than μ-agonists by inhibition of N-type voltage-sensitive Ca^{2+} channels via a pertussis toxin-sensitive G protein in guinea pig ileum.[353]

TABLE 24.6 Effects of Opioids on the Gastrointestinal Tract

Pharmacologic Action	Clinical Effect
Decreased gastric motility and emptying	Decreased appetite; increased gastroesophageal reflux
Decreased pyloric tone	Nausea and vomiting
Decreased enzymatic secretion	Delayed digestion; hard, dry stools
Inhibition of small and large bowel propulsion	Delayed absorption of medication; straining; incomplete evacuation; bloating; abdominal distension; constipation
Increased fluid and electrolyte absorption	Hard, dry stools
Increased nonpropulsive segmental contractions	Spasms; abdominal cramps; pain
Increased anal sphincter tone	Incomplete evacuation

From Viscusi ER, Gan TJ, Leslie JB, et al. Peripherally acting mu-opioid receptor antagonists and postoperative ileus: mechanisms of action and clinical applicability. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1811–1822.

The effect of morphine on esophageal motility has been little explored. Morphine (80 μg/kg) increased the velocity but did not alter the amplitude or duration of primary peristalsis of the esophagus, and it decreased the duration and magnitude of swallow-induced lower esophageal sphincter relaxation.[354] Gastric emptying is delayed by opioids, via supraspinal (vagus nerve-mediated) and spinal, as well as peripheral, mechanisms. Intrathecal morphine (0.4 mg) significantly decreased the gastroduodenal propagation velocity and acetaminophen absorption, and intramuscular morphine (4 mg) gave additional effects.[355] Tramadol (1.25 mg/kg IV) has a measurable but smaller inhibitory effect on gastric emptying compared with codeine (1 mg/kg IV) or morphine (0.125 mg/kg IV).[356] Opioids administered epidurally as well as intrathecally reduce gastrointestinal motility.[355] It was reported that translocation of enteric microorganisms from the intestinal tract to extraintestinal sites is promoted by reduction of gut propulsion after morphine treatment in rats.[357] Propofol (0.3 mg/kg bolus and 1.0 mg/kg/h) abolished the decrease of gastric tone induced by morphine (0.1 mg/kg intravenously), but did not abolish morphine-induced delay of gastric emptying.[358]

Naloxone reverses opioid-induced delays in gastric emptying. Methylnaltrexone, a quaternary naloxone derivative that does not cross the blood-brain barrier, can attenuate morphine-induced delays in gastric emptying, suggesting that a peripheral mechanism is involved in the opioid effect on gastrointestinal tract.[359] Naloxone (0.7 mg/kg) significantly inhibited gastric emptying of saline and milk in rats.[360] This observation might suggest that opioids can affect the gastrointestinal tract by a mechanism independent from the opioid receptors. Intravenous, but not intramuscular, metoclopramide (10 mg) also can reverse morphine-induced delays in gastric emptying.[361]

Opioid effects on the intestine are complex. Transit time from mouth to ileum may not be significantly altered by morphine, because morphine enhances ileal propulsion before decreasing motility. Opioids increase tone and decrease propulsive activity in most of the intestine. Constipation is the frequent side effect in patients who are administered opioids. Naloxonazine attenuated the fentanyl-induced inhibition of gastrointestinal transit more potently than the inhibition induced by morphine or oxycodone. Naloxone methiodide suppressed the oxycodone-induced inhibition of gastrointestinal transit more potently than the inhibition induced by morphine.[362] Thus, μ-opioid receptor agonists induce the inhibition of gastrointestinal transit and drive constipation through different mechanisms.

BILIARY AND HEPATIC EFFECTS

Opioid agonists increase biliary duct pressure and sphincter of Oddi (choledochoduodenal sphincter) tone in a dose- and drug-dependent manner through opioid receptor-mediated mechanisms. However, the clinical consequences of opioid-induced biliary tract actions are usually minimal. Although traditional teaching dictates that morphine induces “spasm” in the sphincter of Oddi and should not be used in acute pancreatitis, no studies or evidence exist to indicate morphine is contraindicated for use in acute pancreatitis.[363] Increases in biliary pressure caused by opioids are, with the exception of meperidine, reversible with naloxone.

Oddi's sphincter manometry via choledochoscope demonstrated that the regular dose of morphine could increase common bile duct pressure, whereas pethidine had no effect on Oddi's sphincter motility and tramadol shows inhibited motility of the sphincter of Oddi.[364] Fragen et al. studied the effect of remifentanil (0.1 mg/kg/min) on the flow of dye from the gall bladder into the duodenum, and showed that remifentanil delays the drainage of dye from the gall bladder into the duodenum, but the delay is shorter than that reported after morphine or meperidine.[365]

Opioids produce minimal effects on liver function during anesthesia and surgery but can affect ischemia-reperfusion injury. Remifentanil pretreatment can attenuate liver injury induced by ischemia-reperfusion, which was shown to be mediated by inducible NO synthase expression and exhausting reactive oxygen species but does not involve opioid receptors.[366] Morphine administered either intravenously or intrathecally 10 minutes before 1 hour of ischemia protects against ischemia-reperfusion injury after 6 hours of reperfusion in both normal and cirrhotic rat liver by a mechanism involving the opioid receptor.[367] Remifentanil significantly attenuated increases in serum aminotransferase levels and the liver histological changes induced by ischemia-reperfusion injury of the liver in rats, by a mechanism possibly involving hepatic interleukin-18.[368] These reports might suggest the beneficial effects of opioids in anesthetic management of liver surgery.

NAUSEA AND VOMITING

Postoperative nausea and vomiting are serious problems which often embarrass anesthesiologists. Etiology, treatment, and prevention of PONV have been extensively investigated (Fig. 24.15).[369] Intraoperative use of opioids is a well-known risk factor for PONV .[370] Opioids stimulate the chemoreceptor trigger zone in the area postrema of the medulla possibly through δ-receptors, leading to nausea and vomiting. Alfentanil, compared with approximately equipotent doses of fentanyl and sufentanil, was found in one study to be associated with a lower incidence of PONV .[371]

The use of propofol in balanced or total IV anesthesia (TIVA) significantly reduces the incidence of opioid-induced nausea and vomiting. When opioids are employed, antiemetic prophylaxis should be considered, which includes drugs with anticholinergic activity, butyrophenones, dopamine antagonists, serotonin antagonists and acupressure. Ondansetron, a serotonin type 3 (5-HT_3) receptor antagonist, was proved to be effective for postoperative opioid-induced nausea and vomiting.[372] A meta-analysis concluded that prophylactic use of 5-HT_3 receptor antagonists significantly reduced the incidence of PONV and the need of rescue antiemetic therapy in parturients who received intrathecal morphine for cesarean delivery.[204] Nausea and vomiting after epidural morphine (3 mg) for postcesarean section analgesia could be prevented by dexamethasone (8 mg IV) as efficiently as droperidol (1.25 mg IV).[373] Cannabinoid receptor agonists have been demonstrated to be effective antiemetics in some clinical settings. Animal experiments have shown that the cannabinoid agonist suppresses opioid-induced retching and vomiting by activation of the cannabinoid CB1 receptor.[374] A continuous low-dose naloxone infusion (0.25 µg/kg/h) ameliorates some of the opioid-induced side effects, including nausea, vomiting, and pruritus, in many but not all patients without adversely affecting analgesia.[375] Transdermal scopolamine was shown to be effective for prophylactic use in parturients receiving intrathecal morphine while undergoing cesarean delivery but was associated with higher incidence of side effects such as dry mouth and blurry vision.[376]

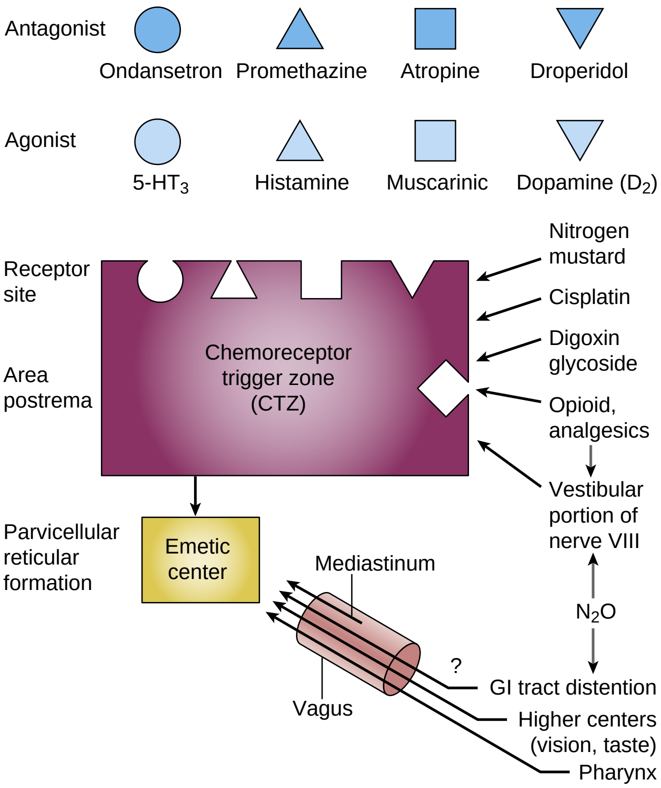


Fig. 24.15 The chemoreceptor trigger zone and the emetic center with the agonist and antagonist sites of action of various anesthetic-related agents and stimuli. *GI*, Gastrointestinal. (From Watcha MF, White PF. Postoperative nausea and vomiting: its etiology, treatment, and prevention. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:162–184.)

Taken together, the prevention and/or treatment of opioid-induced nausea and vomiting continues to be a clinical challenge. Strategies that include the administration of 5-HT_3 receptor antagonists and/or the steroid dexamethasone show efficacy in well controlled trials. However, such approaches require exposure to additional medications that, in themselves, may carry additional risks of side effects.

Other Opioid Effects

OBSTETRICS

The parenteral administration of opioids for oocyte retrieval and prior to delivery remains a commonly used method of analgesia.

Alfentanil and pethidine have been safely used as analgesics during the harvesting of human oocytes for subsequent *in vitro* fertilization.[377] Teratogenic actions of opioids, including fentanyl, sufentanil, and alfentanil, at least in animal models, appear to be minimal. Nociception due to uterine cervical distension could be suppressed by µ- and κ-agonists in rats,[378] but the analgesic effect of μ-agonist but not κ-agonist was reduced by estrogen.[379] Aortocaval compression and associated hypotension may be exacerbated by parenteral opioids, especially following morphine or meperidine. Fetal manifestations of maternal opioid administration include decreases in heart rate variability. Adverse neonatal effects can occur after either morphine or meperidine administration to mothers. Fetal acidosis increases opioid transfer from the mother. Attempts to minimize neonatal effects of opioids include restricting opioid administration to the first stage of labor. The short-acting opioid alfentanil administered before cesarean delivery attenuated the maternal stress response, but led to slightly reduced Apgar score.[380] In a randomized, double-blind, controlled study, it was shown that a single bolus of 1 μg/kg remifentanil administered to patients undergoing elective cesarean delivery effectively attenuated hemodynamic changes after induction and tracheal intubation, but remifentanil crosses the placenta and may cause mild neonatal depression.[381]

Because the fetus is capable of pain perception after the 26th week of gestation, adequate postoperative fetal pain management is essential after fetal surgery. It was shown that the sheep fetus absorbs sufentanil after intraamniotic instillation, and that significantly greater plasma concentrations were obtained in the fetal lamb as compared with the mother sheep.[382]

Morphine and meperidine have been found in the breast milk of mothers receiving intravenous opioid analgesia.[383,384] Although both fentanyl and morphine are concentrated in breast milk in milk-to-plasma ratios of 2 to 3:1, newborn exposure is reported to be insignificant. Newborns of mothers with OUD or taking prescription opioids can exhibit opioid withdrawal often referred to as neonatal abstinence syndrome (NAS) and require appropriate treatment and observation.[385,386]

ANAPHYLACTOID REACTIONS

True allergic reactions and systemic anaphylactoid reactions to opioids are rare. More commonly, local reactions caused by preservatives or histamine may occur. In 32% of heroin addicts dying suddenly after injection, the concentration of tryptase was elevated (>10 μg/L), but no correlation was found between the IgE levels and tryptase, supporting the hypothesis that mast cell degranulation was not mediated by allergic reaction.[387] This report suggests that heroin fatalities may be in part driven by anaphylactoid reaction.

OCULAR EFFECTS

The use of fentanyl, sufentanil, and alfentanil during induction of anesthesia can help to prevent increases in intraocular pressure. Fentanyl, alfentanil, and sufentanil doses as small as 2.5, 10, and 0.1 μg/kg, respectively, may be sufficient as long as appropriate anesthetic depth is achieved prior to tracheal intubation. Remifentanil (1 μg/kg) combined with propofol (2 mg/kg) or thiopental (5 mg/kg) was reported to be effective for prevention of intraocular pressure change after succinylcholine and tracheal intubation.[388,389]

IMMUNE EFFECTS

Opioids can affect immune function through adaptive immunity, innate immunity, and neuroendocrine system (Box 24.4).[390] The literature investigating the function of classical opioid receptors (μ, δ, and κ) present on immune cells suggest a complex relationship between clinically used opioids and immune function, including through indirect mechanisms. However, because the μ-opioid receptor knockout mice showed no immune modulatory effects after central administration of opioids, the central immune modulatory effect of opioids is mediated by μ-opioid receptors.[391]

It was shown that the maximal suppression of natural killer (NK) cell activity, proliferation of splenic T and B cells, and interferon-γ production are observed 0.5 to 1 hour after 15 mg/kg morphine injection in rats.[392] The time course

BOX 24.4 Opioid Effects on Immunity

Adaptive Immunity

↓ Splenic and thymic weight (rodents)
↓ T cell viability and proliferative response
↓ T-helper cell function
↓ CD4/CD8 population *in vivo*
↓ IL1β, IL-2, TNF-α, and IFN-γ (mouse splenocytes)
↓ Th1/Th2 ratio of T-helper cell population (PBMCs)
↓ NK cell activity
↓ Primary antibody response (B cells)
↓ B cells mitogenic response to bacterial LPS
↓ Macrophage activity
↓ TGF-β1 and IL-10 (antiinflammatory cytokines)
↑ T cell apoptosis (NF-κβ and AP-1/NFAT pathways)
Inhibition of CD3/28 mAb induced IL-2 transcripts

Innate Immunity

↓ Number of macrophages available to fight infections
↓ Leucocyte migration
↓ Peritoneal macrophages phagocytosis
↓ Respiratory burst activity and chemotaxis
Inhibition of Fc γ receptor mediated phagocytosis
↓ Superoxide production from neutrophils and macrophages
Alteration of IL-8 induced neutrophil chemotaxis
↓ Neutrophil cytokines involved in wound healing
↑ Apoptosis of macrophages impairing host defense barrier
↓ Leucocytes endothelial adhesion (intracellular adhesion molecules expression)

Neuroendocrine System

↑ Growth hormone, prolactin, and thyroid stimulating hormone secretion in humans
May affect the function of the HPA axis (ACTH and CRH) with risk of adrenal insufficiency
↓ Sex hormones [LH and testosterone (hypogonadism)], oxytocin, and estradiol

ACTH, Adrenocorticotropic hormone; *AP-1*, activator protein 1; *CRH*, corticotropin releasing hormone; *Fc*, fragment crystallizable region; *HPA*, hypothalamic pituitary adrenal axis; *IL*, interleukin; *IFN-γ*, interferon-gamma; *LH*, luteinizing hormone; *LPS*, lipopolysaccharides; *NF-κβ*, nuclear factor kappa beta; *NFAT*, nuclear factor of activated T-cells; *NK*, natural killer; *PBMC*, peripheral blood mononuclear cell; *TGF-β*, transforming growth factor beta; *TNF-α*, tumor necrosis factor-alpha.

From Al-Hashimi M, Scott SW, Thompson JP, Lambert DG. Opioids and immune modulation: more questions than answers. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:80–88.

was nearly concordant with the antinociceptive effect of morphine. Postoperative administration of morphine (10 mg IM) did not significantly affect the NK cell activity, while tramadol (100 mg IM) enhanced NK cell activity.[393] It was reported that intravenously administered fentanyl causes a rapid increase in NK cell cytotoxicity, which was coincident with an increase in the percentage of $CD16^+$ and $CD8^+$ cells in peripheral blood.[394] Compared with fentanyl (1000 μg), administration of morphine (40 mg) as part of balanced anesthetic technique suppressed several components of the inflammatory response (IL-6, CD11b, CD18, postoperative hyperthermia) to cardiac surgery and cardiopulmonary bypass.[395]

As a potential mechanism for the immunosuppressive effects of morphine, it was demonstrated that NF-κβ activation induced by an inflammatory stimulus was inhibited by morphine-induced activation of μ_3-opioid receptors in a NO-dependent manner.[396] Several investigators have independently reported direct effects of morphine on apoptosis in cultured human peripheral blood lymphocytes, which may result in compromising immune functions.[397] However, there is also a report that morphine has no effect on apoptosis-related molecules and does not promote apoptosis of human peripheral blood lymphocytes.[398]

With respect to the effects of opioids on neutrophils, it was reported that remifentanil, but not sufentanil, alfentanil, or fentanyl, could attenuate activation of human neutrophils exposed to lipopolysaccharides, and decreased activation of intracellular signaling pathways, including p38 and ERK1/2, and expression of proinflammatory cytokines, including TNF-α, IL-6, and IL-8, through a mechanism involving the κ-opioid receptor.[399] It was also reported that remifentanil attenuates lipopolysaccharide-induced acute lung injury by inhibition of proinflammatory cytokine production by downregulating the NF-κβ pathway, suggesting a beneficial effect of remifentanil in acute lung injury or acute respiratory distress syndrome in sepsis.[400]

A prospective study for adult patients who underwent elective colorectal surgery demonstrated that the number of patients who developed surgical site infection was higher after remifentanil-based anesthesia (11.6%) compared with fentanyl-based anesthesia (3.4%).[401] A possible reason for this finding may be opioid-induced immunosuppression or opioid withdrawal-induced immunosuppression.

CANCER PROGRESSION

Epidemiological studies have suggested that patients who receive general anesthesia with opioids have a greater rate of cancer recurrence than patients who receive local or regional anesthetics,[402] although there is no direct evidence to support altering anesthetic technique in cancer patients. Opioids may directly stimulate proliferation and invasion of tumor cells and inhibit apoptosis of tumor cells, or indirectly affect cancer recurrence by immunosuppression.[403] Overexpression of the μ-opioid receptor in human non-small cell lung cancer was suggested to promote tumor growth and progression.[404] Furthermore, it was reported that women with A118G genotype of the μ-opioid receptor have decreased breast cancer-specific mortality, suggesting that opioid pathways may be involved in tumor growth.[405] Drawing from preclinical studies using animals or cultured cells opioids may promote tumor growth and metastasis through multiple mechanisms, whereas it is also reported that opioids can direct various anticarcinogenic pathways (Fig. 24.16).[406] Preclinical data have also suggested that μ-opioid receptor inhibition can reverse the adverse effect of μ-opioid receptor signaling on cancer progression, when a combination of methylnaltrexone, which blocks peripheral but not central μ-opioid receptor, and chemotherapy is tested.[407]

One of the mechanisms involved in the effects of opioids on cancer prognosis is their effects on angiogenesis. Morphine can stimulate angiogenesis by a variety of mechanisms involving NO, MAPK, VEGF, and Rho/Rho kinase.[408] Blebea et al. reported that activation of opioid receptors inhibited angiogenesis, via endogenous opioid ligands.[409] Although both pro- and anti-angiogenic actions of opioids have been reported, it is generally believed that the proangiogenic (or neo-vasculogenic) effects predominate.

The opioid growth factor receptor (OGFR) is localized in both the nucleus and the cytoplasm and functions as a receptor for OGF, also known as methionine-enkephalin. OGFR is distinguished from classic opioid receptors (μ, δ, and κ) as not having any role in analgesia but functions as a negative regulator of cell proliferation. Morphine can also interact with OGFR expressed in lung cancer tissues and cell lines and may suppress lung cancer progression.[410]

WOUND HEALING

Topical application of opioids has been explored as a strategy for reducing pain associated with cutaneous wounds. In addition to its analgesic functions, the peripheral opioid receptor system affects skin homeostasis by influencing cell differentiation, migration, and adhesion. Activation of peripheral opioid receptors on primary afferent neurons reduces the excitability of these neurons and suppresses the antidromic release of substance P and calcitonin gene-related peptide, which play an essential role in wound repair. It was shown that topical morphine application significantly reduced the number of myofibroblasts and macrophages in the closing wound.[411] These findings might limit the topical application of opioids as an analgesic therapeutic strategy in the treatment of painful cutaneous wounds. In contrast, it was shown that activation of the δ-opioid receptors destabilizes intercellular adhesion and promotes the migratory keratinocyte phenotype, which is required for fast wound closure.[412] If these divergent findings can be resolved in favor of wound healing and enhanced localized analgesia, there is great potential for opioid applications in wound healing. Most clinical studies have not focused on opioid effects on the wound healing process but substantial analgesic effects without delaying wound closure were found. Larger clinical trials are required to examine whether opioids interfere with wound healing by inhibition of proinflammatory cytokine release or by development of hypertrophic scars, as shown in animal studies.[413]

Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Opioids

With the advent of modern drug assay technology and the widespread availability of computers, it is now possible to

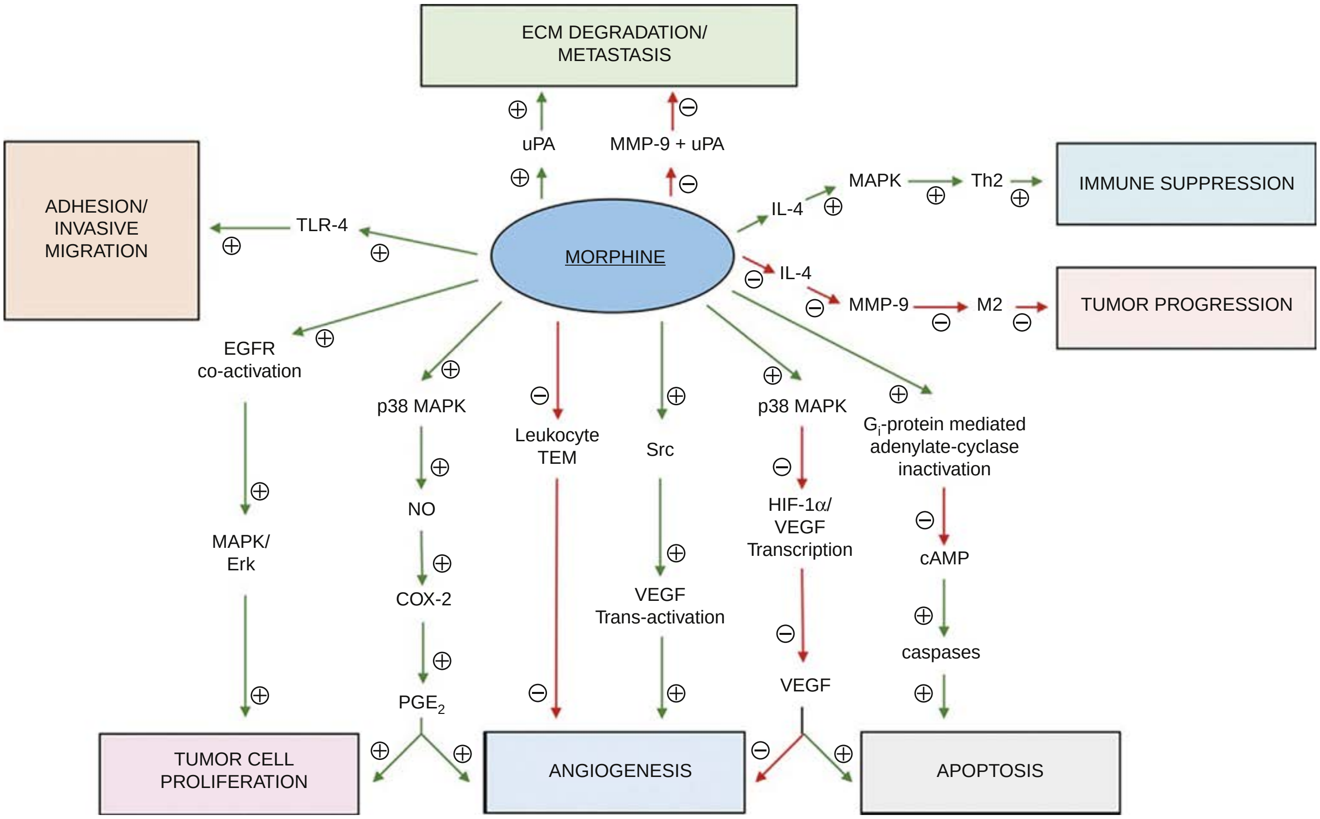

ECM DEGRADATION/
METASTASIS
uPA
MMP-9 + uPA
ADHESION/
INVASIVE
MIGRATION
TLR-4
MORPHINE
IL-4
MAPK
Th2
IMMUNE SUPPRESSION
IL-4
MMP-9
M2
TUMOR PROGRESSION
EGFR
co-activation
p38 MAPK
Leukocyte
TEM
Src
p38 MAPK
G_i-protein mediated
adenylate-cyclase
inactivation
MAPK/
Erk
NO
COX-2
HIF-1α/
VEGF
Transcription
cAMP
VEGF
Trans-activation
caspases
VEGF
PGE_2
TUMOR CELL
PROLIFERATION
ANGIOGENESIS
APOPTOSIS

Fig. 24.16 Effects of morphine on cancer cells. It is important to note that the same pathway can have opposing end results, depending on the morphine doses, mode of administration, and animal models used. *cAMP*, Cyclic adenosine monophosphate; *COX-2*, cyclooxygenase-2; *ECM*, extracellular matrix; *EGFR*, epidermal growth factor receptor; *Erk*, extracellular-regulated kinase; *HIF-1α*, hypoxia inducible factor 1 alpha; *IL*, interleukin; *M2*, "alternative" activation of macrophages; *MAPK*, mitogen-activated protein kinase; *MMPs*, matrix metalloproteinases; *NO*, nitric oxide; *PGE_2*, Prostaglandin E_2; *Src*, non-receptor tyrosine kinase; *TLR-4*, toll-like receptor 4; *Th2*, T helper 2 cells; *uPA*, urokinase plasminogen activator; *VEGF*, vascular endothelial growth factor. (From Sekandarzad MW, van Zundert AAJ, Lirk PB, et al. Perioperative anesthesia care and tumor progression. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124;1697–1708.)

analyze and model pharmacologic data which separates drug response into pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic components. Pharmacokinetic parameters govern the relationship between opioid dose and the opioid concentrations in the blood (or other body fluids). Pharmacodynamic parameters describe the relationship between opioid concentration in blood (or other fluids) and opioid effect.

Computer simulation techniques predict "context-sensitive half–times," the time necessary to achieve a 50% decrease in drug concentration after termination of a variable-length continuous infusion to a steady-state drug level (see Chapter 26). Such simulations are intended to provide more clinically relevant meaning to pharmacokinetic parameters. The context-sensitive half-time and computer simulations have helped clinicians to select opioids in a more rational fashion. After 1-hour continuous infusion, the context-sensitive half-time of fentanyl is nearly six times that of alfentanil or sufentanil. Remifentanil's context-sensitive half-time is independent of infusion duration.

PHYSICOCHEMICAL PROPERTIES

Opioids are weak bases. When dissolved in solution, they are dissociated into protonated and free-base fractions, with the relative proportions depending on the pH and pKa. The free-base fraction is more lipid-soluble than the protonated fraction. High lipid solubility facilitates opioid transport into the biophase or site of action. Therefore, highly lipid-soluble opioids have a more rapid onset of action. However, because the opioid receptor recognizes an opioid molecule in the protonated form, the intensity of opioid effects is closely related to the ionized concentration of drug in the biophase.

All opioids are to some extent bound to plasma proteins, including albumin and α_1-acid glycoprotein. It is only the un-ionized, unbound fraction that constitutes the diffusible fraction and provides the concentration gradient that promotes diffusion of opioid from the blood to the tissue of interest. Thus, the speed of onset of opioid effect is affected by both the lipid solubility and the protein binding.

PHARMACOKINETIC FEATURES OF INDIVIDUAL DRUGS

Representative pharmacokinetic parameters for the opioids commonly used in anesthesia are displayed in Table 24.7.

Morphine

Morphine pharmacokinetics is notably different from that of the fentanyl congeners. This difference is in large part due to morphine's comparatively low lipid solubility. There is relatively little transient first-pass uptake

TABLE 24.7 Physicochemical and Pharmacokinetic Data of Commonly Used Opioid Agonists

	Morphine	Fentanyl	Sufentanil	Alfentanil	Remifentanil
p*K*a	8.0	8.4	8.0	6.5	7.1
% Un-ionized at pH 7.4	23	<10	20	90	67?
Octanol/H_2O partition coefficient	1.4	813	1778	145	17.9
% Bound to plasma protein	20-40	84	93	92	80?
Diffusible fraction (%)	16.8	1.5	1.6	8.0	13.3?
$t_{1/2}\alpha$ (min)	1-2.5	1-2	1-2	1-3	0.5-1.5
$t_{1/2}\beta$ (min)	10-20	10-30	15-20	4-17	5-8
$t_{1/2\gamma}$ (h)	2-4	2-4	2-3	1-2	0.7-1.2
Vd_c (L/kg)	0.1-0.4	0.4-1.0	0.2	0.1-0.3	0.06-0.08
Vd_{ss} (L/kg)	3-5	3-5	2.5-3.0	0.4-1.0	0.2-0.3
Clearance (mL/min/kg)	15-30	10-20	10-15	4-9	30-40
Hepatic extraction ratio	0.6-0.8	0.8-1.0	0.7-0.9	0.3-0.5	NA

NA, Not applicable; pK_a, ion dissociation constant; $t_{1/2}$ α, β, γ, half-lives of a three-compartment model; Vd_c, volume of distribution of the central compartment; Vd_{ss}, volume of distribution at steady state.

From Bailey PL, Egan TD, Stanley TH. Intravenous opioid anesthetics. In: Miller RD, ed. *Anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2015. An imprint of Elsevier Inc., p. 887.

of morphine by the lung. The pKa of morphine (8.0) is greater than physiologic pH, and thus after intravenous injection only a small fraction (10%-20%) of morphine is un-ionized. Penetration of morphine into and out of the brain is presumably slower compared with that of other opioids. Approximately 20% to 40% of morphine is bound to plasma proteins, mostly albumin.

Morphine is principally metabolized by conjugation in the liver, but the kidney plays a key role in the extrahepatic metabolism of morphine. M3G is the major metabolite of morphine, but does not bind to opioid receptors and possesses little or no analgesic activity. M3G may actually antagonize morphine, and this effect may contribute to both variability in response and resistance to morphine analgesic therapy. M3G was reported to produce seizures in animals and cause allodynia in children.[414] M6G accounts for nearly 10% of morphine metabolite and is a more potent μ-receptor agonist than morphine with a similar duration of action. It was reported that M6G contributes substantially to morphine's analgesic effects even in patients with normal renal function.[415] A recent study reported that based on area under the concentration–time curve there was a major contribution of M6G to the overall analgesic effect; the mean contributions being estimated as 96.6%, 85.6%, 85.4%, and 91.3% after oral, subcutaneous, intravenous, and rectal administration of morphine, respectively.[416] In patients with renal insufficiency, 97.6% of the analgesic effect is caused by M6G when morphine is given orally. Especially in patients with renal dysfunction, the accumulation of M6G can lead to an increased incidence of adverse effects, including respiratory depression. Except for renal function, M6G accumulation was shown to be affected by transmembrane transporters inhibited by probenecid.[417] M6G can induce respiratory depression similarly as morphine, but the site of action in the ventilatory control system might be different between M6G and morphine.[418] It was suggested that SNP at the μ-opioid receptor affects the susceptibility to M6G-related opioid toxicity.[419] Because the hepatic extraction ratio of morphine is high, the bioavailability of orally administered morphine is significantly lower (20%-30%) than after intramuscular or subcutaneous injection. It appears that M6G is in fact the primary active compound when morphine is administered orally (Fig. 24.17).[420] In contrast to the reports suggesting the high potency of M6G, there have been reports showing that short-term intravenous administration of M6G does not provide effective analgesia.[421]

Fentanyl

A three-compartment model is typically used to describe plasma fentanyl concentration decay. The lungs exert a significant first-pass effect and transiently take up approximately 75% of an injected dose of fentanyl. Approximately 80% of fentanyl is bound to plasma proteins, and significant amounts (40%) are taken up by red blood cells. Fentanyl is relatively long acting, in large part because of this widespread distribution in body tissues.

Fentanyl is primarily metabolized in the liver by *N*-dealkylation and hydroxylation. Metabolites begin to appear in the plasma as early as 1.5 minutes after injection. Norfentanyl, the primary metabolite, is detectable in the urine for up to 48 hours after intravenous fentanyl in humans.

Alfentanil

Following IV injection, alfentanil plasma concentrations are described by either two-compartment or three-compartment model. Alfentanil is bound to plasma proteins (mostly glycoproteins) in higher proportions (92%) than fentanyl. At physiologic pH, it is mostly (90%) un-ionized because of its relatively low pKa (6.5). Thus, despite more intense protein binding, the diffusible fraction of alfentanil is higher than fentanyl. This explains, in part, its short latency to peak effect after intravenous injection.

The main metabolic pathways of alfentanil are similar to those of sufentanil and include oxidative *N*-dealkylation

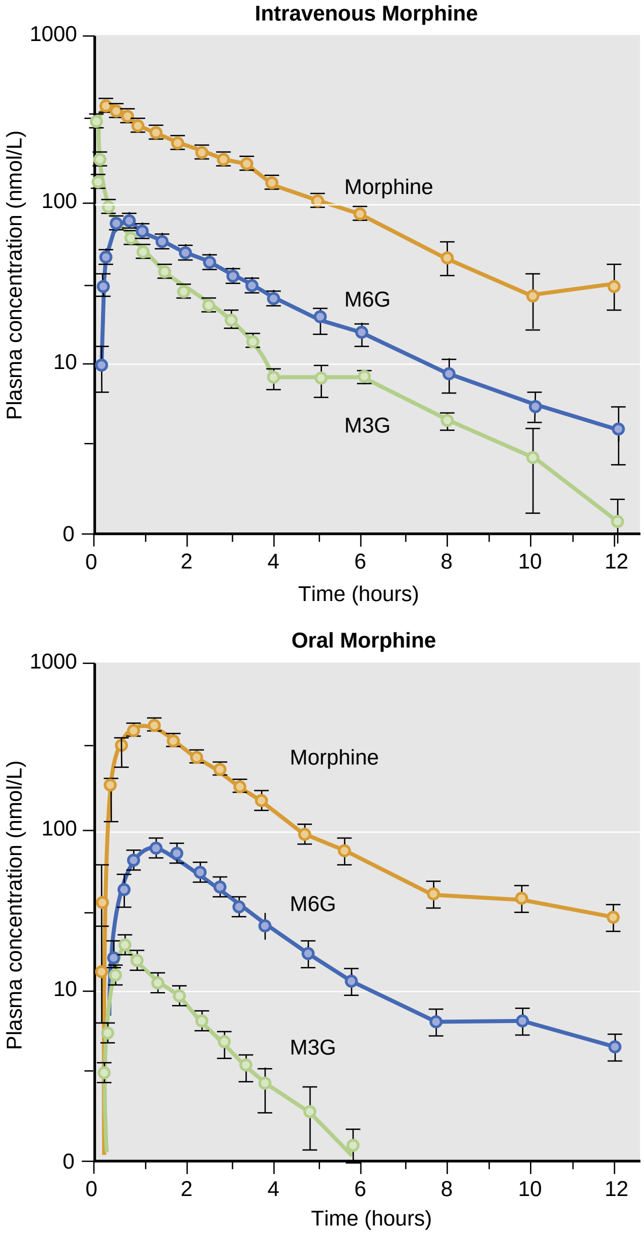


Fig. 24.17 Mean plasma concentrations (± standard error of means) of morphine, morphine-6-glucuronide *(M6G)*, and morphine-3-glucuronide *(M3G)* after intravenous and oral administration of morphine. (From Osborne R, Joel S, Trew D, et al. Morphine and metabolite behavior after different routes of morphine administration: demonstration of the importance of the active metabolite morphine-6-glucuronide. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1990;47:12–19.)

and *O*-demethylation, aromatic hydroxylation, and ether glucuronide formation. The degradation products of alfentanil have little, if any, opioid activity. Human alfentanil metabolism may be predominantly, if not exclusively, by cytochrome P-450 3A3/4 (CYP3A3/4).[422] This enzyme is known to display at least 8-fold difference in activity in humans. Alfentanil is also metabolized by human liver microsomal CYP3A5, which shows more than 20-fold pharmacogenetic variability in expression level leading to significant differences in human liver alfentanil metabolism.[423] In vitro study demonstrated that propofol in clinically relevant concentrations interferes with oxidative metabolic degradation of alfentanil and sufentanil in the microsomal fraction of pig and human liver.[424]

Sufentanil

The pharmacokinetic property of sufentanil is adequately described by a three-compartment model. After intravenous injection, first-pass pulmonary extraction, retention, and release are similar to those of fentanyl.[425] The pKa of sufentanil at physiologic pH is the same as that of morphine (8.0), and, therefore, only a small amount (20%) exists in the un-ionized form. Sufentanil is twice as lipid-soluble as fentanyl and is highly bound (93%) to plasma proteins including α_1-acid glycoprotein.

The major metabolic pathways of sufentanil include *N*-dealkylation, oxidative *O*-demethylation, and aromatic hydroxylation. Major metabolites include *N*-phenylpropanamide.

Remifentanil

Although chemically related to the fentanyl congeners, remifentanil is structurally unique because of its ester linkages. Remifentanil's ester structure renders it susceptible to hydrolysis by blood- and tissue-nonspecific esterases, resulting in rapid metabolism and rapid reduction of blood concentration after an infusion has stopped (Fig. 24.18).[426] Remifentanil thus constitutes the first ultrashort-acting opioid for use as a supplement to general anesthesia.

Pharmacokinetic properties of remifentanil are best described by a three-compartment model. Its clearance is several times greater than normal hepatic blood flow, consistent with widespread extrahepatic metabolism. But, remifentanil is not significantly metabolized or sequestered in the lungs.[427] It is a weak base with a pKa of 7.07. It is highly lipid-soluble with an octanol/water partition coefficient of 19.9 at pH 7.4. Remifentanil is highly bound (= 70%) to plasma proteins (mostly α_1-acid glycoprotein). The remifentanil free base is formulated with glycine. Because glycine has been shown to act as an inhibitory neurotransmitter that causes a reversible motor weakness when injected intrathecally in rodents, remifentanil is not approved for spinal or epidural use.[428]

The primary metabolic pathway of remifentanil is de-esterification to form a carboxylic acid metabolite, GR-90291 (Fig. 24.19),[429] which is 0.003 to 0.001 times as potent as remifentanil. The low *in vivo* potency of GR90291 can be explained by its low affinity to the μ-receptor in combination with a poor brain penetration.[430] Excretion of GR-90291 is dependent on renal clearance mechanisms. Evidence from dogs suggests that the remifentanil metabolites are, for practical purposes, completely inactive, even in the face of renal failure. Its pharmacokinetics is not appreciably influenced by renal or hepatic failure. In blood, remifentanil is metabolized primarily by enzymes within erythrocytes. Remifentanil is not a good substrate for pseudocholinesterase and, therefore, is not influenced by pseudocholinesterase deficiency.[431]

SURROGATE MEASURES OF OPIOID POTENCY

Because a high-resolution measure of analgesia is not available, opioid potencies are usually estimated by some surrogate measures. Reduction of the MAC required to produce lack of movement to skin incision has been a

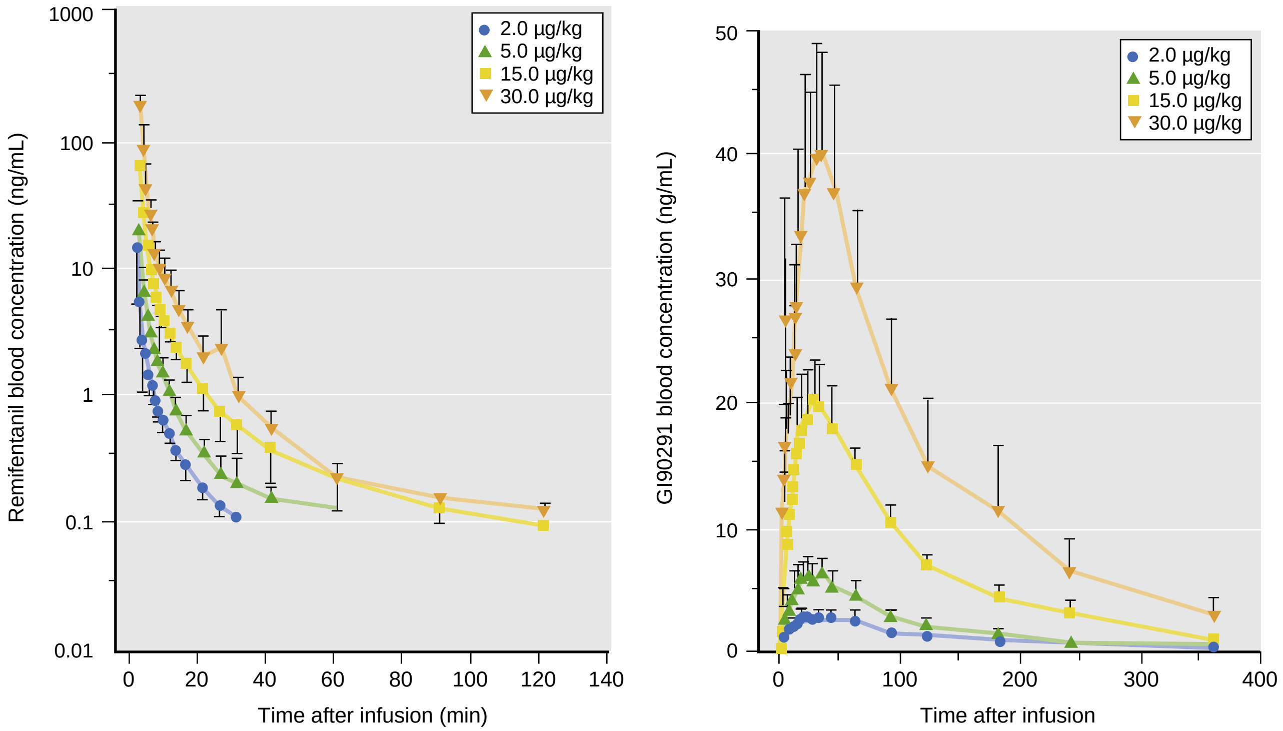


Fig. 24.18 Mean (± standard deviation) blood concentration-time curves of remifentanil and its metabolite GI90291 after a 1-minute transfusion of remifentanil of 2, 5, 15, and 30 μg/kg (*n* = 6 for each dose). (From Westmoreland CL, Hoke JF, Sebel PS, et al. Pharmacokinetics of remifentanil (GI87084B) and its major metabolite (GI90291) in patients undergoing elective inpatient surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:893–903.)

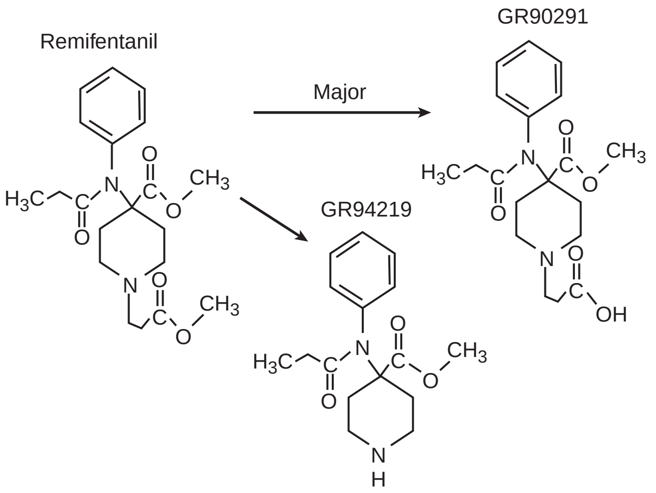


Fig. 24.19 Metabolic pathway of remifentanil. Deesterification by nonspecific plasma and tissue esterases to form a carboxylic acid metabolite *(GR90291)* that has only 1/300 to 1/1000 the potency of the parent compound is the primary metabolic pathway. *N*-dealkylation of remifentanil to *GR94219* is a minor metabolic pathway. (From Egan TD, Lemmens HJ, Fiset P, et al. The pharmacokinetics of the new short-acting opioid remifentanil (GI87084B) in healthy adult male volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:881–892.)

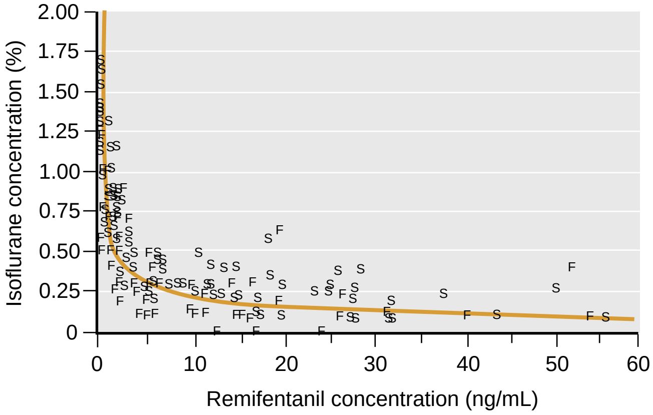


Fig. 24.20 The reduction in isoflurane concentration to prevent movement at skin incision in 50% of patients by increasing measured remifentanil whole blood concentrations. *F* represents a patient who moved and *S* represents a patient who did not move. The solid line is the logistic regression solution for a 40-year-old patient. (From Lang E, Kapila A, Shlugman D, et al. Reduction of isoflurane minimal alveolar concentration by remifentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;85:721–728.)

frequently utilized surrogate measure in the estimation of opioid potency (Fig. 24.20).[125] However, MAC is not useful as a surrogate measure of opioid potencies outside the operation rooms.

To guide the administration of opioids in anesthetized patients, indirect parameters that reflect the patient's physiologic reaction to nociception like sweating, movement, heart rate, and blood pressure should be monitored. However, the low specificity of these signs can cause underdosage or overdosage of intraoperative analgesia. The Analgesia Nociception Index (ANI), derived from an electrocardiogram trace, has been proposed as a noninvasive guide to analgesia.[432] The ANI monitor calculates heart rate variation with respiration, a response mediated primarily by changes in the parasympathetic nervous system stimulation to the sinoatrial node of the heart. Patients receiving

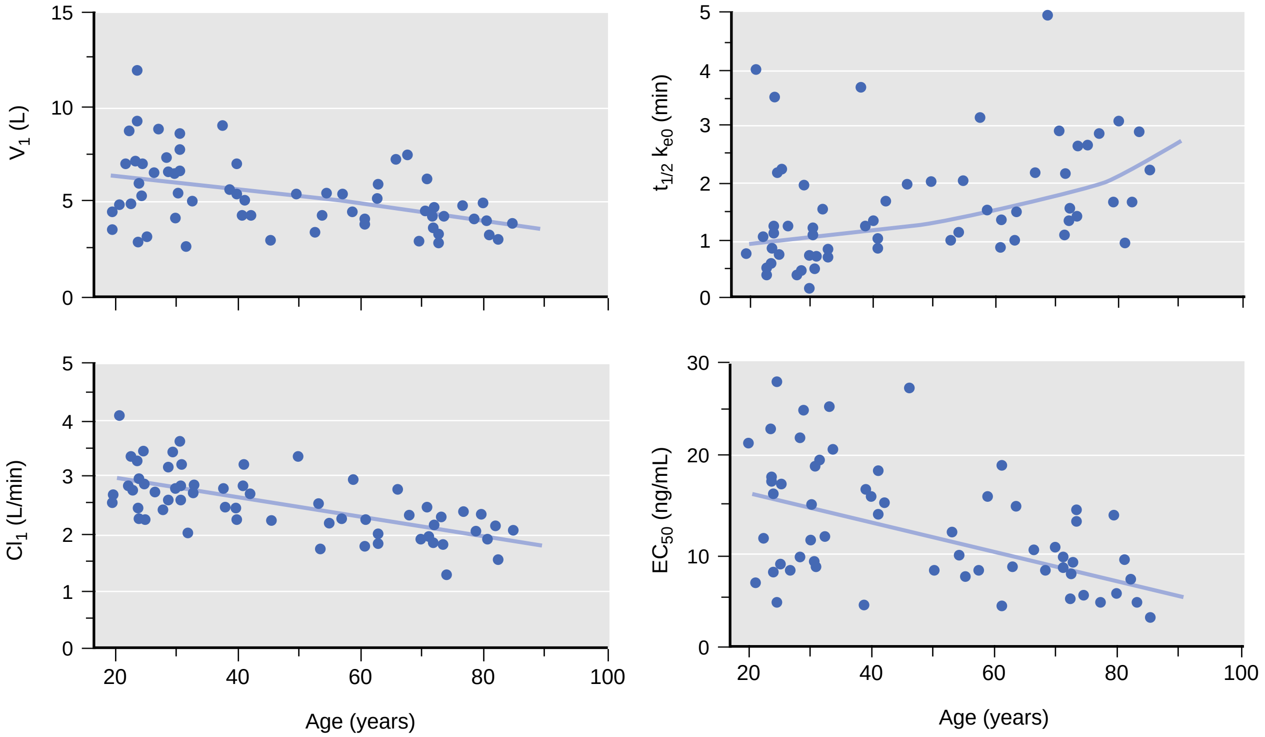


Fig. 24.21 Relationship between pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic parameters and age for remifentanil. Volume of distribution *(V_1)* and clearance *(Cl_1)* are estimated using a three-compartment model. $t_{1/2}k_{e0}$ is a half-life corresponding to k_{e0}, a first-order rate constant for elimination of drug from the effect compartment. (From Minto CF, Schnider TW, Shafer SL. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of remifentanil. II. Model application. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:24–33.)

intraoperative ANI-guided fentanyl administration during sevoflurane anesthesia for lumbar discectomy and laminectomy demonstrated decreased pain in the recovery room, likely as a result of more objective intraoperative fentanyl administration.[433]

The EEG has been another widely utilized surrogate measure in estimating opioid potency. The EEG is advantageous, because it is noninvasive and can be used as an effect measure when an experimental subject is unconscious or apneic. When processed by Fourier spectral analysis, the raw EEG changes translate into a significant decrease in the value of the spectral edge, a parameter that quantitates the frequency below which a given percentage (usually 95%) of the power in the EEG signal is found. Although the clinical meaning of the EEG changes produced by opioids is unclear, the opioid potencies estimated using the EEG as a surrogate measure appear to be clinically reliable because they relate to clinically determined potencies in a proportional, reproducible fashion. However, because the surrogate measures do not always assess the drug effect of clinical interest (analgesia), estimations of potency based on surrogate measures must be interpreted with caution.

FACTORS AFFECTING PHARMACOKINETICS AND PHARMACODYNAMICS OF OPIOIDS

Age

Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of opioids can be influenced by age. It is clear that neonates exhibit a reduced rate of elimination of essentially all opioids.[434] This is presumably due to immature metabolic mechanisms, including the cytochrome P-450 system. The prolonged elimination of opioids observed in the neonatal period quickly normalizes toward adult values within the first year of life.[434]

Intraoperative requirements of opioids are different between adults and children. The infusion rate of remifentanil to block somatic and autonomic response to skin incision was almost 2-fold higher in children (2-11 years) than adults (20-60 years).[435,436] With advanced age, although pharmacokinetic changes may play a minor role, pharmacodynamic differences are primarily responsible for the decreased dose requirement in the elderly. Age was inversely correlated with central volume of distribution, clearance, and potency of remifentanil (Fig. 24.21).[437] These combined pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic changes mandate a reduction in remifentanil dosage by at least 50% or more in the elderly.

Body Weight

Many opioid pharmacokinetic parameters, especially clearance, appear to be more closely related to lean body mass. Total body weight-based dosing in an obese patient results in much higher remifentanil effect-site concentrations than does lean body mass-based dosing.[438] In contrast, for lean patients, the concentrations that result from total body weight-based dosing are not much greater than those based on body mass (Fig. 24.22). Clinically, context-sensitive half-times are not significantly different between obese and lean subjects (Fig. 24.23). There is mounting evidence to suggest that lean body mass is a better predictor of metabolic capacity than total body weight. Ideal body weight, a parameter closely related to lean body mass and one that

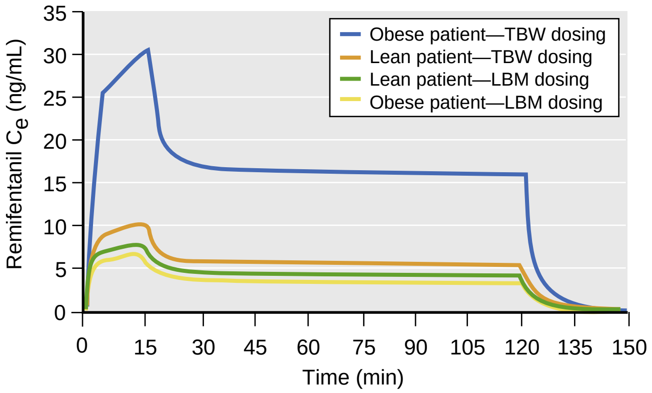


Fig. 24.22 A computer simulation of the time course of remifentanil concentration change, when the dosage regimen is calculated based on lean body mass *(LBM)* or total body weight *(TBW)* for both obese and lean patients. Note that TBW-based dosing in an obese patient results in dramatically higher concentrations. (From Egan TD, Huizinga B, Gupta SK, et al. Remifentanil pharmacokinetics in obese versus lean patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:562–573.)

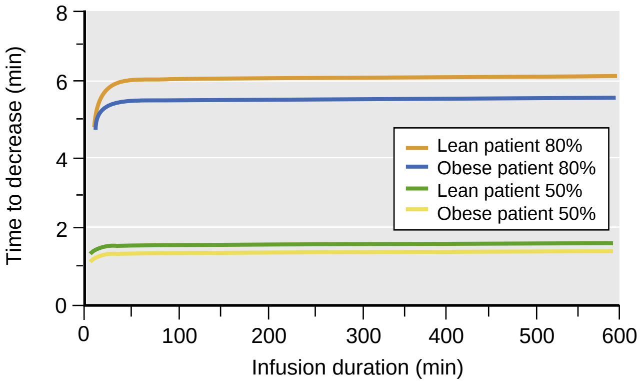


Fig. 24.23 A computer simulation of the context-sensitive half-times (50% decrement times) and 80% decrement times of remifentanil in obese vs. lean subjects. In clinical terms, the curves are not grossly different in obese and lean subjects. (From Egan TD, Huizinga B, Gupta SK, et al. Remifentanil pharmacokinetics in obese versus lean patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:562–573.)

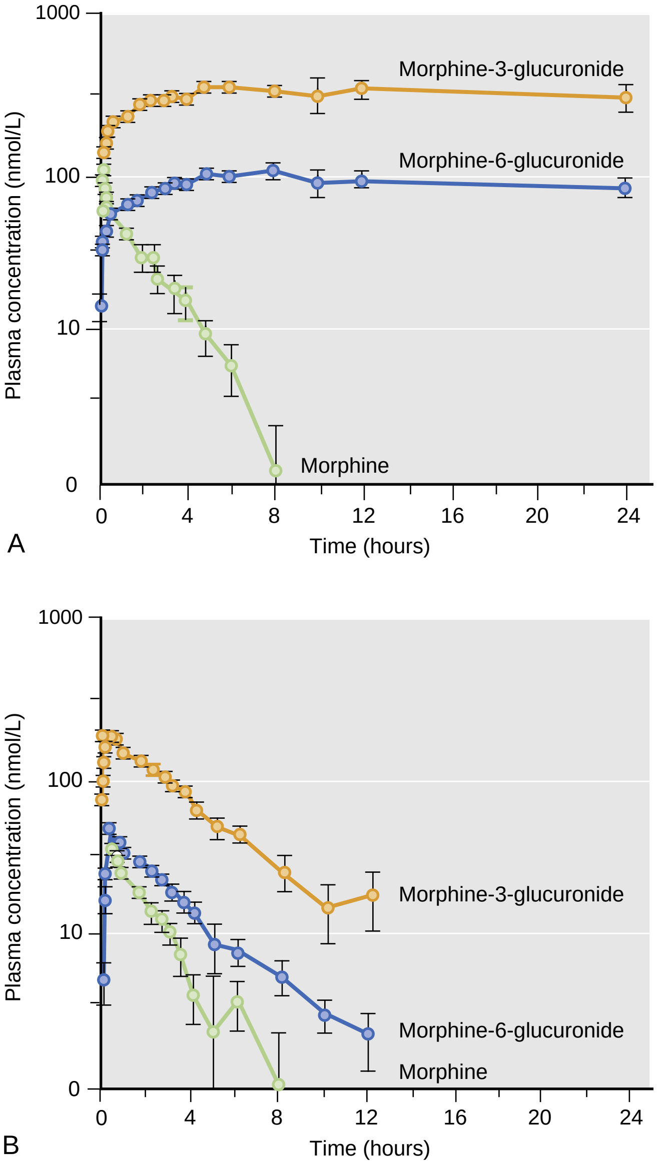


Fig. 24.24 Effect of renal failure on pharmacokinetics of morphine. The graphs show the time-dependent change of the serum concentration of morphine and its metabolite in patients of renal failure (A) and in patients with normal renal function (B) who received 0.1 mg/kg morphine intravenously. (From Osborne R, Joel S, Grebenik K, et al. The pharmacokinetics of morphine and morphine glucuronides in kidney failure. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1993;54:158–167.)

is perhaps more easily estimated by the clinician, is probably an acceptable alternative of lean body mass. Because obesity and obesity-associated disease have increased and continue to do so, obese patients will frequently present for anesthesia and operations. Understanding the influence of obesity on the disposition of opioids is an important question in contemporary anesthesia practice. In response, new pharmacokinetic models incorporating the influence of body mass have been recently reported.[439,440]

Renal Failure

Renal failure has implications of major clinical importance with respect to morphine, hydromorphone, and meperidine. For the fentanyl congeners, the clinical importance of renal failure is less marked.

Morphine is an opioid with active metabolites that are dependent on renal clearance mechanisms for elimination. Morphine is principally metabolized by conjugation in the liver, and the water-soluble glucuronides (M3G and M6G) are excreted via kidney. The kidney also plays a role in the conjugation of morphine, accounting for nearly 40% of its metabolism.[441] Patients with renal failure can develop very high levels of M6G and life-threatening respiratory depression (Fig. 24.24).[442] In view of these changes induced by renal failure, morphine is not considered a good choice in patients with severely altered renal clearance mechanisms. There are similar concerns for the use of hydromorphone in the setting of renal dysfunction.

The clinical pharmacology of meperidine is also significantly altered by renal failure. Because normeperidine, the main metabolite of meperidine with analgesic and CNS excitatory effect, is subject to renal excretion, the potential CNS toxicity secondary to normeperidine accumulation is especially a concern in patients in renal failure.

In contrast, the clinical pharmacology of the fentanyl congeners is not grossly altered by renal failure, although a decrease in plasma protein binding may potentially alter the free fraction of the fentanyl class of opioids. In the presence of renal impairment, none of fentanyl, alfentanil, sufentanil, and remifentanil deliver a high active metabolite load, or suffer from significantly prolonged clearance.[443] Neither the pharmacokinetics nor the pharmacodynamics of remifentanil is altered by impaired renal function. Levels of GI-90291 that develop during a remifentanil infusion in patients in renal failure are not likely to produce any clinically significant effects.

HEPATIC FAILURE

Even though the liver is the metabolic organ primarily responsible for opioid biotransformation, the degree of liver failure typically observed in perioperative patients, with the exception of patients undergoing liver transplantation, does not have a major impact on the pharmacokinetics of most opioids. In addition to reduced metabolic capacity (i.e., cytochrome P-450 system and conjugation), liver disease may also lead to reductions in hepatic blood flow, hepatocellular mass, and plasma protein binding. The increase in total body water and the edema of advanced liver disease may alter the distribution characteristics of a drug. Enzyme induction such as observed in early alcoholism can actually increase metabolic capacity of the liver.

Morphine pharmacokinetics is relatively unchanged by developing liver disease, such as liver cirrhosis and hepatic carcinoma, because of the substantial compensatory extrahepatic metabolism of morphine. A reduction in hepatic blood flow would be expected to slow the decline of morphine plasma concentrations. After liver resection, M6G/morphine and M3G/morphine ratios were significantly reduced and circulating morphine concentration was increased mainly due to a lower morphine clearance.[444] In patients with cirrhosis, the metabolism of meperidine is decreased, leading to accumulation of the parent drug and possible CNS depressive effects similar to hepatic encephalopathy. Although the elimination of normeperidine is decreased as well in these patients, the ratio of normeperidine to meperidine is generally low, and the opioid effects of meperidine usually predominate.[445] The disposition of fentanyl and sufentanil appears to be unaffected in liver diseases.[446] Reductions in liver blood flow that result from either liver disease or some other disorder (e.g., shock) can affect the pharmacokinetic parameters of alfentanil, fentanyl, and sufentanil. It was demonstrated that there was a significant decrease in clearance of alfentanil in patients with mild to moderate cirrhosis compared with volunteers from the historical control group.[447] Remifentanil is an opioid whose pharmacokinetics is completely unchanged by liver disease (Fig. 24.25).[448] Its kinetics does not change during the anhepatic phase of orthotopic liver transplantation.[449] It was reported that 0.25 to 0.5 μg/kg/min remifentanil could provide perioperative analgesia without neurological deterioration in a patient suffering from chronic hepatic failure with mild encephalopathy.[450]

In summary, a reduction in renal function may have the greatest effects on morphine due to a decrease in capacity for extrahepatic glucuronidation and clearance. Therefore, fentanyl may be a safer choice in renal failure patients due to their lack of active metabolites. In contrast, only under conditions of severe hepatic failure does one observe clinically significant changes in morphine or fentanyl clearance.

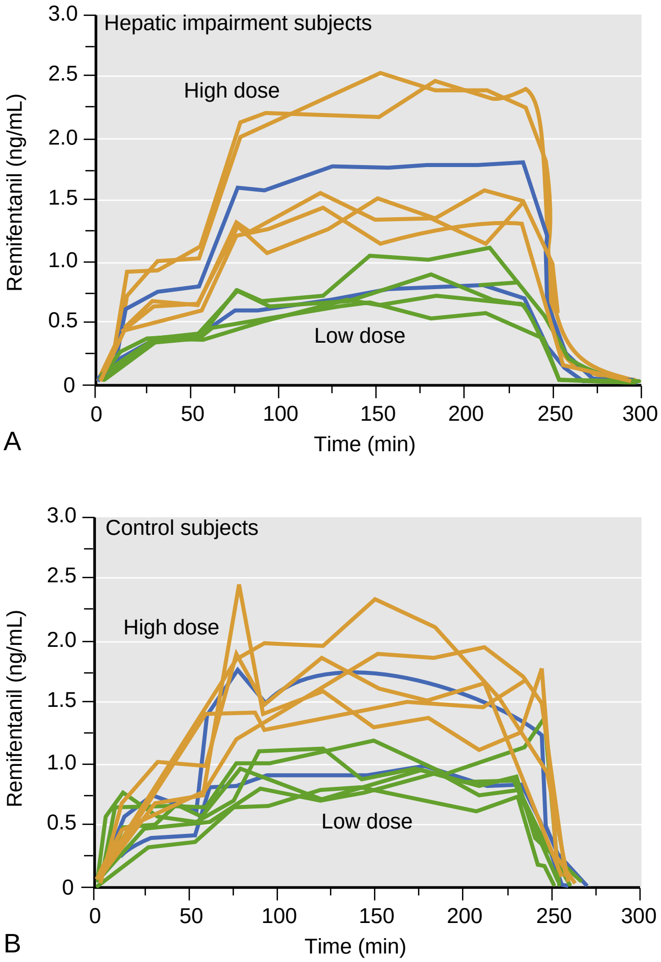


Fig. 24.25 Time-dependent changes of blood concentration of remifentanil in patients with liver disease (A) and in control subjects (B). In the low-dose group, remifentanil was infused at 0.0125 μg/kg/min for 1 hour and then 0.025 μg/kg/min for 3 hours. In the high-dose group, the infusion rate of remifentanil was 0.025 μg/kg/min for 1 hour and then 0.05 μg/kg/min for 3 hours. (From Dershwitz M, Hoke JF, Rosow CE, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of remifentanil in volunteer subjects with severe liver disease. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:812–820.)

Cardiopulmonary Bypass

CPB produces significant alterations in the pharmacokinetics of most opioids. These alterations are a result of CPB-induced modifications in distribution volumes (secondary to priming), changes in acid-base balance, organ blood flow, plasma protein concentrations, and body temperature. The binding of drugs to components of the bypass circuit can also alter opioid pharmacokinetics.

When morphine is given as a premedicant before cardiac anesthesia, its concentrations decline significantly on initiation of CPB. Miller et al. examined the effect of CPB on plasma fentanyl concentration and showed that total concentration of fentanyl in plasma was significantly decreased and the unbound fraction of fentanyl rose on initiation of CPB.[451] The total fentanyl concentration remained relatively stable during bypass until near the end of CPB when the mean total concentration increased, coinciding with rewarming. Population pharmacokinetic modeling applied to concentration-versus-time data from patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting using CPB demonstrated that the effect of CPB on fentanyl pharmacokinetics is clinically insignificant, and that a simple three-compartment model accurately predicts fentanyl concentrations throughout surgery using CPB.[452] Elimination of alfentanil is prolonged by CPB primarily because of increased distribution. It was reported that the volume of distribution in steady state (Vd_{ss}) and the volume of central compartment for alfentanil were significantly greater in the CPB groups, compared to the nonbypass group.[453] However, the elimination half-life (T1/2β) of alfentanil did not differ significantly between the normothermic CPB, hypothermic CPB, and nonbypass groups. Between the normothermic and hypothermic CPB groups no significant differences in Vd_{ss}, clearance, or T1/2β were found. The free fraction of alfentanil during CPB remains constant despite complex changes in binding protein concentrations.[454] In adult patients undergoing elective myocardial revascularization with hypothermic CPB who received continuous infusions of remifentanil 1.0 to 2.0 µg/kg/min, no evidence of accumulation or sequestration was found.[427] Russell et al. reported that normothermic CPB did not significantly affect the clearance of remifentanil, but hypothermic CPB reduced it by an average of 20%, and this was attributed to the effect of temperature on blood and tissue esterase activity.[455] In pediatric patients undergoing CPB for repair of atrial septal defect, there was no change in the Vd_{ss}, the volume of the central compartment, T1/2α, and T1/2β, but clearance values of remifentanil increased 20% in the postbypass period.[456] In patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery with hypothermic CPB receiving continuous infusion of remifentanil, the volume of distribution increased by 86% with institution of CPB and remained increased after CPB, and elimination clearance decreased by 6.37% for each degree from 37°C.[457] Thus, although clearance of remifentanil reduces during CPB, remifentanil remains a very short-acting drug even during CPB.

Acid-Base Changes

It was demonstrated that pH changes influence the protein binding of fentanyl, sufentanil, and alfentanil, resulting in an increase in protein binding with alkalosis and a decrease with acidosis. These effects are greater for fentanyl than sufentanil and sufentanil than alfentanil. Relative changes in the free-drug fraction with pH variation from 7.4 to 7.0 were much higher for fentanyl (52%) when compared with sufentanil (29%) and alfentanil (6%). The pH dependence of plasma protein binding of the opioids significantly correlates with their partition between an organic and aqueous phase, suggesting the hydrophobic character of the interaction between plasma proteins and opioids. Increased ionization decreases the amount of fentanyl available for hepatic metabolism or renal excretion. Intraoperative hyperventilation during surgical procedures can significantly influence the pharmacokinetics of sufentanil resulting in an increased distribution volume and a prolonged elimination half-time.

Thus, both intraoperative respiratory alkalosis and respiratory acidosis, especially in the immediate postoperative period, can prolong and exacerbate opioid-induced respiratory depression.

Hemorrhagic Shock

It is a common practice to administer reduced doses of opioids to patients suffering from hemorrhagic shock to minimize adverse hemodynamic consequences and to prevent prolonged opioid effect. This is at least partially attributable to a pharmacokinetic mechanism. Analysis with pigs receiving fentanyl suggested that central clearance and central- and second-compartment distribution volumes were significantly reduced in hemorrhagic shock, resulting in higher fentanyl concentrations for any given dosages and prolonged context-sensitive half-time (Fig. 24.26).[458] Hemorrhagic shock also altered pharmacokinetics of remifentanil, suggesting that less remifentanil would be required to maintain a target plasma concentration (Fig. 24.27).[459] However, because of its rapid metabolism, changes in context-sensitive half-time are small. In a stepwise hemorrhage model of pigs receiving total intravenous anesthesia with remifentanil (0.5 µg/kg/min) and propofol (6 mg/kg/h after 2 mg/kg bolus), the plasma remifentanil concentration showed a threefold greater increase than that of propofol.[460] Thus, the remifentanil dose should be reduced substantially compared with propofol during total intravenous anesthesia for patients with significant blood loss.

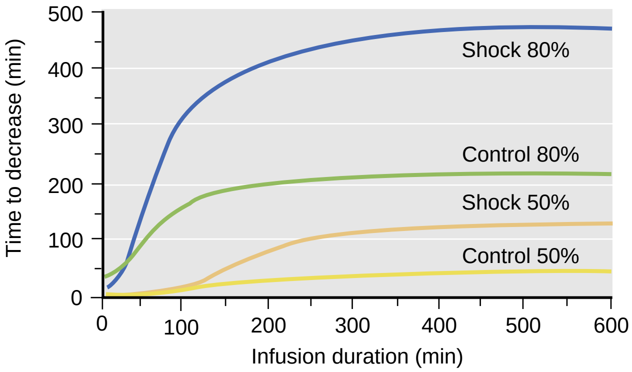


Fig. 24.26 A computer simulation of the context-sensitive half-times (50% decrement times) and 80% decrement times of fentanyl in shock versus control animals. (From Egan TD, Kuramkote S, Gong G, et al. Fentanyl pharmacokinetics in hemorrhagic shock: a porcine model. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:156–166.)

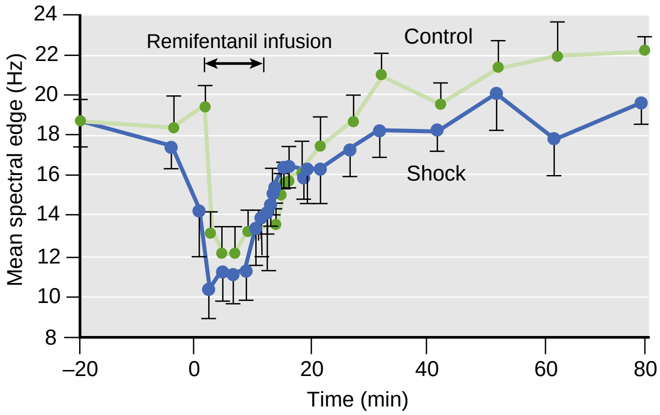


Fig. 24.27 Mean spectral edge changes versus time during remifentanil infusion. The graph indicates spectral edge measurements for control animals and for animals with hemorrhagic shock, respectively. (From Johnson KB, Kern SE, Hamber EA, et al. Influence of hemorrhagic shock on remifentanil: a pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:322–332.)

Genetic Variations in Opioid Metabolism

All opioid drugs are substantially metabolized mainly by cytochrome P450 (CYP) and to a lesser extent by UDP-glucuronosyltransferases (UGTs). Although CYP3A4 is involved in the metabolism of many of the opioids, it is the role of the highly polymorphic CYP2D6 that is of greater clinical interest with respect to the weaker opioids (codeine, dihydrocodeine, oxycodone, hydrocodone, and tramadol), because of the formation of their more potent hydroxyl metabolites (morphine, dihydromorphine, oxymorphone, and hydromorphone), which have about a 30-fold higher affinity for the μ-receptor. The CYP2D6 gene is highly polymorphic, with 100 allelic variants identified, and enzymatic activity of some alleles may be either significantly high or low. In the case of a variant more rapidly producing metabolites of higher affinity there exists the possibility of administering an unintended opioid overdose. This has been especially of concern for the use of codeine-containing products in pediatric populations resulting in changes in prescribing practice. Alternately, variants leading to low production of potent metabolites may result in subtherapeutic outcomes.[461] Finally, UGTs mediate mainly the formation of glucuronides from buprenorphine, codeine, dihydrocodeine, dihydromorphine, hydromorphone, morphine, naloxone, naltrexone, and oxymorphone. UGT2B7 gene is polymorphic, and less than 20 allelic variants have been identified. It is possible that differences in metabolic activity among UGT alleles affect pharmacokinetics of opioids.[461]

Anesthetic Techniques Using Opioids

ANALGESIA

Opioids are frequently used to relieve pain during monitored anesthesia care and regional anesthesia. A single bolus administration of opioids can provide significant pain relief. Morphine is slow in onset and does not allow rapid titration to effect. Meperidine (50-100 mg IV) produces variable degrees of pain relief and is not always effective in patients with severe pain. IV boluses of fentanyl (1-3 μg/kg), alfentanil (10-20 μg/kg), or sufentanil (0.1-0.3 μg/kg) can produce potent and short-lasting analgesia. Infusion rates range from 0.01 to 0.05 μg/kg/min for fentanyl, 0.0015 to 0.01 μg/kg/min for sufentanil, 0.25 to 0.75 μg/kg/min for alfentanil, and 0.05 to 0.25 μg/kg/min for remifentanil. Plasma concentrations of opioids necessary for various purposes are listed in Table 24.8.

Changes in the excitability of central neurons play an important role in establishment of pain. In rats, low doses of fentanyl block the synaptic form of central sensitization in the rat spinal cord in vivo, suggesting the possibility of preemptive analgesia by fentanyl, but higher doses do not have this effect.[462] In fact, dose escalation of fentanyl or other potent opioids may produce a hyperalgesic state—mentioned previously. Reductions in postoperative pain and improved recovery have been attributed to preemptive analgesia with either epidural fentanyl or bupivacaine after radical prostatectomy.[463] In contrast, in patients undergoing transperitoneal tumor nephrectomy, preoperative intravenous administration of a combination of morphine, ketamine, and clonidine failed to exert a clinically relevant effect on postoperative pain.[464] Aida et al. reported that the effectiveness of preemptive analgesia varies according to the type of surgery, and preemptive analgesia with epidural morphine was reliably effective in limb and breast surgeries but ineffective in abdominal surgery.[465] A meta-analysis demonstrated that the results of preemptive analgesia with systemic administration of opioids are equivocal.[466] Thus, whether or not preemptive analgesia can be effectively achieved clinically by the early administration of opioids remains uncertain and may be highly context specific.

Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) with opioids has become a widely accepted technique in which to provide postoperative analgesia, but pharmacokinetic optimization of opioid treatment in acute pain is a complex matter. Without considering effect-site drug concentrations over time, the choice of opioid and the amount, method, and frequency of its administration cannot be optimal. Morphine and fentanyl are often used for PCA therapy, and piritramide is also frequently used for PCA in European countries. A double-blind randomized study demonstrated that effect-site target-controlled remifentanil PCA with a slow and progressive adapted algorithm is feasible in young women undergoing uterine artery embolization.[467] Combination of opioid with other drugs might be a method for improvement of PCA. For thoracic surgery, addition of ketamine to opioid for intravenous PCA was superior to intravenous PCA opioid alone, whereas the effect of added ketamine was not significant for orthopedic or abdominal surgery.[468] Despite the utility of an opioid-based PCA, critical considerations must also be made as to an individual patient's relative risk of opioid-induced respiratory depression with appropriate oversight and monitoring.

TABLE 24.8 Range of Approximate Plasma (or Whole Blood for Remifentanil) Opioid Concentration

	Fentanyl (ng/mL)	Sufentanil (ng/mL)	Alfentanil (ng/mL)	Remifentanil (ng/mL)
Predominant agent	15-30	5-10	400-800	—
Major surgery	4-10	1-3	200-400	2-4
Minor surgery	3-6	0.25-1	50-200	1-3
Spontaneous ventilation	1-3	<0.4	<200	0.3-0.6
Analgesia	1-2	0.2-0.4	50-150	0.2-0.4

From Bailey PL, Egan TD, Stanley TH. Intravenous opioid anesthetics. In: Miller RD, ed. *Anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2015. An imprint of Elsevier Inc,, p. 895.

SEDATION

Critically ill subjects in the intensive care unit (ICU) often experience anxiety and agitation while being exposed to numerous stressful or noxious stimuli. ICU patients generally require a combination of analgesia and sedation to relieve their state of anxiety, improve adaptation to the endotracheal tube, and aid compliance with mechanical ventilation. Morphine, fentanyl, and sufentanil are frequently used intravenous analgesic agents in the ICU. A randomized double-blind study indicated that remifentanil (0.15 µg/kg/min) and morphine (0.75 µg/kg/min) could provide comparable levels of sedation, and the remifentanil-based regimen allowed a more rapid emergence from sedation and facilitated earlier extubation.[469] However, use of ultrapotent opioid agents such as remifentanil may also drive tolerance development and OIH—as discussed previously.

BALANCED ANESTHESIA

Anesthesia with a single agent can often require doses that produce excessive hemodynamic depression. Alternately, "balanced anesthesia" with a balance of agents and techniques can be used to more selectively direct different components of anesthesia (i.e., analgesia, amnesia, muscle relaxation, and abolition of autonomic reflexes with maintenance of homeostasis). For example, inclusion of an opioid as a component of balanced anesthesia can reduce preoperative pain and anxiety, decrease somatic and autonomic responses to airway manipulations, improve hemodynamic stability, lower requirements for inhaled anesthetics, and provide immediate postoperative analgesia. Opioids interact synergistically and markedly reduce the dose of propofol and other sedative-hypnotics required for loss of consciousness and during noxious stimulation such as skin incision (Fig. 24.28).[470] Although the intent of combining opioids with sedative-hypnotics and/or volatile anesthetics is to produce anesthetic conditions with stable hemodynamics prior to as well as after noxious stimulation, this ideal is not always achieved.[471,472]

The timing, rate of administration, and dose of supplemental opioids should also be tailored to the specific condition of the patient and the expected duration of the operation in order to avoid problems. Giving a large dose of any opioid shortly before the end of surgery is very likely to result in postoperative respiratory depression. However, analgesic concentrations of opioids have little effect on the MAC awake of inhaled anesthetics.[473]

The ideal opioid would permit rapid titration, prevent unwanted responses to noxious stimuli, require little supplementation, not depress cardiovascular function, permit the return of adequate spontaneous ventilation in a timely manner, and produce effective postoperative analgesia with minimal side effects. Alfentanil and remifentanil provide the greatest ability to titrate opioids rapidly because of their extremely rapid time to onset (1-2 minutes) of peak effect. Sufentanil, alfentanil, and remifentanil are arguably superior to fentanyl in most respects. Antagonism of opioid action with naloxone for troublesome respiratory depression is required less frequently after alfentanil and sufentanil compared with fentanyl. Pharmacologic antagonism is not required after remifentanil administration because of its short half-life.

Fentanyl

Anesthetic induction is usually achieved by combining a loading dose of fentanyl (2-6 µg/kg) with a sedative-hypnotic, most commonly thiopental or propofol, and a muscle relaxant. Maintenance of anesthesia can be achieved with low concentrations of potent inhaled anesthetics, and additional fentanyl (intermittent boluses of 25-50 µg every 15-30 minutes or a constant infusion of 0.5-5.0 µg/kg/h).

The plasma concentration of fentanyl required for postoperative analgesia was approximately 1.5 ng/mL.[474] MAC of isoflurane at skin incision can be reduced by 50% and 63%

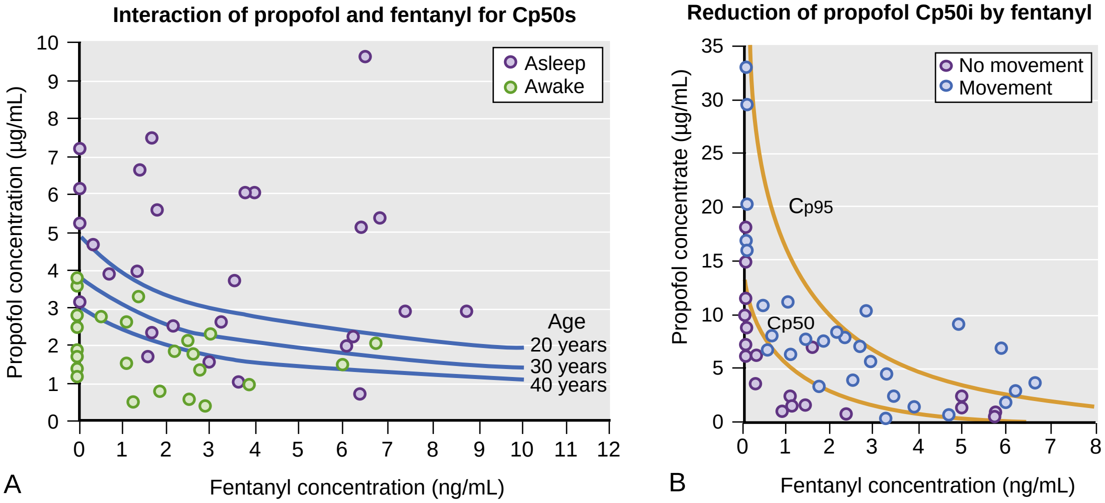


Fig. 24.28 (A) Measured arterial propofol and fentanyl concentrations at which patients did and did not respond to a verbal command at 10 minutes after the initiation of the infusion of these drugs. The *solid lines* represent the modeled concentration of propofol, according to decade of age when combined with the measured fentanyl concentrations, at which 50% of patients did not respond to verbal command (Cp50s). (B) Reduction by increasing concentration of fentanyl of propofol concentration at which 50% or 95% of patients did not move at skin incision (Cp50i and CP95i, respectively). The *solid lines* represent logistic regression solution. (From Smith C, McEwan AI, Jhaveri R, et al. The interaction of fentanyl on the Cp50 of propofol for loss of consciousness and skin incision. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:820–828.)

with plasma fentanyl concentrations of 1.67 and 3.0 ng/mL, respectively.[121] Increasing plasma fentanyl concentrations from 3.0 to 10 ng/mL only further reduced the MAC of isoflurane from 63% to 82%. Intraoperative requirement of propofol for hypnosis is also reduced by fentanyl. In patients undergoing spine fusion, to keep the mean arterial pressure within 15% of the control value when fentanyl was infused to keep the plasma concentration at 0, 1.5, 3.0, and 4.5 ng/mL, average propofol infusion rates were 10.1 ± 2.5 (mean ± SD), 7.5 ± 1.2, 5.7 ± 1.1, and 4.9 ± 1.2 mg/kg/h, respectively.[475]

Opioid pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics vary considerably among patients. It was reported that fentanyl dose based on total body weight may cause overdosing in obese patients.[474] As discussed previously, considerations for dosing based on lean body weight and/or ideal body weight may have merit in this context. Nevertheless, a balanced technique with fentanyl, titrating the opioid in anticipation of various stimuli and patient responses with pharmacokinetic guidelines in mind, will often result in a stable hemodynamic course and rapid awakening in a pain-free patient. Repeated doses or continuous infusions of fentanyl are most likely to result in significant depression of spontaneous ventilation.

Alfentanil

Because alfentanil penetrates the brain so rapidly, equilibration of alfentanil between plasma and CNS can be achieved while plasma alfentanil levels are relatively low compared with sufentanil and fentanyl. This property explains how low doses (10-30 μg/kg) of alfentanil, administered just before or simultaneously with a sedative-hypnotic, are effective.

Alfentanil (25-50 μg/kg IV), followed by small titrated sleep doses of any sedative-hyponic (e.g., 50-100 mg sodium thiopental), is usually successful in preventing significant hemodynamic stimulation from laryngoscopy and intubation. The optimum dose of alfentanil, coadministered with 2.5 mg/kg propofol, when inserting a classic laryngeal mask airway was 10 μg/kg.[476] Further opioid supplementation can be achieved with an alfentanil infusion (0.5-2.0 μg/kg/min) or intermittent boluses of alfentanil (5-10 μg/kg) for shorter procedures. In balanced anesthetic techniques in which potent inhaled anesthetics are also employed, relatively low plasma alfentanil concentrations (e.g., 29 ng/mL) can reduce the MAC of isoflurane by approximately 50%.[123] The EC50 of alfentanil during propofol anesthesia, in which plasma concentration of propofol was kept at target concentrations of 3 μg/mL, was 92 ng/mL for intubation, 55 ng/mL for skin incision, 84 ng/mL for the opening of the peritoneum, and 66 ± 38 ng/mL for the intraabdominal part of surgery.[477] It was reported that hemodynamic changes induced by propofol might have an important influence on the pharmacokinetics of alfentanil. Propofol (target concentration, 1.5 μg/mL) decreased the elimination clearance of alfentanil by 15%, rapid distribution clearance by 68%, slow distribution clearance by 51%, and lag time by 62%.[478] Alfentanil infusions or repeated doses should be minimized 15 to 30 minutes prior to the end of surgery in order to avoid problematic residual respiratory depression.

Sufentanil

CP_{50} for prevention of hemodynamic responses to laryngoscopy and tracheal intubation was 1.08 ng/mL with a range of 0.73 to 2.55 ng/mL. In combination with propofol for induction of anesthesia in children, bolus administration of sufentanil 0.3 μg/kg can completely abolish the cardiovascular response to tracheal intubation.[479] In healthy normotensive adult patients, a bolus sufentanil 0.1 μg/kg followed by a continuous infusion at 0.08 μg/kg/min for at least 5 minutes proved to be effective for blunting the cardiovascular response to intubation.[480] Maintenance of anesthesia can be achieved with sufentanil (intermittent boluses, 0.1-0.25 μg/kg, or constant infusion, 0.5-1.5 μg/kg/h). The CP_{50} for sufentanil during skin incision (2.08 ± 0.62 ng/mL) is twice as great as that for intubation in unpremedicated patients.[481] CP_{50} value ratios at skin incision for sufentanil, fentanyl, and alfentanil are approximately 1:2:150 and represent different, and probably more accurate, potency ratios than those traditionally published based on drug dose. In patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting, sufentanil greater than 1.25 ± 0.21 ng/mL reduced isoflurane requirements to less than 0.5% through the operation.[482]

Remifentanil

Very short duration of action of remifentanil mandates that an infusion (0.1-1.0 μg/kg/min) be started prior to or soon after a small bolus dose to ensure sustained opioid effect. Maintenance infusion rates of remifentanil range from 0.1 to 1.0 μg/kg/min for balanced anesthesia. Remifentanil can reliably suppress automatic, hemodynamic, and somatic responses to noxious stimulation and allows the most predictable and rapid trouble-free emergence from anesthesia without postoperative respiratory depression. Infusion rates of 0.1 ± 0.05 μg/kg/min should permit the return of spontaneous ventilation and responsiveness with maintenance of analgesia. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study demonstrated that combination of 0.05-0.1 μg/kg/min remifentanil and 2 mg midazolam provided effective sedation and analgesia during outpatient surgical procedures performed under local anesthesia.[483]

Associated with emergence from remifentanil anesthesia, the need for alternative analgesic therapies should be anticipated and administered in a timely fashion. Exposure to high doses of remifentanil may paradoxically reduce the pain threshold after its discontinuation, resulting in postoperative hyperalgesia, which is known to be associated with acute and persistent pain. It was reported that perioperative administration of morphine (0.15 or 0.25 mg/kg IV) or fentanyl (0.15 mg) did not provide entirely adequate immediate postoperative pain control after remifentanil-based anesthesia in major abdominal surgery.[484,485] Administration of ketamine (0.15 mg/kg followed by 2 μg/kg/min) decreased intraoperative remifentanil use during abdominal surgery and postoperative morphine consumption without increasing the incidence of side effects.[486] In children undergoing strabismus surgery, combination of sevoflurane (2.5%) and remifentanil (1 μg/kg followed by 0.1-0.2 μg/kg/min) showed less frequent postoperative vomiting but higher postoperative pain scores compared with fentanyl (2 μg/kg followed by 1 μg/kg every 45 minutes).[487]

Postoperative pain relief with low-dose remifentanil infusion was also reported. After general anesthesia with propofol (75 mg/kg/min) and remifentanil (0.5-1.0 mg/kg/min) for abdominal or thoracic surgery, continuous infusion of remifentanil (0.05 or 0.1 mg/kg/min) provided adequate analgesia.[488]

TOTAL INTRAVENOUS ANESTHESIA

Many different IV anesthetic and analgesic compounds can be employed in a number of combinations to provide TIVA. Most commonly, an opioid is combined with another drug more likely to provide hypnosis and amnesia. For example, combination of alfentanil and propofol can produce desirable TIVA. Alfentanil provides analgesia and hemodynamic stability while blunting responses to noxious stimuli. On the other hand, propofol provides hypnosis and amnesia and is antiemetic. Anesthetic induction with alfentanil (25-50 μg/kg) and propofol (0.5-1.5 mg/kg) followed by infusions of 0.5 to 1.5 μg/kg/min of alfentanil and 80 to 120 μg/kg/min of propofol will produce complete anesthesia for a variety of procedures. It is proposed that alfentanil concentrations as low as 85 ng/mL, when combined with a blood propofol concentration of 3.5 μg/mL, can produce both optimal anesthetic conditions and speed of recovery.[489] Stanski and Shafer suggested that bolus doses and initial infusion rates would be 30 μg/kg and 0.35 μg/kg/min for alfentanil and 0.7 mg/kg and 180 μg/kg/min for propofol.[490] Recognizing that these calculations were based on EC_{50} data in patients undergoing only moderately painful procedures, anesthesiologists should adjust these doses accordingly. In patients undergoing ear-nose-throat surgery, TIVA with remifentanil and propofol provided a more rapid respiratory recovery after brief surgical procedures, compared with TIVA with alfentanil and propofol.[491]

Maintenance infusions vary according to patient condition and surgical stimuli. Propofol (75-125 μg/kg/min) and alfentanil (1.0-2.0 μg/kg/min) were initially recommended. Propofol infusions should be terminated 5 to 10 minutes before anticipated patient awakening. Alfentanil infusion rates do not need to be less than 0.25 to 0.5 μg/kg/min until surgery is terminated. A multicenter evaluation demonstrated that in patients of elective inpatient surgery remifentanil 1 μg/kg IV followed by 1.0 μg/kg/min, when combined with propofol 75 μg/kg/min, effectively controlled responses to tracheal intubation.[492] Reduction of remifentanil infusion rate to 0.25-0.40 μg/kg/min after tracheal intubation was also recommended. Although midazolam-opioid combinations can also provide complete anesthesia, midazolam-alfentanil TIVA has not been found to compare favorably to propofol-alfentanil TIVA even with flumazenil reversal of benzodiazepine actions.[493]

TIVA techniques are especially useful when delivery of inhaled agents is compromised. By keeping the goals of balanced anesthesia in mind, combining modern opioids and other drugs, utilizing infusion pumps, and employing an increased understanding of pharmacokinetics, clinicians can successfully perform a variety of TIVA techniques. Approximate opioid doses and infusion rates for TIVA are listed in Table 24.9.

OPIOID-BASED (HIGH-DOSE OPIOID) ANESTHESIA FOR CARDIAC SURGERY

Opioids can be administered as the primary anesthetic in opioid-based anesthetic techniques. High-dose opioid anesthesia was introduced as a stress-free anesthetic method for cardiac surgery. High-dose opioid anesthesia was first performed by the use of morphine, and fentanyl and sufentanil have been recommended later. However, several factors have diminished the popularity of high-dose opioid anesthesia, even in cardiac anesthesia. These include the lack of evidence substantiating any significant outcome benefit associated with the use of large doses of opioids, the added drug costs, and the trend toward "fast-track" approaches to the cardiac patient that can be impeded by large doses of opioids. However, opioids, particularly when administered by continuous infusion, are still among the most effective anesthetics for patients undergoing cardiac or other extensive operations.

TABLE 24.9 Approximate Opioid Loading (Bolus) Doses, Maintenance Infusion Rates, and Additional Maintenance Doses for Total Intravenous Anesthesia

	Loading Dose (μg/kg)	Maintenance Infusion Rate	Additional Boluses
Alfentanil	25-100	0.5-2 μg/kg/min	5-10 μg/kg
Sufentanil	0.25-2	0.5-1.5 μg/kg/h	2.5-10 μg
Fentanyl	4-20	2-10 μg/kg/h	25-100 μg
Remifentanil	1-2	0.1-1.0 μg/kg/min	0.1-1.0 μg/kg

From Bailey PL, Egan TD, Stanley TH. Intravenous opioid anesthetics. In: Miller RD, ed. *Anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2015. An imprint of Elsevier Inc., p. 897.

In an attempt to decrease the costs of cardiac surgery, fast-track programs have become popular. Engoren et al. reported that the more expensive but shorter-acting opioids, sufentanil and remifentanil, produced equally rapid extubation, similar stays, and similar costs to fentanyl, indicating that any of these opioids can be recommended for fast-track cardiac surgery.[494]

Fentanyl

Many different techniques have been used to achieve anesthesia with fentanyl.[495,496] Rapid or slow bolus injections of fentanyl ranging from 5 to 75 μg/kg will establish plasma fentanyl concentrations (10-30 ng/mL) that are often sufficient to provide stable hemodynamics throughout the induction/intubation sequence. Continuous infusions of fentanyl for cardiac surgery range from 0.1 to 1.0 μg/kg/min up to or continuing through CPB. High-dose fentanyl anesthesia has also proved effective and safe for pediatric heart surgery. It was indicated that fentanyl 25 to 50 μg/kg combined with isoflurane 0.2% to 0.4% was sufficient to obtund hemodynamic and stress responses in the pre-CPB phase of open heart surgery in infants and young children (Fig. 24.29).[497] It was reported that 57 out of 59 eligible patients were successfully extubated at 34 ± 14 minutes after termination of fentanyl (total dose, 127 ± 64 μg/kg) with naloxone (total bolus, 3.4 ± 2.6 μg/kg), and recovered fully without ventilatory support under the naloxone infusion, which was terminated at 11 ± 7 hours.[498] These results suggest that naloxone infusion with individual dose titration can facilitate the use of high-dose opioid anesthesia, maintaining the advantage of this anesthesia. It was shown that high-dose fentanyl (50 μg/kg) is not associated

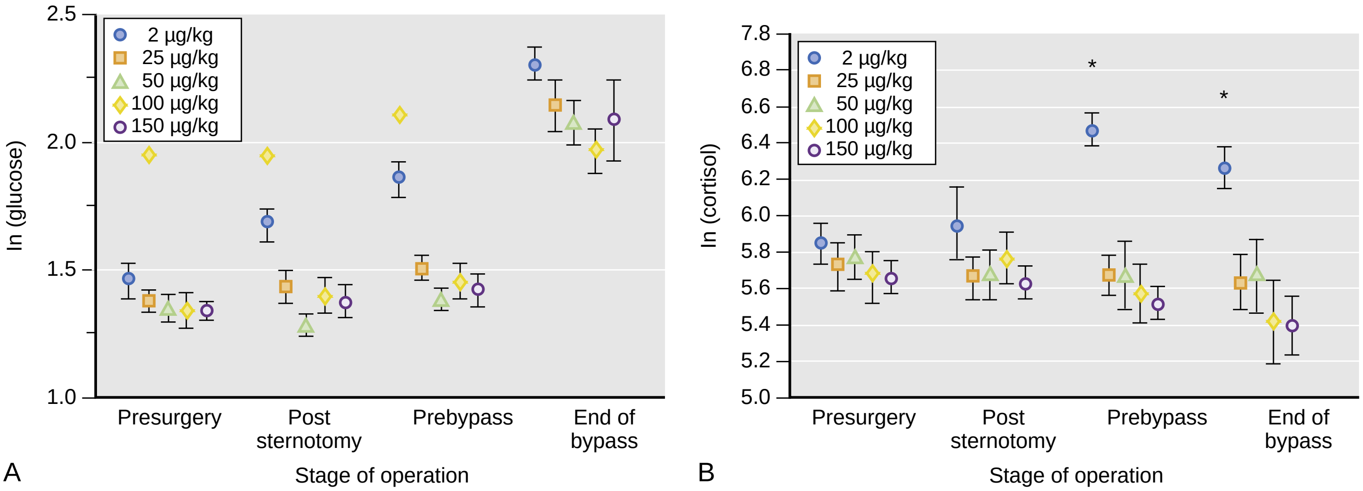


Fig. 24.29 Suppression of stress responses in the prebypass phase of open heart surgery in infants and young children by fentanyl combined with low concentration (0.2%-0.4%) of isoflurane. Mean (± SE) natural logarithm (ln) for glucose (A) or ln for cortisol (B) versus stage of surgery for each dose of fentanyl. The values for the 2 µg/kg group indicated by *asterisks* were significantly higher ($P < .01$) than in the other groups. (From Duncan HP, Cloote A, Weir PM, et al. Reducing stress responses in the pre-bypass phase of open heart surgery in infants and young children: a comparison of different fentanyl doses. *Br J Anaesth.* 2000;84:556–564.)

with a difference in the incidence of postoperative cognitive dysfunction at 3 or 12 months after coronary artery bypass surgery in the elderly, whereas low-dose fentanyl (10 µg/kg) leads to shorter postoperative ventilation times and may be associated with a greater incidence of postoperative cognitive dysfunction 1 week after surgery.[499]

Sufentanil

Advantages of high-dose sufentanil include more rapid induction, better blunting or elimination of hypertensive episodes, greater reduction in left ventricular stroke work, with higher cardiac outputs and more stable hemodynamics intraoperatively and/or postoperatively. Induction doses of sufentanil range from 2 to 20 µg/kg administered as a bolus or infused over 2 to 10 minutes. Total doses of sufentanil employed in high-dose techniques usually range from 15 to 30 µg/kg. However, no additional benefit could be demonstrated in terms of hemodynamic control or EEG signs by increasing the dose of sufentanil from 3 to 15 µg/kg for the induction of anesthesia in patients premedicated with lorazepam.[500] The amount of sufentanil required can be markedly influenced by the supplements employed concomitantly. For patients undergoing coronary artery surgery, induction (0.4 ± 0.2 µg/kg) and total maintenance (2.4 ± 0.8 µg/kg) doses of sufentanil were used in combination with propofol (1.5 ± 1 mg/kg for induction and 32 ± 12 mg/kg total). Interestingly, sufentanil requirements tripled when midazolam was employed instead of propofol.[501] Maintenance of anesthesia, utilizing infusion of sufentanil (1.0-2.0 µg/kg/h), in a balanced anesthetic technique, achieves the advantages of opioid-based anesthesia and avoids prolonged opioid action into the postoperative period.

Remifentanil

Remifentanil has been employed in cardiac anesthesia.[455] It was shown that induction with remifentanil 2 µg/kg with propofol and maintenance with remifentanil at 0.25 or 0.5 µg/kg/min provided appropriate anesthesia for minimally invasive coronary artery bypass surgery with rapid awakening and tracheal extubation (Fig. 24.30).[502] Kazmaier et al. compared high-dose remifentanil (2.0 µg/kg/min) and remifentanil 0.5 µg/kg/min combined with propofol (target-controlled infusion aiming at a plasma concentration of 2.0 µg/mL) in patients undergoing elective coronary artery bypass grafting.[503] It was demonstrated that high-dose remifentanil reduces stroke volume index,

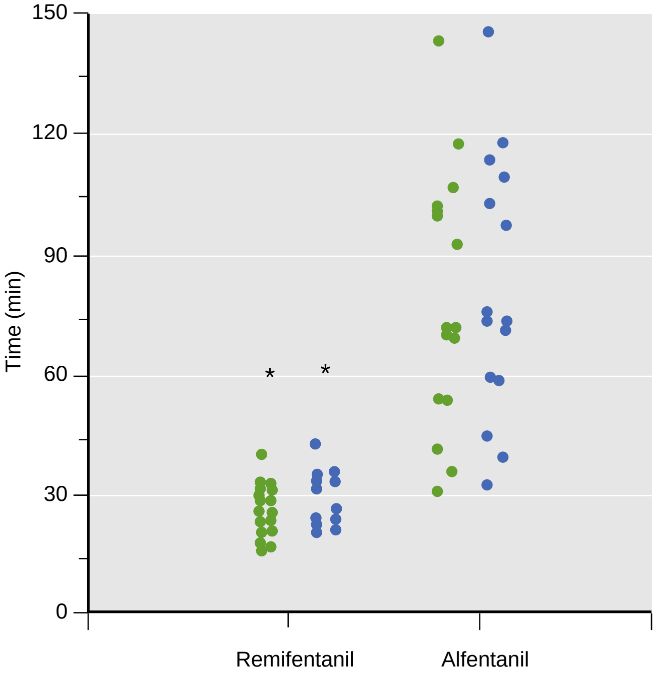


Fig. 24.30 Times to awakening *(green circles)* and tracheal extubation *(blue circles)* in patients who underwent minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass surgery after intravenous anesthesia with remifentanil and propofol or alfentanil and propofol. (From Ahonen J, Olkkola KT, Verkkala K, et al. A comparison of remifentanil and alfentanil for use with propofol in patients undergoing minimally invasive coronary artery bypass surgery. *Anesth Analg.* 2000;90:1269–1274.)

heart rate, mean arterial pressure, myocardial blood flow, and myocardial oxygen uptake and its effects do not differ from those of remifentanil/propofol anesthesia. Geisler et al. examined efficacy and safety of high-dose remifentanil anesthesia in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery.[504] It was demonstrated that continuous infusions of remifentanil 1.0 to 2.0 μg/kg/min in combination with propofol 3 mg/kg/h provided profound suppression of responses to surgical stimuli in the majority of patients, but there was a high incidence of muscle rigidity when remifentanil was used to induce anesthesia. They concluded that there was no apparent advantage in starting the remifentanil infusion rate above 1.0 μg/kg/min and remifentanil is not suitable for use as a sole induction agent.

OTHER APPLICATIONS OF OPIOIDS

Transdermal Therapeutic System

Transdermal drug delivery generally requires high solubility in both water and oil, low molecular weight, high potency, and little or no skin irritation. Fentanyl is available in a transdermal therapeutic system (TTS). Potential advantages of delivering fentanyl transdermally include no first-pass drug metabolism by the liver, improved patient compliance, convenience and comfort, and consistent analgesia. Doses of TTS fentanyl include 25, 50, 75, and 100 μg/h and achieve blood levels ranging from less than 1.0 to 2.0 ng/mL, although significant variability exists. Pharmacokinetics of transdermally-delivered fentanyl (50 μg/h) was compared in 10 young adult (25-38 years) and eight elderly (64-82 years) patients.[505] It was shown that the mean half-time (time for plasma concentrations to double after patch application) was 4.2 hours and 11.1 hours and mean maximum plasma concentrations were 1.9 ng/mL and 1.5 n/mL, in the younger and elderly groups, respectively. There were no differences in the time at which maximum plasma concentrations occurred nor elimination half-life after patch removal. Elevated body temperature and/or application of external warming devices can accelerate either the release of fentanyl from the patch or increase the vascular bed distribution from the subcutaneous tissues. Portenoy et al. demonstrated that steady state serum concentration was obtained by repeated application of TTS fentanyl and the apparent half-life following system removal after repeated application was relatively long presumably due to ongoing absorption from a subcutaneous depot.[506]

Results of clinical trials utilizing TTS fentanyl for postoperative analgesia have demonstrated a high incidence of significant respiratory depression, and this application is not recommended and is contraindicated.[507] In cancer pain, TTS fentanyl offers an interesting alternative to oral morphine, and its effectiveness and tolerability in this indication has been demonstrated by a number of trials.[508] Its usefulness in chronic pain of nonmalignant origin remains to be confirmed in controlled trials just as there is a lack of evidence for the efficacy of chronic oral opioid administration in the treatment of nonmalignant pain. In general, TTS fentanyl produces the same adverse effects as other opioids, mainly sedation, nausea, vomiting, and constipation. In comparison with oral morphine, TTS fentanyl causes fewer gastrointestinal adverse events.

Buprenorphine is suitable for transdermal application because of its properties that facilitate transdermal absorption such as low molecular weight, high lipophilicity, and high potency. Beyond its application in the management of OUD, buprenorphine TDS may be effective for moderate and possibly severe cancer pain.[509] Studies on the use of buprenorphine TTS for severe noncancer pain that is refractory to nonopioid analgesia are emerging. Poulain et al. studied the effect of buprenorphine TDS in patients with cancer pain and demonstrated a reduction in mild–moderate pain scores (from 3.5 ± 2.2 to 1.5 ± 1.5) in the group that received buprenorphine TDS, with worsening of pain scores (from 1.5 ± 1.5 to 2.7 ± 1.9) in the placebo group.[510] The transdermal formulation of buprenorphine in the United States is currently available in 5 dosage strengths: 5, 7.5, 10, 15, and 20 μg/h, and the bioavailability decreases to 15% after a 7-day application.

Iontophoresis

Iontophoresis is a technique by which drug passage through the skin is augmented by an external electric current. Clinically significant doses of morphine and fentanyl can be delivered iontophoretically. The fentanyl hydrochloride iontophoretic transdermal system (fentanyl ITS) is a novel PCA system that has been approved in the USA and Europe for the management of acute, moderate-to-severe postoperative pain.[511] This system allows patients to self-administer preprogrammed doses of fentanyl noninvasively through the use of iontophoretic technology. To assess the efficacy and safety of patient-controlled ITS using fentanyl hydrochloride (40-μg infusion over 10 minutes) compared with a standard intravenous morphine PCA (1-mg bolus every 5 minutes; maximum of 10 mg/h), a prospective randomized controlled parallel-group trial was performed.[512] The results indicated that the fentanyl ITS can provide pain control equivalent to a standard morphine PCA, with a similar incidence of opioid-related adverse events. The fentanyl ITS may offer a number of clinical advantages over existing PCA modalities.[511] Its method of drug delivery avoids the risk of complications from needle-related injuries and infection, and its preprogrammed electronics eliminate the potential for manual programming errors and excessive dosing. In addition, the compact size of the system could enable greater patient mobility following surgery. The patient-controlled ITS with fentanyl has the potential to become a valuable option in the management of acute postoperative pain. Panchal and associates reported that fentanyl ITS was associated with a significantly lower incidence of analgesic gaps, which are defined as periods during which the patient does not have access to analgesia thus contributing to ineffective postoperative pain management, relative to morphine intravenous PCA.[513] Nevertheless, given potential variability in dose delivery and other factors, ITS systems may be restricted to monitored in-hospital facilities.

Transmucosal Drug Delivery

Similar to transdermal drug delivery, transmucosal delivery through the oropharynx and nasopharynx eliminates hepatic first-pass metabolism (drugs are absorbed directly into the systemic circulation) and improves patient comfort, convenience, and compliance.

Buprenorphine, a potent, synthetic morphine analogue with mixed opioid agonist-antagonist properties and a long half-time, is readily absorbed from sublingual mucosal tissues. The portion of the drug that is swallowed is almost completely metabolized by the liver, and only a small fraction can reach the systemic circulation when swallowed. Systemic bioavailability after sublingual buprenorphine is approximately 50% of that following intravenous administration. Sublingual buprenorphine (0.3 mg) was compared with transdermal buprenorphine (5, 10 and 20 μg/h) for osteoarthritis pain in the hips and/or knees and found to provide comparable analgesia.[514] Buccal buprenorphine was introduced and approved by the Food and Drug Administration in 2015 for the management of chronic pain. It is composed of flexible, water-soluble polymeric films that stick to the buccal mucosa and dissolve within a few minutes. The bioavailability of this formulation is 46%–65%, and it is useful in patients who are taking over 80 mg oral morphine sulfate equivalent per day for pain management.[515]

Initial experience with buccal morphine for postoperative analgesia had been promising. However, in female patients undergoing lower abdominal surgical procedures, buccal morphine did not significantly reduce postoperative pethidine consumption, compared with placebo, and all patients receiving buccal morphine reported a taste which reduced its acceptability.[516] Low lipid solubility of morphine makes it an unlikely candidate for effective transmucosal absorption. Opioids with high lipid solubility, such as buprenorphine, fentanyl, and methadone are more effectively absorbed sublingually than those with low lipid solubility such as morphine.

Oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate (OTFC) is a solid dosage form of fentanyl that consists of fentanyl incorporated into a sweetened lozenge on a stick. A portion of fentanyl is absorbed through the oral mucosa, and the rest is swallowed and absorbed through the gastrointestinal tract. The recommended doses range from 5 to 20 μg/kg.[517] OTFC should be administered approximately 30 minutes before surgery (or painful procedure) to obtain peak effect. Plasma concentrations after OTFC administration peak at 2.0 ± 0.5 ng/mL, 15 to 30 minutes after OTFC administration, then decline to less than 1 ng/mL an hour later.[518] Unlike transdermal fentanyl, OTFC leaves no significant depot in the mucosal tissues after it is removed. The systemic bioavailability of OTFC is 50% and reflects both buccal and gastrointestinal absorption. OTFC bioavailability is similar to that of buprenorphine (55%), but much greater than buccal morphine and other opioids with low lipid solubility. Egan et al. demonstrated that the pharmacokinetics of OTFC did not change with repeated dosing and the decline of plasma concentration was as rapid as when administered intravenously (Fig. 24.31).[519] Furthermore, Kharasch et al. reported that the pharmacokinetics of OTFC were not altered in older volunteers (67 ± 6 years), and no change in OTFC dosing in the elderly would appear necessary.[520] Peak fentanyl concentration and clinical effects after OTFC were minimally affected by hepatic/intestinal CYP3A induction by rifampicin and intestinal CYP3A inhibition by grapefruit juice, suggesting that first-pass metabolism minimally influences OTFC bioavailability.[521] Preoperative OTFC was reported to be effective for postoperative analgesia in pediatric tonsillectomy patients.[522] However, OTFC can induce perioperative emesis and respiratory depression. OTFC has also been introduced for treatment of breakthrough cancer pain.[523] OTFC may be ideally suited to treat breakthrough cancer pain because fentanyl is rapidly absorbed from OTFC and patients can easily self-administer OTFC.

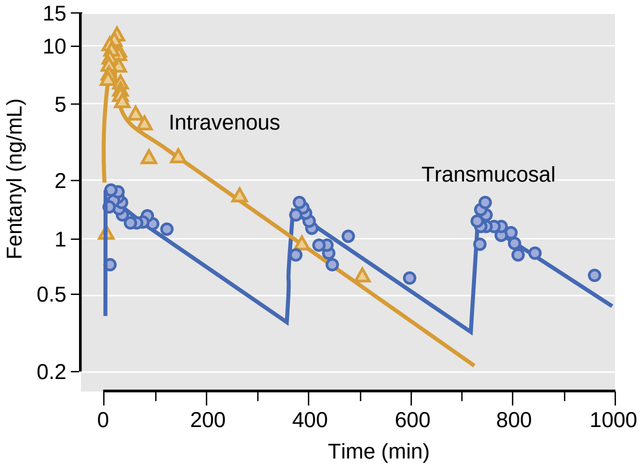


Fig. 24.31 A typical result of time-dependent change in plasma concentration of fentanyl after oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate (OTFC) application and intravenous administration. Three 800-μg doses of OTFC were administered with 6-hour intervals between doses, and fentanyl was infused at a constant rate of 50 μg/minute to a total of 15 μg/kg. (From Egan TD, Sharma A, Ashburn MA, et al. Multiple dose pharmacokinetics of oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:665–673.)

Delivery of opioids through the nasal mucosa has also been investigated. Side effects of intranasal sufentanil in children include reduced ventilatory compliance (chest wall rigidity), hypoxemia, impaired manual ventilation, nausea, and vomiting.[524] Pharmacokinetic studies in volunteers are reported for fentanyl, alfentanil, sufentanil, butorphanol, oxycodone, and buprenorphine.[525] Mean times for achieving maximum serum concentrations vary from 5 to 50 minutes, while bioavailability varies from 46% to 71%. Fentanyl, pethidine, and butorphanol have been studied for postoperative pain. Mean onset times vary from 12 to 22 minutes and times to peak effect from 24 to 60 minutes. Transnasal butorphanol provides superior and more prolonged analgesia than similar doses given IV for postoperative pain after cesarean section. PCA with intranasal fentanyl was demonstrated to be effective for postoperative pain management.[526] There was no difference in the efficacy of intranasal fentanyl (2 μg/kg), intramuscular morphine (0.1 mg/kg), and intravenous morphine (0.1 mg/kg) in controlling postoperative pain and emergence delirium in children undergoing bilateral myringotomy and placement of ventilating tubes.[527] A novel intranasal morphine formulation composed of morphine monohydrate and chitosan, a nontoxic naturally occurring mucoadherent derived from shellfish, was shown to offer a noninvasive alternative to intravenous morphine for postoperative analgesia in patients after third molar extraction.[528] Intranasal administration of remifentanil (4 μg/kg) produces good intubating conditions in 2 to 3 minutes after induction of anesthesia with sevoflurane in children.[529]

Fentanyl (300 μg) inhalation produces low plasma drug level (0.1 ng/mL) after 15 minutes and analgesia that may be disproportionately greater than expected.[530] Inhaled liposome-encapsulated fentanyl was also demonstrated to be a noninvasive route of administration with a rapid increase and prolonged maintenance of plasma fentanyl concentration.[531] Inhalation of nebulized fentanyl citrate significantly improved patient perception of breathing, respiratory rate, and oxygen saturation in terminally ill cancer patients.[532] This inexpensive and readily available treatment may offer substantial relief of end-of-life dyspnea. The advent of specialized and efficient pulmonary drug delivery systems has facilitated the evaluation of inhaled opioids, such as morphine and fentanyl, for management of severe pain associated with surgery or malignant disease.[533] It was shown that remifentanil delivered by inhalation is rapidly absorbed, pharmacologically active, rapidly cleared, and noninjurious to respiratory tissues in rodents.[534]

The rectal mucosa is another site for transmucosal drug delivery. The bioavailability of 30-mg morphine sulfate controlled-release suppository formulation was significantly greater than that of 30-mg oral controlled-release morphine sulfate tablets, which may be the result of partial avoidance of hepatic biotransformation with rectal administration.[535] The hydrogel formulation of rectal morphine may also be useful for premedication and analgesia in pediatric patients.[536]

Oral Controlled-Release Medications

Despite the high first-pass metabolism of opioid analgesics, morphine has been formulated into an oral, sustained-release tablet (MST) and has been evaluated for premedication, postoperative analgesia, and as an analgesic for chronic cancer pain. MST provides unreliable preoperative anxiolysis and postoperative pain relief, possibly because of delayed time to onset of peak effects (3-5 hours), which can be increased by impaired gastric emptying and absorption from the small intestine. In addition, growing evidence has associated chronic use of sustained release formulation of opioids for noncancer pain to increase the risk of fatal overdose without significant benefit over other non-opioid modalities of analgesia. As an analgesic for chronic cancer pain, MST was shown to be an excellent formula.[537]

The relative analgesic potency of single doses of oral controlled-release oxycodone (20 or 40 mg) and oral controlled-release morphine (45 or 90 mg) was compared in a randomized, double-blind trial in women with moderate-to-severe pain following abdominal hysterectomy.[538] Controlled-release oxycodone at doses of 20 mg or 40 mg was comparable with controlled-release morphine at doses of 45 mg or 90 mg, respectively, for total and peak analgesic effects, indicating that oral controlled-release oxycodone was at least twice as potent as oral controlled-release morphine. A randomized, double-blind, crossover trial indicated that controlled-release oxycodone was as safe and effective as controlled-release morphine in the treatment of cancer pain.[539]

Extended-Release Epidural Morphine (DepoDur)

DepoDur is a novel drug that delivers morphine by using DepoFoam technology, a drug-delivery system composed of multivesicular lipid particles containing nonconcentric aqueous chambers that encapsulate the active drug. When the plasma morphine concentration after epidural administration of 5 mg of standard morphine was compared with those of 5 mg of DepoDur, the terminal half-life was comparable, but the peak concentration was significantly smaller and the peak systemic absorption occurs later with DepoDur. Randomized controlled studies demonstrated that 5-15 mg of DepoDur can be a potentially beneficial analgesic after elective cesarean delivery with no significant increases in adverse events for the period from 24 to 48 hours after surgery.[540,541] When compared to single-shot plain epidural morphine, DepoDur has been shown to provide a longer duration of postoperative pain control, and a decrease in the use of postoperative opioid in lower abdominal surgery,[542] total hip arthroplasty,[543] and total knee arthroplasty.[544] The adverse effect profile of DepoDur is similar to plain epidural morphine and includes nausea, vomiting, pruritus, and hypotension. It was reported that a large dose of epidural lidocaine before DepoDur administration alters the pharmacokinetics and drug effects of DepoDur.[545]

Other Opioid Agonists

CODEINE

Codeine (methylmorphine) is 6-7 fold less potent as morphine, has a high oral-parenteral potency ratio (2:3), and a plasma half-life of 2 to 3 hours. Codeine has mild to moderate analgesic but strong cough-suppressant properties after oral administration. Cytochrome P450 2D6 (CYP2D6) is the enzyme responsible for *O*-demethylation of codeine to morphine, and has genetic variants capable of rapid conversion of codeine to morphine in affected children and adults.[546] IV codeine produces profound hypotension and is neither approved nor recommended.

OXYCODONE

Although oxycodone has been widely used in pain management for more than 90 years, its pharmacokinetic properties are still poorly known. Oxycodone is extensively metabolized in humans mainly by hepatic cytochrome P450, and only 10% of oxycodone is excreted in unchanged form in urine. Rifampin, a strong inducer of several drug-metabolizing enzymes, induces cytochrome P450, reduces the plasma concentration of intravenous and oral oxycodone, and modestly attenuates pharmacologic effects of oxycodone.[547] The role of several metabolites in its analgesic activity is still not fully understood.[548] Oxycodone is a potent analgesic after systemic administration, but its analgesic potency is poor after intrathecal administration.[549] It was shown that oxycodone is more potent than morphine for visceral pain relief in intravenous patient-controlled postoperative analgesia after laparoscopic hysterectomy.[550] With respect to pharmacologic effects other than analgesic effects, it was reported that the extent and speed of onset of oxycodone-induced respiratory depression was dose-dependent and greater than an equivalent dose of morphine.[551]

MEPERIDINE (PETHIDINE)

Meperidine is predominantly a μ-opioid receptor agonist that produces pharmacologic effects similar, but not identical, to those of morphine. Meperidine sometimes causes excitation of the CNS, characterized by tremors, muscle twitches and seizures, that are largely due to accumulation of a metabolite, normeperidine. Meperidine has well-known local anesthetic properties.

Unlike morphine, after intravenous injection, first-pass uptake of meperidine by the lungs is approximately 65%. Meperidine is more highly bound to plasma proteins than is morphine, principally (70%) to α_1-acid glycoprotein. As with morphine, a relatively high hepatic extraction ratio results in biotransformation that depends on hepatic blood flow. The major metabolite normeperidine has analgesic activity and is roughly twice as potent as meperidine in producing seizures in animals. The elimination half-life of normeperidine is considerably greater than that of meperidine, and thus repeated doses can easily produce accumulation of this toxic metabolite in patients with renal disease, with the potential for inducing seizures.

Meperidine is frequently used for postoperative pain management. A comparative study demonstrated that morphine, meperidine, and tramadol resulted in equivalent pain scores in intravenous PCA after abdominal hysterectomy.[552] Meperidine is also used to relieve pain and distress in women in labor. Intravenous meperidine (50 mg) and butorphanol (1 mg) significantly reduced pain intensity 15 minutes after injection in women with moderate to severe labor pain, but the analgesia was often inadequate.[553] Meperidine can be administered as PCA in labor.[554] Meperidine (12.5 to 35 mg) is also effective for prevention and treatment of postoperative shivering.[197,555]

HYDROMORPHONE

Hydromorphone is structurally related to morphine but is approximately 5 to 10 times as potent. Because hydromorphone contains a keto-group in position 6 of the benzol ring, an active 6-glucuronate metabolite is not formed like morphine.[556] However, hydromorphone continues to represent an increased risk under conditions of renal insufficiency and failure due to a reduction in clearance and potential accumulation of hydromorphone-3-glucuronate. A bolus administration of hydromorphone reaches its peak effect in approximately 10-20 minutes, whereas an equivalent morphine bolus will require 20 minutes to reach peak. Analgesia after hydromorphone lasts 4 to 5 hours. Hydromorphone has been used for both acute and chronic pain conditions in adults and children.[557] It was reported that hydromorphone PCA provided adequate postoperative analgesia in gynecological surgery patients and there was no systematic difference between morphine and hydromorphone in opioid-related side effects.[558]

LEVORPHANOL

Levorphanol is the only available semisynthetic opioid agonist of the morphinan series with a long half-life. It is 5 times as potent as morphine with an IM/oral potency ratio of 1:2. Levorphanol may have particular utility in patients with chronic pain and who demonstrate morphine tolerance, perhaps because of differences in opioid receptor activity. Analgesia produced by levorphanol is mediated via its interactions with μ-, δ-, and κ-opioid receptors. Levorphanol is also an NMDA receptor antagonist. The long half-life of the drug increases the potential for drug accumulation.[559]

METHADONE

Methadone is a potent μ-opioid receptor agonist, with the longest half-life among the clinically used opioids. By virtue of one of methadone's isomers, it also exerts an inhibitory effect on NMDA receptors, which are implicated in the development of opioid tolerance, hyperalgesia, and chronic pain. Furthermore, methadone inhibits the reuptake of serotonin and norepinephrine, which may play a role in antinociception and mood elevation. Methadone itself is associated with less abuse potential than either morphine or heroin, and treatment with methadone has been considered to be the "gold standard" by which medication-assisted treatment (MAT) approaches are measured, as part of a comprehensive treatment program for OUD.

Methadone (IV) has an equivalent potency but longer duration of action than morphine. The plasma half-life of methadone is very long and variable (13-100 hours). Despite this property, many patients require dosing every 4 to 8 hours to maintain analgesic effects. Its major clinical applications are in the prevention of opioid withdrawal symptoms and in the treatment of chronic pain. It was shown that the same dose of IV methadone (20 mg) that is effective for postoperative pain is also suitable for the induction of anesthesia in combination with etomidate, and that methadone may have the potential for producing histamine release.[560] In patients undergoing posterior spinal fusion surgery, methadone 0.2 mg/kg at the start of surgery reduced postoperative opioid requirements, decreased pain scores, and improved patient satisfaction.[561] However, perioperative use of methadone represents a major clinical challenge, given the tremendous interpatient half-life variability which could contribute to unexpected postoperative respiratory depression.

OXYMORPHONE

Oxymorphone is a semisynthetic opioid agonist that is specific for the μ-opioid receptor and approved to treat both acute and chronic pain. Due to extensive liver metabolism, oral oxymorphone is contraindicated in patients with moderate-to-severe hepatic impairment.[562] Oxymorphone, structurally related to morphine, is almost 10 times as potent, but has a similar duration of action. It was shown that in patients with acute moderate-to-severe postsurgical pain, oral immediate-release oxymorphone 10, 20, or 30 mg provided significant dose-related pain relief compared with placebo, and this relief was maintained over several days with a safety profile comparable to that of immediate-release oxycodone.[563]

PIRITRAMIDE

Piritramide, a synthetic opioid structurally related to meperidine acting on the μ-opioid receptor, is often used for postoperative analgesia in several Eupropean[564] countries. Lack of hemodynamic effects and less side effects reported in early work made piritramide more suitable for postoperative pain control compared with other potent opioids.

Its relative analgesic potency compared with morphine is approximately 0.7. Intramuscular bolus injections of 7.5 to 15 mg were considered to be adequate for approximately 4 to 6 hours.[564] Pharmacokinetic analysis showed that piritramide is distributed extensively and eliminated slowly, and recommended for intermittent bolus administration.[565] A randomized controlled trial showed that intravenous PCA with piritramide can produce pain management as satisfactory as oral oxycodone after cesarean section.[566] It was also demonstrated that piritramide is at least as effective and as well tolerated as morphine for postoperative analgesia via a PCA system after hysterectomy.[567]

TRAMADOL

Tramadol is a prodrug that is metabolized by CYP2D6 and CYP3A4 to its more potent opioid analgesic metabolites, particularly the *O*-demethylation product M1. There is a significant variability in the efficiency and amount of CYP2D6 enzymes among individuals. Therefore, the large phenotypic variation affects the speed of metabolism and the rate of accumulation or elimination of tramadol.[568]

The action of tramadol to induce analgesia represents the combination of two predominant mechanisms, reuptake inhibition of the noradrenergic serotonergic system and activation of the μ-opioid receptor and to a lesser extent the δ- and κ-opioid receptors.[569] It was suggested that tramadol may also have a direct serotonin-releasing action.[570] Given the analgesic effect of tramadol is only partially reversed by naloxone, its serotonergic and noradrenergic effects likely represent its predominant analgesic action.

Tramadol is onefifth to onetenth as potent as morphine. In rats, tramadol could reduce MAC of isoflurane in a naloxone-sensitive manner.[571] It was shown that intravenously administered tramadol was effective for postthoracotomy pain relief.[572] Analgesic doses of tramadol may produce less respiratory depression in part because of its non-opioid receptor–mediated actions, and have minimal effects on gastrointestinal motor function.[573] Nevertheless, tramadol used as a sole drug cannot be considered the drug of choice after moderately severe painful surgery. The doses needed to relieve pain in 80% of patients are much larger than the usual dose of 50 to 100 mg.[574]

Tramadol added to lidocaine for intravenous regional anesthesia provided a shorter onset time of sensory block.[575] Tramadol added to 1.5% mepivacaine for brachial plexus block enhances the duration of analgesia in a dose-dependent manner with acceptable side effects.[576] Intraarticular tramadol was also used for management and prevention of pain after arthroscopic knee surgery. It was shown that the intraarticular admixture of tramadol 100 mg with 0.25% bupivacaine provides a pronounced prolongation of analgesia compared with either drug alone in patients undergoing arthroscopic knee surgery.[577]

Tramadol has dose- and time-dependent bactericidal activity against *Escherichia coli* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis*, as well as antibacterial activity against *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. The antibacterial properties of tramadol might be useful for reduction of bacterial infection after regional anesthesia.[578]

Coadministration of tramadol with proserotonergic medications can result in a hyperserotonergic state, serotonin syndrome, which can be subacute or chronic, and range from mild to severe. In mild cases, patients are afebrile and may report symptoms of diarrhea, tremor, tachycardia, shivering, diaphoresis, or mydriasis.[579] In severe cases, neuromuscular hyperactivity, autonomic hyperactivity, altered mental state, gastrointestinal symptoms, and even death have been reported. Serotonergic medications that can interact with tramadol include selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors, tricyclic antidepressants, triptans (e.g., sumatriptan), antipsychotics, anticonvulsants, antiparkinsonian agents, cough and cold medications containing dextromethorphan, herbal products containing St. John’s wort, and medications that inhibit the metabolism of serotonin, such as monoamine oxidase inhibitors. Because symptoms of serotonergic and norepinephrine withdrawal are possible upon abrupt cessation of tramadol, gradual tapering or symptomatic support are necessary when tramadol administration is stopped.[568]

MORPHINE-6-GLUCURONIDE

Morphine-6-glucuronide (M6G) is a potent metabolite of morphine. In contrast to morphine, M6G is not metabolized but excreted via the kidneys and exhibits enterohepatic cycling, as it is a substrate for multidrug resistance transporter proteins in the liver and intestines.[580] M6G exhibits a delay in its analgesic effect (blood–effect-site equilibration half-life 4-8 hours), which is partly related to slow passage through the blood-brain barrier and distribution within the brain compartment. M6G can be used as an analgesic in humans. Osborne et al. reported that 0.5 to 4 mg IV of M6G was effective for cancer pain for 2 to 24 hours without nausea and vomiting.[581] M6G 100 μg and 125 μg given intrathecally provided excellent analgesia after total hip replacement, as did intrathecal morphine sulfate 500 μg.[582] In a randomized double-blind study it was shown that M6G has an analgesic effect similar to that of morphine over the first 24 hours postoperatively. However, initial onset of M6G effect may be slower than morphine.[583] M6G has also paradoxically been observed to increase pain sensitivity in mice and humans. The pronociceptive effect of M6G can be shown in knockout mice lacking μ-, κ-, and δ-opioid receptors, and might be due to activation of the NMDA receptors.[584]

Agonist-Antagonist Opioid Compounds

Nalorphine, the first agonist-antagonist opioid, was successfully synthesized by Weijland and Erickson in 1942 and was found to be strongly antagonistic to almost all the properties of morphine. Although nalorphine was found to possess strong analgesic actions, it was unsuitable for clinical uses because of its psychotomimetic effects. Nalorphine was used in lower doses as an opioid antagonist.

Agonist-antagonist opioids are usually produced by alkylation of the piperidine nitrogen and addition of a three-carbon side chain such as a propyl, allyl, or methyl allyl to morphine. Buprenorphine is a partial agonist at the μ-receptor and an antagonist at the κ-receptor.

The other compounds are μ-antagonists and full or partial agonists at the κ-receptors. Agonist-antagonist opioids are less prone (but not immune) to abuse because they have analgesic ceiling effects, cause less euphoria, and are associated with less drug-seeking behavior and physical dependence.

Dosing data of these compounds are shown in Table 24.10. The agonist-antagonists compounds depress respiration similarly as morphine, but ceiling effects exist (Table 24.11). Effects on the cardiovascular system differ among these compounds (Table 24.12).

TABLE 24.10 Dosing Data for Agonist-Antagonist Opioids and Morphine

	Equianalgesic IM Dose (mg)	Duration of Analgesia (h)	Oral: IM Efficacy Ratio
Morphine	10	4-5	1:6
Buprenorphine	0.3-0.4	>6	1:2*
Butorphanol	2	3-4	—
Nalbuphine	10	3-6	1:4-5
Pentazocine	40	3	1:3

*Sublingual:IM ratio.
IM, Intramuscular.

TABLE 24.11 Respiratory Depressant Effects of Agonist-Antagonists Compared With Morphine*

Drug	Correlation of Respiratory Depression with Dose
Morphine	Increases proportionally with dose
Buprenorphine	Ceiling effect at 0.15-1.2 mg in adults
Butorphanol	Ceiling effect at 30-60 μg/kg
Nalbuphine	Ceiling effect at 30 mg in adults
Pentazocine	Ceiling effect suggested, but difficult to study because of psychotomimetic effects

*Low or moderate naloxone doses readily reverse the respiratory depressant effects produced by therapeutic doses of all drugs listed, except buprenorphine.
From Zola EM, McLeod DC. Comparative effects and analgesic efficacy of the agonist-antagonist opioids. *Drug Intell Clin Pharm*. 1983;17:411.

TABLE 24.12 Hemodynamic Effects of Agonist-Antagonist Compounds Compared With Morphine

Drug	Cardiac Workload	Blood Pressure	Heart Rate	Pulmonary Artery Pressure
Morphine	↓	↓	=↓	=↓
Buprenorphine	↓	↓	↓	?
Butorphanol	↑	=↑	=	↑
Nalbuphine	↓	=	=↓	=
Pentazocine	↑	↑	↑	↑

From Zola EM, McLeod DC. Comparative effects of analgesic efficacy of the agonist-antagonist opioids. *Drug Intell Clin Pharm*. 1983;17:411.

PENTAZOCINE

Analgesia produced by pentazocine is primarily related to κ-receptor stimulation. Pentazocine is onehalf to onefourth as potent as morphine. Ceilings to both analgesia and respiratory depression occur after 30 to 70 mg of pentazocine. Although the potential for abuse is less than with morphine, prolonged use of pentazocine can lead to physical dependence. Nalorphine-like dysphoric side effects are common, especially after high doses (>60 mg) of pentazocine in the elderly. The dysphoric effects of pentazocine can be reversed with naloxone. Pentazocine depresses myocardial contractility and increases arterial blood pressure, heart rate, systemic vascular resistance, pulmonary artery pressure, and left ventricular work index. Pentazocine also increases blood catecholamine levels. Pentazocine inhibits gastric emptying and gastrointestinal transit in rats, whereas U50488H, a pure κ-agonist, did not significantly inhibit either.[585] Therefore, it might be speculated that pentazocine affects gastrointestinal function through a mechanism other than the opioid receptors.

Pentazocine has been shown to be an effective treatment for pruritus after cesarean delivery under spinal anesthesia with opioids, the incidence of which is ranging from 50% to 100%. A single 15-mg dose of IV pentazocine after delivery was shown to reduce both the incidence and severity of pruritus in women who have received subarachnoid opioids during cesarean delivery.[586] Pentazocine has limited application, because it is associated with a high incidence of PONV, it provides limited analgesia, it partially antagonizes other opioids, and it can produce undesirable cardiovascular and psychotomimetic effects.

BUTORPHANOL

Butorphanol is an agonist at κ-receptors. Its activity at μ-receptors is either antagonistic or partially agonistic. It is 5 to 8 times as potent as morphine and is only available in parenteral form. After IM injection, onset of effect is rapid, and peak analgesia occurs within 1 hour. Whereas duration of action of butorphanol is similar to that of morphine, its plasma half-life is only 2 to 3 hours. Although butorphanol (10 mg IM) causes as much respiratory depression as the same dose of morphine, higher doses reach a ceiling. Side effects after butorphanol include drowsiness, sweating, nausea, and CNS stimulation. In healthy volunteers, butorphanol (0.03 or 0.06 mg/kg IV) produces no or minimal cardiovascular changes. However, in patients with cardiac disease, butorphanol causes significant increases in cardiac index, left ventricular end-diastolic pressure, and pulmonary artery pressure.

Because butorphanol decreases the MAC for enflurane by only a small fraction, it cannot serve like the fentanyl congeners as an anesthetic agent. Butorphanol is subject to less abuse and has less addictive potential than morphine or fentanyl. Acute biliary spasm can occur after butorphanol, but increases in biliary pressure are less than after equipotent doses of fentanyl or morphine. Transnasal butorphanol is effective in relieving migraine and postoperative pain.[587]

BUPRENORPHINE

Buprenorphine is a thebaine derivative, μ-receptor partial agonist, and similar in structure to morphine but approximately 33 times more potent. Whereas fentanyl dissociates rapidly from μ-receptors (half-life of 6.8 minutes), buprenorphine has a higher affinity and takes much longer (half-life of 166 minutes) to dissociate. Onset of action of buprenorphine is slow, its peak effect may not occur until 3 hours, and duration of effect is prolonged (<10 hours). Volume of distribution of buprenorphine is 2.8 L/kg and its clearance is 20 mL/kg/min. Plasma concentrations of the metabolites of buprenorphine, norbuprenorphine, buprenorphine-3-glucuronide, and norbuprenorphine-3-glucuronide may approximate or exceed those of the parent drug. Both glucuronide metabolites are biologically active and may contribute to the overall pharmacology of buprenorphine.[588]

Subjective effects (e.g., euphoria) of buprenorphine are similar to morphine. Buprenorphine produces depression of minute ventilation which leveled off at doses higher than 3.0 μg/kg to about 50% of baseline, in contrast to the case of fentanyl, in which dose-dependent respiratory depression results in apnea at doses higher than 2.9 μg/kg (Fig. 24.32).[589] Buprenorphine has been successfully used for premedication (0.3 mg IM), as the analgesic component in balanced anesthesia (4.5-12 μg/kg), and for postoperative pain control (0.3 mg IM). Buprenorphine, like the other agonist-antagonist compounds, is not acceptable as a sole anesthetic, and its receptor kinetic profile restricts its usefulness if other μ-agonists are used. Opioid withdrawal symptoms develop slowly (5-10 days) after buprenorphine is discontinued following long-term use.

A sublingual combination tablet composed of buprenorphine and naloxone in a fixed 4:1 ratio may provide pain relief in patients with chronic pain with OUD. However, the unique pharmacological profile of buprenorphine/naloxone confers it to be a weak analgesic relative to full μ-receptor agonists. Studies investigating the efficacy of buprenorphine/naloxone or buprenorphine alone for the management of non-malignant pain are ongoing. Possible mechanisms of pain relief by buprenorphine/naloxone therapy in opioid-dependent patients with chronic pain may include reversal of opioid-induced hyperalgesia and improvement in opioid tolerance and OUD.[590]

Acute administration of κ-opioid receptor agonists and antagonists has been shown to produce effects characterized as prodepressive or antidepressant, respectively, in rodent behavioral tests, encouraging further investigation of κ-opioid receptor antagonists as potential antidepressant treatments in humans.[591] In a preliminary clinical study, low doses of buprenorphine, which possess κ-receptor antagonist activity, produced impressive alleviation of depressive symptoms in patients that were considered treatment-resistant within 1 week of initiating administration.[592]

NALBUPHINE

Nalbuphine is an agonist-antagonist opioid that is structurally related to oxymorphone and naloxone, and binds to μ-receptors as well as to κ- and δ-receptors. Nalbuphine acts as an antagonist at the μ-receptor and an agonist at the κ-receptor. Activation of supraspinal and spinal κ-receptors results in limited analgesia, respiratory depression, and sedation. Nalbuphine, like other agonist-antagonist compounds, interferes with the analgesia produced by pure μ-agonists. In rats, coadministration of nalbuphine with morphine dose-dependently blocked the development of morphine tolerance and dependence, without attenuation of antinociceptive effect of morphine.[593] Nalbuphine is only available for parenteral use. Onset of effects is rapid (5-10 minutes), and duration is long (3-6 hours) because of a long plasma elimination half-life (5 hours).

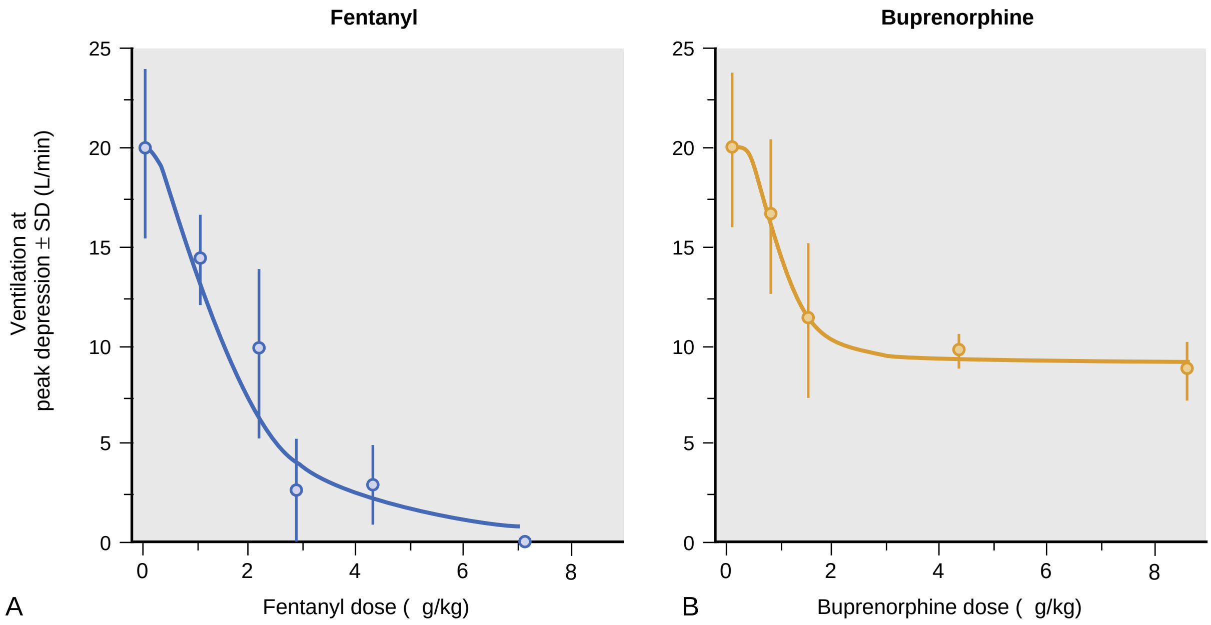


Fig. 24.32 Dose–response relationships for reduction of minute ventilation induced by fentanyl (A) and buprenorphine (B). The response is the peak ventilatory depression at each dose. The *line through the data* is the fit to the Hill equation. Placebo is 0 μg/kg. Data are mean ± standard deviation. (From Dahan A, Yassen A, Bijl H, et al. Comparison of the respiratory effects of intravenous buprenorphine and fentanyl in humans and rats. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:825–834.)

Nalbuphine has been administered as an analgesic supplement for conscious sedation or balanced anesthesia, and as an analgesic for postoperative and chronic pain problems. In patients undergoing myocardial revascularization, continuous infusion of nalbuphine (0.05-0.1 mg/kg/min) and fentanyl (0.15-0.3 μg/kg/min) was compared.[594] It was shown that nalbuphine lacks the ability to attenuate cardiovascular and hormonal responses to tracheal intubation and surgical procedures, and was concluded that continuous infusion of nalbuphine cannot be recommended for anesthesia in patients undergoing myocardial revascularization. For postoperative patient-controlled epidural analgesia, the combination of hydromorphone 0.075 mg/mL and nalbuphine 0.04 mg/mL resulted in lower incidence of nausea and decreased need of bladder catheterization compared with hydromorphone alone.[595] A randomized double-blind controlled study in patients undergoing gynecological operations demonstrated that interaction between morphine and nalbuphine in intravenous PCA admixture is additive, and combination of the two drugs can decrease the incidence of pruritus.[596]

A prospective randomized double-blinded study demonstrated that nalbuphine (4 mg IV) was as effective as ondansetron (4-8 mg IV) for prevention of intrathecal morphine-induced pruritus after cesarean delivery.[597] Some reports showed that nalbuphine provides a rapid and potent antishivering effect similarly as meperidine.[598] However, a quantitative systematic review of randomized controlled trials did not support the conclusion.[197]

DEZOCINE

Dezocine is slightly more potent and acts faster than morphine, with a similar duration. Although no longer used clinically in Western countries, dezocine is gaining popularity in China as an alternative medication for perioperative pain management. A pharmacologic study showed the unique molecular pharmacologic profile of dezocine as a partial μ-receptor agonist, a κ-receptor antagonist, and a norepinephrine and serotonin reuptake inhibitor (*via* norepinephrine transporter and serotonin transporter).[368] Although dezocine was shown to be an effective alternative to fentanyl when administered during outpatient laparoscopy with propofol and N_2O, dezocine was associated with a high incidence of postoperative nausea and a delayed discharge time.[599] In adult patients who had arthroscopic surgery under general anesthesia, dezocine (5 mg IV) and morphine (5 mg IV) were similarly effective for postoperative analgesia and showed similar side effects.[600] A recent report showed that intravenous dezocine 0.1 mg/kg can effectively suppress cough induced by 5 μg/kg fentanyl.[601]

MEPTAZINOL

Meptazinol has been reported to cause minimal respiratory depression because of its selectivity for μ_1-receptors. In patients receiving meptazinol (2.5 mg/kg) with a barbiturate, no cardiovascular changes were observed at tracheal intubation, whereas blood pressure and heart rate were significantly increased in patients receiving fentanyl (5 μg/kg).[602] Side effects (nausea and vomiting) limit its use to relieve severe pain.

Opioid Antagonists

NALOXONE

Clinically, opioid antagonists are used to restore spontaneous ventilation in patients who breathe inadequately after opioid overdoses or opioid anesthesia. In addition, opioid antagonists can reduce or reverse opioid-induced nausea and vomiting, pruritus, urinary retention, rigidity, and biliary spasm associated with numerous therapies employing opioids, such as neuraxial analgesic techniques. It was reported that the potency ratio for naloxone:nalbuphine for antagonism of pruritic effects of epidural morphine was approximately 40:1.[603]

Morphine requirements were significantly less in patients receiving naloxone, suggesting that naloxone enhanced analgesia.[604] Proposed possible mechanisms for this apparent paradoxic effect of naloxone include enhanced release of endogenous opioids and opioid receptor upregulation.

Although naloxone is generally considered to be a pure opioid receptor antagonist, it delays gastric emptying of saline or milk, as does morphine in the rat.[360] Furthermore, high-dose naloxone possesses partial agonistic activity on the μ- and κ-opioid receptors in the cultured cells.[605]

Reversal of Respiratory Depression by Naloxone

In the early 1950s, nalorphine and levallorphan were evaluated as opioid antagonists. They were often found unacceptable because of a high incidence of side effects, as well as incomplete reversal. Naloxone was introduced into clinical practice in the late 1960s. There have been reports of side effects (increases in heart rate and blood pressure) and more serious complications (e.g., pulmonary edema). Initial naloxone dose recommendations ranged from 0.4 to 0.8 mg. Onset of action of IV naloxone is rapid (1-2 minutes), and half-life and duration of effect are short, approximately 30 to 60 minutes. If IV access is not available, naloxone, in doses similar to those given IV, is effectively absorbed after intratracheal administration. Reversal with naloxone is limited by high affinity for and slow dissociation from the μ-opioid receptor of buprenorphine, and depends on the buprenorphine dose and the correct naloxone dose window (Fig. 24.33).[606] Because respiratory depression from buprenorphine may outlast the effects of naloxone boluses or short infusions, a continuous infusion of naloxone may be required to maintain reversal of respiratory depression.[606]

Several mechanisms produce increases in arterial blood pressure, heart rate, and other significant hemodynamic alterations after naloxone reversal of opioids. These include pain, rapid awakening, and sympathetic activation not necessarily due to pain. When patients receiving naloxone for opioid agonist reversal are hypothermic due to intraoperative heat loss, O_2 consumption and minute ventilation can increase two- to threefold.[607] Such metabolic demands also stress the cardiovascular system, increasing cardiac output. In addition, greater degrees of hypercapnia at the time of opioid antagonism will result in greater degrees of cardiovascular stimulation because of associated sympathetic stimulation. Opioid reversal may be particularly hazardous in patients with pheochromocytoma or chromaffin tissue tumors. However, it was also reported that

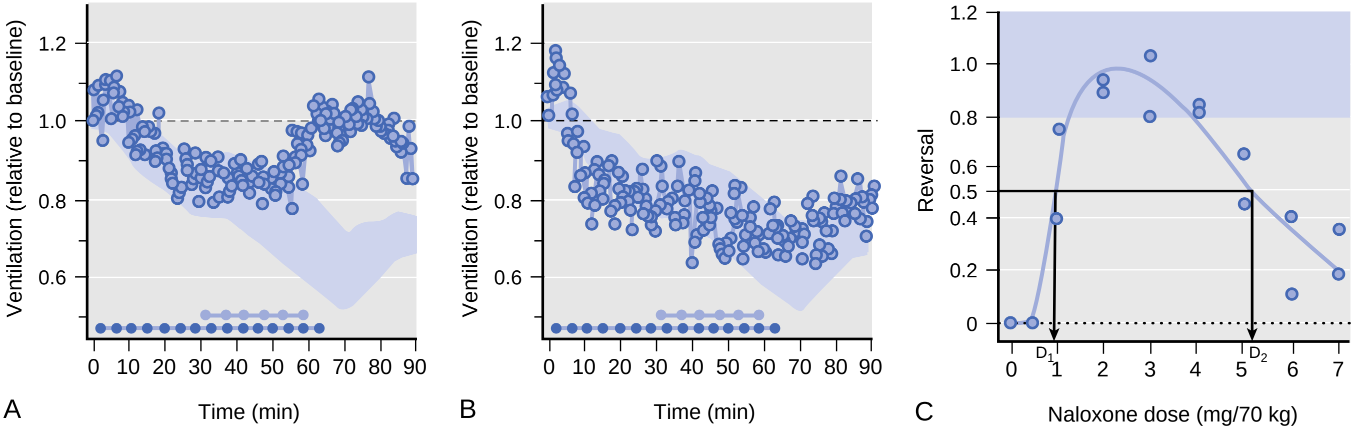


Fig. 24.33 Reversal of buprenorphine-induced respiratory depression with naloxone depends on the correct naloxone dose window. Respiratory depression induced by 0.2 mg buprenorphine was reversed by naloxone 2 mg (A) and 6 mg (B) given over 30 minutes in one subject. Gray field in the background is the result of the placebo group in which saline was infused instead of naloxone. Light gray dots and dark gray dots represent buprenorphine and naloxone infusion, respectively. (C) Influence of 0 (placebo) and 0.5-7 mg naloxone on 0.2 mg intravenous buprenorphine-induced respiratory depression. Reversal was calculated from the naloxone-induced change in ventilation, and it ranges from 0 (effect not different from placebo) to 1 (reversal to predrug baseline level). (From van Dorp E, Yassen A, Sarton E, et al. Naloxone reversal of buprenorphine-induced respiratory depression. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:51–57.)

IV administration of 10 mg naloxone did not significantly change plasma catecholamine concentration and blood pressure in pheochromocytoma patients.[608]

Recurrence of respiratory depression after naloxone is due to the short half-life of naloxone. “Renarcotization” occurs more frequently after the use of naloxone to reverse longer-acting opioids such as morphine. This is commonly not seen in clinical practice because opioid concentrations are often just above the threshold for respiratory depression, and treatment with a single or just a few effective bolus doses of naloxone is sufficient to reverse the respiratory depression induced by most opioids for the short time that the agonist concentration exceeds the respiratory depression threshold.[251] Short-acting opioids such as alfentanil rarely pose a danger of renarcotization, because of a rapid plasma decay curve and weak opioid receptor binding compared with fentanyl and sufentanil. Naloxone, although active at μ-, δ-, and κ-receptors, has greatest affinity for μ-receptors, which mediate most potent opioid effects, including respiratory depression and analgesia. Careful titration of naloxone often can restore adequate spontaneous ventilation without reversal of adequate analgesia.

Other Applications of Naloxone

Low-dose naloxone not only has been shown to block the development of acute opioid tolerance but also to ameliorate undesired opioid-induced side effects. Naloxone infusion 0.25 μg/kg/h prevented the acute opioid tolerance induced by a large dose of remifentanil at 0.30 μg/kg/min, provided a quicker recovery of bowel function, and reduced the length of hospital stay after open colorectal surgery.[609]

Reversal of effects of alcohol, barbiturates, and benzodiazepines by naloxone has been reported. However, it was also reported that naloxone potentiates anxiolytic-like action of benzodiazepines and barbiturates in the rat.[610] It is not advisable to try to reverse the effects of overdose of benzodiazepines and barbiturates by naloxone. Although it was suggested that the μ-opioid receptor is involved in the antinociceptive action of ketamine in mice,[74] naloxone did not affect the action of ketamine on secondary hyperalgesia induced by burn injury in humans.[611]

Evidence indicates that endogenous opioid peptides participate in the control of cardiovascular regulation during hemorrhagic shock. In patients with documented septic shock and resistance to a one-liter fluid challenge, administration of naloxone by initial bolus of 0.03 mg/kg followed by infusion at a rate of 0.2 mg/kg/h significantly increased mean arterial pressure, but did not affect survival.[612] This effect may be due to centrally mediated increases in sympathetic tone and decreases in parasympathetic output and/or antagonism of endogenous opioids. However, the clinical usefulness of naloxone to treat shock remains to be determined and additional randomized clinical trials are needed to assess its usefulness.[613]

One study indicated that opioids can elicit excitatory as well as inhibitory modulation of the action potentials of sensory neurons, and ultra-low doses of naloxone could selectively block the excitatory effect of opioids.[614] A prospective randomized double-blind study demonstrated that addition of an ultra-low dose of naloxone (100 ng) to 34 mL of 1.5% lidocaine solution with or without fentanyl in axillary brachial plexus block prolongs the time to first postoperative pain and motor blockade but also lengthens the onset time.[615]

It has been reported that naloxone may ameliorate the neurologic deficit following an ischemic or traumatic neurologic insult in animals.[616] In humans, a randomized controlled trial demonstrated that naloxone (a bolus of 5.4 mg/kg, followed by infusion at 4.0 mg/kg/h for 23 hours) does not improve neurologic recovery after acute spinal cord injury.[617] However, it was reported that combined use of cerebrospinal fluid drainage and naloxone reduces the risk of paraplegia in thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair.[618] Naloxone may also have a therapeutic role in heat stroke disorders[619] and cholestasis-induced pruritus.[620] Although intravenous naloxone has been claimed to produce pain relief in opioid-resistant central post-stroke pain, a double-blind trial concluded that intravenous naloxone was of no value in alleviating central post-stroke pain.[621]

NALTREXONE

Naltrexone is a μ-, δ-, and κ-opioid receptor antagonist. It is longer acting than naloxone (plasma half-life of 8-12 vs. 0.5-1.5 hours), and it is active when taken orally. A double-blind, placebo-controlled study for patients undergoing cesarean section indicated that naltrexone (6 mg) was an effective oral prophylactic against the pruritus and vomiting associated with intrathecal morphine, but was associated with shorter duration of analgesia.[622]

As a prescribed treatment for opioid dependence, extended-release naltrexone hydrochloride was compared directly with opioid medication treatment, which includes daily buprenorphine hydrochloride with naloxone hydrochloride. It was shown that extended-release naltrexone, administered 380 mg as monthly intramuscular injections, was as effective as buprenorphine-naloxone in maintaining short-term abstinence from heroin and other illicit substances and should be considered as a treatment option for opioid-dependent individuals.[343] Importantly, naltrexone induction requires individuals to be completely off opioids due to the likelihood of severe opioid withdrawal.

NALMEFENE

Nalmefene has a greater preference for μ- than δ- or κ-receptors. Nalmefene is equipotent to naloxone. Nalmefene is long-acting after oral (0.5-3.0 mg/kg) and parenteral (0.2-2.0 mg/kg) administration. Bioavailability after oral administration is 40% to 50%, and peak plasma concentrations are reached in 1 to 2 hours. The mean terminal elimination half-life of nalmefene is 8.5 hours, compared with 1 hour for naloxone. Prophylactic administration of nalmefene significantly decreased the need for antiemetics and antipruritic medications in patients receiving intravenous PCA with morphine.[623]

METHYLNALTREXONE

Methylnaltrexone is the first quaternary ammonium opioid receptor antagonist that does not cross the blood-brain barrier.[352] It can reverse adverse effects of opioid medications mediated by peripheral opioid receptors, while the opioid effects mediated by opioid receptors in the central nervous system, such as analgesia, are not affected. Delayed gastric emptying induced by 0.09 mg/kg morphine could be attenuated by 0.3 mg/kg methylnaltrexone in healthy volunteers.[359] Methylnaltrexone has been shown to be effective for management of opioid-induced constipation. It was reported that subcutaneous methylnaltrexone (0.15 mg/kg) rapidly induced laxation in patients who had received opioids for 2 or more weeks and who had received stable doses of opioids and laxatives for 3 or more days without relief of opioid-induced constipation.[624] It was also reported that methylnaltrexone (12 mg once daily) did not affect opioid-mediated analgesia in patients with chronic noncancer pain suffering from opioid-induced constipation who received more than 50 mg of oral morphine equivalents daily.[625] Because methylnaltrexone does not cross the dura, it might have potential to reverse peripherally mediated side effects of epidural opioids.[626] Randomized double-blind placebo-controlled studies have shown effectiveness of methylnaltrexone and alvimopan, another peripherally acting opioid receptor antagonist, in management of postoperative ileus, a transient cessation of coordinate bowel function after surgery.[352]

NALOXEGOL

Methylnaltrexone is restricted by the need for subcutaneous administration and is approved only for treatment of opioid-induced constipation in patients with advanced medical illness. Naloxegol, an oral peripherally acting μ-opioid antagonist, is a pegylated derivative of naloxone. Pegylation confers substrate properties for P-glycoprotein transporter and thus limits the ability of naloxegol to cross the blood–brain barrier. A double-blind study in outpatients with noncancer pain and opioid-induced constipation demonstrated that a daily dose of 12.5 mg or 25 mg naloxegol improved bowel movement, as compared with placebo, without changing pain scores and daily opioid dose.[627]

Drug Interactions With Opioids

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

Opioids are frequently combined with other anesthetic agents to produce optimal anesthetic conditions. Many drugs concomitantly administered for anesthesia can interact each other. Although some of these interactions are intentionally sought, others are unwanted and adverse. There are three general types of mechanisms of drug interactions—pharmaceutical, pharmacokinetic, and pharmacodynamic.[628]

Pharmaceutical interactions are chemical in nature, as illustrated when an alkaline solution of thiopental and an acidic solution of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants precipitate when simultaneously administered via IV.

Pharmacokinetic interactions occur when the administration of one agent alters the pharmacokinetics or disposition of another. Hemodynamic changes induced by one agent can affect pharmacokinetic behavior of the other agent. Sufentanil, which has a greater hepatic extraction ratio than alfentanil, is more likely to be affected by decreases in hepatic blood flow. Cimetidine can prolong opioid effects by decreasing hepatic blood flow and/or diminishing hepatic metabolism. Opioid plasma levels also increase in the presence of propofol.[629] Decreased opioid metabolism, by the CYP 3A4 isoform of the cytochrome P-450 enzyme responsible for the oxidative metabolism of more than 50 drugs, may also underlie pharmacokinetic interactions. A wide range of chemical compounds, including many drugs, can interact with the cytochrome P-450 system, causing either an increased activity (enzyme induction) or enzyme inhibition (Box 24.5).[628] Alfentanil, but not sufentanil, may have its action prolonged as a result of impaired metabolism in patients receiving erythromycin.[630,631]

Pharmacodynamic interaction between opioids and inhaled anesthetics were assessed with classic MAC reduction evaluations in animals and humans. Although marked synergism between opioids and inhaled anesthetics occurs with analgesic doses of opioids, there is a ceiling effect to MAC reduction by opioids. The pharmacodynamic

BOX 24.5 Drugs That Inhibit or Induce Cytochrome P-450 Enzymes

Inhibitors

- Antibiotics
  - Macrolides
  - Troleandomycin
  - Erythromycin
  - Fluoroquinolones
  - Isoniazid
- Azole antifungal drugs
  - Ketoconazole
  - Itraconazole
- Calcium entry blockers
  - Diltiazem
  - Verapamil
- Omeprazole
- Cimetidine
- Propofol
- Grapefruit juice
- Inducers
- Barbiturates
- Antiepileptics
  - Carbamazepine
  - Phenytoin
  - Primidone
- Rifampicin
- Dichloralphenazone
- Ethanol
- Tobacco smoke

From Bovill JG. Adverse drug interactions in anesthesia. *J Clin Anesth.* 1997;9(Supp):3S.

synergism between opioids and sedative-hypnotics such as propofol is profound. Choosing an opioid with a short context-sensitive half-life allows greater doses of that opioid to be administered, along with reduced doses of propofol, without compromising the time for recovery from anesthesia. Thus, the optimal plasma level of propofol is estimated to be approximately 30% less when it is combined with remifentanil instead of alfentanil.[629]

Drug dosing regimens and plasma concentration of opioid and sedative-hypnotics to provide optimal hemodynamic control during a range of noxious stimuli are necessary. However, complicating our understanding of drug interactions is the observation that the same degree of interaction does not apply across different types of stimuli.

SEDATIVE-HYPNOTICS

Benzodiazepines

Alfentanil was found to reduce the midazolam ED50 value for the induction of anesthesia in a dose-dependent fashion. On the contrary, concerning the antinociceptive effect, interaction between these two types of drugs may be less than additive.[632] Midazolam enhanced opioid-induced antinociception at the spinal level but inhibited it at the supraspinal level.[633] Many studies reveal benzodiazepine-opioid interactions for many properties other than analgesia to be synergistic (supra-additive). Both the cardiovascular and respiratory actions of opioids can be significantly altered by the concomitant administration of benzodiazepines.[634] In anesthetized rabbits, fentanyl and midazolam synergistically caused depression of phrenic nerve activity.[635] Combinations of benzodiazepines and opioids, although occasionally preserving ventricular function, can cause significant and occasionally profound decreases in blood pressure, cardiac index, heart rates, and systemic vascular resistances. Fluid loading may attenuate circulatory depression that occurs when benzodiazepines and opioids are combined.

Barbiturates

Barbiturates can potentiate or produce hypotension if a large dose is administered with opioids. Hypotension after barbiturate-opioid combination is due to venodilatation, decreased cardiac filling, myocardial depression, and decreased sympathetic nervous system activity. Reducing induction doses of barbiturates administered concomitantly with opioids is recommended.

Propofol

Administration of propofol-opioid combinations provides unconsciousness and block responses to noxious stimuli. However, when given as an intravenous bolus for induction of anesthesia, propofol can create moderate to severe preintubation hypotension. Propofol-fentanyl and propofol-sufentanil anesthesia for coronary artery bypass surgery may provide acceptable conditions, but mean arterial pressure can decrease to levels that may jeopardize coronary perfusion, especially during the induction of anesthesia. In healthy volunteers, addition of alfentanil (effect-site concentration of 50 or 100 ng/mL) did not affect the changes in the BIS induced by propofol, but blocked BIS increase induced by painful stimuli.[636] In patients undergoing spine fusion, infusion of fentanyl (blood levels at 1.5-4.5 ng/mL) reduced the infusion rate of propofol necessary to keep mean arterial pressure, but delayed spontaneous eye opening and recovery of orientation.[475] In patients undergoing ambulatory gynecologic laparoscopy, administration of fentanyl (25-50 μg IV) at the time of anesthetic induction reduced maintenance propofol requirement, but failed to provide effective postoperative analgesia and increased the need of postoperative use of antiemetics.[637] Pharmacokinetic interaction as well as pharmacodynamic interaction between propofol and opioids has been reported. Target-controlled infusion of alfentanil (target concentration, 80 ng/ml) was shown to increase blood propofol concentration by 17%, and decrease the elimination clearance, the distribution clearance, and the peripheral volume of distribution of propofol.[638]

Etomidate

Etomidate can be combined in low doses with opioids with little loss of cardiovascular stability. In patients scheduled for coronary artery bypass grafting, etomidate (0.25 mg/kg) plus fentanyl (6 μg/kg) resulted in less hypotension after induction and intubation than propofol (1 mg/kg) plus fentanyl (6 μg/kg).[639]

Ketamine

Many studies on combinations of opioids and ketamine, an NMDA receptor antagonist, have been reported to optimize analgesic therapy to a variety of painful conditions. OIH and subsequent opioid tolerance can be prevented by ketamine in rats, suggesting the usefulness of combination of ketamine and opioids for postoperative analgesia. A pharmacologic study suggested that endogenous opioids and μ- and δ-opioid receptors are also involved in ketamine-induced central antinociception but the κ-opioid receptor is not involved in this effect.[640]

In the acute perioperative setting, results vary depending on the clinical context. Combination of ketamine (2.5 or 10 mg IV) and alfentanil (0.25 or 1 mg IV) provided no advantage over a larger dose of either drug alone in relieving pain caused by intradermal capsaicin injection in healthy volunteers.[641] Furthermore, combination of ketamine 1 mg/mL and morphine 1 mg/mL for PCA did not provide benefit to patients undergoing major abdominal surgery.[642] In contrast, Lauretti et al. reported that oral ketamine and transdermal nitroglycerine effectively reduced daily consumption of oral morphine in patients with cancer pain.[643] A prospective randomized double-blind controlled study demonstrated that intraoperative and postoperative administration of ketamine for the first 48 hours after surgery (2 μg/kg/min after a 0.5 mg/kg bolus) improved postoperative analgesia with a significant decrease of morphine consumption.[644] Furthermore, it was reported that a small dose of ketamine and memantine, a long-acting oral NMDA receptor antagonist, was effective in managing intractable pain in an opioid-tolerant patient.[645] Webb et al. reported that small-dose ketamine could be a useful addition to perioperative tramadol administration in patients undergoing abdominal surgery.[646]

INHALED ANESTHETICS

Volatile anesthetics are frequently combined with opioids in order to ensure amnesia and to promote immobility and hemodynamic stability. Clinical trials of opioids supplemented with volatile anesthetics for cardiac surgery demonstrate well-preserved cardiac output and minimal decreases in mean arterial blood pressure.[647] Myocardial ischemia may not, however, always be ameliorated by approaches that combine opioids with potent inhaled agents in spite of apparent “good” hemodynamic control. Some of the potent inhaled anesthetics can increase sympathetic nervous system activity and may increase the risk of myocardial ischemia in the cardiac patient.[648] Prior administration of fentanyl, in doses as low as 1.5 μg/kg, can markedly attenuate such responses. Alfentanil (10 μg/kg) is also effective in attenuating these effects.

MUSCLE RELAXANTS

Pancuronium bromide has been frequently used for muscle relaxation during high-dose opioid anesthesia. The vagolytic action of pancuronium can attenuate opioid-induced bradycardia and support blood pressure. In patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting administered with sufentanil (3-8 μg/kg), pancuronium (120 μg/kg) caused significant increase in mean arterial pressure, heart rate, and cardiac output but did not induce myocardial ischemia.[649] Pancuronium-induced tachycardia was easily and rapidly treated and caused no differences in ischemia or perioperative myocardial infarction. Many factors alter the impact of pancuronium and other muscle relaxants on hemodynamics when combined with opioids: the dose, timing, and rate of administration of each relaxant as well as the premedication, intravascular volume, left ventricular function, and presence of other drugs with autonomic nervous system actions.

Combinations of vecuronium and high doses of opioids may produce negative chronotropic and inotropic effects resulting in decreases in heart rate, cardiac output, and blood pressure, and increases in the need for vasopressor support. In patients scheduled for coronary artery surgery administered with 40 μg/kg sufentanil in combination with vecuronium (0.1 mg/kg), heart rate, mean arterial pressure, and systemic vascular resistance decreased from baseline values after tracheal intubation with neither significant change in cardiac output nor evidence of new myocardial ischemia.[650]

In patients anesthetized with fentanyl 50 μg/kg and scheduled to undergo elective coronary artery bypass grafting, rocuronium 0.6 mg/kg (approximately equivalent to 2 × ED_{95} dose) was associated with changes of only small magnitude in hemodynamic variables, including increases in stroke volume index (+15%) and cardiac index (+11%), and a decrease in pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (−25%).[651] In patients undergoing coronary artery bypass surgery under fentanyl anesthesia, mivacurium 0.15 or 0.2 mg/kg produced decreases in mean arterial pressure and systemic vascular resistance index possibly mediated by histamine release, whereas atracurium (0.5 mg/kg) produced no significant hemodynamic changes.[652]

MONOAMINE OXIDASE INHIBITORS

MAOI can underlie the most serious and potentially fatal drug interaction with opioids. Combination of meperidine and MAOI can induce the serotonin syndrome which is caused by excess serotonin availability in the CNS at the 5-HT_{1A} receptor and characterized by confusion, fever, shivering, diaphoresis, ataxia, hyperreflexia, myoclonus, or diarrhea. The phenylpiperidine series opioids, including meperidine, tramadol, and methadone, appear to be weak serotonin reuptake inhibitors and have all been involved in serotonin toxicity reactions with MAOIs, whereas morphine, codeine, oxycodone, and buprenorphine are known not to be serotonin reuptake inhibitors, and do not precipitate serotonin toxicity with MAOIs.[653] Alfentanil and remifentanil could be used with MAOIs without complications.[654,655]

CALCIUM CHANNEL BLOCKERS

Because opioids can inhibit voltage-dependent Ca^{2+} channel activity through the activation of G proteins, it may be possible that opioid action is potentiated by Ca^{2+} channel blockers. Numerous animal studies and a few clinical studies have documented that opioid-induced analgesia is potentiated by L-type Ca^{2+} channel blockers. However, there is also a report that L-type Ca^{2+} channel blockers do not potentiate morphine analgesia at clinically relevant doses.[656] N-type Ca^{2+} channels are involved in the release of neurotransmitters from sensory neurons in the spinal cord. It was reported that intrathecal administration of a blocker of this channel, ω-conotoxin GVIA, produced antinociception, and interacts synergistically with opioids at the spinal cord level.[657]

MAGNESIUM

Magnesium has been shown to have antinociceptive effects probably due to its antagonistic action on the NMDA receptor. Intravenous administration of magnesium sulfate 50 mg/kg preoperatively and 8 mg/kg/h intraoperatively significantly reduced intra- and postoperative fentanyl requirement.[658] However, passage of magnesium across the blood-brain barrier is limited. Intrathecal administration of fentanyl 25 μg plus magnesium sulfate 50 mg provided significantly prolonged analgesia compared with fentanyl alone, in patients requesting analgesia for labor.[659] It is likely that magnesium can potentiate opioid analgesia by both central and peripheral mechanisms.[660] A randomized, double-blind, prospective study showed that a relatively high dose of remifentanil (0.2 μg/kg/min) enhances periincisional hyperalgesia in patients undergoing thyroidectomy, and intraoperative magnesium sulfate (30 mg/kg at induction followed by 10 mg/kg/h) can prevent remifentanil-induced hyperalgesia.[226]

NONSTEROIDAL ANTIINFLAMMATORY DRUGS

NSAIDs such as ibuprofen, diclofenac, or ketorolac have been perioperatively administered to reduce opioid requirement. It was reported that perioperative administration of diclofenac (75 mg twice daily) reduced morphine consumption and the incidence of adverse effects such as sedation and nausea after total abdominal hysterectomy.[661] In a randomized double-blind trial, 0.1 mg/kg morphine was shown to be superior to 30 mg ketorolac as postoperative pain relief, but adding ketorolac to morphine reduces postoperative opioid requirement and opioid-related side effects in the early postoperative period.[662] Through the reduction of opioid requirements, NSAIDs are thought to help prevent opioid-induced hyperalgesia and/or the development of acute opioid tolerance although direct NSAID-dependent mechanisms are under investigation. A randomized double-blind placebo-controlled study has shown that 8 mg of lornoxicam prevented increase in postoperative morphine consumption induced by intraoperative fentanyl in female patients undergoing abdominal hysterectomy with spinal anesthesia.[663]

ACETAMINOPHEN

Acetaminophen has central analgesic and antipyretic effects that share similarity to those of NSAIDs, but has weak peripheral antiinflammatory action. Acetaminophen has been shown to have significant fentanyl-sparing effects and to reduce side effects when combined with fentanyl in intravenous parent- or nurse-controlled analgesia for postoperative pediatric pain management.[664] On the other hand, a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind study in children who received standard propofol-remifentanil anesthesia undergoing spine surgery showed that intravenously administered acetaminophen 90 mg/kg/day did improve analgesia, but did not diminish oxycodone consumption during 24 hours.[665]

GABAPENTINOIDS

Gabapentinoids, such as gabapentin and pregabalin, structural analogs of γ-aminobutyric acid, bind to the $\alpha_2\delta$ subunit of spinal voltage-gated calcium channel, and produce antihyperalgesic effects in neuropathic and other painful conditions. It was suggested that both pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic interaction between morphine and gabapentin leads to increased analgesic effects.[666] Furthermore, intrathecal administration of gabapentin was shown to prevent the development of opioid tolerance induced by repeated intrathecal injection of morphine.[667] It might be possible that systemic and intrathecal application of gabapentin prevents the development of OIH.[668] Preoperative administration of pregabalin is proposed as a promising way of enhancing postoperative pain control. A randomized, triple-blinded, placebo-controlled study demonstrated that preoperative administration of 300 mg pregabalin in patients undergoing transperitoneal nephrectomy reduces postoperative opioid consumption and decreases the area of mechanical hyperalgesia.[669]

ANTIDEPRESSANTS

Antidepressants are widely used to treat various chronic inflammatory and neuropathic pain conditions. Results in clinical studies were not consistent with respect to interactions between opioids and antidepressants. An isobolographic analysis demonstrated that systemic amitriptyline and morphine synergistically inhibit cutaneous orofacial inflammatory pain in rats.[670] Tricyclic antidepressants may cause respiratory depression in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases, and reduced CO_2 sensitivity has also been reported in patients receiving tricyclic antidepressants. An animal study demonstrated that pretreatment with amitriptyline increases morphine-induced hypercarbia through pharmacodynamic processes, suggesting that morphine doses should be reduced with careful titration, if patients are receiving concomitant treatment with tricyclic antidepressants.[671] It was demonstrated that perioperative administration of duloxetine, a potent selective serotonin and norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor, can reduce morphine requirement after knee replacement surgery.[672]

DIPHENHYDRAMINE

Diphenhydramine, a histamine H_1 receptor antagonist, is used as a sedative, an antipruritic, and an antiemetic agent. When administered alone, it modestly stimulates ventilation by augmenting the interaction of hypoxic and hypercarbic ventilatory drives. It was shown that diphenhydramine counteracts the alfentanil-induced decrease in the slope of the ventilatory response to CO_2.[673]

LOCAL ANESTHETICS

Systemic administration of local anesthetics can significantly reduce pain and perioperative systemic lidocaine can significantly reduce opioid requirements.[674] Curiously, previous evidence suggests that opioid-tolerant patients are less responsive to local anesthetics for postoperative pain management. In a study examining the effect of systemic morphine (seven daily subcutaneous injections of morphine 10 mg/kg) on the potency of lidocaine-induced block of the compound action potential in isolated rat sciatic nerves, it was shown that lidocaine potency was decreased due to the intrinsic changes in the peripheral nerve, and the loss of lidocaine potency remained 35 days after the last morphine injection.[675] Because there may be a decrease in potency of local anesthetics even in patients on moderate doses of opioids, additional study is necessary to better guide the perioperative use of systemic lidocaine.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Gutstein HB. Akil H. In: Hardman JG, Limbird LE, eds. *Goodman and Gilman's the Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001:569.
2. Minami M, Satoh M. *Neurosci Res*. 1995;23:121.
3. Reinscheid RK, et al. *Science*. 1995;270:792.
4. Meunier JC, et al. *Nature*. 1995;377:532.
5. Reuben SS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:55, table of contents.
6. Manglik A, et al. *Nature*. 2012;485:321.
7. Huang W, et al. *Nature*. 2015;524:315.
8. Kourrich S, et al. *Trends Neurosci*. 2012;35:762.
9. Dietis N, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:8.
10. Pasternak GW, et al. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2013;65:1257.
11. Pasternak GW. *Clin J Pain*. 2010;26(suppl 10):S3.
12. Lu Z, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 2015;125:2626.
13. Gomes I, et al. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2016;56:403.
14. Daniels DJ, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci*. 2005;102:19208.
15. Scherrer G, et al. *Cell*. 2009;137:1148.
16. Woolf CJ. *Cell*. 2009;137:987.
17. Lotsch J, et al. *Trends Mol Med*. 2005;11:82.
18. Klepstad P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:1232.
19. Romberg RR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:522.
20. Chou WY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:334.
21. Hwang IC, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 2014;121:825.
22. Haerian BS, et al. *Pharmacogenomics*. 2013;14:813.
23. Kroslak T, et al. *J Neurochem*. 2007;103:77.
24. Mague SD, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci*. 2009;106:10847.
25. Zhang Y, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2005;280:32618.
26. Knapman A, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2015;172:2258.
27. Rakvag TT, et al. *Mol Pain*. 2008;4:64.
28. Candiotti KA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119:1194.
29. Kolesnikov Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:448.
30. De Gregori M, et al. *J Pain*. 2016;17:628.
31. Mogil JS, Pasternak GW. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2001;53:381.
32. Nothacker HP, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:8677.
33. Zadina JE, et al. *Nature*. 1997;386:499.
34. Wang CL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:2123.
35. Chen L, et al. *Neuroscience*. 2015;286:151.
36. Avidor Reiss T, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:21309.
37. Fukuda K, et al. *J Neurochem*. 1996;67:1309.
38. Shoda T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:983.
39. Mestek A, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1995;15:2396.
40. Pei G, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 1995;48:173.
41. Hales TG. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:653.
42. Bull FA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:878.
43. Bohn LM, et al. *Science*. 1999;286:2495.
44. Trapaidze N, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:29279.
45. Gaudriault G, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1997;272:2880.
46. Keith DE, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:19021.
47. Haberstock-Debic H, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2005;25:7847.
48. Hashimoto T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:574.
49. Raehal KM, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2005;314:1195.
50. Manglik A, et al. *Nature*. 2016;537:185.
51. Hill R, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2018;175:2653.
52. Soergel DG, et al. *Pain*. 2014;155:1829.
53. Fields HL, et al. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 1991;14:219.
54. Petrovic P, et al. *Science*. 2002;295:1737.
55. Wager TD, et al. *Science*. 2004;303:1162.
56. Mansour A, et al. *Trends Neurosci*. 1995;18:22.
57. Dogrul A, Seyrek M. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2006;149:498.
58. Matthies BK, Franklin KB. *Pain*. 1992;51:199.
59. Manning BH, et al. *Neuroscience*. 1994;63:289.
60. Manning BH, Mayer DJ. *Pain*. 1995;63:141.
61. Pan ZZ, et al. *Nature*. 1997;389:382.
62. Kimura M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:362.
63. Stein T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:238.
64. Trafton JA, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1999;19:9642.
65. Stein C. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;332:1685.
66. Desroches J, et al. *Neuroscience*. 2014;261:23.
67. Zhang R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:482.
68. Taguchi R, et al. *Brain Res*. 2010;1355:97.
69. Kim HY, et al. *Pain*. 2009;145:332.
70. Becerra L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:208, table of contents.
71. Kieffer BL. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 1999;20:19.
72. Sora I, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:1544.
73. Dahan A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:824.
74. Sarton E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1495, table of contents.
75. Zhu Y, et al. *Neuron*. 1999;24:243.
76. Simonin F, et al. *EMBO J*. 1998;17:886.
77. Koyama T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:744.
78. Fukagawa H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:1032.
79. Rubinstein M, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:3995.
80. Konig M, et al. *Nature*. 1996;383:535.
81. Hung CF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:925.
82. Leffler A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1335.
83. Brau ME, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:147.
84. Wagner 2nd LE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1481.
85. Takada K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1420.
86. Yamakura T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1053.
87. Davis AM, Inturrisi CE. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1999;289:1048.
88. Hahnenkamp K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1531.
89. Guntz E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1235.
90. Wittmann M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:747.
91. Wittmann M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:107.
92. Marincsak R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1890.
93. Minami K, et al. *Arch Pharmacol*. 2015;388:999.
94. Nishi M, et al. *EMBO J*. 1997;16:1858.
95. Koster A, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96:10444.
96. Yamamoto T, Sakashita Y. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:1203.
97. Grisel JE, et al. *Neuroreport*. 1996;7:2125.
98. Pan Z, et al. *Neuron*. 2000;26:515.
99. Witkin JM, et al. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2014;141:283.
100. Ko MC, et al. *Neuropsychopharmacology*. 2009;34:2088.
101. Linz K, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2014;349:535.
102. Dahan A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:697.
103. Williams JP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:998, table of contents.
104. Jadad AR, et al. *Lancet*. 1992;339:1367.
105. Angst MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:22.
106. Angst MS, et al. *Pain*. 2012;153:1397.
107. Kest B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:539.
108. Sarton E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1245; discussion, p 6A.
109. Olofsen E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:130.
110. Sato H, et al. *Mol Pain*. 2013;9:20.
111. Gourlay GK, et al. *Pain*. 1995;61:375.
112. Debon R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:978.
113. Scavone BM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:986.
114. Gupta A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:761.
115. Kapral S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:853.
116. Bouaziz H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:383.
117. Osman NI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:779.
118. Streisand JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:629.
119. Jhaveri R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:253.
120. Michelsen LG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:865.
121. McEwan AI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:864.
122. Katoh T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:398.
123. Westmoreland CL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:23.
124. Brunner MD, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:42.
125. Lang E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:721.
126. Johansen JW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:671.
127. Inagaki Y, Tsuda Y. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:1387.
128. Katoh T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:561.
129. Lysakowski C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:523.

130. Wang LP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:325.
131. Koitabashi T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1530.
132. Kern SE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1373.
133. Oh TK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:156.
134. Bonafide CP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:627.
135. Sivanesan E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:836.
136. Smith MT. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2000;27:524.
137. Johnson SW, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1992;12:483.
138. Welch EB, et al. *J Clin Pharm Ther*. 1994;19:279.
139. Chi OZ, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38:275.
140. Gambus PL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:747.
141. Montandon G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:889.
142. Khodayari-Rostamabad A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:140.
143. Egan TD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:821.
144. Scott JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:34.
145. Noh GJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:921.
146. Langeron O, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:701.
147. Crabb I, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:795.
148. Haenggi M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1728.
149. Kalkman CJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:502.
150. Kawaguchi M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:593.
151. Wright DR, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21:509.
152. Schraag S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:902.
153. Thorogood MC, Armstead WM. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:614.
154. Monitto CL, Kurth CD. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:985.
155. Adler LJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:120.
156. Mayer N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:240.
157. Mayberg TS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:288.
158. Wagner KJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:732.
159. Ostapkovich ND, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:358.
160. Kofke WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:953.
161. Kofke WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1229.
162. Warner DS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:348.
163. Jamali S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:600.
164. Lauer KK, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44:929.
165. Girard F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:194.
166. de Nadal M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:11.
167. Markovitz BP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:71.
168. Takahashi H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:353.
169. Bofetiado DM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:1237.
170. Lim YJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:562.
171. Soonthon Brant V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:49.
172. Tourrel F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:1041.
173. Chen C, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:e1219.
174. Benthuysen JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:438.
175. Coruh B, et al. *Chest*. 2013;143:1145.
176. Vankova ME, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:574.
177. Mets B. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:557.
178. Haber GW, Litman RS. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1532, table of contents.
179. Parkinson SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:743.
180. Gutstein HB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1118.
181. Kofke WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:141.
182. Saboory E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1729, table of contents.
183. Sinz EH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1443.
184. Kofke WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:167.
185. Rollins MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:1037.
186. Knaggs RD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:108.
187. Aissou M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1006.
188. Sabourdin N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:284.
189. Bokoch MP, et al. *Auton Neurosci*. 2015;189:68.
190. Neice AE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:915.
191. Kurz A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:293–299.
192. Ikeda T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:858.
193. Kurz M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:1193.
194. Greif R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:620.
195. Alfonsi P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:102.
196. Tsai YC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1288.
197. Kranke Pet al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:453, table of contents.
198. Nakasuji M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:162.
199. Jones EA, Bergasa NV. *JAMA*. 1992;268:3359.
200. Ko MC, Naughton NN. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:795.
201. Liu XY, et al. *Cell*. 2011;147:447.
202. Paech M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114:469.
203. Borgeat A, Stirnemann HR. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:432.
204. George RB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:174.
205. Prin M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:402.
206. Dunteman E, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 1996;12:255.
207. Ko MC, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2003;305:173.
208. Tamdee D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1606.
209. Morgenweck J, et al. *Neuropharmacology*. 2015;99:600.
210. Colbert S, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1999;54:76.
211. Horta ML, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:796.
212. Sheen MJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1868.
213. Celerier E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:465.
214. Fletcher D, Martinez V. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112:991.
215. Mauermann E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:453.
216. Li X, Clark JD. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:979, table of contents.
217. Yuan Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:473.
218. Li YZ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119:978.
219. Comelon M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116:524.
220. Laulin JP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1263, table of contents.
221. Kissin I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1483.
222. Holtman Jr JR, Wala EP. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:563.
223. Mercieri M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:792.
224. Kong M, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;34:41.
225. Echevarria G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:959.
226. Song JW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:390.
227. Dunbar SA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:154.
228. Troster A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:1016.
229. Aguado D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1160.
230. Koo CH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:1161.
231. Liang DY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1054.
232. Liang DY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1180.
233. Shin SW, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:661.
234. van Gulik L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:616.
235. Voscopoulos C, Lema M. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(suppl 1):i69.
236. Angst MS, Clark JD. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:570.
237. Zhang Z, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:288.
238. Romberg R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:862.
239. Erb TO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:41.
240. Selwyn DA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:274.
241. Hardemark Cedborg AI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:1253.
242. Kim H, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:765.
243. Lin JA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:670, table of contents.
244. Pandey CK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1696, table of contents.
245. Sun L, et al. *Anesthesia*. 2014;28:325.
246. Hung KC, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:4.
247. Kim JE, et al. *Anesthesia*. 2014;28:257.
248. Ambesh SP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:40.
249. Li CC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:444.
250. Lee LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:659.
251. Dahan A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:226.
252. Sarton E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1329.
253. Smart JA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:735.
254. Glass PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1556.
255. Gelberg J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:1028.
256. Krenn H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:432.
257. Funk GD, et al. *J Neurophysiol*. 1993;70:1497.
258. Ren J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1364.
259. Ren J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:424.
260. Stucke AG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:1288.
261. Montandon G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:641.
262. Roozekrans M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:459.
263. Setnik B, et al. *Hum Psychopharmacol*. 2014;29:251.
264. van der Schrier R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:534.
265. Niesters M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:837.
266. Feldman PD, et al. *Brain Res*. 1996;709:331.
267. Keay KA, et al. *Brain Res*. 1997;762:61.
268. Nakae Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:602.
269. Xiao GS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:280.
270. Llobel F, Laorden ML. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:106.
271. Kawakubo A, et al. *J Anesth*. 1999;13:77.
272. Graham MD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1013, table of contents.
273. Duncan DJ, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2007;150:720.
274. Bolliger D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:573.
275. Weber G, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:1071.
276. Lischke V, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1994;38:144.
277. Chang DJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:1056.
278. Kweon TD, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:347.

279. Sharpe MD, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:816.
280. Sharpe MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:63.
281. Sarne Y, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1991;102:696.
282. McIntosh M, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1992;210:37.
283. Lessa MA, Tibirica E. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:815.
284. Schultz JE, et al. *Circ Res*. 1996;78:1100.
285. Zhang Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:371.
286. Zhang Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:918.
287. Li R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:23.
288. Frassdorf J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:934, table of contents.
289. Zhang SZ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:550.
290. Jang Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:243.
291. Weihrauch D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:942, table of contents.
292. Miller LE, et al. *Exp Physiol*. 2015;100:410.
293. McPherson BC, Yao Z. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:1082.
294. Kato R, Foex P. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:608.
295. Kato R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:204.
296. Warltier DC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:253.
297. Blaise GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:535.
298. Moore PG, et al. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2000;27:1028.
299. Lennander O, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;77:399.
300. Arnold RW, et al. *Binocul Vis Strabismus Q*. 2004;19:215.
301. Hahnenkamp K, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2000;10:601.
302. Blunk JA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:364, table of contents.
303. Stefano GB. *J Neuroimmunol*. 1998;83:70.
304. White DA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:29.
305. Sohn JT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:89.
306. Ebert TJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1677.
307. Sohn JT, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:276.
308. Unlugenc H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:65.
309. Ouattara A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:602.
310. Sohn JT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:327.
311. Kaye AD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:118.
312. Kaye AD, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2006;534:159.
313. Charleston C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:156, table of contents.
314. Liu L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:379.
315. Vuong C, et al. *Endocr Rev*. 2010;31:98.
316. Delitala G, et al. *J Endocrinol*. 1994;141:163.
317. Ellis DJ, Steward DJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:812.
318. Philbin DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:5.
319. Myles PS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:805, table of contents.
320. Anand KJ, Hickey PR. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;326:1.
321. Mangano DT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:342.
322. Plunkett JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:785.
323. Nestler EJ, Aghajanian GK. *Science*. 1997;278:58.
324. Chan KW, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1997;319:225.
325. Lim G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:832.
326. Kissin I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:110.
327. Li JY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:1563.
328. Lin CP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:666.
329. Lin CP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:972.
330. Wang Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1733.
331. Narita M, et al. *Neuroscience*. 2006;138:609.
332. Mika J, et al. *Brain Behav Immun*. 2009;23:75.
333. Chia YY, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:872.
334. Vinik HR, Kissin I. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1307.
335. Guignard B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:409.
336. Schraag S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:753.
337. Gustorff B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1223, table of contents.
338. Kim SH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:337.
339. Hayhurst CJ, Durieux ME. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:483.
340. Paronis CA, Woods JH. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1997;282:355.
341. Mitra S, Sinatra RS. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:212.
342. Mehta V, Langford RM. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61:269.
343. Tanum L, et al. *JAMA Psychiatry*. 2017;74:1197.
344. Kienbaum P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1154.
345. Hensel M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:236.
346. Kienbaum P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:346.
347. Clark DJ, Schumacher MA. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:1667.
348. Kuipers PW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1497.
349. Malinovsky JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:456.
350. Rosow CE, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2007;82:48.
351. Terashi T, et al. *Anesthesia*. 2013;27:340.
352. Viscusi ER, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1811.
353. Kojima Y, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1994;268:965.
354. Penagini R, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1996;271:G675.
355. Thorn SE, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:177.
356. Crighton IM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:445.
357. Runkel NS, et al. *Dig Dis Sci*. 1993;38:1530.
358. Hammas B, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:1023.
359. Murphy DB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:765.
360. Asai T, Power I. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:204.
361. McNeill MJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:450.
362. Mori T, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2013;347:91.
363. Thompson DR. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2001;96:1266.
364. Wu SD, et al. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2004;10:2901.
365. Fragen RJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:1561.
366. Yang LQ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1036.
367. Wang Y, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:529.
368. Liu R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:714.
369. Watcha MF, White PF. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:162.
370. Gan TJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1884.
371. Langevin S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1666.
372. Rung GW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:832.
373. Tzeng JI, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:865.
374. Simoneau II , et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:882.
375. Monitto CL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:834.
376. Harnett MJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:764.
377. Lok IH, et al. *Hum Reprod*. 2002;17:2101.
378. Sandner-Kiesling A, Eisenach JC. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:966.
379. Sandner-Kiesling A, Eisenach JC. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:375.
380. Gin T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1167.
381. Ngan Kee WD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:14.
382. Strumper D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1400; discussion, p 5A.
383. Wittels B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:864.
384. Spigset O. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1994;38:94.
385. Doberczak TM, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1991;118:933.
386. McQueen K, Murphy-Oikonen J. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:2468.
387. Edston E, van Hage-Hamsten M. *Allergy*. 1997;52:950.
388. Alexander R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:606.
389. Ng HP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:785.
390. Al-Hashimi M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:80.
391. Gaveriaux-Ruff C, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:6326.
392. Nelson CJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:620.
393. Sacerdote P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1411.
394. Yeager MP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:94.
395. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1334, table of contents.
396. Welters ID, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1677.
397. Yin D, et al. *Nature*. 1999;397:218.
398. Ohara T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1117, table of contents.
399. Hyejin J, et al. *Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol*. 2013;35:264.
400. Zhang Y, et al. *Inflammation*. 2014;37:1654.
401. Inagi T, et al. *J Hosp Infect*. 2015;89:61.
402. Bovill JG. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1524.
403. Lennon FE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:940.
404. Lennon FE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:857.
405. Bortsov AV, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:896.
406. Sekandarzad MW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1697.
407. Singleton PA, et al. *Cancer*. 2015;121:2681.
408. Mahbuba W, Lambert DG. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:821.
409. Blebea J, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2000;32:364–373.
410. Kim JY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:1429.
411. Rook JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:130.
412. Bigliardi PL, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2015;172:501.
413. Stein C, Kuchler S. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2013;34:303.
414. Lotsch J. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1209.
415. Romberg R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:120.
416. Klimas R, Mikus G. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:935.
417. Skarke C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:1394.
418. Teppema LJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:689.
419. Lotsch J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:814.
420. Osborne R, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1990;47:12.
421. Motamed C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:355.
422. Kharasch ED, Thummel KE. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:1033.
423. Klees TM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:550.
424. Janicki PK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;68:311.
425. Boer F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;68:370.
426. Westmoreland CL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:893.
427. Duthie DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:740.
428. Buerkle H, Yaksh TL. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:926.

429. Egan TD. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1995;29:80.
430. Cox EH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:535.
431. Stiller RL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:A381.
432. Lang E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:721.
433. Upton HD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:81.
434. Olkkola KT, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1995;28:385.
435. Munoz HR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:77.
436. Munoz HR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1142.
437. Minto CF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:10.
438. Egan TD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:562.
439. Eleveld DJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:1005.
440. Kim TK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:1019.
441. Mazoit JX, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1990;48:613.
442. Osborne R, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1993;54:158.
443. Murphy EJ. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2005;33:311.
444. Rudin A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1409, table of contents.
445. Danziger LH, et al. *Pharmacotherapy*. 1994;14:235.
446. Tegeder I, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1999;37:17.
447. Baririan N, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2007;46:261.
448. Dershwitz M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:812.
449. Navapurkar VU, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:A382.
450. Dumont L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:265.
451. Miller RS, et al. *J Clin Pharm Ther*. 1997;22:197.
452. Hudson RJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:847.
453. Petros A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:458.
454. Hynynen M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:571.
455. Russell D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79:456.
456. Davis PJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:904.
457. Michelsen LG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1100.
458. Egan TD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:156.
459. Johnson KB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:322.
460. Kurita T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:719.
461. Somogyi AA, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2007;81:429.
462. Benrath J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1545.
463. Gottschalk A, et al. *JAMA*. 1998;279:1076.
464. Holthusen H, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27:249.
465. Aida S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:711.
466. Ong CK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:757, table of contents.
467. Lipszyc M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:724.
468. Carstensen M, Moller AM. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:401.
469. Dahaba AA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:640.
470. Smith C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:820.
471. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:288.
472. Kazama T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:213.
473. Katoh T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:322.
474. Shibutani K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:377.
475. Han T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1365.
476. Yu AL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:684.
477. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:1036; discussion, p 23A.
478. Mertens MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:949.
479. Xue FS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:717.
480. Iannuzzi E, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2004;70:109.
481. Glass PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:A378.
482. Thomson IR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:852.
483. Avramov MN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:1283.
484. Fletcher D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:666.
485. Kochs E, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:169.
486. Guignard B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:103, table of contents.
487. Eltzschig HK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1173, table of contents.
488. Calderon E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:715.
489. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:8.
490. Stanski DR, Shafer SL. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:1.
491. Wuesten R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:211.
492. Hogue Jr CW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:279.
493. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:645.
494. Engoren M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:859.
495. Bell J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:162.
496. Howie MB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:941.
497. Duncan HP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:556.
498. Takahashi M, et al. *J Anesth*. 2004;18:1.
499. Silbert BS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1137.
500. Sareen J, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44:19.
501. Jain U, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:522.
502. Ahonen J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1269.
503. Kazmaier S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:578.
504. Geisler FE, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17:60.
505. Thompson JP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:152.
506. Portenoy RK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:36.
507. Sandler AN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1169.
508. Grond S, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2000;38:59.
509. Schmidt-Hansen M, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015:CD009596.
510. Poulain P, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2008;36:117.
511. Power I. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:4.
512. Viscusi ER, et al. *JAMA*. 2004;291:1333.
513. Panchal SJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1437.
514. James IG, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2010;40:266.
515. Aiyer R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:529.
516. Manara AR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:551.
517. Friesen RH, Lockhart CH. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:46.
518. Streisand JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:223.
519. Egan TD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:665.
520. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:738.
521. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:729.
522. Dsida RM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:66.
523. Mystakidou K, et al. *Drug Deliv*. 2006;13:269.
524. Zedie N, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1996;59:341.
525. Dale O, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46:759.
526. Striebel HW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:548.
527. Hippard HK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:356.
528. Christensen KS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:2018.
529. Verghese ST, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1176.
530. Worsley MH, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1990;45:449.
531. Hung OR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:277.
532. Coyne PJ, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;23:157.
533. Farr SJ, Otulana BA. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev*. 2006;58:1076.
534. Bevans T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:1831.
535. Babul N, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 1992;7:400.
536. Lundeberg S, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:445.
537. Klepstad P, et al. *Pain*. 2003;101:193.
538. Curtis GB, et al. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1999;55:425.
539. Bruera E, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 1998;16:3222.
540. Carvalho B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1150.
541. Carvalho B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:176.
542. Gambling D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1065.
543. Viscusi ER, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1014.
544. Hartrick CT, et al. *Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2006;88:273.
545. Atkinson Ralls L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:251.
546. Caraco Y, et al. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 1996;24:761.
547. Nieminen TH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1371.
548. Lemberg KK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:463, table of contents.
549. Lemberg KK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:801.
550. Lenz H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1279.
551. Chang SH, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:1007.
552. Unlugenc H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:309, table of contents.
553. Nelson KE, Eisenach JC. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1008.
554. Douma MR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:209.
555. Kranke P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:718, table of contents.
556. Felden L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:319.
557. Quigley C, Wiffen P. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2003;25:169.
558. Hong D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1384.
559. Prommer E. *Support Care Cancer*. 2007;15:259.
560. Bowdle TA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1692, table of contents.
561. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:822.
562. Chamberlin KW, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2007;41:1144.
563. Gimbel J, Ahdieh H. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1472, table of contents.
564. Morlion B, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:52.
565. Bouillon T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:7.
566. Dieterich M, et al. *Arch Gynecol Obstet*. 2012;286:859.
567. Dopfmer UR, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2001;18:389.
568. Miotto K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:44.
569. Halfpenny DM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:909.
570. Bamigbade TA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79:352.
571. de Wolff MH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:780.
572. James MF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:87.
573. Wilder Smith CH, Bettiga A. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1997;43:71.
574. Thevenin A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:622, table of contents.
575. Acalovschi I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:209.
576. Robaux S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1172, table of contents.
577. Zeidan A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:292.
578. Tamanai-Shacoori Z, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:524.

579. Boyer EW, Shannon M. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:1112.
580. van Dorp EL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1789.
581. Osborne R, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1992;34:130.
582. Grace D, Fee JP. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:1055.
583. Hanna MH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:815.
584. van Dorp EL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1356.
585. Asai T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80:814.
586. Hirabayashi M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1930.
587. Zacny JP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:931.
588. Brown SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:1251.
589. Dahan A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:825.
590. Chen KY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:1262.
591. Falcon E, et al. *Neuropsychopharmacology*. 2016;41:2344.
592. Nyhuis PW, et al. *J Clin Psychopharmacol*. 2008;28:593.
593. Lee SC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:810.
594. Weiss BM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:521.
595. Parker RK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:757.
596. Yeh YC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:542.
597. Charuluxananan S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1789, table of contents.
598. Wang JJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:686.
599. Ding Y, White PF. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:566.
600. Cohen RI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:533.
601. Sun ZT, et al. *J Anesth*. 2011;25:860.
602. Freye E, Levy JV. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:53.
603. Kendrick WD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:641.
604. Gan TJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1075.
605. Fukuda K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:450.
606. van Dorp E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:51.
607. Just B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:60.
608. Staessen J, et al. *J Cardiovasc Pharmacol*. 1990;15:386.
609. Xiao Y, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2015;59:1194.
610. Belzung C, et al. *Eur J f Pharma*. 2000;394:289.
611. Mikkelsen S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1539.
612. Hackshaw KV, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1990;18:47.
613. Boeuf B, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1910.
614. Crain SM, Shen KF. *Pain*. 2000;84:121.
615. Movafegh A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1679.
616. Benzel EC, et al. *J Spinal Disord*. 1992;5:75.
617. Bracken MB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;322:1405.
618. Acher CW, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1994;19:236; discussion 247.
619. Romanovsky AA, Blatteis CM. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81:2565.
620. Bergasa NV. *Curr Treat Options Gastroenterol*. 2004;7:501.
621. Bainton T, et al. *Pain*. 1992;48:159.
622. Abboud TK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:367.
623. Joshi GP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1007.
624. Thomas J, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:2332.
625. Webster LR, et al. *J Pain Res*. 2015;8:771.
626. Murphy DB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:120.
627. Chey WD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:2387.
628. Bovill JG. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:3S.
629. Vuyk J. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:23S.
630. Bartkowski RR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:260.
631. Bartkowski RR, McDonnell TE. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:566.
632. Schwieger IM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:1060.
633. Luger TJ, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1995;275:153.
634. Bailey PL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:826.
635. Ma D, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42:670.
636. Iselin Chaves IA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:949.
637. Sukhani R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:975.
638. Mertens MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:795.
639. Haessler R, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:173.
640. Pacheco Dda F, et al. *Brain Res*. 2014;1562:69.
641. Sethna NF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1250.
642. Reeves M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:116.
643. Lauretti GR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1528.
644. Zakine J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1856.
645. Grande LA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1380.
646. Webb AR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:912.
647. Searle NR, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:890.
648. Weiskopf RB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1350.
649. Shorten GD, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42:695.
650. Cote D, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38:324.
651. McCoy EP, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:703.
652. Loan PB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:330.
653. Gillman PK. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:434.
654. Ure DS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:414.
655. Beresford BJ, et al. *J Ect*. 2004;20:120.
656. Hasegawa AE, Zacny JP. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:633.
657. Omote K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:636.
658. Koinig H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:206.
659. Buvanendran A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:661, table of contents.
660. Kroin JS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:913.
661. Ng A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:714.
662. Cepeda MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:1225.
663. Xuerong Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:2032.
664. Hong JY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:672.
665. Hiller A, et al. *Spine*. 2012;37:E1225.
666. Eckhardt K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:185.
667. Hansen C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1180, table of contents.
668. Van Elstraete AC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:484.
669. Bornemann-Cimenti H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:845.
670. Luccarini P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:690.
671. Kozer E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1216.
672. Ho KY, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:371.
673. Babenco HD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:642.
674. McKay A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1805.
675. Liu Q, Gold MS. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:755.

References

1. Gutstein HB, Akil H. Opioid analgesics. In: Hardman JG, Limbird LE, eds. *Goodman and Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001:569–619.
2. Minami M, Satoh M. Molecular biology of the opioid receptors: structures, functions and distributions. *Neurosci Res*. 1995;23:121–145.
3. Reinscheid RK, Nothacker HP, Bourson A, et al. Orphanin FQ: a neuropeptide that activates an opioidlike G protein-coupled receptor. *Science*. 1995;270:792–794.
4. Meunier JC, Mollereau C, Toll L, et al. Isolation and structure of the endogenous agonist of opioid receptor-like ORL1 receptor. *Nature*. 1995;377:532–535.
5. Reuben SS, Bhopatkar S, Maciolek H, et al. The preemptive analgesic effect of rofecoxib after ambulatory arthroscopic knee surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:55–59, table of contents.
6. Manglik A, Kruse AC, Kobilka TS, et al. Crystal structure of the micro-opioid receptor bound to a morphinan antagonist. *Nature*. 2012;485:321–326.
7. Huang W, Manglik A, Venkatakrishnan AJ, et al. Structural insights into micro-opioid receptor activation. *Nature*. 2015;524:315–321.
8. Kourrich S, Su TP, Fujimoto M, et al. The sigma-1 receptor: roles in neuronal plasticity and disease. *Trends Neurosci*. 2012;35:762–771.
9. Dietis N, Rowbotham DJ, Lambert DG. Opioid receptor subtypes: fact or artifact? *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:8–18.
10. Pasternak GW, Pan YX. Mu opioids and their receptors: evolution of a concept. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2013;65:1257–1317.
11. Pasternak GW. Molecular insights into mu opioid pharmacology: from the clinic to the bench. *Clin J Pain*. 2010;26(suppl 10):S3–9.
12. Lu Z, Xu J, Rossi GC, et al. Mediation of opioid analgesia by a truncated 6-transmembrane GPCR. *J Clin Invest*. 2015;125:2626–2630.
13. Gomes I, Ayoub MA, Fujita W, et al. G protein-coupled receptor heteromers. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2016;56:403–425.
14. Daniels DJ, Lenard NR, Etienne CL, et al. Opioid-induced tolerance and dependence in mice is modulated by the distance between pharmacophores in a bivalent ligand series. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005;102:19208–19213.
15. Scherrer G, Imamachi N, Cao YQ, et al. Dissociation of the opioid receptor mechanisms that control mechanical and heat pain. *Cell*. 2009;137:1148–1159.
16. Woolf CJ. Mu and delta opioid receptors diverge. *Cell*. 2009;137:987–988.
17. Lotsch J, Geisslinger G. Are mu-opioid receptor polymorphisms important for clinical opioid therapy? *Trends Mol Med*. 2005;11:82–89.
18. Klepstad P, Rakvag TT, Kaasa S, et al. The 118 A > G polymorphism in the human mu-opioid receptor gene may increase morphine requirements in patients with pain caused by malignant disease. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:1232–1239.
19. Romberg RR, Olofsen E, Bijl H, et al. Polymorphism of mu-opioid receptor gene (OPRM1:c.118A>G) does not protect against opioid-induced respiratory depression despite reduced analgesic response. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:522–530.
20. Chou WY, Wang CH, Liu PH, et al. Human opioid receptor A118G polymorphism affects intravenous patient-controlled analgesia morphine consumption after total abdominal hysterectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:334–337.
21. Hwang IC, Park JY, Myung SK, et al. OPRM1 A118G gene variant and postoperative opioid requirement: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:825–834.
22. Haerian BS, Haerian MS. OPRM1 rs1799971 polymorphism and opioid dependence: evidence from a meta-analysis. *Pharmacogenomics*. 2013;14:813–824.
23. Kroslak T, Laforge KS, Gianotti RJ, et al. The single nucleotide polymorphism A118G alters functional properties of the human mu opioid receptor. *J Neurochem*. 2007;103:77–87.
24. Mague SD, Isiegas C, Huang P, et al. Mouse model of OPRM1 (A118G) polymorphism has sex-specific effects on drug-mediated behavior. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2009;106:10847–10852.
25. Zhang Y, Wang D, Johnson AD, et al. Allelic expression imbalance of human mu opioid receptor (OPRM1) caused by variant A118G. *J Biol Chem*. 2005;280:32618–32624.
26. Knapman A, Santiago M, Connor M. A6V polymorphism of the human mu-opioid receptor decreases signalling of morphine and endogenous opioids in vitro. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2015;172:2258–2272.
27. Rakvag TT, Ross JR, Sato H, et al. Genetic variation in the catechol-O-methyltransferase (COMT) gene and morphine requirements in cancer patients with pain. *Mol Pain*. 2008;4:64.
28. Candiotti KA, Yang Z, Buric D, et al. Catechol-o-methyltransferase polymorphisms predict opioid consumption in postoperative pain. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119:1194–1200.
29. Kolesnikov Y, Gabovits B, Levin A, et al. Combined catechol-O-methyltransferase and mu-opioid receptor gene polymorphisms affect morphine postoperative analgesia and central side effects. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:448–453.
30. De Gregori M, Diatchenko L, Ingelmo PM, et al. Human genetic variability contributes to postoperative morphine consumption. *J Pain*. 2016;17:628–636.
31. Mogil JS, Pasternak GW. The molecular and behavioral pharmacology of the orphanin FQ/nociceptin peptide and receptor family. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2001;53:381–415.
32. Nothacker HP, Reinscheid RK, Mansour A, et al. Primary structure and tissue distribution of the orphanin FQ precursor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:8677–8682.
33. Zadina JE, Hackler L, Ge LJ, et al. A potent and selective endogenous agonist for the mu-opiate receptor. *Nature*. 1997;386:499–502.
34. Wang CL, Yang DJ, Yuan BY, et al. Antiallodynic effects of endomorphin-1 and endomorphin-2 in the spared nerve injury model of neuropathic pain in mice. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:2123–2133.
35. Chen L, Wang K, Yang T, et al. Downregulation of spinal endomorphin-2 correlates with mechanical allodynia in a rat model of tibia cancer. *Neuroscience*. 2015;286:151–161.
36. Avidor Reiss T, Nevo I, Levy R, et al. Chronic opioid treatment induces adenylyl cyclase V superactivation. Involvement of Gbeta-gamma. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:21309–21315.
37. Fukuda K, Kato S, Morikawa H, et al. Functional coupling of the delta-, mu-, and kappa-opioid receptors to mitogen-activated protein kinase and arachidonate release in Chinese hamster ovary cells. *J Neurochem*. 1996;67:1309–1316.
38. Shoda T, Fukuda K, Uga H, et al. Activation of mu-opioid receptor induces expression of c-fos and junB via mitogen-activated protein kinase cascade. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:983–989.
39. Mestek A, Hurley JH, Bye LS, et al. The human mu opioid receptor: modulation of functional desensitization by calcium/calmodulin-dependent protein kinase and protein kinase C. *J Neurosci*. 1995;15:2396–2406.
40. Pei G, Kieffer BL, Lefkowitz RJ, et al. Agonist-dependent phosphorylation of the mouse delta-opioid receptor: involvement of G protein-coupled receptor kinases but not protein kinase C. *Mol Pharmacol*. 1995;48:173–177.
41. Hales TG. Arresting the development of morphine tolerance and dependence. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:653–655.
42. Bull FA, Baptista-Hon DT, Sneddon C, et al. Src kinase inhibition attenuates morphine tolerance without affecting reinforcement or psychomotor stimulation. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:878–889.
43. Bohn LM, Lefkowitz RJ, Gainetdinov RR, et al. Enhanced morphine analgesia in mice lacking beta-arrestin 2. *Science*. 1999;286:2495–2498.
44. Trapaidze N, Keith DE, Cvejic S, et al. Sequestration of the delta opioid receptor. Role of the C terminus in agonist-mediated internalization. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:29279–29285.
45. Gaudriault G, Nouel D, Dal Farra C, et al. Receptor-induced internalization of selective peptidic mu and delta opioid ligands. *J Biol Chem*. 1997;272:2880–2888.
46. Keith DE, Murray SR, Zaki PA, et al. Morphine activates opioid receptors without causing their rapid internalization. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:19021–19024.
47. Haberstock-Debic H, Kim KA, Yu YJ, et al. Morphine promotes rapid, arrestin-dependent endocytosis of mu-opioid receptors in striatal neurons. *J Neurosci*. 2005;25:7847–7857.
48. Hashimoto T, Saito Y, Yamada K, et al. Enhancement of morphine analgesic effect with induction of mu-opioid receptor endocytosis in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:574–580.
49. Raehal KM, Walker JK, Bohn LM. Morphine side effects in beta-arrestin 2 knockout mice. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2005;314:1195–1201.
50. Manglik A, Lin H, Aryal DK, et al. Structure-based discovery of opioid analgesics with reduced side effects. *Nature*. 2016;537:185–190.
51. Hill R, Disney A, Conibear A, et al. The novel mu-opioid receptor agonist PZM21 depresses respiration and induces tolerance to antinociception. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2018;175:2653–2661.

52. Soergel DG, Subach RA, Burnham N, et al. Biased agonism of the mu-opioid receptor by TRV130 increases analgesia and reduces on-target adverse effects versus morphine: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, crossover study in healthy volunteers. *Pain*. 2014;155:1829–1835.
53. Fields HL, Heinricher MM, Mason P. Neurotransmitters in nociceptive modulatory circuits. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 1991;14:219–245.
54. Petrovic P, Kalso E, Petersson KM, et al. Placebo and opioid analgesia--imaging a shared neuronal network. *Science*. 2002;295:1737–1740.
55. Wager TD, Rilling JK, Smith EE, et al. Placebo-induced changes in FMRI in the anticipation and experience of pain. *Science*. 2004;303:1162–1167.
56. Mansour A, Fox CA, Akil H, et al. Opioid-receptor mRNA expression in the rat CNS: anatomical and functional implications. *Trends Neurosci*. 1995;18:22–29.
57. Dogrul A, Seyrek M. Systemic morphine produce antinociception mediated by spinal 5-HT7, but not 5-HT1A and 5-HT2 receptors in the spinal cord. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2006;149:498–505.
58. Matthies BK, Franklin KB. Formalin pain is expressed in decerebrate rats but not attenuated by morphine. *Pain*. 1992;51:199–206.
59. Manning BH, Morgan MJ, Franklin KB. Morphine analgesia in the formalin test: evidence for forebrain and midbrain sites of action. *Neuroscience*. 1994;63:289–294.
60. Manning BH, Mayer DJ. The central nucleus of the amygdala contributes to the production of morphine antinociception in the formalin test. *Pain*. 1995;63:141–152.
61. Pan ZZ, Tershner SA, Fields HL. Cellular mechanism for anti-analgesic action of agonists of the kappa-opioid receptor. *Nature*. 1997;389:382–385.
62. Kimura M, Obata H, Saito S. Peripheral nerve injury reduces analgesic effects of systemic morphine via spinal 5-hydroxytryptamine 3 receptors. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:362–371.
63. Stein T, Souza-Silva E, Mascarin L, et al. Histaminergic pharmacology modulates the analgesic and antiedematogenic effects of spinally injected morphine. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:238–243.
64. Trafton JA, Abbadie C, Marchand S, et al. Spinal opioid analgesia: how critical is the regulation of substance P signaling? *J Neurosci*. 1999;19:9642–9653.
65. Stein C. The control of pain in peripheral tissue by opioids. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;332:1685–1690.
66. Desroches J, Bouchard JF, Gendron L, et al. Involvement of cannabinoid receptors in peripheral and spinal morphine analgesia. *Neuroscience*. 2014;261:23–42.
67. Zhang R, Lao L, Ren K, et al. Mechanisms of acupuncture-electroacupuncture on persistent pain. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:482–503.
68. Taguchi R, Taguchi T, Kitakoji H. Involvement of peripheral opioid receptors in electroacupuncture analgesia for carrageenan-induced hyperalgesia. *Brain Res*. 2010;1355:97–103.
69. Kim HY, Wang J, Lee I, et al. Electroacupuncture suppresses capsaicin-induced secondary hyperalgesia through an endogenous spinal opioid mechanism. *Pain*. 2009;145:332–340.
70. Becerra L, Harter K, Gonzalez RG, et al. Functional magnetic resonance imaging measures of the effects of morphine on central nervous system circuitry in opioid-naive healthy volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:208–216, table of contents.
71. Kieffer BL. Opioids: first lessons from knockout mice. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 1999;20:19–26.
72. Sora I, Takahashi N, Funada M, et al. Opiate receptor knockout mice define mu receptor roles in endogenous nociceptive responses and morphine-induced analgesia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1997;94:1544–1549.
73. Dahan A, Sarton E, Teppema L, et al. Anesthetic potency and influence of morphine and sevoflurane on respiration in mu-opioid receptor knockout mice. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:824–832.
74. Sarton E, Teppema LJ, Olievier C, et al. The involvement of the mu-opioid receptor in ketamine-induced respiratory depression and antinociception. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1495–1500. table of contents.
75. Zhu Y, King MA, Schuller AG, et al. Retention of supraspinal delta-like analgesia and loss of morphine tolerance in delta opioid receptor knockout mice. *Neuron*. 1999;24:243–252.
76. Simonin F, Valverde O, Smadja C, et al. Disruption of the kappa-opioid receptor gene in mice enhances sensitivity to chemical visceral pain, impairs pharmacological actions of the selective kappa-agonist U-50,488H and attenuates morphine withdrawal. *EMBO J*. 1998;17:886–897.
77. Koyama T, Mayahara T, Wakamatsu T, et al. Deletion of mu-opioid receptor in mice does not affect the minimum alveolar concentration of volatile anaesthetics and nitrous oxide-induced analgesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:744–749.
78. Fukagawa H, Koyama T, Fukuda K. kappa-Opioid receptor mediates the antinociceptive effect of nitrous oxide in mice. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:1032–1038.
79. Rubinstein M, Mogil JS, Japon M, et al. Absence of opioid stress-induced analgesia in mice lacking beta-endorphin by site-directed mutagenesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:3995–4000.
80. Konig M, Zimmer AM, Steiner H, et al. Pain responses, anxiety and aggression in mice deficient in pre-proenkephalin. *Nature*. 1996;383:535–538.
81. Hung CF, Tsai CH, Su MJ. Opioid receptor independent effects of morphine on membrane currents in single cardiac myocytes. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:925–931.
82. Leffler A, Frank G, Kistner K, et al. Local anesthetic-like inhibition of voltage-gated Na(+) channels by the partial mu-opioid receptor agonist buprenorphine. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1335–1346.
83. Brau ME, Koch ED, Vogel W, et al. Tonic blocking action of meperidine on Na+ and K+ channels in amphibian peripheral nerves. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:147–155.
84. Wagner 2nd LE, Eaton M, Sabnis SS, et al. Meperidine and lidocaine block of recombinant voltage-dependent Na+ channels: evidence that meperidine is a local anesthetic. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1481–1490.
85. Takada K, Clark DJ, Davies MF, et al. Meperidine exerts agonist activity at the alpha(2B)-adrenoceptor subtype. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1420–1426.
86. Yamakura T, Sakimura K, Shimoji K. Direct inhibition of the N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor channel by high concentrations of opioids. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1053–1063.
87. Davis AM, Inturrisi CE. d-Methadone blocks morphine tolerance and N-methyl-D-aspartate-induced hyperalgesia. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1999;289:1048–1053.
88. Hahnenkamp K, Nollet J, Van Aken HK, et al. Remifentanil directly activates human N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors expressed in Xenopus laevis oocytes. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1531–1537.
89. Guntz E, Dumont H, Roussel C, et al. Effects of remifentanil on N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor: an electrophysiologic study in rat spinal cord. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1235–1241.
90. Wittmann M, Peters I, Schaaf T, et al. The effects of morphine on human 5-HT3A receptors. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:747–752.
91. Wittmann M, Schaaf T, Peters I, et al. The effects of fentanyl-like opioids and hydromorphone on human 5-HT3A receptors. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:107–112.
92. Marincsak R, Toth BI, Czifra G, et al. The analgesic drug, tramadol, acts as an agonist of the transient receptor potential vanilloid-1. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1890–1896.
93. Minami K, Ogata J, Uezono Y. What is the main mechanism of tramadol? *Arch Pharmacol*. 2015;388:999–1007.
94. Nishi M, Houtani T, Noda Y, et al. Unrestrained nociceptive response and disregulation of hearing ability in mice lacking the nociceptin/orphanin FQ receptor. *EMBO J*. 1997;16:1858–1864.
95. Koster A, Montkowski A, Schulz S, et al. Targeted disruption of the orphanin FQ/nociceptin gene increases stress susceptibility and impairs stress adaptation in mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1999;96:10444–10449.
96. Yamamoto T, Sakashita Y. The role of the spinal opioid receptor like1 receptor, the NK-1 receptor, and cyclooxygenase-2 in maintaining postoperative pain in the rat. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:1203–1208.
97. Grisel JE, Mogil JS, Belknap JK, et al. Orphanin FQ acts as a supraspinal, but not a spinal, anti-opioid peptide. *Neuroreport*. 1996;7:2125–2129.
98. Pan Z, Hirakawa N, Fields HL. A cellular mechanism for the bidirectional pain-modulating actions of orphanin FQ/nociceptin. *Neuron*. 2000;26:515–522.
99. Witkin JM, Statnick MA, Rorick-Kehn LM, et al. The biology of nociceptin/orphanin FQ (N/OFQ) related to obesity, stress, anxiety, mood, and drug dependence. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2014;141:283–299.
100. Ko MC, Woods JH, Fantegrossi WE, et al. Behavioral effects of a synthetic agonist selective for nociceptin/orphanin FQ peptide receptors in monkeys. *Neuropsychopharmacology*. 2009;34:2088–2096.
101. Linz K, Christoph T, Tzschentke TM, et al. Cebranopadol: a novel potent analgesic nociceptin/orphanin FQ peptide and opioid receptor agonist. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2014;349:535–548.

102. Dahan A, Boom M, Sarton E, et al. Respiratory effects of the nociceptin/orphanin FQ peptide and opioid receptor agonist, cebranopadol, in healthy human volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:697–707.
103. Williams JP, Thompson JP, McDonald J, et al. Human peripheral blood mononuclear cells express nociceptin/orphanin FQ, but not mu, delta, or kappa opioid receptors. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105: 998–1005, table of contents.
104. Jadad AR, Carroll D, Glynn CJ, et al. Morphine responsiveness of chronic pain: double-blind randomised crossover study with patient-controlled analgesia. *Lancet*. 1992;339:1367–1371.
105. Angst MS, Lazzeroni LC, Phillips NG, et al. Aversive and reinforcing opioid effects: a pharmacogenomic twin study. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:22–37.
106. Angst MS, Phillips NG, Drover DR, et al. Pain sensitivity and opioid analgesia: a pharmacogenomic twin study. *Pain*. 2012;153: 1397–1409.
107. Kest B, Sarton E, Dahan A. Gender differences in opioid-mediated analgesia: animal and human studies. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93: 539–547.
108. Sarton E, Olofsen E, Romberg R, et al. Sex differences in morphine analgesia: an experimental study in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1245–1254. discussion 1246A.
109. Olofsen E, Romberg R, Bijl H, et al. Alfentanil and placebo analgesia: no sex differences detected in models of experimental pain. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:130–139.
110. Sato H, Droney J, Ross J, et al. Gender, variation in opioid receptor genes and sensitivity to experimental pain. *Mol Pain*. 2013;9:20.
111. Gourlay GK, Plummer JL, Cherry DA. Chronopharmacokinetic variability in plasma morphine concentrations following oral doses of morphine solution. *Pain*. 1995;61:375–381.
112. Debon R, Boselli E, Guyot R, et al. Chronopharmacology of intrathecal sufentanil for labor analgesia: daily variations in duration of action. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:978–982.
113. Scavone BM, McCarthy RJ, Wong CA, et al. The influence of time of day of administration on duration of opioid labor analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:986–991.
114. Gupta A, Bodin L, Holmstrom B, et al. A systematic review of the peripheral analgesic effects of intraarticular morphine. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:761–770.
115. Kapral S, Gollmann G, Waltl B, et al. Tramadol added to mepivacaine prolongs the duration of an axillary brachial plexus blockade. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:853–856.
116. Bouaziz H, Kinirons BP, Macalou D, et al. Sufentanil does not prolong the duration of analgesia in a mepivacaine brachial plexus block: a dose response study. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:383–387.
117. Osman NI, Baghdoyan HA, Lydic R. Morphine inhibits acetylcholine release in rat prefrontal cortex when delivered systemically or by microdialysis to basal forebrain. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103: 779–787.
118. Streisand JB, Bailey PL, LeMaire L, et al. Fentanyl-induced rigidity and unconsciousness in human volunteers. Incidence, duration, and plasma concentrations. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:629–634.
119. Jhaveri R, Joshi P, Batenhorst R, et al. Dose comparison of remifentanil and alfentanil for loss of consciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:253–259.
120. Michelsen LG, Salmenpera M, Hug Jr CC, et al. Anesthetic potency of remifentanil in dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:865–872.
121. McEwan AI, Smith C, Dyar O, et al. Isoflurane minimum alveolar concentration reduction by fentanyl. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78: 864–869.
122. Katoh T, Kobayashi S, Suzuki A, et al. The effect of fentanyl on sevoflurane requirements for somatic and sympathetic responses to surgical incision. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:398–405.
123. Westmoreland CL, Sebel PS, Gropper A. Fentanyl or alfentanil decreases the minimum alveolar anesthetic concentration of isoflurane in surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:23–28.
124. Brunner MD, Braithwaite P, Jhaveri R, et al. MAC reduction of isoflurane by sufentanil. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:42–46.
125. Lang E, Kapila A, Shlugman D, et al. Reduction of isoflurane minimal alveolar concentration by remifentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:721–728.
126. Johansen JW, Schneider G, Windsor AM, et al. Esmolol potentiates reduction of minimum alveolar isoflurane concentration by alfentanil. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:671–676.
127. Inagaki Y, Tsuda Y. Contribution of the spinal cord to arousal from inhaled anesthesia: comparison of epidural and intravenous fentanyl on awakening concentration of isoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:1387–1393.
128. Katoh T, Nakajima Y, Moriwaki G, et al. Sevoflurane requirements for tracheal intubation with and without fentanyl. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:561–565.
129. Lysakowski C, Dumont L, Pellegrini M, et al. Effects of fentanyl, alfentanil, remifentanil and sufentanil on loss of consciousness and bispectral index during propofol induction of anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:523–527.
130. Wang LP, McLoughlin P, Paech MJ, et al. Low and moderate remifentanil infusion rates do not alter target-controlled infusion propofol concentrations necessary to maintain anesthesia as assessed by bispectral index monitoring. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:325–331.
131. Koitabashi T, Johansen JW, Sebel PS. Remifentanil dose/electroencephalogram bispectral response during combined propofol/regional anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1530–1533, table of contents.
132. Kern SE, Xie G, White JL, et al. A response surface analysis of propofol-remifentanil pharmacodynamic interaction in volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1373–1381.
133. Oh TK, Eom W, Yim J, et al. The effect of chronic opioid use on end-tidal concentration of sevoflurane necessary to maintain a bispectral index below 50: a prospective, single-blind study. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:156–161.
134. Bonafide CP, Aucutt-Walter N, Divittore N, et al. Remifentanil inhibits rapid eye movement sleep but not the nocturnal melatonin surge in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:627–633.
135. Sivanesan E, Gitlin MC, Candiotti KA. Opioid-induced hallucinations: a review of the literature, pathophysiology, diagnosis, and treatment. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:836–843.
136. Smith MT. Neuroexcitatory effects of morphine and hydromorphone: evidence implicating the 3-glucuronide metabolites. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2000;27:524–528.
137. Johnson SW, North RA. Opioids excite dopamine neurons by hyperpolarization of local interneurons. *J Neurosci*. 1992;12:483–488.
138. Welch EB, Thompson DF. Opiate antagonists for the treatment of schizophrenia. *J Clin Pharm Ther*. 1994;19:279–283.
139. Chi OZ, Sommer W, Jasaitis D. Power spectral analysis of EEG during sufentanil infusion in humans. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38:275–280.
140. Gambus PL, Gregg KM, Shafer SL. Validation of the alfentanil canonical univariate parameter as a measure of opioid effect on the electroencephalogram. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:747–756.
141. Montandon G, Cushing SL, Campbell F, et al. Distinct cortical signatures associated with sedation and respiratory rate depression by morphine in a pediatric population. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125: 889–903.
142. Khodayari-Rostamabad A, Olesen SS, Graversen C, et al. Disruption of cortical connectivity during remifentanil administration is associated with cognitive impairment but not with analgesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:140–149.
143. Egan TD, Minto CF, Hermann DJ, et al. Remifentanil versus alfentanil: comparative pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics in healthy adult male volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:821–833.
144. Scott JC, Cooke JE, Stanski DR. Electroencephalographic quantitation of opioid effect: comparative pharmacodynamics of fentanyl and sufentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:34–42.
145. Noh GJ, Kim KM, Jeong YB, et al. Electroencephalographic approximate entropy changes in healthy volunteers during remifentanil infusion. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:921–932.
146. Langeron O, Lille F, Zerhouni O, et al. Comparison of the effects of ketamine-midazolam with those of fentanyl-midazolam on cortical somatosensory evoked potentials during major spine surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:701–706.
147. Crabb I, Thornton C, Konieczko KM, et al. Remifentanil reduces auditory and somatosensory evoked responses during isoflurane anaesthesia in a dose-dependent manner. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:795–801.
148. Haenggi M, Ypparila H, Takala J, et al. Measuring depth of sedation with auditory evoked potentials during controlled infusion of propofol and remifentanil in healthy volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1728–1736, table of contents.
149. Kalkman CJ, Drummond JC, Ribberink AA, et al. Effects of propofol, etomidate, midazolam, and fentanyl on motor evoked responses to transcranial electrical or magnetic stimulation in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:502–509.

150. Kawaguchi M, Sakamoto T, Ohnishi H, et al. Intraoperative myogenic motor evoked potentials induced by direct electrical stimulation of the exposed motor cortex under isoflurane and sevoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:593–599.
151. Wright DR, Thornton C, Hasan K, et al. The effect of remifentanil on the middle latency auditory evoked response and haemodynamic measurements with and without the stimulus of orotracheal intubation. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21:509–516.
152. Schraag S, Flaschar J, Schleyer M, et al. The contribution of remifentanil to middle latency auditory evoked potentials during induction of propofol anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:902–907.
153. Thorogood MC, Armstead WM. Influence of polyethylene glycol superoxide dismutase/catalase on altered opioid-induced pial artery dilation after brain injury. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:614–625.
154. Monitto CL, Kurth CD. The effect of fentanyl, sufentanil, and alfentanil on cerebral arterioles in piglets. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:985–989.
155. Adler LJ, Gyulai FE, Diehl DJ, et al. Regional brain activity changes associated with fentanyl analgesia elucidated by positron emission tomography. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:120–126.
156. Mayer N, Weinstabl C, Podreka I, et al. Sufentanil does not increase cerebral blood flow in healthy human volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:240–243.
157. Mayberg TS, Lam AM, Eng CC, et al. The effect of alfentanil on cerebral blood flow velocity and intracranial pressure during isoflurane-nitrous oxide anesthesia in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:288–294.
158. Wagner KJ, Willoch F, Kochs EF, et al. Dose-dependent regional cerebral blood flow changes during remifentanil infusion in humans: a positron emission tomography study. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:732–739.
159. Ostapkovich ND, Baker KZ, Fogarty-Mack P, et al. Cerebral blood flow and CO2 reactivity is similar during remifentanil/N2O and fentanyl/N2O anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:358–363.
160. Kofke WA, Garman RH, Tom WC, et al. Alfentanil-induced hypermetabolism, seizure, and histopathology in rat brain. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:953–964.
161. Kofke WA, Attaallah AF, Kuwabara H, et al. The neuropathologic effects in rats and neurometabolic effects in humans of large-dose remifentanil. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1229–1236, table of contents.
162. Warner DS, Hindman BJ, Todd MM, et al. Intracranial pressure and hemodynamic effects of remifentanil versus alfentanil in patients undergoing supratentorial craniotomy. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:348–353.
163. Jamali S, Ravussin P, Archer D, et al. The effects of bolus administration of opioids on cerebrospinal fluid pressure in patients with supratentorial lesions. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:600–606.
164. Lauer KK, Connolly LA, Schmeling WT. Opioid sedation does not alter intracranial pressure in head injured patients. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44:929–933.
165. Girard F, Moumdjian R, Boudreault D, et al. The effect of sedation on intracranial pressure in patients with an intracranial space-occupying lesion: remifentanil versus propofol. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:194–198.
166. de Nadal M, Munar F, Poca MA, et al. Cerebral hemodynamic effects of morphine and fentanyl in patients with severe head injury: absence of correlation to cerebral autoregulation. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:11–19.
167. Markovitz BP, Duhaime AC, Sutton L, et al. Effects of alfentanil on intracranial pressure in children undergoing ventriculoperitoneal shunt revision. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:71–76.
168. Takahashi H, Traystman RJ, Hashimoto K, et al. Postischemic brain injury is affected stereospecifically by pentazocine in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:353–357.
169. Bofetiado DM, Mayfield KP, D'Alecy LG. Alkaloid delta agonist BW373U86 increases hypoxic tolerance. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:1237–1241.
170. Lim YJ, Zheng S, Zuo Z. Morphine preconditions Purkinje cells against cell death under in vitro simulated ischemia-reperfusion conditions. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:562–568.
171. Soonthon Brant V, Patel PM, Drummond JC, et al. Fentanyl does not increase brain injury after focal cerebral ischemia in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:49–55.
172. Tourrel F, de Lendeu PK, Abily-Donval L, et al. The antiapoptotic effect of remifentanil on the immature mouse brain: an ex vivo study. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:1041–1051.
173. Chen C, Xi C, Liang X, et al. The role of kappa opioid receptor in brain ischemia. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:e1219–e1225.
174. Benthuysen JL, Kien ND, Quam DD. Intracranial pressure increases during alfentanil-induced rigidity. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:438–440.
175. Coruh B, Tonelli MR, Park DR. Fentanyl-induced chest wall rigidity. *Chest*. 2013;143:1145–1146.
176. Vankova ME, Weinger MB, Chen DY, et al. Role of central mu, delta-1, and kappa-1 opioid receptors in opioid-induced muscle rigidity in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:574–583.
177. Mets B. Acute dystonia after alfentanil in untreated Parkinson's disease. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:557–558.
178. Haber GW, Litman RS. Generalized tonic-clonic activity after remifentanil administration. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1532–1533. table of contents.
179. Parkinson SK, Bailey SL, Little WL, et al. Myoclonic seizure activity with chronic high-dose spinal opioid administration. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:743–745.
180. Gutstein HB, Rubie EA, Mansour A, et al. Opioid effects on mitogen-activated protein kinase signaling cascades. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1118–1126.
181. Kofke WA, Garman RH, Janosky J, et al. Opioid neurotoxicity: neuropathologic effects in rats of different fentanyl congeners and the effects of hexamethonium-induced normotension. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:141–146.
182. Saboory E, Derchansky M, Ismaili M, et al. Mechanisms of morphine enhancement of spontaneous seizure activity. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1729–1735, table of contents.
183. Sinz EH, Kofke WA, Garman RH. Phenytoin, midazolam, and naloxone protect against fentanyl-induced brain damage in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1443–1449.
184. Kofke WA, Blissitt PA, Rao H, et al. Remifentanil-induced cerebral blood flow effects in normal humans: dose and ApoE genotype. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:167–175.
185. Rollins MD, Feiner JR, Lee JM, et al. Pupillary effects of high-dose opioid quantified with infrared pupillometry. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:1037–1044.
186. Knaggs RD, Crighton IM, Cobby TF, et al. The pupillary effects of intravenous morphine, codeine, and tramadol in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:108–112.
187. Aissou M, Snauwaert A, Dupuis C, et al. Objective assessment of the immediate postoperative analgesia using pupillary reflex measurement: a prospective and observational study. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1006–1012.
188. Sabourdin N, Barrois J, Louvet N, et al. Pupillometry-guided intraoperative remifentanil administration versus standard practice influences opioid use: a randomized study. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:284–292.
189. Bokoch MP, Behrends M, Neice A, et al. Fentanyl, an agonist at the mu opioid receptor, depresses pupillary unrest. *Auton Neurosci*. 2015;189:68–74.
190. Neice AE, Behrends M, Bokoch MP, et al. Prediction of opioid analgesic efficacy by measurement of pupillary unrest. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:915–921.
191. Kurz A, Go JC, Sessler DI, et al. Alfentanil slightly increases the sweating threshold and markedly reduces the vasoconstriction and shivering thresholds. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:293–299.
192. Ikeda T, Sessler DI, Tayefeh F, et al. Meperidine and alfentanil do not reduce the gain or maximum intensity of shivering. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:858–865.
193. Kurz M, Belani KG, Sessler DI, et al. Naloxone, meperidine, and shivering. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:1193–1201.
194. Greif R, Laciny S, Rajek AM, et al. Neither nalbuphine nor atropine possess special antishivering activity. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:620–627.
195. Alfonsi P, Passard A, Gaude-Joindreau V, et al. Nefopam and alfentanil additively reduce the shivering threshold in humans whereas nefopam and clonidine do not. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:102–109.
196. Tsai YC, Chu KS. A comparison of tramadol, amitriptyline, and meperidine for postepidural anesthetic shivering in parturients. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1288–1292.
197. Kranke P, Eberhart LH, Roewer N, et al. Pharmacological treatment of postoperative shivering: a quantitative systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:453–460, table of contents.

198. Nakasuji M, Nakamura M, Imanaka N, et al. Intraoperative high-dose remifentanil increases post-anaesthetic shivering. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:162–167.
199. Jones EA, Bergasa NV. The pruritus of cholestasis and the opioid system. *JAMA*. 1992;268:3359–3362.
200. Ko MC, Naughton NN. An experimental itch model in monkeys: characterization of intrathecal morphine-induced scratching and antinociception. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:795–805.
201. Liu XY, Liu ZC, Sun YG, et al. Unidirectional cross-activation of GRPR by MOR1D uncouples itch and analgesia induced by opioids. *Cell*. 2011;147:447–458.
202. Paech M, Sng B, Ng L, et al. Methylnaltrexone to prevent intrathecal morphine-induced pruritus after Caesarean delivery: a multicentre, randomized clinical trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114:469–476.
203. Borgeat A, Stirnemann HR. Ondansetron is effective to treat spinal or epidural morphine-induced pruritus. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:432–436.
204. George RB, Allen TK, Habib AS. Serotonin receptor antagonists for the prevention and treatment of pruritus, nausea, and vomiting in women undergoing cesarean delivery with intrathecal morphine: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:174–182.
205. Prin M, Guglielminotti J, Moitra V, et al. Prophylactic ondansetron for the prevention of intrathecal fentanyl- or sufentanil-mediated pruritus: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:402–409.
206. Dunteman E, Karanikolas M, Filos KS. Transnasal butorphanol for the treatment of opioid-induced pruritus unresponsive to antihistamines. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 1996;12:255–260.
207. Ko MC, Lee H, Song MS, et al. Activation of kappa-opioid receptors inhibits pruritus evoked by subcutaneous or intrathecal administration of morphine in monkeys. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2003;305:173–179.
208. Tamdee D, Charuluxananan S, Punjasawadwong Y, et al. A randomized controlled trial of pentazocine versus ondansetron for the treatment of intrathecal morphine-induced pruritus in patients undergoing cesarean delivery. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1606–1611.
209. Morgenweck J, Frankowski KJ, Prisinzano TE, et al. Investigation of the role of betaarrestin2 in kappa opioid receptor modulation in a mouse model of pruritus. *Neuropharmacology*. 2015;99:600–609.
210. Colbert S, O'Hanlon DM, Chambers F, et al. The effect of intravenous tenoxicam on pruritus in patients receiving epidural fentanyl. *Anaesthesia*. 1999;54:76–80.
211. Horta ML, Morejon LC, da Cruz AW, et al. Study of the prophylactic effect of droperidol, alizapride, propofol and promethazine on spinal morphine-induced pruritus. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:796–800.
212. Sheen MJ, Ho ST, Lee CH, et al. Preoperative gabapentin prevents intrathecal morphine-induced pruritus after orthopedic surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1868–1872.
213. Celerier E, Rivat C, Jun Y, et al. Long-lasting hyperalgesia induced by fentanyl in rats: preventive effect of ketamine. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:465–472.
214. Fletcher D, Martinez V. Opioid-induced hyperalgesia in patients after surgery: a systematic review and a meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112:991–1004.
215. Mauermann E, Filitz J, Dolder P, et al. Does fentanyl lead to opioid-induced hyperalgesia in healthy volunteers?: a double-blind, randomized, crossover trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:453–463.
216. Li X, Clark JD. Hyperalgesia during opioid abstinence: mediation by glutamate and substance P. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:979–984, table of contents.
217. Yuan Y, Wang JY, Yuan F, et al. Glycogen synthase kinase-3beta contributes to remifentanil-induced postoperative hyperalgesia via regulating N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor trafficking. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:473–481.
218. Li YZ, Tang XH, Wang CY, et al. Glycogen synthase kinase-3beta inhibition prevents remifentanil-induced postoperative hyperalgesia via regulating the expression and function of AMPA receptors. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119:978–987.
219. Comelon M, Raeder J, Stubhaug A, et al. Gradual withdrawal of remifentanil infusion may prevent opioid-induced hyperalgesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116:524–530.
220. Laulin JP, Maurette P, Corcuff JB, et al. The role of ketamine in preventing fentanyl-induced hyperalgesia and subsequent acute morphine tolerance. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1263–1269, table of contents.
221. Kissin I, Bright CA, Bradley Jr EL. The effect of ketamine on opioid-induced acute tolerance: can it explain reduction of opioid consumption with ketamine-opioid analgesic combinations? *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1483–1488.
222. Holtman Jr JR, Wala EP. Characterization of the antinociceptive and pronociceptive effects of methadone in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:563–571.
223. Mercieri M, Palmisani S, De Blasi RA, et al. Low-dose buprenorphine infusion to prevent postoperative hyperalgesia in patients undergoing major lung surgery and remifentanil infusion: a double-blind, randomized, active-controlled trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:792–802.
224. Kong M, Yang L, Li J, et al. Low-dose butorphanol alleviates remifetanil-induced hyperalgesia in patients undergoing laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;34:41–45.
225. Echevarria G, Elgueta F, Fierro C, et al. Nitrous oxide (N(2)O) reduces postoperative opioid-induced hyperalgesia after remifentanil-propofol anaesthesia in humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:959–965.
226. Song JW, Lee YW, Yoon KB, et al. Magnesium sulfate prevents remifentanil-induced postoperative hyperalgesia in patients undergoing thyroidectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:390–397.
227. Dunbar SA, Karamian I, Roberts L, et al. Increased prostaglandin E2 release and activated Akt/beta-catenin signaling pathway occur after opioid withdrawal in rat spinal cord. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:154–159.
228. Troster A, Sittl R, Singler B, et al. Modulation of remifentanil-induced analgesia and postinfusion hyperalgesia by parecoxib in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:1016–1023.
229. Aguado D, Abreu M, Benito J, et al. Effects of naloxone on opioid-induced hyperalgesia and tolerance to remifentanil under sevoflurane anesthesia in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1160–1169.
230. Koo CH, Yoon S, Kim BR, et al. Intraoperative naloxone reduces remifentanil-induced postoperative hyperalgesia but not pain: a randomized controlled trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:1161–1168.
231. Liang DY, Liao G, Wang J, et al. A genetic analysis of opioid-induced hyperalgesia in mice. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1054–1062.
232. Liang DY, Li X, Clark JD. 5-hydroxytryptamine type 3 receptor modulates opioid-induced hyperalgesia and tolerance in mice. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1180–1189.
233. Shin SW, Cho AR, Lee HJ, et al. Maintenance anaesthetics during remifentanil-based anaesthesia might affect postoperative pain control after breast cancer surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:661–667.
234. van Gulik L, Ahlers SJ, van de Garde EM, et al. Remifentanil during cardiac surgery is associated with chronic thoracic pain 1 yr after sternotomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:616–622.
235. Voscopoulos C, Lema M. When does acute pain become chronic? *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(suppl 1):i69–i85.
236. Angst MS, Clark JD. Opioid-induced hyperalgesia: a qualitative systematic review. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:570–587.
237. Zhang Z, Xu F, Zhang C, et al. Activation of opioid mu receptors in caudal medullary raphe region inhibits the ventilatory response to hypercapnia in anesthetized rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:288–297.
238. Romberg R, Sarton E, Teppema L, et al. Comparison of morphine-6-glucuronide and morphine on respiratory depressant and antinociceptive responses in wild type and mu-opioid receptor deficient mice. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:862–870.
239. Erb TO, von Ungern-Sternberg BS, Keller K, et al. Fentanyl does not reduce the incidence of laryngospasm in children anesthetized with sevoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:41–47.
240. Selwyn DA, Raphael JH, Lambert DG, et al. Effects of morphine on human nasal cilia beat frequency in vitro. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:274–277.
241. Hardemark Cedborg AI, Sundman E, Boden K, et al. Effects of morphine and midazolam on pharyngeal function, airway protection, and coordination of breathing and swallowing in healthy adults. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:1253–1267.
242. Kim H, Choi SH, Choi YS, et al. Comparison of the antitussive effect of remifentanil during recovery from propofol and sevoflurane anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:765–770.
243. Lin JA, Yeh CC, Lee MS, et al. Prolonged injection time and light smoking decrease the incidence of fentanyl-induced cough. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:670–674, table of contents.
244. Pandey CK, Raza M, Ranjan R, et al. Intravenous lidocaine suppresses fentanyl-induced coughing: a double-blind, prospective, randomized placebo-controlled study. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1696–1698, table of contents.

245. Sun L, Guo R, Sun L. The impact of prophylactic intravenous lidocaine on opioid-induced cough: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Anesth*. 2014;28:325–333.
246. Hung KC, Chen CW, Lin VC, et al. The effect of pre-emptive use of minimal dose fentanyl on fentanyl-induced coughing. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:4–7.
247. Kim JE, Min SK, Chae YJ, et al. Pharmacological and nonpharmacological prevention of fentanyl-induced cough: a meta-analysis. *J Anesth*. 2014;28:257–266.
248. Ambesh SP, Singh N, Gupta D, et al. A huffing manoeuvre, immediately before induction of anaesthesia, prevents fentanyl-induced coughing: a prospective, randomized, and controlled study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:40–43.
249. Li CC, Chen SS, Huang CH, et al. Fentanyl-induced cough is a risk factor for postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:444–448.
250. Lee LA, Caplan RA, Stephens LS, et al. Postoperative opioid-induced respiratory depression: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:659–665.
251. Dahan A, Aarts L, Smith TW. Incidence, reversal, and prevention of opioid-induced respiratory depression. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:226–238.
252. Sarton E, Teppema L, Dahan A. Sex differences in morphine-induced ventilatory depression reside within the peripheral chemoreflex loop. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1329–1338.
253. Smart JA, Pallett EJ, Duthie DJ. Breath interval as a measure of dynamic opioid effect. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:735–738.
254. Glass PS, Iselin-Chaves IA, Goodman D, et al. Determination of the potency of remifentanil compared with alfentanil using ventilatory depression as the measure of opioid effect. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1556–1563.
255. Gelberg J, Jonmarker C, Stenqvist O, et al. Intravenous boluses of fentanyl, 1 mug kg(-)(1), and remifentanil, 0.5 mug kg(-)(1), give similar maximum ventilatory depression in awake volunteers. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:1028–1034.
256. Krenn H, Jellinek H, Haumer H, et al. Naloxone-resistant respiratory depression and neurological eye symptoms after intrathecal morphine. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:432–433.
257. Funk GD, Smith JC, Feldman JL. Generation and transmission of respiratory oscillations in medullary slices: role of excitatory amino acids. *J Neurophysiol*. 1993;70:1497–1515.
258. Ren J, Ding X, Funk GD, et al. Ampakine CX717 protects against fentanyl-induced respiratory depression and lethal apnea in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1364–1370.
259. Ren J, Ding X, Greer JJ. 5-HT1A receptor agonist befiradol reduces fentanyl-induced respiratory depression, analgesia, and sedation in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:424–434.
260. Stucke AG, Miller JR, Prkic I, et al. Opioid-induced respiratory depression is only partially mediated by the prebotzinger complex in young and adult rabbits in vivo. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:1288–1298.
261. Montandon G, Ren J, Victoria NC, et al. G-protein-gated inwardly rectifying potassium channels modulate respiratory depression by opioids. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:641–650.
262. Roozekrans M, van der Schrier R, Okkerse P, et al. Two studies on reversal of opioid-induced respiratory depression by BK-channel blocker GAL021 in human volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:459–468.
263. Setnik B, Sokolowska M, Johnson F, et al. Evaluation of the safety, pharmacodynamic, and pharmacokinetic effects following oral coadministration of immediate-release morphine with ethanol in healthy male participants. *Hum Psychopharmacol*. 2014;29:251–265.
264. van der Schrier R, Roozekrans M, Olofsen E, et al. Influence of ethanol on oxycodone-induced respiratory depression: a dose-escalating study in young and elderly individuals. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:534–542.
265. Niesters M, Mahajan RP, Aarts L, et al. High-inspired oxygen concentration further impairs opioid-induced respiratory depression. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:837–841.
266. Feldman PD, Parveen N, Sezen S. Cardiovascular effects of Leu-enkephalin in the nucleus tractus solitarius of the rat. *Brain Res*. 1996;709:331–336.
267. Keay KA, Crowfoot LJ, Floyd NS, et al. Cardiovascular effects of microinjections of opioid agonists into the 'depressor region' of the ventrolateral periaqueductal gray region. *Brain Res*. 1997;762:61–71.
268. Nakae Y, Fujita S, Namiki A. Morphine enhances myofilament CA(2+) sensitivity in intact guinea pig beating hearts. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:602–608.
269. Xiao GS, Zhou JJ, Wang GY, et al. In vitro electrophysiologic effects of morphine in rabbit ventricular myocytes. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:280–286.
270. Llobel F, Laorden ML. Effects of morphine on atrial preparations obtained from nonfailing and failing human hearts. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:106–110.
271. Kawakubo A, Fujigaki T, Uresino H, et al. Comparative effects of etomidate, ketamine, propofol, and fentanyl on myocardial contractility in dogs. *J Anesth*. 1999;13:77–82.
272. Graham MD, Hopkins PM, Harrison SM. The effects of alfentanil on cytosolic Ca(2+) and contraction in rat ventricular myocytes. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1013–1016, table of contents.
273. Duncan DJ, Hopkins PM, Harrison SM. Negative inotropic effects of tumour necrosis factor-alpha and interleukin-1beta are ameliorated by alfentanil in rat ventricular myocytes. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2007;150:720–726.
274. Bolliger D, Seeberger MD, Kasper J, et al. Remifentanil does not impair left ventricular systolic and diastolic function in young healthy patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:573–579.
275. Weber G, Stark G, Stark U. Direct cardiac electrophysiologic effects of sufentanil and vecuronium in isolated guinea-pig hearts. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:1071–1074.
276. Lischke V, Wilke HJ, Probst S, et al. Prolongation of the QT-interval during induction of anesthesia in patients with coronary artery disease. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1994;38:144–148.
277. Chang DJ, Kweon TD, Nam SB, et al. Effects of fentanyl pretreatment on the QTc interval during propofol induction. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:1056–1060.
278. Kweon TD, Nam SB, Chang CH, et al. The effect of bolus administration of remifentanil on QTc interval during induction of sevoflurane anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:347–351.
279. Sharpe MD, Dobkowski WB, Murkin JM, et al. Alfentanil-midazolam anaesthesia has no electrophysiological effects upon the normal conduction system or accessory pathways in patients with Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:816–821.
280. Sharpe MD, Dobkowski WB, Murkin JM, et al. The electrophysiologic effects of volatile anesthetics and sufentanil on the normal atrioventricular conduction system and accessory pathways in Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:63–70.
281. Sarne Y, Flitstein A, Oppenheimer E. Anti-arrhythmic activities of opioid agonists and antagonists and their stereoisomers. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1991;102:696–698.
282. McIntosh M, Kane K, Parratt J. Effects of selective opioid receptor agonists and antagonists during myocardial ischaemia. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1992;210:37–44.
283. Lessa MA, Tibirica E. Pharmacologic evidence for the involvement of central and peripheral opioid receptors in the cardioprotective effects of fentanyl. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:815–821.
284. Schultz JE, Hsu AK, Gross GJ. Morphine mimics the cardioprotective effect of ischemic preconditioning via a glibenclamide-sensitive mechanism in the rat heart. *Circ Res*. 1996;78:1100–1104.
285. Zhang Y, Irwin MG, Wong TM, et al. Remifentanil preconditioning confers cardioprotection via cardiac kappa- and delta-opioid receptors. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:371–378.
286. Zhang Y, Irwin MG, Wong TM. Remifentanil preconditioning protects against ischemic injury in the intact rat heart. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:918–923.
287. Li R, Wong GT, Wong TM, et al. Intrathecal morphine preconditioning induces cardioprotection via activation of delta, kappa, and mu opioid receptors in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:23–29.
288. Frassdorf J, Weber NC, Obal D, et al. Morphine induces late cardioprotection in rat hearts in vivo: the involvement of opioid receptors and nuclear transcription factor kappaB. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:934–941, table of contents.
289. Zhang SZ, Wang NF, Xu J, et al. Kappa-opioid receptors mediate cardioprotection by remote preconditioning. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:550–556.
290. Jang Y, Xi J, Wang H, et al. Postconditioning prevents reperfusion injury by activating delta-opioid receptors. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:243–250.
291. Weihrauch D, Krolikowski JG, Bienengraeber M, et al. Morphine enhances isoflurane-induced postconditioning against myocardial

infarction: the role of phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase and opioid receptors in rabbits. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:942–949. table of contents.

292. Miller LE, McGinnis GR, Peters BA, et al. Involvement of the delta-opioid receptor in exercise-induced cardioprotection. *Exp Physiol*. 2015;100:410–421.
293. McPherson BC, Yao Z. Signal transduction of opioid-induced cardioprotection in ischemia-reperfusion. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94: 1082–1088.
294. Kato R, Foex P. Fentanyl reduces infarction but not stunning via delta-opioid receptors and protein kinase C in rats. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:608–614.
295. Kato R, Ross S, Foex P. Fentanyl protects the heart against ischaemic injury via opioid receptors, adenosine A1 receptors and KATP channel linked mechanisms in rats. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:204–214.
296. Warltier DC, Pagel PS, Kersten JR. Approaches to the prevention of perioperative myocardial ischemia. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92: 253–259.
297. Blaise GA, Witzeling TM, Sill JC, et al. Fentanyl is devoid of major effects on coronary vasoreactivity and myocardial metabolism in experimental animals. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:535–541.
298. Moore PG, Quail AW, Cottee DB, et al. Effect of fentanyl on baroreflex control of circumflex coronary conductance. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2000;27:1028–1033.
299. Lennander O, Henriksson BA, Martner J, et al. Effects of fentanyl, nitrous oxide, or both, on baroreceptor reflex regulation in the cat. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;77:399–403.
300. Arnold RW, Jensen PA, Kovtoun TA, et al. The profound augmentation of the oculocardiac reflex by fast acting opioids. *Binocul Vis Strabismus Q*. 2004;19:215–222.
301. Hahnenkamp K, Honemann CW, Fischer LG, et al. Effect of different anaesthetic regimes on the oculocardiac reflex during paediatric strabismus surgery. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2000;10:601–608.
302. Blunk JA, Schmelz M, Zeck S, et al. Opioid-induced mast cell activation and vascular responses is not mediated by mu-opioid receptors: an in vivo microdialysis study in human skin. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:364–370, table of contents.
303. Stefano GB. Autoimmunovascular regulation: morphine and anandamide and ancondamide stimulated nitric oxide release. *J Neuroimmunol*. 1998;83:70–76.
304. White DA, Reitan JA, Kien ND, et al. Decrease in vascular resistance in the isolated canine hindlimb after graded doses of alfentanil, fentanyl, and sufentanil. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:29–34.
305. Sohn JT, Ok SH, Kim HJ, et al. Inhibitory effect of fentanyl on acetylcholine-induced relaxation in rat aorta. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:89–96.
306. Ebert TJ, Ficke DJ, Arain SR, et al. Vasodilation from sufentanil in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1677–1680.
307. Sohn JT, Park KE, Kim C, et al. Alfentanil attenuates phenylephrine-induced contraction in rat aorta. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24: 276–282.
308. Unlugenc H, Itegin M, Ocal I, et al. Remifentanil produces vasorelaxation in isolated rat thoracic aorta strips. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:65–69.
309. Ouattara A, Boccara G, Kockler U, et al. Remifentanil induces systemic arterial vasodilation in humans with a total artificial heart. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:602–607.
310. Sohn JT, Ding X, McCune DF, et al. Fentanyl attenuates alpha1B-adrenoceptor-mediated pulmonary artery contraction. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:327–334.
311. Kaye AD, Baluch A, Phelps J, et al. An analysis of remifentanil in the pulmonary vascular bed of the cat. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102: 118–123.
312. Kaye AD, Phelps J, Baluch A, et al. The effects of sufentanil in the feline pulmonary vascular bed. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2006;534:159–164.
313. Charleston C, Puana R, McAllister RK, et al. Morphine sulfate attenuates hemorrhagic shock-induced hyperpermeability. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:156–161, table of contents.
314. Liu L, Tian K, Zhu Y, et al. delta opioid receptor antagonist, ICI 174,864, is suitable for the early treatment of uncontrolled hemorrhagic shock in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:379–388.
315. Vuong C, Van Uum SH, O'Dell LE, et al. The effects of opioids and opioid analogs on animal and human endocrine systems. *Endocr Rev*. 2010;31:98–132.
316. Delitala G, Trainer PJ, Oliva O, et al. Opioid peptide and alpha-adrenoceptor pathways in the regulation of the pituitary-adrenal axis in man. *J Endocrinol*. 1994;141:163–168.
317. Ellis DJ, Steward DJ. Fentanyl dosage is associated with reduced blood glucose in pediatric patients after hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:812–815.
318. Philbin DM, Rosow CE, Schneider RC, et al. Fentanyl and sufentanil anesthesia revisited: how much is enough? *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:5–11.
319. Myles PS, Hunt JO, Fletcher H, et al. Remifentanil, fentanyl, and cardiac surgery: a double-blinded, randomized, controlled trial of costs and outcomes. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:805–812, table of contents.
320. Anand KJ, Hickey PR. Halothane-morphine compared with high-dose sufentanil for anesthesia and postoperative analgesia in neonatal cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;326:1–9.
321. Mangano DT, Siliciano D, Hollenberg M, et al. Postoperative myocardial ischemia. Therapeutic trials using intensive analgesia following surgery. The Study of Perioperative Ischemia (SPI) Research Group. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:342–353.
322. Plunkett JJ, Reeves JD, Ngo L, et al. Urine and plasma catecholamine and cortisol concentrations after myocardial revascularization. Modulation by continuous sedation. Multicenter Study of Perioperative Ischemia (McSPI) Research Group, and the Ischemia Research and Education Foundation (IREF). *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:785–796.
323. Nestler EJ, Aghajanian GK. Molecular and cellular basis of addiction. *Science*. 1997;278:58–63.
324. Chan KW, Duttory A, Yoburn BC. Magnitude of tolerance to fentanyl is independent of mu-opioid receptor density. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1997;319:225–228.
325. Lim G, Wang S, Zeng Q, et al. Spinal glucocorticoid receptors contribute to the development of morphine tolerance in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:832–837.
326. Kissin I, Bright CA, Bradley Jr EL. Acute tolerance to continuously infused alfentanil: the role of cholecystokinin and N-methyl-D-aspartate-nitric oxide systems. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:110–116.
327. Li JY, Wong CH, Huang EY, et al. Modulations of spinal serotonin activity affect the development of morphine tolerance. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:1563–1568.
328. Lin CP, Kang KH, Lin TH, et al. Role of spinal CXCL1 (GROalpha) in opioid tolerance: a human-to-rodent translational study. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:666–676.
329. Lin CP, Kang KH, Tu HJ, et al. CXCL12/CXCR4 signaling contributes to the pathogenesis of opioid tolerance: a translational study. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:972–979.
330. Wang Y, Mitchell J, Moriyama K, et al. Age-dependent morphine tolerance development in the rat. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100: 1733–1739.
331. Narita M, Suzuki M, Narita M, et al. mu-Opioid receptor internalization-dependent and -independent mechanisms of the development of tolerance to mu-opioid receptor agonists: comparison between etorphine and morphine. *Neuroscience*. 2006;138:609–619.
332. Mika J, Wawrzczak-Bargiela A, Osikowicz M, et al. Attenuation of morphine tolerance by minocycline and pentoxifylline in naive and neuropathic mice. *Brain Behav Immun*. 2009;23:75–84.
333. Chia YY, Liu K, Wang JJ, et al. Intraoperative high dose fentanyl induces postoperative fentanyl tolerance. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:872–877.
334. Vinik HR, Kissin I. Rapid development of tolerance to analgesia during remifentanil infusion in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1307–1311.
335. Guignard B, Bossard AE, Coste C, et al. Acute opioid tolerance: intraoperative remifentanil increases postoperative pain and morphine requirement. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:409–417.
336. Schraag S, Checketts MR, Kenny GN. Lack of rapid development of opioid tolerance during alfentanil and remifentanil infusions for postoperative pain. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:753–757.
337. Gustorff B, Nahlik G, Hoerauf KH, et al. The absence of acute tolerance during remifentanil infusion in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1223–1228, table of contents.
338. Kim SH, Lee MH, Seo H, et al. Intraoperative infusion of 0.6-0.9 microg.kg(-1).min(-1) remifentanil induces acute tolerance in young children after laparoscopic ureteroneocystostomy. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:337–343.
339. Hayhurst CJ, Durieux ME. Differential opioid tolerance and opioid-induced hyperalgesia: a clinical reality. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:483–488.

340. Paronis CA, Woods JH. Ventilation in morphine-maintained rhesus monkeys. II: tolerance to the antinociceptive but not the ventilatory effects of morphine. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1997;282:355–362.
341. Mitra S, Sinatra RS. Perioperative management of acute pain in the opioid-dependent patient. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:212–227.
342. Mehta V, Langford RM. Acute pain management for opioid dependent patients. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61:269–276.
343. Tanum L, Solli KK, Latif ZE, et al. Effectiveness of injectable extended-release naltrexone vs daily buprenorphine-naloxone for opioid dependence: a randomized clinical noninferiority trial. *JAMA Psychiatry*. 2017;74:1197–1205.
344. Kienbaum P, Thurauf N, Michel MC, et al. Profound increase in epinephrine concentration in plasma and cardiovascular stimulation after mu-opioid receptor blockade in opioid-addicted patients during barbiturate-induced anesthesia for acute detoxification. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1154–1161.
345. Hensel M, Wolter S, Kox WJ. EEG controlled rapid opioid withdrawal under general anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:236–238.
346. Kienbaum P, Heuter T, Michel MC, et al. Sympathetic neural activation evoked by mu-receptor blockade in patients addicted to opioids is abolished by intravenous clonidine. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96: 346–351.
347. Clark DJ, Schumacher MA. America's opioid epidemic: supply and demand considerations. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:1667–1674.
348. Kuipers PW, Kamphuis ET, van Venrooij GE, et al. Intrathecal opioids and lower urinary tract function: a urodynamic evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1497–1503.
349. Malinovsky JM, Le Normand L, Lepage JY, et al. The urodynamic effects of intravenous opioids and ketoprofen in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:456–461.
350. Rosow CE, Gomery P, Chen TY, et al. Reversal of opioid-induced bladder dysfunction by intravenous naloxone and methylnaltrexone. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2007;82:48–53.
351. Terashi T, Takehara A, Kuniyoshi T, et al. Remifentanil temporarily improves renal function in adult patients with chronic kidney disease undergoing orthopedic surgery. *J Anesth*. 2013;27: 340–345.
352. Viscusi ER, Gan TJ, Leslie JB, et al. Peripherally acting mu-opioid receptor antagonists and postoperative ileus: mechanisms of action and clinical applicability. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1811–1822.
353. Kojima Y, Takahashi T, Fujina M, et al. Inhibition of cholinergic transmission by opiates in ileal myenteric plexus is mediated by kappa receptor. Involvement of regulatory inhibitory G protein and calcium N-channels. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1994;268:965–970.
354. Penagini R, Picone A, Bianchi PA. Effect of morphine and naloxone on motor response of the human esophagus to swallowing and distension. *Am J Physiol*. 1996;271:G675–680.
355. Thorn SE, Wattwil M, Lindberg G, et al. Systemic and central effects of morphine on gastroduodenal motility. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:177–186.
356. Crighton IM, Martin PH, Hobbs GJ, et al. A comparison of the effects of intravenous tramadol, codeine, and morphine on gastric emptying in human volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:445–449.
357. Runkel NS, Moody FG, Smith GS, et al. Alterations in rat intestinal transit by morphine promote bacterial translocation. *Dig Dis Sci*. 1993;38:1530–1536.
358. Hammas B, Thorn SE, Wattwil M. Propofol and gastric effects of morphine. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:1023–1027.
359. Murphy DB, Sutton JA, Prescott LF, et al. Opioid-induced delay in gastric emptying: a peripheral mechanism in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:765–770.
360. Asai T, Power I. Naloxone inhibits gastric emptying in the rat. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:204–208.
361. McNeill MJ, Ho ET, Kenny GN. Effect of i.v. metoclopramide on gastric emptying after opioid premedication. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:450–452.
362. Mori T, Shibasaki Y, Matsumoto K, et al. Mechanisms that underlie mu-opioid receptor agonist-induced constipation: differential involvement of mu-opioid receptor sites and responsible regions. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2013;347:91–99.
363. Thompson DR. Narcotic analgesic effects on the sphincter of Oddi: a review of the data and therapeutic implications in treating pancreatitis. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2001;96:1266–1272.
364. Wu SD, Zhang ZH, Jin JZ, et al. Effects of narcotic analgesic drugs on human Oddi's sphincter motility. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2004;10:2901–2904.
365. Fragen RJ, Vilich F, Spies SM, et al. The effect of remifentanil on biliary tract drainage into the duodenum. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89: 1561–1564.
366. Yang LQ, Tao KM, Liu YT, et al. Remifentanil preconditioning reduces hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury in rats via inducible nitric oxide synthase expression. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1036–1047.
367. Wang Y, Wong GT, Man K, et al. Pretreatment with intrathecal or intravenous morphine attenuates hepatic ischaemia-reperfusion injury in normal and cirrhotic rat liver. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109: 529–539.
368. Liu R, Huang XP, Yeliseev A, et al. Novel molecular targets of dezocine and their clinical implications. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120: 714–723.
369. Watcha MF, White PF. Postoperative nausea and vomiting. Its etiology, treatment, and prevention. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:162–184.
370. Gan TJ. Risk factors for postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1884–1898.
371. Langevin S, Lessard MR, Trepanier CA, et al. Alfentanil causes less postoperative nausea and vomiting than equipotent doses of fentanyl or sufentanil in outpatients. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91: 1666–1673.
372. Rung GW, Claybon L, Hord A, et al. Intravenous ondansetron for postsurgical opioid-induced nausea and vomiting. S3A-255 Study Group. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:832–838.
373. Tzeng JI, Wang JJ, Ho ST, et al. Dexamethasone for prophylaxis of nausea and vomiting after epidural morphine for post-Caesarean section analgesia: comparison of droperidol and saline. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:865–868.
374. Simoneau II , Hamza MS, Mata HP, et al. The cannabinoid agonist WIN55,212-2 suppresses opioid-induced emesis in ferrets. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:882–887.
375. Monitto CL, Kost-Byerly S, White E, et al. The optimal dose of prophylactic intravenous naloxone in ameliorating opioid-induced side effects in children receiving intravenous patient-controlled analgesia morphine for moderate to severe pain: a dose finding study. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:834–842.
376. Harnett MJ, O'Rourke N, Walsh M, et al. Transdermal scopolamine for prevention of intrathecal morphine-induced nausea and vomiting after cesarean delivery. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:764–769.
377. Lok IH, Chan MT, Chan DL, et al. A prospective randomized trial comparing patient-controlled sedation using propofol and alfentanil and physician-administered sedation using diazepam and pethidine during transvaginal ultrasound-guided oocyte retrieval. *Hum Reprod*. 2002;17:2101–2106.
378. Sandner-Kiesling A, Eisenach JC. Pharmacology of opioid inhibition to noxious uterine cervical distension. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97: 966–971.
379. Sandner-Kiesling A, Eisenach JC. Estrogen reduces efficacy of mu- but not kappa-opioid agonist inhibition in response to uterine cervical distension. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:375–379.
380. Gin T, Ngan Kee WD, Siu YK, et al. Alfentanil given immediately before the induction of anesthesia for elective cesarean delivery. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1167–1172.
381. Ngan Kee WD, Khaw KS, Ma KC, et al. Maternal and neonatal effects of remifentanil at induction of general anesthesia for cesarean delivery: a randomized, double-blind, controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:14–20.
382. Strumper D, Durieux ME, Gogarten W, et al. Fetal plasma concentrations after intraamniotic sufentanil in chronically instrumented pregnant sheep. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1400–1406; discussion 1405A-1406A.
383. Wittels B, Scott DT, Sinatra RS. Exogenous opioids in human breast milk and acute neonatal neurobehavior: a preliminary study. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:864–869.
384. Spigset O. Anaesthetic agents and excretion in breast milk. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1994;38:94–103.
385. Doberczak TM, Kandall SR, Wilets I. Neonatal opiate abstinence syndrome in term and preterm infants. *J Pediatr*. 1991;118:933–937.
386. McQueen K, Murphy-Oikonen J. Neonatal abstinence syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:2468–2479.
387. Edston E, van Hage-Hamsten M. Anaphylactoid shock--a common cause of death in heroin addicts? *Allergy*. 1997;52:950–954.
388. Alexander R, Hill R, Lipham WJ, et al. Remifentanil prevents an increase in intraocular pressure after succinylcholine and tracheal intubation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:606–607.

389. Ng HP, Chen FG, Yeong SM, et al. Effect of remifentanil compared with fentanyl on intraocular pressure after succinylcholine and tracheal intubation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:785–787.
390. Al-Hashimi M, Scott SW, Thompson JP, et al. Opioids and immune modulation: more questions than answers. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:80–88.
391. Gaveriaux-Ruff C, Matthes HW, Peluso J, et al. Abolition of morphine-immunosuppression in mice lacking the mu-opioid receptor gene. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1998;95:6326–6330.
392. Nelson CJ, Dykstra LA, Lysle DT. Comparison of the time course of morphine's analgesic and immunologic effects. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:620–626.
393. Sacerdote P, Bianchi M, Gaspani L, et al. The effects of tramadol and morphine on immune responses and pain after surgery in cancer patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1411–1414.
394. Yeager MP, Procopio MA, DeLeo JA, et al. Intravenous fentanyl increases natural killer cell cytotoxicity and circulating CD16(+) lymphocytes in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:94–99.
395. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Marymont JH, et al. The effects of morphine and fentanyl on the inflammatory response to cardiopulmonary bypass in patients undergoing elective coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1334–1342, table of contents.
396. Welters ID, Menzebach A, Goumon Y, et al. Morphine inhibits NF-kappaB nuclear binding in human neutrophils and monocytes by a nitric oxide-dependent mechanism. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1677–1684.
397. Yin D, Mufson RA, Wang R, et al. Fas-mediated cell death promoted by opioids. *Nature*. 1999;397:218.
398. Ohara T, Itoh T, Takahashi M. Immunosuppression by morphine-induced lymphocyte apoptosis: is it a real issue? *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1117–1122, table of contents.
399. Hyejin J, Mei L, Seongheon L, et al. Remifentanil attenuates human neutrophils activation induced by lipopolysaccharide. *Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol*. 2013;35:264–271.
400. Zhang Y, Du Z, Zhou Q, et al. Remifentanil attenuates lipopolysaccharide-induced acute lung injury by downregulating the NF-kappaB signaling pathway. *Inflammation*. 2014;37:1654–1660.
401. Inagi T, Suzuki M, Osumi M, et al. Remifentanil-based anaesthesia increases the incidence of postoperative surgical site infection. *J Hosp Infect*. 2015;89:61–68.
402. Bovill JG. Surgery for cancer: does anesthesia matter? *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1524–1526.
403. Lennon FE, Moss J, Singleton PA. The mu-opioid receptor in cancer progression: is there a direct effect? *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116: 940–945.
404. Lennon FE, Mirzapoiazova T, Mambetsariev B, et al. Overexpression of the mu-opioid receptor in human non-small cell lung cancer promotes Akt and mTOR activation, tumor growth, and metastasis. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:857–867.
405. Bortsov AV, Millikan RC, Belfer I, et al. mu-Opioid receptor gene A118G polymorphism predicts survival in patients with breast cancer. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:896–902.
406. Sekandarzad MW, van Zundert AAJ, Lirk PB, et al. Perioperative anesthesia care and tumor progression. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1697–1708.
407. Singleton PA, Moss J, Karp DD, et al. The mu opioid receptor: a new target for cancer therapy? *Cancer*. 2015;121:2681–2688.
408. Mahbuba W, Lambert DG. Opioids and neovascularization; pro or anti? *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:821–824.
409. Blebea J, Mazo JE, Kihara TK, et al. Opioid growth factor modulates angiogenesis. *J Vasc Surg*. 2000;32:364–373.
410. Kim JY, Ahn HJ, Kim JK, et al. Morphine suppresses lung cancer cell proliferation through the interaction with opioid growth factor receptor: an in vitro and human lung tissue study. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:1429–1436.
411. Rook JM, Hasan W, McCarson KE. Temporal effects of topical morphine application on cutaneous wound healing. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:130–136.
412. Bigliardi PL, Neumann C, Teo YL, et al. Activation of the delta-opioid receptor promotes cutaneous wound healing by affecting keratinocyte intercellular adhesion and migration. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2015;172:501–514.
413. Stein C, Kuchler S. Targeting inflammation and wound healing by opioids. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2013;34:303–312.
414. Lotsch J. Pleiotropic effects of morphine-6beta-glucuronide. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1209–1210.
415. Romberg R, Olofsen E, Sarton E, et al. Pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic modeling of morphine-6-glucuronide-induced analgesia in healthy volunteers: absence of sex differences. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:120–133.
416. Klimas R, Mikus G. Morphine-6-glucuronide is responsible for the analgesic effect after morphine administration: a quantitative review of morphine, morphine-6-glucuronide, and morphine-3-glucuronide. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:935–944.
417. Skarke C, Langer M, Jarrar M, et al. Probenecid interacts with the pharmacokinetics of morphine-6-glucuronide in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:1394–1399.
418. Teppema LJ, van Dorp E, Mousavi Gourabi B, et al. Differential effect of morphine and morphine-6-glucuronide on the control of breathing in the anesthetized cat. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:689–697.
419. Lotsch J, Zimmermann M, Darimont J, et al. Does the A118G polymorphism at the mu-opioid receptor gene protect against morphine-6-glucuronide toxicity? *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:814–819.
420. Osborne R, Joel S, Trew D, et al. Morphine and metabolite behavior after different routes of morphine administration: demonstration of the importance of the active metabolite morphine-6-glucuronide. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1990;47:12–19.
421. Motamed C, Mazoit X, Ghanouchi K, et al. Preemptive intravenous morphine-6-glucuronide is ineffective for postoperative pain relief. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:355–360.
422. Kharasch ED, Thummel KE. Human alfentanil metabolism by cytochrome P450 3A3/4. An explanation for the interindividual variability in alfentanil clearance? *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:1033–1039.
423. Klees TM, Sheffels P, Thummel KE, et al. Pharmacogenetic determinants of human liver microsomal alfentanil metabolism and the role of cytochrome P450 3A5. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:550–556.
424. Janicki PK, James MF, Erskine WA. Propofol inhibits enzymatic degradation of alfentanil and sufentanil by isolated liver microsomes in vitro. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;68:311–312.
425. Boer F, Bovill JG, Burm AG, et al. Uptake of sufentanil, alfentanil and morphine in the lungs of patients about to undergo coronary artery surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;68:370–375.
426. Westmoreland CL, Hoke JF, Sebel PS, et al. Pharmacokinetics of remifentanil (GI87084B) and its major metabolite (GI90291) in patients undergoing elective inpatient surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:893–903.
427. Duthie DJ, Stevens JJ, Doyle AR, et al. Remifentanil and pulmonary extraction during and after cardiac anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:740–744.
428. Buerkle H, Yaksh TL. Continuous intrathecal administration of shortlasting mu opioids remifentanil and alfentanil in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:926–935.
429. Egan TD. Remifentanil pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. A preliminary appraisal. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1995;29:80–94.
430. Cox EH, Langemeijer MW, Gubbens-Stibbe JM, et al. The comparative pharmacodynamics of remifentanil and its metabolite, GR90291, in a rat electroencephalographic model. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:535–544.
431. Stiller RL, Davis PJ, McGowan FX, et al. In vitro metabolism of remifentanil: the effects of pseudocholinesterase deficiency. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:A381.
432. Ledowski T, Averhoff L, Tiong WS, et al. Analgesia Nociception Index (ANI) to predict intraoperative haemodynamic changes: results of a pilot investigation. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58:74–79.
433. Upton HD, Ludbrook GL, Wing A, et al. Intraoperative "analgesia nociception index"-guided fentanyl administration during sevoflurane anesthesia in lumbar discectomy and laminectomy: a randomized clinical trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:81–90.
434. Olkkola KT, Hamunen K, Maunuksela EL. Clinical pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of opioid analgesics in infants and children. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1995;28:385–404.
435. Munoz HR, Cortinez LI, Ibacache ME, et al. Remifentanil requirements during propofol administration to block the somatic response to skin incision in children and adults. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:77–80.
436. Munoz HR, Cortinez LI, Altermatt FR, et al. Remifentanil requirements during sevoflurane administration to block somatic and cardiovascular responses to skin incision in children and adults. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1142–1145.
437. Minto CF, Schnider TW, Egan TD, et al. Influence of age and gender on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of remifentanil. I. Model development. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:10–23.

438. Egan TD, Huizinga B, Gupta SK, et al. Remifentanil pharmacokinetics in obese versus lean patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89: 562–573.
439. Eleveld DJ, Proost JH, Vereecke H, et al. An allometric model of remifentanil pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:1005–1018.
440. Kim TK, Obara S, Egan TD, et al. Disposition of remifentanil in obesity: a new pharmacokinetic model incorporating the influence of body mass. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:1019–1032.
441. Mazoit JX, Sandouk P, Scherrmann JM, et al. Extrahepatic metabolism of morphine occurs in humans. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1990;48:613–618.
442. Osborne R, Joel S, Grebenik K, et al. The pharmacokinetics of morphine and morphine glucuronides in kidney failure. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1993;54:158–167.
443. Murphy EJ. Acute pain management pharmacology for the patient with concurrent renal or hepatic disease. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2005;33:311–322.
444. Rudin A, Lundberg JF, Hammarlund-Udenaes M, et al. Morphine metabolism after major liver surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1409–1414, table of contents.
445. Danziger LH, Martin SJ, Blum RA. Central nervous system toxicity associated with meperidine use in hepatic disease. *Pharmacotherapy*. 1994;14:235–238.
446. Tegeder I, Lotsch J, Geisslinger G. Pharmacokinetics of opioids in liver disease. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1999;37:17–40.
447. Baririan N, Van Obbergh L, Desager JP, et al. Alfentanil-induced miosis as a surrogate measure of alfentanil pharmacokinetics in patients with mild and moderate liver cirrhosis. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2007;46:261–270.
448. Dershwitz M, Hoke JF, Rosow CE, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of remifentanil in volunteer subjects with severe liver disease. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:812–820.
449. Navapurkar VU, Archer S, Frazer NM, et al. Pharmacokinetics of remifentanil during hepatic transplantation. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:A382.
450. Dumont L, Picard V, Marti RA, et al. Use of remifentanil in a patient with chronic hepatic failure. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:265–267.
451. Miller RS, Peterson GM, McLean S, et al. Effect of cardiopulmonary bypass on the plasma concentrations of fentanyl and alcuronium. *J Clin Pharm Ther*. 1997;22:197–205.
452. Hudson RJ, Thomson IR, Jassal R, et al. Cardiopulmonary bypass has minimal effects on the pharmacokinetics of fentanyl in adults. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:847–854.
453. Petros A, Dunne N, Mehta R, et al. The pharmacokinetics of alfentanil after normothermic and hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:458–464.
454. Hynynen M, Hynninen M, Soini H, et al. Plasma concentration and protein binding of alfentanil during high-dose infusion for cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:571–576.
455. Russell D, Royston D, Rees PH, et al. Effect of temperature and cardiopulmonary bypass on the pharmacokinetics of remifentanil. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79:456–459.
456. Davis PJ, Wilson AS, Siewers RD, et al. The effects of cardiopulmonary bypass on remifentanil kinetics in children undergoing atrial septal defect repair. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:904–908.
457. Michelsen LG, Holford NH, Lu W, et al. The pharmacokinetics of remifentanil in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting with cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93: 1100–1105.
458. Egan TD, Kuramkote S, Gong G, et al. Fentanyl pharmacokinetics in hemorrhagic shock: a porcine model. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91: 156–166.
459. Johnson KB, Kern SE, Hamber EA, et al. Influence of hemorrhagic shock on remifentanil: a pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:322–332.
460. Kurita T, Uraoka M, Morita K, et al. Influence of haemorrhage on the pseudo-steady-state remifentanil concentration in a swine model: a comparison with propofol and the effect of haemorrhagic shock stage. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:719–725.
461. Somogyi AA, Barratt DT, Coller JK. Pharmacogenetics of opioids. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2007;81:429–444.
462. Benrath J, Brechtel C, Martin E, et al. Low doses of fentanyl block central sensitization in the rat spinal cord in vivo. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1545–1551.
463. Gottschalk A, Smith DS, Jobes DR, et al. Preemptive epidural analgesia and recovery from radical prostatectomy: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 1998;279:1076–1082.
464. Holthusen H, Backhaus P, Boeminghaus F, et al. Preemptive analgesia: no relevant advantage of preoperative compared with postoperative intravenous administration of morphine, ketamine, and clonidine in patients undergoing transperitoneal tumor nephrectomy. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27:249–253.
465. Aida S, Baba H, Yamakura T, et al. The effectiveness of preemptive analgesia varies according to the type of surgery: a randomized, double-blind study. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:711–716.
466. Ong CK, Lirk P, Seymour RA, et al. The efficacy of preemptive analgesia for acute postoperative pain management: a meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:757–773, table of contents.
467. Lipszyc M, Winters E, Engelman E, et al. Remifentanil patient-controlled analgesia effect-site target-controlled infusion compared with morphine patient-controlled analgesia for treatment of acute pain after uterine artery embolization. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106: 724–731.
468. Carstensen M, Moller AM. Adding ketamine to morphine for intravenous patient-controlled analgesia for acute postoperative pain: a qualitative review of randomized trials. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104: 401–406.
469. Dahaba AA, Grabner T, Rehak PH, et al. Remifentanil versus morphine analgesia and sedation for mechanically ventilated critically ill patients: a randomized double blind study. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:640–646.
470. Smith C, McEwan AI, Jhaveri R, et al. The interaction of fentanyl on the Cp50 of propofol for loss of consciousness and skin incision. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:820–828.
471. Vuyk J, Engbers FH, Burm AG, et al. Pharmacodynamic interaction between propofol and alfentanil when given for induction of anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:288–299.
472. Kazama T, Ikeda K, Morita K. Reduction by fentanyl of the Cp50 values of propofol and hemodynamic responses to various noxious stimuli. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:213–227.
473. Katoh T, Uchiyama T, Ikeda K. Effect of fentanyl on awakening concentration of sevoflurane. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:322–325.
474. Shibutani K, Inchiosa Jr MA, Sawada K, et al. Pharmacokinetic mass of fentanyl for postoperative analgesia in lean and obese patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:377–383.
475. Han T, Kim D, Kil H, et al. The effects of plasma fentanyl concentrations on propofol requirement, emergence from anesthesia, and postoperative analgesia in propofol-nitrous oxide anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1365–1371.
476. Yu AL, Critchley LA, Lee A, et al. Alfentanil dosage when inserting the classic laryngeal mask airway. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105: 684–688.
477. Vuyk J, Lim T, Engbers FH, et al. Pharmacodynamics of alfentanil as a supplement to propofol or nitrous oxide for lower abdominal surgery in female patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:1036–1045; discussion 1023A.
478. Mertens MJ, Vuyk J, Olofsen E, et al. Propofol alters the pharmacokinetics of alfentanil in healthy male volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:949–957.
479. Xue FS, Xu YC, Liu Y, et al. Different small-dose sufentanil blunting cardiovascular responses to laryngoscopy and intubation in children: a randomized, double-blind comparison. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:717–723.
480. Iannuzzi E, Iannuzzi M, Cirillo V, et al. Peri-intubation cardiovascular response during low dose remifentanil or sufentanil administration in association with propofol TCI. A double blind comparison. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2004;70:109–115.
481. Glass PS, Doherty M, Jacobs JR, et al. CP50 for sufentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:A378.
482. Thomson IR, Henderson BT, Singh K, et al. Concentration-response relationships for fentanyl and sufentanil in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:852–861.
483. Avramov MN, Smith I, White PF. Interactions between midazolam and remifentanil during monitored anesthesia care. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:1283–1289.
484. Fletcher D, Pinaud M, Scherpereel P, et al. The efficacy of intravenous 0.15 versus 0.25 mg/kg intraoperative morphine for immediate postoperative analgesia after remifentanil-based anesthesia for major surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:666–671.

485. Kochs E, Cote D, Deruyck L, et al. Postoperative pain management and recovery after remifentanil-based anaesthesia with isoflurane or propofol for major abdominal surgery. Remifentanil Study Group. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:169–173.
486. Guignard B, Coste C, Costes H, et al. Supplementing desflurane-remifentanil anesthesia with small-dose ketamine reduces perioperative opioid analgesic requirements. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:103–108. table of contents.
487. Eltzschig HK, Schroeder TH, Eissler BJ, et al. The effect of remifentanil or fentanyl on postoperative vomiting and pain in children undergoing strabismus surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1173–1177, table of contents.
488. Calderon E, Pernia A, De Antonio P, et al. A comparison of two constant-dose continuous infusions of remifentanil for severe postoperative pain. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:715–719.
489. Vuyk J, Lim T, Engbers FH, et al. The pharmacodynamic interaction of propofol and alfentanil during lower abdominal surgery in women. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:8–22.
490. Stanski DR, Shafer SL. Quantifying anesthetic drug interaction. Implications for drug dosing. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:1–5.
491. Wuesten R, Van Aken H, Glass PS, et al. Assessment of depth of anesthesia and postoperative respiratory recovery after remifentanil- versus alfentanil-based total intravenous anesthesia in patients undergoing ear-nose-throat surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94: 211–217.
492. Hogue Jr CW, Bowdle TA, O'Leary C, et al. A multicenter evaluation of total intravenous anesthesia with remifentanil and propofol for elective inpatient surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:279–285.
493. Vuyk J, Hennis PJ, Burm AG, et al. Comparison of midazolam and propofol in combination with alfentanil for total intravenous anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:645–650.
494. Engoren M, Luther G, Fenn Buderer N. A comparison of fentanyl, sufentanil, and remifentanil for fast-track cardiac anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:859–864.
495. Bell J, Sartain J, Wilkinson GA, et al. Propofol and fentanyl anaesthesia for patients with low cardiac output state undergoing cardiac surgery: comparison with high-dose fentanyl anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:162–166.
496. Howie MB, Black HA, Romanelli VA, et al. A comparison of isoflurane versus fentanyl as primary anesthetics for mitral valve surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:941–948.
497. Duncan HP, Cloote A, Weir PM, et al. Reducing stress responses in the pre-bypass phase of open heart surgery in infants and young children: a comparison of different fentanyl doses. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:556–564.
498. Takahashi M, Sugiyama K, Hori M, et al. Naloxone reversal of opioid anesthesia revisited: clinical evaluation and plasma concentration analysis of continuous naloxone infusion after anesthesia with high-dose fentanyl. *J Anaesth*. 2004;18:1–8.
499. Silbert BS, Scott DA, Evered LA, et al. A comparison of the effect of high- and low-dose fentanyl on the incidence of postoperative cognitive dysfunction after coronary artery bypass surgery in the elderly. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1137–1145.
500. Sareen J, Hudson RJ, Rosenbloom M, et al. Dose-response to anaesthetic induction with sufentanil: haemodynamic and electroencephalographic effects. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44:19–25.
501. Jain U, Body SC, Bellows W, et al. Multicenter study of target-controlled infusion of propofol-sufentanil or sufentanil-midazolam for coronary artery bypass graft surgery. Multicenter Study of Perioperative Ischemia (McSPI) Research Group. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:522–535.
502. Ahonen J, Olkkola KT, Verkkala K, et al. A comparison of remifentanil and alfentanil for use with propofol in patients undergoing minimally invasive coronary artery bypass surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1269–1274.
503. Kazmaier S, Hanekop GG, Buhre W, et al. Myocardial consequences of remifentanil in patients with coronary artery disease. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:578–583.
504. Geisler FE, de Lange S, Royston D, et al. Efficacy and safety of remifentanil in coronary artery bypass graft surgery: a randomized, double-blind dose comparison study. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17:60–68.
505. Thompson JP, Bower S, Liddle AM, et al. Perioperative pharmacokinetics of transdermal fentanyl in elderly and young adult patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:152–154.
506. Portenoy RK, Southam MA, Gupta SK, et al. Transdermal fentanyl for cancer pain. Repeated dose pharmacokinetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:36–43.
507. Sandler AN, Baxter AD, Katz J, et al. A double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of transdermal fentanyl after abdominal hysterectomy. Analgesic, respiratory, and pharmacokinetic effects. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1169–1180.
508. Grond S, Radbruch L, Lehmann KA. Clinical pharmacokinetics of transdermal opioids: focus on transdermal fentanyl. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2000;38:59–89.
509. Schmidt-Hansen M, Bromham N, Taubert M, et al. Buprenorphine for treating cancer pain. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015:CD009596.
510. Poulain P, Denier W, Douma J, et al. Efficacy and safety of transdermal buprenorphine: a randomized, placebo-controlled trial in 289 patients with severe cancer pain. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2008;36:117–125.
511. Power I. Fentanyl HCl iontophoretic transdermal system (ITS): clinical application of iontophoretic technology in the management of acute postoperative pain. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:4–11.
512. Viscusi ER, Reynolds L, Chung F, et al. Patient-controlled transdermal fentanyl hydrochloride vs intravenous morphine pump for postoperative pain: a randomized controlled trial. *Jama*. 2004;291:1333–1341.
513. Panchal SJ, Damaraju CV, Nelson WW, et al. System-related events and analgesic gaps during postoperative pain management with the fentanyl iontophoretic transdermal system and morphine intravenous patient-controlled analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1437–1441, table of contents.
514. James IG, O'Brien CM, McDonald CJ. A randomized, double-blind, double-dummy comparison of the efficacy and tolerability of low-dose transdermal buprenorphine (BuTrans seven-day patches) with buprenorphine sublingual tablets (Temgesic) in patients with osteoarthritis pain. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2010;40:266–278.
515. Aiyer R, Gulati A, Gungor S, et al. Treatment of chronic pain with various buprenorphine formulations: a systematic review of clinical studies. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:529–538.
516. Manara AR, Bodenham AR, Park GR. Analgesic efficacy of perioperative buccal morphine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:551–555.
517. Friesen RH, Lockhart CH. Oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate for preanesthetic medication of pediatric day surgery patients with and without droperidol as a prophylactic anti-emetic. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:46–51.
518. Streisand JB, Varvel JR, Stanski DR, et al. Absorption and bioavailability of oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:223–229.
519. Egan TD, Sharma A, Ashburn MA, et al. Multiple dose pharmacokinetics of oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:665–673.
520. Kharasch ED, Hoffer C, Whittington D. Influence of age on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:738–743.
521. Kharasch ED, Whittington D, Hoffer C. Influence of hepatic and intestinal cytochrome P4503A activity on the acute disposition and effects of oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:729–737.
522. Dsida RM, Wheeler M, Birmingham PK, et al. Premedication of pediatric tonsillectomy patients with oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:66–70.
523. Mystakidou K, Katsouda E, Parpa E, et al. Oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate: overview of pharmacological and clinical characteristics. *Drug Deliv*. 2006;13:269–276.
524. Zedie N, Amory DW, Wagner BK, et al. Comparison of intranasal midazolam and sufentanil premedication in pediatric outpatients. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1996;59:341–348.
525. Dale O, Hjortkjaer R, Kharasch ED. Nasal administration of opioids for pain management in adults. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46:759–770.
526. Striebel HW, Oelmann T, Spies C, et al. Patient-controlled intranasal analgesia: a method for noninvasive postoperative pain management. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:548–551.
527. Hippard HK, Govindan K, Friedman EM, et al. Postoperative analgesic and behavioral effects of intranasal fentanyl, intravenous morphine, and intramuscular morphine in pediatric patients undergoing bilateral myringotomy and placement of ventilating tubes. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:356–363.

528. Christensen KS, Cohen AE, Mermelstein FH, et al. The analgesic efficacy and safety of a novel intranasal morphine formulation (morphine plus chitosan), immediate release oral morphine, intravenous morphine, and placebo in a postsurgical dental pain model. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:2018–2024.
529. Verghese ST, Hannallah RS, Brennan M, et al. The effect of intranasal administration of remifentanil on intubating conditions and airway response after sevoflurane induction of anesthesia in children. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1176–1181.
530. Worsley MH, MacLeod AD, Brodie MJ, et al. Inhaled fentanyl as a method of analgesia. *Anaesthesia*. 1990;45:449–451.
531. Hung OR, Whynot SC, Varvel JR, et al. Pharmacokinetics of inhaled liposome-encapsulated fentanyl. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:277–284.
532. Coyne PJ, Viswanathan R, Smith TJ. Nebulized fentanyl citrate improves patients' perception of breathing, respiratory rate, and oxygen saturation in dyspnea. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;23:157–160.
533. Farr SJ, Otulana BA. Pulmonary delivery of opioids as pain therapeutics. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev*. 2006;58:1076–1088.
534. Bevans T, Deering-Rice C, Stockmann C, et al. Inhaled remifentanil in rodents. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:1831–1838.
535. Babul N, Darke AC, Anslow JA, et al. Pharmacokinetics of two novel rectal controlled-release morphine formulations. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 1992;7:400–405.
536. Lundeberg S, Beck O, Olsson GL, et al. Rectal administration of morphine in children. Pharmacokinetic evaluation after a single-dose. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:445–451.
537. Klepstad P, Kaasa S, Jystad A, et al. Immediate- or sustained-release morphine for dose finding during start of morphine to cancer patients: a randomized, double-blind trial. *Pain*. 2003;101:193–198.
538. Curtis GB, Johnson GH, Clark P, et al. Relative potency of controlled-release oxycodone and controlled-release morphine in a postoperative pain model. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1999;55:425–429.
539. Bruera E, Belzile M, Pituskin E, et al. Randomized, double-blind, cross-over trial comparing safety and efficacy of oral controlled-release oxycodone with controlled-release morphine in patients with cancer pain. *J Clin Oncol*. 1998;16:3222–3229.
540. Carvalho B, Riley E, Cohen SE, et al. Single-dose, sustained-release epidural morphine in the management of postoperative pain after elective cesarean delivery: results of a multicenter randomized controlled study. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1150–1158.
541. Carvalho B, Roland LM, Chu LF, et al. Single-dose, extended-release epidural morphine (DepoDur) compared to conventional epidural morphine for post-cesarean pain. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:176–183.
542. Gambling D, Hughes T, Martin G, et al. A comparison of Depodur, a novel, single-dose extended-release epidural morphine, with standard epidural morphine for pain relief after lower abdominal surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1065–1074.
543. Viscusi ER, Martin G, Hartrick CT, et al. Forty-eight hours of postoperative pain relief after total hip arthroplasty with a novel, extended-release epidural morphine formulation. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1014–1022.
544. Hartrick CT, Martin G, Kantor G, et al. Evaluation of a single-dose, extended-release epidural morphine formulation for pain after knee arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2006;88:273–281.
545. Atkinson Ralls L, Drover DR, Clavijo CF, et al. Prior epidural lidocaine alters the pharmacokinetics and drug effects of extended-release epidural morphine (DepoDur(R)) after cesarean delivery. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:251–258.
546. Caraco Y, Tateishi T, Guengerich FP, et al. Microsomal codeine N-demethylation: cosegregation with cytochrome P4503A4 activity. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 1996;24:761–764.
547. Nieminen TH, Hagelberg NM, Saari TI, et al. Rifampin greatly reduces the plasma concentrations of intravenous and oral oxycodone. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1371–1378.
548. Lemberg KK, Siiskonen AO, Kontinen VK, et al. Pharmacological characterization of noroxymorphone as a new opioid for spinal analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:463–470, table of contents.
549. Lemberg KK, Kontinen VK, Siiskonen AO, et al. Antinociception by spinal and systemic oxycodone: why does the route make a difference? In vitro and in vivo studies in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:801–812.
550. Lenz H, Sandvik L, Qvigstad E, et al. A comparison of intravenous oxycodone and intravenous morphine in patient-controlled postoperative analgesia after laparoscopic hysterectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1279–1283.
551. Chang SH, Maney KM, Phillips JP, et al. A comparison of the respiratory effects of oxycodone versus morphine: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled investigation. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:1007–1012.
552. Unlugenc H, Vardar MA, Tetiker S. A comparative study of the analgesic effect of patient-controlled morphine, pethidine, and tramadol for postoperative pain management after abdominal hysterectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:309–312, table of contents.
553. Nelson KE, Eisenach JC. Intravenous butorphanol, meperidine, and their combination relieve pain and distress in women in labor. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1008–1013.
554. Douma MR, Verwey RA, Kam-Endtz CE, et al. Obstetric analgesia: a comparison of patient-controlled meperidine, remifentanil, and fentanyl in labour. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:209–215.
555. Kranke P, Eberhart LH, Roewer N, et al. Single-dose parenteral pharmacological interventions for the prevention of postoperative shivering: a quantitative systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:718–727, table of contents.
556. Felden L, Walter C, Harder S, et al. Comparative clinical effects of hydromorphone and morphine: a meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:319–328.
557. Quigley C, Wiffen P. A systematic review of hydromorphone in acute and chronic pain. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2003;25:169–178.
558. Hong D, Flood P, Diaz G. The side effects of morphine and hydromorphone patient-controlled analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107: 1384–1389.
559. Prommer E. Levorphanol: the forgotten opioid. *Support Care Cancer*. 2007;15:259–264.
560. Bowdle TA, Even A, Shen DD, et al. Methadone for the induction of anesthesia: plasma histamine concentration, arterial blood pressure, and heart rate. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1692–1697, table of contents.
561. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Avram MJ, et al. Clinical effectiveness and safety of intraoperative methadone in patients undergoing posterior spinal fusion surgery: a randomized, double-blinded, controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:822–833.
562. Chamberlin KW, Cottle M, Neville R, et al. Oral oxymorphone for pain management. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2007;41:1144–1152.
563. Gimbel J, Ahdieh H. The efficacy and safety of oral immediate-release oxymorphone for postsurgical pain. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1472–1477, table of contents.
564. Morlion B, Ebner E, Weber A, et al. Influence of bolus size on efficacy of postoperative patient-controlled analgesia with piritramide. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:52–55.
565. Bouillon T, Kietzmann D, Port R, et al. Population pharmacokinetics of piritramide in surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:7–15.
566. Dieterich M, Muller-Jordan K, Stubert J, et al. Pain management after cesarean: a randomized controlled trial of oxycodone versus intravenous piritramide. *Arch Gynecol Obstet*. 2012;286:859–865.
567. Dopfmer UR, Schenk MR, Kuscic S, et al. A randomized controlled double-blind trial comparing piritramide and morphine for analgesia after hysterectomy. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2001;18:389–393.
568. Miotto K, Cho AK, Khalil MA, et al. Trends in tramadol: pharmacology, metabolism, and misuse. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:44–51.
569. Halfpenny DM, Callado LF, Hopwood SE, et al. Effects of tramadol stereoisomers on norepinephrine efflux and uptake in the rat locus coeruleus measured by real time voltammetry. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:909–915.
570. Bamigbade TA, Davidson C, Langford RM, et al. Actions of tramadol, its enantiomers and principal metabolite, O-desmethyltramadol, on serotonin (5-HT) efflux and uptake in the rat dorsal raphe nucleus. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79:352–356.
571. de Wolff MH, Leather HA, Wouters PF. Effects of tramadol on minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) of isoflurane in rats. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:780–783.
572. James MF, Heijke SA, Gordon PC. Intravenous tramadol versus epidural morphine for postthoracotomy pain relief: a placebo-controlled double-blind trial. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:87–91.
573. Wilder Smith CH, Bettiga A. The analgesic tramadol has minimal effect on gastrointestinal motor function. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1997;43:71–75.
574. Thevenin A, Beloeil H, Blanie A, et al. The limited efficacy of tramadol in postoperative patients: a study of ED80 using the continual reassessment method. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:622–627, table of contents.

575. Acalovschi I, Cristea T, Margarit S, et al. Tramadol added to lidocaine for intravenous regional anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:209–214.
576. Robaux S, Blunt C, Viel E, et al. Tramadol added to 1.5% mepivacaine for axillary brachial plexus block improves postoperative analgesia dose-dependently. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1172–1177, table of contents.
577. Zeidan A, Kassem R, Nahleh N, et al. Intraarticular tramadol-bupivacaine combination prolongs the duration of postoperative analgesia after outpatient arthroscopic knee surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:292–299.
578. Tamanai-Shacoori Z, Shacoori V, Jolivet-Gougeon A, et al. The antibacterial activity of tramadol against bacteria associated with infectious complications after local or regional anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:524–527.
579. Boyer EW, Shannon M. The serotonin syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:1112–1120.
580. van Dorp EL, Romberg R, Sarton E, et al. Morphine-6-glucuronide: morphine's successor for postoperative pain relief? *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1789–1797.
581. Osborne R, Thompson P, Joel S, et al. The analgesic activity of morphine-6-glucuronide. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1992;34:130–138.
582. Grace D, Fee JP. A comparison of intrathecal morphine-6-glucuronide and intrathecal morphine sulfate as analgesics for total hip replacement. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:1055–1059.
583. Hanna MH, Elliott KM, Fung M. Randomized, double-blind study of the analgesic efficacy of morphine-6-glucuronide versus morphine sulfate for postoperative pain in major surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:815–821.
584. van Dorp EL, Kest B, Kowalczyk WJ, et al. Morphine-6beta-glucuronide rapidly increases pain sensitivity independently of opioid receptor activity in mice and humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1356–1363.
585. Asai T, Mapleson WW, Power I. Effects of nalbuphine, pentazocine and U50488H on gastric emptying and gastrointestinal transit in the rat. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80:814–819.
586. Hirabayashi M, Doi K, Imamachi N, et al. Prophylactic pentazocine reduces the incidence of pruritus after cesarean delivery under spinal anesthesia with opioids: a prospective randomized clinical trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1930–1934.
587. Zacny JP, Lichtor JL, Klafta JM, et al. The effects of transnasal butorphanol on mood and psychomotor functioning in healthy volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:931–935.
588. Brown SM, Holtzman M, Kim T, et al. Buprenorphine metabolites, buprenorphine-3-glucuronide and norbuprenorphine-3-glucuronide, are biologically active. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:1251–1260.
589. Dahan A, Yassen A, Bijl H, et al. Comparison of the respiratory effects of intravenous buprenorphine and fentanyl in humans and rats. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:825–834.
590. Chen KY, Chen L, Mao J. Buprenorphine-naloxone therapy in pain management. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:1262–1274.
591. Falcon E, Browne CA, Leon RM, et al. Antidepressant-like effects of buprenorphine are mediated by kappa opioid receptors. *Neuropsychopharmacology*. 2016;41:2344–2351.
592. Nyhuis PW, Gastpar M, Scherbaum N. Opiate treatment in depression refractory to antidepressants and electroconvulsive therapy. *J Clin Psychopharmacol*. 2008;28:593–595.
593. Lee SC, Wang JJ, Ho ST, et al. Nalbuphine coadministered with morphine prevents tolerance and dependence. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:810–815.
594. Weiss BM, Schmid ER, Gattiker RI. Comparison of nalbuphine and fentanyl anesthesia for coronary artery bypass surgery. Hemodynamics, hormonal response, and postoperative respiratory depression. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:521–529.
595. Parker RK, Holtmann B, White PF. Patient-controlled epidural analgesia: interactions between nalbuphine and hydromorphone. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:757–763.
596. Yeh YC, Lin TF, Lin FS, et al. Combination of opioid agonist and agonist-antagonist: patient-controlled analgesia requirement and adverse events among different-ratio morphine and nalbuphine admixtures for postoperative pain. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:542–548.
597. Charuluxananan S, Kyokong O, Somboonviboon W, et al. Nalbuphine versus ondansetron for prevention of intrathecal morphine-induced pruritus after cesarean delivery. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1789–1793, table of contents.
598. Wang JJ, Ho ST, Lee SC, et al. A comparison among nalbuphine, meperidine, and placebo for treating postanesthetic shivering. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:686–689.
599. Ding Y, White PF. Comparative effects of ketorolac, dezocine, and fentanyl as adjuvants during outpatient anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:566–571.
600. Cohen RI, Edwards WT, Kezer EA, et al. Serial intravenous doses of dezocine, morphine, and nalbuphine in the management of postoperative pain for outpatients. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:533–539.
601. Sun ZT, Yang CY, Cui Z, et al. Effect of intravenous dezocine on fentanyl-induced cough during general anesthesia induction: a double-blinded, prospective, randomized, controlled trial. *J Anaesth*. 2011;25:860–863.
602. Freye E, Levy JV. Reflex activity caused by laryngoscopy and intubation is obtunded differently by meptazinol, nalbuphine and fentanyl. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:53–58.
603. Kendrick WD, Woods AM, Daly MY, et al. Naloxone versus nalbuphine infusion for prophylaxis of epidural morphine-induced pruritus. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:641–647.
604. Gan TJ, Ginsberg B, Glass PS, et al. Opioid-sparing effects of a low-dose infusion of naloxone in patient-administered morphine sulfate. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1075–1081.
605. Fukuda K, Kato S, Shoda T, et al. Partial agonistic activity of naloxone on the opioid receptors expressed from complementary deoxyribonucleic acids in Chinese hamster ovary cells. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:450–455.
606. van Dorp E, Yassen A, Sarton E, et al. Naloxone reversal of buprenorphine-induced respiratory depression. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:51–57.
607. Just B, Delva E, Camus Y, et al. Oxygen uptake during recovery following naloxone. Relationship with intraoperative heat loss. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:60–64.
608. Staessen J, Fagard R, Lijnen P, et al. Influence of opioid antagonism on plasma catecholamines in pheochromocytoma patients. *J Cardiovasc Pharmacol*. 1990;15:386–391.
609. Xiao Y, Wu L, Zhou Q, et al. A randomized clinical trial of the effects of ultra-low-dose naloxone infusion on postoperative opioid requirements and recovery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2015;59:1194–1203.
610. Belzung C, Barreau S, Agmo A. Naloxone potentiates anxiolytic-like actions of diazepam, pentobarbital and meprobamate but not those of Ro19-8022 in the rat. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2000;394:289–294.
611. Mikkelsen S, Ilkjaer S, Brennum J, et al. The effect of naloxone on ketamine-induced effects on hyperalgesia and ketamine-induced side effects in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1539–1545.
612. Hackshaw KV, Parker GA, Roberts JW. Naloxone in septic shock. *Crit Care Med*. 1990;18:47–51.
613. Boeuf B, Gauvin F, Guerguerian AM, et al. Therapy of shock with naloxone: a meta-analysis. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1910–1916.
614. Crain SM, Shen KF. Antagonists of excitatory opioid receptor functions enhance morphine's analgesic potency and attenuate opioid tolerance/dependence liability. *Pain*. 2000;84:121–131.
615. Movafegh A, Nouralishahi B, Sadeghi M, et al. An ultra-low dose of naloxone added to lidocaine or lidocaine-fentanyl mixture prolongs axillary brachial plexus blockade. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1679–1683.
616. Benzel EC, Khare V, Fowler MR. Effects of naloxone and nalmefene in rat spinal cord injury induced by the ventral compression technique. *J Spinal Disord*. 1992;5:75–77.
617. Bracken MB, Shepard MJ, Collins WF, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of methylprednisolone or naloxone in the treatment of acute spinal-cord injury. Results of the Second National Acute Spinal Cord Injury Study. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;322:1405–1411.
618. Acher CW, Wynn MM, Hoch JR, et al. Combined use of cerebral spinal fluid drainage and naloxone reduces the risk of paraplegia in thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair. *J Vasc Surg*. 1994;19:236–246; discussion 247-238.
619. Romanovsky AA, Blatteis CM. Heat stroke: opioid-mediated mechanisms. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81:2565–2570.
620. Bergasa NV. Treatment of the pruritus of cholestasis. *Curr Treat Options Gastroenterol*. 2004;7:501–508.
621. Bainton T, Fox M, Bowsher D, et al. A double-blind trial of naloxone in central post-stroke pain. *Pain*. 1992;48:159–162.
622. Abboud TK, Lee K, Zhu J, et al. Prophylactic oral naltrexone with intrathecal morphine for cesarean section: effects on adverse reactions and analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:367–370.

623. Joshi GP, Duffy L, Chehade J, et al. Effects of prophylactic nalmefene on the incidence of morphine-related side effects in patients receiving intravenous patient-controlled analgesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1007–1011.
624. Thomas J, Karver S, Cooney GA, et al. Methylnaltrexone for opioid-induced constipation in advanced illness. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:2332–2343.
625. Webster LR, Brenner DM, Barrett AC, et al. Analysis of opioid-mediated analgesia in Phase III studies of methylnaltrexone for opioid-induced constipation in patients with chronic noncancer pain. *J Pain Res*. 2015;8:771–780.
626. Murphy DB, El Behiery H, Chan VW, et al. Pharmacokinetic profile of epidurally administered methylnaltrexone, a novel peripheral opioid antagonist in a rabbit model. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:120–122.
627. Chey WD, Webster L, Sostek M, et al. Naloxegol for opioid-induced constipation in patients with noncancer pain. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:2387–2396.
628. Bovill JG. Adverse drug interactions in anesthesia. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:3S–13S.
629. Vuyk J. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic interactions between opioids and propofol. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:23S–26S.
630. Bartkowski RR, Goldberg ME, Huffnagle S, et al. Sufentanil disposition. Is it affected by erythromycin administration? *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:260–265.
631. Bartkowski RR, McDonnell TE. Prolonged alfentanil effect following erythromycin administration. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:566–568.
632. Schwieger IM, Hall RI, Hug Jr CC. Less than additive antinociceptive interaction between midazolam and fentanyl in enflurane-anesthetized dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:1060–1066.
633. Luger TJ, Hayashi T, Weiss CG, et al. The spinal potentiating effect and the supraspinal inhibitory effect of midazolam on opioid-induced analgesia in rats. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1995;275:153–162.
634. Bailey PL, Pace NL, Ashburn MA, et al. Frequent hypoxemia and apnea after sedation with midazolam and fentanyl. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:826–830.
635. Ma D, Sapsed-Byrne SM, Chakrabarti MK, et al. Synergistic interaction between the effects of propofol and midazolam with fentanyl on phrenic nerve activity in rabbits. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42:670–677.
636. Iselin Chaves IA, Flaishon R, Sebel PS, et al. The effect of the interaction of propofol and alfentanil on recall, loss of consciousness, and the bispectral index. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:949–955.
637. Sukhani R, Vazquez J, Pappas AL, et al. Recovery after propofol with and without intraoperative fentanyl in patients undergoing ambulatory gynecologic laparoscopy. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:975–981.
638. Mertens MJ, Olofsen E, Burm AG, et al. Mixed-effects modeling of the influence of alfentanil on propofol pharmacokinetics. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:795–805.
639. Haessler R, Madler C, Klasing S, et al. Propofol/fentanyl versus etomidate/fentanyl for the induction of anesthesia in patients with aortic insufficiency and coronary artery disease. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:173–180.
640. Pacheco DdaF, Romero TR, Duarte ID. Central antinociception induced by ketamine is mediated by endogenous opioids and mu- and delta-opioid receptors. *Brain Res*. 2014;1562:69–75.
641. Sethna NF, Liu M, Gracely R, et al. Analgesic and cognitive effects of intravenous ketamine-alfentanil combinations versus either drug alone after intradermal capsaicin in normal subjects. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1250–1256.
642. Reeves M, Lindholm DE, Myles PS, et al. Adding ketamine to morphine for patient-controlled analgesia after major abdominal surgery: a double-blinded, randomized controlled trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:116–120.
643. Lauretti GR, Lima IC, Reis MP, et al. Oral ketamine and transdermal nitroglycerin as analgesic adjuvants to oral morphine therapy for cancer pain management. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1528–1533.
644. Zakine J, Samarcq D, Lorne E, et al. Postoperative ketamine administration decreases morphine consumption in major abdominal surgery: a prospective, randomized, double-blind, controlled study. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1856–1861.
645. Grande LA, O'Donnell BR, Fitzgibbon DR, et al. Ultra-low dose ketamine and memantine treatment for pain in an opioid-tolerant oncology patient. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1380–1383.
646. Webb AR, Skinner BS, Leong S, et al. The addition of a small-dose ketamine infusion to tramadol for postoperative analgesia: a double-blinded, placebo-controlled, randomized trial after abdominal surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:912–917.
647. Searle NR, Martineau RJ, Conzen P, et al. Comparison of sevoflurane/fentanyl and isoflurane/fentanyl during elective coronary artery bypass surgery. Sevoflurane Venture Group. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:890–899.
648. Weiskopf RB, Eger 2nd EI, Noorani M, et al. Fentanyl, esmolol, and clonidine blunt the transient cardiovascular stimulation induced by desflurane in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1350–1355.
649. Shorten GD, Sieber T, Maslow AD, et al. Left ventricular regional wall motion and haemodynamic changes following bolus administration of pipecuronium or pancuronium to adult patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42:695–700.
650. Cote D, Martin R, Tetrault JP. Haemodynamic interactions of muscle relaxants and sufentanil in coronary artery surgery. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38:324–329.
651. McCoy EP, Maddineni VR, Elliott P, et al. Haemodynamic effects of rocuronium during fentanyl anaesthesia: comparison with vecuronium. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:703–708.
652. Loan PB, Elliott P, Mirakhur RK, et al. Comparison of the haemodynamic effects of mivacurium and atracurium during fentanyl anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:330–332.
653. Gillman PK. Monoamine oxidase inhibitors, opioid analgesics and serotonin toxicity. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:434–441.
654. Ure DS, Gillies MA, James KS. Safe use of remifentanil in a patient treated with the monoamine oxidase inhibitor phenelzine. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:414–416.
655. Beresford BJ, Glick D, Dinwiddie SH. Combination propofol-alfentanil anesthesia for electroconvulsive therapy in patients receiving monoamine oxidase inhibitors. *J Ect*. 2004;20:120–122.
656. Hasegawa AE, Zacny JP. The influence of three L-type calcium channel blockers on morphine effects in healthy volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:633–638.
657. Omote K, Kawamata M, Satoh O, et al. Spinal antinociceptive action of an N-type voltage-dependent calcium channel blocker and the synergistic interaction with morphine. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:636–643.
658. Koinig H, Wallner T, Marhofer P, et al. Magnesium sulfate reduces intra- and postoperative analgesic requirements. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:206–210.
659. Buvanendran A, McCarthy RJ, Kroin JS, et al. Intrathecal magnesium prolongs fentanyl analgesia: a prospective, randomized, controlled trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:661–666, table of contents.
660. Kroin JS, McCarthy RJ, Von Roenn N, et al. Magnesium sulfate potentiates morphine antinociception at the spinal level. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:913–917.
661. Ng A, Parker J, Toogood L, et al. Does the opioid-sparing effect of rectal diclofenac following total abdominal hysterectomy benefit the patient? *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:714–716.
662. Cepeda MS, Carr DB, Miranda N, et al. Comparison of morphine, ketorolac, and their combination for postoperative pain: results from a large, randomized, double-blind trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:1225–1232.
663. Xuerong Y, Yuguang H, Xia J, et al. Ketamine and lornoxicam for preventing a fentanyl-induced increase in postoperative morphine requirement. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:2032–2037.
664. Hong JY, Kim WO, Koo BN, et al. Fentanyl-sparing effect of acetaminophen as a mixture of fentanyl in intravenous parent-/nurse-controlled analgesia after pediatric ureteroneocystostomy. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:672–677.
665. Hiller A, Helenius I, Nurmi E, et al. Acetaminophen improves analgesia but does not reduce opioid requirement after major spine surgery in children and adolescents. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2012;37:E1225–E1231.
666. Eckhardt K, Ammon S, Hofmann U, et al. Gabapentin enhances the analgesic effect of morphine in healthy volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:185–191.
667. Hansen C, Gilron I, Hong M. The effects of intrathecal gabapentin on spinal morphine tolerance in the rat tail-flick and paw pressure tests. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1180–1184, table of contents.
668. Van Elstraete AC, Sitbon P, Mazoit JX, et al. Gabapentin prevents delayed and long-lasting hyperalgesia induced by fentanyl in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:484–494.

669. Bornemann-Cimenti H, Lederer AJ, Wejbora M, et al. Preoperative pregabalin administration significantly reduces postoperative opioid consumption and mechanical hyperalgesia after transperitoneal nephrectomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:845–849.
670. Luccarini P, Perrier L, Degoulange C, et al. Synergistic antinociceptive effect of amitriptyline and morphine in the rat orofacial formalin test. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:690–696.
671. Kozer E, Levichek Z, Hoshino N, et al. The effect of amitriptyline, gabapentin, and carbamazepine on morphine-induced hypercarbia in rabbits. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1216–1222.
672. Ho KY, Tay W, Yeo MC, et al. Duloxetine reduces morphine requirements after knee replacement surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:371–376.
673. Babenco HD, Blouin RT, Conard PF, et al. Diphenylhydramine increases ventilatory drive during alfentanil infusion. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:642–647.
674. McKay A, Gottschalk A, Ploppa A, et al. Systemic lidocaine decreased the perioperative opioid analgesic requirements but failed to reduce discharge time after ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1805–1808.
675. Liu Q, Gold MS. Opioid-induced loss of local anesthetic potency in the rat sciatic nerve. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:755–764.

25 Nonopioid Pain Medications

LUCY LIN CHEN and JIANREN MAO

KEY POINTS

- With a better understanding of pain pathways and mechanisms, it has been recognized that ion channels play an important role in the transduction, transmission, and modulation of nociceptive signals. This opens a new avenue of developing novel therapeutic agents for the treatment of acute or chronic pain, particularly neuropathic pain.
- Although the exact mechanism of action remains unclear for many drugs listed in this chapter, they often are a component of a multidrug treatment strategy that has been increasingly used for the management of chronic pain conditions.

Introduction

Recent advances in our understanding of pain mechanisms have enabled us to treat acute and chronic pain conditions with a variety of nonopioid pain medications. The option of using nonopioid pain medications is particularly meaningful given the growing global concern over prescription opioid abuse and overdose. Besides acetaminophen and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), several new categories of nonopioid pain medications can be used for the management of acute or chronic pain and, in particular, neuropathic pain. Examples of these nonopioid pain medications include drugs that block voltage-sensitive sodium channels and voltage-sensitive calcium channels, facilitate opening of chloride channels, increase function of the endogenous γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) system, and modulate the N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor activity. In particular, ion channel blockers possess the antihyperalgesic effect by targeting specific mechanisms of pathologic pain, although most analgesics in this category do not necessarily produce the typical analgesic effect (i.e., raising the pain threshold above the normal baseline).[1]

This chapter briefly discusses NSAIDs and acetaminophen and focuses on describing several ion channel blockers that are commonly used in the treatment of pain conditions, as listed in Box 25.1. They are grouped into two categories: calcium channel blockers and sodium channel blockers.

Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs

NSAIDs include ibuprofen, naproxen, indomethacin, ketorolac, and diclofenac and are examples of a class of medication commonly used as analgesic to reduce myofascial pain, postoperative pain, and chronic pain conditions. In a recent Cochrane review of 16 randomized, controlled clinical trials (2144 patients), pain relief and function restoration were compared in patients with acute soft tissue injury treated with oral NSAIDs and other oral analgesics including acetaminophen with or without opioids. The analgesic effect was similar between NSAIDs and acetaminophen or opioid, and there were no differences in functional restoration at 7 days,[2] but the patients who were taking opioids reported more adverse side effects.[3] Although acetaminophen, indomethacin, or diclofenac produced similar pain reduction, the combination of acetaminophen and diclofenac showed slightly better pain reduction.[4] Intravenous ketorolac (15 or 30 mg) is a common medication of choice during the early postoperative period if there are no contraindications, such as renal insufficiency.[5] Ketorolac has also been successfully used in pediatric surgical patients.[6,7] A recent metaanalysis also found that NSAIDs were equivalent to opioids or paracetamol in the relief of acute renal colic pain.[8]

The cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) inhibitors are considered an alternative to NSAIDs (mixed COX-1/COX-2 inhibitors) while possessing reduced gastrointestinal side effects. However, COX-2 inhibition is associated with increased risk of adverse cardiovascular events, although recent clinical studies, including the data from the PRECISION trial that examined long-term cardiovascular safety issues, support the notion that both NSAIDs and COX-2 carry a certain degree of cardiovascular risk.[9]

Acetaminophen

For many decades, oral acetaminophen has been widely used as an analgesic to treat mild to moderate pain. Recently, intravenous acetaminophen has become available in the United States. Results of a randomized trial of patients who had colorectal surgery indicated that

BOX 25.1 Ion Channel Blockers as Pain Medications (Recommended Dosing)

Calcium Channel Blockers

Gabapentin: Starting dose 100–300 mg/day; titrating up to 1800–3600 mg/day
Pregabalin: Starting dose: 75–150 mg/day; titrating up to 450–600 mg/day
Zonisamide: Starting dose: 50–100 mg/day; titrating up to 450 mg/day
Ziconotide: Starting dose: 0.1 μg/h; titrating up to 0.4 μg/h
Levetiracetam: Starting dose: 250–500 mg/day; titrating up to 2000 mg/day

Sodium Channel Blockers

Lidocaine: Used in a lidocaine test: 1 mg/kg via slow intravenous push or drip
Mexiletine: Starting dose: 150–300 mg/day; titrating up to 600 mg/day
Carbamazepine: Starting dose: 100 mg/day; titrating up to 600 mg/day
Oxcarbazepine: Starting dose: 150 mg/day; titrating up to 900 mg/day
Lamotrigine: Starting dose: 25–50 mg/day; titrating up to 250–500 mg/day
Topiramate: Starting dose: 50–100 mg/day; titrating up to 300–400 mg/day.

intravenous acetaminophen decreased postoperative opioid consumption, reduced hospital stay, improved pain control, shortened time to return of bowel function, and lowered the rate of postoperative ileus.[10] Similar results were found after procedures for posterior spinal fusion,[11] craniotomy,[12] vitrectomy,[13] esophagectomy,[14,15] and total joint arthroplasty.[16]

Compared with an opioids-only option for postoperative pain management in adolescents with idiopathic scoliosis, patients treated with intravenous acetaminophen plus ketorolac consumed less opioids and had less severe constipation.[17] A retrospective analysis of the results of the Premier Database of 61,017 cholecystectomy patients showed that 31,133 (51%) of the patients who received intravenous acetaminophen had experienced a shorter length of hospital stay, a decrease in hospitalization costs, a reduced average daily morphine-equivalent dose, and lower rates of respiratory depression, nausea, and vomiting.[18] However, several studies have failed to show that intravenous acetaminophen achieved the positive results as described here.[19-21] The hepatic side effect is a significant concern for those with long-term acetaminophen use, particularly with alcohol. A recent analysis of nine prospective cohort studies has also linked long-term acetaminophen use with an increased risk of adverse neurodevelopmental outcomes following prenatal acetaminophen exposure.[22]

Calcium Channel Blockers

Opening of calcium channels is an important step of synaptic transmission because it facilitates release of neurotransmitters and neuromodulators from presynaptic sites. Changes in intracellular calcium concentration also modulate cell membrane excitability and initiate a cascade of intracellular responses. Therefore blocking calcium channels can play a significant role in modulating both nociceptive and antinociceptive processes. Drugs that reduce calcium influx into the intracellular compartment of neuronal or glial cells may be used as adjunctive or alternative medications for the treatment of various pain conditions, particularly chronic neuropathic pain conditions. Most calcium channel blockers used as antihypertensive drugs may be suitable for chronic pain management because of their side effects and site of action. Gabapentin, pregabalin, zonisamide, ziconotide, and levetiracetam are examples of drugs that block calcium channels as a part of their mechanisms of action and have been used in pain management.

GABAPENTIN

Gabapentin was initially approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) as an anticonvulsant (partial seizure) and is currently extensively used for the treatment of neuropathic pain conditions. Although gabapentin's mechanism of action is unclear, it does block voltage-gated calcium channels by binding to the α_2-δ subunit,[23] thereby reducing calcium influx. By blocking calcium influx, gabapentin reduces the release of glutamate and substance P from primary nociceptive afferents, thereby modulating nociceptive transmission. Gabapentin has been used to treat painful diabetic neuropathy, postherpetic neuralgia, trigeminal neuralgia, complex regional pain syndrome, and painful peripheral neuropathies caused by human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), cancer, multiple sclerosis, and spinal cord injury.

Painful diabetic neuropathy is a debilitating condition commonly seen in patients with diabetes mellitus. Up to 25% of patients with diabetes may suffer from spontaneous pain, allodynia, hyperalgesia, paresthesias, and other pain symptoms.[24] Postherpetic neuralgia is another common neuropathic pain condition. The incidence of postherpetic neuralgia is estimated to be 9% to 34%, which increases significantly with age. Multiple classes of drugs have been tried to treat pain associated with painful diabetic neuralgia and postherpetic neuralgia, including tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) such as amitriptyline, nortriptyline, imipramine, and desipramine. Because of the significant side effects of TCAs, gabapentin has been increasingly used in the treatment of these pain conditions.

Gabapentin is effective in reducing several salient symptoms of neuropathic pain such as burning and shooting pain, allodynia, and hyperalgesia.[25,26] The number needed to achieve at least 50% pain relief with antidepressants and gabapentin are 3.4 and 2.7, respectively.[27] Although both antidepressants and gabapentin may provide moderate pain relief, antidepressants may have more major side effects.

The recommended gabapentin dose range is 1800 to 3600 mg/day, starting at 100 to 300 mg/day and increasing 100 to 300 mg every 1 to 3 days. Adverse effects are usually mild to moderate and typically subside within 7 to 10 days after the treatment is started; however, serious side effects can occur including mood swing, edema, and suicidality. In general, a slow titration process can significantly reduce some otherwise intolerable side effects, such as dizziness. In addition to its use as a monotherapy, gabapentin has been extensively used in multimodal drug therapy in conjunction with TCAs and other anticonvulsants.[1] Multimodal drug therapy provides better pain control, requiring a smaller dose range for each drug included in the regimen. Gabapentin also can treat complex regional pain syndrome, phantom pain, trigeminal neuralgia, cancer-related neuropathic pain, multiple sclerosis, spinal cord injury, HIV-associated painful sensory neuropathy, and glossopharyngeal neuralgia.

The role of gabapentin in acute postoperative pain management remains unclear.

PREGABALIN

Pregabalin is an anticonvulsant that has a high affinity to the α_2-δ subunit of voltage-sensitive calcium channels. The mechanism of action of pregabalin is similar to that of gabapentin. Pregabalin decreases calcium influx, thereby reducing the release of excitatory neurotransmitters, including glutamate, substance P, and calcitonin gene–related peptide. Pregabalin has no activity on GABA or benzodiazepine receptors; therefore it has no significant drug-drug interactions with such agents.

Pregabalin has been used to treat painful diabetic neuropathy and postherpetic neuralgia, with a significant therapeutic effect.[28,29] It has a quick onset, and, in some cases, pain reduction can be expected on the first day of treatment with pregabalin (300 mg/day). Sustainable sleep improvement is also observed 1 week after the therapy is initiated. Common side effects are dizziness, somnolence, and mild to moderate peripheral edema.[30] Other concerns over pregabalin include behavioral changes such as mood swing and suicidality. Before starting pregabalin, it is recommended to check the baseline creatinine level. Moreover, pregabalin (at an average dose of 450 mg/day) is effective in patients with fibromyalgia, who often have clinical presentations including diffuse musculoskeletal pain, sleep disturbance, and fatigue.

ZONISAMIDE

Zonisamide blocks both voltage-sensitive sodium channels and N-type calcium channels. Studies suggest that zonisamide may be used to treat mania, Parkinson disease, and poststroke central pain or to provide migraine prophylaxis.[31,32] Its possible mechanisms of action include modulation of monoamine neurotransmitter release and free radical scavenging. Zonisamide is effective for the treatment of painful diabetic neuropathy (540 mg/day). The tolerability of zonisamide is difficult to assess because it is often used in multimodal drug therapy. Thus the data on the effectiveness and side effects of zonisamide remain limited.

ZICONOTIDE

Ziconotide is a synthetic peptide analogue of omega conotoxin derived from a marine snail, *Conus magus*. Ziconotide potently and selectively blocks N-type voltage-sensitive calcium channels. This drug is approved only for intrathecal use in patients with severe pain who are refractory to other treatment options, including intrathecal morphine. In early clinical trials, ziconotide exhibited severe central nervous system and psychiatric adverse effects with an initial intrathecal infusion rate of 0.4 μg/h and frequent dosing titration.[33] More recently, ziconotide has been shown to be effective for chronic pain conditions resulting from cancer, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, and trigeminal neuralgia.[34,35] The role of ziconotide in postoperative pain management is less clear. Given ziconotide's significant side effects and restrictive delivery route, its routine use in acute postoperative pain management is not well justified.

The initial infusion rate of ziconotide should start at 0.1 μg/h intrathecally, with a slow titration of no more than 2 to 3 times the initial dose per week. An implanted intrathecal infusion system is required for the long-term use of this therapy if the initial ziconotide trial is effective.[36] Patients with severe psychiatric disorders may not be proper candidates for this therapy. On the other hand, ziconotide may be advantageous over intrathecal morphine because patients do not develop tolerance after a prolonged use of ziconotide. However, adverse neurologic effects associated with ziconotide therapy will require careful patient selection and monitoring. Using a smaller dose increment may help to avoid systemic toxicity.

LEVETIRACETAM

Levetiracetam is an anticonvulsant approved by the FDA for treatment of epilepsy.[37] Its mechanisms of action are less clear because it may have effects on several neurotransmitter systems, including dopaminergic, glutamatergic, and GABAergic systems. But at least one of its mechanisms of action is due to inhibition of N-type voltage-sensitive calcium channels. Levetiracetam improves neoplastic plexopathies, painful peripheral neuropathy, and postherpetic neuralgia. It also has been used in migraine headache prophylaxis. The dose range is 500 to 2000 mg/day. At this dose range, levetiracetam is well tolerated in clinical trials. Common adverse effects are dry eyes and dizziness.[38]

Sodium Channel Blockers

Sodium channels are primarily involved in nerve conduction. Sodium channels can be divided into two general categories based on their sensitivity to tetrodotoxin (TTX): TTX-sensitive (TTX-S) and TTX-resistant (TTX-R) sodium channels. TTX-S sodium channels are expressed mainly in large and medium dorsal root ganglion neurons, whereas TTX-R sodium channels are expressed mainly in small-diameter dorsal root ganglion neurons, including C-afferent neurons. Expression of both TTX-S and TTX-R sodium channels is likely to be altered when peripheral nerves are injured or severed (axotomy), producing aberrant high-frequency spontaneous ectopic discharges. Sodium channel blockers at a proper dose range are believed to suppress ectopic discharges without blocking normal nerve conduction, which forms the basis of using sodium channel blockers in the treatment of chronic pain conditions, particularly neuropathic pain. Selective Nav 1.7 and Nav 1.8 sodium channel blockers are being investigated for possible clinical applications. Currently, several representative sodium channel blockers include lidocaine, mexiletine, carbamazepine, oxcarbazepine, lamotrigine, and topiramate.[39]

LIDOCAINE

Lidocaine is a local anesthetic and cardiac antiarrhythmic. Since the 1980s, intravenous administration of lidocaine has been used as a diagnostic tool and, in some cases, a therapeutic tool for intractable neuropathic pain.[39] This treatment modality has been shown to improve chronic pain conditions induced by neurologic diseases, including stroke, neurogenic facial pain, and myofascial pain.[40,41] Up to 78% of cases are associated with a positive outcome when intravenous lidocaine is used.[42] A major pitfall of intravenous lidocaine treatment is its short duration, which requires frequent treatment sessions.

Topical 5% lidocaine patch and over-the-counter topical lidocaine gel or cream provide a local analgesic effect with a minimum systemic effect. Lidocaine patch has been used in patients with neuropathic pain conditions such as painful diabetic neuropathy, postherpetic neuralgia, and peripheral neuropathies. It reduces allodynia and hyperalgesia associated with such conditions.[43] Although the evidence remains weak and unclear, lidocaine patch has been used to treat chronic lower back pain. In some cases, lidocaine patch has become a part of multimodal drug therapy, such as a combination of topical lidocaine patch and gabapentin.[1]

MEXILETINE

Mexiletine is an oral lidocaine congener. It may be used to overcome the shortcoming of transient pain relief with intravenous lidocaine. In many cases, intravenous lidocaine is used as a test to determine whether the intended lidocaine treatment is effective. When a positive response is achieved, oral mexiletine is administered to maintain the therapeutic effect.[44,45] This treatment regimen reduces pain due to painful diabetic neuropathy refractory to other therapies.[46] Mexiletine alone has been used to treat phantom pain and pain after spinal cord injury.[46]

Fibromyalgia and myofascial pain are other clinical conditions that may be responsive to a lidocaine and mexiletine treatment regimen. In addition, anecdotal reports suggest that oral mexiletine may be used to treat primary erythromelalgia, metastasis bone pain, and headaches.

CARBAMAZEPINE

A primary mechanism of action of carbamazepine is sodium channel blockade, which decreases spontaneous firing of Aδ-fibers and C-fibers. Carbamazepine has been approved to treat trigeminal neuralgia, a neuropathic pain condition characterized by episodic lightning, lancinating, or shooting pain along the trigeminal nerve distribution.[47] Carbamazepine has been used for decades and was superior to placebo in a number of clinical trials. It was once considered a "gold standard" and remains a treatment of choice for trigeminal neuralgia, with a response rate of 89% within 5 to 14 days after the treatment is initiated. However, carbamazepine has significant drug-drug interactions and a long list of adverse effects, including central nervous system side effects. In the United States the FDA has issued black box warnings about this drug, including aplastic anemia and agranulocytosis. Therefore its clinical utility is rather limited considering that newer anticonvulsants are available with fewer and less severe side effects.

OXCARBAZEPINE

Oxcarbazepine is an analogue of carbamazepine, which acts as a sodium channel blocker and stabilizes neuronal membrane. In contrast to carbamazepine, oxcarbazepine has fewer drug-drug interactions and side effects, particularly severe blood dyscrasias. The most common side effects of oxcarbazepine are dizziness, drowsiness, hypotension, nausea, and asymptomatic mild hyponatremia. Oxcarbazepine has been used to treat intractable trigeminal neuralgia refractory to other anticonvulsants.[48] With a median dose of 750 mg/day, this novel drug appears to have the same efficacy as carbamazepine in the treatment of trigeminal neuralgia but a much lower incidence of side effects.

Oxcarbazepine also reduces pain associated with painful diabetic neuropathy and complex regional pain syndrome. For patients with postherpetic neuralgia that is unresponsive to carbamazepine and gabapentin, oxcarbazepine, starting at 150 mg/day and titrating up to a maintenance dose of 900 mg/day, may be a promising drug because it significantly reduces allodynia related to postherpetic neuralgia. Oxcarbazepine appears to be well tolerated and may serve as a reasonable alternative to other sodium channel blockers.

LAMOTRIGINE

Lamotrigine has multiple mechanisms of action, although it also blocks both sodium and calcium channels.[49] Lamotrigine is effective in the treatment of trigeminal neuralgia, neuralgia after nerve section, and pain related to HIV neuropathy. With a daily lamotrigine dose of 75 to 300 mg, the intensity of burning and shooting pain is relieved by 33% to 100%, and the frequency of shooting pain attack is reduced by 80% to 100%. In patients with spinal cord injury, lamotrigine decreases overall pain sensation to less than the level of injury in patients with incomplete spinal cord injury but has little effect on spontaneous and evoked pain in patients with complete spinal cord injury.

A typical starting dose for lamotrigine is 25 to 50 mg/day, which can be slowly titrated up over 2 to 3 weeks to 250 to 500 mg/day in divided doses. Tolerability is usually low at high doses (>300 mg/day). Up to 10% of patients may have rashes after taking this medication, with a 3 in 1000 incidence of Stevens-Johnson syndrome. Other side effects are mild dizziness, somnolence, nausea, and constipation.

TOPIRAMATE

Topiramate is another drug that has multiple mechanisms of action. However, at least one of its actions is to block voltage-sensitive sodium channels. It also may potentiate GABA inhibitory action, block voltage-sensitive calcium channels, and inhibit subtypes of glutamate receptors (non-NMDA receptors). Topiramate can cause significant weight loss (up to 7%), a side effect that could be beneficial for certain patient populations with chronic pain conditions. Topiramate, at a daily dose of 400 mg or greater, attenuates neuropathic pain, improves sleep quality, and reduces body weight.[48] When used to treat chronic lumbar radicular pain, the effect of topiramate is inconclusive because of a high dropout rate and frequent side effects in clinical trials. However, topiramate 30 to 80 mg/day is superior to placebo for the treatment of chronic tension, migraine, and cluster headaches with a substantial tolerability.[50]

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Vorobeychik Y, et al. *CNS Drugs*. 2011;25:1023.
2. Lyon C, et al. *J Fam Pract*. 2018;67(2):110.
3. Fathi M, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2015;33(9):1205.
4. Woo WW, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2005;46(4):352.
5. Duttchen KM, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2017;41:11.
6. Dorman RM, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2017.
7. Marzuillo P. *Acta Paediatr*. 2017.
8. Pathan SA, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2017.
9. Walker C, et al. *Postgrad Med*. 2018;130(1):55–71.
10. Aryaie AH, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2018.
11. Olbrecht VA, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2017.
12. Artime CA, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2017.
13. Sadrolsadat SH, et al. *Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;7(3):e13639.
14. Ohkura Y, et al. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2016;95(44):e5352.
15. Ohkura Y, et al. *Surg Today*. 2017.
16. Sun L, et al. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2018;97(6):e9751.
17. Chidambaran V, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018.
18. Hansen RN, et al. *Curr Med Res Opin*. 2018:1–7.
19. Sola R, et al. *Eur J Pediatr Surg*. 2018.
20. Towers CV, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2017.
21. Huang PS, et al. *J Arthroplasty*. 2017.
22. Bauer AZ, et al. *Horm Behav*. 2018.
23. Mao J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:680.
24. Backonja MM, et al. *JAMA*. 1831;280:1998.
25. Rauck RL, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2013;46:219.
26. Beal B, et al. *Clin Interv Aging*. 2012;7:249.
27. Collins SL, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2000;20:449.
28. Lesser H, et al. *Neurology*. 2004;63:2104.
29. Boyle J, et al. *Diabetes Care*. 2012;35:2451.
30. Jensen MP, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2012;28:683.
31. Bialer M. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev*. 2012;64:887.
32. Kothare SV, et al. *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol*. 2008;4:493.
33. Wermeling DP, et al. *Phamacotherapy*. 2005;25:1084.
34. Backonja MM. *Semin Neurol*. 2012;32:264.
35. Michiels WB, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2011;27:352.
36. Rauck RL, et al. *Pain Pract*. 2009;9:327.
37. Lukyanetz EA, et al. *Epilepsia*. 2002;43:9.
38. Crepeau AZ, et al. *Expert Rev Neurother*. 2010;10:159.
39. Mao J, et al. *Pain*. 2000;87:7.
40. Nikolajsen L, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2010;26:788.
41. Carroll I, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2007;23:702.
42. Peterson P, et al. *Neurol Res*. 1986;8:189.
43. Argoff CE, et al. *Curr Med Res Opin*. 2004;20:S21.
44. Jungehulsing GJ, et al. *Eur J Neurol*. 2013;20:331.
45. Holbech JV, et al. *Eur J Pain*. 2011;15:608.
46. O'Connor AB, et al. *Am J Med*. 2009;122:S22.
47. Cruccu G, et al. *CNS Drugs*. 2013;27:91.
48. Wang QP, et al. *CNS Drugs*. 2011;25:847.
49. Wiffen PJ, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;16(2):CD006044.
50. Hershey LA, et al. *Curr Treat Options Neurol*. 2013;15:56.

References

1. Vorobeychik Y, Gordin V, Mao J, Chen L. Combination therapy for neuropathic pain. *CNS Drugs*. 2011;25:1023–1034.
2. Lyon C, Piggott S, Langner S, DeSanto K. Clinical inquiry: how do oral NSAIDs compare to other oral analgesics right after an acute musculoskeletal injury? *J Fam Pract*. 2018;67(2):110–111. https://doi.org/jfp_6702i [pii].
3. Fathi M, Zare MA, Bahmani HR, Zehtabchi S. Comparison of oral oxycodone and naproxen in soft tissue injury pain control: a double-blind randomized clinical trial. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2015;33(9):1205–1208. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajem.2015.05.021.
4. Woo WW, Man SY, Lam PK, Rainer TH. Randomized double-blind trial comparing oral paracetamol and oral nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs for treating pain after musculoskeletal injury. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2005;46(4):352–361.
5. Duttchen KM, Lo A, Walker A, et al. Intraoperative ketorolac dose of 15mg versus the standard 30mg on early postoperative pain after spine surgery: a randomized, blinded, non-inferiority trial. *J Clin Anesth*. 2017;41:11–15. https://doi.org/S0952-8180(17)30430-0 [pii].
6. Dorman RM, Ventro G, Cairo SB, Vali K, Rothstein DH. The use of perioperative ketorolac in the surgical treatment of pediatric spontaneous pneumothorax. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2017. https://doi.org/S0022–3468(17)30369-X [pii].
7. Marzuillo P, Calligaris L, Amoroso S, Barbi E. Narrative review shows that the short-term use of ketorolac is safe and effective in the management of moderate-to-severe pain in children. *Acta Paediatr*. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1111/apa.14189.
8. Pathan SA, Mitra B, Cameron PA. A Systematic review and meta-analysis comparing the efficacy of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, opioids, and paracetamol in the treatment of acute renal colic. *Eur Urol*. 2017. https://doi.org/S0302-2838(17)30977-6 [pii].
9. Walker C, Biasucci LM. Cardiovascular safety of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs revisited. *Postgrad Med*. 2018;130(1):55–71. https://doi.org/10.1080/00325481.2018.1412799.
10. Aryaie AH, Lalezari S, Sergent WK, et al. Decreased opioid consumption and enhance recovery with the addition of IV acetaminophen in colorectal patients: a prospective, multi-institutional, randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled study (DOCIVA study). *Surg Endosc*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00464-018-6062-y.
11. Olbrecht VA, Ding L, Spruance K, Hossain M, Sadhasivam S, Chidambaran V. Intravenous acetaminophen reduces length of stay via mediation of postoperative opioid consumption following posterior spinal fusion in a pediatric cohort. *Clin J Pain*. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1097/AJP.0000000000000576.
12. Artime CA, Aijazi H, Zhang H, et al. Scheduled intravenous acetaminophen improves patient satisfaction with postcraniotomy pain management: a prospective, randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind study. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1097/ANA.0000000000000461.
13. Sadrolsadat SH, Yousefshahi F, Ostadalipour A, Mohammadi FZ, Makarem J. Effect of intravenous acetaminophen on postoperative pain in vitrectomy: a randomized, double-blind, clinical trial. *Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;7(3):e13639. https://doi.org/10.5812/aapm.13639.
14. Ohkura Y, Haruta S, Shindoh J, Tanaka T, Ueno M, Udagawa H. Effectiveness of postoperative intravenous acetaminophen (Acelio) after gastrectomy: a propensity score-matched analysis. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2016;95(44):e5352. https://doi.org/10.1097/MD.0000000000005352.
15. Ohkura Y, Shindoh J, Ueno M, Iizuka T, Haruta S, Udagawa H. A new postoperative pain management (intravenous acetaminophen: acelio(R)) leads to enhanced recovery after esophagectomy: a propensity score-matched analysis. *Surg Today*. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00595-017-1616-5.
16. Sun L, Zhu X, Zou J, Li Y, Han W. Comparison of intravenous and oral acetaminophen for pain control after total knee and hip arthroplasty: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2018;97(6):e9751. https://doi.org/10.1097/MD.0000000000009751.
17. Chidambaran V, Subramanyam R, Ding L, et al. Cost-effectiveness of intravenous acetaminophen and ketorolac in adolescents undergoing idiopathic scoliosis surgery. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1111/pan.13329.
18. Hansen RN, Pham AT, Boing EA, et al. Hospitalization costs and resource allocation in cholecystectomy with use of intravenous versus oral acetaminophen. *Curr Med Res Opin*. 2018:1–7. https://doi.org/10.1080/03007995.2017.1412301.
19. Sola R Jr, Desai AA, Gonzalez KW, et al. Does intravenous acetaminophen improve postoperative pain control after laparoscopic appendectomy for perforated appendicitis? A prospective randomized trial. *Eur J Pediatr Surg*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-0037-1615276.
20. Towers CV, Shelton S, van Nes J, et al. Preoperative cesarean delivery intravenous acetaminophen treatment for postoperative pain control: a randomized double-blinded placebo control trial. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2017. https://doi.org/S0002-9378(17)32692-32693 [pii].
21. Huang PS, Gleason SM, Shah JA, Buros AF, Hoffman DA. Efficacy of intravenous acetaminophen for postoperative analgesia in primary total knee arthroplasty. *J Arthroplasty*. 2017. https://doi.org/S0883-5403(17)30966-X [pii].
22. Bauer AZ, Kriebel D, Herbert MR, Bornehag CG, Swan SH. Prenatal paracetamol exposure and child neurodevelopment: a review. *Horm Behav*. 2018. https://doi.org/S0018-506X(17)30454-3 [pii].
23. Mao J, Chen LL. Gabapentin in pain management. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:680–683.
24. Backonja M, Beydoun A, Edwards KR, et al. Gabapentin for the symptomatic treatment of painful neuropathy in patients with diabetes mellitus: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 1998;280:1831–1836.
25. Rauck RL, Irving GA, Wallace MS. Once-daily gastroretentive gabapentin for postherpetic neuralgia: integrated efficacy, time to onset of pain relief and safety analyses of data from two phase 3 multicenter, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled studies. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2013;46:219–228.
26. Beal B, Moeller-Bertram T, Schilling JM. Gabapentin for once-daily treatment of post-herpetic neuralgia: a review. *Clin Interv Aging*. 2012;7:249–255.
27. Collins SL, Moore RA, McQuay HJ. Antidepressants and anticonvulsants for diabetic neuropathy and postherpetic neuralgia: a quantitative systematic review. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2000;20:449–458.
28. Lesser H, Sharma U, LaMoreaux L. Pregabalin relieves symptoms of painful diabetic neuropathy: a randomized controlled trial. *Neurology*. 2004;63:2104–2110.
29. Boyle J, Eriksson ME, Gribble L, et al. Randomized, placebo-controlled comparison of amitriptyline, duloxetine, and pregabalin in patients with chronic diabetic peripheral neuropathic pain: impact on pain, polysomnographic sleep, daytime functioning, and quality of life. *Diabetes Care*. 2012;35:2451–2458.
30. Jensen MP, Gammaitoni AR, Bolognese JA, et al. The pain quality response profile of pregabalin in the treatment of neuropathic pain. *Clin J Pain*. 2012;28:683–686.
31. Bialer M. Chemical properties of antiepileptic drugs (AEDs). *Adv Drug Deliv Rev*. 2012;64:887–895.
32. Kothare SV, Kaleyias J. Zonisamide: review of pharmacology, clinical efficacy, tolerability, and safety. *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol*. 2008;4:493–506.
33. Wermeling DP. Ziconotide, an intrathecally administered N-type calcium channel antagonist for the treatment of chronic pain. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2005;25:1084–1094.
34. Backonja MM. Neuropathic pain therapy. From bench to bedside. *Semin Neurol*. 2012;32:264–268.
35. Michiels WB, McGlthlen GL, Platt BJ, Grigsby EJ. Trigeminal neuralgia relief with intrathecal ziconotide. *Clin J Pain*. 2011;7:352–354.
36. Rauck RL, Wallace MS, Burton AW. Intrathecal ziconotide for neuropathic pain: a review. *Pain Pract*. 2009;9:327–337.
37. Lukyanetz EA, Shkryl VM, Kostyuk PG. Selective blockade of N-type calcium channels by levetiracetam. *Epilepsia*. 2002;43:9–18.
38. Crepeau AZ, Treiman DM. Levetiracetam: a comprehensive review. *Expert Rev Neurother*. 2010;10:159–171.
39. Mao J, Chen LL. Systemic lidocaine for neuropathic pain relief. *Pain*. 2000;87:7–17.
40. Nikolajsen L, Black JA, Kroner K. Neuroma removal for neuropathic pain: efficacy and predictive value of lidocaine infusion. *Clin J Pain*. 2010;26:788–793.
41. Carroll I, Gaeta R, Mackey S. Multivariate analysis of chronic pain patients undergoing lidocaine infusions: increasing pain severity and advancing age predict likelihood of clinically meaningful analgesia. *Clin J Pain*. 2007;23:702–706.

42. Petersen P, Kastrup J, Zeeberg I. Chronic pain treatment with intravenous lidocaine. *Neurol Res*. 1986;8:189–190.
43. Argoff CE, Galer BS, Jensen MP. Effectiveness of the lidocaine patch 5% on pain qualities in three chronic pain states: assessment with the neuropathic pain scale. *Curr Med Res Opin*. 2004;20(suppl 2):S21–S28.
44. Jungehulsing GJ, Israel H, Safar N, et al. Levetiracetam in patients with central neuropathic post-stroke pain: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Eur J Neurol*. 2013;20:331–337.
45. Holbech JV, Otto M, Bach FW. The anticonvulsant levetiracetam for the treatment of pain in polyneuropathy: a randomized, placebo-controlled, cross-over trial. *Eur J Pain*. 2011;15:608–614.
46. O'Connor AB, Dworkin RH. Treatment of neuropathic pain: an overview of recent guidelines. *Am J Med*. 2009;122(suppl 10):S22–S32.
47. Cruccu G, Truini A. Refractory trigeminal neuralgia: non-surgical treatment options. *CNS Drugs*. 2013;27:91–96.
48. Wang QP, Bai M. Topiramate versus carbamazepine for the treatment of classical trigeminal neuralgia: a meta-analysis. *CNS Drugs*. 2011;5:847–857.
49. Wiffen PJ, Derry S, Moore RA. Lamotrigine for acute and chronic pain. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;16(2):CD006044.
50. Hershey LA, Bednarczyk EM. Treatment of headache in the elderly. *Curr Treat Options Neurol*. 2013;15:56–62.

26

Intravenous Drug Delivery Systems

MICHEL MRF STRUYS, ANTHONY RAY ABSALOM, and
STEVEN L. SHAFER

KEY POINTS

- The pharmacokinetics of anesthetic drugs are described by multicompartment models. Accurate intravenous drug delivery requires adjusting the maintenance infusion rates to take into account the accumulation of the drug in the peripheral tissues.
- *Biophase* is the site of action of a drug. Initiation, maintenance, and titration of intravenous anesthetics must account for the delay in equilibration between plasma and the site of drug effect.
- Some drug effects directly reflect the concentration of the drug in the biophase (direct-effect models). Other drug effects reflect the alteration of feedback systems by anesthetics (indirect-effect models). The influence of opioids on ventilation reflects the dynamic influence of opioids on the feedback between ventilation and carbon dioxide and is thus an example of an indirect drug effect.
- The target concentration in the effect site is the same as the target concentration in plasma at steady state. Effect-site requirements are influenced by patient physiologic characteristics, surgical stimulation, and concurrent drug administration. Ideally, target concentrations should be set for the hypnotic (volatile anesthetic or propofol) and the analgesic (opioid) that properly accounts for the synergy between them.
- To achieve an effective target concentration, the conventional teaching of administering an initial dose as calculated by the product of target concentration and volume of distribution, followed by a maintenance rate as calculated as the product of target concentration and clearance, is inaccurate. The initial dose may be calculated as the product of target concentration and volume of distribution at peak effect. Maintenance rates must initially account for the distribution of drug in peripheral tissues and should only be reduced to the product of target concentration and clearance after equilibration of plasma and peripheral tissue concentrations.
- The terminal half-life does not reflect the clinical time course of drug plasma concentration. The context-sensitive decrement time is the time for a given decrement in drug concentration, as a function of the duration of infusion that maintains a steady plasma concentration. Context-sensitive decrement times properly incorporate the multicompartment behavior of intravenous anesthetics. The context-sensitive half-time is the time for a 50% decrement in concentration.
- Alfentanil, fentanyl, sufentanil, remifentanil, propofol, thiopental, methohexital, etomidate, ketamine, midazolam, and dexmedetomidine can all be administered as a continuous intravenous infusion. Specific caveats, infusion rates, and titration guidelines are presented in this text.
- Target-controlled infusions (TCIs) use pharmacokinetic models to determine intravenous anesthetic administration rates required to achieve specified plasma or effect-site drug concentrations. Various plasma and effect-site targeting TCI systems are commercially available worldwide (except within the United States) to administer hypnotics and opioids.
- Closed-loop drug delivery systems have used the median electroencephalographic frequency, bispectral index (BIS), or auditory-evoked potentials to control intravenous anesthetic delivery. Although these systems have generally performed well clinically, they remain under investigation.

Introduction

Drugs must reach their site of action to be effective. In 1628, William Harvey proved in Exercitatio Anatomica de Motu Cordis et Sanguinis in Animalibus that venous blood was transported to the arterial circulation and thus to body organs by the heart. That drugs injected into veins could be rapidly carried to the entire body was rapidly recognized. Consequently, for intravenous drug delivery to be successful, predictable intravenous access is essential.

The development of intravenous methods of anesthetic drug delivery has been made possible by technologic advances. In the middle of the 17th century, Christopher Wren and his Oxford contemporaries applied a feather quill and animal bladder to inject drugs into dogs and humans and rendered them unconscious. The hollow hypodermic needle and a functional syringe were developed by Frances Rynd (1801–1861) and Charles Pravaz (1791–1853), respectively. Contemporary needles, catheters, and syringes are descendants of these early devices. In the twentieth century, equipment began to be made of plastics, first polyvinyl chloride, then Teflon, and later, polyurethane. In 1950, Massa invented the Rochester needle (Fig. 26.1),[1] which led to the revolutionary concept of the "over-the-needle" catheter, which is still the gold standard for intravenous access for nearly all intravenous drug delivery today.[2]

Although fundamental principles of intravenously administering drugs were known in the 18th century, intravenous induction of anesthesia became common only in the 1930s after the discovery of barbiturates. Maintenance of anesthesia by intravenously administered anesthetics has become practical, safe, and popular in the past 2 decades. Intravenous drugs such as methohexitone and thiopental, although suitable for intravenous induction of anesthesia, are not suitable for use by infusion for the maintenance of anesthesia. In the case of thiopental, accumulation can lead to cardiovascular instability and delayed recovery, whereas methohexitone is associated with the excitatory phenomenon and epileptiform electroencephalographic (EEG) changes. Although the next generation of intravenous drugs, such as ketamine, althesin, and etomidate, possessed desirable pharmacokinetic characteristics, their use has been limited as a result of other side effects, including hallucinations, anaphylaxis, and adrenal suppression, respectively. The discovery of propofol in 1977 provided the anesthetic practice an intravenous drug suitable for both induction and maintenance of anesthesia; currently, propofol is still one of the most frequently used drugs for this purpose.[3] Other drugs suitable for continuous infusion used today are some of the opioids such as alfentanil and sufentanil and certainly the short-acting opioid remifentanil. In addition, some of the nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents are used as continuous infusions in specific situations.

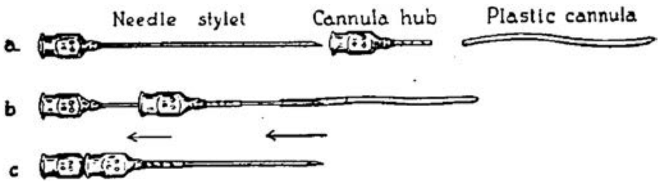

Needle stylet
Cannula hub
Plastic cannula
a
b
c

Fig. 26.1 Details of the assembly of the Massa plastic needle, sold by Rochester Products Company, Rochester, Minnesota. (From Massa DJ. A plastic needle. *Anesthesiology.* 1951;12:772–773. Used with permission.)

Drugs are still predominantly injected as a bolus or continuous infusion using standard dosing guidelines, thereby ignoring the large interindividual variability in the dose-response relationship.[4] In contrast to inhaled anesthetics, for which the inspired and end-tidal concentrations can be continuously measured in real time ("online"), the actual plasma or effect organ concentration of an intravenously administered drug is not immediately measurable in clinical practice. Therefore manually adjusting the intravenous drug injection regimens to maintain an online measured plasma concentration is impossible. It becomes even more complex if a specific effect-site concentration is the target. Optimal patient-individual dosing may be achieved by the application of pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic principles. Additionally, recent findings suggest that the pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic interactions during intravenous administration of various drugs are important and, as such, should be taken into account when optimizing drug administration.[5,6] Computer technology can be used to assist the clinician in titrating intravenous drug administration by using the therapeutic end point as the feedback signal for dosing (Fig. 26.2).

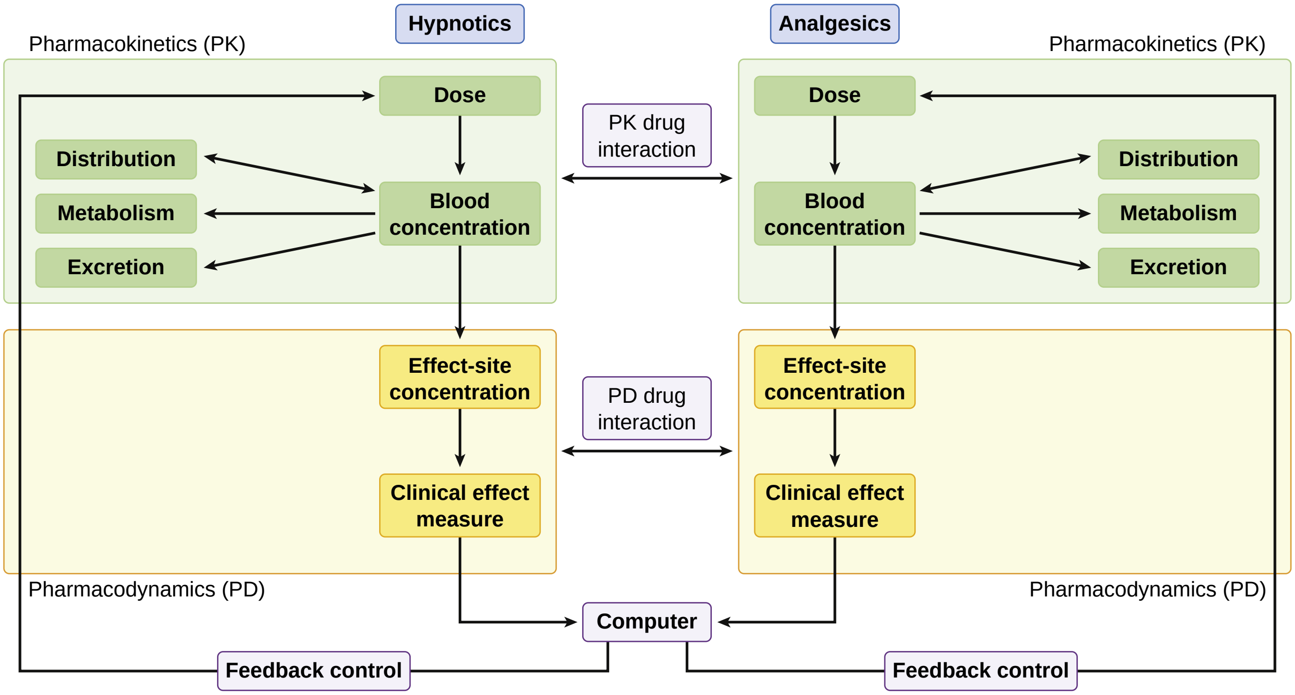

Hypnotics
Analgesics
Pharmacokinetics (PK)
Pharmacokinetics (PK)
Dose
Dose
PK drug interaction
Distribution
Metabolism
Excretion
Blood concentration
Blood concentration
Distribution
Metabolism
Excretion
Effect-site concentration
PD drug interaction
Effect-site concentration
Clinical effect measure
Clinical effect measure
Pharmacodynamics (PD)
Pharmacodynamics (PD)
Computer
Feedback control
Feedback control

Fig. 26.2 Schematic representation of the dose-response relationship for both hypnotics and opioids. The pharmacokinetic *(PK) (green area)* and the pharmacodynamic *(PD) (yellow area)* parts of this relationship are shown. Closed-loop control of drug administration using the clinical measure is indicated as *feedback control*. PK and PD drug interactions are indicated. (From Sahinovic MM, Absalom AR, Struys MM. Administration and monitoring of intravenous anesthetics. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol.* 2010;23:734–734. Used with permission.)

The development of the first mechanical syringe pumps in the 1950s improved the quality of intravenous drug administration. A more recent technologic development in intravenous anesthesia is the introduction of computerized pharmacokinetic model–driven continuous-infusion devices, enabling the attainment of desired plasma levels of an intravenous anesthetic drug by using a computer-controlled infusion pump operated in accordance with the published pharmacokinetics of the drug.[7] These efforts have resulted in the release of the first commercial target-controlled infusion (TCI) device in Europe, developed by Zeneca specifically for the administration of propofol. Since that time, several countries (with the exception of the United States) have approved the use of TCI devices for the delivery of anesthetic drugs.[8]

The ultimate development in anesthetic delivery systems will be devices for closed-loop administration of intravenous drugs during anesthesia. Systems have been developed for closed-loop administration of various drugs such as neuromuscular blocking agents, hypnotics, and opioids. The control variables for these systems have included various pharmacodynamic measures derived from techniques such as acceleromyography, automated blood pressure measurement, and electroencephalography.

The dose-response relationship can be divided into three parts (see Fig. 26.2): (1) the time course of the relationship between the given dose and the plasma concentration is defined as pharmacokinetics, (2) the relationship between the plasma concentration and/or effect-organ concentration and the clinical effect is defined as pharmacodynamics, and (3) the coupling between pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics is required when the blood is not the site of drug effect.

Before reviewing delivery techniques and devices for intravenous anesthesia, this chapter presents some pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic principles as background for understanding how to administer intravenous drugs to their best advantage. Further discussion of the principles of pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics can be found in Chapter 23.

Pharmacokinetic Considerations

The aim of optimal intravenous drug dosing is to reach and maintain a desired time course of therapeutic drug effect as accurately as possible, thereby preventing dose-related adverse drug effects. To be useful in anesthesia, this time course should include a rapid onset of clinical effects, smooth maintenance, and fast recovery after the termination of drug administration. The pharmacokinetics of many intravenous drugs can be described using mammillary multicompartment pharmacokinetic models. These models assume that the drug is directly given and mixed in the plasma, resulting in an immediate peak in its plasma concentration.

The easiest clinical technique is to administer a single dose, calculated to keep the plasma concentration above the therapeutic target concentration for the required time (Fig. 26.3). A constant concentration cannot be maintained, but it should not decrease to less than the therapeutic concentration. Unfortunately, when one single bolus is used, the initial dose must be large enough to maintain a concentration above the lowest therapeutic concentration even at the end of surgery. However, this sometimes very large dose of drug may cause numerous side effects attributable to the initially high concentrations in the body. It might be less harmful to keep the drug concentration above the lowest therapeutic level without very high initial concentrations by repeatedly injecting smaller doses; even with this technique, however, maintaining a stable plasma concentration is still impossible.

To produce a time course of drug effect that follows the time course of anesthetic requirement, a continuous infusion titrated to the perceived anesthetic requirement should be used. Typically, just enough amount of drug is given to achieve the therapeutic blood or plasma drug concentration. Drug administration thereafter should be continuously titrated throughout surgery. Although such a regimen does not overshoot the required concentration (and therefore avoids the risk of concentration-related side effects), yet another difficulty exists. Whereas, the large bolus approach produces an effective concentration (EC) from the onset, albeit with an excessive overshoot, a continuous infusion takes a long time to become effective because of the slow increase in concentration. Reaching steady state (see Fig. 26.3) takes a very long time during which the increase in concentration is rapid at first but then slows down as equilibrium is approached. For example, it will take longer than 1 hour for the propofol infusion to generate a plasma concentration that is at least 95% of the steady-state concentration. Consequently, although simple infusions are obviously very effective for maintaining constant blood concentrations once steady state is reached and for avoiding overshoot, infusions do not offer a clinically realistic approach. Therefore a combination of an initial bolus followed by a stepwise decreasing continuous infusion is more useful.[9,10]

Pharmacokinetic models can be used to calculate the required drug-dosing regimen to reach and maintain a therapeutic drug concentration as fast as possible without overshooting or accumulation. In this chapter, an explanation of how pharmacokinetic models can be used to calculate accurate dosing schemes for use with intravenous drug delivery systems is offered.

Pharmacokinetic models are mathematical descriptions of how the body *disposes* of drugs. The parameters describing this process are estimated by administering a known dose of the drug and measuring the resulting plasma concentrations. A mathematical model then relates the input over time, I(t), with the concentrations over time, C(t). These models can take many forms. Fig. 26.4 shows concentrations in plasma and effect site over time after a single intravenous bolus of drug at time 0. Drug concentrations continuously decrease after the bolus, and the rate of decrease is approximately proportional to the amount of drug in plasma. Typically, this behavior can be described with the use of exponential models. The curve might have a single exponent, in which case the plasma concentrations over time might be described by the function $C(t) = Ae^{-kt}$, where A is the concentration at time 0 and k is a constant that describes the rate of decrease in concentration. The relationship appears to be a straight line when graphed as the log of concentration versus time. The pharmacokinetics

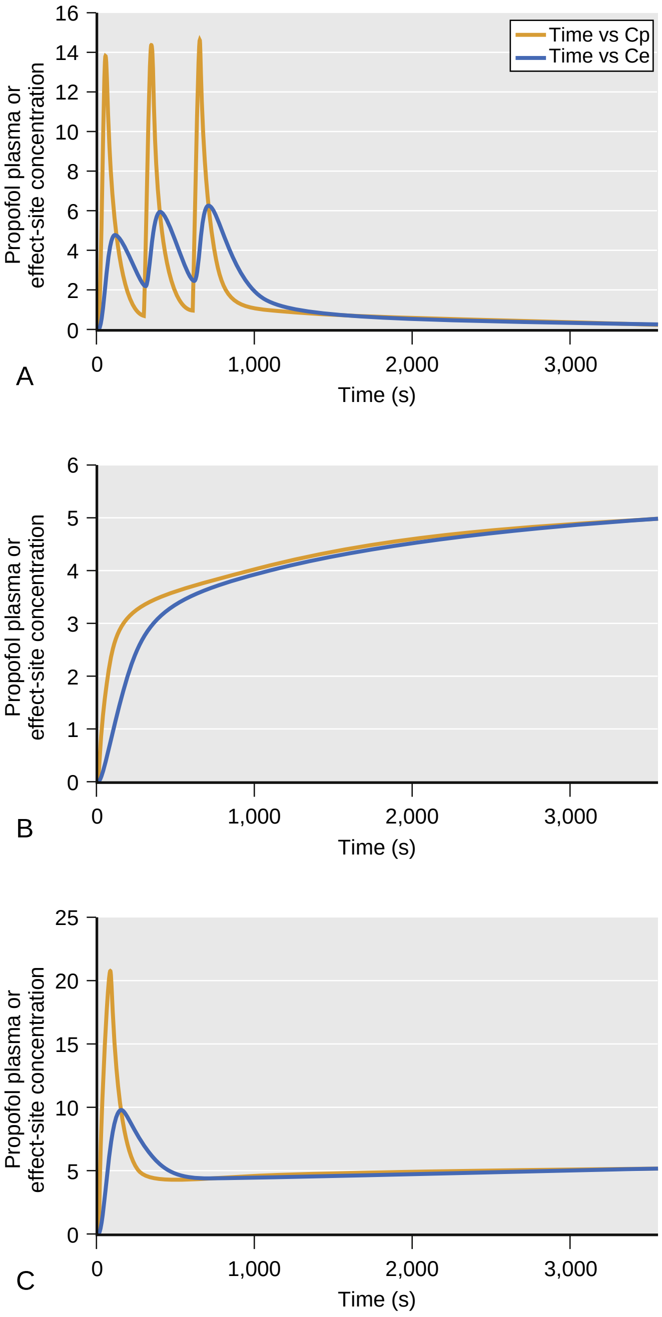


Fig. 26.3 Predicted propofol plasma concentration *(Cp)* and effect-site concentration *(Ce)* for a repeated bolus dose (1 mg/kg given at time 0 and after 5 and 10 minutes) (A), continuous infusion (10 mg/kg/h) (B), and a bolus (2 mg/kg) followed by a continuous infusion (10 mg/kg/h) (C). Simulated patient is a man, 45 years of age, 80 kg, 175 cm; Schnider model.

of intravenous anesthetic drugs is more complex because after the bolus, a period of rapid decline is observed before the terminal *log-linear* portion (i.e., the part that is a straight line when described as log concentration vs. time). This process can be modeled by taking several monoexponential curves and adding them together. The result is a polyexponential curve. For example, the concentrations after an intravenous bolus might be described by an equation with two exponents, $C(t) = Ae^{-\alpha t} + Be^{-\beta t}$, or an equation with three exponents, $C(t) = Ae^{-\alpha t} + Be^{-\beta t} + Ce^{-\gamma t}$.

The aforementioned is applied to single bolus dosing, which is, of course, only one way of administering intravenous anesthetic drugs. A more general way to think of pharmacokinetics is to decompose the input into a series of small bits (boluses) and consider each bit of drug separately. The general pharmacokinetic model of drug disposition commonly used in anesthesia independently considers each bit of drug and analyzes its contribution by means of polyexponential decay over time. The formal mathematic description of each bit of drug in terms of polyexponential decay over time is the relationship (Eq. 26.1)

$$C(t) = I(t) * \sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i e^{-\lambda_i t} \tag{26.1}$$

where C(t) is the plasma concentration at time t and I(t) is drug input (i.e., a bolus or infusion). The summation after the asterisk (described later in this chapter) is the function describing how each bit of drug is disposed (hence the name, *disposition function*). Note that this is again a sum of *n* exponentials, as described in the previous paragraph.

Pharmacokinetic modeling is the process of estimating the parameters within this function. The integer *n* is the number of exponentials (i.e., compartments) and is usually two or three. Each exponential term is associated with a coefficient A_i and an exponent λ_i. The λ values are inversely proportional to the half-lives (half-life = ln 2/λ = 0.693/λ), with the smallest λ representing the longest (terminal) half-life. The A values are the relative contribution of each half-life to overall drug disposition. If a drug has a very long terminal half-life but a coefficient that is significantly smaller than the other coefficients, then the long half-life is likely to be clinically meaningless. Conversely, if a drug has a very long half-life with a relatively large coefficient, then the drug will be long lasting even after brief administration. The asterisk (*) operator is the mathematic process called *convolution*, which is simply the process of breaking the infusion into *bits* of drug and then adding up the results to observe the overall concentrations resulting from the disposition of the different bits up to a time point t.

The pharmacokinetic model shown has some useful characteristics that account for its enduring popularity in pharmacokinetic analysis. Most important, the model describes observations from studies reasonably well, the *sine qua non* for models. Second, these models have the useful characteristic of *linearity*. Simply stated, if the dose, I, is doubled (e.g., administering a bolus twice as large or an infusion twice as fast), then the resulting concentrations should be doubled.

More generally, linearity implies that the system (i.e., the body acting to produce a plasma drug concentration output from a drug dosage input) behaves in accordance with the principle of superposition. The superposition principle states that the response of a linear system with multiple inputs can be computed by determining the response to each individual input and then summing the individual responses. In other words, when the body treats each bit of drug by polyexponential decay over time, the *disposing* of each bit of drug does not influence the disposing of other bits of drug.

The third reason for the continuing popularity of these models is that they can be mathematically transformed from the admittedly nonintuitive exponential form shown

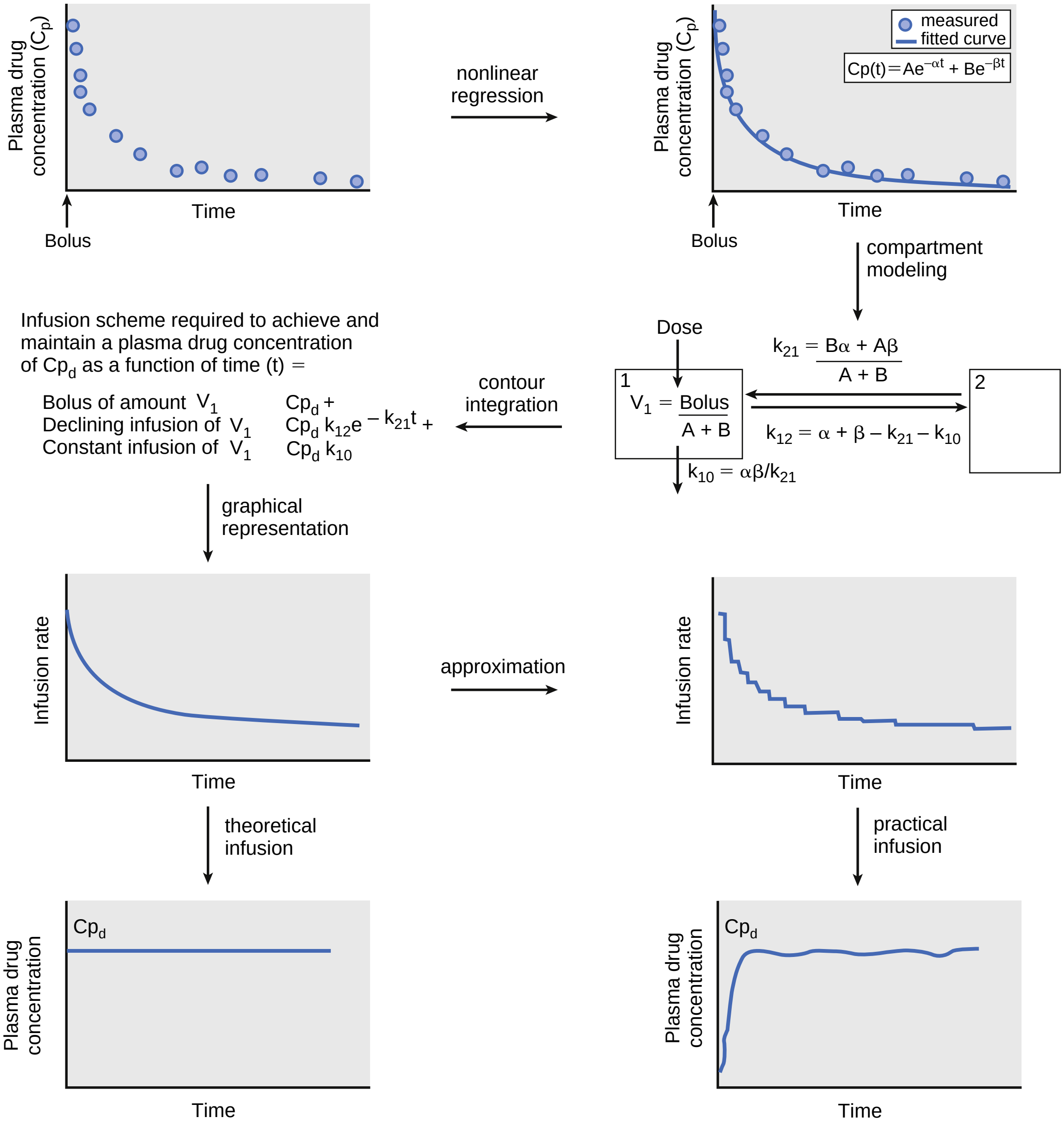

Plasma drug concentration (Cp)
Time
Bolus
nonlinear regression
Plasma drug concentration (Cp)
measured
fitted curve
Cp(t) = Ae^−αt + Be^−βt
Time
Bolus
compartment modeling
Dose
1
V1 = Bolus / A + B
k21 = Bα + Aβ / A + B
2
k12 = α + β − k21 − k10
k10 = αβ/k21
contour integration
Infusion scheme required to achieve and maintain a plasma drug concentration of Cpd as a function of time (t) =
Bolus of amount V1 Cpd +
Declining infusion of V1 Cpd k12e − k21t +
Constant infusion of V1 Cpd k10
graphical representation
Infusion rate
Time
approximation
Infusion rate
Time
theoretical infusion
practical infusion
Plasma drug concentration
Cpd
Time
Plasma drug concentration
Cpd
Time

Fig. 26.4 Steps involved in pharmacokinetic model–driven infusion. Typically, pharmacokinetic models are derived from experiments in which plasma drug concentrations are measured at intervals after bolus administration of the drug. Nonlinear regression is used to fit a monoexponential, biexponential, or triexponential curve to the resulting concentration-versus-time data. An algebraic relationship exists between the exponential decay curves and a one-, two-, or three-compartment pharmacokinetic model. The bolus-elimination-transfer (BET) infusion scheme is developed and consists of a bolus, a continuous infusion to replace drug eliminated from the body, and an exponentially declining infusion to replace drug transferred out of plasma to other body compartments. BET infusion results in the maintenance of a constant specified plasma drug concentration. Practical implementation of the BET scheme with real infusion pumps and infusion rates that change only at discrete intervals of time results in a plasma drug concentration profile that approximates that resulting from a BET infusion.

earlier to a more intuitive compartment form (Fig. 26.5). The fundamental parameters of the compartment model are the volumes of distribution (central, rapidly equilibrating, and slowly equilibrating peripheral volumes) and clearances (systemic, rapid, and slow intercompartment). The central compartment (V_1) represents a distribution volume and includes the rapidly mixing portion of the blood and first-pass pulmonary uptake. The peripheral compartments are made up of tissues and organs that show a time course and extent of drug accumulation (or dissipation) different from that of the central compartment. In the three-compartment model, the two peripheral compartments may roughly correspond to splanchnic and muscle tissues (rapidly equilibrating) and fat stores (slowly equilibrating). The sum of the compartment volumes is the apparent volume of distribution at steady state (Vd_{ss}) and is the proportionality constant relating the plasma drug concentration at steady state to the total amount of drug in the body. The intercompartment rate constants (k_{12}, k_{21}, and so on) describe the movement of drug between the central and peripheral compartments. The elimination rate constant (k_{10}) encompasses processes acting through biotransformation or elimination that irreversibly removes drug from the central compartment.

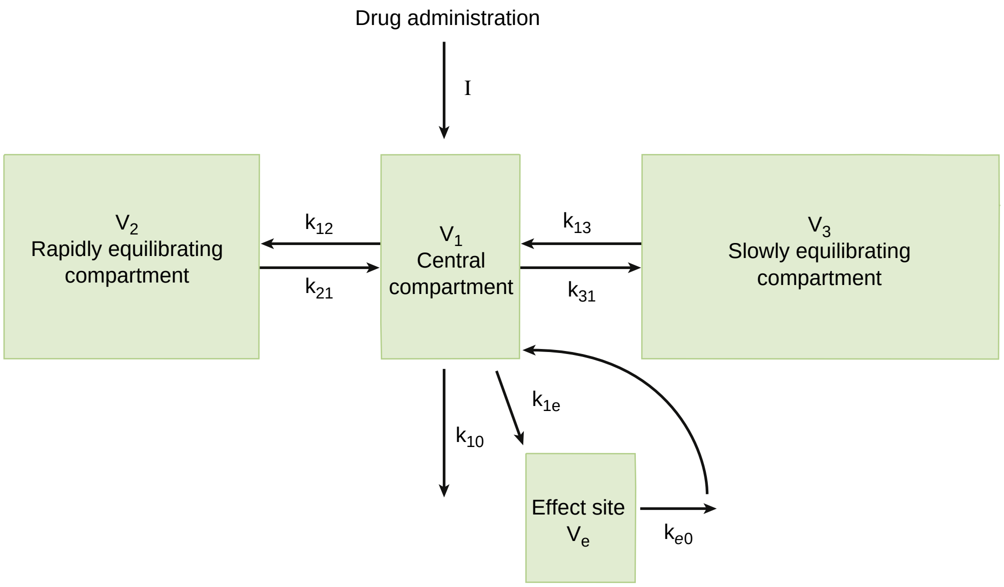


Fig. 26.5 Three-compartment model (including the biophase) illustrating the basic pharmacokinetic processes that occur after intravenous drug administration. *I,* Dosing scheme as a function of time; k_{10}, rate constant reflecting all processes acting to remove drug irreversibly from the central compartment; *k,* intercompartment rate constants; V_1, central compartment volume, usually expressed in liters or liters per kilogram.

Despite their physiologic flavor, compartment models are simply mathematic transformations of the polyexponential disposition functions computed from observed plasma concentrations. Thus physiologic interpretation of volumes and clearances (with the possible exception of systemic clearance and Vd_{ss} [the algebraic sum of the volumes]) is entirely speculative.

The last reason behind the popularity of these models is that they can be used to design infusion regimens. If the disposition function (Eq. 26.2)

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i e^{-\lambda_i t} \tag{26.2}$$

is abbreviated as simply D(t), then the relationship among concentration, dose, and the pharmacokinetic model D(t) can be rewritten as (Eq. 26.3)

$$C(t) = I(t) * D(t) \tag{26.3}$$

where * is the convolution operator, as noted earlier. In the usual pharmacokinetic study, I(t) is known, the dose that is given the patient, and C(t) is measured, the concentrations over time. The goal is to find D(t), the pharmacokinetic disposition function. Pharmacokinetic analysis can be thought of as a simple rearrangement of Eq. 26.3 to solve for D(t) (Eq. 26.4)

$$D(t) = \underset{I(t)}{\overset{C(t)}{\rightarrow\!\leftarrow}} \tag{26.4}$$

where the symbol $\rightarrow\leftarrow$ means *deconvolution*, the inverse operation of convolution. Deconvolution is similar to division, but of functions rather than simple numbers. When dosing regimens are designed from known pharmacokinetic models and a desired course for the plasma concentration over time, the known values are D(t) (the pharmacokinetics) and $C_T(t)$ (the desired target concentrations), and the drug dosing scheme is (Eq. 26.5)

$$I(t) = \underset{D(t)}{\overset{C_T(t)}{\rightarrow\!\leftarrow}} \tag{26.5}$$

Thus the necessary infusion rates, I(t), can be calculated, given the desired target concentrations, $C_T(t)$, and the pharmacokinetics, D(t), by applying the same tools used to calculate the original pharmacokinetics. Unfortunately, such a solution might require some negative infusion rates, which are obviously impossible. Because a drug cannot be retracted from the body (i.e., give inverse infusions), clinicians must restrict themselves to plasma concentrations over time that can be achieved with noninverse infusion rates.

The standard pharmacokinetic model has one glaring shortcoming. It assumes that after a bolus injection there is complete mixing within the central compartment such that the peak concentration occurs precisely at time 0. It actually takes approximately 30 to 45 seconds for the drug to make its transit from the venous injection site to the arterial circulation. This model misspecification over the first minute or so may not seem significant, but it can cause problems in attempts to relate the drug effect after a bolus to drug concentrations in the body,[11] which becomes even more important when using effect-site TCI.[12] The standard polyexponential pharmacokinetic models are being modified to provide more accurate models of plasma drug concentration in the first minute after bolus injection, also taking into account infusion rate. Recently, Masui and associates[13] found that a pharmacokinetic model consisting of a two-compartment model with a LAG (the time shift of dosing as if the drug were, in fact, administered to the pharmacokinetic model at a later time) and presystemic compartments model accurately described the early pharmacologic phase of propofol during infusion rates between 10 and 160 mg/kg/h. The infusion rate has an influence on kinetics. Age was a covariate for LAG time (Fig. 26.6). Besides compartment models, various physiologically based

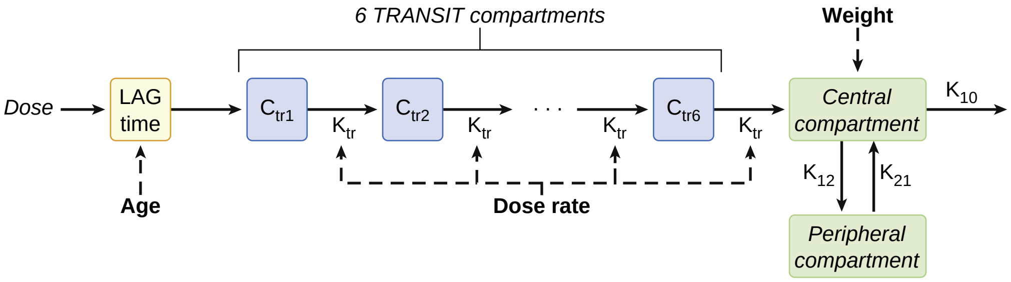


Fig. 26.6 Scheme of the final two-compartment pharmacokinetic model with a LAG time and six TRANSIT compartments (C_{tr} *n*). The equilibration rate constants between the central and peripheral compartments were calculated using the following equations: $k_{12} = Cl_2 \div V_1$, $k_{21} = Cl_2 \div V_2$. The elimination rate constant was calculated using the following equation: $k_{10} = Cl_1 \div V_1$. Cl_1, Clearance of central compartment; Cl_2, clearance of peripheral compartment; V_1, distribution volume of central compartment; V_2, distribution volume of peripheral compartment. LAG time represents the time shift of dosing as if the drug was, in fact, administered to the pharmacokinetic model at a later time. TRANSIT compartments depict a multiple-step process represented by a chain of presystemic compartments. (From Masui K, Kira M, Kazama T, et al. Early phase pharmacokinetics but not pharmacodynamics are influenced by propofol infusion rate. *Anesthesiology.* 2009;111:805–817. Used with permission.)

models have been developed to model the pharmacokinetic behavior of anesthetics.[14] So far, these models are not superior at predicting the time course of drug concentration.[13] None of these models have been used to control intravenous drug delivery devices.

Pharmacodynamic Considerations

THE BIOPHASE

The goal of drug titration during anesthesia is to reach and maintain a stable therapeutic drug concentration at the site of drug effect, also defined as the *effect site* or *biophase*. For most drugs used in anesthesia, the plasma is not the biophase and thus even after the drug has reached the arterial circulation, a further delay occurs before a therapeutic effect is observed. The reason is that additional time is required for the drug to be transported to the target organ, penetrate the tissue, bind to a receptor, and induce intercellular processes that ultimately lead to the onset of drug effect. This delay between peak plasma concentration and peak concentration at the effect site is called *hysteresis*. Fig. 26.7 illustrates an example of hysteresis revealed during an experiment published by Soehle and coworkers.[15] Two periods of continuous propofol infusions were given. The time course of the plasma concentration and effect-site concentration are simulated using pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic models. The cerebral drug effect was measured using the EEG-derived bispectral index (BIS). A clear delay between the time course of the plasma concentration and that of the BIS can be observed. The plasma concentration versus effect curve forms a counterclockwise hysteresis loop. This loop represents the plasma concentration, which is not the site of drug effect. Using nonlinear mixed-effect modeling, the hysteresis is minimized to reveal the effect-site concentration versus clinical effect relationship. The typical sigmoidal population model is also depicted in Fig. 26.7.

The concentration of drug in the biophase cannot be measured because it is usually inaccessible, at least in human subjects. The time course of drug effect can be calculated by using rapid measures of drug effect. Knowing the time course of drug effect, the rate of drug flow in and out of the biophase (or effect site) can be calculated with the use of mathematic models. As such, the time course of the plasma concentration and the measured effect can be linked using the concept of the *effect compartment*, developed by Hull[16] and Sheiner.[17] The effect-site concentration is not a real measurable concentration but rather a virtual concentration in a theoretic compartment without a volume and, as such, also without any significant amount of drug present. For any concentration in this virtual compartment, a corresponding assumed effect is observed. This relationship between the effect-site concentration and effect is usually nonlinear and static (i.e., does not explicitly depend on time). If the plasma concentration is maintained at a constant level, then the model assumes that, at equilibrium, the effect-compartment concentration equals the plasma concentration. The delay between the plasma and the effect compartment is mathematically described by a single parameter, defined as k_{e0}, the effect-site equilibration rate constant (see Fig. 26.5).[18]

Measures of drug effect used to characterize the time course of drug transfer between plasma and the biophase vary with the drug being evaluated. For some drugs, a direct measure of drug effect can be applied. For neuromuscular blocking agents, the response from peripheral nerve stimulation (i.e., the twitch) is an ideal measure of effect. Various authors have used the T1% (percentage change of the T1 response compared with baseline T1 response during supramaximal stimulus) derived from electromyogram to measure the drug effect of newer drugs such as rocuronium[19] and cisatracurium.[20] For other categories of drugs such as opioids and hypnotics, the real clinical effects (e.g., unconsciousness, amnesia, memory loss, antinociception) are not measurable. For these reasons, surrogate measures are used to quantify the time course of clinical effects. These surrogate measures can be categorical or continuous. For example, the Observer's Assessment of Alertness/Sedation (OAA/S) scale was used to measure quantal changes in hypnotic drug effects during propofol administration.[21] Egan and colleagues[22] applied a noxious pain stimulus and used an algometer to measure the balance between nociception and antinociception during remifentanil infusion. Various spontaneous and evoked EEG-derived and processed measures were used to measure cerebral drug effects for opioids and hypnotics.[15,23-27] Ludbrook and associates measured propofol concentrations in the carotid artery and

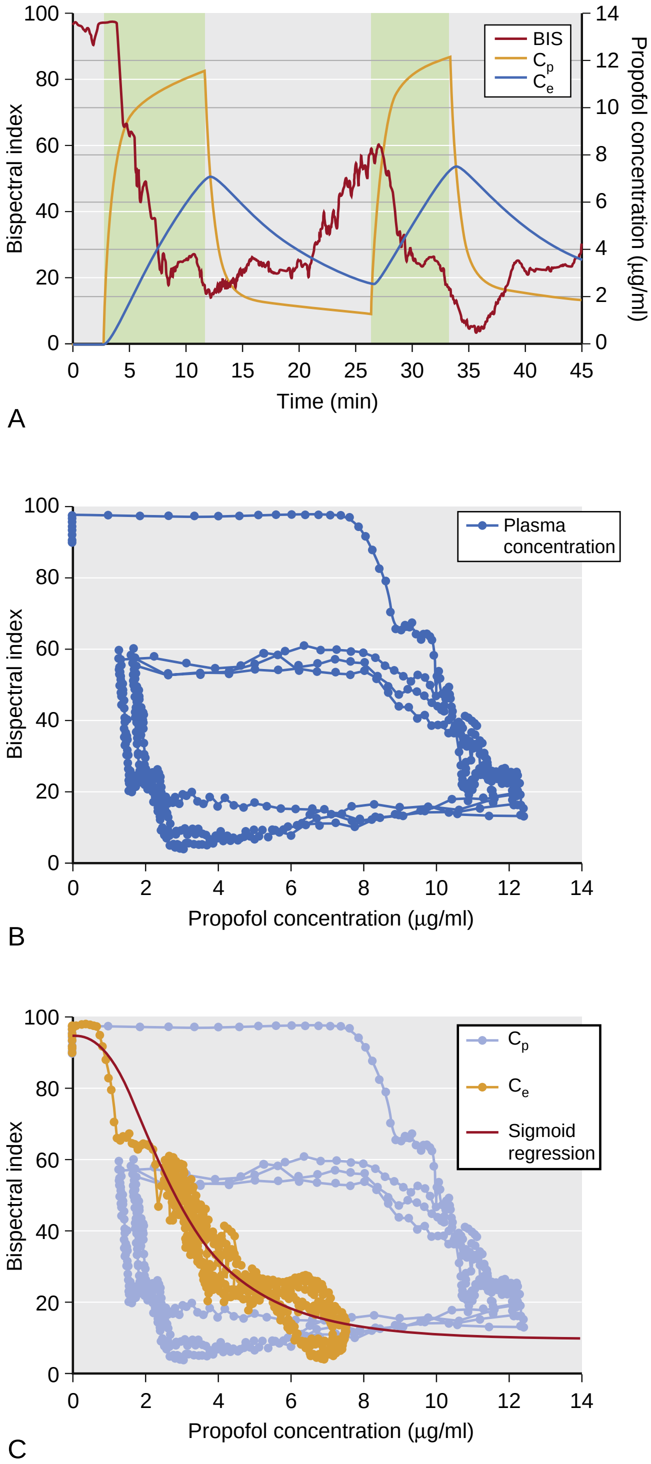


Fig. 26.7 (A) Time course of an experiment showing the hysteresis between plasma concentration *(C_p)* and hypnotic effect as measured by the electroencephalographic (EEG)-derived bispectral index (BIS). Propofol was given at a constant rate during the shaded periods, resulting in C_p *(orange line)* and effect-site concentration *(C_e) (blue line)*. The corresponding BIS values are shown as a *solid red line*. (B) Relation between C_p and BIS using data from the experiment reveals a hysteresis loop. (C) After modeling, this hysteresis is minimized as shown in the relation between the effect-site concentration and BIS. ([A] Modified from Soehle M, Kuech M, Grube M, et al. Patient state index vs bispectral index as measures of the electroencephalographic effects of propofol. *Br J Anaesth.* 2010;105:172–178. Used with permission; [B and C] Courtesy M. Soehle, Bonn, Germany.)

jugular bulb to establish movement of propofol into and equilibration with the brain. They simultaneously measured the BIS and found a close correlation between brain concentration (calculated by mass balance) and changes in the BIS.[28]

DIRECT-EFFECT MODELS

As with plasma pharmacokinetics, the biophase concentration is the convolution of an input function (in this case, the plasma drug concentration over time) and the disposition function of the biophase. This relationship can be expressed as (Eq. 26.6)

$$C_{biophase}(t) = C_{plasma}(t) * D_{biophase}(t) \qquad (26.6)$$

The disposition function of the biophase is typically modeled as a single exponential decay (Eq. 26.7)

$$D_{biophase}(t) = K_{e0} e^{-K_{e0} t} \qquad (26.7)$$

The monoexponential disposition function implies that the effect site is simply an additional compartment in the standard compartment model that is connected to the plasma compartment (see Fig. 26.5). The effect site is the hypothetical compartment that relates the time course of plasma drug concentration to the time course of drug effect, and k_{e0} is the rate constant of elimination of drug from the effect site. By convention, the effect compartment is assumed to receive such small amounts of drug from the central compartment that it has no influence on plasma pharmacokinetics.

Neither $C_{biophase}(t)$ nor $D_{biophase}(t)$ can be directly measured, but the drug effect can be measured. Knowing that the observed drug effect is a function of the drug concentration in the biophase, the drug effect can be predicted as (Eq. 26.8)

$$Effect = f_{PD}\left[C_{plasma}(t) * D_{biophase}(t),\ P_{PD},\ k_{e0}\right] \qquad (26.8)$$

where f_{PD} is a pharmacodynamic model (typically sigmoidal in shape), P_{PD} represents the parameters of the pharmacodynamic model, and k_{e0} is the rate constant for equilibration between plasma and the biophase. Nonlinear regression programs are used to find values of P_{PD} and k_{e0} that best predict the time course of drug effect. This method is called *loop-collapsing* (see Fig. 26.7). Knowledge of these parameters can then be incorporated into dosing regimens that produce the desired time course of drug effect.[29,30]

If a constant plasma concentration is maintained, then the time required for the biophase concentration to reach 50% of the plasma concentration ($t_{1/2}k_{e0}$) can be calculated as $0.693/k_{e0}$. After a bolus dose, the time to peak biophase concentration is a function of both plasma pharmacokinetics and k_{e0}. For drugs with a very rapid decline in plasma concentration after a bolus (e.g., adenosine with a half-life of several seconds), the effect-site concentration peaks within several seconds of the bolus, regardless of k_{e0}. For drugs with a rapid k_{e0} and a slow decrease in concentration after a bolus injection (e.g., pancuronium), the peak effect-site concentration is determined more by k_{e0} than by plasma pharmacokinetics.

An accurate estimation of k_{e0} demands an integrated pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic study combining rapid blood sampling with frequent measurements of drug effect, yielding an overall model for the dose-response behavior of the drug. Historically, the time constants of pharmacokinetic models and the k_{e0} of pharmacodynamic studies were sometimes naively merged, possibly leading to inaccurate predictions of the clinical drug effect. Coppens and colleagues proved that pharmacodynamic models of BIS in children developed by using estimates of plasma propofol concentrations from published pharmacokinetic models and estimating the pharmacodynamic model do not ensure good pharmacokinetic accuracy or provide informative estimates for pharmacodynamic parameters.[31] If no integrated pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic model exists, then the time to peak effect (t_{peak}) after a bolus injection can be used to recalculate k_{e0} using the pharmacokinetic model of interest to yield the correct time to peak effect. Under these circumstances, this alternative approach might lead to a more accurate prediction of the dose-response time course.[32,33] However, the correct covariates for t_{peak} should be estimated in a specific population.[34] A second caveat is that the time course of drug effect is specific for a given effect (e.g., cerebral drug effect as measured by a specific processed EEG). The time course of other side effects (e.g., hemodynamic effect for hypnotics) most frequently follows a different trajectory.[35,36] The time to peak effect and the $t_{1/2}$ k_{e0} for several intravenous anesthetics are listed in Table 26.1.

All methods discussed so far incorporate k_{e0} values calculated on the assumption that hysteresis between plasma concentration and clinical effect is explained by a delay in drug transfer between plasma and biophase and thus that anesthesia is a smooth, path- and state-independent, symmetric process. Although still commonly used, this assumption might be suboptimal. Data from animal experiments suggest that neural processes and pathways involved in anesthesia induction and recovery are different.[37,38] In an animal study, measured brain drug concentrations at loss of consciousness and at return of consciousness were significantly different.[39] If these data are confirmed, then a more complex model (e.g., one incorporating a second, serial effect-site model) might be required to depict the time course of drug effect. Several groups have investigated this hypothesis in humans, and so far the published findings are not consistent. One clinical study specifically designed to address this topic showed evidence supportive of the concept of neural inertia.[40] Two other studies involving secondary analyses of existing data, of which one indicated supportive evidence[41] and the other showed that neural inertia was not present in all subjects, and appeared to occur only with propofol (and not with sevoflurane), and to be present only with certain pharmacodynamic endpoints.[42]

TABLE 26.1 Time to Peak Effect and $t_{1/2}$ k_{e0} After a Bolus Dose

Drug	Time to Peak Drug Effect (min)*	$t_{1/2}$ k_{e0} (min)
Morphine	19	264
Fentanyl	3.6	4.7
Alfentanil	1.4	0.9
Sufentanil	5.6	3.0
Remifentanil	1.8	1.3
Ketamine	—	3.5
Propofol	1.6	1.7
Thiopental	1.6	1.5
Midazolam	2.8	4.0
Etomidate	2.0	1.5

*Measured by electroencephalography.

k_{e0} is the rate constant for transfer of drug from the site of drug effect to the environment.

$t_{1/2}$ k_{e0} = 0.693/k_{e0}

INDIRECT-EFFECT MODELS

Thus far, clinical effects that are an instantaneous function of drug concentration at the site of drug effect have been discussed, as implied by Eq. 26.8. For example, once a hypnotic drug reaches the brain or a neuromuscular-blocking drug reaches the muscles, drug action is almost immediately observed. On the other hand, some effects are significantly more complex. For example, consider the effect of opioids on ventilation. Initially, opioids depress ventilation, and arterial tension of carbon dioxide (CO_2) gradually accumulates. Yet, the accumulation of CO_2 at normal conditions is a strong stimulant for ventilation, thereby partly counteracting the ventilatory depressant effects of opioids. Ventilatory depression is an example in which direct and indirect drug effects are incorporated. The direct effect of the opioid is to depress ventilation, and the indirect effect is to increase arterial tension of CO_2. Modeling the time course of opioid-induced ventilatory depression requires consideration of both components. Bouillon and colleagues developed a model of ventilatory depression that incorporates both direct and indirect effects.[43-45] As is generally the case with indirect-effect models, characterizing drug-induced ventilatory depression requires a consideration of the entire time course of drug therapy, which is embodied by the following differential equation (Eq. 26.9):

$$\frac{d}{dt}PaCO_2 = k_{e1} \bullet \left[1 - \frac{Cp\,(t)\,\gamma}{C_{50}\gamma + C_p\,(t)\,\gamma}\right]_F \bullet \left[\frac{P_{biophase}\,CO_2\,(t)}{P_{biophase}\,CO_2\,(0)}\right] \bullet PaCO_2\,(t) \qquad (26.9)$$

where partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide ($Paco_2$) is arterial CO_2, $P_{biophase}CO_2$ is CO_2 in the biophase (i.e., brainstem respiratory control circuits), k_{el} is the rate constant for the elimination of CO_2, C_{50} is the effect-site opioid concentration associated with a 50% reduction in ventilatory drive, and F is the steepness or *gain* of the effect of CO_2 on ventilatory drive.

DOSE IMPLICATIONS OF THE BIOPHASE

The delay in onset of clinical effects has important clinical implications. After a bolus, the plasma concentration peaks nearly instantly and then steadily declines. The effect-site concentration starts at zero and increases over time until it equals the descending plasma concentration. The plasma concentration continues to decline. After the moment of identical concentrations, the gradient between plasma and the biophase favors removal of drug from the biophase, and the effect-site concentration decreases. The rate at which the effect-site concentration rises toward the peak after a bolus dictates how much drug must be injected into plasma to produce a given effect. For alfentanil, its rapid plasma effect-site equilibration (large k_{e0}) causes the effect-site concentration to rise rapidly, with a peak produced in approximately 90 seconds. At the time of the peak, approximately 60% of the alfentanil bolus has been distributed into peripheral tissues or eliminated from the body. For fentanyl, the effect-site concentration rises significantly more slowly and peaks 3 to 4 minutes after the bolus.[46] At the time of the peak, more than 80% of the initial bolus of fentanyl has been distributed into tissues or eliminated. As a result of slower equilibration with the biophase, relatively more fentanyl than alfentanil must be injected into plasma, which makes the rate of offset of drug effect after a fentanyl bolus slower than after an alfentanil bolus.

This difference in pharmacokinetics indicates that k_{e0} must be incorporated into dosing strategies on which rational drug selection is dependent. For rapid onset of effect, a drug with a large k_{e0} (short $t_{1/2}$ k_{e0}) should be chosen. For example, for rapid sequence induction of anesthesia, alfentanil or remifentanil may be the optimal opioid because its peak effect-site concentration coincides with the likely time of endotracheal intubation. However, for a slower induction of anesthesia in which a nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agent is used, an opioid with a slower onset of drug effect should be selected to coincide with the peak effect of the neuromuscular blocking agent. In this case, a bolus of fentanyl or sufentanil at the time of induction may be more appropriate. The time to peak effect for the commonly used opioids is shown in Fig. 26.8. Knowing k_{e0} (or time to peak effect) also improves titration of the drug by identifying the time at which the clinician should make an assessment of drug effect. For example, midazolam has a slow time to peak effect, and repeat bolus doses should be spaced at least 3 to 5 minutes apart to avoid inadvertent overdosing.

An accurate k_{e0} is also crucial during TCI titrating to a specific effect-site concentration because the initial bolus given to reach the targeted effect-site concentration depends on both the pharmacokinetics and the k_{e0}.[47]

DRUG POTENCY

Single Drugs

Knowledge about adequate therapeutic drug concentration is crucial to achieve the aim of providing optimal anesthetic conditions. Therefore information on drug potency is essential. Analogous to the concept of minimum alveolar concentration (MAC), the concentration associated with a 50% likelihood of movement in response to skin incision for inhaled anesthetics[48] is the C_{50} for intravenous drugs, which provides a measure of relative potency between intravenous anesthetics.

There are many ways to look upon C_{50}, taking into consideration whether the clinical effect is a binary or continuous effect. When considering binary effects, the C_{50} might be the drug concentration that prevents response (e.g., movement, hypertension, release of catecholamines) to a particular stimulus (e.g., surgical incision, endotracheal intubation, spreading of the sternum) in 50% of patients. In this case, each combination of stimulus and response may have a unique C_{50}. When C_{50} is defined as the drug concentration that produces a given response in 50% of patients, a 50% probability of response is also likely in a given patient. Defining C_{50} as the concentration that produces a given drug effect in 50% of individuals implicitly assumes that the effect can be achieved in all individuals. Some drugs exhibit a ceiling effect. For example, a ceiling effect may exist on the ability of opioids to suppress response to noxious stimulation. When a ceiling in drug effect exists, some patients may not exhibit the drug effect even at infinitely large doses. In this case, C_{50} is not the concentration that causes the drug effect in 50% of patients but is the concentration associated with the drug effect in one half of whatever fraction of patients is able to respond.

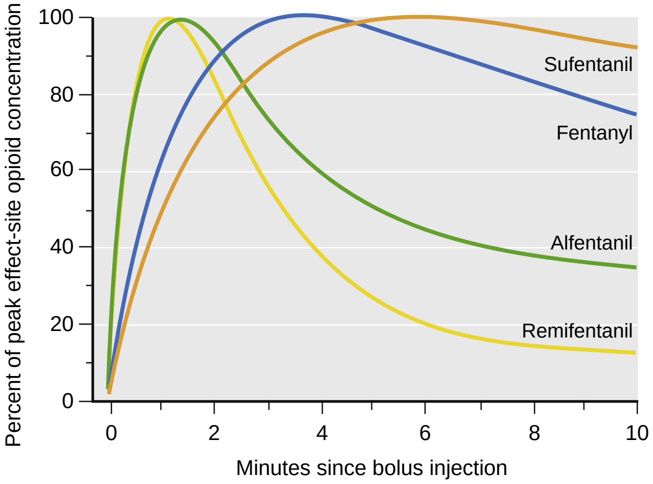


Fig. 26.8 Simulated onset and time to peak effect of commonly used opioids based on their k_{e0} and pharmacokinetic parameters. k_{e0}, Rate constant for the transfer of drug from the site of drug effect to the environment.

Several studies have been performed to establish appropriate concentrations of intravenous anesthetics and opioids for various clinical endpoints and the effect of drug interactions (Table 26.2).[49-56]

Another interpretation of C_{50} is the concentration that produces 50% of the maximum possible physiologic response. For example, the C_{50} for an EEG response is the drug concentration that provides 50% depression of the maximal EEG effect. The C_{50} for EEG response has been measured for the opioids alfentanil,[57] fentanyl,[57] sufentanil,[58] and remifentanil.[59-61] It has also been determined for thiopental,[51,62,63] etomidate,[56] propofol,[24] and benzodiazepines (see Table 26.2).[57,64] Other measures such as pupillary dilation in response to a noxious stimulus[65] and pressure algometry[22] were used to measure opioid potency and revealed slightly different values for C_{50}, which indicates that observation of drug potency also depends on the applied measure of drug effect.

As mentioned, C_{50} can be used to compare potency among drugs. For example, Glass and colleagues[66] determined the potency of remifentanil compared with alfentanil using ventilatory depression as the measure of opioid effect. In their study, the C_{50} for depression of minute ventilation was 1.17 ng/mL and 49.4 ng/mL for remifentanil and alfentanil, respectively. Using this difference in C_{50},

TABLE 26.2 Steady-State Concentrations for Predefined Effects

Drug	C_{50} for EEG Depression[*]	C_{50} for Incision or Painful Stimulus[†]	C_{50} for Loss of Consciousness[‡]	C_{50} for Spontaneous Ventilation[§]	C_{50} for Isoflurane MAC Reduction	MEAC
Alfentanil (ng/mL)	500-600	200-300	—	170-230	50	10-30
Fentanyl (ng/mL)	6-10	4-6	—	2-3	1.7	0.5-1
Sufentanil (ng/mL)	0.5-0.75	(0.3-0.4)	—	(0.15-0.2)	0.15	0.025-0.05
Remifentanil (ng/mL)	10-15	4-6	—	2-3	1.2	0.5-1
Propofol (μg/mL)	3-4	4-8	2-3	1.33	—	—
Thiopental (μg/mL)	15-20	35-40	8-16	—	—	—
Etomidate (μg/mL)	0.53	—	0.55	—	—	—
Midazolam (ng/mL)	250-350	—	125-250	—	—	—

[*] C_{50} for depression of the EEG is the steady-state serum concentration that causes a 50% slowing of the maximal EEG, except for midazolam, in which the C_{50} is associated with 50% activation of the EEG.

[†] C_{50} for skin incision is the steady-state plasma concentration that prevents a somatic or autonomic response in 50% of patients.

[‡] C_{50} for loss of consciousness is the steady-state plasma concentration for absence of a response to a verbal command in 50% of patients.

[§] C_{50} for spontaneous ventilation is the steady-state plasma concentration associated with adequate spontaneous ventilation in 50% of patients.

Values in parentheses are estimated by scaling to the alfentanil C_{50} (see text for details).

EEG, Electroencephalography; *MAC,* minimum alveolar concentration; *MEAC,* minimum effective plasma concentration providing postoperative analgesia.

they concluded that remifentanil is approximately 40 times more potent than alfentanil.

To be entirely independent of dosing history, C_{50} must be determined at steady state, which is rarely possible because most anesthetic drugs do not reach steady state during a continuous infusion until many hours have passed. However, if the drug exhibits rapid equilibration between plasma and the effect site and the investigator waits long enough after starting the infusion, then this choice can be reasonably satisfactory. For example, Ausems and colleagues[67,68] used a continuous infusion of alfentanil in their experiments, which quickly equilibrated. They also recorded their measurements after the effect-site concentration had equilibrated with plasma.

A second alternative to performing a true steady-state experiment is to use mathematic modeling to calculate the effect-site concentrations of drug at the time of measurement, as proposed by Hull and colleagues[16] and Sheiner and colleagues.[17] The relationship between effect-site and plasma concentrations is graphically represented in Fig. 26.5 and mathematically in Eq. 26.6. Calculating effect-site concentrations is the same as attempting to determine the steady-state plasma concentrations that produce the observed drug effect. When the C_{50} reflects effect-site concentrations, it is represented as Ce_{50} to distinguish it from values of C_{50} that are based on plasma concentrations, which are then termed Cp_{50}. However, the distinction is artificial. In both cases, C_{50} is intended to represent the steady-state plasma drug concentration associated with a given drug effect.

A third alternative to performing a steady-state experiment is to establish a pseudo–steady state with the use of computer-controlled drug delivery. By this term we mean that a steady state is assumed to exist, because a varying rate drug infusion is being administered with the intent of achieving stable plasma concentrations. This method has become the state of the art for determining the C_{50} for anesthetic drugs, and many of the C_{50} values referenced earlier were determined at pseudo–steady state with the use of computer-controlled drug delivery. Commonly, two or more measurements of the plasma concentration during pseudo–steady state conditions are performed to verify whether this is indeed the case.[40-42] Typically, maintaining a constant plasma steady-state concentration for four to five plasma effect-site equilibration half-lives (e.g., 10-15 minutes for fentanyl) is required. Such a long delay is not necessarily needed when computer-controlled drug delivery is used.

Effect-compartment TCIs can be used to target the concentration at the effect site rather than the plasma concentration and thereby rapidly establishing plasma–effect site equilibration.[29,47] For example, Kodaka and associates reported predicted values of propofol effect-site concentration C_{50} between 3.1 μg/mL and 4.3 μg/mL for insertion of various laryngeal airway masks, depending on the type of laryngeal mask.[69] Cortinez and associates used TCI to determine the C_{50} of remifentanil and fentanyl for accurate pain relief during extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in relation with possible side effects and found that remifentanil and fentanyl C_{50} were 2.8 ng/mL and 2.9 ng/mL, respectively.[70] At C_{50}, the probability of having a respiratory rate less than 10 breaths per minute was 4% for remifentanil and 56% for fentanyl.

Likewise, TCI has been used to estimate the following C_{50} values for dexmedetomidine: the C_{50} for half-maximal effect on the BIS (BIS ~48) was 2.6 ng/mL, for half-maximal effect on the Modified Observer's Assessment of Alertness/Sedation (MOAA/S) scale was 0.438 ng/mL, for half-maximal hypotensive effect was 0.36 ng/mL, and the C_{50} for half-maximal hypertensive effects was 1.6 ng/mL.[71,72]

Thus there are several ways to establish C_{50} in terms of steady-state concentrations. C_{50} can be estimated through mathematic effect-site modeling or can be experimentally measured with the use of computer-controlled drug delivery to establish a pseudo–steady state quickly. Either way, when performing studies to define the concentration-effect relationship, equilibrium must exist or be modeled between the biophase (the site of effect) and plasma or blood (where the concentration is actually measured).

When C_{50} is defined in terms of the concentration associated with a response in one half of a population, that same C_{50} is the concentration associated with a 50% probability of response in a typical individual. However, individual patients are not typical individuals but rather will have their own value for C_{50}. Expressed in clinical terms, different patients have different anesthetic requirements for the same stimulus. For example, the minimal effective analgesic concentration of fentanyl is 0.6 ng/mL, but it varies among patients from 0.2 to 2.0 ng/mL.[73] The minimal effective analgesic concentrations of alfentanil[74] and sufentanil[75] similarly vary among patients by a factor of 5 to 10. This range encompasses both variability in the intensity of the stimulus and variability of the individual patient.

One factor known to be responsible for this interindividual pharmacodynamic variability is the patient age. Thus with the pharmacodynamic for propofol developed by Eleveld and colleagues, and based on pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic data from a large number of patients and volunteers, the estimated effect-site propofol concentrations required for a BIS of 47 for patients whose ages are 20, 40, and 70 years, are 3.5, 3.1, and 2.6 ug/mL, respectively.[76]

Although age has a strong effect on the C_{50}, it does not explain all the variability. This wide range reflects the clinical reality that must be accounted for when dosing regimens are designed. Because of this variability, intravenous anesthetics should be titrated to each patient's unique anesthetic requirement for the given stimulus.

Pharmacodynamic Drug Interactions

Drug interactions cause the potency of one drug (e.g., as measured by the C_{50}) to shift in response to the administration of a second drug. This drug interaction can be additive, supra-additive (synergistic), or infra-additive (antagonistic). As observed in the isobologram (Fig. 26.9), for additive drugs with equal potency, the cumulative effect resulting from doses a and b for substances A and B, respectively, equals the effect obtained with the injection of either drug A or B solely in a dose a + b. If the drugs interact synergistically, then the combination of A and B will generate a more pronounced effect than additive. For antagonistic drug interaction, the combination of A and B will result in a less pronounced effect than additive. In general, additive drug interactions occur when combining drugs acting by the same mechanism and synergistic or antagonistic interaction when combining drugs acting by a different mechanism.[77] Hendrickx and coworkers (Fig. 26.10) reviewed the available literature and summarized the available data on drug interactions in humans and animals for hypnosis and immobility.[77]

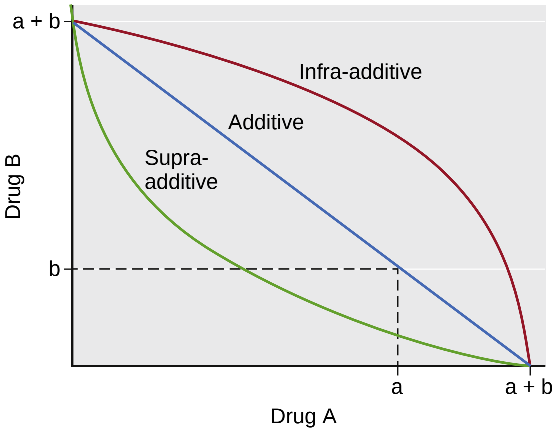


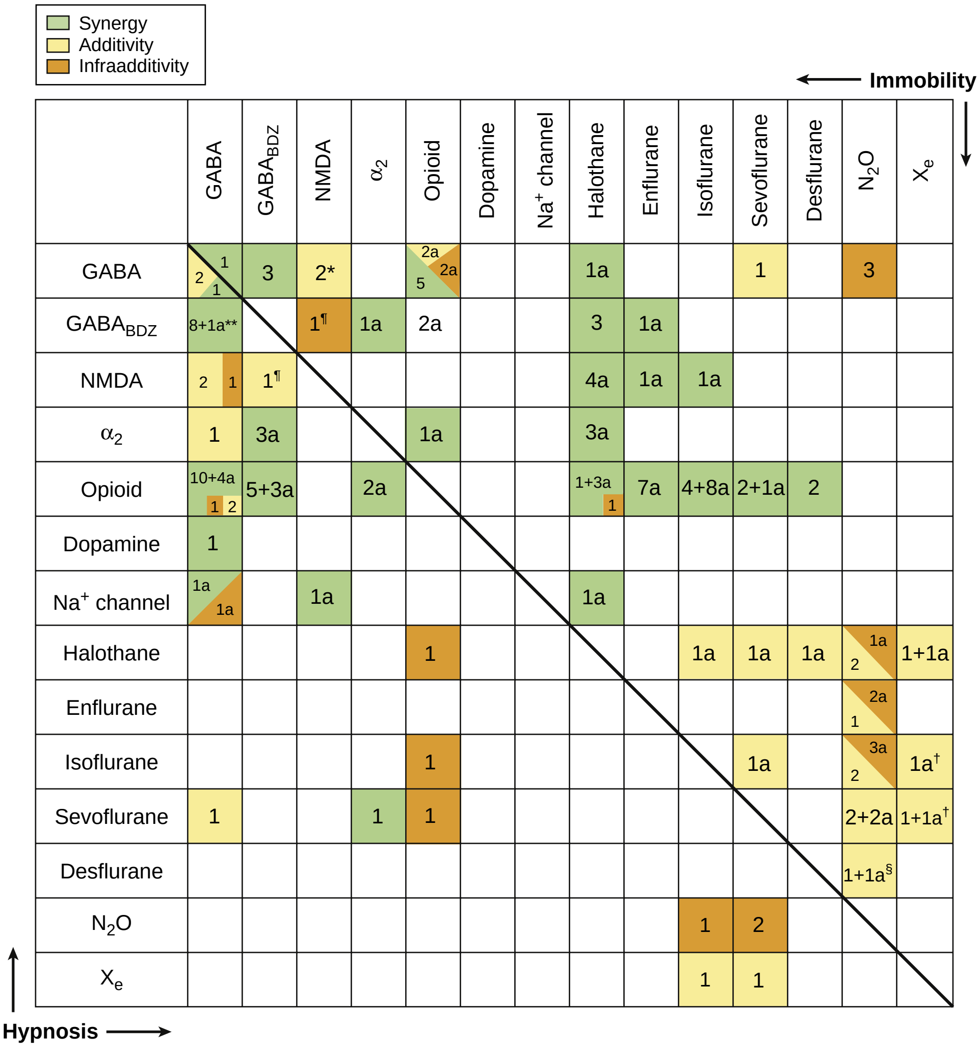
Fig. 26.9 Pharmacodynamic drug interactions.

Investigating only one isobole of the interaction spectrum (e.g., the 50% probability level of a specific drug response) provides a rudimentary insight into the interaction characteristics but reveals only limited information about other levels of drug effect (e.g., at the clinically more important level of 95% probability of drug response). As drug interactions may vary among drug effect levels (e.g., additive at the 50% level but synergistic at the 95% level), the ultimate aim is to characterize the response surface describing all levels of effect. Pharmacodynamic response surface models generate figures that are three- (or even higher) dimensional structures that have been developed to describe the relationship quantitatively between two or more drug concentrations and their combined clinical effect (Fig. 26.11). Response surface models are powerful representations of drug interactions as they combine information about the full range of isoboles resulting from the concentration response curves of all combinations of the drugs involved.[78,79] Using the mathematically defined response surface, the corresponding drug effect for any two or more drug concentrations of the interacting drugs can be predicted.[80,81] Various methodological approaches to response surface models are found in the literature.[82]

Intravenous opioids are frequently combined with volatile anesthetics during anesthesia. The reduction of the MAC for a given volatile by a given opioid dose can be applied to investigate the potency and efficacy of opioids.[83-85] These MAC reduction studies reveal a general pattern, irrespective of which opioid or volatile anesthetic has been used. Low concentrations of an opioid result in a substantial reduction of MAC (Fig. 26.12). With increasing concentrations of the opioid, MAC continues to decrease until a plateau is reached and, consequently, a further increase of the opioid dose is futile.[86]

The previously mentioned MAC reduction studies show the effect of a single opioid dose on a single point of a dose-response curve but, nonetheless, form the basis for more detailed surface interaction studies.[87] To characterize the interaction between sevoflurane and remifentanil in blunting responses to verbal (OAA/S scale) and painful stimuli (pressure algometry, electrical tetanic stimulus, and thermal stimulation), Manyam and coworkers constructed a response surface for each pharmacodynamic response using a Logit model approach and found synergy between sevoflurane and remifentanil for all responses. More specifically, a remifentanil effect-site concentration of 1.25 ng/mL was able to more than halve the sevoflurane requirements for preventing movement to pain.[88] Because this study suffered from nonsteady-state conditions at the moment of measurements, the authors improved their data using calculated effect-site sevoflurane concentrations and a Greco model instead of a Logit approach.[89] Accounting for the time lag between sevoflurane effect-site concentration and end-tidal concentration improved the predictions of responsiveness during anesthesia but had no effect on the accuracy of prediction of a response to a noxious stimulus in recovery. They concluded that models may be useful in predicting events of clinical interest, but large-scale evaluations with numerous patients are needed to better characterize model performance. Heyse and colleagues (Fig. 26.13) found that the pharmacodynamic interaction between sevoflurane and remifentanil for tolerance to shaking and shouting (TOSS), tetanic stimulation (TTET), laryngeal mask airway insertion (TLMA), and laryngoscopy (TLAR) using the Fixed $C50_O$ Hierarchical model was strongly synergistic for both the hypnotic and the analgesic components of anesthesia and showed the importance of exploring various surface model approaches when studying drug interactions.[82,90]

For total intravenous anesthesia, interactions associated with various drug combinations and concentrations have been described. The concept of *balanced* anesthesia is based on the assumption that drug combinations will be synergistic in anesthetic effect (however defined) but not in toxicity. Such synergism has been demonstrated for a variety of drug combinations but not for others (see Fig. 26.10).[77,91] Zanderigo and colleagues[92] developed the *well-being model*, a new interaction model to describe both positive and negative effects of drug combinations (Fig. 26.14).


🟩 Synergy
🟨 Additivity
🟧 Infraadditivity
Immobility
Hypnosis

	GABA	$GABA_{BDZ}$	NMDA	α_2	Opioid	Dopamine	Na^+ channel	Halothane	Enflurane	Isoflurane	Sevoflurane	Desflurane	N_2O	X_e
GABA	🟩 1 🟨 2 🟩 1	🟩 3	🟨 2*		🟨 2a 🟧 2a 🟩 5			🟩 1a			🟨 1		🟧 3	
$GABA_{BDZ}$	🟩 8+1a**		🟧 1¶	🟩 1a	2a			🟩 3	🟩 1a					
NMDA	🟨 2 🟧 1	🟨 1¶						🟩 4a	🟩 1a	🟩 1a				
α_2	🟨 1	🟩 3a			🟩 1a			🟩 3a						
Opioid	🟩 10+4a 🟧 1 🟨 2	🟩 5+3a		🟩 2a				🟩 1+3a 🟧 1	🟩 7a	🟩 4+8a	🟩 2+1a	🟩 2		
Dopamine	🟩 1													
Na^+ channel	🟩 1a 🟧 1a		🟩 1a					🟩 1a						
Halothane					🟧 1					🟨 1a	🟨 1a	🟨 1a	🟧 1a 🟨 2	🟨 1+1a
Enflurane													🟧 2a 🟨 1	
Isoflurane					🟧 1						🟨 1a		🟧 3a 🟨 2	🟨 1a†
Sevoflurane	🟨 1			🟩 1	🟧 1								🟨 2+2a	🟨 1+1a†
Desflurane													🟨 1+1a§	
N_2O										🟧 1	🟧 2			
X_e										🟨 1	🟨 1			

Fig. 26.10 Interaction grid summarizing the available data on drug interactions in humans and animals for hypnosis and immobility. Drugs are organized by pharmacologic class: gamma-aminobutyric acid *(GABA)*–acting drugs (propofol, thiopental, methohexital, and etomidate); GABA agents acting at the benzodiazepine *($GABA_{BDZ}$)*-binding site (midazolam, diazepam); *N*-methyl-D-aspartate *(NMDA)*-receptor antagonist (ketamine); adrenergic agonists *(α_2)* (dexmedetomidine, clonidine); opioid-acting drugs at opioid receptor (morphine, alfentanil, fentanyl, sufentanil, and remifentanil); dopamine at dopamine antagonists (droperidol, metoclopramide); sodium (Na^+) channel blockers (lidocaine, bupivacaine); and anesthetic gases. The right upper half of the grid *(above the thick diagonal)* summarizes the interactions for the endpoint of immobility; the left lower half *(below the thick diagonal)* summarizes the interactions for the endpoint of hypnosis. Synergy is coded as *green*, additivity as *yellow*, and infra-additivity as *dark orange*. The number refers to the number of studies attesting to a particular interaction; if one study documents two interactions (e.g., isoflurane with both fentanyl and alfentanil), then they are counted separately. Animal data carry the suffix *a* after the number of studies, human data have no suffix. *Reanalysis: propofol-ketamine interaction in humans is infra-additive for immobility. **Reanalysis: thiopental-midazolam interaction in humans is additive for hypnosis. †Because the MAC of Xe in swine is uncertain, data in swine are not included. ¶Reanalysis: ketamine-midazolam interaction in humans is infra-additive for hypnosis and additive for immobility. §Infra-additivity between desflurane and nitrous oxide *(N_2O)* has been suggested in a small subgroup of 18- to 30-year-old patients. (From Hendrickx JF, Eger EI 2nd, Sonner JM, et al. Is synergy the rule? A review of anesthetic interactions producing hypnosis and immobility. Anesth *Analg.* 2008;107:494–506. Used with permission.)

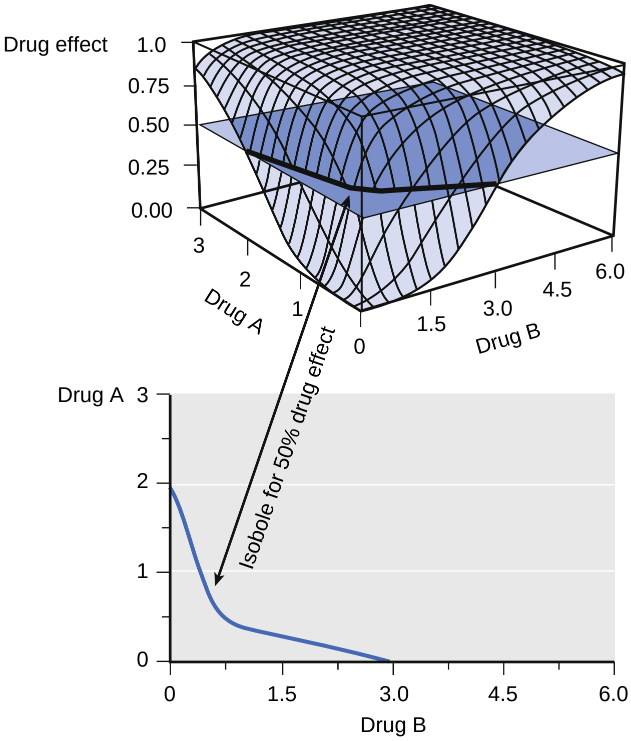


Fig. 26.11 Relationship between a response surface and a standard isobologram. Conventional isobolographic analysis, whether for doses or concentrations, describes only the concentration of both drugs that yields a 50% drug effect and thus fails to capture the entire response surface. (From Minto CF, Schnider TW, Short TG, et al. Response surface model for anesthetic drug interactions. *Anesthesiology.* 2000;92:1603–1616. Used with permission.)

More profound synergy for specific endpoints related to analgesia and hypnosis has also been demonstrated for the interaction between propofol and opioids. Thus when anesthetic regimens are designed that rely on synergy to produce the anesthetic state, distinguishing the desired endpoint—loss of consciousness or ablation of response to noxious stimulation—is important. Different combinations of drugs may be used to achieve any endpoint. Vuyk and colleagues characterized the interaction between propofol and alfentanil for several endpoints: loss of response to endotracheal intubation, loss of response to incision and retraction of the peritoneum, and emergence from anesthesia (Fig. 26.15).[93] The most profound stimulation was tracheal intubation, and when no opioid was used, the abolition of responses to that stimulus required a propofol concentration equal to or more than 12 μg/mL. More details for optimal drug combinations based on the findings from Vuyk and coworkers[93] are provided in Table 26.3.

Minto and colleagues published *response surfaces* for combinations of midazolam-alfentanil, propofol-alfentanil, and midazolam-propofol associated with the loss of response to verbal command (Fig. 26.16).[78] They also extended response surface methodology to describe the simultaneous interaction of three drugs. Rendering the full interaction surface for three drugs would require drawing the graph in four dimensions. If the graph is limited to the interaction at 50% drug effect, then it can be rendered in three dimensions (Fig. 26.17).

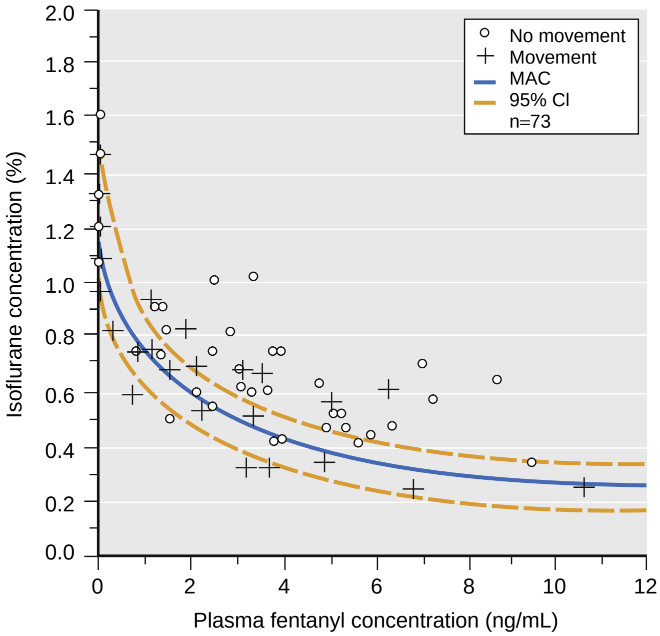


Fig. 26.12 Interaction of isoflurane and fentanyl in preventing a somatic response at skin incision (i.e., minimum alveolar concentration *[MAC]* reduction of isoflurane). The *blue line* represents the concentrations of isoflurane and fentanyl when administered together that are required to prevent purposeful movement in 50% of patients at skin incision. The *dotted gold lines* represent the 95% confidence interval *(CI)* of the MAC at each combination of fentanyl and isoflurane. (From McEwan AI, Smith C, Dyar O, et al. Isoflurane MAC reduction by fentanyl. *Anesthesiology.* 1993;78:864–869. Used with permission.)

In addition to studies of quantal responses, various studies investigated the interaction between hypnotics and opioids as measured with continuous measures. The effect of combined drug administration on spontaneous and evoked EEG–derived indices was found to be important and existing but often in studies that did not provide sufficient data for full-response surface model development.[24,94,95] Fortunately, more accurately designed studies[81] using surface modeling techniques revealed the interaction between hypnotics and opioids. Bouillon and colleagues found synergy between propofol and remifentanil regarding hypnosis as measured by the BIS and EEG approximate entropy. They also found that both indices were more sensitive to propofol than remifentanil.[96] Others found conflicting results for the effect of opioids on the BIS.[97] More recently, Gambus and colleagues modeled the effect of propofol and remifentanil combinations for sedation-analgesia in endoscopic procedures using an adaptive neurofuzzy inference system.[98] Both spontaneous and evoked EEG–derived indices (e.g., BIS or autoregressive auditory-evoked potential index [AAI/2] and index of consciousness [IoC]) were used. They found, based on these models, that the propofol and remifentanil effect-site concentration pairs provide a Ramsay Sedation Score of 4 ranging from (1.8 μg/mL, 1.5 ng/mL) to (2.7 μg/mL, 0 ng/mL), associated with a BIS of 71 to 75, AAI/2 values of 25 to 30, and IoC of 72 to 76, respectively. The presence of noxious stimulation increases the requirements of propofol and remifentanil to achieve the same degree of sedative effects.[98]

Other effects of drug combinations were also studied. Bouillon and associates and Nieuwenhuijs and associates

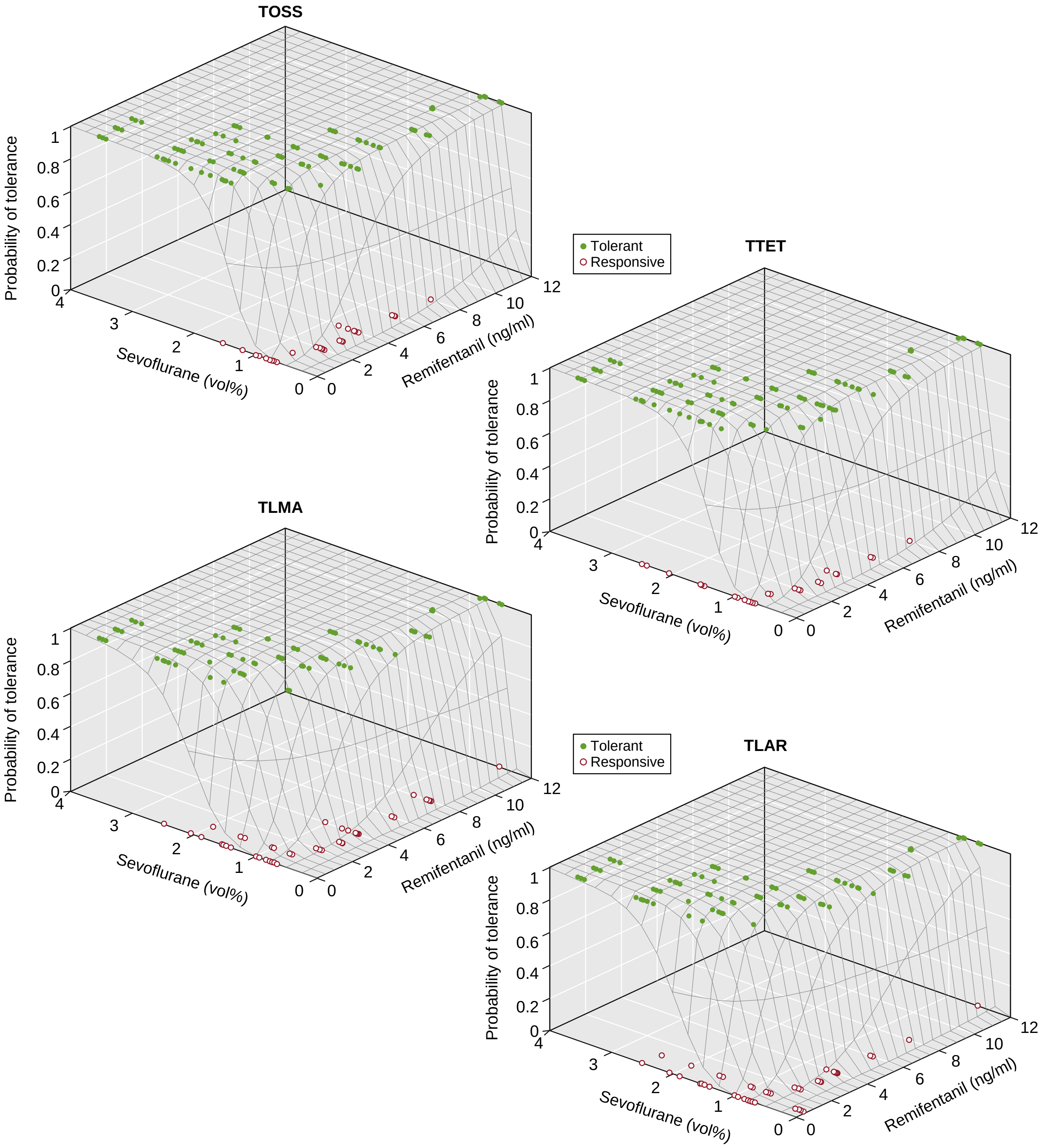


Fig. 26.13 Response surface for probability of tolerance to shaking and shouting *(TOSS)*, tetanic stimulation *(TTET)*, laryngeal mask airway insertion *(TLMA)*, and laryngoscopy *(TLAR)* for the Fixed C50(O) Hierarchical model. The solid lines at probability 0.5 represent the 50% isoboles. (From Heyse B, Proost JH, Schumacher PM, et al. Sevoflurane remifentanil interaction. comparison of different response surface models. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:311–323. Used with permission.)

investigated the effects of hypnotic-opioid combinations on cardiorespiratory control.[97,99] These data show dose-dependent effects on respiration at relatively low concentrations of propofol and remifentanil. When combined, their effect on respiration is strikingly synergistic, resulting in severe respiratory depression.

Surface models were also used to optimize drug administration in challenging situations such as short-duration

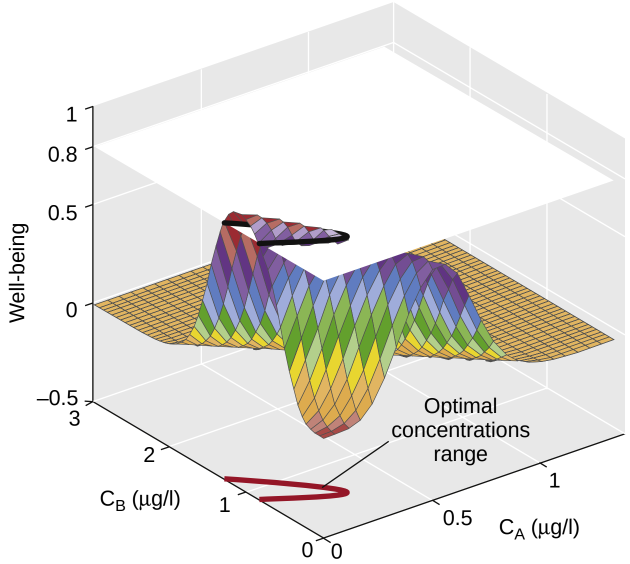


Fig. 26.14 Definition of the optimal concentrations range for the combined administration of drugs A and B, in the case of zero interactions. The optimal concentrations range results from the intersection between the well-being surface and the plane representing a well-being value of 0.8. (From Zanderigo E, Sartori V, Sveticic G, et al. The well-being model. A new drug interaction model for positive and negative effects. *Anesthesiology.* 2006;104:742–753. Used with permission.)

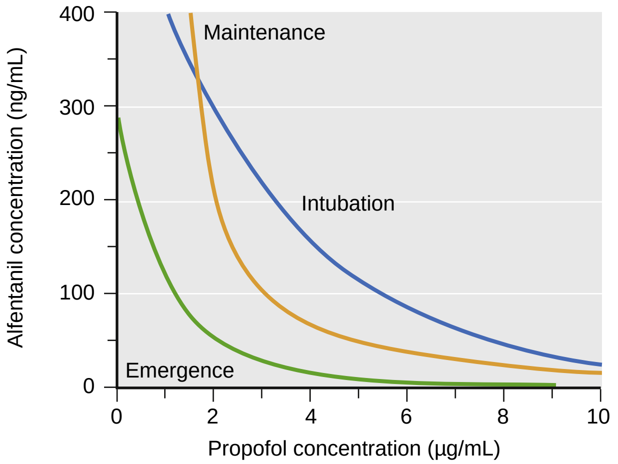


Fig. 26.15 Interaction between alfentanil and propofol on three different endpoints. Response to intubation *(blue line)*, maintenance of anesthesia *(gold line)*, and concentrations associated with emergence from anesthesia *(green line)*. The curve shows the concentrations associated with a 50% probability of the respective endpoint. (Modified from Vuyk J, Lim T, Engbers FH, et al. The pharmacodynamic interaction of propofol and alfentanil during lower abdominal surgery in women. *Anesthesiology.* 1995;83:8–22.)

procedures in spontaneous breathing patients. LaPierre and coworkers[100] explored remifentanil-propofol combinations that led to a loss of response to esophageal instrumentation, a loss of responsiveness, and/or an onset of ventilatory depression requiring intervention. They found that the combinations that allowed esophageal instrumentation and avoided intolerable ventilatory depression and/or loss of responsiveness primarily clustered around remifentanil-propofol effect-site concentrations ranging from 0.8 to 1.6 ng/mL and 1.5 to 2.7 µg/mL, respectively. However, blocking the response to esophageal instrumentation and avoiding both intolerable ventilatory depression and/or a loss of responsiveness is difficult. It may be necessary to accept some discomfort and blunt, rather than block, the response to esophageal instrumentation to consistently avoid intolerable ventilatory depression and/or loss of responsiveness.

In a previously mentioned study, using response surface modeling, Bouillon and colleagues also determined the interactions between propofol and remifentanil on the probability to tolerate laryngoscopy (PTOL).[96] Luginbuhl, working with a group that included Bouillon, normalized and calibrated PTOL, to produce an index called the noxious stimulus response index (NSRI).[101] The NSRI is a dimensionless integer number between 0 and 100, where 50 corresponds to a PTOL of 50% and 20 to a PTOL of 90%.

The interactions between hypnotics such as propofol and sevoflurane should also be understood, because these drugs are frequently used sequentially. Schumacher and colleagues[102] used response surface methodology to examine the influence of this interaction on the probability of TOSS and three noxious stimuli (TTET, TLMA, and TLAR). They found that for both EEG suppression and tolerance to stimulation, the interaction of propofol and sevoflurane were additive. Others found similar results on the C_{50} level.[103] Hammer and colleagues[104] determined the pharmacodynamic interaction of propofol and dexmedetomidine during pediatric esophagogastroduodenoscopy and concluded that the concentration of propofol at which 50% of patients are adequately anesthetized (EC_{50}) in children was unaffected by a concomitant intravenous infusion of dexmedetomidine 1 µg/kg body weight given over 10 minutes.

Hannivoort and colleagues took this work a step further by using response surface modeling to develop a model that predicts the effect of combinations of sevoflurane, propofol, and remifentanil in terms of PTOL and the NSRI.[105]

Although models of the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of drug, and models of drug interactions, are essentially just that—models that attempt to provide qualitative and quantitative representations of reality—they are based on many assumptions, and inherently involve many sources of error.[106] Nonetheless, the models provide information that is useful to clinicians to help guide rational practice. Information on drug interactions, including the NSRI, has been incorporated in commercially available anesthetic display monitors and are described by van den Berg and associates in a concise summary of current knowledge, and the ways that it has and can be incorporated into clinical practice.[107]

Designing Dosing Regimens

BOLUS DOSE CALCULATIONS

The definition of concentration is drug mass per unit of volume. The definition of concentration can be rearranged to find the amount of drug required to produce any desired concentration for a known volume (Eq. 26.10):

$$Amount = C_T \bullet Volume \qquad (26.10)$$

TABLE 26.3 Propofol/Opioid Combinations Associated with the Fastest Recovery from Anesthesia

Infusion Duration (min)		Propofol/Alfentanil (μg/mL; ng/mL)	Propofol/Sufentanil (μg/mL; ng/mL)	Propofol/Remifentanil (μg/mL; ng/mL)
15	$C_{optimal}$	3.25/99.3	3.57/0.17	2.57/4.70
	$C_{awakening}$	1.69/65.0	1.70/0.10	1.83/1.93
	Time to awakening (min)	8.2	9.4	5.1
60	$C_{optimal}$	3.38/89.7	3.34/0.14	2.51/4.78
	$C_{awakening}$	1.70/64.9	1.70/0.10	1.83/1.93
	Time to awakening (min)	12.2	11.9	6.1
300	$C_{optimal}$	3.40/88.9	3.37/0.14	2.51/4.78
	$C_{awakening}$	1.70/64.9	1.70/0.10	1.86/1.88
	Time to awakening (min)	16.0	15.6	6.7

$C_{optimal}$ represents combinations associated with a 50% probability of a response to surgical stimuli; $C_{awakening}$ concentrations represent the estimated concentrations at which consciousness will be regained; and Time to awakening represents the estimated time from termination of the infusion to return of consciousness in 50% of patients.

From Vuyk J, Mertens MJ, Olofsen E, et al. Propofol anesthesia and rational opioid selection. Determination of optimal EC_{50}-EC_{95} propofol-opioid concentrations that assure adequate anesthesia and a rapid return of consciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1549–1562; and modified from Absalom A, Struys MMRF. *An Overview of TCI and TIVA*. ed 2. Gent, Belgium: Academia Press; 2007. Used with permission.

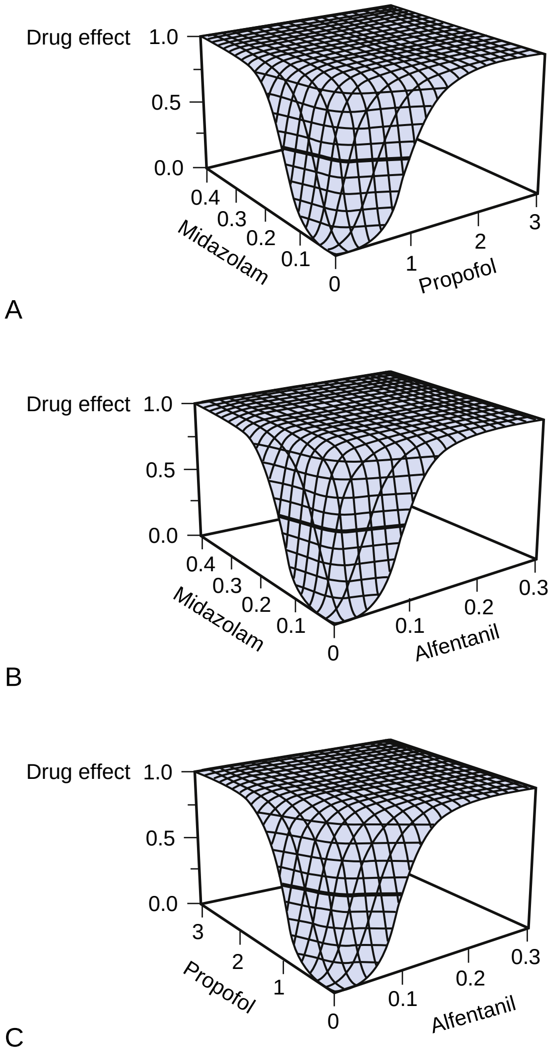


Fig. 26.16 Response surface for each of the paired interactions between propofol and midazolam (A), alfentanil and midazolam (B), and alfentanil and propofol (C) on the probability of opening eyes to a verbal command. The isoboles for a 10%, 20%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, and 90% response are shown. (From Minto CF, Schnider TW, Short TG, et al. Response surface model for anesthetic drug interactions. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1603–1616.)

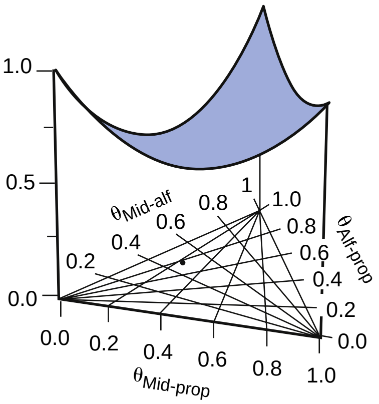


Fig. 26.17 Interaction at 50% drug effect (C_{50}) among propofol, midazolam, and alfentanil. Downward deflection of the surface represents synergy, in units of fractional reduction in C_{50}. The three edges represent relative amounts of propofol to midazolam *($\theta_{Mid\text{-}prop}$)*, alfentanil to midazolam *($\theta_{Mid\text{-}alf}$)*, and alfentanil to propofol *($\theta_{Alf\text{-}prop}$)*. The surface between the edges represents the relative synergy of all three drugs taken together. (From Minto CF, Schnider TW, Short TG, et al. Response surface model for anesthetic drug interactions. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1603–1616.)

where C_T is the desired or *target* concentration. This formula is often used to calculate the initial (loading) bolus dose required to achieve a given concentration. The problem with applying this concept to anesthetic drugs is that there are several volumes of distribution: V_1 (central compartment), V_2 and V_3 (the peripheral compartments), and Vd_{ss} (the sum of the individual volumes). V_1 is usually significantly smaller than Vd_{ss}, and thus saying that the loading dose should be something between $C_T \times V_1$ and $C_T \times Vd_{ss}$ is tempting.

Consideration should be given to the dose of fentanyl required to attenuate the hemodynamic response to endotracheal intubation when combined with thiopental. The C_{50} for fentanyl, combined with thiopental for intubation, is approximately 3 ng/mL. The V_1 and Vd_{ss} for fentanyl are 13 L and 360 L, respectively. The aforementioned equations can thus be interpreted as suggesting that an appropriate dose of fentanyl to attenuate the hemodynamic response is between 39 μg (3 ng/mL × 13 L) and 1080 μg (3 ng/mL

× 360 L). A fentanyl bolus of 39 µg achieves the desired concentration in plasma for an initial instant, but plasma levels almost instantly decrease below the desired target. Levels at the effect site will never be close to the desired target concentration of 3 ng/mL. A fentanyl bolus of 1080 µg, not surprisingly, produces a significant overshoot in plasma levels that persists for hours (Fig. 26.18). Additionally, using equations to calculate the fentanyl dose if the resulting recommendation is to "use a fentanyl dose between 39 and 1080 µg" is absurd.

The usual dosing guidelines for a bolus dose, presented earlier, are designed to produce a specific plasma concentration. Because plasma is not the site of drug effect, calculating the initial bolus on the basis of a desired plasma concentration is irrational. By knowing the k_{e0} of an intravenous anesthetic, a dosing regimen can be designed that yields the desired concentration at the site of drug effect. To avoid an overdose for the patient, a bolus should be selected that produces the desired peak concentration at the effect site.

The decline in plasma concentration between the initial concentration after the bolus (amount/V_1) and the concentration at the time of peak effect can be thought of as dilution of the bolus into a larger anatomic volume than the volume of the central compartment. This introduces the concept of Vd_{pe}, the apparent volume of distribution at the time of peak effect,[28,94] or pseudoequilibration between plasma and the site of drug effect.[95] The size of this volume can be readily calculated from the observation that the plasma and effect-site concentrations are the same at the time of peak effect (Eq. 26.11):

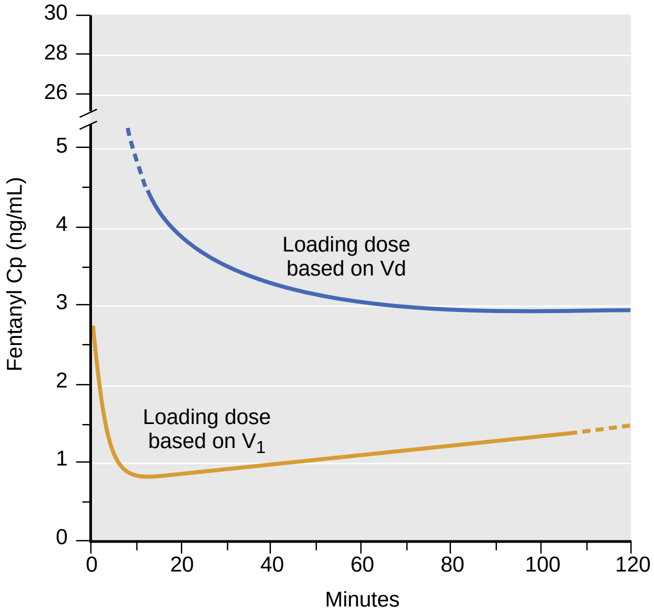


Fig. 26.18 Pharmacokinetic simulation demonstrating the limitations of infusion regimens based on simple pharmacokinetic parameters with fentanyl used as an example. These infusion schemes were designed to achieve a fentanyl plasma concentration *(Cp)* of 3 ng/mL. The *upper blue curve* shows that a regimen using a loading dose based on the volume of distribution followed by a constant infusion based on clearance results in a transient period of very high plasma concentrations. If the same maintenance infusion is given but the loading dose is based on the volume of the central compartment, then the distribution of drug to the peripheral compartments causes the plasma concentration to fall below the desired level until the compartments reach steady-state concentrations as shown in the *lower gold curve*.

$$Vd_{pe} = \frac{Bolus\ amount}{C_{pe}} \qquad (26.11)$$

where C_{pe} is the plasma concentration at the time of peak effect.

If the clinical goal is to select the dose required to achieve a certain drug effect without producing an overdose, then Eq. 26.11 can be rearranged by substituting C_T, the target concentration (which is the same in plasma and the effect site at the moment of peak effect), for C_{pe} to calculate the size of the initial bolus (Eq. 26.12)

$$Loading\ dose = C_T \times Vd_{pe} \qquad (26.12)$$

The Vd_{pe} for fentanyl is 75 L. To achieve a peak fentanyl effect-site concentration of 3.0 ng/mL requires 225 µg, which produces a peak effect in 3.6 minutes. This dosing guideline is more reasonable compared with the previous recommendation of a dose between 39 and 1080 µg. Table 26.4 lists V_1 and Vd_{pe} for fentanyl, alfentanil, sufentanil, remifentanil, propofol, thiopental, and midazolam. Table 26.1 lists the time to peak effect and the $t_{1/2}\ k_{e0}$ of the commonly used intravenous anesthetics.

MAINTENANCE INFUSION RATES

By definition, the rate at which active drug exits the body is systemic clearance (Cl_S) times the plasma concentration. To maintain a given target concentration (C_T), drug must be delivered at the same rate that it is exiting the body. Thus (Eq. 26.13),

$$Maintenance\ infusion\ rate = C_T \times Cl_S \qquad (26.13)$$

For drugs with multicompartment pharmacokinetics, which includes all of the intravenous drugs used in anesthetic practice, drug is distributed into the peripheral tissues, as well as cleared from the body. The rate of distribution into tissues changes over time as the tissues equilibrate with plasma. Eq. 26.13 is correct only after the peripheral tissues have fully equilibrated with plasma, which requires many hours. At all other times, this maintenance infusion rate underestimates the infusion rate necessary to maintain a target concentration.

Yet in some situations, this simple maintenance rate calculation may be acceptable. For example, if an infusion at this rate is used along with a bolus dose based on Vd_{pe} and the drug has a long delay between the bolus and peak effect, then most of the distribution of drug into tissues may have occurred by the time that the effect-site concentration reaches the target concentration. In this case, the maintenance infusion rate calculated as clearance times target concentration may be accurate because Vd_{pe} is sufficiently higher than V_1 to account for the distribution of drug into peripheral tissues. Unfortunately, most drugs used in anesthesia achieve sufficiently rapid equilibration between plasma and the effect site that Vd_{pe} does not adequately encompass the distribution process, thus making this approach unsuitable.

As such, approaches need to be used that are mathematically and clinically sound. Because the net flow of drug into peripheral tissues decreases over time, the infusion rate required to maintain any desired concentration must also decrease over time. If the initial bolus has been based on

Vd_{pe}, no infusion needs be administered until the effect-site concentration peaks. After the peak in effect-site concentration, the (nearly) correct equation to maintain the desired concentration is (Eq. 26.14)

$$\text{Maintenance infusion rate} = C_T \times V_1 \times \left(k_{10} + k_{12}e^{-k_{21}t} + k_{13}e^{-k_{31}t}\right) \qquad (26.14)$$

This equation indicates that a rapid infusion rate is initially required to maintain C_T. Over time, the infusion rate gradually decreases (see Fig. 26.14). At equilibrium (t = ∞), the infusion rate decreases to $C_T \times V_1 \times k_{10}$, which is the same as $C_T \times Cl_S$. Few clinicians would choose to solve such an equation during the administration of an anesthetic. Fortunately, simple techniques can be used in place of solving such a complex expression.

TABLE 26.4 Volume of Distribution at the Time of Peak Effect

Drug	V_1 (L)	Vd_{pe} (L)
Fentanyl	12.7	75
Alfentanil	2.19	5.9
Sufentanil	17.8	89
Remifentanil	5.0	17
Propofol	6.7	37
Thiopental	5.6	14.6
Midazolam	3.4	31

V_1, Volume of the central compartment; *Vd_{pe}*, apparent volume of distribution at the time of peak effect.

Fig. 26.19 is a nomogram in which Eq. 26.14 has been solved; the infusion rates at different times necessary to maintain any desired concentration of fentanyl, alfentanil, sufentanil, and propofol are shown. Because this nomogram is complex, the following review is provided:

The *y* axis represents the target concentration C_T. The *x* axis is the time since the beginning of the anesthetic (i.e., since the initial bolus). The suggested initial target concentrations (shown in gold) are based on the work of Vuyk and colleagues[93] with propofol and alfentanil (see Fig. 26.15) and are scaled to fentanyl and sufentanil according to their relative potencies.[108] The intersections of the target concentration line and the diagonal lines indicate the infusion rate appropriate at each point in time. For example, to maintain a sufentanil concentration of 0.16 ng/mL, the appropriate rates are approximately: 0.6 µg/kg/h at 5 minutes, 0.5 µg/kg/h at 10 minutes, 0.4 µg/kg/h at 20 minutes, and 0.3 µg/kg/h at 40 minutes. Of course, selecting target concentrations and different times of rate adjustment is possible, depending on the clinical circumstances and an assessment of how accurately the intravenous drug needs to be titrated.

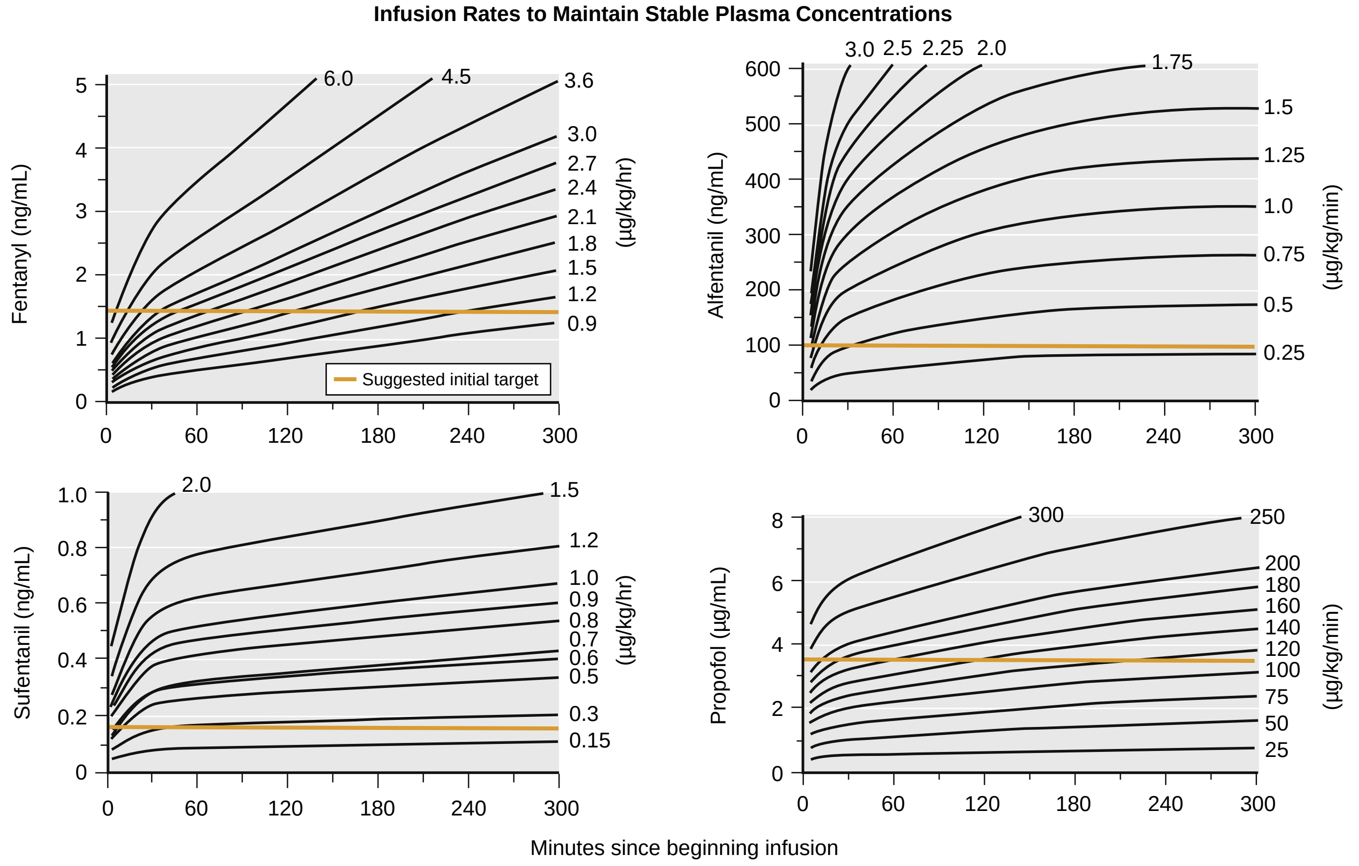


Fig. 26.19 Nomogram for calculating maintenance infusion rates to maintain a stable concentration of fentanyl, alfentanil, sufentanil, or propofol. The *y* axis is the desired concentration. The *x* axis is the time relative to the initial bolus. The *diagonal lines* show the infusion rates at different times required to maintain the desired concentration selected on the *y* axis.

RECOVERY FROM ANESTHESIA

Recovery from anesthesia is determined by the pharmacokinetic principles that govern the rate of decrease in drug from the effect compartment once drug administration is terminated, as well as by the pharmacodynamics of the drug. Although the terminal elimination half-life is often interpreted as a measure of how short- or long-lasting a drug is, the rate at which drug plasma concentration decreases is dependent on both elimination and redistribution of the drug from the central compartment. The contribution of redistribution and elimination toward the rate of decrease in drug concentration varies according to the duration for which the drug has been administered[108,109] and also the time since the infusion has stopped, because these processes have different rate constants.

In 1985, Schwilden[110] developed a mathematic model to relate the time course of offset of action of inhaled anesthetics to the duration of anesthetic drug delivery. Similarly, Fisher and Rosen[111] demonstrated how the accumulation of neuromuscular blocking agents in peripheral volumes of distribution results in slowed recovery with increasing duration of administration. They introduced two measures of the time course of recovery, the time for twitch tension to recover from 5% to 25% and the time for twitch tension to recover from 25% to 75%.

Since then, the time for the plasma concentration to decrease by 50% from an infusion that maintains a constant concentration (e.g., infusion given by (Eq. 26.14) has been termed the *context-sensitive half-time* (Fig. 26.20),[109] with the context being the duration of the infusion. The 50% decrease was chosen both for tradition (e.g., half-lives are the time for a 50% decrease with a one-compartment model) and because, very roughly, a 50% reduction in drug concentration appears to be necessary for recovery after the administration of most intravenous hypnotics at the termination of surgery. Depending on circumstances, decreases other than 50% may be clinically relevant. Additionally, sometimes it is the plasma concentration that is of interest, and sometimes it is the effect-site concentration that is of interest. A more general term is the context-sensitive *decrement time*,[112] in which the decrement in concentration is specifically noted, as is the compartment where the decrease is modeled (plasma or effect site). For example, the relationship between infusion duration and the time required for a 70% decrease in fentanyl effect-site concentration is the *context-sensitive 70% effect-site decrement time*.

Context-sensitive effect-site decrement times for varying percent decreases in alfentanil, fentanyl, sufentanil, and remifentanil concentration are illustrated in Fig. 26.21. To determine when an infusion should be terminated (to enable awakening of the patient at the end of surgery), the clinician needs to bear in mind the decrease in concentration necessary for recovery, the duration of the infusion (the context), and the context-sensitive, effect-site decrement time required for the necessary decrease.

Context-sensitive decrement times are fundamentally different from the elimination half-life. With monoexponential decay, each 50% decrease in concentration requires the same amount of time, and this time is independent of how the drug is given. This is not true for the context-sensitive half-time. First, as the name is intended to imply, the time needed for a 50% decrease is absolutely dependent on how long the drug was given, with infusion duration being the context to which the name refers. In addition, small changes in percent decrement can result in surprisingly large increases in the time required. The time required for a 60% decrease in drug concentration can be more than twice the time required for a 50% decrease in some situations (see Fig. 26.21).

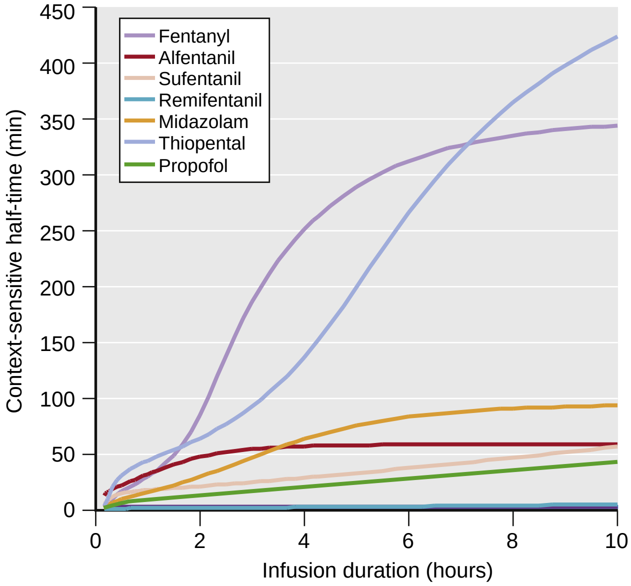


Fig. 26.20 Context-sensitive half-times as a function of infusion duration (context) derived from pharmacokinetic models of fentanyl, sufentanil, alfentanil, remifentanil, propofol, midazolam, and thiopental. (From Hughes MA, Glass PSA, Jacobs JR. Context-sensitive half-time in multicompartment pharmacokinetic models for intravenous anesthetic drugs. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:334–341.)

Context-sensitive decrement times are based on the assumption that plasma or the effect site is maintained at a constant concentration. Such is rarely the case clinically, but the maintenance of constant concentrations is a necessary assumption to provide a unique mathematic solution to the time required for a given percent decrement in plasma or effect-site concentration. Because plasma and effect-site concentrations are rarely kept constant, it is important that context-sensitive decrement times are used as *general* guidelines for interpreting the pharmacokinetics of intravenous drugs and not as *absolute* predictions for any given individual patient case or infusion regimen. Automated drug delivery systems can provide more precise predictions of the time required for the plasma or effect-site concentration to decrease to any desired concentration, based on the actual drug dosing in the individual patient, which provides the clinician with guidance for the most appropriate time to terminate the infusion.

Context-sensitive decrement times focus on the role of pharmacokinetics in recovery from anesthesia. Pharmacodynamics plays an important role in recovery as well. Bailey[113] used integrated pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic models to define the *mean effect time* as the average time to responsiveness after maintenance of anesthesia at the 90% probability of unresponsiveness. The mean effect time demonstrates that when drugs have a very shallow concentration-versus-response relationship, concentrations must decrease by a significant fraction to provide adequate emergence, which delays recovery from anesthesia. In contrast,

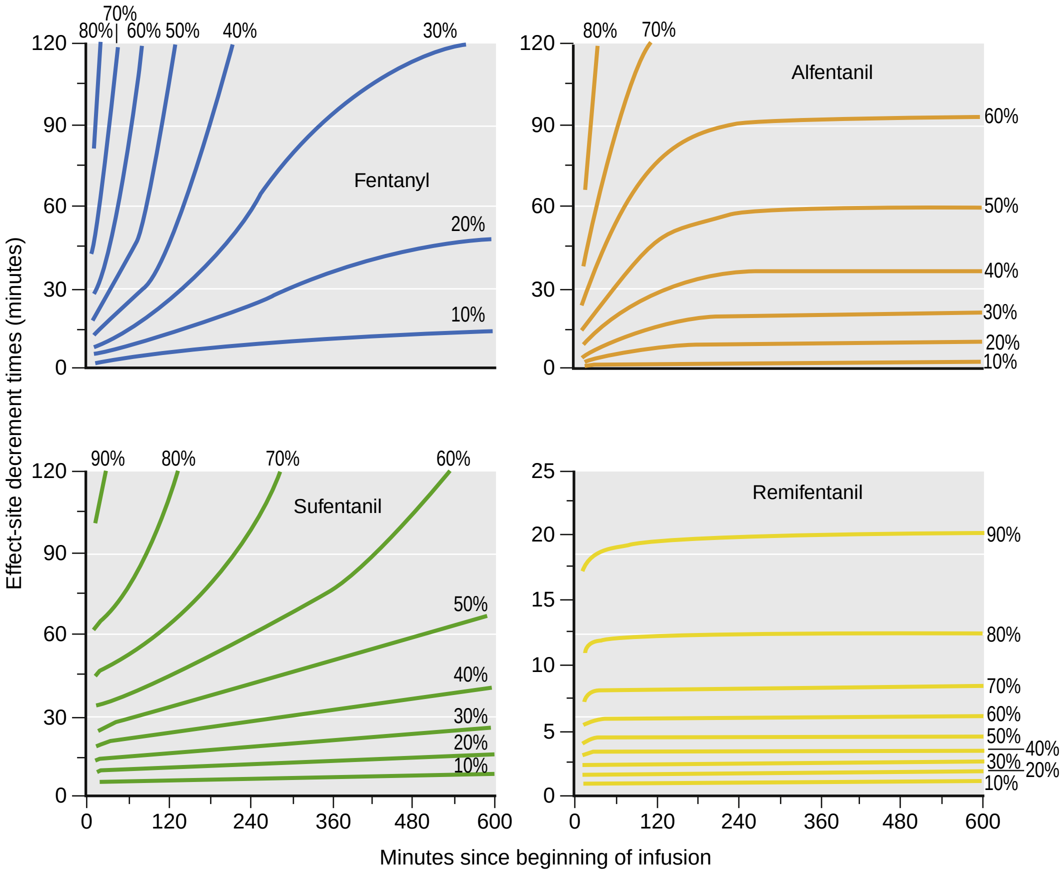


Fig. 26.21 Context-sensitive effect-site decrement times for alfentanil, fentanyl, sufentanil, and remifentanil showing the time required for decreases of a given percentage (labeled for each curve) from the maintained effect-site concentration after termination of the infusion.

recovery is hastened by a steep concentration-versus-response relationship, in which emergence from anesthesia occurs after a relatively small fractional decrease in concentration. Most intravenous hypnotics have a moderately steep concentration-versus-response relationship.

Pharmacodynamic drug interactions also play a role in recovery from anesthesia. Interaction relationships predict that the same anesthetic state can be achieved by different ratios of two drugs. One way of selecting the best ratio might be the combination that offers the most rapid recovery. For example, when an opioid is combined with a hypnotic, the rate of recovery from anesthesia depends on the opioid and hypnotic concentrations, the rate of decrease in both drug concentrations, and the relative synergy between them for loss of response to noxious stimulation (i.e., the state maintained during anesthesia) versus the relative synergy for loss of consciousness. Although the time course of decreases in opioid and hypnotic concentrations can be approximately described by their respective context-sensitive decrement times for both drugs (Fig. 26.22; see Fig. 26.15]), the influence of relative synergy for different endpoints must be captured by separate models of the interaction of the drugs for adequate anesthesia and emergence from anesthesia.

Vuyk and coworkers[54] modeled the predicted time to awakening from adequate anesthesia when propofol is combined with fentanyl, sufentanil, alfentanil, or remifentanil. Their calculations took into account the interaction between propofol and these opioids to provide adequate anesthesia and the interaction between propofol and opioids on consciousness levels on emergence from anesthesia (Figs. 26.23 and 26.24). Recovery times vary with the choice of opioid and the relative balance of opioid and

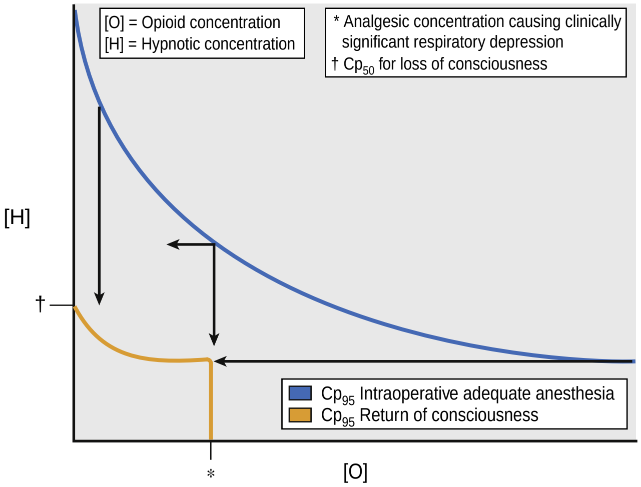

[O] = Opioid concentration
[H] = Hypnotic concentration
* Analgesic concentration causing clinically significant respiratory depression
† Cp_{50} for loss of consciousness
[H]
†
*
[O]
🟦 Cp_{95} Intraoperative adequate anesthesia
🟧 Cp_{95} Return of consciousness

Fig. 26.22 Interaction between hypnotics and opioids for the prevention of movement after a noxious stimulus and for awakening and adequate spontaneous ventilation at the end of a surgical procedure. The time to recover at the end of a procedure is dependent on the concentration of both drugs used during surgery and the time for both to decrease below that required for consciousness and adequate spontaneous ventilation (i.e., their context-sensitive decrement times).

propofol during maintenance of anesthesia. For example, the upper left of Fig. 26.23 simulates the emergence from a propofol-fentanyl anesthetic of 15-minute duration. The simulations assume a steady concentration of fentanyl and propofol throughout the anesthesia, similar to the underlying assumption of context-sensitive decrement times. The lowest curve on the response surface is the interaction curve between fentanyl and propofol; it ranges from no fentanyl and 12 μg/mL of propofol on the left to 5.33 ng/mL of fentanyl and 1.8 μg/mL of propofol on the right. In theory, any point along this curve would ensure maintenance of equivalent depth of anesthesia. When the infusion is turned off after 15 minutes of anesthesia, the concentrations of both drugs decrease. The decreasing concentrations of propofol and fentanyl when the infusion is turned off can be found by the upward lines drawn from different points on the interaction curve, with the distance away from the lower plane representing time. Taken together, these upward lines represent a *recovery surface*. The blue line drawn on the recovery surface shows the points at which the fentanyl-propofol interaction model predicts emergence.

After 15 minutes of maintaining 1.8 μg/mL of propofol and 5.33 ng/mL of fentanyl (right margin of the interaction curve), approximately 12 to 17 minutes is needed for the concentrations of both drugs to decrease sufficiently to permit emergence (see Fig. 26.23). However, if one maintains concentrations of 3.5 μg/mL of propofol and 1.5 ng/mL of fentanyl (toward the middle of the interaction curve),

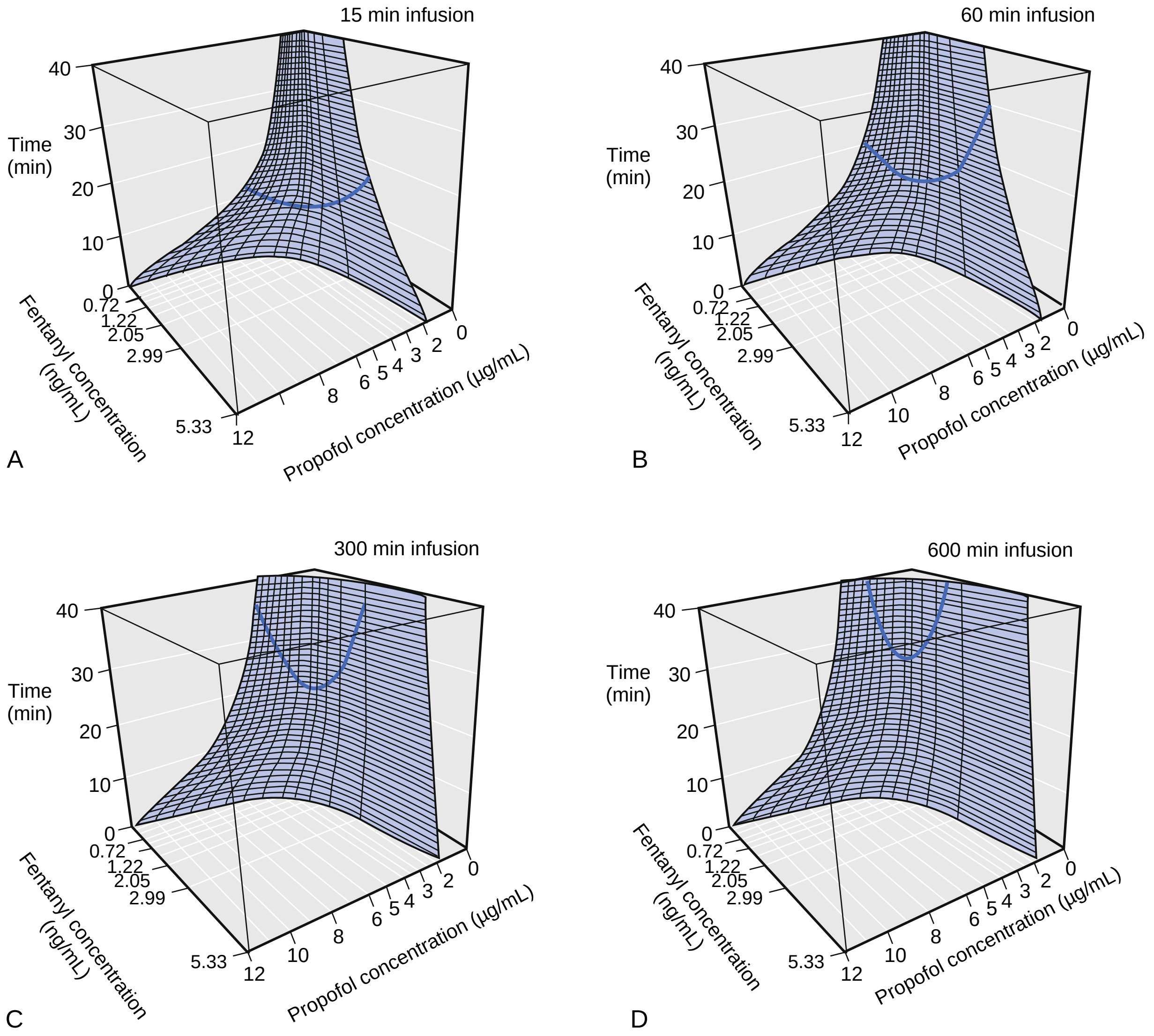


Fig. 26.23 Simulation of the interaction of propofol and fentanyl in preventing a somatic response at skin incision and time to recovery. On the *x* axis is the fentanyl concentration, and on the *y* axis is the propofol concentration. The *blue curve* in the lower plane shows the propofol-fentanyl interaction required to provide adequate anesthesia. When the infusion is turned off, the concentrations of each drug decrease, as shown on the *z* axis. The *blue curve* drawn on the recovery surface shows the time to emergence from anesthesia for combinations of fentanyl and propofol after an anesthetic of 15 minutes' (A), 60 minutes' (B), 300 minutes' (C), and 600 minutes' (D) duration. The optimal combination for the most rapid recovery is a propofol concentration of 3.0 to 3.5 μg/mL, combined with 1.5 ng/mL fentanyl. As the concentration of propofol or fentanyl increases, the time for recovery increases. In addition, the longer the duration of drug infusion, the longer recovery takes, especially if the optimal combination is not used. (Modified from Vuyk J, Mertens MJ, Olofsen E, et al. Propofol anesthesia and rational opioid selection. Determination of optimal EC50-EC95 propofol-opioid concentrations that assure adequate anesthesia and a rapid return of consciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1549–1562.)

then emergence can be expected only 8 minutes after the infusions are turned off. Examination of the curves for 60, 300, and 600 minutes of propofol-fentanyl anesthesia suggests that the fentanyl target concentration that provides the most rapid emergence is approximately 1.0 to 1.5 ng/mL, which requires a propofol concentration of approximately 3.0 to 3.5 μg/mL to maintain adequate anesthesia. In similar simulations, Vuyk and colleagues demonstrated that maintaining alfentanil and sufentanil concentrations in excess of the analgesic range (i.e., approximately 80 ng/mL for alfentanil and 0.15 ng/mL for sufentanil) is of little clinical benefit and can be expected to delay recovery from anesthesia. A second conclusion from these simulations is that if the patient demonstrates inadequate anesthesia, increasing the hypnotic concentration rather than increasing the opioid concentration beyond the analgesic range is preferable, so as to prevent prolongation of recovery.

The situation is different for remifentanil because of its unusual pharmacokinetic properties (see Fig. 26.24). When a remifentanil infusion is terminated, the extraordinarily fast clearance of remifentanil results in a very rapid offset of opioid drug effect. The lower plane again shows equivalent anesthetic states during maintenance with remifentanil and propofol (see Fig. 26.24). High doses of remifentanil permit a modest reduction in the dose of propofol needed for adequate anesthesia.[114] However, the recovery surfaces show that high doses of remifentanil, with a modest reduction in the propofol dose, permit considerably faster emergence

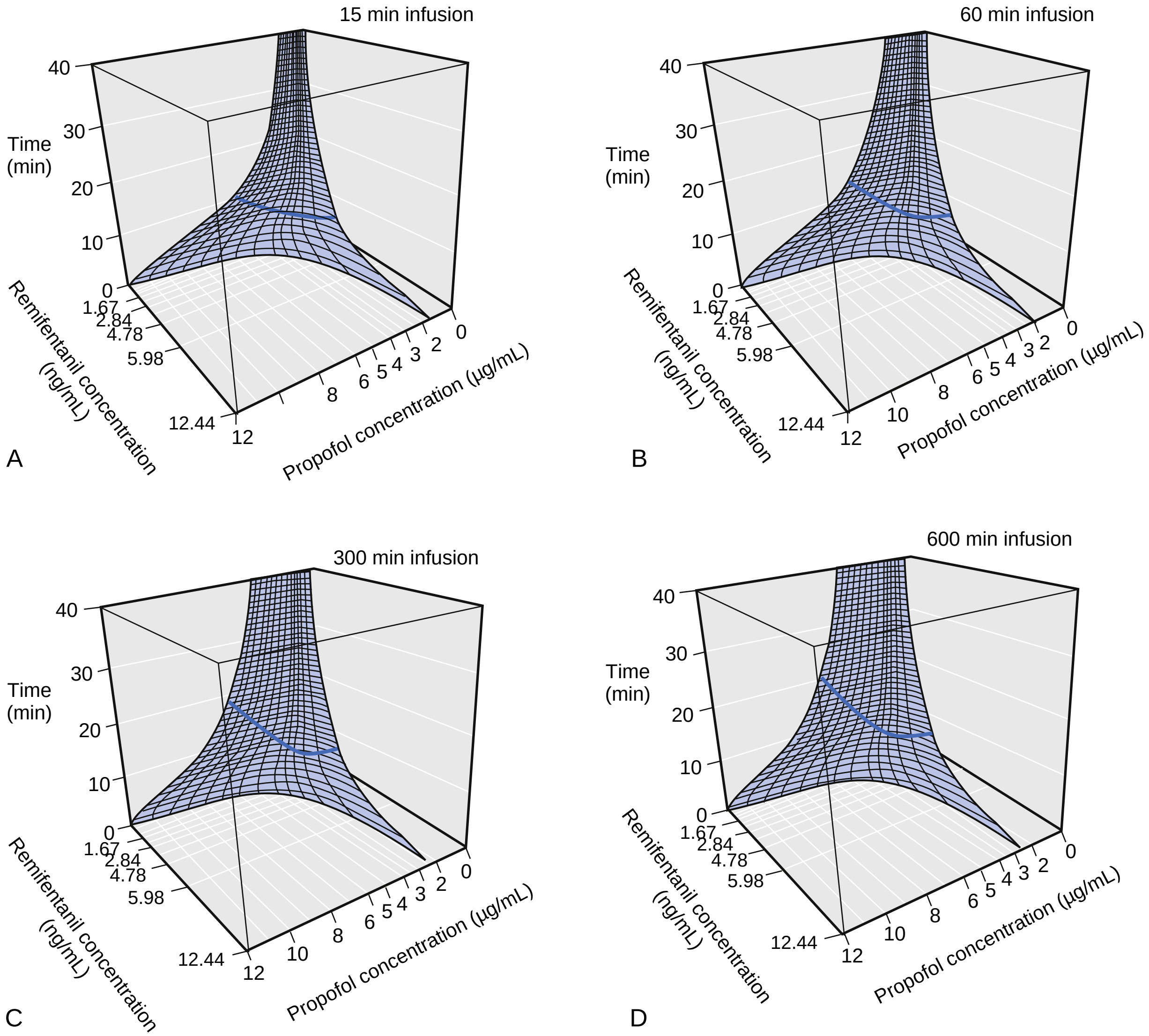


Fig. 26.24 Simulation of the interaction of propofol and remifentanil in preventing a somatic response at skin incision and time to recovery. The remifentanil concentration is on the *x* axis, and the propofol concentration is on the *y* axis. The *blue curve* in the lower plane shows the propofol-remifentanil interaction required to provide adequate anesthesia. When the infusion is turned off, the concentrations of each drug decrease, as shown on the *z* axis. The *blue line* drawn on the recovery surface shows the time to emergence from anesthesia for combinations of remifentanil and propofol after an anesthetic of 15 minutes' (A), 60 minutes' (B), 300 minutes' (C), and 600 minutes' (D) duration. With remifentanil, the optimal combination is a propofol concentration of 2.5 μg/mL and with remifentanil, 5 to 7 ng/mL. In addition, increasing the duration of the infusion has minimal impact on recovery time if the optimal dose of remifentanil is not used. However, if the propofol dose is increased, then recovery is prolonged. (Modified from Vuyk J, Mertens MJ, Olofsen E, et al. Propofol anesthesia and rational opioid selection. Determination of optimal EC50-EC95 propofol-opioid concentrations that assure adequate anesthesia and a rapid return of consciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1549–1562.)

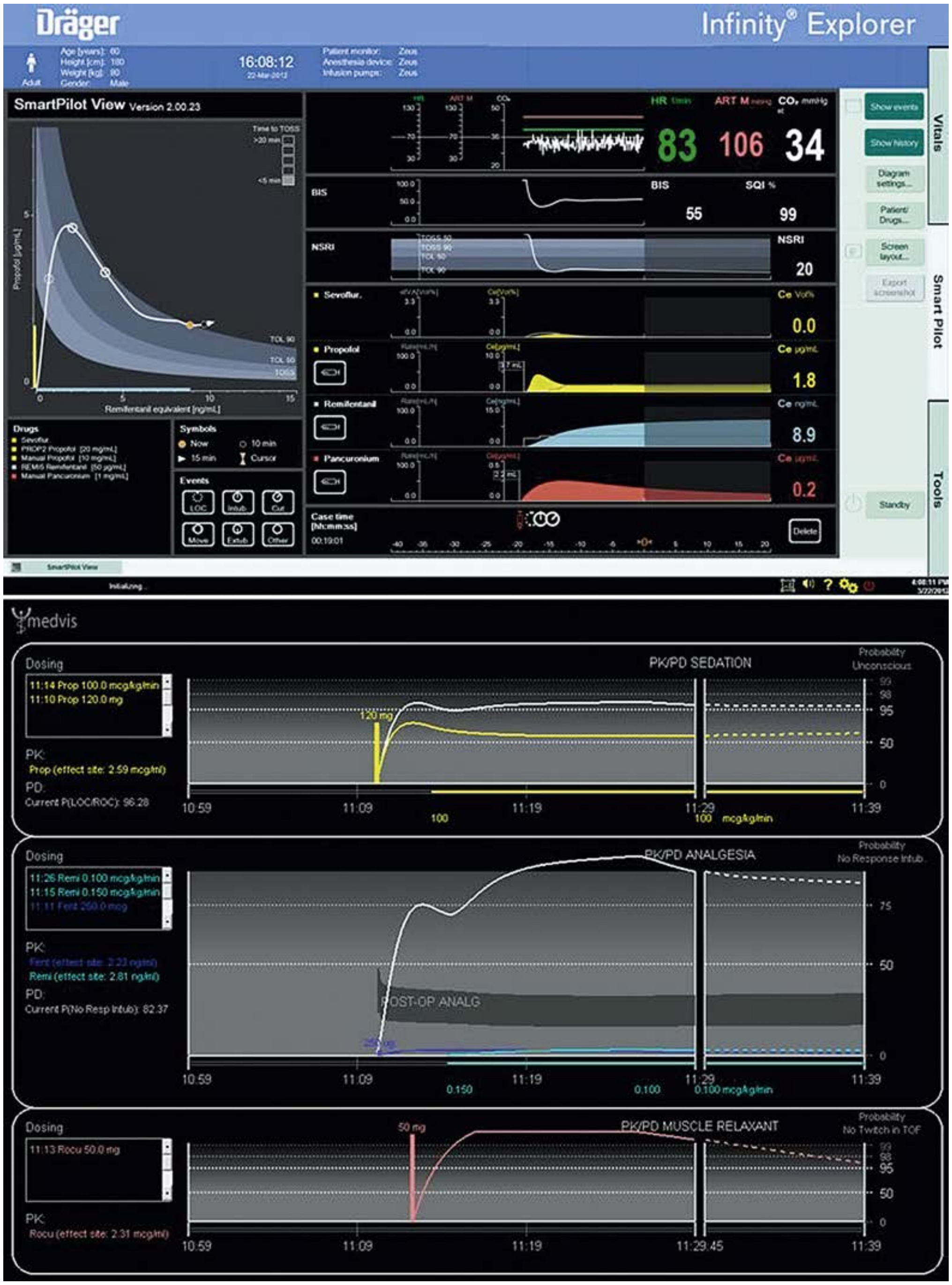

Dräger
Infinity® Explorer
Age [years]: 60
Height [cm]: 180
Weight [kg]: 80
Gender: Male
Adult
16:08:12
22-Mar-2012
Patient monitor: Zeus
Anesthesia device: Zeus
Infusion pumps: Zeus
SmartPilot View Version 2.00.23
Time to TOSS
>20 min
<5 min
Propofol [µg/mL]
Remifentanil equivalent [ng/mL]
TOL 90
TOL 50
TOSS
Drugs
Sevoflur.
PROP2 Propofol [20 mg/mL]
Manual Propofol [10 mg/mL]
REMI5 Remifentanil [50 µg/mL]
Manual Pancuronium [1 mg/mL]
Symbols
Now
10 min
15 min
Cursor
Events
LOC
Intub
Cut
Move
Extub
Other
HR
ART M
CO₂
83
106
34
BIS
SQI %
55
99
NSRI
TOSS 50
TOSS 90
TOL 50
TOL 90
20
Sevoflur.
Ce Vol%
0.0
Propofol
Ce µg/mL
1.8
Remifentanil
Ce ng/mL
8.9
Pancuronium
Ce µg/mL
0.2
Case time [hh:mm:ss]
00:19:01
Delete
Show events
Show history
Diagram settings...
Patient/Drugs...
Screen layout...
Export screenshot
Standby
Vitals
Smart Pilot
Tools
SmartPilot View
Initializing...
medvis
Dosing
11:14 Prop 100.0 mcg/kg/min
11:10 Prop 120.0 mg
PK:
Prop (effect site: 2.59 mcg/ml)
PD:
Current P(LOC/ROC): 96.28
PK/PD SEDATION
Probability Unconscious
120 mg
100
100 mcg/kg/min
Dosing
11:26 Remi 0.100 mcg/kg/min
11:15 Remi 0.150 mcg/kg/min
11:11 Fent 250.0 mcg
PK:
Fent (effect site: 2.23 ng/ml)
Remi (effect site: 2.81 ng/ml)
PD:
Current P(No Resp Intub): 82.37
PK/PD ANALGESIA
Probability No Response Intub.
POST-OP ANALG
0.150
0.100
0.100 mcg/kg/min
Dosing
11:13 Rocu 50.0 mg
PK:
Rocu (effect site: 2.31 mcg/ml)
PK/PD MUSCLE RELAXANT
Probability No Twitch in TOF
50 mg
99
98
95
75
50
0
10:59
11:09
11:19
11:29
11:29:45
11:39

Fig. 26.25 On-line advisory displays including characteristics of drug behavior and interaction. The SmartPilot (Dräger, Lübeck, Germany) *(upper display)* is a two-dimensional display that shows the effect-site concentrations of combined drugs (opioids and intravenous or inhalation hypnotics), based on pharmacokinetic models and the resulting anesthetic effect and on pharmacodynamic models. Grey shaded areas indicate different levels of anesthesia. The *orange point* indicates the current combination of effect-site concentrations; the *white line* shows the retrospective concentrations; and a 10- and 15-minute prediction is marked by a *black point* and *arrow*—already calculated during presetting of delivery. Event markers may be set to show specific states of the patient related to the level of anesthesia. The time-based real-time curves, trends, and prediction of effect-site concentrations of individual drugs, resulting anesthetic effect (noxious stimulus response index [NSRI]), correlated bispectral index (BIS), vital signs, and event markers are shown as reference for interpretation. The Medvis display (Medvis, Salt Lake City, Utah) *(lower display)* shows a real-time visualization of anesthetic using pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic models to predict drug effect-site concentrations and drug effects in the past, current time, and 10 minutes into the future. Drug doses as boluses and infusions are administered via a separate data interface or user interface. Drugs are categorized according to sedation *(top plot)*, analgesia *(middle plot)*, and muscle relaxation *(bottom plot)*. Effects are depicted as a population-based probability of unconsciousness *(top plot)*, no response to tracheal intubation *(middle plot)*, and no twitch response to a train of four stimulus *(bottom plot)*. In addition, a second pharmacodynamic endpoint, POST-OP ANALG, represents a guideline therapeutic window for postoperative pain. Synergistic interactions of sedative-hypnotics and analgesics are shown by the *white curves* in the plot. For example, the top plot shows that with only propofol, the probability of unconsciousness is between 50% and 95% *(yellow curve)*, but because propofol interacts with the opioids, the probability of unconsciousness is greater than 95% *(white curve)*. Similarly, propofol potentiates the effect of the opioids in the middle plot.

from anesthesia. For example, it takes approximately 12 minutes to awaken from 600 minutes of anesthesia maintained with 3 μg/mL of propofol and 2.5 ng/mL of remifentanil (see Fig. 26.24*D*). On the other hand, if the remifentanil concentration is increased to 5 ng/mL, then the propofol concentration can be reduced to between 2 and 2.5 μg/mL, and emergence can be anticipated within 6 minutes of discontinuation of the infusions. One might be concerned that such a technique places patients at increased risk for awareness because a propofol concentration of 2 μg/mL is below the C_{50} value for wakefulness.[115] Therefore combining such a technique with intraoperative EEG monitoring to assess anesthetic adequacy is reasonable.[21,115]

DISPLAYING PHARMACOLOGIC INFORMATION

Integrating all sources of pharmacologic information including drug interaction together with measurements of patient response to a specific drug dose might offer a powerful advisory tool to depict the complete dose-response relationship of multiple drugs, thereby optimizing drug administration and improving patient care.[116,117] For example, Fig. 26.25 shows a drug interaction advisory display.

Intravenous Infusion Devices and Technologies

MANUAL INTRAVENOUS INFUSION

When an infusion of an intravenous anesthetic is administered, the infusion regimen can be controlled by a variety of mechanisms varying from the simple Cair clamp or Dial-a-Flo (Abbott Laboratories) to complex computer-controlled infusion pumps. Simplicity of mechanical design, however, is not necessarily correlated with ease of use, which has prompted ongoing advances in infusion device technology over the past decades.

Infusion devices can be classified as either controllers or positive displacement pumps. Explicit in their title, controllers contain mechanisms that control the rate of flow produced by gravity, whereas positive displacement pumps contain active pumping mechanisms.

The most commonly used pumps for administration of intravenous anesthetics are positive displacement syringe pumps that use a variety of mechanisms. These pumps have acceptable accuracy and have several features that make them particularly suitable for anesthetic delivery. An important advance has been the introduction of a calculator feature within the pump so that the clinician can input the weight of the patient, the drug concentration, and the infusion rate in dose/unit weight/unit time and the pump will then calculate the infusion in volume/unit time. These pumps also permit simple application of a staged infusion scheme by allowing an initial dose and a maintenance infusion rate to be programmed into the pump. Numerous syringe pumps also include automated recognition of syringe size. Further enhancements are drug libraries by class of drug, suggested dosing schemes, and maximal dosing alerts. These modest advances in pump technology and design enable intravenous anesthetics to be conveniently and safely delivered.

In addition to the pumps, the complete intravenous delivery systems' hardware must perform perfectly,[5] which means that the correct amount of drug should be delivered to the venous circulation in each unit of time. When the drug administration set has too large a *deadspace*, the actual delivery rate can be altered, depending on the flow rate of coadministered fluid.[118] The use of an antireflux valve is certainly advisable to prevent flow of the medication backward into the intravenous fluid bag rather than into the patient. Other factors include excessive compliance within the administration system (in the syringe plunger or in the administration lines) and the use of syringes with suboptimal lubrication, causing the plunger to advance in small jumps when infusion rates are slow; that is, with

TABLE 26.5 Manual Infusion Schemes

	ANESTHESIA		SEDATION OR ANALGESIA	
Drug	**Loading Dose (μg/kg)**	**Maintenance Infusion (μg/kg/min)**	**Loading Dose (μg/kg)**	**Maintenance Infusion (μg/kg/min)**
Alfentanil	50-150	0.5-3	10-25	0.25-1
Fentanyl	5-15	0.03-0.1	1-3	0.01-0.03
Sufentanil	0.5-5	0.01-0.05	0.1-0.5	0.005-0.01
Remifentanil	0.5-1.0	0.1-0.4	*	0.025-0.1
Ketamine	1500-2500	25-75	500-1000	10-20
Propofol	1000-2000	50-150	250-1000	10-50
Midazolam	50-150	0.25-1.5	25-100	0.25-1
Methohexital	1500-2500	50-150	250-1000	10-50
Dexmedetomidine			0.5-1 over 10 min	0.2-0.7

*For analgesia or during sedation, an initial loading dose of remifentanil should not be given because its very rapid onset may result in apnea or muscle rigidity. After the loading dose, an initially high infusion rate to account for redistribution should be used and then titrated to the lowest infusion rate that will maintain adequate anesthesia or sedation. When using opiates as part of a nitrous-narcotic technique or for cardiac anesthesia, the dosing scheme listed under anesthesia is used. When the opiate is combined as part of balanced anesthesia, dosing listed for analgesia is needed.

small patients, low target concentrations, drug solutions of high concentration, or large-volume syringes.[5]

Manual intravenous drug delivery consists of a combination of a bolus dosage and a continuous infusion, as explained earlier when discussing the pharmacokinetic considerations. Table 26.5 offers recommendations for delivering intravenous anesthetics via conventional infusion pumps based on integrated pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic models. Ultimately, the adequate rate of drug administration is based on observation and examination. Individual patients vary significantly in their response to a given drug dose or concentration; therefore titrating to an adequate drug level for each individual patient is essential. Drug concentrations required to provide adequate anesthesia also vary according to the type of surgery (e.g., superficial surgery vs. intraabdominal surgery). Drug concentration requirements are often smaller during the end phase of surgery; therefore titration often involves judicious reduction of the infusion rate toward the end of surgery to facilitate rapid recovery.

If the infusion rate is insufficient to maintain adequate anesthesia, then both an additional loading (bolus) dose and an increase in infusion are required to increase the plasma (biophase) drug concentration rapidly. Various interventions also require larger drug concentrations, usually for brief periods (e.g., laryngoscopy, endotracheal intubation, skin incision). Consequently, the infusion scheme should be tailored to provide peak concentrations during these brief periods of intense stimulation. An adequate drug level for endotracheal intubation is often achieved with the initial loading dose; however, for procedures such as skin incision, an additional bolus dose may be necessary.

Infusion schemes (see Table 26.5) do not approach the convenience and precision of use associated with the delivery of an inhaled anesthetic via a calibrated vaporizer, particularly when the user is still required to calculate volume infusion rates (mL/hr) from the mass-based infusion rates given in the infusion schemes. The use of "calculator" pumps helps to simplify the task of the anesthesiologist. At start-up the user is required to input the weight of the patient and the drug concentration. Thereafter, the pumps are able to accept as input mass-based rates, from which they calculate and implement volume infusion rates. The level of convenience and precision of vaporizers can however be achieved by using TCI devices, such as the commercially available TCI pumps.

COMPUTER-CONTROLLED DRUG DELIVERY

As discussed in the introduction of this chapter, optimal patient-individual dosing may be achieved by the application of pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic principles. Using the dose-response relationship, drug titration should be performed as close as possible to the drug effect. Titrating to a specific effect or, if not possible, a specific effect-site concentration offers advantages. Because the effect-site or plasma concentrations are not continuously measurable online for most intravenous anesthetics (in contrast to inhaled anesthetics), a drug model using a computer that continuously updates the anesthetic administration rate to maintain an estimated drug effect or drug concentration is required (Fig. 26.26).

If a specific plasma or effect-site concentration is titrated, then this technique is called TCI. TCI is a *closed-loop control* system. The history of the development of TCI systems has recently been summarized.[119] In these systems the clinician serves as the *human controller* in the loop and, as a consequence, the control actions are intermittent and irregular in time.[120] Control theory is increasingly being applied in the development of computer-controlled drug delivery systems, among others in anesthetic closed-loop control applications. The aim of computer-controlled closed-loop systems is to formalize this process of observation and intervention to provide fine-tuned and more accurate control. Such systems use a near continuous signal of drug effect, calculate the error between the observed value and the set point value (selected by the user), and use this error figure in an algorithm to make frequent and regular adjustments to drug administration rates. Some computer-controlled drug delivery systems try to predict the future drug effect to make appropriate adjustments well in advance.[120]

TARGET-CONTROLLED INFUSION

Devices

The development of microprocessor-controlled syringe pumps and a better understanding of the dose-response relationship have enabled the development of TCI systems. A TCI is a computer- or microprocessor-controlled system that aims to achieve a user-defined estimated drug concentration in a body compartment or tissue. A clinician using a TCI system to administer an anesthetic drug is thus able to set and adjust a desired drug concentration, usually referred to as the *target concentration*, based on clinical observation of the patient or measurement of drug effect. Multicompartment pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic models are used by TCI systems to calculate the infusion rates required to achieve the target concentration (see Fig. 26.4). A computer or microprocessor is required to perform the complex calculations and to control the infusion pump. Typically, plasma or effect-site concentrations are targeted.[3]

TCI systems in use today still apply the theoretical approach described by Kruger-Thiemer[121] to achieve and maintain a steady-state blood concentration of a drug whose pharmacokinetic can be described by a multicompartment model. This approach was first clinically implemented by Schwilden.[7] The infusion schemes used, better known as bolus-elimination-transfer (BET) schemes (see Fig. 26.4), were initially designed for two-compartment models. Briefly, the infusion starts with an initial bolus of drug required to achieve the initial target concentration. Second, an infusion is administered to replace drug lost by elimination. Since the elimination rate constant is fixed, the amount of drug eliminated in each unit of time is proportional to the plasma concentration; accordingly, at steady-state plasma concentrations, drug removal by elimination can be compensated for by a constant rate infusion. Third, a second infusion is administered to replace drug distributed or transferred to peripheral tissues. The amount redistributed exponentially declines over time as the gradient between the central compartment and the peripheral compartment decreases. Replacing distributed drug requires an infusion at an exponentially declining rate to replace drug *lost* from the central compartment by distribution until steady state.[4]

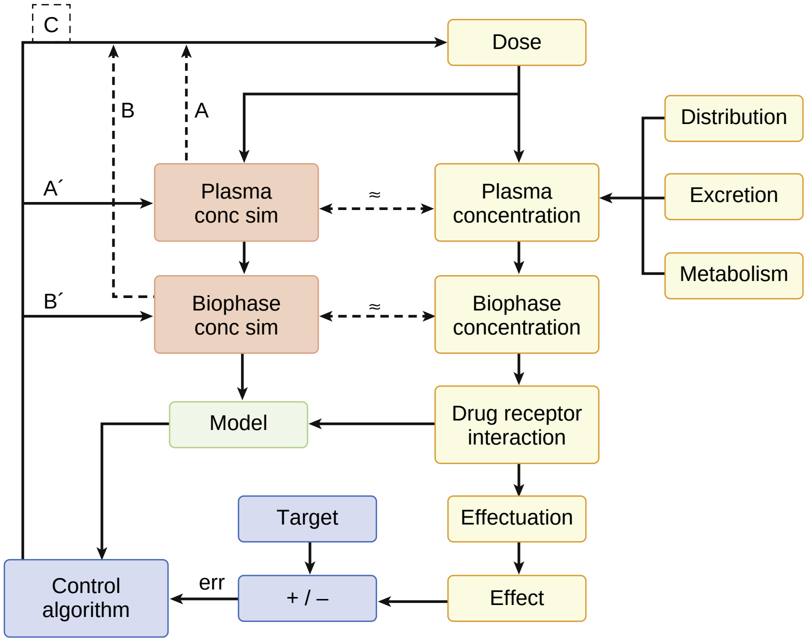


Fig. 26.26 Schematic representation of the pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic processes determining the relationship between administered doses and resulting effect intensity of a drug *(yellow)*. Pharmacokinetic factors such as distribution, metabolism, and/or excretion determine the relationship between drug dose and drug concentration in the biophase. In the biophase, the drug interacts with the receptor, and the pharmacologic effect is accomplished via effectuation processes. Target-controlled infusion (TCI) will use a model to estimate the plasma or biophase drug concentration *(red)*, and will calculate the dose needed to approach a target concentration in plasma *(A)* or biophase/effect-site *(B)*. Computer-controlled, closed-loop feedback measures the error between the effect and the target effect to control the dose administration *(blue)*. Better closed-loop performance can result if, rather than using the dose as a direct actuator, the *simulated* variable of a TCI system is used as actuated variable *(A/A´, B/B´)*. The TCI system then compensates for part of the complexity of the dose-interaction relationship. Advanced control algorithms may take into account a continuously updated model of the interaction *(light green)*. (Modified from Struys M, de Smet T. Principles of drug actions: target-controlled infusions and closed-loop administration. In: Evers AS, Maze M, Kharasch ED, eds. *Anesthetic Pharmacology: Basic Principles and Clinical Practice.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2011:103–122. Used with permission.)

BET schemes have some disadvantages such as the requirement of a no-drug status before infusion, which disables a change in the target concentration. In addition, more recent research concluded that the pharmacokinetics of most anesthetics is better described using a three- instead of a two-compartment model. Lastly, as previously discussed in this chapter, the plasma is not the site of drug effect. Consequently, effect compartment–controlled TCI algorithms were developed.[29] During the 1990s, various computer-based TCI prototypes were developed by researchers at Stanford (STANPUMP, California), Stellenbosch (STELPUMP, South Africa), Duke (computer-assisted continuous infusion [CACI], North Carolina), and Ghent (RUGLOOP, Belgium) universities. Groups in Erlangen, Germany, and Leiden, The Netherlands, produced software able to simulate pharmacokinetic trajectories (IVA-SIM and TIVA Trainer, respectively). Finally, the Diprifusor (AstraZeneca, London) became the first commercially available TCI pump. It was based on a prototype from the Kenny group[122] and was able to control a set plasma target concentration using specific prefilled syringes from AstraZeneca. Although the technology never became available in the United States,[8] this TCI pump was the first breakthrough in an attempt to optimize drug administration in daily clinical practice in many countries. More recently, various companies have commercialized more flexible *open TCI* pumps capable of administering multiple drugs in both plasma and effect compartment–control mode (Fig. 26.27).[8,119]

Effect compartment–control requires a rate constant that accurately describes the rate of equilibration between plasma (Fig. 26.28*A*) and effect-site concentrations (Fig. 26.28*B*). The benefits of effect compartment–controlled TCI were demonstrated for propofol by Wakeling and associates[123] and Struys and associates.[47] This mode is commonly used throughout Europe.

A detailed description of the history of the development of TCI and of the development and availability of TCI devices was published in 2016.[8,124]

Evaluation of Target-Controlled Infusion Delivery

Acceptance of target-controlled drug delivery of intravenous anesthetics requires evaluation of accuracy (defined as the difference between predicted and measured concentrations) and outcomes among patients in whom automated drug delivery has been used. The inaccuracies associated with pharmacokinetic model–driven devices are attributed to possible problems with the software and hardware, and more importantly to pharmacokinetic variability (Fig. 26.29).

Inaccuracy in the software results from incorrect mathematic implementation of the pharmacokinetic model. Computer simulations can be used to test the infusion rates as calculated by a software program, and thus software errors are fairly simple to identify and correct.[125] Inaccurate drug delivery from the infusion pump (i.e., failure to correctly infuse the amount intended by the system) infrequently

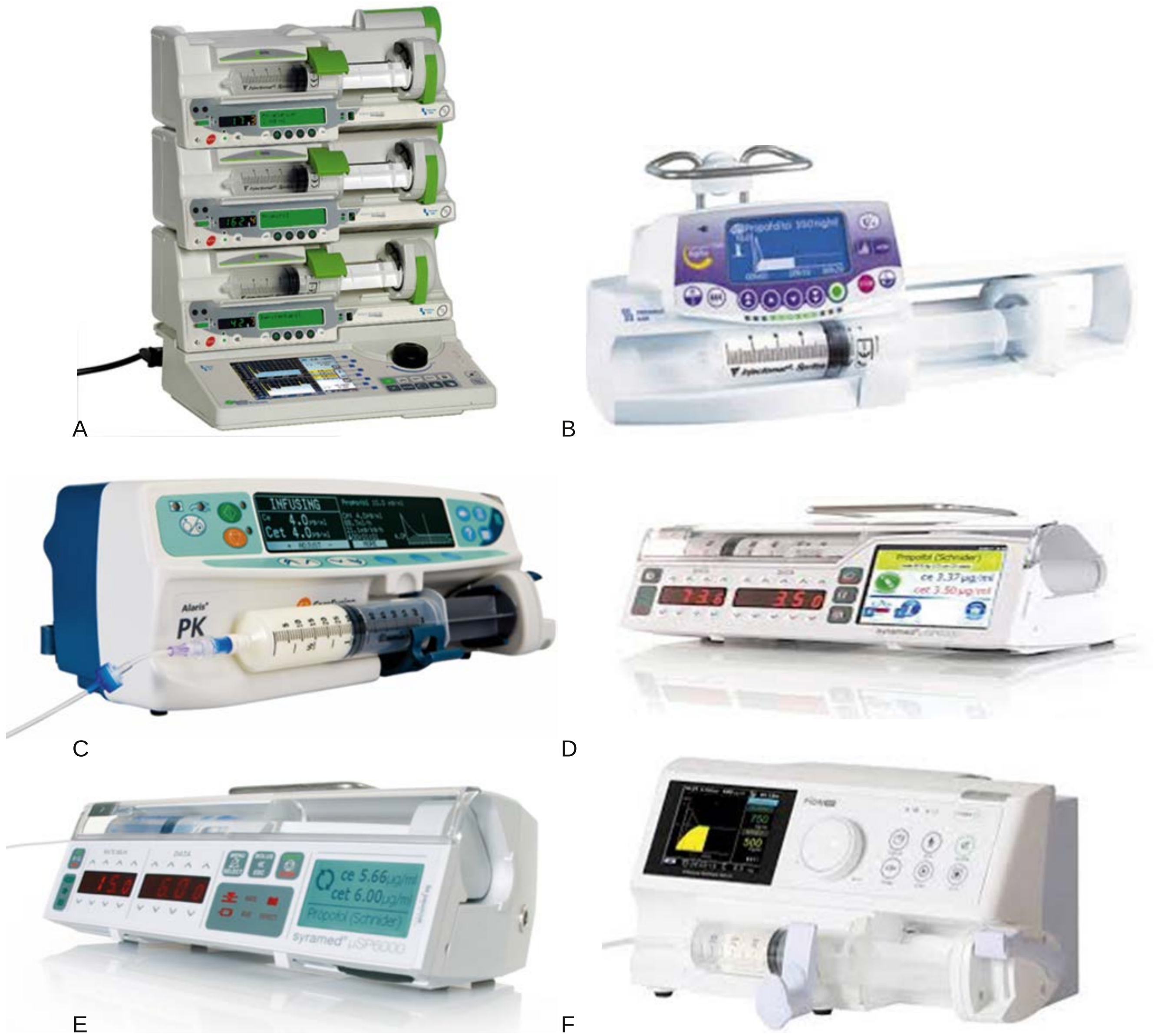


Fig. 26.27 Target-controlled infusion (TCI) pumps. (A) Fresenius Base Primea. (B) Fresenius Injectomat TIVA. (C) CareFusion Alaris PK. (D) Arcomed µSP 6000. (E) Arcomed µVP 7000. (F) Bionet PION TCI pump. (G) B. Braun Infusomat Space and Perfusor Space. (H) Veryark Concert-CL. (I) MedCaptain HP TCI. ([A and B] Courtesy Fresenius Kabi AG, Homburg, Germany; [C] Courtesy BD, Franklin Lakes, NJ; [D and E] Courtesy Arcomed, Zurich, Switzerland; [F] Courtesy Bionet, Seoul, Korea; [G] Courtesy B. Braun Medical Inc., Bethlehem PA; [H] Courtesy PRHOINSA, Madrid, Spain; [I] Courtesy Medcaptain, Shenzhen, P.R. China.)

occurs with present syringe-pump technology and contributes little to the overall inaccuracy of these devices.[126] The aforementioned safety review identified only two company reports of problems with TCI devices that were attributable to software programming errors, neither of which caused actual patient harm.[127]

The major cause of inaccuracy is biologic variability, of which there are two sources: (1) the pharmacokinetic model is always wrong,[106] and (2) the pharmacokinetics of the individual patient are not as programmed into the model. The pharmacokinetic model is always wrong because individuals are far more complex than implied by simple compartment models,[106] and no model can precisely predict the concentrations, even if the pharmacokinetic parameters in the individual were known with absolute precision. However, even if the pharmacokinetic model truly reflected the underlying biologic variables, the parameters of the model would be average parameters for the population and not the exact parameters of the patient. Even if the parameters were modified to reflect the influence of demographic factors such as age, gender, hypovolemia, and coadministration of other drugs, they would still deviate from the true pharmacokinetic parameters in the individual. Thus biologic variability fundamentally precludes the possibility of precisely achieving the desired target concentration when automated drug delivery devices are used. Realizing that biologic variability always exists, no matter how drugs are given, and that this same biologic variability affects all methods of drug delivery is important. Nonetheless, the variability with TCI devices will always be less than the variability observed after a single bolus injection.[128] The performance of computer-controlled drug administration

TCIRemi
10.0
5.00
56
MEDCAPTAIN
6.00
10.00
G
H
I

Fig. 26.27 cont'd

must be interpreted in terms of the therapeutic expectations of the clinician. Possible goals include accurately producing a desired concentration in plasma, precisely titrating the plasma drug concentration, achieving the desired drug effect, and producing the desired time course of drug effect. Over the past decade, investigators have addressed each of these goals and have refined the performance of automated drug delivery devices accordingly.

The ability of an automated drug delivery system to rapidly achieve and then maintain a selected target concentration is a logical measure of the performance of such a device. The difference between the measured and target concentrations can be expressed in several ways. Classic graphic representations are X-Y plots depicting predicted versus measured blood (plasma) drug concentrations (Fig. 26.30) or the relationship of the measured and predicted drug concentration versus time of administration (Fig. 26.31). Numerically, the primary concern is how far the measured concentration is from the predicted one; this relationship is now most frequently described in terms of performance errors, which is the difference between measured and target concentrations as a percentage of the desired target—for example, [(measured − target) ÷ target × 100%].[129] The median value of the performance error for a patient or population is referred to as the median performance error (MDPE) and represents the average overshoot or undershoot of the system. The median absolute performance error (MDAPE) is the median of the absolute values of all performance errors. The MDAPE is commonly used as a measure of the inaccuracy of an automated drug delivery device. An MDAPE of zero is perfect performance, and an MDAPE of 20% means that one half the plasma concentrations will be within 20% of the target and one half will be outside that range. A further assessment of accuracy is whether the system maintains a stable target concentration, which is best measured by the wobble of the system. Varvel and colleagues[129] asked a group of clinicians to evaluate the performance of automated drug delivery devices and demonstrated that the MDAPE best predicted the adequacy of performance of the automated delivery device, as judged by experienced clinicians.

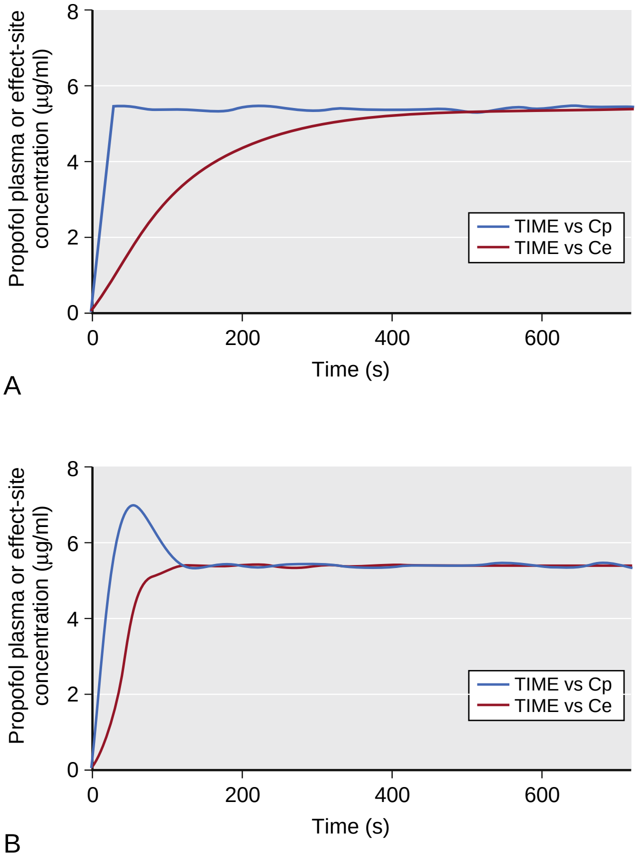


Fig. 26.28 Simulation of propofol plasma (A) versus effect compartment–controlled (B) target-controlled infusion.

As observed earlier, expecting all performance errors to be zero is not reasonable. However, it would be desirable if positive and negative errors offset each other so that the MDPE of an automated drug delivery device were 0%. The MDPE does not indicate the range of performance errors (because positive and negative performance errors offset each other), but it does indicate whether the plasma concentrations achieved with the device tend to overshoot (+MDPE) or undershoot (−MDPE) the desired target.

Many groups have evaluated the accuracy of many different pharmacokinetic sets for virtually all the intravenous hypnotics and analgesics. Most studies have involved healthy volunteers or lower-risk patients undergoing procedural sedation or anesthesia, and in these settings the authors have studied adult models for propofol,[13,31,130-137] midazolam,[138] ketamine,[139] dexmedetomidine,[140,141] fentanyl,[142-144] alfentanil,[67,145-147] sufentanil,[138,148,149] and remifentanil.[150,151] Pediatric models for propofol have also been evaluated.[152-155]

Few studies have been performed in the intensive care unit (ICU) setting. The performance of the Marsh model for propofol sedation in different adult populations has however been studied.[156,157]

Based on many of these studies, the expected predictive performance of such pharmacokinetic models, at best, tends to be around 20% to 30% MDAPE.

Model Selection for Target-Controlled Infusion: Adult Propofol Models

For most intravenous drugs, various multicompartment pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic models have been published. The pharmacokinetics of propofol have been the most frequently tested (see Fig. 26.6) of all anesthetic drugs. Coetzee and coworkers compared the accuracy of some of the models published before 1995 and found that propofol TCI using the model published by Marsh and coworkers resulted in acceptable performance (MDPE −7%; MDAPE 18%).[130]

The Marsh model was incorporated in the first commercially available TCI system (Diprifusor). Clinical studies using this plasma-controlled TCI system showed that the technique and model were clinically useful in various clinical situations.[158-162] The major drawback of the Marsh model is the lack of effect compartment information and

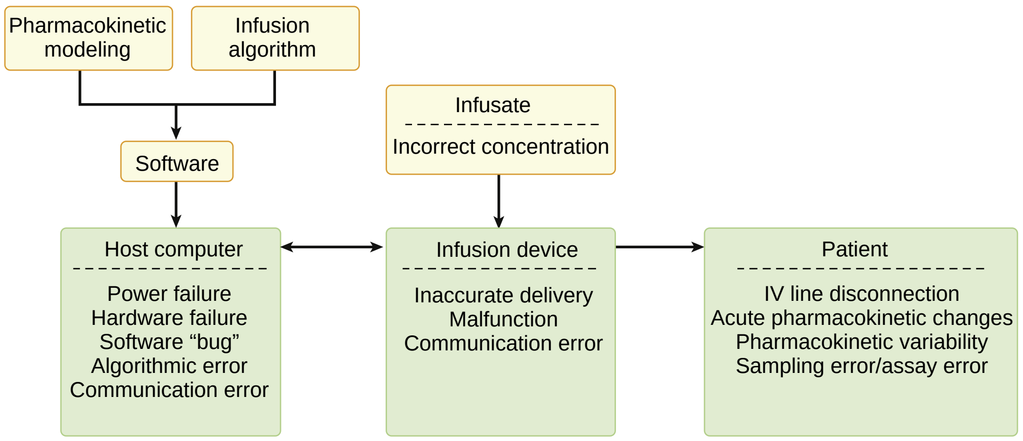

Pharmacokinetic modeling
Infusion algorithm
Software
Infusate
Incorrect concentration
Host computer
Power failure
Hardware failure
Software “bug”
Algorithmic error
Communication error
Infusion device
Inaccurate delivery
Malfunction
Communication error
Patient
IV line disconnection
Acute pharmacokinetic changes
Pharmacokinetic variability
Sampling error/assay error

Fig. 26.29 Major sources of potential error in pharmacokinetic model–driven drug delivery. In a commercial device, the computer functions are incorporated into the infusion device. *IV,* Intravenous.

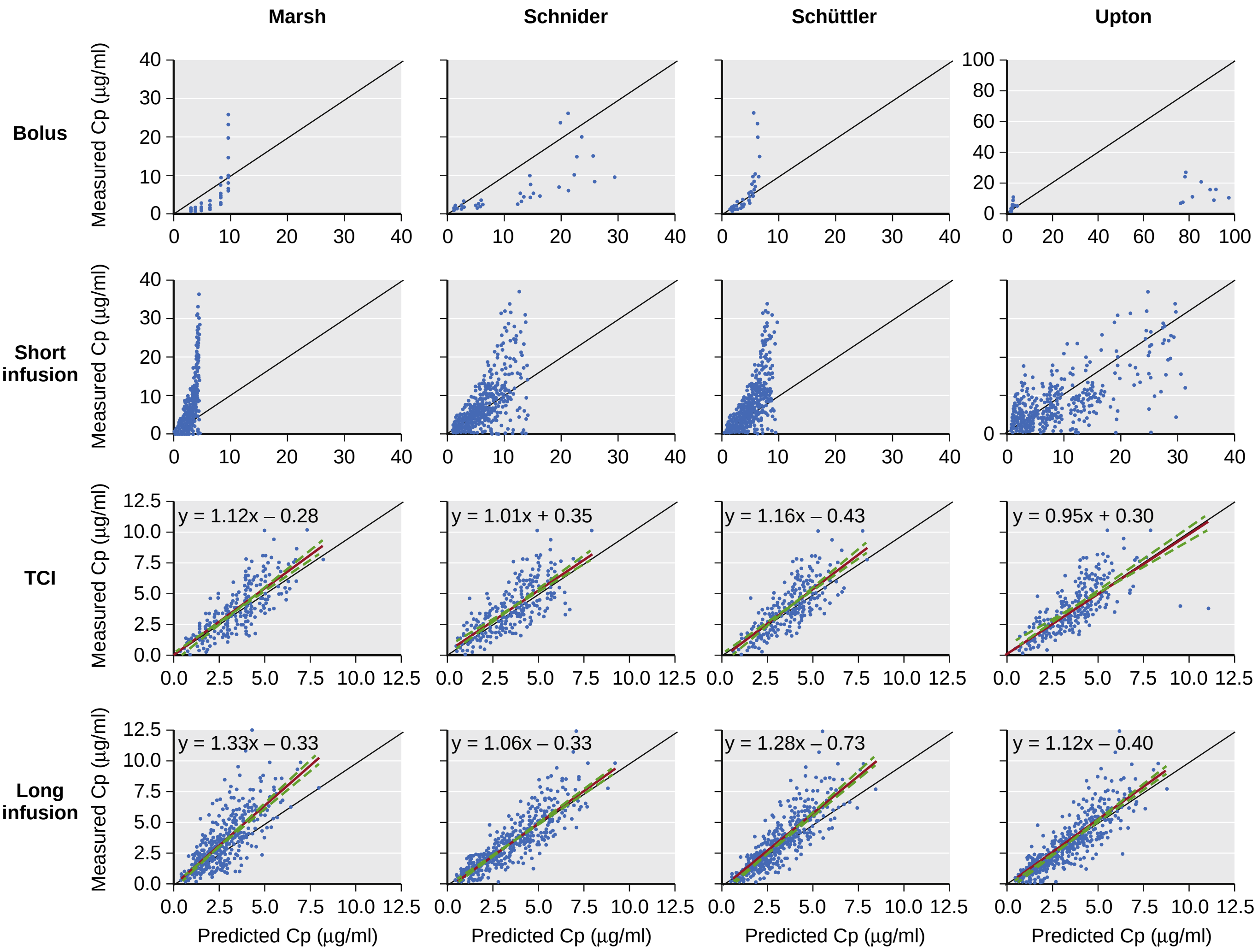


Fig. 26.30 Predicted versus measured propofol plasma concentration for the four pharmacokinetic models. Each point represents a single sample. *Thin black line* represents the line of identity. For target-controlled infusion *(TCI)* and long infusion conditions, the *bold red line* shows the regression line and the *bold dashed green line* indicates the 95% confidence interval for the regression line. The formula represents the equation from the linear regression. (From Masui K, Upton RN, Doufas AG, et al. The performance of compartmental and physiologically based recirculatory pharmacokinetic models for propofol. A comparison using bolus, continuous, and target-controlled infusion data. *Anesth Analg.* 2010;111:368–379. Used with permission.)

the fact that weight is the only covariate. Later, Schnider and coworkers[163,164] evaluated age, height, weight, and lean body mass as covariates in a new combined pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic three-compartment model. The large variability of the study population (age 18-81 years, weight 44-123 kg) provides a wide applicability of the model. Several validation studies rated this model accurate under various conditions. For example, Masui and colleagues[13] compared the measured propofol plasma concentrations with the predictions of four published models and revealed bias in all three compartment models during the bolus and short infusion regimens (see Figs. 26.30 and 26.31). During long infusions, a worse measured/predicted propofol plasma concentration at higher concentration was observed for the Marsh[152] and Schüttler[165] models than for the two other models. Less biased measured/predicted propofol plasma concentration was found for all models during TCI. In the bolus group, after 1 minute, a clear overprediction was observed for all three-compartment models for the entire 5-minute period; however, this initial error resolved after 4 minutes in the Schnider model. During the bolus and short infusion conditions, the Marsh model demonstrated worse MDPE and MDAPE when compared with the other models. During short infusion, MDAPE for the Schnider and Schüttler models was better. All models showed similar MDPE and MDAPE during TCI simulations. During long infusion, the Marsh and the Schüttler models underestimated the higher plasma concentrations. Interestingly, the physiologically based recirculatory model developed by Upton and coworkers[14] did not reveal a better description of the pharmacokinetic time course. The Schüttler model has a major practical drawback; it defined the infusion characteristics, being bolus or infusion, as a significant covariate, thereby discouraging TCI applicability.

An additional drawback of the Schnider model is the use of lean body mass as calculated using the equation developed by James.[12] The quadratic behavior of the lean body mass function makes it invalid (negative values!) when used in patients who are very obese. Therefore as changing population demographics such as obesity might influence the pharmacokinetics of propofol, models should ideally be applicable to a broad range of population demographics

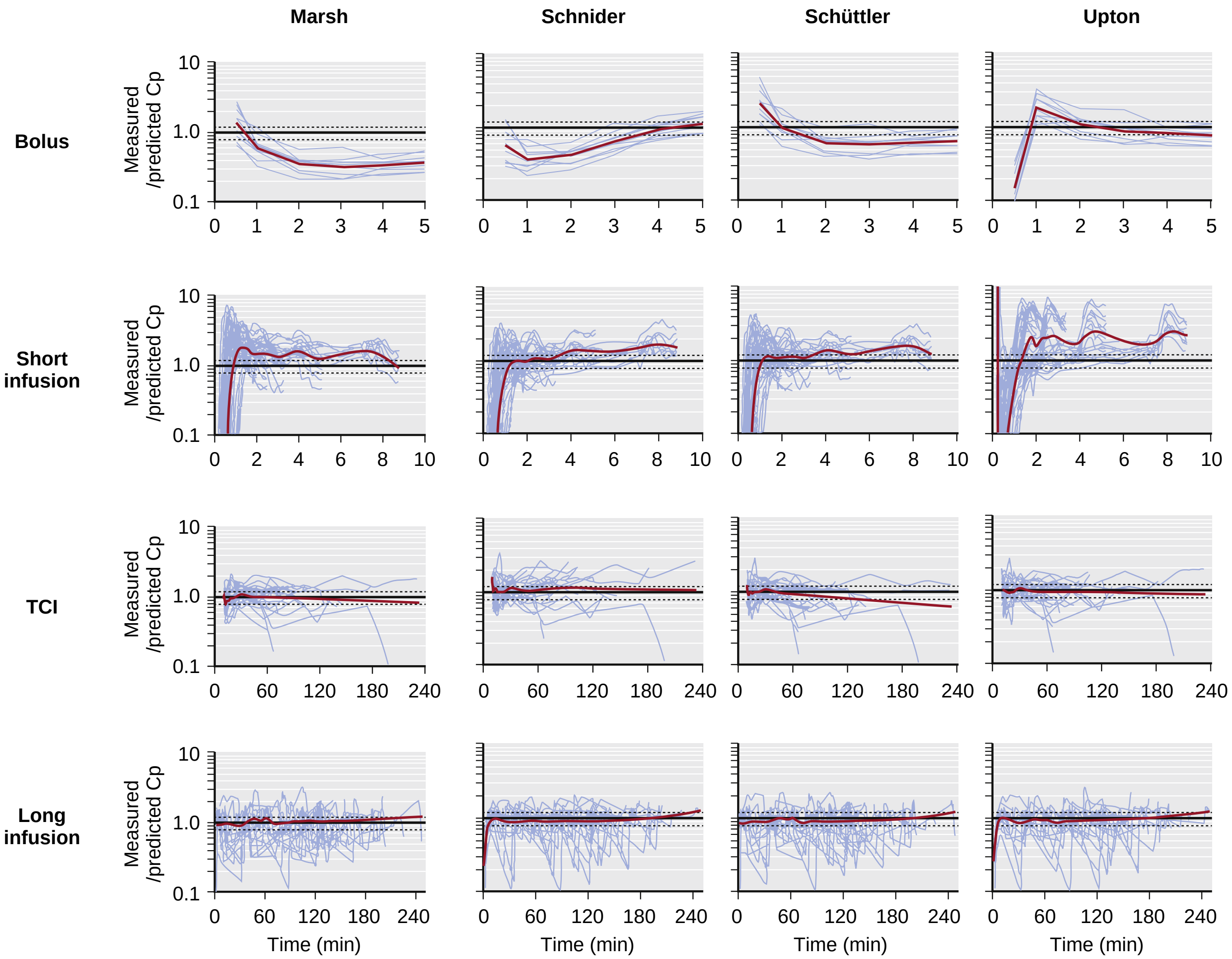


Fig. 26.31 Time course of the measured/predicted concentration relationship versus time of drug administration. The *dotted lines* indicate an acceptable range of measured/predicted plasma drug concentration *(Cp)*. The *red line* indicates the Friedman Super Smoother curve for the population data. (From Masui K, Upton RN, Doufas AG, et al. The performance of compartmental and physiologically based recirculatory pharmacokinetic models for propofol: a comparison using bolus, continuous, and target-controlled infusion data. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:368–379. Used with permission.)

before being used in clinical practice. One potential solution to the problem of scaling for size in obese patients is the application of allometric scaling. When using allometric scaling, growth and development can be studied using classic covariates (e.g., weight, age, sex). Size is the primary covariate and can be referenced to a 70-kg person with allometric scaling using a coefficient of 0.75 for clearance and 1 (one) for volume. Anderson and Holford[166] promote this approach because the use of these coefficients is supported by fractal geometric concepts and observations from biologically diverse areas.[167]

Cortinez and coworkers[168] derived a population pharmacokinetic model using obese and nonobese data to describe the pharmacokinetics of propofol over a wide range of body weights. A model using allometric scaling of total body weight as the size descriptor of volumes and clearances was better able to characterize propofol pharmacokinetics in obese patients than a model using size descriptors. The same model was later used to control TCI propofol administration in a new cohort of obese patients, and the predictive performance of this model was then compared with that of four other models (Marsh, Schnider, Eleveld, and van Kralingen).[133] While all models tended to underestimate measured concentrations in this study (i.e., measured concentrations were higher than those estimated), the Eleveld model provided the most accurate predictions. When, instead of using the total body weight with the Marsh and Schnider models, an adjusted body weight was used (adjusted weight = ideal weight + 40% × [total – ideal weight]), the predictive performance of these two models were then associated with the lowest MDPE and MDAPE of all models.[133]

Most recently, Cortinez and colleagues used the data from 47 patients enrolled in three previous studies to develop and prospectively evaluate a new pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic model for obese patients.[169] Interestingly, during the development phase, allometric scaling did not improve the fit of their new model, and thus their newest model uses linear scaling of compartmental volumes and clearances, with total body weight. When, in the second phase of their study, this newer model was tested prospectively in obese patients, the pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic components performed adequately; with regard to the pharmacokinetic component, the predictive performance of the Eleveld model was better than that of their older and newer models, and that of the Schnider model.

Attention has also been focused recently on the performance of propofol models in underweight patients. Lee and colleagues studied the predictive performance of the Marsh and Schnider model in underweight adults and showed that although predictive performance of both models was within limits considered clinically acceptable, the former tended to overestimate plasma concentrations, whereas the Schnider model tended to underestimate plasma concentrations.[135]

Interestingly, when the performance of the older Cortinez model, which uses allometric scaling of total body weight, was studied in volunteers of normal weight, the predictive performance was acceptable and similar to that of the Schnider model.[170] As mentioned earlier, the newer Cortinez model scales volumes and clearances linearly with total weight.[169] It may not extrapolate that well to patients of normal weight, and for this reason the authors do not recommend using it in patients of normal weight.

Different pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic models for propofol are associated with different k_{e0} values, which were sometimes derived in very different ways.[12] When effect-site targeting is used, not only is the accuracy of the pharmacokinetic model important for accurate drug administration, the validity of the k_{e0} is also important. First, the value of the k_{e0} will determine the degree of plasma concentration overshoot when the target concentration is increased, and second, it will determine the estimated values of the effect-site concentrations during periods when the plasma and effect-site are not in equilibrium. If one assumes that there is no hysteresis in the relationship between effect-site drug concentration and clinical effect, then it might be rational to evaluate the overall accuracy of propofol pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic models by experiments in which propofol is administered by effect-site TCI, by recording a measure of the clinical effect observed over a period of time and then comparing the time course of the estimated effect-site concentrations and clinical effect.

Barakat and colleagues compared the Marsh and Schnider models by observing BIS and MOAA/S scores after starting an effect-site targeted propofol TCI infusion at a fixed target concentration of 2 μg/mL.[171] Subsequently they compared the shapes of the curves of the time course of the estimated effect-site concentration and of measures of clinical effect (BIS and MOAA/S). They found that the shape of the effect-site concentration curve estimated by the Marsh model (with k_{e0} 0.26 min^{-1}) was more similar to the curves for clinical effect than the curve of the effect-site concentration estimated by the Schnider model.[171]

A more objective application of the preceding rationale is to observe clinical effect over a time period when a TCI system estimates that the effect-site concentration is stable. With this approach, one can reason that if the effect-site (target) concentration is kept constant, and there are no other changes (i.e., no other drugs are administered, and no new stimuli), then the most appropriate model will be the one for which a measure of clinical effect is most stable over time.

Using this approach to compare the Schnider and Marsh models, Coppens and coworkers[172] administered propofol by manual infusion until loss of consciousness. They then continued propofol administration in effect-site targeting TCI mode, using as target concentration the estimated effect-site concentration at the moment of loss of consciousness. They found that among 20 patients assigned to effect-site TCI propofol with the Marsh model, BIS values rose and all patients regained consciousness within the subsequent 20 minutes. On the other hand, among the 40 patients assigned to effect-site TCI propofol with the Schnider model (20 with a fixed k_{e0}, and 20 in whom an individual-specific k_{e0} was calculated using the Schnider pharmacokinetic parameters and a fixed time-to-peak effect of 1.6 minutes), only one regained consciousness and there was a general trend for the BIS to decline during the subsequent 20 minutes.

Thomson and colleagues applied the same rationale to a study in which they sought to determine the most suitable k_{e0} for use with the Marsh model when used in effect-site targeting mode for sedation.[173] Six sequential groups received sedation with the Marsh model with the k_{e0} set to 1.2, 0.8, 0.7, 0.6, 0.5, and 0.2 min^{-1}, respectively. In each patient, the initial target concentration was 0.5 μg/mL. Once the effect-site and plasma concentrations were calculated to have equilibrated, the effect-site target concentration was increased in increments of 0.2 μg/mL, until a MOAA/S score of 3 was reached. Thereafter the effect-site target concentration was fixed, and two-choice visual reaction times were recorded. Interestingly, while a k_{e0} of 0.6 min^{-1} seemed best overall, it should be noted that there was considerable interindividual variability. In every group there were patients where the sedation level (just by reaction times) remained stable, whereas in all groups except the 1.2 min^{-1} group there were patients where reaction times decreased (suggesting lightening of sedation depth) and in every group except the 0.2 min^{-1} group there were patients where reaction times increased (suggesting increasing sedation depth).

As mentioned previously, there is no strong consensus on which model is best for propofol administration. Clinician choices concerning which model to use and the mode of use (plasma versus effect-site targeting and method of implementation of effect-site targeting) are largely pragmatically made, based on geographical and historical issues, availability of equipment, and the choices made by the supplier of the equipment.[8,12] More fundamental research is required to better understand the mechanisms of anesthetic-induced loss of consciousness, to determine whether the aforementioned hysteresis occurs, and to subsequently fine-tune our understanding of the pharmacometric principles governing effect-site modeling.[120]

At present a variety of different adult and pediatric models for propofol are used in studies, but also in clinical use, having been implemented in commercially available TCI systems. This generates a potential source of confusion and error. A group in Groningen, The Netherlands, thus combined the data from a large number of pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic studies of propofol, involving subjects with a wide range of characteristics (age, weight, and patients vs. volunteers), and used nonlinear mixed effects modeling to generate a single model that applies to all patients. Initially, a pharmacokinetic-only model was produced.[174] This model is able to provide pharmacokinetic parameters for a wide range of patients, from small children to elderly patients, as well as for obese patients. Later a complete pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic model was produced, with the pharmacokinetic part involving the same structure as the previous model, but slightly updated parameters, and a sigmoidal Emax pharmacodynamic model.[76] Internal testing of the pharmacokinetic components of both models showed similar or better performance than that of specialist models designed for specific subpopulations (children, elderly, and obese).[76,174]

Model Selection for Target-Controlled Infusion: Pediatric Propofol Models

Two pharmacokinetic models for propofol in children are available in clinical TCI systems. Kataria and colleagues described the time course of propofol plasma concentration in a population of children between ages of 3 and 11 years using a three-compartment model with weight as the sole significant covariate. Weight-adjusting the volumes and clearances significantly improved the accuracy of the pharmacokinetics. Adjusting the pharmacokinetics for inclusion of additional patient covariates or using a mixed-effects model did not further improve the ability of the pharmacokinetic parameters to describe the observations.[175] An alternative propofol TCI model called *Paedfusor*,[153] developed by the Glasgow research group, incorporated a preliminary model published by Schüttler and coworkers[165] and was recently found to be more accurate than the Kataria model. Coppens and associates[31] were the first to publish a combined pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic model for propofol in children, revealing a k_{e0} of 0.79 min^{-1} and a Ce_{50} of 3.85 μg/mL as measured using the BIS (Table 26.6). A recent study compared the predictive performance of 11 different models for propofol in children during long-duration anesthesia,[176] and found that in this setting, the Short[177] pediatric model performed best.

As can be seen in Table 26.6, several different models for children are available, and this can lead to errors. This problem, and the potential solution of the Eleveld general purpose model,[76,174] has been discussed previously.

Model Selection for Target-Controlled Infusion: Opioids

Table 26.7 shows the clinically used pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic models for remifentanil, fentanyl, sufentanil, and alfentanil. For sufentanil, the covariate model developed by Gepts and colleagues[178] is accurate with MDPE between −2.3% and 22.3% and MDAPE between 18.5% and 29%, even in patients who are obese.[138,148,149] Multiple pharmacokinetic models were developed for alfentanil. A combined analysis of these early study results using a true population analysis was used to develop a new alfentanil model.[179] A comparison showed a better performance for the Maitre alfentanil model (MDPE, 35%; MDAPE, 36%) than the Scott model (MDPE, 12%; MDAPE, 28%).[180] Other studies found contradictory results.[181]

A compartment fentanyl model without covariates specifically aiming for TCI was developed[143] and tested in both lean and obese patients.[144] A simulated plasma concentration required a specific correction in patients who were obese.[144] Various three-compartment combined pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic models for remifentanil were developed from studies with both volunteers and patients; however, only the model published by Minto and colleagues is applied in TCI.[61,182] Evaluation of this model showed an acceptable performance, with an MDPE of −15% and an MDAPE of 20%.[150] Because combined pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic models are lacking for some of the opioids, the times to peak effect after a bolus administration of alfentanil (1.4 minutes), fentanyl (3.6 minutes), and sufentanil (5.6 minutes) can be applied to calculate the effect-site concentration using the *tpeak algorithm*.[32]

Preliminary remifentanil models in children have been developed. For example, Rigby-Jones and colleagues[183] applied allometric scaling during a study of remifentanil pharmacokinetics in children and reported a single fixed allometric function scaled to a body mass of 10.5 kg that performed well across a broad range of patient weights. More recently, Eleveld and colleagues, using data from a variety of pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic studies of remifentanil, involving patients with a wide range of age, height, and weight characteristics, developed a model in which clearances are also allometrically scaled.[184] This model performed well on internal testing and is thought to be suitable for use in all patients, but now requires external prospective validation.

In addition to propofol and the opioids, compartment models have been published describing the time course of the plasma concentration and clinical effect of benzodiazepines, neuromuscular blocking agents, ketamine, and dexmedetomidine, although these drugs have not yet been included in the commercially available TCI pumps.

Rational Target Concentration Selection

No single regimen, concentration, or drug combination applies to all patients. While some sources of interindividual pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic variability are known, much of this variability remains unexplained.

Most of the previously mentioned pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic models have been derived from population pharmacologic studies. Interpatient variability limits the accuracy of the estimated drug concentration for the individual but can be counteracted if the model is built while exploring a wide variety of possible covariates using parametric modeling, optionally nonlinear mixed-effects modeling. Consequently, caution is needed when applying these models to patients who are obese, older, very young, diabetic, alcoholic, or unwell if similar participants were not part of the study population. The current commercial implementations of TCI, therefore, do not function well when used for patients with characteristics beyond the range of the model's development study population. As illustrated by Absalom and coworkers, the use of specific TCI algorithms outside the original studied population might result in dangerous drug infusion profiles.[12]

These investigators compared two currently used methods for calculating the effect-site concentration for propofol in patients who were obese, one using a fixed k_{e0} and the other using a fixed t_{peak} (see also "Direct-Effect Models" earlier in this chapter).

As the models in clinical use were not developed from data from obese patients, they should not be expected to perform accurately in obese patients. Tachibana and colleagues studied the influence of obesity on the predictive performance of the Marsh model, which scales compartment

TABLE 26.6 Commonly Applied Pharmacokinetic-Pharmacodynamic Models for Target-Controlled Infusion Systems for Hypnotics

Drug/Model	V_1	V_2	V_3	K_{10} (min^{-1})	K_{12} (min^{-1})	K_{13} (min^{-1})	K_{21} (min^{-1})	K_{31} (min^{-1})	k_{e0} (min^{-1})	TPPE (min)
Propofol/ Marsh[149]	0.228 L/kg	0.363 L/kg	2.893 L/kg	0.119	0.112	0.042	0.055	0.0033	0.26*	NA
Propofol/ Schnider[228,229]	4.27 L	18.9 – 0.391 (age 53) L	238 L	0.443 + 0.0107 × (weight – 77) – 0.0159 × (LBM – 59) + 0.0062 × (height – 177)	0.302 – 0.0056 (age 53)	0.196	(1.29 – 0.024 × [age – 53] ÷ (18.9 – 0.391 × [age – 53])	0.0035	0.456	1.69
Propofol/Paedfusor[230]	0.458 L/kg	1.34 L/kg	8.20 L/kg	70 × weight$^{-0.3}$ ÷ 458.3	0.12	0.034	0.041	0.0019	NA	NA
Propofol/Kataria[229]	0.52 L/kg	1.0 L/kg	8.2 L/kg	0.066	0.113	0.051	0.059	0.0032	NA	NA
Ketamine/Domino[232]	0.063 L/kg	0.207 L/kg	1.51 L/kg	0.4381	0.5921	0.59	0.2470	0.0146	NA	NA

LBM, Lean body mass; *TPPE*, time to peak effect.

*k_{e0} derived independently from the PK model by Schüttler and colleagues.[231]

TABLE 26.7 Commonly Applied Pharmacokinetic-Pharmacodynamic Models for Target-Controlled Infusion Systems for Analgesics

Drug	Remifentanil	Sufentanil	Fentanyl	Alfentani
Model	**Minto**[54,173]	**Gepts**[170]	**Shafer**[147]	**Maitre**[171]
V_1	$(5.1 - 0.0201\ [\text{age} - 40]) + 0.072 \times (\text{LBM} - 55)$ L	14.3 L	6.09 L	♂ = 0.111 L/kg ♀ = 1.15 × 0.111 L/kg
V_2	$(9.82 - 0.0811\ [\text{age} - 40]) + 0.108\ (\text{LBM} - 55)$ L	63.4 L	28.1 L	12.0 L
V_3	5.42 L	251.9 L	228 L	10.5 L
k_{10} (min^{-1})	$(2.6 - 0.0162\ [\text{age} - 40]) + 0.0191\ (\text{LBM} - 55) \div V_1$	0.0645	0.083	<40 year = $0.356/V_1$ >40 year = $0.356 - (0.00269\ [\text{age} - 40]) \div V_1$
k_{12} (min^{-1})	$(2.05 - 0.0301\ [\text{age} - 40])/V_1$	0.1086	0.4713	0.104
k_{13} (min^{-1})	$(0.076 - 0.00113\ [\text{age} - 40])/V_1$	0.0229	0.22496	0.017
k_{21} (min^{-1})	$k_{12} \times V_1 \div V_2$	0.0245	0.1021	0.067
k_{31} (min^{-1})	$k_{13} \times V_1 \div V_2$	0.0013	0.00601	<40 year = 0.0126 >40 year = 0.0126-0.000113 (age − 40)
k_{e0} (min^{-1})	0.595 − 0.007(age-40)	NA	0.147*	0.77*

LBM, Lean body mass.
*k_{e0} is derived independently from the PK model by Scott and colleagues.[39]

volumes linearly with body weight.[134] In their study, they used a single target plasma propofol concentration (4 μg/mL) and found that whereas in nonobese patients the bias was reasonably low, in obese patients measured concentrations were consistently higher than those predicted, to the extent that they found that when they applied a correction factor involving the BMI to the predicted concentration, the bias was reduced.

Growing evidence suggests that gender, ethnic, and racial differences may be important sources of population pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic variability and should be considered when designing dosage regimens.[185]

The influence of different factors is often very complex. In one study involving the influence of age and gender on propofol clearance, clearance tended to be higher in females (and it declined with age), whereas age did not appear to have an influence in males.[186] Another study showed that different phases of the menstrual cycle were associated with significant differences in EC_{50} of propofol (predicted concentrations).[187] Xu and coworkers[55] confirmed that race can significantly influence propofol pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. They evaluated the C_{50} for propofol-remifentanil TCI and the BIS at loss of consciousness and the response to noxious stimulus in patients of Chinese ethnicity and revealed that the predicted blood and effect-site concentrations at loss of consciousness were lower than those in previous publications involving Caucasian populations.

An additional caveat is required with the use of different formulations of a drug. For propofol, Calvo and colleagues[188] found that pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics were not equal for all formulations, which contributed to an increase in variability of the observed effect. Because of the aforementioned factors, no single regimen, concentration, or drug combination applies to all patients. Some guidance can be found in the ECs at which 50% and 95% of patients have accurate clinical effect (see Table 26.3). As with all drug administration in anesthesia, clinical judgment is always required, and the target concentration should be titrated according to the clinical response of the patient.

One of the major sources of variability in the clinical effect of propofol is interaction with concurrently administered drugs (see prior discussion). The interacting drugs may cause changes in the pharmacokinetics and/or pharmacodynamics of propofol. In this regard, the (mutual) interactions between hypnotics and opioids are currently best understood, but in fact, a wide array of drugs may interact with the hypnotics, including drugs that have been chronically administered during the preoperative phase.[107]

Finally, in individual cases, other obvious sources of reduced single-drug model accuracy are errors such as drug spills, excessive blood loss causing shock, or pharmacokinetic drug interaction.[189-191] The number of factors that can influence drug pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics is so large that it would not be practicable to develop models taking all the factors into account, and even less so to have different models to take into account factors such as race. Thus regardless of the accuracy and complexity of available models, it will probably always be necessary for clinicians to titrate anesthetic drug administration to clinical effect.

Benefits of Target-Controlled Infusion

The ability of TCI to rapidly achieve and maintain a steady concentration facilitates attainment of a desired drug effect, irrespective of the absolute achieved drug concentration in the target compartment. The application of TCI in most cases even reduces the variability of intersubject drug-response relationships.[128] As a result, clinical outcomes when comparing TCI versus manual infusion were found to be improved in various early studies, although contradictions exist in the literature.

In the 1980s, Ausems and coworkers[192] compared pharmacokinetic model–driven administration with intermittent bolus administration of alfentanil. Automated drug delivery produced fewer episodes of muscular rigidity, hypotension, and bradycardia on induction. Automated drug delivery during maintenance resulted in a significantly less frequent incidence of hemodynamic response, which resulted in a larger percentage of anesthesia time within

15% of the desired arterial blood pressure and heart rate. Recovery after TCI was associated with significantly less use of naloxone for adequate ventilation. Pharmacokinetic model–driven infusion of fentanyl during cardiac surgery resulted in better hemodynamic control with fewer additional drug interventions and significantly fewer episodes of either hypotension or hypertension than with bolus dose administration.[193]

Theil and colleagues[194] compared double-blind manual administration of fentanyl-midazolam with pharmacokinetic model–driven infusion of these two drugs in a small group of patients undergoing cardiac surgery. Both systems were simultaneously titrated (one containing placebo), with the aim of maintaining hemodynamics within 20% of baseline values. Both systems were equally effective in providing hemodynamic control as dictated by the protocol. The most significant difference between the two modes of delivery was the greater variability in drug plasma concentrations in the manual group, which suggested that pharmacokinetic model–driven infusion maintained patients within a more narrow therapeutic range.

TCI remifentanil provides improved hemodynamic control both intraoperatively and postoperatively with less remifentanil and similar propofol infusion rates.[195] Age dramatically influences the pharmacokinetics of remifentanil; consequently, a TCI model that includes age will result in a beneficial drug titration compared with a standard µg/kg/min infusion. For deep sedation in spontaneously breathing patients, Moerman and associates[196] found that the combination of remifentanil and propofol offered better conditions for colonoscopy than propofol alone; and that TCI remifentanil administration was associated with reduced propofol dosing and a less frequent incidence of apnea and respiratory depression, compared with manually controlled administration. Others have confirmed this finding.[192]

Using the first commercially available TCI system (Diprifusor), early studies administering propofol by plasma-targeted TCI showed some benefits.[159,197,198] These revealed a significant preference of clinicians for the TCI system, although this was their first use of the device.

Passot and coworkers[199] compared TCI and manual propofol infusion in high-risk older patients undergoing hip fracture surgery and concluded that TCI improved the time course of propofol-induced hemodynamic effects in these patients. Chen and colleagues found that similar induction and total doses of propofol were used when anesthesia was induced and maintained with either a manual or a TCI system, and the propofol administration was titrated to achieve a specific BIS value.[200]

Wang and colleagues compared the clinical conditions associated with TCI and manual propofol infusion during asleep-awake-asleep epilepsy surgery. TCI was associated with significantly improved awakening times and higher BIS values after the first asleep phase.[201] Chiang and associates found similar results when they compared TCI with manually controlled propofol infusions for combined upper and lower endoscopy.[202] Patients in the TCI group had better hemodynamic and respiratory stability and recovered more quickly from sedation than patients assigned to the manually controlled infusion group.

The Irwin group recently compared TCI and manual propofol administration in children.[203] Although they found that in children assigned to TCI propofol administration, higher total propofol doses were given, the amount of time the BIS was in an optimal range was greater and recovery times were similar. The authors concluded that TCI might facilitate easier titration of propofol to clinical effect.

TCI can theoretically facilitate rational drug administration for patients in the ICU, where drugs are commonly administered for prolonged periods. In this situation, by taking account of drug redistribution and eventually equilibration between compartments and thus reducing infusion rates, TCI systems have the potential to assist with maintenance of more stable sedation levels. McMurray and coworkers[156] studied TCI propofol in 122 adult ICU patients. Bias and median absolute performance error were within acceptable ranges at 4.3% and 19.6%, respectively. Acceptable sedation levels occurred for 84% of the sedation period. They proposed propofol plasma targets between 0.2 and 2.0 µg/mL for ICU sedation.

Overall, there is little high-quality evidence of improved outcome with the use of TCI as opposed to manual drug administration. Nonetheless, the popularity of TCI use has grown significantly since the introduction of the first commercially available devices. The systems are registered for use in at least 93 countries of the world, and we recently estimated that in Europe alone, more than 2 million patients per year received one or more drugs administered with a TCI system.[8]

Plasma Versus Effect-Site Targeting

Using experimental systems, Glass[123] and Struys[47] and their colleagues conducted similar studies in which they targeted either plasma or effect-site concentration of propofol and then observed the time and plasma versus effect-site concentration at loss of consciousness. In both studies, regardless of whether the effect-site or plasma concentration was targeted, loss of consciousness occurred when the appropriate *effect-site* concentration for loss of consciousness was achieved, thus validating the concept. Two other important observations were made during these studies. First, hemodynamic stability was not different for plasma or the effect-site targeting, although higher plasma concentrations were achieved in the effect-site group. This finding implies, at least for propofol, that the time course for its hemodynamic effects is similar or longer[204] to that for its anesthetic effects. Second, k_{e0} is dependent on the pharmacokinetic set from which it is derived.[32] A k_{e0} value cannot be taken from one pharmacokinetic set and used with another pharmacokinetic set.[31] Just as various demographics may alter the pharmacokinetics, they may also alter k_{e0}. Therefore using the k_{e0} best adapted for the clinical milieu is desirable. An ideal test of whether targeting plasma or the effect site is better is to compare their use in a closed-loop system in which a measure of effect (e.g., the BIS) is used as the target of control. In a small study of 10 patients per group, Absalom and Kenny showed that maintenance of the targeted BIS (as measured by MDPE, MDAPE, and wobble) was somewhat improved and induction times were significantly shorter when the pharmacokinetic model was for the effect site rather than for the plasma.[205] Effect compartment–controlled TCI systems are currently commercially available in many countries (not the United States).[8] They may offer better control of the dose-response relationship.[47,206,207]

Safety of Target-Controlled Infusion

In noncomparative studies, pharmacokinetic model–driven infusion has been used to administer most of the potent opioids, as well as the hypnotics. Different anesthetic techniques have also been tested with pharmacokinetic model–driven infusion devices, including nitrous oxide–opioid anesthesia, supplementation of volatile anesthetics, total intravenous anesthesia, sedation for monitored anesthesia care, and ICU sedation. In all these studies, outcome as measured by hemodynamics and recovery has been within the expectations of normal clinical care. Etomidate, methohexital, midazolam, propofol, thiopental, dexmedetomidine, alfentanil, fentanyl, remifentanil, and sufentanil have all been used with TCI. When these drugs were used with target-controlled drug delivery systems for total intravenous anesthesia or to supplement nitrous oxide or volatile anesthetics, hemodynamics were well maintained during induction and intubation, as well as during maintenance. Recovery milestones were reached at times comparable with those achieved with similar drug combinations used in manual infusion schemes. None of these studies have reported adverse outcomes resulting from target-controlled drug delivery.

A recent review shows that the safety and reliability of commercially available TCI systems has been exemplary, suggesting that the systems perform as intended and programmed.[127] Despite use of TCI systems in millions of patients around the world, a search of the medical literature, regulatory reports, and company safety statements revealed only a handful of possible problems specific to TCI device use, many of which were the result of user error and none of which resulted in product recalls or patient harm.

PATIENT-CONTROLLED ANALGESIA AND SEDATION

A particular method of intravenous drug administration is patient-controlled analgesia, mostly used for the postoperative administration of analgesics or for patient-controlled sedation (PCS) during therapeutic procedures. Although PCA can be considered as a method of computer-controlled or even closed-loop drug administration, most of these pumps currently do not include pharmacokinetic or pharmacodynamic algorithms. In some cases, the PCA or PCS pump is set to deliver a low, constant or *background* flow of medication. Additional doses of medication can be self-administered by the patient pressing a button as needed. Most commonly, no background infusion is provided, and the patient controls when he or she receives an analgesic bolus. To avoid overdosing, these pumps have built-in safety mechanisms such as lock-out times and limitations of the total amount of drug delivered per time unit. PCA is a common technique for delivery of postoperative pain medication such as morphine, piritramide, fentanyl, tramadol, and other drugs.[208-212] In a systematic review, Walder and colleagues showed that the literature presented some evidence that in the postoperative pain setting, PCA with opioids, compared with conventional opioid treatment, improved analgesia and decreased the risk of pulmonary complications; in general, patients preferred the technique.[213] Strict hospital guidelines may help avoid side effects such as oversedation and respiratory depression.[214] When epidural analgesia is contraindicated during labor, remifentanil PCA has been suggested as an alternative. Pilot trials suggested that this alternative is safe under strict observation.[215-220] However, a more recently published randomized-controlled trial showed that, in comparison with epidural analgesia, not only was remifentanil PCA associated with lower satisfaction scores, it was also associated with lower maternal oxygen saturation values.[221]

Although popular, PCA systems are imperfect, as they administer boluses that result in a time course of clinical effect that is unlikely to accurately match the time course of the painful stimulus the patient is suffering. The same applies to PCS systems, except that here the bolus will provide a time course of sedation or anxiolysis that does not match the experience of the patient. TCI technology has thus also been applied to PCA and PCS. With these patient-maintained analgesia and patient-maintained sedation systems, the system administers a TCI of analgesic or sedative, usually starting at a fixed low-target concentration, and after an initial period the patient is able to influence the target concentration. In some initial studies the target concentration was increased or decreased by a researcher using an algorithm,[70,74,180,211,222,223] but in others the patient was able to activate target concentration increases by pressing the button of a handset, once a lockout period had passed.[224]

Van den Nieuwenhuyzen and colleagues demonstrated the advantages of PCA-TCI with alfentanil over routine morphine PCA for postoperative analgesia.[74,180,222,223] Analgesia support using effect-site targeted TCI of remifentanil or fentanyl during extracorporeal shock-wave lithotripsy was tested by Cortinez and colleagues.[70] They found a remifentanil and fentanyl EC_{50} of 2.8 ng/mL and 2.9 ng/mL. At EC_{50}, the probability of having a respiratory rate less than 10 was 4% for remifentanil and 56% for fentanyl. Hypoxemia, vomiting, and sedation were more frequent in the fentanyl group, making this drug less suitable for this clinical application than remifentanil. Lipszyc and associates[211] used remifentanil effect-site PCA-TCI with a slow and progressive adapted algorithm for treatment of acute pain after uterine artery embolization and showed that it provided better care than PCA morphine in the first 4 hours of administration.

Schraag and colleagues studied the efficacy and safety of a remifentanil patient-maintained analgesic system for early analgesia after orthopedic surgery.[224] If the patient operated an activating handset then the target concentration was increased by 0.2 ng/mL; otherwise the system gradually reduced the target. The system was found to provide satisfactory analgesia, with little sedation and few respiratory adverse effects.

Jeleazcov and colleagues have developed and studied a TCI-PCA system for hydromorphone.[225] With this system the patient is also able to request higher target concentrations by means of a button push. The authors found that patients using this system after cardiac surgery had satisfactory pain control with only moderate adverse effects.

The initial developments of PCS systems enabled the patient to request bolus drug administration (propofol or midazolam), or occasionally an increase in drug infusion rate.[226-230] Studies on the quality and outcomes after PCS have shown that it reduces discomfort and fear by inducing sedation and amnesia during uncomfortable therapeutic procedures such as colonoscopy. Additionally, PCS facilitates the procedure by increasing the patient's tolerance. Although propofol offers no analgesic effect, several studies of patient control of propofol administration (bolus or short infusions) during procedures showed that it provided reasonably safe, light sedation, and that patients expressed a preference for being in control.[227,229,230] A recent study compared physician-controlled TCI propofol with PCS with boluses of propofol during endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography. It showed that with PCS lower doses of propofol were used and recovery was more rapid.[231]

As bolus or even manual infusion regimens might produce fluctuating levels of sedation, Kenny and colleagues in Glasgow combined PCS with TCI of propofol to overcome this problem. Using a patient-maintained sedation system, the patient can set a specific propofol target concentration using an activating handset button. With the system, the patient was required to press twice within one second to request a target increase. If no validated presses occurred, the system initially kept the target propofol concentration unchanged, but if after 6 minutes no further presses occurred, then the target concentration was reduced by the incremental amount. A starting concentration and a lockout time is set by the clinician (commonly with the default being approximately the equilibration time between plasma and effect-site concentrations). In various applications requiring sedation, their experimental system was shown to be feasible[232-235]; however, even when using an effect-site controlled TCI system, some volunteers rendered themselves unconscious.[236] Whereas the system developed by Kenny and colleagues incorporated the Marsh model, Stonell and colleagues developed and tested a system enabling propofol effect-site targeted patient-maintained sedation with the Schnider model. They compared patient-maintained sedation with anesthetist-administered sedation and found that patient-maintained sedation was associated with fewer adverse events, higher sedation scores, and BIS values, but at the cost of slower induction times, while patient and operator satisfaction was similar.[237]

It is possible that safety can be improved further, particularly if a test or measure of responsiveness to a stimulus is added and if the control algorithm is incorporated to allow the facility to stop the infusion should the response become inadequate.[238-241]

Doufas and colleagues tested an automatic response test to optimize propofol administration for conscious sedation.[242,243] Although volunteers were required to push a delivery button in response to auditory and tactile stimuli, a TCI-like algorithm guided the propofol administration. The study showed that failure to respond to automated responsiveness monitoring precedes potentially serious adverse effects of sedation such as loss of responsiveness, and that the monitor was not susceptible to false-positive responses.[244]

An enlarged commercial version of this device, SEDASYS (Ethicon Endo-Surgery, Cincinnati, Ohio), was tested in two studies. It incorporated the automated responsiveness monitoring and built-in capnography and pulse oximetry. If the patient's responses to stimuli were inadequate, then the subsequent increases in infusion rates were limited. If apnea or hemoglobin oxygen desaturation were detected, then the infusion was stopped and additional oxygen given. After a successful feasibility study,[245] the system was then used in a large randomized study of sedation during upper gastrointestinal endoscopy and colonoscopy and was found to be associated with a reduced incidence of adverse events compared with standard care (5.8% vs. 8.7%, respectively).[246] Although the device was approved by the FDA in 2013 for the provision of moderate sedation during routine endoscopic procedures in ASA 1 and 2 patients, poor sales figures prompted a commercial decision by the vendor to cease marketing the device.[247,248]

Closed-Loop Controlled Intravenous Drug Delivery

The next step in computer-controlled drug delivery is to feed a continuous measure of drug effect directly back to the automated drug delivery device, thus providing a continuous closed-loop system. This system avoids the requirement of a clinician to titrate the target concentration manually, based on intermittent observations of the desired therapeutic effect. With manual control, attempts to achieve tight titration of hypnosis require high clinical expertise and a labor-intensive process and may divert the clinician's attention from critical actions resulting in a suboptimal therapy or even threatening the patient's safety. Applying closed-loop drug administration techniques could optimize this process of dose titration.[4] The application of closed-loop systems for drug administration is complex and requires a perfect balance for all the basic components of such a system: (1) a control variable representative for the targeted therapeutic effect; (2) a clinically relevant set-point or target value for this variable; (3) a control actuator which is, in this case, the infusion pump driving the drug; (4) a system, in this case a patient; and (5) an accurate, stable control algorithm.[249]

Control algorithms are all based on measuring the error between the target and the observed effect. Various control strategies are described in the literature to steer this closed-loop administration. Proportional-integral differential (PID) controllers are frequently used in engineering applications. This controller will adjust the infusion rates in a manner that is proportional to the magnitude of the error, the integral of the error over time, and the derivative of the error over time. The fine-tuning of a PID controller might be difficult in this particular setting because of the complexity of the system to control and the interindividual pharmacologic variability, and because directly counteracting the administration of excessive drug is not possible. A more appropriate approach could be to use a PID control system connected to a TCI system to decrease the order of complexity between dose and response (see Fig. 26.26).[250] An alternative control strategy is called *model-based adaptive control*. This controller has an internal model of the system, typically set up as an integrated pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic model that relates dose to concentration (pharmacokinetics) and concentration to drug effect (pharmacodynamics). The model is updated to explain the difference between the measured and predicted drug effect.

A reliable physiologic signal, which is a measure of the clinical drug effect, is the most important component of closed-loop technology. Vital signs such as arterial blood pressure or muscle activity have been used to guide intravenous closed-loop drug administration. For example, Kenny and coworkers[251] successfully evaluated closed-loop control of arterial blood pressure using a mixture of trimethaphan camsylate and sodium nitroprusside during controlled hypotensive anesthesia for local resection of intraocular melanoma. In the 1980s and the 1990s, various researchers investigated the accuracy of closed-loop controlled administration of atracurium[252,253] and vecuronium.[254] However, since the introduction of the novel reversal drug, sugammadex, interest in closed-loop administration of vecuronium or rocuronium has significantly declined.

The commercialization of various EEG-based *depth of anesthesia* monitors, such as the BIS, spectral entropy, and auditory-evoked potential, has renewed the interest of various research groups in closed-loop administration of intravenous hypnotics. Using an early version of the BIS as the control variable, Sakai and colleagues[255] concluded that their closed-loop system provided intraoperative hemodynamic stability and a prompt recovery from sedative-hypnotic effects of propofol. A similar propofol closed-loop system using the BIS and PID control of a plasma-controlled TCI system showed acceptable control during major orthopedic surgery[256] and during sedation.[257] Although these investigators improved the performance of their control system by switching toward effect-site targeted TCI, they also concluded that the PID controller might still face some stability problems. Similarly, Liu and colleagues used a closed-loop titration of TCI based on a proportional-differential algorithm guided by the BIS, allowing induction and maintenance of general anesthesia and compared this with manual propofol TCI. They found that closed-loop control resulted in less propofol consumption and longer induction times but with better hemodynamic stability, less excessive anesthetic levels (BIS <40), similar hemodynamic stability, and faster recovery.[250,258]

Liu and colleagues have developed a more advanced version of their initial system, now using full PID control, for closed-loop coadministration of both propofol and remifentanil, using the BIS as the controlled variable. A rule-based algorithm decides when to change the propofol or remifentanil targets. In a multicenter study, this system showed a better overall performance versus manual administration.[259] A similar approach was used with an alternative EEG-derived index, spectral entropy.[260] The same group has since used their system in various groups of patients in a variety of clinical settings, such as during sedation, pediatric surgery, and liver transplantation—and in a variety of applications in which it is used to provide an objective evaluation of the influence of pharmacological (e.g., use of dexmedetomidine) and nonpharmacological interventions (e.g., hypnosis) on anesthetic drug requirements for general anesthesia.[261-269]

Puri and colleagues in India developed a system that incorporates an adaptive PID algorithm to control propofol administration guided by the BIS. It has been extensively tested in a variety of circumstances, for general anesthesia and postoperative sedation, in adults and children, at high altitude, and in patients with pheochromocytoma and heart failure, and found to perform satisfactorily.[270-276] In a randomized controlled trial involving more than 200 patients, the system was shown to provide significantly more accurate control (defined as BIS within target range) than manually controlled anesthesia.[277]

A Canadian group lead by Dumont and Ansermino have also developed a PID-based closed-loop controller. For their system, they developed their own monitor (NeuroSENSE, NeuroWave Systems, Cleveland Heights, OH), which calculates the wavelet-based anesthetic value for central nervous system monitoring (WAV_{CNS}) and the burst suppression ratio.[278,279] The WAV_{CNS}, which has a range of 0 to 100, has also been used for monitoring sedation in the ICU.[280] A study comparing the performance of WAV_{CNS} with BIS and response entropy found that WAV_{CNS} performed well, and was particularly good at capturing rapidly occurring changes.[281] The system includes a PID algorithm, and initially was only used to control a propofol infusion.[282] It contains an infusion safety system to manage the infusion rate when the feedback variable (WAV_{CNS}) is unavailable or when the drug infusion exceeds predefined limits. Later, they developed and tested a so-called multi-input single-output system, in which the output remained the WAV_{CNS}, but the controller was able to control both a propofol and a remifentanil infusion.[282] The authors have shown that their system provides robust, stable, and safe control of anesthetic depth, even under challenging conditions such as significant bleeding,[283] and that the addition of automatic control of remifentanil administration improved the quality of control.[282]

Another group in Canada have gradually taken their closed-loop system (McSleepy) to the next level. Their initial version of McSleepy used a PID algorithm and the BIS to automatically control a propofol infusion and was shown to be able to provide more accurate and stable control of the BIS than an anesthesiologist manually controlling the propofol infusion rate.[284] They then developed McSleepy further to enable closed-loop control of three drugs: propofol and remifentanil infusions, and rocuronium boluses.[285] For propofol, a proportional integral algorithm is used with the BIS the control variable, whereas for remifentanil a rule-based proportional algorithm is used to control the Analgoscore (a nociception score based on heart rate and blood pressure),[286] and finally, rocuronium boluses are administered on the basis of simple rule set, to keep the train of four count less than 25%. This system has been shown to provide accurate control of all variables. The system has been adapted (the Analgoscore was adapted and the name changed to NociMap) and used for general anesthesia for cardiac surgery,[287] and more recently also adapted to provide propofol sedation[288] and used during transcatheter aortic valve implantation.[289]

Model-based adaptive control of BIS-guided propofol administration was previously used by Struys and colleagues for sedation during spinal anesthesia and for general anesthesia.[290,291] The control algorithm is based on a patient-specific pharmacodynamic profile estimated during induction. Compared with manually titrated propofol administration, patients in the closed-loop group reached the target BIS at a somewhat slower rate, but this resulted in less BIS overshoot and better hemodynamics after induction. During the maintenance phase, improved control of the BIS and systolic blood pressure was found in the closed-loop group and recovery was faster. Using simulations, these authors compared their model-based control system with a previously published PID controller

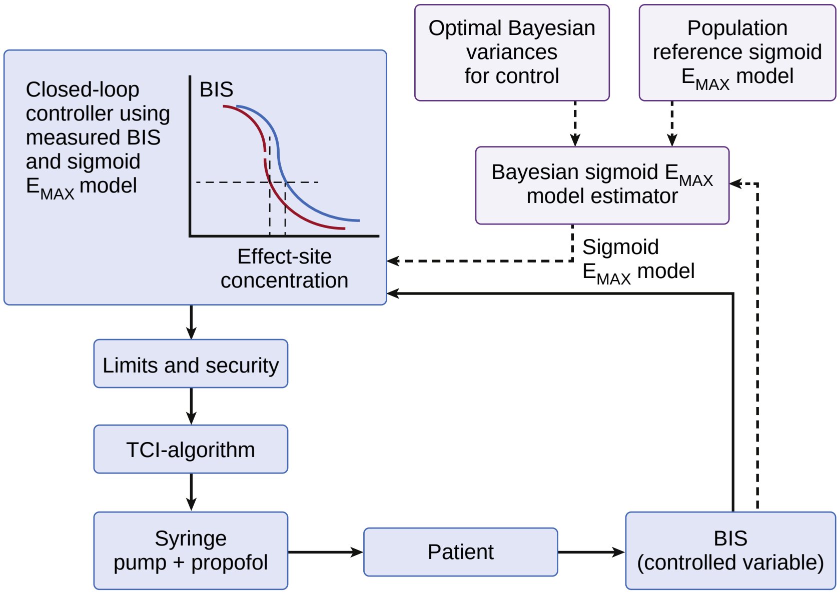

Optimal Bayesian variances for control
Population reference sigmoid E_{MAX} model
Closed-loop controller using measured BIS and sigmoid E_{MAX} model
BIS
Effect-site concentration
Bayesian sigmoid E_{MAX} model estimator
Sigmoid E_{MAX} model
Limits and security
TCI-algorithm
Syringe pump + propofol
Patient
BIS (controlled variable)

Fig. 26.32 Flow chart of the closed-loop system. The *solid lines* represent the closed-loop control system. Each time the required effect-site concentration is calculated by the controller this value is sent to an additional algorithm, taking the safety limits into account. The result of these calculations is the required effect-site concentration sent to the target-controlled infusion *(TCI)* algorithm, which steers a pump injecting propofol to the patient. The measured bispectral index *(BIS)* is used as the input of the closed-loop controller. The *dotted lines* represent the Bayesian sigmoid E_{MAX} model estimator. The estimator receives a priori information from the population sigmoid E_{MAX} model, the optimal Bayesian variances for control, and the patient-measured BIS values. (From De Smet T, Struys MM, Greenwald S, et al. Estimation of optimal modeling weights for a Bayesian-based closed-loop system for propofol administration using the bispectral index as a controlled variable: a simulation study. *Anesth Analg.* 2007;105:1629–1638. Used with permission.)

and found that the model-based controller outperformed, even under extreme control conditions such as low and high BIS levels and abrupt changes in the BIS levels.[292] De Smet and Struys later developed the adaptive part of the controller using Bayesian optimization (Fig. 26.32)[293] and compared the feasibility and accuracy of this system with manually controlled BIS-guided, effect compartment–controlled propofol TCI during ambulatory gynecologic procedures. They found that the closed-loop control system accurately titrated propofol administration resulting in BIS values close to the set point. The closed-loop control system was able to induce anesthesia in the patients within clinically accepted time limits and with less overshoot than the manual control group. Automated control resulted in beneficial recovery times. This closed-loop control group showed related acceptable clinical performance specified by similar hemodynamic respiratory stability, comparable movement rates, and quality scores as the manual control group.[294]

Alternative closed-loop systems have been developed for isoflurane administration using a controller with a cascade structure, originally described by Gentilini and associates.[295,296] More recently, Moore and Doufas designed a closed-loop system using an intelligent system technique called *reinforcement learning*, known as a mathematically robust method of achieving optimal control in systems challenged with noise, nonlinearity, time delay, and uncertainty.[297,298]

So far, closed-loop systems have only been used under strict experimental conditions. The challenge is now to prove their safety and utility when applied in clinical practice.[299,300] Liu and associates have shown improved stability of control of depth of anesthesia with their system in a large multicenter study.[259] More recently two meta-analyses have evaluated the available data concerning the performance of closed-loop systems for intravenous anesthesia and other applications.[301,302] Both found improved accuracy of control with closed-loop technology.

Liu and associates have also been able to show that the use of their system produces several secondary benefits, such as a reduction in the workload of the anesthesiologist.[303] Ultimately, clinicians will have to determine whether adaptive, intelligent computer systems with dual, interacting, closed-loop systems will facilitate better control and improve patient outcomes.[120]

Although closed-loop technology and automation are almost ubiquitous in our daily lives, closed-loop anesthesia is still only used within research settings. Recent editorials have discussed the relevance of closed-loop technology to anesthesia, and the likely time course over which applications will become a routine part of our daily work.[304-306] The theoretical benefits, however, are compelling, and so it is not surprising that the FDA recently held a workshop on the regulatory considerations for physiological closed-loop controlled medical for automation in critical care and anesthetic environments, and is currently formulating recommendations and regulatory proposals.[307]

Future Perspectives

For all existing drugs there is broad pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic variability. In anesthesia practice, inaccurate dosing can have serious consequences. Whereas overdosing might be associated with hemodynamic compromise and prolonged recovery, underdosing is particularly undesirable since it can result in unintended awareness during general anesthesia, with severe psychological consequences.[308] A recent study involving all hospitals in the United Kingdom and Ireland showed that accidental awareness during general anesthesia was more common with intravenous anesthesia compared with inhalational anesthesia.[309] Thus for intravenous drug delivery, there remains a strong need for methods to ensure accurate and individualized estimation and titration of dosing. Currently there exist several emerging techniques and technologies that might help realize this goal.

Hypnotic drugs used in anesthesia are known to have strong interaction reactions with other commonly used drugs. While pharmacokinetic interactions are common, pharmacodynamic interactions are much larger in magnitude, and thus clinically highly relevant. In the case of the hypnotics and opioid analgesics, the interactions are strongly synergistic, and so when these drugs are coadministered, dose adjustments are usually necessary to avoid adverse effects. These interactions are very complex, with the magnitude of the interaction effect dependent on the plasma and effect-site concentrations of all of the interacting drugs. Interactions between two drugs are best depicted on three-dimensional response surface plots.[80,96,99] As mentioned earlier, advisory displays have been developed to provide the anesthesiologist with real-time information on the likely magnitude of the clinical effect of drug combinations (see Fig. 26.25). Although seldom used in clinical practice, it is likely that these and similar systems will be more widely employed in the future, to help guide anesthesiologists to optimize anesthetic dosing.

A development that could potentially improve safety and accuracy is the broader implementation and clinical use of the new “universal” pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic models that have been developed for propofol[76] and remifentanil.[184] The models currently used to implement TCI were developed from studies of patients or volunteers with a rather narrow range of age, weight, and height characteristics; and so naturally these models are only applicable in patients of similar characteristics. On the other hand, the universal models were developed from a combined analysis of the data from a significant number of studies involving a large number of patients with different characteristics. The origin of the underlying data, along with the use of allometric scaling, should broaden the applicability of these models. Once these models have been prospectively validated, it is hoped that availability of a single, accurate model for propofol and remifentanil will enhance patient safety and encourage infusion system manufacturers to incorporate these models into their TCI pumps. This might also help reduce the likelihood of drug errors (e.g., those resulting from choice of an inappropriate model, or a lack of understanding of the model chosen), and this too might help improve the popularity and broaden the applications of TCI systems.

TCI systems contain population pharmacokinetic models, designed to provide the best estimate of the parameters of drug kinetics in a population, but not necessarily for an individual. Inevitably, there will be some degree of error when a pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic model is used to guide or determine drug infusion rates to a single patient. One possible solution to the inevitable problem of any mismatch between the pharmacokinetic behavior of a drug and the pharmacokinetic model used to guide administration is to perform real-time measurements of achieved concentrations, and to individualize the model. Recently, a system has become available that provides accurate point-of-care measurement of plasma propofol concentrations within 5 minutes.[310] Plasma propofol concentrations measured by this apparatus were thus used in a system that used Bayesian methodology to update the pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic model being used for TCI administration of propofol.[136] Although the results were somewhat disappointing—after adaptation bias improved, but precision did not—this was an initial effort using this system, and future research developments might show better results.

At present, no real-time plasma concentration measurements of intravenous drugs are routinely available for clinical use. Such measurements may improve drug delivery or might optimize TCI administration for the individual patient.[311] Several promising techniques have been described. Takita and colleagues found a strong and linear correlation between exhaled propofol concentrations measured by proton transfer mass spectrometry and estimated and measured arterial propofol concentrations.[312] Miekisch and coworkers[313] used headspace solid-phase microextraction coupled with gas chromatography mass spectrometry to measure alveolar (exhaled), arterial, central venous, and peripheral blood propofol concentrations, and found a good correlation between exhaled and arterial concentrations. Perl and colleagues[314] used an ion mobility spectrometer coupled to a multicapillary column for preseparation (multicapillary column–ion mobility spectrometer [MCC-IMS]), Hornuss and colleagues used ion molecule reaction mass spectrometry,[315,316] and Grossherr and colleagues used gas chromatography mass spectrometry.[317] The latter group also described the difference between blood/gas partition coefficient and pulmonary extraction ratio for propofol between species, which will be important when studying this technique in an animal setting.[318]

Varadajan,[319] Ziaian and colleagues,[320] and Kreuer and colleagues[321] have applied compartmental modeling to describe the kinetics of exhaled propofol. Colin et al. were able to show that standard compartmental models can easily be extended with an additional lung compartment (with a rate constant to model time delay) and a scaling factor (to convert units) to enable predictions of plasma propofol concentration, as well as online Bayesian model adaptation.[322] With this model it was also possible to estimate BIS values from exhaled propofol measurements.

Recently a system using MCC-IMS (Edmon, B. Braun, Germany) has become commercially available and is able to provide measurements every minute. Studies with a prototype system used a reference gas generator to confirm accuracy and precision over the clinical range of exhaled propofol measurements.[323]

Even with an online method for measurement of drug concentrations and/or of perfecting pharmacokinetic models, the clinician still faces the challenge of the broad variability in pharmacodynamic response to any given drug concentration. Automatic closed-loop control systems, which have been discussed extensively in this chapter, might provide a solution to this problem. A well-designed system with a robust measure of clinical effect should help to optimize drug administration and titration on an individual level by accurately titrating drug administration to clinical effect.

Finally, the use of nonlinear mixed effects modeling (NONMEM) techniques is currently considered to be the state-of-the-art for pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic analysis and for development of new models. Such development involves use of infusion rate, measured plasma concentration, and measures of clinical effect to generate mathematical models that are consistent with our knowledge of pharmacology.

This process produces the parameters for a structural model comprising two or more compartments, redistribution clearance, and metabolic clearance parameters that describe exponential processes. Artificial intelligence approaches using neural networks are providing powerful and effective solutions to modern problems, eliminating the need to start with models based on current knowledge.[324] This "deep learning" approach was recently applied to data from 231 patients to learn how to predict the BIS values associated with differing plasma and effect-site concentrations of propofol and remifentanil.[325] Remarkably the system was able to learn to predict BIS values more accurately than traditional pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic model-based approaches. Given the widespread ease of access of almost all anesthesiologists to web-based technology, it is reasonable to imagine a situation where the data from millions of patients around the world are fed into machine-learning systems that can learn to predict responses to different combinations of drugs, and, inversely, learn to accurately predict the doses required for given responses, without the need for complex models.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Massa DJ, et al. *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin*. 1950;25:413.
2. Rivera AM, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 2005;56:271.
3. Absalom A, Struys MM. In: *An overview of TCI & TIVA*. Gent: Academia Press; 2007.
4. Struys M, de Smet T. In: Evers AS, et al., ed. *Anesthetic Pharmacology: Basic Principles and Clinical Practice*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2011:103.
5. Sahinovic MM, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:734.
6. Struys MM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:38.
7. Schwilden H. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1981;20:379.
8. Absalom AR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):70.
9. Shafer SL. *J Clin Anesth*. 1993;5:14S.
10. Shafer SL. *Semin Anesth*. 1993;12:222.
11. Avram MJ, Krejcie TC. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1078.
12. Absalom AR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:26.
13. Masui K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:368.
14. Upton RN, Ludbrook G. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:344.
15. Soehle M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:172.
16. Hull CJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50:1113.
17. Sheiner LB, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1979;25:358.
18. Schnider TW, et al. In: Evers AS, et al., ed. *Anesthetic Pharmacology. Basic Principles and Clinical Practice*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2011:57.
19. Fernandez-Candil J, et al. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 2008;64:795.
20. Chen C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:788.
21. Struys MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:802.
22. Egan TD, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:335.
23. Glass PS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:1031.
24. Vanluchene AL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:34.
25. Vereecke HE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:500.
26. Bruhn J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:85.
27. Jospin M, et al. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2007;54:840.
28. Ludbrook GL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1363.
29. Shafer SL, Gregg KM. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1992;20:147.
30. Jacobs JR, Williams EA. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 1993;40:993.
31. Coppens MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:83.
32. Minto CF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:324.
33. Cortinez LI, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:679.
34. Schnider T, Minto C. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:206.
35. Mourisse J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:737.
36. Mourisse J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:746.
37. McKay ID, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:91.
38. Kelz MB, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:1309.
39. Friedman EB, et al. *PLoS One*. 2010;5:e11903.
40. Sepulveda PO, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(1):40.
41. Warnaby CE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(4):645–657.
42. Kuizenga MH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(3):525–536.
43. Bouillon T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(4):779–787.
44. Bouillon T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(2):240–250.
45. Martinoni EP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(6):800–807.
46. Scott JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:234.
47. Struys MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:399.
48. Eger 2nd EI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:756.
49. Telford RJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:523.
50. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:3.
51. Hung OR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:237.
52. Glass PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:842.
53. Jacobs JR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:143.
54. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1549.
55. Xu Z, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:478.
56. Kaneda K, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;51:482.
57. Scott JC, Stanski DR. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1987;240:159.
58. Scott JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:34.
59. Egan TD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:881.
60. Egan TD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:821.
61. Minto CF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:10.
62. Homer TD, Stanski DR. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:714.
63. Stanski DR, Maitre PO. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:412.
64. Schnider TW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:510.
65. Barvais L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:347.
66. Glass PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1556.
67. Ausems ME, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:362.
68. Ausems ME, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:1217.
69. Kodaka M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:242.
70. Cortinez LI, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22:56.
71. Colin PJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(2):200–210.
72. Colin PJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(2):211–220.
73. Gourlay GK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:329.
74. van den Nieuwenhuyzen MC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:671.
75. Lehmann KA, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35:221.
76. Eleveld DJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(5):942–959.
77. Hendrickx JF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:494.
78. Minto CF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1603.
79. Bouillon TW. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2008;182:471.
80. Minto CF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1603.
81. Short TG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:400.
82. Heyse B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:311.
83. Sebel PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:52.
84. McEwan AI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:864.
85. Lang E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:721.
86. Egan TD, Minto CF. In: Evers AS, et al., ed. *Anesthetic Pharmacology. Basic Principles and Clinical Practice*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2011:147.
87. Short TG. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:249.
88. Manyam SC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:267.
89. Johnson KB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:387.
90. Heyse B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(6):1390.
91. Kissin I. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:215.
92. Zanderigo E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:742.
93. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:8.
94. Bruhn J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:621.
95. Ropcke H, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13:198.
96. Bouillon TW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1353.
97. Nieuwenhuijs DJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:312.
98. Gambus PL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:331.
99. Bouillon T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:144.
100. LaPierre CD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:490.

101. Luginbuhl M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(4):872–880.
102. Schumacher PM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:790.
103. Sebel LE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1176.
104. Hammer GB, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19:138.
105. Hannivoort LN, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116(5):624.
106. Shafer SL. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(2):240.
107. van den Berg JP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(1):44–57.
108. Shafer SL. *Varvel. JR. Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:53.
109. Hughes MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:334.
110. Schwilden H. *Anasth Intensivther Notfallmed*. 1985;20:307.
111. Fisher DM, Rosen JI. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:286.
112. Youngs EJ, Shafer SL. *Anesthesiology*. 81:833.
113. Bailey JM. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:1095.
114. Milne SE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:623.
115. Struys MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:803.
116. Syroid ND, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:565.
117. Drews FA, et al. *Hum Factors*. 2006;48:85.
118. Murphy RS, Wilcox SJ. *J Med Eng Technol*. 2009;33:470.
119. Struys MM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):56–69.
120. Absalom AR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(3):516–518.
121. Kruger-Thiemer E. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1968;4(3):317–324.
122. White M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1990;45:204–209.
123. Wakeling HG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(1):92–97.
124. Struys MMRF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):56–69.
125. Shafer SL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68(2):261–266.
126. Adapa RM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:33.
127. Schnider TW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):79–85.
128. Hu C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:639.
129. Varvel JR, et al. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1992;20:63.
130. Coetzee JF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1328.
131. Cowley NJ, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2013;30(10):627–632.
132. Glen JB, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(6):550–557.
133. Cortinez LI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(2):302–310.
134. Tachibana N, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2014;31(12):701–707.
135. Lee YH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(6):883–891.
136. van den Berg JP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(5):918–927.
137. Lee AKY, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32(2):723–730.
138. Barvais L, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2000;14:402.
139. Absalom AR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(5):615–623.
140. Hannivoort LN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(2):357–367.
141. Obara S, et al. *J Anesth*. 2018;32(1):33–40.
142. Glass PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(6):1082–1090.
143. Shafer SL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(6):1091–1102.
144. Shibutani K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:603.
145. Lemmens HJ, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1990;19:416.
146. Crankshaw DP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:556.
147. Sigmond N, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(2):197–208.
148. Hudson RJ, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2001;15:693.
149. Slepchenko G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:65.
150. Mertens MJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:132.
151. Cho YJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72(10):1196–1205.
152. Marsh B, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:41–48.
153. Absalom A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91(4):507–513.
154. Sepulveda P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(4):593–600.
155. Choi BM, et al. *J Pharmacokinet Pharmacodyn*. 2015;42(2):163–177.
156. McMurray TJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59(7):636–641.
157. Cortegiani A, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2018.
158. Struys M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1995;10(suppl):85.
159. Struys M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52:41.
160. Hoymork SC, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44:1138.
161. Macquaire V, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46:1010.
162. Fabregas N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1378.
163. Schnider TW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(5):1170–1182.
164. Schnider TW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(6):1502–1516.
165. Schüttler J, Ihmsen H. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:727.
166. Anderson BJ, Holford NH. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2008;48:303.
167. Anderson BJ, Holford NH. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20:1.
168. Cortinez LI, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:448.
169. Cortinez LI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
170. Frederico Avendano C, et al. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 2016;63(10):556–563.
171. Barakat AR, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:661.
172. Coppens M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:452.
173. Thomson AJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(5):420–428.
174. Eleveld DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(6):1221–1237.
175. Kataria BK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:104.
176. Hara M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(3):415–423.
177. Short TG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72(3):302–306.
178. Gepts E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:1194.
179. Maitre PO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:3.
180. van den Nieuwenhuyzen MC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:481.
181. Raemer DB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:66.
182. Minto CF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:24.
183. Rigby-Jones AE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:252–261.
184. Eleveld DJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(6):1005–1018.
185. Chen L, Baker MD. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2006;22:485.
186. White M, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2008;47(2):119–127.
187. Fu F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(3):506–513.
188. Calvo R, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:1038.
189. Wietasch JK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:430.
190. Vuyk J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1522.
191. Lichtenbelt BJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1597.
192. Ausems ME, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:851.
193. Alvis JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:41.
194. Theil DR, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1993;7:300.
195. De Castro V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:33.
196. Moerman AT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:828.
197. Kenny GN. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1997;15(suppl):29.
198. Servin FS. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(suppl 1):82.
199. Passot S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1338–1342.
200. Chen G, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26:928.
201. Wang X, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;32:92–100.
202. Chiang MH, et al. *Endoscopy*. 2013;45(11):907–914.
203. Mu J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(5):1049–1055.
204. Kazama T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1517.
205. Absalom AR, Kenny GN. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:737.
206. Raeder J. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:704.
207. Bejjani G, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2009;23:175.
208. Sveticic G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1195.
209. Beilin B, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:78.
210. Ng KF, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2006;18:205.
211. Lipszyc M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:724.
212. White I, et al. *Pharmacol Res*. 2012;66:185.
213. Walder B, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:795.
214. Cronrath P, et al. *Nurs Econ*. 2011;29:79.
215. Volmanen P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:453.
216. Volmanen P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52:249.
217. Douma MR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:209.
218. Volmanen P, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:235.
219. Volmanen PV, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:486.
220. Douma MR, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2011;20:118.
221. Freeman LM, et al. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h846.
222. van den Nieuwenhuyzen MC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:17.
223. van den Nieuwenhuyzen MC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:580.
224. Schraag S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81(3):365–368.
225. Jeleazcov C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(1):56–68.
226. Loper KA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67(11):1118–1119.
227. Osborne GA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1991;46:553–556.
228. Rudkin GE, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1991;46:90–92.
229. Rudkin GE, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:376–381.
230. Osborne GA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49:287.
231. Mazanikov M, et al. *Endoscopy*. 2013;45(11):915–919.
232. Irwin MG, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52(6):525–530.
233. Murdoch JA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82(3):429–431.
234. Murdoch J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85(2):299–301.
235. Henderson F, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(4):387–390.
236. Absalom AR, et al. *Anesthesiol* in press. 2000;93:A291.
237. Stonell CA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61(3):240–247.
238. Chapman RM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61(4):345–349.
239. O'Brien C, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(7):760–764.
240. Anderson KJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(2):148–153.
241. Allam S, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(2):154–158.
242. Doufas AG, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 2001;94(4):585–592.
243. Doufas AG, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47(8):944–950.
244. Doufas AG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(3):778–786.
245. Pambianco DJ, et al. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2008;68(3):542–547.
246. Pambianco DJ, et al. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2011;73(4):765–772.
247. Lin OS. *Intest Res*. 2017;15(4):456–466.
248. Goudra B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(2):686–688.
249. O'Hara DA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:563.
250. Liu N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:686.
251. Chaudhri S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:607.

252. O'Hara DA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:258.
253. Edwards ND, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53:136.
254. Olkkola KT, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35:420.
255. Sakai T, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44:1007.
256. Absalom AR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:67.
257. Leslie K, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:693.
258. Liu N, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2006;23:465.
259. Liu N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:546.
260. Liu N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:286.
261. Le Guen M, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2013;39(3):454–462.
262. Liu N, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60(9):881–887.
263. Orliaguet GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(4):759–767.
264. Restoux A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(3):332–340.
265. Le Guen M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(5):946–955.
266. Liu N, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(5):842–851.
267. Le Guen M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(2):355–364.
268. Dumans-Nizard V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(2):635–642.
269. Bataille A, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2017.
270. Puri GD, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35(3):357–362.
271. Agarwal J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(3):390–397.
272. Hegde HV, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2009;23(4):189–196.
273. Solanki A, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27(8):708–713.
274. Puri GD, et al. *Indian J Aaesth*. 2012;56(3):238–242.
275. Biswas I, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2013;23(12):1145–1152.
276. Mahajan V, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2017;42:106–113.
277. Puri GD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):106–114.
278. Zikov T, et al. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2006;53(4):617–632.
279. van Heusden K, et al. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2013;60(9):2521–2529.
280. West N, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2018.
281. Bibian S, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2011;25(1):81–87.
282. West N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
283. Brodie SM, et al. *A A Case Rep*. 2017;9(8):239–243.
284. Hemmerling TM, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57(8):725–735.
285. Hemmerling TM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(6):1031–1039.
286. Hemmerling TM, et al. *J Comput*. 2009;4:311–318.
287. Zaouter C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(4):885–893.
288. Zaouter C, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31(2):309–317.
289. Zaouter C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(5):1505–1512.
290. Mortier E, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(8):749–754.
291. Struys MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(1):6–17.
292. Struys MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(3):640–647.
293. De Smet T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(6):1629–1638.
294. De Smet T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(4):1200–1210.
295. Gentilini A, et al. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2002;49(4):289–299.
296. Gentilini A, et al. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2001;48(8):874–889.
297. Moore BL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(2):360–367.
298. Moore BL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(2):350–359.
299. Manberg PJ, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2008;84(1):166–169.
300. Liu N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):4–6.
301. Brogi E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;124(2):446–455.
302. Pasin L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(2):456–464.
303. Dussaussoy C, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2014;28(1):35–40.
304. Miller TE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1039–1041.
305. Liu N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):4–6.
306. Loeb RG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(2):381–382.
307. Parvinian B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
308. Tasbihgou SR, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(1):112–122.
309. Pandit JJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(4):540–548.
310. Cowley NJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(8):870–874.
311. Maitre PO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:652–659.
312. Takita A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(4):659–664.
313. Miekisch W, et al. *Clin Chim Acta*. 2008;395:32–37.
314. Perl T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(6):822–827.
315. Hornuss C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(4):665–674.
316. Hornuss C, et al. *Anal Bioanal Chem*. 2012;403(2):555–561.
317. Grossherr M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(5):608–613.
318. Grossherr M, et al. *Xenobiotica*. 2009;39(10):782–787.
319. Varadarajan BT. *Monitoring of Propofol in Breath; Pharmacokinetic Modeling and Design of a Control System*. Doctoral Thesis. Luebeck University; 2011.
320. Ziaian D, et al. *IEEE International Symposium on Medical Measurements and Applications*. MeMeA; 2014:1–5.
321. Kreuer S, et al. *Sci Rep*. 2014;4:5423.
322. Colin P, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2016;55(7):849–859.
323. Maurer F, Walter L, Geiger M, et al. Calibration and validation of a MCC/IMS prototype for exhaled propofol online measurement. *J Pharm Biomed Anal*. 2017;145:293–297.
324. Gambus P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(3):431–433.
325. Lee HC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(3):492–501.

References

1. Massa DJ, Lundy JS, Faulconcer A Jr, Ridley RW. A plastic needle. *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin*. 1950;25(14):413–415.
2. Rivera AM, Strauss KW, van Zundert A, Mortier E. The history of peripheral intravenous catheters. How little plastic tubes revolutionized medicine. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 2005;56(3):271–282.
3. Absalom AR, Struys MMRF. *An Overview of TCI and TIVA*. Vol. 2. Gent: Academia Press; 2007.
4. Struys M, de Smet T. Principles of drug actions.Target-controlled infusions and closed-loop administration. In: Evers AS, Maze M, Kharasch ED, eds. *Anesthetic Pharmacology. Basic Principles and Clinical Practice*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2011:103–122.
5. Sahinovic MM, Absalom AR, Struys MM. Administration and monitoring of intravenous anesthetics. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol.* 2010; 23(6):734–740.
6. Struys MM, Sahinovic M, Lichtenbelt BJ, Vereecke HE, Absalom AR. Optimizing intravenous drug administration by applying pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic concepts. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(1):38–47.
7. Schwilden H. A general method for calculating the dosage scheme in linear pharmacokinetics. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1981;20(5):379–386.
8. Absalom AR, Glen JI, Zwart GJ, Schnider TW, Struys MM. Target-controlled infusion. A mature technology. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):70–78.
9. Shafer SL. Advances in propofol pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. *J Clin Anesth*. 1993;5:14S–21S.
10. Shafer SL. Towards optimal intravenous dosing strategies. *Semin Anesth*. 1993;12:222–234.
11. Avram MJ, Krejcie TC. Using front-end kinetics to optimize target-controlled drug infusions. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(5):1078–1086.
12. Absalom AR, Mani V, De Smet T, Struys MM. Pharmacokinetic models for propofol—defining and illuminating the devil in the detail. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(1):26–37.
13. Masui K, Upton RN, Doufas AG, et al. The performance of compartmental and physiologically based recirculatory pharmacokinetic models for propofol. A comparison using bolus, continuous, and target-controlled infusion data. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(2):368–379.
14. Upton RN, Ludbrook G. A physiologically based, recirculatory model of the kinetics and dynamics of propofol in man. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(2):344–352.
15. Soehle M, Kuech M, Grube M, et al. Patient state index vs bispectral index as measures of the electroencephalographic effects of propofol. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(2):172–178.
16. Hull CJ, Van Beem HB, McLeod K, Sibbald A, Watson MJ. A pharmacodynamic model for pancuronium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50(11):1113–1123.
17. Sheiner LB, Stanski DR, Vozeh S, Miller RD, Ham J. Simultaneous modeling of pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. Application to d-tubocurarine. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1979;25(3):358–371.
18. Schnider TW, Minto CF. Principles of drug action. Principles of pharmacokinetics. In: Evers AS, Maze M, Kharasch ED, eds. *Anesthetic Pharmacology. Basic Principles and Clinical Practice*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2011:55–71.
19. Fernandez-Candil J, Gambus PL, Troconiz IF, et al. Pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic modeling of the influence of chronic phenytoin therapy on the rocuronium bromide response in patients undergoing brain surgery. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 2008;64(8):795–806.
20. Chen C, Yamaguchi N, Varin F. Dose-dependency of pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic parameters after intravenous bolus doses of cisatracurium. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101(6):788–797.
21. Struys MM, Vereecke H, Moerman A, et al. Ability of the bispectral index, autoregressive modelling with exogenous input-derived auditory evoked potentials, and predicted propofol concentrations to measure patient responsiveness during anesthesia with propofol and remifentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(4):802–812.
22. Egan TD, Kern SE, Muir KT, White J. Remifentanil by bolus injection. A safety, pharmacokinetic, pharmacodynamic, and age effect investigation in human volunteers. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(3):335–343.
23. Glass PS, Hardman D, Kamiyama Y, et al. Preliminary pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of an ultra- short- acting opioid. Remifentanil (GI87084B). *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:1031–1040.
24. Vanluchene AL, Vereecke H, Thas O, Mortier EP, Shafer SL, Struys MM. Spectral entropy as an electroencephalographic measure of anesthetic drug effect. A comparison with bispectral index and processed midlatency auditory evoked response. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(1):34–42.
25. Vereecke HE, Vasquez PM, Jensen EW, et al. New composite index based on midlatency auditory evoked potential and electroencephalographic parameters to optimize correlation with propofol effect site concentration. Comparison with bispectral index and solitary used fast extracting auditory evoked potential index. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(3):500–507.
26. Bruhn J, Myles PS, Sneyd R, Struys MM. Depth of anaesthesia monitoring. What's available, what's validated and what's next? *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97(1):85–94.
27. Jospin M, Caminal P, Jensen EW, et al. Detrended fluctuation analysis of EEG as a measure of depth of anesthesia. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2007;54(5):840–846.
28. Ludbrook GL, Visco E, Lam AM. Propofol. Relation between brain concentrations, electroencephalogram, middle cerebral artery blood flow velocity, and cerebral oxygen extraction during induction of anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(6):1363–1370.
29. Shafer SL, Gregg KM. Algorithms to rapidly achieve and maintain stable drug concentrations at the site of drug effect with a computer-controlled infusion pump. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1992;20(2):147–169.
30. Jacobs JR, Williams EA. Algorithm to control "effect compartment" drug concentrations in pharmacokinetic model-driven drug delivery. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 1993;40(10):993–999.
31. Coppens MJ, Eleveld DJ, Proost JH, et al. An evaluation of using population pharmacokinetic models to estimate pharmacodynamic parameters for propofol and bispectral index in children. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115(1):83–93.
32. Minto CF, Schnider TW, Gregg KM, Henthorn TK, Shafer SL. Using the time of maximum effect site concentration to combine pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(2):324–333.
33. Cortinez LI, Nazar C, Munoz HR. Estimation of the plasma effect-site equilibration rate constant (ke0) of rocuronium by the time of maximum effect. A comparison with non-parametric and parametric approaches. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(5):679–685.
34. Schnider T, Minto C. Pharmacokinetic models of propofol for TCI. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63(2):206.
35. Mourisse J, Lerou J, Struys M, Zwarts M, Booij L. Multi-level approach to anaesthetic effects produced by sevoflurane or propofol in humans. 1. BIS and blink reflex. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(6): 737–745.
36. Mourisse J, Lerou J, Struys M, Zwarts M, Booij L. Multi-level approach to anaesthetic effects produced by sevoflurane or propofol in humans. 2. BIS and tetanic stimulus-induced withdrawal reflex. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(6):746–755.
37. McKay ID, Voss LJ, Sleigh JW, Barnard JP, Johannsen EK. Pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic modeling the hypnotic effect of sevoflurane using the spectral entropy of the electroencephalogram. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(1):91–97.
38. Kelz MB, Sun Y, Chen J, et al. An essential role for orexins in emergence from general anesthesia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(4):1309–1314.
39. Friedman EB, Sun Y, Moore JT, et al. A conserved behavioral state barrier impedes transitions between anesthetic-induced unconsciousness and wakefulness. Evidence for neural inertia. *PLoS One*. 2010;5(7):e11903.
40. Sepulveda PO, Carrasco E, Tapia LF, et al. Evidence of hysteresis in propofol pharmacodynamics. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(1):40–48.
41. Warnaby CE, Sleigh JW, Hight D, Jbabdi S, Tracey I. Investigation of slow-wave activity saturation during surgical anesthesia reveals a signature of neural inertia in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(4):645–657.
42. Kuizenga MH, Colin PJ, Reyntjens KMEM, et al. Test of neural inertia in humans during general anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(3):525–536.
43. Bouillon T, Bruhn J, Radu-Radulescu L, Andresen C, Cohane C, Shafer SL. A model of the ventilatory depressant potency of remifentanil in the non-steady state. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(4):779–787.
44. Bouillon T, Bruhn J, Radu-Radulescu L, Andresen C, Cohane C, Shafer SL. Mixed-effects modeling of the intrinsic ventilatory depressant potency of propofol in the non-steady state. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(2):240–250.

45. Martinoni EP, Pfister C, Stadler KS, et al. Model-based control of mechanical ventilation. Design and clinical validation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(6):800–807.
46. Scott JC, Ponganis KV, Stanski DR. EEG quantitation of narcotic effect. The comparative pharmacodynamics of fentanyl and alfentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:234–241.
47. Struys MM, De Smet T, Depoorter B, et al. Comparison of plasma compartment versus two methods for effect compartment-controlled target-controlled infusion for propofol. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(2):399–406.
48. Eger EI, Saidman LJ, Brandstater B. Minimum alveolar anesthetic concentration. A standard of anesthetic potency. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26(6):756–763.
49. Telford RJ, Glass PS, Goodman D, Jacobs JR. Fentanyl does not alter the "sleep" plasma concentration of thiopental. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75(4):523–529.
50. Vuyk J, Engbers FH, Lemmens HJ, et al. Pharmacodynamics of propofol in female patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:3–9.
51. Hung OR, Varvel JR, Shafer SL, Stanski DR. Thiopental pharmacodynamics. II. quantitation of clinical and electroencephalographic depth of anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:237–244.
52. Glass PS, Doherty M, Jacobs JR, Goodman D, Smith LR. Plasma concentration of fentanyl, with 70% nitrous oxide, to prevent movement at skin incision. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:842–847.
53. Jacobs JR, Reves JG, Marty J, White WD, Bai SA, Smith LR. Aging increases pharmacodynamic sensitivity to the hypnotic effects of midazolam. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80(1):143–148.
54. Vuyk J, Mertens MJ, Olofsen E, Burm AG, Bovill JG. Propofol anesthesia and rational opioid selection. Determination of optimal EC50-EC95 propofol-opioid concentrations that assure adequate anesthesia and a rapid return of consciousness. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(6):1549–1562.
55. Xu Z, Liu F, Yue Y, et al. C50 for propofol-remifentanil target-controlled infusion and bispectral index at loss of consciousness and response to painful stimulus in chinese patients. A multicenter clinical trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(2):478–483.
56. Kaneda K, Yamashita S, Woo S, Han TH. Population pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of brief etomidate infusion in healthy volunteers. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;51(4):482–491.
57. Scott JC, Stanski DR. Decreased fentanyl and alfentanil dose requirements with age. A simultaneous pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic evaluation. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1987;240:159–166.
58. Scott JC, Cooke JE, Stanski DR. Electroencephalographic quantitation of opioid effect. Comparative pharmacodynamics of fentanyl and sufentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:34–42.
59. Egan TD, Lemmens HJ, Fiset P, et al. The pharmacokinetics of the new short-acting opioid remifentanil (GI87084B) in healthy adult male volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:881–892.
60. Egan TD, Minto CF, Hermann DJ, Barr J, Muir KT, Shafer SL. Remifentanil versus alfentanil. Comparative pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics in healthy adult male volunteers 30. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(4):821–833.
61. Minto CF, Schnider TW, Egan TD, et al. Influence of age and gender on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of remifentanil. I. Model development. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(1):10–23.
62. Homer TD, Stanski DR. The effect of increasing age on thiopental disposition and anesthetic requirement. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(6):714–724.
63. Stanski DR, Maitre PO. Population pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of thiopental. The effect of age revisited. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:412–422.
64. Schnider TW, Minto CF, Fiset P, Gregg KM, Shafer SL. Semilinear canonical correlation applied to the measurement of the electroencephalographic effects of midazolam and flumazenil reversal. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(3):510–519.
65. Barvais L, Engelman E, Eba JM, Coussaert E, Cantraine F, Kenny GN. Effect site concentrations of remifentanil and pupil response to noxious stimulation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91(3):347–352.
66. Glass PS, Iselin-Chaves IA, Goodman D, Delong E, Hermann DJ. Determination of the potency of remifentanil compared with alfentanil using ventilatory depression as the measure of opioid effect. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(6):1556–1563.
67. Ausems ME, Stanski DR, Hug CC. An evaluation of the accuracy of pharmacokinetic data for the computer assisted infusion of alfentanil. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57(12):1217–1225.
68. Ausems ME, Hug CC Jr, Stanski DR, Burm AG. Plasma concentrations of alfentanil required to supplement nitrous oxide anesthesia for general surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(4):362–373.
69. Kodaka M, Okamoto Y, Koyama K, Miyao H. Predicted values of propofol EC50 and sevoflurane concentration for insertion of laryngeal mask classic and ProSeal. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(2):242–245.
70. Cortinez LI, Munoz HR, De la Fuente R, Acuna D, Dagnino JA. Target-controlled infusion of remifentanil or fentanyl during extra-corporeal shock-wave lithotripsy. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22(1):56–61.
71. Colin PJ, Hannivoort LN, Eleveld DJ, et al. Dexmedetomidine pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic modelling in healthy volunteers. 1. Influence of arousal on bispectral index and sedation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(2):200–210.
72. Colin PJ, Hannivoort LN, Eleveld DJ, et al. Dexmedetomidine pharmacodynamics in healthy volunteers. 2. Haemodynamic profile. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(2):211–220.
73. Gourlay GK, Kowalski SR, Plummer JL, Cousins MJ, Armstrong PJ. Fentanyl blood concentration-analgesic response relationship in the treatment of postoperative pain. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67(4):329–337.
74. van den Nieuwenhuyzen MC, Engbers FH, Burm AG, et al. Computer-controlled infusion of alfentanil versus patient- controlled administration of morphine for postoperative analgesia. A double-blind randomized trial. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(4):671–679.
75. Lehmann KA, Gerhard A, Horrichs-Haermeyer G, Grond S, Zech D. Postoperative patient-controlled analgesia with sufentanil. Analgesic efficacy and minimum effective concentrations. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35(3):221–226.
76. Eleveld DJ, Colin P, Absalom AR, Struys MMRF. A pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic model for propofol for broad application in anaesthesia and sedation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(5):942–959.
77. Hendrickx JF, Eger EI, Sonner JM, Shafer SL. Is synergy the rule? A review of anesthetic interactions producing hypnosis and immobility. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(2):494–506.
78. Minto CF, Schnider TW, Short TG, Gregg KM, Gentilini A, Shafer SL. Response surface model for anesthetic drug interactions. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(6):1603–1616.
79. Bouillon TW. Hypnotic and opioid anesthetic drug interactions on the CNS, focus on response surface modeling. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2008;182:471–487.
80. Minto CF, Schnider TW, Short TG, Gregg KM, Gentilini A, Shafer SL. Response surface model for anesthetic drug interactions 55. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(6):1603–1616.
81. Short TG, Ho TY, Minto CF, Schnider TW, Shafer SL. Efficient trial design for eliciting a pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic model-based response surface describing the interaction between two intravenous anesthetic drugs. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(2):400–408.
82. Heyse B, Proost JH, Schumacher PM, et al. Sevoflurane remifentanil interaction. Comparison of different response surface models. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(2):311–323.
83. Sebel PS, Glass PS, Fletcher JE, Murphy MR, Gallagher C, Quill T. Reduction of the MAC of desflurane with fentanyl. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(1):52–59.
84. McEwan AI, Smith C, Dyar O, Goodman D, Smith LR, Glass PS. Isoflurane minimum alveolar concentration reduction by fentanyl. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(5):864–869.
85. Lang E, Kapila A, Shlugman D, Hoke JF, Sebel PS, Glass PS. Reduction of isoflurane minimal alveolar concentration by remifentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(4):721–728.
86. Egan TD, Minto CF. Principles of drug action. Pharmacodynamic drug interactions in anesthesia. In: Evers AS, Maze M, Kharasch ED, eds. *Anesthetic Pharmacology*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2011:147–165.
87. Short TG. Using response surfaces to expand the utility of MAC 21. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(2):249–251.
88. Manyam SC, Gupta DK, Johnson KB, et al. Opioid-volatile anesthetic synergy. A response surface model with remifentanil and sevoflurane as prototypes. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(2):267–278.
89. Johnson KB, Syroid ND, Gupta DK, et al. An evaluation of remifentanil propofol response surfaces for loss of responsiveness, loss of response to surrogates of painful stimuli and laryngoscopy in patients undergoing elective surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(2):471–479.
90. Heyse B, Proost JH, Hannivoort LN, et al. A response surface model approach for continuous measures of hypnotic and analgesic effect during sevoflurane-remifentanil interaction. Quantifying

the pharmacodynamic shift evoked by stimulation. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(6):1390–1399.

91. Kissin I. General anesthetic action. An obsolete notion? *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76(2):215–218.
92. Zanderigo E, Sartori V, Sveticic G, et al. The well-being model. A new drug interaction model for positive and negative effects. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(4):742–753.
93. Vuyk J, Lim T, Engbers FH, Burm AG, Vletter AA, Bovill JG. The pharmacodynamic interaction of propofol and alfentanil during lower abdominal surgery in women. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(1):8–22.
94. Bruhn J, Bouillon TW, Radulescu L, Hoeft A, Bertaccini E, Shafer SL. Correlation of approximate entropy, bispectral index, and spectral edge frequency 95 (SEF95) with clinical signs of "anesthetic depth" during coadministration of propofol and remifentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(3):621–627.
95. Ropcke H, Konen-Bergmann M, Cuhls M, Bouillon T, Hoeft A. Propofol and remifentanil pharmacodynamic interaction during orthopedic surgical procedures as measured by effects on bispectral index. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13(3):198–207.
96. Bouillon TW, Bruhn J, Radulescu L, et al. Pharmacodynamic interaction between propofol and remifentanil regarding hypnosis, tolerance of laryngoscopy, bispectral index, and electroencephalographic approximate entropy. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(6):1353–1372.
97. Nieuwenhuijs DJ, Olofsen E, Romberg RR, et al. Response surface modeling of remifentanil-propofol interaction on cardiorespiratory control and bispectral index. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(2):312–322.
98. Gambus PL, Jensen EW, Jospin M, et al. Modeling the effect of propofol and remifentanil combinations for sedation-analgesia in endoscopic procedures using an adaptive neuro fuzzy inference system (ANFIS). *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(2):331–339.
99. Bouillon T, Schmidt C, Garstka G, et al. Pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic modeling of the respiratory depressant effect of alfentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(1):144–155.
100. LaPierre CD, Johnson KB, Randall BR, White JL, Egan TD. An exploration of remifentanil-propofol combinations that lead to a loss of response to esophageal instrumentation, a loss of responsiveness, and/or onset of intolerable ventilatory depression. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(3):490–499.
101. Luginbuhl M, Schumacher PM, Vuilleumier P, et al. Noxious stimulation response index. A novel anesthetic state index based on hypnotic-opioid interaction. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(4):872–880.
102. Schumacher PM, Dossche J, Mortier EP, Luginbuehl M, Bouillon TW, Struys MM. Response surface modeling of the interaction between propofol and sevoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(4):790–804.
103. Sebel LE, Richardson JE, Singh SP, Bell SV, Jenkins A. Additive effects of sevoflurane and propofol on gamma-aminobutyric acid receptor function. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(6):1176–1183.
104. Hammer GB, Sam WJ, Chen MI, Golianu B, Drover DR. Determination of the pharmacodynamic interaction of propofol and dexmedetomidine during esophagogastroduodenoscopy in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(2):138–144.
105. Hannivoort LN, Vereecke HE, Proost JH, et al. Probability to tolerate laryngoscopy and noxious stimulation response index as general indicators of the anaesthetic potency of sevoflurane, propofol, and remifentanil. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116(5):624–631.
106. Shafer SL. All models are wrong. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(2):240–241.
107. van den Berg JP, Vereecke HE, Proost JH, et al. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic interactions in anaesthesia. A review of current knowledge and how it can be used to optimize anaesthetic drug administration. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(1):44–57.
108. Shafer SL, Varvel JR. Pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, and rational opioid selection. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:53–63.
109. Hughes MA, Glass PS, Jacobs JR. Context-sensitive half-time in multicompartment pharmacokinetic models for intravenous anesthetic drugs. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(3):334–341.
110. Schwilden H. Optimization of the dosage of volatile anesthetics based on pharmacokinetic and dynamic models. *Anasth Intensivther Notfallmed*. 1985;20:307–315.
111. Fisher DM, Rosen JI. A pharmacokinetic explanation for increasing recovery time following larger or repeated doses of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(3):286–291.
112. Youngs EJ, Shafer SL. Pharmacokinetic parameters relevant to recovery from opioids. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(4):833–842.
113. Bailey JM. Technique for quantifying the duration of intravenous anesthetic effect. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(5):1095–1103.
114. Milne SE, Kenny GN, Schraag S. Propofol sparing effect of remifentanil using closed-loop anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(5):623–629.
115. Struys MM, Jensen EW, Smith W, et al. Performance of the ARX-derived auditory evoked potential index as an indicator of anesthetic depth. A comparison with bispectral index and hemodynamic measures during propofol administration. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(4):803–816.
116. Syroid ND, Agutter J, Drews FA, et al. Development and evaluation of a graphical anesthesia drug display. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(3):565–575.
117. Drews FA, Syroid N, Agutter J, Strayer DL, Westenskow DR. Drug delivery as control task. Improving performance in a common anesthetic task. *Hum Factors*. 2006;48(1):85–94.
118. Murphy RS, Wilcox SJ. High risk infusions—accuracy compromised by changes in patient venous pressure. *J Med Eng Technol*. 2009;33(6):470–474.
119. Struys MM, De Smet T, Glen JI, Vereecke HE, Absalom AR, Schnider TW. The history of target-controlled infusion. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):56–69.
120. Absalom AR, De Keyser R, Struys MM. Closed loop anesthesia. Are we getting close to finding the holy grail? *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(3):516–518.
121. Kruger-Thiemer E. Continuous intravenous infusion and multicompartment accumulation. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1968;4(3):317–324.
122. White M, Kenny GN. Intravenous propofol anaesthesia using a computerised infusion system. *Anaesthesia*. 1990;45:204–209.
123. Wakeling HG, Zimmerman JB, Howell S, Glass PS. Targeting effect compartment or central compartment concentration of propofol. What predicts loss of consciousness? *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(1):92–97.
124. Struys MMRF, De Smet T, Glen IB, Vereecke HEM, Absalom AR, Schnider TW. The history of TCI. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):56–69.
125. Shafer SL, Siegel LC, Cooke JE, Scott JC. Testing computer-controlled infusion pumps by simulation. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68(2):261–266.
126. Adapa RM, Axell RG, Mangat JS, Carpenter TA, Absalom AR. Safety and performance of TCI pumps in a magnetic resonance imaging environment. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(1):33–39.
127. Schnider TW, Minto CF, Struys MM, Absalom AR. The safety of target-controlled infusions. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):79–85.
128. Hu C, Horstman DJ, Shafer SL. Variability of target-controlled infusion is less than the variability after bolus injection. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(3):639–645.
129. Varvel JR, Donoho DL, Shafer SL. Measuring the predictive performance of computer-controlled infusion pumps. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1992;20(1):63–94.
130. Coetzee JF, Glen JB, Wium CA, Boshoff L. Pharmacokinetic model selection for target controlled infusions of propofol. assessment of three parameter sets. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(6):1328–1345.
131. Cowley NJ, Hutton P, Clutton-Brock TH. Assessment of the performance of the marsh model in effect site mode for target controlled infusion of propofol during the maintenance phase of general anaesthesia in an unselected population of neurosurgical patients. *Eur J Anesthesiology*. 2013;30(10):627–632.
132. Glen JB, White M. A comparison of the predictive performance of three pharmacokinetic models for propofol using measured values obtained during target-controlled infusion. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(6):550–557.
133. Cortinez LI, De la Fuente N, Eleveld DJ, et al. Performance of propofol target-controlled infusion models in the obese. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(2):302–310.
134. Tachibana N, Niiyama Y, Yamakage M. Evaluation of bias in predicted and measured propofol concentrations during target-controlled infusions in obese Japanese patients. An open-label comparative study. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2014;31(12):701–707.
135. Lee YH, Choi GH, Jung KW, et al. Predictive performance of the modified marsh and schnider models for propofol in underweight patients undergoing general anaesthesia using target-controlled infusion. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(6):883–891.
136. van den Berg JP, Eleveld DJ, De Smet T, et al. Influence of Bayesian optimization on the performance of propofol target-controlled infusion. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(5):918–927.

137. Lee AKY, Kong AYH, Kong CF. Performance of TCI propofol using the schnider model for cardiac surgery on cardiopulmonary bypass-a pilot study. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32(2):723–730.
138. Barvais L, Heitz D, Schmartz D, et al. Pharmacokinetic model-driven infusion of sufentanil and midazolam during cardiac surgery. Assessment of the prospective predictive accuracy and the quality of anesthesia. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2000;14(4):402–408.
139. Absalom AR, Lee M, Menon DK, et al. Predictive performance of the domino, hijazi, and clements models during low-dose target-controlled ketamine infusions in healthy volunteers. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(5):615–623.
140. Hannivoort LN, Eleveld DJ, Proost JH, et al. Development of an optimized pharmacokinetic model of dexmedetomidine using target-controlled infusion in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(2):357–367.
141. Obara S, Imaizumi T, Hakozaki T, et al. Evaluation of pharmacokinetic models of intravenous dexmedetomidine in sedated patients under spinal anesthesia. *J Anesth*. 2018;32(1):33–40.
142. Glass PS, Jacobs JR, Smith LR, et al. Pharmacokinetic model-driven infusion of fentanyl. Assessment of accuracy. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(6):1082–1090.
143. Shafer SL, Varvel JR, Aziz N, Scott JC. Pharmacokinetics of fentanyl administered by computer-controlled infusion pump. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(6):1091–1102.
144. Shibutani K, Inchiosa MA Jr, Sawada K, Bairamian M. Accuracy of pharmacokinetic models for predicting plasma fentanyl concentrations in lean and obese surgical patients. Derivation of dosing weight ("pharmacokinetic mass"). *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(3):603–613.
145. Lemmens HJ, Burm AG, Hennis PJ, Gladines MP, Bovill JG. Influence of age on the pharmacokinetics of alfentanil. gender dependence. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1990;19(5):416–422.
146. Crankshaw DP, Morgan DJ, Beemer GH, Karasawa F. Preprogrammed infusion of alfentanil to constant arterial plasma concentration. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76(3):556–561.
147. Sigmond N, Baechtold M, Schumacher PM, Hartwich V, Schnider TW, Luginbuhl M. Pharmacokinetic parameter sets of alfentanil revisited. Optimal parameters for use in target controlled infusion and anaesthesia display systems. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(2):197–208.
148. Hudson RJ, Henderson BT, Thomson IR, Moon M, Peterson MD. Pharmacokinetics of sufentanil in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2001;15(6):693–699.
149. Slepchenko G, Simon N, Goubaux B, Levron JC, Le Moing JP, Raucoules-Aime M. Performance of target-controlled sufentanil infusion in obese patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(1):65–73.
150. Mertens MJ, Engbers FH, Burm AG, Vuyk J. Predictive performance of computer-controlled infusion of remifentanil during propofol/remifentanil anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(2):132–141.
151. Cho YJ, Jo WY, Oh H, et al. Performance of the minto model for the target-controlled infusion of remifentanil during cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72(10):1196–1205.
152. Marsh B, White M, Morton N, Kenny GN. Pharmacokinetic model driven infusion of propofol in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:41–48.
153. Absalom A, Amutike D, Lal A, White M, Kenny GN. Accuracy of the 'paedfusor' in children undergoing cardiac surgery or catheterization. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91(4):507–513.
154. Sepulveda P, Cortinez LI, Saez C, et al. Performance evaluation of paediatric propofol pharmacokinetic models in healthy young children. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(4):593–600.
155. Choi BM, Lee HG, Byon HJ, et al. Population pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic model of propofol externally validated in children. *J Pharmacokinet Pharmacodyn*. 2015;42(2):163–177.
156. McMurray TJ, Johnston JR, Milligan KR, et al. Propofol sedation using diprifusor target-controlled infusion in adult intensive care unit patients. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59(7):636–641.
157. Cortegiani A, Pavan A, Azzeri F, Accurso G, Vitale F, Gregoretti C. Precision and bias of target-controlled prolonged propofol infusion for general anesthesia and sedation in neurosurgical patients. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2018.
158. Struys M, Versichelen L, Rolly G. Effect of premedication on 'diprifusor' TCI. *Eur J Anaesthesiol Suppl*. 1995;10:85–86.
159. Struys M, Versichelen L, Thas O, Herregods L, Rolly G. Comparison of computer-controlled administration of propofol with two manually controlled infusion techniques. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52(1):41–50.
160. Hoymork SC, Raeder J, Grimsmo B, Steen PA. Bispectral index, predicted and measured drug levels of target-controlled infusions of remifentanil and propofol during laparoscopic cholecystectomy and emergence. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44(9):1138–1144.
161. Macquaire V, Cantraine F, Schmartz D, Coussaert E, Barvais L. Target-controlled infusion of propofol induction with or without plasma concentration constraint in high-risk adult patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(8):1010–1016.
162. Fabregas N, Rapado J, Gambus PL, et al. Modeling of the sedative and airway obstruction effects of propofol in patients with parkinson disease undergoing stereotactic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(6):1378–1386.
163. Schnider TW, Minto CF, Gambus PL, et al. The influence of method of administration and covariates on the pharmacokinetics of propofol in adult volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(5):1170–1182.
164. Schnider TW, Minto CF, Shafer SL, et al. The influence of age on propofol pharmacodynamics. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(6):1502–1516.
165. Schüttler J, Ihmsen H. Population pharmacokinetics of propofol. A multicenter study. *Anesthesiol*. 2000;92(3):727–738.
166. Anderson BJ, Holford NH. Mechanism-based concepts of size and maturity in pharmacokinetics. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2008;48:303–332.
167. Anderson BJ, Holford NH. Leaving no stone unturned, or extracting blood from stone? *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20(1):1–6.
168. Cortinez LI, Anderson BJ, Penna A, et al. Influence of obesity on propofol pharmacokinetics. Derivation of a pharmacokinetic model. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(4):448–456.
169. Cortinez LI, Sepulveda P, Rolle A, Cottin P, Guerrini A, Anderson BJ. Effect-site target-controlled infusion in the obese. Model derivation and performance assessment. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
170. Frederico Avendano C, Cortinez LI, Ramirez-Paesano CR. Comparison of the Cortinez and the Schnider models with a targeted effect-site TCI of 3 mcg/ml in biophase in healthy volunteers. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 2016;63(10):556–563.
171. Barakat AR, Sutcliffe N, Schwab M. Effect site concentration during propofol TCI sedation. A comparison of sedation score with two pharmacokinetic models. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(7):661–666.
172. Coppens M, Van Limmen JG, Schnider T, et al. Study of the time course of the clinical effect of propofol compared with the time course of the predicted effect-site concentration.Performance of three pharmacokinetic-dynamic models. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(4):452–458.
173. Thomson AJ, Nimmo AF, Engbers FH, Glen JB. A novel technique to determine an 'apparent ke0 ' value for use with the Marsh pharmacokinetic model for propofol. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(5):420–428.
174. Eleveld DJ, Proost JH, Cortinez LI, Absalom AR, Struys MM. A general purpose pharmacokinetic model for propofol. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(6):1221–1237.
175. Kataria BK, Ved SA, Nicodemus HF, et al. The pharmacokinetics of propofol in children using three different data analysis approaches. *Anesthesiol*. 1994;80(1):104–122.
176. Hara M, Masui K, Eleveld DJ, Struys MMRF, Uchida O. Predictive performance of eleven pharmacokinetic models for propofol infusion in children for long-duration anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(3):415–423.
177. Short TG, Aun CS, Tan P, Wong J, Tam YH, Oh TE. A prospective evaluation of pharmacokinetic model controlled infusion of propofol in paediatric patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72(3):302–306.
178. Gepts E, Shafer SL, Camu F, et al. Linearity of pharmacokinetics and model estimation of sufentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(6):1194–1204.
179. Maitre PO, Vozeh S, Heykants J, Thomson DA, Stanski DR. Population pharmacokinetics of alfentanil. The average dose-plasma concentration relationship and interindividual variability in patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(1):3–12.
180. van den Nieuwenhuyzen MC, Engbers FH, Burm AG, et al. Computer-controlled infusion of alfentanil for postoperative analgesia. A pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:481–492.
181. Raemer DB, Buschman A, Varvel JR, et al. The prospective use of population pharmacokinetics in a computer-driven infusion system for alfentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(1):66–72.
182. Minto CF, Schnider TW, Shafer SL. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of remifentanil. II. Model application. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(1):24–33.

183. Rigby-Jones AE, Priston MJ, Sneyd JR, McCabe AP, Davis GI, Tooley MA, Thorne GC, Wolf AR. Remifentanil-midazolam sedation for paediatric patients receiving mechanical ventilation after cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:252–261.
184. Eleveld DJ, Proost JH, Vereecke H, et al. An allometric model of remifentanil pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(6):1005–1018.
185. Chen L, Baker MD. Racial and ethnic differences in the rates of urinary tract infections in febrile infants in the emergency department. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2006;22(7):485–487.
186. White M, Kenny GN, Schraag S. Use of target controlled infusion to derive age and gender covariates for propofol clearance. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2008;47(2):119–127.
187. Fu F, Chen X, Feng Y, Shen Y, Feng Z, Bein B. Propofol EC50 for inducing loss of consciousness is lower in the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(3):506–513.
188. Calvo R, Telletxea S, Leal N, et al. Influence of formulation on propofol pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics in anesthetized patients. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48(8):1038–1048.
189. Wietasch JK, Scholz M, Zinserling J, et al. The performance of a target-controlled infusion of propofol in combination with remifentanil. A clinical investigation with two propofol formulations. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(2):430–437.
190. Vuyk J, Lichtenbelt BJ, Olofsen E, van Kleef JW, Dahan A. Mixed-effects modeling of the influence of midazolam on propofol pharmacokinetics. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(5):1522–1530.
191. Lichtenbelt BJ, Olofsen E, Dahan A, van Kleef JW, Struys MM, Vuyk J. Propofol reduces the distribution and clearance of midazolam. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(6):1597–1606.
192. Ausems ME, Vuyk J, Hug CC Jr, Stanski DR. Comparison of a computer-assisted infusion versus intermittent bolus administration of alfentanil as a supplement to nitrous oxide for lower abdominal surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68(6):851–861.
193. Alvis JM, Reves JG, Govier AV, et al. Computer-assisted continuous infusions of fentanyl during cardiac anesthesia. Comparison with a manual method. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(1):41–49.
194. Theil DR, Stanley TE 3rd, White WD, et al. Midazolam and fentanyl continuous infusion anesthesia for cardiac surgery. A comparison of computer-assisted versus manual infusion systems. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1993;7(3):300–306.
195. De Castro V, Godet G, Mencia G, Raux M, Coriat P. Target-controlled infusion for remifentanil in vascular patients improves hemodynamics and decreases remifentanil requirement. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(1):33–38.
196. Moerman AT, Herregods LL, De Vos MM, Mortier EP, Struys MM. Manual versus target-controlled infusion remifentanil administration in spontaneously breathing patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(3):828–834.
197. Kenny GN. Target-controlled anaesthesia. Concepts and first clinical experiences. *Eur J Anaesthesiol Suppl*. 1997;15:29–31.
198. Servin FS. TCI compared with manually controlled infusion of propofol. A multicentre study. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(suppl 1):82–86.
199. Passot S, Servin F, Pascal J, Charret F, Auboyer C, Molliex S. A comparison of target- and manually controlled infusion propofol and etomidate/desflurane anesthesia in elderly patients undergoing hip fracture surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(5):1338–1342.
200. Chen G, Buell O, Gruenewald M, Fudickar A, Scholz J, Bein B. A comparison between target-controlled and manually controlled propofol infusions in patients undergoing routine surgical procedures. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26(11):928–935.
201. Wang X, Wang T, Tian Z, Brogan D, Li J, Ma Y. Asleep-awake-asleep regimen for epilepsy surgery. A prospective study of target-controlled infusion versus manually controlled infusion technique. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;32:92–100.
202. Chiang MH, Wu SC, You CH, et al. Target-controlled infusion vs. manually controlled infusion of propofol with alfentanil for bidirectional endoscopy. A randomized controlled trial. *Endoscopy*. 2013;45(11):907–914.
203. Mu J, Jiang T, Xu XB, Yuen VM, Irwin MG. Comparison of target-controlled infusion and manual infusion for propofol anaesthesia in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(5):1049–1055.
204. Kazama T, Ikeda K, Morita K, et al. Comparison of the effect-site k(eO)s of propofol for blood pressure and EEG bispectral index in elderly and younger patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(6):1517–1527.
205. Absalom AR, Kenny GN. Closed-loop control of propofol anaesthesia using bispectral index. Performance assessment in patients receiving computer-controlled propofol and manually controlled remifentanil infusions for minor surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(6):737–741.
206. Raeder J. Opioid or propofol.What kind of drug for what kind of sedation? manual dosing or target-controlled infusion? *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(3):704–706.
207. Bejjani G, Lequeux PY, Schmartz D, Engelman E, Barvais L. No evidence of memory processing during propofol-remifentanil target-controlled infusion anesthesia with bispectral index monitoring in cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2009;23(2):175–181.
208. Sveticic G, Gentilini A, Eichenberger U, Luginbuhl M, Curatolo M. Combinations of morphine with ketamine for patient-controlled analgesia. A new optimization method. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(5):1195–1205.
209. Beilin B, Bessler H, Papismedov L, Weinstock M, Shavit Y. Continuous physostigmine combined with morphine-based patient-controlled analgesia in the postoperative period. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(1):78–84.
210. Ng KF, Yuen TS, Ng VM. A comparison of postoperative cognitive function and pain relief with fentanyl or tramadol patient-controlled analgesia. *J Clin Anesth*. 2006;18(3):205–210.
211. Lipszyc M, Winters E, Engelman E, Baurain M, Barvais L. Remifentanil patient-controlled analgesia effect-site target-controlled infusion compared with morphine patient-controlled analgesia for treatment of acute pain after uterine artery embolization. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(5):724–731.
212. White I, Ghinea R, Avital S, Chazan S, Dolkart O, Weinbroum AA. Morphine at "sub-analgesic" background infusion rate plus low-dose PCA bolus control pain better and is as safe as twice a bolus-only PCA regimen. A randomized, double blind study. *Pharmacol Res*. 2012;66(2):185–191.
213. Walder B, Schafer M, Henzi I, Tramer MR. Efficacy and safety of patient-controlled opioid analgesia for acute postoperative pain. A quantitative systematic review. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45(7):795–804.
214. Cronrath P, Lynch TW, Gilson LJ, et al. PCA oversedation. Application of healthcare failure mode effect (HFMEA) analysis. *Nurs Econ*. 2011;29(2):79–87.
215. Volmanen P, Akural E, Raudaskoski T, Ohtonen P, Alahuhta S. Comparison of remifentanil and nitrous oxide in labour analgesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(4):453–458.
216. Volmanen P, Sarvela J, Akural EI, Raudaskoski T, Korttila K, Alahuhta S. Intravenous remifentanil vs. epidural levobupivacaine with fentanyl for pain relief in early labour. A randomised, controlled, double-blinded study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52(2):249–255.
217. Douma MR, Verwey RA, Kam-Endtz CE, van der Linden PD, Stienstra R. Obstetric analgesia. A comparison of patient-controlled meperidine, remifentanil, and fentanyl in labour. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(2):209–215.
218. Volmanen P, Palomaki O, Ahonen J. Alternatives to neuraxial analgesia for labor. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24(3):235–241.
219. Volmanen PV, Akural EI, Raudaskoski T, et al. Timing of intravenous patient-controlled remifentanil bolus during early labour. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55(4):486–494.
220. Douma MR, Middeldorp JM, Verwey RA, Dahan A, Stienstra R. A randomised comparison of intravenous remifentanil patient-controlled analgesia with epidural ropivacaine/sufentanil during labour. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2011;20(2):118–123.
221. Freeman LM, Bloemenkamp KW, Franssen MT, et al. Patient controlled analgesia with remifentanil versus epidural analgesia in labour. Randomised multicentre equivalence trial. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h846.
222. van den Nieuwenhuyzen MC, Engbers FH, Burm AG, Vletter AA, van Kleef JW, Bovill JG. Target-controlled infusion of alfentanil for postoperative analgesia. A feasibility study and pharmacodynamic evaluation in the early postoperative period. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(1):17–23.
223. van den Nieuwenhuyzen MC, Engbers FH, Burm AG, Vletter AA, van Kleef JW, Bovill JG. Target-controlled infusion of alfentanil for postoperative analgesia. Contribution of plasma protein binding to intra-patient and inter-patient variability. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82(4):580–585.

224. Schraag S, Kenny GN, Mohl U, Georgieff M. Patient-maintained remifentanil target-controlled infusion for the transition to early postoperative analgesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81(3):365–368.
225. Jeleazcov C, Ihmsen H, Saari TI, et al. Patient-controlled analgesia with target-controlled infusion of hydromorphone in postoperative pain therapy. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(1):56–68.
226. Loper KA, Ready LB, Brody M. Patient-controlled anxiolysis with midazolam. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67(11):1118–1119.
227. Osborne GA, Rudkin GE, Curtis NJ, Vickers D, Craker AJ. Intra-operative patient-controlled sedation. Comparison of patient-controlled propofol with anaesthetist-administered midazolam and fentanyl. *Anaesthesia*. 1991;46:553–556.
228. Rudkin GE, Osborne GA, Curtis NJ. Intra-operative patient-controlled sedation. *Anaesthesia*. 1991;46:90–92.
229. Rudkin GE, Osborne GA, Finn BP, Jarvis DA, Vickers D. Intra-operative patient-controlled sedation. Comparison of patient-controlled propofol with patient-controlled midazolam. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:376–381.
230. Osborne GA, Rudkin GE, Jarvis DA, Young IG, Barlow J, Leppard PI. Intra-operative patient-controlled sedation and patient attitude to control. A crossover comparison of patient preference for patient-controlled propofol and propofol by continuous infusion. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49:287–292.
231. Mazanikov M, Udd M, Kylanpaa L, et al. A randomized comparison of target-controlled propofol infusion and patient-controlled sedation during ERCP. *Endoscopy*. 2013;45(11):915–919.
232. Irwin MG, Thompson N, Kenny GN. Patient-maintained propofol sedation. assessment of a target-controlled infusion system. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52(6):525–530.
233. Murdoch JA, Kenny GN. Patient-maintained propofol sedation as premedication in day-case surgery. Assessment of a target-controlled system. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82(3):429–431.
234. Murdoch J, Grant S, Kenny G. Safety of patient-maintained propofol sedation using a target- controlled system in healthy volunteers. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85(2):299–301.
235. Henderson F, Absalom AR, Kenny GN. Patient-maintained propofol sedation. A follow up safety study using a modified system in volunteers. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(4):387–390.
236. Absalom AR, Sutcliffe N. Effect-site targeted patient-maintained sedation with propofol. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:A291.
237. Stonell CA, Leslie K, Absalom AR. Effect-site targeted patient-controlled sedation with propofol. Comparison with anaesthetist administration for colonoscopy. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61(3):240–247.
238. Chapman RM, Anderson K, Green J, Leitch JA, Gambhir S, Kenny GN. Evaluation of a new effect-site controlled, patient-maintained sedation system in dental patients. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61(4):345–349.
239. O'Brien C, Urquhart CS, Allam S, et al. Reaction time-monitored patient-maintained propofol sedation. A pilot study in oral surgery patients. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(7):760–764.
240. Anderson KJ, Allam S, Chapman R, Kenny GN. The effect of propofol on patient reaction time and its relationship with loss of verbal contact before induction of anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(2):148–153.
241. Allam S, Anderson KJ, O'Brien C, et al. Patient-maintained propofol sedation using reaction time monitoring. A volunteer safety study. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(2):154–158.
242. Doufas AG, Bakhshandeh M, Bjorksten AR, Greif R, Sessler DI. Automated responsiveness test (ART) predicts loss of consciousness and adverse physiologic responses during propofol conscious sedation. *Anesthesiol*. 2001;94(4):585–592.
243. Doufas AG, Bakhshandeh M, Bjorksten AR, Greif R, Sessler DI. A new system to target the effect-site during propofol sedation. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47(8):944–950.
244. Doufas AG, Morioka N, Mahgoub AN, Bjorksten AR, Shafer SL, Sessler DI. Automated responsiveness monitor to titrate propofol sedation. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(3):778–786.
245. Pambianco DJ, Whitten CJ, Moerman A, Struys MM, Martin JF. An assessment of computer-assisted personalized sedation. A sedation delivery system to administer propofol for gastrointestinal endoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2008;68(3):542–547.
246. Pambianco DJ, Vargo JJ, Pruitt RE, Hardi R, Martin JF. Computer-assisted personalized sedation for upper endoscopy and colonoscopy. A comparative, multicenter randomized study. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2011;73(4):765–772.
247. Lin OS. Sedation for routine gastrointestinal endoscopic procedures. A review on efficacy, safety, efficiency, cost and satisfaction. *Intest Res*. 2017;15(4):456–466.
248. Goudra B, Singh PM. Failure of sedasys. Destiny or poor design? *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(2):686–688.
249. O'Hara DA, Bogen DK, Noordergraaf A. The use of computers for controlling the delivery of anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77(3):563–581.
250. Liu N, Chazot T, Genty A, et al. Titration of propofol for anesthetic induction and maintenance guided by the bispectral index. Closed-loop versus manual control. A prospective, randomized, multicenter study. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(4):686–695.
251. Chaudhri S, Colvin JR, Todd JG, Kenny GN. Evaluation of closed loop control of arterial pressure during hypotensive anaesthesia for local resection of intraocular melanoma. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69(6):607–610.
252. O'Hara DA, Derbyshire GJ, Overdyk FJ, Bogen DK, Marshall BE. Closed-loop infusion of atracurium with four different anesthetic techniques. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74(2):258–263.
253. Edwards ND, Mason DG, Ross JJ. A portable self-learning fuzzy logic control system for muscle relaxation. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(2):136–139.
254. Olkkola KT, Schwilden H. Adaptive closed-loop feedback control of vecuronium-induced neuromuscular relaxation. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1991;8(1):7–12.
255. Sakai T, Matsuki A, White PF, Giesecke AH. Use of an EEG-bispectral closed-loop delivery system for administering propofol. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44(8):1007–1010.
256. Absalom AR, Sutcliffe N, Kenny GN. Closed-loop control of anesthesia using bispectral index. Performance assessment in patients undergoing major orthopedic surgery under combined general and regional anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(1):67–73.
257. Leslie K, Absalom A, Kenny GN. Closed loop control of sedation for colonoscopy using the bispectral index. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(7):693–697.
258. Liu N, Chazot T, Trillat B, et al. Feasibility of closed-loop titration of propofol guided by the bispectral index for general anaesthesia induction. A prospective randomized study. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2006;23(6):465–469.
259. Liu N, Chazot T, Hamada S, et al. Closed-loop co-administration of propofol and remifentanil guided by the bispectral index. A randomized multicenter study. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(3):546–557.
260. Liu N, Le Guen M, Benabbes-Lambert F, et al. Feasibility of closed-loop titration of propofol and remifentanil guided by the spectral M-entropy monitor. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(2):286–295.
261. Le Guen M, Liu N, Bourgeois E, et al. Automated sedation outperforms manual administration of propofol and remifentanil in critically ill patients with deep sedation. A randomized phase II trial. *Intensive Care Med*. 2013;39(3):454–462.
262. Liu N, Pruszkowski O, Leroy JE, et al. Automatic administration of propofol and remifentanil guided by the bispectral index during rigid bronchoscopic procedures. A randomized trial. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60(9):881–887.
263. Orliaguet GA, Benabbes Lambert F, Chazot T, Glasman P, Fischler M, Liu N. Feasibility of closed-loop titration of propofol and remifentanil guided by the bispectral monitor in pediatric and adolescent patients. A prospective randomized study. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(4):759–767.
264. Restoux A, Grassin-Delyle S, Liu N, Paugam-Burtz C, Mantz J, Le Guen M. Pilot study of closed-loop anaesthesia for liver transplantation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(3):332–340.
265. Le Guen M, Liu N, Tounou F, et al. Dexmedetomidine reduces propofol and remifentanil requirements during bispectral index-guided closed-loop anesthesia. A double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(5):946–955.
266. Liu N, Le Guen M, Boichut N, et al. Nitrous oxide does not produce a clinically important sparing effect during closed-loop delivered propofol-remifentanil anaesthesia guided by the bispectral index. A randomized multicentre study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(5):842–851.
267. Le Guen M, Grassin-Delyle S, Cornet C, et al. Comparison of the potency of different propofol formulations. A randomized, double-blind trial using closed-loop administration. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(2):355–364.
268. Dumans-Nizard V, Le Guen M, Sage E, Chazot T, Fischler M, Liu N. Thoracic epidural analgesia with levobupivacaine reduces

remifentanil and propofol consumption evaluated by closed-loop titration guided by the bispectral index. A double-blind placebo-controlled study. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(2):635–642.

269. Bataille A, Guirimand A, Szekely B, et al. Does a hypnosis session reduce the required propofol dose during closed-loop anaesthesia induction? A randomised controlled trial. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2017.
270. Puri GD, Kumar B, Aveek J. Closed-loop anaesthesia delivery system (CLADS) using bispectral index. A performance assessment study. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35(3):357–362.
271. Agarwal J, Puri GD, Mathew PJ. Comparison of closed loop vs. manual administration of propofol using the bispectral index in cardiac surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(3):390–397.
272. Hegde HV, Puri GD, Kumar B, Behera A. Bi-spectral index guided closed-loop anaesthesia delivery system (CLADS) in pheochromocytoma. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2009;23(4):189–196.
273. Solanki A, Puri GD, Mathew PJ. Bispectral index-controlled postoperative sedation in cardiac surgery patients. A comparative trial between closed loop and manual administration of propofol. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27(8):708–713.
274. Puri GD, Jayant A, Tsering M, Dorje M, Tashi M. Closed loop anaesthesia at high altitude (3505 m above sea level). Performance characteristics of an indigenously developed closed loop anaesthesia delivery system. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2012;56(3):238–242.
275. Biswas I, Mathew PJ, Singh RS, Puri GD. Evaluation of closed-loop anesthesia delivery for propofol anesthesia in pediatric cardiac surgery. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2013;23(12):1145–1152.
276. Mahajan V, Samra T, Puri GD, Anaesthetic depth control using closed loop anaesthesia delivery system vs. target controlled infusion in patients with moderate to severe left ventricular systolic dysfunction. *J Clin Anesth*. 2017;42:106–113.
277. Puri GD, Mathew PJ, Biswas I, et al. A multicenter evaluation of a closed-loop anesthesia delivery system. A randomized controlled trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):106–114.
278. Zikov T, Bibian S, Dumont GA, Huzmezan M, Ries CR. Quantifying cortical activity during general anesthesia using wavelet analysis. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2006;53(4):617–632.
279. van Heusden K, Ansermino JM, Soltesz K, Khosravi S, West N, Dumont GA. Quantification of the variability in response to propofol administration in children. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2013;60(9):2521–2529.
280. West N, McBeth PB, Brodie SM, et al. Feasibility of continuous sedation monitoring in critically ill intensive care unit patients using the NeuroSENSE WAVCNS index. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2018.
281. Bibian S, Dumont GA, Zikov T. Dynamic behavior of BIS, M-entropy and neuroSENSE brain function monitors. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2011;25(1):81–87.
282. West N, van Heusden K, Gorges M, et al. Design and evaluation of a closed-loop anesthesia system with robust control and safety system. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
283. Brodie SM, Gorges M, Ansermino JM, Dumont GA, Merchant RN. Closed-loop control of total intravenous anesthesia during significant intraoperative blood loss. A case report. *A A Case Rep*. 2017;9(8):239–243.
284. Hemmerling TM, Charabati S, Zaouter C, Minardi C, Mathieu PA. A randomized controlled trial demonstrates that a novel closed-loop propofol system performs better hypnosis control than manual administration. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57(8):725–735.
285. Hemmerling TM, Arbeid E, Wehbe M, Cyr S, Taddei R, Zaouter C. Evaluation of a novel closed-loop total intravenous anaesthesia drug delivery system. A randomized controlled trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(6):1031–1039.
286. Hemmerling TM, Charabati S, Salhab E, Bracco D, Mathieu PA. The analgoscore. A novel score to monitor intraoperative nociception and its use for closed loop application of remifentanil. *J Comput*. 2009;4:311–318.
287. Zaouter C, Hemmerling TM, Lanchon R, et al. The feasibility of a completely automated total IV anesthesia drug delivery system for cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(4):885–893.
288. Zaouter C, Taddei R, Wehbe M, et al. A novel system for automated propofol sedation. Hybrid sedation system (HSS). *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31(2):309–317.
289. Zaouter C, Hemmerling TM, Mion S, Leroux L, Remy A, Ouattara A. Feasibility of automated propofol sedation for transcatheter aortic valve implantation. A pilot study. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(5):1505–1512.
290. Mortier E, Struys M, De Smet T, Versichelen L, Rolly G. Closed-loop controlled administration of propofol using bispectral analysis. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(8):749–754.
291. Struys MM, De Smet T, Versichelen LF, Van DV, Van den BR, Mortier EP. Comparison of closed-loop controlled administration of propofol using bispectral index as the controlled variable versus "standard practice" controlled administration. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(1):6–17.
292. Struys MM, De Smet T, Greenwald S, Absalom AR, Binge S, Mortier EP. Performance evaluation of two published closed-loop control systems using bispectral index monitoring. A simulation study. *Anesthesiol*. 2004;100(3):640–647.
293. De Smet T, Struys MM, Greenwald S, Mortier EP, Shafer SL. Estimation of optimal modeling weights for a bayesian-based closed-loop system for propofol administration using the bispectral index as a controlled variable. A simulation study. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(6):1629–1638.
294. De Smet T, Struys MM, Neckebroek MM, Van den Hauwe K, Bonte S, Mortier EP. The accuracy and clinical feasibility of a new bayesian-based closed-loop control system for propofol administration using the bispectral index as a controlled variable. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(4):1200–1210.
295. Gentilini A, Schaniel C, Morari M, Bieniok C, Wymann R, Schnider T. A new paradigm for the closed-loop intraoperative administration of analgesics in humans. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2002;49(4):289–299.
296. Gentilini A, Rossoni-Gerosa M, Frei CW, et al. Modeling and closed-loop control of hypnosis by means of bispectral index (BIS) with isoflurane. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2001;48(8):874–889.
297. Moore BL, Doufas AG, Pyeatt LD. Reinforcement learning. A novel method for optimal control of propofol-induced hypnosis. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(2):360–367.
298. Moore BL, Quasny TM, Doufas AG. Reinforcement learning versus proportional-integral-derivative control of hypnosis in a simulated intraoperative patient. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(2):350–359.
299. Manberg PJ, Vozella CM, Kelley SD. Regulatory challenges facing closed-loop anesthetic drug infusion devices. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2008;84(1):166–169.
300. Liu N, Rinehart J. Closed-loop propofol administration.Routine care or a research tool? What impact in the future? *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):4–6.
301. Brogi E, Cyr S, Kazan R, Giunta F, Hemmerling TM. Clinical performance and safety of closed-loop systems. A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;124(2):446–455.
302. Pasin L, Nardelli P, Pintaudi M, et al. Closed-loop delivery systems versus manually controlled administration of total IV anesthesia. A meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(2):456–464.
303. Dussaussoy C, Peres M, Jaoul V, et al. Automated titration of propofol and remifentanil decreases the anesthesiologist's workload during vascular or thoracic surgery. A randomized prospective study. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2014;28(1):35–40.
304. Miller TE, Gan TJ. Closed-loop systems in anesthesia. Reality or fantasy? *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1039–1041.
305. Liu N, Rinehart J. Closed-loop propofol administration. Routine care or a research tool? What impact in the future? *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(1):4–6.
306. Loeb RG, Cannesson M. Closed-loop anesthesia. Ready for prime time? *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(2):381–382.
307. Parvinian B, Scully C, Wiyor H, Kumar A, Weininger S. Regulatory considerations for physiological closed-loop controlled medical devices used for automated critical care. Food and drug administration workshop discussion topics. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
308. Tasbihgou SR, Vogels MF, Absalom AR. Accidental awareness during general anaesthesia—a narrative review. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(1):112–122.
309. Pandit JJ, Andrade J, Bogod DG, et al. 5th national audit project (NAP5) on accidental awareness during general anaesthesia. Protocol, methods, and analysis of data. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(4):540–548.
310. Cowley NJ, Laitenberger P, Liu B, Jarvis J, Clutton-Brock TH. Evaluation of a new analyser for rapid measurement of blood propofol concentration during cardiac surgery. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(8):870–874.

311. Maitre PO, Stanski DR. Bayesian forecasting improves the prediction of intraoperative plasma concentrations of alfentanil. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:652–659.
312. Takita A, Masui K, Kazama T. On-line monitoring of end-tidal propofol concentration in anesthetized patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(4):659–664.
313. Miekisch W, Fuchs P, Kamysek S, Neumann C, Schubert JK. Assessment of propofol concentrations in human breath and blood by means of HS-SPME-GC-MS. *Clin Chim Acta*. 2008;395(1-2):32–37.
314. Perl T, Carstens E, Hirn A, et al. Determination of serum propofol concentrations by breath analysis using ion mobility spectrometry. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(6):822–827.
315. Hornuss C, Praun S, Villinger J, et al. Real-time monitoring of propofol in expired air in humans undergoing total intravenous anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(4):665–674.
316. Hornuss C, Wiepcke D, Praun S, Dolch ME, Apfel CC, Schelling G. Time course of expiratory propofol after bolus injection as measured by ion molecule reaction mass spectrometry. *Anal Bioanal Chem*. 2012;403(2):555–561.
317. Grossherr M, Hengstenberg A, Meier T, et al. Propofol concentration in exhaled air and arterial plasma in mechanically ventilated patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(5):608–613.
318. Grossherr M, Hengstenberg A, Dibbelt L, et al. Blood gas partition coefficient and pulmonary extraction ratio for propofol in goats and pigs. *Xenobiotica*. 2009;39(10):782–787.
319. Varadarajan BT. *Monitoring of Propofol in Breath; Pharmacokinetic Modeling and Design of a Control System.* Doctoral Thesis: Luebeck University; 2011.
320. Ziaian D, Kleiboemer K, Hengstenberg A, et al. Pharmacokinetic modeling of the transition of propofol from blood plasma to breathing gas. In: *IEEE International Symposium on Medical Measurements and Applications*. MeMeA; 2014:1–5.
321. Kreuer S, Hauschild A, Fink T, Baumbach JI, Maddula S, Volk T. Two different approaches for pharmacokinetic modeling of exhaled drug concentrations. *Sci Rep*. 2014;4:5423.
322. Colin P, Eleveld DJ, van den Berg JP, et al. Propofol breath monitoring as a potential tool to improve the prediction of intraoperative plasma concentrations. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2016;55(7):849–859.
323. Maurer F, Walter L, Geiger M, et al. Calibration and validation of a MCC/IMS prototype for exhaled propofol online measurement. *J Pharm Biomed Anal*. 2017;145:293–297.
324. Gambus P, Shafer SL. Artificial intelligence for everyone. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(3):431–433.
325. Lee HC, Ryu HG, Chung EJ, Jung CW. Prediction of bispectral index during target-controlled infusion of propofol and remifentanil. A deep learning approach. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(3):492–501.

27

Pharmacology of Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs

SORIN J. BRULL and CLAUDE MEISTELMAN

KEY POINTS

- Two different populations of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors exist at the mammalian neuromuscular junction. In the adult, the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor at the postsynaptic (muscular) membrane is composed of $\alpha_2\beta\delta\varepsilon$ subunits, while the fetal (immature) receptor is composed of $\alpha_2\beta\gamma\delta$. The presynaptic (neuronal) nicotinic receptor is a pentameric complex composed of $\alpha_3\beta_2$ subunits. Each of the two α subunits of the postsynaptic receptors has a ligand (acetylcholine) binding site.
- Nondepolarizing muscle relaxants produce neuromuscular blockade by competing with acetylcholine for the postsynaptic α subunits. In contrast, succinylcholine acts directly with the recognition sites and produces prolonged depolarization that results in decreased sensitivity of the postsynaptic nicotinic acetylcholine receptor and inactivation of sodium channels so that propagation of the action potential across the muscle membrane is inhibited.
- Different patterns of stimulation examine neuromuscular blockade at different areas of the motor end plate. Depression of the response to single twitch stimulation is likely caused by blockade of postsynaptic nicotinic acetylcholine receptors, whereas fade in the response to tetanic and train-of-four stimuli results from blockade of presynaptic nicotinic receptors.
- Succinylcholine is the only available depolarizing neuromuscular blocking drug for clinical use. It is characterized by rapid onset of effect and ultrashort duration of action because of its rapid hydrolysis by butyrylcholinesterase.
- Available nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs can be classified according to chemical class (aminosteroid, benzylisoquinolinium, or other compounds) or by duration of action (long-, intermediate-, and short-acting drugs) of equipotent doses.
- The speed of onset is inversely proportional to the potency of nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs. With the exception of atracurium, molar potency is highly predictive of a drug's rate of onset of effect. Rocuronium has a molar potency that is approximately 13% that of vecuronium and 9% that of cisatracurium. Its onset of effect is more rapid than either of these muscle relaxants.
- Neuromuscular blockade develops faster, lasts a shorter time, and recovers faster in the more centrally located neuromuscular units (e.g., laryngeal adductors, diaphragm, and masseter muscle) than in the more peripherally located adductor pollicis muscle.
- Many long-acting neuromuscular blocking drugs undergo minimal or no metabolism, and they are primarily eliminated, largely unchanged, by renal excretion. Neuromuscular blocking drugs of intermediate duration of action have faster distribution and more rapid clearances than the long-acting drugs because of multiple pathways of degradation, metabolism, and elimination. Mivacurium, a short-acting neuromuscular blocking drug, is cleared rapidly and almost exclusively by metabolism by butyrylcholinesterase.
- After the administration of nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs, it is essential to ensure adequate return of normal neuromuscular function using objective (quantitative) means of monitoring. Residual neuromuscular paralysis decreases upper esophageal tone, coordination of the esophageal musculature during swallowing, and hypoxic ventilatory drive. Residual paralysis can increase healthcare costs and the patient hospital length of stay, morbidity, and mortality.

History and Clinical Use

In 1942, Griffith and Johnson described *d*-tubocurarine (dTc) as a safe drug to provide skeletal muscle relaxation during surgery.[1] One year later, Cullen described the use of this drug in 131 patients who had received general anesthesia for surgery.[2] In 1954, Beecher and Todd reported a six-fold increase in mortality in patients receiving dTc compared with patients who had not received a muscle relaxant.[3] The increased mortality resulted from a general lack of understanding of the clinical pharmacology and effects of neuromuscular blocking drugs (NMBDs). The effect of residual neuromuscular blockade postoperatively was not appreciated, guidelines for monitoring muscle strength had not been established, and the importance of pharmacologically antagonizing residual blockade was not understood.

Succinylcholine, introduced by Thesleff[4] and Foldes and associates[5] in 1952, rapidly gained widespread use and changed anesthetic practice drastically because the drug's rapid onset of effect and ultrashort duration of action allowed for both rapid endotracheal intubation and rapid recovery of neuromuscular strength.

In 1967, Baird and Reid reported on the clinical administration of the first synthetic aminosteroid, pancuronium.[6] The development of the intermediate-acting NMBDs was based on the compounds' metabolism and resulted in the introduction of vecuronium,[7] an aminosteroid, and atracurium,[8] a benzylisoquinolinium, into clinical practice in the 1980s. Vecuronium was the first muscle relaxant to have an intermediate duration of action and minimal cardiovascular actions. Mivacurium, the first short-acting nondepolarizing NMBD, was introduced into clinical practice in the 1990s,[9] as was rocuronium,[10] an intermediate-acting NMBD with a very rapid onset of neuromuscular blockade. Other NMBDs have been introduced into clinical practice since the use of dTc was first advocated. These include pipecuronium, doxacurium, cisatracurium, and rapacuronium. Although not all remain in clinical use today, each represented an advance or improvement in at least one aspect over its predecessors. Still other NMBDs, such as CW 002[11] and CW 1759-50[11a,11b] are undergoing investigation.

NMBDs should be administered only to anesthetized individuals to provide relaxation of skeletal muscles. Because this class of drugs lacks analgesic or amnestic properties, NMBDs should not be administered to prevent patient movement. Awareness during surgery[12] and in the intensive care unit (ICU)[13] has been described in multiple publications. As stated by Cullen and Larson, "muscle relaxants given inappropriately may provide the surgeon with optimal [operating] conditions in…a patient[14] [who] is paralyzed but not anesthetized—a state that [is] wholly unacceptable for the patient."[15] Additionally, "muscle relaxants used to cover up deficiencies in total anesthetic management…represent an…inappropriate use of the valuable adjuncts to anesthesia."[15] Administration of NMBDs intraoperatively to maintain neuromuscular block requires that the time course of block be monitored and the depth of anesthesia be assessed continuously.

NMBDs have been integrated into most anesthetic techniques for major surgery and have become key components in the continuous improvement of safe anesthetic practice and the development of advanced surgical techniques. As earlier stated by Foldes and colleagues,[5] "…[the] first use of…muscle relaxants…not only revolutionized the practice of anesthesia but also started the modern era of surgery and made possible the explosive development of cardiothoracic, neurologic, and organ transplant surgery." Certainly, NMBDs are now used routinely to facilitate endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation, and are commonly used to maintain neuromuscular blockade through any number of different surgical procedures. This chapter reviews the pharmacology and clinical use of NMBDs and anticholinesterases in anesthesia and intensive care settings.

Principles of Action of Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs at the Neuromuscular Junction

A brief description of the physiology of neuromuscular blockade is presented in this chapter. A more comprehensive overview is provided in Chapter 12.

POSTJUNCTIONAL EFFECTS

Nicotinic acetylcholine receptors (nAChRs) belong to a large pentameric family of ligand-gated ion channel receptors that include the 5-hydoxytryptamine$_3$ (5-HT$_3$), glycine, and γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) receptors. They are synthetized in muscle cells and anchored to the end plate membrane by a special protein called rapsyn. Development of innervation in the first weeks of life leads to the replacement of the γ subunit by ε subunit. In adult mammalian skeletal muscle, the nAChR is a pentameric complex of two α subunits in association with single β, δ, and ε subunits (Fig. 27.1). Stoichiometrically, the receptor is represented as α2βεδ, while organizationally it is αεαδβ.

The subunits are organized to form a transmembrane pore, or channel, as well as extracellular binding pockets for acetylcholine and other agonists or antagonists.[16] The receptors are clustered on the crests of the junctional folds; the receptor density in this area is 10,000 to 30,000/μm^2. Each of the two α subunits has an acetylcholine-binding site. These sites are located in pockets within the receptor protein, approximately 3.0 nm above the surface membrane at the interfaces of the α_H-ε and α_L-δ subunits.[17] αH and αL indicate the high- and low-affinity binding sites for dTc; the difference in affinity probably results from the contribution of the different neighboring subunits.18 For instance, the binding affinity of dTc for the αH-ε site is approximately 100 to 500 times higher than that for the αL-δ site.[18] The fetal nAChR contains a γ subunit instead of an adult ε subunit. Once activated by acetylcholine, the mature nAChR has a shorter opening time and a higher conductance to sodium (Na^+), potassium (K^+), and calcium (Ca^{2+}) than the fetal nAChR, which has a smaller, single-channel conductance and a much longer open channel time.[16]

Functionally, the ion channel of the acetylcholine receptor is closed in the resting state. Simultaneous binding of two acetylcholine molecules to the α subunits is required to initiate conformational changes that open the channel. If one molecule of a nondepolarizer NMBD (i.e., a competitive antagonist) is bound to a subunit at the AChR, two agonist molecules of acetylcholine cannot bind simultaneously, and neuromuscular transmission is inhibited.[19]

Succinylcholine, a depolarizing NMBD, produces prolonged depolarization of the end plate region, which is similar to, but more persistent than, the depolarization induced by acetylcholine. This mechanism results in (1) desensitization of the nAChR, (2) inactivation of voltage-gated Na^+ channels at the neuromuscular junction, and (3) increases in K^+ permeability in the surrounding membrane.[19] The end results are failure of action potential generation and neuromuscular blockade.

The fetal nAChR is a low-conductance channel, in contrast to the high-conductance channel of the adult nAChR and upregulation of nAChRs found in states of functional

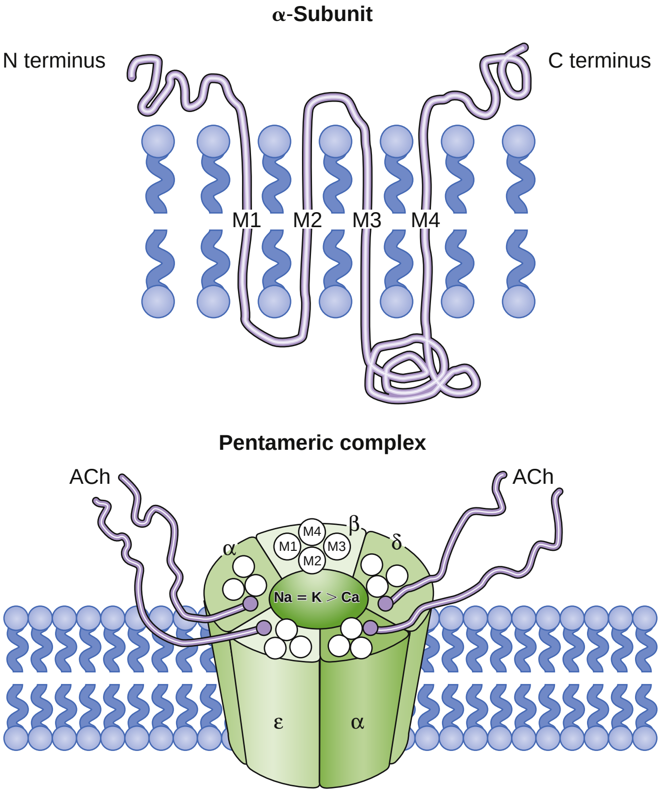
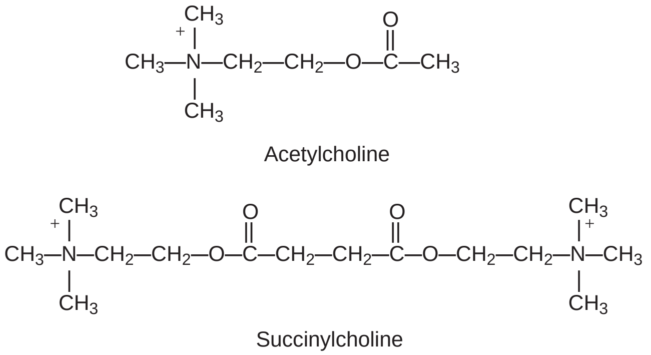


Fig. 27.1 Subunit composition of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (nAChR) in the end plate surface of adult mammalian muscle. The adult AChR is an intrinsic membrane protein with five distinct subunits $(\alpha_2\beta\delta\varepsilon)$. Each subunit contains four helical domains, labeled M_1 to M_4. The M_2 domain forms the channel pore. The *upper panel* shows a single α subunit with its N and C termini on the extracellular surface of the membrane lipid bilayer. Between the N and C termini, the α subunit forms four helices (M_1, M_2, M_3, and M_4), which span the membrane bilayer. The *lower panel* shows the pentameric structure of the nAChR of adult mammalian muscle. The N termini of two subunits cooperate to form two distinct binding pockets for acetylcholine. These pockets occur at the ε-α and the δ-α subunit interface. The M_2 membrane-spanning domain of each subunit lines the ion channel. The doubly liganded ion channel has equal permeability to sodium *(Na)* and potassium *(K)*; calcium *(Ca)* contributes approximately 2.5% to the total permeability. (From Naguib M, Flood P, McArdle JJ, et al. Advances in neurobiology of the neuromuscular junction: implications for the anesthesiologist. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:202–231, with permission from *Anesthesiology*.)

or surgical denervation is characterized by the spreading of predominantly fetal-type nAChRs. These receptors are resistant to nondepolarizing NMBDs and are more sensitive to succinylcholine.[20-22]

PREJUNCTIONAL EFFECTS

Prejunctional receptors are involved in the modulation of acetylcholine release in the neuromuscular junction. The existence of both nicotinic and muscarinic receptors on the motor nerve endings has been described. Prejunctional nicotinic receptors are activated by acetylcholine and function in a positive-feedback control system, which could mediate mobilization of the reserve store into the readily releasable store in case of high-frequency stimulation; this mobilization serves to maintain availability of acetylcholine when demand for it is high (e.g., during tetanic stimulation).[23] These presynaptic receptors are $\alpha_3\beta_2$ neuronal subtype receptors. Although most nondepolarizing NMBDs have a distinct affinity for the $\alpha_3\beta_2$ cholinergic receptor, succinylcholine lacks this affinity. The action of nondepolarizing versus depolarizing NMBDs at this neuronal cholinergic receptor explains the typical fade phenomenon after any nondepolarizing drugs, and the lack of such effect in the clinical dose range for succinylcholine. The G-protein–coupled muscarinic receptors also are involved in the feedback modulation of acetylcholine release.24 The prejunctional M1 and M2 receptors are involved in facilitation and inhibition of acetylcholine release, respectively, by modulating Ca2+ influx.[24] The prejunctional nicotinic receptors are involved with mobilization of acetylcholine but not directly with its release process.[25] Hence, blockade of the prejunctional nicotinic receptors by nondepolarizing NMBDs prevents acetylcholine from being made available fast enough to support tetanic or train-of-four (TOF) stimulation. In contrast, the prejunctional muscarinic receptors are involved with up-modulation or down-modulation of the release mechanism.


$$\mathrm{CH_3{-}\overset{CH_3}{\underset{CH_3}{\overset{+}{N}}}{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}O{-}\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}{-}CH_3}$$

Acetylcholine

$$\mathrm{CH_3{-}\overset{CH_3}{\underset{CH_3}{\overset{+}{N}}}{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}O{-}\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}{-}O{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}\overset{CH_3}{\underset{CH_3}{\overset{+}{N}}}{-}CH_3}$$

Succinylcholine

Fig. 27.2 Structural relationship of succinylcholine, a depolarizing neuromuscular blocking drug, and acetylcholine. Succinylcholine consists of two acetylcholine molecules linked through the acetate methyl groups. Like acetylcholine, succinylcholine stimulates nicotinic receptors at the neuromuscular junction.

Pharmacology of Succinylcholine

STRUCTURE-ACTIVITY RELATIONSHIPS

All NMBDs contain quaternary ammonium compounds and as such are structurally closely related to acetylcholine. Positive charges at the quaternary ammonium sites of NMBDs mimic the quaternary nitrogen atom of acetylcholine and are the structural reason for the attraction of these drugs to muscle- and neuronal-type nAChRs at the neuromuscular junction. These receptors are also located at other sites throughout the body where acetylcholine is the transmitter. These sites include the neuronal-type nicotinic receptors in autonomic ganglia and as many as five different muscarinic receptors on both the parasympathetic and sympathetic sides of the autonomic nervous system. In addition, populations of neuronal nicotinic and muscarinic receptors are located prejunctionally at the neuromuscular junction.[19]

The depolarizing NMBD, succinylcholine, is composed of two molecules of acetylcholine linked through the acetate methyl groups (Fig. 27.2). As described by Bovet,[26] succinylcholine is a small, flexible molecule, and like the natural ligand acetylcholine, succinylcholine stimulates cholinergic receptors at the neuromuscular junction and muscarinic autonomic sites, thus opening the ionic channel in the acetylcholine receptor.

PHARMACOKINETICS AND PHARMACODYNAMICS

Succinylcholine is the only available NMBD with a rapid onset of effect and an ultrashort duration of action. The ED_{95} (the dose causing on average 95% suppression of neuromuscular response) of succinylcholine is 0.51 to 0.63 mg/kg.[27] Using cumulative dose-response techniques, Kopman and coworkers estimated that its potency is far greater,[28] and it has an ED_{95} of less than 0.3 mg/kg.

Administration of 1 mg/kg of succinylcholine results in complete suppression of response to neuromuscular stimulation in approximately 60 seconds.[29] In patients with genotypically normal butyrylcholinesterase (also known as plasma cholinesterase or pseudocholinesterase), recovery to 90% muscle strength following administration of 1 mg/kg succinylcholine requires 9 to 13 minutes.[30]

The ultrashort duration of action of succinylcholine results from its rapid hydrolysis by butyrylcholinesterase to succinylmonocholine and choline. Butyrylcholinesterase has a large enzymatic capacity to hydrolyze succinylcholine, and only 10% of the intravenously administered drug reaches the neuromuscular junction.[31] The initial metabolite, succinylmonocholine, is a much weaker NMBD than succinylcholine and is metabolized much more slowly to succinic acid and choline. The elimination half-life of succinylcholine is estimated to be 47 seconds.[32]

Because little or no butyrylcholinesterase is present at the neuromuscular junction, the neuromuscular blockade induced by succinylcholine is terminated by its diffusion away from the neuromuscular junction into the circulation. Butyrylcholinesterase therefore influences the onset and duration of action of succinylcholine by controlling the rate at which the drug is hydrolyzed before it reaches, and after it leaves, the neuromuscular junction.

BUTYRYLCHOLINESTERASE ACTIVITY

Butyrylcholinesterase is synthesized by the liver and found in the plasma. The neuromuscular blockade induced by succinylcholine is prolonged when the concentration or activity of the enzyme is decreased. The activity of the enzyme refers to the number of substrate molecules (μmol) hydrolyzed per unit of time, and it is often expressed in International Units. Because the normal range of butyrylcholinesterase activity is quite large,[30] significant decreases in activity result in only modest increases in the time required to return to 100% of baseline muscle strength (Fig. 27.3).

Factors that lower butyrylcholinesterase activity include liver disease,[33] advanced age,[34] malnutrition, pregnancy, burns, oral contraceptives, monoamine oxidase inhibitors, echothiophate, cytotoxic drugs, neoplastic disease, anticholinesterase drugs,[35] tetrahydroaminacrine,[36] hexafluorenium,[37] and metoclopramide.[38] Bambuterol, a prodrug of terbutaline, produces marked inhibition of butyrylcholinesterase activity and causes prolongation of succinylcholine-induced blockade.[39] The β-blocker esmolol inhibits butyrylcholinesterase but causes only a minor prolongation of succinylcholine-induced blockade.[40]

Decreased butyrylcholinesterase enzyme activity is not a major concern in clinical practice because even large decreases in butyrylcholinesterase activity result in only modest increases in the duration of action of succinylcholine.

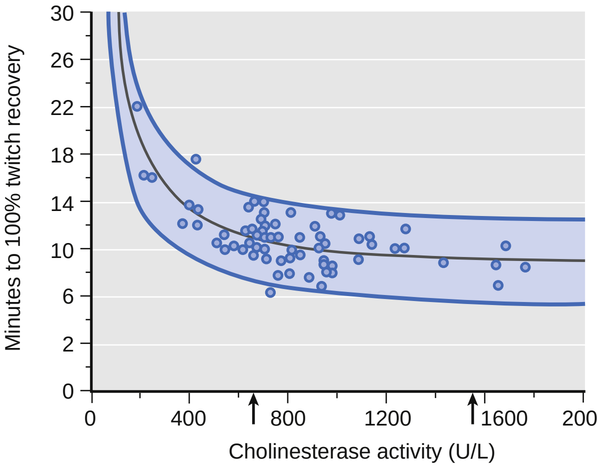


Fig. 27.3 Correlation between duration of succinylcholine neuromuscular blockade and butyrylcholinesterase activity. The normal range of activity lies between the *arrows*. (From Viby-Mogensen J. Correlation of succinylcholine duration of action with plasma cholinesterase activity in subjects with the genotypically normal enzyme. *Anesthesiology.* 1980;53:517–520.)

Even when butyrylcholinesterase activity is reduced to 20% of normal by severe liver disease, the duration of apnea after the administration of succinylcholine increases from a normal duration of 3 minutes to only 9 minutes. When glaucoma treatment with echothiophate decreased butyrylcholinesterase activity from 49% of control to no activity, the increase in the duration of neuromuscular blockade varied from 2 to 14 minutes. In no patient did the total duration of neuromuscular blockade exceed 23 minutes.[41]

DIBUCAINE NUMBER AND ATYPICAL BUTYRYLCHOLINESTERASE ACTIVITY

Succinylcholine-induced neuromuscular blockade can be significantly prolonged if a patient has an abnormal genetic variant of butyrylcholinesterase. Kalow and Genest discovered a variant that responded to dibucaine differently than it did to normal butyrylcholinesterase.[42] Dibucaine inhibits normal butyrylcholinesterase to a far greater extent than the abnormal enzyme. This observation led to the establishment of the dibucaine number. Under standardized test conditions, dibucaine inhibits the normal enzyme by approximately 80% and the abnormal enzyme by approximately 20% (Table 27.1). Many other genetic variants of butyrylcholinesterase have since been identified, although the dibucaine-resistant variants are the most important. A review by Jensen and Viby-Mogensen provides more detailed information on this topic.[43]

Although the dibucaine number indicates the genetic makeup of an individual with respect to butyrylcholinesterase, it does not measure the concentration of the enzyme in the plasma substrate. This is determined by measuring butyrylcholinesterase activity in plasma, and it may be influenced by comorbidities, medications, and genotype.

The molecular biology of butyrylcholinesterase is well understood. The amino acid sequence of the enzyme is known, and the coding errors responsible for most genetic variations have been identified.[43] Most variants result from a single amino acid substitution error or sequencing error at or near the active site of the enzyme. For example, in the

TABLE 27.1 Relationship Between Dibucaine Number and Duration of Succinylcholine or Mivacurium Neuromuscular Blockade

Type of Butyrylcholinesterase	Genotype	Incidence	Dibucaine Number*	Response to Succinylcholine or Mivacurium
Homozygous typical	$E_1^uE_1^u$	Normal	70-80	Normal
Heterozygous atypical	$E_1^uE_1^a$	1/480	50-60	Lengthened by 50%-100%
Homozygous atypical	$E_1^aE_1^a$	1/3200	20-30	Prolonged to 4-8 h

*The dibucaine number indicates the percentage of enzyme inhibited.

case of the "atypical" dibucaine-resistant (A) gene, a mutation occurs at nucleotide 209, where guanine is substituted for adenine. The resultant change in this codon causes substitution of glycine for aspartic acid at position 70 in the enzyme. In the case of the fluoride-resistant (F) gene, two amino acid substitutions are possible, namely, methionine for threonine at position 243, and valine for glycine at position 390. Table 27.1 summarizes many of the known genetic variants of butyrylcholinesterase: the amino acid substitution at position 70 is written as Asp ∅ Gly. New variants of butyrylcholinesterase genotypes continue to be discovered.[44]

SIDE EFFECTS

Cardiovascular Effects

Succinylcholine-induced cardiac dysrhythmias are many and varied. The drug stimulates cholinergic autonomic receptors on both sympathetic and parasympathetic ganglia[45] and muscarinic receptors in the sinus node of the heart. At low doses, both negative inotropic and chronotropic responses may occur. These responses can be attenuated by prior administration of atropine. With large doses of succinylcholine, these effects may become positive,[46] causing tachycardia. The clinical manifestation of generalized autonomic stimulation is the development of sinus bradycardia, junctional rhythms, and ventricular dysrhythmias. Clinical studies have described these dysrhythmias under various conditions in the presence of the intense autonomic stimulus of tracheal intubation. It is not entirely clear whether the cardiac irregularities are caused by the action of succinylcholine alone or by the added presence of extraneous autonomic stimulation. An in vitro study using ganglionic acetylcholine receptors subtype $\alpha_3\beta_4$ expressed in *Xenopus laevis* oocytes suggested that succinylcholine at clinically relevant concentrations had no effect on the expressed receptors.[47] Only high doses of succinylcholine caused inhibition of ganglionic acetylcholine receptors.[47] Whether or not these findings are applicable to clinical practice is unclear because the methodology (*X. laevis* oocytes expression model) has no clinical equivalent.

Sinus Bradycardia. Stimulation of cardiac muscarinic receptors in the cardiac sinus node causes sinus bradycardia. This side effect is particularly problematic in individuals with predominantly vagal tone, such as in children who have not received atropine. Sinus bradycardia can occur in adults and appears more commonly after a second dose of the drug administered approximately 5 minutes after the initial dose.[48] The bradycardia may be prevented by administration of atropine, ganglion-blocking drugs, and nondepolarizing NMBDs.[49] The ability of these drugs to prevent bradycardia implies that direct myocardial effects, increased muscarinic stimulation, and ganglionic stimulation may all be involved in the bradycardic response. The greater incidence of bradycardia after a second dose of succinylcholine suggests that the hydrolysis products of succinylcholine (succinylmonocholine and choline) may sensitize the heart to a subsequent dose.

Nodal (Junctional) Rhythms. Nodal rhythms occur commonly following administration of succinylcholine. The mechanism responsible for this likely involves relatively greater stimulation of muscarinic receptors in the sinus node, thus suppressing the sinus mechanism and allowing the emergence of the atrioventricular node as the pacemaker. The incidence of junctional rhythm is greater after a second dose of succinylcholine, and may be prevented by prior administration of dTc.[49]

Ventricular Dysrhythmias. Under stable anesthetic conditions, succinylcholine decreases the threshold of the ventricle to catecholamine-induced dysrhythmias in monkeys and dogs. Circulating catecholamine concentrations increase fourfold, and K^+ concentrations increase by one third, following succinylcholine administration in dogs.[50] Similar increases in catecholamine levels occur following administration of succinylcholine to humans.[51] Other autonomic stimuli, such as endotracheal intubation, hypoxia, hypercarbia, and surgery, may be additive to the effect of succinylcholine. The possible influence of drugs such as digitalis, tricyclic antidepressants, monoamine oxidase inhibitors, exogenous catecholamines, and anesthetic drugs such as halothane, which may lower the ventricular threshold for ectopic activity or increase the arrhythmogenic effect of the catecholamines, should also be considered. Ventricular escape beats may also occur as a result of severe sinus bradycardia and atrioventricular nodal slowing secondary to succinylcholine administration. The incidence of ventricular dysrhythmias is further increased by the release of K^+ from skeletal muscle as a consequence of the depolarizing action of the drug.

Hyperkalemia

The administration of succinylcholine to an otherwise healthy individual increases the plasma K^+ levels by approximately 0.5 mEq/dL. This slight increase in K^+ is well tolerated by most individuals and generally does not cause dysrhythmias. The increase in K^+ results from the depolarizing action of succinylcholine. With activation of the acetylcholine channels, movement of Na^+ into the cells is accompanied by movement of K^+ out of the cells.

Patients with renal failure are no more susceptible to an exaggerated response to succinylcholine than are those with normal renal function.[52] Patients who have uremic neuropathy may possibly be susceptible to succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia, although the evidence supporting this view is scarce.[52,53,53a]

However, severe hyperkalemia may follow the administration of succinylcholine to patients with severe metabolic acidosis and hypovolemia.[54] In experimental animals (rabbit), the combination of metabolic acidosis and hypovolemia results in a high resting K^+ level and an exaggerated hyperkalemic response to succinylcholine.[55] In this situation, the K^+ originates from the gastrointestinal tract, rather than from muscle.[56] In patients with metabolic acidosis and hypovolemia, correction of the acidosis by hyperventilation and sodium bicarbonate administration should be attempted before succinylcholine administration. Should severe hyperkalemia occur, it can be treated with immediate hyperventilation, infusion of 500-1,000 mg calcium chloride or calcium gluconate over 3 minutes intravenously, and 10 units of regular insulin in 50 mL of 50% glucose for adults or, for children, 0.15 units/kg of regular insulin in 1.0 mL/kg of 50% glucose intravenously.

Kohlschütter and associates found that four of nine patients with severe abdominal infections had an increase in serum K^+ levels of as much as 3.1 mEq/L after succinylcholine administration.[57] The likelihood of a hyperkalemic response to succinylcholine increases in patients who have had intraabdominal infections for longer than 1 week.

Stevenson and Birch described a single, well-documented case of a marked hyperkalemic response to succinylcholine in a patient with a closed head injury without peripheral paralysis.[58]

Hyperkalemia after administration of succinylcholine is also a risk in patients who have had physical trauma.[59] The risk of hyperkalemia occurs 1 week after the injury, at which time a progressive increase in serum K^+ occurs during an infusion of succinylcholine. The risk of hyperkalemia can persist. Three weeks after injury, three of the patients studied in this series, who had especially severe injuries, became markedly hyperkalemic with an increase in serum K^+ of more than 3.6 mEq/L. Birch and coworkers also found that the prior administration of 6 mg of dTc prevented the hyperkalemic response to succinylcholine.[59] In the absence of infection or persistent degeneration of tissue, a patient is likely susceptible to the hyperkalemic response for at least 60 days after massive trauma or until adequate healing of damaged muscle has occurred.

Additionally, patients with conditions that result in the proliferation of extrajunctional acetylcholine receptors, such as upper or lower motor denervation, immobilization, burn injuries, and neuromuscular disease, are likely to have an exaggerated hyperkalemic response following the administration of succinylcholine. The response of patients with neuromuscular disease to NMBDs is reviewed in detail later in this chapter. Some of these disease states include cerebrovascular accident with resultant hemiplegia or paraplegia, muscular dystrophies, and Guillain-Barré syndrome. The hyperkalemia following administration of succinylcholine may be severe enough that cardiac arrest ensues. For a review of succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia in acquired pathologic states, see Martyn and Richtsfeld.[22]

Increased Intraocular Pressure

Succinylcholine may cause an increase in intraocular pressure (IOP). The increased IOP develops within 1 minute of injection, peaks at 2 to 4 minutes, and subsides by 6 minutes.[60] The mechanism by which succinylcholine increases IOP has not been clearly defined, but it is known to involve contraction of tonic myofibrils and/or transient dilatation of choroidal blood vessels. Sublingual administration of nifedipine may attenuate the increase in IOP caused by succinylcholine, a finding suggesting a circulatory mechanism.[61] Despite this increase in IOP, the use of succinylcholine for eye operations is not contraindicated unless the anterior chamber is open. Although Meyers and colleagues were unable to confirm the efficacy of small (0.09 mg/kg) doses of dTc (“precurarization”) in attenuating increases in IOP following succinylcholine,[62] numerous other investigators have found that prior administration of a small dose of nondepolarizing NMBD (e.g., 3 mg of dTc or 1 mg of pancuronium) prevents a succinylcholine-induced increase in IOP.[63] Furthermore, Libonati and associates described the anesthetic management of 73 patients with penetrating eye injuries who received succinylcholine.[64] Among these 73 patients, no extrusion of vitreous occurred. Thus, despite the potential concerns, the use of succinylcholine in patients with penetrating eye injuries, after pretreatment with a nondepolarizing NMBD and with a carefully controlled rapid-sequence induction of anesthesia, can be considered. Succinylcholine is only one of many factors that may increase IOP.[62] Other factors include endotracheal intubation and “bucking” on the endotracheal tube once it is positioned. Of prime importance in minimizing the chance of increasing IOP is ensuring that the patient is well anesthetized and is not straining or coughing. For instance, coughing, vomiting and maximal forced lid closure may induce increases in intraocular pressure that are 3-4 times greater (60-90 mm Hg) than those induced by succinylcholine administration.[63a] Because a nondepolarizing NMBD with a rapid onset of effect, rocuronium, is available, it is possible to perform a rapid sequence induction of anesthesia and endotracheal intubation without administering succinylcholine. Finally, should a patient become too lightly anesthetized during intraocular surgery, succinylcholine should not be given to immobilize the patient. Rather, the surgeon should be asked to pause while anesthesia is deepened. If necessary, the depth of neuromuscular blockade can also be increased with nondepolarizing NMBDs.

Increased Intragastric Pressure

Unlike the rather consistent increase in IOP following administration of succinylcholine, increases in intragastric pressure (IGP) are much more variable. The increase in IGP from succinylcholine is presumed to result from fasciculations of the abdominal skeletal muscle. This is not surprising because more coordinated abdominal skeletal muscle activity (e.g., straight-leg raising) may increase the IGP to values as high as 120 cm H_2O (88 mm Hg). In addition to skeletal muscle fasciculations, the acetylcholine-like effect of succinylcholine may be partly responsible for the observed increases in IGP. Greenan observed consistent increases in IGP of 4 to 7 cm H_2O (3-5 mm Hg) with direct vagal stimulation.[65]

Miller and Way found that 11 of 30 patients had essentially no increase in IGP after succinylcholine administration, yet 5 of the 30 had an increase in IGP of greater than 30 cm H_2O (22 mm Hg).[66] The increase in IGP from succinylcholine appeared to be related to the intensity of the fasciculations of the abdominal skeletal muscles. Accordingly, when fasciculations were prevented by prior administration of a nondepolarizing NMBD, no increase in IGP was observed.

Whether the increases in IGP following succinylcholine administration are sufficient to cause incompetence of the gastroesophageal junction are debatable. Generally, an IGP greater than 28 cm H_2O (21 mm Hg) is required to overcome the competence of the gastroesophageal junction. However, when the normal oblique angle of entry of the esophagus into the stomach is altered, as may occur with pregnancy or an abdomen distended by ascites, bowel obstruction, or a hiatus hernia, the IGP required to cause incompetence of the gastroesophageal junction is frequently less than 15 cm H_2O (11 mm Hg).[66] In these circumstances, regurgitation of stomach contents following succinylcholine administration is a distinct possibility, and precautionary measures should be taken to prevent fasciculations. Endotracheal intubation may be facilitated with administration of either a nondepolarizing NMBD or a defasciculating dose of nondepolarizing relaxant before succinylcholine use. Although the increase in IGP from succinylcholine is well documented, the evidence of clinical harm is not clear.

Succinylcholine does not increase IGP appreciably in infants and children. This may be related to the minimal or absent fasciculations from succinylcholine in these young patients.[67]

Increased Intracranial Pressure

Succinylcholine has the potential to increase intracranial pressure.[68] The mechanisms and clinical significance of this transient increase are unknown, but pretreatment with nondepolarizing NMBDs prevents intracranial pressure increases.[68]

Myalgia

The incidence of muscle pain following administration of succinylcholine varies widely, from 0.2% to 89%.[69] Muscle pain occurs more frequently after minor surgery, especially in women and in ambulatory, rather than bedridden, patients.[70] Waters and Mapleson postulated that pain is secondary to damage produced in muscle by the unsynchronized contractions of adjacent muscle fibers just before the onset of paralysis.[70] This concept has been substantiated by finding myoglobinemia and increases in serum creatine kinase following succinylcholine administration.[71] Prior administration of a small ("defasciculating") dose of a nondepolarizing NMBD clearly prevents fasciculations from succinylcholine.[71] The efficacy of this approach in preventing muscle pain is not clear; however, most investigators report that pretreatment with a nondepolarizing NMBD has minimal effect.[69] Pretreatment with a prostaglandin inhibitor (e.g., lysine acetyl salicylate) has been shown effective in decreasing the incidence of muscle pain after succinylcholine.[72] This finding suggests a possible role for prostaglandins and cyclooxygenases in succinylcholine-induced myalgias. Other investigators have found that myalgias following outpatient laparoscopic surgery (and atracurium administration) occur even in the absence of succinylcholine.[73] Other investigators reported a significant reduction in postoperative myalgia in elective oral surgery patients pretreated with rocuronium (20%) compared with vecuronium (42%) and placebo (70%).[73a]

Masseter Muscle Rigidity

An increase in tone of the masseter muscle is a frequent response to succinylcholine in adults[74] as well as in children.[75] Several studies have reported that an increase in masseter muscle tone of up to 500 g lasting 1 to 2 minutes is a normal finding in adults.[76] Most cases of the so-called masseter muscle rigidity (MMR) may represent simply the extreme of a spectrum of muscle tension changes that occur in response to succinylcholine. Meakin and associates suggested that the high incidence of spasm in children may result from inadequate dosage of succinylcholine.[75] In all likelihood, this increase in tone is an exaggerated contractile response at the neuromuscular junction and cannot be used to establish a diagnosis of malignant hyperthermia. Although an increase in tone of the masseter muscle may be an early indicator of malignant hyperthermia, this finding is not consistently associated with that syndrome.[76] Currently, no indication exists to change to a "nontriggering" anesthetic technique in instances of isolated MMR.[77]

Anaphylaxis

There is some controversy concerning the incidence of anaphylaxis following succinylcholine. The incidence of anaphylactic reactions may be close to 0.06%. Almost all cases of anaphylaxis have been reported in Europe or Australia. When the muscle relaxant cross-links with IgE, degranulation and release of histamine, neutrophil chemotactic factor, and platelet-activating factor occur. The release of these mediators can induce cardiovascular collapse, bronchospasm, and skin reaction.[77a] Patients with a history of anaphylactic reaction to succinylcholine may exhibit a cross-reaction, at least in vitro, with other NMBDs. The cross-reactivity is related to the common structural features of these drugs, all of which contain quaternary ammonium ions.

CLINICAL USES

In spite of its many adverse effects, succinylcholine remains in clinical use. Its popularity is likely the result of its rapid onset of effect, the profound depth of neuromuscular blockade it produces, and its short duration of action. Succinylcholine is not used as regularly as in the past for routine endotracheal intubation, but it is still a muscle relaxant frequently used for rapid-sequence induction of anesthesia and tracheal intubation. Although 1.0 mg/kg of succinylcholine is recommended to facilitate endotracheal intubation at 60 seconds, as little as 0.5 to 0.6 mg/kg may result in adequate intubating conditions 60 seconds after administration.[78] Reduction in the succinylcholine dose from 1.0 to 0.6 mg/kg decreases the incidence of hemoglobin desaturation but does not shorten the time to spontaneous diaphragmatic movements.[79] Decreasing the dose of succinylcholine is appealing as long as it does not interfere with provision of adequate conditions for endotracheal intubation and subsequent adequate ventilation.[79]

Typically, after administering succinylcholine for tracheal intubation, a nondepolarizing NMBD is given to maintain neuromuscular blockade. Prior administration of succinylcholine enhances the depth of blockade caused by a subsequent dose of nondepolarizing NMBD.[80,81] However, the effect on duration of action is variable. Succinylcholine has no effect on the duration of pancuronium,[82] but it increases the duration of atracurium and rocuronium.[80,83] The reasons for these differences are not clear.

With administration of large doses of succinylcholine, the nature of the block, as determined by a monitor of neuromuscular blockade, changes from that of a depolarizing drug (phase 1 block) to that of a nondepolarizing drug (phase 2 block). Clearly, both the dose and the duration of administration of succinylcholine contribute to this change. The relative contribution of each factor has not been established, however.

Posttetanic potentiation and fade in response to TOF and tetanic stimuli can be demonstrated after bolus administration of different doses of succinylcholine.[84] It seems that some characteristics of phase 2 blockade are evident from an initial dose (i.e., as small as 0.3 mg/kg) of succinylcholine.[84] Fade in response to TOF stimulation has been attributed to the presynaptic effects on NMBDs. The etiology of the appearance of fade phenomenon in the TOF response following excessive administration of succinylcholine has been suggested to be dependent on a concentration-dependent affinity for succinylcholine to the presynaptic $\alpha_3\beta_2$ neuronal subtype AChR in concentrations exceeding the normal clinical concentration range seen after routine doses.[47]

INTERACTIONS WITH ANTICHOLINESTERASES

Neostigmine and pyridostigmine inhibit butyrylcholinesterase, as well as acetylcholinesterase. If succinylcholine is administered after antagonism of residual neuromuscular block, as it may be with postextubation laryngospasm, the effect of succinylcholine will be pronounced and significantly prolonged. The effect of succinylcholine (1 mg/kg) was prolonged from 11 to 35 minutes when it was given 5 minutes after administration of neostigmine (5 mg).[35] Ninety minutes after neostigmine administration, butyrylcholinesterase activity will have returned to less than 50% of its baseline value.

Nondepolarizing Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs

The use of NMBDs in anesthesia has its origin in the arrow poisons or curares of South American Indians. Several nondepolarizing NMBDs were purified from naturally occurring sources. For example, dTc can be isolated from the Amazonian vine *Chondodendron tomentosum*. Similarly, the intermediates for the production of metocurine and alcuronium, which are semisynthetic, are obtained from *Chondodendron* and *Strychnos toxifera*. Malouetine, the first steroidal NMBD, was originally isolated from *Malouetia bequaertiana*, which grows in the jungles of the Democratic Republic of Congo in central Africa. The NMBDs pancuronium, vecuronium, pipecuronium, rocuronium, rapacuronium, atracurium, doxacurium, mivacurium, cisatracurium, gantacurium, and gallamine are all synthetic compounds.

Available nondepolarizing NMBDs can be classified according to chemical class, based on structure (steroids, benzylisoquinoliniums, fumarates, and other compounds), or, alternatively, according to onset or duration of action (long-, intermediate-, and short-acting drugs) of equipotent doses (Table 27.2).

STRUCTURE-ACTIVITY RELATIONSHIPS

Nondepolarizing NMBDs were originally classified by Bovet as pachycurares,[26] or bulky molecules having the amine functions incorporated into rigid ring structures. Two extensively studied chemical series of synthetic nondepolarizing NMBDs are the aminosteroids, in which the interonium distance is maintained by an androstane skeleton, and the benzylisoquinolinium series, in which the distance is maintained by linear diester-containing chains or, in the case of curare, by benzyl ethers. For a detailed account on structure-activity relationships, see Lee.[85]

Benzylisoquinolinium Compounds

dTc is an NMBD in which the amines are present in the form of two benzyl substituted tetrahydroisoquinoline structures (Fig. 27.4). Using nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy and methylation–demethylation studies, Everett and associates demonstrated that dTc contains three *N*-methyl groups.[86] One amine is quaternary (i.e., permanently charged with four nitrogen substituents), and the other is tertiary (i.e., pH-dependent charge with three nitrogen substituents). At physiologic pH, the tertiary nitrogen is protonated so that it is positively charged. The structure-activity relationships of the bis-benzylisoquinolines (see Fig. 27.4) have been described by Waser[87] and by Hill and associates,[88] and these relationships are as follows:

1. The nitrogen atoms are incorporated into isoquinoline ring systems. This bulky molecule favors a nondepolarizing rather than a depolarizing activity.

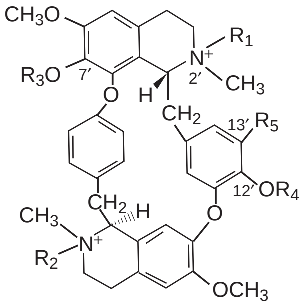
TABLE 27.2 Classification of Nondepolarizing Neuromuscular Blockers According to Duration of Action (Time to T1 = 25% of Control) after Twice the Dose Causing on Average 95% Suppression of Neuromuscular Response

	CLINICAL DURATION			
	Long-acting (>50 min)	**Intermediate-acting (20-50 min)**	**Short-acting (10-20 min)**	**Ultrashort-acting (<10 min)**
Steroidal compounds	Pancuronium	Vecuronium Rocuronium		
Benzylisoquinolinium compounds	*d*-Tubocurarine	Atracurium Cisatracurium	Mivacurium	
Asymmetric mixed-onium fumarates		CW 002		Gantacurium

Most nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers are bisquaternary ammonium compounds. *d*-Tubocurarine, vecuronium, and rocuronium are monoquaternary compounds.

T1, First twitch of train-of-four.

2. The interonium distance (distance between charged amines) is approximately 1.4 nm.
3. Both the ganglion-blocking and the histamine-releasing properties of dTc probably result from the presence of the tertiary amine function.
4. When dTc is methylated at the tertiary amine and at the hydroxyl groups, the result is metocurine, a compound of greater potency (by a factor of two in humans) with much weaker ganglion-blocking and histamine-releasing properties than dTc (see Fig. 27.4). Metocurine contains three additional methyl groups, one of which quaternizes the tertiary nitrogen of dTc; the other two form methyl ethers at the phenolic hydroxyl groups.
5. Bisquaternary compounds are more potent than their monoquaternary analogues. The bisquaternary derivative of dTc, chondocurine, is more than twice as potent as dTc (see Fig. 27.4).



Cyclic benzylisoquinoline

Cyclic benzylisoquinoline derivatives

Name	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_5	1	1'
d-Tubocurarine	CH_3	H	H	H	H	*S*	*R*
Metocurine	CH_3	CH_3	CH_3	CH_3	H	*S*	*R*
Chondocurine	CH_3	CH_3	H	H	H	*S*	*R*

R and S represent the stereochemical configuration about the designated carbon

Fig. 27.4 Chemical structures of *d*-tubocurarine, metocurine, and chondocurine.

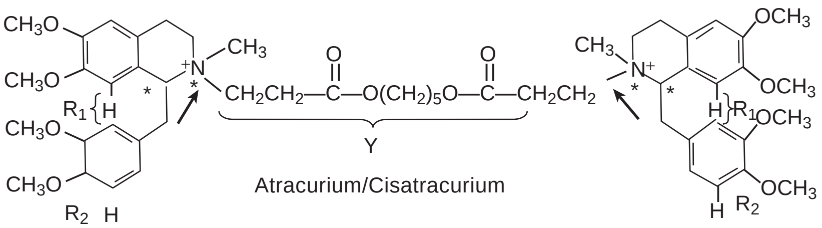
6. Substitution of the methyl groups on the quaternary nitrogen with bulkier groups causes a reduction in both potency and duration of action.

Atracurium is a bis-benzyltetrahydroisoquinolinium with isoquinolinium nitrogens connected by a diester-containing hydrocarbon chain (Fig. 27.5). The presence (in duplicate) of two-carbon separations between quaternary nitrogen and ester carbonyl renders it susceptible to the Hofmann elimination reaction.[89] The compound can also undergo ester hydrolysis. In a Hofmann elimination reaction, a quaternary ammonium group is converted into a tertiary amine through cleavage of a carbon-nitrogen bond. This is a pH- and temperature-dependent reaction in which higher pH and temperature favor elimination.

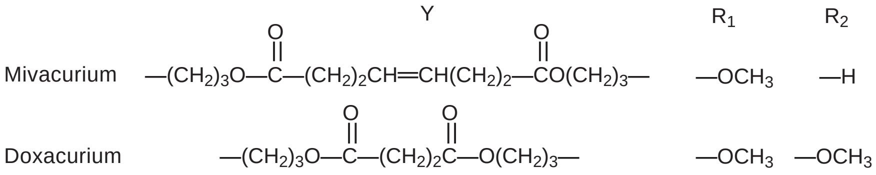
Atracurium has 4 chiral centers at each of the chiral carbons adjacent to the two amines. It is composed of 10 isomers.[89] These isomers have been separated into three geometric isomer groups that are designated *cis-cis*, *cis-trans*, and *trans-trans* according to their configuration about the tetrahydroisoquinoline ring system.[89] The ratio of the *cis-cis*, *cis-trans*, and *trans-trans* isomers is approximately 10:6:1, corresponding to 50% to 55% *cis-cis*, 35% to 38% *cis-trans*, and 6% to 7% *trans-trans* isomers.

Cisatracurium, the 1R *cis*–1′R *cis* isomer of atracurium, comprises approximately 15% of atracurium by weight but more than 50% in terms of neuromuscular blocking activity (see Fig. 27.5). R designates the absolute stereochemistry of the benzyl tetrahydroisoquinoline rings, and *cis* represents the relative geometry of the bulky dimethoxy and 2-alkyester groups at C(1) and N(1), respectively.[90,91] Like atracurium, cisatracurium undergoes Hofmann elimination. It is approximately four times as potent as atracurium, and in contrast to atracurium, it does not cause histamine release,[90,92] thus indicating that histamine release may be stereospecific.[90,93]

Mivacurium differs from atracurium by the presence of an additional methylated phenolic group (see Fig. 27.5). Compared with other isoquinolinium NMBDs, the interonium chain of mivacurium is longer (16 atoms).[88] Mivacurium consists of a mixture of three stereoisomers.[94] The two most active are the *trans-trans* and *cis-trans* isomers (57% and



$$-CH_2CH_2-\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}-O(CH_2)_5O-\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_2CH_2-$$



	Y	R_1	R_2
Mivacurium	$-(CH_2)_3O-\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}-(CH_2)_2CH{=}CH(CH_2)_2-\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}O(CH_2)_3-$	$-OCH_3$	$-H$
Doxacurium	$-(CH_2)_3O-\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}-(CH_2)_2\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}-O(CH_2)_3-$	$-OCH_3$	$-OCH_3$

Fig. 27.5 Chemical structures of atracurium, cisatracurium, mivacurium, and doxacurium. The *asterisk* indicates the chiral centers; *arrows* show cleavage sites for Hofmann elimination.

37% weight/weight, respectively), which are equipotent; the *cis-cis* isomer (6% weight/weight) has only one tenth the neuromuscular blocking activity of the more potent isomers in cats and monkeys.[94] Mivacurium is metabolized by butyrylcholinesterase to a monoester and a dicarboxylic acid at 70% to 88% the rate at which succinylcholine is metabolized by the same enzyme.[9]

Steroidal Neuromuscular Blockers

For the steroidal compounds to have neuromuscular blocking potential, it is likely that one of the compound's two nitrogen atoms be quaternized. The presence of an acetyl ester (acetylcholine-like moiety) facilitates their interaction with nAChRs at the postsynaptic muscle membrane.

Pancuronium is characterized by the presence of two acetyl ester groups on the A and D rings of the steroidal molecule. Pancuronium is a potent NMBD with vagolytic properties. It is also an inhibitor of butyrylcholinesterase (Fig. 27.6).[95] Deacetylation at the 3 or 17 positions decreases its potency.[96]

Vecuronium, in which the 2-piperidine substituent is not methylated, is the *N*-demethylated derivative of pancuronium (see Fig. 27.6).[7] At physiologic pH, the tertiary amine is largely protonated, as it is in dTc. The minor molecular modification results in the following: (1) a slight increase in the potency when compared with pancuronium; (2) a marked reduction in its vagolytic properties; (3) molecular instability in solution; and (4) increased lipid solubility, which results in a greater biliary elimination of vecuronium than pancuronium.[88]

Vecuronium is degraded by the hydrolysis of the acetyl esters at the C3 and the C17 positions. Hydrolysis at the C3 position is the primary degradation pathway because the acetate at the 3 position is more susceptible to hydrolysis in aqueous solutions than the acetate at the 17 position. This is because of the adjacent basic piperidine at the 2 position that facilitates hydrolysis of the 3-acetate. Therefore vecuronium cannot be prepared as a ready-to-use solution with a sufficient shelf life, even as a buffered solution. In contrast, the 2-piperidine of pancuronium is quaternized and no longer alkaline and therefore does not facilitate hydrolysis of the 3-acetate.

Rocuronium lacks the acetyl ester that is found in the A ring of the steroid nucleus of pancuronium and vecuronium (see Fig. 27.6). The introduction of cyclic substituents other than piperidine at the 2 and 16 positions results in a compound with a more rapid onset of effect than vecuronium or pancuronium.[97] The methyl group attached to the quaternary nitrogen of vecuronium and pancuronium is replaced by an allyl group in rocuronium. As a result of this change, rocuronium is approximately 6 and 10 times less potent than pancuronium and vecuronium, respectively.[97-99] The replacement of the acetyl ester attached to the A ring by a hydroxy group means that rocuronium is stable in solution. At room temperature, rocuronium is stable for 60 days. In contrast, pancuronium is stable for 6 months. The reason for this difference in shelf life is related to the fact that rocuronium is terminally sterilized in manufacturing, and pancuronium is not. Terminal sterilization causes some degree of degradation.

Asymmetric Mixed-Onium Fumarates and Analogues

These compounds share some structural properties with mivacurium. Gantacurium and CW 002 represent a new

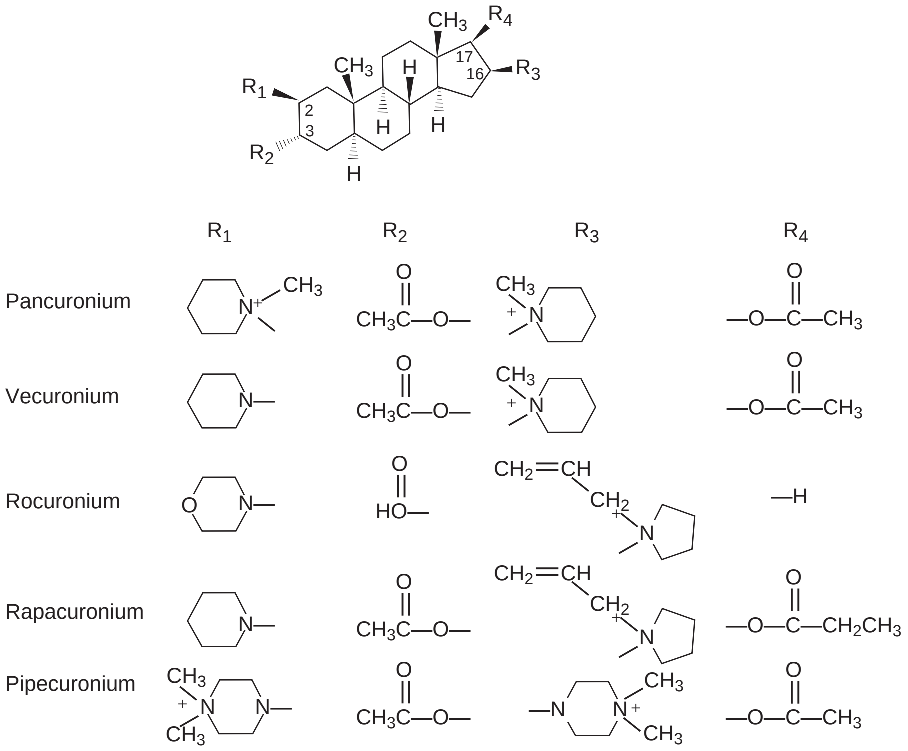


Fig. 27.6 Chemical structures of different steroidal neuromuscular blockers.

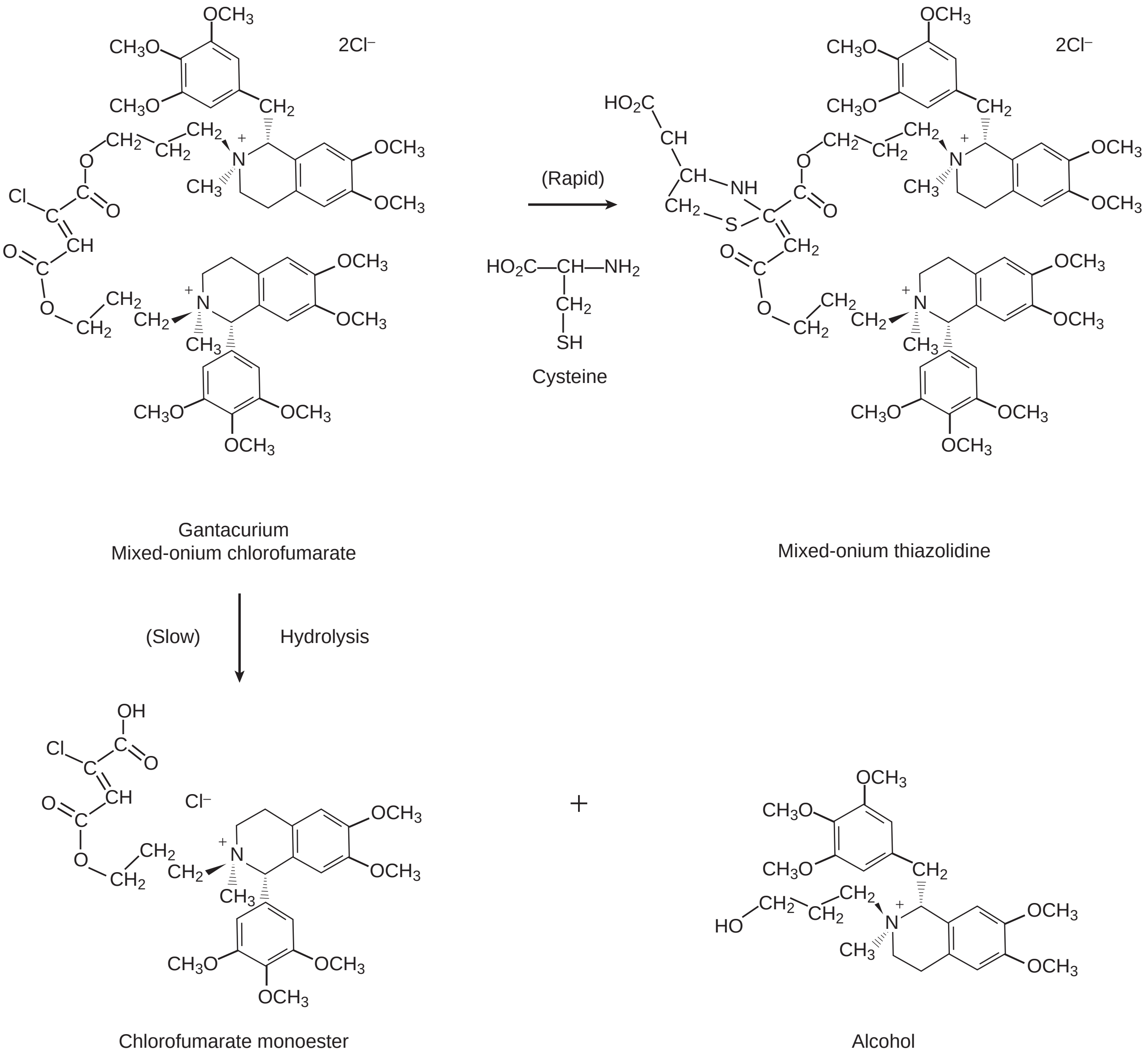


Fig. 27.7 Chemical structure of gantacurium (a mixed-onium chlorofumarate). In whole human blood, two pathways of deactivation occur, neither of which is enzymatic: (1) rapid formation of an apparently inactive cysteine adduction product, with cysteine replacing chlorine; and (2) slower hydrolysis of the ester bond adjacent to the chlorine substitution to chlorofumarate monoester and alcohol. (From Boros EE, Samano V, Ray JA, et al. Neuromuscular blocking activity and therapeutic potential of mixed-tetrahydroisoquinolinium halofumarates and halosuccinates in rhesus monkeys. *J Med Chem.* 2003;46:2502–2515.)

class of bisquaternary nondepolarizing NMBDs (Fig. 27.7). Gantacurium, an asymmetric mixed-onium chlorofumarate, is unique among nondepolarizing compounds in terms of its rapid onset of effect, its short duration of action, and its unique means of inactivation.[11,100] Because of the presence of three methyl groups between the quaternary nitrogen and oxygen atom at each end of the carbon chain, this compound does not undergo Hofmann elimination.[100]

Gantacurium has an ultrashort duration of action in human volunteers and in different animal species. In human volunteers receiving a nitrous oxide–opioid anesthetic, the ED_{95} of gantacurium is 0.19 mg/kg.[100] Onset of and recovery from block resemble those of succinylcholine. Following administration of approximately 2.5 times the ED_{95} dose, onset of maximal block occurs in 1.5 minutes. Spontaneous recovery to a TOF of 0.9 or greater occurs 10 minutes after administration of an ED_{95} dose, and complete spontaneous recovery occurs in 14 to 15 minutes after administration of doses ranging from 2 to 3.5 times the ED_{95}. Recovery is accelerated by administration of edrophonium at the beginning of spontaneous recovery. Transient hypotension and tachycardia occur following administration of doses three times the ED_{95} and greater, a finding suggesting that histamine release occurs with administration of these doses.[100]

Gantacurium appears to undergo two pathways of inactivation. One is a slower ester hydrolysis, and the second one, which occurs much more quickly, occurs through the adduction of cysteine, a nonessential amino acid, to create a new compound that can no longer bind to the nAChR of the neuromuscular junction.[101] This unique means of inactivation likely accounts for the drug's ultrashort duration of effect. It also provides a novel means of shortening recovery

TABLE 27.3 Dose-Response Relationships of Nondepolarizing Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs in Human Subjects

	ED_{50} (mg/kg)	ED_{90} (mg/kg)	ED_{95} (mg/kg)	References
LONG-ACTING				
Pancuronium	0.036 (0.022-0.042)	0.056 (0.044-0.070)	0.067 (0.059-0.080)	98, 103
d-Tubocurarine	0.23 (0.16-0.26)	0.41 (0.27-0.45)	0.48 (0.34-0.56)	103
INTERMEDIATE-ACTING				
Rocuronium	0.147 (0.069-0.220)	0.268 (0.200-0.419)	0.305 (0.257-0.521)	98, 104-106
Vecuronium	0.027 (0.015-0.031)	0.042 (0.023-0.055)	0.043 (0.037-0.059)	103
Atracurium	0.12 (0.08-0.15)	0.18 (0.19-0.24)	0.21 (0.13-0.28)	103
Cisatracurium	0.026 (0.015-0.031)	—	0.04 (0.032-0.05)	107-109, 371
SHORT-ACTING				
Mivacurium	0.039 (0.027-0.052)	—	0.067 (0.045-0.081)	9, 110-112
ULTRASHORT-ACTING				
Gantacurium	0.09	—	0.19	100

Data are the medians and ranges of reported values. ED_{50}, ED_{90}, and ED_{95} are the doses of each drug that produce, respectively, 50%, 90%, and 95% decrease in the force of contraction or amplitude of the electromyogram of the adductor pollicis muscle following ulnar nerve stimulation.

from gantacurium-induced neuromuscular block. Administration of L-cysteine (10 mg/kg) 1 minute after administration of gantacurium results in rapid return to complete neuromuscular function within 1 to 2 minutes.[102]

An analogue of the asymmetric fumarate gantacurium, CW 002 has been synthesized to undergo slower L-cysteine adduction. Because of its slower metabolism, it has an intermediate duration of action. In animals, it causes a nondepolarizing block that can be antagonized by neostigmine. Administration of L-cysteine 1 minute after administration of CW 002 effectively speeds recovery of neuromuscular function, whereas neostigmine does not.[22] Volunteer trials are required to determine whether onset, recovery, and ease of antagonism are improved over those using compounds that are currently available.

CW 011 (an asymmetrical maleate) is a nonhalogenated olefinic diester analogue of gantacurium[101] that can undergo L-cysteine adduction in animal models. Because this adduction reaction is slower than that of gantacurium, its duration of neuromuscular block is longer (approximately 21 minutes). Exogenous L-cysteine (50 mg/kg) administration can induce full recovery of neuromuscular block (after five times ED_{95} dose of CW 011) in 2 to 3 minutes.[101]

The clinical development of gantacurium was suspended in 2006, but since then, several other compounds similar to gantacurium have been tested. CW 1759-50 is a fast-onset, ultrashort-acting NMBA that is devoid of histaminoid side effects in animal testing.[11a,11b] CW 1759-50 is ultrashort acting because it is inactivated by plasma L-cysteine. Spontaneous recovery (5%-95% interval) from either bolus or infusion was similar (5-6 minutes), and reversal by L-cysteine required about 2 minutes.

POTENCY OF NONDEPOLARIZING NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKING DRUGS

Drug potency is commonly expressed by the dose-response relationship. The dose of an NMBD required to produce an effect (e.g., 50%, 90%, or 95% depression of baseline twitch height, commonly expressed as ED_{50}, ED_{90}, and ED_{95}, respectively) defines its potency.[9,98,103-114] The NMBDs have different potencies, as illustrated in Table 27.3 and Fig. 27.8. For factors affecting the potency of NMBDs, see the section on drug interactions later in this chapter. The dose-response relationship for nondepolarizing NMBDs is sigmoidal (see Fig. 27.8) and has been derived in various ways. The simplest method is to perform linear regression over the approximately linear portion of a semilogarithmic plot between 25% and 75% neuromuscular blockade. Alternatively, the curve can be subjected to probit or logit transformation to linearize it over its whole length, or the data can be subjected to nonlinear regression using the sigmoid E_{max} model of this form:

$$Effect\ (e) = F\left(dose_e^{\gamma},\ dose_e^{\gamma} + dose_{e50}^{\gamma}\right)$$

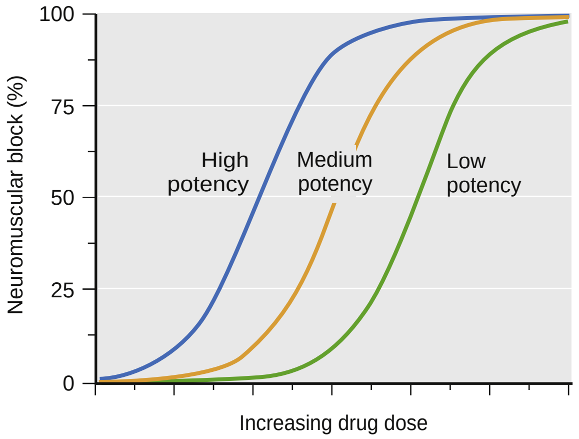


Fig. 27.8 Schematic representation of a semilogarithmic plot of a muscle-relaxant dose versus neuromuscular blockade. A drug of high potency is doxacurium, one of medium potency is atracurium, and one of low potency is gallamine. The graph illustrates that the relative potencies of the muscle relaxants span a range of approximately two orders of magnitude.

More complex models relating the concentration of NMBDs at the neuromuscular junction to their pharmacologic effect have been developed, and are discussed later.[115,116]

Factors that govern duration of action of NMBDs.

Onset

There is ample evidence that potent NMBDs have slower onset times than less potent drugs with similar physicochemical properties. These facts can be explained by the concept of the margin of safety. A critical number of receptors at the neuromuscular junction must be occupied before appearance of neuromuscular block, and at least 90% of the receptors must be occupied before block is complete at the adductor pollicis. When the drug reaches the synaptic cleft, most molecules will bind to receptors that are present with a high density. As the concentration of free drug decreases, more molecules are driven in and the process will continue until the concentrations of free drug within and outside the synaptic cleft are equal. When a potent drug is administered, fewer molecules are given than in a case of a less potent drug, and the onset will be slower compared to onset of lower potency NMBD.[116a] Nondepolarizing NMBDs of low potency (e.g., rocuronium) have more molecules to diffuse from the central compartment into the effect compartment. Once in the effect compartment, all molecules act promptly. Weaker binding of the low-potency drugs to receptors prevents buffered diffusion, a process that occurs with more potent drugs. Buffered diffusion causes repetitive binding and unbinding to receptors, thus keeping potent drugs in the neighborhood of the effector sites and potentially lengthening the duration of effect. This phenomenon is probably what contributes to the slower onset time for cisatracurium than atracurium. However, for very short-acting drugs, the ideal ED_{95} might be greater (0.5-1.0 mg/kg) because rapid metabolism in the plasma destroys some of the administered muscle relaxant before it reaches the neuromuscular junction. This phenomenon can explain the relatively slow onset time for mivacurium.

Plasma concentrations have only modest influence on onset time. Arterial plasma concentrations peak 25 to 35 seconds after administration, thus before onset of neuromuscular block. This paradox can be explained by assuming that the site of action, the neuromuscular junction, is represented by the effect compartment in which the concentration of the NMBD is directly related to the magnitude of neuromuscular blockade.[116b] The rate constant for transfer into the effect compartment is similar for most intermediate duration action NMBDs and corresponds approximately to neuromuscular junction blood flow divided by neuromuscular junction/plasma partition coefficient. Whatever muscle relaxant, the limiting factor appears to be the time required for the drug to reach the neuromuscular junction, which in turn depends on cardiac output, the distance of the muscle (and neuromuscular junction) from the central circulation, and muscle blood flow. Therefore in most cases, the onset time will be dependent on blood flow to muscle. Under normal circumstances, muscle blood flow increases when cardiac output increases, with a direct relationship between speed of onset and cardiac output. This may explain why infants and children have a faster onset of neuromuscular block, and elderly patients have a slower onset than younger individuals.

It is obvious that the intensity of maximum blockade is affected directly by the administered dose. However, when the dose increases in the subparalyzing range (that is, when maximum blockade is between 0% and 100%), time to reach maximum effect is dose-independent. This is because the time to peak concentration at the effect compartment is independent of the dose. When the administered dose, however, is sufficient to effect complete disappearance of neuromuscular response, time to maximum blockade becomes dose-dependent.

DURATION OF ACTION

Although it is commonly believed that the rate of decline of NMBD plasma concentrations during recovery from neuromuscular blockade determines the duration of action and the rate of recovery, further explanations are needed. It has been suggested that muscle blood flow is, to a certain extent, a limiting factor in the termination of action. For long-acting NMBDs, the dominant effect for the recovery from neuromuscular blockade is the rate of decrease of plasma concentration because there is pseudo-equilibrium between concentrations at the neuromuscular junction and plasma. Therefore changing blood flow will not affect the duration of action. For intermediate duration of action NMBD, after a single bolus dose, plasma concentrations decrease at a rate that differs slightly from the equilibrium half-life with muscle. It can induce a significant concentration gradient between neuromuscular junction and plasma during recovery, but provided that recovery rate is constant, the ratio of concentrations between the neuromuscular junction and plasma will remain relatively constant.

The most important factor is that the rate of decline of plasma concentration during recovery is not always related to the NMBD terminal half-life because after initial administration, plasma concentrations will decrease because of redistribution. It is only when redistribution will be complete that the decrease in plasma concentrations will be dependent on the terminal half-life and will decrease more slowly. For long-acting NMBD such as pancuronium, the recovery time will take place during the terminal half-life. In this situation the duration of action will be dependent on the rate of decrease of plasma concentrations. This is different for intermediate duration of action NMBDs. The terminal half-life of atracurium is around 20 minutes, whereas the elimination half-lives of both vecuronium and rocuronium are between 60 and 120 minutes. Although such differences can be observed, the duration of action and recovery from neuromuscular block of these three drugs are very similar. These apparent discrepancies can be explained by the fact that the distribution phase is the most important factor and extends for a much longer period than for long-acting NMBDs.[116c] If their duration of action and recovery rates are almost identical, it is due to the decrease of plasma concentrations to levels compatible with recovery during the redistribution phase.

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

The main goal of neuromuscular blockade during induction of anesthesia includes paralysis of the vocal cords and muscles of the jaw to facilitate endotracheal intubation. Relaxation of the respiratory muscles, particularly the diaphragm, allows controlled ventilation. Paralysis of the abdominal muscles and the diaphragm is often required intraoperatively, particularly during abdominal, robotic, or laparoscopic surgery. During recovery from neuromuscular block, restoration of complete neuromuscular strength is essential to ensure adequate spontaneous ventilation with normal regulation of breathing during hypoxia and the patency of the musculature of the upper airway with maintained airway protection. The choice of the initial dose of NMBD, timing of readministration of NMBD, timing of administration of anticholinesterase, and interpretation of monitoring require an understanding of the varying sensitivities of different muscle groups to NMBDs.

Although the practice of administering an NMBD to facilitate tracheal intubation may be routine, it has been suggested that the combination of propofol with a rapid-acting opioid may provide good to excellent intubating conditions in most patients. However, relatively large doses of opioids are required to obtain satisfactory intubating conditions. Mencke and coworkers demonstrated that adding atracurium to a propofol-fentanyl induction regimen significantly improved the quality of intubating conditions and decreased the frequency of vocal cord lesions following intubation from 42% to 8%.[117] The rate of postoperative hoarseness was also significantly decreased to 16% from 44%.[117] Combes and associates confirmed that the use of NMBD for tracheal intubation decreased the incidence of adverse postoperative upper airway symptoms, resulted in better intubating conditions, and also reduced the rate of adverse hemodynamic effects caused by deeper levels of anesthesia.[118] Patients intubated without an NMBD had three to four times more Cormack scores of 3 to 4, and difficult intubation was more common (12% vs. 1%). In a cohort of more than 100,000 patients, Lundstrom and colleagues demonstrated that avoidance of NMBD was associated with more difficult tracheal intubation conditions compared with NMBD use, with an odds ratio of 1.5.[118a] A recent Cochrane review supported the use of an NMBD (vs. avoidance of NMBD) in order to create the best intubating conditions.[118b]

Several alternative approaches are available to enhance surgical relaxation when administration of additional NMBDs may be inappropriate. These options include increasing the depth of general anesthesia with a drug such as a volatile anesthetic or propofol, administering lidocaine, using regional anesthesia, positioning the patient properly on the operating table, and appropriately adjusting the depth of neuromuscular blockade. The choice of one or several of these options is determined by the estimated remaining duration of surgery, the anesthetic technique, and the surgical maneuver required. Importantly, the single best (and only) method to ensure appropriate dosing and timing of additional NMBD is assessment of the depth of neuromuscular block by objective (quantitative) means.[118c]

It is important to keep these options in mind to avoid relying on only neuromuscular blockade to achieve a desired degree of surgical relaxation.

Varying Sensitivities of Different Muscle Groups

The sensitivity of the neuromuscular junctions to the effects of neuromuscular relaxants among various muscle groups varies greatly. Paton and Zaimis[118d] demonstrated in 1951 that some of the muscles of respiration, such as the diaphragm, were more resistant to curare than others. The dose of nondepolarizing NMBDs needed to block the diaphragm is 1.5 to 2 times that of the adductor pollicis. Thus complete paralysis of the diaphragm is not expected with doses of NMBDs used to block neuromuscular transmission at the adductor pollicis.[119] Similarly, the laryngeal adductor muscles are more resistant to nondepolarizing NMBDs than the more peripheral muscles such as the adductor pollicis,[120] at which all dosing recommendations for NMBDs and their antagonists have been made. The sparing effect of NMBDs on the laryngeal adductor muscles has been documented with vecuronium, rocuronium, cisatracurium, and mivacurium.[120-122] Plaud and colleagues studied the pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic relationship of NMBDs at the adductor pollicis and the laryngeal adductors.[123] These investigators found that the concentration in the effect compartment producing 50% of the maximum block was significantly greater at the laryngeal adductor muscles (1.5 μg/mL) than that at the adductor pollicis muscle (0.8 μg/mL). Convincing evidence indicates that the EC_{50} for almost all drugs is 50% to 100% higher at the diaphragm or larynx than it is at the adductor pollicis. These differences may be caused by any of several factors. Waud and Waud found that following curare administration, neuromuscular transmission occurs when approximately 18% of the receptors are free at the diaphragm, whereas it does not occur at the peripheral muscles unless 29% of receptors are free.[124] The reason may be higher receptor density, greater release of acetylcholine, or less acetylcholinesterase activity. The lower density of acetylcholine receptors in slow muscle fibers, such as found in the peripheral muscles, explains, in part, the lower margin of safety for neuromuscular transmission when compared with that in the faster muscle fibers in the laryngeal adductors. Muscle sensitivity to succinylcholine is different from that of other NMBDs. Succinylcholine is the only muscle relaxant that, at equipotent doses, causes greater neuromuscular block at the vocal cords than at the adductor pollicis. Some data suggest that in contrast to nondepolarizing NMBDs, succinylcholine is more effective in blocking the muscles composed of primarily fast-contracting fibers.[125]

In spite of the relative resistance to NMBDs, the onset of neuromuscular block is significantly faster at the diaphragm and the laryngeal adductors than at the adductor pollicis. Fisher and associates postulated that more rapid equilibration (shorter effect site equilibration half-life [$t_{½}k_{e0}$]) of the NMBD between plasma[126] and the effect compartment at these more centrally located muscles was the explanation for this observation. The accelerated rate of equilibrium probably represents little more than differences in regional blood flow. Therefore muscle blood flow (i.e., the rate of drug delivery to the tissue), rather than a drug's intrinsic potency, may be more important in determining the onset and offset time of nondepolarizing NMBDs. Greater blood flow per gram of muscle at the diaphragm or larynx results in delivery of a higher peak plasma concentration of drug in the brief period of time

TABLE 27.4 Guide to Nondepolarizing Relaxant Dosage (mg/kg) Under Different Anesthetic Techniques

				DOSAGE FOR RELAXATION	
	ED_{95} Under N_2O/O_2	**Dose for Intubation**	**Supplemental Dose after Intubation**	**N_2O**	**Anesthetic Vapors***
LONG-ACTING					
Pancuronium	0.07	0.08-0.12	0.02	0.05	0.03
d-Tubocurarine	0.5	0.5-0.6	0.1	0.3	0.15
INTERMEDIATE-ACTING					
Vecuronium	0.05	0.1-0.2	0.02	0.05	0.03
Atracurium	0.23	0.5-0.6	0.1	0.3	0.15
Cisatracurium	0.05	0.15-0.2	0.02	0.05	0.04
Rocuronium	0.3	0.6-1.0	0.1	0.3	0.15
SHORT-ACTING					
Mivacurium	0.08	0.2-0.25	0.05	0.1	0.08
Continuous Infusion Dosage (μg/kg/min) Required to Maintain 90%-95% Twitch Inhibition Under N_2O/O_2 With Intravenous Agents					
Mivacurium	3-15				
Atracurium	4-12				
Cisatracurium	1-2				
Vecuronium	0.8-1.0				
Rocuronium	9-12				

*The potentiation of nondepolarizing relaxants by different anesthetic vapors has been reported to vary from 20% to 50%. More recent data suggest, however, that this variation may be much less, particularly in the case of the intermediate- and short-acting relaxants. Therefore for the sake of simplicity, this table assumes a potentiation of 40% in the case of all volatile anesthetics.

Suggested dosages provide good intubating conditions under light anesthesia. Satisfactory abdominal relaxation may be achieved at dosages listed after intubation without a relaxant or with succinylcholine. This table is intended as a general guide to dosage. Individual relaxant requirement should be confirmed with a neuromuscular monitor.

ED_{95}, Dose causing on average 95% suppression of neuromuscular response; *N_2O*, nitrous oxide; *O_2*, oxygen.

before rapid redistribution occurs. Plaud and colleagues confirmed this hypothesis by demonstrating a faster transfer rate constant (i.e., $t_{1/2}k_{e0}$) at the laryngeal adductors (2.7 minutes) than at the adductor pollicis (4.4 minutes).[123] Greater resistance to neuromuscular blockade accounts for the faster recovery of the respiratory muscles and the muscles of the abdominal wall than at the adductor pollicis muscle. Recovery occurs more rapidly because blood concentration of the NMBD must decrease more in the muscles of respiration than in the adductor pollicis for recovery of neuromuscular function to begin.

In contrast, the muscles of the upper airway are particularly sensitive to the effects of muscle relaxants. The masseter is 15% more sensitive to nondepolarizing NMBDs than is the adductor pollicis.[127] Significant weakness of the muscles of the upper airway may exist even when strength at the adductor pollicis has recovered almost to baseline values. A TOF ratio less than 0.9 at the adductor pollicis (with a calibrated neuromuscular monitor) is associated with impaired pharyngeal function, reduced resting tone in the upper esophageal sphincter muscle, and decreased coordination of the muscles involved in swallowing, all of which cause an increased incidence of misdirected swallows, or aspiration.[128] Because of the resistance of the diaphragm and laryngeal muscles to neuromuscular block, patients may be weak in pharyngeal muscle groups while being able to breathe as long as an endotracheal tube is in place. Once the trachea is extubated, however, patients may not be able to maintain a patent airway or protect their airway.[129] This is likely the reason that patients with a TOF less than 0.9 in the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) are more likely to develop critical respiratory events than those whose TOF ratio is 0.9 or greater.[129a] Some investigators[129b] have demonstrated that among patients who received NMBD, those who did not receive reversal were more than twice as likely to develop pneumonia after surgery.

The increase in ventilation during hypoxia is mainly governed by afferent neuronal input from peripheral chemoreceptors of the carotid body. Acetylcholine is involved in the transmission of afferent neuronal activity from the carotid body to the central nervous system (CNS). Eriksson and associates have shown that partial neuromuscular block (TOF ratio of 0.7) reduces specifically the ventilatory responses to isocapnic hypoxia without altering the response to hypercapnia. The ventilatory response to hypoxia returns to control values after recovery of a TOF ratio to above 0.9.[129c] The mechanism behind this interaction seems to be a spontaneous, reversible depression of carotid body chemoreceptor activity during hypoxia.[129d]

DOSAGE

General Dosage Guidelines

Proper selection of the dose of nondepolarizing NMBD and quantitative monitoring are required to ensure that the desired effect is achieved without overdose of the relaxant (Tables 27.4 and 27.5).

TABLE 27.5 Pharmacodynamic Effects of Succinylcholine and Nondepolarizing Neuromuscular Blockers

	Anesthesia	Intubating Dose (mg/kg)	Approximate ED_{95} Multiples	Maximum Block (%)	Time to Maximum Block (min)	Clinical Duration* (min)	References
Succinylcholine	Opioids or halothane	0.5	1.7	100	—	6.7	372
Succinylcholine	Desflurane	0.6	2	100	1.4	7.6	373
Succinylcholine	Opioids or halothane	1.0	2	100	—	11.3	372
Succinylcholine	Desflurane	1.0	3	100	1.2	9.3	373
Succinylcholine	Opioids	1.0	3	—	1.1	8	374
Succinylcholine	Opioids	1.0	3	—	1.1	9	375
Succinylcholine	Isoflurane	1.0	3	100	0.8	9	140
STEROIDAL COMPOUNDS							
Rocuronium	Opioids	0.6	2	100	1.7	36	142
Rocuronium	Isoflurane	0.6	2	100	1.5	37	140
Rocuronium	Isoflurane	0.9	3	100	1.3	53	140
Rocuronium	Isoflurane	1.2	4	100	0.9	73	140
Vecuronium	Isoflurane	0.1	2	100	2.4	41	140
Vecuronium	Opioids	0.1	2	100	2.4	44	376
Pancuronium	Opioids	0.08	1.3	100	2.9	86	148, 377
Pancuronium	Opioids	0.1	1.7	99	4	100	378
BENZYLISOQUINOLINIUM COMPOUNDS†							
Mivacurium	Opioids	0.15	2	100	3.3	16.8	9
Mivacurium	Opioids	0.15	2	100	3	14.5	142
Mivacurium	Halothane	0.15	2	100	2.8	18.6	379
Mivacurium	Opioids	0.2	2.6	100	2.5	19.7	9
Mivacurium	Opioids	0.25	3.3	100	2.3	20.3	9
Mivacurium	Opioids	0.25	3.3	—	2.1	21	375
Atracurium	Opioids	0.5	2	100	3.2	46	107
Cisatracurium	Opioids	0.1	2	99	7.7	46	323
Cisatracurium	Opioids	0.1	2	100	5.2	45	107
Cisatracurium	Opioids	0.2	4	100	2.7	68	107
Cisatracurium	Opioids	0.4	8	100	1.9	91	107
d-Tubocurarine	Opioids	0.6	1.2	97	5.7	81	378

*Time from injection of the intubating dose to recovery of twitch to 25% of control.

†For atracurium and mivacurium, slower injection (30 seconds) is recommended to minimize circulatory effects.

ED_{95}, Dose causing on average 95% suppression of neuromuscular response.

The intensity of maximum blockade is directly affected by dose. If a small dose of NMBD is administered, neuromuscular block may not occur because the amount administered is inadequate to overcome the margin of safety at the neuromuscular junction. When doses lower than those required to cause 100% neuromuscular blockade are administered, the time required to reach maximum effect is a function of the NMBD and blood flow to the muscles. It is independent of the dose administered. However, if the administered dose is high enough to cause 100% neuromuscular blockade, the time required for maximum block will depend on the dose of NMBD administered. Larger doses will, up to a certain point, produce a faster onset of effect.[130] Increasing the dose of NMBD beyond that point will not further decrease the time to onset of maximal effect, and may significantly prolong the total duration of neuromuscular blockade, contributing to residual postoperative paralysis.

In addition to a general knowledge of the pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics of NMBDs and understanding of the guidelines for dosing, optimal practice requires that dosing be adjusted to account for variability in individual patients' responses to NMBDs. This adjustment cannot be made without using a quantitative (objective) monitor of neuromuscular blockade any time that an NMBD is administered to a patient. Overdosage must be avoided for several

TABLE 27.6 Suggested Definitions of the Depth of Neuromuscular Block Based on Subjective and Objective Criteria

Depth of Block	Posttetanic Count	Train-of-Four Count	Subjective Train-of-Four Ratio	Measured Train-of-Four Ratio
Intense (profound) block	0	0	0	0
Deep block	≥1	0	0	0
Moderate block	NA	1-3	0	0
Light (shallow) block	NA	4	Fade present	0.1-0.4
Minimal block (near recovery)	NA	4	No fade	>0.4 but <0.90
Full recovery (normal function)	NA	4	No fade	≥0.90-1.0

NA, Not applicable.
From Brull SJ, Kopman AF. Current status of neuromuscular reversal and monitoring. Challenges and opportunities. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:173, see Table 1.

reasons: to limit the duration of drug effect so that it matches the anticipated length of surgery; to avoid unwanted cardiovascular side effects associated with large NMBD doses; and to minimize residual neuromuscular block postoperatively.

Initial and Maintenance Dosage

The initial dose of NMBD is determined by the reason for administration. Traditionally, doses used to facilitate tracheal intubation are twice the ED_{95} (see Table 27.4). If, however, the trachea has been intubated without the use of an NMBD and the purpose in administering an NMBD is to produce surgical relaxation, a dose that is slightly less than the ED_{95} (see Table 27.5) may be sufficient in most surgical settings. Administration of NMBDs solely for surgical relaxation does not prevent vocal cord injury and postoperative hoarseness caused by intubation without NMBD. Additionally, ensuring maximal neuromuscular block by using quantitative means (e.g., a TOF count of zero) rather than being guided by clinical judgment will result in less hemodynamic instability during laryngoscopy and better intubating conditions.[130a] Administering a smaller initial dose may be sufficient in the presence of any of the potent inhalational anesthetics (see the later section on drug interactions), but the dosing should always be guided by quantitative monitoring.

To avoid prolonged residual paralysis, inadequate antagonism of residual blockade, or both, the main goal in dosing NMBDs should be to use the lowest possible dose that provides adequate relaxation for surgery. Moreover, clinical management of individual patients should be guided by monitoring of the neuromuscular block, ideally with an objective neuromuscular monitoring technique, to allow safe intraoperative administration of the NMBD and its antagonism by neostigmine or sugammadex (see also Chapter 43, Neuromuscular Monitoring).

In an adequately anesthetized and monitored patient, little reason exists to abolish the TOF responses to peripheral nerve stimulation completely. However, if deep levels of block are required to maintain paralysis of the diaphragm and the abdominal wall muscles, response of the adductor pollicis to stimulation of the ulnar nerve may disappear. In this case, monitoring the depth of neuromuscular block can be accomplished using the posttetanic count (PTC) at the adductor pollicis or TOF ratio at the corrugator supercilii.[131,132] Supplemental (maintenance) doses of NMBDs should be approximately one tenth (in case of long-acting NMBDs) to one fourth (in the case of intermediate- and short-acting NMBDs) the initial dose and should not be given until quantitative evidence of beginning recovery from the previous dose is present.

Relaxation can be maintained by continuous infusion of intermediate- and short-acting drugs. This approach is useful in maintaining a stable depth of neuromuscular blockade and allows adjustment of the depth of relaxation according to surgical needs. The depth of neuromuscular blockade maintained is moderate, if possible, to ensure complete spontaneous recovery of neuromuscular function at the end of a surgical procedure or prompt antagonism of residual effects. Suggested definitions of the depth of neuromuscular block are listed in Table 27.6.[132a] Table 27.4 lists the approximate dose ranges that are typically required during infusions to maintain 90% to 95% blockade of the twitch (one twitch visible on TOF stimulation) during a nitrous oxide–oxygen anesthetic supplemented with intravenous anesthetics. Infusion dosage is usually decreased by 30% to 50% in the presence of potent volatile anesthetics.

NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKING DRUGS AND TRACHEAL INTUBATION

Rapid onset of neuromuscular blockade is one of the requirements for securing an airway promptly. It is affected by several factors, including muscle blood flow, rate of delivery of the drug to the neuromuscular junction, receptor affinity, plasma clearance of the NMBD, and the mechanism of neuromuscular blockade (depolarizing vs. nondepolarizing)[96,116a,133](see Table 27.5 and Fig. 27.9). Onset time decreases as ED_{50} increases. When a potent NMBD is administered, fewer molecules are administered than in the case of an equipotent dose of a less potent drug. Because of this lower concentration gradient, more time is required for sufficient molecules of a potent drug to be delivered to the neuromuscular junction. Thus onset time is longer. This concept was verified by Kopman and colleagues, who demonstrated that, when giving equipotent doses of gallamine, dTc, and pancuronium, onset time was slower with the more potent pancuronium and faster with the less potent gallamine. Except for atracurium,[135] the molar potency (the ED_{50} or ED_{95} expressed as μM/kg) is highly predictive of a drug's initial rate of onset of effect (at the adductor pollicis muscle).[133] A drug's measured molar potency is the end result of many contributing factors: the drug's intrinsic potency (the CE_{50}, which is the biophase

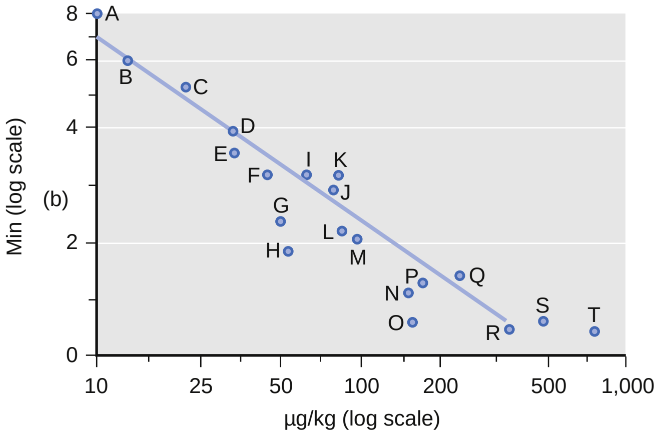


Fig. 27.9 Linear regression of onset of neuromuscular blockade (ordinate) versus potency of a series of steroidal relaxants studied in the cat model by Bowman and associates.[96] The data show that onset may be increased in compounds of low potency and encouraged the eventual development of rocuronium and rapacuronium (ORG 9487). *A,* Pipecuronium; *B,* ORG 8788; *C,* pancuronium; *D,* vecuronium; *E-M* and *O-T,* ORG 9274, 9360, 9273, 8715, 6502, 9216, 7931, 8730, 7617, 9275, 6368, 8764, 9382, and 7684 (respectively); *N,* RGH-4201. Data from Reference 96.

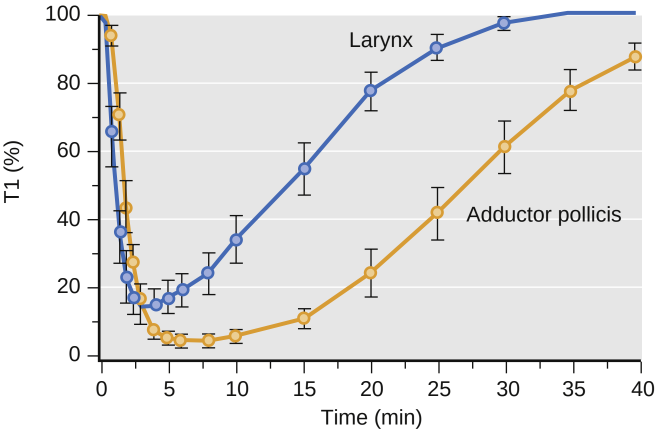


Fig. 27.11 Evolution of neuromuscular blockade in the larynx and thumb (adductor pollicis) after a 0.07 mg/kg dose of vecuronium. Onset and recovery from blockade occur more rapidly in the larynx. *T1,* First twitch of train-of-four. (From Donati F, Meistelman C, Plaud B. Vecuronium neuromuscular blockade at the adductor muscles of the larynx and adductor pollicis. *Anesthesiology.* 1991;74:833–837.)

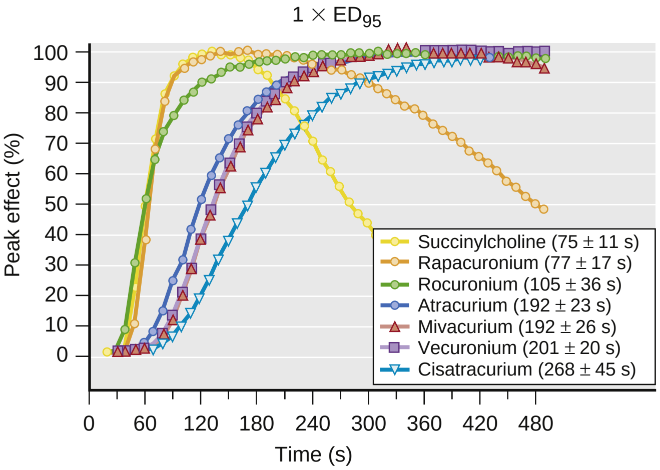


Fig. 27.10 Percentages of peak effect after a dose causing on average 95% suppression of neuromuscular response *(ED_{95})* of succinylcholine, rocuronium, rapacuronium, vecuronium, atracurium, mivacurium, and cisatracurium at the adductor pollicis muscle. Times (mean ± standard deviation) in seconds to 95% of peak effect are shown in parentheses. (Data from references 114, 133, and 135.)

concentration resulting in 50% twitch depression), the rate of equilibration between plasma and biophase (k_{e0}), the initial rate of plasma clearance, and probably other factors as well.[136] Notably, rocuronium has a molar potency (ED_{95}) of 0.54 μM/kg, which is approximately 13% that of vecuronium and only 9% that of cisatracurium; this finding illustrates the expected faster onset of rocuronium at the adductor pollicis muscle, as opposed to vecuronium and cisatracurium. Donati and Meistelman proposed a model to explain this inverse potency–onset relationship.[116a]

The times to 95% blockade at the adductor pollicis after administration of the ED_{95} dose of succinylcholine, rocuronium, vecuronium, atracurium, mivacurium, and cisatracurium are shown in Fig. 27.10.[114,133,135] The illustration shows that the most potent compound, cisatracurium, has the slowest onset, and the least potent compound, rocuronium, has the most rapid onset.[114,133,135] Bevan also proposed that rapid plasma clearance is associated with a rapid onset of action.[137] The fast onset of succinylcholine's action is related to its rapid metabolism and plasma clearance.

The onset of neuromuscular blockade is much faster in the muscles that are relevant to obtaining optimal intubating conditions (laryngeal adductors, diaphragm, and masseter) than in the muscle that is typically monitored (adductor pollicis) (Fig. 27.11).[121] Thus neuromuscular blockade develops faster, has a shorter maximum depth and duration of effect, and recovers more quickly in these central muscles (Table 27.7).[120-122,138,139]

Paralysis following intravenous administration does not occur instantaneously even with large doses of muscle relaxants. Onset of blockade occurs 1 to 2 minutes earlier in the laryngeal muscles than at the adductor pollicis after administration of nondepolarizing NMBDs. The pattern of blockade (onset, depth, and speed of recovery) in the corrugator supercilii muscle is similar to that in the larynx,[119] the diaphragm, and the muscles of the abdominal wall. By monitoring the onset of neuromuscular blockade at the corrugator supercilii, one can predict the quality of tracheal intubating conditions. Good to excellent intubating conditions are observed in more than 90% of patients after disappearance of the TOF responses (a TOF count of zero) at the corrugator supercilii.[131] The onset of maximal blockade in the larynx also corresponds with the point at which the adductor pollicis muscle begins to show palpable evidence of weakening.

Rapid Tracheal Intubation

Rocuronium in high dose (0.9-1.2 mg/kg) or succinylcholine 1.5 mg/kg can be used interchangeably for rapid tracheal intubation because they provide adequate intubating conditions within 60 to 90 seconds. Hence if succinylcholine is considered undesirable or contraindicated, high doses of rocuronium can be administered.[140] The onset of action of other nondepolarizing NMBDs can be accelerated by administering a priming dose of the NMBD[141] or

TABLE 27.7 Time Course of Action and Peak Effect Data at the Laryngeal Adductors and Adductor Pollicis

		LARYNGEAL ADDUCTORS			ADDUCTOR POLLICIS			
Dose (mg/kg)	**Anesthesia**	**Onset Time (s)**	**Maximum Block (% Depression)**	**Clinical Duration (min)**	**Onset Time (s)**	**Maximum block (% Depression)**	**Clinical Duration (min)**	**Reference**
Succinylcholine, 1.0	Propofol-fentanyl	34 ± 12	100 ± 0	4.3 ± 1.6	56 ± 15	100 ± 0	8 ± 2	122
Rocuronium, 0.25	Propofol-fentanyl	96 ± 6	37 ± 8	—	180 ± 18	69 ± 8	—	121
Rocuronium, 0.4	Propofol-fentanyl	92 ± 29	70 ± 15	—	155 ± 40	99 ± 3	24 ± 7	122
Rocuronium, 0.5	Propofol-fentanyl	84 ± 6	77 ± 5	8 ± 3	144 ± 12	98 ± 1	22 ± 3	121
Vecuronium, 0.04	Propofol-fentanyl	198 ± 6	55 ± 8	—	342 ± 12	89 ± 3	11 ± 2	120
Vecuronium, 0.07	Propofol-fentanyl	198 ± 12	88 ± 4	9 ± 2	342 ± 18	98 ± 1	22 ± 2	120
Mivacurium, 0.14	Propofol-alfentanil	137 ± 20	90 ± 7	5.7 ± 2.1	201 ± 59	99 ± 1	16.2 ± 4.6	138
Mivacurium, 0.2	Propofol-alfentanil	89 ± 26	99 ± 4	10.4 ± 1.5	202 ± 45	99 ± 2	20.5 ± 3.9	139

Clinical duration is the time until the first twitch of train-of-four (T1) has recovered to 25% of its control value. Mean and standard deviation[122,138,139] or standard error of the mean.[120,121]

by using combinations of NMBDs.[142] Although combinations of mivacurium and rocuronium can achieve rapid onset without undue prolongation of action and without undesirable side effects,[142] combinations of compounds of different structures may result in a marked prolongation of neuromuscular blockade. Additionally, combining different NMBDs may not consistently result in a rapid onset of neuromuscular block.

Timing Technique. This technique entails administration of a single intubating dose (two times the ED_{95}) of a rapid-onset NMBD such as rocuronium to an awake patient, followed by the administration of the anesthetic induction agent at the onset of clinical signs of weakness such as ptosis or loss of ability to maintain the raised arm. Using this technique, 0.6 mg/kg rocuronium can provide good to excellent intubating conditions within 45 seconds after induction of anesthesia.[142a] Because of the potential for unpleasant symptoms and recall associated with neuromuscular paralysis in awake patients, this technique is no longer used clinically.

Priming Technique. Since the introduction of rocuronium into clinical practice, the use of priming technique has almost disappeared. When priming, a small, subparalyzing dose of the nondepolarizer (≈20% of the ED_{95} or ≈10% of the intubating dose) is administered 2 to 4 minutes before the intubating dose of the compound.[141] This procedure accelerates the onset of blockade for most nondepolarizing NMBDs only by 30 to 60 seconds, thereby indicating that intubation can be performed within 90 seconds of the second dose. However, the intubating conditions that occur after priming are only marginally improved and do not match those that occur after succinylcholine. The size of the priming dose is limited by its effects on the awake patient, since the anesthetic induction agent is administered only immediately prior to the intubating dose of NMBD. Further, priming doses can cause subtle degrees of neuromuscular blockade and increase the patient's discomfort, the risks of aspiration, and difficulty swallowing and breathing.[143] This technique is contraindicated in patients with abnormal airway anatomy or increased sensitivity to NMBDs such as patients with myasthenia gravis or those taking magnesium.

Large-Dose Regimen for Rapid Tracheal Intubation. Large doses of NMBDs are usually recommended when intubation must be accomplished in less than 90 seconds. High-dose regimens are associated with considerably prolonged duration of action and potentially increased cardiovascular side effects, however (see Table 27.5).[140,144] Increasing the dosage of rocuronium from 0.6 mg/kg (twice the ED_{95}) to 1.2 mg/kg (four times the ED_{95}) shortens the onset time of complete neuromuscular block from 89 to 55 seconds but essentially doubles the clinical duration of action of the compound (the recovery of the first twitch of TOF [T1] to 25% of baseline values) from 37 to 73 minutes.[140]

Small-Dose Relaxants for Tracheal Intubation. Small doses of NMBDs can be used for routine tracheal intubation. The use of smaller doses of NMBDs has the following two possible advantages: (1) it shortens the time to recovery from neuromuscular blockade, and (2) it reduces the requirement for anticholinesterase drugs. Rocuronium has the shortest onset time of all the nondepolarizing NMBDs currently available.[121,122] The maximal effect of either 0.25 or 0.5 mg/kg of rocuronium at the laryngeal muscles occurs after 1.5 minutes.[121] This interval is shorter than the 3.3 minutes reported after administration of equipotent

	Muscle X	Adductor pollicis
EC_{50} (µg/mL)	3.00	1.18
$t_{1/2}k_{e0}$ (min)	1.93	3.85
Hill coefficient	4.00	4.50

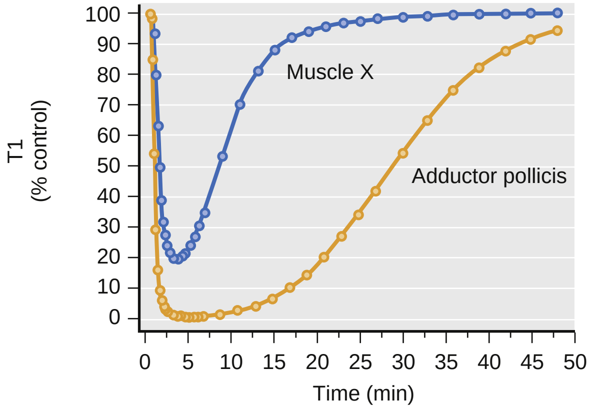


Fig. 27.12 A computer simulation based on Sheiner's model[115] and data reported by Wierda and colleagues. The dose causing on average 95% suppression of neuromuscular response (ED_{95}) of rocuronium at the adductor pollicis from this model is 0.33 mg/kg. Rocuronium, 0.45 mg/kg is given as a bolus at time zero. Muscle X represents a muscle (e.g., the diaphragm or the laryngeal adductors) that is less sensitive to the effects of nondepolarizing relaxants than the adductor pollicis but has greater blood flow. In this example, the concentration of rocuronium producing 50% block (EC_{50}) of muscle X is 2.5 times that of the adductor pollicis, but the half-life of transport between the plasma and effect compartment ($t_{1/2}k_{e0}$) of muscle X is only half as long. The rapid equilibration between plasma concentrations of rocuronium and muscle X results in the more rapid onset of blockade of muscle X than of the adductor pollicis. The greater EC_{50} at muscle X explains the faster recovery of this muscle than of the adductor pollicis from neuromuscular blockade. Lower blood concentrations of rocuronium must be achieved at the adductor pollicis than at muscle X before recovery begins. *T1,* First twitch of train-of-four. (From Naguib M, Kopman AF. Low dose rocuronium for tracheal intubation. *Middle East J Anesthesiol.* 2003;17:193–204, with permission from the *Middle East Journal of Anesthesiology.*)

doses of vecuronium (0.04 or 0.07 mg/kg),[120] and it is only slightly longer than the 0.9 minutes reported after 0.25 or 0.5 mg/kg of succinylcholine (see Table 27.7).[125]

With a better understanding of the multiple factors that contribute to satisfactory conditions for intubation, it is now possible to administer NMBDs thoughtfully in this fashion. Intubating conditions are related more closely to the degree of neuromuscular blockade of the laryngeal adductor muscles than to the degree of blockade typically monitored at the adductor pollicis. Fig. 27.12 demonstrates this principle.[136] In the presence of an adequate depth of anesthesia, complete blockade at the larynx or diaphragm, or both, may not be a prerequisite for satisfactory intubating conditions. Kopman and colleagues noted that 0.5 mg/kg of rocuronium (1.5 times the ED_{95}) provided satisfactory conditions for intubation in patients anesthetized with 12.5 µg/kg of alfentanil and 2.0 mg/kg of propofol if laryngoscopy was delayed for 75 seconds after drug administration.[145] It was furthermore estimated that 1.5 times the ED_{95} of rocuronium would produce at least 95% blockade in 98% of the population.[145] A similar or lower multiple of rocuronium's ED_{95} was shown to have a faster onset and shorter duration of action than those of atracurium[146] or cisatracurium.[109] In most patients receiving 15 µg/kg of alfentanil followed by 2.0 mg/kg of propofol and 0.45 mg/kg of rocuronium, good to excellent conditions for intubation are present 75 to 90 seconds after the completion of drug administration.

METABOLISM AND ELIMINATION

The specific pathways of the metabolism (biotransformation) and elimination of NMBDs are summarized in Table 27.8. Of the nondepolarizing NMBDs listed, pancuronium, pipecuronium, vecuronium, atracurium, cisatracurium, and mivacurium are the only drugs that are metabolized or degraded. Nearly all nondepolarizing NMBD molecules contain ester linkages, acetyl ester groups, and hydroxy or methoxy groups. These substitutions, especially the quaternary nitrogen groups, confer a high degree of water solubility with only slight lipid solubility. The hydrophilic nature of relaxant molecules enables easy elimination in the urine through glomerular filtration, with no tubular resorption or secretion. Therefore all nondepolarizing NMBDs show elimination of the parent molecule in the urine as the basic route of elimination; those with a long duration of action thus have a clearance rate that is limited by the glomerular filtration rate (1-2 mL/kg/min).

Steroidal Compounds

Long-Acting Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs. Pancuronium is cleared largely by the kidney[147] and, to a limited extent, by hepatic uptake and elimination. A small amount (15%-20%) is deacetylated at the 3 position in the liver, but this makes a minimal contribution to the total clearance. Deacetylation also occurs at the 17 position, but to such a small extent as to be clinically irrelevant. The three known metabolites have been individually studied in anesthetized humans.[148] The 3-OH metabolite is the most potent of the three, being approximately half as potent as pancuronium, and is the only one present in detectable concentrations in the plasma. This metabolite has pharmacokinetics and duration of action similar to those of pancuronium.[148] The 3-OH metabolite is most likely excreted largely by the kidney.[148] The parent compound and the 3-OH metabolite are also cleared in small amounts through a minor liver pathway. The total clearance is delayed, and the duration of action is significantly lengthened, by severe disorders of renal or hepatic function.[149-151]

Intermediate-Acting Neuromuscular Blockers. Vecuronium, the 2-desmethyl derivative of pancuronium, is more lipid soluble than pancuronium because of the absence of the quaternizing methyl group at the 2 position. It undergoes two to three times more metabolism than pancuronium. Vecuronium is taken up into the liver by a carrier-mediated transport system,[152] and it is then deacetylated at the 3 position by liver microsomes. Approximately 12% of vecuronium clearance is through conversion to 3-desacetylvecuronium,[153] and 30% to 40% of the drug is cleared in the bile as the parent compound.[154] Although the liver is the principal organ of elimination for vecuronium, the drug also undergoes significant (up to 25%) renal excretion, and this combined organ elimination gives it a clearance rate of 3 to 6 mL/kg/min.[153,155]

TABLE 27.8 Metabolism and Elimination of Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs

			ELIMINATION		
Drug	**Duration**	**Metabolism (%)**	**Kidney (%)**	**Liver (%)**	**Metabolites**
Succinylcholine	Ultrashort	Butyrylcholinesterase (98%-99%)	<2%	None	Monoester (succinyl monocholine) and choline; the monoester is metabolized much more slowly than succinylcholine
Gantacurium	Ultrashort	Cysteine (fast) and ester hydrolysis (slow)	?	?	Inactive cysteine adduction product, chloroformate monoester, and alcohol
Mivacurium	Short	Butyrylcholinesterase (95%-99%)	<5%	None	Monoester and quaternary alcohol; the metabolites are inactive and most likely are not metabolized any further
			(Metabolites eliminated in urine and bile)		
Atracurium	Intermediate	Hofmann elimination and nonspecific ester hydrolysis (60%-90%)	10%-40%	None	Laudanosine, acrylates, alcohols, and acids; although laudanosine has CNS-stimulating properties, the clinical relevance of this effect is negligible
			(Metabolites eliminated in urine and bile)		
Cisatracurium	Intermediate	Hofmann elimination (77%?)	Renal clearance is 16% of total		Laudanosine and acrylates; ester hydrolysis of the quaternary monoacrylate occurs secondarily; because of the greater potency of cisatracurium, laudanosine quantities produced by Hofmann elimination are 5-10 times lower than in the case of atracurium, thus making this a nonissue in practice
Vecuronium	Intermediate	Liver (30%-40%)	40%-50%	50%-60% ≈60%	The 3-OH metabolite accumulates, particularly in renal failure; it has ≈80% the potency of vecuronium and may be responsible for delayed recovery in ICU patients
			(Metabolites excreted in urine and bile) ≈40%		
Rocuronium	Intermediate	None	10%-25%	>70%	None
Pancuronium	Long	Liver (10%-20%)	85%	15%	The 3-OH metabolite may accumulate, particularly in renal failure; it is approximately two thirds as potent as the parent compound
d-Tubocurarine	Long	None	80% (?)	20%	None

3-OH, 3-hydroxy; *?,* unknown; *CNS,* central nervous system; *ICU,* intensive care unit.

The principal metabolite of vecuronium, 3-desacetylvecuronium, is a potent NMBD (≈80% of the potency of vecuronium). The metabolite, however, has slower plasma clearance and longer duration of action than vecuronium.[153] 3-Desacetylvecuronium has a clearance rate of 3.5 mL/kg/min, and renal clearance accounts for approximately one sixth of its elimination.[153] In patients with renal failure in the ICU, 3-desacetylvecuronium can accumulate and produce prolonged neuromuscular blockade.[156] Other putative metabolites are 17-desacetylvecuronium and 3,17-bisdesacetylvecuronium, neither of which occurs in clinically significant amounts.

Rocuronium is eliminated primarily by the liver, with a small fraction (≈10%) eliminated in the urine.[157] It is taken up into the liver by a carrier-mediated active transport system.[158] The putative metabolite, 17-desacetylrocuronium, has low (5%-10%) neuromuscular blocking activity of the parent drug and it has not been detected in significant quantities. The elimination of rocuronium occurs predominately through its biliary excretion. The organic anion transporting peptide 1A2 (OATP1A2) mediates the hepatocellular uptake of a variety of drugs, including rocuronium. The peptide is encoded by the *SLCO1A2* gene and is expressed in the bile duct cells (cholangiocytes) of the liver.[158a] Genetic polymorphism of the *SLCO1A2* gene has recently been reported, and was shown to reduce the clearance of rocuronium in patients undergoing elective surgeries.[158a] This reduction in the biliary excretion may partially explain the marked prolongation in the duration of action of rocuronium in some patients.[158b]

Benzylisoquinolinium Compounds

Short-Acting Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs. Mivacurium is hydrolyzed in the plasma by butyrylcholinesterase to a monoester and an amino alcohol,[9] which are excreted in urine and bile. They have less than 1% of the neuromuscular blocking activity of the parent compound. Less than 5% of mivacurium is excreted in the urine as the parent compound.

Mivacurium consists of three stereoisomers, and the clearances of the two most pharmacologically active isomers, the *cis-trans* and *trans-trans*, are approximately 100 and 50 to 70 mL/kg/min, respectively.[94,159,160] These two isomers show elimination half-lives of 2 to 3 minutes.[94] The third stereoisomer, the *cis-cis*, is present as only 4% to 8% of the mivacurium mixture and has less than 10% of the neuromuscular blocking potency of the other two isomers.[94] Consequently, even though it has a much longer elimination half-life (55 minutes) and lower clearance (≈4 mL/kg/min) than the two other isomers, it does not contribute significantly to the duration of action of mivacurium.[94] This rapid enzymatic clearance of mivacurium accounts for its short duration of action.[9,94] When butyrylcholinesterase activity is significantly decreased, however, as in the rare patient who is homozygous for genetically atypical enzymes, the duration of action of mivacurium is prolonged for up to several hours.[161-164]

CW 1759-50 is an ultrashort-acting nondepolarizing NMBD that was developed to minimize the histaminoid side effects associated with gantacurium. In laboratory animals, the ED_{95} of CW 1759-50 is 0.03 mg/kg (cat) and 0.069 mg/kg (rhesus monkey). Its total duration of action (spontaneous recovery) is approximately 8 minutes, and it is minimally prolonged (12 minutes) after administration of doses four times its ED_{95}.[11a,11b] It can be antagonized rapidly (2 minutes) by L-cysteine. Its development for clinical use is undergoing.

Intermediate-Acting Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs. Atracurium is metabolized through two pathways: Hofmann elimination and nonspecific ester hydrolysis. Hofmann elimination is a purely chemical process that results in loss of the positive charges by molecular fragmentation to laudanosine (a tertiary amine) and a monoquaternary acrylate, compounds that are thought to have no neuromuscular and little or no cardiovascular activity of clinical relevance.[165]

Because it undergoes Hofmann elimination, atracurium is relatively stable at pH 3.0 and 4°C and becomes unstable when it is injected into the bloodstream. Early observations of the breakdown of the drug in buffer and plasma showed faster degradation in plasma, a finding suggesting a possible enzymatic hydrolysis of the ester groups. Further evidence suggested that ester hydrolysis may be more important than originally realized in the breakdown of atracurium.[166] By using a pharmacokinetics analysis, Fisher and associates concluded that a significant amount of clearance of atracurium may be by routes other than ester hydrolysis and Hofmann elimination.[167] Thus it appears that atracurium's metabolism is complicated and may not be completely understood.[167]

Laudanosine, a metabolite of atracurium, has CNS-stimulating properties. Because it crosses the blood-brain barrier, laudanosine was thought to cause excitement and seizure activity. However, plasma concentrations of this metabolite are very low, and adverse effects are unlikely to occur with atracurium (or cisatracurium) use in either the operating room or the ICU.

Atracurium is a mixture of 10 optical isomers. Cisatracurium is the 1R *cis*–1′R *cis* isomer of atracurium.[90] Like atracurium, cisatracurium is metabolized by Hofmann elimination to laudanosine and a monoquaternary acrylate.[168,169] In contrast, however, no ester hydrolysis of the parent molecule occurs. Hofmann elimination accounts for 77% of the total clearance of 5 to 6 mL/kg/min. Twenty-three percent of the drug is cleared through organ-dependent means, and renal elimination accounts for 16% of this.[169] Because cisatracurium is approximately four or five times as potent as atracurium, approximately five times less laudanosine is produced, and, as with atracurium, accumulation of this metabolite is not thought to be of any consequence in clinical practice.

Long-Acting Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs. dTc has no active metabolism and the kidney is the major pathway of elimination, with approximately 50% of a dose eliminated through renal pathways. The liver is likely a secondary route of elimination.

Asymmetric Mixed-Onium Fumarates

Gantacurium and CW 002 are degraded by two chemical mechanisms, neither of which is enzymatic: (1) rapid formation of an apparently inactive cysteine adduction product and (2) slower hydrolysis of the ester

TABLE 27.9 Approximate Autonomic Margins of Safety of Nondepolarizing Neuromuscular Blockers

Drugs	Vagus*	Sympathetic Ganglia*	Histamine Release†
BENZYLISOQUINOLINIUM COMPOUNDS			
Mivacurium	>50	>100	3.0
Atracurium	16	40	2.5
Cisatracurium	>50	>50	None
d-Tubocurarine	0.6	2.0	0.6
STEROIDAL COMPOUNDS			
Vecuronium	20	>250	None
Rocuronium	3.0-5.0	>10	None
Pancuronium	3.0	>250	None

*In cats.

†In human subjects.

Definition: number of multiples of the dose causing on average 95% suppression of neuromuscular response (ED_{95}) for neuromuscular blockade required to produce the autonomic side effect (ED_{50}).

bond to presumably inactive hydrolysis products (see Fig. 27.7).[11,170] CW 1759-50 is degraded nonenzymatically by endogenous L-cysteine at physiological pH and temperature, which accounts for its ultrashort duration of action.

In summary, the only short-acting nondepolarizing NMBD, mivacurium, is cleared rapidly and almost exclusively by metabolism by butyrylcholinesterase, thus resulting in much greater plasma clearance than that of any other nondepolarizing NMBD.[9] NMBDs of intermediate duration, such as vecuronium, rocuronium, atracurium, and cisatracurium, have clearance rates in the range of 3 to 6 mL/kg/min because of multiple pathways of degradation, metabolism, and/or elimination. Atracurium is cleared two to three times more rapidly than the long-acting drugs.[171-174] Similar clearance values have been obtained for rocuronium[175-179] and cisatracurium.[168,169,180] The long-acting NMBDs undergo minimal or no metabolism, and they are eliminated largely unchanged, mostly by renal excretion. Hepatic pathways are less important in their metabolism.

ADVERSE EFFECTS OF NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKING DRUGS

NMBDs seem to play a prominent role in the incidence of adverse reactions that occur during anesthesia. The Committee on Safety of Medicines in the United Kingdom reported that 10.8% (218 of 2014) of adverse drug reactions and 7.3% of deaths (21 of 286) were attributable to the NMBDs.[181]

Autonomic Effects

While NMBDs have little penetration through the blood-brain barrier, they may interact with nicotinic and muscarinic cholinergic receptors within the peripheral nervous system, in particular the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems and at the nicotinic receptors of the neuromuscular junction.

Dose-response ratios comparing the neuromuscular blocking potencies of these drugs (the ED_{95}) with their potencies in blocking vagal (parasympathetic) or sympathetic ganglionic transmission (the ED_{50}) can be constructed (Table 27.9). These ratios are termed the autonomic margin of safety of the relaxant in question. The higher the dose ratio, the lower is the likelihood of, or the greater the safety ratio for, the occurrence of the particular autonomic effect. The side effect is considered absent (none) in clinical practice if the safety ratio is greater than 5; it is weak or slight if the safety ratio is 3 or 4, moderate if 2 or 3, and strong or prominent if the ratio is 1 or less.

These autonomic responses are not reduced by slower injection of the muscle relaxant. They are dose related and additive over time if divided doses are given. If identical to the original dose, subsequent doses will produce a similar response (i.e., no tachyphylaxis will occur). This is not the case, however, when the side effect of histamine release is in question. Cardiovascular responses secondary to histamine release are decreased by slowing the injection rate, and the response undergoes rapid tachyphylaxis. The autonomic effects of NMBDs are summarized in Table 27.10.

Histamine Release. Quaternary ammonium compounds (e.g., NMBDs) are generally weaker histamine-releasing substances than are tertiary amines such as morphine. Nevertheless, when large doses of certain NMBDs are administered rapidly, erythema of the face, neck, and upper torso may develop, as well as a brief decrease in arterial pressure and a slight to moderate increase in heart rate. Bronchospasm in this setting is very rare. The clinical effects of histamine are seen when plasma concentrations increase 200% to 300% of baseline values, and these effects involve chemical displacement of the contents of mast cell granules containing histamine, prostaglandin, and possibly other vasoactive substances.[182] The serosal mast cell, located in the skin and connective tissue and near blood vessels and nerves, is principally involved in the degranulation process.[182]

The side effect of histamine release is most often noted following administration of the benzylisoquinolinium class of muscle relaxants, although it has also been noted in steroidal relaxants of low potency. The effect is usually of short duration (1-5 minutes), is dose related, and is

TABLE 27.10 Clinical Autonomic Effects of Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs

Drug Type	Autonomic Ganglia	Cardiac Muscarinic Receptors	Histamine Release
DEPOLARIZING SUBSTANCE			
Succinylcholine	Stimulates	Stimulates	Slight
BENZYLISOQUINOLINIUM COMPOUNDS			
Mivacurium	None	None	Slight
Atracurium	None	None	Slight
Cisatracurium	None	None	None
d-Tubocurarine	Blocks	None	Moderate
STEROIDAL COMPOUNDS			
Vecuronium	None	None	None
Rocuronium	None	Blocks weakly	None
Pancuronium	None	Blocks moderately	None

clinically insignificant in healthy patients. The hypotensive cardiovascular response to 0.6 mg/kg of dTc in humans is prevented both by antihistamines and by nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (e.g., aspirin).[183] The final step in dTc-induced hypotension is modulated by prostaglandins that are vasodilators.[183] This side effect can be reduced considerably by using a slower injection rate that results in lower peak plasma concentrations of dTc. It is also prevented by prophylaxis with combinations of histamine$_1$ and histamine$_2$ blockers.[184] If a minor degree of histamine release such as described earlier occurs after an initial dose of an NMBD, subsequent doses will generally cause no response at all, as long as they are no larger than the original dose. This is clinical evidence of tachyphylaxis, an important characteristic of histamine release. A much more significant degree of histamine release occurs during anaphylactoid or anaphylactic reactions, but these are very rare.

Clinical Cardiovascular Manifestations of Autonomic Mechanisms

Hypotension. The hypotension seen with the use of atracurium and mivacurium results from histamine release, whereas dTc causes hypotension by histamine release and ganglionic blockade.[185,186] The effects of dTc occur closer to the dose required to achieve neuromuscular blockade.[113] The safety margin for histamine release is approximately three times greater for atracurium and mivacurium than it is for dTc.[182,183,186] Rapid administration of atracurium in doses greater than 0.4 mg/kg and of mivacurium in doses greater than 0.15 mg/kg has been associated with transient hypotension secondary to histamine release (Fig. 27.13).

Tachycardia. Pancuronium causes a moderate increase in heart rate and, to a lesser extent, in cardiac output, with little or no change in systemic vascular resistance.[187] Pancuronium-induced tachycardia has been attributed to the following: (1) vagolytic action,[187] probably from inhibition of M$_2$ receptors; and (2) sympathetic stimulation that involves both direct (blockade of neuronal uptake of norepinephrine) and indirect (release of norepinephrine from adrenergic nerve endings) mechanisms.[188] In humans a decrease in plasma norepinephrine levels was surprisingly found after administration of either pancuronium or atropine.[189] The investigators postulated that the increase in heart rate or rate-pressure product occurs because pancuronium (or atropine) acts through baroreceptors to reduce sympathetic outflow.[189] More specifically, the vagolytic effect of pancuronium increases heart rate and hence blood pressure and cardiac output, in turn influencing the baroreceptors to decrease sympathetic tone. Support for this concept is provided by the finding that prior administration of atropine attenuates or eliminates the cardiovascular effects of pancuronium.[187] However, a positive chronotropic effect that places emphasis on the vagolytic mechanism has not been found in humans.[190] The tachycardia seen with benzylisoquinolinium compounds is the result of histamine release.

Dysrhythmias. Succinylcholine and dTc actually reduce the incidence of epinephrine-induced dysrhythmias.[191] Possibly because of enhanced atrioventricular conduction,[192] the incidence of dysrhythmias caused by pancuronium appears to increase during halothane anesthesia.[187] There are reports of rapid tachycardia (>150 beats/min) that progressed to atrioventricular dissociation in two patients anesthetized with halothane who also received pancuronium.[193] The only other factor common to those two patients was that both were taking tricyclic antidepressant drugs.

Bradycardia. Several case reports described the occurrence of severe bradycardia and even asystole after vecuronium or atracurium administration.[194,195] All these cases were also associated with opioid coadministration. Subsequent studies indicated that administration of vecuronium or atracurium alone does not cause bradycardia.[196] When combined with other drugs that do cause bradycardia (e.g., fentanyl), however, the nonvagolytic relaxants such as vecuronium, cisatracurium, and atracurium allow this mechanism to occur unopposed. Thus the moderate vagolytic effect of pancuronium is often used to counteract opioid-induced bradycardia.

Respiratory Effects. The muscarinic cholinergic system plays an important role in regulating airway function. Five muscarinic receptors have been cloned,[197] three of which (M$_1$ to M$_3$) exist in the airways.[198] M$_1$ receptors are under

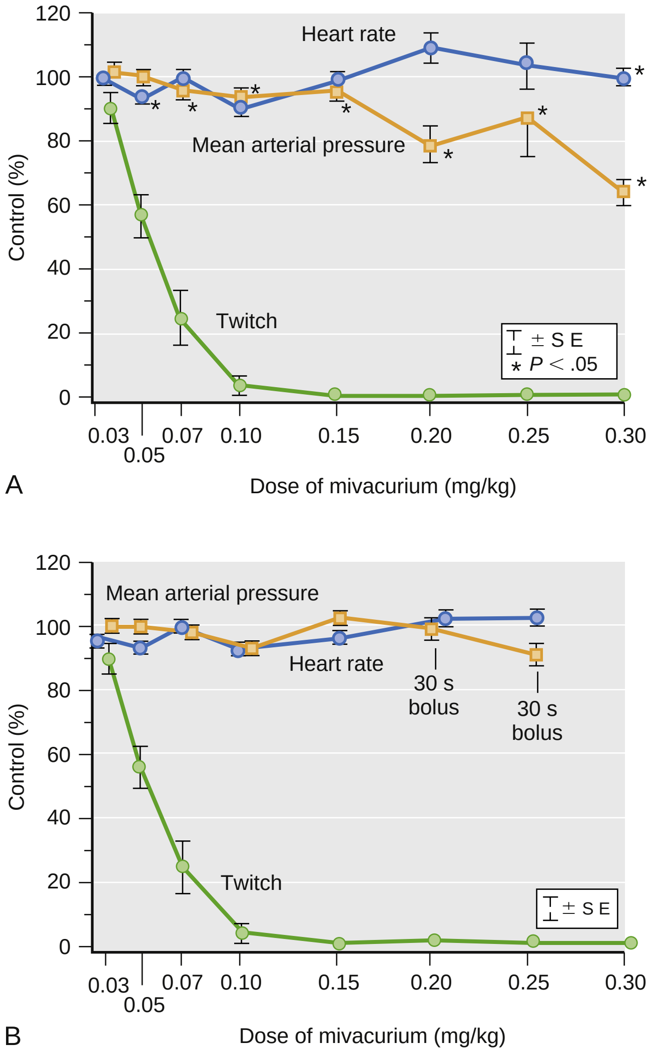


Fig. 27.13 Dose response to mivacurium in patients under nitrous oxide–oxygen-opioid anesthesia. Maximum changes at each dose are shown; *n* = 9 subjects per group. (A) With fast injection, a 15% to 20% decrease in arterial pressure occurred at 2.5 to 3 times the ED$_{95}$ (0.20-0.25 mg/kg). (B) The changes were less than 10% when slower injection (30 seconds) was done. (From Savarese JJ, Ali HH, Basta SJ, et al. The cardiovascular effects of mivacurium chloride [BW B1090U] in patients receiving nitrous oxide–opiate-barbiturate anesthesia. *Anesthesiology.* 1989;70:386–394.)

sympathetic control, and they mediate bronchodilation.[199] M_2 receptors are located presynaptically (Fig. 27.14), at the postganglionic parasympathetic nerve endings, and they function in a negative-feedback mechanism to limit the release of acetylcholine. The M_3 receptors, which are located postsynaptically (see Fig. 27.14), mediate contraction of the airway smooth muscles (i.e., bronchoconstriction).[199] Nondepolarizing NMBDs have different antagonistic activities at both M_2 and M_3 receptors.[200] For example, blockade of M_3 receptors on airway smooth muscle inhibits vagally induced bronchoconstriction (i.e., causes bronchodilation), whereas blockade of M_2 receptors results in increased release of acetylcholine that acts on M_3 receptors, thus causing bronchoconstriction.

The affinity of the compound rapacuronium to block M_2 receptors is 15 times higher than its affinity to block M_3 receptors.[200] This explains the high incidence (>9%) of severe bronchospasm[201-203] reported with this drug that resulted in its withdrawal from the market. In laboratory animals (guinea pig), CW 1759-50 is reported to have five times greater safety at both M_2 and M_3 receptors than rapacuronium.[11b]

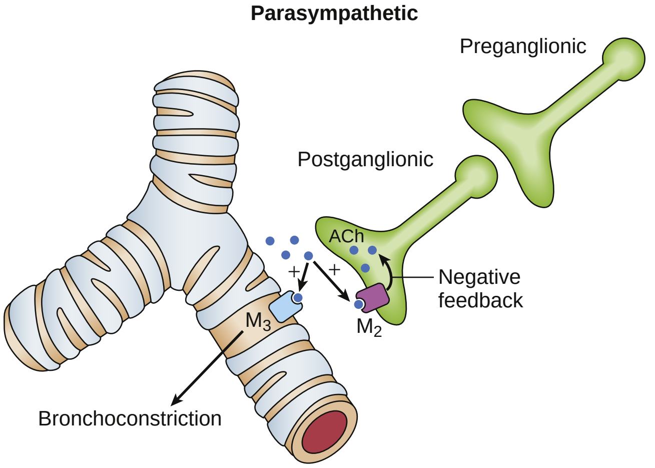


Fig. 27.14 The muscarinic *(M_3)* receptors are located postsynaptically on airway smooth muscle. Acetylcholine *(ACh)* stimulates M_3 receptors to cause contraction. *M_2* muscarinic receptors are located presynaptically at the postganglionic parasympathetic nerve endings, and they function in a negative-feedback mechanism to limit the release of ACh.

The administration of benzylisoquinolinium NMBDs (with the exception of cisatracurium) is associated with histamine release, which may result in increased airway resistance and bronchospasm in patients with hyperactive airway disease.

Allergic Reactions. The frequency of life-threatening anaphylactic (immune-mediated) or anaphylactoid reactions occurring during anesthesia has been estimated at 1 in 10,000 to 20,000 anesthetic procedures, whereas it is estimated at 1 in 6500 administrations of NMBDs in some countries.[204,205] In France, the most common causes of anaphylaxis in patients who experienced allergic reactions were reported to be NMBDs (60.6%), antibiotics (18.2%), dyes (5.4%), and latex (5.2%).[206,206a] Patients were sensitized to 2 or more NMBDS in approximately 50% of the cases and no cross-sensitivity could be predicted without skin testing. Anaphylactic reactions are mediated through immune responses involving immunoglobulin E (IgE) antibodies fixed to mast cells. Anaphylactoid reactions are not immune mediated and represent exaggerated pharmacologic responses in very rare and very sensitive individuals.

However, anaphylaxis to nondepolarizing NMBDs is not uncommon in patients without any previous exposure to any nondepolarizing NMBDs. Cross-reactivity occurs between NMBDs and food, cosmetics, disinfectants, and industrial materials.[207] Sensitization to nondepolarizing NMBDs may also be related to pholcodine, a cough-relieving medicine. Cross-reactivity is seen in 70% of patients with a history of anaphylaxis to an NMBD.[206] Six years after the withdrawal of pholcodine from the Norwegian market, the prevalence of IgE sensitization to NMBDs (succinylcholine) decreased significantly.[207a]

Steroidal compounds (e.g., rocuronium, vecuronium, or pancuronium) result in no significant histamine release.[186] For example, four times the ED$_{95}$ of rocuronium (1.2 mg/

kg) causes no significant histamine release.[208] Nevertheless, rocuronium and succinylcholine are reportedly associated with a 43.1% and 22.6% incidence, respectively, of anaphylaxis in France.[206] Rose and Fisher classified rocuronium and atracurium as having intermediate levels of risk for causing allergic reactions.[209] These investigators also noted that the increased number of reports of anaphylaxis with rocuronium is in line with the market share of that drug's usage. Watkins stated, "The much higher incidence of rocuronium reactions reported in France is currently inexplicable and is likely to remain so if investigators continue to seek a purely antibody-mediated response as an explanation of all anaphylactoid reaction presentations."[210] All nondepolarizing NMBDs may elicit anaphylaxis. More recent publications have highlighted the need for standardization of diagnostic procedures of anaphylactic reactions. Biochemical tests should be performed rapidly after occurrence of an anaphylactic reaction. An early increase in plasma histamine is observed 60 to 90 minutes after anaphylactic reactions. Serum tryptase concentration typically reaches a peak between 15 and 120 minutes, depending on the severity of the reaction, and is much more specific than histamine as a marker of anaphylactic reaction. It is highly suggestive of mast cell activation. Skin testing remains the gold standard for detection of the culprit agent.[77a] For many years, dilution thresholds have been debated. For instance, Laxenaire used a 1:10 dilution of rocuronium for interdermal skin testing,[212] whereas Rose and Fisher used a 1:1000 dilution.[209] Levy and associates showed that rocuronium in a 1:10 dilution can produce false-positive results in intradermal testing and suggested that rocuronium be diluted at least 100-fold to prevent such results.[213] The authors also reported that high concentrations ($\geq 10^{-4}$ M) of both rocuronium and cisatracurium were capable of producing a wheal-and-flare response to intradermal testing, which was associated with mild to moderate mast cell degranulation in the cisatracurium group only.[213] However, in contrast to control patients, skin tests with nondepolarizing NMBDs that were performed in patients who had an anaphylactic reaction were considered reliable. In the case of suspected anaphylactic reaction to any NMBD, it is mandatory to complete investigation for cross-reactivity with other commercially available NMBDs to identify safe alternative regimens.

All NMBDs can cause noncompetitive inhibition of histamine-*N*-methyltransferase, but the concentrations required for that inhibition greatly exceed those that would be used clinically, except in the case of vecuronium, with which the effect becomes manifest at 0.1 to 0.2 mg/kg.[214] This finding could explain the occurrence of occasional severe bronchospasm in patients after receiving vecuronium.[215] For goals of treatment of anaphylactic reactions, see Chapters 5 and 6.

DRUG INTERACTIONS AND OTHER FACTORS AFFECTING RESPONSE TO NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKERS

A drug-drug interaction is an in vivo phenomenon that occurs when the administration of one drug alters the effects or kinetics of another drug. In vitro physical or chemical incompatibilities are *not* considered drug interactions.[216]

Many drugs interact with NMBDs or their antagonists, or both, and it is beyond the scope of this chapter to review them all.[216,217] Some of the more important drug interactions with NMBDs and their antagonists are discussed in the following sections.

Interactions Among Nondepolarizing Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs

Mixtures of two nondepolarizing NMBDs are considered to be either additive or synergistic. Antagonistic interactions have not been reported in this class of drugs. Additive interactions have been demonstrated after administration of chemically related drugs, such as atracurium and mivacurium,[218] or after coadministration of various pairs of steroidal NMBDs.[98] Conversely, combinations of structurally dissimilar (e.g., a steroidal with a benzylisoquinolinium) NMBDs, such as the combinations of pancuronium and dTc,[219] pancuronium and metocurine,[219] rocuronium and mivacurium,[142] or rocuronium and cisatracurium,[109] produce a synergistic response. An additional advantage (rapid onset and short duration) is noted for mivacurium-rocuronium combinations.[142] Although the precise mechanisms underlying a synergistic interaction are not known, hypotheses that have been put forward include the existence of multiple binding sites at the neuromuscular junction (presynaptic and postsynaptic receptors)[220] and the nonequivalence of binding affinities of the two α subunits (α_H and α_L). Further, inhibition of butyrylcholinesterase by pancuronium results in decreased plasma clearance of mivacurium and marked potentiation of the neuromuscular blockade.[221]

The pharmacodynamic response to the use of two different nondepolarizing NMBDs during the course of anesthesia depends not only on the specific drugs used but also on the sequence of their administration.[222,223] Approximately three half-lives are required for a clinical changeover (so that 95% of the first drug has been cleared) and for the duration of the blockade to begin to take on the characteristics of the second drug. After the administration of pancuronium, recovery from the first two maintenance doses of vecuronium is reportedly prolonged, although this effect becomes negligible by the third dose.[222] Similarly, Naguib and colleagues noted that the mean duration of the first maintenance dose of mivacurium to 10% recovery of the first twitch was significantly longer after atracurium (25 minutes) than after mivacurium (14.2 minutes).[218] However, the duration of the second maintenance dose of mivacurium after atracurium (18.3 minutes) was similar to that of mivacurium after mivacurium (14.6 minutes).

The apparent prolongation of action of the first maintenance dose of mivacurium administered after atracurium,[218] and of those reported with vecuronium after pancuronium,[222,223] is not related to synergism. Combinations of atracurium and mivacurium[218] and of vecuronium and pancuronium[98] are simply additive. However, this prolongation in the duration of action could be attributed to the relative concentrations of these drugs at the receptor site. Because most receptors remain occupied by the drug administered initially, the clinical profile depends on the kinetics or dynamics (or both) of the drug administered first, rather than on those of the second (maintenance)

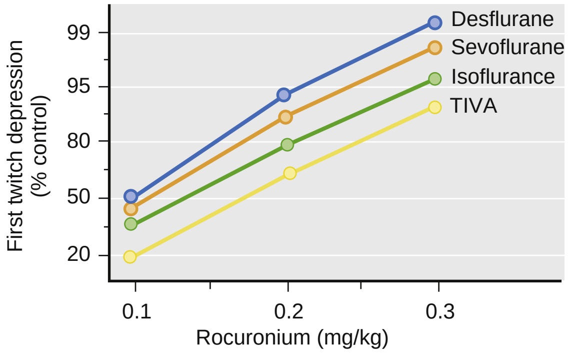


Fig. 27.15 Cumulative dose-response curves for rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade during 1.5 minimum alveolar concentration anesthesia with desflurane, sevoflurane, isoflurane, and total intravenous anesthesia *(TIVA)*. (From Wulf H, Ledowski T, Linstedt U, et al. Neuromuscular blocking effects of rocuronium during desflurane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane anaesthesia. *Can J Anaesth.* 1998;45:526–532, with permission from the *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia*.)

drug. However, with further incremental doses of the second drug, a progressively larger proportion of the receptors is occupied by that second drug, and its clinical profile becomes evident.

Interactions Between Succinylcholine and Nondepolarizing Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs

The interaction between succinylcholine and nondepolarizing NMBDs depends on the order of administration and the doses used.[81,224,225] Small doses of different nondepolarizing NMBDs administered before succinylcholine to prevent fasciculations have an antagonistic effect on the development of subsequent depolarizing block produced by succinylcholine.[27,81] Therefore it is recommended that the dose of succinylcholine be increased after the administration of a defasciculating dose of a nondepolarizing NMBD.[27]

Studies of the effects of administering succinylcholine before nondepolarizing NMBDs have produced conflicting results. Several investigators reported potentiation of the effects of pancuronium,[224] vecuronium, and atracurium[225] by prior administration of succinylcholine. In contrast, other investigators found no significant influence of succinylcholine on subsequent administration of pancuronium, rocuronium, or mivacurium.[81,226,227]

Interactions With Inhaled Anesthetics

Deep anesthesia induced with potent volatile anesthetics (in the absence of neuromuscular blockade) may cause a slight reduction of neuromuscular transmission, as measured by depression of sensitive indicators of clinical neuromuscular function, such as tetanus and TOF ratio.[228] Inhaled anesthetics also enhance the neuromuscular blocking effects of nondepolarizing NMBDs. Inhaled anesthetics decrease the required dose of NMBDs, and prolong both the duration of action of the NMBD and recovery from neuromuscular block,[229] depending on the duration of anesthesia,[228,230,231] the specific inhaled anesthetic,[232] and the concentration (dose) given.[233] The rank order of potentiation is desflurane > sevoflurane > isoflurane > halothane > nitrous oxide/barbiturate/opioid or propofol anesthesia (Fig. 27.15).[234-236]

The greater clinical muscle-relaxing effect produced by less potent anesthetics is mainly caused by their larger aqueous concentrations.[237] Desflurane and sevoflurane have low blood-gas and tissue-gas solubility, so equilibrium between the end-tidal concentration and the neuromuscular junction is reached more rapidly with these anesthetics than with older inhaled anesthetics.

The interaction between volatile anesthetics and NMBDs is one of pharmacodynamics, not pharmacokinetics.[238] The proposed mechanisms behind this interaction include (1) a central effect on α motoneurons and interneuronal synapses,[239] (2) inhibition of postsynaptic nAChR,[240] and (3) augmentation of the antagonist's affinity at the receptor site.[237]

Interactions With Antibiotics

Most antibiotics can cause neuromuscular blockade in the absence of NMBDs. The aminoglycoside antibiotics, the polymyxins, and lincomycin and clindamycin primarily inhibit the prejunctional release of acetylcholine and also depress postjunctional nAChR sensitivity to acetylcholine.[241] The tetracyclines, in contrast, exhibit postjunctional activity only. When combined with NMBDs, the aforementioned antibiotics can potentiate neuromuscular blockade.[242] The cephalosporins and penicillins have not been reported to potentiate neuromuscular blockade. Because antagonism of neuromuscular blockade with neostigmine has been reported to be more difficult after the administration of aminoglycosides,[243] ventilation should be controlled until the neuromuscular blockade terminates spontaneously. Ca^{2+} should not be used to hasten the recovery of neuromuscular function for two reasons: the antagonism it produces is not sustained, and it may prevent the antibacterial effect of the antibiotics.

Temperature

Hypothermia prolongs the duration of action of nondepolarizing NMBDs.[244-246] The force of contraction of the adductor pollicis decreases by 10% to 16% per degree Celsius decrease in muscle temperature lower than 35.2°C.[247,248] To maintain the muscle temperature at or higher than 35.2°C, the central temperature must be maintained above 36.0°C.[244] The mechanical response recovery to 10% twitch height with 0.1 mg/kg of vecuronium increases from 28 minutes at a mean central temperature of 36.4°C to 64 minutes at 34.4°C.[244] The mechanism or mechanisms underlying this prolongation may be pharmacodynamic or pharmacokinetic, or both.[246] They include diminished renal and hepatic excretion, changing volumes of distribution, altered local diffusion receptor affinity, changes in pH at the neuromuscular junction, and the net effect of cooling on the various components of neuromuscular transmission.[244,249] Hypothermia decreases the plasma clearance and prolongs the duration of action of rocuronium and vecuronium.[246] Temperature-related differences in the pharmacodynamics of vecuronium have also been reported. The k_{e0} decreases (0.023/min/°C) with lower temperature, a finding suggesting slightly delayed equilibration of drug between the circulation and the neuromuscular junction during hypothermia.[246] The Hofmann elimination process of atracurium is slowed by a decrease in pH and especially by a decrease in temperature.[250] In fact, atracurium's duration of action is markedly prolonged by hypothermia.[245] For instance, the duration of action of a dose of 0.5 mg/kg atracurium is 44 minutes at 37°C but 68 minutes at 34.0°C when evoked mechanical responses are monitored.

Changes in temperature also affect the interpretation of the results of monitoring neuromuscular blockade. For example, the duration of action of vecuronium measured in an arm cooled to a skin temperature of 27°C is prolonged, and monitoring by PTC in that arm is unreliable.[251] In the same patient, TOF responses are different if the arms are at different temperatures, and the correlation of responses in the two arms becomes progressively poorer as the temperature difference between the arms increases.[252]

The efficacy of neostigmine is not altered by mild hypothermia.[253-255] Hypothermia does not change the clearance, maximum effect, or duration of action of neostigmine in volunteers.[255] Mild hypothermia prolonged sugammadex reversal of deep rocuronium block by 46 seconds, a prolongation considered clinically acceptable.[255a]

Interactions With Magnesium and Calcium

Magnesium sulfate, given for treatment of preeclampsia and eclamptic toxemia, potentiates the neuromuscular blockade induced by nondepolarizing NMBDs.[256,257] After a dose of 40 mg/kg of magnesium sulfate, the ED_{50} of vecuronium was reduced by 25%, the onset time was nearly halved, and the recovery time nearly doubled.[257] Neostigmine-induced recovery is also attenuated in patients treated with magnesium.[256] The mechanisms underlying the enhancement of nondepolarizing block by magnesium probably involve both prejunctional and postjunctional effects. High magnesium concentrations inhibit Ca^{2+} channels at the presynaptic nerve terminals that trigger the release of acetylcholine.[16] Further, magnesium ions have an inhibitory effect on postjunctional potentials and cause decreased excitability of muscle fiber membranes. In patients receiving magnesium, the dose of nondepolarizing NMBDs must be reduced and carefully titrated using an objective monitor to ensure adequate recovery of neuromuscular function prior to tracheal extubation.

The interaction between magnesium and succinylcholine is controversial, with some reports suggesting that magnesium antagonizes the block produced by succinylcholine.[258] Ca^{2+} triggers the release of acetylcholine from the motor nerve terminal and enhances excitation-contraction coupling in muscle.[16] Increasing Ca^{2+} concentrations decreased the sensitivity to dTc and pancuronium in a muscle-nerve model.[259] In hyperparathyroidism, hypercalcemia is associated with decreased sensitivity to atracurium and thus a shortened time course of neuromuscular blockade.[260]

Interactions With Lithium

Lithium is used for treatment of bipolar affective disorder (manic-depressive illness). The lithium ion resembles Na^+, K^+, magnesium, and Ca^{2+} ions, and therefore may affect the distribution and kinetics of all these electrolytes.[261] Lithium enters cells via Na^+ channels and tends to accumulate within the cells.

By its activation of K^+ channels, lithium inhibits neuromuscular transmission presynaptically and muscular contraction postsynaptically.[262] The combination of lithium and pipecuronium results in a synergistic inhibition of neuromuscular transmission, whereas the combination of lithium and succinylcholine results in additive inhibition.[262] Prolongation of neuromuscular blockade was reported in patients taking lithium carbonate and receiving both depolarizing and nondepolarizing NMBDs.[263] Only one report did not demonstrate prolongation of recovery from succinylcholine in patients receiving lithium.[264] In patients who are stabilized on lithium therapy and undergoing surgery, NMBDs should be administered in incremental and reduced doses and titrated to the degree of blockade required.

Interactions With Local Anesthetic and Antidysrhythmic Drugs

Local anesthetics act on the presynaptic and postsynaptic part of the neuromuscular junction. In large intravenous doses, most local anesthetics block neuromuscular transmission; in smaller doses, they enhance the neuromuscular blockade produced by both nondepolarizing and depolarizing NMBDs.[265] The ability of neostigmine to antagonize a combined local anesthetic–neuromuscular blockade has not been studied. Procaine also inhibits butyrylcholinesterase and may augment the effects of succinylcholine and mivacurium by decreasing their hydrolysis by the enzyme.

In small intravenous doses, local anesthetics depress posttetanic potentiation, and this is thought to be a neural prejunctional effect.[266] With larger doses, local anesthetics block acetylcholine-induced muscular contractions, a finding suggesting that local anesthetics have a stabilizing effect on the postjunctional membrane.[267] Procaine displaces Ca^{2+} from the sarcolemma and thus inhibits caffeine-induced contracture of skeletal muscle.[268] Most of these mechanisms of action probably apply to all local anesthetics.

Several drugs used for the treatment of dysrhythmias augment the blockade induced by NMBDs. Single-fiber electromyography found that verapamil and amlodipine impair neuromuscular transmission in subjects without neuromuscular disease.[269] Clinical reports suggested potentiation of neuromuscular block with verapamil[270] and impaired reversal of vecuronium in a patient receiving disopyramide.[271] However, the clinical significance of these interactions is probably minor.

Interactions With Antiepileptic Drugs

Anticonvulsants have a depressant action on acetylcholine release at the neuromuscular junction.[272,273] Patients receiving long-term anticonvulsant therapy demonstrated resistance to nondepolarizing NMBDs (except mivacurium[274] and probably atracurium as well[273]), as evidenced by accelerated recovery from neuromuscular blockade and the need for increased doses to achieve complete neuromuscular blockade. Vecuronium clearance is increased two-fold in patients receiving long-term carbamazepine therapy.[275] Other investigators, however, attribute this resistance to the increased binding (i.e., decreased free fraction) of the NMBDs to α_1-acid glycoproteins or to upregulation of neuromuscular acetylcholine receptors (or to both mechanisms).[276] The latter could also explain the hypersensitivity seen with succinylcholine.[277] The slight prolongation of succinylcholine's action in patients taking anticonvulsants has few clinical implications. Conversely, the potential hyperkalemic response to succinylcholine in the presence of receptor upregulation is of concern.

Interactions With Diuretics

Early results showed that in patients undergoing renal transplantation, the intensity and duration of dTc neuromuscular blockade was increased after a dose of furosemide (1 mg/kg intravenously).[278]

Furosemide reduced the concentration of dTc required to achieve 50% twitch tension depression in the indirectly stimulated rat diaphragm and intensified the neuromuscular blockade produced by dTc and succinylcholine.[279] Furosemide appears to inhibit the production of cyclic adenosine monophosphate. In addition, the breakdown of adenosine triphosphate is inhibited, resulting in reduced output of acetylcholine. Acetazolamide antagonized the effects of anticholinesterases in the rat phrenic-diaphragm preparation.[280] However, in one report, 1 mg/kg of furosemide facilitated recovery of the evoked twitch response after pancuronium.[281] Long-term furosemide treatment had no effect on either dTc- or pancuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade.[282]

In contrast, mannitol appears to have no effect on a nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade. Increasing urine output by the administration of mannitol or other osmotic or tubular diuretics has no effect on the rate at which dTc and presumably other NMBDs are eliminated in the urine.[283]

Interactions With Other Drugs

Dantrolene, a drug used for the treatment of malignant hyperthermia, prevents Ca^{2+} release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum and blocks excitation-contraction coupling. Although dantrolene does not block neuromuscular transmission, the mechanical response to stimulation is depressed, resulting in potentiation of nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade.[284]

Azathioprine, an immunodepressant drug that is used in patients undergoing renal transplantation, has a minor antagonistic action on muscle relaxant–induced neuromuscular blockade.[285]

Steroids antagonize the effects of nondepolarizing NMBDs in both humans[286] and animals.[287] Possible mechanisms for this interaction include facilitation of acetylcholine release because of the effect of steroids on the presynaptic motor nerve terminal.[288] Other reports, however, described a noncompetitive inhibition and channel blockade of the nAChR.[289] Endogenous steroids act noncompetitively on nAChRs.[290] Prolonged treatment with a combination of corticosteroids and NMBDs can result in prolonged weakness in patients receiving critical care (see the later section on NMBDs and weakness syndromes in critically ill patients).

Antiestrogenic drugs such as tamoxifen appear to potentiate the effects of nondepolarizing NMBDs.[291]

Special Populations

PEDIATRIC PATIENTS

The development of the neuromuscular junction is not complete at birth.[16] In humans, maturation of neuromuscular transmission occurs after the first 2 months of age, although immature junctions have been found up to 2 years of age. The main evolution during the first months of life is that the fetal receptors located outside the neuromuscular junction will disappear and will be replaced by mature receptors with ε subunits instead of γ subunits. These changes suggest that that the neonate's neuromuscular junction may exhibit evidence of its immaturity by changes in response to NMBDs, although NMBDs can be used safely in term and preterm infants.

The routine administration of succinylcholine to healthy children should be discontinued. In apparently healthy children, intractable cardiac arrest with hyperkalemia, rhabdomyolysis, and acidosis may develop after succinylcholine administration, particularly in patients with unsuspected muscular dystrophy of the Duchenne type[292] (see the section on complications of succinylcholine).

Significant age-related differences in the potency of nondepolarizing NMBDs exist in infants and children when compared with adults. Children require higher doses of nondepolarizing NMBDs than any other age group of patients. In infants less than 1 year old, the ED_{95} at the adductor pollicis is approximately 30% less than in older children. It is not apparent from older studies whether the neonate is more sensitive than adults to nondepolarizing NMBDs,[293] although most of the studies showed a wider range of dosage requirement in the neonate. These apparent discrepancies have been explained in studies by Fisher and associates on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of NMBDs in infants, children, and adults.[294-296] Neonates and infants are more sensitive than adults to the neuromuscular blocking effects of dTc.[294] Plasma concentrations required to achieve a desired level of neuromuscular blockade are 57% and 32% lower in neonates and infants, respectively, when compared with children. However, the dosage should not be decreased as much because neonates and infants have a larger volume of distribution at steady state. This increased volume of distribution results from the increase in extracellular fluid volume during the first months of life. This increase, in association with a lower elimination clearance, contributes to a longer elimination half-life.[294,297] In infants, less frequent dosing (longer dosing intervals) of nondepolarizing NMBDs may be required than in older children.

Atracurium, vecuronium, cisatracurium, rocuronium, and mivacurium are commonly administered to children because many surgical procedures are of short duration in children and are compatible with the duration of action of a single intubating dose. Onset time of neuromuscular block is faster in infants (30%) and children (40%) when compared with adults. This age-related effect is probably caused by circulatory factors such as the relative decrease in cardiac output and increase in circulation time with age.

As for long-acting NMBDs, the sensitivity of infants to vecuronium is greater than that of children (ED_{95} 0.047 mg/kg vs. 0.081 mg/kg, respectively).[298,299] An increased duration of action in infants is most likely secondary to the increased volume of distribution of vecuronium because its clearance is unchanged.[295,297] An age-dependent prolongation of action has been demonstrated in infants. A dose of 0.1 mg/kg of vecuronium produces almost a complete neuromuscular block of approximately 60 minutes' duration in infants but of only 20 minutes' duration in children and adults. Vecuronium therefore acts as a long-acting muscle NMBD in the neonate.[295,297]

In contrast, the duration of action of atracurium is not significantly different in the pediatric patient from that in the adult.[300] As with vecuronium and dTc, the volume of distribution is increased in infants.[296] However, the clearance of atracurium is also more rapid.[296] Therefore the same dose (0.5-0.6 mg/kg) can be used in infants, children, and adults for tracheal intubation without any major differences among the three groups in the drug's duration of action. Atracurium recovery from neuromuscular blockade is little affected by age in pediatric patients more than 1 month old. Histamine release and the occurrence of untoward reactions caused by atracurium are less frequent in children than in adults. In children, a dose of 0.1 μg/kg of cisatracurium has an onset just longer than 2 minutes and a clinical duration of approximately 30 minutes during balanced or halothane anesthesia.[301] The calculated ED_{95} doses of cisatracurium in infants and children are 43 and 47 μg/kg, respectively.[302] The mean infusion rate necessary to maintain 90% to 99% neuromuscular blockade is also similar in infants and children.[302]

Rocuronium in adults is an intermediate-acting NMBD with a faster onset of action than other nondepolarizing NMBDs, and this is also true in infants and children.[303,304] The ED_{95} is approximately 0.4 mg/kg in children; it is approximately 20% to 30% greater than that in adults, but its onset is faster in adults.[304] In children, 0.6 mg/kg of rocuronium produces better conditions for rapid tracheal intubation (approximately 60 seconds) than does 0.1 mg/kg of vecuronium (approximately 100 seconds) or 0.5 mg/kg of atracurium (approximately 180 seconds).[303] Evidence indicates that, even during sevoflurane induction in infants, the addition of 0.3 mg/kg rocuronium significantly improves intubating conditions and significantly decreases the frequency of respiratory adverse events such as desaturation because of laryngospasm during induction.[305] As with adults, for rapid sequence induction and intubation (60 seconds) in the presence of a full stomach, a 1.2 mg/kg dose of rocuronium is suggested to provide rapid, excellent intubating conditions in pediatric patients.

The rate of recovery of intermediate- or short-acting NMBDs is faster than that of long-acting drugs in children. A neostigmine dose of 30 μg/kg in children is quite comparable to the usual dose of 40 μg/kg in adults and provides satisfactory antagonism of nondepolarizing NMBD. Neostigmine-assisted recovery is dependent on age and is more rapid in children than either infants or adults.[305a] Several studies have demonstrated that when children's tracheas were extubated using clinical criteria of recovery, the TOF ratio did not exceed 0.50 to 0.60, whereas a TOF ratio greater than 0.90 is required to guarantee full recovery from neuromuscular block. These results highlight the need for objective (quantitative) assessment of neuromuscular block, even in infants and children, because of their sensitivity and variability in their responsiveness to nondepolarizing NMBDs.

OLDER PATIENTS

The pharmacodynamics of NMBDs may be altered in older patients. Physiologic changes such as decreases in total body water and lean body mass, increases in total body fat, decreases in hepatic and renal blood flow and hepatic enzyme activity, and decreases in glomerular filtration rate (≈20%/year in adults) typically accompany the aging process. These changes may account for the altered responses of older adults to NMBDs. Some physiologic and anatomic changes at the neuromuscular junction also occur with aging. These include an increase in the distance between the junctional axon and the motor end plate, flattening of the folds of the motor end plate, decreased concentration of acetylcholine receptors at the motor end plate, decrease in the amount of acetylcholine in each vesicle in the prejunctional axon, and decreased release of acetylcholine from the preterminal axon in response to a neural impulse.[16]

Several studies found no differences in the initial dose requirement for nondepolarizing muscle relaxants in older adults. The dose-response curves of atracurium, pancuronium, and vecuronium were shifted slightly to the right of the curves for the younger adult subjects; however, no significant differences were noted. After a bolus dose of pancuronium, no significant difference was observed in any of the plasma concentrations corresponding to a fixed degree of neuromuscular block. Such results confirm that nondepolarizing muscle relaxants are as potent in older as in young adult patients. The onset of neuromuscular block can be delayed and can be correlated with age.[306] This age-related effect is probably caused by circulatory factors such as the decrease in cardiac output and increase in circulation time in older adults. These factors induce slower biophase equilibration with plasma. The onset of rocuronium neuromuscular block was prolonged to 3.7 from 3.1 minutes in older adults. Similarly, the onset of cisatracurium is delayed approximately 1 minute in this age group.

A prolongation of the duration of action of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants and a decrease in dose requirements for the maintenance of neuromuscular block have been observed with several currently available muscle relaxants in older adults. These results are explained by pharmacokinetic changes in this population. The distribution and elimination may be altered by any of the multitude of physiologic changes that accompany the aging process. The effect of aging alone, as opposed to disease states often associated with the aging process, may be difficult to distinguish in identifying mechanisms of altered NMBD action in older adults.

Pancuronium,[307] vecuronium,[295,308] and rocuronium[177] depend on the kidney or the liver (or both) for their metabolism and elimination. Therefore they all show altered pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics in older patients. Pancuronium has delayed recovery in older adults because of decreased plasma clearance secondary to delayed urinary excretion. Vecuronium dose requirements to maintain a constant neuromuscular block are decreased by approximately 36% in patients older than 60 years, and spontaneous recovery is significantly longer in older patients.[25] Plasma clearance is reduced by more than 50% and elimination half-life prolonged by 60% in older patients.[308] The prolongation of vecuronium action appears to be secondary to decreased drug elimination consistent with age-associated decreases in hepatic and renal blood flows. The duration of action of rocuronium and the recovery index are also increased in older adults. The prolongation of action can be explained by a 27% decrease in plasma clearance.

In the case of drugs whose elimination is independent of hepatic or renal blood flow, pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics should not be altered significantly by age. Atracurium has multiple routes of elimination. Degradation by Hofmann elimination and ester hydrolysis is independent of the liver and the kidney and is not affected by age. The only pharmacokinetic change is a slight increase of the volume of distribution at steady state leading to a modestly increased elimination half-life. Consequently, the duration of action, the recovery index, and the dose requirement during a continuous infusion are independent of age. Cisatracurium is mainly eliminated by Hofmann elimination, and unlike atracurium, cisatracurium does not undergo hydrolysis by specific esterases. It exhibits a slightly delayed onset of effect in older patients because of slower biophase equilibration. Clearances are not decreased in patients of advanced age. The slight prolongation of the elimination half-life of the drug in older adults is secondary to an increased volume of distribution at steady state (+10%). These minor pharmacokinetic changes are not associated with changes in the recovery profile in older patients.

Butyrylcholinesterase activity in older adults, although still in the normal range, is approximately 26% lower than that in young adults.[309] Because mivacurium is metabolized by butyrylcholinesterase, its clearance is likely to be slightly reduced in older patients, thus resulting in a 20% to 25% longer duration of action,[310] as well as a decreased infusion requirement to maintain a stable depth of block. Succinylcholine metabolism is unaffected by these changes.

In general, when maintaining neuromuscular blockade with nondepolarizing NMBDs in older patients, one can expect that, with the exception of atracurium and cisatracurium, the dosing interval will be increased to maintain the desired depth of neuromuscular blockade. The choice of drug and monitoring the depth of blockade are exceptionally important in this population because recovery of neuromuscular function is generally delayed in older patients. Inadequate or incomplete recovery of muscle strength after the use of pancuronium is associated with an increased incidence of perioperative pulmonary complications in this patient population.[129] The clear relationship between incomplete recovery from neuromuscular block and occurrence of critical respiratory events in the PACU highlights the need for objective monitoring to ensure recovery of neuromuscular block in older patients.

OBESE PATIENTS

The level of plasma pseudocholinesterase activity and the volume of extracellular fluid, which are the main determinants of the duration of action of succinylcholine, are increased in obese patients. For complete neuromuscular paralysis and predictable intubating conditions, a 1-mg/kg dose based on total-body weight (TBW) is recommended.[311]

Initial studies showed that obese subjects needed significantly more pancuronium than nonobese patients to maintain a constant 90% depression of twitch height. However, when corrected for body surface area (BSA), no significant difference was noted in dose requirement to maintain neuromuscular block.

The use of NMBDs with an intermediate duration of action should be preferred. Vecuronium doses based on TBW induce a prolonged duration of action in obese patients, although vecuronium pharmacokinetics is unaltered by obesity. The prolonged recovery in obese patients can be explained by the larger total dose of vecuronium administered to these patients. With larger doses, when administration is based on TBW, recovery occurs during the elimination phase when plasma concentration decreases more slowly than during the distribution phase.[312] The pharmacokinetics of rocuronium is not altered by obesity. In the same way, the duration of action of rocuronium is significantly prolonged when the dose is calculated according to TBW. In contrast, when rocuronium is dosed according to ideal body weight (IBW), the clinical duration is less than half.[313,314]

A correlation exists between the duration of action of atracurium and TBW when the dose is given as milligrams per kilogram of TBW. The clinical duration of action is doubled when the drug is given based on TBW versus IBW. There is little difference between obese and normal-weight patients in atracurium elimination half-life (19.8 vs. 19.7 minutes), volume of distribution at steady state (8.6 vs. 8.5 L), and total clearance (444 vs. 404 mL/min).[315] The finding that IBW avoids prolonged recovery of atracurium-induced blockade can be explained by an unchanged muscle mass and an unchanged volume of distribution in morbidly obese patients compared with normal-weight patients.[316] The duration of cisatracurium is also prolonged in obese patients when the drug is given on the basis of TBW versus IBW.

In summary, nondepolarizing NMBDs should be given to obese patients on the basis of IBW rather than on their actual body weight, to ensure that these patients are not receiving relative overdoses and to avoid prolonged recovery. When using maintenance doses, objective monitoring is strongly recommended to avoid accumulation.

SEVERE RENAL DISEASE

NMBDs contain quaternary ammonium groups that make them very hydrophilic. They are therefore usually completely ionized at a pH of 7.4 and are poorly bound to plasma proteins. The predominant pathway of elimination of steroidal muscle relaxants is ultrafiltration by the glomeruli before urinary excretion. Renal failure influences the pharmacologic characteristics of nondepolarizing NMBDs by producing either decreased renal elimination of the drug or its metabolites. Only atracurium, cisatracurium, and, to some extent, vecuronium are independent of renal function. Succinylcholine elimination is mainly independent of kidney function. However, succinylcholine is metabolized by plasma cholinesterases, and concentrations may be slightly decreased in patients with severe renal failure (Table 27.11). The decrease in plasma cholinesterase activity is always moderate (30%) and does not result in prolongation of succinylcholine-induced neuromuscular block. Succinylcholine induces a transient increase in plasma K^+ concentration (<0.5 mmol/L). Therefore succinylcholine is not contraindicated in severe renal failure when plasma K^+ concentrations are within the normal range. The duration of action of NMBDs may be prolonged in patients with renal failure.

Renal failure does not alter the sensitivity (dose response) of patients to the neuromuscular blocking action of pancuronium,[317] atracurium,[318] vecuronium,[319] or rocuronium.[320] All long-acting muscle relaxants are eliminated predominantly through the kidney, and renal failure is associated with reduced plasma clearance and increased elimination half-life for these drugs as well.[103] The elimination half-life of pancuronium is increased by 500% in patients with severe renal failure. As a consequence of these

TABLE 27.11 Pharmacokinetics of Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs in Patients With Normal Renal Function or Renal Failure

	PLASMA CLEARANCE (ML/KG/MIN)		VOLUME OF DISTRIBUTION (ML/KG)		ELIMINATION HALF-LIFE (MIN)		
	Normal Function	**Renal Failure**	**Normal Function**	**Renal Failure**	**Normal Function**	**Renal Failure**	**References**
SHORT-ACTING DRUGS							
Mivacurium isomers							160
Cis-trans	106	80	278	475	2.0	4.3	
Trans-trans	57	48	211	270	2.3	4.3	
Cis-cis	3.8	2.4*	227	244	68	80	
INTERMEDIATE-ACTING DRUGS							
Atracurium	6.1	6.7	182	224	21	24	172
	5.5	5.8	153	141	19	20	173*,†
	10.9	7.8	280	265	17.3	19.7	322
Cisatracurium	5.2	—	31	—	—	—	169
Vecuronium	3.0	2.5	194	239	78	97	324
	5.3	3.1*	199	241	53	83*	325
Rocuronium	2.9	2.9	207	264*	71	97*	175
LONG-ACTING DRUGS							
d-Tubocurarine	2.4	1.5	250	250	84	132	115
Pancuronium	74	20*	148	236*	97	475*	149†
	1.7	0.9	261	296*	132	257*	380

*Significant difference between normal renal function versus renal failure.
†Values expressed as mL/min, not weight adjusted.

pharmacokinetic changes, the duration of neuromuscular blockade produced by these drugs is longer and more variable than in patients with normal renal function. Because of the potential for prolonged blockade and the availability of intermediate- and short-acting NMBDs, long-acting NMBDs should not be used in patients with renal failure.

The pharmacokinetics and duration of action of atracurium are unaffected by renal failure.[321,322] This lack of effect is in part because Hofmann elimination and ester hydrolysis[173] account for 50% of its total clearance.[167] Laudanosine, the principal metabolite of atracurium, is eliminated unchanged by the kidney. The elimination half-life of laudanosine increases in renal failure.[322] Even during continuous administration of atracurium, laudanosine plasma concentrations are 10 times lower than concentrations associated with seizures in dogs.

In patients with chronic renal failure, the duration of action of cisatracurium is not prolonged.[323] Hofmann elimination accounts for 77% of the total clearance of cisatracurium,[169] and renal excretion accounts for 16% of its elimination.[169] The peak plasma laudanosine concentration is 10 times lower than after equipotent doses of atracurium. In patients with end-stage renal failure, the volume of distribution is unchanged, but there is a 13% reduction in clearance and an increase from 30 to 34 minutes in elimination half-life.

Vecuronium relies principally on hepatic mechanisms for its elimination. However, its clearance is reduced and its elimination half-life is increased in patients with renal failure.[324,325] In one study, the duration of action of 0.1 mg/kg of vecuronium was both longer and more variable in patients with renal failure than in those with normal renal function.[325] In three other studies, the duration of action of 0.05 to 0.14 mg/kg of vecuronium was not prolonged by renal failure, but this result was likely caused by the use of relatively small doses or inadequate sample sizes.[324] The principal metabolite of vecuronium, 3-desacetylvecuronium, has 80% of the neuromuscular blocking activity of vecuronium[153]; it may cause prolonged paralysis in patients with renal failure in the ICU.[156] In patients with renal failure, the duration of action and the rate of recovery from vecuronium- or atracurium-induced neuromuscular blockade during surgery are similar.[326]

The major routes of elimination of rocuronium are biliary and urinary excretion. Rocuronium is taken up by the liver and metabolized, excreted, or both, in bile and feces in high concentrations. After 0.6 mg/kg rocuronium, up to one fifth of the dose is recovered unchanged from the urine within 24 hours, and no active metabolites can be found in humans. Pharmacokinetic studies showed that the clearance of rocuronium was reduced by 33% to 39% in patients with renal failure.[326a] The distribution volume of this drug remained unchanged or slightly increased.[175] The elimination half-life was 70 and 57 minutes in patients with and without renal failure, respectively. The duration of action of single and repeated doses, however, was not affected significantly.[320]

In renal failure, there is no significant change in the volume of distribution of neostigmine. The clearance is decreased by two thirds and the elimination half-life is

TABLE 27.12 Pharmacokinetics of Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs in Patients With Normal Liver Function or Hepatobiliary Disease

	PLASMA CLEARANCE (ML/KG/MIN)		VOLUME OF DISTRIBUTION (ML/KG)		ELIMINATION HALF-LIFE (MIN)			
	Normal	**Disease**	**Normal**	**Disease**	**Normal**	**Disease**	**Hepatic Pathology**	**References**
SHORT-ACTING DRUGS								
Mivacurium isomers							Cirrhosis	159
Cis-trans	95	44*	210	188	1.53	2.48*		
Trans-trans	70	32*	200	199	2.32	11.1*		
Cis-cis	5.2	4.2	266	237	50.3	60.8		
INTERMEDIATE-ACTING DRUGS								
Atracurium	5.3	6.5	159	207*	21	22	Hepatorenal	318
	6.6	8.0*	202	282*	21	25	Cirrhosis	174
Cisatracurium	5.7	6.6*	161	195*	23.5	24.4	Transplantation	
Vecuronium	4.26	2.73*	246	253	58	84*	Cirrhosis	154
	4.30	2.36*	247	206	58	98*	Cholestasis	381
	4.5	4.4	180	220	58	51	Cirrhosis	155
Rocuronium	2.79	2.41	184	234	87.5	96.0	Cirrhosis	176
	217	217	16.4	23.4*	76.4	111.5*	Mixed	178†
	296	189	151	264*	56	98*	Cirrhosis	326c†
	3.70	2.66*	211	248	92	143*	Cirrhosis	179
LONG-ACTING DRUGS								
Pancuronium	123	59*	261	307*	133	267*	Cholestasis	151†
	1.86	1.45*	279	416*	114	208*	Cirrhosis	150
	1.76	1.47	284	425*	141	224*	Cholestasis	383

*Significant difference between normal hepatic function versus hepatobiliary disease.
†Values expressed as mL/min, or L, not weight adjusted.

prolonged from 80 to 183 minutes in patients with renal failure. The clearance of edrophonium is also significantly reduced and its elimination half-life significantly prolonged in patients with end-stage renal failure.

HEPATOBILIARY DISEASE

In comparison with renal elimination, liver function is a modest determinant of the pharmacokinetics of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants. The influence of hepatobiliary disease on the pharmacokinetics of NMBDs can be complex because of the different types of liver failure (Table 27.12). Cirrhosis is associated with an increased extracellular water compartment, edema, and, often, kidney dysfunction. Cholestasis induces decreased biliary excretion but is not associated with significant liver failure, contrary to acute hepatic failure.

A delayed onset of action and an apparent resistance to nondepolarizing muscle relaxants occur in patients with cirrhosis, although studies demonstrated that the sensitivity of the neuromuscular junction was unaltered. This is the consequence of the increased volume of distribution, which induces greater dilution of muscle relaxants in cirrhotic patients. The increase of terminal half-life can be secondary to either the increased volume of distribution or decreased biliary excretion for muscle relaxants dependent on hepatic function for elimination.[154] Following a single dose of nondepolarizing muscle relaxant, in most of the cases, no prolongation of the duration of action occurs because it is dependent on distribution. However, for muscle relaxants dependent on hepatic elimination, prolongation of neuromuscular block can be observed following repeated doses or continuous infusion.

Pancuronium is mainly eliminated through the kidney, although one third of the dose is metabolized and excreted through the liver. The elimination half-life increases from 114 to 208 minutes in cirrhotic patients.[150] This is the consequence of a 50% increase of the volume of distribution in conjunction with a 22% decrease in plasma clearance.[150] Cholestasis induces a 50% decrease in pancuronium clearance leading to a prolonged elimination half-life of 270 minutes. Severe acute hepatic failure also induces reduced plasma clearance and a prolonged elimination half-life.

Vecuronium elimination is mainly through the bile.[326b] Only a small fraction is metabolized to 3-hydroxyvecuronium, which still has 60-80% of the potency of vecuronium. This metabolic process is presumed to occur in the liver because 40% of the total dose of vecuronium is found in the liver and bile as both parent drug and metabolite.[147] The elimination half-life is increased in mildly decompensated cirrhotic patients as the result of a decreased clearance,[154] whereas the volume of distribution of the central compartment and the volume of distribution at steady state can be increased. In cirrhotic patients, the duration of action of vecuronium is related to the dose. A dose of 0.1 mg/kg has a slower onset of action and a shorter duration of action because the volume of distribution is increased. In contrast, after 0.2 mg/kg vecuronium, the duration of action is increased from 65 minutes to 91 minutes in cirrhotic patients because elimination is impaired. Cholestasis can increase plasma concentration of bile salts and thus reduce the hepatic uptake of vecuronium,[147] as well as pancuronium. This may explain the decreased clearance observed by some investigators. The duration of action of vecuronium is increased by 50% in patients with biliary obstruction.

Rocuronium is mainly excreted into the bile. The volume of both the central compartment (+33%) and the volume of distribution at steady state (+43%) are increased in cirrhotic patients, whereas clearance may be decreased.[326c] The duration of action is prolonged in patients with hepatic disease, and a correlation exists between the increased volume of distribution and the slower onset of action when compared with controls.[176]

Atracurium and cisatracurium share organ-independent modes of elimination.[165,168,169] As a consequence, their clearance should be little affected by hepatic disease. In fact, and in contrast to all other NMBDs, the plasma clearances of atracurium and cisatracurium are slightly increased in patients with liver disease (see Table 27.12).[174,180] Because elimination of atracurium and cisatracurium occurs outside of, as well as from within, the central compartment, investigators have suggested that a larger distribution volume should be associated with greater clearance.[169] In two studies,[174,180] volumes of distribution and clearances of the drugs increased with liver disease, thereby lending support to this hypothesis.[169] The increased clearance of the relaxant in patients with liver disease is not reflected in a decrease in the drug's duration of action.[174,180]

One concern raised about administering atracurium to patients with hepatic disease is the possible accumulation of laudanosine. Although laudanosine relies principally on hepatic mechanisms for its elimination, the concentrations encountered during liver transplantation are unlikely to be associated with clinical sequelae.[327]

Because of the wide interindividual variations seen in the response to nondepolarizing muscle relaxants in patients with hepatic disease, quantitative monitoring of neuromuscular block is required, with careful titration of doses.

In patients with severe liver disease, butyrylcholinesterase activity is decreased because of decreased synthesis of the hepatic enzymes. Consequently, the plasma clearance of the isomers of mivacurium is decreased by approximately 50% (see Table 27.12),[159] and the drug's duration of action is prolonged and may be almost tripled.[159]

TABLE 27.13 Conditions Associated With Upregulation and Downregulation of Acetylcholine Receptors

nAChR Upregulation	nAChR Downregulation
Spinal cord injury	Myasthenia gravis
Stroke	Anticholinesterase poisoning
Burns	Organophosphate poisoning
Prolonged immobility	
Prolonged exposure to neuromuscular blockers	
Multiple sclerosis	
Guillain-Barré syndrome	

nAChR, Nicotinic acetylcholine receptor.

BURNS

In patients with burn injuries, muscle relaxants can be used to facilitate mechanical ventilation, which can be associated with sustained improvement in oxygenation. After a period of immobilization, burn injury causes upregulation of both fetal ($\alpha_2\beta\gamma\delta$) and mature ($\alpha_2\beta\varepsilon\delta$) nAChRs.[328] This upregulation of nAChRs usually is associated with resistance to nondepolarizing NMBDs and increased sensitivity to succinylcholine.[329] Causes of upregulation of nAChRs are listed in Table 27.13. A significant increase in the quantal content of evoked acetylcholine release is typically noted by 72 hours after scald injury in rats.[330] This increase also contributes to the resistance to NMBDs in patients with burn injuries. In mice, thermal injury induces changes in diaphragm acetylcholinesterase with respect to total content and specific molecular forms.[331]

Resistance to the effects of nondepolarizing NMBDs is usually seen in patients with burns over at least 25% of their total BSA.[329,332,333] Recovery of neuromuscular function to preburn levels may take several months or even years after the burn injury.[334] The increase in serum K^+ concentration that normally follows succinylcholine administration is markedly exaggerated in burned patients and may be lethal.[335] K^+ concentrations as high as 13 mEq/L, resulting in ventricular tachycardia, fibrillation, and cardiac arrest, have been reported.[335] The magnitude of the hyperkalemic response does not appear to correlate closely with the magnitude of the burn injury. Potentially lethal hyperkalemia was seen in a patient with only an 8% total BSA burn.[336] Succinylcholine has been safely administered within 24 hours of a burn injury. It can be used for prehospital or emergency room intubation. After an initial 24-hour interval, however, sufficient alteration in muscle response may have occurred. Because of the unpredictability of occurrence of hyperkalemia, the use of succinylcholine is best avoided after 24 hours following a burn injury.

The time course of abnormal muscle membrane function corresponds with that of the healing process. Once normal skin has regrown and any infection subsides, the normal acetylcholine receptor populations appear to return.[334] Although normal responses to succinylcholine have been demonstrated in burned patients studied 3 years after injury,[334] the actual length of time during which a patient

BOX 27.1 Reported Indications for the Use of Muscle Relaxants in the Intensive Care Unit

- Facilitation of mechanical ventilation
  - Facilitation of endotracheal intubation
  - Enabling patient to tolerate mechanical ventilation
  - High pulmonary inflation pressures (e.g., acute respiratory distress syndrome)
- Hyperventilation for increased intracranial pressure
- Facilitation of therapeutic or diagnostic procedures
- Tetanus
- Status epilepticus
- Reduction of oxygen consumption
  - Abolishing shivering
  - Reduction of work of breathing

with a burn injury may be at risk for the hyperkalemic response is not well defined. A conservative guideline therefore would be to avoid the use of succinylcholine in patients 24 hours after a thermal injury and for at least 1 or 2 years after the burned skin has healed.

USE OF NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKING DRUGS AND WEAKNESS SYNDROMES IN CRITICALLY ILL PATIENTS

NMBDs are frequently used in conjunction with sedatives and analgesics in ICUs. The indications for the use of NMBDs in the ICU are outlined in Box 27.1. Few available data support their use, and evidence for a beneficial effect on pulmonary function or patient oxygenation is inconclusive.[337] However, a multicenter, double-blind trial showed that, in a subset of patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome, early and short-term administration of cisatracurium for 48 hours could be beneficial.[338] Half of the patients in the placebo group in that study received one or more doses of cisatracurium. The study was underpowered, and the effect on mortality was statistically borderline, with no between-group difference in crude mortality rate. Yet, nondepolarizing NMBDs are sometimes used in ICU patients. Of particular concern in intensive-care settings is the risk that paralyzed patients receive inadequate analgesia and sedation.[339] This reason for this concern may be that ICU nurses and physicians are unfamiliar with the pharmacology of the NMBDs.[339,340] For instance, pancuronium was thought to be an anxiolytic by 50% to 70% of ICU nurses and house staff, and 5% to 10% thought it was an analgesic.[339] In the United Kingdom, the erroneous use of NMBDs as sedatives in intensive care was not uncommon in the 1980s.[341] Approximately 96% of ICU patients received NMBDs to aid mechanical ventilation in 1980. By 1986, their use had decreased to 16% of ventilated patients.[341] Currently, intensivists are aware of the side effects and generally avoid administration of NMBDs to critically ill ICU patients. Clinical practice guidelines for management of critically ill adults who require neuromuscular paralysis have been published.[341a] Specific indications for the use of NMBDs in the ICU setting include severe, refractory hypoxemia; suppression of shivering during therapeutic hypothermia after cardiac arrest; elimination of unwanted movement in patients with status asthmaticus, high intracranial or intraabdominal pressure, massive hemoptysis, or to facilitate short procedures such as bronchoscopy or endoscopy; and acute respiratory failure in patients who require emergent tracheal intubation.[341a]

BOX 27.2 Complications of Muscle Paralysis in the Intensive Care Unit

- Short-term use
  - Specific, known drug side effects
  - Inadequate ventilation in the event of a ventilator failure or circuit disconnection
  - Inadequate analgesia and/or sedation
- Long-term use
  - Complications of immobility
    - Deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolus
    - Peripheral nerve injuries
    - Decubitus ulcers
- Inability to cough
  - Retention of secretions and atelectasis
  - Pulmonary infection
- Dysregulation of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors
- Prolonged paralysis after stopping relaxant
  - Persistent neuromuscular blockade
  - Critical illness myopathy
  - Critical illness polyneuropathy
  - Combination of the above
- Unrecognized effects of drug or metabolites
  - Succinylcholine and metabolic acidosis or hypovolemia
  - 3-Desacetylvecuronium and neuromuscular blockade
  - Laudanosine and cerebral excitation

A prolonged ICU stay during critical illness is associated with disorders of neuromuscular function that contribute to morbidity, length of hospital stay, weaning difficulties, and prolonged rehabilitation.[342] The complications of long-term administration of NMBDs in the ICU are outlined in Box 27.2. In the ICU, duration of mechanical ventilation, sepsis, the dysfunction of two or more organs, female sex, administration of steroids, and hypercapnia are known risk factors for developing neuromuscular dysfunction. Syndromes of weakness in critically ill patients are relatively common and likely polymorphic in origin. In a retrospective study of 92 critically ill patients with clinically diagnosed weakness, electromyographic studies indicated that acute myopathy (critical illness myopathy [CIM]) is three times as common as acute axonal neuropathy (critical illness neuropathy): 43% versus 13%, respectively.[342] The additional healthcare cost of a single case of persistent weakness was estimated at approximately $67,000.[343] Conditions to consider when making a differential diagnosis of neuromuscular weakness in the ICU are listed in Box 27.3.

Critical Illness Myopathy

Lacomis and colleagues suggested using the term CIM,[344] instead of the current terms used in the literature, such as acute quadriplegic myopathy,[345] acute (necrotizing) myopathy of intensive care, thick filament myopathy, acute corticosteroid myopathy, and critical care myopathy.

Initial published reports of CIM in the ICU focused on patients with status asthmaticus[346] who typically had been treated with corticosteroids and nondepolarizing NMBDs.

BOX 27.3 **Causes of Generalized Neuromuscular Weakness in the Intensive Care Unit**

- Central nervous system
  - Septic or toxic-metabolic encephalopathy
  - Brainstem stroke
  - Central pontine myelinolysis
  - Anterior horn cell disorders (e.g., amyotrophic lateral sclerosis)
- Peripheral neuropathies
  - Critical illness polyneuropathy
  - Guillain-Barré syndrome
  - Porphyria
  - Paraneoplasia
  - Vasculitis
  - Nutritional and toxic neuropathies
- Neuromuscular junction disorders
  - Myasthenia gravis
  - Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome
  - Botulism
  - Prolonged neuromuscular junction blockade
- Myopathies
  - Critical illness myopathy
  - Cachectic myopathy
  - Rhabdomyolysis
  - Inflammatory and infectious myopathies
  - Muscular dystrophies
  - Toxic myopathies
  - Acid maltase deficiency
  - Mitochondrial
  - Hypokalemia
  - Hypermetabolic syndromes with rhabdomyolysis (e.g., neuroleptic malignant syndrome)

From Lacomis D. Critical illness myopathy. *Curr Rheumatol Rep.* 2002;4:403–408.

Nevertheless, myopathy has also been documented in asthmatic patients and in patients with chronic lung disease without paralysis who received corticosteroids,[347] as well as in critically ill patients with sepsis who received neither corticosteroids nor nondepolarizing NMBDs.[348] The primary cause of this condition is a loss of myosin in myocytes with subsequent loss of contractile capacity. Animal studies also reveal that the number of cytosolic corticosteroid receptors is increased in immobilized muscles relative to that in contralateral controls.[349] It seems—at least in some patients—that prolonged immobility may be the key risk factor for myopathy in corticosteroid-treated patients,[350] and selective muscle atrophy is a result of changes in glucocorticoid sensitivity.[349]

Sepsis, immobility, and the catabolism associated with negative nitrogen balance may also result in myopathy.[16] Skeletal muscle hypoperfusion is noted in patients with severe sepsis despite normal or elevated whole blood oxygen delivery.[351] Antibodies to nAChRs were demonstrated in a rodent model of sepsis.[352] Thus myasthenia-like syndrome is also seen in critically ill patients. Evidence for local immune activation by cytokine expression in the skeletal muscle was reported in patients with CIM.[353]

The major feature of CIM is flaccid weakness that tends to be diffuse and sometimes also includes the facial muscles and diaphragm.[344] The clinical features of CIM overlap with those of critical illness polyneuropathy (CIP) and prolonged neuromuscular blockade.[344] Electrophysiologic studies and increases in serum creatine kinase concentrations may differentiate neuropathy from myopathy.[344] Lacomis and colleagues stated, “muscle biopsy should be considered if another myopathic process such as an inflammatory myopathy is suspected or if the histologic findings would affect management.”[344]

Critical Illness Polyneuropathy

CIP is the polyneuropathy seen in critically ill patients. It affects both sensory and motor nerves and occurs in 50% to 70% of patients with multisystem organ failure and systemic inflammatory response syndrome.[354] Investigators have postulated that systemic inflammatory response syndrome contributes to CIP by releasing cytokines and free radicals that damage the microcirculation of the central and peripheral nervous systems.[353] Dysregulation of the microcirculation may render the peripheral nervous system susceptible to injury.

Although no pharmacologic treatment for muscle weakness syndromes in the critically ill patient currently exists, increasing evidence indicates the positive effects of early physical rehabilitation during ICU stay. Previously, intensive insulin therapy during critical illness was found to decrease the risk of CIP, and the maintenance of blood glucose at or below 110 mg/mL in critically ill patients may reduce the risk of CIP.

The outcomes from CIM and CIP appear to be similar. The reported mortality rate of patients with CIP syndrome is approximately 35%. In one study, 100% (13 of 13) of the patients who survived had abnormal clinical or neurophysiologic findings 1 to 2 years after the onset of the CIP syndrome, and quality of life was markedly impaired in all patients.[355]

Clinical Implications

Nondepolarizing NMBDs are the most common chemical agents producing immobilization and inducing a denervation-like state. In such circumstances, besides the mature or junctional nAChR formed of two α and one each of β, ε, and δ subunits, two other isoforms, the immature AChR or γAChR and the neuronal α7AChR, are expressed in the muscle. The immature AChR is also referred to as extrajunctional because it is expressed mostly in the extrajunctional part of the muscle. Upregulation of nAChRs was noted in the muscles of deceased critically ill adults who had received long-term infusions of vecuronium.[356] Upregulation refers to changes in the number of available receptors, but these changes usually do not involve a change in isoform configuration. These three types of receptors can coexist in the muscle.

Should Succinylcholine Be Used in Patients in the Intensive Care Unit?

It is likely that upregulation of nAChRs induced by immobilization and by prolonged administration of nondepolarizing NMBDs contributes to (1) the higher incidence of cardiac arrest associated with the use of succinylcholine in ICU patients[356] and (2) increased requirements for nondepolarizing NMBDs in ICU patients.[357] Even more important, succinylcholine more easily depolarizes immature nAChRs that may induce profound outward K^+ flux, with subsequent hyperkalemia. Moreover, the α7AChR can also be depolarized by succinylcholine, thus contributing to the K^+ efflux from the cell to the extracellular space. Therefore succinylcholine should be avoided in ICU patients in whom total body immobilization exceeds 24 hours.[16]

Should Nondepolarizing Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs Be Used in Patients in the Intensive Care Unit?

NMBD-associated persistent weakness appears to be a distinct pathologic entity and is not simply a manifestation of weakness syndromes in critically ill patients. In a prospective study, there was a 70% incidence of persistent weakness in ICU patients who received NMBDs for more than 2 days, compared with a 0% incidence in similar ICU patients who received no NMBD.[358] This is compelling evidence for the effects of nondepolarizing NMBDs in this complication.

Long-term weakness has been described after nondepolarizing NMBDs.[156,359,360] Approximately 20% of patients who received NMBDs for more than 6 days,[359] 15% to 40% of asthmatic patients who also received high-dose steroids,[346] and 50% of patients with renal failure who received vecuronium developed prolonged weakness.[156] Clinically, it appears that prolonged recovery from neuromuscular blockade occurs more frequently when steroidal NMBDs are used.[156,359]

However, prolonged weakness was also noted after the use of atracurium in ICU patients.[360] Further, the use of atracurium has raised concerns about its metabolite, laudanosine. Laudanosine, also detected in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of ICU patients given atracurium,[361] is an analeptic and can trigger seizures in animals.[362] The toxic dose in humans is not known, but case reports have noted patients having seizures while receiving atracurium, and laudanosine has not been ruled out as a cause of these seizures.[363-365] Evidence also indicates that laudanosine can activate neuronal nicotinic receptors.[366] Cisatracurium is a single isomer of atracurium, and because it is four to five times more potent than atracurium, it is given in smaller total doses. Therefore the risk of laudanosine-related adverse effects should be minimal.[367]

Nondepolarizing NMBDs are polar molecules and do not readily cross the blood-brain barrier, but vecuronium and its long-acting active metabolite, 3-desacetylvecuronium, have been detected in the CSF of patients in the ICU. The CNS effects of NMBDs and their metabolites in humans have not been well studied, but in rats, atracurium, pancuronium, and vecuronium injected into the CSF caused dose-related cerebral excitation culminating in seizures.[362] Cerebral excitation with consequent increased cerebral oxygen demand is undesirable in ICU patients at risk of cerebral ischemia. Investigators have also suggested that nondepolarizing NMBDs can gain access to nerves during systemic inflammatory response syndrome, thus resulting in direct neurotoxicity.[362]

When nondepolarizing NMBDs are necessary, the use of an objective neuromuscular monitor is recommended, and periodic return of muscle function should be allowed. Adjusting the dosage of NMBDs by peripheral nerve stimulation versus standard "clinical dosing" in critically ill patients reduces drug requirements, produces faster recovery of neuromuscular function, and is cost-effective.[369] Daily interruption of sedative-drug infusions decreases the duration of mechanical ventilation and the length of stay in the ICU.[370] The effect of such an approach on the weakness syndromes in the ICU patient is unknown. When nondepolarizing NMBDs are used, the guidelines in Box 27.4 may help minimize the incidence of complications. As stated in the clinical practice guidelines for sustained neuromuscular blockade in the adult critically ill patient,[337] "*Independent of the reasons for using neuromuscular blockers, we emphasize that all other modalities to improve the clinical situation must be tried, using neuromuscular blockers only as a last resort*. To this admonition, we would add a plea that clinicians use objective monitors, whenever possible, to guide NMBD administration and assess readiness for tracheal extubation, whether in the operating room or ICU settings. The unquestionable benefits of quantitative neuromuscular monitoring are described in Chapter 43.

BOX 27.4 Recommendations for the Use of Neuromuscular Blockers in the Intensive Care Unit

- Avoid the use of neuromuscular blockers by
  - Maximal use of analgesics and sedatives
  - Manipulation of ventilatory parameters and modes
- Minimize the dose of neuromuscular blocker
  - Use a peripheral nerve stimulator with train-of-four monitoring
  - Do not administer for more than 2 days continuously
  - Administer by bolus rather than infusion
  - Administer only when required and to achieve a well-defined goal
  - Continually allow recovery from paralysis
  - Consider alternative therapies

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Mohamed Naguib and Cynthia A. Lien for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Griffith H, Johnson GE. *Anesthesiology*. 1942;3:418.
2. Cullen SC. *Surgery*. 1943;14:216.
3. Beecher HK, Todd DP. *Ann Surg*. 1954;140:2.
4. Thesleff S. *Nord Med*. 1951;46:1045.
5. Foldes FF, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1952;247:596.
6. Baird WL, Reid AM. *Br J Anaesth*. 1967;39:775.
7. Savage DS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52(suppl 1):3S.
8. Stenlake JB, et al. *Eur J Med Chem*. 1981;16:515.
9. Savarese JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:723.
10. Wierda JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:521.
11. Lien CA, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2009;24:50.

11a. Savarese JJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129:970.

11b. Deleted in proofs.

12. On being aware. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51:711.
13. Shovelton DS. *Br Med J*. 1979;1:737.
14. Poggesi I, et al. *Drug Metab Rev*. 2009;41:422.
15. Cullen SC, Larson CPJ. *Essentials of Anesthetic Practice*. Chicago: Year Book Medical; 1974.
16. Naguib M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:202.
17. Machold J, et al. *Eur J Biochem*. 1995;234:427.
18. Deleted in proofs.

19. Bowman WC. *Pharmacology of Neuromuscular Function*. 2nd ed. London: Wright; 1990.
20. Martyn JA. *Keio J Med*. 1995;44:1.
21. Kallen RG, et al. *Neuron*. 1990;4:233.
22. Martyn JA, Richtsfeld M. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:158.
23. Bowman WC. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:935.
24. Deleted in proofs.
25. Deleted in proofs.
26. Bovet D. *Ann NY Acad Sci*. 1951;54:407.
27. Szalados JE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:55.
28. Kopman AF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1191.
29. Curran MJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:989.
30. Viby-Mogensen J. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:517.
31. Gissen AJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1966;27:242.
32. Torda TA, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1997;25:272.
33. Foldes FF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1956;35:609.
34. Lepage L, et al. *Clin Chem*. 1985;31:546.
35. Sunew KY, Hicks RG. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49:188.
36. Lindsay PA, Lumley J. *Anaesthesia*. 1978;33:620.
37. Walts LF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;33:503.
38. Kao YJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65:220.
39. Fisher DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:757.
40. Barabas E, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1986;33:332.
41. Pantuck EJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 1966;38:406.
42. Kalow W, Genest K. *Can J Biochem*. 1957;35:339.
43. Jensen FS, Viby-Mogensen J. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:150.
44. Primo-Parmo SL, et al. *Pharmacogenetics*. 1997;7:27.
45. Galindo AHF, Davis TB. *Anesthesiology*. 1962;23:32.
46. Goat VA, Feldman SA. *Anaesthesia*. 1972;27:149.
47. Jonsson M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:724.
48. Stoelting RK, Peterson C. *Anesth Analg*. 1975;54:705.
49. Schoenstadt DA, Witcher CE. *Anesthesiology*. 1963;24:358.
50. Leiman BC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:1292.
51. Derbyshire DR. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:465.
52. Walton JD, Farman JV. *Anaesthesia*. 1973;28:666.
53. Powell JN, Golby M. *Br J Anaesth*. 1971;43:662.
53a. Thapa S, Brull SJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:237.
54. Schwartz DE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:291.
55. Antognini JF, Gronert GA. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:585.
56. Antognini JF. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:687.
57. Kohlschütter B, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:557.
58. Stevenson PH, Birch AA. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51:89.
59. Birch Jr AA, et al. *JAMA*. 1969;210:490.
60. Pandey K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1972;44:191.
61. Indu B, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36:269.
62. Meyers EF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;48:149.
63. Miller RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1968;29:123.
63a. Cunningham AJ, Barry P. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1986;33:195.
64. Deleted in proofs.
65. Greenan J. *Br J Anaesth*. 1961;33:432.
66. Miller RD, Way WL. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;34:185.
67. Salem MR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1972;44:166.
68. Minton MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:165.
69. Brodsky JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51:259.
70. Waters DJ, Mapleson WW. *Anaesthesia*. 1971;26:127.
71. McLoughlin C, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:202.
72. Naguib M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:606.
73. Smith I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:1181.
73a. Findlay GP, Spittal MJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:526.
74. Leary NP, Ellis FR. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:488.
75. Meakin G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65:816.
76. Van der Spek AF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:459.
77. Littleford JA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:151.
77a. Dewachter P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1141.
78. Naguib M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1045.
79. Naguib M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:35.
80. Donati F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:557.
81. Naguib M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:26.
82. Erkola O, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:534.
83. Dubois MY, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7:44.
84. Naguib M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1686.
85. Lee C. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:755.
86. Everett AJ, et al. *J Chem Soc D*. 1970:1020.
87. Waser PG. Chemistry and pharmacology of natural curare compounds. Neuromuscular blocking and stimulating agents. In: Cheymol J, ed. *International Encyclopedia of Pharmacology and Therapeutics*. Oxford: Pergamon Press; 1972:205.
88. Hill SA, et al. *Bailliere's Clin Anesthesiol*. 1994;8:317.
89. Stenlake JB, et al. *Eur J Med Chem*. 1984;19:441.
90. Wastila WB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:169.
91. Lien CA. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 1996;9:348.
92. Lien CA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1131.
93. Savarese JJ, Wastila WB. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1995;106:91.
94. Lien CA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1296.
95. Stovner J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47:949.
96. Bowman WC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:57.
97. Wierda JM, Proost JH. *Eur J Anaesthesiol Suppl*. 1995;11:45.
98. Naguib M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75:37.
99. Goulden MR, Hunter JM. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:489.
100. Belmont MR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:768.
101. Savarese JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:58.
102. Heerdt PM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:910.
103. Shanks CA. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:72.
104. Booij LH, Knape HT. *Anaesthesia*. 1991;46:341.
105. Bartkowski RR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:574.
106. Bevan DR, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:127.
107. Belmont MR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1139.
108. Savarese JJ, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 1997;46:840.
109. Naguib M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1116.
110. Weber S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:495.
111. Caldwell JE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:31.
112. Diefenbach C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:420.
113. Wierda JM, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1994;41:213.
114. Kopman AF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1017.
115. Sheiner LB, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1979;25:358.
116. Holford NH, Sheiner LB. *Pharmacol Ther*. 1982;16:143.
116a. Donati F, Meistelman C. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1991;19:537.
116b. Ducharme J, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1993;24:507.
116c. Donati F. *Semin Anesth*. 1994;13:310–320.
117. Mencke T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1049.
118. Combes X, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:276.
118a. Lundstrøm LH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:283.
118b. Lundstrøm LH, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;5:CD009237.
118c. Naguib M, Brull SJ, et al. *Anesth Analg Nov*. 2017;30.
118d. Paton WD, et al. *J Physiol*. 1951;112:311.
119. Donati F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:870.
120. Donati F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:833.
121. Meistelman C, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:665.
122. Wright PM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1110.
123. Plaud B, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1995;58:185.
124. Waud BE, Waud DR. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;37:417.
125. Meistelman C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:278.
126. Fisher DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:558.
127. Smith CE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:57.
128. Sundman E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:977.
129. Berg H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41:1095.
129a. Murphy GS, Brull SJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:129.
129b. Bulka CM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:647.
129c. Eriksson LI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:693.
129d. Wyon N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:1252.
130. Chen BB, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1991;5:569.
130a. Nandi R, Basu SR, et al. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2017;61:910.
131. Plaud B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:96.
132. Lee HJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:869.
132a. Brull SJ, Kopman AF. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:173.
133. Kopman AF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:425.
134. Deleted in proofs.
135. Kopman AF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:1046.
136. Naguib M, Kopman AF. *Middle East J Anesthesiol*. 2003;17:193.
137. Bevan DR. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:R88.
138. Plaud B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:77.
139. Hemmerling TM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:856.
140. Magorian T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:913.
141. Mehta MP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:392.
142. Naguib M. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:388.
142a. Sieber TJ, Zbinden AM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1137.
143. Engbaek J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1985;29:117.
144. Savarese JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:386.
145. Kopman AF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:954.

146. Miguel RV, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13:325.
147. Agoston S, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1973;17:267.
148. Miller RD, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1978;207:539.
149. McLeod K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:341.
150. Duvaldestin P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50:1131.
151. Somogyi AA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1977;49:1103.
152. Mol WE, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1988;244:268.
153. Caldwell JE, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1994;270:1216.
154. Lebrault C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:601.
155. Arden JR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:771.
156. Segredo V, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;327:524.
157. Khuenl-Brady K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:669.
158. Smit JW, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1998;123:361.
158a. Costa ACC, et al. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 2017;73:957–963.
158b. Leonard PA, Todd MM. *A A Case Rep*. 2017;9:190–192.
159. Head-Rapson AG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:613.
160. Head-Rapson AG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75:31.
161. Goudsouzian NG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:183.
162. Maddineni VR, Mirakhur RK. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:1181.
163. Ostergaard D, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1993;37:314.
164. Naguib M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1288.
165. Neill EA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55(Suppl 1):23S.
166. Stiller RL, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:1085.
167. Fisher DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:6.
168. Lien CA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:300.
169. Kisor DF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:1065.
170. Boros EE, et al. *J Med Chem*. 2003;46:2502.
171. Fisher DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:286.
172. Fahey MR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:699.
173. Ward S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:697.
174. Parker CJ, Hunter JM. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;62:177.
175. Szenohradszky J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:899.
176. Khalil M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1241.
177. Matteo RS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:1193.
178. Magorian T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:754.
179. van Miert MM, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1997;44:139.
180. De Wolf AM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:624.
181. Anaesthetists and the reporting of adverse drug reactions. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)*. 1986;292:949.
182. Basta SJ. *Curr Opin Anaesthiol*. 1992;5:572.
183. Hatano Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:28.
184. Scott RP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:550.
185. Savarese JJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:40.
186. Naguib M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75:588.
187. Miller RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;42:352.
188. Docherty JR, McGrath JC. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1978;64:589.
189. Roizen MF, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1979;211:419.
190. Reitan JA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1973;52:974.
191. Wong KC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;34:458.
192. Geha DG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:342.
193. Edwards RP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:421.
194. Clayton D. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:937.
195. Starr NJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:521.
196. Cozanitis DA, Erkola O. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44:648.
197. Bonner TI, et al. *Neuron*. 1988;1:403.
198. Mak JC, Barnes PJ. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1990;141:1559.
199. Coulson FR, Fryer AD. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2003;98:59.
200. Jooste E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:906.
201. Kron SS. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:923.
202. Naguib M. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:924.
203. Meakin GH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:926.
204. Laxenaire MC, et al. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 1990;9:501.
205. Fisher MM, More DG. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1981;9:226.
206. Mertes PM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:536.
206a. Tacquard C, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2017;61:290.
207. Baldo BA, Fisher MM. *Nature*. 1983;306:262.
207a. de Pater GH, Florvaag E, et al. *Allergy*. 2017;72:813.
208. Levy JH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:318.
209. Rose M, Fisher M. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:678.
210. Watkins J. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:522.
211. Deleted in proofs.
212. Laxenaire MC, Mertes PM. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:549.
213. Levy JH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:844.
214. Futo J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:92.
215. O'Callaghan AC, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1986;41:940.
216. Naguib M, et al. *CNS Drugs*. 1997;8:51.
217. Miller RD. Factors affecting the action of muscle relaxants. In: Katz RL, ed. *Muscle relaxants*. Amsterdam: Excerpta Medica; 1975.
218. Naguib M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:484.
219. Lebowitz PW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60:12.
220. Paul M, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2002;438:35.
221. Motamed C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1057.
222. Kay B, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1987;42:277.
223. Rashkovsky OM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:1063.
224. Katz RL. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:602.
225. Ono K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;62:324.
226. Katz JA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:604.
227. Cooper R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:269.
228. Kelly RE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:868.
229. Saitoh Y, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70:402.
230. Miller RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;37:573.
231. Miller RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;44:206.
232. Rupp SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:102.
233. Gencarelli PJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:192.
234. Miller RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:509.
235. Wulf H, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45:526.
236. Bock M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:43.
237. Paul M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:362.
238. Stanski DR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:362.
239. Pereon Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:490.
240. Franks NP, Lieb WR. *Nature*. 1994;367:607.
241. Singh YN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;48:418.
242. Burkett L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1979;58:107.
243. Hasfurther D, Bailey P. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:617.
244. Heier T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:815.
245. Leslie K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:1007.
246. Caldwell JE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:84.
247. Heier T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:381.
248. Heier T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:807.
249. Miller RD, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1978;207:532.
250. Stenlake JB, Hughes R. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:806.
251. Eriksson LI, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35:387.
252. Thornberry EA, Mazumdar B. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43:447.
253. Miller RD, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1975;195:237.
254. Miller RD, Roderick LL. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:333.
255. Heier T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:90.
255a. Lee HJ, Kim KS, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2015;15:7.
256. Sinatra RS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:1220.
257. Fuchs-Buder T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:405.
258. Tsai SK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:674.
259. Waud BE, Waud DR. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52:863.
260. Al-Mohaya S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:554.
261. Price LH, Heninger GR. *N Engl J Med*. 1994;331:591.
262. Abdel-Zaher AO. *Pharmacol Res*. 2000;41:163.
263. Hill GE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:122.
264. Martin BA, Kramer PM. *Am J Psychiatry*. 1982;139:1326.
265. Usubiaga JE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1967;46:39.
266. Usubiaga JE, Standaert F. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1968;159:353.
267. Kordas M. *J Physiol*. 1970;209:689.
268. Thorpe WR, Seeman P. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1971;179:324.
269. Ozkul Y. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2007;118:2005.
270. van Poorten JF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:155.
271. Baurain M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44:34.
272. Selzer ME, et al. *Brain Res*. 1984;304:149.
273. Ornstein E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:191.
274. Spacek A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;77:500.
275. Alloul K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:330.
276. Kim CS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:500.
277. Melton AT, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:939.
278. Miller RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;45:442.
279. Deleted in proofs.
280. Deleted in proofs.
281. Deleted in proofs.
282. Hill GE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1978;57:417.
283. Matteo RS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;52:335.
284. Lee C, Katz RL. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52:173.
285. Glidden RS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:595.
286. Meyers EF. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:148.
287. Leeuwin RS, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1981;69:165.
288. Parr SM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:447.

289. Bouzat C, Barrantes FJ. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:25835.
290. Valera S, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89:9949.
291. Naguib M, Gyasi HK. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1986;33:682.
292. Henderson WA. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1984;31:444.
293. Goudsouzian NG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41:95.
294. Fisher DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:203.
295. Fisher DM, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1985;37:402.
296. Fisher DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:33.
297. Fisher DM, Miller RD. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:519.
298. Meretoja OA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:21.
299. Wierda JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:690.
300. Goudsouzian NG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:459.
301. Meretoja OA, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1996;6:373.
302. de Ruiter J, Crawford MW. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:790.
303. Scheiber G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:320.
304. Taivainen T, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1996;6:271.
305. Devys JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:225.
305a. Meakin G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:316.
306. Koscielniak-Nielsen ZJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:229.
307. Duvaldestin P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:36.
308. Lien CA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:39.
309. Maddineni VR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:497.
310. Maddineni VR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:608.
311. Lemmens HJ, Brodsky JB. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:438.
312. Schwartz AE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:515.
313. Meyhoff CS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:787.
314. Leykin Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1086.
315. Varin F, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1990;48:18.
316. van Kralingen S, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;71:34.
317. Miller RD, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1977;202:1.
318. Ward S, Neill EA. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:1169.
319. Bevan DR, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1984;31:491.
320. Khuenl-Brady KS, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1993;48:873.
321. Hunter JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1982;54:1251.
322. Vandenbrom RH, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1990;19:230.
323. Boyd AH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:400.
324. Fahey MR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:1049.
325. Lynam DP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:227.
326. Hunter JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56:941.
326a. Robertson EN, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22:4.
326b. Bencini AF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:988.
326c. Servin FS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:1092.
327. Lawhead RG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:569.
328. Ward JM, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1993;14:595.
329. Martyn JA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;52:352.
330. Edwards JP, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 1999;22:1660.
331. Tomera JF, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1993;14:406.
332. Marathe PH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:752.
333. Han T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:386.
334. Martyn JA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:822.
335. Schaner PJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1969;48:764.
336. Viby-Mogensen J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1975;19:169.
337. Murray MJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:142.
338. Papazian L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:1107.
339. Loper KA, et al. *Pain*. 1989;37:315.
340. Hansen-Flaschen JH, et al. *JAMA*. 1991;266:2870.
341. Pollard BJ. *Br J Intens Care*. 1994;4:347.
341a. Murray MJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:2079.
342. Lacomis D, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 1998;21:610.
343. Rudis MI, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24:1749.
344. Lacomis D, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 2000;23:1785.
345. Showalter CJ, Engel AG. *Muscle Nerve*. 1997;20:316.
346. Shee CD. *Respir Med*. 1990;84:229.
347. Hanson P, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 1997;20:1371.
348. Deconinck N, et al. *Neuromuscul Disord*. 1998;8:186.
349. DuBois DC, Almon RR. *Endocrinology*. 1980;107:1649.
350. Hund E. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:2544.
351. Neviere R, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1996;153:191.
352. Tsukagoshi H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:448.
353. De Letter MA, et al. *J Neuroimmunol*. 2000;106:206.
354. Tepper M, et al. *Neth J Med*. 2000;56:211.
355. Zifko UA. *Muscle Nerve Suppl*. 2000;9:S49.
356. Dodson BA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23:815.
357. Coursin DB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 69: 518.
358. Kupfer Y, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1992;117:484.
359. Op de Coul AA, et al. *Clin Neurol Neurosurg*. 1985;87:17.
360. Tousignant CP, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42:224.
361. Gwinnutt CL, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65:829.
362. Szenohradszky J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:1304.
363. Griffiths RB, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1986;41:375.
364. Beemer GH, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1989;17:504.
365. Eddleston JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;63:525.
366. Chiodini F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:643.
367. Chapple DJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:218.
368. Prielipp RC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:3.
369. Zarowitz BJ, et al. *Pharmacotherapy*. 1997;17:327.
370. Kress JP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:1471.
371. Kim KS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:483.
372. Katz RL, Ryan JF. *Br J Anaesth*. 1969;41:381.
373. Kopman AF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1050.
374. Wierda JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:579.
375. Miguel R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1648.
376. Agoston S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52(Suppl 1):53S.
377. Katz RL. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;34:550.
378. Savarese JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;47:277.
379. From RP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:193.
380. Somogyi AA, et al. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1977;12:23.
381. Lebrault C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:983.
382. Servin FS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:1092.
383. Westra P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:331.

References

1. Griffith H, Johnson GE. The use of curare in general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1942;3:418.
2. Cullen SC. The use of curare for improvement of abdominal relaxation during cyclopropane anesthesia. Report on 131 cases. *Surgery*. 1943;14:216.
3. Beecher HK, Todd DP. A study of deaths with anesthesia and surgery. *Ann Surg*. 1954;140:2.
4. Thesleff S. Farmakologisks och kliniska forsok med L.T. I. (O, O-succinylcholine jodid). *Nord Med*. 1951;46:1045.
5. Foldes FF, McNall PG, Borrego-Hinojosa JM. Succinylcholine, a new approach to muscular relaxation in anaesthesiology. *N Engl J Med*. 1952;247:596.
6. Baird WL, Reid AM. The neuromuscular blocking properties of a new steroid compound, pancuronium bromide. A pilot study in man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1967;39:775.
7. Savage DS, Sleigh T, Carlyle I. The emergence of ORG NC 45, 1-[2 beta,3 alpha,5 alpha,16 beta,17 beta)-3,17-bis(acetyloxy)-2-(1-piperidinyl)-androstan-16-yl]-1-methylpiperidinium bromide, from the pancuronium series. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52(suppl 1):3S.
8. Stenlake JB, Waigh RD, Dewar GH, et al. Biodegradable neuromuscular blocking agents. Part 4. Atracurium besylate and related polyalkylylene di-esters. *Eur J Med Chem*. 1981;16:515.
9. Savarese JJ, Ali HH, Basta SJ, et al. The clinical neuromuscular pharmacology of mivacurium chloride (BW B1090U). A short-acting nondepolarizing ester neuromuscular blocking drug. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:723.
10. Wierda JM, de Wit AP, Kuizenga K, Agoston S. Clinical observations on the neuromuscular blocking action of Org 9426, a new steroidal non-depolarizing agent. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:521.
11. Lien CA, Savard P, Belmont M, et al. Fumarates. unique nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents that are antagonized by cysteine. *J Crit Care*. 2009;24:50.

11a. Savarese JJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129:970.

11b. Deleted in proofs.

12. On being aware. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51:711.
13. Shovelton DS. Reflections on an intensive therapy unit. *Br Med J*. 1979;1:737.
14. Poggesi I, Benedetti MS, Whomsley R, et al. Pharmacokinetics in special populations. *Drug Metab Rev*. 2009;41:422.
15. Cullen SC, Larson CPJ. *Essentials of Anesthetic Practice*. Chicago: Year Book Medical; 1974.
16. Naguib M, Flood P, McArdle JJ, Brenner HR. Advances in neurobiology of the neuromuscular junction. implications for the anesthesiologist. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:202.
17. Machold J, Weise C, Utkin Y, et al. The handedness of the subunit arrangement of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor from Torpedo californica. *Eur J Biochem*. 1995;234:427.
18. Willcockson IU, Hong A, Whisenant RP, et al. Orientation of d-tubocurarine in the muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor-binding site. *J Biol Chem*. 2002;277:42249.
19. Bowman WC. *Pharmacology of Neuromuscular Function*. 2nd ed. London: Wright; 1990.
20. Martyn JA. Basic and clinical pharmacology of the acetylcholine receptor. Implications for the use of neuromuscular relaxants. *Keio J Med*. 1995;44:1.
21. Kallen RG, Sheng ZH, Yang J, et al. Primary structure and expression of a sodium channel characteristic of denervated and immature rat skeletal muscle. *Neuron*. 1990;4:233.
22. Martyn JA, Richtsfeld M. Succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia in acquired pathologic states. Etiologic factors and molecular mechanisms. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:158.
23. Bowman WC. Prejunctional and postjunctional cholinoceptors at the neuromuscular junction. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:935.
24. Slutsky I, Wess J, Gomeza J, et al. Use of knockout mice reveals involvement of M2-muscarinic receptors in control of the kinetics of acetylcholine release. *J Neurophysiol*. 1954;89:2003.
25. Bowman WC, Prior C, Marshall IG. Presynaptic receptors in the neuromuscular junction. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1990;604:69.
26. Bovet D. Some aspects of the relationship between chemical constitution and curare-like activity. *Ann NY Acad Sci*. 1951;54:407.
27. Szalados JE, Donati F, Bevan DR. Effect of d-tubocurarine pretreatment on succinylcholine twitch augmentation and neuromuscular blockade. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:55.
28. Kopman AF, Klewicka MM, Neuman GG. An alternate method for estimating the dose-response relationships of neuromuscular blocking drugs. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1191.
29. Curran MJ, Donati F, Bevan DR. Onset and recovery of atracurium and suxamethonium-induced neuromuscular blockade with simultaneous train-of-four and single twitch stimulation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:989.
30. Viby-Mogensen J. Correlation of succinylcholine duration of action with plasma cholinesterase activity in subjects with the genotypically normal enzyme. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:517.
31. Gissen AJ, Katz RL, Karis JH, Papper EM. Neuromuscular block in man during prolonged arterial infusion with succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*. 1966;27:242.
32. Torda TA, Graham GG, Warwick NR, Donohue P. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of suxamethonium. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1997;25:272.
33. Foldes FF, Rendell-Baker L, Birch JH. Causes and prevention of prolonged apnea with succinylcholine. *Anesth Analg*. 1956;35:609.
34. Lepage L, Schiele F, Gueguen R, Siest G. Total cholinesterase in plasma. biological variations and reference limits. *Clin Chem*. 1985;31:546.
35. Sunew KY, Hicks RG. Effects of neostigmine and pyridostigmine on duration of succinylcholine action and pseudocholinesterase activity. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49:188.
36. Lindsay PA, Lumley J. Suxamethonium apnoea masked by tetrahydroaminacrine. *Anaesthesia*. 1978;33:620.
37. Walts LF, DeAngelis J, Dillon JB. Clinical studies of the interaction of hexafluorenium and succinylcholine in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;33:503.
38. Kao YJ, Tellez J, Turner DR. Dose-dependent effect of metoclopramide on cholinesterases and suxamethonium metabolism. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65:220.
39. Fisher DM, Caldwell JE, Sharma M, Wiren JE. The influence of bambuterol (carbamylated terbutaline) on the duration of action of succinylcholine-induced paralysis in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:757.
40. Barabas E, Zsigmond EK, Kirkpatrick AF. The inhibitory effect of esmolol on human plasmacholinesterase. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1986;33:332.
41. Pantuck EJ. Ecothiopate iodide eye drops and prolonged response to suxamethonium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1966;38:406.
42. Kalow W, Genest K. A method for the detection of atypical forms of human serum cholinesterase. determination of dibucaine numbers. *Can J Biochem*. 1957;35:339.
43. Jensen FS, Viby-Mogensen J. Plasma cholinesterase and abnormal reaction to succinylcholine. Twenty years' experience with the Danish Cholinesterase Research Unit. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:150.
44. Primo-Parmo SL, Lightstone H, La Du BN. Characterization of an unstable variant (BChE115D) of human butyrylcholinesterase. *Pharmacogenetics*. 1997;7:27.
45. Galindo AHF, Davis TB. Succinylcholine and cardiac excitability. *Anesthesiology*. 1962;23:32.
46. Goat VA, Feldman SA. The dual action of suxamethonium on the isolated rabbit heart. *Anaesthesia*. 1972;27:149.
47. Jonsson M, Dabrowski M, Gurley DA, et al. Activation and inhibition of human muscular and neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors by succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:724.
48. Stoelting RK, Peterson C. Heart-rate slowing and junctional rhythm following intravenous succinylcholine with and without intramuscular atropine preanesthetic medication. *Anesth Analg*. 1975;54:705.
49. Schoenstadt DA, Witcher CE. Observations on the mechanism of succinylcholine-induced cardiac arrhythmias. *Anesthesiology*. 1963;24:358.
50. Leiman BC, Katz J, Butler BD. Mechanisms of succinylcholine-induced arrhythmias in hypoxic or hypoxic-hypercarbic dogs. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:1292.
51. Derbyshire DR. Succinylcholine-induced increases in plasma catecholamine levels in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:465.
52. Walton JD, Farman JV. Suxamethonium hyperkalaemia in uraemic neuropathy. *Anaesthesia*. 1973;28:666.
53. Powell JN, Golby M. The pattern of potassium liberation following a single dose of suxamethonium in normal and uraemic rats. *Br J Anaesth*. 1971;43:662.

53a. Thapa S, Brull SJ. Succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia in patients with renal failure. An old question revisited. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:237.

54. Schwartz DE, Kelly B, Caldwell JE, et al. Succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemic arrest in a patient with severe metabolic acidosis and exsanguinating hemorrhage. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:291.
55. Antognini JF, Gronert GA. Succinylcholine causes profound hyperkalemia in hemorrhagic, acidotic rabbits. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:585.
56. Antognini JF. Splanchnic release of potassium after hemorrhage and succinylcholine in rabbits. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:687.
57. Kohlschütter B, Baur H, Roth F. Suxamethonium-induced hyperkalaemia in patients with severe intra-abdominal infections. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:557.
58. Stevenson PH, Birch AA. Succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia in a patient with a closed head injury. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51:89.
59. Birch Jr AA, Mitchell GD, Playford GA, Lang CA. Changes in serum potassium response to succinylcholine following trauma. *JAMA*. 1969;210:490.
60. Pandey K, Badola RP, Kumar S. Time course of intraocular hypertension produced by suxamethonium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1972;44:191.
61. Indu B, Batra YK, Puri GD, Singh H. Nifedipine attenuates the intraocular pressure response to intubation following succinylcholine. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36:269.
62. Meyers EF, Krupin T, Johnson M, Zink H. Failure of nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers to inhibit succinylcholine-induced increased intraocular pressure, a controlled study. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;48:149.
63. Miller RD, Way WL, Hickey RF. Inhibition of succinylcholine-induced increased intraocular pressure by non-depolarizing muscle relaxants. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:637.

63a. Cunningham AJ, Barry P. Intraocular pressure—physiology and implications for anaesthetic management. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1986;33:195.

64. Libonati MM, Leahy JJ, Ellison N. The use of succinylcholine in open eye surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:637.
65. Greenan J. The cardio-oesphageal junction. *Br J Anaesth*. 1961;33:432.
66. Miller RD, Way WL. Inhibition of succinylcholine-induced increased intragastric pressure by nondepolarizing muscle relaxants and lidocaine. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;34:185–188.
67. Salem MR, Wong AY, Lin YH. The effect of suxamethonium on the intragastric pressure in infants and children. *Br J Anaesth*. 1972;44:166.
68. Minton MD, Grosslight K, Stirt JA, Bedford RF. Increases in intracranial pressure from succinylcholine. Prevention by prior nondepolarizing blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:165.
69. Brodsky JB, Brock-Utne JG, Samuels SI. Pancuronium pretreatment and post-succinylcholine myalgias. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51:259.
70. Waters DJ, Mapleson WW. Suxamethonium pains. Hypothesis and observation. *Anaesthesia*. 1971;26:127.
71. McLoughlin C, Elliott P, McCarthy G, Mirakhur RK. Muscle pains and biochemical changes following suxamethonium administration after six pretreatment regimens. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:202.
72. Naguib M, Farag H, Magbagbeola JA. Effect of pre-treatment with lysine acetyl salicylate on suxamethonium-induced myalgia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:606.
73. Smith I, Ding Y, White PF. Muscle pain after outpatient laparoscopy. Influence of propofol versus thiopental and enflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:1181.

73a. Findlay GP, Spittal MJ. Roncuronium pretreatment reduces suxamethonium-induced myalgia. Comparison with vecuronium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:526.

74. Leary NP, Ellis FR. Masseteric muscle spasm as a normal response to suxamethonium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:488.
75. Meakin G, Walker RW, Dearlove OR. Myotonic and neuromuscular blocking effects of increased doses of suxamethonium in infants and children. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65:816.
76. Van der Spek AF, Fang WB, Ashton-Miller JA, et al. The effects of succinylcholine on mouth opening. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:459.
77. Littleford JA, Patel LR, Bose D, et al. Masseter muscle spasm in children. Implications of continuing the triggering anesthetic. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:151.

77a. Dewachter P, Mouton-Faivre C, Emala CW. Anaphylaxis and anesthesia. Controversies and new insights. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1141–1150.

78. Naguib M, Samarkandi A, Riad W, Alharby SW. Optimal dose of succinylcholine revisited. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1045.
79. Naguib M, Samarkandi AH, Abdullah K, et al. Succinylcholine dosage and apnea-induced hemoglobin desaturation in patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:35.
80. Donati F, Gill SS, Bevan DR, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of atracurium with and without previous suxamethonium administration. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:557.
81. Naguib M, Abdulatif M, Selim M, al-Ghamdi A. Dose-response studies of the interaction between mivacurium and suxamethonium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:26.
82. Erkola O, Rautoma P, Meretoja OA. Interaction between mivacurium and succinylcholine. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:534.
83. Dubois MY, Lea DE, Kataria B, et al. Pharmacodynamics of rocuronium with and without prior administration of succinylcholine. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7:44.
84. Naguib M, Lien CA, Aker J, Eliazo R. Posttetanic potentiation and fade in the response to tetanic and train-of-four stimulation during succinylcholine-induced block. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1686.
85. Lee C. Structure, conformation, and action of neuromuscular blocking drugs. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:755.
86. Everett AJ, Lowe LA, Wilkinson S. Revision of the structures of (+)-tubocurarine chloride and (+)-chondocurine. *J Chem Soc D*. 1970:1020.
87. Waser PG. Chemistry and pharmacology of natural curare compounds. Neuromuscular blocking and stimulating agents. In: Cheymol J, ed. *International Encyclopedia of Pharmacology and Therapeutics*. Oxford: Pergamon Press; 1972:205–239.
88. Hill SA, Scott RPF, Savarese JJ. Structure-activity relationships. From tubocurarine to the present day. *Bailliere's Clin Anesthesiol.* 1994;8:317.
89. Stenlake JB, Waigh RD, Dewar GH, et al. Biodegradable neuromuscular blocking agents. 6. Stereochemical studies on atracurium and related polyalkylene di-esters. *Eur J Med Chem*. 1984;19:441.
90. Wastila WB, Maehr RB, Turner GL, et al. Comparative pharmacology of cisatracurium (51W89), atracurium, and five isomers in cats. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:169.
91. Lien CA. The role of stereoisomerism in neuromuscular blocking drugs. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 1996;9:348.
92. Lien CA, Belmont MR, Abalos A, et al. The cardiovascular effects and histamine-releasing properties of 51W89 in patients receiving nitrous oxide/opioid/barbiturate anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1131.
93. Savarese JJ, Wastila WB. The future of the benzylisoquinolinium relaxants. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1995;106:91.
94. Lien CA, Schmith VD, Embree PB, et al. The pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of the stereoisomers of mivacurium in patients receiving nitrous oxide/opioid/barbiturate anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1296.
95. Stovner J, Oftedal N, Holmboe J. The inhibition of cholinesterases by pancuronium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47:949.
96. Bowman WC, Rodger IW, Houston J, et al. Structure. Action relationships among some desacetoxy analogues of pancuronium and vecuronium in the anesthetized cat. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:57.
97. Wierda JM, Proost JH. Structure-pharmacodynamic-pharmacokinetic relationships of steroidal neuromuscular blocking agents. *Eur J Anaesthesiol Suppl*. 1995;11:45.
98. Naguib M, Samarkandi AH, Bakhamees HS, et al. Comparative potency of steroidal neuromuscular blocking drugs and isobolographic analysis of the interaction between rocuronium and other aminosteroids. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75:37.
99. Goulden MR, Hunter JM. Rapacuronium (Org 9487). Do we have a replacement for succinylcholine? *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:489.
100. Belmont MR, Lien CA, Tjan J, et al. Clinical pharmacology of GW280430A in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:768.
101. Savarese JJ, McGilvra JD, Sunaga H, et al. Rapid chemical antagonism of neuromuscular blockade by l-cysteine adduction to and inactivation of the olefinic (double-bonded) isoquinolinium diester compounds gantacurium (AV430A), CW 002, and CW 011. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:58.
102. Heerdt PM, Malhotra JK, Pan BY, et al. Pharmacodynamics and cardiopulmonary side effects of CW002, a cysteine-reversible neuromuscular blocking drug in dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:910.
103. Shanks CA. Pharmacokinetics of the nondepolarizing neuromuscular relaxants applied to calculation of bolus and infusion dosage regimens. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:72.

104. Booij LH, Knape HT. The neuromuscular blocking effect of Org 9426. A new intermediately-acting steroidal non-depolarising muscle relaxant in man. *Anaesthesia*. 1991;46:341.
105. Bartkowski RR, Witkowski TA, Azad S, et al. Rocuronium onset of action. A comparison with atracurium and vecuronium. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:574.
106. Bevan DR, Fiset P, Balendran P, et al. Pharmacodynamic behaviour of rocuronium in the elderly. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:127.
107. Belmont MR, Lien CA, Quessy S, et al. The clinical neuromuscular pharmacology of 51W89 in patients receiving nitrous oxide/opioid/barbiturate anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1139.
108. Savarese JJ, Lien CA, Belmont MR, Wastila WB. The clinical pharmacology of new benzylisoquinoline-diester compounds, with special consideration of cisatracurium and mivacurium. *Anaesthesist*. 1997;46:840. [in German].
109. Naguib M, Samarkandi AH, Ammar A, et al. Comparative clinical pharmacology of rocuronium, cisatracurium, and their combination. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1116.
110. Weber S, Brandom BW, Powers DM, et al. Mivacurium chloride (BW B1090U)-induced neuromuscular blockade during nitrous oxide-isoflurane and nitrous oxide-narcotic anesthesia in adult surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:495.
111. Caldwell JE, Kitts JB, Heier T, et al. The dose-response relationship of mivacurium chloride in humans during nitrous oxide–fentanyl or nitrous oxide–enflurane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:31.
112. Diefenbach C, Mellinghoff H, Lynch J, Buzello W. Mivacurium. dose-response relationship and administration by repeated injection or infusion. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:420.
113. Wierda JM, Beaufort AM, Kleef UW, et al. Preliminary investigations of the clinical pharmacology of three short-acting non-depolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents, Org 9453, Org 9489 and Org 9487. *Can J Anaesth*. 1994;41:213.
114. Kopman AF, Klewicka MM, Ghori K, et al. Dose-response and onset/offset characteristics of rapacuronium. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1017.
115. Sheiner LB, Stanski DR, Vozeh S, et al. Simultaneous modeling of pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. application to d-tubocurarine. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1979;25:358.
116. Holford NH, Sheiner LB. Kinetics of pharmacologic response. *Pharmacol Ther*. 1982;16:143.
116a. Meistelman C, Plaud B, Donati F. Rocuronium (ORG 9426) neuromuscular blockade at the adductor muscles of. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1991;19:537.
116b. Ducharme J, Varin F, Bevan DR, Donati F. Importance of early blood sampling on vecuronium pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic parameters. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1993;24:507.
116c. Donati F. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic factors in clinical use of muscle relaxants. *Semin Anesth*. 1994;13:310–320.
117. Mencke T, Echternach M, Kleinschmidt S, et al. Laryngeal morbidity and quality of tracheal intubation. A randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1049.
118. Combes X, Andriamifidy L, Dufresne E, et al. Comparison of two induction regimens using or not using muscle relaxant. impact on postoperative upper airway discomfort. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:276.
118a. Lundstrøm LH, Møller AM, Danish Anaesthesia Database. Avoidance of neuromuscular blocking agents may increase the risk of difficult tracheal intubation. a cohort study of 103,812 consecutive adult patients recorded in the Danish Anaesthesia Database. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:283.
118b. Lundstrøm LH, Duez CH, Nørskov AK, et al. Avoidance versus use of neuromuscular blocking agents for improving conditions during tracheal intubation or direct laryngoscopy in adults and adolescents. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;5:CD009237.
118c. Naguib M, Brull SJ, et al. *Anesth Analg Nov*. 2017;30.
118d. Paton WD, Zaimis EJ. The action of d-tubocurarine and of decamethonium on respiratory and other muscles in the cat. *J Physiol*. 1951;112:311.
119. Donati F, Meistelman C, Plaud B. Vecuronium neuromuscular blockade at the diaphragm, the orbicularis oculi, and adductor pollicis muscles. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:870.
120. Donati F, Meistelman C, Plaud B. Vecuronium neuromuscular blockade at the adductor muscles of the larynx and adductor pollicis. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:833.
121. Meistelman C, Plaud B, Donati F. Rocuronium (ORG 9426) neuromuscular blockade at the adductor muscles of the larynx and adductor pollicis in humans. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:665.
122. Wright PM, Caldwell JE, Miller RD. Onset and duration of rocuronium and succinylcholine at the adductor pollicis and laryngeal adductor muscles in anesthetized humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1110.
123. Plaud B, Proost JH, Wierda JM, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of rocuronium at the vocal cords and the adductor pollicis in humans. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1995;58:185.
124. Waud BE, Waud DR. The margin of safety of neuromuscular transmission in the muscle of the diaphragm. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;37:417.
125. Meistelman C, Plaud B, Donati F. Neuromuscular effects of succinylcholine on the vocal cords and adductor pollicis muscles. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:278.
126. Fisher DM, Szenohradszky J, Wright PM, et al. Pharmacodynamic modeling of vecuronium-induced twitch depression. Rapid plasma-effect site equilibration explains faster onset at resistant laryngeal muscles than at the adductor pollicis. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:558.
127. Smith CE, Donati F, Bevan DR. Differential effects of pancuronium on masseter and adductor pollicis muscles in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:57.
128. Sundman E, Witt H, Olsson R, et al. The incidence and mechanisms of pharyngeal and upper esophageal dysfunction in partially paralyzed humans. Pharyngeal videoradiography and simultaneous manometry after atracurium. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:977.
129. Berg H, Roed J, Viby-Mogensen J, et al. Residual neuromuscular block is a risk factor for postoperative pulmonary complications. A prospective, randomised, and blinded study of postoperative pulmonary complications after atracurium, vecuronium and pancuronium. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41:1095.
129a. Murphy GS, Brull SJ. Residual neuromuscular block. lessons unlearned. Part II. Methods to reduce the risk of residual weakness. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:129.
129b. Bulka CM, Terekhov MA, Martin BJ, Dmochowski RR, Hayes RM, Ehrenfeld JM. Nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents, reversal, and risk of postoperative pneumonia. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:647.
129c. Eriksson LI, Sato M, Severinghaus JW. Effect of a vecuronium-induced partial neuromuscular block on hypoxic ventilatory response. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:693.
129d. Wyon N, Eriksson LI, Yamamoto Y, Lindahl SG. Vecuronium-induced depression of phrenic nerve activity during hypoxia in the rabbit. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:1252.
130. Chen BB, Nyhan DP, Blanck TJ. Hemodynamic effects and onset time of increasing doses of vecuronium in patients undergoing myocardial revascularization. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1991;5:569.
130a. Nandi R, Basu SR, Sarkar S, et al. A comparison of haemodynamic responses between clinical assessment-guided tracheal intubation and neuromuscular block monitoring-guided tracheal intubation. A prospective, randomised study. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2017;61:910.
131. Plaud B, Debaene B, Donati F. The corrugator supercilii, not the orbicularis oculi, reflects rocuronium neuromuscular blockade at the laryngeal adductor muscles. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:96.
132. Lee HJ, Kim KS, Jeong JS, et al. Comparison of the adductor pollicis, orbicularis oculi, and corrugator supercilii as indicators of adequacy of muscle relaxation for tracheal intubation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:869.
132a. Brull SJ, Kopman AF. Current status of neuromuscular reversal and monitoring. Challenges and opportunities. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:173.
133. Kopman AF, Klewicka MM, Kopman DJ, Neuman GG. Molar potency is predictive of the speed of onset of neuromuscular block for agents of intermediate, short, and ultrashort duration. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:425.
134. Donati F, Meistelman C. A kinetic-dynamic model to explain the relationship between high potency and slow onset time for neuromuscular blocking drugs. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1991;19:537.
135. Kopman AF, Klewicka MM, Neuman GG. Molar potency is not predictive of the speed of onset of atracurium. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:1046.
136. Naguib M, Kopman AF. Low dose rocuronium for tracheal intubation. *Middle East J Anesthesiol*. 2003;17:193.
137. Bevan DR. The new relaxants. Are they worth it? *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:R88.

138. Plaud B, Debaene B, Lequeau F, et al. Mivacurium neuromuscular block at the adductor muscles of the larynx and adductor pollicis in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:77.
139. Hemmerling TM, Schmidt J, Hanusa C, et al. Simultaneous determination of neuromuscular block at the larynx, diaphragm, adductor pollicis, orbicularis oculi and corrugator supercilii muscles. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:856.
140. Magorian T, Flannery KB, Miller RD. Comparison of rocuronium, succinylcholine, and vecuronium for rapid-sequence induction of anesthesia in adult patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:913.
141. Mehta MP, Choi WW, Gergis SD, et al. Facilitation of rapid endotracheal intubations with divided doses of nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:392.
142. Naguib M. Neuromuscular effects of rocuronium bromide and mivacurium chloride administered alone and in combination. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:388.
142a. Sieber TJ, Zbinden AM, Curatolo M, Shorten GD. Tracheal intubation with rocuronium using the "timing principle". *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1137–1140.
143. Engbaek J, Howardy-Hansen P, Ording H, Viby-Mogensen J. Precurarization with vecuronium and pancuronium in awake, healthy volunteers. The influence on neuromuscular transmission and pulmonary function. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1985;29:117.
144. Savarese JJ, Ali HH, Basta SJ, et al. The cardiovascular effects of mivacurium chloride (BW B1090U) in patients receiving nitrous oxide–opiate-barbiturate anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:386.
145. Kopman AF, Klewicka MM, Neuman GG. Reexamined. the recommended endotracheal intubating dose for nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers of rapid onset. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:954.
146. Miguel RV, Soto R, Dyches P. A double-blind, randomized comparison of low-dose rocuronium and atracurium in a desflurane anesthetic. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13:325.
147. Agoston S, Vermeer GA, Kertsten UW, Meijer DK. The fate of pancuronium bromide in man. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1973;17:267.
148. Miller RD, Agoston S, Booij LH, et al. The comparative potency and pharmacokinetics of pancuronium and its metabolites in anesthetized man. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1978;207:539.
149. McLeod K, Watson MJ, Rawlins MD. Pharmacokinetics of pancuronium in patients with normal and impaired renal function. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:341.
150. Duvaldestin P, Agoston S, Henzel D, et al. Pancuronium pharmacokinetics in patients with liver cirrhosis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50:1131.
151. Somogyi AA, Shanks CA, Triggs EJ. Disposition kinetics of pancuronium bromide in patients with total biliary obstruction. *Br J Anaesth*. 1977;49:1103.
152. Mol WE, Fokkema GN, Weert B, Meijer DK. Mechanisms for the hepatic uptake of organic cations. studies with the muscle relaxant vecuronium in isolated rat hepatocytes. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1988;244:268.
153. Caldwell JE, Szenohradszky J, Segredo V, et al. The pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics of the metabolite 3-desacetylvecuronium (ORG 7268) and its parent compound, vecuronium, in human volunteers. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1994;270:1216.
154. Lebrault C, Berger JL, D'Hollander AA, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of vecuronium (ORG NC 45) in patients with cirrhosis. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:601.
155. Arden JR, Lynam DP, Castagnoli KP, et al. Vecuronium in alcoholic liver disease. A pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:771–776.
156. Segredo V, Caldwell JE, Matthay MA, et al. Persistent paralysis in critically ill patients after long-term administration of vecuronium. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;327:524.
157. Khuenl-Brady K, Castagnoli KP, Canfell PC, et al. The neuromuscular blocking effects and pharmacokinetics of ORG 9426 and ORG 9616 in the cat. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:669.
158. Smit JW, Duin E, Steen H, et al. Interactions between P-glycoprotein substrates and other cationic drugs at the hepatic excretory level. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1998;123:361.
158a. Costa ACC, et al. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 2017;73:957–963.
158b. Leonard PA, Todd MM. Quantitative neuromuscular blockade monitoring. Two pictures of unexpected rocuronium effect. A case report. *A A Case Rep*. 2017;9:190–192.
159. Head-Rapson AG, Devlin JC, Parker CJ, Hunter JM. Pharmacokinetics of the three isomers of mivacurium and pharmacodynamics of the chiral mixture in hepatic cirrhosis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:613.
160. Head-Rapson AG, Devlin JC, Parker CJ, Hunter JM. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of the three isomers of mivacurium in health, in end-stage renal failure and in patients with impaired renal function. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75:31.
161. Goudsouzian NG, d'Hollander AA, Viby-Mogensen J. Prolonged neuromuscular block from mivacurium in two patients with cholinesterase deficiency. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:183.
162. Maddineni VR, Mirakhur RK. Prolonged neuromuscular block following mivacurium. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:1181.
163. Ostergaard D, Jensen FS, Jensen E, et al. Mivacurium-induced neuromuscular blockade in patients with atypical plasma cholinesterase. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1993;37:314.
164. Naguib M, el-Gammal M, Daoud W, et al. Human plasma cholinesterase for antagonism of prolonged mivacurium-induced neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1288.
165. Neill EA, Chapple DJ, Thompson CW. Metabolism and kinetics of atracurium. an overview. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55(suppl 1):23S.
166. Stiller RL, Cook DR, Chakravorti S. In vitro degradation of atracurium in human plasma. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:1085.
167. Fisher DM, Canfell PC, Fahey MR, et al. Elimination of atracurium in humans. Contribution of Hofmann elimination and ester hydrolysis versus organ-based elimination. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:6.
168. Lien CA, Schmith VD, Belmont MR, et al. Pharmacokinetics of cisatracurium in patients receiving nitrous oxide/opioid/barbiturate anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:300.
169. Kisor DF, Schmith VD, Wargin WA, et al. Importance of the organ-independent elimination of cisatracurium. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:1065.
170. Boros EE, Samano V, Ray JA, et al. Neuromuscular blocking activity and therapeutic potential of mixed-tetrahydroisoquinolinium halofumarates and halosuccinates in rhesus monkeys. *J Med Chem*. 2003;46:2502.
171. Fisher DM, Rosen JI. A pharmacokinetic explanation for increasing recovery time following larger or repeated doses of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:286.
172. Fahey MR, Rupp SM, Fisher DM, et al. The pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of atracurium in patients with and without renal failure. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:699.
173. Ward S, Boheimer N, Weatherley BC, et al. Pharmacokinetics of atracurium and its metabolites in patients with normal renal function, and in patients in renal failure. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:697.
174. Parker CJ, Hunter JM. Pharmacokinetics of atracurium and laudanosine in patients with hepatic cirrhosis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;62:177.
175. Szenohradszky J, Fisher DM, Segredo V, et al. Pharmacokinetics of rocuronium bromide (ORG 9426) in patients with normal renal function or patients undergoing cadaver renal transplantation. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:899.
176. Khalil M, D'Honneur G, Duvaldestin P, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of rocuronium in patients with cirrhosis. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1241.
177. Matteo RS, Ornstein E, Schwartz AE, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of rocuronium (Org 9426) in elderly surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:1193.
178. Magorian T, Wood P, Caldwell J, et al. The pharmacokinetics and neuromuscular effects of rocuronium bromide in patients with liver disease. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:754.
179. van Miert MM, Eastwood NB, Boyd AH, et al. The pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of rocuronium in patients with hepatic cirrhosis. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1997;44:139.
180. De Wolf AM, Freeman JA, Scott VL, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of cisatracurium in patients with end-stage liver disease undergoing liver transplantation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:624.
181. Anaesthetists and the reporting of adverse drug reactions. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)*. 1986;292:949.
182. Basta SJ. Modulation of histamine release by neuromuscular blocking drugs. *Curr Opin Anaesthiol*. 1992;5:572.
183. Hatano Y, Arai T, Noda J, et al. Contribution of prostacyclin to d-tubocurarine–induced hypotension in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:28.
184. Scott RP, Savarese JJ, Basta SJ, et al. Atracurium. clinical strategies for preventing histamine release and attenuating the haemodynamic response. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:550.
185. Savarese JJ. The autonomic margins of safety of metocurine and d-tubocurarine in the cat. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:40.
186. Naguib M, Samarkandi AH, Bakhamees HS, et al. Histamine-release haemodynamic changes produced by rocuronium,

vecuronium, mivacurium, atracurium and tubocurarine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75:588.

187. Miller RD, Eger 2nd EI, Stevens WC, Gibbons R. Pancuronium-induced tachycardia in relation to alveolar halothane, dose of pancuronium, and prior atropine. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;42:352.
188. Docherty JR, McGrath JC. Sympathomimetic effects of pancuronium bromide on the cardiovascular system of the pithed rat. A comparison with the effects of drugs blocking the neuronal uptake of noradrenaline. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1978;64:589.
189. Roizen MF, Forbes AR, Miller RD, et al. Similarity between effects of pancuronium and atropine on plasma norepinephrine levels in man. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1979;211:419.
190. Reitan JA, Fraser AI, Eisele JH. Lack of cardiac inotropic effects of gallamine in anesthetized man. *Anesth Analg*. 1973;52:974.
191. Wong KC, Wyte SR, Martin WE, Crawford EW. Antiarrhythmic effects of skeletal muscle relaxants. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;34:458.
192. Geha DG, Rozelle BC, Raessler KL, et al. Pancuronium bromide enhances atrioventricular conduction in halothane-anesthetized dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:342.
193. Edwards RP, Miller RD, Roizen MF, et al. Cardiac responses to imipramine and pancuronium during anesthesia with halothane or enflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:421.
194. Clayton D. Asystole associated with vecuronium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:937.
195. Starr NJ, Sethna DH, Estafanous FG. Bradycardia and asystole following the rapid administration of sufentanil with vecuronium. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:521.
196. Cozanitis DA, Erkola O. A clinical study into the possible intrinsic bradycardic activity of vecuronium. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44:648.
197. Bonner TI, Young AC, Brann MR, Buckley NJ. Cloning and expression of the human and rat m5 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor genes. *Neuron*. 1988;1:403.
198. Mak JC, Barnes PJ. Autoradiographic visualization of muscarinic receptor subtypes in human and guinea pig lung. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1990;141:1559.
199. Coulson FR, Fryer AD. Muscarinic acetylcholine receptors and airway diseases. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2003;98:59.
200. Jooste E, Klafter F, Hirshman CA, Emala CW. A mechanism for rapacuronium-induced bronchospasm. M2 muscarinic receptor antagonism. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:906.
201. Kron SS. Severe bronchospasm and desaturation in a child associated with rapacuronium. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:923.
202. Naguib M. How serious is the bronchospasm induced by rapacuronium? *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:924.
203. Meakin GH, Pronske EH, Lerman J, et al. Bronchospasm after rapacuronium in infants and children. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:926.
204. Laxenaire MC, Moneret-Vautrin DA, Widmer S, et al. Anesthetics responsible for anaphylactic shock. A French multicenter study. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 1990;9:501–506. [in French].
205. Fisher MM, More DG. The epidemiology and clinical features of anaphylactic reactions in anaesthesia. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1981;9:226.
206. Mertes PM, Laxenaire MC, Alla F. Anaphylactic and anaphylactoid reactions occurring during anesthesia in France in 1999-2000. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:536–545.

206a. Tacquard C, Collange O, Gomis P, et al. Anaesthetic hypersensitivity reactions in France between 2011 and 2012. The 10th GERAP epidemiologic survey. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2017;61:290.

207. Baldo BA, Fisher MM. Substituted ammonium ions as allergenic determinants in drug allergy. *Nature*. 1983;306:262.

207a. de Pater GH, Florvaag E, et al. Six years without pholcodine; Norwegians are significantly less IgE–sensitized and clinically more tolerant to neuromuscular blocking agents. *Allergy*. 2017;72:813.

208. Levy JH, Davis GK, Duggan J, Szlam F. Determination of the hemodynamics and histamine release of rocuronium (Org 9426) when administered in increased doses under N2O/O2-sufentanil anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:318.
209. Rose M, Fisher M. Rocuronium. High risk for anaphylaxis? *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:678.
210. Watkins J. Incidence of UK reactions involving rocuronium may simply reflect market use. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:522.
211. Dewachter P, Mouton-Faivre C, Emala CW. Anaphylaxis and anesthesia. Controversies and new insights. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1141–1150.
212. Laxenaire MC, Mertes PM. Anaphylaxis during anaesthesia. Results of a two-year survey in France. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:549.
213. Levy JH, Gottge M, Szlam F, et al. Wheal and flare responses to intradermal rocuronium and cisatracurium in humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:844.
214. Futo J, Kupferberg JP, Moss J, et al. Vecuronium inhibits histamine N-methyltransferase. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:92.
215. O'Callaghan AC, Scadding G, Watkins J. Bronchospasm following the use of vecuronium. *Anaesthesia*. 1986;41:940.
216. Naguib M, Magboul MM, Jaroudi R. Clinically significant drug interactions with general anesthetics. incidence, mechanisms and management. *CNS Drugs*. 1997;8:51.
217. Miller RD. Factors affecting the action of muscle relaxants. In: Katz RL, ed. *Muscle Relaxants*. Amsterdam: Excerpta Medica; 1975.
218. Naguib M, Abdulatif M, al-Ghamdi A, et al. Interactions between mivacurium and atracurium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:484.
219. Lebowitz PW, Ramsey FM, Savarese JJ, et al. Combination of pancuronium and metocurine. Neuromuscular and hemodynamic advantages over pancuronium alone. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60:12.
220. Paul M, Kindler CH, Fokt RM, et al. Isobolographic analysis of non-depolarising muscle relaxant interactions at their receptor site. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2002;438:35.
221. Motamed C, Menad R, Farinotti R, et al. Potentiation of mivacurium blockade by low dose of pancuronium. A pharmacokinetic study. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1057.
222. Kay B, Chestnut RJ, Sum Ping JS, Healy TE. Economy in the use of muscle relaxants. Vecuronium after pancuronium. *Anaesthesia*. 1987;42:277.
223. Rashkovsky OM, Agoston S, Ket JM. Interaction between pancuronium bromide and vecuronium bromide. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:1063–1066.
224. Katz RL. Modification of the action of pancuronium by succinylcholine and halothane. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:602–606.
225. Ono K, Manabe N, Ohta Y, et al. Influence of suxamethonium on the action of subsequently administered vecuronium or pancuronium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;62:324.
226. Katz JA, Fragen RJ, Shanks CA, et al. The effects of succinylcholine on doxacurium-induced neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:604.
227. Cooper R, Mirakhur RK, Clarke RS, Boules Z. Comparison of intubating conditions after administration of Org 9246 (rocuronium) and suxamethonium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:269.
228. Kelly RE, Lien CA, Savarese JJ, et al. Depression of neuromuscular function in a patient during desflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:868.
229. Saitoh Y, Toyooka H, Amaha K. Recoveries of post-tetanic twitch and train-of-four responses after administration of vecuronium with different inhalation anaesthetics and neuroleptanaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70:402.
230. Miller RD, Way WL, Dolan WM, et al. The dependence of pancuronium- and d-tubocurarine–induced neuromuscular blockades on alveolar concentrations of halothane and forane. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;37:573–581.
231. Miller RD, Crique M, Eger 2nd EI. Duration of halothane anesthesia and neuromuscular blockade with d-tubocurarine. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;44:206.
232. Rupp SM, Miller RD, Gencarelli PJ. Vecuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade during enflurane, isoflurane, and halothane anesthesia in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:102.
233. Gencarelli PJ, Miller RD, Eger 2nd EI, Newfield P. Decreasing enflurane concentrations and d-tubocurarine neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:192.
234. Miller RD, Way WL, Dolan WM, et al. Comparative neuromuscular effects of pancuronium, gallamine, and succinylcholine during forane and halothane anesthesia in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:509.
235. Wulf H, Ledowski T, Linstedt U, et al. Neuromuscular blocking effects of rocuronium during desflurane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane anaesthesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45:526.
236. Bock M, Klippel K, Nitsche B, et al. Rocuronium potency and recovery characteristics during steady-state desflurane, sevoflurane, isoflurane or propofol anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:43.
237. Paul M, Fokt RM, Kindler CH, et al. Characterization of the interactions between volatile anesthetics and neuromuscular blockers at the muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:362.
238. Stanski DR, Ham J, Miller RD, Sheiner LB. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of d-tubocurarine during nitrous oxide-narcotic and halothane anesthesia in man. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:362.

239. Pereon Y, Bernard JM, Nguyen the Tich S, et al. The effects of desflurane on the nervous system. From spinal cord to muscles. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:490.
240. Franks NP, Lieb WR. Molecular and cellular mechanisms of general anaesthesia. *Nature*. 1994;367:607.
241. Singh YN, Harvey AL, Marshall IG. Antibiotic-induced paralysis of the mouse phrenic nerve–hemidiaphragm preparation, and reversibility by calcium and by neostigmine. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;48:418.
242. Burkett L, Bikhazi GB, Thomas Jr KC, et al. Mutual potentiation of the neuromuscular effects of antibiotics and relaxants. *Anesth Analg*. 1979;58:107.
243. Hasfurther D, Bailey P. Failure of neuromuscular blockade reversal after rocuronium in a patient who received oral neomycin. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:617.
244. Heier T, Caldwell JE, Sessler DI, Miller RD. Mild intraoperative hypothermia increases duration of action and spontaneous recovery of vecuronium blockade during nitrous oxide-isoflurane anesthesia in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:815.
245. Leslie K, Sessler DI, Bjorksten AR, Moayeri A. Mild hypothermia alters propofol pharmacokinetics and increases the duration of action of atracurium. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:1007.
246. Caldwell JE, Heier T, Wright PM, et al. Temperature-dependent pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of vecuronium. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:84.
247. Heier T, Caldwell JE, Sessler DI, et al. The relationship between adductor pollicis twitch tension and core, skin, and muscle temperature during nitrous oxide-isoflurane anesthesia in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:381–384.
248. Heier T, Caldwell JE, Sessler DI, Miller RD. The effect of local surface and central cooling on adductor pollicis twitch tension during nitrous oxide/isoflurane and nitrous oxide/fentanyl anesthesia in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:807–811.
249. Miller RD, Agoston S, van der Pol F, et al. Hypothermia and the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of pancuronium in the cat. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1978;207:532–538.
250. Stenlake JB, Hughes R. In vitro degradation of atracurium in human plasma. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:806–807.
251. Eriksson LI, Viby-Mogensen J, Lennmarken C. The effect of peripheral hypothermia on a vecuronium-induced neuromuscular block. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35:387–389.
252. Thornberry EA, Mazumdar B. The effect of changes in arm temperature on neuromuscular monitoring in the presence of atracurium blockade. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43:447–449.
253. Miller RD, Van Nyhis LS, Eger EI. The effect of temperature on a d-tubocurarine neuromuscular blockade and its antagonism by neostigmine. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1975;195:237–241.
254. Miller RD, Roderick LL. Pancuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade, and its antagonism by neostigmine, at 29, 37, and 41°C. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:333–335.
255. Heier T, Clough D, Wright PM, et al. The influence of mild hypothermia on the pharmacokinetics and time course of action of neostigmine in anesthetized volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:90–95.
255a. Lee HJ, Kim KS, et al. The influence of mild hypothermia on reversal of rocuronium-induced deep neuromuscular block with sugammadex. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2015;15:7.
256. Sinatra RS, Philip BK, Naulty JS, Ostheimer GW. Prolonged neuromuscular blockade with vecuronium in a patient treated with magnesium sulfate. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:1220–1222.
257. Fuchs-Buder T, Wilder-Smith OH, Borgeat A, Tassonyi E. Interaction of magnesium sulphate with vecuronium-induced neuromuscular block. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:405.
258. Tsai SK, Huang SW, Lee TY. Neuromuscular interactions between suxamethonium and magnesium sulphate in the cat. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:674.
259. Waud BE, Waud DR. Interaction of calcium and potassium with neuromuscular blocking agents. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52:863.
260. Al-Mohaya S, Naguib M, Abdelatif M, Farag H. Abnormal responses to muscle relaxants in a patient with primary hyperparathyroidism. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:554–556.
261. Price LH, Heninger GR. Lithium in the treatment of mood disorders. *N Engl J Med*. 1994;331:591–598.
262. Abdel-Zaher AO. The myoneural effects of lithium chloride on the nerve-muscle preparations of rats. Role of adenosine triphosphate-sensitive potassium channels. *Pharmacol Res*. 2000;41:163.
263. Hill GE, Wong KC, Hodges MR. Lithium carbonate and neuromuscular blocking agents. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:122.
264. Martin BA, Kramer PM. Clinical significance of the interaction between lithium and a neuromuscular blocker. *Am J Psychiatry*. 1982;139:1326.
265. Usubiaga JE, Wikinski JA, Morales RL, Usubiaga LE. Interaction of intravenously administered procaine, lidocaine and succinylcholine in anesthetized subjects. *Anesth Analg*. 1967;46:39.
266. Usubiaga JE, Standaert F. The effects of local anesthetics on motor nerve terminals. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1968;159:353–361.
267. Kordas M. The effect of procaine on neuromuscular transmission. *J Physiol*. 1970;209:689–699.
268. Thorpe WR, Seeman P. The site of action of caffeine and procaine in skeletal muscle. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1971;179:324.
269. Ozkul Y. Influence of calcium channel blocker drugs in neuromuscular transmission. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2007;118:2005–2008.
270. van Poorten JF, Dhasmana KM, Kuypers RS, Erdmann W. Verapamil and reversal of vecuronium neuromuscular blockade. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:155–157.
271. Baurain M, Barvais L, d'Hollander A, Hennart D. Impairment of the antagonism of vecuronium-induced paralysis and intra-operative disopyramide administration. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44:34–36.
272. Selzer ME, David G, Yaari Y. Phenytoin reduces frequency potentiation of synaptic potentials at the frog neuromuscular junction. *Brain Res*. 1984;304:149–152.
273. Ornstein E, Matteo RS, Schwartz AE, et al. The effect of phenytoin on the magnitude and duration of neuromuscular block following atracurium or vecuronium. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:191–196.
274. Spacek A, Neiger FX, Spiss CK, Kress HG. Chronic carbamazepine therapy does not influence mivacurium-induced neuromuscular block. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;77:500–502.
275. Alloul K, Whalley DG, Shutway F, et al. Pharmacokinetic origin of carbamazepine-induced resistance to vecuronium neuromuscular blockade in anesthetized patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:330–339.
276. Kim CS, Arnold FJ, Itani MS, Martyn JA. Decreased sensitivity to metocurine during long-term phenytoin therapy may be attributable to protein binding and acetylcholine receptor changes. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:500–506.
277. Melton AT, Antognini JF, Gronert GA. Prolonged duration of succinylcholine in patients receiving anticonvulsants. Evidence for mild up-regulation of acetylcholine receptors? *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:939–942.
278. Miller RD, Sohn YJ, Matteo RS. Enhancement of d-tuborcurarine neuromuscular blockade by diuretics in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;45:442–445.
279. Scappaticci KA, Ham JA, Sohn YJ, et al. Effects of furosemide on the neuromuscular junction. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:381–382.
280. Carmignani M, Scoppetta C, Ranelletti FO, Tonali P. Adverse interaction between acetazolamide and anticholinesterase drugs at the normal and myasthenic neuromuscular junction level. *Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther Toxicol*. 1984;22:140.
281. Azar I, Cottrell J, Gupta B, Turndorf H. Furosemide facilitates recovery of evoked twitch response after pancuronium. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:55–57.
282. Hill GE, Wong KC, Shaw CL, Blatnick RA. Acute and chronic changes in intra- and extracellular potassium and responses to neuromuscular blocking agents. *Anesth Analg*. 1978;57:417–421.
283. Matteo RS, Nishitateno K, Pua EK, Spector S. Pharmacokinetics of d-tubocurarine in man. Effect of an osmotic diuretic on urinary excretion. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;52:335–338.
284. Lee C, Katz RL. Neuromuscular pharmacology. A clinical update and commentary. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52:173–188.
285. Glidden RS, Martyn JA, Tomera JF. Azathioprine fails to alter the dose-response curve of d-tubocurarine in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:595–598.
286. Meyers EF. Partial recovery from pancuronium neuromuscular blockade following hydrocortisone administration. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:148–150.
287. Leeuwin RS, Veldsema-Currie RD, van Wilgenburg H, Ottenhof M. Effects of corticosteroids on neuromuscular blocking actions of d-tubocurarine. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1981;69:165–173.
288. Parr SM, Robinson BJ, Rees D, Galletly DC. Interaction between betamethasone and vecuronium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:447–451.
289. Bouzat C, Barrantes FJ. Modulation of muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptors by the glucocorticoid hydrocortisone. Possible allosteric mechanism of channel blockade. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:25835–25841.

290. Valera S, Ballivet M, Bertrand D. Progesterone modulates a neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1992;89:9949.
291. Naguib M, Gyasi HK. Antiestrogenic drugs and atracurium. A possible interaction? *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1986;33:682.
292. Henderson WA. Succinylcholine-induced cardiac arrest in unsuspected Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1984;31:444–446.
293. Goudsouzian NG, Ryan JF, Savarese JJ. The neuromuscular effects of pancuronium in infants and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41:95–98.
294. Fisher DM, O'Keeffe C, Stanski DR, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of d-tubocurarine in infants, children, and adults. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:203–208.
295. Fisher DM, Castagnoli K, Miller RD. Vecuronium kinetics and dynamics in anesthetized infants and children. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1985;37:402–406.
296. Fisher DM, Canfell PC, Spellman MJ, Miller RD. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of atracurium in infants and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:33–37.
297. Fisher DM, Miller RD. Neuromuscular effects of vecuronium (ORG NC45) in infants and children during N2O, halothane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:519–523.
298. Meretoja OA, Wirtavuori K, Neuvonen PJ. Age-dependence of the dose-response curve of vecuronium in pediatric patients during balanced anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:21–26.
299. Wierda JM, Meretoja OA, Taivainen T, Proost JH. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacokinetic-dynamic modelling of rocuronium in infants and children. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:690–695.
300. Goudsouzian NG, Liu LM, Cote CJ, et al. Safety and efficacy of atracurium in adolescents and children anesthetized with halothane. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:459–462.
301. Meretoja OA, Taivainen T, Wirtavuori K. Cisatracurium during halothane and balanced anaesthesia in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1996;6:373–378.
302. de Ruiter J, Crawford MW. Dose-response relationship and infusion requirement of cisatracurium besylate in infants and children during nitrous oxide–narcotic anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:790–792.
303. Scheiber G, Ribeiro FC, Marichal A, et al. Intubating conditions and onset of action after rocuronium, vecuronium, and atracurium in young children. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:320–324.
304. Taivainen T, Meretoja OA, Erkola O, et al. Rocuronium in infants, children and adults during balanced anaesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1996;6:271–275.
305. Devys JM, Mourissoux G, Donnette FX, et al. Intubating conditions and adverse events during sevoflurane induction in infants. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:225–229.
305a. Meakin G, Sweet PT, Bevan JC, Bevan DR. Neostigmine and edrophonium as antagonists of pancuronium in infants and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:316–321.
306. Koscielniak-Nielsen ZJ, Bevan JC, Popovic V, et al. Onset of maximum neuromuscular block following succinylcholine or vecuronium in four age groups. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:229–234.
307. Duvaldestin P, Saada J, Berger JL, et al. Pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, and dose-response relationships of pancuronium in control and elderly subjects. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:36–40.
308. Lien CA, Matteo RS, Ornstein E, et al. Distribution, elimination, and action of vecuronium in the elderly. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:39–42.
309. Maddineni VR, Mirakhur RK, McCoy EP. Plasma cholinesterase activity in elderly and young adults. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:497.
310. Maddineni VR, Mirakhur RK, McCoy EP, Sharpe TD. Neuromuscular and haemodynamic effects of mivacurium in elderly and young adult patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:608–612.
311. Lemmens HJ, Brodsky JB. The dose of succinylcholine in morbid obesity. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:438–442.
312. Schwartz AE, Matteo RS, Ornstein E, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of vecuronium in the obese surgical patient. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:515–518.
313. Meyhoff CS, Lund J, Jenstrup MT, et al. Should dosing of rocuronium in obese patients be based on ideal or corrected body weight? *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:787–792.
314. Leykin Y, Pellis T, Lucca M, et al. The pharmacodynamic effects of rocuronium when dosed according to real body weight or ideal body weight in morbidly obese patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1086–1089.
315. Varin F, Ducharme J, Theoret Y, et al. Influence of extreme obesity on the body disposition and neuromuscular blocking effect of atracurium. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1990;48:18–25.
316. van Kralingen S, van de Garde EM, Knibbe CA, et al. Comparative evaluation of atracurium dosed on ideal body weight vs. total body weight in morbidly obese patients. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;71:34–40.
317. Miller RD, Matteo RS, Benet LZ, Sohn YJ. The pharmacokinetics of d-tubocurarine in man with and without renal failure. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1977;202:1–7.
318. Ward S, Neill EA. Pharmacokinetics of atracurium in acute hepatic failure (with acute renal failure). *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:1169–1172.
319. Bevan DR, Donati F, Gyasi H, Williams A. Vecuronium in renal failure. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1984;31:491–492.
320. Khuenl-Brady KS, Pomaroli A, Puhringer F, et al. The use of rocuronium (ORG 9426) in patients with chronic renal failure. *Anaesthesia*. 1993;48:873–875.
321. Hunter JM, Jones RS, Utting JE. Use of atracurium in patients with no renal function. *Br J Anaesth*. 1982;54:1251–1258.
322. Vandenbrom RH, Wierda JM, Agoston S. Pharmacokinetics and neuromuscular blocking effects of atracurium besylate and two of its metabolites in patients with normal and impaired renal function. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1990;19:230–240.
323. Boyd AH, Eastwood NB, Parker CJ, Hunter JM. Pharmacodynamics of the 1R cis-1'R cis isomer of atracurium (51W89) in health and chronic renal failure. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:400–401.
324. Fahey MR, Morris RB, Miller RD, et al. Pharmacokinetics of Org NC45 (norcuron) in patients with and without renal failure. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:1049–1053.
325. Lynam DP, Cronnelly R, Castagnoli KP, et al. The pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics of vecuronium in patients anesthetized with isoflurane with normal renal function or with renal failure. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:227–231.
326. Hunter JM, Jones RS, Utting JE. Comparison of vecuronium, atracurium and tubocurarine in normal patients and in patients with no renal function. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56:941–951.
326a. Robertson EN, Driessen JJ, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of rocuronium in patients with and without renal failure. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22:4–10.
326b. Bencini AF, Scaf AH, Sohn YJ, Kersten-Kleef UW, Agoston S. Hepatobiliary disposition of vecuronium bromide in man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:988–995.
326c. Servin FS, et al. Repeated doses of rocuronium bromide administered to cirrhotic and control patients receiving isoflurane. A clinical and pharmacokinetic study. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:1092.
327. Lawhead RG, Matsumi M, Peters KR, et al. Plasma laudanosine levels in patients given atracurium during liver transplantation. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:569–573.
328. Ward JM, Rosen KM, Martyn JA. Acetylcholine receptor subunit mRNA changes in burns are different from those seen after denervation. The 1993 Lindberg Award. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1993;14:595–601.
329. Martyn JA, Szyfelbein SK, Ali HH, et al. Increased d-tubocurarine requirement following major thermal injury. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;52:352–355.
330. Edwards JP, Hatton PA, Little RA, et al. Increased quantal release of acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction following scald injury in the rat. *Muscle Nerve*. 1999;22:1660–1666.
331. Tomera JF, Lilford K, Martyn JA. Diaphragm acetylcholinesterase multimeric forms in mice in response to burn trauma. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1993;14:406–416.
332. Marathe PH, Dwersteg JF, Pavlin EG, et al. Effect of thermal injury on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of atracurium in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:752–755.
333. Han T, Kim H, Bae J, et al. Neuromuscular pharmacodynamics of rocuronium in patients with major burns. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:386–392.
334. Martyn JA, White DA, Gronert GA, et al. Up-and-down regulation of skeletal muscle acetylcholine receptors. Effects on neuromuscular blockers. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:822–843.
335. Schaner PJ, Brown RL, Kirksey TD, et al. Succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia in burned patients. 1. *Anesth Analg*. 1969;48:764–770.
336. Viby-Mogensen J, Hanel HK, Hansen E, Graae J. Serum cholinesterase activity in burned patients. II. Anaesthesia, suxamethonium and hyperkalaemia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1975;19:169–179.

337. Murray MJ, Cowen J, DeBlock H, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for sustained neuromuscular blockade in the adult critically ill patient. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:142–156.
338. Papazian L, Forel J-M, Gacouin A, et al. Neuromuscular blockers in early acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:1107–1116.
339. Loper KA, Butler S, Nessly M, Wild L. Paralyzed with pain. The need for education. *Pain*. 1989;37:315–316.
340. Hansen-Flaschen JH, Brazinsky S, Basile C, Lanken PN. Use of sedating drugs and neuromuscular blocking agents in patients requiring mechanical ventilation for respiratory failure. A national survey. *JAMA*. 1991;266:2870–2875.
341. Pollard BJ. Muscle relaxants in critical care. *Br J Intens Care*. 1994;4:347–353.
341a. Murray MJ, DeBlock H, Erstad B, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for sustained neuromuscular blockade in the adult critically ill patient. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:2079–2103.
342. Lacomis D, Petrella JT, Giuliani MJ. Causes of neuromuscular weakness in the intensive care unit. A study of ninety-two patients. *Muscle Nerve*. 1998;21:610–617.
343. Rudis MI, Guslits BJ, Peterson EL, et al. Economic impact of prolonged motor weakness complicating neuromuscular blockade in the intensive care unit. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24:1749–1756.
344. Lacomis D, Zochodne DW, Bird SJ. Critical illness myopathy. *Muscle Nerve*. 2000;23:1785–1788.
345. Showalter CJ, Engel AG. Acute quadriplegic myopathy. Analysis of myosin isoforms and evidence for calpain-mediated proteolysis. *Muscle Nerve*. 1997;20:316–322.
346. Shee CD. Risk factors for hydrocortisone myopathy in acute severe asthma. *Respir Med*. 1990;84:229–233.
347. Hanson P, Dive A, Brucher JM, et al. Acute corticosteroid myopathy in intensive care patients. *Muscle Nerve*. 1997;20:1371–1380.
348. Deconinck N, Van Parijs V, Beckers-Bleukx G, Van den Bergh P. Critical illness myopathy unrelated to corticosteroids or neuromuscular blocking agents. *Neuromuscul Disord*. 1998;8:186–192.
349. DuBois DC, Almon RR. Disuse atrophy of skeletal muscle is associated with an increase in number of glucocorticoid receptors. *Endocrinology*. 1980;107:1649–1650.
350. Hund E. Myopathy in critically ill patients. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:2544–2547.
351. Neviere R, Mathieu D, Chagnon JL, et al. Skeletal muscle microvascular blood flow and oxygen transport in patients with severe sepsis. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1996;153:191–195.
352. Tsukagoshi H, Morita T, Takahashi K, et al. Cecal ligation and puncture peritonitis model shows decreased nicotinic acetylcholine receptor numbers in rat muscle. immunopathologic mechanisms? *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:448–460.
353. De Letter MA, van Doorn PA, Savelkoul HF, et al. Critical illness polyneuropathy and myopathy (CIPNM). Evidence for local immune activation by cytokine-expression in the muscle tissue. *J Neuroimmunol*. 2000;106:206–213.
354. Tepper M, Rakic S, Haas JA, Woittiez AJ. Incidence and onset of critical illness polyneuropathy in patients with septic shock. *Neth J Med*. 2000;56:211.
355. Zifko UA. Long-term outcome of critical illness polyneuropathy. *Muscle Nerve Suppl*. 2000;9:S49–S52.
356. Dodson BA, Kelly BJ, Braswell LM, Cohen NH. Changes in acetylcholine receptor number in muscle from critically ill patients receiving muscle relaxants. An investigation of the molecular mechanism of prolonged paralysis. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23: 815–821.
357. Coursin DB, Klasek G, Goelzer SL. Increased requirements for continuously infused vecuronium in critically ill patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:518–521.
358. Kupfer Y, Namba T, Kaldawi E, Tessler S. Prolonged weakness after long-term infusion of vecuronium bromide. *Ann Intern Med*. 1992;117:484–486.
359. Op de Coul AA, Lambregts PC, Koeman J, et al. Neuromuscular complications in patients given Pavulon (pancuronium bromide) during artificial ventilation. *Clin Neurol Neurosurg*. 1985;87: 17–22.
360. Tousignant CP, Bevan DR, Eisen AA, et al. Acute quadriparesis in an asthmatic treated with atracurium. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42:224–227.
361. Gwinnutt CL, Eddleston JM, Edwards D, Pollard BJ. Concentrations of atracurium and laudanosine in cerebrospinal fluid and plasma in three intensive care patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65:829–832.
362. Szenohradszky J, Trevor AJ, Bickler P, et al. Central nervous system effects of intrathecal muscle relaxants in rats. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:1304–1309.
363. Griffiths RB, Hunter JM, Jones RS. Atracurium infusions in patients with renal failure on an ITU. *Anaesthesia*. 1986;41:375–381.
364. Beemer GH, Dawson PJ, Bjorksten AR, Edwards NE. Early postoperative seizures in neurosurgical patients administered atracurium and isoflurane. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1989;17:504–509.
365. Eddleston JM, Harper NJ, Pollard BJ, et al. Concentrations of atracurium and laudanosine in cerebrospinal fluid and plasma during intracranial surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;63:525–530.
366. Chiodini F, Charpantier E, Muller D, et al. Blockade and activation of the human neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors by atracurium and laudanosine. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:643–651.
367. Chapple DJ, Miller AA, Ward JB, Wheatley PL. Cardiovascular and neurological effects of laudanosine. Studies in mice and rats, and in conscious and anaesthetized dogs. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:218–225.
368. Prielipp RC, Coursin DB, Scuderi PE, et al. Comparison of the infusion requirements and recovery profiles of vecuronium and cisatracurium 51W89 in intensive care unit patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:3–12.
369. Zarowitz BJ, Rudis MI, Lai K, et al. Retrospective pharmacoeconomic evaluation of dosing vecuronium by peripheral nerve stimulation versus standard clinical assessment in critically ill patients. *Pharmacotherapy*. 1997;17:327–332.
370. Kress JP, Pohlman AS, O'Connor MF, Hall JB. Daily interruption of sedative infusions in critically ill patients undergoing mechanical ventilation. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:1471–1477.
371. Kim KS, Chung CW, Shin WJ. Cisatracurium neuromuscular block at the adductor pollicis and the laryngeal adductor muscles in humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:483–484.
372. Katz RL, Ryan JF. The neuromuscular effects of suxamethonium in man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1969;41:381–390.
373. Kopman AF, Zhaku B, Lai KS. The "intubating dose" of succinylcholine. The effect of decreasing doses on recovery time. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1050–1054.
374. Wierda JM, van den Broek L, Proost JH, et al. Time course of action and endotracheal intubating conditions of Org 9487, a new short-acting steroidal muscle relaxant. A comparison with succinylcholine. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:579–584.
375. Miguel R, Witkowski T, Nagashima H, et al. Evaluation of neuromuscular and cardiovascular effects of two doses of rapacuronium (ORG 9487) versus mivacurium and succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1648–1654.
376. Agoston S, Salt P, Newton D, et al. The neuromuscular blocking action of ORG NC 45, a new pancuronium derivative, in anaesthetized patients. A pilot study. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52(suppl 1):53S–59S.
377. Katz RL. Clinical neuromuscular pharmacology of pancuronium. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;34:550–556.
378. Savarese JJ, Ali HH, Antonio RP. The clinical pharmacology of metocurine. Dimethyltubocurarine revisited. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;47:277–284.
379. From RP, Pearson KS, Choi WW, et al. Neuromuscular and cardiovascular effects of mivacurium chloride (BW B1090U) during nitrous oxide-fentanyl-thiopentone and nitrous oxide-halothane anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:193–198.
380. Somogyi AA, Shanks CA, Triggs EJ. The effect of renal failure on the disposition and neuromuscular blocking action of pancuronium bromide. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1977;12:23–29.
381. Lebrault C, Duvaldestin P, Henzel D, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of vecuronium in patients with cholestasis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:983–987.
382. Servin FS, Lavaut E, Kleef U, Desmonts JM. Repeated doses of rocuronium bromide administered to cirrhotic and control patients receiving isoflurane. A clinical and pharmacokinetic study. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:1092–1100.
383. Westra P, Vermeer GA, de Lange AR, et al. Hepatic and renal disposition of pancuronium and gallamine in patients with extrahepatic cholestasis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:331–338.

28

Reversal (Antagonism) of Neuromuscular Blockade

GLENN MURPHY, HANS D. DE BOER, LARS I. ERIKSSON, AND
RONALD D. MILLER

KEY POINTS

- Appropriate reversal of a nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade is essential to avoid adverse patient outcomes. Complete recovery of muscle strength should be present, and the residual effects of neuromuscular blocking drugs (NMBDs) should be fully pharmacologically reversed (or spontaneously recovered).
- Sufficient recovery from neuromuscular blockade for tracheal extubation can be confirmed by an adductor pollicis train-of-four (TOF) ratio of at least 0.90 (or 1.0 if acceleromyography [AMG] is used). Quantitative neuromuscular monitoring is the only method of assessing whether a safe level of recovery of muscular function has occurred.
- Residual neuromuscular blockade is not a rare event in the postanesthesia care unit (PACU). Approximately 30% to 50% of patients can have TOF ratios less than 0.90 following surgery.
- Patients with TOF ratios less than 0.90 in the PACU are at increased risk for hypoxemic events, impaired control of breathing during hypoxia, airway obstruction, postoperative pulmonary complications, symptoms of muscle weakness, and prolonged PACU admission times. Appropriate management of neuromuscular blockade can decrease the incidence of, or eliminate, residual blockade, which will reduce the risks of these adverse postoperative events.
- Neostigmine, pyridostigmine, and edrophonium inhibit the breakdown of acetylcholine, resulting in an increase in acetylcholine in the neuromuscular junction. However, there is a “ceiling” effect to the maximal concentration of acetylcholine that can be achieved with these drugs. Reversal of neuromuscular blockade with anticholinesterases should not be attempted until some evidence of spontaneous recovery is present. Neostigmine in the dose range of 30 to 70 μg/kg body weight antagonizes moderate to shallow levels of neuromuscular blockade. However, if these reversal drugs are given in the presence of full neuromuscular recovery, paradoxical muscle weakness theoretically may be induced.
- Sugammadex is a modified γ-cyclodextrin that shows a high affinity for the steroidal NMBDs rocuronium and vecuronium. Sugammadex is able to form a tight inclusion complex with either of these steroidal NMBDs, thereby inactivating the effects of rocuronium and vecuronium, resulting in rapid reversal of neuromuscular blockade.
- Sugammadex is able to reverse a moderate/shallow and a profound neuromuscular blockade with a dose of 2.0 mg/kg and 4.0 mg/kg, respectively. An immediate reversal of neuromuscular blockade induced by rocuronium is possible with a dose of sugammadex 16 mg/kg. Reversal of neuromuscular blockade by sugammadex is rapid and without many of the side effects encountered with anticholinesterase drugs.
- Fumarates (gantacurium [GW280430A, AV430A], CW002, and CW011) represent a new class of NMBDs in development that are inactivated primarily via adduction of cysteine to the double bond of the compounds, resulting in inactive breakdown products. Laboratory studies have shown that the administration of exogenous L-cysteine results in complete reversal of deep neuromuscular blockade within 2 to 3 minutes.

History

The paralytic effects of curare have been recognized since the time of Sir Walter Raleigh’s voyage on the Amazon in 1595.[1] In 1935, the name *d*-tubocurarine was assigned to an alkaloid isolated from a South American vine *(Chondrodendron tomentosum)*. At approximately the same time, experiments from pharmacology and physiology laboratories in London suggested that acetylcholine was the chemical neurotransmitter at motor nerve endings.[2] Investigations from these same laboratories demonstrated that eserine (physostigmine)-like substances could reverse the effects of curare at the neuromuscular junction of frog nerve-muscle preparations.[2] In the clinical setting, Bennett (1940) described the use of curare in the prevention of traumatic complications during convulsive shock therapy.[3] In 1942, Griffith and colleagues reported on the effects of an extract of curare in 25 surgical patients; all patients appeared to recover fully without administration of an antagonist such as neostigmine.[4]

The importance of pharmacologic reversal of neuromuscular blockade was suggested in 1945. Specifically, use of neostigmine or physostigmine to antagonize curare was recognized and was recommended to be available whenever muscle relaxants were given in the operating room.[5] The first large case series examining the use of curare was published by Cecil Gray in 1946.[1] A crystalline extract, *d*-tubocurarine chloride, was administered in 1049 general anesthesia cases. No postoperative complications directly attributable to *d*-tubocurarine were noted, and physostigmine was administered to only two patients in the series. However, in a later review article (1959) from the same anesthesia department, the authors concluded that "it is safer to always use neostigmine when nondepolarizing relaxants have been administered."[6] By the mid-1960s, significant differences in neuromuscular management existed between the United States and Europe. As noted in an editorial from this time, "In Great Britain the majority of anesthetists have arbitrarily adopted the attitude that the dangers of reversal are far less than those of latent paresis, so that most patients receive at least some anticholinesterase drug at the end of anesthesia." In the United States, however, where smaller doses of curare were used, the emphasis was more on the mortality and morbidity associated with reversal drugs. Of greater importance was the use of muscle relaxants in smaller doses so that reversal drugs were not necessary.[7] In fact, in the senior author's training (Miller), the prevailing thinking was that emphasis in anesthesia should be on "properly anesthetizing rather than paralyzing" a patient; it was commonly said that "curare is not an anesthetic."

Despite more than seven decades of research, significant differences in opinion still exist regarding management of neuromuscular blockade at the conclusion of surgery and anesthesia. On a routine basis, some clinicians pharmacologically antagonize a nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drug (NMBD), whereas others antagonize neuromuscular blockade only when obvious clinical muscle weakness is present. The issue is whether clinically important weakness exists when it is not clinically apparent. Will monitoring of neuromuscular blockade improve patient care? The aim of this chapter is to review the consequences of incomplete neuromuscular recovery, the use of anticholinesterase drugs in clinical practice (benefits, risks, and limitations), and the recent developments in novel drugs to reverse/antagonize residual neuromuscular blockade.

Antagonism of Neuromuscular Blockade: Current Management Practices

A number of survey studies have been conducted to determine how clinicians evaluate and manage neuromuscular blockade in the perioperative period. In the late 1950s, a survey was sent to anesthetists in Great Britain and Ireland.[6] Forty-four percent of the respondents used neostigmine "always" or "almost always" when *d*-tubocurarine chloride or gallamine was used. Two thirds of respondents administered 1.25 to 2.5 mg when antagonizing these NMBDs.[6] Despite accumulating data demonstrating a continued frequent incidence of residual neuromuscular blockade, more-recent surveys indicate that attitudes toward reversal of neuromuscular blockade have changed little over the intervening decades. A questionnaire sent to German anesthesiologists in 2003 revealed routine reversal with neostigmine at the end of surgery was not practiced in 75% of anesthesia departments.[8] A similar survey of 1230 senior anesthetists in France reported that pharmacologic antagonism of neuromuscular blockade was "systematic" or "frequent" in only 6% and 26% of surgical cases, respectively.[9] In contrast, reversal of nondepolarizing NMBDs was routinely performed in Great Britain.[10]

A large-scale, comprehensive survey of neuromuscular management practices in the United States and Europe was conducted in order to better understand attitudes about doses of NMBDs, monitoring, and pharmacologic reversal.[11] Only 18% of European respondents and 34.2% of respondents from the United States "always" administered an anticholinesterase drug when a nondepolarizing relaxant was used. The findings from these surveys suggest that there is little agreement about best practices related to reversal of neuromuscular blockade. Despite perioperative guidelines from several international and national organizations, surveys from many countries reveal that most clinicians do not monitor or reverse a neuromuscular blockade in the operating room. Surprisingly, most anesthesiologists have not witnessed obvious adverse events directly attributable to incomplete recovery from neuromuscular blockade.[11] Therefore the potential hazards of reversal of neuromuscular blockade using an anticholinesterase drug (see later) are likely estimated to be more frequent than the risks of residual neuromuscular blockade. In the following sections, the definitions, incidence, and clinical implications of residual neuromuscular blockade are reviewed.

RESIDUAL NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKADE

Assessment of Residual Neuromuscular Blockade

In order to optimize patient safety, tracheal extubation in the operating room should not occur until complete recovery of muscle strength is present and the residual effects of NMBDs have been fully reversed (or spontaneously recovered). Therefore methods to detect and treat residual muscle weakness are essential in improving postoperative outcomes. Three methods are commonly used in the operating room to determine the presence or absence of residual neuromuscular blockade: clinical evaluations for signs of muscle weakness, qualitative neuromuscular monitors (peripheral nerve stimulators), and quantitative (objective) neuromuscular monitors. A more detailed description of the types of neuromuscular monitors used perioperatively is provided in Chapter 43.

Clinical Evaluation for Signs of Muscle Weakness. Following the introduction of *d*-tubocurarine into clinical practice, residual paralysis and the need for neostigmine was determined primarily by the observation of "shallow, jerky movements of the diaphragm" at the end of surgery.[12] In the absence of any clinically observable respiratory impairment, neuromuscular function was assumed to be adequate, and no reversal drugs were administered. A peripheral nerve stimulator to assess neuromuscular

TABLE 28.1 Sensitivity, Specificity, Positive, and Negative Predictive Values of an Individual Clinical Test for a Train-of-Four <90% in 640 Surgical Patients

Variable	Sensitivity	Specificity	Positive Predictive Value	Negative Predictive Value
Inability to smile	0.29	0.80	0.47	0.64
Inability to swallow	0.21	0.85	0.47	0.63
Inability to speak	0.29	0.80	0.47	0.64
General weakness	0.35	0.78	0.51	0.66
Inability to lift head for 5 s	0.19	0.88	0.51	0.64
Inability to lift leg for 5 s	0.25	0.84	0.50	0.64
Inability to sustain hand grip for 5 s	0.18	0.89	0.51	0.63
Inability to perform sustained tongue depressor test	0.22	0.88	0.52	0.64

The sensitivity of a test is the number of true positives ÷ the sum of true positives + false negatives; the specificity is the number of true negatives ÷ the sum of true negatives + false positives. True positives are patients scoring positive for a test and having a train-of-four (TOF) <90%. False negatives are patients with a negative test result but a TOF <90%. True negatives have a negative test score and a TOF not <90%; false positives score positively but have a TOF not <90%. A *positive* test result means *inability* to smile, swallow and speak, general muscular weakness, and so on.

From Cammu G, De Witte J, De Veylder J, et al. Postoperative residual paralysis in outpatients versus inpatients. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:426–429.

blockade was first used in the 1960s by Harry Churchill-Davidson in the United Kingdom and later in the United States. However, routine use of a peripheral nerve stimulator did not occur. In fact, several decades later, the most commonly applied technique for evaluation of recovery of neuromuscular function continues to be the use of clinical tests for signs of apparent muscle weakness.[13] Furthermore, one of the primary factors that determines whether clinicians elect to administer a reversal drug at the end of surgery is the presence of signs of muscle weakness.[11] However, for decades an array of clinical studies from different countries have consistently shown that tests of muscle strength are not sensitive or reliable indices of adequate neuromuscular recovery. The most commonly applied criteria used to determine suitability for extubation of the trachea are a "normal" pattern of ventilation and a sustained head lift.[13] Unfortunately, the sensitivity of each test in detecting residual blockade is poor. At a level of neuromuscular recovery that allows for adequate ventilation in a patient whose trachea is intubated, the muscles responsible for maintaining airway patency and protection are significantly impaired.[14] Other investigators have observed that the majority of subjects could maintain a 5-second head lift at a train-of-four (TOF) ratio of 0.50 or less.[15,16] Additional clinical tests of muscle strength, such as sustained hand-grip, leg-lift, or eye opening, have been demonstrated to have a low sensitivity in predicting recovery of neuromuscular function (Table 28.1).[17,18]

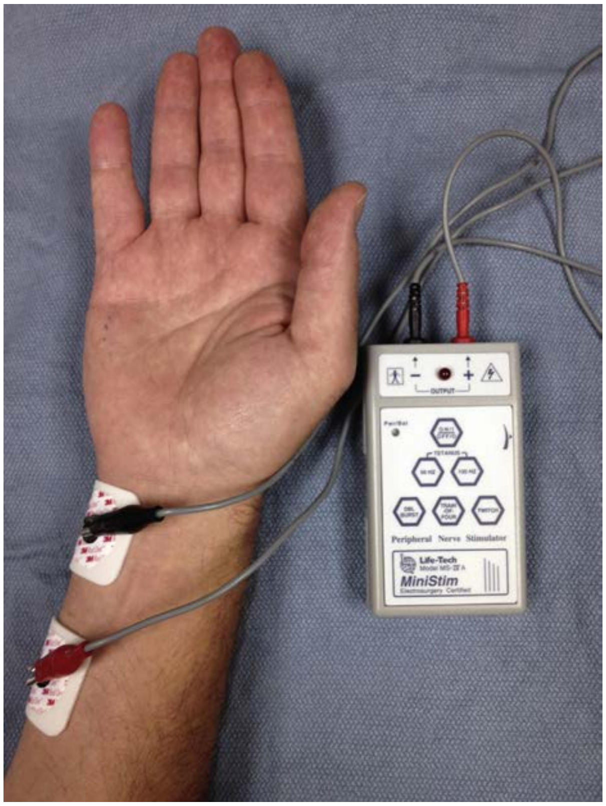


Fig. 28.1 Example of a qualitative neuromuscular monitor (or more appropriately, a peripheral nerve stimulator). (MiniStim, Halyard Health, Roswell, GA) A peripheral nerve is stimulated, and the response to nerve stimulation is subjectively (qualitatively) assessed using either visual or tactile (hand placed on the muscle) means. In this illustration, the ulnar nerve is stimulated, and movement of the thumb subjectively evaluated.

Qualitative Neuromuscular Monitoring. Qualitative neuromuscular monitors—or more accurately, peripheral nerve stimulators—deliver an electrical stimulus to a peripheral nerve, and the response to nerve stimulation is subjectively assessed by clinicians either visually or tactilely (i.e., placing a hand on the thumb to detect the muscle contraction after ulnar nerve stimulation) (Fig. 28.1). Three patterns of nerve stimulation are used in the clinical setting to assess patients for residual blockade: TOF, tetanic, and double-burst stimulation. TOF stimulation delivers four supramaximal stimuli every 0.5 seconds, tetanic stimulation consists of a series of extremely rapid (usually 50 or 100 Hz) stimuli typically applied over 5 seconds, and double-burst stimulation delivers two short bursts of 50-Hz tetanic stimuli separated by 750 ms. The presence of fade with these patterns of nerve stimulation indicates incomplete neuromuscular recovery. Although qualitative monitoring may guide management during early recovery from neuromuscular blockade, the sensitivity of these devices in detecting small degrees of

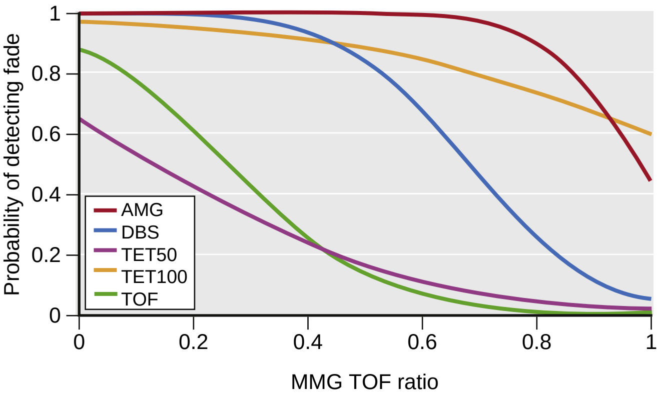


Fig. 28.2 Detection of fade with various neuromuscular monitoring techniques. Residual neuromuscular blockade was evaluated using acceleromyography *(AMG)*, tactile assessment of train-of-four *(TOF)*, double-burst stimulation *(DBS)*, 50-Hz tetanus *(TET50)*, or 100-Hz tetanus *(TET100)*. The mechanomyographic *(MMG)* adductor pollicis TOF ratio was measured at one extremity. During recovery, a blinded observer estimated tactile fade in the other extremity. Probability of detection of fade by logistic regression is presented. (From Capron F, Fortier LP, Racine S, Donati F. Tactile fade detection with hand or wrist stimulation using train-of-four, double-burst stimulation, 50-hertz tetanus, 100-hertz tetanus, and acceleromyography. *Anesth Analg.* 2006;102:1578–1584.)

residual paresis (TOF ratios between 0.50 and 1.0) is limited (Fig. 28.2). When using TOF stimulation, investigators have consistently observed that clinicians are unable to detect fade when TOF ratios exceed 0.30 to 0.40.[19-21] Similarly, the observation of fade during a 5-second, 50-Hz tetanic stimulation is difficult when TOF ratios are greater than 0.30.[21,22] The ability of clinicians to detect fade is improved with double-burst stimulation; the threshold for detection of fade is approximately 0.6 to 0.7 using this mode of stimulation.[20,21,23] However, regardless of the mode of nerve stimulation used, residual neuromuscular blockade cannot always be reliably excluded using qualitative monitoring.

Quantitative Neuromuscular Monitoring. Quantitative neuromuscular monitors are instruments that permit both stimulation of a peripheral nerve and the quantification and recording of the evoked response to nerve stimulation. Quantitative monitors allow an accurate assessment of the degree of muscle weakness using either TOF stimulation (TOF ratio displayed) or single-twitch stimulation (response compared with control “twitch” as a percentage). Although five different methods of quantifying neuromuscular function in the operating room have been developed, only one technology, acceleromyography (AMG, available as the Stimpod, Xavant Technology, Pretoria, South Africa), is commercially obtainable as a stand-alone monitor. The portable TOF-Watch AMG monitor (Bluestar Enterprises, San Antonio, Texas), which has been used in the majority of published clinical trials, is no longer sold in the United States (Fig. 28.3). In a study comparing AMG with standard qualitative tests (tactile fade to TOF, double-burst, 5-Hz tetanic, and 100-Hz tetanic stimulation), AMG was the most accurate technique in detecting residual paralysis (see Fig. 28.2).[21] In addition, the use of AMG in the operating room has been demonstrated to reduce the risk of residual neuromuscular blockade in the postanesthesia care unit (PACU)[24-27] and to decrease adverse respiratory events and symptoms of muscle weakness associated with incomplete neuromuscular recovery.[26,27] In clinical practice, AMG is a valuable monitor in determining whether full recovery of neuromuscular function has occurred before tracheal extubation, and provides objective data to guide dosing of reversal drugs at the conclusion of surgery (see later).

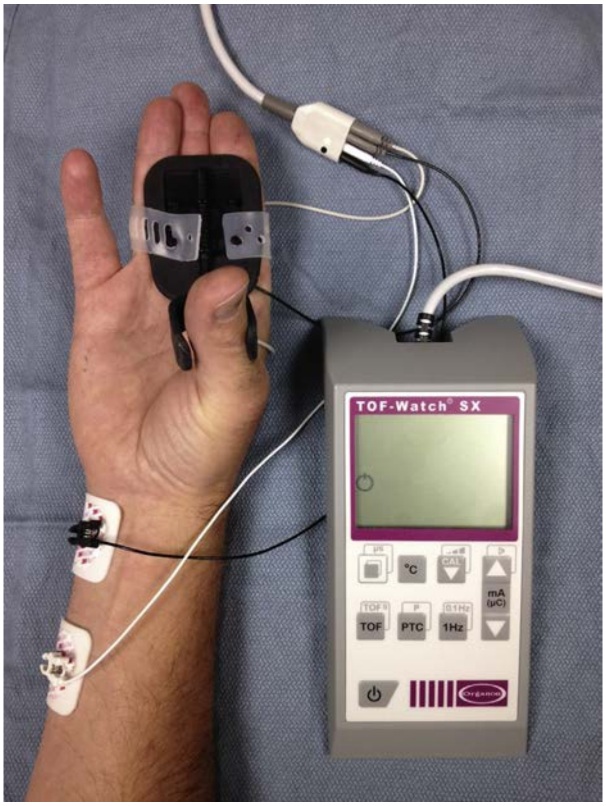


Fig. 28.3 Example of a quantitative neuromuscular monitor (acceleromyography). (TOF-Watch AMG, Bluestar Enterprises, San Antonio, TX) Ulnar nerve stimulation results in thumb movement, which is sensed by a piezoelectric sensor attached to the thumb. To improve the consistency of responses, a hand adapter applies a constant preload. Acceleration of the thumb is sensed by the piezoelectric sensor, and is proportional to the force of muscle contraction.

A careful evaluation of the degree of residual blockade at the conclusion of a general anesthetic is essential in order to avoid the potential hazards of incomplete neuromuscular recovery following tracheal extubation. However, the methods used by most clinicians (ability to perform a head lift or maintain a stable pattern of ventilation; no fade observed to TOF or tetanic nerve stimulation) are insufficient in assuring safe recovery. At the present time, quantitative neuromuscular monitoring is the only method of determining whether full recovery of muscular function has occurred and reversal drugs safely avoided. In order to exclude with certainty the possibility of residual paresis, quantitative monitoring should be used. For a more comprehensive description of neuromuscular monitoring see Chapter 43.

Definitions of Residual Neuromuscular Blockade

QUANTITATIVE NEUROMUSCULAR MONITORING: TOF RATIO LESS THAN 0.70 AND LESS THAN 0.90 Traditionally, residual neuromuscular blockade has been defined using quantitative neuromuscular monitoring. Although peripheral nerve stimulation was used in the 1960s, Ali and colleagues first described the application of peripheral nerve stimulation for neuromuscular monitoring using the ulnar nerve–adductor pollicis unit as the site of monitoring in the early 1970s.[28,29] By comparing the amplitude of the fourth (T4) to the first (T1) evoked mechanical or electromyographic response (TOF response), the degree of neuromuscular recovery could be measured. Shortly thereafter, these same investigators performed several studies examining the association between the degree of residual blockade in the hand (defined using quantified T4/T1 ratio, i.e., TOF ratio) with symptoms of peripheral muscle weakness and spirometry measurements.[30-32] At adductor pollicis TOF ratios less than 0.60, signs of muscle weakness, tracheal tug, and ptosis were observed. When TOF ratios recovered to 0.70, the majority of patients were able to sustain head lift, eye opening, hand grasp, tongue protrusion, and a vital capacity exceeding 15 mL/kg. On the basis of these data, a TOF ratio of 0.70 was previously agreed on to represent acceptable neuromuscular recovery at the end of a general anesthetic that included administration of nondepolarizing NMBDs. Yet, more recently, clinically significant muscle weakness and impaired respiratory control have been observed at TOF ratios of up to 0.90. At TOF ratios less than 0.90, awake volunteers exhibit impaired pharyngeal function, airway obstruction, an increased risk of aspiration of gastric contents, an impaired hypoxic ventilatory control, and unpleasant symptoms of muscle weakness.[33-37] In surgical patients, an association between TOF ratios less than 0.90 and adverse respiratory events and prolonged PACU length of stay has been observed.[38,39] At the present time, it is generally agreed that adequate recovery of neuromuscular function is represented by an adductor pollicis TOF ratio of at least 0.90 (or even 1.0 when AMG is used).

Clinical Signs and Symptoms. A variety of clinical signs may be present in patients with residual neuromuscular blockade, including the following: inability to perform a head lift, hand grip, eye opening, or tongue protrusion; inability to clench a tongue depressor between the incisor teeth; inability to smile, swallow, speak, cough, track objects with eyes; or inability to perform a deep or vital capacity breath.[40] Symptoms of residual blockade that have been reported include subjective difficulty performing the aforementioned tests, as well as blurry vision, diplopia, facial weakness, facial numbness, and general weakness.[37,40] Although the majority of patients with TOF ratios of 0.90 to 1.0 will have recovered satisfactory strength in most muscle groups, signs and symptoms of muscle weakness may be present in some of these patients. In contrast, a few patients with significant residual blockade (TOF ratios < 0.70) may exhibit no apparent muscle weakness. The most inclusive and precise definition of residual neuromuscular blockade should include not only objective and quantifiable monitoring data (a TOF ratio < 0.90 demonstrated with AMG, mechanomyography [MMG], or electromyography [EMG]) but also clinical evidence of impaired neuromuscular recovery (swallowing impairment, inability to speak or perform a head lift, diplopia, and/or general weakness).

Incidence of Residual Neuromuscular Blockade

Residual neuromuscular blockade is not a rare event in the PACU. In 1979, Viby-Mogensen examined the efficacy of neostigmine in reversing *d*-tubocurarine, gallamine, or pancuronium blockade.[41] On arrival to the PACU, 42% of patients had a TOF ratio less than 0.70, and 24% were unable to perform a 5-second head lift (the majority of these subjects had TOF ratios <0.70). The authors concluded that the average dose of neostigmine given (2.5 mg) was insufficient for reversing neuromuscular blockade. Subsequent studies demonstrated a similarly frequent incidence of residual blockade in patients receiving long-acting NMBDs; 21% to 50% of patients in the early postoperative period had TOF ratios less than 0.70.[42-44] Subsequently, the risk of postoperative residual blockade was reduced if intermediate-acting NMBDs were used instead of long-acting drugs.[44-46] As the use of long-acting NMBDs began to decrease in clinical practices, many investigators hoped that residual blockade would become an uncommon occurrence in the PACU. However, incomplete neuromuscular recovery continues to be a common postoperative event. Large-scale studies (150–640 subjects) have demonstrated that approximately 31% to 50% of patients have clinically significant residual neuromuscular blockade with adductor pollicis TOF ratios less than 0.90 following surgery.[17,47,48] A recent multicenter investigation enrolling 1571 patients from 32 centers documented that 58% of patients had TOF ratios less than 0.90 at the time of tracheal extubation, despite the use of neostigmine reversal in 78% of subjects.[49]. In a metaanalysis of data from 24 clinical trials, Naguib and colleagues calculated the incidence of residual blockade by NMBD type and TOF ratio.[44] The pooled rate of residual blockade, defined as a TOF ratio less than 0.90, was 41% when studies using intermediate-acting NMBDs were analyzed (Table 28.2). In conclusion, a frequent incidence

TABLE 28.2 Pooled Estimated Incidence of Residual Neuromuscular Blockade by Muscle Relaxant Type and Train-of-Four Ratio

			HETEROGENEITY	
Sub-Population	**Pooled Rate of RNMB***	**Confidence Interval**	***P*-value**	**Inconsistency† (%)**
Long-acting MR (TOF <0.70)	0.351	(0.25-0.46)	<.001	86.7
Intermediate-acting MR (TOF <0.70)	0.115	(0.07-0.17)	<.001	85.9
Long-acting MR (TOF <0.90)	0.721	(0.59-0.84)	<.001	88.1
Intermediate-acting MR (TOF <0.90)	0.413	(0.25-0.58)	<.001	97.2

*Pooled rate of RNMB is the weighted average. The weight in the random-effect model takes into account both between and within studies variation.
†Inconsistency is the proportion of between studies variability that cannot be explained by chance.
MR, Muscle relaxant; *RNMB,* residual neuromuscular blockade; *TOF,* train-of-four.
From Naguib M, Kopman AF, Ensor JE. Neuromuscular monitoring and postoperative residual curarisation: a meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:302–316.

of residual neuromuscular blockade still occurs worldwide in the immediate postoperative period; with current practice and inadequate monitoring, the incidence of this complication is not decreasing over time.

The observed incidence of postoperative residual blockade varies widely between studies, ranging from 5% to 93%.[44] A number of factors may influence the degree of neuromuscular recovery measured following tracheal extubation, accounting for the reported variability in the incidence of residual blockade (Box 28.1). The observed incidence of residual blockade is more frequent if a threshold definition of 0.90 is used (vs. the previous threshold of 0.70) (see Table 28.2). Similarly, a frequent incidence of residual paralysis is observed if there is a short time interval between reversal of NMBDs and quantification of TOF ratios (TOF ratios measured at the time of extubation vs. measurement in the PACU).[50] Furthermore, the technology used to quantify neuromuscular recovery may influence the percentage of patients with TOF ratios less than 0.90 following surgery. For example, when compared with MMG, AMG frequently overestimates the degree of neuromuscular recovery.[21] Additional factors influencing the degree of residual paralysis are discussed later.

Adverse Effects of Residual Blockade

Many investigations have demonstrated that approximately one half of patients will be admitted to the PACU with TOF ratios less than 0.90, as measured with AMG, MMG, or EMG.[44] The impact of this residual muscle weakness on clinical outcomes has been less well documented. Yet even minimal levels of neuromuscular blockade may have clinical consequences. The following section reviews the effects of residual blockade in both awake volunteer studies and in postoperative surgical patients.

Adverse Effects of Residual Blockade—Awake Volunteer Studies. Surgical patients receive a variety of anesthetics in the perioperative period, which complicates an assessment of the particular effect of residual neuromuscular blockade on clinical outcomes. Conducting awake volunteer trials allows investigators to more precisely quantify the impact of NMBDs and various degrees of neuromuscular blockade on physiologic systems in the absence of anesthetics. In general, these studies have titrated NMBDs to various TOF ratios in awake subjects and measured the effects on the respiratory system and on signs and symptoms of muscle weakness.

Early volunteer investigations concluded that respiratory impairment was minimal at TOF ratios of 0.60 to 0.70.[32] Respiratory frequency, tidal volume, vital capacity, and peak expiratory flow rates were not altered during the study, although vital capacity and inspiratory force were both significantly reduced compared with control values at a TOF ratio of 0.60.[32] The authors concluded that these changes were of minor clinical importance. Subsequent investigations have revealed that pharyngeal and respiratory function is impaired at TOF ratios as high as 0.90 to 1.0. Return of pharyngeal muscle function is essential for airway control following tracheal extubation. In series of human studies from the Karolinska Institutet, Sweden, a

BOX 28.1 Factors Influencing the Measured Incidence of Postoperative Residual Neuromuscular Blockade

Preoperative Factors

1. Definition of residual neuromuscular blockade
   - TOF ratio < 0.70 (before 1990)
   - TOF ratio < 0.90 (after 1990)
   - Presence of signs or symptoms of muscle weakness
2. Patient factors
   - Age (higher risk in older adults)
   - Gender
   - Preexisting medical conditions (renal or liver dysfunction, neuromuscular disorders)
   - Medications known to affect neuromuscular transmission (antiseizure medications)

Intraoperative Anesthetic Factors

1. Type of NMBD administered intraoperatively
   - Intermediate-acting NMBD (lower risk)
   - Long-acting NMBD (higher risk)
2. Dose of NMBD used intraoperatively
3. Use of neuromuscular monitoring
   - Qualitative monitoring (studies inconclusive)
   - Quantitative monitoring (lower risk)
4. Depth of neuromuscular blockade maintained
   - "Deeper blockade" (TOF count of 1-2) (higher risk)
   - "Lighter blockade" (TOF count of 2-3) (lower risk)
5. Type of anesthesia used intraoperatively
   - Inhalational agents (higher risk)
   - TIVA (lower risk)

Factors Related to Antagonism of Residual Blockade

1. Use of reversal agents (lower risk)
   - Neostigmine
   - Pyridostigmine
   - Edrophonium
   - Sugammadex
2. Dosage of reversal agent used
3. Time interval between reversal agent administration and quantification of residual blockade

Factors Related to Measurement of Residual Blockade

1. Method of objective measurement of residual neuromuscular blockade
   - Mechanomyography (MMG)
   - Electromyography (EMG)
   - Acceleromyography (AMG)
   - Kinemyography (KMG)
   - Phonomyography (PMG)
2. Time of measurement of residual neuromuscular blockade
   - Immediately

Postoperative Factors

1. Respiratory acidosis and metabolic alkalosis (higher risk)
2. Hypothermia (higher risk)
3. Drug administration in the PACU (antibiotics, opioids) (higher risk)

NMBD, Neuromuscular blocking drug; *PACU*, postanesthesia care unit; *TIVA*, total intravenous anesthetic; *TOF*, train-of-four.

functional assessment of the pharynx, upper esophageal muscles, and the integration of respiration with swallowing was performed during various levels of neuromuscular blockade.[33-34] At adductor pollicis TOF ratios less than 0.90, pharyngeal dysfunction was observed in 17% to 28% of young adult volunteers (Fig. 28.4),[33] increasing more than twofold in patients older than 60 years and associated with reduced upper esophageal sphincter resting tone and misdirected swallowing and aspiration (laryngeal penetration) of oral contrast material.[33,34,51] Eikermann and colleagues conducted a series of investigations examining the effect of residual paresis on respiratory muscle function in awake volunteers. Awake subjects were administered a rocuronium infusion, which was titrated to a TOF ratio 0.50 to 1.0. At a minimal level of residual blockade (approximately 0.80), the authors observed impaired inspiratory air flow and upper airway obstruction,[35] a marked decrease in upper airway volumes and upper airway dilator muscle function,[52] and increased upper airway closing pressure and collapsibility (Fig. 28.5).[53] In addition, evidence from human studies of respiratory control suggest that residual blockade inhibits hypoxic ventilatory control while leaving the ventilatory control during hypercapnia unaffected. In human volunteers, the hypoxic ventilatory response was attenuated by 30% after administration of either atracurium, vecuronium, or pancuronium at an adductor pollicis TOF ratio of 0.70, returning to normal after spontaneous recovery to a TOF ratio of greater than 0.90 (Fig. 28.6).[54] An increase in ventilatory drive during hypoxia is primarily mediated by afferent input from peripheral chemoreceptors in the carotid bodies located bilaterally at the carotid artery bifurcation, whereas ventilatory regulation during hypercapnia is mediated via CO_2 interaction with brainstem chemoreceptors. In experimental animals, the firing frequencies of carotid body chemoreceptors are almost abolished by the administration of a nondepolarizing NMBD via blockade of cholinergic neuronal subtype receptors within the carotid body oxygen signaling pathway.[55]

Awake volunteer studies have also revealed that unpleasant symptoms of muscle weakness are present in subjects with small degrees of residual neuromuscular blockade. Conscious subjects given a small "priming" dose of pancuronium noted blurred vision, difficulty swallowing, and keeping their eyes open, and jaw weakness at a TOF ratio of 0.81.[56] Symptoms of diplopia, dysarthria, and subjective difficulty swallowing were reported by subjects at TOF ratios of 0.60 and 0.70.[34] Reduced clarity of vision was described in all subjects receiving a mivacurium infusion at a TOF ratio of 0.81.[57] Kopman and associates examined 10 volunteers

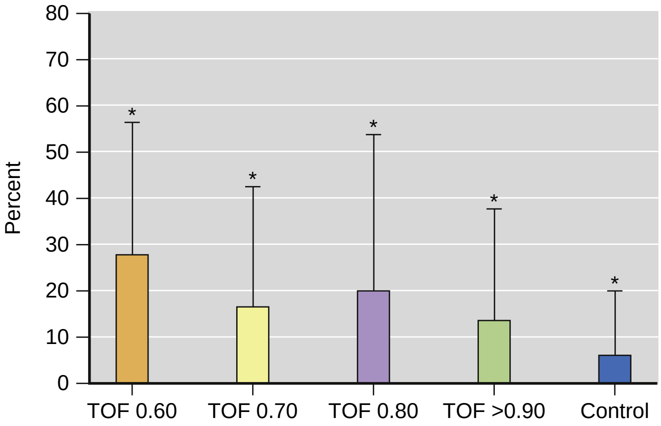


Fig. 28.4 Incidence of pharyngeal dysfunction during atracurium-induced partial neuromuscular blockade corresponding to steady-state adductor pollicis TOF ratio of 0.60, 0.70, 0.80, >0.90, and control in young volunteers. *TOF*, Train-of-four. (Modified from Sundman E, Witt H, Olsson R, et al. The incidence and mechanisms of pharyngeal and upper esophageal dysfunction in partially paralyzed humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:977–984.)

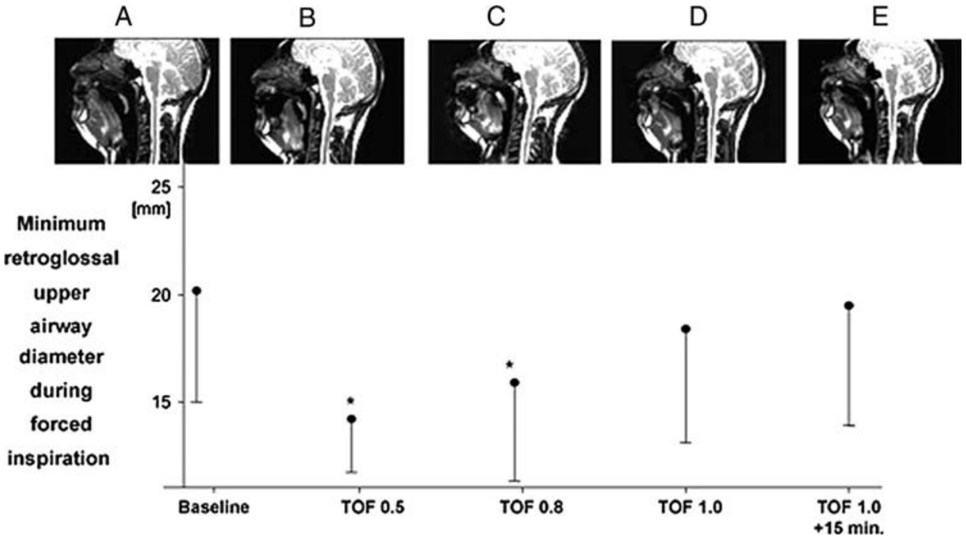

A
B
C
D
E
25
[mm]
20
15
Minimum retroglossal upper airway diameter during forced inspiration
*
*
Baseline
TOF 0.5
TOF 0.8
TOF 1.0
TOF 1.0 +15 min.

Fig. 28.5 An investigation examining the effect of residual neuromuscular blockade on respiratory muscle function in awake volunteers. Subjects were administered a rocuronium infusion, which was titrated to a train-of-four *(TOF)* ratio 0.5 to 1.0. Supraglottic airway diameter and volume was measured by respiratory-gated magnetic resonance imaging. Minimum retroglossal upper airway diameter during forced inspiration (A) before neuromuscular blockade (baseline), at a steady-state TOF ratio of (B) 0.50 and (C) 0.80, (D) after recovery of the TOF ratio to 1.0, and (E) 15 minutes later. Images from the volunteer show that a partial paralysis evokes an impairment of upper airway diameter increase during forced inspiration. $P < .05$ versus baseline. (From Eikermann M, Vogt FM, Herbstreit F, et al. The predisposition to inspiratory upper airway collapse during partial neuromuscular blockade. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 2007;175:9–15.)

for symptoms and signs of residual paralysis at various TOF ratios.[37] Testing was performed at baseline (before an infusion of mivacurium), at a TOF ratio of 0.65 to 0.75, at 0.85 to 0.95, and at full recovery (1.0). All subjects had significant signs and symptoms at a TOF ratio of 0.70 (inability to maintain incisor teeth apposition, sit without assistance, drink from a straw, visual disturbances, facial numbness, difficulty speaking and swallowing, general weakness), and in seven subjects, visual symptoms persisted for up to 90 minutes after the TOF ratio had recovered to unity.

Adverse Effects of Residual Blockade—Postoperative Surgical Patients. Awake volunteers have impairment of respiratory function and a variety of symptoms of muscle weakness at TOF ratios of 0.50 to 0.90. Similar adverse events have been observed in postoperative surgical patients with TOF ratios less than 0.90 measured in the PACU. Incomplete neuromuscular recovery is a risk factor for hypoxemic events, airway obstruction, unpleasant symptoms of muscle weakness, delayed PACU length of stay, and pulmonary complications during the early postoperative period.

Clearly, an association exists between neuromuscular management characteristics and postoperative morbidity and mortality. Beecher and colleagues collected data from 10 university hospitals between the years 1948 to 1952 to determine anesthetic-related causes of mortality.[58] Risk of death related to anesthesia was six times more frequent in patients receiving NMBDs (primarily tubocurarine and decamethonium) compared with those administered no NMBDs (1:370 vs. 1:2100). Although the authors conclude that there is "an important increase in anesthesia death rate when muscle relaxants are added"[58] to an anesthetic, the use or omission of pharmacologic reversal in patients receiving NMBDs was not reported or analyzed. In another large-scale study, mortality data associated with anesthesia were collected over a 10-year period (1967-1976) at a single institution in South Africa.[59] An analysis of 240,483 anesthetics revealed that "respiratory inadequacy following myoneural blockade" was the second-most common cause of death. Again, data relating to the use of pharmacologic reversal drugs were not provided. A study from the Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland examined deaths that were judged "totally due to anesthesia" and reported that postoperative respiratory failure secondary to neuromuscular management was a primary cause of mortality.[60] Rose and associates examined patient, surgical, and anesthetic factors associated with critical respiratory events in the PACU.[61] Of the anesthetic management factors assessed, the most frequent rate of critical respiratory events was observed in patients receiving large doses of NMBDs (the use of reversal drugs was not analyzed). Two investigations of anesthetic complications resulting in admissions to the intensive care unit determined that "failure to reverse after muscle relaxants" and "ventilatory inadequacy after reversal of muscle relaxants" were the most common causes of admission.[62,63] Sprung and colleagues reviewed the medical records of patients who experienced a cardiac arrest over a 10-year period (223 of 518,284 anesthetics).[64] The most important category was the use of NMBDs, involving either hypoxia caused by inadequate pharmacologic reversal or asystole induced by anticholinesterase drugs. A large case-control investigation was performed of all patients undergoing anesthesia over a 3-year period (n = 869,483) in The Netherlands assessing the impact of anesthetic management characteristics on the risk of coma or death within 24 hours of surgery.[65] Reversal of the effects of NMBDs was associated with a significant reduction (odds ratio, 0.10; 95% confidence interval [CI], 0.03-0.31) in the risk of these complications. Two studies published in 2016 and 2017 examined the association between failure to reverse neuromuscular blockade and postoperative pneumonia.[66,67] In an investigation examining 13,100 surgical patients, Bulka and associates observed that the risk of postoperative pneumonia was 2.26 times more likely in patients that did not receive reversal with neostigmine.[66] Similarly, a retrospective study of 11,355 noncardiac patients revealed that the risk of respiratory complications (failure to wean from the ventilator, reintubation, or pneumonia) was significantly higher (odds ratio 1.75) in patients who were administered an NMBD without neostigmine compared to those given neostigmine.[66]

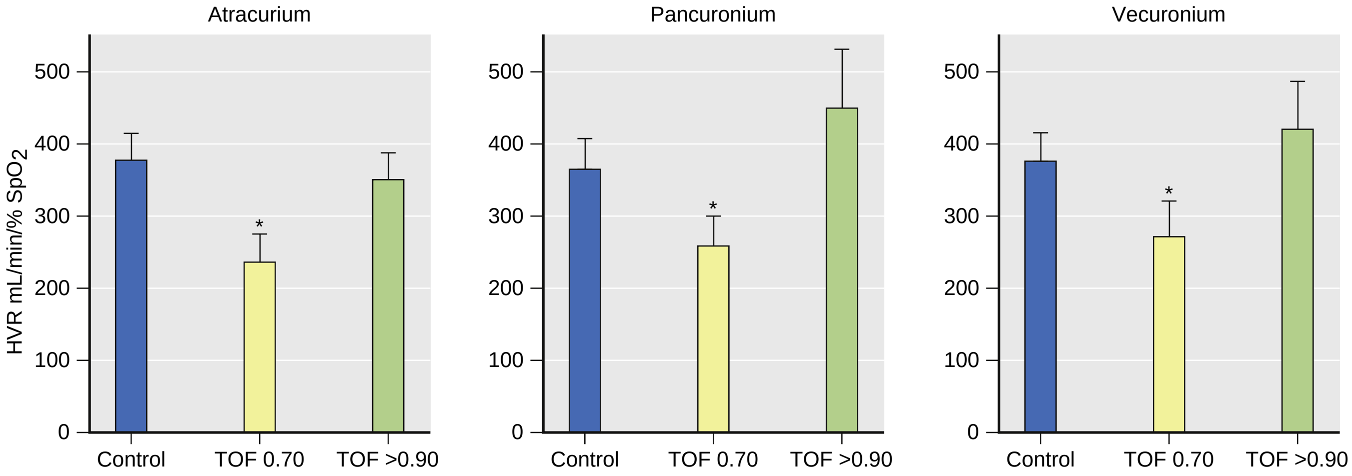


Fig. 28.6 Hypoxic ventilatory response *(HVR)* before (control); during steady-state infusion at train-of-four *(TOF)* ratio 0.70 of atracurium, pancuronium, and vecuronium; and after recovery (TOF ratio > 0.90). Data presented as means ± SD. * = P <.01. SpO_2, Saturation of arterial blood with oxygen. (From Eriksson LI. Reduced hypoxic chemosensitivity in partially paralysed man: a new property of muscle relaxants. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand.* 1996;40:520–523.)

Epidemiologic studies thus suggest an association between incomplete neuromuscular recovery and adverse events in the early postoperative period. Notably, an important limitation of these outcome studies is that residual paresis was not quantified at the end of surgery. Therefore causality (residual blockade results in postoperative complications) can only be suggested but not proven.

In order to address these limitations, more recent studies have quantified TOF ratios in the PACU and documented a relationship between residual blockade and adverse outcomes. Several clinical investigations have documented an association between postoperative residual blockade and adverse respiratory events. In an observational study by Bissinger and colleagues, patients with TOF ratios less than 0.70 in the PACU had a more frequent incidence of hypoxemia (60%) compared with patients with TOF ratios 0.70 or greater (10%, $P < .05$).[68] Another small study of orthopedic surgical patients randomized to receive either pancuronium or rocuronium revealed that patients with TOF ratios less than 0.90 on arrival to the PACU were more likely to develop postoperative hypoxemia (24 of 39 patients) than those with TOF ratios greater than 0.90 (7 of 30 patients, $P = .003$).[69] Murphy and associates conducted a case-control study examining the incidence and severity of residual blockade in patients who developed critical respiratory events in the PACU.[38] Seventy-four percent of patients in the group with critical respiratory events had TOF ratios less than 0.70, compared with 0% in the matched control group (matched for age, sex, and surgical procedure). Because the two cohorts did not differ in any perioperative characteristics with the exception of neuromuscular recovery, these findings suggest that unrecognized residual paralysis is an important contributing factor to postoperative adverse respiratory events. Another investigation by this same group examined the effect of AMG monitoring on postoperative respiratory events.[26] Few patients randomized to AMG monitoring had postoperative TOF ratios less than 0.90, and a less frequent incidence of early hypoxemia and airway obstruction was observed in this group (compared with patients randomized to standard qualitative monitoring). A study of 114 patients randomized to neostigmine reversal or placebo (saline) documented a significantly more frequent incidence of both postoperative residual blockade and hypoxemia in the placebo group.[70] Residual blockade in the PACU may also result in pulmonary complications within the first postoperative week. Berg and colleagues randomized 691 patients to receive pancuronium, atracurium, or vecuronium.[71] TOF ratios were quantified in the PACU, and subjects were followed for 6 days for pulmonary complications. In the pancuronium group, significantly more patients with TOF ratios less than 0.70 developed a pulmonary complication (16.9%) compared with patients with TOF 0.70 or greater (4.8%). Notably, the study also demonstrated a continuously increased risk for postoperative pulmonary complications with increased age, a finding of significant clinical relevance for older adult patients, a growing part of the surgical patient population. Norton and colleagues assessed recovery characteristics in 202 consecutive patients arriving in the PACU. Thirty percent of patients had TOF ratios greater than 0.9; subjects with residual block had a significantly higher incidence of critical respiratory events, airway obstruction, hypoxemia, and respiratory failure.[72] An observational study enrolling 150 patients ages 18 to 50 and 150 patients more than 70 years old assessed the association between incomplete neuromuscular recovery (TOF < 0.9) and adverse events from the time of tracheal extubation until hospital discharge.[73] Elderly subjects had a higher risk of residual block (58% vs. 30%), and those elderly with TOF ratios less than 0.9 had a significantly higher incidence of airway obstruction episodes and hypoxemic events, as well as signs and symptoms of muscle weakness.[73] A multicenter study from Spain enrolling 763 patients from 26 centers reported that 27% of patients had TOF ratios less than 0.9 and that these subjects had a higher incidence of adverse respiratory events (odds ratio 2.57) and an increased risk of reintubation.[74] An additional study (340 patients) noted that patients with residual block had a greater than sixfold increase in postoperative adverse respiratory events.[75]

Residual blockade causes unpleasant symptoms of muscle weakness. This symptom of “general weakness” was the most sensitive “test” for determining whether patients had a TOF ratio of less than 0.90 in the PACU.[17] Orthopedic surgical patients given pancuronium had a more frequent risk of exhibiting both TOF ratios less than 0.90 and symptoms of blurry vision and general weakness during the PACU admission, compared with patients randomized to receive rocuronium.[69] Similar findings were observed in a cardiac surgical patient population not receiving anticholinesterase drugs.[76] The subjective experience of residual neuromuscular blockade after surgery was determined by examining 155 patients for 16 symptoms of muscle weakness during the PACU admission.[27] The presence of symptoms of muscle weakness was predictive of a TOF ratio less than 0.90 (good sensitivity and specificity).

The residual effects of NMBDs on postoperative muscle strength may impair clinical recovery and prolong PACU discharge times. In a small study of patients randomized to receive either pancuronium or rocuronium, the times required to meet and achieve discharge criteria were significantly longer in the pancuronium group, and patients in the cohort as a whole with postoperative TOF ratios less than 0.90 were more likely to have a prolonged PACU stay compared with those with TOF ratios greater than 0.90.[69] A larger investigation measured TOF ratios in 246 consecutive patients on arrival to the PACU.[39] The PACU length of stay was significantly longer in patients with TOF ratios less than 0.90 (323 minutes) compared with patients with adequate recovery of neuromuscular function (243 minutes). Multiple regression analysis revealed that only age and residual blockade were independently associated with PACU length of stay.

In conclusion, a number of studies conducted over the past five decades have documented the effects of small degrees of residual blockade in human volunteers and surgical patients. Awake volunteer investigations have demonstrated that subjects with TOF ratios less than 0.90 have reduced upper airway tone and diameters, upper airway obstruction, pharyngeal dysfunction with impaired airway integrity, decreased upper esophageal tone, and an increased risk of aspiration, impaired hypoxic ventilatory control, and unpleasant symptoms of muscle weakness. Epidemiologic outcome investigations have suggested an association between incomplete neuromuscular recovery and major morbidity and mortality. Prospective clinical trials have revealed that patients with TOF ratios less than 0.90 in the PACU are at increased risk for hypoxemic events, airway obstruction, postoperative pulmonary complications, symptoms of muscle weakness, and prolonged PACU admission times. These data suggest that residual blockade is an important patient safety issue in the early postoperative period. Therefore appropriate management of reversal of neuromuscular blockade and assessment of recovery from neuromuscular blockade are two essential clinical components to optimize patient outcomes.

Drugs Used to Antagonize (Reverse) Neuromuscular Blockade

Reversal of neuromuscular blockade is theoretically possible by three principal mechanisms: (1) an increase in presynaptic release of acetylcholine; (2) a decrease in enzymatic metabolism of acetylcholine by cholinesterase, thereby increasing receptor binding competition; and (3) a decrease in the concentration of the NMBD at the effect-site, freeing the postsynaptic receptors.

ANTICHOLINESTERASE REVERSAL OF NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKADE

Nondepolarizing NMBDs inhibit neuromuscular transmission primarily by competitively antagonizing or blocking the effect of acetylcholine at the postjunctional nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (nAChR). Binding of nondepolarizing NMBDs to the nAChR occurs in a competitive fashion. If larger concentrations of acetylcholine are present at the neuromuscular junction, acetylcholine will attach to the postsynaptic receptor and facilitate neuromuscular transmission and muscle contraction. Conversely, if larger concentrations of a nondepolarizing NMBD are present at the neuromuscular junction, binding to α subunits of the receptor will preferentially occur, preventing central pore opening and muscle depolarization from occurring. A more detailed description of the neuromuscular junction is provided in Chapter 12.

One mechanism of reversing the effects of NMBDs is by an increase in the concentration of acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction. This can be accomplished using an inhibitor of cholinesterase, which constrains the enzyme that breaks down acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction (acetylcholinesterase). Three anticholinesterase drugs are commonly used in clinical practice: neostigmine, edrophonium, and pyridostigmine. Neostigmine is likely the most commonly administered drug. Over the prior six decades, anticholinesterases have been the only drugs used clinically to reverse neuromuscular blockade (until the recent introduction of sugammadex).

Mechanism of Action of Anticholinesterases

Acetylcholine is the primary neurotransmitter that is synthesized, stored, and released by exocytosis at the distal motor nerve terminal. Acetylcholinesterase is the enzyme responsible for the control of neurotransmission at the neuromuscular junction by hydrolyzing acetylcholine. Rapid hydrolysis of acetylcholine removes excess neurotransmitter from the synapse, preventing overstimulation and tetanic excitation of the postsynaptic muscle. Nearly half of the acetylcholine molecules released from the presynaptic nerve membrane are hydrolyzed by acetylcholinesterase before reaching the nAChR.[77] The action of acetylcholinesterase is quite rapid; acetylcholine molecules are hydrolyzed in approximately 80 to 100 µs (microseconds). Acetylcholinesterase is concentrated at the neuromuscular junction, and there are approximately 10 enzyme-binding sites for each molecule of acetylcholine released.[78] However, lower concentrations of acetylcholinesterase are present along the length of the muscle fiber. Each molecule of acetylcholinesterase has an active surface with two important binding sites, an anionic site and an esteratic site. The negatively charged anionic site on the acetylcholinesterase molecule is responsible for electrostatically binding the positively charged quaternary nitrogen group on the acetylcholine molecule. The esteratic site forms covalent bonds with the carbamate group at the opposite end of the acetylcholine molecule and is responsible for the hydrolytic process (Fig. 28.7).[78] In addition, a secondary or peripheral anionic site has been proposed. Binding of ligands to the peripheral anionic site results in inactivation of the enzyme.

The anticholinesterase drugs used by anesthesiologists interact with the anionic and esteratic sites of acetylcholinesterase. These drugs are characterized as either prosthetic inhibitors (edrophonium) or oxydiaphoretic (acid-transferring) inhibitors (neostigmine, pyridostigmine) of the enzyme. Edrophonium rapidly binds to the anionic site via electrostatic forces and to the esteratic site by hydrogen bonding.[77,78] Rapid binding may account for the short onset of action of edrophonium in clinical practice. During the time edrophonium is bound, the enzyme is inactive and edrophonium is not metabolized. However, the interaction between edrophonium and acetylcholinesterase is weak and short-lived. The dissociation half-life of this interaction is approximately 20 to 30 seconds, and the interaction between drug and enzyme is competitive and reversible. Because the nature of the binding is relatively brief, the efficacy of edrophonium in reversing neuromuscular blockade may be limited. Neostigmine and pyridostigmine are oxydiaphoretic inhibitors of acetylcholinesterase, which also

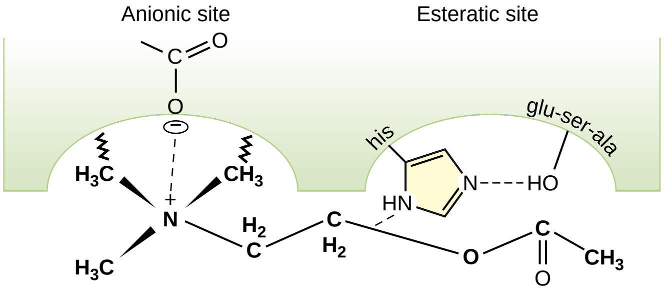


Fig. 28.7 Active binding sites on acetylcholinesterase. The positively charged quaternary nitrogen group on acetylcholine (Ach) binds by electrostatic forces to the negatively charged anionic site on the enzyme. The carbamate group at the opposite end of the Ach molecule forms covalent bonds with and is metabolized at the esteratic site. (From Caldwell JE. Clinical limitations of acetylcholinesterase antagonists. *J Crit Care.* 2009;24:21–28.)

bind to the anionic site. In addition, these drugs transfer a carbamate group to acetylcholinesterase, creating a covalent bond at the esteratic site.[77,78] This reaction results in an inactivation of the enzyme, as well as the hydrolysis of the drug. The stronger interaction between neostigmine and enzyme results in dissociation half-life of approximately 7 minutes.[78] Therefore the duration of enzyme inhibition is longer with neostigmine and pyridostigmine compared with edrophonium. These interactions at the molecular level likely have little impact on the duration of action in clinical practice. Duration of clinical effect is primarily determined by removal of anticholinesterase from the plasma.[79]

The administration of anticholinesterases has also been reported to produce presynaptic effects.[79] Laboratory investigations have demonstrated that these prejunctional effects may actually facilitate neuromuscular transmission. Anticholinesterases produce a reversible increase in the duration of the action potential and refractory period of the nerve terminal. Because the quantity of acetylcholine released is a function of the extent and duration of the depolarization of the terminal membrane, the period of acetylcholine release in response to nerve stimulation may be increased by anticholinesterase agents.[79] Excessive release of acetylcholine, coupled with decreased hydrolysis due to acetylcholinesterase inhibition, results in prolonged endplate potentials and repetitive firing of muscle fibers. These prejunctional effects appear to account for the observations that spontaneous contractions of muscles can occur when anticholinesterases are given in the absence of NMBDs.[79]

Although neostigmine, pyridostigmine, and edrophonium inhibit the breakdown of acetylcholine, resulting in an increase in acetylcholine in the neuromuscular junction, there is a clinically relevant "ceiling" effect to the maximal concentration of acetylcholine. As concentrations of acetylcholine increase, some of the neurotransmitter diffuses away from the neuromuscular junction, while additional acetylcholine undergoes reuptake into motor nerve terminals. As the processes of diffusion and reuptake reach equilibrium with augmented release by enzyme inhibition, a "peak" level at the neuromuscular junction is reached.[78] Once the acetylcholinesterase enzyme is maximally inhibited by an anticholinesterase agent and peak concentrations of acetylcholine are present, the administration of additional drug will not further increase acetylcholine levels or enhance recovery of neuromuscular blockade. This "ceiling" effect of anticholinesterases is an important limitation of all clinically used agents; neuromuscular blockade cannot be adequately reversed if high concentrations of NMBDs are present at the neuromuscular junction.

Pharmacokinetic and Pharmacodynamic Properties of Anticholinesterases

A large number of clinical studies have examined the pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic characteristics of neostigmine, pyridostigmine, and edrophonium.

The pharmacokinetic profiles of neostigmine, pyridostigmine, and edrophonium are presented in Table 28.3. Most studies have used a two-compartment model to establish pharmacokinetic characteristics of each agent. Following a bolus administration, plasma concentrations peak rapidly and decline significantly within the first 5 to 10 minutes. This is followed by a slower decline in plasma concentrations due to the elimination phase.[79] In general, the pharmacokinetic profiles of all three anticholinesterases are similar. Early studies suggested that the duration of edrophonium was too short for clinical use. However, studies using larger doses (0.5 or 1.0 mg/kg) demonstrated that the elimination half-life of edrophonium was not significantly different from that of neostigmine or pyridostigmine and that edrophonium could produce prompt and sustained reversal of neuromuscular blockade.[80,81] The longer elimination half-life of pyridostigmine likely accounts for the longer duration of action compared with the other anticholinesterase drugs.[82]

TABLE 28.3 Pharmacokinetics of Neostigmine, Pyridostigmine, and Edrophonium in Patients Without and With Renal Failure

	WITHOUT RENAL FAILURE			WITH RENAL FAILURE		
	N	**P**	**E**	**N**	**P**	**E**
Distribution half-life ($T_{1/2}\alpha$, min)	3.4	6.7	7.2	2.5	3.9	7.0
Elimination half-life ($T_{1/2}\beta$, min)	77	113	110	181	379	304
Volume of central compartment (L/kg)	0.2	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.4	0.3
Total plasma clearance (mL/kg/min)	9.1	8.6	9.5	4.8	3.1	3.9

Data from references 73–76.

From Naguib M, Lien CA. Pharmacology of muscle relaxants and their antagonists. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2010.

The pharmacokinetics of anticholinesterases can be influenced by renal function, age, and body temperature. The elimination half-life of all three agents is altered by the presence of renal insufficiency or failure (see Table 28.3). Renal excretion accounts for approximately 50% of plasma clearance of neostigmine; elimination half-life is significantly prolonged and serum clearance decreased in anephric patients.[83] Similarly, renal function accounts for 70% to 75% of serum clearance of pyridostigmine and edrophonium.[82,84] The reduced plasma clearance of the anticholinesterases in renal failure patients provides a "margin of safety" against the risk of postoperative "recurarization" (the effects of the NMBD persist longer than that of the reversal agent, resulting in a worsening of residual paresis). The pharmacokinetics of edrophonium have been examined in older adult (age > 70 years) patients. When compared with a younger cohort, older adult patients exhibited a significant decrease in plasma clearance (5.9 ± 2 vs. 12.1 ± 4 mL/kg/min) and a prolonged elimination half-life (84.2 ± 17 vs. 56.6 ± 16 minutes).[85] Mild hypothermia (reduction in core temperature of 2°C) more than doubles the duration of action of intermediate-acting NMBDs.[86] In a study of human volunteers cooled to 34.5°C, the central volume of distribution of neostigmine decreased 38% and the onset time of maximal blockade increased from 4.6 to 5.6 minutes.[87] However, the clearance, maximal effect, and duration of action of neostigmine were not altered by a reduction in body temperature. Therefore if hypothermia influences the degree of neuromuscular recovery, it is likely

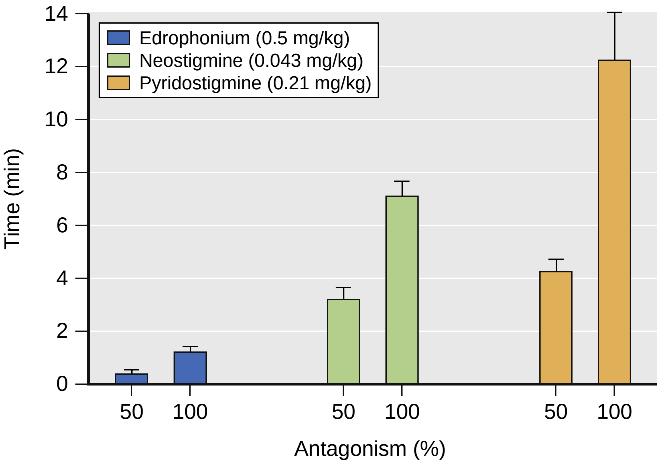


Fig. 28.8 Comparison of onset of action for edrophonium, neostigmine, and pyridostigmine. Values plotted are means ± SE. Edrophonium's onset was significantly faster than neostigmine or pyridostigmine. (From Cronnelly R, Morris RB, Miller RD. Edrophonium: duration of action and atropine requirement in humans during halothane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:261–266.)

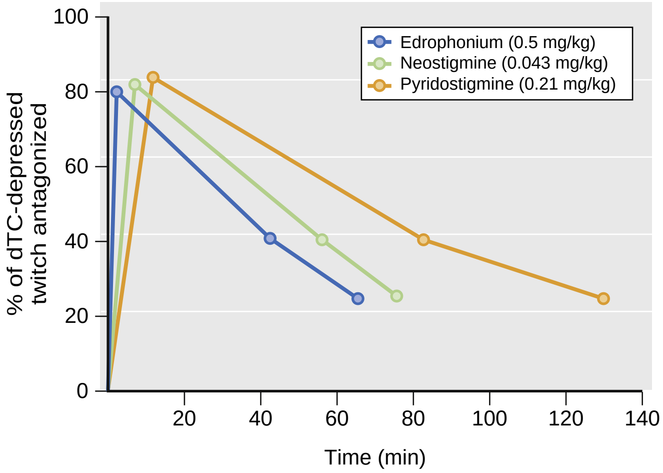


Fig. 28.9 Duration of antagonism compared at equipotent doses of neostigmine, pyridostigmine, and edrophonium. Values plotted are means. Edrophonium did not differ from neostigmine in duration; however, both were shorter than pyridostigmine. *dTC,* d-tubocurarine. (From Cronnelly R, Morris RB, Miller RD. Edrophonium: duration of action and atropine requirement in humans during halothane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:261–266.)

secondary to an effect on the pharmacology of NMBDs (not the anticholinesterase).

Onset of action may be more rapid with edrophonium than with either neostigmine or pyridostigmine. When *d*-tubocurarine neuromuscular blockade was reversed with approximately equipotent doses of the three clinically used anticholinesterases, the peak effect of antagonism was reached significantly faster with edrophonium (0.8-2.0 minutes) than with neostigmine (7-11 minutes) or pyridostigmine (12-16 minutes) (Fig. 28.8).[80] Similar findings have been observed in patients receiving other long- and intermediate-acting NMBDs. When larger doses (0.5-1.0 mg/kg) of edrophonium are administered during moderate levels of neuromuscular blockade (10% recovery of single-twitch height after pancuronium or atracurium), the onset time of edrophonium was faster than neostigmine.[88,89] During deeper levels of blockade (<10% recovery of single twitch), edrophonium 1.0 mg/kg and neostigmine 0.04 mg/kg had similar onset times when vecuronium was used (and both were faster than edrophonium 0.5 mg/kg).[90] When pancuronium was antagonized during deep blockade, edrophonium 1.0 mg/kg had a shorter onset time than neostigmine 0.04 mg/kg.[90] These findings suggest that onset time of antagonism is influenced by the type and dose of anticholinesterase used, the choice of NMBD administered intraoperatively, and the depth of neuromuscular blockade at the time of antagonism.

The duration of action of anticholinesterases is determined not only by the pharmacokinetic properties of the drugs, but also by the concentration of NMBD present at the neuromuscular junction at the time of reversal. Duration of neuromuscular blockade will naturally decrease over time as a result of metabolism and elimination of NMBDs. To accurately assess the duration of action of anticholinesterases during a stable, constant level of neuromuscular blockade, investigators have administered these agents to patients receiving an infusion of *d*-tubocurarine titrated to a 90% depression of single-twitch height.[80] The investigators observed that the duration of action of equipotent doses of neostigmine (0.043 mg/kg) and edrophonium (0.5 mg/kg) were similar (Fig. 28.9). The duration of both drugs, however, was significantly less than with pyridostigmine (0.21 mg/kg).

The comparative potencies of clinically used anticholinesterases have been calculated by constructing dose-response curves. In general, neostigmine is more potent than pyridostigmine, which is more potent than edrophonium. Neostigmine-to-pyridostigmine potency ratios of 4.4 to 6.7 have been reported (neostigmine is 4.4-6.7 times more potent than pyridostigmine).[80,91] Neostigmine is even more potent than edrophonium, with potency ratios of 5.7 to 19.5 estimated from dose-response curves.[80,91,92] The great variability in potency ratios described in the literature is related to several factors, which include the type of NMBD used in the studies, the endpoint selected to represent neuromuscular recovery, and the depth of blockade at the time of anticholinesterase administration.

In conclusion, pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic studies suggest that neostigmine, pyridostigmine, and edrophonium are all effective in reversing neuromuscular blockade when used in appropriate and equipotent doses. The following section will review factors that determine the efficacy of these agents in reversing neuromuscular blockade in the clinical setting.

Factors Determining the Adequacy of Recovery Following Administration of Anticholinesterases

Depth of Neuromuscular Blockade or Train-of-Four Count at the Time of Reversal. The primary anesthetic management variable determining the effectiveness of anticholinesterase agents in completely antagonizing neuromuscular blockade at the end of surgery is the depth of neuromuscular blockade at the time of reversal. As opposed to sugammadex (see later in this chapter), reversal of blockade by anticholinesterases should not be attempted until some evidence of spontaneous recovery is present. Kirkegaard-Nielsen and associates examined the optimal time for

TABLE 28.4 Time (min) from Neostigmine Administration to a Train-of-Four Ratio 0.70, 0.80, and 0.90 When Given at a Train-of-Four Count of 1-4

	GROUP[*]			
TOF Ratio	**I**	**II**	**III**	**IV**
0.70				
Median	10.3[†]	7.6[‡]	5.0	4.1
Range	5.9-23.4	3.2-14.1	2.0-18.4	2.4-11.0
0.80				
Median	16.6[†]	9.8[‡]	8.3	7.5
Range	8.9-30.7	5.3-25.0	3.8-27.1	3.0-74.5
0.90				
Median	22.2	20.2	17.1	16.5
Range	13.9-44.0	6.5-70.5	8.3-46.2	6.5-143.3

TOF, Train-of-four.

[*] Group I was reversed at a TOF count of 1, group II was reversed at a TOF count of 2, group III was reversed at a TOF count of 3, and group IV was reversed at a TOF count of 4.

[†] $P < .05$, group I > group II, III, and IV.

[‡] $P < .05$, group II > group IV.

From Kirkegaard H, Heier T, Caldwell JE. Efficacy of tactile-guided reversal from cisatracurium-induced neuromuscular block. *Anesthesiology.* 2002;96:45–50.

neostigmine reversal of an atracurium blockade.[93] Administration of neostigmine 0.07 mg/kg during deep blockade (before the first twitch height reached 8%) resulted in significant prolongation of reversal times. In a similar investigation, atracurium was antagonized with neostigmine during intense blockade (posttetanic count [PTC] of 1 to >13).[94] Early administration of neostigmine did not shorten total recovery time and offered no clinical advantages. Similar findings have been observed during reversal of deep vecuronium blockade.[95] The total time to achieve a TOF ratio of 0.75 was the same whether neostigmine (0.07 mg/kg) was given 15 minutes after an intubating dose of vecuronium or whether single-twitch height had recovered to 10% of control.

The time required to achieve a TOF ratio of 0.90 after anticholinesterase administration is significantly shorter when a higher TOF count is present at reversal. Two studies have examined the efficacy of antagonizing residual blockade at varying TOF counts. Kirkegaard and colleagues randomized patients receiving cisatracurium to reversal with neostigmine (0.07 mg/kg) at the reappearance of the first, second, third, and fourth tactile TOF response (TOF count 1-4).[96] The median (range) time required to achieve a TOF ratio of 0.90 was 22.2 (13.9-44.0) minutes when reversal was attempted at a TOF count of 1. However, even when four responses were present, the time needed to attain a TOF ratio of 0.90 was 16.5 (6.5-143.3) minutes (Table 28.4). Kim and associates performed a similar study in which patients administered rocuronium were randomized to be reversed at the first through fourth tactile TOF responses.[97] In those patients receiving sevoflurane for anesthetic maintenance, the median (range) time required to achieve a TOF ratio of 0.90 was 28.6 (8.8-75.8) minutes when reversed at a TOF count of 1 and 9.7 (5.1-26.4) minutes when reversed at a TOF count of 4. In both investigations, a large interindividual variability in reversal times was observed.[96,97] This is likely a reflection of the individual response to the NMBD administered. The reason for marked prolongation of reversal times in some patients (up to 143 minutes) was not determined, but may be due to the "ceiling effect" with respect to the blockade (peak effect of the antagonist is followed by a plateau phase in which the balance between diminishing anticholinesterase activity and spontaneous recovery determines the slope of the recovery curve).[96] Both studies demonstrated that it was not possible to reliably achieve full neuromuscular recovery (TOF ratio of >0.90) in the majority of patients within 10 minutes of anticholinesterase administration. On the basis of data, expert opinion suggests that neostigmine should not be administered until the fourth "twitch" of the TOF count has returned.[98]

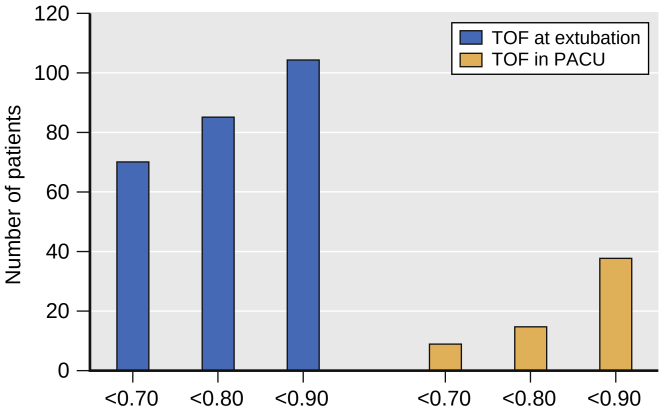


Fig. 28.10 Train-of-four (TOF) ratios measured immediately before tracheal extubation and again on admission to the postanesthesia care unit *(PACU)*. The graphs illustrate the number of patients (of a total of 120) with TOF ratios <0.70, <0.80, and <0.90 at each measurement interval. (From Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Marymont JH, et al. Residual paralysis at the time of tracheal extubation. *Anesth Analg.* 2005;100:1840–1845.)

Time Interval Between Anticholinesterase Administration and Tracheal Extubation. Studies have suggested that if four responses to TOF nerve stimulation are present, approximately 15 minutes are needed to reach a TOF ratio of 0.90 in most patients.[96,97] Achieving a TOF ratio of 0.90 will require a significantly longer time (20–30 minutes) if a TOF count of 1 to 3 is observed at the time of reversal. To allow adequate neuromuscular recovery and ensure patient safety, anticholinesterase drugs should be given, on average, 15 to 30 minutes before clinicians anticipate removal of the endotracheal tube in the operating room. In many clinical situations, however, anticholinesterases are often administered at the conclusion of surgical closure, with tracheal extubation performed shortly thereafter. A survey of anesthesiologists from Europe and the United States revealed that approximately one half of respondents allowed only 5 minutes or less between anticholinesterase administration and tracheal extubation.[11] In a study of 120 surgical patients, TOF ratios were quantified at the time of tracheal extubation when clinicians had determined that full recovery of neuromuscular function had occurred using clinical criteria and qualitative neuromuscular monitoring (Fig. 28.10).[73] Mean TOF ratios of 0.67 were observed immediately before extubation, with

88% of patients exhibiting TOF less than 0.90. Of note, the median TOF count at reversal was 4, and the average time interval between neostigmine administration and tracheal extubation was only 8 minutes. The frequent incidence of residual blockade reported in multiple studies is likely attributable to the fact that anticholinesterases are not given early enough during the intraoperative anesthetic to ensure full neuromuscular recovery.

Type of Neuromuscular Blocking Drug Used Intraoperatively (Long-Acting Versus Intermediate-Acting). Two separate processes contribute to recovery of neuromuscular function following anticholinesterase administration. The first is the inhibition of acetylcholinesterase at the neuromuscular junction produced by neostigmine, pyridostigmine, or edrophonium. The second is the spontaneous process of decrease in the concentration of the NMBD at the neuromuscular junction over time due to redistribution and elimination. Therefore NMBDs that are redistributed and eliminated more rapidly from the plasma should be associated with more rapid recovery profiles after anticholinesterase use. Not surprisingly, the probability of satisfactorily antagonizing neuromuscular blockade is a function of the properties of the NMBD used to provide muscle relaxation. The ability of edrophonium (0.75 mg/kg) and neostigmine (0.05 mg/kg) to antagonize neuromuscular blockade produced by atracurium, vecuronium, and pancuronium following termination of steady-state infusions (single-twitch depression 10% of control) has been examined.[99] TOF ratios 20 minutes postreversal were 0.80 and 0.95 (atracurium with edrophonium or neostigmine), 0.76 and 0.89 (vecuronium with edrophonium or neostigmine), and 0.44 and 0.68 (pancuronium with edrophonium or neostigmine). Another clinical study investigated recovery of neuromuscular function in patients randomized to receive either intermediate-acting (rocuronium, vecuronium, atracurium) or long-acting (pancuronium) NMBDs.[100] Neostigmine (0.04 mg/kg) was given at 25% recovery of control twitch height, and TOF ratios were measured for 15 minutes. Mean TOF ratios had recovered to 0.88 to 0.92 in patients receiving intermediate-acting NMBDs, versus only 0.76 in the pancuronium group (Fig. 28.11).

A number of clinical investigations have examined the incidence of residual blockade in the PACU in patients receiving either intermediate- or long-acting NMBDs. These studies have consistently demonstrated that fewer patients given intermediate-acting NMBD have residual blockade compared with those receiving long-acting agents. A meta-analysis of 24 clinical trials examined the pooled estimated incidence of residual blockade (defined as a TOF ratio <0.90) by muscle relaxant type.[44] The risk of residual blockade was significantly less in patients given intermediate-acting NMBDs (41%) versus long-acting NMBDs (72%). In conclusion, the probability of incomplete neuromuscular recovery in the early postoperative period is decreased when shorter-acting NMBDs are used intraoperatively.

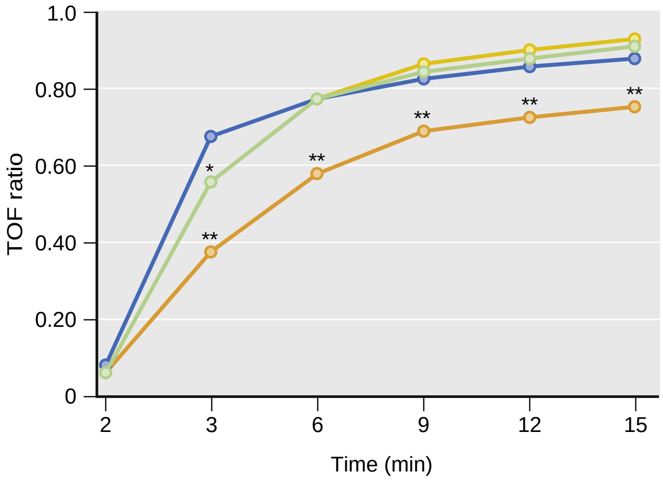


Fig. 28.11 Evolution of the train-of-four *(TOF)* ratio (mean) recorded at 3-minute intervals after administration of neostigmine 40 µg/kg when twitch height had returned to 25% of its initial value in groups of Roc *(green)*, Vec *(blue)*, Atr *(yellow)*, and Pan *(orange)*. *$P < .05$, one-way analysis of variance and Duncan multiple classification range tests (group Vec vs. groups Roc and Atr). **$P < .01$, one-way analysis of variance and Duncan multiple classification range tests (group Pan versus groups Vec, Roc, Atr). (From Baurain MJ, Hoton F, D'Hollander AA, et al. Is recovery of neuromuscular transmission complete after the use of neostigmine to antagonize block produced by rocuronium, vecuronium, atracurium and pancuronium? *Br J Anaesth.* 1996;77:496–499.)

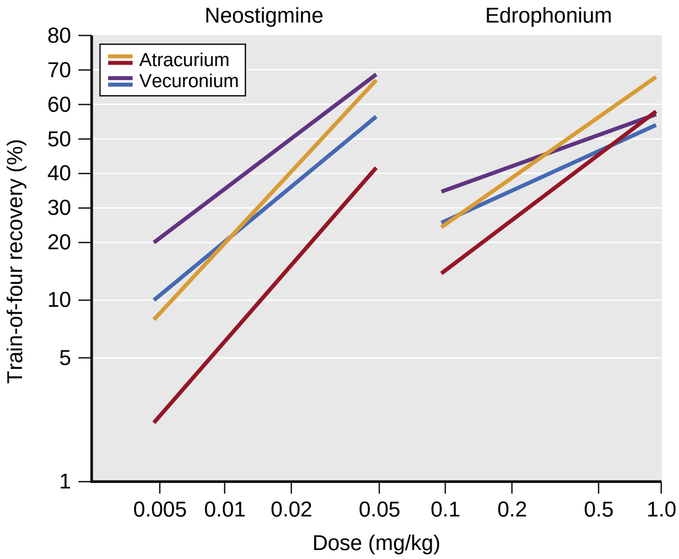


Fig. 28.12 Dose-response relationships of train-of-four assisted recovery evaluated 5 minutes (blue lines) or 10 minutes (purple lines) after administration of the antagonist as a function of the dose of neostigmine or edrophonium. The slopes of the curves obtained with edrophonium were usually flatter than the corresponding curves for neostigmine. (From Smith CE, Donati F, Bevan DR. Dose-response relationships for edrophonium and neostigmine as antagonists of atracurium and vecuronium neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology.* 1989;71:37–43.)

Type and Dose of Anticholinesterase. Complete recovery of neuromuscular function within 10 to 15 minutes with neostigmine, edrophonium, or pyridostigmine is difficult to achieve when profound neuromuscular blockade is present. Some investigations have suggested that edrophonium is less effective than neostigmine when reversing deep blockade; this may occur because the slopes of the dose-response relationships of neostigmine and edrophonium are not parallel (flatter dose-response curves are observed with edrophonium; Fig. 28.12).[90,92] In contrast, the recovery profile of edrophonium with larger doses (approximately 1.0 mg/kg) does not differ from neostigmine and pyridostigmine, and edrophonium can produce rapid and sustained reversal of neuromuscular blockade.[88,90] At moderate levels of neuromuscular blockade all three agents appear to be similarly effective in reversing blockade, although the onset of edrophonium may occur more quickly.

In general, larger doses of anticholinesterases result in more rapid and complete reversal of neuromuscular blockade than smaller doses. This relationship remains true until the maximal dose of anticholinesterase has been administered. At this point, acetylcholinesterase is maximally inhibited, and additional amounts of anticholinesterase will result in no further antagonism. Maximal effective doses of neostigmine and edrophonium have not been clearly defined, but likely vary in relation to depth of blockade and type of NMBD used intraoperatively. Providing additional anticholinesterase beyond these maximum dose limits (neostigmine 60-80 μg/kg, edrophonium 1.0-1.5 mg/kg) provides no further benefit. When administered during deep neuromuscular blockade, a second dose of neostigmine (70 μg/kg) usually does not enhance recovery times beyond that observed with a single dose.[95]

AGE

INFANTS AND CHILDREN. The dose of neostigmine producing 50% antagonism of a *d*-tubocurarine neuromuscular blockade was slightly smaller in infants (13 μg/kg) and children (15 μg/kg) compared with adults (23 μg/kg).[101] The times to peak antagonism and duration of antagonism did not differ between infants, children, and adults. Pharmacokinetic modeling revealed that distribution half-lives and volumes were similar in all three cohorts, although elimination half-life was shorter in infants and children than adults. As in adults, the depth of neuromuscular blockade at the time of antagonism was a primary factor determining adequacy of recovery.[102,103] Spontaneous recovery from neuromuscular blockade is more rapid in children compared with adults.[103] However, when neostigmine was administered at various levels of blockade, the times to achieve neuromuscular recovery were similar in children and adults (the times to reach a TOF ratio of 0.90 were reduced by 30%–40% compared with spontaneous recovery).[103] Thus in the clinical setting, reversal of neuromuscular blockade does not appear to differ significantly between children and adults.

OLDER ADULTS. Physiologic changes occur during the aging process that result in alterations in the response of older patients to NMBDs. These changes include an increase in body fat, a decrease in total body water, and declines in cardiac, hepatic, and renal function. In addition, anatomic alterations occur at the neuromuscular junction in older adults, such as a decrease in the concentration of nAChRs at the motor end plate and a reduction in the release of acetylcholine from the preterminal axon. All of these factors contribute to a prolongation of effect of most NMBDs in older patients. In a study comparing older adults (age > 70) to younger controls, plasma clearance of edrophonium was decreased and elimination half-life prolonged in the aged cohort. Despite higher plasma concentrations of edrophonium, however, duration of antagonism was not increased. In contrast, Young and colleagues observed that the duration of action of both neostigmine and pyridostigmine was significantly longer in older adults (age > 60) compared with younger subjects.[104] These findings suggest that plasma concentrations and/or duration of action of both NMBDs and anticholinesterases (neostigmine and pyridostigmine) are prolonged in older patients, which should reduce the risk of recurarization. The risk of postoperative residual block in elderly patients (age > 70 years) who have received neostigmine is significantly higher than in a younger cohort receiving similar doses of this drug (ages 18–50, 58% vs. 30%, respectively).[73]

TYPE OF ANESTHESIA. Volatile anesthetics intensify the action of nondepolarizing NMBDs when compared with intravenous anesthetics. Furthermore, volatile anesthetics interfere with the antagonism of neuromuscular blockade.[105] Kim and colleagues randomized patients to receive a propofol or sevoflurane anesthetic (Table 28.5).[97] The times required to achieve a TOF ratio of 0.70, 0.80, and 0.90 were significantly longer in patients given the sevoflurane-based anesthetic compared with the propofol-based technique. Similar findings have been observed in patients randomized to receive either isoflurane or propofol (neuromuscular recovery was delayed when a volatile anesthetic was used).[105,106] These findings suggest that the probability of achieving a TOF ratio greater than 0.90 within 10 to 15 minutes of anticholinesterase administration is increased if a total intravenous anesthetic technique is administered as opposed to a volatile anesthetic.

CONTINUOUS INFUSION VERSUS BOLUS ADMINISTRATION OF NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKING DRUGS. Recovery from neuromuscular blockade may also be influenced by mode of NMBD administration. Jellish and colleagues examined recovery characteristics of rocuronium and cisatracurium when given as either a bolus or continuous infusion.[106] The time required to reach a TOF ratio of 0.75 in the cisatracurium group was similar whether bolus or infusion techniques were used, whereas recovery was delayed when rocuronium was given as an infusion.[106] The authors conclude that cisatracurium may be the agent of choice for prolonged procedures since its recovery is not affected by length of infusion.

RENAL FUNCTION. As previously noted, renal excretion accounts for 50% to 75% of plasma clearance of neostigmine, pyridostigmine, and edrophonium. In anephric patients, elimination half-life of all three anticholinesterases is prolonged, and total plasma clearance of these agents is decreased (see Table 28.3). Similar changes in the pharmacokinetic characteristics of nondepolarizing NMBDs have been noted in patients with renal failure. Therefore management of anticholinesterase reversal should be similar in patients with normal and impaired renal function. Postoperative residual neuromuscular blockade in patients with renal failure is more likely secondary to improper titration of NMBDs intraoperatively rather than to inappropriate dosing of anticholinesterase agents.

ACID-BASE STATUS. The influence of metabolic status and respiratory acid-base balance on reversal of neuromuscular blockade has been investigated in the laboratory setting. Miller and associates noted that respiratory alkalosis and metabolic acidosis did not alter the dose of neostigmine needed to reverse a *d*-tubocurarine or pancuronium blockade. However, during respiratory acidosis and metabolic alkalosis, the dose of neostigmine needed to produce a comparable level of neuromuscular recovery was nearly twice

TABLE 28.5 Time (min) from Neostigmine Administration to a Train-of-Four Ratio of 0.70, 0.80, and 0.90 During Propofol- or Sevoflurane-Based Anesthesia

	GROUP[*]			
TOF Ratio	**I**	**II**	**III**	**IV**
PROPOFOL				
0.70	4.7 (2.5-7.8)[†]	4.0 (1.5-7.5)	3.4 (0.9-5.5)	2.1 (0.6-3.8)[‡,§]
0.80	6.4 (3.1-10.8)	5.5 (2.2-9.3)	4.4 (0.9-7.1)[‡]	3.3 (0.7-4.9)[‡,§]
0.90	8.6 (4.7-18.9)	7.5 (3.4-11.2)	5.4 (1.6-8.6)[‡]	4.7 (1.3-7.2)[‡,§]
SEVOFLURANE				
0.70	10.9 (3.6-28.9)[¶]	8.3 (2.5-22.3)[¶]	6.6 (2.4-18.5)[‡,¶]	5.4 (2.2-14.3)[‡,§,¶]
0.80	16.4 (5.9-47.5)[¶]	13.5 (5.1-37.2)[¶]	10.8 (4.2-29.2)[‡,¶]	7.8 (3.5-19.3)[‡,§,¶]
0.90	28.6 (8.8-75.8)[¶]	22.6 (8.3-57.4)[¶]	15.6 (7.3-43.9)[‡,¶]	9.7 (5.1-26.4)[‡,§,¶]

[*] Group I was reversed at a TOF count of 1, group II was reversed at a TOF count of 2, group III was reversed at a TOF count of 3, and group IV was reversed at a TOF count of 4.
[†] Values are median and (range).
[‡] $P < .05$ compared with group I.
[§] $P < .05$ compared with group II.
[¶] $P < .0001$ compared with propofol groups.
TOF, Train-of-four.
From Kim KS, Cheong MA, Lee HJ, Lee JM. Tactile assessment for the reversibility of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade during propofol or sevoflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1080–1085.

as large.[107,108] Although clinical studies have not been performed, the findings from laboratory investigations suggest that complete reversal of neuromuscular blockade may be difficult in the presence of respiratory acidosis and metabolic alkalosis. In particular, clinicians should be aware of the risk of residual blockade in the setting of respiratory acidosis. A number of anesthetics (opioids, benzodiazepines, volatile anesthetics) can potentially depress the ventilatory drive in the early postoperative period. This respiratory depression may result in respiratory acidosis, which limits the ability of anticholinesterases to reverse neuromuscular blockade. The resultant residual blockade may further depress the respiratory muscle strength and ventilatory drive and increase the risk of adverse postoperative events.

Neuromuscular Monitoring. Qualitative and quantitative neuromuscular monitoring should be used to guide dosing of both NMBDs and their reversal in the operating room. In general, if deeper levels of neuromuscular blockade are present at the end of surgery (1-2 responses to TOF stimulation), larger doses of anticholinesterases should be given. In these clinical scenarios, maximal doses of neostigmine (70 μg/kg), edrophonium (1.0-1.5 mg/kg), or pyridostigmine (350 μg/kg) should be considered. If three to four responses to TOF stimulation are present with observable fade of the fourth response, moderate doses of anticholinesterase should be administered (40-50 μg/kg of neostigmine, 0.5 mg/kg of edrophonium, 200 μg/kg pyridostigmine). If four responses are present with no fade, low doses of anticholinesterases can be considered (e.g., 20 μg/kg of neostigmine; see later).

Quantitative monitoring is also useful in guiding the dosing of anticholinesterases. Fuchs-Buder and colleagues investigated the dose-response relationship of neostigmine using AMG-based monitoring to guide neostigmine reversal (10, 20, or 30 μg/kg) given at TOF ratios of either 0.40 or 0.60 (Fig. 28.13).[109] All patients were able to achieve a TOF ratio of 0.90 within 10 minutes of receiving 20 μg/kg of neostigmine. These findings demonstrate that small doses of neostigmine can be safely used if neuromuscular recovery is measured with quantitative monitoring. If muscle function is monitored manually with a peripheral nerve stimulator and no fade is detected manually with TOF stimulation, the TOF ratio is likely at least 0.40, but may be as high as 0.90 or 1.0. In the setting of full neuromuscular recovery, neostigmine administration may produce paradoxical muscle weakness (see later). This potential risk should be considered if neostigmine is used to reverse shallow blockade based on the results of qualitative neuromuscular monitoring.

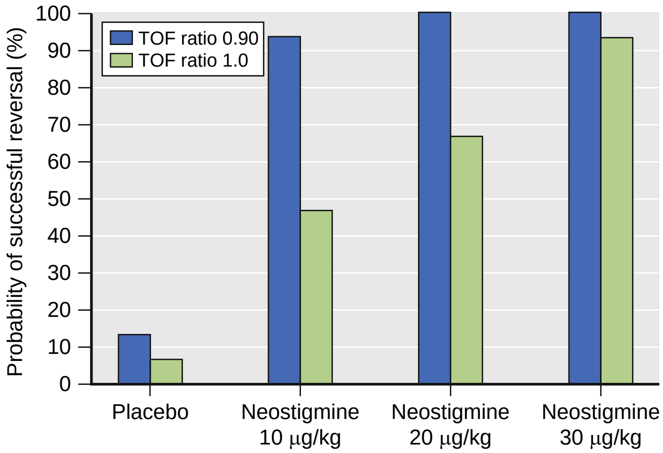


Fig. 28.13 Probability of successful reversal within 10 minutes after different doses of neostigmine or placebo. Neostigmine or placebo was given at a train-of-four ratio of 0.40. *TOF*, Train-of-four. (From Fuchs-Buder T, Meistelman C, Alla F, et al. Antagonism of low degrees of atracurium-induced neuromuscular blockade: dose-effect relationship for neostigmine. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:34–40.)

In many clinical settings neuromuscular monitoring is unfortunately not used and decisions relating to the

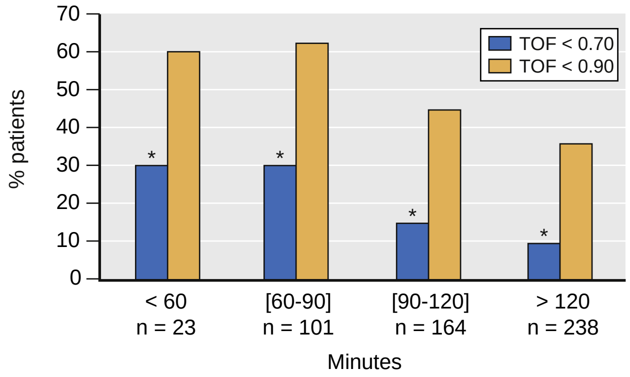


Fig. 28.14 The incidence of residual neuromuscular blockade after a single intubating dose of intermediate-duration nondepolarizing relaxant (rocuronium, vecuronium, or atracurium). Partial paralysis rate (percent) according to the delay between the administration of muscle relaxant and the arrival in the postanesthesia care unit. Partial paralysis was defined as a train-of-four *(TOF)* ratio less than 0.70 or less than 0.90. *n,* number of patients. *Significantly different from TOF < 0.90. (From Debaene B, Plaud B, Dilly MP, Donati F. Residual paralysis in the PACU after a single intubating dose of nondepolarizing muscle relaxant with an intermediate duration of action. *Anesthesiology.* 2003;98:1042–1048.)

administration of anticholinesterases are based on the time that has elapsed between the last dose of NMBD and the conclusion of the anesthetic. Clinical studies do not support this practice. In a study of patients receiving a single intubating dose of vecuronium (0.1 mg/kg), 8.4% of patients had TOF ratios less than 0.80 4 hours after NMBD administration.[110] Debaene and colleagues examined the incidence of residual blockade in a large cohort of patients given a single intubating dose of vecuronium, rocuronium, or atracurium.[47] Of the 239 patients who were tested 2 or more hours after administration of the NMBD, 37% had a TOF ratio less than 0.90 (Fig. 28.14). Murphy and associates administered a single 1 × ED 95 dose of rocuronium (average dose 25 mg) to 120 patients.[111] Despite an average case duration of 161 minutes, 21% of patients had not achieved a TOF ratio of 0.90 at the end of surgery. These investigations, as well as a number of pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic studies, demonstrate that the time course of spontaneous neuromuscular recovery is extremely variable from patient to patient. In order to detect and appropriately manage patients in whom delayed neuromuscular recovery may be present, quantitative neuromuscular monitoring is required.

PATIENTS WITH CHOLINESTERASE DEFICIENCY. The duration of neuromuscular blockade following the administration of either succinylcholine or mivacurium is primarily determined by their rate of hydrolysis by plasma cholinesterase. Patients with abnormal plasma cholinesterase phenotypes and activity can demonstrate significant prolongation of clinical effect of these NMBDs. Mivacurium is four to five times more potent in patients phenotypically homozygous for the atypical plasma cholinesterase gene than in patients with normal cholinesterase activity.[112] Following standard intubating doses of mivacurium, recovery of neuromuscular function may require up to 4 to 8 hours in patients with cholinesterase deficiency.[113] Similar prolonged recovery times have been observed in patients administered succinylcholine who have atypical plasma cholinesterase genes.[114]

Human plasma cholinesterase has been used clinically to reverse neuromuscular blockade in patients with atypical serum cholinesterase. In 1977, Scholler and associates reported data on 15 patients with unexpected prolonged apnea lasting several hours after a dose of succinylcholine.[115] Adequate spontaneous ventilation was restored within an average time of 10 minutes in all subjects following the administration of human serum cholinesterase. Naguib and associates reported successful reversal of a profound mivacurium-induced neuromuscular blockade with three doses of a purified human plasma cholinesterase preparation and, in a subsequent study, established a dose-response relationship for plasma cholinesterase as a reversal agent for mivacurium in normal subjects.[113,116] The efficacy of exogenously administered plasma cholinesterase in antagonism of a mivacurium neuromuscular blockade was assessed in 11 patients phenotypically homozygous for atypical plasma cholinesterase.[117] A purified concentrate of cholinesterase (2.8-10 mg/kg) was administered 30 or 120 minutes after an intubating dose of mivacurium. Administration of cholinesterase restored plasma cholinesterase to normal levels, resulting in a 9- to 15-fold increased clearance and a shorter elimination half-life of mivacurium. The first response to TOF stimulation was observed in 13.5 minutes, and the time to achieve a TOF ratio of 0.80 ranged from 30 to 60 minutes. These data suggest that prolonged neuromuscular blockade secondary to low or abnormal plasma cholinesterase activity can be successfully managed with purified human plasma cholinesterase. Decisions relating to management of prolonged neuromuscular blockade in patients with atypical plasma cholinesterase should be based on the availability and cost of human plasma cholinesterase versus delaying tracheal extubation until spontaneous neuromuscular recovery has occurred.

Box 28.2 summarizes clinical management strategies that can be used by clinicians to reduce the risk of residual blockade when NMBDs are antagonized with anticholinesterases.

Complications Associated With Inhibitors of Acetylcholinesterase

ANTICHOLINESTERASE-ASSOCIATED MUSCLE WEAKNESS. Anticholinesterases can antagonize moderate to shallow levels of neuromuscular blockade. However, if given when neuromuscular function is completely recovered, paradoxical muscle weakness theoretically may be induced. Large doses of neostigmine, pyridostigmine, and edrophonium may result in cholinergic hyperactivity and more intense fade in response to multiple nerve stimuli (decrease in TOF ratio) in an in vitro model.[118] The administration of a second dose of neostigmine (2.5 mg) to patients with small degrees of residual blockade resulted in a decrease in TOF ratios, tetanic height, and tetanic fade.[119,120] Caldwell examined neostigmine reversal (20 or 40 μg/kg) of residual neuromuscular blockade 1 to 4 hours after a single dose of vecuronium.[110] TOF ratios increased in 52 patients and decreased in 8 patients; TOF ratio decreases were only observed in patients with TOF ratios 0.90 or greater at the time of reversal (with 40 μg/kg doses of neostigmine but not 20 μg/kg dosing).

The clinical implications of administration of neostigmine after neuromuscular recovery has occurred have been

BOX 28.2 Clinical Management Strategies to Reduce the Risk of Residual Neuromuscular Blockade When Anticholinesterase Reversal Agents Are Used

Quantitative Monitoring Used (e.g., Acceleromyography)

1. TOF count of 1 or no TOF response—delay reversal until neuromuscular recovery is more complete (TOF count of 2 or greater).
2. TOF count of 2 or 3—administer doses of anticholinesterases (neostigmine [70 μg/kg], edrophonium [1.0–1.5 mg/kg], or pyridostigmine [350 μg/kg]). Extubate when the adductor pollicis TOF ratio has reached 0.90.
3. TOF ratio ≥ 0.40—administer moderate pharmacologic reversal doses of anticholinesterases (neostigmine [40–50 μg/kg], edrophonium [0.5 mg/kg], or pyridostigmine [200 μg/kg]). Extubate when the adductor pollicis TOF ratio has reached 0.90.
4. TOF ratio between 0.40 and 0.70—administer pharmacologic reversal, consider a low dose of neostigmine (20 μg/kg).
5. TOF ratio > 0.70—avoid anticholinesterase reversal; risk of anticholinesterase-induced muscle weakness if given.

Qualitative Monitoring Used (Peripheral Nerve Stimulator)

1. TOF count of 1 or no TOF response—delay reversal until neuromuscular recovery is detectable (TOF count of 2 or greater)
2. TOF count of 2 or 3 at the end of surgery—administer anticholinesterases (neostigmine [70 μg/kg], edrophonium [1.0–1.5 mg/kg], or pyridostigmine [350 μg/kg]). Allow at least 15-30 minutes before tracheal extubation is performed.
3. TOF count of 4 with observable fade at the end of surgery (likely adductor pollicis TOF ratio < 0.40)—administer anticholinesterases (neostigmine [40–50 μg/kg], edrophonium [0.5 mg/kg], or pyridostigmine [200 μg/kg]). Allow at least 10–15 minutes before tracheal extubation is performed.
4. TOF count of 4 with no perceived fade at the end of surgery (likely adductor pollicis TOF ratio ≥ 0.40)—administer pharmacologic reversal, consider a low dose of neostigmine (20 μg/kg).

No Neuromuscular Monitoring Used

1. Anticholinesterases should be considered. Spontaneous recovery of neuromuscular function may require several hours in a significant percentage of patients, even after a single intubating dose of an intermediate-acting NMBD.
2. Anticholinesterases should not be given until some evidence of recovery of muscle strength is observed since administration of an anticholinesterase during deep levels of paralysis may delay neuromuscular recovery.
3. Decisions relating to the use or avoidance of anticholinesterases should not be based upon clinical tests of muscle strength (5-second head lift). Many patients can perform these tests even in the presence of profound neuromuscular blockade (TOF ratio < 0.50). Other muscle groups may be significantly impaired (pharyngeal muscles) at the time when patients can successfully perform these tests.

NMBD, Neuromuscular blocking drug; *TOF*, train-of-four.

Modified from Brull SJ, Murphy GS. Residual neuromuscular block. Lessons unlearned. Part II: methods to reduce the risk of residual weakness. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:129–140.

examined in studies by Eikermann and colleagues. Rats were administered neostigmine after TOF ratios recovered to 1.0. Neostigmine administration resulted in decreases in upper airway dilator muscle tone and volume, impairment of diaphragmatic function, and reductions in minute ventilation.[121,122] In healthy volunteers given rocuronium, the administration of neostigmine after the recovery of the TOF to 1.0 induced genioglossus muscle impairment and increased upper airway collapsibility.[123] The adverse physiologic effects of neostigmine in the setting of complete neuromuscular recovery can potentially have negative respiratory consequences in postoperative surgical patients. The mechanisms proposed for this effect include sensitivity of the upper airway muscles to an overabundance of acetylcholine with desensitization of the ACh receptor, depolarizing blockade, or an open channel blockade. In contrast, Murphy and colleagues randomized 90 surgical patients to receive either 40 μg/kg of neostigmine or saline when TOF ratio of 0.90 to 1.0 was achieved at the end of surgery.[111] No decreases in TOF ratios were observed in any subjects given neostigmine, and no differences between groups were observed in the incidences of airway obstruction, hypoxemic events, or signs and symptoms of muscle weakness. Studies suggest that sugammadex does not appear to produce adverse effects on upper airway tone or normal breathing when given after neuromuscular recovery.[121]

NAUSEA AND VOMITING. The impact of anticholinesterases on the incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting remains controversial. Systemic anticholinesterases produce effects outside of the neuromuscular junction that may influence the risk of unwanted side effects following anesthesia and surgery. In addition to the action within the neuromuscular junction, anticholinesterase drugs result in muscarinic effects on the gastrointestinal tract, resulting in stimulation of secretion of gastric fluid and increases in gastric motility. The use of smaller doses of neostigmine in combination with atropine decreases lower esophageal sphincter tone.[124] Furthermore, neostigmine may produce nausea and vomiting via a central effect. Intrathecal neostigmine increases the incidence of nausea and vomiting, likely through a direct effect on the brainstem.

Anticholinergic drugs (e.g., atropine, glycopyrrolate) are routinely administered with anticholinesterases in order to attenuate the undesirable muscarinic effects of these reversal agents. Perhaps anticholinergic drugs have antiemetic properties.[125] When given to children receiving sedation (in the absence of anticholinesterases), atropine was associated with significantly less vomiting (5.3%) than either glycopyrrolate (10.7%) or no anticholinergic (11.4%).[126] Similarly, surgical patients who were randomized to receive atropine had significantly less nausea than those given glycopyrrolate.[127] Atropine is a tertiary amine that can readily cross the blood-brain barrier and produce central effects, whereas glycopyrrolate is a quaternary amine that does not penetrate the blood-brain barrier. The beneficial effects of atropine on nausea and vomiting are likely secondary to a central nervous system effect.

Several randomized clinical trials have been performed to determine whether anticholinesterase administration results in an increase in the incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting. Unfortunately, most study populations were small (39–120 patients). Two systematic reviews have been conducted to address this limitation. Tramer

TABLE 28.6 Early and Delayed Postoperative Nausea and Vomiting With Neostigmine Versus Control—Results of a Metaanalysis

Outcome	Anticholinergics	Number of Studies	Number of Participants	Relative Risk (95% CI)
Early nausea (0-6 h)	Atropine and Glycopyrrolate	6	584	1.24 (0.86-1.80)
	Atropine	1	79	0.67 (0.36-1.26)
	Glycopyrrolate	5	505	1.39 (0.97-1.99)
Early vomiting (0-6 h)	Atropine and Glycopyrrolate	8	768	1.05 (0.72-1.55)
	Atropine	2	199	0.75 (0.52-1.08)
	Glycopyrrolate	6	568	1.35 (0.88-2.06)
Delayed nausea (6-24 h)	Glycopyrrolate	4	337	1.09 (0.76-1.57)
Delayed vomiting (6-24 h)	Glycopyrrolate	4	337	1.01 (0.58-1.78)

CI, Confidence interval.

From Cheng CR, Sessler DI, Apfel CC. Does neostigmine administration produce a clinically important increase in postoperative nausea and vomiting? *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1349–1355.

and Fuchs-Buder analyzed eight trials with data on 1134 patients that compared reversal with neostigmine or edrophonium with spontaneous recovery from long- or intermediate-acting NMBDs.[128] An analysis of the neostigmine data across all trials and doses revealed no evidence of an increased risk of early and late nausea and vomiting when neostigmine was administered. However, some evidence in adults suggested that antagonism with larger doses of neostigmine (2.5 mg) might increase the incidence of these events. No evidence was found for this effect with edrophonium. A later systematic review evaluated the effect of neostigmine on postoperative nausea and vomiting while considering the different anticholinergics as confounding variables.[125] Ten randomized trials (933 patients) that compared neostigmine to inactive control were included. The combination of neostigmine with either glycopyrrolate or atropine did not increase the incidence of nausea or vomiting, nor was there an increased risk when large doses of neostigmine were compared with smaller doses (Table 28.6). Atropine was associated with a reduction in the risk of vomiting, but glycopyrrolate was not. In conclusion, there is at present insufficient evidence to conclude that neostigmine or edrophonium is associated with an increased risk of postoperative nausea and vomiting.

Cardiovascular Effects. Pronounced vagal effects are observed following the administration of anticholinesterases—bradycardia and other bradyarrhythmias, such as junctional rhythms, ventricular escape beats, complete heart block, and asystole, have been reported. The time course of these bradyarrhythmias parallels the onset of action of the anticholinesterases, with the most rapid onset observed with edrophonium, slower for neostigmine, and slowest for pyridostigmine.[90] In order to counteract these cardiovascular effects, atropine and glycopyrrolate are administered concurrently with anticholinesterases. Atropine and glycopyrrolate have muscarinic (parasympathetic) blocking effects, but do not block nicotinic receptors. Atropine has a more rapid onset of action (approximately 1 minute) compared with glycopyrrolate (2-3 minutes), although the duration of action of both agents is similar (30–60 minutes). Despite the concurrent administration of anticholinergic drugs, a high incidence of bradyarrhythmias is observed following anticholinesterase reversal (up to 50%–60% of patients in some studies).[129] The risk of arrhythmias is influenced by the type of anticholinesterase and anticholinergic used, the dose of anticholinesterase and anticholinergic administered, and background anesthetic used (opioid-based vs. volatile anesthetic and type of NMBD).

Several investigations have examined the heart rate and rhythm responses to various anticholinesterase/anticholinergic combinations. In general, it is preferable to use atropine with edrophonium because the onset of action of both drugs is rapid. Edrophonium-atropine mixtures induced small increases in heart rate, whereas edrophonium-glycopyrrolate mixtures caused decreases in heart rate and occasionally severe bradycardia.[130] Similarly, the onset of cholinergic effects of neostigmine coincides with the onset of the anticholinergic effects of glycopyrrolate; glycopyrrolate is superior to atropine in protecting against neostigmine-induced bradyarrhythmias.[131] When atropine is given with edrophonium (0.5-1.0 mg/kg), doses of 5 to 7 μg/kg are recommended, although larger doses may be used in certain circumstances.[130,132] If glycopyrrolate is given with neostigmine, minimal changes in heart rate are observed if a dose equivalent of one fourth the dose of neostigmine is used (e.g., 1 mg glycopyrrolate with 4 mg of neostigmine).[131] Because the onset of action is slow with pyridostigmine, tachycardia may be observed when either atropine or glycopyrrolate is coadministered.

More recent investigations have examined the impact of atropine and glycopyrrolate, given with neostigmine, on autonomic control in the postoperative period. During physiologically stressful events, control of heart rate and arterial blood pressure is regulated by the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems. Anticholinergic drugs attenuate the efferent parasympathetic regulation of heart rate and suppress cardiac baroreflex sensitivity and heart rate variability. This suppression of the parasympathetic system may predispose patients to cardiac arrhythmias following surgery. Marked decreases in baroreflex sensitivity and high-frequency heart rate variability have been observed in healthy volunteers given either atropine (20 μg/kg) or glycopyrrolate (7 μg/kg).[133] Although the times required to return to baseline values were prolonged in both groups, recovery times were significantly longer in the subjects given atropine (177-212 minutes) compared with those administered glycopyrrolate (82-111 minutes). Similar effects have been observed in healthy patients undergoing general anesthesia reversed with neostigmine and anticholinergics.[134] Neuromuscular blockade was antagonized with neostigmine 50 µg/kg and either atropine 20 µg/kg or glycopyrrolate 8 µg/kg. Two hours after giving neostigmine, patients given atropine had persistent impairment of baroreflex sensitivity and high-frequency heart rate variability, whereas these variables had returned to baseline values in patients receiving glycopyrrolate. These investigations demonstrate that the parasympathetic nervous system control of heart rate is less impaired by glycopyrrolate than by atropine.

Bronchoconstriction. Bronchospasm can occur after the administration of neostigmine in surgical patients.[135,136] Anticholinesterases (e.g., neostigmine) stimulate muscarinic receptors in airway smooth muscle; stimulation of these receptors can provoke bronchoconstriction. Neostigmine and pyridostigmine induce a phosphatidylinositol response (a reflection of smooth muscle contraction induced by a muscarinic agonist) in airway muscle, which can result in bronchoconstriction.[137] This response was inhibited in the presence of atropine, a direct bronchodilator. Edrophonium did not induce a phosphatidylinositol response. In patients with cervical spinal cord injuries, neostigmine alone caused bronchoconstriction, whereas neostigmine combined with glycopyrrolate caused bronchodilation.[138] The risk of perioperative bronchospasm appears low if anticholinesterases are administered concurrently with anticholinergics.

SUGAMMADEX REVERSAL OF NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKADE

Sugammadex (Org 25969) is a modified γ-cyclodextrin and the first selective relaxant–binding agent based on an encapsulating principle for inactivation of a neuromuscular blocking drug (*su* refers to sugar, and *gammadex* refers to the structural molecule γ-cyclodextrin). This principle for reversal of rocuronium- and vecuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade was first introduced into clinical practice in 2008 and is now available for pediatric and adult anesthesia in most countries worldwide, including the United States and China. The complex formation of sugammadex and rocuronium or vecuronium occurs at all levels of neuromuscular blockade (profound through shallow) and results in a more fast-acting pharmacologic reversal when compared with anticholinesterase drugs. Consequently, sugammadex may markedly reduce postoperative residual neuromuscular blockade in the PACU.[139]

Structure-Activity Relationships and Mechanism of Action

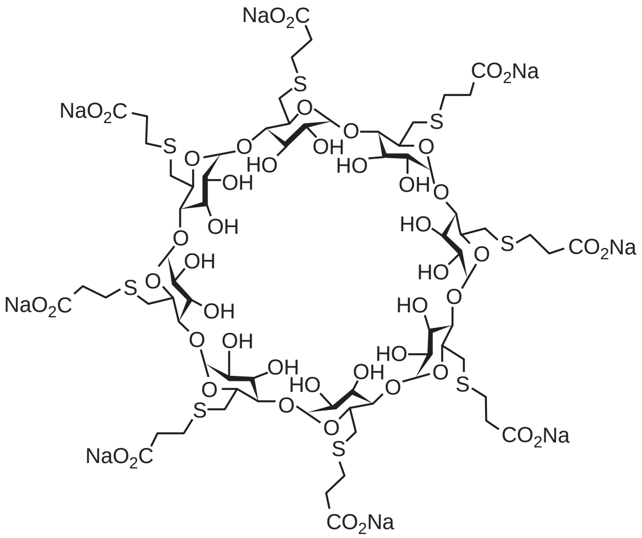


Fig. 28.15 Structure of the synthetic γ-cyclodextrin sugammadex (Org 25969). (From Bom A, Bradley M, Cameron K, et al. A novel concept of reversing neuromuscular block. Chemical encapsulating of rocuronium bromide by a cyclodextrin-based synthetic host. *Angew Chem.* 2002;41:266–270.)

The three natural unmodified cyclodextrins consist of six, seven, and eight cyclic oligosaccharides (i.e., dextrose units joined through one to four glycosyl bonds) and are called α-, β-, and γ-cyclodextrins, respectively.[140,141] Their three-dimensional structure resembles a hollow, truncated cone or a doughnut. The structure has a hydrophobic cavity and hydrophilic exterior because of the presence of polar hydroxyl groups. Hydrophobic interactions trap the lipophilic molecules in the cyclodextrin cavity, thereby resulting in the formation of a water-soluble guest-host complex. Sugammadex is built on this principle ring structure but is a modified γ-cyclodextrin. Although an unmodified γ-cyclodextrin possesses a larger lipophilic cavity (7.5-8.3 Å) than α- or β-cyclodextrins, it is still not deep enough to accommodate the larger rigid structure of the rocuronium molecule. Therefore the cavity is modified by adding eight side chains to extend it to 11 Å for better accommodation of the four hydrophobic steroidal rings of rocuronium. Furthermore, at the end of these side chains, negatively charged carboxyl groups are added to enhance electrostatic binding to the positively charged quaternary nitrogen of rocuronium (Fig. 28.15).[141,142] The stability of the rocuronium-sugammadex complex is a result of the combination of intermolecular forces (van der Waals forces), including thermodynamic (hydrogen bonds) and hydrophobic interactions.[141-143] Sugammadex forms a rigid complex in a 1:1 ratio with steroidal NMBDs (rocuronium and vecuronium) (Fig. 28.16).[141] There is some binding affinity with pancuronium, but this interaction is too low to have a significant clinical effect. The molecular mass of the sugammadex-rocuronium complex is 2532 g/mol (sugammadex 2002 g/mol and rocuronium 530 g/mol), and that of the sugammadex-vecuronium complex is 2640 g/mol (vecuronium 638 g/mol).[141] The rocuronium-sugammadex complex exists in an equilibrium with an association/dissociation rate of 1 molar concentration of sugammadex and rocuronium of 25,000,000:1, which means that sugammadex forms a very rigid complex and encapsulates rocuronium at 25 million times the rate that one molecule complex dissociates. The affinity of sugammadex toward vecuronium is 2.5 times smaller, but still high enough to form a tight complex.[141] Rapid binding of rocuronium and sugammadex results in removal of free rocuronium molecules from the plasma. This creates a

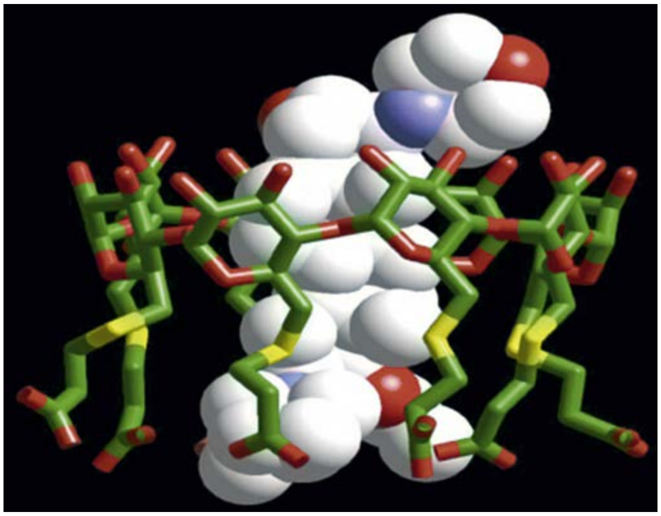


Fig. 28.16 **The sugammadex-rocuronium complex.** (From Bom A, Bradley M, Cameron K, et al. A novel concept of reversing neuromuscular block. Chemical encapsulating of rocuronium bromide by a cyclodextrin-based synthetic host. *Angew Chem.* 2002;41:266–270.)

concentration gradient favoring movement of the remaining rocuronium molecules from the effect site at the neuromuscular junction into plasma, where the drug is encapsulated by free sugammadex molecules. Neuromuscular blockade is quickly reversed as rocuronium is removed from the binding sites at the neuromuscular junction. Sugammadex administration results in an increase in the total plasma concentration of rocuronium (free and that bound to sugammadex).[144] Because sugammadex acts as a selective binding agent and has no direct or indirect action on the molecular components of cholinergic transmission (cholinesterase, nicotinic receptors, or muscarinic receptors), the need for coadministration of anticholinergic drugs is eliminated.[145]

Pharmacokinetics

The pharmacokinetic profile of sugammadex and rocuronium has been investigated in healthy volunteers and surgical patients.[146] Sugammadex, in a dose range of 0.1 to 8.0 mg/kg in healthy adult volunteers (without neuromuscular blockade), exhibited a dose-linear pharmacokinetic profile, a volume distribution of 18 L, an elimination half-life of 100 minutes, and a plasma clearance rate of 120 mL/min, with up to 80% of the dose being excreted in urine over 24 hours.[146] After encapsulation by sugammadex, rocuronium is less free to distribute to compartments other than those associated with the compartment in which sugammadex resides. During an infusion of rocuronium to maintain a stable depth of neuromuscular blockade, administration of sugammadex increased the measured plasma concentration of rocuronium; rocuronium redistributed from the effect compartment (including the neuromuscular junction) to the central compartment (mostly as the sugammadex complex) as it was encapsulated by sugammadex.[144] The volume of distribution of rocuronium decreases with increasing doses of sugammadex until the volume of distribution of rocuronium approaches the volume of distribution of sugammadex at higher doses.[144] Encapsulation changes the pharmacokinetics of rocuronium. In the absence of sugammadex, rocuronium is eliminated mainly by biliary excretion (>75%) and to a lesser degree by renal excretion (10%-25%).[147] The main difference in the pharmacokinetic profile of sugammadex and rocuronium is that the clearance of sugammadex is approximately three times slower than that of rocuronium.[146] The rate and amount of urinary excretion of rocuronium when administered alone is slow and small, but when sugammadex (a dose of 2.0 mg/kg or more) is administered, the plasma clearance of rocuronium is decreased by a factor of more than two.[146] This decreased clearance occurs because the biliary route of excretion becomes unavailable for the rocuronium-sugammadex complex as the large size of this complex prohibits additional renal excretion. The clearance of rocuronium after binding by sugammadex decreases to a value approaching the glomerular filtration rate (120 mL/min).[147] However, the renal excretion of rocuronium is increased by more than 100% after administration of 4.0 to 8.0 mg/kg of sugammadex.[147] Following the administration of sugammadex, encapsulation of rocuronium in the plasma results in a rapid decrease in free rocuronium in this compartment, although the total plasma concentration of rocuronium (both free and bound by sugammadex) increases. This results in a concentration gradient between the relatively high level of free rocuronium in the effect compartment (the neuromuscular junction) and the low level in the plasma compartment.[144] As a result, free rocuronium molecules rapidly diffuse towards the plasma compartment and are encapsulated by sugammadex. Thus the increase in plasma levels of rocuronium after sugammadex administration illustrates the mechanism responsible for the rapid reversal of neuromuscular blockade by sugammadex.

Because renal excretion is the primary route for the elimination of sugammadex and the rocuronium-sugammadex complex, studies on elimination by dialysis have considerable relevance in clinical practice. In a small subset of patients with severe renal impairment, an investigation on dialysis showed that the clearance of sugammadex and rocuronium in blood was 78 and 89 mL/min, respectively. Therefore hemodialysis using a high-flux dialysis method is effective in removing sugammadex and the sugammadex-rocuronium complex in patients with severe renal impairment.[148]

Pharmacodynamics

Clinical Use of Sugammadex in Healthy Patients

The first human exposure of sugammadex in male volunteers showed a large dose-dependent, more rapid recovery time from a rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex (0.1-8.0 mg/kg) as compared with placebo.[146] Administration of 8 mg/kg of sugammadex 3 minutes after a bolus dose of 0.6 mg/kg of rocuronium resulted in a recovery of the TOF ratio to 0.90 within 2 minutes compared with 52 minutes for placebo. Decreasing the dose of sugammadex to 4 mg/kg resulted in recovery of the TOF ratio to 0.90 in less than 4 minutes.[146] Similar recovery times were found in a study in which surgical patients received 0.6 mg/kg rocuronium, followed by different doses of sugammadex or placebo administered at a TOF count of 2.[149] Sugammadex reduced the median recovery time in a dose-dependent manner from 21 minutes in the placebo group to 1.1 minutes in the group receiving 4.0 mg/kg of sugammadex.[149] In another study, administration of sugammadex resulted in a more rapid and effective recovery from a rocuronium (0.6 mg/kg) or vecuronium

(0.1 mg/kg) neuromuscular blockade.[150] After a dose of 4.0 mg/kg of sugammadex, the mean recovery time to a TOF ratio of 0.90 was 1.1 minutes and 1.5 minutes after rocuronium and vecuronium, respectively (Figs. 28.17 and 28.18).[150] Reversal of neuromuscular blockade with larger doses of rocuronium (1.0–1.2 mg/kg) by different doses of sugammadex (2.0–16.0 mg/kg) at different time points (3–15 minutes after rocuronium) showed a dose-dependent, rapid, and effective reversal compared with placebo.[151-154]

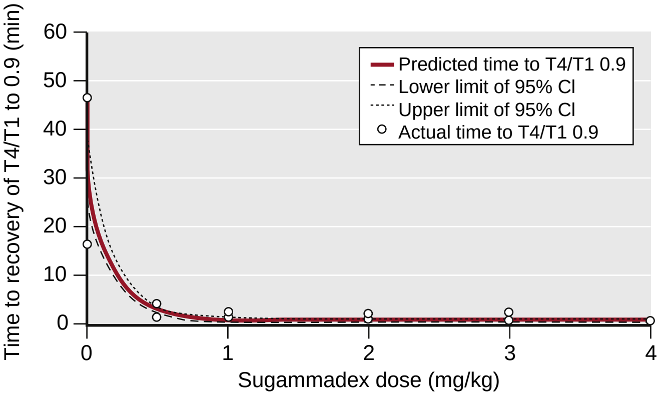


Fig. 28.17 The dose-response relation of sugammadex dose and time to recovery of the T4/T1 ratio to 0.9 with rocuronium 0.6 mg/kg. *T4/T1 ratio,* the degree of neuromuscular block. (From Suy K, Morias K, Cammu G, et al. Effective reversal of moderate rocuronium- or vecuronium-induced neuromuscular block with sugammadex, a selective relaxant binding agent. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:283–288.)

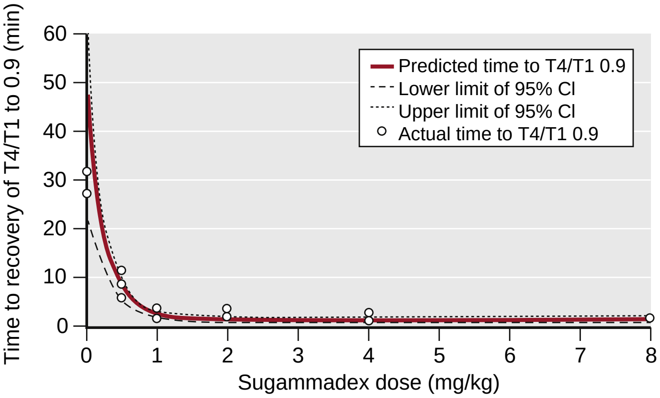


Fig. 28.18 The dose-response relation of sugammadex dose and time to recovery of the T4/T1 ratio to 0.9 with vecuronium 0.1 mg/kg. *T4/T1 ratio,* the degree of neuromuscular block. (From Suy K, Morias K, Cammu G, et al. Effective reversal of moderate rocuronium- or vecuronium-induced neuromuscular block with sugammadex, a selective relaxant binding agent. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:283–288.)

Whereas anticholinesterase drugs, such as neostigmine, are unable to reverse deeper levels of neuromuscular blockade (e.g., posttetanic count of 1-2) because of a ceiling effect, sugammadex is effective in reversing profound neuromuscular blockade.[152,155] Optimal doses of sugammadex of 4.0 mg/kg produced prompt recovery of the TOF ratio to 0.90 within minutes (Table 28.7).[150-155] Therefore reversal of moderate and profound rocuronium and vecuronium neuromuscular blockades can be reliably achieved by administration of sugammadex, provided a dose of 2.0 and 4.0 mg/kg, respectively, is used. Because neostigmine has neuromuscular effects when given alone, some spontaneous recovery of the TOF should be evident before it is given. In contrast, sugammadex has no neuromuscular effects when given alone. Accordingly, sugammadex can be given even if there is no response to TOF stimulation. Sugammadex allows a profound neuromuscular blockade to continue until the end of surgery.

In contrast to the anticholinesterase drugs (e.g., neostigmine), intense neuromuscular blockade (no response to TOF and PTC stimulation) can be reversed by sugammadex immediately after the administration of rocuronium. In a multicenter investigation, patients were randomized to receive 1.2 mg/kg of rocuronium followed 3 minutes later by 16 mg/kg of sugammadex or a dose of 1.0 mg/kg of succinylcholine.[156] The mean time to 90% recovery of the first twitch (T1) from the start of sugammadex administration was 2.9 minutes and to a recovery of the TOF ratio to 0.90 was 2.2 minutes.[156] In contrast, the spontaneous recovery time from a succinylcholine neuromuscular blockade to 90% recovery of T1 was 10.9 minutes. Thus reversal of large doses of rocuronium with 16 mg/kg sugammadex was significantly faster than spontaneous recovery from succinylcholine (Fig. 28.19).[156] These findings were confirmed in a randomized trial that assessed how rapidly spontaneous ventilation could be reestablished after rapid sequence induction of anesthesia and intubation of the trachea, using either the combination of rocuronium (1.0 mg/kg)–sugammadex (16 mg/kg) or succinylcholine (1.0 mg/kg).[157] The median time from tracheal intubation to spontaneous ventilation was 406 seconds with succinylcholine and 216 seconds with rocuronium-sugammadex (Table 28.8).[157] These data demonstrated that sugammadex reversal of a large-dose rocuronium neuromuscular

TABLE 28.7 Recovery Times* of Reversal of a Rocuronium-Induced (1.2 mg/kg) Neuromuscular Blockade With Either Sugammadex or Placebo (NaCl 0.9%)

		SUGAMMADEX				
	Placebo (*n* = 4)	**2.0 mg/kg (*n* = 5)**	**4.0 mg/kg (*n* = 5)**	**8.0 mg/kg (*n* = 12)**	**12.0 mg/kg (*n* = 7)**	**16.0 mg/kg (*n* = 7)**
Mean (SD)	122.1 (18.1)	56.5 (5.4)	15.8 (17.8)	2.8 (0.6)	1.4 (0.3)	1.9 (2.2)
Median	126.1	55.3	12.3	2.5	1.3	1.3
Min-max	96.8-139.4	50.5-65.1	3.3-46.6	2.2-3.7	1.0-1.9	0.7-6.9

*Recovery times (minutes) from the start of administration of sugammadex or placebo to recovery of the train-of-four ratio to 0.90.

SD, Standard deviation.

From de Boer HD, Driessen JJ, Marcus MA, et al. Reversal of a rocuronium-induced (1.2 mg/kg) profound neuromuscular block by sugammadex: a multicenter, dose-finding and safety study. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:239–244.

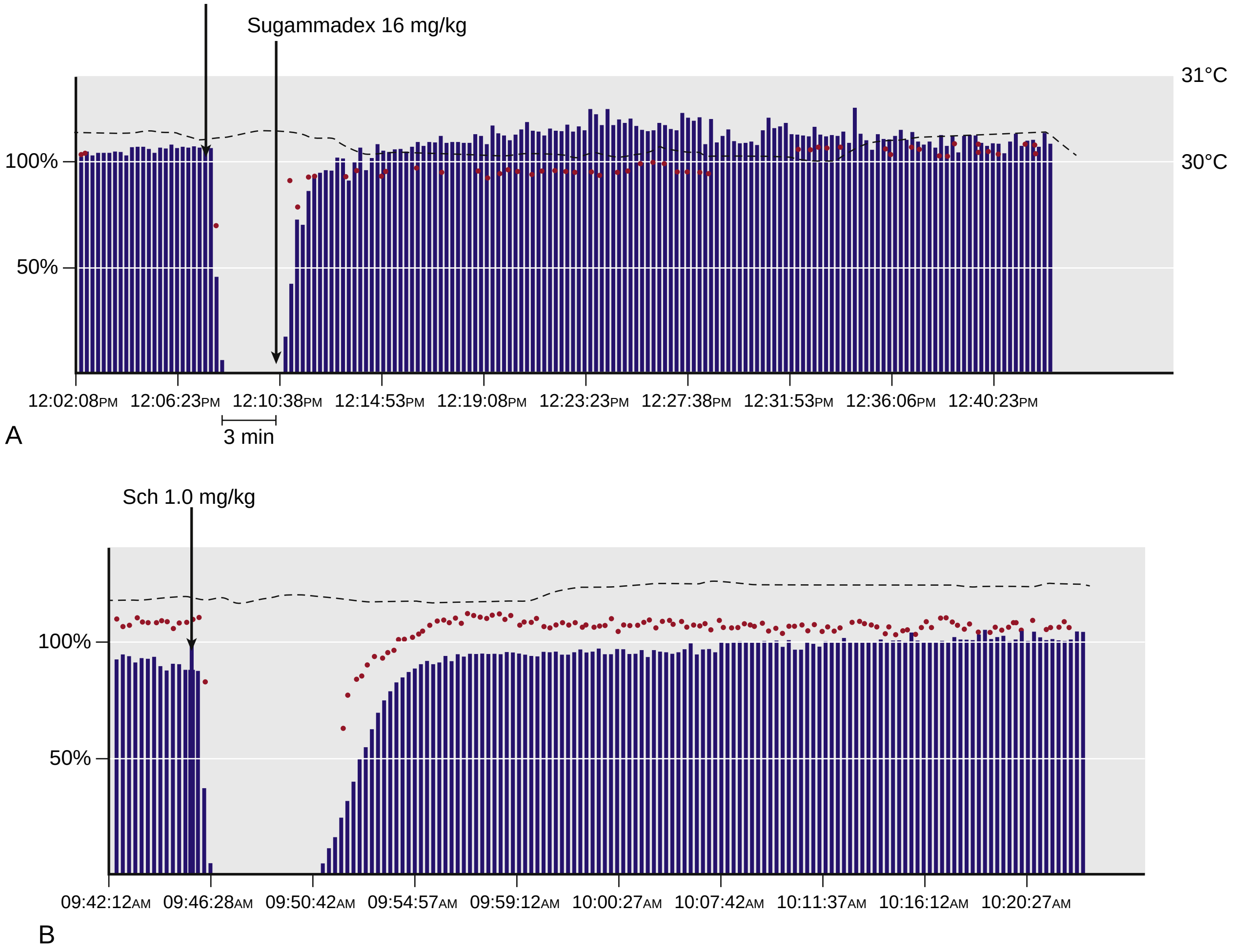


Fig. 28.19 (A) Recovery of T1 twitch height *(blue tracings)* and the train-of-four (TOF) ratio *(red dots)* after the administration of 1.2 mg/kg of rocuronium, followed 3 minutes later by 16 mg/kg of sugammadex, both given intravenously. Recovery to a first twitch height (T1) of 90% and a TOF ratio of 0.94 occurred 110 seconds later. The onset-offset time with this sequence (i.e., time from the end of the injection of rocuronium until T1 recovery to 90%) was 4 minutes, 47 seconds. (B) Effects of administering 1.0 mg/kg of succinylcholine *(Sch)* with spontaneous recovery to a T1 recovery to 90% occurring after 9 minutes, 23 seconds. *Black dashed line* represents hand skin temperature (°Celsius). (From Naguib M. Sugammadex: another milestone in clinical neuromuscular pharmacology. *Anesth Analg.* 2007;104:575–581.)

blockade was not only significantly faster than spontaneous recovery from succinylcholine, but that spontaneous ventilation could be restored more rapidly (i.e., this dose can be used to replace succinylcholine for endotracheal intubation). In clinical practice and during an unexpected difficult airway (cannot intubate, cannot ventilate scenario), a rocuronium neuromuscular blockade may be reversed by sugammadex immediately in order to restore spontaneous ventilation.

When sugammadex was compared with neostigmine or edrophonium, the time course of neuromuscular recovery was markedly different.[158-160] In a clinical study, patients received 0.6 mg/kg of rocuronium after which neuromuscular blockade was sustained with supplemental boluses of rocuronium given at the reappearance of the second twitch (second response to TOF stimulation or T2).[158] Fifteen minutes after the last dose of rocuronium either 70 µg/kg of neostigmine, 1 mg/kg of edrophonium, or 4.0 mg/kg sugammadex was administered. The average time to achieve a TOF ratio of 0.90 was 10 times longer after the administration of neostigmine than it was after sugammadex (1044 seconds vs. 107 seconds) and 3 times longer after the administration of edrophonium (331 seconds). In another study by Blobner and associates, similar differences were found when comparing reversal of rocuronium at the reappearance of the second twitch in the TOF response using 2 mg/kg sugammadex versus neostigmine 50 µg/kg.[159] This was also confirmed in an investigation that assessed the efficacy of sugammadex versus neostigmine for reversal of profound rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade.[160] More than 97% of patients reversed with sugammadex (4.0 mg/kg) at a PTC of 1 to 2 recovered to a TOF ratio of 0.90 within 5 minutes. In contrast, 73% of the patients administered neostigmine (70 µg/kg) recovered between 30 and 60 minutes after administration, with 23% requiring more than 60 minutes to recover to a TOF ratio of 0.90 (Fig. 28.20).

A randomized trial compared the efficacy of sugammadex reversal of a rocuronium (0.6 mg/kg) neuromuscular blockade with that of neostigmine reversal of a cisatracurium (0.15 mg/kg) neuromuscular blockade.[161] Time from the start of administration of reversal agent sugammadex 2.0 mg/kg or neostigmine 50 µg/kg) to recovery of the TOF

TABLE 28.8 How Rapidly Can Spontaneous Ventilation Be Reestablished After a Rapid Sequence Induction and Intubation of Anesthesia Using Either Succinylcholine- or Rocuronium-Sugammadex

	Succinylcholine (1 mg/kg) (*n* = 26)	Rocuronium (1 mg/kg) Sugammadex (16 mg/kg) (*n* = 29)	*P*-value
Time from start of procedure to tracheal intubation (seconds)	330 (313-351)	324 (312-343)	.45
Intubation conditions			.13
Excellent	20 (76%)	27 (93%)	
Good	6 (24%)	2 (7%)	
Poor	0 (0%)	0 (0%)	
Intubation difficulty score			.23
≤5	24 (92%)	28 (100%)	
>5	2 (8%)	0 (0%)	
Time from tracheal intubation to spontaneous ventilation (seconds)	406 (313-507)	216 (132-425)	.002
Time from tracheal intubation to T1 90% (seconds)	518 (451-671) (*n* = 17)	168 (122-201) (*n* = 27)	<.0001
Time from injection of NMBD to T1 90% (seconds)	719 (575-787) (*n* = 17)	282 (242-319) (*n* = 27)	<.0001

*These data include tracheal intubation conditions, time to reappearance of spontaneous ventilation, and recovery of neuromuscular function from either succinylcholine or the combination of rocuronium-sugammadex.

From Sørensen MK, Bretlau C, Gätke MR, et al. Rapid sequence induction and intubation with rocuronium-sugammadex compared with succinylcholine. A randomized trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:682–689.

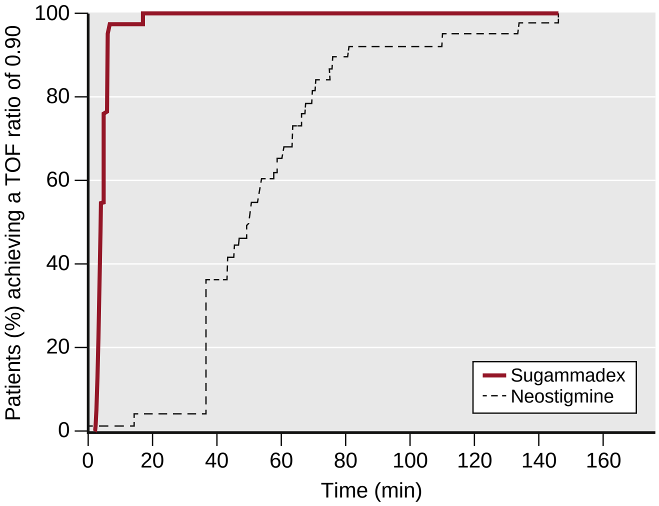


Fig. 28.20 Time to recovery of the train-of-four *(TOF)* ratio to 0.90 from profound rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade after administration of sugammadex 4 mg/kg or neostigmine 70 µg/kg. (From Jones RK, Caldwell JE, Brull SJ, et al. Reversal of profound rocuronium-induced blockade with sugammadex: a randomized comparison with neostigmine. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:816–824.)

ratio to 0.90 was 4.7 times faster with sugammadex than with neostigmine, 1.9 versus 9.0 minutes, respectively.

Unlike with neostigmine or edrophonium, the choice of anesthetic (e.g., propofol vs. sevoflurane) does not influence the ability of sugammadex to reverse rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade.[162,163] Provided that sugammadex is used in recommended dosages according to the level of neuromuscular blockade, a small risk exists of incomplete neuromuscular recovery or reoccurrence of neuromuscular blockade following surgery.

Clinical Use of Sugammadex in Pediatric and Older Adult Patients

PEDIATRICS. The use of sugammadex in pediatric patients was examined in a study enrolling 8 infants (28 days to 23 months), 24 children (2-11 years), and 31 adolescents (12-17 years).[164] Patients were anesthetized with propofol and opioids and received rocuronium 0.6 mg/kg. At the reappearance of T2 (second twitch), patients were given sugammadex 0.5, 1.0, 2.0, or 4.0 mg/kg or placebo. Recovery time to a TOF ratio of 0.90 decreased in a dose-dependent manner in all age groups. Residual neuromuscular blockade or recurarization was not observed, and no side effects were reported. In a more recent case report, sugammadex was used successfully in reversing a vecuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade in a 7-month-old infant.[165] Another case report described a 2-year-old patient who received readministration of rocuronium for reoperation after an initial successful reversal with sugammadex.[166] A recent systematic review showed that compared with neostigmine or placebo, sugammadex can reverse a rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade more rapidly with lower incidence of bradycardia.[167]

While sugammadex can be used safely in children and adolescents (2-17 years old), information on the use of sugammadex in pediatric patients less than 2 years old is still limited.

OLDER ADULT PATIENTS. Reversal of neuromuscular blockade by sugammadex has been assessed in older patients. One hundred and fifty patients were divided into three groups; an adult group (18–64 years old), an older adult group (65–75 years old), and an oldest adult group (75 years or older).[168] Patients received an intubating dose of rocuronium 0.6 mg/kg with maintenance doses of 0.15 mg/kg as required. Sugammadex 2.0 mg/kg was administered after the last dose of rocuronium at the

TABLE 28.9 Rocuronium Recovery Time (min) from the Administration of Sugammadex (2 mg/kg at Appearance of T2) Until the Recovery of Train-of-Four Ratios as Indicated in Patients With and Without Renal Failure

	PATIENT GROUP		
	CL_{CR} <30 mL/min (*n* = 15)	**CL_{CR} ≥80 mL/min (*n* = 14)***	**Anova**
Recovery to TOF ratio 0.7, mean (SD)	1.45 (0.47)	1.17 (0.38)	NS
Recovery to TOF ratio 0.8, mean (SD)	1.60 (0.57)	1.32 (0.45)	NS
Recovery to TOF ratio 0.9, mean (SD)	2.00 (0.72)	1.65 (0.63)	NS

ANOVA, Analysis of variance; *CL_{CR},* total plasma creatinine clearance; *NS,* not significant; *SD,* standard deviation; *TOF,* train-of-four.

*One patient was excluded from the control group (normal renal function) because of unreliable TOF traces.

From Staals LM, Snoeck MM, Driessen JJ, et al. Multicenter, parallel-group, comparative trial evaluating the efficacy and safety of sugammadex in patients with end-stage renal failure or normal renal function. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:492–497.

reappearance of T2. Recovery of neuromuscular blockade by sugammadex was slightly (0.7 minutes) faster in patients younger than 65 years of age. In general, a prolonged circulation time secondary to a reduced cardiac output in older patients was anticipated to result in a longer recovery time from neuromuscular blockade after administration of sugammadex.[169,170] However, based on these results, no dose adjustments are needed in older patients.[168] Yet, if it is necessary to achieve a fast recovery in a short period of time, a higher dose of sugammadex might be considered.[171]

Clinical Use of Sugammadex in Special Patient Populations

Cardiac Disease. Studies evaluating the safety and efficacy of sugammadex in patients with underlying cardiovascular disease have not demonstrated an effect of sugammadex on electrocardiogram (no indication of a possible prolongation effect on the QTc interval).[172,173] A study designed to evaluate the effects of sugammadex on QTc prolongation in healthy subjects (in doses up to 32 mg/kg, alone or in combination with rocuronium or vecuronium) revealed that the administration of sugammadex was not associated with QTc prolongation.[173] In a case report of a patient with long QT syndrome, a vecuronium neuromuscular blockade was reversed with sugammadex 2 mg/kg without adversely affecting the QT interval.[174] Based on current data, sugammadex reversal is not associated with cardiovascular side effects in healthy patients or in those with cardiovascular comorbidities (also see earlier section Complications Associated With Inhibitors of Acetylcholinesterase).

Pulmonary Disease. Patients with a history of pulmonary disease have an increased risk of postoperative pulmonary complications such as pneumonia, respiratory failure, and exacerbation of the underlying pulmonary disease.[175] Sugammadex has been studied in patients with pulmonary disease.[175] Seventy-seven surgical patients with a diagnosis or known history of pulmonary disorders received sugammadex in doses up to 4 mg/kg in order to reverse a rocuronium neuromuscular blockade. As in other adult patient groups, reversal of a rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade was rapid, and there were no signs of residual neuromuscular blockade or recurarization.[176] Of the 77 patients treated with sugammadex, 2 patients developed bronchospasm, 1 minute and 55 minutes respectively, after the administration of sugammadex. Both patients were asthmatic, and there was no evidence that these symptoms were related to sugammadex. In other subsets of high-risk pulmonary patients (cystic fibrosis and end-stage lung disease), the successful use of sugammadex has been reported.[177] Reversal of a neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex has potential advantages compared with anticholinesterase drugs (e.g., neostigmine) in patients with pulmonary disease because sugammadex lacks interactions with the muscarinic cholinergic system, and there is no need for coadministration of anticholinergic compounds (also see section, Complications Associated With Inhibitors of Acetylcholinesterase).

Renal Failure. The use of sugammadex to reverse rocuronium neuromuscular blockade was investigated in 15 patients with severe renal impairment (creatinine clearance <30 mL/min) and compared with 15 patients with normal renal function (creatinine clearance >80 mL/min).[178] Sugammadex 2 mg/kg was administered at the reappearance of T2. There were no differences between groups in the recovery profile or the incidence of residual blockade after sugammadex (Table 28.9). In another study, the reversal of a rocuronium-induced deep neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex 4.0 mg/kg in patients with severe renal impairment (creatinine clearance <30 mL/min) showed a fast and stable reversal.[179] Sugammadex and sugammadex-rocuronium complex exposure is increased in patients with moderate and severe renal failure due to the decreased renal clearance.[180] The use of sugammadex in renal transplantation was described in two cases in which sugammadex was used for reversal of a rocuronium-induced neuromuscular block in pediatric patients and showed a fast and complete reversal without signs of residual neuromuscular blockade or recurarization.[181] More recently, the long-term efficacy and safety of rocuronium and sugammadex in patients undergoing renal transplantation were described in 57 patients diagnosed with severe renal failure.[182] Rocuronium and sugammadex appeared to be efficacious and safe in patients undergoing renal transplantation. Because complete elimination of the sugammadex-rocuronium complex remains poorly understood in renal impairment, sugammadex is at present not recommended for use in patients with severe renal failure. However, it can be used in patients with mild or moderate renal dysfunction as its safety profile is similar to that of healthy patients.[178] Theoretically, because of the molecular mass of the rocuronium/vecuronium-sugammadex complex, it is possible to decrease the plasma levels of this complex by dialysis. Hemodialysis using a high-flux dialysis method has been demonstrated to be effective in removing sugammadex and the sugammadex-rocuronium complex in patients with severe renal impairment.[148]

HEPATOBILIARY DISEASE. Sugammadex has not been studied in animal models or in patients with hepatic impairment. However, it is known that the biliary route of excretion becomes unavailable for either sugammadex or the rocuronium/vecuronium-sugammadex complex because the large size of this complex prohibits such excretion.[183] A population pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic (PK-PD) model was used to simulate the scenario of an immediate reversal, and reversal of a profound rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade in patients with hepatic impairment.[183] Under such study conditions, hepatic impairment had little effect on the reversal time when sugammadex (16 mg/kg) was administered 3 minutes after rocuronium (1.2 mg/kg). However, in other scenarios (sugammadex 2 mg/kg at reappearance of T2 and 4 mg/kg after 15 minutes), recovery from a rocuronium-induced (1.2 mg/kg) neuromuscular blockade was predicted to be longer than that seen in healthy patients.[183] In patients with hepatobiliary disease, the recovery of neuromuscular function after sugammadex administration will likely be faster than reversal with anticholinesterase drugs (but not be as rapid as patients without hepatobiliary disease). The explanation of the slower reversal is not yet fully understood and needs to be investigated in clinical studies. Based on limited available data, sugammadex should be used with caution in patients with hepatobiliary disease.

OBESITY. Patients with obesity, particularly morbid obesity (body mass index [BMI] > 40 kg/m^2), are at risk for cardiovascular and respiratory complications perioperatively.[184] These patients are susceptible to critical respiratory events in the postoperative period, including hypoventilation, hypoxia, airway obstruction, and acute respiratory failure.[38,68] The presence of postoperative residual neuromuscular blockade may further increase the risk for postoperative complications in these patients by producing impairment of the integrity of the upper airway and upper airway collapse.[33,34] Therefore a rapid and complete reversal of neuromuscular blockade must be achieved before tracheal extubation is attempted. In this setting, sugammadex may have a more favorable recovery profile than traditional anticholinesterase drugs because it provides a more reliable recovery of neuromuscular functions and a less frequent risk of incomplete neuromuscular recovery.[184] A key issue is determining the appropriate dose of sugammadex to administer in a morbidly obese patient that is sufficient to capture remaining NMBD molecules. Whereas the dosing of NMBDs in obese patients should be based on lean/ideal body weight (because these drugs are hydrophilic and their volume of distribution is minimally affected by obesity), the dosing of sugammadex in obese patients is currently under debate. In order to ensure complete neuromuscular recovery, the dose of sugammadex must be sufficient to affect the gradient between the peripheral and central compartments and effectively encapsulate all rocuronium molecules. An inadequate dose of sugammadex may be incapable of sustaining this redistribution of rocuronium and lead to reoccurrence of the neuromuscular blockade.

The current product monograph recommends calculating the sugammadex dose based on the patient's actual body weight. However, because the low volume of distribution at steady state (estimated at 0.16 L/kg) restricts distribution to the intravascular space, it might be relevant to determine the dose of sugammadex based on the lean/ideal body weight and not on the actual body weight.[178] However, in a recently published pooled analysis (27 trials) on the use of sugammadex in patients with obesity (BMI > 30 kg/m^2), the authors concluded that the recommended dose on actual body weight provided rapid recovery from neuromuscular blockade in both obese and nonobese patients and that no dose adjustments should be undertaken in the obese patient.[185] Several studies have investigated the dosage of sugammadex based on lean or variations on the lean/ideal body weight.[186-189] In one investigation, a sugammadex dose of 4 mg/kg based on a lean/ideal body weight calculation was administered to morbidly obese patients during a profound rocuronium neuromuscular blockade.[188] Approximately 40% of these patients were inadequately reversed with a lean/ideal body weight–based dose of sugammadex. In these patients, an additional dose of sugammadex 2 mg/kg based on lean/ideal body weight was required to achieve a TOF ratio 0.90. The conclusion of the authors was that a sugammadex dose calculated according to lean/ideal body weight was insufficient for reversing both profound and moderate blockade in a considerable number of morbidly obese patients.[188]

In another study in morbidly obese patients, investigators examined reversal of a moderate level of a rocuronium neuromuscular blockade (at T1-T2) using a dose of sugammadex of 2.0 mg/kg.[187] Four different weight corrections were used: lean/ideal body weight, lean/ideal body weight +20%, lean/ideal body weight +40%, and actual body weight. This study demonstrated that a moderate rocuronium neuromuscular blockade could be effectively reversed with sugammadex 2.0 mg/kg using the calculation lean/ideal body weight + 40%.[187] In a more recent study, these findings were confirmed.[190] However, longer and larger interindividual variability of recovery times occur when dosing is based on lean/ideal body weight compared with dosing based on actual body weight.[187,188] Additionally, reoccurrence of neuromuscular blockade after suboptimal dosing of sugammadex has been reported in a morbidly obese patient.[189] Hence until more data are available, the dose of sugammadex should be based on the actual body weight.

CESAREAN SECTION AND PREGNANT PATIENTS. Induction of general anesthesia in late pregnancy and for patients undergoing cesarean section typically involves a rapid sequence induction of anesthesia with either thiopental or propofol and a rapid-onset NMBD. For decades, succinylcholine has been the prototypic NMBD used in these procedures to produce optimal endotracheal intubation conditions.[191] Rocuronium is an acceptable alternative to succinylcholine in rapid sequence induction of anesthesia procedures; rocuronium in doses larger than 1.0 mg/kg not only provides onset of action within 60 seconds, but also provides identical intubation conditions compared with succinylcholine.[192] However, the duration of action of rocuronium in dosages of 1.0 mg/kg or greater will result in a profound neuromuscular blockade of long duration (often more than 2 hours). Furthermore, the risk of failed intubation in the obstetric population is at least eight times higher compared with nonpregnant females.[193] In case of a failed endotracheal intubation scenario or a "cannot intubate, cannot ventilate" situation, rocuronium, even in dosages up to 1.2 mg/kg, can be immediately reversed with sugammadex 16 mg/kg.[156]

Preclinical animal data demonstrated that uteroplacental transfer of sugammadex is very small (<2% to 6%). Sugammadex does not have negative effects on pregnancy or on embryonic, fetal, or postnatal development.[191,194,195] Although no data are available about the excretion of sugammadex in human breast milk, excretion in breast milk is likely minimal, with insignificant clinical impact because oral absorption of cyclodextrins in general is small. Therefore sugammadex can be used in breastfeeding females. In two case series examining obstetric patients who received rocuronium and sugammadex (7 and 18 patients), no side effects were observed.[194,195] The efficacy and safety of sugammadex in obstetric anesthesia have not been determined; yet serious adverse events for the mother or the neonate have not been reported after sugammadex.

Neuromuscular Disorders. Neuromuscular disorders are frequently associated with an increased incidence of perioperative respiratory complications due to muscle weakness.[196,197] In these patient groups, administration of succinylcholine is often contraindicated and associated with potentially life-threatening side effects. The use of nondepolarizing NMBDs can on occasion be associated with prolonged spontaneous neuromuscular recovery, even after a single dose. Consequently, these patients have an increased risk for postoperative muscle weakness of multifactorial origin, one being residual neuromuscular blockade.[196,197] Prompt recovery of neuromuscular function is essential to optimize patient safety and reduce the risk of pulmonary complications. However, reversal with anticholinesterase (e.g., neostigmine), especially in neuromuscular disorders, can be associated with postoperative complications.[197]

Multiple case reports and case series describe the use of sugammadex in patients with various neuromuscular disorders such as myasthenia gravis, myotonic dystrophy, and spinal muscular atrophy (Fig. 28.21).[197-204] In general, dosing regimens for sugammadex were consistent with recommended doses adjusted to actual body weight and based on the level of neuromuscular blockade at the time of reversal. Sugammadex administration resulted in prompt reversal of neuromuscular blockade with a similar recovery profile as observed in normal patients. Although no studies have been performed in patients with neuromuscular disorders, the reported cases indicate that sugammadex should be considered as an alternative reversal drug (e.g., instead of neostigmine) in this patient population. These observations need to be confirmed in a larger series of patient studies.

Side Effects and Drug Interactions

Sugammadex is contraindicated in patients with known hypersensitivity to the drug. The potential for hypersensitivity is reported in several case reports. Hypersensitivity is a concern; however, this is difficult to study because hypersensitivity reactions occur rarely. In a recent retrospective analysis, the incidence of potential sugammadex-induced anaphylaxis at a single center over a period of 3 years was investigated. The overall incidence of intraoperative hypersensitivity was 0.22% (95% CI, 0.17%–0.29%), and the incidence of anaphylaxis was 0.059% (95% CI, 0.032%–0.10%). In total 15,479 patients were exposed to sugammadex in the study period and the incidence of anaphylaxis associated with sugammadex administration was 0.039% ($n = 6$; 95% CI, 0.014%–0.084%).[205] Prospective studies are needed to confirm the sugammadex anaphylaxis. Elevation of serum tryptase (positive predictive value of 93%, negative predictive value of 54%), skin testing (gold standard), and histamine levels in serum and urine are useful to confirm the diagnosis. Recently, a promising test, the basophil activation test, has been established to detect the causative compound of anaphylaxis with high specificity and sensitivity. However, more studies are needed to confirm this method to identify sugammadex-induced anaphylaxis.[206]

Other reported side effects include coughing, movement, parosmia (abnormal sense of smell), and elevated levels of *N*-acetyl-glucosaminidase in the urine.[183] Coughing and movement after the administration of sugammadex may have been due to the unmasking of inadequate anesthesia rather than a direct side effect of sugammadex. Initial studies showed a prolongation of activated partial thromboplastin and prothrombin time in healthy volunteers after sugammadex administration. However, in a more in-depth patient study that investigated the effect of sugammadex on postsurgical bleeding and coagulation variables, it was shown that sugammadex produced a limited, transient (<1 hour) increase in activated partial thromboplastin and

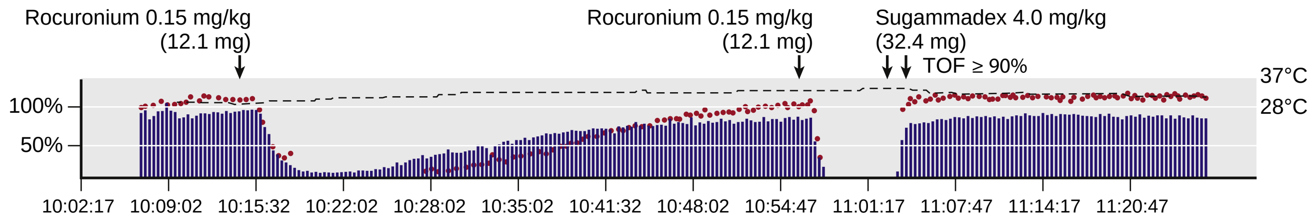


Fig. 28.21 Original tracing of sugammadex reversal in a patient with myasthenia gravis. The time to spontaneous recovery from the first profound rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade to a train-of-four *(TOF)* ratio was 36.5 minutes. The time from the start of the administration of sugammadex 4.0 mg/kg after the second dose of rocuronium to the recovery of the TOF ratio to 0.90 was 2.7 minutes. *Blue tracings* represent T1 recovery while *red dots* represent TOF ratio recovery. *Black dashed line* indicates hand skin temperature (degrees Celsius). (From de Boer HD, van Egmond J, Driessen JJ, et al. A new approach to anesthesia management in myasthenia gravis: reversal of neuromuscular blockade by sugammadex. *Rev Esp Anesthesiol Reanim*. 2010;57:81–84.)

prothrombin time but was not associated with increased risk of bleeding versus usual care.[207]

Cyclodextrins are a class of agents well known for their ability to form inclusion complexes with other compounds. Sugammadex forms a very tight complex with rocuronium or vecuronium in a 1:1 molecular ratio; however, because of its mechanism of action, it is possible that other relevant drug interactions may occur.[208] Theoretically, two important drug interactions can take place. First, sugammadex is capable of encapsulating endogenous or pharmaceutical molecules other than steroidal NMBDs, resulting in reduced efficacy of the encapsulated molecules. However, the ability to form complexes with steroidal or nonsteroidal molecules such as cortisone, atropine, and verapamil is clinically insignificant because the affinity for sugammadex is 120 to 700 times less than that of rocuronium.[208] In preclinical studies, an interaction of sugammadex with other steroidal compounds could be excluded up to a dose of sugammadex of 500 mg/kg/day.[209] Second, if the affinity of sugammadex for another molecule is very high, this molecule may displace rocuronium or vecuronium from the complex with sugammadex, resulting in reoccurrence of neuromuscular blockade. Both drug interactions may have potential clinical safety implications.[208] A modeling approach has been developed to evaluate 300 compounds (including the most commonly used drugs in the perioperative period) for possible displacement interactions with sugammadex.[208] In this screening, three compounds were identified as having possible displacement interactions: toremifene, fusidic acid, and flucloxacillin.[208] However, no clinically relevant reoccurrence of neuromuscular blockade was identified when sugammadex was used in combination with these drugs.[208] A clinical study reported that flucloxacillin did not cause reoccurrence of neuromuscular blockade after reversal with sugammadex; no clinically important displacement interaction was observed.[210]

Special Considerations

Reintubation of the Trachea After Initial Reversal of Neuromuscular Blockade With Sugammadex. Patients receiving sugammadex before extubation of the trachea who need reintubation require special consideration because the remaining circulating sugammadex molecules may potentially interfere with readministration of rocuronium or vecuronium. In this setting, two alternate strategies can reestablish a neuromuscular blockade. Within 24 hours of sugammadex administration, it is currently recommended that a nonsteroidal NMBD be used instead of rocuronium or vecuronium. This conservative approach is based on the maximum clearance time for sugammadex. However, preclinical and clinical studies have shown that it is possible to safely reestablish neuromuscular blockade with rocuronium earlier than 24 hours.[211] A modeling-based study in healthy volunteers revealed that high-dose rocuronium given 5 to 60 minutes after sugammadex reversal produced a complete neuromuscular blockade (T1 = 0%).[212] Rocuronium (1.2 mg/kg) administrated 5 minutes after sugammadex reversal produced a rapid onset of neuromuscular blockade (T1 = 0%), with a mean onset time of approximately 3 minutes. Thirty minutes after administration of sugammadex, an onset time of 1.5 minutes can be achieved with rocuronium (1.2 mg/kg). Hence an inverse relationship exists between the onset time and the time interval between sugammadex and the repeat dose of rocuronium, and a direct relationship exists between the duration of neuromuscular blockade and the time interval between sugammadex and the repeat dose of rocuronium.

Based on dose calculations using a model in which the equilibrium is described in the common volume of distribution of rocuronium and sugammadex, even a second reversal is possible using sugammadex with large doses between 8 and 20 mg/kg.[211]

Incomplete Reversal of Neuromuscular Blockade. Although sugammadex encapsulates rocuronium and vecuronium to form a rigid complex, case reports have described incomplete reversal of neuromuscular blockade.[151,213] In a dose-finding study, a case was described in which a temporary decrease in the TOF response was observed in a healthy patient after reversal with 0.5 mg/kg sugammadex.[213] The TOF ratio initially reached 0.70 before decreasing to 0.30 and then gradually increasing to 0.90 (Fig. 28.22). The authors hypothesized that the decrease in TOF ratio occurred because of redistribution of unbound rocuronium from the peripheral compartments, with insufficient sugammadex available for additional encapsulation of rocuronium. Similarly, incomplete reversal was reported in two healthy patients given suboptimal doses of sugammadex (0.5 mg/kg) during profound rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade.[151] In a study by Duvaldestin and associates, reversal of deep neuromuscular blockade with a low dose of sugammadex (0.5 and 1.0 mg/kg) found that five patients experienced recurrence of neuromuscular blockade.[163] In another study, both speed of reversal and effectiveness of sugammadex are dose-dependent; a single dose of 1.0 mg/kg of sugammadex (n = 15) administered at a deep neuromuscular blockade (PTC = 1) required

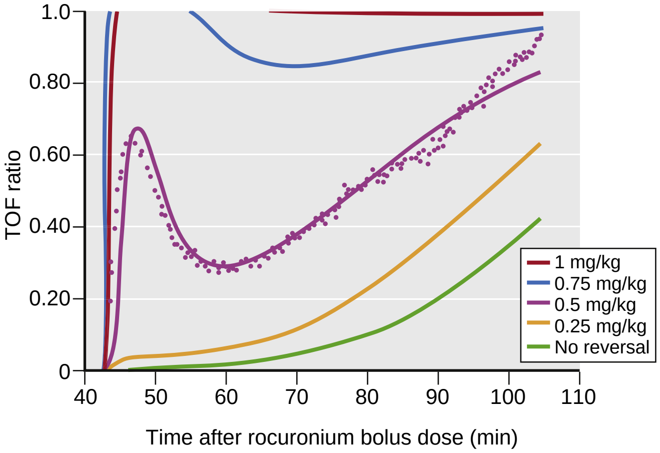


Fig. 28.22 The train-of-four data *(dots)* and the results of simulations *(solid lines)* of various sugammadex dosing amounts. Muscle relaxation rebound only occurs for sugammadex doses in a limited range. The simulations indicate that for this patient, doses larger than about 1 mg/kg are sufficient to achieve rapid muscle relaxation reversal and avoid muscle relaxation rebound. *TOF,* train-of-four. (From Eleveld DJ, Kuizenga K, Proost JH, et al. A temporary decrease in twitch response during reversal of rocuronium-induced muscle relaxation with a small dose of sugammadex. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:582–584.)

significantly longer time for reversal than a dose of 4.0 mg/kg ($n = 60$).[214] Interestingly, seven patients also exhibited residual ($n = 3$) and recurrence ($n = 4$) of neuromuscular blockade in the group of patients that received 1.0 mg/kg sugammadex. No patients who received the recommended dose of 4.0 mg/kg sugammadex had residual of recurarization of neuromuscular blockade. A similar pattern was observed with vecuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade. A longer reversal time and a higher incidence of residual and/or recurrence of neuromuscular blockade were noted in patients who received smaller (0.5 and 1.0 mg/kg) doses of sugammadex.[215] Therefore it is recommended that the dose be adjusted to the depth of neuromuscular blockade as underdosing of sugammadex is associated with an increased risk of residual neuromuscular blockade or recurrence of neuromuscular blockade.

Female Patients. Sugammadex may interact with hormonal contraceptive drugs. Possible capturing interactions, whereby unwanted encapsulation of a third drug by sugammadex reduces its clinical efficacy, have been investigated. In pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic simulations, it was predicted that 34% of (free) etonogestrel might be captured by 4 mg/kg sugammadex under very conservative modeling assumption conditions.[209] The interaction with this bolus dose of sugammadex resulted in a decrease in etonogestrel exposure, which was similar to the decrease seen after one missed daily dose of an oral contraceptive. Patients using hormonal contraceptives should be informed about the possible reduced effectiveness of hormonal contraceptive drugs after the administration of sugammadex. The use of an additional nonhormonal contraceptive method for the next 7 days should be considered in this patient population.

Electroconvulsive Therapy. Electroconvulsive therapy is the transcutaneous application of small electrical stimuli to the brain for treatment of selected psychiatric disorders like major depression. The tonic-clonic convulsions associated with electroconvulsive therapy can result in injuries such as limb fractures and compression fractures of vertebral bodies. The introduction of anesthesia, especially neuromuscular blockade, can mitigate tonic-clonic motor activity and reduce the physiologic trauma associated with uncontrolled tetanic muscle contractions.[216] Succinylcholine is commonly used as a NMBD in these patients, and its use is associated with well-known unwanted side effects.[216] Rocuronium has similar efficacy as succinylcholine in electroconvulsive therapy, making it an appropriate alternative to succinylcholine.[217] However, the increased doses of rocuronium required to decrease the onset time are associated with a prolonged duration of neuromuscular blockade. Several reports have evaluated the use of sugammadex in electroconvulsive therapy. These investigations demonstrated that sugammadex produced a complete and rapid reversal of neuromuscular blockade induced by rocuronium, without signs of residual blockade or other safety concerns.[217-220] Therefore the combination of rocuronium and sugammadex may be an alternative to succinylcholine for electroconvulsive therapy. However, the required dose of sugammadex in this clinical situation is not well established.

Historically, an important strategy in anesthesia has been to ensure that neuromuscular blockade is sufficiently recovered to achieve adequate antagonism by neostigmine. Having an intense neuromuscular blockade at the end of surgery would more likely result in residual blockade. With the availability of sugammadex, a profound, or deep, neuromuscular blockade has been recommended for the entire duration of laparoscopy. A profound neuromuscular blockade increases surgical space with smaller pressures for the pneumoperitoneum.[221] It is even possible that reducing insufflation pressures may improve patient outcomes.[221] Furthermore, Staehr-Rye and associates[222] have postulated that a deep or profound neuromuscular blockade is associated with more optimal surgical conditions, which leads to less postoperative pain and nausea and vomiting. A recent review and metaanalysis has shown that deep neuromuscular blockade during laparoscopic surgical procedures allows lower insufflation pressure, thereby improving surgical conditions and reducing postoperative pain.[223] Sugammadex, at doses of 2 to 8 mg/kg, was given to reverse the blockade when the TOF ratio was less than 0.90.

A recently published report describes the clinical experience in Japan.[224] Notably, although neuromuscular blockade was not routinely monitored intraoperatively, the TOF ratio was determined after tracheal extubation. A total of 249 patients were studied in three separate groups. Patients with spontaneous recovery ($n = 23$) were compared with patients being reversed with either neostigmine ($n = 109$) or sugammadex 2.7 mg/kg ($n = 117$). Although the sugammadex group had the least frequent incidence of residual neuromuscular blockade, all three groups had a surprisingly frequent incidence of residual neuromuscular blockade.[224]

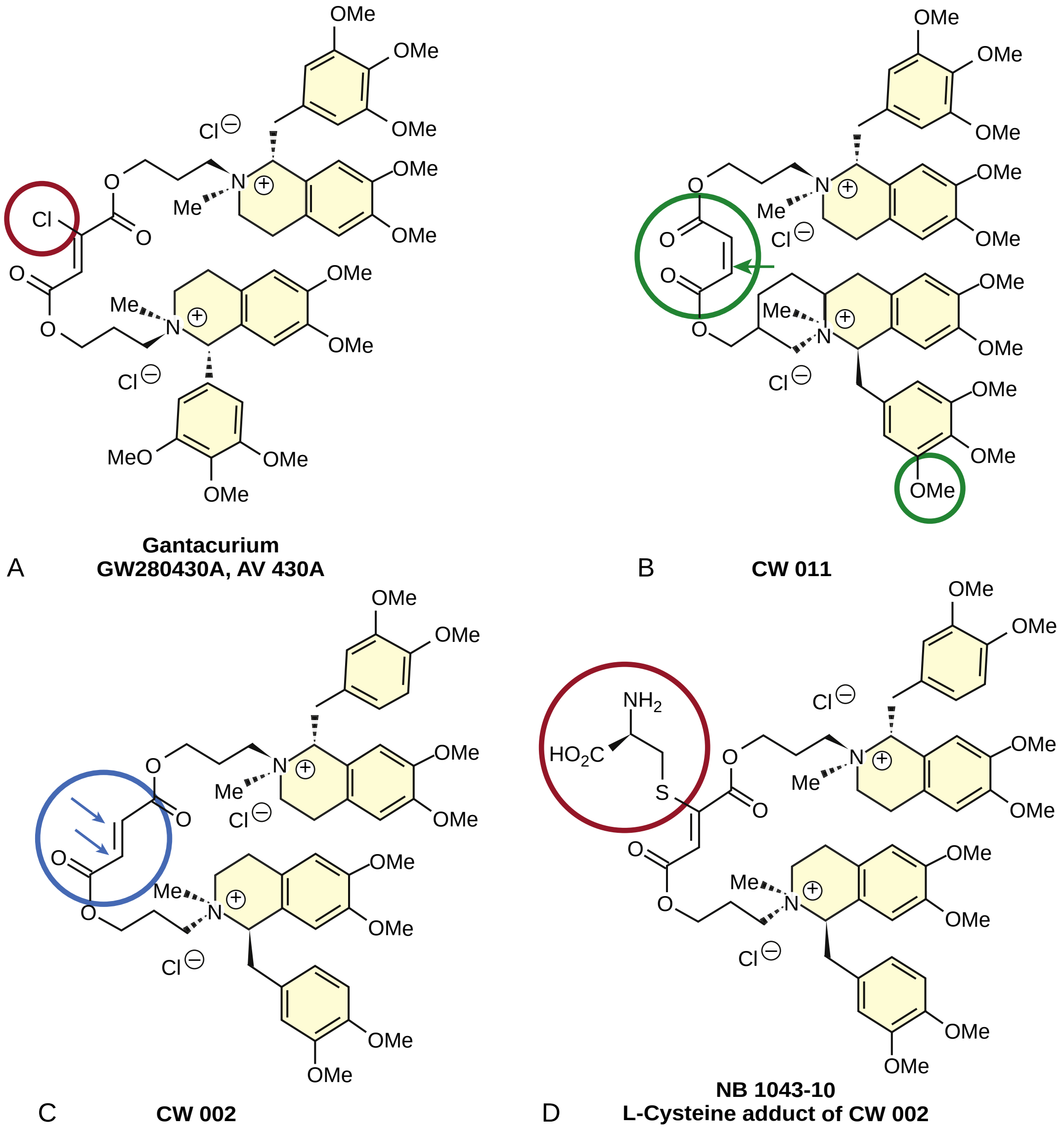
A scholarly editorial written by Naguib and associates[225] placed prime emphasis on the dose of sugammadex used for reversal in combination with the lack of neuromuscular monitoring. Although proper monitoring is strongly advisable, an adequate dose of sugammadex is under current debate. Although the reversal effect of neostigmine is not improved by increasing the dose above the recommended dose interval, there are strong reasons to believe that sugammadex in doses larger than 2.7 mg/kg would be more effective for reversal. Others argue that a dose of sugammadex larger than 2.0 mg/kg would not be necessary if proper monitoring were used. Of course, another possibility exists. It would seem that a larger dose of sugammadex plus neuromuscular monitoring would be ideal.

In conclusion, sugammadex provides a novel concept in reversal of neuromuscular blockade. Although the expense of sugammadex continues to be an important factor that may limit its use, many institutions currently use sugammadex for routine reversal of neuromuscular blockade. We speculate whether, in the future, larger doses of sugammadex will likely be used and whether routine neuromuscular monitoring will finally be mandatory in anesthetic practice among countries worldwide.

CYSTEINE REVERSAL OF FUMARATE NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKING DRUGS

A new class of nondepolarizing NMBDs called fumarates has been recently developed. These NMBDs are olefinic (double-bonded) isoquinolinium diester compounds that differ from symmetric benzylisoquinolines such as mivacurium in their unique method of inactivation. The developed drugs (gantacurium [GW280430A, AV430A], CW002, and CW011) bind to L-cysteine to form less active degradation products (Fig. 28.23). The administration of L-cysteine can rapidly inactivate fumarate compounds and reverse neuromuscular blockade.

Gantacurium is an asymmetric α-chlorofumarate that was developed to be a replacement for succinylcholine.[226] Gantacurium has a rapid onset and short duration of effect. The brief duration of gantacurium is primarily due to rapid reaction and subsequent inactivation of the drug with free cysteine in the plasma. The process of adduction of cysteine to gantacurium occurs at the central fumarate double bond. The adduction changes the stereochemistry of gantacurium so that it can no longer bind to the nAChR at the neuromuscular junction. Degradation also occurs through a slower secondary route (pH-sensitive ester hydrolysis) that yields two products without neuromuscular blocking properties.[226,227] CW 002 (a symmetrical fumarate) and CW 011 (an asymmetric maleate) are investigational NMBDs with no halogen (chlorine) substitution at the central double-bonded carbons. The absence of chlorine results in a slower adduction with cysteine; the inactivation of CW 002 and CW 011 is slower than gantacurium, resulting in a duration of action consistent with an intermediate-acting NMBD.



A Gantacurium GW280430A, AV 430A

B CW 011

C CW 002

D NB 1043-10 L-Cysteine adduct of CW 002

Fig. 28.23 The chemical formulas of gantacurium (A), CW 011 (B), and CW 002 (C). Chemical features are as follows. Chlorine substitution *(red circle)* on the olefinic double bond of gantacurium, a chlorofumarate, is designed to accelerate the L-cysteine adduction reaction. The fumarate CW 002 is symmetrical with no halogen (chlorine) substitutions and undergoes L-cysteine adduction more slowly than gantacurium, at either olefinic carbon *(blue arrows)*, enabled by the adjacent α-carboxyl (ester) groups. The maleate CW 011 is asymmetric in that one isoquinolinium group contains an extra methoxy substitution *(green circle)*. This may reduce access of L-cysteine to the olefin *(green arrow)* and may decrease the rate of the adduction reaction. The chemical formula of NB 1043-10, the L-cysteine adduct of CW 002, is also shown (D). The L-cysteine adduction is highlighted by the *red circle.* (From Savarese JJ, McGilvra JD, Sunaga H, et al. Rapid chemical antagonism of neuromuscular blockade by l-cysteine adduction to and inactivation of the olefinic (double-bonded) isoquinolinium diester compounds gantacurium (AV430A), CW 002, and CW 011. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:58–73.)

Cysteine is a nonessential endogenous amino acid derived from one molecule of serine and one molecule of methionine. It is composed of L- and D-enantiomers. L-Cysteine is a normal building block of protein and is a conditionally essential amino acid in infants.[228] Several therapeutic applications of cysteine in medicine are common. It is often added to total parenteral nutrition solutions for pediatric patients in doses of approximately 80 mg/kg/day. An acetylated derivative of cysteine (*N*-acetyl L-cysteine) is approved for use in the treatment of acute acetaminophen toxicity. In the doses used clinically for these applications, there does not appear to be obvious toxicity. L-Cysteine has also been studied for reversal of the neuromuscular blockade for fumarate NMBDs. Several laboratory investigations have attempted to define the L-cysteine dose necessary to effectively reverse gantacurium, CW 002, and CW 011 neuromuscular blockade.

The first of the fumarate NMBDs studied was gantacurium. In monkeys, the total duration of action was one half to one third that of mivacurium at equipotent doses; at three times the ED$_{95}$ doses, the time until 95% twitch recovery was 8.5 ± 0.5 minutes versus 22.0 ± 2.6 minutes, respectively.[227] The administration of edrophonium 0.5 mg/kg accelerated the recovery of blockade. In a human volunteer trial, the time from administration of 0.40 mg/kg of gantacurium (2 × ED$_{95}$) until a TOF ratio 0.90 or greater was achieved was studied during spontaneous recovery or reversal with edrophonium 0.5 mg/kg.[229] Mean recovery time was significantly more rapid in the reversal group (3.8 minutes) compared with the spontaneous recovery group (14.3 minutes). The reversal of gantacurium with cysteine was investigated in monkeys.[228] A bolus of L-cysteine (10 mg/kg) given 1 minute after gantacurium reduced duration from 10.4 ± 3.1 minutes (spontaneous recovery) to 3.0 ± 1.0 minutes ($P < .001$). Antagonism of gantacurium was significantly faster at 1 minute with L-cysteine than edrophonium. These studies suggest that although gantacurium is a short-acting NMBD, recovery can be further enhanced by the administration of L-cysteine.

In contrast to gantacurium, CW 002 and CW 011 have a duration of action between a short-acting and intermediate-acting NMBD. In monkeys given four to five times the ED$_{95}$ of CW 002 and CW 011, the duration of blockade was three times longer than gantacurium (28.1 and 33.3 minutes vs. 10.4 minutes), but only half the duration of cisatracurium.[228] The administration of neostigmine 1 minute after CW 002 did not accelerate neuromuscular recovery. Immediate reversal of CW 002 with cysteine (50 mg/kg), however, was highly effective in antagonizing neuromuscular blockade (95% of baseline twitch height within 2.2 ± 0.3 minutes and to a TOF ratio of 100% 1–2 minutes later) (Fig. 28.24).[228] Similar findings were observed with CW 011 using this model. Larger doses of L-cysteine were needed to optimally reverse CW 002 and CW 011 (50 mg/kg) compared with gantacurium (10 mg/kg); this is likely related to the slower rate of adduction of L-cysteine to these compounds, as well as the greater potency of CW 002 and CW 011. L-Cysteine reversal of CW 002 has also been investigated in a dog model given a dose of 9 × ED$_{95}$.[230] L-Cysteine (50 mg/kg) reduced the median duration of blockade from 70 minutes (spontaneous recovery) to less than 5 minutes. Doses of up to 200 mg/kg produced minimal hemodynamic changes and resulted in no anatomic, biochemical, or histologic evidence of organ toxicity.

In summary, fumarates are a new class of NMBDs that are inactivated primarily via adduction of cysteine to the double

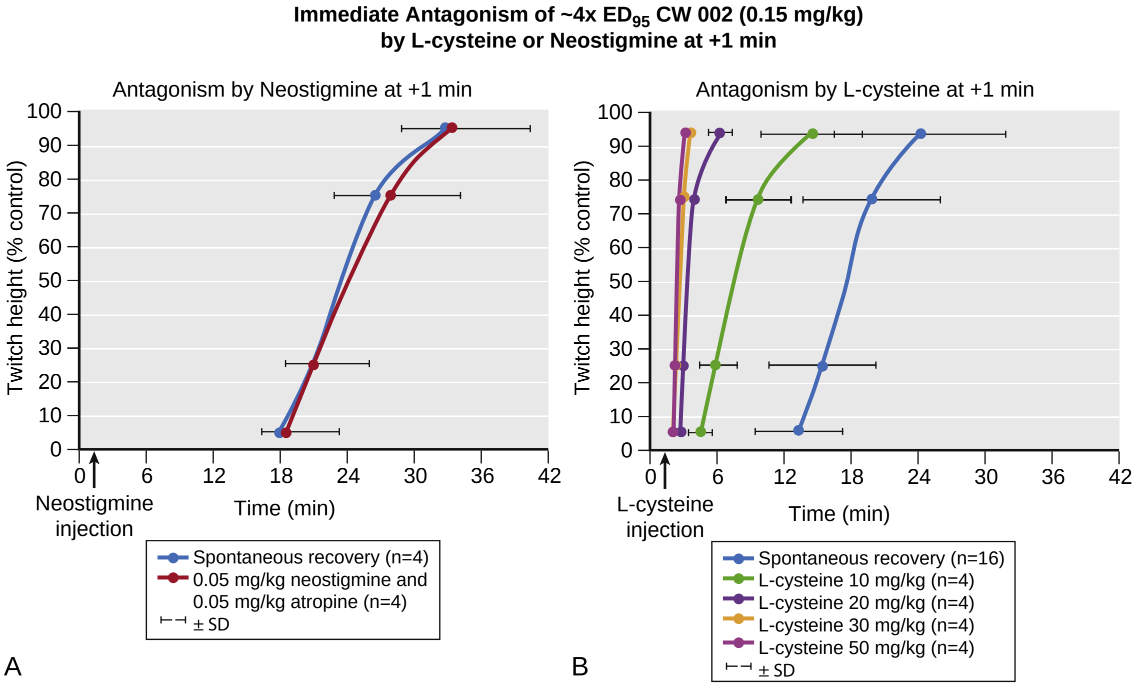


Fig. 28.24 Immediate antagonism of CW 002 blockade 1 minute after CW 002 dosage of 0.15 mg/kg, or ≈4 × ED$_{95}$, injected at $t = 0$. Neostigmine (0.05 mg/kg + atropine 0.05 mg/kg) or L-cysteine (10, 20, 30, or 50 mg/kg) was given at +1 min. Neostigmine did not shorten recovery (A), whereas L-cysteine produced a dose-related acceleration of recovery (B), peaking at 50 mg/kg. Data were taken from anesthetized rhesus monkeys. (From Savarese JJ, McGilvra JD, Sunaga H, et al. Rapid chemical antagonism of neuromuscular blockade by l-cysteine adduction to and inactivation of the olefinic (double-bonded) isoquinolinium diester compounds gantacurium (AV430A), CW 002, and CW 011. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:58–73.)

bond of the compounds, resulting in breakdown products that do not bind to the neuromuscular junction. Initial laboratory studies have shown that the administration of exogenous L-cysteine results in complete reversal of deep neuromuscular blockade within 2 to 3 minutes. These studies suggest that chemical antagonism of fumarate NMBDs will allow clinicians to rapidly and completely antagonize neuromuscular blockade, even when large doses of an NMBD have been recently administered. Early clinical trials in human volunteers have examined the pharmacology of gantacurium, and investigations of CW 002 in volunteers are currently ongoing. The optimal dose of L-cysteine is 50 mg/kg in an animal model. The dosing of L-cysteine needed to reverse the effects of gantacurium, CW 002, and CW 011 in humans has not been established. Additional investigations are also needed to determine whether large doses of cysteine produce adverse effects in humans. If future studies are consistent with these early findings, fumarate NMBDs may allow clinicians to maintain profound neuromuscular blockade throughout the surgical procedure with little risk of postoperative residual paralysis.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Gray TC, et al. JA. *Proc R Soc Med*. 1946;39:400.
2. Cowan SL. *J Physiol*. 1938;15:215.
3. Bennett AE. *JAMA*. 1940;114:322.
4. Griffith HR, Johnson GE. *Anesthesiology*. 1942;3:418.
5. Adams RC. *Surg Clin North Am*. 1945;25:735.
6. Gray TC, Wilson F. *Anesthesiology*. 1959;20:519.
7. Churchill-Davidson HC. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:132.
8. Fuchs-Buder T, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2003;52:522.
9. Duvaldestin P, et al. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2008;27:483.
10. Osmer C, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1996;13:389.
11. Naguib M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:110.
12. Cullen SC. *Anesthesiology*. 1944;5:166.
13. Grayling M, Sweeney BP. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:806.
14. Pavlin EG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:381.
15. Eikermann M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1333.
16. Pedersen T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:835.
17. Cammu G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:426.
18. Hayes AH, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:312.
19. Viby-Mogensen J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:440.
20. Brull SJ, Silverman DG. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:352.
21. Capron F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1578.
22. Dupuis JY, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:397.
23. Brull SJ, Silverman DG. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:627.
24. Mortensen CR, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:797.
25. Gätke MR, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46:207.
26. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:389.
27. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:946.
28. Ali HH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1970;42:967.
29. Ali HH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1971;43:473.
30. Ali HH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1971;43:478.
31. Ali HH, Kitz RJ. *Anesth Analg*. 1973;52:740.
32. Ali HH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47:570.
33. Sundman E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:977.
34. Eriksson LI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1035.
35. Eikermann M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1333.
36. Eriksson LI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:693.
37. Kopman AF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:765.
38. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:130.
39. Butterly A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:304.
40. Murphy GS, Brull SJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:120.
41. Viby-Mogensen J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:539.
42. Beemer GH, Rozental P. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1986;14:41.
43. Howardy-Hansen P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1989;33:167.
44. Naguib M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:302.
45. Andersen BN, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32:79.
46. Bevan DR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:272.
47. Debaene B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1042.
48. Hayes AH, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:312.
49. Yu B, Ouyang B, Ge S. *Curr Med Res Opin*. 2016;32:1.
50. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1840.
51. Cedborg AI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:312–325.
52. Eikermann M, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2007;175:9.
53. Herbstreit F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1253.
54. Eriksson LI. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:520.
55. Eriksson LI. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:243.
56. Isono S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:980.
57. Heier T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:825.
58. Beecher HK, Todd DP. *Ann Surg*. 1954;140:2.
59. Harrison GG. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50:1041.
60. Cooper AL, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44:953.
61. Rose DK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:410.
62. Cooper AL, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44:953.
63. Barnes PJ, Havill JH. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1980;8:404.
64. Sprung J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:259.
65. Arbous MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:257.
66. Bulka CM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:647.
67. Bronsert MR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1476.
68. Bissinger U, et al. *Physiol Res*. 2000;49:455.
69. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:193.
70. Sauer M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28:842.
71. Berg H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41:1095.
72. Norton M, et al. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 2013;60:190.
73. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1301.
74. Errando CL, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2016;82:1267.
75. Xará D, et al. *Arch Bronconeumol*. 2015;51:69.
76. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1301.
77. Naguib M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:202.
78. Caldwell JE. *J Crit Care*. 2009;24:21.
79. Bevan DR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:785.
80. Cronnelly R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:261.
81. Morris RB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:399.
82. Cronnelly R, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1980;28:78.
83. Cronnelly R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51:222.
84. Morris RB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:1311.
85. Matteo RS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:334.
86. Heier T, Caldwell JE. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1070.
87. Heier T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:90.
88. Ferguson A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:390.
89. Jones RM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56:453.
90. Rupp SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:711.
91. Donati F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:471.
92. Smith CE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:37.
93. Kirkegaard-Nielsen H, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:932.
94. Engbaek J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:803.
95. Magorian TT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:410.
96. Kirkegaard H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:45.
97. Kim KS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1080.
98. Hunter JM. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(Suppl 1):i53.
99. Kopman AF. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:572.
100. Baurain MJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;77:496.
101. Fisher DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:220.
102. Meistelman C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:97.
103. Bevan JC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:333.
104. Young WL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:775.
105. Reid JE, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48:351.
106. Jellish WS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1250.
107. Miller RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;42:377.
108. Miller RD, Roderick LL. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50:317.
109. Fuchs-Buder T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:34.
110. Caldwell JE. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:1168.
111. Murphy G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:27.
112. Ostergaard D, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:1016.
113. Naguib M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1288.
114. Levano S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:531.
115. Scholler KL, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1977;24:396.
116. Naguib M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:694.
117. Østergaard D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1124.
118. Bartkowski RR. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:594.
119. Goldhill DR, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44:293.

120. Astley BA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:983.
121. Eikermann M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:344.
122. Eikermann M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:621.
123. Herbstreit F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:1280.
124. Brock-Utne JG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1978;57:171.
125. Cheng CR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1349.
126. Green SM, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2010;17:157.
127. Salmenperä M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36:445.
128. Tramèr MR, Fuchs-Buder T. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:379.
129. Urquhart ML, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:561.
130. Azar I, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:139.
131. Ostheimer GW. *Anesth Analg*. 1977;56:182.
132. Naguib M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:650.
133. Parlow JL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:155.
134. van Vlymen JM, Parlow JL. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:148.
135. Sun KO. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21:457.
136. Pratt CI. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43:248.
137. Shibata O, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:1211.
138. Radulovic M, et al. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2004;41:53.
139. Miller RD. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:477.
140. Booij LHDJ, et al. *Semin Anesth Perioperat Med Pain*. 2002;21:92.
141. Bom A, et al. *Angew Chem*. 2002;41:266.
142. Adam JM, et al. *J Med Chem*. 2002;45:1806.
143. Baker MT, Naguib M. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:860.
144. Epemolu O, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:632.
145. Caldwell JE, Miller RD. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(Suppl 1):66.
146. Gijsenbergh F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:695.
147. Sparr HJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:935.
148. Cammu G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:382.
149. Sorgenfrei IF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:667.
150. Suy K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:283.
151. Groudine SB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:555.
152. de Boer HD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:239.
153. Lemmens HJ, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2010;10:15.
154. Mosing M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:480.
155. Shields M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:36.
156. Lee C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1020.
157. Sørensen MK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:682.
158. Sacan O, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:569.
159. Blobner M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:874.
160. Jones RK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:816.
161. Flockton EA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:622.
162. Vanacker BF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:563.
163. Duvaldestin P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:74.
164. Plaud B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:284.
165. Buchanan CC, O'Donnell AM. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:1077.
166. Nishi M, et al. *Masui*. 2011;60:1189.
167. Liu G, et al. *Sci Rep*. 2017;7(1):5724.
168. McDonagh DL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:318.
169. Suzuki T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:823.
170. Yoshida F, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56:83.
171. Carron M, et al. *Clin Interv Aging*. 2018;13:13.
172. Dahl V, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26:874.
173. de Kam PJ, et al. *Clin Drug Investig*. 2010;30:599.
174. Riley RH, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2010;38:1138.
175. Craig RG, Hunter JM. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(Suppl 1):55.
176. Amao R, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24:289.
177. Porter MV, Paleologos MS. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2011;39:299.
178. Staals LM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:492.
179. Panhuizen IF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114(5):777.
180. Min KC, et al. *Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2017;55(9):746.
181. Carlos RV, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33:383.
182. Ono Y, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol.* 34(e-suppl 55):397
183. Craig RG, Hunter JM. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(Suppl 1):55.
184. Ogunnaike BO, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1793.
185. Monk TG, et al. *Am J Ther*. 2017;24(5):e507–e516.
186. Gaszynski T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:236.
187. Van Lancker P, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:721.
188. Llauradó S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:93.
189. Le Corre F, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58:944.
190. Duarte NMDC, et al. *Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2018;68(3):219.
191. Sharp LM, Levy DM. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:357.
192. Abrishami A, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;(4):CD007362.
193. Dahl V, Spreng UJ. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:352.
194. Pühringer FK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:657.
195. Williamson RM, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:694.
196. Blichfeldt-Lauridsen L, Hansen BD. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56:17.
197. Baraka AS, Jalbout MI. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2002;15:371.
198. Steward PA, et al. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 2012.
199. Vilela H, et al. *J Anesth*. 2012;26:306.
200. Unterbuchner C, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:302.
201. de Boer HD, et al. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 2010;57:181.
202. Mavridou P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 2011;62:101.
203. de Boer HD, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2014;31(12):715.
204. Vymazal T, et al. *Ther Clin Risk Manag*. 2015;11:1593.
205. Miyazaki Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(5):1505.
206. Horiuchi T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(5):1509.
207. Rahe-Meyer N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(5):969.
208. Zwiers A, et al. *Clin Drug Investig*. 2011;31:101.
209. US Food and Drug Administration. *Sugammadex, NDA 22-225, Anesthetic and Life Support Drugs Advisory Committee March*. ;11 ; 2008. http://wwwfdagov/ohrms/dockets/ac/08/slides/2008-4346s1-01-Schering-Plough-corebackuppdf>2008.
210. Kam PJ, et al. *Clin Drug Investig*. 2012;32:203.
211. de Boer HD, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2008;55:124.
212. Cammu G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:487.
213. Eleveld DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;j104:582.
214. Drobnik L, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:866.
215. Asztalos L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:441.
216. Mirzakhani H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56:3.
217. Turkkal DC, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2008;20:589.
218. Hoshi H, et al. *J Anesth*. 2011;25:286.
219. Kadoi Y, et al. *J Anesth*. 2011;25:855.
220. Batistaki C, et al. *J ECT*. 2011;27:e47.
221. Lindekaer AL, et al. *J Vis Exp*. 2013;76:1.
222. Staehr-Rye AK, et al. *Dan Med J*. 2013;60:A4579.
223. Bruintjes MH, et al. *BJA*. 2017;118(6):834.
224. Kotake Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:345.
225. Naguib M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:297.
226. Lien CA. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(Suppl 1):i60.
227. Savarese JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:835.
228. Savarese JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:58.
229. Belmont MR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:768.
230. Sunaga H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:900.

References

1. Gray TC, Halton JA. A milestone in anaesthesia? (d-tubocurarine chloride). *Proc R Soc Med*. 1946;39:400.
2. Cowan SL. The action of eserine-like and curare-like substances on the responses of frog's nerve-muscle preparations to repetitive stimulation. *J Physiol*. 1938;15:215.
3. Bennett AE. Preventing traumatic complications in convulsive shock therapy by curare. *JAMA*. 1940;114:322.
4. Griffith HR, Johnson GE. The use of curare in general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1942;3:418.
5. Adams RC. Curare as aid to relaxation in anesthesia. *Surg Clin North Am*. 1945;25:735.
6. Gray TC, Wilson F. The development and use of muscle relaxants in the United Kingdom. *Anesthesiology*. 1959;20:519.
7. Churchill-Davidson HC. The d-tubocurarine dilemma. *Anesthesiology*. 1959;20:519.
8. Fuchs-Buder T, Hofmockel R, Geldner G, et al. The use of neuromuscular monitoring in Germany. *Anaesthesist*. 2003;52:522.
9. Duvaldestin P, Cunin P, Plaud B, Maison P. French survey of neuromuscular relaxant use in anaesthetic practice in adults. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2008;27:483.
10. Osmer C, Vogele C, Zickmann B, Hempelmann G. Comparative use of muscle relaxants and their reversal in three European countries. a survey in France, Germany and Great Britain. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1996;13:389.
11. Naguib M, Kopman AF, Lien CA, et al. A survey of current management of neuromuscular block in the United States and Europe. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:110.
12. Cullen SC. Clinical and laboratory observations on the use of curare during inhalational anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1944;5:166.
13. Grayling M, Sweeney BP. Recovery from neuromuscular blockade. A survey of practice. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:806.
14. Pavlin EG, Holle RH, Schoene RB. Recovery of airway protection compared with ventilation in humans after paralysis with curare. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:381.
15. Eikermann M, Groeben H, Husing J, Peters J. Accelerometry of adductor pollicis muscle predicts recovery of respiratory function from neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1333.
16. Pedersen T, Viby-Mogensen J, Bang U, et al. Does perioperative tactile evaluation of the train-of-four response influence the frequency of postoperative residual neuromuscular blockade? *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:835.
17. Cammu G, De Witte J, De Veylder J, et al. Postoperative residual paralysis in outpatients versus inpatients. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:426.
18. Hayes AH, Mirakhur RK, Breslin DS, et al. Postoperative residual block after intermediate-acting neuromuscular blocking drugs. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:312.
19. Viby-Mogensen J, Jensen NH, Engbaek J, et al. Tactile and visual evaluation of the response to train-of-four nerve stimulation. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:440.
20. Brull SJ, Silverman DG. Visual and tactile assessment of neuromuscular fade. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:352.
21. Capron F, Fortier LP, Racine S, Donati F. Tactile fade detection with hand or wrist stimulation using train-of-four, double-burst stimulation, 50-hertz tetanus, 100-hertz tetanus, and acceleromyography. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1578.
22. Dupuis JY, Martin R, Tessonnier JM, Tetrault JP. Clinical assessment of the muscular response to tetanic nerve stimulation. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:397.
23. Brull SJ, Silverman DG. Visual assessment of train-of-four and double burst-induced fade at submaximal stimulating currents. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:627.
24. Mortensen CR, Berg H, el-Mahdy A, Viby-Mogensen J. Perioperative monitoring of neuromuscular transmission using acceleromyography prevents residual neuromuscular block following pancuronium. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:797.
25. Gätke MR, Viby-Mogensen J, Rosenstock C, et al. Postoperative muscle paralysis after rocuronium. less residual block when acceleromyography is used. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46:207.
26. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Marymont JH, et al. Intraoperative acceleromyographic monitoring reduces the risk of residual neuromuscular blockade and adverse respiratory events in the postanesthesia care unit. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:389.
27. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Avram MJ, et al. Intraoperative acceleromyography monitoring reduces symptoms of muscle weakness and improves quality of recovery in the early postoperative period. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:946.
28. Ali HH, Utting JE, Gray C. Stimulus frequency in the detection of neuromuscular block in humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 1970;42:967.
29. Ali HH, Utting JE, Gray TC. Quantitative assessment of residual antidepolarizing block. I. *Br J Anaesth*. 1971;43:473.
30. Ali HH, Utting JE, Gray TC. Quantitative assessment of residual antidepolarizing block. II. *Br J Anaesth*. 1971;43:478.
31. Ali HH, Kitz RJ. Evaluation of recovery from nondepolarizing neuromuscular block, using a digital neuromuscular transmission analyzer. preliminary report. *Anesth Analg*. 1973;52:740.
32. Ali HH, Wilson RS, Savarese JJ, Kitz RJ. The effect of tubocurarine on indirectly elicited train-of-four muscle response and respiratory measurements in humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47:570.
33. Sundman E, Witt H, Olsson R, et al. The incidence and mechanisms of pharyngeal and upper esophageal dysfunction in partially paralyzed humans. Pharyngeal videoradiography and simultaneous manometry after atracurium. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:977.
34. Eriksson LI, Sundman E, Olsson R, et al. Functional assessment of the pharynx at rest and during swallowing in partially paralyzed humans. simultaneous videomanometry and mechanomyography of awake human volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1035.
35. Eikermann M, Groeben H, Husing J, Peters J. Accelerometry of adductor pollicis muscle predicts recovery of respiratory function from neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1333–1337.
36. Eriksson LI, Sato M, Severinghaus JW. Effect of a vecuronium-induced partial neuromuscular block on hypoxic ventilatory response. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:693–699.
37. Kopman AF, Yee PS, Neuman GG. Relationship of the train-of-four fade ratio to clinical signs and symptoms of residual paralysis in awake volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:765–771.
38. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Marymont JH, et al. Residual the time of tracheal extubation. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1840–1845.
39. Butterly A, Bittner EA, George E, et al. Postoperative residual curarization from intermediate-acting neuromuscular blocking agents delays recovery room discharge. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:304–309.
40. Murphy GS, Brull SJ. Residual neuromuscular block. lessons unlearned. Part I. Definitions, incidence, and adverse physiologic effects of residual neuromuscular block. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:120–128.
41. Viby-Mogensen J, Jørgensen BC, Ording H. Residual curarization in the recovery room. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:539–541.
42. Beemer GH, Rozental P. Postoperative neuromuscular function. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1986;14:41–45.
43. Howardy-Hansen P, Rasmussen JA, Jensen BN. Residual curarization in the recovery room. atracurium versus gallamine. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1989;33:167–169.
44. Naguib M, Kopman AF, Ensor JE. Neuromuscular monitoring and postoperative residual curarisation. A meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:302–316.
45. Andersen BN, Madsen JV, Schurizek BA, Juhl B. Residual curarisation. A comparative study of atracurium and pancuronium. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32:79–81.
46. Bevan DR, Smith CE, Donati F. Postoperative neuromuscular blockade. A comparison between atracurium, vecuronium, and pancuronium. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:272–276.
47. Debaene B, Plaud B, Dilly MP, Donati F. Residual paralysis in the PACU after a single intubating dose of nondepolarizing muscle relaxant with an intermediate duration of action. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1042–1048.
48. Hayes AH, Mirakhur RK, Breslin DS, et al. Postoperative residual block after intermediate-acting neuromuscular blocking drugs. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:312–318.
49. Yu B, Ouyang B, Ge S. Incidence of postoperative residual neuromuscular blockade after general anesthesia. A prospective, multicenter, anesthetist-blind, observational study. *Curr Med Res Opin*. 2016;32:1–9.
50. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Marymont JH, et al. Residual paralysis at the time of tracheal extubation. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1840–1845.
51. Cedborg AI, Sundman E, Bodén K, et al. Pharyngeal function and breathing pattern during partial neuromuscular block in the elderly. Effects on airway protection. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:312–325.

52. Eikermann M, Vogt FM, Herbstreit F, et al. The predisposition to inspiratory upper airway collapse during partial neuromuscular blockade. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2007;175:9–15.
53. Herbstreit F, Peters J, Eikermann M. Impaired upper airway integrity by residual neuromuscular blockade. Increased airway collapsibility and blunted genioglossus muscle activity in response to negative pharyngeal pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1253–1260.
54. Eriksson LI. Reduced hypoxic chemosensitivity in partially paralysed man. A new property of muscle relaxants? *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:520–523.
55. Eriksson LI. The effects of residual neuromuscular blockade and volatile anesthetics on the control of ventilation. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:243–251.
56. Isono S, Ide T, Kochi T, et al. Effects of partial paralysis on the swallowing reflex in conscious humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:980–984.
57. Heier T, Caldwell JE, Feiner JR, et al. Relationship between normalized adductor pollicis train-of-four ratio and manifestations of residual neuromuscular block. a study using acceleromyography during near steady-state concentrations of mivacurium. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:825–832.
58. Beecher HK, Todd DP. A study of the deaths associated with anesthesia and surgery. Based on a study of 599,548 anesthesias in ten institutions 1948-1952, inclusive. *Ann Surg*. 1954;140:2–35.
59. Harrison GG. Death attributable to anaesthesia. A 10-year survey (1967–1976). *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50:1041–1046.
60. Cooper AL, Leigh JM, Tring IC. Admissions to the intensive care unit after complications of anaesthetic techniques over 10 years. 1. The first 5 years. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44:953–958.
61. Rose DK, Cohen MM, Wigglesworth DF, DeBoer DP. Critical respiratory events in the postanesthesia care unit. Patient, surgical, and anesthetic factors. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:410–418.
62. Cooper AL, Leigh JM, Tring IC. Admissions to the intensive care unit after complications of anaesthetic techniques over 10 years. 1. The first 5 years. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44:953–958.
63. Barnes PJ, Havill JH. Anaesthetic complications requiring intensive care. A five year review. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1980;8:404–409.
64. Sprung J, Warner ME, Contreras MG, et al. Predictors of survival following cardiac arrest in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. A study of 518,294 patients at a tertiary referral center. *Anesthesiolog*. 2003;99:259–269.
65. Arbous MS, Meursing AE, van Kleef JW, et al. Impact of anesthesia management characteristics on severe morbidity and mortality. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:257–268.
66. Bulka CM, Terekhov MA, Martin BJ, et al. Nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents, reversal, and risk of postoperative pneumonia. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:647–655.
67. Bronsert MR, Henderson WG, Monk TG, et al. Intermediate-acting nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents and risk of postoperative 30-day morbidity and mortality, and long-term survival. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1476–1483.
68. Bissinger U, Schimek F, Lenz G. Postoperative residual paralysis and respiratory status. A comparative study of pancuronium and vecuronium. *Physiol Res*. 2000;49:455–462.
69. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Franklin M, et al. Postanesthesia care unit recovery times and neuromuscular blocking drugs. A prospective study of orthopedic surgical patients randomized to receive pancuronium or rocuronium. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:193–200.
70. Sauer M, Stahn A, Soltesz S, et al. The influence of residual neuromuscular block on the incidence of critical respiratory events. A randomised, prospective, placebo-controlled trial. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28:842–848.
71. Berg H, Roed J, Viby-Mogensen J, et al. Residual neuromuscular block is a risk factor for postoperative pulmonary complications. A prospective, randomized, and blinded study of postoperative pulmonary complications after atracurium, vecuronium and pancuronium. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41:1095–1103.
72. Norton M, Xará D, Parente D, et al. Residual neuromuscular block as a risk factor for critical respiratory events in the post anesthesia care unit. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 2013;60:190–196.
73. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Avram MJ, et al. Residual neuromuscular block in the elderly. Incidence and clinical implications. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:1322–1336.
74. Errando CL, Garutti I, Mazzinari G, et al. Residual neuromuscular blockade in the postanesthesia care unit. Observational cross-sectional study of a multicenter cohort. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2016;82:1267–1277.
75. Xará D, Santos A, Abelha F. Adverse respiratory events in a post-anesthesia care unit. *Arch Bronconeumol*. 2015;51:69–75.
76. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Marymont JH, et al. Recovery of neuromuscular function after cardiac surgery. Pancuronium versus rocuronium. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1301–1307.
77. Naguib M, Flood P, McArdle JJ, Brenner HR. Advances in neurobiology of the neuromuscular junction. Implications for the anesthesiologist. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;96:202–231.
78. Caldwell JE. Clinical limitations of acetylcholinesterase antagonists. *J Crit Care*. 2009;24:21–28.
79. Bevan DR, Donati F, Kopman AF. Reversal of neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:785–805.
80. Cronnelly R, Morris RB, Miller RD. Edrophonium. duration of action and atropine requirement in humans during halothane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:261–266.
81. Morris RB, Cronnelly R, Miller RD, et al. Pharmacokinetics of edrophonium and neostigmine when antagonizing D-tubocurarine neuromuscular blockade in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:399–401.
82. Cronnelly R, Stanski DR, Miller RD, Sheiner LB. Pyridostigmine kinetics with and without renal function. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1980;28:78–81.
83. Cronnelly R, Stanski DR, Miller RD, et al. Renal function and the pharmacokinetics of neostigmine in anesthetized man. *Anesthesiolog*. 1979;51:222–226.
84. Morris RB, Cronnelly R, Miller RD, et al. Pharmacokinetics of edrophonium in anephric and renal transplant patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:1311–1314.
85. Matteo RS, Young WL, Ornstein E, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of edrophonium in elderly surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:334–339.
86. Heier T, Caldwell JE. Impact of hypothermia on the response to neuromuscular blocking drugs. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1070–1080.
87. Heier T, Clough D, Wright PM, et al. The influence of mild hypothermia on the pharmacokinetics and time course of action of neostigmine in anesthetized volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:90–95.
88. Ferguson A, Egerszegi P, Bevan DR. Neostigmine, pyridostigmine, and edrophonium as antagonists of pancuronium. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:390–394.
89. Jones RM, Pearce AC, Williams JP. Recovery characteristics following antagonism of atracurium with neostigmine or edrophonium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56:453–457.
90. Rupp SM, McChristian JW, Miller RD, et al. Neostigmine and edrophonium antagonism of varying intensity neuromuscular blockade induced by atracurium, pancuronium, or vecuronium. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:711–717.
91. Donati F, McCarroll SM, Antzaka C, et al. Dose-response curves for edrophonium, neostigmine, and pyridostigmine after pancuronium and d-tubocurarine. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:471–476.
92. Smith CE, Donati F, Bevan DR. Dose-response relationships for edrophonium and neostigmine as antagonists of atracurium and vecuronium neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiolog*. 1989;71:37–43.
93. Kirkegaard-Nielsen H, Helbo-Hansen HS, Lindholm P, et al. Optimum time for neostigmine reversal of atracurium-induced neuromuscular blockade. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:932–938.
94. Engbaek J, Ostergaard D, Skovgaard LT, Viby-Mogensen J. Reversal of intense neuromuscular blockade following infusion of atracurium. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:803–806.
95. Magorian TT, Lynam DP, Caldwell JE, Miller RD. Can early administration of neostigmine, in single or repeated doses, alter the course of neuromuscular recovery from a vecuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade? *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:410–414.
96. Kirkegaard H, Heier T, Caldwell JE. Efficacy of tactile-guided reversal from cisatracurium-induced neuromuscular block. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:45–50.
97. Kim KS, Cheong MA, Lee HJ, Lee JM. Tactile assessment for the reversibility of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade during propofol or sevoflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;99:1080–1085.
98. Hunter JM. Reversal of residual neuromuscular block. Complications associated with perioperative management of muscle relaxation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(Suppl 1):i53–i62.
99. Kopman AF. Recovery times following edrophonium and neostigmine reversal of pancuronium, atracurium, and vecuronium steady-state infusions. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:572–578.

100. Baurain MJ, Hoton F, D'Hollander AA, Cantraine FR. Is recovery of neuromuscular transmission complete after the use of neostigmine to antagonize block produced by rocuronium, vecuronium, atracurium and pancuronium? *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;77:496–499.
101. Fisher DM, Cronnelly R, Miller RD, Sharma M. The neuromuscular pharmacology of neostigmine in infants and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:220–225.
102. Meistelman C, Debaene B, d'Hollander A, et al. Importance of the level of paralysis recovery for a rapid antagonism of vecuronium with neostigmine in children during halothane anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:97–99.
103. Bevan JC, Collins L, Fowler C, et al. Early and late reversal of rocuronium and vecuronium with neostigmine in adults and children. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:333–339.
104. Young WL, Matteo RS, Ornstein E. Duration of action of neostigmine and pyridostigmine in the elderly. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:775–778.
105. Reid JE, Breslin DS, Mirakhur RK, Hayes AH. Neostigmine antagonism of rocuronium block during anesthesia with sevoflurane, isoflurane or propofol. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48:351–355.
106. Jellish WS, Brody M, Sawicki K, Slogoff S. Recovery from neuromuscular blockade after either bolus and prolonged infusions of cisatracurium or rocuronium using either isoflurane or propofol-based anesthetics. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1250–1255.
107. Miller RD, Van Nyhuis LS, Eger EI, Way WL. The effect of acid-base balance on neostigmine antagonism of d-tubocurarine-induced neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;42:377–383.
108. Miller RD, Roderick LL. Acid-base balance and neostigmine antagonism of pancuronium neuromuscular blockade. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50:317–324.
109. Fuchs-Buder T, Meistelman C, Alla F, et al. Antagonism of low degrees of atracurium-induced neuromuscular blockade. Dose-effect relationship for neostigmine. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:34–40.
110. Caldwell JE. Reversal of residual neuromuscular block with neostigmine at one to four hours after a single intubating dose of vecuronium. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:1168–1174.
111. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Avram MJ, et al. Neostigmine administration after spontaneous recovery to a train-of-four ratio of 0.9 to 1.0. A randomized controlled trial of the effect on neuromuscular and clinical recovery. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:27–37.
112. Ostergaard D, Jensen FS, Skovgaard LT, Viby-Mogensen J. Dose-response relationship for mivacurium in patients with phenotypically abnormal plasma cholinesterase activity. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:1016–1018.
113. Naguib M, el-Gammal M, Daoud W, et al. Human plasma cholinesterase for antagonism of prolonged mivacurium-induced neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1288–1292.
114. Levano S, Ginz H, Siegemund M, et al. Genotyping the butyrylcholinesterase in patients with prolonged neuromuscular block after succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:531–535.
115. Scholler KL, Goedde HW, Benkmann HG. The use of serum cholinesterase in succinylcholine apnoea. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1977;24:396–400.
116. Naguib M, Daoud W, el-Gammal M, et al. Enzymatic antagonism of mivacurium-induced neuromuscular blockade by human plasma cholinesterase. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:694–701.
117. Østergaard D, Viby-Mogensen J, Rasmussen SN, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of mivacurium in patients phenotypically homozygous for the atypical plasma cholinesterase variant. effect of injection of human cholinesterase. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1124–1132.
118. Bartkowski RR. Incomplete reversal of pancuronium neuromuscular blockade by neostigmine, pyridostigmine, and edrophonium. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:594–598.
119. Goldhill DR, Wainwright AP, Stuart CS, Flynn PJ. Neostigmine after spontaneous recovery from neuromuscular blockade. Effect on depth of blockade monitored with train-of-four and tetanic stimuli. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44:293–299.
120. Astley BA, Katz RL, Payne JP. Electrical and mechanical responses after neuromuscular blockade with vecuronium, and subsequent antagonism with neostigmine or edrophonium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:983–988.
121. Eikermann M, Zaremba S, Malhotra A, et al. Neostigmine but not sugammadex impairs upper airway dilator muscle activity and breathing. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:344–349.
122. Eikermann M, Fassbender P, Malhotra A, et al. Unwarranted administration of acetylcholinesterase inhibitors can impair genioglossus and diaphragm muscle function. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:621–629.
123. Herbstreit F, Zigrahn D, Ochterbeck C, et al. Neostigmine/glycopyrrolate administered after recovery from neuromuscular block increases upper airway collapsibility by decreasing genioglossus muscle activity in response to negative pharyngeal pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:1280–1288.
124. Brock-Utne JG, Downing JW, Welman S, et al. Lower esophageal sphincter tone during reversal of neuromuscular blockade by atropine and neostigmine. *Anesth Analg*. 1978;57:171–174.
125. Cheng CR, Sessler DI, Apfel CC. Does neostigmine administration produce a clinically important increase in postoperative nausea and vomiting? *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1349–1355.
126. Green SM, Roback MG, Krauss B. Anticholinergics and ketamine sedation in children. a secondary analysis of atropine versus glycopyrrolate. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2010;17:157–162.
127. Salmenperä M, Kuoppamäki R, Salmenperä A. Do anticholinergic agents affect the occurrence of postanaesthetic nausea? *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36:445–448.
128. Tramèr MR, Fuchs-Buder T. Omitting antagonism of neuromuscular block. Effect on postoperative nausea and vomiting and risk of residual paralysis. A systematic review. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:379–386.
129. Urquhart ML, Ramsey FM, Royster RL, et al. Heart rate and rhythm following an edrophonium/atropine mixture for antagonism of neuromuscular blockade during fentanyl/N2O/O2 or isoflurane/N2O/O2 anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:561–565.
130. Azar I, Pham AN, Karambelkar DJ, Lear E. The heart rate following edrophonium-atropine and edrophonium-glycopyrrolate mixtures. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:139–141.
131. Ostheimer GW. A comparison of glycopyrrolate and atropine during reversal of nondepolarizing neuromuscular block with neostigmine. *Anesth Analg*. 1977;56:182–186.
132. Naguib M, Gomaa M, Absood GH. Atropine-edrophonium mixture. A dose-response study. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:650–655.
133. Parlow JL, van Vlymen JM, Odell MJ. The duration of impairment of autonomic control after anticholinergic drug administration in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:155–159.
134. van Vlymen JM, Parlow JL. The effects of reversal of neuromuscular blockade on autonomic control in the perioperative period. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:148–154.
135. Sun KO. Bronchospasm after esmolol and neostigmine. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21:457–459.
136. Pratt CI. Bronchospasm after neostigmine. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43:248.
137. Shibata O, Kanairo M, Zhang S, et al. Anticholinesterase drugs stimulate phosphatidylinositol response in rat tracheal slices. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:1211–1214.
138. Radulovic M, Spungen AM, Wecht JM, et al. Effects of neostigmine and glycopyrrolate on pulmonary resistance in spinal cord injury. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2004;41:53–58.
139. Miller RD. Sugammadex. An opportunity to change the practice of anesthesiology? *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:477–478.
140. Booij LHDJ, de Boer HD, van Egmond J. Reversal agents for nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade. reasons for and development of a new concept. *Semin Anesth Perioperat Med Pain*. 2002;21:92–98.
141. Bom A, Bradley M, Cameron K, et al. A novel concept of reversing neuromuscular block. Chemical encapsulation of rocuronium bromide by a cycledextrin-based synthetic host. *Angew Chem*. 2002;41:266–270.
142. Adam JM, Bennet DJ, Bom A, et al. Cyclodextrin-derived host molecules as reversal agents for the neuromuscular blocker rocuronium bromide. Synthesis and structure-activity relationships. *J Med Chem*. 2002;45:1806–1816.
143. Baker MT, Naguib M. Propofol. The challenges of formulation. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:860–876.
144. Epemolu O, Bom A, Hope F, Mason R. Reversal of neuromuscular blockade and simultaneous increase in plasma rocuronium concentration after the intravenous infusion of the novel reversal agent Org 25969. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:632–637.
145. Caldwell JE, Miller RD. Clinical implications of sugammadex. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(Suppl 1):66–72.
146. Gijsenbergh F, Ramael S, Houwing N, van Iersel T. First human exposure of Org 25969, a novel agent to reverse the action of rocuronium bromide. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:695–703.

147. Sparr HJ, Vermeyen KM, Beaufort AM, et al. Early reversal of profound rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade by sugammadex in a randomized multicenter study. Efficacy, safety, and pharmacokinetics. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:935–943.
148. Cammu G, Van Vlem B, van den Heuvel M, et al. Dialysability of sugammadex and its complex with rocuronium in intensive care patients with severe renal impairment. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:382–390.
149. Sorgenfrei IF, Norrild K, Larsen PB, et al. Reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular block by the selective relaxant binding agent sugammadex. a dose-finding and safety study. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:667–674.
150. Suy K, Morias K, Cammu G, et al. Effective reversal of moderate rocuronium- or vecuronium-induced neuromuscular block with sugammadex, a selective relaxant binding agent. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:283–288.
151. Groudine SB, Soto R, Lien C, et al. A randomized, dose-finding, phase II study of the selective relaxant binding drug, sugammadex capable of safely reversing profound rocuronium-induced neuromuscular block. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:555–562.
152. de Boer HD, Driessen JJ, Marcus MA, et al. Reversal of rocuronium-induced (1.2 mg/kg) profound neuromuscular block by sugammadex. a multicenter, dose-finding and safety study. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:239–244.
153. Lemmens HJ, El-Orbany MI, Berry J, et al. Reversal of profound vecuronium-induced neuromuscular block under sevoflurane anesthesia. Sugammadex versus neostigmine. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2010;10:15.
154. Mosing M, Auer U, Bardell D, et al. Reversal of profound rocuronium block monitored in three muscle groups with sugammadex in ponies. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:480–486.
155. Shields M, Giovannelli M, Mirakhur RK, et al. Org 25969 (sugammadex), a selective relaxant binding agent for antagonism of prolonged rocuronium-induced neuromuscular block. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:36–43.
156. Lee C, Jahr JS, Candiotti KA, et al. Reversal of profound neuromuscular block by sugammadex administered three minutes after rocuronium. A comparison with spontaneous recovery from succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1020–1025.
157. Sørensen MK, Bretlau C, Gätke MR, et al. Rapid sequence induction and intubation with rocuronium-sugammadex compared with succinylcholine. A randomized trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:682–689.
158. Sacan O, White PF, Tufanogullari B, Klein K. Sugammadex reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade. A comparison with neostigmine-glycopyrrolate and edrophonium-atropine. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:569–574.
159. Blobner M, Eriksson LI, Scholz J, et al. Reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex compared with neostigmine during sevoflurane anaesthesia. Results of a randomized, controlled trial. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:874–881.
160. Jones RK, Caldwell JE, Brull SJ, Soto RG. Reversal of profound rocuronium-induced blockade with sugammadex. A randomized comparison with neostigmine. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:816–824.
161. Flockton EA, Mastronardi P, Hunter JM, et al. Reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular block with sugammadex is faster than reversal of cisatracurium-induced block with neostigmine. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:622–630.
162. Vanacker BF, Vermeyen KM, Struys MM, et al. Reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular block with the novel drug sugammadex is equally effective under maintenance anesthesia with propofol or sevoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:563–568.
163. Duvaldestin P, Kuizenga K, Saldien V, et al. A randomized, dose-response study of sugammadex given for the reversal of deep rocuronium- or vecuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade under sevoflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:74–82.
164. Plaud B, Meretoja O, Hofmockel R, et al. Reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex in pediatric and adult surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:284–294.
165. Buchanan CC, O'Donnell AM. Case report. Sugammadex used to successfully reverse vecuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade in a 7-month-old infant. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:1077–1078.
166. Nishi M, Fujii S, Nitta S. A two-year-old patient who received readministration of rocuronium for re-operation 30 minutes after sugammadex reversal. *Masui*. 2011;60:1189–1191.
167. Liu G, Wang R, Yan Y, et al. The efficacy and safety of sugammadex for reversing postoperative residual neuromuscular blockade in pediatric patients. A systematic review. *Sci Rep*. 2017;7(1):5724.
168. McDonagh DL, Benedict PE, Kovac AL, et al. Efficacy, safety, and pharmacokinetics of sugammadex for the reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade in elderly patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:318–329.
169. Suzuki T, Kitajima O, Ueda K, et al. Reversibility of rocuronium-induced profound neuromuscular block with sugammadex in younger and older patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:823–826.
170. Yoshida F, Suzuki T, Kashiwai A, et al. Correlation between cardiac output and reversibility of rocuronium-induced moderate neuromuscular block with sugammadex. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56:83–87.
171. Carron M, Bertoncello F, Ieppariello G. Profile of sugammadex for reversal of neuromuscular blockade in the elderly. Current perspectives. *Clin Interv Aging*. 2018;13:13–24.
172. Dahl V, Pendeville PE, Hollmann MW, et al. Safety and efficacy of sugammadex for the reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade in cardiac patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26:874–884.
173. de Kam PJ, van Kuijk J, Prohn M, et al. Effects of sugammadex doses up to 32 mg/kg alone or in combination with rocuronium or vecuronium on QTc prolongation. A thorough QTc study. *Clin Drug Investig*. 2010;30:599–611.
174. Riley RH, Song JW, Paul VE, Powell A. Safe use of sugammadex in long QT syndrome. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2010;38:1138–1139.
175. Craig RG, Hunter JM. Neuromuscular blocking drugs and their antagonists in patients with organ disease. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(Suppl 1):55–65.
176. Amao R, Zornow MH, Cowan RM, et al. Use of sugammadex in patients with a history of pulmonary disease. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24:289–297.
177. Porter MV, Paleologos MS. The use of rocuronium in a patient with cystic fibrosis and end-stage lung disease made safe by sugammadex reversal. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2011;39:299–302.
178. Staals LM, Snoeck MM, Driessen JJ, et al. Multicentre, parallel-group, comparative trial evaluating the efficacy and safety of sugammadex in patients with end-stage renal failure or normal renal function. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:492–497.
179. Panhuizen IF, Gold SJ, Buerkle C, et al. Efficacy, safety and pharmacokinetics of sugammadex 4 mg kg-1 for reversal of deep neuromuscular blockade in patients with severe renal impairment. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015 May;114(5):777–784.
180. Min KC, Lasseter KC, Marbury TC, et al. Pharmacokinetics of sugammadex in subjects with moderate and severe renal impairment. *Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2017;55(9):746–752.
181. Carlos RV, Torres ML, de Boer HD. The use of rocuronium and sugammadex in paediatric renal transplantation. Two case reports. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33:383–385.
182. Ono Y et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol.* 34(e-suppl 55):397
183. Craig RG, Hunter JM. Neuromuscular blocking drugs and their antagonists in patients with organ disease. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(Suppl 1):55–65.
184. Ogunnaike BO, Jones SB, Jones DB, et al. Anesthetic considerations for bariatric surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1793–1805.
185. Monk TG, Rietbergen H, Woo T, Fennema H. Use of sugammadex in patients with obesity. A pooled analysis. *Am J Ther*. 2017;24 (5):e507–e516.
186. Gaszynski T, Szewczyk T, Gaszynski W. Randomized comparison of sugammadex and neostigmine for reversal of rocuronium-induced muscle relaxation in morbidly obese undergoing general anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:236–239.
187. Van Lancker P, Dillemans B, Bogaert T, et al. Ideal versus corrected body weight for dosage of sugammadex in morbidly obese patients. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:721–725.
188. Llauradó S, Sabaté A, Ferreres E, et al. Sugammadex ideal body weight dose adjusted by level of neuromuscular blockade in laparoscopic bariatric surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:93–98.
189. Le Corre F, Nejmeddine S, Fatahine C, et al. Recurarization after sugammadex reversal in an obese patient. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58:944–947.
190. Duarte NMDC, Caetano AMM, Neto SDSC, et al. [Sugammadex by ideal body weight versus 20% and 40% corrected weight in bariatric surgery - double-blind randomized clinical trial]. *[Article in Portuguese] Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2018;68(3):219–224.

191. Sharp LM, Levy DM. Rapid sequence induction in obstetrics revisited. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:357–361.
192. Abrishami A, Ho J, Wong J, et al. Sugammadex, A selective reversal medication for preventing postoperative residual neuromuscular blockade. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;(4):CD007362.
193. Dahl V, Spreng UJ. Anaesthesia for urgent (grade 1) caesarean section. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:352–356.
194. Pühringer FK, Kristen P, Rex C. Sugammadex reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular block in Caesarean section patients. A series of seven cases. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:657–660.
195. Williamson RM, Mallaiah S, Barclay P. Rocuronium and sugammadex for rapid sequence induction of obstetric general anaesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:694–699.
196. Blichfeldt-Lauridsen L, Hansen BD. Anesthesia and myasthenia gravis. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56:17–22.
197. Baraka AS, Jalbout MI. Anesthesia and myopathy. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2002;15:371–376.
198. Steward PA, Phillips S, de Boer HD. Sugammadex reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade in two types of neuromuscular disorders. Myotonic dystrophy and spinal muscular atrophy. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 2012.
199. Vilela H, Santos J, Colaço J, et al. Reversal of neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex in a patient with spinal muscular atrophy type III (Kugelberg-Welander syndrome). *J Anesth*. 2012;26:306–307.
200. Unterbuchner C, Fink H, Blobner M. The use of sugammadex in a patient with myasthenia gravis. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:302–305.
201. de Boer HD, van Egmond J, Driessen JJ, Booij LH. A new approach to anesthesia management in myasthenia gravis. reversal of neuromuscular blockade by sugammadex. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 2010;57:181–184.
202. Mavridou P, Dimitriou V, Margaritis A, Manataki A. Anesthesia for laparoscopic surgery in a patient with myotonic dystrophy (Steinert's disease). Beneficial use of sugammadex, but incorrect use of pethidine. A case report. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 2011;62:101–104.
203. de Boer HD, Shields MO, Booij LH. Reversal of neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex in patients with myasthenia gravis. A case series of 21 patients and review of the literature. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2014;31(12):715–721.
204. Vymazal T, Krecmerova M, Bicek V, Lischke R. Feasibility of full and rapid neuromuscular blockade recovery with sugammadex in myasthenia gravis patients undergoing surgery—a series of 117 cases. *Ther Clin Risk Manag*. 2015;11:1593–1596.
205. Miyazaki Y, Sunaga H, Kida K, et al. Incidence of anaphylaxis associated with sugammadex. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(5):1505–1508.
206. Horiuchi T, Yokohama A, Orihara M, et al. Usefulness of basophil activation tests for diagnosis of sugammadex-induced anaphylaxis. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(5):1509–1516.
207. Rahe-Meyer N, Fennema H, Schulman S, et al. Effect of reversal of neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex versus usual care on bleeding risk in a randomized study of surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(5):969–977.
208. Zwiers A, van den Heuvel M, Smeets J, Rutherford S. Assessment of the potential for displacement interactions with sugammadex. A pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic modelling approach. *Clin Drug Investig*. 2011;31:101–111.
209. US Food and Drug Administration. *Sugammadex, NDA 22-225, Anesthetic and Life Support Drugs Advisory Committee March*11, 2008. http://wwwfdagov/ohrms/dockets/ac/08/slides/2008-4346s1-01-Schering-Plough-corebackuppdf>2008.
210. Kam PJ, Heuvel MW, Grobara P, et al. Flucloxacillin and diclofenac do not cause recurrence of neuromuscular blockade after reversal with sugammadex. *Clin Drug Investig*. 2012;32:203–212.
211. de Boer HD, Driessen JJ, van Egmond J, Booij LH. Non-steroidal neuromuscular blocking agents to re-establish paralysis after reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular block with sugammadex. *Can J Anaesth*. 2008;55:124–125.
212. Cammu G, de Kam PJ, De Graeve K, et al. Repeat dosing of rocuronium 1.2 mg kg-1 after reversal of neuromuscular block by sugammadex 4.0 mg kg-1 in anaesthetized healthy volunteers. A modelling-based pilot study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:487–492.
213. Eleveld DJ, Kuizenga K, Proost JH, Wierda JM. A temporary decrease in twitch response during reversal of rocuronium-induced muscle relaxation with a small dose of sugammadex. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:582–584.
214. Drobnik L, Sparr HJ, Thörn SE, et al. A randomized simultaneous comparison of acceleromyography with a peripheral nerve stimulator for assessing reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:866–873.
215. Asztalos L, Szabo-Maak Z, Gajdos A, et al. Reversal of vecuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade with low-dose sugammadex at train-of-four count of four. A randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:441–449.
216. Mirzakhani H, Welch CA, Eikermann M, Nozari A. Neuromuscular blocking agents for electroconvulsive therapy. A systematic review. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56:3–16.
217. Turkkal DC, Gokmen N, Yildiz A, et al. A cross-over, post-electroconvulsive therapy comparison of clinical recovery from rocuronium versus succinylcholine. *J Clin Anesth*. 2008;20:589–593.
218. Hoshi H, Kadoi Y, Kamiyama J, et al. Use of rocuronium-sugammadex, an alternative to succinylcholine, As a muscle relaxant during electroconvulsive therapy. *J Anesth*. 2011;25:286–290.
219. Kadoi Y, Hoshi H, Nishida A, Saito S. Comparison of recovery times from rocuronium-induced muscle relaxation after reversal with three different doses of sugammadex and succinylcholine during electroconvulsive therapy. *J Anesth*. 2011;25:855–859.
220. Batistaki C, Kesidis K, Apostolaki S, Kostopanagiotou G. Rocuronium antagonized by sugammadex for series of electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) in a patient with pseudocholinesterase deficiency. *J ECT*. 2011;27:e47–48.
221. Lindekaer AL, Halvor Springborg H, Istre O. Deep neuromuscular blockade leads to a larger intraabdominal volume during laparoscopy. *J Vis Exp*. 2013;76:1–5.
222. Staehr-Rye AK, Rasmussen LS, Rosenberg J, et al. Optimized surgical space during low-pressure laparoscopy with deep neuromuscular blockade. *Dan Med J*. 2013;60:A4579–A4586.
223. Bruintjes MH, van Helden EV, Braat AE, et al. Deep neuromuscular block to optimize surgical space conditions during laparoscopic surgery. A systematic review and meta-analysis. *BJA*. 2017;118(6):834–842.
224. Kotake Y, et al. Reversal with sugammadex in the absence of monitoring did not preclude residual neuromuscular block. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:345–351.
225. Naguib M, et al. Reasoning of an anomaly. Residual block after sugammadex. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:297–300.
226. Lien CA. Development and potential clinical impairment of ultra-short-acting neuromuscular blocking agents. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(Suppl 1):i60–i71.
227. Savarese JJ, Belmont MR, Hashim MA, et al. Preclinical pharmacology of GW280430A (AV430A) in the rhesus monkey and in the cat. A comparison with mivacurium. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:835–845.
228. Savarese JJ, McGilvra JD, Sunaga H, et al. Rapid chemical antagonism of neuromuscular blockade by L-cysteine adduction to and inactivation of the olefinic (double-bonded) isoquinolinium diester compounds gantacurium (AV430A), CW 002, and CW 011. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:58–73.
229. Belmont MR, Lien CA, Tjan J, et al. Clinical pharmacology of GW280430A in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:768–773.
230. Sunaga H, Malhotra JK, Yoon E, et al. Cysteine reversal of the novel neuromuscular blocking drug CW002 in dogs. Pharmacodynamics, acute cardiovascular effects, and preliminary toxicology. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:900–909.

29 Local Anesthetics

PHILIPP LIRK and CHARLES B. BERDE

KEY POINTS

- Local anesthetics block voltage-gated sodium channels and thereby interrupt initiation and propagation of impulses in axons, but they have a wide variety of other biologic actions, desirable and undesirable.
- Currently available local anesthetics are of two chemical classes: aminoesters and aminoamides.
- The low potency and lack of specificity of available local anesthetics are due in part to the very weak structural constraints at their binding site on the sodium channel. Most of their features derive from the requirement for high solubility, rapidly reversible protonation, and rapid diffusion in both aqueous environments and in the lipid phases of biologic membranes.
- Reversible protonation of the tertiary amine group tends to make local anesthetics less charged at more basic pH and more charged at neutral or acidic pH; the neutral base forms are more soluble in lipid environments, whereas the charged acid forms, the more potent species, are more soluble in aqueous environments.
- Aminoesters are metabolized primarily by plasma esterases, and aminoamides are metabolized primarily by hepatic cytochrome P450-linked enzymes.
- The principal systemic toxicities of local anesthetics involve the heart (including atrioventricular conduction block, arrhythmias, myocardial depression, and cardiac arrest) and the brain (including agitation, lethargy, seizures, and generalized central nervous system depression). Hypoxemia and acidosis exacerbate these toxicities. Resuscitation after bupivacaine overdose is particularly difficult. Therefore prevention of intravascular injection or overdose is crucial, and major nerve blockade should involve incremental, fractionated dosing. Ultrasound can reduce the incidence of systemic toxicity and Intralipid can help in the resuscitation.
- Local anesthetics are directly toxic to nerve at the concentrations supplied in commercial solutions. Intraneural concentrations during regional anesthesia are generally (but not always) below a threshold for toxicity because of spread of solutions through tissues and diffusion gradients from injection sites into nerve. Injection into a constrained tissue space increases the risk for local toxicity.
- Optimal use of local anesthetics in regional anesthesia requires an understanding of (1) the individual patient's clinical situation; (2) the location, intensity, and duration of regional anesthesia and analgesia required; (3) anatomic factors affecting deposition of drug near nerves; (4) proper drug selection and dosing; and (5) ongoing assessment of clinical effects after administration of a local anesthetic.
- Single-stereoisomer (as opposed to a racemic mixture) formulations have been developed in an effort to reduce systemic toxicity and improve sensory selectivity but true sensory selectivity has not been achieved with drugs currently available.
- The most important research avenues to improve local anesthetic action are slow release formulations, targeting of specific sodium channel subtypes, and targeting of nociceptive fibers.

Local anesthesia results from the blockade of nerve impulses to abolish sensation. All currently available, clinically useful agents are either aminoesters or aminoamides. These drugs, when applied in sufficient concentration at the site of action, prevent conduction of electrical impulses by the membranes of nerve and muscle. In addition to blockade of impulses, local anesthetics can inhibit various receptors, enhance release of glutamate, and depress the activity of certain intracellular signaling pathways. When local anesthetic agents are given systemically, the functions of cardiac, skeletal, and smooth muscle, as well as transmission of impulses in the central and peripheral nervous systems and within the specialized conducting system of the heart, may all be altered. Local anesthetics may abolish sensation in various parts of the body by topical application, injection near peripheral nerve endings and major nerve trunks, or instillation within the epidural or subarachnoid spaces. Toxicity may be local or systemic. The central nervous and cardiovascular systems are most commonly involved in acute clinical toxicity.

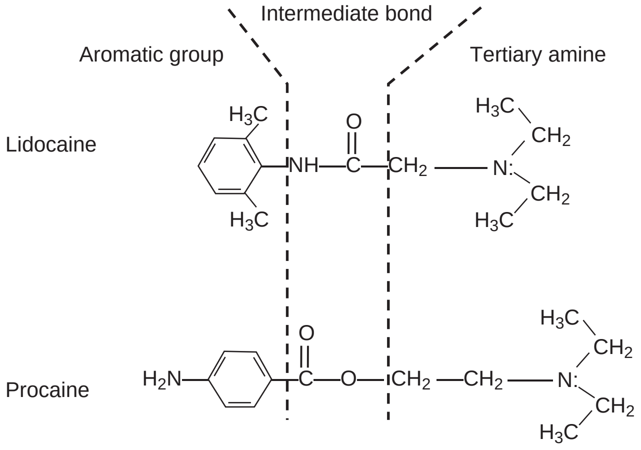


Fig. 29.1 Structures of two local anesthetics: the aminoamide lidocaine and the aminoester procaine. In both drugs, a hydrophobic aromatic group is joined to a more hydrophilic base, the tertiary amine, by an intermediate amide or ester bond.

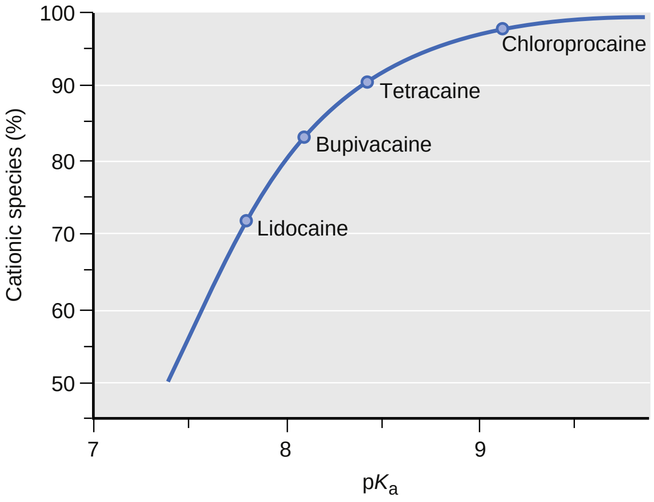


Fig. 29.2 Fraction of local anesthetic in the protonated, cationic form of an aqueous solution at physiologic pH (7.4) as a function of the pK_a of the drug. Lidocaine, the drug with the lowest pK_a, has the smallest fraction of its molecules protonated, the largest in the neutral form, and vice versa for chloroprocaine, the local anesthetic with the highest pK_a. Individual drug molecules become protonated and deprotonated in thousandths of a second in solution.

Basic Pharmacology

CHEMISTRY

The Local Anesthetic Molecule

The typical local anesthetic molecule, exemplified by lidocaine and procaine (Fig. 29.1), contains a tertiary amine attached to a substituted aromatic ring by an intermediate chain that almost always contains either an ester (see Fig. 29.1) or an amide linkage (Fig. 29.2).

Local anesthetics may therefore be classified as aminoester or aminoamide compounds. The aromatic ring system gives a lipophilic (membrane-liking) character to its portion of the molecule, whereas the tertiary amine end is relatively hydrophilic, particularly since it is partially protonated and thus bears some positive charge in the physiologic pH range (see Fig. 29.2). The structures of commonly administered local anesthetics are given in Table 29.1 and their physicochemical properties in Table 29.2.

STRUCTURE-ACTIVITY RELATIONSHIPS AND PHYSICOCHEMICAL PROPERTIES

The intrinsic potency and duration of action of local anesthetics are clearly dependent on certain features of the molecule.

Lipophilic-Hydrophilic Balance

The lipophilic versus hydrophilic character of a local anesthetic depends on the size of alkyl substituents on or near the tertiary amine and on the aromatic ring. “Lipophilicity” expresses the tendency of a compound to associate with membrane lipids, a property usually approximated by equilibrium partitioning into a hydrophobic solvent such as octanol.[1] Although octanol-buffer partition coefficients are comparable to membrane-buffer partition coefficients for the uncharged species of local anesthetics, they severely underestimate membrane partitioning for the charged, protonated species, octanol being a poor model for the polar regions near the membrane surface where local anesthetics are concentrated.[2] Here we use the term “hydrophobicity,” expressed as octanol-buffer partitioning, to describe a physicochemical property of local anesthetics.

Compounds with a more hydrophobic nature are obtained by increasing the size of the alkyl substituents. These agents are more potent and produce longer-lasting blocks than their less hydrophobic congeners do.[3-5] For example, etidocaine, which has three more carbon atoms in the amine end of the molecule than lidocaine, is four times as potent and five times as long lasting when compared in the isolated sciatic nerve.

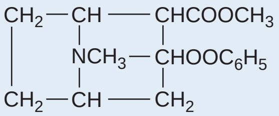
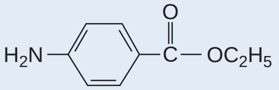
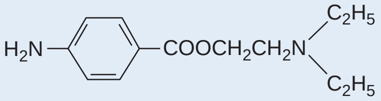
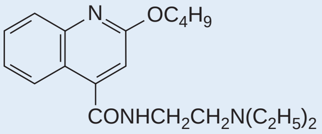
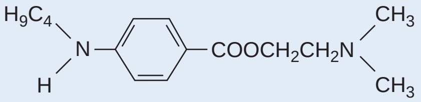
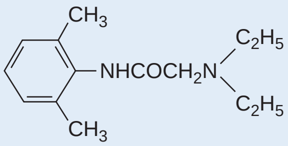
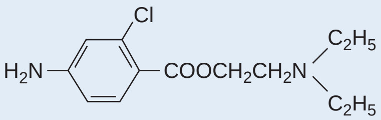
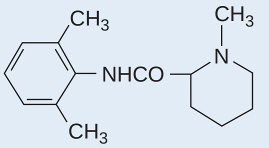
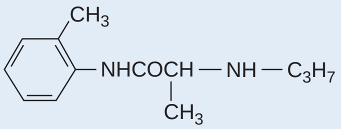
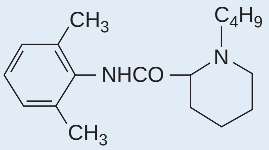
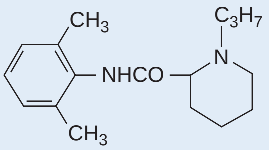
Hydrogen Ion Concentration

Local anesthetics in solution exist in a very rapid chemical equilibrium between the basic uncharged form (B) and the charged cationic form (BH^+). At a certain hydrogen ion concentration ($\log_{10}{}^{-1}$ [$-$pH]) specific for each drug, the concentration of local anesthetic base in solution is equal to the concentration of charged cation. The logarithm of this hydrogen ion concentration is called pK_a. The relationship is defined by

$$\frac{[BH^{+}]}{[B]} = 10\ pK_a - pH$$

pK_a values of local anesthetic agents in aqueous solution are listed in Table 29.2. The tendency to be protonated also depends on environmental factors, such as temperature and ionic strength, and on the medium surrounding the drug. In the relatively apolar milieu of a membrane, the average pK_a of local anesthetics is lower than in solution. This is chemically equivalent to saying that the membrane concentrates the base form of the local anesthetic

TABLE 29.1 Representative Local Anesthetics in Common Clinical Use

Generic* and Common Proprietary Names	Chemical Structure	Approximate Year of Initial Clinical Use	Main Anesthetic Use	Representative Commercial Preparation
Cocaine		1884	Topical	40-mg/mL solution
Benzocaine (Americaine)		1900	Topical	200 mg/mL
Procaine (Novocain)		1905	Topical Infiltration Spinal	200 mg/mL 10- and 20-mg/mL solutions 100-mg/mL solution
Dibucaine (Nupercaine)		1929	Spinal	0.667-, 2.5-, and 5-mg/mL solutions
Tetracaine (Pontocaine)		1930	Spinal	Niphanoid crystals—20- and 10-mg/mL solutions
Lidocaine (Xylocaine)		1948	Infiltration Peripheral nerve blockade Epidural Spinal Topical Topical	5- and 10-mg/mL solutions 10-, 15-, and 20-mg/mL solutions 10-, 15-, and 20-mg/mL solutions 50-mg/mL solution 20-mg/mL jelly, viscous 25- and 50-mg/mL ointment
Chloroprocaine (Nesacaine)		1955	Infiltration Peripheral nerve blockade Epidural	10-mg/mL solution 10- and 20-mg/mL solutions 20- and 30-mg/mL solutions
Mepivacaine (Carbocaine)		1957	Infiltration Peripheral nerve blockade Epidural	10-mg/mL solution 10- and 20-mg/mL solutions 10-, 15-, and 20-mg/mL solutions
Prilocaine (Citanest)		1960	Infiltration Peripheral nerve blockade Epidural	10- and 20-mg/mL solutions 10-, 20-, and 30-mg/mL solutions 10-, 20-, and 30-mg/mL solutions
Bupivacaine (Marcaine)		1963	Infiltration Peripheral nerve blockade Epidural Spinal	2.5-mg/mL solution 2.5- and 5-mg/mL solutions 2.5-, 5-, and 7.5-mg/mL solutions 5- and 7.5-mg/mL solutions
Ropivacaine (Naropin)		1992	Infiltration Peripheral nerve blockade Epidural	2.5- and 5-mg/mL solutions 5- and 10-mg/mL solutions 5- and 7.5-mg/mL solutions

*United States Pharmacopeia nomenclature.

From Covino B, Vassallo H. *Local Anesthetics: Mechanisms of Action and Clinical Use*. Orlando, FL: Grune and Stratton; 1976.

more than it concentrates the protonated cation form. The pH of the medium containing the local anesthetic influences drug activity by altering the relative percentage of the base and protonated forms. For example, in inflamed tissues the pH is lower than normal, and local anesthetics are more protonated than in normal tissue and thus penetrate the tissue relatively poorly (see later). The relationship between pK_a and the percentage of local anesthetic present in the cationic form is shown in Fig. 29.2. As described later, there are dual effects of pH on clinical effectiveness, depending on where the local anesthetic is injected and the importance of the base form for tissue penetration.

Anatomy of the Peripheral Nerve

Each peripheral nerve axon possesses its own cell membrane, the axolemma. Nonmyelinated nerves, such as autonomic postganglionic efferent and nociceptive afferent C fibers, contain many axons encased in a single Schwann cell sheath. In contrast, all large motor and sensory fibers are enclosed in many layers of myelin, which consists of the plasma membranes of specialized Schwann cells that wrap themselves around the axon during axonal outgrowth. Myelin greatly increases the speed of nerve conduction by insulating the axolemma from the surrounding conducting salt medium and forcing the “action current” generated by an impulse to flow through the axoplasm to the nodes of Ranvier, which are periodic interruptions in the myelin sheath where the active impulse is regenerated (Fig. 29.3). The Na^+ channels that serve generation and propagation of impulses are highly concentrated at the nodes of Ranvier of myelinated fibers[7a] but are distributed all along the axon of nonmyelinated fibers (see Fig. 29.3). A classification of peripheral nerves according to fiber size and physiologic properties is presented in Table 29.3. It is important to note that different fiber classes are not only distinguished by diameter and myelin thickness, but also by the structure of the neuronal membrane and ion channel composition.[6]

Each axon has its own connective tissue covering, the *endoneurium*. A typical peripheral nerve consists of several axon bundles, or fascicles. Each fascicle of many axons is encased by a second connective tissue layer, the epithelial-like *perineurium*, and the entire nerve is wrapped in a loose outer sheath called the *epineurium* (Fig. 29.4). To reach the nerve axon, a local anesthetic molecule must traverse any structures surrounding the nerve, such as the paraneurium of the distal sciatic nerve, the epineurium, the perineurium, and the endoneurium, as well as the neuronal plasma membrane. The main barrier to diffusion is the perineurium.[7a] Further, nerves are composed of both neuronal tissues and non-neuronal tissues, such as connective or fatty tissues, and blood vessels. When performing a popliteal sciatic nerve block for example, it should be kept in mind that here, approximately 60% of the nerve cross-section is non-neuronal tissue.[8]

STRUCTURE OF THE AXONAL MEMBRANE

Biologic membranes consist of a molecular lipid bilayer containing proteins adsorbed on the surfaces, as well as embedded in or spanning the hydrocarbon core (Fig. 29.5). The

TABLE 29.2 Relative In Vitro Conduction-Blocking Potency and Physicochemical Properties of Local Anesthetic Drugs

Drug	Relative Conduction-Blocking Potency*	PHYSIOCHEMICAL PROPERTIES	
		pK_a†	Hydrophobicity†
LOW POTENCY			
Procaine	1	8.9	100
INTERMEDIATE POTENCY			
Mepivacaine	1.5	7.7	136
Prilocaine	1.8	8.0‡	129
Chloroprocaine	3	9.1	810
Lidocaine	2	7.8	366
HIGH POTENCY			
Tetracaine	8	8.4	5822
Bupivacaine	8	8.1	3420
Etidocaine	8	7.9	7320

*Data derived from C fibers of isolated rabbit vagus and sciatic nerve.
†pK_a and hydrophobicity at 36°C; hydrophobicity equals the octanol/buffer partition coefficient of the base. Values are ratios of concentrations.
‡Values at 25°C.
From Strichartz GR, Sanchez V, Arthur GR, et al. Fundamental properties of local anesthetics. II. Measured octanol: buffer partition coefficients and pK_a values of clinically used drugs. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:158–170.

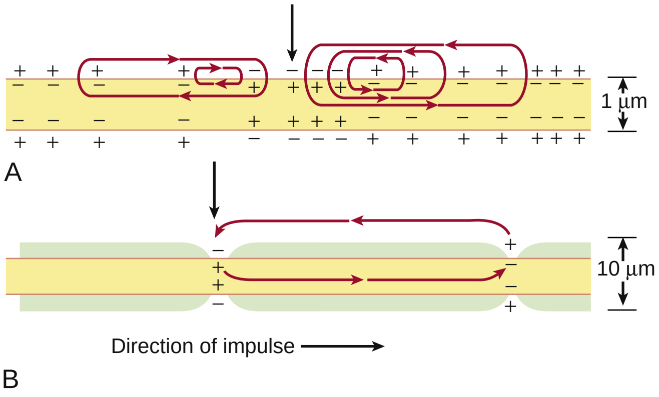


Fig. 29.3 Pattern of local circuit currents flowing during propagation of an impulse in a nonmyelinated C fiber’s axon (A) and a myelinated axon (B). During propagation of impulses, from left to right, current entering the axon at the initial rising phase of the impulse *(large vertical arrows)* passes through the axoplasm (local circuit current) and depolarizes the adjacent membrane. Plus and minus signs adjacent to the axon membrane indicate the polarization state of the axon membrane: negative inside at rest, positive inside during active depolarization under the action potential, and less negative in regions where local circuit currents flow. This ionic current passes relatively uniformly across the nonmyelinated axon, but it is restricted in the myelinated axon to entry at the nodes of Ranvier, several of which are simultaneously depolarized during a single action potential.

character of the bilayer is determined by the phospholipids, which have long hydrophobic fatty acyl tails that lie in the center of the membrane, as well as by the polar hydrophilic head groups, which are usually composed of zwitterionic portions (containing positive and negative charges) that project into the cytoplasm or the extracellular fluid. Within the membrane there is both lateral and rotational diffusion, which allows lipids and certain proteins to migrate in a fluid mosaic, but most membrane proteins are fixed within specific regions of a membrane, anchored by connections to specific proteins of the cell's cytoskeleton.[9] A dynamic interaction exists between the cell's membrane and cytoplasm. Although we focus here on the channel-blocking actions of local anesthetics, it is noteworthy that many other cellular activities, including both metabolic and signal transduction pathways, are modulated by these drugs.

PHYSIOLOGY OF NERVE CONDUCTION

The neural membrane is able to maintain a voltage difference of −60 to −90 mV between the intracellular medium and the cell's outside, because at rest it is relatively impermeable to sodium ions (Na^+) but selectively permeable to potassium ions (K^+). The Na^+/K^+ pump, an

TABLE 29.3 Classification of Peripheral Nerves According to Anatomy, Physiology, and Function

Fiber Class	Subclass	Myelin	Diameter (μm)	Conduction Velocity (m/sec)	Location	Function	Susceptibility to Local Anesthetic Block
A	α	+	6-22	30-120	Efferent to muscles	Motor	++
	β	+	6-22	30-120	Afferent from skin and joints	Tactile, proprioception	++
	δ	+	3-6	15-35	Efferent to muscle spindles	Muscle tone	++++
		+	1-4	5-25	Afferent sensory nerves	Pain, cold temperature, touch	+++
B		+	<3	3-15	Preganglionic sympathetic	Various autonomic functions	++
C	sC	–	0.3-1.3	0.7-1.3	Postganglionic sympathetic	Various autonomic functions	++
	dC	–	0.4-1.2	0.1-2.0	Afferent sensory nerves	Various autonomic functions Pain, warm temperature, touch	+

From Bonica JJ. Principles and Practice of Obstetric Anesthesia and Analgesia. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 1967.

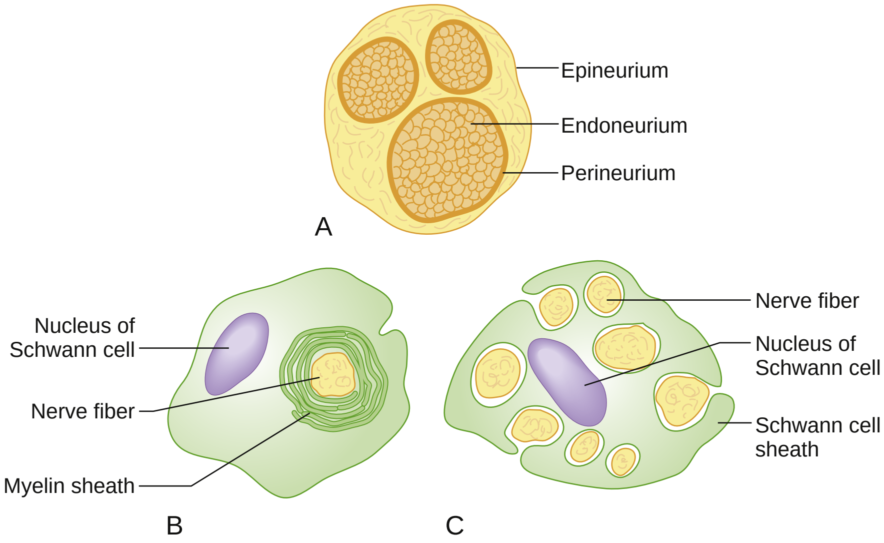


Fig. 29.4 (A) Transverse sections of a peripheral nerve showing the outermost epineurium; the inner perineurium, which collects nerve axons in fascicles; and the endoneurium, which surrounds each myelinated fiber. (B) Each myelinated axon is encased in the multiple membranous wrappings of myelin formed by one Schwann cell, each of which stretches longitudinally more than approximately 100 times the diameter of the axon. The narrow span of axon between these myelinated segments, the node of Ranvier, contains the ion channels that support action potentials. (C) Nonmyelinated fibers are enclosed in bundles of 5 to 10 axons by a chain of Schwann cells that tightly embrace each axon with but one layer of membrane.

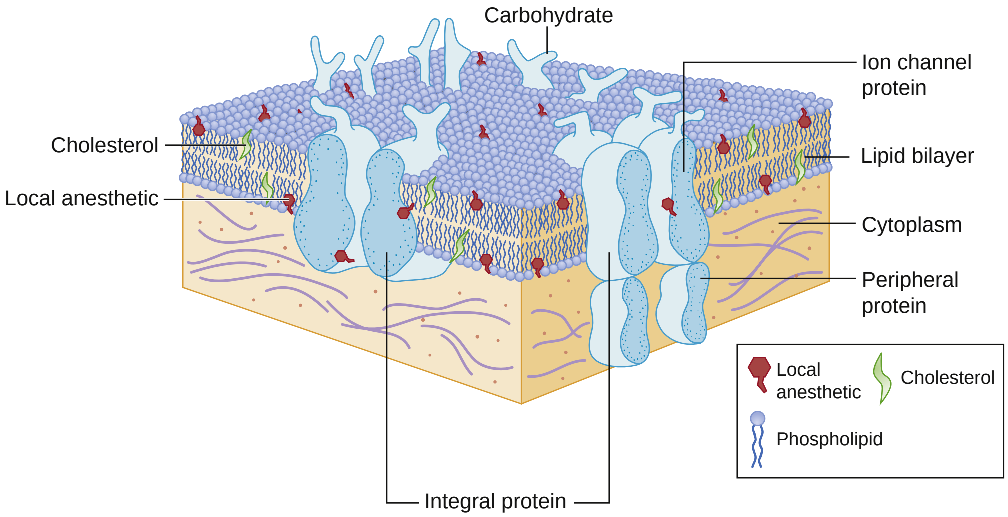


Fig. 29.5 A typical plasma membrane has at its core the lipid bilayer, composed of phospholipids and cholesterol molecules (in an approximately 5:1 ratio) embedding the membrane integral proteins, which are most often glycosylated by extracellular carbohydrates and include receptors and ion channels essential for intercellular communication. “Peripheral proteins” regulate the functions of membrane proteins, chaperone them to the plasma membrane, and stabilize them in the cell through interactions with both the cytoskeleton and the extracellular matrix. Probable membrane locations and protein sites for local anesthetics are also shown.

active, energy-dependent mechanism, sustains the ion gradients that drive this potential difference by constant extrusion of sodium from within the cell in exchange for a net uptake of potassium, with adenosine triphosphate used as an energy source. Although the membrane is relatively permeable to potassium ions, an intracellular-to-extracellular potassium ratio of 150 to 5 mM, or 30:1, is maintained by active removal of potassium as it leaks passively across the plasma membrane into the cell. The nerve at rest behaves largely as a “potassium electrode,” according to the Nernst equation:

$$E_{\mathrm{m}} \approx E_{\mathrm{k}} = \left(\frac{-\mathrm{RT}}{F}\right) \ \ln \ \left(\frac{[\mathrm{K}^+]_{\mathrm{i}}}{[\mathrm{K}^+]_{\mathrm{o}}}\right)$$

where E_m is the membrane potential, E_K is the potassium equilibrium potential, R is the gas constant, T is temperature (kelvin), F is Faraday’s constant, and $[K^+]$ is the potassium ion concentration inside (i) and outside (o) the cell. For potassium, therefore,

$$E_{\mathrm{k}} = -58 \ \log \ 30 \ \text{ or } \ -85.7 \ \text{mV}$$

An opposite situation exists for Na^+, which is at higher concentration outside the cell and has a Nernst potential, E_{Na}, of approximately +60 mV. During an action potential, the nerve membrane transiently switches its higher permeability from K^+ to Na^+, thereby changing the membrane potential from negative to positive, and back again. The progress of this potential change and the underlying events are graphed in Fig. 29.6. They provide a basis for understanding local anesthetic conduction block.

Permeation of ions through membranes occurs via specialized proteins called ion channels.[10] The conformation of these channels is often sensitive to the membrane potential; both Na^+ and K^+ channels in nerve membranes are activated to an “open” conformation by membrane depolarization. Sodium channels, in addition, close to an “inactivated” conformation after their initial activation. A small membrane depolarization extending along an axon from a region of excited membrane, will begin to open both Na^+ and K^+ channels. The Na^+ channels open faster, and the inwardly directed Na^+ current (see Fig. 29.6) depolarizes the membrane further, thereby leading to opening of more Na^+ channels and increasing the inward Na^+ current even further (Fig. 29.7). This sequence of events continues during the *depolarizing phase* until some of the Na^+ channels have become inactivated and enough of the K^+ channels have opened to change the balance of current and result in a net outward current that produces membrane *repolarization* (see Fig. 29.7). After one action potential, the concentrations of Na^+ and K^+ have changed little for the large myelinated fibers but by as much as 10% for the small, nonmyelinated axons. The Na^+ ions entering and K^+ ions leaving the cell as a result of this process are restored by the Na^+/K^+ pump.

Depolarizations too weak to activate enough Na^+ channels to produce a net inward current are below the membrane’s excitability *threshold*. The precise value of the threshold varies in different regions of the cell and can change with time. Directly after an impulse, when some Na^+ channels are still inactivated and some K^+ channels are still activated, the threshold is above its “resting” value and the membrane is “refractory” to stimulation. Over time, as Na^+ inactivation decays and K^+ channels return to their closed conformation, the original resting threshold value is restored. The action potential is a wave of depolarization that is propagated along the axon by continuous coupling between excited and nonexcited regions of membrane. Ionic current (the action current) enters the axon in the excited, depolarized region and then flows down the axoplasm and exits through the surrounding membrane, thereby passively depolarizing this adjacent region (see Fig. 29.3).

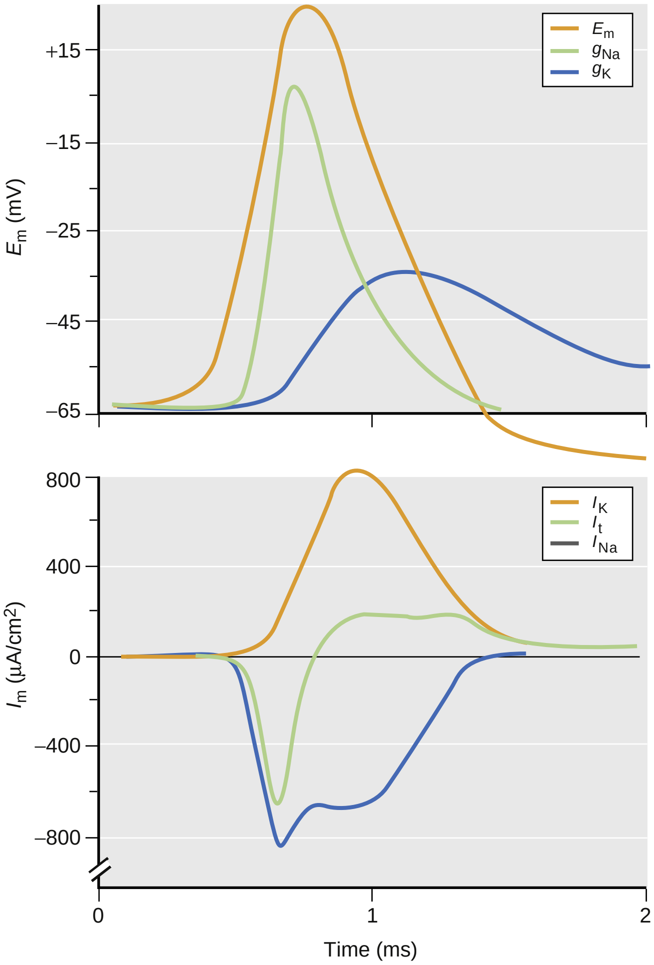


Fig. 29.6 Membrane potential *(E_m)* and the voltage-gated ionic conductance of sodium *(g_{Na})* and potassium *(g_K)*, which determine the corresponding membrane currents I_m (I_{Na} and I_K) during a propagated action potential. Modeled from the original studies of Hodgkin and Huxley on the squid giant axon (see Hodgkin[7b]), these relationships hold for almost all invertebrate and vertebrate nerve fibers. The direction of the total ionic current *(I_t)*, which is the sum of I_{Na} and I_K, is inward (negative values) for the depolarizing phase of the action potential and outward (positive values) for the repolarizing phase. (From Hodgkin A. *The Conduction of the Nervous Impulse*. Springfield, IL: Charles C. Thomas; 1964.)

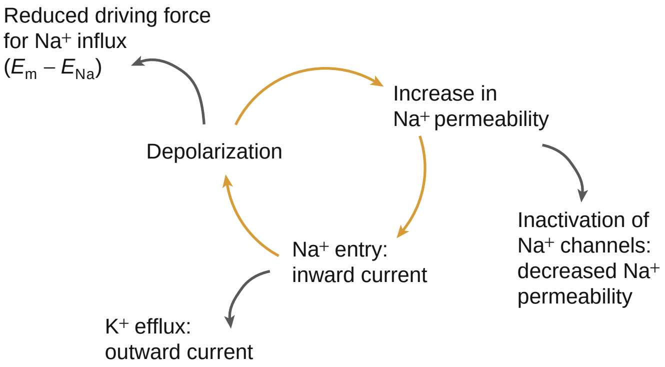


Fig. 29.7 The action potential can be understood in terms of the cyclic relationships between factors contributing to the regenerative, depolarizing phase and the passive, repolarizing phase. Positive factors *(yellow arrows)* increase the rate of depolarization in a positive-feedback loop, with each element in the cycle favoring the subsequent one. Negative factors *(gray arrows)* decrease the depolarization rate by reducing or opposing the related positive factor, with efflux of K^+ eventually dominating the ionic flow and repolarizing the membrane.

Although this *local circuit current* spreads away from the excited zone in both directions, the region behind the impulse, having just been depolarized, is absolutely refractory, and propagation of impulses is thus unidirectional. The local circuit current spreads rapidly along a length of insulated internode in a myelinated axon (see Fig. 29.3), and many nodes of Ranvier in sequence are depolarized to threshold with little intervening delay. Single impulses do not jump from node to node as separate, discrete events; instead, active depolarization occurs simultaneously along several centimeters of the largest axons (see Fig. 29.3). Indeed, the local circuit current is so robust that it can skip past two completely nonexcitable nodes (e.g., blocked by local anesthetic) and successfully stimulate a third node. If excitability is partially reduced, such as by inhibition of some of the Na^+ channels, the amplitude of impulses in successive nodes falls accordingly, a process that can continue for many centimeters.[11] This situation probably occurs during certain phases of local anesthesia, as discussed later. When enough of the Na^+ channels are blocked, local circuit current fails to bring the adjacent resting region to threshold, and the impulse is fully extinguished.

Mechanism of Action of Local Anesthetics (Pharmacodynamics)

ACTIVE FORM

Local anesthetic bases are poorly to sparingly soluble in water but are quite soluble in relatively hydrophobic organic solvents. Therefore as a matter of chemistry (and to optimize shelf life), most of these drugs are formulated as hydrochloride salts. The pK_a of the drug and tissue pH determine the amount of drug that exists in solution as free base or as positively charged cation when injected into living tissue (see earlier). Furthermore, uptake of the drug by tissue, largely via lipophilic adsorption, will also alter its activity, both by shifting the effective pK_a downward, thereby favoring the neutral base form, and by limiting diffusion of the anesthetic away from the site of injection. Moderately hydrophobic local anesthetics block faster than either hydrophilic or highly hydrophobic ones, delivered at the same concentration, for the following reasons. Moderately hydrophilic local anesthetic block, such as lidocaine, are less bound to tissues than very hydrophobic drugs are (e.g., tetracaine) but are still more membrane permeant than very hydrophilic ones (e.g., 2-chloroprocaine). The highly hydrophobic local anesthetics, having higher intrinsic potencies (see Table 29.2), are therefore used in lower concentrations and their diffusion-controlled rate of onset is correspondingly reduced.

Which form of the local anesthetic, charged cation or neutral base, is actually responsible for blockade of impulses? More alkaline solutions of local anesthetics block nerve conduction more effectively. On sheath-free nerves, the rate of inhibition by tertiary amine anesthetics is greater at alkaline than at neutral external pH[12] because membrane permeation, favored by the base over the cationic species, determines the rate of access to the binding site. Direct control of axoplasmic pH (or internal perfusion with permanently charged quaternary amine homologs) shows that the dominant potency derives from the cationic species acting from the cytoplasmic surface.[13,14] The uncharged base also has intrinsic pharmacologic activity, however, which explains the effectiveness of benzocaine as a topical local anesthetic. The local anesthetic attaches to the binding site with its aromatic moiety, while the charged portion protrudes into the sodium channel's lumen.[15]

ELECTROPHYSIOLOGIC EFFECT OF LOCAL ANESTHETICS

The resting membrane potential of nerve is little affected by local anesthetics. As the concentration of local anesthetic applied to the nerve is increased, a decrease in the rate of depolarization and in the peak amplitude of the action potential occurs until the impulse is abolished. By using a "voltage-clamp" procedure, Na^+ currents and their inhibition by local anesthetics can be directly assayed (Fig. 29.8*A*). When the membrane of isolated neurons is rapidly depolarized to a constant value, the time course of ionic currents is observed. Sodium currents during one initial depolarization are reduced by subclinical doses of local anesthetic (e.g., 0.2 mM lidocaine) and totally abolished by clinical doses (e.g., 1% lidocaine ≈40 mM). If the test depolarization is applied repeatedly at frequencies higher than 5 Hz (five pulses per second), the partially depressed (*tonically* inhibited) Na^+ current is further reduced incrementally for each pulse until a new steady-state level of inhibition is reached.[13,16] This frequency-dependent inhibition, also called *phasic inhibition*, is reversed when stimulation is slowed or stopped, and currents return to the level of tonic inhibition observed in the resting nerve. Paralleling the phasic inhibition of Na^+ currents in voltage-clamped membranes is a "use-dependent" blockade of action potentials during normal physiologic function (see Fig. 29.8*B*).

Phasic actions are a manifestation of the selective affinity of local anesthetics for conformations of the Na^+ channel that result from depolarization. Both "open" and "inactivated" states of the channel bind local anesthetics more avidly than the resting state does. Repeated depolarization thus increases the fraction of drug-bound channels; dissociation of these bound drug molecules is usually a slower process than the normal recovery from inactivation (see earlier) and results in the use-dependent accumulation of channels in the blocked condition and the phenomenon of phasic block.

By its selective binding to a channel state, the local anesthetic stabilizes that state. During phasic block, therefore, more inactivated channels become drug bound, and reciprocally, less activation can occur. This relationship between state-dependent affinities and modification of transitions among states through drug binding is known as the "modulated receptor" model.[17] Overall binding of anesthetic is increased by membrane depolarization for two reasons: *more binding sites become accessible* during activation (the "guarded receptor" model) and drug *dissociation* from inactivated channels *is slower* than from resting channels (the modulated receptor model).

The potency of local anesthetics to produce tonic and phasic inhibition is similarly dependent on their structure, hydrophobicity, and pK_a. There appears to be a single, albeit complex, binding site for local anesthetics on the Na^+ channel, with a "tonic" affinity at rest and increased "phasic" affinity occurring as a result of depolarization. The sodium channel can be influenced by a number of drugs or toxins/venoms, and the different sites are numbered. The binding site for local anesthetics is referred to as Site 9, while the outer channel pore, binding site for tetrodotoxin (TTX) or saxitoxin (STX), is referred to as Site 1.

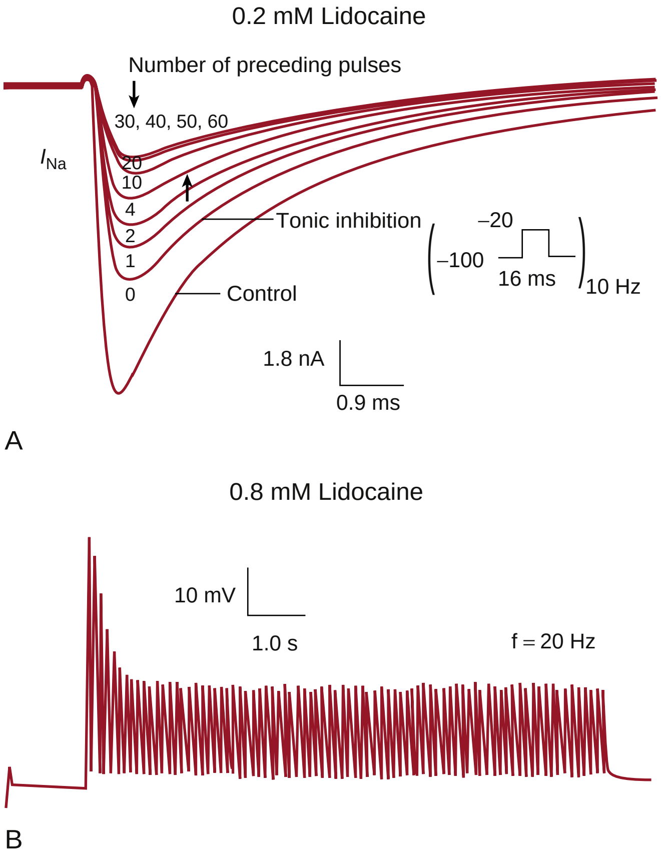


Fig. 29.8 Use-dependent actions of local anesthetics on excitable membrane properties. (A) Ionic Na^+ currents measured by a voltage-clamping technique are transiently activated by brief steps of depolarization applied infrequently (tonic test) or in a train at 10 times per second (phasic test, see E_m pattern in parentheses). After equilibration with 0.2 mM (0.005%) lidocaine, the currents measured tonically are reduced by approximately 30% from the control currents. Application of the phasic train of depolarizations results in a dynamic reduction of currents after each depolarization, with a steady-state value of phasic inhibition reached during the train of 75% of control currents. Recovery of currents to the tonic value occurs within a few seconds when phasic testing stops (not shown). (B) Action potentials are also inhibited in a phasic manner by local anesthetics. After equilibration with 0.8 mM lidocaine (0.02%), the action potential is tonically reduced by approximately 20% from its amplitude in drug-free solution (not shown). Stimulation by a train at 20 stimuli per second induces a phasic inhibition that further reduces the amplitude by about 70% from the control value. As with the ionic currents (A), phasic inhibition of the action potential recovers rapidly when high-frequency stimulation stops.

THE NATURE OF THE LOCAL ANESTHETIC

Binding Site

Intentional mutation of specific amino acids of the Na^+ channel has allowed definition of regions that interact directly with local anesthetics. The major functional protein of the Na^+ channel (the α-subunit) is composed of four homologous "domains" (D-1 to D-4), each of which contains six helical regions (S1 to S6) that span the core of the membrane (Fig. 29.9*A*). Each domain also has a loop, termed the "P region," that links the extracellular ends of its S5 and S6 transmembrane segments; the P regions extend inward between the transmembrane regions such that when the α-subunit folds together, each P loop contributes a quarter of the cylindrical ion "selectivity pore," the narrowest passage of an open channel (see Fig. 29.9*B*). Voltage sensitivity derives from the positive charges located on S4 segments, which slide or swing "outward" in response to membrane depolarization. By linkages still unknown, this movement of S4 results in a conformational rearrangement of the S6 segments, which form the inner, cytoplasmic entry to the channel. Closed-to-open channel gating results from movement of the S6 segments, whereas inactivation gating results from binding of the cytoplasmic loop located between D-3 and D-4 to the cytoplasmic opening of the channel.

Local anesthetics bind in the "inner vestibule" of the closed Na^+ channel (see Fig. 29.9*C*). Amino acid mutations in the S6 segments of D-1, D-3, and D-4 all modify local anesthetic action, thus suggesting either that these regions form a "pharmacophore" small enough to simultaneously contact the drug at three surfaces or that the local anesthetic molecule moves rapidly among these three segments. The rate constant for binding of local anesthetic to

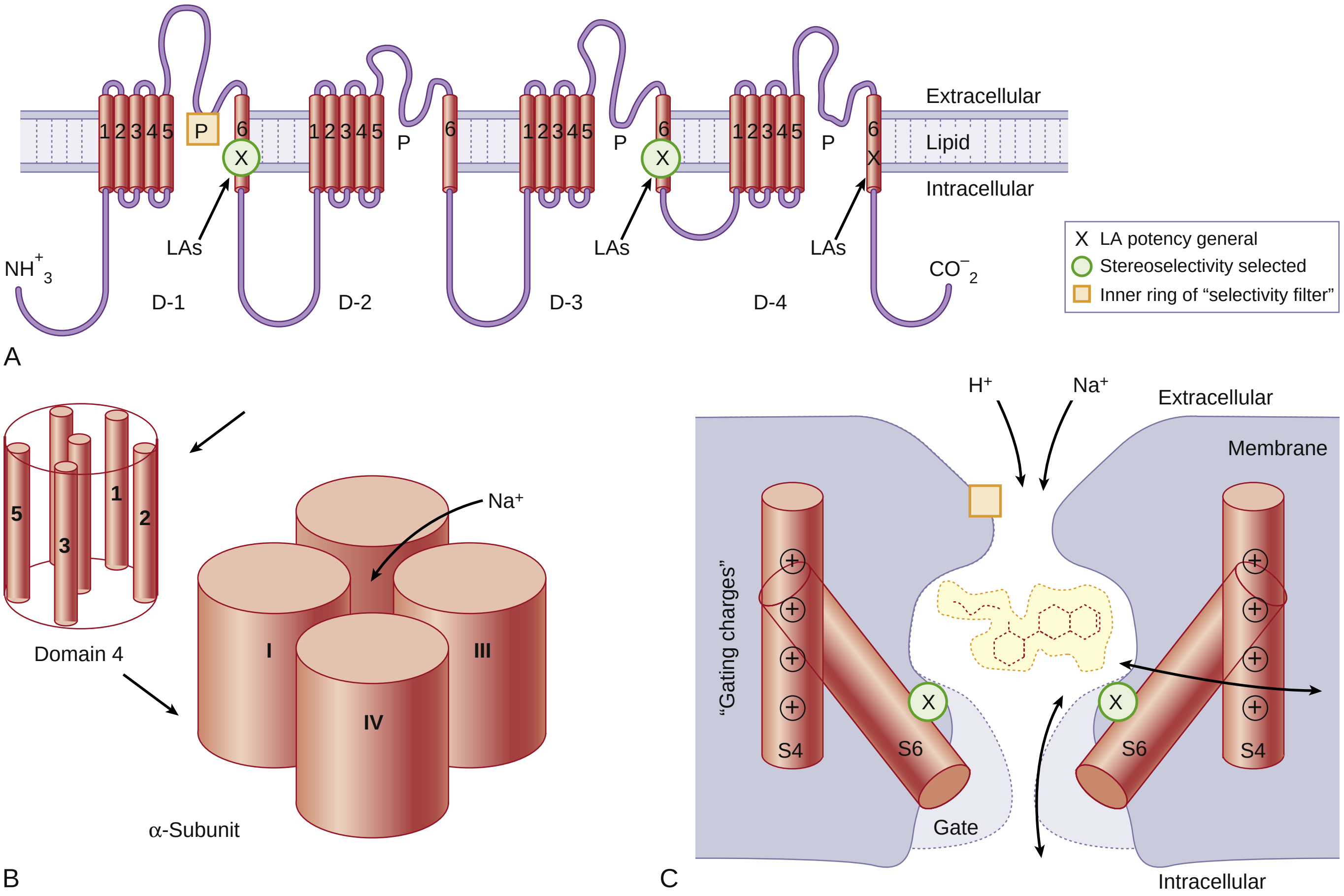


Fig. 29.9 Structural features of the Na^+ channel that determine local anesthetic *(LA)* interactions. (A) Consensus arrangement of the single peptide of the Na^+ channel α-subunit in a plasma membrane. Four domains with homologous sequences (D-1 through D-4) each contain six α-helical segments that span the membrane (S1 to S6). Each domain folds within itself to form one cylindrical bundle of segments, and these bundles converge to form the functional channel's quaternary structure (B). Activation gating leading to channel opening results from primary movement of the positively charged S4 segments in response to membrane depolarization (see panel C). Fast inactivation of the channel follows binding to the cytoplasmic end of the channel of part of the small loop that connects D-3 to D-4. Ions travel through an open channel along a pore defined at its narrowest dimension by the P region formed by partial membrane penetration of the four extracellular loops of protein connecting S5 and S6 in each domain. Intentional, directed mutations of different amino acids on the channel indicate residues that are involved in LA binding in the inner vestibule of the channel (X on S6 segments), at the interior regions of the ion-discriminating "selectivity filter" (*square* on the P region), and which are also known to influence stereoselectivity for phasic inhibition (*circle*, also on S6 segments). (C) Schematic cross section of the channel speculating on the manner in which S6 segments, forming a "gate," may realign during activation to open the channel and allow entry and departure of a bupivacaine molecule by the "hydrophilic" pathway. The closed (inactivated) channel has a more intimate association with the LA molecule, whose favored pathway for dissociation is no longer between S6 segments (the former pore) but now, much more slowly, laterally between segments and then through the membrane, the "hydrophobic" pathway. Na^+ ions entering the pore will compete with the LA for a site in the channel, and H^+ ions, which pass very slowly through the pore, can enter and leave from the extracellular opening, thereby protonating and deprotonating a bound LA molecule and thus regulating its rate of dissociation from the channel.

the closed Na^+ channel is larger for the more hydrophobic molecules, which suggest that drug molecules can reach the binding site (and depart from it) through a "hydrophobic" pathway. The charged species of local anesthetics dissociates much more slowly from closed and inactivated Na^+ channels than the neutral form does, which suggests that an ionic bond may be involved in drug binding or that the charged molecule moves only slowly along the hydrophobic pathway. In brief, hydrophobicity delivers the drug to the receptor and charge keeps it there.

NEUROPHYSIOLOGIC ASPECTS OF PHASIC INHIBITION

Different fiber types in the nerve are affected differently during local anesthesia. At least part of this difference arises from pharmacokinetic factors. At the onset of and during recovery from clinical block, in particular, longitudinal and radial diffusion of drug will produce concentration variations within and along the nerve. This variation is superimposed on the dynamic use-dependent inhibition to provide variable propagation, which depends on a fiber's geometry, position within the nerve, and functional as well as electrophysiologic properties.

Different fiber types are also differentially sensitive to local anesthetic blockade. In vivo experiments in which continuous superperfusion of peripheral nerve allows equilibration with drug, and experiments in which a drug bolus is delivered by percutaneous injection,[18] analogous to clinical peripheral nerve block, show that small myelinated axons (Aγ motor and Aδ sensory fibers) are the most susceptible to impulse suppression. Next in order of block are the large myelinated (Aα and Aβ) fibers, and the least susceptible are the small, nonmyelinated C fibers. In fact, in this last group, impulses in the slowest conducting population (conduction velocity of 0.5-0.8 m/s) are the most resistant to local anesthetic.[18] Clinically, testing of block efficacy is often performed using methods that target Aδ sensory fibers, so these findings suggest that loss of temperature or pin-prick discrimination does not guarantee complete and reliable block of all sensory modalities.

Selective Block of Na^+ Channel Isoforms

Nine different mammalian Na^+ channels have been physiologically identified and their genes have been sequenced. At least four of them are found in peripheral neurons, and some are exclusively associated with nociceptive afferents. Obviously, it would be clinically advantageous to selectively inhibit these channels and thus prevent or reduce pain while sparing other functions. Although selective channel blockade has been attained with naturally occurring small peptide toxins,[19] relatively little selective blockade by local anesthetics has been reported,[20] probably because the local anesthetic pharmacophore is too similar among the different channel isoforms and the local anesthetic molecules themselves have several rotational axes, which makes them poor structural templates for selecting among static binding pockets. Selectively blocking different sodium channel isoforms can lead to distinct effects because they are not evenly distributed across the nerve and react differently to activation. Specifically, one of the main functions of the Nav1.7 isoform is to act as an amplifier in the terminals of primary sensory neurons, while Nav1.8 is vital to the repetitive firing in these neurons, and Nav1.9 is able to generate persistent currents which can increase membrane excitability.[21] Some recent advances which hold promise to improve nerve block properties of local anesthetics are summarized toward the end of this chapter.

Sodium Channel Isoforms and Their Contribution to Human Diseases Characterized by Pain or Pain Insensitivity

We now know several mutations in the prototypical neuronal sodium channels (Nav1.7, 1.8, and 1.9) which can lead to states of either spontaneous pain[22,23] or profound and selective impairment of pain sensitivity.[24] This depends on the type of mutation and mode of inheritance. For example, mutations in Nav1.7 may lead to loss of channel function and, in the most extreme form, congenital insensitivity to pain. In contrast, activating mutations in the same channel can trigger erythromelalgia or paroxysmal extreme pain disorder.[21] Molecular studies reveal that these disorders involve several distinct types of mutations in NaV1.7 sodium channels.[22,23] When these channels are inserted into cells that lack sodium channels, they generate spontaneous, temperature-sensitive inward currents.[21] Another recent finding was that certain preclinical models of visceral pain (e.g., cystitis) are not responsive to therapies specifically targeting the NaV1.7 channels, while block of NaV1.9 channels was effective.[25] Lastly, it is important to note that mutations in nonneuronal sodium channels can have profound clinical consequences as well. For example, mutations of the Nav1.4 sodium channel isoform in skeletal muscle can produce myotonia, periodic paralysis, and congenital myasthenia.[26]

Aberrant impulses, which are often considered the hallmarks of various diseases of excitable membranes, such as abnormal repetitive firing in neuropathic pain or in certain types of inherited skeletal myotonia, are abolished by systemic lidocaine in doses that do not block normal propagating impulses. Conditions for the sensitivity of such impulses to local anesthetics, such as lidocaine, appear to result from the patterns of impulse spikes superimposed on slow membrane depolarizations caused by abnormal expression of Na^+ channels rather than from selective sensitivity of certain subtypes of channels to these drugs.[27]

SUMMARY OF LOCAL ANESTHETIC MECHANISMS

Impulse blockade by local anesthetics may be summarized by the following chronology:

1. Solutions of local anesthetic are deposited near the nerve. Removal of free drug molecules away from this locus is a function of tissue binding, removal by the circulation, and local hydrolysis of aminoester anesthetics. The net result is penetration of the nerve sheath by the remaining free drug molecules.
2. Local anesthetic molecules then permeate the nerve's axon membranes and reside there and in the axoplasm. The speed and extent of these processes depend on a particular drug's pK_a and on the lipophilicity of its base and cation species.

3. Binding of local anesthetic to sites on voltage-gated Na^+ channels prevents opening of the channels by inhibiting the conformational changes that underlie channel activation.
4. During onset of and recovery from local anesthesia, impulse blockade is incomplete and partially blocked fibers are further inhibited by repetitive stimulation, which produces an additional, use-dependent binding to Na^+ channels.
5. One local anesthetic binding site on the Na^+ channel may be sufficient to account for the drug's resting (tonic) and use-dependent (phasic) actions.
6. The clinically observed rates of onset and recovery from blockade are governed by the relatively slow diffusion of local anesthetic molecules into and out of the whole nerve, not by their much faster binding and dissociation from ion channels. A clinically effective block that may last for hours can be accomplished with local anesthetic drugs that dissociate from Na^+ channels in a few seconds.

Clinical Pharmacology

Successful use of regional anesthesia requires knowledge of the pharmacologic properties of the various local anesthetic drugs, as well as technical skill in performance of the nerve block. Local anesthetic requirements vary considerably, depending on factors such as the type of block, surgical procedure, and physiologic status of the patient.

Commonly used aminoester local anesthetics include procaine, chloroprocaine, tetracaine, and the first true local anesthetic, cocaine. Commonly used aminoamides include lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine, bupivacaine (the racemic form and its levoenantiomer), ropivacaine, and etidocaine. The ester and amide local anesthetics differ in their chemical stability, locus of biotransformation, and allergic potential. Amides are extremely stable, whereas esters are relatively unstable in solution. Aminoesters are hydrolyzed in plasma by cholinesterase enzymes, but the amides undergo enzymatic degradation in the liver. Two exceptions to this trend include cocaine, an ester that is metabolized predominantly by hepatic carboxylesterase, and articaine, an amide local anesthetic widely used in dentistry that is inactivated by plasma carboxylesterase-induced cleavage of a methyl ester on the aromatic ring.

p-Aminobenzoic acid is one of the metabolites of ester-type compounds that can induce allergic-type reactions in a small percentage of patients. The aminoamides are not metabolized to *p*-aminobenzoic acid, and reports of allergic reactions to these agents are extremely rare.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Clinically important properties of the various local anesthetics include potency, speed of onset, duration of anesthetic action, and differential sensory/motor blockade. As previously indicated, the profile of individual drugs is determined by their physicochemical characteristics (see Table 29.2).

Anesthetic Potency

Hydrophobicity appears to be a primary determinant of intrinsic anesthetic potency[5] because the anesthetic molecule must penetrate into the nerve membrane and bind at a partially hydrophobic site on the Na^+ channel. Clinically, however, the correlation between hydrophobicity and anesthetic potency is not as precise as in an isolated nerve. Differences between in vitro and in vivo potency may be related to a number of factors, including local anesthetic charge and hydrophobicity (which influence partitioning into and transverse diffusion across biologic membranes) and vasodilator or vasoconstrictor properties (which influence the initial rate of vascular uptake from injection sites into the central circulation).

Onset of Action

The onset of conduction block in isolated nerves is related to the physicochemical properties of the individual agents. In vivo latency is also dependent on the dose or concentration of local anesthetic used. For example, 0.75% bupivacaine has more rapid onset than 0.25%. Chloroprocaine demonstrates a rapid onset of action in humans because its low systemic toxicity permits its use in high concentrations (3%).

Duration of Action

The duration of action of the various local anesthetics differs markedly. Procaine and chloroprocaine have a short duration of action. Lidocaine, mepivacaine, and prilocaine produce a moderate duration of anesthesia, whereas tetracaine, bupivacaine, ropivacaine, and etidocaine have the longest durations.

In humans, the duration of anesthesia is markedly influenced by the peripheral vascular effects of the local anesthetic drugs. Many local anesthetics have a biphasic effect on vascular smooth muscle; at low concentrations these agents tend to cause vasoconstriction, whereas at higher, clinically administered concentrations, they cause vasodilation.[28] However, differences exist in the degree of vasodilator activity of the various drugs. The effects of local anesthetics on vascular tone and regional blood flow are complex and vary according to concentration, time, and the particular vascular bed near the site of application. As a practical example, the topical local anesthetic formulation EMLA (eutectic mixture of the local anesthetics lidocaine and prilocaine) vasoconstricts cutaneous vessels initially and through most of the first hour of application, but vasodilation is observed after 2 or more hours of application.

Differential Sensory and Motor Blockade

Another important clinical consideration is the ability of local anesthetic agents to cause differential inhibition of sensory and motor activity. Bupivacaine became popular in the 1980s for epidural blocks because it was better than the previously available long-acting agents (e.g., etidocaine) in producing adequate antinociception without profound inhibition of motor activity, particularly when dilute solutions are used. Bupivacaine is widely used epidurally for obstetric analgesia and postoperative pain management because it can provide acceptable analgesia with only mild muscle weakness. Additional observations on the sensory selectivity of newer local anesthetics are detailed later in the section on chiral local anesthetics.

Traditional texts often state that small-diameter axons, such as C fibers, are more susceptible to local anesthetic block than larger-diameter fibers. However, when careful measurements are made of single-impulse annihilation in individual nerve fibers, exactly the opposite differential susceptibility is noted (see earlier).[29,30] Repetitive stimulation, such as occurs during propagation of trains of impulses, produces further, phasic inhibition of excitability, but it is not clear how this will affect a functionally selective failure of impulses. The length of drug-exposed nerve in the intrathecal space, imposed by anatomic restrictions, can perhaps explain clinically documented differential spinal or epidural blockade, with longer drug-exposed regions yielding block by lower concentrations of local anesthetic.[31] However, this reasoning does not explain the functionally differential loss from peripheral nerve block. Other factors may include actual spread of the drug along the nerve or its selective ability to inhibit Na^+ channels over K^+ channels,[32] which in itself can produce a differential block because these channels are present in very different proportions in different types of nerves. As a result of these confounding factors, conclusions about fiber-type involvement in chronic pain syndromes based on the dose or concentration requirement for pain relief in diagnostic nerve blockade should not be made.[33]

FACTORS INFLUENCING ANESTHETIC ACTIVITY IN HUMANS

Dosage of Local Anesthetic

As the dosage of local anesthetic is increased, the probability and duration of satisfactory anesthesia increases and the time to onset of block is shortened. The dosage of local anesthetic can be increased by administering either a larger volume or a more concentrated solution. For example, increasing the concentration of epidurally administered bupivacaine from 0.125% to 0.5% while maintaining the same volume of injectate (10 mL) resulted in shorter latency, an improved incidence of satisfactory analgesia, and a longer duration of sensory analgesia.[34] The volume per se of anesthetic solution probably influences the spread of anesthesia. For example, 30 mL of 1% lidocaine administered into the epidural space produced a level of anesthesia that was 4.3 dermatomes higher than that achieved when 10 mL of 3% lidocaine was given.

In selecting the volume and concentration for a specific block in a particular patient, clinicians must balance the risk of adverse effects from excessive dosing (e.g., systemic toxicity, excessive motor or autonomic blockade) against the increased risk of block failure if an inadequate volume or concentration is chosen. The degree to which additional volume can compensate for imprecise needle placement varies among different blocks. With the advent of very precise needle placement using ultrasound-guided blockade, it has become clear that the median effective volume for obtaining successful blockade can be achieved with smaller volumes than have been recommended from some previous clinical series based on traditional methods of needle localization. For example, in a recent dose-finding randomized trial for femoral nerve blockade, the median volumes for 50% or 95% success in obtaining dense sensory and motor block at 30 minutes under ultrasound guidance were 57% and 54% of the corresponding volumes with the use of nerve stimulation.[35] Interested readers will note the very wide confidence intervals found in this study and are encouraged to read recent work on some statistical design issues for dose-response studies involving all types of anesthetics.[36] As limited by toxicity considerations, the aim in most clinical situations should be to choose doses that provide high success rates; that is, an effective dose (ED) in 95% of patients (ED_{95}) is generally a more relevant guide to dose selection than an ED_{50} dose. These considerations are especially salient when performing regional anesthesia for patients with chronic pain, hyperalgesia, or a history of previous failed regional anesthesia. Also, decreasing the dose substantially may provide a satisfactory block after 30 minutes (a common endpoint for clinical studies), but at the same time, the block may have a decreased duration of action. Duration of action is important such that the block will cover the intensely painful period after surgery, and if this period is longer than could be achieved using plain local anesthetics, and in cases where continuous techniques are not feasible, adjuvants/additives may help in prolonging the block.

Addition of Additives

Epinephrine. Vasoconstrictors, usually epinephrine, are frequently included in local anesthetic solutions to decrease the rate of vascular absorption, thereby allowing more anesthetic molecules to reach the nerve membrane and thus improve the depth and duration of anesthesia. The use of epinephrine as a marker for inadvertent intravascular injection continues to be sensible, even though false negatives and false positives can occur, such as difficulty in interpretation for specific patient groups as with parturients and patients under anesthesia or on β-blockers.[37] Clinically used solutions typically contain 5 μg/mL or 1:200,000 of epinephrine, reflecting a balance between efficacy and vasoconstriction versus systemic side effects of epinephrine. The extent to which epinephrine prolongs the duration of anesthesia depends on the specific local anesthetic used and the site of injection. Epinephrine will significantly extend the duration of both infiltration anesthesia and peripheral nerve blockade with shorter-duration agents (e.g., lidocaine); epinephrine produces mild intensification of blockade but only most modest prolongation of epidural or peripheral blocks with bupivacaine.[36] Activation of α_2-adrenergic receptors in the spinal cord may contribute to the beneficial effect of epidural epinephrine.

Clonidine and Dexmedetomidine. The α-2 agonist clonidine prolongs the action of local anesthetics by about 2 hours with wide variation between studies[38], and its conjectured mechanisms of action include actions on α-2 receptors and on hyperpolarization-induced currents.[39] However, there is a large number of negative studies, and adverse systemic events are of concern, including hypotension, bradycardia, and sedation, such that limiting the clonidine dose to 0.5 to 1 μg/kg of ideal body weight has been proposed. Dexmedetomidine is a much more specific α-2 agonist, and prolongs both motor and sensory block by long-acting local anesthetics by approximately 4 hours.[40] Similar to clonidine, dexmedetomidine has also been shown to block the hyperpolarization-induced current.[41]

Nevertheless, risk of systemic adverse effects remains high, and optimal doses have not been determined. There seems to be no increased risk of neurotoxicity when clonidine or dexmedetomidine are used as nerve block adjuvants.

Buprenorphine. The partial μ-opiate receptor agonist, buprenorphine, intensifies blockade by two mechanisms, namely blockade of κ- and δ-opioid receptors, and blockade of voltage-gated sodium channel-blocking properties.[42] Blockade by long-acting local anesthetics is prolonged by about 6 hours, but at the price of a high incidence of nausea and vomiting, such that the use of buprenorphine has largely been abandoned.[43] Buprenorphine is considered safe in terms of neurotoxicity.

Dexamethasone. The most effective adjuvant for prolonging block duration with minimal side effects currently available is dexamethasone, able to prolong duration of medium-acting local anesthetics by 2 to 3 hours, and the block of long-acting local anesthetics by up to 10 hours on average.[44] Blocks can be prolonged by intravenous or perineural administration of dexamethasone. Despite the fact that perineural administration of dexamethasone seems to be more effective than systemic use, many providers use systemic dexamethasone to avoid mixing drugs which were not designed to be administered together, circumvent the problem of off-label perineural use, and profit from the antiemetic effects of systemic dexamethasone. Doses between 4 and 10 mg have typically been used in adults.[45] The precise mechanism of action of dexamethasone is not understood and the potential for neurotoxic side effects has not been adequately studied.

Site of Injection

The most rapid onset but the shortest duration of action occurs after intrathecal or subcutaneous administration of local anesthetics. The longest latencies and durations are observed after conventional non–ultrasound-guided large-volume brachial plexus blocks. For example, intrathecal bupivacaine will usually produce anesthesia within 5 minutes that will persist for 3 to 4 hours. However, when bupivacaine is administered for brachial plexus blockade, the onset time is approximately 20 to 30 minutes, and the duration of anesthesia (or at least analgesia) averages 10 hours.[46] These differences in the onset and duration of anesthesia and analgesia are due in part to the particular anatomy of the area of injection, which will influence the rate of diffusion and vascular absorption and, in turn, affect the amount of drug used for various types of regional anesthesia. In the subarachnoid space, for example, the lack of a nerve sheath around the spinal cord and deposition of the local anesthetic solution in the immediate vicinity of the spinal cord are responsible for the rapid onset of action, whereas the relatively small amount of drug used for spinal anesthesia probably accounts for the short duration of conduction block.

In contrast, the onset of brachial plexus blockade is slow because the anesthetic agent is usually deposited at some distance from the nerve and must diffuse through various tissue barriers before reaching the nerve membrane. The prolonged block with brachial plexus blockade may be related to several factors, including comparatively slow rates of vascular absorption from the brachial plexus sheath, larger doses of drug required for this regional anesthetic technique, and comparatively long segments of nerves exposed to local anesthetic.

Carbonation and pH Adjustment of Local Anesthetics

The addition of sodium bicarbonate to a solution of local anesthetic applied to an isolated nerve accelerates the onset and decreases the minimum concentration (C_m) required for conduction blockade by increasing pH and increasing the share of uncharged local anesthetic molecules that can more easily diffuse into the nerve cell.[47] Although the effect of carbon dioxide on local anesthetic activity is easily demonstrable in isolated nerve, controversy exists concerning the clinical utility of carbonated local anesthetic solutions[48] and the widespread introduction of ultrasound-guided nerve blockade with faster and more reliable block onset has decreased the relevance of carbonation, at least for peripheral nerve blockade.

Mixtures of Local Anesthetics

Mixtures of local anesthetics for regional anesthesia are sometimes used in an effort to compensate for the short duration of action of certain rapidly acting agents such as chloroprocaine and lidocaine, and the long latency of longer-acting agents such as tetracaine and bupivacaine. Mixtures of chloroprocaine and bupivacaine theoretically offer significant clinical advantages because of the rapid onset and low systemic toxicity of chloroprocaine and the long duration of action of bupivacaine; however, clinical results in studies of combinations have been mixed.[49] The use of catheter techniques for many forms of regional anesthesia makes it possible to begin with a rapid-onset local anesthetic such as lidocaine, mepivacaine, or chloroprocaine and then follow with an infusion of either a shorter-acting or longer-acting local anesthetic thereafter. Clinicians should be cautioned to not use maximum doses of two local anesthetics in combination in the mistaken belief that their toxicities are independent.[50] Toxicity in fact, is additive. Moreover, the use of ultrasound-guided nerve blockade has, in general, led to a decreased onset time and has made mixing local anesthetics less clinically relevant.

Pregnancy

The spread and depth of epidural and spinal anesthesia are greater in pregnant than in nonpregnant women. The effects of pregnancy on local anesthetic potency may reflect a combined effect of mechanical factors associated with pregnancy (i.e., dilated epidural veins decrease the volume of the epidural and subarachnoid spaces) and direct effects of hormones, especially progesterone, on the susceptibility of nerves to conduction blockade by local anesthetics.[51] Hormonal alterations are probably the more important of these two factors because greater spread of epidural anesthesia is already observed during the first trimester of pregnancy,[52] before any gross change in vascular dimensions within the epidural or subarachnoid spaces. The dosage of local anesthetics should probably be reduced in patients in all stages of pregnancy.

Choice of Local Anesthetic for Various Regional Anesthetic Procedures

On the basis of anatomic considerations, regional anesthesia may be divided into infiltration anesthesia, intravenous regional anesthesia (IVRA), peripheral nerve blockade (including plexus blockade), central neural blockade, and topical anesthesia. An additional method of local anesthetic injection, tumescent anesthesia, is included because it is widely used in office-based plastic surgery.

INFILTRATION ANESTHESIA

Any local anesthetic may be used for infiltration anesthesia. Onset of action is almost immediate for all agents after intradermal or subcutaneous administration; however, the duration of anesthesia varies (Table 29.4). Epinephrine will prolong the duration of infiltration anesthesia by all local anesthetic drugs, although this effect is most pronounced when epinephrine is added to lidocaine. The choice of a specific drug for infiltration anesthesia largely depends on the desired duration of action.

The dosage of local anesthetic required for adequate infiltration anesthesia depends on the extent of the area to be anesthetized and the expected duration of the surgical procedure. When large surface areas have to be anesthetized, large volumes of dilute anesthetic solutions should be used. These considerations are particularly important when performing infiltration anesthesia in infants and smaller children. As an example, consider a 4-kg infant receiving infiltration anesthesia with the maximum safe dose of lidocaine, 5 mg/kg. Dosing to 5 mg/kg permits 20 mg/4 kg, which is 1 mL of a 2% solution or 4 mL of a 0.5% solution. Lidocaine is effective for infiltration in concentrations as dilute as 0.3% to 0.5%, so the more dilute solution can be used more safely to anesthetize a larger area.

Patients frequently experience pain immediately after subcutaneous injection of local anesthetic solutions, in part because of the acidic nature of these solutions, and in part because lidocaine briefly activates transient receptor potential vanilloid-1 (TRPV-1) and transient receptor potential ankyrin-1 (TRPA-1) channels, causing pain, before sodium channel block subsequently silences the neuron.[53] Alkalinization of lidocaine solutions by the addition of sodium bicarbonate immediately before injection reduces pain on skin infiltration[54] and may improve onset (see earlier).

Infiltration analgesia and indwelling wound catheters are used increasingly as components of multimodal postoperative analgesia.[55-57] In particular, sustained-release formulations such as Exparel have been introduced into clinical practice (see the section Development of Prolonged-Duration and Sensory- or Nociceptive-Selective Local Anesthetics).

INTRAVENOUS REGIONAL ANESTHESIA

IVRA (Bier's block) involves the intravenous administration of a local anesthetic into a tourniquet-occluded limb. The local anesthetic diffuses from the peripheral vascular bed to nonvascular tissue such as axons and nerve endings. Both the safety and the efficacy of this regional anesthetic procedure depend on interruption of blood flow to the involved limb and gradual release of the occluding tourniquet.

Lidocaine and prilocaine have been the drugs used most frequently for IVRA. Drugs with a high cardiotoxic potential such as bupivacaine should not be used for IVRA. One might suppose a safety advantage with the aminoester-linked compounds because of their hydrolysis in blood; however, thrombophlebitis has been reported with chloroprocaine. In general, approximately 3 mg/kg (40 mL of a 0.5% solution) of preservative-free lidocaine without epinephrine is used for upper extremity procedures. For surgical procedures on the lower limbs, 50 to 100 mL of a 0.25% lidocaine solution have been used. Even though the safety profile of IVRA is considered very good, seizures have been reported with lidocaine doses as low as 1.4 mg/kg of lidocaine, and cardiovascular collapse (CC) can occur.[58]

TABLE 29.4 Infiltration Anesthesia

	PLAIN SOLUTION			EPINEPHRINE-CONTAINING SOLUTION	
Drug	**Concentration (%)**	**Maximum Dose (mg)**	**Duration (min)**	**Maximum Dose (mg)**	**Duration (min)**
SHORT DURATION					
Procaine	1-2	500	20-30	600	30-45
Chloroprocaine	1-2	800	15-30	1000	30
MODERATE DURATION					
Lidocaine	0.5-1	300	30-60	500	120
Mepivacaine	0.5-1	300	45-90	500	120
Prilocaine	0.5-1	350	30-90	550	120
LONG DURATION					
Bupivacaine	0.25-0.5	175	120-240	200	180-240
Ropivacaine	0.2-0.5	200	120-240	250	180-240

PERIPHERAL AND TRUNCAL NERVE BLOCKADE

Regional anesthetic procedures that inhibit conduction in fibers of the peripheral nervous system can be classified together under the general category of peripheral nerve blockade. This form of regional anesthesia has been arbitrarily subdivided into minor and major nerve blocks. Minor nerve blocks are defined as procedures involving single nerve entities such as the ulnar or radial nerve, whereas major nerve blocks involve the blockade of two or more distinct nerves or a nerve plexus or the blockade of very large nerves at more proximal sites (i.e., the femoral and sciatic nerves).

Most local anesthetic drugs can be used for minor nerve blocks. The onset of blockade is rapid with most drugs, and the choice of drug is determined primarily by the required duration of anesthesia. A classification of the various drugs according to their duration of action is shown in Table 29.5. It has become possible to define the minimum local anesthetic volume for ultrasound-guided peripheral nerve blockade and across several nerves; the volume was approximately 0.1 mL per mm^2 of nerve cross-sectional area.[59,60] However, as mentioned earlier, minimal volume to achieve sensory blockade 30 minutes after block may also mean decreased duration of the block as compared to "traditional" high volumes clinicians were accustomed to using during stimulator-guided regional anesthesia.

Brachial plexus blockade for upper limb surgery is the most common major peripheral nerve block technique, but many lower extremity procedures are now carried out under peripheral nerve blocks for anesthesia or postoperative analgesia. A significant difference exists between the onset times of various agents when these blocks are used (Table 29.6). In general, agents of intermediate potency exhibit a more rapid onset than the more potent compounds do.

Next to surgeries on the upper and lower extremities, peripheral nerve blocks have become popular for treating pain after thoracic and abdominal procedures. In the case of superficial thoracic surgery such as breast surgery, field blocks such as the PECS-1 and PECS-2 and Serratus plane block have been successfully used. Proximal intercostal nerve blocks and paravertebral blocks are also employed for mastectomies and reconstructions by some institutions, but more research is needed to define efficacy, precise indications, and procedure-specific details of technique.[61] Paravertebral and proximal intercostal techniques appear equally effective as epidural analgesia in treating pain after video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery (VATS) and thoracotomy and have fewer side effects.[62]

PERINEURAL AND PLEXUS INFUSIONS

Local anesthetics are being administered by continuous infusion for several days after surgery[56,63] or for periods of weeks to months for the treatment of chronic malignant and

TABLE 29.5 Minor Nerve Blocks

				AVERAGE DURATION (MIN)	
Drug	**Usual Concentration (%)**	**Usual Volume (mL)**	**Dose* (mg)**	**Plain Solutions**	**Epinephrine-Containing Solutions**
Procaine	2	5-20	100-400	15-30	30-60
Chloroprocaine	2	5-20	100-400	15-30	30-60
Lidocaine	1	5-20	50-200	60-120	120-180
Mepivacaine	1	5-20	50-200	60-120	120-180
Prilocaine	1	5-20	50-200	60-120	120-180
Bupivacaine	0.25-0.5	5-20	12.5-100	180-360	240-420
Ropivacaine	0.2-0.5	5-20	10-100	180-360	240-420

*Doses are for a 70-kg adult. For pediatric doses, see Chapter 76.

TABLE 29.6 Major Nerve Blocks

Drug	**Usual Concentration (%)**	**Usual Volume (mL)**	**Maximum Dose (mg) Without/With Epinephrine**	**Onset (min)**	**Duration (min)**
Lidocaine	1-2	30-50	350/500	10-20	120-240
Mepivacaine	1-1.5	30-50	350/500	10-20	180-300
Prilocaine	1-2	30-50	400/600	10-20	180-300
Bupivacaine	0.25-0.5	30-50	175/225	20-30	360-720
Levobupivacaine	0.25-0.5	30-50	200/225	20-30	360-720
Ropivacaine	0.2-0.5	30-50	200/250	20-30	360-720

See also Chapter 46. Doses are for a 70-kg adult receiving epinephrine-containing solutions. Doses should be reduced for children, for patients with specific risk factors, and for blocks in specific locations (e.g., interscalene). When two or more blocks are performed together, the sum of the doses for each of the individual blocks should not exceed the max dose listed here.

nonmalignant pain. However, because of the poor sensory selectivity of contemporary local anesthetics, prolonged use of catheters at times conflicts with the paradigm of fast mobilization, especially as neuraxial and lower extremity techniques are concerned. With prolonged infusions there is a theoretical potential for delayed systemic accumulation and toxicity. However, the activation of the acute-phase response after trauma or surgery also leads to an increase in α-1 acidic glycoprotein, which is potent at binding free local anesthetics and decreases the risk of cumulation of free local anesthetic.[64]

CENTRAL NEURAL BLOCKADE

Any of the local anesthetic drugs may be used for epidural anesthesia (Table 29.7), although procaine and tetracaine are rarely used because of their long onset times. Drugs of intermediate potency produce surgical anesthesia of 1 to 2 hours' duration, whereas long-acting drugs usually produce 3 to 4 hours of anesthesia. The duration of short- and intermediate-acting drugs is significantly prolonged by the addition of epinephrine (1:200,000), but the duration of long-acting drugs is only minimally affected by epinephrine. The onset of lumbar epidural anesthesia occurs within 5 to 15 minutes after the administration of chloroprocaine, lidocaine, mepivacaine, and prilocaine. Bupivacaine has a slower onset of action.

Bupivacaine epidural bolus doses at a concentration of 0.125% produce adequate postoperative analgesia in many clinical settings with only mild motor deficits.[65] Continuous epidural infusions of bupivacaine as dilute as 0.0625% to 0.1% are useful for labor epidural analgesia, especially when administered in combination with opioids and epinephrine. Bupivacaine 0.25% may be used for more intense analgesia (particularly during combined epidural-general anesthesia cases) with moderate degrees of motor block. Bupivacaine at concentrations of 0.5% to 0.75% is associated with a more profound degree of motor block, and surgical anesthesia. It should be emphasized that although high concentrations of local anesthetics may be appropriate for episodic bolus dosing for surgery, these concentrations (i.e., 0.25% for bupivacaine) should not be first choice for continuous epidural infusions. In some patients, increasing the local anesthetic dose or addition of adjuvants such as epinephrine and lipophilic opioids is necessary to achieve adequate block intensity. Bolus injections produce much more cephalocaudad spread than continuous infusions do. When concentrated bupivacaine solutions are used for infusions, they have the potential for excessive local effect with an associated risk for unwanted and very prolonged motor blockade. Drugs available for subarachnoid administration are shown in Table 29.8. Bupivacaine is widely used as a spinal anesthetic, either as a hyperbaric solution at a concentration of 0.75% with 8.25% dextrose or by using the nearly isobaric (though slightly hypobaric) 0.5% solution. Intrathecal bupivacaine possesses an anesthetic profile similar to that of tetracaine.[66]

The addition of vasoconstrictors may prolong the duration of spinal anesthesia; for example, the addition of 0.2 to 0.3 mg of epinephrine to lidocaine, tetracaine, or bupivacaine solutions will produce a 50% or greater increase in duration.[67,68] The duration of spinal anesthesia produced by tetracaine can also be increased to a similar extent by adding 1 to 5 μg of phenylephrine. The addition of epinephrine to bupivacaine or lidocaine may be more effective in prolonging the duration of spinal anesthesia in lumbosacral segments than in thoracic segments.

TOPICAL ANESTHESIA

A number of local anesthetic formulations are available for topical anesthesia (Table 29.9), lidocaine, dibucaine, tetracaine, and benzocaine being the drugs used most commonly. In general, these preparations provide effective but relatively short durations of analgesia when applied to mucous membranes or abraded skin. Their efficacy is determined by drug form, melting point, concentration, and skin permeability.[69] Lidocaine and tetracaine sprays are commonly used for endotracheal anesthesia before intubation or for mucosal analgesia for bronchoscopy or esophagoscopy.

A variety of topical local anesthetic formulations have been developed to penetrate intact skin. EMLA, which is a eutectic mixture of 2.5% lidocaine base and 2.5% prilocaine base, is widely used for venipuncture, intravenous cannulation, skin grafting, and a range of other uses, including circumcision.[70] This preparation must be applied under an occlusive bandage for 45 to 60 minutes to obtain effective

TABLE 29.7 Epidural Anesthesia

Drug With Epinephrine (1:200,000)	Usual Concentration (%)	Usual Volume (mL)	Maximum Dose (mg) Without/With Epinephrine	Usual Onset (min)	Usual Duration (min)
Chloroprocaine	2-3	15-30	700/900	5-15	30-90
Lidocaine	1-2	15-30	350/500	5-15	
Mepivacaine	1-2	15-30	350/500	5-15	60-180
Prilocaine	1-3	15-30	350/500	5-15	
Bupivacaine	0.25-0.5	15-30	175/225	15-20	180-350
Levobupivacaine	0.25-0.75	15-30	200/250	15-20	180-350
Ropivacaine	0.2-0.75	15-30	200/250	15-20	180-350

See also Chapter 45. Doses are for a 70-kg adult receiving epinephrine-containing solutions. Doses should be reduced for children, for patients with specific risk factors, and for specific catheter tip locations (e.g., upper thoracic).

TABLE 29.8 Spinal Anesthesia

Drug	Usual Concentration (%)	Usual Volume (mL)	Total Dose (mg)	Baricity	Glucose Concentration (%)	Usual Duration (min)
Procaine	10.0	1-2	100-200	Hyperbaric	5.0	30-60
Lidocaine	1.5, 5.0	1-2	30-100	Hyperbaric	7.5	30-90
Mepivacaine	4.0	1-2	40-80	Hyperbaric	9.0	30-90
Tetracaine	0.25-1.0	1-4	5-20	Hyperbaric	5.0	90-200
	0.25	2-6	5-20	Hypobaric		90-200
	1.0	1-2	5-20	Isobaric		90-200
Dibucaine	0.25	1-2	2.5-5.0	Hyperbaric	5.0	90-200
	0.5	1-2	5-10	Isobaric		90-200
	0.06	5-20	3-12	Hypobaric		90-200
Bupivacaine	0.5	3-4	15-20	Isobaric		90-200
	0.75	2-3	15-20	Hyperbaric	8.25	90-200
Levobupivacaine	0.5	3-4	15-20	Isobaric		90-200
	0.75	2-3	15-20	Hyperbaric		90-200
Ropivacaine	0.5	3-4	15-20	Isobaric		90-200
	0.75	2-3	15-20	Hyperbaric		90-200

Doses are for a 70-kg adult. Dosing may be reduced during pregnancy and with advancing age. Pediatric dosing is detailed in Chapter 76.

TABLE 29.9 Various Preparations Intended for Topical Anesthesia

Anesthetic Ingredient	Concentration (%)	Pharmaceutical Application Form	Intended Area of Use
Benzocaine	1-5	Cream	Skin and mucous membrane
	20	Ointment	Skin and mucous membrane
	20	Aerosol	Skin and mucous membrane
Cocaine	4	Solution	Ear, nose, throat
Dibucaine	0.25-1	Cream	Skin
	0.25-1	Ointment	Skin
	0.25-1	Aerosol	Skin
	0.25	Solution	Ear
	2.5	Suppositories	Rectum
Cyclomine	0.5-1	Solution	Skin, oropharynx, tracheobronchial tree, urethra, rectum
Lidocaine	2-4	Solution	Oropharynx, tracheobronchial tree, nose
	2	Jelly	Urethra
	2.5-5	Ointment	Skin, mucous membrane, rectum
	2	Viscous	Oropharynx
	10	Suppositories	Rectum
	10	Aerosol	Gingival mucosa
Tetracaine	0.5-1	Ointment	Skin, rectum, mucous membrane
	0.5-1	Cream	Skin, rectum, mucous membrane
	0.25-1	Solution	Nose, tracheobronchial tree
EMLA	Lidocaine, 2.5 Prilocaine, 2.5	Cream	Intact skin
TAC	Tetracaine, 0.5 Epinephrine, 1:200,000 Cocaine, 11.8	Solution	Cut skin
LET	Lidocaine, 4% Epinephrine, 1:20,000 Tetracaine, 0.5%	Solution	Cut skin

EMLA, Eutectic mixture of lidocaine and prilocaine; *LET,* lidocaine-epinephrine-tetracaine; *TAC,* tetracaine-epinephrine-cocaine.
From Covino B, Vassallo H. *Local Anesthetics: Mechanisms of Action and Clinical Use*. Orlando, FL: Grune and Stratton; 1976.

cutaneous anesthesia; longer application times increase the depth and reliability of skin analgesia. EMLA appears to be quite safe in neonates, and methemoglobinemia with the use of prilocaine is exceedingly uncommon. EMLA is more effective for newborn circumcision than placebo is but less effective than dorsal penile nerve block.[70,71] Several alternative topical local anesthetic formulations also are in use, including tetracaine gel[72] and liposomal lidocaine.[73] Physical methods to accelerate local anesthetic transit across skin, including iontophoresis, local heating, electroporation, and a variety of forms of needleless pressure injection, may lead to more rapid onset of cutaneous analgesia.[74] Synera (originally studied as S-Caine) is a formulation of lidocaine and tetracaine that was developed with a heating element (activated by opening the package to initiate an oxygen-dependent exothermic reaction). This formulation has a rapid onset and evokes vasodilatation.[75]

Topical anesthesia through cut skin is commonly used in pediatric emergency departments for liquid application into lacerations that require suturing. Historically, this had been provided by a mixture of tetracaine, epinephrine (adrenaline), and cocaine, known as TAC. TAC is ineffective through intact skin; in contrast, its rapid absorption from mucosal surfaces can lead to toxic, even fatal reactions. Another potential substance is ELA-max, a liposomal formulation of lidocaine which is useful for cuts or abrasions.[76] Lastly, Lidoderm patches have been in use for the topical treatment of postherpetic neuralgia.[77]

Because of concerns regarding cocaine toxicity and the potential for diversion and abuse, cocaine-free topical preparations are strongly recommended, and alternatives such as the combination of an α_1-adrenergic agonist (oxymetazoline or phenylephrine) and a local anesthetic such as 2% to 4% lidocaine should be used, with more dilute solutions being recommended for infants and children.

TUMESCENT ANESTHESIA

A technique of local anesthesia most commonly used by plastic surgeons during liposuction procedures involves the subcutaneous injection of large volumes of dilute local anesthetic in combination with epinephrine and other agents. Total doses of lidocaine ranging from 35 to 55 mg/kg have been reported to produce safe plasma concentrations around or below 5 μg/mL, but notably, these may only peak up to 20 hours after infusion, depending on the site of infiltration.[78] Despite these seemingly huge doses, very good safety outcomes have been reported in several case series.[79] Conversely, there have been several case series of cardiac arrest and death during plastic surgical procedures in patients with multiple risk factors. Here high local anesthetic concentrations and concomitant use of sedatives may have contributed to the patients' instability and deterioration.[80] Factors governing uptake and clearance from this method of local anesthetic delivery deserve further study.

SYSTEMIC LOCAL ANESTHETICS FOR POSTOPERATIVE PAIN AND NEUROPATHIC PAIN

Systemic lidocaine has been extensively investigated over the past 10 years for its potential to inhibit G protein-coupled receptors, especially those of the Gq11 subfamily. Systemic local anesthetics have a strong antiinflammatory effect, but their application has only been shown to be of clinical significance in visceral surgery where they decrease inflammation and pain, and speed recovery when compared to placebo.[81]

A broad variety of local anesthetics, antiarrhythmics, anticonvulsants, and other Na^+ channel blockers are administered intravenously, orally, or both, to relieve a number of forms of chronic neuropathic pain.[82] Clinical results are variable.[83] Although successful responses from intravenous lidocaine are often taken as a positive indication for oral mexiletine, some patients find mexiletine difficult to tolerate. When the signs of neuropathic pain are reversed by lidocaine infusion, normal nociception and other sensory modalities are unaffected, suggesting that the neurophysiologic correlate of the disease has an unusually high susceptibility to these drugs, present in plasma at concentrations 50 to 100 times lower than that required to block normal impulses in peripheral fibers. Laboratory studies suggest that ectopic impulse activity arising at a site of injury or elsewhere, such as the dorsal root ganglion, contributes to the neuropathic pain and that such impulses are particularly sensitive to use-dependent Na^+ channel blockers. It is noteworthy that relief of preexisting neuropathic pain, both clinically and in animal models,[84] can in some cases persist for days, weeks, or months after a single intravenous infusion of drug (e.g., lidocaine), far beyond the lifetime of the drug in vivo or any nerve block that it might affect. The mechanism of this remarkable action remains a mystery. Intuitively, this should be especially true for hereditary syndromes featuring gain-of-function mutations at the sodium channel, such as primary erythromelalgia and recent clinical experience and translational experiments have confirmed that mexiletine has the potential to normalize sodium currents in one specific mutation associated with erythromelalgia.[85]

Pharmacokinetics

The concentration of local anesthetics in blood is determined by the amount injected, the rate of absorption from the site of injection, the rate of tissue distribution, and the rate of biotransformation and excretion of the specific drug.[79,80] Patient-related factors such as age, cardiovascular status, and hepatic function influence the physiologic disposition and resultant blood concentration of local anesthetics.

ABSORPTION

The systemic absorption of local anesthetics is determined by the site of injection, dosage and volume, addition of a vasoconstrictor agent, and the pharmacologic profile of the agent itself.[86,87] Comparison of the blood concentration of local anesthetics after various routes of administration reveals that the anesthetic drug level is highest after intercostal nerve blockade, followed in order of decreasing concentration by injection into the caudal epidural space, lumbar epidural space, brachial plexus, and subcutaneous tissue. When a local anesthetic solution is exposed to an area of greater vascularity, a greater rate and degree of absorption occur. This relationship is of clinical significance because use of a fixed dose of a local anesthetic agent may be potentially toxic in one area of administration but not in others, and in one patient with specific physiology, but not in others. For example, the use of 400 mg of lidocaine without epinephrine for an intercostal nerve block results in an average peak venous plasma level of approximately 7 μg/mL, which is sufficiently high to cause symptoms of central nervous system (CNS) toxicity in some patients. By comparison, this same dose of lidocaine used for a brachial plexus block yields a mean maximum blood level of approximately 3 μg/mL, which is rarely associated with signs of toxicity.

The maximum blood concentration of local anesthetic drugs is related to the total dose of drug administered for any particular site of administration. For most drugs there is a proportionality between the amount of drug administered and the resultant peak anesthetic blood concentration. Epinephrine decreases the rate of vascular absorption of certain agents from various sites of administration and thus lowers their potential systemic toxicity. A 5-μg/mL concentration of epinephrine (1:200,000) significantly reduces the peak blood levels of lidocaine and mepivacaine irrespective of the site of administration. Resorption of local anesthetics follows a biphasic pattern, with an initial fast peak reflecting the fluid phase and later a slower second peak corresponding to resorption from the lipid compartment.[88] The addition of epinephrine to local anesthetic solutions slows the first phase.[89] The net clinical effect is a more profound block, and lower systemic levels.[90]

DISTRIBUTION

The systemic distribution of local anesthetics in many settings can be described sufficiently by a two-compartment model.[91] The rapid disappearance phase is believed to be related to uptake by rapidly equilibrating tissues (i.e., tissues that have high vascular perfusion). The slower phase of disappearance from blood is mainly a function of the particular compound.[86] Local anesthetic drugs are distributed throughout all body tissues, but the relative concentration in different tissues varies. In general, more highly perfused organs show higher concentrations of local anesthetic drug than less well perfused organs do. The primary extraction takes place in the liver, but local anesthetics are also rapidly extracted by lung tissue.[92,93]

BIOTRANSFORMATION AND EXCRETION

The pattern of metabolism of local anesthetic agents varies according to their chemical classification. The esters, or procaine-like drugs, undergo hydrolysis in plasma by the pseudocholinesterase enzymes; clearance of chloroprocaine is especially rapid.[94,95] The aminoamide drugs undergo enzymatic degradation primarily in the liver. Lidocaine is metabolized somewhat more rapidly than mepivacaine, which in turn is more rapidly metabolized than bupivacaine.[71,96,97] Excretion of the metabolites of amide-type local anesthetics occurs via the kidney. Less than 5% of the unchanged drug is excreted via the kidney into urine.

PHARMACOKINETIC ALTERATIONS BY PATIENT STATUS

Patient age may influence the physiologic disposition of local anesthetics. The half-life of lidocaine after intravenous administration averaged 80 minutes in human volunteers varying in age from 22 to 26 years, whereas volunteers 61 to 71 years of age demonstrated a significantly prolonged lidocaine half-life that averaged 138 minutes.[98]

Newborn infants have immature hepatic enzyme systems and hence prolonged elimination of lidocaine, bupivacaine, and ropivacaine.[99] Bupivacaine, for example, has a terminal elimination half-life in adults that averages around 3.5 hours. In neonates and some younger infants, terminal elimination half-lives may be as long as 8 to 12 hours. Prolonged elimination is particularly an issue for continuous infusions of local anesthetics in infants, and seizures have been associated with high bupivacaine infusion rates.[100] Based on analysis of these cases, a maximum infusion rate of 0.4 mg/kg/h for prolonged bupivacaine infusions has been proposed for children and adults, whereas prolonged infusion rates for neonates and young infants should not exceed 0.2 mg/kg/h.[101] Even at 0.2 mg/kg/h, plasma bupivacaine concentrations were found to be rising toward a toxic range in some younger infants after 48 hours.[102] Similarly, prolonged lidocaine infusions in neonates should not exceed 0.8 mg/kg/h. The potential for toxicity with lidocaine infusions in neonates is also increased by the accumulation of its principal metabolite, monoethylglycinexylidide (MEGX), which can cause seizures. Chloroprocaine may offer unique advantages for epidural infusion in neonates because it is rapidly cleared from plasma, even in preterm neonates.[103]

Decreased hepatic blood flow or impaired hepatic enzyme function can produce a substantial elevation of blood levels of the aminoamide local anesthetics. An average lidocaine half-life of 1.5 hours was reported in volunteers with normal hepatic function, whereas patients with liver disease demonstrated an average half-life of 5.0 hours. The rate of disappearance of lidocaine from blood has also been shown to be markedly prolonged in patients with congestive heart failure.[104]

In some patients CNS depression is seen without a preceding excitatory phase, particularly if other CNS depressant drugs had been administered.

Toxicity

Local anesthetic drugs are relatively safe if administered in an appropriate dosage and in the correct anatomic location. However, systemic and localized toxic reactions can occur, usually as a result of accidental intravascular or intrathecal injection or administration of an excessive dose. In addition, specific adverse effects are associated with the use of certain drugs, such as allergic reactions to the aminoester drugs and methemoglobinemia after the use of prilocaine.

SYSTEMIC TOXICITY

Systemic reactions to local anesthetics primarily involve the CNS and the cardiovascular system. In general, the CNS is more susceptible to the actions of systemic local anesthetics than the cardiovascular system, and thus the dose or blood level of local anesthetic required to produce CNS toxicity is usually lower than that resulting in circulatory collapse. However, a recent review of 93 cases showed that the symptoms encountered initially vary widely; and only 60% of patients actually exhibit the classic sequence of toxic events from minor CNS symptoms (e.g., perioral tingling, metallic taste, tinnitus), followed by major CNS symptoms (seizures) and cardiovascular collapse (CC).[105] Overall, the incidence of systemic toxicity following regional anesthesia is estimated at 1:1000 for nerve stimulator-guided blockade, and 1:1600 for ultrasound-guided regional anesthesia.[106]

Central Nervous System Toxicity

The initial symptoms of local anesthetic-induced CNS toxicity are feelings of lightheadedness and dizziness followed frequently by visual and auditory disturbances such as difficulty focusing and tinnitus. Other subjective CNS symptoms include disorientation and occasional feelings of drowsiness. Objective signs of initial CNS toxicity are usually excitatory in nature and include shivering, muscular twitching, and tremors initially involving muscles of the face and distal parts of the extremities. Ultimately, generalized convulsions of a tonic-clonic nature occur. If a sufficiently large dose or rapid intravenous injection of a local anesthetic is administered, the initial signs of CNS excitation are rapidly followed by a state of generalized CNS depression. Seizure activity ceases, and respiratory depression and ultimately respiratory arrest may occur. CNS excitation may be the result of an initial blockade of inhibitory pathways in the cerebral cortex by local anesthetic drugs but can also result from the net stimulation of release of glutamate, an excitatory amino acid neurotransmitter. Blockade of inhibitory pathways allows facilitatory neurons to function in an unopposed fashion, which results in an increase in excitatory activity leading to convulsions. A further increase in the dose of local anesthetic leads to inhibition of activity of both the inhibitory and facilitatory circuits, which results in a generalized state of CNS depression.

In general, a correlation exists between potency of the local anesthetic and intravenous CNS toxicity.[107] Convulsions caused by an inadvertent intravenous bolus of local anesthetic can generally be terminated by small intravenous doses of a benzodiazepine, such as midazolam, or by small intravenous doses of propofol. While propofol is faster acting, large doses should be avoided, especially in patients with hemodynamic instability.[108] Respiratory or metabolic acidosis increases the risks for CNS toxicity from local anesthetics.[109] Elevated $PaCO_2$ enhances cerebral blood flow and thus the anesthetic is delivered more rapidly to the brain. In addition, diffusion of carbon dioxide into neuronal cells decreases intracellular pH, which facilitates conversion of the base form of the drugs to the cationic form. The cationic form does not diffuse well across the nerve membrane, so ion trapping will occur, which will increase the apparent CNS toxicity of local anesthetics. Hypercapnia and acidosis also decrease the plasma protein binding of local anesthetic agents.[110] Accordingly, normocapnia should be targeted during episodes of local anesthetic systemic toxicity.

The clinical implication of this effect of hypercapnia and acidosis on toxicity deserves emphasis. Seizures produce hypoventilation and a combined respiratory and metabolic acidosis, which further exacerbates the CNS toxicity. In the setting of local anesthetic toxic reactions, it is essential to provide prompt assisted ventilation and circulatory support as needed to prevent or correct hypercapnia and acidosis and to prevent or correct hypoxemia, which also exacerbates CNS toxicity. Based on the preceding discussion, it should be apparent that clinicians performing major conduction blockade should make a routine practice of having the following ready at hand: monitoring equipment; an oxygen tank or wall oxygen outlet; rescue airway equipment; and drugs to terminate convulsions, such as midazolam, thiopental, or propofol.

Cardiovascular System Toxicity

Local anesthetics can exert direct actions on both the heart and peripheral blood vessels, as well as indirect actions on the circulation by blockade of sympathetic or parasympathetic efferent activity.

Direct Cardiac Effects. The main mechanisms of local anesthetic toxicity are blockades of cardiac sodium channels leading to negative inotropy and arrhythmia. Local anesthetics act directly by decreasing the conduction in Purkinje fibers and cardiomyocytes by prolonging the recovery time. Other facets of local anesthetic toxicity include inhibition of fatty acid metabolism, interference with calcium homeostasis, and disruption of the mitochondrial respiratory chain.[111] The primary cardiac electrophysiologic effect of local anesthetics is a decrease in the rate of depolarization in the fast conducting tissues of Purkinje fibers and ventricular muscle.[112] This reduction in rate is believed to be due to a decrease in the availability of fast sodium channels in cardiac membranes. Action potential duration and the effective refractory period are also decreased by local anesthetics. However, this effect is dose-dependent and substance-specific. Specifically, electrophysiologic studies have shown that high blood levels of local anesthetics will prolong conduction time through various parts of the heart, as indicated on the electrocardiogram (ECG) by an increase in the PR interval and duration of the QRS complex. Extremely high concentrations of local anesthetics depress spontaneous pacemaker activity in the sinus node, thereby resulting in sinus bradycardia and sinus arrest. Also, the electrophysiologic effects of various agents differ qualitatively. Bupivacaine depresses the rapid phase of depolarization (V_{max}) in Purkinje fibers and ventricular muscle to a greater extent than lidocaine does. In addition, the rate of recovery from a use-dependent block is slower in bupivacaine-treated papillary muscles than in lidocaine-treated muscles. This slow rate of recovery results in incomplete restoration of Na^+ channel availability between action potentials, particularly at high heart rates. These differential effects of lidocaine and bupivacaine have been advanced as explanations of the antiarrhythmic properties of lidocaine versus the arrhythmogenic potential of bupivacaine. All local anesthetics exert dose-dependent negative inotropic action on cardiac muscle; the depression of cardiac contractility is roughly proportional to conduction blocking potency. Thus bupivacaine and tetracaine are more potent cardio depressants than is lidocaine. Local anesthetics may depress myocardial contractility by affecting calcium influx and triggered release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum,[113] as well as by inhibiting cardiac sarcolemmal Ca^{2+} currents and Na^+ currents. Lastly, mitochondrial metabolism is inhibited by bupivacaine, and, to a lesser extent, other long-acting local anesthetics such as ropivacaine,[114] while the effect of lidocaine is smaller.

Direct Peripheral Vascular Effects. Local anesthetics exert biphasic effects on peripheral vascular smooth muscle.[103] Low concentrations of lidocaine and bupivacaine produced vasoconstriction in the cremaster muscle of rats, whereas high concentrations produced vasodilation in both isolated tissue models and in vivo. Cocaine is the only local anesthetic that consistently causes vasoconstriction at all concentrations because of its ability to inhibit the uptake of norepinephrine by premotor neurons and thus to potentiate neurogenic vasoconstriction.

COMPARATIVE CARDIOVASCULAR TOXICITY

All local anesthetics, but especially bupivacaine, can cause rapid and profound cardiovascular depression. The cardiotoxicity of bupivacaine appears to differ from that of lidocaine in the following manner:

1. The ratio of the dosage required for irreversible CC and the dosage that will produce CNS toxicity (convulsions; i.e., the CC/CNS ratio) is lower for bupivacaine and etidocaine than for lidocaine.[115]
2. Ventricular arrhythmias and fatal ventricular fibrillation may occur more often after the rapid intravenous administration of a large dose of bupivacaine but far less frequently with lidocaine. The CNS effects of local anesthetics may contribute to the generation of arrhythmias.
3. A pregnant patient may be more sensitive to the cardiotoxic effects of bupivacaine than a nonpregnant animal or patient.[116] Consequently, the 0.75% solution of bupivacaine is no longer recommended for use in obstetric anesthesia in the United States.
4. Cardiac resuscitation is more difficult after bupivacaine-induced CC, and acidosis and hypoxia markedly potentiate the cardiotoxicity of bupivacaine.[117] Conversely, Intralipid is believed to be most effective in bupivacaine-induced toxicity. Despite the experimental or clinical anecdotal use of many different resuscitation drugs in the setting of bupivacaine overdose, current guidelines focus on standard cardiopulmonary resuscitation, albeit with titration rather than fixed doses of epinephrine, early administration of lipid emulsion, and avoidance of propofol in settings of hemodynamic instability.[108] Bupivacaine-induced ventricular arrhythmias should not be treated with vasopressin, calcium channel blockers, β-blockers, or other local anesthetics with antiarrhythmic potential (such as lidocaine).[118]

Pharmacokinetic studies have estimated that Intralipid decreases cardiac bupivacaine concentration by 11% within 3 minutes of administration, and cerebral bupivacaine content by 18% within 15 minutes.[119] Even though these findings are theoretical, they underline the notion that Intralipid should not be considered an antidote with full antagonistic properties. Rather, limited evidence suggests that it will considerably reduce the bupivacaine concentration in target organs, most likely improve metabolism, and potentially have direct beneficial effects at the sodium channel. Intralipid is a valuable contribution to, but not a substitute for, careful and meticulous conduct of regional anesthesia.[120]

The clinical implications for cardiac resuscitation after intravascular injection or overdose of local anesthetic are the following:

1. No medications are uniformly effective in facilitating resuscitation from bupivacaine-induced cardiac arrest or severe ventricular tachycardia (despite our recommendations regarding Intralipid later). Basic principles of cardiopulmonary resuscitation should be emphasized first, including attention to securing the airway, providing oxygenation and ventilation, and performing chest compressions as indicated.
2. Because resuscitation after local anesthetic-induced circulatory collapse is difficult, prevention of massive intravascular injection or excessive dosing is crucial.
3. Negative aspiration of the syringe does not always exclude intravascular placement. Incremental, fractionated dosing should be the rule for all patients undergoing major conduction blockade. Even though changes on the ECG are not present in all cases before circulatory collapse, they can often be seen, and continuous attention to the ECG (including changes in QRS and T-wave morphology, rate, rhythm, or ectopy) may be lifesaving by terminating injection before a cardiac arrest occurs.
4. Based on animal studies[121] and a growing number of human case reports, hospitals and clinics that perform major conduction blockade or large volume infiltration blockade should keep available for emergency use a supply of lipid emulsion such as Intralipid 20%. If a patient experiences profound cardiovascular depression or circulatory arrest after the administration of bupivacaine, ropivacaine, or by extrapolation, other local anesthetics, then along with initiation of basic life support and the ACLS protocol, a rapid bolus of Intralipid 20%, 1.5 mL/kg (approximately 100 mL in adults) is recommended, followed if necessary by an infusion of 0.25 mL/kg/min over the next 10 minutes.

Chiral Local Anesthetics: Ropivacaine and Levobupivacaine

Commercial bupivacaine is a racemic mixture of *(R)*- and *(S)*-stereoisomers. In response to the problem of cardiovascular toxicity as a result of accidental intravenous injection of bupivacaine, single enantiomers were developed in the hope that they would be potentially safer. Ropivacaine (Naropin)[122] and levo-*(S)*-bupivacaine (Chirocaine)[123] were formulated to exploit this stereoselectivity. Ropivacaine is a single *(S)*-stereoisomer that differs from levobupivacaine in the substitution of a propyl for the butyl group on the piperidine ring (see Fig. 29.2). With these designed changes in molecular structure, it was hoped that ropivacaine and levobupivacaine would be less intrinsically cardiotoxic. Conversely, it appears that the *(S)*-enantiomers of mepivacaine and bupivacaine are metabolized by the liver more slowly than the corresponding *(R)*-enantiomers, which would lead to somewhat greater systemic accumulation with prolonged infusions.

The very slow reversal of Na^+ channel blockade after a cardiac action potential, which is a hallmark of bupivacaine, is considerably faster with ropivacaine. In addition to these electrical differences, the negative inotropic potency of ropivacaine on isolated cardiac tissue appears to be considerably less than that of bupivacaine. Both electrical and mechanical differences in the toxic profiles may arise from the selective inhibition of Ca^{2+} currents by bupivacaine.

Do the data support the claim of a greater therapeutic index for ropivacaine than bupivacaine, particularly with regard to cardiotoxicity? In clinical studies comparing potencies of ropivacaine and bupivacaine administered for brachial plexus[124] or lumbar epidural block,[125] the anesthetic profiles of the drugs were almost identical. A third exemplary study comparing lumbar epidural 0.5% bupivacaine with 0.75% ropivacaine also found no significant differences in motor or sensory effects between the drugs at these different concentrations.[126] Overall, it appears that ropivacaine is slightly less potent than bupivacaine (1:1.3 to 1:1.5) for regional anesthesia. In some laboratory animal studies and in some human studies, ropivacaine also produced blocks of shorter duration than those induced by bupivacaine. Other studies in animals and humans have found equal durations of sensory and motor block for the two drugs.

At the projected equipotent doses for nerve block, are the drugs equally toxic? The overall impression is that ropivacaine is less cardiotoxic than bupivacaine. Studies in animals have generally found that bupivacaine more readily produces conduction disturbances, cardiac collapse, or ventricular fibrillation than ropivacaine does and that aggressive cardiac resuscitation after an intentional intravenous bolus in dogs leads to effective reversal of the toxic effects far more frequently with ropivacaine than with bupivacaine.[127]

The greater safety of ropivacaine than bupivacaine may be related both to the reduced toxicity of the single *(S)*-isomer and to the difference between the propyl- and butyl-*N*-piperidine substituent. In contrast to bupivacaine, the cardiotoxic profile of ropivacaine in pregnant ewes is the same as the corresponding profile in nonpregnant ewes.[128]

Levobupivacaine has been studied in a range of clinical settings and sites of administration. Although a number of publications have compared levobupivacaine with racemic bupivacaine and ropivacaine,[129,130] conclusions differ among studies regarding the relative potency and duration of block of these three drugs at different sites of administration with respect to sensory and motor end points. Clinicians should note that levobupivacaine is formulated as a weight percentage with regard to its free base content, whereas the weight percentage of most other local anesthetics is calculated on the basis of the hydrochloride salt.[131]

Acidosis and Hypoxia

As with CNS toxicity, hypercapnia, acidosis, and hypoxia potentiate the negative chronotropic and inotropic actions of lidocaine and bupivacaine in isolated cardiac tissue, and the combination of hypoxia and acidosis markedly potentiates the cardiodepressant effects of bupivacaine.[132] Hypoxia and acidosis also increased the frequency of cardiac arrhythmias and the mortality rate in sheep after the intravenous administration of bupivacaine. Hypercapnia, acidosis, and hypoxia occur very rapidly in some patients after seizure activity caused by the rapid accidental intravascular injection of local anesthetic agents.[133] Thus the cardiovascular depression observed in some patients after the accidental intravenous injection of bupivacaine may be related in part to the effect of seizures producing acidosis and hypoxia and thereby leading to an exacerbation of bupivacaine's intrinsic cardiotoxicity.

Indirect Cardiovascular Effects

High levels of spinal or epidural blockade can produce severe hypotension. A follow-up study of closed claims of patients who suffered perioperative cardiac arrest confirmed previous reports of a series of cardiac arrests involving generally healthy patients undergoing spinal or epidural anesthesia.[134] These events frequently occurred in conjunction with high dermatomal levels of blockade, liberal use of sedatives, and progression to cardiac arrest after a period of hypotension accompanied by bradycardia, often involving delays in recognition of the problem, delays in instituting airway support (particularly in sedated patients), and delays in administration of direct-acting combined α- and β-adrenergic agonists, such as epinephrine. Whereas mild to moderate degrees of hypotension generally respond well to indirect-acting sympathomimetics such as ephedrine or incremental dosing of phenylephrine, the combination of severe hypotension and severe bradycardia under spinal anesthesia should in most clinical settings be treated promptly with incremental dosing of epinephrine, initially at doses of 0.1 to 1 μg/kg.

METHEMOGLOBINEMIA

A unique systemic side effect associated with a specific local anesthetic is the development of methemoglobinemia after the administration of large doses of prilocaine.[135] In general, 600-mg doses are required for the development of clinically significant levels of methemoglobinemia in adults. Hepatic metabolism of prilocaine generates *O*-toluidine, which oxidizes hemoglobin to methemoglobin. Methemoglobinemia, if severe, may be treated by the intravenous administration of methylene blue. Standard dosing of the topical local anesthetic EMLA (a mixture of lidocaine and prilocaine) in term newborns produced minimal amounts of methemoglobin, and EMLA, if dosed appropriately, should be regarded as very safe in the great majority of newborns. Risk may be increased in newborns with rare metabolic disorders or after the concomitant administration of other drugs that impair reduction of methemoglobin.

ALLERGIES

Even though patients receiving local anesthetics may experience a range of local and systemic symptoms, prospective studies indicate that very few of these reactions are truly confirmed as allergic reactions.[136,137] Aminoester drugs such as procaine may produce allergic-type reactions more commonly than do the aminoamides, although even with aminoesters, the vast majority of reactions are not allergic. Aminoesters, unlike aminoamides, are derivatives of *p*-aminobenzoic acid, which is known to be allergenic. Some aminoamide solutions may contain a preservative, methylparaben, whose chemical structure is similar to that of *p*-aminobenzoic acid, but for most aminoamides, preservative-free solutions are available.[138] Contamination of vials with latex antigen has been suspected in some allergic reactions, although it has been difficult to confirm. In the very rare patient for whom confirmed allergy to both aminoamides and aminoesters precludes their use for spinal anesthesia, meperidine can be considered as an alternative.[128]

LOCAL TISSUE TOXICITY

All the clinically used aminoamide and aminoester local anesthetics can produce direct toxicity to nerves if they achieve sufficiently high intraneural concentrations.[139] Conversely, in the great majority of clinical applications, no damage to nerves occurs. Although local anesthetics are usually packaged and injected at concentrations well above their physiologically effective range, in the process of delivery they are generally diluted sufficiently that no harm is done. If such dilution does not occur, however, long-term or permanent neural deficits do result. Thus the application of 5% (200 mM) lidocaine in viscous, dense solutions through narrow intrathecal catheters had been associated with a high frequency of transient or longer-term radicular symptoms or even cauda equina syndrome.[140] Laboratory investigations have shown that such high concentrations of local anesthetics alone applied directly to bare nerve fibers produce an irreversible conduction block in less than 5 minutes.[141] Clinicians should be aware that the concentrations of formulated local anesthetic solutions are neurotoxic per se and that their "natural" dilution, which occurs in situ or in tissue, is essential for safe use.

If cauda equina syndrome was considered one catastrophic end of the spectrum, the opposite side would be transient neurologic syndrome, a temporary radicular irritation thought to be caused by local anesthetic application and influenced by patient positioning.[142] Single-shot spinal anesthesia with commonly recommended doses and concentrations of many different local anesthetics can produce more limited and transient neurologic symptoms (back pain, paresthesias, radicular pain, or hypesthesia).[143] Some studies and systematic reviews have found that mepivacaine and lidocaine at a range of dilutions cause more frequent symptoms than do bupivacaine and prilocaine.[144] The risk of transient neurologic symptoms after spinal anesthesia was not diminished by dilution of lidocaine from 5% to either 1% or 2%. Differences in study design, method of questioning, and criteria for inclusion may be partially responsible for differences in the prevalence of radicular sequelae in various studies. Despite these differences in study design, a meta-analysis concluded that the pooled relative risk for transient neurologic symptoms after spinal anesthesia with lidocaine was 6.7-fold higher than with bupivacaine and 5.5-fold higher than with prilocaine.[144] The addition of vasoconstrictors to local anesthetic solutions has been reported to potentially increase risk,[145] but within the limits of current dosing, neuraxial administration of vasoconstrictors as an adjuvant seems to be safe.[146] Neurotoxicity appears to be unrelated to conduction block per se, because STX, neosaxitoxin, and tetrodotoxin, highly potent blockers of sodium channels, can produce intense conduction blockade without histologic or behavioral signs of nerve injury.[147]

Skeletal muscle changes have been observed after the injection of local anesthetic agents such as lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine, bupivacaine, and etidocaine.[148] In general, the more potent, longer-acting agents bupivacaine and etidocaine appear to cause more localized skeletal muscle damage than do the less potent, shorter-acting agents lidocaine and prilocaine. This effect on skeletal muscle, to the best of our current knowledge, is reversible due to the regenerative potential of skeletal muscle and the comparatively small area of the muscle affected, which is why it is often clinically inapparent.

Development of Prolonged-Duration and Sensory- or Nociceptive-Selective Local Anesthetics

Several methods for producing long-duration nerve blockade are under investigation. First, there have been efforts to use readily available drugs such as tricyclic antidepressants[149,150] or quaternary local anesthetic derivatives as novel local anesthetics,[151] but these efforts have consistently been hampered by concerns over neurotoxicity.

SLOW-RELEASE FORMULATIONS

Liposomal encapsulation can prolong nerve blockade, depending on the dose and the physical properties of the liposome (surface charge, size, lamellar structure).[141-143] This mode of action has been investigated for decades but the clinical introduction has only been recent. Liposomal bupivacaine (Exparel) has been licensed for infiltration analgesia[152] but its dose-response for blockade of peripheral nerves is less clear.[153] A recent study showed potential benefits when combining Exparel with bupivacaine for interscalene block,[154] and the Food and Drug Administration has moved to expand Exparel licensing to select nerve block indications. Despite strong basic science data, the clinical benefit of these formulations, especially for nerve blockade, and when compared to plain long-acting local anesthetics, is not as convincing as one would hope. Other modes of slow-release are embedding in bone wax, polylactic acid, polyglycolic acid, fatty-acid-based biodegradable polymers, and proliposomal formulations.[7] Finally, another variant of slow-release formulations is photo-triggered on-demand release.

SITE 1 BLOCKERS

Prolonged-duration local anesthesia also appears to be feasible with the use of site 1 sodium channel blockers.[148] The site 1 blocker neosaxitoxin has been used in humans in phase 1 and phase 2 clinical trials.[149-151] A combination of site 1 toxins with either local anesthetics or adrenergics results in prolongation of blockade and improvement in the therapeutic index.[155] Theoretically attractive features of site 1 toxins include their apparent lack of local tissue toxicity on nerves[137] or muscles[152] and their minimal cardiotoxicity.[153]

TARGETING OF SPECIFIC SODIUM CHANNEL ISOFORMS

Coming back to the nine different subtypes of sodium channels, research efforts have been directed at blocking specific isoforms thought to be of particular relevance for defined pain conditions. The Nav1.7 subtype, for example, has been linked to somatic pain, and to hereditary syndromes of hyperalgesia[156] or insensitivity to pain.[157] A monoclonal antibody has been described which is 1000 times more potent at blocking sodium currents through Nav1.7 than those of other isoforms.[158] Importantly, animal models of visceral pain suggest a substantial role of Nav1.9 in these syndromes.[25]

TARGETING OF NOCICEPTIVE FIBERS

High hopes had been raised by reports of sensory-selective blockade of peripheral nerves when a quaternary derivative of lidocaine was targeted into nociceptors using activation of TRPV-1 channels by lidocaine or capsaicin. TRPV channels are preferentially located in small sensory fibers.[159] After several promising studies, concerns over neurotoxicity[151] prevented this combination from entering clinical practice. Yet, the concept of targeting specific variants of local anesthetic drugs into specific fibers has been confirmed, and if a combination of drugs is found which can provide these effects with decreased neurotoxicity, the strategy as such may hold promise. Whether any quaternary derivatives of local anesthetics have less neurotoxicity than their parent compounds remains as of yet unanswered.

To summarize, several avenues of research may lead to new local anesthetics or new modes of application, but only liposomal bupivacaine has been introduced into clinical practice. Potentially, these new strategies may move us closer to the holy grail of regional anesthesia, where patients benefit from a tailored surgical block followed by prolonged periods of reliable sensory (or even nociceptive) block without impairment in motor function.

Biologic Mechanisms of Local Anesthetic Failure: Inflammation, Hyperalgesia, Tachyphylaxis, and Genetic Variants

Failure of local anesthesia is commonly ascribed to technical failure of delivery, insufficient volume or concentration of drug, or erroneous clinical decisions in selection of techniques. However, there are a number of clinical situations in which biologic processes contribute to failed local anesthesia, even with proper technique and drug selection.

For example, in patients going to the dentist with infections such as a tooth abscess or severe pulpitis, failure rates of standard doses of local anesthetic have been reported to be as high as 70%. Local anesthetic failure at a site of inflammation appears to reflect a combination of pharmacokinetic factors and pharmacodynamic factors. Pharmacokinetic factors include (1) increased local blood flow leading to accelerated removal of drug from perineural injection compartments; (2) local tissue acidosis leading to a greater proportion of the drug in the hydrochloride form, which diffuses more poorly across biologic membranes; and (3) local tissue edema, which increases diffusion distances for drug into nerves. Pharmacodynamic factors include the effects of inflammation on both peripheral sensitization of nerves and central sensitization.[120] It is noteworthy that in the setting of an infected mandibular tooth, inferior alveolar nerve block (performed proximally at a site presumably remote from the infected area) also has an unexpectedly high failure rate. Increasing the concentration of local anesthetic can still result in satisfactory, albeit shorter, blockade. In clinical practice, these patients require a higher local anesthetic dose to achieve sufficient analgesia. Inflamed tissue is more difficult, but not impossible, to anesthetize.

Apparent reductions in the effectiveness of local anesthetic infusions over time may be due to a number of causes unrelated to tolerance per se, including dislodgement of catheters and changes in the dermatomal origin or intensity of nociceptive input. In obstetric patients receiving epidural bolus injections, recurrence of pain before the next injection resulted in a reduction in the intensity and duration of blockade, whereas repeat injection before the return of pain prevented this rapidly occurring form of tolerance, or tachyphylaxis.[160] In postoperative patients, co-administration of systemic opioids prevented regression of segmental block in patients receiving thoracic epidural bupivacaine infusions.[161] Studies in rats suggest that both pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic mechanisms are involved. In a rat model, tachyphylaxis was linked to the development of hyperalgesia,[162] and drugs that inhibit hyperalgesia, including *N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptor antagonists and nitric oxide synthase inhibitors,[163] also prevented tachyphylaxis. Conversely, repeated sciatic injections of lidocaine resulted in reduced intraneural lidocaine content along with reduced duration of block.[164] The exact mechanism, however, has not been determined, and the clinical relevance with continuous use of long-acting local anesthetics is unclear.

Occasionally patients report that "local anesthetics don't work for me." Although this claim may reflect previous technical failures or a variety of other processes and patient- or procedure-specific factors, it is possible that in some cases these failures may involve genetic or acquired variation in local anesthetic responsiveness. Several mutations in the transmembrane segment IIIS6 of the rat brain α-subunit have been shown to decrease the affinity between sodium channels and local anesthetics and anticonvulsants[165] and similar investigations have also been carried out in sodium channel subtypes Nav1.7[166] or Nav1.5.[167] Of note, different mutations at specific points in the local anesthetic binding site led to differential response of these channels to sodium channel blockers, suggesting that the binding of local anesthetics to the "receptor" is a more dynamic, fluid, and structure-dependent process than commonly assumed. This is supported by a clinical study which showed that some percent of persons reporting inefficient regional anesthesia really did demonstrate partial resistance when tested in standardized manner, and some patients had selective resistance against specific local anesthetics.[168] While Clendenen and colleagues published the genetic workup of a family with inherited local anesthetic resistance,[167] there are preliminary hints that local anesthetic resistance may also be acquired. Interesting case reports suggest that repeated exposure to scorpion bites can elicit acquired resistance to local anesthetics.[169] Elements of scorpion toxin are known to interact with sodium channels, albeit at other sites (Site 3 and 4) than local anesthetics (which bind to Site 9),[170] and therefore the sustained modulation of sodium channel function by toxins is yet another fascinating potential facet of sodium channel and local anesthetic pharmacology.

Conclusions

Local anesthetics have been a central pillar in perioperative management of patients for more than a century, and continued research will assure that we know as much as possible about these drugs, and how we can use them as optimally as possible for the benefit of the patients whose care has been entrusted to us.

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, Dr. Charles B. Berde, and Dr. Philipp Lirk would like to thank Dr. Gary Strichartz for his contribution to this chapter in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Sanchez V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:159.
2. Zhang J, et al. *Biophys J*. 2007;92:3988.
3. Courtney KR. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1980;213:114.
4. Gissen AJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:467.
5. Docherty RJ, Farmer CE. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2009;194:519.
6. Lawson SN. *Exp Physiol*. 2002;87:239.

7a. Lirk P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
7b. Hodgkin A, et al. *The Conduction of the Nervous Impulse*. Springfield, IL: Charles C. Thomas; 1964.

8. Moayeri N, Groen GJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1128.
9. Ritchie JM, Rogart RB. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1977;74:211.
10. Savio-Galimberti E, et al. *Front Pharmacol*. 2012;3:124.
11. Ritchie JM, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1965;150:160.
12. Hille B. *J Gen Physiol*. 1977;69:475.
13. Narahashi T, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1970;171:32.
14. Strichartz GR. *J Gen Physiol*. 1973;62:37.
15. Haeseler G, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2002;137:285–293.
16. Courtney KR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;48:111.
17. Hille B. *J Gen Physiol*. 1977;69:497.
18. Gokin AP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1441.
19. Ekberg J, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:17030.
20. Chevrier P, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2004;142:576.
21. Bennett DL, Woods CG. *Lancet Neurol*. 2014;13:587–599.
22. Fertleman C, et al. *Neuron*. 2006;52:767.
23. Sheets PL, et al. *J Physiol*. 2007;581:1019.
24. Cox JJ, et al. *Nature*. 2006;444:894.
25. Hockley JR, et al. *J Physiol*. 2017;595:2661–2679.
26. Cannon SC. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2017.
27. Persaud N, Strichartz G. *Pain*. 2002;99:333.
28. Johns RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:141.
29. Fink BR. *Cairns AM: Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:111.
30. Fink BR, Cairns AM. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:948.
31. Raymond SA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68:563.
32. Drachman D, Strichartz G. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:1051.
33. Hogan QH, Abram SE. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:216.
34. Littlewood DG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;49:75.
35. Casati A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:823.
36. Pace NL, Stylianou MP. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:144.
37. Tobias J. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1156.
38. Popping DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:406–415.
39. Kroin JS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:488–494.
40. Ping Y, et al. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2017;96:e5846.
41. Brummett CM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:836–843.
42. Kosel J, et al. *Expert Rev Clin Pharmacol*. 2016;9:375–383.
43. Kirksey MA, et al. *PLoS One*. 2015;10:e0137312.
44. Choi S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112:427–439.
45. Chong MA, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42:319–326.
46. Klein SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:1316–1319.
47. Wong K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:131.
48. DiFazio CA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:760.
49. Cohen SE, Thurlow A. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51:288.
50. Kytta J, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1991;16:89–94.
51. Popitz-Bergez FA, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1997;22:363.
52. Fagraeus L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:184.
53. Leffler A, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 2008;118:763–776.
54. McKay W, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:572.
55. Thornton PC, Buggy DJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:656.
56. Gupta A, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:785.
57. Liu SS, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2016;203:914–932.
58. Guay J. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21:585–594.
59. Eichenberger U, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2009;34:242–246.
60. Latzke D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:239–244.
61. Abrahams M, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41:275–288.
62. D'Ercole F, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32:915–927.
63. Ilfeld BM. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:904.
64. Veering BT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1062–1069.
65. Cohen SE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:387.
66. Brull SJ, Greene NM. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:342.
67. Yilmaz-Rastoder E, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37:403.
68. Chambers WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60:417.
69. Kumar M, et al. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2015;31:450–456.
70. Butler-O'Hara M, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1998;101:E5.
71. Arthur GR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51:481.
72. Browne J, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:1014.
73. Eichenfield LF, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2002;109:1093.
74. Galinkin JL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1484.
75. Sethna NF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:403.
76. Friedman PM, et al. *Dermatol Surg*. 2001;27:1019–1026.
77. Davies PS, et al. *Drugs*. 2004;64:937–947.
78. Klein JA, Jeske DR. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:1350–1359.
79. Houseman TS, et al. *Dermatol Surg*. 2002;28:971.
80. Grazer FM, de Jong RH. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2000;105:436.
81. Kranke P, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;7:CD009642.
82. Tremont-Lukats IW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1738.
83. Carroll I, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2007;23:702.
84. Araujo MC, et al. *Pain*. 2003;103:21.
85. Cregg R, Cox JJ, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2014;171:4455–4463.
86. Tucker GT. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:717–731.
87. Rosenberg PH, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29:564.
88. Tucker GT, Mather LE. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47:213.
89. Lee BB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1402–1407. Table of contents.
90. Hermanides J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:144–154.
91. McCann ME, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:893–897.
92. Lofstrom JB. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1978;16:53.
93. Aoki M, et al. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 2010;38:1183–1188.
94. Kuhnert BR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:273.
95. Kuhnert BR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:21.
96. Scott DB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45:1010.
97. Katz JA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:16.
98. Nation RL, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1977;4:439.
99. Bösenberg AT, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15:739.
100. Lonnqvist PA. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22:39–43.
101. Berde CB. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:164.
102. Larsson BA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:501.
103. Henderson K, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1993;5:129.
104. Thomson PD, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1973;78:499.
105. Di Gregorio G, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35:181–187.
106. Barrington MJ, Kluger R. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2013;38:289–297.
107. Scott DB. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47:328.
108. Neal JM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43:150–153.
109. Englesson S. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1974;18:79.
110. Burney RG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1978;57:478.

111. Weinberg GL. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:180–187.
112. Clarkson CW, Hondeghem LM. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:396.
113. Chamberlain BK, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1984;259:7547.
114. Sztark F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1340–1349.
115. de Jong RH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:3.
116. Morishima HO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:134.
117. Rosen MA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:1089.
118. Neal JM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43:113–123.
119. Kuo I, Akpa BS. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1350–1361.
120. Lirk P, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2014;31:575–585.
121. Weinberg GL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1071.
122. Moller R, Covino BG. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:322.
123. Rutten AJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:247.
124. Hickey R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:639.
125. Brown DL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:633.
126. Katz JA, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1990;15:250.
127. Feldman HS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:373.
128. Santos AC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:991.
129. Camorcia M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:646.
130. Benhamou D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1383.
131. Rosenberg PH, Schug SA. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:544.
132. Sage DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:1.
133. Moore DC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:259.
134. Lee LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:143.
135. Lund P. *Cwik J: Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:259.
136. Ring J, et al. *Chem Immunol Allergy*. 2010;95:190–200.
137. Dewachter P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1141–1150.
138. Eggleston ST, Lush LW. *Ann Pharmacother*. 1996;30:851–857.
139. Werdehausen R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:711–718.
140. Rigler ML, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:275–281.
141. Lambert LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1082–1093.
142. Kouri ME, Kopacz DJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:75–80. Table of contents.
143. Freedman JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:633.
144. Eberhart LH, et al. *Anaesthetist*. 2002;51:539.
145. Sakura S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:771.
146. Neal JM. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2003;28:124–134.
147. Sakura S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:338.
148. Brun A. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1959;3:59–73.
149. Gerner P. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29:286–289.
150. Sudoh Y, et al. *Pain*. 2003;103:49–55.
151. Schwarz SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:438–444.
152. Joshi GP, et al. *J Surg Orthop Adv*. 2015;24:27–35.
153. Ilfeld BM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:1248–1256.
154. Vandepitte C, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42:334–341.
155. Lobo K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:873–885.
156. Yang Y, et al. *J Med Genet*. 2004;41:171–174.
157. Goldberg YP, et al. *Clin Genet*. 2007;71:311–319.
158. Lee JH, et al. *Cell*. 2014;157:1393–1404.
159. Binshtok AM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:127–137.
160. Bromage PR, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 1969;9:30.
161. Lund C, et al. *Lancet*. 1985;2:1156.
162. Lee KC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1284.
163. Wilder RT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:1251.
164. Choi RH, et al. *Life Sci*. 1997;61:PL177.
165. Yarov-Yarovoy V, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:20–27.
166. Panigel J, Cook SP. *J Neurogenet*. 2011;25:134–139.
167. Clendenen N, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2016;82:1089–1097.
168. Trescot AM. *Pain Physician*. 2003;6:291–293.
169. Panditrao MM, et al. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2013;57:236–240.
170. Israel MR, et al. *Adv Pharmacol*. 2017;79:67–116.

References

1. Sanchez V, Arthur GR, Strichartz GR. Fundamental properties of local anesthetics. I. The dependence of lidocaine's ionization and octanol:buffer partitioning on solvent and temperature. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:159–165.
2. Zhang J, Hadlock T, Gent A, Strichartz GR. Tetracaine-membrane interactions: effects of lipid composition and phase on drug partitioning, location, and ionization. *Biophys J*. 2007;92:3988–4001.
3. Courtney KR. Structure-activity relations for frequency-dependent sodium channel block in nerve by local anesthetics. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1980;213:114–119.
4. Gissen AJ, Covino BG, Gregus J. Differential sensitivities of mammalian nerve fibers to local anesthetic agents. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:467–474.
5. Docherty RJ, Farmer CE. The pharmacology of voltage-gated sodium channels in sensory neurones. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2009:519–561.
6. Lawson SN. Phenotype and function of somatic primary afferent nociceptive neurones with C-, Adelta- or Aalpha/beta-fibres. *Exp Physiol*. 2002;87:239–244.

7a. Lirk P, Hollmann MW, Strichartz G. The science of local anesthesia: basic research, clinical application, and future directions. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.

7b. Hodgkin A, et al. *The Conduction of the Nervous Impulse*. Springfield, IL: Charles C. Thomas; 1964.

8. Moayeri N, Groen GJ. Differences in quantitative architecture of sciatic nerve may explain differences in potential vulnerability to nerve injury, onset time, and minimum effective anesthetic volume. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1128–1134.
9. Ritchie JM, Rogart RB. Density of sodium channels in mammalian myelinated nerve fibers and nature of the axonal membrane under the myelin sheath. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1977;74:211–215.
10. Savio-Galimberti E, Gollob MH, Darbar D. Voltage-gated sodium channels: biophysics, pharmacology, and related channelopathies. *Front Pharmacol*. 2012;3:124.
11. Ritchie JM, Ritchie B, Greengard P. The effect of the nerve sheath on the action of local anesthetics. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1965;150:160–164.
12. Hille B. The pH-dependent rate of action of local anesthetics on the node of Ranvier. *J Gen Physiol*. 1977;69:475–496.
13. Narahashi T, Frazier T, Yamada M. The site of action and active form of local anesthetics. I. Theory and pH experiments with tertiary compounds. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 1970;171:32–44.
14. Strichartz GR. The inhibition of sodium currents in myelinated nerve by quaternary derivatives of lidocaine. *J Gen Physiol*. 1973;62:37–57.
15. Haeseler G, Bufler J, Merken S, Dengler R, Aronson J, Leuwer M. Block of voltage-operated sodium channels by 2,6-dimethylphenol, a structural analogue of lidocaine's aromatic tail. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2002;137:285–293.
16. Courtney KR, Kendig JJ, Cohen EN. Frequency-dependent conduction block: the role of nerve impulse pattern in local anesthetic potency. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;48:111–117.
17. Hille B. Local anesthetics: hydrophilic and hydrophobic pathways for the drug-receptor reaction. *J Gen Physiol*. 1977;69:497–515.
18. Gokin AP, Philip B, Strichartz GR. Preferential block of small myelinated sensory and motor fibers by lidocaine: in vivo electrophysiology in the rat sciatic nerve. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1441–1454.
19. Ekberg J, Jayamanne A, Vaughan CW, et al. muO-conotoxin MrVIB selectively blocks Nav1.8 sensory neuron specific sodium channels and chronic pain behavior without motor deficits. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:17030–17035.
20. Chevrier P, Vijayaragavan K, Chahine M. Differential modulation of Nav1.7 and Nav1.8 peripheral nerve sodium channels by the local anesthetic lidocaine. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2004;142:576–584.
21. Bennett DL, Woods CG. Painful and painless channelopathies. *Lancet Neurol*. 2014;13:587–599.
22. Fertleman CR, Baker MD, Parker KA, et al. SCN9A mutations in paroxysmal extreme pain disorder: allelic variants underlie distinct channel defects and phenotypes. *Neuron*. 2006;52:767–774.
23. Sheets PL, Jackson JO, Waxman SG, Dib-Hajj SD, Cummins TR. A Nav1.7 channel mutation associated with hereditary erythromelalgia contributes to neuronal hyperexcitability and displays reduced lidocaine sensitivity. *J Physiol*. 2007;581:1019–1031.
24. Cox JJ, Reimann F, Nicholas AK, et al. An SCN9A channelopathy causes congenital inability to experience pain. *Nature*. 2006;444:894–898.
25. Hockley JR, Gonzalez-Cano R, McMurray S, et al. Visceral and somatic pain modalities reveal NaV 1.7-independent visceral nociceptive pathways. *J Physiol*. 2017;595:2661–2679.
26. Cannon SC. Sodium channelopathies of skeletal muscle. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2017.
27. Persaud N, Strichartz GR. Micromolar lidocaine selectively blocks propagating ectopic impulses at a distance from their site of origin. *Pain*. 2002;99:333–340.
28. Johns RA, DiFazio CA, Longnecker DE. Lidocaine constricts or dilates rat arterioles in a dose-dependent manner. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:141–144.
29. Fink BR, Cairns AM. Differential slowing and block of conduction by lidocaine in individual afferent myelinated and unmyelinated axons. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:111–120.
30. Fink BR, Cairns AM. Lack of size-related differential sensitivity to equilibrium conduction block among mammalian myelinated axons exposed to lidocaine. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:948–953.
31. Raymond SA, Steffensen SC, Gugino LD, Strichartz GR. The role of length of nerve exposed to local anesthetics in impulse blocking action. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68:563–570.
32. Drachman D, Strichartz G. Potassium channel blockers potentiate impulse inhibition by local anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:1051–1061.
33. Hogan QH, Abram SE. Neural blockade for diagnosis and prognosis. A review. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:216–241.
34. Littlewood DG, Scott DB, Wilson J, Covino BG. Comparative anaesthetic properties of various local anaesthetic agents in extradural block for labour. *Br J Anaesth*. 1977;49:75–79.
35. Casati A, Baciarello M, Di Cianni S, et al. Effects of ultrasound guidance on the minimum effective anaesthetic volume required to block the femoral nerve. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:823–827.
36. Pace NL, Stylianou MP. Advances in and limitations of up-and-down methodology: a precis of clinical use, study design, and dose estimation in anesthesia research. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:144–152.
37. Tobias JD. Caudal epidural block: a review of test dosing and recognition of systemic injection in children. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1156–1161.
38. Popping DM, Elia N, Marret E, Wenk M, Tramer MR. Clonidine as an adjuvant to local anesthetics for peripheral nerve and plexus blocks: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:406–415.
39. Kroin JS, Buvanendran A, Beck DR, Topic JE, Watts DE, Tuman KJ. Clonidine prolongation of lidocaine analgesia after sciatic nerve block in rats Is mediated via the hyperpolarization-activated cation current, not by alpha-adrenoreceptors. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:488–494.
40. Ping Y, Ye Q, Wang W, Ye P, You Z. Dexmedetomidine as an adjuvant to local anesthetics in brachial plexus blocks: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2017;96:e5846.
41. Brummett CM, Hong EK, Janda AM, Amodeo FS, Lydic R. Perineural dexmedetomidine added to ropivacaine for sciatic nerve block in rats prolongs the duration of analgesia by blocking the hyperpolarization-activated cation current. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115 836–843.
42. Kosel J, Bobik P, Tomczyk M. Buprenorphine—the unique opioid adjuvant in regional anesthesia. *Expert Rev Clin Pharmacol*. 2016;9:375–383.
43. Kirksey MA, Haskins SC, Cheng J, Liu SS. Local anesthetic peripheral nerve block adjuvants for prolongation of analgesia: a systematic qualitative review. *PLoS One*. 2015;10:e0137312.
44. Choi S, Rodseth R, McCartney CJ. Effects of dexamethasone as a local anaesthetic adjuvant for brachial plexus block: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112:427–439.
45. Chong MA, Berbenetz NM, Lin C, Singh S. Perineural versus intravenous dexamethasone as an adjuvant for peripheral nerve blocks: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42:319–326.

46. Klein SM, Greengrass RA, Steele SM, et al. A comparison of 0.5% bupivacaine, 0.5% ropivacaine, and 0.75% ropivacaine for interscalene brachial plexus block. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:1316–1319.
47. Wong K, Strichartz GR, Raymond SA. On the mechanisms of potentiation of local anesthetics by bicarbonate buffer: drug structure-activity studies on isolated peripheral nerve. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:131–143.
48. DiFazio CA, Carron H, Grosslight KR, Moscicki JC, Bolding WR, Johns RA. Comparison of pH-adjusted lidocaine solutions for epidural anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:760–764.
49. Cohen SE, Thurlow A. Comparison of a chloroprocaine—bupivacaine mixture with chloroprocaine and bupivacaine used individually for obstetric epidural analgesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51:288–292.
50. Kytta J, Heavner JE, Badgwell JM, Rosenberg PH. Cardiovascular and central nervous system effects of co-administered lidocaine and bupivacaine in piglets. *Reg Anesth*. 1991;16:89–94.
51. Popitz-Bergez FA, Leeson S, Thalhammer JG, Strichartz GR. Intraneural lidocaine uptake compared with analgesic differences between pregnant and nonpregnant rats. *Reg Anesth*. 1997;22:363–371.
52. Fagraeus L, Urban BJ, Bromage PR. Spread of epidural analgesia in early pregnancy. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:184–187.
53. Leffler A, Fischer MJ, Rehner D, et al. The vanilloid receptor TRPV1 is activated and sensitized by local anesthetics in rodent sensory neurons. *J Clin Invest*. 2008;118:763–776.
54. McKay W, Morris R, Mushlin P. Sodium bicarbonate attenuates pain on skin infiltration with lidocaine, with or without epinephrine. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:572–574.
55. Thornton PC, Buggy DJ. Local anaesthetic wound infusion for acute postoperative pain: a viable option? *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:656–658.
56. Gupta A, Favaios S, Perniola A, Magnuson A, Berggren L. A meta-analysis of the efficacy of wound catheters for post-operative pain management. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:785–796.
57. Liu SS, Richman JM, Thirlby RC, Wu CL. Efficacy of continuous wound catheters delivering local anesthetic for postoperative analgesia: a quantitative and qualitative systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2006;203:914–932.
58. Guay J. Adverse events associated with intravenous regional anesthesia (Bier block): a systematic review of complications. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21:585–594.
59. Eichenberger U, Stockli S, Marhofer P, et al. Minimal local anesthetic volume for peripheral nerve block: a new ultrasound-guided, nerve dimension-based method. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2009;34:242–246.
60. Latzke D, Marhofer P, Zeitlinger M, et al. Minimal local anaesthetic volumes for sciatic nerve block: evaluation of ED 99 in volunteers. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:239–244.
61. Abrahams M, Derby R, Horn JL. Update on ultrasound for truncal blocks: a review of the evidence. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41:275–288.
62. D'Ercole F, Arora H, Kumar PA. Paravertebral block for thoracic surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32:915–927.
63. Ilfeld BM. Continuous peripheral nerve blocks: a review of the published evidence. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:904–925.
64. Veering BT, Burm AG, Feyen HM, Olieman W, Souverijn JH, Van Kleef JW. Pharmacokinetics of bupivacaine during postoperative epidural infusion: enantioselectivity and role of protein binding. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1062–1069.
65. Cohen SE, Yeh JY, Riley ET, Vogel TM. Walking with labor epidural analgesia: the impact of bupivacaine concentration and a lidocaine-epinephrine test dose. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:387–392.
66. Brull SJ, Greene NM. Time-courses of zones of differential sensory blockade during spinal anesthesia with hyperbaric tetracaine or bupivacaine. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:342–347.
67. Yilmaz-Rastoder E, Gold MS, Hough KA, Gebhart GF, Williams BA. Effect of adjuvant drugs on the action of local anesthetics in isolated rat sciatic nerves. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37:403–409.
68. Chambers WA, Littlewood DG, Logan MR, Scott DB. Effect of added epinephrine on spinal anesthesia with lidocaine. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60:417–420.
69. Kumar M, Chawla R, Goyal M. Topical anesthesia. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2015;31:450–456.
70. Butler-O'Hara M, LeMoine C, Guillet R. Analgesia for neonatal circumcision: a randomized controlled trial of EMLA cream versus dorsal penile nerve block. *Pediatrics*. 1998;101:E5.
71. Arthur GR, Scott DH, Boyes RN, Scott DB. Pharmacokinetic and clinical pharmacological studies with mepivacaine and prilocaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51:481–485.
72. Browne J, Awad I, Plant R, McAdoo J, Shorten G. Topical amethocaine (Ametop) is superior to EMLA for intravenous cannulation. Eutectic mixture of local anesthetics. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:1014–1018.
73. Eichenfield LF, Funk A, Fallon-Friedlander S, Cunningham BB. A clinical study to evaluate the efficacy of ELA-Max (4% liposomal lidocaine) as compared with eutectic mixture of local anesthetics cream for pain reduction of venipuncture in children. *Pediatrics*. 2002;109:1093–1099.
74. Galinkin JL, Rose JB, Harris K, Watcha MF. Lidocaine iontophoresis versus eutectic mixture of local anesthetics (EMLA) for IV placement in children. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1484–1488. table of contents.
75. Sethna NF, Verghese ST, Hannallah RS, Solodiuk JC, Zurakowski D, Berde CB. A randomized controlled trial to evaluate S-Caine patch for reducing pain associated with vascular access in children. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:403–408.
76. Friedman PM, Mafong EA, Friedman ES, Geronemus RG. Topical anesthetics update: EMLA and beyond. *Dermatol Surg*. 2001;27:1019–1026.
77. Davies PS, Galer BS. Review of lidocaine patch 5% studies in the treatment of postherpetic neuralgia. *Drugs*. 2004;64:937–947.
78. Klein JA, Jeske DR. Estimated maximal safe dosages of tumescent lidocaine. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:1350–1359.
79. Housman TS, Lawrence N, Mellen BG, et al. The safety of liposuction: results of a national survey. *Dermatol Surg*. 2002;28:971–978.
80. Grazer FM, de Jong RH. Fatal outcomes from liposuction: census survey of cosmetic surgeons. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2000;105:436–446; discussion 47–48.
81. Kranke P, Jokinen J, Pace NL, et al. Continuous intravenous perioperative lidocaine infusion for postoperative pain and recovery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;7:CD009642.
82. Tremont-Lukats IW, Challapalli V, McNicol ED, Lau J, Carr DB. Systemic administration of local anesthetics to relieve neuropathic pain: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1738–1749.
83. Carroll I, Gaeta R, Mackey S. Multivariate analysis of chronic pain patients undergoing lidocaine infusions: increasing pain severity and advancing age predict likelihood of clinically meaningful analgesia. *Clin J Pain*. 2007;23:702–706.
84. Araujo MC, Sinnott CJ, Strichartz GR. Multiple phases of relief from experimental mechanical allodynia by systemic lidocaine: responses to early and late infusions. *Pain*. 2003;103:21–29.
85. Cregg R, Cox JJ, Bennett DL, Wood JN, Werdehausen R. Mexiletine as a treatment for primary erythromelalgia: normalization of biophysical properties of mutant L858F NaV 1.7 sodium channels. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2014;171:4455–4463.
86. Tucker GT. Pharmacokinetics of local anaesthetics. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:717–731.
87. Rosenberg PH, Veering BT, Urmey WF. Maximum recommended doses of local anesthetics: a multifactorial concept. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29:564–575; discussion 24.
88. Thomas JM, Schug SA. Recent advances in the pharmacokinetics of local anaesthetics. Long-acting amide enantiomers and continuous infusions. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1999;36:67–83.
89. Lee BB, Ngan Kee WD, Plummer JL, Karmakar MK, Wong AS. The effect of the addition of epinephrine on early systemic absorption of epidural ropivacaine in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1402–1407. table of contents.
90. Hermanides J, Hollmann MW, Stevens MF, Lirk P. Failed epidural: causes and management. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:144–154.
91. McCann ME, Sethna NF, Mazoit JX, et al. The pharmacokinetics of epidural ropivacaine in infants and young children. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:893–897.
92. Lofstrom JB. Tissue distribution of local anesthetics with special reference to the lung. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1978;16:53–71.
93. Aoki M, Okudaira K, Haga M, Nishigaki R, Hayashi M. Contribution of rat pulmonary metabolism to the elimination of lidocaine, midazolam, and nifedipine. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 2010;38:1183–1188.
94. Kuhnert BR, Kuhnert PM, Philipson EH, Syracuse CD, Kaine CJ, Yun CH. The half-life of 2-chloroprocaine. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:273–278.

95. Kuhnert BR, Kuhnert PM, Prochaska AL, Gross TL. Plasma levels of 2-chloroprocaine in obstetric patients and their neonates after epidural anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:21–25.
96. Scott DB, Jebson PJ, Boyes RN. Pharmacokinetic study of the local anaesthetics bupivacaine (Marcain) and etidocaine (Duranest) in man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45:1010–1012.
97. Katz JA, Bridenbaugh PO, Knarr DC, Helton SH, Denson DD. Pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics of epidural ropivacaine in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:16–21.
98. Nation RL, Triggs EJ, Selig M. Lignocaine kinetics in cardiac patients and aged subjects. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1977;4:439–448.
99. Bosenberg AT, Thomas J, Cronje L, et al. Pharmacokinetics and efficacy of ropivacaine for continuous epidural infusion in neonates and infants. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15:739–749.
100. Lonnqvist PA. Toxicity of local anesthetic drugs: a pediatric perspective. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22:39–43.
101. Berde CB. Convulsions associated with pediatric regional anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:164–166.
102. Larsson BA, Lonnqvist PA, Olsson GL. Plasma concentrations of bupivacaine in neonates after continuous epidural infusion. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:501–505.
103. Henderson K, Sethna NF, Berde CB. Continuous caudal anesthesia for inguinal hernia repair in former preterm infants. *J Clin Anesth*. 1993;5:129–133.
104. Thomson PD, Melmon KL, Richardson JA, et al. Lidocaine pharmacokinetics in advanced heart failure, liver disease, and renal failure in humans. *Ann Intern Med*. 1973;78:499–508.
105. Di Gregorio G, Neal JM, Rosenquist RW, Weinberg GL. Clinical presentation of local anesthetic systemic toxicity: a review of published cases, 1979 to 2009. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35:181–187.
106. Barrington MJ, Kluger R. Ultrasound guidance reduces the risk of local anesthetic systemic toxicity following peripheral nerve blockade. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2013;38:289–297.
107. Scott DB. Evaluation of clinical tolerance of local anaesthetic agents. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47(suppl):328–331.
108. Neal JM, Woodward CM, Harrison TK. The American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine checklist for managing local anesthetic systemic toxicity: 2017 version. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43:150–153.
109. Englesson S. The influence of acid-base changes on central nervous system toxicity of local anaesthetic agents. I. An experimental study in cats. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1974;18:79–87.
110. Burney RG, DiFazio CA, Foster JA. Effects of pH on protein binding of lidocaine. *Anesth Analg*. 1978;57:478–480.
111. Weinberg GL. Lipid emulsion infusion: resuscitation for local anesthetic and other drug overdose. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:180–187.
112. Clarkson CW, Hondeghem LM. Mechanism for bupivacaine depression of cardiac conduction: fast block of sodium channels during the action potential with slow recovery from block during diastole. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:396–405.
113. Chamberlain BK, Volpe P, Fleischer S. Inhibition of calcium-induced calcium release from purified cardiac sarcoplasmic reticulum vesicles. *J Biol Chem*. 1984;259:7547–7553.
114. Sztark F, Malgat M, Dabadie P, Mazat JP. Comparison of the effects of bupivacaine and ropivacaine on heart cell mitochondrial bioenergetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1340–1349.
115. de Jong RH, Ronfeld RA, DeRosa RA. Cardiovascular effects of convulsant and supraconvulsant doses of amide local anesthetics. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:3–9.
116. Morishima HO, Pedersen H, Finster M, et al. Bupivacaine toxicity in pregnant and nonpregnant ewes. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:134–139.
117. Rosen MA, Thigpen JW, Shnider SM, Foutz SE, Levinson G, Koike M. Bupivacaine-induced cardiotoxicity in hypoxic and acidotic sheep. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:1089–1096.
118. Neal JM, Barrington MJ, Fettiplace MR, et al. The Third American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine practice advisory on local anesthetic systemic toxicity: executive summary 2017. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43:113–123.
119. Kuo I, Akpa BS. Validity of the lipid sink as a mechanism for the reversal of local anesthetic systemic toxicity: a physiologically based pharmacokinetic model study. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1350–1361.
120. Lirk P, Picardi S, Hollmann MW. Local anaesthetics: 10 essentials. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2014;31:575–585.
121. Weinberg GL, VadeBoncouer T, Ramaraju GA, Garcia-Amaro MF, Cwik MJ. Pretreatment or resuscitation with a lipid infusion shifts the dose-response to bupivacaine-induced asystole in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1071–1075.
122. Moller R, Covino BG. Cardiac electrophysiologic properties of bupivacaine and lidocaine compared with those of ropivacaine, a new amide local anesthetic. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:322–329.
123. Rutten AJ, Mather LE, McLean CF. Cardiovascular effects and regional clearances of i.v. bupivacaine in sheep: enantiomeric analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;67:247–256.
124. Hickey R, Hoffman J, Ramamurthy S. A comparison of ropivacaine 0.5% and bupivacaine 0.5% for brachial plexus block. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:639–642.
125. Brown DL, Carpenter RL, Thompson GE. Comparison of 0.5% ropivacaine and 0.5% bupivacaine for epidural anesthesia in patients undergoing lower-extremity surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:633–636.
126. Katz JA, Knarr D, Bridenbaugh PO. A double-blind comparison of 0.5% bupivacaine and 0.75% ropivacaine administered epidurally in humans. *Reg Anesth*. 1990;15:250–252.
127. Feldman HS, Arthur GR, Pitkanen M, Hurley R, Doucette AM, Covino BG. Treatment of acute systemic toxicity after the rapid intravenous injection of ropivacaine and bupivacaine in the conscious dog. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:373–384.
128. Santos AC, Pedersen H, Harmon TW, et al. Does pregnancy alter the systemic toxicity of local anesthetics? *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:991–995.
129. Camorcia M, Capogna G, Columb MO. Minimum local analgesic doses of ropivacaine, levobupivacaine, and bupivacaine for intrathecal labor analgesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:646–650.
130. Benhamou D, Ghosh C, Mercier FJ. A randomized sequential allocation study to determine the minimum effective analgesic concentration of levobupivacaine and ropivacaine in patients receiving epidural analgesia for labor. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1383–1386.
131. Rosenberg PH, Schug SA. Levobupivacaine base and levobupivacaine hydrochloride. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:544.
132. Sage DJ, Feldman HS, Arthur GR, et al. Influence of lidocaine and bupivacaine on isolated guinea pig atria in the presence of acidosis and hypoxia. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:1–7.
133. Moore DC, Crawford RD, Scurlock JE. Severe hypoxia and acidosis following local anesthetic-induced convulsions. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:259–260.
134. Lee LA, Posner KL, Domino KB, Caplan RA, Cheney FW. Injuries associated with regional anesthesia in the 1980s and 1990s: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:143–152.
135. Lund PC, Cwik JC. Propitocaine (citanest) and methemoglobinemia. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:569–571.
136. Ring J, Franz R, Brockow K. Anaphylactic reactions to local anesthetics. *Chem Immunol Allergy*. 2010;95:190–200.
137. Dewachter P, Mouton-Faivre C, Emala CW. Anaphylaxis and anesthesia: controversies and new insights. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1141–1150.
138. Eggleston ST, Lush LW. Understanding allergic reactions to local anesthetics. *Ann Pharmacother*. 1996;30:851–857.
139. Werdehausen R, Fazeli S, Braun S, et al. Apoptosis induction by different local anaesthetics in a neuroblastoma cell line. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:711–718.
140. Rigler ML, Drasner K, Krejcie TC, et al. Cauda equina syndrome after continuous spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:275–281.
141. Lambert LA, Lambert DH, Strichartz GR. Irreversible conduction block in isolated nerve by high concentrations of local anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1082–1093.
142. Kouri ME, Kopacz DJ. Spinal 2-chloroprocaine: a comparison with lidocaine in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:75–80. table of contents.
143. Freedman JM, Li DK, Drasner K, Jaskela MC, Larsen B, Wi S. Transient neurologic symptoms after spinal anesthesia: an epidemiologic study of 1,863 patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:633–641.
144. Eberhart LH, Morin AM, Kranke P, Geldner G, Wulf H. [Transient neurologic symptoms after spinal anesthesia. A quantitative systematic overview (meta-analysis) of randomized controlled studies]. *Anaesthesist*. 2002;51:539–546.
145. Sakura S, Sumi M, Sakaguchi Y, Saito Y, Kosaka Y, Drasner K. The addition of phenylephrine contributes to the development of transient neurologic symptoms after spinal anesthesia with 0.5% tetracaine. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:771–778.

146. Neal JM. Effects of epinephrine in local anesthetics on the central and peripheral nervous systems: neurotoxicity and neural blood flow. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2003;28:124–134.
147. Sakura S, Bollen AW, Ciriales R, Drasner K. Local anesthetic neurotoxicity does not result from blockade of voltage-gated sodium channels. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:338–346.
148. Brun A. Effect of procaine, carbocain and xylocaine on cutaneous muscle in rabbits and mice. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1959;3:59–73.
149. Gerner P. Tricyclic antidepressants and their local anesthetic properties: from bench to bedside and back again. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29:286–289.
150. Sudoh Y, Cahoon EE, Gerner P, Wang GK. Tricyclic antidepressants as long-acting local anesthetics. *Pain*. 2003;103:49–55.
151. Schwarz SK, Cheung HM, Ries CR, Lee SM, Wang JT, MacLeod BA. Lumbar intrathecal administration of the quaternary lidocaine derivative, QX-314, produces irritation and death in mice. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:438–444.
152. Joshi GP, Cushner FD, Barrington JW, et al. Techniques for periarticular infiltration with liposomal bupivacaine for the management of pain after hip and knee arthroplasty: a consensus recommendation. *J Surg Orthop Adv*. 2015;24:27–35.
153. Ilfeld BM, Malhotra N, Furnish TJ, Donohue MC, Madison SJ. Liposomal bupivacaine as a single-injection peripheral nerve block: a dose-response study. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:1248–1256.
154. Vandepitte C, Kuroda M, Witvrouw R, et al. Addition of liposome bupivacaine to bupivacaine HCl versus bupivacaine HCl alone for interscalene brachial plexus block in patients having major shoulder surgery. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42:334–341.
155. Lobo K, Donado C, Cornelissen L, et al. A phase 1, dose-escalation, double-blind, block-randomized, controlled trial of safety and efficacy of neosaxitoxin alone and in combination with 0.2% bupivacaine, with and without epinephrine, for cutaneous anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:873–885.
156. Yang Y, Wang Y, Li S, et al. Mutations in SCN9A, encoding a sodium channel alpha subunit, in patients with primary erythermalgia. *J Med Genet*. 2004;41:171–174.
157. Goldberg YP, MacFarlane J, MacDonald ML, et al. Loss-of-function mutations in the Nav1.7 gene underlie congenital indifference to pain in multiple human populations. *Clin Genet*. 2007;71:311–319.
158. Lee JH, Park CK, Chen G, et al. A monoclonal antibody that targets a NaV1.7 channel voltage sensor for pain and itch relief. *Cell*. 2014;157:1393–1404.
159. Binshtok AM, Gerner P, Oh SB, et al. Coapplication of lidocaine and the permanently charged sodium channel blocker QX-314 produces a long-lasting nociceptive blockade in rodents. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:127–137.
160. Bromage PR, Pettigrew RT, Crowell DE. Tachyphylaxis in epidural analgesia: I. Augmentation and decay of local anesthesia. *J Clin Pharmacol J New Drugs*. 1969;9:30–38.
161. Lund C, Mogensen T, Hjortso NC, Kehlet H. Systemic morphine enhances spread of sensory analgesia during postoperative epidural bupivacaine infusion. *Lancet*. 1985;2:1156–1157.
162. Lee KC, Wilder RT, Smith RL, Berde CB. Thermal hyperalgesia accelerates and MK-801 prevents the development of tachyphylaxis to rat sciatic nerve blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1284–1293.
163. Wilder RT, Sholas MG, Berde CB. NG-nitro-L-arginine methyl ester (L-NAME) prevents tachyphylaxis to local anesthetics in a dose-dependent manner. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:1251–1255.
164. Choi RH, Birknes JK, Popitz-Bergez FA, Kissin I, Strichartz GR. Pharmacokinetic nature of tachyphylaxis to lidocaine: peripheral nerve blocks and infiltration anesthesia in rats. *Life Sci*. 1997;61:177–184.
165. Yarov-Yarovoy V, Brown J, Sharp EM, Clare JJ, Scheuer T, Catterall WA. Molecular determinants of voltage-dependent gating and binding of pore-blocking drugs in transmembrane segment IIIS6 of the Na(+) channel alpha subunit. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:20–27.
166. Panigel J, Cook SP. A point mutation at F1737 of the human Nav1.7 sodium channel decreases inhibition by local anesthetics. *J Neurogenet*. 2011;25:134–139.
167. Clendenen N, Cannon AD, Porter S, Robards CB, Parker AS, Clendenen SR. Whole-exome sequencing of a family with local anesthetic resistance. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2016;82:1089–1097.
168. Trescot AM. Local anesthetic "resistance". *Pain Physician*. 2003;6:291–293.
169. Panditrao MM, Panditrao MM, Sunilkumar V, Panditrao AM. Effect of previous scorpion bite(s) on the action of intrathecal bupivacaine: a case control study. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2013;57:236–240.
170. Israel MR, Tay B, Deuis JR, Vetter I. Sodium channels and venom peptide pharmacology. *Adv Pharmacol*. 2017;79:67–116.

30 Risk of Anesthesia

RACHEL A. HADLER, MARK D. NEUMAN, and LEE A. FLEISHER

KEY POINTS

- Perioperative risk is multifactorial and may occur as a result of anesthesia-, surgery-, and/or patient-specific factors.
- Anesthesia-related (and surgery-related) risk is typically defined as morbidity and mortality occurring within 30 days of surgery, although events that occur at later points may still be related to anesthesia and/or surgery.
- The overall risk of anesthesia relates to both specific, organ-based complications and the rapidity with which they are managed (i.e., rescued).
- In the literature on anesthesia-related risk, the rates of morbidity and mortality reported across studies show a substantial variability in part attributable to the wide variety of definitions used in these studies.
- Historical studies of anesthesia-related risk identified anesthesia-related respiratory depression as the major cause of death and coma totally attributable to anesthesia. This finding prompted the creation of postanesthesia care units (PACUs).
- Research into anesthesia-related cardiac arrest has found it to be attributable to medication administration, airway management, and technical problems of central venous access.
- Multivariate modeling can be used to determine specific factors associated with an increased likelihood of adverse postoperative events, and it has been used to define a range of clinical risk indices to predict postoperative outcomes.
- Surveys of maternal mortality suggest that although the absolute rate of complications attributable to anesthesia has not decreased over time, the increased use of regional anesthesia may have led to improvements in outcome.
- Medication-related and cardiovascular events were the most common causes of cardiac arrest in the Pediatric Perioperative Cardiac Arrest (POCA) Registry.
- Growth in the number and variety of surgical procedures performed in hospital outpatient departments, ambulatory surgery centers, and physician offices creates novel challenges for assessing and managing perioperative risk.
- Initiatives established over time by the Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation, the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA), and others have sought to decrease the potential risks of anesthesia through systems-level improvements, standardization of care processes, human-factors engineering, and simulation-based training.
- Emerging evidence suggests that the choice of anesthetic drugs, ventilator strategies, or technique may impact patient outcomes.

Introduction

Since the beginning of its modern history, the administration of anesthesia has been recognized as a hazardous enterprise,[1] with distinct risks to the patient and occupational risks to anesthesia providers. From the perspective of public health, understanding both the nature and the magnitude of these risks is important on multiple levels. For individual patients, receiving accurate information on the probability of specific perioperative complications is a prerequisite for informed decision making related to anesthesia and surgery. More broadly, understanding the extent to which rates of perioperative morbidity and mortality vary across patients, physicians, and hospitals provides an important opportunity for assessing and improving quality in healthcare.

Efforts to determine the risks of anesthesia are complicated by many potential perspectives from which such risks can be defined. The use of alternate periods of observation for morbidity and mortality—the intraoperative period alone, the first 48 hours after surgery, the duration of the hospital stay, or the first 30 days or longer after surgery—complicates simple conclusions about the risks faced by any individual patient undergoing anesthesia and surgery and at what point after surgery the likelihood of further adverse events has returned to baseline (Table 30.1). For example,

TABLE 30.1 Time Perspective of Anesthetic Morbidity and Mortality Studies

Study	Study Year	Time Perspective
Beecher and Todd	1954	All deaths on the surgical services
Dornette and Orth	1956	Deaths in the surgical unit or after failure to regain consciousness
Clifton and Hotten	1963	Any death under or attributable to anesthesia or without return of consciousness after anesthesia
Harrison	1978	Death within 24 h
Marx et al.	1973	Death within 5 days
Hovi-Viander	1980	Death within 3 days
Lunn and Mushin	1982	Death within 6 days
Tiret and Hatton	1986	Complications within 24 h
Mangano et al.	1992	Death within 2 years
Monk et al.	2005	Death within 1 year

Modified from Derrington MC, Smith G. A review of studies of anaesthetic risk, morbidity, and mortality. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59(7):815–833.

patients undergoing ambulatory surgery have the lowest risk of death the day of surgery as opposed to 1 month later.[2] At the opposite end of the spectrum, asymptomatic release of cardiac enzymes in the perioperative period can have implications for months to years.[3-5] Divergent conclusions would also be expected from studies that consider adverse events that are solely attributable to the administration of anesthesia versus those that examine the overall rates of morbidity and mortality after surgery, which anesthesia care may modify. Studies exclusively focusing on the intraoperative period have characterized contemporary anesthesia care as a patient safety "success story" as a result of the low rates of death directly attributable to anesthesia care. As a result, anesthesia has been hailed by the National Academy of Medicine as "an area in which very impressive improvements have been made" in terms of patient safety.[6]

Nonetheless, a broader perspective on perioperative outcomes presents a more complicated story. For example, in the case of a patient with established coronary artery disease who sustains a myocardial infarction after experiencing tachycardia during high-risk surgery, the cause of the patient's adverse outcome could arguably be attributed to both the patient's underlying coronary artery disease and to the absence of intraoperative heart rate control. In this situation, the decision to view the perioperative infarction primarily as a consequence of patient disease or as an event that could be prevented by anesthesia care carries vastly different implications for efforts to define and reduce the risks of anesthesia.

Finally, the diverse array of outcomes considered as hazards of anesthesia complicate the interpretation of the literature on the risks of anesthesia. Traditionally, investigators have focused on issues of death and major morbidity such as myocardial infarction, pneumonia, and renal failure. More recently, however, this view has been broadened to include economic outcomes, as well as patient-centered outcomes such as functional independence, quality of life, and satisfaction (Table 30.2). For example, unanticipated rehospitalization after ambulatory surgery or a delay in discharge as a result of postoperative nausea and vomiting are both potentially important from the perspectives of the patient's quality of life, as well as economics.

TABLE 30.2 Examples of Common Outcome Measures

Outcome	Example
Mortality Failure-to-rescue	Mortality after a postoperative complication
Morbidity Major	Myocardial infarction Pneumonia Pulmonary embolism Renal failure or insufficiency Postoperative cognitive dysfunction
Minor	Nausea Vomiting Readmission
Patient satisfaction Quality of life	

In this chapter, current theories regarding the underlying causes of adverse events in the perioperative period are reviewed, and the historical and contemporary literature regarding the nature and magnitude of risk related to both intraoperative anesthesia care and perioperative care are examined. Next, historical and recent efforts to characterize the patient-, provider-, and facility-level determinants of anesthetic and perioperative risk are reviewed through statistical risk indices, and clinically based approaches to patient classification, and available literature on the determinants of risk unique to the obstetric, pediatric, and geriatric populations are discussed. Finally, future directions in research and clinical care related to anesthetic risk are discussed, with a focus on the health policy implications of changing knowledge regarding the hazards of anesthesia.

Framework of Perioperative Risk

Perioperative risk is multifactorial and depends on the interaction of anesthesia-, patient-, and surgery-specific factors (Fig. 30.1). With respect to anesthesia, the selection and effects of medications, including volatile and intravenous anesthetic drugs, and the skills of the practitioner are important. Similarly, the surgeon's skills and the surgical procedure itself also affect perioperative risk. Further, practitioners may influence outcomes at multiple points in the postoperative course. Although the incidence of specific local or organ-based complications, such as perioperative myocardial infarction or central line–related bloodstream infection, may be modified by anesthetic or surgical care, variations in the adequacy of care delivered to patients who have already experienced a complication (i.e., failure to rescue) may largely explain hospital-to-hospital differences in surgical outcomes.[7-9] Notably, although past investigators have pointed to volume-outcome relationships as potentially mitigating these hospital-to-hospital outcome

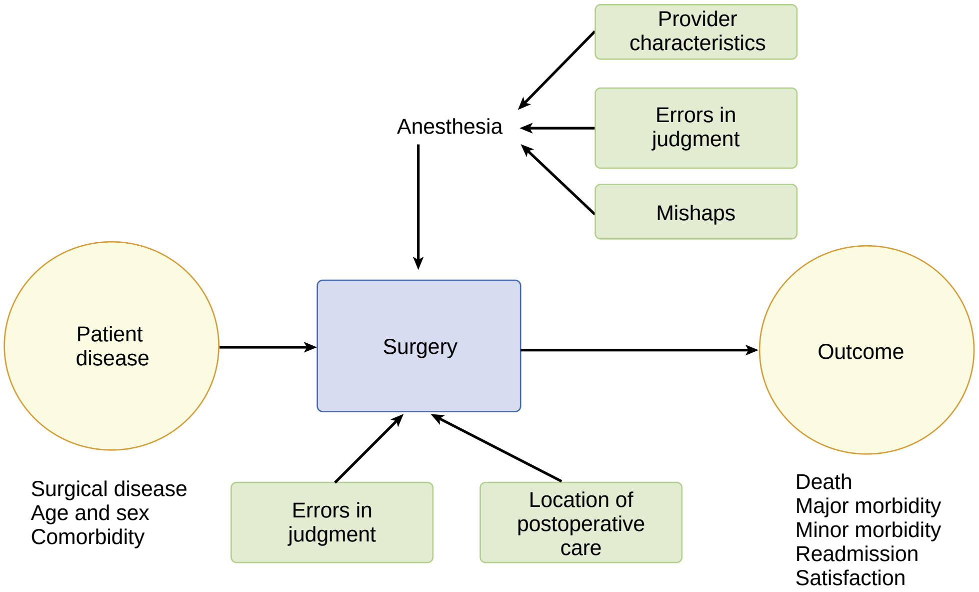


Fig. 30.1 Representation of the influences of various components on poor perioperative outcomes. Surgical, anesthetic, and patient characteristics all contribute to outcome. Anesthesia-related contributions can include issues of judgment and mishaps, as well as characteristics of the provider. The surgical procedure itself affects outcome, as does the location of intraoperative and postoperative care.

differences,[10,11] more recent data have suggested that local quality-improvement efforts, rather than large-scale efforts, at regionalization of care for elective surgeries hold the greatest potential to yield meaningful improvements in operative outcomes.[12]

The potential for anesthetic care to influence the overall hazard of surgery at multiple time points highlights both the complexity of measuring the risks of anesthesia and surgery, and the range of potential opportunities that may exist to reduce such risks. Given these challenges and opportunities, the goal of the next section is to summarize the current state of knowledge in this area, including the relative strengths and weaknesses of randomized and nonrandomized (i.e., observational) study designs used in efforts to understand patterns of outcomes after surgery and anesthesia.

Issues Related to Study Design

TYPES OF STUDIES

To interpret the literature related to anesthetic and perioperative risk, the strengths and limitations of various study designs must be understood. *Prospective cohort studies* involve the identification of a group of subjects who are monitored over time for the occurrence of an outcome of interest. The goal is to identify patients in whom the outcome develops. For studies of perioperative mortality, individual cases can be reviewed to determine the cause of mortality. Alternatively, data on all patients in the cohort study can be obtained, and discrete factors associated with the development of morbidity or mortality can be determined, often using multivariate regression techniques. An example of a prospective cohort study to identify factors associated with perioperative cardiac morbidity and mortality is that of Goldman and colleagues,[13] which led to development of the Cardiac Risk Index.

Although prospective cohort studies have important value in identifying risk factors for perioperative outcomes, they also have significant limitations. The range of patients enrolled in the cohort study, both in terms of baseline characteristics and the care they receive, may impact the generalizability of the study findings. Additional biases may be introduced by loss of patients to follow-up. Failure to anticipate the potential impact of some variables and collect data on them may limit the insights gained from a cohort study. Similarly, the inability to collect data on all potential confounders of the relationship between a putative risk factor and a given outcome limits the extent to which cohort studies can support causal inferences.

Randomized clinical trials offer stronger evidence of causality than do observational cohort studies. In a randomized trial, subjects are assigned by random allocation to one of two or more treatments (potentially including a placebo) and are observed for the development of a particular outcome. In the context of perioperative risk, randomized trials may be used to determine the efficacy of an intervention or anesthetic regimen intended to improve postoperative outcomes. For example, hypothermia in the perioperative period has been associated with an increased incidence of perioperative ischemia, a surrogate marker for morbidity.[14] In a randomized clinical trial, the use of forced-air warming to maintain normothermia was associated with a significantly less frequent incidence of perioperative morbid cardiac events.[15] Randomized clinical trials often build on hypotheses generated in cohort studies regarding the determinants of outcomes by testing interventions directed at a specific risk factor associated with adverse outcomes.

Randomized clinical trials derive their strength from their high degree of internal validity; the randomization scheme and the use of placebo (or accepted alternative treatments) provide strong evidence that the results are related to the intervention. Importantly, these trials may have a lower degree of external validity because the intervention tested in a particular trial may not work as well or in the same manner as when it is diffused into a more heterogeneous population. Further, as a result of sample size limitations, clinical trials may often be unable to detect subtle differences in outcomes among study groups or differences in rare events.

Retrospective studies involve the identification of patients who have sustained an outcome and definition of risk factors associated with the outcome. An example of a retrospective design is a case-control study. *Case-control studies* identify patients with the outcome of interest. Frequently, these patients are included as part of a prospective cohort study. The prevalence of a risk factor in patients with the outcome (i.e., cases) is compared with the prevalence of the risk factor in matched control participants to maximize the efficiency and power of the results. The ratio of cases to control participants can be varied to yield greater power with an increasing number of controls. An alternative retrospective design involves the systematic review of identifiable adverse events for patterns of error. For example, Cheney and colleagues[16] developed the American Society of Anesthesiologists' Closed Claims Project (ASA-CCP) to assess the risks associated with anesthesia care. By obtaining the records of major events that led to legal litigation, they were able to identify factors that contributed to bad outcomes. With this methodology, selected morbidities that led to litigation can be identified. The limitation of this methodology is that the actual rates of complications in the overall population are not known; only the number of closed legal claims is identified. Cases that do not result in litigation are not included in the database.

PROBLEMS INHERENT IN STUDYING ANESTHESIA-RELATED RISK

Studying anesthesia-related risk involves a range of methodologic challenges. On the most basic level, multiple definitions exist for key outcomes, such as perioperative mortality. In particular, the timeframe in which a death can be attributed to the surgery or the delivery of anesthesia or both varies. Notably, many events related to surgery may occur after discharge when monitoring of outcomes becomes more challenging. For this reason, the National Surgical Quality Improvement Program (NSQIP), a large, prospectively collected U.S. registry of surgical care and outcomes, requires 30-day follow-up on all patients to allow for consistent assessments of outcomes for all patients.

A second major challenge in any study of postoperative outcomes is the low observed rate of many key outcomes in the population of interest. Although some recent writers have called into question the safety of contemporary anesthesia care,[17] anesthesia-related death remains relatively uncommon in absolute terms. For example, the rate of anesthesia-related mortality described in the Confidential Enquiry into Perioperative Deaths (CEPOD) of 1987 was 1 in 185,000 patients as opposed to the 1 in 2680 cases reported by Beecher and Todd approximately 30 years earlier.[18,19] As a result, efforts to identify the range of factors that now contribute to anesthetic mortality are likely to require large patient cohort studies available either from administrative sources or collected over several years from multiple institutions. Several attempts have been made to establish large epidemiologic databases to address this challenge. One example of such an approach has been the work of Dennis Mangano and the Multicenter Study of Perioperative Ischemia Research Group with regard to cardiac surgery. This group used its database to evaluate issues such as the rate and importance of atrial fibrillation after cardiac surgery and the association of perioperative use of aspirin with cardiac surgical outcomes.[20,21] Other approaches include the development of cardiac surgery databases by the Society of Thoracic Surgeons, the U.S. Veterans Administration NSQIP, and the Northern New England Cardiovascular Disease Study Group.[22-25] These databases are used to define risk factors for poor outcome, to compare local with national complication rates, and as educational tools. In the United States, the Multicenter Perioperative Outcomes Group has undertaken such an enterprise by pooling electronically collected intraoperative and postoperative data.[26] Although these databases may provide extremely important information to improve care, the ability to generalize results to centers that do not have sufficient infrastructure to participate in such projects (e.g., smaller hospitals) is unknown.

Variations in care and outcomes across institutions may further complicate efforts to develop meaningful estimates of perioperative risk for use in clinical decision making by individual patients. Beyond the impact of patient illness, type of surgery, or anesthetic approach, hospital-level differences in postoperative care may have a profound impact on outcome. For example, the incidence of pulmonary embolism may be related to nursing care and the frequency of patient ambulation after surgery[27]; similarly, the presence of an intensivist who makes daily rounds and higher nurse staffing ratios may also affect outcome.[28]

Finally, issues of risk adjustment complicate efforts to determine changes in anesthesia risk over time. Common endpoints, such as mortality, are influenced by patient factors as well as by anesthesia and surgical care; as such, temporal trends in patient acuity may influence the apparent adverse outcomes associated with anesthesia and surgery in a given period. With appropriate risk adjustment, changes in mortality rates over short periods may provide some indication of changes in the quality of anesthesia or surgical care. When viewed over longer periods, however, it may be more difficult to reach firm conclusions regarding temporal changes in the safety of anesthesia or surgery based on differences in mortality rates over time. For example, if improvements in anesthetic technology have allowed for older and sicker patients to undergo surgery, then the safety of anesthesia may have improved without any apparent change in mortality rates because a sicker patient population is now offered surgery that, in the past, would have been avoided. Similarly, the rapid adoption of new but relatively high-risk procedures complicates simple comparisons of anesthesia-related complications over time.

STUDIES OF ANESTHESIA-RELATED MORTALITY

Efforts to understand the specific risks imposed by anesthesia care, above and beyond the surgical procedure itself, have represented an important dimension of research in anesthesia since the early 20th century. Although more recent trends in anesthesia research have emphasized a

TABLE 30.3 Estimates of the Incidence of Mortality Related to Anesthesia Before 1980

Study	Year	Number of Anesthetics	Primary Cause	Primary and Associated Causes
Beecher and Todd	1954	599,548	1:2680	1:1560
Dornette and Orth	1956	63,105	1:2427	1:1343
Schapira et al.	1960	22,177	1:1232	1:821
Phillips et al.	1960	—	1:7692	1:2500
Dripps et al.	1961	33,224	1:852	1:415
Clifton and Hotton	1963	205,640	1:6048	1:3955
Memery	1965	114,866	1:3145	1:1082
Gebbie	1966	129,336	—	1:6158
Minuck	1967	121,786	1:6766	1:3291
Marx et al.	1973	34,145	—	1:1265
Bodlander	1975	211,130	1:14,075	1:1703
Harrison	1978	240,483	—	1:4537
Hovi-Viander	1980	338,934	1:5059	1:1412

From Ross AF, Tinker JH. Anesthesia risk. In: Miller RD, ed. *Anesthesia*, ed 3. New York, NY: Churchill Livingstone; 1990;722.

broad view of perioperative outcomes not strictly limited to events primarily caused by anesthesia care,[30] the history of efforts to determine the safety of anesthesia management represents an important chapter in the development of modern perioperative medicine. This history also serves as important background for understanding current research and practice.

Research performed before 1980 demonstrated wide variation in reported rates of anesthesia-related mortality (Table 30.3). Beecher and Todd's 1954 report of anesthesia-related deaths at 10 institutions represents the earliest published major analysis of anesthesia outcomes.[18] Their study included 599,548 anesthesia procedures and found a rate of all-cause mortality of 1 per 75 cases (1.3%). In 1 out of every 2680 procedures, anesthesia represented the primary cause of mortality, and it was a primary or contributory cause of mortality in 1 of 1560 procedures. The work of Dornette and Orth[31] investigating perioperative deaths over a 12-year period at their institution corroborated these findings: they reported a mortality rate attributable to anesthesia in 1 in 2427 cases, and totally or partially attributable to anesthesia in 1 in 1343 cases. In contrast, Dripps and colleagues found the anesthesia-attributable mortality rate to be 1 in 852 in a similar single-institution longitudinal study.[32] These differences may be partially explained by Dripps' observation of 30-day, rather than intraoperative or 48-hour mortality, or differences in patient severity across studies.

Multiple additional studies on anesthetic mortality appeared between 1960 and 1980.[33] In the United States, these included the Baltimore Anesthesia Study Committee,[34] which reviewed 1024 deaths occurring on the day of or the day after a surgical procedure, and several single-institution studies.[35,36] Overall, the rate of anesthesia-related mortality in these studies varied widely, ranging from 1 in 1232 cases in a study by Schapira et al[35] to 1 in 7692 cases in the Baltimore Anesthesia Study Committee report. Results from the international community during that period were similarly heterogeneous in methodology and findings.[37-40]

TABLE 30.4 Incidence of Complications Partially or Totally Related to Anesthesia

Complications	Partially Related	Totally Related	Total*
All complications	1:1887	1:1215	1:739
Death	1:3810	1:13,207	1:1957
Death and coma	1:3415	1:7924	1:2387

*Total number of anesthetics: 198,103. From Tiret L, Desmonts JM, Hatton F, Vourc'h G. Complications associated with anaesthesia—a prospective survey in France. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1986;33:336–344.

Studies of anesthetic risk published before 1980 varied widely in the definitions used for anesthesia-related mortality and in the mortality rates they reported; however, they suggested that death related solely to anesthesia was a relatively uncommon event. Moreover, an overall trend toward lower rates of anesthesia-related mortality across studies over time suggested potential improvements in anesthesia safety.

Studies since 1980 have generally been performed on a regional or national basis with a particular emphasis on documenting changes over time in anesthesia-related mortality. For example, Holland[41] reported deaths occurring within 24 hours after anesthesia in New South Wales, Australia. The incidence of anesthesia-attributable deaths decreased from 1 in 5500 procedures performed in 1960 to 1 in 26,000 in 1984. Based on these estimates, the investigators asserted that for all patients receiving surgery, it was more than five times safer to undergo anesthesia in 1984 than it was in 1960.[42]

Under the direction of the French Ministry of Health, Tiret and colleagues[43] carried out a prospective survey of complications associated with anesthesia in France between 1978 and 1982 from a representative sample of 198,103 anesthesia procedures from hospitals throughout the country. Death was solely related to anesthesia in 1 in 13,207 procedures and partially related in 1 in 3810 (Table 30.4). The French survey confirmed previous findings that major complications occur more frequently in older patients, those undergoing emergency surgical procedures, and those with more extensive comorbid conditions as measured by ASA physical status classification. More notably, the investigators found that postanesthesia respiratory depression was the leading principal cause among cases of death and coma that were solely attributable to anesthesia. Moreover, almost all the patients who had had respiratory depression leading to a major complication had received narcotics, as well as neuromuscular blocking drugs, but they had not received anticholinesterase medications for reversal of the agents.

Despite these observations, the low rates of anesthesia-attributable mortality documented in the French study offered compelling evidence of improvements in anesthesia safety. Such findings were reinforced by other, concurrent work in Finland[44] and in the United Kingdom,[45] resulting in the development of the United Kingdom CEPOD, which

TABLE 30.5 Death Totally Attributable to Each Component of Risk in the Confidential Enquiry into Perioperative Deaths

Component	Mortality Rate Contribution
Patient	1:870
Operation	1:2860
Anesthetic	1:185,056

Modified from Buck N, Devlin HB, Lunn JL. Report of a confidential enquiry into perioperative deaths. Nuffield Provincial Hospitals Trust, The King's Fund Publishing House, London, 1987.

TABLE 30.6 Most Common Clinical Causes of Death in the Confidential Enquiry into Perioperative Deaths

Cause of Death	Percent of Total
Bronchopneumonia	13.5
Congestive heart failure	10.8
Myocardial infarction	8.4
Pulmonary embolism	7.8
Respiratory failure	6.5

Modified from Buck N, Devlin HB, Lunn JL. Report of a confidential enquiry into perioperative deaths, Nuffield Provincial Hospitals Trust, The King's Fund Publishing House, London, 1987.

TABLE 30.7 Grade of Physician According to Time of Surgery in the Confidential Enquiry into Perioperative Deaths

	ANESTHETIST		SURGEON	
Grade	**Day***	**Night†**	**Day***	**Night†**
Consultant	50	25	45	34
Others	50	75	55	66

*Represents Monday through Friday, 9 AM to 7 PM.
†Represents Monday through Friday, 7 PM to 9 AM, and Saturday and Sunday.
Modified from Buck N, Devlin HB, Lunn JL. Report of a confidential enquiry into perioperative deaths, Nuffield Provincial Hospitals Trust, The King's Fund Publishing House, London, 1987.

assessed almost 1 million anesthetics during a 1-year period in 1987 in three large regions of the United Kingdom.

Beyond confirming earlier work, CEPOD's findings suggested that anesthesia care was far safer than had been found in prior studies. Examining deaths within 30 days of surgery, CEPOD investigators observed 4034 deaths in an estimated 485,850 surgeries for a crude mortality rate of 0.7% to 0.8%. Anesthesia was considered the sole cause of death in only three individuals, for a rate of 1 in 185,000 cases, and anesthesia was contributory in 410 deaths, for a rate of 7 in 10,000 cases (Table 30.5).[19] The five most common causes of death in the CEPOD cohort study are shown in Table 30.6. Notably, of the 410 perioperative deaths, gastric aspiration was identified in 9 cases and cardiac arrest in 18 cases. Ultimately, CEPOD researchers concluded that avoidable factors were present in approximately 20% of the perioperative deaths. Contributing factors for anesthesiologists and surgeons tended to be failure to act appropriately with existing knowledge (rather than a lack of knowledge), equipment malfunction, fatigue, and inadequate supervision of trainees, particularly in off-hours shifts (Table 30.7).

Large national studies performed since the 1987 CEPOD report vary in the extent to which their findings agree with those of the CEPOD investigators. In a prospective study of 7306 anesthesia procedures in Denmark, Pedersen and colleagues[46] found complications attributable to anesthesia in 43 patients (1 in 170) and 3 deaths (1 in 2500), an incidence far higher than that documented by the CEPOD investigators. Complications in the 43 patients, in order of incidence, included cardiovascular collapse in 16 (37%), severe postoperative headache after regional anesthesia in 9 (21%), and awareness under anesthesia in 8 (19%).

In the United States, Li and colleagues[47] conducted a population-level study to estimate epidemiologic patterns of anesthesia-related deaths, using International Classification of Diseases (ICD) codes listed in the United States multiple-cause-of-death data files for the years 1999 through 2005. Although the interpretation of Li's study is complicated by questions surrounding the sensitivity of ICD codes for anesthesia-related mortality,[48] their findings are in accord with those of the CEPOD report in presenting anesthesia-related mortality to be an extremely rare cause of death at the population level. The authors found anesthesia to be the underlying cause of death in 34 patients each year in the United States and a contributing factor in another 281 deaths annually, resulting in a 97% decrease in anesthesia-related death rates since the 1940s.

Recent European studies have taken a broader focus beyond anesthesia-related events to examine perioperative outcomes more generally, particularly among high-risk patients who Lagasse and others previously observed to account for the majority of postoperative deaths.[17] In a 2011 report, NCEPOD investigators prospectively collected data on all patients undergoing inpatient surgery, excluding obstetric, cardiac, transplant, or neurosurgery cases, in United Kingdom National Health Service facilities over a 1-week period.[49] In addition to prospectively collected patient-level data on clinical care and outcomes, the authors conducted a detailed institution-level survey of resources and practices. Although the authors observed an overall 30-day mortality rate of 1.6%, a subset of high-risk patients—approximately 20% of the full cohort—experienced a disproportionate share of adverse outcomes, accounting for 79% of all perioperative deaths. Notably, the authors identified important gaps in the perioperative management of these patients. A minority of the high-risk patients were monitored using an arterial line, a central line, or cardiac output monitoring; still more concerning was their observation that 48% of all high-risk patients who died were never admitted to a critical care unit for postoperative management. Similar findings were obtained in another study of surgical outcomes conducted across 28 European countries between April 4 and April 11, 2011.[50] Such patterns, which the authors describe as a "systematic failure in the process of allocation of critical care resources" in Europe, highlight the potential importance of "rescue"—the prevention of mortality among patients who experience postoperative complications—in determining the outcomes of surgical care. Further, to the extent that critical care use among patients who die after surgery is higher in the United States than in the United Kingdom,[51] such differences may offer insight into potential reasons for earlier observations of lower risk-adjusted postoperative mortality among American versus British surgical patients.[52]

In the United States, Whitlock and colleagues[52a] retrospectively analyzed 2,948,842 cases logged in the National Anesthesia Clinical Outcomes Registry between 2010 and 2014. They documented a mortality rate of 33 per 100,000. Increasing ASA physical status, emergency case status, time of day, and age less than 1 year or greater than 65 years were independently associated with perioperative mortality. After adjustment for confounding factors, mortality remained greater for cases started after 6 PM, suggesting that certain factors influencing perioperative mortality might be modifiable. The most common concurrent outcomes in patients who died within 48 hours of anesthesia were hemodynamic instability (35.0%) and respiratory complications (8.1%). Notably, due to data limitations, the authors did not comment on the number of deaths that were anesthesia associated.

In summary, research on anesthesia-related mortality offers a complex and still incomplete picture regarding the risks of anesthesia. Taken from the perspective of the 1987 CEPOD report or the findings of Li and colleagues, modern operative anesthesia could be characterized as an exceedingly safe enterprise with bad outcomes occurring as truly rare events; however, other studies have disputed these findings. More recent work has sought to go beyond efforts to quantify the contribution of anesthesia per se to overall operative risk to explore how anesthesia providers might be able to improve outcomes among high-risk patients—in essence asking not "how safe is anesthesia?" but instead "how can anesthesia providers help make surgery safer?" Ultimately, these studies' differing messages emphasize not only the dynamic nature of anesthesia risk over time, but also highlight important changes in how anesthetic risk has been defined across different periods and how alternate approaches to evaluating, describing, and mitigating such risk may be more or less relevant at a given moment in time.

ANALYSIS OF INTRAOPERATIVE CARDIAC ARREST

In an alternative approach to evaluating perioperative mortality specific to anesthesia, several studies have evaluated intraoperative fatal and nonfatal cardiac arrest. In contrast to efforts to estimate the mortality attributable to anesthesia per se, studies of intraoperative cardiac arrest may offer a broader picture of the potential hazards of anesthesia by examining an adverse outcome that is far more common than mortality yet remains highly consequential for long-term outcomes.

These studies offer a range of perspectives on the incidence of intraoperative cardiac arrest and the causes of such events. For example, Keenan and Boyan[53] studied the incidence and causes of cardiac arrest related to anesthesia at the Medical College of Virginia between 1969 and 1983. A total of 27 cardiac arrests occurred during 163,240 procedures, for an incidence of 1.7 per 10,000 cases. Fourteen patients died, for an incidence of 0.9 per 10,000 cases. Pediatric patients had a threefold higher risk of cardiac arrest than did adults, and emergency cases had a sixfold greater risk. Importantly, specific errors in anesthesia management could be identified in 75% of the cases; most common among these were inadequate ventilation and overdose of an inhaled anesthetic. Notably, the investigators identified progressive bradycardia preceding all but one arrest, suggesting that early identification and treatment may prevent complications.

Similar findings were reported by Olsson and Hallen,[54] who studied the incidence of intraoperative cardiac arrest at the Karolinska Hospital in Stockholm, Sweden, from 1967 to 1984. A total of 170 arrests occurred in 250,543 anesthesia procedures performed. Sixty patients died, for a mortality rate of 2.4 per 10,000 procedures. After eliminating cases of inevitable death (e.g., rupture of a cerebral aneurysm, trauma), the rate of mortality caused by anesthesia was 0.3 per 10,000 procedures. The most common causes of anesthesia-related cardiac arrest were inadequate ventilation (27 patients), asystole after succinylcholine (23 patients), and postinduction hypotension (14 patients). The incidence of cardiac arrest was highest in the patients with significant comorbid disease, as assessed by the ASA physical status classification. Notable is the finding that the incidence of cardiac arrest decreased over the study period. These findings were reproduced in other studies, including that of Biboulet and colleagues[55] and Newland and associates.[56]

TABLE 30.8 Selected Cardiac Arrest Series When the Denominator Is Greater Than 40,000 Anesthetics

Study	Years	Total Number of Anesthetics	Rate of Arrest
Hanks and Papper	1947-1950	49,728	1:2,162
Ehrenhaft et al.	1942-1951	71,000	1:2,840
Bonica	1945-1952	90,000	1:6,000
Blades	1948-1952	42,636	1:21,318
Hewlett et al.	1950-1954	56,033	1:2,061
Briggs et al.	1945-1954	103,777	1:1,038
Keenan and Boyan	1969-1978	107,257	1:6,704 (P)
Cohen et al.	1975-1983	112,721	1:1,427 (C)
Tiret et al.	1978-1982	198,103	1:3,358 (C)
Tiret et al.	1978-1982	198,103	1:11,653 (P)
Keenan and Boyan	1979-1988*	134,677	1:9,620 (P)
Newland et al.	1989-1999	72,959	1:14,493 (P)
Newland et al.	1989-1999	72,959	1:7,299 (C)
Olsson et al.	1967-1984	250,543	1:33,000
Biboulet et al.	1989-1995	101,769	1:7,828
Kawashima et al.	1994-1998	2,363,038	1:10,000 (P)
Sprung et al.	1990-2000	518,294	1:20,000 (P)
Braz et al.	1996-2005	53,718	1.9:10,000 (P)

*Since pulse oximetry was introduced in 1984, no preventable respiratory cardiac arrests have occurred.

C, Contributory cause; *P*, primary cause.

Modified from Brown DL. Anesthesia risk: a historical perspective. In: Brown DL, ed. *Risk and Outcome in Anesthesia*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott; 1992:14.

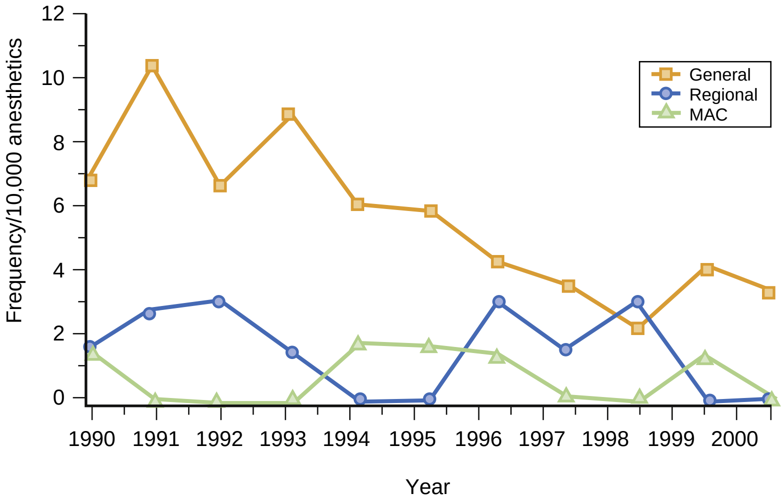


Fig. 30.2 Frequency of cardiac arrest by calendar year and type of anesthesia. *MAC,* Monitored anesthesia care. (From Sprung J, Warner ME, Contreras MG, et al. Predictors of survival following cardiac arrest in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a study of 518,294 patients at a tertiary referral center. *Anesthesiology.* 2003;99:259–269.)

TABLE 30.9 Cardiac Arrest Totally Attributable to Anesthesia During Anesthesia and Surgery and Its Outcomes, 1994 to 1998

		OUTCOMES				
	Number of Arrests	**Uneventful Recovery**	**Death in Surgical Unit**	**Death Within 7 Days**	**Vegetative State**	**Others**
5-year total	237	185	13	15	9	15
Incidence per 10,000	1.00	0.78	0.05	0.08	0.04	0.06
95% CI	0.88- ≈1.12	0.66- ≈0.89	0.2- ≈0.08	0.02- ≈0.13	0.03- ≈0.05	0.02- ≈0.10
Ratio	100%	78.1%	5.5%	6.3%	3.8%	6.3%
95% CI		55.3- ≈100	1.7- ≈9.3	3.0- ≈9.7	2.5- ≈5.3	1.7- ≈11.0

N = 2,363,038. *CI,* Confidence interval.

Reproduced with permission from Kawashima Y, Takahashi S, Suzuki M, et al. Anesthesia-related mortality and morbidity over a 5-year period in 2,363,038 patients in Japan. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:809–817.

Sprung and colleagues[57] demonstrated similar findings with regard to incidence and outcome of cardiac arrest during 72,529 procedures between 1989 and 1999 in a teaching hospital in the United States. They also found that the frequency of arrest in patients receiving general anesthesia decreased over time (7.8 per 10,000 during 1990-1992; 3.2 per 10,000 during 1998-2000). The frequency of arrest during regional anesthesia (1.5 per 10,000) and monitored anesthesia care (MAC) (0.7 per 10,000) remained the same during the study period (Fig. 30.2). More recently, Ellis and group[57a] used an institutional quality improvement database to identify all instances of cardiac arrest occurring within a 24-hour perioperative period between 1999 and 2009. They identified 161 arrests in 217,365 anesthetics, 14 of which were found to be anesthesia-attributable (0.6 per 10,000 anesthetics) and 23 that were anesthesia-contributory (1.1 per 10,000). Of anesthesia-attributable events, the majority (64%) were caused by airway complications during induction or emergence. The mortality associated with these events was 29%.

Kawashima and colleagues identified even lower rates of cardiac arrest attributable to anesthesia in a survey-based study conducted in Japan from 1994 through 1998.[58] The average yearly incidence of cardiac arrest during surgery that was totally attributable to anesthesia was 1 per 10,000 cases (95% CI, 0.88-1.12). The average mortality per year in the surgical unit or within seven postoperative days that was totally attributable to anesthesia was 0.21 (0.15-0.27) per 10,000 cases. The two principal causes of cardiac arrest solely attributable to anesthesia were drug overdose or selection error (15.3%) and serious arrhythmia (13.9%). Preventable human errors caused 53.2% of cardiac arrests and 22.2% of deaths in the surgical unit that were totally attributable to anesthesia. The outcomes of cardiac arrests totally attributable to anesthesia are shown in Table 30.9.

Kheterpal and colleagues at the University of Michigan examined predictors of cardiac adverse events—including cardiac arrest, myocardial infarction, and clinically significant arrhythmia—among 7700 patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. Eighty-three patients (1.1%) experienced an adverse event. The authors identified nine independent predictors of an adverse event: (1) age 68 years or older, (2) body mass index of 30 or greater, (3) emergency surgery, (4) previous coronary intervention or cardiac surgery, (5) active congestive heart failure, (6) cerebrovascular disease, (7) hypertension, (8) operative time of 3.8 hours or longer, and (9) the intraoperative administration of one or more units of packed red blood cells.[60]

In summary, perioperative cardiac arrest is a relatively rare event whose incidence may be decreasing over time. Further, research in this area has highlighted the role of both patient factors and intraoperative care as contributing to the risk of intraoperative and postoperative cardiac arrest and emphasized the management of ventilation and the selection and dosing of anesthetic medications as key areas of focus for the prevention of such events.

PERIOPERATIVE MORTALITY AND MORBIDITY IN OUTPATIENT SURGERY

In the United States, an estimated 60% of all surgical procedures are performed on an outpatient basis, and this percentage is increasing annually. The type and extent of surgical procedures performed in an outpatient setting are constantly changing, and more complicated procedures associated with greater perioperative risk are increasingly being performed on an outpatient basis.

Notably, early research on the safety of two ambulatory surgical procedures—tonsillectomy and simple mastectomy—presented a negative view of the hazards of surgery in the outpatient setting. One of the first procedures advocated to be performed on an ambulatory basis was tonsillectomy. Although a 1968 case series of 40,000 outpatient tonsillectomies reported no deaths,[61] details on patient selection and length of postoperative monitoring were vague. Based on insurance company and state mandates, performance of tonsillectomy on an outpatient basis became routine.[62] Beginning in the mid-1980s and continuing in the 1990s, a number of articles evaluated outcomes with early discharge after tonsillectomy. For example, Carithers and colleagues[63] in 1987 at Ohio State University reported on 3000 tonsillectomies and argued that early discharge might be hazardous and economically unwarranted. The rate of readmission for active bleeding between 5 and 24 hours after surgery was reported to be between 0.2% and 0.5%.[64-67] More recently, Cote and his co-investigators in the Society for Pediatric Anesthesia[67a] used a survey instrument as well as analysis of the ASA-CCP to investigate adverse events associated with tonsillectomy in children. They identified a total of 111 events occurring between 1999 and 2010. Death was the most common outcome (66%), followed by neurologic injury (11%) and prolonged hospital stay (10%). Events in children at risk for obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) were more frequently attributed to apnea, whereas children not at risk for OSA were more likely to experience adverse events secondary to hemorrhage. Fifty percent of patients with postoperative events had received postoperative opioids, including 61% of those children who experienced apneic events in the next 24 hours. Events occurred in multiple locations (the operating room, postanesthesia care unit [PACU], and after discharge). In spite of the limitations in the largely self-reported data, these findings clearly suggest that tonsillectomy remains a procedure with significant associated risk, even in the ambulatory setting.

Mastectomy represents a second important case study in the development of surgery as an outpatient procedure. An analysis of Medicare claims demonstrated that the rate of outpatient mastectomy increased from a negligible proportion of all mastectomies in 1986 to 10.8% of all mastectomies performed among Medicare beneficiaries in 1995.[68] Within this population, simple mastectomies performed on an outpatient basis had a significantly higher rate of readmission than did those undergoing a 1-day hospital stay, with an adjusted odds ratio of 1.84. Additionally, rates of readmission after 1-day stays were significantly lower for infection (4.1 vs. 1.8 per 1000 cases), nausea and vomiting (1.1 vs. 0 per 1000 cases), and pulmonary embolism or deep venous thrombosis (1.1 vs. 0 per 1000 cases).

More recent research suggests that, for some procedures, mere exposure to anesthesia in the outpatient setting may present an increased risk for complications. In 2013, Cooper and colleagues[68a] reviewed outcomes for a sample of cancer-free Medicare beneficiaries in the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results database undergoing outpatient colonoscopy without polypectomy, and compared outcomes including hospitalization and aspiration pneumonia for those undergoing procedures with or without deep sedation (anesthesia services). The researchers identified 35,128 (21.2%) procedures with anesthesia services in a total of 100,359 patients; overall complications were more common in patients who had received anesthesia (0.22% vs. 0.16%, $P < .001$). Aspiration was also more common in the anesthesia group (0.14% vs. 0.1%, $P = .02$). Multivariate analysis also demonstrated an increased risk of complications associated with use of anesthesia (odds ratio 1.46, 95% CI 1.09-1.94).

In contrast to these procedure-specific studies, the 1993 publication of Warner and colleagues[69] on major morbidity and mortality within 1 month of ambulatory surgery strongly argued for the safety and feasibility of surgery in the outpatient setting. Among the 38,598 patients included in Warner's study, four died. Of these four deaths, two were due to myocardial infarctions occurring more than 1 week after surgery; the other two deaths occurred in automobile accidents (Fig. 30.3). Partially as a result of these findings, the use of ambulatory surgery has dramatically grown between the early 1990s and the present, with a concurrent increase in the number and type of sites for ambulatory surgery. Such sites now include not only freestanding ambulatory surgery centers (ASCs) and physician's offices, but they also include interventional radiology units and other diagnostic and therapeutic sites not affiliated with any other healthcare facility.

In the context of such growth, investigators have sought to examine the relative safety of similar procedures performed across different outpatient settings. Fleisher and co-workers[2] performed a claims analysis of patients undergoing 16 different surgical procedures in a nationally representative (5%) sample of Medicare beneficiaries for the years 1994 through 1999. A total of 564,267 procedures were studied, with 360,780 in an outpatient hospital, 175,288 in an ASC, and 28,199 in a physician's office. On the day of surgery, no deaths occurred in the office, but four deaths occurred in the ASC (2.3 per 100,000) and nine deaths occurred in the outpatient hospital (2.5 per 100,000). The 7-day mortality rate was 35 per 100,000 in the office setting, 25 per 100,000 in the ASC, and 50 per 100,000 in the outpatient hospital. The rate of admission to an inpatient hospital within 7 days was 9.08 per 1000 in the office, 8.41 per 1000 in the ASC,

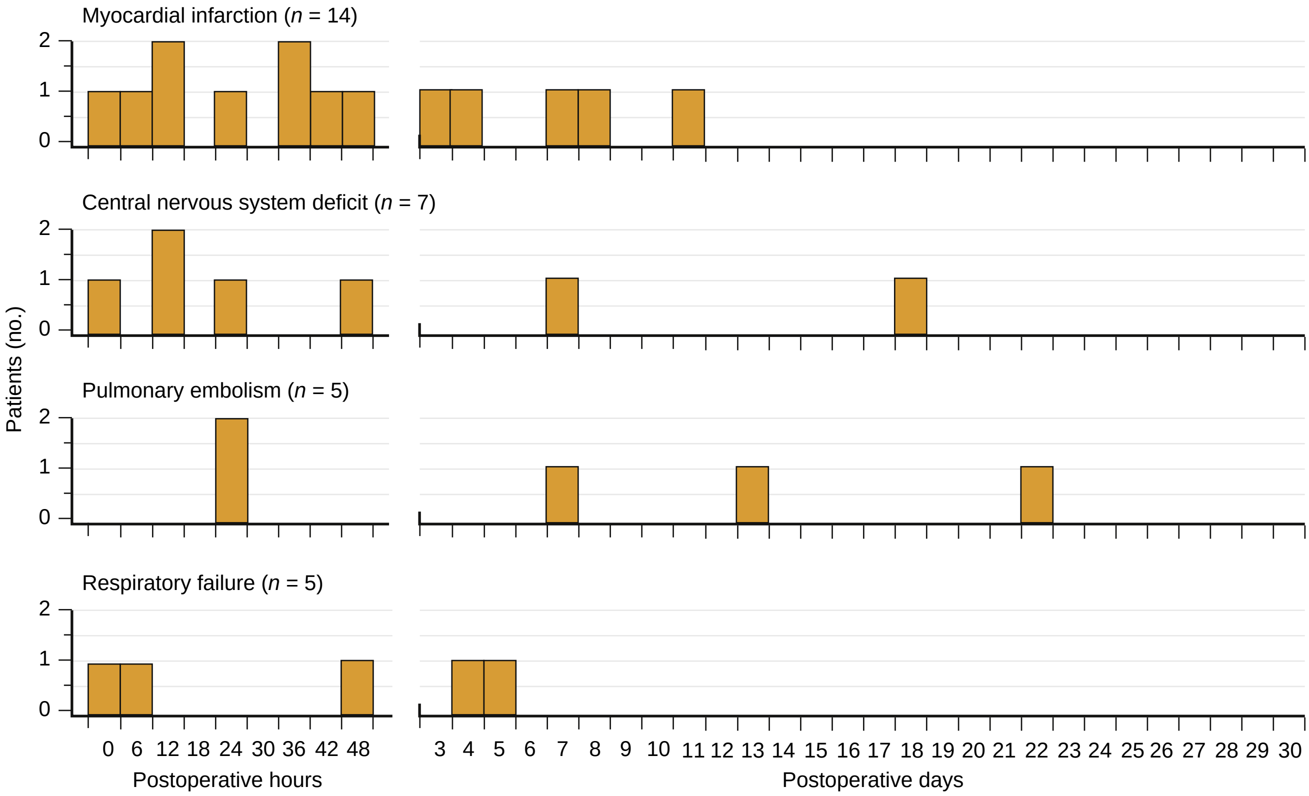


Fig. 30.3 Timing of perioperative events in patients undergoing ambulatory surgery. Many of the events occurring within the first 48 hours are probably related to the stress of surgery. A subset of events occurring after this period may be related to background event rates. The overall rate of morbidity was lower than expected for a similar cohort of age-matched nonsurgical patients. (From Warner MA, Shields SE, Chute CG. Major morbidity and mortality within 1 month of ambulatory surgery and anesthesia. *JAMA.* 1993;270(12):1437–1441.)

and 21 per 1000 in the outpatient hospital. Notably, the inferences of this study are limited by an inability to distinguish fully whether these differences in outcomes are related to the differences in the types of patients selected to have surgery in each setting versus the differences in the care patients received in each setting.

Subsequent work by Chukmaitov and colleagues compared quality outcomes between ASCs and hospital-based outpatient departments in the state of Florida between the years 1997 and 2004.[71] Although their conclusions were limited by differences in the data available for patients treated in each setting, they postulated that the difference in outcomes between the two locations may be related to variations in organizational structure, processes, and strategies.

In contrast to the growing literature on the safety of anesthesia and surgery in ASCs, limited information exists to quantify the incidence of complications in office-based settings. The American Association for Ambulatory Plastic Surgery Facilities mailed a survey to their members to determine the incidence of complications occurring in office facilities.[72] The overall response rate was 57%. The findings showed that 0.47% of patients had at least one complication, including bleeding, hypertension, infection, and hypotension, and 1 in 57,000 patients died. Although low in absolute terms, the observation of a rate of mortality after minor outpatient procedures that is three times the current estimate for anesthesia-related complications is concerning in this context.

Vila and colleagues reviewed all adverse incident reports to the Florida Board of Medicine for procedures dated April 1, 2000, to April 1, 2002.[73] Adverse incidents occurred at a rate of 66 and 5.3 per 100,000 procedures in offices and ASCs, respectively. The death rate per 100,000 procedures performed was 9.2 in offices and 0.78 in ASCs. The relative risk (RR) for injury and death for procedures performed in offices versus ASCs was 12.4 (95% CI, 9.5-16.2) and 11.8 (95% CI, 5.8-24.1), respectively. As a result, the authors concluded that if all office procedures had been performed in ASCs, approximately 43 injuries and 6 deaths per year could have been prevented. However, several other groups have also analyzed the Florida data and have been unable to document the increased risk in the office setting.[74-76]

In summary, although early research on ambulatory surgery placed an emphasis on the undue risks created by premature discharge, more recent analyses confirm that a range of surgeries can be safely performed in properly selected patients. Although some variations in outcomes have been observed across settings (i.e., hospital outpatient department vs. ASC), available literature suggests that, given proper patient selection, outpatient surgeries can be performed with a low rate of adverse events in multiple practice environments. Given the gradual expansion of outpatient surgery over time to include patients with greater burdens of comorbid disease and more extensive procedures, ongoing evaluations will be essential to characterize the dynamic, evolving nature of anesthetic risk in the ambulatory setting.

USE OF ANESTHESIA INFORMATION MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS

Over the past four decades, the use of computerized databases has enhanced the ability to assess perioperative risk and complications.

In one of the earliest computer analyses of postanesthesia deaths, Marx and associates[36] identified 645 individuals who died within 7 days after surgery out of a total cohort of 34,145 consecutive surgical patients. More recently, the growth of electronic anesthesia record systems has allowed for better insights into the causes of anesthesia-related events within the surgical unit, and, when used in combination with other data sources, on postoperative outcomes. An early example of such an analysis was that of Sanborn and colleagues,[77] who used a computer anesthesia record to identify intraoperative incidents. They were able to demonstrate that perioperative deaths occurred more frequently in patients who sustained an intraoperative incident of any type than in those who did not. Reich and colleagues similarly used computerized anesthesia records to evaluate hemodynamic variables and their relationship to risk.[78] They identified pulmonary hypertension, hypotension during cardiopulmonary bypass, and post–cardiopulmonary bypass pulmonary diastolic hypertension as independent predictors associated with mortality, stroke, and perioperative myocardial infarction over and above the effects of other preoperative risk factors.

More recently, data from the University of Michigan anesthesia information management system have been used to identify predictors of perioperative risk, including that of inadequate mask ventilation and of postoperative acute kidney injury. In the former evaluation of 22,660 patients,[79] limited or severely limited mandibular protrusion, abnormal neck anatomy, sleep apnea, snoring, and a body mass index of 30 $\mathrm{kg/m^2}$ or greater were independent predictors of grade 3 or 4 mask ventilation and difficult intubation. Review of 15,102 patients who had a normal preoperative creatinine clearance and underwent noncardiac surgery[80] demonstrated that acute renal failure developed in 121 patients (0.8%), with 14 requiring renal replacement therapy (0.1%). Seven independent preoperative predictors were identified: age, emergency surgery, liver disease, body mass index, high-risk surgery, peripheral vascular occlusive disease, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease necessitating chronic bronchodilator therapy. Acute renal failure was associated with increased mortality from any cause at 30 days, 60 days, and 1 year.

In an effort to expand upon the insights gained from single-institution studies, two major efforts have since been initiated to pool electronic data on anesthesia care from multiple sites as a means of more effectively comparing outcomes and defining risk factors related to outcomes after anesthesia. The first of these, the Multicenter Perioperative Outcomes Group, was initiated in 2008 under the leadership of investigators at the University of Michigan. This project currently collects electronic anesthesia data from over 50 participating anesthesia departments in two countries. To date, the group has released a series of observational studies, including a report on the risks and outcomes of epidural hematomas after perioperative and obstetric epidural catheterization[26] and a subsequent report evaluating the risk of epidural hematoma after neuraxial anesthesia in thrombocytopenic parturients.[80a] Other projects have evaluated predictors of difficult mask ventilation and intubation via direct laryngoscopy,[80b] as well as the success of a variety of rescue intubation techniques following direct laryngoscopy.[80c] The Multicenter Perioperative Outcomes Group recently established Initiative for Multicenter Perioperative Clinical Trials, an arm dedicated to clinical and translational research.

The second group, the National Anesthesia Clinical Outcomes Registry, is maintained by the Anesthesia Quality Institute, a nonprofit organization established by the ASA. This large-scale data warehouse collects paper and electronic anesthesia case data used to review anesthesia practices with the intent of optimizing local efforts to assess both the risk and the quality of care, and for research purposes for the specialty as a whole. The Registry has released data related to perioperative mortality (cited earlier).

OTHER APPROACHES TO DISCERN THE ROOT CAUSE OF MORBIDITY AND MORTALITY

Although mortality directly attributable to anesthesia appears to have declined over time, the exact causes of this decline remain unclear. Numerous factors have been implicated in the improved outcome, including new monitoring modalities, new anesthetic drugs, and changes in the anesthesia workforce. However, relating the reduced risk to any one factor on the basis of available epidemiologic data is difficult. Further, although the use of newer monitoring modalities, particularly pulse oximetry, would be expected to improve outcomes, no randomized trial has been able to document such a conclusion. This limitation supports the need for continued monitoring of complications and their root cause through a number of approaches.

Initiated by the Professional Liability Committee of the ASA, the ASA-CCP represents one important approach to understanding the root causes of important complications of anesthesia care. The ASA-CCP constitutes an ongoing, nationwide survey of closed insurance claims for major anesthesia-related adverse events. In an early publication based on data collected by the ASA-CCP, Caplan and colleagues reviewed both fatal and nonfatal outcomes resulting in claims against anesthesia providers. Among the fatal events, unexpected cardiac arrest during spinal anesthesia was observed in 14 healthy patients from the initial 900 claims.[81] These cases were analyzed in detail to identify patterns of care that might have led to the event. Two patterns were identified: oversedation leading to respiratory insufficiency and inappropriate resuscitation of high spinal sympathetic blockade.

Tinker and co-workers[82] queried the ASA-CCP to determine the role of monitoring devices in the prevention of anesthesia mishaps. They reviewed 1097 anesthesia-related claims and determined that 31.5% of the negative outcomes could have been prevented by the use of additional monitors, primarily pulse oximetry and capnography. Injuries that were deemed preventable with additional monitoring resulted in dramatically more severe injury and cost of settlement than did those judged to be nonpreventable with additional monitoring. These findings were reinforced by a subsequent study of intraoperative respiratory events by Caplan and colleagues (Table 30.10).[83] These claims represented the single largest class of injury (34%), with death or brain damage occurring in 85% of cases. They identified inadequate ventilation, esophageal intubation, and difficult tracheal intubation as the primary causes of respiratory events. The investigators believed most of the outcomes to be preventable with better monitoring, such as pulse oximetry or capnography (Fig. 30.4).[84] In more recent evaluations of MAC using the ASA-CCP, more than 40% of 121 claims associated with MAC involved death or permanent brain damage. Respiratory depression, after an absolute or relative overdose of sedative or opioid drugs, was the most common (21%, $n = 25$) of the complications.

A similar registry was developed by the Danish Patient Insurance Association.[85] For the years of 1996 through 2004, 1256 files were related to anesthesia, and 24 deaths were considered to be a result of the anesthetic procedure: 4 deaths were related to airway management, 2 to ventilation management, 4 to central venous catheter placement, 4 as a result of medication errors, 4 from infusion pump problems, and 4 after complications from regional blockade. Severe hemorrhage caused one death, and the cause was uncertain in one case.

TABLE 30.10 Distribution of Adverse Respiratory Events in the American Society of Anesthesiologists' Anesthesia Closed Claims Study

Event	Number of Cases	Percent of 522 Respiratory Claims
Inadequate ventilation	196	38
Esophageal intubation	94	18
Difficult tracheal intubation	87	17
Inadequate inspired oxygen concentration	11	2

From Caplan RA, Ward RJ, Posner K, Cheney FW. Unexpected cardiac arrest during spinal anesthesia: a closed claims analysis of predisposing factors. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;68(1):5–11.

Cooper and colleagues[86,87] took an alternate approach to examining perioperative mortality through the study of critical incidents, which were defined as those that were potentially preventable and could lead to undesirable outcomes. This definition included events that led to no harm or only transient effects. The investigation involved collecting data on anesthesia-related human errors and equipment failures from anesthesiologists, residents, and certified registered nurse anesthetists (CRNAs). In a series of reports, the authors identified frequent incidents, such as disconnections in breathing circuits, and causes of discovery of errors, such as intraoperative relief. They confirmed that equipment failure was a small cause of anesthesia mishaps (4%), whereas human error was a predominant factor. They suggested that future studies of anesthesia-related mortality and morbidity should classify events according to a strategy for prevention rather than outcome alone.

Other countries have developed similar databases, such as the Australian Incident Monitoring Study. Data from this database have been used to evaluate problems with ventilation, with vascular access, and in the PACU.[88,89]

ISSUES ASSOCIATED WITH ANESTHESIA-RELATED MORTALITY

The studies detailed in the preceding text focus on intraoperative or in-hospital deaths directly attributable to anesthesia care; nonetheless, perioperative complications may contribute to the risk of mortality beyond the immediate postoperative period. For example, a perioperative stroke or myocardial infarction may lead to death after the period of analysis. Notably, recent research has suggested that even small myocardial infarctions or unstable angina during the perioperative period have been associated with worsened long-term survival.[91] Should these *late* deaths be attributed to anesthesia complications for the purpose of such analyses? The answer depends on the outcome and its relationship to anesthesia management.

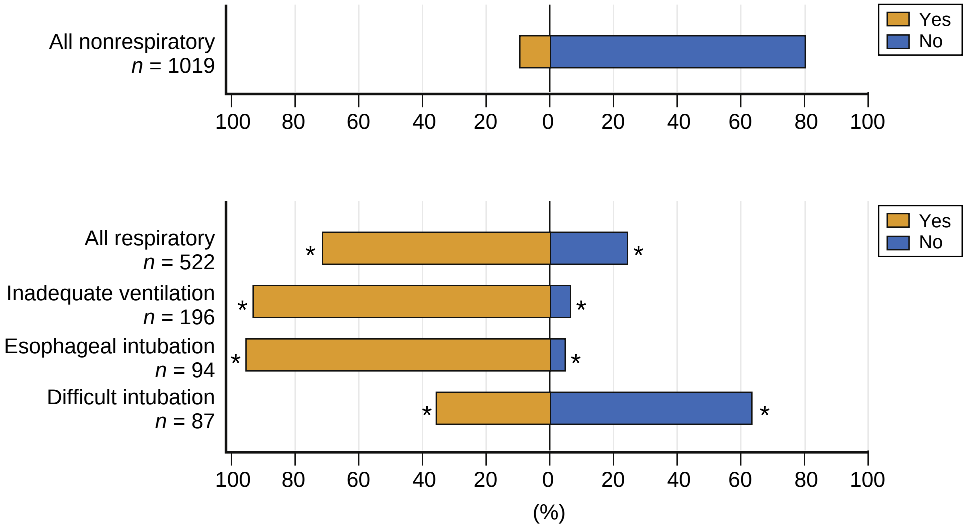


Fig. 30.4 Relationship between adverse events in the American Society of Anesthesiologists' Anesthesia Closed Claims Project and preventable complications. Preventable events related to respiratory complications were significantly more common than those related to all nonrespiratory complications. Of the respiratory complications, difficult intubation had the least number of preventable complications (*$P < .05$ vs. nonrespiratory claims). (From Caplan RA, Posner KL, Ward RJ, Cheney FW. Adverse respiratory events in anesthesia: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(5):828–833.)

The potential effects of anesthesia on long-term survival were suggested by Monk and colleagues.[92] Using multivariate Cox proportional hazards models, these investigators identified three variables as significant independent predictors of mortality: patient comorbidity (RR, 16.116), cumulative deep hypnotic time (bispectral index < 45) (RR, 1.244/h), and intraoperative systolic hypotension (RR, 1.036/min). Further work is required to determine whether these results reflect a true pathophysiologic link between perioperative (anesthesia) management and long-term outcome or a simple statistical association. This study and others, however, emphasize the importance of evaluating all aspects of anesthesia care and short- and long-term outcomes to try to optimize both long- and short-term patient outcomes.

Risks Related to Patient Characteristics

Multiple studies have demonstrated that perioperative morbidity and mortality are increased in the presence of coexisting medical diseases. The ASA physical status classification system, originally proposed in 1941,[93] represents a widely used method of classifying the severity of coexisting disease among surgical patients. Since its introduction, this classification system has established a standardized terminology for anesthesia practice and has aided in developing valid statistical comparisons of outcomes among sites.[94]

The correlation between ASA physical status and mortality offers a simple illustration of the link between comorbidities and adverse operative outcomes. In 1961, Dripps and co-workers demonstrated that mortality increased as the severity of comorbid disease increased, as assessed by the ASA physical status classification.[32] Several investigators have reevaluated the relationship between operative mortality and ASA physical status and demonstrated similar findings.[43,46,95]

In Canada, Cohen and colleagues[96] analyzed 100,000 anesthesia procedures and determined mortality within 7 days of surgery by using governmental vital statistics mortality data between the years 1975 and 1984. For each patient, information was collected on age, preoperative conditions, ASA physical status, anesthetic technique, monitors, and other factors. The overall 7-day mortality rate was 71.04 deaths per 10,000 procedures. Risk markers for mortality are detailed in Table 30.11.

TABLE 30.11 Risk Factors Associated With Increased Odds of Dying Within 7 Days For All Cases

Variable	All Procedures: Relative Odds of Dying Within 7 Days	95% Confidence Limits
PATIENT RELATED		
Age (yr)		
60-79 vs. < 60	2.32	1.70-3.17
80+ vs. < 60	3.29	2.18-4.96
Sex (female vs. male)	0.77	0.59-1.00
ASA physical status classification (3-5 vs. 1-2)	10.65	7.59-14.85
SURGERY RELATED		
Major vs. minor	3.82	2.50-5.93
Intermediate vs. minor	1.76	1.24-2.5
Length of anesthesia (≤2 h vs. < 2 h)	1.08	0.77-1.50
Emergency vs. elective	4.44	3.38-5.83
OTHER FACTORS		
Year of surgery (1975-1979 vs. 1980-1984)	1.75	1.32-2.31
Complication in the surgical or recovery unit (yes vs. no)	1.42	1.06-1.89
ANESTHESIA RELATED*		
Experience of the anesthetist (>600 procedures for ≥ 8 years vs. <600 procedures for <8 years)	1.06	0.82-1.37
Inhalation with narcotic vs. inhalation alone	0.76	0.51-1.15
Narcotic alone vs. inhalation alone	1.41	1.01-2.00
Narcotic with inhalation vs. inhalation alone	0.79	0.47-1.32
Spinal vs. inhalation alone	0.53	0.29-0.98
Number of anesthetic drugs (1-2 vs. 3)	2.94	2.20-3.84

*All cases performed with the five most frequently used anesthetic techniques.

Modified from Cohen MM, Duncan PG, Tate RB. Does anesthesia contribute to operative mortality? *JAMA*. 1988;260(19):2859–2863.

One of the limitations of the ASA physical status classification system is that the ranking is determined by individual anesthesia providers; as such, there may be variance between providers, as demonstrated by Owens and coworkers.[97] In light of these limitations, other studies have attempted to define the specific patient characteristics that are most strongly associated with perioperative adverse events related to a particular organ system. In evaluating the risk directly related to the patient's condition, the limitations of the methodology must be understood. All such studies evaluate the predictive value of a clinical or laboratory risk factor for a defined perioperative complication. In this approach, a cohort of individuals of interest is defined. Ideally, the study is performed prospectively, and the outcome of interest is assessed in a rigorous, blinded fashion. Despite this, many available studies of perioperative risk factors focus on selected patients and include a retrospective design, methods that greatly limit their generalizability and validity. Many studies use multivariate modeling to determine the factors associated with increased risk. A major limitation in the use of multivariate modeling for this purpose is the assumption that the intraoperative period is a *black box* and that care is not modified by the knowledge of the risk factor (Fig. 30.5). However, anesthesiologists modify intraoperative care of high-risk patients in an attempt to minimize the likelihood of complications. Changes in medical care over time and better knowledge about high-risk patients should result in a reduction of the risk related to specified clinical factors. Such considerations make it difficult to design and complete formal investigations to validate individual management strategies in the context of current practice.

One common approach taken in past efforts to quantify operative risk has been to examine the relationship between a single risk factor and a broad range of adverse perioperative outcomes. For example, numerous studies have evaluated the importance of hypertension on perioperative risk. Goldman

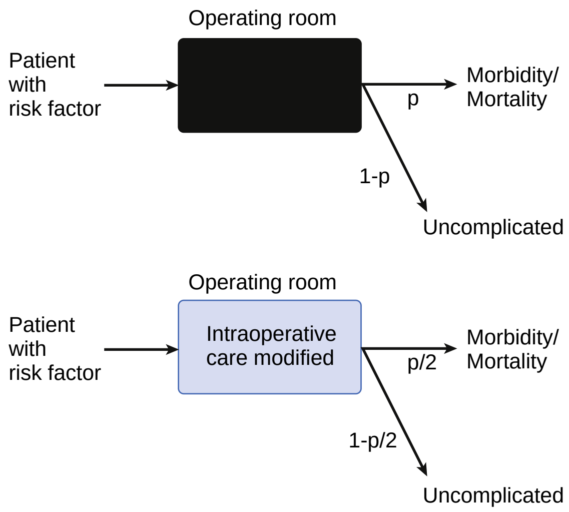


Fig. 30.5 The concept of the black box for risk indices. In developing a risk index, patients with a specific risk factor enter the operating room and have a complication at a rate *p*. If the anesthesiologist is aware of the importance of the risk factor and can modify care to reduce such risk (*p/2*), then the risk factor may no longer be significant. If the risk factor is ignored, then complications may again occur in such patients.

and Caldera[98] evaluated a cohort of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery under general anesthesia. Hypertension was not associated with increased perioperative risk, although the number of patients with diastolic blood pressure greater than 110 mm Hg was too small to draw any statistically significant conclusions. In contrast, Hollenberg and co-workers[99] identified hypertension and the presence of left ventricular hypertrophy as predictors of perioperative ischemia, but they did not consider their independent relationship to perioperative major morbidity. More recently, Baron and colleagues[99a] analyzed data from a prospective study examining perioperative care across 28 European countries to evaluate the impact of hemoglobin levels on in-hospital mortality. Patients with severe (hemoglobin < 8 g/dL) or moderate (8-11 g/dL) levels were found to have higher rates of in-hospital mortality as well as longer length of stay and a higher likelihood of postoperative admission to the intensive care unit.

An alternative to examining the impact of a single risk factor on perioperative outcomes involves a more general effort to identify multiple risk factors for one or more adverse perioperative outcomes. Multiple researchers have undertaken prospective and retrospective cohort studies with the goal of identifying patients at greatest risk for fatal and nonfatal myocardial infarction. One of the earliest attempts to define cardiac risk was performed by Goldman and colleagues at the Massachusetts General Hospital.[13] They studied 1001 patients older than 45 years of age who were undergoing noncardiac surgery. Using multivariate logistic regression, they demonstrated nine clinical factors associated with increased morbidity and mortality. Each risk factor was weighted in the logistic regression equation and converted into points in the index. An increasing number of points was associated with increasing perioperative cardiac morbidity or mortality.

Several attempts have been made to validate the Goldman Cardiac Risk Index in the surgical population.[100,101] The validity of the Cardiac Risk Index is more controversial for patients undergoing vascular surgery. Several groups[102-104] were able to demonstrate a similar, if not identical, pattern of increasing cardiac complication rate with increasing cardiac risk. Several other studies, however, were unable to demonstrate any relationship between the Cardiac Risk Index and perioperative cardiac complications, with a high incidence of complications found in patients with a Cardiac Risk Index of I or II.[105,106] When the ASA physical status classification system was compared with the Goldman Cardiac Risk Index in a cohort of 16,277 patients undergoing noncardiac surgery,[106] both indices demonstrated predictive value, although the objective Goldman Cardiac Risk Index provided little additional value over the more subjective ASA physical status classification.

Since the introduction of the Goldman Cardiac Risk Index, other investigators have put forward alternative risk indices for cardiac events after noncardiac surgery, such as the Detsky Modified Risk Index,[107] which confirms many of the factors identified by Goldman and allows calculation of a pretest probability of complications based on the type of surgery, after which the Detsky Modified Risk Index is applied with the use of a nomogram. The Detsky Modified Risk Index was advocated as the starting point for risk stratification in the American College of Physicians guidelines on preoperative evaluation.[108] Lee and colleagues[109] created a Revised Cardiac Risk Index (RCRI) incorporating six additional risk factors identified in a single-institution study: high-risk type of surgery, history of ischemic heart disease, history of congestive heart failure, history of cerebrovascular disease, preoperative treatment with insulin, and preoperative serum creatinine level higher than 2.0 mg/dL. The rate of major cardiac complications increased with the number of risk factors. The performance of the RCRI was examined in a metaanalysis conducted by Ford and colleagues,[110] who found that although the RCRI showed moderate discrimination for patients at low versus high risk for cardiac events after noncardiac surgery, it did not perform well at predicting death or at predicting cardiac events after vascular surgery.

Gupta and colleagues[111] used data collected by the NSQIP to evaluate the risk for cardiovascular events after noncardiac surgery. This model, which included five variables—type of surgery, dependent functional status, abnormal creatinine level, ASA physical status, and increasing age—demonstrated improved discrimination over the RCRI, which did not improve with the addition of the RCRI score to the model.

Vascular Events in Noncardiac Surgery Patients Cohort Evaluation Study (VISION) is a multinational cohort group actively investigating major perioperative vascular events and their impact on mortality. In a 2016 study of over 15,000 patients in 12 countries, Berwanger and colleagues[111a] noted a reduction in risk of a composite outcome of all-cause mortality, myocardial injury after noncardiac surgery (MINS), and stroke at 30 days (RR = 0.83, 95% CI 0.40-0.83, P = .007) associated with preoperative statin use. Perioperative statin use was also associated with a reduction in all-cause mortality, cardiovascular mortality, and MINS; however, there was no statistically significant difference in risk of myocardial infarction or stroke in statin users or non-users.

In a secondary analysis of the same patient cohort, Abbot and group[111b] investigated the association between elevated heart rate preoperatively and MINS within 30 days of surgery. Preoperative heart rate was stratified by deciles. The results showed that 7.9% of participants had sustained MINS, 2.8% myocardial infarction, and 2.0% died. After adjusting for confounders, the highest heart rate decile (preoperative heart rate more than 96 beats/min) was associated with increased risk of perioperative MINS (odds ratio 1.48, $P < .01$), MI (odds ratio 1.71, $P < .01$), and mortality (odds ratio 3.16, $P < .01$). Heart rates in the lowest decline (<60 beats/min) were independently associated with reduced mortality (odds ratio 0.05, $P = .02$). In a second subgroup analysis, preoperative hypercoagulability was associated with a higher risk of MINS.[111c]

Beyond the efforts at identifying those patients most at risk of postoperative cardiovascular events, recent research has sought to develop statistical models for a range of other organ-based preoperative outcomes. These have included risk models for acute kidney injury in cardiac[112] and noncardiac surgery patients,[60] postoperative respiratory failure,[113,114] and stroke after cardiac surgery[115] and carotid endarterectomy.[116]

In contrast to the efforts to determine risk factors for specific organ-based complications, other investigators have sought to develop risk-prediction models to identify those patients at risk of death from any cause in the immediate postoperative period. For example, Glance and colleagues from the University of Rochester used data from the NSQIP to derive and validate a predictive score for 30-day all-cause mortality for noncardiac surgery. They identified three factors that were highly predictive of death at 30 days after surgery: (1) ASA physical status, (2) emergency status, and (3) surgery type. Patients with ASA physical status I, II, III, IV, or V were assigned 0, 2, 4, 5, or 6 points, respectively; intermediate- or high-risk procedures were assigned 1 or 2 points, respectively; and emergency procedures were assigned 1 point. Patients with risk scores less than 5 had a predicted risk of mortality less than 0.5%, whereas patients with a risk score of 5 to 6 had a risk of mortality between 1.5% and 4%. Patients with a risk score greater than 6 had risk of mortality more than 10%.[117]

Beyond their clinical applicability, such risk indices have become important in the context of health policy by allowing for comparisons of risk-adjusted mortality rates across hospitals and physicians providing cardiac surgery. For example, the state of New York annually publishes data on mortality rates associated with coronary bypass grafting by surgeon and by hospital.[118-120] For comparison of rates across institutions, institutional mortality rates are typically risk-adjusted so that high-performing institutions that treat a high percentage of medically complex patients are not spuriously categorized as *poor performers* simply because of the features of their patient mix.

Beyond identifying clinical indicators of perioperative risk, historic and current research has focused on the role of genetics and genomics on the outcomes of major surgical procedures. Notably, the impact of genotype on perioperative risk has been well known since elucidation of the inheritance pattern of malignant hyperthermia. With malignant hyperthermia, a clear link exists between the autosomal dominant disease and an adverse outcome after administration of an anesthetic.[121] Interest in evaluating the impact of genetic polymorphism on overall perioperative outcome is increasing, even if the link to anesthesia is less well defined. For example, apolipoprotein E4 has been shown to modulate neurologic injury and recovery after a variety of acute ischemic insults, including coronary artery bypass grafting.[122] Polymorphism of the glycoprotein IIIa constituent of the platelet integrin receptor has also been correlated with postoperative cognitive decline.[123,124] Further research will be required to determine specific genetic profiles that will impact anesthetic management strategies, drug selection, and other aspects of care.

Special Patient Groups

OBSTETRICS

Anesthesia for the obstetric patient carries unique challenges, since both the mother and the fetus are potentially at risk for complications. Fortunately, maternal mortality is rare, and the anesthesia-related component of maternal delivery represents only a small fraction of all maternal deaths. As a result, studies of peripartum complications require a large number of patients from a diversity of clinical settings.

In parallel to the early efforts to determine the overall risk of anesthesia for surgery, a series of studies were performed between 1974 and 1985 that sought to determine the rate of obstetric complications in the United States and England, and to assess the contribution of anesthesia per se to the risk of adverse events in this group. Kaunitz and coauthors[125] reported an anesthesia-related death rate of 0.6 per 100,000 births with data from all 50 states. Endler and coworkers[126] studied births in Michigan between 1972 and 1984 and found a rate of 0.82 anesthesia-related deaths per 100,000 live births. Eleven of the 15 deaths were associated with cesarean section. Obesity and emergency surgery were risk factors in many patients. Complications related to regional anesthesia were identified as a problem in the earlier years of the study, whereas failure to secure a patent airway was the primary cause of mortality in the later years. No anesthesia-related maternal deaths occurred in the final 2 years of the study. Rochat and colleagues[127] studied 19 areas of the United States between 1980 and 1985 and reported 0.98 anesthesia-related deaths per 100,000 live births. They observed that maternal mortality did not decrease over the time of the study.

The Confidential Enquiry into Maternal Deaths in England and Wales has been assessing maternal deaths since 1952.[128] Morgan[128] reported the maternal deaths from anesthesia between 1952 and 1981 (Table 30.12). The total maternal mortality rate decreased over time, but the percentage of deaths related to anesthesia increased, although the absolute number of deaths associated with anesthesia decreased. Later reports identified technical difficulties with intubation as a major risk factor. The other major finding of this study was that the experience of the anesthesia provider in obstetric anesthesia was the most important factor in anesthesia-related maternal mortality.

More recent investigations have confirmed ongoing decreases over time in the hazards of obstetric anesthesia. Hawkins and associates[129] obtained data from the ongoing National Pregnancy Mortality Surveillance System of the

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention on births and fetal deaths from 1979 through 1990 to determine the possible risk related to anesthesia for obstetrics. They identified a total of 129 women who died of anesthesia-related causes during the study period. Most (82%) of the deaths occurred during cesarean section, and the incidence of anesthesia-related maternal mortality decreased over time (Table 30.13), possibly the result of a trend toward a greater use of neuraxial techniques. Importantly, among maternal deaths that occurred in the context of general anesthesia for cesarean delivery, 73% were related to airway problems.

In a subsequent study, Panchal and colleagues[130] conducted a retrospective case-control study using patients' records from a state-maintained anonymous database of deliveries between 1984 and 1997. Of the 822,591 hospital admissions for delivery during the 14-year study period, 135 maternal deaths occurred. The most common diagnoses associated with mortality during hospital admission for delivery were preeclampsia or eclampsia (22.2%), postpartum hemorrhage or obstetric shock (22.2%), pulmonary complications (14%), blood clot or amniotic embolism or both (8.1%), and anesthesia-related complications (5.2%). Notably, Panchal's study recorded differences by race in the rate of maternal death per 100,000 live births per year (Fig. 30.6). Although the potential causes of this difference remain to be elucidated, Panchal's findings also suggested potential improvements over time in both the overall risk of maternal mortality, as well as the degree to which such risk differed by race.

TABLE 30.12 Maternal Mortality Figures Obtained from the Confidential Enquiry into Maternal Deaths in England and Wales

Years	Maternal Mortality Per 1000 Total Births	Number of Deaths from Anesthesia	Percent of True Maternal Deaths from Anesthesia	Percent With Avoidable Factors
1952-1954	0.53	49	4.5	—
1955-1957	0.43	31	3.6	77
1958-1960	0.33	30	4.0	80
1961-1963	0.26	28	4.0	50
1964-1966	0.20	50	8.7	48
1967-1969	0.16	50	10.9	68
1970-1972	0.13	37	10.4	76
1973-1975	0.11	31	13.2	90
1976-1978	0.11	30	13.2	93
1979-1981	0.11	22	12.2	100

From Morgan M. Anaesthetic contribution to maternal mortality. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59(7):842–855.

More recent studies have continued to portray maternal mortality related to anesthesia as an important, although exceedingly rare event. Importantly, contemporary analyses of adverse maternal outcomes of anesthesia emphasize the particular risks associated with airway management in this population.[131,132] In 2004, the Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology established the Serious Complication Repository Project to better capture the incidence of serious complications related to obstetric anesthesia. D'Angelo and colleagues[132A] collected outcomes of over 257,000 anesthetics at 30 institutions over a 5-year period. They identified a total of 157 serious complications, 85 of which were anesthesia-related (1 major complication per 3000 anesthetics). Maternal death occurred in 30 cases, but none were determined to be anesthesia-related. Complications frequently attributable to anesthesia included high neuraxial block, respiratory arrest, and unrecognized intrathecal catheter (Table 30.14).

In summary, extensive past research has indicated that the risks of major morbidity and mortality attributable to obstetric anesthesia care have decreased over time; nonetheless, recent research indicates that adverse outcomes continue to occur and may be of particular concern for patients receiving general anesthesia for cesarean delivery. As these risks are quantified with increasing precision using large databases, further research will be needed to validate these findings and identify the impact of variable care delivery (including the use of differing anesthetic techniques) and the maternal outcomes across institutions and practice environments.

PEDIATRICS

There are few studies of anesthesia-related risk in the pediatric population. Several themes emerge from these studies: very young infants are at increased risk of mortality, and anesthesia-related risk is reduced in centers with specialized pediatric anesthesia facilities. More recently, attempts have been made to define the neurocognitive risks presented by exposure to anesthesia at a young age.

In Beecher and Todd's classic 1954 study on anesthesia outcomes,[18] a "disproportionate number" of anesthesia-related deaths occurred in children younger than 10 years of age. Similarly, Graff and colleagues[133] from the Baltimore Anesthesia Study Committee reported 335 operative deaths

TABLE 30.13 Numbers, Case Fatality Rates, and Risk Ratios of Anesthesia-Related Deaths During Cesarean Section Delivery by Type of Anesthesia in the United States, 1979 to 1984 and 1985 to 1990

	NUMBER OF DEATHS		CASE-FATALITY RATE		RISK RATIO	
Population	**1979-1984**	**1985-1990**	**1979-1984**	**1985-1990**	**1979-1984**	**1985-1990**
General	33	32	20.0* (95% CI, 17.7-22.7)	32.3* (95% CI, 25.9-49.3)	2.3 (95% CI, 1.9-2.9)	16.7 (95% CI, 12.9-21.8)
Regional	19	9	8.6† (95% CI, 1.8-9.4)	1.9† (95% CI, 1.8-2)	Referent	Referent

*Per million general anesthetics for cesarean section.

†Per million regional anesthetics for cesarean section.

CI, Confidence interval.

Modified from Hawkins JL, Gibbs CP, Orleans M, et al. Obstetric anesthesia work force survey, 1981 versus 1992. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(1):135–143.

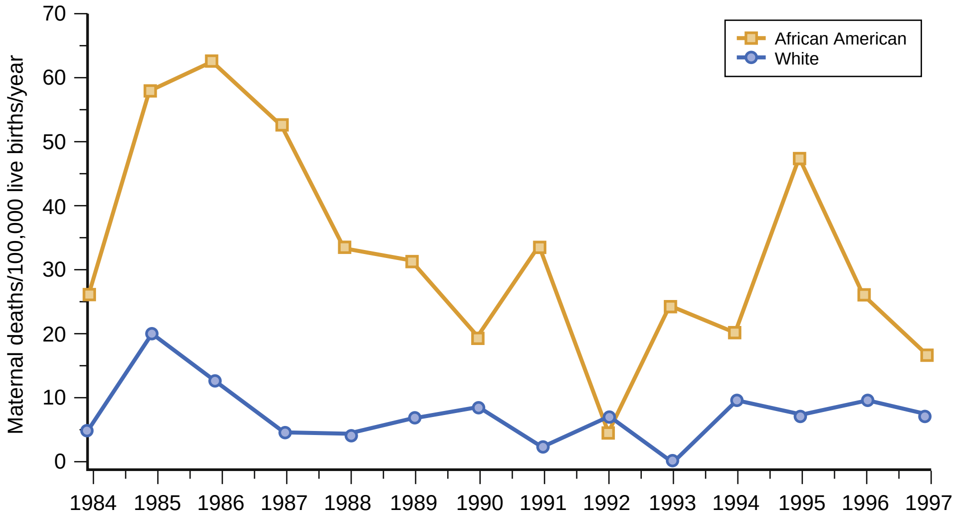


Fig. 30.6 Delivery mortality ratios by race in Maryland, from 1984 to 1997, according to discharge summaries. (From Panchal S, Arria AM, Labhsetwar SA. Maternal mortality during hospital admission for delivery: a retrospective analysis using a state-maintained database. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(1):134–141.)

TABLE 30.14 Incidence of Serious Complications Associated With Obstetric Anesthesia

Serious Complication	Totals	Incidence (95% CI)	Anesthesia Related	Incidence (95% CI)
Maternal death	30	1:10,250 (1:7,180-1:15,192)	0	
Cardiac arrest	43[*]	1:7,151 (1:5,319-1:9,615)	2	1:128,398 (1:35,544-1:1,060,218)
Myocardial infarction	2	1:153,758 (1:42,562-1:1,269,541)	2	1:128,398 (1:35,544-1:1,060,218)
Epidural abscess/meningitis	4		4	1:62,866 (1:25,074-1:235,620)
Epidural hematoma	1		1	1:251,463 (1:46,090-1:10,142,861)
Serious neurological injury	27	1:11,389 (1:7,828-1:17,281)	7	1:35,923 (1:17,805-1:91,244)
Aspiration	0		0	
Failed intubation	10		10	1:533 (1:290-1:971)
High neuraxial block	58		58[†]	1:4366 (1:3356-1:5587)
Anaphylaxis	5[‡]	1:61,499 (1:26,353-1:189-403)	0	
Respiratory arrest in labor suite	25	1:8,455 (1:5,714-1:12,500)	16	1:10,042 (1:6,172-1:16,131)
Unrecognized spinal catheter	14		14	1:15,435 (1:9,176-1:25,634)
Total	157[§]	1:1,959 (1:1,675-1:2,294)	85[¶]	1:3,021 (1:2,443-1:3,782)

[*] Fourteen cardiac arrests did not result in maternal death.
[†] Also includes high blocks on labor and delivery that resulted in respiratory arrest from local anesthetic administration.
[‡] The medications associated with anaphylaxis were administered by anesthesia personnel but were not anesthesia medications.
[§] There were 157 total serious complications; however, some complications are listed in more than one category.
[¶] There were 85 anesthesia-related complications; however, some complications are listed in more than one category.
Modified from D'Angelo R, Smiley RM, Riley ET, Segal S. Serious complications related to obstetric anesthesia: the serious complication repository project of the society for obstetric anesthesia and perinatology. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(6):1505–1512.

in the pediatric age group. Of these, 58 were thought to be primarily or partially attributable to anesthesia. The percentage of operative deaths attributable to anesthesia was relatively constant among age groups at 16.6% to 21.7%. The studies that followed those of Beecher and Todd and the Baltimore Anesthesia Study Committee provided further detail on the risks associated with pediatric anesthesia over time. Tiret and coauthors[134] prospectively studied major anesthesia-related complications in pediatric patients in 440 hospitals in France between 1978 and 1982. There were 27 major complications in 40,240 cases, which included 12 cardiac arrests and 1 death. The incidence of major complications and cardiac arrest was significantly higher in infants than in older children. Most complications in infants involved the respiratory system and predominantly consisted of airway problems and aspiration. Older children experienced respiratory and cardiac complications, which occurred most frequently during induction and recovery.

Cohen and colleagues[135] studied 29,220 anesthesia procedures at the Winnipeg Children's Hospital in the 1980s. Data on patients' coexisting medical conditions and postoperative follow-up were obtained within 72 hours. Complications included death, cardiac arrest, drug reactions, airway

TABLE 30.15 Summary of Perioperative Events by Age Group

	<1 Month (*n* = 361)	1-12 Months (*n* = 2,544)	1-5 Years (*n* = 13,484)	6-10 Years (*n* = 7,184)	11+ Years (*n* = 5,647)
Any intraoperative event	14.96	7.31	7.10	12.22	9.69
Any recovery room event	16.61	7.23	12.20	14.88	15.23
Any postoperative event	13.57	10.30	20.32	31.49	32.44
Minor event[*]	23.82	7.51	3.26	3.37	3.33
Major event[†]					
Any event[‡]	48.89	25.92	37.50	50.52	51.33
Among patients seen	41.55	23.47	33.16	45.04	45.78
Among all patients					

[*] Includes nausea and vomiting, sore throat, muscle pain, headache, dental conditions, positional conditions, conditions involving extremities, eye conditions, croup, temperature, behavioral problems, thrombophlebitis, arterial line problem, awareness, and "other" problems.

[†] Includes "other respiratory" conditions, cardiovascular disorders, nerve palsy, hepatic disorders, renal disorders, seizures, surgical complications, and death.

[‡] Percentage of total anesthetics in which at least one event occurred in the intraoperative unit, recovery unit, or later during the postoperative period.

All figures are given as the percentage of events per total anesthetics.

Modified from Cohen MM, Cameron CB, Duncan PG. Pediatric anesthesia morbidity and mortality in the perioperative period. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70(2):160–167.

obstruction, and minor complications such as nausea and vomiting, arrhythmias, and sore throat. Neonates underwent a higher percentage of major vascular or cardiac and intraabdominal procedures, and older children had a higher incidence of extremity procedures. Intraoperative cardiac arrest occurred most frequently in patients younger than 1 year of age (4 in 2901 procedures). Postoperatively, minor events such as nausea and vomiting were more common in older children, whereas respiratory events were more common in infants and younger children (Table 30.15). When compared with adult patients, children experienced different complications, which frequently extended well into the postoperative period. In a comparison of 2-year periods between 1982 and 1987, rates of intraoperative events were found to be stable, and the rate of postoperative complications decreased.

More recently, van der Griend and colleagues reported on 24-hour and 30-day mortality associated with 101,885 anesthetics administered to 56,263 children at the Royal Children's Hospital in Melbourne, Australia. They noted a rate of all-cause 24-hour mortality of 13.4 per 10,000 anesthetics and a 30-day all-cause mortality of 34.5 per 10,000 anesthetics. The incidence of deaths related to anesthesia was far lower, occurring at a rate of 1 in 10,188 or 0.98 cases per 10,000 anesthetics performed. In all of the 10 anesthetic-related deaths that the authors observed, preexisting medical conditions were assessed to have been a significant contributing factor.[136]

In contrast to efforts to determine the incidence and predictors of mortality among pediatric surgical patients, a number of investigators have focused on cardiac arrest in the context of pediatric anesthesia. For example, Flick and associates[137] studied patients younger than 18 years of age who underwent surgery at the Mayo Clinic and experienced perioperative cardiac arrest between November 1, 1988 and June 30, 2005. A total of 92,881 anesthetics were administered during the study period, 4242 (5%) of which were for the repair of congenital heart malformations. The incidence of perioperative cardiac arrest during noncardiac procedures was 2.9 per 10,000, and the incidence during cardiac procedures was 127 per 10,000. The incidence of perioperative cardiac arrest attributable to anesthesia was 0.65 per 10,000 anesthetics. The incidence of cardiac arrest and mortality was highest in neonates (0 to 30 days of life) undergoing cardiac procedures (incidence, 435 per 10,000; mortality, 389 per 10,000).

Investigators at the Children's Hospital of Boston conducted a registry study to evaluate rates of arrest in patients undergoing surgery for congenital heart disease.[138] Over a 5-year period, 41 cardiac arrests occurred in 40 patients during 5213 anesthetics for an overall frequency of 0.79%. Eleven cardiac arrests (26.8%) were classified as either likely ($n = 6$) or possibly related ($n = 5$) to anesthesia (21.1 per 10,000 anesthetics) but with no mortality.

Efforts to understand the causes and outcomes of cardiac arrest in pediatric anesthesia patients have been aided by the development of large-scale clinical registries for research and quality improvement. In 1994, the Pediatric Perioperative Cardiac Arrest (POCA) Registry[139] was formed to determine the clinical factors and outcomes associated with cardiac arrest in anesthetized children. A total of 289 cardiac arrests occurred in the 63 institutions in the database during the first 4 years of the registry, 150 of which were judged to be related to anesthesia (1.4 per 10,000 anesthesia procedures), with a 26% mortality rate. Medication-related causes and cardiovascular causes of cardiac arrest were most common. Anesthesia-related cardiac arrest occurred most often in patients younger than age 1 year and in patients with severe underlying disease. In 2007, an update from the POCA registry was published.[140] From 1998 through 2004, 193 arrests (49%) were related to anesthesia. Cardiovascular causes of cardiac arrest (41%) were the most common, with hypovolemia from blood loss and hyperkalemia from transfusion of stored blood being the most common identifiable cardiovascular causes (Fig. 30.7). In contrast to the earlier study, medication-related arrests only accounted for 18% of all arrests.

In 2010, POCA investigators reported on anesthesia-related cardiac arrest in children with preexisting cardiac disease, comparing 245 cardiac arrests in children without heart disease with 127 cardiac arrests in children with cardiac conditions. Compared with children without cardiac disease, children with cardiac conditions were more often ASA physical status III, IV, or V and more often arrested from cardiovascular causes. Mortality was higher in children with heart disease than among children without heart

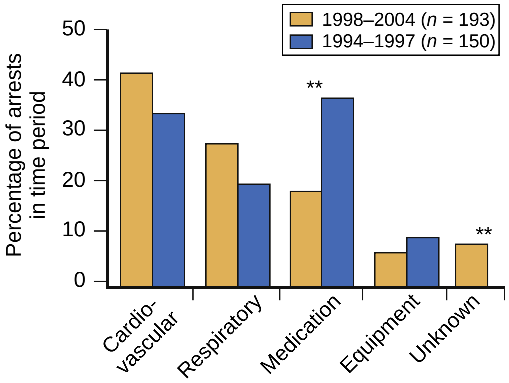


Fig. 30.7 Causes of anesthesia-related cardiac arrest in the Pediatric Perioperative Cardiac Arrest (POCA). Registry from 1998 to 2004 versus 1994 to 1997. (**$P < .01$ 1998-2004 vs 1994-1997 by Z test). (From Bhananker SM, Ramamoorthy C, Geiduschek JM, et al. Anesthesia-related cardiac arrest in children: update from the Pediatric Perioperative Cardiac Arrest Registry. *Anesth Analg.* 2007;105(2):344–350.)

disease (33% vs. 23%) but did not differ when adjusted for ASA physical status classification.[141]

In recent years, researchers have become increasingly interested in how anesthetic exposure in young children impacts neurocognitive development. In 2016, Sun and group[141a] published a sibling-matched cohort study conducted over 4 years at four university hospitals in the United States. They enrolled a total of 105 sibling pairs, one of whom had been exposed to inhalational anesthetics for an inguinal hernia repair before 36 months of age. Neurocognitive testing performed on both siblings did not demonstrate a statistically significant difference in intelligence quotient. Another group (Ing and colleagues)[141b] analyzed data from the Western Australia Pregnancy Cohort to evaluate the relationship between anesthetic exposure in children younger than 3 years of age and neuropsychological, academic, and behavioral outcomes in a cohort of 2868 children. They identified discrepancies in neuropsychological test and ICD-9 coded clinical outcomes, but did not identify any differences in academic achievement, and suggest that the unique attributes of specific tests may explain the variation in cognitive outcomes described in different studies. In another cohort study, Backeljauw and colleagues[141c] matched 5- to 18-year-old participants in a language development study who had undergone surgery with anesthesia before age 4 with unexposed peers. They found that exposed subjects had statistically significantly lower scores in listening comprehension and performance intelligence quotient, and that these changes were associated with lower gray matter density in key brain regions (occipital cortex and cerebellum). Given these conflicting results, further research is clearly needed to evaluate and quantify this impact in more detail.

OLDER ADULTS

The relationship of age to operative risk has been a subject of scientific and clinical debate since the early days of modern surgery. The nature of operative and anesthetic risk in older patients remains a vital area of inquiry particularly as the proportion of U.S. adults 65 years of age and older is anticipated to increase rapidly over the next three decades.

A key issue in research on the safety of surgery and anesthesia among older adults is the determination of what constitutes *old age* from the perspective of perioperative risk. Multiple definitions have been used for advanced age, including age older than 65, 70, 80, or 90 years. Denney and Denson[142] evaluated risk associated with surgery in patients older than 90 years of age. They reported 272 patients undergoing 301 operations at the University of Southern California Medical Center, finding a high perioperative mortality rate among older patients with serious bowel obstruction (63%). Taking a slightly different approach, Djokovic and Hedley-Whyte[143] studied outcome after surgery in 500 patients older than 80 years of age. They found that mortality was predicted by ASA physical status classification, with greater comorbid conditions associated with increasing risk. Myocardial infarction was the leading cause of postoperative death. Patients without significant comorbid diseases (ASA I classification) had a mortality rate of less than 1%.

Del Guercio and Cohn[144] investigated the value of preoperative invasive monitoring in obtaining hemodynamic and cardiopulmonary variables for predicting operative risk in the older adult. Among 148 consecutive patients older than 65 years of age who were treated in a surgical ICU, only 13.5% had normal physiologic measurements. Advanced and uncorrectable functional deficits were found in 63% of patients, and all in this group who underwent the planned surgery died.

Del Guerico and Cohn's work represented one of several studies that emphasized coexisting diseases, rather than aging itself, as the cause of apparently increased perioperative mortality among older adults. More recently, a growing body of literature has focused on the importance of functional disability and chronic geriatric syndromes, such as frailty and dementia, as determinants of postoperative outcomes among older individuals. Robinson and colleagues examined a cohort of 110 surgical patients with a mean age of 74 years, finding a 15% 6-month rate of mortality. Statistically significant predictors of 6-month mortality included impaired cognition, a recent fall, hypoalbuminemia, anemia, functional dependence, and comorbidity. Notably, functional dependence was the strongest predictor of 6-month mortality. Four or more markers in any one patient effectively predicted 6-month mortality (sensitivity, 81%; specificity, 86%).[145] Finlayson and colleagues observed high rates of mortality after major gastrointestinal surgery among older nursing home residents versus the overall Medicare population; the high rates of mortality were likely attributable to high rates of comorbidity and functional disability within this population.[146]

In this context, research on the risks of surgery and anesthesia in the older adult now focuses on broader definitions of *risk* that include functional outcomes and quality of life, in addition to traditional morbidity and mortality outcomes. Finlayson and colleagues examined 6822 older nursing home residents undergoing intestinal resections for colon cancer, noting a 53% 1-year mortality rate and a 24% rate of sustained decline in functional independence in activities of daily living among survivors. In multivariate regression, age older than 80 years, hospital readmission after surgical discharge, surgical complications, and functional decline before surgery all predicted functional decline at 1 year.[147]

As the older population continues to grow, researchers have recently begun to evaluate the neurocognitive impact of anesthesia on the elderly.

The measures of outcome relative to patient goals of care are becoming increasingly important in determining optimal strategies for perioperative management of the geriatric population. The ASA recently instituted a Perioperative Brain Health Initiative (Fleisher)[147a] dedicated to exploring the potential relationship between anesthetic exposure and postoperative cognitive function and delirium. This topic is discussed in more detail in Chapter 83.

Risks Directly Related to the Anesthetic Drug

Numerous studies have evaluated the influence of the choice of anesthetic on outcome, a question that is discussed throughout this book. From a global perspective, there does not appear to be a single best anesthesia technique for a particular surgery or group of surgeries, although emerging evidence begs for more research on this subject. In a multivariate analysis by Cohen and co-workers[96] of 100,000 anesthesia procedures performed in Canada, the choice of drug did not provide any additional prognostic information for predicting mortality beyond that of patient disease and the surgical procedure. In univariate analysis, MAC appeared to be associated with worse outcomes; however, this association was attributable to the use of MAC in sicker patients (see Table 30.11).

One question that has persisted within the anesthesia literature is the issue of whether anesthetic medications carry inherent toxicity. For example, numerous discussions have focused on the potential toxicity of halothane and sevoflurane. In the case of halothane, concern focused on the potential for fulminant, potentially fatal, hepatic necrosis with this medication. After several case reports of hepatic necrosis after halothane anesthesia, a large retrospective study of 856,500 anesthesia procedures at 34 institutions was undertaken.[148-150] In all but seven cases, hepatic necrosis could be explained by other causes. Halothane could be associated with hepatitis and hepatic failure, but the incidence was very low.

In the case of sevoflurane, concern has centered on the potential nephrotoxicity of its metabolite compound A. Although some laboratory studies have supported the contention that sevoflurane reacts with soda lime to form compound A and that this metabolite can lead to renal toxicity,[151,152] clinical studies have been unable to confirm this potentially detrimental effect[153,154] in the United States.

Some research groups have recently sought to identify and quantify other anesthesia-attributable effects. In 2016, Wigmore and colleagues[154a] published the results of a retrospective cohort study evaluating survival and recurrence outcomes in propensity-matched patients undergoing primary resection of malignancy with inhaled versus intravenous anesthetics in over 7000 patients in the United Kingdom. After adjusting for confounders, the investigators demonstrated a hazard ratio of 1.46 for death in patients receiving volatile anesthetic versus those receiving inhalational agents, a result which demands further prospective investigation.

In 2008, the GALA investigators[154b] published results of a randomized controlled trial comparing outcomes following carotid endarterectomy with local versus general anesthesia in 3526 patients with asymptomatic or symptomatic carotid stenosis. Primary outcomes included stroke, myocardial reinfarction, and 30-day mortality. Of the patients undergoing general anesthesia 4.8% experienced events, as compared to 4.5% of patients who were managed with local anesthetics (3 events preventable per 1000 treated). The investigators were not able to identify a statistically significant benefit to local or general anesthesia for individual primary outcomes, or for 30-day quality of life, hospital length of stay, or surgical duration. In a retrospective cohort study published in 2015, van den Berg and colleagues[154c] investigated outcomes of intraarterial treatment of patients with acute ischemic stroke with or without general anesthesia. Cases without general anesthesia were associated with good clinical outcome in a higher proportion than those treated with general anesthesia (26% vs. 14%), although there were notable distinctions between the two groups. They also found a nonsignificant mortality benefit in the non-general anesthesia group. The authors speculated that anesthetics might alter autoregulation of cerebral blood flow; however, their results were confounded by the determination that arterial recanalization was delayed by up to 20 minutes in patients undergoing interventions with general anesthesia.

Numerous studies have attempted to define the *safest* anesthetic for high-risk patients. In the late 1980s, there was concern that isoflurane caused coronary steal in patients with coronary stenosis and collaterals and that this could result in myocardial ischemia.[155,156] A series of studies were conducted to evaluate the rate of perioperative cardiac morbidity and mortality in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting to determine the importance of the agent used for general anesthesia.[157-160] Taken together, these studies demonstrated negligible differences in outcome, thus supporting the contention that multiple safe approaches to general anesthesia may exist for an individual context. Other studies have focused on the relative safety of general anesthesia versus neuraxial or regional techniques (Basques et al.).[161,162,162a] For lower extremity and pelvic surgery, regional anesthesia was associated with a lower incidence of graft thrombosis and deep venous thrombosis, as well as decreased bleeding, decreased length of stay (Neuman et al.),[162b] reduced risk of surgical site infection, and risk of prolonged hospitalization (Helwani et al.).[162c] Regional anesthesia has also been specifically associated with lower major complication rates in patients with OSA (Memtsoudis et al.).[162d] In a more recent meta-analysis published by O'Donnell and colleagues,[162e] the findings were less favorable. Although they were able to determine a small difference in hospital length of stay attributable to regional anesthesia, the discrepancies in outcome reporting among the different studies were such that they were not able to identify definitively any other differences between the two approaches. The investigators of two randomized controlled trials currently underway, REGAIN (Neuman et al.)[162f] and RAGA-delirium, (Li et al.)[162g] are attempting to quantify the impact of anesthetic choice on morbidity, mortality, and cognitive outcomes in patients undergoing hip fracture surgery.

For patients undergoing vascular surgery, the primary finding favoring regional anesthesia was a lower incidence of graft thrombosis and the need for reoperation in patients undergoing infrainguinal bypass surgery; however, the largest of these studies was unable to demonstrate any difference in outcome based on anesthesia technique.[163-165] The rate of this complication was low in the total cohort in the largest trial, which made it impossible to detect any difference based on technique. Summarizing findings from several of these studies, Rodgers and co-workers[162] published an influential meta-analysis of regional versus general anesthesia. Neuraxial blockade was found to reduce postoperative mortality and other serious complications. As such, the magnitude of some of these benefits remained uncertain. Discussion of regional versus general anesthesia is presented in Chapters 45 and 46.

The impact of perioperative ventilation modality has also recently come under investigation: in 2015, Ladha's group[165a] published a hospital-based registry study examining outcomes of 69,239 patients undergoing noncardiac surgery requiring endotracheal intubation. Roughly 50% of patients received a protective ventilation strategy (reduced tidal volume and high positive end-expiratory pressure [PEEP]) versus standard care. Protective ventilation, defined as a PEEP of 5 cm H_2O and a plateau pressure of 16 cm H_2O or less, was associated with a reduced risk of postoperative respiratory complications. High driving pressure and plateau pressure were associated with an increased risk of respiratory complications. Severgnini and colleagues[165b] randomized 56 patients undergoing elective open abdominal surgery to a standard mechanical ventilation strategy (tidal volume of 9 mL/kg, ideal body weight [IBW], and zero PEEP), or "lung protective" ventilation (7 mL/kg, IBW, PEEP of 10 cm H_2O, recruitment maneuvers). Patients receiving protective ventilation demonstrated respiratory function and reduced Clinical Pulmonary Infection Score for several days postoperatively. Length of stay did not differ between groups.

Risks Related to Surgery

The surgical procedure itself significantly influences perioperative risk. In virtually every study performed, emergency surgery is associated with additional risk. [98] In some cases, the risk related to surgery is a function of the underlying disease processes and the stress related to the surgical procedure. As a category of surgical procedures, cardiovascular surgery has historically been associated with the highest risk of mortality and major morbidity. (The risks related to anesthesia for cardiac surgical procedures are reviewed in Chapter 54.) Vascular surgery is among the highest-risk group of noncardiac procedures. Although aortic reconstructive surgery has traditionally been considered the procedure with the highest risk, infrainguinal procedures have shown a similar rate of cardiac morbidity in several studies, possibly due to a higher burden of coronary artery disease in this population.[166,167] Other high-risk vascular procedures include amputation.[168] Intraabdominal, thoracic, and orthopedic procedures have also been associated with increased risk.[13,168]

Eagle and associates[170] evaluated perioperative cardiac morbidity and mortality among patients who had been treated for coronary artery disease and subsequently underwent major noncardiac surgery. Among these patients, major vascular surgery was associated with the highest risk of myocardial infarction or death, with a combined incidence of morbidity and mortality greater than 5%. Procedures associated with a combined complication rate of 1% to 5% included intraabdominal, thoracic, and head and neck surgical procedures. Low-risk procedures included breast, skin, urologic, and orthopedic surgeries. Ultimately, these groupings of surgical procedures came to form the basis for the definitions of surgical risk published in the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association joint guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation for noncardiac surgery.[171] More recent statistical modeling efforts, such as those of Gupta[111] and Glance,[117] aimed at predicting postoperative outcomes have reinforced the important contribution of the type of surgical procedure to the overall operative risk.

Studies of the perioperative complication rate related to superficial procedures are generally reassuring. Backer and associates[172] evaluated the rate of perioperative myocardial reinfarction in patients who have a history of preexisting coronary artery disease and who underwent ophthalmologic surgery. They demonstrated that the rate of perioperative cardiac morbidity after ophthalmologic surgery was extremely low, even in patients with a recent myocardial infarction. Similar findings have been reported by multiple other investigators.[69,173]

More recent work suggests that surgical duration may also affect perioperative risk. Kim and group[173a] reviewed a cohort of over 1 million patients undergoing surgery under general anesthesia between 2005 and 2011 and demonstrated an association between surgery duration and the risk of development of venous thromboembolism. These results were preserved in analysis of individual procedures and classes of procedure by specialty.

Risks Related to the Location of Surgery and Postoperative Monitoring

Perioperative risk varies among hospitals for major procedures such as coronary artery bypass grafting and abdominal aortic aneurysm repair.[9,10,174] Multiple studies have documented a relationship between surgical volume and mortality. Although surgical skill most certainly plays a role in the rate of complications and mortality, local factors may also play an important role. For example, low surgical volume may lead to less skilled anesthesia and postoperative care. The influence of each of these factors on overall morbidity and mortality is unknown.

Although the value of postoperative monitoring and care in an ICU has never been documented in a randomized clinical trial, many investigators have suggested that such care is one of the primary reasons for the improved morbidity and mortality in recent years. For patients undergoing major vascular surgery, several investigators have suggested that more intense postoperative monitoring could obviate the need for preoperative cardiac testing and revascularization.[171] One potential value of risk assessment is the identification of patients who could benefit from referral to clinical centers with more extensive perioperative resources. Patients with a low probability of perioperative morbidity and mortality could have surgery performed locally, and individuals at higher risk could receive benefit from transfer to a center with high surgical volume.

Risks Related to the Anesthesia Provider

Over the past decade a great deal of attention has been paid to the role and skill of the anesthesia provider on patient outcome. Historically, anesthesia has been administered by a diverse group of providers with variable levels of supervision. The extent to which the skills and training of the individual anesthesia provider may affect outcomes has been assessed in a number of studies. In a now-classic paper, Slogoff and Keats[175] studied the association of perioperative myocardial ischemia and cardiac morbidity in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting across multiple anesthesiologists working in a single practice. Notably, the rate of perioperative ischemia and infarction varied by anesthesiologist, and the authors concluded that operator technique and experience may affect risk. Subsequent work has moved beyond efforts to demonstrate variability in anesthesia outcomes at the level of the individual practitioner to examine whether outcomes might vary across different models of anesthesia care. Arbous and coauthors reported a case-control study over 1 year in the Netherlands,[176] in which they found that practice-level independent variables associated with a decreased risk for coma and death in 24 hours were (1) anesthesia equipment check performed with a checklist; (2) direct availability of an anesthesiologist by telephone, beeper, or walkie-talkie during maintenance anesthesia; (3) no change of anesthesiologist during the case; (4) presence of a full-time nurse anesthetist versus a part-time anesthetist during maintenance anesthesia; and (5) presence of two providers versus one person during emergence. This study was one of very few that attempted to identify practice characteristics rather than specific drugs or techniques that have an impact on anesthesia outcomes, and the results are striking, in spite of numerous issues with data reporting and matching. The finding that practitioner characteristics affect outcomes warrants further follow-up.

Attention has recently turned to the impact of handoffs of anesthesia care on patient outcomes. In 2018, Jones and colleagues[176a] published a retrospective cohort study evaluating outcomes including all-cause mortality, hospital readmission, and major postoperative complications in 313,066 patients undergoing major surgery. They identified an association between complete anesthesia handoffs (i.e., when one provider or team leaves the case permanently and is replaced by another) and increased incidence of primary outcomes, as well as with increased rates of ICU admission and hospital length of stay. The study design was limited by the inability to control for the career experience of the replacement anesthesiologist and surgeon as well as by the sole use of billing codes to determine exposure to a transition in anesthesia care.

Several studies have attempted to evaluate the complication rates and risks associated with various care provider models. Bechtoldt,[177] as a member of the North Carolina Anesthesia Study Committee, evaluated 900 perioperative deaths that occurred in an estimated 2 million anesthesia procedures performed in North Carolina between 1969 and 1976. The lowest rate of anesthesia-related deaths (1 per 28,166 procedures) occurred in patients who received anesthesia from an anesthesia care team (physician anesthesiologist and CRNA), and the highest rate (1 per 11,432 procedures) was associated with anesthesia administered by a dentist; the rate for the nurse anesthetist–only cohort was intermediate (1 per 20,723). A study by the Stanford Center for Health Care Research[178] demonstrated similar outcomes: the investigators reported that death plus severe morbidity was 11% higher than predicted in patients who received their care in a nurse anesthetist–only setting, 3% lower than predicted for physician-only care, and 20% lower than predicted for an anesthesia care team environment. Both studies demonstrated significant methodologic limitations.

The impact of specific provider types may be greatest in particular situations: for example, patients with significant comorbid diseases and those who sustain perioperative complications may benefit from providers with specific skill sets. One way to study such issues is to evaluate the rate of survival after complications. Silber and colleagues[7] at the University of Pennsylvania studied the medical records of 5972 surgical patients randomly selected from 531 hospitals. They evaluated patient and hospital characteristics, including the number and type of physicians, board certification status, and ratio of care providers. The 30-day mortality rate correlated with patient characteristics. Failure to rescue (i.e., failure to prevent death) after an adverse event was inversely associated with the proportion of board-certified anesthesiologists on staff in each facility. Improved perioperative survival was significantly associated with the presence of an increased number of board-certified anesthesiologists. These findings were corroborated in follow-up studies by the same group,[179,181] wherein analysis was again limited by database characteristics.[181] By contrast, Pine and co-workers evaluated mortality after eight specific surgical procedures[182] and used stepwise logistic regression to derive procedure-specific risk adjustment models. They found hospitals without anesthesiologists had results similar to those facilities in which anesthesiologists provided or directed anesthesia care. The authors did not evaluate failure to rescue or cause of mortality.

More recently, work by Needleman and Minnick compared obstetric outcomes in facilities with different obstetric anesthesia staffing patterns.[183] Although the authors observed consistent differences in maternal mortality and other quality indicators at facilities where nurse anesthetists practiced with minimal or no supervision by anesthesiologists versus anesthesiologist-only facilities, questions regarding risk adjustment and study design limit definitive interpretations of this work for policy making.[184] Similarly, a 2010 study by Dulisse and Cromwell suggested no changes in overall surgical patient outcomes in states that had enacted laws allowing nurse anesthetists to practice independently versus states that required anesthesiologist supervision.[185] However, as such new

BOX 30.1 Proposed Definitions from the 1984 International Symposium on Preventable Anesthesia Morbidity and Mortality

Outcome
  Normal
  Abandoned procedure
  Morbidity
  Death
Morbidity
  Unplanned, unwanted, undesirable consequence of anesthesia
Mortality
  Death that occurs before recovery from the effects of a drug or drugs given to facilitate a procedure
  Death that occurs during an attempt to relieve the pain of a condition
  Death that results from an incident that occurs while the drugs are effective

Modified from Pierce EC Jr. The 34th Rovenstine Lecture. 40 years behind the mask: safety revisited. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(4):965–975.

legislation was not associated with major changes in the number or types of surgery conducted without anesthesiologist supervision, Dulisse and Cromwell's work does not speak directly to the question of the gains or losses in safety associated with any specific provider type for a given type of surgery.

Ultimately, as concluded by Smith and associates[186] in a review of available published studies through 2004 on the influence of anesthesia providers, the relationship of patient outcomes to the type of anesthesia provider has not yet been conclusively demonstrated. Nurse anesthetists and other nonphysician providers are vital to the delivery of anesthesia care in the United States and elsewhere, and determining the optimal scope of practice for such providers remains an ongoing area of academic research and political debate.

Improving Anesthesia Safety

Over the past several decades, major improvements to the safety of anesthesia have been initiated. In 1984, Cooper, Kitz, and Pierce hosted a landmark International Symposium on Preventable Anesthesia Mortality and Morbidity in Boston. Approximately 50 anesthesiologists from around the world attended the meeting and, after much debate, established a series of definitions of outcome, morbidity, and mortality (Box 30.1). Beyond its specific conclusions, however, the symposium remains an event of major historical importance as a seminal early event in the movement to improve patient safety and as the context out of which the Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation (APSF) was established. After its formal incorporation in October 1985, the APSF has since actively promoted a range of initiatives focused on fulfilling its mission to continually improve the safety of patients during anesthesia care by encouraging and conducting: (1) safety research and education, (2) patient safety programs and campaigns, and (3) national and international exchange of information and ideas. To this end, the APSF has focused on promoting research, practice improvement, and knowledge dissemination across a range of priority areas (Box 30.2). Overall, these efforts have stressed the potential for systems-level improvements, standardization of care processes, human-factors engineering, and simulation-based training to limit harms caused by preventable adverse events and errors in crisis management in the context of anesthesia care. Through this work, the APSF has come to serve as a leader in patient safety, not only in the context of anesthesia and perioperative care, but also more generally within medicine by establishing *patient safety* as a formal concept, discipline in medical care, and serving as a model for other organizations such as the U.S. National Patient Safety Foundation.[197]

Alongside the efforts of the APSF, other prominent organizations, such as the ASA, have sought to improve the safety of anesthesia care through the creation and dissemination of standards and guidelines for clinical practice.

BOX 30.2 Selected Areas of Focus of the Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation, 1985 to 2012

- Use of anesthesia simulators for training and evaluation
- Improvement of standards for intraoperative monitoring
- Application of patient safety checklists to intraoperative care
- Promotion of standardized approaches to difficult airway management
- Prevention of medication-related adverse events
- Reuse and attempted resterilization of disposable anesthesia equipment
- Risks of outdated anesthesia machines without modern safety features
- Aiding the development of practice standards by the World Federated Societies of Anesthesiologists
- Surgery department crisis management, including teamwork, team training, and resource management
- *Production pressure*, causing dangerous omissions and cutting corners
- Intravenous procedural sedation by nonanesthesia personnel
- Contamination of medical gases and disruption of pipeline flow
- Contamination of intravenous medications
- Special risks of office-based anesthesia
- Patients with obstructive sleep apnea and their postoperative care
- Postoperative cognitive dysfunction (particularly in older adults)
- Possible long-term increase in morbidity and mortality after extensive general anesthesia
- Postoperative vision loss, especially in extensive prone spine surgery
- Wrong-site surgery
- Residual neuromuscular blockade and postoperative complications
- Protocols for assessing and managing adverse events
- Persistence of deaths from malignant hyperthermia
- Dangers and challenges in patients with coronary artery stents
- Maintenance of current protocols for the anesthesia machine checkout
- Possible impact of anesthesia management on cancer recurrence
- Persistence of surgical unit fires

Modified from Eichhorn JH. The Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation at 25: a pioneering success in safety, 25th anniversary provokes reflection, anticipation. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(4):791–800.

In general, both standards and guidelines represent summations by clinicians of the available evidence about the benefits and risks of particular approaches to treatment. Typically, a practice standard implies that a therapy or practice should be performed for patients with a particular condition. Standards are approved only if an assessment of the probabilities and utilities of the group indicate that the decision to choose the treatment or a strategy would be virtually unanimous. At present, the ASA has established one set of practice standards for anesthesia care, which outline basic requirements for intraoperative monitoring.[198]

In contrast to practice standards, guidelines are intended to be more flexible than standards, but they should be followed in most cases. Depending on the patient, setting, and other factors, guidelines can and should be tailored to fit individual needs. Similar to standards, guidelines should be cost-effective methods. Specific guidelines have been created by the ASA for diverse issues such as a difficult airway,[199] the use of the pulmonary artery catheter,[200] and the use of blood components[201] with the goal of defining the evidence on which optimal practice can be based. In a similar vein, the World Health Organization has recently placed an emphasis on the potential for a simple preoperative checklist, modeled on the processes used in other high-risk industries such as aviation, to reduce the rates of adverse events in the perioperative period.[202] Driven in part by the findings of improved outcomes with checklist use in a multicenter, international study by Haynes and co-authors,[203] such expanding interest in the use of standardized safety checks offers new potential opportunities to decrease the risk of anesthesia further.

Applying further insights gained from the aviation industry to anesthesia care, the APSF and other organizations have focused on developing simulation-based approaches to train anesthesia providers and to evaluate their decision-making capabilities in crisis situations.[204-208] To date, an extensive array of standardized scenarios have been developed for making comparisons among individuals, and research is ongoing to examine how best to use this technology in anesthesia training and recertification. Ultimately, such efforts, combined with improved monitoring of adverse outcomes through large outcomes databases and those now being assembled by the Multicenter Perioperative Outcomes Group and the Anesthesia Quality Institute, hold potential to improve the safety of anesthesia care continually on both a national and an international level.

Summary

The risks related to anesthesia appear to have dramatically decreased over the past several decades. Clearly, death solely attributable to anesthesia is rare; rather, underlying patient disease and the nature and extent of surgery have a greater effect on overall outcome than do risks attributable to the anesthetic per se. Although these changes in the risk attributable to anesthesia could justifiably be considered a major achievement on the part of anesthesia providers over time, they also present a novel challenge to anesthesia providers to identify new opportunities to aid in more broadly decreasing both the morbidity and the mortality of surgical procedures and to aid in aligning the results of surgical interventions with individual patients' goals of care. At the same time, vigilance must be continued to maintain high standards of basic anesthesia care across both hospital- and nonhospital-based settings. Finally, anesthesia providers should play a role in systems-based thinking to improve perioperative care and the short- and long-term outcomes of patients undergoing surgery and anesthesia.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Snow SJ. *Blessed Days of Anesthesia: How Anaesthetics Changed the World*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2008.
2. Fleisher LA, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2004;139:67.
3. Devereaux PJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;307:2295.
4. Levy M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:796.
5. Mangano DT, et al. *JAMA*. 1992;268:233.
6. Institute of Medicine Committee on Quality of Health Care in America. *To Err Human: Building a Safer Health System*. The National Academies Press; 2000.
7. Silber JH, et al. *Med Care*. 1992;30:615.
8. Silber JH, et al. *Med Care*. 2007;45:918.
9. Ghaferi AA, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2009;250:1029.
10. Birkmeyer JD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346:1128.
11. Birkmeyer JD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:2117.
12. Finks JF, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:2128.
13. Goldman L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1977;297:845.
14. Frank SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:468.
15. Frank SM, et al. *JAMA*. 1997;277:1127.
16. Cheney FW, et al. *JAMA*. 1989;261:1599.
17. Lagasse RS. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1609.
18. Beecher HK, Todd DP. *Ann Surg*. 1954;140(2).
19. Buck N, et al. *Report of a Confidential Enquiry into Perioperative Deaths*. London: Nuffield Provincial Hospitals Trust; 1987.
20. Mangano DT. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:1309.
21. Mathew JP, et al. *JAMA*. 1996;276:300.
22. Clark RE. *Best Pract Benchmarking Healthc*. 1996;1:62.
23. Grover FL, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;62:1229.
24. Grover FL, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;62(S6).
25. Nugent WC. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1997;64:S68.
26. Bateman BT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:1380.
27. Todd CJ, et al. *BMJ*. 1995;310:904.
28. Aiken LH, et al. *JAMA*. 2002;288:1987.
29. Memery HN. *JAMA*. 1965;194:1185.

29a. Minuck M. *Can Anaes Soc J*. 1967;14:197.

30. Takala J. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:745.
31. Dornette WH, Orth OS. *Curr Res Anesth Analg*. 1956;35:545.
32. Dripps RD, et al. *JAMA*. 1961;178:261.
33. Gebbie D. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1966;13:390.
34. Phillips OC, et al. *JAMA*. 1960;174:2015.
35. Schapira M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1960;39:149.
36. Marx GF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;39:54.
37. Clifton BS, Hotten WI. *Br J Anaesth*. 1963;35:250.
38. Dinnick OP. *Anaesthesia*. 1964;19:536.
39. Bodlander FM. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47:36.
40. Harrison GG. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50:1041.
41. Holland R. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:834.
42. Warden JC, Horan BF. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1996;24:66.
43. Tiret L, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1986;33:336.
44. Tikkanen J, Hovi-Viander M. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:262.
45. Lunn JN. *Anaesthesia*. 1980;35:617.
46. Pedersen T, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34:176.
47. Li G, Warner M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:759.
48. Lagasse RS. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:698.
49. Findlay G, et al. *Knowing the Risk: A Review of the Perioperative Care of Surgical Patients*. London: National Confidential Enquiry into Patient Outcome and Death; 2011.
50. Pearse R, et al. *Lancet*. 2012;380:1059.
51. Wunsch H, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2009;180:875.
52. Bennett-Guerrero E, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2003;90:1593.

52a. Whitlock EL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(6):1312.

53. Keenan RL, Boyan CP. *JAMA*. 1985;253:2373.
54. Olsson GL, Hallen B. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32:653.

55. Biboulet P, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48:326.
56. Newland MC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:108.
57. Sprung J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:259.
57a. Ellis SJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(4):829–838.
58. Kawashima Y, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:809.
59. Deleted in proof.
60. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:58.
61. Chiang TM, et al. *Arch Otolaryngol*. 1968;88:307.
62. Raymond CA. *JAMA*. 1986;256:311.
63. Carithers JS, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 1987;97:422.
64. Brigger MT, Brietzke SE. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2006;135:1.
65. Gabalski EC, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 1996;106:77.
66. Mitchell RB, et al. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 1997;123:681.
67. Schloss MD, et al. *Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol*. 1994;30:115.
67a. Coté CJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(6):1276–1283.
68. Warren JL, et al. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 1998;90:833.
69. Warner MA, et al. *JAMA*. 1993;270:1437.
70. Deleted in proof.
71. Chukmaitov AS, et al. *Health Serv Res*. 2008;43:1485.
72. Morello DC, et al. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1997;99:1496.
73. Vila H Jr, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138:991.
74. Coldiron B, et al. *Dermatol Surg*. 2004;30:1435.
75. Coldiron BM, et al. *Dermatol Surg*. 2008;34:285.
76. Clayman MA, Seagle BM. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2006;118:777.
77. Sanborn KV, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:977.
78. Reich DL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:814.
79. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:885.
80. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:892.
80a. Lee LO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(6):1053.
80b. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119(6):1360.
80c. Aziz MF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(4):656.
81. Caplan RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68(5).
82. Tinker JH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:541.
83. Caplan RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:828.
84. Bhananker SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:228.
85. Hove LD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:675.
86. Cooper JB. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1984;22:167.
87. Cooper JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:34.
88. Singleton RJ, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21:664.
89. Van der Walt JH, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21:650.
90. Deleted in proof.
91. Lopez-Jimenez F, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1997;29:1241.
92. Monk TG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:4.
93. Saklad M. *Anesthesiology*. 1941;2:281.
94. Keats AS. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49:233.
95. Vacanti CJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49:564.
96. Cohen MM, et al. *JAMA*. 1988;260:2859.
97. Owens WD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49:239.
98. Goldman L, Caldera DL. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:285.
99. Hollenberg M, et al. *JAMA*. 1992;268:205.
99a. Baron DM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(3):416.
100. Zeldin RA. *Can J Surg*. 1984;27:402.
101. Larsen SF, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 1987;8:179.
102. Domaingue CM, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1982;10:324.
103. Jeffrey CC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:462.
104. White GH, et al. *Am J Surg*. 1988;156:103.
105. Lette J, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1990;211:84.
106. McEnroe CS, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1990;11:497.
107. Detsky AS, et al. *J Gen Intern Med*. 1986;1:211.
108. Palda VA, Detsky AS. *Ann Intern Med*. 1997;127:313.
109. Lee TH, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;100:1043.
110. Ford MK, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2010;152:26.
111. Gupta PK, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;124:381.
111a. Berwanger O, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2016;37(2):177.
111b. Abbott TE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(2):172.
111c. Gorka J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(5):713.
112. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;297:1801.
113. Arozullah AM, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2001;135:847.
114. Arozullah AM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2000;232:242.
115. Hogue CW Jr, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;100:642.
116. McCrory DC, et al. *Stroke*. 1993;24:1285.
117. Glance LG, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255:696.
118. Hannan EL, et al. *JAMA*. 1990;264:2768.
119. Hannan EL, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1994;58:1852.
120. Hannan EL, et al. *Am Heart J*. 1997;134:1120.
121. Hopkins PM. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:118.
122. Tardiff BE, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1997;64:715.
123. Fox AA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:738.
124. Muehlschlegel JD, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;122:S60.
125. Kaunitz AM, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1985;65:605.
126. Endler GC, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1988;159:187.
127. Rochat RW, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1988;72:91.
128. Morgan M. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:842.
129. Hawkins JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:277.
130. Panchal S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:134.
131. Mhyre JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1096.
132. Bloom SL, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106:281.
132a. D'Angelo R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(6):1505.
133. Graff TD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1964;43:407.
134. Tiret L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61:263.
135. Cohen MM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:160.
136. van der Griend BF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1440.
137. Flick RP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:226.
138. Odegard KC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:335.
139. Morray JP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(6).
140. Bhananker SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:344.
141. Ramamoorthy C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1376.
141a. Sun LS, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;315(21):2312.
141b. Ing CH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(6):1319.
141c. Backeljauw B, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2015;136(1):e1.
142. Denney JL, Denson JS. *Geriatrics*. 1972;27:115.
143. Djokovic JL, Hedley-Whyte J. *JAMA*. 1979;242:2301.
144. Del Guercio LR, Cohn JD. *JAMA*. 1980;243:1350.
145. Robinson TN, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2009;250:449.
146. Finlayson E, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2011;254:921.
147. Finlayson E, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2012;60:967.
147a. Fleisher LA. *ASA Monitor*. 2016;80(6):10.
148. Subcommittee of the National Halothane Study of the Committee on Anesthesia NAoS, National Research Council. *JAMA*. 1966;197:775.
149. Aach R. *JAMA*. 1970;211:2145.
150. DeBacker LJ, Longnecker DS. *JAMA*. 1966;195:157.
151. Levine MF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:348.
152. Nishiyama T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:574.
153. Conzen PF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:569.
154. Rooke GA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:1159.
154a. Wigmore TJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(1):69.
154b. Lewis SC, et al. *Lancet*. 2008;372(9656):2132.
154c. van den Berg LA, et al. *Stroke*. 2015;46(5):1257.
155. Becker LC. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:259.
156. Buffington CW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:280.
157. Leung JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:838.
158. Leung JM, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1992;20:1205.
159. Slogoff S, Keats AS. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:179.
160. Slogoff S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:22.
161. Neuman MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:72.
162. Rodgers A, et al. *BMJ*. 2000;321:1493.
162a. Basques BA, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2015;97(6):455.
162b. Neuman MD, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311(24):2508.
162c. Helwani MA, et al. *JBJS*. 2015;97(3):186.
162d. Memtsoudis SG, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2013;38(4):274.
162e. O'Donnell CM et al: *Br J Anaesth*.120(1):37.
162f. Neuman MD, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6(11):e013473.
162g. Li T, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7(10):e016937.
163. Christopherson R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:422.
164. Bode RH Jr, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(3).
165. Tuman K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:S414.
165a. Ladha K, et al. *BMJ*. 2015:351.
165b. Severgnini P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(6):1307.
166. Krupski WC, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1992;15:354.
167. L'Italien GJ, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1995;21:935.
168. Ashton CM, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1993;118:504.
169. Deleted in proof.
170. Eagle KA, et al. *Circulation*. 1997;96:1882.
171. Fleisher LA, et al. *Circulation*. 2007;116:1971.
172. Backer CL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:257.
173. Schein OD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:168.
173a. Kim JS, et al. *JAMA surgery*. 2015;150(2):110.
174. Kantonen I, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 1997;14:375.
175. Slogoff S, Keats AS. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:107.

176. Arbous MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:257.
176a. Jones PM, et al. *JAMA*. 2018;319(2):143.
177. Bechtoldt AA Jr. *N C Med J*. 1981;42:253.
178. Forrest W. Outcome—the effect of the provider. In: Hirsch R, Forrest W, eds. *Health Care Delivery in Anesthesia*. Philadelphia: George F Stickley; 1980:137.
179. Silber JH. *LDI Issue Brief*. 2000;6:1.
180. Deleted in proof.
181. Silber JH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1044.
182. Pine M, et al. *AANA J*. 2003;71:109.
183. Needleman J, Minnick AF. *Health Serv Res*. 2009;44:464.
184. Neuman MD, et al. *Health Serv Res*. 2010;45:1390.
185. Dulisse B, Cromwell J. *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 2010;29:1469.
186. Smith AF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:540.
187. Deleted in proof.
188. Deleted in proof.
189. Deleted in proof.
190. Deleted in proof.
191. Deleted in proof.
192. Deleted in proof.
193. Deleted in proof.
194. Deleted in proof.
195. Deleted in proof.
196. Deleted in proof.
197. Eichhorn JH. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:791.
198. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Standards for Basic Anesthesia Monitoring*. Park Ridge, Ill: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 2011.
199. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1269.
200. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Pulmonary Artery Catheterization. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:988.
201. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:198.
202. *WHO Surgical Safety Checklist and Implementation Manual*. World Health Organization; 2008. http://www.who.int/patientsafety/safesurgery/ss_checklist/en/index.html.
203. Haynes AB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:491.
204. Gaba DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:670.
205. Holzman RS, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7:675.
206. Howard SK, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1992;63:763.
207. Popp HJ, et al. *Int J Clin Monit Comput*. 1991;8:151.
208. Schwid HA, O'Donnell D. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:495.

References

1. Snow SJ. *Blessed Days of Anesthesia: How Anaesthetics Changed the World*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2008.
2. Fleisher LA, Pasternak LR, Herbert R, et al. Inpatient hospital admission and death after outpatient surgery in elderly patients: importance of patient and system characteristics and location of care. *Arch Surg*. 2004;139:67–72.
3. Devereaux PJ, Chan MT, Alonso-Coello P, et al. Association between postoperative troponin levels and 30-day mortality among patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2012;307:2295–2304.
4. Levy M, Heels-Ansdell D, Hiralal R, et al. Prognostic value of troponin and creatine kinase muscle and brain isoenzyme measurement after noncardiac surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:796–806.
5. Mangano DT, Browner WS, Hollenberg M, et al. Long-term cardiac prognosis following noncardiac surgery. The Study of Perioperative Ischemia Research Group. *JAMA*. 1992;268:233–239.
6. Institute of Medicine Committee on Quality of Health Care in America. *To Err is Human: Building a Safer Health System*. Washington DC: National Academies Press; 2000.
7. Silber JH, Williams SV, Krakauer H, Schwartz JS. Hospital and patient characteristics associated with death after surgery. A study of adverse occurrence and failure to rescue. *Med Care*. 1992;30:615–629.
8. Silber JH, Romano PS, Rosen AK, et al. Failure-to-rescue: comparing definitions to measure quality of care. *Med Care*. 2007;45:918–925.
9. Ghaferi AA, Birkmeyer JD, Dimick JB. Complications, failure to rescue, and mortality with major inpatient surgery in Medicare patients. *Ann Surg*. 2009;250:1029–1034.
10. Birkmeyer JD, Siewers AE, Finlayson EV, et al. Hospital volume and surgical mortality in the United States. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346:1128–1137.
11. Birkmeyer JD, Stukel TA, Siewers AE, et al. Surgeon volume and operative mortality in the United States. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:2117–2127.
12. Finks JF, Osborne NH, Birkmeyer JD. Trends in hospital volume and operative mortality for high-risk surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:2128–2137.
13. Goldman L, Caldera DL, Nussbaum SR, et al. Multifactorial index of cardiac risk in noncardiac surgical procedures. *N Engl J Med*. 1977;297:845–850.
14. Frank SM, Beattie C, Christopherson R, et al. Unintentional hypothermia is associated with postoperative myocardial ischemia. The Perioperative Ischemia Randomized Anesthesia Trial Study Group. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:468–476.
15. Frank SM, Fleisher LA, Breslow MJ, et al. Perioperative maintenance of normothermia reduces the incidence of morbid cardiac events. A randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 1997;277:1127–1134.
16. Cheney FW, Posner K, Caplan RA, Ward RJ. Standard of care and anesthesia liability. *JAMA*. 1989;261:1599–1603.
17. Lagasse RS. Anesthesia safety: model or myth? A review of the published literature and analysis of current original data. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1609–1617.
18. Beecher HK, Todd DP. A study of the deaths associated with anesthesia and surgery: based on a study of 599,548 anesthesias in ten institutions 1948-1952, inclusive. *Ann Surg*. 1954;140:2–35.
19. Buck N, Devlin H, Lunn J. *Report of a Confidential Enquiry into Perioperative Deaths*. London: Nuffield Provincial Hospitals Trust; 1987.
20. Mangano DT. Aspirin and mortality from coronary bypass surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:1309–1317.
21. Mathew JP, Parks R, Savino JS, et al. Atrial fibrillation following coronary artery bypass graft surgery: predictors, outcomes, and resource utilization. MultiCenter Study of Perioperative Ischemia Research Group. *JAMA*. 1996;276:300–306.
22. Clark RE. The development of the Society of Thoracic Surgeons voluntary national database system: genesis, issues, growth, and status. *Best Pract Benchmarking Healthc*. 1996;1:62–69.
23. Grover FL, Shroyer AL, Edwards FH, et al. Data quality review program: the Society of Thoracic Surgeons Adult Cardiac National Database. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;62:1229–1231.
24. Grover FL, Shroyer AL, Hammermeister KE. Calculating risk and outcome: the Veterans Affairs database. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;62:S6–S11; discussion S31-S32.
25. Nugent WC. Clinical applications of risk-assessment protocols in the management of individual patients. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1997;64:S68–S72. discussion S80-S82.
26. Bateman BT, Mhyre JM, Ehrenfeld J, et al. The risk and outcomes of epidural hematomas after perioperative and obstetric epidural catheterization: a report from the Multicenter Perioperative Outcomes Group Research Consortium. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:1380–1385.
27. Todd CJ, Freeman CJ, Camilleri-Ferrante C, et al. Differences in mortality after fracture of hip: the East Anglian audit. *BMJ*. 1995;310:904–908.
28. Aiken LH, Clarke SP, Sloane DM, et al. Hospital nurse staffing and patient mortality, nurse burnout, and job dissatisfaction. *JAMA*. 2002;288:1987–1993.
29. Memery HN. Anesthesia mortality in private practice: a ten-year study. *JAMA*. 1965;194(11):1185–1188. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.1965.03090240019004.

29a. Minuck, M. Death in the operating room. *Can Anaes Soc J*. 1967;14:197. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03003720.

30. Takala J. Surgery: risky business? *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:745–746.
31. Dornette WH, Orth OS. Death in the operating room. *Curr Res Anesth Analg*. 1956;35:545–569.
32. Dripps RD, Lamont A, Eckenhoff JE. The role of anesthesia in surgical mortality. *JAMA*. 1961;178:261–266.
33. Gebbie D. Anaesthesia and death. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1966;13:390–396.
34. Phillips OC, Frazier TM, Graff TD, Dekornfeld TJ. The Baltimore Anesthesia Study Committee. Review of 1,024 postoperative deaths. *JAMA*. 1960;174:2015–2019.
35. Schapira M, Kepes ER, Hurwitt ES. An analysis of deaths in the operating room and within 24 hours of surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1960;39:149–157.
36. Marx GF, Mateo CV, Orkin LR. Computer analysis of postanesthetic deaths. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;39:54–58.
37. Clifton BS, Hotten WI. Deaths associated with anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1963;35:250–259.
38. Dinnick OP. Deaths associated with anaesthesia; observations on 600 cases. *Anaesthesia*. 1964;19:536–556.
39. Bodlander FM. Deaths associated with anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47:36–40.
40. Harrison GG. Death attributable to anaesthesia. A 10-year survey (1967-1976). *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50:1041–1046.
41. Holland R. Anaesthetic mortality in New South Wales. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:834–841.
42. Warden JC, Horan BF. Deaths attributed to anaesthesia in New South Wales, 1984-1990. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1996;24:66–73.
43. Tiret L, Desmonts JM, Hatton F, Vourc'h G. Complications associated with anaesthesia—a prospective survey in France. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1986;33:336–344.
44. Tikkanen J, Hovi-Viander M. Death associated with anaesthesia and surgery in Finland in 1986 compared to 1975. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:262–267.
45. Lunn JN. The study on anaesthetic-related mortality. *Anaesthesia*. 1980;35:617.
46. Pedersen T, Eliasen K, Henriksen E. A prospective study of mortality associated with anaesthesia and surgery: risk indicators of mortality in hospital. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34:176–182.
47. Li G, Warner M, Lang BH, et al. Epidemiology of anesthesia-related mortality in the United States, 1999-2005. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:759–765.
48. Lagasse RS. Innocent prattle. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:698–699.
49. Findlay G, Goodwin A, Protopapa K, et al. *Knowing the Risk: a Review of the Perioperative Care of Surgical Patients*. London: National Confidential Enquiry into Patient Outcome and Death; 2011.
50. Pearse R, Moreno R, Bauer P, et al. Mortality after surgery in Europe: 7-day cohort study. *Lancet*. 2012;380:1059–1065.
51. Wunsch H, Linde-Zwirble WT, Harrison DA, et al. Use of intensive care services during terminal hospitalizations in England and the United States. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2009;180:875–880.
52. Bennett-Guerrero E, Hyam JA, Shaefi S, et al. Comparison of P-POSSUM risk-adjusted mortality rates after surgery between patients in the USA and the UK. *Br J Surg*. 2003;90:1593–1598.

52a. Whitlock EL, Feiner JR, Chen L-l. Perioperative mortality, 2010 to 2014a retrospective cohort study using the National Anesthesia Clinical Outcomes Registry. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(6):1312–1321.

53. Keenan RL, Boyan CP. Cardiac arrest due to anesthesia. A study of incidence and causes. *JAMA*. 1985;253:2373–2377.

54. Olsson GL, Hallen B. Cardiac arrest during anaesthesia. A computer-aided study in 250,543 anaesthetics. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32:653–664.
55. Biboulet P, Aubas P, Dubourdieu J, et al. Fatal and nonfatal cardiac arrests related to anesthesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48:326–332.
56. Newland MC, Ellis SJ, Lydiatt CA, et al. Anesthetic-related cardiac arrest and its mortality: a report covering 72,959 anesthetics over 10 years from a US teaching hospital. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:108–115.
57. Sprung J, Warner ME, Contreras MG, et al. Predictors of survival following cardiac arrest in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a study of 518,294 patients at a tertiary referral center. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:259–269.

57a. Ellis SJ, Newland MC, Simonson JA, et al. Anesthesia-related cardiac arrest. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(4):829–838.

58. Kawashima Y, Takahashi S, Suzuki M, et al. Anesthesia-related mortality and morbidity over a 5-year period in 2,363,038 patients in Japan. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:809–817.
59. Deleted in proof.
60. Kheterpal S, O'Reilly M, Englesbe MJ, et al. Preoperative and intraoperative predictors of cardiac adverse events after general, vascular, and urological surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:58–66.
61. Chiang TM, Sukis AE, Ross DE. Tonsillectomy performed on an outpatient basis. Report of a series of 40,000 cases performed without a death. *Arch Otolaryngol*. 1968;88:307–310.
62. Raymond CA. Study questions safety, economic benefits of outpatient tonsil/adenoid surgery. *JAMA*. 1986;256:311–312.
63. Carithers JS, Gebhart DE, Williams JA. Postoperative risks of pediatric tonsilloadenoidectomy. *Laryngoscope*. 1987;97:422–429.
64. Brigger MT, Brietzke SE. Outpatient tonsillectomy in children: a systematic review. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2006;135:1–7.
65. Gabalski EC, Mattucci KF, Setzen M, Moleski P. Ambulatory tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy. *Laryngoscope*. 1996;106:77–80.
66. Mitchell RB, Pereira KD, Friedman NR, Lazar RH. Outpatient adenotonsillectomy. Is it safe in children younger than 3 years? *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 1997;123:681–683.
67. Schloss MD, Tan AK, Schloss B, Tewfik TL. Outpatient tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy: complications and recommendations. *Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol*. 1994;30:115–122.

67a. Coté CJ, Posner KL, Domino KB. Death or neurologic injury after tonsillectomy in children with a focus on obstructive sleep apnea: Houston, we have a problem! *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(6):1276–1283.

68. Warren JL, Riley GF, Potosky AL, et al. Trends and outcomes of outpatient mastectomy in elderly women. *J Natl Cancer Inst*. 1998;90:833–840.

68a. Cooper GS, Kou TD, Rex DK. Complications following colonoscopy with anesthesia assistance: a population-based analysis. *JAMA Internal Medicine*. 2013;173(7):551–556.

69. Warner MA, Shields SE, Chute CG. Major morbidity and mortality within 1 month of ambulatory surgery and anesthesia. *JAMA*. 1993;270:1437–1441.
70. Deleted in proof.
71. Chukmaitov AS, Menachemi N, Brown LS, et al. A comparative study of quality outcomes in freestanding ambulatory surgery centers and hospital-based outpatient departments: 1997-2004. *Health Serv Res*. 2008;43:1485–1504.
72. Morello DC, Colon GA, Fredricks S, et al. Patient safety in accredited office surgical facilities. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1997;99:1496–1500.
73. Vila H Jr, Soto R, Cantor AB, Mackey D. Comparative outcomes analysis of procedures performed in physician offices and ambulatory surgery centers. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138:991–995.
74. Coldiron B, Shreve E, Balkrishnan R. Patient injuries from surgical procedures performed in medical offices: three years of Florida data. *Dermatol Surg*. 2004;30:1435–1443; discussion 43.
75. Coldiron BM, Healy C, Bene NI. Office surgery incidents: what seven years of Florida data show us. *Dermatol Surg*. 2008;34:285–291; discussion 91-92.
76. Clayman MA, Seagle BM. Office surgery safety: the myths and truths behind the Florida moratoria–six years of Florida data. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2006;118:777–785. discussion 86-87.
77. Sanborn KV, Castro J, Kuroda M, Thys DM. Detection of intraoperative incidents by electronic scanning of computerized anesthesia records. Comparison with voluntary reporting. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:977–987.
78. Reich DL, Bodian CA, Krol M, et al. Intraoperative hemodynamic predictors of mortality, stroke, and myocardial infarction after coronary artery bypass surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:814–822.
79. Kheterpal S, Han R, Tremper KK, et al. Incidence and predictors of difficult and impossible mask ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:885–891.
80. Kheterpal S, Tremper KK, Englesbe MJ, et al. Predictors of postoperative acute renal failure after noncardiac surgery in patients with previously normal renal function. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:892–902.

80a. Lee LO, Bateman BT, Kheterpal S, et al. Risk of epidural hematoma after neuraxial techniques in thrombocytopenic parturients: a report from the multicenter perioperative outcomes group. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(6):1053–1063.

80b. Kheterpal S, Healy D, Aziz MF, et al. Incidence, predictors, and outcome of difficult mask ventilation combined with difficult laryngoscopy: a report from the multicenter perioperative outcomes group. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119(6):1360–1369.

80c. Aziz MF, Brambrink AM, Healy DW, et al. Success of intubation rescue techniques after failed direct laryngoscopy in adults: a retrospective comparative analysis from the multicenter perioperative outcomes group. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(4):656–666.

81. Caplan RA, Ward RJ, Posner K, Cheney FW. Unexpected cardiac arrest during spinal anesthesia: a closed claims analysis of predisposing factors. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:5–11.
82. Tinker JH, Dull DL, Caplan RA, et al. Role of monitoring devices in prevention of anesthetic mishaps: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:541–546.
83. Caplan RA, Posner KL, Ward RJ, Cheney FW. Adverse respiratory events in anesthesia: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:828–833.
84. Bhananker SM, Posner KL, Cheney FW, et al. Injury and liability associated with monitored anesthesia care: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:228–234.
85. Hove LD, Steinmetz J, Christoffersen JK, et al. Analysis of deaths related to anesthesia in the period 1996-2004 from closed claims registered by the Danish Patient Insurance Association. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:675–680.
86. Cooper JB. Toward prevention of anesthetic mishaps. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1984;22:167–183.
87. Cooper JB, Newbower RS, Kitz RJ. An analysis of major errors and equipment failures in anesthesia management: considerations for prevention and detection. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:34–42.
88. Singleton RJ, Webb RK, Ludbrook GL, Fox MA. The Australian Incident Monitoring Study. Problems associated with vascular access: an analysis of 2000 incident reports. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21:664–669.
89. Van der Walt JH, Webb RK, Osborne GA, et al. The Australian Incident Monitoring Study. Recovery room incidents in the first 2000 incident reports. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21:650–652.
90. Deleted in proof.
91. Lopez-Jimenez F, Goldman L, Sacks DB, et al. Prognostic value of cardiac troponin T after noncardiac surgery: 6-month follow-up data. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1997;29:1241–1245.
92. Monk TG, Saini V, Weldon BC, Sigl JC. Anesthetic management and one-year mortality after noncardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:4–10.
93. Saklad M. Grading of patients for surgical procedures. *Anesthesiology*. 1941;2:281–284.
94. Keats AS. The ASA classification of physical status–a recapitulation. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49:233–236.
95. Vacanti CJ, VanHouten RJ, Hill RC. A statistical analysis of the relationship of physical status to postoperative mortality in 68,388 cases. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49:564–566.
96. Cohen MM, Duncan PG, Tate RB. Does anesthesia contribute to operative mortality? *JAMA*. 1988;260:2859–2863.
97. Owens WD, Felts JA, Spitznagel EL Jr. ASA physical status classifications: a study of consistency of ratings. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49:239–243.
98. Goldman L, Caldera DL. Risks of general anesthesia and elective operation in the hypertensive patient. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:285–292.
99. Hollenberg M, Mangano DT, Browner WS, et al. Predictors of postoperative myocardial ischemia in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. The Study of Perioperative Ischemia Research Group. *JAMA*. 1992;268:205–209.

99a. Baron DM, Hochrieser H, Posch M, et al. Preoperative anaemia is associated with poor clinical outcome in non-cardiac surgery patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(3):416–423.

100. Zeldin RA. Assessing cardiac risk in patients who undergo noncardiac surgical procedures. *Can J Surg*. 1984;27:402–404.

101. Larsen SF, Olesen KH, Jacobsen E, et al. Prediction of cardiac risk in non-cardiac surgery. *Eur Heart J*. 1987;8:179–185.

102. Domaingue CM, Davies MJ, Cronin KD. Cardiovascular risk factors in patients for vascular surgery. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1982;10:324–327.

103. Jeffrey CC, Kunsman J, Cullen DJ, Brewster DC. A prospective evaluation of cardiac risk index. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:462–464.

104. White GH, Advani SM, Williams RA, Wilson SE. Cardiac risk index as a predictor of long-term survival after repair of abdominal aortic aneurysm. *Am J Surg*. 1988;156:103–107.

105. Lette J, Waters D, Lassonde J, et al. Postoperative myocardial infarction and cardiac death. Predictive value of dipyridamole-thallium imaging and five clinical scoring systems based on multifactorial analysis. *Ann Surg*. 1990;211:84–90.

106. McEnroe CS, O'Donnell TF Jr, Yeager A, et al. Comparison of ejection fraction and Goldman risk factor analysis to dipyridamole-thallium 201 studies in the evaluation of cardiac morbidity after aortic aneurysm surgery. *J Vasc Surg*. 1990;11:497–504.

107. Detsky AS, Abrams HB, McLaughlin JR, et al. Predicting cardiac complications in patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery. *J Gen Intern Med*. 1986;1:211–219.

108. Palda VA, Detsky AS. Perioperative assessment and management of risk from coronary artery disease. *Ann Intern Med*. 1997;127:313–328.

109. Lee TH, Marcantonio ER, Mangione CM, et al. Derivation and prospective validation of a simple index for prediction of cardiac risk of major noncardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 1999;100:1043–1049.

110. Ford MK, Beattie WS, Wijeysundera DN. Systematic review: prediction of perioperative cardiac complications and mortality by the revised cardiac risk index. *Ann Intern Med*. 2010;152:26–35.

111. Gupta PK, Gupta H, Sundaram A, et al. Development and validation of a risk calculator for prediction of cardiac risk after surgery. *Circulation*. 2011;124:381–387.

111a. Berwanger O, Le Manach Y, Suzumura EA, et al. Association between pre-operative statin use and major cardiovascular complications among patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery: the VISION study. *Eur Heart J*. 2016;37(2):177–185.

111b. Abbott TE, Ackland GL, Archbold RA, et al. Preoperative heart rate and myocardial injury after non-cardiac surgery: results of a predefined secondary analysis of the VISION study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(2):172–181.

111c. Gorka J, Polok K, Iwaniec T, et al. Altered preoperative coagulation and fibrinolysis are associated with myocardial injury after non-cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(5):713–719.

112. Wijeysundera DN, Karkouti K, Dupuis JY, et al. Derivation and validation of a simplified predictive index for renal replacement therapy after cardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2007;297:1801–1809.

113. Arozullah AM, Khuri SF, Henderson WG, Daley J. Development and validation of a multifactorial risk index for predicting postoperative pneumonia after major noncardiac surgery. *Ann Intern Med*. 2001;135:847–857.

114. Arozullah AM, Daley J, Henderson WG, Khuri SF. Multifactorial risk index for predicting postoperative respiratory failure in men after major noncardiac surgery. The National Veterans Administration Surgical Quality Improvement Program. *Ann Surg*. 2000;232:242–253.

115. Hogue CW Jr, Murphy SF, Schechtman KB, Davila-Roman VG. Risk factors for early or delayed stroke after cardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 1999;100:642–647.

116. McCrory DC, Goldstein LB, Samsa GP, et al. Predicting complications of carotid endarterectomy. *Stroke*. 1993;24:1285–1291.

117. Glance LG, Lustik SJ, Hannan EL, et al. The surgical mortality probability model: derivation and validation of a simple risk prediction rule for noncardiac surgery. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255:696–702.

118. Hannan EL, Kilburn H Jr, O'Donnell JF, et al. Adult open heart surgery in New York state. An analysis of risk factors and hospital mortality rates. *JAMA*. 1990;264:2768–2774.

119. Hannan EL, Kumar D, Racz M, et al. New York state's cardiac surgery reporting system: four years later. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1994;58:1852–1857.

120. Hannan EL, Stone CC, Biddle TL, DeBuono BA. Public release of cardiac surgery outcomes data in New York: what do New York state cardiologists think of it? *Am Heart J*. 1997;134:1120–1128.

121. Hopkins PM. Malignant hyperthermia: advances in clinical management and diagnosis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:118–128.

122. Tardiff BE, Newman MF, Saunders AM, et al. Preliminary report of a genetic basis for cognitive decline after cardiac operations. The Neurologic Outcome Research Group of the Duke Heart Center. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1997;64:715–720.

123. Fox AA, Collard CD, Shernan SK, et al. Natriuretic peptide system gene variants are associated with ventricular dysfunction after coronary artery bypass grafting. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:738–747.

124. Muehlschlegel JD, Liu KY, Perry TE, et al. Chromosome 9p21 variant predicts mortality after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Circulation*. 2010;122:S60–S65.

125. Kaunitz AM, Hughes JM, Grimes DA, et al. Causes of maternal mortality in the United States. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1985;65:605–612.

126. Endler GC, Mariona FG, Sokol RJ, Stevenson LB. Anesthesia-related maternal mortality in Michigan, 1972 to 1984. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1988;159:187–193.

127. Rochat RW, Koonin LM, Atrash HK, Jewett JF. Maternal mortality in the United States: report from the maternal mortality collaborative. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1988;72:91–97.

128. Morgan M. Anaesthetic contribution to maternal mortality. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:842–855.

129. Hawkins JL, Koonin LM, Palmer SK, Gibbs CP. Anesthesia-related deaths during obstetric delivery in the United States, 1979-1990. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:277–284.

130. Panchal S, Arria AM, Labhsetwar SA. Maternal mortality during hospital admission for delivery: a retrospective analysis using a state-maintained database. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:134–141.

131. Mhyre JM, Riesner MN, Polley LS, Naughton NN. A series of anesthesia-related maternal deaths in Michigan, 1985-2003. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1096–1104.

132. Bloom SL, Spong CY, Weiner SJ, et al. Complications of anesthesia for cesarean delivery. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106:281–287.

132a. D'Angelo R, Smiley RM, Riley ET, Segal S. Serious complications related to obstetric anesthesia the Serious Complication Repository Project of the Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(6):1505–1512.

133. Graff TD, Phillips OC, Benson DW, Kelley E. Baltimore Anesthesia Study Committee: factors in pediatric anesthesia mortality. *Anesth Analg*. 1964;43:407–414.

134. Tiret L, Nivoche Y, Hatton F, et al. Complications related to anaesthesia in infants and children. A prospective survey of 40240 anaesthetics. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61:263–269.

135. Cohen MM, Cameron CB, Duncan PG. Pediatric anesthesia morbidity and mortality in the perioperative period. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:160–167.

136. van der Griend BF, Lister NA, McKenzie IM, et al. Postoperative mortality in children after 101,885 anesthetics at a tertiary pediatric hospital. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1440–1447.

137. Flick RP, Sprung J, Harrison TE, et al. Perioperative cardiac arrests in children between 1988 and 2005 at a tertiary referral center: a study of 92,881 patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:226–237; quiz 413-414.

138. Odegard KC, DiNardo JA, Kussman BD, et al. The frequency of anesthesia-related cardiac arrests in patients with congenital heart disease undergoing cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:335–343.

139. Morray JP, Geiduschek JM, Ramamoorthy C, et al. Anesthesia-related cardiac arrest in children: initial findings of the Pediatric Perioperative Cardiac Arrest (POCA) Registry. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:6–14.

140. Bhananker SM, Ramamoorthy C, Geiduschek JM, et al. Anesthesia-related cardiac arrest in children: update from the Pediatric Perioperative Cardiac Arrest Registry. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:344–350.

141. Ramamoorthy C, Haberkern CM, Bhananker SM, et al. Anesthesia-related cardiac arrest in children with heart disease: data from the Pediatric Perioperative Cardiac Arrest (POCA) registry. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1376–1382.

141a. Sun LS, Li G, Miller TK, et al. Association between a single general anesthesia exposure before age 36 months and neurocognitive outcomes in later childhood. *JAMA*. 2016;315(21):2312–2320.

141b. Ing CH, DiMaggio CJ, Malacova E, et al. Comparative analysis of outcome measures used in examining neurodevelopmental effects of early childhood anesthesia exposure. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(6):1319–1332.
141c. Backeljauw B, Holland SK, Altaye M, Loepke AW. Cognition and brain structure following early childhood surgery with anesthesia. *Pediatrics*. 2015;136(1):e1–e12.
142. Denney JL, Denson JS. Risk of surgery in patients over 90. *Geriatrics*. 1972;27:115–118.
143. Djokovic JL, Hedley-Whyte J. Prediction of outcome of surgery and anesthesia in patients over 80. *JAMA*. 1979;242:2301–2306.
144. Del Guercio LR, Cohn JD. Monitoring operative risk in the elderly. *JAMA*. 1980;243:1350–1355.
145. Robinson TN, Eiseman B, Wallace JI, et al. Redefining geriatric preoperative assessment using frailty, disability and co-morbidity. *Ann Surg*. 2009;250:449–455.
146. Finlayson E, Wang L, Landefeld CS, Dudley RA. Major abdominal surgery in nursing home residents: a national study. *Ann Surg*. 2011;254:921–926.
147. Finlayson E, Zhao S, Boscardin WJ, et al. Functional status after colon cancer surgery in elderly nursing home residents. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2012;60:967–973.
147a. Fleisher LA. Brain health initiative: a new ASA patient safety initiative. *ASA Monitor*. 2016;80(6):10–11.
148. Subcommittee of the National Halothane Study of the Committee on Anesthesia NAoS: National Research Council. Summary of the national halothane study: possible association between halothane anesthesia and postoperative hepatic necrosis. *JAMA*. 1966;197:775–788.
149. Aach R. Halothane and liver failure. *JAMA*. 1970;211:2145–2147.
150. DeBacker LJ, Longnecker DS. Prospective and retrospective searches for liver necrosis following halothane anesthesia. Serum enzyme study and case report. *JAMA*. 1966;195:157–160.
151. Levine MF, Sarner J, Lerman J, et al. Plasma inorganic fluoride concentrations after sevoflurane anesthesia in children. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:348–353.
152. Nishiyama T, Aibiki M, Hanaoka K. Inorganic fluoride kinetics and renal tubular function after sevoflurane anesthesia in chronic renal failure patients receiving hemodialysis. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:574–577.
153. Conzen PF, Nuscheler M, Melotte A, et al. Renal function and serum fluoride concentrations in patients with stable renal insufficiency after anesthesia with sevoflurane or enflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:569–575.
154. Rooke GA, Ebert T, Muzi M, Kharasch ED. The hemodynamic and renal effects of sevoflurane and isoflurane in patients with coronary artery disease and chronic hypertension. Sevoflurane Ischemia Study Group. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:1159–1165.
154a. Wigmore TJ, Mohammed K, Jhanji S. Long-term survival for patients undergoing volatile versus iv anesthesia for cancer surgery a retrospective analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(1):69–79.
154b. Lewis SC, Warlow CP, Bodenham AR, et al. General anaesthesia versus local anaesthesia for carotid surgery (GALA): a multicentre, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2008;372(9656):2132–2142.
154c. van den Berg LA, Koelman DLH, Berkhemer OA, et al. Type of anesthesia and differences in clinical outcome after intra-arterial treatment for ischemic stroke. *Stroke*. 2015;46(5):1257–1262.
155. Becker LC. Is isoflurane dangerous for the patient with coronary artery disease? *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:259–261.
156. Buffington CW, Romson JL, Levine A, et al. Isoflurane induces coronary steal in a canine model of chronic coronary occlusion. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:280–292.
157. Leung JM, Goehner P, O'Kelly BF, et al. Isoflurane anesthesia and myocardial ischemia: comparative risk versus sufentanil anesthesia in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery. The SPI (Study of Perioperative Ischemia) Research Group. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:838–847.
158. Leung JM, Hollenberg M, O'Kelly BF, et al. Effects of steal-prone anatomy on intraoperative myocardial ischemia. The SPI Research Group. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1992;20:1205–1212.
159. Slogoff S, Keats AS. Randomized trial of primary anesthetic agents on outcome of coronary artery bypass operations. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:179–188.
160. Slogoff S, Keats AS, Dear WE, et al. Steal-prone coronary anatomy and myocardial ischemia associated with four primary anesthetic agents in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:22–27.
161. Neuman MD, Silber JH, Elkassabany NM, et al. Comparative effectiveness of regional versus general anesthesia for hip fracture surgery in adults. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:72–92.
162. Rodgers A, Walker N, Schug S, et al. Reduction of postoperative mortality and morbidity with epidural or spinal anaesthesia: results from overview of randomised trials. *BMJ*. 2000;321:1493.
162a. Basques BA, Toy JO, Bohl DD, Golinvaux NS, Grauer JN. General compared with spinal anesthesia for total hip arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2015;97(6):455–461.
162b. Neuman MD, Rosenbaum PR, Ludwig JM, Zubizarreta JR, Silber JH. Anesthesia technique, mortality, and length of stay after hip fracture surgery. *JAMA*. 2014;311(24):2508–2517.
162c. Helwani MA, Avidan MS, Ben Abdallah A, et al. Effects of regional versus general anesthesia on outcomes after total hip arthroplasty: a retrospective propensity-matched cohort study. *JBJS*. 2015;97(3):186–193.
162d. Memtsoudis SG, Stundner O, Rasul R, et al. Sleep apnea and total joint arthroplasty under various types of anesthesia: a population-based study of perioperative outcomes. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2013;38(4):274–281.
162e. O'Donnell CM, McLoughlin L, Patterson CC, et al. Perioperative outcomes in the context of mode of anaesthesia for patients undergoing hip fracture surgery: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*.120(1):37-50.
162f. Neuman MD, Ellenberg SS, Sieber FE, Magaziner JS, Feng R, Carson JL. Regional versus General Anesthesia for Promoting Independence after Hip Fracture (REGAIN): protocol for a pragmatic, international multicentre trial. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6(11):e013473.
162g. Li T, Yeung J, Li J, et al. Comparison of regional with general anaesthesia on postoperative delirium (RAGA-delirium) in the older patients undergoing hip fracture surgery: study protocol for a multicentre randomised controlled trial. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7(10):e016937.
163. Christopherson R, Beattie C, Frank SM, et al. Perioperative morbidity in patients randomized to epidural or general anesthesia for lower extremity vascular surgery. Perioperative Ischemia Randomized Anesthesia Trial Study Group. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:422–434.
164. Bode RH Jr, Lewis KP, Zarich SW, et al. Cardiac outcome after peripheral vascular surgery. Comparison of general and regional anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:3–13.
165. Tuman K, McCarthy R, Spiess B. Epidural anaesthesia and analgesia decreases postoperative hypercoagulability in high-risk vascular patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:S414.
165a. Ladha K, Vidal Melo MF, McLean DJ, et al. Intraoperative protective mechanical ventilation and risk of postoperative respiratory complications: hospital based registry study. *BMJ*. 2015:351.
165b. Severgnini P, Selmo G, Lanza C, et al. Protective mechanical ventilation during general anesthesia for open abdominal surgery improves postoperative pulmonary function. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(6):1307–1321.
166. Krupski WC, Layug EL, Reilly LM, et al. Comparison of cardiac morbidity between aortic and infrainguinal operations. Study of Perioperative Ischemia (SPI) Research Group. *J Vasc Surg*. 1992;15:354–363; discussion 64-5.
167. L'Italien GJ, Cambria RP, Cutler BS, et al. Comparative early and late cardiac morbidity among patients requiring different vascular surgery procedures. *J Vasc Surg*. 1995;21:935–944.
168. Ashton CM, Petersen NJ, Wray NP, et al. The incidence of perioperative myocardial infarction in men undergoing noncardiac surgery. *Ann Intern Med*. 1993;118:504–510.
169. Deleted in proof.
170. Eagle KA, Rihal CS, Mickel MC, et al. Cardiac risk of noncardiac surgery: influence of coronary disease and type of surgery in 3368 operations. CASS Investigators and University of Michigan Heart Care Program. Coronary Artery Surgery Study. *Circulation*. 1997;96:1882–1887.
171. Fleisher LA, Beckman JA, Brown KA, et al. ACC/AHA 2007 Guidelines on Perioperative Cardiovascular Evaluation and Care for Noncardiac Surgery: Executive Summary: a Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to Revise the 2002 Guidelines on Perioperative Cardiovascular Evaluation for Noncardiac Surgery): developed in collaboration with the American Society of Echocardiography, American Society of Nuclear Cardiology, Heart Rhythm Society, Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists,

Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, Society for Vascular Medicine and Biology, and Society for Vascular Surgery. *Circulation*. 2007;116:1971–1996.

172. Backer CL, Tinker JH, Robertson DM, Vlietstra RE. Myocardial reinfarction following local anesthesia for ophthalmic surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:257–262.
173. Schein OD, Katz J, Bass EB, et al. The value of routine preoperative medical testing before cataract surgery. Study of Medical Testing for Cataract Surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:168–175.

173a. Kim JS, Khavanin N, Rambachan A, et al. Surgical duration and risk of venous thromboembolism. *JAMA Surg*. 2015;150(2):110–117.

174. Kantonen I, Lepantalo M, Salenius JP, et al. Mortality in abdominal aortic aneurysm surgery–the effect of hospital volume, patient mix and surgeon's case load. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 1997;14:375–379.
175. Slogoff S, Keats AS. Does perioperative myocardial ischemia lead to postoperative myocardial infarction? *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:107–114.
176. Arbous MS, Meursing AE, van Kleef JW, et al. Impact of anesthesia management characteristics on severe morbidity and mortality. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:257–268; quiz 491-492.

176a. Jones PM, Cherry RA, Allen BN, et al. Association between handover of anesthesia care and adverse postoperative outcomes among patients undergoing major surgery. *JAMA*. 2018;319(2):143–153.

177. Bechtoldt AA Jr. Committee on Anesthesia Study. Anesthetic-related deaths: 1969-1976. *N C Med J*. 1981;42:253–259.
178. Forrest W. Outcome—the effect of the provider. In: Hirsch R, Forrest W, eds. *Health Care Delivery in Anesthesia*. Philadelphia: George F Stickley; 1980:137.
179. Silber JH. Anesthesiologist direction and patient outcomes. *LDI Issue Brief*. 2000;6:1–4.
180. Deleted in proof.
181. Silber JH, Kennedy SK, Even-Shoshan O, et al. Anesthesiologist board certification and patient outcomes. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1044–1052.
182. Pine M, Holt KD, Lou YB. Surgical mortality and type of anesthesia provider. *AANA J*. 2003;71:109–116.
183. Needleman J, Minnick AF. Anesthesia provider model, hospital resources, and maternal outcomes. *Health Serv Res*. 2009;44:464–482.
184. Neuman MD, Schwartz JS, Fleisher LA. Commentary: what conclusions can we draw from recent analyses of anesthesia provider model and patient outcomes? *Health Serv Res*. 2010;45:1390–1396; discussion 7-406.
185. Dulisse B, Cromwell J. No harm found when nurse anesthetists work without supervision by physicians. *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 2010;29:1469–1475.
186. Smith AF, Kane M, Milne R. Comparative effectiveness and safety of physician and nurse anaesthetists: a narrative systematic review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:540–545.
187. Deleted in proof.
188. Deleted in proof.
189. Deleted in proof.
190. Deleted in proof.
191. Deleted in proof.
192. Deleted in proof.
193. Deleted in proof.
194. Deleted in proof.
195. Deleted in proof.
196. Deleted in proof.
197. Eichhorn JH. The Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation at 25: a pioneering success in safety, 25th anniversary provokes reflection, anticipation. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:791–800.
198. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Standards for Basic Anesthesia Monitoring*. Park Ridge, Ill: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 2011.
199. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Practice guidelines for management of the difficult airway: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Management of the Difficult Airway. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1269–1277.
200. Practice guidelines for pulmonary artery catheterization: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Pulmonary Artery Catheterization. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:988–1014.
201. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Practice guidelines for perioperative blood transfusion and adjuvant therapies: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Transfusion and Adjuvant Therapies. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:198–208.
202. *WHO Surgical Safety Checklist and Implementation Manual*. World Health Organization; 2008. http://www.who.int/patientsafety/safesurgery/ss_checklist/en/index.html.
203. Haynes AB, Weiser TG, Berry WR, et al. A surgical safety checklist to reduce morbidity and mortality in a global population. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:491–499.
204. Gaba DM, Maxwell M, DeAnda A. Anesthetic mishaps: breaking the chain of accident evolution. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:670–676.
205. Holzman RS, Cooper JB, Gaba DM, et al. Anesthesia crisis resource management: real-life simulation training in operating room crises. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7:675–687.
206. Howard SK, Gaba DM, Fish KJ, et al. Anesthesia crisis resource management training: teaching anesthesiologists to handle critical incidents. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1992;63:763–770.
207. Popp HJ, Schecke T, Rau G, et al. An interactive computer simulator of the circulation for knowledge acquisition in cardio-anesthesia. *Int J Clin Monit Comput*. 1991;8:151–158.
208. Schwid HA, O'Donnell D. Anesthesiologists' management of simulated critical incidents. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:495–501.

31 Preoperative Evaluation

DUMINDA N. WIJEYSUNDERA and EMILY FINLAYSON

KEY POINTS

- The anesthesia preoperative evaluation, which is the clinical foundation for guiding perioperative patient management, reduces perioperative morbidity and enhances patient outcome.
- The fundamental purpose of preoperative evaluation is to obtain pertinent information regarding the patient's medical history, formulate an assessment of the patient's perioperative risk, and develop a plan for any requisite clinical optimization.
- The preanesthesia evaluation should include a focused clinical examination, documentation of comorbid illness, reduction of patients' anxiety through education, assurance that preexisting medical conditions are optimally managed, selective referrals to medical specialists, ordering of preoperative investigations, initiation of interventions intended to decrease risk, discussion of aspects of perioperative care, arrangements for appropriate postoperative care, and recommendations to delay or cancel the surgical procedure, if deemed appropriate.
- Comorbid medical diseases can influence anesthesia and perioperative management, thus requiring the anesthesiologist to be knowledgeable in many aspects of internal medicine.
- Patients require appropriate preoperative diagnostic and laboratory studies consistent with their medical history and the proposed surgical procedure. Routine preoperative testing cannot be justified because it is costly and often clinically inappropriate.
- The anesthesiologist-led preoperative evaluation outpatient clinic can enhance operating room efficiency, decrease day-of-surgery cancellations or delays, reduce hospital costs, and enhance the quality of patient care.
- New and updated preoperative evaluation consensus and evidence-based guidelines published by multiple medical specialties have important influences on the preparation of patients for anesthesia and surgery.
- Anesthesiologists must be aware of, and be compliant with, increasing regulatory and reporting requirements involving preoperative issues by healthcare agencies.
- The anesthesiologist is the perioperative medical specialist and thus is uniquely positioned to evaluate the risks associated with anesthesia or surgery, discuss these risks with the patient, and manage them perioperatively in collaboration with the surgical team, referring physician, and other medical specialists.

Preoperative evaluation is required prior to the administration of any anesthetic. Its practice and scope have changed dramatically. Initial changes were driven by a rapid transformation in practice from hospital admission of patients the night before surgical procedures to admission on the morning of surgery. More recently, preanesthesia evaluation has become integral to the Perioperative Surgical Home model that aims to develop an integrated model for managing the entire perioperative episode of care.[1] This evolution in practice has led to a new approach to preoperative evaluation, which is a vital role of the perioperative physician. Accordingly, many anesthesiologists have expanded their responsibilities from providers of intraoperative anesthesia care to *perioperative medical specialists* who use their unique knowledge and experience to manage medical complexities related to surgery.[2] This expanded role entails that anesthesiologists assume the leadership role in the assessment and optimization of patients who are scheduled for surgery.[3] This chapter provides a comprehensive discussion of the practice of preoperative evaluation, as well as a review of related concepts, current evidence, and consensus-based clinical practice guidelines.

Evolution of Preanesthesia Evaluation

All patients requiring anesthesia for surgery must undergo a preoperative evaluation by their anesthesia provider. The conduct of this evaluation has changed substantially. Historically, anesthesiologists assessed their patients for the first time either just before the surgical procedure or on the preceding day, with the remainder of preoperative evaluation and preparation being the responsibility of the surgeon, primary care provider, or other specialist. In some countries, this approach remains the usual clinical practice. Nonetheless, in many countries, anesthesiologists have increasingly taken on a leadership role in preoperative evaluation and preparation, well in advance of the scheduled procedure. This is particularly true for high-risk patients or those undergoing high-risk procedures.

Several factors explain this change. First, considerably fewer patients are admitted to the hospital prior to the day of surgery. In many countries, there is little financial justification for the previous model of admitting patients prior to the day of surgery. For example, most surgical procedures in the United States are performed on an outpatient or same-day admission basis, including major neurosurgical, cardiac, and cancer resection procedures. Second, surgical patients are increasingly likely to be older frail individuals with significant burdens of medical comorbidity.[4] For such patients, sufficient time is needed between the preanesthesia evaluation and the planned surgery to facilitate testing, interventions, and medical optimization. In the case of patients with very high-risk medical comorbidity, preoperative consultation by an anesthesiologist can help inform a shared decision-making process for proceeding with surgery (see section on "Frailty, Geriatric Conditions, and the Older Surgical Patient"). Third, anesthesia care increasingly extends beyond the operating room alone. Preoperative evaluation is an integral component of the anesthesiologists' role as perioperative physicians who are involved in integrated medical care before, during, and after surgery. The specialty is uniquely positioned for this role given its expertise in the management of medical complexities related to anesthesia and surgery. This view of preoperative evaluation as a key component of the integrated management of the entire perioperative episode of care is essential to the Perioperative Surgical Home model.[1]

Outpatient preoperative assessment clinics have been instrumental in facilitating greater involvement of anesthesiologists in preoperative evaluation. These clinics also impose new clinical and organizational challenges. In an institution where most surgical patients are evaluated in the preoperative assessment clinic, anesthesiologists may have less time to evaluate medically complex patients. Consequently, anesthesiologists must achieve a high level of efficiency and accuracy in the assessment of a patient's history, physical examination, and differential diagnosis, as well as in the planning of perioperative management. Conversely, in a hospital where only the highest-risk patients are referred for consultation at a preoperative assessment clinic, the anesthesia department must interact with surgical departments to establish general protocols that ensure capture of the information needed to perform anesthesia safely, as well as the appropriate selection of individuals who require preoperative anesthesia consultation. In addition to changes in the scope and timing of the preanesthesia evaluation, this assessment has increasingly been influenced and governed by practice guidelines. For example, in the United States, The Joint Commission mandates documentation of a history and physical examination for any surgical patient within 30 days before the planned procedure, as well as reassessment within the 48-hour period immediately preceding the surgical procedure. The American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) and European Society of Anaesthesiology (ESA) have published specific guidelines for preoperative anesthesia evaluation.[5,6] In addition, several other specialty societies published practice guidelines specifically relating to the preoperative management of medical issues in surgical patients.[7-12]

Goals and Benefits of Preanesthesia Evaluation

Preoperative evaluations help influence and improve perioperative care (Fig. 31.1). Indeed, inadequate preoperative evaluation was a contributing factor in 3% of perioperative adverse events in the Australian Incident Monitoring Study database.[13] The overarching goals of preanesthesia evaluation are to (1) ensure that the patient can safely tolerate anesthesia for the planned surgery; and (2) mitigate perioperative risks such as pulmonary or cardiovascular complications. In pursuit of these goals, preanesthesia evaluations offer opportunities to perform focused clinical examinations, better document comorbid illness, reduce the patient's (and family's) anxiety through education, optimize preexisting medical conditions, make selective referrals to medical specialists (e.g., cardiologists), order specialized investigations (e.g., cardiac stress tests), initiate interventions intended to decrease risk, discuss aspects of perioperative care (e.g., anticipated risks, fasting guidelines), and arrange appropriate levels of postoperative care (e.g., critical care unit). If a patient is deemed to be at very high risk for adverse perioperative outcomes, the anesthesiologist may also recommend consideration of a nonoperative or less invasive treatment. Such a recommendation helps inform shared decision making for surgery (see Clinical Examination During Preoperative Evaluation section). In some cases, preanesthesia evaluation can identify a previously unrecognized medical condition (e.g., hypertension) that may not significantly affect perioperative risks, but warrants longer-term follow-up by appropriate healthcare professionals.

Compared to preoperative evaluations performed by surgeons or primary care physicians alone, anesthesiologist-led preoperative evaluation is associated with more selective ordering of laboratory tests and referral to specialists, thereby leading to reduced healthcare costs.[14-17] Within the context of an anesthesiologist-led preoperative evaluation clinic, preanesthesia evaluations also associated with reduced anxiety,[18] improved acceptance of regional anesthesia,[19] fewer day-of-surgery case cancellations,[14,20-22] shorter hospital length-of-stay,[19,21,22] and lower hospital costs.[21]

Clinical Examination During Preoperative Evaluation

The *clinical examination*, consisting of the history and physical examination, is a fundamental component of preoperative evaluation by anesthesiologists. This information helps identify the underlying basis for the planned surgery, clarify the extent of comorbidities with specific perioperative relevance, identify opportunities for preoperative optimization, and select any appropriate preoperative testing. The consistency and quality of preoperative examinations are enhanced through standardization. Specifically, the baseline clinical examination of all surgical patients should include a consistent

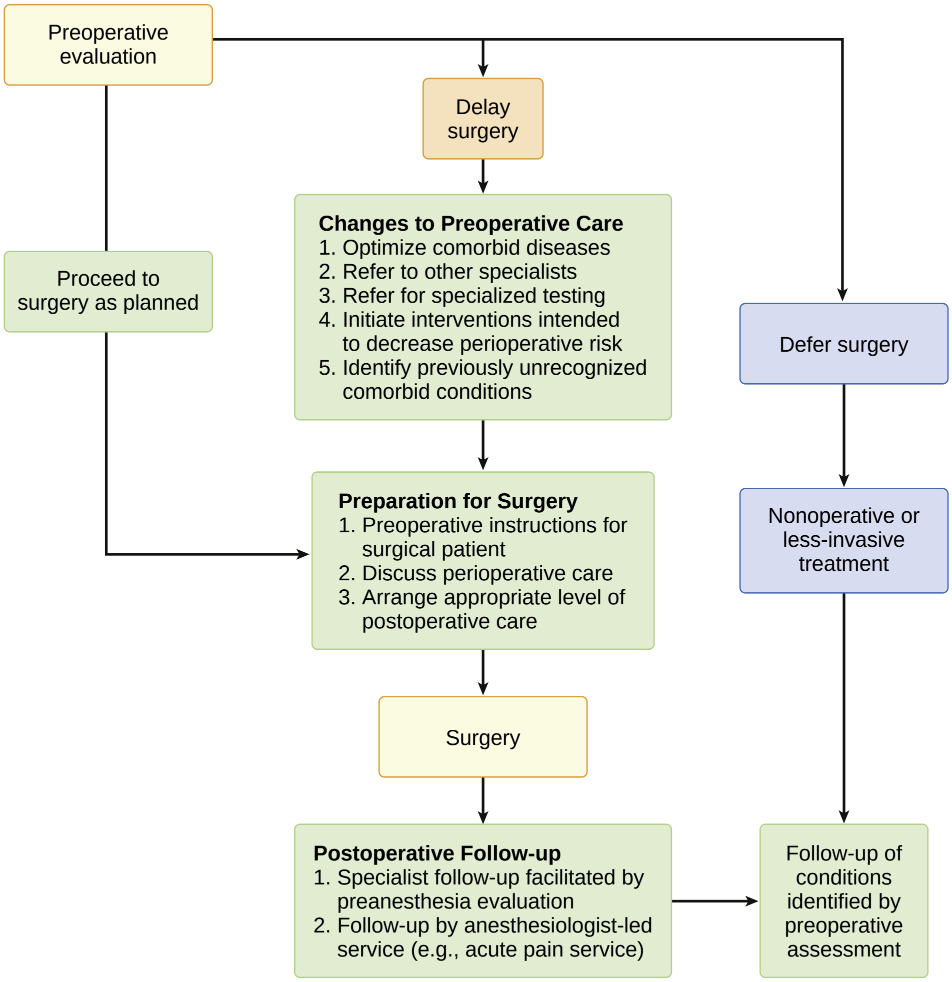

Preoperative evaluation
Delay surgery
Changes to Preoperative Care
1. Optimize comorbid diseases
2. Refer to other specialists
3. Refer for specialized testing
4. Initiate interventions intended to decrease perioperative risk
5. Identify previously unrecognized comorbid conditions
Proceed to surgery as planned
Defer surgery
Preparation for Surgery
1. Preoperative instructions for surgical patient
2. Discuss perioperative care
3. Arrange appropriate level of postoperative care
Nonoperative or less-invasive treatment
Surgery
Postoperative Follow-up
1. Specialist follow-up facilitated by preanesthesia evaluation
2. Follow-up by anesthesiologist-led service (e.g., acute pain service)
Follow-up of conditions identified by preoperative assessment

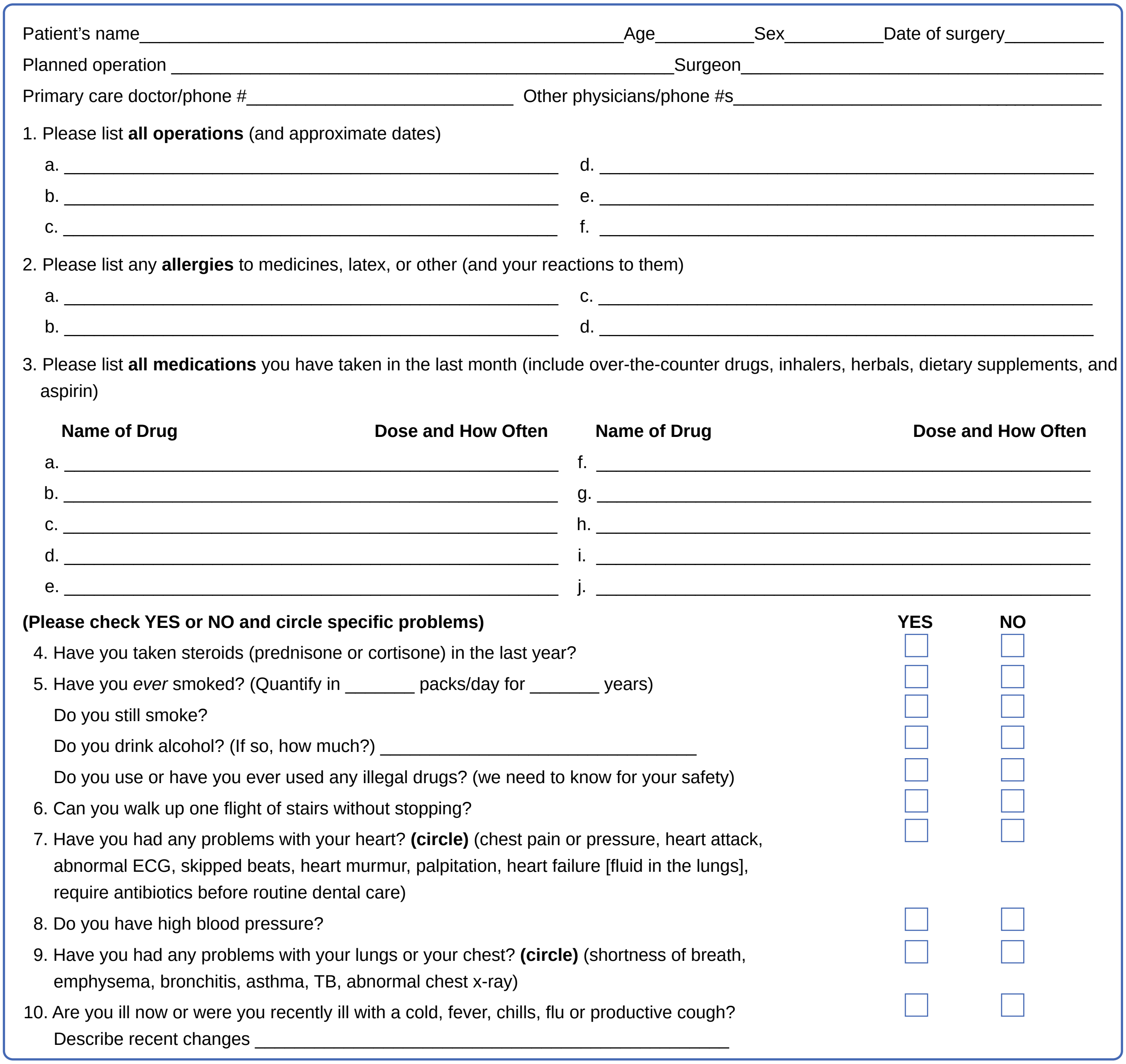
Fig. 31.1 Mechanisms by which preoperative evaluation can help influence and improve perioperative care.

set of components,[23] with opportunities for more detailed examination of one or more of these components (e.g., cardiovascular system) based on the findings from the standardized initial examination. Computer-based preoperative evaluation tools offer a mechanism for improving the standardization of high-quality preoperative assessments,[24,25] and are recommended in the 2018 ESA guidelines on preoperative evaluation.[6] The quality of the preoperative physical examination is further enhanced by appropriately considering evidence-based implications of different findings.[26]

COMPONENTS OF THE MEDICAL HISTORY

The important components of the anesthesia history are presented in the sample preoperative history form in Fig. 31.2. This information can be documented, either on paper or an electronic form, by anesthesia staff during an in-person or telephone interview with the patient. Alternatively, the patient can complete a form capturing the required information, either in person or remotely through a web-based program. The preanesthesia evaluation starts with the planned surgery and its indication. The development of the underlying condition necessitating surgery (e.g., cancer) and any prior related therapies need to be evident. Current known medical problems, past medical issues, previous surgeries, anesthesia types, and anesthesia-related complications must be noted. A simple notation of diseases or symptoms such as hypertension, diabetes mellitus, ischemic heart disease, shortness of breath, or chest pain is not sufficient. Rather, their associated severity, stability, associated activity limitations, exacerbations (current or recent), prior treatments, and planned interventions should be clearly documented. All related diagnostic test results, interventions, and names of treating physicians should be reviewed. The patient's responses to these initial questions may elicit further inquiry to establish a complete history.

Prescription and over-the-counter medications (including supplements and herbal medications) should be documented, along with their dosages and schedules. This information should include any recently interrupted medications with perioperative implications (e.g., recent corticosteroid therapy). The anesthesiologist should list any allergies to medications and other substances (e.g., latex, radiographic dye), with special emphasis on the patient's response to the exposure.



Patient's name______________________________Age_______Sex_______Date of surgery_______

Planned operation ______________________________Surgeon______________________________

Primary care doctor/phone #____________________ Other physicians/phone #s____________________

1. Please list **all operations** (and approximate dates)

a.	____________________	d.	____________________
b.	____________________	e.	____________________
c.	____________________	f.	____________________

2. Please list any **allergies** to medicines, latex, or other (and your reactions to them)

a.	____________________	c.	____________________
b.	____________________	d.	____________________

3. Please list **all medications** you have taken in the last month (include over-the-counter drugs, inhalers, herbals, dietary supplements, and aspirin)

	Name of Drug	**Dose and How Often**		**Name of Drug**	**Dose and How Often**
a.	__________	__________	f.	__________	__________
b.	__________	__________	g.	__________	__________
c.	__________	__________	h.	__________	__________
d.	__________	__________	i.	__________	__________
e.	__________	__________	j.	__________	__________

(Please check YES or NO and circle specific problems)	**YES**	**NO**
4. Have you taken steroids (prednisone or cortisone) in the last year?	☐	☐
5. Have you *ever* smoked? (Quantify in _______ packs/day for _______ years)	☐	☐
Do you still smoke?	☐	☐
Do you drink alcohol? (If so, how much?) ______________________	☐	☐
Do you use or have you ever used any illegal drugs? (we need to know for your safety)	☐	☐
6. Can you walk up one flight of stairs without stopping?	☐	☐
7. Have you had any problems with your heart? **(circle)** (chest pain or pressure, heart attack, abnormal ECG, skipped beats, heart murmur, palpitation, heart failure [fluid in the lungs], require antibiotics before routine dental care)	☐	☐
8. Do you have high blood pressure?	☐	☐
9. Have you had any problems with your lungs or your chest? **(circle)** (shortness of breath, emphysema, bronchitis, asthma, TB, abnormal chest x-ray)	☐	☐
10. Are you ill now or were you recently ill with a cold, fever, chills, flu or productive cough?	☐	☐

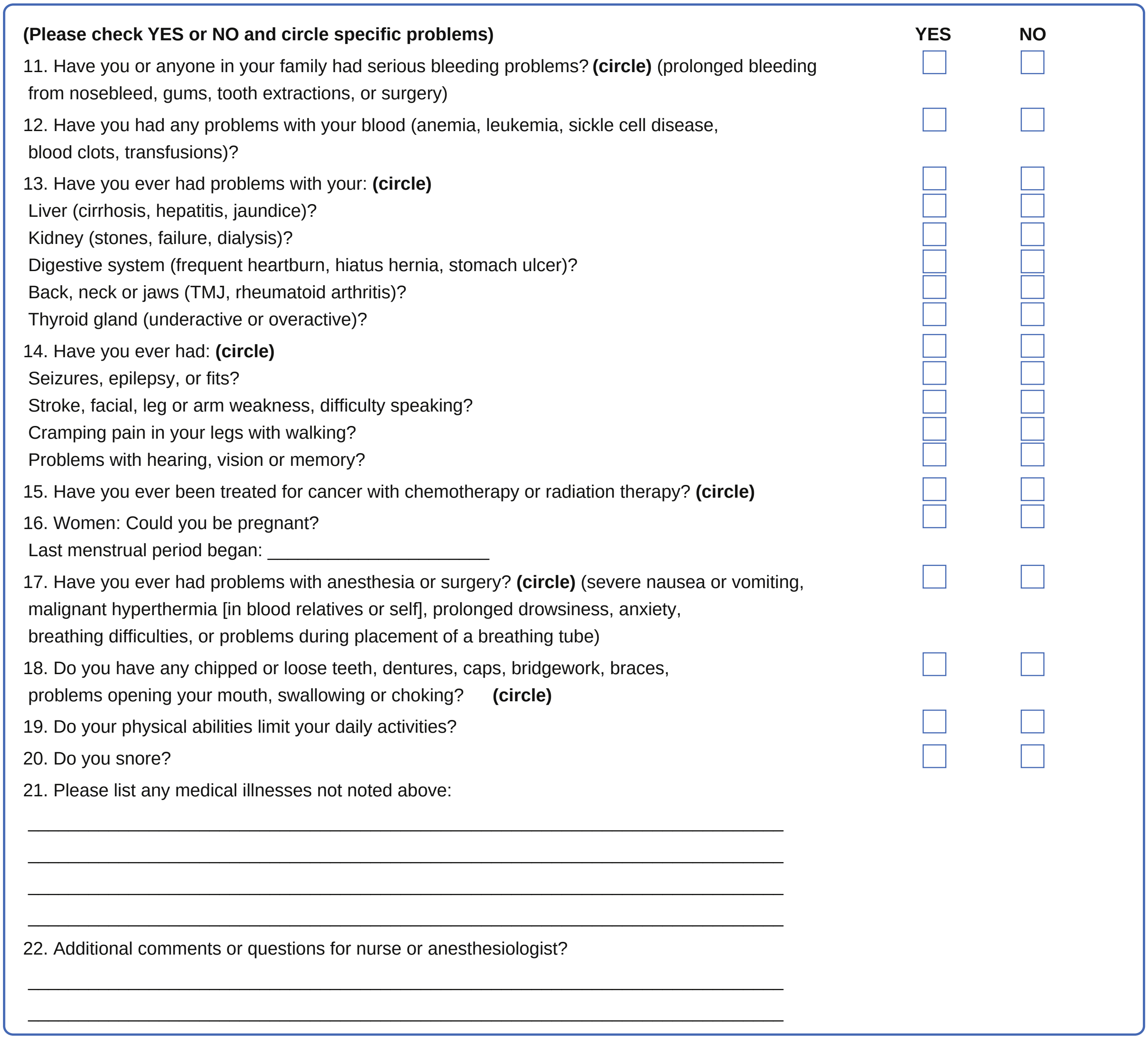
Describe recent changes ______________________________

A

Fig. 31.2 (A and B) Sample patient preoperative history form. (*ECG,* Electrocardiogram; *TB,* tuberculosis; *TMJ,* temporomandibular joint.)

Patients often claim an "allergy" to a substance when, in reality, the reaction was an expected side effect (e.g., nausea or vomiting with narcotics). Tobacco, alcohol, or illicit drug use must be documented. Tobacco exposure is best quantified using pack-years (number of packs of cigarettes smoked per day, multiplied by the number of years of smoking); as an example, an individual who smoked two packs of cigarettes daily for the prior 10 years is deemed to have a 20 pack-year history of tobacco use. A personal or family history of pseudocholinesterase deficiency and malignant hyperthermia (including a suggestive history such as hyperthermia or rigidity during anesthesia) must be clearly documented to facilitate appropriate planning before the day of surgery. Information from previous anesthetic records may clarify an uncertain history.

A standardized general review of all organ systems should then be performed. For example, patients should be asked whether they ever had problems with their heart, lungs, kidneys, liver, and nervous system. In addition, they should be asked about any history of cancer, anemia, bleeding problems, or prior hospitalization for any reason. The principal emphasis should be on airway abnormalities, anesthesia-related adverse events (personal or family history), as well as symptoms of cardiovascular, pulmonary, hepatic, renal, endocrine, or



(Please check YES or NO and circle specific problems)	**YES**	**NO**
11. Have you or anyone in your family had serious bleeding problems? **(circle)** (prolonged bleeding from nosebleed, gums, tooth extractions, or surgery)	☐	☐
12. Have you had any problems with your blood (anemia, leukemia, sickle cell disease, blood clots, transfusions)?	☐	☐
13. Have you ever had problems with your: **(circle)**	☐	☐
Liver (cirrhosis, hepatitis, jaundice)?	☐	☐
Kidney (stones, failure, dialysis)?	☐	☐
Digestive system (frequent heartburn, hiatus hernia, stomach ulcer)?	☐	☐
Back, neck or jaws (TMJ, rheumatoid arthritis)?	☐	☐
Thyroid gland (underactive or overactive)?	☐	☐
14. Have you ever had: **(circle)**	☐	☐
Seizures, epilepsy, or fits?	☐	☐
Stroke, facial, leg or arm weakness, difficulty speaking?	☐	☐
Cramping pain in your legs with walking?	☐	☐
Problems with hearing, vision or memory?	☐	☐
15. Have you ever been treated for cancer with chemotherapy or radiation therapy? **(circle)**	☐	☐
16. Women: Could you be pregnant?	☐	☐
Last menstrual period began: ______________________		
17. Have you ever had problems with anesthesia or surgery? **(circle)** (severe nausea or vomiting, malignant hyperthermia [in blood relatives or self], prolonged drowsiness, anxiety, breathing difficulties, or problems during placement of a breathing tube)	☐	☐
18. Do you have any chipped or loose teeth, dentures, caps, bridgework, braces, problems opening your mouth, swallowing or choking? **(circle)**	☐	☐
19. Do your physical abilities limit your daily activities?	☐	☐
20. Do you snore?	☐	☐

21. Please list any medical illnesses not noted above:

____

____

____

____

22. Additional comments or questions for nurse or anesthesiologist?

____

____

B

Fig. 31.2, cont'd.

neurologic disease. For example, a report of a patient who has experienced excessive sore throat, dental injuries, or "the need to have a small tube" with previous anesthetic cases may be an indication of previous difficulty with airway management. A history of snoring and daytime somnolence may suggest undiagnosed sleep apnea (see later section on "Obstructive Sleep Apnea"). Any history of chest discomfort (including its duration, precipitating factors, associated symptoms, and relieving factors) could be important. Similarly, a list of previous surgical procedures should be obtained and can help complete the medical history. Finally, records from primary care physicians, specialists, or inpatient admissions may reveal any issues the patient did not recall.

ASSESSMENT OF FUNCTIONAL CAPACITY

The assessment of the patient's cardiopulmonary fitness or functional capacity is an integral component of the preoperative clinical examination. This information is typically used to estimate a patient's risk for major postoperative morbidity or mortality, and to determine whether further preoperative testing is required.[7] Importantly, suboptimal functional capacity is common in many economically advanced countries. For example, only one-fifth of American adults meet federal guidelines for recommended levels of aerobic and strengthening activity.[27] Poor exercise capacity and cardiopulmonary disease have a bidirectional relationship. Specifically, lack of exercise may increase the risk of developing cardiopulmonary disease but preexisting cardiopulmonary disease can also prevent an individual from exercising. For example, patients with peripheral artery disease (PAD) may be limited by intermittent claudication, and patients with ischemic heart disease may be limited by exertional chest discomfort. There is a reasonable body of evidence demonstrating an association between poor preoperative functional capacity and increased perioperative risk. Most of these studies involved objective assessment of preoperative functional capacity using either exercise testing or cardiopulmonary exercise testing (CPET).[28-31] Several other large studies have demonstrated association between very significant preoperative functional impairment (i.e., difficulty or inability to perform activities of daily living) and increased risks of postoperative mortality,[32] cardiovascular complications,[33] and pulmonary complications,[34,35]

The challenge with assessment of preoperative functional capacity pertains to how best to assess it in usual clinical practice. Typically, the anesthesiologist will inquire about a patient's general activity levels during the preoperative interview, and on that basis, make a *subjective assessment* of the patient's functional capacity. Functional capacity is typically quantified in using the metabolic equivalent of task (MET), where one MET is approximately the rate of energy consumption at rest (3.5 mL/kg/min). A proposed scheme for estimating METs based on information from the preoperative interview is presented in Table 31.1. There are important limitations to the usual clinical approach for this integral component of the preoperative evaluation. First, subjective assessment does not accurately estimate the patient's true exercise capacity. In a multicenter prospective cohort study of 1401 patients undergoing major noncardiac surgery, anesthesiologists' subjective assessment had only 19% sensitivity and 95% specificity for identifying patients' inability to attain 4 or more METs during formal exercise testing.[36] In addition, subjective assessment has poor correlation with standardized questionnaires that have been validated for measuring functional capacity.[37,38] Second, subjective assessment has generally shown poor performance in predicting postoperative morbidity and mortality. In a single-center cohort study of 600 surgical patients, patients' self-reported poor exercise capacity (defined as inability to walk four blocks and climb two flights of stairs) was associated with increased risk of serious perioperative complications,[39] but the magnitude of the association was relatively weak (positive likelihood ratio of 1.3 and negative likelihood ratio of 0.6). For context, positive test results should have likelihood ratios greater than 2 to provide clinically meaningful information, whereas negative test results should have likelihood ratios of less than 0.5.[40] Furthermore, in both a multicenter prospective cohort study and single-center retrospective cohort study, subjective assessment was a poor predictor of postoperative mortality and morbidity.[36,41]

To improve preoperative evaluation of functional capacity, anesthesiologists should consider instead using structured questionnaires, such as the Duke Activity Status Index (DASI) (Table 31.2).[42] This 12-item self-administered questionnaire about activities of daily living has demonstrated correlation with gold-standard measures of functional capacity in surgical patients.[36,43] Furthermore, DASI scores have been shown to improve prediction of postoperative cardiac complications following noncardiac surgery.[36] While there is some varying opinion as to how DASI scores should be converted to METs, the original formula is presented below:

TABLE 31.1 Metabolic Equivalents* of Functional Capacity

METs	Equivalent Level of Exercise
1	Eating, working at computer, or dressing
2	Walking down stairs or in your house, or cooking
3	Walking 1 or 2 blocks on level ground
4	Raking leaves, gardening
5	Climbing 1 flight of stairs, dancing, or bicycling
6	Playing golf, or carrying clubs
7	Playing singles tennis
8	Rapidly climbing stairs, or jogging slowly
9	Jumping rope slowly, or moderate cycling
10	Swimming quickly, running or jogging briskly
11	Skiing cross country, or playing full-court basketball
12	Running rapidly for moderate to long distances

*One metabolic equivalent of task (MET) is the amount of oxygen consumed while sitting at rest, and is equivalent to an oxygen consumption of 3.5 mL/min/kg body weight.

Modified from Jette M, Sidney K, Blumchen G. Metabolic equivalents (METS) in exercise testing, exercise prescription, and evaluation of functional capacity. *Clin Cardiol.* 1990;13:555–565.

$$\text{Estimated METS} = \frac{(0.43 \times \text{DASI score}) + 9.6}{3.5}.$$

Other alternatives for estimating functional capacity include simple exercise tests (e.g., 6-minute walk test, incremental shuttle walk test),[44] exercise testing (e.g., electrocardiogram [ECG] exercise testing), or CPET. If using a standard exercise test (i.e., not CPET), extrapolation from the total treadmill time on a Bruce protocol exercise test results in overestimation of true exercise capacity. More importantly, resting left ventricular ejection fraction should not be used as a proxy measure of functional capacity.[45,46]

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

At a minimum, the preanesthetic examination should include vital signs (i.e., arterial blood pressure, heart rate, respiratory rate, oxygen saturation), height, and

TABLE 31.2 Duke Activity Specific Index questionnaire

Can You	Points
1. Take care of yourself, that is, eat dress, bathe, or use the toilet?	2.75
2. Walk indoors, such as around your house?	1.75
3. Walk 200 yards on level ground?	2.75
4. Climb a flight of stairs or walk up a hill?	5.50
5. Run a short distance?	8.00
6. Do light work around the house like dusting or washing dishes?	2.70
7. Do moderate work around the house like vacuuming, sweeping floors, or carrying groceries?	3.50
8. Do heavy work around the house like scrubbing floors or lifting or moving heavy furniture?	8.00
9. Do yard work like raking leaves, weeding, or pushing a power mower?	4.50
10. Have sexual relations?	5.25
11. Participate in moderate recreational activities like golf, bowling, dancing, doubles tennis, or throwing a ball?	6.00
12. Participate in strenuous sports like swimming, singles tennis, football, basketball, or skiing?	7.50
Total score:	

From Hlatky MA, Boineau RE, Higginbotham MB, et al. A brief self-administered questionnaire to determine functional capacity (the Duke Activity Status Index). *Am J Cardiol.* 1989;64:651–654.

TABLE 31.3 Classification Scheme for Body Mass Index

Body Mass Index	Weight Status
ADULTS OVER 20 YEARS OLD	
BMI < 18.5	Underweight
BMI 18.5–24.9	Normal
BMI 25.0–29.9	Overweight
BMI 30.0 and above	Obese
FOR CHILDREN AND TEENS	
BMI-for-age < 5th percentile	Underweight
BMI-for-age 5th percentile to < 85th percentile	Normal
BMI-for-age 85th percentile to < 95th percentile	At risk of overweight
BMI-for-age ≥ 95th percentile	Overweight

BMI, Body mass index.
From Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. http://www.cdc.gov.

weight. Body mass index (BMI), which is calculated based on height and weight, is more informative than weight alone in establishing obesity. A scheme for classifying children and adults based on BMI is presented in Table 31.3. Information pertaining to BMI can help identify individuals at risk for difficulties with airway management, and some chronic diseases (e.g., heart disease, diabetes mellitus, obstructive sleep apnea [OSA]). An ideal body weight should also be calculated,[47] using available formulae such as the Devine equation.[48] Information on ideal body weight can better inform dose selection for some anesthesia-related medications, and settings for positive pressure ventilation. Readily available online calculators can be used to quickly determine both BMI and ideal body weight. Patients often have increased arterial blood pressure during the preoperative visit, even without a prior history of hypertension. This finding may be caused by anxiety, or patients having forgotten to take their usual dose of antihypertensive medication. Thus, a single reading during the preoperative evaluation may not reflect the patient's usual blood pressure control. Repeating the blood pressure measurement or obtaining previous readings, either by obtaining medical records (including prior ambulatory blood pressure testing) or asking patients about their "usual" blood pressure measurements are informative. Ideally, the referral documentation from the patient's primary care physician or surgeon should include information on the patient's usual blood pressure readings.[49]

From an anesthesiologist's perspective, inspection of the airway may be the most important component of the physical examination (see Chapter 44). The components of the airway examination are presented in Box 31.1.[50]

BOX 31.1 Components of the Airway Examination

Length of upper incisors (concerning if relatively long)
Condition of the teeth
Relationship of maxillary incisors to mandibular incisors (concerning if there is prominent overbite)
Ability to advance mandibular incisors in front of maxillary incisors (concerning if unable to do this)
Interincisor or intergum (if edentulous) distance (concerning if < 3 cm)
Visibility of the uvula (concerning if Mallampati class is 3 or more)
Shape of uvula (concerning if highly arched or very narrow)
Presence of heavy facial hair
Compliance of the mandibular space (concerning if it is stiff, indurated, occupied by mass, or nonresilient)
Thyromental distance (concerning if < 6 cm)
Length of the neck
Thickness or circumference of the neck
Range of motion of the head and neck (concerning if unable to touch tip of chin to chest or cannot extend neck)

From: Apfelbaum JL, Hagberg CA, Caplan RA, et al. Practice guidelines for management of the difficult airway: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Management of the Difficult Airway. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:251–270.

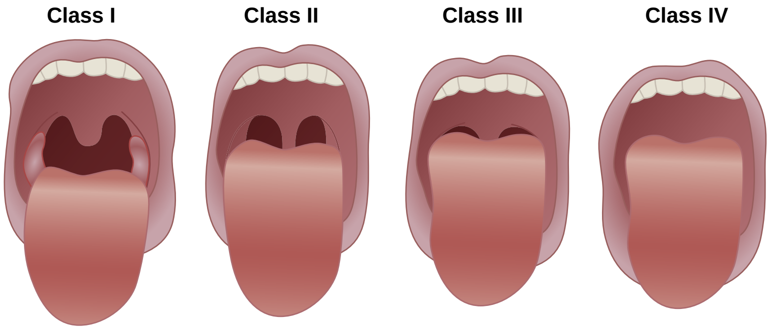


Fig. 31.3 Mallampati classification: class I, soft palate, fauces, entire uvula, pillars; class II, soft palate, fauces, portion of uvula; class III, soft palate, base of uvula; class IV, hard palate only. (From Bair AE, Caravelli R, Tyler K, et al. Feasibility of the preoperative Mallampati airway assessment in emergency department patients. *J Emerg Med*. 2010;38:677–680.)

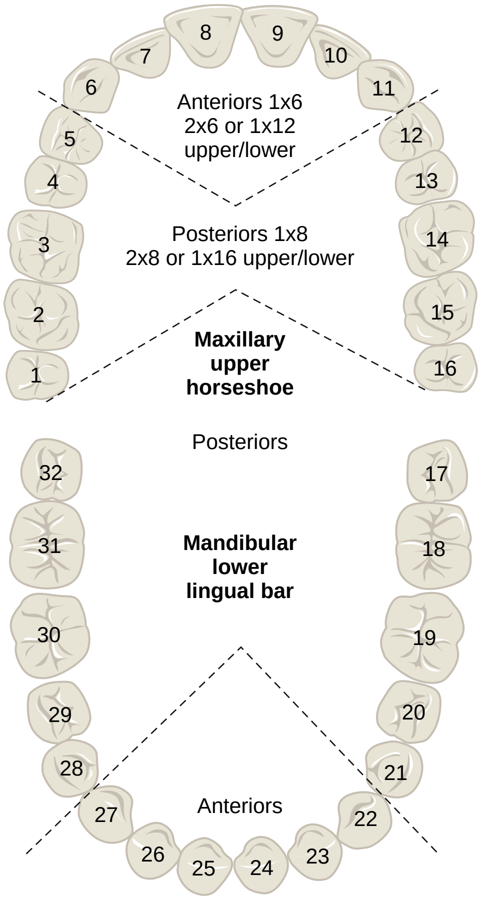


Fig. 31.4 **Tooth numbering.**

Documentation of an airway examination includes the Mallampati score (Fig. 31.3),[51] status of teeth, degree of neck mobility (especially extension), neck circumference (increased size predicts difficulty with laryngoscopy), thyromental distance, body habitus, and pertinent deformities. Because of the potential for dental injuries during anesthesia, any preexisting tooth abnormalities should be documented (Fig. 31.4). In a French prospective cohort study of 1501 patients, the following characteristics were identified as independent predictors of *difficult* bag-mask ventilation: age more than 55 years, BMI more than 26 kg/m^2, absence of teeth, presence of a beard, and a history of snoring.[52] These risk factors are largely consistent with those identified in an American retrospective cohort study of 22,660 patients: age 57 years or more, BMI 30 kg/m^2 or greater, presence of a beard, Mallampati classification III or IV, severely limited mandibular protrusion, and a history of snoring.[53] Other possible risk factors for difficult ventilation include an increased neck circumference, face and neck deformities (i.e., prior surgery, prior radiation, prior trauma, congenital abnormalities), rheumatoid arthritis, Trisomy 21 (Down syndrome), scleroderma, cervical spine disease, or previous cervical spine surgery. The physical examination must be supplemented by examination of previous anesthetic records, especially when there are indications of a potentially difficult airway. Patients with known difficult airways should be encouraged to obtain medical alert identification. When challenging airways are identified, advance planning ensures that necessary equipment and skilled personnel are available on the day of surgery. An evaluation of the heart, lungs, and skin is necessary, as well as further focus on organ systems involved with diseases reported by the patient. This evaluation should include cardiac auscultation, as well as inspection of arterial pulses, veins (peripheral and central), jugular venous distention, ascites, hepatomegaly, and peripheral edema. Inspection of peripheral veins can also help assess the ease of intravenous access. The auscultatory examination should assess for murmurs, abnormal heart sounds (e.g., third or fourth heart sounds), and pulmonary rales. If intravenous access sites are limited, possible central line placement can be discussed with the patient, or arrangements can be made for assistance from interventional radiology. Auscultation for carotid bruits is also important, especially in patients with a history of stroke, transient ischemic attacks (TIAs), or head and neck irradiation. The presence of a carotid bruit significantly increases the likelihood of an important lesion (i.e., 70%-99% stenosis) in both symptomatic or asymptomatic patients, but the absence of a bruit does not rule out carotid stenosis.[26] Examination of the pulmonary system should include both auscultation (i.e., wheezing, decreased breath sounds, abnormal breath sounds) and inspection (i.e., cyanosis, clubbing, accessory muscle use, respiratory effort). A basic screening neurologic examination should document deficits in mental status, speech, gait, cranial nerve function, motor nerve function, and sensory nerve function. For selected patients (e.g., those with deficits, or scheduled to undergo neurosurgery), a more extensive or focused neurologic examination should document preexisting abnormalities that may aid in diagnosis or interfere with positioning. In addition, the definition of a baseline preoperative neurologic state helps determine whether any postoperative deficits represent new deficits versus preexisting abnormalities.

Frailty, Geriatric Conditions, and the Older Surgical Patient

As patients age, the accumulation of comorbid conditions puts them at increased risk for adverse outcomes after surgery.[54] In addition, geriatric-specific risk factors such as functional and cognitive impairment are associated with poor postoperative outcomes.[54] These clinical conditions, which do not fit into discrete disease categories, are often overlooked in routine preoperative assessments. In order to (1) accurately inform patients of their surgical risk and (2) identify targets for preoperative optimization, assessment of geriatric vulnerabilities is essential before surgery. The American College of Surgeons (ACS) and the American Geriatrics Society (AGS) have established best practice guidelines to guide the preoperative assessment of older surgical patients.[55]

GERIATRIC-FOCUSED ASSESSMENT IN THE OLDER SURGICAL PATIENT

Function and Mobility

Preoperative functional decline is associated with morbidity, mortality, and loss of function after surgery.[54] Assessment of function prior to surgery is consequently essential for risk stratification and postdischarge planning in older surgical patients. Activities-of-daily-living (ADLs) assess the ability to perform basic tasks of selfcare, such as dressing, bathing, toileting, movement, continence, and eating. Instrumental ADLs determine an individual's ability to live independently by the ability to complete shopping, laundry, transportation, finances, medications, food preparation, and housekeeping. To determine additional functional vulnerabilities, determination of vision deficits, hearing deficits, and swallowing difficulties should be routine. Mobility impairment can be efficiently screened by enquiring about a history of falls, determining fall risk, and performing a Timed-Up-And-Go test.[56] The Timed-Up-And-Go test involves timing patients while they perform the following tasks in sequence:

1. Stand up from a chair (without using arm rests if possible)
2. Walk 10 feet
3. Turn around and walk back to chair
4. Sit down in chair

In a prospective cohort of older surgical patients, Timed-Up-And-Go test times were associated with risks of postoperative complications and 1-year mortality in a stepwise fashion.[57]

Cognition

Preoperative cognitive impairment is strongly linked to delirium, complications, functional decline, and death after surgery.[54] The Mini-Cog test (available at https://mini-cog.com), which consists of a three-item recall test and clock draw test, is an efficient tool to screen for preoperative cognitive impairment. Additional information about potential cognitive deficits should be elicited from someone who knows the patient well. Importantly, mild cognitive impairment that is not clinically apparent may have a critical impact on decision-making capacity. Patients should be able to describe, in their own words, the essential elements of the consent discussion—including the surgical condition, indications for surgery, risks, benefits, and alternatives to surgery. It is important to note the four legal criteria for medical decision-making capacity, namely that the patient can (1) clearly indicate his/her treatment choice; (2) understand the relevant information communicated by the physician; (3) acknowledge his/her medical condition, treatment options, and expected outcomes; and (4) engage in a rational discussion about treatment options.[55]

Nutrition

In general, most surgeons and anesthesiologists are keenly aware of the role nutritional status plays in recovery after surgery for all surgical patients. The most common adverse events related to poor nutritional status are infectious complications (i.e., surgical site infections, pneumonia, urinary tract infections), wound complications (i.e., dehiscence, anastomotic leaks), and increased length of stay. [54] The ACS National Surgical Quality Improvement Program (NSQIP) and AGS Best Practice Guidelines recommend the following steps to screen for poor nutritional status (older adults with limited material resources are at particular risk for food insecurity).[55]

1. *Document height, weight, and BMI*

A BMI value less than 18.5 kg/m^2 places an individual at elevated risk and should prompt referral for nutritional assessment.

2. *Measure baseline serum albumin and prealbumin concentrations*

Serum albumin concentration less than 30 g/L (in the absence of hepatic or renal dysfunction) should prompt referral for nutritional assessment.

3. *Inquire about unintentional weight loss in the last year*

Unintentional weight loss exceeding 10% to 15% of baseline weight within the prior 6 months is associated with severe nutritional risk and should prompt referral for nutritional assessment.

Frailty

Frailty, which is defined as a state of increased vulnerability to physiologic stressors, is associated with adverse health outcomes after medical and surgical interventions and

TABLE 31.4 Preoperative Assessment and Optimization in the Older Surgical Patient

Domain	Assessment	Preoperative Optimization
Cognition	▪ Mini-Cog Test ▪ Visual and hearing ▪ Impairment ▪ Alcohol abuse ▪ Medication review	▪ Formal assessment by geriatrician for patient identified to have cognitive impairment on screening ▪ Remind patient to bring all assistive devices (glasses, hearing aids) to hospital ▪ Limit use of sedating or psychotropic medications preoperatively
Function	▪ Evaluate ability to perform activities of daily living and instrumental activities of daily living ▪ Obtain history of falls ▪ Timed up and go test	▪ Refer patients with functional deficiencies or history of falls for formal evaluation by a physical therapist before surgery ▪ Exercise education ▪ Obtain assistive devices ▪ Plan for in-hospital and postdischarge rehabilitation therapy
Nutrition	▪ Document body mass index ▪ Measure albumin and prealbumin ▪ Query unintentional weight loss	▪ Patients at severe malnutritional deficit should be referred to dietician for formal assessment ▪ Preoperative nutritional supplementation and nutrition education

From Oresanya LB, Lyons WL, Finlayson E. Preoperative assessment of the older patient: a narrative review. *JAMA*. 2014;311:2110–2120.

limited life expectancy.[58] Numerous validated instruments measuring frailty are in current use in research and clinical practice. There are two primary models of frailty—the frailty phenotype and the deficit accumulation model. The frailty phenotype described by Fried and colleagues is based on the identification of traits associated with the occurrence of disease, hospitalization, falls, disability, and death in a large prospective cohort study.[59] This study defined the determinants of frailty as weight loss, exhaustion, physical activity, walk time, and grip strength. The deficit accumulation model of aging (based on data from the Canadian Study of Health and Aging) identified 92 signs, symptoms, functional impairments, and laboratory abnormalities that are proportionally weighted into a frailty index for predicting mortality.[60]

While numerous studies have demonstrated the association of patient frailty with adverse surgical outcomes,[54,61-64] the incorporation of a patient's level of frailty into routine clinical practice has not been broadly implemented. Many frailty instruments require special training, input of laboratory values or clinical data, and a fair amount of time to complete; hence, they are impractical in a busy clinical setting. A recent survey of surgical oncologists reported that although most surgeons expressed interest in preoperative optimization for older patients, only 6% currently perform geriatric assessments in their older patients.[65] Factors contributing to the low level of adoption include perceptions regarding the amount of time required to assess for vulnerabilities, and lack of specific programs designed to address them within typical clinical practices. To address this gap, several investigators have validated efficient strategies to measure frailty in clinical practice. Robinson and colleagues developed two alternative frailty assessment definitions for surgical patients,[66,67] which were

- Mini-Cog score of 3 or less, serum albumin concentration of 30 g/L or less, one or more falls in the prior 6 months, and hematocrit under 35%.
- Timed-Up-And-Go test 15 or more seconds, activity-of-daily-living dependence, and Charlson comorbidity index score 3 or greater.[68]

Frailty identified with the Edmonton Frail Scale (EFS) has been shown to be associated with adverse outcomes after surgery.[61] The EFS can be administered by an individual with no formal medical education, and has been validated in comparison to the geriatric specialist's comprehensive geriatric assessment.[69]

Additional Considerations

Anxiety, depression, substance abuse, and social isolation are common underdiagnosed conditions in older adults. Careful screening can identify these potential barriers to recovery, safe discharge after surgery, and maintenance of independence. Up to 11% of the population 71 years of age or more in the United States suffer from depression.[70] The Patient Health Questionnaire-2 is an efficient instrument to screen for depression that includes only two questions: "*In the past 12 months, have you ever had a time when you felt sad, blue, depressed, or down for most of the time for at least two weeks?*" and "*In the past 12 months, have you ever had a time, lasting at least two weeks, when you didn't care about the things that you usually care about or when you didn't enjoy the things that you usually enjoy?*" Among individuals aged 65 years or more, 13% of males and 8% of females consume at least two alcoholic drinks per day.[71] Alcohol and substance abuse are associated with increased rates of postoperative mortality and complications including pneumonia, sepsis, wound infection and disruption, and prolonged length of stay.[72] Consequently, the ACS NSQIP and AGS recommend screening for alcohol and substance abuse among older individuals with the modified CAGE (acronym of four clinical interview questions: cutting down, annoyance by criticism, guilty feeling, and eye-openers) questionnaire (see section on "Patients With a History of Substance Abuse").

PREOPERATIVE OPTIMIZATION FOR FRAIL GERIATRIC PATIENTS (TABLE 31.4)

One goal of the preoperative assessment of elderly surgical patients is to identify potentially modifiable risk factors—such as malnutrition, poor physical function, anxiety, and social isolation—in order to optimize surgical outcomes. Several recent geriatric *prehabilitation* models have emerged to help meet this need, with some demonstrating promising results. One of the first of such programs was the Proactive Care of Older People undergoing surgery (POPS) before-and-after study in United Kingdom.[73] The overarching aim of this project was to decrease complications and hospital length of stay among at-risk older adults undergoing elective surgery. The authors performed a structured geriatric team intervention that identified at-risk patients, and then facilitated coordinated multidisciplinary optimization of geriatric vulnerabilities. The interventions included preoperative home visits by occupational and physical therapists, social worker inputs, nutrition education, and relaxation techniques. In addition to preoperative optimization, interdisciplinary teams participated in daily inpatient rounds, weekly multidisciplinary meetings, and bi-weekly ward rounds led by a consultant or clinical nurse specialist. Compared to historical controls, surgical patients who received the POPS intervention experienced fewer postoperative complications (e.g., pneumonia, delirium), improved pain control, lower rates of delayed mobilization, lower rates of inappropriate urinary catheter use, and shorter hospital length of stay.

Similar findings were observed in the more recently reported Perioperative Optimization of Senior Health study, which was another before-and-after study.[74] This preoperative interdisciplinary clinic evaluated at-risk patients (either aged age ≥ 80 years, or aged ≥ 65 years with concurrent geriatric vulnerability) and designed targeted optimization. Compared to historical controls, the combination of geriatric prehabilitation and inpatient geriatric comanagement were associated with reduced hospital length of stay, reduced readmission rates, and increased rates of discharge to home with self-care. Another example of a promising prehabilitation program is the Michigan Surgical Home and Optimization Program,[75] which is a structured home-based preoperative training program with physical, nutritional, and psychological interventions. The intervention included (1) a home-based walking program with daily reminders and feedback; (2) incentive spirometry instructions starting 1 week prior to surgery; (3) education on nutrition, stress management, and care planning; and (4) resources for smoking cessation, when appropriate. Compared to matched historical controls, patients enrolled in the program experienced reductions in both hospital length of stay and healthcare costs. While promising, these studies do have methodological weakness as before-and-after studies, as opposed to methodologically more robust parallel arm randomized trials, cluster randomized trials, or stepped-wedge trials (see Chapter 90). Nonetheless, the consistency in findings across the studies is supportive of the notion that attention to preoperative and perioperative assessment in the older population can result in improved postoperative outcomes that benefit patients, hospitals, and healthcare systems.

DECISION MAKING FOR SURGERY IN OLDER ADULTS

The critical initial step in surgical decision making for the older patient is an assessment of the patient's decision-making capacity. Among older adults, only about 3% lack medical decision-making capacity. However, among older adults with mild cognitive impairment, this proportion is as high as 20%.[76] A Mini-Cog exam (see section on "Cognition") is an efficient way to screen for cognitive impairment in the surgical setting. If the patient does not have capacity, treatment goals and choices should be discussed with the patient's surrogate, with patient involvement as appropriate. Even cognitively intact patients may have difficulty grasping the risks and tradeoffs involved in decisions for surgery. The "teach-back" method (i.e., asking patients to communicate back information about their diagnosis, treatment plan, and potential risks of treatment) may be useful to confirm that the risks, expected benefits, and alternatives to surgery are fully understood. Various resources are available to aid in using the teach-back method (e.g., http://www.teachbacktraining.org).

Collaborative decision making is essential in older adults with limited life expectancy. Rather than a traditional conversation that focuses on the process of correcting the underlying surgical condition, the conversation should be driven by a focus on the older adult's overarching health goals. Using open-ended questions, physicians elicit the patient's global healthcare goals that may prioritize (1) life prolongation; (2) function and independence; (3) maintenance of cognition; or (4) comfort. Further discussion should be framed by the patient's most important health goal. A frank, realistic, and granular conversation about the ability of surgery to satisfy healthcare goals and priorities is essential. Invasive treatments should only be considered if there is a realistic possibility that overarching health goals can be achieved. These goals, however, are often dynamic and must be revisited as conditions change. Often, primary physicians who have longitudinal relationships with patients can provide important insight into their patient's health goals and should be included in this important deliberation. To assist in high-risk surgical decision making, preoperative palliative care consultation should be considered in individuals with poor prognoses who are electing to undergo surgery, particularly if they have a life expectancy of less than 6 months.

Preoperative Evaluation of Patients With Coexisting Disease

For some conditions commonly seen in the preanesthetic assessment clinic, preoperative optimization, testing, and intervention may be important (see also Chapter 32). Identification of these comorbid conditions might be an opportunity for the anesthesiologist to intervene to decrease perioperative risk. These conditions are best managed before the day of surgery, thus allowing ample time for thoughtful evaluation, consultation, and planning.

CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE

Cardiovascular complications are serious perioperative adverse events that account for about 45% of all deaths within 30 days after major noncardiac surgery.[77] These events occur relatively frequently. For example, the multicenter Vascular Events in Noncardiac Surgery Patients Cohort Evaluation prospective cohort study found a 4% risk of myocardial infarction, 17% risk of prognostically important myocardial injury, and 0.7% risk of acute heart failure during the 30 days following major noncardiac surgery.[78] Evidence-based preoperative cardiovascular assessment guidelines have now been published in several countries, including the 2014 American College of Cardiology (ACC) and American Heart Association (AHA) guidelines,[7] 2014 European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and ESA guidelines,[9] 2017 Canadian Cardiovascular Society (CCS) guidelines,[8] 2017 Brazilian Society of Cardiology guidelines,[79] and 2014 Japanese Circulation Society guidelines.[80] While the guidelines provide generally similar guidance, there are some important differences that will be highlighted in the sections below.

Hypertension

Based on revised 2017 ACC/AHA guidelines, hypertension is defined as a blood pressure greater than 130/80 based on appropriately measured arterial blood pressure.[81] About 45% of adults in the United States have hypertension,[82] with a similar prevalence in other countries. While most individuals with hypertension have primary (or essential) hypertension, there are several important causes of secondary hypertension, including primary renal disease, OSA, pheochromocytoma, renovascular hypertension, Cushing syndrome, hyperthyroidism, and coarctation of the aorta. Hypertension leads to significantly increased risks of left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH), heart failure, ischemic heart disease, chronic kidney disease (CKD), ischemic stroke, intracerebral hemorrhage, and PAD. The duration and severity of hypertension are highly correlated with subsequent end-organ damage, morbidity, and mortality. These risks appear to increase once blood pressure exceeds 117/75, with each subsequent 20 mm Hg increase in systolic blood pressure and 10 mm Hg increase in diastolic blood pressure being associated with a two-fold increase in the risk of stroke and cardiovascular death.[83] In the perioperative setting, hypertension is associated with increased risks of postoperative death and myocardial infarction, but the magnitude of this association is relatively weak (odds ratio 1.35; 95% confidence limits, 1.17-1.56).[84]

In patients with hypertension, the goals of preoperative evaluation are to identify any secondary causes of hypertension, presence of other cardiovascular risk factors (e.g., smoking, diabetes mellitus), and evidence of end-organ damage. For example, paroxysmal hypertension or hypertension in young individuals should prompt a search for hyperthyroidism, illicit drug use (e.g., cocaine, anabolic steroids), and coarctation of the aorta. Similarly, a history of paroxysmal hypertension associated with episodic tachycardia and palpitations should raise suspicions about an underlying pheochromocytoma (see next section). The physical examination should focus on vital signs (including blood pressure measured in both arms), thyroid gland, peripheral pulses, and cardiovascular system (including bruits and signs of intravascular volume overload). Additional specialized testing is directed by the initial clinical evaluation. For example, patients with long-standing, severe, or poorly controlled hypertension should undergo an ECG and blood sampling to measure creatinine concentration. Individuals on diuretic antihypertensives (e.g., chlorthalidone, hydrochlorothiazide) may require evaluation of electrolytes. Patients with suspected hyperthyroidism will require thyroid function tests.

While preoperative hypertension is associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular complication,[84] this association is generally not evident for systolic blood pressure values less than 180 mm Hg or diastolic blood pressure values less than 110 mm Hg. Additionally, there is no compelling data that delaying surgery to optimize blood pressure control will result in improved outcomes. Accordingly, some international practice guidelines support proceeding with surgery if the systolic blood pressure is less than 180 mm Hg and diastolic blood pressure is less than 110 mm Hg.[9,49] Usual antihypertensive medication treatment should be continued in these patients during the perioperative period. For patients with severe hypertension (i.e., diastolic blood pressure > 110 mm Hg or systolic blood pressure > 180 mm Hg), anesthesiologists should weigh the potential benefits of delaying surgery to optimize antihypertensive treatment against the risks of delaying the procedure. In general, all long-term antihypertensive treatment should be continued up to the day of surgery, with the possible exception of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEIs) and angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs). Administration of these medications within 24 hours before surgery is consistently associated with increased risks of intraoperative hypotension,[85] and possibly associated with elevated risks of postoperative myocardial injury.[86] Accordingly, it is reasonable to withhold these medications for 24 hours before surgery, provided that they are restarted postoperatively once patients are hemodynamically stable. Importantly, failure to resume ACEI and ARB therapy postoperatively is itself associated with adverse outcomes.[87,88]

Even if surgery is not necessarily delayed to facilitate improved blood pressure control, the preanesthesia evaluation should also be viewed as an excellent opportunity to alter long-term consequences of diseases. Thus, appropriate postsurgery referrals should be made to facilitate improved long-term management of hypertension.

Ischemic Heart Disease

Ischemic heart disease (IHD) afflicts about 16.5 million adults in the United States, and 111 million people worldwide.[27] It also accounts for about 13% of all deaths, both in the United States and worldwide (http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs317/en/).[27] While death rates attributable to IHD are declining in many high-income countries,[89] other regions continue to experience high or increasing rates of IHD mortality. IHD mediates adverse effects because of its immediate impact (e.g., myocardial infarction, sudden cardiac death) and related diseases (e.g., heart failure, atrial fibrillation). Therapy for IHD includes antiplatelet therapy (e.g., aspirin, adenosine diphosphate receptor [$P2Y_{12}$] inhibitor), renin angiotensin system inhibitors (e.g., ACEI, ARB), β-adrenergic blockers, other antianginal therapies (e.g., calcium channel blocker, nitrates), lipid reducing agents (e.g., statins), and coronary revascularization with either coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) or percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI). Based on recent randomized controlled trials, several newer types of medical therapy for IHD may be increasingly used, including novel antiinflammatory therapy (e.g., canakinumab),[90] low-dose direct oral anticoagulant (DOAC) therapy,[91] and antibody-based lipid-lowering agents.[92] Coronary revascularization—specifically with CABG—improves survival compared to medical therapy (pooled relative risk 0.80, 95% limits 0.70-0.91) in several high-risk IHD states,[93] namely left main coronary artery stenosis, triple-vessel coronary artery disease, and two-vessel coronary artery disease with proximal left anterior descending artery stenosis.[94] When PCI is used instead for these high-risk states, PCI with a newer generation drug eluting stent (DES) may also confer a survival benefit, albeit with marginal statistical significance.[93] In patients who meet indications for revascularization, CABG improves survival more than PCI in multivessel disease that is associated with either diabetes mellitus or higher coronary artery lesion complexity.[95] Notably, aside from these high-risk states (e.g., triple vessel coronary artery disease), PCI has not been shown to convincingly improve survival in stable IHD.[96]

In the perioperative setting, IHD is a risk factor for myocardial infarction and a prognostically important myocardial injury after surgery.[97,98] It is also associated with elevated risks of 30-day postoperative mortality,[99] especially if a patient had experienced a myocardial infarction, acute coronary syndrome, or severe angina (i.e., occurring at effort levels less than walking one to two blocks or climbing one flight of stairs) within the 6 months preceding surgery.[77,78] Surgical patients with IHD may also have important comorbidities with important perioperative implications, such as heart failure and atrial fibrillation (see sections of "Heart Failure" and "Atrial Fibrillation"). The goals of preoperative evaluation are to (1) ascertain whether the patient has previously undiagnosed significant IHD; (2) characterize any known IHD with respect to severity, functional limitations, therapy, and prior investigations; (3) determine whether additional preoperative specialized testing or consultations are warranted; and (4) identity opportunities for reducing perioperative risk related to IHD. In the case of patients without known IHD, evaluation of traditional risk factors for IHD (i.e., smoking, hypertension, increased age, male sex, hyperlipidemia, family history) is important when significance of suspicious symptoms (e.g., chest discomfort, dyspnea) or abnormal ECG. In patients with known IHD, the anesthesiologist should characterize any history of chest discomfort (i.e., pain, pressure, tightness) with respect to its duration, precipitating factors, associated symptoms, and relieving factors. Exertional dyspnea may represent an angina equivalent but is also a nonspecific finding that might be related to physical deconditioning, pulmonary disease, or heart failure. It is useful to classify any angina based on the CCS grading scale:

- CCS class I: Ordinary physical activity (e.g., walking, climbing stairs) does not cause angina. Angina with strenuous or rapid or prolonged exertion at work or recreation
- CCS class II: Slight limitation of ordinary activity. No angina is precipitated by walking more than two blocks on level ground or climbing more than one flight of stairs at a normal pace and in normal conditions. Angina is only precipitated by walking or climbing stairs rapidly, walking uphill, and walking or stair climbing under challenging conditions (e.g., after meals, in cold, in wind, under emotional stress, during the few hours after awakening).
- CCS class III: Marked limitation of ordinary physical activity. Angina precipitated by walking one or two blocks on level ground and climbing one flight of stairs in normal conditions and at normal pace.
- CCS class IV: Inability to carry on any physical activity without discomfort. Angina may be present at rest.

Patients with risk factors for IHD or suspicious symptoms may require an ECG, especially before intermediate-risk or high-risk surgical procedures.[9] Routine preoperative ECGs are not indicated (Box 31.2), especially in asymptomatic patients without known cardiovascular disease or risk factors.[7] While specific preoperative abnormalities are associated with increased perioperative cardiac risk (e.g., bundle branch blocks [BBBs]), these abnormalities do not enable clinicians to identify patients with increased perioperative cardiac risk more accurately when considered in combination with known clinical risk factors.[100] Establishing a baseline for postoperative comparison is often the most important reason to obtain a preoperative ECG; however, this decision should be based on the patient's likely risk of postoperative cardiovascular complications. Thus, a baseline ECG is unlikely to be helpful in an individual at very low risk for postoperative cardiac events. If a previous ECG is available from the previous 3 months and there has been no intervening change in clinical status, a repeat ECG is likely not needed.[7] Other typical preoperative laboratory tests that may be considered for patients with known or suspected IHD include creatinine and hemoglobin concentrations. Both chronic renal insufficiency and anemia are risk factors for perioperative cardiac complications.[97,101,102] In addition, anemia can modify the effects of β-adrenergic blockade in surgical patients, with evidence of increased harm when used in patients with perioperative anemia or significant bleeding.[103,104]

BOX 31.2 Recommendations for Preoperative Resting 12-Lead Electrocardiogram

Class IIa Recommendation: It Is Reasonable to Perform the Procedure

Preoperative resting 12-lead ECG is reasonable for patients with known IHD, significant arrhythmia, PAD, CVD, or other significant structural heart disease (except if undergoing low-risk surgical procedures).

Class IIb Recommendation: The Procedure May Be Considered

Preoperative resting 12-lead ECG may be considered for asymptomatic patients without known coronary heart disease, except for those undergoing low-risk surgical procedures.

Class III Recommendation: The Procedure Should *Not* Be Performed Because It Is Not Helpful

Routine preoperative resting 12-lead ECG is not useful for asymptomatic patients undergoing low-risk surgical procedures.

CVD, Cerebrovascular disease; *ECG,* electrocardiogram; *IHD,* ischemic heart disease; *PAD,* peripheral artery disease.

From Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation.* 2014;130:e278–e333.

Preoperative cardiac risk assessment algorithms have been proposed by several practice guidelines, including the ACC/AHA guidelines (Fig. 31.5)[7] and the CCS guidelines (Fig. 31.6).[8] These algorithms have somewhat differing target populations. The ACC/AHA algorithm encompasses patients with known IHD or associated risk factors who are having noncardiac surgery. The CCS guidelines focus on adults (≥18 years old) having inpatient surgery who are either 45 years or older, or who have significant cardiovascular disease (i.e., IHD, cerebrovascular disease [CVD], PAD, heart failure, severe pulmonary hypertension, severe obstructive cardiac valvular disease). While the algorithms have many fundamental similarities, they also have several key differences, which will be discussed below. Importantly, the algorithms should always be viewed as flexible guidance frameworks that should be tailored, as needed, to individual patients. The initial step in these risk assessment algorithms is consideration of the urgency of the planned surgery. The 2014 ACC/AHA guidelines define an *emergency* procedure as one where life or limb would be threatened if surgery did not proceed within 6 hours or less; an *urgent* procedure as one where life or limb would be threatened if surgery did not proceed within 6 to 24 hours; and a *time-sensitive* procedure as one where delays exceeding 1 to 6 weeks would adversely affect outcomes (e.g., most oncology surgery).[7] Based on this classification scheme, patients should proceed directly to any required emergency surgery without further preoperative cardiac assessment.[7,8] For these individuals, the focus should be on surveillance (e.g., serial cardiac enzymes, hemodynamic monitoring, serial ECGs) and early treatment of any postoperative cardiovascular complications.

In the second step, active cardiac conditions—such as acute coronary syndromes, decompensated heart failure, severe valvular disease (e.g., critical aortic stenosis), suspected significant pulmonary hypertension, or significant arrhythmias (e.g., atrial fibrillation with rapid ventricular rate, sustained ventricular tachycardia)—should be ruled

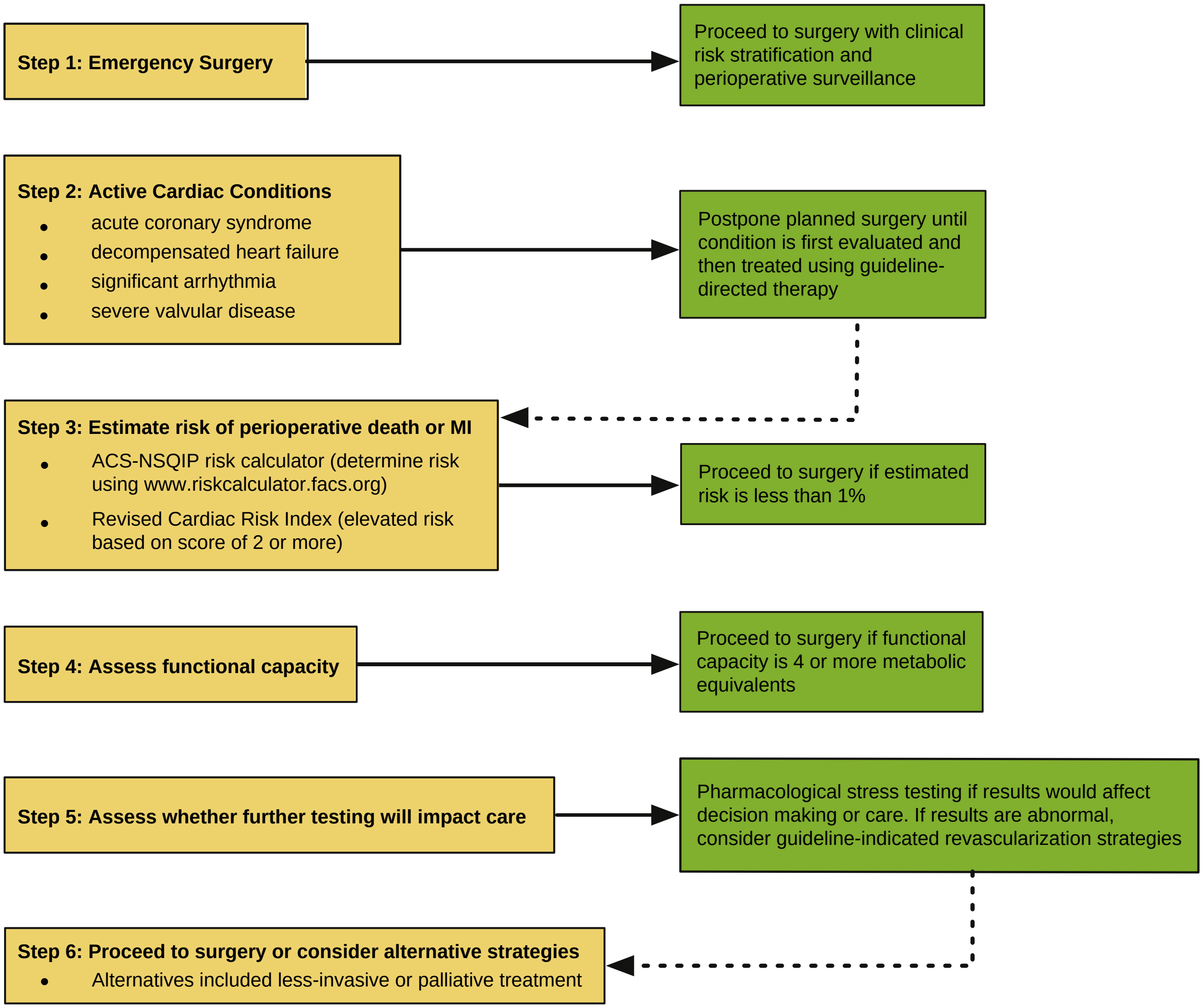

Step 1: Emergency Surgery
Proceed to surgery with clinical risk stratification and perioperative surveillance
Step 2: Active Cardiac Conditions
acute coronary syndrome
decompensated heart failure
significant arrhythmia
severe valvular disease
Postpone planned surgery until condition is first evaluated and then treated using guideline-directed therapy
Step 3: Estimate risk of perioperative death or MI
ACS-NSQIP risk calculator (determine risk using www.riskcalculator.facs.org)
Revised Cardiac Risk Index (elevated risk based on score of 2 or more)
Proceed to surgery if estimated risk is less than 1%
Step 4: Assess functional capacity
Proceed to surgery if functional capacity is 4 or more metabolic equivalents
Step 5: Assess whether further testing will impact care
Pharmacological stress testing if results would affect decision making or care. If results are abnormal, consider guideline-indicated revascularization strategies
Step 6: Proceed to surgery or consider alternative strategies
Alternatives included less-invasive or palliative treatment

Fig. 31.5 Simplified cardiac evaluation algorithm for noncardiac surgery proposed by the 2014 American Heart Association and American College of Cardiology guidelines. *ACS-NSQIP*, American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Program; *MI*, myocardial infarction. (From Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;130:e278–e333.)

out in patients not requiring emergency surgery.[7] If any of these conditions are present, they must be initially treated, after which the original planned surgery can be reconsidered based on its risk-benefit balance. When assessing whether a patient has an active cardiac condition, the anesthesiologist should inquire about any recent myocardial infarction. In a study of about 560,000 patients who underwent major noncardiac surgery in the United States,[105] the risk of 30-day postoperative myocardial infarction or death was significantly elevated when surgery was performed within 60 days after a prior myocardial infarction. Thus, the 2014 ACC/AHA guidelines recommend deferring nonurgent surgery until 60 days after a recent myocardial infarction.[7]

In the third step, perioperative cardiac risk should be estimated based on readily available clinical information that encompasses both patient-level (e.g., comorbidities) and surgery-level (e.g., procedure type) characteristics. The 2014 ACC/AHA guidelines and 2014 ESC/ESA guidelines recommend using clinical risk indices, namely the Revised Cardiac Risk Index (RCRI) (Table 31.5),[97] ACS NSQIP surgical risk calculator (https://riskcalculator.facs.org/RiskCalculator),[32] or NSQIP Myocardial Infarction and Cardiac Arrest risk calculator.[33] If these indices find the estimated risk of postoperative myocardial infarction or death to be less than 1% (consistent with RCRI ≤ 1), the ACC/AHA guidelines recommend that patients simply proceed directly to surgery.[7] The 2017 CCS guidelines suggest using the RCRI, as opposed to the NSQIP risk calculators, largely because the NSQIP-risk models were developed using a database without routine postoperative troponin surveillance, implying that the predicted absolute myocardial infarction rate might underestimate the true rate by threefold,[98] and have not been externally validated.[8] In addition, the NSQIP risk calculators have largely not been externally validated. By comparison, the RCRI was derived in a cohort study with standardized cardiac biomarker surveillance,[97] and also has undergone extensive external validation.[106] Nonetheless, the RCRI has limitations, especially with respect to inadequate consideration of variations in cardiac risk across different surgical procedures.[107] The CCS guidelines recommend that patients proceed directly to surgery if they meet all the following criteria: age over 65 years, RCRI score of 1 or greater, and no history of significant cardiovascular disease (i.e., coronary artery disease, CVD, PAD, heart failure, pulmonary hypertension, or severe obstructive cardiac valvular disease).

In the fourth and subsequent steps, there are substantial differences between the American versus Canadian preoperative risk assessment algorithms. The ACC/AHA algorithm recommends that a patient with a functional capacity

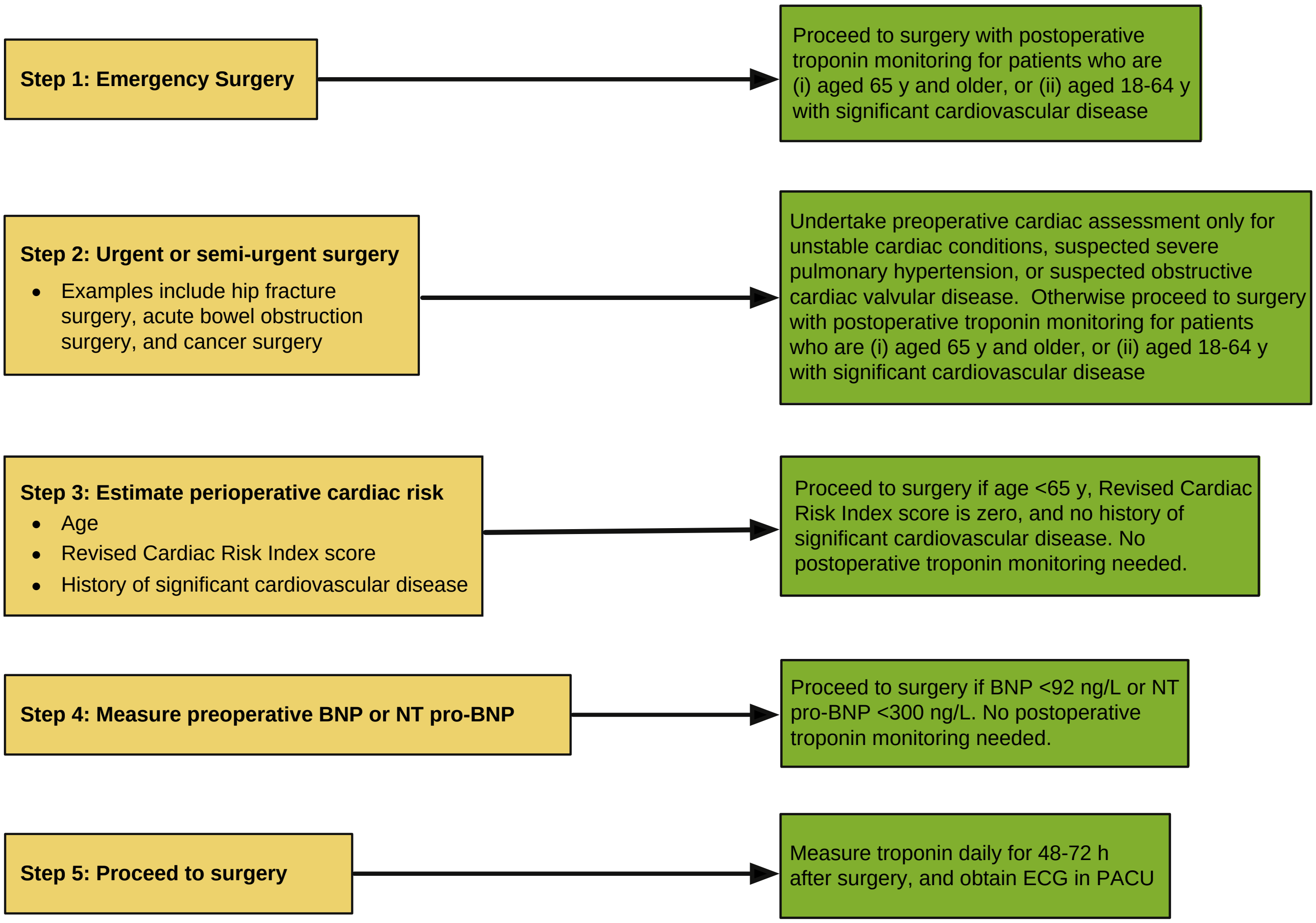

Step 1: Emergency Surgery
Proceed to surgery with postoperative troponin monitoring for patients who are (i) aged 65 y and older, or (ii) aged 18-64 y with significant cardiovascular disease
Step 2: Urgent or semi-urgent surgery
• Examples include hip fracture surgery, acute bowel obstruction surgery, and cancer surgery
Undertake preoperative cardiac assessment only for unstable cardiac conditions, suspected severe pulmonary hypertension, or suspected obstructive cardiac valvular disease. Otherwise proceed to surgery with postoperative troponin monitoring for patients who are (i) aged 65 y and older, or (ii) aged 18-64 y with significant cardiovascular disease
Step 3: Estimate perioperative cardiac risk
• Age
• Revised Cardiac Risk Index score
• History of significant cardiovascular disease
Proceed to surgery if age <65 y, Revised Cardiac Risk Index score is zero, and no history of significant cardiovascular disease. No postoperative troponin monitoring needed.
Step 4: Measure preoperative BNP or NT pro-BNP
Proceed to surgery if BNP <92 ng/L or NT pro-BNP <300 ng/L. No postoperative troponin monitoring needed.
Step 5: Proceed to surgery
Measure troponin daily for 48-72 h after surgery, and obtain ECG in PACU

Fig. 31.6 Simplified cardiac evaluation algorithm for noncardiac surgery proposed by the 2017 Canadian Cardiovascular Society guidelines. *BNP,* Brain natriuretic peptide; *ECG,* electrocardiogram; *NT pro-BNP,* N-terminal-pro-BNP; *PACU,* postanesthesia care unit. (From Duceppe E, Parlow J, MacDonald P, et al. Canadian Cardiovascular Society guidelines on perioperative cardiac risk assessment and management for patients who undergo noncardiac surgery. *Can J Cardiol.* 2017;33:17–32.)

of 4 or more METs should proceed directly to surgery.[7] This guidance is largely based on older studies of preoperative exercise testing,[30,31] and more recent studies of preoperative CPET,[108,109] which found an association between poor functional capacity and elevated perioperative cardiac risk. The major clinical challenge with this recommendation pertains to how best to estimate patients' preoperative functional capacity in clinical practice (see earlier section on "Assessment of Functional Capacity"). Simple subjective assessment of functional capacity based on the usual preoperative history does not accurately estimate true exercise capacity,[36] and does not accurately predict postoperative cardiovascular complications.[36,41] Thus, in clinical practice, anesthesiologists should generally use a structured questionnaire, especially the DASI (see Table 31.2),[42] with consideration of formal exercise testing if the results would alter management. Notably, DASI scores improve the accuracy of prediction of cardiac complications following noncardiac surgery beyond that achieved with the RCRI alone.[36]

TABLE 31.5 Components of the Revised Cardiac Risk Index and Expected Cardiac Event Risk

Components of Revised Cardiac Risk Index*	Points Assigned
High-risk surgery (intraperitoneal, intrathoracic, or suprainguinal vascular procedure)	1
Ischemic heart disease (by any diagnostic criteria)	1
History of congestive heart failure	1
History of cerebrovascular disease	1
Diabetes mellitus requiring insulin	1
Creatinine > 2.0 mg/dL (176 μmol/L)	1
Revised Cardiac Risk Index Score	**Risk of Major Cardiac Events†,‡**
0	0.4%
1	1.0%
2	2.4%
≥3	5.4%

*Data from Lee TH, Marcantonio ER, Mangione CM, et al. Derivation and prospective validation of a simple index for prediction of cardiac risk of major noncardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 1999;100:1043–1049.

†Data from Devereaux OJ, Goldman L, Cook DJ, et al. Perioperative cardiac events in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a review of the magnitude of the problem, the pathophysiology of the events and methods to estimate and communicate risk. *CMAJ*. 2005;173:627–634.

‡Defined as cardiac death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, or nonfatal cardiac arrest.

If a patient is deemed to have either low (i.e., < 4 METs) or uncertain functional capacity, the AHA/ACC guidelines recommend consideration of exercise or pharmacologic cardiac stress testing, if the results could plausibly inform decision making or clinical care. Patients with high-risk abnormal test results can be considered for subsequent coronary angiography, and possibly revascularization (if usual nonoperative indications for coronary revascularization are met). Importantly, the ACC/AHA guidelines emphasize the importance of considering alternative less invasive or nonsurgical treatment for the underlying condition, especially in patients found to be at very high cardiac risk.

As opposed to assessing functional capacity, the CCS guidelines recommend preoperative risk assessment with cardiac biomarkers,[8] specifically brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) or N-terminal-pro-BNP (NT pro-BNP). These neurohormones are secreted by the cardiac ventricles in response to stretch or ischemia of the atrial and ventricular walls. In the nonoperative setting, elevated natriuretic peptide concentrations are powerful markers of cardiovascular risk in individuals with IHD or associated risk factors, as well as in individuals with heart failure.[110] Interestingly, there is only slight-to-fair correlation between plasma levels of these biomarkers and measures of exercise capacity,[36] suggesting that natriuretic peptides measure a different patient characteristic. An individual patient data meta-analysis of 18 studies in noncardiac surgery found that preoperative natriuretic peptide concentrations can differentiate patients based on their perioperative cardiac risk (Table 31.6).[111] In general, BNP concentrations less than 100 ng/L or NT pro-BNP concentrations less than 300 ng/L are indicative of a patient at very low perioperative cardiac risk. Conversely, BNP concentrations above 300 ng/L or NT pro-BNP concentrations above 900 ng/L are indicative of a patient at high cardiac risk. Importantly, natriuretic peptides also improve the accuracy of risk estimation beyond that achieved with traditional clinical risk factors alone.[111] The CCS guidelines recommend that preoperative BNP or NT pro-BNP testing be used to inform the required level of postoperative surveillance. Specifically, they recommend

TABLE 31.6 Risk of Death or Myocardial Infarction After Noncardiac Surgery Based on Preoperative Brain Natriuretic Peptide or N-Terminal-Pro-Brain Natriuretic Peptide Concentrations

Preoperative BNP Concentration (ng/L)	Likelihood Ratio* for Death or MI	Preoperative NT pro-BNP Concentration (ng/L)	Likelihood Ratio* for Death or MI
0–99	0.6	0–300	0.4
100–250	1.4	301–900	1.5
>250	3.9	901–3000	2.7
		>3000	5.0

*Positive test results should have likelihood ratios > 2 to provide clinically meaningful information, whereas negative test results should have likelihood ratios of < 0.5.

BNP, Brain natriuretic peptide; *MI,* myocardial infarction; *NT pro-BNP,* N-terminal-pro-BNP.

From Rodseth RN, Biccard BM, Le Manach Y, et al. The prognostic value of pre-operative and post-operative B-type natriuretic peptides in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. B-type natriuretic peptide and N-terminal fragment of pro-B-type natriuretic peptide: a systematic review and individual patient data meta-analysis. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2014;63:170–180.

routine troponin surveillance for 48 to 72 hours after surgery in patients with elevated preoperative BNP (≥92 ng/L) or NT pro-BNP (≥300 ng/L) concentrations. No other preoperative testing or intervention is recommended based on the results of preoperative cardiac biomarker testing.

Although current evidence pertaining to risk assessment with preoperative natriuretic peptides is promising, there are also some important limitations. First, the event rate for death or myocardial infarction in this individual patient data meta-analysis was about 11%, which is considerably higher than would be expected in usual clinical practice. This high event rate is explained, in part, by the intermediate-to-high risk characteristics of the study sample, and by two large included studies that defined cardiovascular complications based on elevated troponin concentrations alone (as opposed to less frequent myocardial infarction events).[112,113] Therefore, further research remains needed to determine biomarker threshold levels and prognostic accuracy in generalizable study samples. Second, while elevated natriuretic peptide concentrations are indicative of elevated perioperative cardiac risk, they do not indicate underlying pathophysiological mechanism. Aside from ischemia and heart failure, other prognostically important conditions can cause elevated natriuretic peptide concentrations, including right ventricular dysfunction, cardiac valvular disease, and atrial fibrillation. Thus, further specialized testing (e.g., echocardiography) may be helpful in some patients with high preoperative BNP or NT pro-BNP concentrations, if the results might inform clinical care or decision making. Third, nonoperative data suggest natriuretic peptides have limitations as prognostic biomarkers in certain disease states, including obesity and chronic renal kidney.

The anesthesiologist has several other avenues for further investigating or optimizing known or suspected IHD before surgery—including consultations, biomarkers, stress testing, coronary angiography, coronary revascularization, and medical therapy. When considering the need for additional consultations before surgery, an initial phone call to the primary care physician or cardiologist often yields important information that obviates the need for further consultation. Any specialist consultation (e.g., cardiologist) initiated by the anesthesiologist should seek specific advice regarding the diagnosis, treatment, or further optimization of the patient's condition. It is preferable to ask specific questions, such as "*Does this patient have IHD?*" or "*Is this patient optimized for planned radical nephrectomy?,*" to avoid unhelpful consultation reports that simply state that a patient is "*cleared for surgery.*"

Aside from BNP and NT pro-BNP, several other preoperative biomarkers have shown promise, with the most compelling data pertaining to high-sensitivity troponin assays. In the nonoperative setting, these high-sensitivity assays have demonstrated subtle resting elevations in cardiac troponin concentrations in an important segment of the population without any acute coronary syndrome. These individuals have significantly elevated risks of death, as well as progression to IHD or heart failure.[114,115] Perhaps unsurprisingly, many otherwise stable surgical patients may have elevated troponin concentrations even before surgery. For example, in a cohort study of 325 patients undergoing major inpatient noncardiac surgery, about 20% had a preoperative high-sensitivity troponin T concentration exceeding the 99th percentile for the assay.[116] Thus, especially in patients for whom postoperative troponin surveillance is planned, a preoperative troponin measurement is integral to determining whether any elevated postoperative concentration reflects acute injury versus chronic long-term elevation. Two large cohort studies have also shown that these preoperative troponin elevations may aid in risk stratification for noncardiac surgery.[117-119] Specifically, a preoperative high-sensitivity troponin T concentration above 14 ng/L is associated with increased risks of death and cardiovascular complications after major noncardiac surgery. Furthermore, addition of preoperative high-sensitivity troponin T appears to improve the accuracy of risk estimation beyond that achieved with traditional clinical risk factors and natriuretic peptides.[117,118] Further research remains needed to confirm these initial results, establish ideal screening thresholds, and replicate these analyses using other high-sensitivity troponin assays. Importantly, prognostically important conditions other than myocardial ischemia can cause elevated troponin concentrations, including right ventricular dysfunction, cardiac valvular disease, and atrial fibrillation.

When supplementing preoperative evaluation, cardiac stress testing can help diagnose IHD, assess its severity, and estimate perioperative cardiac risk. The tests therefore address both *diagnosis* and *prognosis*. Several stress tests are available that differ based on the stress modality (i.e., exercise, pharmacologic) and ischemia monitoring method (i.e., ECG, perfusion imaging, echocardiography). An exercise stress test is a preferred option for a patient who is capable of exercising and likely to achieve an adequate heart rate response during exercise. Exercise stress testing also allows for an objective measurement of functional capacity. An adequate test result is obtained when patients can exercise to 85% of their target heart rate (i.e., 220 minus age). Pharmacologic stress modalities (e.g., dobutamine, dipyridamole, adenosine, regadenoson) are indicated for an individual who cannot exercise or is unlikely to achieve an adequate heart rate response because of pacemakers, significant bradycardia, or high-dose negative chronotropic drugs (e.g., β-adrenergic blockers). The choice of pharmacologic stress modality is generally immaterial, but there are some exceptions. For example, since dobutamine uncovers ischemia by increasing contractility, heart rate, and blood pressure, it may not be the best choice in patients with pacemakers, significant bradycardia, aortic aneurysms, cerebral aneurysms, or poorly controlled hypertension. While adenosine and dipyridamole rely on their vasodilatory properties and do not depend on a heart rate response, they may exacerbate bronchospasm in patients taking theophylline. In addition, these drugs may cause dangerous reductions in preload in the presence of severe stenotic valvular heart disease.

An exercise ECG stress test is a reasonable option for a patient with a relatively normal baseline ECG who is capable of exercising with an adequate heart rate response. An imaging monitoring method (i.e., echocardiography, myocardial perfusion imaging) can be used instead if a patient has significant ECG abnormalities (e.g., left bundle branch block [LBBB], LVH with strain pattern) that may interfere with electrocardiographic detection of ischemia. Nonetheless, exercise myocardial perfusion imaging may still be problematic in patients with LBBB, because of false-positive results related to septal perfusion defects.[7] Stress echocardiography assesses for wall motion abnormalities both at rest and under stress conditions (i.e., exercise, dobutamine). Resting abnormalities indicate scar tissue from a prior infarction, while new abnormalities under stress conditions (i.e., inducible wall motion abnormalities) indicate limited blood due to stenotic coronary lesions. Nuclear myocardial perfusion imaging detects ischemia by comparing radioisotope uptake by viable myocardium under resting and stress conditions. Perfusion defects at rest are indicative of a prior infarction. Since normal coronary arteries vasodilate with exercise or specific pharmacologic stressors (i.e., adenosine, dipyridamole), normal myocardium maintains normal radioisotope uptake in stress conditions. By comparison, stenotic vessels are maximally vasodilated at rest, and unable to further vasodilate under stress conditions. Thus, myocardium with flow-limiting lesions has normal radioisotope update at rest, but decreased uptake under stress conditions (i.e., reversible perfusion defects). In general, the choice of test should be informed by patient factors (e.g., ability to exercise) and local expertise in cardiac stress testing.

Cardiac stress tests can also help predict whether patients are likely to experience perioperative cardiac complications. Since these events occur relatively infrequently, the prognostic performance of these tests should not be evaluated based on positive or negative predictive values. It is preferable to use positive likelihood ratio and negative likelihood ratio values, which can be readily calculated using sensitivity and specificity values.

$$\text{Positive likelihood ratio} = \frac{\text{sensitivity}}{1 - \text{specificity}}$$

$$\text{Negative likelihood ratio} = \frac{1 - \text{sensitivity}}{\text{specificity}}$$

There are relatively few data on the prognostic performance of preoperative exercise ECG stress testing. In a meta-analysis of studies in vascular surgery, exercise ECG stress testing had a positive likelihood ratio of 2.4 and negative likelihood ratio of 0.4 for predicting postoperative cardiac death or myocardial infarction.[120] Conversely, ECG stress testing had diminished predictive performance (positive likelihood ratio 1.8 and negative likelihood ratio 0.8) in a cohort study of 200 patients undergoing mixed noncardiac surgery.[30] Considerably more research has been published pertaining to the prognostic accuracy of preoperative stress testing based on myocardial perfusion imaging or echocardiography. In a meta-analysis in noncardiac surgery, stress echocardiography has a positive likelihood ratio of 4.1 and a negative likelihood ratio of 0.2 for predicting postoperative death or myocardial infarction. In the case of myocardial perfusion imaging, the positive likelihood ratio was 1.8 and negative likelihood ratio was 0.4.[121] The prognostic value of myocardial perfusion imaging might be further improved by considering the extent of reversible defects. In another meta-analysis in vascular surgery, reversible defects on preoperative myocardial perfusion imaging were associated with significantly increased cardiac risk only when the extent of reversibility exceeded 20% of the myocardium.[122] Notably, isolated fixed defects (i.e., no associated reversible defects) were not associated with elevated cardiac risk.[122] While available evidence does suggest that stress echocardiography has better prognostic accuracy, these data should be interpreted cautiously since they are older, heterogeneous, and do not account for varying local expertise in stress testing modalities. In addition, it remains unclear as to whether cardiac stress tests provide *incremental* prognostic information in patients who have already been assessed using clinical risk factors.

Some patients with high-risk findings on initial cardiac stress testing may require subsequent evaluation of coronary anatomy using either noninvasive computed tomography coronary angiography (CTCA) or invasive coronary angiography. These tests can diagnose IHD, assess its severity, and help assess perioperative cardiac risk. Using contemporary imaging technology, CTCA has reasonably high accuracy for detecting clinically significant coronary artery stenosis.[123,124] An initial retrospective cohort study found CTCA to improve prediction of cardiac complications after intermediate-risk noncardiac surgery, as compared to using the RCRI alone.[125] Conversely, a larger multicenter prospective cohort study found that the addition of CTCA to the RCRI was five times more likely to overestimate risk in low-risk individuals than correctly identify a previously misclassified high-risk individual.[126] Thus, CTCA does not appear to be an appropriate first-line test to supplement clinical risk stratification. Nonetheless, it may be a reasonable follow-up option in patients with high-risk cardiac stress test results.

Invasive coronary angiography is the gold standard for diagnosing IHD and may also be a follow-up option for patients with high-risk cardiac stress test results. Two Italian randomized trials in vascular surgery patients have suggested that routine preoperative invasive coronary angiography—followed by revascularization of any critical stenosis—reduces risks of postoperative myocardial ischemia,[127] and long-term mortality.[128,129] Although interesting, these findings still do not support a clinical shift to this invasive assessment strategy, largely because any patient-relevant benefits were seen over long-term follow-up, not the immediate postoperative period. Any merit for an invasive coronary artery assessment strategy is highly related to whether coronary revascularization before noncardiac surgery is beneficial. This issue remains controversial. The most relevant study is the Coronary Artery Revascularization Prophylaxis trial.[130] In the multicenter randomized controlled trial of 510 vascular surgery patients with known significant IHD, preoperative revascularization using CABG or PCI with bare metal stents (BMSs) did not reduce the risk of postoperative myocardial infarction or long-term mortality. Notably, the trial excluded patients with left main coronary artery stenosis, which is the only subgroup where revascularization was associated with improved survival in a related cohort study.[131] At present, both American and European guidelines only recommend consideration for revascularization in patients who meet usual nonoperative indications (e.g., left main coronary artery stenosis, triple-vessel coronary artery disease),[7,9] while the CCS guidelines recommend against preoperative revascularization in any patient with stable IHD.[8]

In general, randomized controlled trials have also *not* shown benefit from de novo medical therapy to decrease perioperative cardiac risk, including β-adrenergic blockers,[132,133] α_2-adrenergic agonists,[134,135] and low-dose aspirin.[136] Despite initial promising data on perioperative β-adrenergic blockade,[137] these benefits were not replicated in larger multicenter randomized trials, such as the Perioperative Ischemic Evaluation Study-1 (POISE-1) trial. Current randomized trial evidence shows that perioperative β-adrenergic blockade reduces the risk of postoperative myocardial infarction, but at the cost of increased risks of acute stroke, hypotension, and death.[133] Although it is possible that these risks are mitigated by starting β-adrenergic blockers several days before surgery,[138,139] and titrating therapy to a reasonable target heart rate without precipitating hypotension, there are no compelling data showing the efficacy and safety of this approach.[140] Caution should especially be exercised when using β-adrenergic blockers in individuals with known CVD because of the risks of perioperative stroke.[132,133]

Conversely, most *long-term* cardiovascular medications in patients with IHD should be continued up to surgery, including β-adrenergic blockers, statins, and most other antihypertensive medications. Nonetheless, there are some exceptions. Since ACEI and ARB administration within 24 hours before surgery is associated with increased risks of hypotension[85] and myocardial injury,[86] it is reasonable to withhold these medications for 24 hours before surgery, provided that they are restarted postoperatively (see section on "Hypertension").[87,88] Despite theoretical benefits,[141] randomized controlled trials to date have not shown benefits from routinely continuing aspirin before noncardiac surgery. For example, in the POISE-2 trial, continuing low-dose aspirin (100 mg/day) did not prevent cardiac complications but increased risks of major bleeding.[136] The lack of clear benefit may be explained, in part, by acute thrombosis being a relatively infrequent contributor to perioperative myocardial infarction.[142,143] Nonetheless, since only one third of participants in the POISE-2 trial had diagnosed vascular disease, it is possible that continuation of aspirin benefits some very high-risk subgroups. Consistent with this possibility, a relatively small post-hoc subgroup analysis from the POISE-2 trial found that perioperative aspirin reduced the risk of death or myocardial infarction in patients with prior PCI.[144] Based on these data, a reasonable strategy is to only continue aspirin *selectively* in patients where the risk of cardiac events is felt to exceed the risk of major bleeding. Other medications that should generally be withdrawn before surgery include $P2Y_{12}$ inhibitors (e.g., clopidogrel, ticagrelor, prasugrel) and DOACs (see sections on "Atrial Fibrillation" and "Preoperative Antiplatelet Therapy").

Coronary Stents

Following PCI with stent implantation, patients require an initial period of dual antiplatelet therapy (DAPT) with aspirin and a $P2Y_{12}$ inhibitor (e.g., clopidogrel, ticagrelor, prasugrel), after which they can be transitioned to aspirin monotherapy. The purpose of DAPT is to prevent potentially catastrophic stent thrombosis during the vulnerable period preceding stent reendothelialization. Temporary preoperative discontinuation of DAPT during this vulnerable period predisposes patients to cardiovascular complications, especially given the prothrombotic state triggered by surgical stress. Based on emerging evidence and improved DES technology, recommendations pertaining to minimum duration of DAPT before elective noncardiac surgery continue to evolve—as reflected in updated 2016 guidelines published by the ACC/AHA.[145] These guidelines recommend that elective noncardiac surgery should be delayed for 30 days or more after BMS implantation. In the case of DES, the ideal recommended minimum delay is 6 months, which is consistent with several cohort studies showing relatively low perioperative cardiac risk when elective noncardiac surgery was performed 6 months or more after DES implantation.[146,147] Based on expert opinion, the guidelines also indicate that elective noncardiac surgery can sometimes be performed from 3 to 6 months after DES implantation (particularly with new generation stents), if the risk of stent thrombosis is judged to be less than the risk of further delaying surgery.[145] When DAPT is temporarily interrupted before noncardiac surgery, the guidelines strongly recommend that aspirin be continued, and $P2Y_{12}$ inhibitor therapy be restarted as soon as possible after surgery.[145]

Although not explicitly indicated in the 2016 ACC/AHA guidelines, factors other than stent type and time interval since PCI should also inform judgments on the safety of performing elective noncardiac surgery in patients with coronary stents. For example, a large retrospective cohort study of about 26,600 patients found that the risks of noncardiac surgery early after stent implantation were increased when PCI had been performed for acute myocardial infarction, as opposed to unstable angina or non-acute coronary syndrome indications.[148] As a consequence, it may be particularly important to delay noncardiac surgery for 6 months when the indication for DES was treatment of an acute myocardial infarction.

During preoperative evaluation, the anesthesiologist should determine the presence, type (drug-eluting vs. bare-metal), location, and original indication of any coronary stent. Given the complex issues related to these patients, subsequent management should be performed in collaboration with a cardiologist and the responsible surgeon, especially for patients receiving DAPT.[145] Whenever possible, surgical procedures should be performed following critical time windows (i.e., 30 days after BMS, or 3-6 months after DES), aspirin should be continued throughout the perioperative period, and any $P2Y_{12}$ inhibitor therapy should be restarted as soon as possible after surgery. The importance of continuing aspirin perioperatively is supported by the substudy of the POISE-2 randomized trial.[144] In this subgroup analysis of 470 patients with prior PCI, aspirin reduced the risk of death or myocardial infarction (hazard ratio, 0.50; 95% confidence limits, 0.26-0.95) without any significantly increased bleeding risk. Unfractionated heparin and low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH) should not be used to "bridge" patients who have been withdrawn from antiplatelet therapy, especially since heparin can paradoxically increase platelet aggregation.[149] Following surgery, close monitoring for myocardial injury (i.e., serial troponin measurement) should be strongly considered, with any suspected stent thrombosis treated using PCI. High-risk patients are thus ideally best managed in facilities with immediate access to interventional cardiology.

Heart Failure

Heart failure has been defined as a clinical syndrome resulting from impaired diastolic filling or systolic ejection of the cardiac ventricles.[150] Its major clinical manifestations are dyspnea, fatigue, and fluid retention. Although prevalence estimates are affected by differences in diagnostic criteria, recent estimates suggest that heart failure afflicts more than 6.5 million individuals in the United States,[27] and more than 23 million worldwide.[151] Heart failure is the sequelae of a broad array of underlying pathology, including ischemic heart disease (i.e., ischemic cardiomyopathy), hypertension, valvular heart disease, myocarditis, infiltrative disorder (e.g., sarcoidosis, amyloidosis), and peripartum cardiomyopathy. In addition, many affected individuals have no identifiable underlying cause (i.e., idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy). Several approaches can be used to classify heart failure, including the presence versus absence of associated signs or symptoms (i.e., compensated vs. decompensated heart failure), and the extent of functional limitation. In heart failure patients, functional status is typically classified based on New York Heart Association (NYHA) categories:

- NYHA class I: no limitation of physical activity; ordinary activity not a cause of fatigue, palpitations, or syncope
- NYHA class II: slight limitation of physical activity; ordinary activity resulting in fatigue, palpitations, or syncope
- NYHA class III: marked limitation of physical activity; less than ordinary activity resulting in fatigue, palpitations, or syncope; comfort at rest
- NYHA class IV: inability to do any physical activity without discomfort; symptoms at rest

Heart failure can also be classified based on the severity of ventricular systolic dysfunction, namely as heart failure with reduced ejection fraction (HFrEF) versus heart failure with preserved ejection fraction (HFpEF).[152] Individuals with HFpEF (or diastolic heart failure) have normal left ventricular ejection fraction (≥50%), normal left ventricular end-diastolic volume, and abnormal diastolic function. By comparison, HFrEF (or systolic heart failure) is characterized by more significant left ventricular systolic dysfunction (i.e., ejection fraction ≤ 40%). Individuals with borderline left ventricular systolic function (i.e., ejection fraction 41%-49%) are classified as borderline HFpEF. They tend to have characteristics and outcomes similar to patients with HFpEF.[152] Among patients with heart failure, about half have HFpEF.[153] Although they have a high mortality risk (10%-20% at 1-year),[154,155] patients with HFpEF have lower adjusted risks of death (adjusted hazard ratio 0.68) over long-term follow-up than patients with HFrEF.[155] Most medical therapy for improving morbidity and mortality in heart failure (i.e., ACEI, ARB, aldosterone antagonist, β-adrenergic blocker, ivabradine) has only demonstrated efficacy in HFrEF.[156] In contrast, medical therapy for HFpEF is largely aimed at symptoms and underlying conditions (e.g., hypertension). Other heart failure-related treatments include diuretics (for volume overload), anticoagulants (for atrial fibrillation or left ventricular thrombus), implantable cardioverter-defibrillators (ICDs), or cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT).

In the perioperative setting, heart failure is a recognized risk factor for mortality and morbidity after major surgery. *Symptomatic* heart failure has been consistently identified as a risk factor for adverse perioperative outcomes in multiple studies. For example, in a retrospective cohort study of about 159,000 Medicare beneficiaries in the United States, heart failure was associated with significantly higher risks of 30-day mortality (adjusted hazard ratio 1.63) after noncardiac surgery.[157] Similarly, a more recent matched cohort study using the NSQIP registry showed new or worsened heart failure within 30 days before surgery to be associated with increased risks of 30-day mortality (adjusted relative risk 2.08) or major morbidity (adjusted relative risk 1.54).[158] Symptomatic heart failure is also a component of the Revised Cardiac Index, which is commonly used for estimating perioperative cardiac risk cardiovascular complications. Among patients with heart failure, perioperative risk may be higher in patients with HFrEF versus HFpEF. Specifically, in a cohort study of 174 heart failure patients undergoing noncardiac surgery, an ejection fraction less than 30% was associated with much higher adjusted risks (adjusted odds ratio 4.88) of postoperative death, myocardial infarction, or heart failure exacerbation.[159] Nonetheless, HFpEF may still be prognostically important in the perioperative setting, as evidenced by a meta-analysis that found diastolic dysfunction to be associated with a doubling (pooled adjusted odds ratio 2.03) in the risk of postoperative adverse cardiac events.[160] Although symptomatic HF is a clear indicator of increased perioperative risk, the prognostic importance of *asymptomatic* systolic dysfunction is less clear. For example, in a cohort study of 339 individuals undergoing noncardiac surgery, a reduced ejection fraction was associated with increased cardiac morbidity, but this information did not improve risk prediction beyond that achieved with clinical risk factors.[161] Similarly, in another cohort study of 570 individuals undergoing noncardiac surgery, a reduced ejection only had prognostic importance within the subgroup with RCRI scores of 2 or greater.[162] Consistent with these data, the current ACC/AHA guidelines discourage routine preoperative assessment of ventricular function (Box 31.3).[7]

The clinical stability of heart failure symptoms prior to surgery is another important determinant of perioperative risk, as evidenced by a single-center retrospective cohort study from the United States.[163] After examination at a hospitalist-run preoperative evaluation clinic, clinically stable heart failure patients had relatively low risks of 30-day mortality (1.3%) after noncardiac surgery, albeit with longer hospital length of stay and higher readmission rates relative to matched controls. Consistent with these data, the ESC/ESA guidelines recommend that elective intermediate-risk and high-risk noncardiac procedures be deferred for at least 3 months after initiation of medical therapy in patients with newly diagnosed heart failure.[9]

The preoperative history pertaining to heart failure should clarify its type, etiology, severity, stability (including prior exacerbations), recent investigations (e.g., echocardiograms), and current therapy (medical and device-based). The anesthesiologist should inquire about recent weight gain, fatigue, shortness of breath, orthopnea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea, nocturnal cough, peripheral edema, hospitalizations, and recent changes in medical management. The patient's functional status should be classified according to the NYHA categories. It is especially important to determine if the signs and symptoms of heart failure are

BOX 31.3 Recommendations for Preoperative Noninvasive Evaluation of Left Ventricular Function

Class IIa (Reasonable to Perform)

- It is reasonable for patients with dyspnea of unknown origin to undergo preoperative evaluation of LV function.
- It is reasonable for patients with heart failure with worsening dyspnea or other change in clinical status to undergo preoperative evaluation of LV function.

Class IIb (May Be Considered)

- Reassessment of LV function in clinically stable patients with previously documented LV dysfunction may be considered if there has been no assessment within a year.

Class III (Should Not Be Performed Since It Is Not Helpful)

- Routine preoperative evaluation of LV function is not recommended.

LV, Left ventricle.

From Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation.* 2014;130:e278–e333.

in their usual stable state (i.e., compensated heart failure) or have recently significantly worsened (i.e., decompensated heart failure). Decompensated heart failure is a very high-risk condition that warrants postponement of surgery for all except lifesaving emergency procedures.[7] No consensus exists on how long nonemergent surgery should be deferred after resolution of acute decompensated heart failure, although a reasonable approach is to delay elective procedures (including most time-sensitive procedures) for 1 month, and urgent procedures for 24 hours.

On physical examination, the findings of heart failure may be subtle. Furthermore, they can vary between HFrEF versus HFpEF, and between compensated versus decompensated states. More useful signs for determining heart failure include a third heart sound, jugular venous distension, pulmonary rales, and lower extremity edema.[26] A chest radiograph may provide further diagnostic guidance, especially in dyspneic patients, with pulmonary vascular redistribution and interstitial edema useful findings for supporting the presence of heart failure.[26] Natriuretic peptide measurement can further clarify whether a patient has heart failure. Both BNP and NT pro-BNP have excellent diagnostic performance, especially for ruling out heart failure, in the ambulatory setting (pooled negative likelihood ratio values 0.29-0.38 at manufacturers' recommended thresholds)[164] and emergency department setting (pooled negative likelihood ratio values 0.08-0.13 at manufacturers' recommended thresholds).[165] Preoperative natriuretic peptide concentrations also provide other potentially important information. Both BNP and NT pro-BNP concentrations are markers of perioperative cardiac risk (see section on "Ischemic Heart Disease"). In addition, for heart failure patients who have undergone prior natriuretic peptide measurement, preoperative BNP or NT pro-BNP testing provides insights into whether patients remained in their usual stable clinical state. Consistent with these data, the ESC/ESA guidelines recommend preoperative natriuretic peptide measurement in patients who have established or suspected heart failure, and are undergoing noncardiac intermediate or high-risk noncardiac surgery.[9] While routine preoperative echocardiography (or other noninvasive ventricular function measurement) is not useful, such specialized testing is helpful for assessment of dyspnea of unknown origin or recent altered clinical status in an individual with known heart failure. Furthermore, both American and European guidelines are supportive of selective preoperative echocardiography in clinically stable patients with known ventricular dysfunction,[9] especially in the absence of testing in the previous year (see Box 31.3).[7] Other tests for patients with heart failure include ECGs and blood sampling to measure electrolyte and creatinine concentration. Digoxin levels are not routinely determined unless toxicity, undertreatment, or noncompliance is suspected.

Consideration should be given for collaborative perioperative management with a cardiologist or heart failure specialist of severely affected heart failure patients (i.e., NYHA III or IV; decompensated heart failure) who will undergo intermediate-risk or high-risk procedures. Most medical therapy, including β-adrenergic blockers, hydralazine, nitrates, and digoxin, should be continued preoperatively. Loop diuretics (e.g., furosemide) can be continued on the day of surgery for most procedures since this strategy does not increase risks of intraoperative hypotension or adverse cardiac events.[166] The exception is lengthy high-risk procedures with projected significant blood loss or fluid requirements, in which potent diuretics should be held on the morning of surgery. Since ACEI and ARB administration within 24 hours before surgery is associated with increased risks of intraoperative hypotension,[85] and postoperative myocardial injury,[86] it is reasonable to withhold these medications for 24 hours before surgery, provided that they are restarted postoperatively once patients are hemodynamically stable (see section on "Hypertension").[87,88] Patients on anticoagulant therapy will likely need these medications temporarily discontinued before surgery (see later section on "Atrial Fibrillation"). In addition, patients with pacemakers, ICDs, and CRT devices have their own special perioperative considerations (see later section on "Cardiovascular Implantable Electronic Devices").

Murmurs and Valvular Abnormalities

When a cardiac murmur is identified during preoperative assessment, the subsequent goals are to identify any associated cardiovascular symptoms (e.g., dyspnea, chest discomfort, orthopnea, fatigue, syncope), determine the underlying cause of the murmur, and distinguish clinically significant murmurs from unimportant ones. For example, benign functional murmurs occur with turbulent flow across the aortic or pulmonic outflow tracts during high-flow states such as hyperthyroidism, pregnancy, or anemia. Murmurs can be graded according to loudness (Table 31.7), however, the loudness of a murmur does not necessarily indicate the severity of a lesion. In contrast, the location of the murmur, and changes in intensity associated with maneuvers can be informative (Table 31.8). A Valsalva maneuver decreases right- and left-heart filling, thereby reducing the intensity of most murmurs except those of mitral valve prolapse and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Standing also decreases preload, and thereby increases the intensity of murmurs of mitral valve prolapse and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Conversely, squatting increases venous return and afterload, thereby increasing most murmurs except those of mitral valve prolapse and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Having the patient repeatedly perform a hand grip increases heart rate and arterial blood pressure, thereby augmenting murmurs of mitral regurgitation and aortic insufficiency; conversely, this maneuver decreases murmurs of aortic stenosis and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. The likelihood of a murmur being pathologic increases in the presence of increased age, cardiovascular risk factors, other abnormal heart sounds, cardiomegaly, abnormal ECG, evidence of excessive intravascular volume, and a history of rheumatic fever, pulmonary disease, or anorectic drug use. Diastolic or continuous murmurs are almost always pathologic and require further evaluation. Nonetheless, it is typically not easy to distinguish benign from pathologic murmurs based on history and physical examination alone. Thus, cardiovascular medicine guidelines now recommend transthoracic echocardiography for the initial evaluation of any patient with suspected valvular heart disease.[167] Additionally, perioperative guidelines recommend preoperative echocardiography for any patient who has clinically suspected moderate or severe valvular stenosis or regurgitation, and no echocardiogram within the previous year.[7,9] For patients with known valvular heart disease, repeat echocardiography is recommended if there has been a significant change in clinical status or physical examination since the last test.

TABLE 31.7 Grading the Intensity of Cardiac Murmurs

Grade	Description
I	Faintest that can be heard with difficulty
II	Faint but easily heard
III	Moderately loud without a thrill
IV	Loud with a palpable thrill
V	Very loud but still need stethoscope (thrill present)
VI	Heard without a stethoscope

Aortic Stenosis. Aortic valve stenosis is the leading cause of left ventricular outflow obstruction in adults. In high-income countries, aortic stenosis principally occurs because of the progressive calcific disease of a native trileaflet valve or a congenitally bicuspid valve. Stenosis of bicuspid valves typically occurs when individuals are in their fourth and fifth decades of life, whereas stenosis of native trileaflet valves occurs once individuals are age 60 years old or older. Aortic stenosis severity is classified based on the valve area and mean transvalvular pressure gradient (Table 31.9). A limitation of using the pressure gradient alone to assess severity is that the gradient may decrease if the left ventricle systolic function begins to decrease. In patients with known aortic stenosis, serial echocardiography is recommended every 6 to 12 months for patients with severe disease, every 1 to 2 years for moderate disease, and every 3 to 5 years for mild disease. After a prolonged asymptomatic phase, symptoms may develop in affected patients once stenosis becomes severe. The cardinal symptoms of severe aortic stenosis are angina, heart failure, and syncope, but patients are much more likely to complain of exertional dyspnea and decreased exercise tolerance.

Aortic stenosis causes a systolic ejection murmur (see Table 31.8), best heard in the right upper sternal border and often radiating to the neck. A similar murmur occurs with aortic *sclerosis*, which is defined as thickening of the aortic valve without associated stenosis. Aortic sclerosis is present in 25% of individuals age 65 years or older, and 50% of individuals age 80 years or older. Aortic sclerosis is associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular events, and a 2% annual risk of progression to aortic stenosis.[168] The radiating pattern of the systolic ejection murmur can help rule out aortic stenosis, with the absence of radiation to the right clavicle being associated with a negative likelihood ratio of 0.1 for aortic stenosis.[169] In addition to a systolic ejection murmur, aortic stenosis is associated with a delayed carotid upstroke and paradoxically split second heart sound. Any patient with a previously undiagnosed suspicious systolic murmur should have an echocardiogram, especially since noncardiologists have difficulty in distinguishing murmurs of aortic stenosis from those of aortic sclerosis. Typical ECG abnormalities associated with aortic stenosis include LVH (often with a strain pattern), left axis deviation, and LBBB.

TABLE 31.8 Descriptions of Murmurs Associated With Cardiac Abnormalities

Lesion	Location	Timing	Description
Aortic Stenosis	Second parasternal interspace	Midsystolic	Crescendo-decrescendo, radiates to the carotids; with or without S_3, S_4; Valsalva maneuver and sustained hand grip exercise decrease intensity
Aortic Insufficiency	Third and fourth parasternal interspaces	Holodiastolic	Decrescendo, blowing, high pitched, radiates to the carotids; Austin-Flint rumble at the apex; squatting, hand grip exercise, and leaning forward increase intensity
Mitral Stenosis	Apex	Middiastolic	Opening snap; low-pitched rumble radiates to the axilla; squatting and hand grip exercise increase intensity
Mitral Regurgitation	Apex	Holosystolic	High pitched, blowing, radiates to the axilla; loud $S_{3;}$ standing decreases intensity; squatting and hand grip exercise increase intensity
Mitral Valve Prolapse	Apex	Late systolic	Crescendo, midsystolic click; Valsalva maneuver and standing increase intensity; squatting decreases intensity
Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy	Apex, lower left sternal border	Midsystolic	S_4, Single S_2; Valsalva maneuver and standing increase intensity; squatting, passive leg raising, and hand grip exercise decrease intensity

Moderate to severe aortic stenosis is associated with increased risk of perioperative cardiovascular complications.[170,171] Nonetheless, contemporary studies suggest that noncardiac surgery can be performed with acceptable mortality risks in individuals with asymptomatic severe aortic stenosis[171] Thus, guidelines support proceeding with major elective noncardiac surgery in patients with asymptomatic severe aortic stenosis, provided that appropriate intraoperative and postoperative hemodynamic monitoring is available.[7,9] Conversely, for patients with symptomatic severe aortic stenosis, aortic valve replacement should be considered before their planned noncardiac surgery.[7,9] If a symptomatic patient is deemed high-risk or ineligible for surgical aortic valve replacement, alternative intervention options include transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVR) or percutaneous aortic balloon dilation.[7,9] Multidisciplinary collaboration with a cardiologist is invaluable for the perioperative management of these high-risk patients.

Patients with moderate to severe aortic stenosis also have an increased risk of bleeding from an *acquired* von Willebrand syndrome, which occurs in 67% to 92% of patients with severe stenosis.[172] The underlying pathophysiology is mechanical disruption of von Willebrand multimers during turbulent blood flow through the narrowed valve. Of note, prophylaxis for infective endocarditis is not recommended.[173]

Aortic Insufficiency. Aortic valve insufficiency occurs with valvular leaflet disease, aortic root dilation, or both. Causes of valvular disease include rheumatic heart disease, bicuspid valves, collagen vascular disease, and endocarditis. With respect to aortic root dilation, causes include ankylosing spondylitis, osteogenesis imperfecta, syphilis, hypertension, age-related degeneration, Marfan syndrome, and collagen vascular diseases. These causes generally lead to progressive chronic aortic insufficiency that remains asymptomatic for decades. In contrast, acute aortic insufficiency can result from trauma, infections, or aortic dissection; this is an emergent condition that results in cardiogenic shock.

On auscultation, aortic insufficiency is associated with a diastolic murmur (see Table 31.8), the intensity of which does not correlate well with the severity of regurgitation.[174] Patients typically have a widened pulse pressure, which manifests as Corrigan or water-hammer pulses (bounding carotid pulse with a rapid downstroke), de Musset sign (head bob with each heart beat), Duroziez sign (systolic and diastolic bruit heard over the femoral artery when it is partially compressed), and Quincke pulses (capillary pulsations in the fingertips or lips). Although auscultation by a cardiologist can help rule in or rule out aortic regurgitation (based on the presence or absence of an early diastolic murmur),[175] the accuracy of auscultation by noncardiologists is uncertain.[26] Thus, an echocardiogram is helpful for any patient suspected of having a diastolic murmur.

TABLE 31.9 Grading Severity of Aortic Stenosis

Grade	Transvalvular Jet Velocity (m/s)	Mean Pressure Gradient (mm Hg)	Valve Area (cm^2)
Mild	2.0–2.9	<20	≥1.5
Moderate	3–3.9	20–39	1.0–1.5
Severe	≥4	≥40	<1.0

Limited prior research suggests that patients with moderate-to-severe aortic insufficiency experience increased risks of perioperative mortality and morbidity, especially in the presence of impaired left ventricular function (ejection fraction < 55%) or renal insufficiency.[176] Nonetheless, expert consensus from current guidelines is supportive of patients with asymptomatic severe aortic insufficiency to proceed with major noncardiac surgery accompanied by careful perioperative management, including hemodynamic monitoring, afterload control, and fluid balance.[7,9,167] Prophylaxis for infective endocarditis is not recommended.[173]

Mitral Stenosis. Mitral stenosis is much rarer than aortic stenosis, and almost always related to rheumatic heart disease. Other less common causes include mitral annular calcification and radiation-associated valve disease. The normal mitral valve has a cross-sectional area of 4 to 6 cm^2. Mitral stenosis involves progressive reduction of this area, with shortness of breath with exertion occurring when the area falls below 2.5 cm^2, and symptoms at rest occurring once the area falls below 1.5 cm^2. Severe mitral stenosis is defined by a valve area less than 1 cm^2 and is typically associated with a pulmonary artery systolic pressure > 50 mm Hg, and a resting mean transvalvular gradient ≥ 10 mm Hg.

When mitral stenosis becomes symptomatic, patients experience dyspnea, fatigue, orthopnea, pulmonary edema, and hemoptysis because of increased left atrial pressures and decreased cardiac output. Atrial fibrillation can also develop, in turn causing heart failure in the short term and thrombosis in the long term. Patients with atrial fibrillation require long-term anticoagulation, with recent guidelines recommending vitamin K antagonist therapy (e.g., warfarin) as opposed to DOACs.[173] Pulmonary hypertension (see later section on “Pulmonary Hypertension”) and right-sided heart failure can also occur in patients with significant stenosis. The physical examination should evaluate for rales and signs of right-sided heart failure such as jugular venous distention, peripheral edema, hepatomegaly, right ventricular heave, and ascites. On auscultation, mitral stenosis is associated with a diastolic murmur that should be evaluated with echocardiography.

Medical management includes β-adrenergic blockers for controlling heart rate, antiarrhythmic agents for preventing or controlling atrial fibrillation, and anticoagulants in patients with atrial fibrillation. Both β-adrenergic blockers and antiarrhythmic agents should be continued preoperatively, while anticoagulation should be managed in conjunction with the treating cardiologist and surgeon. Prophylaxis for infective endocarditis is not recommended.[173] If a patient with mitral stenosis meets guideline-based indications for valvular intervention (e.g., percutaneous mitral balloon commissurotomy),[167] consideration should be given to performing this intervention before major elective noncardiac surgery.[7,9] If an asymptomatic patient with severe mitral stenosis has valve morphology that is not favorable for a percutaneous intervention, it is still reasonable to proceed with major elective noncardiac surgery provided that appropriate intraoperative and postoperative hemodynamic monitoring is used.[7]

Mitral Regurgitation. Acute mitral regurgitation can occur in the setting of myocardial infarction, trauma, or infective endocarditis. Chronic mitral regurgitation is typically associated with degenerative mitral valve disease (including mitral valve prolapse), rheumatic heart disease, ischemic heart disease, and cardiomyopathies. Chronic mitral regurgitation progresses very gradually. Symptoms develop relatively late, and typically only after onset of left ventricular dysfunction. Associated symptoms are initially vague, but progress to fatigue, dyspnea, and atrial fibrillation with disease progression.

On auscultation, patients with mitral regurgitation usually have a holosystolic murmur heard best at the cardiac apex (see Table 31.8). The murmur grade is somewhat correlated with the severity of mitral regurgitation in primary mitral valve disease (e.g., degenerative mitral valve disease), but not in secondary functional regurgitation (e.g., ischemic heart disease, cardiomyopathies). Although auscultation by a cardiologist can help determine mitral regurgitation (based on the presence or absence of a late systolic or holosystolic murmur in the mid-left thorax), the accuracy of auscultation by noncardiologists is uncertain.[26] Thus, an echocardiogram is helpful for any patient with a suspicious systolic murmur. Chronic mitral regurgitation is generally well tolerated perioperatively, unless other valvular lesions (e.g., mitral stenosis) or left ventricular dysfunction coexist. Consistent with these observations, limited prior research suggests that patients with mitral regurgitation have increased risks of cardiovascular complications, but not mortality.[177] Current guidelines suggest that patients with asymptomatic severe mitral regurgitation can proceed to major elective noncardiac surgery provided that appropriate intraoperative and postoperative hemodynamic monitoring is available.[7] Prophylaxis for infective endocarditis is no longer recommended.[173]

Mitral Valve Prolapse. Mitral valve prolapse is characterized by the systolic billowing of an abnormally thickened mitral valve leaflet into the left atrium, with or without coexistent mitral regurgitation. Diagnostic criteria for mitral valve prolapse have evolved to the current definition based on echocardiography alone, namely ≥ 2 mm billowing of any portion of the mitral leaflets above the annular plane in the long axis view.[178] It is the common cause of isolated mitral regurgitation requiring surgical repair in high-income countries. Nonetheless, only 4% of patients with mitral valve prolapse have severe valvular regurgitation, with most affected individuals having mild, trace, or no mitral regurgitation.[179] The condition may be primary (i.e., myxomatous degeneration) or secondary (e.g., associated with Marfan syndrome, Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, and osteogenesis imperfecta). Nonspecific symptoms (e.g., atypical chest pain, palpitations, dyspnea, exercise intolerance, dizziness) have been attributed, albeit unreliably, to mitral valve prolapse—in what has been termed as the "mitral valve prolapse syndrome."

On auscultation, these patients may have a systolic click and a mid-systolic murmur at the cardiac apex (that intensifies with a Valsalva maneuver). Auscultation by a cardiologist can help diagnose mitral valve prolapse (based on the presence or absence of a systolic click and murmur); however, the accuracy of auscultation by noncardiologists is uncertain.[26] From the perioperative perspective, the key issue is to differentiate patients with clinically significant mitral valve regurgitation from those with an incidental finding of prolapse that does not warrant further evaluation. Thus, echocardiography may be helpful to further investigate murmurs suspected of representing significant mitral regurgitation. Prophylaxis for infective endocarditis is no longer recommended.[173]

Tricuspid Regurgitation. Tricuspid regurgitation is a common valvular abnormality, with 70% of normal adults exhibiting a small degree of tricuspid regurgitation on echocardiography. Since it is usually asymptomatic and not easily audible on physical examination, tricuspid regurgitation is most commonly noted as an incidental echocardiographic finding. Significant tricuspid regurgitation is most commonly caused by dilatation of the right ventricle and tricuspid annulus (i.e., secondary disease). Causes of secondary tricuspid regurgitation include left-sided heart failure, mitral valve disease (stenosis or regurgitation), primary pulmonary disease (e.g., pulmonary hypertension), left-to-right intracardiac shunts (e.g., atrial septal defect, ventricular septal defect), pulmonary artery stenosis, and right ventricle disease (e.g., arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia). Tricuspid regurgitation is less commonly caused by processes directly affecting the tricuspid valve (i.e., primary disease), such as Ebstein anomaly, infective endocarditis (typically in intravenous drug users), rheumatic heart disease, carcinoid syndrome, connective tissue disorders (e.g., Marfan syndrome), myxomatous degeneration, or direct injury (e.g., permanent pacemaker or ICD lead). Certain drugs—namely anorectics (fenfluramine, phentermine) and pergolide (dopamine agonist)—have also been associated with primary tricuspid regurgitation.

Patients with mild or moderate tricuspid regurgitation are generally asymptomatic. Individuals with severe regurgitation may report pulsations in the neck (related to distended jugular veins), as well as symptoms of right-sided heart failure (e.g., ascites, peripheral edema) and underlying conditions (e.g., pulmonary hypertension). Relevant findings on physical examination include distended jugular veins, hepatomegaly, ascites, dependent edema, and a right ventricular heave on chest palpation. On auscultation, tricuspid regurgitation causes a holosystolic murmur that is heard best at the midsternal border or subxiphoid area. Nonetheless, the murmur is often absent or very soft, even with severe regurgitation. The intensity of the murmur can be increased using maneuvers that increase venous return (e.g., inspiration, abdominal pressure). Although auscultation by a cardiologist can help determine moderate-to-severe tricuspid regurgitation (based on the presence or absence of increased murmur intensity with inspiration or abdominal pressure), the accuracy of auscultation by noncardiologists is uncertain.[26] Thus, echocardiography may be helpful in a patient with a suspicious murmur, especially within the context of signs or symptoms of right-sided heart failure. The preoperative management of patients with severe tricuspid regurgitation should be guided by the presence of any underlying conditions, right-sided heart failure, and known or suspected pulmonary hypertension. Where indicated, perioperative management should be conducted collaboratively with a heart failure cardiologist or pulmonary hypertension specialist. Prophylaxis for infective endocarditis is no longer recommended.[173]

Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy. Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy is a genetic disorder of the myocardium, which can result in dynamic left ventricular outflow tract obstruction, myocardial ischemia, diastolic dysfunction, and mitral regurgitation (related to systolic anterior motion of the mitral valve leaflets). Most affected individuals have a relatively normal lifespan; however others are at risk for progressive heart failure, sudden cardiac death, and atrial fibrillation. Most patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy are asymptomatic. When symptoms are present, they are quite variable, and not well correlated with the extent of LVH or outflow tract obstruction. Typical associated symptoms include fatigue, exertional dyspnea, atypical or angina chest pain, exertional presyncope or syncope, and palpitations. Symptomatic patients may be prescribed long-term medical therapy with negative inotropic agents (i.e., β-blockers, verapamil, disopyramide). Other symptomatic individuals with severe left ventricular outflow tract obstruction may require intervention with either surgical myectomy or alcohol septal ablation. Some patients may also undergo ICD insertion if they are deemed high-risk for sudden cardiac death.

Although the physical examination in a patient with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy may be normal, the classic finding on auscultation (see Table 31.8) is a mid-systolic murmur that increases with maneuvers to decrease ventricular size (e.g., Valsalva maneuver) and decreases with maneuvers to increase ventricular size (e.g., passive leg raise). Auscultation by a cardiologist can help rule in or rule out hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (based on decreased murmur intensity with passive leg elevation or increased murmur intensity with shifts from a squatting to standing position), however, the accuracy of auscultation by noncardiologists is uncertain.[26] Accordingly, an echocardiogram should be obtained if a patient has a personal (or family) history of exertional syncope or cardiac arrest; a suspicious murmur is found on auscultation; or concerning ECG findings (i.e., LVH, ST-segment abnormalities, T-wave abnormalities) are observed in an otherwise healthy nonhypertensive patient. In general, patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy can safely undergo most low-risk and intermediate-risk noncardiac surgical procedures, especially with close hemodynamic monitoring and management. Medical therapy (e.g., β-adrenergic blockers, verapamil) should be continued perioperatively, but prophylaxis for infective endocarditis is no longer recommended.[173] Appropriate perioperative management should be instituted for any patient who has an associated ICD.

Prosthetic Heart Valves. In patients with prosthetic heart valves, the preoperative evaluation should determine the underlying indication that led to valve replacement; type, age, and current status of the valve prosthesis; need for long-term anticoagulation entailed by the valve prosthesis; and planned perioperative anticoagulation management plan. The anesthesiologist should review the most recent echocardiogram, and order a repeat echocardiogram if there are any signs or symptoms suggestive of valve dysfunction (e.g., new onset heart failure).[167] In addition, a recent complete blood count may be helpful since these patients may have a valve-related hemolytic anemia.

Anticoagulation with a vitamin K antagonist (e.g., warfarin) is required for 3 to 6 months after open surgical bioprosthetic valve implantation, after which patients can be transitioned to aspirin therapy alone (75-100 mg daily).[167] Life-long aspirin therapy is recommended for patients who have undergone TAVR, as well as clopidogrel (75 mg daily) for the first 6 months in all patients and vitamin K antagonists for the first 3 months in select individuals.[173] Conversely, patients with mechanical prosthetic valves require life-long therapy with both aspirin and vitamin K antagonists.[167] Importantly, DOACs—such as dabigatran, rivaroxaban, edoxaban, or apixaban—should not be used for anticoagulation therapy in patients with mechanical heart valves.[167] In general, decisions about temporary preoperative discontinuation of anticoagulants, duration of anticoagulant discontinuation, need for "bridging" therapy with a shorter-acting drug, and type of bridging agent (intravenous heparin or LMWH) should be made in conjunction with the treating cardiologist and surgeon. Current guidelines make recommendations for bridging therapy largely based on the location of the mechanical heart valve and nature of planned surgery (Box 31.4).[173] Prophylaxis for infective endocarditis is recommended for

BOX 31.4 Recommendations for Preoperative Bridging Anticoagulation Therapy in Patients With Mechanical Heart Valves

Class I (Recommended)

- Continuation of vitamin K antagonist anticoagulation with a therapeutic INR is recommended in patients with mechanical heart valves undergoing minor procedures (e.g., dental extractions, cataract removal) where bleeding is easily controlled.
- Temporary interruption of vitamin K antagonist anticoagulation, without bridging agents while the INR is subtherapeutic, is recommended in patients with a bileaflet mechanical AVR and no other risk factors* for thrombosis who are undergoing invasive or surgical procedures.

Class IIa (Is Reasonable)

- Bridging anticoagulation therapy during the time interval when the INR is subtherapeutic preoperatively is reasonable on an individualized basis—with the risks of bleeding weighed against the benefits of thromboembolism prevention—for patients who are undergoing invasive or surgical procedures with a (i) mechanical AVR and any thromboembolic risk factor, (ii) older-generation mechanical AVR, or (iii) mechanical MVR.

*Risk factors include atrial fibrillation, previous thromboembolism, hypercoagulable condition, older-generation ball-cage or tilting disc mechanical valve, left ventricular systolic dysfunction, and ≥ 2 mechanical valves.

AVR, Aortic valve replacement; *INR*, international normalized ratio; *MVR*, mitral valve replacement.

From Nishimura RA, Otto CM, Bonow RO, et al. 2017 AHA/ACC Focused Update of the 2014 AHA/ACC Guideline for the Management of Patients With Valvular Heart Disease: A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Circulation.* 2017;135:e1159–e1195.

specific procedures (see section on "Infective Endocarditis Prophylaxis").[173]

Infective Endocarditis Prophylaxis

Patients at risk for infective endocarditis (e.g., valve replacement, complex congenital heart disease, previous endocarditis) and scheduled for procedures with the potential for transient bacteremia must be identified preoperatively. Current guidelines have dramatically scaled back the indications for prophylaxis. For example, current ACC/AHA guidelines recommended prophylaxis only for patients who are both at increased risk of developing infective endocarditis and also experiencing adverse outcomes from endocarditis (Box 31.5).[173] These target patient subgroups are also with those identified in the most recent ESC guidelines.[180] Prophylaxis is required when eligible patients undergo dental procedures that involve manipulation of gingival tissue, manipulation of the periapical region of teeth, or perforation of the oral mucosa. Prophylaxis is not required when these same individuals undergo nondental procedures (e.g., transesophageal echocardiography, gastroscopy, colonoscopy, cystoscopy, dermatological procedures), unless there is active infection at the procedure site.[173]

Rhythm Disturbances on the Preoperative Electrocardiogram

Arrhythmias and conduction disturbances are common during the perioperative period. Supraventricular and ventricular arrhythmias are associated with increased perioperative risk, both because of the arrhythmias themselves and because they are markers for cardiopulmonary disease. Uncontrolled atrial fibrillation (i.e., causing symptoms or hemodynamic compromise) and high-risk ventricular tachyarrhythmias (see section on "Ventricular Arrhythmias") are high-risk conditions that warrant postponement of elective surgery until evaluation and stabilization are complete. Rapid atrial fibrillation (rates > 100 beats/min), symptomatic bradycardia, or high-grade heart block (e.g., third-degree heart block) also warrants postponement of elective procedures to facilitate evaluation, stabilization, and possible cardiology evaluation.

First-degree atrioventricular (AV) block is defined as a PR interval exceeding 0.20 ms with an associated heart rate of 50 to 100 beats/min; it is considered generally benign. Second-degree heart block is defined by a PR interval exceeding 0.20 ms and the presence of some blocked atrial beats (resulting in a dropped or missing QRS complex after a P wave). There are two types of second-degree block. Mobitz type I block (also called Wenckebach block) is characterized by progressive lengthening of the PR interval until the dropped beat occurs. It is a more benign block that is related to AV nodal delay, easily responsive to atropine, and unlikely to progress to complete heart block. Mobitz type II block is characterized by a fixed and prolonged PR interval that does not change before the dropped QRS complex. It is related to an infranodal block, capable of progressing to complete heart block, and generally treated with a pacemaker (unless it is due to a reversible cause such as ischemia or drugs). Third-degree AV block or complete heart block, which is characterized by complete dissociation between the atrial and ventricular beats, requires pacemaker placement unless a reversible source is identified. A prolonged QT interval should prompt an evaluation of electrolytes (including magnesium and calcium), and search for any potentiating drugs. Syncope, presyncope, or a family history of sudden death in a patient with a prolonged QT interval mandates a cardiology consultation (see section on "Long QT Syndrome").

Three factors determine the need for permanent pacemaker treatment for an arrhythmia, namely whether the arrhythmia is associated with symptoms, where the conduction abnormality is located, and whether a reversible cause can be identified. Indications for perioperative pacemaker placement are the same as those in nonsurgical patients (common indications listed in Box 31.6).[181] In general, pacemaker placement is required for symptomatic bradycardia or conduction delays that lead to syncope or presyncope. Conduction disease below the AV node (i.e., in the His-Purkinje system) is also generally less stable and likely benefits from permanent pacemaker placement. The presence of such conduction disease is suggested by a normal or minimally prolonged PR interval, Mobitz type II block, and QRS complex abnormalities (BBB, fascicular block, or both).

BBBs can be classified as complete versus incomplete, and right bundle branch block (RBBB) versus LBBB. BBBs may be normal variants in some individuals, or the result of age-related fibrosis in the conduction system. Nonetheless, they can be associated with important underlying conditions. For example, LBBB may be related to structural heart disease (i.e., hypertensive heart disease, IHD, cardiomyopathies, valvular heart disease), while RBBB may be the result of elevated right ventricular pressures (i.e., pulmonary hypertension, cor pulmonale, pulmonary embolism), prior radiation exposure, myocarditis, and structural heart disease (i.e., IHD, cardiomyopathies, valvular heart disease, congenital heart disease). The presence of a BBB is not itself an indicator of increased perioperative cardiovascular risk,[182] especially after accounting for known clinical risk factors.[100] Nonetheless, data from the nonoperative

BOX 31.5 **Cardiac Conditions for Which Endocarditis Prophylaxis Is Recommended**

Previous infective endocarditis
Prosthetic cardiac valves, including transcatheter-implanted prostheses, and homografts
Prosthetic material used for cardiac valve repair, such as annuloplasty rings and chords
Unrepaired cyanotic congenital heart disease, including palliative shunts and conduits
Repaired congenital heart disease, with residual shunts or valvular regurgitation at the site of or adjacent to the site of a prosthetic patch or prosthetic device
Cardiac transplant with valve regurgitation due to a structurally abnormal valve

Prophylaxis is reasonable before dental procedures that involve manipulation of gingival tissue, manipulation of the periapical region of teeth, or perforation of the oral mucosa.

From Nishimura RA, Otto CM, Bonow RO, et al. 2017 AHA/ACC Focused Update of the 2014 AHA/ACC Guideline for the Management of Patients With Valvular Heart Disease: A Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Circulation.* 2017;135: e1159–e1195.

setting suggest that a recent onset or new diagnosis of a bundle branch should prompt a more extensive evaluation for undiagnosed cardiovascular disease. For example, LBBB is associated with increased risks of incident cardiovascular disease,[183] cardiovascular mortality,[183] and mortality in the nonoperative setting.[184] Additionally, RBBB is associated with increased risks of mortality in patients with suspected IHD, known IHD, and heart failure.[185,186] Based on this approach, if preoperative evaluation does not suggest significant pulmonary disease, IHD, structural heart disease, or Brugada syndrome (see section on "Brugada Syndrome"), no further preoperative evaluation of an isolated asymptomatic RBBB is warranted. Conversely, RBBB in a patient with known or suspected pulmonary disease (e.g., pulmonary hypertension) may suggest severe respiratory or vascular compromise; thus, consideration should be given to pulmonary evaluation and echocardiography if intermediate- or high-risk surgery is planned.

Atrial Fibrillation. Atrial fibrillation is a common arrhythmia characterized by a variable irregular ventricular response, and an absence of regular or organized atrial activity. The arrhythmia is classified as paroxysmal (i.e., terminates spontaneously or with intervention within 7 days of onset), persistent (i.e., fails to self-terminate within 7 days), long-standing persistent (i.e., lasts more than 12 months), or permanent (i.e., persistent atrial fibrillation where a joint decision has been made by the patient and clinician to no longer pursue a rhythm control strategy).[187] Atrial fibrillation can occur in the absence of any structural heart disease (previously termed "lone atrial fibrillation"), or in combination with underlying disorders. In high-income countries, hypertension and ischemic heart disease are the most common underlying disorders, while in low and middle-income countries, rheumatic heart disease is a very common associated condition. Other associated conditions include valvular heart disease, heart failure, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, congenital heart disease, obesity, diabetes mellitus, CKD, and increased age. Potentially reversible acute triggers for atrial fibrillation are hyperthyroidism and recent surgery (especially cardiac or thoracic surgery).

Affected individuals are at elevated risk for death, heart failure, thromboembolic events (i.e., stroke), and hospitalization. In the nonoperative setting, treatment involves ventricular rate control, consideration of rhythm control to restore sinus rhythm, and prevention of systemic embolization. In large randomized trials, strategies that focused on heart rate control versus rhythm control have shown similar effects on the risks of stroke or death.[188,189] The CHA_2DS_2-VASc score (Table 31.10) can be used to estimate the long-term systematic embolization risk in patients with atrial fibrillation.[190] Based on this score, patients can be classified as low-risk (0 points: 0.2% annualized stroke rate), intermediate-risk (1 point: 0.6% annualized stroke rate), or high-risk (≥2 points: >2.2% annualized stroke rate).[191] Based on strong randomized controlled trial data,[192] current ACC/AHA guidelines recommend long-term oral anticoagulation for patients with nonvalvular atrial fibrillation (i.e.,

BOX 31.6 Common Indications for a Permanent Pacemaker

Class I Indications

- Sinus bradycardia with symptoms due to the bradycardia (typically seen with heart rates less than 40 bpm or with frequent sinus pauses)
- Symptomatic chronotropic incompetence (i.e., impaired heart rate response to exercise)
- Third-degree AV block
- Advanced second-degree AV block (block of ≥2 consecutive *P* waves)
- Symptomatic Mobitz I or II second-degree AV block
- Mobitz II second-degree AV block with a widened QRS or chronic bifascicular block, regardless of symptoms
- Exercise-induced second- or third-degree AV block

Class II Indications

- Sinus bradycardia (heart rate < 40 bpm) with symptoms suggestive (but not definitively so) of bradycardia
- Sinus node dysfunction with a history of unexplained syncope
- Chronic heart rates < 40 bpm in an awake but minimally symptomatic patient
- Asymptomatic Mobitz II second-degree AV block with a narrow QRS interval
- Bifascicular or trifascicular block associated with syncope possibly related to intermittent third-degree heart block
- First-degree AV block with a very long PR interval (which effectively leads to AV dissociation and hemodynamic compromise)

AV, Atrioventricular; *bpm,* beats per minute.
Class I Indications: *Permanent* pacing is definitely beneficial, useful, and effective.
Class II Indications: *Permanent* pacing may be indicated but there is conflicting evidence and/or divergence of opinion.
From Epstein AE, DiMarco JP, Ellenbogen KA, et al. 2012 ACCF/AHA/HRS focused update incorporated into the ACCF/AHA/HRS 2008 guidelines for device-based therapy of cardiac rhythm abnormalities: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines and the Heart Rhythm Society. *Circulation.* 2013;127:e283–e352.

TABLE 31.10 Scoring Scheme for the CHA_2DS_2-VASc Score

Risk Factor	Points
Heart Failure Associated signs and symptoms, or left ventricular systolic dysfunction	1
Hypertension	1
Age ≥ 75 years	2
Diabetes mellitus	1
Previous stroke, transient ischemic attack, or thromboembolism	2
Vascular Disease Myocardial infarction, peripheral artery disease, or aortic plaque	1
Age 65–74 years	1
Female sex	1

CHADS2, Congestive heart failure, hypertension, age > 75, diabetes, prior stroke/transient ischemic attack schema; CHA2DS2-VASc, Birmingham 2009 schema.
From Lip GY, Nieuwlaat R, Pisters R, et al. Refining clinical risk stratification for predicting stroke and thromboembolism in atrial fibrillation using a novel risk factor-based approach: the Euro heart survey on atrial fibrillation. *Chest.* 2010;137:263–272.

unrelated to mitral stenosis or prosthetic heart valves) and CHA_2DS_2-VASc scores of 2 or more, and support omitting anticoagulation in individuals with CHA_2DS_2-VASc scores of zero.[187] There is more uncertainty about the best treatment for individuals with CHA_2DS_2-VASc scores of 1. Consistent with this uncertainty, ACC/AHA guidelines indicate that (1) oral anticoagulant therapy, (2) aspirin therapy, or (3) omitting anticoagulation are all reasonable approaches in these intermediate-risk patients.[187] With respect to specific anticoagulant therapy, patients can be prescribed either a vitamin K antagonist (e.g., warfarin) or DOAC (e.g., dabigatran, rivaroxaban, edoxaban, apixaban) as reasonable options for patients with nonvalvular atrial fibrillation.

Although atrial fibrillation has typically been ignored during preoperative cardiac risk assessment, accumulating evidence challenges this approach in two main respects. Specifically, preexisting atrial fibrillation appears to be an indicator of increased perioperative risk. For example, in a large international multicenter prospective cohort study, preexisting atrial fibrillation was associated with an elevated risk of postoperative cardiovascular events (i.e., stroke, cardiovascular death, myocardial injury, heart failure, or cardiac arrest),[193] but not death.[77] In an American population-based retrospective cohort study, chronic atrial fibrillation was associated with a significantly higher risk of perioperative stroke.[194]

The preoperative evaluation of patients with atrial fibrillation focuses on underlying conditions (e.g., ischemic heart disease), complications (e.g., heart failure, stroke), rate or rhythm control strategies, and anticoagulation strategies. Patients with rapid ventricular rates (>100 beats/min) typically require rate control before any elective surgery. Patients with both atrial fibrillation and slow ventricular rate without rate-controlling medications may have sick sinus syndrome. They should be questioned regarding any previous episodes of syncope or presyncope. Any long-term β-adrenergic blockers, digoxin, calcium channel blockers, or antiarrhythmic medications should be continued.

The critical component for preoperative planning for most patients with atrial fibrillation is appropriate perioperative management of long-term anticoagulants. This management should ideally be conducted collaboratively with the treating physician and responsible surgeon. There are three overarching issues, namely (1) whether temporary preoperative discontinuation is needed, (2) when oral anticoagulants should be discontinued, and (3) whether bridging therapy with LMWH is required.[195] It is reasonable to continue vitamin K antagonist therapy if an individual does not have patient-related risk factors for bleeding (e.g., liver disease, abnormal renal function, prior bleeding complications), and is scheduled for a procedure without important bleeding risk (e.g., dental extraction, simple cutaneous procedures, pacemaker insertion). Otherwise, patients should have their anticoagulant medications temporarily discontinued before surgery, including all patients who are receiving DOACs or might need neuraxial anesthesia. If a decision to temporarily discontinue oral anticoagulants is made, vitamin K antagonists should be stopped 5 days before surgery. A longer discontinuation period may be needed for initial international normalized ratio (INR) values greater than 3.0. Ideally, the INR should be rechecked within 24 hours before surgery,[195] and a low dose of oral vitamin K administered for any INR result above 1.5. The timing of preoperative discontinuation of DOACs (Table 31.11) should be guided by the specific drug prescribed, expected procedural bleeding risk, renal function (based on estimated glomerular filtration rate [GFR]), and planned use of neuraxial anesthesia.[195,196] The ongoing multicenter Perioperative Anticoagulant Use for Surgery Evaluation prospective cohort study is expected to provide more high-quality data on the safety of a further simplified strategy for preoperative discontinuation of DOACs (Table 31.12).[197]

Accumulating evidence indicates that most patients with nonvalvular atrial fibrillation do not require bridging therapy if their anticoagulant therapy is temporarily discontinued before surgery. For example, in the multicenter Bridging Anticoagulation in Patients Who Require Temporary Interruption of Warfarin Therapy for an Elective Invasive Procedure and Surgery (BRIDGE) randomized trial, placebo was non-inferior to LMWH bridging therapy with respect to risks of arterial thromboembolism following perioperative interruption of vitamin K antagonist therapy.[198] In addition, bridging therapy led to increased risks of major bleeding. When interpreting the trial data, the challenge pertains to their generalizability to patients in clinical practice. For example, about 62% of the 1884

TABLE 31.11 Expert Consensus Recommendations on Preoperative Direct Oral Anticoagulant Discontinuation (Recommended Time Interval from Last Preoperative Dose)

Direct Thrombin Inhibitor (i.e., Dabigatran)	Direct Factor Xa Inhibitor (i.e., Rivaroxaban, Edoxaban, Apixaban)
LOW BLEEDING RISK PROCEDURES (ACC RECOMMENDATIONS)*	
eGFR ≥ 80 mL/min: ≥ 24 h eGFR 50–79 mL/min: ≥ 36 h eGFR 30–49 mL/min: ≥ 48 h eGFR 15–29 mL/min: ≥ 72 h eGFR < 15 mL/min: No data	eGFR ≥ 30 mL/min: ≥ 24 h eGFR 15–29 mL/min: ≥ 36 h eGFR < 15 mL/min: No data (consider ≥ 48 h)
UNCERTAIN, INTERMEDIATE, OR HIGH BLEEDING RISK PROCEDURES (ACC RECOMMENDATIONS)*	
eGFR ≥ 80 mL/min: ≥ 48 h eGFR 50–79 mL/min: ≥ 72 h eGFR 30–49 mL/min: ≥ 96 h eGFR 15–29 mL/min: ≥ 120 h eGFR < 15 mL/min: No data	eGFR ≥ 30 mL/min: ≥ 48 h eGFR < 30 mL/min: No data (consider ≥ 72 h)
PLANNED NEURAXIAL ANESTHESIA (ASRA RECOMMENDATIONS)†	
Uniform approach: 120 h Approach based on eGFR ▪ eGFR ≥ 80 mL/min: ≥ 72 h ▪ eGFR 50–79 mL/min: ≥ 96 h ▪ eGFR 30–49 mL/min: ≥ 120 h ▪ eGFR < 30 mL/min: Not recommended	72 h

ACC, American College of Cardiology; *ASRA,* American Society of Regional Anesthesiologists; *eGFR,* estimated glomerular filtration rate (Cockcroft-Gault equation).

*From Doherty JU, Gluckman TJ, Hucker WJ, et al. 2017 ACC Expert Consensus Decision Pathway for Periprocedural Management of Anticoagulation in Patients With Nonvalvular Atrial Fibrillation: A Report of the American College of Cardiology Clinical Expert Consensus Document Task Force. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2017;69:871–898.

†From Horlocker TT, Vandermeulen E, Kopp SL, et al. Regional anesthesia in the patient receiving antithrombotic or thrombolytic therapy: American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine Evidence-Based Guidelines (Fourth Edition). *Reg Anesth Pain Med.* 2018;43:263–309.

TABLE 31.12 Simplified Protocol for Preoperative Direct Oral Anticoagulant Discontinuation—as Assessed in the Perioperative Anticoagulant Use for Surgery Evaluation Study

Direct Thrombin Inhibitor (i.e., Dabigatran)	Direct Factor Xa Inhibitor (i.e., Rivaroxaban, Apixaban)
LOW BLEEDING RISK PROCEDURES (NO PLANNED NEURAXIAL ANESTHESIA)	
eGFR ≥ 50 mL/min: last dose 2 days before surgery eGFR 30–49 mL/min: last dose 4 days before surgery	eGFR ≥ 30 mL/min: last dose 2 days before surgery
HIGH BLEEDING RISK PROCEDURES (NO PLANNED NEURAXIAL ANESTHESIA)	
eGFR ≥ 50 mL/min: last dose 3 days before surgery eGFR 30–49 mL/min: last dose 5 days before surgery	eGFR ≥ 30 mL/min: last dose 3 days before surgery

eGFR, Estimated glomerular filtration rate*

*Should be calculated using the Cockcroft-Gault equation.

From Douketis JD, Spyropoulos AC, Anderson JM, et al. The Perioperative Anticoagulant Use for Surgery Evaluation (PAUSE) Study for patients on a direct oral anticoagulant who need an elective surgery or procedure: design and rationale. *Thromb Haemost*. 2017;117: 2415–2424.

participants in the BRIDGE trial had an expected 1-year stroke rate less than 5% (i.e., equivalent to CHA_2DS_2-VASc score ≤ 4), while about 14% had an expected 1-year stroke rate over 10% (equivalent to CHA_2DS_2-VASc score ≥ 7). To help clinicians better navigate clinical decision making, the ACC published a 2017 expert consensus report on perioperative anticoagulation management in nonvalvular atrial fibrillation.[195] In the case of vitamin K antagonist therapy, the recommended approach is to omit bridging therapy in low-risk patients who have CHA_2DS_2-VASc scores of 4 or less and no prior stroke, TIA, or systemic embolization. Conversely, bridging therapy should be considered for high-risk patients with CHA_2DS_2-VASc scores of 7 or more, recent (i.e., prior 3 months) stroke, TIA, or systemic embolization. For intermediate-risk patients (i.e., those not meeting either the low-risk or high-risk criteria), bridging therapy should be considered if there is no significant bleeding risk and a more remote time (more than 3 months) of stroke, TIA, or systemic embolization. Bridging therapy is generally not needed after preoperative interruption of DOACs because of their relatively short half-lives.

Supraventricular Arrhythmias. Supraventricular tachycardia can result from rapidly firing ectopic atrial foci with rapid conduction through the AV node, or from a reentry mechanism. Pathways for a reentry mechanism typically involve the AV node-Purkinje system and an accessory reentry pathway. In a reentry mechanism, the cycle self-perpetuates because conduction occurs down one pathway and up the other. Pharmacologic AV blockade (i.e., adenosine, verapamil, β-adrenergic blockers) can help slow the ventricular rate in most supraventricular tachycardias, with the exception of Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome. WPW syndrome is characterized by the presence of an accessory pathway (bundle of Kent) that permits *both* retrograde and antegrade conduction. Antegrade conduction over the accessory pathway results in a short PR interval (<0.12 ms) and a slurring of the upstroke of the QRS complex (termed a delta wave). Individuals with WPW syndrome are predisposed to supraventricular tachycardia. Additionally, treatment of supraventricular tachycardia in affected individuals with AV nodal blocking drugs can paradoxically increase conduction over the accessory pathway, thus potentially causing ventricular fibrillation. Thus, *acute* supraventricular tachycardia in these patients should be treated with electrical cardioversion (especially if hemodynamically unstable), ibutilide,[199] or procainamide. Long-term management of WPW syndrome typically involves catheter ablation of the recurrent accessory pathway. Long-term antiarrhythmic medications should be continued perioperatively in patients with known supraventricular tachycardia.[9]

Ventricular Arrhythmias. Ventricular ectopic beats can be differentiated from atrial ectopic beats by a wide QRS complex (>0.12 ms) and absence of an associated P-wave. To help predict the risk of sudden death, ventricular arrhythmias may be classified based on the type of rhythm disturbance and presence of underlying heart disease.

- *Benign* ventricular arrhythmias include isolated ventricular premature beats (VPBs) without associated heart disease. Affected individuals have no increased risk of sudden cardiac death, and do not need further cardiology evaluation.
- *Potentially lethal* arrhythmias include more than 30 VPBs per hour, or nonsustained ventricular tachycardia in association with underlying heart disease. Affected individuals are at moderately high risk of sudden cardiac arrest and may benefit from an ICD. They also require cardiology evaluation and echocardiography, along with the possible need for cardiac stress testing, coronary angiography, and electrophysiology testing.
- *Lethal* arrhythmias include sustained ventricular tachycardia, ventricular fibrillation, and VPBs associated with underlying heart disease, depressed cardiac function, and hemodynamic compromise. Affected individuals are at high risk for sudden cardiac arrest, and likely benefit from an ICD. They also require cardiology evaluation and echocardiography, along with possible cardiac stress testing, coronary angiography, and electrophysiology testing. In general, reversible causes of ventricular arrhythmias (e.g., hypokalemia, ischemia, acidosis, hypomagnesemia, drug toxicity, endocrine dysfunction) should be sought out and treated. Any long-term antiarrhythmic medications should be continued perioperatively.[9]

Long QT Syndrome. The long QT syndrome (LQTS) is a myocardial repolarization disorder associated with a prolonged QT interval. The QT interval is measured using a 12-lead ECG (preferably leads II and V5) from the onset of the QRS complex to the end of the T wave. Since the interval varies inversely with heart rate, a corrected QT interval (QT_c) can be calculated, with the most common formula being:

$$QT_c = \frac{\text{QT interval}}{\sqrt{\text{RR interval}}}$$

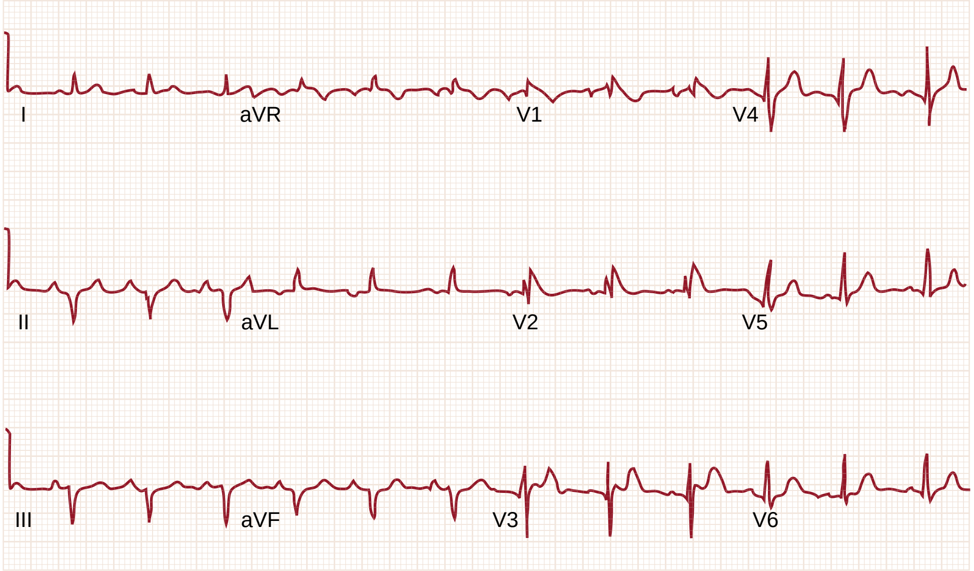


Fig. 31.7 Typical 12-lead electrocardiogram in a patient with Brugada syndrome.

In adults, an abnormally prolonged QTc is defined as a value exceeding the 99th percentile. The QTc is prolonged if exceeding 0.48 seconds in women and 0.47 seconds in men.[200] Individuals with LQTS are predisposed to developing *torsades de pointes*, a polymorphic ventricular tachycardia with frequent variations of the QRS axis or morphology. Affected patients are generally asymptomatic in the absence of arrhythmias. Conversely, after the onset of an arrhythmia, they may develop palpitations, syncope, seizures, and sudden cardiac death.

LQTS may be either congenital (i.e., genetic) or acquired. Causes of acquired LQTS include antiarrhythmic drugs (e.g., quinidine, sotalol, dofetilide, ibutilide), psychotropic medications (e.g., haloperidol, methadone), erythromycin, cisapride, and metabolic abnormalities (i.e., hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia, hypocalcemia). Notably, while amiodarone does markedly prolong the QT interval, it is rarely associated with *torsades de pointes* except in association with hypokalemia. The 2010 ACC/AHA scientific statement on the prevention of *torsades de pointes* suggests that QT_c be documented before initiation or after an increased dose of QT-prolonging drugs, and thereafter at least every 8 to 12 hours.[200] Other components of treatment for LQTS include β-adrenergic blockers (congenital LQTS), ICD implantation, and correction of underlying metabolic disorders.

Brugada Syndrome. Brugada syndrome is a rare cause of sudden cardiac arrest that occurs in the absence of structural heart disease. It is an autosomal dominant disorder that is more common in men, rarely diagnosed in children, and often affects individuals of Asian ethnicity. Patients usually have normal findings on echocardiography, stress testing, and cardiac magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). The most significant clinical manifestations are ventricular arrhythmias, syncope, and sudden death. Patients may also be at increased risk of atrial arrhythmias, especially atrial fibrillation. Brugada syndrome is characterized by an ECG with pseudo-RBBB and persistent ST-segment elevation in leads V_1 to V_3 (Fig. 31.7). Unlike usual RBBB, a widened S wave in the left lateral leads is usually absent in Brugada syndrome. In some patients, these ECG changes are transient and provoked by medications. Asymptomatic patients who have these typical ECG features but no other associated clinical criteria have been described as having "Brugada pattern." The website www.brugadadrugs.org lists drugs that are associated with adverse events in Brugada syndrome. These medications include some commonly used anesthetic drugs, such as propofol and bupivacaine. The syndrome has no proven pharmacologic treatment; indeed, class I antiarrhythmic medications (e.g., flecainide, procainamide) and β-adrenergic blockers can worsen the risk of lethal arrhythmias. ICD implantation is the standard of care for Brugada syndrome.

Cardiovascular Implantable Electronic Devices

Cardiovascular implantable electronic devices (CIEDs), which include both permanent pacemakers and ICDs, are very common. For example, in the United States alone, about 190,000 permanent pacemakers and 145,000 ICDs are implanted every year (see Chapter 38).[201,202] The preoperative evaluation should characterize the device with respect to type, age, manufacturer, model number, current settings, and timing of recent interrogation. Patients frequently carry a manufacturers' identification card with some of this relevant information. Permanent pacemaker capabilities are usually classified using a five-letter code (Table 31.13).[203] The anesthesiologist should also evaluate any coexisting cardiac disease because patients with CIEDs invariably have conditions such as heart failure, IHD, valvular heart disease, or potentially lethal arrhythmias—all of which have perioperative implications. It is especially important to note device features (e.g., rate modulation) that can malfunction with perioperative electromagnetic and other interferences. Sources of electromagnetic interference during the perioperative period include electrocautery (especially monopolar), radiofrequency ablation, lithotripsy devices, and radiation therapy, while direct mechanical interference can occur with guidewire movement during

TABLE 31.13 Pacemaker Nomenclature

Position I	Position II	Position III	Position IV	Position V
Chamber(s) Paced	Chamber(s) Sensed	Response to Sensing	Rate Modulation	Multisite Pacing
O = None	**O** = None	**O** = None	**O** = None	**O** = None
A = Atrium	**A** = Atrium	**I** = Inhibited	**R** = Rate modulation	**A** = Atrium
V = Ventricle	**V** = Ventricle	**T** = Triggered		**V** = Ventricle
D = Dual (A + V)	**D** = Dual (A + V)	**D** = Dual (T + I)		**D** = Dual (A + V)

From Bernstein AD, Daubert JC, Fletcher RD, et al. The revised NASPE/BPEG generic code for antibradycardia, adaptive-rate, and multisite pacing. North American Society of Pacing and Electrophysiology/British Pacing and Electrophysiology Group. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 2002;25:260–264.

central venous catheter insertion.[204] These sources of interference can result in CIED malfunction, such as inappropriate ICD discharge or inappropriate changes in pacing rates. Especially during delicate surgical procedures (e.g., intracranial, spinal, ocular), an unexpected ICD discharge with movement of the patient can have catastrophic results.

In general, the anesthesiologist conducting a preoperative evaluation of a patient with a CIED should collaboratively plan perioperative management with the relevant CIED care team (Box 31.7).[7,204] The CIED care team has been defined as the physicians and physician extenders who monitor the patient's CIED function. Ideally, patients with CIEDs should have these devices interrogated preoperatively, with recommendations that this be performed within the prior 6 months for an ICD, prior 12 months for a permanent pacemaker, and prior 3 to 6 months for any CRT device. Key issues for consideration when planning the perioperative care of a patient with a CIED include whether the patient has an ICD, whether the patient is pacemaker-dependent, and what happens with magnet placement over the CIED. In general, a magnet suspends antitachyarrhythmia therapy in most ICDs, and switch pacemakers (but not ICDs) to an asynchronous pacing mode. There is some disagreement among guidelines whether to place a magnet over the CIED during the intraoperative period,[204,205] versus arrange for temporary device reprogramming (i.e., switch pacemaker to asynchronous mode, and disable antitachyarrhythmia ICD).[206] Especially given the complexity of newer generation CIEDs, routine magnet use should not be viewed as an alternative for appropriate preoperative preparation. Collaboration with the CIED care team is the preferred approach for managing these patients in an individualized manner. Preoperative recommendations for CIEDs are presented in Box 31.8. In addition, these patients require a preoperative ECG. A chest radiograph is not mandatory before surgery but can reveal the device location and manufacturer's code.

Peripheral Artery Disease

PAD, which is defined as atherosclerosis of the large-sized and medium-sized noncardiac arterial vasculature, affects about 200 million people worldwide.[207] PAD is diagnosed based on an ankle-brachial index (ABI or ratio of ankle-to-arm systolic blood pressure) of less than 0.90.[208] The disease generally affects lower extremity vessels more than upper extremity vessels. PAD progresses variably across individuals, from an initially asymptomatic phase to intermittent claudication (i.e., extremity pain with activity) to critical limb ischemia. Risk factors for PAD include increased age, smoking, hypertension, diabetes mellitus, CKD, and known atherosclerosis in other sites (e.g., IHD). Conversely, patients with PAD likely have atherosclerosis in other sites (e.g., heart, brain). For example, a systematic review in the nonoperative setting found a prevalence of IHD in individuals with PAD ranged from 60% based on cardiac stress testing to 90% based on coronary angiography.[209] Individuals meeting diagnostic criteria for PAD (i.e., ABI < 0.90) have elevated risks for subsequent myocardial infarction, acute stroke, or cardiovascular death in the nonoperative setting.[210] PAD is also a marker of increased risk in surgical patients. An ABI less than 0.90 is independently associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular complications after noncardiac surgery.[211] Known PAD is also associated with elevated risks of mortality after major noncardiac surgery.[77,78] In addition, claudication related to PAD generally

BOX 31.7 Proposed Principles for Cardiovascular Implantable Electronic Device Management

The perioperative management of CIEDs must be individualized to the patient, type of CIED, and procedure being performed. A single recommendation for all CIED patients is not appropriate.

The CIED care team is defined as the physicians and physician extenders who monitor the CIED function of the patient.

The surgical or procedural team should communicate with the CIED care team to identify the type of procedure and likely risk of EMI.

The CIED care team should communicate with the procedure team to deliver a prescription for the perioperative management of patients with CIEDs.

For most patients, the prescription can be made from a review of the records of the CIED clinic. A small percentage of patients may require consultation from CIED specialists if the information is not available.

It is inappropriate to have industry-employed allied health professionals independently develop this prescription.

CIED, Cardiovascular implantable electronic devices; *EMI,* electromagnetic interference.

From Crossley GH, Poole JE, Rozner MA, et al. The Heart Rhythm Society (HRS)/American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Expert Consensus Statement on the perioperative management of patients with implantable defibrillators, pacemakers and arrhythmia monitors: facilities and patient management: executive summary. *Heart Rhythm.* 2011;8:e1–e18.

BOX 31.8 **Preoperative Recommendations for Cardiovascular Implantable Electronic Devices**

- Inactivation of ICDs is not absolutely necessary for all procedures
- Not all pacemakers need to be altered to pace asynchronously in all patients or for all procedures
- Pacemakers can be reprogrammed or magnets can be used to force pacemakers to pace asynchronously to prevent inhibition
- ICDs can be reprogrammed or magnets can be used to inhibit ICD arrhythmia detection and tachyarrhythmia functions
- Magnets can/will *not* force pacemakers in ICDs to pace asynchronously
- Inactivation of ICDs is recommended for all procedures above the umbilicus involving electrocautery or radiofrequency ablation
- It is preferable to change to asynchronous pacing in pacemaker-dependent patients for procedures involving electrocautery or radiofrequency ablation above the umbilicus

The procedure team provides the following information to the CIED team:

- Type of procedure
- Anatomic site of procedure
- Patient position during procedure
- Will electrocautery (and type of cautery) be used?
- Are there other sources of EMI?
- Other issues such as likelihood of damage to leads (e.g., chest procedures), anticipated large blood loss, and surgery in close proximity to CIED

The CIED care team provides the following information to the procedure team:

- Type of device (e.g., pacemaker, ICD)
- Indication for device (e.g., sick sinus syndrome, primary or secondary prevention of lethal arrhythmias)
- Programming (e.g., pacing mode, rate, rate responsive, heart rates for shock delivery)
- Is the patient pacemaker-dependent, and what is the underlying heart rate/rhythm?
- Magnet response
    - Pacing rate
    - Is the device responsive to a magnet?
    - Will ICD functions resume automatically with magnet removal?
    - Does magnet need to be placed off-center?

CIED, Cardiovascular implantable electronic device; *EMI*, electromagnetic interference; *ICD*, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.

Modified from Crossley GH, Poole JE, Rozner MA, et al. The Heart Rhythm Society (HRS)/American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Expert Consensus Statement on the perioperative management of patients with implantable defibrillators, pacemakers and implantable monitors: facilities and patient management: executive summary. *Heart Rhythm*. 2011;8:e1–e18.

limits functional capacity and thereby masks the symptoms of underlying IHD or heart failure.

The preoperative evaluation of PAD should encompass related symptoms (e.g., intermittent claudication, rest pain), risk factors (e.g., hypertension, diabetes mellitus, smoking, CKD), and associated comorbidities (e.g., IHD, CVD). Arterial blood pressure should be measured in both upper extremities, along with the presence of peripheral arterial pulses. Auscultation for bruits over the abdomen and femoral arteries, as well as palpation for abdominal masses, should be part of the vascular examination. Typical preoperative laboratory testing includes an ECG and blood sampling for a complete blood count, creatinine concentration, and glucose concentration. These individuals may often need further specific workup for IHD with testing such as natriuretic peptides and cardiac stress testing (see section on "Ischemic Heart Disease"). Depending on concomitant risk factors and cardiovascular medications, patients may be on long-term therapy with aspirin, $P2Y_{12}$ inhibitors (e.g., clopidogrel), and DOACs. DOACs should be temporarily discontinued before surgery (see section on "Atrial Fibrillation"). In most cases, $P2Y_{12}$ inhibitor therapy should also be interrupted before surgery, with the possible exception of cases with very recent coronary stent implantation (see section on "Coronary Stents"). As a general strategy for patients undergoing noncardiac surgery, continuing aspirin perioperatively does not prevent cardiovascular complications except in those with drug-eluting coronary stents,[136] but leads to an increased risk of major bleeding (which is a risk factor for perioperative stroke).[132] Nonetheless, selective continuation of aspirin should be considered in patients undergoing vascular surgery (to mitigate risks of bypass graft occlusion), as well as those with high-risk IHD, prior PCI, or recent stroke (i.e., previous 9 months).[212]

PULMONARY DISORDERS

See Chapters 13 and 53.

Asthma

The Global Initiative for Asthma (http://ginasthma.org), describes asthma as a "*heterogeneous disease, usually characterized by chronic airway inflammation. It is defined by the history of respiratory symptoms such as wheeze, shortness of breath, chest tightness, and cough that vary over time and in intensity, together with variable expiratory airflow limitation.*" These episodes of airflow obstruction within the lung are often reversible, either spontaneously or with treatment. The airway obstruction can be precipitated by irritants (e.g., smoke), allergens, infections, medications, or airway instrumentation. Worldwide, it is estimated that asthma afflicts more than 300 million people, and is responsible for one in every 250 deaths.[213] Asthma is classified as intermittent, persistent mild, persistent moderate, and persistent severe, based on symptoms, nighttime awakenings, short-acting bronchodilator requirement, functional impairment, and pulmonary function test (PFT) abnormalities. Although spirometry is the preferred diagnostic test for asthma, a normal result does not exclude asthma. Typical findings on PFTs are a reduction in the ratio of the forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV_1) to forced vital capacity (FVC)—with a ratio below 0.7 being indicative of airflow obstruction. Importantly, normal initial PFT results do not necessarily exclude asthma. If results are normal but a diagnosis of asthma is still strongly suspected, a methacholine challenge test or a trial of bronchodilator therapy should be performed. Patients with mild well-controlled asthma have no greater perioperative risk than do individuals without asthma.[214] In addition, PFTs, while helping to establish the diagnosis of asthma, generally have no perioperative prognostic value in these patients.

In a patient with known asthma, the anesthesiologist should inquire about dyspnea, chest tightness, cough (especially nocturnal), recent exacerbations (with associated triggers), therapy (especially corticosteroids), prior hospitalizations, prior emergency department visits, prior critical care unit admissions, prior need for endotracheal intubation, and recent upper respiratory tract infections (see section on "Upper Respiratory Tract Infections"). It is helpful to ask patients to compare their current asthma symptoms to their "normal" or "best" status based on symptoms, exercise tolerance, and medication requirements. The physical examination should assess the quality of breath sounds, quantity of air movement, degree of wheezing, and oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry. The degree of wheezing does not always correlate with the severity of bronchoconstriction. With severe obstruction, airflow is dangerously restricted, and wheezing diminishes. Wheezing is common in asthma but it is not specific for the disease. For example, wheezing may be present in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), gastroesophageal reflux disease, vocal cord dysfunction, tracheal stenosis, bronchial stenosis, cystic fibrosis, allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis, and heart failure. Observing the degree of accessory muscle use can also help gauge the severity of bronchoconstriction.

Arterial blood gases are not necessary unless the patient is having a severe acute exacerbation. Patients taking oral corticosteroids should have their blood glucose checked. Chest radiography is needed only if an infection or pneumothorax is suspected. Bronchodilators, corticosteroids (inhaled and oral), and any antibiotics must be continued on the day of surgery. β-adrenergic agonists are a useful prophylactic intervention to lower the risk of bronchospasm after induction of anesthesia. This therapy can be supplemented with a short preoperative course of oral corticosteroids (prednisone 20 mg-60 mg daily for 3-5 days) in any newly diagnosed or poorly controlled asthmatic patient.[215] Importantly, some asthmatics on chronic corticosteroid treatment may need perioperative "stress dose steroids" (see section on "Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Disorders").

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease

COPD is a chronic respiratory disease that affects 175 million people worldwide, and causes 3 million deaths every year.[216] It is characterized by persistent airflow obstruction that occasionally is partially reversible (see Chapters 13 and 53). It may be the result of smoking, environmental pollutants (e.g., air pollution), α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, chronic infections, and long-standing asthma. The Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease describes COPD as a "*common, preventable, and treatable disease that is characterized by persistent respiratory symptoms and airflow limitation that is due to airway and/or alveolar abnormalities usually caused by significant exposure to noxious particles or gases*" (http://www.goldcopd.org). COPD includes subtypes such as "chronic bronchitis" and "emphysema." Chronic bronchitis is defined as a chronic productive cough for 3 months in each of 2 successive years in a patient in whom other causes of chronic cough (e.g., bronchiectasis) have been excluded. Emphysema refers to pathologic structural changes in the lung that can occur with COPD, including enlargement of airspaces distal to the terminal bronchioles, as well as destruction of these airspace walls. The severity of COPD is classified based on both spirometry findings and symptoms. Once a patient has evidence of airway obstruction on spirometry (FEV_1/FVC ratio < 0.7), mild FEV_1 airflow limitation is at or greater than 80% of predicted, *moderate* limitation is FEV_1 between 50% and 79% of predicted, *severe* limitation is FEV_1 between 30% and 49% of predicted, and *very severe* limitation is FEV_1 is less than 30% of predicted. Symptom severity is classified separately using validated scales.[217] A COPD exacerbation is defined as "*an acute worsening of respiratory symptoms that result in additional therapy*" (http://www.goldcopd.org).

The preoperative evaluation of patients with COPD is similar to that of patients with asthma, with an additional emphasis on signs of recent infection (e.g., changes in sputum amount or color). A barrel chest and pursed-lip breathing also suggest advanced disease. COPD is a known risk factor for postoperative pulmonary complications (see section on "Postoperative Pulmonary Complications").[218] Nonetheless, there is no established threshold of COPD severity indicative of highly prohibitive perioperative risk. In general, PFTs are not useful for estimating perioperative risk in patients with COPD, with the exception of individuals undergoing lung resection surgery (see Chapter 53 and section on "Patients Scheduled for Lung Resection"). In general, preoperative PFTs are indicated when there is uncertainty as to whether the patient's lung function is optimized, or uncertainty as to the underlying basis for unexplained dyspnea. Patients who are hypoxic, or require supplemental oxygen, may benefit from further testing, including arterial blood gas measurement, in addition to routine measurement of oxygen saturation using pulse oximetry. A chest radiograph is useful only if infection or bullous disease is suspected. A key goal in the preoperative preparation of a patient with COPD is optimizing pulmonary function before any elective surgery. Accordingly, patients with a recent exacerbation may require more intensive bronchodilator treatment, brief courses of antibiotics or oral corticosteroids, and possible deferment of elective surgery. Smoking cessation should be encouraged for any ongoing smokers (see section on "Smokers and Second-Hand Smoke Exposure"). Additionally, consideration can be given to preoperative inspiratory muscle training and physiotherapy in high-risk patients, and discussion about the potential respiratory benefits of neuraxial anesthesia or analgesia (see section on "Postoperative Pulmonary Complications"). Inhalers and other long-term medications for COPD should be continued on the day of surgery, and individuals on chronic corticosteroid treatment may need "stress dose steroids" (see section on "Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Disorders").

Restrictive Pulmonary Disorders

Restrictive lung disease is characterized by a reduced total lung capacity and may be related to both pulmonary or extrapulmonary conditions. Pulmonary causes include idiopathic interstitial pneumonia, prior lung resection, pulmonary fibrosis, and interstitial lung disease secondary to connective tissue disease. Extrapulmonary causes include chest wall limitations (e.g., kyphoscoliosis, obesity, ankylosing spondylitis), muscle dysfunction (e.g., muscular dystrophies, myasthenia gravis, diaphragm paralysis), and pleural disease (e.g., mesothelioma, effusion, pneumothorax). In a patient with suggestive symptoms or history of associated diseases, a chest radiograph and PFTs can help establish the diagnosis. Typically, the FEV_1 and the FVC are reduced proportionally such that the FEV_1/FVC ratio is normal (i.e., > 0.7). Preoperative PFTs can also help assess for acute or progressive worsening of known restrictive lung disease; however, routine testing is not necessary in the absence of clinical suspicion. These patients are also at risk of pulmonary hypertension that may not be recognized because of overlapping symptoms with restrictive lung disease. Thus, echocardiography may also be indicated to investigate causes of worsening symptoms in a patient with known restrictive lung disease.

Patients Scheduled for Lung Resection

Most patients scheduled for lung resection operations have underlying lung disease (this topic is covered in more detail in Chapter 53). Spirometry is useful in estimating risk and excluding patients who are highly likely to lack adequate pulmonary reserve after the planned resection (see Chapter 53). Current American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP) guidelines recommend measurement of both FEV_1 and diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide (D_{LCO}) in all patients being considered for lung resection surgery.[219] The amount of residual lung function after resection can be estimated by using a combination of spirometry and radionuclide quantitative lung scanning. The predicted postoperative FEV_1 (PPO FEV_1) is predicted by multiplying the preoperative FEV_1 by the percentage of perfusion to the nonoperative lung or lung region:

$$\text{PPO FEV}_1 = \text{Preoperative FEV}_1 \times \frac{\text{Perfusion to nonresected lung}}{\text{Total perfusion to lungs}}$$

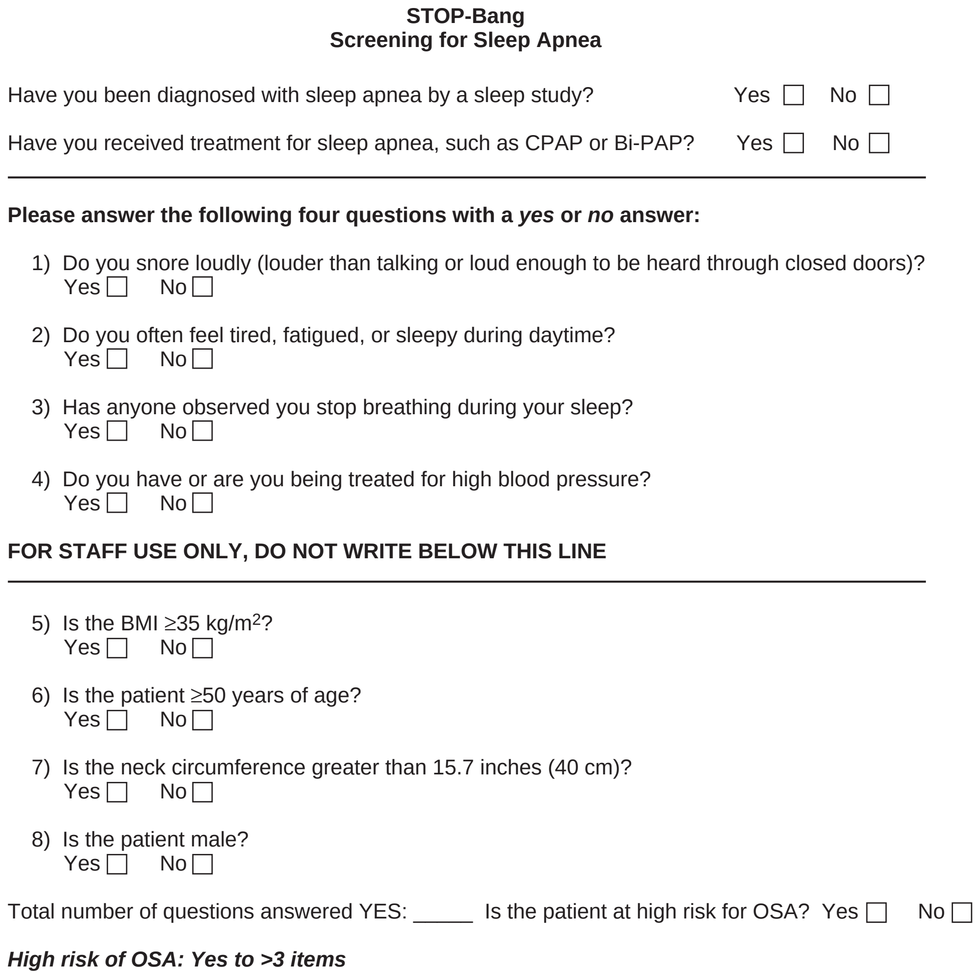
The PPO D_{LCO} is calculated using an analogous equation for preoperative D_{LCO}. Patients with both PPO FEV_1 and PPO D_{LCO} values exceeding 60% of predicted are considered low-risk and can generally proceed directly to surgery. If either value is within the range of 30% to 60% of predicted, simple objective exercise testing with a shuttle walk test or symptom limited stair climbing test is recommended. For individuals with poor performance on these simple tests (i.e., < 400 m on shuttle walk test or < 22 m on stair climbing test), as well as for individuals with either PPO FEV_1 or PPO D_{LCO} values less than 30% predicted, the ACCP guidelines recommend CPET to measure peak oxygen consumption (VO_2 peak).[219] A preoperative VO_2 peak greater than 20 mL/kg/min is consistent with low perioperative risk, 10 to 20 mL/kg/min is consistent with moderate risk, and less than 10 mL/kg/min is consistent with high risk. Nonsurgical options should be considered in high-risk scenarios, while shared decision making should be incorporated in any intermediate-risk scenarios.

Obstructive Sleep Apnea

In North America, the prevalence of sleep-disordered breathing is 9% among females aged 30 to 60 years of age, and 24% among males in the same age group (see Chapter 10).[220] OSA is the most common type of sleep-disordered breathing, with varying prevalence across age groups, ethnicities, and countries. Recent North American estimates suggest that it afflicts about 9% of females aged 50 to 70 years, and 17% of males in this same age group.[221] OSA is characterized by recurrent upper airway collapse during sleep that leads to reduced or complete cessation of airflow, despite ongoing breathing efforts. Affected individuals develop intermittent hypercapnia, intermittent hypoxemia, and fragmented sleep. Risk factors for OSA include increased age, male sex, obesity, smoking, pregnancy, heart failure, end-stage renal disease, and craniofacial abnormalities. The diagnosis of OSA is based on the presence of symptoms, such as nonrestorative sleep, snoring, hypertension, and the frequency of sleep-related respiratory events during polysomnography or home sleep apnea testing. Once diagnosed, disease severity is typically characterized by the apnea-hypopnea index (AHI), which is the number of apneic and hypopneic episodes per hour of sleep. Mild OSA is defined by 5 to 15 episodes per hour, moderate disease by 16 to 30 episodes per hour, and severe disease by more than 30 episodes per hour. OSA is associated with an increased prevalence of systemic hypertension, pulmonary hypertension, IHD, heart failure, cardiac arrhythmias (i.e., atrial fibrillation, bradyarrhythmias, ventricular ectopy), stroke, type 2 diabetes mellitus, obesity hypoventilation syndrome, and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. The main effective treatments for OSA in the nonoperative setting are continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) and weight loss.[222-224]

Most cases of OSA in surgical patients remain undiagnosed at the time of surgery.[225] Screening questionnaires can help, in part, address this problem. For example, the eight-item STOP-Bang questionnaire is a straightforward validated tool to screen for OSA in preoperative evaluation clinics (Fig. 31.8).[226] Surgical patients with scores of 2 or less are at very low risk (negative likelihood ratio 0.24 for AHI ≥ 5), and those with scores of 5 or more are at increased risk (positive likelihood ratio 1.8 for AHI ≥ 5).[226] Since individuals with scores of 3 to 4 are in an indeterminate zone, additional screening criteria have been proposed for this subgroup, including serum bicarbonate concentration level at 28 mmol/L or greater,[227] and differentially weighting responses to the questionnaire.[228] There is some uncertainty as to the operational burden of screening all surgical patients for OSA, especially since the positive likelihood ratio for a higher STOP-Bang score is not particularly high. A reasonable option may be to apply screening in higher-risk populations, such as individuals with obesity, associated comorbidities, and known or suspected difficult intubation characteristics.

Patients with OSA are at increased perioperative risk because of the sleep disorder itself and associated comorbidities. Mask ventilation, direct laryngoscopy, endotracheal intubation, and fiberoptic visualization of the airway are more difficult in patients with OSA (see Chapter 44). In addition, these patients are also more sensitive to the respiratory depressant effects of opioids. In general, patients with OSA have elevated risks of perioperative airway obstruction, hypoxemia, atelectasis, pneumonia, cardiovascular complications, and prolonged hospitalizations.[229] There is uncertainty as to how much of this increased risk is explained by OSA itself, versus associated comorbidities (e.g., IHD, heart failure, diabetes mellitus, obesity). For example, some cohort studies that found that patients with known OSA, or patients screened as being high-risk for OSA, were not at elevated risk of mortality or postoperative hypoxemia, after accounting for coexisting comorbidities.[77,230,231]



STOP-Bang
Screening for Sleep Apnea

Have you been diagnosed with sleep apnea by a sleep study? Yes ☐ No ☐

Have you received treatment for sleep apnea, such as CPAP or Bi-PAP? Yes ☐ No ☐

Please answer the following four questions with a *yes* or *no* answer:

1) Do you snore loudly (louder than talking or loud enough to be heard through closed doors)?
Yes ☐ No ☐

2) Do you often feel tired, fatigued, or sleepy during daytime?
Yes ☐ No ☐

3) Has anyone observed you stop breathing during your sleep?
Yes ☐ No ☐

4) Do you have or are you being treated for high blood pressure?
Yes ☐ No ☐

FOR STAFF USE ONLY, DO NOT WRITE BELOW THIS LINE

---

5) Is the BMI ≥35 kg/m^2?
Yes ☐ No ☐

6) Is the patient ≥50 years of age?
Yes ☐ No ☐

7) Is the neck circumference greater than 15.7 inches (40 cm)?
Yes ☐ No ☐

8) Is the patient male?
Yes ☐ No ☐

Total number of questions answered YES: _____ Is the patient at high risk for OSA? Yes ☐ No ☐

High risk of OSA: Yes to >3 items

Fig. 31.8 Stop-Bang questionnaire to screen patients for obstructive sleep apnea. (From Chung F, Yegneswaran B, Liao P, et al. STOP Questionnaire: a tool to screen patients for obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:812–821.)

Preoperative evaluation focuses on characterizing all cases of known OSA, and selectively identifying patients at risk for undiagnosed OSA. In addition, associated comorbidities should be investigated and optimized as deemed clinically appropriate. For example, echocardiography may be indicated if undiagnosed heart failure or pulmonary hypertension is suspected. For patients with known OSA, the anesthesiologist should inquire about known disease severity, document current treatment, and instruct the patient to bring their CPAP equipment or oral appliances on the day of surgery (so that therapy can be restarted promptly after surgery).

Pulmonary Hypertension

Pulmonary hypertension is defined as a persistent mean pulmonary artery pressure of 25 mm Hg or more at rest. The condition may occur in isolation or with associated medical conditions. Based on the World Health Organization, pulmonary hypertension is classified into 5 groups (Box 31.9).[232] Idiopathic and heritable pulmonary arterial hypertension (formerly called primary pulmonary hypertension) are relatively rare. Other more common forms occur with a variety of diseases including cardiac, pulmonary, liver, thromboembolic, and collagen vascular diseases (e.g., scleroderma, systemic lupus erythematosus [SLE]). Pulmonary hypertension is also associated with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, anorectic drug exposure (e.g., fenfluramine), OSA, and chronic liver disease (especially with portal hypertension).

Patients with pulmonary hypertension have a high rate of perioperative morbidity and mortality.[233-235] Hypoxia, hypercarbia, hypothermia, vasoconstrictor use, and increased sympathetic tone (even from anxiety) during the perioperative period increase pulmonary vascular resistance, with the potential for acute decompensation with right-sided heart failure. Occult pulmonary hypertension is more problematic than the fully recognized disease because symptoms may be attributed to other diseases, and perioperative decompensation may occur unexpectedly. Current American and European guidelines recommend that affected patients be managed collaboratively with a pulmonary hypertension specialist team during the perioperative period, and that they undergo surgery at centers with requisite expertise.[7,9]

It may be challenging to detect pulmonary hypertension *de novo* during preoperative evaluation. The initial symptoms of pulmonary hypertension are usually nonspecific and insidious. Diagnosis is also typically delayed, with about 20% of patients having symptoms for more than 2 years prior to a formal diagnosis.[236] Typical initial symptoms

BOX 31.9 Classification Scheme for Pulmonary Hypertension

Pulmonary Arterial Hypertension

1. Idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension
2. Heritable pulmonary arterial hypertension
3. Drug-induced or toxin-induced pulmonary arterial hypertension
4. Associated with other conditions
    (a). Connective tissue disease
    (b). Congenital heart disease
    (c). Portal hypertension
    (d). Human immunodeficiency virus infection
    (e). Schistosomiasis
5. Pulmonary venoocclusive disease and/or pulmonary capillary hemangiomatosis
6. Persistent pulmonary hypertension of newborn

Pulmonary Hypertension Related to Left-heart Disease

1. Left ventricular systolic dysfunction
2. Left ventricular diastolic dysfunction
3. Valvular heart disease
4. Extrinsic compression of central pulmonary veins
5. Congenital or acquired obstruction of the left heart inflow or outflow tract, and congenital cardiomyopathies

Pulmonary Hypertension Related to Lung Disease or Hypoxemia

1. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
2. Interstitial lung disease
3. Other pulmonary diseases with mixed restrictive and obstructive pattern
4. Sleep disordered breathing
5. Alveolar hypoventilation disorders
6. Developmental lung disease
7. Chronic exposure to high altitude

Chronic Thromboembolic Pulmonary Hypertension

Pulmonary Hypertension with Unclear Multifactorial Etiology

1. Hematologic disorders (chronic hemolytic anemia, myeloproliferative disorders, splenectomy)
2. Systemic disorders (sarcoidosis, pulmonary histiocytosis, lymphangioleiomyomatosis)
3. Metabolic disorders (glycogen storage disease, Gaucher disease, thyroid disorders)
4. Other conditions (tumor obstruction, fibrosing mediastinitis, chronic kidney disease, segmental pulmonary hypertension

From: Simonneau G, Gatzoulis M, Adiata I, et al. Updated clinical classification of pulmonary hypertension. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;62: D34–D41.

are exertional dyspnea, lethargy, and fatigue. With disease progression, symptoms related to right ventricular overload develop—these symptoms include exertional chest pain, exertional syncope or presyncope, upper abdominal pain (i.e., liver congestion), and dependent edema. Physical examination may reveal a split S$_2$ with a loud second component, right ventricular heave, tricuspid regurgitation murmur, ascites, hepatomegaly, jugular venous distention, and peripheral edema. An ECG and echocardiogram are useful in patients with suspected pulmonary hypertension, and those with moderate-to-severe known disease. Typical ECG findings include right axis deviation, RBBB, right ventricular hypertrophy, and tall R waves in leads V$_1$ and V$_2$. Right atrial hypertrophy and "P-pulmonale" may be present in severe pulmonary hypertension, with peaked P waves, usually in leads II, III, aVF, and V$_1$. An echocardiogram is the initial screening test of choice for pulmonary hypertension. It can estimate pulmonary arterial pressures, assess right ventricular function, identify left-sided heart failure, and detect structural heart disease (e.g., valvular heart disease, congenital heart disease). Patients with significant echocardiographic findings may require subsequent right and left cardiac catheterizations, especially given the potential inaccuracy of estimating right-sided pressures by echocardiography alone. Other useful laboratory tests include complete blood count, electrolyte concentrations, creatinine concentrations, and liver function tests (i.e., liver congestion or drug-related side effects).

Patients with pulmonary hypertension may be receiving treatment with diuretics, calcium channel blockers, supplemental oxygen, phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors (e.g., sildenafil, tadalafil), endothelin receptor antagonists (e.g., bosentan, ambrisentan), and prostacyclin pathway agonists (e.g., iloprost, epoprostenol). Some drugs are given by continuous intravenous infusions, and even momentary interruption of therapy can be catastrophic. In general, all these medications should be continued perioperatively.[7,9] Some patients may be anticoagulated. The timing of any preoperative anticoagulant discontinuation, and assessment for bridging therapy, should be made collaboratively with a pulmonary hypertension specialist team.

Smokers and Second-Hand Smoke Exposure

Tobacco exposure, either directly or through "second-hand" smoke, increases the risk of many perioperative complications, including respiratory, cardiac, and infectious events. Current smokers have elevated risks for a range of postoperative complications, including mortality, cardiac complications, pulmonary complications, acute stroke, and surgical site infections.[237,238] Overall, about two thirds of smokers want to quit.[239] The U.S. Public Health Service recommends that "*all physicians should strongly advise every patient who smokes to quit because evidence shows that physician advice to quit smoking increases abstinence rates*."[240] Even brief advice by a physician to quit smoking increases quit rates (relative risk 1.66; 95% CI, 1.42-1.94),[241] albeit from a very low baseline rate of 2% to 3%. Among intensive smoking cessation interventions, both behavioral counselling and medications have demonstrated efficacy, with evidence supporting further improvement in efficacy with combination therapy.[242] The main pharmacologic interventions for smoking cessation are nicotine replacement therapy (i.e., nicotine patches, gum, or lozenges), varenicline, and bupropion. Both bupropion and varenicline should be started at least 1 week before an attempt at quitting. Many hospitals, insurance companies, communities, and governmental agencies offer smoking cessation programs. Excellent advice and guidelines are available online (e.g., https://www.cdc.gov/tobacco/quit_smoking/index.htm and https://smokefree.gov) or via telephone (e.g., 1-800-QUIT-NOW in the United States).

Being scheduled for surgery is a "teachable moment" for promoting smoking cessation, with population-based survey data from the United States showing significant increases in smoking cessation rates after major surgery.[243] Within this context, interventions in the preoperative evaluation clinic result in higher rates of short-term smoking cessation (i.e., within 3-6 months after surgery).[244] Although there is uncertainty about the robustness of smoking cessation rates over the long term,[245] randomized controlled trials have demonstrated reduced nicotine dependence of up to 1 year postoperatively following perioperative smoking cessation interventions.[246,247]

The perioperative benefits of smoking abstinence are realized within the first year after cessation.[248] Nonetheless, there remains uncertainty regarding the minimum required period to accrue benefits. In previous systematic reviews, clinical benefits of preoperative smoking cessation were demonstrated only when it occurred at least 3 to 4 weeks before surgery.[249,250] These benefits include reduced risks for respiratory and wound healing complications. Despite an early study reporting an increased perioperative risk (this association was not statistically significant) in recent quitters,[251] a systematic review found no increased risk of adverse events with quitting smoking soon before surgical procedures (i.e., within 8 weeks).[252] Thus, motivated patients should be encouraged to quit smoking at any point before surgery. Quitting has many theoretical benefits, even within a few days before operation. Soon after a patient quits smoking, carbon monoxide levels decrease, thereby improving oxygen delivery and use. Cyanide levels decrease, which benefits mitochondrial oxidative metabolism. Other beneficial effects include lower nicotine levels (which improves vasodilatation) and clearance of many toxic substances that impair wound healing.

Upper Respiratory Tract Infections

Traditionally, elective surgical procedures were cancelled when patients, especially children, presented with current or recent upper respiratory tract infections. The concern pertains to associated airway hyperreactivity that predisposes patients to laryngospasm, bronchospasm, atelectasis, coughing, airway obstruction, hypoxia, stridor, and breath-holding.[253] Prior evidence suggests that this airway hyperreactivity lasts for 2 to 4 weeks after an upper respiratory tract infection.[253,254] Nonetheless, since most of these associated perioperative respiratory events are mild and easily managed with modern anesthesia care, cancellation is no longer routine. For patients with severe symptoms (e.g., high fever), especially in the presence of other health conditions (e.g., significant asthma, heart disease, immunosuppression), elective surgery should be postponed until 4 weeks after resolution of the infection. Conversely for mild or uncomplicated infections in otherwise healthy patients, it is reasonable to proceed with the planned surgery and avoid the inconvenience of a last-minute cancellation. The dilemma lies with patients between these two extremes, for whom decisions regarding the suitability to proceed should be made on an individualized basis.

Cystic Fibrosis

Cystic fibrosis is an autosomal recessive disease caused by altered chloride and water transport across epithelial cells. This genetic disorder can result in progressive chronic airway disease characterized by airway obstruction, destruction, and frequent pulmonary infections. Affected individuals can also develop exocrine pancreatic insufficiency (i.e., malnutrition, diabetes mellitus, pancreatitis), bowel obstruction, sinusitis, and liver disease (i.e., biliary cirrhosis, portal hypertension). The diagnosis is based on compatible clinical findings in at least one organ system (e.g., chronic airway disease, exocrine pancreatic insufficiency, chronic pansinusitis, cystic fibrosis) in a first-degree relative in combination with either biochemical (sweat chloride $\geq$ 60 mmol/L on two occasions) or genetic confirmation (presence of known disease-causing genetic mutations).[255]

The preoperative clinical evaluation should especially focus on respiratory, hepatic, and nutritional assessment. With respect to preoperative investigations, electrolyte levels, liver function tests, chest radiographs, and PFTs are useful. Collaborative perioperative management in conjunction with a pulmonologist or a cystic fibrosis specialist is ideal, with an important goal being optimization of pulmonary status (i.e., secretions, infections, bronchospasm) before surgery. Most medications for cystic fibrosis should be continued perioperatively.

Postoperative Pulmonary Complications

Postoperative pulmonary complications encompass several important clinical entities and these have been further defined in a recent systematic literature review and consensus-based process. Abbott and colleagues identified four standard outcome measures that are appropriate for widespread use in clinical trials of postoperative pulmonary complications, namely, pneumonia, atelectasis, acute respiratory distress syndrome, and aspiration.[256] In addition, the investigators proposed a new definition of postoperative pulmonary complications that incorporates the severity of the complication based on the degree of therapy required (e.g., supplemental oxygen, positive pressure ventilation).[256] There is considerable variation in how pulmonary outcome complications are defined and this is reflected in the inconsistent reporting of outcomes across studies and hinders interpretation of research findings. Despite the reporting inconsistencies, a reasonable estimate is that these complications develop in about 5% of patients undergoing nonthoracic surgery.[257,258]

Established risk factors for pulmonary complications pertain to two general domains: patient-level risk factors and procedure-related risk factors (Box 31.10).[218] Patient-level factors include general health status (e.g., ASA physical status [ASA-PS], functional dependency), smoking history, advanced age, COPD, preexisting pulmonary disease (e.g., recent infection, low oxygen saturation) pulmonary hypertension, anemia, heart failure, preexisting sepsis, poor nutritional status (e.g., albumin concentration), and obesity (BMI > 30 kg/m^2).[218,257,259,260] Notably absent from this list of patient-related factors are asthma, arterial blood gas results, or PFT results. The risk of complications is surprisingly low in patients who have well-controlled asthma or preoperative corticosteroid treatment.[214] The risk is higher in asthmatic patients with recent exacerbations, prior postoperative pulmonary complications, recent hospitalizations, or endotracheal intubations for asthma. Arterial blood gases are useful in predicting pulmonary function after lung resection operations, but do not estimate perioperative pulmonary risk. Findings on PFTs, such as the degree of FEV$_1$, are generally not predictive of pulmonary complications.[218] PFTs have clear roles in diagnosis ("*Is*

BOX 31.10 Selected Risk Factors for Postoperative Pulmonary Complications

Potential Patient-related Risk Factor

Advanced age
ASA-PS Class 2 or more
Congestive heart failure
Functionally dependent
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
Weight loss
Impaired sensorium
Cigarette use
Alcohol use
Abnormal findings on chest examination

Potential Procedure-related Risk Factor

Aortic aneurysm repair
Thoracic surgery
Abdominal surgery
Upper abdominal surgery
Neurosurgery
Head-and-neck surgery
Emergency surgery
Vascular surgery
General anesthesia
Perioperative transfusion

Potential Laboratory Test Risk Factor

Albumin concentration < 35 g/L
Chest radiograph abnormalities
BUN concentration > 7.5 mmol/L (> 21 mg/dL)

ASA-PS, American Society of Anesthesiologists Physical Status; *BUN,* blood urea nitrogen.

From Smetana GW, Lawrence VA, Cornell JE, et al. Preoperative pulmonary risk stratification for noncardiothoracic surgery: systematic review for the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med.* 2006;144:581–595.

TABLE 31.14 Scoring Scheme for the ARISCAT[*] Perioperative Pulmonary Risk Index

Components of ARISCAT Score	Points Assigned
Age	
■ ≤50 years	0
■ 51–80 years	3
■ >80 years	16
Preoperative oxygen saturation	
■ ≥96%	0
■ 91%–95%	8
■ ≤91%	24
Respiratory infection in prior month	17
Preoperative anemia (<100 g/L)	11
Surgical incision location	
■ Peripheral	0
■ Upper abdominal	15
■ Intrathoracic	24
Duration of surgery	
■ ≤2 h	0
■ >2–3 h	16
■ >3 h	23
Emergency procedure	8
ARISCAT Score	**Risk of Pulmonary Complications[†]**
Low-risk: < 26 points	1.6%
Intermediate risk: 26–44 points	13.3%
High-risk: ≥ 45 points	42.1%

[*] Estimates risk of composite endpoint of respiratory infection, respiratory failure, pleural effusion, atelectasis, pneumothorax, bronchospasm, or aspiration pneumonitis.

ARISCAT, Assess Respiratory Risk in Surgical Patients in Catalonia group.

[†] Three patients were excluded because of a missing value in some variable.

From Canet J, Gallart L, Gomar C, et al. Prediction of postoperative pulmonary complications in a population-based surgical cohort. *Anesthesiology.* 2010;113:1338–1350.

dyspnea caused by lung disease or heart failure?") or informing management ("*Can dyspnea or wheezing be improved further?*"), but should not be used as a risk assessment tool or to deny a surgical procedure.[10,218] Procedure-related risk factors for pulmonary complications include the type of procedure (head-and-neck, thoracic, upper abdominal, aortic, neurosurgical), long-duration procedures, emergency procedures, general anesthesia, and residual neuromuscular blockade.[218,257]

Several preoperative clinical risk indices have been developed to estimate pulmonary risk.[34,35,257,259,260] Although these indices have reasonable predictive accuracy, they also have important limitations. Some only predict specific complication types (i.e., pneumonia vs. respiratory failure),[34,35,259,260] and others are too complex for easy clinical use.[34,35] The most straightforward, currently available index is likely the ARISCAT (Assess Respiratory Risk in Surgical Patients in Catalonia) score,[257] which has also been externally validated (Table 31.14).[261] The score classifies patients as low-risk, intermediate-risk, and high-risk strata.[257]

When high-risk patients are identified before surgery, the anesthesiologist has several available options to help decrease their perioperative pulmonary risk. These approaches include encouraging smoking cessation (see section on "Smokers and Second-Hand Smoke Exposure"), treatment of any recent asthma or COPD exacerbation, and treatment of any recent lower respiratory tract infection. These interventions may require medications (e.g., antibiotics, bronchodilators, corticosteroids), specialist referral (e.g., pulmonologists), or delay in the planned surgical procedure. There is accumulating evidence pointing to benefits from preoperative inspiratory muscle training and physiotherapy in high-risk patients undergoing cardiac or abdominal surgery.[262,263] The anesthesiologist can also use the preanesthesia evaluation to educate patients about the potential respiratory benefits of neuraxial anesthesia or analgesia,[19,264,265] and discuss options for less-invasive surgical procedures with the referring surgeon.

ENDOCRINE DISORDERS

Diabetes Mellitus

Diabetes mellitus afflicts about 420 million people worldwide.[266] The two main disease categories are type 1 diabetes (previously called "insulin-dependent diabetes" or "juvenile-onset diabetes") and type 2 diabetes (previously called "non–insulin dependent diabetes" or "adult-onset diabetes").[267] Type 1 diabetes, which accounts for about

5% to 10% of all cases of the disease, is the result of autoimmune destruction of pancreatic β-cells. Affected individuals have an absolute deficiency of insulin, but normal sensitivity to insulin. Since the disease has a typically early onset at a young age, and is often difficult to control, adults with type 1 diabetes are at risk of premature vascular disease, such as IHD, nephropathy, retinopathy, and peripheral neuropathy. They are also at risk of diabetic ketoacidosis. Type 2 diabetes is characterized by insulin resistance and a relative (but not absolute) deficiency in insulin. Most affected individuals are obese and seldom prone to ketoacidosis. Diabetes mellitus is associated with multiorgan dysfunction, including IHD, heart failure (independent of associated IHD), CVD, CKD, peripheral neuropathy, autonomic neuropathy (e.g., postural hypotension, gastroparesis), retinopathy, and reduced joint mobility (e.g., reduced cervical mobility affecting airway management). In the perioperative setting, diabetes mellitus is a risk factor for postoperative complications, including cardiac events,[97] acute kidney injury (AKI),[268,269] and surgical site infections.[270] Insulin therapy is the main treatment for type 1 diabetes mellitus, either as multiple daily injections or a continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion. In the case of type 2 diabetes, multiple treatment options are available, including nonpharmacologic therapy (i.e., diet, weight loss, exercise), metformin, sulfonylureas (e.g., glyburide, glipizide), repaglinide, glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) agonists (e.g., liraglutide), sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors (e.g., empagliflozin), dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4) inhibitors (e.g., sitagliptin, saxagliptin, linagliptin, alogliptin), and insulin.

During the preoperative evaluation of a patient with diabetes mellitus, the anesthesiologist should document the disease type (i.e., type 1 vs. type 2), current usual glycemic control, history of hypoglycemic episodes, current therapy, and the severity of any end-organ complications. Given the effects of diabetes mellitus on other organ systems, the history and physical examination should especially focus on the cardiovascular, renal, and neurologic systems. Inquiries about postural dizziness, early satiety, and postprandial vomiting can help assess for any autonomic neuropathy. The physical examination should include an evaluation of pulses, skin breakdown, and joint (especially cervical spine) mobility. Informative preoperative laboratory tests include an ECG and blood sampling for electrolyte, creatinine, and blood glucose concentrations. To help better estimate renal function, an estimated GFR should be calculated (see section on "Kidney Disease"). Since patients are not typically fasting when they are evaluated in a preoperative evaluation clinic, glucose concentrations measured in the clinic cannot be used to evaluate general glycemic control. A diary of multiple glucose values (preprandial and postprandial) at varying times of the day is more informative for estimating the adequacy of therapy. Alternatively, a glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA_{1c}) concentration can help characterize the average plasma glucose concentration within the prior 3 months. Among surgical patients, preoperative HbA_{1C} is more informative than patients' self-reported history, fasting blood glucose concentrations, and random blood glucose concentrations in identifying preexisting poor glycemic control.[271] In the nonoperative setting, the American Diabetes Association recommends a target HbA_{1c} concentration under 7% for most diabetic patients. Although preoperative HbA_{1c} is correlated with postoperative glycemic control,[272] its role as a predictor of postoperative complications is largely restricted to diabetic patients undergoing orthopedic or vascular surgery.[273] Recently updated guidelines from the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE) in the United Kingdom[274] recommend offering HbA_{1c} testing to diabetic surgical patients who have not been tested in the prior 3 months, and ensuring the recent HbA_{1c} test results be included in referral materials from patients' primary care providers.

In the perioperative setting, the goals of glycemic management are to avoid hypoglycemia, prevent ketoacidosis, and avoid marked hyperglycemia. Tight perioperative glucose control in the immediate perioperative period is controversial. While aggressive management of hyperglycemia may theoretically help decrease postoperative complications, these theoretical clinical benefits of intraoperative intensive glucose control have not been observed in randomized trials of surgical patients.[275] Ideally, all diabetic patients should have their surgery as an early morning case to minimize any disruption of their diabetic management fasting. Normal treatment regimen for most noninsulin diabetic medications (metformin, sulfonylureas, repaglinide, GLP-1 agonists, DPP-4 inhibitors) should be continued until (and inclusive of) the day before surgery but held on the morning of surgery. The possible exception pertains to SGLT2 inhibitors, which have been associated with euglycemic diabetic ketoacidosis in the postoperative setting.[276] Thus, some guidelines recommend that the medications be discontinued at least 24 hours before elective surgery.[277] Diabetic patients should discontinue *short-acting* insulin while fasting. The exception pertains to patients with continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion pumps. These individuals should continue their infusion at the lowest basal rate, which is usually the nighttime fasting rate. With respect to management of *intermediate-acting* or *long-acting* insulin on the day of surgery, there is no uniform consensus on optimal perioperative protocols. A reasonable approach is for patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus to take a small amount (one third to one half) of their usual morning dose of intermediate-acting or long-acting insulin (e.g., lente, isophane) to avoid diabetic ketoacidosis. Patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus can either take no insulin or up to one half of their usual dose of intermediate-acting, long-acting, or combination (e.g., 70/30 preparations) insulin on the morning of surgery.

Thyroid Disease

Thyroid hormones are important for metabolism and its regulation. Mild to moderate thyroid dysfunction probably has minimal perioperative impact.[278,279] The major concern pertains to significant hyperthyroidism or hypothyroidism, which appears to increase perioperative risk. Symptoms and signs of hypothyroidism and hyperthyroidism can be subtle and nonspecific, especially with milder disease in older adults. Hyperthyroid individuals may manifest tachycardia, arrhythmias, palpitations, tremors, weight loss, and diarrhea. Patients with hypothyroidism may demonstrate hypotension, bradycardia, lethargy, weight gain, depressed cardiac function, pericardial effusions, and impaired ventilatory response to hypoxia or hypercarbia. Patients may also have goiters with related symptoms such as dysphagia, dyspnea, wheezing, and orthopnea. Individuals with hyperthyroidism due to Graves disease may also demonstrate proptosis.

The preoperative evaluation should clarify the patient's current medical therapy as well as any recent changes. In patients with known thyroid disease, additional preoperative thyroid function testing is not needed if the patient is on a stable medication dose and was assessed as being euthyroid within the previous 6 months. If additional preoperative testing is clinically indicated, thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) assays are best to evaluate for hypothyroidism, while free triiodothyronine (T_3), free thyroxine (T_4), and TSH levels are useful in hyperthyroid patients. Surgery, stress, or illness can precipitate myxedema or thyroid storm in patients with untreated or severe thyroid dysfunction. In general, if a patient has moderate or worse hypothyroidism (i.e., elevated TSH and low free T_4—with or without associated symptoms), elective surgery should be postponed until the individual is euthyroid. Similarly, elective *non-thyroid* surgery should also be delayed to facilitate treatment of patients with overt hyperthyroidism (i.e., suppressed TSH with elevated free T_4 or T_3 concentrations—with or without associated symptoms). Consultation with an endocrinologist is necessary if surgery is urgent in patients with thyroid dysfunction. If surgery is urgent, hyperthyroid patients can be treated with β-adrenergic blockers, antithyroid medications (e.g., methimazole, propylthiouracil, potassium iodide), and corticosteroids. Other potentially useful tests include chest radiography or computed tomography scans to evaluate tracheal or mediastinal involvement by a goiter. All thyroid replacement therapy and antithyroid drugs should be continued on the day of surgery.

Parathyroid Disease

Parathyroid hormone regulates calcium. Most cases of hyperparathyroidism are discovered based on an incidental elevated calcium level found during diagnostic testing. *Primary* hyperparathyroidism is caused by a primary disorder of the parathyroid glands (adenomas or hyperplasia). *Secondary* hyperparathyroidism is parathyroid gland hyperplasia induced by the hyperphosphatemia and hypocalcemia that occur during chronic renal failure. *Tertiary* hyperparathyroidism occurs when the parathyroid hyperplasia in secondary hyperparathyroidism functions autonomously. Hypercalcemia from parathyroid disease is associated with osteoporosis and bone loss. It is very unlikely that parathyroid glands become sufficiently enlarged to compromise the airway. Hypoparathyroidism is very uncommon, but it can be the consequence of a prior total parathyroidectomy.

Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Disorders

The hypothalamus releases corticotropin-releasing hormone, which regulates adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) release from the anterior pituitary gland. ACTH, in turn, regulates cortisol release from the adrenal cortex. Cortisol secretion varies with the circadian rhythm, with the highest release in the morning. Additionally, release increases with physical stress, psychological stress, fever, and hypoglycemia. Among physical stressors, surgery is one of the most potent activators of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. Although ACTH concentrations increase with surgical incision and through the surgical procedure, the greatest ACTH secretion occurs during termination of anesthesia and the immediate postoperative period.[280] The magnitude and duration of the cortisol response reflects the degree of physiological stress imposed by the surgical stress. In procedures with minimal associated stress (e.g., inguinal hernia repair), increased cortisol secretion lasts for about 24 hours.[280] In more complicated procedures (e.g., major abdominal surgery), the response is larger in magnitude and lasts for about 5 days after surgery.[280,281]

Excess adrenal hormones result from endogenous cortisol associated with pituitary or adrenal tumors, or exogenous glucocorticoids used to treat disorders such as asthma or inflammatory diseases. Cushing syndrome refers to the combinations and symptoms due to chronic excess glucocorticoid exposure (either endogenous or exogenous). Cushing disease is the specific situation when the excess glucocorticoids are related to an ACTH-producing pituitary tumor. Other causes of Cushing syndrome include exogenous corticosteroids, adrenal tumors, adrenal hyperplasia, and neoplasms that secrete ectopic ACTH. The major manifestations of Cushing syndrome are obesity (with characteristic patterns of fat deposition causing "moon facies" and a "buffalo hump"), diabetes mellitus, female virilization, OSA, hypertension, elevated cardiovascular risk, elevated venous thromboembolism (VTE) risk, osteoporosis, striae, skin atrophy, and easy bruising. Airway management can be challenging in affected patients due to obesity and OSA. In addition, peripheral intravenous access can be difficult because of skin atrophy and obesity. These patients may require an ECG and blood sampling for electrolytes and glucose. Despite easy bruising, they have normal coagulation profiles.

An important issue for patients with chronic corticosteroid exposure is whether perioperative "stress-dose steroids" are needed. Both endogenous and exogenous glucocorticoids exert important negative feedback suppression on the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. Thus, chronic exogenous corticosteroid exposure suppresses the adrenals and may blunt the normal cortisol hypersecretion associated with surgery—even if the patient does not demonstrate Cushing syndrome. Perioperative corticosteroid supplementation is needed only when a patient is likely to have suppression of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. Thus, supplementation is not required for individuals who have received less than 5 mg prednisone (or its equivalent) daily,[282] or less than 3 weeks of corticosteroids (regardless of dose).[282] These individuals should simply continue their usual long-term corticosteroid regimen through the perioperative period. Conversely, patients taking prednisone (or its equivalent) in daily doses exceeding 20 mg/day for more than 3 weeks, and patients with Cushing syndrome should have perioperative corticosteroid supplementation. The need for supplementation is unclear for patients who have taken prednisone (or its equivalent) at a daily dose of 5 to 20 mg for more than 3 weeks. The options are to simply empirically provide perioperative corticosteroid supplementation or refer the patient to an endocrinologist for formal evaluation of their hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. There is no clear consensus on the optimal perioperative corticosteroid supplementation regimen.[284] A proposed regimen that accounts for contemporary evidence and different stress-response profiles across surgical procedures is presented in Table 31.15.[284]

TABLE 31.15 Recommendations for Perioperative Corticosteroid Coverage

Surgical Stress	Target Hydrocortisone Equivalent	Preoperative Corticosteroid Dose	Perioperative Corticosteroid Dose
Superficial procedure (e.g., biopsy, dental procedure)	8–10 mg/day	Usual daily dose	▪ Then usual daily dose
Minor (e.g., inguinal hernia repair, colonoscopy, hand surgery)	50 mg/day	Usual daily dose	▪ Hydrocortisone 50 mg IV before incision ▪ Hydrocortisone 25 mg IV every 8 h for 24 h ▪ Then usual daily dose
Moderate (e.g., colon resection, total joint replacement, lower extremity revascularization)	75–150 mg/day	Usual daily dose	▪ Hydrocortisone 50 mg IV before incision ▪ Hydrocortisone 25 mg IV every 8 h for 24 h ▪ Then usual daily dose
Major (e.g., esophagectomy, pancreatoduodenectomy, major cardiac, major vascular, trauma)	75–150 mg/day	Usual daily dose	▪ Hydrocortisone 100 mg IV before incision ▪ Continuous IV infusion of 200 mg of hydrocortisone over 24 h ▪ Then usual daily dose OR ▪ Hydrocortisone 50 mg IV every 8 h for 24 h ▪ Taper dose by 50% per day until usual daily dose is reached* ▪ Then usual daily dose

*Administer continuous IV fluids with 5% dextrose and 0.2% to 0.45% sodium chloride (based on degree of hypoglycemia).
IV, Intravenous.
From Liu MM, Reidy AB, Saatee S, et al. Perioperative steroid management: approaches based on current evidence. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:166–172.

Patients with adrenal insufficiency have weakness, weight loss, hypotension, orthostasis, hypovolemia, hyperpigmentation, and electrolyte abnormalities. Adrenal insufficiency results from destruction of the pituitary gland, destruction of the adrenal glands (e.g., autoimmune disease, tuberculosis, HIV infection), or long-term exogenous glucocorticoid administration (most common cause). To help establish the diagnosis and cause of adrenal insufficiency, patients require a morning cortisol concentration measurement, morning plasma ACTH concentration measurement, and often an ACTH stimulation test.[285,286] If the serum cortisol concentration is inappropriately low and a simultaneous plasma ACTH concentration is very high, primary adrenal insufficiency (i.e., primary adrenal disease) is the cause. Secondary (i.e., pituitary disease) or tertiary (i.e., hypothalamic disease) is the diagnosis if both serum cortisol and plasma ACTH concentrations are inappropriately low. Consultation with an endocrinologist is required if formal diagnostic testing for adrenal insufficiency is required, and to facilitate treatment of patients meeting the diagnostic criteria. Patients should continue their replacement corticosteroid therapy on the day of surgery and may need further supplementation based on the expected surgical stress response (see Table 31.15).

Importantly, aldosterone, although also produced by the adrenal cortex, is controlled instead by the renin-angiotensin system, not the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. Aldosterone regulates volume and electrolytes (absorption of sodium and chloride; secretion of potassium and hydrogen ions).

Multiple Endocrine Neoplasia Syndromes

Multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN) syndromes are autosomal dominant inherited disorders. There are three types, namely MEN type 1, MEN type 2A, and MEN type 2B (Box 31.11). Although rare (2 in 100,000 for MEN type 1, and 3 in 100,000 for MEN type 2), recognition is important to facilitate treatment of the affected patient and evaluation of family members. MEN type 1 is characterized by the "3 Ps," namely tumors of the parathyroid glands, anterior pituitary, and pancreatic islet cells. Hyperparathyroidism is the most common manifestation of MEN type 1, with 90% penetrance by the age of 40 years. Affected individuals are also predisposed to other tumors, including gastrinomas (usually in the duodenum), carcinoid tumors (thymus or bronchi), enterochromaffin cell-like gastric tumors, adrenocortical adenomas, and lipomas. Individuals

BOX 31.11 Types of Multiple Endocrine Neoplasia Syndromes

Multiple Endocrine Neoplasia Type 1

1. Primary hyperparathyroidism
2. Entero-pancreatic tumor (e.g., gastrinoma, insulinoma, nonfunctioning)
3. Anterior pituitary tumor (e.g., prolactinoma)
4 Others
   (a). Foregut carcinoid tumor (e.g., thymus, gastric enterochromaffin-like tumor)
   (b). Adrenal cortical tumor (nonfunctioning)
   (c). Lipomas
   (d). Facial angiofibromas
   (e). Collagenomas

Multiple Endocrine Neoplasia Type 2A

1. MEN2A classical syndrome (i.e., medullary thyroid cancer, pheochromocytoma, primary hyperparathyroidism)
2. MEN2A with cutaneous lichen amyloidosis
3. MEN2A with Hirschsprung disease
4. Familial medullary thyroid cancer (no pheochromocytoma or parathyroid hyperplasia)

Multiple Endocrine Neoplasia Type 2B

1. Medullary thyroid cancer
2. Pheochromocytoma
3. Others
   (a). Mucosal neuromas
   (b). Intestinal ganglioneuromas
   (c). Marfanoid habitus

with gastrinomas can develop Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, which is characterized by multiple peptic ulcers due to gastrin hypersecretion. While testing for MEN type 1 gene mutations is possible,[287] there is little evidence that early detection improves the disease prognosis.

Within MEN type 2A, there are four subtypes, namely classical MEN type 2A, MEN type 2A with cutaneous lichen amyloidosis, MEN type 2A with Hirschsprung disease, and familial medullary thyroid cancer (see Box 31.11). Hyperparathyroidism in MEN type 2A is often mild or asymptomatic. Since pheochromocytoma (see section on "Pheochromocytoma") is present in about 50% of MEN type 2 cases, this diagnosis must be considered as a possible component of MEN type 2 syndrome. Furthermore, if a pheochromocytoma is present, it should be removed before any other tumor resections. Extraadrenal pheochromocytoma tumors are rare in MEN type 2, but bilateral adrenal disease is common. It is unusual for pheochromocytoma to precede a medullary thyroid carcinoma or be the initial manifestation of MEN type 2. In contrast to MEN type 1, early diagnosis of MEN type 2 through genetic screening is very important. This genetic testing predicts the clinical disease phenotype (e.g., age of onset, aggressiveness), guides surveillance for associated tumors, and informs timing of prophylactic thyroidectomy to prevent medullary thyroid carcinoma.

Pheochromocytoma

Pheochromocytomas are catecholamine-secreting tumors that arise from chromaffin cells of the adrenal medulla. Similar tumors arising from sympathetic ganglia are termed catecholamine-secreting paragangliomas or extraadrenal pheochromocytomas. Nonetheless, the term "pheochromocytoma" is often used to refer to either type of tumor. These rare tumors (incidence ~1 per 100,000 person-years)[288] occur most commonly between ages 40 and 60 years, with equal incidence in males and females. About 40% of cases occur as part of a familial disorder (i.e., von Hippel-Lindau syndrome, MEN type 2, neurofibromatosis type 1). These tumors tend to present at a younger age and are more likely to be bilateral adrenal pheochromocytomas or paragangliomas.

Pheochromocytomas are usually discovered when patients present with consistent symptoms, suggestive family history, or incidental adrenal mass. About half of patients have symptoms, which are typically paroxysmal. The classic triad of associated symptoms are episodic headaches (90% of symptomatic patients), sweating (60%-70% of symptomatic patients), and tachycardia. About half of patients have paroxysmal hypertension, 5% to 15% have normal blood pressure, and the remainder have what appears to be essential hypertension. Other manifestations include orthostatic hypotension, psychiatric disorders (i.e., panic attacks), pallor, blurred vision, weight loss, hyperglycemia, and cardiomyopathy. A diagnosis of pheochromocytoma should be considered if any of the following features is present.[289]

- Triad of episodic headaches, sweating, and tachycardia
- Hyperadrenergic spells (e.g., nonexertional palpitations, diaphoresis, headache, tremor)
- Hypertension that is difficult to control, or occurs at a young age
- Hypertension associated with new-onset or atypical diabetes mellitus
- Idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy
- Family history of pheochromocytoma or suspicious familial syndrome (von Hippel-Lindau syndrome, MEN type 2, neurofibromatosis type 1)
- A history of gastric stromal tumors or pulmonary chondromas
- Incidentally discovered adrenal mass

Measurements of fractionated metanephrine and catecholamine concentrations in the urine and plasma generally establish the diagnosis of pheochromocytoma, with recent guidelines focusing on initial testing with either plasma-free metanephrines or urinary fractionated metanephrines.[290] Nonetheless, since testing algorithms vary considerably across hospitals and regions, a referral to an appropriate specialist (e.g., endocrinologist) should be made to facilitate a formal diagnosis in an individual with suspicious findings.

Patients scheduled for pheochromocytoma resection should undergo surgery at centers with experienced teams of anesthesiologists and surgeons. They also require about 10 to 14 days of medical preparation before surgery to mitigate perioperative risks. The overarching goals of this preparation are to control hypertension, control tachycardia, and normalization of intravascular volume status. The mainstay of medical therapy is preoperative α-adrenergic blockade started 7 to 14 days before surgery.[290] The preferred drug at many centers is phenoxybenzamine, which is an irreversible, long-acting, nonspecific α-adrenergic blocking drug. The initial dose is 10 mg once or twice daily, and the dose is increased by 10 to 20 mg every 2 to 3 days as needed. Most patients eventually need doses ranging from 20 to 100 mg daily. The arterial blood pressure target is less than 130/80 mm Hg in the seated position, with systolic pressure less than 90 mm Hg while standing. Typical side effects include orthostatic dizziness, fatigue, and nasal congestion. Given these side effects, as well as higher rates of postoperative hypotension after preoperative phenoxybenzamine treatment, some centers instead use selective α_1-adrenergic blocking drugs (e.g., prazosin, terazosin, doxazosin).[291] These agents are also preferable when long-term pharmacologic treatment is indicated (e.g., metastatic pheochromocytoma). The disadvantage of selective α_1-adrenergic blocking drugs is their incomplete degree of α-adrenergic blockade, thus resulting in more episodes of intraoperative hypertension.[291]

After adequate α-adrenergic blockade, β-adrenergic blockade may be started cautiously with short-acting drugs. As an example, 10 mg of propranolol every 6 hours can be used. After 24 to 48 hours, a long-acting preparation (e.g., metoprolol, atenolol) can be substituted, provided that the patient tolerates β-adrenergic blockade. The dose is then adjusted to achieve a heart rate between 60 and 80 beats/min. β-Adrenergic blockade should *never* be initiated before α-adrenergic blockade.[290] In the setting of unopposed α-adrenergic receptor stimulation, blockade of vasodilatory peripheral β-adrenergic receptors worsen hypertension, while acute depression of cardiac function can precipitate acute heart failure. In addition, initiation of β-adrenergic blockade may unmask a catecholamine-induced cardiomyopathy, with resulting acute pulmonary edema.

Alternatives to perioperative α-adrenergic blockade include calcium channel blockers and metyrosine.[290]

Nicardipine is the most commonly used calcium channel blocker for this indication, with a starting oral dose of 30 mg twice daily (sustained release preparation). The main role for calcium channel blockers is likely to supplement α- and β-adrenergic blockade when blood pressure control is inadequate, or to treat patients with intolerable side effects from usual therapy. Monotherapy with calcium channel blockers is not recommended.[290] Metyrosine, which inhibits catecholamine synthesis, has many side effects (e.g., sedation, diarrhea). As a consequence, it is also reserved for cases where conventional treatment is insufficient or not tolerated.

The preoperative evaluation of a patient with known pheochromocytoma should focus on the cardiovascular system (including orthostatic vital signs) and current medical treatment for pheochromocytoma (including adequacy of treatment). Laboratory testing includes an ECG, as well as blood sampling for a CBC, electrolyte concentrations, creatinine concentrations, and glucose concentrations. The patient may also warrant echocardiography or a cardiology consultation.

KIDNEY DISEASE

During preoperative evaluation, it is important to establish the severity, type, and underlying cause of preoperative renal impairment. Based on the Kidney Disease Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) guideline group, CKD is defined as a GFR less than 60 mL/min/1.73 m^2 for at least 3 months, regardless of the underlying cause.[292] Chronic kidney failure is defined as a GFR less than 15 mL/min/1.73 m^2 or the need for renal replacement therapy (i.e., dialysis). End-stage renal disease generally refers to chronic kidney failure that requires either dialysis or transplantation. GFR decreases with age; the renal reserve of a normal 80-year-old person is less than half that of a 40-year-old person. Thus, creatinine concentration is often not an accurate indicator of renal function, especially in older individuals.[293] The GFR can be reduced by 50% without a rise in creatinine concentration, while creatinine concentration does not exceed normal limits until GFR has fallen to less than 50 mL/min. Consequently, it is preferable to estimate renal function using an estimated GFR (eGFR) equation, such as the Cockcroft-Gault,[294] Modification of Diet in Renal Disease,[295] and current CKD-EPI equations.[296] Online calculators to estimate renal function are available (e.g., www.kidney.org/professionals/kdoqi/gfr_calculator). Calculating an eGFR is especially important in patients who are older, have elevated creatinine concentrations, or have other risk factors for CKD.[293] Given the inaccuracy of these equations at lower creatinine concentrations, values of eGFR that are greater than 60 mL/kg/min/1.73 m^2 should simply be reported as ">60 mL/kg/min/1.73 m^2." In the United States, the leading causes of end-stage renal disease are diabetes mellitus and hypertension.

AKI is a sudden decrease in renal function with the possible decrease in urine output. Episodes of AKI can occur in individuals with or without CKD. Several consensus-based criteria for classifying AKI have been developed, including the RIFLE classification scheme,[297] the Acute Kidney Injury Network classification scheme,[298] and the current KDIGO criteria.[299] AKI may be reversible if precipitating factors are identified and corrected. Classifying AKI into prerenal, renal, and postrenal causes allows for a systematic approach. Prerenal causes can often be differentiated by calculating the blood urea nitrogen-to-creatinine ratio. A ratio more than 20 suggests prerenal etiologies, with hypovolemia or hypotension the most common. A fractional excretion of sodium (FENa) less than 1% also suggests prerenal disease (in the absence of concomitant diuretic administration) and can be calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{FENa} = \frac{P_{Cr}/U_{Cr}}{P_{Na}/U_{Na}}$$

Obstruction, which results in dilated ureters and enlarged kidneys, should always be considered in the differential diagnosis of AKI. Prompt identification with ultrasound should lead to attempts to decompress the outflow tract.

Patients with CKD have many associated comorbidities, both related to the underlying diseases that led to CKD and its resulting end-organ complications. Cardiovascular issues include hypertension, IHD, ventricular dysfunction (diastolic and systolic), heart failure, CVD, PAD, pericarditis, pericardial effusions, and valvular heart disease (valvular calcification with resulting regurgitation or stenosis). Pulmonary hypertension and increased cardiac output occur in patients with arteriovenous fistulas. CKD is also associated with chronic anemia due to reduced erythropoietin production by the kidneys. While treatable with erythropoiesis stimulating agents, complete "normalization" of hemoglobin concentration (i.e., 135 g/L vs. 113 g/L) may actually increase morbidity and vascular events.[300] Hence, current KDIGO guidelines recommend using erythropoiesis stimulating agents to treat hemoglobin concentrations less than 90 g/L, but avoid increasing the concentration to above 130 g/L.[301] Other hematological abnormalities include platelet dysfunction and increased bleeding, despite normal platelet counts, prothrombin times, and activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT). Once dialysis is begun, patients become more prone to hypercoagulable states. Patients with CKD can develop autonomic and peripheral (sensory and motor) neuropathies. Unsurprising, CKD is associated with many electrolyte disturbances. Chronic metabolic acidosis is common, but it is usually mild and compensated for by chronic hyperventilation. Hyperkalemia is the most serious electrolyte disturbance. Hypocalcemia is common in patients undergoing dialysis, although with long-term disease, secondary and tertiary hyperparathyroidism eventually develops. Chronically elevated troponin concentrations are common in end-stage renal disease, which does influence interpretation of any postoperative troponin elevations.[302] Since insulin is metabolized by the kidneys, worsening renal function should be suspected in diabetic patients with end-stage renal disease who develop improved glycemic control or unexpected hypoglycemia.

Preexisting CKD is a risk factor for increased postoperative complications, including cardiac complications,[97] AKI,[303,304] acute stroke,[305] and death.[99] Risk factors for *postoperative* AKI have also been identified. In cardiac surgery, several simple preoperative risk indices have been developed to predict postoperative AKI requiring dialysis.[268,269] Important risk factors in these indices include complex surgery, nonelective surgery, CKD, diabetes mellitus, heart failure, female sex, and COPD. In noncardiac surgery, identified risk factors for AKI include increased age, male sex, symptomatic heart failure, hypertension, liver disease (including ascites), CKD, PAD, COPD, nonelective surgery, and intraperitoneal surgery.[303,304] Preoperative identification of at-risk patients can facilitate care, such as preoperative hydration and avoidance of hypovolemia. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) and cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) inhibitors interfere with renal perfusion autoregulation and should be avoided or discontinued in patients with CKD. In contrast, these drugs do not increase the risk of postoperative AKI in patients with normal renal function.[306] Many drugs are also metabolized or cleared by the kidneys. Drugs with particular perioperative implications are the LMWHs since there is no easy method to monitor their anticoagulation effects. LMWHs are cleared by the kidneys and are not removed during dialysis; thus, they have a prolonged duration of action in patients with CKD. Similarly, dosing of DOACs have to be adjusted in CKD (see Table 31.11).

The preoperative evaluation of patients with CKD should emphasize the cardiovascular system, cerebrovascular system, intravascular volume status, and electrolyte status. The early stages of CKD typically cause no symptoms. The anesthesiologist should inquire about the cardiovascular systems (i.e., chest pain, orthopnea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea), urine output, associated comorbidities, medications, dialysis schedules, and any hemodialysis catheter problems (e.g., infection, thrombosis). Information on the patient's target and current weight may be helpful for assessing volume status. Patients with CKD need an ECG and blood sampling to measure electrolyte, calcium, glucose, albumin, and creatinine concentrations. Further evaluation is needed if the ECG shows LVH (hypertension), peaked T waves (hyperkalemia), flattened T waves, a prolonged PR interval, or a prolonged QT interval (hypokalemia). A chest radiograph (infection, volume overload), echocardiogram (murmurs, heart failure), and cardiology evaluation may be necessary in some cases. Venous access sites or blood draws from the brachial, cephalic (antecubital), and central veins in the nondominant upper extremity should be avoided in patients who may eventually need fistulas in those locations for dialysis.

Preoperative renal replacement therapy (dialysis) schedules should be coordinated with the timing of the planned surgery. Dialysis is important for correct volume overload, hyperkalemia, and acidosis before planned surgery. Ideally, elective surgery should be performed about 24 hours after dialysis. Performance of surgery shortly after dialysis should be avoided, because of the risks of acute volume depletion and electrolyte alterations. Specifically, dialysis leads to fluid shifts and electrolyte (i.e., sodium, potassium, magnesium, phosphate) imbalance, especially related to shifting of electrolytes between intracellular and extracellular compartments.

Contrast-Induced Nephropathy

Contrast-induced nephropathy is defined as AKI that occurs after radiocontrast administration. Typically, the creatinine concentration increases within 24 to 48 hours after contrast exposure, after which it typically declines to baseline levels within 3 to 7 days. Recent (<24 hours) preoperative contrast exposure is also a risk factor for AKI following cardiac surgery.[307] Even when renal function returns to normal, patients with contrast-induced nephropathy experience elevated risks of short-term and long-term mortality.[308] Risk factors for contrast-induced nephropathy are CKD (especially diabetic nephropathy), heart failure, hypovolemia, and certain contrast exposure characteristics (i.e., high volume, ionic agents, hyperosmolal agents). Preventative strategies include avoiding volume depletion, discontinuing NSAIDs for 24 to 48 hours, using a low-risk contrast administration protocol (i.e., low volume of a low-osmolal or iso-osmolal agent), and periprocedure intravenous volume administration with normal saline. Despite initial promising results for N-acetylcysteine and sodium bicarbonate in relatively small randomized trials, a large trial with more than 5000 high-risk participants found that neither approach prevented contrast-induced nephropathy.[309]

HEPATIC DISORDERS

Liver disease can affect the hepatocytes and/or biliary system, thereby impacting protein synthesis (e.g., coagulation factors, albumin), bile regulation, and metabolism of drugs or toxins. Hepatocellular diseases, such as hepatitis (viral, alcoholic, autoimmune hepatitis) and hepatocellular carcinoma, affect hepatocytes and liver synthetic function. Obstructive disorders, including choledocholithiasis, bile duct tumors (extrahepatic), primary biliary cirrhosis (intrahepatic), and primary sclerosing cholangitis (extrahepatic and intrahepatic), cause bile stasis. Most drug-induced liver disease, as well as some forms of viral hepatitis, affect both hepatocytes and the biliary system.

The preoperative history typically reveals the underlying disease etiology, disease severity, therapies, and associated complications. Some patients with liver disease may be asymptomatic, whereas others may complain of fatigue, weight loss, dark urine, pale stools, pruritus, right upper quadrant pain, bloating, and jaundice. The physical examination should assess for weight, vital signs (including oxygen saturation), jaundice, bruising, ascites, pleural effusions, peripheral edema, hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, and altered mental status. The presence of encephalopathy, coagulopathy, ascites, volume overload, and infection should be determined before surgery. The bilirubin concentration generally must exceed 25 g/L before icterus is evident in mucous membranes and sclerae. If new-onset or worsening encephalopathy is identified, precipitating factors should be sought, such as infection, drug effects, bleeding, or electrolyte disturbances.

Baseline testing includes an ECG and blood sampling for CBC, electrolyte concentration, creatinine concentration, liver function tests, albumin concentration, and INR. Patients suspected of having hepatitis may require screening for the hepatitis A immunoglobulin M (IgM) antibody, the hepatitis B surface and core antigens, the hepatitis B surface antibody, and the hepatitis C antibody. A chest radiograph can help identify any suspected effusions. Coagulopathy can be a result of vitamin K deficiency (from cholestasis), factor deficiency (from loss of synthetic function), or thrombocytopenia (from splenomegaly and portal hypertension). Thus, therapy to correct coagulopathy should be directed at the cause. Vitamin K, fresh frozen plasma, or platelets may correct deficiencies. Vitamin K, taken at 1 to 5 mg orally or subcutaneously daily for 1 to 3 days, may correct a prolonged PT and carries minimal risk. The coagulopathy in patients with synthetic failure is not likely to correct, thus necessitating fresh frozen plasma transfusion aiming for an INR less than 1.5. Limited evidence suggests that lactulose (30 mL orally every 6 hours for 3 days preoperatively) with the last dose within 12 hours of surgery, or oral bile salts with intravenous hydration beginning the night before the operation, may reduce perioperative AKI in patients at risk.[310] Reduction of ascites preoperatively may decrease the risk of wound dehiscence and improve pulmonary function. Sodium restriction (in diet and intravenous solutions), diuretics (especially spironolactone), and paracentesis are useful for reducing ascites. If ascites fluid is aspirated, it should also be analyzed for infection. Encephalopathy is frequently precipitated by an additional acute insult such as infection, gastrointestinal bleeding, hypovolemia, or sedatives. It is therefore important to determine reversible factors and treat them accordingly. Lactulose (30 mL every 6 hours orally) is first-line therapy. Addressing nutritional deficiencies with enteral or parenteral supplementation may have benefits, especially in alcoholic patients. Patients who abuse alcohol may be at risk for neurologic deterioration (i.e., Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome) if thiamine, folate, and vitamin B_{12} supplements are not provided, especially when these patients are given nutrition or glucose. These same patients are also at risk of alcohol withdrawal syndromes.

The perioperative risk of patients with chronic hepatitis or cirrhosis is predicted by histologic severity, portal hypertension, and impairment of liver function. Patients with severe liver disease have increased perioperative morbidity and mortality; common adverse events are bleeding, infection, liver failure, and hepatorenal syndrome. Predictors of poor perioperative outcome in patients with liver disease include the following:

- Child-Turcotte-Pugh class C cirrhosis, which is calculated using bilirubin concentration, albumin concentration, PT, ascites severity, and encephalopathy severity (Table 31.16)
- Model for end-stage liver disease (MELD)[311] score of 15 or more (the MELD score is calculated using serum bilirubin concentration, INR, and serum creatinine concentrations)
- Acute hepatitis (viral or alcoholic)
- Chronic active hepatitis with jaundice, encephalopathy, coagulopathy, or elevated liver enzymes
- Abdominal surgical procedures
- PT prolongation of 3 seconds or more that is refractive to vitamin K therapy

TABLE 31.16 Child-Turcotte-Pugh Classification

Parameter	1 point	2 points	3 points
Ascites	Absent	Slight	Moderate
Bilirubin (mg/dL)	<2	2–3	>3
Albumin (g/dL)	>3.5	2.8–2.5	<2.8
Prothrombin time (seconds over control)	<4	4–6	>6
Encephalopathy	None	Grade 1–2	Grade 3–4

Class A: <7 points.
Class B: 7-9 points.
Class C: >9 points.

The MELD score can be calculated as shown below (where creatinine and bilirubin concentrations are expressed in mg/dL):

$$\begin{aligned}\text{MELD} = 6.43 &+ [3.78 \times \log_e(\text{bilirubin})] \\ &+ [11.2 \times \log_e(\text{INR})] + [9.57 \times \log_e(\text{creatinine})]\end{aligned}$$

Online calculators are also available to calculate MELD scores readily (e.g., www.unos.org). In some cases, it may be appropriate to delay elective surgery until an acute episode of hepatitis (or exacerbation of chronic disease) has resolved, or until a diagnosis is established for newly discovered hepatic dysfunction. Elective surgery is contraindicated in patients with acute or fulminant liver disease. High-risk patients are best managed collaboratively with a liver specialist.

Hepatitis

Hepatitis, which is defined as hepatocyte inflammation, can be caused by drugs, alcohol, viruses (hepatitis A, B, C, D, and E), and autoimmune diseases (see also Chapter 16). These disorders generally have an initial acute phase, as well as a subsequent chronic phase that can progress to cirrhosis. Risk factors for hepatitis are alcohol use, sexual activity (i.e., multiple partners, sex industry workers, sex with sex industry workers, men who have sex with men), intravenous drug use, blood transfusions before 1992, obesity (i.e., nonalcoholic steatohepatitis [NASH]), tattoos, body piercing, and travel to developing countries. Hepatitis A is caused by contaminated food, contaminated water, or contact with an infected person. Since it rarely progresses beyond the acute illness, a remote history of hepatitis A has no perioperative significance. Hepatitis B is transmitted by sexual activity or contact with blood (rarely after implementation of screening in 1986). It varies in severity and can advance to cirrhosis; this has become much less common due to widespread hepatitis B vaccination. Additionally, antiviral therapy can treat the infection, albeit with variable efficacy. Hepatitis C is transmitted primarily through blood exposure (all blood has been screened since 1992), especially among intravenous drug users. Many patients are unaware of infection because the acute phase is often asymptomatic. While hepatitis C infection can advance to cirrhosis, currently available antiviral therapy can now eliminate infection in almost all patients. Hepatitis D occurs only in conjunction with hepatitis B infection, whereas hepatitis E is less common in high-income countries. Hepatitis D can progress to cirrhosis, while hepatitis E rarely progresses beyond the acute illness. Alcoholic hepatitis generally occurs after at least 20 years of moderate to heavy daily alcohol intake (>100 g/day) and may progress to cirrhosis. Autoimmune hepatitis primarily affects young females and has an as yet unknown etiology. Many different drugs (including herbal and over-the-counter preparations) can also cause hepatitis, with examples being statins, isoniazid, and acetaminophen.

Obstructive Jaundice

Extrahepatic bile duct obstruction may be caused by gallstones, tumors (e.g., pancreatic, gallbladder, bile duct, ampulla of Vater), or scarring. Patients can present with jaundice, pruritus, and abdominal pain. Risk factors for postoperative mortality in these patients include a hemoglobin concentration less than 100 g/L, serum bilirubin exceeding 20 mg/dL, and serum albumin lower than 25 g/L.[312] These patients are at elevated risk for postoperative AKI, which may be prevented using bile salts or lactulose.[310]

Miscellaneous Liver Diseases

Wilson disease, hemochromatosis, and α_1-antitrypsin deficiency are uncommon hereditary causes of liver disease. All three conditions can eventually lead to end-stage liver disease. In contrast, another hereditary liver disease, Gilbert disease, is characterized by a mildly elevated bilirubin level and no perioperative significance. NASH, also known as “fatty liver,” progresses to liver fibrosis, cirrhosis, and end-stage liver disease (sometimes necessitating liver transplantation). The condition is associated with obesity, hypertension, dyslipidemia, and diabetes mellitus. Following a more than doubling in disease prevalence over the past two decades in the United States,[313] NASH is now the most common cause of chronic liver disease and the second most common indication for liver transplantation.[314,315] Primary biliary cirrhosis (or primary biliary cholangitis) is an autoimmune disorder characterized by intrahepatic biliary obstruction and antimitochondrial antibodies. Affected patients are predominantly female (>90%), may have other autoimmune disorders (e.g., Sjögren syndrome, autoimmune thyroid disease, limited cutaneous scleroderma, rheumatoid arthritis), and can progress to end-stage liver disease. Primary sclerosing cholangitis is characterized by bile duct destruction that can progress to cirrhosis and end-stage liver disease. The disease mainly affects males and may be idiopathic or associated with inflammatory bowel disease (i.e., ulcerative colitis, Crohn disease).

Unexpected Elevated Liver Function Tests

Elevated alanine aminotransferase (ALT) and aspartate aminotransferase (AST) concentration reflect hepatocyte damage. Bilirubin concentration measures the liver’s ability to conjugate and excrete bile salts. Alkaline phosphatase (ALP) rises with impaired hepatic excretion, whereas albumin and INR measure the synthetic function of the liver. Routine preoperative laboratory screening may identify about 1 in 700 surgical patients as having unexpected liver diseases, most of which are not severe.[316] Nonetheless, if abnormal liver function test values are unexpectedly found, further testing or referral may be necessary in some cases. Elevated AST or ALT concentrations should prompt hepatitis screening with hepatitis A IgM antibody, hepatitis B antigens (surface and core), hepatitis B surface antibody, and hepatitis C antibody. Elevated concentrations of ALP or bilirubin, especially in association with normal or mild to moderate increased transaminase levels, may indicate obstruction in the biliary system. In these cases, abdominal ultrasound, computed tomography scans, or endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography may establish a diagnosis.

Cirrhosis

Cirrhosis is defined as irreversible liver fibrosis and is the end result of most hepatotoxic conditions. This fibrosis leads to portal hypertension, impaired synthetic function (i.e., synthesis of proteins such as clotting factors), and impaired metabolic functions (i.e., clearance of toxins and drugs). Portal hypertension can lead to splenomegaly, esophageal varices, ascites, dependent edema, and pleural effusions. Patients with ascites may also develop spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, which is associated with increased perioperative mortality. Other complications include hepatic encephalopathy, bleeding, thrombocytopenia, low albumin concentrations, and prolonged INR. Hepatopulmonary syndrome may develop, resulting in hypoxemia and pulmonary hypertension because of pulmonary shunts. Jaundiced patients in particular are at risk for developing hepatorenal syndrome, which is renal insufficiency associated with hepatic disease but without any primary renal disease. The condition may be related to renal hypoperfusion. Patients with end-stage liver disease also develop a high–cardiac output state, characterized by decreased systemic vascular resistance. The Child-Turcotte-Pugh classification can predict perioperative morbidity and mortality, with especially high risks in patients assigned to class C (see Table 31.16). The MELD score also predicts perioperative risks, perhaps better than the Child-Turcotte-Pugh classification,[317] with scores exceeding 14 indicative of increased perioperative risk.

HEMATOLOGIC DISORDERS

Anemia

Anemia is a very common preoperative hematologic disorder with multifactorial etiology. It is strictly defined as a reduced number of circulating red blood cells (RBCs), however, more commonly it is defined based on the value of reduced hemoglobin concentration or reduced hematocrit. For example, the World Health Organization defines anemia as a hemoglobin level less than 130 g/L in adult men and less than 120 g/L in adult women. Anemia can be classified based on the underlying mechanisms as being related to decreased RBC production (e.g., bone marrow disorders, nutritional deficiencies), increased RBC destruction (e.g., hemolytic anemia, intravascular hemolysis), and blood loss (e.g., gastrointestinal blood loss). Anemia may also be classified morphologically based on the associated RBC size, which is itself characterized by the mean corpuscular volume (MCV). Based on this approach, anemia can be classified as microcytic (MCV < 80 femtoliter [fL]), macrocytic (MCV > 100 fL), or normocytic (MCV between 80 and 100 fL). Common causes of microcytic anemia are iron deficiency (including chronic blood loss), thalassemia minor, and anemia associated with inflammatory disease. Common causes of macrocytic anemia include alcoholism, liver disease, hypothyroidism, and vitamin B_{12} deficiency. Common causes of normocytic anemia are CKD, heart failure, and cancer.

Preexisting anemia is a consistently recognized risk factor for postoperative death and complications, including AKI, stroke, and infections.[318] Furthermore, this risk is proportional to the degree of anemia and independent of the patient's other comorbidities.[101,102,319] Nonetheless, there are some important caveats for consideration. First, it remains unclear whether anemia is the causal mechanism for these complications, or instead simply a marker of a high-risk patient. The limited available perioperative data generally suggest that anemia treatment strategies (e.g., erythropoiesis-stimulating agents) can improve hemoglobin concentrations and reduce transfusion requirements, but without convincing evidence for the prevention of death or complications.[320-322] These perioperative data are also generally consistent with findings in nonsurgical populations, such as patients with heart failure.[323-327] Second, there is no consistent hemoglobin concentration threshold that defines elevated perioperative risk. While data from noncardiac surgery performed in Jehovah's Witness patients suggest that risk increases substantially once preoperative hemoglobin concentrations fall below 100 g/L (especially in the presence of concomitant IHD),[328] simply increasing hemoglobin concentrations to this threshold with RBC transfusion is not consistently beneficial. Importantly, transfusion itself has also been associated with poor outcomes in observational studies.[329] In a multicenter randomized trial of 2016 patients undergoing hip fracture surgery, a strategy of transfusing in response to a 100 g/L threshold in hemoglobin concentration was not superior to a strategy of transfusing in response to a 80 g/L threshold or symptoms of anemia.[330] Similarly, in a multicenter randomized trial of 5243 patients undergoing cardiac surgery, a strategy of transfusing in response to a 75 g/L threshold was noninferior to a strategy of transfusing in response to a 95 g/L threshold.[331] These data suggest that the optimal perioperative hemoglobin concentration threshold varies between 75 g/L and 100 g/L across individuals, with interindividual differences largely explained by comorbid conditions (e.g., cardiopulmonary disease).

During the preoperative evaluation of known or suspected anemia, the overarching goals are to determine its etiology, duration, stability, related symptoms, and therapy. Thus, it is important to inquire about any history of anemia (including family history of anemia), colon cancer, gastrointestinal bleeding, genitourinary bleeding, menorrhagia, chronic infections, inflammatory diseases, nutritional deficiencies, and prior weight reduction procedures (e.g., bariatric surgery). The anesthesiologist should also consider the type of surgical procedure, anticipated blood loss, and comorbid conditions that may either affect oxygen delivery or be affected by decreased oxygen delivery (i.e., pulmonary, renal, hepatic, cerebrovascular, cardiovascular disease). In addition, an accurate determination of the patient's medications is helpful, especially because anemia has implications for the risk-to-benefit profile of some perioperative medications, such as β-adrenergic blockers.[103,104]

Patients with anemia or suspected anemia must have a CBC. In general, collaboration with a primary care physician or hematologist is helpful for further evaluation of newly diagnosed anemia. Usual initial studies include peripheral smear and MCV; subsequent studies, such as iron studies (i.e., ferritin, transferrin saturation), vitamin B_{12}, or folate levels, are guided by findings on the smear and the MCV.[332] The MCV is high and the vitamin B_{12} or folate levels are low in macrocytic anemia associated with these deficiencies. Low values in MCV, ferritin (<30 g/μL), and transferrin saturation (<20%) are indicative of iron deficiency anemia. In some cases of iron deficiency anemia, transferrin saturation may still be low (<20%) but ferritin concentrations are in an indeterminate zone (i.e., 30-100 g/μL). Conversely, ferritin and transferrin saturation are normal or high in anemia associated with chronic disease.

Blood type and screening may be necessary based on the level of preoperative anemia and anticipated degree of surgical blood loss. Elective procedures should be postponed in patients with significant anemia, regardless of the anticipated surgical blood loss. This delay allows for evaluation of the underlying cause, such as occult blood loss, vitamin deficiency, or undiagnosed chronic conditions (e.g., CKD). When delay in elective surgery is possible, updated 2015 guidelines from the ASA suggest preoperative treatment with an erythropoiesis-stimulating agent and iron in some patient subgroups (e.g., CKD, anemia of chronic disease, patient's refusal to receive blood transfusions), especially for anemic individuals scheduled for procedures with significant expected blood loss.[333] Similarly, preoperative iron therapy may be considered in patients with known iron deficiency anemia, when time permits.[333]

Sickle Cell Disease

Sickle cell disease is a hereditary hemoglobinopathy with associated vasoocclusive episodes that are responsible for most associated complications. Patients homozygous for hemoglobin S (HbS) have symptomatic disease; they are at risk for major morbidity and have a shortened life expectancy. Patients with SC disease, who have both HbS and HbC, have a much less severe clinical course with moderate anemia. Heterozygous patients (HbS and HbA) have sickle cell trait and rarely have any related consequences. Preoperative assessment should focus on evidence of organ dysfunction and recent patterns of acute exacerbations.[334] Patients may have CKD, loss of renal concentration ability (and therefore are prone to dehydration), splenomegaly, pulmonary hypertension, pulmonary infarctions, CVD, and heart failure. They are at risk for infections because of splenic infarctions. Predictors of perioperative vasoocclusive complications include recent increases in hospitalizations, advanced age, preexisting infections, and pulmonary disease.[334]

The preoperative examination focuses on the frequency, severity, and pattern of vasoocclusive crises. In addition, the anesthesiologist should evaluate the degree of pulmonary, cardiac, renal, and central nervous system damage. Useful tests include an ECG, chest radiograph, and blood sampling for CBC and creatinine concentration. Additional testing (e.g., echocardiogram, arterial blood gases) may be needed. Preoperative prophylactic transfusion is increasingly used in patients with sickle cell anemia who are undergoing any surgical procedure—other than short minor procedures (e.g., biopsy, myringotomy).[335] The objective of any red cell transfusion is to reduce the proportion of abnormal hemoglobin in the affected patient. A prior randomized trial found that prophylactic transfusion to a hemoglobin concentration greater than 100 g/L resulted in fewer adverse events following intermediate-risk surgery.[336] This simpler approach of transfusing to a hemoglobin concentration threshold (>100 g/L) is as effective as a more aggressive approach of transfusing to decrease

HbS concentration to under 30% (while also increasing hemoglobin concentration to ≥ 100 g/L)[337] in the setting of intermediate-risk surgery. It is likely that a more aggressive strategy (i.e., decreasing HbS concentration to < 30%) is preferable for high-risk surgery such as major cardiovascular or intracranial procedures. In general, the decision to transfuse preoperatively should be made only in concert with a hematologist familiar with the disease. Additionally, if the person with sickle cell is managed by a specialist sickle cell service, it is best to liaise with this team before surgery. The patient's surgical admission should be planned to minimize preoperative dehydration (e.g., minimize fasting period, schedule procedure as an early morning case).

Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase Deficiency

Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency is a hereditary Coombs-positive hemolytic anemia. Since it is an X-linked hereditary condition, affected individuals are typically males. Hemolysis may be triggered by drugs (e.g., antipyretics, nitrates, sulfonamides), food (e.g., fava beans), infection, hypoxia, hypothermia, or blood products. Lists of potentially triggering medications are available online (e.g., www.g6pd.org, www.g6pddeficiency.org). The severity of the hemolysis varies across individuals and the underlying genetic defects. Treatment involves avoidance of triggers, folic acid supplementation, and management of acute hemolytic episodes (i.e., hydration, red cell transfusion for severe anemia). The preoperative evaluation should focus on previous hemolysis episodes, predisposing factors, and current hematocrit.

Coagulopathies

Hypocoagulable states may be either inherited (e.g., hemophilia) or acquired (e.g., liver disease, malnutrition, drug exposure). To determine the diagnosis and associated bleeding risk, the anesthesiologist should inquire about known diagnoses, tests, treatments, previous bleeding episodes, and family history. A history of excessive bruising, prolonged bleeding after cuts, heavy menstrual cycles, and bleeding gums is sensitive but not specific. A *change* in these symptoms is likely more meaningful than a long-term history (because what one individual considers excessive may actually be normal). Excessive bleeding after previous procedures or childbirth (especially if transfusions were unexpectedly required) is more definitive but not diagnostic. Petechiae, multiple bruises, hematomas, jaundice, and frank bleeding are important findings. Diagnostic testing may include a CBC (including platelet count), INR, and aPTT; however, *routine* preoperative screening for coagulopathies is not indicated. Clinical indications include a known bleeding disorder, hepatic disease, and anticoagulant use.[5] National guidelines in the United Kingdom also recommend coagulation testing only in patients who are (1) ASA physical status class III or IV; (2) undergoing intermediate, major, or complex surgical procedures; and (3) known to take anticoagulant medications or have chronic liver disease.[274] If a specific cause of bleeding is suspected or known (e.g., liver disease, malnutrition), then additional targeted testing (e.g., liver function tests, protein, albumin) may be needed.

Patients may occasionally have abnormal INR or aPTT results on preoperative screening bloodwork. In patients without a history of vitamin K antagonist use, the most common causes of a prolonged INR are laboratory error, liver disease, and malnutrition. Consequently, the test should initially be repeated. If the repeat test result remains abnormal, both liver function tests and a hepatitis panel are warranted, with possible referral to a hematologist. A trial of oral vitamin K (1-5 mg daily for 3 days) can also be implemented. A prolonged aPTT can result from both hypocoagulable and hypercoagulable (e.g., factor V Leiden, anticardiolipin antibody, lupus anticoagulant, antiphospholipid antibody syndrome) conditions. The first steps are to repeat the test and ascertain possible exposure to heparin. Even small amounts of heparin in indwelling catheters can prolong the aPTT, especially if the blood is drawn from that site. Other than heparin exposure, other causes of a prolonged aPTT include von Willebrand disease (vWD; see section on von Willebrand Disease) and hemophilias (see section on "Hemophilias"). Mixing studies (in which normal blood is mixed with the subject's blood) allows for differentiation between factor deficiencies (aPTT will be corrected) versus inhibitors (no correction). Elective surgical procedures should be postponed until the etiology of abnormal tests is determined and corrections are made.

Hemophilias. Hemophilia A (factor VIII deficiency) and hemophilia B (factor IX deficiency) are X-linked recessive inherited disorders that almost exclusively manifest in males. Hemophilia B is also referred to as "Christmas disease." Hemophilia C is an autosomal recessive deficiency of factor XI (also called Rosenthal syndrome) that tends to affect individuals of Ashkenazi Jewish descent. Hemophilia A has a six-fold higher incidence than Hemophilia B (1 in 5000 male births vs. 1 in 30,000 male births). The severity of bleeding varies across individuals but is similar among relatives (who have the same underlying genetic mutation) and is directly related to the degree of factor deficiency. Severe hemophilia is characterized by less than 1% factor activity, moderate hemophilia by 1% to 5% activity, and mild hemophilia by more than 5% to under 40% activity. Increased disease severity is characterized by an early onset of bleeding episodes, as well as higher risks of both severe and spontaneous bleeding. About two thirds of hemophilia A cases are severe, while the proportion is 50% for hemophilia B. Patients with hemophilia have a prolonged aPTT, but a normal INR and platelet count.

A hematologist must be involved in the perioperative care of patients with hemophilia. A detailed plan to both measure and replace deficient factors is paramount. Current guidelines recommend that, in the setting of major surgery, factor replacement be used to increase preoperative levels to 80% to 100% for hemophilia A and 60% to 80% for hemophilia B.[338] After surgery, the target factor level is 50%, until the surgical wound is healed. The specific required dose of recombinant factor is informed by the targeted increase in factor levels, clinical expertise of the consulting hematologist, individual patient-level factors (e.g., history of previous bleeding episodes), and hospital protocols. The dose required to increase factor VIII levels is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Factor VIII dose} &= \text{weight (kg)} \times 0.5\\ &\quad \times (\text{desired absolute \% increase in factor levels})\end{aligned}$$

The typical required dose for factor IX replacement is:

$$\text{Factor IX dose} = \text{weight (kg)} \times (\text{desired absolute \% increase in factor levels})$$

To rapidly increase factor levels to close to 100%, the usual dose required is 50 units/kg for factor VIII and 100 to 120 units/kg for factor IX.[339] Intramuscular injections are to be avoided in these patients.

von Willebrand Disease. vWD is an inherited disorder of von Willebrand factor (vWF) that affects both sexes. It is the most common congenital coagulopathy, occurring in approximately 1% of individuals.[340] Several types (1, 2A, 2B, 2M, 2N) are autosomal dominant, while type 3 is autosomal recessive (Table 31.17). vWD can result from both quantitative and qualitative vWF deficiencies. Most affected patients have a normal INR and platelet count (although type 2B can have a mild thrombocytopenia), but typically elevated aPTT (although patients with mild disease may have normal aPTT). Indeed, vWD is the most common cause of a prolonged aPTT in patients not taking heparin. The condition is diagnosed by measuring plasma vWF functional activity (ristocetin cofactor, which causes platelet aggregation), plasma vWF antigen levels, and factor VIII levels. Most patients with vWD have a history of bleeding, but some do not receive a diagnosis until a challenge to coagulation occurs with major surgery or antiplatelet drug exposure (e.g., aspirin, NSAIDs).

A hematologist should be involved in the care of patients with vWD. Treatment options for vWD include desmopressin acetate (1-desamino-8-d-arginine vasopressin [DDAVP]) and vWF replacement therapy. DDAVP increases the release of factor VIII, vWF, and plasminogen activator from endothelial cells. It is contraindicated in patients with type 2B disease because it increases abnormal vWF release and may cause thrombocytopenia. In addition, it is not recommended in patients with type 3 disease (since there is minimal to no vWF available to be released from endothelial cells). In other cases, an intravenous dose of 0.3 μg/kg (given over 15-30 minutes to minimize hypotension, flushing, and tachycardia) typically raises vWF concentrations by three- to four-fold. Nonetheless, considerable variation in response exists among individuals. Hence, an initial test of DDAVP should be conducted prior to any bleeding episodes (e.g., surgery), while monitoring changes in vWF and factor VIII concentrations over the 4 hours after drug administration. DDAVP is also available as a nasal spray (150 μg for individuals under 50 kg, and 300 μg for individuals weighing 50 kg or more). For individuals who cannot be treated adequately with DDAVP, vWF preparations should be used instead. A variety of preparations are available, including vWF-containing factor VIII concentrates, purified vWF concentrates, and recombinant vWF products. These options, if available, are preferable to cryoprecipitate (which can be used nonetheless, but is associated with higher risks of viral transmission).

Thrombocytopenia. Thrombocytopenia is defined as a platelet count less than 150,000/mm^3. It may be the result of decreased production, increased destruction, or sequestration. Causes include malignant diseases, primary immune thrombocytopenia (ITP), drug-induced thrombocytopenia (e.g., quinine, sulfonamides, ampicillin), rheumatological autoimmune disorders (e.g., SLE, rheumatoid arthritis), pregnancy (i.e., gestational thrombocytopenia, preeclampsia), chronic liver disease (i.e., hypersplenism), alcohol, nutritional deficiencies, infection (e.g., hepatitis C, sepsis), hereditary disease, and disseminated intravascular coagulation. If a patient has an unexpectedly low platelet count, the initial steps are to repeat the test, examine the peripheral smear, and collect blood for the platelet count in a tube without ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid. This chemical is a chelating agent often used to prevent clotting in tubes used for determining CBC, but it can also cause clumping of platelets (termed pseudothrombocytopenia). ITP is a chronic autoimmune disorder characterized by autoantibodies that cause platelet destruction. Usual treatment includes corticosteroids, splenectomy (eliminates the major site of platelet removal), and intravenous immunoglobulin. Patients with ITP often have less bleeding than expected, even at very low platelet levels, likely because of increased platelet turnover with a resulting predominance of young platelets. A patient with newly discovered thrombocytopenia may require a hematology consultation before elective surgery.

Thrombocytopenia within the context of recent heparin exposure should raise a concern regarding potential heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT), which generally occurs within 5 to 10 days after heparin exposure.[341] HIT is an immune-mediated disorder characterized by antibodies directed against platelet factor 4 complexed with heparin. While HIT is characterized by thrombocytopenia, affected patients are at risk for arterial thromboses,

TABLE 31.17 Classification of von Willebrand Disease

Type	Characteristics	Initial Treatment
1	80% of cases; quantitative defect	Desmopressin*
2A	Quantitative and qualitative defect	Desmopressin*
2B**	Rare; quantitative and qualitative defect, autosomal dominant	Cryoprecipitate or factor VIII concentrates with vWF
2M	Qualitative defect	Desmopressin*
2N	Qualitative defect; vWF levels normal; factor VIII reduced	Desmopressin* effect may be too short-lived
3	Rare; low to undetectable levels of vWF	Desmopressin* usually not effective

*Desmopressin acetate (DDAVP).
**With type 2B desmopressin acetate may cause thrombocytopenia. If desmopressin is not effective, factor VIII concentrates containing vWF may be used.
vWF, von Willebrand factor.

venous thromboses, stroke, skin necrosis, limb gangrene, and organ infarction. Since the results of definitive laboratory testing for HIT antibodies (i.e., immunoassay and/or functional assay for HIT antibodies) typically takes several days, the initial presumptive diagnosis is based on clinical presentation and available laboratory tests (e.g., decreasing platelet counts). This initial diagnosis can be aided with validated clinical prediction tools, such as the "4 Ts" score.[342] While waiting for the results of antibody testing in patients with suspected HIT, any heparin therapy (including LMWH) should be immediately discontinued and alternative anticoagulation therapy (e.g., danaparoid, argatroban, bivalirudin, fondaparinux, DOACs) instituted.

In otherwise healthy individuals (i.e., no other basis for elevated bleeding risks) neuraxial anesthesia is generally considered safe once the platelet count exceeds 50,000 to 80,000 per mm^3.[343-346] Surgery can be safely performed in patients with platelet counts higher than 50,000/mm^3.[346] The risk of bleeding increases progressively as the count falls further, to less than 50,000/mm^3. When platelet transfusions are used to treat thrombocytopenia, the platelet count generally rises by 10,000/mm^3 for every unit transfused.

Thrombocytosis. Thrombocytosis is a platelet count more than 450,000/mm^3. It may be physiologic (i.e., exercise, pregnancy), primary (e.g., myeloproliferative disorder), or secondary (e.g., iron deficiency, neoplasm, surgery, chronic inflammation). Increasing levels of thrombocytosis can increase risks for thrombotic events, such as strokes, myocardial infarction, pulmonary emboli, mesenteric emboli, and venous clots. Conversely, patients with primary thrombocytosis (also known as essential thrombocythemia) also have a tendency toward increased bleeding, which may be due to qualitative alterations in platelet function and an acquired von Willebrand syndrome associated with very high platelet counts (>1,000,000/mm^3). Treatments include medications (e.g., hydroxyurea, anagrelide, pegylated interferon) that decrease platelet production and thereby reduce platelet counts over 7 to 10 days. Plasmapheresis, which removes platelets from the circulation, can be used if an immediate lowering in platelet count is required. In cases of secondary thrombocytosis, treatment of the underlying disorder usually results in normalization of the platelet count.

Polycythemia. Polycythemia is characterized by an increased number of circulating RBCs and increased hemoglobin concentration. It can be defined based on hematocrit (>48% in females and >49% in males) and hemoglobin concentration (>160 g/L in females and > 165 g/L in males). Polycythemia can be a primary disorder (i.e., polycythemia vera) or secondary to conditions typically associated with chronic hypoxia (e.g., COPD, high altitude, cyanotic congenital heart disease). A steep increase in blood viscosity occurs once the hematocrit increases to more than 50%, resulting in an increased thrombogenic risk. High hematocrits are associated with increased atherosclerosis (e.g., carotid stenosis, stroke) and cardiac disease (e.g., heart failure, myocardial infarction). Reports on whether polycythemia increases perioperative risk are contradictory. For example, a hematocrit more than 51% was associated with increased postoperative mortality in a retrospective cohort study of more than 310,000 patients.[102] Conversely, a previous smaller study of 200 patients did not find an increased rate of perioperative complications in individuals with secondary polycythemia.[347]

The preoperative evaluation should focus on the pulmonary and cardiovascular systems. On physical examination, the anesthesiologist should examine for cyanosis, clubbing, wheezing, murmurs, and oxygen saturation (via pulse oximetry). Useful laboratory tests include an ECG, arterial blood gases, and chest radiograph. An unexpected finding of polycythemia should prompt an investigation for possible causes, which if not readily apparent, should raise the possibility of polycythemia vera. In such cases, elective surgery should be postponed pending a consultation by a hematologist.

Venous Thromboembolic Disorders. VTE is an important potential risk in hospitalized patients, including surgical patients.[348] Primary VTE prophylaxis is beyond the scope of this chapter and is covered extensively in specialty society practice guidelines.[11,12] Nonetheless, patients should be stratified preoperatively for their risks of perioperative VTE to inform the appropriate selection of prophylactic measures. The expected risk of postoperative VTE depends on both patient-related (e.g., inflammatory bowel disease, acute illness, smoking, malignant disease, obesity, increased age, prior VTE, estrogen use, hypercoagulable state, inherited thrombophilia) and procedure-related (e.g., invasiveness, trauma, immobilization) factors. A reasonable approach for estimating perioperative VTE risk is to use a validated clinical prediction index, a widely used example being the Modified Caprini Risk Assessment Model (Box 31.12).[11,349] A Caprini score of zero indicates very low VTE risk (0.5% risk in the absence of thromboprophylaxis), scores of 1 to 2 indicate low VTE risk (1.5% risk in the absence of thromboprophylaxis), scores of 3 to 4 indicate moderate VTE risk (3.0% risk in the absence of thromboprophylaxis), and scores of 5 or more indicate high VTE risk (6.0% risk in the absence of thromboprophylaxis).

Some subgroups of patients are at considerably higher risk for perioperative VTE, namely those with very recent VTE (i.e., within prior 3 months) and those with a history of VTE associated with a high-risk inherited thrombophilia.[350] For individuals with a very recent VTE episode, elective surgery should be delayed until 3 or more months have elapsed since the episode (during which time they should be anticoagulated).[351] Specifically, the risk of recurrent VTE is highest during the first 3 to 4 weeks after the initial episode; this risk then decreases over the next 2 months. Hereditary high-risk thrombophilias include Factor V Leiden, antithrombin III deficiency, protein C deficiency, protein S deficiency, prothrombin gene mutation, and antiphospholipid antibodies. Factor V Leiden and prothrombin gene mutations are the most common causes, together comprising up to 60% of cases.[352]

BOX 31.12 Modified Caprini Risk Assessment Model for Venous Thromboembolism

1 Point Each

- Age 41–60 years
- Minor surgery
- BMI > 25 kg/m2
- Swollen legs
- Varicose veins
- Pregnancy or postpartum
- History of unexplained or recurrent spontaneous abortion
- Oral contraceptives or hormone replacement
- Sepsis (<1 month)
- Serious lung disease, including pneumonia (<1 month)
- Abnormal pulmonary function
- Acute myocardial infarction
- Heart failure (<1 month)
- History of inflammatory bowel disease
- Medical patient at bed rest

2 Points Each

- Age 61–74 years
- Arthroscopic surgery
- Major open surgery (>45 min)
- Laparoscopic surgery (>45 min)
- Malignancy
- Confined to bed (>72 h)
- Immobilizing plaster cast
- Central venous access

3 Points Each

- Age ≥ 75 years
- History of VTE
- Family history of VTE
- Factor V Leiden mutation
- Prothrombin 20210A mutation
- Lupus anticoagulant
- Anticardiolipin antibodies
- Elevated serum homocysteine
- Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia
- Other congenital or acquired thrombophilia

5 Points Each

- Stroke (<1 month)
- Elective arthroplasty
- Hip, pelvis, or leg fracture
- Acute spinal cord injury (<1 month)

BMI, Body mass index; *VTE,* venous thromboembolism.

From Gould MK, Garcia DA, Wren SM, et al. Prevention of VTE in nonorthopedic surgical patients: antithrombotic therapy and prevention of thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians evidence-based clinical practical guidelines. *Chest.* 2012; 141: e227S–e277S.

Patients having minor procedures such as dental, endoscopic, cataract, or superficial operations usually do not require interruption of anticoagulant therapy. In other individuals, withholding warfarin for 5 days typically allows the INR to decrease to normal if the baseline INR is in the usual therapeutic target (2.0 and 3.0). A longer interval may be needed if the baseline INR is higher (see section on “Preoperative Anticoagulant Therapy”). During the time without warfarin, patients may be at risk for recurrent thromboembolism; however, the risk is relatively small in all but the highest-risk patients (i.e., VTE in prior 3 months, or VTE with high-risk inherited thrombophilia). The decision to bridge with intravenous unfractionated heparin or with LMWH subcutaneously in high-risk patients must be made collaboratively with the treating physician.

Preoperative Anticoagulant Therapy. Outpatient oral anticoagulant therapy includes vitamin K antagonists (e.g., warfarin) and DOACs. These agents increase perioperative bleeding, except in the case of very minor procedures. Thus, they should only be continued perioperatively if an individual does not have patient-related risk factors for bleeding (e.g., liver disease, abnormal renal function, prior bleeding complications), is scheduled for procedures without important bleeding risk (e.g., dental extraction, simple cutaneous procedures, cataract surgery without bulbar blocks), and is not being considered for neuraxial anesthesia. Otherwise, anticoagulant therapy must be temporarily discontinued before surgery.

Typically, vitamin K antagonists should be stopped 5 days before surgery, with consideration for a longer discontinuation period if the initial INR value is more than 3.0. Ideally, the INR should be rechecked within 24 hours before surgery,[195] and a low dose of oral vitamin K (1 to 5 mg administrated orally or subcutaneously) administered for any INR result greater than 1.5. Vitamin K has an effect within 6 to 10 hours after oral or subcutaneous administration (more predictable with oral administration), and it peaks within 24 hours to 48 hours.[353] Administration of higher doses may lead to warfarin resistance when therapy is initiated again. Some patients undergoing elective lower extremity joint replacement surgery may also receive an initial dose of warfarin before surgery for perioperative thromboprophylaxis. The 2018 American Society of Regional Anesthesiologists (ASRA) guidelines state that neuraxial anesthesia can still be performed in these patients when only a single dose of warfarin has been administered within a period of 24 hours or less before surgery.[196]

Patients are increasingly receiving DOACs for long-term anticoagulation, typically for nonvalvular atrial fibrillation, although some individuals may be prescribed low-dose DOAC therapy for IHD.[91] The timing of preoperative discontinuation of DOACs should be guided by the specific drug prescribed, expected procedural bleeding risk, renal function (based on estimated GFR), and planned use of neuraxial anesthesia. Some proposed approaches for preoperative DOAC discontinuation are outlined in Tables 31.11 and 31.12.[195-197]

Patients may require temporary bridging therapy during the intervening period between discontinuation of vitamin K antagonist therapy and the date of surgery. Such bridging therapy is generally not needed after interruption of DOACs because of their relatively short half-lives. *Most* patients with nonvalvular atrial fibrillation do not require bridging therapy if their anticoagulant therapy is temporarily discontinued before surgery (see section on "Atrial Fibrillation").[195,198] Conversely, many patients with mechanical heart valves will require bridging therapy, with the decision based on the location of the mechanical heart valve and nature of planned surgery (see Box 31.4).[173] Additionally, some patients who are at very high risk for recurrent VTE (e.g., VTE episode within prior 3 months) may also require bridging therapy. In general, decisions to use bridging therapy with intravenous unfractionated heparin or LMWH must be individualized, account for patients' risks of bleeding while on bridge therapy, and be made collaboratively with the treating physician.

If bridging is planned, either LMWH or intravenous unfractionated heparin can be started 2 or more days after the last administrated dose of vitamin K antagonist (e.g., warfarin). Bridging therapy should be started once the INR drops to under 2.0.[195] There are several available options for LMWH (e.g., enoxaparin, dalteparin). The specific choice and dose should be selected based on consultation with a hematologist or the patient's treating physician. For patients with impaired renal function (eGFR < 30 mL/min), intravenous heparin bridging is preferable, although some LMWH dosing adjustments remain possible if eGFR is in the range between 15 and 30 mL/min.[195] Intravenous unfractionated heparin is usually discontinued approximately 6 hours before the surgery to allow for normal intraoperative coagulation. The last dose of *bridging dose* LMWH should be given 24 hours preoperatively to allow normalization of coagulation by the time of surgery (based on an assumption of normal renal function). Both unfractionated heparin and LMWH are contraindicated in patients with an allergy to heparin or a history of HIT. Options for bridging therapy in such patients include argatroban (intravenous infusion), bivalirudin (intravenous infusion), fondaparinux (subcutaneous), or oral DOACs. The specific management strategy should be selected following consultation with a hematologist.

Based on the 2018 ASRA guidelines,[196] recommendations for management of preoperative anticoagulant therapy are more conservative if perioperative neuraxial techniques are being considered. These guidelines recommend that warfarin should be discontinued 5 or more days before surgery, and a repeat preoperative INR should confirm a normalized value before neuraxial blocks are performed.[196] The recommended intervals for timing of neuraxial blocks after discontinuing DOAC therapy are outlined in Table 31.11. The last *prophylactic* dose of LMWH should be 12 or more hours before any planned neuraxial block, whereas the last *therapeutic* dose (including bridging therapy) of LMWH should be 24 or more hours beforehand. Preoperative unfractionated intravenous heparin should be stopped 6 or more hours before planned spinal or epidural anesthesia.[196] In addition, return to normal coagulation can be monitored using aPTT or anti-factor Xa activity. Though the safety of performing neuraxial techniques in the presence of low-dose subcutaneous unfractionated heparin (i.e., 5000 units twice daily) has been described,[354] the 2018 ASRA guidelines include a Grade 2C recommendation for waiting 4 to 6 hours after subcutaneous injection before performing neuraxial blocks in patients receiving subcutaneous unfractionated heparin (i.e., 5000 units 2 or 3 times daily).[196] This Grade 2C rating indicates that the recommendation was relatively weaker ("*conflicting evidence or opinion on the usefulness*") and based entirely on case reports or expert opinion.[196] Any patients receiving fibrinolytic and thrombolytic drugs should not receive neuraxial anesthesia.

Preoperative Antiplatelet Therapy. Traditionally, aspirin has been discontinued before surgery (often 7-10 days before surgery) because of concern about increased bleeding. A withdrawal period of 7 to 10 days is likely excessive, especially because new platelets formed after aspirin discontinuation (half-life ≈15 minutes) are not inhibited. Since 10% of platelets are turned over every 24 hours, and about 50,000/mm^3 of normal functioning platelets are needed to control surgical bleeding, it is likely that aspirin need only be stopped 3 days before surgery to mitigate risks of increased bleeding. Continuation of aspirin until the time of surgery leads to increased bleeding during major noncardiac surgery,[136] but not during cardiac surgery.[355] *Withdrawing* aspirin itself has important theoretical risks with respect to a rebound hypercoagulable state and increased cardiac risk,[141,356] however, these theoretical risks have not been supported by data from large randomized trials.[136,355] Therefore, a reasonable standard approach for most surgical patients is to discontinue aspirin temporarily 3 days before surgery, with some notable exceptions. Specifically, aspirin should be continued in any patient with a prior PCI,[144] high-grade IHD, or high-risk CVD (e.g., stroke within prior 9 months).[212] Continuation of aspirin is not a contraindication to performance of neuraxial blocks.[196]

P2Y$_{12}$ inhibitors are the other relatively common type of antiplatelet medications that might be encountered during preoperative evaluation, especially among patients with known IHD or CVD. These medications include oral medications (clopidogrel, ticagrelor, prasugrel, ticlopidine) and an intravenous formulation (cangrelor). Aside from the case of patients with a recent PCI (see section on "Coronary Stents"), P2Y$_{12}$ inhibitor therapy should be temporarily discontinued before elective surgery. The usual recommended time interval for discontinuing these medications before surgery (including cases where neuraxial blocks are planned) is 5 to 7 days for clopidogrel, 5 to 7 days for ticagrelor, 7 to 10 days for prasugrel, 10 days for ticlopidine, and 3 hours for cangrelor.[196]

Some patients with either PAD or CVD may be on long-term therapy with dipyridamole, which causes vasodilation and impairment of platelet function. The drug is available as an immediate-release formulation, as well as an extended-release formulation combined with aspirin (i.e., Aggrenox). There are minimal data on the safety of continuing dipyridamole in patients undergoing surgery; current ASRA guidelines recommend discontinuing extended-release dipyridamole 24 hours before performing any neuraxial block.[196] Information on the perioperative safety of other antiplatelet therapies (e.g., glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors) is also limited. Platelet glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors (e.g., abciximab, eptifibatide, tirofiban) exert profound effects on platelet aggregation. Following administration, the time to restoration of normal platelet aggregation is 24 to 48 hours for abciximab, and 4 to 8 hours for eptifibatide and tirofiban. Neuraxial techniques should be avoided until platelet function has recovered after platelet glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitor administration.[196]

NEUROLOGIC DISEASE

The preoperative history in a patient with neurologic disease should focus on recent exacerbations, prior investigations, and therapy (both current and prior). The basic neurologic examination should evaluate mental status, speech, cranial nerves, gait, motor function, and sensory function. This baseline determination also allows for comparison of any new postoperative deficits.

Cerebrovascular Disease

The major clinical manifestation of CVD is acute stroke with more than 10 million new strokes per year worldwide. In addition, about 6.5 million individuals die annually from stroke, making it the second leading cause of death globally.[357] The two main categories of stroke are hemorrhagic stroke and ischemic stroke. Hemorrhagic stroke is largely related to either intracerebral hemorrhage or subarachnoid hemorrhage. Common causes of intracerebral hemorrhage include hypertension, trauma, coagulopathies, illicit drug use (i.e., amphetamines, cocaine), and arteriovenous malformations (AVMs). Causes of subarachnoid hemorrhage are bleeding from aneurysms and AVMs (see section on "Aneurysms and Arteriovenous Malformations"). Ischemic stroke may be related to thrombosis of an artery through several different mechanisms (e.g., atherosclerosis, arterial dissection), embolism (e.g., related to atrial fibrillation), or systemic hypoperfusion (e.g., cardiac arrest). The other major manifestation of CVD is a TIA, which is a transient episode of neurologic dysfunction caused by focal ischemia in the brain, spinal cord, or retina, but without infarction.[358]

CVD has important perioperative implications. It is a risk factor for postoperative complications, including cardiac events,[97] stroke,[132,359,360] and death.[77] Furthermore, the risks of postoperative cardiac complications and recurrent stroke are particularly increased when elective noncardiac surgery is performed within 9 months after a prior stroke[212] or when surgical aortic valve replacement is performed within 3 months after a prior stroke.[212] Importantly, if emergency surgery needs to be performed after a stroke, it may be preferable to *not* delay surgery. Specifically, while the risks of postoperative cardiovascular complications are very high when emergency surgery is performed within 2 weeks after an ischemic stroke, these risks were reduced when surgery proceeded within 72 hours after the stroke.[361] This temporal pattern may be explained by progressively worsening cerebral autoregulation during the first 5 days after an ischemic stroke (which then recovers over the next 3 months).[362]

The preoperative evaluation should focus on the timing, presentation, etiology, and treatment of prior strokes or TIAs. It is important to document the etiology in order to distinguish carotid stenosis (i.e., atherosclerosis) from cardioembolic disease. Causes of cardiac emboli include stasis (i.e., atrial fibrillation, severe cardiomyopathy, ventricular aneurysm), thrombogenic (i.e., valvular heart disease, prosthetic heart valve), and paradoxical venous source (e.g., patent foramen ovale). The physical examination should include a brief neurologic exam to identify any preexisting deficits, auscultation for carotid bruits, and a precordial assessment to assess for murmurs or extra heart sounds. Depending on the underlying basis for CVD (i.e., atherosclerosis, atrial fibrillation), patients may be on long-term therapy with aspirin, $P2Y_{12}$ inhibitors (e.g., clopidogrel), vitamin K antagonists, and DOACs. Both vitamin K antagonists and DOACs should be temporarily discontinued before surgery (see section on "Atrial Fibrillation"). Similarly, $P2Y_{12}$ inhibitor therapy should be interrupted before surgery, with the possible exception of cases with very recent coronary stent implantation (see section on "Coronary Stents"). Continuing aspirin perioperatively does not prevent cardiovascular complications,[136] but leads to an increased risk of major bleeding (a risk factor for perioperative stroke).[132] Nonetheless, selective continuation of aspirin can be considered in patients with high-risk atherosclerotic CVD or recent stroke (i.e., previous 9 months).[212] In other cases, aspirin should be temporarily held 72 hours before surgery.[136] In addition, concomitant CVD should be carefully considered in any decision to initiate new β-adrenergic blocker therapy in a patient awaiting noncardiac surgery. Although β-blockade does decrease perioperative cardiac risk, it also significantly increases the risk for acute postoperative stroke.[132,133]

Asymptomatic Carotid Bruit

The presence of a carotid bruit significantly increases the likelihood of a significant lesion (i.e., 70%-99% stenosis) in both symptomatic or asymptomatic patients.[26] Thus, a newly discovered carotid bruit should prompt a careful search for any evidence of prior strokes or TIA, especially if the planned surgical procedure involves neck manipulation. At-risk individuals include those with risk factors for CVD (e.g., hypertension, smoker, diabetes mellitus, hyperlipidemia, IHD, PAD), as well as patients with prior head and neck radiation exposure. Patients may not volunteer pertinent symptoms until they are specifically probed, especially if the symptoms were transient. The anesthesiologist should specifically inquire about *amaurosis fugax*, dysphagia, dysarthria, and other symptoms of cerebrovascular insufficiency. Carotid Doppler ultrasound studies are simple, effective tools to evaluate suspicious carotid bruits. Significant abnormalities on Doppler studies may entail a referral to a neurologist or vascular surgeon. The risk of stroke in patients who have truly asymptomatic bruits is 1% to 2% per year, with most strokes preceded by transient symptoms.[363] No evidence indicates that truly asymptomatic bruits increase the risk of *perioperative* stroke.[364]

Seizure Disorder

The seizure type (e.g., *grand mal*, absence) and specific symptoms (e.g., staring, focal findings) are important to document in the preoperative evaluation. For example, absence (previously *petit mal*) seizures may be particularly difficult to recognize after surgery because they lack generalized motor signs. Hence, typical symptoms, such as staring and obtundation, may be misinterpreted as residual anesthetic effects in the postoperative period. It is important to determine the etiology of the seizure disorder because of possible associated morbidities, which include brain tumors, aneurysms, AVMs, classic epilepsy, drug toxicity, electrolyte disorders, infections, CVD, sickle cell disease, and SLE.

The anesthesiologist should document the anticonvulsant dosing regimen and adequacy of seizure control. Routine measurement of serum drug levels of anticonvulsants is not indicated unless there are concerns about drug toxicity or ongoing breakthrough seizures. Indeed, patients with good control of seizures may have levels outside the therapeutic range. Drug levels are highly influenced by when the blood draw occurs relative to the timing of drug administration. In general, trough levels should be measured. Anti-seizure medications have multiple side effects (e.g., bone marrow suppression, macrocytic anemia, leucopenia, hyponatremia), and testing may be needed based on suspected abnormalities. The most commonly ordered tests are CBC and electrolyte concentrations. All anticonvulsant therapy should be continued perioperatively. A patient with poorly controlled or new-onset seizures should be evaluated by a neurologist before any non-emergent surgery.

Multiple Sclerosis

Multiple sclerosis is believed to be an inflammatory immune disorder with two general clinical patterns: exacerbating-remitting and chronic progressive. Symptoms can include ataxia, motor weakness, sensory deficits, autonomic dysfunction, emotional lability, bladder or bowel dysfunction, and visual disturbances. Exacerbations of multiple sclerosis can be triggered by stress, infections, pregnancy, and elevated temperatures. Various treatments have been tried, including corticosteroids, immunosuppressants, monoclonal antibodies, plasmapheresis, benzodiazepines, and baclofen. The preoperative evaluation should document the history and pattern of disease, especially symptoms and physical deficits affecting the respiratory system (including oxygen saturation). Medications, previous triggers, and preexisting neurologic deficits should be documented. Testing is generally directed toward associated disturbances (e.g., chest radiography and CBC if pulmonary infection is suspected) and any medication side effects. For example, azathioprine can suppress bone marrow or affect liver function, cyclophosphamide may cause electrolyte abnormalities, and corticosteroids can cause hyperglycemia. Patients with stable minor disease require no special testing. Related medications should be continued on the day of surgery. No clear association has been shown between the type of anesthetic or a specific anesthetic drug and disease exacerbations. Nonetheless, regional anesthesia may offer theoretical advantages for patients with respiratory compromise or cognitive dysfunction.

Aneurysms and Arteriovenous Malformations

Aneurysms and AVMs can occur in the cerebral and spinal vascular beds. These lesions may be intact, ruptured, symptomatic, or incidental asymptomatic findings. Associated risk factors include polycystic kidney disease, fibromuscular dysplasia, type IV Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, and a family history. Some AVMs become large enough to exert a mass effect. The risk of aneurysmal bleeding, and possibly AVM bleeding, increases during pregnancy. Most patients have minimal symptoms before a rupture. A rupture can result in altered mental status, syncope, increased intracranial pressure, inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (ADH) secretion, and hemodynamic changes (i.e., bradycardia, tachycardia, ectopic beats). Typical testing includes an ECG and blood sampling to measure electrolyte, glucose, and creatinine concentrations. Chest radiography, echocardiography, and neurologic imaging (e.g., computed tomography scan) are also often needed. Importantly, the ECG changes seen following a rupture, which often include ST-segment and T-wave changes, mimic those seen with myocardial ischemia. In addition, troponin concentrations are often elevated, while echocardiography may reveal significant cardiac dysfunction with depressed contractility and wall motion abnormalities. Although the bleeding may be primarily responsible for these cardiovascular changes, concomitant IHD or preexisting cardiomyopathy should also be considered. Measures aimed at controlling increased intracranial pressure, arterial blood pressure, and blood glucose are important.

Parkinson Disease

Parkinson disease is a degenerative disorder of the basal ganglia characterized by failure of dopamine secretion and diminished inhibition of the extrapyramidal motor system. Patients typically have diminution of spontaneous movements, rigidity (cogwheel rigidity is classic), resting tremor, masked facies, difficulty speaking, difficulty walking, depression, and dementia. Autonomic dysfunction (including orthostatic hypotension), excessive salivation, and impaired thermoregulation may also occur. Patients are at risk of pulmonary complications resulting from difficulty swallowing, altered mental status, increased aspiration risk, and ventilatory muscle dysfunction. Pharmacologic treatments include levodopa, dopamine agonists (e.g., bromocriptine, pramipexole, ropinirole, rotigotine), monoamine oxidase type B inhibitors (e.g., selegiline, rasagiline, safinamide), anticholinergic agents (e.g., trihexyphenidyl, benztropine), amantadine, and catechol-O-methyl transferase inhibitors (tolcapone, entacapone). Levodopa can cause dyskinesias (i.e., dystonic and myoclonic involuntary movements). Some individuals also undergo implantation of deep brain stimulators to manage their symptoms.

Preoperative evaluation should assess the pulmonary system, signs of dysphagia, and degree of disability. Evidence of significant pulmonary symptoms or possible infection requires chest radiography, pulmonary consultation, and possible delay of the procedure for improvement. All associated medications should be continued. Abrupt withdrawal of levodopa may exacerbate symptoms (especially dysphagia and chest wall rigidity) or precipitate neuroleptic malignant syndrome. The latter disorder is characterized by autonomic instability, altered mental status, rigidity, and fever. Some medications encountered in the perioperative setting, such as metoclopramide and phenothiazines, may exacerbate symptoms of Parkinson disease by interfering with dopamine. Individuals with deep brain stimulators require deactivation of the devices before any procedures in which electrocautery will be used. The specific device should be identified, along with the severity of disease symptoms when the device is turned off. Perioperative management of the device ideally should be coordinated with the surgeon and the clinician managing the device.

Neuromuscular Junction Disorders

Myasthenia gravis is an autoimmune disorder of skeletal muscle neuromuscular junctions that is caused by antibodies against nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. The disease is characterized by skeletal muscle weakness that worsens with activity and improves with rest. Cardiac and smooth muscle function is unaffected. Weakness is exacerbated by stress, infections, hypokalemia, medications (e.g., aminoglycosides, propranolol, ciprofloxacin, clindamycin), and surgery. A classification system for severity of myasthenia gravis is presented in Box 31.13. Patients with myasthenia gravis commonly have other autoimmune diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis, polymyositis, and thyroid disorders.

Ocular symptoms (i.e., diplopia, ptosis) are almost always present; often, they are the presenting complaint or sole complaint. Cranial nerve and bulbar involvement are common, with an associated aspiration risk related to pharyngeal and laryngeal muscle weakness. Affected individuals may have thymic hyperplasia and tumors. Since the thymus is located in the anterior mediastinum, thymic enlargement has potential implications for anesthesia care (see section on "Mediastinal Masses"). Patients are usually treated with thymectomy, acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (e.g., pyridostigmine, neostigmine), immunosuppressants (corticosteroids, azathioprine, mycophenolate, cyclosporine), plasmapheresis, and intravenous immunoglobulins. Worsening symptoms may reflect worsening disease (i.e., myasthenic crisis) or excessive acetylcholinesterase inhibitor treatment (i.e., cholinergic crisis). A short-acting anticholinesterase (edrophonium) can help distinguish the two states, since only a myasthenic crisis improves with more anticholinesterase. Plasmapheresis and intravenous immunoglobulins have been used to treat myasthenic crises and prepare patients for surgery, but still require several days to weeks to produce improvement.

All medications (with associated doses) should be documented and continued perioperatively. These drugs may also have implications themselves. For example, patients taking azathioprine require a CBC and liver function tests because of drug-induced bone marrow suppression and liver dysfunction. Patients treated with corticosteroids need measurement of blood glucose concentration, as well as possible perioperative corticosteroid supplementation. Since ventilatory function can be compromised, preoperative PFTs may also be indicated for selected patients, particularly those suspected of having severely affected ventilatory function. PFTs may be particularly helpful if patients are being considered for ambulatory surgery, especially in freestanding surgical centers. Drugs that can exacerbate myasthenic symptoms should also be avoided.

Lambert-Eaton syndrome is similar to myasthenia gravis, with muscle weakness including oculobulbar involvement and dysautonomia. It is caused by antibodies against voltage-gated calcium channels that result in decreased acetylcholine release. It is not associated with thymic abnormalities, but commonly occurs with malignant diseases, especially small cell lung cancer and gastrointestinal tumors. The other distinguishing feature of this disorder is that the muscle weakness classically improves with activity and is worse after inactivity. In addition to acetylcholinesterase inhibitors, typical treatments include 3,4-diaminopyridine, which is a selective potassium channel blocker. Preoperative evaluation and management are similar to those for myasthenia gravis. All related medications should be continued perioperatively.

BOX 31.13 Osserman Classification System for Myasthenia Gravis Clinical Classification System

Class I: Ocular myasthenia
Class IIA: Mild generalized myasthenia with slow progression: no crises, responsive to drugs
Class IIB: Moderately severe generalized myasthenia: severe skeletal and bulbar involvement but no crises; drug response less than satisfactory
Class III: Acute fulminating myasthenia: rapid progression of severe symptoms, with respiratory crises and poor drug response
Class IV: Late severe myasthenia, same as III but progression over 2 years from class I to II

Data from Osserman KE, Genkins G. Studies in myasthenia gravis: review of a twenty-year experience in over 1200 patients. *Mt Sinai J Med*. 1971;38:497–537.

Muscular Dystrophies and Myopathies

Muscular dystrophies and myopathies are inherited disorders that affect the neuromuscular junction. They share many similarities but do have a few differences. The hallmark of these disorders is progressive skeletal muscle weakness that commonly leads to respiratory failure. No effective therapy is available. Many individuals have associated cardiomyopathies and possible association with malignant hyperthermia.

Duchenne and Becker muscular dystrophies are X-linked recessive disorders that occur primarily in males. Affected individuals have elevated creatine phosphokinase levels, often preceding the onset of symptoms. Male patients with a family history of either Duchenne or Becker muscular dystrophy should be considered at risk (even when they have not been formally tested), and they require precautions similar to those in patients with diagnosed disease. Cardiomyopathy and respiratory failure are the usual causes of death. Female carriers of the abnormal gene may have dilated cardiomyopathy despite having no other manifestations of the disease. The preoperative evaluation should focus on the cardiovascular (e.g., palpitations, dyspnea, chest pain, syncope, orthopnea, dependent edema) and pulmonary (e.g., aspiration, pneumonia) systems. Potentially helpful additional preoperative tests include ECGs, PFTs, and echocardiography. Facioscapulohumeral muscular dystrophy (also known as faciohumeroscapular or Landouzy-Dejerine muscular dystrophy) is an autosomal dominant disorder that affects both sexes and causes a slow, progressive weakness of muscles in the shoulders and face. Cardiomyopathy occurs much less frequently than in other dystrophies, but arrhythmias have been reported. Limb-girdle dystrophies have a variable genetic inheritance pattern and primarily affect the muscles of the shoulders and pelvis. Conduction abnormalities are present in some patients, although frank cardiomyopathies are less frequent. The preoperative evaluation is largely similar to that described previously for Duchenne muscular dystrophy.

Myotonic Dystrophies. Myotonia is characterized by prolonged contraction and delayed relaxation of muscles. It is a common symptom of several dystrophies, including classic myotonic dystrophy, congenital myotonic dystrophy, myotonia congenital, and central core disease. Myotonic dystrophy, which is the most common of these conditions, is an autosomal dominant inherited disorder affecting both sexes. Congenital myotonic dystrophy is a severe form of this disease that manifests in infancy, often in the children of affected mothers. The classic findings are severe muscle wasting, typically involving the diaphragm, face, hands, pharynx, and larynx. Cold temperatures can often trigger myotonia. The disease severity is variable, with symptoms often not apparent until the second or third decade of life; hence, a family history is important. Cardiomyopathies, arrhythmias, and conduction abnormalities are common, while some patients also have cardiac valvular abnormalities. Cardiac involvement may not correlate with the degree of atrophy or weakness in skeletal muscle. Once an affected individual shows any evidence of second- or third-degree AV block, a pacemaker should be implanted (even if the patient is asymptomatic) because an unpredictably rapid progression of conduction disease may occur. Given this potential for rapid disease progression, pacemaker placement may be considered in patients with first-degree AV block, regardless of symptoms. Affected individuals are also at risk for aspiration, pneumonia, respiratory failure, and postoperative pulmonary complications. Central core disease is a rare disorder caused by deficiency of mitochondrial enzymes. The name derives from findings of muscle biopsies, which reveal “cores” of abnormalities. Affected individuals have proximal muscle weakness, scoliosis, and sometimes cardiomyopathies. As with myotonic dystrophy, patients are at risk for respiratory failure and aspiration. Myotonia congenita is a hereditary disorder that involves only skeletal muscles, causes less severe symptoms, and does not cause cardiac abnormalities.

Myotonia was historically thought to predispose patients to malignant hyperthermia, however, current evidence indicates that they are *not* at increased risk.[365] Nonetheless, succinylcholine should still be avoided in these patients because it may cause diffuse muscle contraction. Symptomatic treatments for myotonic contractions include corticosteroids, quinine, and procainamide; otherwise, these diseases have no cure. These treatments should be continued perioperatively. The preoperative evaluation focuses on the cardiopulmonary system, with special emphasis on evaluating for pulmonary infection, heart failure, syncope, conduction abnormalities, and valvular abnormalities. Preoperative testing includes an ECG, echocardiogram (except for myotonia congenita), and chest radiograph (if symptoms of pulmonary disease are present). Evidence of a conduction abnormality on ECG should trigger a cardiology consultation. Myotonia is not inhibited by regional anesthesia, but local anesthetic infiltration into muscle may provide symptomatic relief.

Central Nervous System Tumors

Pituitary tumors are classified as functioning (associated with endocrine abnormalities) versus nonfunctioning, as well as benign (adenomas are the most common pituitary lesion) versus malignant. The tumor can have mass effects that lead to associated symptoms, such as headaches, visual field defects, and increased intracranial pressure (with resulting gait disturbances, vomiting, cranial nerve deficits, bladder incontinence, bowel incontinence). Other symptoms may be related to pituitary insufficiency (e.g., hypoadrenalism, hypothyroidism, infertility) or overactivity. Manifestations of pituitary overactivity include Cushing syndrome from ACTH-secreting tumors; acromegaly from growth hormone secretion; hyperthyroidism from TSH production; and gynecomastia, lactation, and sex hormone-related changes from prolactin and gonadotropin (follicle stimulating and luteinizing hormones) secretion. These hormones are all produced by the anterior lobe of the pituitary and are controlled by a feedback loop from the hypothalamus. The posterior pituitary stores and secretes vasopressin and oxytocin, which are synthesized in the hypothalamus.

Acromegaly results in enlargement of connective tissue, bone, and visceral organs. Affected individuals have an enlarged jaw (i.e., macrognathia), nose, feet, hands, pharyngeal tissue, and laryngeal tissue (including macroglossia and enlarged epiglottis). Affected individuals have increased risks of sleep apnea (both central and obstructive), neuropathies (from nerve entrapment), hypertension, diastolic dysfunction, and cardiac valvular abnormalities. IHD, heart failure, diabetes mellitus, hypothyroidism, and difficult airway management (i.e., mask ventilation, laryngoscopy, intubation) may also occur. The preoperative evaluation should document any chest pain, dyspnea, snoring, numbness, polydipsia, headaches, and visual disturbances. The physical examination focuses on blood pressure, airway examination, murmurs, neurologic findings, and peripheral edema. It is important to plan for possible difficult airway management and inform the patient about the possible use of awake fiberoptic intubation. Preoperative testing may include an ECG and blood sampling for electrolyte concentration, glucose concentration, and thyroid function tests. TSH increases production of thyroid hormones (T_3 and T_4) by the thyroid gland (see section on “Thyroid Disease”). Prolactin- and gonadotropin-secreting tumors have little impact on anesthetic management, but their symptoms may alert clinicians to an undiagnosed pituitary tumor.

Posterior pituitary tumors result in failure to secrete vasopressin or ADH, which regulates renal water excretion. A deficiency results in diabetes insipidus, which is characterized by excessive urine output from a failure to reabsorb water. Unless treated with DDAVP, these patients may develop hypernatremia and volume depletion. The anesthesiologist should therefore carefully evaluate patients’ intravascular volume status and conduct blood sampling for electrolyte concentrations and creatinine concentrations. Patients with pituitary tumors, pituitary apoplexy (hemorrhage into pituitary, which is associated with hypertension, trauma, or pregnancy), or previous pituitary tumor resection may require hormone replacement therapy (i.e., corticosteroids, thyroid replacement, DDAVP). These medications must not be interrupted during the perioperative period. The adequacy of replacement therapy can be determined based on the clinical evaluation, as well as blood sampling for electrolyte concentrations, creatinine concentrations, and thyroid function tests.

Other intracranial tumors include gliomas (45% of tumors), astrocytomas, ependymomas, medulloblastomas, oligodendrocytomas (malignant and highly lethal), benign meningiomas (15% of tumors), schwannomas, craniopharyngiomas, and dermoid tumors. Metastatic lesions (6% of intracranial tumors) can also occur with virtually all types of primary malignant diseases. Common sources of metastatic intracranial lesions include breast, colorectal, and lung cancers. Most intracranial tumors are detected either incidentally, or when patients develop seizures or symptoms related to mass effect. Symptoms of mass effect include headaches, strokelike symptoms, vomiting, visual disturbances, altered cognitive function, and ataxia. If the intracranial pressure becomes elevated, hypertension, bradycardia, arrhythmias, ECG abnormalities, and brainstem herniation may occur. Careful assessment of neurologic deficits is important. For patients with metastatic lesions, issues pertaining to the primary malignant disease and previous treatment (e.g., chemotherapy, radiation, corticosteroids, anticonvulsants) must be clarified. Continuation of preexisting corticosteroids (to treat cerebral edema) and anticonvulsant medications is important.

MUSCULOSKELETAL AND CONNECTIVE TISSUE DISEASES

These disorders are characterized by musculoskeletal deformities and chronic inflammation. Assessment of deformities is important because of their potential implications for airway management and regional anesthesia technique. Chronic inflammation—which occurs with rheumatoid arthritis, SLE, and systemic sclerosis—can cause vasculopathy and multiorgan dysfunction. Affected organ systems may include cardiovascular, pulmonary, renal, hematologic, integumentary, gastrointestinal, central nervous, and peripheral nervous systems.

Rheumatoid Arthritis

Rheumatoid arthritis is a chronic autoimmune disorder that primarily affects joints, but it often also affects multiple organ systems. The disease affects approximately 1% of the population, and women are 2 to 3 times more likely to be affected as are men.[366] Distal joints are involved more often than proximal, often in a symmetric pattern. Joint involvement is characterized by inflammation that can progress to severe deformity, although the disease course can vary dramatically. The temporomandibular joints and cricoarytenoid cartilage can be involved, resulting in limited mouth opening, hoarseness, and possible difficulties with airway management. Atlantodens subluxation and instability of the cervical spine can also occur. Subluxation, which is caused by ligamentous laxity, as opposed to joint disease, may also occur, although the prevalence appears to be decreasing with the advent of improved disease modifying agents. Cervical spine disease can be asymptomatic. IHD, pericardial effusions, aortic regurgitation, and conduction abnormalities may be present in affected individuals. Symptoms of myocardial ischemia may be masked in patients with rheumatoid arthritis because of impairment of functional status by concomitant joint disease. In addition, exertional dyspnea because of heart failure may be confused with pulmonary involvement. Pulmonary manifestations include restrictive lung disease secondary to decreased thoracic mobility, pulmonary fibrosis, and pleural effusions. Patients have an increased risk of renal dysfunction secondary to both vasculitis and long-term NSAID use. Peripheral neuropathy can result from vasculitis or entrapment. Anemia, leukocytosis, thrombocytosis (from chronic inflammation), and thrombocytopenia (from splenomegaly) may be present. Patients may also have rheumatoid nodules that occur subcutaneously (usually over extensor joints) or in the lungs.

The preoperative examination must document symptoms related to the many organ systems affected by rheumatoid arthritis. Special detail is directed to the neurologic, airway, pulmonary, and cardiovascular systems. Documentation of deformities and neurologic deficits is important to establish a baseline level of function. Significant hoarseness should prompt an evaluation by an otolaryngologist to assess the mobility of the vocal cords and the presence of cricoarytenoid arthritis. A careful history may elicit neurologic deficits, neck pain, upper extremity pain, or crunching sound with neck movement. Indications for preoperative cervical spine radiographs include neurologic findings, long-standing severely deforming disease, or procedures requiring prone positioning or manipulation of the cervical spine. The specific radiographs required are anteroposterior and lateral cervical spine films with flexion, extension, and open-mouth odontoid views.[367] Significant abnormalities (i.e., anterior atlas-dens interval >9 mm or posterior interval <14 mm) require consultation with a neurologist or neurosurgeon. Notably, disease duration, severity, and symptoms do not correlate with cervical spine subluxation. New or worsening pulmonary symptoms should prompt further evaluation with pulse oximetry, chest radiographs, PFTs, or possibly a pulmonary consultation. Muffled heart sounds, pericardial rubs, and low voltage on an ECG suggest a pericardial effusion, which necessitates an echocardiogram. Any suspicious murmur merits an echocardiogram in these patients. Because rheumatoid arthritis is associated with a very high prevalence of IHD, patients may require ECGs and possible cardiac stress testing (with subsequent cardiology referral as indicated). Other preoperative tests include blood sampling for CBC and creatinine concentrations.

Advanced planning for management of potential difficult airways is important, including discussion of regional anesthetic options and possible awake fiberoptic intubation. When possible, corticosteroids, analgesics, and nonbiological disease modifying agents (e.g., methotrexate, leflunomide, hydroxychloroquine, sulfasalazine) should be continued, although consideration can be given to stopping NSAIDs 2 to 3 days before surgery. There are more concerns regarding whether biological disease modifying agents (i.e., tumor necrosis factor alpha antagonists) should be stopped before surgery, especially since continued treatment may predispose patients to postoperative infections. Several guidelines recommend holding these agents before surgery,[368,369] although there is uncertainty regarding when treatment should be stopped relative to surgery. Especially since these drugs have different dosing cycles, patients with complex immunosuppressant therapy are best managed collaboratively with their rheumatologist, primary care physician, and surgeon. Stress-associated adrenal insufficiency may occur in patients taking preoperative corticosteroid therapy. Details on which patients warrant perioperative stress dose corticosteroids, as well as a suggested dosing regimen, are presented in the section on "Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Disorders" and Table 31.15.

Ankylosing Spondylitis

Ankylosing spondylitis is a progressive inflammatory arthropathy that primarily affects the spine and sacroiliac joints, although peripheral joints may also be involved. It usually occurs in males. Ankylosing spondylitis can have important extraarticular manifestations, including uveitis, vasculitis, aortitis, and aortic insufficiency. Affected individuals may develop restrictive lung disease related to pulmonary fibrosis or chest wall movement restriction (joint fixation and kyphosis). Kyphosis can be so extreme that patients are unable to face forward, thereby making mask ventilation, direct laryngoscopy, and intubation very difficult. The patient's preoperative evaluation should focus on the cardiovascular, pulmonary, and musculoskeletal systems, with the physical examination including measurement of oxygen saturation on room air. The presence of a murmur on physical examination warrants an echocardiogram. If ventilatory compromise is suspected or present, a chest radiograph and PFTs are necessary. Most analgesic medications and non-biological disease modifying agents (e.g., sulfasalazine) can be continued preoperatively, although consideration can be given to stopping NSAIDs 2 to 3 days before surgery. Several guidelines recommend holding biological disease modifying agents (i.e., tumor necrosis factor alpha antagonists) before surgery,[368,369] although there is uncertainty regarding when treatment should be stopped relative to surgery. Especially since these drugs have different dosing cycles, patients with complex immunosuppressant therapy are best managed collaboratively with their rheumatologist, primary care physician, and surgeon. It is important to plan for perioperative airway management and inform the patient about the possibility of awake fiberoptic intubation. Peripheral nerve blocks are an option, but neuraxial anesthesia is often unsuccessful in the presence of severe spinal involvement.

Systemic Lupus Erythematosus

SLE is a systemic autoimmune disease that is predominantly caused by vasculitis. It has a variable course with flares and remission periods. SLE is more likely to affect females (i.e., seven-fold higher prevalence in adults), as well as individuals with East Asian or African-American ethnic backgrounds.[370] The multiorgan disease has musculoskeletal, cardiovascular, pulmonary, renal, neurological, dermatological, hematological, gastrointestinal, and constitutional manifestations. Common constitutional symptoms are fever and chronic fatigue. The fevers may be explained by disease activity itself, as well as frequent infections related to disease-induced immune dysfunction and immunosuppressant treatment. The musculoskeletal findings are typically a migratory arthritis of the small joints in the hands and feet. Many patients have dermatologic conditions including alopecia, photosensitivity, and a typical "butterfly rash" across the cheeks and nose. Vasospasm of the digits (i.e., Raynaud phenomenon), often associated with atrophy of nails and fingernails, can make it difficult to obtain pulse oximetry readings. Pulmonary manifestations include interstitial lung disease, pleural effusions, frequent respiratory infections, and pulmonary hypertension. Pulmonary hypertension, which can result from recurrent pulmonary emboli, pulmonary vasculopathy, and interstitial lung disease, carries a high risk of perioperative complications.[371] Cardiovascular involvement includes hypertension (often difficult to control), premature IHD, pericarditis, myocarditis, coronary artery vasculitis, cardiomyopathy, aseptic endocarditis, and pleural effusions. Neurologic disease includes cerebral vasculitis, stroke, CVD, cognitive dysfunction, seizures, peripheral neuropathy, headache, neuropsychiatric manifestations, and affective disorders. Lupus nephritis is a common end-organ complication that carries a poor prognosis and often results in ESRD. Patients with SLE may have anemia, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and antiphospholipid antibodies. Individuals with these antibodies typically have a prolonged aPTT, but are predisposed to pulmonary emboli, stroke, and recurrent venous or arterial thromboses.

The preoperative evaluation should assess all major organ systems and relevant medications. Patients with severe disease, infections, or exacerbations are best managed collaboratively with their rheumatologist or primary physician. The history should cover details on typical disease flairs (manifestations, timing, treatment), fevers, cardiovascular symptoms (e.g., dyspnea, chest pain, orthopnea), neurologic symptoms (e.g., stroke, seizures), renal disease, prior thromboembolic events, and fevers. Given the prevalence of IHD and CVD in these patients, the evaluation should include reviewing results of any previous relevant diagnostic studies (e.g., cardiac stress testing, echocardiography, computed tomography, MRI). The preoperative physical examination concentrates on the pulmonary (rales, decreased breath sounds), cardiac (pericardial rubs, murmurs, arrhythmias, jugular venous distention, peripheral edema), and nervous (motor deficits, sensory deficits, visual disturbances) systems. Helpful preoperative tests include an ECG and blood sampling for CBC, electrolyte concentrations, glucose concentrations, creatinine concentrations, and aPTT (unless the patient has a known antiphospholipid syndrome). Significant ECG abnormalities (e.g., conduction delays, arrhythmias, Q waves, low voltage) should prompt consideration for further testing, cardiology consultation, or pulmonology consultation. Other tests that may be considered include an INR (patients receiving warfarin), echocardiogram (murmurs, suspected heart failure, suspected effusion), chest radiograph (pulmonary symptoms or suspected heart failure), and PFTs (worsening or undiagnosed dyspnea). Patients with advanced cardiomyopathy, decompensated heart failure, pulmonary hypertension, systemic vasculitis, and recent or recurrent thromboembolism are considered to be at high risk, and they are best managed in concert with the appropriate specialists. Most medications, including corticosteroids and non-biological disease-modifying agents (e.g., hydroxychloroquine, cyclosporine, azathioprine, tacrolimus) should be continued. Patients on long-term corticosteroid therapy may need perioperative stress dose corticosteroids. Details on patient selection for such therapy, as well as a suggested dosing regimen, are presented in the section on "Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Disorders" and Table 31.15. Medications that require temporary preoperative discontinuation include anticoagulant therapy; consultation with a hematologist may be necessary to plan perioperative anticoagulation management, including the possible need for bridging therapy. Similarly, patients with complex biological immunosuppressant therapy for SLE (e.g., belimumab) are best managed collaboratively with their rheumatologist.

Systemic Sclerosis

Systemic sclerosis (previously known as scleroderma) is an autoimmune multisystem disease that is characterized by excessive fibrosis. It occurs more commonly in females.[372] Aside from skin thickening, the most common skin manifestation is Raynaud phenomenon. Scleroderma has several variants, which are differentiated based on the extent of skin and internal organ involvement. *Localized scleroderma* involves just the skin, and no other organs. *Limited systemic sclerosis* has cutaneous manifestations "limited" to face and upper extremities, as well as systemic involvement in the gastrointestinal tract (e.g., dysphagia, reflux) and lungs (e.g., interstitial lung disease, pulmonary hypertension). *Diffuse systemic sclerosis* is characterized by generalized skin involvement and multiple end-organ damage. Manifestations include myocardial fibrosis, pericarditis, heart failure (right-sided and left-sided), coronary artery fibrosis, severe hypertension, ESRD, dysphagia, fatigue, weight loss, and gastroesophageal reflux. Pulmonary hypertension, which may result from interstitial lung disease or vasculopathy, is a leading cause of death in systemic sclerosis and is associated with increased perioperative risk.[371]

The preoperative evaluation focuses on the organ systems in the manner outlined previously in the section on SLE, with special attention to evidence of pulmonary hypertension (see section on "Pulmonary Hypertension"). The history should evaluate for any evidence of pulmonary disease (e.g., cough, dyspnea) or cardiac disease (e.g., dyspnea, orthopnea, chest pain). Patients may develop limited mouth opening, limited neck mobility, poor dentition, and oropharyngeal lesions secondary to skin involvement. Careful airway evaluation and planning for airway management are essential in such individuals, especially because they may also be at high risk for aspiration secondary to gastroesophageal reflux. Dermal involvement, edema, and contractures may also make venous access and regional anesthesia technically challenging. Thus, it is helpful to discuss central venous access and possible awake fiberoptic intubation during the preoperative assessment; in some cases, consideration should be given to arranging for interventional radiology to place intravenous lines.

Patients with systemic sclerosis usually need an ECG, and blood sampling for CBC (especially if receiving immunosuppressant therapy) and creatinine concentration. A chest radiograph and PFTs can be useful if interstitial lung disease or pulmonary fibrosis is suspected. Echocardiography (i.e., right ventricular size, right ventricular function, estimated right ventricular systolic pressure) may be useful to screen patients with suspected pulmonary hypertension. Antihypertensive agents (including calcium channel blockers for Raynaud phenomenon) and immunosuppressant therapy should be continued.

Raynaud Phenomenon

Raynaud phenomenon is an exaggerated vascular response to cold or emotional stress that results in color changes of the digits (typical sequence is pallor to cyanosis to rubor).[373] It is classified as primary (termed *Raynaud disease*) or secondary (termed *Raynaud phenomenon*). Raynaud phenomenon is associated with connective tissue diseases, autoimmune disorders, drugs, and use of vibrating tools. Connective tissue diseases associated with Raynaud phenomenon include systemic sclerosis, Sjögren disease, SLE, and possibly rheumatoid arthritis. Raynaud phenomenon most often affects the hands, typically resulting in a sudden onset of cold digits with sharply demarcated pallor or cyanosis. Cutaneous vasospasm is also common in other sites, such as the face and ears, where it causes pain and numbness. Criteria for the diagnosis of Raynaud disease include symmetric episodic attacks, absence of PAD, absence of tissue injury (or gangrene), normal nail fold capillary examination, normal erythrocyte sedimentation rate, and negative antinuclear antibody test. Raynaud disease requires no special additional preoperative evaluation. Secondary Raynaud phenomenon should prompt an assessment for associated disease states. It is also important to distinguish Raynaud phenomenon from PAD, especially given the difference in associated comorbidities. Calcium channel blockers are useful treatments in many patients and should be continued in the perioperative period.

Inherited Connective Tissue Disorders

Ehlers-Danlos syndrome is a disorder of collagen synthesis. It consists of several subtypes that have various manifestations but are almost all characterized by joint hypermobility. Type IV disease is more serious because affected individuals may have vascular fragility and skin fragility, as well as predisposition to vascular rupture, visceral rupture, and pneumothorax. Patients with type VI Ehlers-Danlos syndrome have muscle weakness, scoliosis, ocular fragility, skin fragility, and osteopenia.

Marfan syndrome is characterized by tall stature, arachnodactyly (i.e., long digits), scoliosis, pectus excavatum, valvular disease (e.g., aortic insufficiency, mitral valve prolapse, mitral regurgitation), arrhythmias, and ascending aortic dilatation. These patients are at risk for aortic dissection. Ocular (e.g., ectopia lentis, strabismus, glaucoma) and pulmonary (e.g., spontaneous pneumothorax) complications can also occur.[374] Other manifestations include retrognathia and high arched palates. Careful auscultation for the diastolic murmur of aortic insufficiency is important (see Table 31.8). If such a murmur is detected, subsequent tests should include an echocardiogram and chest radiograph. The most distinguishing feature of osteogenesis imperfecta is the propensity for fractures from extremely fragile bones.

These patients may have blue sclerae, short stature, scoliosis, joint hypermobility, hearing loss, muscle weakness, mitral valve prolapse, aortic insufficiency, and platelet dysfunction. An ECG and echocardiogram are necessary if physical examination reveals a murmur. Epidermolysis bullosa is distinguished by blistering, skin fragility, and scarring caused by abnormal epidermal-dermal anchoring. Even noninvasive blood pressure measurement may cause skin blistering and breakdown in an affected individual.

Kyphoscoliosis

Kyphoscoliosis is a curvature of the spine in both lateral and posterior directions. It can involve the thoracic region, the lumbar region, or both. Kyphoscoliosis may occur alone or as a manifestation of other diseases (e.g., collagen vascular disorders, Marfan syndrome, neurofibromatosis, muscular dystrophies, cerebral palsy). Therefore, the preoperative evaluation should also focus on identifying any coexisting abnormalities. Severe thoracic deformity may cause cardiopulmonary compromise as a consequence of restrictive lung disease, pulmonary hypertension, heart failure, tracheobronchial compression, or cardiac compression. The history should focus on assessing cardiopulmonary symptoms. The ability of the patient to lie supine (to facilitate airway access and management) must also be determined. The physical examination should evaluate vital signs (including oxygen saturation), pulmonary system (rales, decreased air entry), and cardiovascular system (murmurs, additional heart sounds, edema, jugular venous distention). A CBC, as well as a blood type and screen, is required in any patient scheduled to undergo spine correction surgery for kyphoscoliosis. Additionally, an ECG and chest radiograph may be useful. If heart failure is suspected based on clinical evaluation, a preoperative echocardiogram should be performed. Any reversible lung disease or heart failure must be optimized preoperatively.

CANCERS AND TUMORS IN PREOPERATIVE PATIENTS

Patients With Cancer

Patients with cancer may have complications related to both the disease itself and its treatment (e.g., chemotherapy, radiation therapy). Typically, patients are aware of the side effects of their cancer treatments. It is helpful to ask them whether any unexpected complications occurred during treatment, or whether chemotherapy or radiation therapy had to be interrupted because of adverse effects. A hypercoagulable state is also common in cancer, particularly advanced disease, primary brain tumors, ovarian adenocarcinoma, pancreatic cancer, colon cancer, gastric cancer, lung cancer, prostate cancer, and kidney tumors. The risk of thromboembolic events is increased six-fold in patients with cancer, with active cancer accounting for 20% of new cases of thromboembolism.

The preoperative evaluation focuses on cardiac, pulmonary, neurologic, and hematologic systems. Previous head and neck irradiation may cause carotid artery disease, hypothyroidism, or difficulty with airway management. Auscultation for bruits, thyroid function tests, and carotid Doppler studies are therefore recommended. Mediastinal, chest wall, or left breast irradiation can cause pericarditis, conduction abnormalities, cardiomyopathy, valvular heart disease, and premature IHD (even in the absence of traditional cardiovascular risk factors).[375] Thus, younger patients with a history of radiation therapy should be assessed for cardiac symptoms and undergo an ECG—even if they may not otherwise be at risk for heart disease. Based on these initial results, stress testing and echocardiography may be indicated. Previous irradiation to the lungs, breast, or mediastinum may also cause radiation pneumonitis. In such individuals, an oxygen saturation measurement and chest radiograph may be required, with consideration for PFTs if appropriate.

Other important chemotherapy-associated side effects include cardiomyopathy with trastuzumab and anthracyclines (e.g., doxorubicin); pulmonary toxicity with bleomycin; nephrotoxicity with cisplatin; hemorrhagic cystitis with cyclophosphamide; and peripheral neuropathy with vincristine or cisplatin. Many chemotherapeutic agents are toxic to the bone marrow, and patients commonly exhibit preoperative anemia. Patients who received corticosteroids as part of their cancer treatment may be at risk for adrenal insufficiency. These individuals may require supplemental perioperative corticosteroids; details on patient selection for such therapy, as well as a suggested dosing regimen, are presented in the section on "Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Disorders" and Table 31.15. Other chemotherapy drugs result in impaired postsurgical wound healing, especially antiangiogenic agents (e.g., bevacizumab, sunitinib, sorafenib, pazopanib, vandetanib, cabozantinib, axitinib). Consequently, elective major surgery should be scheduled after temporary discontinuation of these agents, whenever feasible. The time interval for preoperative discontinuation varies across these agents from 28 days (bevacizumab) to 1 week (sunitinib, sorafenib, pazopanib, vandetanib, cabozantinib) to 48 hours (axitinib). Based on the type of chemotherapy, an ECG, chest radiograph, and blood sampling for CBC, electrolyte concentrations, creatinine concentration, and liver function tests may be needed. In some cases, consideration may be given to delaying the surgical procedure to allow resolution of neutropenia and thrombocytopenia. In general, advance planning of blood component replacement (including type and screening in the preoperative clinic) can avoid delays on the day of surgery.

The direct effects of cancers depend on the specific organ systems involved. Issues pertaining to intracranial tumors are discussed in the section on "Central Nervous System Tumors". Bone and liver involvement with metastases can commonly occur in patients with breast, colorectal, lung, and head and neck tumors. These bony lesions can in turn cause hypercalcemia or pancytopenia. Head and neck tumors, and their associated therapy (e.g., surgery, radiation), may cause thyroid dysfunction and difficulty with airway management. Lung cancer can cause airway problems, compromised pulmonary function, or mediastinal masses (see section on "Mediastinal Masses"). In these cases, computed tomography scans of the head, neck, or chest may be indicated. Paraneoplastic syndromes can complicate almost any type of malignant disease but are most commonly seen with lung cancer. Typical manifestations of these syndromes include hypercalcemia, inappropriate ADH secretion, Lambert-Eaton syndrome, Cushing syndrome, and neuropathies.

Patients who are receiving opioids on a long-term basis for cancer pain are likely to require larger than usual doses of medication for postoperative pain control (see the later section on "Planning for Postoperative Pain Management"). On the day of surgery, these patients typically take their usual analgesic medications, with the exception of NSAIDs (which, if possible, should be stopped 2-3 days before surgery).

Mediastinal Masses

Tumors that may occur in the anterior mediastinal space include lymphomas, thymomas, teratomas, thyroid goiters, and metastatic tumors. Anterior mediastinal masses can obstruct the great vessels (i.e., aorta, pulmonary arteries, pulmonary vein, superior vena cava), heart, trachea, and bronchi. Patients may complain of dyspnea, dysphagia, stridor, wheezing, coughing (especially when recumbent), and orthopnea. Compression of the superior vena cava can result in superior vena cava syndrome, which is characterized by jugular venous distention as well as edema in the face, neck, chest, and upper extremities. Affected individuals may also develop increased intracranial pressure and airway compromise. Imaging of the chest (with computed tomography or MRI) and echocardiography are needed if airway, cardiac, or vascular compression is suspected. Flow-volume loops may also be useful to assess the location (extrathoracic vs. intrathoracic) and degree of airway obstruction. Patients with tracheobronchial, cardiac, or major vessel compression require special anesthetic precautions, including possible awake fiberoptic intubation.

Von Hippel–Lindau disease

von Hippel–Lindau disease is an autosomal dominant inherited disorder characterized by a variety of benign and malignant tumors. Associated tumors include hemangioblastomas, retinal angiomas, clear cell renal cell carcinomas, pheochromocytomas, and neuroendocrine tumors of the pancreas. During preoperative evaluation, the anesthesiologist should assess for symptoms suggestive of a pheochromocytoma or neuroendocrine tumor (see relevant sections of this Chapter), as well as evaluate the patient's renal function. Any further testing (e.g., electrolytes, ECG, creatinine, glucose) should be guided by findings from the initial clinical evaluation.

Carcinoid Tumors

Carcinoid tumors are rare neuroendocrine tumors that release mediators. They are associated with MEN type 1. These tumors typically occur in the gastrointestinal tract and are the most common neoplasms of the appendix; in addition, they can also occur in the pancreas and bronchi. Carcinoid syndrome is caused by vasoactive amines (e.g., serotonin, norepinephrine, histamine, dopamine), polypeptides (e.g., bradykinin, somatostatin, vasoactive intestinal peptide, glucagon), and prostaglandins released by the tumors. Typical manifestations include flushing, tachycardia, arrhythmias, diarrhea, malnutrition, bronchospasm, and carcinoid heart disease. Nonetheless, most patients are asymptomatic because the liver inactivates the bioactive products of carcinoid tumors. Consequently, patients with gastrointestinal carcinoid tumors have manifestations of carcinoid syndrome only if they have hepatic metastases. Carcinoid heart disease is characterized by endocardial fibrosis of pulmonic and tricuspid valves. Affected individuals may then develop tricuspid regurgitation, pulmonic stenosis, pulmonic regurgitation, right-sided heart failure, peripheral edema, and hepatomegaly. They may also develop *carcinoid crisis*, which is associated with profound flushing, bronchospasm, tachycardia, and hemodynamic instability. These life-threatening episodes can occur with induction of anesthesia, intraoperative handling of a tumor, or other invasive procedure on a tumor (e.g., tumor embolization).[376]

The preoperative clinical evaluation should focus on dyspnea, orthopnea, wheezing, edema, arrhythmias, and murmurs; subsequent diagnostic tests are guided by the initial assessment. Patients with chronic diarrhea need measurement of electrolyte and creatinine concentrations. Patients with cardiac involvement must have an ECG and echocardiogram. Malnourished patients need an ECG, as well as measurement of electrolyte and albumin concentrations. Predictors of perioperative adverse events in these patients are carcinoid heart disease and elevated urinary 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid concentrations.[377] The mainstay of pharmacologic treatment of carcinoid syndrome are somatostatin analogues, namely octreotide and lanreotide. Preoperative treatment with octreotide (300-500 µg intravenous or subcutaneously) helps mitigate the risks of intraoperative carcinoid crises.[378] An alternative approach for high-risk major procedures is to start a continuous intravenous 50 µg /hour infusion of octreotide 12 hours before surgery and continue it for at least 24 to 48 hours after surgery.[376]

Special Issues in Preoperative Evaluation

PSEUDOCHOLINESTERASE DEFICIENCY

A personal or family history of pseudocholinesterase, or butyrylcholinesterase, deficiency should be identified preoperatively (see Chapter 35). Pseudocholinesterase, which is found in the plasma, liver, pancreas, heart, and brain, is distinct from acetylcholinesterase, which is found in erythrocytes. Patients with an "allergy to succinylcholine" should be suspected of having either this disorder or malignant hyperthermia. Previous anesthetic records may help clarify an uncertain history. Additionally, inquiring whether the patient was intubated postoperatively, gravely ill, or in need of intensive care may be helpful.

Pseudocholinesterase activity may be permanently reduced because of abnormal genotypes, or transiently altered because of disease, drugs, pregnancy, or infancy. In patients with a history suggestive of pseudocholinesterase deficiency, recommended testing includes plasma cholinesterase activity, dibucaine number, and fluoride number. Plasma cholinesterase activity is a *quantitative* measure of enzyme activity, whereas the dibucaine number and fluoride number are *qualitative* measures. Plasma cholinesterase activity should not be confused with acetylcholinesterase activity, which is an assessment of erythrocyte cholinesterase. The *dibucaine number* represents the percentage inhibition of the enzyme by the local anesthetic dibucaine, and the fluoride number represents the percentage inhibition by fluoride. Normal individuals—who are homozygous for the wild-type gene—have a dibucaine number of 80 because their plasma cholinesterase is 80% inhibited by dibucaine. Individuals who are homozygous for the atypical genes have a dibucaine number of 20 (corresponding to 20% inhibition) and can be paralyzed for 4 to 8 hours after receiving succinylcholine. In heterozygous individuals who have a dibucaine number of 60 (corresponding to 60% inhibition), the duration of action of succinylcholine is prolonged by 50% to 100%. The combination of dibucaine number and plasma cholinesterase activity therefore differentiates genetic from acquired causes of prolonged apnea after succinylcholine administration. Patients with known or suspected pseudocholinesterase deficiency should be encouraged to obtain proper medical alert identification. Additionally, they should be educated that the enzyme also metabolizes ester-linked local anesthetics.

MALIGNANT HYPERTHERMIA

A known history or suggestive history (e.g., hyperthermia or rigidity during anesthesia) of malignant hyperthermia in a patient or family member must be clearly documented in the preoperative assessment. This information must also be communicated to the surgeon and eventual anesthesia provider—especially to ensure that appropriate arrangements are made preoperatively (see Chapter 35). Individuals who are genetically predisposed to malignant hyperthermia are asymptomatic until they are exposed to triggering agents. Certain neuromuscular diseases are also associated with elevated risks of malignant hyperthermia, including some muscular dystrophies (i.e., Duchenne, Becker, myotonic), King-Denborough syndrome, central core disease, periodic paralysis, osteogenesis imperfecta, myelomeningocele, and strabismus.

MORBIDLY OBESE PATIENTS

The morbidly obese patient presents special preoperative risks. Obesity is associated with several important comorbidities, including diabetes mellitus, hypertension, cardiovascular disease, CVD, cancer, OSA (see the earlier section on “Obstructive Sleep Apnea”), and poor functional capacity. Obese individuals are also at risk for NASH, which can result in abnormal liver function tests, liver fibrosis, and end-stage liver disease. In addition, patients with extreme obesity are at risk for right-sided heart failure and pulmonary hypertension. Such individuals can have obesity-hypoventilation syndrome (OHS), also known as Pickwickian syndrome. OHS is characterized by impaired central ventilatory drive and is distinct from OSA. It is associated with awake, chronic hypoxemia ($PaO_2 < 65$ mm Hg) without a diagnosis of COPD or primary lung disease. In the perioperative setting, obese patients experience higher rates of difficult bag-mask ventilation and difficult tracheal intubation.

The preoperative evaluation focuses on relevant coexisting diseases, airway, cardiopulmonary system, and vital signs (including pulse oximetry). When measuring blood pressure, the cuff should have a width that is approximately two thirds of the arm and a length that can adequately encircle the extremity. Assessment of neck circumference can also identify individuals at risk for difficulty with endotracheal intubation. It is also helpful to determine both actual body weight and ideal body weight. Determination of ideal body weight may be helpful in dose selection for certain medications (e.g., neuromuscular blockers),[379] and for determining optimal intraoperative mechanical ventilation settings. Treatments for obesity can have important perioperative implications. For example, drugs or other weight reduction methods (e.g., purging, diuretics, laxatives, gastric bypass procedures) may result in electrolyte abnormalities, vitamin deficiencies, malnutrition, anemia, and cardiopulmonary disorders. Two previously available antiobesity medications, fenfluramine and dexfenfluramine (both were withdrawn from the market in 1997), had significant cardiac side effects, including regurgitant valvular lesions and pulmonary hypertension. Any individual who was ever exposed to these drugs should undergo a cardiovascular evaluation, including an echocardiogram.

PATIENTS WITH TRANSPLANTED ORGANS

The number of patients with transplanted organs who require nontransplant surgical procedures increases yearly. During preoperative evaluation, these patients present special issues relating to transplant function, allograft denervation, immunosuppression, and other posttransplant physiologic and pharmacologic issues. Close interaction with the transplant team is one of the most important steps in the perioperative care of these patients. Clinicians performing the preoperative assessment should ensure that the transplant care providers are made aware of the upcoming procedure and are given an opportunity to make recommendations.

Some general preoperative considerations apply to all transplant recipients, as well as additional concerns based on the specific organ transplanted. In all transplant recipients, the level of function of the transplanted organ and the presence of any rejection should be evaluated. The dosage regimen of all immunosuppressant medications should be noted, and patients should be instructed to continue these medications perioperatively. However, these drugs can modify the pharmacology of many other agents administered during the perioperative period, as has been extensively summarized in the literature.[380,381] Patients should also be assessed for complications related to immunosuppressant therapy. These complications include the following: hyperglycemia and adrenal suppression (corticosteroids); increased risks of infection, hypertension, and renal insufficiency (corticosteroids, cyclosporine, tacrolimus); and myelosuppression causing anemia, thrombocytopenia, and leukopenia (azathioprine, sirolimus). Although transplant recipients are at increased risk for postoperative infections, no evidence indicates that higher doses of antibiotic prophylaxis provide added benefit. Instead, usual preoperative recommendations for antibiotic prophylaxis should be followed. Stress-associated adrenal insufficiency may occur in patients taking long-term corticosteroid therapy. Details on which patients warrant perioperative stress dose corticosteroids, as well as a suggested dosing regimen, are presented in the section on “Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Disorders” and Table 31.15.

Cardiac evaluation is important in all transplant recipients because they are at increased risk for cardiovascular disease. The basis for this increased risk includes the underlying diseases that led to organ failure (e.g., diabetes mellitus, hypertension) and the potential for drug regimens, transplantation, and rejection episodes to create or worsen traditional cardiovascular risk factors. Preoperative renal function should also be assessed because long-term immunosuppressive regimens often lead to CKD. Although the effects of transplantation and immunosuppressive regimens on intravascular coagulation are controversial, thromboprophylaxis should be considered in all transplant recipients.

Kidney transplant recipients present some specific issues for preoperative evaluation. Despite the presence of a normal creatinine concentration, GFR in these individuals is generally decreased. This impairment in renal function predisposes these patients to electrolyte abnormalities and altered drug metabolism. Nephrotoxic drugs, such as NSAIDs and COX-2 inhibitors, should be avoided in all renal transplant recipients. In addition, their risk for cardiovascular disease is increased to approximately twice that of the general population. Careful preoperative cardiovascular evaluation is essential.

Successful liver transplantation usually resolves the hepatic and other end-organ effects of end-stage liver disease. Nonetheless, some pretransplant pulmonary problems may not resolve after transplantation, thus necessitating careful evaluation of pulmonary function. These disturbances can include hepatopulmonary syndrome, which involves hypoxemia from intrapulmonary vascular shunting. Other patients may continue to demonstrate ventilation-perfusion mismatch related to pulmonary effusions, ascites, or diaphragmatic dysfunction, as well as diffusion abnormalities resulting from interstitial pneumonitis or impaired hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction.

Following successful lung transplantation, recipients may require months to achieve peak pulmonary function. Compared with all other allografts, the transplanted lung is especially susceptible to infection and rejection as a result of its exposure to the external environment. Careful preoperative evaluation with PFTs should be considered in all lung transplant recipients, with postponement of elective surgery when allograft rejection or infection is suspected. Other perioperative considerations include airway hyperresponsiveness, loss of the cough reflex, and potential for injury to the airway anastomosis with intubation. These patients are also at increased risk for pulmonary edema, which has been attributed to disrupted lymphatic drainage in the transplanted lung.

Most issues relating to heart transplant recipients relate to the absence of autonomic innervation in the transplanted heart. This denervation has multiple physiologic effects, such as a higher than normal resting heart rate (from absence of vagal tone); the absence of cardiac baroreflexes; and the lack of response to carotid sinus massage, Valsalva maneuver, laryngoscopy, or tracheal intubation. Denervation also affects responses to medications; the allograft demonstrates a normal or augmented response to direct-acting drugs (e.g., epinephrine), a blunted response to indirect-acting agents (e.g., ephedrine), and no response to vagolytic agents. Chronic allograft rejection can manifest as accelerated IHD, and ventricular dysfunction (both systolic and diastolic). Because allograft denervation causes any myocardial ischemia to be silent, typical clinical manifestations include fatigue, ventricular dysrhythmias, heart failure, and ECG evidence of a silent myocardial infarction. Should preoperative evaluation raise clinical suspicions of worsening rejection, recent cardiac testing must be reviewed. Heart transplant recipients undergo routine periodic evaluation for IHD (cardiac stress testing or coronary angiography) and ventricular function (e.g., echocardiogram). The ECGs of these patients may reveal conduction abnormalities, and two P waves (a small nonconducted P wave from the native atria and a normal-sized conducted P wave from the donor atria). Many heart transplant recipients also require permanent pacemakers, and pacemaker function should be confirmed during the preoperative evaluation.

PATIENTS WITH ALLERGIES

The patient's preoperative evaluation record should carefully document any history of allergies and adverse drug reactions. True anaphylactic reactions should be distinguished from adverse side effects (e.g., nausea with opioid use), especially because a patient's definition of an allergy may differ significantly from the true clinical definition. In some cases, patients may incorrectly attribute previous perioperative difficulties to "allergies" to anesthetic or analgesic medications. The reported incidence of perioperative anaphylaxis is about 1 in 10,000 to procedures in large countrywide epidemiological studies, with consistent estimates based on studies from 2 different countries (France vs. United Kingdom) and time periods (2004 vs. 2016).[382,383] The overall incidence appears similar in these two epidemiological studies; however the common precipitating agents differ. In the older French study, the most common causes were neuromuscular blocking agents (58%), latex (20%), and antibiotics (13%).[383] Conversely, in the more recent United Kingdom study, the most common precipitating agents were antibiotics (53%), neuromuscular blocking agents (33%), and chlorhexidine (9%).[382] The mortality associated with an individual episode of anaphylaxis is about 4%,[384] but anaphylaxis accounts for up to 3% of perioperative deaths that are totally or partially related to anesthesia.[385] A careful history (including a review of records of prior allergic events and any associated laboratory tests) generally allows for avoidance of precipitating agents. In selected cases in which the clear diagnosis of a specific allergy is required to guide perioperative management, referral to an allergy specialist and possible skin testing (if the allergic reaction is believed to be immunoglobin E [IgE]-mediated) may be considered.

Allergic reactions to neuromuscular blocking drugs (NMBDs) are relatively more frequent in Europe as compared to North America. These differences have been attributed, in part, to the use of cough suppressants containing pholcodine in many European countries. Exposure to pholcodine is associated with development of IgE antibodies to NMBDs.[386] Confirmatory testing for an allergy to NMBDs can involve both skin testing and in-vitro assays for NMBD-specific IgE.

Although the rate of latex sensitization continues to increase, the development of better ways to identify at-risk patients has led to a decreased incidence of latex-induced anaphylaxis,[387] as evidenced by the absence of any latex-associated episodes in the recent epidemiological study from the United Kingdom.[382] The diagnosis of a latex allergy during preoperative evaluation is based on a careful history. Risk factors for latex allergy include a history of multiple surgeries, occupational exposure to latex (e.g., healthcare workers, food handlers), and an atopic history. This history may be supplemented with skin testing and latex-specific IgE antibody serology. When latex allergy is identified during the preoperative evaluation, the operative team should be notified in advance to ensure that all appropriate equipment is available. The ASA Task Force outlines detailed intraoperative considerations for these patients.[388] Among antibiotics, penicillins and cephalosporins are the most common causes of anaphylaxis. A small risk of cross-reactivity exists between penicillins and cephalosporins, but most of these reported reactions involve rashes, not anaphylaxis. Reported allergies to vancomycin should be distinguished from "red man syndrome." This histamine-induced side effect, which is associated with rapid injection of vancomycin, consists of flushing, pruritus, erythematous rash, and hypotension. With respect to other medications commonly encountered in the perioperative setting, anaphylactic reactions to amide local anesthetics are extremely rare. Most true anaphylactic reactions following exposure to ester local anesthetics do not involve an allergy to the local anesthetic, but rather to associated preservatives (e.g., *para*-aminobenzoic acid). Patients may incorrectly interpret adverse side effects from epinephrine in local anesthetic solutions as allergies, especially with dental procedures. Such reports should be carefully distinguished from true allergies. Similarly, true allergies to opioids are rare, with most reports of such "allergies" being simply opioid-related side effects, such as nausea and vomiting.

The scientific status of idiopathic environmental intolerance syndrome (formerly called multiple chemical sensitivity disorder) is very controversial. These individuals report chronic, diffuse, nonspecific symptoms with low levels of multiple chemical substances. Symptoms involve multiple organ systems and include fatigue, headache, memory loss, palpitations, and gastrointestinal symptoms. The symptoms are not generally accompanied by biologic test abnormalities or changes on physical examination, but they are frequently associated with psychiatric symptoms, notably depression and anxiety.[389] Preoperative evaluation of these patients can be extremely challenging because they have significant concerns about the multiple exposures involved during the perioperative period and the potential impact on their symptoms. No current recommendations are available on the perioperative care of these patients.

HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS INFECTION

Acute infection with HIV causes a mononucleosis-like illness, which then progresses to chronic lymphadenopathy (lasting 3-5 years). Infection can culminate in cell-mediated immune deficiency characterized by opportunistic infections, malignant diseases (e.g., Kaposi sarcoma, non-Hodgkin lymphoma), and death (usually secondary from infections, wasting, or cancer). The prognosis of untreated HIV infection and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) is very poor.[390] Nonetheless, outcomes have now improved substantially in individuals compliant with highly active antiretroviral therapy.[391] Risk factors for HIV infection include sexual contact with an infected individual, bloodborne contamination, men who have sex with men, sexual workers, and those having contact with sexual workers. Most infection transmitted by blood exposure occurs in intravenous drug users, whereas infection through blood product transfusion in the United States is very rare (1 per 1.5-2 million blood transfusions). Mothers can transmit the disease to infants, which occurs usually during breastfeeding or delivery.[392] Many patients infected with HIV are unaware of their status.

HIV infection is a multisystem disease.[393] Cardiac complications include myocarditis, dilated cardiomyopathy, valvular disease, pulmonary hypertension, pericardial effusions, and cardiac tamponade. Pulmonary effects include lymphoid interstitial pneumonitis, as well as drug-resistant infections with *Pneumocystis jiroveci*, *Mycobacterium avium*, or *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, cytomegalovirus, and *Cryptococcus*. Nervous system manifestations include central nervous system tumors, infections, aseptic meningitis, and AIDS-related dementia. Malignant diseases can occur, such as lymphomas, Kaposi sarcoma, and cervical cancer. These tumors can also have direct consequences for anesthetic management. For example, supraglottic or intraoral Kaposi sarcoma may interfere with ventilation and intubation, whereas non-Hodgkin lymphoma can cause mediastinal masses. Gastrointestinal manifestations include dysphagia, diarrhea, and esophagitis, which can in turn cause malnutrition, dehydration, and electrolyte imbalance. Renal complications include acute tubular necrosis, glomerulonephritis, renovascular disease, and HIV-associated nephropathy with nephritic syndrome. Antiretroviral medications used to treat HIV infection also have important side effects. The major classes of antiretroviral medications include nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (e.g., lamivudine, zidovudine, tenofovir, abacavir), nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (e.g., nevirapine, efavirenz, rilpivirine), protease inhibitors (e.g., atazanavir, darunavir, lopinavir, fosamprenavir, saquinavir), attachment inhibitors (e.g., maraviroc), and integrase strand transfer inhibitors (e.g., raltegravir).[394] Side effects of relevance to anesthesiologists include lactic acidosis (nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors), hepatotoxicity (nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, protease inhibitors), hyperlipidemia (protease inhibitors), insulin resistance (protease inhibitors), premature IHD (protease inhibitors),[395] cardiac conduction abnormalities (protease inhibitors), and bone marrow suppression (all classes).

If the preoperative evaluation of a relatively young, otherwise healthy individual elicits a history of thrush, fever of unknown origin, chronic diarrhea, lymphadenopathy, or herpes zoster in more than one dermatome, these findings should raise concern of undiagnosed HIV infection. In these cases, the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) is the primary initial screening test. It demonstrates very high sensitivity exceeding 99% but yields a high number of false-positive results. The Western blot technique is used as the confirmatory test following an initial positive ELISA result. Patients with known HIV infection frequently require further evaluation, including an ECG, a chest radiograph, and blood sampling for CBC, electrolyte concentration, creatinine concentration, and liver function tests. If the patient shows evidence of malnourishment or nephrotic syndrome, further blood tests for albumin, total protein, and magnesium concentrations may be beneficial. The patient's perioperative prognosis may be estimated based on the CD4 lymphocyte count and viral load, which reflect the patient's immunologic status during the previous 3 months. In general, rates of postoperative complications and mortality are higher among patients with CD4 counts lower than 200 cells/mm^3 and viral loads greater than 10,000 copies/mL.[396,397] Patients' antiretroviral therapy must be continued through the perioperative period.

PATIENTS WITH A HISTORY OF SUBSTANCE ABUSE

A patient with a history of current or previous alcohol or drug addiction presents special challenges for the perioperative team. The lifetime prevalence of these addictions is significant; for example, about 14% of the United States population suffers from alcohol addiction.[398] In a suggested classification system, abused drugs can be categorized as central nervous system depressants (e.g., opioids, alcohol, sedatives, hypnotics), stimulants (e.g., cocaine, amphetamines), and other psychotropic substances (e.g., cannabis).[399] Importantly, many addicts are polysubstance abusers. Thresholds for defining high-risk alcohol consumption are 5 or more standard drinks in a day (>14 drinks per week on average) for males under 65 years of age, and 4 or more standard drinks in a day (>7 drinks per week on average) for all females and males 65 or more years of age. Addictive disease should be considered *permanent* even in patients who have had long periods of abstinence. Some patients in the process of recovery from addiction may be receiving specific medications to maintain recovery. For example, previous opioid abusers may be receiving methadone (long-acting opioid agonist), buprenorphine (partial μ-agonist), or naltrexone (opioid antagonist).

Substance abuse disorders are risk factors for poor outcomes in the perioperative setting. For example, individuals with histories of alcohol misuse experience elevated rates of postoperative complications.[72,400-402] In addition, they are at risk for postoperative withdrawal, acute intoxication, and altered tolerance of anesthetic or opioid medications. Consequently, it is worthwhile to incorporate screening for substance abuse disorders into the preoperative evaluation. Several simple validated screening questionnaires for alcohol abuse disorders are available, including the four-item CAGE questionnaire,[403] the three-item AUDIT-C questionnaire,[404] and the U.S. National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism 2- and 4-question tests (NIAAA-2Q/4Q).[405] These screening tools appear to be more sensitive when administered through a computer-based self-assessment questionnaire than during an in-person interview with a nurse or anesthesiologist.[406] The accuracy of these questionnaires can be further augmented with additional screening laboratory tests, namely gamma gluteryl transferase and carbohydrate-deficient transferrin.[6,407] The preoperative evaluation is also an opportunity to obtain a detailed history of known addiction (drug type, routes of administration) and recovery (periods of abstinence, pharmacotherapy for addiction). The dosage of any pharmacotherapy should be documented and verified. Patients in recovery may also have heightened anxiety regarding upcoming surgical procedures because of concerns about relapse into addiction, and inadequate pain treatment (given their history of addiction). Such concerns may be appropriate. Patients receiving opioid substitution therapy do experience normal pain responses to nociceptive stimuli but require additional analgesia for control of postprocedural pain.[408] These patients should therefore be reassured that anxiety and pain will be adequately treated. The clinicians performing preoperative evaluation may have prejudicial attitudes and lack the educational background to formulate appropriate perioperative pain management plans. For example, pain medication may be under dosed and inappropriately restricted because of concerns about provoking relapses. Early involvement of the acute pain service and addiction specialists to assist in the management of these at-risk patients may be helpful.

The preoperative period should be used to develop appropriate management plans based on the types of abused drugs. All pertinent preoperative information and management plans should be transmitted to members of the perioperative team. Individuals addicted to alcohol, sedatives, or hypnotics may require stabilization with benzodiazepines, whereas heroin addicts may require substitution with methadone. It is important to document the dosage of opioids consumed by individuals abusing these drugs, especially to help guide postoperative pain management. To avoid inadequate analgesia (which could potentially activate addiction) in these patients, the preoperative evaluation should be used to discuss and plan the optimal use of nonopioid analgesics and regional techniques. Patients actively abusing cocaine and amphetamines are at especially high risk during anesthesia because of the potential for intraoperative hemodynamic instability. Urine testing may be helpful to rule out abused substances in such patients, but the results should be interpreted based on drug pharmacokinetics. For example, the half-life of cocaine is about 1.5 hours but its inactive metabolites may still be detectable in the urine for 14 days after consumption.[409] A history of intravenous drug use should prompt an evaluation for cardiovascular, pulmonary, neurologic, and infectious complications such as endocarditis, abscesses, osteomyelitis, hepatitis, and HIV infection. Opioid (including heroin) users have a tolerance to narcotics. Patients with alcoholism are at risk for delirium tremens, a potentially life-threatening form of withdrawal characterized by autonomic instability and hyperpyrexia. These patients may also have liver disease (alcoholic hepatitis, cirrhosis, portal hypertension, end-stage liver disease), alcohol-induced cardiomyopathy, arrhythmias, seizures, neuropathies, dementia, Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome (ataxia and cognitive dysfunction secondary to thiamine deficiency), macrocytic anemia, and coagulopathies (from hepatic dysfunction or vitamin K deficiency). Cocaine and amphetamine addicts can develop cerebrovascular accidents, cardiomyopathy, and arrhythmias. Additionally, cocaine and amphetamines inhibit the uptake of sympathomimetic neurotransmitters, thereby increasing risks for hypertension, tachycardia, paranoia, anxiety, seizures, and myocardial ischemia. Long-term use can result in ventricular hypertrophy, myocardial infarction, and nasal septal perforation. Solvents can cause cardiac dysrhythmias, pulmonary edema, cerebral edema, diffuse cortical atrophy, and hepatic failure. Hallucinogens, such as lysergic acid diethylamide, can cause autonomic dysregulation and paranoia. Ecstasy, or more specifically 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine, can cause excessive thirst that results in hyponatremia, pulmonary edema, or cerebral edema. Acute marijuana use can cause tachycardia, vasodilatation, and increased cardiac output. The risk of pulmonary complications in patients who smoke marijuana is similar to that of individuals who smoke tobacco.[410]

During the preoperative evaluation interview, patients who abuse alcohol or drugs may not give a reliable history. The subsequent physical examination should include careful measurement of vital signs, including temperature. For example, cocaine and amphetamines may cause hypertension and tachycardia, whereas acute opioid use may result in a slow respiratory rate. Acute opioid use may also manifest as lethargy and pinpoint pupils, and recent alcohol consumption can often be detected by smell. Especially in individuals suspected of being intravenous drug abusers, it is important to examine venous access sites for signs of abscesses and infections. In addition, careful auscultation for murmurs is essential because of the risk of bacterial endocarditis. Cocaine or alcohol abusers can also exhibit findings in their cardiovascular examination consistent with heart failure or arrhythmias. Long-term alcohol abuse may manifest with physical findings of chronic liver disease. In addition to identifying the presence of substance abuse and its related complications, clinicians should ascertain whether, and for how long, patients can stop consuming alcohol or addictive drugs. If patients do stop consumption occasionally, it is especially important to determine what complications, if any, occur. When an alcoholic patient reports previously interrupting drinking for several days, the interviewer should inquire whether agitation, seizures, delirium tremens, or other signs of withdrawal developed. Any testing is largely informed by findings on the preoperative clinical evaluation, as well as the specific drug being abused. For example, an ECG may be warranted to assess for previous myocardial infarction in an individual with a history of cocaine abuse or in an individual receiving methadone (which prolongs the QT interval).

Ideally, patients with drug or alcohol dependence should be drug free well before elective surgical procedures. The availability of randomized trial data is limited and suggest that preoperative alcohol cessation programs can help prevent postoperative complications.[411] Preanesthesia clinic staff should therefore be prepared to refer patients to addiction specialists or to prescribe medications to prevent withdrawal in the preoperative period if patients agree to abstinence. For example, benzodiazepines can be useful in preventing or treating alcohol withdrawal symptoms.

Some medications used to manage withdrawal or facilitate recovery have specific perioperative considerations.[412] Patients taking methadone should continue maintenance doses in the perioperative period. Patients who are taking disulfiram because of a history of alcohol abuse may have an altered response to sympathomimetic drugs; some authors therefore suggest that disulfiram be discontinued 10 days before the surgical procedure.[412] If disulfiram is continued, users can experience flushing, nausea, and tachycardia in response to small amounts of alcohol, such as amounts encountered in skin preparations or medications. For patients taking naltrexone for a history of alcohol abuse, consideration should be given to discontinuing it 3 days preoperatively.[412] Naltrexone alters responses to opioid analgesics and may make postoperative pain management very challenging. Buprenorphine-containing medications (i.e., Suboxone), which are used to treat opioid addiction (as well as chronic pain), also alter responses to opioid analgesics. In the case of relatively minor surgery with minimal levels of anticipated postoperative pain, it is reasonable to continue buprenorphine perioperatively and maximize the use of nonopioid analgesic approaches (e.g., regional anesthesia, NSAIDs). In other cases, the perioperative management of buprenorphine should be coordinated with the patient's addiction specialist.

BREASTFEEDING PATIENTS

There are limited data to help guide recommendations for the safety of anesthetics and medications in babies of breastfeeding mothers who receive these agents. For elective surgery, women should be advised to pump and store milk preoperatively; this milk can be used in the first 24 hours after anesthesia administration, or for the duration of breast milk exposure to potentially harmful agents. The mother should discard milk produced within the first 24 hours after anesthesia, and then generally resume breastfeeding after this period. Very young or premature babies, especially those susceptible to apnea, may be at risk if the mothers continue to take opioid or sedating drugs. Mothers should be advised to discuss the safety of breastfeeding while taking medications with their child's pediatrician.

PATIENTS WITH DO NOT RESUSCITATE ORDERS

Some patients scheduled for procedures have advance directives or a do-not-resuscitate (DNR) status.[413] The ASA adopted guidelines for the care of these patients and updated them in 2013 (Box 31.14).[414] Frequently, in circumstances with DNR orders, care providers are focused on a procedure-directed approach (i.e., do not intubate, do not administer resuscitative drugs). This approach is problematic in the perioperative period because much of anesthesia care involves such procedures. Within the context of anesthesia care, a better approach is to discuss DNR status in a goal-directed approach (i.e., from the perspective of the patient's values and objectives, such as quality-of-life concerns).[415] The ideal time to have this emotional and complex discussion is during the preoperative evaluation. Short discussions in the preoperative clinic have been shown to foster dialogue among patients, their proxies, and physicians regarding advance directives concerning end-of-life care, as demonstrated by a randomized trial of patients at a preoperative evaluation clinic.[416] In this trial, individuals who received the information session were significantly more likely to complete a durable power-of-attorney (27%

BOX 31.14 **Do-Not-Resuscitate Orders in the Perioperative Period**

Policies automatically suspending DNR orders or other directives that limit treatment before procedures involving anesthetic care may not sufficiently address a patient's rights to self-determination in a responsible and ethical manner. Such policies, if they exist, should be reviewed and revised, as necessary, to reflect the content of these guidelines.

1. *Full Attempt at Resuscitation*: The patient or designated surrogate may request the full suspension of existing directives during the anesthetic and immediate postoperative period, thereby consenting to the use of any resuscitation procedures that may be appropriate to treat clinical events that occur during this time.
2. *Limited Attempt at Resuscitation Defined With Regard to Specific Procedures*: The patient or designated surrogate may elect to continue to refuse certain specific resuscitation procedures (for example, chest compressions, defibrillation or tracheal intubation). The anesthesiologist should inform the patient or designated surrogate about which procedures are (1) essential to the success of the anesthesia and the proposed procedure, and (2) which procedures are not essential and may be refused.
3. *Limited Attempt at Resuscitation Defined With Regard to the Patient's Goals and Values*: The patient or designated surrogate may allow the anesthesiologist and surgical team to use clinical judgment in determining which resuscitation procedures are appropriate in the context of the situation and the patient's stated goals and values. For example, some patients may want full resuscitation procedures to be used to manage adverse clinical events that are believed to be quickly and easily reversible, but to refrain from treatment for conditions that are likely to result in permanent sequelae, such as neurologic impairment or unwanted dependence upon life-sustaining technology.

DNR, Do-not-resuscitate.

Modified from Committee on Ethics, American Society of Anesthesiologists: Ethical guidelines for the anesthesia care of patients with do-not-resuscitate orders or other directives that limit treatment, 2013. Available at http://www.asahq.org/For-Members/Standards-Guidelines-and-Statements.aspx.

vs. 10%) and discuss end-of-life care with their proxy decision makers (87% vs. 66%).

Preoperative Laboratory and Diagnostic Studies

The value of preoperative diagnostic testing is a central issue in delivering cost-effective health care to surgical patients. The role of preoperative testing to screen for disease and evaluate patients' fitness for surgery has been extensively studied. This research has largely concluded that routine preoperative testing in all surgical patients (i.e., without consideration for their demographics or comorbidities) cannot be justified. Routine preoperative testing in asymptomatic healthy patients has very poor diagnostic yield, provides little to no additional prognostic information, and has not shown any beneficial effect on outcomes.[274,417-420] Unnecessary testing is also expensive, and may lead to costly evaluation of borderline or false-positive test abnormalities. Aside from potentially causing operating room delays or cancellations, these unnecessary follow-up tests may pose risks to patients that are attributable to follow-up tests and any associated interventions. Therefore, the targeting of testing in appropriate patients has both clinical and economic benefits. At some hospitals where surgeons and primary care physicians order all preoperative tests, the common practice has been to order tests without any diagnostic focus, other than speculation that the anesthesiologist may "require them" for surgery to proceed without delay or cancellation. Other justifications offered for nonselective ordering of tests include routine screening for disease states, establishment of a diagnostic baseline, personal habit (e.g., "standard" testing checklist for all patients), physician reassurance, and a perceived medicolegal necessity "not to miss anything." This pattern of practice has led to a plethora of preoperative testing practices that are costly, highly variable across hospitals, and largely unrelated to patients' perioperative risk profiles.[421-423] For example, in 2011, almost half of Medicare beneficiaries (aged ≥ 65 years) in the United States underwent preoperative laboratory testing before cataract surgery, which is considered a very low-risk procedure.[423]

Preoperative diagnostic tests should be selectively ordered based on the patient's medical history, planned surgery, and expected degree of intraoperative blood loss. Testing should be for the detection of specific clinical indications that may increase perioperative risk. Randomized trials have demonstrated that such a shift in strategy from nonselective to selective preoperative testing in low-risk surgical procedures can reduce costs while preserving patients' safety.[418,419] As experts in perioperative medicine, anesthesiologists are in a unique position to appropriately select the preoperative laboratory tests needed to guide perioperative care. Indeed, anesthesiologist-led preoperative evaluation has been shown to result in more selective ordering of laboratory tests than evaluation led by surgeons or primary care physicians.[14-17] Thus, by educating and providing specific guidance to surgeons and other physician specialists on the appropriate ordering of preoperative tests, anesthesiologists can expedite patient care, reduce healthcare costs, and improve the delivery of perioperative medicine.

A framework for ordering preoperative diagnostic tests based on patients' medical history is presented in Table 31.18. These disease-specific recommendations are not intended as absolute, especially since many hospitals and regional jurisdictions (e.g., Ontario Pre-Operative Testing Grid)[424] have developed their own preoperative testing recommendations. In addition, the NICE in the United Kingdom published updated 2016 guidelines for preoperative testing following an extensive systematic review of the literature.[274] The NICE guidelines consider both patients' preoperative medical status and the extensiveness of the planned surgery to determine when preoperative testing is warranted. In these guidelines, surgical procedures are graded as minor (e.g., skin lesion excision), intermediate (e.g., inguinal hernia repair, varicose vein excision, tonsillectomy, knee arthroscopy), and major (e.g., total abdominal hysterectomy, transurethral prostate resection, lumbar spine discectomy, thyroidectomy, total joint replacement, lung operations, colon resection, radical neck dissection). Although the most recent 2012 ASA "Practice Advisory for Preanesthesia Evaluation" does recommend against routine preoperative testing,[5] it does

TABLE 31.18 Framework for Preoperative Diagnostic Testing Based on Patients' Medical History

Preoperative Diagnosis	ECG	CXR	CBC	Electrolytes	Creatinine	Glucose	Coagulation	LFTs	Drug Levels	Ca
Cardiac disease										
IHD	X		X	±						
HF	X	±								
HTN	X	±		X[*]	X					
Chronic atrial fibrillation	X								X[†]	
PAD	X									
Valvular heart disease	X	±								
Pulmonary disease										
COPD	X	±	X						X[‡]	
Asthma[§]										
Diabetes mellitus	X			±	X	X				
Liver disease										
Infectious hepatitis							X	X		
Alcohol/drug induced							X	X		
Tumor infiltration							X	X		
Renal disease			X	X	X					
Hematologic disorders			X							
Coagulopathies			X				X			
CNS Disorders										
Stroke	X		X	X		X			X	
Seizures	X		X	X		X			X	
Tumor	X		X							
Vascular/aneurysms	X		X							
Malignancy			X							
Hyperthyroidism	X		X	X						X
Hypothyroidism	X		X	X						
Cushing disease			X	X		X				
Addison disease			X	X		X				
Hyperparathyroidism	X		X	X						X
Hypoparathyroidism	X			X						X
Morbid obesity	X	±				X				
Malabsorption/poor nutrition	X		X	X	X	X				
Select Drug Therapies										
Digoxin	X			±					X	
Anticoagulants			X				X			
Phenytoin									X	
Phenobarbital									X	
Diuretics				X	X					
Corticosteroids			X			X				
Chemotherapy			X		±					
Aspirin/NSAID										
Theophylline									X	

[*] If the patient is taking diuretics.
[†] If the patient is taking digoxin.
[‡] If the patient is taking theophylline.
[§] Only test for consideration is pulmonary function testing if clinically indicated.
X, obtain; ±, consider.
Ca, Calcium; *CBC,* complete blood count; *HF,* heart failure; *CXR,* chest x-ray; *ECG,* electrocardiogram; *HTN,* hypertension; *IHD,* ischemic heart disease; *LFTs,* liver function tests; *NSAID,* nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug; *PAD,* peripheral artery disease.

not make explicit recommendations about which tests should be ordered for specific clinical conditions. The practice advisory states that the indications for testing should be "*based on information obtained from medical records, patient interview, physical examination, and type and invasiveness of the planned procedure.*" In addition, it describes patient-related and surgery-related factors that anesthesiologists should consider when deciding whether to order a specific laboratory test.[5] Conversely, the updated 2018 ESA guidelines on preoperative evaluation do make some specific recommendations for when preoperative laboratory testing should be performed.[6]

The following subsections discuss specific preoperative laboratory tests. In general, testing does not have to be repeated during the preoperative evaluation of healthy patients (i.e., ASA-PS class 1 or 2) if similar testing has already been performed within the 2 months preceding surgery and there has been no major interval change in the patient's medical status (e.g., recent chemotherapy).[425]

COMPLETE BLOOD COUNT, HEMOGLOBIN, AND HEMATOCRIT

The proposed surgery, associated potential blood loss, and individualized patient-level clinical indications should determine the requirement for a preoperative CBC. Typical clinical indications include a history of increased bleeding, hematologic disorders, CKD, chronic liver disease, recent chemotherapy or radiation treatment, corticosteroid therapy, anticoagulant therapy, and poor nutritional status. The NICE guidelines recommend routine CBC testing only in ASA-PS class 3 or 4 patients undergoing intermediate grade procedures, and all patients undergoing major procedures.[274]

RENAL FUNCTION TESTING

Renal function tests assess renal tubular function and glomerular filtration. Primary clinical indications include diabetes mellitus, hypertension, cardiac disease, potential dehydration (e.g., vomiting, diarrhea), anorexia, bulimia, fluid overload states (e.g., heart rate, ascites), known renal disease, liver disease, relevant recent chemotherapy (e.g., cisplatin, carboplatin), and renal transplantation. The NICE guidelines recommend routine renal function testing in ASA-PS class 3 or 4 patients undergoing intermediate procedures, and ASA-PS class 2, 3, or 4 patients undergoing major procedures.[274] If patients are deemed to be at risk for perioperative AKI, testing may also be considered in ASA-PS class 3 or 4 patients undergoing minor procedures, and ASA-PS class 2 patients undergoing intermediate procedures.[274]

LIVER FUNCTION TESTING

The ordering of liver function tests should be based on a history of liver injury and physical examination findings. Primary clinical indications include a history of hepatitis (viral, alcohol, drug-induced, autoimmune), jaundice, cirrhosis, portal hypertension, biliary disease, gallbladder disease, hepatotoxic drug exposure, tumor involvement of the liver, and bleeding disorders.

COAGULATION TESTING

Routine preoperative coagulation testing is not indicated (even in patients undergoing regional procedures) unless a known or suspected coagulopathy is identified on preoperative evaluation. Primary clinical indications for testing include a known bleeding disorder, hepatic disease, and anticoagulant use.[5] The 2016 NICE guidelines state that coagulation testing should only be considered in patients who are (1) ASA-PS class 3 or 4; (2) undergoing intermediate, major, or complex surgical procedures; and (3) known to take anticoagulant medications or have chronic liver disease.[274]

URINALYSIS

There is no indication for routine preoperative urinalysis.[274] Primary clinical indications include a suspected urinary tract infection and unexplained fever or chills.

PREGNANCY TEST

Pregnancy testing is often determined by hospital-specific protocols. It can also be based on clinical indications such as sexual activity, birth control use, and date of the last menstrual period. Another important factor that should be considered is the potential for the planned surgical procedure harming a fetus, based on direct injury (e.g., uterine surgery), reduction in blood flow (e.g., major cardiac or vascular surgery), and exposure to teratogenic agents (e.g., x-rays). The 2012 ASA "Practice Advisory for Preanesthesia Evaluation" suggests offering pregnancy testing to female patients of childbearing age when the result would alter the patient's management. It also recommends that informed consent be obtained for such testing, or that there be a full discussion of the risks, benefits, and alternatives related to preoperative pregnancy testing. The NICE guidelines recommend that all women of childbearing potential be asked whether there is any possibility they could be pregnant, and that any women who could possibly be pregnant be made aware of the risks of anesthesia and surgery to a fetus. The guidelines also recommend documenting all discussions about whether or not to carry out pregnancy testing, and to conduct pregnancy testing with patient consent if there is any doubt about pregnancy status.[274]

SICKLE CELL TEST

Individuals at risk for sickle cell disease include those of African, Caribbean, Eastern Mediterranean, and Middle Eastern origin. Even in at-risk populations, routine preoperative screening for sickle cell disease has a very low yield,[426] especially in regions with newborn screening programs for sickle cell disease.[427] Consistent with this evidence, 2016 NICE guidelines recommend against routine preoperative testing for sickle cell disease or sickle cell trait.[274]

A reasonable approach is to consider testing in *previously untested* patients who have at-risk ethnic backgrounds and clinical indicators. These indicators include patient-related (e.g., family history of sickle cell disease, sickle cell symptoms) and surgery-related (e.g., deliberate hypothermia, cardiopulmonary bypass, intrathoracic procedures, intraabdominal procedures, orthopedic procedures with tourniquet use) factors.

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM

The ECG can help detect a prior myocardial infarction, cardiac rhythm disturbances, ischemia, chamber hypertrophy, and electrolyte disorders. Nonetheless, when combined with usual clinical examination, the preoperative ECG may not provide additional prognostic information to identify individuals at risk for postoperative cardiac complications.[100] Primary clinical indications for preoperative ECGs include a history of IHD, hypertension, diabetes mellitus, heart failure, chest pain, palpitations, abnormal valvular murmurs, peripheral edema, syncope, dizziness, dyspnea on exertion, orthopnea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea, and CVD. The 2014 ESC/ESA guidelines suggest preoperative ECGs in patients with risk factors for IHD or suspicious symptoms, especially if they are undergoing intermediate-risk or high-risk surgery.[9] The 2014 ACC/AHA guidelines are fairly consistent in that they support preoperative ECGs for patients who are undergoing intermediate-risk or high-risk surgery, and who have known IHD, significant arrhythmia, PAD, CVD, or other significant structural heart disease.[7] The guidelines also recommend against routine preoperative ECGs (see Box 31.2), especially in asymptomatic patients without known cardiovascular disease or risk factors.[7] The NICE guidelines recommend routine preoperative ECGs in ASA-PS class 3 or 4 patients undergoing intermediate grade procedures, and ASA-PS class 2, 3, or 4 patients undergoing major procedures.[274] If patients have cardiovascular disease, CKD, or diabetes mellitus, testing may also be considered in ASA-PS class 2 patients undergoing intermediate procedures.[274]

CHEST RADIOGRAPH

Routine preoperative chest radiographs do not provide prognostically important information for assessing perioperative risk.[428] Preoperative chest radiographs should therefore not be ordered routinely,[274] but rather selectively based on abnormalities identified by preoperative evaluation. These indications include advanced COPD, bullous lung disease, suspected pulmonary edema, suspected pneumonia, suspected mediastinal masses, and suspicious findings on physical examination (e.g., rales, tracheal deviation).

Preoperative Risk Assessment

A critical component of the preanesthesia evaluation is assessment of a patient's risk for undergoing anesthesia and surgery. This assessment improves patients' understanding of the inherent perioperative risks and better informs healthcare providers' clinical decision making. For example, these risk assessments might help identify individuals who warrant enhanced levels of postoperative monitoring, consideration for alternative nonoperative or less invasive treatment options for their underlying condition, or initiation of interventions intended to decrease perioperative risk. An anesthesiologist's designation of a surgical patient as being high-risk is clinically important. Specifically, when the initial preanesthesia evaluation deems that a patient is at unacceptably high risk for anesthesia and surgery, adherence to the anesthesiologist's recommendations for further perioperative management is associated with lower postoperative complication rates.[429] In addition, accurate risk assessments facilitate fairer comparisons of perioperative outcomes; specifically, estimates of patients' risks are required by statistical methods that adjust for case-mix differences across providers and hospitals.

TABLE 31.19 American Society of Anesthesiologists Physical Status Classification

Category*	Definition
ASA-PS 1	A normal, healthy patient
ASA-PS 2	A patient with mild systemic disease
ASA-PS 3	A patient with severe systemic disease
ASA-PS 4	A patient with severe systemic disease that is a constant threat to life
ASA-PS 5	A moribund patient who is not expected to survive without the operation
ASA-PS 6	A declared brain-dead patient whose organs are being removed for donor purposes

*The addition of "E" to the classification category indicates emergency surgery.

ASA-PS, American Society of Anesthesiologists physical status.

The most commonly used method by anesthesiologists to assess overall perioperative risk is the ASA-PS classification system (Table 31.19). This classification system, which was developed in 1941, was originally intended to facilitate collection and comparison of statistical data in anesthesia.[430] The ASA-PS classification system seeks to describe a patient's preoperative medical status, but it does not consider risks inherent to the planned surgical procedure. Although *not* intended to guide estimation of patients' risks for anesthesia and surgery, the ASA-PS is often used for this purpose, especially given its simplicity of use. Indeed, several studies have shown a correlation of ASA-PS scores with postoperative mortality and major complications.[97,218,431-433] An important limitation to the classification system is its inherent subjectivity; consequently, previous research has shown only fair to modest interrater agreement when different individuals attempt to assign an ASA-PS category to the same patient.[432,434-436]

In addition to patients' preoperative medical status, which is described by the ASA-PS system, the operative procedure is an important determinant of perioperative risk.[437-439] Overall perioperative risk is necessarily a function of both the risk associated with the specific operative procedure and the risk associated with a patient's underlying medical status. For example, ambulatory surgical procedures are very

TABLE 31.20 Johns Hopkins Surgery Risk Classification System

Category	Description
1	Minimal risk to the patient independent of anesthesia. Minimally invasive procedure with little or no blood loss. Procedures are often done in an office setting, with the operating room used principally for anesthesia and monitoring.
2	Minimal to moderately invasive procedure, with expected blood loss not exceeding 500 mL. Mild risk to patient independent of anesthesia.
3	Moderately to significantly invasive procedure, with expected blood loss of 500-1500 mL. Moderate risk to patient independent of anesthesia.
4	Highly invasive procedure, with expected blood loss exceeding 1500 mL. Major risk to patient independent of anesthesia.
5	Highly invasive procedure, with expected blood loss exceeding 1500 mL. Critical risk to patient independent of anesthesia. Usually requires postoperative critical care unit stay with invasive monitoring.

From Paternak LR, Johns A. Ambulatory gynaecological surgery: risk and assessment. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 2005;19:663–679.

safe with respect to risks of postoperative mortality and major adverse events,[440-442] as evidenced by a 7-day postoperative mortality rate of only 41 per 100,000 procedures in a large cohort of Medicare beneficiaries 65 years old or older.[440] Thus, although older patients with an increased burden of comorbidity do have increased relative risks of mortality and morbidity following ambulatory surgery, their *absolute* risks remain very low. Classification schemes have been proposed for assessing operative risk, such as the Johns Hopkins risk classification system (Table 31.20), elevated surgical risk category in the RCRI (see Table 31.5), and the strata employed by the ESA/ESC cardiovascular evaluation guidelines.[9,439] Importantly, individual operative procedures within broad categories (e.g., intraabdominal surgery) vary with respect to their perioperative risk.[107] As a consequence, there is a need to balance the desire to ensure that clinical prediction tools sufficiently capture the variability in operative risk across different procedures, against the need to ensure that these tools are sufficiently simple for straightforward clinical use.

Several commonly used and methodologically sound clinical indices can predict mortality and major morbidity after cardiac surgery with reasonable accuracy, such as the EuroSCORE,[443] Society of Thoracic Surgeons risk models,[444] and Cleveland Clinic AKI risk score.[269] A variety of prediction tools have also been developed for use in noncardiac surgery.[445] For example, the ACS NSQIP risk calculator is available on the Internet (http://riskcalculator.facs.org) and provides an estimate of risk based on patients' comorbidities and proposed surgical procedures.[32] High-quality validated indices have been developed for predicting specific major complications of noncardiac surgery, such as cardiovascular events (e.g., RCRI)[97,106] and respiratory complications (e.g., ARISCAT).[257,261] Other examples including the Surgical Risk Scale,[446] the Preoperative Score to Predict Postoperative Mortality (POSPOM),[99] and large multinational prospective epidemiologic studies of surgical patients (which included accurate capture of perioperative characteristics and outcomes),[77,78] will likely help lead to the development of other high-quality predictive indices.

ROLE OF SPECIALIZED TESTING IN PREOPERATIVE RISK ASSESSMENT

Based on an initial preoperative clinical evaluation, anesthesiologists may order subsequent specialized tests to help address diagnostic questions (e.g., "*Does this patient have aortic stenosis?*") or determine perioperative risk more accurately. Examples of such tests include noninvasive cardiac stress tests (see section on "Ischemic Heart Disease"), coronary angiography (see section on "Ischemic Heart Disease"), echocardiography, CPET, and PFTs (see section on "Pulmonary Disorders").

Resting echocardiography can provide information related to valvular lesions, pulmonary hypertension, fixed wall motion abnormalities, and ventricular function. Especially in cases of a suspicious murmur or other clinical indication, a preoperative echocardiogram can help diagnose prognostically important valvular or other cardiac lesions, such as aortic stenosis or pulmonary hypertension.[447,448] An echocardiogram can also identify fixed wall motion abnormalities consistent with a previous myocardial infarction. Although these findings can help support a diagnosis of IHD, fixed wall motion abnormalities are not themselves indicative of increased perioperative cardiac risk.[122] Similarly, while systolic ventricular dysfunction identified on echocardiography is associated with increased cardiac risk[161,162] this finding may not provide additional prognostic information when it is combined with routine preoperative clinical evaluation.[161] Thus, the overall role of echocardiography is to address focused *diagnostic* questions identified in usual clinical preoperative evaluation (e.g., suspicious systolic murmurs), not to provide important prognostic information pertaining to perioperative risk. Current guidelines therefore largely recommend preoperative echocardiography to assess dyspnea of unknown origin or recent altered clinical status in an individual with known heart failure (see Box 31.3).[7] In addition, repeat echocardiography is reasonable in clinically stable patients with known ventricular dysfunction who have not been tested in the previous year.[7] Conversely, routine preoperative echocardiography is discouraged.[7,8]

CPET is a noninvasive global assessment of exercise capacity; it involves a patient exercising on a bicycle or treadmill for 8 to 12 minutes while undergoing continuous measurement of respiratory gas exchange (i.e., oxygen uptake and carbon dioxide production).[449] Poor exercise capacity during CPET, based on either a low peak oxygen consumption or a low anaerobic threshold, is associated with increased risks of postoperative morbidity.[29,36,450] Thus, the test can help improve the accuracy of preoperative risk stratification. In some geographic settings,[451] CPET is a commonly used preoperative test. In these settings, it is used to aid preoperative risk assessment for major surgery, and to inform decisions on the appropriateness of planned major surgical procedures.

The role of PFTs for guiding preoperative assessment in the setting of specific comorbidities was discussed earlier in this chapter. These tests have an established and important role for assessing perioperative risk in lung resection surgery (see section on “Patients Scheduled for Lung Resection” and Chapter 53).[219] PFTs also play an important diagnostic role. For example, they help differentiate between pulmonary and cardiac causes of dyspnea of unknown origin. Aside from these specific circumstances, the *prognostic* value of preoperative PFTs is limited. Practice guidelines from the American College of Physicians recommend against routine preoperative spirometry for estimating risks for pulmonary complications after noncardiothoracic surgery.[10] Research has not found a consistent link between poor PFT results and increased risks for perioperative pulmonary complications, with older studies being generally limited by important methodologic flaws.[218] Furthermore, there does not seem to be a critical PFT threshold below which patients should not be offered surgery. For example, in a previous cohort study, individuals with severe obstructive findings (i.e., $FEV_1 < 50\%$ of predicted and FEV_1/FVC ratio < 0.7) had reasonably acceptable risks of postoperative death (5.6%) and respiratory failure (5.6%).[452]

Preoperative Medication Management

The patient’s comorbidities and planned procedure must inform medication management during the perioperative period. Some medications have beneficial effects during surgical procedures, whereas others may be detrimental. In some cases, abrupt *withdrawal* of medications can have a negative effect. Management of specific preoperative medications has been discussed in the previous sections of this chapter. These recommendations are outlined again in Box 31.15. Although issues pertaining to many drugs are covered in other sections of this chapter, several issues merit special mention.

NSAIDs have *reversible* antiplatelet effects; hence, once the drugs have been eliminated, platelet function returns to normal. Concomitant NSAID use does not appear to increase the risk of spinal hematoma with neuraxial anesthesia.[196] Preoperative discontinuation of NSAIDs may be of value in patients at risk for perioperative AKI. Typically, NSAIDs are discontinued 24 to 72 hours preoperatively. Earlier discontinuation does not increase safety, and it may be burdensome to many patients with significant arthritis or chronic pain. COX-2 inhibitors (e.g., celecoxib) have minimal effect on platelet function and can usually be continued in the perioperative period. However, the long-term COX-2 inhibitor use in the nonoperative setting does increase the risk of cardiac events, in comparison with placebo or naproxen.[453] Conversely, COX-2 inhibitors have a cardiac risk profile similar to that of ibuprofen or diclofenac.[453] In general, no clear evidence indicates increased

BOX 31.15 Preoperative Management of Medications

Instruct patients to take these medications with a small sip of water, even if fasting.

1. **Antihypertensive medications**
   Continue on the day of surgery, except for ACEIs and ARBs
2. **Cardiac medications (e.g., β-blockers, digoxin)**
   Continue on the day of surgery.
3. **Antidepressants, anxiolytics, and other psychiatric medications**
   Continue on the day of surgery.
4. **Thyroid medications**
   Continue on the day of surgery.
5. **Oral contraceptive pills**
   Continue on the day of surgery.
6. **Eye drops**
   Continue on the day of surgery.
7. **Heartburn or reflux medications**
   Continue on the day of surgery.
8. **Opioid medications**
   Continue on the day of surgery.
9. **Anticonvulsant medications**
   Continue on the day of surgery.
10. **Asthma medications**
    Continue on the day of surgery.
11. **Corticosteroids (oral and inhaled)**
    Continue on the day of surgery.
12. **Statins**
    Continue on the day of surgery.
13. **Aspirin**
    Continue aspirin in patients with prior percutaneous coronary intervention, high-grade IHD, and significant CVD. Otherwise, discontinue aspirin 3 days before surgery.
14. **$P2Y_{12}$ inhibitors (e.g., clopidogrel, ticagrelor, prasugrel, ticlopidine)**
    Patients having cataract surgery with topical or general anesthesia do not need to stop taking thienopyridines. If reversal of platelet inhibition is necessary, the time interval for discontinuing these medications before surgery is 5–7 days for clopidogrel, 5–7 days for ticagrelor, 7–10 days for prasugrel, and 10 days for ticlopidine. Do not discontinue $P2Y_{12}$ inhibitors in patients who have drug-eluting stents until they have completed 6 mo of dual antiplatelet therapy, unless patients, surgeons, and cardiologists have discussed the risks of discontinuation. The same applies to patients with bare metal stents until they have completed 1 month of dual antiplatelet therapy.
15. **Insulin**
    For all patients, discontinue all short-acting (e.g., regular) insulin on the day of surgery (unless insulin is administered by continuous pump). Patients with type 2 diabetes should take none, or up to one half of their dose of long-acting or combination (e.g., 70/30 preparations) insulin, on the day of surgery. Patients with type 1 diabetes should take a small amount (usually one third) of their usual morning long-acting insulin dose on the day of surgery. Patients with an insulin pump should continue their basal rate only.
16. **Topical medications (e.g., creams and ointments)**
    Discontinue on the day of surgery.
17. **Non-insulin antidiabetic medications**
    Discontinue on the day of surgery (exception: SGLT2 inhibitors should be discontinued 24 hours before elective surgery)
18. **Diuretics**
    Discontinue on the day of surgery (exception: thiazide diuretics taken for hypertension, which should be continued on the day of surgery).
19. **Sildenafil (Viagra) or similar drugs**
    Discontinue 24 h before surgery.
20. **COX-2 inhibitors**
    Continue on the day of surgery unless the surgeon is concerned about bone healing.
21. **Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs**
    Discontinue 48 hours before the day of surgery.
22. **Warfarin (Coumadin)**
    Discontinue 5 days before surgery, except for patients having cataract surgery without a bulbar block.
23. **Monoamine oxidase inhibitors**
    Continue these medications and adjust the anesthesia plan accordingly.

ACEI, Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors; *ARB*, angiotensin receptor blocker; *COX-2*, cyclooxygenase-2; *CVD*, cerebrovascular disease; *IHD*, ischemic heart disease; *P2Y12*, adenosine diphosphate receptor; *SGLT2*, sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitors.

cardiac risk from *short-term* perioperative administration of COX-2 inhibitors. The exception is valdecoxib (now withdrawn from the market), which caused an excess of cardiac events in patients undergoing cardiac surgery.[454]

Postmenopausal hormone replacement therapies that contain estrogen increase the risk of thromboembolic events.[455] It may therefore be reasonable to discontinue these medications before operations. Estrogens must be stopped approximately 4 weeks preoperatively for coagulation function to return to baseline. Most modern oral contraceptives contain low doses of estrogen. Nonetheless, these medications are still associated with some elevation in thrombotic risk.[456] Since the risk of unanticipated pregnancy may outweigh the benefits of discontinuing oral contraceptives preoperatively, it is reasonable to continue oral contraceptives in most patients during the perioperative period. In patients who are deemed to be a high risk for postoperative VTE (see section on "Venous Thromboembolic Disorders"), consideration may be given to stopping oral contraceptives 4 weeks before surgery (and temporarily switching to other forms of contraception). This decision should be made collaboratively with the patient and must balance the risk of VTE versus the risk of unwanted pregnancy.

Most medications for psychiatric and psychological problems should be continued into the preoperative period. Thus, most antidepressants, antipsychotics, and benzodiazepines are best maintained to avoid exacerbations of symptoms. Historically, monoamine oxidase inhibitor (MAOI) antidepressants were discontinued preoperatively; however, elimination of the risks associated with many of these drugs required drug discontinuation at least 3 weeks before surgery. This long withdrawal period is specifically applied to MAOIs that cause irreversible inhibition of MAO. Some newer agents, such as moclobemide, cause reversible enzyme inhibition and have effects lasting less than 24 hours. Preoperative withdrawal of these drugs has potential risks. Specifically, case reports of suicides or severe depression following discontinuation of MAOIs have been reported. Thus, the safest approach may be to continue these drugs and adjust the anesthetic plan accordingly (e.g., avoid meperidine and indirect-acting vasopressors such as ephedrine). If this approach is taken, it is critical that details of a patient's MAOI use must be clearly communicated to healthcare providers on the day of surgery. Patients receiving tricyclic antidepressants require a preoperative ECG, given the potential for a prolonged QT interval. Because tricyclic antidepressants block the reuptake of norepinephrine and serotonin, high doses may also result in augmented responses to vasopressor drugs, with the potential for exaggerated hemodynamic changes. Patients taking lithium require evaluation of electrolyte and creatinine concentrations. Discontinuation of lithium has also been associated with suicide. Continued perioperative use of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) are associated with increased surgical bleeding,[457,458] whereas abrupt discontinuation of SSRIs can also cause dizziness, chills, muscle aches, and anxiety. Overall, it is still reasonable to continue SSRI perioperatively in most patients, aside from those undergoing procedures where bleeding could have significant postoperative sequalae (e.g., intracranial surgery).

Complementary and alternative medications may interact with anesthetic drugs, alter effects of prescription medications, and increase bleeding. In addition, many patients do not consider these drugs "medications," and may not list them among their medications unless specifically asked. The perioperative management of complementary and alternative medications is discussed in further detail in Chapter 33.

Planning for Anesthesia

PREOPERATIVE FASTING STATUS

The overarching goal of preoperative fasting recommendations has been to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration. The ASA published practice guidelines pertaining to preoperative fasting in nonlaboring individuals undergoing elective procedures.[459] The recommended fasting period following clear fluids for all patients is 2 hours. In general, the volume of liquid ingested is less important than the type of liquid ingested. For neonates and infants, the recommended fasting period is 4 hours following breast milk, and 6 hours following formula, non-human milk, and solids. For patients other than infants, a fasting period of 6 hours after a light meal is recommended; this period may have to be increased to 8 or more hours if the meal includes fried or fatty foods. In addition to implementing these fasting intervals, the guidelines recommend that the preoperative evaluation include assessment of the potential for difficult airway management, as well as factors that may increase the risk for aspiration (e.g., gastrointestinal motility disorders, diabetes).

PLANNING FOR POSTOPERATIVE PAIN MANAGEMENT

A preoperative evaluation should always include baseline pain assessment. Standardization of pain measurement is difficult because of the subjective nature of the variable. It is therefore helpful to incorporate standardized pain measurement scales into the preoperative evaluation process. The scales may either be single-dimension scales, such as visual analog and numeric rating scales, or multidimensional scales such as the McGill pain questionnaire,[460] and Modified Brief Pain Inventory—Short Form.[461] Although multidimensional scales are longer, they capture a broader range of important details. For example, the 9-item Modified Brief Pain Inventory—Short Form captures details on the pain intensity, pain location, adequacy of analgesic treatment, and pain-related interference in activities. Consistent use of the same scale during the perioperative episode of care allows comparison when reassessments are performed after surgery.

The preoperative evaluation provides an important opportunity to discuss and plan for the management of acute postoperative pain, for several reasons. First, adequacy of perioperative pain control is a frequent concern for patients during preoperative evaluation.[462,463] Second, intensive preoperative pain instructions may help improve postoperative pain control in surgical patients.[464] Third, preoperative anesthesia consultation is associated with improved patient acceptance of perioperative regional techniques,[19] which can help improve the quality of postoperative analgesia.[465] Fourth, preoperative evaluation facilitates planning the perioperative care of patients with chronic pain conditions, who often present significant challenges with respect to managing postoperative analgesia. Specific issues include their tolerance to usual doses of opioid analgesics and the potential for acute withdrawal reactions if they receive insufficient doses of opioids postoperatively. The preoperative consultation should therefore be used to carefully document their usual baseline opioid requirements (to ensure adequate postoperative dosing), facilitate early involvement of an acute pain service or transitional pain specialist,[466] encourage regional analgesic techniques, and plan adjunct analgesic medications (e.g., NSAIDs, gabapentin, pregabalin, clonidine). Patients with preexisting chronic pain should be encouraged to develop reasonable goals for adequacy of postoperative pain control. They should be informed that although care providers will do everything possible to maintain comfort postoperatively, patients should not expect to have no pain at all.

In general, patients should not be weaned from pain medications before surgery. If instructed by their surgeons to temporarily discontinue NSAIDs or COX-2 analgesics, they may have to be transitioned to alternative analgesics before surgery. Patients should be instructed to take their usual morning dose of pain medication, including continued use of any transdermal medications.

Regulatory Issues

Providers must be aware of various governmental regulatory requirements, which often differ by individual municipalities and countries. These requirements may be driven by quality regulations, such as those developed by The Joint Commission or by payment requirements as set by the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) in the United States. For example, the CMS has determined that a comprehensive anesthesia evaluation can be done within 30 days, and a focused update is required within 48 hours of a procedure requiring anesthesia services. The evaluation should be performed by a practitioner qualified to provide anesthesia. At a minimum, the preanesthesia evaluation must include the following:

- Notation of anesthesia risk (e.g., ASA-PS classification)
- Review of the medical, anesthesia, drug, and allergy history
- Interview and examination of the patient
- Potential anesthesia problems (e.g., difficult airway, limited intravascular access)
- Additional evaluation, if deemed necessary (e.g., stress tests, specialist consultation)
- Development of a plan for anesthesia, including the type of medications for induction, maintenance, and postoperative care
- Discussion of the risks and benefits of anesthesia with the patient or the patient's representative

Preoperative Evaluation Clinic

Many anesthesiology groups and medical centers have developed preoperative evaluation programs and outpatient clinics, with the objectives of improving patient care and operating room efficiency.[14,22,467] Although these programs may differ with respect to staffing, structure, financial support, and daily operations, they all share a common goal of preventing delays, last-minute cancellations, and adverse patient outcomes that could have been addressed before the day of surgery.

The decision to develop a preoperative evaluation clinic depends on several key factors. They include the anticipated daily volume of surgical patients, the predominant level of medical acuity among these patients, the availability of clinic facilities, relevant patient demographics (e.g., average travel distances from patients' homes to the clinic), and requisite support from the anesthesia department, perioperative staff, and hospital administration. If the decision to implement a preoperative evaluation program is made, anesthesiologists must play a key role in its leadership and management. When this role is instead undertaken by other specialties, such as internal medicine, anesthesiologists' expertise in perioperative patient management often becomes secondary. This shift to a secondary role can result in interdepartmental conflicts concerning patients' preoperative evaluation, risk stratification, and fitness to proceed with anesthesia and surgery. These conflicts can, in turn, result in unplanned delays or cancellations of planned surgical procedures, despite the completion of an assessment in an outpatient preoperative evaluation clinic.

Such conflicts often relate to surgeons' interpretation of a nonanesthesia specialist's judgment that a patient is "cleared for surgery" as evidence that the patient is fit for anesthesia. Unfortunately, this "clearance" is frequently made with limited knowledge of factors critical to the responsible anesthesiologist in the operating room, such as current anesthesia practice and intraoperative patient management. Indeed, previous research has shown that preoperative histories, physical examinations, and assessments performed by medical specialists often fail to address specific anesthesia-related concerns.[468] As the specialist who makes the final determination of whether a patient is fit to proceed with anesthesia and surgery, the responsible anesthesiologist is a critical "end-user" of any assessment performed in a preoperative evaluation clinic. Consequently, a reliance on nonanesthesia specialists can result in preoperative assessments that are deemed inadequate by the responsible anesthesia providers and that lead to potential last-minute surgical delays and cancellations, with associated significant frustration among both patients and surgeons. Conversely, preoperative-to-intraoperative communication is likely significantly improved when anesthesiologists are responsible for most outpatient preanesthesia evaluations, as confirmed by previous studies showing fewer last-minute case cancellations,[14,20,22,469] shorter durations of hospitalization,[22,469,470] lower hospital costs,[469] and possibly reduced postoperative mortality,[471] with institution of anesthesia-led preoperative evaluation programs.

Awareness of the local hospital context is critical if a preoperative evaluation program is to have good outcomes. In a hospital with limited resources that has mostly healthy outpatient and same-day-admission surgical patients, the anesthesia group may be unable to evaluate all patients preoperatively in a clinic before the day of surgery. In this situation, the preoperative program must develop a means for accurate screening and triage of patients based on their current health status. An accurate triage process helps target the use of preoperative clinic visits only among selected higher-risk patients without compromising patients' quality of care and outcomes.[24] An example of such a triage process may involve having patients initially complete an anesthesia screening questionnaire in their surgeons' office. This questionnaire can be a Web-based online document or even a paper version that would then be faxed to the anesthesia group before the date of surgery. The anesthesia group can develop local context-specific screening questionnaires, or adopt published instruments developed for this purpose.[472,473] In the case of a patient with a questionable medical history, a telephone call by the anesthesiologist could clarify any issues of concern. This opportunity to review a patient's medical history before the day of surgery helps reduce unresolved or unexpected medical concerns on the day of surgery. It also helps determine whether a patient requires formal preoperative consultation in advance of the surgical procedure, as opposed to evaluation on the day of surgery itself.

Conversely, anesthesia departments at hospitals with many medically complex surgical patients may benefit from the establishment of a formal preoperative evaluation facility with multiple examination rooms, dedicated staffing, and a full-time operational system. The establishment of a successful preoperative evaluation clinic requires commitment, collaboration, and support from several hospital disciplines.[14] At a minimum, the departments of anesthesia, surgery, nursing, and hospital administration must agree that such a clinic has value for the hospital, and they must commit to support its operational goals.

COLLABORATION, COMMITMENT, AND TEAMWORK

The preoperative evaluation clinic is a partnership among the departments of anesthesia, surgery, nursing, and hospital administration to achieve common goals. This collaboration conveys the important theme that the new clinical program is an integrated enterprise that requires shared obligation, endeavor, and financial responsibility. Although these clinics are best led by anesthesiologists,[14,20,22,469] collaborative engagement with medical specialists (e.g., cardiologists, geriatricians) and hospitalists remains important to the success of any preoperative program. These nonanesthesia specialties provide unique expertise in the preoperative management of selected medically complex patients; furthermore, they can facilitate enhanced postoperative monitoring of high-risk patients through, for example, the comanagement model of postoperative care (see section on "Role of the Medical Consultant in Preoperative Evaluation").

Surgeons may be initially reluctant to send their patients to a newly established anesthesia-led preoperative evaluation clinic. This reluctance often stems from an unclear understanding of the benefits of outpatient preoperative anesthesia evaluation. Consequently, the surgeons' hesitation can be reduced by clearly identifying the specific advantages of an integrated anesthesia-led preoperative evaluation program. First, the proven benefits of anesthesiology-led preoperative evaluation should be highlighted.[14,20,22,469-471] Second, anesthesiologists should emphasize the important practical advantages of an integrated assessment of medically complex surgical patients. Specifically, when relevant medical concerns are identified before the surgical procedure, the preoperative program can acquire all relevant prior medical data, coordinate any additional workup or consultation, prearrange any required specialized postoperative monitoring, and discuss the case beforehand with the surgeon and responsible anesthesiologist. This approach ensures that when such a patient presents for the operation, the responsible anesthesia provider is satisfied to proceed with the surgical procedure, and the perioperative team has all required medical information to manage the patient optimally during the hospitalization. This integration of the preoperative evaluation with the entire perioperative episode of care is an integral component of the Perioperative Surgical Home model.[1]

Third, informal assurances should be made to the surgical services that, if a patient is managed by the preoperative evaluation program, surgery will proceed without cancellation or delay by the assigned anesthesiologist unless an intervening illness or adverse medical event occurs between the outpatient evaluation and the scheduled operation. Because cancellations and delays on the day of surgery can be a prominent source of aggravation for surgeons and patients, these informal assurances would be viewed as a key strength of the newly developed preoperative program. Such assurances depend heavily on the anesthesia department's addressing relevant clinical practice variations. Specifically, issues that are subject to important interpractitioner differences, such as what fasting blood glucose level or degree of preoperative hypertension would merit cancelling a surgical case, must be discussed to achieve a departmental consensus standard. The absence of consensus standards can lead to situations in which half the anesthesia providers may proceed with a higher-risk surgical case, whereas the other half would cancel it instead. Wide inconsistency in practice will foster a lack of support among surgeons and will lead to reluctance to have their patients evaluated. Such a preoperative evaluation program is unlikely to be successful.

ROLE OF THE MEDICAL CONSULTANT IN PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION

Use of preoperative medical consultation varies across hospitals, likely depending on the expertise in perioperative medicine among the clinicians performing preanesthesia assessments. Since exposure to preoperative evaluation is inadequate at many anesthesia residency programs,[474] some anesthesia departments may prefer that medical specialists take primary responsibility for preoperative evaluations at their centers. Conversely, when anesthesiologists involved with preoperative evaluation develop improved comfort with interpreting ECGs, cardiac stress tests, or other specialized tests, rates of medical consultations can be substantially reduced.[17]

Medical consultants have a clear role in the preoperative care of selected surgical patients. For example, these consultations can help manage unstable medical conditions (e.g., unstable angina), optimize poorly controlled medical diseases (e.g., asthma exacerbation), or facilitate clinically indicated diagnostic workups (e.g., coronary angiography following high-risk cardiac stress test results).

Preoperative consultation by medical specialists or hospitalists can also help facilitate postoperative comanagement by these same individuals.[475] The comanagement model for postoperative care of surgical patients is increasingly common,[476] although its benefits with respect to clinical outcomes and healthcare costs remain uncertain.[477-482] Multidisciplinary collaboration with medical consultants can be especially helpful for perioperative management of complex or uncommon medical disorders. Indeed, some clinical practice guidelines recommend such multidisciplinary team management for patients with known cardiac disease undergoing high-risk noncardiac surgery,[9] as well as patients with significant pulmonary hypertension or adult congenital heart disease undergoing noncardiac surgery.[7]

Despite these theoretical benefits, preoperative medical consultation has shown a variable effect on postoperative outcomes. A randomized trial of outpatient preoperative evaluation demonstrated fewer last-minute surgical cancellations but no difference in hospital length of stay, as well as an increase in consultations.[483] In other nonrandomized studies, medical consultation was associated with increases in specialized testing, costs, hospital length of stay, and mortality.[484,485] Conversely, a transition from an anesthesiologist-led to a hospitalist-led preoperative assessment clinic was associated with reduced hospital length of stay in high-risk patients,[486] while preoperative geriatric consultation was associated with improved postoperative 90-day outcomes (i.e., survival, hospital length of stay, need for supported discharge, hospital readmission) in elderly patients (≥65 years) undergoing major elective noncardiac surgery.[487] Potential reasons for this variable effect may be the absence of recommendations or new interventions resulting from many medical consultations,[488,489] as well as disagreements among medical specialists, anesthesiologists, and surgeons on the intended purpose of these consultations.[468] In addition, increased burden of comorbidity is a very small determinant of whether patients are referred for preoperative medical consultations,[490-492] a finding suggesting poor patient selection during referral to medical specialists. Thus, during preoperative evaluation, the anesthesiologist should ensure that any referrals to medical specialists before surgery involve appropriate matching of patient profiles to specialist expertise. For example, patients with high-risk IHD should be referred to a cardiologist, while frail elderly patients should be referred to a geriatrician.

STRUCTURES AND ACTIVITIES OF THE PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION CLINIC

The daily operations of a preoperative evaluation clinic vary based on the patient volume, the general level of medical complexity among surgical patients, the type of available clinic facilities, and staffing resources. Nonetheless, a general operational structure can be proposed based on examination of several preoperative clinic models currently in practice.

Centers with large surgical case volumes should have their patients formally scheduled in the clinic before the day of evaluation, to allow for medical records and relevant outside information to be acquired and collated. The surgeon's office should schedule this clinic appointment at the same time that it books the operating room case. To ensure timely patient access and flow through the facility, these appointments should be booked using an efficient clinic scheduling system. Ideally, appointments should be scheduled to allow sufficient time between the clinic visit and the scheduled surgical procedure, to facilitate any additional preoperative testing, consultations, or interventions. Some degree of flexibility in the clinic schedule is also needed, especially to accommodate patients who have urgent indications for surgery. One approach for incorporating some flexibility is to include a few open appointment slots in the daily clinic schedule that can be used as needed for last-minute patient referrals. Such flexibility is required for individuals residing in rural and remote areas, who have been reported to have reduced rates of access to preoperative evaluation clinic facilities.[493] Anesthesiologists at some centers have also adopted telemedicine technology (defined as healthcare delivery and sharing of medical knowledge over a distance using telecommunications systems)[494] so that patients residing at remote locations can undergo preanesthesia consultations without traveling long distances to the clinic.[495]

At the clinic, a clinician interviews and examines the patient, obtains historical medical information and outside records, and determines whether (and which) additional laboratory tests, ECGs, radiographs, or other diagnostic tests are required. Phlebotomy, ECG, and hospital admitting and insurance registration services are typically available in the preoperative clinic facility. The ECGs are assessed during the clinic visit itself, whereas laboratory test results are evaluated at the end of each clinic day, with follow-up of abnormal findings as needed. In this manner, significant abnormalities can be addressed immediately; thus, any required delays or cancellations of surgical cases can occur well in advance of the scheduled day of surgery. This centralization of multiple services is also a significant convenience for patients, who no longer have to visit multiple hospital locations to complete their preoperative requirements. This arrangement should also centralize all medical data relevant to the scheduled hospital admission into a single chart, which remains in the preoperative evaluation clinic area until the date of surgery. In addition to addressing medical aspects relevant to the scheduled surgery, the preoperative evaluation program plays an important role in educating surgical patients. Typically, both the clinician performing the preoperative assessment and a specifically trained nurse educator discuss the forthcoming perioperative process with each patient and family members. By increasing patients' awareness of important components pertaining to their scheduled hospital admission (e.g., analgesic options, risks of anesthesia), this education process can decrease patients' anxiety,[18] as well as increase their willingness to receive regional analgesia.[19] The types of clinicians who perform the preanesthesia assessment include anesthesiologists and specially trained nurse practitioners. Some authors have questioned whether the responsible anesthesiologist in the operating room would be satisfied with preanesthesia assessments performed by another individual.[496] Patients themselves often report a preference for having the same anesthesiologist in both the preoperative clinic and the operating room.[497] Nonetheless, it is simply not feasible for all patients in the preoperative clinic to be evaluated by their eventual anesthesia providers. Furthermore, a large Dutch cohort study of about 21,000 surgical patients demonstrated that responsible anesthesia providers were satisfied with 95% of outpatient preanesthesia assessments performed by other anesthesiologists or trained nurses.[498]

Preoperative programs must adopt several strategies to ensure that anesthesia providers in the operating room will be satisfied with the quality of outpatient preoperative assessments. First, the anesthesia department must develop consensus standards for determining when patients should have scheduled surgery cancelled for medical reasons. Second, the documentation required for all preanesthesia assessments in the clinic should be standardized. This standardization helps prevent situations in which an assessment does not contain information needed by the anesthesia provider in the operating room to determine a patient's fitness for surgery or to develop an anesthetic management plan. Some national anesthesiology groups have initiated work on consensus-based documentation standards for all preanesthesia assessments.[23] Strategies for improving the consistency of documentation across preanesthesia assessments include the use of checklists, as well as structured electronic or paper-based forms for documenting preanesthesia assessments. Third, all nurse practitioners or other nonanesthesia clinicians assessing patients in the clinic should undergo an intensive and ongoing education in preoperative assessment. Anesthesiologists with strong interest and expertise in preoperative evaluation should lead this education program. Previous research has shown that well-trained nurses do perform effectively in both screening and evaluating patients in preoperative clinics.[499-501]

IMPACT ON OPERATING ROOM EFFICIENCY AND OUTCOMES

Anesthesia-led preoperative assessment clinics have had positive impact on operating room efficiency and outcomes (see the earlier section "Goals and Benefits of Preanesthesia Evaluation"). The demonstrated benefits of these clinics include fewer case cancellations on the day of surgery,[14,20,22,469] shorter duration of hospitalization,[22,469,470] and a possible reduction in postoperative mortality.[471] Other mechanisms whereby preoperative evaluation clinics reduce healthcare costs include more selective ordering of preoperative laboratory tests and specialist referrals.[14,16,17] Thus, although preoperative evaluation programs do incur costs (e.g., facility development costs, staff salaries), they can still lead to an overall reduction in hospital costs as a result of these associated cost savings.[469]

PATIENT SATISFACTION WITH PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION CLINICS

In addition to addressing perioperative efficiencies and clinical outcomes, preoperative programs should also consider the experience and satisfaction of patients attending their clinics. During development of strategies to improve patient satisfaction, the underlying determinants of improved satisfaction should be considered. They include being assessed by the same anesthesiologist who will administer anesthesia in the operating room, shorter wait times in the clinic, and good quality of communication from the clinic staff.[497,502,503] Because it is simply not feasible to have all patients in the clinic seen by their eventual anesthesia providers, the major focus should be on improving wait times and the quality of communication. Changes in appointment booking systems,[504] process flows, and clinic operations can decrease wait times,[499] which in turn can substantially improve patients' satisfaction.[499] In addition, preoperative programs can ensure that patients receive an accurate estimate of average waiting times before their scheduled clinic visit, and use any encountered wait times to conduct other clinic-related activities (e.g., physical therapy instructions, video-based preoperative education).

Conclusion

The practice of anesthesiology has changed. The expanding role of the anesthesiologist outside the operating room will redefine the specialty's contribution to high-quality patient care in the healthcare system. Within the context of preoperative evaluation, anesthesiologists must be knowledgeable and adept at assessing patients of highly varying medical complexity, whether in an outpatient preoperative evaluation clinic before the day of the surgical procedure or at the bedside immediately before induction of anesthesia. Anesthesiologists must be familiar with the impact of a broad range of chronic and acute medical conditions on patients' risks for anesthesia and surgery. In addition, this role entails awareness of multiple practice guidelines, regulatory requirements, and approaches for efficient management of outpatient clinics. Despite this evolving and expanding role of anesthesiologists in preoperative care, the primary purpose of preoperative evaluation will never change. It is the clinical foundation for guiding perioperative patient management, and it has the potential to reduce perioperative morbidity and enhance patient outcome.

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and Dr. Duminda Wijeysundera would like to thank Dr. Bobbie-Jean Sweitzer for her contribution to this chapter in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Kain ZN, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(5):1126.
2. Saidman LJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:191.
3. Deutschman CS, Traber KB. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(1).
4. Etzioni DA, et al. *Am Surg*. 2003;69(11):961.
5. Apfelbaum JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:522.
6. De Hert S, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35(6):407.
7. Fleisher LA, et al. *Circulation*. 2009;120:e169.
8. Duceppe E, et al. *Can J Cardiol*. 2017;33(1):17.
9. Kristensen SD, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2014;35(35):2383.
10. Qaseem A, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;144:575.
11. Gould MK, et al. *Chest*. 2012;141(suppl 2):e227S.
12. Falck-Ytter Y, et al. *Chest*. 2012;141(suppl 2):e278S.
13. Kluger MT, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:1173.

14. Fischer SP. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:196.
15. Issa MRN, et al. *Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2011;61:60.
16. Power LM, Thackray NM. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1999;27:481.
17. Tsen LC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1563.
18. Klopfenstein CE, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47:511.
19. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2009;169:595.
20. Ferschl MB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:855.
21. Pollard JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:1307.
22. van Klei WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:644.
23. Ahmadian L, et al. *Methods Inf Med*. 2009;48:155.
24. Grant C, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2012;40(2):297.
25. Flamm M, et al. *J Am Med Inform Assoc*. 2013;20(e1):e91.
26. Simel DL, Rennie D. *The Rational Clinical Examination: Evidence-Based Clinical Diagnosis (Jama & Archives Journals)*. McGraw-Hill: Education / Medical; 2008.
27. Benjamin EJ, et al. *Circulation*. 2018;137(12):e67.
28. Hennis PJ, et al. *Postgrad Med J*. 2011;87(1030):550.
29. Moran J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116(2):177.
30. Carliner NH, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1985;56(1):51.
31. McPhail N, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1988;7(1):60–68.
32. Bilimoria KY, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;217(5):833–842.e1.
33. Gupta PK, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;124(4):381–387.
34. Arozullah AM, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2001;135(10):847–857.
35. Arozullah AM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2000;232(2):242–253.
36. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Lancet*. 2018;39(10140):2631–2640.
37. Melon CC, et al. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2014;174(9):1507–1508.
38. Stokes JW, et al. *Perioper Med (Lond)*. 2016;5:18.
39. Reilly DF. *Arch Intern Med*. 1999;159:2185.
40. Jaeschke R, et al. *JAMA*. 1994;271(9):703–707.
41. Wiklund RA, et al. *Yale J Biol Med*. 2001;74:75.
42. Hlatky MA, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1989;64(10):651–654.
43. Struthers R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101(6):774–780.
44. Moran J, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016:35446–35455.
45. Benge W, et al. *Circulation*. 1980;61(5):955–959.
46. Franciosa JA, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1981;47(1):33–39.
47. Pai MP, Paloucek FP. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2000;34(9):1066–1069.
48. Devine BJ. *Drug Intell Clin Pharm*. 1974:8650–8655.
49. Hartle A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(3):326–337.
50. Apfelbaum JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(2):251–270.
51. Mallampati SR, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1985;32:429.
52. Langeron O, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(5):1229–1236.
53. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(5):885–891.
54. Oresanya LB, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311(20):2110–2120.
55. Chow WB, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2012;215(4):453–466.
56. Podsiadlo D, Richardson S. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1991;39(2):142–148.
57. Robinson TN, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2013;258(4):582–588;discussion 588.
58. Fried LP. Chapter 24 - Frailty. In: Medina-Walpole A, Pacala JT, Potter JF, eds. *Geriatric Review Syllabus*. New York, NY, USA: American Geriatrics Society; 2016.
59. Fried LP, et al. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2001;56(3):M146–M156.
60. Mitnitski AB, et al. *ScientificWorldJournal*. 2001:1323–1336.
61. Dasgupta M, et al. *Arch Gerontol Geriatr*. 2009;48(1):78–83.
62. McIsaac DI, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2016;151(6):538–545.
63. McIsaac DI, et al. *Bone Joint J*. 2016;98-B(6):799–805.
64. McIsaac DI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(5):1653–1661.
65. Ghignone F, et al. *Eur J Surg Oncol*. 2016;42(2):297–302.
66. Robinson TN, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2009;250(3):449–455.
67. Robinson TN, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2011;213(1):37–42;discussion 42.
68. Charlson ME, et al. *J Chronic Dis*. 1987;40(5):373–383.
69. Rolfson DB, et al. *Age Ageing*. 2006;35(5):526–529.
70. Steffens DC, et al. *Int Psychogeriatr*. 2009;21(5):879–888.
71. Blazer DG, Wu LT. *Am J Psychiatry*. 2009;166(10):1162–1169.
72. Nath B, et al. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2010;14(11):1732–1741.
73. Harari D, et al. *Age Ageing*. 2007;36(2):190–196.
74. McDonald SR, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2018.
75. Englesbe MJ, et al. *Surgery*. 2017;161(6):1659–1666.
76. Sessums LL, et al. *JAMA*. 2011;306(4):420–427.
77. Devereaux PJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;307(21):2295–2304.
78. Devereaux PJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;317(16):1642–1651.
79. Gualandro DM, et al. *Arq Bras Cardiol*. 2017;109(3 suppl 1):1–104.
80. Kyo S, et al. *Circ J*. 2017;81(2):245–267.
81. Whelton PK, et al. *Hypertension*. 2017.
82. Muntner P, et al. *Circulation*. 2018;137(2):109–118.
83. Lewington S, et al. *Lancet*. 2002;360(9349):1903–1913.
84. Howell SJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:570.
85. Rosenman DJ, et al. *J Hosp Med*. 2008;3:319.
86. Roshanov PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(1):16–27.
87. Lee SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(2):288–306.
88. Mudumbai SC, et al. *J Hosp Med*. 2014;9(5):289–296.
89. GBD Macodc. *Lancet*. 2015;385(9963):117–171.
90. Ridker PM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377(12):1119–1131.
91. Eikelboom JW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377(14):1319–1330.
92. Sabatine MS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(18):1713–1722.
93. Windecker S, et al. *BMJ*. 2014;348g:3859.
94. Yusuf S, et al. *Lancet*. 1994;344(8922):563–570.
95. Head SJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2018;391(10124):939–948.
96. Boden WE, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(15):1503–1516.
97. Lee TH, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;100(10):1043–1049.
98. Botto F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(3):564–578.
99. Le Manach Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(3):570–579.
100. van Klei WA, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2007;246(2):165–170.
101. Musallam KM, et al. *Lancet*. 2011;378:1396.
102. Wu WC, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;297:2481.
103. Beattie WS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:25.
104. Le Manach Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:1203.
105. Livhits M, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2011;253(5):857–864.
106. Ford MK, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2010;152(1):26–35.
107. Liu JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(2):283–292.
108. Forshaw MJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85(1):294–299.
109. James S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(3):491–497.
110. Balion C, et al. Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality; 2006.
111. Rodseth RN, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;63(2):170–180.
112. Lurati Buse GA, et al. *Circulation*. 2012;126(23):2696–2704.
113. Rajagopalan S, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2011;41(5):657–662.
114. de Lemos JA, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;304(22):2503–2512.
115. deFilippi CR, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;304(22):2494–2502.
116. Kavsak PA, et al. *Clin Biochem*. 2011;44(12):1021–1024.
117. Weber M, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2013;34(11):853–862.
118. Kopec M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(2):398–405.
119. Nagele P, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2013;166(2):325–332. e1.
120. Kertai MD, et al. *Heart*. 2003;89:1327.
121. Beattie WS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:8.
122. Etchells E, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2002;36:534.
123. Miller JM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;359(22):2324–2336.
124. Meijboom WB, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008;52(25):2135–2144.
125. Ahn JH, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;61(6):661–668.
126. Sheth T, et al. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h1907.
127. Illuminati G, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2010;39(2):139–145.
128. Illuminati G, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2015;49(4):366–374.
129. Monaco M, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2009;54:989.
130. McFalls EO, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:2795.
131. Garcia S, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2008;102(7):809–813.
132. Devereaux PJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2008;371(9627):1839–1847.
133. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;130(24):2246–2264.
134. Devereaux PJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(16):1504–1513.
135. Duncan D, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2018;3:CD004126.
136. Devereaux PJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(16):1494–1503.
137. Mangano DT, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;335(23):1713–1720.
138. Ellenberger C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:817.
139. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Can J Cardiol*. 2014;30(2):217–223.
140. Chen RJ, et al. *J Am Heart Assoc*. 2017;6:1.
141. Biondi-Zoccai GG, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2006;27(22):2667–2674.
142. Sheth T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(4):725–733.
143. Helwani MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(6):1084–1091.
144. Graham MM, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2018;168(4):237–244.
145. Levine GN, et al. *Circulation*. 2016;134(10):e123–e155.
146. Hawn MT, et al. *JAMA*. 2013;310(14):1462–1472.
147. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Circulation*. 2012;126:1355.
148. Holcomb CN, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2016;151(5):462–469.
149. Webster SE, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2004;40:463.
150. Yancy CW, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;128(16):e240–e327.
151. McMurray JJ, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 1999;suppl 19:PP9-16.
152. Yancy CW, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;128(16):e240–e327.
153. Udelson JE. *Circulation*. 2011;124(21):e540–e543.
154. Bhatia RS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;355(3):260–269.
155. Meta-analysis Global Group in Chronic Heart Failure MAGGIC. *Eur Heart J*. 2012;33(14):1750–1757.

156. Yancy CW, et al. *Circulation*. 2017;136(6):e137–e161.
157. Hammill BG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:559.
158. Maile MD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(3):522–532.
159. Healy KO, et al. *Congest Heart Fail*. 2010;16(2):45–49.
160. Fayad A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(1):72–91.
161. Halm EA, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1996;125:433.
162. Rohde LE, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2001;87:505.
163. Xu-Cai YO, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2008;83(3):280–288.
164. Booth RA, et al. *Heart Fail Rev*. 2014;19(4):439–451.
165. Hill SA, et al. *Heart Fail Rev*. 2014;19(4):421–438.
166. Khan NA, et al. *Am J Med*. 2010;123(11):1059.e1–1059.e8.
167. Nishimura RA, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;129(23):e521–643.
168. Coffey S, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;63(25 Pt A):2852–2861.
169. Etchells E, et al. *J Gen Intern Med*. 1998;13:699.
170. Agarwal S, et al. *Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes*. 2013;6(2):193–200.
171. Tashiro T, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2014;35:2372–2381.
172. Vincentelli A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:343.
173. Nishimura RA, et al. *Circulation*. 2017;135(25):e1159–e1195.
174. Desjardins VA, et al. *Am J Med*. 1996;100:149.
175. Choudhry NK, Etchells EE. *JAMA*. 1999;281(23):2231–2238.
176. Lai HC, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54(5):580–588.
177. Bajaj NS, et al. *Am J Med*. 2013;126(6):529–535.
178. Bonow RO, et al. *Circulation*. 2008;118(15):e523–e661.
179. Freed LA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2002;40(7):1298–1304.
180. The 2015 ESC Guidelines for the management of infective endocarditis. *Eur Heart J*. 2015;36(44):3036–3037.
181. Epstein AE, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;127(3):e283–e352.
182. Dorman T, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2000;160(8):1149–1152.
183. Fahy GJ, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1996;77(14):1185–1190.
184. Eriksson P, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2005;26:2300.
185. Hesse B, et al. *Am J Med*. 2001;110(4):253–259.
186. Zhang ZM, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2012;110(10):1489–1495.
187. January CT, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;130(23):e199–267.
188. Van Gelder IC, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:1834.
189. Wyse DG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:1825.
190. Lip GY, et al. *Chest*. 2010;137(2):263–272.
191. Friberg L, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2012;33(12):1500–1510.
192. Hart RG, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2007;146(12):857–867.
193. McAlister FA, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2015;13(10):1768–1775.
194. Kaatz S, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2010;8(5):884–890.
195. Doherty JU, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69(7):871–898.
196. Horlocker TT, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(3):263–309.
197. Douketis JD, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 2017;117(12):2415–2424.
198. Douketis JD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373(9):823–833.
199. Glatter KA, et al. *Circulation*. 2001;104(16):1933–1939.
200. Drew BJ, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;121:1047.
201. Greenspon AJ, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;60(16):1540–1545.
202. Kremers MS, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2013;10(4):e59–65.
203. Bernstein AD, et al. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 2002;25:260.
204. Crossley GH, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2011;8:e1.
205. Healey JS, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59(4):394–407.
206. American SOA. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(2):247–261.
207. Fowkes FG, et al. *Lancet*. 2013;382(9901):1329–1340.
208. Creager MA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;59(3):294–357.
209. Golomb BA, et al. *Circulation*. 2006;114(7):688–699.
210. Doobay AV, Anand SS. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2005;25(7):1463–1469.
211. Fisher BW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(1):149–154.
212. Jørgensen ME, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;312(3):269–277.
213. Masoli M, et al. *Allergy*. 2004;59(5):469–478.
214. Warner DO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(3):460–467.
215. Silvanus MT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1052.
216. GBD CRDC. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2017;5(9):691–706.
217. Gupta N, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 2014;44(4):873–884.
218. Smetana GW, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;144:581.
219. Brunelli A, et al. *Chest*. 2013;143(suppl 5):e166S–e190S.
220. Young T, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328(17):1230–1235.
221. Peppard PE, et al. *Am J Epidemiol*. 2013;177(9):1006–1014.
222. Gottlieb DJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(24):2276–2285.
223. Chirinos JA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(24):2265–2275.
224. Araghi MH, et al. *Sleep*. 2013;36(10):1553–1562, 1562A.
225. Singh M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013.
226. Chung F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(5):768–775.
227. Chung F, et al. *Chest*. 2013;143(5):1284–1293.
228. Chung F, et al. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2014;10(9):951–958.
229. Opperer M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(5):1321–1334.
230. Lockhart EM, et al. *Sleep Med*. 2013;14(5):407–415.
231. Khanna AK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116(5):632–640.
232. Simonneau G, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;62(25 suppl):D34–41.
233. Kaw R, et al. *Respir Med*. 2011;105(4):619–624.
234. Lai HC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(2):184–190.
235. Ramakrishna G, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2005;45(10):1691–1699.
236. Brown LM, et al. *Chest*. 2011;140(1):19–26.
237. Musallam KM, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2013;148(8):755–762.
238. Turan A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(4):837–846.
239. Rigotti NA. *JAMA*. 2012;308(15):1573–1580.
240. A clinical practice guideline for treating tobacco use and dependence: 2008 update. A U.S. Public Health Service report. *Am J Prev Med*. 2008;35:158.
241. Stead LF, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;(5):CD000165.
242. Stead LF, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016:3:CD008286.
243. Shi Y, Warner DO. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(1):102–107.
244. Zaki A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2008;55:11.
245. Berlin NL, et al. *Am J Manag Care*. 2015;21(11):e623–e631.
246. Wong J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:755.
247. Lee SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(3):582–587.
248. Turan A, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35(4):256–265.
249. Mills E, et al. *Am J Med*. 2011;124(2):144–154.e8.
250. Wong J, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59(3):268–279.
251. Warner MA, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1989;64:609.
252. Myers K, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2011;171:983.
253. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, et al. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9743):773–783.
254. Tait AR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(2):299–306.
255. Rosenstein BJ, Cutting GR. *J Pediatr*. 1998;132(4):589–595.
256. Abbott TEF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(5):1066–1079.
257. Canet J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(6):1338–1350.
258. Yang CK, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2015;198(2):441–449.
259. Gupta H, et al. *Chest*. 2011;140(5):1207–1215.
260. Gupta H, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2013;88(11):1241–1249.
261. Mazo V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(2):219–231.
262. Katsura M, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;(10):CD010356.
263. Boden I, et al. *BMJ*. 2018;360:j5916.
264. Guay J, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;(1):CD010108.
265. Hausman MS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(6):1405–1412.
266. NCD Rfcncd-R. *Lancet*. 2016;387(10027):1513–1530.
267. American DA. *Diabetes Care*. 2014;37(suppl 1):S81–90.
268. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;297:1801.
269. Thakar CV, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2005;16:162.
270. Martin ET, et al. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2016;37(1):88–99.
271. Koumpan Y, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2014;61(5):407–416.
272. Moitra VK, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57:322.
273. Bock M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2015;32(3):152–159.
274. Excellence Nifhac. Routine preoperative tests for elective surgery NICE guideline [NG45]. 2016
275. Buchleitner AM, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;(9):CD007315.
276. Peacock SC, Lovshin JA. *Can J Anaesth*. 2018;65(2):143–147.
277. Handelsman Y, et al. *Endocr Pract*. 2016;22(6):753–762.
278. Weinberg AD, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 1983;143:893.
279. Komatsu R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(3):716–726.
280. Chernow B, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 1987;147(7):1273–1278.
281. Lamberts SW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337(18):1285–1292.
282. Cooper MS, Stewart PM. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348(8):727–734.
283. Deleted in proofs.
284. Liu MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(1):166–172.
285. Oelkers W. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;335(16):1206–1212.
286. Bornstein SR, et al. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2016;101(2):364–389.
287. Thakker RV, et al. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2012;97(9):2990–3011.
288. Beard CM, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1983;58(12):802–804.
289. Young WF. Clinical presentation and diagnosis of pheochromocytoma. In: Nieman LK, Martin KA, eds. *UpToDate*. Waltham, MA: UpToDate; 2017
290. Lenders JW, et al. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2014;99(6):1915–1942.
291. Weingarten TN, et al. *Urology*. 2010;76:508.
292. Levey AS, et al. *Kidney Int*. 2005;67(6):2089–2100.
293. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:65.
294. Cockcroft DW, Gault MH. *Nephron*. 1976;16(1):31–41.
295. Levey AS, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1999;130(6):461–470.
296. Levey AS, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2009;150:604.
297. Bellomo R, et al. *Crit Care*. 2004;8:R204.
298. Mehta RL, et al. *Crit Care*. 2007;11:R31.
299. Group KDIGOKDIGOAKIW. *Kidney Int Suppl*. 2012:21–138.

300. Singh AK, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;355:2085.
301. Chapter 3: Use of ESAs and other agents to treat anemia in CKD. *Kidney Int Suppl (2011)*. 2012;2(4):299–310.
302. Walsh M, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2015;26(10):2571–2577.
303. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:892.
304. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:505.
305. Vlisides P, Mashour GA. *Can J Anaesth*. 2016;63(2):193–204.
306. Lee A, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2007;(2):CD002765.
307. Mehta RH, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;124(suppl 11):S149–S155.
308. Giacoppo D, et al. *Circ Cardiovasc Interv*. 2015;8:e002475.
309. Weisbord SD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(7):603–614.
310. Pain JA, et al. *Br J Surg*. 1991;78:467.
311. Malinchoc M, et al. *Hepatology*. 2000;31:864.
312. Shirahatti RG, et al. *J R Coll Surg Edinb*. 1997;42:238.
313. Kabbany MN, et al. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2017;112(4):581–587.
314. Younossi ZM, et al. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2011;9(6):524–530.e1; quiz e60.
315. Cholankeril G, et al. *Dig Dis Sci*. 2017;62(10):2915–2922.
316. Schemel WH. *Anesth Analg*. 1976;55:810.
317. Befeler AS, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2005;140(7):650–654. discussion 655.
318. Fowler AJ, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2015;102(11):1314–1324.
319. Beattie WS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:574.
320. Voorn VM, et al. *Vox Sang*. 2016;111(3):219–225.
321. Froessler B, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2016;264(1):41–46.
322. Johansson PI, et al. *Vox Sang*. 2015;109(3):257–266.
323. Clevenger B, et al. *Eur J Heart Fail*. 2016;18(7):774–785.
324. Swedberg K, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(13):1210–1219.
325. Pfeffer MA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361(21):2019–2032.
326. Anker SD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361(25):2436–2448.
327. Kansagara D, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2013;159(11):746–757.
328. Carson JL, et al. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9034):1055–1060.
329. Marik PE, Corwin HL. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:2667.
330. Carson JL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365(26):2453–2462.
331. Mazer CD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377(22):2133–2144.
332. Goodnough LT, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(1):13–22.
333. American Soatfopbm. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(2):241–275.
334. Firth PG, Head CA. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:766.
335. Koshy M, et al. *Blood*. 1995;86:3676.
336. Howard J, et al. *Lancet*. 2013;381(9870):930–938.
337. Vichinsky EP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333:206.
338. Srivastava A, et al. *Haemophilia*. 2013;19(1):e1–47.
339. Hoots WK, Shapiro AD. Treatment of bleeding and perioperative management in hemophilia A and B. In: Mahoney DH, Leung LLK, Tirnauer JS, eds. *UpToDate*. Waltham, MA: UpToDate; 2017
340. Sadler JE, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 2000;84(2):160–174.
341. Warkentin TE, Kelton JG. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:1286.
342. Cuker A, et al. *Blood*. 2012;120(20):4160–4167.
343. Bernstein J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(1):165–167.
344. Goodier CG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(4):988–991.
345. van Veen JJ, et al. *Br J Haematol*. 2010;148(1):15–25.
346. Kaufman RM, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2015;162(3):205–213.
347. Lubarsky DA, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1991;3:99.
348. Anderson FA, et al. *Am J Hematol*. 2007;82(9):777–782.
349. Caprini JA, et al. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 1991;17(suppl):3304–3312.
350. Douketis JD, et al. *Chest*. 2012;141(suppl 2): e326Se350S.
351. Douketis JD, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2000;160(22):3431–3436.
352. Dahlbäck B. *Blood*. 2008;112(1):19–27.
353. Kearon C, Hirsh J. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;336:1506.
354. Liu SS, Mulroy MF. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1998;23(6 suppl 2):157–163.
355. Myles PS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;374(8):728–737.
356. Beving H, et al. *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis*. 1996;7(1):80–84.
357. Feigin VL, et al. *Neuroepidemiology*. 2015;45(3):161–176.
358. Easton JD, et al. *Stroke*. 2009;40(6):2276–2293.
359. Mashour GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1289.
360. Sharifpour M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(2):424–434.
361. Christiansen MN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(1):9–19.
362. Aries MJ, et al. *Stroke*. 2010;41(11):2697–2704.
363. Dodick DW, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2004;79:937.
364. Blacker DJ, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2004;79:223.
365. Walsh M, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2015;26(10):2571–2577.
366. Spector TD. *Rheum Dis Clin North Am*. 1990;16(3):513–537.
367. Tokunaga D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(4):675–679.
368. Ledingham J, Deighton C. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*. 2005;44(2):157–163.
369. Saag KG, et al. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2008;59(6):762–784.
370. Petri M. *Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol*. 2002;16(5):847–858.
371. Johnson SR, Granton JT. *Eur Respir Rev*. 2011;20(122):277–286.
372. Bernatsky S, et al. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2009;61(3):400–404.
373. Wigley FM. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347(13):1001–1008.
374. Ho NC, et al. *Lancet*. 2005;366(9501):1978–1981.
375. Adams MJ, et al. *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol*. 2003;45(1):55–75.
376. Ramage JK, et al. *Gut*. 2012;61(1):6–32.
377. Kinney MA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(3):447–452.
378. Boudreaux JP, et al. *Pancreas*. 2010;39(6):753–766.
379. Meyhoff CS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(3):787–792.
380. Kostopanagiotou G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:613.
381. Kostopanagiotou G, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2003;13:754.
382. Harper NJN, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018.
383. Mertes PM, et al. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2011;128(2):366–373.
384. Harper NJN, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018.
385. Lienhart A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:1087.
386. Florvaag E, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(4):437–444.
387. Hepner DL, Castells MC. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1219.
388. Holzman RS, Brown RH, Hamid R, et al. In *Natural Rubber Latex Allergy: Considerations for Anesthesiologists*. Park Ridge, Ill: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 2005.
389. Fisher MM, Rose M. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:486.
390. Collaborative Group on AIDS Incubation and HIV Survival Including the CASCADE EU Concerted Action. *Lancet*. 2000;355:1131.
391. Egger M, et al. *Lancet*. 2002;360:119.
392. Mofenson LM. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 1995;14:169.
393. Evron S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:503.
394. Günthard HF, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;316(2):191–210.
395. Friis-Moller N, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(17):1723–1735.
396. Albaran RG, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1998;133:626.
397. Tran HS, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2000;180:228.
398. Grant BF, et al. *JAMA Psychiatry*. 2015;72(8):757–766.
399. Jage J, Heid F. *Anaesthesist*. 2006;55:611.
400. Bradley KA, et al. *J Gen Intern Med*. 2011;26(2):162–169.
401. Harris AH, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2011;93(4):321–327.
402. Eliasen M, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2013;258(6):930–942.
403. Ewing JA. *JAMA*. 1984;252(14):1905–1907.
404. Bush K, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 1998;158(16):1789–1795.
405. Agabio R, et al. *J Stud Alcohol Drugs*. 2012;73(1):126–133.
406. Kleinwächter R, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2010;76(1):29–37.
407. Conigrave KM, et al. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res*. 2002;26(3):332–339.
408. Savage SR. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 1993;8:265.
409. Baxter JL, Alexandrov AW. *AANA J*. 2012;80(suppl 4):S33–S36.
410. Bryson EO, Frost EA. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2011;49:103.
411. Oppedal K, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;(7):CD008343.
412. May JA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(6):1601–1608.
413. Truog RD, et al. *Lancet*. 2005;365(9461):733–735.
414. Committee on Ethics ASOA. *Ethical Guidelines for the Anesthesia Care of Patients With Do-Not-Resuscitate Orders or Other Directives That Limit Treatment*; 2013.
415. Truog RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:289.
416. Grimaldo DA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:43.
417. Benarroch-Gampel J, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256:518.
418. Chung F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:467.
419. Schein OD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:168.
420. Johansson T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(6):926–939.
421. Kirkham KR, et al. *CMAJ*. 2015;187(11):E349–E358.
422. Kirkham KR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(4):804–814.
423. Chen CL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372(16):1530–1538.
424. Ontario Pre-Operative Task Force, Ontario Guidelines Advisory Committee: Ontario pre-operative testing grid. http://www.gacguidelines.ca/site/GAC_Guidelines/assets/docs/Projects_Preop_Grid.doc/. Accessed 24.02.14.
425. Ruetzler K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
426. Crawford MW, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:1058.
427. O'Leary JD, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60(1):54–59.
428. Joo HS, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:568.
429. Prause G, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42:316.
430. Saklad M. *Anesthesiology*. 1941;2:281.
431. Pearse RM, et al. *Lancet*. 2012;380:1059.
432. Sankar A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(3):424–432.
433. Koo CY, et al. *World J Surg*. 2015;39(1):88–103.
434. Cuvillon P, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28:742.
435. Haynes SR, Lawler PG. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50:195.
436. Owens WD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49:239.

437. Dalton JE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1336.
438. Noordzij PG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:1105.
439. Glance LG, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255(4):696–702.
440. Fleisher LA, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2004;139:67.
441. Majholm B, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56:323.
442. Warner MA, et al. *JAMA*. 1993;270:1437.
443. Nashef SA, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2012;41:734.
444. Shahian DM, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2018;105(5):1411–1418.
445. Moonesinghe SR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119(4):959–981.
446. Sutton R, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2002;89(6):763–768.
447. Cowie B. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:989.
448. Heiberg J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(9):1091–1100.
449. Guazzi M, et al. *Circulation*. 2016;133(24):e694–711.
450. Young EL, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2012;44(1):64–71.
451. Huddart S, et al. *Perioper Med (Lond)*. 2013;2(1):4.
452. Kroenke K, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 1992;152:967.
453. Kearney PM, et al. *BMJ*. 2006;332:1302.
454. Nussmeier NA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:1081.
455. Grady D, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2000;132:689.
456. Vandenbroucke JP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344(20):1527–1535.
457. Auerbach AD, et al. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2013;173(12):1075–1081.
458. Sajan F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(1):21–28.
459. Practice Guidelines for Preoperative Fasting and the Use of Pharmacologic Agents to Reduce the Risk of Pulmonary Aspiration: Application to Healthy Patients Undergoing Elective Procedures: An Updated Report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Preoperative Fasting and the Use of Pharmacologic Agents to Reduce the Risk of Pulmonary Aspiration. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(3):376–393.
460. Melzack R. *Pain*. 1975;1:277.
461. Gjeilo KH, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2007;34(6):648–656.
462. Lam E, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2007;54:852.
463. Shafer A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:1285.
464. Egbert LD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1964;270:825.
465. Block BM, et al. *JAMA*. 2003;290:2455.
466. Katz J, et al. *J Pain Res*. 2015;8:695–702.
467. Starsnic MA, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:299.
468. Katz RI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(4):830–836.
469. Pollard JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(6):1307–1311.
470. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;(4):CD004126.
471. Blitz JD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(2):280–294.
472. Hilditch WG, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58(9):874–877.
473. Vetter TR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(6):1453–1457.
474. Tsen LC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1134.
475. Salerno SM, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167:271.
476. Sharma G, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2010;170:363.
477. Grigoryan KV, et al. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2014;28(3):e49–55.
478. Auerbach AD, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2004;170:2010.
479. Huddleston JM, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;141:28.
480. Kammerlander C, et al. *Osteoporos Int*. 2010;21(suppl 4):S637–S646.
481. Rohatgi N, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2016;264(2):275–282.
482. Batsis JA, et al. *J Hosp Med*. 2007;2(4):219–225.
483. Macpherson DS, Lofgren RP. *Med Care*. 1994;32:498.
484. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2010;170:1365.
485. Auerbach AD, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167:2338.
486. Vazirani S, et al. *J Hosp Med*. 2012;7:697–701.
487. McIsaac DI, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2017;65(12):2665–2672.
488. Katz RI, et al. *Can J Anesth*. 2005;52:697.
489. Groot MW, et al. *Neth Heart J*. 2017;25(11):629–633.
490. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:25.
491. Thilen SR, et al. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2014;174(3):380–388.
492. Thilen SR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(5):1028–1037.
493. Seidel JE, et al. *BMC Health Serv Res*. 2006;6:13.
494. Strode SW, et al. *JAMA*. 1999;281:1066.
495. Wong DT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1605.
496. Down MP, et al. *Can J Anesth*. 1998;45:802.
497. Soltner C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:680.
498. van Klei WA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:620.
499. Harnett MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:66.
500. Vaghadia H, Fowler C. *Can J Anesth*. 1999;46:1117.
501. van Klei WA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59:971.
502. Edward GM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:322.
503. Hepner DL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1099.
504. Dexter F. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:925.

References

1. Kain ZN, Vakharia S, Garson L, et al. The perioperative surgical home as a future perioperative practice model. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(5):1126–1130.
2. Saidman LJ. The 33rd Rovenstine Lecture. What I have learned from 9 years and 9,000 papers. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(1):191–197.
3. Deutschman CS, Traber KB. Evolution of anesthesiology. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(1):1–3.
4. Etzioni DA, Liu JH, O'Connell JB, Maggard MA, Ko CY. Elderly patients in surgical workloads: a population-based analysis. *Am Surg*. 2003;69(11):961–965.
5. Apfelbaum JL, Connis RT, Nickinovich DG, et al. Practice advisory for preanesthesia evaluation: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Preanesthesia Evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):522–538.
6. De Hert S, Staender S, Fritsch G, et al. Pre-operative evaluation of adults undergoing elective noncardiac surgery: updated guideline from the European Society of Anaesthesiology. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35(6):407–465.
7. Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;130(24):e278–e333.
8. Duceppe E, Parlow J, MacDonald P, et al. Canadian Cardiovascular Society guidelines on perioperative cardiac risk assessment and management for patients who undergo noncardiac surgery. *Can J Cardiol*. 2017;33(1):17–32.
9. Kristensen SD, Knuuti J, Saraste A, et al. 2014 ESC/ESA Guidelines on non-cardiac surgery: cardiovascular assessment and management: the Joint Task Force on non-cardiac surgery: cardiovascular assessment and management of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and the European Society of Anaesthesiology (ESA). *Eur Heart J*. 2014;35(35):2383–2431.
10. Qaseem A, Snow V, Fitterman N, et al. Risk assessment for and strategies to reduce perioperative pulmonary complications for patients undergoing noncardiothoracic surgery: a guideline from the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;144(8):575–580.
11. Gould MK, Garcia DA, Wren SM, et al. Prevention of VTE in nonorthopedic surgical patients: antithrombotic therapy and prevention of thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. *Chest*. 2012;141(suppl 2):e227S–e277S.
12. Falck-Ytter Y, Francis CW, Johanson NA, et al. Prevention of VTE in orthopedic surgery patients: antithrombotic therapy and prevention of thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. *Chest*. 2012;141(suppl 2):e278S–e325S.
13. Kluger MT, Tham EJ, Coleman NA, Runciman WB, Bullock MF. Inadequate pre-operative evaluation and preparation: a review of 197 reports from the Australian incident monitoring study. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55(12):1173–1178.
14. Fischer SP. Development and effectiveness of an anesthesia preoperative evaluation clinic in a teaching hospital. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(1):196–206.
15. Issa MR, Isoni NF, Soares AM, Fernandes ML. Preanesthesia evaluation and reduction of preoperative care costs. *Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2011;61(1):60–71.
16. Power LM, Thackray NM. Reduction of preoperative investigations with the introduction of an anaesthetist-led preoperative assessment clinic. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1999;27(5):481–488.
17. Tsen LC, Segal S, Pothier M, Hartley LH, Bader AM. The effect of alterations in a preoperative assessment clinic on reducing the number and improving the yield of cardiology consultations. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(6):1563–1568; table of contents.
18. Klopfenstein CE, Forster A, Van Gessel E. Anesthetic assessment in an outpatient consultation clinic reduces preoperative anxiety. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47(6):511–515.
19. Wijeysundera DN, Austin PC, Beattie WS, Hux JE, Laupacis A. A population-based study of anesthesia consultation before major noncardiac surgery. *Arch Intern Med*. 2009;169(9):595–602.
20. Ferschl MB, Tung A, Sweitzer B, Huo D, Glick DB. Preoperative clinic visits reduce operating room cancellations and delays. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(4):855–859.
21. Pollard JB, Zboray AL, Mazze RI. Economic benefits attributed to opening a preoperative evaluation clinic for outpatients. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(2):407–410.
22. van Klei WA, Moons KG, Rutten CL, et al. The effect of outpatient preoperative evaluation of hospital inpatients on cancellation of surgery and length of hospital stay. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(3):644–649.
23. Ahmadian L, Cornet R, Kalkman C, de Keizer NF. Development of a national core dataset for preoperative assessment. *Methods Inf Med*. 2009;48(2):155–161.
24. Grant C, Ludbrook GL, O'Loughlin EJ, Corcoran TB. An analysis of computer-assisted pre-screening prior to elective surgery. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2012;40(2):297–304.
25. Flamm M, Fritsch G, Hysek M, et al. Quality improvement in preoperative assessment by implementation of an electronic decision support tool. *J Am Med Inform Assoc*. 2013;20(e1):e91–e96.
26. Simel DL, Rennie D. *The Rational Clinical Examination: Evidence-Based Clinical Diagnosis (JAMA & Archives Journals)*. McGraw-Hill Education / Medical; 2008.
27. Benjamin EJ, Virani SS, Callaway CW, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics-2018 update: a report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2018;137(12):e67–e492.
28. Hennis PJ, Meale PM, Grocott MP. Cardiopulmonary exercise testing for the evaluation of perioperative risk in non-cardiopulmonary surgery. *Postgrad Med J*. 2011;87(1030):550–557.
29. Moran J, Wilson F, Guinan E, McCormick P, Hussey J, Moriarty J. Role of cardiopulmonary exercise testing as a risk-assessment method in patients undergoing intra-abdominal surgery: a systematic review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116(2):177–191.
30. Carliner NH, Fisher ML, Plotnick GD, et al. Routine preoperative exercise testing in patients undergoing major noncardiac surgery. *Am J Cardiol*. 1985;56(1):51–58.
31. McPhail N, Calvin JE, Shariatmadar A, Barber GG, Scobie TK. The use of preoperative exercise testing to predict cardiac complications after arterial reconstruction. *J Vasc Surg*. 1988;7(1):60–68.
32. Bilimoria KY, Liu Y, Paruch JL, et al. Development and evaluation of the universal ACS NSQIP surgical risk calculator: a decision aid and informed consent tool for patients and surgeons. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;217(5):833–842.e1.
33. Gupta PK, Gupta H, Sundaram A, et al. Development and validation of a risk calculator for prediction of cardiac risk after surgery. *Circulation*. 2011;124(4):381–387.
34. Arozullah AM, Khuri SF, Henderson WG, Daley J. Development and validation of a multifactorial risk index for predicting postoperative pneumonia after major noncardiac surgery. *Ann Intern Med*. 2001;135(10):847–857.
35. Arozullah AM, Daley J, Henderson WG, Khuri SF. Multifactorial risk index for predicting postoperative respiratory failure in men after major noncardiac surgery. The National Veterans Administration Surgical Quality Improvement Program. *Ann Surg*. 2000;232(2):242–253.
36. Wijeysundera DN, Pearse RM, Shulman MA, et al. Assessment of functional capacity before major non-cardiac surgery. *Lancet*. 2018;391(10140):2631–2640.
37. Melon CC, Eshtiaghi P, Luksun WJ, Wijeysundera DN. Validated questionnaire vs physicians' judgment to estimate preoperative exercise capacity. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2014;174(9):1507–1508.
38. Stokes JW, Wanderer JP, McEvoy MD. Significant discrepancies exist between clinician assessment and patient self-assessment of functional capacity by validated scoring tools during preoperative evaluation. *Perioper Med (Lond)*. 2016;5:18.
39. Reilly DF, McNeely MJ, Doerner D, et al. Self-reported exercise tolerance and the risk of serious perioperative complications. *Arch Intern Med*. 1999;159(18):2185–2192.
40. Jaeschke R, Guyatt GH, Sackett DL. Users' guides to the medical literature. III. How to use an article about a diagnostic test. B. What are the results and will they help me in caring for my patients? The Evidence-Based Medicine Working Group. *JAMA*. 1994;271(9):703–707.
41. Wiklund RA, Stein HD, Rosenbaum SH. Activities of daily living and cardiovascular complications following elective, noncardiac surgery. *Yale J Biol Med*. 2001;74(2):75–87.
42. Hlatky MA, Boineau RE, Higginbotham MB, et al. A brief self-administered questionnaire to determine functional capacity (the Duke Activity Status Index). *Am J Cardiol*. 1989;64(10):651–654.

43. Struthers R, Erasmus P, Holmes K, Warman P, Collingwood A, Sneyd JR. Assessing fitness for surgery: a comparison of questionnaire, incremental shuttle walk, and cardiopulmonary exercise testing in general surgical patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101(6):774–780.
44. Moran J, Wilson F, Guinan E, McCormick P, Hussey J, Moriarty J. The preoperative use of field tests of exercise tolerance to predict postoperative outcome in intra-abdominal surgery: a systematic review. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016:35446–35455.
45. Benge W, Litchfield RL, Marcus ML. Exercise capacity in patients with severe left ventricular dysfunction. *Circulation*. 1980;61(5):955–959.
46. Franciosa JA, Park M, Levine TB. Lack of correlation between exercise capacity and indexes of resting left ventricular performance in heart failure. *Am J Cardiol*. 1981;47(1):33–39.
47. Pai MP, Paloucek FP. The origin of the “ideal” body weight equations. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2000;34(9):1066–1069.
48. Devine BJ. Gentamicin therapy. *Drug Intell Clin Pharm*. 1974:8650–8655.
49. Hartle A, McCormack T, Carlisle J, et al. The measurement of adult blood pressure and management of hypertension before elective surgery: Joint Guidelines from the Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland and the British Hypertension Society. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(3):326–337.
50. Apfelbaum JL, Hagberg CA, Caplan RA, et al. Practice guidelines for management of the difficult airway: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Management of the Difficult Airway. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(2):251–270.
51. Mallampati SR, Gatt SP, Gugino LD, et al. A clinical sign to predict difficult tracheal intubation: a prospective study. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1985;32(4):429–434.
52. Langeron O, Masso E, Huraux C, et al. Prediction of difficult mask ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(5):1229–1236.
53. Kheterpal S, Han R, Tremper KK, et al. Incidence and predictors of difficult and impossible mask ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(5):885–891.
54. Oresanya LB, Lyons WL, Finlayson E. Preoperative assessment of the older patient: a narrative review. *JAMA*. 2014;311(20):2110–2120.
55. Chow WB, Rosenthal RA, Merkow RP, et al. Optimal preoperative assessment of the geriatric surgical patient: a best practices guideline from the American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Program and the American Geriatrics Society. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2012;215(4):453–466.
56. Podsiadlo D, Richardson S. The timed “Up & Go”: a test of basic functional mobility for frail elderly persons. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1991;39(2):142–148.
57. Robinson TN, Wu DS, Sauaia A, et al. Slower walking speed forecasts increased postoperative morbidity and 1-year mortality across surgical specialties. *Ann Surg*. 2013;258(4):582–588; discussion 588.
58. Fried LP. Chapter 24 - Frailty. In: Medina-Walpole A, Pacala JT, Potter JF, eds. *Geriatric Review Syllabus*. New York: American Geriatrics Society; 2016.
59. Fried LP, Tangen CM, Walston J, et al. Frailty in older adults: evidence for a phenotype. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2001;56(3):M146–M156.
60. Mitnitski AB, Mogilner AJ, Rockwood K. Accumulation of deficits as a proxy measure of aging. *ScientificWorldJournal*. 2001:1323–1336.
61. Dasgupta M, Rolfson DB, Stolee P, Borrie MJ, Speechley M. Frailty is associated with postoperative complications in older adults with medical problems. *Arch Gerontol Geriatr*. 2009;48(1):78–83.
62. McIsaac DI, Bryson GL, van Walraven C. Association of frailty and 1-year postoperative mortality following major elective noncardiac surgery: a population-based cohort study. *JAMA Surg*. 2016;151(6):538–545.
63. McIsaac DI, Beaulé PE, Bryson GL, Van Walraven C. The impact of frailty on outcomes and healthcare resource usage after total joint arthroplasty: a population-based cohort study. *Bone Joint J*. 2016;98-B(6):799–805.
64. McIsaac DI, Moloo H, Bryson GL, van Walraven C. The association of frailty with outcomes and resource use after emergency general surgery: a population-based cohort study. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(5):1653–1661.
65. Ghignone F, van Leeuwen BL, Montroni I, et al. The assessment and management of older cancer patients: a SIOG surgical task force survey on surgeons’ attitudes. *Eur J Surg Oncol*. 2016;42(2):297–302.
66. Robinson TN, Eiseman B, Wallace JI, et al. Redefining geriatric preoperative assessment using frailty, disability and co-morbidity. *Ann Surg*. 2009;250(3):449–455.
67. Robinson TN, Wallace JI, Wu DS, et al. Accumulated frailty characteristics predict postoperative discharge institutionalization in the geriatric patient. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2011;213(1):37–42. discussion 42.
68. Charlson ME, Pompei P, Ales KL, MacKenzie CR. A new method of classifying prognostic comorbidity in longitudinal studies: development and validation. *J Chronic Dis*. 1987;40(5):373–383.
69. Rolfson DB, Majumdar SR, Tsuyuki RT, Tahir A, Rockwood K. Validity and reliability of the edmonton frail scale. *Age Ageing*. 2006;35(5):526–529.
70. Steffens DC, Fisher GG, Langa KM, Potter GG, Plassman BL. Prevalence of depression among older Americans: the aging, demographics and memory study. *Int Psychogeriatr*. 2009;21(5):879–888.
71. Blazer DG, Wu LT. The epidemiology of at-risk and binge drinking among middle-aged and elderly community adults: National Survey on Drug Use and Health. *Am J Psychiatry*. 2009;166(10):1162–1169.
72. Nath B, Li Y, Carroll JE, Szabo G, Tseng JF, Shah SA. Alcohol exposure as a risk factor for adverse outcomes in elective surgery. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2010;14(11):1732–1741.
73. Harari D, Hopper A, Dhesi J, Babic-Illman G, Lockwood L, Martin F. Proactive care of older people undergoing surgery (‘POPS’): designing, embedding, evaluating and funding a comprehensive geriatric assessment service for older elective surgical patients. *Age Ageing*. 2007;36(2):190–196.
74. McDonald SR, Heflin MT, Whitson HE, et al. Association of integrated care coordination with postsurgical outcomes in high-risk older adults: the Perioperative Optimization of Senior Health (POSH) initiative. *JAMA Surg*. 2018.
75. Englesbe MJ, Grenda DR, Sullivan JA, et al. The Michigan Surgical Home and Optimization Program is a scalable model to improve care and reduce costs. *Surgery*. 2017;161(6):1659–1666.
76. Sessums LL, Zembrzuska H, Jackson JL. Does this patient have medical decision-making capacity. *JAMA*. 2011;306(4):420–427.
77. Devereaux PJ, Chan MT, Alonso-Coello P, et al. Association between postoperative troponin levels and 30-day mortality among patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2012;307(21):2295–2304.
78. Devereaux PJ, Biccard BM, et al. Association of postoperative high-sensitivity troponin levels with myocardial injury and 30-day mortality among patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2017;317(16):1642–1651.
79. Gualandro DM, Yu PC, Caramelli B, et al. Guideline for perioperative cardiovascular evaluation of the Brazilian Society of Cardiology. *Arq Bras Cardiol*. 2017;109(3 suppl 1):1–104.
80. Kyo S, Imanaka K, Masuda M, et al. Guidelines for perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management for noncardiac surgery (JCS 2014) - digest version. *Circ J*. 2017;81(2):245–267.
81. Whelton PK, Carey RM, Aronow WS, et al. 2017 ACC/AHA/AAPA/ABC/ACPM/AGS/APhA/ASH/ASPC/NMA/PCNA Guideline for the Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Management of High Blood Pressure in Adults: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Hypertension*. 2017.
82. Muntner P, Carey RM, Gidding S, et al. Potential US population impact of the 2017 ACC/AHA high blood pressure guideline. *Circulation*. 2018;137(2):109–118.
83. Lewington S, Clarke R, Qizilbash N, Peto R, Collins R. Age-specific relevance of usual blood pressure to vascular mortality: a meta-analysis of individual data for one million adults in 61 prospective studies. *Lancet*. 2002;360(9349):1903–1913.
84. Howell SJ, Sear JW, Foex P. Hypertension, hypertensive heart disease and perioperative cardiac risk. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(4):570–583.
85. Rosenman DJ, McDonald FS, Ebbert JO, Erwin PJ, LaBella M, Montori VM. Clinical consequences of withholding versus administering renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system antagonists in the preoperative period. *J Hosp Med*. 2008;3(4):319–325.
86. Roshanov PS, Rochwerg B, Patel A, et al. Withholding versus continuing angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors or angiotensin II receptor blockers before noncardiac surgery: an analysis of the vascular events in noncardiac surgery patients cohort evaluation prospective cohort. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(1):16–27.

87. Lee SM, Takemoto S, Wallace AW. Association between withholding angiotensin receptor blockers in the early postoperative period and 30-day mortality: a cohort study of the veterans affairs healthcare system. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(2):288–306.
88. Mudumbai SC, Takemoto S, Cason BA, Au S, Upadhyay A, Wallace AW. Thirty-day mortality risk associated with the postoperative nonresumption of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors: a retrospective study of the veterans affairs healthcare system. *J Hosp Med*. 2014;9(5):289–296.
89. GBD MACODC. Global, regional, and national age-sex specific all-cause and cause-specific mortality for 240 causes of death, 1990-2013: a systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2013. *Lancet*. 2015;385(9963):117–171.
90. Ridker PM, Everett BM, Thuren T, et al. Antiinflammatory therapy with canakinumab for atherosclerotic disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377(12):1119–1131.
91. Eikelboom JW, Connolly SJ, Bosch J, et al. Rivaroxaban with or without aspirin in stable cardiovascular disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377(14):1319–1330.
92. Sabatine MS, Giugliano RP, Keech AC, et al. Evolocumab and clinical outcomes in patients with cardiovascular disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(18):1713–1722.
93. Windecker S, Stortecky S, Stefanini GG, et al. Revascularisation versus medical treatment in patients with stable coronary artery disease: network meta-analysis. *BMJ*. 2014:348:g3859.
94. Yusuf S, Zucker D, Peduzzi P, et al. Effect of coronary artery bypass graft surgery on survival: overview of 10-year results from randomised trials by the coronary artery bypass graft surgery trialists collaboration. *Lancet*. 1994;344(8922):563–570.
95. Head SJ, Milojevic M, Daemen J, et al. Mortality after coronary artery bypass grafting versus percutaneous coronary intervention with stenting for coronary artery disease: a pooled analysis of individual patient data. *Lancet*. 2018;391(10124):939–948.
96. Boden WE, O'Rourke RA, Teo KK, et al. Optimal medical therapy with or without PCI for stable coronary disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(15):1503–1516.
97. Lee TH, Marcantonio ER, Mangione CM, et al. Derivation and prospective validation of a simple index for prediction of cardiac risk of major noncardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 1999;100(10):1043–1049.
98. Botto F, Alonso-Coello P, Chan MT, et al. Myocardial injury after noncardiac surgery: a large, international, prospective cohort study establishing diagnostic criteria, characteristics, predictors, and 30-day outcomes. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(3):564–578.
99. Le Manach Y, Collins G, Rodseth R, et al. Preoperative score to predict postoperative mortality (POSPOM): derivation and validation. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(3):570–579.
100. van Klei WA, Bryson GL, Yang H, Kalkman CJ, Wells GA, Beattie WS. The value of routine preoperative electrocardiography in predicting myocardial infarction after noncardiac surgery. *Ann Surg*. 2007;246(2):165–170.
101. Musallam KM, Tamim HM, Richards T, et al. Preoperative anaemia and postoperative outcomes in non-cardiac surgery: a retrospective cohort study. *Lancet*. 2011;378(9800):1396–1407.
102. Wu WC, Schifftner TL, Henderson WG, et al. Preoperative hematocrit levels and postoperative outcomes in older patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2007;297(22):2481–2488.
103. Beattie WS, Wijeysundera DN, Karkouti K, et al. Acute surgical anemia influences the cardioprotective effects of beta-blockade: a single-center, propensity-matched cohort study. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(1):25–33.
104. Le Manach Y, Collins GS, Ibanez C, et al. Impact of perioperative bleeding on the protective effect of beta-blockers during infrarenal aortic reconstruction. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(6):1203–1211.
105. Livhits M, Ko CY, Leonardi MJ, Zingmond DS, Gibbons MM, de Virgilio C. Risk of surgery following recent myocardial infarction. *Ann Surg*. 2011;253(5):857–864.
106. Ford MK, Beattie WS, Wijeysundera DN. Systematic review: prediction of perioperative cardiac complications and mortality by the Revised Cardiac Risk Index. *Ann Intern Med*. 2010;152(1):26–35.
107. Liu JB, Liu Y, Cohen ME, Ko CY, Sweitzer BJ. Defining the intrinsic cardiac risks of operations to improve preoperative cardiac risk assessments. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(2):283–292.
108. Forshaw MJ, Strauss DC, Davies AR, et al. Is cardiopulmonary exercise testing a useful test before esophagectomy? *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85(1):294–299.
109. James S, Jhanji S, Smith A, O'Brien G, Fitzgibbon M, Pearse RM. Comparison of the prognostic accuracy of scoring systems, cardiopulmonary exercise testing, and plasma biomarkers: a single-centre observational pilot study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(3):491–497.
110. Balion C, Santaguida P, Hill S, et al. *Testing for BNP and NT-proBNP in the Diagnosis and Prognosis of Heart Failure. Evidence Report/Technology Assessment No. 142. (Prepared by the McMaster University Evidence-based Practice Center under Contract No. 290-02-0020). AHRQ Publication No. 06-E014*. Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality; 2006.
111. Rodseth RN, Biccard BM, Le Manach Y, et al. The prognostic value of pre-operative and post-operative B-type natriuretic peptides in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: B-type natriuretic peptide and N-terminal fragment of pro-B-type natriuretic peptide: a systematic review and individual patient data meta-analysis. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;63(2):170–180.
112. Lurati Buse GA, Schumacher P, Seeberger E, et al. Randomized comparison of sevoflurane versus propofol to reduce perioperative myocardial ischemia in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 2012;126(23):2696–2704.
113. Rajagopalan S, Croal BL, Reeve J, Bachoo P, Brittenden J. N-terminal pro-B-type natriuretic peptide is an independent predictor of all-cause mortality and MACE after major vascular surgery in medium-term follow-up. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2011;41(5):657–662.
114. de Lemos JA, Drazner MH, Omland T, et al. Association of troponin T detected with a highly sensitive assay and cardiac structure and mortality risk in the general population. *JAMA*. 2010;304(22):2503–2512.
115. deFilippi CR, de Lemos JA, Christenson RH, et al. Association of serial measures of cardiac troponin T using a sensitive assay with incident heart failure and cardiovascular mortality in older adults. *JAMA*. 2010;304(22):2494–2502.
116. Kavsak PA, Walsh M, Srinathan S, et al. High sensitivity troponin T concentrations in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a prospective cohort study. *Clin Biochem*. 2011;44(12):1021–1024.
117. Weber M, Luchner A, Seeberger M, et al. Incremental value of high-sensitive troponin T in addition to the revised cardiac index for peri-operative risk stratification in non-cardiac surgery. *Eur Heart J*. 2013;34(11):853–862.
118. Kopec M, Duma A, Helwani MA, et al. Improving prediction of postoperative myocardial infarction with high-sensitivity cardiac troponin T and NT-proBNP. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(2):398–405.
119. Nagele P, Brown F, Gage BF, et al. High-sensitivity cardiac troponin T in prediction and diagnosis of myocardial infarction and long-term mortality after noncardiac surgery. *Am Heart J*. 2013;166(2):325–332. e1.
120. Kertai MD, Boersma E, Bax JJ, et al. A meta-analysis comparing the prognostic accuracy of six diagnostic tests for predicting perioperative cardiac risk in patients undergoing major vascular surgery. *Heart*. 2003;89(11):1327–1334.
121. Beattie WS, Abdelnaem E, Wijeysundera DN, Buckley DN. A meta-analytic comparison of preoperative stress echocardiography and nuclear scintigraphy imaging. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(1):8–16.
122. Etchells E, Meade M, Tomlinson G, Cook D. Semiquantitative dipyridamole myocardial stress perfusion imaging for cardiac risk assessment before noncardiac vascular surgery: a meta-analysis. *J Vasc Surg*. 2002;36(3):534–540.
123. Miller JM, Rochitte CE, Dewey M, et al. Diagnostic performance of coronary angiography by 64-row CT. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;359(22):2324–2336.
124. Meijboom WB, Meijs MF, Schuijf JD, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of 64-slice computed tomography coronary angiography: a prospective, multicenter, multivendor study. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008;52(25):2135–2144.
125. Ahn JH, Park JR, Min JH, et al. Risk stratification using computed tomography coronary angiography in patients undergoing intermediate-risk noncardiac surgery. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;61(6):661–668.
126. Sheth T, Chan M, Butler C, et al. Prognostic capabilities of coronary computed tomographic angiography before non-cardiac surgery: prospective cohort study. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h1907.
127. Illuminati G, Ricco JB, Greco C, et al. Systematic preoperative coronary angiography and stenting improves postoperative results of carotid endarterectomy in patients with asymptomatic coronary artery disease: a randomised controlled trial. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2010;39(2):139–145.

128. Illuminati G, Schneider F, Greco C, et al. Long-term results of a randomized controlled trial analyzing the role of systematic pre-operative coronary angiography before elective carotid endarterectomy in patients with asymptomatic coronary artery disease. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2015;49(4):366–374.
129. Monaco M, Stassano P, Di Tommaso L, et al. Systematic strategy of prophylactic coronary angiography improves long-term outcome after major vascular surgery in medium- to high-risk patients: a prospective, randomized study. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2009;54(11):989–996.
130. McFalls EO, Ward HB, Moritz TE, et al. Coronary-artery revascularization before elective major vascular surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351(27):2795–2804.
131. Garcia S, Moritz TE, Ward HB, et al. Usefulness of revascularization of patients with multivessel coronary artery disease before elective vascular surgery for abdominal aortic and peripheral occlusive disease. *Am J Cardiol*. 2008;102(7):809–813.
132. Devereaux PJ, Yang H, Yusuf S, et al. Effects of extended-release metoprolol succinate in patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery (POISE trial): a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2008;371(9627):1839–1847.
133. Wijeysundera DN, Duncan D, Nkonde-Price C, et al. Perioperative beta blockade in noncardiac surgery: a systematic review for the 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;130(24):2246–2264.
134. Devereaux PJ, Sessler DI, Leslie K, et al. Clonidine in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(16):1504–1513.
135. Duncan D, Sankar A, Beattie WS, Wijeysundera DN. Alpha-2 adrenergic agonists for the prevention of cardiac complications among adults undergoing surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2018:3:CD004126.
136. Devereaux PJ, Mrkobrada M, Sessler DI, et al. Aspirin in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(16):1494–1503.
137. Mangano DT, Layug EL, Wallace A, Tateo I. Effect of atenolol on mortality and cardiovascular morbidity after noncardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;335(23):1713–1720.
138. Ellenberger C, Tait G, Beattie WS. Chronic beta blockade is associated with a better outcome after elective noncardiac surgery than acute beta blockade: a single-center propensity-matched cohort study. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(4):817–823.
139. Wijeysundera DN, Beattie WS, Wijeysundera HC, Yun L, Austin PC, Ko DT. Duration of preoperative β-blockade and outcomes after major elective noncardiac surgery. *Can J Cardiol*. 2014;30(2):217–223.
140. Chen RJ, Chu H, Tsai LW. Impact of beta-blocker initiation timing on mortality risk in patients with diabetes mellitus undergoing noncardiac surgery: a nationwide population-based cohort study. *J Am Heart Assoc*. 2017;6:1.
141. Biondi-Zoccai GG, Lotrionte M, Agostoni P, et al. A systematic review and meta-analysis on the hazards of discontinuing or not adhering to aspirin among 50,279 patients at risk for coronary artery disease. *Eur Heart J*. 2006;27(22):2667–2674.
142. Sheth T, Natarajan MK, Hsieh V, et al. Incidence of thrombosis in perioperative and non-operative myocardial infarction. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(4):725–733.
143. Helwani MA, Amin A, Lavigne P, et al. Etiology of acute coronary syndrome after noncardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(6):1084–1091.
144. Graham MM, Sessler DI, Parlow JL, et al. Aspirin in patients with previous percutaneous coronary intervention undergoing noncardiac surgery. *Ann Intern Med*. 2018;168(4):237–244.
145. Levine GN, Bates ER, Bittl JA, et al. 2016 ACC/AHA Guideline Focused Update on Duration of Dual Antiplatelet Therapy in Patients With Coronary Artery Disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines: an update of the 2011 ACCF/AHA/SCAI Guideline for Percutaneous Coronary Intervention, 2011 ACCF/AHA Guideline for Coronary Artery Bypass Graft Surgery, 2012 ACC/AHA/ACP/AATS/PCNA/SCAI/STS Guideline for the Diagnosis and Management of Patients With Stable Ischemic Heart Disease, 2013 ACCF/AHA Guideline for the Management of ST-Elevation Myocardial Infarction, 2014 AHA/ACC Guideline for the Management of Patients With Non-ST-Elevation Acute Coronary Syndromes, and 2014 ACC/AHA Guideline on Perioperative Cardiovascular Evaluation and Management of Patients Undergoing Noncardiac Surgery. *Circulation*. 2016;134(10):e123–e155.
146. Hawn MT, Graham LA, Richman JS, Itani KM, Henderson WG, Maddox TM. Risk of major adverse cardiac events following noncardiac surgery in patients with coronary stents. *JAMA*. 2013;310(14):1462–1472.
147. Wijeysundera DN, Wijeysundera HC, Yun L, et al. Risk of elective major noncardiac surgery after coronary stent insertion: a population-based study. *Circulation*. 2012;126(11):1355–1362.
148. Holcomb CN, Hollis RH, Graham LA, et al. Association of coronary stent indication with postoperative outcomes following noncardiac surgery. *JAMA Surg*. 2016;151(5):462–469.
149. Webster SE, Payne DA, Jones CI, et al. Anti-platelet effect of aspirin is substantially reduced after administration of heparin during carotid endarterectomy. *J Vasc Surg*. 2004;40(3):463–468.
150. Yancy CW, Jessup M, Bozkurt B, et al. 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of heart failure: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*. 2013;128(16):e240–e327.
151. McMurray JJ, Petrie MC, Murdoch DR, Davie AP. Clinical epidemiology of heart failure: public and private health burden. *Eur Heart J*. 1999;19 suppl P: P9-16.
152. Yancy CW, Jessup M, Bozkurt B, et al. 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of heart failure: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*. 2013;128(16):e240–e327.
153. Udelson JE. Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. *Circulation*. 2011;124(21):e540–e543.
154. Bhatia RS, Tu JV, Lee DS, et al. Outcome of heart failure with preserved ejection fraction in a population-based study. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;355(3):260–269.
155. Meta-analysis Global Group in Chronic Heart Failure MAGGIC. The survival of patients with heart failure with preserved or reduced left ventricular ejection fraction: an individual patient data meta-analysis. *Eur Heart J*. 2012;33(14):1750–1757.
156. Yancy CW, Jessup M, Bozkurt B, et al. 2017 ACC/AHA/HFSA Focused Update of the 2013 ACCF/AHA Guideline for the Management of Heart Failure: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines and the Heart Failure Society of America. *Circulation*. 2017;136(6):e137–e161.
157. Hammill BG, Curtis LH, Bennett-Guerrero E, et al. Impact of heart failure on patients undergoing major noncardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108(4):559–567.
158. Maile MD, Engoren MC, Tremper KK, Jewell E, Kheterpal S. Worsening preoperative heart failure is associated with mortality and noncardiac complications, but not myocardial infarction after noncardiac surgery: a retrospective cohort study. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(3):522–532.
159. Healy KO, Waksmonski CA, Altman RK, Stetson PD, Reyentovich A, Maurer MS. Perioperative outcome and long-term mortality for heart failure patients undergoing intermediate- and high-risk noncardiac surgery: impact of left ventricular ejection fraction. *Congest Heart Fail*. 2010;16(2):45–49.
160. Fayad A, Ansari MT, Yang H, Ruddy T, Wells GA. Perioperative diastolic dysfunction in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery is an independent risk factor for cardiovascular events: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(1):72–91.
161. Halm EA, Browner WS, Tubau JF, Tateo IM, Mangano DT. Echocardiography for assessing cardiac risk in patients having noncardiac surgery. *Ann Intern Med*. 1996;125(6):433–441.
162. Rohde LE, Polanczyk CA, Goldman L, Cook EF, Lee RT, Lee TH. Usefulness of transthoracic echocardiography as a tool for risk stratification of patients undergoing major noncardiac surgery. *Am J Cardiol*. 2001;87(5):505–509.
163. Xu-Cai YO, Brotman DJ, Phillips CO, et al. Outcomes of patients with stable heart failure undergoing elective noncardiac surgery. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2008;83(3):280–288.
164. Booth RA, Hill SA, Don-Wauchope A, et al. Performance of BNP and NT-proBNP for diagnosis of heart failure in primary care patients: a systematic review. *Heart Fail Rev*. 2014;19(4):439–451.

165. Hill SA, Booth RA, Santaguida PL, et al. Use of BNP and NT-proBNP for the diagnosis of heart failure in the emergency department: a systematic review of the evidence. *Heart Fail Rev*. 2014;19(4):421–438.
166. Khan NA, Campbell NR, Frost SD, et al. Risk of intraoperative hypotension with loop diuretics: a randomized controlled trial. *Am J Med*. 2010;123(11):1059.e1–1059.e8.
167. Nishimura RA, Otto CM, Bonow RO, et al. 2014 AHA/ACC Guideline for the Management of Patients With Valvular Heart Disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;129(23):e521–e643.
168. Coffey S, Cox B, Williams MJ. The prevalence, incidence, progression, and risks of aortic valve sclerosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;63(25 Pt A):2852–2861.
169. Etchells E, Glenns V, Shadowitz S, Bell C, Siu S. A bedside clinical prediction rule for detecting moderate or severe aortic stenosis. *J Gen Intern Med*. 1998;13(10):699–704.
170. Agarwal S, Rajamanickam A, Bajaj NS, et al. Impact of aortic stenosis on postoperative outcomes after noncardiac surgeries. *Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes*. 2013;6(2):193–200.
171. Tashiro T, Pislaru SV, Blustin JM, et al. Perioperative risk of major non-cardiac surgery in patients with severe aortic stenosis: a reappraisal in contemporary practice. *Eur Heart J*. 2014;35:2372–2381.
172. Vincentelli A, Susen S, Le Tourneau T, et al. Acquired von Willebrand syndrome in aortic stenosis. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349(4):343–349.
173. Nishimura RA, Otto CM, Bonow RO, et al. 2017 AHA/ACC Focused Update of the 2014 AHA/ACC Guideline for the Management of Patients With Valvular Heart Disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*. 2017;135(25):e1159–e1195.
174. Desjardins VA, Enriquez-Sarano M, Tajik AJ, Bailey KR, Seward JB. Intensity of murmurs correlates with severity of valvular regurgitation. *Am J Med*. 1996;100(2):149–156.
175. Choudhry NK, Etchells EE. The rational clinical examination. Does this patient have aortic regurgitation. *JAMA*. 1999;281(23):2231–2238.
176. Lai HC, Lee WL, Wang KY, Ting CT, Hung CJ, Liu TJ. Impact of chronic advanced aortic regurgitation on the perioperative outcome of noncardiac surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54(5):580–588.
177. Bajaj NS, Agarwal S, Rajamanickam A, et al. Impact of severe mitral regurgitation on postoperative outcomes after noncardiac surgery. *Am J Med*. 2013;126(6):529–535.
178. Bonow RO, Carabello BA, Chatterjee K, et al. 2008 focused update incorporated into the ACC/AHA 2006 guidelines for the management of patients with valvular heart disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to Revise the 1998 Guidelines for the Management of Patients With Valvular Heart Disease): endorsed by the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, and Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *Circulation*. 2008;118(15):e523–661.
179. Freed LA, Benjamin EJ, Levy D, et al. Mitral valve prolapse in the general population: the benign nature of echocardiographic features in the Framingham Heart Study. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2002;40(7):1298–1304.
180. The 2015 ESC Guidelines for the management of infective endocarditis. *Eur Heart J*. 2015;36(44):3036–3037.
181. Epstein AE, DiMarco JP, Ellenbogen KA, et al. 2012 ACCF/AHA/HRS focused update incorporated into the ACCF/AHA/HRS 2008 guidelines for device-based therapy of cardiac rhythm abnormalities: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines and the Heart Rhythm Society. *Circulation*. 2013;127(3):e283–e352.
182. Dorman T, Breslow MJ, Pronovost PJ, Rock P, Rosenfeld BA. Bundle-branch block as a risk factor in noncardiac surgery. *Arch Intern Med*. 2000;160(8):1149–1152.
183. Fahy GJ, Pinski SL, Miller DP, et al. Natural history of isolated bundle branch block. *Am J Cardiol*. 1996;77(14):1185–1190.
184. Eriksson P, Wilhelmsen L, Rosengren A. Bundle-branch block in middle-aged men: risk of complications and death over 28 years. The Primary Prevention Study in Göteborg, Sweden. *Eur Heart J*. 2005;26(21):2300–2306.
185. Hesse B, Diaz LA, Snader CE, Blackstone EH, Lauer MS. Complete bundle branch block as an independent predictor of all-cause mortality: report of 7,073 patients referred for nuclear exercise testing. *Am J Med*. 2001;110(4):253–259.
186. Zhang ZM, Rautaharju PM, Soliman EZ, et al. Mortality risk associated with bundle branch blocks and related repolarization abnormalities (from the Women's Health Initiative [WHI]). *Am J Cardiol*. 2012;110(10):1489–1495.
187. January CT, Wann LS, Alpert JS, et al. 2014 AHA/ACC/HRS guideline for the management of patients with atrial fibrillation: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines and the Heart Rhythm Society. *Circulation*. 2014;130(23):e199–e267.
188. Van Gelder IC, Hagens VE, Bosker HA, et al. A comparison of rate control and rhythm control in patients with recurrent persistent atrial fibrillation. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347(23):1834–1840.
189. Wyse DG, Waldo AL, DiMarco JP, et al. A comparison of rate control and rhythm control in patients with atrial fibrillation. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347(23):1825–1833.
190. Lip GY, Nieuwlaat R, Pisters R, Lane DA, Crijns HJ. Refining clinical risk stratification for predicting stroke and thromboembolism in atrial fibrillation using a novel risk factor-based approach: the euro heart survey on atrial fibrillation. *Chest*. 2010;137(2):263–272.
191. Friberg L, Rosenqvist M, Lip GY. Evaluation of risk stratification schemes for ischaemic stroke and bleeding in 182 678 patients with atrial fibrillation: the Swedish Atrial Fibrillation Cohort Study. *Eur Heart J*. 2012;33(12):1500–1510.
192. Hart RG, Pearce LA, Aguilar MI. Meta-analysis: antithrombotic therapy to prevent stroke in patients who have nonvalvular atrial fibrillation. *Ann Intern Med*. 2007;146(12):857–867.
193. McAlister FA, Jacka M, Graham M, et al. The prediction of postoperative stroke or death in patients with preoperative atrial fibrillation undergoing non-cardiac surgery: a VISION sub-study. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2015;13(10):1768–1775.
194. Kaatz S, Douketis JD, Zhou H, Gage BF, White RH. Risk of stroke after surgery in patients with and without chronic atrial fibrillation. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2010;8(5):884–890.
195. Doherty JU, Gluckman TJ, Hucker WJ, et al. 2017 ACC expert consensus decision pathway for periprocedural management of anticoagulation in patients with nonvalvular atrial fibrillation: a report of the American College of Cardiology Clinical Expert Consensus Document Task Force. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69(7):871–898.
196. Horlocker TT, Vandermeuelen E, Kopp SL, Gogarten W, Leffert LR, Benzon HT. Regional anesthesia in the patient receiving antithrombotic or thrombolytic therapy: American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine Evidence-Based Guidelines (fourth edition). *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(3):263–309.
197. Douketis JD, Spyropoulos AC, Anderson JM, et al. The Perioperative Anticoagulant Use for Surgery Evaluation (PAUSE) Study for patients on a direct oral anticoagulant who need an elective surgery or procedure: design and rationale. *Thromb Haemost*. 2017;117(12):2415–2424.
198. Douketis JD, Spyropoulos AC, Kaatz S, et al. Perioperative bridging anticoagulation in patients with atrial fibrillation. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373(9):823–833.
199. Glatter KA, Dorostkar PC, Yang Y, et al. Electrophysiological effects of ibutilide in patients with accessory pathways. *Circulation*. 2001;104(16):1933–1939.
200. Drew BJ, Ackerman MJ, Funk M, et al. Prevention of torsade de pointes in hospital settings: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association and the American College of Cardiology Foundation. *Circulation*. 2010;121(8):1047–1060.
201. Greenspon AJ, Patel JD, Lau E, et al. Trends in permanent pacemaker implantation in the United States from 1993 to 2009: increasing complexity of patients and procedures. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;60(16):1540–1545.
202. Kremers MS, Hammill SC, Berul CI, et al. The National ICD Registry Report: version 2.1 including leads and pediatrics for years 2010 and 2011. *Heart Rhythm*. 2013;10(4):e59–e65.
203. Bernstein AD, Daubert JC, Fletcher RD, et al. The revised NASPE/BPEG generic code for antibradycardia, adaptive-rate, and multisite pacing. North American Society of Pacing and Electrophysiology/British Pacing and Electrophysiology Group. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 2002;25(2):260–264.

204. Crossley GH, Poole JE, Rozner MA, et al. The Heart Rhythm Society (HRS)/American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Expert Consensus Statement on the perioperative management of patients with implantable defibrillators, pacemakers and arrhythmia monitors: facilities and patient management: executive summary this document was developed as a joint project with the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA), and in collaboration with the American Heart Association (AHA), and the Society of Thoracic Surgeons (STS). *Heart Rhythm*. 2011;8(7):e1–e18.
205. Healey JS, Merchant R, Simpson C, et al. Society position statement: Canadian Cardiovascular Society/Canadian Anesthesiologists' Society/Canadian Heart Rhythm Society joint position statement on the perioperative management of patients with implanted pacemakers, defibrillators, and neurostimulating devices. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59(4):394–407.
206. American SOA. Practice advisory for the perioperative management of patients with cardiac implantable electronic devices: pacemakers and implantable cardioverter-defibrillators: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Management of Patients with Cardiac Implantable Electronic Devices. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(2):247–261.
207. Fowkes FG, Rudan D, Rudan I, et al. Comparison of global estimates of prevalence and risk factors for peripheral artery disease in 2000 and 2010: a systematic review and analysis. *Lancet*. 2013;382(9901):1329–1340.
208. Creager MA, Belkin M, Bluth EI, et al. 2012 ACCF/AHA/ACR/SCAI/SIR/STS/SVM/SVN/SVS Key data elements and definitions for peripheral atherosclerotic vascular disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Data Standards (Writing Committee to develop Clinical Data Standards for peripheral atherosclerotic vascular disease). *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;59(3):294–357.
209. Golomb BA, Dang TT, Criqui MH. Peripheral arterial disease: morbidity and mortality implications. *Circulation*. 2006;114(7):688–699.
210. Doobay AV, Anand SS. Sensitivity and specificity of the ankle-brachial index to predict future cardiovascular outcomes: a systematic review. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2005;25(7):1463–1469.
211. Fisher BW, Ramsay G, Majumdar SR, et al. The ankle-to-arm blood pressure index predicts risk of cardiac complications after noncardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(1):149–154.
212. Jørgensen ME, Torp-Pedersen C, Gislason GH, et al. Time elapsed after ischemic stroke and risk of adverse cardiovascular events and mortality following elective noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2014;312(3):269–277.
213. Masoli M, Fabian D, Holt S, Beasley R. The global burden of asthma: executive summary of the GINA dissemination committee report. *Allergy*. 2004;59(5):469–478.
214. Warner DO, Warner MA, Barnes RD, et al. Perioperative respiratory complications in patients with asthma. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(3):460–467.
215. Silvanus MT, Groeben H, Peters J. Corticosteroids and inhaled salbutamol in patients with reversible airway obstruction markedly decrease the incidence of bronchospasm after tracheal intubation. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(5):1052–1057.
216. GBD CRDC. Global, regional, and national deaths, prevalence, disability-adjusted life years, and years lived with disability for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and asthma, 1990-2015: a systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2015. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2017;5(9):691–706.
217. Gupta N, Pinto LM, Morogan A, Bourbeau J. The COPD assessment test: a systematic review. *Eur Respir J*. 2014;44(4):873–884.
218. Smetana GW, Lawrence VA, Cornell JE. Preoperative pulmonary risk stratification for noncardiothoracic surgery: systematic review for the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;144(8):581–595.
219. Brunelli A, Kim AW, Berger KI, Addrizzo-Harris DJ. Physiologic evaluation of the patient with lung cancer being considered for resectional surgery: diagnosis and management of lung cancer, 3rd ed: American College of Chest Physicians evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. *Chest*. 2013;143(suppl 5):e166S–e190S.
220. Young T, Palta M, Dempsey J, Skatrud J, Weber S, Badr S. The occurrence of sleep-disordered breathing among middle-aged adults. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328(17):1230–1235.
221. Peppard PE, Young T, Barnet JH, Palta M, Hagen EW, Hla KM. Increased prevalence of sleep-disordered breathing in adults. *Am J Epidemiol*. 2013;177(9):1006–1014.
222. Gottlieb DJ, Punjabi NM, Mehra R, et al. CPAP versus oxygen in obstructive sleep apnea. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(24):2276–2285.
223. Chirinos JA, Gurubhagavatula I, Teff K, et al. CPAP, weight loss, or both for obstructive sleep apnea. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(24):2265–2275.
224. Araghi MH, Chen YF, Jagielski A, et al. Effectiveness of lifestyle interventions on obstructive sleep apnea (OSA): systematic review and meta-analysis. *Sleep*. 2013;36(10):1553–1562, 1562A.
225. Singh M, Liao P, Kobah S, Wijeysundera DN, Shapiro C, Chung F. Proportion of surgical patients with undiagnosed obstructive sleep apnoea. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013.
226. Chung F, Subramanyam R, Liao P, Sasaki E, Shapiro C, Sun Y. High STOP-Bang score indicates a high probability of obstructive sleep apnoea. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(5):768–775.
227. Chung F, Chau E, Yang Y, Liao P, Hall R, Mokhlesi B. Serum bicarbonate level improves specificity of STOP-Bang screening for obstructive sleep apnea. *Chest*. 2013;143(5):1284–1293.
228. Chung F, Yang Y, Brown R, Liao P. Alternative scoring models of STOP-bang questionnaire improve specificity to detect undiagnosed obstructive sleep apnea. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2014;10(9):951–958.
229. Opperer M, Cozowicz C, Bugada D, et al. Does obstructive sleep apnea influence perioperative outcome? A qualitative systematic review for the society of anesthesia and sleep medicine task force on preoperative preparation of patients with sleep-disordered breathing. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(5):1321–1334.
230. Lockhart EM, Willingham MD, Abdallah AB, et al. Obstructive sleep apnea screening and postoperative mortality in a large surgical cohort. *Sleep Med*. 2013;14(5):407–415.
231. Khanna AK, Sessler DI, Sun Z, et al. Using the STOP-BANG questionnaire to predict hypoxaemia in patients recovering from noncardiac surgery: a prospective cohort analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116(5):632–640.
232. Simonneau G, Gatzoulis MA, Adatia I, et al. Updated clinical classification of pulmonary hypertension. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;62(25 suppl):D34–41.
233. Kaw R, Pasupuleti V, Deshpande A, Hamieh T, Walker E, Minai OA. Pulmonary hypertension: an important predictor of outcomes in patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery. *Respir Med*. 2011;105(4):619–624.
234. Lai HC, Wang KY, Lee WL, Ting CT, Liu TJ. Severe pulmonary hypertension complicates postoperative outcome of non-cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(2):184–190.
235. Ramakrishna G, Sprung J, Ravi BS, Chandrasekaran K, McGoon MD. Impact of pulmonary hypertension on the outcomes of noncardiac surgery: predictors of perioperative morbidity and mortality. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2005;45(10):1691–1699.
236. Brown LM, Chen H, Halpern S, et al. Delay in recognition of pulmonary arterial hypertension: factors identified from the REVEAL Registry. *Chest*. 2011;140(1):19–26.
237. Musallam KM, Rosendaal FR, Zaatari G, et al. Smoking and the risk of mortality and vascular and respiratory events in patients undergoing major surgery. *JAMA Surg*. 2013;148(8):755–762.
238. Turan A, Mascha EJ, Roberman D, et al. Smoking and perioperative outcomes. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(4):837–846.
239. Rigotti NA. Strategies to help a smoker who is struggling to quit. *JAMA*. 2012;308(15):1573–1580.
240. A clinical practice guideline for treating tobacco use and dependence: 2008 update. A U.S. Public Health Service report. *Am J Prev Med*. 2008;35(2):158–176.
241. Stead LF, Buitrago D, Preciado N, Sanchez G, Hartmann-Boyce J, Lancaster T. Physician advice for smoking cessation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;(5):CD000165.
242. Stead LF, Koilpillai P, Fanshawe TR, Lancaster T. Combined pharmacotherapy and behavioural interventions for smoking cessation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016:3:CD008286.
243. Shi Y, Warner DO. Surgery as a teachable moment for smoking cessation. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(1):102–107.
244. Zaki A, Abrishami A, Wong J, Chung FF. Interventions in the preoperative clinic for long term smoking cessation: a quantitative systematic review. *Can J Anaesth*. 2008;55(1):11–21.

245. Berlin NL, Cutter C, Battaglia C. Will preoperative smoking cessation programs generate long-term cessation? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Manag Care*. 2015;21(11):e623–e631.
246. Wong J, Abrishami A, Yang Y, et al. A perioperative smoking cessation intervention with varenicline: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(4):755–764.
247. Lee SM, Landry J, Jones PM, Buhrmann O, Morley-Forster P. Long-term quit rates after a perioperative smoking cessation randomized controlled trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(3):582–587.
248. Turan A, Koyuncu O, Egan C, et al. Effect of various durations of smoking cessation on postoperative outcomes: a retrospective cohort analysis. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35(4):256–265.
249. Mills E, Eyawo O, Lockhart I, Kelly S, Wu P, Ebbert JO. Smoking cessation reduces postoperative complications: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Med*. 2011;124(2):144–154.e8.
250. Wong J, Lam DP, Abrishami A, Chan MT, Chung F. Short-term preoperative smoking cessation and postoperative complications: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59(3):268–279.
251. Warner MA, Offord KP, Warner ME, Lennon RL, Conover MA, Jansson-Schumacher U. Role of preoperative cessation of smoking and other factors in postoperative pulmonary complications: a blinded prospective study of coronary artery bypass patients. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1989;64(6):609–616.
252. Myers K, Hajek P, Hinds C, McRobbie H. Stopping smoking shortly before surgery and postoperative complications: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Arch Intern Med*. 2011;171(11):983–989.
253. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, Boda K, Chambers NA, et al. Risk assessment for respiratory complications in paediatric anaesthesia: a prospective cohort study. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9743):773–783.
254. Tait AR, Malviya S, Voepel-Lewis T, Munro HM, Seiwert M, Pandit UA. Risk factors for perioperative adverse respiratory events in children with upper respiratory tract infections. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(2):299–306.
255. Rosenstein BJ, Cutting GR. The diagnosis of cystic fibrosis: a consensus statement. Cystic Fibrosis Foundation Consensus Panel. *J Pediatr*. 1998;132(4):589–595.
256. Abbott TEF, Fowler AJ, Pelosi P, et al. A systematic review and consensus definitions for standardised end-points in perioperative medicine: pulmonary complications. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(5):1066–1079.
257. Canet J, Gallart L, Gomar C, et al. Prediction of postoperative pulmonary complications in a population-based surgical cohort. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(6):1338–1350.
258. Yang CK, Teng A, Lee DY, Rose K. Pulmonary complications after major abdominal surgery: National Surgical Quality Improvement Program analysis. *J Surg Res*. 2015;198(2):441–449.
259. Gupta H, Gupta PK, Fang X, et al. Development and validation of a risk calculator predicting postoperative respiratory failure. *Chest*. 2011;140(5):1207–1215.
260. Gupta H, Gupta PK, Schuller D, et al. Development and validation of a risk calculator for predicting postoperative pneumonia. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2013;88(11):1241–1249.
261. Mazo V, Sabaté S, Canet J, et al. Prospective external validation of a predictive score for postoperative pulmonary complications. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(2):219–231.
262. Katsura M, Kuriyama A, Takeshima T, Fukuhara S, Furukawa TA. Preoperative inspiratory muscle training for postoperative pulmonary complications in adults undergoing cardiac and major abdominal surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;(10):CD010356.
263. Boden I, Skinner EH, Browning L, et al. Preoperative physiotherapy for the prevention of respiratory complications after upper abdominal surgery: pragmatic, double blinded, multicentre randomised controlled trial. *BMJ*. 2018:360j:5916.
264. Guay J, Choi P, Suresh S, Albert N, Kopp S, Pace NL. Neuraxial blockade for the prevention of postoperative mortality and major morbidity: an overview of Cochrane systematic reviews. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;(1):CD010108.
265. Hausman MS, Jewell ES, Engoren M. Regional versus general anesthesia in surgical patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: does avoiding general anesthesia reduce the risk of postoperative complications. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(6):1405–1412.
266. NCD Rfcncd-R. Worldwide trends in diabetes since 1980: a pooled analysis of 751 population-based studies with 4.4 million participants. *Lancet*. 2016;387(10027):1513–1530.
267. American DA. Diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Care*. 2014;37(suppl):1S81–90.
268. Wijeysundera DN, Karkouti K, Dupuis JY, et al. Derivation and validation of a simplified predictive index for renal replacement therapy after cardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2007;297(16):1801–1809.
269. Thakar CV, Arrigain S, Worley S, Yared JP, Paganini EP. A clinical score to predict acute renal failure after cardiac surgery. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2005;16(1):162–168.
270. Martin ET, Kaye KS, Knott C, et al. Diabetes and risk of surgical site infection: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2016;37(1):88–99.
271. Koumpan Y, VanDenKerkhof E, van Vlymen J. An observational cohort study to assess glycosylated hemoglobin screening for elective surgical patients. *Can J Anaesth*. 2014;61(5):407–416.
272. Moitra VK, Greenberg J, Arunajadai S, Sweitzer B. The relationship between glycosylated hemoglobin and perioperative glucose control in patients with diabetes. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57(4): 322–329.
273. Bock M, Johansson T, Fritsch G, et al. The impact of preoperative testing for blood glucose concentration and haemoglobin A1c on mortality, changes in management and complications in noncardiac elective surgery: a systematic review. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2015;32(3):152–159.
274. Excellence Nifhac. Routine preoperative tests for elective surgery NICE guideline [NG45]. 2016
275. Buchleitner AM, Martínez-Alonso M, Hernández M, Solà I, Mauricio D. Perioperative glycaemic control for diabetic patients undergoing surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;(9):CD007315.
276. Peacock SC, Lovshin JA. Sodium-glucose cotransporter-2 inhibitors (SGLT-2i) in the perioperative setting. *Can J Anaesth*. 2018;65(2):143–147.
277. Handelsman Y, Henry RR, Bloomgarden ZT, et al. American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American College of Endocrinology position statement on the association of SGLT-2 inhibitors and diabetic ketoacidosis. *Endocr Pract*. 2016;22(6):753–762.
278. Weinberg AD, Brennan MD, Gorman CA, Marsh HM, O'Fallon WM. Outcome of anesthesia and surgery in hypothyroid patients. *Arch Intern Med*. 1983;143(5):893–897.
279. Komatsu R, You J, Mascha EJ, Sessler DI, Kasuya Y, Turan A. The effect of hypothyroidism on a composite of mortality, cardiovascular and wound complications after noncardiac surgery: a retrospective cohort analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(3):716–726.
280. Chernow B, Alexander HR, Smallridge RC, et al. Hormonal responses to graded surgical stress. *Arch Intern Med*. 1987;147(7):1273–1278.
281. Lamberts SW, Bruining HA, de Jong FH. Corticosteroid therapy in severe illness. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337(18):1285–1292.
282. Cooper MS, Stewart PM. Corticosteroid insufficiency in acutely ill patients. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348(8):727–734.
283. Deleted in proofs.
284. Liu MM, Reidy AB, Saatee S, Collard CD. Perioperative steroid management: approaches based on current evidence. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(1):166–172.
285. Oelkers W. Adrenal insufficiency. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;335(16):1206–1212.
286. Bornstein SR, Allolio B, Arlt W, et al. Diagnosis and treatment of primary adrenal insufficiency: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2016;101(2):364–389.
287. Thakker RV, Newey PJ, Walls GV, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 (MEN1). *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2012;97(9):2990–3011.
288. Beard CM, Sheps SG, Kurland LT, Carney JA, Lie JT. Occurrence of pheochromocytoma in Rochester, Minnesota, 1950 through 1979. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1983;58(12):802–804.
289. Young WF. Clinical presentation and diagnosis of pheochromocytoma. In: Nieman LK, Martin KA, eds. *UpToDate*. Waltham, MA: UpToDate; 2017
290. Lenders JW, Duh QY, Eisenhofer G, et al. Pheochromocytoma and paraganglioma: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2014;99(6):1915–1942.
291. Weingarten TN, Cata JP, O'Hara JF, et al. Comparison of two preoperative medical management strategies for laparoscopic resection of pheochromocytoma. *Urology*. 2010;76(2); 508.e6–e11.

292. Levey AS, Eckardt KU, Tsukamoto Y, et al. Definition and classification of chronic kidney disease: a position statement from Kidney Disease: Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO). *Kidney Int*. 2005;67(6):2089–2100.
293. Wijeysundera DN, Karkouti K, Beattie WS, Rao V, Ivanov J. Improving the identification of patients at risk of postoperative renal failure after cardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(1):65–72.
294. Cockcroft DW, Gault MH. Prediction of creatinine clearance from serum creatinine. *Nephron*. 1976;16(1):31–41.
295. Levey AS, Bosch JP, Lewis JB, Greene T, Rogers N, Roth D. A more accurate method to estimate glomerular filtration rate from serum creatinine: a new prediction equation. Modification of Diet in Renal Disease Study Group. *Ann Intern Med*. 1999;130(6):461–470.
296. Levey AS, Stevens LA, Schmid CH, et al. A new equation to estimate glomerular filtration rate. *Ann Intern Med*. 2009;150(9):604–612.
297. Bellomo R, Ronco C, Kellum JA, Mehta RL, Palevsky P. Acute renal failure - definition, outcome measures, animal models, fluid therapy and information technology needs: the Second International Consensus Conference of the Acute Dialysis Quality Initiative (ADQI) Group. *Crit Care*. 2004;8(4):R204–R212.
298. Mehta RL, Kellum JA, Shah SV, et al. Acute kidney injury network: report of an initiative to improve outcomes in acute kidney injury. *Crit Care*. 2007;11(2):R31.
299. Group KDIGOKDIGOAKIW. KDIGO clinical practice guideline for acute kidney injury. *Kidney Int Suppl*. 2012:21–138.
300. Singh AK, Szczech L, Tang KL, et al. Correction of anemia with epoetin alfa in chronic kidney disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;355(20):2085–2098.
301. Chapter 3: Use of ESAs and other agents to treat anemia in CKD. *Kidney Int Suppl (2011)*. 2012;2(4):299–310.
302. Walsh M, Wang CY, Ong GS, et al. Kidney function alters the relationship between postoperative troponin T level and death. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2015;26(10):2571–2577.
303. Kheterpal S, Tremper KK, Englesbe MJ, et al. Predictors of postoperative acute renal failure after noncardiac surgery in patients with previously normal renal function. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(6):892–902.
304. Kheterpal S, Tremper KK, Heung M, et al. Development and validation of an acute kidney injury risk index for patients undergoing general surgery: results from a national data set. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(3):505–515.
305. Vlisides P, Mashour GA. Perioperative stroke. *Can J Anaesth*. 2016;63(2):193–204.
306. Lee A, Cooper MG, Craig JC, Knight JF, Keneally JP. Effects of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs on postoperative renal function in adults with normal renal function. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2007;(2):CD002765.
307. Mehta RH, Honeycutt E, Patel UD, et al. Relationship of the time interval between cardiac catheterization and elective coronary artery bypass surgery with postprocedural acute kidney injury. *Circulation*. 2011;124(suppl 11):S149–S155.
308. Giacoppo D, Madhavan MV, Baber U, et al. Impact of contrast-induced acute kidney injury after percutaneous coronary intervention on short- and long-term outcomes: pooled analysis from the HORIZONS-AMI and ACUITY trials. *Circ Cardiovasc Interv*. 2015;8:e002475.
309. Weisbord SD, Gallagher M, Jneid H, et al. Outcomes after angiography with sodium bicarbonate and acetylcysteine. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(7):603–614.
310. Pain JA, Cahill CJ, Gilbert JM, Johnson CD, Trapnell JE, Bailey ME. Prevention of postoperative renal dysfunction in patients with obstructive jaundice: a multicentre study of bile salts and lactulose. *Br J Surg*. 1991;78(4):467–469.
311. Malinchoc M, Kamath PS, Gordon FD, Peine CJ, Rank J, ter Borg PC. A model to predict poor survival in patients undergoing transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts. *Hepatology*. 2000;31(4):864–871.
312. Shirahatti RG, Alphonso N, Joshi RM, Prasad KV, Wagle PK. Palliative surgery in malignant obstructive jaundice: prognostic indicators of early mortality. *J R Coll Surg Edinb*. 1997;42(4):238–243.
313. Kabbany MN, Conjeevaram Selvakumar PK, Watt K, et al. Prevalence of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis-associated cirrhosis in the united states: an analysis of national health and nutrition examination survey data. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2017;112(4):581–587.
314. Younossi ZM, Stepanova M, Afendy M, et al. Changes in the prevalence of the most common causes of chronic liver diseases in the United States from 1988 to 2008. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2011;9(6):524–530.e1; quiz e60.
315. Cholankeril G, Wong RJ, Hu M, et al. Liver transplantation for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis in the US: temporal trends and outcomes. *Dig Dis Sci*. 2017;62(10):2915–2922.
316. Schemel WH. Unexpected hepatic dysfunction found by multiple laboratory screening. *Anesth Analg*. 1976;55(6):810–812.
317. Befeler AS, Palmer DE, Hoffman M, Longo W, Solomon H, Di Bisceglie AM. The safety of intra-abdominal surgery in patients with cirrhosis: model for end-stage liver disease score is superior to Child-Turcotte-Pugh classification in predicting outcome. *Arch Surg*. 2005;140(7):650–654; discussion 655.
318. Fowler AJ, Ahmad T, Phull MK, Allard S, Gillies MA, Pearse RM. Meta-analysis of the association between preoperative anaemia and mortality after surgery. *Br J Surg*. 2015;102(11):1314–1324.
319. Beattie WS, Karkouti K, Wijeysundera DN, Tait G. Risk associated with preoperative anemia in noncardiac surgery: a single-center cohort study. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(3):574–581.
320. Voorn VM, van der Hout A, So-Osman C, et al. Erythropoietin to reduce allogeneic red blood cell transfusion in patients undergoing total hip or knee arthroplasty. *Vox Sang*. 2016;111(3):219–225.
321. Froessler B, Palm P, Weber I, Hodyl NA, Singh R, Murphy EM. The important role for intravenous iron in perioperative patient blood management in major abdominal surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *Ann Surg*. 2016;264(1):41–46.
322. Johansson PI, Rasmussen AS, Thomsen LL. Intravenous iron isomaltoside 1000 (Monofer®) reduces postoperative anaemia in preoperatively non-anaemic patients undergoing elective or subacute coronary artery bypass graft, valve replacement or a combination thereof: a randomized double-blind placebo-controlled clinical trial (the PROTECT trial). *Vox Sang*. 2015;109(3):257–266.
323. Clevenger B, Gurusamy K, Klein AA, Murphy GJ, Anker SD, Richards T. Systematic review and meta-analysis of iron therapy in anaemic adults without chronic kidney disease: updated and abridged Cochrane review. *Eur J Heart Fail*. 2016;18(7):774–785.
324. Swedberg K, Young JB, Anand IS, et al. Treatment of anemia with darbepoetin alfa in systolic heart failure. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(13):1210–1219.
325. Pfeffer MA, Burdmann EA, Chen CY, et al. A trial of darbepoetin alfa in type 2 diabetes and chronic kidney disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361(21):2019–2032.
326. Anker SD, Comin Colet J, Filippatos G, et al. Ferric carboxymaltose in patients with heart failure and iron deficiency. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361(25):2436–2448.
327. Kansagara D, Dyer E, Englander H, Fu R, Freeman M, Kagen D. Treatment of anemia in patients with heart disease: a systematic review. *Ann Intern Med*. 2013;159(11):746–757.
328. Carson JL, Duff A, Poses RM, et al. Effect of anaemia and cardiovascular disease on surgical mortality and morbidity. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9034):1055–1060.
329. Marik PE, Corwin HL. Efficacy of red blood cell transfusion in the critically ill: a systematic review of the literature. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36(9):2667–2674.
330. Carson JL, Terrin ML, Noveck H, et al. Liberal or restrictive transfusion in high-risk patients after hip surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365(26):2453–2462.
331. Mazer CD, Whitlock RP, Fergusson DA, et al. Restrictive or liberal red-cell transfusion for cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377(22):2133–2144.
332. Goodnough LT, Maniatis A, Earnshaw P, et al. Detection, evaluation, and management of preoperative anaemia in the elective orthopaedic surgical patient: NATA guidelines. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(1):13–22.
333. American SOATFOPBM. Practice guidelines for perioperative blood management: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Management*. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(2):241–275.
334. Firth PG, Head CA. Sickle cell disease and anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(3):766–785.
335. Koshy M, Weiner SJ, Miller ST, et al. Surgery and anesthesia in sickle cell disease. Cooperative study of sickle cell diseases. *Blood*. 1995;86(10):3676–3684.

336. Howard J, Malfroy M, Llewelyn C, et al. The Transfusion Alternatives Preoperatively in Sickle Cell Disease (TAPS) study: a randomised, controlled, multicentre clinical trial. *Lancet*. 2013;381(9870):930–938.
337. Vichinsky EP, Haberkern CM, Neumayr L, et al. A comparison of conservative and aggressive transfusion regimens in the perioperative management of sickle cell disease. The Preoperative Transfusion in Sickle Cell Disease Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333(4):206–213.
338. Srivastava A, Brewer AK, Mauser-Bunschoten EP, et al. Guidelines for the management of hemophilia. *Haemophilia*. 2013;19(1):e1–e47.
339. Hoots WK, Shapiro AD. Treatment of bleeding and perioperative management in hemophilia A and B. In: Mahoney DH, Leung LLK, Tirnauer JS, eds. *UpToDate*. Waltham, MA: UpToDate; 2017
340. Sadler JE, Mannucci PM, Berntorp E, et al. Impact, diagnosis and treatment of von Willebrand disease. *Thromb Haemost*. 2000;84(2):160–174.
341. Warkentin TE, Kelton JG. Temporal aspects of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344(17):1286–1292.
342. Cuker A, Gimotty PA, Crowther MA, Warkentin TE. Predictive value of the 4Ts scoring system for heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Blood*. 2012;120(20):4160–4167.
343. Bernstein J, Hua B, Kahana M, Shaparin N, Yu S, Davila-Velazquez J. Neuraxial anesthesia in parturients with low platelet counts. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(1):165–167.
344. Goodier CG, Lu JT, Hebbar L, Segal BS, Goetzl L. Neuraxial anesthesia in parturients with thrombocytopenia: a multisite retrospective cohort study. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(4):988–991.
345. van Veen JJ, Nokes TJ, Makris M. The risk of spinal haematoma following neuraxial anaesthesia or lumbar puncture in thrombocytopenic individuals. *Br J Haematol*. 2010;148(1):15–25.
346. Kaufman RM, Djulbegovic B, Gernsheimer T, et al. Platelet transfusion: a clinical practice guideline from the AABB. *Ann Intern Med*. 2015;162(3):205–213.
347. Lubarsky DA, Gallagher CJ, Berend JL. Secondary polycythemia does not increase the risk of perioperative hemorrhagic or thrombotic complications. *J Clin Anesth*. 1991;3(2):99–103.
348. Anderson FA, Zayaruzny M, Heit JA, Fidan D, Cohen AT. Estimated annual numbers of US acute-care hospital patients at risk for venous thromboembolism. *Am J Hematol*. 2007;82(9):777–782.
349. Caprini JA, Arcelus JI, Hasty JH, Tamhane AC, Fabrega F. Clinical assessment of venous thromboembolic risk in surgical patients. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 1991;17(suppl):3304–3312.
350. Douketis JD, Spyropoulos AC, Spencer FA, et al. Perioperative management of antithrombotic therapy: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based clinical practice guidelines. *Chest*. 2012;141(suppl 2):e326Se350S.
351. Douketis JD, Foster GA, Crowther MA, Prins MH, Ginsberg JS. Clinical risk factors and timing of recurrent venous thromboembolism during the initial 3 months of anticoagulant therapy. *Arch Intern Med*. 2000;160(22):3431–3436.
352. Dahlbäck B. Advances in understanding pathogenic mechanisms of thrombophilic disorders. *Blood*. 2008;112(1):19–27.
353. Kearon C, Hirsh J. Management of anticoagulation before and after elective surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;336(21):1506–1511.
354. Liu SS, Mulroy MF. Neuraxial anesthesia and analgesia in the presence of standard heparin. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1998;23(6 suppl 2):157–163.
355. Myles PS, Smith JA, Forbes A, et al. Stopping vs. continuing aspirin before coronary artery surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;374(8):728–737.
356. Beving H, Zhao C, Albage A, Ivert T. Abnormally high platelet activity after discontinuation of acetylsalicylic acid treatment. *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis*. 1996;7(1):80–84.
357. Feigin VL, Krishnamurthi RV, Parmar P, et al. Update on the global burden of ischemic and hemorrhagic stroke in 1990-2013: the GBD 2013 study. *Neuroepidemiology*. 2015;45(3):161–176.
358. Easton JD, Saver JL, Albers GW, et al. Definition and evaluation of transient ischemic attack: a scientific statement for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association Stroke Council; Council on Cardiovascular Surgery and Anesthesia; Council on Cardiovascular Radiology and Intervention; Council on Cardiovascular Nursing; and the Interdisciplinary Council on Peripheral Vascular Disease. The American Academy of Neurology affirms the value of this statement as an educational tool for neurologists. *Stroke*. 2009;40(6):2276–2293.
359. Mashour GA, Shanks AM, Kheterpal S. Perioperative stroke and associated mortality after noncardiac, nonneurologic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(6):1289–1296.
360. Sharifpour M, Moore LE, Shanks AM, Didier TJ, Kheterpal S, Mashour GA. Incidence, predictors, and outcomes of perioperative stroke in noncarotid major vascular surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(2):424–434.
361. Christiansen MN, Andersson C, Gislason GH, et al. Risks of cardiovascular adverse events and death in patients with previous stroke undergoing emergency noncardiac, nonintracranial surgery: the importance of operative timing. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(1):9–19.
362. Aries MJ, Elting JW, De Keyser J, Kremer BP, Vroomen PC. Cerebral autoregulation in stroke: a review of transcranial Doppler studies. *Stroke*. 2010;41(11):2697–2704.
363. Dodick DW, Meissner I, Meyer FB, Cloft HJ. Evaluation and management of asymptomatic carotid artery stenosis. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2004;79(7):937–944.
364. Blacker DJ, Flemming KD, Link MJ, Brown RDJ. The preoperative cerebrovascular consultation: common cerebrovascular questions before general or cardiac surgery. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2004;79(2):223–229.
365. Walsh M, Wang CY, Ong GS, et al. Kidney function alters the relationship between postoperative troponin T level and death. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2015;26(10):2571–2577.
366. Spector TD. Rheumatoid arthritis. *Rheum Dis Clin North Am*. 1990;16(3):513–537.
367. Tokunaga D, Hase H, Mikami Y, et al. Atlantoaxial subluxation in different intraoperative head positions in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(4):675–679.
368. Ledingham J, Deighton C. British Society for Rheumatology Standards GAAWG. Update on the British Society for Rheumatology guidelines for prescribing TNFalpha blockers in adults with rheumatoid arthritis (update of previous guidelines of April 2001). *Rheumatology (Oxford)*. 2005;44(2):157–163.
369. Saag KG, Teng GG, Patkar NM, et al. American College of Rheumatology 2008 recommendations for the use of nonbiologic and biologic disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs in rheumatoid arthritis. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2008;59(6):762–784.
370. Petri M. Epidemiology of systemic lupus erythematosus. *Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol*. 2002;16(5):847–858.
371. Johnson SR, Granton JT. Pulmonary hypertension in systemic sclerosis and systemic lupus erythematosus. *Eur Respir Rev*. 2011;20(122):277–286.
372. Bernatsky S, Joseph L, Pineau CA, Belisle P, Hudson M, Clarke AE. Scleroderma prevalence: demographic variations in a population-based sample. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2009;61(3):400–404.
373. Wigley FM. Clinical practice. Raynaud's phenomenon. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347(13):1001–1008.
374. Ho NC, Tran JR, Bektas A. Marfan's syndrome. *Lancet*. 2005;366(9501):1978–1981.
375. Adams MJ, Hardenbergh PH, Constine LS, Lipshultz SE. Radiation-associated cardiovascular disease. *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol*. 2003;45(1):55–75.
376. Ramage JK, Ahmed A, Ardill J, et al. Guidelines for the management of gastroenteropancreatic neuroendocrine (including carcinoid) tumours (NETs). *Gut*. 2012;61(1):6–32.
377. Kinney MA, Warner ME, Nagorney DM, et al. Perianaesthetic risks and outcomes of abdominal surgery for metastatic carcinoid tumours. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(3):447–452.
378. Boudreaux JP, Klimstra DS, Hassan MM, et al. The NANETS consensus guideline for the diagnosis and management of neuroendocrine tumors: well-differentiated neuroendocrine tumors of the jejunum, ileum, appendix, and cecum. *Pancreas*. 2010;39(6):753–766.
379. Meyhoff CS, Lund J, Jenstrup MT, et al. Should dosing of rocuronium in obese patients be based on ideal or corrected body weight. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(3):787–792.
380. Kostopanagiotou G, Smyrniotis V, Arkadopoulos N, Theodoraki K, Papadimitriou L, Papadimitriou J. Anesthetic and perioperative management of adult transplant recipients in nontransplant surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):613–622.

381. Kostopanagiotou G, Smyrniotis V, Arkadopoulos N, Contis J, Briassoulis G, Kostopanagiotou E. Anaesthetic and perioperative management of paediatric organ recipients in nontransplant surgery. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2003;13(9):754–763.
382. Harper NJN, Cook TM, Garcez T, et al. Anaesthesia, surgery, and life-threatening allergic reactions: epidemiology and clinical features of perioperative anaphylaxis in the 6th National Audit Project (NAP6). *Br J Anaesth*. 2018.
383. Mertes PM, Alla F, Tréchot P, Auroy Y, Jougla E. Anaphylaxis during anesthesia in France: an 8-year national survey. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2011;128(2):366–373.
384. Harper NJN, Cook TM, Garcez T, et al. Anaesthesia, surgery, and life-threatening allergic reactions: management and outcomes in the 6th National Audit Project (NAP6). *Br J Anaesth*. 2018.
385. Lienhart A, Auroy Y, Pequignot F, et al. Survey of anesthesia-related mortality in France. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(6):1087–1097.
386. Florvaag E, Johansson SG, Oman H, et al. Prevalence of IgE antibodies to morphine. Relation to the high and low incidences of NMBA anaphylaxis in Norway and Sweden, respectively. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(4):437–444.
387. Hepner DL, Castells MC. Latex allergy: an update. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(4):1219–1229.
388. Holzman RS, Brown RH, Hamid R, et al. *Natural Rubber Latex Allergy: Considerations for Anesthesiologists*. Park Ridge, IL: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 2005.
389. Fisher MM, Rose M. Anaesthesia for patients with idiopathic environmental intolerance and chronic fatigue syndrome. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101(4):486–491.
390. CGOAIDSIAHIVS. Time from HIV-1 seroconversion to AIDS and death before widespread use of highly-active antiretroviral therapy: a collaborative re-analysis. Collaborative Group on AIDS Incubation and HIV Survival including the CASCADE EU Concerted Action. Concerted Action on SeroConversion to AIDS and Death in Europe. *Lancet*. 2000;355(9210):1131–1137.
391. Egger M, May M, Chene G, et al. Prognosis of HIV-1-infected patients starting highly active antiretroviral therapy: a collaborative analysis of prospective studies. *Lancet*. 2002;360(9327):119–129.
392. Mofenson LM. A critical review of studies evaluating the relationship of mode of delivery to perinatal transmission of human immunodeficiency virus. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 1995;14(3):169–176; quiz 177.
393. Evron S, Glezerman M, Harow E, Sadan O, Ezri T. Human immunodeficiency virus: anesthetic and obstetric considerations. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(2):503–511.
394. Günthard HF, Saag MS, Benson CA, et al. Antiretroviral drugs for treatment and prevention of HIV infection in adults: 2016 recommendations of the International Antiviral Society-USA panel. *JAMA*. 2016;316(2):191–210.
395. Friis-Moller N, Reiss P, Sabin CA, et al. Class of antiretroviral drugs and the risk of myocardial infarction. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(17):1723–1735.
396. Albaran RG, Webber J, Steffes CP. CD4 cell counts as a prognostic factor of major abdominal surgery in patients infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. *Arch Surg*. 1998;133(6):626–631.
397. Tran HS, Moncure M, Tarnoff M, et al. Predictors of operative outcome in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. *Am J Surg*. 2000;180(3):228–233.
398. Grant BF, Goldstein RB, Saha TD, et al. Epidemiology of DSM-5 alcohol use disorder: results from the national epidemiologic survey on alcohol and related conditions III. *JAMA Psychiatry*. 2015;72(8):757–766.
399. Jage J, Heid F. Anesthesia and analgesia in addicts: basis for establishing a standard operating procedure. *Anaesthesist*. 2006;55(6):611–628.
400. Bradley KA, Rubinsky AD, Sun H, et al. Alcohol screening and risk of postoperative complications in male VA patients undergoing major non-cardiac surgery. *J Gen Intern Med*. 2011;26(2):162–169.
401. Harris AH, Reeder R, Ellerbe L, Bradley KA, Rubinsky AD, Giori NJ. Preoperative alcohol screening scores: association with complications in men undergoing total joint arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2011;93(4):321–327.
402. Eliasen M, Grønkjær M, Skov-Ettrup LS, et al. Preoperative alcohol consumption and postoperative complications: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Surg*. 2013;258(6):930–942.
403. Ewing JA. Detecting alcoholism. The CAGE questionnaire. *JAMA*. 1984;252(14):1905–1907.
404. Bush K, Kivlahan DR, McDonell MB, Fihn SD, Bradley KA. The AUDIT alcohol consumption questions (AUDIT-C): an effective brief screening test for problem drinking. Ambulatory Care Quality Improvement Project (ACQUIP). Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test. *Arch Intern Med*. 1998;158(16):1789–1795.
405. Agabio R, Gessa GL, Montisci A, et al. Use of the screening suggested by the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism and of a newly derived tool for the detection of unhealthy alcohol drinkers among surgical patients. *J Stud Alcohol Drugs*. 2012;73(1):126–133.
406. Kleinwächter R, Kork F, Weiss-Gerlach E, et al. Improving the detection of illicit substance use in preoperative anesthesiological assessment. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2010;76(1):29–37.
407. Conigrave KM, Degenhardt LJ, Whitfield JB, et al. CDT, GGT, and AST as markers of alcohol use: the WHO/ISBRA collaborative project. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res*. 2002;26(3):332–339.
408. Savage SR. Addiction in the treatment of pain: significance, recognition, and management. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 1993;8(5):265–278.
409. Baxter JL, Alexandrov AW. Utility of cocaine drug screens to predict safe delivery of general anesthesia for elective surgical patients. *AANA J*. 2012;80(suppl 4):S33–S36.
410. Bryson EO, Frost EA. The perioperative implications of tobacco, marijuana, and other inhaled toxins. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2011;49(1):103–118.
411. Oppedal K, Møller AM, Pedersen B, Tønnesen H. Preoperative alcohol cessation prior to elective surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;(7):CD008343.
412. May JA, White HC, Leonard-White A, Warltier DC, Pagel PS. The patient recovering from alcohol or drug addiction: special issues for the anesthesiologist. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(6):1601–1608.
413. Truog RD, Waisel DB, Burns JP. Do-not-resuscitate orders in the surgical setting. *Lancet*. 2005;365(9461):733–735.
414. Committee on Ethics ASOA. *Ethical Guidelines for The Anesthesia Care of Patients With Do-Not-Resuscitate Orders or Other Directives That Limit Treatment*; 2013.
415. Truog RD, Waisel DB, Burns JP. DNR in the OR: a goal-directed approach. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(1):289–295.
416. Grimaldo DA, Wiener-Kronish JP, Jurson T, Shaughnessy TE, Curtis JR, Liu LL. A randomized, controlled trial of advanced care planning discussions during preoperative evaluations. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(1):43–50; discussion 5A.
417. Benarroch-Gampel J, Sheffield KM, Duncan CB, et al. Preoperative laboratory testing in patients undergoing elective, low-risk ambulatory surgery. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256(3):518–528.
418. Chung F, Yuan H, Yin L, Vairavanathan S, Wong DT. Elimination of preoperative testing in ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(2):467–475.
419. Schein OD, Katz J, Bass EB, et al. The value of routine preoperative medical testing before cataract surgery. Study of Medical Testing for Cataract Surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342(3):168–175.
420. Johansson T, Fritsch G, Flamm M, et al. Effectiveness of non-cardiac preoperative testing in non-cardiac elective surgery: a systematic review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(6):926–939.
421. Kirkham KR, Wijeysundera DN, Pendrith C, et al. Preoperative testing before low-risk surgical procedures. *CMAJ*. 2015;187(11):E349–E358.
422. Kirkham KR, Wijeysundera DN, Pendrith C, et al. Preoperative laboratory investigations: rates and variability prior to low-risk surgical procedures. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(4):804–814.
423. Chen CL, Lin GA, Bardach NS, et al. Preoperative medical testing in Medicare patients undergoing cataract surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372(16):1530–1538.
424. Ontario Pre-Operative Task Force Force OP-OT. Ontario Preoperative Testing Grid.
425. Ruetzler K, Lin P, You J, et al. The association between timing of routine preoperative blood testing and a composite of 30-day postoperative morbidity and mortality. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
426. Crawford MW, Galton S, Abdelhaleem M. Preoperative screening for sickle cell disease in children: clinical implications. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(10):1058–1063.
427. O'Leary JD, Odame I, Pehora C, Chakraborty P, Crawford MW. Effectiveness of preoperative screening for sickle cell disease in a

population with a newborn screening program: a cohort study. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60(1):54–59.

428. Joo HS, Wong J, Naik VN, Savoldelli GL. The value of screening preoperative chest x-rays: a systematic review. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(6):568–574.
429. Prause G, Ratzenhofer-Komenda B, Smolle-Juettner F, et al. Operations on patients deemed "unfit for operation and anaesthesia": what are the consequences? *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42(3):316–322.
430. Saklad M. Grading of patients for surgical procedures. *Anesthesiology*. 1941:2281–2284.
431. Pearse RM, Moreno RP, Bauer P, et al. Mortality after surgery in Europe: a 7 day cohort study. *Lancet*. 2012;380(9847):1059–1065.
432. Sankar A, Johnson SR, Beattie WS, Tait G, Wijeysundera DN. Reliability of the American Society of Anesthesiologists physical status scale in clinical practice. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(3):424–432.
433. Koo CY, Hyder JA, Wanderer JP, Eikermann M, Ramachandran SK. A meta-analysis of the predictive accuracy of postoperative mortality using the American Society of Anesthesiologists' physical status classification system. *World J Surg*. 2015;39(1):88–103.
434. Cuvillon P, Nouvellon E, Marret E, et al. American Society of Anesthesiologists' physical status system: a multicentre Francophone study to analyse reasons for classification disagreement. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(10):742–747.
435. Haynes SR, Lawler PG. An assessment of the consistency of ASA physical status classification allocation. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50(3):195–199.
436. Owens WD, Felts JA, Spitznagel ELJ. ASA physical status classifications: a study of consistency of ratings. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49(4):239–243.
437. Dalton JE, Kurz A, Turan A, Mascha EJ, Sessler DI, Saager L. Development and validation of a risk quantification index for 30-day postoperative mortality and morbidity in noncardiac surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(6):1336–1344.
438. Noordzij PG, Poldermans D, Schouten O, Bax JJ, Schreiner FA, Boersma E. Postoperative mortality in the Netherlands: a population-based analysis of surgery-specific risk in adults. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(5):1105–1115.
439. Glance LG, Lustik SJ, Hannan EL, et al. The Surgical Mortality Probability Model: derivation and validation of a simple risk prediction rule for noncardiac surgery. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255(4):696–702.
440. Fleisher LA, Pasternak LR, Herbert R, Anderson GF. Inpatient hospital admission and death after outpatient surgery in elderly patients: importance of patient and system characteristics and location of care. *Arch Surg*. 2004;139(1):67–72.
441. Majholm B, Engbaek J, Bartholdy J, et al. Is day surgery safe? A Danish multicentre study of morbidity after 57,709 day surgery procedures. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56(3):323–331.
442. Warner MA, Shields SE, Chute CG. Major morbidity and mortality within 1 month of ambulatory surgery and anesthesia. *JAMA*. 1993;270(12):1437–1441.
443. Nashef SA, Roques F, Sharples LD, et al. EuroSCORE II. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2012;41(4):734–744. discussion 744.
444. Shahian DM, Jacobs JP, Badhwar V, et al. The Society of Thoracic Surgeons 2018 adult cardiac surgery risk models: part 1-background, design considerations, and model development. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2018;105(5):1411–1418.
445. Moonesinghe SR, Mythen MG, Das P, Rowan KM, Grocott MP. Risk stratification tools for predicting morbidity and mortality in adult patients undergoing major surgery: qualitative systematic review. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119(4):959–981.
446. Sutton R, Bann S, Brooks M, Sarin S. The Surgical Risk Scale as an improved tool for risk-adjusted analysis in comparative surgical audit. *Br J Surg*. 2002;89(6):763–768.
447. Cowie B. Focused transthoracic echocardiography predicts perioperative cardiovascular morbidity. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26(6):989–993.
448. Heiberg J, El-Ansary D, Canty DJ, Royse AG, Royse CF. Focused echocardiography: a systematic review of diagnostic and clinical decision-making in anaesthesia and critical care. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(9):1091–1100.
449. Guazzi M, Arena R, Halle M, Piepoli MF, Myers J, Lavie CJ. 2016 focused update: clinical recommendations for cardiopulmonary exercise testing data assessment in specific patient populations. *Circulation*. 2016;133(24):e694–e711.
450. Young EL, Karthikesalingam A, Huddart S, et al. A systematic review of the role of cardiopulmonary exercise testing in vascular surgery. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2012;44(1):64–71.
451. Huddart S, Young EL, Smith RL, Holt PJ, Prabhu PK. Preoperative cardiopulmonary exercise testing in England - a national survey. *Perioper Med (Lond)*. 2013;2(1):4.
452. Kroenke K, Lawrence VA, Theroux JF, Tuley MR. Operative risk in patients with severe obstructive pulmonary disease. *Arch Intern Med*. 1992;152(5):967–971.
453. Kearney PM, Baigent C, Godwin J, Halls H, Emberson JR, Patrono C. Do selective cyclo-oxygenase-2 inhibitors and traditional non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs increase the risk of atherothrombosis? Meta-analysis of randomised trials. *BMJ*. 2006;332(7553):1302–1308.
454. Nussmeier NA, Whelton AA, Brown MT, et al. Complications of the COX-2 inhibitors parecoxib and valdecoxib after cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(11):1081–1091.
455. Grady D, Wenger NK, Herrington D, et al. Postmenopausal hormone therapy increases risk for venous thromboembolic disease. The Heart and Estrogen/progestin Replacement Study. *Ann Intern Med*. 2000;132(9):689–696.
456. Vandenbroucke JP, Rosing J, Bloemenkamp KW, et al. Oral contraceptives and the risk of venous thrombosis. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344(20):1527–1535.
457. Auerbach AD, Vittinghoff E, Maselli J, Pekow PS, Young JQ, Lindenauer PK. Perioperative use of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and risks for adverse outcomes of surgery. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2013;173(12):1075–1081.
458. Sajan F, Conte JV, Tamargo RJ, Riley LH, Rock P, Faraday N. Association of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors with transfusion in surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(1):21–28.
459. Practice guidelines for preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration: application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Preoperative Fasting and the Use of Pharmacologic Agents to Reduce the Risk of Pulmonary Aspiration. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(3):376–393.
460. Melzack R. The McGill pain questionnaire: major properties and scoring methods. *Pain*. 1975;1(3):277–299.
461. Gjeilo KH, Stenseth R, Wahba A, Lydersen S, Klepstad P. Validation of the brief pain inventory in patients six months after cardiac surgery. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2007;34(6):648–656.
462. Lam E, Lee M, Brull R, Wong DT. Effect of anesthesia consultation on patients' preoperative concerns. *Can J Anaesth*. 2007;54(10):852–853.
463. Shafer A, Fish MP, Gregg KM, Seavello J, Kosek P. Preoperative anxiety and fear: a comparison of assessments by patients and anesthesia and surgery residents. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(6):1285–1291.
464. Egbert LD, Battit GE, Welch CE, Bartlett MK. Reduction of postoperative pain by encouragement and instruction of patients. A study of doctor-patient rapport. *N Engl J Med*. 1964:270825–270827.
465. Block BM, Liu SS, Rowlingson AJ, Cowan AR, Cowan JAJ, Wu CL. Efficacy of postoperative epidural analgesia: a meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2003;290(18):2455–2463.
466. Katz J, Weinrib A, Fashler SR, et al. The Toronto General Hospital Transitional Pain Service: development and implementation of a multidisciplinary program to prevent chronic postsurgical pain. *J Pain Res*. 2015;8:695–702.
467. Starsnic MA, Guarnieri DM, Norris MC. Efficacy and financial benefit of an anesthesiologist-directed university preadmission evaluation center. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9(4):299–305.
468. Katz RI, Barnhart JM, Ho G, Hersch D, Dayan SS, Keehn L. A survey on the intended purposes and perceived utility of preoperative cardiology consultations. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(4):830–836.
469. Pollard JB, Garnerin P, Dalman RL. Use of outpatient preoperative evaluation to decrease length of stay for vascular surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(6):1307–1311.
470. Wijeysundera DN, Bender JS, Beattie WS. Alpha-2 adrenergic agonists for the prevention of cardiac complications among patients undergoing surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;(4):CD004126.
471. Blitz JD, Kendale SM, Jain SK, Cuff GE, Kim JT, Rosenberg AD. Preoperative evaluation clinic visit is associated with decreased risk of in-hospital postoperative mortality. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(2):280–294.

472. Hilditch WG, Asbury AJ, Jack E, McGrane S. Validation of a pre-anaesthetic screening questionnaire. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58(9):874–877.
473. Vetter TR, Boudreaux AM, Ponce BA, Barman J, Crump SJ. Development of a preoperative patient clearance and consultation screening questionnaire. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(6):1453–1457.
474. Tsen LC, Segal S, Pothier M, Bader AM. Survey of residency training in preoperative evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(4):1134–1137.
475. Salerno SM, Hurst FP, Halvorson S, Mercado DL. Principles of effective consultation: an update for the 21st-century consultant. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167(3):271–275.
476. Sharma G, Kuo YF, Freeman J, Zhang DD, Goodwin JS. Comanagement of hospitalized surgical patients by medicine physicians in the United States. *Arch Intern Med*. 2010;170(4):363–368.
477. Grigoryan KV, Javedan H, Rudolph JL. Orthogeriatric care models and outcomes in hip fracture patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2014;28(3):e49–55.
478. Auerbach AD, Wachter RM, Cheng HQ, et al. Comanagement of surgical patients between neurosurgeons and hospitalists. *Arch Intern Med*. 2010;170(22):2004–2010.
479. Huddleston JM, Long KH, Naessens JM, et al. Medical and surgical comanagement after elective hip and knee arthroplasty: a randomized, controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;141(1):28–38.
480. Kammerlander C, Roth T, Friedman SM, et al. Ortho-geriatric service--a literature review comparing different models. *Osteoporos Int*. 2010;21(suppl 4):S637–S646.
481. Rohatgi N, Loftus P, Grujic O, Cullen M, Hopkins J, Ahuja N. Surgical comanagement by hospitalists improves patient outcomes: a propensity score analysis. *Ann Surg*. 2016;264(2):275–282.
482. Batsis JA, Phy MP, Melton LJ, et al. Effects of a hospitalist care model on mortality of elderly patients with hip fractures. *J Hosp Med*. 2007;2(4):219–225.
483. Macpherson DS, Lofgren RP. Outpatient internal medicine preoperative evaluation: a randomized clinical trial. *Med Care*. 1994;32(5):498–507.
484. Wijeysundera DN, Austin PC, Beattie WS, Hux JE, Laupacis A. Outcomes and processes of care related to preoperative medical consultation. *Arch Intern Med*. 2010;170(15):1365–1374.
485. Auerbach AD, Rasic MA, Sehgal N, Ide B, Stone B, Maselli J. Opportunity missed: medical consultation, resource use, and quality of care of patients undergoing major surgery. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167(21):2338–2344.
486. Vazirani S, Lankarani-Fard A, Liang LJ, Stelzner M, Asch SM. Perioperative processes and outcomes after implementation of a hospitalist-run preoperative clinic. *J Hosp Med*. 2012;7(9):697–701.
487. McIsaac DI, Huang A, Wong CA, Wijeysundera DN, Bryson GL, van Walraven C. Effect of preoperative geriatric evaluation on outcomes after elective surgery: a population-based study. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2017;65(12):2665–2672.
488. Katz RI, Cimino L, Vitkun SA. Preoperative medical consultations: impact on perioperative management and surgical outcome. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(7):697–702.
489. Groot MW, Spronk A, Hoeks SE, Stolker RJ, van Lier F. The preoperative cardiology consultation: indications and risk modification. *Neth Heart J*. 2017;25(11):629–633.
490. Wijeysundera DN, Austin PC, Beattie WS, Hux JE, Laupacis A. Variation in the practice of preoperative medical consultation for major elective noncardiac surgery: a population-based study. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(1):25–34.
491. Thilen SR, Treggiari MM, Lange JM, Lowy E, Weaver EM, Wijeysundera DN. Preoperative consultations for medicare patients undergoing cataract surgery. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2014;174(3):380–388.
492. Thilen SR, Bryson CL, Reid RJ, Wijeysundera DN, Weaver EM, Treggiari MM. Patterns of preoperative consultation and surgical specialty in an integrated healthcare system. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(5):1028–1037.
493. Seidel JE, Beck CA, Pocobelli G, et al. Location of residence associated with the likelihood of patient visit to the preoperative assessment clinic. *BMC Health Serv Res*. 2006;6:13.
494. Strode SW, Gustke S, Allen A. Technical and clinical progress in telemedicine. *JAMA*. 1999;281(12):1066–1068.
495. Wong DT, Kamming D, Salenieks ME, Go K, Kohm C, Chung F. Preadmission anesthesia consultation using telemedicine technology: a pilot study. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(6):1605–1607.
496. Down MP, Wong DT, McGuire GP. The anaesthesia consult clinic: does it matter which anaesthetist sees the patient? *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45(8):802–808.
497. Soltner C, Giquello JA, Monrigal-Martin C, Beydon L. Continuous care and empathic anaesthesiologist attitude in the preoperative period: impact on patient anxiety and satisfaction. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(5):680–686.
498. van Klei WA, Peelen LM, Kruijswijk JE, van Wolfswinkel L. Feedback system to estimate the quality of outpatient preoperative evaluation records: an analysis of end-user satisfaction. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(5):620–626.
499. Harnett MJ, Correll DJ, Hurwitz S, Bader AM, Hepner DL. Improving efficiency and patient satisfaction in a tertiary teaching hospital preoperative clinic. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(1):66–72.
500. Vaghadia H, Fowler C. Can nurses screen all outpatients? Performance of a nurse based model. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46(12):1117–1121.
501. van Klei WA, Hennis PJ, Moen J, Kalkman CJ, Moons KG. The accuracy of trained nurses in pre-operative health assessment: results of the OPEN study. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59(10):971–978.
502. Edward GM, de Haes JC, Oort FJ, Lemaire LC, Hollmann MW, Preckel B. Setting priorities for improving the preoperative assessment clinic: the patients' and the professionals' perspective. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(3):322–326.
503. Hepner DL, Bader AM, Hurwitz S, Gustafson M, Tsen LC. Patient satisfaction with preoperative assessment in a preoperative assessment testing clinic. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(4):1099–1105; table of contents.
504. Dexter F. Design of appointment systems for preanesthesia evaluation clinics to minimize patient waiting times: a review of computer simulation and patient survey studies. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(4):925–931.

32

Anesthetic Implications of Concurrent Diseases

JESSE KIEFER, MONTY MYTHEN, MICHAEL F. ROIZEN, and
LEE A. FLEISHER

KEY POINTS

- The history and physical examination most accurately predict the risks of anesthesia and the likelihood of required changes in monitoring or therapy.
- For diabetic patients, end-organ dysfunction and the degree of glucose control in the perioperative and periprocedural periods are the critical issues with regard to risk.
- The keys to managing blood glucose levels in diabetic patients perioperatively are to set clear goals and then monitor blood glucose levels frequently enough to adjust therapy to achieve these goals.
- Obesity is associated with multiple comorbid conditions, including diabetes, hyperlipidemia, and cholelithiasis, but the primary concern is derangements of the cardiopulmonary system.
- Obstructive sleep apnea is important to recognize because of the increased sensitivity to and the consequence of the depressing effects of hypnotics and opioids on airway muscle tone and respiration, as well as the difficulty with laryngoscopy and mask ventilation.
- Although no controlled, randomized prospective clinical studies have been performed to evaluate the use of adrenergic receptor blocking drugs in patients undergoing resection of pheochromocytoma, the preoperative use of such drugs is generally recommended.
- For patients with hypertension, the routine administration of all drugs preoperatively is recommended, except angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors and angiotensin II antagonists.
- Evaluation of a patient with cardiovascular disease depends on clinical risk factors, the extent of surgery, and exercise tolerance.
- In patients with pulmonary disease, the following should be assessed: dyspnea, coughing and the production of sputum, recent respiratory infection, hemoptysis, wheezing, previous pulmonary complications, smoking history, and physical findings.
- In patients with pulmonary disease, several strategies have been suggested, including cessation of smoking 8 weeks or more preoperatively.
- Risk factors for perioperative renal dysfunction include advanced age, congestive heart failure, previous myocardial revascularization, diabetes, and increased baseline blood creatinine concentration.
- One of the primary objectives for a patient with renal disease is ensuring that the renal dysfunction is not augmented and thereby increasing the chance for renal failure, coma, and death.
- Mild perioperative anemia may be clinically significant only in patients with ischemic heart disease.
- Careful management of long-term drug administration should include questions about the effects and side effects of alternative as well as prescription drugs.

This chapter reviews many conditions requiring special preoperative and preprocedure evaluation, intraoperative or intraprocedure management, or postprocedure care. Patients undergoing surgical procedures move through a continuum of medical care to which a primary care physician, an internist or pediatrician, an anesthesiologist, and a surgeon, gastroenterologist, radiologist, or obstetrician-gynecologist contribute to ensure the best outcome possible. It may also involve comanagement with a hospitalist. No aspect of medical care requires greater cooperation among physicians than does performance of a surgical operation or a complex procedure involving multiple specialists and the perioperative care of a patient. Moreover, nowhere else can counseling make so huge a difference in so many lives. The preoperative evaluation also represents a time when education on tobacco cessation, physical inactivity, brain health, and poor food choices can be discussed. The importance of integrating physicians' expertise is even greater within the context of the increasing life-span of our population. As the number of older adults and very old adults (those >85 years old) grows, so does the need of surgical patients for preoperative consultation to help plan for comorbidity, frailty, and multiple drug regimens, the knowledge of which is crucial to successful patient management. At a time when medical information is encyclopedic, it is difficult, if not impossible, for even the most conscientious anesthesiologist to keep abreast of the medical issues relevant to every aspect of perioperative or periprocedure patient management. This chapter reviews such issues with primary emphasis on the anesthesiologist providing preoperative evaluation and care, rather than transferring these responsibilities to other providers.

As with "healthy" patients, the history and physical examination most accurately predict not only the associated risks but also the likelihood of whether a monitoring technique, change in therapy, or "prehabilitation" will be beneficial or necessary for survival. This chapter emphasizes instances in which specific information should be sought in history taking, physical examination, or laboratory evaluation. Although controlled studies designed to confirm that optimizing a patient's preoperative or preprocedure physical condition would result in a less frequent rate of morbidity have not been performed for most diseases, it is logical to assume that such is the case. That such preventive measures would cost less than treating the morbidity that would otherwise occur is an important consideration in a cost-conscious environment.

Minimally invasive procedures such as cataract extraction, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), or diagnostic arthroscopy, performed in conjunction with the best current anesthetic practices, may pose no greater risk than daily living and thus may not be considered an opportunity for special evaluation. Nevertheless, the preoperative evaluation may identify conditions that could change perioperative management and that may improve both throughput of surgery and the speed of recovery. Examples include the following: ensuring the administration of long-term medications such as a β-adrenergic blocking drug, aspirin for patients with coronary stents, or a statin (or any combination); administering a histamine type 2 (H_2) antagonist 1 to 2 hours before entry into the operating room; ensuring the availability of equipment to measure blood glucose levels; obtaining a history of the patient's diabetic course and treatment from the primary care physician, as well as from the patient; and performing a fiberoptic laryngoscopic examination or procuring additional skilled attention.

The following conditions are discussed in this chapter:

1. Diseases involving the endocrine system and disorders of nutrition (discussed first because of its increasing importance to care)
2. Diseases involving the cardiovascular system
3. Disorders of the respiratory and immune system
4. Diseases of the central nervous system (CNS), neuromuscular diseases, and mental disorders
5. Diseases involving the kidney, infectious diseases, and disorders of electrolytes
6. Diseases involving the gastrointestinal (GI) tract or the liver
7. Diseases involving hematopoiesis and various forms of cancer
8. Diseases of aging or those that occur more commonly in older adults, as well as chronic and acute medical conditions requiring drug therapy

Role of the Primary Care Physician or Consultant

The roles of the primary care physician or consultant are not to select and suggest anesthetic or surgical methods but rather to optimize the patient's preoperative and preprocedure status regarding conditions that increase the morbidity and mortality associated with surgery and to alert the anesthesia care team about these conditions. Within the context of shared decision making, the primary care physician may also be involved in the decision to proceed with surgery.

Quotations and a box in a Medical Knowledge Self-Assessment Program published by the leading organization representing internists, the American College of Physicians, highlight this role for the consultant[1]:

> *Effective interaction with colleagues in other specialties requires a thorough grounding in the language and science of these other disciplines as well as an awareness of basic guidelines for consultation [Box 32.1]. The consulting internists' role in perioperative care is focused on the elucidation of medical factors that may increase the risks of anesthesia and surgery. Selecting the anesthetic technique for a given patient, procedure, surgeon, and anesthetist is highly individualized and remains the responsibility of the anesthesiologist rather than the internist.*

BOX 32.1 Guidelines for Consultation Practice

- Complete a prompt, thorough, generalist-oriented evaluation.
- Respond specifically to the question or questions posed.
- Indicate clearly the perioperative importance of any observations and recommendations outside the area of initial concern.
- Provide focused, detailed, and precise diagnostic and therapeutic guidance.
- Emphasize verbal communication with the anesthesiologist and surgeon, particularly to resolve complex issues.
- Avoid chart notations that unnecessarily create or exacerbate regulatory or medicolegal risk.
- Use frequent follow-up visits in difficult cases to monitor clinical status and compliance with recommendations.

From American College of Physicians. Medical consultation. *Medical Knowledge Self-Assessment Program IX.* Part C. Book 4. Philadelphia: American College of Physicians; 1992: 939.

Optimizing a patient's preoperative and preprocedure condition and, in settings with a preoperative clinic, counseling a patient about needed future lifestyle changes such as exercise, food choices, and tobacco cessation are cooperative ventures between the anesthesiologist and the internist, pediatrician, surgeon, or family physician. If available, the primary care physician should affirm that the patient is in the very best physical state attainable (for that patient), or the anesthesiologist and primary care physician should do what is necessary to optimize that condition. Although not yet definitively proven, prehabilitation prior to surgery has been advocated by many groups.

Primary care physicians can prepare and treat a patient to provide optimal conditions for daily life. The preoperative clinic should collaborate with the primary care physician to start the process of preparing the patient for the needs of surgery or complex procedures. Although such education is more readily available and of better quality than in previous decades, and although cardiologic organizations have provided considerable data on the importance of this aspect of care,[2-4] the primary care physician's training, knowledge, and ability may not include an in-depth understanding of the perioperative evaluation. Without understanding the physiologic changes that occur perioperatively, appropriate therapy is difficult to prescribe. It is therefore part of the anesthesiologist's job to guide the patient's consultants about the type of information needed from the preoperative and preprocedure consultation.

Diseases Involving the Endocrine System and Disorders of Nutrition

PANCREATIC DISORDERS

Preoperative and Preprocedure Diabetes Mellitus

Diabetes mellitus is a heterogeneous group of disorders that have the common feature of a relative or absolute insulin deficiency. The disease is characterized by a multitude of hormone-induced metabolic abnormalities, diffuse microvascular lesions, and long-term end organ complications. The diagnosis of diabetes is made with a fasting blood glucose level greater than 110 mg/dL (6.1 mmol/L), and impaired glucose tolerance is diagnosed if the fasting glucose level is less than 110 mg/dL (6.1 mmol/L) but greater than 100 mg/dL (5.5 mmol/L). Diabetes can be divided into two very different diseases that share the same long-term end-organ complications. Type 1 diabetes is associated with autoimmune diseases and has a concordance rate of 40% to 50% (i.e., if one of a pair of monozygotic twins had diabetes, the likelihood that the other twin would have diabetes is 40%-50%). In type 1 diabetes, the patient is insulin deficient, principally from autoimmune destruction of the pancreatic β cells, and susceptible to ketoacidosis if insulin is withheld. Type 2 diabetes has a concordance rate approaching 80% (i.e., genetic material is both necessary and sufficient for the development of type 2 diabetes).[4a] How markedly the aging and end-organ effects of these genes are expressed is based on lifestyle choices of food and physical activity. These patients are not susceptible to the development of ketoacidosis in the absence of insulin, and they have peripheral insulin resistance through multiple defects with insulin action and secretion. Patients with non–insulin-dependent (type 2) diabetes account for the majority (>90%) of the diabetic patients in Europe and North America. These individuals tend to be overweight, relatively resistant to ketoacidosis, and susceptible to the development of a hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar nonketotic state. Plasma insulin levels are normal or increased in type 2 diabetes but are relatively low for the level of blood glucose. This hyperinsulinemia by itself is postulated to cause accelerated cardiovascular disease. Gestational diabetes develops in more than 3% of all pregnancies and increases the risk of developing type 2 diabetes by 17% to 63% within 15 years.

Type 1 and type 2 diabetes differ in other ways as well. Contrary to long-standing belief, a patient's age does not allow a firm distinction between type 1 and type 2 diabetes; type 1 diabetes can develop in an older person, and clearly, type 2 diabetes can develop in overweight children. Type 1 diabetes is associated with a 15% prevalence of other autoimmune diseases, including Graves disease, Hashimoto thyroiditis, Addison disease, and myasthenia gravis.

Over the next decade, the prevalence of diabetes is expected to increase by 50%. This growth is primarily the result of the increase in type 2 diabetes caused by excessive weight gain in adults and now also in the pediatric population. Large clinical studies show that long-term, strict control of blood glucose levels and arterial blood pressure, along with regular physical activity, results in a major delay in microvascular complications and perhaps indefinite postponement of type 2 diabetes in patients.[5,6]

The common administered drugs can be classified into eight major groups: acarbose, biguanides (e.g., metformin), dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors (e.g., sitagliptin, saxagliptin, vildagliptin), glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists (e.g., albiglutide, dulagutide, or exenatide), meglitinide (e.g., repaglinide or nateglinide), sodium-glucose transport protein 2 inhibitors (e.g., canagliflozin or empagliflozin), sulfonylureas (e.g., glibenclamide, glipizide, glimepiride, gliquidone), and thiazolidinediones (e.g., pioglitazone or rosiglitazone).[6a]

Patients with insulin-dependent diabetes tend to be younger, nonobese, and susceptible to the development of ketoacidosis. Plasma insulin levels are low or un-measurable, and therapy requires insulin replacement. Patients with insulin-dependent diabetes experience an increase in their insulin requirements in the post-midnight hours, which may result in early morning hyperglycemia (dawn phenomenon). This accelerated glucose production and impaired glucose use reflect nocturnal surges in secretion of growth hormone (GH). Physiologically normal patients and diabetic patients taking insulin have steady-state levels of insulin in their blood. Absorption of insulin is highly variable and depends on the type and species of insulin, the site of administration, and subcutaneous blood flow. Nevertheless, attainment of a steady state depends on periodic administration of the preparations received by the patient. Thus it seems logical to continue the insulin combination perioperatively that the patient had been receiving after assessing previous blood glucose control.[6b]

The major risk factors for diabetic patients undergoing surgery are the end-organ diseases associated with diabetes: cardiovascular dysfunction, renal insufficiency, joint collagen tissue abnormalities (limitation in neck extension, poor wound healing), inadequate granulocyte production, neuropathies, and infectious complications.[7-15] Thus a major focus of the anesthesiologist should be the preoperative and preprocedure evaluation and treatment of these diseases to ensure optimal preoperative and preprocedure conditions. Poor preoperative glucose control, as measured by the hemoglobin A_{1C} (glycosylated hemoglobin) level, is an independent predictor of worse perioperative outcome.[16-18]

Glucotoxicity

Long-term tight control of blood glucose has been motivated by concern for three potential glucotoxicities, in addition to the results from major randomized outcome studies involving diabetic patients.[5-13]

1. Glucose itself may be toxic because high levels can promote nonenzymatic glycosylation reactions that lead to the formation of abnormal proteins. These proteins may weaken endothelial junctions and decrease elastance, which is responsible for the stiff joint syndrome (and difficult intubation secondary to fixation of the atlanto-occipital joint), as well as decrease wound-healing tensile strength.

2. Glycemia also disrupts autoregulation. Glucose-induced vasodilation prevents target organs from protecting against increases in systemic blood pressure. A glycosylated hemoglobin level of 8.1% is the threshold at which the risk for microalbuminuria increases logarithmically. A person with type 1 diabetes who has microalbuminuria of greater than 29 mg/day has an 80% chance of experiencing renal insufficiency. The threshold for glycemic toxicity differs for various vascular beds. For example, the threshold for retinopathy is a glycosylated hemoglobin value of 8.5% to 9.0% (12.5 mmol/L or 225 mg/dL), and that for cardiovascular disease is an average blood glucose value of 5.4 mmol/L (96 mg/dL). Thus different degrees of hyperglycemia may be required before different vascular beds are damaged. Another view is that perhaps severe hyperglycemia and microalbuminuria are simply concomitant effects of a common underlying cause. For instance, diabetic patients in whom microalbuminuria develops are more resistant to insulin, insulin resistance is associated with microalbuminuria in first-degree relatives of patients with type 2 diabetes, and persons who are normoglycemic but subsequently have clinical diabetes are at risk for atherogenesis before the onset of disease.

Diabetes itself may not be as important to perioperative outcome as are its end-organ effects. Epidemiologic studies segregated the effects of diabetes itself on the organ system from the effects of the complications of diabetes (e.g., cardiac, nervous system, renal, and vascular disease) and the effects of old age and the accelerated aging that diabetes causes. Even in patients requiring intensive care unit (ICU) management, long-standing diabetes does not appear to be as important an issue as the end-organ dysfunction that exists and the degree of glucose control in the perioperative or periprocedure and ICU periods.[6b,8-13]

The World Health Organization's surgical safety checklist bundle suggests control with a target perioperative blood glucose concentration of 6 to 10 mmol/L (acceptable range, 4-12 mmol/L) or 100 to 180 mg/dL.[19] Poor perioperative glycemic control has a significant impact on the risk of postoperative infection across a variety of surgical specialities.[20] Different regimens permit almost any degree of perioperative control of blood glucose levels, but the tighter the control desired, the greater the risk of hypoglycemia. Therefore, debate regarding optimal control during the perioperative period has been extensive. Tight control retards all these glucotoxicities and may have other benefits in retarding the severity of diabetes itself.[5-13,21] Management of intraoperative glucose may be influenced by specific situations, such as the following: the type of operation, pregnancy,[22] expected global CNS insult, the bias of the patient's primary care physician, or the type of diabetes.

Much of the research on perioperative control is derived from studies in the ICU, as opposed to the operating room. The first major trial demonstrating the benefit of tight glucose control was in medical ICU patients in Leuven, Belgium.[23] The most recent trial was from the NICE-SUGAR (Normoglycemia in Intensive Care Evaluation and Survival Using Glucose Algorithm Regulation) group.[24] In this randomized controlled trial, the investigators examined the associations between moderate and severe hypoglycemia (blood glucose, 41-70 mg/dL [2.3-3.9 mmol/L] and ≤40 mg/dL [2.2 mmol/L], respectively) and death among 6026 critically ill patients in ICUs. Intensive glucose control leads to moderate and severe hypoglycemia, both of which are associated with an increased risk of death. The association exhibits a dose-response relationship and is strongest for death from distributive shock. The optimal perioperative management has been reviewed elsewhere.[25] Guidelines have been developed on the use of insulin infusions in the critical care unit to achieve these goals (Table 32.1).[26]

Diabetes and Accelerated Physiologic Aging

Adverse perioperative outcomes have repeatedly and substantially correlated with the age of the patient,[2,3,27-30] and diabetes does cause physiologic aging. When one translates the results of the Diabetes Control and Complications Trials into age-induced physiologic changes, a patient with type 1 diabetes who has poor control of blood glucose ages approximately 1.75 years physiologically for every chronologic year of the disease and 1.25 years if blood glucose has been controlled tightly.[27-29] A patient with type 2 diabetes ages approximately 1.5 years for every chronologic year of the disease and approximately 1.06 years with tight control of blood glucose and blood pressure.[6,27-29,31] Thus when providing care for a diabetic patient, one must consider the associated risks to be those of a person who is much older physiologically; the physiologic age of a diabetic patient is considerably older than that person's calendar age just by virtue of having the disease.[1]

Obesity and lack of physical exercise seem to be major contributors to the increasing prevalence of type 2 diabetes. As with type 1 diabetes, tight control of blood glucose, increased physical activity, and reduction in weight appear to reduce the accelerated aging associated with type 2 diabetes, and possibly delay the appearance of the disease and aging from it substantially.[27-29,31] Although such a reduction in aging should reduce the perioperative risk for diabetic patients, no controlled trials have confirmed this theory.

The key to managing blood glucose levels perioperatively in diabetic patients is to set clear goals and then monitor blood glucose levels frequently enough to adjust therapy to achieve these goals.[31a]

Other Conditions Associated With Diabetes

Diabetes is associated with microangiopathy (in retinal and renal vessels), peripheral neuropathy, autonomic dysfunction, and infection. Diabetic patients are often treated with angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, even in the absence of gross hypertension, in an effort to prevent the effects of disordered autoregulation, including renal failure.[5,6,32]

Preoperatively, assessment and optimization of treatment of the potential and potent end-organ effects of diabetes are at least as important as assessment of the diabetic patient's current overall metabolic status. The preoperative evaluation of diabetic patients is also discussed in Chapter 31.

The presence of autonomic neuropathy likely makes the operative period more hazardous and the postoperative period crucial to survival. Evidence of autonomic neuropathy may be routinely sought before the surgical procedure. Patients with diabetic autonomic neuropathy are at increased risk for gastroparesis (and consequent aspiration

TABLE 32.1 Recommended Glucose Target Ranges for Intensive Care Patients and Related Subgroups

Society, Guideline	Patient Group	Trigger Blood Glucose Value to Start Insulin Infusion (mM [mg/dL])	Target range, (mM [mg/dL])	Rationale
Society of Critical Care Medicine's clinical practice guideline[26]	General recommendation	8.3 (150)	5.6-8.3 (100-150)	
	Cardiac surgical patients		<8.3 (150)	Decreased risk for deep sternal wound infection and death[73,118-121]
	Critically ill trauma patients	8.3 (150)	<10 (180)	
	Patients with traumatic brain injury	8.3 (150)	<10 (180)	
	Neurologic ICU patients Ischemic stroke Intraparenchymal hemorrhage Aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage	8.3 (150)	<10 (180)	
American Diabetes Association guidelines[446]	General recommendation	10 (180)	7.8-10 (140-180)	
	Adaptation		6.1-7.8 (110-140)	Adjust to lower target range in documented low rate of severe hypoglycemia
American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists[447]	General recommendation		7.8-10 (140-180)	
	Surgical patients		Lower range	Only in units showing low rates of hypoglycemia
Surviving Sepsis Campaign[448]	General recommendation	10 (180)	<10 (180)	Based on the NICE-SUGAR study
Clinical Practical Guideline from the American College of Physicians[449]	General recommendation		7.8-11.1 (140-200)	If insulin infusion is applied; however, guideline does not recommend intensive insulin therapy
Spanish Society of Intensive Care Medicine and Coronary Units[450]	General recommendation		<8.3 (150)	
French Society of Anesthesia and Intensive Care[451]	General recommendation		10 (180)	
	Surgical patients		<6.1 (110)	
	Cardiac patients		<6.1 (110)	
Society of Thoracic Surgeons[452]	Cardiac surgical patients		<10 (180) except <8.3 (150) for those with devices in place	

ICU, Intensive care unit; *NICE-SUGAR,* normoglycemia in intensive care evaluation and survival using glucose algorithm regulation.

Data from Sebranek JJ, Lugli AK, Coursin DB. Glycaemic control in the perioperative period. *Br J Anaesth.* 2013;111(suppl 1):i18–i34; and Jacobi J, Bircher N, Krinsley J, et al. Guidelines for the use of an insulin infusion for the management of hyperglycemia in critically ill patients. *Crit Care Med.* 2012;40:3251–3276.

of gastric contents) and for perioperative cardiorespiratory arrest. Diabetic patients who exhibit signs of autonomic neuropathy, such as early satiety, lack of sweating, lack of pulse rate change with inspiration or orthostatic maneuvers, and impotence, have a very frequent incidence of painless myocardial ischemia.[15,33] Administration of metoclopramide, 10 mg preoperatively to facilitate gastric emptying of solids, may be helpful (Fig. 32.1). Interference with respiration or sinus automaticity by pneumonia or by anesthetic agents, pain medications, or sedative drugs is likely the precipitating cause in most cases of sudden cardiorespiratory arrest. Measuring the degree of sinus arrhythmia or beat-to-beat variability provides a simple, accurate test for significant autonomic neuropathy. The difference between the maximum and minimum heart rate on deep inspiration is normally 15 beats/min, but it is 5 beats/min or less in all patients who subsequently sustain cardiorespiratory arrest.[15,33]

Other characteristics of patients with autonomic neuropathy include postural hypotension with a decrease in arterial blood pressure of more than 30 mm Hg, resting tachycardia, nocturnal diarrhea, and dense peripheral neuropathy. Diabetic patients with significant autonomic neuropathy may have impaired respiratory responses to

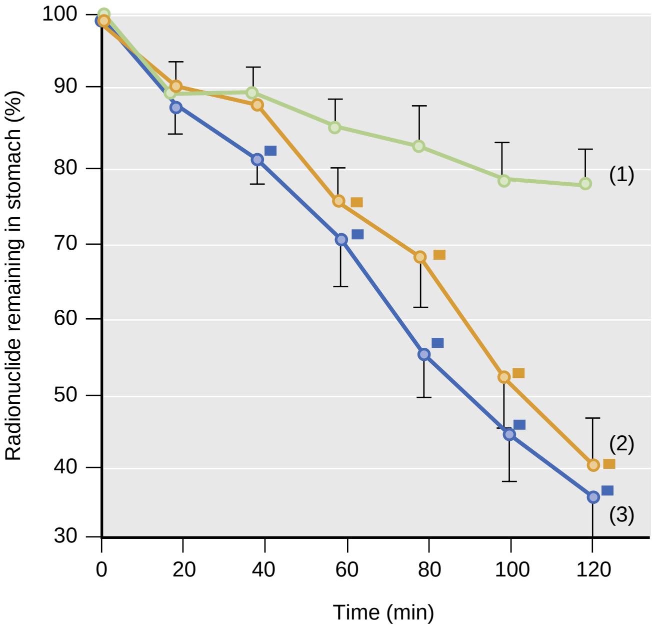


Fig. 32.1 Gastric emptying time (mean ± standard deviation) of a solid test meal in three groups of patients: diabetic patients *(line 1)*, diabetic patients given metoclopramide (10 mg intravenously) 1.5 hours before the test meal *(line 2)*, and nondiabetic patients *(line 3)*. (From Wright RA, Clemente R, Wathen R. Diabetic gastroparesis: an abnormality of gastric emptying of solids. *Am J Med Sci.* 1985;289:240–242.)

hypoxia and are particularly sensitive to the action of drugs that have depressant effects. These patients may warrant continuous cardiac and respiratory monitoring for 24 to 72 hours postoperatively, although this has not been tested in a rigorous, controlled trial.[15] In the absence of autonomic neuropathy, outpatient surgery is preferred for a diabetic patient if possible (see Table 32.1).[31a]

Emergency Surgery

Many diabetic patients requiring emergency surgery for trauma or infection have significant metabolic decompensation, including ketoacidosis. Frequently, little time is available to stabilize the patient, but even a few hours may be sufficient for correction of any fluid and electrolyte disturbances that are potentially life-threatening. It is futile to delay surgery in an attempt to eliminate ketoacidosis completely if the underlying surgical condition will lead to further metabolic deterioration. The likelihood of intraoperative cardiac arrhythmias and hypotension resulting from ketoacidosis will be reduced if intravascular volume depletion and hypokalemia are at least partially treated. During the initial resuscitation phase of ketoacidosis bicarbonate should initially be avoided with crystalloid fluids, potassium repletion, and intravenous insulin therapy favored.[33a]

Insulin therapy is initiated with a 10-unit intravenous bolus of regular insulin, followed by continuous insulin infusion. The rate of infusion is determined most easily by dividing the last serum glucose value by 150 (or 100 if the patient is receiving steroids, has an infection, or is considerably overweight [body mass index ≥35]). The actual amount of insulin administered is less important than is regular monitoring of glucose, potassium, and arterial pH. The maximum rate of glucose decline is fairly constant, averaging 75 to 100 mg/dL/h, regardless of the dose of insulin because the number of insulin binding sites is limited.[34] During the first 1 to 2 hours of fluid resuscitation, the glucose level may decrease more precipitously. When serum glucose reaches 250 mg/dL, the intravenous fluid should include 5% dextrose.

The volume of intravenously administered fluid required varies with the overall deficit; it ranges from 3 to 5 L and may be as large as 10 L. Despite losses of water in excess of losses of solute, sodium levels are generally normal or reduced. Factitious hyponatremia caused by hyperglycemia or hypertriglyceridemia may result in this seeming contradiction. The plasma sodium concentration decreases by approximately 1.6 mEq/L for every 100 mg/dL increase in plasma glucose greater than normal. Initially, balanced crystalloid solution is infused at a rate of 250 to 1000 mL/h, depending on the degree of intravascular volume depletion and cardiac status. Some measure of left ventricular volume should be monitored in diabetic patients who have a history of myocardial dysfunction. Approximately one third of the estimated fluid deficit is corrected during the first 6 to 8 hours and the remaining two thirds over the next 24 hours.[34a]

The degree of acidosis is determined by analysis of arterial blood gases and detection of an increased anion gap (see also Chapter 48). Acidosis with an increased anion gap (≥16 mEq/L) in an acutely ill diabetic patient may be caused by ketones in ketoacidosis, lactic acid in lactic acidosis, increased organic acids from renal insufficiency, or all three disorders. In ketoacidosis, plasma levels of acetoacetate, β-hydroxybutyrate, and acetone are increased. Plasma and urinary ketones can be measured semiquantitatively with Ketostix and Acetest tablets. The role of bicarbonate therapy in diabetic ketoacidosis is controversial, but could be considered in severe acidemia and hemodynamic instability as myocardial function and respiration are known to be depressed at a blood pH lower than 7.00 to 7.10.[34b] This careful consideration is because rapid correction of acidosis with bicarbonate therapy may result in alterations in CNS function and structure. These alterations may be caused by (1) paradoxical development of cerebrospinal fluid and CNS acidosis from rapid conversion of bicarbonate to carbon dioxide and diffusion of the acid across the blood-brain barrier, (2) altered CNS oxygenation with decreased cerebral blood flow, and (3) the development of unfavorable osmotic gradients. After treatment with fluids and insulin, β-hydroxybutyrate levels decrease rapidly, whereas acetoacetate levels may remain stable or even increase before declining. Plasma acetone levels remain elevated for 24 to 42 hours, long after blood glucose, β-hydroxybutyrate, and acetoacetate levels have returned to normal; the result is continuing ketonuria.[34] Persistent ketosis with a serum bicarbonate level less than 20 mEq/L in the presence of a normal glucose concentration is an indication of the continued need for intracellular glucose and insulin for reversal of lipolysis.

The most important electrolyte disturbance in diabetic ketoacidosis is depletion of total-body potassium. Deficits range from 3 to 10 mEq/kg body weight. Serum potassium levels decline rapidly and reach a nadir within 2 to 4 hours after the start of intravenous insulin administration. Aggressive replacement therapy is required. The potassium administered moves into the intracellular space with insulin as the acidosis is corrected. Potassium is also excreted in urine because of the increased delivery of sodium to the distal renal tubules that accompanies volume expansion. Phosphorus deficiency in ketoacidosis as a result of tissue catabolism, impaired cellular uptake, and increased urinary losses may give rise to significant muscular weakness and organ dysfunction. The average phosphorus deficit is approximately 1 mmol/kg body weight; no clear guidance for replacement exists, but replacement is appropriate in patients with cardiac dysfunction, anemia, respiratory depression, or if the plasma phosphate concentration is less than 1.0 mg/dL.[34]

Anticipated Newer Treatments of Diabetes

At least three major changes in the care of diabetic patients have made it to the clinical trial stage:

- Implanted (like a pacemaker) glucose analyzer with electronic transmission to a surface (watch) monitor
- New islet transplantation medication that makes islet cell transplants much more successful and rejection medication less hazardous
- Medications such as INGAP (islet neogenesis–associated protein) peptide, which may cause regrowth of normally functioning islet cells (without the need for transplantation)

Some of these treatments may radically change the therapies used in the perioperative period. If regrowth of islet cells becomes common, type 1 diabetes could all but disappear; if implanted minute-to-minute glucose reading is possible, tight control may be much easier and more expected.

Insulinoma and Other Causes of Hypoglycemia

Hypoglycemia in persons not treated for diabetes is rare. Hypoglycemia in nondiabetic patients can be caused by such diverse entities as pancreatic islet cell adenoma or carcinoma, large hepatoma, large sarcoma, alcohol ingestion, use of β-adrenergic receptor blocking drugs, haloperidol therapy, hypopituitarism, adrenal insufficiency, altered physiology after gastric or gastric bypass surgery, hereditary fructose intolerance, ingestion of antidiabetic drugs, galactosemia, or autoimmune hypoglycemia.[35] The last four entities cause postprandial reactive hypoglycemia. Because restriction of oral intake prevents severe hypoglycemia, the practice of keeping the patient NPO (nothing by mouth) and infusing small amounts of a solution containing 5% dextrose greatly lessens the possibility of perioperative postprandial reactive hypoglycemia. The other causes of hypoglycemia can cause serious problems during the perioperative period.[35]

Symptoms of hypoglycemia fall into one of two groups: adrenergic excess (tachycardia, palpitations, tremulousness, or diaphoresis) or neuroglycopenia (headache, confusion, mental sluggishness, seizures, or coma). All these symptoms may be masked by anesthesia, so blood glucose levels should be determined frequently in at-risk patients to ensure that hypoglycemia is not present. Because manipulation of an insulinoma can result in massive insulin release, this tumor should probably be operated on only at centers equipped with a mechanical pancreas. Perioperative use of the somatostatin analogue octreotide, which suppresses insulin release from such tumors, makes the perioperative period safer in anecdotal experience.

DISORDERS OF NUTRITION, INCLUDING OBESITY

Hyperlipoproteinemia, Hyperlipidemia, and Hypolipidemia

Hyperlipidemia may result from obesity, estrogen or corticoid therapy, uremia, diabetes, hypothyroidism, acromegaly, alcohol ingestion, liver disease, inborn errors of metabolism, or pregnancy. Hyperlipidemia may cause premature coronary, peripheral vascular disease, or pancreatitis.

Coronary events can be decreased by treating individuals with even normal levels of low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol with statins (3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl–coenzyme A [HMG-CoA] reductase inhibitors)—through an increase in high-density lipoprotein (HDL) and a decrease in LDL cholesterol levels. This approach has markedly decreased the rate of myocardial reinfarction in high-risk patients.[36-38] Secondary prevention efforts were successful when these high-risk patients stopped smoking, reduced their arterial blood pressure, controlled stress, increased physical activity, and used aspirin, folate, β-blocking drugs, angiotensin inhibitors, diet, and other drugs to reduce their levels of LDL and increase their levels of HDL.

Although controlling the diet remains a major treatment modality for all types of hyperlipidemia, the drugs fenofibrate and gemfibrozil, which are used to treat hypertriglyceridemia, can cause myopathy, especially in patients with hepatic or renal disease; clofibrate is also associated with an increased incidence of gallstones. Cholestyramine binds bile acids, as well as oral anticoagulants, digitalis drugs, and thyroid hormones. Nicotinic acid causes peripheral vasodilation and should probably not be continued through the morning of the surgical procedure. Probucol (Lorelco) decreases the synthesis of apoprotein A-1; its use is associated on rare occasion with fetid perspiration or prolongation of the QT interval, or both, and sudden death in animals.

The West of Scotland Coronary Prevention Study and its congeners produced convincing evidence that drugs in the statin class prevent the morbidity and mortality related to arterial aging and vascular disease, as well as their consequences, such as coronary artery disease (CAD), stroke, and peripheral vascular insufficiency.[37] Thus, the statins—lovastatin (Mevacor), pravastatin (Pravachol), simvastatin, fluvastatin, atorvastatin (Lipitor), and rosuvastatin (Crestor)—are mainstays of therapy, limited by patient tolerance most commonly secondary to musculoskeletal complaints.[38a]

However, the report of Downs and coworkers from the Air Force/Texas Coronary Atherosclerosis Prevention Study went further.[37] This report showed a 37% reduction in the risk for first acute major coronary events in patients who had no risk factors and normal (average) LDL cholesterol levels. In this study lovastatin did not alter mortality rates, but that had been true for many early short-term trials with the statins. Although much of the effect of the statins has been attributed to their lipid-lowering effects, statins also influence endothelial function, inflammatory responses, plaque stability, and thrombogenicity. In 2013, the American College of Cardiology (ACC) and the American Heart Association (AHA) released a new clinical practice guideline for the treatment of blood cholesterol in people at high risk for cardiovascular diseases.[39] They now advocate statin therapy for the following:

- Patients who have cardiovascular disease (coronary syndromes, previous myocardial infarction [MI], stable or unstable angina, previous stroke or transient ischemic attack, or peripheral artery disease)
- Patients with an LDL cholesterol level of 190 mg/dL or higher
- Patients with diabetes (type 1 or 2) who are between 40 and 75 years old
- Patients with an estimated 10-year risk of cardiovascular disease greater than 7.5% (the report provided formulas for calculating 10-year risk)

The 2014 National Lipid Association Recommendations for Patient-Centered Management of Dyslipidemia further emphasize the use of statins as a first-line therapy for dyslipidemia, but emphasize the inclusion of non-high density lipoprotein in addition to LDL as markers for risk. They further advocated for management of other atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease risk factors including high blood pressure, tobacco use, and diabetes mellitus.[39a]

Statins are drugs that block HMG-CoA reductase, the rate-limiting enzyme of cholesterol synthesis. Their use is occasionally accompanied by liver dysfunction, CNS dysfunction, and severe depression not related to the high cost of each drug and its congeners. Based on the available evidence, statin therapy should be continued in patients already taking these drugs.[40] Other drugs that reduce LDL and increase HDL cholesterol and decrease triglycerides are docosahexaenoic acid (an ω-3 fatty acid) and niacin. Statins also provide the substantial benefit of reversing inflammation in arteries, as evidenced by their ability to decrease highly specific C-reactive protein and pull cholesterol from plaque.[41]

Hypolipidemic conditions are rare diseases often associated with neuropathy, anemia, and renal failure. Although anesthetic experience with hypolipidemic conditions has been limited, some specific recommendations can be made: continuation of caloric intake and intravenous administration of protein hydrolysates and glucose should be continued throughout the perioperative period.

Obesity

Obesity is a risk factor for perioperative morbidity. In the study of Medicare claims in which obese patients were matched to non-obese patients undergoing surgery, the obese patients displayed increased odds of wound infection, renal dysfunction, urinary tract infection, hypotension, respiratory events, 30-day readmission, and a 12% longer length of stay.[41a] Although many conditions associated with obesity (diabetes, hyperlipidemia, cholelithiasis, gastroesophageal reflux disease, cirrhosis, degenerative joint and disk disease, venous stasis with thrombotic or embolic disease, sleep disorders, and emotional and altered body image disorders) contribute to chronic morbidity in these patients, the main concerns for the anesthesiologist have been the same since the 1970s—derangements of the cardiopulmonary system.

Morbid obesity with minimal or no coexisting pulmonary conditions (e.g., no obesity-hypoventilation syndrome or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease [COPD]) is referred to here as "simple" obesity. In simple obesity, the pathophysiology of mild alterations in daytime gas exchange and pulmonary function may also result from compression and restriction of the chest wall and diaphragm by excess adipose tissue.[42] Typically, in obese patients, the expiratory reserve volume and functional residual capacity are most affected and are reduced to 60% and 80% of normal, respectively. Care must be taken with medication choice and dosing, as simple obese patients may be more sensitive to sedative and narcotic agents leading to hypoventilation.[42a]

Other Eating Disorders: Anorexia Nervosa, Bulimia, and Starvation

Many endocrine and metabolic abnormalities occur in patients with anorexia nervosa, a condition characterized by starvation to the point of 40% loss of normal weight, hyperactivity, and a psychiatrically distorted body image. Many anorectic patients exhibit impulsive behavior, including suicide attempts, and intravenous drug use is much more common than in the general population. Acidosis, hypokalemia, hypocalcemia, hypomagnesemia, hypothermia, diabetes insipidus, and severe endocrine abnormalities mimicking panhypopituitarism may need attention before patients undergo anesthesia. Similar problems occur in bulimia (bulimorexia), a condition that may affect as many as 50% of female college students and is even unintentionally present in many older adults. As in severe protein deficiency, anorexia nervosa and bulimia may be accompanied by the following: alterations on the electrocardiogram (ECG), including a prolonged QT interval, atrioventricular (AV) block, and other arrhythmias; sensitivity to epinephrine; and cardiomyopathy.[43] Total depletion of body potassium makes the addition of potassium to glucose solutions useful; although, fluid administration can precipitate pulmonary edema in these patients and should be monitored judiciously. Esophagitis, pancreatitis, and aspiration pneumonia are more frequent in these patients, as is delayed gastric emptying. One review reported that in patients with severe anorexia, a body mass index less than 13 kg/m^2, marked hypoglycemia or leukocytopenia lower than 3.0×10^9/L, or both, potentially fatal complications frequently occur.[44] Intraoperatively, glucose or catecholamine administration may lead to disturbance of electrolytes or fatal arrhythmia. Intensive care and early nutritional support as soon as possible postoperatively are important to prevent surgical site infection with close monitoring for refeeding syndrome.

HYPERALIMENTATION (TOTAL PARENTERAL OR ENTERAL NUTRITION)

Hyperalimentation (i.e., total parenteral nutrition [TPN]) consists of concentrating hypertonic glucose calories in the normal daily fluid requirements. The solutions contain protein hydrolysates, soybean emulsions (i.e., Intralipid), or synthetic amino acids (or any combination of these ingredients). The major benefits of TPN or enteral nutrition have been fewer complications postoperatively and shorter hospital stays for patients scheduled to have no oral feeding for 7 days or who were malnourished preoperatively.[45,46] Starker and colleagues found that the response to TPN, as monitored by serum albumin levels, predicted the postoperative outcome.[47] The group of patients demonstrating

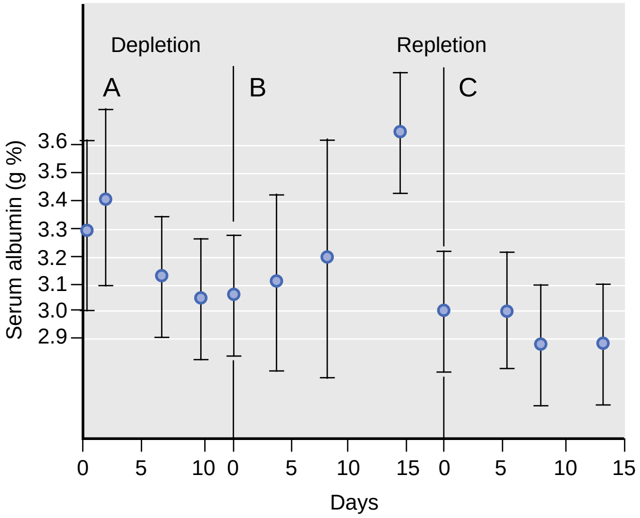


Fig. 32.2 The response to hyperalimentation (*A*, repletion), as measured by variation in serum albumin levels, predicted the outcome of surgery. Patients who responded *(B)* to nutritional support with increased albumin levels had a significantly better outcome than did those whose albumin level did not increase *(C)*. See the text for a more complete explanation. (Modified from Starker PM, Group FE, Askanazi J, et al. Serum albumin levels as an index of nutritional support. *Surgery*. 1982;91:194–199.)

an increase in serum albumin concentrations from TPN had diuresis, weight loss, and fewer complications (1 of 15 patients) than did the group that gained weight and had a decrease in serum albumin (8 of 16 patients had 15 complications; Fig. 32.2). The Veterans Administration (former name for Veterans Affairs [VA used for both]) studies also found that the serum albumin level was one of the most powerful predictors of perioperative outcome.[45]

The major complications of TPN are infection, metabolic abnormalities, and longer duration of ICU stay.[47a] The central lines used for TPN require an absolutely aseptic technique and should not be used as an intravenous access or as a route for drug administration during anesthesia and surgery. Major metabolic complications of TPN relate to electrolyte deficiencies, and the development of hyperosmolar states. Complications of hypertonic dextrose can develop if the patient has insufficient insulin (diabetes mellitus) to metabolize the sugar or if insulin resistance occurs (e.g., because of uremia, burns, or sepsis).

A gradual decrease in the infusion rate of TPN prevents the hypoglycemia that can occur on abrupt discontinuance. Thus the infusion rate of TPN should be decreased the night before anesthesia and surgery, or should be continued throughout the operation at its current rate. The main reason for slowing or discontinuing TPN before anesthesia is to avoid intraoperative hyperosmolarity secondary to accidental rapid infusion of the solution or hypoglycemia if the infusion is discontinued because of high levels of endogenous insulin and lower levels of glucose present in the usual crystalloid solutions.[45] Hypophosphatemia is a particularly serious complication that results from the administration of phosphate-free or phosphate-depleted solutions for hyperalimentation. The low serum phosphate level causes a shift of the oxygen dissociation curve to the left. The resulting low 2,3-diphosphoglycerate and adenosine triphosphatase levels mean that cardiac output must increase for oxygen delivery to remain the same. Hypophosphatemia of less than 1.0 mg/dL of blood may cause hemolytic anemia, cardiac failure, tachypnea, neurologic symptoms, seizures, and death. In addition, long-term TPN is associated with deficiencies in trace metals such as copper (refractory anemia), zinc (impaired wound healing), and magnesium.

ADRENOCORTICAL MALFUNCTION

Three major classes of hormones—androgens, glucocorticoids, and mineralocorticoids—are secreted by the adrenal cortex. For each class, an excess or a deficiency of hormone produces a characteristic clinical syndrome. The widespread use of steroids can also make the adrenal cortex unable to respond normally to the demands placed on it by surgical trauma and subsequent healing. The increase in computed tomography (CT) abdominal imaging procedures has meant that many adrenal masses have unfortunately been discovered incidentally. These adrenal "incidentalomas," as they are termed because they were initially thought a nuisance discovered by body scans, have proved more serious. As many as 30% are hormonally active; in one review of 2000 such masses, 82% were not hormonally active, 5.3% proved to be cortisone-secreting adenomas, 5.1% were pheochromocytomas, 4.7% were adrenal carcinomas, 2.5% were unsuspected metastatic disease, and 1% were aldosterone-secreting adenomas. "Incidentalomas" may therefore require serious pursuit; however, well accepted and utilized guidelines are absent, but caution should be taken during anesthesia.

Controlled comparisons of the perioperative management of patients who have disorders of adrenal function are lacking, although steroids are used more and more commonly, with the results of some controlled trials available for specific uses. However, a review of the possible pathophysiologic changes in the adrenal cortex and techniques for their management should enable physicians to improve the perioperative care of patients with adrenal abnormalities.

Physiologic Properties of Adrenocortical Hormones

Androgens. Androstenedione and dehydroepiandrosterone, weak androgens arising from the adrenal cortex, constitute major sources of androgen in women (and have gained prominence for their abuse among athletes). Excess secretion of androgen causes masculinization, pseudopuberty, or female pseudohermaphroditism. With some tumors, androgen is converted to an estrogenic substance, in which case feminization results. No special anesthetic evaluation is needed for such patients. Some congenital enzyme defects that cause androgen abnormalities also result in glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid abnormalities that should be evaluated preoperatively. Most of these patients are treated with exogenous glucocorticoids and mineralocorticoids and may require supplementation of these hormones perioperatively.

Glucocorticoids. The principal glucocorticoid, cortisol, is an essential regulator of carbohydrate, protein, lipid, and nucleic acid metabolism. Cortisol exerts its biologic effects through a sequence of steps initiated by the binding of hormone to stereospecific intracellular cytoplasmic receptors.

This bound complex stimulates nuclear transcription of specific mRNA molecules. These molecules are then translated to give rise to proteins that mediate the ultimate effects of hormones.

Most cortisol is bound to corticosterone-binding globulin (CBG, transcortin). The relatively small amounts of unbound cortisol enter cells to induce actions or to be metabolized. Conditions that induce changes in the amount of CBG include liver disease and nephrotic syndrome, both of which result in decreased circulating levels of CBG, and estrogen administration and pregnancy, which result in increased CBG production. Total serum cortisol levels may become elevated or depressed under conditions that alter the amount of bound cortisol, and yet the unbound, active form of cortisol is present in normal amounts. The most accurate measure of cortisol activity is the level of urinary cortisol (i.e., the amount of unbound, active cortisol filtered by the kidney).

The serum half-life of cortisol is 80 to 110 minutes. However, because cortisol acts through intracellular receptors, pharmacokinetic data based on serum levels are not good indicators of cortisol activity. After a single dose of glucocorticoid, serum glucose is elevated for 12 to 24 hours; improvement in pulmonary function in patients with bronchial asthma can still be measured 24 hours after glucocorticoid administration. Treatment schedules for glucocorticoid replacement are therefore based not on the measured serum half-life but on the well-documented prolonged end-organ effect of these steroids. Hospitalized patients requiring long-term glucocorticoid replacement therapy are usually treated twice daily, with a slightly higher dose given in the morning than in the evening to simulate the normal diurnal variation in cortisol levels. For patients who require parenteral "steroid coverage" during and after surgery (see later paragraphs), administration of glucocorticoid every 6 to 12 hours is appropriate pending the type of surgery and expected stress response.[47b] The relative potencies of glucocorticoids are listed in Table 32.2. Cortisol is inactivated primarily in the liver and is excreted as 17-hydroxycorticosteroid. Cortisol is also filtered and excreted unchanged into urine.

The synthetic glucocorticoids vary in their binding specificity in a dose-related manner. When given in supraphysiologic doses (>30 mg/day), cortisol and cortisone bind to mineralocorticoid receptor sites, and cause salt and water retention and loss of potassium and hydrogen ions. When these steroids are administered in maintenance doses of 30 mg/day or less, patients require a specific mineralocorticoid for electrolyte and volume homeostasis. Many other steroids do not bind to mineralocorticoid receptors, even at high doses, and have no mineralocorticoid effect (see Table 32.2).[47b]

Secretion of glucocorticoids is regulated by pituitary adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH). ACTH is synthesized from a precursor molecule (pro-opiomelanocortin) that is metabolized to form an endorphin (β-lipotropin) and ACTH. Episodic secretion of ACTH has a diurnal rhythm that is normally greatest during the early morning hours in men and later in women and is regulated at least in part by light-dark cycles. Its secretion is stimulated by release of corticotropin-releasing factor (CRF) from the hypothalamus. (An abnormality in the diurnal rhythm of corticoid secretion has been implicated as a cause of so-called jet lag.) Cortisol and other glucocorticoids exert negative feedback at both the pituitary and hypothalamic levels to inhibit the secretion of ACTH and CRF. If the CRF- or ACTH-producing cells are destroyed, the adrenal gland takes more than 30 days to atrophy to the point at which short-term administration of exogenous ACTH will cause almost no adrenal responsiveness.[48]

TABLE 32.2 Relative Potencies and Equivalent Doses for Commonly Used Glucocorticoids

Steroids	Relative Glucocorticoid Potency	Equivalent Glucocorticoid Dose (mg)
SHORT ACTING		
Cortisol (hydrocortisone)	1.0	20.0
Cortisone	0.8	25.0
Prednisone	4.0	5.0
Prednisolone	4.0	5.0
Methylprednisolone	5.0	4.0
INTERMEDIATE ACTING		
Triamcinolone	5.0	4.0
LONG ACTING		
Betamethasone	25.0	0.60
Dexamethasone	30.0	0.75

Data from Axelrod L. Glucocorticoid therapy. *Medicine (Baltimore).* 1976;55:39–65.

Mineralocorticoids. Aldosterone, the major mineralocorticoid secreted in humans, comes from the zona glomerulosa of the adrenal cortex and causes reabsorption of sodium and secretion of potassium and hydrogen ions, thereby contributing to electrolyte and volume homeostasis. This action is most prominent in the distal renal tubule but also occurs in the salivary and sweat glands. The major regulator of aldosterone secretion is the renin-angiotensin system. Juxtaglomerular cells in the cuff of renal arterioles are sensitive to decreased renal perfusion pressure or volume and, consequently, secrete renin. Renin transforms the precursor angiotensinogen (from the liver) into angiotensin I, which is further converted by a converting enzyme, primarily in the lung, to angiotensin II. Angiotensin II binds to specific receptors to increase mineralocorticoid secretion, which is also stimulated by an increased potassium concentration and, to a lesser degree, by ACTH.

Adrenocortical Hormone Excess

Glucocorticoid Excess. Glucocorticoid excess (Cushing syndrome) resulting from either endogenous oversecretion or long-term treatment with glucocorticoids at higher than physiologic doses produces a moon-faced plethoric individual with a centripetal distribution of fat (truncal obesity and skinny extremities), thin skin, easy bruising, and striae. Skeletal muscle wasting is common, but the heart and diaphragm are usually spared. A test for this syndrome is to ask the patient to get up from a chair without using the hands with the inability to do so indicating proximal

TABLE 32.3 Clinical Features of Hyperadrenalism (Cushing Syndrome) and Hypoadrenalism

Cushing Syndrome	Hypoadrenalism
Central obesity	Weight loss
Proximal muscle weakness	Weakness, fatigue, lethargy
Osteopenia at a young age	Muscle, joint, and back pain
Hypertension	Postural hypotension and dizziness
Headache	Headache
Psychiatric disorders	Anorexia, nausea, abdominal pain, constipation, diarrhea
Purple striae	
Spontaneous ecchymoses	
Plethoric facies	
Hyperpigmentation	Hyperpigmentation
Hirsutism	
Acne	
Hypokalemic alkalosis	Hyperkalemia, hyponatremia
Glucose intolerance	Occasional hypoglycemia
Kidney stones	Hypercalcemia
Polyuria	Prerenal azotemia
Menstrual disorders	
Increased leukocyte count	

muscle weakness consistent with Cushing syndrome. These patients often have osteopenia as a result of decreased formation of bone matrix and impaired absorption of calcium. Fluid retention and hypertension (because of increases in renin substrate and vascular reactivity caused by glucocorticoid activity) are common. Such patients may also have hyperglycemia and even diabetes mellitus from inhibition of peripheral use of glucose, as well as anti-insulin action and concomitant stimulation of gluconeogenesis (Table 32.3).

The most common cause of Cushing syndrome is the administration of glucocorticoids for such conditions as arthritis, asthma, and allergies. In these conditions, the adrenal glands atrophy and cannot respond to stressful situations (e.g., the perioperative period) by secreting more steroid; therefore, additional glucocorticoids may be required perioperatively (see the later section "Patients Taking Steroids for Other Reasons"). Spontaneous Cushing syndrome may be caused by pituitary production of ACTH (65% to 75% of all spontaneous cases), which is usually associated with pituitary microadenoma, or by nonendocrine ectopic ACTH production (principally by tumors of the lung, pancreas, or thymus).[49] Ten percent to 20% of cases of spontaneous Cushing syndrome are caused by an ACTH-independent process, either an adrenal adenoma or carcinoma.[49]

Special preoperative and preprocedure considerations for patients with Cushing syndrome include regulating blood glucose control, managing hypertension, and ensuring intravascular volume and electrolyte concentrations are normal. Ectopic ACTH production may cause marked hypokalemic alkalosis. Treatment with the aldosterone antagonist spironolactone stops the potassium loss and helps mobilize excess fluid. Because of the incidence of severe osteopenia and the risk of fractures, meticulous attention must be paid to positioning of the patient. In addition, glucocorticoids are lympholytic and immunosuppressive, thus increasing the patient's susceptibility to infection. The tensile strength of healing wounds decreases in the presence of glucocorticoids, an effect that is at least partially reversed by the topical administration of vitamin A.

Ten percent to 15% of patients with Cushing syndrome exhibit adrenal overproduction of glucocorticoids from an adrenal adenoma or carcinoma. If either unilateral or bilateral adrenal resection is planned, the physician should begin administering glucocorticoids at the start of resection of the tumor. Despite the absence of definitive studies, 100 mg of hydrocortisone every 24 hours intravenously is reasonable. This amount can be reduced over a period of 3 to 6 days until a maintenance dose is reached. Beginning on day 3, the surgeons may also give a mineralocorticoid, 9α-fluorocortisol (0.05-0.1 mg/day). In certain patients, both steroids may require several adjustments. This therapy continues if the patient has undergone bilateral resection. For a patient who has undergone unilateral adrenal resection, therapy is individualized according to the status of the remaining adrenal gland. The incidence of pneumothorax in an open adrenal resection approach can be as high as 20%; the diagnosis of pneumothorax is sought and treatment is initiated before the wound is closed. The use of the laparoscopic technique has markedly decreased this complication.

Bilateral adrenalectomy (now performed laparoscopically) in patients with Cushing syndrome is associated with a perioperative morbidity rate up to 20% and a perioperative mortality rate up to 3%. This procedure often results in permanent mineralocorticoid and glucocorticoid deficiency.[49a] Ten percent of patients with Cushing syndrome who undergo adrenalectomy have an undiagnosed pituitary tumor. After cortisol concentrations are decreased by adrenalectomy, the pituitary tumor will likely enlarge. These pituitary tumors are potentially invasive and may produce large amounts of ACTH and melanocyte-stimulating hormone, thereby increasing pigmentation.

Approximately 85% of adrenal tumors are discovered incidentally during screening CT scans. Nonfunctioning adrenal adenomas are found in patients on autopsy, ranging from 1% to 32% in different series. Functioning adenomas are generally treated surgically; often, the contralateral gland resumes functioning after several months. Frequently, however, the effects of carcinomas are not cured surgically. In such cases, administration of inhibitors of steroid synthesis, such as metyrapone or mitotane (*o*,*p*′-DDD[2,2-bis(2-chlorophenyl4-chlorophenyl)-1,1-dichloroethane]), may ameliorate some symptoms, as these drugs and specific aldosterone antagonists may aid in reducing symptoms of ectopic ACTH secretion if the primary tumor is unresectable. Patients given these adrenal suppressants are also prescribed long-term glucocorticoid replacement therapy with the goal of therapy being complete adrenal suppression. Therefore, these patients should be considered to have suppressed adrenal function, and glucocorticoid replacement should be increased perioperatively.

Mineralocorticoid Excess. Excess mineralocorticoid activity (common with glucocorticoid excess because most glucocorticoids have some mineralocorticoid properties) leads to potassium depletion, sodium retention, muscle weakness, hypertension, tetany, polyuria, inability to concentrate urine, and hypokalemic alkalosis. These symptoms constitute primary hyperaldosteronism, or Conn syndrome (a cause of low-renin hypertension because renin secretion is inhibited by the effects of the high levels of aldosterone).

Primary hyperaldosteronism is present in 0.5% to 1% of hypertensive patients who have no other known cause of hypertension. Primary hyperaldosteronism most often results from unilateral adenoma, although 25% to 40% of patients have been found to have bilateral adrenal hyperplasia. Intravascular fluid volume, electrolyte concentrations, and renal function should be restored to within normal limits preoperatively by administering the aldosterone antagonist spironolactone. The effects of spironolactone are slow in onset and increase for 1 to 2 weeks. Frequently, a period of at least 24 hours is required to restore potassium equilibrium as the deficit can be up to 400 mEq; however, normal serum potassium level does not necessarily imply correction of a total-body deficit of potassium. In addition, patients with Conn syndrome have a high incidence of hypertension and ischemic heart disease; hemodynamic monitoring should be tailored to the individual patient.

A retrospective anecdotal study indicated that intraoperative hemodynamic status was more stable when arterial blood pressure and electrolytes were controlled preoperatively with spironolactone than when other antihypertensive agents were used. However, the efficacy of optimizing the perioperative status of patients who have disorders of glucocorticoid or mineralocorticoid secretion has not been clearly defined. Therefore, we have assumed that gradual restoration of physiologic norms is good medicine and expect that it would decrease perioperative morbidity and mortality.

Adrenocortical Hormone Deficiency

Glucocorticoid Deficiency. Withdrawal of steroids or suppression of synthesis by steroid therapy is the leading cause of underproduction of corticosteroids (its management is discussed in the later section "Patients Taking Steroids for Other Reasons"). Other causes of adrenocortical insufficiency include the following: defects in ACTH secretion and destruction of the adrenal gland by autoimmune disease, tuberculosis, hemorrhage (e.g., Sheehan syndrome), or cancer; some forms of congenital adrenal hyperplasia (see previous discussion); and administration of cytotoxic drugs.

Primary adrenal insufficiency (Addison disease) is associated with local destruction of all zones of the adrenal cortex and results in both glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid deficiency if the insufficiency is bilateral; common symptoms and signs are listed in Table 32.3. Autoimmune disease is the most common cause of primary (nonexogenous) bilateral ACTH deficiency in the United States, whereas tuberculosis is the most common cause worldwide. Tuberculosis is associated not only with decreased adrenal function, but also large adrenal glands, which are a common finding in sarcoidosis, histoplasmosis, amyloidosis, metastatic malignant disease, heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, and adrenal hemorrhage. Further, destruction or injury by trauma, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), and other infections (e.g., cytomegalovirus, mycobacteria, and fungi) is being recognized more frequently.

Autoimmune destruction of the adrenal glands may be associated with other autoimmune disorders, such as some forms of type 1 diabetes and Hashimoto thyroiditis. Enzymatic defects in cortisol synthesis cause glucocorticoid insufficiency, compensatory elevations in ACTH, and congenital adrenal hyperplasia. Because adrenal insufficiency usually develops slowly, such patients are subject to marked pigmentation (from excess ACTH trying to stimulate an unproductive adrenal gland) and cardiopenia (secondary to chronic hypotension).

Secondary adrenal insufficiency occurs when ACTH secretion is deficient, often because of a pituitary or hypothalamic tumor. Treatment of pituitary tumors by surgery or radiation therapy may result in hypopituitarism and subsequent adrenal failure.

If unstressed, glucocorticoid-deficient patients usually have no perioperative problems. However, acute adrenal crisis (addisonian crisis) can occur when even a minor stress is present (e.g., upper respiratory infection). Preparation of such a patient for anesthesia and surgery should include treatment of hypovolemia, hyperkalemia, and hyponatremia. Because these patients cannot respond to stressful situations, it was traditionally recommended that they be given a stress dose of glucocorticoids (≈200 mg hydrocortisone/day) perioperatively. However, Symreng and colleagues gave 25 mg of hydrocortisone phosphate intravenously to adults at the start of the operative procedure, followed by 100 mg intravenously over the next 24 hours.[50] Because using the minimum drug dose that would produce an appropriate effect is desirable, this latter regimen seems attractive. Such a regimen has proved to be as successful as a regimen using maximum doses (≈300 mg hydrocortisone/day). Thus we now recommend giving the patient's usual daily dose plus 50 to 100 mg of hydrocortisone before surgical incision and 25 to 50 mg of hydrocortisone every 8 hours for 24 to 48 hours, depending on the type and duration of surgery.[47b]

Mineralocorticoid Deficiency. Hypoaldosteronism, a less common condition, can be congenital, can occur after unilateral adrenalectomy, or be a consequence of prolonged heparin administration, long-standing diabetes, or renal failure. Nonsteroidal inhibitors of prostaglandin synthesis may also inhibit renin release and exacerbate this condition in patients with renal insufficiency. Plasma renin activity is lower than normal and fails to increase appropriately in response to sodium restriction or diuretic drugs. Most symptoms are caused by hyperkalemic acidosis rather than hypovolemia; in fact, some patients are hypertensive. These patients can have severe hyperkalemia, hyponatremia, and myocardial conduction defects. These defects can be treated successfully by administering mineralocorticoids (9α-fluorocortisol, 0.05-0.1 mg/day) preoperatively. Doses must be carefully titrated and monitored to avoid an increase in hypertension.

Patients Taking Steroids for Other Reasons

Perioperative Stress and the Need for Corticoid Supplementation. The adrenal responses of normal patients to the perioperative period, as well as the responses of patients taking steroids for other diseases, indicate the following:

1. Perioperative stress is related to the degree of trauma and the depth of anesthesia. Deep general or regional anesthesia delays the usual intraoperative glucocorticoid surge to the postoperative period.
2. A few patients with suppressed adrenal function will have perioperative cardiovascular problems if they do not receive supplemental steroids perioperatively.
3. Although a patient who takes steroids on a long-term basis may become hypotensive perioperatively; glucocorticoid or mineralocorticoid deficiency is seldom the cause. Longer duration and higher home steroid dose increase the likelihood of deficiency.[47b]
4. Acute adrenal insufficiency rarely occurs, but can be life-threatening.
5. Giving these patients steroid coverage equivalent to 100 mg of hydrocortisone perioperatively has little risk.[47b]

In a well-controlled study of glucocorticoid replacement in nonhuman primates, the investigators clearly defined the life-threatening events that can be associated with inadequate perioperative corticosteroid replacement.[48] In this study, adrenalectomized primates and sham-operated controls were given physiologic doses of steroids for 4 months. The animals were then randomly allocated to groups that received subphysiologic (one-tenth of the normal cortisol production), physiologic, or supraphysiologic (10 times the normal cortisol production) doses of cortisol for 4 days preceding abdominal surgery (cholecystectomy). The group given subphysiologic doses of steroid perioperatively had a significant increase in postoperative mortality. Death rates for the physiologic and supraphysiologic replacement groups were the same and did not differ from the rate for sham-operated controls. Death in the subphysiologic replacement group was related to severe hypotension associated with a significant decrease in systemic vascular resistance and a reduced left ventricular stroke work index. Filling pressures of the heart were unchanged when compared with those in control animals. No evidence of hypovolemia or severe congestive heart failure (CHF) was observed. Despite the low systemic vascular resistance, the animals did not become tachycardic. All these responses are compatible with the previously documented interaction of glucocorticoids and catecholamines, and thus suggest that glucocorticoids mediate catecholamine-induced increases in cardiac contractility and maintenance of vascular tone.

The investigators used a sensitive measure of wound healing involving accumulation of hydroxyproline. All treatment groups, including the group given supraphysiologic doses of glucocorticoids, had the same capacity for wound healing. Furthermore, perioperative administration of supraphysiologic doses of corticosteroids produced no adverse metabolic consequences.

This study confirmed long-standing intuitive impressions concerning patients who had inadequate adrenal function as a result of either underlying disease or administration of exogenous steroids—inadequate replacement of corticosteroids can lead to addisonian crisis and increased mortality, whereas the administration of supraphysiologic doses of steroids for a short time perioperatively can be safe. It is clear that inadequate corticosteroid coverage can cause death, but what is not so clear is what dose of steroid should be recommended for replacement therapy. Yong and colleagues reviewed the randomized controlled trials for a Cochrane Systemic Review and reported only two trials involving 37 patients that met the inclusion criteria.[51] These studies reported that supplemental perioperative steroids were not required during surgery for patients with adrenal insufficiency, but neither study reported any adverse effects or complications in the intervention or control groups. The authors concluded that they were unable to support or refute the use of supplemental perioperative steroids for patients with adrenal insufficiency during surgery. Because the risk is low and the benefit is high, physicians should consider providing supplementation for any patient who has received steroids within a year.[48,50]

How can one determine when adrenal responsiveness has returned to normal? The morning plasma cortisol level does not reveal whether the adrenal cortex has recovered sufficiently to ensure that cortisol secretion will increase adequately to meet the demands of stress. Inducing hypoglycemia with insulin has been advocated as a sensitive test of pituitary-adrenal competence, but it is impractical and is probably a more dangerous practice than simply administering glucocorticoids. If the plasma cortisol concentration is measured during acute stress, a value of greater than 25 μg/dL assuredly (and a value >15 μg/dL probably) indicates normal pituitary-adrenal responsiveness. In another test of pituitary-adrenal sufficiency, the baseline plasma cortisol level is determined. Then, 250 μg of synthetic ACTH (cosyntropin) is given, and plasma cortisol is measured 30 to 60 minutes later. An increase in plasma cortisol of 6 to 20 μg/dL or more is normal.[52,53] A normal response indicates recovery of pituitary-adrenal axis function. A lesser response usually indicates pituitary-adrenal insufficiency, possibly requiring perioperative supplementation with steroids.[53a]

Under perioperative conditions, the adrenal glands secrete 116 to 185 mg of cortisol daily. Under maximum stress, they may secrete 200 to 500 mg/day. Good correlation exists between the severity and duration of the operation and the response of the adrenal gland. "Major surgery" would be represented by procedures such as laparoscopic colectomy and "minor surgery" by procedures such as herniorrhaphy. In a study of 20 patients during major surgery, the mean maximal concentration of cortisol in plasma was 47 μg/dL (range, 22-75 μg/dL). Values remained higher than 26 μg/dL for a maximum of 72 hours postoperatively. During minor surgery, the mean maximal concentration of cortisol in plasma was 28 μg/dL (range, 10-44 μg/dL).

Although the precise amount required has not been established, we usually intravenously administer the maximum amount of glucocorticoid that the body manufactures in response to maximal stress (i.e., approximately 200 mg/day of hydrocortisone).[53b] For minor surgical procedures, we usually give hydrocortisone intravenously, 50 to 100 mg/day. Unless infection or some other perioperative complication develops, we decrease this dose by approximately 50%/day until the standard home dose is resumed. For major surgical procedures, we usually give 50 mg every 6 hours to 100 mg every 8 hours. Again unless a complication develops, this is decreased 50%/day until the standard home dose is resumed.[53b]

Risks of Supplementation. Rare complications of perioperative steroid supplementation include aggravation of hypertension, fluid retention, inducement of stress ulcers, and psychiatric disturbances. Two possible complications of short-term perioperative supplementation with glucocorticoids are abnormal wound healing and an increased rate of infections. This evidence is inconclusive, however, because it relates to short-term glucocorticoid administration and not to long-term administration of glucocorticoids with increased doses at times of stress. In contrast to a deleterious effect of perioperative glucocorticoid administration on wound healing in rats, a study involving primates suggested that large doses of glucocorticoids, administered perioperatively, do not impair sensitive measures of wound healing.[48] An overall assessment of these results suggests that short-term perioperative supplementation with steroids has a small but definite deleterious effect on wound healing that is perhaps partially reversed by topical administration of vitamin A.

Information on the risk of infection from perioperative glucocorticoid supplementation is also unclear as there are no controlled trials addressing these effects. In many studies of long-term use by patients and supplementation, no increased risk of serious infections was reported with long-term use of steroids alone. Data indicate that the risk of infection in a patient taking steroids on a long-term basis is real, but whether perioperative supplementation with steroids increases that risk is not clear.

Adrenal Cortex Function in Older Adults

Production of androgens by the adrenal gland progressively decreases with age; this change has no known implications for anesthesia. Plasma levels of cortisol are unaffected by increasing age. Levels of CBG are also unaffected by age, a finding suggesting that a normal fraction of free cortisol (1%-5%) is present in older patients. Older patients have a progressively impaired ability to metabolize and excrete glucocorticoids. In normal individuals, the quantity of 17-hydroxycorticosteroids excreted is reduced by half by the seventh decade. This decreased excretion undoubtedly reflects the reduced renal function that occurs with aging. When excretion of cortisol metabolites is expressed as a function of creatinine clearance, the age difference disappears. Further reductions in cortisol clearance may reflect impaired hepatic metabolism of circulating cortisol.

The rate of secretion of cortisol is 30% slower in older adults. This reduced secretion may be an appropriate compensatory mechanism for maintaining a normal cortisol level in the presence of decreased hepatic and renal clearance of cortisol. The reduced cortisol production can be overcome during periods of stress, and even extremely old patients (>100 years old) display an entirely normal adrenal response to the administration of ACTH and to stresses such as hypoglycemia.

Both underproduction and overproduction of glucocorticoids are generally considered diseases of younger individuals. The highest incidence of Cushing disease of either pituitary or adrenal origin occurs during the third decade of life. The most common cause of spontaneous Cushing disease is benign pituitary adenoma. However, in patients older than 60 years in whom Cushing disease develops, the most likely cause is adrenal carcinoma or ectopic ACTH production from tumors usually located in the lung, pancreas, or thymus.

ADRENAL MEDULLARY SYMPATHETIC HORMONE EXCESS: PHEOCHROMOCYTOMA

Less than 0.1% of all cases of hypertension are caused by pheochromocytomas, or catecholamine-producing tumors derived from chromaffin tissue.[54] Nevertheless, these tumors are clearly important to the anesthesiologist as previously 25% to 50% of hospital deaths in patients with pheochromocytoma occurred during induction of anesthesia or during operative procedures for other causes.[55] This high mortality has been reduced with the improvements in anesthesia management during our current era.[55a] Although usually found in the adrenal medulla, these vascular tumors can occur anywhere (referred to as paragangliomas), with a proportion of up to 20%.[55b] Malignant spread, which occurs in less than 15% of pheochromocytomas, usually proceeds to venous and lymphatic channels with a predisposition for the liver. This tumor is occasionally familial or part of the multiglandular-neoplastic syndrome known as multiple endocrine adenoma type IIa or type IIb, and is manifested as an autosomal dominant trait. Type IIa consists of medullary carcinoma of the thyroid, parathyroid adenoma or hyperplasia, and pheochromocytoma. What used to be called type IIb is now often called pheochromocytoma in association with phakomatoses such as von Recklinghausen neurofibromatosis and von Hippel–Lindau disease with cerebellar hemangioblastoma. Frequently, bilateral tumors are found in the familial form. Localization of tumors can be achieved by MRI or CT, metaiodobenzylguanidine nuclear scanning, ultrasonography, or intravenous pyelography (in decreasing order of combined sensitivity and specificity).

Symptoms and signs that may be solicited before surgery or procedures and are suggestive of pheochromocytoma are as follows: excessive sweating; headache; hypertension; orthostatic hypotension; previous hypertensive or arrhythmic response to induction of anesthesia or to abdominal examination; paroxysmal attacks of sweating, headache, tachycardia, and hypertension; glucose intolerance; polycythemia; weight loss; and psychological abnormalities. In fact, the occurrence of combined symptoms of paroxysmal headache, sweating, and hypertension is probably a more sensitive and specific indicator than any one biochemical test for pheochromocytoma (Table 32.4).

The value of preoperative and preprocedure adrenergic receptor blocking drugs probably justifies their use as these drugs may reduce the perioperative complications of hypertensive crisis, the wide arterial blood pressure fluctuations during tumor manipulation (especially until venous drainage is obliterated), and the myocardial dysfunction. Mortality is decreased with resection of pheochromocytoma (from 40% to 60% to the current 0% to 6%) when adrenergic receptor blockade is introduced as preoperative and preprocedure preparatory therapy for such patients.[56-60]

α-Adrenergic receptor blockade with prazosin or phenoxybenzamine restores intravascular plasma volume by counteracting the vasoconstrictive effects of high levels of catecholamines. This reexpansion of intravascular fluid volume is often followed by a decrease in hematocrit. Because some patients may be very sensitive to the effects of phenoxybenzamine, this drug should initially be

TABLE 32.4 Characteristics of Tests for Pheochromocytoma

			LIKELIHOOD RATIO	
Test/Symptoms	**Sensitivity (%)**	**Specificity (%)**	**Positive Result***	**Negative Result†**
Vanillylmandelic acid excretion	81	97	27.0	0.20
Catecholamine excretion	82	95	16.4	0.19
Metanephrine excretion	83	95	16.6	0.18
Abdominal computed tomography	92	80	4.6	0.10
Concurrent paroxysmal hypertension, headache, sweating, and tachycardia‡	90	95	18.0	0.10

*The ratio representing the likelihood of a positive result is obtained by dividing the sensitivity by 1 and then subtracting the specificity.
†The ratio representing the likelihood of a negative result is obtained by subtracting the sensitivity from 1 and the dividing by the specificity.
‡Data for concurrent paroxysmal symptoms are best estimates from available data.
Modified from Pauker SG, Kopelman RI. Interpreting hoofbeats: can Bayes help clear the haze? *N Engl J Med.* 1992;327:1009–1013.

given in doses of 20 to 30 mg/70 kg orally once or twice a day. Most patients usually require 60 to 250 mg/day. The Endocrine Society Task Force guidelines from 2014 recommend α-adrenergic receptor blockade for all patients with active tumors.[60a] The efficacy of therapy should be judged by the reduction in symptoms and stabilization of arterial blood pressure. For patients who have carbohydrate intolerance because of inhibition of insulin release mediated by α-adrenergic receptor stimulation, α-adrenergic receptor blockade may reduce fasting blood glucose levels. For patients who exhibit ST-T changes on the ECG, long-term preoperative and preprocedure α-adrenergic receptor blockade (1-6 months) has produced ECG and clinical resolution of catecholamine-induced myocarditis.[56,57,59-63]

β-Adrenergic receptor blockade with propranolol is suggested for patients who have persistent arrhythmias or tachycardia,[56,57,59-63] the reason being that these conditions can be precipitated or aggravated by α-adrenergic receptor blockade. It is important to remember that β-adrenergic receptor blockade should not be used without concurrent α-adrenergic receptor blockade lest the vasoconstrictive effects of the latter go unopposed and thereby increasing the risk of malignant hypertension.

The optimal duration of preoperative therapy with α-adrenergic receptor blockade has not been well studied. The Endocrine Society Task Force guidelines from 2014 recommend α-adrenergic receptor blockade at least 7 to 14 days prior to surgery; however, most centers report a preoperative treatment duration of 2 to 6 weeks.[19] Most patients will require 10 to 14 days, as judged by the time needed to stabilize arterial blood pressure and ameliorate symptoms. The Endocrine Society Task Force guidelines further recommended a high sodium diet and fluid intake to reverse the catecholamine-induced volume contraction.[63a] Because the tumor spreads slowly, little is lost by waiting until medical therapy has optimized the patient's preoperative condition. The following criteria are reasonable for assessing the adequacy of treatment:

1. No in-hospital arterial blood pressure reading higher than 165/90 mm Hg should be evident for 48 hours preoperatively.
2. Orthostatic hypotension is acceptable as long as arterial blood pressure when the patient is standing is not less than 80/45 mm Hg.
3. The ECG should be free of ST-T changes that are not permanent.
4. No more than one premature ventricular contraction (PVC) should occur every 5 minutes.

Other drugs, including prazosin, calcium channel blocking drugs, clonidine, dexmedetomidine, and magnesium, have also been used to achieve suitable degrees of α-adrenergic blockade preoperatively. Multiple case series have confirmed the clinical utility of this approach in adults before tumor excision, including in a hemodynamic catecholamine crisis.[64] Magnesium therapy has shown efficacy for the resection of pheochromocytoma or paraganglioma during pregnancy. The dosing of magnesium for the management of pheochromocytoma has been reviewed elsewhere.[65]

The key clinical components of ideal patient care include optimal preoperative preparation, slow and controlled induction of anesthesia, and good communication among members of the perioperative team. Virtually all anesthetic drugs and techniques (including isoflurane, sevoflurane, sufentanil, remifentanil, fentanyl, and regional anesthesia) have been used with success, although all drugs studied were associated with a high rate of transient intraoperative arrhythmias.[59]

Because of ease of use, the preference is to give phenylephrine for hypotension and nitroprusside or nicardipine for hypertension. Phentolamine has too long an onset and duration of action. Painful or stressful events such as intubation often cause an exaggerated stress response in less than perfectly anesthetized patients who have pheochromocytoma. This response is caused by release of catecholamines from nerve endings that are "loaded" by the reuptake process. Such stresses may result in catecholamine levels of 200 to 2000 picograms (pg)/mL in normal patients. For a patient with pheochromocytoma, even simple stress can lead to blood catecholamine levels of ten times normal. However, infarction of a tumor, with release of products onto peritoneal surfaces, or surgical pressure causing release of products, can result in blood levels of 200,000 to 1,000,000 pg/mL—a situation that should be anticipated and avoided (if possible ask for a stay of surgery to increase vasodilator infusion). Once the venous supply is secured and if intravascular volume is normal, normal arterial blood pressure usually results. However, some patients may become hypotensive and occasionally require catecholamine infusions. Vasopressin has also been used for hemodynamic rescue in catecholamine-resistant vasoplegic shock after resection of a massive pheochromocytoma.[66] On rare occasion, patients remain hypertensive intraoperatively. Postoperatively, approximately 50% of patients remain hypertensive for 1 to 3 days and initially have markedly increased but declining plasma catecholamine levels—at which time all but 25% will become normotensive. Other family members should be advised to inform their future anesthesiologist about the potential for such familial disease.

HYPOFUNCTION OR ABERRATION IN FUNCTION OF THE SYMPATHETIC NERVOUS SYSTEM (DYSAUTONOMIA)

Disorders of the sympathetic nervous system include Shy-Drager syndrome, Riley-Day syndrome, Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, Gill familial dysautonomia, diabetic dysautonomia, and the dysautonomia of spinal cord transection.

Although individuals can function well without an adrenal medulla, a deficient peripheral sympathetic nervous system occurring late in life poses major problems; nevertheless, perioperative sympathectomy or its equivalent is often recommended.[67-73] A primary function of the sympathetic nervous system appears to be regulation of arterial blood pressure and intravascular fluid volume during changing of body position. Common features of all the syndromes with hypofunction of the sympathetic nervous system are orthostatic hypotension and decreased beat-to-beat variability in heart rate. These conditions can be caused by deficient intravascular volume, deficient baroreceptor function (as also occurs in carotid artery disease[74]), abnormalities in CNS function (as in Wernicke or Shy-Drager syndrome), deficient neuronal stores of norepinephrine (as in idiopathic orthostatic hypotension[75] and diabetes), or deficient release of norepinephrine (as in traumatic spinal cord injury[76]). These patients may have a compensatory upregulation of available adrenergic receptors causing an exaggerated response to sympathomimetic drugs. In addition to other abnormalities, such as retention of urine or feces and deficient heat exchange, hypofunction of the sympathetic nervous system is often accompanied by renal amyloidosis. Thus electrolyte and intravascular fluid volume status should be assessed preoperatively. Because many of these patients have cardiac abnormalities, cardiac function and intravascular volume status may require invasive assessment with echocardiography, central venous catheter, or a pulmonary artery catheter per the treating physician's discretion.

Because the functioning of the sympathetic nervous system is not predictable in these patients, slow and controlled induction of anesthesia and treatment of sympathetic excess or deficiency should be initiated through titratable direct-acting vasodilators (nicardipine/nitroprusside), vasoconstrictors (phenylephrine/norepinephrine), chronotropes (isoproterenol), or negative chronotropes (esmolol). A 20% perioperative mortality rate for 2600 patients after spinal cord transection has been reported, thus indicating that such patients are difficult to manage and deserve particularly close attention.

After reviewing 300 patients with spinal cord injuries, Kendrick and coworkers concluded that autonomic hyperreflexia syndrome does not develop if the lesion is below spinal dermatome T7.[77] If the lesion is above that level (splanchnic outflow), 60% to 70% of patients experience extreme vascular instability. The trigger to this instability, a mass reflex involving noradrenergic release and motor hypertonus, can be a cutaneous, proprioceptive, or visceral stimulus (a full bladder is a common initiator). The sensation enters the spinal cord and causes a spinal reflex, which in normal persons is inhibited from above. Sudden increases in arterial blood pressure are sensed in the pressure receptors of the aorta and carotid sinus. The resulting vagal hyperactivity produces bradycardia, ventricular ectopia, or various degrees of heart block. Reflex vasodilation may occur above the level of the lesion and result in flushing of the head and neck. In the acute injury period, modest therapeutic hypothermia may provide benefit but many note that further large randomized trials are needed; the anesthesiologist must be vigilant to avoid hyperthermia and maintain normothermia—hypothermia during procedures.[77a]

Depending on the length of time since spinal cord transection, other abnormalities may occur. In the short term (i.e., <3 weeks from the time of spinal injury), retention of urine and feces is common and, through elevation of the diaphragm, may affect respiration. Hyperesthesia is present above the lesion; reflexes and flaccid paralysis are present below the lesion. The intermediate period (3 days to 6 months) is marked by a hyperkalemic response to depolarizing drugs.[78] The chronic phase is characterized by return of muscle tone, Babinski sign, and, frequently, the occurrence of hyperreflexia syndromes (e.g., mass reflex [see earlier]).

Thus in addition to meticulous attention to perioperative intravascular volume and electrolyte status, the anesthesiologist should know—by history taking, physical examination, and laboratory data—the status of the patient's myocardial conduction (as revealed by the ECG), the status of renal functioning (by noting the ratio of creatinine to blood urea nitrogen [BUN]), and the condition of the respiratory muscles (by determining the ratio of forced expiratory volume in 1 second to forced vital capacity). The anesthesiologist may also obtain a chest radiograph if atelectasis or pneumonia is suspected on the basis of history taking or the physical examination. Temperature control, the presence of bone fractures or decubitus ulcers, and normal functioning of the urination and defecation systems must be assessed.

THYROID DYSFUNCTION

The major thyroid hormones are thyroxine (T_4), a prohormone product of the thyroid gland, and the more potent 3,5,3-triiodothyronine (T_3), a product of both the thyroid and extrathyroidal enzymatic deiodination of T_4. Under normal circumstances, approximately 85% of T_3 is produced outside the thyroid gland. Production of thyroid secretions is maintained by secretion of thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) in the pituitary, which in turn is regulated by secretion of thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) in the hypothalamus. Secretion of TSH and TRH appears to be negatively regulated by T_4 and T_3. Many investigators believe that all effects of thyroid hormones are mediated by T_3 and that T_4 functions only as a prohormone.

TABLE 32.5 Biochemical Measurements of Thyroid Function That Account for Variation in Production of Thyroxine-Binding Globulin

	EXAMPLES OF NORMAL THYROID STATUS*					
	FT$_4$E	**=**	**T$_4$**	**×**	**THBR**	**TSH**
Normal	0.19 (0.12-0.25)	=	0.6 (0.4-0.9)	×	31% (25%-35%)	0.2 (0.2-0.8)
During use of oral contraceptives	0.19	=	1.3	×	15%	0.3
During use of corticosteroids	0.18	=	0.3	×	60%	0.3

*FT$_4$E is the free T$_4$ (thyroxine) estimate. It is usually obtained by multiplying the total T$_4$ concentration (the free amount and the amount bound to protein) by the thyroid hormone–binding ratio (THBR, formerly called the resin T$_3$ uptake). THBR is a measure of the bound thyroid hormone–binding protein. TSH is the thyroid-stimulating hormone secreted by the pituitary in the negative feedback loop. (TSH increases when FT$_4$E is low in hypothyroidism.)

BOX 32.2 **Factors Influencing Serum Levels of Thyroxine-Binding Globulin**

Conditions Increasing Serum Levels

- Use of oral contraceptives
- Pregnancy
- Use of estrogen
- Infectious hepatitis
- Chronic active hepatitis
- Neonatal state
- Acute intermittent porphyria
- Inherited conditions

Conditions Decreasing Serum Levels

- Testosterone
- Use of corticosteroids
- Severe illness
- Cirrhosis
- Nephrotic syndrome
- Inherited conditions

Because T$_3$ has greater biologic effect than does T$_4$, one would expect the diagnosis of thyroid disorders to be based on levels of T$_3$. However, this is not usually the case. The diagnosis of thyroid disease is confirmed by one of several biochemical measurements: levels of free T$_4$ or total serum concentrations of T$_4$ and the "free T$_4$ estimate." This estimate is obtained by multiplying total T$_4$ (free and bound) by the thyroid-binding ratio (formerly called resin T$_3$ uptake) (Table 32.5). Free T$_4$ can be accurately measured by many laboratories, this direct measurement of free T$_4$ obviates the need to account for changes in binding protein synthesis and affinity caused by other conditions. The T$_3$-binding ratio measures the extra quantity of serum protein-binding sites. This measurement is necessary because thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG) levels are abnormally high during pregnancy, hepatic disease, and estrogen therapy (all of which would elevate the total T$_4$ level; Box 32.2). Reliable interpretation of measurements of the total hormone concentration in serum necessitates data on the percentage of bound hormone. The thyroid hormone–binding ratio test provides this information. In this test, iodine-labeled T$_3$ is added to a patient's serum and is allowed to reach an equilibrium binding state. A resin is then added that binds the remaining radioactive T$_3$. Resin uptake is greater if the patient has fewer TBG-binding sites. In normal patients, resin T$_3$ uptake (the thyroid hormone–binding ratio) is 25% to 35%. When serum TBG is elevated, the thyroid hormone–binding ratio is diminished (see Table 32.5). When serum TBG is diminished, as in nephrotic syndrome, in conditions in which glucocorticoids are increased, or in chronic liver disease, the thyroid hormone–binding ratio is increased.

The free T$_4$ estimate and the free T$_3$ estimate are frequently used as measures of a patient's serum T$_4$ and T$_3$ hormone concentrations, respectively. To obtain these estimates, the concentration of total serum T$_4$ or total serum T$_3$ is multiplied by the measured thyroid hormone–binding ratio. Values of these two indices are normal in the event of a primary alteration in binding but not with an alteration in secretion of thyroid hormone.

Hyperthyroidism can be diagnosed by measuring levels of TSH after the administration of TRH. Although administering TRH normally increases TSH levels in blood, even a small increase in the T$_4$ or T$_3$ level in blood abolishes this response. Thus a subnormal or absent serum TSH response to TRH is a very sensitive indicator of hyperthyroidism. In one group of disorders involving hyperthyroidism, serum TSH levels are elevated in the presence of elevated levels of free thyroid hormone.

Measurement of the α-subunit of TSH has been helpful in identifying the rare patients who have a pituitary neoplasm and who usually have increased α-subunit concentrations. Some patients are clinically euthyroid in the presence of elevated levels of total T$_4$ in serum. Certain drugs, notably propranolol, glucocorticoids, and amiodarone, block the conversion of T$_4$ to T$_3$ and thereby elevate T$_4$ levels. Severe illness also slows this conversion, termed "sick thyroid" in a critical-illness setting. Levels of TSH are often high in situations in which the rate of conversion is decreased. In hyperthyroidism, cardiac function and responses to stress are abnormal; return of normal cardiac function parallels the return of TSH levels to normal.

Hyperthyroidism

Although hyperthyroidism is usually caused by the multinodular diffuse enlargement in Graves disease (also associated with disorders of the skin or eyes, or both), it can also occur with pregnancy, thyroiditis, thyroid adenoma, choriocarcinoma, or TSH-secreting pituitary adenoma. Five percent of women have thyrotoxic effects 3 to 6 months postpartum and tend to have recurrences with subsequent pregnancies. Major manifestations of hyperthyroidism are weight loss, diarrhea, warm and moist skin, weakness of large muscle groups, menstrual abnormalities, osteopenia, nervousness, jitteriness, intolerance to heat, tachycardia, cardiac arrhythmias, mitral valve prolapse, and heart failure. When the thyroid is functioning abnormally, the cardiovascular system is most at risk. When diarrhea is severe, the associated dehydration and electrolyte abnormalities should be corrected preoperatively. Mild anemia, thrombocytopenia, increased serum alkaline phosphatase, hypercalcemia, muscle wasting, and bone loss frequently occur in hyperthyroidism. Muscle disease usually involves the proximal large muscle groups; it has not been reported to cause respiratory muscle paralysis. In the apathetic form of hyperthyroidism (seen most commonly in persons >60 years old), cardiac effects predominate and include tachycardia, irregular heart rhythm, atrial fibrillation (in 10%), heart failure, and occasionally, papillary muscle dysfunction.

Although β-adrenergic receptor blockade can control the heart rate, its use is challenging in the setting of heart failure. However, a decreasing heart rate may improve heart-pumping function. Thus hyperthyroid patients who have fast ventricular rates and in heart failure, requiring emergency surgery, can be safely given short-acting β-blockers guided by clinical response. If slowing the heart rate with a small dose of esmolol (50 μg/kg) does not aggravate the heart failure, the physician should administer more esmolol, and titrate to effect. Antithyroid medications include propylthiouracil and methimazole, both of which decrease the synthesis of T_4 and may enhance remission by reducing TSH receptor antibody levels (the primary pathologic mechanism in Graves disease). Propylthiouracil also decreases the conversion of T_4 to the more potent T_3. However, the literature indicates a trend toward preoperative preparation with propranolol and iodides alone.[79] This approach is quicker (i.e., 7-14 days vs. 2-6 weeks); it shrinks the thyroid gland, as does the more traditional approach; it decreases conversion of the prohormone T_4 into the more potent T_3; and it treats symptoms but may not correct abnormalities in left ventricular function. Regardless of the approach, antithyroid drugs should be administered on a long-term basis and on the morning of the surgical procedure. If emergency surgery is necessary before the euthyroid state is achieved, if subclinical hyperthyroidism progresses without adequate treatment, or if hyperthyroidism is out of control intraoperatively, intravenous administration of esmolol, 50 to 500 μ/kg, could be titrated to restore a normal heart rate (assuming the absence of heart failure). In addition, intravascular fluid volume and electrolyte balance should be restored. However, administering propranolol or esmolol does not always prevent "thyroid storm." No specific anesthetic drug is preferred for surgical patients who have hyperthyroidism.

A patient with a large goiter and an obstructed airway can be managed in the same way as any other patient with a problematic airway. In this type of case, reviewing CT scans of the neck preoperatively may provide valuable information regarding the extent of compression. Maintenance of anesthesia usually presents little difficulty. Postoperatively, extubation of the trachea should be performed under optimal circumstances for reintubation in the event that tracheomalacia (the tracheal rings have been weakened and the trachea collapses) developed.

Of the many possible postoperative complications including: nerve injury, bleeding, metabolic abnormalities, and thyroid storm (discussed in the next section); bilateral recurrent laryngeal nerve trauma and hypocalcemic tetany are the most feared. Bilateral recurrent laryngeal nerve injury (secondary to trauma or edema) causes stridor and laryngeal obstruction as a result of unopposed adduction of the vocal cords and closure of the glottic aperture. Immediate endotracheal intubation is required, usually followed by tracheostomy to ensure an adequate airway. Fortunately, Lahey Clinic records indicate that this rare complication occurred only once in more than 30,000 thyroid operations. Unilateral recurrent nerve injury often goes unnoticed because of compensatory overadduction of the uninvolved cord. However, we often test vocal cord function before and after this operation by asking the patient to say "e" or "moon." Unilateral nerve injury is characterized by hoarseness, whereas aphonia characterizes bilateral nerve injury. Selective injury to the adductor fibers of both recurrent laryngeal nerves leaves the abductor muscles relatively unopposed, and pulmonary aspiration is a risk. Selective injury to the abductor fibers leaves the adductor muscles relatively unopposed, and airway obstruction can occur.

The intimate involvement of the parathyroid gland with the thyroid gland can result in inadvertent hypocalcemia during surgery for thyroid disease. Complications related to hypocalcemia are discussed in the later section on this disorder.

Because postoperative hematoma can compromise the airway, neck and wound dressings are placed in a crossing fashion (rather than vertically or horizontally) and should be examined for evidence of bleeding before a patient is discharged from the recovery room.

Thyroid Storm

Thyroid storm is the name for the clinical diagnosis of a life-threatening illness in a patient whose hyperthyroidism has been severely exacerbated by illness or surgery. Thyroid storm is characterized by hyperthermia or pyrexia, tachycardia, and striking alterations in consciousness. Its clinical appearance is similar to malignant hyperthermia, pheochromocytoma, and neuroleptic malignant syndrome, further complicating the differential.[79a] No laboratory tests are diagnostic of thyroid storm, and the precipitating (nonthyroidal) cause is the major determinant of survival. Therapy can include blocking the synthesis of thyroid hormones by administering antithyroid drugs and the release of preformed hormone with iodine. Blocking the sympathetic nervous system symptoms with reserpine, α- and β-receptor antagonists, or α_2 drugs may be exceedingly hazardous and requires skillful management with constant monitoring of the critically ill patient.

Thyroid dysfunction, either hyperthyroidism or hypothyroidism, develops in more than 10% of patients treated with the antiarrhythmic agent amiodarone.[80] Approximately 35% of the drug's weight is iodine, and a 200-mg tablet releases approximately 20 times the optimal daily dose of iodine. This iodine can lead to reduced synthesis of T_4 or increased synthesis. In addition, amiodarone inhibits the conversion of T_4 to the more potent T_3. These patients receiving amiodarone are in need of special attention preoperatively and intraoperatively, not just because of the arrhythmia that led to such therapy, but to ensure that no perioperative dysfunction or surprises result from unsuspected thyroid hyperfunction or hypofunction.[81]

Hypothyroidism

Hypothyroidism is a common disease that has been detected in 5% of a large population in Great Britain, in 3% to 6% of a healthy older population in Massachusetts, in 4.5% of a medical clinic population in Switzerland, and in 8.5% of a large Turkish population presenting to an anesthesiology preoperative clinic.[81a] The apathy and lethargy that often accompany hypothyroidism frequently delay its diagnosis, thus the perioperative period may be the first opportunity to spot many such hypothyroid patients. However, hypothyroidism is usually subclinical, serum concentrations of thyroid hormones are in the normal range, and only serum TSH levels are elevated. The normal range of TSH is 0.3 to 4.5 milliunits/L, and TSH values of 5 to 15 milliunits/L are characteristic of this entity. In such cases, hypothyroidism may have little or no perioperative significance. However, a retrospective study of 59 mildly hypothyroid patients found that more hypothyroid patients than control subjects required prolonged postoperative intubation (9 of 59 vs. 4 of 59), had significant electrolyte imbalances (3 of 59 vs. 1 of 59), and bleeding complications (4 of 59 vs. 0 of 59).[82] Because only a few charts were examined, these differences did not reach statistical significance. In another study, overt hypothyroidism later developed in a high percentage of patients with a history of subclinical hypothyroidism.[83,84]

Overt hypothyroidism is associated with slow mental functioning, slow movement, slow reflexes, dry skin, arthralgias, carpal tunnel syndrome, periorbital edema, intolerance to cold, depression of the ventilatory responses to hypoxia and hypercapnia, impaired clearance of free water with or without hyponatremia, slow gastric emptying, sleep apnea,[85] and bradycardia. In extreme cases, cardiomegaly, heart failure, pericardial and pleural effusions can develop, often presenting as orthopnea, dyspnea, or general fatigue. Hypothyroidism is often associated with amyloidosis, which may produce an enlarged tongue, cardiac conduction abnormalities, and renal disease. Hypothyroidism decreases the anesthetic requirement slightly. The tongue may be enlarged in a hypothyroid patient even in the absence of amyloidosis, and such enlargement may hamper endotracheal intubation.

An increasing TSH level is the most sensitive indicator of failing thyroid function. Ideal preoperative and preprocedure management of hypothyroidism consists of restoring normal thyroid status: the physicians should consider administering the normal dose of levothyroxine the morning of the surgical procedure, even though these drugs have long half-lives (1.4-10 days). Reduced GI absorption of levothyroxine may occur with the coadministration of cholestyramine or aluminum hydroxide, iron, a high-bran meal, or sucralfate or colestipol. For patients in myxedema coma who require emergency surgery, liothyronine (T3 hormone) can be given intravenously (with fear of precipitating myocardial ischemia, however) while supportive therapy is undertaken to restore normal intravascular fluid volume, body temperature, cardiac function, respiratory function, and electrolyte balance.[85a]

In hypothyroidism, respiratory control mechanisms and renal fluid balance do not function normally, however, the response to hypoxia and hypercapnia, and clearance of free water normalize with thyroid replacement therapy. Drug metabolism is anecdotally reported to be slowed, and awakening times from sedatives are reported to be prolonged by hypothyroidism. However, few formal studies, and none in humans, of the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of sedatives or anesthetic drugs in this population have been published. These concerns disappear when thyroid function is normalized preoperatively. Addison disease (with its relative steroid deficiency) is more common in hypothyroidism, and some endocrinologists routinely treat patients with noniatrogenic hypothyroidism with stress doses of steroids perioperatively because both conditions are commonly caused by autoimmune responses. The possibility that this steroid deficiency exists should be considered if the patient becomes hypotensive perioperatively. Body heat mechanisms are inadequate in hypothyroid patients, so temperature should be monitored and maintained, especially in patients requiring emergency surgery. Because of an increased incidence of myasthenia gravis in hypothyroid patients, a peripheral nerve stimulator is used to guide judicious administration of muscle relaxants.

Thyroid Nodules and Carcinoma

More than 90% of thyroid nodules are benign, yet identifying malignancy in a solitary thyroid nodule is a difficult and important procedure. Male patients and patients with previous radiation therapy to the head and neck have an increased likelihood of malignant disease in their nodules. Often, needle biopsy and scanning are sufficient for the diagnosis, but occasionally excisional biopsy is needed. Papillary carcinoma accounts for more than 70% of all thyroid carcinomas. Simple excision of lymph node metastases appears to be as efficacious as radical neck procedures for the patient's survival. Follicular carcinoma, which accounts for approximately 15% of thyroid carcinomas, is more aggressive, and has a less favorable prognosis.

Medullary carcinoma, the most aggressive form of thyroid carcinoma, is associated with a familial occurrence of pheochromocytoma, as are parathyroid adenomas. For this reason, a history should be obtained from patients with a surgical scar in the thyroid region so that the possibility of occult pheochromocytoma can be assessed and excluded.

DISORDERS OF CALCIUM METABOLISM

The three substances that regulate serum concentrations of calcium, phosphorus, and magnesium are parathyroid hormone (parathyrin, PTH), calcitonin, and vitamin D, which act on bone, kidney, gut, and their own receptors. Calcium excess in blood is caused by either malignant disease or hyperparathyroidism in more than 90% of patients.[86] PTH stimulates bone resorption, inhibits renal excretion of calcium, and increases conversion to active vitamin D, three conditions that lead to hypercalcemia. Calcitonin can be considered an antagonist to PTH. Through its metabolites, vitamin D aids in the absorption of calcium, phosphate, and magnesium from the gut and facilitates the bone resorptive effects of PTH. Secretion of PTH is modulated through the calcium-sensing receptor on the cell surface of parathyroid cells. An increase in ionized calcium stimulates this receptor and thus causes a decrease in PTH secretion. Recognition of this effect has led to reevaluation of the therapy for hyperparathyroidism inasmuch as a drug upregulating this receptor's sensitivity reduces PTH levels.[87]

Hyperparathyroidism and Hypercalcemia

Primary hyperparathyroidism occurs in approximately 0.1% of the population, most commonly begins in the third to fifth decades of life, and occurs two to three times more frequently in women than in men. Primary hyperparathyroidism usually results from enlargement of a single gland, commonly an adenoma and very rarely a carcinoma. Hypercalcemia almost always develops.

Calcium is the chief mineral component of the body; it provides structure to the skeleton and performs key roles in neural transmission, intracellular signaling, blood coagulation, and neuromuscular functioning. Ninety-nine percent of the 1000 g of calcium present in the average human body is stored in the bone mineral reservoir. Fifty percent to 60% is bound to plasma proteins or is complexed with phosphate or citrate. The normal total serum calcium level is 8.6 to 10.4 mg/dL, as measured in most laboratories; though this value depends on the albumin level, noting a decline of 0.8 mg/dL for each 1 g/dL drop in albumin. Binding of calcium to albumin depends on pH: binding decreases with acidic pH and increases with alkaline pH. Serum calcium, not ionized calcium, decreases with reductions in albumin levels. Although ionized calcium is the clinically significant fraction, the cost and technical difficulties of stabilizing the electrodes used for measurement have limited the available assays. Nevertheless, PTH and vitamin D_3 work to keep the level stable within 0.1 mg/dL in any individual.

Many of the prominent symptoms of hyperparathyroidism are a result of the hypercalcemia that accompanies it. Regardless of the cause, hypercalcemia can produce any of a number of symptoms, the most prominent of which involve the renal, skeletal, neuromuscular, and GI system, including anorexia, vomiting, constipation, polyuria, polydipsia, lethargy, confusion, renal calculi, pancreatitis, bone pain, and psychiatric abnormalities. Free intracellular calcium initiates or regulates muscle contraction, release of neurotransmitters, secretion of hormones, enzyme action, and energy metabolism.

Nephrolithiasis occurs in 60% to 70% of patients with hyperparathyroidism. Sustained hypercalcemia can result in tubular and glomerular disorders, including proximal (type II) renal tubular acidosis. Polyuria and polydipsia are common complaints.

Skeletal disorders related to hyperparathyroidism are osteitis fibrosa cystica, simple diffuse osteopenia, and osteoporosis. The rate of bone turnover is five times higher in patients with hyperparathyroidism than in normal controls. Patients may have a history of frequent fractures or may complain of bone pain, especially in the anterior margin of the tibia.

Because free intracellular calcium initiates or regulates muscle contraction, neurotransmitter signaling, hormone secretion, enzyme action, and energy metabolism, abnormalities in these end organs are often symptoms of hyperparathyroidism. Patients may experience profound muscle weakness, especially in proximal muscle groups, as well as muscle atrophy. Depression, psychomotor retardation, and memory impairment may occur. Lethargy and confusion are frequent complaints.

Peptic ulcer disease is more common in these patients than in the rest of the population. Production of gastrin and gastric acid is increased. Anorexia, vomiting, and constipation may also be present.

Approximately one third of all hypercalcemic patients are hypertensive, but the hypertension usually resolves with successful treatment of the primary disease. Neither hypertension nor minimally invasive surgery seems to alter the perioperative risk associated with surgery in such patients in comparison with the usual hypertensive patients.[88,89] Even octogenarians with asymptomatic hyperparathyroidism can be operated on without mortality and with morbidity no different from that in younger individuals, thus encouraging the use of parathyroidectomy as preventive therapy.[90] Long-standing hypercalcemia can lead to calcifications in the myocardium, blood vessels, brain, and kidneys. Cerebral calcifications may cause seizures, whereas renal calcifications lead to polyuria that is unresponsive to vasopressin.[90]

The most useful confirmatory test for hyperparathyroidism is radioimmunoassay for PTH. In fact, two changes have radically reduced anesthesia involvement in the care of patients with primary hyperparathyroidism. One change, the use of the calcimimetic drug class which modulates the calcium-sensitive PTH cell receptor and thereby decreases calcium levels, has been emphasized in older individuals. The other change is use of minimally invasive approaches after imaging procedures with just local anesthesia or a cervical plexus block—as with thyroidectomy.[91,92] Most surgeons now performing minimally invasive parathyroid removal monitor PTH levels intraoperatively to determine whether the causative adenoma has been resected. The baseline PTH level should be determined before induction of anesthesia because even monitored anesthesia care increases PTH levels.[93] In hyperparathyroid patients, hormone levels are abnormal for a given level of calcium. The level of inorganic phosphorus in serum is usually low, but it may be within normal limits. Alkaline phosphatase levels are elevated if considerable skeletal involvement is present.

Glucocorticoid administration reduces the level of calcium in blood in many other conditions that cause hypercalcemia, but not usually in primary hyperparathyroidism. In sarcoidosis, multiple myeloma, vitamin D intoxication, and some malignant diseases, all of which can cause hypercalcemia, administration of glucocorticoids may lower serum calcium levels through an effect on GI absorption. This effect occurs to a lesser degree in primary hyperparathyroidism.

Hypercalcemia may also occur as a consequence of secondary hyperparathyroidism in patients who have chronic renal disease. When phosphate excretion decreases as a result of decreased nephron mass, serum calcium levels fall because of deposition of calcium and phosphate in bone. Secretion of PTH subsequently increases, and this causes the fraction of phosphate excreted by each nephron to increase. Eventually, the chronic intermittent hypocalcemia of chronic renal failure leads to chronically high levels of serum PTH and hyperplasia of the parathyroid glands—one of the entities termed secondary hyperparathyroidism.

Symptomatic primary hyperparathyroidism in patients younger than 50 years or with serum calcium levels more than 1 mg/dL higher than the upper limit of normal, a 30% or greater reduction in the glomerular filtration rate (GFR), or severe bone demineralization is usually treated surgically. If the patient refuses surgery or if other illnesses render surgery inadvisable, medical management with the calcimimetic, cinacalcet, makes management much more feasible. The difficulty with such management is that the hyperfunctioning parathyroid glands secrete more hormone as the serum calcium concentration is lowered—as

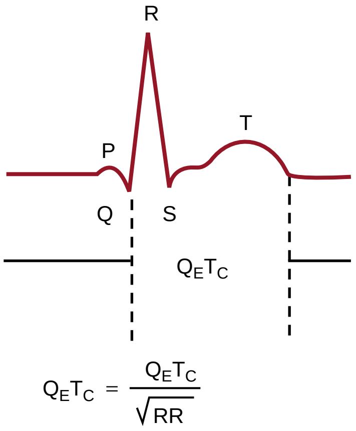


Fig. 32.3 Measurement of the QTc interval (properly termed Q_ET_C to indicate that it begins with the start of the Q wave, lasts throughout the QT interval, ends with the end of the T wave, and is corrected for heart rate). RR is the RR interval in seconds. (From Hensel P, Roizen MF. Patients with disorders of parathyroid function. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am.* 1987;5:287–291.)

though the calcium set point for feedback regulation of PTH secretion had been raised. Blanchard and colleagues demonstrated that patients with "asymptomatic" primary hyperparathyroidism have clinical improvement of their symptoms postoperatively even after 1 year, noting younger patients and those with higher preoperative calcium levels show the best improvement.[94]

Patients with moderate hypercalcemia who have normal renal and cardiovascular function present no special preoperative and preprocedure problems. The ECG can be examined preoperatively and intraoperatively for shortened PR or QT intervals (Fig. 32.3). Because severe hypercalcemia can result in substantial hypovolemia, normal intravascular volume and electrolyte status should be evaluated and then restored before anesthesia and surgery.

Management of hypercalcemia preoperatively should include (even in urgent or emergency situations) treatment of the underlying cause, a frequent strategy in surgical patients with malignancy-associated hypercalcemia. Therapy preoperatively for both malignant and nonmalignant causes of hypercalcemia include aggressive volume repletion, with the addition of diuresis only if volume overload develops. Intravenous fluid infusion rates of 250 to 500 mL/h preoperatively are commonly used to maintain urine output greater than 200 mL/h.[94a] Careful monitoring during this time is needed to avoid administration of an excessive amount of intravenous fluids, as many patients may have compromised cardiac function. In the setting of fluid overload, diuresis with furosemide can be warranted; however, evidence for benefit is limited and mainly theoreteical.[94a] Other complications of these interventions include hypomagnesemia and hypokalemia.

In emergency situations, vigorous expansion of intravascular volume usually reduces serum calcium to a safe level (<14 mg/dL). Phosphate should be given to correct hypophosphatemia because it decreases calcium uptake into bone, increases calcium excretion, and stimulates breakdown of bone. Hydration, accompanied by electrolyte repletion mainly phosphate, suffices in the management of most hypercalcemic patients. Other measures to decrease reabsorption of bone include the bisphosphonates pamidronate sodium (90 mg intravenously) and zoledronate (4 mg intravenously). Case reports note success in the setting of extreme hypercalcemia (>20 mg/dL) correction with a low calcium bath dialysate.[94b]

Calcitonin lowers serum calcium levels through direct inhibition of bone resorption. It can decrease serum calcium levels within minutes after intravenous administration. Side effects include urticaria and nausea. It is so rapid acting that it can be used to reduce calcium levels while waiting for hydration and a bisphosphonate to take effect.

It is especially important to know whether the hypercalcemia has been chronic because serious cardiac, renal, or CNS abnormalities may have resulted.

Hypocalcemia

Hypocalcemia (caused by hypoalbuminemia, hypoparathyroidism, hypomagnesemia, hypovitaminosis D, hungry bone syndrome after correction of hyperparathyroidism, anticonvulsant therapy, citrate infusion, or chronic renal disease) is not usually accompanied by a clinically evident cardiovascular disorder. The most common cause of hypocalcemia is hypoalbuminemia. In true hypocalcemia (i.e., when the free calcium concentration is low), myocardial contractility is affected, noting myocardial contractility varies directly with levels of blood ionized calcium. The clinical signs of hypocalcemia include clumsiness; convulsions; laryngeal stridor; depression; muscle stiffness; paresthesias; parkinsonism; tetany; Chvostek sign; dry and scaly skin, brittle nails, and coarse hair; low serum concentrations of calcium; prolonged QT intervals; soft tissue calcifications; and Trousseau sign.

Hypocalcemia delays ventricular repolarization, hence increasing the QTc interval (normal, 0.35-0.44 second). With electrical systole prolonged, the ventricles may fail to respond to the next electrical impulse from the sinoatrial node, with second-degree heart block resulting. Prolongation of the QT interval is a moderately reliable ECG sign of hypocalcemia, not for the population as a whole, but for the individual patient.[95] Thus monitoring the QT interval as corrected for the heart rate is a useful, but not always accurate means of monitoring hypocalcemia in any individual patient (see Fig. 32.3). Heart failure may also occur with hypocalcemia, but is rare. Because heart failure in patients with coexisting heart disease is reduced in severity when calcium and magnesium ion levels are restored to normal, these levels may be normalized preoperatively in a patient with impaired exercise tolerance or signs of cardiovascular dysfunction; normalization can be achieved intravenously over a 15-minute period if absolutely necessary. Sudden decreases in blood levels of ionized calcium (as with chelation therapy) can result in severe hypotension.

Patients with hypocalcemia may have seizures. They may be focal, petit mal, or grand mal in appearance, often indistinguishable from such seizures in the absence of hypocalcemia. Patients may also have a type of seizure called cerebral tetany, which consists of generalized tetany followed by tonic spasms. Therapy with standard anticonvulsants is ineffective and may even exacerbate these seizures (by an anti–vitamin D effect), calcium must be repleted for treatment. In long-standing hypoparathyroidism, calcifications may appear above the sella; these calcifications represent deposits of calcium in and around small blood vessels of the basal ganglia. They may be associated with a variety of extrapyramidal syndromes.

The most common cause of acquired hypoparathyroidism is surgery of the thyroid or parathyroid glands. Other causes include autoimmune disorders, therapy with iodine-131, hemosiderosis or hemochromatosis, neoplasia, and granulomatous disease. Idiopathic hypoparathyroidism has been divided into three categories: an isolated persistent neonatal form, branchial dysembryogenesis, and autoimmune candidiasis related to multiple endocrine deficiency.

Pseudohypoparathyroidism and pseudopseudohypoparathyroidism are rare hereditary disorders characterized by short stature, obesity, rounded face, and shortened metacarpals. Patients with pseudohypoparathyroidism have hypocalcemia and hyperphosphatemia despite high serum levels of PTH. These patients have a deficient end-organ response to PTH as a result of abnormalities in G-protein function.

Because treatment of hypoparathyroidism is not surgical, hypoparathyroid patients who come to the operating room are those who require surgery for unrelated conditions. Their calcium, phosphate, and magnesium levels should be measured both preoperatively and postoperatively. Patients with symptomatic hypocalcemia may be treated with intravenous calcium gluconate preoperatively. Initially, 10 to 20 mL of 10% calcium gluconate may be given at a rate of 5 mL/min. The effect on serum calcium levels is of short duration, but a continuous infusion with 10 mL/min of 10% calcium gluconate in 500 mL of solution over a period of 6 hours helps keep serum calcium at adequate levels. For severe symptoms in emergent settings, 10 mL of 10% calcium chloride may be given over 10 minutes, followed by a 10% calcium gluconate infusion. Magnesium and phosphate levels may also require normalization to normalize cardiovascular and nervous system function.

The objective of therapy is to bring the symptoms under control before the surgical procedure and anesthesia. For patients with chronic hypoparathyroidism, the objective is to keep the serum calcium level in the lower half of the normal range. A preoperative and preprocedure ECG is useful for maintaining the QTc interval. The preoperative and preprocedure QTc value may be used as a guide to the serum calcium level if rapid laboratory assessment is not possible. Changes in the calcium level may alter the duration of muscle relaxation; thus careful monitoring and titration of muscle relaxation with a twitch monitor is necessary.

The intimate involvement of the parathyroid gland with the thyroid gland can result in unintentional hypocalcemia during surgery for diseases of either organ. Because of the affinity of their bones for calcium, this relationship is crucial in patients with advanced osteitis. Internal redistribution of magnesium, calcium, or both ions may occur (into “hungry bones”) after parathyroidectomy and may cause hypomagnesemia, hypocalcemia, or both. Because the tendency to tetany increases with alkalosis, hyperventilation should be avoided. The most prominent manifestations of acute hypocalcemia are distal paresthesias and muscle spasm (tetany). Potentially fatal complications of severe hypocalcemia include laryngeal spasm and hypocalcemic seizures. The clinical sequelae of magnesium deficiency include cardiac arrhythmias (principally ventricular tachyarrhythmias), hypocalcemic tetany, and neuromuscular irritability independent of hypocalcemia (tremors, twitching, asterixis, and seizures).

In addition to monitoring total serum calcium or ionized calcium postoperatively, one can test for the Chvostek and Trousseau signs. The Chvostek sign is a contracture of the facial muscles produced by tapping the ipsilateral facial nerve at the angle of the jaw, of note this sign can be elicited in up to 15% of patients who are not hypocalcemic, an attempt should be made to elicit this sign preoperatively to ensure that its appearance is meaningful. The Trousseau sign is elicited by applying a blood pressure cuff at a level slightly above the systolic level for a few minutes. The resulting carpopedal spasm, with contraction of the fingers and inability to open the hand, stems from the increased muscle irritability in hypocalcemic states, aggravated by ischemia produced by the blood pressure cuff.

Osteoporosis

Fifty percent of women who are older than 65 years sustain an osteoporotic fracture. (Because men are living longer, osteoporosis has become an increasing problem for them, too, and reports indicate a 15% per decade hip fracture rate for men >65 years old.)[95] Men with COPD (even without steroid treatment) are at high risk for vertebral fractures. Furthermore, in either gender, each vertebral fracture is associated with up to a 10% decrease in lung capacity. Diagnosis and treatment of these conditions have increased with routine use of dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry or quantitative ultrasonography. Because T-scores and Z-scores were developed to relate changes in white postmenopausal women to those at age 21 years, care must be used in interpreting the results. Known risk factors for osteoporosis include age, relative lifetime estrogen deficiency (late menarche, amenorrhea, early menopause, nulliparity), deficiency of dietary calcium, tobacco use, increased aerobic exercise in combination with decreased weight-bearing exercise, decreased weight-bearing exercise by itself, use of soft drinks, and Asian or white ancestry. Although therapy for osteoporosis (use of biphosphates, bone mineral depositors, weight-bearing exercises, calcium, vitamin D, estrogen, and now designer estrogens that may be useful for men, such as raloxifene [Evista]) does not have major known implications for anesthesia care.[96-98] Bone fractures in such patients have occurred on movement to and from an operating table, therefore these patients should be allowed to move and position themselves when possible. Recombinant PTH and calcitonin are also used, but again, no reports of perioperative interactions have been prominent.

PITUITARY ABNORMALITIES

Anterior Pituitary Hypersecretion

The anterior pituitary gland (or master endocrine gland) consists of five identifiable types of secretory cells and hormones produced: somatotrophs (GH), corticotrophs (ACTH), lactotrophs (prolactin), gonadotrophs (luteinizing hormone and follicle-stimulating hormone), and thyrotrophs (TSH). Secretion of these pituitary hormones is largely regulated by a negative-feedback loop by hypothalamic regulatory hormones and by signals that originate from the target site of pituitary action. Six hypothalamic hormones have been characterized: dopamine, the prolactin-inhibiting hormone; somatostatin, the GH release–inhibiting hormone; GH-releasing hormone; corticotropin-releasing hormone; gonadotropin-releasing hormone; and TRH. Most pituitary tumors (>60%) are hypersecretory and are classified according to the excess production of a specific anterior pituitary hormone.

The most common disorders of pituitary hypersecretion are those related to excesses of prolactin (amenorrhea, galactorrhea, and infertility), ACTH (Cushing syndrome), and GH (acromegaly). In addition to knowing the pathophysiologic processes of the disease involved, the anesthesiologist must determine whether the patient recently underwent air pneumoencephalography (almost obsolete, but still used rarely). If so, nitrous oxide should not be used to lessen the risk of intracranial hypertension from gas collection. CT or MRI of the sella has largely replaced neuroencephalography.

More than 99% of cases of acromegaly are attributable to pituitary adenoma (or use of recombinant human GH). Thus the primary treatment of acromegaly is transsphenoidal surgery (or withdrawal of drug) and symptomatic treatment of the carpal tunnel or other syndromes provoked. If the pituitary tumor is not totally removed, patients are often offered external pituitary irradiation. In the case of suprasellar extension, conventional transfrontal hypophysectomy is often performed. The dopaminergic agonist bromocriptine can lower GH levels, but the long-term follow-up with this drug is not favorable. Octreotide, a long-acting analogue of somatostatin, now given in depot form approximately once a month, produces effective palliation in 50% of patients. Other medical therapies such as pegvisomant or somatostatin analogues are also medications that have been tried before surgical intervention. In 2011, new guidelines were published with few changes to the available recommendations.[99] However, the new guidelines reported some evidence that medication taken preoperatively may result in a better postoperative outcome.

Difficulty with endotracheal intubation should be anticipated in a patient with acromegaly; lateral neck radiographs or CT scans of the neck and direct or indirect visualization can identify patients with subglottic stenosis or an enlarged tongue, mandible, epiglottis, or vocal cords. If placement of an arterial line is necessary, a brachial or femoral site may be preferable to a radial site.[100]

Anterior Pituitary Hypofunction

Anterior pituitary hypofunction results in deficiency of one or more of the following hormones: GH, TSH, ACTH, prolactin, or gonadotropin. No special preoperative and preprocedure preparation is required for a patient deficient in prolactin or gonadotropin; deficiency in GH, however, can result in atrophy of cardiac muscle, a condition that may necessitate preoperative and preprocedure cardiac evaluation. Nonetheless, anesthetic problems have not been documented in patients with isolated GH deficiency. Acute deficiencies are another matter.

Acute pituitary deficiency is often caused by bleeding into a pituitary tumor. In surgical specimens of resected adenomas, as many as 25% show evidence of hemorrhage. These patients often have acute headache, visual loss, nausea or vomiting, ocular palsy, disturbances of consciousness, fever, vertigo, or hemiparesis. In such patients, rapid transsphenoidal decompression should be accompanied by consideration of replacement therapy, including glucocorticoids and the treatment of increased intracranial pressure.

Obstetric anesthesiologists are often aware of these pituitary failure problems; Sheehan syndrome is the clinical manifestation of pituitary infarction associated with hypotension during or after obstetric hemorrhage. Conditions that strongly suggest this diagnosis are failure to start postpartum lactation, increasing fatigue, cold intolerance, and especially hypotension unresponsive to volume replacement and pressors; treatment is prompt hormone therapy.[100a]

Posterior Pituitary Hormone Excess and Deficiency

Secretion of vasopressin or antidiuretic hormone (ADH) is enhanced by increased serum osmolality or the presence of hypotension. Inappropriate secretion of vasopressin, without relation to serum osmolality, results in hyponatremia and fluid retention. This inappropriate secretion can result from the following: a variety of CNS lesions; drugs including nicotine, narcotics, tramadol, chlorpropamide, clofibrate, vincristine, vinblastine, and cyclophosphamide; and pulmonary infections, hypothyroidism, adrenal insufficiency, and ectopic production from tumors. Preoperative and preprocedure management of a surgical patient with inappropriate secretion of vasopressin includes appropriate treatment of the causative disorders and restriction of water. Occasionally, drugs that inhibit the renal response to ADH (e.g., lithium or demeclocycline) should be administered preoperatively to restore normal intravascular volume and electrolyte status.

Most of the clinical features associated with the syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) are related to hyponatremia and the resulting brain edema; such features include weight gain, weakness, lethargy, mental confusion, obtundation, and disordered reflexes and may culminate in convulsions and coma.

Investigators have recognized that up to 20% of long-distance runners have SIADH with increased vasopressin secretion. Because such people infrequently undergo surgical treatment of injuries, SIADH symptoms and laboratory evaluation may be routine for that group as well.

SIADH should be suspected in any patient with hyponatremia who excretes urine that is hypertonic relative to plasma. The following laboratory findings further support the diagnosis:

1. Urinary sodium greater than 20 mEq/L
2. Low serum levels of BUN, creatinine, uric acid, and albumin
3. Serum sodium lower than 130 mEq/L
4. Plasma osmolality lower than 270 mOsm/L
5. Urine hypertonic relative to plasma

Noting the response to water loading is a useful way of evaluating patients with hyponatremia. Patients with SIADH are unable to excrete dilute urine even after water loading. Assay of ADH in blood can confirm the diagnosis. Too vigorous treatment of chronic hyponatremia can result in disabling osmotic demyelination syndrome.[101,102] The increase in serum sodium should not be greater than 1 mEq/L/h.[101,102]

Patients with mild to moderate symptoms of water intoxication can be treated with restriction of fluid intake to approximately 500 to 1000 mL/day. Patients with severe water intoxication and CNS symptoms may need vigorous treatment consisting of intravenous administration of hypertonic saline solutions until symptoms resolve, followed by fluid restriction.

Treatment should be directed at the underlying problem. If SIADH is drug induced, use of the drug should be withdrawn. Inflammation should be treated with appropriate measures, and neoplasms should be managed by surgical resection, irradiation, or chemotherapy, whichever is indicated.

No drugs are available that can suppress release of ADH from the neurohypophysis or from a tumor. Phenytoin (Dilantin) and narcotic antagonists such as naloxone and butorphanol have some inhibiting effect on physiologic ADH release but are clinically ineffective in patients with SIADH. Drugs that block the effect of ADH on renal tubules include lithium, which is rarely used because its toxicity often outweighs its benefits, and demethylchlortetracycline in doses of 900 to 1200 mg/day. Demethylchlortetracycline interferes with the ability of the renal tubules to concentrate urine, thereby causing excretion of isotonic or hypotonic urine and lessening the hyponatremia. This drug can be used in ambulatory patients with SIADH when it is difficult to restrict fluids.

When a patient with SIADH comes to the operating room for any surgical procedure, fluids are managed by measuring volume status, when the clinical picture is unclear the use of arterial wave form analysis, central venous pressure, pulmonary artery pressure, or transthoracic and/or transesophageal echocardiography may be of value. Despite the common impression that SIADH is frequently seen in older patients in the postoperative period, studies have shown that the patient's age and the type of anesthetic used have no bearing on the postoperative development of SIADH. It is common to see several patients in the neurosurgical ICU suffering from this syndrome. The diagnosis is usually one of exclusion. Patients with SIADH generally require only restriction of intravenous fluids, very rarely is hypertonic saline needed.

Lack of ADH, which results in diabetes insipidus, is caused by pituitary disease, brain tumors, infiltrative diseases such as sarcoidosis, head trauma (including trauma after neurosurgery), or lack of a renal response to ADH. The last can result from such diverse conditions as hypokalemia, hypercalcemia, sickle cell anemia, obstructive uropathy, and renal insufficiency. Preoperative or preprocedure treatment of diabetes insipidus consists of restoring normal intravascular volume by replacing urinary losses, administering desmopressin acetate (DDAVP) nasally, and giving daily fluid requirements intravenously.

Perioperative management of patients with diabetes insipidus is based on the extent of the ADH deficiency. Management of a patient with complete diabetes insipidus and a total lack of ADH does not usually present any major problem as long as the side effects of the drug are avoided and the presence of the condition is known preoperatively. Just before the surgical procedure, the patient is given the usual dose of DDAVP intranasally or an intravenous bolus of 100 milliunits of aqueous vasopressin, followed by a constant infusion of 100 to 200 milliunits/h.[1] The dose is usually adjusted to permit the daily breakthrough polyuria that prevents the iatrogenic syndrome of SIADH. All the intravenous fluids given intraoperatively should be isotonic to reduce the risk of water depletion and hypernatremia. Plasma osmolality should be frequently measured, both intraoperatively and immediately postoperatively. If plasma osmolality rises much higher than 300 mOsm/L, hypotonic fluids can be administered; the rate of the intraoperative vasopressin infusion can be increased to greater than 200 milliunits/h.

For patients who have a partial deficiency of ADH, it is not necessary to use aqueous vasopressin perioperatively unless plasma osmolality rises to more than 300 mOsm/L. Nonosmotic stimuli (e.g., volume depletion) and the stress of surgery usually cause the release of large quantities of ADH perioperatively. Consequently, these patients require only frequent monitoring of plasma osmolality during this period.

Because of side effects, the dose of vasopressin should be limited to that necessary for control of diuresis. The oxytocic and coronary artery–constricting properties of vasopressin make this limit especially applicable to patients who are pregnant or have CAD.

Diseases Involving the Cardiovascular System

HYPERTENSION

Analysis of the perioperative treatment of hypertension is important because of the prevalence of the condition (33.5% of adults aged 20 and over in the United States), the great risk in perioperative care of a hypertensive patient, and the high cost of unnecessary delays in surgical treatment. Numerous studies over the years have evaluated the impact of hypertension as one of the risk factors for cardiac morbidity. However, the need to delay surgery because of poorly controlled hypertension has been questioned. Weksler and colleagues studied 989 hypertensive patients who were treated on a long-term basis and who underwent noncardiac surgery with diastolic blood pressure between 110 and 130 mm Hg and no previous MI, unstable or severe angina pectoris, renal failure, pregnancy-induced hypertension, left ventricular hypertrophy, previous coronary revascularization, aortic stenosis, preoperative dysrhythmias, conduction defects, or stroke.[103] The control group had their surgical procedures postponed and remained in the hospital for control of blood pressure, and the study patients received 10 mg of nifedipine intranasally. No statistically significant differences in postoperative complications were observed, thus suggesting that this subset of patients without significant cardiovascular comorbid conditions can proceed with surgery despite elevated blood pressure on the day of the operation.

Several studies have assessed the relationship between cardiovascular disease and preoperative hypertension. In a multicenter study of patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft (CABG), the presence of isolated systolic hypertension was associated with a 30% increased incidence of perioperative cardiovascular complications when compared with normotensive individuals.[104] Kheterpal and colleagues integrated data from their anesthesia information system (AIMS) and the American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Project (NSQIP) and found hypertension to be one of the independent predictors of events.[105] Wax and colleagues used AIMS to identify independent predictors of troponin elevation or death, and independent predictors of adverse outcome included increased baseline systolic blood pressure (SBP), intraoperative diastolic blood pressure lower than 85 mm Hg, increased intraoperative heart rate, blood transfusion, and anesthetic technique, controlling for standard risk factors.[106] A delay of surgery did not result in interval normalization of blood pressure.

Although preoperative blood pressure (both systolic and diastolic) is a significant predictor of postoperative morbidity, no data definitively establish whether preoperative treatment of hypertension reduces perioperative risk. Until a definitive study is performed, we recommend letting the weight of evidence guide preoperative treatment of a patient with hypertension. Such treatment would be based on three general beliefs: (1) the patient should be educated regarding the importance of lifelong treatment of hypertension, even isolated systolic hypertension; (2) perioperative hemodynamic fluctuations occur less frequently in treated than in untreated hypertensive patients (as demonstrated by Prys-Roberts and colleagues[107] and confirmed by Goldman and Caldera[108] and Mangano and associates[109]); and (3) hemodynamic fluctuations have some relation to morbidity. Kheterpal and colleagues demonstrated that patients who sustained a cardiac adverse event were more likely to experience an episode of mean arterial pressure lower than 50 mm Hg, an episode of 40% decrease in mean arterial pressure, and an episode of heart rate higher than 100 beats/min.[105] The data of Pasternack and colleagues and Weksler and associates imply that rapid correction of blood pressure or prevention of increases in heart rate may be all that is needed.[103,110] Sessler and colleagues (2018) studied 9765 patients in the POISE-II trial to assess the relationship between perioperative hypotension and a composite of MI and death within 30-days of surgery.[110aa] Intraoperatively, the estimated average relative effect was 1.08 (98.3% confidence interval [CI], 1.03, 1.12; $P < .001$) per 10-minute increase in hypotension duration. The average relative effect odds ratio was 2.83 (98.3% CI, 1.26, 6.35; $P = .002$) in patients with hypotension during the subsequent 4 days of hospitalization. The Intraoperative Norepinephrine to Control Arterial Pressure (INPRESS) study was a multicenter, randomized, parallel-group clinical trial in adult patients ($n = 298$) at increased risk of postoperative complications of individualized management strategy aimed at achieving a SBP within 10% of the reference value (i.e., patient's resting SBP) or standard management strategy of treating SBP less than 80 mm Hg or lower than 40% from the reference value during and for 4 hours following surgery.[110a] Management targeting an individualized SBP, compared with standard management, reduced the risk of postoperative organ dysfunction. Taken together, these data suggest that maintenance of normal blood pressure is critical in patients with hypertension.

The INPRESS study demonstrated that preoperative data should be used to determine the individualized range of suitable arterial blood pressure values that are tolerable by a particular patient during and after a surgical procedure. Importantly, hypotension in patients at risk for a cerebrovascular event should be avoided. For example, the POISE (Perioperative Ischemic Evaluation) study demonstrated that short-term β-blocker administration resulted in an increased incidence of stroke and death that was associated with an increased rate of hypotension.[111]

Preoperative Administration of All Antihypertensive Drugs

Continuation of all antihypertensive drugs preoperatively should be considered, except ACE inhibitors or angiotensin II antagonists, for which no clear consensus exists. Coriat and colleagues found that ACE inhibitors were associated with hypotension in 100% of patients during induction versus approximately 20% in whom ACE inhibitors were withheld on the morning of the surgical procedure.[112] Bertrand and coworkers performed a prospective randomized study that demonstrated that more severe hypotensive episodes requiring vasoconstrictor treatment occurred after induction of general anesthesia in patients treated on a long-term basis with an angiotensin II antagonist and receiving the drug on the morning before the operation than in those in whom angiotensin II antagonists were discontinued on the day before the surgical procedure.[113] Kheterpal and colleagues performed a propensity-matched analysis of 12,381 noncardiac surgical cases.[114] Patients with long-term ACE inhibitor or angiotensin receptor blocker (ARB) and diuretic therapy showed more periods with a mean arterial blood pressure lower than 70 mm Hg, periods with a 40% decrease in SBP, periods with a 50% decrease in SBP, and vasopressor boluses than did patients receiving diuretic therapy alone. If these drugs are continued, vasopressin is the drug of choice for refractory hypotension. Investigators at the Cleveland Clinic evaluated 79,228 patients (9905 ACE inhibitor users [13%] and 66,620 [87%] non–ACE inhibitor users) who had noncardiac surgery between 2005 and 2009.[115] These investigators did not find any association between use of ACE inhibitors and intraoperative or postoperative upper airway complications. ACE inhibitor use was not associated with in-hospital complications or increased 30-day mortality. Investigators of the VISION trial studied the relationship between withholding ACE inhibitors/angiotensin II receptor blockers and a primary composite outcome of all-cause death, stroke, or myocardial injury after noncardiac surgery at 30 days. Withholding ACE inhibitors/angiotensin II receptor blockers before major noncardiac surgery was associated with a lower risk of death and postoperative vascular events (150/1245 [12.0%] vs. 459/3557 [12.9%]; adjusted relative risk, 0.82; 95% CI, 0.70-0.96). In an accompanying editorial, London suggested that the current study does provide strong impetus for a randomized trial but does not warrant changes in local practice until such a trial is completed.[116]

ISCHEMIC HEART DISEASE

Preoperative evaluation of a patient with ischemic heart disease and a discussion of the AHA/ACC guidelines can be found in Chapters 31 and 54.[117] New guidelines were published in 2014 by both the AHA/ACC and the European

Society of Cardiology as well as the Canadian Cardiovascular Society in 2017.[118] This chapter will focus on the AHA/ACC guideline approach.[119,120]

Role of Coronary Artery Bypass Graft or Percutaneous Coronary Interventions Before Noncardiac Surgical Procedures

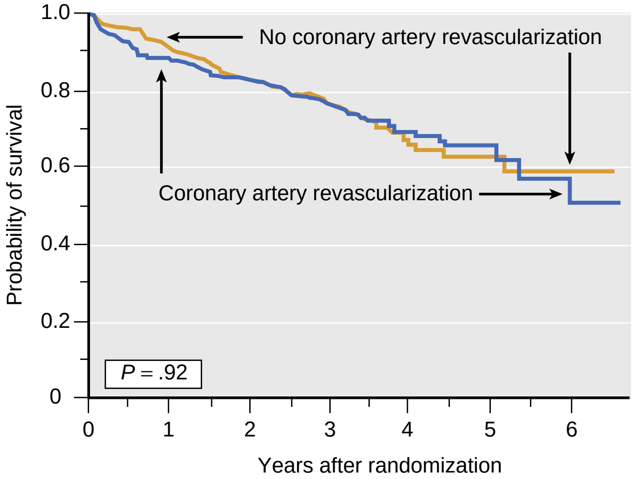
Coronary revascularization may reduce the perioperative risk before noncardiac surgery, but the evidence suggests that it is limited to those with indications similar to the nonsurgical arena. The strongest retrospective evidence comes from the Coronary Artery Surgery Study registry, which enrolled patients from 1978 to 1981. Operative mortality in patients with CABG performed before noncardiac surgery was 0.9% but was significantly higher at 2.4% in patients without previous CABG. However, a 1.4% mortality rate was associated with the CABG procedure itself.

The benefit of percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) before noncardiac surgery has also been examined in several cohort studies. Posner and colleagues used an administrative dataset of patients who underwent PCI and noncardiac surgery in Washington State.[121] These investigators matched patients with coronary disease who were undergoing noncardiac surgery with and without previous PCI and looked at cardiac complications. In this nonrandomized design, Posner and colleagues noted a significantly lower rate of 30-day cardiac complications in patients who underwent PCI at least 90 days before the noncardiac surgery. However, PCI within 90 days of noncardiac surgery did not improve outcome. Although the explanation for these results is unknown, they may support the notion that PCI performed “to get the patient through surgery” may not improve perioperative outcome because cardiac complications may not occur in patients with stable or asymptomatic coronary stenosis. PCI may actually destabilize coronary plaque, which becomes manifest in the days or weeks after noncardiac surgery.

Godet and associates studied a cohort of 1152 patients after abdominal aortic surgery in which 78 patients underwent PCI.[122] In the PCI group, the observed percentages of patients with a severe postoperative coronary event (9.0%; 95% CI, 4.4-17.4) or death (5.1% [95% CI, 2.0-12.5]) were not significantly different from the expected percentages (8.2% and 6.9%, respectively), which was confirmed by propensity analysis. PCI did not seem to significantly limit cardiac risk or death after aortic surgery.

Several randomized trials have addressed the value of testing and CABG or PCI, or both, in a subset of patients. McFalls and colleagues reported the results of a multicenter randomized trial in the VA Health System in which patients with documented CAD on coronary angiography, excluding those with left main CAD or a severely depressed ejection fraction (<20%), were randomized to CABG (59%), or percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA; 41%) versus routine medical therapy.[123] At 2.7 years after randomization, mortality in the revascularization group was not significantly different (22%) from that in the no-revascularization group (23%; Fig. 32.4). Within 30 days after the vascular operation, postoperative MI, defined by elevated troponin levels, occurred in 12% of the revascularization group and in 14% of the no-revascularization group (P = .37). The authors suggested that coronary revascularization is not indicated in patients with stable CAD, and their results further support the lack of efficacy of PCI or CABG for single- or double-vessel disease before noncardiac surgery. However, in a follow-up analysis, Ward and coauthors reported improved outcome in the subset of patients who underwent CABG versus PCI.[124]

Poldermans and colleagues randomized 770 patients about to undergo major vascular surgery and considered to have intermediate cardiac risk, defined as the presence of 1 or 2 cardiac risk factors, to either undergo further risk stratification with stress imaging or proceed directly to surgery.[125] All patients received bisoprolol with a targeted heart rate of 60 to 65 beats/min initiated before and continued after the surgical procedure. The 30-day incidence of cardiac death and nonfatal MI was similar in both groups (1.8% in the no-testing group vs. 2.3% in the tested group). The conclusions of the authors were that further risk stratification in this group of patients considered to be at intermediate risk based on clinical history alone was unnecessary as long as perioperative β-blockers were used and that testing only delayed necessary vascular surgery. In a pilot study, Poldermans and associates tested patients with more than three risk factors; 101 (23%) showed extensive ischemia and were randomly assigned to revascularization (n = 49) or no revascularization.[126] Revascularization did not improve 30-day outcome; the incidence of the composite end-point was 43% versus 33% (odds ratio [OR], 1.4; 95% CI, 0.7-2.8; P = .30). In addition, no benefit during 1-year follow-up was observed after coronary revascularization (49% vs. 44%; OR, 1.2; 95% CI, 0.7-2.3; P = .48). Concern was expressed by Erasmus University (Rotterdam, the Netherlands) regarding the scientific integrity of studies led by Poldermans, as detailed in Erasmus MC Follow-up Investigation Committee: *Report on the 2012 follow-up investigation of possible breaches of academic integrity, September 30, 2012* (https://www.forbes.com/sites/larryhusten/2012/10/09/erasmus-medical-center-releases-final-report-on-cardiovascular-research-scandal/#675d592528ae). The articles have



Years	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**
No. at risk						
Revascularization	226	175	113	65	18	7
No revascularization	229	172	108	55	17	12

Fig. 32.4 Long-term survival in patients randomized to coronary revascularization or routine care in patients with coronary artery disease on angiography and undergoing major vascular surgical procedures in the Coronary Artery Revascularization Prophylaxis trial. (From McFalls EO, Ward HB, Moritz TE, et al. Coronary-artery revascularization before elective major vascular surgery. *N Engl J Med.* 2004;351:2795–2804.)

not been retracted, but these data should be viewed with some skepticism. The authors of the 2014 AHA/ACCF Guidelines decided that the nonretracted decrease publications and/or other derivative studies by Poldermans that are relevant to the topic can only be cited in the text with a comment about the finding compared with the current recommendation but did not form the basis of that recommendation.

One issue in interpreting the results is that the length of time between coronary revascularization and noncardiac surgery most likely has an impact on its protective effect and potential risks. Back and coworkers studied 425 consecutive patients undergoing 481 elective major vascular operations at an academic VA Medical Center.[127] Coronary revascularization was classified as recent (CABG < 1 year; PTCA < 6 months) in 35 cases (7%), prior (CABG >1 year and ≤5 years; PTCA >6 months and ≤2 years) in 45 cases (9%), and remote (CABG ≥ 5 years; PTCA ≥ 2 years) in 48 cases (10%). Outcomes in patients with previous PTCA were similar to those after CABG ($P = .7$). Significant differences in adverse cardiac events and mortality were found among patients with CABG performed within 5 years or PTCA within 2 years (6.3%, 1.3%, respectively), individuals with remote revascularization (10.4%, 6.3%), and nonrevascularized patients stratified at high risk (13.3%, 3.3%) or intermediate/low risk (2.8%, 0.9%). The authors concluded that previous coronary revascularization (CABG < 5 years; PTCA < 2 years) may provide only modest protection against adverse cardiac events and mortality after major arterial reconstruction.

PCI using coronary stenting poses several special issues. Kaluza and associates reported on the outcome of 40 patients who underwent prophylactic coronary stent placement less than 6 weeks before major noncardiac surgery requiring general anesthesia.[128] Among these patients, 7 MIs, 11 major bleeding episodes, and 8 deaths were noted. All deaths and MIs, as well as 8 of the 11 bleeding episodes, occurred in patients subjected to surgical procedures less than 14 days after stenting. Four patients died after undergoing surgical procedures 1 day after stenting. Wilson and colleagues reported on 207 patients who underwent noncardiac surgery within 2 months of stent placement.[129] Eight patients died or suffered an MI, all of whom were among the 168 patients who had surgical procedures 6 weeks after stent placement. Vicenzi and coworkers studied 103 patients and reported that the risk of suffering a perioperative cardiac event was 2.11-fold greater in patients with recent stents (<35 days before surgery) than in those who underwent PCI more than 90 days before surgical procedures.[130] Leibowitz and associates studied a total of 216 consecutive patients who underwent PCI within 3 months of noncardiac surgery (PTCA, 122; stent, 94).[131] A total of 26 patients (12%) died, 13 in the stent group (14%), and 13 in the PTCA group (11%), a nonsignificant difference. The incidence of acute MI and death within 6 months was not significantly different (7% and 14% in the stent group and 6% and 11% in the PTCA group, respectively). Significantly more events occurred in the two groups when noncardiac surgery was performed within 2 weeks of PCI. Based on the accumulating data, elective noncardiac surgery after PCI, with or without stent placement, should be delayed for 4 to 6 weeks.

Drug-eluting stents may represent an even greater problem during the perioperative period based on case reports. Nasser and coauthors described two patients with in-stent thrombosis occurring 4 and 21 months after the implantation of sirolimus-eluting stents.[132] Drug-eluting stents may represent an additional risk over a prolonged period (≤12 months), particularly if antiplatelet drugs are discontinued.[133] One study demonstrated that although the frequency of major noncardiac surgery in the year after drug-eluting stent placement was more than 4%, the overall risk of adverse outcomes was less than previously reported when surgical procedures were performed months after drug-eluting stent placement.[134] However, the risk was significantly increased in the week after major noncardiac surgery. A population-based study in Canada using administrative healthcare databases demonstrated that the earliest optimal time for elective surgery is 46 to 180 days after bare-metal stent implantation or more than 180 days after drug-eluting stent implantation.[135] Hawn and colleagues used a national, retrospective cohort study of 41,989 VA and non-VA operations occurring in the 24 months after coronary stent implantation between 2000 and 2010.[136] Among patients undergoing noncardiac surgery within 2 years of coronary stent placement, major adverse cardiac events were associated with emergency surgery and advanced cardiac disease but not stent type or timing of surgery beyond 6 months after stent implantation. The 2016 DAPT Guidelines (Fig. 32.5) suggest continuing aspirin therapy in all patients with a coronary stent and discontinuing clopidogrel for as short a time interval as possible for patients with bare-metal stents less than 30 days or drug-eluting stents less than 6 months; with DAPT it can be discontinued.[136a]

Based upon the non-perioperative literature, there is a suggestion that holding clopidogrel for the traditional 8 days may actually increase risk associated with a hypercoagulable rebound suggesting a shorter period of time may be optimal. A recent cohort study suggests that withdrawal of antiplatelet agents greater than 5 days is associated with increased major adverse cardiac events.[136b]

Perioperative Risk Factors for Cardiac Morbidity and Mortality

A thorough history should focus on cardiovascular risk factors and symptoms or signs of unstable cardiac disease states, such as myocardial ischemia with minimal exertion, active CHF, symptomatic valvular heart disease, and significant cardiac arrhythmias. The presence of unstable angina is associated with a 28% incidence of perioperative MI.[137] Such patients would benefit from delaying elective surgery to address their CAD. For those patients with chronic stable angina, exercise tolerance appears to be a good method of assessing perioperative risk.

In virtually all studies, the presence of active CHF has been associated with increased perioperative cardiac morbidity.[138] In addition, multiple studies have demonstrated that reduced ejection fraction is associated with an increased incidence of perioperative cardiac events.[139,140] Flu and colleagues performed echocardiography in patients undergoing vascular surgery and found that for open surgical procedures, asymptomatic systolic left ventricular dysfunction and asymptomatic diastolic left ventricular

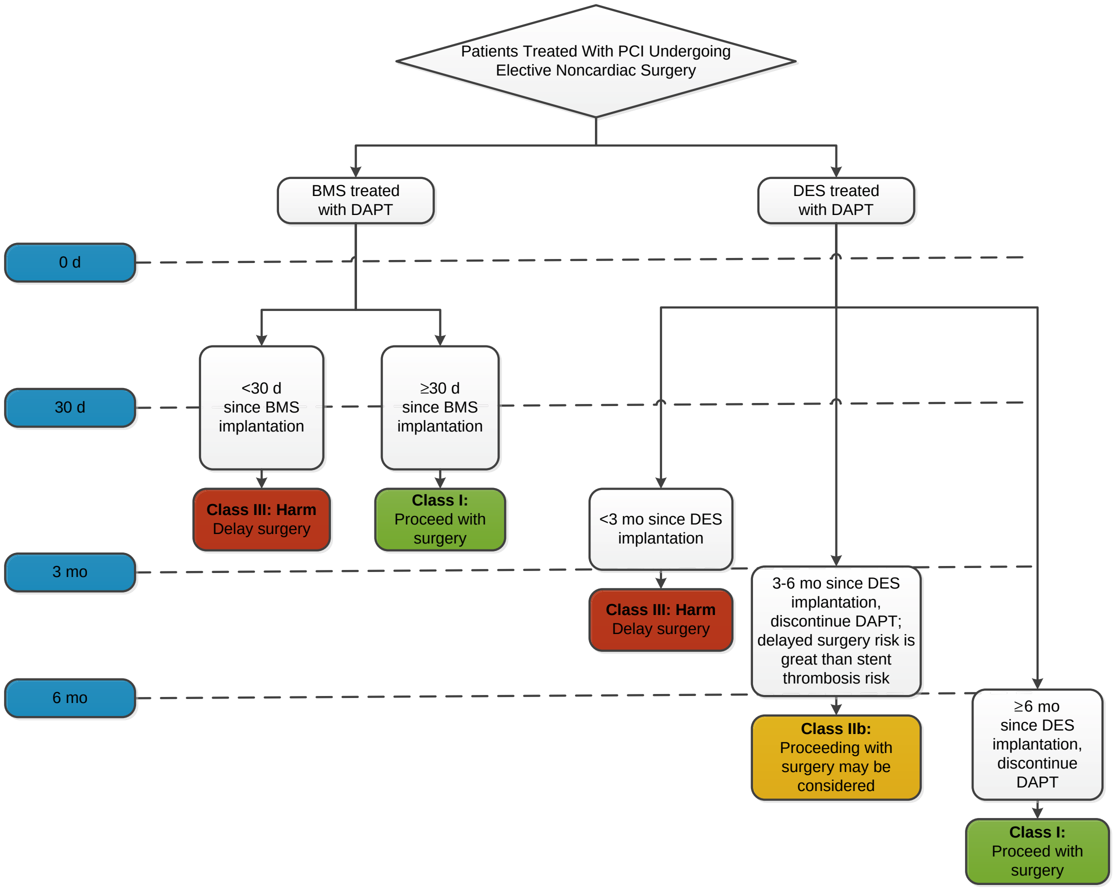

Patients Treated With PCI Undergoing Elective Noncardiac Surgery
BMS treated with DAPT
DES treated with DAPT
0 d
30 d
3 mo
6 mo
<30 d since BMS implantation
≥30 d since BMS implantation
Class III: Harm
Delay surgery
Class I:
Proceed with surgery
<3 mo since DES implantation
Class III: Harm
Delay surgery
3-6 mo since DES implantation, discontinue DAPT; delayed surgery risk is great than stent thrombosis risk
Class IIb:
Proceeding with surgery may be considered
≥6 mo since DES implantation, discontinue DAPT
Class I:
Proceed with surgery

Fig. 32.5 Proposed algorithm for antiplatelet management in patients with percutaneous coronary intervention and noncardiac surgery. *ASA,* Aspirin; *BMS,* bare metal stent; *DAPT,* dual antiplatelet therapy; *DES,* drug-eluting stent. (From Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2014;64:e77–e137.)

dysfunction were both associated with increased 30-day cardiovascular event rates (OR, 2.3; 95% CI, 1.4-3.6; and OR, 1.8; 95% CI 1.1 to 2.9, respectively) and long-term cardiovascular mortality (hazard ratio, 4.6; 95% CI 2.4-8.5; and hazard ratio, 3.0; 95% CI 1.5 to 6.0, respectively).[141] In patients undergoing endovascular surgery ($n = 356$), only symptomatic heart failure was associated with an increase in 30-day cardiovascular events and long-term cardiovascular mortality. These results suggest that stabilization of ventricular function and treatment of pulmonary congestion is prudent before elective surgery.

A recent MI has traditionally been an important predictor of perioperative risk. The more recent the MI, particularly within 3 to 6 months, the greater is the perioperative risk. However, like the Goldman Cardiac Risk Index, medicine has changed and outcomes are improved. The 2014 AHA/ACC Foundation (AHA/ACCF) guidelines advocate the use of 60 days as being high risk.[119] After that time, further risk stratification depends on clinical symptoms.

For those patients without overt symptoms or a history of CAD, the probability of CAD varies with the type and number of atherosclerotic risk factors present. Diabetes accelerates the progression of atherosclerosis, which can frequently be silent, leading many clinicians to assume that diabetes is a CAD equivalent and treating patients as such. Diabetes is an independent risk factor for perioperative cardiac morbidity, and the preoperative treatment with insulin has been included in the Revised Cardiac Risk Index (RCRI). In attempting to determine the degree of the increased risk associated with diabetes, the treatment modality, duration of the disease, and other associated end-organ dysfunction should be taken into account.

Significant intraoperative factors that correlate with perioperative risk and that may be avoided or altered are (1) unnecessary use of vasopressors,[142,143] (2) unintentional hypotension[144-146] (this point is controversial, however, because some investigators have found that unintentional hypotension does not correlate with perioperative morbidity[143]), (3) hypothermia,[147] (4) too low or too high a hematocrit,[148,149] and (5) lengthy operations.[145]

Significant intraoperative factors that correlate with perioperative morbidity and probably cannot be avoided are (1) emergency surgery and (2) thoracic or intraperitoneal surgery or above-the-knee amputations.[145,150-164]

Several risk indices were developed in a prospective cohort study by Lee and associates.[164] They studied 4315 patients 50 years old or older who were undergoing elective major noncardiac procedures in a tertiary care teaching hospital. The six independent predictors of complications included in a RCRI were high-risk type of surgery, history of ischemic heart disease, history of CHF, history of cerebrovascular disease, preoperative treatment with insulin, and preoperative serum creatinine greater than 2.0 mg/dL; increasing cardiac complication rates were noted with an increasing number of risk factors.[164] The RCRI has become the standard tool in the literature for assessing perioperative cardiac risk in a given individual and has been used to direct the decision to perform cardiovascular testing and implement perioperative management protocols. It has been validated for both short-term and long-term cardiovascular outcomes.[165] It has also been shown to predict long-term quality of life.[165] Therefore, the RCRI can be used to help define both the short-term and long-term risks of cardiovascular disease in the surgical patient.

The American College of Surgeons NSQIP created a Surgical Risk Calculator from 525 participating hospitals and more than 1 million operations.[166] This risk calculator uses the specific current procedural terminology code of the procedure being performed to enable procedure-specific risk assessment and includes 21 patient-specific variables (e.g., age, sex, body mass index, dyspnea, previous MI). From this input, it calculates the percentage of risk of a major adverse cardiac event, death, and eight other outcomes. Use of this risk calculator may offer the best estimation for surgery-specific risk of a major adverse cardiac event and death.

The American College of Surgeons NSQIP Myocardial Infarction and Cardiac Arrest risk prediction rule is more specific for cardiac complications.[167] Using these definitions of outcome and chart-based data collection methods, the authors derived a risk index that was robust in the derivation and validation stages and appeared to outperform the RCRI (which was tested in the same dataset) in terms of discriminative power, particularly among patients undergoing vascular surgery.

A primary issue with all these indices is that a simple estimate of risk does not help in refining perioperative management for an individual patient. Therefore, the consultant must communicate the extent and stability of the patient's CAD, rather than make a simple statement of risk classification.

The goal in providing anesthesia to patients with ischemic heart disease is to achieve the best preoperative condition obtainable by treating conditions that correlate with perioperative risk. The next step is to intraoperatively monitor for conditions that correlate with perioperative risk and avoid circumstances that lead to perioperative risk.

Preoperative and Preprocedure Therapy

The only way known to increase oxygen supply to the myocardium of patients with coronary artery stenosis is to maintain adequate diastolic blood pressure, hemoglobin concentration, and oxygen saturation. The main goals of anesthesia practice for these patients have been to decrease the determinants of myocardial oxygen demand, heart rate, ventricular wall tension, and contractile performance, and to improve plaque stabilization. Thus medical management designed to preserve all viable myocardial tissue may include the following:

1. Multiple studies have demonstrated improved outcome in patients given perioperative β-blockers, especially if heart rate is controlled, acknowledging the previously discussed concerns regarding the quality of the studies from the Erasmus group.[167a,b] Subsequent studies demonstrated that β-blockers may not be effective if heart rate is not well controlled, or in lower risk patients.[167c-e] The POISE trial was published in which 8351 high-risk β-blocker-naïve patients were randomized to high-dose continuous-release metoprolol versus placebo.[167f]
2. There was a significant reduction in the primary outcome of cardiovascular events associated with a 30% reduction in MI rate, but with a significantly increased rate of 30-day all-cause mortality and stroke. Several recent cohort studies continue to support the fact that high-risk patients on β-blockers were associated with improved outcome. A Canadian administrative dataset suggested that the perioperative morbidity would be higher if β-blockers were started within 7 days as compared to 8 days or greater. As part of the update to the current ACC/AHA Guidelines, an Evidence Review Committee was formed to independently review the data on perioperative β-blockade. Perioperative β-blockade started within 1 day or less before noncardiac surgery prevents nonfatal MI but increases risks of stroke, death, hypotension, and bradycardia.[167g] Without the controversial DECREASE studies, there are insufficient data on β-blockade started two or more days prior to surgery. Wallace and associates reported that perioperative β-blockade administered according to the Perioperative Cardiac Risk Reduction protocol is associated with a reduction in 30-day and 1-year mortality.[167h] Perioperative withdrawal of β-blockers is associated with increased mortality. The current ACCF/AHA Guidelines on perioperative β-blockade advocate that perioperative β-blockade is a Class I indication and should be used in patients previously on β-blockers. The new recommendations changed the recommendation from a Class IIa to IIb for patients undergoing vascular surgery who are at high cardiac risk owing to CAD or the finding of cardiac ischemia on preoperative testing (Box 32.3).
2. Vasodilation (with nitroglycerin or its “long-acting” analogues nitroprusside, hydralazine, or prazosin) to decrease ventricular wall tension may be beneficial, although currently no randomized trials support the prophylactic use of these agents.[109,110,168] There are no data to support the routine use of pulmonary artery catheters and transesophageal echocardiography for this type of patient.[158,169] The intraoperative management of patients with ischemic heart disease is discussed in further detail in Chapters 31 and 54 and in published guidelines.[117]
3. Other medications. In POISE II, α-2 agonists were not shown to improve perioperative outcome.[169a] POISE II also evaluated the effectiveness of aspirin therapy in a cohort of patients without a recent stent. Administration of aspirin before surgery and throughout the early postsurgical period had no significant effect on the rate of a composite of death or nonfatal MI but increased the risk of major bleeding.[169b] Most recently, perioperative statins have been shown to improve cardiac outcome. Durazzo and colleagues published a randomized trial of 200 vascular surgery patients in which statins were started an average of 30 days prior to vascular surgery.[169c] A significant reduction in cardiovascular complications was demonstrated using this protocol. Le Manach and colleagues demonstrated that statin

BOX 32.3 2014 ACC/AHA Recommendations for Perioperative β-Blockade

Class I

- β-Blockers should be continued in patients undergoing surgery who have been on β-blockers chronically.[111-117] **(Level of Evidence: B)**

Class IIa

- It is reasonable for the management of β-blockers after surgery to be guided by clinical circumstances, independent of when the agent was started.[110,117,118] **(Level of Evidence: B)**

Class IIb

- In patients with intermediate- or high-risk myocardial ischemia noted in preoperative risk stratification tests, it may be reasonable to begin perioperative β-blockers.[119] **(Level of Evidence: C)**
- In patients with three or more RCRI risk factors (e.g., diabetes mellitus, heart failure, coronary artery disease, renal insufficiency, cerebrovascular accident), it may be reasonable to begin β-blockers before surgery.[117] **(Level of Evidence: B)**
- In patients with a compelling long-term indication for β-blocker therapy but no other RCRI risk factors, initiating β-blockers in the perioperative setting as an approach to reduce perioperative risk is of uncertain benefit.[111,117,120] **(Level of Evidence: B)**
- In patients in whom β-blocker therapy is initiated, it may be reasonable to begin perioperative β-blockers long enough in advance to assess safety and tolerability, preferably more than 1 day before surgery.[110,121-123] **(Level of Evidence: B)**

Class III: Harm

- β-Blocker therapy should not be started on the day of surgery.[110] **(Level of Evidence: B)**

RCRI, Revised cardiac risk index.

From Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2014;64(22):e77–e137.

withdrawal greater than 4 days was associated with a 2.9 odds ratio of increased risk of cardiac morbidity in vascular surgery.[169d] The guidelines advocate continuing statin therapy in patients currently taking statins as a Class I indication. A multimodal approach to medical management should be taken in high-risk patients. There continues to be controversy regarding the optimal management of ACE inhibitors and ARBs. In the Veterans Administration, withholding ARB postoperatively is strongly associated with increased 30-day mortality, especially in younger patients, although residual confounding may be present.[169e] In the VISION trial, compared to patients who continued their ACE inhibitors/angiotensin II receptor blockers, the ACE/ARB users who withheld their agents in the 24 hours before surgery were less likely to suffer the primary composite outcome of all-cause death, stroke, or myocardial injury (adjusted relative risk, 0.82; 95% CI, 0.70 to 0.96; $P = .01$); and intraoperative hypotension (adjusted relative risk, 0.80; 95% CI, 0.72-0.93; $P < .001$).[169f] The current AHA/ACC Guidelines suggest that continuation of ACE inhibitors or angiotensin-receptor ARBs perioperatively is reasonable, but should be restarted as soon as reasonable. The new study questions this recommendation, but further randomized trials are needed.

4. Perioperative transfusion therapy is discussed in more detail in Chapter 49. The FOCUS (Functional Outcomes in Cardiovascular Patients Undergoing Surgical Repair of Hip Fracture) trial was unable to demonstrate benefit in high-risk patients with hip fracture between a high and low transfusion trigger.[170]

VALVULAR HEART DISEASE

Major alterations in the preoperative management of patients with valvular heart disease have been made regarding the use of anticoagulant therapy and are now based on the causes of the disease. Preoperative and intraoperative management of patients with valvular heart disease is discussed in Chapters 31 and 54.

The prognosis and the perioperative risk for patients with valvular heart disease depend on the stage of the disease. Although stenotic lesions typically progress faster than regurgitant lesions, regurgitant lesions from infective endocarditis, rupture of the chordae tendineae, or ischemic heart disease can be rapidly fatal. Left ventricular dysfunction is common in the late stage of valvular heart disease, both stenotic and regurgitant.

Preoperative maintenance of drug therapy can be crucial; for example, a patient with severe aortic stenosis can deteriorate rapidly with the onset of atrial fibrillation or flutter because the atrial contribution to left ventricular filling can be critical in maintaining cardiac output. One of the most serious complications of valvular heart surgery and of preoperative valvular heart disease is cardiac arrhythmia. Conduction disorders and long-term therapy with antiarrhythmic and inotropic drugs are discussed elsewhere in this chapter. The reader is referred to Chapter 78 and to other sources for discussion of the management of a child with congenital heart disease who is undergoing noncardiac surgery.[171]

Preoperative Antibiotic Prophylaxis for Endocarditis

Patients who have any form of valvular heart disease, as well as those with intracardiac (ventricular septal or atrial septal defects) or intravascular shunts, should be protected against endocarditis at the time of a known bacteremic event. Endocarditis has occurred in a sufficiently significant number of patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (subvalvular aortic stenosis, asymmetric septal hypertrophy) and mitral valve prolapse to warrant the inclusion of these two conditions in the prophylaxis regimen.

Bacteremia occurs after the following events: dental extraction, 30% to 80%; brushing of teeth, 20% to 24%; use of oral irrigation devices, 20% to 24%; barium enema, 11%; transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP), 10% to 57%; upper GI endoscopy, 8%; nasotracheal intubation, 16% (4 of 25 patients); and orotracheal intubation, 0% (0 of 25 patients). The most recent guidelines from the AHA consisted of an update in 2008 from the AHA/ACC on endocarditis in patients with valvular heart disease, with changes from the 2006 document shown in Table 32.6.[172]

TABLE 32.6 Changes Related to Endocarditis Prophylaxis: American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Guidelines on Valvular Heart Disease

2006 VHD Guideline Recommendations	2008 VHD Focused Update Recommendations	Comments
Class I	**Class IIa**	
Prophylaxis against infective endocarditis is recommended for the following patients: Patients with prosthetic heart valves and patients with a history of infective endocarditis *(level of evidence: C)* Patients who have complex cyanotic congenital heart disease (e.g., single-ventricle states, transposition of the great arteries, tetralogy of Fallot) *(level of evidence: C)* Patients with surgically constructed systemic pulmonary shunts or conduits *(level of evidence: C)* Patients with congenital cardiac valve malformations, particularly those with bicuspid aortic valves, and patients with acquired valvular dysfunction (e.g., rheumatic heart disease) *(level of evidence: C)* Patients who have undergone valve repair *(level of evidence: C)* Patients who have hypertrophic cardiomyopathy when there is latent or resting obstruction *(level of evidence: C)* Patients with MVP and auscultatory evidence of valvular regurgitation and/or thickened leaflets on echocardiography* *(level of evidence: C)*	Prophylaxis against infective endocarditis is reasonable for the following patients at highest risk for adverse outcomes from infective endocarditis who undergo dental procedures that involve manipulation of either gingival tissue or the periapical region of teeth or perforation of the oral mucosa: Patients with prosthetic cardiac valves or prosthetic material used for cardiac valve repair *(level of evidence: B)* Patients with previous infective endocarditis *(level of evidence: B)* Patients with CHD *(level of evidence: B)* Unrepaired cyanotic CHD, including palliative shunts and conduits *(level of evidence: B)* Completely repaired congenital heart defect repaired with prosthetic material or device, whether placed by surgery or by catheter intervention, during the first 6 months after the procedure *(level of evidence: B)* Repaired CHD with residual defects at the site or adjacent to the site of a prosthetic patch or prosthetic device (both of which inhibit endothelialization) *(level of evidence: B)* Cardiac transplant recipients with valve regurgitation as a result of a structurally abnormal valve *(level of evidence: C)*	Modified recommendation (changed class of recommendation from I to IIa, changed text); no class I recommendations exist for infective endocarditis prophylaxis

CHD, Congenital heart disease; *MVP,* mitral valve prolapse; *VHD,* valvular heart disease.

*This footnote is obsolete. Please see 2006 VHD Guideline 3 for footnote text, in Bonow RO, Carabello BA, Kanu C et al. ACC/AHA 2006 guidelines for the management of patients with valvular heart disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines (writing committee to revise the 1998 guidelines for the management of patients with valvular heart disease). Developed in collaboration with the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists: endorsed by the Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions and the Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *Circulation*. 2006;114:e84–e231.

From Nishimura RA, Carabello BA, Faxon DP, et al. ACC/AHA 2008 guideline update on valvular heart disease: focused update on infective endocarditis. A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines: endorsed by the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, and Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *Circulation.* 2008;118:887–896.

Cardiac Valve Prostheses and Anticoagulant Therapy and Prophylaxis for Deep Vein Thrombosis

In patients with prosthetic valves, the risk of increased bleeding during a procedure in a patient receiving antithrombotic therapy must be weighed against the increased risk of thromboembolism caused by stopping the therapy. Common practice in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery with a mechanical prosthetic valve in place is cessation of anticoagulant therapy 3 days preoperatively. This time frame allows the international normalized ratio to fall to less than 1.5 times normal. The oral anticoagulants can then be resumed on postoperative day 1. Using a similar protocol, Katholi and colleagues found no perioperative episodes of thromboembolism or hemorrhage in 25 patients.[173] An alternative approach in patients at high risk for thromboembolism is conversion to heparin during the perioperative period. The heparin can then be discontinued 4 to 6 hours preoperatively and resumed shortly thereafter. Current prosthetic valves may have a lower incidence of this complication, and the risk associated with heparin may outweigh its benefit in the perioperative setting. According to the AHA/ACC guidelines, heparin can usually be reserved for patients who have had a recent thrombus or embolus within 1 year, those with demonstrated thrombotic problems when previously off therapy, and those with more than three risk factors (atrial fibrillation, previous thromboembolism, hypercoagulable condition, and mechanical prosthesis).[174] A lower threshold for recommending heparin should be considered in patients with mechanical valves in the mitral position, in whom a single risk factor would be sufficient evidence of high risk. Subcutaneous low-molecular-weight heparin offers an alternative outpatient approach.[175] It is appropriate for the surgeon and cardiologist to discuss the optimal perioperative management for such a patient, including a review of the most recent guidelines.[176] A new guideline publication was published in 2014.[176a]

Regional anesthetic techniques may be avoided, although this issue is controversial as many practitioners will use regional anesthesia in patients who are receiving prophylaxis for deep vein thrombosis.[177-180] However, epidural hematoma has been associated with anticoagulant therapy in many reports. Large retrospective reviews of outcome after epidural or spinal anesthesia, or both, during or shortly before initiation of anticoagulant therapy with heparin have not reported neurologic dysfunction related to hematoma formation in any patient.[181,182] This paucity of damaging epidemiologic evidence, although reassuring, does not reduce the need for frequent evaluation of neurologic function and a search for back pain in the perioperative period after regional anesthesia in any patient receiving any anticoagulation or antiplatelet.[177,183-185] The risk of regional anesthesia concurrent with prophylaxis for deep vein thrombosis with heparin is greater with the use of low-molecular-weight heparin. Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia has been treated successfully with intravenous immunoglobulin.[179] The American Society of Regional

Anesthesia and Pain Management has issued a consensus statement on the use of regional anesthesia in anticoagulated patients.[186] They suggest that the decision to perform spinal or epidural anesthesia or analgesia, and the timing of catheter removal in a patient receiving antithrombotic therapy should be made on an individual basis, with the small but definite risk of spinal hematoma weighed against the benefits of regional anesthesia for a specific patient.

It was, previously, determined that venous thromboembolism is so common in postoperative patients that almost 1% of postsurgical patients die of fatal pulmonary embolism (Table 32.7).[187] More recently, it has been estimated that venous thromboembolism is responsible for up to 10% of all hospital-related deaths.[187a] Because of this high mortality risk, prophylaxis against deep vein thrombosis has attained widespread acceptance; thus prophylaxis begins with 5000 units of heparin given subcutaneously 2 hours preoperatively.[187-189] Other trials have shown equal effect with external pneumatic sequential compression devices.[188,190] The most current recommendations are available from the American College of Chest Physicians for prophylaxis against venous thromboembolism in 2012.[190a]

TABLE 32.7 Incidence of Deep Vein Thrombosis and Fatal Pulmonary Embolism

	INCIDENCE OF		
Type of Surgery	**Deep Vein Thrombosis (%)**	**Proximal Deep Vein Thrombosis (%)**	**Fatal Pulmonary Embolism (%)**
GENERAL			
Age >40 years	10	<1	0.1
Age >60 years	10-40	3-15	0.8
Malignancy	50-60		
Thoracic	30		
VASCULAR			
Aortic repair	26		
Peripheral	12		
UROLOGIC			
Open prostatectomy	40		
TURP	10		
Other urologic	30-40		
MAJOR GYNECOLOGIC			
With malignancy	40		
Without malignancy	10-20		
NEUROSURGERY			
Craniotomy	20-80		
Laminectomy	4-25		1.5-3.0
ORTHOPEDIC			
Total hip replacement	40-80	10-20	1.0-5.0
Hip fracture	48-75		1.0-5.0
Tibial fracture	45		
Total knee replacement	60-70	20	1.0-5.0
Head, neck, chest wall	11		
MEDICAL			
Acute myocardial infarction	30	6	
Stroke	60-75		
Acute spine injury	60-100		
Other bed bound	26		

TURP, Transurethral resection of the prostate.

Another problem that can arise is managing a pregnant patient with a prosthetic valve during delivery. It is recommended that warfarin be replaced by subcutaneous heparin during the peripartum period. During labor and delivery, elective induction of labor is advocated with discontinuance of all anticoagulant therapy, as indicated for the particular valve prosthesis (discussed earlier).[191]

Auscultation of the prosthetic valve should be performed preoperatively to verify normal functioning. Abnormalities in such sounds warrant preoperative consultation and verification of functioning.

CARDIAC CONDUCTION DISTURBANCES: CARDIAC ARRHYTHMIAS

Bradyarrhythmias, especially if profound or associated with dizziness or syncope, are generally managed with pacemakers. However, chronic bifascicular block (right bundle branch block with a left anterior or posterior hemiblock or left bundle branch block with combined left anterior and posterior hemiblocks), even when only a first-degree heart block is present, can progress to complete heart block and sudden perioperative death on rare occasion. In six studies, less than 2% of the approximately 266 patients with bifascicular block progressed to complete heart block perioperatively.[192] Conversely, these patients have a high 5-year mortality rate (160 of 554 patients, or 29%). Most of the deaths were related to tachyarrhythmias or ischemic events not usually preventable by traditional pacemakers.[193] Thus the presence of a bifascicular block on the ECG should make the anesthesiologist worried about associated CAD or left ventricular dysfunction; an echocardiogram should be evaluated perioperatively. Nevertheless, these patients rarely have complete heart block perioperatively. Therefore, prophylactic preoperative insertion of temporary pacing wires for bifascicular block does not seem warranted; however, central access can be established in advance in the event that a temporary pacemaker needs to be inserted (most operating rooms do not rely on transthoracic pacing, although it may be attempted if available).[194] The actual pacemaker equipment and appropriate personnel should be immediately available, and the equipment should be tested regularly, because symptomatic heart block does occur perioperatively in more than 1% of patients. One study appears to have confirmed this rate of at least 1% for patients undergoing cardiac surgery.[195] One percent of patients in whom a pacing pulmonary artery catheter was not inserted preoperatively subsequently required pacing before cardiopulmonary bypass. By contrast, 19% of patients who had such a catheter in place underwent cardiac pacing before cardiopulmonary bypass. Predictors of the need for pacing included previous symptomatic bradyarrhythmia, a history of transient complete AV block, and aortic valve disease.

Older studies demonstrated that a rate of more than five PVCs per minute on preoperative examination correlates with perioperative cardiac morbidity.[144,151-153] To the classic criteria for treating PVCs (the presence of R-on-T couplets, the occurrence of more than three PVCs per minute, and multifocality of PVCs) must be added frequent (>10/h over a 24-hour period) and repetitive ventricular beats. Electrophysiologic and programmed ventricular stimulation studies are being used to indicate and guide treatment of patients with ischemic heart disease or recurrent arrhythmias and survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. Although such patients are often treated with antiarrhythmic therapy, attention to their underlying condition should be a focus of our preoperative management. Long-term antiarrhythmic therapy is discussed in the last section of this chapter, on drug therapy. Torsades de pointes is an arrhythmia characterized by episodes of alternating electrical polarity such that the major vector of the QRS complex seems to alternate around an isoelectric line. The hallmark enabling differential diagnosis from ventricular tachycardia is the unusual response of this arrhythmia to commonly used antiarrhythmic drugs. In other words, the use of drugs that prolong the QT interval (e.g., quinidine, procainamide, disopyramide, some of the antihistamines, and the antipsychotic phenothiazines) may well make the arrhythmia more frequent or of longer duration. Reports of the sudden occurrence of torsades de pointes during surgical procedures have been rare in the anesthesia literature. Immediate therapy consists of the administration of magnesium or electrical cardioversion, followed by overdrive cardiac pacing or the administration of β-adrenergic agonists and discontinuation of drugs that prolong the QT interval.

Premature atrial contractions and cardiac rhythms other than sinus also correlate with perioperative cardiac morbidity.[144,152] These arrhythmias may be more a marker of poor cardiovascular reserve than a specific cause of perioperative cardiac complications.

Preexcitation syndrome is the name for supraventricular tachycardias associated with AV bypass tracts.[196] Successful treatment, which is predicated on an understanding of the clinical and electrophysiologic manifestations of the syndrome, consists of either catheter ablation techniques or surgery using preoperative and intraoperative techniques that avoid release of sympathetic and other vasoactive substances and therefore tachyarrhythmias.[193,197,198] Anesthesia for electrophysiologic procedures is discussed in Chapter 55.

Disorders of the Respiratory and Immune Systems

GENERAL PREOPERATIVE AND PREPROCEDURE CONSIDERATIONS

Pulmonary complications after procedures requiring anesthesia are as common as cardiovascular complications—even more common if venous thromboembolism is included. It has, relatively recently, been estimated that postoperative respiratory complications can occur in up to 80% of surgical patients, noting obesity, preexisting pulmonary disease, and advanced age are among the chief risk factors.[198a] Thus pulmonary complications are equally as important or more important to the patient and the health system in terms of morbidity, mortality, length-of-stay extension, and cost. Today there is an even greater appreciation of the effects of smoking and sleep apnea on perioperative and long-term care has increased.[199-216] (Preoperative and preprocedure identification and perioperative care of patients with sleep apnea are discussed in the earlier section on obesity and in Chapter 58.)

The main purpose of preoperative testing is to identify patients at risk for perioperative complications so that appropriate perioperative therapy can be instituted to foster return to functional status. Preoperative assessment can also establish baseline function and the feasibility of surgical intervention. Whereas numerous investigators have used pulmonary function tests to define inoperability or high-risk versus low-risk groups for pulmonary complications, few have been able to demonstrate that the performance of any specific preoperative or intraoperative measure, except perhaps smoking cessation and physical activity such as a walking program, reliably decreases perioperative pulmonary morbidity or mortality and improves patient outcomes. Because routine preoperative pulmonary testing and care are discussed extensively in Chapter 41, the current discussion is limited to an assessment of the effectiveness of this type of care.

In fact, few randomized prospective studies indicate an outcome benefit of preoperative preparation. Stein and Cassara randomly allocated 48 patients to undergo preoperative therapy (cessation of smoking, administration of antibiotics for purulent sputum, and use of bronchodilating drugs, postural drainage, chest physiotherapy, and ultrasonic nebulizer) or no preoperative therapy.[212] The no-treatment group had a mortality of 16% and morbidity of 60%, as opposed to 0% and 20%, respectively, for the treatment group. In addition, the treatment group spent an average of 12 postoperative days in the hospital as compared with 24 days for the 21 survivors in the no-treatment group.[212]

Collins and colleagues prospectively examined the benefits of preoperative antibiotics, perioperative chest physiotherapy and therapy with bronchodilating drugs, and routine postoperative analgesia (morphine) on postoperative respiratory complications in patients with COPD.[217] Of these therapies, only preoperative treatment with antibiotics had a beneficial effect.

Hulzebos and colleagues performed a single-center randomized trial of intensive inspiratory muscle training.[218] Preoperative inspiratory muscle training reduced the incidence of postoperative pulmonary complications and the duration of postoperative hospitalization in patients at high risk of developing a pulmonary complication who were undergoing CABG surgery.

Warner and coworkers collected data retrospectively about smoking history and prospectively (concurrently) about pulmonary complications for 200 patients undergoing CABG.[219] These investigators documented that 8 weeks or more of smoking cessation was associated with a 66% reduction in postoperative pulmonary complications. Smokers who stopped for less than 8 weeks actually had an increase (from 33% for current smokers to 57.1% for recent quitters) in the rate of one or more of the six complications surveyed: purulent sputum with pyrexia; need for respiratory therapy care; bronchospasm requiring therapy; pleural effusion or pneumothorax (or both) necessitating drainage; segmental pulmonary collapse, as confirmed by radiography; or pneumonia necessitating antibiotic therapy. Other investigators have found that both shorter and longer periods of cessation of smoking were needed before achieving cardiovascular[220] and hematologic benefit.[221] Bluman and associates performed a retrospective chart review of 410 patients undergoing noncardiac surgery at a VA hospital.[222] Current smoking was associated with a nearly 6-fold increase in the risk of a postoperative pulmonary complication. Reduction in smoking within 1 month of surgery was not associated with a decreased risk for postoperative pulmonary complications. Nakagawa and coauthors also reported higher pulmonary complication rates in patients undergoing pulmonary surgery who quit within 4 weeks of surgery than in current smokers or those who had stopped smoking for more than 4 weeks.[223] Wong and colleagues performed a systematic review of 25 studies of smoking cessation.[224] At least 4 weeks of abstinence from smoking reduced respiratory complications, and abstinence of at least 3 to 4 weeks reduced wound healing complications. Short-term (<4 weeks) smoking cessation did not appear to affect the risk of postoperative respiratory complications.

Two randomized trials focused on smoking cessation. Wong and colleagues performed a prospective, multicenter, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, in which 286 patients were randomized to receive varenicline or placebo.[225] A perioperative smoking cessation intervention with varenicline increased abstinence from smoking 3, 6, and 12 months after elective noncardiac surgery with no increase in serious adverse events. Lee and colleagues randomized patients to a group receiving no specific smoking cessation intervention or to an intervention group that received (1) brief counseling by the preadmission nurse, (2) brochures on smoking cessation, (3) referral to the Canadian Cancer Society's Smokers' Helpline, and (4) a free 6-week supply of transdermal nicotine replacement therapy.[226] All outcome assessors and caregivers on the operative day were blinded to group assignment. Smoking cessation occurred in 12 patients (14.3%) in the intervention group as compared with 3 patients (3.6%) in the control group (relative risk, 4.0; 95% CI, 1.2-13.7; $P = .03$). The overall rate of combined intraoperative and immediate postoperative complications was not significantly different between intervention and control groups. At follow-up 30 days postoperatively, smoking cessation was reported in 22 patients (28.6%) in the intervention group compared with 8 patients (11%) in controls (relative risk, 2.6; 95% CI, 1.2-5.5; $P = .008$).

When Skolnick and coworkers studied 602 children prospectively, exposure to passive smoking (as measured by urinary cotinine, the major metabolite of nicotine) correlated directly with airway complications. Children with the least exposure to passive smoke had the fewest complications.[210] Secondhand smoke may be a model for particulate air pollution, which can have immediate and long-term effects in increasing lung dysfunction and inflammatory stimuli throughout the body.[227,228]

Celli and associates performed a randomized prospective controlled trial of intermittent positive-pressure breathing (IPPB) versus incentive spirometry and deep-breathing exercises in 81 patients undergoing abdominal surgery.[229] The groups exposed to a respiratory therapist (regardless of the treatment given) had more than a 50% lower incidence of clinical complications (30%-33% vs. 88%) and shorter hospital stays than did the control group. Thus this demonstrates that the outcome improves when any concern about lung function is shown by someone knowledgeable in maneuvers designed to clear lung secretions.

Bartlett and coworkers randomly assigned 150 patients undergoing extensive laparotomy to 1 of 2 groups.[230] One group received preoperative instruction in and postoperative use of incentive spirometry (10 times/h). The other group received similar medical care but no incentive spirometry. Only 7 of 75 patients using incentive spirometry had postoperative pulmonary complications, as opposed to 19 of 75 in the control group. However, Lyager and colleagues randomly assigned 103 patients undergoing biliary or gastric surgery to receive either incentive spirometry with preoperative and postoperative chest physiotherapy or only preoperative and postoperative chest physiotherapy.[231] No difference in the postoperative course or pulmonary complications was found between the groups. Other studies have shown a specific benefit (i.e., greater than that provided by routine care) for chest physiotherapy and IPPB. These studies are usually poorly controlled, not randomized, or retrospective in design (or any combination); these deficiencies probably substantially bias the results toward finding a benefit in reducing postoperative pulmonary complications. Although randomized prospective studies showed no benefit or actual harm from chest physiotherapy and IPPB on the resolution of pneumonia or postoperative pulmonary complications, the studies cited earlier[212,217,229,230] and numerous retrospective studies strongly suggest that preoperative evaluation and treatment of patients with pulmonary disease actually decrease perioperative respiratory complications.

Meta-analyses have suggested a benefit of anesthetic and pain management with respect to respiratory outcomes. Rodgers and associates reviewed 141 trials involving 9559 patients who had been randomized to receive neuraxial blockade or general anesthesia. Overall mortality was significantly less frequent in the neuraxial blockade group (2.1% vs. 3.1%). The relative risk of pneumonia in the neuraxial blockade group was 0.61 (CI, 0.48-0.81), and the relative risk of respiratory depression was 0.41 (CI, 0.23-0.73).[211] Further, Neuman and colleagues examined a retrospective cohort of 18,158 patients undergoing surgery for hip fracture in 126 hospitals in New York in 2007 and 2008.[232] Patients receiving regional anesthesia experienced fewer pulmonary complications (359 [6.8%] vs. 1040 [8.1%]; $P < .005$). Regional anesthesia was associated with a lower adjusted odds of mortality (OR, 0.710; 95% CI, 0.541, 0.932; $P = .014$) and pulmonary complications (OR, 0.752; 95% CI, 0.637, 0.887; $P < .0001$) relative to general anesthesia. In subgroup analyses, regional anesthesia was associated with improved survival and fewer pulmonary complications among patients with intertrochanteric fractures but not among patients with femoral neck fractures.

Not all studies demonstrate beneficial effects of pharmacologic pretreatment. In afebrile outpatient American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) class I and II children with no lung disease or findings who underwent noncavitary, nonairway surgery lasting less than 3 hours, neither albuterol nor ipratropium premedication decreased adverse events.[233]

Evaluation of dyspnea is especially useful. Boushy and coworkers found that grades of preoperative dyspnea correlated with postoperative survival. (Grades of respiratory

TABLE 32.8 Grade of Dyspnea Caused by Respiratory Problems (Assessed in Terms of Walking on a Level Surface at a Normal Pace)

Category	Description
0	No dyspnea while walking on a level surface at a normal pace
I	"I am able to walk as far as I like, provided I take my time"
II	Specific (street) block limitation ("I have to stop for a while after one or two blocks")
III	Dyspnea on mild exertion ("I have to stop and rest while going from the kitchen to the bathroom")
IV	Dyspnea at rest

Modified from Boushy SF, Billing DM, North LB, et al. Clinical course related to preoperative pulmonary function in patients with bronchogenic carcinoma. *Chest.* 1971;59:383–391.

dyspnea are provided in Table 32.8.)[234] Mittman demonstrated an increased risk of death after thoracic surgery, from 8% in patients without dyspnea to 56% in patients with dyspnea.[235] Similarly, Reichel found that no patients died after pneumonectomy if they were able to complete a preoperative treadmill test for 4 minutes at the rate of 2 mph on level ground.[236] Other studies have found that the history and physical examination of an asthmatic subject can also predict the need for hospitalization.[201] Wong and colleagues found that the risk index correlated with postoperative pulmonary complications (Table 32.9).[237]

Arozullah and associates developed the first validated multifactorial risk index for postoperative respiratory failure, defined as mechanical ventilation for more than 48 hours after surgical procedures, or reintubation and mechanical ventilation after postoperative extubation.[238] In a prospective cohort study of 181,000 male veterans as part of the National Veterans Administration Surgical Quality Improvement Program, seven factors independently predicted risk (Table 32.10). With increasing numbers of risk factors present, the rate of complications increased from 0.5% (class 1) to 26.6% (class 4). Arozullah and colleagues subsequently developed a risk index for postoperative pneumonia by using data on 160,805 patients undergoing major noncardiac surgery and validated the index by using data on an additional 155,266 patients.[239] Patients were divided into five risk classes by using risk index scores (Table 32.11). Pneumonia rates were 0.2% in patients with 0 to 15 risk points, 1.2% in those with 16 to 25 risk points, 4.0% in those with 26 to 40 risk points, 9.4% in those with 41 to 55 risk points, and 15.3% in those with more than 55 risk points.

Gupta and colleagues used the American College of Surgeons NSQIP to develop a risk model for postoperative respiratory failure.[167] On multivariate logistic regression analysis, five preoperative predictors of postoperative respiratory failure were identified: type of surgery, emergency case, dependent functional status, preoperative sepsis, and higher ASA class (Table 32.12).

SPECIFIC DISEASES

Pulmonary Vascular Diseases

Pulmonary vascular diseases include pulmonary hypertension secondary to heart disease (postcapillary disorders), parenchymal lung disease (pulmonary precapillary disorders), pulmonary embolism, and cor pulmonale from COPD.[240] Optimal preoperative management of these conditions requires treatment of the underlying disease and avoidance of worsening the process.[240-242] Because pulmonary embolism can be particularly difficult to diagnose as clinical findings of pulmonary emboli are not always present or specific for the diagnosis and include a history of tachypnea, dyspnea, palpitations, syncope, chest pain, or hemoptysis. Physical examination can reveal a pleural rub, wheezing, rales, a fixed and split second heart sound, right ventricular lift, or evidence of venous thrombosis. If the ECG shows an S_1Q_3 pattern, spiral CT or lung perfusion scans can be obtained to rule out the diagnosis of pulmonary emboli. A high degree of suspicion is necessary to warrant angiography and anticoagulation or fibrinolytic therapy. If possible, the reactivity of the pulmonary vasculature should be determined because it may be enhanced or decreased by such drugs as nifedipine, hydralazine, nitroglycerin, prazosin, tolazoline, phentolamine, sildenafil citrate, and nitric oxide.

TABLE 32.9 Classification of Risk of Pulmonary Complications for Thoracic and Abdominal Procedures

Category	Points
I. EXPIRATORY SPIROGRAM	
A. Normal (% FVC + [% FEV_1/FVC] > 150)	0
B. % FVC + (% FEV_1/FVC) = 100-150	1
C. % FVC + (% FEV_1/FVC) <100	2
D. Preoperative FVC < 20 mL/kg	3
E. Post bronchodilator FEV_1/FVC <50%	3
II. CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM	
A. Normal	0
B. Controlled hypertension, myocardial infarction without sequelae for >2 years	0
C. Dyspnea on exertion, orthopnea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea, dependent edema, congestive heart failure, angina	1
III. NERVOUS SYSTEM	
A. Normal	0
B. Confusion, obtundation, agitation, spasticity, discoordination, bulbar malfunction	1
C. Significant muscular weakness	1
IV. ARTERIAL BLOOD GASES	
A. Acceptable	0
B. $Paco_2$ >50 mm Hg or PaO_2 <60 mm Hg on room air	1
C. Metabolic pH abnormality >7.50 or <7.30	1
V. POSTOPERATIVE AMBULATION	
A. Expected ambulation (minimum, sitting at bedside) within 36 h	0
B. Expected complete bed confinement for ≥36 h	1

FEV_1, Forced expiratory volume in 1 second; *FVC*, forced vital capacity; *$Paco_2$*, arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide; *PaO_2*, arterial partial pressure of oxygen.

Modified from Wong DH, Weber EC, Schell MJ, et al. Factors associated with postoperative pulmonary complications in patients with severe COPD. *Anesth Analg.* 1995;80:276–284.

TABLE 32.10 Preoperative Predictors of Postoperative Respiratory Failure

Variable	Odds Ratio (95% Confidence Interval)
TYPE OF SURGERY	
Abdominal aortic aneurysm	14.3 (12.0-16.9)
Thoracic	8.14 (7.17-9.25)
Neurosurgery, upper abdominal, or peripheral vascular	4.21 (3.80-4.67)
Neck	3.10 (2.40-4.01)
Other surgery*	1.00 (reference)
Emergency surgery	3.12 (2.83-3.43)
Albumin < 30 g/L	2.53 (2.28-2.80)
Blood urea nitrogen > 30 mg/dL	2.29 (2.04-2.56)
Partially or fully dependent status	1.92 (1.74-2.11)
History of COPD	1.81 (1.66-1.98)
AGE (YEARS)	
≥70	1.91 (1.71-2.13)
0-69	1.51 (1.36-1.69)
<60	1.00 (reference)

COPD, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

*Other surgery includes ophthalmologic, ear, nose, mouth, lower abdominal, extremity, dermatologic, spine, and back surgery.

From Arozullah AM, Daley J, Henderson WG, et al. Multifactorial risk index for predicting postoperative respiratory failure in men after major noncardiac surgery: the National Veterans Administration Surgical Quality Improvement Program. *Ann Surg*. 2000;232:242–253.

TABLE 32.11 Postoperative Pneumonia Risk Index

Preoperative Risk Factor	Point Value
TYPE OF SURGERY	
Abdominal aortic aneurysm repair	15
Thoracic	14
Upper abdominal	10
Neck	8
Neurosurgery	8
Vascular	3
AGE	
80 years	17
70-79 years	13
60-69 years	9
50-59 years	4
FUNCTIONAL STATUS	
Totally dependent	10
Partially dependent	6
Weight loss >10% in past 6 months	7
History of COPD	5
General anesthesia	4
Impaired sensorium	4
History of cerebrovascular accident	4
BLOOD UREA NITROGEN LEVEL	
<2.86 mmol/L (0.8 mg/dL)	4
7.85-10.7 mmol/L (22-30 mg/dL)	2
≥10.7 mmol/L (≥30 mg/dL)	3
Transfusion >4 units	3
Emergency surgery	3
Steroid use for chronic condition	3
Current smoker within 1 year	3
Alcohol intake >2 drinks/day in past 2 weeks	2

COPD, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

From Arozullah AM, Khuri SF, Henderson WG, et al. Development and validation of a multifactorial risk index for predicting postoperative pneumonia after major noncardiac surgery. *Ann Intern Med*. 2001;135:847–857.

Monitoring of pulmonary artery pressure is often required. Preoperative measures should be undertaken to ensure that the patient is not exposed to conditions that elevate pulmonary vascular resistance (e.g., hypoxia, hypercapnia, acidosis, lung hyperinflation, hypothermia)[243] or increased systemic vascular resistance, as this can precipitate acute or worsened right heart failure.

Infectious Diseases of the Lung

Preoperative evaluation and treatment should follow the basic guidelines outlined in the introduction to this section and in Chapter 31. Treatment of the underlying disease should be completed before all but emergency surgery is performed.

Even though elective surgery should be postponed whenever infectious diseases of the lung are present, patients undergoing emergency surgery can have nosocomial infections and immunocompromised systems. The predominant pathogens for nosocomial pneumonia are gram-negative bacilli, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, anaerobes, and pneumococci. Previously, the incidence of tuberculosis increased in the late 1980s and in the 1990s, probably because of reactivation in patients infected with HIV, through increased funding and directly observed antituberculosis treatment the incidence has steadily declined. Tuberculosis can lead to chronic pulmonary and systemic symptoms. Affected patients may have malaise, headache, fever, hemoptysis, and extrapulmonary diseases affecting the skin, cervical lymph nodes, kidneys, pericardium, and meninges. Active disease is treated with four-drug therapy: isoniazid, pyrazinamide, ethambutol or streptomycin, and rifampin for 9 months. Therapy should probably be started preoperatively.

Management of these emergency patients (many of whom have adult respiratory distress syndrome [ARDS]) before they are brought to the operating room may include initiation of antiinfective therapy, optimization of fluid status, facilitation of gas exchange, and therapy for the underlying pathophysiologic process.

Chronic Diseases of the Lung

Treatment of COPD may include the use of short and long acting β-adrenergic drugs, parasympatholytic agents (especially for exercise-induced asthma), systemic or inhaled corticosteroids, and leukotriene antagonists. An estimated

TABLE 32.12 Preoperative Variables Significantly Associated With an Increased Risk for Postoperative Respiratory Failure in 2007 Model from the American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Project*

Parameter	Adjusted OR	95% Wald CI
Totally dependent functional status†	4.07	3.68-4.51
Partially dependent functional status†	2.16	1.98-2.34
ASA class 1‡	0.03	0.02-0.05
ASA class 2‡	0.14	0.11-0.17
ASA class 3‡	0.54	0.44-0.67
ASA class 4‡	1.28	1.04-1.57
Preoperative sepsis (none)§	0.46	0.42-0.50
Preoperative sepsis§	1.32	1.16-1.49
Preoperative septic shock§	2.47	2.16-2.82
Emergency case (absence versus presence)	0.56	0.52-0.61
Anorectal¶	0.26	0.15-0.44
Aortic¶	2.94	2.35-3.68
Bariatric¶	0.36	0.27-0.49
Brain¶	2.08	1.15-3.78
Breast¶	0.07	0.04-0.12
Cardiac¶	1.32	0.92-1.88
Ear, nose, and throat¶	1.11	0.26-4.71
Foregut/hepatopancreatobiliary¶	2.64	2.13-3.27
Gallbladder, appendix, adrenals, and spleen¶	0.57	0.45-0.71
Intestinal¶	1.78	1.44-2.18
Neck¶	0.59	0.33-1.07
Obstetrics and gynecology¶	0.29	0.09-0.94
Orthopedic¶	0.42	0.33-0.55
Other abdominal¶	1.27	1.001-1.62
Peripheral vascular¶	0.79	0.63-0.98
Skin¶	0.73	0.55-0.95
Spine¶	0.593	0.25-1.39
Thoracic¶	1.96	1.43-2.68
Venous¶	0.134	0.05-0.37
Urologic¶	1.36	0.82-2.28

ASA, American Society of Anesthesiologists; *CI,* confidence interval; *OR,* odds ratio.

*The estimate and the standard error (SE) refer to the estimate of the logistic regression coefficient for the specific variable and its associated SE. C-statistic, 0.894.

†Reference group, independent functional status.

‡Reference group, ASA class 5.

§Reference group, preoperative systemic inflammatory response syndrome.

¶Reference group, hernia surgery.

From Gupta H, Gupta PK, Fang X, et al. Development and validation of a risk calculator predicting postoperative respiratory failure. *Chest.* 2011;140:1207–1215.

5% of this population has bronchospasm. Some investigators recommend using inhaled bronchodilators as first-line drugs and reducing the dose of inhaled steroids, such as beclomethasone dipropionate, budesonide, mometasone, and fluticasone, which are inactivated after absorption. However, in large doses, these "inhaled" steroids can suppress adrenal function, and supplemental systemic corticosteroids may be needed at times of stress (see the earlier discussion in the section on adrenocortical malfunction). Preoperative assessment must include gaining knowledge of drug regimens and their effects and education of the patient regarding proper use of an inhaler (Box 32.4), given that these drugs can interact dangerously with anesthetics (see the last section of this chapter) or can be used inappropriately and therefore produce side effects without maximum benefit.[199-209] No known interaction between the inhaled anticholinergic ipratropium bromide and muscle relaxants has been reported. An estimated 10% of asthmatic patients exhibit sensitivity to aspirin and may react not only to compounds containing aspirin but also to tartrazine, yellow dye

BOX 32.4 Procedures for Correct Use of a Metered-Dose Inhaler

Remove the cap and hold the inhaler upright.
Shake the inhaler.
Tilt the head back slightly and exhale steadily to functional residual capacity.
Position the inhaler by using a spacer between the actuator and the mouth.
Press down on the inhaler while taking a slow, deep breath (3-5 s).
Hold the full inspiration for at least 5 and up to 10 s, if possible, to allow the medication to reach deeply into the lungs.
Repeat inhalations as directed. Waiting 1 min after inhalation of the bronchodilator may permit subsequent inhalations to penetrate more deeply into the lungs and is necessary to ensure proper delivery of the dose. Rinse your mouth and expectorate after using the inhaler.

number five, indomethacin, other nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, and aminopyrine.[244]

Cystic fibrosis is characterized by dilatation and hypertrophy of the bronchial glands, mucous plugging of the peripheral airways, and frequently, bronchitis, bronchiectasis, and bronchiolectasis. For all these conditions, the measures recommended earlier in this section, as well as appropriate hydration to allow mobilization of secretions, constitute optimal preprocedure therapy.

Surgical resection is the primary therapy for non–small cell carcinomas (e.g., adenocarcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma, and large cell carcinoma). These carcinomas account for 75% of all lung carcinomas, 12% of all malignant tumors, and 20% of all cancer deaths in the United States.[245] Success of surgery can be predicted by the stage of the tumor.

The combination of chemotherapy and radiation therapy is the current treatment of choice for small cell carcinomas of the lung.[246] Oat cell (small cell) carcinoma of the lung and bronchial adenomas are known for their secretion of endocrinologically active substances, such as ACTH-like hormones. Squamous cell cancers in the superior pulmonary sulcus produce Horner syndrome, as well as characteristic pain in areas served by the eighth cervical nerves and first and second thoracic nerves. These tumors are now treated with preoperative radiation; surgical resection leads to an almost 30% "cure" rate. For all these patients, their preoperative assessment should be viewed as a "three-legged stool," including lung mechanics, parenchymal function, and cardiopulmonary reserve.

Anaphylaxis, Anaphylactoid Responses, and Allergic Disorders Other than Those Related to Lung Diseases and Asthma

Anaphylactic and Anaphylactoid Reactions. Anaphylaxis is a severe life-threatening allergic reaction. Allergic applies to immunologically mediated reactions, as opposed to those caused by pharmacologic idiosyncrasy, direct toxicity or drug overdosage, or drug-drug interaction.[247-249] Anaphylaxis is the typical immediate hypersensitivity reaction (type I) produced by immunoglobulin E (IgE) mediated release of pharmacologically active substances. These mediators in turn produce specific end-organ responses in the skin (urticaria), the respiratory system (bronchospasm and upper airway edema), and the cardiovascular system (vasodilation, changes in inotropy, and increased capillary permeability). Vasodilation occurs at the level of the capillary and postcapillary venule and leads to erythema, edema, and smooth muscle contraction. This clinical syndrome is called *anaphylaxis*. By contrast, an *anaphylactoid reaction* denotes an identical or very similar clinical response that is not mediated by IgE or (usually) an antigen-antibody process.[248,249] A large perioperative database review found that hemodynamically significant anaphylaxis occurred in 1 of every 8400 cases.[249a] Further, a personal history of anaphylaxis was the best predictor of occurrence.

In anaphylactic reactions, an injected or inhaled (or ingested) substance—usually drugs, food, or insect venom—can serve as the allergen itself. Low-molecular-weight agents are believed to act as haptens that form immunologic conjugates with host proteins. The offending substance, regardless of whether it is a hapten, may be the parent compound, a nonenzymatically generated product, or a metabolic product formed in the patient's body. When an allergen binds immunospecific IgE antibodies on the surface of mast cells and basophils, histamine and eosinophilic chemotactic factors of anaphylaxis are released from storage granules in a calcium- and energy-dependent process.[248,249] Other chemical mediators are rapidly synthesized and are subsequently released in response to cellular activation. These mediators include the following: slow-reacting substance of anaphylaxis, which is a combination of three leukotrienes; other leukotrienes;[248,249] kinins; platelet-activating factors; adenosine; chemotactic factors; heparin; tryptase; chymase; and prostaglandins, including the potent bronchoconstrictor prostaglandin D_2; eosinophil growth and activating factors; mast cell growth factors; and proinflammatory and other factors that contribute to the IgE isotype switch.

The end-organ effects of the mediators produce the clinical syndrome of anaphylaxis. Usually, a first wave of symptoms, including those caused by vasodilation and a feeling of impending doom, is quickly followed by a second wave as the cascade of mediators amplifies the reactions. In a sensitized patient, onset of the signs and symptoms caused by these mediators is usually immediate but may be delayed 2 to 15 minutes or, in rare instances, as long as 2.5 hours after the parenteral injection of antigen.[250,251] After oral administration, manifestations may occur at unpredictable times.

Mast cell proliferation, together with severe progressive inflammation, contributes to the worsening of symptoms that occurs even after an allergen load is no longer present. The antigen present in cells and lymphocytes, as well as activated mast cells, starts to induce the production of cytokines. These proinflammatory cytokines recruit more inflammatory cells, a process that leads to tissue edema and mediates a second wave of mast cell degranulation. This second wave can promote the recurrence of severe symptoms 6 to 8 hours later and necessitates, some believe, at least 8 hours of continued ICU-like observation.

In addition, biologically active mediators can be generated by multiple effector processes to produce an anaphylactoid reaction. Activation of the blood coagulation and fibrinolytic systems, the kinin-generating sequence, or the complement cascade can produce the same inflammatory substances that result in an anaphylactic reaction. The two mechanisms known to activate the complement system are called classical and alternative. The classical pathway can be initiated through IgG or IgM (transfusion reactions) or plasmin. The alternative pathway can be activated by lipopolysaccharides (endotoxin), drugs (Althesin), radiographic contrast media,[252] membranes (nylon tricot membranes for bubble oxygenators), cellophane membranes of dialyzers, vascular graft material,[253] latex or latex-containing products,[254,255] and perfluorocarbon artificial blood.

Muscle relaxants were previously believed to be the most common drug associated with anaphylaxis, though recent evidence supports protamine and antibiotics with increased risk.[249a] However, this may change with the recent approval of sugammadex as one of the primary concerns regarding the delaying its approval in the United States was "hypersensitivity reactions," which includes anaphylaxis. Latex continues to account for a significant number of these reactions, and the incidence of intraoperative anaphylaxis caused by latex is increasing. In addition, histamine can be liberated independent of immunologic reactions.[256] Mast cells and basophils release histamine in response to chemicals or drugs. Most narcotics can release histamine,[256] and they can produce an anaphylactoid reaction, as can radiographic contrast media.[252] What makes some patients more susceptible to the release of histamine in response to drugs is unknown, but hereditary and environmental factors may play a role.

Intravenous contrast material is probably the most frequently used agent that causes anaphylactoid reactions. Because diagnostic (skin and other) tests are helpful only in IgE-mediated reactions, pretesting is not useful for contrast reactions. Pretreatment with diphenhydramine, cimetidine (or ranitidine), and corticosteroids has been reported to be useful in preventing or ameliorating anaphylactoid reactions to intravenous contrast material.[252,257] Unfortunately, very large doses of steroids (1 g of methylprednisolone intravenously) may be necessary to obtain a beneficial effect, though the efficacy of large-dose steroid therapy has not been confirmed.[258] Other common substances associated with anaphylactic or anaphylactoid reactions that may merit preoperative therapy include antibiotics, intravascular volume expanders, and blood products.[258] The anesthesiologist should always be prepared perioperatively to treat an anaphylactic or anaphylactoid response.

Minimizing Risks Preoperatively. Although virtually all evidence on this subject is merely anecdotal, enough consistent thought recurs through the literature to justify proposing an optimal approach to these problems. First, predisposing factors should be sought; patients with a history of atopy or allergic rhinitis should be suspected of being at risk. Other risk factors of note include multiple previous procedures, history of spina bifida, history of asthma, food allergies associated with latex allergy (including avocado, kiwi, banana, pineapple, papaya, chestnut, and buckwheat), systemic mastocytosis, and hereditary angioedema.[258a] Because anaphylactic and anaphylactoid reactions to contrast media occur 5 to 10 times more frequently in patients with a previously suspected reaction, consideration should be given to the administration of low-osmotic agents and both H_1- and H_2-receptor antagonists for 16 to 24 hours before exposing these patients to a suspected allergen. H_1-receptor antagonists appear to require this much time to act on the receptor. Volume status can be optimized,[248] and perhaps large doses of steroids (1 g of hydrocortisone) should also be administered before exposing patients to agents associated with a high incidence of anaphylactic or anaphylactoid reactions.[258] Older patients and patients taking β-adrenergic blocking drugs present special problems; they are at higher risk of having complications from both pretreatment (especially vigorous hydration) and therapy for anaphylactic reactions (glucagon is useful here to overcome epinephrine resistance) and are less responsive to treatment regimens.[259] One approach is to avoid drugs likely to trigger anaphylactic or anaphylactoid reactions or alter the treatment protocol for this group. Drawing blood for later analysis, especially of tryptase, can be useful in clarifying the diagnosis.[260]

With the increasing incidence of latex hypersensitivity, attempts have been made to make much of the operating room environment latex free; however, costs and preferences have resulted in the continued use of latex-containing gloves in many hospitals. Nonetheless, more hospitals are totally latex free. In allergic patients, care should be taken to ensure that no latex-containing products are present in the operating room.

Primary Immunodeficiency Diseases

Primary immunodeficiency diseases usually manifest early in life as recurrent infections. Along with survival achieved with antibiotic and antibody treatment have come new prominent features: cancer and allergic and autoimmune disorders.

Hereditary angioedema is an autosomal dominant genetic disease characterized by episodes of angioedema involving the subcutaneous tissues and submucosa of the GI tract and airway and often manifested as abdominal pain. These patients have a functionally impotent inhibitor or deficiency of an inhibitor to complement component C1 leading to an overproduction of bradykinin resulting in vascular permeability. The most feared complication for the anesthesiologist is airway edema resulting in an unexpected difficult airway.[260a] The mainstay of treatment of an acute attack is supportive because epinephrine, antihistamines, and corticosteroids often fail to work. The severity of attacks can be prevented or decreased by drugs that are either antifibrinolytics (e.g., ε-aminocaproic acid [EACA] and tranexamic acid) or attenuated androgens (e.g., danazol and stanozolol). Because trauma can precipitate acute attacks, prophylactic therapy with plasma derived C1-INH, attenuated androgens, antifibrinolytics, or all three is recommended before elective surgery; a repeat dose of C1-INH can be given if edema develops.[260a] Fresh frozen plasma has been used during acute attacks with success because it contains C1-INH, though FFP could theoretically worsen an attack, as it contains other complement components and should only be used if no other treatment is available.[260a]

Most of the 1 in 700 persons who have selective IgA deficiency (i.e., <5 mg/dL) have repeated serious infections or connective tissue disorders. These infections commonly involve the respiratory tract (e.g., sinusitis, otitis) or GI tract (manifested as diarrhea, malabsorption, or both). If the patient has rheumatoid arthritis, Sjögren syndrome, or systemic lupus erythematosus, the anesthetist should consider the possibility of an isolated IgA deficiency;

however, patients with this disorder can be otherwise healthy. Because antibodies to IgA may develop in these patients if they were previously exposed to IgA (as could occur from a previous blood transfusion), subsequent blood transfusions can cause anaphylaxis, even when they contain washed erythrocytes. Transfusions should therefore consist of blood donated by another IgA-deficient patient.

Many immunomodulators are now being given to augment cancer treatments[261]; no interactions among these modulators, no effects on the incidence of immune reactions during anesthesia, and no interactions with anesthetic effects have been reported except those regarding immunosuppressant drugs (see the last section of this chapter).

Immunonutrition is increasingly being used preprocedurally by patients and prescribed by providers to decrease inflammatory responses.[254] Whereas excellent data on the benefits of probiotics in changing the intestinal milieu to decrease inflammation can be found, data on probiotics' role in prevention of intestinal complications, improvement in wound healing, incidence of perioperative infections is under investigation, though benefits may outweigh the risks.[261a-c]

Diseases of the Central Nervous System, Neuromuscular Diseases, and Psychiatric Disorders

Evaluation of a patient with neurologic or psychiatric disease can be found in Chapter 31. Information gathered from the history that warrants further investigation includes a previous need for postoperative ventilation in a patient without inordinate lung disease, which indicates the possibility of metabolic neurologic disorders such as porphyria, myopathies, neuropathies, and neuromuscular disorders such as myasthenia gravis. Other historical information warranting further investigation includes the use of drugs such as the following: steroids; guanidine; anticonvulsant, anticoagulant, and antiplatelet drugs; lithium; tricyclic antidepressants; phenothiazines; and butyrophenones.

Although preoperative treatment of most neurologic disorders may not lessen perioperative morbidity, knowledge of the pathophysiologic characteristics of these disorders is important in planning intraoperative and postoperative management. Thus preoperative knowledge about these disorders and their associated conditions (e.g., cardiac arrhythmias with Duchenne muscular dystrophy, or respiratory and cardiac muscle weakness with dermatomyositis) may reduce perioperative morbidity. A primary goal of neurologic evaluation is to determine the site of the lesion in the nervous system. Such localization to one of four levels (supratentorial compartment, posterior fossa, spinal cord, peripheral nervous system) is essential for accurate diagnosis and appropriate management. (Disorders accompanied by increased intracranial pressure and cerebrovascular disorders are discussed in Chapters 11 and 57.)

COMA

Little is known about specific anesthetic, perioperative, or periprocedural choices that alter outcome for a comatose patient, but as for all other conditions, the cause of the coma should be known so that drugs can be avoided that may worsen the condition or that may not be metabolized because of organ dysfunction. First, the patient should be observed. Yawning, swallowing, or licking of the lips implies a "light" coma with major brainstem function intact. If consciousness is depressed but respiration, pupillary reactivity to light, and eye movements are normal and no focal motor signs are present, metabolic depression is likely. Abnormal pupillary responses may indicate hypoxia, hypothermia, local eye disease, or drug intoxication with belladonna alkaloids, narcotics, benzodiazepines, or glutethimide; pupillary responses may also be abnormal, however, after the use of eye drops. Other metabolic causes of coma include uremia, hypoglycemia, hepatic coma, alcohol ingestion, hypophosphatemia, myxedema, and hyperosmolar nonketotic coma. Except in extreme emergencies, such as uncontrolled bleeding or a perforated viscus, care should be taken to render the patient as metabolically normal as possible before the surgical procedure. This practice and documenting the findings on the chart preoperatively lessen any confusion regarding the cause of intraoperative and postoperative problems. However, too rapid correction of uremia or hyperosmolar nonketotic coma can lead to cerebral edema, a shift of water into the brain as a result of a reverse osmotic effect caused by dysequilibrium of the urea concentration.

The physical examination is extremely helpful preoperatively in assessing the prognosis. Arms flexed at the elbow (i.e., decorticate posture) imply bilateral hemisphere dysfunction but an intact brainstem, whereas extension of the legs and arms (bilateral decerebrate posture) implies bilateral damage to structures at the upper brainstem or deep hemisphere level. Seizures are often seen in patients with uremia and other metabolic encephalopathies. Hyperreflexia and upward-pointing toes suggest a structural CNS lesion or uremia, hypoglycemia, or hepatic coma; hyporeflexia and downward-pointing toes with no hemiplegia generally indicate the absence of a structural CNS lesion. It is important to compare preoperative physical examination with previous different providers' examinations, trending Glasgow Coma Scores can provide utility and standardization.

EPILEPTIC SEIZURES

A seizure is the term for the clinical event defined as a paroxysmal alteration in neurologic function caused by a synchronous, rhythmic depolarization of brain cortical neurons. Epilepsy is the condition manifested by recurrent, unprovoked seizures. Epileptic seizures result from paroxysmal neuronal discharges of abnormally excitable neurons. Six percent to 10% of individuals younger than 70 years old will experience a seizure at some time during their lifetime. Fifty percent to 70% of patients with one seizure will never have another. However, 70% of people with two seizures will have an epileptic focus, be candidates for antiseizure medications, and be subject to withdrawal seizures after anesthesia if such medications are not continued.[262] Overall, epilepsy has a prevalence of 0.5% to 1% of the population, with the highest incidence in extremes of age and in those with anatomic neurologic abnormalities.[262a]

Sometimes syncopal episodes can be mistaken for seizures, especially when interviews are compressed in the short time frame of a preoperative visit. Twenty-five percent of patients with a seizure have a normal electroencephalogram (EEG) when they are interictal; thus a negative EEG result does not indicate that someone with a seizure will not have a withdrawal seizure when emerging from anesthesia. Seizures can be generalized (arising from deep midline structures in the brainstem or thalamus, usually without an aura or focal features during the seizure), partial focal motor, or sensory (the initial discharge comes from a focal unilateral area of the brain, often preceded by an aura). As with cerebrovascular accidents and coma, knowing the origin may be crucial to understanding the pathophysiologic processes of the disease and to managing the patient's intraoperative and postoperative course.

Epileptic seizures can arise from discontinuation of sedative-hypnotic drugs or alcohol, use of narcotics, uremia, traumatic injury, neoplasms, infection, congenital malformation, birth injury, drug use (e.g., amphetamines, cocaine), hypercalcemia or hypocalcemia, blood in the ventricle or hypoxia, and vascular disease and vascular accidents. Up to 30% of patients with severe traumatic brain injury develop early seizures (within 7 days of injury).[262b] Thirty percent of epileptic seizures have no known cause. Most partial seizures are caused by structural brain abnormalities (secondary to tumor, trauma, stroke, infection, and other causes).

Most authorities believe that anticonvulsant medications should be given in the therapeutic range,[262-264] and they should be continued through the morning of the surgical procedure, even in pregnant women. They should also be given postoperatively, even in mothers who plan to breastfeed, according to guidelines published by the American Academy of Neurology. Many of the epileptic drugs, including phenytoin, carbamazepine, and phenobarbiturate, alter the hepatic metabolism of many drugs and induce cytochrome P450 enzyme activity. Drug-drug interactions are much less problematic with the newer epileptic drugs such as gabapentin and topirimate.[262] Appropriate treatment of status epilepticus refractory to antiepileptic drugs includes general anesthesia and carries high morbidity.[264] In one controlled trial, phenobarbital was more rapidly effective in controlling status epilepticus than was diazepam followed by phenytoin.[264] The frequency of side effects and of required tracheal intubation was similar for both regimens. Thus other than the use of current drug therapy and heeding precautions taken for the underlying disease, no known changes in perioperative management seem to be indicated, though many agents may possess both proconvulsant and anticonvulsant properties pending dose utilized; therefore knowledge of anesthetics agents is crucial.

INFECTIOUS DISEASES OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM, DEGENERATIVE DISORDERS OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM, AND HEADACHE

Many degenerative CNS disorders have been traced to slowly developing viral diseases or even the presence of certain proteins or viral particles ("prions"). No special perioperative anesthetic considerations appear to apply for infectious disorders of the CNS other than those for increased intracranial pressure and avoidance of occupational exposure and transmission of disease to healthcare workers. The appropriate prophylactic measures to take if one comes in contact with meningococcal disease or other infectious CNS diseases are still not well established. The use of *H. influenzae* type B vaccine has made meningitis an adult disease.[265]

Parkinson disease is a degenerative disorder of the CNS that may or may not be caused by a virus. Clinically, Parkinson disease, chronic manganese intoxication, phenothiazine or butyrophenone toxicity, Wilson disease, Huntington chorea, the effects of street drug toxins such as methylphenyltetrahydropyridine, and carbon monoxide encephalopathy all have similar initial features: bradykinesia, muscular rigidity, and tremor.

In Parkinson disease, therapy is directed at (1) increasing presence of dopamine, (2) increasing the neuronal release of dopamine or the receptor's response to dopamine, (3) stimulating the receptor directly with dopamine agonists (i.e., bromocriptine), (4) direct stimulation of dopaminergic tissue (i.e., deep brain stimulator), or (5) decreasing cholinergic activity. Anticholinergic agents have been the initial drugs of choice because they decrease tremor more than muscle rigidity. Dopamine does not pass the blood-brain barrier, so its precursor L-dopa (levodopa) is used. Unfortunately, L-dopa is decarboxylated to dopamine in the periphery and can cause nausea, vomiting, and arrhythmia. These side effects are diminished by the administration of α-methylhydrazine (carbidopa), a decarboxylase inhibitor that does not pass the blood-brain barrier. Refractoriness to L-dopa develops, and it is now debated whether the drug should be used only when symptoms cannot be controlled with other anticholinergic medications. "Drug holidays" have been suggested as one means of restoring the effectiveness of these compounds, but cessation of such therapy may result in marked deterioration of function and need for hospitalization. Therapy for Parkinson disease should be initiated preoperatively and be continued through the morning of the surgical procedure; such treatment seems to decrease drooling, the potential for aspiration, and ventilatory weakness.[266,267] Reinstituting therapy promptly after surgery is crucial,[263,266-270] as is avoiding drugs such as the phenothiazines and butyrophenones, which inhibit the release of dopamine or compete with dopamine at the receptor.[266] Carbidopa or levodopa in low doses (20-200 mg nightly vs. the usual 60-600 mg/day for Parkinson disease) is commonly used in the nonparkinsonian restless leg syndrome of older adults (present in 2%-5% of individuals >60 years old). This drug also should be given the night before and the night immediately after the surgical procedure. Clozapine does not appear to worsen the movement disorders of Parkinson disease and has been used postoperatively to stop levodopa-induced hallucinations. Patients with Parkinson disease may also undergo deep brain stimulation under monitored anesthesia care. Postoperatively patients with Parkinson disease benefit from early physical therapy, appropriate analgesia, pulmonary hygiene, and autonomic assessment with necessary intervention.[270a]

Dementia, a progressive decline in intellectual function, can be caused by treatable infections (e.g., syphilis, cryptococcosis, coccidioidomycosis, Lyme disease, tuberculosis), depression (a trial of antidepressants is indicated in most patients), side effects of medications (digitalis has slowed brain function more than the heart rate), myxedema, vitamin B_{12} deficiency, chronic drug or alcohol intoxication, metabolic causes (liver and renal failure), neoplasms, partially treatable infections (HIV), untreatable infections (Creutzfeldt-Jakob syndrome), or decreased acetylcholine in the cerebral cortex (Alzheimer disease). This last condition occurs in more than 0.5% of Americans.[271-274] As of 2013, some degree of Alzheimer disease affects approximately 11% of Americans aged 65 and older, and affects approximately 32% of Americans aged 85 and older.[274a] Although these patients are often given cholinergic agonists, controlled trials of these drugs have not as yet shown major significant benefit.[272,273,275] Gingko has improved subjective symptoms in 37% of patients versus 23% of those given placebo. Although further controlled trials failed to confirm its benefit in early Alzheimer disease or in healthy older individuals, gingko is still popular. Cholinergic medications improve functioning in patients with Alzheimer disease.[276] These families often desire surgery, but the interactions of these drugs and therapies with perioperative analgesic and anesthetic drug therapies are not well established. One case report noted intraoperative bradycardia in such patients with two cholinergic drugs.[277] A link may exist among Alzheimer disease, postoperative cognitive dysfunction, and inhaled anesthetics.[278,278a] Deposition of β-amyloid can occur in animals exposed to inhaled anesthetics.[279-281] Whether this link is clinically relevant in humans remains to be determined. Most reversible dementias represent either delirium (commonly infection, metabolic, or drug induced) or depression.[272,273,282] Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (prion driven) has been transmitted inadvertently by surgical instruments and corneal transplants; the causative virus or protein particle is not inactivated by heat, disinfectants, or formaldehyde.

More than 90% of patients with chronic recurring headaches are categorized as having migraine, tension, or cluster headaches. The mechanism of tension or cluster headaches may not differ qualitatively from that of migraine headaches; all may be manifestations of labile vasomotor regulation.[283] A headache is said to be migraine if it is characterized by four of the following five "POUNDing" conditions: if it is Pulsating, if it lasts One day or more, if it is Unilateral, if Nausea occurs, and if it Disturbs daily activities.[284]

Treatment of cluster and migraine headaches centers on the use of serotonin drugs such as sumatriptan or ergotamine and its derivatives.[283-285] Other drugs that may be effective are propranolol, calcium channel inhibitors, cyproheptadine, prednisone, antihistamines, tricyclic antidepressants, phenytoin, and diuretic drugs, as well as biofeedback techniques. Giant cell arteritis, glaucoma, and all the meningitides, including Lyme disease, are other causes of headache that may benefit from preoperative treatment.[286] No other special treatment is indicated preoperatively for a patient who has a well-delineated cause for the headaches. Acute migraine attacks can sometimes be terminated by ergotamine tartrate aerosol or by injection of sumatriptan or dihydroergotamine mesylate intravenously; general anesthesia has also been used. We normally continue all prophylactic headache medicine, although the decision to continue aspirin through the morning of the surgical procedure is usually left to the surgeon.

BACK PAIN, NECK PAIN, AND SPINAL CANAL SYNDROMES

Acute spinal cord injury is discussed earlier in the section on autonomic dysfunction. Although it is a common problem, little is written about the anesthetic management of syndromes related to herniated disks, spondylosis (usually of advancing age), and the congenital narrowing of the cervical and lumbar spinal canal that gives rise to symptoms of nerve root compression. One report stresses the importance of the vascular component in the mechanism of damage to the spinal cord and hence the theoretic desirability of slight hypertension perioperatively.[287] Another report suggests the use of awake intubation, a fiberoptic bronchoscope, and monitoring of evoked potentials.[288] Patients with back pain may be receiving large doses of narcotics that may influence the anesthetic plan and necessitate the need for a perioperative multimodal analgesic approach, including the continuation of home analgesic regimens. A thoughtful preanesthetic discussion with the patient regarding analgesia following surgery is essential for a successful postsurgical regimen.

DEMYELINATING DISEASES

Demyelinating diseases constitute a diffuse group of diseases ranging from those with uncertain cause (e.g., multiple sclerosis, in which genetic, epidemiologic, and immunologic factors are probably all involved and interferon-β appears to be a promising treatment[289]) to those that follow infection, vaccination (e.g., Guillain-Barré syndrome), or antimetabolite treatment of cancer. Therefore, demyelinating diseases can have very diverse symptoms, with a risk of relapse of disease existing immediately after surgery. Because relapse may occur as a result of rapid electrolyte changes and hyperthermia in the perioperative period, such changes should be avoided and temperature tightly regulated.[289a] In addition, perioperative administration of steroids may be a protective measure.[100] Both spinal anesthesia and epidural anesthesia have been administered without problems.[290,291] Multiple sclerosis and demyelinating diseases in general are the most common causes of nontraumatic disability in young adults with a prevalence reported between 2 and 150/100,000 people.[289a] The age-adjusted survival rate is 80% of that of unaffected individuals (i.e., the average patient with multiple sclerosis ages 1.2 years for every year with the disease). No treatment alters most of these disease processes, although ACTH, steroids, interferon-β, glatiramer acetate (Copaxone), and plasmapheresis may ameliorate or abbreviate a relapse, or even alter disease progression, especially progression of multiple sclerosis and (if started within 2 weeks of onset) Guillain-Barré syndrome.[292] Such an effect is consonant with the hypothesis of an immunologic disorder as the cause of these diseases. Care should be taken to avoid succinylcholine in these patients because of the risk of hyperkalemia secondary to extrajunctional acetylcholine receptors.

METABOLIC DISEASES

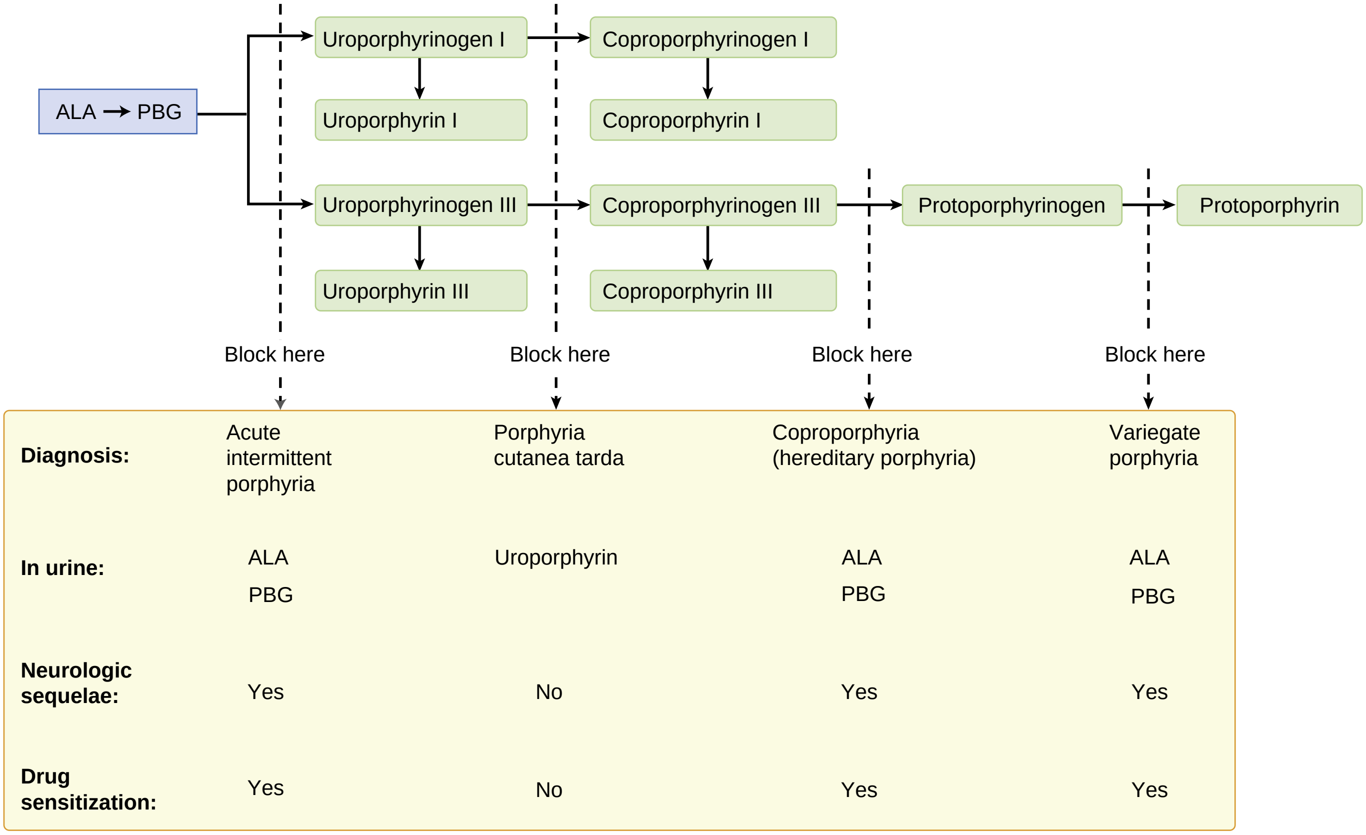
Included in the category of metabolic diseases is nervous system dysfunction secondary to porphyrias, alcoholism, uremia, hepatic failure, and vitamin B_{12} deficiency. The periodic paralysis that can accompany thyroid disease is discussed in the later section on neuromuscular disorders.

Alcoholism or heavy alcohol intake is associated with the following: acute alcoholic hepatitis, the activity of which declines as alcohol is withdrawn; myopathy and cardiomyopathy, which can be severe; and withdrawal syndromes. Within 6 to 8 hours of withdrawal, the patient may become tremulous, a state that usually subsides within days or weeks. Alcoholic hallucinosis and withdrawal seizures generally occur within 24 to 36 hours. These seizures are generalized grand mal attacks; when focal seizures occur, other causes should be sought. Delirium tremens usually appears within 72 hours of withdrawal and is often preceded by tremulousness, hallucinations, or seizures. These three symptoms, combined with perceptual distortions, insomnia, psychomotor disturbances, autonomic hyperactivity, and, in a large percentage of cases, another potentially fatal illness (e.g., bowel infarction or subdural hematoma), are components of delirium tremens. This syndrome is now treated with benzodiazepines. Nutritional disorders of alcoholism include alcoholic hypoglycemia and hypothermia, alcoholic polyneuropathy, Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, and cerebellar degeneration. In patients with alcoholism (i.e., those who drink at least two six packs of beer or one pint of hard alcohol/day or the equivalent), emergency surgery and anesthesia (despite alcoholic hepatitis), are not associated with worsening abnormalities in liver enzymes. In addition, approximately 20% of patients with alcoholism also have respiratory disease. Further, postoperatively these patients can have poor wound healing, altering levels of consciousness/delirium, and difficulty with analgesia.[292a] A patient who has a history of alcohol abuse therefore warrants careful examination of many systems for quantification of preoperative physical status.

Although hepatic failure can lead to coma with high-output cardiac failure, unlike uremia, it does not lead to chronic polyneuropathy. Uremic polyneuropathy is a distal symmetric sensorimotor polyneuropathy that may be improved by dialysis. The use of depolarizing muscle relaxants in patients with polyneuropathies has been questioned. We believe that patients who have neuropathy associated with uremia should not be given succinylcholine because of a possible exaggerated hyperkalemic response.

Pernicious anemia caused by vitamin B_{12} deficiency may result in subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord; the signs are similar to those of chronic nitrous oxide toxicity. Both pernicious anemia and nitrous oxide toxicity are associated with peripheral neuropathy and disorders of the pyramidal tract and posterior column (which governs fine motor skills and the sense of body position). Combined-system disease can also occur without anemia, as can nitrous oxide toxicity in dentists and nitrous oxide abusers. Patients with vitamin B_{12} deficiency and anemia, if treated with folate, improve hematologically but progress to dementia and severe neuropathy. It may thus be prudent to give an intramuscular injection of 100 µg of vitamin B_{12} or 800 µg orally before giving folate to a patient who has signs of combined-system degeneration.[293]

The porphyrias are a constellation of metabolic diseases that result from an autosomally inherited lack of functional enzymes active in the synthesis of hemoglobin. Fig. 32.6 schematically depicts the abnormalities that result from these enzyme deficits. Type 1, 3, and 4 porphyrias can cause life-threatening neurologic abnormalities. These conditions are characterized by the presence of aminolevulinic



Diagnosis:	Acute intermittent porphyria	Porphyria cutanea tarda	Coproporphyria (hereditary porphyria)	Variegate porphyria
In urine:	ALA PBG	Uroporphyrin	ALA PBG	ALA PBG
Neurologic sequelae:	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
Drug sensitization:	Yes	No	Yes	Yes

Fig. 32.6 Schematic depiction of the functional enzyme deficits that occur in some of the porphyrias. *ALA,* Aminolevulinic acid; *PBG,* porphobilinogen.

acid (ALA) or porphobilinogen, or both, in urine; these substances do not occur in porphyria cutanea tarda, a disease that does not incur neurologic sequelae.[294] In acute intermittent porphyria, the typical pattern consists of acute attacks of colicky pain, nausea, vomiting, severe constipation, psychiatric disorders, and lesions of the lower motoneuron that can progress to bulbar paralysis. Often, these patients will have had multiple previous surgeries. Certain drugs can induce the enzyme ALA synthetase and thereby exacerbate the disease process.[295-297] Drugs considered unsafe include barbiturates (all types), phenytoin, valproic acid, carbamazepine, primidone, oral contraceptives, progestins, carisoprodol, and sprinolactone.[297a] Clonazepam, ketamine, imipramine, sulfa antibiotics, erythromycin, fluconazole, nitrofurantoin, and rifampicin are considered possibly unsafe and should be used with caution.[297a] Patients can have attacks during infection, fasting, or menstruation. Administration of glucose suppresses ALA synthetase activity and prevents or ablates acute attacks. Drugs used in anesthetic management that are reported to be safe for patients with porphyria include neostigmine, atropine, succinylcholine, nitrous oxide, procaine, propofol, etomidate, meperidine, fentanyl, morphine, droperidol, promazine, promethazine, and chlorpromazine.[295-297] Although ketamine has previously been used, postoperative psychoses attributable to the disease may be difficult to distinguish from those possibly caused by ketamine. Propofol has been used without provoking porphyria in at least two susceptible patients.[295,296]

NEUROMUSCULAR DISORDERS

Neuromuscular disorders consist of conditions affecting any major component of the motor unit: motoneuron, peripheral nerve, neuromuscular junction, and muscle. Neuropathies may involve all components of the nerve, thereby producing sensory, motor, and autonomic dysfunction, or only one component. Myopathies may involve the proximal muscles, the distal muscles, or both.

Myasthenia gravis is a disorder of the muscular system caused by partial blockade or destruction of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors by IgG antibodies. The severity of the disease correlates with the ability of antibodies to decrease the number of available acetylcholine receptors.[298] Treatment of myasthenia is usually begun with anticholinesterase drugs, but in moderate and severe disease, treatment progresses to steroids and thymectomy.[298,299] Immunosuppressive drugs and plasmapheresis are initiated if the more conservative measures fail, and intravenous immunoglobulin, a rapid-onset therapy, is reserved for acute exacerbations and myasthenic crises.[298,299]

One major problem for the anesthesiologist involves the use of muscle relaxants and their reversal.[300] Because much of the care of patients with myasthenia gravis involves tailoring the amount of anticholinesterase medication to the maximal muscle strength of the patient, derangement of the course of the patient during the surgical procedure could necessitate reassessment of the drug dosage. For that reason, all anticholinergic drugs may be withheld for 6 hours preoperatively, and medication should be reinstituted postoperatively with extreme caution because the sensitivity of these patients to such drugs may have changed. Small doses of succinylcholine can be used to facilitate endotracheal intubation; extremely small doses of nondepolarizing drugs can be used for intraoperative relaxation not achieved by regional anesthesia or volatile anesthetics. Of prime importance is monitoring neuromuscular blockade as the guide for muscle relaxant administration and their reversal. Previously, controlled mechanical ventilation was frequently required for 24 to 48 hours postoperatively; however, immediate extubation has become more common.[299-301] Postoperative ventilation is especially important in patients with myasthenia gravis of more than 6 years' duration, COPD, a daily pyridostigmine requirement of 750 mg in association with significant bulbar weakness, and vital capacity of less than 40 mL/kg (PFTs are an important part of the preoperative workup).[301] One study in myasthenic patients found rapid recovery of neuromuscular function in patients receiving rocuronium when sugammadex was used for reversal.[302] This combination could be a rational alternative for myasthenic patients for whom neuromuscular blockade is mandatory during surgical procedures. Another study found that epidural analgesia intra- and postoperatively reduced the requirement of mechanical ventilation following thymectomy, though this was retrospective in nature.[302a] This technique may provide benefit and allow for minimal use of muscle relaxation.

Lambert-Eaton syndrome (myasthenic syndrome) is characterized by proximal limb muscle weakness and is associated with antibodies directed against the voltage-gated calcium channels in presynaptic nerve terminals. Strength or reflexes typically increase with repetitive effort, as affected patients exhibit decreased release of acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction and repetitive use increases the available junctional acetylcholine. Guanidine therapy enhances the release of acetylcholine from nerve terminals and improves strength. Men with this syndrome generally have small cell carcinoma of the lung or other malignant disease, whereas women often have malignant disease, sarcoidosis, thyroiditis, or a collagen-related vascular disease. In addition, these patients have increased sensitivity to both depolarizing and nondepolarizing muscle relaxants.[303] These patients have an increased risk of prolonged muscle weakness or postoperative respiratory failure after exposure to neuromuscular blocking drugs, particularly when untreated preoperatively.[303a] Lambert-Eaton syndrome is also associated with an autonomic nervous system defect manifested by gastroparesis, orthostatic hypotension, and urinary retention.

Dermatomyositis and polymyositis are characterized by proximal limb muscle weakness with dysphagia. These conditions are associated with malignant disease or collagen-related vascular disease and often involve respiratory and cardiac muscle.

Periodic paralysis is another disease in which sensitivity to muscle relaxants increases. Periodic weakness starts in childhood or adolescence and is precipitated by rest after exercise, sleep, cold, surgery, or pregnancy. Hypokalemic and hyperkalemic forms exist and are associated with cardiac arrhythmias. Like thyrotoxic periodic paralysis, these hypokalemic and hyperkalemic forms usually spare the respiratory muscles. Anesthetic management consists of minimizing stress, maintaining normal fluid and electrolyte status, and controlling body temperature.[303-306]

Patients with muscular dystrophy now survive into their late 20s or early 30s. Because the disease involves the muscles themselves and not their innervation, conduction anesthesia cannot produce adequate relaxation of tonic muscles. Gastric dilation is also a problem. As with the other forms of muscular dystrophy, most problems in myotonic dystrophy arise from cardiac arrhythmias and inadequacy of the respiratory muscles.[307] The preoperative workup for all muscular dystrophies should include echocardiography and PFTs.[307a] For all the forms of muscular dystrophy, problems have been related to exaggerated release of serum potassium after the administration of depolarizing muscle relaxants. Volatile anesthetics are associated with anesthesia-induced rhabdomyolysis, hyperkalemia, and cardiac arrest; therefore, total intravenous anesthesia is the preferred method of general anesthesia. Of note, sugammadex has been used with success for muscle relaxation reversal.[307a]

Malignant hyperthermia in the patient or in a relative of the patient merits careful history taking and at least consideration of performing a test for susceptibility to the condition. Prophylaxis with intravenous dantrolene sodium may also be warranted with high risk patients. Through genotyping malignant hyperthermia has been associated with central core disease, multiminicore myopathy, congenital myopathy with cores and rods, centronuclear myopathy, congenital fiber type disproportion, King-Denborough syndrome, periodic paralysis, nemaline rod myopathy, Native American myopathy, and idiopathic hyperCKemia.[307b] Further genotyping has demonstrated that Duchene muscular dystrophy and Beck muscular dystrophy are better classified as a nonmalignant hyperthermia anesthetic-induced rhabdomyolysis, despite similar clinical appearances.[307b] Appropriate preparation for a patient with previous masseter spasm, or trismus, remains a matter of considerable debate. Malignant hyperthermia occurs most frequently in children and adolescents; the incidence is 1 in 14,000 administrations of anesthesia. The incidence increases to 1 in 2500 patients requiring strabismus surgery.

DOWN SYNDROME

Down syndrome (trisomy 21) occurs once in 1000 live births. It is associated with congenital cardiac lesions such as endocardial cushion defects (40%), ventricular septal defects (27%), patent ductus arteriosus (12%), and tetralogy of Fallot (8%). Prophylactic antibiotics should be used before predictable bacteremic events. Down syndrome is also associated with upper respiratory infections, with atlantooccipital instability (in approximately 15% of patients[308-311]) and laxity of other joints, with thyroid hypofunction (50%), with an increased incidence of subglottic stenosis, and with enlargement of the tongue (or a decreased oral cavity size for a normal-sized tongue).[310,312] Often, the atlantooccipital instability is asymptomatic and undiagnosed, so all patients should be treated as though they have atlantooccipital instability. No abnormal responses to anesthetic agents or anesthetic adjuvants have been substantiated. A reported sensitivity to atropine has been disproved, although administration of atropine to any patient receiving digoxin for atrial fibrillation should be done with care.[312] Examination for the conditions associated with Down syndrome should precede surgery.

PREOPERATIVE PREDICTION OF INCREASED INTRACRANIAL PRESSURE DURING NEUROSURGERY

Symptoms and signs of increased intracranial pressure include morning headache or headache made worse by coughing, nausea, vomiting, disturbances in consciousness, history of large tumors, tumors involving the brainstem, neck rigidity, and papilledema. Patients with these signs, large ventricles (as seen on radiography or images of the brain), or edema surrounding supratentorial tumors should be considered at risk for intraoperative intracranial hypertension. These patients may benefit from preoperative treatment or anesthetic management that assumes this possibility.[313]

MENTAL DISORDERS

Perhaps the most important preoperative consideration for patients with mental disorders, in addition to developing rapport, is understanding their specific drug therapy and its effects and side effects. Lithium, tricyclic antidepressants, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), other antidepressants that defy classification (e.g., bupropion), phenothiazines, butyrophenones, and MAOIs are used in these patients.[314] These drugs have potent effects and side effects that are discussed in the last section of this chapter, on drug therapy.

Renal Disease and Electrolyte Disorders

The anesthesiologist has an important role to play in preventing the onset and consequences of renal failure and its initiators. The linking of renal failure to electrolyte disorders is more obvious: the kidney is the primary organ for regulating body osmolality and fluid volume and has a major role in excretion of the end products of metabolism. In performing these functions, the kidney becomes intimately involved in the excretion of electrolytes.

A patient with renal insufficiency whose own kidneys are still functioning is distinct not only from a patient with end-stage renal disease whose renal functions are provided by dialysis but also from a patient who has a transplanted kidney. These three groups of patients require very different preoperative preparation. In addition, acute changes in renal function present quite a different problem than do chronic alterations in function. Certain renal diseases require different preoperative preparation than others, but generally, renal disease of any origin presents the same preoperative problems.

RENAL DISEASE

Causes and Systemic Effects of Renal Disorders

Nephrotic syndrome may develop in patients with glomerular diseases without disturbing tubular function. The soundness of tubular function is an important consideration because tubular dysfunction with attendant uremia presents problems quite different from those presented by glomerular disease with only nephrotic syndrome. This is not to minimize the adverse effects of glomerular disease; nephrotic syndrome consists of massive proteinuria and consequent hypoalbuminemia. The resulting reduction in plasma oncotic pressure diminishes plasma volume and calls forth compensatory mechanisms that result in retention of sodium and water. As a result, a common clinical finding in nephrotic syndrome is diffuse edema. Thus patients with nephrotic syndrome may have excess total-body water and decreased intravascular volume. In addition, diuretics are often given in an attempt to decrease edema. Although serum creatinine and creatinine clearance estimations have limitations as indices of the GFR (insulin clearance is the reference standard), these measurements are, for now, the most readily available to the anesthesiologist. Plasma creatinine levels reflect endogenous muscle catabolism and dietary intake, as well as urinary excretion. Urinary excretion depends on both filtration and secretion by the kidney. Drugs that are commonly used in the preoperative and perioperative periods can distort this measure of glomerular filtration. Moreover, the commonly used methods for measuring creatinine have a 95% confidence limit of greater than 20% for a GFR higher than 30 mL/min. Thus a normal creatinine level of 1.3 mg/dL may give a measured value ranging from 1.1 to 1.5 mg/dL.

Furthermore, in patients with nephrotic syndrome in whom renal tubular function has been preserved, hypovolemia appears to be a significant cause of deteriorating tubular renal function.[315-317] No randomized study has shown that close control of intravascular volume status in these groups of patients preserves renal tubular function (or any other measure of perioperative morbidity) to a greater degree than does less rigid control.

Uremia, the end result of renal tubular failure (i.e., failure of the concentrating, diluting, acidifying, and filtering functions) manifests in many ways. Changes occur in the cardiovascular, immunologic, hematologic, neuromuscular, pulmonary, and endocrine systems, as well as in bone. These alterations are ascribed either to the toxic end products of protein metabolism or to an imbalance in functioning of the kidney. As the number of functioning nephrons diminishes, the still-functioning nephrons attempt to increase some solute and body composition preservation functions at the expense of other functions, such as excretion of phosphate. The accumulation of phosphate increases PTH levels, which in turn produce osteodystrophy. Osteodystrophy can be managed by (1) restriction of dietary phosphate, (2) the use of binding agents (e.g., aluminum hydroxide or carbonate) that bind with intestinal phosphate, (3) calcium supplementation, or (4) parathyroidectomy.

Certain alterations in patients with uremia, such as neuropathy, are most logically attributed to an accumulation of toxic metabolites. Peripheral neuropathy is most often sensory and involves the lower extremities, but it may also be motor; peripheral neuropathies are frequently improved with hemodialysis and can be dramatically reversed with renal transplantation. Tubular function is commonly assessed by acidifying and concentrating capabilities.[318] Although such tests are crude, these capabilities are usually readily evaluated by measuring urine pH and specific gravity. Along with the altered volume status and cardiac complications in uremic patients, autonomic neuropathy may contribute to hypotension during anesthesia. Atherosclerosis is often accelerated in uremic patients; hypertension, with its attendant consequences, is very common.

Cardiac failure frequently occurs in uremic patients because of the presence of many adverse conditions: anemia with increasing myocardial work, hypertension, atherosclerosis, and altered volume status. Pericarditis can manifest by pericardial rub alone or by pain (with or without hemorrhage), the ECG will show diffuse ST changes in multiple coronary distributions—when available, these should be correlated to previous coronary catherization findings. Cardiac tamponade should be ruled out on the basis of clinical features and by echocardiography if this diagnosis is seriously suspected preoperatively. In addition, cardiac tamponade should be treated or planned for preoperatively.

If anemia is present, its severity generally parallels the degree of uremia; chronically uremic patients seem to adapt well to anemia. No hard data have substantiated the need to give a preoperative blood transfusion to a chronically uremic patient, even when the preoperative hemoglobin is approaching 7 g/dL. Even in nonuremic patients in an ICU and during cardiac surgery, randomized trials were unable to demonstrate improved outcomes with a liberal transfusion strategy,[319] and transfusions increase the risk for immune system compromise.[320,321a] In uremic patients, coagulation and platelet adhesiveness may be abnormal, and factor VIII and von Willebrand factor activity may be decreased; often, these patients may require DDAVP for enhancement of coagulation intraoperatively. However, DDAVP must be used with caution as it can lead to fluid retention and hypotension with rapid infusion.[321b]

Uremic patients exhibit a wide variety of metabolic and endocrinologic disorders in addition to hyperparathyroidism, including impaired carbohydrate tolerance, insulin resistance, type IV hyperlipoproteinemia, autonomic insufficiency, hyperkalemia, and anion-gap acidosis (caused by an inability of the kidneys to reabsorb filtered bicarbonate and excrete sufficient ammonium into urine). Furthermore, the excretion and pharmacokinetics of drugs are different in uremic patients than in normal patients. In addition, complications of hemodialysis include nutritional deficiencies, electrolyte and fluid imbalances, and mental disorders. Because these conditions can lead to serious perioperative morbidity, they should be evaluated preoperatively.

As with uremic patients, preoperative optimization of volume status is paramount in patients with kidney stones, and both are affected by carbohydrate intolerance.[321,322] Seventy-five percent of all kidney stones are composed of calcium oxalate. Patients with these stones frequently take diuretic drugs, consume calcium- and citrate-rich foods, and restrict salt intake. Prevention of dehydration by institution of intravenous fluid therapy along with restricted oral intake of protein may be as important for these patients as it is for patients with struvite or uric acid stones. Struvite stones often result from urinary infection. Uric acid stones can be prevented by treatment with allopurinol, by preoperative hydration, or by alkalinization of urine. Acidosis may contribute to stone formation. Again, optimal intravascular volume status is important in preventing stones and preserving renal function. More thorough discussion of renal function and physiology is provided in Chapter 17. Chapter 59 deals with the complexities of managing patients for renal surgery and other urologic procedures.

Creatinine clearance in conjunction with free water clearance appears to be the most accurate way of quantifying, for pharmacokinetic purposes, the degree of decreased renal function.[322] For a patient with stable renal function, creatinine clearance, which is a rough estimate of GFR, can be approximated by noting the serum creatinine level: a doubling of the creatinine level represents a halving of the GFR. Thus a patient with a stable serum creatinine level of 2 mg/dL would have a GFR of approximately 60 mL/min. A stable serum creatinine level of 4 mg/dL would accompany a GFR of approximately 30 mL/min, and a stable serum creatinine level of 8 mg/dL would accompany a GFR of 15 mL/min or less.

$$\text{Creatinine clearance} = \frac{(140 - \text{Age [yr]}) \times \text{Body weight (kg)}}{72 \times \text{serum creatinine} \left(\frac{\text{mg}}{\text{dL}}\right)}$$

$$\text{Free water clearance} = \text{Urine flow (mL/hour)}$$

$$\frac{\text{Urine osmolality} \left(\frac{\text{mOsm}}{\text{L}}\right) \times \text{Urine flow} \left(\frac{\text{mL}}{\text{hour}}\right)}{\text{Plasma osmolality} \left(\frac{\text{mOsm}}{\text{L}}\right)}$$

Free water clearance is a measure of renal concentrating ability, and it is normally −25 to +100 mL/h; it becomes more positive in renal insufficiency states. It may also become more positive in patients who have a head injury or high blood alcohol levels or in those undergoing aggressive fluid infusion or administration of diuretics.[323]

Patients With Insufficient but Functioning Kidneys

One of the greatest challenges for the anesthesiologist is presented by patients with insufficient renal function whose renal function must be preserved during surgical procedures. In addition, the presence of chronic renal failure is associated with higher rates of perioperative cardiac morbidity, which may warrant further evaluation for the presence of occult CAD.[324] The many uremic symptoms and great perioperative morbidity associated with uremia can probably be avoided by attention to detail in the preoperative and perioperative management of patients with insufficient but still functioning kidneys.[315-317]

First, studies demonstrate that acute postoperative renal failure is associated with an extremely high mortality rate.[325] The development of perioperative renal dysfunction has multiple risk factors, the most important of which include preexisting renal disease, heart surgery involving cardiopulmonary bypass or aortic surgery involving cross-clamping of the thoracic or abdominal aorta, and ongoing sepsis. Perioperative renal dysfunction accounts for upward of 40% of all in-hospital cases of acute kidney injury.[325a]

Moreover, acute perioperative renal failure is most likely to occur in patients who have renal insufficiency before the surgical procedure, are older than 60 years, and have preoperative left ventricular dysfunction.[323,325] Proper preoperative hydration probably decreases mortality after acute renal failure induced by radiocontrast agents.[317] Clues to the presence of hypovolemia or hypervolemia should be sought from the history and physical examination (e.g., weight loss or gain, thirst, edema, orthostatic hypotension and tachycardia, flat neck veins, dry mucous membranes, decreased skin turgor). Other causes of deterioration in function in chronic renal insufficiency are low cardiac output or low renal blood flow (in prerenal azotemia, whether because of cardiac failure or fluid depletion from diuretic drugs, BUN often increases disproportionately to increases in creatinine), urinary tract infection, use of nephrotoxic drugs, hypercalcemia, and hyperuricemia. These conditions and drugs should be avoided; if any of these conditions exist, they should be treated preoperatively.

Management of patients with renal disease is discussed in Chapter 59.

Patients Undergoing Dialysis

Patients with chronic (and at times acute) renal failure require renal replacement therapy, including conventional intermittent hemodialysis, peritoneal dialysis, and continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT). CRRT includes a wide variety of techniques whose perioperative management has been reviewed (Table 32.13).[326] Although the primary indication for CRRT is acute renal failure, it can also be used for fluid clearance, correction of electrolyte abnormalities, management of metabolic acidosis, and removal of some toxins. It can be used in surgical patients without significant hemodynamic abnormalities. These patients may return to the operating room, and their assessment and management may be complicated by the underlying disease and the use of systemic anticoagulation to prevent filter and circuit clotting. In patients undergoing intermittent treatment with hemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis, the procedure is discontinued before entering the operating room. For patients on CRRT, the anesthesiologist must determine the appropriateness of discontinuing the therapy. With short procedures,

TABLE 32.13 Characteristics of Renal Replacement Therapy

Renal Replacement Therapy	Blood Pump	Replacement Fluid (RF)/Dialysate (D)	Intraoperative Use
Conventional intermittent hemodialysis	Yes	D	No
Peritoneal dialysis	No	D	No
Slow continuous ultrafiltration	Yes/no	None	Yes
Continuous arteriovenous hemodialysis	No	D	No
Continuous arteriovenous hemodiafiltration	No	RF/D	No
Continuous venovenous hemofiltration	Yes	RF	Yes
Continuous venovenous hemodialysis	Yes	D	Yes
Continuous venovenous hemodiafiltration	Yes	RF/D	Yes

From Petroni KC, Cohen NH. Continuous renal replacement therapy: anesthetic implications. *Anesth Analg.* 2002;94:1288–1297.

the therapy can usually be stopped safely provided the initial indication for therapy has improved (i.e., resolution of acidosis or hyperkalemia). If continued, CRRT can also be used to manage fluids during the surgical procedure by changing the dialysate, but the effect on drug dosing must be recognized. In addition to effects on renal elimination of drugs, CRRT has effects resulting from changes in protein binding and volume of distribution, as well as drug removal effects from membrane permeability, membrane surface area, the ultrafiltration rate, and the dialysate flow rate.

Because a patient undergoing conventional dialysis has already lost natural renal functioning, the emphasis in preoperative assessment shifts toward protecting other organ systems and optimally maintaining vascular access sites for cannulation. Usually, this does not require invasive monitoring. Emphasis is placed on intravascular fluid volume and electrolyte status, which can be ascertained by knowing when the patient last underwent dialysis, how much weight was normally gained or lost with dialysis, whether the fluid loss was peritoneal or intravascular, and what electrolyte composition the blood was dialyzed against. Although preoperative dialysis may benefit patients who have hyperkalemia, hypercalcemia, acidosis, neuropathy, and fluid overload, the resulting dysequilibrium between fluid and electrolytes can cause problems. Because hypovolemia induced by dialysis can lead to intraoperative hypotension, we try to avoid weight and fluid reduction in patients undergoing preoperative dialysis focusing on clearance of solutes and management of acid-base balance.

When renal transplant recipients have subsequent surgical procedures, the status of their renal function must be determined (i.e., whether they have normal renal function, insufficient but still functioning kidneys, or end-stage renal disease requiring hemodialysis). Descriptions of side effects of immunosuppressive drugs should also be sought. The drugs used preoperatively and intraoperatively to prevent acute rejection themselves have serious side effects that encourage close monitoring of blood glucose and cardiovascular function.[327] Because renal transplantation greatly increases the risk of infection, it is very important to consider invasive monitoring carefully and if indicated follow strict aseptic technique.

Drugs in Patients With Renal Failure

Patients with renal azotemia have a threefold or higher risk of having an adverse drug reaction than do patients with normal renal function.[328-330] The risk is increased by two conditions. First, excessive pharmacologic effects result from high levels of a drug or its metabolite (e.g., the metabolite of meperidine) in blood because of physiologic changes in target tissues induced by the uremic state. An example is excessive sedation in a uremic patient with standard blood levels of sedative-hypnotic drugs. Second, excessive administration of electrolytes with drugs also increases the risk of having an adverse drug reaction. Administration of standard doses of drugs that depend on renal excretion for their elimination can result in drug accumulation and enhanced pharmacologic effect. In one report, patients with end-stage renal disease required significantly higher propofol doses to achieve the clinical endpoint of hypnosis than did patients with normal renal function.[330]

INFECTIOUS DISEASE

Sepsis is a leading cause of postoperative morbidity,[317,331] probably through a decrease in systemic vascular resistance related to activation of the complement system and other mediators. Thus attention to the effects of antibiotic drugs must be supplemented by attention to intravascular volume status.[315-317,331-333] The degree of impairment of the infected organ and its effect on anesthesia should be assessed. Further, note that not all sepsis is the same, and often the source requires special consideration. For instance, endocarditis merits examination of the following: intravascular volume status; antibiotic and other drug therapy and side effects[334]; myocardial function; and renal, pulmonary, neurologic, and hepatic function—organ systems that can be affected by endocarditis.

Although all surgery except emergency or essential operations is proscribed when an acute infectious disease is present, many such diseases (e.g., influenza and pneumococcal pneumonia) and even inflammatory conditions are becoming less frequent because of successful immunization recommendations and programs.[335] Furthermore, even though acute infections are less common, surgery in patients with chronic viral diseases such as hepatitis and HIV infection is more frequent. Many of these patients may also harbor opportunistic infections such as tuberculosis or may have other systemic problems. Whether anesthesia or surgery, or both, exacerbates these infections or their systemic manifestations is not clear.

ELECTROLYTE DISORDERS

Disorders of calcium, magnesium, and phosphate balance are discussed in the earlier section on diseases involving the endocrine system and disorders of nutrition.

Hyponatremia and Hypernatremia

Electrolyte disorders are usually detected by determining the levels of electrolytes in serum. These concentrations reflect the balance between water and electrolytes. The osmolality of all body fluids is normally maintained within the narrow physiologic range of 285 to 295 mOsm/kg H_2O by integration of three key processes: thirst, release of ADH, and responsiveness of the medullary collecting ducts to ADH. Because of the permeability of biologic membranes, intracellular osmolality and extracellular osmolality are almost always equal.

$$2\left[\mathrm{Na}^{2+}\right](\mathrm{mEq/L}) + \frac{[\mathrm{Glucose}]\,(\mathrm{mg/dL})}{18} + \frac{[\mathrm{BUN}]\,(\mathrm{mg/dL})}{2.8} = \mathrm{mOsm/kg}$$

Hyponatremia is the most common electrolyte disorder in hospitalized patients, with a prevalence in ICUs patients as high as 40%, highlighting hyponatremia as a common and important clinical condition that adds complexity to the care.[335a] Hyponatremia can occur in isotonic, hypertonic, or hypotonic forms. For example, isotonic hyponatremia can develop in protein or liquid accumulation states such as myeloma. Hypertonic hyponatremia can be present with hyperglycemia or with infusions of glycine (as in the TURP syndrome). Hypotonic hyponatremia is the largest classification and is subdivided according to the status of the extracellular fluid into hypovolemic, isovolumic, or hypervolemic hypotonic hyponatremia. All three types require that excretion of renal water be impaired despite continued intake of dilute fluid. Common causes of hypovolemic

BOX 32.5 Types and Causes of Hypotonic Hyponatremia

Hypovolemic

- Gastrointestinal losses
  - Vomiting
  - Diarrhea
- Skin losses
- Third-space losses
- Lung losses
- Renal losses
  - Diuretics
  - Renal damage
  - Urinary tract obstruction
- Adrenal insufficiency

Isovolumic

- Syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone
- Renal failure
- Water intoxication
- Hypokalemia
- Dysfunctional osmostat

Hypervolemic

- Congestive heart failure
- Nephrosis
- Liver dysfunction

Serum osmolality less than 280 mOsm/L.

hypotonic hyponatremia are GI losses (vomiting, diarrhea), third-space losses (diuretics or salt-wasting nephropathy), and adrenal insufficiency (Box 32.5). Hypervolemic hypotonic hyponatremic states complicate severe cardiac failure, cirrhosis, nephrotic syndrome, and renal failure, and are characterized by retention of sodium with disproportionately larger amounts of water.

The most common isovolumic hypotonic hyponatremia is caused by retention of water without sodium, often edema is not usually clinically apparent. Edema is most often caused by SIADH, which in turn may be caused by CNS or pulmonary tumors or dysfunction. Secretion of ADH increases with age, thus rendering older adults more prone to hyponatremia. Drugs that potentiate the secretion of ADH (tricyclic antidepressants and vincristine) or its effects on the medullary collecting duct system in the kidney (nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs and thiazides) or that have similar effects (oxytocin and desmopressin) may be more likely to cause hyponatremia in older adults. To establish the diagnosis of SIADH, the physician should determine that the patient is free of renal and cardiac dysfunction, has normal adrenal and thyroid function, and is normovolemic—it is a diagnosis of exclusion. Urine osmolality would then be found to exceed 100 mOsm/kg, serum osmolality would be low, and urine sodium excretion would be higher than 20 mEq/L (20 mOsm/L).

Disturbances in serum sodium therefore may reflect alterations in glucose metabolism, renal function, or accumulation of body water. The last can be affected by disturbances in thirst, release of ADH, and renal function. Thus hyponatremia reflects a relative excess of free water and can occur when total-body sodium increases (as in edematous disorders), when total-body sodium is normal (as in excess of free water because of SIADH), or when total-body sodium decreases (as occurs with too aggressive use of diuretic drugs). Definition of the cause defines the treatment. For instance, water restriction is the mainstay of therapy for SIADH. Administration of demeclocycline is another option that corrects severe SIADH by inducing a reversible nephrogenic diabetes insipidus. The anesthesiologist is faced with the question of which levels of electrolytes require treatment before anesthesia. Although slowly developing hyponatremia usually produces few symptoms, the patient may be lethargic, apathetic, or unbalanced. Chronic hyponatremia is better tolerated than acute hyponatremia because of mechanisms regulating intracellular fluid volume that alleviate brain edema; the loss of other solutes from cells decreases the osmotic movement of water into cells. Nonetheless, severe chronic hyponatremia (i.e., serum sodium levels <123 mEq/L) can cause the development of brain edema.

By contrast, acute hyponatremia may be manifested by severe symptoms requiring emergency treatment: profound cerebral edema with obtundation, coma, convulsions, and disordered reflexes and thermoregulatory control.[100,101,336] Depending on the cause and relative total sodium and water content, treatment can range from the administration of hypertonic saline (with or without diuretic drugs) to restriction of fluids or administration of other drugs.[100,101,336] Because neurologic damage may develop if the serum sodium concentration is increased too rapidly, the rate of increase should not exceed 1 mEq/L/h.[100,101,336] After the serum sodium concentration has reached 125 mEq/L, therapy may consist of water restriction; more rapid correction may result in the osmotic demyelination syndrome.[335a] In hyponatremic patients who have excess total-body water secondary to SIADH, serum levels can be corrected by giving furosemide and saline to replace the loss of electrolytes in urine.[100,101,336] The diagnosis of SIADH is discussed earlier in this chapter (see the section on pituitary abnormalities).

Neither acute nor chronic hyponatremia necessitates restoration of serum sodium to normal levels, just until resolution of neurologic symptoms; brain swelling usually resolves at a serum sodium level of 130 mEq/L.

Hypernatremia occurs much less commonly than hyponatremia. It is often iatrogenic (e.g., it can be caused by failure to provide sufficient free water to a patient who is unconscious or who has had a recent stroke-induced deficit of the thirst mechanism) and can occur in the presence of low, normal, or excess total-body sodium. The primary symptoms of hypernatremia relate to brain cell shrinkage. Because too rapid correction of hypernatremia can lead to cerebral edema and possibly osmotic demyelination syndrome with convulsions, coma, and death; correction should be made gradually. Despite lack of data, there is general belief that all patients undergoing surgical procedures should have serum sodium concentrations of less than 150 mEq/L before anesthesia unless a therapeutic for hypernatremia exists (i.e., hypertonic therapy for cerebral edema in neurologic injury).

Hypokalemia and Hyperkalemia

Hypokalemia and hyperkalemia are also discussed in Chapters 31 and 47. The relationship between the measured potassium concentration in serum and total-body potassium stores can best be described with a scattergram. Only 2% of total-body potassium is stored in plasma (4200 mEq in cells and 60 mEq in extracellular fluid). In normal persons, 75% of the 50 to 60 mEq/L of total-body potassium is stored in skeletal muscle, 6% in red blood cells, and 5% in the liver. Thus a 20% to 25% change in potassium levels in plasma could represent a change in total-body potassium of 1000 mEq or more if the change were chronic or as little as 10 to 20 mEq if the change were acute.

As with serum sodium levels, acute changes in serum potassium levels are less well tolerated than chronic changes. Chronic changes are relatively well tolerated because of the equilibration of serum and intracellular stores that takes place over time to return the resting membrane potential of excitable cells to nearly normal levels.

Hyperkalemia can result from the following: factitious increase of potassium administration (as in red blood cell hemolysis); excessive exogenous potassium from sources such as salt substitutes; cellular shifts in potassium (as a result of metabolic acidosis, tissue and muscle damage after burns, use of depolarizing muscle relaxants, or intense catabolism of protein); and decreased renal excretion (as occurs in renal failure, renal insufficiency with trauma, and therapy with potassium-sparing diuretic drugs, especially when combined with ACE inhibitors or mineralocorticoid deficiency).[337-339] Factitious hyperkalemia can occur when a tourniquet is left on too long or even by simple fist clenching.[340]

The major danger in anesthetizing patients who have disorders of potassium balance appears to be abnormal cardiac function (i.e., both electrical disturbances and poor cardiac contractility).[337] Hyperkalemia lowers the resting membrane potential of excitable cardiac cells and decreases the duration of the myocardial action potential and upstroke velocity. This decreased rate of ventricular depolarization, in addition to the beginning of repolarization in some areas of the myocardium while other areas are still undergoing depolarization, produces a progressively widening QRS complex that merges with the T wave into a sine wave on the ECG.

At a potassium level greater than 6.7 mEq/L, the degree of hyperkalemia and the duration of the QRS complex correlate well.[337] This correlation is even better than the correlation between the serum potassium level and T-wave changes. Nevertheless, the earliest manifestations of hyperkalemia are narrowing and peaking of the T wave. Although not diagnostic of hyperkalemia, T waves are almost invariably peaked and narrow when serum potassium levels are 7 to 9 mEq/L. When serum potassium levels exceed 7 mEq/L, atrial conduction disturbances appear, as manifested by a decrease in P-wave amplitude and an increase in the PR interval. Supraventricular tachycardia, atrial fibrillation, PVCs, ventricular tachycardia, ventricular fibrillation, or sinus arrest may all occur.

The ECG and cardiac alterations associated with hyperkalemia are potentiated by low serum levels of calcium and sodium. Intravenous administration of bicarbonate, glucose with insulin (1 unit/2 g glucose), can reverse these changes temporarily by shifting extracellular potassium into the cells. Calcium is administered to stabilize the cardiac membrane; it has no effect on plasma concentrations of potassium. Furosemide should be given to start the removal process of excess potassium from the body and decrease serum potassium levels. Sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate) enemas can be given to bind potassium in the gut in exchange for sodium, these should be used with caution in perioperative patients as there are reports of intestinal necrosis.[340a,340b] Dialysis against a hypokalemic solution also decreases serum potassium levels.

β-Adrenergic stimuli also cause redistribution of potassium into the cell. Indeed, the plasma potassium concentration measured in samples immediately before surgical procedures is usually 0.2 to 0.8 mEq/L lower than that measured during the less stressful period 1 to 3 days before surgery.[341] β-Adrenergic receptor blocking drugs can be used to prevent such an effect preoperatively. A β-adrenergic receptor stimulating agent (20 mg of nebulized albuterol for a 70-kg patient) can be used to treat hyperkalemia when it occurs; it decreases potassium levels 1.0 mEq/L within 30 minutes, and its effect lasts 2 hours.[342] Although nebulized β_2-agonists effectively lower plasma potassium concentrations by stimulating sodium- and potassium-dependent adenosine triphosphatase, this therapy should be used as an adjunct to rather than a substitute for more established measures.

In a hyperkalemic patient, hypoventilation can be dangerous during anesthesia because each 0.1 change in pH can produce a 0.4 to 1.5 mEq/L change in serum potassium levels in the opposite direction. For example, if pH decreases from 7.4 to 7.3, serum potassium levels could increase from 5.5 to 6.5 mEq/L.

Hypokalemia can be caused by inadequate intake of potassium, excessive GI loss (through diarrhea, vomiting, nasopharyngeal suctioning, long-term use of laxatives, or ingestion of cation exchange resins, as in certain wines), excessive renal loss (because of the use of diuretic drugs, renal tubular acidosis, chronic chloride deficiency, metabolic alkalosis, mineralocorticoid excess, excessive ingestion of licorice, use of antibiotics, ureterosigmoidostomy, and diabetic ketoacidosis), and shifts of potassium from extracellular to intracellular compartments (as occurs in alkalosis, insulin administration, administration of a β-adrenergic agonist, stress, barium poisoning, and periodic paralysis). As with hyperkalemia, knowledge of the cause of the potassium deficiency and appropriate preoperative evaluation and treatment of that cause may be as important as treatment of the deficiency itself. Also like hyperkalemia, hypokalemia may reflect small or vast changes in total-body potassium. Acute hypokalemia may be much less well tolerated than chronic hypokalemia. The major worrisome manifestations of hypokalemia pertain to the circulatory system, both the cardiac and peripheral components. In addition, chronic hypokalemia results in muscle weakness, hypoperistalsis, and nephropathy.

Cardiovascular manifestations of hypokalemia include the following: autonomic neuropathy, orthostatic hypotension, decreased sympathetic reserve, impaired myocardial contractility, and electrical conduction abnormalities. Conduction abnormalities can present as sinus tachycardia, atrial and ventricular arrhythmias, and intraventricular conduction disturbances that can progress to ventricular fibrillation. In addition to arrhythmias, the ECG shows widening of the QRS complex, ST-segment abnormalities, progressive diminution of the T-wave amplitude, and a progressive increase in the U-wave amplitude. Surawicz found these changes to be invariably present when serum potassium levels decreased to less than 2.3 mEq/L.[337] Although U waves are not specific for hypokalemia, they are sensitive indicators of the condition. Replenishing the total-body potassium deficit for a depletion reflected by a serum deficit of 1 mEq/L (e.g., from 3.3 to 4.3 mEq/L) may require 1000 mEq of potassium. Even if this amount could be given instantaneously (and it should not be replenished at a rate exceeding 250 mEq/day), it would take 24 to 48 hours to equilibrate in all tissues. Potassium-depleted myocardium is unusually sensitive to digoxin, calcium, and most important, potassium. Rapid potassium infusion in a hypokalemic patient can produce arrhythmias as severe as those produced by hypokalemia itself, again, slow correction is preferred.[343]

Thus the decision to proceed with surgery and anesthesia in the presence of acute or chronic depletions or excesses of potassium depends on many factors.[344-349] The cause and treatment of the underlying condition creating the electrolyte imbalance and the effect of that imbalance on perioperative risk and physiologic processes must be known. The urgency of the operation, the degree of electrolyte abnormality, the medications given, the acid-base balance, and the suddenness or persistence of the electrolyte disturbance are all considerations. For example, a small study of patients undergoing vascular access procedures with preoperative potassium levels of higher than 6 mmol/L demonstrated no adverse outcomes.[347] Similarly, in a cohort study in which 38 patients had a preoperative potassium level higher than 5.5 mEq/L, no dysrhythmias or major morbidity were associated with the use of succinylcholine.[348]

Retrospective epidemiologic studies attribute significant risk to the administration of potassium (even long-term oral administration).[344] In one study, 1910 of 16,048 consecutive hospitalized patients were given oral potassium supplements. Of these 1910 patients, hyperkalemia contributed to death in 7, and the incidence of complications of potassium therapy was 1 in 250.[350] Armed with such data, many internists do not prescribe oral potassium therapy for patients given diuretic drugs, yet these patients frequently become moderately hypokalemic.[350] Modest hypokalemia occurs in 10% to 50% of patients given diuretic drugs.

Three studies investigated whether modest hypokalemia was a problem by prospectively seeking arrhythmias on the ECGs of patients who had various preoperative levels of potassium.[345,346,349] No difference in the incidence of arrhythmias occurred in 25 normokalemic (K^+ >3.4 mEq/L) patients, 25 moderately hypokalemic (K^+ = 3-3.4 mEq/L) patients, and 10 severely hypokalemic (K^+ < 2.9 mEq/L) patients.[345] Wahr and coauthors studied 2402 patients undergoing elective CABG and concluded that a serum potassium level less than 3.5 mmol/L was a predictor of perioperative arrhythmia (OR, 2.2; 95% CI, 1.2-4.0), intraoperative arrhythmia (OR, 2.0; 95% CI, 1.0-3.6), and postoperative atrial fibrillation/flutter (OR, 1.7; 95% CI, 1.0-2.7).[349]

Modest hypokalemia can have severe consequences.[350,351] Holland and coworkers treated 21 patients with 50 mg of hydrochlorothiazide twice a day for 4 weeks.[351] These patients had a history of becoming hypokalemic during diuretic therapy; no patients had cardiac disease or were taking other medications. Before and after diuretic therapy, 24-hour ambulatory ECGs were recorded. This study is also subject to the limitations of Holter monitoring. Ventricular ectopy, including complex ventricular ectopy (multifocal PVCs, ventricular couplets, ventricular tachycardia), developed in 7 of the 21 patients (33%). Potassium repletion decreased the number of ectopic ventricular beats per patient from 71.2 to 5.4/h. Apparently, some patients are sensitive to even minor potassium depletion. In the Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial involving 361,662 patients, more than 2000 of whom were treated for hypertension with diuretics, the reduction in serum potassium after diuretic therapy was greater in patients with PVCs.[350]

Gastrointestinal and Liver Diseases

GASTROINTESTINAL DISEASE

Preoperative Search for Diverse Associated Disorders in Gastrointestinal Disease

Although preoperative preparation of the GI tract is usually the responsibility of the surgeon, GI disease can and often does cause derangements in many or all other systems. Such disturbances can affect the safety of anesthesia for the patient. Preoperative preparation should include knowledge of disease processes and their effects to guide the patient smoothly through the perioperative period. The major advances of correcting fluid and electrolyte disorders and optimizing nutritional status preoperatively allow surgical procedures to be performed in patients with GI disease previously deemed to be at too great a risk and may have lessened the risk for others.[45-47,352] Nonetheless, in patients with GI disease, thorough assessment of intravascular fluid volume, electrolyte concentrations, and nutrition is essential, including an evaluation of the supervening side effects of these therapies (e.g., hypophosphatemia from parenteral nutrition, hyperkalemia or cardiac arrhythmias from too vigorous treatment of hypokalemia, and volume overload from too rapid or too vigorous treatment of hypovolemia).

In addition to the vast alterations in fluids, electrolytes, and nutrition that can occur with such diverse GI diseases as neoplasms and pancreatitis, patients with GI disorders can have gastroesophageal reflux disease,[353] bowel obstruction, vomiting, or hypersecretion of acid. These effects may merit rapid induction of anesthesia with the application of cricoid pressure or endotracheal intubation with the patient unanesthetized (awake), preoperative nasogastric suctioning, or preoperative use of histamine receptor blocking drugs. Clotting abnormalities may need to be corrected because fat-soluble vitamin K (often malabsorbed) is necessary for the synthesis of factors II, VII, IX, and X in the liver. Liver disease is often associated with GI disease and, if severe enough, can also result in a deficiency of clotting factors synthesized by the liver.

Other factors should be remembered in the perioperative management of any patient with GI disease. First, closed spaces containing gas expand by absorbing nitrous oxide, as such expansion can lead to ischemic injury, rupture of GI viscera, or both. Second, GI surgery predisposes the patient to blood stream contamination, which can lead to sepsis and decreased peripheral vascular resistance, massive fluid requirements, cardiac failure, and renal insufficiency. The surgical site infection rate has been declining. This decrease may be attributable to the use of better technique, more appropriate prophylactic timing and use of antibiotics, better nutrition, less invasive (laparoscopic and endoscopic) surgery, maintenance of normothermia, and surgical resection of even tumors.[354-358] Third, patients with GI disease may have many other associated disorders not directly related to the GI tract. For example, they may be anemic from deficiencies in iron, intrinsic factor, folate, or vitamin B_{12}.

They may also manifest neurologic changes from combined-system disease. Respiration may be impaired because of tobacco abuse, peritonitis, abscess, pulmonary obstruction, previous incisions, aspiration, or pulmonary embolism (as occurs with ulcerative colitis or with thrombophlebitis in bedridden patients). These patients may also have hepatitis, cholangitis, side effects from antibiotic drugs or other medications, massive bleeding with anemia and shock, or psychological derangements.

Because GI disease can be accompanied by so many diverse associated disorders, the clinician must clearly search for involvement of other systems and preoperatively assess and treat such disorders appropriately. Discussion of two specific diseases, ulcerative colitis and carcinoid tumor, highlights the importance of involvement of other systems in GI disease.

Ulcerative Colitis and Carcinoid Tumors as Examples of Gastrointestinal Disease Affecting Other Systems

Ulcerative colitis is a chronic inflammatory disease of the colonic mucosa, typically starting in the rectum and extending proximally through the colon. It is often marked with an unpredictable clinical course with periods of remission and exacerbation. Patients with ulcerative colitis may also have the following: phlebitis; deficiencies in iron, folate, or vitamin B_{12}; anemia; or clotting disorders caused by malabsorption. They can present as malnourished or dehydrated, or with electrolyte abnormalities. In addition, ulcerative colitis can be accompanied by massive bleeding, bowel obstruction, bowel perforation, toxic megacolon, hepatitis, arthritis, iritis, spondylitis, diabetes, or pancreatitis.

The site of origin of carcinoid tumors in more than 60% of patients is the GI tract.[358a] Within the GI tract, carcinoid tumors have been documented to occur from the esophagus to the rectum. Tumors arising in the ileocecal region have the highest incidence of metastases. Carcinoid tumors originating from sites other than the GI tract, such as the head and neck, lung, gonads, thymus, breast, and urinary tract, have also been reported. Cardiac involvement, although frequently reported, is usually limited to right-sided valvular and myocardial plaque formation.[359]

Not all patients with carcinoid tumors have symptoms attributable to secretion of hormone by the tumor. Some do, however, and unexpected carcinoid can manifest intraoperatively by hypersecretion of gastric fluid. The most comprehensive series in the literature indicates that only 7% of patients have carcinoid syndrome, which typically consists of flushing, diarrhea, and valvular heart disease. Of those patients with the syndrome, approximately 74% have cutaneous flushing, 68% have intestinal hypermotility, 41% have cardiac symptoms, and 18% have wheezing. Factors influencing symptoms include the location of the tumor and the specific hormones produced and secreted. Although it is generally believed that if patients do not exhibit carcinoid syndrome, the tumors are not producing serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine [5-HT]), such may not be the case. Approximately 50% of patients with carcinoid tumors of the GI tract demonstrate evidence of 5-HT production as manifested by elevated urinary levels of 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5-HIAA), a metabolic product of 5-HT. Carcinoid syndrome is usually associated with ileal carcinoid tumors that have metastasized to the liver. Presumably, the liver clears mediators released from the tumor. Impairment of this clearing ability by the metastatic tumor results in carcinoid syndrome.

Most patients with carcinoid tumors and increased urinary 5-HIAA levels have typical carcinoid tumors originating from the midgut (ileum or jejunum). These patients excrete only small amounts of 5-hydroxytryptophan (5-HTP). Patients with atypical carcinoid tumors that originate in the foregut (bronchus, stomach, and pancreas) excrete large amounts of 5-HT and 5-HTP, as well as moderately higher amounts of 5-HIAA.

Although it is generally agreed that 5-HT is responsible for the diarrhea experienced by patients with carcinoid tumors, other neurohumoral agents may contribute to the flushing and hypotension, including dopamine, histamine, and some of the neuropeptides such as substance P, neurotensin, vasoactive intestinal peptide, and somatostatin.

The net physiologic effect of circulating 5-HT represents a composite of both direct action (mediated by 5-HT receptors) and indirect action (mediated through modulation of adrenergic neurotransmission). The existence of several subtypes of 5-HT receptors may account for the different effects of 5-HT on various serotonin-sensitive tissue beds. Indirect actions are effected through alterations in catecholamine release and depend on the level of circulating 5-HT.

5-HT has little, if any, direct effect on the heart. With increased levels, however, positive chronotropic and inotropic myocardial effects may occur, mediated by the release of noradrenaline (norepinephrine). Effects of serotonin on the vasculature include both vasoconstriction and vasodilation.

Alterations in GI function attributed to 5-HT include increased motility and net intestinal secretion of water, sodium chloride, and potassium. 5-HT reportedly causes bronchoconstriction in many animals, but rarely in humans. Patients with asthma are a possible exception. Carcinoid tumors frequently manifest as diarrhea with fluid and electrolyte abnormalities. Because these tumors secrete vasoactive substances, patients can exhibit hypotension or hypertension along with the flush associated with release of vasoactive substances. Vasoactive substances can be released from the tumor by any number of substances, including catecholamines. The anesthesiologist needs to be ready and able to treat hypotension, decreased peripheral vascular resistance, bronchospasm, and hypertension. This difficulty in managing carcinoid syndrome seemed to change with the availability of a somatostatin analogue, octreotide, and lanreotide. In fact, somatostatin is such a powerful inhibitor of the release of peptides from carcinoid tumors and an inhibitor of the peptic effects on receptor cells that it is the therapy of choice for preoperative, intraoperative, and postoperative management of carcinoid symptoms and crises.[360,361] In cardiac surgical patients, mortality has declined over time, and vasopressors have been shown to be safe in conjunction with octreotide.[362] However, the ease of management of most patients[360,361,363-366] should not lull the anesthesiologist into being unprepared—in fact, somatostatin has caused problems of its own and has failed to prevent severe hypotension and bronchospasm.[367,368]

In patients with severe hypotension that is not treatable with somatostatin, the drug of choice is vasopressin; angiotensin has demonstrated benefit but only recently become available in the United States. However, the vasoactive substances released by carcinoid tumors cause fibrosis of the heart valves that often results in pulmonic stenosis or tricuspid insufficiency. To increase cardiac output in a patient with tricuspid insufficiency, the anesthesiologist should avoid drugs or situations that increase pulmonary vascular resistance. In addition, the production of large amounts of 5-HT (equal to 200 mg/day of 5-HIAA) can lead to the development of niacin deficiency with pellagra (as occurs with diarrhea, dermatitis, and dementia).

Steroids have been effective in treating the symptoms of bronchial carcinoid tumors. Although prophylactic preoperative administration and intraoperative therapeutic use have been described, controlled studies of beneficial effects are lacking. Aprotinin, like steroids, inhibits the kallikrein cascade by blocking the proteinase activity of kallikrein, and some reports have described a dramatic clinical response, though it is not available in the United States.

A subset of patients with symptoms of carcinoid syndrome excretes histamine at increased levels in their urine. Histamine causes vasodilation of small blood vessels, which leads to flushing and decreased total peripheral resistance. Histamine is known to cause bronchoconstriction, particularly in patients with bronchial asthma and other pulmonary diseases. Histamine receptor blocking drugs have been used with some success in alleviating the flushing associated with carcinoid syndrome. H_2 antagonism alone was found to be just as effective as combination therapy in preventing symptoms; pure H_1 antagonism, however, was ineffective. These therapies have been relegated to a second-line defense since the use of somatostatin.

Catecholamines aggravate the symptoms of carcinoid syndrome, presumably by stimulating release of hormone by the tumor. Adrenergic receptors have not been demonstrated in carcinoid tumors, nor do these tumors usually have neural innervation. Perhaps adrenergic stimuli work through their mechanical effects on the gut and vessels to stimulate the release of tumor products. Treatment of patients with carcinoid tumors by means of α- and β-adrenergic antagonists has been beneficial in ameliorating flushing in some instances but ineffective in others.

The results of prospective studies on somatostatin to ameliorate the symptoms of carcinoid syndrome have been dramatic. Somatostatin appears to have been a major advance in the treatment of carcinoid syndrome, it is now the mainstay of medical treatment perioperatively.

Bronchospasm with or without flushing also develops in many patients when vasoactive substances are released. Thus a patient with a carcinoid tumor may be well or may be severely incapacitated by pulmonary, neurologic, nutritional, fluid, electrolytic, or cardiovascular disturbances.

Therefore, although the GI system in itself may not require extensive preoperative preparation, GI disease can cause disturbances in any or all other systems that require extensive preoperative preparation to optimize the patient's condition in addition to preoperative knowledge of physiology and the effects of diseases to guide patients through the perioperative period smoothly. In addition, the anesthesiologist's understanding of the nature of the surgical procedure aids in determining the system involvement caused by the GI disorder.

Another perioperative consideration is that patients with GI diseases have had to endure the psychosocial trauma of having to live with their disease for long periods or the necessity of facing such a prospect.[369] They need emotional support, kindness, and empathy as much as, if not more than, other patients without sacrificing scientific rigor in the treatment of their condition. Obtaining relevant psychological data while gathering medical information, sitting while taking the history, and empathizing with the patient about how difficult it must be to accomplish tasks with this disease legitimize the physician's interests in and support of the patient's pain and other psychosocial issues. The time spent sitting and talking with the patient also allows the anesthesiologist to discuss options for pain therapy with the patient, and other issues that show the anesthesiologist to be both a competent physician and particularly concerned with that patient's well-being.

LIVER DISEASE

What are the risks of giving anesthesia to patients with acute liver disease who require emergency surgery? What are the risks of giving anesthesia to patients with chronic impairment of liver function? What can be done to minimize these risks? Although one may think that the experiences gained from providing anesthesia for liver transplantation would answer many of these questions, a substantial difference exists between optimizing cardiovascular function to meet the needs of a new liver (e.g., supply of nutrients) and maintaining liver function in a diseased liver. Hepatic physiology and pathology are discussed in Chapter 16.

Hematologic Disorders and Oncologic Disease

HEMATOLOGIC DISORDERS

Sickle Cell Anemia and Related Hemoglobinopathies

The sickle cell syndromes constitute a family of hemoglobinopathies caused by abnormal genetic transformation of amino acids in the heme portion of the hemoglobin molecule. The sickle cell syndromes arise from a mutation in the β-globin gene that changes the sixth amino acid from valine to glutamic acid. A major pathologic feature of sickle cell disease is the aggregation of irreversibly sickled cells in blood vessels. The molecular basis of sickling is the aggregation of deoxygenated hemoglobin B molecules along their longitudinal axis.[370] This abnormal aggregation distorts the cell membrane and thereby produces a sickle shape. Irreversibly sickled cells become dehydrated and rigid and can cause tissue infarcts by impeding blood flow and oxygen to tissues.[370-373] Several studies show enhanced adhesion of sickled erythrocytes to vascular endothelium, as well.[374] Some other abnormal hemoglobins interact with hemoglobin S to various degrees and give rise to symptomatic disease in patients heterozygous for hemoglobin S and one of the other hemoglobins such as the hemoglobin of thalassemia (hemoglobin C).

Three tenths of 1% of the African American population in the United States have sickle cell-thalassemia disease (hemoglobin SC); these patients also have end-organ disease and symptoms suggestive of organ infarction. For these patients, perioperative considerations should be similar to those for patients with sickle cell disease (hemoglobin SS).

Whereas 8% to 10% of African Americans have the sickle cell trait (hemoglobin AS), 0.2% are homozygous for sickle cell hemoglobin and have sickle cell anemia. Sickle cell trait is a heterozygous condition in which the individual has one βS globin gene and one βA globin gene, which results in the production of both hemoglobin S and hemoglobin A, with a predominance of hemoglobin A. Sickle cell trait is not clinically significant because hemoglobin AS cells begin to sickle only when the oxygen saturation of hemoglobin is less than 20%. Minimal difference has been found between physiologically normal persons (i.e., those with hemoglobin AA) and those with hemoglobin AS regarding survival rates, though there is one exception—patients with hemoglobin AS have a 50% increase in pulmonary infarction. However, single case reports of a perioperative death and a perioperative brain infarct in two patients with hemoglobin AS disease do exist, as does a report of death believed to be caused by aortocaval compression during general anesthesia that resulted in a sickling crisis.[375] Frequent measurement of oxygen saturation (pulse oximetry) in multiple areas of the body is recommended when caring these AS patients, including the ear and toe in pregnant patients.[375]

The pathologic end-organ damage that occurs in sickle cell states is attributable to three processes: the sickling or adhesion of cells in blood vessels, which causes infarcts and subsequent tissue destruction secondary to tissue ischemia; hemolytic crisis secondary to hemolysis; and aplastic crises that occur with bone marrow exhaustion, which can rapidly result in severe anemia. Patients currently in crisis should not undergo surgery except for emergencies, and then only after an exchange transfusion.[372,374-378]

Because sickling is increased with lowered oxygen tensions, acidosis, hypothermia, and the presence of more desaturated hemoglobin S; current therapy includes keeping the patient warm and well hydrated, giving supplemental oxygen, maintaining high cardiac output, and avoiding areas of stasis with pressure or tourniquets. Meticulous attention to these practices in periods when we do not usually pay most careful attention (i.e., waiting in the preinduction area) or when gas exchange may be most unmatched to the cardiovascular-metabolic demands (early postoperative period) may be important in lessening morbidity. Following these measures routinely succeeded in reducing mortality to 1% in several series of patients with sickle cell syndromes.[375,378,379] Retrospective review of patients' charts led the authors of those studies to conclude that, at most, a 0.5% mortality rate could be attributed to the interaction between sickle cell anemia and anesthesia.

Several investigators have advocated using partial exchange transfusions perioperatively. In children with sickle cell anemia and acute lung syndromes, partial exchange transfusion improved clinical symptoms and blood oxygenation. In addition, serum bilirubin levels decreased in patients with acute liver injury. Clinical improvement of pneumococcal meningitis and cessation of hematuria in papillary necrosis also accompanied exchange transfusion.[371] The goal of transfusion therapy is to lower the concentration of hemoglobin S to less than 30%, minimize splenic sequestration, treat severe anemia, and avoid acute chest syndrome due to low PaO_2.[379a] Exchange transfusion serves to lower the concentration of hemoglobin S, while red blood cell transfusions serve to correct anemia. To date only regular transfusion therapy has been associated with improved mortality in the extended period.[379b,c] Two studies demonstrated a possible decrease in perioperative morbidity after partial exchange transfusion when compared with the risks of exchange transfusion.[373,380] A retrospective review of 14 patients with sickle cell anemia who were undergoing total hip revision supported the decision to perform a simple transfusion preoperatively only if the patient's hemoglobin is significantly lower than their steady-state hemoglobin level.[381] Transfusion can be used intraoperatively according to hemoglobin level or blood loss volume. Other conditions are common in sickle cell syndromes: pulmonary dysfunction with increased shunting, renal insufficiency, gallstones, small MIs, priapism, stroke, aseptic necrosis of bones and joints, ischemic ulcers, retinal detachment as a result of neovascularization, and complications of repeated transfusions.

In thalassemia, globin structures are normal, but because of gene deletion, the rate of synthesis of either the α or β chains of hemoglobin (α- and β-thalassemia, respectively) decreases.[382-384] Two copies of the gene that codes for the α-globin chain are located on chromosome 16. Deletion of all four of these genes causes cell death in utero, and three deletions cause severe chronic hemolysis and a shortened life span. α-Thalassemia-1 (trait) occurs when two genes have been deleted and mild anemia results; α-thalassemia-2 (silent) occurs when the two genes have been deleted but no mild anemia or microcytosis results. In α-thalassemia trait, the hemoglobin A_2 level is normal. β-Thalassemia is associated with an excess of α chains, which denature developing erythrocytes, thereby leading to their premature death in marrow or to shortened survival in the circulation. An elevated hemoglobin A_2 level is the hallmark of β-thalassemia trait, a common cause of mild anemia and microcytosis. These syndromes are common in Southeast Asia, India, and the Middle East and in people of African descent.

In thalassemia, facial deformity from erythropoietin-stimulated ineffective erythropoiesis (ineffective because of a genetic inability to produce useful hemoglobin) was reported to make endotracheal intubation difficult.[382,383] The anemia associated with these syndromes often produces compensatory hyperplasia of the erythroid marrow, which in turn is associated with severe skeletal abnormalities.[382-384]

Cytoskeletal Anemias (Hereditary Spherocytosis and Elliptocytosis), Enzyme-Deficient Anemias, and Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemias

Congenital abnormalities of the erythrocyte membrane are becoming better understood. In elliptocytosis and hereditary spherocytosis, the membrane is more permeable to cations and is more susceptible to lipid loss when cell energy is depleted than is the membrane of a normal red blood cell. Both hereditary spherocytosis (present in 1 in 5000 people) and hereditary elliptocytosis are inherited as autosomal dominant traits. In both disorders, defects in the membrane are thought to result from a mutation of spectrin, a structural protein of the membrane cytoskeleton.[385] Although the therapeutic role of splenectomy in these diseases is not fully defined, in severe disease, splenectomy is known to improve the shortened life span of the red blood cell from 20-30 days to 40-70 days. Because splenectomy predisposes the patient to gram-positive septicemia (particularly pneumococcal), perhaps patients should be given pneumococcal vaccine preoperatively. No specific problems related to anesthesia have been reported for these disorders.

Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency (a gender-linked recessive trait) has been recognized as the most common enzymopathy worldwide, most often expressed in males, and in patients of African, Asian, Mediterranean, or Middle Eastern descent.[385a] Young cells have normal activity, but older cells are grossly deficient when compared with normal cells. A deficiency in G6PD results in hemolysis of the erythrocyte and the formation of Heinz bodies. Red blood cell hemolysis can also occur with intercurrent infections or after the administration of drugs that produce substances requiring G6PD for detoxification (e.g., methemoglobin, glutathione, and hydrogen peroxide). Drugs to be avoided are sulfa drugs, quinidine, prilocaine, lidocaine, antimalarial drugs, antipyretic drugs, nonnarcotic analgesics, vitamin K analogues, and perhaps sodium nitroprusside.

The autoimmune hemolytic anemias include cold antibody anemia, warm antibody anemia (idiopathic), and drug-induced anemia and occur from antibody mediate destruction of red blood cells.[386-388] Cold antibody hemolytic anemia is mediated by IgM or IgG antibodies, which at room temperature and lower temperatures cause red blood cells to clump. When these patients are given blood transfusions, the cells and all fluid infusions must be warm, and body temperature must be meticulously maintained at 37°C if hemolysis is to be prevented. Warm antibody (or idiopathic) hemolytic anemia is mediated by IgG and is a difficult management problem characterized by chronic anemia, the presence of antibodies active against red blood cells, a positive Coombs test, and difficulty crossmatching blood. For patients undergoing elective surgery, autologous transfusions, predeposit of blood with or without erythropoietin stimulation,[389] and blood from rare Rh-negative red blood cell donors or the patient's first-degree relatives (or both) can be used. In emergency situations, the possibility of autotransfusion, splenectomy, corticosteroid treatment, rituximab, cyclophosphamide, or azathioprine should be discussed with a hematologist knowledgeable in this area.[389a]

Drug-induced anemias have three mechanisms. In receptor-type hemolysis, a drug (e.g., penicillin) binds to the membrane of the red blood cell, and the complex stimulates the formation of an antibody against the complex. In "innocent bystander" hemolysis, a drug (e.g., quinidine, sulfonamide) binds to a plasma protein, thereby stimulating an antibody (IgM) that cross-reacts with an erythrocyte. In autoimmune hemolysis, the drug stimulates the production of an antibody (IgG) that cross-reacts with the erythrocyte. Drug-induced hemolytic anemias generally cease when therapy with the drug ends.

Granulocytopenia

Granulocyte mechanisms have undergone experimental elaboration since 2000, partly because of the molecular biologic revolution: in addition to erythropoietin, more than 14 hemolymphopoietic growth factors or cytokines have been characterized biochemically and cloned genetically. These growth factors interact with cell-surface receptors to produce their major actions (Table 32.14).[390] Use of the colony-stimulating factors has permitted more intense oncologic treatment. The few reports related to their perioperative effects detail the unfavorable adverse consequences that such therapies can have on gas exchange when adverse immunologic effects occur.[391]

In patients who have fewer than 500 granulocytes/mL of blood and established sepsis, the use of growth factor and granulocyte transfusion has been shown to prolong life.[392-394] Although bone marrow transplantation is being used increasingly, complications usually occur after transplantation, not on harvesting of cells. Abnormal results on pulmonary function testing before bone marrow transplantation seem to predict complications after transplantation, but not so strongly as to preclude transplantation.[395]

Platelet Disorders

Although inherited platelet disorders are rare, acquired disorders are quite common and affect at least 20% of all patients in medical and surgical ICUs, with infections and drug therapies being the leading causes.[396] Both acquired and inherited platelet conditions cause skin and mucosal bleeding, whereas defects in plasma coagulation produce deep tissue bleeding or delayed bleeding. Perioperative treatment of inherited platelet disorders (e.g., Glanzmann thrombasthenia, Bernard-Soulier syndrome, Hermansky-Pudlak syndrome) consists of platelet transfusions. EACA has been used successfully to decrease perioperative bleeding in thrombocytopenic patients. The much more common acquired disorders may respond to one of several therapies. Immune thrombocytopenias, such as those associated with lupus erythematosus, idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, uremia, hemolytic-uremic syndrome, platelet transfusions, heparin, and thrombocytosis, may respond to steroids, splenectomy, plateletpheresis, eradication of *Helicobacter pylori*, or alkylating agents, or may require platelet transfusions, plasma exchange, whole blood exchange, or transfusion; sometimes these disorders do not respond to anything.[179,397,398] Traditionally, splenectomy is performed when steroid therapy fails or reaches a dosage that poses unacceptable risks of toxicity. Immunoglobulin infusions and rituximab may induce desirable remissions in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura without splenectomy.

Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura is a rare immune-mediated thrombotic microangiopathic disorder caused by antibodies to ADAMTS 13 (A Disintegrin AND Metalloproteinase with a Thrombospondin type 1 motif, member 13) that, despite various therapies, still carries a high mortality rate.[398a] The current therapies of plasma exchange, corticosteroids, and rituximab have improved survival rates, though new therapies are under investigation.[398b] One uncontrolled study implies that the benefit lies not only in improvement of the hematologic picture but also in prevention of ARDS, a leading cause of death in these patients.[398] In that study, early institution of plasmapheresis improved oxygenation.

By far the largest number of platelet abnormalities consists of drug-related defects in the aggregation and release of platelets. Aspirin irreversibly acetylates platelet cyclooxygenase, the enzyme that converts arachidonic acid to prostaglandin endoperoxidases. Because cyclooxygenase is not regenerated in the circulation within the life span of the platelet and because this enzyme is essential for the aggregation of platelets, one aspirin tablet may affect platelet function for a week. All other drugs that inhibit platelet function (e.g., vitamin E, indomethacin, sulfinpyrazone, dipyridamole, tricyclic antidepressant drugs, phenothiazines, furosemide, steroids) do not inhibit cyclooxygenase function irreversibly; these drugs disturb platelet function for only 24 to 48 hours. If emergency surgery is needed before the customary 8-day period for platelet regeneration after aspirin therapy or if the 2-day period for other drugs has not elapsed, administration of 2 to 5 units of platelet concentrate will return platelet function

TABLE 32.14 Major Effects of Hemolymphopoietic Growth Factors and Cytokines

Cytokine	Other Names	Biologic Effects
Erythropoietin		Erythrocyte production
Interleukin-3 (IL-3)	Multicolony-stimulating factor Stem cell–activating factor Persisting cell-stimulating factor Hemopoietin-2	Stimulates proliferation and differentiation of granulocyte, macrophage, eosinophil, mast cell, megakaryocyte, and T- and B-cell lineage and early myeloid stem cells Interacts with erythropoietin to stimulate erythroid colony formation, stimulates proliferation of AML blasts, and stimulates histamine release by mast cells
Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF)	Differentiation factor MGI-2	Stimulates granulocyte lineage proliferation and differentiation Acts on early myeloid stem cells, especially in association with other factors; synergizes with IL-3 to stimulate megakaryocyte colony formation Increases neutrophil phagocytes and antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity Releases neutrophils from bone marrow and is chemotactic for neutrophils and monocytes Enhances phagocytosis and antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity and oxidative metabolism of neutrophils Stimulates monocyte killing of *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* and *Candida* species, tumoricidal activity of monocytes, antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity, and expression of cell-surface proteins
Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF)		Stimulates granulocyte, macrophage, and megakaryocyte proliferation and differentiation, early myeloid stem cells, and—in the presence of erythropoietin—erythropoiesis Enhances the cytotoxic and phagocytic colony-stimulating factor activity of neutrophils against bacteria, yeast, parasites, and antibody-coated tumor cells Increases surface expression of neutrophil adhesion proteins and enhances eosinophil cytotoxicity, macrophage phagocytosis, and basophil histamine release Amplifies IL-2–stimulated T-cell proliferation and stimulates B-cell lines to proliferate
Colony-stimulating factor-1	Macrophage colony-stimulating factor	Stimulates predominantly macrophage-monocyte proliferation and differentiation with lesser effects on granulocytes Acts synergistically with other factors on earlier myeloid stem cells Stimulates macrophage phagocytosis, killing, migration, antitumor activity, and metabolism Stimulates secretion of plasminogen activator, G-CSF, interferon, IL-3, or tumor necrosis factor by peritoneal macrophages
Interleukin-1 (α and β)	Endogenous pyrogen Hemopoietin-1 Osteoclast-activating factor Lymphocyte-activating factor	Induces synthesis of acute-phase proteins by hepatocytes Activates resting T cells, cofactor for T- and B-cell proliferation Chemotactic for monocytes and neutrophils Induces production of growth factors, including G-CSF, GM-CSF, IL-6, CSF-1, IL-3, and interferon by many cells Radioprotective in mice
Interleukin-2	T-cell growth factor	Growth factor for T cells, activates cytotoxic T lymphocytes, promotes synthesis of other cytokines, enhances natural killer cell function
Interleukin-4	B-cell–stimulating factor-1 (BSF-1) B-cell differentiation factor (BCDF) IgG induction factor	Enhances antibody production (IgG and IgE) and up-regulates class II MHC molecules and Fc receptors on B cells Costimulant with anti-IgM antibodies for induction of DNA synthesis in resting B cells Stimulates growth of activated T cells In the presence of IL-3, enhances mast cell growth; with G-CSF, enhances granulocytes of GM colony formation; and with erythropoietin and/or IL-1, stimulates erythroid and megakaryocyte colony formation
Interleukin-5	Eosinophil differentiation factor (EDF) T-cell–replacing factor (TRF) B-cell growth factor-II (BCGF-II) B-cell differentiation factor (BCDF)	Enhances antibody production (IgA) Promotes proliferation and IgG secretion by B-cell lines and induces hapten-specific IgG secretion in vitro by in vivo–primed B cells Promotes differentiation by normal B cells Stimulates eosinophil production and differentiation (GM-CSF and IL-3 act synergistically with IL-5 to stimulate eosinophil proliferation and differentiation) Enhances synthesis of IL-2 receptors
Interleukin-6	B-cell–stimulating factor-2 (BSF-2) Interferon-β_2 T-cell activation factor Hybridoma growth factor	B-cell differentiation and IgG secretion T cells activated to cytotoxicity Synergizes with IL-3 on early marrow myeloid stem cells and stimulates proliferation and differentiation of granulocytes, macrophages, eosinophils, mast cells, and megakaryocytes, as well as platelet production (may be a thrombopoietin)
Interleukin-7	Lymphopoietin-1	Stimulates pre–B-cell production Stimulates T-cell proliferation
Interleukin-8*	Neutrophil-activating factor T-cell chemotactic factor	Inflammatory mediator; stimulates activation of neutrophils
Interleukin-9		Stimulates erythroid colony formation and proliferation of a megakaryocyte cell line

TABLE 32.14 Major Effects of Hemolymphopoietic Growth Factors and Cytokines—cont'd

Cytokine	Other Names	Biologic Effects
Interleukin-10	Cytokine synthesis–inhibiting factor	Inhibits cytokine production by T_H1 cells
Interleukin-11		Stimulates B-cell, megakaryocyte, and mast cell lineages
C-kit ligand	Mast cell factor Stem cell factor Hemolymphopoietic growth factor-1	Acts on relatively early stem cells synergistically with other cytokines Stimulates pre-B cells

*Not considered a true growth factor but included here for completeness.

AML, Acute myeloblastic leukemia; *IgA*, immunoglobulin A; *IgG*, immunoglobulin G; *IgM*, immunoglobulin M; *MHC*, major histocompatibility complex; *T_H1*, first of the thymus-derived cells.

in a 70-kg adult to an adequate level and platelet-induced clotting dysfunction to normal. Only 30,000 to 50,000 normally functioning platelets per milliliter are needed for normal clotting. One platelet transfusion will increase the platelet count from 5,000 to 20,000/mL blood; the platelet half-life is approximately 8 hours.

Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia can develop within hours on reexposure to heparin in a previously sensitized patient; prevalence has been shown to be increasing, particularly in ICU populations.[398c] The diagnosis starts with a clinical assessment, most commonly the 4-T score (Thrombocytopenia, Timing of fall, presence of Thrombosis, and other causes for Thrombocytopenia), with enzymatic immunoassays for confirmation.[398d] Treatment can be initiated prior to confirmatory test results, if suspicion is high. Argatroban is a direct thrombin inhibitor effective as therapy for heparin-induced thrombocytopenia.[399]

Major risk factors for thrombosis include factor V Leiden and prothrombin 20210A mutations, elevated plasma homocysteine, and the antiphospholipid antibody syndrome.[400,401] Clinicians facing these challenging patients may seek expert local consultation for help with management. This issue is discussed more fully in Chapter 50.

Hemophilia and Related Clotting Disorders

Abnormalities in blood coagulation as a result of defects in plasma coagulation factors are either inherited or acquired. Inherited disorders include X-linked hemophilia A (a defect in factor VIII activity), von Willebrand disease (defect in the von Willebrand component of factor VIII), hemophilia B (a sex-linked deficiency of factor IX activity), and other less common disorders. The sex-linked origin of some of these disorders means that hemophilia occurs almost exclusively in the male children of female carriers; men do not transmit the disease to their male children.

In elective surgery, levels of the deficient coagulation factor should be assayed 48 hours preoperatively and the level restored to 40% of normal before the surgical procedure. One unit of factor concentrate per kilogram of body weight normally increases the factor concentration by 2%. Thus, in an individual essentially devoid of activity, administration of 20 units/kg body weight would be required as an initial dose. Because the half-life is 6 to 10 hours for factor VIII and 8 to 16 hours for factor IX, approximately 1.5 units/h/kg of factor VIII or 1.5 units/2 hours/kg of factor IX should be given. Additional administration of factors VIII and IX should be guided by the activity of the clotting factors for approximately 6 to 10 days postoperatively.[402-404]

An antibody that inactivates factor VIII or IX (fresh frozen plasma fails to increase clotting factor activity after incubation with the patient's plasma) develops in approximately 10% of patients with either hemophilia A or B. These acquired anticoagulants are usually composed of IgG, are poorly removed by plasmapheresis, and are variably responsive to immunosuppressive drugs. The use of prothrombin complex concentrates can be lifesaving to bypass the inhibitor.

Patients who come to the operating room after having received many units of blood (as in massive GI bleeding and trauma) may have deficient clotting caused by depletion of platelets and later coagulation factors, which occurs after administration of approximately 10 units of blood. Treatment of these deficiencies can be corrected with platelet concentrates and fresh frozen plasma. In settings of massive hemorrhage requiring large volume transfusion, the approximation of whole blood through a one to one to one ratio of packed red blood cells to plasma to platelets can be advantageous.

Urokinase, streptokinase, and tissue-type plasminogen activator (t-PA) have been used to treat pulmonary embolism, deep vein thrombosis, stroke, and arterial occlusive disease. These drugs accelerate the lysis of thrombi and emboli, in contrast to heparin, which may prevent and slow propagation, but will not dissolve a thrombus. Bleeding complications associated with these fibrinolytic agents are the result of dissolution of hemostatic plugs and can be quickly reversed by discontinuing the medication and replenishing plasma fibrinogen with cryoprecipitate or plasma. However, cryoprecipitate and plasma are seldom needed preoperatively because the fibrinolytic activity of urokinase and streptokinase usually dissipates within 1 hour of discontinuing their administration. Nonetheless, insufficient data have accumulated to prescribe the ideal preoperative preparation and intraoperative management of hemostasis in patients recently treated with urokinase, streptokinase, or t-PA. Postponing surgery for three half-lives of the drug (increases in plasmin activity in blood can be assayed for ≥4 to 8 hours) may not be possible, and meticulous observation of the operative field for hemostasis may not suffice.[405,406] The process may be even more complex in a patient with a vascular or cardiac condition who requires heparin administration intraoperatively. To correct the fibrinogen deficiency in these patients, some clinicians administer fibrinogen as cryoprecipitate preoperatively, and EACA at heparin administration.

DDAVP has been used in operations associated with high blood loss as a routine measure to decrease bleeding and transfusion requirements. DDAVP therapy began as treatment of platelet dysfunction in von Willebrand disease but has since expanded to routine use in patients undergoing cardiovascular surgery and to frequent use in other high-blood loss operations. A meta-analysis of cardiac surgery concluded that DDAVP was not associated with a clinically significant reduction in exposure to blood transfusion in unselected patients, and therefore the authors were unable to recommend the routine use of DDAVP in patients exposed to CPB.[407] However, DDAVP may reduce postoperative bleeding in patients who have received preoperative aspirin within 7 days of surgery, patients with CPB times in excess of 140 minutes, and patients with demonstrable platelet dysfunction. The authors suggested that DDAVP could be used selectively in these subgroups.

ONCOLOGIC DISEASE

Patients with malignant tumors may be otherwise healthy or may be chronically ill with nutritional, neurologic, metabolic, endocrinologic, electrolyte, cardiac, pulmonary, renal, hepatic, hematologic, or pharmacologic disabilities. Thus determining the other morbidities accompanying malignant tumors requires through evaluation of all systems. Abnormalities frequently accompanying such tumors include hypercalcemia either by direct bone invasion or by ectopic elaboration of PTH or other bone-dissolving substance, uric acid nephropathy, hyponatremia (especially with small cell, or oat cell, carcinoma of the lung), nausea, vomiting, anorexia and cachexia, fever, tumor-induced hypoglycemia, intracranial metastases (10%-20% of all cancers), peripheral nerve or spinal cord disorders, meningeal carcinomatosis, toxic neuropathies secondary to anticancer therapy, and paraneoplastic neurologic syndromes (dermatomyositis, Eaton-Lambert syndrome, myopathies, and distal neuropathies).

Many patients with malignant tumors are given large doses of analgesics and should be kept comfortable during the perioperative period, it is of particular importance in terminally ill patients.[408] Immunomodulators, stimulating factors or cytokines, gene identification,[409,410] and drugs for treating side effects (e.g., midazolam, ondansetron, and even marijuana) have given new hope for safer, more effective therapy with fewer limiting side effects. The effect of ondansetron in preventing vomiting and the effect of midazolam in preventing memory-stimulated vomiting have been important additions. The neurokinin-1 antagonists have also been approved for treatment in oncologic patients.

The toxicity of cancer chemotherapy is related to the drugs used and the dose. For radiation therapy, damage occurs when the following doses are exceeded: lungs, 1500 rad; kidneys, 2400 rad; heart, 3000 rad; spinal cord, 4000 rad; intestine, 5500 rad; brain, 6000 rad; and bone, 7500 rad. The toxicities of biologic and immunomodulating therapies are related to the change in immune function that they cause. Alkylating agents cause bone marrow depression, including thrombocytopenia, as well as alopecia, hemorrhagic cystitis, nausea, and vomiting. The alkylating agents, including cyclophosphamide and mechlorethamine, can act as an anticholinesterase and prolong neuromuscular blockade.[411] The antineoplastic alkaloid vincristine produces peripheral neuropathy and SIADH, and vinblastine produces myelotoxicity. Cisplatin is also associated with peripheral neuropathy and severe nausea. Nitrosoureas can produce severe hepatic and renal damage, as well as bone marrow toxicity, myalgia, and paresthesia. Folic acid analogues such as methotrexate have been linked to bone marrow depression, ulcerative stomatitis, pulmonary interstitial infiltrates, GI toxicity, and occasionally, severe liver dysfunction. Fluorouracil and floxuridine, both pyrimidine analogues, cause bone marrow toxicity, megaloblastic anemia, nervous system dysfunction, and hepatic and GI alterations. Purine analogues (mercaptopurine, thioguanine) have bone marrow depression as their primary toxic effect. Anthracycline antibiotics (doxorubicin, daunorubicin, mithramycin, mitomycin C, bleomycin) can all cause pulmonary infiltrates, cardiomyopathy (especially doxorubicin and daunorubicin), myelotoxicity, and GI, hepatic, and renal disturbances. Knowing these expected side effects and complications allow general anesthesia to be safely provided to this patient population with the appropriate preoperative plan.

Patients Given Drug Therapy for Chronic and Acute Medical Conditions

A steadily increasing number of potent drugs are being used to treat disease, and the average hospitalized patient receives more than 10 drugs. Many drugs have side effects that may make anesthesia challenging and patient management more difficult. Knowing the pharmacologic properties and potential side effects of commonly used drugs helps the anesthesiologist avoid pitfalls during anesthesia and surgery.

ANTIHYPERTENSIVE DRUGS

ACE inhibitors (e.g., captopril, enalapril, and lisinopril) and angiotensin II receptor blockers (e.g., valsartan, candesartan) are being used increasingly as first-line drugs and appear to improve the quality of life of patients taking antihypertensive drugs. ACE inhibitors and angiotensin II receptor blockers may be associated with more peripheral vasodilation and hypotension on induction of anesthesia than are sympatholytic agents. Both ACE inhibitors and angiotensin II receptor blocking agents are associated with such severe hypotension with standard anesthetic induction that we discontinue or at least consider discontinuing the use of these drugs preoperatively (see earlier).

Catecholamine or sympathetic receptor blocking drugs affect the three major types of catecholamine receptors: α-adrenergic, β-adrenergic, and dopaminergic. The existence of subdivisions (e.g., β_1 and β_2) suggested the possibility that some drugs would be found to affect only one set of receptors. For example, terbutaline is used more frequently than isoproterenol because terbutaline is said to exert a preferential effect on β-$_2$ receptors (i.e., dilation of bronchial smooth muscle), thereby avoiding the cardiac stimulation produced by drugs that stimulate β_1-receptors. In fact, the selectivity is dose related. At a certain dose, a direct β_2-receptor stimulating drug affects only those receptors but, at a higher dose, stimulates both β_1 and β_2 receptors. The effect of a given dose varies with each patient. A certain dose may stimulate β_1 and β_2 receptors in one patient but neither receptor in another patient. More and more selective blocking drugs are being developed in the hope of widening the margin among β_1-, β_2-, and α-adrenergic effects. Ultimately, however, even more selectivity is desired. It would be advantageous to be able to decrease the heart rate without changing myocardial contractility or to increase contractility without changing the heart rate.

Metoprolol, atenolol, propranolol, betaxolol, timolol, esmolol, pindolol, oxprenolol, acebutolol, carteolol, penbutolol, and nadolol are widely available β-adrenergic receptor blocking drugs used for therapy in the United States. Because nadolol has poor lipid solubility, it has a long elimination half-life

(17-24 hours) and does not cross the blood-brain barrier readily. Although selective β-adrenergic receptor blocking drugs should be more appropriate in patients with increased airway resistance or diabetes, this advantage is apparent only when low doses are used. The use of β-adrenergic receptor blocking drugs has become widespread because these drugs treat everything from angina and hypertension to priapism and stage fright. These drugs appear to decrease morbidity and mortality in patients who have initially survived MI, and they may increase perioperative survival in selected patients.[412,413]

When administration of β-adrenergic receptor blocking drugs is terminated, sympathetic stimulation often increases, as though the body had responded to the presence of these drugs by increasing sympathetic neuron activity. Thus propranolol and nadolol withdrawal can be accompanied by a hyper–β-adrenergic condition that increases myocardial oxygen demands. Administering propranolol or metoprolol can cause bradycardia, exacerbations of decompensated heart failure, fatigue, dizziness, depression, psychoses, bronchospasm, and Peyronie disease. The POISE study emphasized the concerns that inadequate titration of these agents can lead to stroke or increased mortality.[111] Side effects of dopaminergic receptor blocking drugs are discussed later.

Prazosin, terazosin, and oxazocine are α_1-adrenergic receptor blocking drugs used to treat hypertension, ischemic cardiomyopathy, receding hairlines, and benign prostatic hypertrophy because they dilate both veins and arteries and reduce sphincter tone. These drugs are associated with vertigo, palpitations, depression, dizziness, weakness, and anticholinergic effects.

Some sympathomimetic drugs stimulate α-adrenergic receptors in the brainstem. Clonidine, a drug with a half-life of 12 to 24 hours, dexmedetomidine, and guanfacine are α_2-adrenergic receptor stimulants. Presumably, α_2-adrenergic agonists, including clonidine, dexmedetomidine, and guanfacine, lower arterial blood pressure on a long-term basis through the central brainstem adrenergic stimulation referred to previously. They may also be used on a long-term basis to treat opiate, cocaine, food, and tobacco withdrawal. Occasionally, withdrawal from clonidine can precipitate a sudden rebound hypertensive crisis. Tricyclic antidepressant drugs and presumably phenothiazines and the butyrophenones interfere with the action of clonidine. Although administration of a butyrophenone (e.g., droperidol) to a patient taking clonidine, dexmedetomidine, or guanfacine on a long-term basis could theoretically precipitate a hypertensive crisis, this has not been reported. Clonidine administration can be accompanied by drowsiness, dry mouth, orthostatic hypotension, bradycardia, and impotence. Acute clonidine or dexmedetomidine administration decreases anesthetic requirements by at least 40% to 60%; long-term administration decreases requirements by 10% to 20%.[414,415] Because of the relative safety of these drugs and their ability to decrease anesthetic requirements, block narcotic-induced muscle rigidity, and provide pain relief, their popularity preoperatively, intraoperatively, and in ICU sedation is increasing dramatically.[414-418]

Three other classes of antihypertensive drugs affect the sympathetic nervous system indirectly: diuretics, arteriolar dilators, and calcium channel blocking agents. Thiazide diuretic drugs are associated with hypochloremic alkalosis, hypokalemia, hyperglycemia, hyperuricemia, and hypercalcemia. The potassium-sparing diuretic drug spironolactone is associated with hyperkalemia, hyponatremia, gynecomastia, and impotence. All diuretic drugs can cause dehydration. The thiazide diuretics and furosemide appear to prolong neuromuscular blockade.

The arteriolar dilator hydralazine can cause a lupus-like condition (usually with renal involvement), nasal congestion, headache, dizziness, CHF, angina, and GI disturbances. Such a syndrome is nonexistent with the other direct vasodilator on the U.S. market, minoxidil.

The calcium channel blocking drugs (slow-channel calcium ion antagonists) inhibit the transmembrane influx of calcium ions into cardiac and vascular smooth muscle. Such inhibition reduces the heart rate (negative chronotropy), depresses contractility (negative inotropy), decreases conduction velocity (negative dromotropy), and dilates coronary, cerebral, and systemic arterioles (Fig. 32.7).[419] Verapamil, diltiazem, and nifedipine all produce such effects, but to varying degrees and apparently by similar, but different mechanisms. These mechanisms relate to the three different classes of calcium channel antagonists that they represent: the phenylalkyl amines, the benzothiazepines, and the dihydropyridines, respectively. Nifedipine is the most potent of the three as a smooth muscle dilator, whereas verapamil and diltiazem have negative dromotropic and inotropic effects, and weak vasodilating properties. Diltiazem has weak vasodilating properties when compared with nifedipine and has less of an AV conduction effect than does verapamil. Thus verapamil and diltiazem can increase the PR interval and produce AV block. In fact, reflex activation of the sympathetic nervous system may be necessary during the administration of diltiazem, and especially during verapamil therapy, to maintain normal conduction. Clearly, verapamil and diltiazem must be titrated very carefully when a patient is already taking a β-adrenergic receptor blocking drug or when adding β-blocking drugs to a patient already taking verapamil or diltiazem.

The use of calcium channel blocking drugs has several important implications for anesthetic management.[419-421] First, the effects of inhaled and narcotic anesthetics and nifedipine in decreasing systemic vascular resistance, arterial blood pressure, and contractility may be additive. Similarly, verapamil and anesthetics (inhaled anesthetics, nitrous oxide, and narcotics) increase AV conduction times and additively decrease arterial blood pressure, systemic vascular resistance, and contractility. Second, verapamil and presumably the other calcium channel blocking drugs have been found to decrease anesthetic requirements by up to 25%. These drugs can produce neuromuscular blockade, and potentiate both depolarizing and nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs. Finally, because slow-channel activation of calcium is necessary to cause spasms of cerebral and coronary vessels, bronchoconstriction, and normal platelet aggregation, these drugs may have a role in treating cerebral vasospasm (nimodipine), coronary artery graft vasospasm (nicardipine), bronchoconstriction, and unwanted clotting disorders perioperatively. These drugs are highly protein bound and may displace or be displaced by other drugs that are also highly protein bound (e.g., lidocaine, bupivacaine, diazepam, disopyramide, and propranolol). Adverse consequences can be minimized by titrating the inhaled or narcotic drug to the hemodynamic and anesthetic effects. Hemodynamic, but not electrophysiologic, changes can usually be reversed by administering calcium. Reversal of the electrophysiologic effects may occur if high doses of β-adrenergic agonists are given.

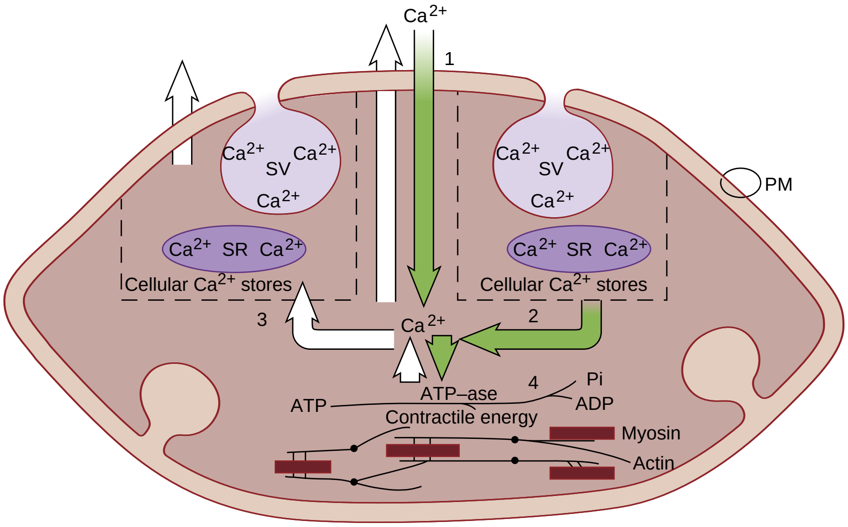


Fig. 32.7 Schematic drawing of a smooth muscle cell showing calcium *(Ca^{2+})* flux and possible sites of interference by halothane and nifedipine. The concentration of calcium in the cytoplasm increases *(green arrows)* because of entry through the plasma membrane *(PM)* and release from surface vesicles *(SV)* or the sarcoplasmic reticulum *(SR)*. When the concentration of cytoplasmic Ca^{2+} is sufficiently high, adenosine triphosphate *(ATP)* is activated. Splitting of ATP by adenosine triphosphatase *(ATPase)* into phosphatidylinositol *(Pi)* and adenosine diphosphate *(ADP)* provides the interaction and contraction of actin filaments and myosin particles constituting muscle fibers. The concentration of cytoplasmic Ca^{2+} decreases *(white arrows)* with the return of Ca^{2+} to cellular stores and the extracellular transport of Ca^{2+}. Both halothane and nifedipine probably (1) inhibit the entry of Ca^{2+} and (2) may also interfere with cytoplasmic Ca^{2+} flux by reducing the release of Ca^{2+} by the SR, by (3) reducing storage and reuptake, or by (4) blocking ATPase or the contractile mechanism (or both). (Redrawn from Tosone SR, Reves JG, Kissin I, et al. Hemodynamic responses to nifedipine in dogs anesthetized with halothane. *Anesth Analg.* 1983;62:903–908.)

MOOD-ALTERING DRUGS

Mood-altering drugs are the most frequently prescribed medications in the United States.[422,423] They include MAOIs, SSRIs, phenothiazines, tricyclic antidepressant drugs, other antidepressants that do not fall into previous drug category classifications such as bupropion, and drugs of abuse such as cocaine. MAOIs, which include isocarboxazid, phenelzine, pargyline, tranylcypromine, and deprenyl, bind irreversibly to the enzyme MAO, thereby increasing intraneuronal levels of amine neurotransmitters (serotonin, norepinephrine, dopamine, epinephrine). This increase is associated with an antidepressant effect, an antihypertensive effect, an antinarcoleptic effect, elevation of liver enzymes, and delayed onset of Parkinson disease. Because two forms of the enzyme (MAO-A and MAO-B) are selective in vitro for substrate (MAO-A is selective for serotonin, dopamine, and norepinephrine; MAO-B for tyramine and phenylethylamine), presumably MAOIs selective for MAO-A or MAO-B would have different effects.[424]

Interactions between MAOIs and a variety of foods and drugs containing indirect-acting sympathomimetic substances such as ephedrine or tyramine (found in aged hard cheeses) can occur for as long as 2 weeks after the last dose of MAOI is given. The most serious effects of this interaction are convulsions and hyperpyrexic coma (particularly after narcotics).

Anesthetic management of a patient given an MAOI can be challenging; for this reason it is widely accepted practice to discontinue MAOIs at least 2 to 3 weeks before any planned operation, further MAOIs are seen quite infrequently.[422-428] Severe reactions have occurred when too short an interval existed between the administration of MAOIs and tricyclic antidepressants. Emergency surgery in patients given MAOIs can be punctuated by hemodynamic instability. A regional block can be attempted as treatment of postoperative pain to avoid having to give narcotics. Cases of hyperpyrexic coma after the administration of most narcotics have been reported in humans, and animal studies document a 10% to 50% incidence of hyperpyrexic coma in animals pretreated with MAOIs and then given a variety of narcotics.[422-428] These reactions appear to be treated best by supportive care.

Alternative drugs for the treatment of severe depression include the tricyclic antidepressant drugs: amitriptyline, imipramine, desipramine, doxepin, nortriptyline, trazodone, and others.[422,423] Tricyclic antidepressant drugs also block the reuptake of neurotransmitters and cause their acute release. Given on a long-term basis, these drugs decrease stores of noradrenergic catecholamines. Tricyclic antidepressant drugs also produce side effects similar to those of atropine (dry mouth, tachycardia, delirium, urinary retention) and can cause changes on the ECG (changes in the T wave, prolongation of the QRS complex, bundle branch block or other conduction abnormalities, or PVCs). Although arrhythmias induced by tricyclic antidepressants have been treated successfully with physostigmine, bradycardia has sometimes occurred.[422,423] Drug interactions with tricyclic antidepressants include those related to blockade of the reuptake of norepinephrine. Such interactions, although predictable for a population of patients, may not alter a patient's threshold for arrhythmias. The selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors have gained popularity and include citalopram, escitalopram, fluoxetine, fluvoxamine, paroxetine, and sertraline, though these can also have serious side effects. For instance, fluoxetine causes nausea, vomiting, headaches, nervousness, and possibly paranoia and ideas of suicide more commonly than do the tricyclics[422,423]; however, it is less likely to cause systemic anticholinergic effects or orthostatic hypotension. Bupropion, which is fundamentally different than the SSRIs, may cause nausea, vomiting, seizures, agitation, tremor, excitement, and increased motor activity, but it only rarely causes anticholinergic effects or orthostatic hypotension. Discontinuing drugs can cause withdrawal symptoms or precipitate recurrence of psychiatric illness. Switching among drugs for depression can cause hyperpyrexia and coma; thus switching drugs preoperatively should not be requested casually.[422,423]

The effectiveness of phenothiazines and butyrophenones in schizophrenia suggests a dopamine receptor blocking action. In addition, these drugs possess varying degrees of parasympathetic stimulation and ability to block α-adrenergic receptors. The phenothiazines include chlorpromazine, promazine, triflupromazine, fluphenazine, trifluoperazine, prochlorperazine, and many others. The butyrophenones include droperidol and haloperidol. Both the phenothiazines and butyrophenones produce sedation, depression, and antihistaminic, antiemetic, and hypothermic responses. They are also associated with cholestatic jaundice, impotence, dystonia, and photosensitivity. Other side effects associated with phenothiazines include orthostatic hypotension (partly as a result of α-adrenergic blockade) and abnormalities on the ECG such as prolongation of the QT or PR intervals, blunting of T waves, depression of the ST segment, and on rare occasion, PVCs and torsades de pointes.[422,423,429,430]

Several important drug interactions are noteworthy for the phenothiazine derivatives. The effects of CNS depressants (especially narcotics and barbiturates) are enhanced by the concomitant administration of phenothiazines. In addition, the CNS seizure threshold is lowered by the administration of phenothiazines, which should be avoided in patients who are epileptic or withdrawing from any drug that depresses the CNS. Lithium carbonate is used to treat manic depression, but it is more effective in preventing mania than in relieving depression. In excitable cells, lithium mimics sodium and decreases the release of neurotransmitters both centrally and peripherally. Lithium prolongs neuromuscular blockade and may decrease anesthetic requirements because it blocks brainstem release of norepinephrine, epinephrine, and dopamine.

Psychoactive drugs such as the amphetamines (including methamphetamines, and crystal methamphetamine) and cocaine acutely release norepinephrine, epinephrine, and dopamine and block their reuptake. Taken on a long-term basis, they deplete nerve endings of these neurotransmitters.

Drugs that appear to increase central α-adrenergic release increase anesthetic requirements, whereas drugs that appear to decrease central α-adrenergic release decrease anesthetic requirements. (This may not be the mechanism by which they alter anesthetic requirements, but it is a convenient way of remembering the alteration.) Drugs that affect only the β-adrenergic receptors do not alter anesthetic requirements.

ANTIARRHYTHMIC DRUGS

Antiarrhythmic drugs include local anesthetics (lidocaine, procaine), anticonvulsant (phenytoin), β-adrenergic blocking agents, calcium channel blocking drugs, or primary antiarrhythmic drugs. These drugs are classified into five major categories: local anesthetics that alter phase 0 and phase 4 depolarization (quinidine, procainamide, and flecainide), local anesthetics that affect only phase 4 depolarization (lidocaine, mexiletine, tocainide, phenytoin, encainide), β-adrenergic receptor antagonists, antiadrenergic drugs (bretylium, disopyramide, amiodarone), and calcium entry blockers. A lack of adverse reports does not imply that all these drugs should be continued through the time of surgery.

The pharmacologic characteristics of the various antiarrhythmic drugs can affect anesthetic management. Disopyramide is similar to quinidine and procainamide in its antiarrhythmic effectiveness. Disopyramide is excreted mainly by the kidneys, but hepatic disease increases its half-life. This drug often produces anticholinergic effects, including tachycardia, urinary retention, and psychosis. Hepatitis has also been reported to have occurred after its use.[431] Little is known of the interaction of bretylium with anesthetic agents; however, since it blocks the release of catecholamines, long-term therapy with this drug has been associated with hypersensitivity to vasopressors.[431] Quinidine depends on the kidneys for excretion, can produce vagolytic effects that can decrease AV block, and is associated with blood dyscrasias and GI disturbances.[431] Most of the antiarrhythmic drugs enhance nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade. Reports have confirmed this enhancement for quinidine, phenytoin, lidocaine, procainamide, and propranolol.[432-440] No data document such an effect for depolarizing muscle relaxants. Amiodarone, an antiadrenergic drug used to treat recurrent supraventricular and ventricular tachycardia, causes thyroid dysfunction as a result of the large amount of iodine in its structure, as well as peripheral neuropathy, and has been associated with hypertension, bradyarrhythmias, and reduced cardiac output during anesthesia.[441] The drug has a half-life of 29 days, and its pharmacologic effects persist for more than 45 days after discontinuance.[442]

ANTIBIOTICS

Many antibacterial drugs are nephrotoxic or neurotoxic, or both, and many prolong neuromuscular blockade.[434-443] The only antibiotics devoid of neuromuscular effects appear to be penicillin G and the cephalosporins.[439] Most enzyme-inducing drugs do not increase the metabolism of the volatile agents. Appropriate antibiotic prophylaxis for surgery requires a knowledge of the probability of infection for that type of surgical procedure and, if the incidence of infection warrants, the use of a drug regimen directed against the most likely infecting organisms.[443]

MEDICATIONS FOR GLAUCOMA

Medications for glaucoma include two organophosphates: echothiophate and isoflurophate. These drugs inhibit serum cholinesterase, which is responsible for the hydrolysis and inactivation of succinylcholine and ester-type local anesthetics such as procaine, chloroprocaine, and tetracaine.[444,445] These ester-type local anesthetics should be avoided in patients treated with eye drops containing organophosphate. Table 32.15 lists other medications related to anesthesia and their side effects (from the National Registry for Drug-Induced Ocular Side Effects, Oregon Health Sciences University, 3181 SW Sam Jackson Park Road, Portland, OR 97201; 503-279-8456).

TABLE 32.15 Common Ophthalmologic Drugs and Their Anesthetically Important Interactions

Drug (Trade Name)	Toxicities and Specific Treatments
GLAUCOMA: PRIMARY GOAL IS TO REDUCE IOP BY Miotics and epinephrine: increase outflow of aqueous humor β-Blockade and carbonic anhydrase inhibitors: reduce production of aqueous humor Osmotic drugs: transiently decrease volume	
MIOTICS Parasympathomimetics Pilocarpine (Adsorbocarpine, Isopto Carpine, Pilocar, Pilocel) Carbachol	
ACETYLCHOLINESTERASE INHIBITORS Physostigmine Demecarium Isoflurophate (Floropryl) Echothiophate (Echodide, Phospholine)	Tox: Hypersalivation, sweating, N/V, bradycardia, hypotension, bronchospasm, CNS effects, coma, respiratory arrest, death Rx: Atropine, pralidoxime (Protopam) Ix: Succinylcholine—prolonged apnea (drugs must be discontinued 4 weeks before)
EPINEPHRINE (EPITRATE, MUROCOLL, MYTRATE, EPIFRIN, GLAUCON, EPINAL, EPPY)	Tox: (rare) Tachycardia, PVCs, HTN, headache, tremors Ix: Avoid drugs that sensitize to catecholamines (e.g., halothane)
β-BLOCKERS Timolol (Timoptic) Betaxolol (Betoptic) Levobunolol (Betagan)	Tox: β-Blockade with bradycardia, exacerbation of asthma, CNS depression, lethargy, confusion Synergy noted with systemic drugs
CARBONIC ANHYDRASE INHIBITORS Acetazolamide (Diamox) Dichlorphenamide (Daranide, Oratrol) Ethoxzolamide (Cardrase, Ethamide) Methazolamide (Neptazane)	Tox: Anorexia, GI disturbances, "general miserable feeling" and malaise, paresthesias, diuresis, hypokalemia (transient), renal colic and calculi, hyperuricemia, thrombocytopenia, aplastic anemia, acute respiratory failure in patients with COPD
OSMOTIC DRUGS Glycerin (Glyrol, Osmoglyn) Isosorbide (Ismotic) Urea (Urevert, Ureaphil) Mannitol (Osmitrol) Intraocular acetylcholine (Miochol)	Tox: Dehydration, hyperglycemia, nonketotic hyperosmolar coma (rare); fatalities with mannitol secondary to CHF or intracranial bleeding; urea may cause thrombosis Tox: Hypotension, bradycardia Rx: Atropine
MYDRIATICS AND CYCLOPLEGICS: PROVIDE PUPILLARY DILATATION AND PARALYSIS OF ACCOMMODATION Anticholinergics block muscarinic receptors; paralyzing in iris α-Adrenergics contract the dilator of the iris	
ANTICHOLINERGICS Atropine (Atropisol, Bufopto, Isopto Atropine) Cyclopentolate, alone (Cyclogyl) or with phenylephrine-homatropine (Cyclomydril) Homatropine (Homatrocel, Isopto Homatropine) Scopolamine (Isopto Hyoscine, Murocoll 19) Tropicamide (Mydriacyl)	Tox: Dry mouth, flushing, thirst, tachycardia, seizure, hyperactivity, transient psychosis, rare coma, and death Rx: Physostigmine
β-ADRENERGICS Phenylephrine (Efricel, Mydfrin, Neo-Synephrine) Hydroxyamphetamine (Paredrine)	Tox: Tachycardia, HTN, PVCs, myocardial ischemia, agitation

CHF, Congestive heart failure; *CNS,* central nervous system; *COPD,* chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; *GI,* gastrointestinal; *HTN,* hypertension; *IOP,* intraocular pressure; *Ix,* interaction; *N/V,* nausea and vomiting; *PVCs,* premature ventricular contractions; *Rx,* treatment; *Tox,* toxicity.

Modified from the National Registry for Drug-Induced Ocular Side Effects, University of Oregon Health Sciences Center, Portland, OR.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Wei JY. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;327:1735.
2. Fleisher LA, Eagle KA. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:1677.
3. Goldman L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1977;297:845.
4. Fleisher LA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;50:159.
4a. van Tilburg J, et al. *J Med Genet*. 2001;38:569.
5. Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT)/Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications Research Group. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:381.
6. U.K. Prospective. Diabetes Study Group. *BMJ*. 1998;317:703.
6a. Thrasher J. *Am J Cardiol*. 2017;120:S4.
6b. Iqbal A, et al. *Diabetes Metab J*. 2018;42:3.
7. Albacker T, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;86:20.
8. Krinsley JS. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2004;79:992.
9. Advance Collaborative Group. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:2560.
10. Van den Berghe G, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:1359.
11. Ingels C, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2006;27:2716.
12. Finney SJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2003;290:2041.
13. Krinsley JS. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2003;78:1471.
14. Freeman R. *Lancet*. 2005;365:1259.
15. Charlson ME, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1994;179:1.
16. O'Sullivan CJ, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2006;32:188.
17. Halkos ME, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;86:1431.
18. Gustafsson UO, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2009;96:1358.
19. Bhadresha S, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:1372.
20. Gandhi GY, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2007;146:233.
21. Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group. *Ann Intern Med*. 1998;128:517.
22. Ramanathan S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:105.
23. Van den Berghe G, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:449.
24. NICE-SUGAR Study Investigators, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:1108.
25. Sebranek JJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(suppl 1):i18.
26. Jacobi J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:3251.
27. Roizen MF. *RealAge: Are You as Young as You Can be?*. New York: HarperCollins; 1999.
28. Roizen MF. *The RealAge Makeover: Take Years Off Your Looks and Add Them to Your Life!*. New York: HarperCollins; 2004.
29. Roizen MF, Oz MC. *YOU: the owner's manual*. New York, 2005.
30. Khuri SF, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1997;185:315.
31. Tuomilehto J, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:1343.
31a. Joshi GP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1378.
32. Ravid M, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1998;128:982.
33. Page MM, Watkins PJ. *Lancet*. 1978;1:14.
33a. Tran TTT, et al. *Front Endocrinol (Lausanne)*. 2017;8:185.
34. Chiasson JL, et al. *CMAJ*. 2003;168:859.
34a. Fayfman M, et al. *Med Clin North Am*. 2017;101:587.
34b. Kamel KS, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2016;68:967.
35. Pasternak JJ, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2008;83:406.
36. Larsen ML, Illingworth DR. *Med Clin North Am*. 1994;78:225.
37. Downs JR, et al. *JAMA*. 1998;279:1615.
38. Fowkes FGR, et al. *BMJ*. 1998;316:1764.
38a. Rosenson RS, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;70:1290.
39. Stone NJ, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;129(25 Suppl 2):S1.
39a. Jacobson TA, et al. *J Clin Lipidol*. 2014;8:473.
40. Fleisher LA, et al. *Circulation*. 2009;120:e169.
41. Nissen SE, et al. *JAMA*. 2004;291:1071.
41a. Silber JH, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256:79.
42. Pelosi P, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1997;82:811.
42a. Bluth T, Pelosi P, de Abreu MG. *Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2016;29:421.
43. Daniels L. *Australian Prescriber*. 2003;26:136.
44. Hirose K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112:246.
45. Veterans Administration Total Parenteral Nutrition Cooperative Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325:525.
46. Nicholas JM, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2003;186:583.
47. Starker PM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1983;198:720.
47a. Elke G, et al. *Crit Care*. 2016;20:117.
47b. Liu MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:166.
48. Udelsman R, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1986;77:1377.
49. Ezzat S, et al. *Cancer*. 2004;101:613.
49a. Guerin C, et al. *Endocr Relat Cancer*. 2016;23:R131.
50. Symreng T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:949.
51. Yong SL, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;(4):CD005367.
52. Nieman LK, et al. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 1993;77:1308.
53. Dorin RI, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2003;139:194.
53a. Bornstein SR, et al. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2016;101:364–389.
53b. Marik PE. *Varon J: Arch Surg*. 2008;143:1222.
54. Bravo EL. *Endocr Rev*. 1994;15:356.
55. St John Sutton MG, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1981;56:354.
55a. Naranjo J, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1427.
55b. Lenders JW, et al. *Lancet*. 2005;366:665.
56. Prys-Roberts C. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:44.
57. Witteles RM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:302.
58. Lucon AM, et al. *J Urol*. 1997;157:1208.
59. Roizen MF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:A43.
60. Roizen MF, et al. *Surgery*. 1983;94:941.
60a. Lenders JW, et al. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2014;99:1915.
61. Allen GC, Rosenberg H. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:593.
62. Zakowski M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:875.
63. Roizen MF, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 1987;5:269.
63a. Esteve-Turrillas FA, et al. *Analyst*. 2014;139:3636.
64. Lord MS, Augoustides JG. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:526.
65. Herroeder S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:971.
66. Augoustides JG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:1022.
67. Roizen MF. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:482.
68. Stone JG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:495.
69. Mangano DT, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;335:1713.
70. Flacke JW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:11.
71. Yeager MP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:729.
72. Fleisher LA, et al. *Am Heart J*. 1991;122:980.
73. Levine JD, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1986;6:3423.
74. Wade JG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1970;282:823.
75. Ziegler MG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1977;296:293.
76. Goldstein DS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;336:696.
77. Kendrick WW, et al. *Treat Serv Bull (Ottawa)*. 1953;8:437.
77a. Martirosyan NL, et al. *Clin Neurol Neurosurg*. 2017;154:79.
78. Gronert GA, Theye RA. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43:89.
79. Feek CM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1980;302:883.
79a. Strowd SM, et al. *A A Pract*. 2018;10:97.
80. Loh KC. *Postgrad Med J*. 2000;76:133.
81. Williams M, Lo Gerfo P. *Thyroid*. 2002;12:523.
81a. Saritas A, et al. *Turk J Anaesthesiol Reanim*. 2015;43:240–245.
82. Weinberg AD, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 1983;143:893.
83. Surks MI, et al. *JAMA*. 2004;291:228.
84. Vanderpump MPJ, et al. *Clin Endocrinol*. 1995;43:55.
85. Hattori H, et al. *Acta Otolaryngol Suppl*. 2003;550:59.
85a. Mathew V, et al. *J Thyroid Res*. 2011;2011:462.
86. Stewart AF. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:373.
87. Peacock M, et al. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2005;90:135.
88. Lind L, Ljunghall S. *Exp Clin Endocrinol*. 1994;102:409.
89. Kebebew E, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138:867.
90. Oltmann SC, et al. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2013;20:4195.
91. Carling T, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2006;141:401.
92. Allain TJ, Dhesi J. *Gerontology*. 2003;49:273.
93. Hong JC, et al. *Surgery*. 2011;150:1069.
94. Blanchard C, et al. *Eur J Endocrinol*. 2013;169:665.
94a. Minisola S, et al. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h2723.
94b. Basok AB, et al. *BMJ Case Rep*. 2018;2018.
95. Rumancik WM, et al. *JAMA*. 1978;240:366.
96. Moyad MA. *Urol Clin North Am*. 2004;31:321.
97. Cauley JA, et al. *JAMA*. 2003;290:1729.
98. Keller MI. *Cleve Clin J Med*. 2004;71:829.
99. Katznelson L, et al. *Endocr Pract*. 2011;17:636.
100. Rojiani AM, et al. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol*. 1987;46:495.
100a. Matsuzaki S, et al. *BMC Pregnancy Childbirth*. 2017;17:188.
101. Ayus JC, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1992;117:891.
102. Robertson GL. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am*. 1995;24:549.
103. Weksler N, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2003;15:179.
104. Aronson S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1079.
105. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:58.
106. Wax DB, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:927.
107. Prys-Roberts C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1971;43:122.
108. Goldman L, Caldera DL. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:285.
109. Mangano DT, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;323:1781.
110. Pasternack PF, et al. *Am J Surg*. 1989;158:113.
110a. Futier E, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;318:1346.
110aa. Sessler DI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:317–327.
111. POISE Study Group, et al. *Lancet*. 2008;371:1839.
112. Coriat P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:299.
113. Bertrand M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:26.
114. Kheterpal S, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2008;22:180.
115. Turan A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:552.

116. London MJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:1.
117. Fleisher LA, et al. *Circulation*. 2007;116:e418.
118. Duceppe E, et al. *Can J Cardiol*. 2017;33:17.
119. Fleisher LA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014.
120. Kristensen SD, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2014.
121. Posner KL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:553.
122. Godet G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:739.
123. McFalls EO, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:2795.
124. Ward HB, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:795; discussion 800.
125. Poldermans D, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2006;48:964.
126. Poldermans D, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;49:1763.
127. Back MR, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2002;36:526.
128. Kaluza GL, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2000;35:1288.
129. Wilson SH, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2003;42:234.
130. Vicenzi MN, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:686.
131. Leibowitz D, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2006;97:1188.
132. Nasser M, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2005;65:516.
133. Schouten O, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;49:122.
134. Berger PB, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Interv*. 2010;3:920.
135. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Circulation*. 2012;126:1355.
136. Hawn MT, et al. *JAMA*. 2013;310:1462.
136a. Levine GN, et al. *Circulation*. 2016;134:e123.
136b. Albaladejo P, et al. *Heart*. 2011;97:1566.
137. Shah KB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:240.
138. Hammill BG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:559.
139. McEnroe CS, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1990;11:497.
140. Mantha S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:422.
141. Flu WJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:1316.
142. Smith JS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:846.
143. Riles TS, et al. *Surgery*. 1979;85:249.
144. Materson BJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328:914.
145. Goldman L, et al. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 1978;57:357.
146. Charlson ME, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1990;212:66.
147. Frank SM, et al. *JAMA*. 1997;277:1127.
148. Erikssen G, et al. *J Intern Med*. 1993;234:493.
149. Nelson AH, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1993;21:860.
150. Eagle KA, Boucher CA. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;321:1330.
151. Lette J, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1989;64:276.
152. Kennedy JW, et al. *Circulation*. 1981;63:793.
153. Detsky AS, et al. *J Gen Intern Med*. 1986;1:211.
154. Gerson MC, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1985;103:832.
155. Higgins TL, et al. *JAMA*. 1992;267:2344.
156. Rivers SP, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1990;11:70; discussion 76.
157. Berlauk JF, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1991;214:289.
158. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Pulmonary Artery Catheterization. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:380.
159. Eagle KA, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1989;110:859.
160. Boucher CA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1985;312:389.
161. Santos AL, Gelperin A. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1975;23:42.
162. Raby KE, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;321:1296.
163. Fletcher JP, et al. *J Cardiovasc Surg*. 1988;29:666.
164. Lee TH, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;100:1043.
165. Hoeks SE, et al. *Am J Med*. 2009;122:559.
166. Cohen ME, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;217:336.
167. Gupta PK, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;124:381.
167a. Mangano DT, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;335:1713.
167b. Poldermans D, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;341:1789.
167c. Juul AB, et al. *BMJ*. 2006;332:1482.
167d. Lindenauer PK, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353:349–361.
167e. Yang H, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2006;152:983–990.
167f. Devereaux PJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2008;371:1839.
167g. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014.
167h. Wallace AW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:794.
168. Ellis JE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:S85.
169. Naylor CD, et al. *JAMA*. 1993;269:2407.
169a. Devereaux PJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014.
169b. Devereaux PJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014.
169c. Durazzo AE, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2004;39:967.
169d. Le Manach Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1326; table of contents.
169e. Lee SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:288–306.
169f. Roshanov PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:16.
170. Carson JL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365:2453.
171. Hollinger I. In: Katz R, Steward D, eds. *Anesthesia and Uncommon Pediatric Diseases*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1993:93.
172. Nishimura RA, et al. *Circulation*. 2008;118:887.
173. Katholi RE, et al. *Am Heart J*. 1976;92:162.
174. Bonow RO, et al. *Circulation*. 1998;98:1949.
175. Ezekowitz MD. *J Heart Valve Dis*. 2002;11(suppl 1):S56.
176. Bonow RO, et al. *Circulation*. 2006;114:e84.
176a. Nishimura RA, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;129:2440.
177. Vandermeulen EP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:1165.
178. Rao TLK, El-Etr AA. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:618.
179. Frame JN, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1989;111:946.
180. Waldman SD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:267.
181. Bargon HC, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1987;6:144.
182. Onishchuk JL, Carlsson C. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:1221.
183. Horlocker TT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:631.
184. Macdonald R. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66(1).
185. Amrein PC, et al. *JAMA*. 1981;245:1825.
186. Horlocker TT, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2003;28:172.
187. International Multicentre Trial. *Lancet*. 1975;2:45.
187a. Gordon RJ, Lombard FW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:403.
188. Consensus Conference. *JAMA*. 1988;256:744.
189. Collins R, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1988;318:1162.
190. Gallus A, et al. *Br J Surg*. 1983;70:17.
190a. MacLean S. *Chest*. 2012;141:e1S.
191. Lutz DJ, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1978;131:460.
192. Gauss A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:679.
193. Ruskin JN. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324:1660.
194. Kelly JS, Royster RL. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:229.
195. Risk SC, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:275.
196. Prystowsky EN. *Curr Probl Cardiol*. 1988;13:225.
197. McAnulty JH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;307:137.
198. Rose MR, Koski G. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:A146.
198a. Fisher BW, et al. *Am J Med*. 2002;112:219.
199. Anthonisen NR, et al. *JAMA*. 1994;272:1497.
200. European Respiratory Society. *Eur Respir J*. 1995;8:1398.
201. Holleman Jr DR, Simel DL. *JAMA*. 1995;273:313.
202. Lacasse Y, et al. *Chest*. 1997;111:1077.
203. Saint S, et al. *JAMA*. 1995;273:957.
204. Thompson WH, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1996;154:407.
205. NAEP Expert Panel Report 2. *Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma*. Public Health Service. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services publication no. 97-4051A; 1997. http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/nhlbi/nhlbi.htm/. (Accessed 12.06.14.).
206. Sin DD, et al. *JAMA*. 2004;292:367.
207. Tilles SA. *Med Clin North Am*. 2006;90:61.
208. Dompeling E, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1993;118:770.
209. Calligaro KD, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1993;18:914.
210. Skolnick ET, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1144.
211. Rodgers A, et al. *BMJ*. 2000;321:1493.
212. Stein M, Cassara EL. *JAMA*. 1970;211:787.
213. Khan MA, Hussain SF. *J Ayub Med Coll Abbottabad*. 2005;17:82.
214. Rock P, Passannante A. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2004;22:77.
215. Qaseem A, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;144:575.
216. Smetana GW, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;144:581.
217. Collins CD, et al. *BMJ*. 1968;1:401.
218. Hulzebos EH, et al. *JAMA*. 2006;296:1851.
219. Warner MA, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1989;64:609.
220. Robinson K, et al. *Br Heart J*. 1989;62:16.
221. Ernst E, Matrai A. *Atherosclerosis*. 1987;64:75.
222. Bluman LG, et al. *Chest*. 1998;113:883.
223. Nakagawa M, et al. *Chest*. 2001;120:705.
224. Wong J, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59:268.
225. Wong J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:755.
226. Lee SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:605.
227. McCreanor J, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357:2348.
228. Downs SH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357:2338.
229. Celli BR, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1984;130:12.
230. Bartlett RH, et al. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1973;137:925.
231. Lyager S, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1979;23:312.
232. Neuman MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:72.
233. Elwood T, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:277.
234. Boushy SF, et al. *Chest*. 1971;59:383.
235. Mittman C. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1961;84:197.
236. Reichel J. *Chest*. 1972;62:570.
237. Wong DH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:276.
238. Arozullah AM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2000;232:242.
239. Arozullah AM, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2001;135:847.
240. Matthay RA, et al. *Med Clin North Am*. 1990;74:571.

241. Fedullo PF, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:1465.
242. Galie N, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353:2148.
243. Domino KB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:428.
244. Settipane GA, Dudupakkam RK. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 1975;56:215.
245. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Cancer statistics for the United States. www.cdc.gov/nchs/products/pubs/pubd/hus/trendtables.htm. 2014 (Accessed 12.06.14.).
246. Aisner J. *J Clin Oncol*. 1996;14:658.
247. Cooper JAD. *Clin Chest Med*. 1990;11:1.
248. Levy JH, et al. *Spine*. 1986;11:282.
249. Kemp SF, Lockey RF. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2002;110:341.
249a. Freundlich RE, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;35:415.
250. Smith PL, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1980;66:1072.
251. Delage C, Irey NS. *J Forensic Sci*. 1972;17:525.
252. Bettman MA. *N Engl J Med*. 1987;317:891.
253. Roizen MF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:331.
254. Mertes PM, Laxenaire MC. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2002;19:240.
255. Lieberman P. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2002;110(suppl):S64.
256. Rosow CE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:93.
257. Millbern SM, Bell SD. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:56.
258. Halevy S, et al. *Klin Wochenschr*. 1982;60:1021.
258a. Kannan JA, Bernstein JA. *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am*. 2015;35:321.
259. Toogood JH. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 1988;81:1.
260. Van Arsdel Jr PP, Larson EB. *Ann Intern Med*. 1989;110:304.
260a. MacBeth LS, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;34:385.
261. Heyland DK, et al. *JAMA*. 2001;286:944.
261a. Lytvyn L, et al. *J Hosp Infect*. 2016;92:130.
261b. Sawh SC, et al. *PeerJ*. 2016;4:e2429.
261c. Cook DJ, et al. *Trials*. 2016;17:377.
262. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 2003;45:57.
262a. Perks A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:562.
262b. Bhattacharya B, Maung AA. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2016;34:747.
263. Roberts R. *Curr Opin Neurol*. 1998;11:135.
264. Shaner DM, et al. *Neurology*. 1988;38:202.
265. Schuchat A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:970.
266. Mets B. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:557.
267. Muzzi DA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:322.
268. Parkinson Study Group. *Ann Neurol*. 1996;39:37.
269. Goetz CG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;320:337.
270. Wiklund RA, Ngai SH. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:545.
270a. Akbar U, et al. *Expert Rev Neurother*. 2017;17:301.
271. Barry PP, Moskowitz MA. *Arch Intern Med*. 1988;148:1914.
272. Skoog I, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328:153.
273. Petersen RC, et al. *Arch Neurol*. 1999;56:303.
274. Ross GW, et al. *JAMA*. 1997;277:800.
274a. Alzheimer's A. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2013;9:208.
275. Snowdon DA, et al. *JAMA*. 1997;277:813.
276. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 2001;43:53.
277. Jones PM, Soderman RM. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:201.
278. Xie Z, Tanzi RE. *Exp Gerontol*. 2006;41:346.
278a. Berger M, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28:1609.
279. Eckenhoff RG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:703.
280. Wei H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:251.
281. Zhang B, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2008;283:11866.
282. Hemmelgarn B, et al. *JAMA*. 1997;278:27.
283. Mozkowitz MA. *Neurol Clin*. 1990;8:801.
284. Michel P, et al. *Cephalagia*. 1993;12:54.
285. MacIntyre PD, et al. *Circulation*. 1993;87:401.
286. Shadick NA, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1994;121:560.
287. Ferguson RJ, Caplan LR. *Neurol Clin*. 1985;3:373.
288. Ovassapian A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:370.
289. Rudick RA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:1604.
289a. Makris A, et al. *J Anesth*. 2014;28:267.
290. Wipfli M, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2013;25:409.
291. Kocabas S, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2007;19:299.
292. McKhann GM, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 1988;23:347.
292a. Moran S, et al. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2015;95:417.
293. Toh B-H, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:1441.
294. Jensen NF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:591.
295. Kantor G, Rolbin SH. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:282.
296. Meissner PN, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:60.
297. McNeill MJ, Bennet A. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:371.
297a. Bissell DM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:862.
298. Massey JM. *Neurology*. 1997;48:S46.
299. d'Empaire G, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1985;89:592.
300. Eisenkraft JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:760.
301. Eisenkraft JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:79.
302. Sungur Ulke Z, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2013;57:745.
302a. Chigurupati K, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32:325.
303. Small S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:142.
303a. Weingarten TN, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2014;26:648.
304. Lema G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:373.
305. Ashwood EM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:579.
306. Gutmann DH, Fischbeck KH. *Ann Neurol*. 1989;26:189.
307. Smith CL, Bush GH. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:1113.
307a. Katz JA, Murphy GS. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30:435.
307b. Litman RS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:159.
308. Pueschel SM, Scola FH. *Pediatrics*. 1987;80:55.
309. Morray JP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:221.
310. Roizen NJ, Patterson D. *Lancet*. 2003;361:1281.
311. Freeman SB, et al. *Am J Med Genet*. 1998;80:213.
312. Kobel M, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1982;29:593.
313. Bedford RF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:430.
314. Treatment guideline. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 2003;11:69.
315. Byrick RJ, Rose DK. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:457.
316. Berns AS. *Kidney Int*. 1989;36:730.
317. Myers BD, Moran SM. *N Engl J Med*. 1986;314:97.
318. Thadhani R, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;334:1448.
319. Hebert PC, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;340:409.
320. Koch CG, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:13.
321. Coe FL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;327:1141.
321a. Mazer CD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:2133.
321b. Kanda H, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:2251.
322. Kellen M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:134.
323. Novis BK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:143.
324. Lee TH, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;100:1043.
325. Mangano CM, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1998;128:194.
325a. McKinlay J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(suppl 1):85.
326. Petroni KC, Cohen NH. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1288.
327. Myers BD, et al. *Kidney Int*. 1988;33:590.
328. Bennett WM, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 1983;3:155.
329. Bennett WM, et al. *Drug Prescribing in Renal Failure: Dosing Guidelines for Adults*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: American College of Physicians; 1991.
330. Goyal P, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2002;30:584.
331. Appel GB, Neu HC. *N Engl J Med*. 1977;296(663):722–784.
332. Rackow EC, Astiz ME. *JAMA*. 1991;266:548.
333. Knaus WA, Wagner DP. *Crit Care Clin*. 1989;5:522.
334. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 2004;46:13.
335. Nichol KL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357:1373.
335a. Dasta J, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2015;30:1072.
336. Sterns RH. *Ann Intern Med*. 1987;107:656.
337. Surawicz B. *Am Heart J*. 1967;73:814.
338. Rimmer JM, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 1987;147:867.
339. Busch EH, et al. *South Med J*. 1987;80:1450.
340. Don BR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;322:1290.
340a. Singla M, et al. *Am J Ther*. 2016;23:e1102.
340b. Saginur M, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12:3152.
341. Kharasch ED, Bowdle TA. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:216.
342. Allon M, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1989;110:426.
343. Wong KC, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1977;24:203.
344. Lawson DH. *Q J Med*. 1974;43:433.
345. Vitez TS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:130.
346. Hirsch IA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:131.
347. Olson RP, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:553.
348. Schow AJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:19.
349. Wahr JA, et al. *JAMA*. 1999;281:2203.
350. Cohen JD, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1987;60:548.
351. Holland OB, et al. *Am J Med*. 1981;70:762.
352. Kornbluth A, Sachar DB. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 1997;92:204.
353. Kahrilas PJ. *JAMA*. 1996;276:983.
354. Kurz A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;334:1209.
355. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 2001;43:92.
356. Jain NK, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1987;107:824.
357. Gorbach SL. *Rev Infect Dis*. 1991;13(suppl 10):S815.
358. Peterson WJ. *West J Med*. 1990;152:167.
358a. Castillo J, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32:1023.
359. Botero M, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14:57.
360. Veall GRQ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:335.

361. Longnecker M, Roizen MF. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 1987;5:313.
362. Weingarten TN, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1192.
363. Marsh HM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:89.
364. Watson JT, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:798.
365. McCrirrick A, Hickman J. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38:339.
366. Quinlivan JK, Roberts WA. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:400.
367. Dilger JA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:318.
368. Zimmer C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1007.
369. Drossman DA, et al. *Gastroenterology*. 1988;95:701.
370. Bunn HF. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:762.
371. Adams RJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;339:5.
372. Platt OS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325:11.
373. Vichinsky EP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333:206.
374. Turhan A, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99:3047.
375. Dunn A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1987;34:67.
376. Hemming AE. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:663.
377. Messent M. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:666.
378. Kark JA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1987;317:781.
379. Bischoff RJ, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1988;207:434.
379a. Howard J, et al. *Lancet*. 2013;381:930.
379b. DeBaun MR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371:699.
379c. Iughetti L, et al. *World J Clin Pediatr*. 2016;5:25.
380. Tuck SM, et al. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol*. 1987;94:121.
381. Ould Amar K, et al. *Transfus Clin Biol*. 2013;20:30.
382. Beutler E. *JAMA*. 1988;259:2433.
383. Orr D. *Br J Anaesth*. 1967;39:585.
384. Pootrakul P, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1981;304:1470.
385. Lux SE, Wolfe LC. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1980;27:463.
385a. Ngouleun W, et al. *Int J Mycobacteriol*. 2016;5:482.
386. Engelfriet CP, et al. *Semin Hematol*. 1992;29:3.
387. Schilling RF. *JAMA*. 1986;255:1605.
388. Beebe DS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:1144.
389. Goodnough LT, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;321:1163.
389a. Liebman HA, Weitz IC. *Med Clin North Am*. 2017;101:351.
390. Quesenberg PJ, et al. Hematology. In: *American College of Physicians, Editor: Medical Knowledge Self-Assessment*. Philadelphia: American College of Physicians; 1991:374.
391. Tobias JD, Furman WL. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:536.
392. Alavi JB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1977;296:706.
393. Gabrilove JL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1988;318:1414.
394. Quie PG. *Rev Infect Dis*. 1987;9:189.
395. Crawford SW, Fisher L. *Chest*. 1992;101:1257.
396. McCrae KR, et al. *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program*. 2001;282.
397. Kelton JG. *Ann Intern Med*. 1983;99:796.
398. Douzinas EE, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1992;20:57.
398a. Sadler JE. *Blood*. 2017;130:1181.
398b. Tanhehco YC, et al. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2017;24:521.
398c. Krzych LJ, et al. *Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther*. 2015;47:63.
398d. East JM, et al. *Chest*. 2018;154:678–690.
399. Lewis BE, et al. *Circulation*. 2001;103:1838.
400. Bauer KA. *Ann Intern Med*. 2001;135:367.
401. Levine JS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346:752.
402. Evans BE. *Mt Sinai J Med*. 1977;44:409.
403. Zauber NP, Levin J. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 1977;56:213.
404. Brettler DB, Levine PH. *Blood*. 1989;73:2067.
405. Lee KF, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1988;95:216.
406. Dickman CA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:947.
407. Wademan BH, Galvin SD. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2014;18:360.
408. Brigden ML, Barnett JB. *West J Med*. 1987;146:580.
409. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 1997;39:21.
410. Bishop JM. *Cell*. 1991;64:235.
411. Chung F. *Can J Anaesth*. 1982;29:364.
412. Norwegian Multicenter Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1981;304:801.
413. Frishman WH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1984;310:830.
414. Bloor BC, Flacke WE. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:741.
415. Weinger MB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:242.
416. Maze M, Tranquilli W. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:581.
417. Segal IS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:220.
418. Pandharipande PP, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;298:2644.
419. Katz AM. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328:1244.
420. Merin RG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:140.
421. Kapur PA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:122.
422. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 1993;35:65.
423. Huyse FJ, et al. *Psychosomatics*. 2006;47:8.
424. Michaels I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:1014.
425. Evans-Prosser CDG. *Br J Anaesth*. 1968;40:279.
426. Roizen MF. *J Clin Anesth*. 1990;2:293.
427. Noble WH, Baker A. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:1061.
428. Hirshman CA, Linderman KS. *JAMA*. 1989;261:3407.
429. Veith RC, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;306:954.
430. Richelson E, El-Fakahany E. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1982;57:576.
431. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 1996;38:75.
432. Harrah MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;33:406.
433. Telivuo L, Katz RL. *Anaesthesia*. 1970;25:30.
434. Miller RD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1967;28:1036.
435. Pittinger CB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49:487.
436. Singh YN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;48:418.
437. Pittinger CB, Adamson R. *Annu Rev Pharmacol*. 1972;12:169.
438. Becker LD, Miller RD. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;45:84.
439. Snavely SR, Hodges GR. *Ann Intern Med*. 1984;101:92.
440. McIndewar IC, Marshall RJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:785.
441. Navalgund AA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:414.
442. Kannan R, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1982;31:438.
443. *Med Lett Drugs Ther Guidelines*. 2004;20:27.
444. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 1982;24:53.
445. *The Medical Letter Handbook of Adverse Drug Interactions*. Medical Letter; 2003.
446. American Diabetes Association. *Diabetes Care*. 2013;36(suppl 1):S11.
447. Handelsman Y, et al. *Endocr Pract*. 2011;17(suppl 2):1.
448. Dellinger RP, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2013;39:165.
449. Qaseem A, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2011;154:260.
450. Vaquerizo Alonso C, et al. *Nutr Hosp*. 2011;26(suppl 2):46.
451. Societe francaise d'anesthesie et de reanimation, Societe de reanimation de langue francaise. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2009;28:410.
452. Lazar HL, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;87:663.

References

1. Wei JY. Age and the cardiovascular system. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;327:1735.
2. Fleisher LA, Eagle KA. Clinical practice: lowering cardiac risk in noncardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:1677.
3. Goldman L, Caldera DL, Nussbaum SR, et al. Multifactorial index of cardiac risk in noncardiac surgical procedures. *N Engl J Med*. 1977;297:845.
4. Fleisher LA, Beckman JA, Brown KA, et al. ACC/AHA 2007 guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and care for noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to Revise the 2002 Guidelines on Perioperative Cardiovascular Evaluation for Noncardiac Surgery). *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;50:159–211.

4a. van Tilburg J, van Haeften TW, Pearson P, Wijmenga C. Defining the genetic contribution of type 2 diabetes mellitus. *J Med Genet*. 2001;38:569–578.

5. Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT)/Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications Research Group: retinopathy and nephropathy in patients with type I diabetes four years after a trial of intensive therapy. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:381–389.
6. U.K. Prospective Diabetes Study Group. Tight blood pressure control and risk of macrovascular and microvascular complications in type II diabetes. *BMJ*. 1998;317:703–713.

6a. Thrasher J. Pharmacologic management of type 2 diabetes mellitus: available therapies. *Am J Cardiol*. 2017;120:S4–S16.

6b. Iqbal A, Novodvorsky P, Heller SR. Recent updates on type 1 diabetes mellitus management for clinicians. *Diabetes Metab J*. 2018;42:3–18.

7. Albacker T, Carvalho G, Schricker T, et al. High-dose insulin therapy attenuates systemic inflammation response in coronary artery bypass grafting patients. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;86:20–27.
8. Krinsley JS. Effect of an intensive glucose management protocol on the mortality of critically ill adult patients. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2004;79:992–1000.
9. Advance Collaborative Group. Intensive broad glucose control and vascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:2560–2572.
10. Van den Berghe G, Wouters P, Weekers F, et al. Intensive insulin therapy in critically ill patients. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:1359–1367.
11. Ingels C, Debaveye Y, Milants I, et al. Strict blood glucose control with insulin after cardiac surgery: impact on 4-year survival, depending on medical care, and quality of life. *Eur Heart J*. 2006;27:2716–2724.
12. Finney SJ, Zekveld C, Elia A, Evans TW. Glucose control and mortality in critically ill patients. *JAMA*. 2003;290:2041–2047.
13. Krinsley JS. Association between hyperglycemia and increased hospital mortality in a heterogeneous population of critically ill patients. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2003;78:1471–1478.
14. Freeman R. Autonomic peripheral neuropathy. *Lancet*. 2005;365:1259–1270.
15. Charlson ME, MacKenzie CR, Gold JP. Preoperative autonomic function abnormalities in patients with diabetes mellitus and patients with hypertension. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1994;179:1.
16. O'Sullivan CJ, Hynes N, Mahendran B, et al. Haemoglobin A1c (HbA1C) in non-diabetic and diabetic vascular patients: is HbA1C an independent risk factor and predictor of adverse outcome? *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2006;32:188–197.
17. Halkos ME, Lattouf OM, Puskas JD, et al. Elevated preoperative hemoglobin A1c level is associated with reduced long-term survival after coronary artery bypass surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;86:1431–1437.
18. Gustafsson UO, Thorell A, Soop M, et al. Haemoglobin A1c as a predictor of postoperative hyperglycaemia and complications after major colorectal surgery. *Br J Surg*. 2009;96:1358–1364.
19. Bhadresha S, Leyden KM, Ellis SL. World Health Organisation checklist and glycaemic control. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:1372.
20. Gandhi GY, Nuttall GA, Abel MA, et al. Intensive intraoperative insulin therapy versus conventional glucose management during cardiac surgery: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 2007;146:233–243.
21. Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group. Effect of intensive therapy on residual beta-cell function in patients with type 1 diabetes in the diabetes control and complications trial: a randomized, controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 1998;128:517.
22. Ramanathan S, Khoo P, Arismendy J. Perioperative maternal and neonatal acid-base status and glucose metabolism in patients with insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:105.
23. Van den Berghe G, Wilmer A, Hermans G, et al. Intensive insulin therapy in the medical ICU. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:449–461.
24. NICE-SUGAR Study Investigators, Finfer S, Liu B, et al. Hypoglycemia and risk of death in critically ill patients. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:1108–1118.
25. Sebranek JJ, Lugli AK, Coursin DB. Glycaemic control in the perioperative period. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(suppl 1). i18–34.
26. Jacobi J, Bircher N, Krinsley J, et al. Guidelines for the use of an insulin infusion for the management of hyperglycemia in critically ill patients. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:3251–3276.
27. Roizen MF. *RealAge: Are You as Young as You Can be?*. New York: HarperCollins; 1999.
28. Roizen MF. *The Realage Makeover: Take Years Off Your Looks and Add Them to Your Life!*. New York: HarperCollins; 2004.
29. Roizen MF, Oz MC. *YOU: The Owner's Manual*. New York: HarperCollins; 2005.
30. Khuri SF, Daley J, Henderson W, et al. Risk adjustment of the postoperative mortality rate for the comparative assessment of the quality of surgical care: results of the National Veterans Affairs Surgical Risk Study. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1997;185:315.
31. Tuomilehto J, Lindstrom J, Eriksson JG, et al. Prevention of type 2 diabetes mellitus by changes in lifestyle among subjects with impaired glucose tolerance. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:1343–1350.

31a. Joshi GP, Chung F, Vann MA, et al. Society for Ambulatory Anesthesia consensus statement on perioperative blood glucose management in diabetic patients undergoing ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1378–1387.

32. Ravid M, Brosh D, Levi Z, et al. Use of enalapril to attenuate decline in renal function in normotensive, normoalbuminuric patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a randomized, controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 1998;128:982.
33. Page MM, Watkins PJ. Cardiorespiratory arrest and diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *Lancet*. 1978;1(14).

33a. Tran TTT, Pease A, Wood AJ, et al. Corrigendum: review of evidence for adult diabetic ketoacidosis management protocols. *Front Endocrinol (Lausanne)*. 2017;8:185.

34. Chiasson JL, Aris-Jilwan N, Belanger R, et al. Diagnosis and treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis and the hyperglycemic hyperosmolar state. *CMAJ*. 2003;168:859–866.

34a. Fayfman M, Pasquel FJ, Umpierrez GE. Management of hyperglycemic crises: diabetic ketoacidosis and hyperglycemic hyperosmolar state. *Med Clin North Am*. 2017;101:587–606.

34b. Kamel KS, Schreiber M, Carlotti AP, Halperin ML. Approach to the treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2016;68:967–972.

35. Pasternak JJ, McGregor DG, Schroeder DR, et al. Hypoglycemia in patients undergoing cerebral aneurysm surgery: its association with long-term gross neurologic and neuropsychological function. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2008;83:406–417.
36. Larsen ML, Illingworth DR. Drug treatment of dyslipoproteinemia. *Med Clin North Am*. 1994;78:225.
37. Downs JR, Clearfield M, Weis S, et al. Primary prevention of acute coronary events with lovastatin in men and women with average cholesterol levels: results of AFCAPS/TexCAPS. *JAMA*. 1998;279:1615.
38. Fowkes FGR, Price JF, Leng GC. Targeting subclinical atherosclerosis. *BMJ*. 1998;316:1764.

38a. Rosenson RS, Baker S, Banach M, et al. Optimizing cholesterol treatment in patients with muscle complaints. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;70:1290–1301.

39. Stone NJ, Robinson J, Lichtenstein AH, et al. 2013 ACC/AHA guideline on the treatment of blood cholesterol to reduce atherosclerotic cardiovascular risk in adults: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;129(25 suppl 2):S1.

39a. Jacobson TA, Ito MK, Maki KC, et al. National Lipid Association recommendations for patient-centered management of dyslipidemia: part 1 - executive summary. *J Clin Lipidol*. 2014;8:473–488.

40. Fleisher LA, Beckman JA, Brown KA, et al. 2009 ACCF/AHA focused update on perioperative beta blockade incorporated into the ACC/AHA 2007 guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and care for noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*. 2009;120:e169–e276.
41. Nissen SE, Tazcu EM, Schoenhagen P, et al. Effect of intensive compared with moderate lipid-lowering therapy on progression of coronary atherosclerosis. A randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2004;291:1071–1080.
41a. Silber JH, Rosenbaum PR, Kelz RR, et al. Medical and financial risks associated with surgery in the elderly obese. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256:79–86.
42. Pelosi P, Croci M, Ravagnan I, et al. Respiratory system mechanics in sedated, paralyzed, morbidly obese patients. *J Appl Physiol*. 1997;82:811–818.
42a. Bluth T, Pelosi P, de Abreu MG. The obese patient undergoing nonbariatric surgery. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2016;29:421–429.
43. Daniels L. Good nutrition for good surgery: clinical and quality of life outcomes. *Australian Prescriber*. 2003;26:136–140.
44. Hirose K, Hirose M, Tanaka K, et al. Perioperative management of severe anorexia nervosa. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112:246–254.
45. Veterans Administration Total Parenteral Nutrition Cooperative Study Group. Perioperative total parenteral nutrition in surgical patients. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325:525.
46. Nicholas JM, Cornelius MW, Tchorz KM, et al. A two institution experience with 226 endoscopically placed jejunal feeding tubes in critically ill surgical patients. *Am J Surg*. 2003;186:583–590.
47. Starker PM, La Sala PA, Askanazi J, et al. The responses to TPN, a form of nutritional assessment. *Ann Surg*. 1983;198:720.
47a. Elke G, van Zanten AR, Lemieux M, et al. Enteral versus parenteral nutrition in critically ill patients: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Crit Care*. 2016;20:117.
47b. Liu MM, Reidy AB, Saatee S, Collard CD. Perioperative steroid management: approaches based on current evidence. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:166–172.
48. Udelsman R, Ramp J, Gallucci WT, et al. Adaptation during surgical stress: a reevaluation of the role of glucocorticoids. *J Clin Invest*. 1986;77:1377.
49. Ezzat S, Asa SL, Couldwell WT, et al. The prevalence of pituitary adenomas: a systematic review. *Cancer*. 2004;101:613–619.
49a. Guerin C, Taieb D, Treglia G, et al. Bilateral adrenalectomy in the 21st century: when to use it for hypercortisolism? *Endocr Relat Cancer*. 2016;23:R131–R142.
50. Symreng T, Karlberg BE, Kågedal B, et al. Physiological cortisol substitution of long-term steroid-treated patients undergoing major surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:949.
51. Yong SL, Marik P, Esposito M, Coulthard P. Supplemental perioperative steroids for surgical patients with adrenal insufficiency. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;4:CD005367.
52. Nieman LK, Oldfield EH, Wesley R, et al. A simplified morning corticotrophin-releasing hormone stimulation test for the differential diagnosis of adrenocorticotrophin-dependent Cushing's syndrome. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 1993;77:1308.
53. Dorin RI, Qualls CR, Crapo LM. Diagnosis of adrenal insufficiency. *Ann Intern Med*. 2003;139:194–204.
53a. Bornstein SR, Allolio B, Arlt W, et al. Diagnosis and treatment of primary adrenal insufficiency: an endocrine society clinical practice guideline. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2016;101:364–389.
53b. Marik PE, Varon J. Requirement of perioperative stress doses of corticosteroids: a systematic review of the literature. *Arch Surg*. 2008;143:1222–1226.
54. Bravo EL. Evolving concepts in the pathophysiology, diagnosis and treatment of pheochromocytoma. *Endocr Rev*. 1994;15:356.
55. St John Sutton MG, Sheps SG, Lie JT. Prevalence of clinically unsuspected pheochromocytoma: review of a 50-year autopsy series. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1981;56:354.
55a. Naranjo J, Dodd S, Martin YN. Perioperative management of pheochromocytoma. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1427–1439.
55b. Lenders JW, Eisenhofer G, Mannelli M, Pacak K. Phaeochromocytoma. *Lancet*. 2005;366:665–675.
56. Prys-Roberts C. Phaeochromocytoma: recent progress in its management. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:44–57.
57. Witteles RM, Kaplan EL, Roizen MF. Safe and cost-effective preoperative preparation of patients with pheochromocytoma. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:302–304.
58. Lucon AM, Pereira MAA, Mendonça BB, et al. Pheochromocytoma: study of 50 cases. *J Urol*. 1997;157:1208.
59. Roizen MF, Horrigan RW, Koike M, et al. A prospective randomized trial of four anesthetic techniques for resection of pheochromocytoma [abstract]. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;57:A43.
60. Roizen MF, Hunt TK, Beaupre PN, et al. The effect of alpha-adrenergic blockade on cardiac performance and tissue oxygen delivery during excision of pheochromocytoma. *Surgery*. 1983;94:941.
60a. Lenders JW, Duh QY, Eisenhofer G, et al. Pheochromocytoma and paraganglioma: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2014;99:1915–1942.
61. Allen GC, Rosenberg H. Pheochromocytoma presenting as acute malignant hyperthermia: a diagnostic challenge. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:593.
62. Zakowski M, Kaufman B, Berguson P, et al. Esmolol use during resection of pheochromocytoma: report of three cases. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:875.
63. Roizen MF, Schreider BD, Hassan SZ. Anesthetic for patients with pheochromocytoma. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 1987;5:269.
63a. Esteve-Turrillas FA, Mercader JV, Agullo C, Marzo J, Abad-Somovilla A, Abad-Fuentes A. Design and development of heterologous competitive immunoassays for the determination of boscalid residues. *Analyst*. 2014;139:3636–3644.
64. Lord MS, Augoustides JG. Perioperative management of pheochromocytoma: focus on magnesium, clevidipine, and vasopressin. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:526–531.
65. Herroeder S, Schonherr ME, De Hert SG, Hollmann MW. Magnesium: essentials for anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:971–993.
66. Augoustides JG, Abrams M, Berkowitz D, Fraker D. Vasopressin for hemodynamic rescue in catecholamine-resistant vasoplegic shock after resection of massive pheochromocytoma. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:1022–1024.
67. Roizen MF. Should we all have a sympathectomy at birth? Or at least preoperatively? *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:482.
68. Stone JG, Foëx P, Sear JW, et al. Myocardial ischemia in untreated hypertensive patients: effect of a single small oral dose of a beta-adrenergic blocking agent. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:495.
69. Mangano DT, Layug EL, Wallace A, et al. Effect of atenolol on mortality and cardiovascular morbidity after noncardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;335:1713.
70. Flacke JW, Bloor BC, Flacke WE, et al. Reduced narcotic requirement by clonidine with improved hemodynamic and adrenergic stability in patients undergoing coronary bypass surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:11.
71. Yeager MP, Glass DD, Neff RK, Brinck-Johnsen T. Epidural anesthesia and analgesia in high-risk surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:729.
72. Fleisher LA, Rosenbaum SH, Nelson AH, Barash PG. The predictive value of preoperative silent ischemia for postoperative ischemic cardiac events in vascular and nonvascular surgery patients. *Am Heart J*. 1991;122:980.
73. Levine JD, Dardick SJ, Roizen MF, et al. The contribution of sensory afferents and sympathetic efferents to joint injury in experimental arthritis. *J Neurosci*. 1986;6:3423.
74. Wade JG, Larson CP, Hickey RF, et al. Carotid endarterectomy and carotid chemoreceptor and baroreceptor function in man. *N Engl J Med*. 1970;282:823.
75. Ziegler MG, Lake CR, Kopin IJ. The sympathetic nervous system defect in primary orthostatic hypotension. *N Engl J Med*. 1977;296:293.
76. Goldstein DS, Holmes C, Cannon III RO, et al. Sympathetic cardioneuropathy in dysautonomias. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;336:696.
77. Kendrick WW, Scott JW, Jousse AT, et al. Reflex sweating and hypertension in traumatic transverse myelitis. *Treat Serv Bull (Ottawa)*. 1953;8:437.
77a. Martirosyan NL, Patel AA, Carotenuto A, et al. The role of therapeutic hypothermia in the management of acute spinal cord injury. *Clin Neurol Neurosurg*. 2017;154:79–88.
78. Gronert GA, Theye RA. Pathophysiology of hyperkalemia induced by succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43:89.
79. Feek CM, Sawers JSA, Irvine WJ, et al. Combination of potassium iodide and propranolol in preparation of patients with Graves' disease for thyroid surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1980;302:883.

79a. Strowd SM, Majewski MB, Asteris J. Malignant hyperthermia versus thyroid storm in a patient with symptomatic Graves disease: a case report. *A A Pract*. 2018;10:97–99.

80. Loh KC. Amiodarone-induced thyroid disorders: a clinical review. *Postgrad Med J*. 2000;76:133–140.

81. Williams M, Lo Gerfo P. Thyroidectomy using local anesthesia in critically ill patients with amiodarone-induced thyrotoxicosis: a review and description of the technique. *Thyroid*. 2002;12:523–525.

81a. Saritas A, Saritas PU, Kurnaz MM, Celik A. Spectrum and prevalence of thyroid disorders in patients admitted to the anaesthesiology outpatient clinic for surgery. *Turk J Anaesthesiol Reanim*. 2015;43:240–245.

82. Weinberg AD, Brennan MD, Gorman CA, et al. Outcome of anesthesia and surgery in hypothyroid patients. *Arch Intern Med*. 1983;143:893.

83. Surks MI, Ortiz E, Daniels GH, et al. Subclinical thyroid disease: scientific review and guidelines for diagnosis and management. *JAMA*. 2004;291:228–238.

84. Vanderpump MPJ, Tunbridge WMG, French JM, et al. The incidence of thyroid disorders in the community: a twenty-year follow-up of the Wickham Survey. *Clin Endocrinol*. 1995;43:55.

85. Hattori H, Hattori C, Yonekura A, Nishimura T. Two cases of sleep apnea syndrome caused by primary hypothyroidism. *Acta Otolaryngol Suppl*. 2003;550:59–64.

85a. Mathew V, Misgar RA, Ghosh S, et al. Myxedema coma: a new look into an old crisis. *J Thyroid Res*. 2011;2011:493462.

86. Stewart AF. Clinical practice: hypercalcemia associated with cancer. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:373–379.

87. Peacock M, Bilezikian JP, Klassen PS, et al. Cinacalcet hydrochloride maintains long-term normocalcemia in patients with primary hyperparathyroidism. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2005;90:135–141.

88. Lind L, Ljunghall S. Blood pressure reaction during the intraoperative and early postoperative periods in patients with primary hyperparathyroidism. *Exp Clin Endocrinol*. 1994;102:409–413.

89. Kebebew E, Duh QY, Clark OH. Parathyroidectomy for primary hyperparathyroidism in octogenarians and nonagenarians: a plea for early surgical referral. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138:867–871.

90. Oltmann SC, Schneider DF, Sippel RS, Chen H. Presentation, management, and outcomes of hyperparathyroidism in octogenarians and nonagenarians. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2013;20:4195–4199.

91. Carling T, Donovan P, Rinder C, Udelsman R. Minimally invasive parathyroidectomy using cervical block: reasons for conversion to general anesthesia. *Arch Surg*. 2006;141:401–404.

92. Allain TJ, Dhesi J. Hypovitaminosis D in older adults. *Gerontology*. 2003;49:273–278.

93. Hong JC, Morris LF, Park EJ, et al. Transient increases in intraoperative parathyroid levels related to anesthetic technique. *Surgery*. 2011;150:1069–1075.

94. Blanchard C, Mathonnet M, Sebag F, et al. Surgery for “asymptomatic” mild primary hyperparathyroidism improves some clinical symptoms postoperatively. *Eur J Endocrinol*. 2013;169:665–672.

94a. Minisola S, Pepe J, Piemonte S, Cipriani C. The diagnosis and management of hypercalcaemia. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h2723.

94b. Basok AB, Rogachev B, Haviv YS, Vorobiov M. Treatment of extreme hypercalcaemia: the role of haemodialysis. *BMJ Case Rep*. 2018;2018.

95. Rumancik WM, Denlinger JK, Nahrwold ML, et al. The QT interval and serum ionized calcium. *JAMA*. 1978;240:366.

96. Moyad MA. Preventing male osteoporosis: prevalence, risks, diagnosis and imaging tests. *Urol Clin North Am*. 2004;31:321–330.

97. Cauley JA, Robbins J, Chen Z, et al. Effects of estrogen plus progestin on risk of fracture and bone mineral density: the Women’s Health Initiative randomized trial. *JAMA*. 2003;290:1729–1738.

98. Keller MI. Treating osteoporosis in post-menopausal women: a case approach. *Cleve Clin J Med*. 2004;71:829–837.

99. Katznelson L, Atkinson JL, Cook DM, et al. American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists medical guidelines for clinical practice for the diagnosis and treatment of acromegaly—2011 update: executive summary. *Endocr Pract*. 2011;17:636–646.

100. Rojiani AM, Prineas JW, Cho ES. Protective effect of steroids on electrolyte-induced demyelination. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol*. 1987;46:495.

100a. Matsuzaki S, Endo M, Ueda Y, et al. A case of acute Sheehan’s syndrome and literature review: a rare but life-threatening complication of postpartum hemorrhage. *BMC Pregnancy Childbirth*. 2017;17:188.

101. Ayus JC, Wheeler JM, Arieff AI. Postoperative hyponatremic encephalopathy in menstruant women. *Ann Intern Med*. 1992;117:891–897.

102. Robertson GL. Diabetes insipidus. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am*. 1995;24:549.

103. Weksler N, Klein M, Szendro G, et al. The dilemma of immediate preoperative hypertension: to treat and operate, or to postpone surgery? *J Clin Anesth*. 2003;15:179–183.

104. Aronson S, Boisvert D, Lapp W. Isolated systolic hypertension is associated with adverse outcomes from coronary artery bypass grafting surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1079–1084.

105. Kheterpal S, O’Reilly M, Englesbe MJ, et al. Preoperative and intraoperative predictors of cardiac adverse events after general, vascular, and urological surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:58–66.

106. Wax DB, Porter SB, Lin HM, et al. Association of preanesthesia hypertension with adverse outcomes. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:927–930.

107. Prys-Roberts C, Meloche R, Foëx P. Studies of anesthesia in relation to hypertension. I: cardiovascular responses of treated and untreated patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 1971;43:122.

108. Goldman L, Caldera DL. Risks of general anesthesia and elective operation in the hypertensive patient. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:285.

109. Mangano DT, Browner WS, Hollenberg M, et al. Association of perioperative myocardial ischemia with cardiac morbidity and mortality in men undergoing noncardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;323:1781.

110. Pasternack PF, Grossi EA, Baumann FG, et al. Beta blockade to decrease silent myocardial ischemia during peripheral vascular surgery. *Am J Surg*. 1989;158:113.

110a. Futier E, Lefrant JY, Guinot PG, et al. Effect of individualized vs standard blood pressure management strategies on postoperative organ dysfunction among high-risk patients undergoing major surgery: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2017;318:1346–1357.

110aa. Sessler DI, Meyhoff CS, Zimmerman NM, et al. Period-dependent associations between hypotension during and for four days after noncardiac surgery and a composite of myocardial infarction and death: a substudy of the POISE-2 trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:317–327.

111. POISE Study Group, Devereaux PJ, Yang H, et al. Effects of extended-release metoprolol succinate in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery (POISE trial): a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2008;371:1839–1847.

112. Coriat P, Richer C, Douraki T, et al. Influence of chronic angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibition in anesthetic induction. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:299.

113. Bertrand M, Godet G, Meersschaert K, et al. Should the angiotensin II antagonists be discontinued before surgery? *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:26–30.

114. Kheterpal S, Khodaparast O, Shanks A, et al. Chronic angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor or angiotensin receptor blocker therapy combined with diuretic therapy is associated with increased episodes of hypotension in noncardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2008;22:180–186.

115. Turan A, You J, Shiba A, et al. Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors are not associated with respiratory complications or mortality after noncardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:552–560.

116. London MJ. Preoperative administration of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors or angiotensin II receptor blockers: do we have enough “VISION” to stop it? *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:1–3.

117. Fleisher LA, Beckman JA, Brown KA, et al. ACC/AHA 2007 guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and care for noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to Revise the 2002 Guidelines on Perioperative Cardiovascular Evaluation for Noncardiac Surgery), Developed in collaboration with the American Society of Echocardiography. American Society of Nuclear Cardiology, Heart Rhythm Society, Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, Society for Vascular Medicine and Biology, and Society for Vascular Surgery. *Circulation*. 2007;116:e418–e499.

118. Duceppe E, Parlow J, MacDonald P, et al. Canadian Cardiovascular Society guidelines on perioperative cardiac risk assessment and management for patients who undergo noncardiac surgery. *Can J Cardiol*. 2017;33:17–32.

119. Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014.

120. Kristensen SD, Knuuti J, Saraste A, et al. 2014 ESC/ESA Guidelines on non-cardiac surgery: cardiovascular assessment and management: The Joint Task Force on non-cardiac surgery: cardiovascular assessment and management of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and the European Society of Anaesthesiology (ESA). *Eur Heart J*. 2014.

121. Posner KL, Van Norman GA, Chan V. Adverse cardiac outcomes after noncardiac surgery in patients with prior percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:553–560.

122. Godet G, Riou B, Bertrand M, et al. Does preoperative coronary angioplasty improve perioperative cardiac outcome? *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:739–746.

123. McFalls EO, Ward HB, Moritz TE, et al. Coronary-artery revascularization before elective major vascular surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:2795–2804.

124. Ward HB, Kelly RF, Thottapurathu L, et al. Coronary artery bypass grafting is superior to percutaneous coronary intervention in prevention of perioperative myocardial infarctions during subsequent vascular surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:795–800; discussion 800-801.

125. Poldermans D, Bax JJ, Schouten O, et al. Should major vascular surgery be delayed because of preoperative cardiac testing in intermediate-risk patients receiving beta-blocker therapy with tight heart rate control? *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2006;48:964–969.

126. Poldermans D, Schouten O, Vidakovic R, et al. A clinical randomized trial to evaluate the safety of a noninvasive approach in high-risk patients undergoing major vascular surgery: the DECREASE-V pilot study. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;49:1763–1769.

127. Back MR, Stordahl N, Cuthbertson D, et al. Limitations in the cardiac risk reduction provided by coronary revascularization prior to elective vascular surgery. *J Vasc Surg*. 2002;36:526–533.

128. Kaluza GL, Joseph J, Lee JR, et al. Catastrophic outcomes of noncardiac surgery soon after coronary stenting. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2000;35:1288–1294.

129. Wilson SH, Fasseas P, Orford JL, et al. Clinical outcome of patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery in the two months following coronary stenting. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2003;42:234–240.

130. Vicenzi MN, Meislitzer T, Heitzinger B, et al. Coronary artery stenting and non-cardiac surgery: a prospective outcome study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:686–693.

131. Leibowitz D, Cohen M, Planer D, et al. Comparison of cardiovascular risk of noncardiac surgery following coronary angioplasty with versus without stenting. *Am J Cardiol*. 2006;97:1188–1191.

132. Nasser M, Kapeliovich M, Markiewicz W. Late thrombosis of sirolimus-eluting stents following noncardiac surgery. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2005;65:516–519.

133. Schouten O, van Domburg RT, Bax JJ, et al. Noncardiac surgery after coronary stenting: early surgery and interruption of antiplatelet therapy are associated with an increase in major adverse cardiac events. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;49:122–124.

134. Berger PB, Kleiman NS, Pencina MJ, et al. Frequency of major noncardiac surgery and subsequent adverse events in the year after drug-eluting stent placement results from the EVENT (Evaluation of Drug-Eluting Stents and Ischemic Events) Registry. *JACC Cardiovasc Interv*. 2010;3:920–927.

135. Wijeysundera DN, Wijeysundera HC, Yun L, et al. Risk of elective major noncardiac surgery after coronary stent insertion: a population-based study. *Circulation*. 2012;126:1355–1362.

136. Hawn MT, Graham LA, Richman JS, et al. Risk of major adverse cardiac events following noncardiac surgery in patients with coronary stents. *JAMA*. 2013;310:1462–1472.

136a. Levine GN, Bates ER, Bittl JA, et al. 2016 ACC/AHA guideline focused update on duration of dual antiplatelet therapy in patients with coronary artery disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on clinical practice guidelines: an update of the 2011 ACCF/AHA/SCAI guideline for percutaneous coronary intervention, 2011 ACCF/AHA guideline for coronary artery bypass graft surgery, 2012 ACC/AHA/ACP/AATS/PCNA/SCAI/STS guideline for the diagnosis and management of patients with stable ischemic heart disease, 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of st-elevation myocardial infarction, 2014 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of patients with non-st-elevation acute coronary syndromes, and 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 2016;134:e123–e155.

136b. Albaladejo P, Marret E, Samama CM, et al. Non-cardiac surgery in patients with coronary stents: the RECO study. *Heart*. 2011;97:1566–1572.

137. Shah KB, Kleinman BS, Rao T, et al. Angina and other risk factors in patients with cardiac diseases undergoing noncardiac operations. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:240–247.

138. Hammill BG, Curtis LH, Bennett-Guerrero E, et al. Impact of heart failure on patients undergoing major noncardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:559–567.

139. McEnroe CS, O'Donnell TF, Yeager A, et al. Comparison of ejection fraction and Goldman risk factor analysis to dipyridamole-thallium 201 studies in the evaluation of cardiac morbidity after aortic aneurysm surgery. *J Vasc Surg*. 1990;11:497–504.

140. Mantha S, Roizen MF, Barnard J, et al. Relative effectiveness of four preoperative tests for predicting adverse cardiac outcomes after vascular surgery: a meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:422–433.

141. Flu WJ, van Kuijk JP, Hoeks SE, et al. Prognostic implications of asymptomatic left ventricular dysfunction in patients undergoing vascular surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:1316–1324.

142. Smith JS, Roizen MF, Cahalan MK, Benefiel DJ. Does anesthetic technique make a difference? Augmentation of systolic blood pressure during carotid endarterectomy: effects of phenylephrine versus light anesthesia and of isoflurane versus halothane on the incidence of myocardial ischemia. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:846.

143. Riles TS, Kopelman I, Imparato AM. Myocardial infarction following carotid endarterectomy: a review of 683 operations. *Surgery*. 1979;85:249.

144. Materson BJ, Reda DJ, Cushman WC, et al. Single-drug therapy for hypertension in men: a comparison of six antihypertensive agents with placebo. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328:914.

145. Goldman L, Caldera DL, Southwick FS, et al. Cardiac risk factors and complications in noncardiac surgery. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 1978;57:357.

146. Charlson ME, MacKenzie CR, Gold JP, et al. Preoperative characteristics predicting intraoperative hypotension and hypertension among hypertensives and diabetics undergoing noncardiac surgery. *Ann Surg*. 1990;212:66.

147. Frank SM, Fleisher LA, Breslow MJ, et al. Perioperative maintenance of normothermia reduces the incidence of morbid cardiac events: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 1997;277:1127.

148. Erikssen G, Thaulow E, Sandvik L, et al. Haematocrit: a predictor of cardiovascular mortality? *J Intern Med*. 1993;234:493.

149. Nelson AH, Fleisher LA, Rosenbaum SH. Relationship between postoperative anemia and cardiac morbidity in high-risk vascular patients in the intensive care unit. *Crit Care Med*. 1993;21:860.

150. Eagle KA, Boucher CA. Cardiac risk of noncardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;321:1330.

151. Lette J, Waters D, Lapointe J, et al. Usefulness of the severity and extent of reversible perfusion defects during thallium-dipyridamole imaging for cardiac risk assessment before noncardiac surgery. *Am J Cardiol*. 1989;64:276.

152. Kennedy JW, Kaiser GC, Fisher LD, et al. Clinical and angiographic predictors of operative mortality from the Collaborative Study in Coronary Artery Surgery (CASS). *Circulation*. 1981;63:793.

153. Detsky AS, Abrams HB, McLaughlin JR, et al. Predicting cardiac complications in patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery. *J Gen Intern Med*. 1986;1:211.

154. Gerson MC, Hurst JM, Hertzberg VS, et al. Cardiac prognosis in noncardiac surgery. *Ann Intern Med*. 1985;103:832.

155. Higgins TL, Estafanous FG, Loop FD, et al. Stratification of morbidity and mortality outcome by preoperative risk factors in coronary artery bypass patients: a clinical severity score. *JAMA*. 1992;267:2344.

156. Rivers SP, Scher LA, Gupta SK, Veith FJ. Safety of peripheral vascular surgery after recent acute myocardial infarction. *J Vasc Surg*. 1990;11:70–75; discussion 76.

157. Berlauk JF, Abrams JH, Gilmour IJ, et al. Preoperative optimization of cardiovascular hemodynamics improves outcome in peripheral vascular surgery: a prospective, randomized clinical trial. *Ann Surg*. 1991;214:289.

158. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Pulmonary Artery Catheterization. Practice guidelines for pulmonary catheterization: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Pulmonary Artery Catheterization. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:380.

159. Eagle KA, Coley CM, Newell JB, et al. Combining clinical and thallium data optimizes preoperative assessment of cardiac risk before major vascular surgery. *Ann Intern Med*. 1989;110:859.

160. Boucher CA, Brewster DC, Darling RC, et al. Determination of cardiac risk by dipyridamole-thallium imaging before peripheral vascular surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1985;312:389.
161. Santos AL, Gelperin A. Surgical mortality in the elderly. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1975;23:42.
162. Raby KE, Goldman L, Creager MA, et al. Correlation between preoperative ischemia and major cardiac events after peripheral vascular surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;321:1296.
163. Fletcher JP, Antico VF, Gruenwald S, Kershaw LZ. Dipyridamole-thallium scan for screening of coronary artery disease prior to vascular surgery. *J Cardiovasc Surg*. 1988;29:666.
164. Lee TH, Marcantonio ER, Mangione CM, et al. Derivation and prospective validation of a simple index for prediction of cardiac risk of major noncardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 1999;100:1043–1049.
165. Hoeks SE, Scholte op Reimer WJ, van Gestel YR, et al. Poldermans: preoperative cardiac risk index predicts long-term mortality and health status. *Am J Med*. 2009;122:559–565.
166. Cohen ME, Ko CY, Bilimoria KY, et al. Optimizing ACS NSQIP modeling for evaluation of surgical quality and risk: patient risk adjustment, procedure mix adjustment, shrinkage adjustment, and surgical focus. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;217:336–346.
167. Gupta PK, Gupta H, Sundaram A, et al. Development and validation of a risk calculator for prediction of cardiac risk after surgery. *Circulation*. 2011;124:381–387.
167a. Mangano DT, Layug EL, Wallace A, Tateo I. Effect of atenolol on mortality and cardiovascular morbidity after noncardiac surgery. Multicenter Study of Perioperative Ischemia Research Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;335:1713–1720.
167b. Poldermans D, Boersma E, Bax JJ, et al. The effect of bisoprolol on perioperative mortality and myocardial infarction in high-risk patients undergoing vascular surgery. Dutch Echocardiographic Cardiac Risk Evaluation Applying Stress Echocardiography Study Group [see comments]. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;341:1789–1794.
167c. Juul AB, Wetterslev J, Gluud C, et al. Effect of perioperative beta blockade in patients with diabetes undergoing major non-cardiac surgery: randomised placebo controlled, blinded multicentre trial. *Bmj*. 2006;332:1482.
167d. Lindenauer PK, Pekow P, Wang K, Mamidi DK, Gutierrez B, Benjamin EM. Perioperative beta-blocker therapy and mortality after major noncardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353:349–361.
167e. Yang H, Raymer K, Butler R, Parlow J, Roberts R. The effects of perioperative beta-blockade: results of the Metoprolol after Vascular Surgery (MaVS) study, a randomized controlled trial. *Am Heart J*. 2006;152:983–990.
167f. Devereaux PJ, Yang H, Yusuf S, et al. Effects of extended-release metoprolol succinate in patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery (POISE trial): a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2008;371:1839–1847.
167g. Wijeysundera DN, Duncan D, Nkonde-Price C, et al. Perioperative beta blockade in noncardiac surgery: a systematic review for the 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014.
167h. Wallace AW, Au S, Cason BA. Association of the pattern of use of perioperative beta-blockade and postoperative mortality. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:794–805.
168. Ellis JE, Drijvers G, Shah MN, et al. Topical clonidine fails to reduce postoperative stress response after noncardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:S85.
169. Naylor CD, Sibbald WJ, Sprung CL, et al. Pulmonary artery catheterization: can there be an integrated strategy for guideline development and research promotion? *JAMA*. 1993;269:2407.
169a. Devereaux PJ, Sessler DI, Leslie K, et al. Clonidine in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2014.
169b. Devereaux PJ, Mrkobrada M, Sessler DI, et al. Aspirin in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2014.
169c. Durazzo AE, Machado FS, Ikeoka DT, et al. Reduction in cardiovascular events after vascular surgery with atorvastatin: a randomized trial. *J Vasc Surg*. 2004;39:967–975.
169d. Le Manach Y, Godet G, Coriat P, et al. The impact of postoperative discontinuation or continuation of chronic statin therapy on cardiac outcome after major vascular surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1326–1333; table of contents.
169e. Lee SM, Takemoto S, Wallace AW. Association between withholding angiotensin receptor blockers in the early postoperative period and 30-day mortality: a cohort study of the Veterans Affairs healthcare system. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:288–306.
169f. Roshanov PS, Rochwerg B, Patel A, et al. Withholding versus continuing angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors or angiotensin II receptor blockers before noncardiac surgery: an analysis of the vascular events in noncardiac surgery patients cohort evaluation prospective cohort. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:16–27.
170. Carson JL, Terrin ML, Noveck H, et al. Liberal or restrictive transfusion in high-risk patients after hip surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365:2453–2462.
171. Hollinger I. Diseases of the cardiovascular system. In: Katz R, Steward D, eds. *Anesthesia and Uncommon Pediatric Diseases*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1993:93.
172. Nishimura RA, Carabello BA, Faxon DP, et al. ACC/AHA 2008 guideline update on valvular heart disease: focused update on infective endocarditis. A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines: endorsed by the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, and Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *Circulation*. 2008;118:887–889.
173. Katholi RE, Nolan SP, McGuire LB. Living with prosthetic heart valves: subsequent noncardiac operations and the risk of thromboembolism or hemorrhage. *Am Heart J*. 1976;92:162–167.
174. Bonow RO, Carabello B, de Leon Jr AC, et al. Guidelines for the management of patients with valvular heart disease: executive summary. A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Committee on Management of Patients with Valvular Heart Disease). *Circulation*. 1998;98:1949–1984.
175. Ezekowitz MD. Anticoagulation management of valve replacement patients. *J Heart Valve Dis*. 2002;11(suppl 1):S56–S60.
176. Bonow RO, Carabello BA, Kanu C, et al. ACC/AHA 2006 guidelines for the management of patients with valvular heart disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to Revise the 1998 Guidelines for the Management of Patients with Valvular Heart Disease). Developed in collaboration with the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists: endorsed by the Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions and the Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *Circulation*. 2006;114:e84–e231.
176a. Nishimura RA, Otto CM, Bonow RO, et al. 2014 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of patients with valvular heart disease: executive summary: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;129:2440–2449.
177. Vandermeulen EP, Van Aken H, Vermylen J. Anticoagulants and spinal-epidural anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:1165.
178. Rao TLK, El-Etr AA. Anticoagulation following placement of epidural and subarachnoid catheters: an evaluation of neurologic sequelae. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:618.
179. Frame JN, Mulvey KP, Phares JC, Anderson MJ. Correction of severe heparin-associated thrombocytopenia with intravenous immunoglobulin. *Ann Intern Med*. 1989;111:946.
180. Waldman SD, Feldstein GS, Waldman HJ, et al. Caudal administration of morphine sulphate in anticoagulated and thrombocytopenic patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:267.
181. Bargon HC, LaRaja RD, Rossi G, Atkinson D. Continuous epidural analgesia in the heparinized vascular surgical patient: a retrospective review of 912 patients. *J Vasc Surg*. 1987;6:144.
182. Onishchuk JL, Carlsson C. Epidural hematoma associated with epidural anesthesia: complications of anticoagulant therapy. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:1221.
183. Horlocker TT, Wedel DJ, Offord KP. Does preoperative antiplatelet therapy increase the risk of hemorrhagic complications associated with regional anesthesia? *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:631.
184. Macdonald R. Aspirin and extradural blocks. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:1.
185. Amrein PC, Ellman L, Harris WH. Aspirin-induced prolongation of bleeding and perioperative blood loss. *JAMA*. 1981;245:1825.
186. Horlocker TT, Wedel DJ, Benzon H, et al. Regional anesthesia in the anticoagulated patient: defining the risks (the second ASRA Consensus Conference on Neuraxial Anesthesia and Anticoagulation). *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2003;28:172–197.

187. International Multicentre Trial. Prevention of fatal postoperative pulmonary embolism by low doses of heparin. *Lancet*. 1975;2:45.

187a. Gordon RJ, Lombard FW. Perioperative venous thromboembolism: a review. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:403–412.

188. Consensus Conference: Prevention of venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism. *JAMA*. 1988;256:744.

189. Collins R, Scrimgeour A, Yusuf S, Peto R. Reduction in fatal pulmonary embolism and venous thrombosis by perioperative administration of subcutaneous heparin. *N Engl J Med*. 1988;318:1162.

190. Gallus A, Raman K, Darby T. Venous thrombosis after elective hip replacement: the influence of preventive intermittent calf compression and on surgical technique. *Br J Surg*. 1983;70:17.

190a. MacLean S, Mulla S, Akl EA, et al. Patient values and preferences in decision making for antithrombotic therapy: a systematic review: antithrombotic therapy and prevention of thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Chest*. 2012;141:e1S–e23S.

191. Lutz DJ, Noller KL, Spittell Jr JA, et al. Pregnancy and its complications following cardiac valve prostheses. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1978;131:460.

192. Gauss A, Hübner C, Radermacher P, et al. Perioperative risk of bradyarrhythmias in patients with asymptomatic chronic bifascicular block or left bundle branch block: does an additional first-degree atrioventricular block make any difference? *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:679.

193. Ruskin JN. Catheter ablation for supraventricular tachycardia. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324:1660.

194. Kelly JS, Royster RL. Noninvasive transcutaneous cardiac pacing. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:229.

195. Risk SC, Brandon D, D'Ambra MN, et al. Indications for the use of pacing pulmonary artery catheters in cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:275.

196. Prystowsky EN. Diagnosis and management of the pre-excitation syndromes. *Curr Probl Cardiol*. 1988;13:225.

197. McAnulty JH, Rahimtoola SH, Murphy E, et al. Natural history of high-risk bundle-branch block: final report of a prospective study. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;307:137.

198. Rose MR, Koski G. Anesthesia in patients with Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome [abstract]. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:A146.

198a. Fisher BW, Majumdar SR, McAlister FA. Predicting pulmonary complications after nonthoracic surgery: a systematic review of blinded studies. *Am J Med*. 2002;112:219–225.

199. Anthonisen NR, Connet JE, Kiley JP, et al. Effect of smoking intervention and the use of an inhaled anticholinergic bronchodilator on the rate of decline of FEV_1: the lung health study. *JAMA*. 1994;272:1497.

200. European Respiratory Society. Optimal assessment and management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). *Eur Respir J*. 1995;8:1398.

201. Holleman Jr DR, Simel DL. Does the clinical examination predict airflow limitation? *JAMA*. 1995;273:313.

202. Lacasse Y, Guyatt GH, Goldstein RS. The components of a respiratory rehabilitation program: a systematic overview. *Chest*. 1997;111:1077.

203. Saint S, Bent S, Vittinghoff E, Grady D. Antibiotics in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease exacerbations: a meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 1995;273:957.

204. Thompson WH, Nielson CP, Carvalho P, et al. Controlled trial of oral prednisone in outpatients with acute COPD exacerbations. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1996;154:407.

205. NAEP Expert Panel Report 2. Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of asthma, Public Health Service. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services publication no. 97-4051A; 1997. http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/nhlbi/nhlbi.htm/. (Accessed 12.06.14.).

206. Sin DD, Man J, Sharpe H, et al. Pharmacological management to reduce exacerbations in adults with asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2004;292:367–376.

207. Tilles SA. Differential diagnosis of adult asthma. *Med Clin North Am*. 2006;90:61–76.

208. Dompeling E, van Schayck CP, van Grunsven PM, et al. Slowing the deterioration of asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease observed during bronchodilator therapy by adding inhaled corticosteroids: a 4-year prospective study. *Ann Intern Med*. 1993;118:770.

209. Calligaro KD, Azurin DJ, Dougherty MJ, et al. Pulmonary risk factors of elective abdominal aortic surgery. *J Vasc Surg*. 1993;18:914.

210. Skolnick ET, Vomvolakis MA, Buck KA, et al. Exposure to environmental tobacco smoke and the risk of adverse respiratory events in children receiving general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1144.

211. Rodgers A, Walker N, Schug S, et al. Reduction of postoperative mortality and morbidity with epidural or spinal anaesthesia: results from overview of randomised trials. *BMJ*. 2000;321:1493.

212. Stein M, Cassara EL. Preoperative pulmonary evaluation and therapy for surgery patients. *JAMA*. 1970;211:787.

213. Khan MA, Hussain SF. Review article: pre-operative pulmonary evaluation. *J Ayub Med Coll Abbottabad*. 2005;17:82–86.

214. Rock P, Passannante A. Preoperative assessment: pulmonary. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2004;22:77–91.

215. Qaseem A, Snow V, Fitterman N, et al. Risk assessment for and strategies to reduce perioperative pulmonary complications for patients undergoing noncardiothoracic surgery: a guideline from the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;144:575–580.

216. Smetana GW, Lawrence VA, Cornell JE. Preoperative pulmonary risk stratification for noncardiothoracic surgery: systematic review for the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;144:581–595.

217. Collins CD, Darke CS, Knowelden J. Chest complications after upper abdominal surgery: their anticipation and prevention. *BMJ*. 1968;1:401.

218. Hulzebos EH, Helders PJ, Favie NJ, et al. Preoperative intensive inspiratory muscle training to prevent postoperative pulmonary complications in high-risk patients undergoing CABG surgery: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2006;296:1851–1857.

219. Warner MA, Offerd KP, Warner ME, et al. Role of preoperative cessation of smoking and other factors in postoperative pulmonary complications: a blinded prospective study of coronary artery bypass patients. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1989;64:609.

220. Robinson K, Conroy RM, Mulcahy R. When does the risk of acute coronary heart disease in ex-smokers fall to that in non-smokers? A retrospective study of patients admitted to hospital with a first episode of myocardial infarction or unstable angina. *Br Heart J*. 1989;62:16.

221. Ernst E, Matrai A. Abstention from chronic cigarette smoking normalizes blood rheology. *Atherosclerosis*. 1987;64:75.

222. Bluman LG, Mosca L, Newman N, Simon DG. Preoperative smoking habits and postoperative pulmonary complications. *Chest*. 1998;113:883–889.

223. Nakagawa M, Tanaka H, Tsukuma H, Kishi Y. Relationship between the duration of the preoperative smoke-free period and the incidence of postoperative pulmonary complications after pulmonary surgery. *Chest*. 2001;120:705–710.

224. Wong J, Lam DP, Abrishami A, et al. Short-term preoperative smoking cessation and postoperative complications: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59:268–279.

225. Wong J, Abrishami A, Yang Y, et al. A perioperative smoking cessation intervention with varenicline: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:755–764.

226. Lee SM, Landry J, Jones PM, et al. The effectiveness of a perioperative smoking cessation program: a randomized clinical trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:605–613.

227. McCreanor J, Cullinan P, Nieuwenhuijsen MJ, et al. Respiratory effects of exposure to diesel traffic in persons with asthma. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357:2348–2358.

228. Downs SH, Schindler C, Liu LJS, et al. Reduced exposure to PM10 and attenuated age-related decline in lung function. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357:2338–2347.

229. Celli BR, Rodriguez KS, Snider GL. A controlled trial of intermittent positive pressure breathing, incentive spirometry, and deep breathing exercises in preventing pulmonary complications after abdominal surgery. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1984;130:12.

230. Bartlett RH, Brennan ML, Gazzaniga AB, et al. Studies on the pathogenesis and prevention of postoperative pulmonary complications. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1973;137:925.

231. Lyager S, Wernberg M, Rajani N, et al. Can postoperative pulmonary conditions be improved by treatment with the Bartlett-Edwards incentive spirometer after upper abdominal surgery? *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1979;23:312.

232. Neuman MD, Silber JH, Elkassabany NM, et al. Comparative effectiveness of regional versus general anesthesia for hip fracture surgery in adults. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:72–92.

233. Elwood T, Morris W, Martin LD, et al. Bronchodilator premedication does not decrease respiratory adverse events in pediatric general anesthesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:277–284.
234. Boushy SF, Billing DM, North LB, et al. Clinical course related to preoperative pulmonary function in patients with bronchogenic carcinoma. *Chest*. 1971;59:383.
235. Mittman C. Assessment of operative risk in thoracic surgery. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1961;84:197.
236. Reichel J. Assessment of operative risk of pneumonectomy. *Chest*. 1972;62:570.
237. Wong DH, Weber EC, Schell MJ, et al. Factors associated with postoperative pulmonary complications in patients with severe COPD. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:276.
238. Arozullah AM, Daley J, Henderson WG, Khuri SF. Multifactorial risk index for predicting postoperative respiratory failure in men after major noncardiac surgery: the National Veterans Administration Surgical Quality Improvement Program. *Ann Surg*. 2000;232:242–253.
239. Arozullah AM, Khuri SF, Henderson WG, et al. Development and validation of a multifactorial risk index for predicting postoperative pneumonia after major noncardiac surgery. *Ann Intern Med*. 2001;135:847–857.
240. Matthay RA, Niederman MS, Wiedemann HP. Cardiovascular pulmonary interaction in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease with special reference to pathogenesis and management of cor pulmonale. *Med Clin North Am*. 1990;74:571.
241. Fedullo PF, Auger WR, Kerr KM, Rubin LJ. Chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:1465–1472.
242. Galie N, Ghofrani HA, Torbicki A, et al. Sildenafil citrate therapy for pulmonary arterial hypertension. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353:2148–2157.
243. Domino KB, Wetstein L, Glasser SA, et al. Influence of mixed venous oxygen tension on blood flow to atelectatic lung. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:428.
244. Settipane GA, Dudupakkam RK. Aspirin intolerance. III. Subtypes, familial occurrence and cross reactivity with tartrazine. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 1975;56:215.
245. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Cancer statistics for the United States. www.cdc.gov/nchs/products/pubs/pubd/hus/trendtables.htm. (Accessed 12.06.14.).
246. Aisner J. Extensive-disease small-cell lung cancer: the thrill of victory the agony of defeat. *J Clin Oncol*. 1996;14:658.
247. Cooper JAD, ed. Drug-induced pulmonary disease. *Clin Chest Med*. 1990;11:1.
248. Levy JH, Roizen MF, Morris JM. Anaphylactic and anaphylactoid reactions: a review. *Spine*. 1986;11:282.
249. Kemp SF, Lockey RF. Anaphylaxis: a review of causes and mechanisms. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2002;110:341–348.
249a. Freundlich RE, Duggal NM, Housey M, Tremper TT, Engoren MC, Kheterpal S. Intraoperative medications associated with hemodynamically significant anaphylaxis. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;35:415–423.
250. Smith PL, Kagey-Sobotka A, Bleecker ER, et al. Physiologic manifestations of human anaphylaxis. *J Clin Invest*. 1980;66:1072.
251. Delage C, Irey NS. Anaphylactic deaths: a clinicopathologic study of 43 cases. *J Forensic Sci*. 1972;17:525.
252. Bettman MA. Radiographic contrast agents: a perspective. *N Engl J Med*. 1987;317:891.
253. Roizen MF, Rodgers GM, Valone FH, et al. Anaphylactoid reactions to vascular graft material presenting with vasodilation and subsequent disseminated intravascular coagulation. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:331.
254. Mertes PM, Laxenaire MC. Allergic reactions occurring during anaesthesia. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2002;19:240–262.
255. Lieberman P. Anaphylactic reactions during surgical and medical procedures. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2002;110(suppl):S64–S69.
256. Rosow CE, Moss J, Philbin DM, et al. Histamine release during morphine and fentanyl anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:93.
257. Millbern SM, Bell SD. Prevention of anaphylaxis to contrast media. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:56.
258. Halevy S, Altura BT, Altura BM. Pathophysiological basis for the use of steroids in the treatment of shock and trauma. *Klin Wochenschr*. 1982;60:1021.
258a. Kannan JA, Bernstein JA. Perioperative anaphylaxis: diagnosis, evaluation, and management. *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am*. 2015;35:321–334.
259. Toogood JH. Risk of anaphylaxis in patients receiving beta-blocker drugs. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 1988;81:1.
260. Van Arsdel Jr PP, Larson EB. Diagnostic tests for patients with suspected allergic disease. *Ann Intern Med*. 1989;110:304.
260a. MacBeth LS, Volcheck GW, Sprung J, Weingarten TN. Perioperative course in patients with hereditary or acquired angioedema. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;34:385–391.
261. Heyland DK, Novak F, Drover JW, et al. Should immunonutrition become routine in critically ill patients? A systematic review of the evidence. *JAMA*. 2001;286:944–953.
261a. Lytvyn L, Quach K, Banfield L, Johnston BC, Mertz D. Probiotics and synbiotics for the prevention of postoperative infections following abdominal surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Hosp Infect*. 2016;92:130–139.
261b. Sawh SC, Deshpande S, Jansen S, Reynaert CJ, Jones PM. Prevention of necrotizing enterocolitis with probiotics: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *PeerJ*. 2016;4:e2429.
261c. Cook DJ, Johnstone J, Marshall JC, et al. The Canadian Critical Care Trials G: Probiotics: Prevention of Severe Pneumonia and Endotracheal Colonization Trial-PROSPECT: a pilot trial. *Trials*. 2016;17:377.
262. Drugs for epilepsy. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 2003;45:57–64.
262a. Perks A, Cheema S, Mohanraj R. Anaesthesia and epilepsy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:562–571.
262b. Bhattacharya B, Maung AA. Anesthesia for patients with traumatic brain injuries. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2016;34:747–759.
263. Roberts R. Differential diagnosis of sleep disorders, non-epileptic attacks and epileptic attacks. *Curr Opin Neurol*. 1998;11:135–139.
264. Shaner DM, McCurdy SA, Herring MO, et al. Treatment of status epilepticus: a prospective comparison of diazepam and phenytoin versus phenobarbital and optional phenytoin. *Neurology*. 1988;38:202.
265. Schuchat A, Robinson K, Wenger JD, et al. Bacterial meningitis in the United States in 1995. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:970.
266. Mets B. Acute dystonia after alfentanil in untreated Parkinson's disease. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:557.
267. Muzzi DA, Black S, Cucchiara RF. The lack of effect of succinylcholine on serum potassium in patients with Parkinson's disease. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:322.
268. Parkinson Study Group. Impact of deprenyl and tocopherol treatment on Parkinson's disease in DATA TOP patients requiring levodopa. *Ann Neurol*. 1996;39:37.
269. Goetz CG, Olanow CW, Koller WC, et al. Multicenter study of autologous adrenal medullary transplantation to the corpus striatum in patients with advanced Parkinson's disease. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;320:337.
270. Wiklund RA, Ngai SH. Rigidity and pulmonary edema after Innovar in a patient on levodopa therapy: report of a case. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:545–547.
270a. Akbar U, Kurkchubasche AG, Friedman JH. Perioperative management of Parkinson's disease. *Expert Rev Neurother*. 2017;17:301–308.
271. Barry PP, Moskowitz MA. The diagnosis of reversible dementia in the elderly, a critical review. *Arch Intern Med*. 1988;148:1914.
272. Skoog I, Nilsson J, Palmertz B, et al. A population-based study of dementia in 85-year-olds. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328:153.
273. Petersen RC, Smith GE, Waring SC, et al. Mild cognitive impairment: clinical characterization and outcome. *Arch Neurol*. 1999;56:303–308.
274. Ross GW, Abbott RD, Petrovitch H, et al. Frequency and characteristics of silent dementia among elderly Japanese-American men: the Honolulu-Asia Aging Study. *JAMA*. 1997;277:800.
274a. Alzheimer's A. 2013 Alzheimer's disease facts and figures. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2013;9:208–245.
275. Snowdon DA, Greiner LH, Mortimer JA, et al. Brain infarction and the clinical expression of Alzheimer disease: the Nun Study. *JAMA*. 1997;277:813.
276. Galantamine for Alzheimer's disease. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 2001;43:53.
277. Jones PM, Soderman RM. Intra-operative bradycardia in a patient with Alzheimer's disease treated with two cholinesterase inhibitors. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:201.
278. Xie Z, Tanzi RE. Alzheimer's disease and post-operative cognitive dysfunction. *Exp Gerontol*. 2006;41:346–359.
278a. Berger M, Burke J, Eckenhoff R, Mathew J. Alzheimer's disease, anesthesia, and surgery: a clinically focused review. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28:1609–1623.
279. Eckenhoff RG, Johansson JS, Wei H, et al. Inhaled anesthetic enhancement of amyloid-beta oligomerization and cytotoxicity. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:703–709.

280. Wei H, Liang G, Wang Q, et al. The common inhalational anesthetic isoflurane induces apoptosis via activation of inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate receptors. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:251–260.
281. Zhang B, Dong Y, Zhang G, et al. The inhalation anesthetic desflurane induces caspase activation and increases amyloid beta-protein levels under hypoxic conditions. *J Biol Chem*. 2008;283:11866–11875.
282. Hemmelgarn B, Suissa S, Huang A, et al. Benzodiazepine use and the risk of motor vehicle crash in the elderly. *JAMA*. 1997;278:27.
283. Mozkowitz MA. Basic mechanisms in vascular headache. *Neurol Clin*. 1990;8:801.
284. Michel P, Henry P, Letenneur L, et al. Diagnostic screen for assessment of IHS criteria for migraine by general practitioners. *Cephalagia*. 1993;12:54.
285. MacIntyre PD, Bhargava B, Hogg KJ, et al. Effect of subcutaneous sumatriptan, a selective 5HT-1 agonist, on the systemic, pulmonary, and coronary circulation. *Circulation*. 1993;87:401.
286. Shadick NA, Phillips CB, Logigian EL, et al. The long-term clinical outcomes of Lyme disease: a population-based retrospective cohort study. *Ann Intern Med*. 1994;121:560.
287. Ferguson RJ, Caplan LR. Cervical spondylitic myelopathy. *Neurol Clin*. 1985;3:373.
288. Ovassapian A, Land P, Schafer MF, et al. Anesthetic management for surgical corrections of severe flexion deformity of the cervical spine. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:370.
289. Rudick RA, Cohen JA, Weinstock-Guttman B, et al. Management of multiple sclerosis. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:1604.
289a. Makris A, Piperopoulos A, Karmaniolou I. Multiple sclerosis: basic knowledge and new insights in perioperative management. *J Anesth*. 2014;28:267–278.
290. Wipfli M, Arnold M, Luginbuhl M. Repeated spinal anesthesia in a tetraparetic patient with Guillain-Barré syndrome. *J Clin Anesth*. 2013;25:409–412.
291. Kocabas S, Karaman S, Firat V, Bademkiran E. Anesthetic management of Guillain-Barré syndrome in pregnancy. *J Clin Anesth*. 2007;19:299–302.
292. McKhann GM, Griffin JW, Cornblath DR, et al. Plasmapheresis and Guillain-Barré syndrome: analysis of prognostic factors and the effect of plasmapheresis. *Ann Neurol*. 1988;23:347.
292a. Moran S, Isa J, Steinemann S. Perioperative management in the patient with substance abuse. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2015;95:417–428.
293. Toh B-H, van Driel IR, Gleeson PA. Pernicious anemia. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:1441.
294. Jensen NF, Fiddler DS, Striepe V. Anesthetic considerations in porphyrias. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:591.
295. Kantor G, Rolbin SH. Acute intermittent porphyria and caesarean delivery. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:282.
296. Meissner PN, Harrison GG, Hift RJ. Propofol as an I.V. anaesthetic induction agent in variegate porphyria. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:60.
297. McNeill MJ, Bennet A. Use of regional anaesthesia in a patient with acute porphyria. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:371.
297a. Bissell DM, Anderson KE, Bonkovsky HL. Porphyria. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:862–872.
298. Massey JM. Treatment of acquired myasthenia gravis. *Neurology*. 1997;48:S46–S51.
299. d'Empaire G, Hoaglin DC, Perlo VP, et al. Effect of prethymectomy plasma exchange on postoperative respiratory function in myasthenia gravis. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1985;89:592.
300. Eisenkraft JB, Book WJ, Mann SM, et al. Resistance to succinylcholine in myasthenia gravis: a dose response study. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:760.
301. Eisenkraft JB, Papatestas AE, Kahn CH, et al. Predicting the need for postoperative mechanical ventilation in myasthenia gravis. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:79.
302. Sungur Ulke Z, Yavru A, Camci E, et al. Rocuronium and sugammadex in patients with myasthenia gravis undergoing thymectomy. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2013;57:745–748.
302a. Chigurupati K, Gadhinglajkar S, Sreedhar R, Nair M, Unnikrishnan M, Pillai M. Criteria for postoperative mechanical ventilation after thymectomy in patients with myasthenia gravis: a retrospective analysis. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32:325–330.
303. Small S, Ali HH, Lennon VA, et al. Anesthesia for unsuspected Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome with autoantibodies and occult small cell lung carcinoma. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:142.
303a. Weingarten TN, Araka CN, Mogensen ME, et al. Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome during anesthesia: a report of 37 patients. *J Clin Anesth*. 2014;26:648–653.
304. Lema G, Urzua J, Moran S, Canessa R. Successful anesthetic management of a patient with hypokalemic familial periodic paralysis undergoing cardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:373.
305. Ashwood EM, Russell WJ, Burrow DD. Hyperkalaemic periodic paralysis. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:579.
306. Gutmann DH, Fischbeck KH. Molecular biology of Duchenne and Becker's muscular dystrophy: clinical applications. *Ann Neurol*. 1989;26:189.
307. Smith CL, Bush GH. Anesthesia and progressive muscular dystrophy. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:1113.
307a. Katz JA, Murphy GS. Anesthetic consideration for neuromuscular diseases. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30:435–440.
307b. Litman RS, Griggs SM, Dowling JJ, Riazi S. Malignant hyperthermia susceptibility and related diseases. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:159–167.
308. Pueschel SM, Scola FH. Atlantoaxial instability in individuals with Down syndrome: epidemiologic, radiographic, and clinical studies. *Pediatrics*. 1987;80.
309. Morray JP, MacGillivray R, Duker G. Increased perioperative risk following repair of congenital heart disease in Down's syndrome. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:221.
310. Roizen NJ, Patterson D. Down's syndrome. *Lancet*. 2003;361:1281–1289.
311. Freeman SB, Taft LF, Dopoley KJ, et al. Population-based study of congenital heart defects in Down syndrome. *Am J Med Genet*. 1998;80:213–217.
312. Kobel M, Creighton RE, Steward DJ. Anaesthetic considerations in Down's syndrome: experience with 100 patients and a review of the literature. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1982;29:593.
313. Bedford RF, Morris L, Jane JA. Intracranial hypertension during surgery for supratentorial tumor: correlation with preoperative computed tomography scans. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:430.
314. Drugs for psychiatric disorders: treatment guideline. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 2003;11:69–76.
315. Byrick RJ, Rose DK. Pathophysiology and prevention of acute renal failure: the role of the anaesthetist. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:457.
316. Berns AS. Nephrotoxicity of contrast media. *Kidney Int*. 1989;36:730.
317. Myers BD, Moran SM. Hemodynamically mediated acute renal failure. *N Engl J Med*. 1986;314:97.
318. Thadhani R, Pascual M, Bonventre JV. Acute renal failure. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;334:1448.
319. Hebert PC, Wells G, Blajchman MA, et al. A multicenter, randomized, controlled clinical trial of transfusion requirements in critical care: Transfusion Requirements in Critical Care Investigators, Canadian Critical Care Trials Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;340:409–417.
320. Koch CG, Khandwala F, Li L, et al. Persistant effect of red cell transfusion on health-related quality of life after cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:13–20.
321. Coe FL, Parks JH, Asplin JR. The pathogenesis and treatment of kidney stones. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;327:1141.
321a. Mazer CD, Whitlock RP, Fergusson DA, et al. Perioperative anesthesia clinical trials g: restrictive or liberal red-cell transfusion for cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:2133–2144.
321b. Kanda H, Hirasaki Y, Iida T, et al. Perioperative management of patients with end-stage renal disease. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:2251–2267.
322. Kellen M, Aronson S, Roizen MF, et al. Predictive and diagnostic tests of renal failure: a review. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:134.
323. Novis BK, Roizen MF, Aronson S, Thisted RA. Association of preoperative risk factors with postoperative acute renal failure. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:143.
324. Lee TH, Marcantonio ER, Mangione CM, et al. Derivation and prospective validation of a simple index for prediction of cardiac risk of major noncardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 1999;100:1043–1049.
325. Mangano CM, Diamondstone LS, Ramsay JG, et al. Renal dysfunction after myocardial revascularization: risk factors, adverse outcomes, and hospital resource utilization. The Multicenter Study of Perioperative Ischemia Research Group. *Ann Intern Med*. 1998;128:194–203.
325a. McKinlay J, Tyson E, Forni LG. Renal complications of anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(suppl 1):85–94.
326. Petroni KC, Cohen NH. Continuous renal replacement therapy: anesthetic implications. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1288–1297.

327. Myers BD, Sibley R, Newton L, et al. The long-term course of cyclosporine-associated chronic nephropathy. *Kidney Int*. 1988;33:590.
328. Bennett WM, Aronoff GR, Morrison G, et al. Drug prescribing in renal failure: dosing guidelines for adults. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 1983;3:155.
329. Bennett WM, Aronoff GR, Golper TA, et al. *Drug Prescribing in Renal Failure: Dosing Guidelines for Adults*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: American College of Physicians; 1991.
330. Goyal P, Puri GD, Pandey CK, Srivastva S. Evaluation of induction doses of propofol: comparison between endstage renal disease and normal renal function patients. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2002;30:584–587.
331. Appel GB, Neu HC. The nephrotoxicity of antimicrobial agents. *N Engl J Med*. 1977;296:663. 722, 784.
332. Rackow EC, Astiz ME. Pathophysiology and treatment of septic shock. *JAMA*. 1991;266:548.
333. Knaus WA, Wagner DP. Multiple systems organ failure: epidemiology and prognosis. *Crit Care Clin*. 1989;5.
334. The choice of antibacterial drugs. *Treat Guidel Med Lett*. 2004;46:13.
335. Nichol KL, Nordin JD, Nelson DB, et al. Effectiveness of influenza vaccine in the community-dwelling elderly. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357:1373–1381.

335a. Dasta J, Waikar SS, Xie L, et al. Patterns of treatment and correction of hyponatremia in intensive care unit patients. *J Crit Care*. 2015;30:1072–1079.

336. Sterns RH. Severe symptomatic hyponatremia: treatment and outcome. *Ann Intern Med*. 1987;107:656.
337. Surawicz B. Relationship between electrocardiogram and electrolytes. *Am Heart J*. 1967;73:814.
338. Rimmer JM, Horn JF, Gennari FJ. Hyperkalemia as a complication of drug therapy. *Arch Intern Med*. 1987;147:867.
339. Busch EH, Ventura HO, Lavie CJ. Heparin-induced hyperkalemia. *South Med J*. 1987;80:1450.
340. Don BR, Sebastian A, Cheitlin M, et al. Pseudohyperkalemia caused by fist clenching during phlebotomy. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;322:1290.

340a. Singla M, Shikha D, Lee S, Baumstein D, Chaudhari A, Carbajal R. Asymptomatic cecal perforation in a renal transplant recipient after sodium polystyrene sulfonate administration. *Am J Ther*. 2016;23:e1102–e1104.

340b. Saginur M, Thiesen A, Lacson A, Bigam D, Yap J. Small intestinal transplant mucosal necrosis associated with enteral sodium polystyrene sulfonate administration. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12:3152–3154.

341. Kharasch ED, Bowdle TA. Hypokalemia before induction of anesthesia and prevention by beta$_2$ adrenoceptor antagonism. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:216.
342. Allon M, Dunlay R, Copkney C. Nebulised albuterol for acute hyperkalemia in patients on hemodialysis. *Ann Intern Med*. 1989;110:426.
343. Wong KC, Kawamura R, Hodges MR, et al. Acute intravenous administration of potassium chloride to furosemide pretreated dogs. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1977;24:203.
344. Lawson DH. Adverse reactions to potassium chloride. *Q J Med*. 1974;43:433.
345. Vitez TS, Soper LE, Wong KC, Soper P. Chronic hypokalemia and intraoperative dysrhythmias. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:130.
346. Hirsch IA, Tomlinson DL, Slogoff S, Keats AS. The overstated risk of preoperative hypokalemia. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:131.
347. Olson RP, Schow AJ, McCann R, et al. Absence of adverse outcomes in hyperkalemic patients undergoing vascular access surgery. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:553–557.
348. Schow AJ, Lubarsky DA, Olson RP, Gan TJ. Can succinylcholine be used safely in hyperkalemic patients? *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:119.
349. Wahr JA, Parks R, Boisvert D, et al. Preoperative serum potassium levels and perioperative outcomes in cardiac surgery patients: multicenter Study of Perioperative Ischemia Research Group. *JAMA*. 1999;281:2203–2210.
350. Cohen JD, Neaton JD, Prineas RJ, Daniels KA. Diuretics, serum potassium and ventricular arrhythmias in the multiple risk factor intervention. *Am J Cardiol*. 1987;60:548.
351. Holland OB, Nixon JV, Kuhnert L. Diuretic-induced ventricular ectopic activity. *Am J Med*. 1981;70:762.
352. Kornbluth A, Sachar DB. Ulcerative colitis practice guidelines in adults: American College of Gastroenterology, Practice Parameters Committee. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 1997;92:204.
353. Kahrilas PJ. Gastroesophageal reflux disease. *JAMA*. 1996;276:983.
354. Kurz A, Sessler DI, Lenhardt R. Perioperative normothermia to reduce the incidence of surgical-wound infection and shorten hospitalization: study of Wound Infection and Temperature Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;334:1209–1215.
355. Antimicrobial prophylaxis. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 2001;43:92–97.
356. Jain NK, Larson DE, Schroeder KW, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis for percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy. *Ann Intern Med*. 1987;107:824.
357. Gorbach SL. Antimicrobial prophylaxis for appendectomy and colorectal surgery. *Rev Infect Dis*. 1991;13(suppl 10):S815.
358. Peterson WJ. Peptic ulcer: an infectious disease? *West J Med*. 1990;152:167.

358a. Castillo J, Silvay G, Weiner M. Anesthetic management of patients with carcinoid syndrome and carcinoid heart disease: the Mount Sinai algorithm. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32:1023–1031.

359. Botero M, Fuchs R, Paulus DA, Lind DS. Carcinoid heart disease: a case report and literature review. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14:57–63.
360. Veall GRQ, Peacock JE, Bax NDS, Reilly CS. Review of the anaesthetic management of 21 patients undergoing laparotomy for carcinoid syndrome. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:335.
361. Longnecker M, Roizen MF. Patients with carcinoid syndrome. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 1987;5:313.
362. Weingarten TN, Abel MD, Connolly HM, et al. Intraoperative management of patients with carcinoid heart disease having valvular surgery: a review of one hundred consecutive cases. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1192–1199.
363. Marsh HM, Martin Jr JK, Kvols LK, et al. Carcinoid crisis during anesthesia: successful treatment with a somatostatin analogue. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:89.
364. Watson JT, Badner NH, Ali MJ. The prophylactic use of octreotide in a patient with ovarian carcinoid and valvular heart disease. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:798.
365. McCrirrick A, Hickman J. Octreotide for carcinoid syndrome. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38:339.
366. Quinlivan JK, Roberts WA. Intraoperative octreotide for refractory carcinoid-induced bronchospasm. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:400.
367. Dilger JA, Rho EH, Que FG, Sprung J. Octreotide-induced bradycardia and heart block during surgical resection of a carcinoid tumor. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:318–320.
368. Zimmer C, Kienbaum P, Wiesemes R, Peters J. Somatostatin does not prevent serotonin release and flushing during chemoembolization of carcinoid liver metastases. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1007–1011.
369. Drossman DA, McKee DC, Sandler RS, et al. Psychosocial factors in the irritable bowel syndrome: a multivariate study of patients and non-patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology*. 1988;95:701.
370. Bunn HF. Pathogenesis and treatment of a sickle cell disease. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:762.
371. Adams RJ, McKie VC, Hsu L, et al. Prevention of a first stroke by transfusions in children with sickle cell anemia and abnormal results on transcranial Doppler ultrasonography. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;339:5.
372. Platt OS, Thorington BD, Brambella DJ, et al. Pain in sickle cell disease: rates and risk factors. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325:11.
373. Vichinsky EP, Haberkern CM, Neumayr L, et al. A comparison of conservative and aggressive transfusion regimens in the perioperative management of sickle cell disease. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333:206.
374. Turhan A, Weiss LA, Mohandas N, et al. Primary role for adherent leukocytes in sickle cell vascular occlusion: a new paradigm. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2002;99:3047–3051.
375. Dunn A, Davies A, Eckert G, et al. Intraoperative death during caesarean section in a patient with sickle-cell trait. *Can J Anaesth*. 1987;34:67.
376. Hemming AE. Pro: exchange transfusion is required for sickle cell trait patients undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:663–665.
377. Messent M. Con: exchange transfusion is not required for sickle cell trait patients undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:666–667.
378. Kark JA, Posey DM, Schumaeker HR, Ruehle CJ. Sickle cell trait as a risk factor for sudden death in physical training. *N Engl J Med*. 1987;317:781.
379. Bischoff RJ, Williamson III A, Dalali MJ, et al. Assessment of the use of transfusion therapy perioperatively in patients with sickle cell hemoglobinopathies. *Ann Surg*. 1988;434:207.

379a. Howard J, Malfroy M, Llewelyn C, et al. The Transfusion Alternatives Preoperatively in Sickle Cell Disease (TAPS) study: a randomised, controlled, multicentre clinical trial. *Lancet*. 2013;381:930–938.

379b. DeBaun MR, Gordon M, McKinstry RC, et al. Controlled trial of transfusions for silent cerebral infarcts in sickle cell anemia. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371:699–710.

379c. Iughetti L, Bigi E, Venturelli D. Novel insights in the management of sickle cell disease in childhood. *World J Clin Pediatr*. 2016;5:25–34.

380. Tuck SM, James CE, Brewster EM, et al. Prophylactic blood transfusion in maternal sickle cell syndromes. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol*. 1987;94:121.

381. Ould Amar K, Rouvillain JL, Loko G. Perioperative transfusion management in patients with sickle cell anaemia undergoing a total hip arthroplasty: is there a role of red-cell exchange transfusion? A retrospective study in the CHU of Fort-de-France Martinique. *Transfus Clin Biol*. 2013;20:30–34.

382. Beutler E. The common anemias. *JAMA*. 1988;259:2433.

383. Orr D. Difficult intubation: a hazard in thalassemia. A case report. *Br J Anaesth*. 1967;39:585.

384. Pootrakul P, Hungsprenges S, Fucharoen S, et al. Relation between erythropoiesis and bone metabolism in thalassemia. *N Engl J Med*. 1981;304:1470–1473.

385. Lux SE, Wolfe LC. Inherited disorders of the red cell membrane skeleton. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1980;27:463.

385a. Ngouleun W, Biapa Nya PC, Pieme AC, Telefo PB. Risk assessment of hepatotoxicity among tuberculosis and human immunodeficiency virus/AIDS-coinfected patients under tuberculosis treatment. *Int J Mycobacteriol*. 2016;5:482–488.

386. Engelfriet CP, Overbeeke MA, van der Berne AE. Autoimmune hemolytic anemia. *Semin Hematol*. 1992;29:3.

387. Schilling RF. Is nitrous oxide a dangerous anesthetic for vitamin B_{12}–deficient subjects? *JAMA*. 1986;255:1605.

388. Beebe DS, Bergen L, Palahniuk RJ. Anesthesia utilizing plasmapheresis and forced air warming in a patient with severe cold agglutinin hemolytic anemia. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:1144.

389. Goodnough LT, Rudnick S, Price TH, et al. Increased preoperative collection of autologous blood with recombinant human erythropoietin therapy. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;321:1163.

389a. Liebman HA, Weitz IC. Autoimmune hemolytic anemia. *Med Clin North Am*. 2017;101:351–359.

390. Quesenberg PJ, Schafer AI, Schreiber AD, et al. Hematology. In: *American College of Physicians, Editor: Medical Knowledge Self-Assessment*. Philadelphia: American College of Physicians; 1991:374.

391. Tobias JD, Furman WL. Anesthetic considerations in patients receiving colony-stimulating factors (G-CSF and GM-CSF). *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:536.

392. Alavi JB, Root RK, Djerassi I, et al. A randomized clinical trial of granulocyte transfusion for infection in acute leukemia. *N Engl J Med*. 1977;296:706.

393. Gabrilove JL, Jakubowski A, Scher H, et al. Effect of granulocyte colony stimulating factor on neutropenia and associated morbidity due to chemotherapy for transitional-cell carcinoma of the urothelium. *N Engl J Med*. 1988;318:1414.

394. Quie PG. The white cells: use of granulocyte transfusions. *Rev Infect Dis*. 1987;9:189.

395. Crawford SW, Fisher L. Predictive value of pulmonary function tests before marrow transplantation. *Chest*. 1992;101:1257.

396. McCrae KR, Bussel JB, Mannucci PM, et al. Platelets: an update on diagnosis and management of thrombocytopenic disorders. *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program*. 2001:282–305.

397. Kelton JG. Management of the pregnant patient with idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. *Ann Intern Med*. 1983;99:796.

398. Douzinas EE, Markakis K, Karabinis A, et al. Early plasmapheresis in patients with thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. *Crit Care Med*. 1992;20:57.

398a. Sadler JE. Pathophysiology of thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. *Blood*. 2017;130:1181–1188.

398b. Tanhehco YC, Arepally G, Metjian A. Novel therapeutic approaches for thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2017;24:521–528.

398c. Krzych LJ, Nowacka E, Knapik P. Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. *Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther*. 2015;47:63–76.

398d. East JM, Cserti-Gazdewich CM, Granton JT. Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia in the critically ill patient. *Chest*. 2018;154:678–690.

399. Lewis BE, Wallis DE, Berkowitz MD, et al. Argatroban anticoagulant therapy in patients with heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. *Circulation*. 2001;103:1838–1843.

400. Bauer KA. The thrombophilias: well-defined risk factors with uncertain therapeutic implications. *Ann Intern Med*. 2001;135:367–373.

401. Levine JS, Branch DW, Rauch J. The antiphospholipid syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346:752–763.

402. Evans BE. Dental treatment for hemophiliacs: evaluation of dental program (1975-1976) at the Mount Sinai Hospital International Hemophilia Training Center. *Mt Sinai J Med*. 1977;44:409.

403. Zauber NP, Levin J. Factor IX levels in patients with hemophilia B (Christmas disease) following transfusion with concentrates of factor IX or fresh frozen plasma (FFP). *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 1977;56:213.

404. Brettler DB, Levine PH. Factor concentrates for treatment of hemophilia: which one to choose? *Blood*. 1989;73:2067.

405. Lee KF, Manchell J, Rankin JS, et al. Immediate versus delayed coronary grafting after streptokinase treatment: postoperative blood loss and clinical results. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1988;95:216.

406. Dickman CA, Shedd SA, Spetzler RF, et al. Spinal epidural hematoma associated with epidural anesthesia: complications of systemic heparinization in patients receiving peripheral vascular thrombolytic therapy. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:947.

407. Wademan BH, Galvin SD. Desmopressin for reducing postoperative blood loss and transfusion requirements following cardiac surgery in adults. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2014;18:360–370.

408. Brigden ML, Barnett JB. A practical approach to improving pain control in cancer patients. *West J Med*. 1987;146:580.

409. Drugs of choice for cancer chemotherapy. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 1997;39:21.

410. Bishop JM. Molecular themes in oncogenesis. *Cell*. 1991;64:235.

411. Chung F. Cancer, chemotherapy, and anesthesia. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1982;29:364.

412. Norwegian Multicenter Study Group. Timolol-induced reduction in mortality and reinfarction in patients surviving acute myocardial infarction. *N Engl J Med*. 1981;304:801.

413. Frishman WH, Furberg CD, Friedewald WT. Beta-adrenergic blockade for survivors of acute myocardial infarction. *N Engl J Med*. 1984;310:830.

414. Bloor BC, Flacke WE. Reduction in halothane anesthetic requirement by clonidine, an alpha-adrenergic agonist. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:741.

415. Weinger MB, Segal IS, Maze M. Dexmedetomidine, acting through central alpha-2 adrenoceptors, prevents opiate-induced muscle rigidity in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:242.

416. Maze M, Tranquilli W. Alpha-2 adrenoreceptor agonists: defining the role in clinical anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:581.

417. Segal IS, Jarvis DJ, Duncan SR, et al. Clinical efficacy of oral-transdermal clonidine combinations during the perioperative period. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:220.

418. Pandharipande PP, Pon BT, Herr DL, et al. Effect of sedation with dexmedetanidine vs. lorazepam on acute brain dysfunction in mechanically ventilated patients: the MENDS randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2007;298:2644–2653.

419. Katz AM. Cardiac ion channels. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328:1244.

420. Merin RG, Chelly JE, Hysing ES, et al. Cardiovascular effects of and interaction between calcium blocking drugs and anesthetics in chronically instrumented dogs. IV. Chronically administered oral verapamil and halothane, enflurane, and isoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:140.

421. Kapur PA, Matarazzo DA, Fung DM, Sullivan KB. The cardiovascular and adrenergic actions of verapamil or diltiazem in combination with propranolol during halothane anesthesia in the dog. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:122.

422. Drugs that cause psychiatric symptoms. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 1993;35:65.

423. Huyse FJ, Touw DJ, van Schijndel RS, et al. Psychotropic drugs and the perioperative period: a proposal for a guideline in elective surgery. *Psychosomatics*. 2006;47:8–22.

424. Michaels I, Serrins M, Shier NQ, Barash PG. Anesthesia for cardiac surgery in patients receiving monoamine oxidase inhibitors. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63.

425. Evans-Prosser CDG. The use of pethidine and morphine in the presence of monamine oxidase inhibitors. *Br J Anaesth*. 1968;40:279.

426. Roizen MF. Monoamine oxidase inhibitors: are we condemned to relive history, or is history no longer relevant? *J Clin Anesth*. 1990;2:293.
427. Noble WH, Baker A. MAO inhibitors and coronary artery surgery: a patient death. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:1061.
428. Hirshman CA, Linderman KS. Anesthesia and monoamine oxidase inhibitors. *JAMA*. 1989;261:3407.
429. Veith RC, Raskind MA, Caldwell JH, et al. Cardiovascular effects of tricyclic antidepressants in depressed patients with chronic heart disease. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;306:954.
430. Richelson E, El-Fakahany E. Changes in the sensitivity of receptors for neurotransmitters and the actions of some psychotherapeutic drugs. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1982;57:576.
431. Drugs for cardiac arrhythmias. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 1996;38:75.
432. Harrah MD, Way WL, Katzung BG. The interaction of d-tubocurarine with antiarrhythmic drugs. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;33:406.
433. Telivuo L, Katz RL. The effects of modern intravenous local anesthetics on respiration during partial neuromuscular block in man. *Anaesthesia*. 1970;25:30.
434. Miller RD, Way WL, Katzung BG. The potentiation of neuromuscular blocking agents by quinidine. *Anesthesiology*. 1967;28:1036.
435. Pittinger CB, Eryasa Y, Adamson R. Antibiotic-induced paralysis. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49:487.
436. Singh YN, Harvey AL, Marshall IG. Antibiotic-induced paralysis of the mouse phrenic nerve–hemidiaphragm preparation, and reversibility by calcium and by neostigmine. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;48:418.
437. Pittinger CB, Adamson R. Antibiotic blockade of neuromuscular function. *Annu Rev Pharmacol*. 1972;12:169.
438. Becker LD, Miller RD. Clindamycin enhances a non-depolarizing neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;45:84.
439. Snavely SR, Hodges GR. The neurotoxicity of antibacterial agents. *Ann Intern Med*. 1984;101:92.
440. McIndewar IC, Marshall RJ. Interactions between the neuromuscular blocking drug Org NC45 and some anaesthetic, analgesic and antimicrobial agents. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:785.
441. Navalgund AA, Alifimoff JK, Jakymec AJ, Bleyaert AL. Amiodarone-induced sinus arrest successfully treated with ephedrine and isoproterenol. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:414.
442. Kannan R, Nademane K, Hendrickson JA, et al. Amiodarone kinetics after oral doses. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1982;31:438.
443. Antimicrobial prophylaxis in surgery. *Treat Guidel Med Lett*. 2004;20:27.
444. Adverse systemic effects from ophthalmic drugs. *Med Lett Drugs Ther*. 1982;24:53.
445. *The Medical Letter Handbook of Adverse Drug Interactions*. Medical Letter; 2003.
446. American Diabetes Association: standards of medical care in diabetes: 2013. *Diabetes Care*. 2013;36(suppl 1):S11–S66.
447. Handelsman Y, Mechanick JI, Blonde L, et al. American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists medical guidelines for clinical practice for developing a diabetes mellitus comprehensive care plan. *Endocr Pract*. 2011;17(suppl 2):1–53.
448. Dellinger RP, Levy MM, Rhodes A, et al. Surviving Sepsis Campaign: international guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock, 2012. *Intensive Care Med*. 2013;39:165–228.
449. Qaseem A, Humphrey LL, Chou R, et al. Use of intensive insulin therapy for the management of glycemic control in hospitalized patients: a clinical practice guideline from the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med*. 2011;154:260–267.
450. Vaquerizo Alonso C, Grau Carmona T, Juan Diaz M. Metabolism and Nutrition Working Group of the Spanish Society of Intensive Care Medicine and Coronary Units: guidelines for specialized nutritional and metabolic support in the critically-ill patient: update. Consensus SEMICYUC-SENPE: hyperglycemia and diabetes mellitus. *Nutr Hosp*. 2011;26(suppl 2):46–49.
451. Societe francaise d'anesthesie et de reanimation, Societe de reanimation de langue francaise. Formal recommendations by the experts: glycemic control in intensive care unit and during anaesthesia. Societe francaise d'anesthesie et de reanimation. Societe de reanimation de langue francaise [in French]. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2009;28:410–415.
452. Lazar HL, McDonnell M, Chipkin SR, et al. The Society of Thoracic Surgeons practice guideline series: blood glucose management during adult cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;87:663–669.

33

Anesthetic Implications of Complementary and Alternative Therapies

SHIQIAN SHEN and LUCY LIN CHEN

KEY POINTS

- Herbal medication use has increased dramatically in the overall population and particularly in preoperative patients.
- Patients might not volunteer information unless they are queried specifically about herbal medication use.
- Although many commonly used herbs have side effects that affect drug metabolism, bleeding, and neuronal function, they are not subject to regulations on purity, safety, and efficacy.
- Knowledge of specific interactions and metabolism of herbs can provide practical guidelines to facilitate perioperative management.
- Other complementary therapies, including acupuncture and music therapy, have become increasingly popular and have shown positive results for certain pain conditions, albeit high-quality data are still lacking.
- Dietary supplements may influence gut microbiota, a consortium of diverse microorganisms residing in the gastrointestinal tract, which represents a new research frontier in perioperative medicine.

Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) has implications for physicians in general, but has particular importance for the perioperative period because of specific complications associated with certain therapies. Complementary medicine is defined as the addition of nonconventional therapies to accepted treatments; alternative medicine describes the use of nonconventional therapies in lieu of accepted treatments. They have become an important part of contemporary health care. The more popular term of "integrative health or integrative medicine" is used when complementary approaches are incorporated into mainstream health care.

According to a 2012 U.S. National Health Interview Survey (NHIS), 33.2% of adults and 11.6% of children (4-17 years of age) have used CAM.[1,1a] Visits to CAM practitioners exceed those to American primary care physicians,[2] and CAM is even more widely used in Europe, where herbal medicines are prescribed more frequently than conventional drugs are. Furthermore, patients undergoing surgery appear to use CAM more than the general population does.[3] Aside from the widespread use of CAM, perioperative physicians have a special interest in CAM therapies for several reasons. First, several commonly used herbal medications exhibit direct effects on the cardiovascular and coagulation systems. Second, some CAMs can interfere with conventional medications that are commonly given in the postoperative period. Finally, the therapeutic potential of CAM in the perioperative period is increasingly being described in the literature for reducing postoperative nausea, vomiting, and pain.

Despite the public enthusiasm for CAM, scientific knowledge in this area is still incomplete and often confusing for practitioners and patients. One recent study confirmed poor knowledge of this subject among physicians.[4] Recommendations for clinicians are often based on small clinical trials, case reports, animal studies, predictions derived from known pharmacology, and expert opinion. Research is essential because CAM therapies are often widely adopted by the public before adequate data are available to support their safety and efficacy. In 1991, Congress established the Office of Alternative Medicine, which is now known as the National Center for Complementary and Integrative Health. It operates within the National Institutes of Health.

Based on the 2012 NHIS study, the most commonly used CAMs were natural products, deep breathing exercises, meditation, chiropractic or osteopathic manipulation, massage, and yoga. Interestingly, a 2017 NHIS survey noted increases in the use of yoga and meditation by both adults and children (https://nccih.nih.gov/research/statistics/NHIS, Accessed 11/13/2018/tg). CAM practices can be classified into three general categories (Box 33.1).[5] This chapter is not intended as a comprehensive review of CAM. Specific therapies relevant to anesthesia are discussed, with a focus primarily on herbal medicines. Nonherbal dietary supplements, acupuncture, and music are also considered because they are relevant to perioperative care.

BOX 33.1 **Three Major Categories of Complementary and Alternative Medicine**

1. Natural products: this group includes a variety of products, such as herbs (also known as botanicals),vitamins and minerals, and probiotics. They are widely marketed, readily available to consumers, and often sold as dietary supplements.
2. Mind-body practices: yoga, chiropractic and osteopathic manipulation, meditation, and massage therapy are among the most popular mind and body practices used by adults. Other mind and body practices include acupuncture, relaxation techniques (such as breathing exercises, guided imagery, and progressive muscle relaxation), tai chi, qi gong, and hypnotherapy.
3. Others: traditional healers, Ayurvedic medicine, traditional Chinese medicine, homeopathy, naturopathy, and functional medicine.

Modified from the National Center for Complementary and Integrative Health. https://nccih.nih.gov/health/integrative-health. Accessed April 11, 2018.

Herbal Medicines

Preoperative use of herbal medicines has been associated with adverse perioperative events.[6] Surveys estimate that 22% to 32% of patients undergoing surgery use herbal medications.[7-9] In a recent retrospective review, 23% of surgery patients indicated the use of natural products, and older patients preferred dietary supplements.[10]

Herbal medicines can affect the perioperative period through several classic mechanisms: direct effects (i.e., intrinsic pharmacologic effects), pharmacodynamic interactions (i.e., alteration of the action of conventional drugs at effector sites), and pharmacokinetic interactions (e.g., alteration of the absorption, distribution, metabolism, and elimination of conventional drugs). Because approximately 50% of herbal medicine users take multiple herbs concomitantly[7] and 25% of herbal medicine users take prescription drugs,[11] adverse effects are difficult to predict and attribute.

Herbal medicines are associated with unique problems not usually found with conventional drugs.[12] Many of the issues complicating the understanding of herbal medications derive from the fact that they are classified as dietary supplements under the Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act of 1994. As such, the introduction of herbal medications does not require animal studies, clinical trials, or postmarketing surveillance. Under current law, the burden is shifted to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to prove products unsafe before they can be withdrawn from the market, such as the withdrawal of intranasal Zicam (cold medicine) after more than 130 reports of persistent anosmia.[13] Commercial herbal medicine preparations can have unpredictable pharmacologic effects resulting from inaccurate labeling, misidentified plants, adulterants, variations in natural potency, and unstandardized processing methods.

Two of the major problems confronting herbal medicine research involve quality control and added adulterants. In a recent clinical trial to treat human H1N1 influenza, an herbal formulation containing 12 different Chinese herbal medicines including licorice (genus *Glycyrrhiza*) was used.[14] Some of the other botanicals in the formula were not accurately identified. There are three *Glycyrrhiza* species on the market that may show a twofold difference when the three species are compared.[15]

Labeled active ingredients can vary tenfold in different commercial preparations.[16] In June 2007, the FDA issued regulations for current good manufacturing practices (GMPs) for dietary supplements.[17] This rule requires that proper controls be in place so that dietary supplements are processed in a consistent manner and meet quality standards. Especially emphasized are the identity, purity, strength, and composition of the products. Dietary products adhering to GMPs undoubtedly reduce the potential risk in the use of herbal medicines. Because this rule is somewhat similar to that for prescription drug GMPs, many supplement manufacturers believe that it is not practical for botanicals.[18]

Beyond quality control is the inclusion of biologically active pharmacologic adulterants in herbal medications and supplements. There are clinical consequences when quality control is lacking or herbal preparations are adulterated, as found in a weight-loss remedy study that revealed one manufacturer's incorrect substitution of an herb for another when the carcinogen aristolochic acid led to an outbreak of nephropathy and urothelial carcinoma.[19] In another event, more than 14 million capsules of asexual enhancement supplement were recalled because the compound on the label did not actually exist and the supplement did contain an analogue of sildenafil, which has not been tested in humans.[20] In light of these events, in August 2016, the FDA proposed a new guidance to evaluate the safety of supplements based on their history of use, formulation, proposed daily dose, and recommended duration of use. Although the guidance represents only a fraction of what is necessary for a new drug application, it requires some testing for tolerability in animals, but not in humans,[21] when products are marketed for consumption at doses substantively greater than those historically ingested. Any ingredient formulated or prepared in a novel manner is considered a new ingredient.

In this section, we discuss the preoperative assessment and management of patients who use herbal medicines and examine 11 herbal medicines that have the greatest effect on perioperative patient care: *Echinacea*, ephedra, garlic, ginger, *Ginkgo biloba*, ginseng, green tea, kava, saw palmetto, St. John's wort, and valerian (Table 33.1).

Preoperative Assessment and Management

Preoperative assessment should address the use of herbal medicines (see Table 33.1). One study found that 90% of anesthesia providers do not routinely ask about herbal medicine use.[22] Moreover, more than 70% of patients are not forthcoming about their herbal medicine use during routine preoperative assessment.[7] When a positive history of herbal medicine use is elicited, one in five patients is unable to properly identify the preparation being taken.[23] Asking patients to bring their herbal medicines

TABLE 33.1 Clinically Important Effects, Perioperative Concerns, and Recommendations for Perioperative Discontinuation of 11 Commonly Used Herbal Medicines

Herbs (Common Names)	Pharmacologic Effects	Perioperative Concerns	Discontinue Before Surgery
Echinacea (purple cone-flower root)	Activation of cell-mediated immunity	Allergic reactions Decreases effectiveness of immunosuppressants Potential for immunosuppression with long-term use	No data
Ephedra (ma huang)	Increases heart rate and blood pressure through direct and indirect sympathomimetic effects	Risk of myocardial ischemia and stroke from tachycardia and hypertension Ventricular arrhythmias with halothane Long-term use depletes endogenous catecholamines and may cause intraoperative hemodynamic instability Life-threatening interaction with MAO inhibitors	24 h
Garlic (ajo)	Inhibits platelet aggregation (may be irreversible) Increases fibrinolysis Equivocal antihypertensive activity	May increase risk of bleeding, especially when combined with other medications that inhibit platelet aggregation	7 days
Ginger	Antiemetic Antiplatelet aggregation	May increase risk of bleeding	No data
Ginkgo (duck-foot tree, maidenhair tree, silver apricot)	Inhibits platelet-activating factor	May increase risk of bleeding, especially when combined with other medications that inhibit platelet aggregation	36 h
Ginseng (American ginseng, Asian ginseng, Chinese ginseng, Korean ginseng)	Lowers blood glucose Inhibits platelet aggregation (may be irreversible) Increased PT/PTT in animals	Hypoglycemia May increase risk of bleeding May decrease anticoagulant effect of warfarin	7 days
Green tea	Inhibits platelet aggregation Inhibits thromboxane A2 formation	May increase risk of bleeding May decrease anticoagulant effect of warfarin	7 days
Kava (awa, intoxicating pepper, kawa)	Sedation Anxiolysis	May increase sedative effect of anesthetics Increase in anesthetic requirements with long-term use unstudied	24 h
Saw palmetto (dwarf palm, *Sabal*)	Inhibits 5α-reductase Inhibits cyclooxygenase	May increase risk of bleeding	No data
St. John's wort (amber, goat weed, hardhay, hypericum, Klamath weed)	Inhibits neurotransmitter reuptake MAO inhibition unlikely	Induction of cytochrome P450 enzymes; affects cyclosporine, warfarin, steroids, and protease inhibitors; may affect benzodiazepines, calcium channel blockers, and many other drugs Decreased serum digoxin levels Delayed emergence	5 days
Valerian (all heal, garden heliotrope, vandal root)	Sedation	May increase sedative effect of anesthetics Benzodiazepine-like acute withdrawal May increase anesthetic requirements with long-term use	No data

MAO, Monoamine oxidase; *PT,* prothrombin time; *PTT,* partial thromboplastin time.

and other dietary supplements with them at the time of the preoperative evaluation would be helpful. A positive history of herbal medicine use should alert one to the presence of undiagnosed disorders causing symptoms leading to self-medication. Patients who use herbal medicines may be more likely to avoid conventional diagnosis and therapy.[24]

In general, herbal medicines should be discontinued preoperatively. Patients who require nonelective surgery are not evaluated until the day of surgery or are noncompliant with instructions to discontinue herbal medications preoperatively. In this situation, anesthesia can usually proceed safely at the discretion of the anesthesia provider, who should be familiar with commonly used herbal medicines. For example, recent use of herbal medicines that inhibit platelet function (e.g., garlic, ginseng, *G. biloba*) may warrant specific strategies for procedures with substantial intraoperative blood loss (e.g., platelet transfusion) and those that alter the risk-benefit ratio of using certain anesthetic techniques (e.g., neuraxial blockade).

Preoperative discontinuation of all herbal medicines might not eliminate complications related to their use. Withdrawal of some of the herbal medicines can increase morbidity and mortality after surgery similar to regular medications.[25,26] The danger of abstinence after long-term use may be similar with herbal medicines such as valerian, which can produce acute withdrawal after long-term use.

Although the American Society of Anesthesiologists has no official standard or guideline for the preoperative use of herbal medications, public and professional educational information released by this organization suggests that herbals be discontinued at least 2 weeks before surgery.[25] Our review of the literature favors a more targeted approach. When pharmacokinetic data for the active constituents in an herbal medication are available, the timeframe for preoperative discontinuation can be tailored. Some herbal medications are eliminated quickly and may be discontinued near the time of surgery. For other herbal medicines, 2 weeks is recommended.[27]

Evidence-based estimates of herbal safety in the perioperative period are limited. One study of 601 patients who used traditional Chinese herbal medications suggested an infrequent rate of potential serious complications.[28] Clinicians should be familiar with commonly used herbal medications to recognize and treat any complications that might arise. Table 33.1 summarizes the clinically important effects, perioperative concerns, and recommendations for preoperative discontinuation of the 11 herbal medications that account for 30% of the dietary supplements sold in the United States.[29] The type of surgery and potential perioperative course should be considered in these clinical recommendations.

ECHINACEA

Three species of *Echinacea*, a member of the daisy family, are used for the prophylaxis and treatment of viral (decreasing the incidence and duration of the common cold), bacterial, and fungal infections, particularly those of upper respiratory origin, although its efficacy in fungal infections is doubtful.[30,31] The biological activity of *Echinacea* could be immunostimulatory, immunosuppressive, or antiinflammatory.[32] Although studies have not specifically addressed interactions between *Echinacea* and immunosuppressive drugs, experts generally warn against the concomitant use of *Echinacea* and these drugs because of the probability of diminished effectiveness.[33,34] In contrast to its immunostimulatory effects with short-term use, long-term use of more than 8 weeks is accompanied by the potential for immunosuppression[34] and a theoretically increased risk for postsurgical poor wound healing and opportunistic infections. A recent phytochemical study identified a potential immunosuppressant compound from *Echinacea*—cynarine.[35]

Information about Echinacea's pharmacokinetics is still limited.[36] *Echinacea* significantly reduced plasma concentrations of S-warfarin, but did not significantly affect warfarin pharmacodynamics and platelet aggregation in healthy subjects.[37] However, this herb should be discontinued as far in advance of surgery as possible when compromises in hepatic function or blood flow are anticipated.[38] In the absence of definitive information, patients with preexisting liver dysfunction should be cautious in using *Echinacea*.

EPHEDRA

Ephedra, known as *ma huang* in Chinese medicine, is a shrub native to central Asia. It is used to promote weight loss, increase energy, and treat respiratory conditions such as asthma and bronchitis. Ephedra contains alkaloids, including ephedrine, pseudoephedrine, norephedrine, methylephedrine, and norpseudoephedrine.[25] Commercial preparations can be standardized to a fixed ephedrine content. Publicity about adverse reactions to this herb prompted the FDA to bar its sale in 2004, but ephedra is still widely available via the Internet.

Ephedra causes dose-dependent increases in arterial blood pressure and heart rate. Ephedrine, the predominant active compound, is a noncatecholamine sympathomimetic that exhibits α_1, β_1, and β_2 activity indirectly by releasing endogenous norepinephrine (noradrenaline). These sympathomimetic effects have been associated with more than 1070 reported adverse events, including fatal cardiac and central nervous system complications.[39] Vasoconstriction and, in some cases, vasospasm of coronary and cerebral arteries can cause myocardial infarction and thrombotic stroke.[40] Ephedra can also affect cardiovascular function by causing hypersensitivity myocarditis, characterized by cardiomyopathy with myocardial lymphocyte and eosinophil infiltration.[41] Long-term use results in tachyphylaxis from depletion of endogenous catecholamine stores and can contribute to perioperative hemodynamic instability. In these situations, direct-acting sympathomimetics may be preferred as first-line therapy for intraoperative hypotension and bradycardia. Concomitant use of ephedra and monoamine oxidase inhibitors can result in life-threatening hyperpyrexia, hypertension, and coma. Finally, continuous ephedra is a rare cause of radiolucent kidney stones.[42] Recently, there was a case report describing acute angle-closure glaucoma caused by ephedra.[42a]

The pharmacokinetics of ephedrine have been studied in humans.[43,44] Ephedrine has an elimination half-life of 5.2 hours, with 70% to 80% of the compound excreted unchanged in urine. Based on the pharmacokinetic data and the known cardiovascular risks associated with ephedra, including myocardial infarction, stroke, and cardiovascular collapse from catecholamine depletion, this herb should be discontinued at least 24 hours before surgery.

GARLIC

Garlic is one of the most extensively researched medicinal plants. It has the potential to modify the risk for atherosclerosis by reducing arterial blood pressure, thrombus formation, and serum lipid and cholesterol concentrations.[45] These effects are primarily attributed to its sulfur-containing compounds, particularly allicin and its transformation products. Commercial garlic preparations can be standardized to a fixed alliin and allicin content.

Garlic inhibits platelet aggregation in vivo in a concentration-dependent fashion. The effect of one of its constituents, ajoene, is irreversible and can enhance the effect of other platelet inhibitors such as prostacyclin, forskolin, indomethacin, and dipyridamole.[46] Although the effects are not consistently demonstrated in volunteers, there is one case described in an 80 year old who had a spontaneous epidural hematoma develop that was attributed to continuous garlic use.[47] Garlic has interacted with warfarin, resulting in an increased international normalized ratio (INR).[48]

In addition to bleeding concerns, garlic can decrease systemic and pulmonary vascular resistance in laboratory animals, but this effect is marginal in humans.[49] Although there are insufficient pharmacokinetic data on garlic's constituents, the potential for irreversible inhibition of platelet function may warrant discontinuation of garlic at least 7 days before surgery, especially if postoperative bleeding is a particular concern or other anticoagulants are given. Additionally, garlic's pharmacokinetics should be considered when a risk-benefit analysis is made for neuraxial techniques.

GINGER

Ginger (*Zingiber officinale*) is a popular spice with a long history of use in Chinese, Indian, Arabic, and Greco-Roman herbal medicines. Ginger has a wide range of reported health benefits for those with arthritis, rheumatism, sprains, muscular aches, pains, sore throats, cramps, constipation, indigestion, nausea, vomiting, hypertension, dementia, fever, infectious diseases, and helminthiasis.[50] Ginger contains up to 3% volatile oil, mostly monoterpenoids and sesquiterpenoids.[51] Gingerols are representative compounds in ginger.[52]

Ginger is an antiemetic and has been used to treat motion sickness and to prevent nausea after laparoscopy.[53] The number of postoperative antiemetic medications was significantly reduced after aromatherapy with essential oil of ginger.[54] In another recent trial, ginger supplementation reduced the severity of acute chemotherapy-induced nausea in adult cancer patients and compared favorably to conventional antiemetics.[55]

In an in vitro study, gingerols and related analogues inhibited arachidonic acid–induced human platelet serotonin release and aggregation, with a potency similar to that of aspirin.[52] In another in vitro study, the antiplatelet effects of 20 ginger constituents were evaluated. Five constituents showed antiplatelet activities at relatively low concentrations. One of the ginger compounds (8-paradol) was the most potent cyclooxygenase-1 inhibitor and antiplatelet aggregation drug.[56] In a case report, a ginger-phenprocoumon combination resulted in an increased INR and epistaxis.[57] Although the sample size was relatively small, the platelet inhibition potential of ginger has been suggested in a pilot clinical study.[58] This result may warrant the discontinuation of ginger at least 2 weeks before surgery,

GINKGO

Ginkgo is derived from the leaf of *G. biloba* and has been used for cognitive disorders, peripheral vascular disease, age-related macular degeneration, vertigo, tinnitus, erectile dysfunction, and altitude sickness. Studies have suggested that ginkgo can stabilize or improve cognitive performance in patients with Alzheimer disease and multiinfarct dementia,[59] but not in healthy geriatric patients.[60] The compounds that might be responsible for its pharmacologic effects are the terpenoids and flavonoids. The two ginkgo extracts used in clinical trials are standardized to ginkgo-flavone glycosides and terpenoids.

Ginkgo alters vasoregulation, acts as an antioxidant, modulates neurotransmitter and receptor activity, and inhibits platelet-activating factor. Of these effects, inhibition of platelet-activating factor is of primary concern for the perioperative period. Although bleeding complications have not occurred in clinical trials, four cases of spontaneous intracranial bleeding,[61-63] one case of spontaneous hyphema,[64] and one case of postoperative bleeding after laparoscopic cholecystectomy[65] have been described when ginkgo was being taken.

Terpene trilactones are highly bioavailable when administered orally. The elimination half-lives of the terpene trilactones after oral administration are between 3 and 10 hours. For ginkgolide B, a dosage of 40 mg twice daily resulted in a higher area under the curve, and a longer half-life and residence time, than after a single 80-mg dose. A once daily dose of 80 mg guaranteed a larger maximum concentration peak (T_{max}) that was reached 2 to 3 hours after administration.[66] The pharmacokinetics of terpene trilactones in three different ginkgo preparations in human plasma[67] indicate that ginkgo should be discontinued at least 2 weeks before surgery to avoid bleeding.[38]

GINSENG

Among the several species of ginseng used for their pharmacologic effects, Asian ginseng *(Panax ginseng)* and American ginseng *(Panax quinquefolius)* are the most commonly described.[68] Ginseng has been labeled an "adaptogen" because it reputedly protects the body against stress and restores homeostasis.[69] Because its pharmacologic actions are attributed to the ginsenosides, a group of compounds known as *steroidal saponins,* many commercially available ginseng preparations have been standardized to ginsenoside content.[68,70]

The many heterogeneous and sometimes opposing effects of different ginsenosides[71,72] give ginseng a broad but incompletely understood pharmacologic profile including general health, fatigue, immune function, cancer, cardiovascular disease, diabetes mellitus, cognitive function, viral infections, sexual function, and athletic performance.[69] The underlying mechanism is similar to that classically described for steroid hormones. This herb decreases postprandial blood glucose in both healthy and type 2 diabetes patients,[73] an effect that can create unintended hypoglycemia in patients who have fasted before surgery.

Ginseng can alter coagulation pathways. The antiplatelet activity of panaxynol, a constituent of ginseng, may be irreversible in humans.[74] Ginseng extract and ginsenosides inhibit platelet aggregation in vitro[75,76] and prolong thrombin time and activated partial thromboplastin time in in vivo animal models.[77,78]

The clinical evidence implicating ginseng as a cause of bleeding is weak and based on only a few case reports.[79] Although ginseng may inhibit the coagulation cascade, one case associated its use with a significant decrease in warfarin anticoagulation.[80] Subsequently, a study in volunteers showed that American ginseng interfered with warfarin-induced anticoagulation,[81] reducing its anticoagulant effect. When prescribing warfarin, clinicians should specifically ask about ginseng use. In another clinical trial, warfarin's clearance was moderately increased with Asian ginseng.[82] Because warfarin is often used after orthopedic or vascular procedures, this herbal drug interaction can affect perioperative management in many patients.

In rats, the elimination half-lives are different after an intravenous infusion of ginseng, with ginsenosides Re and Rg1 between 0.7 and 4 hours, and ginsenosides Rb1 and Rd between 19 and 22 hours.[83] After oral administration of ginseng, ginsenoside Rb1 reached the maximum plasma concentration at approximately 4 hours with a prolonged half-life.[84,85] These data suggest that ginseng should be discontinued at least 48 hours before surgery. Because platelet inhibition by ginseng may be irreversible, ginseng use should be stopped at least 2 weeks before surgery.[38]

GREEN TEA

Tea from the *Camellia sinensis* is one of the most ancient and the second most widely consumed beverage in the world.[86,87] Tea can be classified into different types, such as green, oolong, and black. Green tea, which is not fermented and is derived directly from drying and steaming fresh tea leaves, contains polyphenolic compounds. Catechins in green tea account for 16% to 30% of its dry weight. Epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG), the most predominant catechin in green tea, is responsible for much of the biologic activity mediated by green tea.[86]

In an early in vitro and in vivo study, both green tea and EGCG significantly prolonged mouse tail bleeding time in conscious mice. They inhibited adenosine diphosphate- and collagen-induced rat platelet aggregation in a dose-dependent manner.[88] The antiplatelet activity can result from the inhibition of thromboxane A2 formation by preventing arachidonic acid liberation and thromboxane A2 synthase.[89,90] Regarding a possible adverse effect of green tea on platelets, one case reported thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura developed after a patient consumed a weight-loss product containing green tea.[91] On the other hand, drinking green tea could antagonize the anticoagulant effects of warfarin because green tea contains vitamin K.[92]

The half-life for EGCG in one study was between 1.9 and 4.6 hours[93] and in another study was observed to be between 2.2 and 3.4 hours.[94] Based on pharmacokinetic data and possible antiplatelet activity, green tea should be discontinued at least 7 days before surgery.

KAVA

Kava is derived from the dried root of the pepper plant *Piper methysticum*. Kava has gained widespread popularity as an anxiolytic and sedative. The kavalactones appear to be the source of kava's pharmacologic activity.[95]

Because of its psychomotor effects, kava was one of the first herbal medications expected to interact with anesthetics. The kavalactones can have many effects such as: (1) dose-dependent effects on the central nervous system, including antiepileptic, neuroprotective, and local anesthetic properties; (2) act as a sedative-hypnotic by potentiating inhibitory neurotransmission of γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA); (3) increased barbiturate sleep time in laboratory animals,[96] which might explain the mechanism of a coma attributed to an alprazolam-kava interaction[97]; (4) abuse potential, whether long-term use can result in addiction, tolerance, and acute withdrawal after abstinence is unknown; (5) increased γ-glutamyl transpeptidase levels with potential risk of hepatotoxicity[98]; and (6) produces "kava dermopathy," characterized by reversible scaly cutaneous eruptions.[99]

In an in vitro investigation, a kava compound (+)-kavain suppressed the aggregation of human platelets. Kava inhibits cyclooxygenase with the potential to decrease renal blood flow and to interfere with platelet aggregation. Consumption of kava has potential cardiovascular effects that could manifest in the perioperative period.[100,101] Although kava has been banned in Europe since 2002, it is available in North America and many countries in the Pacific region. A concentration-based response relationship can occur with hepatotoxicity, even leading to numerous cases of liver transplantation.[102-104]

Peak plasma levels occur 1.8 hours after an oral dose, and the elimination half-life of kavalactones is 9 hours.[105] Unchanged kavalactones and their metabolites undergo renal and fecal elimination.[106] Pharmacokinetic data and the possibility for enhancement of the sedative effects from anesthetics suggest that kava should be discontinued at least 24 hours before surgery. Earlier discontinuation probably should be considered when surgical procedures are expected to compromise hepatic function or blood flow.

SAW PALMETTO

Saw palmetto, which is used by more than 2 million men in the United States to treat symptoms associated with benign prostatic hypertrophy, is of questionable efficacy for this purpose.[107] The major constituents of saw palmetto are fatty acids and their glycerides (i.e., triacylglycerides and monoacylglycerides), carbohydrates, steroids, flavonoids, resin, pigment, tannin, and volatile oil. The pharmacologic activity of saw palmetto has not been attributed to a single compound.

Although the mechanism of action of saw palmetto is not known, multiple mechanisms have been proposed.[108] Saw palmetto extract, like finasteride, inhibits 5α-reductase in vitro; however, results of in vivo studies have been inconsistent.[109] Other proposed mechanisms are inhibition of estrogen and androgen receptors, binding of autonomic receptors, blocking of prolactin receptor signal transduction, interference with fibroblast proliferation, induction of apoptosis, inhibition of α_1-adrenergic receptors, and antiinflammatory effects.

In a patient undergoing craniotomy, saw palmetto was associated with excessive intraoperative bleeding that required termination of the procedure.[109] Another case of hematuria and coagulopathy in a patient who used saw palmetto was reported.[110] This complication was attributed to saw palmetto's antiinflammatory effects, specifically the inhibition of cyclooxygenase and subsequent platelet dysfunction. Because there are no pharmacokinetic or clinical data for saw palmetto, specific recommendations for preoperative discontinuation cannot be made.

ST. JOHN'S WORT

St. John's wort is the common name for *Hypericum perforatum,* and has been used for mental health and depression conditions. A multicenter clinical trial concluded that St. John's wort is not effective in the treatment of major depression.[111] The compounds believed to be responsible for its pharmacologic activity are hypericin and hyperforin.[112] Commercial preparations are often standardized to a fixed hypericin content of 0.3%.

St. John's wort exerts its effects by inhibiting reuptake of serotonin, norepinephrine, and dopamine.[113] Concomitant use of this herb with or without serotonin reuptake inhibitors can create a syndrome of central serotonin excess.[114] Although early in vitro data implicated monoamine oxidase inhibition as a possible mechanism of action, a number of later investigations have demonstrated that monoamine oxidase inhibition is insignificant in vivo.[115]

Use of St. John's wort can significantly increase the metabolism of many concomitantly administered drugs, some of which are vital to the perioperative care of certain patients. There is induction of the cytochrome P450 3A4 isoform,[116] and interactions with substrates of the 3A4 isoform, including indinavir sulfate,[117] ethinylestradiol,[118] and cyclosporine,[119] have been documented. There are important clinical consequences of this metabolic effect, particularly in transplant patients. In two case reports of heart transplant patients, after taking St. John's wort the patients' plasma cyclosporine concentrations became subtherapeutic and acute transplant rejection resulted. After stopping St. John's wort, plasma cyclosporine remained within the therapeutic range with no further episodes of rejection (Fig. 33.1).[120] In one series of 45 organ transplant patients, St. John's wort was associated with an average 49% decrease in blood cyclosporine levels.[121] Other P450 3A4 substrates commonly used in the perioperative period include alfentanil, midazolam, lidocaine, calcium channel blockers, and 5-hydroxytryptamine receptor antagonists. In addition, the cytochrome P450 2C9 isoform also may be induced, which results in decreased anticoagulant effect of warfarin, a substrate of the 2C9 isoform, in seven reported cases.[118] Other 2C9 substrates include the nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs. Furthermore, the enzyme induction caused by St. John's wort may be more pronounced when other enzyme inducers, which could include other herbal medications, are taken concomitantly. St. John's wort also affects digoxin pharmacokinetics.[115]

The single-dose and steady-state pharmacokinetics of hypericin, pseudohypericin, and hyperforin have been determined in humans.[122,123] After oral administration, peak plasma levels of hypericin and hyperforin are achieved in 6.0 and 3.5 hours, respectively, and their median elimination half-lives are 43.1 and 9.0 hours, respectively. Long half-life and altered metabolism of many drugs make concomitant use of St. John's wort a particular risk in the perioperative setting. Pharmacokinetic data suggest that this herbal medication should be discontinued at least 5 days before surgery. Discontinuation is especially important in patients awaiting organ transplantation or in those who might require oral anticoagulation postoperatively. Moreover, these patients should be advised to avoid taking St. John's wort postoperatively.

VALERIAN

Valerian *(Valeriana officinalis)* is an herb that is native to temperate regions of the Americas, Europe, and Asia. It is used as a sedative, particularly in the treatment of insomnia, and virtually all herbal sleep aids contain valerian.[124] Valerian contains many compounds acting synergistically, but the sesquiterpenes are the primary source of valerian's pharmacologic effects. Commercially available preparations may be standardized to valerenic acid.

Valerian produces dose-dependent sedation and hypnosis.[125] These effects are probably mediated through modulation of GABA neurotransmission and receptor function.[126] Valerian increased barbiturate sleep time in experimental animals.[127] In several randomized, placebo-controlled trials in humans, there was a mild subjective improvement in sleep with valerian, especially when used for 2 weeks or more.[128,129] Objective tests have had less consistent results, with little or no improvement in sleep noted.[130] In one patient, valerian withdrawal appeared to mimic an acute benzodiazepine withdrawal syndrome characterized by

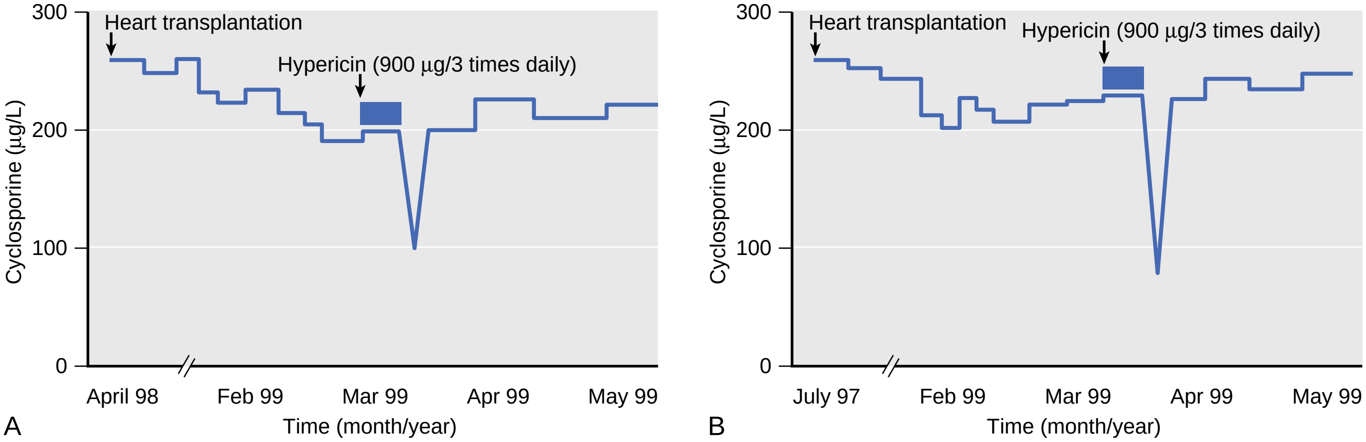


Fig. 33.1 **Cyclosporine concentrations in two patients (A and B) after heart transplantation. Treatment with St. John's wort extract containing 900 µg of hypericin was associated with a drop in cyclosporine values below the therapeutic range and acute transplant rejection.** (From Breidenbach T, Hoffmann MW, Becker T, et al. Drug interaction of St John's wort with cyclosporine. *Lancet*. 2000;355:1912.)

delirium, cardiac complications after surgery, and attenuation of the symptoms by administration of a benzodiazepine.[131] Based on these findings, valerian should potentiate the sedative effects of anesthetics and adjuvants that act at the GABA receptor, such as midazolam.

The pharmacokinetics of valerian's constituents have not been studied, although their effects may be short-lived. Abrupt discontinuation in patients who may be physically dependent on valerian risks benzodiazepine-like withdrawal. In these individuals, this herbal medication should be gradually decreased with close medical supervision over the course of several weeks before surgery. If such tapering is not feasible, physicians can advise patients to continue taking valerian until the day of surgery. Based on the mechanism of action and a reported case of efficacy,[131] benzodiazepines can treat withdrawal symptoms should they develop in the postoperative period.

OTHER HERBAL MEDICINES

In a survey conducted in 2007,[1] the top 10 herbal medicines also included soy isoflavones, grape seed extract, and milk thistle. There are no reports of adverse effects or perioperative risks from these herbs.

Although boldo *(Peumus boldus)*, Danshen *(Salvia miltiorrhiza)*, Dong quai *(Angelica sinensis)*, and papaya *(Carica papaya)* are encountered less frequently, it may be prudent to discontinue their use 2 weeks before surgery because they have shown antiplatelet aggregation activity and herb-drug interactions.[132]

COMMON DIETARY SUPPLEMENTS

Herbal medicines fall into the broader category of dietary supplements that also includes vitamins, minerals, amino acids, enzymes, animal extracts, prebiotics, and probiotics. Data on the safety of these agents in the perioperative period are scant. High-dose vitamin use, particularly of the fat-soluble vitamins (i.e., A, D, E, and K), can be associated with acute and chronic toxicity. Drug interactions for coenzyme Q_{10}, glucosamine, chondroitin, sulphate, and fish oil have been sufficiently documented to merit inclusion in this chapter. Prebiotics and probiotics have become increasingly popular in research, in the context of the rapidly evolving field of gut microbiome, adding to the current knowledge of perioperative medicine.

Coenzyme Q_{10}

Coenzyme Q_{10} (CoQ_{10}), or ubidecarenone, is a single-constituent antioxidant compound that is structurally related to vitamin K. It is widely promoted as an antioxidant. Endogenous CoQ_{10} can prevent the membrane transition pore from opening, because it counteracts several apoptotic events, such as DNA fragmentation, cytochrome c release, and membrane potential depolarization.[52]

Of importance, this compound interacts with warfarin and was investigated in rats.[133] Following oral administration of 1.5 mg/kg of racemic warfarin to rats during an 8-day oral regimen of CoQ_{10} (10 mg/kg daily), no apparent effect was observed on serum protein binding of warfarin enantiomers. Treatment with CoQ_{10} did not affect the absorption and distribution of the S- and R-enantiomers of warfarin, but it increased total serum clearance of both R- and S-warfarin. The increased clearance values are likely due to acceleration of certain metabolic pathways and renal excretion of the warfarin enantiomers.

An in vitro study showed a predicted 32% and 17% increase in the total clearance of S- and R-warfarin respectively with co-administration of 100 mg CoQ_{10}.[134] CoQ_{10} may decrease the effects of warfarin,[135] but results were inconsistent in another controlled, clinical trial.[136] In 171 patients, co-administration of CoQ_{10} with warfarin appeared to increase the risk of bleeding.[137] Based on the clinical information regarding drug interaction and reported prolonged elimination half-life (38-92 hours) after a single oral dose,[138] CoQ_{10} should be discontinued at least 2 weeks before surgery.

GLUCOSAMINE AND CHONDROITIN SULFATE

Glucosamine and chondroitin sulfate are widely used for joint disorders by many patients undergoing orthopedic procedures. Although their mode of action may be complex, glucosamine and chondroitin sulfate have been widely accepted as supplements in the management of osteoarthritis (OA) because they are the essential components of proteoglycan in normal cartilage.[139] When a large-scale trial evaluated glucosamine and chondroitin sulfate alone or in combination, pain was not reduced in a group of patients with OA of the knee. Exploratory analyses suggested that the two in combination might be effective in a subgroup of patients with moderate-to-severe knee pain.[140]

Long-term clinical data regarding the safety of glucosamine and chondroitin sulfate alone or in combination are limited. Use of chondroitin sulfate alone is well tolerated and without significant adverse drug interaction.[139] One concern regarding the use of glucosamine is its potential to cause or worsen diabetes in animal models[141]; this effect is supported by clinical studies.[142] In a report from the FDA MedWatch database, there were 20 cases of complications involving glucosamine or glucosamine-chondroitin sulfate use with warfarin. Coagulation was altered as manifested by increased INR or increased bleeding or bruising.[143]

When glucosamine is taken orally, 90% is absorbed. Because of extensive first-pass metabolism, only 25% bioavailability is achieved by oral administration compared with bioactivity of 96% with intravenous administration.[144] Peak plasma levels occurred 4 hours after an oral dose and declined to baseline after about 48 hours.[145] Chondroitin sulfate was absorbed slowly after oral ingestion with a plasma peak at 8.7 hours and decline to baseline at about 24 hours.[146] Considering the reported interaction between glucosamine-chondroitin and warfarin, these supplements should be discontinued 2 weeks before surgery, especially if warfarin will be given during the perioperative period.

FISH OIL

Intake of fish oil supplements containing omega-3 fatty acids (eicosapentaenoic acid and docosahexaenoic acid) reduces the incidence of many chronic diseases that involve inflammatory processes, including cardiovascular diseases, inflammatory bowel disease, cancer, rheumatoid arthritis, and neurodegenerative illnesses.[147] However, omega-3 fatty acid did not reduce the rate of death in patients with cardiovascular risk in one study.[148] A metaanalysis of efficacy also concluded that omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acid supplementation does not decrease the risk of all-cause mortality, cardiac death, sudden death, myocardial infarction, or stroke based on relative and absolute measures of association.[149] This article included many studies of patients with complex risk factors.

Omega-3 fatty acids, however, can inhibit platelet aggregation and increase bleeding risk by the following studies: (1) In vitro experiments have demonstrated an antiplatelet aggregate effect,[150] and inhibition correlated with platelet cyclic adenosine monophosphate levels.[151] (2) In vivo studies have showed decreased platelet aggregation but do not influence bleeding time.[152,153] (3) The inhibition of platelet aggregation was gender specific in a clinical study.[154]

Although evidence for significant bleeding concerns is not found in clinical trials,[155,156] several case reports have illustrated a possible interaction between warfarin and omega-3 fatty acids.[157] Extremely elevated INR associated with warfarin in combination with omega-3 fatty acids was found in two cases.[158,159] These reports suggest that fish oil be discontinued 2 weeks before surgery, especially for patients taking large doses.

PREBIOTICS AND PROBIOTICS

A prebiotic is a nondigestible food ingredient that beneficially affects the host by selectively stimulating the growth and activity of one or a limited number of bacteria in the colon that has the potential to improve host health. A probiotic is a live microbial feed supplement that beneficially affects the host by improving its intestinal microbial balance.[159a] Both prebiotics and probiotics can perturbate the gut microbiota, a consortium of diverse microorganisms residing in the gastrointestinal tract, with significant influence in energy metabolism, immune system development, neurologic function, and behaviors. Research on gut microbiota has made significant progress in recent years owing to the technological advancement of next-generation DNA sequencing and high-throughput data processing.

Targeting gut microbiota using fecal transplantation or fecal capsules to treat recurrent *Clostrisium difficile* infection is under intense investigation, with a few trials indicating promising results.[159b] However, a recent trial comparing oral probiotics with oral antibiotics for elective colorectal surgery showed that conventional oral antibiotics preparation in addition to mechanical bowel preparation is better than oral probiotics with mechanical bowel preparation.[159c] Studies have implicated gut microbiota in visceral hypersensitivity (irritable bowel syndrome), inflammatory pain, and more recently, neuropathic pain.[159d-159f] Moreover, gut microbiota have been shown to modulate the central nervous system function, including anxiety/depression and cognition. Despite the rapidly evolving field of gut microbiome, data on perioperative use of prebiotics and probiotics are scarce. Future research is warranted to investigate potential roles of prebiotics and probiotics in the perioperative setting, particularly in volatile anesthetics sensitivity, postoperative pain control, and postoperative cognitive dysfunction.

Other Dietary Supplements

Other top 10 dietary supplements include flaxseed oil, fiber or psyllium, cranberry, melatonin, methylsulfonylmethane, and lutein.[1] No special concerns have been published associated with bleeding or other perioperative risks from the use of these supplements.

Summary

Commonly used herbal medications can have direct and indirect effects in the perioperative period. Although there is little direct evidence for discontinuation timing, emerging knowledge of the underlying biology of these medications and review of case reports suggest that herbal medications should be considered in the perioperative plan.

Acupuncture

MECHANISM AND GENERAL PRACTICE

Although acupuncture can reduce preoperative anxiolysis, intraoperative anesthetic requirements, and postoperative ileus, and can support cardiovascular function, it has been most widely studied to control postoperative pain and to prevent or treat nausea and vomiting.[160]

Acupuncture has been used in China for more than 3000 years, and in the 1970s, it gained international attention as a treatment for a variety of diseases. In 1974, Dr. Bonica became the first pain physician invited by the Chinese government as a member of an American medical delegation to assess the utility of acupuncture in surgical procedures. He witnessed more than 28 surgeries personally and spoke with a large number of surgeons as well as anesthesia providers. In the report subsequently published in JAMA,[160a] he pointed out, “it (acupuncture) may prove extremely useful in relieving postoperative pain thus obviating the depressant effects of narcotics usually employed for this purpose.” Traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) is the basis for acupuncture practice. According to TCM, the human body operates on 12 bilaterally distributed channels (6 yin channels and 6 yang channels) in conjunction with two midline channels in the ventral and dorsal aspects of the body, respectively. Acupuncture is the stimulation of anatomic locations on the skin by a variety of techniques that can be classified as invasive (e.g., needles, injections) or noninvasive (e.g., transcutaneous electrical stimulation, pressure, laser). Needles inserted into the skin can be stimulated by manual manipulation, moxibustion (i.e., burning a substance to produce heat), pressure, laser, and electricity. A scientific basis may exist for acupuncture. Acupuncture stimulates high-threshold, small-diameter nerves that activate the spinal cord, brainstem (i.e., periaqueductal gray area), and hypothalamic (i.e., arcuate) neurons, which trigger endogenous opioid mechanisms.[161] The effect of acupuncture analgesia can be reversed by administration of naloxone.[162] Other mechanisms such as modulation of immune function,[163] inhibition of the inflammatory response,[164] regulation of neuropeptide gene expression,[165] and alteration in hormonal levels[166] have been proposed. The development of neuroimaging tools, such as positron emission tomography[167] and functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI),[168,169] make noninvasive studies of acupuncture's effects on human brain activity possible. Studies using positron emission tomography have demonstrated that the thalamic asymmetry present in patients suffering from chronic pain was reduced after acupuncture treatment. Other studies using fMRI have pointed to relationships between particular acupoints and activation of the visual cortex.[170] Using a noninvasive imaging technique called Bi-Digital O-Ring Test, researchers found that each meridian is connected to a representative area in the cerebral cortex, suggesting that the meridian system defined in the theories of Chinese medicine may overlap with distinct supraspinal regions.[170a] Electroacupuncture, particularly at low frequency, is associated with widespread fMRI signal increases in the anterior insula area, limb, and paralimbic structures. These humoral and neuronal changes induced by acupuncture form the basis for its clinical use.

According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, more than 50 million procedures are performed each year in the United States, including more than 1 million hip and knee replacements. Most surgical procedures are associated with postoperative pain, for which opioids are the mainstay of treatment. However, opioid usage is associated with a high incidence of side effects including respiratory depression, reduced gastrointestinal motility, sedation, and itching. Chronic exposure to high-dose opioids can also induce opioid tolerance and dependence. It is therefore highly desirable to develop alternative therapies that provide adequate postoperative pain relief with minimal side effects. In this context, acupuncture for acute postoperative pain control has gained significant interest, including its use for oral-maxillofacial and neck surgeries, sternotomy/thoracotomy, abdominal/pelvic surgeries, and orthopedic and spine surgeries. Studies have shown that acupuncture can lead to improved pain scores or reduced opioid requirements postoperatively. Lao and associates carried out a randomized, double-blinded, and placebo-controlled trial on postoperative dental pain ($N = 39$).[170b] The acupuncture group received acupuncture for about 20 minutes with intermittent manual manipulation to trigger "De Qi" sensation—a sensation of numbness, distension, or electrical tingling at the needling site. The control group underwent placebo acupuncture treatment at the identical acupuncture points to the acupuncture group but without needle insertion into the skin. Mean pain-free postoperative time was significantly longer in the acupuncture group (172.9 minutes) than in the placebo group (93.8 minutes). Pain medication requirements were significantly less in the acupuncture group than in the control group. Of note, this study also ruled out psychological variables as confounders for their observed benefits of acupuncture.

It is important to note that many of the studies on clinical applications of acupuncture have insufficient sample size, high dropout rates, inadequate follow-up, and poorly defined illnesses, enrollment criteria, and outcome measures.[161] Additionally, many of the clinical trials are single center studies, which could potentially demonstrate larger treatment effects than multicenter studies.[170c]

Side effects of acupuncture treatments include bruising or bleeding at the needle insertion site, transient vasovagal response, infection, dermatitis, and retained needle fragments. The occurrence of adverse events during acupuncture treatment is considered extremely low. In a survey that included 34,407 acupuncture treatments, there were no reported events of serious side effects and only 43 cases of significant mild side effects were noted, such as nausea, fainting, and bruising.[170d,e] Recently, the safety of acupuncture was confirmed in a cohort of cancer patients with thrombocytopenia.[170f]

ACUPUNCTURE FOR POSTOPERATIVE NAUSEA AND VOMITING

One of the most promising indications for acupuncture is to prevent postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV). PONV results in patient dissatisfaction, delayed discharge, unanticipated hospital admission, and the use of resources. Drugs have been the mainstay of management, however these have limited effectiveness, are associated with adverse effects, and can be costly. Acupuncture prevents PONV compared with sham acupuncture or no treatment.[160] In two early controlled trials, acupuncture prevented PONV in the pediatric population[171,172]; however, one literature review of 10 research studies examining the use of acupressure and acupuncture in adults concluded that it is not effective in preventing and managing PONV.[173] Other clinical studies have found that acupuncture prevents PONV and results in a greater degree of adult patient satisfaction.[174,175] For many of the trials in both adults and children, the PONV acupuncture point was P6 or PC6 (i.e., Nei guan or Pericardium 6).[173,176] The P6 acupuncture point is located between the palmaris longus and flexor carpi radialis muscle tendons, 4 cm proximal to the distal wrist crease and 1 cm below the skin (Fig. 33.2). Intraoperative stimulation of the P6 acupuncture point reduced the incidence of PONV, and its efficacy was similar to that of antiemetic drugs.[177] Stimulation of the acupuncture point should be initiated before induction of anesthesia.[178] Postoperative stimulation may be just as or more effective.[179] In children, stimulation immediately before emergence and in the recovery room has been effective. A recent metaanalysis for pediatric tonsillectomy indicated that acupuncture at the P6 acupuncture point is effective in preventing PONV.[179a] Some anesthesiologists anecdotally report tapping a small needle cap or other piece of smooth plastic over the P6 point as an effective means of acupressure stimulation.

Studies often differ in acupuncture method: duration and timing of stimulation, unilateral versus bilateral stimulation, and type of stimulation (i.e., needles with or without additional stimulation, acupressure, transcutaneous electrical stimulation, cutaneous laser stimulation, injection of a 50% dextrose solution, or capsicum plaster). Data to compare the effectiveness, safety, and costs of different methods of stimulation are inadequate.

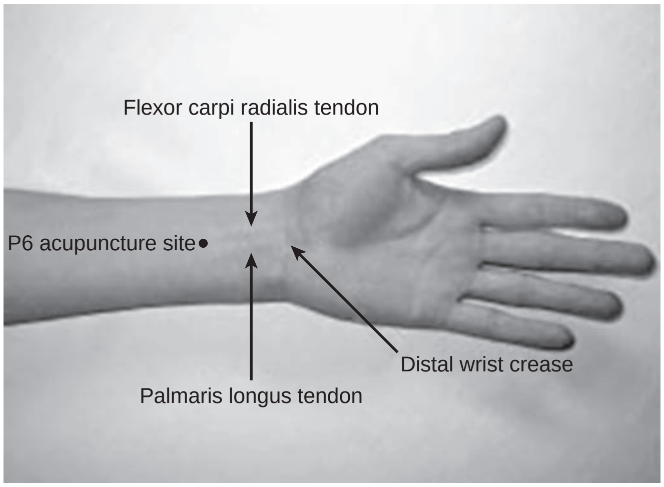


Fig. 33.2 The P6 acupuncture point is located between the palmaris longus and flexor carpi radialis muscle tendons, 4 cm proximal to the distal wrist crease and 1 cm below the skin.

DEEP BREATHING

Deep breathing exercises are performed as part of a relaxation technique. With this method, a subject consciously slows breathing and focuses on taking deep breaths.[180] Deep breathing can help reduce abdominal and surgical pain.[181,182]

Studies of postoperative pain relief with breath control were reported in the 1970s.[183,184] Since then, many studies have reported its efficacy against postoperative pain in adult patients[181,185]; prevented postoperative pulmonary complications[186]; and decreased pain in pediatric patients.[199]

Fast or forced deep breathing can also increase postoperative pain.[187] Thus, those who assist patients in postoperative pain management should encourage deep breathing exercises that are performed slowly, smoothly, and gently. Slow, deep breathing relaxation exercises have been used successfully as an adjunct to opioids for postoperative pain management in patients who had coronary bypass surgery[188]; however, after abdominal surgery, deep breathing was ineffective for pain reduction in older patients because pulmonary complications developed postoperatively.[189] Most patients who receive deep breathing education think it is useful, and the exercise was effective in increasing their feelings of rapport with staff and intention to follow their doctor's directives.[190] Results from a recent trial demonstrated that slow, deep breathing had analgesic effects with increased vagal cardiac activity.[191] Slow, deep breathing relaxation can also decrease the sensation of postoperative nausea.[192,193]

Music Therapy

Music therapy is the clinical, evidence-based use of music interventions to accomplish individualized therapeutic goals. Because music can be used for diverse applications, music therapists practice in a variety of healthcare and education settings.[194] Music for pain relief benefits individuals experiencing a low to moderate amount of pain more than those experiencing a high degree of pain.[195] A patient's preferred music should be considered when it is used for pain relief. The increase of endogenous opioids through music may be the reason for pain relief.[194]

Perioperatively, music can decrease preoperative anxiety, reduce intraoperative sedative and analgesic requirements, and increase patient satisfaction. Patient-selected music can reduce patient-controlled sedative requirements during spinal anesthesia and analgesic requirements during lithotripsy.[196] Music in the preoperative setting can reduce anxiety without affecting physiologic measures of stress.[197,198] Music can also increase patient satisfaction and reduce systolic blood pressure during cataract surgery after retrobulbar block.[199] Perioperative music can reduce arterial pressure, anxiety, and pain among women undergoing mastectomy for breast cancer.[200] As a noninvasive intervention, the low sensory stimulation of music reduced anxiety and increased cooperation in children undergoing induction of anesthesia.[201]

Music therapy interventions that have targeted nausea, both anticipatory or after treatment, have had conflicting results.[194] One study showed that a patient's preferred music for listening during chemotherapy infusion was effective in decreasing the onset and occasion of nausea.[202] In another study, listening to music with a personal message from the physician yielded no difference in chemotherapy-induced side effects compared with not listening to music during chemotherapy.[203] Some studies have found no effect on PONV from music therapy,[204,205] yet PONV was reduced in hospitalized transplant patients postoperatively.[206] Although the exact mechanism is not well understood, music therapy has been an alternative option to mainstream therapies in healthcare settings to reduce patient pain, anxiety, and perioperative stress.[207] Another use of music is in the intensive care unit. A recent clinical trial observed that among patients in the intensive care unit who received acute ventilator support for respiratory failure, patient-directed music intervention resulted in more reduction in anxiety and sedation frequency and intensity compared with usual care.[208] In addition, music can attenuate cardiovascular variability and nociceptive effects.[209,210]

Conclusion

One of the fastest changing aspects of health care is the growing public and scientific interest in CAM. An increasing number of patients and physicians have combined integrative medicine into their treatment plans. Because of the significant increase in demand for CAM therapies, most U.S. medical schools have added coursework on integrative medicine. Anesthesiologists are the physicians to manage these patients perioperatively, and therefore should have updated knowledge for the modalities of complementary and integrative medicine. To manage herbal medications in the perioperative period, their possible direct and indirect effects should be recognized based on an understanding of the underlying pharmacology. Surgery and anesthesia can usually proceed safely if potential complications are anticipated and can be minimized. As CAM therapies

TABLE 33.2 Printed and World Wide Web Sources of Herbal Medicine Information

Source	Comments
Physicians' Desk Reference for Herbal Medicines	
Encyclopedia of Dietary Supplements	
Commission E Monographs	Safety and efficacy information on herbs and phyto-medicinals; published in German, translated to English, 1998
Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition, Food and Drug Administration: https://www.fda.gov/AboutFDA/CentersOffices/OfficeofFoods/CFSAN/default.htm	Clinicians should use this site to report adverse events associated with herbal medicines and other dietary supplements. Sections also contain safety, industry, and regulatory information
National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine, National Institutes of Health: http://nccam.nih.gov/	This site contains fact sheets about alternative therapies, consensus reports, and databases
Agricultural Research Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture https://www.ars.usda.gov/	The site contains an extensive phytochemical database with search capabilities
Quackwatch: http://www.quackwatch.com	Although this site addresses all aspects of health care, there is a considerable amount of information covering complementary and herbal therapies
National Council Against Health Fraud: http://www.ncahf.org	This site focuses on health fraud with a position paper on over-the-counter herbal remedies
HerbMed: http://www.herbmed.org	This site contains information on numerous herbal medications, with evidence for activity, warnings, preparations, mixtures, and mechanisms of action. There are short summaries of important research publications with Medline links.
ConsumerLab: http://www.consumerlab.com	This site is maintained by a corporation that conducts independent laboratory investigations of dietary supplements and other health products

gain popularity in the United States, patients are likely to accept some alternative modalities during the perioperative period, such as acupuncture, deep breathing, and musical intervention. These modalities are easy to administer, have a rapid onset of action, are cost effective, and produce minimal side effects. Based on preliminary studies, perioperative use of CAM therapies may be an adjunct for management of multiple symptoms including pain, anxiety, and nausea and vomiting, among others. Additional large, well-designed trials are required to verify current observations on the effectiveness of CAM and to answer the concerns of possible side effects. Although medical schools are beginning to incorporate CAM into their curricula, it is important for anesthesiologists to stay informed about CAM therapies (Table 33.2).

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Chong-Zhi Wang, Chun-Su Yuan, and Jonathan Moss for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Clarke TC, et al. National Health Statistics Reports; 2016:1–12.
1a. Nahin RL, et al. National Health Statistics Reports; 2016:1–11.
2. Eisenberg DM, et al. *JAMA*. 1998;280:1569.
3. Wang SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1010.
4. Ashar BH, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167:966.
5. NIH/NCCAM. *What is complementary and alternative medicine?* 2011. http://nccam.nih.gov/health/whatiscam. Accessed 23.05.12.
6. Ang-Lee MK, et al. *JAMA*. 2001;286:208.
7. Kaye AD, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2000;12:468.
8. Tsen LC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:148.
9. Leung JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1062.
10. King AR, et al. *BMC Complement Altern Med*. 2009;9:38.
11. Gardiner P, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2006;166:1968.
12. De Smet PA. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:2046.
13. Food and Drug Administration. *FDA advises consumers not to use certain Zicam cold remedies—intranasal zinc product linked to loss of sense of smell*; 2009. http://www.fda.gov/Newsevents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/ucm167065.htm. Accessed 02.06.12.
14. Wang C, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2011;155:217.
15. Rauchensteiner F, et al. *J Pharm Biomed Anal*. 2005;38:594.
16. Harkey MR, et al. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2001;73:1101.
17. Food and Drug Administration. *Dietary supplement current good manufacturing practices (CGMPs) and interim final rule (IFR) facts*; 2007. Accessed 01.05.12. http://www.fda.gov/Food/GuidanceRegulation/CGMP/ucm110858.htm.
18. Shao A. *HerbalGram*. 2010;89(55).
19. Nortier JL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:1686.
20. Cohen PA. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366:389.
21. Food and Drug Administration. *Draft guidance for industry: dietary supplements: new dietary ingredient notifications and related issues*; 2016. http://www.fda.gov/food/guidanceregulation/guidancedocumentsregulatoryinformation/dietarysupplements/ucm257563.htm. Accessed 09.29.18.
22. McKenzie AG, Simpson KR. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22:597.
23. Kassler WJ, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 1991;151:2281.
24. Cirigliano M, Sun A. *JAMA*. 1998;280:1565.
25. Kennedy JM, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2000;49:353.
26. Tonnesen H, et al. *BMJ*. 1999;318:1311.
27. Leak JA. *ASA Newsletter*. 2000;64(6).
28. Lee A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:454.
29. Blumenthal M, et al. *HerbalGram*. 2010;90(64).
30. Barrett BP, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2002;137:939.
31. Shah SA, et al. *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2007;7:473.
32. Benson JM, et al. *Food Chem Toxicol*. 2010;48:1170.
33. Pepping J. *Am J Health Syst Pharm*. 1999;56:121.
34. Boullata JI. *Nace AM: Pharmacotherapy*. 2000;20:257.
35. Dong GC, et al. *Pharm Res*. 2009;26:375.
36. Toselli F, et al. *Life Sci*. 2009;85(97).
37. Abdul MI, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2010;69:508.
38. Rowe DJ, Baker AC. *Aesthet Surg J*. 2009;29:150.
39. Nightingale SL. *JAMA*. 1997;278(15).
40. Haller CA, Benowitz NL. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;343:1833.
41. Zaacks SM, et al. *J Toxicol Clin Toxicol*. 1999;37:485.
42. Powell T, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 1998;33:153.
42a Ryu SJ, et al. *Medicine*. 2017;96:e9257.
43. White LM, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 1997;37:116.
44. Gurley BJ, et al. *Ther Drug Monit*. 1998;20(439).
45. Stevinson C, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2000;133:420.
46. Srivastava KC. *Prostaglandins Leukot Med*. 1986;22:313.
47. Rose KD, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1990;26:880.
48. Sunter WH. *Pharm J*. 1991;246:722.

49. Silagy CA, Neil HA. *J Hypertens*. 1994;12:463.
50. Coates PM, et al. *Encyclopedia of Dietary Supplements*. 2nd ed. London: Informa Healthcare; 2010.
51. Ali BH, et al. *Food Chem Toxicol*. 2008;46:409.
52. Koo KL, et al. *Thromb Res*. 2001;103(387).
53. Pongrojpaw D, Chiamchanya C. *J Med Assoc Thai*. 2003;86:244.
54. Hunt R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(597).
55. Ryan JL, et al. *Support Care Cancer*. 2012;20:1479.
56. Nurtjahja-Tjendraputra E, et al. *Thromb Res*. 2003;111(259).
57. Kruth P, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2004;38:257.
58. Young HY, et al. *Am J Chin Med*. 2006;34:545.
59. Le Bars PL, et al. *JAMA*. 1997;278:1327.
60. Solomon PR, et al. *JAMA*. 2002;288:835.
61. Rowin J, Lewis SL. *Neurology*. 1996;46:1775.
62. Matthews MK. *Neurology*. 1998;50:1933.
63. Vale S. *Lancet*. 1998;352(36).
64. Rosenblatt M, Mindel J. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;336:1108.
65. Fessenden JM, et al. *Am Surg*. 2001;67:33.
66. Drago F, et al. *J Ocul Pharmacol Ther*. 2002;18:197.
67. Woelkart K, et al. *Phytother Res*. 2010;24:445.
68. Qi LW, et al. *Nat Prod Rep*. 2011;28:467.
69. Attele AS, et al. *Biochem Pharmacol*. 1999;58:1685.
70. Zhang HM, et al. *J Pharm Biomed Anal*. 2012;62:258.
71. Sievenpiper JL, et al. *J Am Coll Nutr*. 2003;22:524.
72. Sengupta S, et al. *Circulation*. 2004;110(1219).
73. Attele AS, et al. *Diabetes*. 2002;51:1851.
74. Teng CM, et al. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 1989;990:315.
75. Lee WM, et al. *J Pharm Pharmacol*. 2008;60:1531.
76. Lee JG, et al. *Pharmazie*. 2009;64:602.
77. Jin YR, et al. *Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2007;100(170).
78. Endale M, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2012.
79. Beckert BW, et al. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2007;120:2044.
80. Janetzky K, Morreale AP. *Am J Health Syst Pharm*. 1997;54:692.
81. Yuan CS, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;141:23.
82. Jiang X, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2006;46:1370.
83. Li X, et al. *Biomed Chromatogr*. 2007;21:735.
84. Munekage M, et al. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 2011;39:1784.
85. Wang CZ, et al. *Am J Chin Med*. 2011;39:1161.
86. Wang CZ, et al. *Am J Chin Med*. 2007;35:543.
87. Stote KS, Baer DJ. *J Nutr*. 2008;138:1584S.
88. Kang WS, et al. *Thromb Res*. 1999;96:229.
89. Son DJ, et al. *Prostaglandins Leukot Essent Fatty Acids*. 2004;71(25).
90. Jin YR, et al. *J Cardiovasc Pharmacol*. 2008;51:45.
91. Liatsos GD, et al. *Am J Health Syst Pharm*. 2010;67:531.
92. Taylor JR, Wilt VM. *Ann Pharmacother*. 1999;33:426.
93. Ullmann U, et al. *J Int Med Res*. 2003;31:88.
94. Gawande S, et al. *Phytother Res*. 2008;22:802.
95. Pepping J. *Am J Health Syst Pharm*. 1999;56:957.
96. Jamieson DD, et al. *Arch Int Pharmacodyn Ther*. 1989;301:66.
97. Almeida JC, Grimsley EW. *Ann Intern Med*. 1996;125:940.
98. Brown AC, et al. *Clin Toxicol (Phila)*. 2007;45(549).
99. Norton SA, Ruze P. *J Am Acad Dermatol*. 1994;31:89.
100. Gleitz J, et al. *Planta Med*. 1997;63:27.
101. Raduege KM, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2004;16:305.
102. Teschke R, Schulze J. *JAMA*. 2010;304:2174.
103. Escher M, et al. *BMJ*. 2001;322(139).
104. Russmann S, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2001;135:68.
105. Chen SE, et al. *Eur J Drug Metab Pharmacokinet*. 1980;5:161.
106. Rasmussen AK, et al. *Xenobiotica*. 1979;9(1).
107. Bent S, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:557.
108. Gerber GS. *J Urol*. 2000;163:1408.
109. Cheema P, et al. *J Intern Med*. 2001;250:167.
110. Villanueva S, Gonzalez J. *Bol Asoc Med P R*. 2009;101(48).
111. Shelton RC, et al. *JAMA*. 2001;285:1978.
112. Muller WE, et al. *Pharmacopsychiatry*. 1998;31(suppl 1):16.
113. Neary JT, Bu Y. *Brain Res*. 1999;816(358).
114. Brown TM. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2000;18:231.
115. Johne A, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1999;66:338.
116. Ernst E. *Lancet*. 1999;354:2014.
117. Piscitelli SC, et al. *Lancet*. 2000;355:547.
118. Yue QY, et al. *Lancet*. 2000;355:576.
119. Barone GW, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2000;34:1013.
120. Ruschitzka F, et al. *Lancet*. 2000;355:548.
121. Breidenbach T, et al. *Lancet*. 2000;355:1912.
122. Kerb R, et al. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother*. 1996;40:2087.
123. Biber A, et al. *Pharmacopsychiatry*. 1998;31(suppl 1):36.
124. Houghton PJ. *J Pharm Pharmacol*. 1999;51:505.
125. Hendriks H, et al. *Planta Med*. 1981;42:62.
126. Ortiz JG, et al. *Neurochem Res*. 1999;24:1373.
127. Leuschner J, et al. *Arzneimittelforschung*. 1993;43:638.
128. Gooneratne NS. *Clin Geriatr Med*. 2008;24:121.
129. Taavoni S, et al. *Menopause*. 2011;18:951.
130. Taibi DM, et al. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2007;11:209.
131. Garges HP, et al. *JAMA*. 1998;280:1566.
132. Basila D, Yuan CS. *Thromb Res*. 2005;117:49.
133. Zhou S, Chan E. *Drug Metabol Drug Interact*. 2001;18:99.
134. Zhou Q, et al. *Curr Drug Metab*. 2005;6:67.
135. Spigset O. *Lancet*. 1994;344:1372.
136. Engelsen J, et al. *Ugeskr Laeger*. 2003;165:1868.
137. Shalansky S, et al. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2007;27:1237.
138. Evans M, et al. *J Diet Suppl*. 2010;7:314.
139. Miller KL, Clegg DO. *Rheum Dis Clin North Am*. 2011;37:103.
140. Clegg DO, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:795.
141. Tang J, et al. *Diabetes*. 2000;49:1492.
142. Scroggie DA, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2003;163:1587.
143. Knudsen JF, Sokol GH. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2008;28:540.
144. Setnikar I, Rovati LC. *Arzneimittelforschung*. 2001;51:699.
145. Persiani S, et al. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage*. 2007;15:764.
146. Volpi N. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage*. 2003;11:433.
147. Wall R, et al. *Nutr Rev*. 2010;68:280.
148. ORIGIN. Trial investigators. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:309.
149. Rizos EC, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1024.
150. Dyerberg J. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci*. 1981;294:373.
151. Lazarus SA, Garg ML. *Asia Pac J Clin Nutr*. 2003;12(suppl):S20.
152. Sarris GE, et al. *Circulation*. 1989;80:I109.
153. Thorwest M, et al. *Thromb Res*. 2000;99:203.
154. Phang M, et al. *Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis*. 2012;22:109.
155. Harris WS. *Am J Cardiol*. 2007;99:44C.
156. Salisbury AC, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2012;109:13.
157. Stanger MJ, et al. *Nutr Rev*. 2012;70:107.
158. Buckley MS, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2004;38:50.
159. Jalili M, Dehpour AR. *Arch Med Res*. 2007;38:901.
159a. Cerdo T, et al. *Nutrients*. 2017;9.
159b. Kelly CR, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2016;165:609.
159c. Sadahiro S, et al. *Surgery*. 2014;155:493.
159d. Luczynski P, et al. *eLife*. 2017;6.
159e. Shen S, et al. *Nat Neurosci*. 2017;20:1213.
159f. Amaral FA, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:2193.
160. Chernyak GV, Sessler DI. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1031.
160a. Bonica JJ. *JAMA*. 1974;228:1544.
161. Kaptchuk TJ. *Ann Intern Med*. 2002;136:374.
162. Tsunoda Y, et al. *Bull Tokyo Med Dent Univ*. 1980;27:89.
163. Mori H, et al. *Neurosci Lett*. 2002;320:21.
164. Son YS, et al. *Neurosci Lett*. 2002;319:45.
165. Guo HF, et al. *Brain Res Mol Brain Res*. 1996;43:167.
166. Gerhard I, Postneek F. *Gynecol Endocrinol*. 1992;6:171.
167. Hsieh JC, et al. *Neurosci Lett*. 2001;307:105.
168. Wu MT, et al. *Radiology*. 1999;212:133.
169. Hui KK, et al. *Hum Brain Mapp*. 2000;9(13).
170. Shen J. *J Altern Complement Med*. 2001;7(suppl 1):S121.
170a. Omura Y. *Acupunct Electrother Res*. 1989;14:155.
170b. Lao L, et al. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 1999;125:567.
170c. Dechartres A, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2011;155:39.
170d. White A, et al. *BMJ*. 2001;323:485.
170e. White A, et al. *Acupunct Med*. 2001;19:84.
170f. Cybularz PA, et al. *Med Acupunct*. 2015;27:224–229.
171. Rusy LM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:300.
172. Wang SM, Kain ZN. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:359.
173. Abraham J. *J Perioper Pract*. 2008;18:543.
174. El-Deeb AM, Ahmady MS. *J Anesth*. 2011;25:698.
175. Kim YH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:819.
176. Allen TK, Habib AS. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1308.
177. Arnberger M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:903.
178. Dundee JW, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;63:612.
179. White PF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:367.
179a. Shin HC, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 2016;126:1761.

180. NIH/NCCAM: *Relaxation techniques for health: an introduction*; 2011. http://nccam.nih.gov/sites/nccam.nih.gov/files/D461.pdf. Accessed 16.05.12.
181. Celli BR, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1984;130(12).
182. Peretz B, Gluck GM. *J Clin Pediatr Dent*. 1999;24(5).
183. Stewart E. *Am J Nurs*. 1976;76:958.
184. Hudson S. *RN*. 1977;40(37).
185. Heffline MS. *J Post Anesth Nurs*. 1990;5:321.
186. Thomas JA, McIntosh JM. *Phys Ther*. 1994;74(3).
187. Bucciero M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1266.
188. Friesner SA, et al. *Heart Lung*. 2006;35(269).
189. Shea RA, et al. *Heart Lung*. 2002;31(440).
190. Downey LV, Zun LS. *South Med J*. 2009;102:688.
191. Chalaye P, et al. *Pain Med*. 2009;10:1334.
192. Camu F, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1992;25(suppl 6).
193. Gunta K, et al. *Orthop Nurs*. 2000;19(39).
194. Burns DS, Robb SL. Music therapy. In: Yuan CS, Bieber EJ, Bauer BA, eds. *Textbook of Complementary and Alternative Medicine*. 2nd ed. Abingdon, UK: Informa Healthcare; 2006:271.
195. Engwall M, Duppils GS. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2009;24:370.
196. Pittman S, Kridli S. *Int Nurs Rev*. 2011;58:157.
197. Wang SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1489.
198. Ni CH, et al. *J Clin Nurs*. 2012;21:620.
199. Cruise CJ, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44:43.
200. Binns-Turner PG, et al. *AANA J*. 2011;79:S21.
201. Kain ZN, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1260.
202. Ezzone S, et al. *Oncol Nurs Forum*. 1998;25:1551.
203. Sabo CE, Michael SR. *Cancer Nurs*. 1996;19(283).
204. Laurion S, Fetzer SJ. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2003;18:254.
205. Fetzer SJ, et al. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2005;20:249.
206. Madson AT, Silverman MJ. *J Music Ther*. 2010;47:220.
207. Nilsson U. *AORN J*. 2008;87:780.
208. Chlan LL, et al. *JAMA*. 2013;309:2335.
209. Bradt J, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010:CD006902.
210. Cooke M, et al. *J Nurs Pract*. 2010;16:125.

References

1. Clarke TC, Nahin RL, Barnes PM, Stussman BJ. Use of Complementary Health Approaches for Musculoskeletal Pain Disorders Among Adults: United States, 2012. *National Health Statistics Reports*. 2016:1–12.

1a. Nahin RL, Barnes PM, Stussman BJ. Expenditures on Complementary Health Approaches: United States, 2012. *National Health Statistics Reports*. 2016:1–11.

2. Eisenberg DM, Davis RB, Ettner SL, et al. Trends in alternative medicine use in the United States, 1990-1997: results of a follow-up national survey. *JAMA*. 1998;280(1569).

3. Wang SM, Caldwell-Andrews AA, Kain ZN. The use of complementary and alternative medicines by surgical patients: a follow-up survey study. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1010.

4. Ashar BH, Rice TN, Sisson SD. Physicians' understanding of the regulation of dietary supplements. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007; 167:966.

5. NIH/NCCAM. *What is complementary and alternative medicine?* 2011. http://nccam.nih.gov/health/whatiscam. Accessed 23.05.12.

6. Ang-Lee MK, Moss J, Yuan CS. Herbal medicines and perioperative care. *JAMA*. 2001;286:208.

7. Kaye AD, Clarke RC, Sabar R, et al. Herbal medicines: current trends in anesthesiology practice—a hospital survey. *J Clin Anesth*. 2000;12:468.

8. Tsen LC, Segal S, Pothier M, Bader AM. Alternative medicine use in presurgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:148.

9. Leung JM, Dzankic S, Manku K, Yuan S. The prevalence and predictors of the use of alternative medicine in presurgical patients in five California hospitals. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1062.

10. King AR, Russett FS, Generali JA, Grauer DW. Evaluation and implications of natural product use in preoperative patients: a retrospective review. *BMC Complement Altern Med*. 2009;9:38.

11. Gardiner P, Graham RE, Legedza AT, et al. Factors associated with dietary supplement use among prescription medication users. *Arch Intern Med*. 2006;166:1968.

12. De Smet PA. Herbal remedies. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:2046.

13. Food and Drug Administration. *FDA advises consumers not to use certain Zicam cold remedies—intranasal zinc product linked to loss of sense of smell*; 2009. Accessed 02.06.12. http://www.fda.gov/Newsevents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/ucm167065.htm.

14. Wang C, Cao B, Liu QQ, et al. Oseltamivir compared with the Chinese traditional therapy maxingshigan-yinqiaosan in the treatment of H1N1 influenza: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 2011;155:217.

15. Rauchensteiner F, Matsumura Y, Yamamoto Y, et al. Analysis and comparison of Radix Glycyrrhizae (licorice) from Europe and China by capillary-zone electrophoresis (CZE). *J Pharm Biomed Anal*. 2005;38:594.

16. Harkey MR, Henderson GL, Gershwin ME. Variability in commercial ginseng products: an analysis of 25 preparations. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2001;73:1101.

17. Food and Drug Administration. *Dietary supplement current good manufacturing practices (CGMPs) and interim final rule (IFR) facts*; 2007. Accessed 11.08.14. http://www.fda.gov/Food/GuidanceRegulation/CGMP/ucm110858.htm.

18. Shao A. US dietary supplement cGMPs and ingredient supplier qualification. *HerbalGram*. 2010;89(55).

19. Nortier JL, Martinez MC, Schmeiser HH, et al. Urothelial carcinoma associated with the use of a Chinese herb (Aristolochia fangchi). *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:1686.

20. Cohen PA. Assessing supplement safety—the FDA's controversial proposal. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366:389.

21. Food and Drug Administration. Draft guidance for industry: dietary supplements: new dietary ingredient notifications and related issues. https://www.fda.gov/food/guidanceregulation/guidancedocumentsregulatoryinformation/dietarysupplements/ucm257563.htm. Accessed 29.09.18.

22. McKenzie AG, Simpson KR. Current management of patients taking herbal medicines: a survey of anaesthetic practice in the UK. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22:597.

23. Kassler WJ, Blanc P, Greenblatt R. The use of medicinal herbs by human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients. *Arch Intern Med*. 1991;151:2281.

24. Cirigliano M, Sun A. Advising patients about herbal therapies. *JAMA*. 1998;280:1565.

25. Kennedy JM, van Rij AM, Spears GF, et al. Polypharmacy in a general surgical unit and consequences of drug withdrawal. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2000;49:353.

26. Tonnesen H, Rosenberg J, Nielsen HJ, et al. Effect of preoperative abstinence on poor postoperative outcome in alcohol misusers: randomised controlled trial. *BMJ*. 1999;318:1311.

27. Leak JA. Herbal medicines: what do we need to know? *ASA Newsletter*. 2000;64(6).

28. Lee A, Chui PT, Aun CS, et al. Incidence and risk of adverse perioperative events among surgical patients taking traditional Chinese herbal medicines. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:454.

29. Blumenthal M, Lindstrom A, Lynch ME, Rea P. Herb sales continue growth—up 3.3% in 2010. *HerbalGram*. 2010;90(64).

30. Barrett BP, Brown RL, Locken K, et al. Treatment of the common cold with unrefined echinacea. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 2002;137:939.

31. Shah SA, Sander S, White CM, et al. Evaluation of echinacea for the prevention and treatment of the common cold: a meta-analysis. *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2007;7:473.

32. Benson JM, Pokorny AJ, Rhule A, et al. Echinacea purpurea extracts modulate murine dendritic cell fate and function. *Food Chem Toxicol*. 2010;48:1170.

33. Pepping J. *Echinacea Am J Health Syst Pharm*. 1999;56:121.

34. Boullata JI, Nace AM. Safety issues with herbal medicine. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2000;20:257.

35. Dong GC, Chuang PH, Chang KC, et al. Blocking effect of an immunosuppressive agent, cynarin, on CD28 of T-cell receptor. *Pharm Res*. 2009;26:375.

36. Toselli F, Matthias A, Gillam EM. Echinacea metabolism and drug interactions: the case for standardization of a complementary medicine. *Life Sci*. 2009;85:97.

37. Abdul MI, Jiang X, Williams KM, et al. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic interactions of echinacea and policosanol with warfarin in healthy subjects. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2010;69:508.

38. Rowe DJ, Baker AC. Perioperative risks and benefits of herbal supplements in aesthetic surgery. *Aesthet Surg J*. 2009;29:150.

39. Nightingale SL. From the Food and Drug Administration. *JAMA*. 1997;278(15).

40. Haller CA, Benowitz NL. Adverse cardiovascular and central nervous system events associated with dietary supplements containing ephedra alkaloids. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;343:1833.

41. Zaacks SM, Klein L, Tan CD, et al. Hypersensitivity myocarditis associated with ephedra use. *J Toxicol Clin Toxicol*. 1999;37:485.

42. Powell T, Hsu FF, Turk J, Hruska K. Ma-huang strikes again: ephedrine nephrolithiasis. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 1998;33(153).

42a. Ryu SJ, Shin YU, Kang MH, Cho HY, Seong M. Bilateral acute myopia and angle closure glaucoma induced by Ma-huang (Ephedra): a case report. *Medicine*. 2017;96:e9257.

43. White LM, Gardner SF, Gurley BJ, et al. Pharmacokinetics and cardiovascular effects of ma-huang (Ephedra sinica) in normotensive adults. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 1997;37:116.

44. Gurley BJ, Gardner SF, White LM, Wang PL. Ephedrine pharmacokinetics after the ingestion of nutritional supplements containing Ephedra sinica (ma huang). *Ther Drug Monit*. 1998;20:439.

45. Stevinson C, Pittler MH, Ernst E. Garlic for treating hypercholesterolemia. A meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *Ann Intern Med*. 2000;133:420.

46. Srivastava KC. Evidence for the mechanism by which garlic inhibits platelet aggregation. *Prostaglandins Leukot Med*. 1986;22:313.

47. Rose KD, Croissant PD, Parliament CF, Levin MB. Spontaneous spinal epidural hematoma with associated platelet dysfunction from excessive garlic ingestion: a case report. *Neurosurgery*. 1990;26:880.

48. Sunter WH. Warfarin and garlic. *Pharm J*. 1991;246:722.

49. Silagy CA, Neil HA. A meta-analysis of the effect of garlic on blood pressure. *J Hypertens*. 1994;12:463.

50. Coates PM, Betz JM, Blackman MR, et al. *Encyclopedia of Dietary Supplements*. 2nd ed. London: Informa Healthcare; 2010.

51. Ali BH, Blunden G, Tanira MO, Nemmar A. Some phytochemical, pharmacological and toxicological properties of ginger (Zingiber officinale Roscoe): a review of recent research. *Food Chem Toxicol*. 2008;46:409.

52. Koo KL, Ammit AJ, Tran VH, et al. Gingerols and related analogues inhibit arachidonic acid–induced human platelet serotonin release and aggregation. *Thromb Res*. 2001;103:387.

53. Pongrojpaw D, Chiamchanya C. The efficacy of ginger in prevention of post-operative nausea and vomiting after outpatient gynecological laparoscopy. *J Med Assoc Thai*. 2003;86:244.
54. Hunt R, Dienemann J, Norton HJ, et al. Aromatherapy as treatment for postoperative nausea: a randomized trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:597.
55. Ryan JL, Heckler CE, Roscoe JA, et al. Ginger (Zingiber officinale) reduces acute chemotherapy-induced nausea: a URCC CCOP study of 576 patients. *Support Care Cancer*. 2012;20:1479.
56. Nurtjahja-Tjendraputra E, Ammit AJ, Roufogalis BD, et al. Effective anti-platelet and COX-1 enzyme inhibitors from pungent constituents of ginger. *Thromb Res*. 2003;111:259.
57. Kruth P, Brosi E, Fux R, et al. Ginger-associated overanticoagulation by phenprocoumon. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2004;38:257.
58. Young HY, Liao JC, Chang YS, et al. Synergistic effect of ginger and nifedipine on human platelet aggregation: a study in hypertensive patients and normal volunteers. *Am J Chin Med*. 2006;34:545.
59. Le Bars PL, Katz MM, Berman N, et al. A placebo-controlled, double-blind, randomized trial of an extract of Ginkgo biloba for dementia. *North American EGb Study Group, JAMA*. 1997;278:1327.
60. Solomon PR, Adams F, Silver A, et al. Ginkgo for memory enhancement: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2002;288:835.
61. Rowin J, Lewis SL. Spontaneous bilateral subdural hematomas associated with chronic Ginkgo biloba ingestion. *Neurology*. 1996;46:1775.
62. Matthews MK. Association of Ginkgo biloba with intracerebral hemorrhage. *Neurology*. 1998;50:1933.
63. Vale S. Subarachnoid haemorrhage associated with Ginkgo biloba. *Lancet*. 1998;352:36.
64. Rosenblatt M, Mindel J. Spontaneous hyphema associated with ingestion of Ginkgo biloba extract. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;336:1108.
65. Fessenden JM, Wittenborn W, Clarke L. Gingko biloba: a case report of herbal medicine and bleeding postoperatively from a laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Am Surg*. 2001;67:33.
66. Drago F, Floriddia ML, Cro M, Giuffrida S. Pharmacokinetics and bioavailability of a Ginkgo biloba extract. *J Ocul Pharmacol Ther*. 2002;18:197.
67. Woelkart K, Feizlmayr E, Dittrich P, et al. Pharmacokinetics of bilobalide, ginkgolide A and B after administration of three different Ginkgo biloba L. preparations in humans. *Phytother Res*. 2010;24:445.
68. Qi LW, Wang CZ, Yuan CS. Isolation and analysis of ginseng: advances and challenges. *Nat Prod Rep*. 2011;28:467.
69. Attele AS, Wu JA, Yuan CS. Ginseng pharmacology: multiple constituents and multiple actions. *Biochem Pharmacol*. 1999;58:1685.
70. Zhang HM, Li SL, Zhang H, et al. Holistic quality evaluation of commercial white and red ginseng using a UPLC-QTOF-MS/MS-based metabolomics approach. *J Pharm Biomed Anal*. 2012;62:258.
71. Sievenpiper JL, Arnason JT, Leiter LA, Vuksan V. Null and opposing effects of Asian ginseng (Panax ginseng C.A. Meyer) on acute glycemia: results of two acute dose escalation studies. *J Am Coll Nutr*. 2003;22:524.
72. Sengupta S, Toh SA, Sellers LA, et al. Modulating angiogenesis: the yin and the yang in ginseng. *Circulation*. 2004;110:1219.
73. Attele AS, Zhou YP, Xie JT, et al. Antidiabetic effects of Panax ginseng berry extract and the identification of an effective component. *Diabetes*. 2002;51:1851.
74. Teng CM, Kuo SC, Ko FN, et al. Antiplatelet actions of panaxynol and ginsenosides isolated from ginseng. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 1989;990:315.
75. Lee WM, Kim SD, Park MH, et al. Inhibitory mechanisms of dihydroginsenoside Rg3 in platelet aggregation: critical roles of ERK2 and cAMP. *J Pharm Pharmacol*. 2008;60:1531.
76. Lee JG, Lee YY, Kim SY, et al. Platelet antiaggregating activity of ginsenosides isolated from processed ginseng. *Pharmazie*. 2009;64:602.
77. Jin YR, Yu JY, Lee JJ, et al. Antithrombotic and antiplatelet activities of Korean red ginseng extract. *Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2007;100(170).
78. Endale M, Lee W, Kamruzzaman S, et al. Ginsenoside-Rp1 inhibits platelet activation and thrombus formation via impaired GPVI signaling pathway tyrosine phosphorylation and MAPK activation. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2012.
79. Beckert BW, Concannon MJ, Henry SL, et al. The effect of herbal medicines on platelet function: an in vivo experiment and review of the literature. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2007;120:2044.
80. Janetzky K, Morreale AP. Probable interaction between warfarin and ginseng. *Am J Health Syst Pharm*. 1997;54:692.
81. Yuan CS, Wei G, Dey L, et al. Brief communication: American ginseng reduces warfarin's effect in healthy patients: a randomized, controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;141:23.
82. Jiang X, Blair EY, McLachlan AJ. Investigation of the effects of herbal medicines on warfarin response in healthy subjects: a population pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic modeling approach. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2006;46:1370.
83. Li X, Sun J, Wang G, et al. Simultaneous determination of panax notoginsenoside R1, ginsenoside Rg1, Rd, Re and Rb1 in rat plasma by HPLC/ESI/MS: platform for the pharmacokinetic evaluation of total panax notoginsenoside, a typical kind of multiple constituent traditional Chinese medicine. *Biomed Chromatogr*. 2007;21:735.
84. Munekage M, Kitagawa H, Ichikawa K, et al. Pharmacokinetics of daikenchuto, a traditional Japanese medicine (kampo) after single oral administration to healthy Japanese volunteers. *Drug Metab Dispos*. 2011;39:1784.
85. Wang CZ, Kim KE, Du GJ, et al. Ultra-performance liquid chromatography and time-of-flight mass spectrometry analysis of ginsenoside metabolites in human plasma. *Am J Chin Med*. 2011;39:1161.
86. Wang CZ, Mehendale SR, Yuan CS. Commonly used antioxidant botanicals: active constituents and their potential role in cardiovascular illness. *Am J Chin Med*. 2007;35:543.
87. Stote KS, Baer DJ. Tea consumption may improve biomarkers of insulin sensitivity and risk factors for diabetes. *J Nutr*. 2008;138:1584S.
88. Kang WS, Lim IH, Yuk DY, et al. Antithrombotic activities of green tea catechins and (-)-epigallocatechin gallate. *Thromb Res*. 1999;96:229.
89. Son DJ, Cho MR, Jin YR, et al. Antiplatelet effect of green tea catechins: a possible mechanism through arachidonic acid pathway. *Prostaglandins Leukot Essent Fatty Acids*. 2004;71(25).
90. Jin YR, Im JH, Park ES, et al. Antiplatelet activity of epigallocatechin gallate is mediated by the inhibition of PLCgamma2 phosphorylation, elevation of PGD2 production, and maintaining calcium-ATPase activity. *J Cardiovasc Pharmacol*. 2008;51:45.
91. Liatsos GD, Moulakakis A, Ketikoglou I, Klonari S. Possible green tea-induced thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. *Am J Health Syst Pharm*. 2010;67:531.
92. Taylor JR, Wilt VM. Probable antagonism of warfarin by green tea. *Ann Pharmacother*. 1999;33:426.
93. Ullmann U, Haller J, Decourt JP, et al. A single ascending dose study of epigallocatechin gallate in healthy volunteers. *J Int Med Res*. 2003;31:88.
94. Gawande S, Kale A, Kotwal S. Effect of nutrient mixture and black grapes on the pharmacokinetics of orally administered (-)epigallocatechin-3-gallate from green tea extract: a human study. *Phytother Res*. 2008;22:802.
95. Pepping J. Kava: piper methysticum. *Am J Health Syst Pharm*. 1999;56:957.
96. Jamieson DD, Duffield PH, Cheng D, Duffield AM. Comparison of the central nervous system activity of the aqueous and lipid extract of kava (Piper methysticum). *Arch Int Pharmacodyn Ther*. 1989; 301:66.
97. Almeida JC, Grimsley EW. Coma from the health food store: interaction between kava and alprazolam. *Ann Intern Med*. 1996;125:940.
98. Brown AC, Onopa J, Holck P, et al. Traditional kava beverage consumption and liver function tests in a predominantly Tongan population in Hawaii. *Clin Toxicol (Phila)*. 2007;45(549).
99. Norton SA, Ruze P. Kava dermopathy. *J Am Acad Dermatol*. 1994;31:89.
100. Gleitz J, Beile A, Wilkens P, Ameri A, Peters T. Antithrombotic action of the kava pyrone (+)-kavain prepared from Piper methysticum on human platelets. *Planta Med*. 1997;63(27).
101. Raduege KM, Kleshinski JF, Ryckman JV, Tetzlaff JE. Anesthetic considerations of the herbal, kava. *J Clin Anesth*. 2004;16:305.
102. Teschke R, Schulze J. Risk of kava hepatotoxicity and the FDA consumer advisory. *JAMA*. 2010;304:2174.
103. Escher M, Desmeules J, Giostra E, Mentha G. Hepatitis associated with kava, a herbal remedy for anxiety. *BMJ*. 2001;322(139).
104. Russmann S, Lauterburg BH, Helbling A. Kava hepatotoxicity. *Ann Intern Med*. 2001;135:68.
105. Chen SE, Sawchuk RJ, Staba EJ. American ginseng. III. Pharmacokinetics of ginsenosides in the rabbit. *Eur J Drug Metab Pharmacokinet*. 1980;5:161.

106. Rasmussen AK, Scheline RR, Solheim E, Hansel R. Metabolism of some kava pyrones in the rat. *Xenobiotica*. 1979;9(1).
107. Bent S, Kane C, Shinohara K, et al. Saw palmetto for benign prostatic hyperplasia. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:557.
108. Gerber GS. Saw palmetto for the treatment of men with lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol*. 2000;163:1408.
109. Cheema P, El-Mefty O, Jazieh AR. Intraoperative haemorrhage associated with the use of extract of saw palmetto herb: a case report and review of literature. *J Intern Med*. 2001;250:167.
110. Villanueva S, Gonzalez J. Coagulopathy induced by saw palmetto: a case report. *Bol Asoc Med P R*. 2009;101:48.
111. Shelton RC, Keller MB, Gelenberg A, et al. Effectiveness of St John's wort in major depression: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2001;285:1978.
112. Muller WE, Singer A, Wonnemann M. Hyperforin represents the neurotransmitter reuptake inhibiting constituent of hypericum extract. *Pharmacopsychiatry*. 1998;31(suppl 1):16.
113. Neary JT, Bu Y, Hypericum LI. 160 inhibits uptake of serotonin and norepinephrine in astrocytes. *Brain Res*. 1999;816:358.
114. Brown TM. Acute St. John's wort toxicity. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2000;18:231.
115. Johne A, Brockmoller J, Bauer S, et al. Pharmacokinetic interaction of digoxin with an herbal extract from St John's wort (Hypericum perforatum). *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1999;66:338.
116. Ernst E. Second thoughts about safety of St John's wort. *Lancet*. 2014;354:1999.
117. Piscitelli SC, Burstein AH, Chaitt D, et al. Indinavir concentrations and St John's wort. *Lancet*. 2000;355:547.
118. Yue QY, Bergquist C, Gerden B. Safety of St John's wort (Hypericum perforatum). *Lancet*. 2000;355:576.
119. Barone GW, Gurley BJ, Ketel BL, et al. Drug interaction between St. John's wort and cyclosporine. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2000;34:1013.
120. Ruschitzka F, Meier PJ, Turina M, et al. Acute heart transplant rejection due to Saint John's wort. *Lancet*. 2000;355:548.
121. Breidenbach T, Hoffmann MW, Becker T, et al. Drug interaction of St John's wort with cyclosporin. *Lancet*. 2000;355:1912.
122. Kerb R, Brockmoller J, Staffeldt B, et al. Single-dose and steady-state pharmacokinetics of hypericin and pseudohypericin. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother*. 1996;40:2087.
123. Biber A, Fischer H, Romer A, Chatterjee SS. Oral bioavailability of hyperforin from hypericum extracts in rats and human volunteers. *Pharmacopsychiatry*. 1998;31(suppl 1):36.
124. Houghton PJ. The scientific basis for the reputed activity of Valerian. *J Pharm Pharmacol*. 1999;51:505.
125. Hendriks H, Bos R, Allersma DP, et al. Pharmacological screening of valerenal and some other components of essential oil of Valeriana officinalis. *Planta Med*. 1981;42:62.
126. Ortiz JG, Nieves-Natal J, Chavez P. Effects of Valeriana officinalis extracts on [3H]flunitrazepam binding, synaptosomal [3H]GABA uptake, and hippocampal [3H]GABA release. *Neurochem Res*. 1999;24:1373.
127. Leuschner J, Muller J, Rudmann M. Characterisation of the central nervous depressant activity of a commercially available valerian root extract. *Arzneimittelforschung*. 1993;43:638.
128. Gooneratne NS. Complementary and alternative medicine for sleep disturbances in older adults. *Clin Geriatr Med*. 2008;24:121.
129. Taavoni S, Ekbatani N, Kashaniyan M, Haghani H. Effect of valerian on sleep quality in postmenopausal women: a randomized placebo-controlled clinical trial. *Menopause*. 2011;18:951.
130. Taibi DM, Landis CA, Petry H, Vitiello MV. A systematic review of valerian as a sleep aid: safe but not effective. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2007;11:209.
131. Garges HP, Varia I, Doraiswamy PM. Cardiac complications and delirium associated with valerian root withdrawal. *JAMA*. 1998;280:1566.
132. Basila D, Yuan CS. Effects of dietary supplements on coagulation and platelet function. *Thromb Res*. 2005;117(49).
133. Zhou S, Chan E. Effect of ubidecarenone on warfarin anticoagulation and pharmacokinetics of warfarin enantiomers in rats. *Drug Metabol Drug Interact*. 2001;18(99).
134. Zhou Q, Zhou S, Chan E. Effect of coenzyme Q10 on warfarin hydroxylation in rat and human liver microsomes. *Curr Drug Metab*. 2005;6:67.
135. Spigset O. Reduced effect of warfarin caused by ubidecarenone. *Lancet*. 1994;344:1372.
136. Engelsen J, Nielsen JD, Hansen KF. *Effect of Coenzyme Q10 and Ginkgo Biloba on Warfarin Dosage in Patients on Long-Term Warfarin Treatment, a Randomized, Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Cross-Over Trial 165:1868*. Ugeskr Laeger; 2003.
137. Shalansky S, Lynd L, Richardson K, et al. Risk of warfarin-related bleeding events and supratherapeutic international normalized ratios associated with complementary and alternative medicine: a longitudinal analysis. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2007;27:1237.
138. Evans M, Sharma P, Guthrie N. A randomized, double-blind, crossover study on the pharmacokinetics of a novel formulation of CoQ10 with pyridoxal 5'-phosphate and phosphatidyl choline. *J Diet*. 2010;314(suppl 7).
139. Miller KL, Clegg DO. Glucosamine and chondroitin sulfate. *Rheum Dis Clin North Am*. 2011;37:103.
140. Clegg DO, Reda DJ, Harris CL, et al. Glucosamine, chondroitin sulfate, and the two in combination for painful knee osteoarthritis. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:795.
141. Tang J, Neidigh JL, Cooksey RC, McClain DA. Transgenic mice with increased hexosamine flux specifically targeted to beta-cells exhibit hyperinsulinemia and peripheral insulin resistance. *Diabetes*. 2000;49:1492.
142. Scroggie DA, Albright A, Harris MD. The effect of glucosamine-chondroitin supplementation on glycosylated hemoglobin levels in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a placebo-controlled, double-blinded, randomized clinical trial. *Arch Intern Med*. 2003;163:1587.
143. Knudsen JF, Sokol GH. Potential glucosamine-warfarin interaction resulting in increased international normalized ratio: case report and review of the literature and MedWatch database. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2008;28:540.
144. Setnikar I, Rovati LC. Absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of glucosamine sulfate. *Arzneimittelforschung*. 2001;51:699.
145. Persiani S, Rotini R, Trisolino G, et al. Synovial and plasma glucosamine concentrations in osteoarthritic patients following oral crystalline glucosamine sulphate at therapeutic dose. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage*. 2007;15:764.
146. Volpi N. Oral absorption and bioavailability of ichthyic origin chondroitin sulfate in healthy male volunteers. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage*. 2003;11:433.
147. Wall R, Ross RP, Fitzgerald GF, Stanton C. Fatty acids from fish: the anti-inflammatory potential of long-chain omega-3 fatty acids. *Nutr Rev*. 2010;68:280.
148. ORIGIN: Trial Investigators: n–3 fatty acids and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with dysglycemia. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:309.
149. Rizos EC, Ntzani EE, Bika E, et al. Association between omega-3 fatty acid supplementation and risk of major cardiovascular disease events: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1024.
150. Dyerberg J. Platelet - vessel wall interaction: influence of diet. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci*. 1981;294:373.
151. Lazarus SA, Garg ML. The effects of tomato extract (TE) and omega-3 fatty acids on platelet cAMP levels and inositol triphosphate (IP(3)) release. *Asia Pac J Clin Nutr*. 2003;12(suppl):S20.
152. Sarris GE, Fann JI, Sokoloff MH, et al. Mechanisms responsible for inhibition of vein-graft arteriosclerosis by fish oil. *Circulation*. 1989;80:I109.
153. Thorwest M, Balling E, Kristensen SD, et al. Dietary fish oil reduces microvascular thrombosis in a porcine experimental model. *Thromb Res*. 2000;99:203.
154. Phang M, Sinclair AJ, Lincz LF, Garg ML. Gender-specific inhibition of platelet aggregation following omega-3 fatty acid supplementation. *Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis*. 2012;22:109.
155. Harris WS. Expert opinion: omega-3 fatty acids and bleeding-cause for concern? *Am J Cardiol*. 2007;99:44C.
156. Salisbury AC, Harris WS, Amin AP, et al. Relation between red blood cell omega-3 fatty acid index and bleeding during acute myocardial infarction. *Am J Cardiol*. 2012;109(13).
157. Stanger MJ, Thompson LA, Young AJ, Lieberman HR. Anticoagulant activity of select dietary supplements. *Nutr Rev*. 2012;70(107).
158. Buckley MS, Goff AD, Knapp WE. Fish oil interaction with warfarin. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2004;38:50.
159. Jalili M, Dehpour AR. Extremely prolonged INR associated with warfarin in combination with both trazodone and omega-3 fatty acids. *Arch Med Res*. 2007;38:901.

159a. Cerdo T, Ruiz A, Suarez A, Campoy C. Probiotic, prebiotic, and brain development. *Nutrients*. 2017;9.

159b. Kelly CR, Khoruts A, Staley C, et al. Effect of fecal microbiota transplantation on recurrence in multiply recurrent clostridium difficile infection: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 2016;165:609–616.
159c. Sadahiro S, Suzuki T, Tanaka A, et al. Comparison between oral antibiotics and probiotics as bowel preparation for elective colon cancer surgery to prevent infection: prospective randomized trial. *Surgery*. 2014;155:493–503.
159d. Luczynski P, Tramullas M, Viola M, et al. Microbiota regulates visceral pain in the mouse. *eLife*. 2017;6.
159e. Shen S, Lim G, You Z, et al. Gut microbiota is critical for the induction of chemotherapy-induced pain. *Nat Neurosci*. 2017;20:1213–1216.
159f. Amaral FA, Sachs D, Costa VV, et al. Commensal microbiota is fundamental for the development of inflammatory pain. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105:2193–2197.
160. Chernyak GV, Sessler DI. Perioperative acupuncture and related techniques. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1031.
160a. Bonica JJ. Therapeutic acupuncture in the People's Republic of China implications for American medicine. *JAMA*. 1974;228:1544–1551.
161. Kaptchuk TJ. Acupuncture: theory, efficacy, and practice. *Ann Intern Med*. 2002;136:374.
162. Tsunoda Y, Sakahira K, Nakano S, et al. Antagonism of acupuncture analgesia by naloxone in unconscious man. *Bull Tokyo Med Dent Univ*. 1980;27(89).
163. Mori H, Nishijo K, Kawamura H, Abo T. Unique immunomodulation by electro-acupuncture in humans possibly via stimulation of the autonomic nervous system. *Neurosci Lett*. 2002;320:21.
164. Son YS, Park HJ, Kwon OB, et al. Antipyretic effects of acupuncture on the lipopolysaccharide-induced fever and expression of interleukin-6 and interleukin-1 beta mRNAs in the hypothalamus of rats. *Neurosci Lett*. 2002;319:45.
165. Guo HF, Tian J, Wang X, et al. Brain substrates activated by electroacupuncture (EA) of different frequencies (II): role of Fos/Jun proteins in EA-induced transcription of preproenkephalin and preprodynorphin genes. *Brain Res Mol Brain Res*. 1996;43:167.
166. Gerhard I, Postneek F. Auricular acupuncture in the treatment of female infertility. *Gynecol Endocrinol*. 1992;6(171).
167. Hsieh JC, Tu CH, Chen FP, et al. Activation of the hypothalamus characterizes the acupuncture stimulation at the analgesic point in human: a positron emission tomography study. *Neurosci Lett*. 2001;307(105).
168. Wu MT, Hsieh JC, Xiong J, et al. Central nervous pathway for acupuncture stimulation: localization of processing with functional MR imaging of the brain–preliminary experience. *Radiology*. 1999;212(133).
169. Hui KK, Liu J, Makris N, et al. Acupuncture modulates the limbic system and subcortical gray structures of the human brain: evidence from fMRI studies in normal subjects. *Hum Brain Mapp*. 2000;9(13).
170. Shen J. Research on the neurophysiological mechanisms of acupuncture: review of selected studies and methodological issues. *J Altern Complement Med*. 2001;7(suppl 1):S121.
170a. Omura Y. Connections found between each meridian (heart, stomach, triple burner, etc.) & organ representation area of corresponding internal organs in each side of the cerebral cortex; release of common neurotransmitters and hormones unique to each meridian and corresponding acupuncture point & internal organ after acupuncture, electrical stimulation, mechanical stimulation (including shiatsu), soft laser stimulation or QI Gong. *Acupunct Electrother Res*. 1989;14:155–186.
170b. Lao L, Bergman S, Hamilton GR, Langenberg P, Berman B. Evaluation of acupuncture for pain control after oral surgery: a placebo-controlled trial. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 1999;125:567–572.
170c. Dechartres A, Boutron I, Trinquart L, Charles P, Ravaud P. Single-center trials show larger treatment effects than multicenter trials: evidence from a meta-epidemiologic study. *Ann Intern Med*. 2011;155:39–51.
170d. White A, Hayhoe S, Hart A, Ernst E. Adverse events following acupuncture: prospective survey of 32, 000 consultations with doctors and physiotherapists. *BMJ*. 2001;323:485–486.
170e. White A, Hayhoe S, Hart A, Ernst E. Survey of adverse events following acupuncture (SAFA): a prospective study of 32,000 consultations, acupuncture in medicine. *Journal of the British Medical Acupuncture Society*. 2001;19:84–92.
170f. Cybularz PA, Brothers K, Singh GM, Feingold JL, Lewis ME, Niesley ML. The safety of acupuncture in patients with cancer therapy-related thrombocytopenia. *Med Acupunct*. 2015;27:224–229.
171. Rusy LM, Hoffman GM, Weisman SJ. Electroacupuncture prophylaxis of postoperative nausea and vomiting following pediatric tonsillectomy with or without adenoidectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:300.
172. Wang SM, Kain ZN. P6 acupoint injections are as effective as droperidol in controlling early postoperative nausea and vomiting in children. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:359.
173. Abraham J. Acupressure and acupuncture in preventing and managing postoperative nausea and vomiting in adults. *J Perioper Pract*. 2008;18:543.
174. El-Deeb AM, Ahmady MS. Effect of acupuncture on nausea and/or vomiting during and after cesarean section in comparison with ondansetron. *J Anesth*. 2011;25:698.
175. Kim YH, Kim KS, Lee HJ, et al. The efficacy of several neuromuscular monitoring modes at the P6 acupuncture point in preventing postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:819.
176. Allen TK, Habib AS. P6 stimulation for the prevention of nausea and vomiting associated with cesarean delivery under neuraxial anesthesia: a systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1308.
177. Arnberger M, Stadelmann K, Alischer P, et al. Monitoring of neuromuscular blockade at the P6 acupuncture point reduces the incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:903.
178. Dundee JW, Ghaly RG, Bill KM, et al. Effect of stimulation of the P6 antiemetic point on postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;63:612.
179. White PF, Hamza MA, Recart A, et al. Optimal timing of acustimulation for antiemetic prophylaxis as an adjunct to ondansetron in patients undergoing plastic surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:367.
179a. Shin HC, Kim JS, Lee SK, et al. The effect of acupuncture on postoperative nausea and vomiting after pediatric tonsillectomy: a meta-analysis and systematic review. *Laryngoscope*. 2016;126:1761–1767.
180. NIH/NCCAM: *Relaxation techniques for health: an introduction*. 2011. http://nccam.nih.gov/sites/nccam.nih.gov/files/D461.pdf. Accessed 16.05.12.
181. Celli BR, Rodriguez KS, Snider GL. A controlled trial of intermittent positive pressure breathing, incentive spirometry, and deep breathing exercises in preventing pulmonary complications after abdominal surgery. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1984;130(12).
182. Peretz B, Gluck GM. Assessing an active distracting technique for local anesthetic injection in pediatric dental patients: repeated deep breathing and blowing out air. *J Clin Pediatr Dent*. 1999;24(5).
183. Stewart E. To lessen pain: relaxation and rhythmic breathing. *Am J Nurs*. 1976;76:958.
184. Hudson S. Teach breath control to ease your patients' post-op pains. *RN*. 1977;40:37.
185. Heffline MS. Exploring nursing interventions for acute pain in the postanesthesia care unit. *J Post Anesth Nurs*. 1990;5:321.
186. Thomas JA, McIntosh JM. Are incentive spirometry, intermittent positive pressure breathing, and deep breathing exercises effective in the prevention of postoperative pulmonary complications after upper abdominal surgery? A systematic overview and meta-analysis. *Phys Ther*. 1994;74(3).
187. Bucciero M, Ingelmo PM, Fumagalli R, et al. Intraperitoneal ropivacaine nebulization for pain management after laparoscopic cholecystectomy: a comparison with intraperitoneal instillation. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1266.
188. Friesner SA, Curry DM, Moddeman GR. Comparison of two pain-management strategies during chest tube removal: relaxation exercise with opioids and opioids alone. *Heart Lung*. 2006;35:269.
189. Shea RA, Brooks JA, Dayhoff NE, Keck J. Pain intensity and postoperative pulmonary complications among the elderly after abdominal surgery. *Heart Lung*. 2002;31:440.
190. Downey LV, Zun LS. The effects of deep breathing training on pain management in the emergency department. *South Med J*. 2009;102:688.
191. Chalaye P, Goffaux P, Lafrenaye S, Marchand S. Respiratory effects on experimental heat pain and cardiac activity. *Pain Med*. 2009;10:1334.

192. Camu F, Lauwers MH, Verbessem D. Incidence and aetiology of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1992;25(suppl 6).
193. Gunta K, Lewis C, Nuccio S. Prevention and management of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Orthop Nurs*. 2000;19(39).
194. Burns DS, Robb SL. Music therapy. In: Yuan CS, Bieber EJ, Bauer BA, eds. *Textbook of Complementary and Alternative Medicine*. 2nd ed. Abingdon, UK: Informa Healthcare; 2006:271.
195. Engwall M, Duppils GS. Music as a nursing intervention for postoperative pain: a systematic review. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2009;24:370.
196. Pittman S, Kridli S. Music intervention and preoperative anxiety: an integrative review. *Int Nurs Rev*. 2011;58:157.
197. Wang SM, Kulkarni L, Dolev J, Kain ZN. Music and preoperative anxiety: a randomized, controlled study. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1489.
198. Ni CH, Tsai WH, Lee LM, et al. Minimising preoperative anxiety with music for day surgery patients—a randomised clinical trial. *J Clin Nurs*. 2012;21:620.
199. Cruise CJ, Chung F, Yogendran S, Little D. Music increases satisfaction in elderly outpatients undergoing cataract surgery. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44:43.
200. Binns-Turner PG, Wilson LL, Pryor ER, et al. Perioperative music and its effects on anxiety, hemodynamics, and pain in women undergoing mastectomy. *AANA J*. 2011;79:S21.
201. Kain ZN, Caldwell-Andrews AA, Krivutza DM, et al. Interactive music therapy as a treatment for preoperative anxiety in children: a randomized controlled trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1260.
202. Ezzone S, Baker C, Rosselet R, Terepka E. Music as an adjunct to antiemetic therapy. *Oncol Nurs Forum*. 1998;25:1551.
203. Sabo CE, Michael SR. The influence of personal message with music on anxiety and side effects associated with chemotherapy. *Cancer Nurs*. 1996;19:283.
204. Laurion S, Fetzer SJ. The effect of two nursing interventions on the postoperative outcomes of gynecologic laparoscopic patients. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2003;18:254.
205. Fetzer SJ, Hand MA, Bouchard PA, et al. Self-care activities for postdischarge nausea and vomiting. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2005;20:249.
206. Madson AT, Silverman MJ. The effect of music therapy on relaxation, anxiety, pain perception, and nausea in adult solid organ transplant patients. *J Music Ther*. 2010;47:220.
207. Nilsson U. The anxiety- and pain-reducing effects of music interventions: a systematic review. *AORN J*. 2008;87:780.
208. Chlan LL, Weinert CR, Heiderscheit A, et al. Effects of patient-directed music intervention on anxiety and sedative exposure in critically ill patients receiving mechanical ventilatory support: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2013;309:2335.
209. Bradt J, Dileo C, Grocke D. Music interventions for mechanically ventilated patients. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010:CD006902.
210. Cooke M, Chaboyer W, Schluter P, et al. The effect of music on discomfort experienced by intensive care unit patients during turning: a randomized cross-over study. *Int J Nurs Pract*. 2010;16:125.

34

Patient Positioning and Associated Risks

KRISTINE E.W. BREYER and STEVEN ROTH

KEY POINTS

- Patient positioning is a major responsibility that requires the cooperation of the entire surgical team.
- Many patient positions that are used for surgery result in undesirable physiologic consequences including significant cardiovascular and respiratory compromise. Anesthetic agents blunt natural compensatory mechanisms, rendering surgical patients vulnerable to positional changes.
- Peripheral nerve injuries, although rare, represent 22% of cases in the 1990 to 2007 American Society of Anesthesiologists' Closed Claims Project. The mechanisms of injury are stretching, compression, and ischemia. Patient positioning is often a suspected contributory factor, although precautions have usually been taken and no specific cause for the injury is known.
- The American Society of Anesthesiologists first issued a Practice Advisory in 2000 for the prevention of perioperative peripheral neuropathies that was updated in 2019. However, very few of the studies reviewed met the standard for a scientifically proven relationship between intervention and outcome.
- Anesthesia administered outside the operating room presents special challenges with regard to patient positioning because of monitoring and equipment limitations and differences in the work environment and culture.
- Perioperative visual loss (POVL) is a rare but serious injury that appears more frequently after cardiac, spine, and orthopedic joint surgery.
- Causes of POVL include central or branch retinal artery occlusion, anterior and posterior ischemic optic neuropathy, cortical blindness, acute glaucoma, and acute expansion of gas bubbles placed in the eye in retinal surgery.
- Signs and symptoms of visual loss in the postoperative period may be subtle and can be incorrectly attributed to the residual effects of anesthetic drugs. Any patient reporting eye pain, an inability to perceive light or motion, complete or partial loss of visual fields, decreased visual acuity, or loss of pupil reactivity must be evaluated immediately by an ophthalmologist.
- The most common cause of perioperative central and branch retinal artery occlusion is compression of the eye. During cardiac surgery, emboli may occlude the retinal arteries.
- Patients who undergo prolonged operative procedures in the prone position with large blood loss are at increased risk for development of ischemic optic neuropathy. Other factors conferring a risk during spine surgery include male sex, obesity, the use of a Wilson frame, and intravascular fluids administered perioperatively.
- Patients should be informed of the risk for visual loss accompanying lengthy surgical procedures with the patient positioned prone and with anticipated large blood loss. Both anesthesia and surgery personnel, together, should develop a plan by which informed consent for this complication may be facilitated.
- POVL in the presence of focal neurologic signs or the loss of accommodation reflexes or abnormal eye movements suggests a diagnosis of cortical blindness. Neurologic consultation should be obtained.

Introduction

The purpose of patient positioning in the operating room is to facilitate the surgical procedure, however, optimal surgical positioning may put patients at risk of injury or significantly alter intraoperative physiology. Peripheral nerve injuries, pressure injuries, and eye injuries are significant sources of perioperative morbidity.[1-3] Proper patient positioning is imperative and requires the cooperation of the entire surgical team. For this reason the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) requires intraoperative documentation of "patient positioning and actions to reduce the chance of adverse patient effects or complications related to positioning."[4] Preventing positioning complications requires clinical judgement, vigilance, and a cooperative team approach. This chapter will review the most commonly utilized surgical positions, physiologic alterations from positioning, and specific risks and injuries associated with different surgical positions.

Physiologic Considerations of Positioning

Complex physiologic responses have evolved to blunt the hemodynamic effects of positional changes in order to maintain blood pressure within a narrow range. These essential mechanisms maintain perfusion to the brain and vital organs, regardless of posture and position—for example, as a person reclines from an upright to a supine position venous return to the heart increases and initially the increased preload causes an increase in stroke volume and cardiac output. This causes an increase in arterial blood pressure, which activates afferent baroreceptors from the aorta (via the vagus nerve) and within the walls of the carotid sinuses (via the glossopharyngeal nerve). Mechanoreceptors from the atria and ventricles are also activated to decrease sympathetic outflow to muscle and splanchnic vascular beds. Lastly, atrial reflexes are activated to regulate renal sympathetic nerve activity, plasma renin, atrial natriuretic peptide, and arginine vasopressin levels.[5] Ultimately, heart rate and cardiac output are decreased to reach homeostasis in the new position.

Different types of anesthesia and anesthetic agents can blunt these compensatory pathways. Most current inhaled anesthetics, and many intravenous anesthetics, induce vasodilation. The use of spinal or epidural anesthesia causes a significant sympathectomy across all anesthetized dermatomes, independent of the presence of general anesthesia, reducing preload and potentially blunting cardiac response. Therefore, under anesthesia, changes in patient position may cause a more exaggerated hemodynamic response compared with position changes in unanesthetized patients. This can be particularly important for positions that would normally elicit a sympathetic response and vasoconstriction in order to maintain cardiac and cerebral perfusion, such as the sitting position. Interruptions in monitoring to facilitate positioning or turning of the surgical table should be minimized during position changes in order to monitor hemodynamic outcomes. Being aware of the physiologic consequences will help the anesthesiologist anticipate changes in hemodynamics with patient position changes.

Positive-pressure ventilation increases mean intrathoracic pressure, diminishing the venous pressure gradient from peripheral capillaries to the right atrium. This can affect cardiac output as the normal pressure gradients for venous circulation and cardiac preload are relatively low.[6] Positive end-expiratory pressure further increases mean intrathoracic pressure, and possibly further compromises venous return and cardiac output, as do conditions associated with low lung compliance, such as airways disease, obesity, ascites, and light anesthesia.[7] The anesthesia provider needs to anticipate, monitor, and treat these effects, as well as assess the safety of positional changes for each patient.

Normal spontaneous ventilation results from relatively small negative intrathoracic pressure shifts because of diaphragmatic displacement and chest wall movement. Resultant negative intrathoracic pressure also promotes venous return to the heart by reducing the pressure in the great veins and right atrium.[8] With spontaneous ventilation, diaphragmatic movement is greatest adjacent to the most dependent portions of the lung, helping bring new ventilation to the zones of the lung that are preferentially perfused. When a person shifts from standing to a supine position, functional residual capacity decreases in part due to cephalad displacement of the diaphragm. The chest wall contributes less to ventilation in the supine position causing more reliance on diaphragm contribution. Although gravity has some effect on the perfusion and ventilation of the lung, new evidence points to the importance of other factors as well.[9-13]

Under general anesthesia spontaneously breathing patients have reduced tidal volumes, reduced functional residual capacity, and increased closing volumes. This leads to more ventilation perfusion mismatching due to increased atelectasis and a reduced minute ventilation. Using positive-pressure ventilation with muscle relaxation may counter some of the ventilation-perfusion mismatch by ensuring adequate minute ventilation and limiting atelectasis by use of positive end-expiratory pressure.[9] In addition to these effects of anesthesia, patient position has distinct effects on pulmonary function. In particular, any position that limits the movement of the diaphragm, chest wall, or abdomen may increase atelectasis and therefore increase intrapulmonary shunt.

Newer investigations using high-resolution imaging have shown the prone position to provide superior ventilation-perfusion matching in the posterior segments of the lung near the diaphragm when compared with the supine position. Ventilation of these posterior segments is enhanced, while blood flow is maintained, despite their nondependent position.[8,14]

General Positioning Considerations

Coordination of the multidisciplinary surgical team is required in order to achieve proper and safe positioning of patients. Principles include maintaining spine and extremity neutrality as much as possible. The patient should lie on a padded surface, and additional padding should be placed around bony prominences and hard objects, such as intravenous fluid lines, monitoring equipment, and poles.

People who are awake and not sedated change position if they become uncomfortable. Even during normal sleep, some movement is normal in order to prevent pressure or stretch injuries. Anesthetized patients are unable to change position if pressure or stretch causes nociception. Therefore, whenever possible, patients should be placed in a natural position that would be well tolerated if the patient were awake or not sedated. When more extreme positions cannot be avoided, their duration should be limited as much as possible. It is reasonable to ask patients what positions they can tolerate comfortably.

Specific Positions

SUPINE

The most common position for surgery is the supine or dorsal decubitus position (Fig. 34.1). Classically, the head, neck, and spine all retain neutrality. Because the entire body is close to the level of the heart, hemodynamic reserve is well maintained. Tissues overlying all bony prominences,

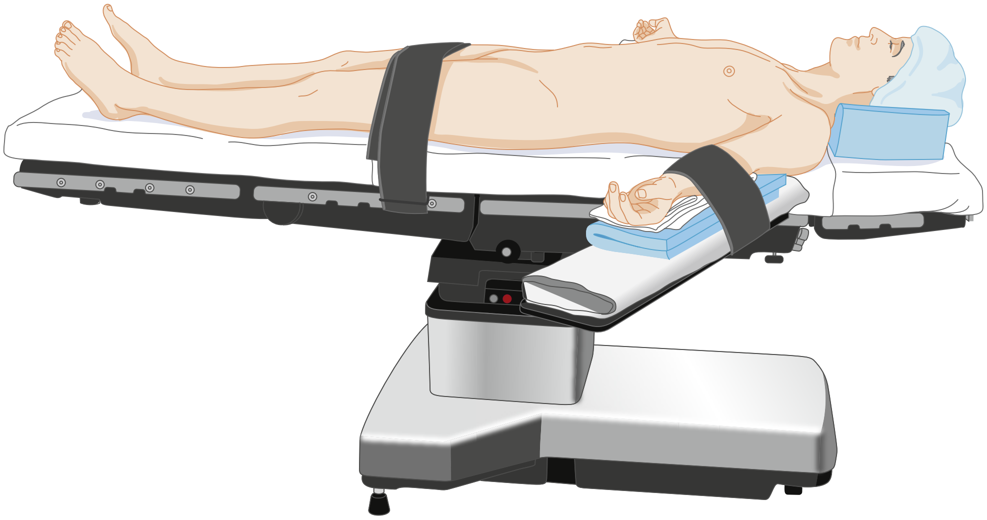


Fig. 34.1 Supine position. The base of the table is asymmetrical. When positioned in the usual direction, the patient's center of gravity is over the base. Weight limits decrease when in reverse orientation to the base.

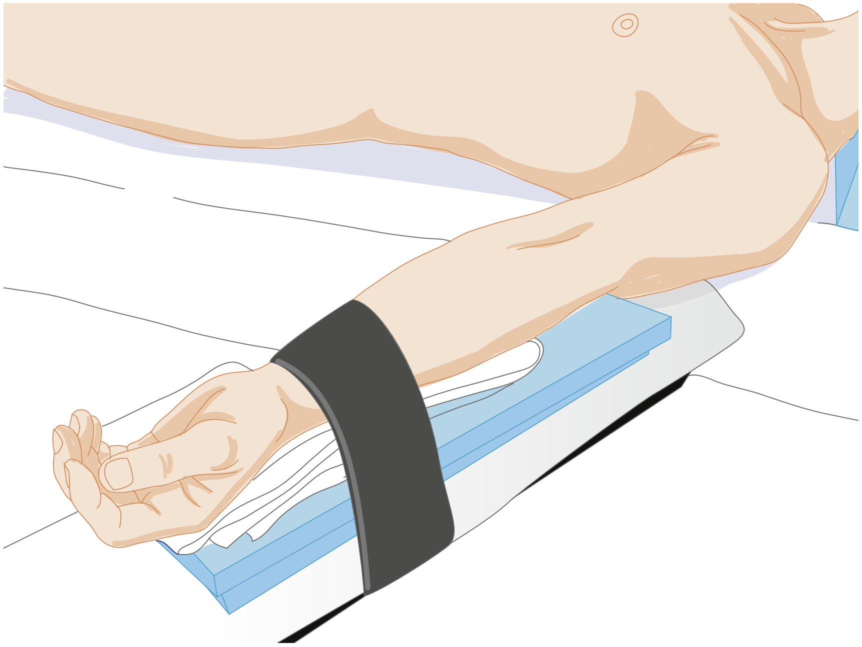


Fig. 34.2 Arm position using the arm board. Abduction of the arm is limited to less than 90 degrees whenever possible. The arm is supinated, and the elbow is padded.

such as the heels and sacrum, must be padded to prevent soft tissue ischemia as a result of pressure, especially during prolonged surgery.[15]

The arms can be abducted, adducted, or one arm abducted and one arm adducted. In any variation, the arms should be placed in as neutral a position as possible, minimizing stretch and over extension.[4] When the arms are adducted, they must remain securely placed next to the body. For abducted arm position, abduction should be limited to less than 90 degrees to minimize the likelihood of brachial plexus injury.[4,16] Hands and forearms can be supinated or kept in a neutral position with the palm toward the body. This also reduces external pressure on the spiral groove of the humerus and the ulnar nerve (Fig. 34.2).[4,17,18] Particular attention should be paid to pad bony prominences, like the elbows, and any protruding objects, such as intravenous fluid lines, monitoring equipment, and poles (Fig. 34.3).

Variations of the Supine Position

Several variations of the supine position are frequently used. These include the lawn (or beach) chair position, frog-leg position, and Trendelenburg and reverse Trendelenburg positions. The lawn chair position (Fig. 34.4) reduces stress on the back, hips, and knees by placing the patient's hips and knees in mild flexion. This position is often better tolerated by patients who are awake or undergoing monitored anesthesia care than the full supine position. The lawn chair position also facilitates lower extremity venous drainage because the legs are placed slightly above the level of the heart. Abdominal wall tension is also reduced because the xiphoid to pubic distance is decreased. Proper positioning involves positioning the patient's hips at the break of the surgical table and avoiding venous pooling in the legs.

The frog-leg position allows procedural access to the perineum, medial thighs, genitalia, and rectum. The patient is positioned supine and then the hips and knees are flexed and the hips are externally rotated with the soles of the feet facing each other. Support of the patient's knees to minimize stress and postoperative pain in the hips is required.

The Trendelenburg position, achieved by tilting a supine patient head down (Fig. 34.5), is linked by name to a 19th-century German surgeon, Friedrich Trendelenburg, who described its use for abdominal surgery. Walter Cannon, a Harvard physiologist, is credited with popularizing the use of Trendelenburg positioning to improve hemodynamics for patients in shock during World War I. Today the Trendelenburg position is frequently utilized to improve exposure during abdominal and laparoscopic surgery, during central line placement to prevent air embolism and distention of the central vein, and to offset hypotension by temporarily increasing venous return. A steep (30-45 degrees) head-down position is now frequently used for robotic prostate and gynecologic surgeries.

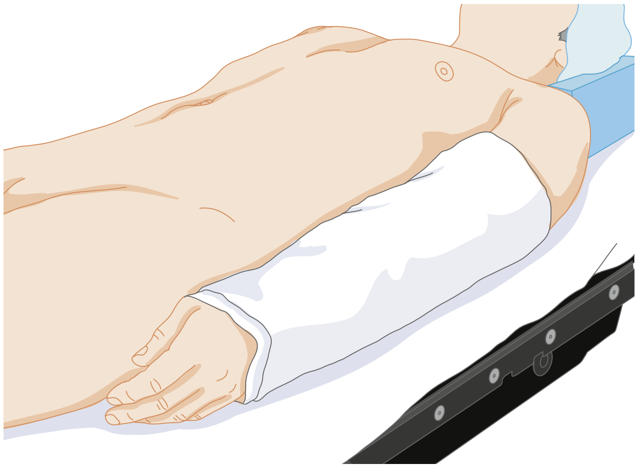


Fig. 34.3 Arm tucked at patient side. The arm is in the neutral position with the palm to the hip. The elbow is padded, and the arm is well supported by the mattress.

For all positions in which the head is at a different level than the heart, the effect of the hydrostatic gradient on cerebral arterial and venous pressures should be considered when estimating cerebral perfusion pressure. Careful documentation of any potential arterial pressure gradient is especially prudent.

The Trendelenburg position does produce hemodynamic and respiratory changes; however, the hemodynamic changes are not as long-lasting as often thought. Initial placement of the patient in head-down supine position will increase cardiac output approximately 9% in less than 1 minute via an autotransfusion from the lower extremities. This effect is not sustained and within approximately 10 minutes the cardiac output begins to return to baseline. Nevertheless, the Trendelenburg position is still considered an essential part of initial resuscitation efforts to treat hypotension and acute hypovolemia.[19] Functional residual capacity is decreased due to gravitational pull of the diaphragm cephalad. Pulmonary compliance is increased by decreased functional residual capacity and is often further decreased in the Trendelenburg position, due to patient-positioning straps across the chest. In a spontaneously breathing patient, the work of breathing increases. In patients under general anesthesia, these pulmonary changes result in higher airway pressures. Changes to the mechanical ventilator settings can compensate for some of the respiratory changes. However, with patient body habitus and variations in positioning, the higher airway pressures, and changes to minute ventilation are too great to safely continue in the steep Trendelenburg position. Testing the position for patient tolerance after anesthetic induction and completed positioning, prior to the initiation of the surgical procedure, is recommended.

Intracranial and intraocular pressures (IOCs) also increase in Trendelenburg position. Trendelenburg is contraindicated in patients with increased intracranial pressures. In fact, for some patients with severe intracranial hypertension, even

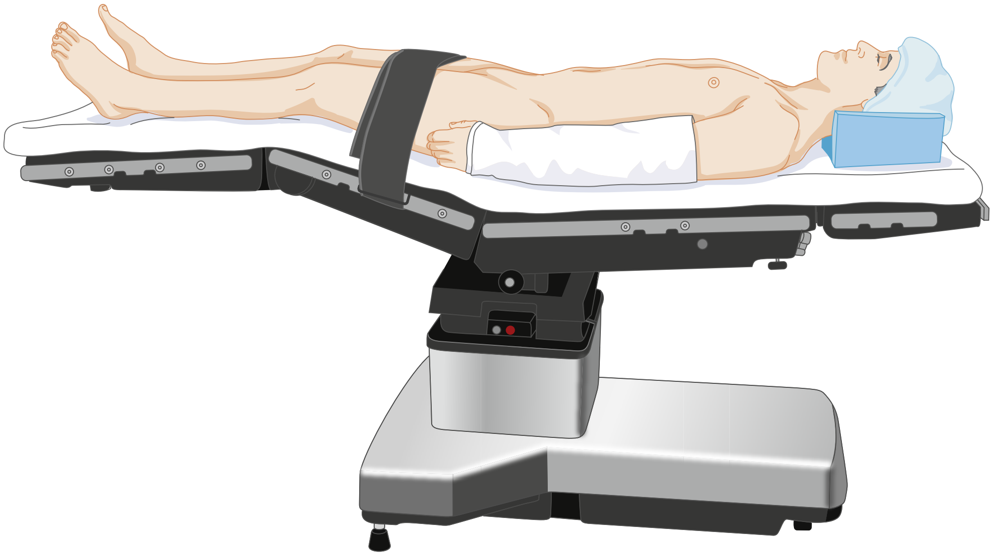


Fig. 34.4 Lawn or beach chair position. Flexion of the hips and knees decreases tension on the back.

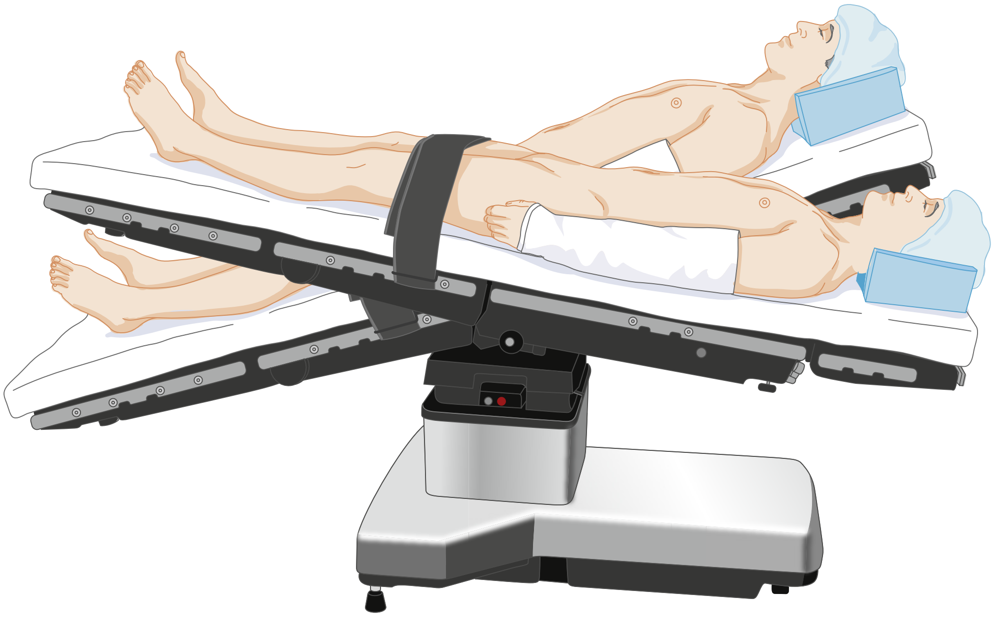


Fig. 34.5 Head-down tilt (Trendelenburg) position and head-up tilt (reverse Trendelenburg) position. Shoulder braces should be avoided to prevent brachial plexus compression injuries.

supine position is not tolerated. Consideration of the impact of positioning on intracranial pressure is important, as it may not only affect intraoperative positioning but also may have consequences on site selection for central line placement. Frequently, femoral vein site selection is preferred in patients with severely elevated intracranial pressure in order to avoid exacerbating intracranial hypertension with patient position changes during line placement.

Prolonged head-down positioning can also lead to swelling of the face, conjunctiva, larynx, and tongue, with an increased potential for postoperative upper airway obstruction. The Trendelenburg position increases intraabdominal pressure and displaces the stomach placing the patient at a higher risk for aspiration. Endotracheal intubation is often preferred in order to prevent aspiration of gastric contents.

Care must be taken to prevent patients in steep head-down positions from slipping cephalad on the surgical instruments.[20,21] Techniques to restrain the patient include antiskid bedding, knee flexion, shoulder braces, beanbag cradling, and padded cross-torso straps.[22] Shoulder braces are specifically not recommended because of the risk of compression injury to the brachial plexus. Beanbag pads become rigid when suction is applied to set the shape, and their use in the Trendelenburg position has been associated with brachial plexus injuries.[23-25] If either shoulder braces or beanbag shoulder immobilization is used to prevent sliding, additional caution is recommended regarding abducting the arm; brachial plexus injuries on the side of the abducted arm have been reported in conjunction with beanbag shoulder immobilization and steep Trendelenburg positioning.[26] These injuries may be due to stretch of the upper and middle trunks of the brachial plexus, as they course around the head of the humerus (Fig. 34.6).

The reverse Trendelenburg position (head-up tilt; see Fig. 34.2) is often used to facilitate upper abdominal surgery by shifting the abdominal contents caudad. This position is increasingly popular because of the growing number of laparoscopic surgeries requiring this position. Again, caution is advised to prevent patients from slipping on the table. As mentioned earlier, any position where the head is above the heart reduces cerebral perfusion pressure and may also cause systemic hypotension. If invasive arterial pressure monitoring is used then the arterial pressure transducer should be zeroed at the level of the Circle of Willis.

Complications of the Supine Position

The base of the surgical table is asymmetric. Classically, the base of the table is directly underneath the patient's torso (see Fig. 34.1). However, sometimes the patient's torso overlies the end of the table without the base underneath it in order to improve surgical access or to facilitate the use of specific equipment such as the C-arm for x-ray. Without the table base under the torso of the patient's body, the table is at risk of tilting or tipping over. This risk is higher with obese patients and when the table is in the Trendelenburg position. The surgical table weight limits are significantly different when the table is reversed and should be strictly observed.

Back pain is common in the supine position because the normal lumbar lordotic curvature is often lost. General anesthesia with muscle relaxation and neuraxial block increases the risk of back pain further due to loss of tone in the paraspinous muscles. Patients with extensive kyphosis, scoliosis, or a history of back pain may require extra padding of the spine or slight flexion at the hip and knee.

Peripheral nerve injury (discussed later in this chapter) is a complex phenomenon with multifactorial causes. The ASA has published several revisions of a practice advisory to help prevent perioperative peripheral neuropathies.[4] Ulnar neuropathy has historically been the most common lesion, although brachial plexus injuries have overtaken ulnar neuropathies in more recent closed claims data associated with general anesthesia.[1,3] Regardless of the position of the upper extremities, maintaining the head in a relatively midline position can help minimize the risk of stretch injury to the brachial plexus.[23] Although no direct evidence suggests

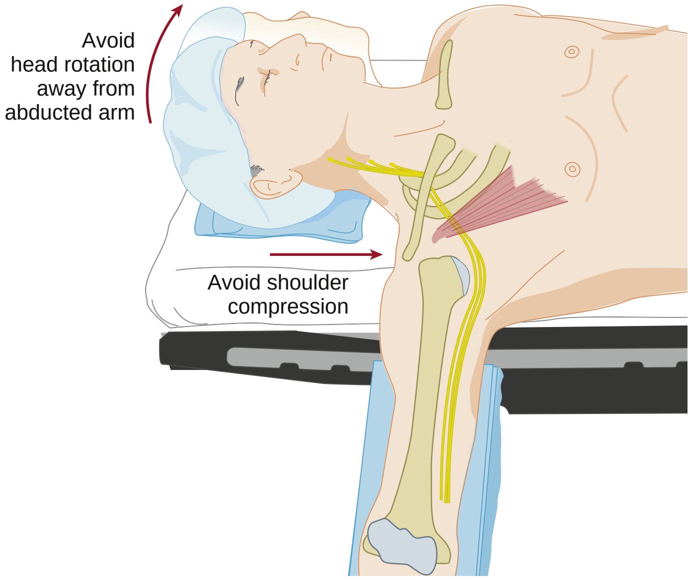


Fig. 34.6 The brachial plexus, shown in *yellow*, is vulnerable to stretch and compression due to its long course. Arm abduction is limited to less than 90 degrees when supine because when the arm is raised the head of the humerus rotates caudad and stretches the plexus. Shoulder braces should be avoided; they may cause direct compression of the plexus medially between the clavicle and first rib or laterally below the head of the humerus. Excessive head rotation should be avoided, especially away from an abducted arm. Abduction of the arm should be avoided when in a steep head-down position if shoulder braces or a beanbag holds the shoulders.

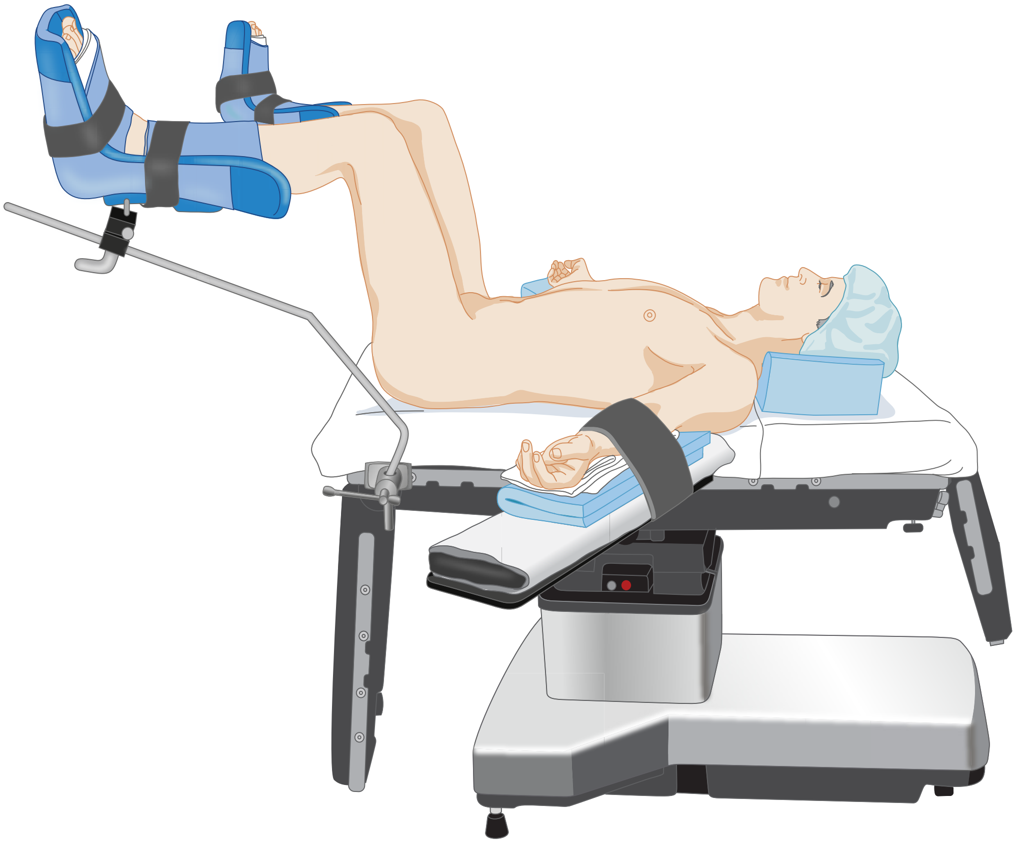


Fig. 34.7 Lithotomy position. Hips are flexed 80 to 100 degrees with the lower leg parallel to the body. Pressure near the fibular head is absent. Arms are on armrests away from the hinge point of the foot section.

that positioning or padding alone can prevent perioperative ulnar neuropathies, the ASA practice advisory recommends limiting arm abduction in the supine patient to less than 90 degrees at the shoulder, with the hand and forearm either supinated or kept in a neutral position.[4]

LITHOTOMY

The classic lithotomy position (Figs. 34.7–34.9) is frequently used during gynecologic, rectal, and urologic surgeries. The patient's hips are flexed 80 to 100 degrees from

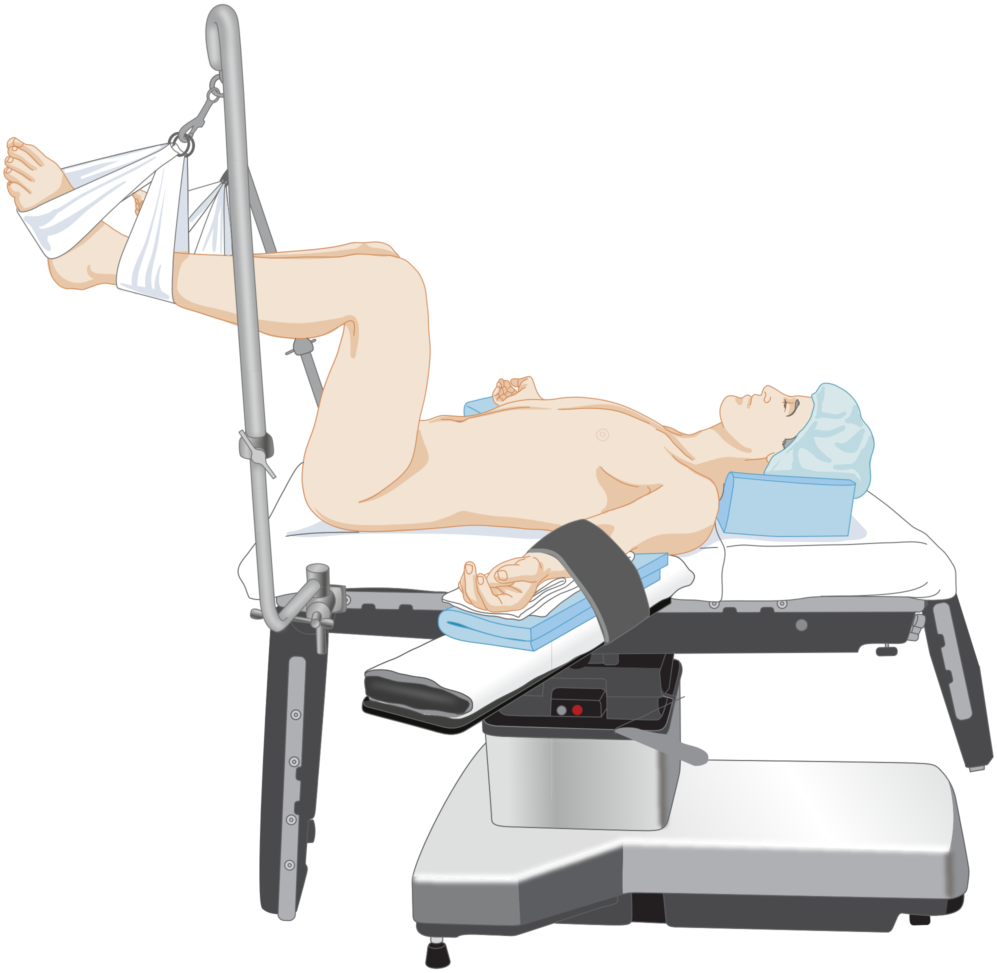


Fig. 34.8 Lithotomy position with "candy cane" stirrup leg holders.

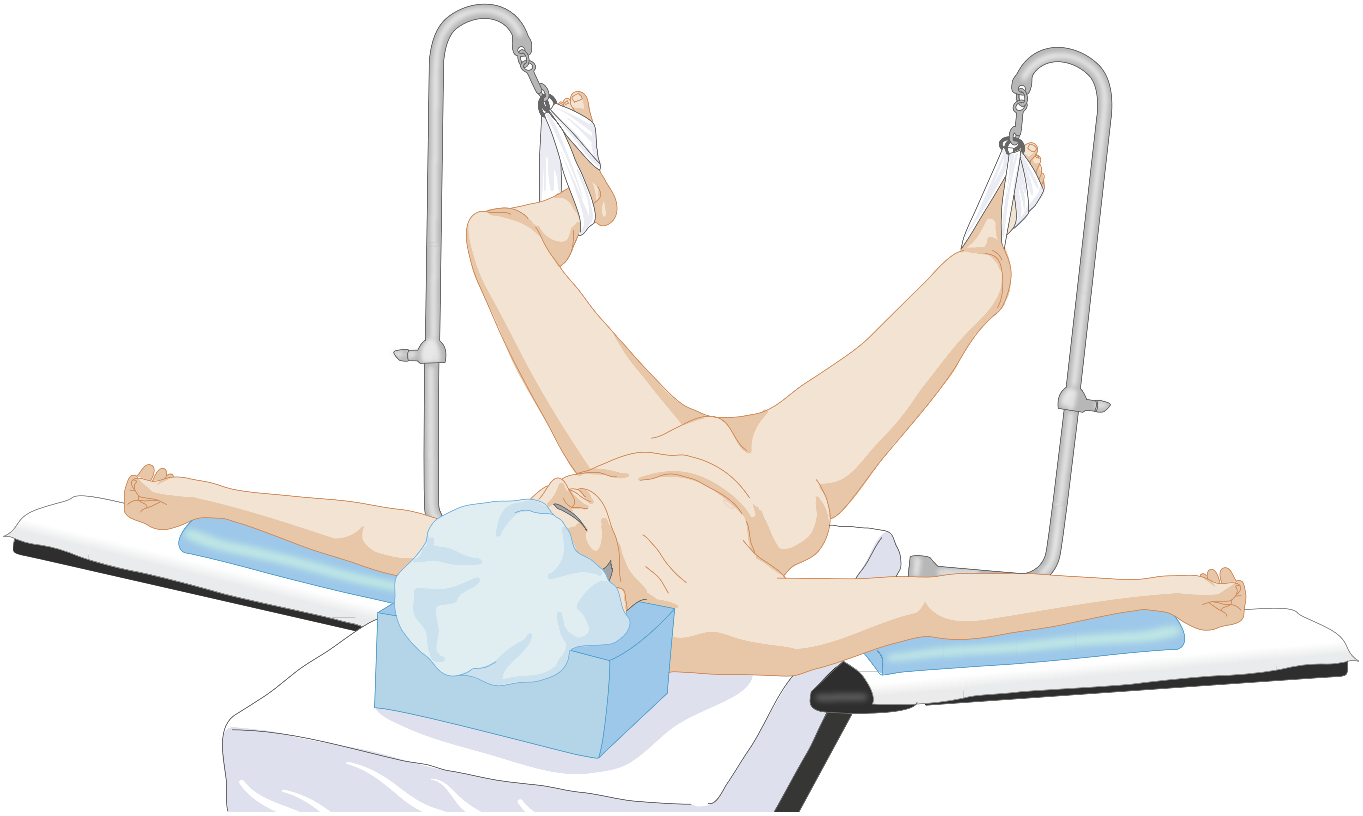


Fig. 34.9 Lithotomy position. The correct position of "candy cane" supports is well away from the lateral fibular head.

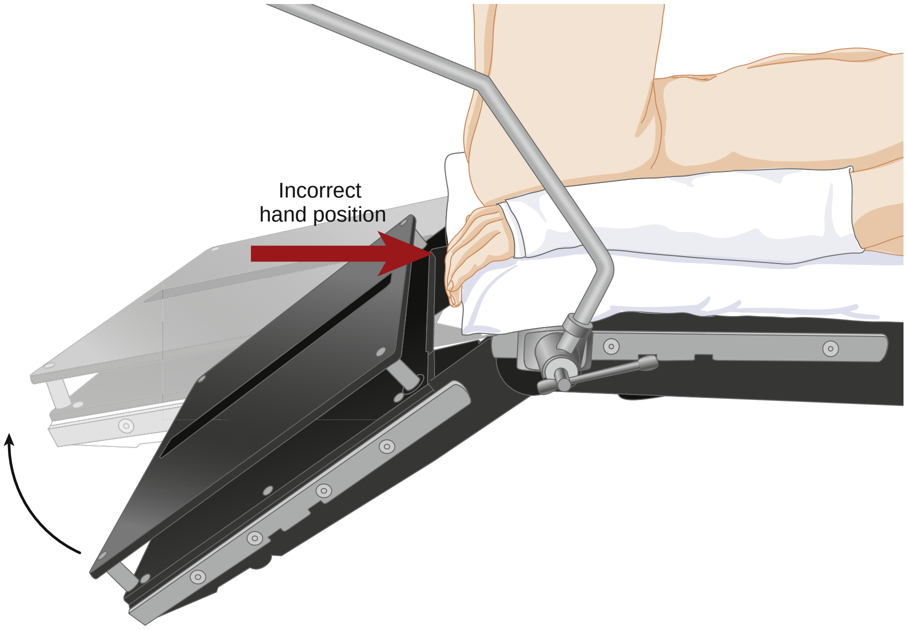


Fig. 34.10 Improper position of arms in lithotomy position. The fingers are at risk for compression when the lower section of the bed is raised.

the trunk, and the legs are abducted 30 to 45 degrees from the midline. The knees are flexed until the lower legs are parallel to the torso. The legs are then placed in supports or stirrups. The foot section of the surgical table is lowered and sometimes removed from the end of the table.

Positioning a patient into and out of lithotomy requires a coordinated team. The legs should be raised together; simultaneously, the knees and hips are flexed. This prevents torsion and injury to the lumbar spine. Padding of the lower extremities is critical, particularly over bony prominences, to prevent compression against the leg supports. The peroneal nerve is particularly prone to injury as it lies between the fibular head and compression from the leg support (see the peripheral nerve injury section of this chapter).

If the arms are tucked or placed alongside the patient, then the patient's hands and fingers are at risk of injury if they lie near the open edge of the lowered section of the table. When the foot of the table is raised at the end of the procedure the fingers near the open edge can get crushed. Strict attention must be paid to the position of the hands to avoid a potentially disastrous crush injury to the fingers (Fig. 34.10). For this reason, the recommended position of the arms is on armrests far from the table hinge point. If the arms must be tucked at the patient's side, then the hands need to be visualized and confirmed to be safe whenever the leg section of the surgical table is manipulated.

The lithotomy position may also cause significant physiologic changes. When the legs are elevated, venous return increases, causing a transient increase in cardiac output and, to a lesser extent, cerebral venous and intracranial pressure in otherwise healthy patients. In addition, the lithotomy position increases intraabdominal pressure and causes the abdominal viscera to displace the diaphragm cephalad, reducing lung compliance and potentially resulting in a decreased tidal volume. In obese patients, or when large abdominal mass is present (e.g., tumor, gravid uterus), abdominal pressure may increase enough to obstruct venous return to the heart. As with the supine position, the curvature of the lumbar spine is lost in lithotomy and can put the patient at risk of back pain.[27]

Lower extremity compartment syndrome is a rare but potentially devastating complication of the lithotomy position. Compartment syndrome is caused by increased tissue pressure within a fascial compartment due to tissue ischemia, edema, and rhabdomyolysis. Inadequate arterial inflow (from lower extremity elevation) and decreased venous outflow (due to direct compression or excessive hip flexion) elevates the risk of compartment syndrome for patients in lithotomy.[28,29] Local arterial pressure decreases 0.78 mm Hg for each centimeter the leg is raised above the right atrium.[30] Reperfusion after ischemic injury further increases edema, exacerbating the problem. In a large retrospective review of 572,498 surgeries, the incidence of compartment syndromes was higher in the lithotomy (1 in 8720) and lateral decubitus (1 in 9711) positions, as compared with the supine (1 in 92,441) position. Long procedure time was the only distinguishing characteristic of the surgeries during which patients developed lower extremity compartment syndromes.[28] A survey of urologists in the United Kingdom suggested that compartment syndrome after surgery in the lithotomy position is underreported and more common than appreciated. Affected patients in this study all had surgical durations greater than 3.5 hours.[31] In a retrospective multicenter review of 185 urologic patients who were placed in high lithotomy position, two patients suffered from compartment syndrome. For both of these patients, operative times exceeded 5 hours.[32] If surgical time extends beyond 2 to 3 hours, periodically lowering the legs is recommended.[32-34] Additional risk includes factors known to compromise tissue oxygenation, such as blood loss, peripheral vascular disease, hypotension, and reduced cardiac output. Elevated body mass index is also a risk factor for compartment syndrome. Intermittent leg compression devices remain controversial.[30,35]

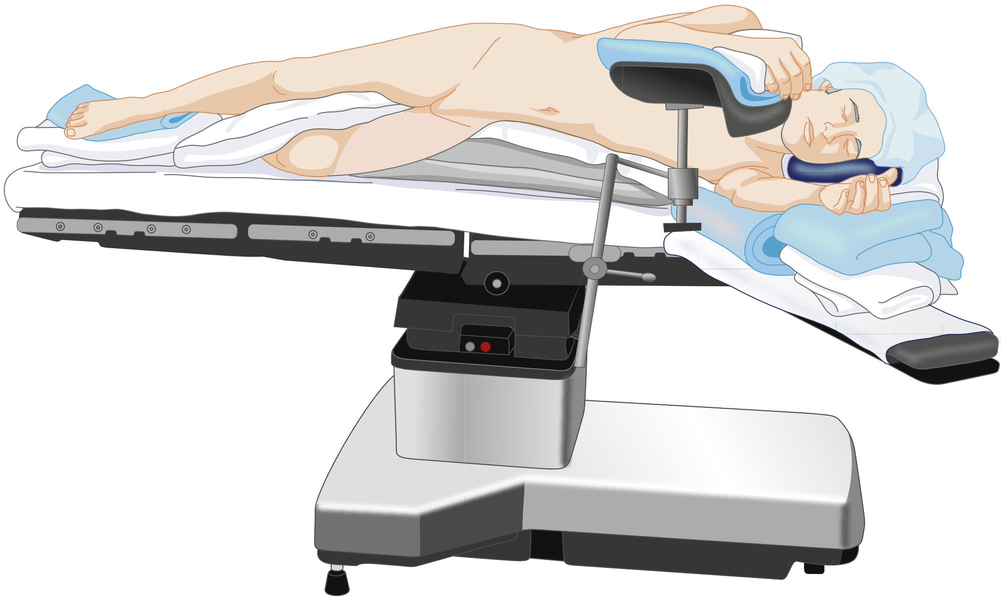


Fig. 34.11 **Lateral decubitus position.** The lower leg is flexed with padding between the legs, and both arms are supported and padded.

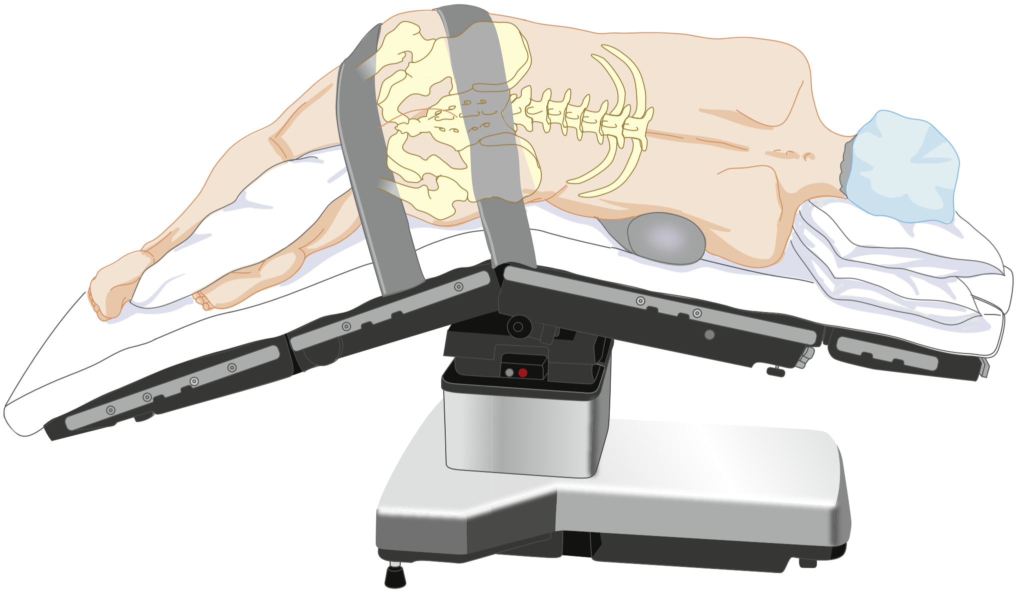


Fig. 34.12 **Flexed lateral decubitus position.** The point of flexion should lie under the iliac crest, rather than under the flank or lower ribs to optimize ventilation of the dependent lung.

LATERAL DECUBITUS

The lateral decubitus position (Fig. 34.11) is most frequently used for surgery involving the thorax, retroperitoneal structures, and hip. Positioning a patient in the lateral decubitus position requires the cooperation of the entire surgical staff. The nonoperative side is dependent and the dependent leg is flexed to minimize stretch of lower extremity nerves. Padding is placed between the knees to minimize excessive pressure on bony prominences. The torso must be balanced and supported both anteriorly and posteriorly. When a kidney rest is used for this purpose, it must be properly placed under the dependent iliac crest to prevent inadvertent compression of the inferior vena cava.

Patients may be laterally flexed while in the lateral position in order to gain better access to the thoracic cavity or retroperitoneum during renal surgeries. The point of flexion and the kidney rest should lie under the iliac crest rather than the flank or ribcage to minimize compression of the dependent lung (Fig. 34.12). The dependent arm should be placed on a padded arm board perpendicular to the torso. The nondependent arm needs to be carefully supported (Fig. 34.13). Neither arm should be abducted more than 90 degrees. For some high thoracotomies, the nondependent arm may need to be elevated above the shoulder plane for exposure; however, vigilance is warranted to prevent neurovascular compromise. The patient’s head must be kept in a neutral position to prevent excessive lateral rotation of the neck and to avoid stretch injuries to the brachial plexus. Often additional head support is required (Fig. 34.14). The dependent ear and eye may be at risk of injury and should be checked regularly.

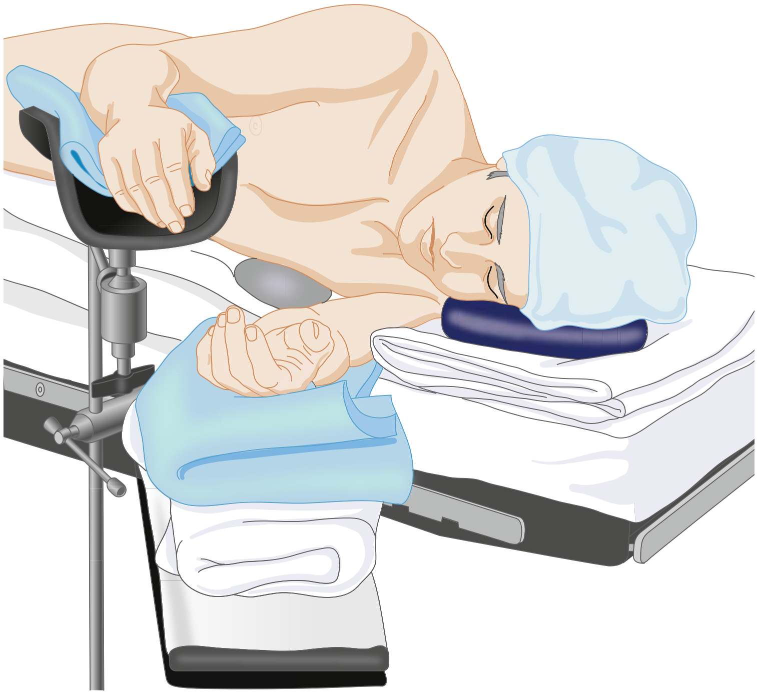


Fig. 34.13 Lateral decubitus position showing placement of arms and head. Additional padding is under the headrest to ensure the alignment of the head with the spine. The headrest is kept away from the dependent eye.

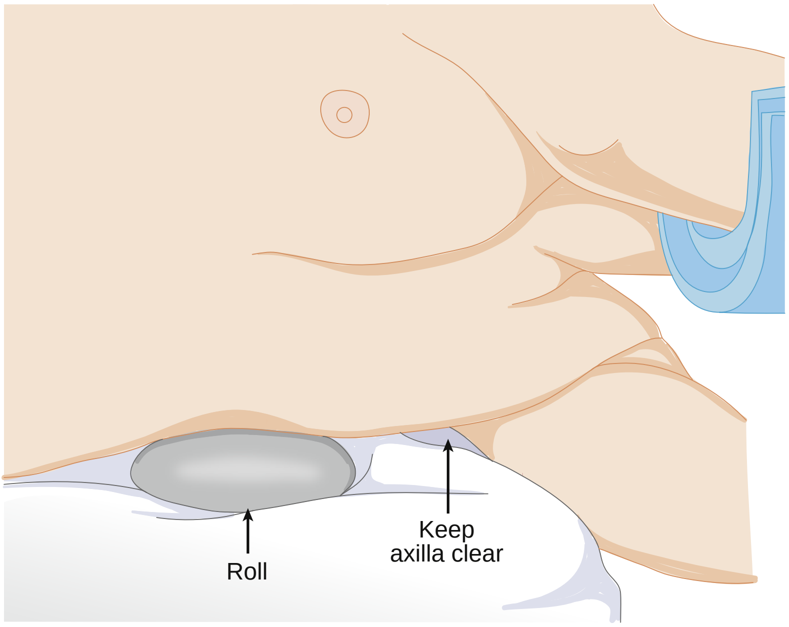


Fig. 34.14 Use of chest roll in the lateral decubitus position. The roll, in this case, is a bag of intravenous fluid and is placed well away from the axilla to prevent compression of the axillary artery and brachial plexus.

The dependent brachial plexus and axillary vascular structures are at particular risk of pressure injury in the lateral decubitus position. In order to avoid compression, an axillary roll is frequently placed between the chest wall and the table just caudal to the dependent axilla (see Fig. 34.13). The purpose of the axillary roll is to protect the dependent shoulder and the axillary contents from the weight of the thorax. The axillary roll should never be placed in the axilla. Sometimes a beanbag is used for positioning without an axillary roll. In this scenario, the axilla should be checked to ensure that it is free from compression. Regardless of the technique, the pulse should be monitored in the dependent arm for early detection of compression to axillary neurovascular structures. Vascular compression and venous outflow obstruction in the dependent arm are risks of the lateral decubitus position. Low pulse oximeter readings can be an early sign of compromised circulation. Similarly, hypotension measured in the dependent arm may be due to axillary arterial compression.

Pulmonary mechanics change in the lateral decubitus position.[36] In a patient who is mechanically ventilated, the

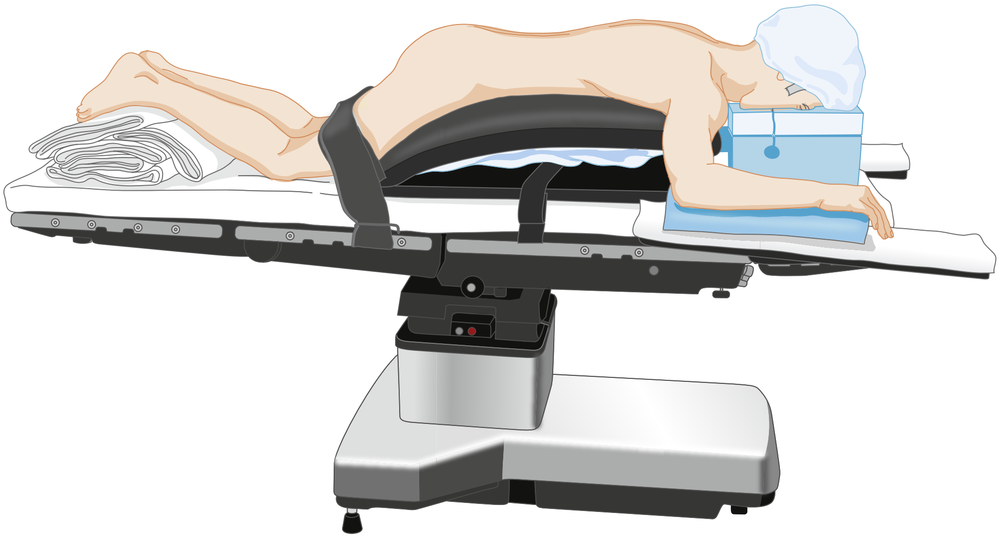


Fig. 34.15 Prone position with Wilson frame. Arms are abducted less than 90 degrees whenever possible, although greater abduction may be better tolerated while prone. Pressure points are padded, and the chest and abdomen are supported away from the bed to minimize abdominal pressure and to preserve pulmonary compliance. Soft head pillow has cutouts for eyes and nose and a slot to permit endotracheal tube exit. Eyes must be checked frequently.

combination of the lateral weight of the mediastinum and the disproportionate cephalad pressure of abdominal contents on the dependent lung favors overventilation of the nondependent lung. At the same time, the effect of gravity causes the pulmonary blood flow to the underventilated, dependent lung to increase. Consequently, ventilation-perfusion matching worsens, potentially affecting gas exchange and ventilation.

The lateral decubitus position is preferred during pulmonary surgery and one-lung ventilation. When the nondependent lung is collapsed, the minute ventilation is allocated to the dependent lung. This, combined with decreased compliance as a result of positioning, may further exacerbate the airway pressure required to achieve adequate ventilation. Head-down tilt in the lateral position worsens pulmonary function yet further, increasing shunt fraction.[37]

PRONE

The prone or ventral decubitus position (Fig. 34.15) is primarily used for surgical access to the posterior fossa of the skull, the posterior spine, the buttocks and perirectal area, and the posterior lower extremities. The patient may receive either monitored anesthesia care or general anesthesia depending on the type of surgery and the patient's body habitus and comorbidities. When general anesthesia is planned, the airway is usually secured via an endotracheal tube while the patient is still supine. Special attention should be paid to securing and taping the endotracheal tube to prevent dislodgement while the patient is prone or during changes in position. Placing an anesthetized patient in the prone position requires the coordination of the entire surgical staff. The anesthesiologist is primarily responsible for coordinating the move while maintaining inline stabilization of the cervical spine and monitoring the endotracheal tube. An exception might be the patient in whom rigid pin fixation is used when the surgeon often holds the pin frame. The endotracheal tube should be disconnected from the circuit during the move from supine to prone in order to prevent dislodgement. Which, and how many, monitors and lines are disconnected during the move is up to the clinical judgement of the anesthesiologist for an individual patient. Lines and monitors connected to the inside arm (the arm moving the least during the move) can often be easily maintained without disconnecting. Ventilation and monitoring should be reestablished as rapidly as possible.

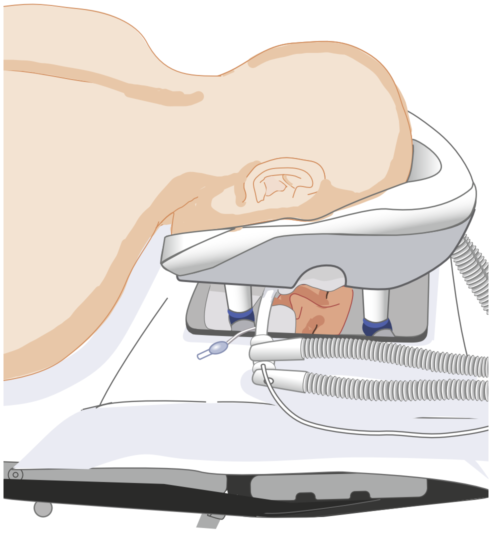


Fig. 34.16 Mirror system for prone position. Bony structures of head and face are supported, and monitoring of the eyes and airway is facilitated with a plastic mirror. Although not illustrated, the eyes should be taped closed.

Prone head position is critical. For patients under sedation, the head may be turned to the side if neck mobility is adequate. During general anesthesia, the head is usually kept neutral using a surgical pillow, horseshoe headrest, or head pins. Weight should be on the bony facial prominences and not soft tissue and especially not on the eyes. The face is not always visible. Mirror systems are available to facilitate intermittent visual confirmation that the eyes are not compressed, although direct visualization or tactile confirmation is prudent (Fig. 34.16). Several commercially available pillows are specially designed for the prone position. Most pillows support the forehead, malar regions, and chin, with a cutout for the eyes, nose, and mouth (see Fig. 34.15). The forehead and malar regions are supported by the horseshoe headrest and allow for reasonable access to the airway (Figs. 34.17 and 34.18). Pin fixation, which is most used in cranial and cervical surgery, is advantageous because there is no direct pressure on the face (Fig. 34.19). Patient movement must be prevented when the head is held in pins; movement in pins can result in scalp lacerations or a cervical spine injury. Both horseshoe and pin headrests attach to the operating room table with adjustable articulating supports. All articulating supports must be fully locked as failure of this bracketing device may lead to complications if the head suddenly drops.

Regardless of the type of head-support technique, proper positioning must be frequently verified during the surgery, checking that there is no pressure on the eyes, that the airway is secure, and that the head weight lies on the bony facial prominences only. The prone position is a risk factor for perioperative visual loss (POVL), which is discussed separately in this chapter. If motor-evoked potentials are used during spine or neurosurgery, then the position of the tongue and placement of bite blocks must be frequently checked; bite injuries can be severe.[38]

A prone patient's legs should be padded and flexed slightly at the knees and hips. The arms may be positioned to the patient's sides or placed outstretched above the head. If the arms are at the patient's sides then they should be tucked in the neutral position. If the arms are outstretched above the head, the arms should be placed on arm boards with slight flexion at the elbows to prevent undue stretch on

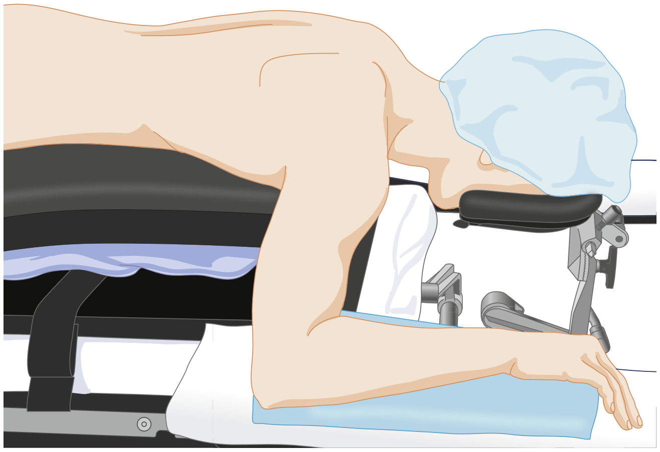


Fig. 34.17 Prone position with horseshoe adapter. Head height is adjusted to position the neck in a natural position without undue extension or flexion.

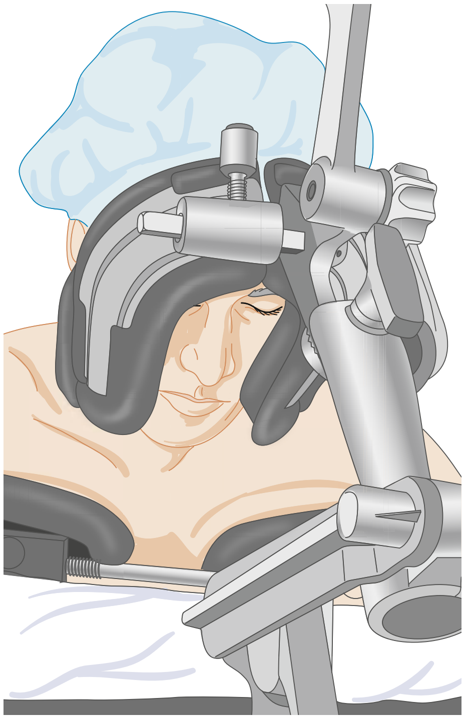


Fig. 34.18 Prone position with horseshoe adapter. The face is seen from below. The horseshoe adapter permits superior access to the airway and visualization of eyes. The width may be adjusted to ensure proper support by facial bones.

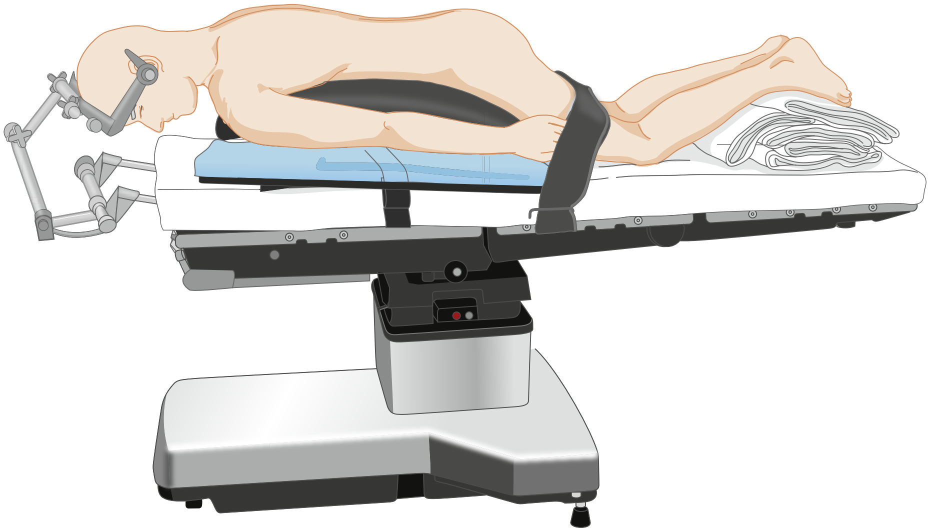


Fig. 34.19 Prone position with Mayfield head pins. Rigid fixation is provided for the cervical spine and posterior intracranial surgeries. The head position may include neck torsion or flexion that affects the depth of the endotracheal tube, and extreme head positions may increase the risk of cervical cord injury.

the peripheral nerves. Extra padding under the elbow may be needed to prevent compression of the ulnar nerve. The arms should not be abducted greater than 90 degrees.

If the legs are in plane with the torso, then hemodynamic reserve is relatively maintained; however, if any significant lowering of the legs or tilting of the entire table occurs, then venous return may increase or decrease accordingly. The prone position does not alter the ability of pulse pressure variation to predict fluid responsiveness. However, the variation has been shown to be augmented at baseline; therefore, fluid responsiveness is observed at a slightly greater level of variation than when supine.[39]

When patients are in the prone position, weight should be distributed to the thoracic cage and bony pelvis, the abdomen should hang freely in order to prevent increases in intraabdominal and intrathoracic pressure. This is accomplished with specific types of prone beds or with gel or foam bolsters. The prone beds and bolsters all place support along each side of the patient from the clavicles to the iliac crests. Placement beyond the iliac crests can cause compression on the femoral vessels and femoral nerve. Some prone beds include the Wilson frame (see Fig. 34.15), Jackson table, Relton frame, and Mouradian/Simmons modification of the Relton frame. Breasts should be placed medially to the prone torso supports (or bolsters), and genitalia should be clear of compression.[40] During posterior spinal surgery, relatively low venous pressure is desirable to minimize bleeding and to facilitate surgical exposure. Elevated abdominal pressure can transmit elevated venous pressures to the abdominal and spine vessels, including the epidural veins, which lack valves. Increased abdominal pressure may also impede venous return through compression of the inferior vena cava, decreasing cardiac output.

Pulmonary function is usually better in the prone position than in the supine position.[41,42] The prone position has been used to improve respiratory function in patients with adult respiratory distress syndrome.[43-45] Under anesthesia, the prone position has advantages over the supine position with regard to lung volumes and oxygenation without adverse effects on lung mechanics,[46,47] including patients who are obese[48] (see also Chapter 58) and pediatric patients (see also Chapter 77).[49] Newer investigations using high-resolution imaging have shown the prone position to provide superior ventilation-perfusion matching in the posterior segments of the lung near the diaphragm when compared with the supine position. The aeration and ventilation of these posterior segments are better, while blood flow is maintained, despite their nondependent position.[8,14]

Other complications of the prone position include airway edema, eye injury, pressure injury, and inadvertent loss of the endotracheal tube, monitoring, and intravenous lines. For long cases, or cases with large intravascular volume shifts, consider checking and documenting an endotracheal cuff leak at the start and end of the case. Lines and tubes need to be placed and should be well secured prior to turning the patient prone.

SITTING

The sitting position offers excellent surgical exposure to the upper posterior cervical spine and posterior fossa. Gravitational venous drainage of blood in the sitting position does decrease blood in the operative field and therefore possibly reduces surgical blood loss.[50] The lawn or beach chair position is a variation of the sitting position and is commonly used for shoulder surgeries (Fig. 34.20). The lawn chair position is really a semi-sitting position, with the head of the patient more reclined than in the traditional sitting position. For the surgeon, its advantages versus the lateral decubitus position are superior access to the shoulder from both the anterior and posterior aspect and the potential for great mobility of the arm at the shoulder joint.[51] Access to the airway is generally excellent in the sitting position, facial swelling is minimized, and pulmonary mechanics are reasonably preserved (Chapter 57).

There are unique risks to the sitting position that require much vigilance. One of the most concerning risks is for venous air embolism (VAE). The veins lie above the level of the heart in this position; therefore, air entrainment through the veins to the heart is a real danger. Furthermore, dural veins are valveless and tented open by the cranium (Fig. 34.21; see also Chapter 57). Other complications from the sitting position include quadriplegia, spinal cord infarction, hemodynamic instability pneumocephalus, macroglossia, and peripheral nerve injuries.[52,53]

Placing an anesthetized patient in the sitting position requires flexion at the torso. Hip flexion should be less than 90 degrees in order to minimize stretch on lower extremity nerves (including the sciatic nerve). Arms are supported so that the shoulders are slightly elevated in order to ensure avoidance of traction on the shoulder muscles and potential stretching of upper extremity neurovascular structures. The knees are also usually slightly flexed for balance and to reduce stretching of the sciatic nerve, and the feet are supported and padded.[54] The patient's head must be specially fixed in the sitting position with either rigid pins or taped into a special headrest.

The head and neck position while in the sitting position has been associated with complications. Surgery in the sitting position was found to be a risk factor for cervical spinal cord injury in a review of the ASA Closed Claims Project database from 1970 to 2007.[55] Although the exact mechanism for cervical spinal cord injury is unknown, cervical hyperextension, cervical hyperflexion, or excessive cervical rotation have been implicated as risk factors. Extreme neck positions can impede both arterial and venous blood flow, causing hypoperfusion or venous congestion of the brain. The patient's cervical range of motion should be examined in the preoperative assessment, and adequate distance should be maintained between the mandible and the sternum when the cervical spine is flexed in order to provide for adequate arterial and venous blood flow.[52,56,57]

VAE is a constant concern in the sitting position due to the position of the surgical field above the level of the heart and the tented open dural venous sinuses. The reported incidence of VAE varies greatly in the literature due to a lack of standardization of measurement and grading scale for VAE. VAE can cause arrhythmias, oxygen (O_2) desaturation, acute pulmonary hypertension, circulatory compromise, and cardiac arrest. If there is a patent foramen ovale (PFO), then the patient is at risk for a paradoxical arterial embolism causing stroke or myocardial infarction. Traditionally, preoperative contrast echocardiography is recommended to evaluate for a PFO. However, failure to detect a PFO on

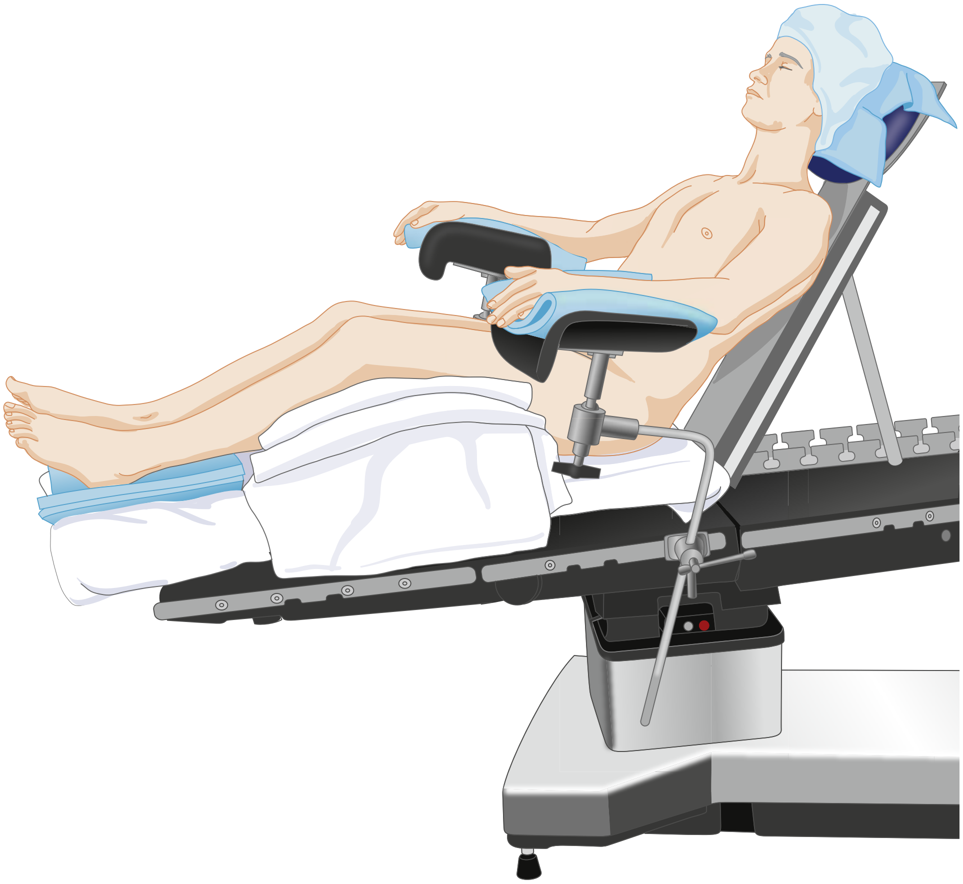


Fig. 34.20 Sitting position adapted for shoulder surgery, often called the lawn or beach chair position. The arms must be supported to prevent stretching of the brachial plexus without pressure on the ulnar area of the elbow. As with all head-up positions, blood pressure should be regulated with the height of the brain in mind.

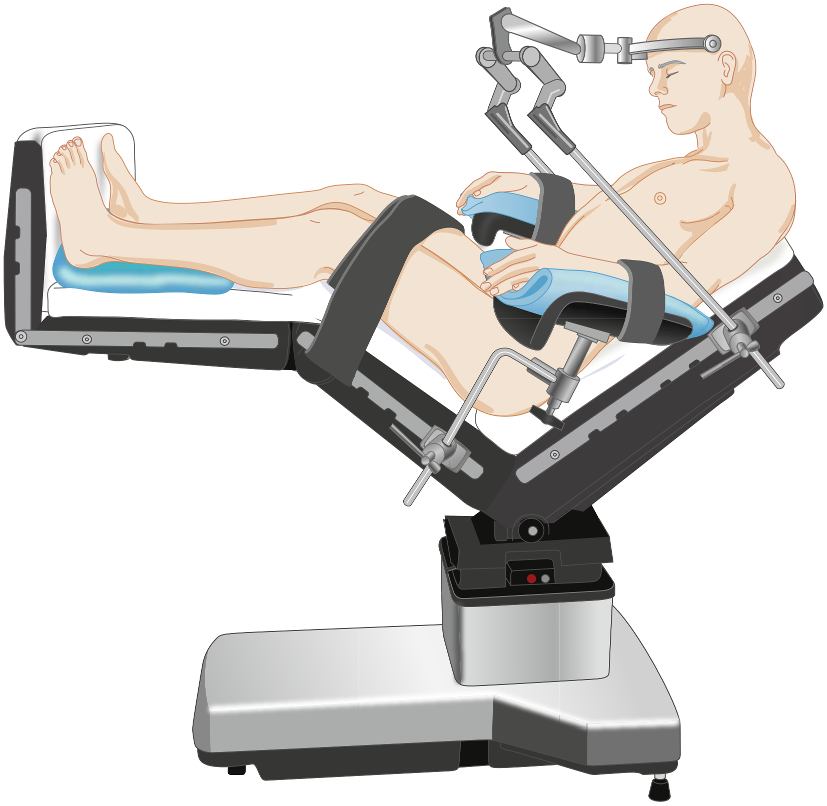


Fig. 34.21 Sitting position with Mayfield head pins. The patient is typically semi-recumbent rather than sitting; the legs are kept as high as possible to promote venous return. Arms must be supported to prevent shoulder traction and stretching of the brachial plexus. In a commonly used variation, the arms are placed on the abdomen and supported. The head support is preferably attached to the back section of the table to allow the back to be adjusted or lowered emergently without first detaching the head holder.

echocardiography does not ensure that the intraatrial septum is intact.[58] The presence of a PFO has generally been considered a contraindication to the sitting position. A recent review suggested that paradoxical VAE is so rare that the presence of a PFO should not necessarily preclude placing the patient in the sitting position. This study found that a VAE was detected in 40% of patients with a known PFO and that no paradoxical embolism was detected.[59] The decision to proceed should be made with patient informed consent and with a discussion between the surgeon and anesthesiologist.

Continuous monitoring for VAE during surgery in the sitting position is essential. There is no standard for type of VAE monitor. Clinical severity of VAE depends on the amount of air and the speed of entrainment. Extrapolation from animal studies suggests that 3 to 5 mL/kg is a lethal amount of air for an adult human, but in reality much less could be required. Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is the most sensitive monitor, able to detect as little as 0.02 mL/kg of air. In fact, TEE is so sensitive that some degree of entrained air can be demonstrated in a large majority of patients during neurosurgery in the sitting position.[58,60] Transthoracic Doppler (TTD) is the most sensitive noninvasive monitor with detection rates of approximately 0.05 mL/kg of air. The TTD probe is placed on either the left or right sternal border between the second to fourth intercostal spaces. Transcranial Doppler (TCD) is a monitor of the middle cerebral artery and is nearly as sensitive as TEE. Pulmonary artery catheters, esophageal stethoscopes, and end-tidal carbon dioxide monitors are all much less sensitive monitors. Electrocardiographic and pulse oximeter changes are later findings.[61,62]

Treatment for VAE includes first stopping further air entrainment. The surgeon is asked to stop operating, to flood the field with normal saline, and possibly apply bone wax. The inspired percent of O_2 is changed to 100%. This will aid in treatment during hypoxemia or hypotension and may help reduce the volume of the air embolism via denitrogenation. Hemodynamic compromise is treated with intravenous fluids and vasoactive agents. Consideration is given to placing the patient in left side down and Trendelenburg in order to move an air lock in the right ventricular outflow track (although this can be difficult or impossible in some surgeries).[61] A central venous catheter is often placed preoperatively in order to aspirate entrained air.[58] An exvivo study examining different central venous catheter types and positions found that a multiorifice catheter and single orifice catheter both aspirated 50% to 60% of experimentally introduced air.[63]

Pneumocephalus, quadriplegia, spinal cord infarction, cerebral ischemia, and peripheral nerve injuries are all risks of sitting positions. Pneumocephalus is almost universally found on postoperative imaging from cervical or posterior fossa surgery performed in the sitting position. Tension pneumocephalus, which is accumulation of air in the subdural or ventricular space causing pressure on intracranial structures, is very rare but reported after neurosurgery in the sitting position. Prompt diagnosis and surgical evacuation of air is the treatment. Positioning complications causing quadriplegia or spinal cord infarction are thought to be caused by impaired arterial perfusion with hyperextension, hyperflexion, or excessive rotation of the neck. Theories relating the sitting positions to cerebral ischemia include reduced cerebral perfusion caused by reduced cardiac output, deliberate or permissive hypotension, loss of compensatory mechanisms caused by anesthesia, failure to compensate for the height of the head in the regulation of the blood pressure, dynamic vertebral artery narrowing or occlusion with the rotation of the head, and air emboli. Investigators have demonstrated positional effects on cerebral oxygen saturation,[64] as well as transient reductions in cerebral oxygen saturation associated with hypotensive periods during shoulder surgeries in the sitting position that reversed after use of ephedrine and phenylephrine to restore cerebral perfusion pressure.[64-66] One observational study of 124 patients undergoing shoulder arthroscopy demonstrated cerebral desaturation by oximetry in 80% of those who were in the lawn or beach chair position and none in the lateral decubitus position.[67] Cerebral oxygen saturation monitoring may be helpful; however, no gold standard limits exist, and values may change along with alterations in patient position and carbon dioxide concentration. Therefore, if measured, trends in cerebral oxygen saturation are best interpreted during periods of constant ventilation and patient position.[68,69] Reasonable recommendations for patients undergoing surgery in the sitting position are to monitor blood pressure carefully in reference to the level of the brain, avoid and rapidly treat any hypotension or bradycardia, and position the head carefully to avoid extreme positions that may compromise cerebral vessels.[70]

Hypotension is a known and very common problem for anesthetized patients in the sitting position. Pooling of blood in the lower body places anesthetized patients in the sitting position at particular risk to hypotensive episodes. Studies reveal that mean arterial pressure, systolic blood pressure, and cardiac index all decrease in the sitting position.[52] Therefore, placement of the patient into the sitting position should be incremental in order to adjust for hemodynamic changes. Intravenous fluids and vasopressors should be inline and ready.

ROBOTIC SURGERY

Since its introduction approximately 30 years ago, the use and scope of robotic surgery has expanded greatly. Robotic surgery is now the norm for many types of urologic and gynecologic operations,[71,72] and is extending to other abdominal operations, thoracic surgery, and head and neck operations. Robotic surgery offers technical advantages for surgeons regarding range of motion and accuracy of laparoscopic instrumentation. Once the robot is docked, direct access to the patient is limited. It is therefore imperative that all monitors, lines, and invasive lines are placed prior to docking the robot, and that proper padding and positioning are completed.

Most of the literature about robotic positioning involves urologic and gynecologic operations, which are generally performed with the patient in steep Trendelenburg (30-45 degrees) and lithotomy with arms tucked in neutral position to the sides. The patient must be very well secured in order to avoid slipping in steep Trendelenburg. Non-slip mattresses, chest straps, and shoulder braces may be useful, but shoulder braces are also reported to cause brachial plexus injuries due to stretch between the shoulder and neck. If shoulder braces are employed, monitoring for excessive stretch at the patient's neck is essential. The endotracheal tube should be well secured to avoid migration. Often a tray or table is placed above the patient's face in order to provide protection from laparoscopic equipment.[73-75] It may be prudent to trial the steep Trendelenburg prior to docking the robot to ensure that the patient is properly positioned, does not slip, and can tolerate steep Trendelenburg from a physiologic standpoint.

Physiologic changes during robotic surgery are due to both laparoscopic insufflation as well as positioning. Hemodynamic changes are largely due to laparoscopic insufflation, whereas changes in respiratory mechanics are also affected by positioning. Functional residual capacity is decreased with both laparoscopy and further decreased with the addition of steep Trendelenburg. This is due to a combination of pressure of abdominal contents from laparoscopy and Trendelenburg pushing up on the diaphragm, and can also be worsened by chest fixation that is applied to prevent the patient from slipping off the table. Peak and plateau airway pressures have been shown to rise as much as 50%. Between changes in pulmonary compliance, decreased functional residual capacity, and the need for increased minute ventilation with carbon dioxide insufflation, intraoperative mechanical ventilation can be quite challenging during these cases.[73-76]

The incidence of positioning complications from robotic surgery vary substantially from 0.8% to 6.6%; most studies indicate an incidence of less than 1%.[77-79] One study found longer operative times, higher ASA physical status, and increased intravenous fluid administration to be risk factors for intraoperative positioning complications.[77] A history of prior abdominal surgery was the only associated risk factor found in a study of gynecologic robotic surgeries.[78] Eye injury, peripheral nerve injuries, rhabdomyolysis, and compartment syndrome were the most frequent positioning complications found in patients with robotic assisted radical prostatectomies. Incidence of injury in this study was not different between robotic versus traditional open prostatectomy.[79] In a recent survey of ASA members, 21.7% of responders answered "yes" that they have experienced a "complication related to Trendelenburg positioning (during robotic surgery)." Airway and facial edema, as well as brachial plexus injuries, were the most common recalled complications in this survey.[80] When steep Trendelenburg is used, consideration should be given to documenting the endotracheal tube airway leak at the start and at the end of the surgical procedure prior to extubation.

Peripheral Nerve Injury

Peripheral nerve injury remains a serious perioperative complication and a significant source of professional liability despite its infrequent incidence. The ASA states that "postoperative signs and symptoms related to peripheral nerve injury…may include but are not limited to paresthesias, muscle weakness, tingling, or pain in the extremities."[4] Studies of the ASA Closed Claims Project database (in 1990 and 1999) brought awareness of the incidence of perioperative peripheral nerve injury, which was found to be between 0.03% and 0.11%. However, according to this database, peripheral nerve injuries represented 22% of all claims. In fact, peripheral nerve injury has been second only to death as the leading cause of claims against anesthesiologists.

The overall incidence of peripheral nerve injury claims had increased from 15% in the 1970s.[1,2,81,82] According to a review of 5280 closed claims (from 1990 to 2007), most patients with nerve injuries do recover, however, up to 23% of peripheral nerve injuries remain permanent.[4]

In the closed claims database study, ulnar neuropathy is the most common lesion representing 28% of all peripheral nerve injury claims, followed by the brachial plexus (20%), lumbosacral nerve root (16%), and spinal cord (13%).[2,3] Interestingly, the distribution of nerve injury claims has changed over time. From 1980 through 1984, ulnar neuropathy claims decreased from 37% to 17% in the 1990s, and spinal cord injury claims increased from 8% in 1980 through 1984 to 27% in the 1990s. The incidence of spinal cord injury and lumbosacral nerve root neuropathy increased over this study period and were predominantly associated with regional anesthesia. Epidural hematoma and chemical injuries represented 29% of the known mechanisms of injury among the claims filed.[2,83,84]

In a different retrospective study of 380,680 patients at a single university tertiary care institution, 112 peripheral nerve injuries were observed in the perioperative period, an incidence of 0.3%.[85] Most injuries were sensory (60%) or combined sensory and motor (24%), with only 14% pure motor injuries. This study provides a significantly different numerator and denominator than the ASA Closed Claims Project, and its data contrast with the most recent claims data in which more claims were filed after the administration of regional anesthesia.

Peripheral nerves are made up of bundles of endoneurium wrapped axons bundled into fascicles, which are wrapped in perineurium. Schwann cells provide a myelin sheath to enhance conduction for myelinated nerves. Peripheral nerves are vascular metabolically active structures. The vasa nervorum provides blood flow via a capillary network.[86] Injuries are classified in neurology by the Seddon or Sunderland Classifications. These classifications are based upon neuronal anatomy and can be clinically correlated.[87] There are three main mechanisms for peripheral nerve injury: stretch, compression, and transection. Transection can be partial or complete and can be due to sharp or blunt transection. Compression injuries can be due to compression of vascular structures causing ischemic injury or due to direct nerve or myelin compression.[87] All of these mechanisms can affect sensory and motor nerves.[88]

Perioperative peripheral nerve injury is complex and multifactorial in etiology. Because sensation is blocked by unconsciousness or regional anesthesia, early warning symptoms of pain with normal spontaneous repositioning are absent.[81,89] Patient comorbidities that contribute to peripheral nerve injuries include: hypertension, diabetes, peripheral vascular disease, older age, and heavy alcohol and tobacco use.[4] Extremes of weight, both low body mass index and obesity, are also risk factors. General and epidural anesthesia appeared to be risk factors, compared with monitored anesthesia care, spinal anesthesia, and peripheral nerve blocks. Prolonged surgical times are an additional risk factor.[1,85]

BOX 34.1 Summary of the 2018 American Society of Anesthesiologists Practice Advisory for the Prevention of Perioperative Peripheral Neuropathies

Preoperative Assessment

- Review a patient's preoperative history and perform a physical examination to identify: body habitus, preexisting neurologic symptoms, diabetes mellitus, peripheral vascular disease, alcohol dependency, arthritis, and sex.
- When judged appropriate, ascertain whether patients can comfortably tolerate the anticipated position.

Upper Extremity Positioning

- Positioning Strategies to Reduce Perioperative Brachial Plexus Neuropathy
  - When possible, limit arm abduction in a supine patient to 90 degrees. The prone position may allow patients to comfortably tolerate abduction of their arms to greater than 90 degrees.
- Positioning Strategies to Reduce Perioperative Ulnar Neuropathy
  - Supine Patient with Arm on an Armboard: Position the upper extremity to decrease pressure on the postcondylar groove of the humerus (ulnar groove). Either supination or the neutral forearm positions may be used to facilitate this action.
  - Supine Patient with Arm tucked at Side: Place the forearm in a neutral position.
  - Flexion of the Elbow: When possible, avoid flexion of the elbow to decrease the risk of ulnar neuropathy.
- Positioning Strategies to Reduce Perioperative Radial Neuropathy
  - Avoid prolonged pressure on the radial nerve in the spiral groove of the humerus.
- Positioning Strategies to Reduce Perioperative Median Neuropathy
  - Avoid extension of the elbow beyond the range that is comfortable during the preoperative assessment to prevent stretching of the median nerve.
    - Periodic assessment of upper extremity position during procedures
  - Periodic perioperative assessments may be performed to ensure maintenance of the desired position.

Lower Extremity Positioning

- Positioning Strategies to Reduce Perioperative Sciatic Neuropathy
  - Stretching of the Hamstring Muscle Group: Positions that stretch the hamstring muscle group beyond the range that is comfortable during the preoperative assessment may be avoided to prevent stretching of the sciatic nerve.
  - Limiting Hip Flexion: Since the sciatic nerve or its branches cross both the hip and the knee joints, assess extension and flexion of these joints when determining the degree of hip flexion.
- Positioning Strategies to Reduce Perioperative Femoral Neuropathy
  - When possible, avoid extension or flexion of the hip to decrease the risk of femoral neuropathy.
- Positioning Strategies to Reduce Perioperative Peroneal Neuropathy
  - Avoid prolonged pressure on the peroneal nerve at the fibular head.

Protective Padding

- Padded armboards may be used to decrease the risk of upper extremity neuropathy.
- Chest rolls in the laterally positioned patient may be used to decrease the risk of upper extremity neuropathy.
- Specific padding to prevent pressure of a hard surface against the peroneal nerve at the fibular head may be used to decrease the risk of peroneal neuropathy.
- Avoid the inappropriate use of padding (padding too tight) to decrease the risk of perioperative neuropathy.

Equipment

- When possible, avoid the improper use of automated blood pressure cuffs on the arm to reduce the risk of upper extremity neuropathy.
- When possible, avoid the use of shoulder braces in a steep head-down position to decrease the risk of perioperative neuropathies.

Postoperative Assessment

- Perform a simple postoperative assessment of extremity nerve function for early recognition of peripheral neuropathies.

Documentation

- Document specific perioperative positioning actions that may be useful for continuous improvement processes.

From the Practice Advisory for the prevention of perioperative peripheral neuropathies: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on prevention of perioperative peripheral neuropathies. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:11–26.

Ascertaining the presence of preoperative neuropathies and paresthesias is particularly important as injured nerves are more susceptible to injury in a phenomenon described as the double crush syndrome. The theory is that two separate subclinical nerve insults can act synergistically to produce a clinically significant neuropathy.

Usually, the exact mechanism of injury for a particular patient cannot be determined.[2] With the exception of spinal cord injuries, the mechanism of nerve injury remains incompletely explained by scientific studies. Most nerve injuries, particularly those to nerves of the upper extremity such as the ulnar nerve and brachial plexus, occurred in the presence of adequate positioning and padding. Nevertheless, we must prevent nerve injuries to the best of our abilities. The ASA released an updated practice advisory in 2018 to help guide prevention of perioperative nerve injury (Box 34.1).[4] Positions that permit stretching of the nerves and pressure to anatomic locations known to carry nerves prone to injury must be avoided, such as the ulnar cubital tunnel and the peroneal nerve coursing over the fibular head (Table 34.1). Padding and support should distribute weight over as wide an area as possible; however, no padding material has been shown to be superior. Whenever possible, the patient's position should appear natural.

ULNAR NERVE INJURY

The ulnar nerve lies in a superficial position at the elbow. Morbidity associated with ulnar neuropathy can be severe. In a prospective study among 1502 patients undergoing noncardiac surgery, 7 patients developed perioperative ulnar neuropathy, of which 3 patients had residual symptoms after 2 years.[90] In a study on the effect of arm position on the ulnar nerve somatosensory-evoked potentials

TABLE 34.1 Most Common Nerve Injuries in the American Society of Anesthesiologists Closed Claims Database 1990–2010

Nerve Injury	Recommendations for Prevention
Ulnar nerve (14%)	▪ Avoid excessive pressure on the postcondylar groove of the humerus. ▪ Keep the hand and forearm either supinated or in a neutral position.
Brachial plexus (19%)	▪ When utilizing a steep head-down (Trendelenburg) position: ▪ Avoid the use of shoulder braces and beanbags when possible (use nonsliding mattresses). ▪ Avoid abduction of the arm(s) when possible. ▪ Avoid excessive lateral rotation of the head, either in the supine or prone position. ▪ Limit abduction of the arm to <90 degrees in the supine position. ▪ Avoid the placement of high "axillary" roll in the decubitus position—keep the chest roll out of the axilla to avoid neurovascular compression. ▪ Use ultrasound to locate the internal jugular vein for central line placement.
Spinal cord (25%) and lumbosacral nerve root or cord (18%)	▪ Be aware that the fraction of spinal cord injuries is increasing, probably in relation to use of regional anesthesia. ▪ Avoid severe cervical spine flexion or extension when possible. ▪ Follow current guidelines for regional anesthesia in patients on anticoagulant therapy.
Sciatic and peroneal nerves (7%)	▪ Minimize the time in the lithotomy position. ▪ Use two assistants to coordinate simultaneous movement of both legs to and from the lithotomy position. ▪ Avoid excessive flexion of the hips, extension of the knees, or torsion of the lumbar spine. ▪ Avoid excessive pressure on peroneal nerve at the fibular head.

ASA, American Society of Anesthesiologists.
Data from ASA Closed Claims Project 1990 to 2010.
Practice advisory for the prevention of perioperative peripheral neuropathies 2018: An updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Prevention of Perioperative Peripheral Neuropathies. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:11–26.

(SSEPs) in 15 healthy awake male volunteers, the supinated position was associated with the least pressure on the ulnar nerve, and the neutral position was the next most favorable. When in the neutral position on a surgical armrest, pressure decreased as the arm was abducted between 30 and 90 degrees. Interestingly, not all patients had symptoms of nerve compression when the SSEP was abnormal.[17] Current consensus is that the cause of ulnar nerve palsy is multifactorial and not always preventable.[91,92] In a large retrospective review of perioperative ulnar neuropathy lasting longer than 3 months, the onset of symptoms occurred more than 24 hours postoperatively in 57% of patients; 70% were men and 9% experienced bilateral symptoms. Very thin or obese patients were at increased risk, as were those with prolonged postoperative bed rest. No association with intraoperative patient position or anesthetic technique was confirmed.[93] The ASA Closed Claims Project also demonstrated that perioperative ulnar neuropathy occurred predominately in men, in an older population, and with a delayed onset (median of 3 days).[2] The large predominance of ulnar injury in men may possibly be explained by anatomic differences. Men have a more developed and thickened flexor retinaculum with less protective adipose tissue and a larger tubercle of the coronoid process that can predispose them to nerve compression in the cubital tunnel.[94,95] In the published ASA Closed Claims Project data, only 9% of ulnar injury claims had an explicit mechanism of injury, and in 27% of claims, the padding of the elbows was explicitly documented.[2] Postoperative ulnar nerve palsy can occur without any apparent cause, even when padding and positioning of the patient's arm was carefully managed and documented in the anesthetic record.[18]

BRACHIAL PLEXUS INJURY

The brachial plexus is susceptible to stretching because of its long superficial course from the neck to the arm via the axilla with two points of fixation—the cervical vertebrae and the axillary fascia. The nerves are vulnerable to compression as they pass between the clavicle and the first rib because of the proximity and mobility of both the clavicle and the humerus (see Fig. 34.6). Among patients undergoing noncardiac surgeries, the incidence of brachial plexus injury is reported to be 0.02%.[96] After brachial plexus injury, the patient often complains of sensory deficit in the distribution of the ulnar nerve. This symptom is most commonly associated with intraoperative arm abduction greater than 90 degrees, lateral rotation of the head away from the side of the injury, asymmetric retraction of the sternum for internal mammary artery dissection during cardiac surgery, or direct trauma or compression. To avoid injury, patients should ideally be positioned with the head midline, arms kept at the sides, the elbows mildly flexed, and the forearms supinated, without pressure on the shoulders or the axilla.

Brachial plexus injury is particularly associated with the use of shoulder braces in patients undergoing surgery in the Trendelenburg position. Medial placement of the braces can compress the proximal roots, and lateral placement of the braces can stretch the plexus by displacing the shoulders against the thorax (see Fig. 34.6). The patient with injury often complains of painless motor deficit in the distribution of the radial and median nerves; however, pain may also be present. A report of three cases of upper- and middle-trunk brachial plexopathy after robotic prostatectomy highlights the potential risk of a combination of compression of the shoulder girdle against the thorax in the steep Trendelenburg position with abduction of an arm.[26] Signs of vascular compromise to the upper extremities, such as difficulty obtaining consistent blood pressure or a poor pulse oximetry signal, may be indications of compromise to the neurovascular bundle as reported in a case of bilateral injury related to shoulder braces with abduction of the arms in the Trendelenburg position.[24] Studies of the brachial plexus tension test in human volunteers and nerve strain in cadavers have demonstrated deleterious positional elements including arm abduction, rotation, or flexion of the head away from the affected arm, elbow and wrist extension, and depression of the shoulder girdle.[25] For transaxillary robotic thyroidectomy, a recently developed approach has the arm abducted to 180 degrees. An incidence of brachial plexus injury has been reported to be 0.3%.[97] When an extreme position is used, neurophysiologic monitoring, such as motor-evoked potentials and SSEPs, has been shown to detect an evolving injury and allow for repositioning to prevent permanent damage.[98,99] Nerve function monitoring may therefore become increasingly common with newer surgical techniques that carry increased risk related to patient positioning.

In patients undergoing cardiac surgery requiring median sternotomy, brachial plexus injury has been specifically associated with the C8 to T1 nerve roots. In a prospective study in which the incidence of injury was 4.9%, 73% of the injuries occurred on the same side as the internal jugular vein cannulation; however, this study antedated the widespread use of ultrasound to guide cannulation.[100] Unilateral sternal retraction to harvest the mammary artery is associated with brachial plexus dysfunction, presumably caused by stretching the nerves. SSEP monitoring of the brachial plexus during sternal retraction has been shown to predict injury.[101]

In the 1999 ASA Closed Claims Project report, 10% of brachial plexus injuries were directly attributed to patient positioning. Of those, one half involved the use of shoulder braces in patients in the Trendelenburg position.[2] Consequently, nonsliding mattresses should be used, along with a concerted effort to avoid compression of the shoulders as much as possible.[21,22] Of the 311 brachial plexus injuries in the ASA Closed Claims Project, 59 (19%) occurred after a regional block without general anesthesia, including axillary and interscalene blocks.[2] In those cases, the role of patient positioning cannot be determined.

OTHER UPPER EXTREMITY NERVE INJURY

In a retrospective study of 1000 consecutive spine surgeries that used SSEP monitoring, five arm positions were compared regarding SSEP changes in the upper extremities. A modification of the arm position reversed 92% of upper extremity SSEP changes. The incidence of position-related upper extremity SSEP changes was significantly higher in the prone "superman" (7%) and lateral decubitus (7.5%) positions, compared with the supine arms out, supine arms tucked, and prone arms tucked positions (1.8%-3.2%). Reversible SSEP changes were not associated with postoperative deficits (Chapter 39).[24]

Although quite rare, the radial nerve can be injured from direct pressure as it traverses the spiral groove of the humerus in the lower one third of the arm. The injury often exhibits a wrist drop with an inability to abduct the thumb or extend the metacarpophalangeal joints. An isolated median nerve injury most often occurs during the insertion of an intravenous needle into the antecubital fossa in a patient who has been anesthetized where the nerve is adjacent to the medial cubital and basilic veins. Patients with this injury are unable to oppose the first and fifth digits and have decreased sensation over the palmar surface of the lateral three and a half fingers. Surprisingly, in an evaluation of the ASA Closed Claims Project database from 1970 to 2007, peripheral intravenous and arterial line insertion accounted for 2.1% of all claims filed, particularly among patients who underwent cardiac surgery where the arms were tucked and the lines were not visible for inspection.[102] Nerve injury accounted for 17% of intravenous line complications, second only to skin slough or necrosis (28%) and swelling, inflammation, and infection (17%).

LOWER EXTREMITY NERVE INJURY

Injuries to the sciatic and common peroneal nerves occur most often in the lithotomy position. Because of its fixation between the sciatic notch and the neck of the fibula, the sciatic nerve can be stretched with external rotation of the leg. The sciatic nerve and its branches cross the hip and knee joints and are stretched by hyperflexion of the hips or extension of the knees. The common peroneal nerve, a branch of the sciatic, is most often damaged from the compression between the head of the fibula and an external structure, such as the frame of a leg support. Most often, patients who suffer a peroneal nerve injury will complain of a foot drop and the inability to extend the toes in a dorsal direction or evert the foot. In a prospective study of 991 patients undergoing surgery under general anesthesia in the lithotomy position, the incidence of lower extremity neuropathies was 1.5%, with injuries to the sciatic and peroneal nerves representing 40% of the cases. Interestingly, symptoms were predominantly paresthesia, with onset within 4 hours of surgery and resolution generally within 6 months. No motor deficits were noted, but in a previous retrospective study, the same authors found the incidence of severe motor disability in patients who underwent surgery in the lithotomy position to be 1 in 3608.[103,104]

Injury to the femoral or obturator nerves generally occurs from lower abdominal surgical procedures with excessive retraction. The obturator nerve can also be injured during a difficult forceps delivery or by excessive flexion of the thigh to the groin. A femoral neuropathy will exhibit decreased flexion of the hip, decreased extension of the knee, or a loss of sensation over the superior aspect of the thigh and medial or anteromedial side of the leg. An obturator neuropathy will exhibit an inability to adduct the leg with decreased sensation over the medial side of the thigh.

In a retrospective review of 198,461 patients undergoing surgery in the lithotomy position from 1957 to 1991, injury to the common peroneal nerve was the most common lower extremity motor neuropathy, representing 78% of nerve injuries. A potential cause of the injury was the compression of the nerve between the lateral head of the fibula and the bar holding the legs. When the "candy cane" stirrups are used, special attention must be paid to avoid compression (see Fig. 34.9). The injury was more common with patients who had low body mass index, recent cigarette smoking, or prolonged duration of surgery.[103] Perhaps as a result of an increased awareness of potential injuries, no lower extremity motor neuropathies were reported in a prospective review of 991 patients undergoing surgery in the lithotomy position from 1997 to 1998. Paresthesias in the distribution of the obturator, lateral femoral cutaneous, sciatic, and peroneal nerves were reported in 1.5% of patients, and nearly all recovered. Surgical times longer than 2 hours were significantly associated with this complication.[104]

EVALUATION AND TREATMENT OF PERIOPERATIVE NEUROPATHIES

When a nerve injury becomes apparent postoperatively, it is essential to perform and document a directed physical examination to correlate the extent of sensory or motor deficits with the preoperative examination as well as any intraoperative events. It is prudent to seek neurologic consultation to help define the neurogenic basis, localize the site of the lesion, and determine the severity of injury for guiding prognostication. With proper diagnosis and management, most injuries resolve, but months to years may be required.[88,105,106] In addition, perioperative neuropathies associated with pain must be differentiated from surgically induced neuropathic pain, which is receiving increasing attention by surgeons because it affects an estimated 10% to 40% of surgical patients postoperatively.[107]

If a new sensory or motor deficit is found postoperatively, then electrophysiologic evaluation by a neurologist within the first week may provide useful information concerning the characteristic and temporal pattern of the injury. Another examination after 4 weeks, when enough time has elapsed for the electrophysiologic changes to evolve, will provide more definitive information about the site and severity of the nerve injury. Regardless, electrophysiologic testing must be interpreted within the clinical context. No single test can define the cause of injury. Nerve conduction studies may be useful to evaluate potential peripheral nerve injuries, as they permit the assessment of both motor and sensory nerves. To evaluate motor integrity, the nerve is supramaximally stimulated at two points along its course, and a recording is made of the electrical response of one of the muscles that it innervates. The size of the muscle action potential provides an estimate of the number of motor axons and muscle fibers that are activated by the stimulus. For sensory conduction studies, the nerve fiber is supramaximally stimulated at one point and the sensory nerve action potential is recorded from another point. The latency of the response can be interpreted as a reflection of the number of functioning sensory axons. Nerve conduction studies are useful for several reasons; they may reveal the presence of a subclinical polyneuropathy that made the individual nerves more susceptible to injury and help distinguish between axon loss and demyelination, which has significant implications regarding course and overall prognosis.

For motor neuropathy, an electromyogram can be performed to characterize the injury. An electromyographic examination involves recording the electrical activity of a muscle from a needle electrode inserted within it. If present, abnormalities may point to the affected component in the motor unit, which consists of the anterior horn cell, its axon and neuromuscular junctions, and the muscle fibers that it innervates. Certain findings are suggestive of denervation, including the presence of abnormal spontaneous activity in the resting muscle (fibrillation potentials and positive sharp waves, which results from muscle irritability) and increased insertion activity. Insertion activity increases within a few days of muscle denervation, whereas abnormal spontaneous activity takes 1 to 4 weeks to develop, depending on the distance from the nerve lesion to the muscle. Depending on the pattern of abnormalities, an electromyographic study may distinguish between radiculopathies, plexopathies, and neuropathies.

Most sensory neuropathies are generally transient and require only reassurance to the patient with follow-up visits, whereas most motor neuropathies include demyelination of peripheral fibers of a nerve trunk (neurapraxia) and generally take 4 to 6 weeks for recovery. Injury to the axon within an intact nerve sheath (axonotmesis) or complete nerve disruption (neurotmesis) can cause severe pain and disability. When reversible, recovery often takes 3 to 12 months. Interim physical therapy is recommended to prevent contractures and muscle atrophy.[105,106]

Pressure Injuries

Pressure injuries are a significant source of patient morbidity and healthcare expenditures in the United States and internationally. Approximately 23% of all pressure ulcers occur while patients are in operating rooms.[108] General anesthesia and length of surgical procedure are both risk factors for pressure injury development. The National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel recently revised their definitions and classification scales for pressure injuries, formerly referred to as pressure ulcers.[109] Pressure injury is injury to the skin, and/or underlying tissue, due to pressure or shearing forces. Currently, there are no universal guidelines for pressure injury prevention. The Association of Perioperative Registered Nurses and the Joint Commission have statements issued stating that the prevention of pressure injuries is a joint responsibility shared by all members of the healthcare team. Understanding the risks of pressure injury is essential to preventing their occurrence.

Often early signs of pressure injury start with nonblanching skin erythema. The skin is more resistant to pressure injury than muscle and can actually mask a more extensive injury underneath.[110] This is likely due to increased O_2 requirements of muscle. Pressure injuries associated with operations are often not seen at the time of operation but could be diagnosed days after.[111,112] In the supine position, areas most at risk include the sacrum, heels, and occiput. In the prone position, the chest and knees are at highest risk for pressure injury, and in the sitting position, the ischial tuberosities are at greatest risk.[74]

Factors contributing to the development of pressure injuries include pressure over bony prominences, shear force, skin breakdown, compromised blood flow, immobility, and decreased sensation. Infection, inflammation, edema, and steroids are all also contributing factors.[113] Patient comorbidities such as diabetes, peripheral vascular disease, obesity, low body mass index, and poor nutrition are also known risks.[108]

There are case reports, and very few larger studies, assessing specific medical device-related pressure injuries. One retrospective study found that approximately 0.65% of all pressure injuries were due to medical devices. Nasal cannulas, endotracheal tubes, nasogastric tubes, and cervical collars were all associated with pressure injuries.[114]

Hypothermia and hypotension during surgery, such as during cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) surgery, may increase the incidence of these complications. Pressure alopecia, caused by ischemic hair follicles, is related to prolonged immobilization of the head with its full weight falling on a limited area, usually the occiput. Hard objects should not be placed under the head as they may create focal areas of pressure. Consequently, ample cushioning of the head and, if possible during prolonged surgery, periodic rotation of the head, are prudent to redistribute the weight.

Bite Injuries

Transcranial motor-evoked potentials (Tc-MEPs) are increasingly used for both spine surgical procedures and also neurosurgical procedures. Tc-MEPs involve contraction of the temporalis and masseter muscle, which has been implicated in tongue, lip, and even tooth injuries due to biting motion. Two large retrospective reviews, each with more than 170,000 cases employing Tc-MEPs, found an overall incidence of 0.14% to 0.63%, and the tongue was most frequently injured (~80% of all associated injuries).[38,115] Injury severity ranged from minor bruising to necessity of laceration repair by suture in 15% to 23% of patients.

Macroglossia following surgery in the sitting position has been reported, presumably due to pressure, ischemia, and decreased venous outflow. A recent review of case reports for macroglossia after neurosurgical procedures found macroglossia was associated with prolonged operative times (50% of cases were over 8 hours) and suboccipital and posterior fossa surgeries (40%).[116] Excessive neck flexion can also obstruct the endotracheal tube and place significant pressure on the tongue, leading to edema. Classically, two finger breadth distance between the chin and chest is recommended. Extra caution is advised in cases with neck flexion if TEE is used for air embolism monitoring, because the esophageal probe lies between the flexed spine and the airway and endotracheal tube, adding to the potential for compression of laryngeal structures and the tongue.

At this time there are no specific recommendations for prevention of bite injuries or macroglossia. Double-sided bite blocks may help in surgical procedures using Tc-MEP, although studies of macroglossia document bite blocks in 50% of patients. The most important prevention measures are ensuring proper placement of bite blocks and rechecking placement throughout the case.

Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room

Anesthesia providers are increasingly involved with gastrointestinal endoscopy, cardiac catheterization, interventional radiology, neuroradiology, magnetic resonance imaging, and computed tomography in hospital locations outside the operating room, as well as for office-based procedures (Chapter 73).[117] Anesthesia care may be specifically requested if an individual is not expected to tolerate the position required for the procedure because of comorbidities such as congestive heart failure, pulmonary disease, or morbid obesity. In addition, although positions customarily used for procedures without anesthesia may be generally safe for patients who are awake, they may pose serious risks to those under anesthesia.

Because of the less familiar environment, relative lack of positioning equipment, and a variability in staff and nursing training with regard to patient positioning, planning, and continued vigilance are particularly important in settings outside the operating room. Diagnostic tables may not lend themselves to established intraoperative solutions to patient positioning challenges. The ability to initiate the Trendelenburg position to augment venous return and cardiac output rapidly is often lacking. In such an environment, where practice patterns often evolve in the context of nonanesthetized patients, the anesthesiologist must verify the safety of each patient's position.

Perioperative Visual Loss

POVL is a rare but serious complication. Ischemic optic neuropathy (ION), and retinal arterial occlusion (RAO) are the main causes.[118,119] Other causes include cortical blindness,[120] acute glaucoma,[121] choroidal and vitreous hemorrhage,[122] and gas bubble expansion after retinal surgery.[123] The discussion here is confined to visual loss that follows nonocular surgery because eye damage after ocular surgery is well described in the ophthalmology literature. Most of our attention is focused on retinal artery occlusion and ION.

Retrospective studies, surveys, and case reports provide much of the current knowledge on POVL. Two large studies showed that perioperative ION is rare, occurring in approximately 1 in 60,000 to 125,000 anesthetic procedures in the overall surgical population.[124,125] Spine fusion and cardiac surgery are associated with higher incidence of POVL than other operative procedures. Shen examined the POVL prevalence in the US Nationwide Inpatient Sample, for the eight most commonly performed surgical procedures, excluding obstetric and gynecologic surgery. ION occurred most frequently in spine (3.09/10,000, 0.03%) and cardiac surgery (8.64/10,000, 0.086%).[126] The yearly rates of POVL have been decreasing in the 10-year period from 1996 to 2005, and for spine surgery have continued to decline as well.[126,127] Patil found an overall rate of 0.094% in spine surgery.[128] In previous, smaller case series, Stevens found ION in 4 of 3450 spine surgeries (0.1%).[129] Chang and Miller reviewed 14,102 spine surgery procedures in one hospital, identifying 4 with ION (0.028%).[130] After cardiac surgery, the incidence may be as high as 1.3%,[131] but is between 0.06% to 0.113% in more recent, larger retrospective studies.[132-134]

Myers conducted a retrospective case-control study of 28 patients with visual loss after spine surgery.[135] The ASA Postoperative Visual Loss Registry reported 93 cases of visual loss after spine surgery.[136] Nuttall performed a retrospective case-control study of cardiac surgery patients at the Mayo Clinic.[132] A retrospective, case-controlled study of risk factors in perioperative ION in spine surgery, a collaborative effort of 17 American and Canadian medical centers, has been reported.[137] These studies are described in detail in subsequent sections of this chapter.

RETINAL ISCHEMIA: BRANCH AND CENTRAL RETINAL ARTERY OCCLUSION

Central retinal artery occlusion (CRAO) decreases blood supply to the entire retina, whereas branch retinal artery occlusion

TABLE 34.2 Differential Diagnosis: Eye Examination in Retinal, Optic Nerve, or Visual Cortex Injury*

	AION	PION	Cortical Blindness	CRAO	BRAO
Optic disk	Pale swelling, peripapillary flame-shaped hemorrhages, edema of optic nerve head Late: Optic atrophy	Initially normal Late: Optic atrophy	Normal	Normal Late: Optic atrophy	Normal Late: Optic atrophy
Retina	Normal; may have attenuated arterioles	Normal; may have attenuated arterioles	Normal	Cherry-red macula†; pallor and edema, narrowed retinal arteries	Emboli may be present‡; partial retinal whitening and edema
Light reflex	Absent or RAPD	Absent or RAPD	Normal	Absent or RAPD	Normal or RAPD
Fixation and accommodation	Normal	Normal	Impaired	May be impaired with external compression	May be impaired with external compression
Opticokinetic nystagmus	Normal	Normal	Absent	Normal	Normal
Response to visual threat	Yes, if some vision remains	Yes, if some vision remains	No	Yes	Yes
Object tracking	Normal, if some vision remains	Normal, if some vision remains	Absent	Normal	Normal
Ocular muscle function	Normal	Normal	Normal	May be impaired if results from external compression	May be impaired if results from external compression
Perimetry	Altitudinal defect; scotoma	Altitudinal defect; blind; scotoma; Often no light perception	Hemianopia (depending on lesion location); periphery affected usually	Usually blind	Scotoma; usually normal periphery

*Typical symptoms and signs are listed. Some patients may have varying findings as a result, among other factors, of timing of examination relative to symptom onset.
†Because of a lack of overlying inner retinal cells in the fovea, the intact choroidal circulation is visible as a cherry-red spot.
‡Cholesterol, platelet-fibrin emboli, calcified atheromatous material.
AION, Anterior ischemic optic neuropathy; *BRAO,* occlusion of a retinal arterial branch; *CRAO,* central retinal arterial occlusion; *PION,* posterior ischemic optic neuropathy; *RAPD,* relative afferent pupillary defect.

(BRAO) is a localized injury; these are generally unilateral. There are four mechanisms: (1) external compression of the eye, (2) decreased arterial supply (embolism to retinal arterial circulation or decreased systemic blood flow), (3) impaired venous drainage, and (4) thrombosis from a coagulation disorder.[138] The most common in the perioperative period is improper positioning with external compression producing sufficiently high IOP to stop blood flow in the central retinal artery. It most often occurs during spine surgery performed with the patient in the prone position. Pressure within the orbit also can be increased after retrobulbar hemorrhage, associated usually with vascular injury from sinus or nasal surgery.[139]

Although rare in most surgical procedures, emboli can directly impair blood flow in the central retinal artery or produce BRAO. Paradoxical embolism from the operative site reaching the arterial circulation through a patent foramen ovale has been reported in perioperative retinal vascular occlusion.[140] Venous drainage can be impaired after radical neck surgery by jugular vein ligation.[141] Retinal microemboli, however, are common during open heart surgery.[142]

Clinical Findings

There is painless visual loss, abnormal pupil reactivity, opacification or whitening of the ischemic retina, and narrowing of retinal arterioles.[143] BRAO is characterized by cholesterol, and calcific or pale platelet fibrin emboli. A cherry-red macula with a white ground-glass appearance of the retina and attenuated arterioles is a “classic” sign.[144] Pallor in the ischemic, overlying retina makes visible the red color of the intact, underlying choroidal circulation, but its absence does not rule out RAO. Differential diagnosis from other causes of visual loss is presented in Table 34.2.

Mechanisms of Retinal Ischemia

The retinal blood supply is derived from the retinal and choroidal vessels.[145] After RAO, some O_2 may still be supplied by diffusion from outer retinal layers via the choroid. In monkeys, eyes with CRAO showed little damage in the macular retina after 97 minutes of ischemia. After 240 minutes, damage was profound and irreversible.[146] But proximal occlusion of the central retinal artery may not necessarily extrapolate to external compression of the eye.[147] Increased IOP from external compression is a more severe insult because of the profound simultaneous decreases in both retinal and choroidal blood flows,[148,149] and the greater susceptibility of the inner retinal cells to damage from pressure.[150] Ischemic tolerance time is probably shorter with external compression.[151,152]

Central Retinal Artery Occlusion

The cause of perioperative CRAO is usually external compression of the eye, although it may also occur in cardiac surgery, suspected from emboli.[153,154] Altered facial anatomy may predispose to damage by pressure from anesthesia masks or headrests. In osteogenesis imperfecta, for example, fibrous coats of the eye are thin and immature because of deficiency of collagen fibers, persistent reticulin fibers, and increased mucopolysaccharide ground substance.[155] Sclerae and corneas are thin and exophthalmos common, rendering the eye more vulnerable to damage from external pressure.[156] The horseshoe headrest leaves limited space for eyes, and the eye may inadvertently contact the headrest. Rectangular and horseshoe headrests were implicated in most reports of external compression.[157,158] Kumar reviewed CRAO cases after spine surgery, noting that signs and symptoms included unilateral vision loss, no light perception, afferent pupil defect, periorbital or eyelid edema, chemosis, proptosis, ptosis, supraorbital paresthesia, hazy or cloudy cornea, corneal abrasion, loss of eye movements, ecchymosis, or other trauma near the eye.[159] Macular or retinal edema, a cherry-red spot, or attenuated retinal vessels were often present. Four patients with external compression had retinal pigmentary alterations, suggesting simultaneous choroidal circulatory ischemia.[160,161] Early orbital computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging showed proptosis and extraocular muscle swelling.[159] Findings were similar to "Saturday night retinopathy" in intoxicated individuals with ocular compression.[162]

Hollenhorst described unilateral blindness in patients positioned prone for neurosurgery and replicated the findings in monkeys with 60 minutes of elevated IOP together with hypotension (six of the eight human subjects did not have hypotension). In the monkey, histologic findings were retinal edema and dilated vascular channels, followed by retinal structural damage, and axonal loss in the optic nerve 4 months later, due to retrograde axonal degeneration after the death of retinal ganglion cells.[163]

Bui documented that during acute IOP increases in rats, changes in visual function assessed by electroretinography progressed from inner to outer retina, that is, retinal ganglion cells were the most sensitive, abnormal at IOPs 30 to 50 mm Hg; photoreceptors were not affected until IOP was higher.[164] The duration of increased IOP that injures the retina varies, with ischemic times as short as 20 or more than 30 or 45 minutes (Table 34.3).[165,166]

Modern head-positioning devices such as square or circular foam headrests with cutouts for the eyes and a mirror to view the eyes should prevent ocular compression.[167] However, unilateral RAO in a prone-positioned patient whose head was in a square foam headrest with goggles covering the eyes has been reported. There is limited space between the headrest and goggles. The patient exhibited signs of direct compression of the eye by the goggles, which, ironically, were designed as eye protectors.[168]

Orbital compartment syndrome, an acute ophthalmologic injury, requiring prompt decompression to relieve the increased IOP, can occur from perioperative intraorbital hemorrhage, orbital emphysema, or intraorbital bacitracin ointment and has been described during endoscopic sinus surgery.[169] There have also been several case reports[170-172] where its occurrence may have been related to positioning, such as in a patient undergoing spine surgery and positioned prone.

Cardiac Surgery and Retinal Arterial Occlusion

The largest case series of perioperative RAO is in cardiac surgery.[153] This recent study retrospectively examined RAO (CRAO and BRAO) in cardiac surgery using the Nationwide Inpatient Sample. More than 5.8 million cardiac operative procedures were estimated from 1998 to 2013, with 4564 RAO cases, an incidence of 7.8/10,000. Associated with increased RAO were giant cell arteritis, transient cerebral ischemia, carotid artery stenosis, embolic stroke, hypercoagulability, myxoma, diabetes mellitus with ophthalmic complications, and aortic insufficiency. Perioperative factors were bleeding, aortic and mitral valve surgery, and septal surgery. These results indicate that conditions that predispose to embolic phenomena, such as carotid disease, opening of the heart during surgery, and preexisting abnormal retinal vasculature (diabetic retinopathy) are potential predictors for RAO in cardiac surgery. Embolization during CPB remains a cause of retinal vascular occlusion. Better means for detecting and preventing this complication are needed.

Branch Retinal Artery Occlusion

BRAO usually leads to permanent ischemic retinal damage with partial visual field loss. Symptoms may not be immediately apparent if the visual field loss is peripheral or when only a small scotoma is present. BRAO is primarily from emboli and, less often, vasospasm. Most case reports describe embolization from intravascular injections, the surgical field, or CPB in cardiac surgery. Microemboli during CPB have been shown by retinal fluorescein angiography.[173] With a bubble oxygenator, all patients had perfusion defects versus 50% with a membrane oxygenator.[174] In coronary artery bypass graft surgery, multiple calcific emboli in branches of the central retinal artery are not unusual, resulting in visual field deficits of varying size and location.[175] In pigs, mechanisms of air embolism during CPB included nonperfusion, vascular leakage and spasm, red blood cell sludging, and hemorrhage. Priming with perfluorocarbons blocked many of these mechanisms.[176]

BRAO was described in a patient in the prone position for spine surgery. After surgery a patent foramen ovale was

TABLE 34.3 Animal Studies of Retinal Ischemia and Time Required to Produce Injury

Author	Animal	Ischemia Method	Ischemia Time
Hayreh et al. (1980, 2004)[146,147]	Monkey	Central retinal artery ligation	>100-240 min
Ettaiche et al. (2001)[151]	Rat (brown Norway)	Increased intraocular pressure	20 and 40 min
Roth et al., Zhang et al. (1998, 2002)[152,165]	Rat (S-D)	Central retinal artery ligation, increased intraocular pressure	45 and 60 min
Zhu et al. (2002)[166]	Mouse (ND4)	Increased intraocular pressure	30, 45, 60 min

discovered. The patient likely sustained a paradoxical air, fat, or bone marrow embolization from the operative site in the lumbar spine.[140] A large retrospective series on RAO in spine surgery has also recently been published.[154]

Considerations in Head and Neck Surgery

The incidence of orbital complications after endoscopic sinus surgery is estimated at 0.12%.[177] Vascular injury during the procedure can cause orbital compartment syndrome with compression of the arterial and venous circulations and in CRAO and optic nerve injury.[178] Indirect damage to the central retinal artery from intraarterial injections of 1% lidocaine with epinephrine has also been described; the mechanism is thought to be arterial spasm or embolism.[179] Orbital surgery is associated with an estimated 0.84% incidence of vision loss.[180] Risk is higher in patients undergoing facial polytrauma repair, optic canal decompression, or orbital apex surgery from an intracranial approach.[181]

Case reports have described sudden irreversible blindness due to BRAO following injection of various drugs into the head and neck region.[182] Super-selective carmustine injection into the internal carotid artery to treat gliomas, or fat injected into the orbit for cosmetic surgery, also have been complicated by visual loss from RAO. This complication can also occur from a neuroradiologic or angiographic or embolism procedure in the head and neck.[183,184]

Prognosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Perioperative RAO results in permanent loss of vision in most cases. Currently available treatment is unsatisfactory. Ocular massage to more peripheral arterial branches could be instituted to decrease IOP and dislodge emboli, if present.[143] Intravenous acetazolamide may increase retinal blood flow. Five percent carbon dioxide in 95% O_2 can enhance dilation and increase O_2 delivery from retinal and choroidal vessels.[185] Further treatment may include thrombolysis, contraindicated after certain surgical procedures. Fibrinolysis through a catheter in the ophthalmic artery within 6 to 8 hours after spontaneous CRAO was associated with improved visual outcome; pooled analysis of trials showed promising results particularly in incomplete CRAO.[186-189] Localized hypothermia to the eye is a simple technique that has decreased injury in animal studies after ischemia, and probably should be instituted because of its minimal risk.[190-192]

In patients positioned prone for surgery, a foam headrest should be used with the eyes properly placed in the opening; the position of the head and the eyes should be checked intermittently about every 20 minutes by palpation or visualization. A headrest that combines a foam headrest with a mirror immediately below, which enables the eyes to be seen easily during surgery, is useful. The use of goggles to cover the eyes is not advised when the head is positioned prone in a conventional square foam headrest. The horseshoe headrest must be used with great caution, and safer choices are available. For the patient positioned prone for cervical spine surgery, this headrest should not be used because of the likelihood of head movement and compression of the eye. Rather, the most effective method for preventing head movement is to place the head in pins. For most procedures in which the patient is prone, any of the commercially available square foam headrests are recommended, where the head is positioned straight down in the neutral position.

In nasal and sinus surgery and in neuroradiologic procedures, the most important principles are avoidance of inadvertent injections into, or compromise of, the ocular circulation. After endoscopic sinus surgery, patients should be checked for signs of acutely elevated IOP (such as blurred vision, eye pain, and nausea) suggestive of orbital hemorrhage. If present, immediate ophthalmologic consultation should be obtained.

ISCHEMIC OPTIC NEUROPATHY

ION, primarily manifesting spontaneously without warning signs, is the leading cause of sudden visual loss in patients older than 50 years of age, with an estimated annual incidence of nonarteritic ION in the United States of 2.3/100,000.[193] Two types of ION—anterior (AION) and posterior (PION)—have been described and can be arteritic or nonarteritic by mechanism. Arteritic AION, caused by temporal arteritis, is a systemic disease, which generally occurs in patients older than 60 years of age, and has a female preponderance. Spontaneously occurring ION, unrelated to surgical procedures, is usually caused by AION.[194]

Nonarteritic ION is overwhelmingly the type found perioperatively. It has been reported after a wide variety of surgical procedures, most after cardiac surgery,[195] spinal fusion,[137] head and neck surgery,[196,197] orthopedic joint procedures,[198] and surgery on the nose or sinuses.[199] Cases also have been described after vascular surgery, general surgical and urologic procedures (radical prostatectomy), cesarean section and gynecologic surgery, and liposuction.[200] The lack of controlled studies, and poorly defined pathologic and risk factors, still limit understanding of perioperative ION, although a number of recent retrospective case-control studies in spine and in cardiac surgery are yielding increasing knowledge of risk factors.[127,134] An animal model of perioperative ION has recently been described as well.[201]

Mechanisms

Disruption of the blood-brain barrier occurs early in AION. There are sparse studies of PION; thus most of this discussion concerns AION. Fluorescein angiography showed dye leakage in the optic nerve head,[202] correlating with early onset of optic disk edema, even before symptoms. [203] The relationship between disruption of the blood-brain barrier and ischemic injury is not known. Earlier studies showed classic blood-brain barrier properties in the optic nerve head[204]; however, more recent immunohistochemical studies of microvessels in the monkey and human optic nerve head suggest a lack of classic blood-brain barrier characteristics in the prelaminar region,[204] which could explain the early edema.

Guy showed that carotid artery occlusion in rats produced a swollen optic nerve within 24 hours.[205] Positive nitrotyrosine immunostaining in the ischemic optic nerve suggests a possible role for nitric oxide (NO) and O_2 free radicals, expected to increase disruption of the blood-brain barrier. Bernstein produced rodent AION by photothrombotic vessel occlusion, and circulation to the optic nerve was lost within 30 minutes; edema peaked 1 to 2 days later and resolved by 5 days.[206] A pale, shrunken optic nerve resembled the limited pathologic studies of human AION.[207] After 6 days, the optic nerve showed axonal swelling and collapse. By 37 days, the retinal ganglion cells were reduced by approximately 40%. Permanent changes included septal thickening and axonal loss, most evident in the center, also similar to that in the human optic nerve. Presently, the number of cases of ION with documented histopathological study is limited.[208]

Clinical studies of AION with fluorescein angiography showed delayed filling of the prelaminar optic disk in 76% of subjects and was not found in normal eyes. This suggests that delayed filling is the primary process, not disk edema,[194] while Hayreh attributed AION to individual variations in blood supply to the optic nerve.[209] This theory is supported by anatomic studies and the variability of visual loss in AION. But the watershed concept—that impaired perfusion and distribution within a posterior ciliary artery predisposes the optic disk to infarction—is disputed. Arnold and Hepler demonstrated that delayed filling of watershed zones was more common in normal eyes than in patients with AION.[202] Thus reduced perfusion pressure in the region of the paraoptic branches of the short posterior ciliary arteries results in optic disk hypoperfusion, rather than a watershed event.[210] Histopathologic examination in AION showed that the infarction was mainly in the retrolaminar region.[211] This implicates as the source of decreased blood flow the short posterior ciliary arteries as directly supplying the optic disk.

A small optic disk (small cup-to-disk ratio) may increase susceptibility to AION because axons of the optic nerve pass through a narrower opening as they exit the eye. Mechanisms of injury resulting from a crowded disk include mechanical axoplasmic flow obstruction, stiff cribriform plate, and decreased availability of neurotrophic factors to retinal ganglion cells.[212-214]

Blood Supply to the Optic Nerve

ION affects the anterior portion of the optic nerve in AION or beyond the retrolaminar region, and behind the eye in PION. Anatomy of and blood supply to the anterior and posterior optic nerves differ.[209] The anterior portion is proximal to the lamina cribrosa, an elastic, collagenous tissue through which the optic nerve, central retinal artery, and central retinal vein pass as they enter the optic disk. The anterior portion includes the superficial nerve fiber layer and the prelaminar region, a thick tissue that constitutes most of the optic disk volume.[215] The superficial nerve fiber layer, composed of axons extending from the retinal ganglion cells, is anterior to the plane extending across the optic nerve from the peripapillary Bruch membrane. Immediately posterior is the prelaminar region, adjacent to the peripapillary choroid. The laminar region is a transition zone between columns of glial cells and dense connective tissue plates. Astrocytes are predominant in the anterior optic nerve, and oligodendrocytes and microglial cells are more common in the posterior or retrobulbar optic nerve. Neural fibers transit the laminar region through fenestrations. The retrolaminar region is the posterior portion of the optic nerve and consists of meningeal sheaths and myelinated axons. The diameter of the optic nerve is enlarged in this area to approximately 3 mm.

The superficial nerve fiber layer derives its blood supply mainly from arterioles in the retina, although in the temporal regions it may receive blood from the posterior ciliary arteries. The prelaminar region is perfused by centripetal branches of the peripapillary choroid and vessels from the circle of Zinn-Haller (Fig. 34.22), which are not found in every eye.[209] Whether the region has a choroid-derived source of blood is controversial. The laminar region is supplied by centripetal branches from the short posterior ciliary arteries or by the circle of Zinn-Haller, but the short posterior ciliary arteries are the primary inputs. Longitudinal anastomoses of capillaries can be seen in the prelaminar and laminar regions and may provide some circulation, although their functional importance is not clearly known.

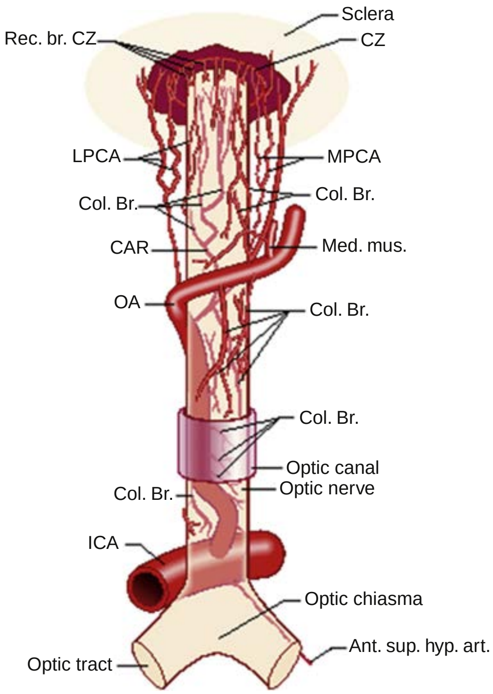


Fig. 34.22 The origin, course, and branches of the ophthalmic artery, including the posterior ciliary arteries, as seen from above. *Ant. sup. hyp. art.*, Anterior superior hypophyseal artery; *CAR*, central retinal artery; *Col. Br.*, collateral branches; *CZ*, circle of Zinn and Haller; *ICA*, internal carotid artery; *LPCA*, lateral posterior ciliary artery; *Med. mus.*, medial muscular artery; *MPCA*, medial posterior ciliary artery; *OA*, ophthalmic artery; *Rec. br.*, recurring branches. (From Pillanut LE, Harris A, Anderson DR, et al, eds. *Current Concepts on Ocular Blood Flow in Glaucoma*. The Hague, Netherlands: Kugler; 1999.)

The retrolaminar, posterior portion of the optic nerve, which is affected in PION (Fig. 34.23), is perfused by two main vascular supplies. The peripheral centripetal vascular system is the major supply and is found in all optic nerves; it is formed by recurrent branches of the peripapillary choroid and the circle of Zinn-Haller. Pial branches of the central retinal artery and other orbital arteries, the ophthalmic artery, and the posterior ciliary arteries also contribute. Branches of the pial vasculature run in the septa of the nerve. The axial centrifugal vascular system is formed by small branches from the intraneural part of the central retinal artery and is not present in every eye; thus differences in blood supply in the posterior optic nerve may render some individuals more susceptible to PION.[216]

Control of Blood Flow

Studies of autoregulation of blood flow in the optic nerve head have yielded conflicting results because of limited

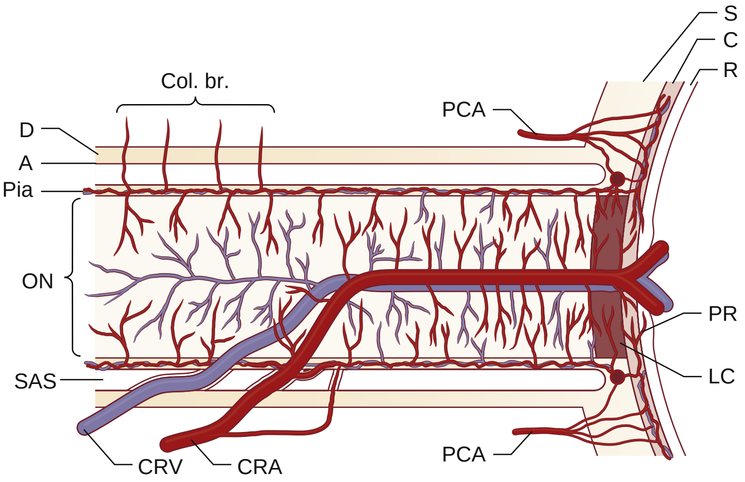


Fig. 34.23 The blood supply to the optic nerve. The anterior portion of the optic nerve is located to the left, whereas the posterior portion (closer to the brain) is on the right. The anterior portion of the nerve derives its blood supply from the posterior ciliary arteries *(PCA)* and the choroid *(C)*, whereas the posterior optic nerve derives its blood supply from penetrating pial arteries (collateral branches *[Col. br.]*) and branches of the central retinal artery *(CRA)*. *A,* Arachnoid; *CRV,* central retinal vein; *D,* dura; *LC,* long ciliary artery; *ON,* optic nerve; *PR,* short posterior ciliary artery; *R,* retina; *S,* sclera; *SAS,* subarachnoid space. (From Hayreh SS. Ischemic optic neuropathy. Department of Ophthalmology, University of Iowa. http://www.medicine.uiowa.edu/eye/AION-part2. Accessed August 8, 2014)

measurement techniques. Blood flow in the optic nerve head is autoregulated within a range of perfusion pressures similar to those in the brain of monkeys and sheep. In a small sample of atherosclerotic monkeys, however, autoregulation was defective.[217] This study did not directly measure blood flow; rather, it measured glucose consumption, and the sample size was small. Other evidence of autoregulation is seen in the posterior portion of the optic nerve. In cats, blood flow in the optic nerve measured directly by autoradiography remained constant in the prelaminar, laminar, and postlaminar nerve across a range of systemic mean arterial blood pressure values from 40 to more than 200 mm Hg.[218]

In 13 healthy volunteers, blood flow in the optic nerve head measured by laser Doppler flowmetry was constant between ocular perfusion pressures of 56 to 80 mm Hg.[219]; in another study, flow was preserved at extremely high IOP that resulted in a minimal perfusion pressure of 22 mm Hg.[220] Other investigators found that flow was preserved in the optic nerve head until ocular pressure reached levels of 40 mm Hg. However, 2 of 10 young healthy volunteers in the study failed to demonstrate autoregulation.[221] Using color Doppler imaging in humans, another group showed that flow velocity in the posterior ciliary arteries decreased at extremely high IOP. These findings seem to support the theory that "watershed" areas in the distribution of the posterior ciliary arteries predispose some patients, including otherwise healthy ones with no known vascular disease, to damage to the anterior portion of the optic nerve when perfusion pressure is decreased, either after systemic blood pressure decreases or IOP is elevated. At present, however, no clinical technique can reliably detect such patients.

Histopathologic Findings

There are few reports on the histopathologic examination of the optic nerve in ION. Of three PION cases evaluated after surgical procedures, all showed infarcts in the intraorbital portion of the optic nerve, but results were not consistent. Two patients had lesions in the central axial portion with peripheral axonal sparing; the other had the opposite pattern in one eye and complete axonal loss in the other.[200] Despite a larger autopsy series in AION, the location of the infarct has also not been documented. Tesser and colleagues[207] showed that in a patient with spontaneous AION, axonal loss was in the superior optic nerve, encircling the central retinal artery. The infarct was in the intrascleral portion of the nerve, extending 1.5 mm posteriorly.

Patient Characteristics in Perioperative Ischemic Optic Neuropathy

Most of the cases occurring after spine surgery have been PION.[200] AION occurs more frequently after cardiac surgery. ION's onset is typically within the first 24 to 48 hours after surgery and is frequently noted on awakening, although later onset has been described, particularly in sedated patients.[137] Patients present typically with painless visual loss, afferent pupil defect or nonreactive pupils, complete visual loss, no light perception, or visual field deficits. Color vision is decreased or absent. In AION, altitudinal visual field deficits may be present. Optic disk edema and hemorrhages are seen on symptom onset in AION; in PION, the optic disk appears normal even though the patient reports visual loss. Over a span of weeks to months, optic atrophy develops. The lesion may be unilateral or bilateral, but most post–spine surgery ION cases are bilateral. Orbital magnetic resonance imaging is frequently nondiagnostic, although some have described changes including enlargement of the nerve from edema or perineural enhancement.[222,223] Visual evoked potential and pattern evoked electroretinogram are abnormal.[224]

Retrospective Case Series

Buono and Foroozan reviewed 83 reported cases of PION, some of which were perioperative.[200] Approximately 54% followed spine surgery, 13% radical neck dissection, and 33% other surgery. Mean age was 52 years; patients who had spine surgery were younger (mean age, 44 years) than those in the other groups. Approximately two thirds were men. In 75%, visual loss was apparent within 24 hours. For 54% of affected eyes, initial visual acuity was light perception, with greater than 60% bilateral. In 38%, vision improved, but of 14 patients with no light perception initially, 12 (85%) had no improvement. Mean lowest hemoglobin was 9.5 g/dL (range: 5.8-14.2 g/dL), mean lowest systolic blood pressure was 77 (48-120 mm Hg), mean intraoperative blood loss was 3.7 L (0.8-16 L), and mean operative duration was 8.7 hours (3.5-23 hours). The drawback of this study is the limited amount of information on perioperative ION and its reliance on previously reported cases.

Spine Surgery

Ho reviewed cases of AION and PION after spine surgery. In the 5 AION and 17 PION cases, median ages were 53 and 43 years, respectively.[225] Most followed lumbar spine fusion. Mean operative time for AION was 522 minutes and for PION was 456 minutes. For AION, the range of the lowest mean arterial pressure was 62 to 78 mm Hg; for PION, it was 52 to 85 mm Hg. Mean lowest intraoperative hematocrit was 27% in PION. Mean blood loss was 1.7 and 5 L for AION and PION, respectively. Crystalloid/colloid volumes averaged 6.0/0.8 and 8.0/2.2 L for AION and PION, respectively. Sixty percent with AION and 27% with PION had diabetes mellitus; coronary artery disease was noted in 20% of patients with AION and in none with PION. Prevalence of hypertension was similar (40% or 53%). Symptoms were reported within 24 hours of surgery in 40% of patients with AION; 59% of patients with PION reported symptoms immediately on awakening and 88% within 24 hours. Visual acuity improved somewhat in 60% of AION and 65% of PION cases. This study is limited by its reliance upon literature reports.

In a retrospective case-control study of 28 patients with visual loss after spine surgery, Myers and colleagues found no difference in lowest systolic blood pressure or hematocrit in the affected versus unaffected patients.[135] Approximately 40% of these patients had no risk factors for vascular disease preoperatively; a similar percentage in the two groups had hypertension or were smokers. This study's limitations were that controls were not randomly chosen and matching of controls to cases was not adequately explained.

Spine surgery patients with ION in the ASA Postoperative Visual Loss Registry had an average blood loss of 2.0 L, and the lowest hematocrit was 26%.[136] Decreases in blood pressure varied widely from preoperative baseline: in 33%, the lowest systolic blood pressures were greater than 90 mm Hg; in 20%, the lowest was 80 mm Hg or less. Approximately 57% of patients had systolic or mean arterial blood pressure 20% to 39% below preoperative baseline, and 25% of patients were at 40% to 49% below preoperative baseline. Deliberate hypotension was used in approximately 25% of patients. Nearly all cases involved surgery exceeding 6 hours. In the majority of patients, estimated blood loss was greater than 1 L, the median estimated blood loss was 2 L, and the median lowest hematocrit was 26%. Large-volume fluid resuscitation was typical, with median crystalloid administration of approximately 10 L. Most of the patients underwent thoracic, lumbar, or lumbar-sacral fusion procedures that were often repeat operations that involved multilevel surgery. Surgical positioning devices included the Wilson frame (30%), Jackson spinal table (27%), and soft chest rolls (20%). A foam pad was used for head positioning for 57%; 19% had the head in a Mayfield head holder. PION accounted for the majority of cases, compared with AION. Patients in ASA physical status 1 or 2 accounted for 64% of cases. The mean age was 50 years. Approximately, 41% had hypertension, 16% diabetes mellitus, and 10% coronary artery disease. Limitations of this study are related to data collection and lack of control nonaffected cases for comparison.

TABLE 34.4 Factors Increasing the Odds Ratio of Developing Perioperative ION in Lumbar Spine Fusion Surgery

	Odds Ratio	*P* Value
Male	2.53 (1.35-4.91)	.005
Obesity	2.83 (1.52-5.39)	.001
Wilson frame	4.30 (2.13-8.75)	<.001
Anesthesia duration, per hour	1.39 (1.22-1.58)	<.001
Estimated blood loss, per 1 L	1.34 (1.13-1.61)	.001
Colloid as percent of nonblood replacement, per 5%	0.67 (0.52-0.82)	<.001

This limitation was addressed by a follow-up comparison of the ION spine dataset with randomly selected, matched controls from 17 academic medical centers in North America. Results are summarized in Table 34.4. After multivariable analysis, six factors conferred higher risk for ION in lumbar spine fusion: male gender, obesity, Wilson frame positioning, anesthesia duration, large blood loss, and a relatively low ratio of colloid to crystalloid fluid resuscitation.[137] This study was the first large and well-matched case control study of perioperative ION. The limitations are the relatively limited amount of preoperative data, no distinction between AION and PION, and the possibility that controls did not represent a population-matched sample.

The Nationwide Inpatient Sample is a random sample of discharge data from 20% of US hospitals. Rubin and colleagues analyzed trends in ION incidence in spine fusion from 1998 to 2012 (more than 2.5 million discharges). ION prevalence was 1.02/10,000, with an encouraging, still unexplained, significant decrease over time.[127] Significantly associated with ION were age, blood transfusion, and obesity; female sex was inversely associated. These results are important because they were obtained from a very large, randomly collected sample, and suggested the importance of specific preoperative factors. But there are limitations. The Nationwide Inpatient Sample relies on the accuracy of diagnosis and coding. Verification of medical diagnoses are not possible. Both over- and under-coding are possible. The coding depends on entry of the data by professional coders; however, the accuracy depends upon the diagnoses recorded by physicians and the procedure description provided by the surgeon.[226]

Cardiac Surgery

Shapira and colleagues studied 602 patients undergoing CPB at a single institution under moderate systemic hypothermia (25°C) with pulsatile flow and a membrane oxygenator.[131] Phenylephrine maintained perfusion pressure above 50 mm Hg. Eight patients (1.2%) had AION. There were no differences in preoperative vascular risk factors in those with or without visual loss. CPB time was longer in patients with AION (252 vs. 164 minutes), and minimum hematocrit was lower (18% vs. 21%) compared with unaffected patients. There were no differences in flow indices, perfusion pressures, and carbon dioxide tension. Patients with AION had a greater 24-hour postoperative weight gain (18% vs. 11%) and required more vasoactive drugs to maintain hemodynamics than did patients with unaffected vision. Visual symptoms were usually reported between days 1 and 3 postoperatively, soon after removal of mechanical ventilatory support. This study is limited due to the small sample size and single institution design.

Nuttall and colleagues performed a larger retrospective case-control study of approximately 28,000 patients who had cardiac surgery at the Mayo Clinic from 1976 to 1994, with 17 patients with ION (0.06%).[132] By univariate analysis, significant risk factors included lower minimum postoperative hemoglobin, clinically severe vascular disease, preoperative angiogram within 48 hours of CPB, longer CPB duration, red blood cell transfusions, and the use of non–red blood cell blood components. Patients with ION underwent longer CPB runs; no differences were found in pre-CPB or post-CPB systemic blood pressures. Nine cases of bilateral ION were reported; disk edema was not found in 5 patients (29%), who may have had PION. Small cup-to-disk ratio (<0.3) was identified in 5 patients (29%) with ION. This study was limited by a large number of comparisons, small sample, single institution design, and no distinction between AION and PION. A more recent series by Holy and colleagues showed similar results, but it included other surgical procedures, complicating interpretation of the results with cardiac surgery.[227] Kalyani and colleagues reviewed cases of ION after 9701 cardiac surgeries over 9-year period at a single institution. Specific risk factors could not be determined from the 11 patients (0.11%) with ION.[133]

Rubin examined ION in the largest series of cardiac surgery cases to date, using the Nationwide Inpatient Sample (1998-2012), as described earlier.[134] There were more than 5 million discharges meeting inclusion criteria with 794 (0.014%) ION cases. Average yearly incidence was 1.43 of 10,000 cardiac procedures. Increasing risk were carotid artery stenosis, stroke, diabetic or hypertensive retinopathy, macular degeneration, glaucoma, and cataract. Female sex and uncomplicated diabetes mellitus type 2 decreased risk. This study was large but has the same limitations as other studies using the National Inpatient Sample. Intriguingly, it does suggest that preoperative degenerative eye diseases may predict patients that will develop ION.

Controversies and Anesthesia Management Recommendations

This discussion will primarily concern spinal fusion procedures, where the largest number of cases have been described. For more detail, the reader is referred to the practice advisories of the ASA.[228-230]

Length of Surgery. Both Myers[135] and the Postoperative Visual Loss (POVL) Study Group[137] reported increased risk with long duration of spine fusion surgery. Therefore, staging of spinal fusion procedures, particularly those for anterior and posterior surgery, may be advisable (but see later). A discussion between the surgeon and anesthesia provider should occur in selected cases. Revision spinal fusion procedures are common, and these operations may be longer in duration and involve larger blood loss.[231]

Hypotension. Intraoperative hypotension has been cited as a risk factor by a number of authors of case reports,[232,233] but this risk has not been confirmed by case control studies, with one exception.[135,137,227] Patil and colleagues reported a higher odds ratio for ION in patients who sustained hypotension.[128] However, the diagnostic coding of hypotension in this study from the Nationwide Inpatient Sample is not defined, cannot be confirmed, and the timing (during the perioperative period or not) and the degree of hypotension are not specified.[234]

Hypotension can potentially lead to a decrease in perfusion pressure in the optic nerve and to ischemic injury because of either anatomic variation in the circulation or abnormal autoregulation and an inability to adequately compensate for decreased perfusion pressure. The degree of hypotension that is potentially dangerous is difficult to determine because of the lack of data.[230] Judgment and discussion are thus advisable when surgeons request a decrease in blood pressure to decrease blood loss in spine surgery. In cardiac surgery, special considerations exist regarding the optimal systemic perfusion pressures to be maintained during CPB.[235]

Hemodilution and Blood Loss. Clinical blood transfusion practice in surgical patients, based on ASA practice guidelines,[236] suggests that transfusion is not generally required for hemoglobin values higher than 8.0 g/dL, and thus isovolumic hemodilution is common in patients undergoing spine fusion. The Society of Thoracic Surgeons and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists reviewed the available evidence with respect to cardiac surgery, and has issued a similar clinical practice guideline.[237] Some authors suggested that allowing hemoglobin to decrease, as is common in anesthesia practice, may increase the risk for ION[238]; however, whether this practice should be changed in surgical procedures such as spine or heart surgery—or in any operative procedure—remains controversial.

In uncontrolled hemorrhage in which blood volume is not maintained, decreased O_2 delivery to the optic nerve could result in either AION or PION.[239] But how low or for how long the hemoglobin concentration must decrease to lead to this complication is not known. However, the presence of recurrent and profound hemorrhage has been described in many reports. The argument that blood loss in the presence of maintained intravascular volume (hemodilution) is harmful seems less scientifically grounded. It has been shown experimentally in miniature pigs that blood flow in the optic nerve head, as measured by laser Doppler imaging, was maintained during isovolumic hemodilution with a 30% decrease in hematocrit. Moreover, O_2 tension at the vitreal surface increased 15%.[240] Also, Lee and colleagues demonstrated that extreme decreases in hematocrit (15%) and mean arterial pressure (50 mm Hg) in adult pigs resulted in significant reductions in blood flow to the optic nerve. But no histologic or optic nerve function was studied, and the pig brain and eye circulation significantly differ from that of humans.[241] Roth and associates showed that hemodilution and extreme head-down tilt in rats resulted in significant changes in visual evoked potentials, electrical activity originating in retinal ganglion cells, and increased glial reactivity in the optic nerve; thus, if extrapolated to humans, caution is in order during extreme hemodilution with the head-down tilt.[201]

Head Positioning. Many reports of ION include patients who were in the prone position, raising the possibility that positioning itself contributes to altered venous hemodynamics within the optic nerve. The patient's head should be level with or above the heart, when possible, and in a neutral position during spine surgery performed with the patient in the prone position. When the patient is positioned for spine surgery in the Wilson frame, the head may be below the level of the back; the head can be elevated using pillows or the bed placed in reverse Trendelenberg.[242] With the Jackson table, the head is maintained at the level with the back.[229]

Several studies found that IOP increased in the prone position and was influenced by the position of the operating room table. However, there has been no correlation between IOP changes and visual outcome or visual function.[242] Cheng and colleagues found that in anesthetized patients, mean (± standard deviations) IOP increased significantly on initial prone positioning relative to supine (27 ± 2 vs. 13 ± 1 mm Hg). After 5 hours in the prone position, IOP remained increased at 40 ± 2 mm Hg. None of the 20 patients in the study experienced visual loss. The largest increases in IOP were evident near the time patients were awakening.[243] Although these data suggest that ocular perfusion pressure may decline even during maintenance of normotension, some experimental design issues must be considered in interpreting these results. The main issue is that the largest increases in IOP were evident near the time of awakening from anesthesia. Accordingly, IOP could have increased because of light anesthesia. Moreover, the study did not include a supine group to control for the effects of fluid administration on IOP. Such control is important because prone positioning itself may not explain the large increases in IOP. These results are valuable as well as of concern, but further studies are needed to fully evaluate their significance.

External pressure on the eye is a potential concern when a patient is positioned prone for surgery. Many cases of ION have occurred when pressure could not have been placed on the eye. Such cases include patients in pin head holders[244] and those in whom the head was turned with the affected eye placed upward.[245] But ION would not occur without retinal damage in a situation in which external compression was applied (see earlier discussion). Although we demonstrated that high IOP decreased retinal and choroidal blood flows in cats,[148] Geijer and Bill specifically measured the impact of graded increases in IOP on blood flow in the retina and optic nerve in monkeys.[246] When IOP was elevated such that perfusion pressure was decreased to levels above 40 cm H_2O, small effects on retinal blood flow and in the prelaminar portion of the optic nerve were noted. When perfusion pressure was less than 40 cm H_2O, retinal and prelaminar flows were proportional to the perfusion pressure. At very high IOP, blood flow stopped in the retina and the prelaminar area, but flow in the retrolaminar region increased. High IOP results in a redistribution of blood flow that favors the retrolaminar portion of the optic nerve. Therefore, an increase in IOP would not produce an isolated ION without also causing retinal damage. Further support is that sustained increases in IOP significantly decreased both retinal and choroidal blood flow, and even small increases in IOP damaged the retinal ganglion cells, which are sensitive to pressure alterations.[247,248]

Fluid Administration. The theory that massive intravascular fluid resuscitation could be a pathogenic factor in perioperative ION remains speculative, but it does have some merit. Conceivably, fluid administration could result in increased IOP, accumulation of fluid in the optic nerve, or both. Because the central retinal vein exits out of the optic nerve, an internal compartment syndrome may occur in the optic nerve. Alternatively, fluid accumulation in the vicinity of the lamina cribrosa may compress axons as they transit this region. In the report by Cullinane and colleagues,[249] trauma patients who were acidotic received massive blood replacement and most had abdominal compartment syndrome. Analysis of these patients is complicated because of the presence of numerous systemic alterations. Sullivan and colleagues described a retrospective series of 13 burn patients with 25% or greater body surface area burns and massive fluid resuscitation. IOP was elevated more than 30 mm Hg in four patients at 48 hours after admission, all of whom received more than 27 L of intravenous fluid. Eye findings and vision diagnoses were not described.[250] Large-volume fluid replacement is generally seen in spinal fusion surgery.[251] Patients in the ASA Postoperative Visual Loss Registry received on average 9.7 L of crystalloid intraoperatively,[137] and increased postoperative weight gain was identified in a case-control study of visual loss after heart surgery,[131] suggesting, although not proving, that fluid replacement may play a role. The finding of the POVL Study Group was that the odds ratio for developing ION was increased as the percent colloid of nonblood replacement decreased.[137] It is possible that the use of colloids may decrease edema in the optic nerve during surgery, particularly when the patient is placed prone for surgery. However, at present, such edema has not yet been demonstrated. In healthy volunteer subjects, placement in the prone position led to an increase in diameter of the optic nerve.[242] This could be due to venous hypertension. New magnetic resonance imaging methods may enable the study of edema and venous hemodynamics in the optic nerve in the near future. Animal models also may provide a means to study these perioperative factors. No study has shown any relationship among periorbital edema, IOP, and ION. Fluid administration could be a pathogenic factor in ION, especially in patients positioned prone or undergoing cardiac surgery, but the mechanisms involved, in addition to the amounts and nature of fluid required, remain undefined.

Anatomic Variation. Anatomic variation in the circulation of the optic nerve may potentially predispose patients to the development of ION. The location of potential watershed zones in the anterior and posterior circulation and the presence of disturbed autoregulation, even in normal patients,[108] are of concern but at present cannot be predicted clinically. Few human studies have been conducted on the relationship between perfusion pressure and changes in blood flow in the optic nerve. Human studies generally show preserved blood flow at clinically used or even lower ranges of perfusion pressure, but these studies have focused primarily on the anterior portion of the optic nerve.[219] In the studies that used laser Doppler flowmetry, depth of penetration of the measuring device is critical. Measurements might have been closer to the retinal blood vessels than the optic nerve head, and these do not measure optic nerve circulation. It is not currently feasible to measure blood flow in the human retrolaminar optic nerve. In animal studies, blood flow is preserved in various layers of the optic nerve, including the retrolaminar area, at a mean arterial blood pressure as low as 40 mm Hg.[218]

Vasoconstrictors. Hayreh and colleagues theorized that AION is related to excessive secretion of vasoconstrictors, which in turn could lower optic nerve perfusion to dangerously low levels.[252] However, the theory was based on the development of AION in patients who sustained massive hemorrhage. Vasopressors are used to maintain blood pressure in circumstances, such as after cardiac surgery and in cases in which vasomotor tone is decreased. Shapira and colleagues showed an association between prolonged use of epinephrine or long bypass time and ION in patients undergoing open heart surgery.[131] Lee and Lam reported a case of ION in a patient after lumbar spine fusion during which phenylephrine infusion was used to maintain blood pressure.[253] They later presented a series of four case reports of ION in critically ill patients with significant systemic illness who required prolonged use of vasopressors and inotropic agents to maintain blood pressure and cardiac output. However, α-adrenergic receptors are not located in the optic nerve and the blood-brain barrier prevents entry of systemically administered agents, except possibly in the prelaminar zone of the nerve. Therefore, the role of vasopressor use in ION remains unclear, and no clear guidance with respect to risk for ION can be provided at this time.

Informed Consent. A single institution survey reported that patients prefer to be informed of the risk of visual loss in spine surgery.[254] It seems advisable to have the discussion with patients that are at higher risk of developing ION. Often it is difficult to do when, as is common, the patient is first seen soon before surgery. It may be preferable for anesthesiologists and surgeons to develop a means to inform patients earlier of the risk of ION.

Staging and Minimally Invasive Spine Fusion. Increasingly, neurosurgeons have been using minimally invasive surgical techniques for lumbar spine surgery and fusion.[255] These methods reduce the amount of blood loss and fluid requirements, but cases of ION have arisen under these circumstances as well.[256] Another strategy not under the direct control of the anesthesia provider is to consider staging of complex spine procedures. However, in some instances the anesthesiologist may be able to persuade a surgeon to follow a less ambitious surgical plan. This decision requires an assessment of the associated increased risks for multiple surgeries (infection, spinal instability) but may significantly shorten the duration of each procedure. However, perioperative complications such as infection and deep vein thrombosis may be increased.[257-261] Another strategy is to advocate for patients by regular preoperative conferencing with surgeons. Anticipating high blood loss and other risks may enhance perioperative planning and care in spine surgery patients.

Prognosis, Treatment, and Prevention

No effective treatment exists for ION. A few cases of treating perioperative ION have been reported. Acetazolamide decreases IOP and may improve flow to the optic nerve head and retina. Diuretics such as mannitol or furosemide reduce edema.[262] In the acute phase, corticosteroids may reduce axonal swelling, but in the postoperative period they may increase wound infection. Because steroids are of unproven benefit, their use must be carefully weighed.[263] Increasing ocular perfusion pressure or hemoglobin concentration may be appropriate when ION is found in conjunction with significant decreases in blood pressure and hemoglobin concentration. Maintaining the patient in a head-up position if increased ocular venous pressure is suspected may be advantageous, but its use must be balanced against decreased arterial supply with the head-up position. Clearly, if a patient has visual loss from ocular compartment syndrome, immediate decompression (lateral canthotomy) is indicated.

In their review of perioperative PION reports in the literature, Buono and Foroozan summarized the lack of proof that treatment altered the course of PION. In a few anecdotal case reports, increasing blood pressure or hemoglobin, or applying hyperbaric O_2, improved visual outcome.[200] The use of neuroprotective agents or drugs that lower IOP, valuable in theory, has never been shown to result in improvement.[248] Stevens and colleagues, who compiled a report of ION in patients after spine surgery, had apparent improvement of vision in two patients when anemia and hypotension were corrected.[129] One patient demonstrated partial improvement that subsequently regressed, and one patient showed more clear signs of improvement. However, as Buono and Foroozan mentioned, it is difficult to ascertain if improvement came from treatment, because some patients recover vision spontaneously after PION.[200]

American Society of Anesthesiologists Advisories (Updated With 2019 Advisory)

The 2006 ASA Task Force on Perioperative Blindness concluded that high-risk patients who have surgery that is prolonged in duration and/or have large blood loss have an increased risk of POVL.[228] Yet POVL was not related to blood loss per se, hemoglobin levels, or the use of crystalloids. In 2012, another ASA Task Force published an update regarding POVL primarily associated with spine surgery.[229] While major changes were not made, analysis of the literature was updated and the recommendations were more detailed. For example, the 2006 Summary had 7 bullet points. In contrast, the 2012 Summary of Advisory Statements has 22 bullet points subdivided into Preoperative, Intraoperative, Staging of Surgical Procedures, and Postoperative Management (Box 34.2). The 2012 ASA Task Force on POVL reviewed the additional literature and concluded that newer findings and the literature do not justify major

BOX 34.2 American Society of Anesthesiologists 2012 Task Force Summary of Advisory Statements

I. Preoperative Considerations

- At this time, there were no identifiable preoperative patient characteristics that predispose patients to perioperative posterior ischemic optic neuropathy (ION).
- There is no evidence that an ophthalmic or neuro-ophthalmic evaluation would be useful in identifying patients at risk for perioperative visual loss.
- The risk of perioperative ION may be increased in patients who undergo prolonged procedures, have substantial blood loss, or both.
- Prolonged procedures, substantial blood loss, or both are associated with a small, unpredictable risk of perioperative visual loss.
- Because the frequency of visual loss after spine surgery of short duration is infrequent, the decision to inform patients who are *not* anticipated to be "high risk" for visual loss should be determined on a case-by-case basis.

Intraoperative Management

Blood Pressure Management

- Arterial blood pressure should be monitored continually in high-risk patients.
- The use of deliberate hypotensive techniques during spine surgery can be associated with the development of perioperative visual loss. Therefore the use of deliberate hypotension for these patients should be determined on a case-by-case basis.
- Central venous pressure monitoring should be considered in high-risk patients. Colloids should be used along with crystalloids to maintain intravascular volume in patients who have substantial blood loss.

Management of Anemia

- Hemoglobin or hematocrit values should be monitored periodically during surgery in high-risk patients who experience substantial blood loss. A transfusion threshold that would eliminate the risk of perioperative visual loss related to anemia cannot be established at this time.

Use of Vasopressors

- There is insufficient evidence to provide guidance for the use of α-adrenergic agonists in high-risk patients during spine surgery.

Patient Positioning

- The Task Force believes that there is no pathophysiologic mechanism by which facial edema can cause perioperative ION. There is no evidence that ocular compression causes isolated perioperative anterior ION or posterior ION. However, direct pressure on the eye should be avoided to prevent central retinal artery occlusion (CRAO).
- The high-risk patient should be positioned so that the head is level with or higher than the heart when possible.

Staging of Surgical Procedures

- Although the use of staged spine surgery procedures in high-risk patients may entail additional costs and patient risks (e.g., infection, thromboembolism, or neurologic injury), it also may decrease these risks and the risk of perioperative visual loss in some patients.

Postoperative Management

- The consensus of the Task Force is that a high-risk patient's vision should be assessed when the patient becomes alert.
- If there is concern regarding potential visual loss, an urgent ophthalmologic consultation should be obtained to determine its cause.
- There is no role for antiplatelet drugs, steroids, or intraocular pressure-decreasing drugs in the treatment of perioperative ION.

From Practice advisory for perioperative visual loss associated with spine surgery: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Visual Loss. *Anesthesiology*. 2012; 116: 274–285.

changes in the 2006 recommendations. A further update was published in 2019.[230]

VISUAL LOSS AFTER VITRECTOMY AND VITREAL GAS BUBBLE TAMPONADE

Patients who have undergone vitrectomy with perfluorocarbon gas tamponade (C_3F_8) are at risk for gas bubble expansion and loss of vision from acutely increased IOP. Patients anesthetized for a subsequent surgical procedure with gas mixtures containing nitrous oxide (N_2O) after vitrectomy sustained retinal vascular occlusion from acute gas bubble expansion. N_2O anesthesia affects the size of the intraocular gas bubble. Wolf and colleagues demonstrated that N_2O and O_2 resulted in a more than threefold increase in SF_6 gas bubble volume, in contrast to a 50% increase with air ventilation and 35% increase with O_2 ventilation alone.[264] Perfluorocarbon gas remains in the eye for at least 28 days. Visual loss has been reported with N_2O anesthesia administered as long as 41 days after vitrectomy and gas bubble tamponade. Therefore, patients should wear a warning tag to alert the anesthesiologist to the presence of the gas bubble in the vitreous, and N_2O should not be used in patients who have had recent vitrectomy and gas bubble tamponade.[265,266]

Conclusion

The positioning of patients under anesthesia care is a major responsibility requiring great attention to detail and constant vigilance. Positioning for optimal surgical exposure but the potential for lasting harm to patients from improper positioning must guide our actions. Each position has significant physiologic effects on ventilation and circulation. In addition, despite increased awareness, position-related complications, including peripheral nerve injuries, continue to remain a significant source of patient morbidity. As surgical techniques evolve, extreme positions sometimes permit advantages, such as smaller incisions and more effective displacement of internal organs to facilitate surgical exposure. Unfortunately, associated risks may increase with positions that would not be tolerated when patients are awake. Anesthesiologists and surgeons must work together with all operating room staff when each patient is positioned to promote comfort and safety in addition to securing the desired surgical exposure. Ideally, the final position should appear natural; that is, a position that the patient would comfortably tolerate if awake and unsedated for the anticipated duration of the procedure.

Disclosure

Dr. Roth's research on vision loss is supported by National Institutes of Health Grants EY10343, EY027447, the Michael Reese Foundation Pioneers Award, and by the North American Neuro-ophthalmological Society. Dr. Roth discloses that he has provided expert witness evaluation and testimony in cases of perioperative visual loss on behalf of patients, hospitals, and healthcare providers.

Acknowledgment

This chapter is a consolidation of two chapters in the 8th edition, Chapter 41, "Patient Positioning and Associated Risks," and Chapter 100, "Postoperative Visual Loss." The editors and publisher would like to thank authors Lydia Cassorla and Jae-Woo Lee, as well as returning author Dr. Steven Roth for their contributions to the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Metzner J, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;25:263.
2. Cheney FW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1062.
3. Warner MA. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1998;73:567.
4. Practice advisory for the prevention of perioperative peripheral neuropathies 2018. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:11–26.
5. O'Brien TJ, Ebert TJ. In: Martin JT, Warner MA, eds. *Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.
6. Gelman S. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:735.
7. Luecke T, Pelosi P. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:607.
8. Froese AB. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:193.
9. Glenny RW. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35:1833.
10. Hakim TS, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;63:1114.
11. Burrowes KS, Tawhai MH. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2006;154:515.
12. Galvin I, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:420.
13. Petersson J, et al. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2009;166:54–60.
14. Nyren S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:682–687.
15. Warner MA. *Supine Positions*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.
16. Britt BA, Gordon RA. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1964;11:514.
17. Prielipp RC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:345.
18. Stewart JD, Shantz SH. *Can J Neurol Sci*. 2003;30:15.
19. Geerts BF, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24:668–674.
20. Cestari A, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2010;57:530.
21. Klauschie J, et al. *J Minim Invasive Gynecol*. 2010;17:504.
22. Phong LK, Koh LK. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35:281.
23. Coppieters MW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:75.
24. Kent CD, Cheney FW. *J Clin Anesth*. 2007;19:482.
25. Coppieters MW. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1351.
26. Devarajan J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:867.
27. Martin JT. In: Martin JT, Warner MA, eds. *Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.
28. Warner ME, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:705.
29. Wassenaar EB, et al. *Dis Colon Rectum*. 2006;49:1449.
30. Mumtaz FH, et al. *BJU Int*. 2002;90:792.
31. Simms MS, Terry TR. *Postgrad Med J*. 2005;81:534.
32. Anema JG, et al. *J Urol*. 2000;164:360–363.
33. Chase J, et al. *Dis Colon Rectum*. 2000;43:678.
34. Turnbull D, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:905.
35. Akhavan A, et al. *Urology*. 2010;76:1309.
36. Dunn PF. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2000;38:25.
37. Choi YS, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;134:613.
38. Tamkus A, Rice K. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:663.
39. Biais M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:407.
40. Martin JT. In: Martin JT, Warner MA, eds. *Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.
41. Douglas, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1977;115:559.
42. Lumb AB, Nunn JF. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:422.
43. Girard TD, Bernard GR. *Chest*. 2007;131:921–929.
44. Alsaghir AH, Martin CM. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:603–609.
45. Guerin C, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:2159–2168.
46. Pelosi P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:955–960.
47. Soro M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:431–437.
48. Pelosi P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:578–583.
49. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2007;33:1771–1777.
50. Black S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:49–56.
51. Peruto CM, et al. *Arthroscopy*. 2009;25:891.
52. Porter JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:117–128.
53. Himes BT, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2017;127:182–188.
54. Newberg Milde L: In: *Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 3rd ed. Edited by Martin JT, Warner MA. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997: 1009
55. Hindman BJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:782–795.
56. Warner MA. In: Martin JT, Warner MA, eds. *Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.
57. Rozet I, Vavilala MS. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2007;25. 631-53, x.
58. Mammoto T, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42:643–647.
59. Klein J, et al. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;115:196–200.
60. Papadopoulos G, et al. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 1994;126:140–143.
61. Mirski MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:164–177.
62. Gunther F, et al. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 2017;159:339–346.
63. Hanna PG, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1991;3:290–294.
64. Pohl A, Cullen DJ. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17:463.
65. Pollard V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:278.
66. Fischer GW. *Pain Pract*. 2009;9:304.
65. Dippman C, et al. *Arthroscopy*. 2010;26(suppl 9):S148.
66. Drummond JC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:1301.
67. Lam AM, Baldwin G. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:1156.
68. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:496.
69. Ghosh A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:1373.
70. Rains DD, et al. *Arthroscopy*. 2011;27:532–541.
71. Hu JC, et al. *JAMA*. 2009;302:1557–1564.
72. Wright JD, et al. *JAMA*. 2013;309:689–698.
73. Gainsburg DM. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2012;78:596–604.
74. Hsu RL, et al. *Rev Urol*. 2013;15:178–184.
75. Kalmar AF, De Wolf A, Hendrickx JF. *Adv Anesth*. 2012;20:75–96.
76. Lestar M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1069–1075.
77. Mills JT, et al. *J Urol*. 2013;190:580–584.
78. Ulm MA, et al. *Gynecol Oncol*. 2014;135:534–538.
79. Wen T, et al. *J Endourol*. 2014;28:660–667.
80. Souki FG, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2018;18:117.
81. Cheney FW. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:552–556.
82. Kroll DA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:202–207.
83. Lee LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:143–152.
84. Fitzgibbon DR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:98–105.
85. Kamel IR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1538–1542.
86. Chui J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:134–143.
87. Goubier J, Teboul F. Nerves and Nerve Injuries. In: Tubbs R, Shoja M, Barbaro N, Rizk E, Loukas M, Spinner R, eds. *Amsterdam*. Elsevier; 2015.
88. Winfree CJ, Kline DG. *Surg Neurol*. 2005;63:5.
89. Welch MB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:490.
90. Warner MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:54.
91. Prielipp RC, et al. *Anesthesiology Clin N Am*. 2002;20:589.
92. Cheney FW. *ASA Newsletter*. 1998;62(6):10.
93. Warner MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1332.
94. Contreras MG, et al. *Clin Anat*. 1998;11:372.
95. Morell RC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1183.
96. Cooper DE, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1988;228:33.
97. Kang SW, et al. *Surgery*. 2009;146:1048–1055.
98. Luginbuhl A, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 2012;122:110.
99. Davis SF, et al. *Am J Electroneurodiagnostic Technol*. 2011;51:274.
100. Hanson MR, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1983;36:675.
101. Jellish WS, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1994;8:398.
102. Liau DW. *ASA Newsletter*. 2006;70:11–13, 16.
103. Warner MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:6–12.
104. Warner MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:614.
105. Aminoff MJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1298.
106. Dylewsky W, McAlpine FS. In: Martin JT, Warner MA, eds. *Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.

107. Borsook D, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2013;257:403.
108. Primiano M, et al. *AORN J*. 2011;94:555–566.
109. Edsberg LE, et al. *J Wound Ostomy Continence Nurs*. 2016;43:585–597.
110. Cushing CA, Phillips LG. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2013;132:1720–1732.
111. Aronovitch SA. *J Wound Ostomy Continence Nurs*. 1999;26:130–136.
112. Hayes RM, et al. *Am J Med Qual*. 2015;30:591–597.
113. Campbell C, Parish LC. *Clin Dermatol*. 2010;28:527–532.
114. Kayser SA, et al. *Adv Skin Wound Care*. 2018;31:276–285.
115. Schwartz DM, et al. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2011;36:1046–1049.
116. Brockerville M, et al. *J Neuroanesth Crit Care*. 2017;4:78–84.
117. Lalwani K. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;19:430.
118. Biousse V, et al. *Ophthalmology*. 2018;125:1597–1607.
119. Biousse V, Newman NJ. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373:1677.
120. De la Garza-Ramos R, et al. *Spine J*. 2016;16:516–522.
121. Gayat E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:126–128.
122. Frenkel RE, Shin DH. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1986;104:1459–1463.
123. Hart RH, et al. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 2002;134:761–763.
124. Roth S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:1020–1027.
125. Warner ME, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1417.
126. Roth S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:1020.
127. Shen Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1534.
128. Patil CG, et al. *Spine*. 2008;33:1491.
129. Stevens WR, et al. *Spine*. 1997;22:1319.
130. Chang SH, et al. *Spine*. 2005;30:1299.
131. Shapira OM, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;61:660.
132. Nuttall GA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1410.
133. Kalyani SD, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:34.
134. Rubin DS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:810–821.
135. Myers MA, et al. *Spine*. 1997;22:1325.
136. Lee LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:652.
137. Postoperative visual loss study group. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:15.
138. Dattilo M, et al. *Neurol Clin*. 2017;35:83–100.
139. Goldsmith MO. *Ophthalmologica*. 1967;153:191–196.
140. Katz DA, et al. *Spine*. 2005;30:E83.
141. Marks SC, et al. *Head Neck*. 1990;12:342–345.
142. Blauth CI, et al. *J Thoracic Cardiovasc Surg*. 1988;95:668.
143. Wray SH. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1993;56:234–240.
144. Tobalem S, et al. *BMC Ophthalmol*. 2018;18:101.
145. Alm A, et al. In: Moses A, Hart C, eds. *Adler's Physiology of the Eye*. 8th ed. St. Louis: CV Mosby; 1987:183.
146. Hayreh SS, et al. *Exp Eye Res*. 2004;78:723.
147. Hayreh SS, et al. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1980;64:818.
148. Roth S, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 1994;35:3209.
149. Lin J, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 1999;40:2925.
150. Chen X, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2005;46:2611.
151. Ettaiche M, et al. *Brain Res*. 2001;890:118.
152. Roth S, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 1998;39:775.
153. Calway T, et al. *Ophthalmology*. 2017;124:189–196.
154. Calway T, et al. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 2018;38:36–41.
155. Van Dijk FS, Sillence DO. *Am J Med Genet A*. 2014;164a:1470–1481.
156. Cole DE, Carpenter TO. *J Pediatr*. 1987;110:76–80.
157. Sys J, et al. *Eur Spine J*. 1996;5:74.
158. Grossman W, et al. *Spine*. 1993;18:1226.
159. Kumar N, et al. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 2004;138:889.
160. Carr RE, et al. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1973;90:21.
161. Jampol LM, et al. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1975;93:1311.
162. Jayam AV, et al. *J Neurol Sci*. 1974;22:413.
163. Hollenhorst RW, et al. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1954;52:819.
164. Bui BV, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2005;46:202.
165. Zhang C, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2002;43:3059–3066.
166. Zhu Y, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2002;43:1903–1911.
167. Grant GP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:499–500.
168. Roth S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1185.
169. Rubinstein A, et al. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 2005;123:1452.
170. Amorim Correa JL, Acioly MA. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;110:309–314.
171. Habets JGV, et al. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;114:72–75.
172. Pahl FH, et al. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;109:218–221.
173. Rimpilainen R, et al. *Perfusion*. 2011;26:479–486.
174. Blauth CI, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1990;99:61.
175. Slaughter MS, et al. *Artif Organs*. 2008;32:880–884.
176. Herren JI, et al. *Stroke*. 1998;29:2396.
177. Bhatti MT, et al. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 2003;48:389.
178. Haller D, et al. *Rhinology*. 2006;44:216.
179. Savino PJ, et al. *J Clin Neuroophthalmol*. 1990;10:140–144.
180. Jacobs SM, et al. *Ophthalmology*. 2018;125:1100–1108.
181. Christie B, et al. *J Plast Reconstr Aesthet Surg*. 2018;71:155–161.
182. Moss WJ, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 2015;125:796–800.
183. Byers B. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1979;97:79.
184. Watanabe W, et al. *Graefs Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol*. 2002;240:1033.
185. Anderson Jr B. *Trans Am Ophthalmol Soc*. 1968;66:423–474.
186. Ahn SJ, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2013;54:7746–7755.
187. Nedelmann M, et al. *Stroke*. 2015;46:2322–2324.
188. Schrag M, et al. *JAMA Neurol*. 2015;72:1148–1154.
189. Page PS, et al. *Front Neurol*. 2018;9:76.
190. Tamai K, et al. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1997;81:789–794.
191. Schultheiss M, et al. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0148616.
192. Reinhard K, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2016;57:658–663.
193. Johnson LJ, et al. *J Clin Neuroophthalmol*. 1994;14:38.
194. Arnold AC. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 2003;23:157.
195. Tice DA. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1987;44:677.
196. Schobel GA, et al. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 1995;24:283.
197. Fenton S, et al. *J Laryngol Otol*. 2001;115:158–160.
198. Kaeser PF, Borruat FX. *J Arthroplasty*. 2011;26. 338.e17-9.
199. Huang TW, et al. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2003;129:448–450.
200. Buono LM, Foroozan R, et al. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 2005;50:15–26.
201. Roth S, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35:840–847.
202. Arnold AC, et al. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 1994;117:222.
203. Subramanian PS, et al. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 2017;101:671–675.
204. Grieshaber MC, et al. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 2007;52:S115.
205. Guy J. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol*. 2000;11:421.
206. Bernstein SL, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2003;44:4153–4162.
207. Tesser RA, et al. *Ophthalmology*. 2003;110:2031.
208. Patel HR, Margo CE. *Arch Pathol Lab Med*. 2017;141:162–166.
209. Hayreh SS. In: Pillunat LE, Harris A, Anderson DR, et al., eds. *Current Concepts in Ocular Blood Flow in Glaucoma*. The Hague, Netherlands: Kugler; 1999:3.
210. Olver JM, et al. *Eye*. 1990;4:7.
211. Knox DL, et al. *Trans Am Ophthalmol Soc*. 2000;98:203.
212. Hayreh SS, Zimmerman MB. *Ophthalmology*. 2008;115:2275–2281.
213. Saito H, et al. *Ophthalmology*. 2008;115:1585–1590.
214. Beck RW, et al. *Ophthalmology*. 1987;94:1503.
215. Hayreh SS, Jonas JB. *Ophthalmology*. 2001;108:1586–1594.
216. Isayama Y, et al. *Ophthalmologica*. 1983;186:197–203.
217. Hayreh SS, et al. *Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol*. 1994;232:745–752.
218. Weinstein JM, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 1983;24:1559–1565.
219. Movaffaghy A, et al. *Exp Eye Res*. 1998;67:561–568.
220. Riva CE, et al. *Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol*. 1997;235:618–626.
221. Pillunat LE, et al. *Exp Eye Res*. 1997;64:737–744.
222. Vaphiades MS. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 2004;24:235.
223. Bolacchi F, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2012;53:4191.
224. Parisi V, et al. *Eur J Neurol*. 2008;15:839–845.
225. Ho VTG, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2005;17:38.
226. Golinvaux NS, et al. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2014;39:2019–2023.
227. Holy SE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:246.
228. Practice advisory for perioperative visual loss associated with spine surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1319–1328.
229. Practice advisory for perioperative visual loss associated with spine surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:274–285.
230. Practice advisory for perioperative visual loss associated with spine surgery 2019. *Anesthesiology*. 2019;130:12–30.
231. Farshad M, et al. *Spine J*. 2018;18:1625–1631.
232. Brown RH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:222.
233. Katz DM, et al. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1994;112:925.
234. Shen Y, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2009;21:21–30.
235. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1394–1417.
236. Practice guidelines for perioperative blood management. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:241–275.
237. Ferraris VA, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:S27–86.
238. Williams EL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:1018–1029.
239. Hayreh SS. *Ophthalmology*. 1987;94:1488–1502.
240. Chamot SR. *Klin Monbl Augenheilkd*. 2002;219:292–295.
241. Lee LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:864–872.
242. Grant GP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:57–65.
243. Cheng MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1351–1355.
244. Murphy MA. *Ophthalmology*. 2003;110:1454–1457.
245. Roth S, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1997;9:346–348.
246. Geijer C, Bill A. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 1979;18:1030–1042.
247. He Z, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2006;47:4872–4880.

248. Bui BV, Fortune B. *J Physiol*. 2004;555:153–173.
249. Cullinane DC, et al. *J Trauma*. 2000;48:381.
250. Sullivan SR, et al. *J Trauma*. 2006;60:72–76.
251. Alian AA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:346–356.
252. Hayreh SS, et al. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 1994;118:766–780.
253. Lee LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:793.
254. Corda DM, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2011;86:865–868.
255. Bae J, Lee SH. *Neurospine*. 2018;15:18–24.
256. Hussain NS, Perez-Cruet MJ. *Neurosurg Focus*. 2011;31:E2.
257. Edwards 2nd CC, et al. *Spine Deform*. 2018;6:141–147.
258. Hassanzadeh H, et al. *Spine J*. 2013;13:1717–1722.
259. Maddox JJ, et al. *Spine J*. 2014;14:1159–1165.
260. Passias PG, et al. *Spine J*. 2017;17:1091–1099.
261. Siemionow K, et al. *Neurol Neurochir Pol*. 2014;48:403–409.
262. Hayreh SS. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1974;58:981.
264. Wolf GL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:547.
265. Vote BJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1305.
266. Seaberg RR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1309.

References

1. Metzner J, Posner KL, Lam MS, Domino KB. Closed claims' analysis. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;25:263–276.
2. Cheney FW, Domino KB, Caplan RA, Posner KL. Nerve injury associated with anesthesia: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1062–1069.
3. Warner MA. Perioperative neuropathies. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1998;73:567–574.
4. Practice advisory for the prevention of perioperative peripheral neuropathies 2018: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Prevention of Perioperative Peripheral Neuropathies. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:11–26.
5. O'Brien T, Ebert T. In: Martin J, Warner M, eds. *Physiologic Changes Associated With the Supine Position, Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.
6. Gelman S. Venous function and central venous pressure: a physiologic story. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:735–748.
7. Luecke T, Pelosi P. Clinical review: positive end-expiratory pressure and cardiac output. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:607–621.
8. Glenny RW. Determinants of regional ventilation and blood flow in the lung. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35:1833–1842.
9. Froese AB. Gravity, the belly, and the diaphragm: you can't ignore physics. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:193–196.
10. Hakim TS, Lisbona R, Dean GW. Gravity-independent inequality in pulmonary blood flow in humans. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1987;63:1114–1121.
11. Burrowes KS, Tawhai MH. Computational predictions of pulmonary blood flow gradients: gravity versus structure. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2006;154:515–523.
12. Galvin I, Drummond GB, Nirmalan M. Distribution of blood flow and ventilation in the lung: gravity is not the only factor. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:420–428.
13. Petersson J, Rohdin M, Sanchez-Crespo A, et al. Regional lung blood flow and ventilation in upright humans studied with quantitative SPECT. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2009;166:54–60.
14. Nyren S, Radell P, Lindahl SG, et al. Lung ventilation and perfusion in prone and supine postures with reference to anesthetized and mechanically ventilated healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:682–687.
15. Warner MA. *Supine Positions*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.
16. Britt BA, Gordon RA. Peripheral nerve injuries associated with anaesthesia. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1964;11:514–536.
17. Prielipp RC, Morell RC, Walker FO, Santos CC, Bennett J, Butterworth J. Ulnar nerve pressure: influence of arm position and relationship to somatosensory evoked potentials. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:345–354.
18. Stewart JD, Shantz SH. Perioperative ulnar neuropathies: a medicolegal review. *Can J Neurol Sci*. 2003;30:15–19.
19. Geerts BF, van den Bergh L, Stijnen T, Aarts LP, Jansen JR. Comprehensive review: is it better to use the Trendelenburg position or passive leg raising for the initial treatment of hypovolemia? *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24:668–674.
20. Cestari A, Buffi NM, Scapaticci E, et al. Simplifying patient positioning and port placement during robotic-assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy. *Eur Urol*. 2010;57:530–533.
21. Klauschie J, Wechter ME, Jacob K, et al. Use of anti-skid material and patient-positioning to prevent patient shifting during robotic-assisted gynecologic procedures. *J Minim Invasive Gynecol*. 2010;17:504–507.
22. Phong SV, Koh LK. Anaesthesia for robotic-assisted radical prostatectomy: considerations for laparoscopy in the Trendelenburg position. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35:281–285.
23. Coppieters MW, Van de Velde M, Stappaerts KH. Positioning in anesthesiology: toward a better understanding of stretch-induced perioperative neuropathies. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:75–81.
24. Kent CD, Cheney FW. A case of bilateral brachial plexus palsy due to shoulder braces. *J Clin Anesth*. 2007;19:482–484.
25. Coppieters MW. Shoulder restraints as a potential cause for stretch neuropathies: biomechanical support for the impact of shoulder girdle depression and arm abduction on nerve strain. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1351–1352.
26. Devarajan J, Byrd JB, Gong MC, et al. Upper and middle trunk brachial plexopathy after robotic prostatectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:867–870.
27. Martin JT. In: Martin JT, Warner MA, eds. *Lithotomy, Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.
28. Warner ME, LaMaster LM, Thoeming AK, Marienau ME, Warner MA. Compartment syndrome in surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:705–708.
29. Wassenaar EB, van den Brand JG, van der Werken C. Compartment syndrome of the lower leg after surgery in the modified lithotomy position: report of seven cases. *Dis Colon Rectum*. 2006;49:1449–1453.
30. Mumtaz FH, Chew H, Gelister JS. Lower limb compartment syndrome associated with the lithotomy position: concepts and perspectives for the urologist. *BJU Int*. 2002;90:792–799.
31. Simms MS, Terry TR. Well leg compartment syndrome after pelvic and perineal surgery in the lithotomy position. *Postgrad Med J*. 2005;81:534–536.
32. Anema JG, Morey AF, McAninch JW, Mario LA, Wessells H. Complications related to the high lithotomy position during urethral reconstruction. *J Urol*. 2000;164:360–363.
33. Chase J, Harford F, Pinzur MS, Zussman M. Intraoperative lower extremity compartment pressures in lithotomy-positioned patients. *Dis Colon Rectum*. 2000;43:678–680.
34. Turnbull D, Farid A, Hutchinson S, Shorthouse A, Mills GH. Calf compartment pressures in the Lloyd-Davies position: a cause for concern? *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:905–908.
35. Akhavan A, Gainsburg DM, Stock JA. Complications associated with patient positioning in urologic surgery. *Urology*. 2010;76:1309–1316.
36. Dunn PF. Physiology of the lateral decubitus position and one-lung ventilation. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2000;38:25–53.
37. Choi YS, Bang SO, Shim JK, Chung KY, Kwak YL, Hong YW. Effects of head-down tilt on intrapulmonary shunt fraction and oxygenation during one-lung ventilation in the lateral decubitus position. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;134:613–618.
38. Tamkus A, Rice K. The incidence of bite injuries associated with transcranial motor-evoked potential monitoring. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:663–667.
39. Biais M, Bernard O, Ha JC, Degryse C, Sztark F. Abilities of pulse pressure variations and stroke volume variations to predict fluid responsiveness in prone position during scoliosis surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:407–413.
40. Martin JT. In: Martin JT, Warner MA, eds. *The Ventral Decubitus (Prone) Positions, Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.
41. Douglas WW, Rehder K, Beynen FM, Sessler AD, Marsh HM. Improved oxygenation in patients with acute respiratory failure: the prone position. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1977;115:559–566.
42. Lumb AB, Nunn JF. Respiratory function and ribcage contribution to ventilation in body positions commonly used during anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:422–426.
43. Girard TD, Bernard GR. Mechanical ventilation in ARDS: a state-of-the-art review. *Chest*. 2007;131:921–929.
44. Alsaghir AH, Martin CM. Effect of prone positioning in patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome: a meta-analysis. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:603–609.
45. Guerin C, Reignier J, Richard JC, et al. Prone positioning in severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:2159–2168.
46. Pelosi P, Croci M, Calappi E, et al. The prone positioning during general anesthesia minimally affects respiratory mechanics while improving functional residual capacity and increasing oxygen tension. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:955–960.
47. Soro M, Garcia-Perez ML, Belda FJ, et al. Effects of prone position on alveolar dead space and gas exchange during general anaesthesia in surgery of long duration. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:431–437.
48. Pelosi P, Croci M, Calappi E, et al. Prone positioning improves pulmonary function in obese patients during general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:578–583.
49. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, Hammer J, Frei FJ, Jordi Ritz EM, Schibler A, Erb TO. Prone equals prone? Impact of positioning techniques on respiratory function in anesthetized and paralyzed healthy children. *Intensive Care Med*. 2007;33:1771–1777.
50. Black S, Ockert DB, Oliver Jr WC, Cucchiara RF. Outcome following posterior fossa craniectomy in patients in the sitting or horizontal positions. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:49–56.

51. Peruto CM, Ciccotti MG, Cohen SB. Shoulder arthroscopy positioning: lateral decubitus versus beach chair. *Arthroscopy*. 2009;25:891–896.
52. Porter JM, Pidgeon C, Cunningham AJ. The sitting position in neurosurgery: a critical appraisal. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:117–128.
53. Himes BT, Mallory GW, Abcejo AS, et al. Contemporary analysis of the intraoperative and perioperative complications of neurosurgical procedures performed in the sitting position. *J Neurosurg*. 2017;127:182–188.
54. Newberg Milde L: *The Head-Elevated Positions, Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 3rd ed. Martin JT, Warner MA, eds. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997: 1009.
55. Hindman BJ, Palecek JP, Posner KL, et al. Cervical spinal cord, root, and bony spine injuries: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:782–795.
56. Warner MA. In: Martin JT, Warner MA, eds. *Positioning of the Head and Neck, Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.
57. Rozet I, Vavilala MS. Risks and benefits of patient positioning during neurosurgical care. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2007;25:631–653, x.
58. Mammoto T, Hayashi Y, Ohnishi Y, Kuro M. Incidence of venous and paradoxical air embolism in neurosurgical patients in the sitting position: detection by transesophageal echocardiography. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42:643–647.
59. Klein J, Juratli TA, Weise M, Schackert G. A systematic review of the semi-sitting position in neurosurgical patients with patent foramen ovale: how frequent is paradoxical embolism? *World Neurosurg*. 2018;115:196–200.
60. Papadopoulos G, Kuhly P, Brock M, Rudolph KH, Link J, Eyrich K. Venous and paradoxical air embolism in the sitting position. A prospective study with transoesophageal echocardiography. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 1994;126:140–143.
61. Mirski MA, Lele AV, Fitzsimmons L, Toung TJ. Diagnosis and treatment of vascular air embolism. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:164–177.
62. Gunther F, Frank P, Nakamura M, Hermann EJ, Palmaers T. Venous air embolism in the sitting position in cranial neurosurgery: incidence and severity according to the used monitoring. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 2017;159:339–346.
63. Hanna PG, Gravenstein N, Pashayan AG. In vitro comparison of central venous catheters for aspiration of venous air embolism: effect of catheter type, catheter tip position, and cardiac inclination. *J Clin Anesth*. 1991;3:290–294.
64. Pohl A, Cullen DJ. Cerebral ischemia during shoulder surgery in the upright position: a case series. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17:463–469.
65. Pollard V, Prough DS, DeMelo AE, Deyo DJ, Uchida T, Widman R. The influence of carbon dioxide and body position on near-infrared spectroscopic assessment of cerebral hemoglobin oxygen saturation. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:278–287.
66. Fischer GW, Torrillo TM, Weiner MM, Rosenblatt MA. The use of cerebral oximetry as a monitor of the adequacy of cerebral perfusion in a patient undergoing shoulder surgery in the beach chair position. *Pain Pract*. 2009;9:304–307.
67. Lam AM, Baldwin G. Blood pressure and adverse perioperative neurologic outcomes: an uncomfortable position. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:1156–1159.
68. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Marymont JH, et al. Cerebral oxygen desaturation events assessed by near-infrared spectroscopy during shoulder arthroscopy in the beach chair and lateral decubitus positions. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:496–505.
69. Ghosh A, Elwell C, Smith M. Review article: cerebral near-infrared spectroscopy in adults: a work in progress. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:1373–1383.
70. Rains DD, Rooke GA, Wahl CJ. Pathomechanisms and complications related to patient positioning and anesthesia during shoulder arthroscopy. *Arthroscopy*. 2011;27:532–541.
71. Hu JC, Gu X, Lipsitz SR, et al. Comparative effectiveness of minimally invasive vs open radical prostatectomy. *JAMA*. 2009;302:1557–1564.
72. Wright JD, Ananth CV, Lewin SN, et al. Robotically assisted vs laparoscopic hysterectomy among women with benign gynecologic disease. *JAMA*. 2013;309:689–698.
73. Gainsburg DM. Anesthetic concerns for robotic-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2012;78:596–604.
74. Hsu RL, Kaye AD, Urman RD. Anesthetic challenges in robotic-assisted urologic surgery. *Rev Urol*. 2013;15:178–184.
75. Kalmar AF, De Wolf A, Hendrickx JF. Anesthetic considerations for robotic surgery in the steep Trendelenburg position. *Adv Anesth*. 2012;20:75–96.
76. Lestar M, Gunnarsson L, Lagerstrand L, Wiklund P, Odeberg-Wernerman S. Hemodynamic perturbations during robot-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy in 45 degrees Trendelenburg position. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1069–1075.
77. Mills JT, Burris MB, Warburton DJ, Conaway MR, Schenkman NS, Krupski TL. Positioning injuries associated with robotic assisted urological surgery. *J Urol*. 2013;190:580–584.
78. Ulm MA, Fleming ND, Rallapali V, et al. Position-related injury is uncommon in robotic gynecologic surgery. *Gynecol Oncol*. 2014;135:534–538.
79. Wen T, Deibert CM, Siringo FS, Spencer BA. Positioning-related complications of minimally invasive radical prostatectomies. *J Endourol*. 2014;28:660–667.
80. Souki FG, Rodriguez-Blanco YF, Polu SR, Eber S, Candiotti KA. Survey of anesthesiologists' practices related to steep Trendelenburg positioning in the USA. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2018;18:117.
81. Cheney FW. The American Society of Anesthesiologists Closed Claims Project: what have we learned, how has it affected practice, and how will it affect practice in the future? *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:552–556.
82. Kroll DA, Caplan RA, Posner K, Ward RJ, Cheney FW. Nerve injury associated with anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:202–207.
83. Lee LA, Posner KL, Domino KB, Caplan RA, Cheney FW. Injuries associated with regional anesthesia in the 1980s and 1990s: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:143–152.
84. Fitzgibbon DR, Posner KL, Domino KB, Caplan RA, Lee LA, Cheney FW. Chronic pain management: American Society of Anesthesiologists Closed Claims Project. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:98–105.
85. Kamel IR, Drum ET, Koch SA, et al. The use of somatosensory evoked potentials to determine the relationship between patient positioning and impending upper extremity nerve injury during spine surgery: a retrospective analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1538–1542.
86. Chui J, Murkin JM, Posner KL, Domino KB. Perioperative peripheral nerve injury after general anesthesia: a qualitative systematic review. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:134–143.
87. Goubier J, Teboul F. In: Tubbs R, Shoja M, Barbaro N, Rizk E, Loukas M, Spinner R, eds. *Grading of Nerve Injuries, Nerves and Nerve Injuries*. Amsterdam: Elsevier; 2015.
88. Winfree CJ, Kline DG. Intraoperative positioning nerve injuries. *Surg Neurol*. 2005;63:5–18; discussion 18.
89. Welch MB, Brummett CM, Welch TD, et al. Perioperative peripheral nerve injuries: a retrospective study of 380,680 cases during a 10-year period at a single institution. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:490–497.
90. Warner MA, Warner DO, Matsumoto JY, Harper CM, Schroeder DR, Maxson PM. Ulnar neuropathy in surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:54–59.
91. Prielipp RC, Morell RC, Butterworth J. Ulnar nerve injury and perioperative arm positioning. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2002;20:589–603.
92. Cheney FW. Perioperative ulnar nerve injury: a continuing medical and liability problem. *ASA Newletter*. 1998;62:10–11.
93. Warner MA, Warner ME, Martin JT. Ulnar neuropathy. Incidence, outcome, and risk factors in sedated or anesthetized patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1332–1340.
94. Contreras MG, Warner MA, Charboneau WJ, Cahill DR. Anatomy of the ulnar nerve at the elbow: potential relationship of acute ulnar neuropathy to gender differences. *Clin Anat*. 1998;11:372–378.
95. Morell RC, Prielipp RC, Harwood TN, James RL, Butterworth JF. Men are more susceptible than women to direct pressure on unmyelinated ulnar nerve fibers. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1183–1188. table of contents.
96. Cooper DE, Jenkins RS, Bready L, Rockwood Jr CA. The prevention of injuries of the brachial plexus secondary to malposition of the patient during surgery. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1988:33–41.
97. Kang SW, Lee SC, Lee SH, et al. Robotic thyroid surgery using a gasless, transaxillary approach and the da Vinci S system: the operative outcomes of 338 consecutive patients. *Surgery*. 2009;146:1048–1055.
98. Luginbuhl A, Schwartz DM, Sestokas AK, Cognetti D, Pribitkin E. Detection of evolving injury to the brachial plexus during transaxillary robotic thyroidectomy. *Laryngoscope*. 2012;122:110–115.

99. Davis SF, Abdel Khalek M, Giles J, Fox C, Lirette L, Kandil E. Detection and prevention of impending brachial plexus injury secondary to arm positioning using ulnar nerve somatosensory evoked potentials during transaxillary approach for thyroid lobectomy. *Am J Electroneurodiagnostic Technol*. 2011;51:274–279.
100. Hanson MR, Breuer AC, Furlan AJ, et al. Mechanism and frequency of brachial plexus injury in open-heart surgery: a prospective analysis. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1983;36:675–679.
101. Jellish WS, Martucci J, Blakeman B, Hudson E. Somatosensory evoked potential monitoring of the brachial plexus to predict nerve injury during internal mammary artery harvest: intraoperative comparisons of the Rultract and Pittman sternal retractors. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1994;8:398–403.
102. Liau DW. Injuries and liability related to peripheral catheters: a closed claim analysis. *ASA Newletter*. 2006;70(6):11–13, 16.
103. Warner MA, Martin JT, Schroeder DR, Offord KP, Chute CG. Lower-extremity motor neuropathy associated with surgery performed on patients in a lithotomy position. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:6–12.
104. Warner MA, Warner DO, Harper CM, Schroeder DR, Maxson PM. Lower extremity neuropathies associated with lithotomy positions. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:938–942.
105. Aminoff MJ. Electrophysiologic testing for the diagnosis of peripheral nerve injuries. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1298–1303.
106. Dwlewsky W. In: Martin JT, Warner MA, eds. *Peripheral Nervous System, Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.
107. Borsook D, Kussman BD, George E, Becerra LR, Burke DW. Surgically induced neuropathic pain: understanding the perioperative process. *Ann Surg*. 2013;257:403–412.
108. Primiano M, Friend M, McClure C, et al. Pressure ulcer prevalence and risk factors during prolonged surgical procedures. *AORN J*. 2011;94:555–566.
109. Edsberg LE, Black JM, Goldberg M, McNichol L, Moore L, Sieggreen M. Revised national pressure ulcer advisory panel pressure injury staging system: revised pressure injury staging system. *J Wound Ostomy Continence Nurs*. 2016;43:585–597.
110. Cushing CA, Phillips LG. Evidence-based medicine: pressure sores. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2013;132:1720–1732.
111. Aronovitch SA. Intraoperatively acquired pressure ulcer prevalence: a national study. *J Wound Ostomy Continence Nurs*. 1999;26:130–136.
112. Hayes RM, Spear ME, Lee SI, et al. Relationship between time in the operating room and incident pressure ulcers: a matched case-control study. *Am J Med Qual*. 2015;30:591–597.
113. Campbell C, Parish LC. The decubitus ulcer: facts and controversies. *Clin Dermatol*. 2010;28:527–532.
114. Kayser SA, VanGilder CA, Ayello EA, Lachenbruch C. Prevalence and analysis of medical device-related pressure injuries: results from the international pressure ulcer prevalence survey. *Adv Skin Wound Care*. 2018;31:276–285.
115. Schwartz DM, Sestokas AK, Dormans JP, et al. Transcranial electric motor evoked potential monitoring during spine surgery: is it safe? *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2011;36:1046–1049.
116. Brockerville M, Lakshmikumar V, Manninen P. Macroglossia in neurosurgery. *J Neuroanesth Crit Care*. 2017;4:78–84.
117. Lalwani K. Demographics and trends in nonoperating-room anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;19:430–435.
118. Biousse V, Nahab F, Newman NJ. Management of acute retinal ischemia: follow the guidelines!. *Ophthalmology*. 2018;125:1597–1607.
119. Biousse V, Newman NJ. Ischemic optic neuropathies. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373:1677.
120. De la Garza-Ramos R, Samdani AF, Sponseller PD, et al. Visual loss after corrective surgery for pediatric scoliosis: incidence and risk factors from a nationwide database. *Spine J*. 2016;16:516–522.
121. Gayat E, Gabison E, Devys JM. Case report: bilateral angle closure glaucoma after general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:126–128.
122. Frenkel RE, Shin DH. Prevention and management of delayed suprachoroidal hemorrhage after filtration surgery. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1986;104:1459–1463.
123. Hart RH, Vote BJ, Borthwick JH, McGeorge AJ, Worsley DR. Loss of vision caused by expansion of intraocular perfluoropropane (C(3)F(8)) gas during nitrous oxide anesthesia. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 2002;134:761–763.
124. Roth S, Thisted RA, Erickson JP, Black S, Schreider BD. Eye injuries after nonocular surgery. A study of 60,965 anesthetics from 1988 to 1992. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:1020–1027.
125. Warner ME, Warner MA, Garrity JA, MacKenzie RA, Warner DO. The frequency of perioperative vision loss. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1417–1421. table of contents.
126. Shen Y, Drum M, Roth S. The prevalence of perioperative visual loss in the United States: a 10-year study from 1996 to 2005 of spinal, orthopedic, cardiac, and general surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1534–1545.
127. Rubin DS, Parakati I, Lee LA, Moss HE, Joslin CE, Roth S. Perioperative visual loss in spine fusion surgery: ischemic optic neuropathy in the United States from 1998 to 2012 in the Nationwide Inpatient Sample. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:457–464.
128. Patil CG, Lad EM, Lad SP, Ho C, Boakye M. Visual loss after spine surgery: a population-based study. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2008;33:1491–1496.
129. Stevens WR, Glazer PA, Kelley SD, Lietman TM, Bradford DS. Ophthalmic complications after spinal surgery. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 1997;22:1319–1324.
130. Chang SH, Miller NR. The incidence of vision loss due to perioperative ischemic optic neuropathy associated with spine surgery: the Johns Hopkins Hospital Experience. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2005;30:1299–1302.
131. Shapira OM, Kimmel WA, Lindsey PS, Shahian DM. Anterior ischemic optic neuropathy after open heart operations. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;61:660–666.
132. Nuttall GA, Garrity JA, Dearani JA, Abel MD, Schroeder DR, Mullany CJ. Risk factors for ischemic optic neuropathy after cardiopulmonary bypass: a matched case/control study. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1410–1416; table of contents.
133. Kalyani SD, Miller NR, Dong LM, Baumgartner WA, Alejo DE, Gilbert TB. Incidence of and risk factors for perioperative optic neuropathy after cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:34–37.
134. Deleted in proofs.
135. Myers MA, Hamilton SR, Bogosian AJ, Smith CH, Wagner TA. Visual loss as a complication of spine surgery. A review of 37 cases. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 1997;22:1325–1329.
136. Lee LA, Roth S, Posner KL, et al. The American Society of Anesthesiologists Postoperative Visual Loss Registry: analysis of 93 spine surgery cases with postoperative visual loss. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:652–659. quiz 867-8.
137. Postoperative Visual Loss Study Group. Risk factors associated with ischemic optic neuropathy after spinal fusion surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:15–24.
138. Dattilo M, Biousse V, Newman NJ. Update on the management of central retinal artery occlusion. *Neurol Clin*. 2017;35:83–100.
139. Goldsmith MO. Occlusion of the central retinal artery following retrobulbar hemorrhage. *Ophthalmologica*. 1967;153:191–196.
140. Katz DA, Karlin LI. Visual field defect after posterior spine fusion. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2005;30:E83–E85.
141. Marks SC, Jaques DA, Hirata RM, Saunders Jr JR. Blindness following bilateral radical neck dissection. *Head Neck*. 1990;12:342–345.
142. Blauth C, Arnold J, Kohner EM, Taylor KM. Retinal microembolism during cardiopulmonary bypass demonstrated by fluorescein angiography. *Lancet*. 1986;2:837–839.
143. Wray SH. The management of acute visual failure. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1993;56:234–240.
144. Tobalem S, Schutz JS, Chronopoulos A. Central retinal artery occlusion—rethinking retinal survival time. *BMC Ophthalmol*. 2018;18:101.
145. Alm A, Bill A. In: Moses A, Hart C, eds. *Ocular Circulation, Adler's Physiology of the Eye*. 8th ed. St Louis: CV Mosby; 1987.
146. Hayreh SS, Zimmerman MB, Kimura A, Sanon A. Central retinal artery occlusion. Retinal survival time. *Exp Eye Res*. 2004;78:723–736.
147. Hayreh SS, Kolder HE, Weingeist TA. Central retinal artery occlusion and retinal tolerance time. *Ophthalmology*. 1980;87:75–78.
148. Roth S, Pietrzyk Z. Blood flow after retinal ischemia in cats. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 1994;35:3209–3217.
149. Lin J, Roth S. Ischemic preconditioning attenuates hypoperfusion after retinal ischemia in rats. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 1999;40:2925–2931.
150. Chen X, Liang Z, Shen W, Shou T. Differential behavior of simple and complex cells in visual cortex during a brief IOP elevation. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2005;46:2611–2619.

151. Ettaiche M, Heurteaux C, Blondeau N, Borsotto M, Tinel N, Lazdunski M. ATP-sensitive potassium channels (K(ATP)) in retina: a key role for delayed ischemic tolerance. *Brain Res*. 2001;890:118–129.
152. Roth S, Li B, Rosenbaum PS, et al. Preconditioning provides complete protection against retinal ischemic injury in rats. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 1998;39:777–785.
153. Calway T, Rubin DS, Moss HE, Joslin CE, Beckmann K, Roth S. Perioperative retinal artery occlusion: risk factors in cardiac surgery from the United States National Inpatient Sample 1998-2013. *Ophthalmology*. 2017;124:189–196.
154. Calway T, Rubin DS, Moss HE, Joslin CE, Mehta AI, Roth S. Perioperative retinal artery occlusion: incidence and risk factors in spinal fusion surgery from the US National Inpatient Sample 1998-2013. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 2018;38:36–41.
155. Van Dijk FS, Sillence DO. Osteogenesis imperfecta: clinical diagnosis, nomenclature and severity assessment. *Am J Med Genet A*. 2014;164a:1470–1481.
156. Cole DE, Carpenter TO. Bone fragility, craniosynostosis, ocular proptosis, hydrocephalus, and distinctive facial features: a newly recognized type of osteogenesis imperfecta. *J Pediatr*. 1987;110:76–80.
157. Sys J, Michielsen J, Mertens E, Verstreken J, Tassignon MJ. Central retinal artery occlusion after spinal surgery. *Eur Spine J*. 1996;5:74–75.
158. Grossman W, Ward WT. Central retinal artery occlusion after scoliosis surgery with a horseshoe headrest. Case report and literature review. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 1993;18:1226–1228.
159. Kumar N, Jivan S, Topping N, Morrell AJ. Blindness and rectus muscle damage following spinal surgery. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 2004;138:889–891.
160. Carr RE, Siegel IM. Unilateral retinitis pigmentosa. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1973;90:21–26.
161. Jampol LM, Goldbaum M, Rosenberg M, Bahr R. Ischemia of ciliary arterial circulation from ocular compression. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1975;93:1311–1317.
162. Malihi M, Turbin RE, Frohman LP. Saturday night retinopathy with ophthalmoplegia: a case series. *Neuroophthalmology*. 2015;39:77–82.
163. Hollenhorst RW, Svien HJ, Benoit CF. Unilateral blindness occurring during anesthesia for neurosurgical operations. *AMA Arch Ophthalmol*. 1954;52:819–830.
164. Bui BV, Edmunds B, Cioffi GA, Fortune B. The gradient of retinal functional changes during acute intraocular pressure elevation. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2005;46:202–213.
165. Zhang C, Rosenbaum DM, Shaikh AR, et al. Ischemic preconditioning attenuates apoptotic cell death in the rat retina. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2002;43:3059–3066.
166. Zhu Y, Ohlemiller KK, McMahan BK, Gidday JM. Mouse models of retinal ischemic tolerance. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2002;43:1903–1911.
167. Grant GP, Turbin RE, Bennett HL, Szirth BC, Heary RF. Use of the Proneview Helmet System with a modified table platform for open access to the eyes during prone spine surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:499–500.
168. Roth S, Tung A, Ksiazek S. Visual loss in a prone-positioned spine surgery patient with the head on a foam headrest and goggles covering the eyes: an old complication with a new mechanism. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1185–1187; tables of contents.
169. Rubinstein A, Riddell CE, Akram I, Ahmado A, Benjamin L. Orbital emphysema leading to blindness following routine functional endoscopic sinus surgery. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 2005;123:1452.
170. Amorim Correa JL, Acioly MA. The enigma of orbital compartment syndrome after lumbar spine surgery in the prone position: case report and literature review. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;110:309–314.
171. Habets JGV, Haeren RHL, Lie SAN, Bauer NJC, Dings JTA. Acute monocular blindness due to orbital compartment syndrome following pterional craniotomy. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;114:72–75.
172. Pahl FH, de Oliveira MF, Dal Col Lucio JE, Souza ECEF. Orbital compartment syndrome after frontotemporal craniotomy: case report and review of literature. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;109:218–221.
173. Rimpilainen R, Hautala N, Koskenkari J, et al. Comparison of the use of minimized cardiopulmonary bypass with conventional techniques on the incidence of retinal microemboli during aortic valve replacement surgery. *Perfusion*. 2011;26:479–486.
174. Blauth CI, Smith PL, Arnold JV, Jagoe JR, Wootton R, Taylor KM. Influence of oxygenator type on the prevalence and extent of microembolic retinal ischemia during cardiopulmonary bypass. Assessment by digital image analysis. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1990;99:61–69.
175. Slaughter MS, Sobieski MA, Tatooles AJ, Pappas PS. Reducing emboli in cardiac surgery: does it make a difference? *Artif Organs*. 2008;32:880–884.
176. Herren JI, Kunzelman KS, Vocelka C, Cochran RP, Spiess BD. Angiographic and histological evaluation of porcine retinal vascular damage and protection with perfluorocarbons after massive air embolism. *Stroke*. 1998;29:2396–2403.
177. Bhatti MT, Stankiewicz JA. Ophthalmic complications of endoscopic sinus surgery. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 2003;48:389–402.
178. Haller D, Gosepath J, Mann WJ. The management of acute visual loss after sinus surgery—two cases of rhinogenic optic neuropathy. *Rhinology*. 2006;44:216–218.
179. Savino PJ, Burde RM, Mills RP. Visual loss following intranasal anesthetic injection. *J Clin Neuroophthalmol*. 1990;10:140–144.
180. Jacobs SM, McInnis CP, Kapeles M, Chang SH. Incidence, risk factors, and management of blindness after orbital surgery. *Ophthalmology*. 2018;125:1100–1108.
181. Christie B, Block L, Ma Y, Wick A, Afifi A. Retrobulbar hematoma: a systematic review of factors related to outcomes. *J Plast Reconstr Aesthet Surg*. 2018;71:155–161.
182. Moss WJ, Kjos KB, Karnezis TT, Lebovits MJ. Intranasal steroid injections and blindness: our personal experience and a review of the past 60 years. *Laryngoscope*. 2015;125:796–800.
183. Byers B. Blindness secondary to steroid injections into the nasal turbinates. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1979;97:79–80.
184. Watanabe W, Kuwabara R, Nakahara T, et al. Severe ocular and orbital toxicity after intracarotid injection of carboplatin for recurrent glioblastomas. *Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol*. 2002;240:1033–1035.
185. Anderson Jr B. Ocular effects of changes in oxygen and carbon dioxide tension. *Trans Am Ophthalmol Soc*. 1968;66:423–474.
186. Ahn SJ, Kim JM, Hong JH, et al. Efficacy and safety of intra-arterial thrombolysis in central retinal artery occlusion. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2013;54:7746–7755.
187. Nedelmann M, Graef M, Weinand F, et al. Retrobulbar spot sign predicts thrombolytic treatment effects and etiology in central retinal artery occlusion. *Stroke*. 2015;46:2322–2324.
188. Schrag M, Youn T, Schindler J, Kirshner H, Greer D. Intravenous fibrinolytic therapy in central retinal artery occlusion: a patient-level meta-analysis. *JAMA Neurol*. 2015;72:1148–1154.
189. Page PS, Khattar NK, White AC, et al. Intra-arterial thrombolysis for acute central retinal artery occlusion: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Front Neurol*. 2018;9:76.
190. Tamai K, Toumoto E, Majima A. Local hypothermia protects the retina from ischaemic injury in vitrectomy. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1997;81:789–794.
191. Deleted in proofs.
192. Deleted in proofs.
193. Johnson LN, Arnold AC. Incidence of nonarteritic and arteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy. Population-based study in the state of Missouri and Los Angeles County, California. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 1994;14:38–44.
194. Arnold AC. Pathogenesis of nonarteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 2003;23:157–163.
195. Tice DA. Ischemic optic neuropathy and cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1987;44:677.
196. Schobel GA, Schmidbauer M, Millesi W, Undt G. Posterior ischemic optic neuropathy following bilateral radical neck dissection. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 1995;24:283–287.
197. Fenton S, Fenton JE, Browne M, Hughes JP, Connor MO, Timon CI. Ischaemic optic neuropathy following bilateral neck dissection. *J Laryngol Otol*. 2001;115:158–160.
198. Kaeser PF, Borruat FX. Visual loss after orthopedic procedures. *J Arthroplasty*. 2011;26. 338.e17-9.
199. Huang TW, Liu CM, Cheng PW, Yang CH. Posterior ischemic optic neuropathy following endoscopic sinus surgery. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2003;129:448–450.
200. Buono LM, Foroozan R. Perioperative posterior ischemic optic neuropathy: review of the literature. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 2005;50:15–26.
201. Roth S, Dreixler J, Newman NJ. Haemodilution and head-down tilting induce functional injury in the rat optic nerve: a model for peri-operative ischemic optic neuropathy. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35:840–847.

202. Arnold AC, Hepler RS. Fluorescein angiography in acute nonarteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 1994;117:222–230.
203. Subramanian PS, Gordon LK, Bonelli L, Arnold AC. Progression of asymptomatic optic disc swelling to non-arteritic anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 2017;101:671–675.
204. Grieshaber MC, Flammer J. Does the blood-brain barrier play a role in glaucoma? *Surv Ophthalmol*. 2007;52(suppl 2):S115–S121.
205. Guy J. New therapies for optic neuropathies: development in experimental models. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol*. 2000;11:421–429.
206. Bernstein SL, Guo Y, Kelman SE, Flower RW, Johnson MA. Functional and cellular responses in a novel rodent model of anterior ischemic optic neuropathy. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2003;44:4153–4162.
207. Tesser RA, Niendorf ER, Levin LA. The morphology of an infarct in nonarteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy. *Ophthalmology*. 2003;110:2031–2035.
208. Patel HR, Margo CE. Pathology of ischemic optic neuropathy. *Arch Pathol Lab Med*. 2017;141:162–166.
209. Hayreh S. In: Pillunat L, Harris A, Anderson D, Greve E, eds. *Blood Supply of the Optic Nerve Head: A "Reality Check", Current Concepts in Ocular Blood Flow In Glaucoma*. The Hague: Kugler; 1999.
210. Olver JM, Spalton DJ, McCartney AC. Microvascular study of the retrolaminar optic nerve in man: the possible significance in anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy. *Eye (Lond)*. 1990;4(Pt 1):7–24.
211. Knox DL, Kerrison JB, Green WR. Histopathologic studies of ischemic optic neuropathy. *Trans Am Ophthalmol Soc*. 2000;98:203–220; discussion 221-2.
212. Hayreh SS, Zimmerman MB. Nonarteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy: refractive error and its relationship to cup/disc ratio. *Ophthalmology*. 2008;115:2275–2281.
213. Saito H, Tomidokoro A, Tomita G, Araie M, Wakakura M. Optic disc and peripapillary morphology in unilateral nonarteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy and age- and refraction-matched normals. *Ophthalmology*. 2008;115:1585–1590.
214. Beck RW, Servais GE, Hayreh SS. Anterior ischemic optic neuropathy. IX. Cup-to-disc ratio and its role in pathogenesis. *Ophthalmology*. 1987;94:1503–1508.
215. Hayreh SS, Jonas JB. Optic disc morphology after arteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy. *Ophthalmology*. 2001;108:1586–1594.
216. Isayama Y, Hiramatsu K, Asakura S, Takahashi T. Posterior ischemic optic neuropathy. I. Blood supply of the optic nerve. *Ophthalmologica*. 1983;186:197–203.
217. Hayreh SS, Bill A, Sperber GO. Effects of high intraocular pressure on the glucose metabolism in the retina and optic nerve in old atherosclerotic monkeys. *Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol*. 1994;232:745–752.
218. Weinstein JM, Duckrow RB, Beard D, Brennan RW. Regional optic nerve blood flow and its autoregulation. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 1983;24:1559–1565.
219. Movaffaghy A, Chamot SR, Petrig BL, Riva CE. Blood flow in the human optic nerve head during isometric exercise. *Exp Eye Res*. 1998;67:561–568.
220. Riva CE, Hero M, Titze P, Petrig B. Autoregulation of human optic nerve head blood flow in response to acute changes in ocular perfusion pressure. *Graefes Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol*. 1997;235:618–626.
221. Pillunat LE, Anderson DR, Knighton RW, Joos KM, Feuer WJ. Autoregulation of human optic nerve head circulation in response to increased intraocular pressure. *Exp Eye Res*. 1997;64:737–744.
222. Vaphiades MS. Optic nerve enhancement in hypotensive ischemic optic neuropathy. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 2004;24:235–236.
223. Bolacchi F, Garaci FG, Martucci A, et al. Differences between proximal versus distal intraorbital optic nerve diffusion tensor magnetic resonance imaging properties in glaucoma patients. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2012;53:4191–4196.
224. Parisi V, Gallinaro G, Ziccardi L, Coppola G. Electrophysiological assessment of visual function in patients with non-arteritic ischaemic optic neuropathy. *Eur J Neurol*. 2008;15:839–845.
225. Ho VT, Newman NJ, Song S, Ksiazek S, Roth S. Ischemic optic neuropathy following spine surgery. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2005;17:38–44.
226. Golinvaux NS, Bohl DD, Basques BA, Grauer JN. Administrative database concerns: accuracy of International Classification of Diseases, Ninth Revision coding is poor for preoperative anemia in patients undergoing spinal fusion. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2014;39:2019–2023.
227. Holy SE, Tsai JH, McAllister RK, Smith KH. Perioperative ischemic optic neuropathy: a case control analysis of 126,666 surgical procedures at a single institution. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:246–253.
228. Practice advisory for perioperative visual loss associated with spine surgery: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blindness. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1319–1328.
229. Practice advisory for perioperative visual loss associated with spine surgery: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Visual Loss. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:274–285.
230. Practice advisory for perioperative visual loss associated with spine surgery 2019: an Updated Report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Visual Loss, the North American Neuro-Ophthalmology Society, and the Society for Neuroscience in Anesthesiology and Critical Care. *Anesthesiology*. 2019;130:12–30.
231. Farshad M, Bauer DE, Wechsler C, Gerber C, Aichmair A. Risk factors for perioperative morbidity in spine surgeries of different complexities: a multivariate analysis of 1,009 consecutive patients. *Spine J*. 2018;18:1625–1631.
232. Brown RH, Schauble JF, Miller NR. Anemia and hypotension as contributors to perioperative loss of vision. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:222–226.
233. Katz DM, Trobe JD, Cornblath WT, Kline LB. Ischemic optic neuropathy after lumbar spine surgery. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1994;112:925–931.
234. Shen Y, Silverstein JC, Roth S. In-hospital complications and mortality after elective spinal fusion surgery in the United States: a study of the Nationwide Inpatient Sample from 2001 to 2005. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2009;21:21–30.
235. Murphy GS, Hessel 2nd EA, Groom RC. Optimal perfusion during cardiopulmonary bypass: an evidence-based approach. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1394–1417.
236. Practice guidelines for perioperative blood management: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Management*. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:241–275.
237. Ferraris VA, Ferraris SP, Saha SP, et al. Perioperative blood transfusion and blood conservation in cardiac surgery: the Society of Thoracic Surgeons and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists clinical practice guideline. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:S27–86.
238. Williams EL, Hart Jr WM, Tempelhoff R. Postoperative ischemic optic neuropathy. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:1018–1029.
239. Hayreh SS. Anterior ischemic optic neuropathy. 8th. Clinical features and pathogenesis of post-hemorrhagic amaurosis. *Ophthalmology*. 1987;94:1488–1502.
240. Chamot SR, Petrig BL, Pournaras CJ, Riva CE. Effect of isovolumic hemodilution on oxygen delivery to the optic nerve head. *Klin Monbl Augenheilkd*. 2002;219:292–295.
241. Lee LA, Deem S, Glenny RW, et al. Effects of anemia and hypotension on porcine optic nerve blood flow and oxygen delivery. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:864–872.
242. Grant GP, Szirth BC, Bennett HL, et al. Effects of prone and reverse Trendelenburg positioning on ocular parameters. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:57–65.
243. Cheng MA, Todorov A, Tempelhoff R, McHugh T, Crowder CM, Lauryssen C. The effect of prone positioning on intraocular pressure in anesthetized patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1351–1355.
244. Murphy MA. Bilateral posterior ischemic optic neuropathy after lumbar spine surgery. *Ophthalmology*. 2003;110:1454–1457.
245. Roth S, Nunez R, Schreider BD. Unexplained visual loss after lumbar spinal fusion. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1997;9:346–348.
246. Geijer C, Bill A. Effects of raised intraocular pressure on retinal, prelaminar, laminar, and retrolaminar optic nerve blood flow in monkeys. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 1979;18:1030–1042.
247. He Z, Bui BV, Vingrys AJ. The rate of functional recovery from acute IOP elevation. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2006;47:4872–4880.
248. Bui BV, Fortune B. Ganglion cell contributions to the rat full-field electroretinogram. *J Physiol*. 2004;555:153–173.
249. Cullinane DC, Jenkins JM, Reddy S, et al. Anterior ischemic optic neuropathy: a complication after systemic inflammatory response syndrome. *J Trauma*. 2000;48:381–386; discussion 386-7.
250. Sullivan SR, Ahmadi AJ, Singh CN, et al. Elevated orbital pressure: another untoward effect of massive resuscitation after burn injury. *J Trauma*. 2006;60:72–76.

251. Alian AA, Atteya G, Gaal D, et al. Ventilation-induced modulation of pulse oximeter waveforms: a method for the assessment of early changes in intravascular volume during spinal fusion surgery in pediatric patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:346–356.
252. Hayreh SS, Joos KM, Podhajsky PA, Long CR. Systemic diseases associated with nonarteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 1994;118:766–780.
253. Lee LA, Lam AM. Unilateral blindness after prone lumbar spine surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:793–795.
254. Corda DM, Dexter F, Pasternak JJ, Trentman TL, Nottmeier EW, Brull SJ. Patients' perspective on full disclosure and informed consent regarding postoperative visual loss associated with spinal surgery in the prone position. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2011;86:865–868.
255. Bae J, Lee SH. Minimally invasive spinal surgery for adult spinal deformity. *Neurospine*. 2018;15:18–24.
256. Hussain NS, Perez-Cruet MJ. Complication management with minimally invasive spine procedures. *Neurosurg Focus*. 2011;31:E2.
257. Edwards 2nd CC, Lessing NL, Ford L, Edwards CC. Deep vein thrombosis after complex posterior spine surgery: does staged surgery make a difference? *Spine Deform*. 2018;6:141–147.
258. Hassanzadeh H, Gjolaj JP, El Dafrawy MH, et al. The timing of surgical staging has a significant impact on the complications and functional outcomes of adult spinal deformity surgery. *Spine J*. 2013;13:1717–1722.
259. Maddox JJ, Pruitt DR, Agel J, Bransford RJ. Unstaged versus staged posterior-only thoracolumbar fusions in deformity: a retrospective comparison of perioperative complications. *Spine J*. 2014;14:1159–1165.
260. Passias PG, Poorman GW, Jalai CM, et al. Outcomes of open staged corrective surgery in the setting of adult spinal deformity. *Spine J*. 2017;17:1091–1099.
261. Siemionow K, Tyrakowski M, Patel K, Neckrysh S. Comparison of perioperative complications following staged versus one-day anterior and posterior cervical decompression and fusion crossing the cervico-thoracic junction. *Neurol Neurochir Pol*. 2014;48:403–409.
262. Hayreh SS. Anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy. 3rd. Treatment, prophylaxis, and differential diagnosis. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1974;58:981–989.
263. Saxena R, Singh D, Sharma M, James M, Sharma P, Menon V. Steroids versus no steroids in nonarteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy: a randomized controlled trial. *Ophthalmology*. 2018;125:1623–1627.
264. Wolf GL, Capuano C, Hartung J. Nitrous oxide increases intraocular pressure after intravitreal sulfur hexafluoride injection. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:547–548.
265. Vote BJ, Hart RH, Worsley DR, Borthwick JH, Laurent S, McGeorge AJ. Visual loss after use of nitrous oxide gas with general anesthetic in patients with intraocular gas still persistent up to 30 days after vitrectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1305–1308.
266. Seaberg RR, Freeman WR, Goldbaum MH, Manecke Jr GR. Permanent postoperative vision loss associated with expansion of intraocular gas in the presence of a nitrous oxide-containing anesthetic. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1309–1310.

35

Neuromuscular Disorders Including Malignant Hyperthermia and Other Genetic Disorders

JIE ZHOU, ALA NOZARI, BRIAN BATEMAN, PAUL DENNEY ALLEN, and
ISAAC NESS PESSAH

KEY POINTS

- Malignant hyperthermia (MH) is a pharmacogenetic disorder inherited primarily in an autosomal dominant pattern.
- MH susceptibility is linked to 230 mutations in the skeletal muscle ryanodine receptor (RyR1) and four mutations in the calcium voltage-gated channel subunit alpha1 S (CACNA1S) genes that encode two Ca^{2+} channels necessary for skeletal muscle excitation-contraction coupling.
- Physical interactions between L-type Ca^{2+} channel ($Ca_v1.1$) and RyR1 tightly regulate initiation and termination of skeletal muscle excitation-contraction coupling.
- Skeletal muscle accounts for approximately 40% of body weight and inherent changes in its metabolism have profound impacts on whole-body metabolism and physiology.
- Carriers of MH mutations can exhibit mild to moderate muscle impairments in the absence of triggering agents but are rarely diagnosed.
- Carriers of MH mutations are susceptible to anesthetic-triggered runaway skeletal muscle metabolism, which if not promptly treated is lethal.
- Signs of MH, including increased end-tidal CO_2, increased core temperature, muscle rigidity, tachycardia, and more, are consequences of the fulminant hypermetabolic crisis.
- Exposure to triggering agents or heat stress leads to acute loss of RyR1/$Ca_v1.1$ channel regulation, rapid accumulation of Ca^{2+} within the sarcoplasm, and a hypermetabolic crisis that stimulates adenosine triphosphate (ATP) utilization by pumps attempting to restore resting Ca^{2+} balance among sarcoplasmic reticulum, mitochondrial, and extracellular compartments.
- Dantrolene markedly attenuates myoplasmic calcium (Ca^{2+}) concentrations and thereby restores resting Ca^{2+} balance and metabolism, with reversal of clinical signs.
- Evaluation of persons susceptible to MH includes an in vitro contracture test (IVCT) and caffeine/halothane contracture test (CHCT), and evaluation of DNA to identify mutations.
- Currently DNA testing alone can be used to evaluate 42 human mutations and all swine, equine, and canine MH.
- Future MH goals include advancement of genetic evaluations in North American and European medical programs and stronger finances to support genetic studies, the identification of the mode of action of dantrolene, a determination of the immediate cause of triggering MH, and the development of effective, noninvasive tests for MH susceptibility.
- The absence of mutations in dystrophin, along with dystrophin-associated glycoproteins, is involved in sarcolemmal stability. Its defects are responsible for Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD) and Becker muscular dystrophy (BMD).
- Whereas the risk for an MH mutation in DMD and BMD patients is similar to that in the general population, the incidence of MH-like anesthetic events has been reported to be 0.002 with DMD and 0.00036 with BMD.
- Succinylcholine is contraindicated in DMD and BMD patients because of the risk of rhabdomyolysis and hyperkalemia as a result of their unstable sarcolemmal membrane.
- Reversal of neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex is a practical alternative to the management of many of these disorders, if rocuronium or vecuronium is used. The combination of rocuronium and sugammadex has improved the anesthetic management for some of these challenging disorders.

Malignant Hyperthermia

Malignant hyperthermia (MH) is one of the most devastating anesthesia-related complications. The fulminant MH syndrome is elicited by the administration of triggering anesthetic agents, such as volatile halogenated anesthetics or depolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents (NMBAs). MH has been and continues to be a life-threatening complication of anesthesia if the diagnosis is not made promptly and treatment is not begun in a timely fashion. Unlike other disorders described in this chapter, MH has virtually no characteristic phenotype before exposure to the triggering agent and is truly an example of the interaction of genes and the environment. Also covered in this chapter are some of the neuromuscular disorders, although rarely encountered in a routine anesthetic practice. This group of disorders challenges both perioperative management and intensive care. They affect the normal function of peripheral nerves, the neuromuscular junction, and/or muscles. Although such diseases are thought to be rare, the number of patients that a clinician may encounter is increasing because of better medical care, increasing longevity, and other possible unidentified factors. Neuromuscular disorders have significant potential to interact with an improper anesthetic plan, and all affected patients require special perioperative attention for anesthetic management. In this area, the armamentarium of invasive and noninvasive diagnostic tools is being developed, especially in genetics.

MH is a pharmacogenetic clinical syndrome that, in its classic form, occurs during anesthesia with volatile halogenated alkanes such as halothane, isoflurane/sevoflurane, /desflurane, and/or administration of the depolarizing muscle relaxant succinylcholine. The fulminant MH episode observed clinically produces muscle hypermetabolism with rapidly increasing body temperature, by as much as 1°C in 5 minutes, and extreme acidosis as a result of acute loss of control of intracellular ionized calcium (Ca^{2+}). It is the sustained high levels of sarcoplasmic Ca^{2+} that rapidly drives skeletal muscle into a hypermetabolic state that may proceed to severe rhabdomyolysis. Although MH was initially associated with a mortality rate of 60%, earlier diagnosis and the use of dantrolene have reduced the mortality to less than 1.4%.[1] Current cases of MH are restricted in severity because of diagnostic awareness, early detection through end-expired carbon dioxide (CO_2), the use of less potent anesthetic triggers, and prior administration of drugs that attenuate the progression of the fulminant episode. Estimates of the incidence of fulminant MH vary widely from one case per 10,000 to 1:250,000 anesthetics administered.[2] The prevalence of MH events in Japan was calculated to be between 1:60,000 and 1:73,000.[3,4] However, the prevalence of MH mutations within kindred known to transmit MH-susceptibility (MHS) mutations may be as high as 1:2000.[5] Males appear to be more susceptible to developing a clinical MH episode than females.[3,6] A gender difference in MHS has also been demonstrated in knock-in mice expressing human MH mutation RyR1-T4825I.[7] The pediatric population accounts for 52.1% of all MH reactions.[8,9]

Between 50% and 80% of genotyped patients who have had a clinical MH syndrome and a positive muscle biopsy have had their disease linked to one of more than 230 mutations in the type 1 ryanodine receptor (RyR1; sarcoplasmic reticulum [SR] Ca^{2+} release channel) gene and four mutations in L-type Ca^{2+} channel ($Ca_V1.1$), the pore subunit of the slowly inactivating L-type Ca^{2+} channel encoded by Calcium Voltage-Gated Channel Subunit Alpha1 S (CACNA1S) (also referred to as the dihydropyridine receptor [DHPR]).[10] The genetics of MHS and the related abnormal function of RyR1, the DHPR, and associated proteins are being investigated at the molecular biologic level, with a porcine model and several new mouse models providing intricate details about the etiology of the disorder. Parallel studies in humans are limited by scarce material for scientific study and are complicated by the fact that phenotypes within a single genotype vary as a result of sex, age, genetic, epigenetic, and environmental modifiers.

Public education and communication in the United States are provided by Malignant Hyperthermia Association of the United States (MHAUS, 11 E. State Street, P.O. Box 1069, Sherburne, NY 13460, U.S.A.; telephone: (+1) 607-674-7901; fax: (+1) 607-674-7910; e-mail: info@mhaus.org; website: http://www.mhaus.org), and by emergency consultation with the MH Hotline (1-800-MHHYPER, or 1-800-644-9737). The North American Malignant Hyperthermia Registry (NAMHR), a professional subsidiary of MHAUS, collates findings from muscle biopsy centers in Canada and the United States (NAMHR, 1345 SW Center Drive, P.O. Box 100254, Gainesville, FL 32610, U.S.A.); telephone: (+1) 888-274-7899; fax: (+1) 352-392-7029.; website http://anest.ufl.edu/namhr/).

HISTORY

Between 1915 and 1925, one family experienced three anesthetic-induced MH deaths with rigidity and hyperthermia and was puzzled for decades regarding the cause of these deaths.[11,12] MHS was eventually confirmed in three descendants by in vitro muscle biopsy tests.[11] In 1929, Ombrédanne described anesthesia-induced postoperative hyperthermia and pallor in children accompanied by significant mortality but did not detect any familial relationships.[13] Critical worldwide attention to MH began in 1960 when Denborough and associates reported a 21-year-old Australian with an open leg fracture who was more anxious about anesthesia than about surgery because 10 of his relatives died during or after anesthesia.[14] Denborough and colleagues initially anesthetized him with the then-new agent halothane, halted it when signs of MH appeared, successfully treated the symptoms, aborted the syndrome, and subsequently used spinal anesthesia. Further evaluations by George Locher in Wausau, Wisconsin, and Beverly Britt in Toronto, Canada, led to the discovery that MH risk was indeed familial.[15] It was also found that the cause of the syndrome was the result of skeletal muscle involvement rather than central loss of temperature control by the recognition of increased muscle metabolism or muscle rigidity early in the syndrome, low-threshold contracture responses, and elevated creatine kinase (CK) values.[16]

Interestingly, a similar syndrome was discovered in swine inbred with breeding patterns designed to produce a rapid growth rate and superior muscle development (e.g., Landrace, Piétrain, Duroc, and Poland China). *Porcine stress syndrome*,[17] which is associated with increased metabolism, acidosis, rigidity, fever, and death from rapid deterioration of muscle and results in pale, soft, exudative pork,[18] can be triggered by any stress, such as separation, shipping conditions, weaning, fighting, coitus, or preparation for slaughter, and had become a significant problem for meat production. In 1966, Hall and coworkers reported that a syndrome that appeared to be identical to MH could be induced in stress-susceptible swine by the administration of halothane and succinylcholine.[19] The cause of this syndrome in pigs was discovered to be a single missense mutation in RyR1, and all susceptible swine have the same Arg615Cys mutation in the SR calcium release channel RyR1.[20]

In 1975, Harrison described the efficacy of dantrolene in preventing and treating porcine MH,[21] which was rapidly confirmed in humans by a multihospital evaluation of dantrolene used to treat anesthetic-induced MH episodes.[22] Today, dantrolene still remains the primary pharmacologic approach for successful MH therapy.

PHYSIOLOGY AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF EXCITATION-CONTRACTION COUPLING AND MALIGNANT HYPERTHERMIA

MH is a syndrome caused by dysregulation of excitation-contraction (EC) coupling in skeletal muscle. Normal muscle contraction is initiated by nerve impulses arriving at the neuromuscular junction (i.e., the motor end plate) that trigger the release of acetylcholine from the nerve terminal. Acetylcholine activates nicotinic cholinergic receptors (nAChR), nonselective cation channels located at the postsynaptic neuromuscular junction, that are essential for local depolarization of the surface muscle membrane (sarcolemma) and initiating action potentials that propagate rapidly along the sarcolemma of muscle cells. Invaginations of the sarcolemma (termed transverse or T tubules) act as conduits to rapidly and uniformly direct-action potentials deep within the myofibrils where they transduce a conformational change in the "voltage sensor" protein $Ca_V1.1$. A central T-tubule is flanked on both sides by a terminal cisternae element from the SR that contains the Ca^{2+} release channels (RyR1). Conformational changes in $Ca_V1.1$ residing within the T-tubule are mechanically transmitted to RyR1 residing in the junctional face of the SR. More specifically, physical coupling of four $Ca_V1.1$ (dihydropyridine receptor) units to every second RyR1 channel form linear arrays at specialized junctions (*triadic junctions*) that are essential for linking electrical signals at the T tubules with the release of Ca^{2+} stored within the SR. Release of SR Ca^{2+} causes the free, cytoplasmic (sarcoplasmic) Ca^{2+} concentration to increase from 10^{-7} M to about 10^{-5} M. This released Ca^{2+} binds to contractile proteins (troponin C and tropomyosin) in the thin filament to expose myosin's actin binding sites which allow shortening and force development by the muscle fibers (i.e., muscle contraction). The entire process is termed excitation-contraction coupling (EC coupling) Intracellular Ca^{2+} pumps (i.e., sarcoplasmic/endoplasmic reticulum Ca^{2+}-adenosine triphosphatase [ATPase], or SERCA) rapidly sequester Ca^{2+} back into the SR lumen, and muscle relaxation begins when the Ca^{2+} concentration falls below 10^{-6} M and ends when the resting sarcoplasmic Ca^{2+} concentration is restored to 10^{-7} M. Because both contraction and relaxation are energy-related processes that consume adenosine triphosphate (ATP), knowing the molecular events contributing to EC coupling and the subsequent relaxation phase is essential to understanding the cause of MH (Fig. 35.1). Clinical and laboratory data from humans, swine, and mice with knock-in mutations indicate that the fulminant MH syndrome is associated with a persistent increase in the concentration of sarcoplasmic Ca^{2+}.[23-26] The increased activity of pumps and exchangers trying to

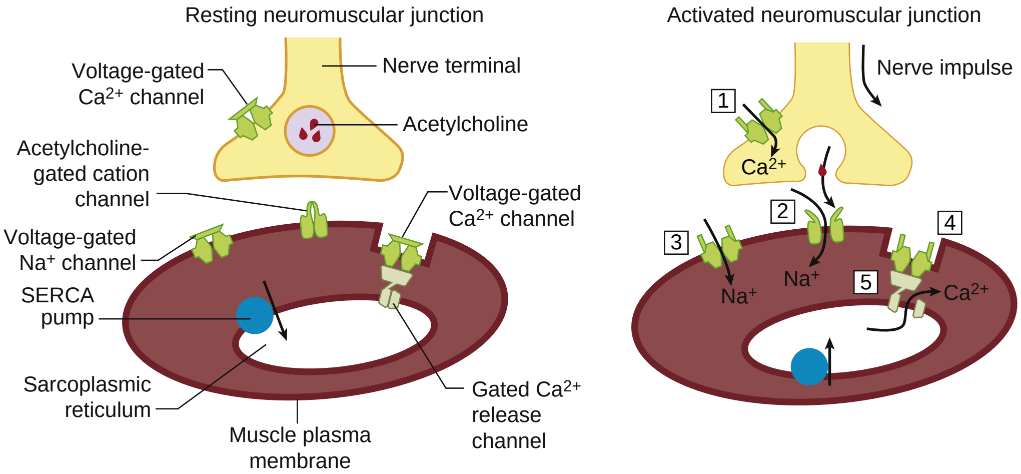

Resting neuromuscular junction
Activated neuromuscular junction
Voltage-gated Ca^{2+} channel
Nerve terminal
Acetylcholine
Acetylcholine-gated cation channel
Voltage-gated Ca^{2+} channel
Voltage-gated Na^+ channel
SERCA pump
Sarcoplasmic reticulum
Muscle plasma membrane
Gated Ca^{2+} release channel
Nerve impulse
1
Ca^{2+}
2
3
4
Na^+
Na^+
5
Ca^{2+}

Fig. 35.1 Key ion channels involved in neuromuscular transmission and excitation-contraction coupling. Nerve impulses arriving at the nerve terminal activate voltage-gated Ca^{2+} channels (1). The resulting increase in cytoplasmic Ca^{2+} concentration is essential for the exocytosis of acetylcholine. Binding of acetylcholine to postsynaptic nicotinic cholinergic receptors (nAChR) activates an integral nonselective cation channel that depolarizes the sarcolemma (2). Depolarizing the sarcolemma to threshold activates voltage-gated Na^+ channels (3), which initiates action potential impulses that propagate deep into the muscle through the transverse tubule system. Within the transverse tubule system, L-type voltage-gated Ca^{2+} channels sense membrane depolarization and undergo a conformational change (4). A physical link between these voltage sensors and the ryanodine receptor (RyR1) sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca^{2+} channel is the means by which the electrical signal is transferred from the T tubule to Ca^{2+} release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum (5). (Modified from Alberts B, Bray D, Lewis J, et al. *Molecular Biology of the Cell*. 3rd ed. New York: Garland Press; 1994.)

correct the increase in sarcoplasmic Ca^{2+} associated with triggered MH increases the need for ATP, which in turn produces heat. Thus the common etiological feature of the disorder is hyperthermia. The rigidity that is frequently seen during a fulminant MH episode is the result of the inability of the Ca^{2+} pumps and transporters to reduce the unbound sarcoplasmic Ca^{2+} below the contractile threshold (10^{-6} M). Dantrolene is an effective therapeutic for treatment of fulminant MH because it reduces the concentration of sarcoplasmic Ca^{2+} to below contractile threshold. However, the pathway by which dantrolene lowers sarcoplasmic Ca^{2+} is complex and still not fully understood. Dantrolene's ability to suppress Ca^{2+} release from SR appears to depend on elevated sarcoplasmic Mg^{2+} concentration[27]; however the drug also attenuates depolarized-triggered Ca^{2+} entry mediated by $Ca_V1.1$, which is exacerbated in MHS muscle cells and MH normal muscle cells exposed to ryanodine.[28] Thus whether dantrolene directly inhibits RyR1 or requires additional intermediates within the triad junctions remains to be clarified.

Malignant Hyperthermia Is the Result of Abnormal Function of Muscle Calcium Release Units

RYANODINE RECEPTORS

Ryanodine receptors (RyRs) within the muscle are synonymous with the junctional foot protein/SR calcium release channel, and are so named because they specifically bind the toxic plant alkaloid ryanodine, which can activate or inhibit the channel depending on its concentration.[29,30] In all mammals there are three RyR isoforms. In humans, they are encoded by three genes located on chromosomes 19q13.1,[31] 1q42.1-q43,[32] and 15q14-q15,[33] for the "skeletal" (RyR1), "cardiac" (RyR2), and "brain" (RyR3) isoforms, respectively. Each functional RyR is a homotetramer consisting of four identical subunits (~5000 amino acids each), and an accessory protein, calstabin 1 (FK506 12-kd binding protein [FKBP12]).[34-37]. The total mass of the tetramer exceeds 2 mega-Daltons. Thus it is one of the largest known proteins and the largest known channel in mammalian species. Evidence of direct coupling of $Ca_V1.1$ and RyR1 has been demonstrated both by expressing chimeric $Ca_V1.1/Ca_V1.2$ cDNA in dysgenic myotubes that lack constitutive expression of $Ca_V1.1$[38,39] and chimeric RyR1/RyR2/3 cDNA in dyspedic myotubes that lack constitutive expression of RyR1, 2, and 3. Such studies have provided compelling evidence that the cytoplasmic region between repeats II and III (i.e., cytosolic II-III loop) of $Ca_V1.1$ contains a stretch of 46 amino acids (L720 to Q765) and multiple regions of RyR1 that are essential for engaging bidirectional signaling between $Ca_V1.1$ and RyR1.[40-42]

In the last two decades, our understanding of EC coupling has increased significantly by identifying protein-protein interactions that regulate both the release and sequestration of Ca^{2+} within skeletal muscle. The elemental unit of function has been named the Ca^{2+} release unit (CRU), and it is localized within junctional regions of T-tubule and SR membranes.[43] The CRU is a macromolecular assembly of interacting proteins that participate in regulating EC coupling. RyR1 is a high-conductance channel that regulates release of SR Ca^{2+} and is the central component of the CRU. The functional RyR1 tetramer anchored within the SR membrane physically spans the junctional space to interact with tetrads composed of four voltage-activated $Ca_V1.1$ subunits within the T-tubule membrane. This physical interaction engages a form of bidirectional signaling that tightly regulates the function of both proteins. Moreover, interaction of $Ca_V1.1$ and RyR1 does not occur in isolation, but are further subject to regulation by a number of proteins localized within the triad junction, including Homer 1, which physically binds and functionally couples target proteins, calstabin 1, triadin, junctin, Mg29, junctophilin 1 and 2, calsequestrin, calmodulin, STAC 3, the catalytic and regulatory subunits of protein kinase A, and protein phosphatase 1.[44-50]. It is likely that this list is not complete and that there are other critical components which make up this tightly regulated macromolecular complex. More importantly, there is increasing experimental evidence that mutations found in RyR1 ($_{MH}$RyR) or $Ca_V1.1$ ($_{MH}Ca_V1.1$) can alter protein-protein interactions in the CRU,[51-53] as well as alter the functional fidelity of bidirectional signals.[54-58]

In the presence of certain chemical substances, MH mutations in RyR1 or DHPR cause severe dysregulation of RyR1 channel function. This can be seen in vitro as a heightened sensitivity to volatile anesthetics, 4-chloro-*m*-cresol, caffeine, ryanodine, and potassium depolarization.[59-61] Chemically induced dysfunction of the RyR1 complex appears to be the principal cause of triggering uncontrolled skeletal muscle metabolic acidosis (aerobic and glycolytic), rigidity, and hyperkalemia, but the mechanisms governing the syndrome are unclear. Also unclear is the relationship among exertional heat illness, exertional rhabdomyolysis, and MHS, an area that requires more investigation and, if possible, controlled clinical studies.[62]

Two essential cations greatly shape the kinetics and magnitude of Ca^{2+} release in response to depolarizing triggers: Ca^{2+} itself and Mg^{2+}. The normal RyR1 complex responds to Ca^{2+} in a biphasic manner. First, Ca^{2+} activates the channel in a graded manner between 100 nM and 100 μM, whereas higher concentrations inhibit channel activity.[63,64] This biphasic action is thought to occur via binding of Ca^{2+} to two classes of regulatory sites on RyR1, a high-affinity stimulatory site and a low-affinity inhibitory site.[46] Mg^{2+}-induced inhibition is the second important physiologic regulator of RyR1 activity in skeletal muscle.[65,66] Mg^{2+} inhibits RyR1 in a cooperative manner ($n_H \approx 2$; 50% inhibitory concentration [IC_{50}] ≈ 650 μM). It is likely that Mg^{2+} acts by competing with Ca^{2+} at its activator sites and by binding to yet unidentified low-affinity inhibitory sites.[67,68] It is possible that MH mutations introduce allosteric instability into the RyR1 complex which leads to a reduction of inhibition rather than directly altering the binding properties of Ca^{2+} or Mg^{2+}, or both, at the activator or inhibitor sites. Therefore hypersensitivity to pharmacologic agents is likely to be closely tied to altered responses to physiologic ligands. However, whether MHS channels are primarily hyposensitive to inhibition by Mg^{2+} or Ca^{2+} (or both),[69,70] are hypersensitive to activation by Ca^{2+}, or exhibit altered sensitivities in both directions to both ions seems to be highly dependent on the location of the MH mutation.[71,72] Studies have also pursued the "leaky channel" hypothesis by examining

SR preparations from homozygous R615C MHS pigs and heterozygous R163C and C512S mice. They observed a significantly lower Ca^{2+} loading capacity (38%, 23%, and 22% lower than matched wild type mice, respectively) primarily mediated by the presence of leaky channels that remain active even with 100 nM extravesicular Ca^{2+}.[73,74] Recent studies indicated that expression of $Ca_V1.1$ represses the basal activity of the ryanodine-insensitive RyR1 leaky state.[56] It is important that MHS mutations appear to not only alter bidirectional signaling during EC coupling [57,58] and inherent regulation of RyR1 channel functions,[71,72] but also weaken negative regulation conferred by $Ca_V1.1$ on RyR1 Ca^{2+} leak under nontriggering conditions.[54] These findings at the molecular and cellular level using knock-in MHS mice confirm earlier measurements made in porcine and human MHS muscles, myotubes, and myoball preparations and in dyspedic myotubes expressing $_{MH}$RyR1 cDNAs, all of which have been shown to have chronically elevated resting cytoplasmic $[Ca^{2+}]_i$.[53,60,75]

Results from both functional and structural evidence suggests that long-range interdomain interactions between regions of RyR1 are involved in channel regulation by stabilizing protein conformations critical for normal channel transitions.[76] A three-dimensional reconstruction of RyR1 by Samso and coworkers shows that the RyR1 architecture is designed to support long-range allosteric pathways such as coupling with $Ca_V1.1$ and binding to ligands such as calmodulin and FKBP12.[77] This structural model for gating has been recently confirmed at molecular scale resolution by several laboratories.[78]

VOLTAGE-GATED CALCIUM CHANNELS: ROLE OF $CA_V1.1$

Although the majority of mutations that confer MHS reside in the RyR1 gene, three mutations in the *CACNA1S* gene encoding for the $Ca_V1.1$ subunit of skeletal muscle have been linked to human MHS.[5,79-81] The Arg1086His mutation in the intracellular loop connecting homologous repeats III and IV of $Ca_V1.1$ represented the first MH-causing mutation so far identified in a protein other than RyR1. Physiological characterization of the R1086H mutation further demonstrated that sensitivity of RyR1 activity was significantly enhanced by membrane depolarization or by pharmacologic activators of RyR1 (e.g., caffeine).[82] In addition, Pirone and associates have identified an MHS-causing Thr1354Ser mutation in the S5-S6 extracellular pore-loop region of the homologous repeat IV of $Ca_V1.1$ Expression of the T1354S mutation also accelerated L-type Ca^{2+} current kinetics and also contributed to an increase in RyR1-mediated Ca^{2+} release.[81] The Arg174Trp $Ca_V1.1$ MH mutation occurs at the innermost basic residue of the IS4 voltage-sensing helix, a residue conserved among all Ca_V channels. Unlike the other $Ca_V1.1$ MHS mutations, homozygous expression of R174W completely ablates the L-type current, but despite this, has no influence on normal EC coupling. In murine studies, muscle fibers from Het R174W animals verify the increased sensitivity of Ca^{2+} release to caffeine and halothane compared with myotubes expressing wild type $Ca_V1.1$,[54,83] but whether this mutation is sufficient to confer anesthetic- or heat-triggered fulminant MH remains to be tested.

FACTORS OTHER THAN RYANODINE RECEPTOR ABNORMALITIES

Other cellular processes can affect MH episodes. It has been demonstrated that concurrent administration of nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs at the same time as triggering agents can delay or prevent the onset of clinical MH syndrome. Pretreatment of MHS pigs with sufficient nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agent, which is used to completely abolish muscle twitch elicited by electrical stimulation of the nerve, prevented halothane from triggering the clinical syndrome for 90 minutes, the longest time point tested.[84] However, in the continued presence of halothane, when function of the neuromuscular junction was restored by administration of the cholinesterase inhibitor neostigmine, clinical MH was triggered immediately. This suggested a close relationship between functional neuromuscular junctions or depolarization of the sarcolemma (or both) and the clinical syndrome.

In myotubes, sarcolemmal excitation-coupled Ca^{2+} entry (ECCE) is sensitive to the conformation of the RyR1 and is enhanced by several mutations in RyR1, including MH mutations.[44,52,85] ECCE appears to be an inherent property of $Ca_V1.1$ during long or repetitive depolarization of myotubes,[86] possibly mediated by shifting $Ca_V1.1$ to the mode 2 gating conformation. Nevertheless, enhanced ECCE in MHS muscle may contribute to an increased sensitivity to depolarization and appears to be one target for dantrolene's abrogation of responses to both electrical and potassium chloride depolarization.[51] Although CACNA1S expression undergoes developmental switching to a splice variant that downregulates Ca^{2+} current density of $Ca_V1.1$ channels in adult fibers, mutations that maintain Ca^{2+} current density more similar to those measured with embryonic myotubes has recently been shown to promote muscle pathology.[87]

In addition to ECCE, classic store-operated capacitive Ca^{2+} entry pathways similar to the store-operated Ca^{2+} entry (SOCE) seen in nonexcitable cells[88] have been shown to be present in skeletal muscle[89-91] and appear to be more active in MHS muscles both at rest as a response to chronic store depletion and during an MH crisis. These SOCE channels have also been suggested to be a target for dantrolene, but this has not been validated by other studies.[92] Together, these data suggest that $_{MH}$RyRs or $_{MH}Ca_V1.1$ assume a conformation that enhances Ca^{2+} entry via ECCE or SOCE (or both). This enhanced entry, when combined with decreased sensitivity of $_{MH}$RyRs to Ca^{2+} and Mg^{2+} inhibition, could provide cellular conditions that heighten sensitivity to triggering agents and perpetuate the fulminant clinical MH syndrome.

DANTROLENE

Dantrolene is the only medication that has been shown to be effective in reversing the symptoms of MH. Preadministration of dantrolene will also prevent the development of fulminant MH in homozygous pigs or MH mice when exposed to a triggering stimulus. Dantrolene sodium is a hydantoin derivative (1-[5-(4-nitrophenyl)-2-furanyl]methylene] imino]-2,4-imidazolidinedione) that does not block neuromuscular transmission, but causes muscle weakness by direct muscular action. The properties of dantrolene have been closely correlated with its ability to reduce efflux of Ca^{2+} from the SR in vitro.[93] Dantrolene (20 μM) counteracts the effect of reduced Mg^{2+} inhibition in MH-affected muscle.[94] Dantrolene (20 μM) can inhibit the enhanced sensitivity to caffeine seen in MH muscles, and both dantrolene and its more water-soluble analog azumolene (150 μM) have been shown to reduce depolarization-induced release of Ca^{2+}, both in muscle and in triadic vesicles.[95] The idea that dantrolene suppresses SR Ca^{2+} release as a result of direct interactions with RyR1 is somewhat controversial. Paul-Pletzer and associates demonstrated that [^{3}H]azidodantrolene specifically labels the amino terminus of RyR1 defined by the 1400-amino acid residue N-terminal calpain digestion fragment of RyR1.[96] More detailed analysis further localized the [^{3}H]azidodantrolene binding site to a single domain containing the core sequence corresponding to amino acid residues 590 through 609 of RyR1.[96] However, to date, we lack evidence of a direct action of dantrolene on single RyR1 channels studied in lipid bilayers, even though they are reconstituted with calstabin 1, ATP, and activating concentrations of Ca^{2+}, which suggests that dantrolene's main action is to alter key protein-protein interactions. The recent discovery that inhibition of SR Ca^{2+} release by dantrolene requires Mg^{2+} may help resolve the controversy of the conflicting observations on dantrolene inhibition of RyR1 channel activity in Mg^{2+}-free bilayer experiments.[27]

Genetics

RyR1 mutations have been found in 50% to 80% of patients and relatives who are labeled MHS by positive contracture tests and in almost all families with central core disease (CCD) and King-Denborough syndrome (KDS). More than 210 missense mutations and 8 deletions associated with MH have thus far been detected. Another 29 missense mutations are associated with CCD and multiminicore disease (MmD) in patients with unknown MH testing status.[10] Interestingly, 40% of missense *RyR1* mutations occur at CpG dinucleotide sequences. Five other loci (17q21-24, 1q32, 3q13, 7q21-24, and 5p) have been linked to families with both positive contracture tests and an unusual response to anesthesia, and have been designated MHS loci 2 through 6, respectively. However, of these five, the only gene that has been shown to be associated with MH is *CACNA1S*,[97] which codes for Ca$_V$1.1 (the α_{1S}-subunit of DHPR) in the MHS3 locus. Two causative mutations in this gene are linked to less than 1% of MHS families worldwide. In some of the other loci, all genes within the locus have been ruled out as causing susceptibility to MH. Hence for practical reasons, the *RyR1* gene remains the primary target for current clinical genetic analysis.

DISTRIBUTION OF *RyR1* MUTATIONS

The missense mutations associated with MHS, CCD, or, in some cases, both, are dispersed throughout the coding region of the *RyR1* gene, and all allow transcription of a protein that is putatively functional.[10,98] Until recently, it was thought that most *RyR1* mutations were clustered in three "hot spots:" between amino acid residues 35 and 614 (MH/CCD region 1), between amino acid residues 2163 and 2458 (MH/CCD region 2) in the sarcoplasmic foot region of the protein, and between amino acids 4643 and 4898 in the carboxyl-terminal transmembrane loop or pore region (MHS/CCD region 3) (Fig. 35.2).[99] It appears that the supposition that there were "hot spots" was simply due to bias in sample analysis inasmuch as the missense mutations associated with MH or CCD (or both) are scattered over 54 of the 107 exons of *RyR1*. Approximately 41% of reported MH

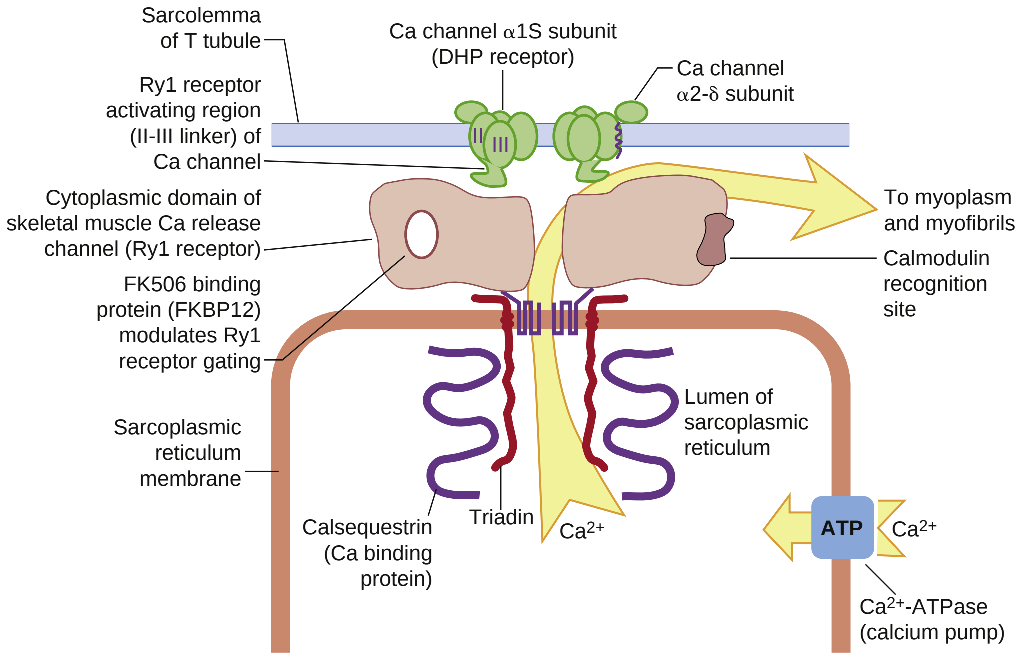

Sarcolemma of T tubule
Ca channel α1S subunit (DHP receptor)
Ca channel α2-δ subunit
Ry1 receptor activating region (II-III linker) of Ca channel
II
III
Cytoplasmic domain of skeletal muscle Ca release channel (Ry1 receptor)
To myoplasm and myofibrils
Calmodulin recognition site
FK506 binding protein (FKBP12) modulates Ry1 receptor gating
Lumen of sarcoplasmic reticulum
Sarcoplasmic reticulum membrane
Calsequestrin (Ca binding protein)
Triadin
Ca2+
ATP
Ca2+
Ca2+-ATPase (calcium pump)

Fig. 35.2 Schematic representation of the triad junction of skeletal muscle shows the junctional foot protein (ryanodine [RyR1] receptor) and its associated proteins. In skeletal muscle, the α_{1S}-subunit of the dihydropyridine receptor *(DHPR)* participates in excitation-contraction coupling. These physical links transmit essential signals across the narrow gap of the triadic junction that activate the RyR1 and release Ca^{2+} from the sarcoplasmic reticulum. (Modified from Pessah IN, Lynch C III, Gronert GA: Complex pharmacology of malignant hyperthermia. *Anesthesiology* 1996;84:1275.)

mutations are found in multiple families. CCD mutations are predominantly found in the C-terminal region of the gene (exons 85-103), and only 10 mutations (17%) have been described in more than one family: R4861H ($n = 14$), V4849I ($n = 9$), I4898T ($n = 7$), L4824P ($n = 4$), A4940T ($n = 4$), G4638D ($n = 3$), R4893W ($n = 3$), R4861C ($n = 2$), R4893Q ($n = 2$), and G4899E ($n = 2$).

The true ethnic distribution of MH and CCD is difficult to ascertain. MH and CCD have been reported in Western populations predominantly, but this is likely the result of the manner and frequency in which cases are reported. It does appear that some mutations are clustered in a given region of the world, but the distribution and frequency appear to be somewhat population specific. In the United Kingdom, 69 *RyR1* mutations have been discovered, 25 of which are found only in a single family. G2434R is found in approximately 40% of the 434 mutation-positive MH families investigated in the United Kingdom, with the next most common mutations being T2206M (10%) and G341R (8%). In Switzerland, V2168M and I2336H are the predominant mutations,[100] and in Germany, R163C (MH and CCD), R614C (MH), T2206M (MH), G2434R (MH), and R2454H (MH) have each been detected in five or more independent cases.[101,102] G341R and R614C are common in France,[103] and R614C has also been found in several MH families from Italy[103] and Canada.[104] G341R has been found frequently in Belgium.[103] The mutation common to Europe and North America is G2434R, which occurs in 4% to 7% of European and 5.5% of North American families.[105] Single-family mutations are the most common mutations reported in Japanese, Chinese, Taiwanese, Australian, and New Zealand MH families with the exception of the R163C mutation reported in a large population in rural New South Wales in Australia and the T4826I mutation which is found in numerous families in the Maori population of New Zealand.[106-108] However, despite these two exceptions, it is likely that the reason for unique family mutations in Asia and Australasia may reflect the small number of cases investigated there. Because genetic screening in European and North American studies has predominantly targeted only regions 1 and 2 of the original hot spots in the gene, the absence of *RyR1* mutations in some of the screened population could be explained by *RyR1* mutations located outside these two regions or by involvement of other genes.

INHERITANCE AND PENETRANCE OF MALIGNANT HYPERTHERMIA

Inheritance of human MH can no longer be considered to be solely autosomal dominant with variable penetrance because more than one MH-linked mutation has been identified in some probands and families. Six non-consanguineous families harbor at least two *RyR1* mutations that have both been linked to MHS, and in two of those families, one is an *RyR1* mutation and the second is a $Ca_V1.1$ mutation.[5] Although MHS homozygotes are common in affected pigs, they are rare in humans and only found in 50% of currently available transgenic mouse populations. The known MHS homozygous humans also appear clinically normal, but exhibit stronger responses to in vitro contracture test (IVCT) and caffeine/halothane contracture tests (CHCTs) than heterozygous individuals do.[109-112] Homozygosity of two MH mutations in "hot spot" 1 leads to perinatal lethality in mice.[73,74] Double heterozygous individuals do not appear to show any additive effect of the second mutation on IVCT.[5]

IN VITRO CONTRACTURE TEST AND CAFFEINE HALOTHANE CONTRACTURE TEST

The gold standard for diagnosis of MH is the halothane and caffeine muscle contracture test, also known as the IVCT or the CHCT. There are two protocols developed by the European Malignant Hyperthermia Group (EMHG) and the North American Malignant Hyperthermia Group (NAMHG), respectively.[9] The two protocols are similar, but not identical. For the purpose of differentiation, we designate IVCT to the EMHG protocol and CHCT to the NAMHG protocol.

For IVCT, the muscle biopsy will be performed on the quadriceps (either vastus medialis or vastus lateralis)[113,114] and consists of three parts: a static caffeine test, a static halothane test, and a dynamic halothane test.[114] For the static caffeine test, a stepwise increased concentration (0.5, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 32 mmol/L) is applied. The lowest concentration of caffeine which produces a sustained increase of at least 0.2 g in baseline tension is reported as the caffeine threshold. Then, the halothane threshold is obtained using the same method by exposing the muscle to halothane concentrations of 0.5%, 1%, 2%, and 3% v/v. The dynamic halothane test is performed with the muscle stretched at a constant rate of 4 mm/min to achieve a force of approximately 3 g and held at the new length for 1 min for a 3 min exposure to halothane. For each cycle, halothane concentration will be increased from 0.5%, 1%, 2%, to 3% v/v: volume (solute) per volume (solvent). The concentration of halothane which produces a sustained increase of at least 0.2 g in the muscle tension compared to the pre-halothane control is defined as the dynamic halothane threshold.[114] The IVCT protocol classifies the patients into three groups: MH Susceptible (MHS_{HC}) group with a caffeine threshold at the caffeine concentration of 2 mmol or less and a halothane threshold of 2% v/v halothane or less; MH Normal (MHN) group with a caffeine threshold at the caffeine concentration of 3 mmol or more without a halothane response at 2% v/v; MHS_H and MHS_C groups which describe individuals that used to be classified as MHE (equivocal) who are only responsive to either halothane or caffeine alone.[113,114] The MHE descriptor was dropped because use of the 'equivocal' label outside of its laboratory context has the potential to confuse patients and clinicians unfamiliar with its derivation.[115]

For CHCT, a muscle biopsy can be taken from the following sites in the order of preference: (1) the vastus group, (2) the rectus abdominis, and (3) other muscle groups under special circumstances.[116] Required tests include exposure of muscle to 3% v/v halothane alone and to incremental caffeine concentrations (0.5, 1, 2, 4 mmol, and 8.0 mmol if the response at 4 mmol is <1 g, and 32 mmol) alone. Optional tests include exposure of muscle to a combination of both 1% halothane and incremental caffeine concentrations, and to 2% v/v halothane alone.[116] According to CHCT protocol, an individual is MHS when either of the halothane or the caffeine test is positive, and MHN when both tests are negative.[116]

The sensitivity of IVCT was reported to be 99.0% (95% confidence interval [CI] 94.8%-100%) if the MHE group is considered susceptible and the specificity of IVCT was 93.6% (95% CI 89.2%-96.5%),[114] while the sensitivity and specificity of CHCT was 97% (95% CI 84%-100%) and 78% (95% CI 69%-85%), respectively.[117] Recently, fluoroquinolones and statins, 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A (HMG-CoA) reductase inhibitors, were found to induce significant contractures in MHS muscle bundles, but not in MHN.[118,119] Ondansetron and 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA) may also dose-dependently induce contracture or increase the sensitivity of the contractile apparatus to calcium in both MHS and MHN fibers.[120,121] Modifications to the IVCT protocol by adding ryanodine[122] or 4-chloro-*m*-cresol,[114,123] a RyR-specific agonist, has been reported, but has not been included in the standard protocol. Furthermore, Metterlein and associates studied the possibility of replacing halothane with newer volatile agents in IVCT. At increasing concentration, except for sevoflurane, all newer volatile agents, including enflurane, isoflurane, and desflurane, induced significantly greater contractures in MHS muscle compared to MHN bundles. However, within the MHS muscle bundles, halothane produced significantly higher contractures, and was considered the strongest discriminator for MH using the IVCT protocol.[124] A direct application of high sevoflurane concentration of 8%, instead of the stepwise application, has been shown to induce significantly stronger contractures in MHS subjects.[125] Nevertheless, from the retrospective analysis of the Japanese MH database, there was no evidence between the severity of MH triggered by sevoflurane and isoflurane, or other agents, suggesting sevoflurane is a weak or weaker MH triggering agent.[126]

DISCORDANCE BETWEEN GENETIC AND IN VITRO CONTRACTURE TEST/CAFFEINE/HALOTHANE CONTRACTURE TESTS MALIGNANT HYPERTHERMIA TESTING

Discordance has confounded linkage analysis worldwide. Examples include MHN patients carrying an *RyR1* mutation associated with MH and MHS patients who do not carry the familial *RyR1* mutation. Several explanations are possible, the most likely being that IVCT/CHCT is not clinically precise and that the thresholds for IVCT or CHCT are inexact. This would lead to errors in determining whether a patient was MHN or MHS. A second possibility is variable penetrance with possible allelic silencing,[127] and a third is that individuals with discordance have mutations in other unknown genes or modifier genes that affect the function of *RyR1* and its phenotypic penetrance. The discrepancy between the incidence estimates of MH events and the prevalence estimates also points to possible epigenetic factors at work. Carpenter and associates have suggested that the severity of MHS may be related to the *RyR1* variant and mutation found within the highly conserved regions of *RyR1* gene.[79] The rarity of large kindreds with MH makes linkage analysis and understanding variability in clinical manifestations difficult. Robinson and associates demonstrated by the transmission disequilibrium test that loci on chromosomes 5 and 7 and, to a lesser extent, loci on chromosomes 1 and 7 influence susceptibility to MH.[103]

GUIDELINES FOR GENETIC SCREENING

In 2000, the European MH group (EMHG) formulated guidelines for *RyR1* mutation screening with linkage data to other loci for some MH families, but all MH investigators emphasized the vital role of IVCT in the diagnosis of MH.[128] These guidelines for screening have reduced the number of relatives requiring contracture testing without increasing the risk of misdiagnosis.[129,130] In 2015, the EMHG published a revision of the guidelines for the investigation of MHS. This updated guideline provided a detailed patient referral criteria and clinical interpretation of IVCT results (https://www.emhg.org/testing-for-mh-1).

Only a small number of MHS families have been investigated extensively in North America by phenotyping, linkage analysis, and screening of specific genes. Collaborative protocols over the past several years between MH biopsy centers and molecular biologists have screened 209 unrelated MHS subjects for mutations in the *RyR1* gene (see Distribution of *RyR1* Mutations).

Larach and coworkers reported a 34.8% morbidity rate in 181 MH cases reported to the NAMHR between January 1987 and December 2006. They also reported that the occurrence was more frequent in young males (75%) (median age of 22.0) and 75% of these patients had undergone at least one general anesthetic with no observed signs of MHS.[131] This underscores the complication of determining the prevalence of MHS in the absence of an inexpensive MH diagnostic test.

Fulminant Malignant Hyperthermia

Fulminant MH is rare. Acute episodes of MH depend on four variables: a genetic (perhaps rarely acquired) predisposition, the absence of inhibiting factors, the presence of an anesthetic or nonanesthetic trigger, and the presence of environmental factors that could potentiate the action of one or more of the other three variables.

ANESTHETIC TRIGGERING

Anesthetic drugs that trigger MH include ether, halothane, enflurane, isoflurane, desflurane, sevoflurane, and depolarizing muscle relaxants, the only currently used of which is succinylcholine. Desflurane and sevoflurane appear to be less potent triggers than halothane and produce a more gradual onset of MH.[132,133] The onset may be explosive if succinylcholine is used. MHS swine were traditionally screened by induction with a volatile anesthetic, which led to pronounced hind limb rigidity within 5 minutes, frequently sooner.[134] Prior exercise even an hour before induction of anesthesia increased the severity and hastened the onset of rigidity in swine.[134] Similarly, in the new knock-in mouse models, the onset of limb rigidity after commencing exposure to volatile anesthetics is very rapid. There are also several modifying factors that are more likely to be present in humans than in pigs or mice and can alter (or even prevent) the onset of clinical MH. Mild hypothermia and preadministration of barbiturates, tranquilizers, propofol, or nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers delay or prevent the onset of MH[25,134-136] in MHS humans, thus making them respond less predictably than swine or MH knock-in mice. There have been many instances in which fulminant MH has been reported in patients who have previously tolerated potent triggers without difficulty.[137] The reason behind why this occurs is unknown, but it is likely to be related to prior or concurrent administration of drugs that prevent or delay onset of the syndrome, as described earlier, or unknown environmental influences that help provoke the positive incident. Thus onset of the syndrome in humans is extremely variable both in initial symptoms and in the time of onset of the syndrome. Its onset is so variable that making the diagnosis in the setting of a clinical anesthetic can be quite difficult. Although not perfect, the clinical grading scale developed by Larach and colleagues[138] is a useful way for clinicians to retrospectively determine whether a patient who responded abnormally to anesthesia is in any way likely to actually have had a clinical MH episode. However, MH is most easily diagnosed prospectively by vigilance, recognizing its signs and symptoms, and knowing how to treat the syndrome.

The two classic clinical manifestations of fulminant MH syndrome may start in one of the following two scenarios.

1. Rigidity after induction with thiopental and succinylcholine, but successful intubation, followed rapidly by the symptoms listed after scenario 2.
2. Normal response to induction of anesthesia and uneventful anesthetic course until onset of the following symptoms:

- Unexplained sinus tachycardia or ventricular arrhythmias, or both
- Tachypnea if spontaneous ventilation is present
- Unexplained decrease in O_2 saturation (because of a decrease in venous O_2 saturation)
- Increased end-tidal PCO_2 with adequate ventilation (and in most cases unchanged ventilation)
- Unexpected metabolic and respiratory acidosis
- Central venous desaturation
- Increase in body temperature above 38.8°C with no obvious cause

The usually muted onset of MH (scenario 2) is in most cases detected quickly by the development of tachycardia, increased levels of expired CO_2, and muscle rigidity. It can be delayed for several reasons and may not be overt until the patient is in the recovery room. Once initiated, the course of MH can be rapid. When clinical signs such as increased expired CO_2, muscle rigidity, tachycardia, and fever suggest MH, more than one abnormal sign must be observed before making the diagnosis because according to a metaanalysis of many reported cases, a single adverse sign does not usually indicate MH.[138] The mechanism by which anesthetics and depolarizing muscle relaxants trigger MH is unsolved, *but* it cannot be ignored that they are etiologic agents and that early diagnosis is critical for successful treatment.

NONANESTHETIC MALIGNANT HYPERTHERMIA

MH can be triggered by stress such as exercise and overheating, known as “awake” MH. Numerous anecdotal reports of MH-like episodes in humans after stressful situations were reported.[139-144] Measurement of plasma catecholamine levels during exercise showed no differences between MHS and normal individuals.[145,146] Therefore it is unlikely that these responses were provoked by sympathetic overdrive or catecholamine surge.[147]

Wappler and associates reported *RyR1* mutations in three of twelve unrelated patients with exercise-induced rhabdomyolysis (ER); and 10 of those same 12 patients produced abnormal contracture response with IVCT.[148] One had an equivocal response. In susceptible swine, environmental stress such as exercise, heat, anoxia, apprehension, and excitement triggers fulminant MH (see History).[9,134] These responses are related to muscle movement or to increased temperature. Increased ambient temperature triggers fulminant MH in four strains of heterozygous MH mice and in two homozygous strains.[74,75] Epidemiologic studies have shown that exercise-induced symptoms, including rhabdomyolysis, may occur more frequently in MHS patients[148]; and an Arg401Cys *RyR1* mutation was present in three cases of exercise-induced rhabdomyolysis.[106] Other reports are largely anecdotal and relate heat stroke, sudden and unexpected death, unusual stress and fatigue, or myalgias to possible “awake” MH episodes. Stresses associated with these episodes include exercise and environmental exposure to volatile nonanesthetic vapors.[141,149,150] In the United States, MHAUS provided recommendations of adverse effects of heat and exercise in relation to MHS.[151]

Malignant Hyperthermia–Associated Syndromes

MASSETER SPASM (“THIOPENTAL-SUCCINYLCHOLINE OR HALOTHANE-SUCCINYLCHOLINE RIGIDITY”)

A masseter spasm or trismus is defined as jaw muscle rigidity in association with limb muscle flaccidity after the administration of succinylcholine. The masseter and lateral pterygoid muscles contain slow tonic fibers that can respond to depolarizing neuromuscular blockers with a contracture.[152,153] This is manifested clinically on exposure to succinylcholine as an increase in jaw muscle tone, and was well defined by van der Spek and associates.[154] There is a spectrum of responses, for example, a tight jaw that becomes a rigid jaw and then a very rigid jaw (Fig. 35.3). This jaw rigidity may occur even after pretreatment with a “defasciculating” dose of a nondepolarizing relaxant. If there is rigidity of other muscles in addition to trismus, the association with MH is absolute; anesthesia should be halted as soon as possible and treatment of MH begun.

However, in more than 80% of patients with trismus but no rigidity of other muscles, it is a variant found in normal patients. If trismus occurs, proper monitoring should include end-expired CO_2, examination for pigmenturia, and arterial or venous blood sampling for CK, acid-base status, and electrolyte levels, particularly potassium. Although scientifically unproven, it is thought that the initial tightness of the jaw and its duration may predict the gravity of the response. MHAUS recommends following CK and urine myoglobin for 36 hours with 6-hour intervals. Patients with masseter spasm should be observed closely for at least 12 hours.

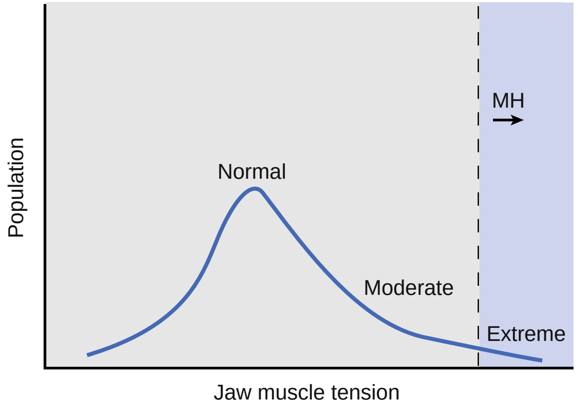


Fig. 35.3 Succinylcholine usually increases jaw muscle tone slightly. In some patients this increase is moderate, and in very few, the effect is extreme (i.e., "jaws of steel"). As many as 50% of this latter group may be susceptible to malignant hyperthermia *(MH)*. Somewhere in the area of the declining curve is the boundary for the MH population.

CORE MYOPATHIES

CCD is a rare hereditary disease. It was first reported in 1956 by Magee and Shy.[155] A recent population study in northern England revealed a prevalence of 1:250,000.[156] In 1971, Engel and colleagues reported a related congenital myopathy, multicore disease.[157,158] Subsequently, various designations of the terms were reported for the variations of the disease, including minicore myopathy and multiminicore myopathy.[157] MmD is now the most official term for these variations sponsored by the European Neuromuscular Centre.[157]

As mentioned, most CCD cases are due to dominant missense mutations in the RyR1 gene. Clinically, CCD patients present with muscle weakness of variable degree and histologically with central cores in the skeleton muscle type I fibers.[159] MmD is considered a recessively inherited myopathy with severe axial weakness, while respirator, bulbar, and extraocular muscles are commonly affected.[159] MmD has a heterogenous genetic association with a recessive mutation in the SEPN1 gene on chromosome 1p36 and in the RyR1 gene.[159] Both type 1 and type 2 fibers may be affected.[157]

Serum CK levels in CCD patients are often normal but may be elevated up to 6 to 14 times in rare cases. Muscle ultrasound often demonstrates increased echogenicity in the quadriceps muscle with relative sparing of the rectus muscle. This characteristic pattern of selective involvement can also be seen on the muscle MRI and has been reported in the patients with typical CCD,[157] which seems to be distinctive to conditions linked to *RyR1* locus.

The relationship between CCD and MHS is complex. A positive IVCT test has been confirmed in many patients with CCD, whereas MHS has been excluded in some. In consideration of the strong link and potential risk, it is advisable to consider all patients with CCD at risk for MH unless the patient has a negative IVCT. Although MHS has not been reported in *SEPN1*-related myopathies, it is prudent to apply a nontriggering approach to MmD patients, given the potential risk in *RyR1*-related MmD. Clinical MH reactions have been reported in MmD patients.[160,161]

KING-DENBOROUGH SYNDROME

To address the KDS, we first introduce Noonan syndrome, an autosomal dominant condition involving the face, cardiovascular, hematological, and skeletal systems. Named after Dr. Jacquline Anne Noonan, a pediatric cardiologist, typical Noonan syndrome features delayed puberty, down-slanting or wide-set eyes, hearing loss, low-set or abnormal shaped ears, mild mental retardation (in about 25% of the cases), ptosis, short statue, small penis and undescended testicles in males, pectus excavatum, and a webbed and short neck. The incidence is 1:1000-1:2500 live births.[162] Fifty percent of the patients have protein-tyrosine phosphatase, nonreceptor-type II (*PTPN2*) mutations.[163] Other genes involved are *SOS1*, *KRAS*, *RAF1*, *BRAF*, *MEK1*, and *NRAS*, and they encode proteins that are part of the Ras (a GTPase)-mitogen activated protein kinase (RAS-MAPK) signaling pathway.[164] Noonan syndrome was recently defined as part of the neuro-cardio-facial-cutaneous syndrome family.[165] An earlier study with a series of 27 patients demonstrated one case of mildly elevated CK despite multiple uneventful cases of general anesthesia with halothane and succinylcholine.[166] Although there is weak evidence for MHS for patients with Noonan syndrome, its resemblances to KDS should raise the concern for the confirmation of the diagnosis. Prevalence of bleeding disorders in Noonan syndrome was reported to be from 20% to 89%,[164] ranging from thrombocytopenia to platelet dysfunction to von Willebrand disease to factor deficiencies. Routine screening including, but not limited to, bleeding history, platelet count, coagulation panel, and factor XI level, was recommended.[165,167] Hematological consultation becomes appropriate if any of these tests are abnormal. The high palatal arch, dental malocclusion, and the webbed neck of Noonan syndrome make tracheal intubation potentially risky.[168] Nevertheless, odontoid hypoplasia and atlanto-axial instability may result in cervical cord compression. Preoperative cervical spine evaluation is advisable.[169] Right ventricular function needs to be monitored closely because 30% to 50% of the patients with Noonan syndrome have pulmonary stenosis.[170] Regional anesthesia in Noonan patients may be technically challenging due to the prevalence of scoliosis. The spread of local anesthetic can be unpredictable.[169,171]

KDS features the dysmorphic facial and skeletal abnormalities similar to Noonan syndrome and congenital myopathy with proximal muscle weakness.[163] Sporadic cases have been reported in the literature.[172-181] The inheritance pattern of the disease is not clear. Elevated baseline CK appears in approximately one half of the KDS patients. A heterozygous A97G point mutation in exon 2 of the *RyR1*, causing a substitution of lysine for glutamine at amino acid residue 33 (Lys33Glu), was reported.[182] This substitution creates a major polarity change, from positive to negative, in a known hot spot for an MH causative mutation. Dowling and associates recently identified *RyR1* mutation in three out of the four patients with KDS, which supports the hypothesis of its genetic heterogeneity.[183] Given the strong evidence for MHS in KDS patients, MH triggering agents should be avoided for anesthesia on KDS patients.

BOX 35.1 Clinical Signs of Malignant Hyperthermia

Early Signs

Elevated end-tidal CO_2
Tachypnea and/or tachycardia
Masseter spasm if succinylcholine has been used
Generalized muscle rigidity
Mixed metabolic and respiratory acidosis
Profuse sweating
Mottling of skin
Cardiac arrhythmias
Unstable blood pressure

Late Signs

Hyperkalemia
Rapid increase of core body temperature
Elevated creatine phosphokinase levels
Gross myoglobinemia and myoglobinuria
Cardiac arrest
Disseminated intravascular coagulation

Diagnosis in the Operating Room and Postanesthesia Care Unit

As stated earlier, fulminant MH is rare, and early signs of clinical MH may be subtle (Box 35.1). These signs must be distinguished from other disorders with similar signs (Box 35.2).

When the diagnosis is obvious (i.e., fulminant MH or succinylcholine-induced rigidity with rapid metabolic changes), marked hypermetabolism and heat production occur, and there may be little time left for specific therapy to prevent death or irreversible morbidity. If the syndrome begins with slowly increasing end-tidal CO_2 (defined earlier), specific therapy can await a complete clinical workup before treatment. In general, MH is not expected to occur when no triggers are administered (see "Anesthesia for Susceptible Patients"). However, several confirmed fulminant nonanesthetic cases of MH that resulted in death have been reported (see "Nonanesthetic Malignant Hyperthermia").[148]

When volatile anesthetics or succinylcholine are used, MH should be suspected whenever there is an unexpected increase in end-tidal CO_2 ($ETCO_2$), undue tachycardia, tachypnea, arrhythmias, mottling of the skin, cyanosis, muscle rigidity, sweating, increased body temperature, or unstable blood pressure. If any of these occur, signs of increased metabolism, acidosis, or hyperkalemia must be sought. The most common cause for sudden $ETCO_2$ during general anesthesia and sedation is hypoventilation. Increased minute ventilation should be able to correct such a problem.

The diagnosis of MH can be supported by the analysis of arterial or venous blood gases which demonstrates a mixed respiratory and metabolic acidosis;[184] however, the respiratory component of acidosis may be predominate in the very early stage of the onset of fulminant MH. O_2 and CO_2 change more markedly in the central venous compartment than in arterial blood; therefore end-expired or venous CO_2 levels more accurately reflect whole-body stores. Venous CO_2, unless the blood drains an area of increased metabolic activity, should have PCO_2 levels of only about 5 mm Hg greater than that of expected or measured $PaCO_2$. In small children, particularly those without oral food or fluid for a prolonged period, the base deficit may be 5 mEq/L because of their smaller energy stores.

Any patient suspected of having an MH episode should be reported to the North American MH Registry via the adverse metabolic/muscular reaction to anesthesia (AMRA) report available from the website at http://anest.ufl.edu/namhr/namhr-report-forms/.

BOX 35.2 Conditions and Disorders that May Mimic Malignant Hyperthermia

Anaphylactic reaction
Alcohol therapy for limb arteriovenous malformation
Contrast dye injection
Cystinosis
Diabetic coma
Drug toxicity or abuse
Elevated end-tidal CO_2 due to laparoscopic operation
Environmental heat gain more than loss
Equipment malfunction with increased carbon dioxide
Exercise hyperthermia
Freeman-Sheldon syndrome
Generalized muscle rigidity
Heat stroke
Hyperthyroidism
Hyperkalemia
Hypokalemic periodic paralysis
Hypoventilation or low fresh gas flow
Increased $ETCO_2$ from laparoscopic surgery
Insufficient anesthesia and/or analgesia
Malignant neuroleptic syndrome
Muscular dystrophies (Duchenne and Becker)
Myoglobinuria
Myotonias
Osteogenesis imperfecta
Pheochromocytoma
Prader-Willi syndrome
Recreational drugs
Rhabdomyolysis
Sepsis
Serotonin syndrome
Stroke
Thyroid crisis
Ventilation problems
Wolf-Hirschhorn syndrome

TREATMENT

Acute management for MH can be summarized as follows:

1. Discontinue all triggering anesthetics, maintain intravenous agents, such as sedatives, opioids, and nondepolarizing muscular blockers as needed, and hyperventilate with 100% oxygen with a fresh flow to at least 10 L/min. With increased aerobic metabolism, normal ventilation must increase. However, CO_2 production is also increased because of neutralization of fixed acid by bicarbonate; hyperventilation removes this additional CO_2.
2. Administer dantrolene rapidly (2.5 mg/kg intravenously [IV] to a total dose of 10 mg/kg IV) every 5 to 10 minutes until the initial symptoms subside.

3. Administer bicarbonate (1-4 mEq/kg IV) to correct the metabolic acidosis with frequent monitoring of blood gases and pH.
4. Control fever by administering iced fluids, cooling the body surface, cooling body cavities with sterile iced fluids, and if necessary, using a heat exchanger with a pump oxygenator. Cooling should be halted at 38°C to prevent inadvertent hypothermia.
5. Monitor and treat arrhythmia. Advanced cardiac life support protocol may be applied.
6. Monitor and maintain urinary output to greater than 1 to 2 mL/kg/h and establish diuresis if urine output is inadequate. Administer bicarbonate to alkalinize urine to protect the kidney from myoglobinuria-induced renal failure.
7. Further therapy is guided by blood gases, electrolytes, CK, temperature, muscle tone, and urinary output. Hyperkalemia should be treated with bicarbonate, glucose, and insulin, typically 10 units of regular insulin and 50 mL of 50% dextrose for adult patients. The most effective way to lower serum potassium is reversal of MH by effective doses (ED) of dantrolene. In severe cases, calcium chloride or calcium gluconate may be used.
8. Recent data demonstrated that magnesium level could be a prerequisite for dantrolene efficacy in managing MH crisis.
9. Analyze coagulation studies (e.g., international normalized ratio [INR], platelet count, prothrombin time, fibrinogen, fibrin split, or degradation products).
10. Once the initial reaction is controlled, continued monitoring in the intensive care unit for 24 to 48 hours is usually recommended.

Adequate personnel support is critical to the successful management of such a crisis. Discontinuation of the trigger may be adequate therapy for acute MH if the onset is slow or if exposure was brief. Changing the breathing circuit and CO_2 absorbent can be time-consuming. However, application of activated charcoal filters may rapidly reduce the volatile anesthetic concentration to an acceptable level in less than2 minutes, if they are readily available.[185]

Dantrolene used to be packaged in 20-mg bottles with sodium hydroxide for a pH of 9.5 (otherwise it will not dissolve) and with 3 g of mannitol (converts the hypotonic solution to isotonic). The initial dose should be 2.5 mg/kg dantrolene reconstituted in sterile water and administered intravenously. Dantrolene *must* be reconstituted in sterile water rather than salt solutions or it will precipitate. It has been shown that prewarming of sterile water may expedite the solubilization of dantrolene compared to water in ambient temperature.[186] In 2009, a newer, rapid soluble lyophilized powder form of dantrolene became available for intravenous use. It reconstitutes in less than a minute which is much faster than the older version.[187] The higher dosing capacity, 250 mg per vial, of the newer version of dantrolene also reduces the storage space with a similar recommended shelf life as the older versions.

In awake, healthy volunteers, the maximum twitch depression occurs at a dantrolene dose of 2.4 mg/kg.[188] Therefore it is not surprising that at therapeutic concentrations, dantrolene may prolong the need for intubation and assisted ventilation. Brandom and associates reviewed the complications associated with the administration of dantrolene from 1987 to 2006 using the dataset in the NAMHR via the AMRA reports and found that the most frequent complications of dantrolene were muscle weakness (21.7%), phlebitis (9%), gastrointestinal upset (4.1%), respiratory failure (3.8%), hyperkalemia (3.3%), and excessive secretions (8.2%).[189] Given its high pH, it is advisable to administer dantrolene through a large bore IV line. It has been demonstrated that dantrolene interferes with EC coupling of murine intestinal smooth muscle cells,[190] rat gastric fundus, and colon,[191] which in part explains its gastrointestinal side effect. Caution should be used when ondansetron is to be used in this setting. As a serotonin antagonist, ondansetron may increase serotonin at the 5-HT_{2A} receptor in the presynaptic space. In MHS individuals, agonism of 5-HT_{2A} receptor may produce a deranged response, precipitating MH.[192]

The clinical course will determine further therapy and studies. Dantrolene should probably be repeated at least every 10 to 15 hours, since it has a half-life of at least 10 hours in children and adults.[188,193] The total dose of dantrolene that can be used is up to 30 mg/kg in some cases. Recrudescence of MH can approach 50%, usually within 6.5 hours.[194,195] When indicated, calcium and cardiac glycosides may be used safely. They can be lifesaving during persistent hyperkalemia. Slow voltage-gated calcium channel blockers do not increase porcine survival.[196,197] Instead, a recent study by Migita demonstrated that calcium channel blockers, including dihydropyridine (i.e., nifedipine), phenylalkylamine (i.e., verapamil), and benzothiazepine (i.e., diltiazem), led to increased $[Ca^{2+}]_i$ in human skeletal muscle cells. Interestingly, the potency of such calcium release is correlated with the number of binding sites on DHPR (i.e., nifedipine > verapamil > diltiazem).[198] Clinical doses of dantrolene were only able to attenuate 20% of the nifedipine-induced $[Ca^{2+}]_i$ surge. [198] Current recommendations of MHAUS discourage the use of calcium channel blockers in the presence of dantrolene because they can worsen the hyperkalemia resulting in cardiac arrest. Although administration of magnesium sulfate could not prevent the development of MH and did not influence the clinical course in succinylcholine-induced MH,[199] recent data suggested that dantrolene might require magnesium to arrest the course of MH triggered by halothane.[200] Permanent neurologic sequelae, such as coma or paralysis, may occur in advanced cases, probably because of inadequate cerebral oxygenation and perfusion for the increased metabolism and because of the fever, acidosis, hypo-osmolality with fluid shifts, and potassium release.

For MH cases diagnosed in the ambulatory surgical centers, guidelines have been recently proposed for the transferring of care to receiving hospital facilities.[201] Although it is preferable that immediate treatment and stabilization of the patient be achieved onsite, several factors need to be considered before implementation of a transfer plan, which include capabilities of the available professionals at the initial treatment and receiving facilities, clinical best interests of patients, and capabilities of the transfer team.[202] The validity of stocking dantrolene in ambulatory surgery centers was confirmed with a cost-effectiveness analysis.[203]

Anesthesia for Susceptible Patients

Safe anesthetics consist of nitrous oxide, barbiturates, etomidate, propofol, opiates, tranquilizers, and nondepolarizing muscle relaxants. Potent volatile anesthetics and succinylcholine must be avoided, even in the presence of dantrolene. There are anecdotal reports that some human patients have experienced a hypermetabolic state despite these precautions, but they have always responded favorably to the administration of intravenous dantrolene. Preoperative dantrolene is never needed because the use of nontriggering agents is almost always associated with uneventful anesthesia. Regional anesthesia is safe and may be preferred. Amide anesthetics such as lidocaine were once considered dangerous in susceptible patients because they were thought to induce or worsen muscle contractures in vitro as a result of their effect of increasing calcium efflux from the SR. Porcine and human studies have consistently demonstrated the lack of danger of amide anesthetics.

Before being used for MHS patients, anesthetic machines may be "cleansed" of potent volatile agents by disconnecting or removing the vaporizers from the anesthesia workstation, renewing the CO_2 absorbent, using a new, disposable breathing circuit, and, if possible, a fresh gas hose. If there is no dedicated machine for MHS patients, flushing the anesthesia workstation to less than5 parts per million (ppm) of the volatile anesthetic agents concentration is generally accepted.[204] It may take 10 to 104 min with different machines.[185,205-214] This preparation process also should be directed based on the halogenated volatile agents that have been used. Jones and colleagues demonstrated that desflurane required longer purge time than sevoflurane on both the Datex-Ohmeda Aestiva and Aisys machines.[213] Application of activated charcoal filters have been shown to successfully accelerate the process of cleansing.[185,215-217] Such filters should be placed on both the inspiratory and expiratory limbs of the anesthesia machine with replacement of a new set every 60 minutes on patients who are exhaling volatile anesthetics.[185] MHAUS recommends flushing and preparing the anesthesia workstation according to the manufacturer's recommendations or published studies.[218] During the case, lowering the fresh gas rate after the washout period may allow the concentration of volatile anesthetic agents to reaccumulate.[209] Fresh gas flow should be kept to at least 10 L/min to avoid this rebound.

It is important to be aware that the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health issued "Criteria for a Recommended Standard- Occupational Exposure to Waste Anesthetic Gases (WAGs) and Vapors."[219] No worker is exposed to halogenated anesthetic agents at concentrations greater than 2 ppm when used alone or greater than 0.5 ppm when used in combination with nitrous oxide over a sampling period not to exceed 1 hour. Anesthetic gas machines, non-rebreathing systems, and T-tube devices shall have an effective scavenging device that collects all WAGs. Occupational Safety and Health Administration also has guidelines for workplace exposures.[220]

The anesthesiologist should confidently discuss anesthetic care with MHS patients and assure them that all will be done to avoid difficulties with MH and that the appropriate drugs, knowledge, and skills are immediately at hand if any problems occur. Many of these patients have undergone procedures uneventfully, such as dental analgesia and obstetric anesthesia, before the diagnosis of susceptibility was made. The patient can enter the therapeutic environment in a reassured, relaxed, and comfortable state. Outpatient procedures are feasible in most environments; the time of discharge depends on the usual outpatient criteria.

Any facility using MH triggers on an inpatient or outpatient basis should have dantrolene available immediately. The current recommendation by MHAUS to stock 36 vials of 20 mg dantrolene Dantrium/Revonto is based on dantrolene needed to treat an MH crisis on a 70-kg patient.[187] FDA approved the Ryanodex in 2014. Administration of three vials of 250 mg Ryanodex injectable suspension is the alternative preparation plan.

EVALUATION OF SUSCEPTIBILITY

Evaluation of susceptibility includes a history and physical examination to detect any subclinical abnormality. A genealogy with specific information about anesthetic exposure and agents can estimate the likelihood of exposure to triggering agents. Blood CK values, when determined in a resting, fasting state without recent trauma, reflect muscle membrane stability. When the CK level is elevated in a close relative of a person with known MHS, the relative may be considered to have MHS without contracture testing. If the CK level is normal on several occasions, there is no predictive value, and contracture studies are necessary. The patient must travel to the test center for a surgical biopsy to ensure viability and accurate results. Muscle biopsy contracture studies, performed at about 30 centers around the world, involve exposure of the muscle biopsy sample to halothane, caffeine, and, in the North American test, to halothane plus caffeine.[128] Sensitivity to 4-chloro-*m*-cresol or ryanodine have also been used by some centers.[52] It is also important to note that contracture responses are sometimes positive in patients with myopathies that bear no direct relationship to MH and therefore may not indicate susceptibility. Dantrolene must be avoided before biopsy because it masks the response to contracture-producing drugs. After a patient is diagnosed as being MHS, DNA testing for mutations should follow. When a mutation is detected, other relatives with that mutation should be considered to be MHS without the need for an invasive contracture test, and they need not travel to a testing center (see Genetics).

MHS patients and all patients who are not biopsy tested, but who present with a clinical picture that suggests a high probability for MHS, should be given advice. Precautions are necessary in regard to general anesthesia, and triggers include all potent volatile agents and succinylcholine. Awake episodes are uncommon, and if not experienced before diagnosis, they are an unlikely problem. The true predictive value (i.e., percentage of positive results that are true positives) or efficiency (i.e., percentage of all results that are true, whether positive or negative) of contracture testing in determining susceptibility in the general population cannot be estimated because of the selection process that has been used to date for testing (i.e., limited to those with anesthesia reactions who do not have any other muscle disease pathology). False-positive results from cautious interpretation or decreased specificity are masked because the patient will never be exposed to triggering agents. A promising innovative in vivo human application involves physiologically based microdialysis infusion of caffeine or halothane into muscle of MHS patients to trigger exaggerated localized changes in acid-base balance.[221-225] White blood cells express RyR1-MHS and provide a substrate for a less invasive analysis for susceptibility but have the limitation that not all causative mutations are expressed in the white blood cells.[226-230] Nuclear magnetic resonance has promise,[231,232] but to date it has been difficult to standardize a stress, such as forearm ischemia, that can differentiate susceptibles from normals.

For anesthesia assessment of the non-MHS pregnant patient carrying a potential MHS fetus, the parturient should be treated as MHS until the fetus is delivered.[233-235] For emergencies in such patients, the use of succinylcholine, although little of the drug crosses the placenta, is controversial.[236]

Multiple Sclerosis

Multiple sclerosis (MS) is an autoimmune disorder characterized by T-cell–mediated autoantibodies against myelin and a subsequent inflammatory response within the central nervous system (CNS: brain and spinal cord), where it primarily affects the optic nerve, the corticospinal tract, or posterior columns. Thus MS is a disorder of the myelinated part of the axon that leads to secondary nerve conduction failure. It is characterized by sensitization of the peripheral leukocytes to the myelin antigen and a subsequent inflammatory response, monocytic and lymphocytic perivascular cuffing, and glial scars with plaque formation within the central nervous system, especially in the periventricular white matter. The disease affects mainly women, primarily between 20 and 40 or 45 and 60 years of age. Although the etiology is unknown, it has been speculated that MS is caused by environmental factors combined with a genetic predisposition. Naturally, researchers have focused on identifying key events and the genetic origin of the disorder to provide diagnostic and possibly also therapeutic tools for the management of MS patients.

Its clinical course is characterized by exacerbations and remissions in most patients, but continuous neurological deterioration has been reported in up to 10% of cases (primary progressive MS). Patients with MS frequently report paresthesias, muscle weakness, and sensory disturbances. Acute symptoms, which are related to the site and extent of sclerosing CNS plaques, commonly include visual disturbances (diplopia, blurring, and field cuts), sensory abnormalities with numbness and paresthesia, pain, and electric shock sensation that radiates down the spine and into the limbs upon flexion of the neck (Lhermitte sign). Cranial nerve dysfunction, ataxia, and bladder and bowel disturbances are also common. Typically, there is a localized or, late in the course of disease, generalized muscle weakness with the legs affected more than the arms. Chronic symptoms can also include spastic paraparesis, appendicular tremor, psychiatric disturbances such as depression or euphoria (la belle indifference), and dementia. In severe cases, respiration may be involved with the development of hypoxemia. As a rule, symptoms are closely related to the site affected within the CNS, and the number of symptoms is related to the extent of sclerosing CNS plaques. Notably, MS can be associated with impaired autonomic function, and hence an increased risk for exaggerated hemodynamic response to anesthetic induction agents, vasodilators, and sympathomimetic drugs.[237]

Diagnosing MS after a single, acute remitting clinically isolated syndrome is discouraged, whereas repeated attacks with increased CSF IgG and multifocal MRI abnormalities are strongly supportive of the diagnosis.[238] Acute attacks are treated with various combinations of immunosuppression modalities including glucocorticoids or plasma exchange therapy, which have been shown to increase the rate of recovery but not the overall level of recovered function. Disease progression can, nevertheless, be modified with a novel humanized CD20 monoclonal antibody (ocrelizumab) in patients with primary-progressive or relapsing-remitting forms of MS. Other immunomodulatory treatment options include interferon β1a or glatiramer acetate (a mixture of polypeptides synthesized to mimic myelin basic protein) in individuals with the relapsing-remitting MS, fingolimod, teriflunomide, or natalizumab, and the antineoplastic agent mitoxantrone. Teriflunomide is associated with hepatic injury, while mitoxantrone can be associated with cardiomyopathy. These patients may also receive treatments aimed at reducing spasticity (baclofen and benzodiazepines), as well as anticonvulsants or propranolol for tremor, oxybutynin and propantheline for bladder spasticity, and SSRIs or other antidepressive agents for mood disorders.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

It has been speculated that general anesthesia and surgery may increase the risk for aggravation of MS.[239] Presently, there is no general consensus on this matter, and patients should therefore be informed of the potential for aggravated symptoms in the postoperative period. In general, preoperative chronic immunosuppressive medication should be continued during the perioperative period. Patients with MS are sensitive to physical (pain, fever, infection) and emotional stress, which makes it more likely that symptoms will be intensified in the perioperative period. Increased body temperature is often cited as an offending mechanism, possibly by causing a complete block of conduction in demyelinated nerves. Body temperature should therefore be closely monitored and controlled during the perioperative period. Great care must be exercised to minimize changes in fluid homeostasis, and central hemodynamics (preload, afterload) and to maintain respiration. Although intravenous induction agents and volatile anesthetics have been used safely, it is wise to avoid administering depolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs to MS patients. MS-induced denervation, or misuse myopathy, may lead to a risk for succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia, which can result in fatal cardiac arrhythmias. Nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers are safe to use but should be dosed cautiously as both prolonged responses (increased sensitivity in patients with preexisting muscle weakness) and resistance to these NMBAs have

BOX 35.3 **Perioperative Considerations for Patients with Multiple Sclerosis**

1. Thoroughly inform the patient and family of the natural course of MS, and the risk for perioperative worsening of symptoms
2. Continue preoperative immunosuppressive therapy
3. Type of general anesthetics is unlikely to affect the course of disease
4. Minimize perioperative changes in fluid homeostasis and hemodynamics
5. Monitor body temperature closely, avoid hyperthermia
6. It is reasonable to avoid depolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents (NMBAs)
7. Nondepolarizing NMBAs can be used, but should be dosed cautiously with monitoring of the neuromuscular transmission
8. Epidural anesthesia has been used successfully, but spinal anesthesia is usually not recommended
9. Consider extended postoperative care in a monitored setting if patient has severe preoperative weakness or respiratory compromise

been reported. The use of rocuronium with sugammadex to ensure full reversal has been suggested as a safe alternative.[240] It is speculated that the demyelination associated with MS renders the spinal cord susceptible to the neurotoxic effects of the local anesthetics. Epidural application of low concentrations of local anesthetics has, nevertheless, been successfully used in MS patients.[239] Spinal anesthesia, on the other hand, has been implicated in postoperative exacerbations of symptoms in MS. As the blood–brain barrier may also be damaged by demyelination, spinal anesthesia is usually not recommended for these patients. A recent metaanalysis of 37 reports found that the MS symptoms were worsened in 10 of 231 patients, but despite the association no clear cause-effect relationship could be identified.[241] Notably, postpartum worsening of MS symptoms is noted in 20% of females. The need for postoperative care is dependent on the preoperative symptoms, type of surgery, and status of the patient at the end of the surgical procedure. In this context, MS patients with severe weakness and respiratory distress, including pharyngeal dysfunction, may need extended postoperative care, such as noninvasive respiratory support and intense physiotherapy, to avoid further impairment of their pulmonary function (Box 35.3).

Motor Neuron Disorders

Motor neuron disorders involve either the upper or the lower motor neurons of the cerebral cortex, brainstem, and spinal cord. Some forms are mixed, whereas others have predominately upper or lower motor neuron involvement. Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS, also known as Lou Gehrig's disease) is the most common disease within this group and involves both upper and lower motor neurons. Other examples of motor neuron disease are Kennedy disease (spinobulbar muscular atrophy), Friedreich ataxia (mixed upper and lower motor neurons), and spinal muscular atrophy (lower motor neurons).

ALS is characterized by degeneration of the anterior horn α-motoneurons in the spinal cord and brainstem motor nuclei, as well as the primary descending upper motor neurons of the corticospinal tract. Degenerative loss of these neurons leads to progressive muscle weakness, muscle atrophy, and loss of neuronal mass in these locations. Patients present with gradually spreading focal weakness and muscle atrophy (typically of the hands), spasticity, and hyperreflexia of lower extremities. Dysarthria and dysphagia, tongue atrophy, and fasciculations may also occur. Progressive weakness can lead to respiratory failure and death. Sensory functions, including intellectual capacity and cognition, as well as bowel and bladder function, are not usually affected in ALS.

ALS has an incidence of about 2 in 100,000, and onset of the disease usually takes place around 40 to 50 years of age, with males more often affected than females. Most cases are sporadic, but rare familial forms (autosomal dominant and recessive forms) do exist. The underlying mechanism or mechanisms for this selective and progressive motor neuronal death are thus far unclear, but it has recently been suggested that superoxide dismutase (SOD) mutations may have a key role in the increased formation of free radicals seen in subsets of patients. SOD is an important antioxidant and its mutation can lead to decreased clearance of free radicals, increased oxidative stress, and mitochondrial dysfunction. Most familial forms are associated with the mutation of C9ORF72 on 9p21, TDP43, FUS, and VCP genes. The diagnosis is made by electrophysiology (electromyography [EMG] and electroneurography), neurologic examination, MRI imaging, and CSF analysis, which demonstrates early spastic weakness of the upper and lower extremities, typical subcutaneous muscle fasciculations, and bulbar involvement affecting pharyngeal function, speech, and the facial muscles. No curative treatment is currently available, and patients are therefore treated symptomatically. Riluzole, a glutamate release inhibitor, may provide neuroprotection and extend survival in these patients.[242] More recently, the antioxidant edaravone was shown to reduce the decline in daily functioning associated with ALS.[243] Patients may also receive spasmolytic and analgesic agents. Those with advanced disease will ultimately require tracheostomy and gastrostomy surgeries and other supportive treatments including mechanical ventilation.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Bulbar involvement in combination with respiratory muscle weakness leads to a risk for aspiration and pulmonary complications. Notably, these patients may have increased sensitivity to the respiratory depressant effects of sedatives and hypnotics. There are reports of sympathetic hyperreactivity and autonomic failure.[244] Sympathetic hyperreactivity and autonomic dysfunction, often manifested as orthostatic hypotension and resting tachycardia but also significant hypotension or even pulseless electrical activity upon anesthesia induction, have been reported,[245] and should be considered during the perioperative management of these patients.[244] Succinylcholine should be avoided because of the risk for hyperkalemia as a result of denervation and immobilization. Nondepolarizing NMBA may cause prolonged and pronounced neuromuscular blockade and hence should be used with great caution.[246] General anesthesia may be associated with exaggerated ventilatory depression. Regional anesthesia is also often avoided

BOX 35.4 **Perioperative Considerations for Patients with Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis**

1. Exaggerated respiratory depression and sensitivity to sedatives and hypnotics
2. Higher risk for aspiration and pulmonary complications
3. Autonomic dysfunction with risk for hemodynamic instability
4. Avoid depolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents (NMBAs) (risk for hyperkalemia); nondepolarizing NMBAs may cause prolonged and profound neuromuscular blockade
5. General and epidural anesthesia have been successfully administered; spinal anesthesia is often avoided

for fear of exacerbating disease symptoms. Both general and epidural anesthesia have, however, been successfully administered to these patients without reported complications (Box 35.4).

Guillain-Barré Syndrome

Guillain-Barré syndrome or acute inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculopathy is an acute inflammatory polyneuritis that is triggered by humoral and cell-mediated autoimmune response to a sensitizing event. Although the etiology is unknown, in many cases a timely association with a viral (influenza-like) or bacterial infection or even lymphomatous disease can be demonstrated.[247] It typically presents as an ascending paralysis characterized by symmetric weakness that can vary from mild difficulty with walking to nearly complete paralysis of all extremities, facial, respiratory, and bulbar muscles. Mild variants can present with ataxia, ophthalmoplegia, or hyporeflexia without significant appendicular weakness. Fulminant cases can present with severe ascending weakness leading to complete tetraplegia, and paralysis of cranial nerves and phrenic and intercostal nerves with facial and respiratory muscle weakness necessitating tracheostomy and ventilatory support.[248] Importantly, patients may also have autonomic involvement that could lead to hemodynamic instability and arrhythmias with risk for sudden circulatory collapse and fatal cardiac.

The diagnosis is made after careful neurologic examination such as areflexia and progressive motor weakness, clinical and electrophysiological studies,[249] and CSF analysis. CSF analysis may show a typical increase in CSF protein in combination with a normal cell count, which is a classic sign of the disease. Electromyogram (EMG) and nerve conduction studies may be normal in the early acute period, but characteristic segmental demyelination and reduction of conduction velocity and dispersion or absence of F-waves are usually seen within 1 to 2 weeks.

Management is primarily supportive and includes nutritional support, respiratory support, and measures to prevent aspiration. Early plasma exchange, typically five exchanges with 5% albumin repletion, may mitigate the course but is contraindicated in setting of hemodynamic instability, marked dysautonomia, and active bleeding.[250] Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) is typically administered in the setting of dysautonomia, or if plasmapheresis and exchange transfusion are contraindicated.

BOX 35.5 **Perioperative Considerations for Patients with Acute Inflammatory Demyelinating Polyradiculopathy**

1. Autonomic dysfunction may be associated with hemodynamic instability and an exaggerated response to anesthesia induction agents, or to stimulating interventions such as laryngoscopy
2. Depolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents (NMBAs) should be avoided due to an upregulation of the acetylcholine receptors and risk for hyperkalemic response
3. Nondepolarizing NMBAs can be used but are commonly also avoided because of the risk for prolonged weakness
4. The use of regional anesthesia is controversial and may be associated with worsening symptoms

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Cranial nerve paralysis and autonomic dysfunction predispose these patients to an increased risk for aspiration. Aspiration precautions, including decompression of the stomach, should therefore be considered before the induction of anesthesia. Absence of compensatory cardiovascular responses may be associated with exaggerated hypotension at anesthesia induction or in response to hypovolemia. Conversely, laryngoscopy or noxious stimuli can be associated with an exaggerated increase in blood pressure. The hemodynamic instability is typically short-lived and self-limited, but small doses of short-acting and titratable vasoactive medications may be required.[251] Careful hemodynamic monitoring is essential and continuous monitoring of the blood pressure with an arterial catheter is often considered. These patients may also exhibit abnormal responses to NMBA; succinylcholine should not be used because of the risk of hyperkalemia. Nondepolarizing muscle relaxants are not contraindicated but should be avoided as a result of the increased sensitivity and risk for prolonged muscle weakness in the postoperative period. The risk for autonomic dysfunction, respiratory failure, and aspiration may require assisted or mechanical ventilation, even in the postoperative period. If these agents are used, the neuromuscular transmission should be closely monitored with a nerve stimulator as both resistance and sensitivity to these agents have been reported. Great care should be taken to maintain circulatory stability, including adequate cardiac preload and afterload. Careful hemodynamic monitoring is therefore essential in these patients.

Regional anesthesia is employed by some practitioners[252] but its use remains controversial as it has been reported to cause worsening of neurological symptoms.[253] General anesthesia can be used; however, the combination of general anesthesia and epidural anesthesia is more controversial (Box 35.5).[254]

CRITICAL ILLNESS POLYNEUROPATHY AND CRITICAL ILLNESS MYOPATHY

Despite earlier reports of a rapid development of weakness, muscle atrophy, and polyneuropathy in critically ill patients, it was not until the 1987 report by Bolton and associates that the characteristic widespread axonal degeneration of motor and sensory fibers and the extensive denervation atrophy of limb and respiratory muscle associated with this polyneuropathy were clearly identified.[255] Although the

BOX 35.6 Perioperative Considerations for Patients with Critical Illness Polyneuropathy

1. Particular attention should be made to protect peripheral nerves, in particular the ulnar and peroneal nerves, during positioning of these patients
2. Monitor and correct electrolyte and glucose abnormalities
3. Steroids have been implicated in the pathophysiology of the disease and should therefore be avoided
4. Neuromuscular blocking agents are best avoided altogether, but if needed only nondepolarizing agents should be considered

true incidence of critical illness polyneuropathy (CIP) is difficult to determine, critical illness neuropathy and myopathy are believed to affect up to 50% of all patients remaining in the intensive care unit for more than 2 weeks.[256] It is typically manifested as profound symmetric limb weakness, with reduced or absent tendon reflexes and diaphragmatic and intercostal weakness. It affects the lower extremities to a greater extent than upper extremities, and distal muscle groups more severely than the proximal. The autonomic function is not affected and the extraocular eye movements remain intact. In CIP, there is no evidence of neuromuscular junction disorder and the electromyography and nerve conduction study findings are consistent with axonal motor and sensory polyneuropathy, with amplitude reduction of motor and sensory action potentials, and slowed conduction velocities. Serum CK levels are usually normal. Conversely, a sensory nerve action potential is often normal in critical illness myopathy but compound muscle action potentials are diminished and electromyography is consistent with myopathy. Serum CK levels may be elevated. No specific treatments are currently available, and management is supportive with aggressive and early rehabilitation. Use of sedation, paralytics, and corticosteroids should be limited,[257] and aggressive control of hyperglycemia has been suggested to reduce the incidence of CIP by 44%.[258]

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Anesthetic considerations in CIP patients are similar to those with other acquired neuropathies (see above), and include protection of nerve compression sites, particularly the ulnar and peroneal nerves. Prolonged immobility in critically ill patients is associated with a relative increase in immature acetylcholine receptors that can lead to an insensitivity to nondepolarizing NMBA.[259] Conversely, the sensitivity to depolarizing neuromuscular blockers is increased, with a risk for increased potassium efflux after succinylcholine administration (Box 35.6).[260]

Hereditary Motor-Sensory Neuropathies, including Charcot-Marie-Tooth Disease

Hereditary motor-sensory neuropathies include a spectrum of peripheral neurologic disorders, among which Charcot-Marie-Tooth (CMT) disease is often listed. They are caused by a specific mutation in one of several myelin genes that result in defects in myelin structure, maintenance, and formation. Hereditary motor-sensory neuropathies have been classified into seven types and multiple subtypes according to the age at onset, mode of inheritance, predominately involved muscle groups, and genotypes.[261,262] CMT types 1 and 2 are the most common hereditary peripheral neuropathies, with an estimated prevalence of 40 per 100,000.[262] Patients with CMT disease typically experience slow and progressive distal muscle weakness and wasting. Damage to sensory axons may also lead to sensory loss resulting in frequent tripping and falls. Neuropathic pain may develop in some patients. CMT patients usually have normal life expectancy. CMT type 3, also known as Dejerine-Sottas disease, is a very severe condition with an early onset of hypotonia during infancy. Nerve conduction velocity is typically significantly reduced to less than 10 ms.[262] The genetic inheritance pattern for CMT disease is heterogeneous.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

The anesthesia experience in patients with CMT disease is limited because of the small number of cases. Major considerations include the use of hypnotic agents, muscle relaxants, volatile agents, and neuraxial techniques. CMT type 1 patients have been reported to have significantly increased sensitivity to thiopental at induction that correlates with the severity of both motor and sensory defects. However, total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA) has been performed successfully in a number of cases without any reported problems.[263-265]

Because of the reduced number of acetylcholine receptors, sensitivity to nondepolarizing muscle relaxants is elevated and the response to succinylcholine is also reduced.[266] Although succinylcholine has been used without adverse effect,[267,268] the risk of an exaggerated hyperkalemic response may be sufficient to preclude it from being used in patients with suspected muscular denervation.[268] Prolonged neuromuscular blockade with vecuronium has been reported.[269] As a result of the large variety of disabilities in this patient group, careful baseline assessment of neuromuscular status should be conducted before the use of nondepolarizing neuromuscular relaxants. Normal response to atracurium and mivacurium has been demonstrated.[270,271] Both TIVA and volatile anesthetics have been used safely in CMT patients in a series of cases.[267] Neuraxial techniques for obstetric procedures have been reported to generally be successful in CMT patients.[272-275] However, the use of regional anesthesia can be controversial given that the possible complications may exacerbate the neurologic symptoms.[276] Similar medicolegal concerns may apply to the surgical and anesthesia positioning of CMT patients because of the sensory deficits and limb deformities.

Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy and Becker Muscular Dystrophy

Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD) is the most common and severe type of muscular dystrophy, with an incidence of 1 per 3500 live male births[277] and a total male prevalence of about 50 to 60 × 10^{-6}.[278] Becker muscular dystrophy (BMD) is relatively rare and has an incidence of about 1 in

18,000 live male births and a prevalence of 23.8×10^{-6}.[278] Both DMD and BMD are X-linked recessive diseases. The defect is located on the short arm of the X chromosome at the Xp21 region, which contains the gene for the large protein Dp427, also known as dystrophin. The dystrophin gene is 2500 kilobases long with more than 70 exons.[278] Dystrophin is distributed not only in skeletal, cardiac, and smooth muscle but also in the brain.[279] Because of the large size of the dystrophin gene, spontaneous new mutations are common and account for a third of new cases.[280]

The most common form of mutation is a deletion within the gene (65%-70% of cases of DMD and >80% of BMD). Duplication and point mutations are responsible for the rest. It also appears that there are "hot spots" within the first 20 exons and in the central region of the gene (exons 45-55) where deletion and duplication are likely to occur.[278] Female cases of DMD have been reported with the 45,X and 46,XX karyotypes. The disease mechanism for the female 46,XX karyotype was thought to be preferential loss of the paternal X chromosome by postzygotic nondisjunction and manifestation of the DMD gene from the maternal X chromosome in muscle cells.[281] BMD is usually milder in severity than DMD because disruption of the translation process occurs in the relatively distal part of the gene, which leads to a reduced amount of truncated dystrophin protein.[278,282]

Dystrophin, along with dystrophin-associated glycoproteins (DAGs), is involved in sarcolemmal stability. Dystrophin is responsible for maintenance of muscle membrane integrity despite the fact that it accounts for only approximately 0.002% of the protein in striated muscle.[283] Dystrophin aggregates and links to actin (at its N terminus) and the DAG complex (at its C terminus) to form a stable structure that interacts with laminin in the extracellular matrix (Fig. 35.4). Lack or dysfunction of dystrophin leads to cellular and membrane instability, with progressive leakage of intracellular components and elevation of creatine phosphokinase (CPK) levels. Eventually, damaged muscle cell units are invaded by macrophages and destroyed. Current study suggests that cytotoxic T cells are probably the culprit. Consequently, clinical pseudohypertrophy of the muscle occurs when the dead muscle shells are replaced by fibrofatty infiltrates. Loss of muscle units accounts for the weakness and contracture.[279]

Both DMD and BMD are characterized by progressive weakness and wasting of predominantly the proximal musculature. Pseudohypertrophy of the calves and other muscle groups is common. As the more severe of the two diseases, DMD tends to be symptomatic early in life. Seventy-four percent of children with DMD were found to manifest the disease by 4 years of age.[277] DMD patients do not usually begin to walk until they are about 18 months of age or later.

The initial clinical findings include a waddling gait, frequent falling, and difficulty climbing stairs because of proximal muscle weakness in the pelvic girdle. The classic Gower maneuver describes rising from a sitting to a standing position with the help of both arms. Patients may also show weakness in the shoulder girdle and trunk erectors that leads to thoracolumbar scoliosis. The earlier the onset of disease, the more rapid the disease will take its course. In most cases, children with DMD are unable to walk by the age of 9 to 11. Proximal deep tendon reflexes in the upper extremities and patella may also disappear despite the lack of denervation.[282] Nevertheless, the Achilles tendon reflex remains intact even in later stages of the disease. Sixty percent of patients will have pseudohypertrophy of the calves, and thirty percent will have macroglossia. Some may also suffer from pain in the calves with activity.

The intellectual impairment that can be associated with the disease was thought to be related to limitation of educational opportunities. However, with equalization of educational opportunities, psychometric studies have revealed a significantly lower average intelligence quotient in DMD

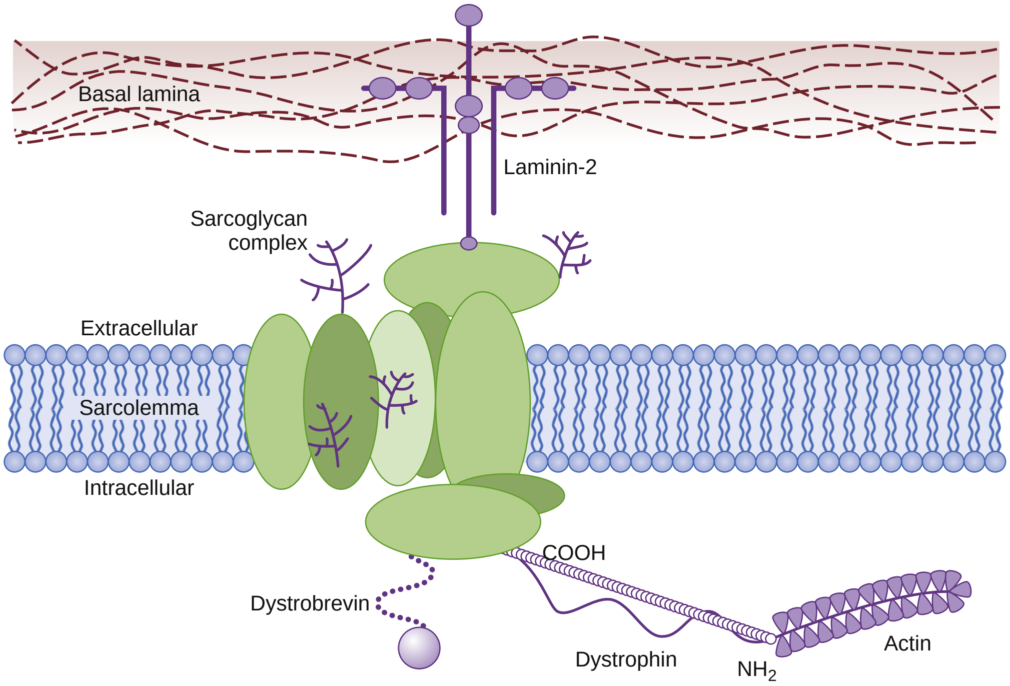


Fig. 35.4 Diagram of the cell–surface and cytoskeleton protein complex.

patients than in healthy groups.[284] This implies a possible effect of dysfunctional dystrophin in the brain on learning.

Death in patients with DMD is commonly due to cardiopulmonary compromise in their 30s.[277] BMD is a mild form of DMD. The mutation that causes BMD produces dystrophin that retains partial function. The onset of symptoms occurs in the second or third decade of life. As a result, the life span of BMD patients can reach the early 40s. Pneumonia is the most common cause of death (Fig. 35.5).[282]

The heart is also affected to various degrees, depending on the stage of the disease and the type of mutation. Cardiac degeneration is due to replacement of myocardium by connective tissue or fat, which leads to dilated cardiomyopathy.[285] Cardiac involvement starts early in the course of the disease, although clinical signs are not usually obvious in the early stage. No correlation has been established between the severity of cardiac disease and the severity of skeletal disease. Studies of necropsy have shown that the cardiomyopathy in DMD involves the posterobasal and contiguous lateral left ventricular walls as initial and primary sites of myocardial dystrophy in the absence of small vessel coronary artery disease in these areas.[286] Typical initial manifestations on the electrocardiogram (ECG) in DMD and BMD are sinus tachycardia, tall R waves in the right precordial leads, prominent left precordial Q waves, increased QT dispersion, and inverted T waves from scarring of the posterobasal portion of the left ventricle. Initially, the echocardiography is normal or shows regional wall motion abnormalities in areas of fibrosis. With the spreading of fibrosis, left ventricular dysfunction can be seen and ventricular arrhythmias frequently occur as well. In the final stages of the disease, systolic dysfunction may lead to heart failure and sudden death. Subclinical or clinical cardiac involvement is present in about 90% of DMD/BMD patients, but it is the cause of death in only 20% of DMD and 50% of BMD patients. Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors are recommended in early stages of the disease, and β-blockers may be an additional option if indicated.[285]

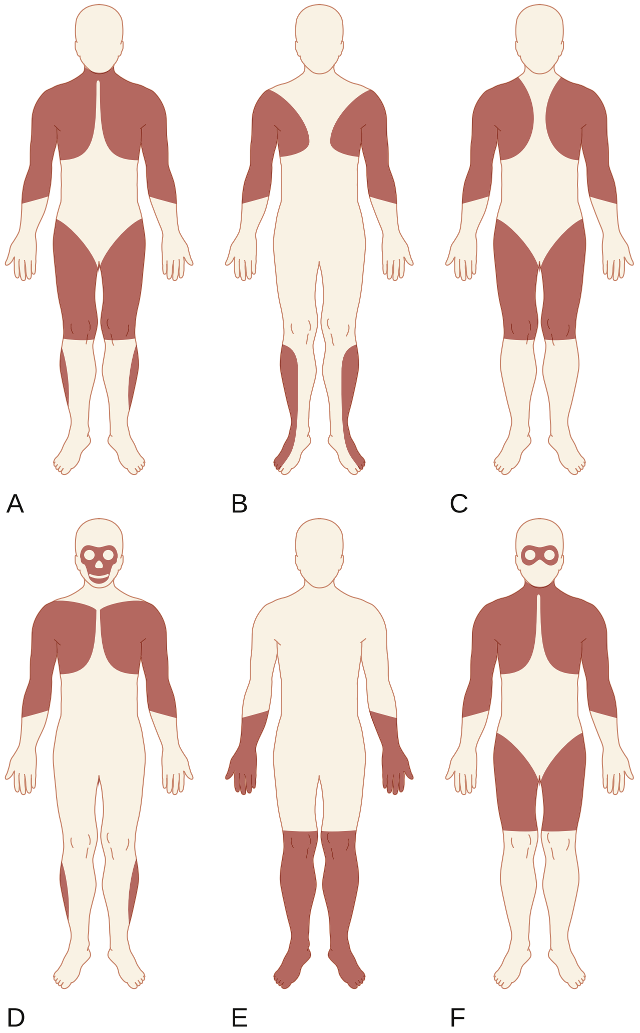


Fig. 35.5 Distribution of predominant muscle weakness in different types of dystrophy: (A) Duchenne type and Becker type; (B) Emery-Dreifuss; (C) limb girdle; (D) facioscapulohumeral; (E) distal; and (F) oculopharyngeal. (Redrawn from Emery AE. The muscular dystrophies. *BMJ* 1998;317:991–995.)

Pulmonary insufficiency is a leading cause of morbidity and mortality in DMD.[287] Usually, expiratory muscle function is affected first, because of the early onset of abdominal muscle weakness. By contrast, inspiratory muscle function is relatively preserved in the first decade, implying sparing of the diaphragm.[288] Vital capacity (VC) increases in the first decade because of overall body growth, plateaus in early adolescence, and then declines dramatically as the diaphragmatic weakness progresses.[288] Other measured lung volumes such as inspiratory reserve volume and total lung capacity (TLC) follow the same pattern. A disproportionate loss of VC and TLC relative to the respiratory muscle dysfunction results in part from additional factors, such as altered chest wall and lung mechanics, modifications in the distribution of surfactant, micro-atelectasis, and local fibrosis secondary to recurrent pneumonia.[288] Scoliosis further impairs pulmonary function. On average, for each 10 degrees of thoracic scoliosis curvature, forced vital capacity (FVC) decreases by 4%.[283] In 90% of patients, a curvature of greater than 20 degrees develops 3 to 4 years after they are wheelchair bound. Respiratory failure inevitably occurs in the second decade of life and is the most common cause of death.[289]

DIAGNOSIS AND DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Chronic elevation of the serum CPK level is a general indication of muscle disease. Three serum tests showing elevated CPK levels obtained one month apart is diagnostic of muscular dystrophy. CPK represents leakage of enzyme from muscle cells and does not correlate with severity of the disease. CPK could reach 50 to 300 times the normal value in early stages of the disease. The level tends to decrease with the loss of muscle mass. Elevation of the MB fraction of CK precludes its use as a marker for cardiac injury.[282] EMG can be supportive of the diagnosis; however, it can be very difficult to perform on children. Muscle biopsy, followed by immunostaining or Western blot analysis for dystrophin, is recommended for diagnostic testing. Multiple polymerase chain reactions are also useful in detecting more than 98% of the existing deletions.[279] The result is usually available within 24 hours, which may render muscle biopsy, the old "gold standard," obsolete.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Patients with DMD and BMD may require anesthesia for muscle biopsy, correction of scoliosis, release of contractures, and exploratory laparotomy for ileus,[282] as well as for dental[290] and obstetric[291] procedures. As the natural course of the disease progresses, the risk of surgery increases concomitant with the increased comorbid conditions associated with the later phase of the disease. However, perioperative complications are not proportional to the severity of the disease. They occur even in mildly affected patients. Consequently, patients should undergo careful preoperative consultation and evaluation.

Fifty to seventy percent of patients with muscular dystrophy demonstrate some cardiac abnormality, although it is clinically significant in only ten percent.[282] Preoperative cardiology assessment with an ECG and echocardiography is essential. Continuous cardiac Holter monitoring is necessary if an arrhythmia is captured on the ECG or if the patient describes symptoms that can be related to cardiac arrhythmias. An echocardiography will demonstrate mitral valve prolapse in 10% to 25% of patients. It may also show posterobasilar hypokinesis in a thin-walled ventricle and a slow relaxation phase with normal contraction characterizing the cardiomyopathy seen in DMD.[282] However, echocardiography may not always reflect the ability of the diseased myocardium to respond to perioperative stress. A stress echocardiography using angiotensin to detect latent heart failure and identify inducible contraction abnormalities has been advocated.[292]

An estimated 30% of deaths in individuals with DMD are due to respiratory causes.[293] Therefore careful preoperative pulmonary assessment is important. Webster demonstrated that the manual muscle strength test has a strong statistical correlation with all of the timed functional tests. Peak expiratory flow was not only easy to perform, but also correlated statistically with all timed functional tests.[294] The correlation was not significant for VC or forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV_1).

Intraoperatively, in terms of airway management, patients with DMD and BMD may have decreased laryngeal reflexes and prolonged gastric emptying time, which increases the risk for aspiration.[295] Decreased ability to cough up the accumulation of oral secretions predisposes muscular dystrophy patients to postoperative respiratory tract infections.[282] Masseter spasm is also a possible complication during induction of anesthesia in these patients.[296] Preparedness for a difficult airway is necessary, especially in patients with potential airway problems.

Postoperatively, DMD patients are at an increased risk for respiratory compromise.[297] Retrospective reviews have indicated that the incidence of prolonged postoperative ventilation (>36 hours) was greatest in DMD patients who had a preoperative FVC of less than 40% of the predicted value.[298,299] Preoperative pulmonary function studies are valuable in determining the postoperative course. Patients with a VC of greater than 30% of the predicted value can usually be extubated immediately after surgery.[282] Sleep apnea may also compound the condition and contribute to the development of pulmonary hypertension. Continuous positive airway pressure and bilevel positive airway pressure have been demonstrated to be effective in the management of postoperative respiratory depression. Delayed pulmonary insufficiency may occur up to 36 hours postoperatively despite the apparent recovery of skeletal muscle strength.[300]

Reports have suggested a relationship between DMD/BMD and MH, but this association is not based on good rational grounds.[301] Whereas the risk for an MH mutation in DMD/BMD patients is similar to that of the general population, the incidence of MH-like anesthetic events has been reported to be 0.002 with DMD and 0.00036 with BMD. Unexplained cardiac arrest[296,302] and acute heart failure[303] have been reported in DMD/BMD patients. Succinylcholine is contraindicated in these patients because of the potential for rhabdomyolysis and hyperkalemia as a result of their unstable sarcolemmal membranes. Succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia during acute rhabdomyolysis is more likely to result in cardiac arrest and unsuccessful resuscitation than is the potassium efflux resulting from upregulation of acetylcholine receptors in burn patients.[300] Although the use of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants is usually accompanied by an increase in both maximal effect and duration of action,[304] proper and rapid reversal with sugammadex may put some of these concerns to rest. Current off-label experience in infants and children has been favorable. Narcotics can be used, but small incremental dosing and short-acting medications are recommended given the respiratory depression associated with these medications, as well as the reports of inadvertent reactions to volatile anesthetics,[282]

Recently, TIVA has become more popular.[305] However, consideration needs to be given to the myocardial status of the patient when propofol or barbiturates are used because they may lead to profound hypotension and reduced organ perfusion.[282,306] Regional anesthesia may be a good alternative to general anesthesia because it avoids the risk of triggering agents and respiratory depression and enables the use of local anesthetics for postoperative analgesia. It may also facilitate chest physiotherapy.[307]

Recent breakthroughs in gene therapy are shining new lights into the management of these relatively common disorders. We have not seen reports on anesthesia management for DMD/BMD patients who had received gene therapy.

Limb-Girdle Muscular Dystrophy

Limb-girdle muscular dystrophy (LGMD) is a group of disorders with heterogeneous causes. To date, at least 18 genes have been identified as being responsible for this disease, with 7 being autosomal dominant and 11 autosomal recessive.[308] Mutations within the same gene may result in different phenotypes that sometimes are not consistent with LGMD. Proximal muscle (shoulder or pelvic) girdle weakness is the characteristic feature of this group of diseases. Given the marked genetic heterogeneity, clinical manifestations of the disease vary. Autosomal recessive forms are about 10 times more common than autosomal dominant forms. Fukutin-related protein (*FKRP*) and calpain 3 (*CAPN3*) gene mutations have been associated with LGMD. In addition, a number of other disorders, not strictly included under LGMD in this classification, may have

LGMD-like phenotypes.[308] Sporadic cases of LGMD have been reported in the anesthesia literature.[309-311] General approaches to these patients are the same as those for DMD/BMD.

Myotonic Dystrophy

Myotonic dystrophy (MD) is an inherited muscular disorder characterized by progressive muscle weakness and wasting. Two types of MD result from a mutation in either the dystrophia myotonica–protein kinase (*DMPK*) gene, located on chromosome 19q13.3 (MD1, also known as Steinert disease), or the CysCysHisCys (CCHC)-type zinc finger, nucleic acid binding protein (*CNBP*) gene, located on chromosome 3q21 (MD2).[312]

The incidence of MD is 1 in 8000. MD1 is by far the most common of the two types and accounts for about 98% of all cases. MD1 is caused by expansion of a CTG trinucleotide repeat in the *DMPK* gene and is inherited in an autosomal dominant manner.[312] Typical signs and symptoms include muscle weakness and wasting (most prominent in the cranial and distal limb musculature), periodic myotonia, progressive myopathy, insulin resistance, defects in cardiac conduction, neuropsychiatric impairment, cataracts, testicular atrophy, and frontal balding in males. The typical cranial muscle weakness and wasting are manifested not only in the facial, temporalis, masseter, and sternocleidomastoid muscles but also in the vocal cord apparatus. Mitral valve prolapse is found in 20% of patients.[300] The severity of the disease is related to the number of extra trinucleotide repeats.[94] MD1 patients may also have mildly elevated CK levels. Myotonic discharges can be identified on EMG, as well as an inability to relax from a handgrip. During pregnancy, the symptoms may be exacerbated. Uterine atony and a retained placenta may also complicate vaginal delivery. First-degree atrioventricular heart block is a common finding on the ECG before the onset of symptoms.[300]

MD2 is also called proximal myotonic myopathy. Intron 1 of the *CNBP* gene contains a complex repeat motif, (TG)n(TCTG)n(CCTG)n, and expansion of the CCTG repeat was determined as the cause of MD2. Patients with MD2 suffer from myotonia (90% of those affected), muscle dysfunction (82% weakness, pain, and stiffness), and less commonly, cardiac conduction defects, iridescent posterior subcapsular cataracts, insulin-insensitive type 2 diabetes mellitus, and testicular failure.

There is no case report in the literature linking MD to MH.[313] Lehmann-Horn and associates performed IVCT in 44 patients with myotonias and periodic paralyses, which revealed 4 positive, 10 equivocal, and 30 negative results.[314]

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

General considerations for MD are similar to those for other muscular dystrophies. Mathieu and coworkers conducted a retrospective study on the anesthetic and surgical complications of MD. The majority of complications were found to be pulmonary related and significantly more frequent in patients undergoing upper abdominal operations and those with severe disability, as assessed by the presence of proximal limb weakness.[315] The pulmonary complications of MD are the result of hypotonia, chronic aspiration, and central and peripheral hypoventilation.[282] Smooth muscle atrophy, which leads to poor gastric motility, when coupled with a diminished cough reflex, promotes aspiration.

Succinylcholine will produce contractions lasting for several minutes, thus making intubation and ventilation a challenge. These contractions are not antagonized by nondepolarizing muscle relaxants. Other agents, including methohexital, etomidate, propofol, and even neostigmine, may also induce myotonic reactions. Short-acting nondepolarizing muscle relaxants or avoidance of relaxation is therefore advised.[282] Case reports have demonstrated normal responses to sugammadex when rocuronium was used as the neuromuscular blockade.[316-318]

Triggering factors, such as hypothermia, shivering, and mechanical or electrical stimulation, may cause a myotonic reaction.[319] The reaction can be treated with phenytoin (4-6 mg/kg/day) or quinine (0.3-1.5 g/day).[282] Furthermore, MD patients can be very sensitive to anesthetic agents, with hypersomnolence and CO_2 retention sometimes being observed. Careful titration with relatively short-acting anesthetic agents may be beneficial. Close cardiac monitoring is required for MD patients. Pacing equipment should be readily available because a third of first-degree atrioventricular blocks may not respond to atropine.[282] All patients should be treated as though they have both cardiomyopathy and conduction defects.

Myotonia Congenita

Myotonia congenita (MC) is a congenital form of muscular dystrophy characterized by uncontrolled temporary skeleton muscle excitability as a result of mutations in the muscle chloride channel gene (*CLCN1*). There are two forms of MC, one with autosomal dominant and the other with recessive inheritance. The former is also known as Thomsen disease and the later as Becker myotonia. The myotonia in MC patients is usually initiated by a forceful muscle contraction, particularly after being at rest for at least 10 minutes. The myotonic muscle stiffness then becomes increasingly obvious after a second and third short, but forceful contraction. Further contractions usually dampen the myotonia.[320]

Thomsen disease was the first myotonic disease to be described. Patients may have a hypertrophic and athletic appearance. The sign of percussion myotonia is described as an indenting-appearing myotonia triggered by tapping the muscle. Lid lag is common and muscle stretch reflexes are normal.[320] Myotonia symptoms in Becker myotonia usually start at 10 to 14 years of age or even later and are more severe than those of Thomsen disease. Becker myotonia may be associated with severe generalized stiffness resulting in falling. It can frequently be misdiagnosed as epilepsy. Antiepileptic medications do improve the symptoms, however.[320]

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

As with many muscle diseases, there have been reports that MC patients are predisposed to MH, but as is the case for almost all of them, there are no data to support this hypothesis.[321-323] However, depolarizing muscle relaxants can lead to severe masseter spasms in MC patients. Generalized spasms involving the respiratory and skeletal muscles have been reported.[321] The findings resemble those of MH, so dantrolene is sometimes administered.[320] Because dantrolene is an inhibitor of calcium release from the SR, it can usually abolish the myotonia effectively.[321,322] Some believe that local anesthetics and class Ib antiarrhythmic drugs such as lidocaine should be used for myotonic reactions rather than dantrolene.[324] Because shivering in the operating room can trigger the myotonic reaction, MC patients should be kept normothermic during surgery.[320]

Myotubular Myopathy

Myotubular myopathy (MTM) is pathologically defined by the presence of centrally placed nuclei in the majority of extrafusal muscle fibers, an appearance resembling fetal myotubes during normal muscle development. Consequently, MTM is also called centronuclear myopathy (CNM).[325] However, MTM now mostly refers to the X-linked form of the disease, whereas CNM is used for the autosomal form.[325]

MTM and CNM are rare. The estimated incidence of MTM is 1 in 50,000 newborn males.[325] MTM has been linked to the myotubularin (*MTM1*) gene on Xq28. Pregnancy is often complicated by polyhydramnios and reduced fetal movements. Affected males typically have severe floppiness and weakness and respiratory distress at birth. Cardiac muscles are not generally involved. The patient usually has a normal response to pain, but tendon reflexes are absent. The long-term prognosis for MTM is extremely poor.[325] In patients who survive the first year of life, most are either completely or partially ventilator dependent.[326] These patients often have abnormal liver function.[326] Both autosomal recessive and autosomal dominant forms have been observed in CNM patients. Its clinical features include respiratory distress, hypotonia, bulbar weakness, ophthalmoplegia, ptosis, and facial diplegia. Although the exact genetic mechanism is not fully understood, the *MTM1*, myotubularin-related protein (*MTMR2*), and myotubularin-related phosphatase (*MTMR3*) genes have been implicated.[325] Pathologically, MTM and CNM share a similar, characteristic histologic feature: predominantly type 1 fiber with centrally placed nuclei seen on hematoxylin-eosin staining of formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissue.[325]

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Reports of anesthesia for patients with MTM are sparse.[327-332] Nontriggering general anesthesia has been used because of the unfounded concern of possible susceptibility to MH. Agents such as propofol, fentanyl, remifentanil, and nitrous oxide have been used successfully without adverse effects.[327-332] The possibility of a prolonged effect of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants has been suggested with mechanomyography.[327-332] However, in reality, intubation of such patients may not require any muscle relaxant because of their hypotonic state. Costi and van der Walt suspected that the defect in MTM is distal to the neuromuscular junction,[328] whereas Dorchies and coworkers suggested that muscles in MTM might be intrinsically normal, with myotubularin-deficient motor neurons involved in development of the disease.[333]

Metabolic Myopathies

Two major energy sources for muscle exist: glycogen and fatty acid. Glycogen serves as a dynamic, but limited reservoir of glucose, mainly stored in skeletal muscle and liver. Glycogen storage disorders (GSDs) are a group of metabolism disorders caused by enzyme deficiency or dysfunction. They reduce effective glucose storage by interfering with normal glycogen synthesis and degradation. Synthetic errors cause decreased normal glycogen, whereas degradation errors tend to block the breakdown of glycogen. Subsequently, hypoglycemia and accumulation of glycogen in tissues could occur as a result of substrate use. There are more than 12 types of GSD that are assigned roman numerals based on the enzyme deficiencies. Types I and II are discussed here.

Glycogen Storage Disease Type I

The incidence of GSD I is approximately 1 in 100,000 live newborns.[334] The incidence in non-Ashkenazi Jews from North Africa may be as high as 1 in 5420 people.[334] The defective enzyme causing the disease is glucose-6-phosphatase, which is the enzyme that converts glucose 6-phosphate (G6P) to glucose in the liver. Type Ia (von Gierke disease) is due to a deficiency in G6P hydrolase (catalytic subunit) activity and accounts for more than 80% of cases. Types Ib (G6P transporter deficiency), Ic, and Id represent allelic defects in the translocase associated with G6P. Their inheritance is autosomal recessive. The G6P gene (*G6PC*) encoding the hydrolase resides at 17q21, with the gene encoding G6P translocase (*G6PT*) located at 11q23. Mutations responsible for GSD I have been described in both type Ia and Ib patients.[334]

Impaired glycogenolysis results in accumulation of glycogen and G6P in the liver, kidney, intestine, skeletal muscle, and heart and is manifested as hepatomegaly, renomegaly, proximal tubular dysfunction, and diarrhea.[335] Fasting hypoglycemia is the initial manifestation of the disease. As a result, upregulation of the synthesis and transport of counter-regulatory hormones, such as glucagon, cortisol, catecholamines, and growth hormone, becomes obvious and leads to the release of pyruvate, lactate, and free fatty acid. Lipid deposition in lean tissues such as the liver, skeletal muscle, cardiac muscle, and pancreas results in lipotoxicity and organ failure, including pulmonary hypertension, steatohepatitis, end-stage renal disease, insulin resistance, cardiac contractile dysfunction, and pancreatic β cell failure.[334] For type Ib disease, specific problems such as neutropenia and neutrophil dysfunction are prominent. Patients may have recurrent infections and inflammatory bowel disease.[336]

ANESTHESIA CONSIDERATIONS

Anesthesia case reports for GSD I patients are rare.[337,338] Patients with GSD I diseases should be given intravenous glucose-containing fluid preoperatively when they have fasted. Lactate-containing solutions should be avoided because these patients are not able to convert the lactic acid to glycogen.[282] Patients need to be monitored frequently to avoid hypoglycemia.

Glycogen Storage Disease Type II (Acid Maltase Deficiency)

The incidence of acid maltase deficiency (AMD) is estimated to be 1 in every 14,000 to 40,000 births. Its inheritance is autosomal recessive with a few exceptions.[339,340] Mutations of the acid maltase gene on chromosome 17q25 cause deficiency of lysosomal acid maltase (acid α-1,4-glucosidase).[340] Cases of AMD have been arbitrarily classified into three groups—infantile, childhood, and adult—according to the age at onset or death, rate of progression, and tissue-organ involvement.[340]

Acid maltase is a lysosomal enzyme that catalyzes the one-way hydrogenation of glycogen to G6P and is found in all tissues, including skeletal and cardiac muscle.[341] Consequently, glycogen accumulates within the muscle tissues of maltase-deficient patients. Infantile AMD, also known as Pompe disease, is usually manifested within the first few months of life as rapidly progressive weakness and hypotonia and enlargement of the tongue, heart, and liver. Massive amounts of glycogen (8%-15% of the wet weight of the tissue) accumulate in the heart, liver, and skeletal muscle, with relatively smaller deposits in smooth muscle, eyes, kidneys, endothelial cells, lymphocytes, brain, and spinal cord. Accumulation of glycogen in cardiac muscle leads to cardiac failure in the infantile form.[340] Echocardiography demonstrates marked thickening of the interventricular septum and posterior left ventricular wall, left ventricular outflow obstruction, and trabecular hypertrophy.[340] Ventricular wall thickness may be increased to up to 25 mm.[342] Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome has been reported.[343] The signs and symptoms of infantile AMD may resemble those of DMD. Death usually results from cardiorespiratory decompensation within several years of disease progression.[344]

Childhood AMD occurs in infancy to early childhood and is manifested by clinical signs of myopathy. Respiratory muscles tend to be selectively affected. Calf enlargement can also occur. The disease progresses relatively slowly in this form, with a few patients surviving beyond the second decade of life.[340] Tongue, heart, and liver enlargement occur infrequently.[345] However, involvement of vascular smooth muscle is more severe than in the infantile form. There has been a report of extensive glycogen deposition in the arterial wall causing basilar aneurysms.[345]

Adult AMD usually occurs after age 20 and is characterized by slow progressive myopathy or symptoms of respiratory failure.[340] The weakness in proximal muscles is more prominent than the weakness in distal muscles. A third of adult AMD patients suffer from respiratory failure with a restrictive pattern. Weakness in the diaphragm causes extensive atelectasis. VC may be significantly reduced.[340]

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Anesthesia reports in AMD patients are rare.[346-349] Isolated intraoperative cardiac arrest during halothane anesthesia in infantile AMD has been documented.[349] Despite the problem noted with halothane, enflurane[347] and sevoflurane[348] have been used without complications. Theoretically, total intravenous general anesthesia with propofol may cause a reduction in afterload leading to an increased risk for myocardial ischemia. This may become significant when the patient is tachycardic.[348]

Subendocardial ischemia may occur in patients with a thickened ventricular wall and results in higher left ventricular end-diastolic pressure at lower ventricular volume.[348,350] Close cardiac monitoring is therefore necessary. A central venous or pulmonary artery catheter is not essential in patients who are normovolemic without preexisting heart failure.[348] Adequate filling pressure and normal to high systemic vascular resistance (SVR) are required to ensure effective coronary perfusion.[348] Ketamine has been used successfully in a number of cases because of its ability to maintain SVR and contractility. Respiratory failure and muscle weakness are the other concerns for anesthesiologists. A spectrum of uses of muscle relaxants from none[347] to atracurium[346] to rocuronium[348] have been attempted. Low-dose rocuronium, 0.5 mg/kg, with close monitoring of neuromuscular function and adequate use of reversal agents, has been sufficient to prevent prolonged postoperative weakness.[348] Depolarizing agents should be avoided because of the potential risk of hyperkalemia and rhabdomyolysis.[348,349]

Mitochondrial Myopathies

Mitochondrial diseases refer to defects in the five main steps of mitochondrial metabolism: substrate transport, substrate utilization, the Krebs cycle, the electron transport chain, and oxidation-phosphorylation coupling.[351] However, the term *mitochondrial myopathy* has been reserved for disorders caused by defects in the respiratory chain.[351] The respiratory chain is composed of five multimeric complexes (I-V) embedded in the inner mitochondrial membrane, plus two small mobile electron carriers, coenzyme Q_{10} (CoQ_{10}) and cytochrome *c*, for a total of more than 80 proteins,[351] among which 13 are encoded by mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) and all others by nuclear DNA (nDNA). mtDNA is different from nDNA in several aspects: (1) mtDNA is circular and contains no intron, (2) it has larger numbers of copies than nDNA does and a much higher spontaneous mutation rate, and (3) its inheritance is maternal. Diagnosis of mitochondrial diseases is difficult because of their clinical heterogeneity.

Primary mtDNA mutations may include point mutations in polypeptide, tRNA, or rRNA encoding regions and large-scale rearrangements, duplications, or deletions.[352] Some of the common conditions caused by point mutations include myoclonic epilepsy with ragged-red fibers (MERRF); mitochondrial encephalopathy, lactic acidosis, and stroke-like episodes (MELAS); neuropathy, ataxia, and retinitis pigmentosa (NARP); maternally inherited Leigh syndrome; and Leber hereditary optic neuropathy.[351] Sporadic large-scale mutations may lead to Kearns-Sayre syndrome, progressive external ophthalmoplegia, and Pearson syndrome.[351] nDNA mutations can cause deficiencies in complexes I to IV and CoQ_{10} of the electron transport chain.[351]

Mitochondrial diseases present a diagnostic challenge due to their clinical heterogeneity. Since mitochondria are ubiquitous; every tissue in the body can be affected by mtDNA mutations. Disorders due to nDNA mutations follow a Mendelian pattern and are thus phenotypically “all or none,” while inheritance of mtDNA is stochastic, leading to greater variability. Mitochondrial myopathy is estimated to have an incidence of 1 in 4000.[353] Among all the mitochondrial functions, abnormalities in electron transport and oxidative phosphorylation are the most common causes of mitochondrial myopathies.[354] Mitochondrial myopathies are characterized by proximal muscle weakness. Common laboratory findings include a very high lactate to pyruvate ratio (50-250:1 instead of a normal ratio of <25:1), increased blood levels of free carnitine, and occasionally low levels of folate (for instance in Kearns-Sayre syndrome). The hallmark of mitochondrial myopathies is the "ragged red fiber" when muscle biopsy specimens are stained with modified Gomori trichrome stain,[355] and specific defects in the activity of these enzymes have been demonstrated in patients with mitochondrial disease.[356] Fatigue and poor stamina are prominent clinical features. Movement disorders such as ataxia, dystonia, myoclonus, chorea, athetosis, and tremors have also been described as being due to mitochondrial abnormalities.[356] CT and MRI scans of the brain may be very helpful—for example, patients with MELAS demonstrate basal ganglia calcifications and stroke-like patterns not confined to vascular territories.[357] Clinical features of two relatively common encephalomyopathies, MELAS and MERRF, are briefly discussed below.

MITOCHONDRIAL MYOPATHY, ENCEPHALOPATHY, LACTIC ACIDOSIS, AND STROKE-LIKE EPISODES

MELAS is the most common mitochondrial encephalomyopathy. Onset is most commonly before age 20. Seizures are common and stroke-like episodes ("stroke-like" because they do not conform to vascular distributions) may produce hemiparesis, hemianopia, and cortical blindness. Any patient with a stroke below the age of 40 should be worked up for MELAS. Associated findings include diabetes mellitus, hearing loss, pituitary and thyroid hypofunction, and lack of secondary sexual characteristics. In its full expression, MELAS leads to dementia, a bedridden state, and death. There is no specific treatment.[358]

MYOCLONIC EPILEPSY WITH RAGGED RED FIBERS

MERRF is a multisystem disorder characterized by myoclonus, generalized epilepsy, ataxia, and ragged red fibers on muscle biopsy. Other clinical features may include hearing loss, peripheral neuropathy, optic atrophy, dementia, short stature, and exercise intolerance.[359] Cardiomyopathy is occasionally present. Laboratory features include an increased lactate at rest and exercise, and a myopathic picture on EMG and electroencephalogram showing generalized spike and wave discharges with background slowing. Only supportive treatment is available.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

The anesthesiologist may be involved in the care of patients with mitochondrial disease in multiple situations—often in the setting of obtaining a muscle biopsy in a child with an undiagnosed myopathy.[360] These patients may also present for surgery for procedures related to the disease (such as implantation of a permanent pacemaker in a patient with KSS[361]), for incidental medical problems, as well as in the labor and delivery suite for labor analgesia.[362] The diversity of clinical presentations encountered in the mitochondrial myopathies discourages a "one size fits all" approach to anesthesia. Rather, each patient should be thoroughly evaluated and the anesthetic plan tailored to the patient's specific needs.

PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION

Given the heterogeneous types of mitochondrial disease, patients with mitochondrial disease will need a comprehensive preoperative evaluation with a particular focus on neurologic, cardiac, respiratory, musculoskeletal, endocrinopathic, and metabolic compromise. An ECG and echocardiogram should be considered in patients with signs and symptoms of cardiomyopathy or conduction defects (or both). Although normal lactate and glucose levels cannot rule out mitochondrial diseases, laboratory studies consisting of glucose, electrolytes with anion gap, complete blood count, blood urea nitrogen, lactate, pyruvate, ammonia, CK, biotinidase, acyl carnitines, and blood and urine amino and organic acids could be used as initial investigation for suspected mitochondrial disorders.[363] Further workup should include an erythrocyte sedimentation rate, glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA_{1C}), liver and renal profiles, thyroid function tests, arterial blood gas, and urinalysis.[353,356] Multidisciplinary consultation with special laboratory and imaging studies may be required.[356]

INDUCTION AND MAINTENANCE OF ANESTHESIA

Anesthesia has a significant impact on mitochondrial function. Both barbiturates and propofol inhibit complex I of the electron transport chain.[363] Local anesthetics have been demonstrated to disrupt oxidative phosphorylation and decrease the bioenergetic capacity of mitochondria.[363] Sensitivity to intravenous barbiturates and etomidate has been reported.[364,365] Fortunately, notwithstanding the potential pitfalls mentioned above, almost every anesthetic technique has been safely used in patients with mitochondrial disease.[366,367] Midazolam,[368] thiopental,[369] propofol,[370,371] remifentanil,[372] and ketamine[371] have all been used safely. Notably, propofol and midazolam are known to inhibit the mitochondrial respiratory chain in a dose-dependent manner.[373] Indeed, mitochondrial dysfunction has been postulated as a mechanism for the propofol infusion syndrome.[374] It is safe to use propofol as an anesthetic induction agent, but the use of a propofol infusion for long periods should probably be avoided.

Premedication should avoid respiratory depression caused by impaired respiratory responses to hypoxemia. Volatile agents such as halothane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane have been shown to inhibit complex I.[363] This direct inhibition of mitochondrial electron transport system enzymes and altered mitochondrial bioenergetics in the heart were thought to be the mechanism of cardiac preconditioning by volatile anesthetics.[375,376] Inhaled sevoflurane has been widely used for induction because of its low pungency.[377] In some cases, halothane[368] and isoflurane[368,378] have also been used. Isoflurane has been recommended as the agent of choice in patients with Kearns-Sayre syndrome because rhythm disturbances have been reported with halothane in such patients.[368,378] In addition, artificial pacing capability is recommended when dealing with this specific subset of patients.[377] With use of the bispectral index, higher sensitivity to volatile agents has been suggested in children with mitochondrial diseases, especially with dysfunction of complex I.[379] However, its methodology has been criticized.[380] A decreased minimum alveolar concentration of halothane in patients with mental retardation has also been reported.[381]

Despite no real evidence and the fact that volatile anesthetics are frequently the anesthetic of choice when muscle relaxants are considered, several papers have expressed concern that these myopathies are associated with increased sensitivity to MH. This conclusion is not supported by any data. Increased sensitivity to nondepolarizing muscle relaxants has been documented for mivacurium,[382] atracurium,[383] and rocuronium.[383,384] In contrast, normal responses to depolarizing and nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers such as pancuronium,[385] vecuronium,[386] and atracurium[370,387] are also reported. Although muscle relaxants are not absolutely contraindicated based on current literature and research, it is necessary for anesthesia practitioners to cautiously administer depolarizing or nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers to those patients with mitochondrial diseases and to use neuromuscular monitoring.[353] Presently, there is no evidence to support an association between MH and mitochondrial disease. However, it may be prudent to avoid succinylcholine in patients with extensive myopathy to minimize the risk of hyperkalemia, although the safe use of succinylcholine has been documented in at least one patient with KSS.[385]

Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs[377] and regional techniques consisting of local,[377,388] spinal,[389] and epidural administration have been reported. However, it is suggested that regional anesthesia be performed when neurologic abnormalities of the spinal cord and peripheral nerves have definitely been ruled out.[389] Importantly, coagulation function should be assessed because of the possibility of hepatic dysfunction.[377]

Opioids should be used with caution because of the increased risk for respiratory depression and their potential to induce respiratory acidosis in addition to the underlying metabolic acidosis.[377] Because patients with mitochondrial diseases have dysfunctional aerobic metabolism, any increase in the basic metabolic rate should be prevented.[356] Shivering, hypoxia, fasting, and hypotension in such patients may exacerbate the lactic acidosis and should therefore be avoided.[390] Finally, the increased postoperative infection rate in patients with mitochondrial diseases may be due to low hepatic mitochondrial activity, phagocytosis by Kupffer cells, and decreased activity of the reticuloendothelial system.[391]

Perhaps more important than the specific choice of anesthetic agents are the implications of patients' comorbidities and metabolic status. Normothermia should be maintained during surgeries, and intravenous fluids should be warmed to body temperature. Lactated Ringer (LR) should probably be avoided given the risk of preexisting lactic acidosis (although there is no evidence that LR has worsened acidosis when it has been used[366]). There have been multiple reports of hyponatremia (and occasional hyperkalemia) in these patients.[366,392,393] Adrenal insufficiency should be considered in such a picture, particularly when accompanied by hypotension.[366] Finally, these patients are at increased risk of cardiac conduction abnormalities and cardiomyopathy that should be taken into consideration while formulating an anesthetic plan (Box 35.7).

BOX 35.7 **Perioperative Considerations for Patients with Mitochondrial Disease**

1. Carefully assess and document the extent of organ system involvement preoperatively (including cardiac abnormalities in the KSS patients).
2. Minimize fasting period, avoid hypovolemia and glucose store depletion.
3. Minimize perioperative stress that may provoke increased energy requirement.
4. Pay particular attention to perioperative temperature control given that the mitochondrial respiratory chain is responsible for thermogenesis.
5. It is reasonable to administer glucose-containing solutions perioperatively, and to avoid lactate-containing fluids (e.g., lactated Ringer solution), particularly in children who are prone to lactic acidosis.
6. Every class of anesthetic agents is associated with theoretical risk of complications, but both volatile anesthetics and propofol have been successfully used in these patients.
7. Although there is no clear evidence of an association between malignant hyperthermia and mitochondrial disease, it is important to avoid succinylcholine.
8. Neuraxial anesthesia can be considered, but requires careful attention to preoperative neurologic dysfunction.

Myasthenia Gravis

Myasthenia gravis (MG) is an autoimmune disorder of the neuromuscular junction. Autoantibodies against the α-subunit of the muscle-type nicotinic acetylcholine receptor destroy acetylcholine receptors of the neuromuscular junction and cause classic transmission failure with muscle weakness and fatigue. Sparing of other α-subunits of neuronal-type nicotinic acetylcholine receptors provides an explanation for the lack of autonomic or CNS involvement of the disease. The incidence of MG varies between geographic regions, being 1.2 per million in Japan and about 14 per 100,000 in some areas of the United States.[394,395] In younger age groups, females are affected more often than males, whereas in elderly age groups (>60 years), males are more frequently affected.

There is a striking association between MG and hyperplasia of the thymus, with more than 70% of MG patients having thymus hyperplasia and 10% having thymomas.[395] MG may also be seen as a part of a paraneoplastic syndrome.[395]

Typically, patients first report bulbar symptoms consisting of diplopia and ptosis. The bulbar symptoms are often followed by unevenly distributed muscle weakness and fatigue of the extremities and face. Speech and chewing may be affected, as well as pharyngeal function and coordination of swallowing, with a subsequent increased frequency of aspiration of oral contents. The muscle weakness is often

BOX 35.8 Risk Factors of Postoperative Ventilation for Patients with Myasthenia Gravis[396]

Vital capacity <2-2.9 L
Duration of MG >6 years
Pyridostigmine dosage >750 mg/day
History of chronic pulmonary disease
Preoperative bulbar symptoms
History of myasthenic crisis
Intraoperative blood loss >1000 mL
Serum antiacetylcholine receptor antibody >100 nmol/mL
Pronounced decremental response on low frequency repetitive nerve stimulation

MG, Myasthenia gravis.
Modified from Anesthesia for the patient with myasthenia gravis. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/anesthesia-for-the-patient-with-myasthenia-gravis; 2018. Accessed April 8, 2019.

exacerbated during exercise and throughout the course of the day. Apart from the patchy distribution of muscle weakness, symptoms may also vary from day to day, and there may be periods of remission of varying duration.

The diagnosis of MG is made by neurologic examination and testing of the tendency to fatigue and exhibit increased weakness during exercise or repeated contractions. The diagnosis can be confirmed by the Tensilon test (administration of an anticholinesterase, e.g., edrophonium). Improvement is usually seen within 5 minutes after administration of the drug and lasts for about 10 minutes. In addition, electrophysiologic evaluation is often performed and shows a classic decrement in the compound muscle action potential after repetitive nerve stimulation (Box 35.8).[396]

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Ideally, careful neurologic consultation in addition to preoperative evaluation should be performed on MG patients with the aim of optimizing drug therapy and preparing for postoperative care. Pulmonary function tests may be indicated to determine the need for mechanical ventilation postoperatively.[382] In addition, a number of risk factors have been associated with the necessity for postoperative ventilation.

As a general rule, patients should keep taking their anticholinesterase medication and be informed about the possibility of postoperative ventilator support. Succinylcholine can be used if needed for rapid tracheal intubation. However, patients with MG might need larger than normal doses (1.5-2.0 mg/kg body weight) because of the decreased number of functional acetylcholine receptors.[397] On the other hand, as a result of the decrease in cholinesterase activity achieved by anticholinesterase treatment, neuromuscular blocks with succinylcholine or mivacurium are frequently prolonged.[398,399] Traditionally, nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers can be used in patients with MG but should be given with caution because their effects are highly unpredictable and the distribution of muscle weakness is often uneven. Most anesthesiologists used to dose nondepolarizing muscle relaxants in small increments corresponding to 0.1 to 0.2 times the 95% effective dose (ED_{95}) until the desired neuromuscular blocking effect is achieved. Perioperative anticholinesterase treatment will modify the response to traditional reversal agents, because of the already existing acetylcholinesterase block, and in some cases, will reportedly prolong the recovery of neuromuscular function after the administration of a reversal agent.[400] With the adoption of a newly modified γ-cyclodextrin neuromuscular reversal agent, sugammadex, the management of airway and steroidal neuromuscular blockade agents, such as rocuronium or vecuronium, becomes simplified in patients with MG.[401,402]

Sugammadex has a lower affinity to vecuronium than rocuronium; however, the reversal with sugammadex for vecuronium is still very satisfactory because fewer vecuronium molecules are present for equivalent blockade due to its higher potency to rocuronium. Although FDA has not approved its use in pediatric populations, current reported cases were favorable. On a separate note, sugammadex does have conflicting effects on progesterone, cortisol, aldosterone, and testosterone levels and may alter some coagulation parameters such as activated thromboplastin time and prothrombin time, or INR.[403]

Potent volatile anesthetics have been used successfully in MG patients. Because of the impaired margin of safety at the neuromuscular junction, a volatile anesthetic usually provides adequate muscular paralysis to allow most surgical procedures to be performed without the need for a neuromuscular blocking agent. Epidural and spinal anesthesia can be used in MG patients in addition to general anesthesia, provided that muscle function and ventilation are carefully monitored perioperatively. For a more detailed review, see Baraka[404] and Abel and Eisenkraft.[405]

EATON-LAMBERT MYASTHENIC SYNDROME

Eaton-Lambert myasthenic syndrome (ELMS) is an immune-mediated channelopathy caused by decreased release of acetylcholine as a result of autoantibodies against presynaptic voltage-gated calcium channels and other presynaptic elements.[406] Patients with ELMS have muscle weakness and fatigability, generally of the proximal limb muscles, with the lower extremities affected more often than the extraocular and bulbar muscle groups. The syndrome is frequently part of a paraneoplastic phenomenon, usually combined with small cell lung carcinoma. Unlike MG, patients with ELMS are usually worse in the morning with gradual improvement throughout the day. Improvement of muscle function with exercise is due to the accumulation of presynaptic calcium and subsequent improved release of acetylcholine.[407] A minority of patients exhibit autonomic dysfunction. The diagnosis of ELMS is made by careful physical examination combined with clinical electrophysiology showing the typical facilitation of motor action potential with high-frequency nerve stimulation (30-50 Hz). Anticholinesterase treatment has little effect on patients with ELMS. Plasmapheresis, immunoglobulin therapy, and 3,4-diaminopyridine (DAP) result in transient improvement.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

As in patients with MG, those with ELMS should be carefully evaluated for the risk of postoperative respiratory failure and the need for prolonged respiratory monitoring in the postoperative period. Sensitivity to depolarizing and nondepolarizing NMBA is usually increased. In patients treated with DAP or an anticholinesterase agent, reversal of a neuromuscular blockade may be ineffective.

Periodic Paralysis (Hyperkalemic, Hypokalemic, and Normokalemic)

The periodic paralyses are a group of disorders that are characterized by alterations of function in voltage-gated ion channels; hence these diseases are sometimes termed "skeletal muscle channelopathies."[408] The symptomatology of the particular channelopathy depends on the specific ion channel involved and can be divided into three broad categories: (1) chloride channelopathies (myotonia without paralysis e.g., MC, see earlier), (2) sodium channelopathies (myotonia with paralysis, such as hyperkalemic periodic paralysis [HyperPP]), and (3) other cation channelopathies (paralysis without myotonia, such as hypokalemic periodic paralysis [HypoPP]).[409]

HyperPP is an autosomal dominant disorder first described by Tyler and associates in 1951.[320] It is characterized by attacks of flaccid weakness associated with increased serum potassium.[410] Precipitating factors include potassium rich foods, and rest after exercise. In addition, a cold environment, emotional stress, fasting, glucocorticoids, and pregnancy can provoke or worsen the attacks. The paralysis may last for 15 minutes to an hour, with decreased tendon reflexes. In the interictal state, HyperPP is usually associated with mild myotonia that does not impede voluntary movements.[320]

The pathogenesis of HyperPP involves mutations in *SCN4A*, encoding the voltage-gated sodium channel $Na_V1.4$ of mature muscle fibers; and such mutations lead to pathologically increased sodium current and an increased tendency of the muscle fiber to become depolarized.[320,410] Influx of sodium into the muscle is accompanied by simultaneous efflux of potassium and hyperkalemia. Mutant channels exhibit sustained sodium currents that lead to prolonged membrane depolarization, which will then cause myotonia followed by membrane desensitization (or inactivation) and will eventually result in paralysis. In HyperPP patients, serum CK can be elevated, sometimes 5 to 10 times above the normal limit, whereas serum sodium and potassium levels are normal in the interictal state.[320] EMG recordings will often show myotonic discharges during and between attacks. Muscle biopsies may show small peripheral vacuoles in the sarcoplasm. Recent studies supported that normokalemic periodic paralysis is a variant of the HyperPP, not a distinct disease, because all the subjects exhibited clinical and laboratory features of the HyperPP.[411-413] Treatment includes medication with acetazolamide (a carbonic anhydrase inhibitor) and mexiletine (an antiarrhythmic with a mechanism of action similar to lidocaine). Behavioral modification, such as avoiding potassium containing foods, strenuous exercise, fasting, and exposure to cold are also important.[409]

HypoPP is characterized by a decrease in potassium levels in blood. Attacks of HypoPP can be triggered by rigorous exercise, stress, high-carbohydrate or high-salt meals, pregnancy, menstruation, hypothermia, or drugs such as insulin.[414,415] EMG does not usually show myotonia.[410] The severity of attacks is usually greater than those occurring in patients with HyperPP. HypoPP is an autosomal dominant disease with higher penetration in males. The disease is due to loss of function of one of the two different ion channel types: $Ca_V1.1$ and $Na_V1.4$.[410] The most common muscle groups affected are those in the arms and legs; however, the disorder can also affect swallowing and respiratory muscles, which can be fatal in severe cases. The diagnosis of HypoPP is made by laboratory tests demonstrating hypokalemia during attacks and normokalemia between attacks. Mutations in the skeletal muscle voltage-gated calcium channel encoded by *CACNA1S* (HypoPP type 1) and *SCN4A* (HypoPP type 2) have been identified.[313] Theoretical association of HypoPP to MH was made because a few MH patients were known to have mutations in the *CACNA1S*.[313] It is generally accepted that the risk of susceptibility of HypoPP patients to MH is similar to that of the general population. It is still unclear the exact mechanisms that lead to hypokalemic paralysis. It is important to remain aware of the differences in the clinical features between HyperPP and HypoPP. HypoPP is not associated with myotonia, a spontaneous attack is associated with hypokalemia (a diagnostic criterion), potassium is a remedy, and glucose triggers an attack.[409] Treatment is centered on the identification and avoidance of triggers. Potassium administration can be useful in the treatment of an acute attack. The prophylactic medication of choice in HypoPP type 1 is acetazolamide[416]—however, acetazolamide can worsen symptoms in type 2 HypoPP.[417] Such patients may respond to potassium-sparing diuretics such as spironolactone.[418]

Clinically resembling HypoPP, thyrotoxic periodic paralysis (TPP) occurs later in life than HypoPP. It has a strong male predominance, and is much more common in patients of oriental descent. Loss of function mutations in the inward rectifying potassium channel ($K_{ir}2.6$) may be involved in some cases of TPP.[419] The condition responds to antithyroid medications such as methimazole.[409]

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Potassium, cholinesterase inhibitors, and depolarizing muscle relaxants will aggravate the myotonia in HyperPP patients.[320] Prolonged muscle weakness has been reported when succinylcholine is used.[420] Although one third of patients had no signs of myotonia,[421] masseter spasm and respiratory and skeletal muscles stiffness could still occur during intubation and ventilation.[320] Therefore neostigmine and succinylcholine should be contraindicated in HyperPP patients. Nondepolarizing muscle relaxants may be safely used.[422,423] The safe use of both volatile agents and propofol has been documented.[422-424] Ideally, all patients with HyperPP need to be admitted preoperatively so that proper preoperative fasting can be accompanied by the administration of dextrose-containing potassium-free maintenance fluid.[423] Postoperatively, HyperPP patients may remain paralyzed for up to several hours. Preventive measures such as maintaining normal body temperature and low serum potassium levels and avoiding hypoglycemia are helpful in limiting such paralysis.[422] Although patients with sodium channel pathology have often been considered to be susceptible to MH, there is no increased risk for MH in these patients.[314] General anesthesia with and without nondepolarizing muscle relaxants has been shown to have satisfactory outcomes.[420,422,423,425,426] Regional techniques may also be appropriate for this patient group.[421,425,426] Abortion of the hyperkalemic attack may be accomplished by administering glucose, insulin, epinephrine, and calcium supplements, or, alternatively, glucagon may be used. β-Adrenergic treatment with metaproterenol has also been shown to prevent attacks and facilitate recovery.[423]

Management of HypoPP patients should focus on avoiding triggers and medications causing a shift of potassium. General anesthesia, postoperative stress, glucose-containing intravenous solutions, and long-acting neuromuscular blockers are associated with postoperative paralytic events.[414] Patients with HypoPP undergoing general anesthesia have been reported to exhibit weakness and respiratory distress in the postoperative period.[427,428] While safe use of intermediate and short-acting nondepolarizing muscle relaxants, such as atracurium and mivacurium, have been documented,[429-431] and it is probably prudent to avoid long-acting muscle relaxants.[432] Epidural analgesia has been shown to reduce both pain-related hyperventilation and serum catecholamines, thereby minimizing changes in serum potassium levels.[414] The sympathomimetic effect of epinephrine-containing local anesthetics may also precipitate hypokalemia.[414] Unlike HyperPP, an association between HypoPP and MH cannot be categorically ruled out,[433] although the use of isoflurane in HypoPP has been reported.[431] There are a number of reports of MH-like metabolic crises in patients with HypoPP.[434-436] Contracture-like responses to succinylcholine have also been described.[437] In one of the above descriptions, it seemed likely that there were two unrelated mutations conferring both HypoPP and sensitivity to MH in the same patient.[436] Therefore while the probability of MH in a given patient with HypoPP is likely to be remote, it cannot be ruled out, and the safest course might be the use of a nontriggering anesthetic. If volatile agents are used, they should be used with extra vigilance.[433]

Summary

MH is a subclinical myopathy featuring an eerie and erratic metabolic mayhem that is unmasked on exposure to potent volatile anesthetics or succinylcholine. Skeletal muscle acutely and unexpectedly increases its sarcoplasmic Ca^{2+} concentration, thereby leading to increased oxygen consumption and lactate production, and resulting in greater heat production, respiratory and metabolic acidosis, muscle rigidity, sympathetic stimulation, and increased cellular permeability. MHS skeletal muscle differs from normal muscle in that it is always closer to loss of control of Ca^{2+} concentration within the muscle fiber, and it can involve a generalized alteration in cellular or subcellular membrane permeability. This is an EC coupling defect resulting from an alteration in protein-protein interaction in the CRU. It is a homozygous, single point mutation of *RyR1* in swine and a heterozygous disorder in humans, in whom there may also be a modification of RyR1 protein function by interacting structures, membranes, or enzymes. Diagnosis rests on acute awareness of the signs and symptoms of this syndrome, of which hyperthermia is a late sign. Specific treatment includes administration of dantrolene to lower muscle Ca^{2+} levels, and symptomatic treatment consists of reversal of the acid-base and temperature changes. Evaluation of affected families is guided by analysis of drug-induced muscle contractures (by European IVCT and North American CHCT protocols) and genetic testing of DNA samples. General or regional anesthesia is safe for patients susceptible to MH, provided that care is taken to specially prepare the anesthesia machine and avoid all potent volatile anesthetics and succinylcholine. Research on MH has yielded insight into the physiology of metabolism and into the molecular biology of genetic muscle disorders. Challenges that remain include identification of all genetic mutations responsible for human MH, elucidation of the mechanism that links exposure to subsequent loss of control of Ca^{2+}, development of noninvasive and nondestructive testing for susceptibility, and determination of the mode of action of dantrolene.

Acknowledgment

This chapter is a consolidation of two chapters in the 8th edition, Chapter 42, Neuromuscular Disorders and other Genetic Disorders and Chapter 43, Malignant Hyperthermia and Muscle-Related Disorders. The editors, publisher, and the returning authors, would like to thank the following authors: Aranya Bagchi, Richa Saxena, and Diptiman Bose for their contributions to the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Lerman J. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(suppl 1):i79.
2. Rosenberg H, Pollock N, Schiemann A, Bulger T, Stowell K. Malignant hyperthermia: a review. *Orphanet J Rare Dis*. 2015;10:93.
3. Sumitani M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:84.
4. Suyama H, et al. *J Anesth*. 2002;16:207.
5. Monnier N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1067.
6. Brady JE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1162.
7. Yuen B, et al. *FASEB J*. 2012;26:1311.
8. Rosenberg H, Shutack JG. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1996;6:87.
9. Rosenberg H, et al. *Orphanet J Rare Dis*. 2007;2:21.
10. Robinson R, et al. *Hum Mutat*. 2006;27:977.
11. Harrison GG, Isaacs H. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:54.
12. Gronert BJ, Antognini JF. Malignant hyperthermia. In: Miller RD, ed. *Anesthesia*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1994:1075.
13. Ombrédanne L. *Rev Med Française*. 1929;10:617.
14. Denborough MA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1962;34:395.
15. Kalow W, et al. *Lancet*. 1970;296:895.
16. Britt BA, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1969;16:89.
17. Ball RA, et al. *Vet Med Small Anim Clin*. 1973;68:1156.
18. Briskey EJ. *Adv Food Res*. 1964;13:89.
19. Hall LW, et al. *Br Med J*. 1966;2:1305.
20. Fujii J, et al. *Science*. 1991;253:448.
21. Harrison GG. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47:62.
22. Kolb ME, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:254.
23. Lopez JR, et al. *Acta Cient Venez*. 1985;36:102.
24. Lopez JR, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 1986;9:85.
25. Lopez JR, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 1988;11:82.
26. Lopez JR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:711.
27. Choi RH, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2017;114:4811.
28. Cherednichenko G, et al. *Molecular Pharmacology*. 2008;73:1203.
29. Pessah IN, et al. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 1985;128:449.

30. Pessah IN, et al. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 1986;139:235.
31. MacKenzie AE, et al. *Am J Hum Genet*. 1990;46:1082.
32. Otsu K, et al. *Genomics*. 1993;17:507.
33. Sorrentino V, et al. *Genomics*. 1993;18:163.
34. Collins JH. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 1991;178:1288.
35. Jayaraman T, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1992;267:9474.
36. Lam E, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270:26511.
37. Timerman AP, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:20385.
38. Beam KG, et al. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1989;560:127.
39. Tanabe T, et al. *Nature*. 1990;346:567.
40. Nakai J, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1998;273:24983.
41. Nakai J, et al. *Two Regions of the Ryanodine Receptor Involved in Coupling with L-Type Ca2+ Channels*. 1998.
42. Sheridan DC, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2006;103:19760.
43. Flucher BE, Franzini-Armstrong C. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:8101.
44. Cherednichenko G, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:15793.
45. Gaburjakova M, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:16931.
46. Meissner G. *Front Biosci*. 2002;7:d2072.
47. Ward CW, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:5781.
48. Pessah IN, et al. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2010;125:260.
49. Perni S, et al. *De Novo Reconstitution Reveals the Proteins Required for Skeletal Muscle Voltage-Induced Ca(2+) Release*. 2017.
50. Polster A, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2016;113:10986.
51. Cherednichenko G, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2008;73:1203–1212.
52. Yang T, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2007;282:37471.
53. Yang T, et al. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol*. 2007;292:C1591.
54. Eltit JM, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109:7923.
55. Eltit JM, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:38453.
56. Eltit JM, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:7046.
57. Bannister RA, et al. *J Gen Physiol*. 2010;135:629.
58. Esteve E, et al. *J Gen Physiol*. 2010;135:619.
59. Wappler F, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20:528.
60. Yang T, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2003;278:25722.
61. Reuter DA, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:643.
62. Capacchione JF, Muldoon SM. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1065.
63. Pessah IN, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 1987;31:232.
64. Zimanyi I, Pessah IN. *Brain Res*. 1991;561:181.
65. Jona I, et al. *Pflugers Arch*. 2001;441:729.
66. Laver D. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2001;28:675.
67. Laver DR, et al. *J Membr Biol*. 1997;156:213.
68. Voss AA, et al. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 2008;366:988.
69. Lamb GD. *J Muscle Res Cell Motil*. 1993;14:554.
70. Laver DR, et al. *Biophys J*. 1997;73:1913.
71. Barrientos GC, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2012;287:2863.
72. Feng W, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2011;79:420.
73. Chelu MG, et al. *FASEB J*. 2006;20:329.
74. Yang T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:1164.
75. Lopez JR, et al. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol*. 2005;288:C606.
76. Ikemoto N, Yamamoto T. *Front Biosci*. 2002;7:d671.
77. Samso M, et al. *PLoS Biol*. 2009;7:e85.
78. Zalk R, Marks AR. *Ca(2+) Release Channels Join the 'Resolution Revolution'*. 2017.
79. Carpenter D, et al. *BMC Med Genet*. 2009;10:104.
80. Toppin PJ, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57:689.
81. Pirone A, et al. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol*. 2010;299:C1345.
82. Weiss RG, et al. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol*. 2004;287:C1094.
83. Bannister RA, Beam KG. *J Muscle Res Cell Motil*. 2009;30:217.
84. Jones DE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;83:A344.
85. Hurne AM, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2005;280:36994.
86. Bannister RA, et al. *J Gen Physiol*. 2009;133:79.
87. Sultana N, et al. *Development*. 2016;143:1547.
88. Putney JW, et al. *J Cell Sci*. 2001;114:2223.
89. Kurebayashi N, Ogawa Y. *J Physiol*. 2001;533:185.
90. Ma J, Pan Z. *Front Biosci*. 2003;8:d242.
91. Pan Z, et al. *Nat Cell Biol*. 2002;4:379.
92. Zhao X, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281:33477.
93. Desmedt JE, Hainaut K. *J Physiol*. 1977;265:565.
94. Krivickas LS, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 2000;23:529.
95. Yamaguchi N, et al. *J Biochem. (Tokyo)*. 1997;121:432.
96. Paul-Pletzer K, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2002;277:34918.
97. Monnier N, et al. *Am J Hum Genet*. 1997;60:1316.
98. Sambuughin N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:594.
99. Brown RL, et al. *Hum Mol Genet*. 2000;9:1515.
100. Girard T, et al. *Hum Mutat*. 2001;18:357.
101. Brandt A, et al. *Hum Mol Genet*. 1999;8:2055.
102. Rueffert H, et al. *Am J Med Genet A*. 2004;124:248.
103. Robinson R, et al. *Hum Genet*. 2003;112:217.
104. Gillard EF, et al. *Genomics*. 1991;11:751.
105. Sei Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:824.
106. Davis M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:508.
107. Oyamada H, et al. *Jpn J Pharmacol*. 2002;88:159.
108. Yeh HM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1401.
109. Fletcher JE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75:307.
110. Lynch PJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:620.
111. Monnier N, et al. *Hum Mol Genet*. 2003;12:1171.
112. Rueffert H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:240.
113. No authors listed. A protocol for the investigation of malignant hyperpyrexia (MH) susceptibility. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56:1267.
114. Ording H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41:955.
115. Hopkins PM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:531.
116. Larach MG. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:511.
117. Allen GC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:579.
118. Metterlein T, et al. *Cardiovasc Ther*. 2010;28:356.
119. Metterlein T, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 2011;44:208.
120. Gerbershagen MU, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;29:42.
121. Johannsen S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:925.
122. Bendahan D, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:1019.
123. Baur CP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:200.
124. Metterlein T, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28:251.
125. Metterlein T, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2011;77:768.
126. Migita T, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;56:351.
127. Zhou H, et al. *Am J Hum Genet*. 2006;79:859.
128. Urwyler A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:283.
129. Robinson RL, et al. *Hum Mutat*. 2002;20:88.
130. Rueffert H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46:692.
131. Larach MG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:498.
132. Allen GC, Brubaker CL. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1328.
133. Shulman M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:259.
134. Gronert GA. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:395.
135. Hall GM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:270.
136. Denborough M, Hopkinson KC. *Lancet*. 1988;1:191.
137. Bendixen D, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41:480.
138. Larach MG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:771.
139. Gronert GA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:377.
140. Haverkort-Poels PJ, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 1987;10:45.
141. Denborough MA, et al. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)*. 1988;296:1442.
142. Hackl W, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:138.
143. Hopkins PM, et al. *Lancet*. 1991;338:1491.
144. Kochling A, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1998;26:315.
145. Reynolds AC, et al. *Lancet*. 1981;2:303.
146. Gronert GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;47:411.
147. Gronert GA, White DA. *Pflugers Arch*. 1988;411:226.
148. Wappler F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:95.
149. Anetseder M, et al. *Neurology*. 1994;44:2393.
150. Ryan JF, Tedeschi LG. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:66.
151. *Adverse Effects of Heat and Exercise in Relation to MH Susceptibility*. 2018. https://www.mhaus.org/healthcare-professionals/mhaus-recommendations/adverse-effects-of-heat-and-exercise-in-relation-to-mh-susceptibility/.
152. Butler-Browne GS, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 1988;11:610.
153. Morgan DL, Proske U. *Physiol Rev*. 1984;64:103.
154. van der Spek AF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:21.
155. Magee KR, Shy GM. *Brain*. 1956;79:610.
156. Norwood FL, et al. *Brain*. 2009;132:3175.
157. Jungbluth H, et al. *Semin Pediatr Neurol*. 2011;18:239.
158. Engel AG, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1971;46:666.
159. Klingler W, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1167.
160. Koch BM, et al. *Arch Neurol*. 1985;42:1204.
161. Osada H, et al. *Gynecol Obstet Invest*. 2004;58:32.
162. Allanson JE. Noonan syndrome. *J Med Genet*. 1987;24:9–13.
163. Benca J, Hogan K. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1049.
164. Briggs BJ, Dickerman JD. *Pediatr Blood Cancer*. 2012;58:167.
165. Tartaglia M, et al. *Mol Syndromol*. 2010;1:2.
166. Hunter A, Pinsky L. *J Pediatr*. 1975;86:412.
167. Sharathkumar AA. *Pediatr Blood Cancer*. 2012;59:592.
168. Bajwa SJ, et al. *Saudi J Anaesth*. 2011;5:345.
169. Dadabhoy ZP, Winnie AP. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:636.
170. Campbell AM, Bousfield JD. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:131.
171. McBain J, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:274.

172. Isaacs H, Badenhorst ME. *Muscle Nerve*. 1992;15:740.
173. Heiman-Patterson TD, et al. *Pediatr Neurol*. 1986;2:175.
174. King JO, Denborough MA. *J Pediatr*. 1973;83:37.
175. McPherson EW, Taylor CA. *Am J Med Genet*. 1981;8:159.
176. Kaplan AM, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1977;91:431.
177. Isaacs H, Barlow MB. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45:901.
178. Isaacs H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45:860.
179. Isaacs H, Barlow MB. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1973;36:228.
180. Reed W, et al. *Blood*. 2003;101:351.
181. Habib AS, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:589.
182. D'Arcy CE, et al. *Neurology*. 2008;71:776.
183. Dowling JJ, et al. *Neuromuscul Disord*. 2011;21:420.
184. Glahn KP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:417.
185. Birgenheier N, et al. *Anesth Analg* 112:1363.
186. Kugler Y, Russell WJ. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2011;39:84.
187. Rosenberg H. *Anesthesiol*. 2010;20. News.
188. Flewellen EH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:275.
189. Brandom BW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1115.
190. Oh ST, et al. *J Surg Res*. 1997;71:79.
191. Korolkiewicz RP, et al. *J Physiol Pharmacol*. 2000;51:821.
192. Gener B, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2010;125:e1514.
193. Lerman J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:625.
194. Burkman JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:901; quiz 1077.
195. Hopkins PM. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:893.
196. Gallant EM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:601.
197. Harrison GG, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1988;16:197.
198. Migita T, et al. *J Anesth*. 2012;26:579.
199. Metterlein T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1174.
200. Choi RH, et al. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*; 2017:4811.
201. Larach MG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:94.
202. Wong CA, Denholm B. *Anesthsiol News*. 2011;17.
203. Aderibigbe T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:1333.
204. Maccani RM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:790.
205. McGraw TT, Keon TP. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36:530.
206. Whitty RJ, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56:497.
207. Crawford MW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:289.
208. Prinzhausen H, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:885.
209. Petroz GC, Lerman J. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:941.
210. Brunner HW, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:1118.
211. Shanahan H, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29:229.
212. Gunter JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1936.
213. Jones C, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2012;40:490.
214. Schonell LH, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2003;31:58.
215. Feldman JM. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:434; author reply 6.
216. Block FE. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1270.
217. Jantzen JP, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 1989;38:639.
218. Preparation of Anesthesia Workstations to Anesthetize MH Susceptible Patients. https://www.mhaus.org/healthcare-professionals/mhaus-recommendations/preparation-of-anesthesia-workstations-to-anesthetize-mh-susceptible-patients/. Accessed 30.05.18.
219. Criteria for a recommended standard. *Occupational Exposure to Waste Anesthetic Gases and Vapors*; 1977. http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/pdfs/77-140a.pdf
220. Anesthetic Gases. *Guidelines for Workplace Exposures*; 2000. https://www.osha.gov/dts/osta/anestheticgases/index.html
221. Anetseder M, et al. *Lancet*. 2003;362:494.
222. Bina S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:90.
223. Schuster F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:616.
224. Schuster F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:468.
225. Bina S, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;25:48.
226. Girard T, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:48077.
227. Litman RS, Rosenberg H. *JAMA*. 2005;293:2918.
228. McKinney LC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1191.
229. Ording H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:341.
230. Sei Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1052.
231. Gareau PJ, et al. *Free Radic Res Commun*. 1993;19:43.
232. Payen JF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:848.
233. Nanson JK, Sheikh A. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2000;9:276.
234. Stowell K, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35:454.
235. Girard T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1353.
236. Suggested guidelines for management of the pregnant-patient not believed to be at risk for MH, but whose partners is susceptible to malignant hyperthermia. 2009. https://www.mhaus.org/healthcare-professionals/mhaus-recommendations/parturient-with-mhs-partner/.
237. Tombul T, et al. *Acta neurologica Belgica*. 2011;111:116.
238. Freedman MS, et al. *Arch Neurol*. 2005;62:865.
239. Bader AM, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1988;1:21.
240. Staikou C, Rekatsina M. *Saudi J Anaesth*. 2017;11:472.
241. Bornemann-Cimenti H, et al. *Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2016;67:404.
242. Ludolph AC, et al. *Curr Opin Neurol*. 2012;25:530.
243. Rothstein JD. *Cell*. 2017;171:725.
244. Shimizu T, et al. *Neurology*. 2000;54:1534.
245. You TM, Kim S. *J Dent Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;17:235.
246. Rosenbaum KJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:638.
247. Jacobs BC, et al. *Neurology*. 1998;51:1110.
248. Lawn ND, et al. *Arch Neurol*. 2001;58:893.
249. Asbury AK. *Arch Neurol*. 1981;(suppl 9):1.
250. Hughes RA, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;7:CD002063.
251. Asahina M, et al. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 2002;105:44.
252. McGrady EM. *Anaesthesia*. 1987;42:899.
253. Steiner I, et al. *Neurology*. 1985;35:1473.
254. Brooks H, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:894.
255. Zochodne DW, et al. *Brain*. 1987;110(Pt 4):819.
256. Bolton CF. *Muscle Nerve*. 2005;32:140.
257. Dodson BA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23:815.
258. Hermans G, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2007;175:480.
259. Gronert GA. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:547.
260. O'Neill GN. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2006;44:107.
261. Rudnik-Schneborn S, et al. Spinal muscular atrophies. In Engel A, Franzini-Armstrong C, eds: *Myology*, 3rd ed, New York: McGraw-Hill; 20041845.
262. Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease. Genetics, clinical features, and diagnosis. *UpToDate*. 2018. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/charcot-marie-tooth-disease-genetics-clinical-features-and-diagnosis.
263. Ginz HF, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2001;50:767.
264. Gratarola A, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 1998;64:357.
265. Sugino S, et al. *Masui*. 2002;51:1016.
266. Baur CP, et al. *Anasthesiol Intensivmed Notfallmed Schmerzther*. 2002;37:125.
267. Antognini JF. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:398.
268. Baranov D, et al. Neurological diseases. In: Fleisher L, ed. *Anesthesia and Uncommon Diseases*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2006.
269. Pogson D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:914.
270. Naguib M, Samarkandi AH. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45:56.
271. Schmitt HJ, Munster T. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:984.
272. Reah G, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53:586.
273. Scull T, Weeks S. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:1150.
274. Sugai K, Sugai Y. *Masui*. 1989;38:688.
275. Tanaka S, et al. *Masui*. 1994;43:931.
276. Schmitt HJ, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51:1049.
277. Dubowitz V. *Muscle Disorders in Childhood*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1995.
278. Dalakas M, et al. The muscular dystrophies. In: Barnes P, Hilton-Jones D, eds. *Myopathies in Clinical Practice*. 1st ed. London: Martin Dunitz; 2003.
279. *Muscular Dystrophy*. 2017. https://emedicine.medscape.com/article/1259041-overview.
280. Emery A. *Neuromuscul Disord*. 1991;1:19.
281. Sano M, et al. *Jinrui Idengaku Zasshi*. 1987;32:257.
282. Urban M, Lahlou S. Muscle diseases. In Fleisher L, ed. *Anesthesia and Uncommon Diseases*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2006:303.
283. Hoffman E. *Cell*. 1987;51:919.
284. Leibowitz D, Dubowitz V. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 1981;23:577.
285. Finsterer J, Stollberger C. *Cardiology*. 2003;99:1.
286. Perloff JK, et al. *Circulation*. 1984;(69):33.
287. Morris P. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1997;7:1.
288. Hahn A, et al. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1997;78:1.
289. Ames WA, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15:3.
290. Kawaai H, et al. *Anesth Prog*. 2005;52:12.
291. Molyneux MK. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2005;14:58.
292. Angermann C, et al. *Z Kardiol*. 1986;75:542.
293. Smith CL, Bush GH. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:1113.
294. Webster R. *Respiratory Function as a Measure of Muscle Strength in Young Boys with Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy*. School of Women and Children's Health, University of N.S.W; 2003.
295. Stevens RD. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2001;14:693.
296. Breucking E, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2000;49:187.

297. Benson ER, et al. *Spine*. 1998;23:2308.
298. Miller F, et al. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 1992;34:775.
299. Jenkins JG, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1982;10:645.
300. Stoelting R, Dierdorf S. In: *Anesthesia and Co-Existing Disease*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2002:505.
301. Gurnaney H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1043.
302. Farell PT. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1994;22:597.
303. Schummer W, Schummer C. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:149.
304. Ririe DG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:351.
305. Yemen TA, McClain C. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16:105.
306. Fairfield MC. *Anaesthesia*. 1993;48:1013.
307. Murat I, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:249.
308. Kirschner J, Bonnemann CG. *Arch Neurol*. 2004;61:189.
309. Moro C, et al. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2007;26:359.
310. Egi M, et al. *Masui*. 2002;51:196.
311. Pash MP, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:959.
312. Myotonic dystrophy. *Etiology, Clinical Features, and Diagnosis*. 2018. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/myotonic-dystrophy-etiology-clinical-features-and-diagnosis.
313. Parness J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1054.
314. Lehmann-Horn F, Iaizzo PA. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65:692.
315. Mathieu J, et al. *Neurology*. 1997;49:1646.
316. Matsuki Y, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28:145.
317. Stourac P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:657.
318. Ahmed S, et al. *Cardiol Res*. 2018;9:50.
319. Catena V, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2007;73:475.
320. Lehmann-Horn F, et al. Nondystrophic myotonias and periodic paralyses. In: Engel A, Franzini-Armstrong C, eds. *Myology*. 3rd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2004:1257–1300.
321. Farbu E, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:630.
322. Newberg LA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:57.
323. Beck CL, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:11248.
324. Rosenbaum HK. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2002;20:623.
325. North K. Congenital myopathies. In: Engel A, Franzini-Armstrong C, eds. *Myology*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2004:1473.
326. Herman GE, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1999;134:206.
327. Breslin D, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:471.
328. Costi D, van der Walt JH. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14:964.
329. Garcia-Aguado R, et al. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 1994;41:302.
330. Gottschalk A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1018.
331. Schmid E. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16:218.
332. Tokarz A, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2002;19:842.
333. Dorchies OM, et al. *Neuromuscul Disord*. 2001;11:736.
334. Glucose-6-phosphatase deficiency (glycogen storage disease I, von Gierke disease). 2018. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/glucose-6-phosphatase-deficiency-glycogen-storage-disease-i-von-gierke-disease. Accessed 30.05.18.
335. Rake JP, et al. *Eur J Pediatr*. 2002;161(suppl 1):S112.
336. Visser G, et al. *Eur J Pediatr*. 2002;161(suppl 1):S120.
337. Kakinohana M, et al. *Masui*. 1998;47:1104.
338. Kawai T. *Masui*. 2005;54:924.
339. Loonen MC, et al. *Neurology*. 1981;31:1209.
340. Engel A, et al. Acid maltase deficiency. In: Engel A, Franzini-Armstrong C, eds. *Myology*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2004:1559.
341. Type II glycogen storage disease (pompe disease). https://emedicine.medscape.com/article/119506-overview. 2017.
342. Ehlers KH, et al. *Circulation*. 1962;25:96.
343. Bulkley BH, Hutchins GM. *Am Heart J*. 1978;96:246.
344. Weinik M, King F. Acid maltase deficiency myopathy. *eMedicine*. 2012.
345. Makos MM, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 1987;22:629.
346. Gitlin MC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:392.
347. Kotani N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:182.
348. Ing RJ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14:514.
349. McFarlane HJ, Soni N. *Anaesthesia*. 1986;41:1219.
350. Mohiddin SA, Fananapazir L. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2002;29:290.
351. DiMauro S, Bonilla E. Mitochondrial encephalomyopathies. In: Engel A, Franzini-Armstrong C, eds. *Myology*. 3rd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2004:1623.
352. Siciliano G, et al. *Biosci Rep*. 2007;27:53.
353. Wisely NA, Cook PR. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2001;18:333.
354. Mehndiratta MM, et al. *Neurol India*. 2002;50:162.
355. Swash M, et al. *J Neurol Sci*. 1978;38:347.
356. Shipton EA, Prosser DO. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21:173.
357. Swash M, et al. *J Neurol Sci*. 1978;38:347.
358. Amato AA, Brown RH. Muscle dystrophies and other muscle diseases. In: Longo DL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, Hauser SL, Jameson JL, eds. *Harrison's Priciples of Internal Medicine*. 18th ed. McGraw-Hill; 2012.
359. DiMauro S, Bonilla E. Mitochondrial encephalomyopathies. In: Engel AG, Franzini-Armstrong C, eds. *Myology*. 3rd ed. McGraw-Hill; 2004:1623–1662.
360. Allison KR. Muscular dystrophy versus mitochondrial myopathy: the dilemma of the undiagnosed hypotonic child. In: *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2007; 17:1–6.
361. Hara K, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2004;16:539.
362. Maurtua M, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2008;17:370.
363. Levy E, Muravchick S. Mitochondrial diseases. In: Fleisher L, ed. *Anesthesia and Uncommon Diseases*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2006:455.
364. James RH. *Anaesthesia*. 1985;40:88.
365. James RH. *Anaesthesia*. 1986;41:216.
366. Gurrieri C, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58:751.
367. Footitt EJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:436.
368. Driessen J, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17:16.
369. Burns AM, Shelly MP. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44:975.
370. Kelly A, O'Connor M. *Anaesthesia*. 1990;45:596.
371. Ramchandra DS, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:474.
372. Guasch E, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58:607.
373. Sharma AD, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11:488.
374. Vanlander AV, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56:520.
375. Stowe DF, Kevin LG. *Antioxid Redox Signal*. 2004;6:439.
376. Stadnicka A, et al. *J Anesth*. 2007;21:212.
377. Wallace JJ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1998;8:249–254.
378. Lauwers MH, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49:876.
379. Morgan PG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1268.
380. Allen GC. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:282.
381. Frei FJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52:1056.
382. Naguib M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:1506.
383. Finsterer J, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45:781.
384. Sharma AD, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11:488.
385. D'Ambra MN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51:343.
386. Wiesel S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:696.
387. Rowe RW, Helander E. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:295.
388. Rosaeg OP, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1994;43:403.
389. Hsiao PN, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Sin*. 2000;38:107.
390. Sasano N, et al. *J Anesth*. 2007;21:72.
391. Farag E, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:958.
392. Sasano N, et al. *J Anesth*. 2009;23:587.
393. Kubota H, et al. *J Child Neurol*. 2005;20:116.
394. Vincent A, et al. *Lancet*. 2001;357:2122.
395. Lindstrom JM. *Muscle Nerve*. 2000;23:453.
396. Anesthesia for the patient with myasthenia gravis. 2018. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/anesthesia-for-the-patient-with-myasthenia-gravis. Accessed April 8, 2019.
397. Eisenkraft JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:760.
398. Baraka A. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:217.
399. Seigne RD, Scott RP. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:468.
400. Kim JM, Mangold J. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;63:497.
401. Sungur Ulke Z, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2013;57:745.
402. de Boer HD, et al. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 2010;57:181.
403. *BRIDION(R) (sugammadex) Injection - First and Only Selective Relaxant Binding Agent - Approved in European Union*. 2008. http://www.evaluategroup.com/Universal/View.aspx?type=Story&id=160887.
404. Baraka A. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:227
405. Abel M, Eisenkraft JB. *Mt Sinai J Med*. 2002;69:31.
406. Takamori M, et al. *Neurosci Res*. 2000;36:183.
407. Hewett SJ, Atchison WD. *Brain Res*. 1991;566:320.
408. Burge JA, Hanna MG. *Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep*. 2012;12:62.
409. Lehmann-Horn F, Rudel R, Jurkat-Rott K. Nondystrophic myotonias and periodic paralyses. In: Engel AG, Franzini-Armstrong C, eds. *Myology*. McGraw-Hill; 2004:1257–1300.
410. Jurkat-Rott K, Lehmann-Horn F. *J Neurol*. 2006;253:1391.
411. Chinnery PF, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 2002;52:251.
412. Song YW, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 2012;46:914.
413. Vicart S, et al. *Neurology*. 2004;63:2120.
414. Viscomi CM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:1081.
415. Robinson JE, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47:160.
416. Griggs RC, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1970;73:39.
417. Bendahhou S, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 2001;50:417.
418. LoVecchio F, Jacobson S. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 1997;15:605.

419. Lin SH, Huang CL. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2012;23:985.
420. Depoix JP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:302.
421. Aouad R, Atanassoff PG. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51:92.
422. Ashwood EM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:579.
423. Aarons JJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:303.
424. Cone AM, Sansome AJ. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:1097.
425. Weller JF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:259.
426. Barker MC. *AANA J*. 2012;78:191.
427. Siler JN, Discavage WJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43:489.
428. Melnick B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:263.
429. Rooney RT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:782.
430. Hofer C, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:1082.
431. Chitra S, Korula G. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2009;53:226.
432. Viscomi CM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:1081.
433. Parness J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1054.
434. Lambert C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:1012.
435. Rajabally YA, El Lahawi M. *Muscle Nerve*. 2002;25:453.
436. Marchant CL, et al. *Muscle Nerve*. 2004;30:114.
437. Neuman GG, Kopman AF. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:426.

References

1. Lerman J. Perioperative management of the paediatric patient with coexisting neuromuscular disease. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(suppl 1):i79–89.
2. Rosenberg H, Pollock N, Schiemann A, Bulger T, Stowell K. Malignant hyperthermia: a review. *Orphanet J Rare Dis*. 2015;10:93.
3. Sumitani M, Uchida K, Yasunaga H, et al. Prevalence of malignant hyperthermia and relationship with anesthetics in Japan: data from the diagnosis procedure combination database. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:84–90.
4. Suyama H, Kawamoto M, Yuge O. Prevention and treatment of malignant hyperthermia in certified training hospitals in Japan: a questionnaire. *J Anesth*. 2002;16:207–210.
5. Monnier N, Krivosic-Horber R, Payen JF, et al. Presence of two different genetic traits in malignant hyperthermia families: implication for genetic analysis, diagnosis, and incidence of malignant hyperthermia susceptibility. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1067–1074.
6. Brady JE, Sun LS, Rosenberg H, Li G. Prevalence of malignant hyperthermia due to anesthesia in New York State, 2001-2005. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1162–1166.
7. Yuen B, Boncompagni S, Feng W, et al. Mice expressing T4826I-RYR1 are viable but exhibit sex- and genotype-dependent susceptibility to malignant hyperthermia and muscle damage. *FASEB J*. 2012;26:1311–1322.
8. Rosenberg H, Shutack JG. Variants of malignant hyperthermia. Special problems for the paediatric anaesthesiologist. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1996;6:87–93.
9. Rosenberg H, Davis M, James D, Pollock N, Stowell K. Malignant hyperthermia. *Orphanet J Rare Dis*. 2007;2:21.
10. Robinson R, Carpenter D, Shaw MA, Halsall J, Hopkins P. Mutations in RYR1 in malignant hyperthermia and central core disease. *Human mutation*. 2006;27:977–989.
11. Harrison GG, Isaacs H. Malignant hyperthermia. An historical vignette. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:54–56.
12. Gronert BJ, Antognini JF. Malignant hyperthermia. In: Miller RD, ed. *Anesthesia*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1994:1075–1090.
13. Ombrédanne L. De l'influence de l'anesthésique employé dans la ganèse des accidents post-opératoires de pâleurhyperthermie observés chez les nourrissons. *Rev Med Française*. 1929;10:617.
14. Denborough MA, Forster JF, Lovell RR, Maplestone PA, Villiers JD. Anaesthetic deaths in a family. *Br J Anaesth*. 1962;34:395–396.
15. Kalow W, Britt BA, Terreau ME, Haist C. Metabolic error of muscle metabolism after recovery from malignant hyperthermia. *Lancet*. 1970;296:895–898.
16. Britt BA, Locher WG, Kalow W. Hereditary aspects of malignant hyperthermia. *Can J Anaesth*. 1969;16:89–98.
17. Ball RA, Annis CL, Topel DG, Christian LL. Clinical and laboratory diagnosis of porcine stress syndrome. *Vet Med Small Anim Clin*. 1973;68:1156–1159.
18. Briskey EJ. Etiological status and associated studies of pale, soft, exudative porcine musculature. *Adv Food Res*. 1964;13:89–178.
19. Hall LW, Woolf N, Bradley JW, Jolly DW. Unusual reaction to suxamethonium chloride. *Br Med J*. 1966;2:1305.
20. Fujii J, Otsu K, Zorzato F, et al. Identification of a mutation in porcine ryanodine receptor associated with malignant hyperthermia. *Science*. 1991:448–451.
21. Harrison GG. Control of the malignant hyperpyrexic syndrome in MHS swine by dantrolene sodium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47:62–65.
22. Kolb ME, Horne ML, Martz R. Dantrolene in human malignant hyperthermia. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:254–262.
23. Lopez JR, Alamo LA, Jones D, et al. [Determination of intracellular free calcium concentration, in vivo, in swine susceptible to malignant hyperthermia syndrome]. *Acta Cient Venez*. 1985;36:102–104.
24. Lopez JR, Alamo LA, Jones DE, et al. [Ca2+]i in muscles of malignant hyperthermia susceptible pigs determined in vivo with Ca2+ selective microelectrodes. *Muscle Nerve*. 1986;9:85–86.
25. Lopez JR, Allen PD, Alamo L, Jones D, Sreter FA. Myoplasmic free [Ca2+] during a malignant hyperthermia episode in swine. *Muscle Nerve*. 1988;11:82–88.
26. Lopez JR, Gerardi A, Lopez MJ, Allen PD. Effects of dantrolene on myoplasmic free [Ca2+] measured in vivo in patients susceptible to malignant hyperthermia. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:711–719.
27. Choi RH, Koenig X, Launikonis BS. Dantrolene requires Mg2+ to arrest malignant hyperthermia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2017;114:4811–4815.
28. Cherednichenko G, Ward CW, Feng W, et al. Enhanced excitation-coupled calcium entry in myotubes expressing malignant hyperthermia mutation r163c is attenuated by dantrolene. *Molecular Pharmacology*. 2008;73:1203–1212.
29. Pessah IN, Waterhouse AL, Casida JE. The calcium-ryanodine receptor complex of skeletal and cardiac muscle. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 1985;128:449–456.
30. Pessah IN, Anderson KW, Casida JE. Solubilization and separation of Ca2+-ATPase from the Ca2+-ryanodine receptor complex. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 1986;139:235–243.
31. MacKenzie AE, Korneluk RG, Zorzato F, et al. The human ryanodine receptor gene: its mapping to 19q13.1, placement in a chromosome 19 linkage group, and exclusion as the gene causing myotonic dystrophy. *Am J Hum Genet*. 1990;46:1082–1089.
32. Otsu K, Fujii J, Periasamy M, et al. Chromosome mapping of five human cardiac and skeletal muscle sarcoplasmic reticulum protein genes. *Genomics*. 1993;17:507–509.
33. Sorrentino V, Giannini G, Malzac P, Mattei MG. Localization of a novel ryanodine receptor gene (RYR3) to human chromosome 15q14-q15 by in situ hybridization. *Genomics*. 1993;18:163–165.
34. Collins JH. Sequence analysis of the ryanodine receptor: possible association with a 12K, FK506-binding immunophilin/protein kinase C inhibitor. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 1991;178:1288–1290.
35. Jayaraman T, Brillantes AM, Timerman AP, et al. FK506 binding protein associated with the calcium release channel (ryanodine receptor). *J Biol Chem*. 1992;267:9474–9477.
36. Lam E, Martin MM, Timerman AP, et al. A novel FK506 binding protein can mediate the immunosuppressive effects of FK506 and is associated with the cardiac ryanodine receptor. *J Biol Chem*. 1995;270:26511–26522.
37. Timerman AP, Onoue H, Xin HB, et al. Selective binding of FKBP12.6 by the cardiac ryanodine receptor. *J Biol Chem*. 1996;271:20385–20391.
38. Beam KG, Tanabe T, Numa S. Structure, function, and regulation of the skeletal muscle dihydropyridine receptor. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1989;560:127–137.
39. Tanabe T, Beam KG, Adams BA, Niidome T, Numa S. Regions of the skeletal muscle dihydropyridine receptor critical for excitation-contraction coupling. *Nature*. 1990;346:567–569.
40. Nakai J, Tanabe T, Konno T, Adams B, Beam KG. Localization in the II-III loop of the dihydropyridine receptor of a sequence critical for excitation-contraction coupling. *J Biol Chem*. 1998;273:24983–24986.
41. Nakai J. Sekiguchi N Fau - Rando TA, Rando Ta Fau - Allen PD, Allen Pd Fau - Beam KG, Beam KG. *Two Regions of the Ryanodine Receptor Involved in Coupling with L-Type Ca2+ Channels*. 1998.
42. Sheridan DC, Takekura H, Franzini-Armstrong C, Beam KG, Allen PD, Perez CF. Bidirectional signaling between calcium channels of skeletal muscle requires multiple direct and indirect interactions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci*. 2006;103:19760–19765.
43. Flucher BE, Franzini-Armstrong C. Formation of junctions involved in excitation-contraction coupling in skeletal and cardiac muscle. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:8101–8106.
44. Cherednichenko G, Hurne AM, Fessenden JD, et al. Conformational activation of Ca2+ entry by depolarization of skeletal myotubes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:15793–15798.
45. Gaburjakova M, Gaburjakova J, Reiken S, et al. FKBP12 binding modulates ryanodine receptor channel gating. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:16931–16935.
46. Meissner G. Regulation of mammalian ryanodine receptors. *Front Biosci*. 2002;7:d2072–2080.
47. Ward CW, Feng W, Tu J, Pessah IN, Worley PK, Schneider MF. Homer protein increases activation of Ca2+ sparks in permeabilized skeletal muscle. *J Biol Chem*. 2004;279:5781–5787.
48. Pessah IN, Cherednichenko G, Lein PJ. Minding the calcium store: Ryanodine receptor activation as a convergent mechanism of PCB toxicity. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2010;125:260–285.
49. Perni S, Lavorato M, Beam KG. De Novo Reconstitution Reveals the Proteins Required for Skeletal Muscle Voltage-Induced Ca(2+) Release; 2017.
50. Polster A, Nelson BR, Olson EN, Beam KG. Stac3 has a direct role in skeletal muscle-type excitation contraction coupling that is disrupted by a myopathy-causing mutation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci*. 2016;113:10986–10991.

51. Cherednichenko G, Ward CW, Feng W, et al. Enhanced excitation-coupled calcium entry (ECCE) in myotubes expressing malignant hyperthermia mutation R163C is attenuated by dantrolene. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2008.
52. Yang T, Allen PD, Pessah IN, Lopez JR. Enhanced excitation-coupled calcium entry in myotubes is associated with expression of RYR1 MH mutations. *J Biol Chem*. 2007.
53. Yang T, Esteve E, Pessah IN, Molinski TF, Allen PD, Lopez JR. Elevated resting [Ca(2+)](i) in myotubes expressing malignant hyperthermia RyR1 cDNAs is partially restored by modulation of passive calcium leak from the SR. *Am J Physiol*. 2007;292:C1591–1598.
54. Eltit JM, Bannister RA, Moua O, et al. Malignant hyperthermia susceptibility arising from altered resting coupling between the skeletal muscle L-type Ca2+ channel and the type 1 ryanodine receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109:7923–7928.
55. Eltit JM, Feng W, Lopez JR, et al. Ablation of skeletal muscle triadin impairs FKBP12/RyR1 channel interactions essential for maintaining resting cytoplasmic Ca2+. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:38453–38462.
56. Eltit JM, Li H, Ward CW, et al. Orthograde dihydropyridine receptor signal regulates ryanodine receptor passive leak. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:7046–7051.
57. Bannister RA, Esteve E, Eltit JM, et al. A malignant hyperthermia-inducing mutation in RYR1 (R163C): consequent alterations in the functional properties of DHPR channels. *J Gen Physiol*. 2010;135:629–640.
58. Esteve E, Eltit JM, Bannister RA, et al. A malignant hyperthermia-inducing mutation in RYR1 (R163C): alterations in Ca2+ entry, release, and retrograde signaling to the DHPR. *J Gen Physiol*. 2010;135:619–628.
59. Wappler F, Anetseder M, Baur CP, et al. Multicentre evaluation of in vitro contracture testing with bolus administration of 4-chloro-m-cresol for diagnosis of malignant hyperthermia susceptibility. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20:528–536.
60. Yang T, Ta TA, Pessah IN, Allen PD. Functional defects in six ryanodine receptor isoform-1 (RyR1) mutations associated with malignant hyperthermia and their impact on skeletal excitation-contraction coupling. *J Biol Chem*. 2003;278:25722–25730.
61. Reuter DA, Anetseder M, Muller R, Roewer N, Hartung EJ. The ryanodine contracture test may help diagnose susceptibility to malignant hyperthermia. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:643–648.
62. Capacchione JF, Muldoon SM. The relationship between exertional heat illness, exertional rhabdomyolysis, and malignant hyperthermia. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1065–1069.
63. Pessah IN, Stambuk RA, Casida JE. Ca2+-activated ryanodine binding: mechanisms of sensitivity and intensity modulation by Mg2+, caffeine, and adenine nucleotides. *Mol Pharmacol*. 1987;31:232–238.
64. Zimanyi I, Pessah IN. Pharmacological characterization of the specific binding of [3H]ryanodine to rat brain microsomal membranes. *Brain Research*. 1991;561:181–191.
65. Jona I, Szegedi C, Sarkozi S, Szentesi P, Csernoch L, Kovacs L. Altered inhibition of the rat skeletal ryanodine receptor/calcium release channel by magnesium in the presence of ATP. *Pflugers Arch*. 2001;441:729–738.
66. Laver D. The power of single channel recording and analysis: its application to ryanodine receptors in lipid bilayers. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2001;28:675–686.
67. Laver DR, Baynes TM, Dulhunty AF. Magnesium inhibition of ryanodine-receptor calcium channels: evidence for two independent mechanisms. *J Membr Biol*. 1997;156:213–229.
68. Voss AA, Allen PD, Pessah IN, Perez CF. Allosterically coupled calcium and magnesium binding sites are unmasked by ryanodine receptor chimeras. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 2008;366:988–993.
69. Lamb GD. Ca2+ inactivation, Mg2+ inhibition and malignant hyperthermia. *J Muscle Res Cell Motil*. 1993;14:554–556.
70. Laver DR, Owen VJ, Junankar PR, Taske NL, Dulhunty AF, Lamb GD. Reduced inhibitory effect of Mg2+ on ryanodine receptor-Ca2+ release channels in malignant hyperthermia. *Biophysical Journal*. 1997;73:1913–1924.
71. Barrientos GC, Feng W, Truong K, et al. Gene dose influences cellular and calcium channel dysregulation in heterozygous and homozygous T4826I-RYR1 malignant hyperthermia-susceptible muscle. *J Biol Chem*. 2012;287:2863–2876.
72. Feng W, Barrientos GC, Cherednichenko G, et al. Functional and biochemical properties of ryanodine receptor type 1 channels from heterozygous R163C malignant hyperthermia-susceptible mice. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2011;79:420–431.
73. Chelu MG, Goonasekera SA, Durham WJ, et al. Heat- and anesthesia-induced malignant hyperthermia in an RyR1 knock-in mouse. *FASEB J*. 2006;20:329–330.
74. Yang T, Riehl J, Esteve E, et al. Pharmacologic and functional characterization of malignant hyperthermia in the R163C RyR1 knock-in mouse. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:1164–1175.
75. Lopez JR, Linares N, Pessah IN, Allen PD. Enhanced response to caffeine and 4-chloro-m-cresol in malignant hyperthermia-susceptible muscle is related in part to chronically elevated resting [Ca2+]i. *Am J Physiol*. 2005;288:C606–612.
76. Ikemoto N, Yamamoto T. Regulation of calcium release by interdomain interaction within ryanodine receptors. *Front Biosci*. 2002;7:d671–683.
77. Samso M, Feng W, Pessah IN, Allen PD. Coordinated movement of cytoplasmic and transmembrane domains of RyR1 upon gating. *PLoS Biol*. 2009;7:e85.
79. Carpenter D, Ringrose C, Leo V, et al. The role of CACNA1S in predisposition to malignant hyperthermia. *BMC Med Genet*. 2009;10:104.
80. Toppin PJ, Chandy TT, Ghanekar A, Kraeva N, Beattie WS, Riazi S. A report of fulminant malignant hyperthermia in a patient with a novel mutation of the CACNA1S gene. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57:689–693.
81. Pirone A, Schredelseker J, Tuluc P, et al. Identification and functional characterization of malignant hyperthermia mutation T1354S in the outer pore of the Cavalpha1S-subunit. *Am J Physiol*. 2010;299:C1345–C1354.
82. Weiss RG, O'Connell KM, Flucher BE, Allen PD, Grabner M, Dirksen RT. Functional analysis of the R1086H malignant hyperthermia mutation in the DHPR reveals an unexpected influence of the III-IV loop on skeletal muscle EC coupling. *Am J Physiol*. 2004;287:C1094–C1102.
83. Bannister RA, Beam KG. Ryanodine modification of RyR1 retrogradely affects L-type Ca(2+) channel gating in skeletal muscle. *J Muscle Res Cell Motil*. 2009;30:217–223.
84. Jones DE, Ryan JF, Taylor B, et al. Pancuronium in large doses protects susciptible swine from halothane induced malignant hyperthermia. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;83:A344.
85. Hurne AM, O'Brien JJ, Wingrove D, et al. Ryanodine receptor type 1 (RyR1) mutations C4958S and C4961S reveal excitation-coupled calcium entry (ECCE) is independent of sarcoplasmic reticulum store depletion. *J Biol Chem*. 2005;280:36994–37004.
86. Bannister RA, Pessah IN, Beam KG. The skeletal L-type Ca(2+) current is a major contributor to excitation-coupled Ca(2+) entry. *J Gen Physiol*. 2009;133:79–91.
87. Sultana N, Dienes B, Benedetti A, et al. Restricting calcium currents is required for correct fiber type specification in skeletal muscle. *Development*. 2016;143:1547–1559.
88. Putney JW, Broad LM, Braun FJ, Lievremont JP, Bird GS. Mechanisms of capacitative calcium entry. *J Cell Sci*. 2001;114:2223–2229.
89. Kurebayashi N, Ogawa Y. Depletion of Ca2+ in the sarcoplasmic reticulum stimulates Ca2+ entry into mouse skeletal muscle fibres. *J Physiol*. 2001;533:185–199.
90. Ma J, Pan Z. Junctional membrane structure and store operated calcium entry in muscle cells. *Front Biosci*. 2003;8:d242–d255.
91. Pan Z, Yang D, Nagaraj RY, et al. Dysfunction of store-operated calcium channel in muscle cells lacking mg29. *Nat Cell Biol*. 2002;4:379–383.
92. Zhao X, Weisleder N, Han X, et al. Azumolene inhibits a component of store-operated calcium entry coupled to the skeletal muscle ryanodine receptor. *J Biol Chem*. 2006;281:33477–33486.
93. Desmedt JE, Hainaut K. Inhibition of the intracellular release of calcium by Dantrolene in barnacle giant muscle fibres. *J Physiol*. 1977;265:565–585.
94. Krivickas LS, Ansved T, Suh D, Frontera WR. Contractile properties of single muscle fibers in myotonic dystrophy. *Muscle Nerve*. 2000;23:529–537.
95. Yamaguchi N, Igami K, Kasai M. Kinetics of depolarization-induced calcium release from skeletal muscle triads in vitro. *J Biol Chem*. 1997;121:432–439.

96. Paul-Pletzer K, Yamamoto T, Bhat MB, et al. Identification of a dantrolene-binding sequence on the skeletal muscle ryanodine receptor. *J Biol Chem*. 2002;277:34918–34923.
97. Monnier N, Procaccio V, Stieglitz P, Lunardi J. Malignant-hyperthermia susceptibility is associated with a mutation of the alpha 1-subunit of the human dihydropyridine-sensitive L-type voltage-dependent calcium-channel receptor in skeletal muscle. *Am J Hum Genet*. 1997;60:1316–1325.
98. Sambuughin N, Sei Y, Gallagher KL, et al. North American malignant hyperthermia population: screening of the ryanodine receptor gene and identification of novel mutations. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:594–599.
99. Brown RL, Pollock AN, Couchman KG, et al. A novel ryanodine receptor mutation and genotype-phenotype correlation in a large malignant hyperthermia New Zealand Maori pedigree. *Hum Mol Genet*. 2000;9:1515–1524.
100. Girard T, Urwyler A, Censier K, Mueller CR, Zorzato F, Treves S. Genotype-phenotype comparison of the Swiss malignant hyperthermia population. *Hum Mutat*. 2001;18:357–358.
101. Brandt A, Schleithoff L, Jurkat-Rott K, Klingler W, Baur C, Lehmann-Horn F. Screening of the ryanodine receptor gene in 105 malignant hyperthermia families: novel mutations and concordance with the in vitro contracture test. *Hum Mol Genet*. 1999;8:2055–2062.
102. Rueffert H, Olthoff D, Deutrich C, Schober R, Froster UG. A new mutation in the skeletal ryanodine receptor gene (RYR1) is potentially causative of malignant hyperthermia, central core disease, and severe skeletal malformation. *Am J Med Genet*. 2004;124:248–254.
103. Robinson R, Hopkins P, Carsana A, et al. Several interacting genes influence the malignant hyperthermia phenotype. *Hum Genet*. 2003;112:217–218.
104. Gillard EF, Otsu K, Fujii J, et al. A substitution of cysteine for arginine 614 in the ryanodine receptor is potentially causative of human malignant hyperthermia. *Genomics*. 1991;11:751–755.
105. Sei Y, Sambuughin NN, Davis EJ, et al. Malignant hyperthermia in North America: genetic screening of the three hot spots in the type I ryanodine receptor gene. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:824–830.
106. Davis M, Brown R, Dickson A, et al. Malignant hyperthermia associated with exercise-induced rhabdomyolysis or congenital abnormalities and a novel RYR1 mutation in New Zealand and Australian pedigrees. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:508–515.
107. Oyamada H, Oguchi K, Saitoh N, et al. Novel mutations in C-terminal channel region of the ryanodine receptor in malignant hyperthermia patients. *Jpn J Pharmacol*. 2002;88:159–166.
108. Yeh HM, Tsai MC, Su YN, et al. Denaturing high performance liquid chromatography screening of ryanodine receptor type 1 gene in patients with malignant hyperthermia in Taiwan and identification of a novel mutation (Y522C). *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1401–1406.
109. Fletcher JE, Tripolitis L, Hubert M, Vita GM, Levitt RC, Rosenberg H. Genotype and phenotype relationships for mutations in the ryanodine receptor in patients referred for diagnosis of malignant hyperthermia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75:307–310.
110. Lynch PJ, Krivosic-Horber R, Reyford H, et al. Identification of heterozygous and homozygous individuals with the novel RYR1 mutation Cys35Arg in a large kindred. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:620–626.
111. Monnier N, Ferreiro A, Marty I, Labarre-Vila A, Mezin P, Lunardi J. A homozygous splicing mutation causing a depletion of skeletal muscle RYR1 is associated with multi-minicore disease congenital myopathy with ophthalmoplegia. *Hum Mol Genet*. 2003;12:1171–1178.
112. Rueffert H, Olthoff D, Deutrich C, Thamm B, Froster UG. Homozygous and heterozygous Arg614Cys mutations (1840C-->T) in the ryanodine receptor gene co-segregate with malignant hyperthermia susceptibility in a German family. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:240–245.
113. A protocol for the investigation of malignant hyperpyrexia (MH) susceptibility. The European malignant hyperpyrexia group. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56:1267–1269.
114. Ording H, Brancadoro V, Cozzolino S, et al. In vitro contracture test for diagnosis of malignant hyperthermia following the protocol of the European MH Group: results of testing patients surviving fulminant MH and unrelated low-risk subjects. The European malignant hyperthermia group. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41:955–966.
115. Hopkins PM, Rueffert H, Snoeck MM, et al. European Malignant Hyperthermia Group guidelines for investigation of malignant hyperthermia susceptibility. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:531–539.
116. Larach MG. Standardization of the caffeine halothane muscle contracture test. North American malignant hyperthermia group. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:511–515.
117. Allen GC, Larach MG, Kunselman AR. The sensitivity and specificity of the caffeine-halothane contracture test: a report from the North American Malignant Hyperthermia Registry. The North American Malignant Hyperthermia Registry of MHAUS. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:579–588.
118. Metterlein T, Schuster F, Tadda L, Hager M, Roewer N, Anetseder M. Statins alter intracellular calcium homeostasis in malignant hyperthermia susceptible individuals. *Cardiovasc Ther*. 2010;28:356–360.
119. Metterlein T, Schuster F, Tadda L, et al. Fluoroquinolones influence the intracellular calcium handling in individuals susceptible to malignant hyperthermia. *Muscle Nerve*. 2011;44:208–212.
120. Gerbershagen MU, Missler G, Schutte JK, et al. 3,4-Methylenedioxymethamphetamine (Ecstasy) increases the sensitivity of the contractile apparatus to calcium ions in both malignant hyperthermia-susceptible and normal skeletal muscle fibres. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;29:42–49.
121. Johannsen S, Roewer N, Schuster F. Ondansetron-induced muscular contractures in malignant hyperthermia-susceptible individuals. *Anesth Analg*. 2012.
122. Bendahan D, Guis S, Monnier N, et al. Comparative analysis of in vitro contracture tests with ryanodine and a combination of ryanodine with either halothane or caffeine: a comparative investigation in malignant hyperthermia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:1019–1027.
123. Baur CP, Bellon L, Felleiter P, et al. A multicenter study of 4-chloro-m-cresol for diagnosing malignant hyperthermia susceptibility. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:200–205.
124. Metterlein T, Schuster F, Kranke P, Roewer N, Anetseder M. In-vitro contracture testing for susceptibility to malignant hyperthermia: can halothane be replaced? *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28:251–255.
125. Metterlein T, Hartung E, Schuster F, Roewer N, Anetseder M. Sevoflurane as a potential replacement for halothane in diagnostic testing for malignant hyperthermia susceptibility: results of a preliminary study. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2011;77:768–773.
126. Migita T, Mukaida K, Kobayashi M, Hamada H, Kawamoto M. The severity of sevoflurane-induced malignant hyperthermia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;56:351–356.
127. Zhou H, Brockington M, Jungbluth H, et al. Epigenetic allele silencing unveils recessive RYR1 mutations in core myopathies. *Am J Hum Genet*. 2006;79:859–868.
128. Urwyler A, Deufel T, McCarthy T, West S. Guidelines for molecular genetic detection of susceptibility to malignant hyperthermia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:283–287.
129. Robinson RL, Brooks C, Brown SL, et al. RYR1 mutations causing central core disease are associated with more severe malignant hyperthermia in vitro contracture test phenotypes. *Hum Mutat*. 2002;20:88–97.
130. Rueffert H, Olthoff D, Deutrich C, Meinecke CD, Froster UG. Mutation screening in the ryanodine receptor 1 gene (RYR1) in patients susceptible to malignant hyperthermia who show definite IVCT results: identification of three novel mutations. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46:692–698.
131. Larach MG, Gronert GA, Allen GC, Brandom BW, Lehman EB. Clinical presentation, treatment, and complications of malignant hyperthermia in North America from 1987 to 2006. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:498–507.
132. Allen GC, Brubaker CL. Human malignant hyperthermia associated with desflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1328–1331.
133. Shulman M, Braverman B, Ivankovich AD, Gronert G. Sevoflurane triggers malignant hyperthermia in swine. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:259–260.
134. Gronert GA. Malignant hyperthermia. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:395–423.
135. Hall GM, Lucke JN, Lister D. Proceedings: neuromuscular blocking drugs in porcine malignant hyperthermia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:270–271.
136. Denborough M, Hopkinson KC. Propofol and malignant hyperpyrexia. *Lancet*. 1988;1:191.
137. Bendixen D, Skovgaard LT, Ording H. Analysis of anaesthesia in patients suspected to be susceptible to malignant hyperthermia before diagnostic in vitro contracture test. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41:480–484.

138. Larach MG, Localio AR, Allen GC, et al. A clinical grading scale to predict malignant hyperthermia susceptibility. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:771–779.
139. Gronert GA, Thompson RL, Onofrio BM. Human malignant hyperthermia: awake episodes and correction by dantrolene. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:377–378.
140. Haverkort-Poels PJ, Joosten EM, Ruitenbeek W. Prevention of recurrent exertional rhabdomyolysis by dantrolene sodium. *Muscle Nerve*. 1987;10:45–46.
141. Denborough MA, Hopkinson KC, Banney DG. Firefighting and malignant hyperthermia. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)*. 1988;296:1442–1443.
142. Hackl W, Winkler M, Mauritz W, Sporn P, Steinbereithner K. Muscle biopsy for diagnosis of malignant hyperthermia susceptibility in two patients with severe exercise-induced myolysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:138–140.
143. Hopkins PM, Ellis FR, Halsall PJ. Evidence for related myopathies in exertional heat stroke and malignant hyperthermia. *Lancet*. 1991;338:1491–1492.
144. Kochling A, Wappler F, Winkler G. Schulte am Esch JS. Rhabdomyolysis following severe physical exercise in a patient with predisposition to malignant hyperthermia. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1998;26:315–318.
145. Reynolds AC, Reynolds EV, Henschel EO. Physical exercise in malignant hyperthermia screening. *Lancet*. 1981;2:303.
146. Gronert GA, Milde JH, Theye RA. Role of sympathetic activity in porcine malignant hyperthermia. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;47:411–415.
147. Gronert GA, White DA. Failure of norepinephrine to initiate porcine malignant hyperthermia. *Pflugers Arch*. 1988;411:226–228.
148. Wappler F, Fiege M, Steinfath M, et al. Evidence for susceptibility to malignant hyperthermia in patients with exercise-induced rhabdomyolysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:95–100.
149. Anetseder M, Hartung E, Klepper S, Reichmann H. Gasoline vapors induce severe rhabdomyolysis. *Neurology*. 1994;44:2393–2395.
150. Ryan JF, Tedeschi LG. Sudden unexplained death in a patient with a family history of malignant hyperthermia. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:66–68.
151. *Adverse Effects of Heat and Exercise in Relation to MH Susceptibility*. 2018. https://www.mhaus.org/healthcare-professionals/mhaus-recommendations/adverse-effects-of-heat-and-exercise-in-relation-to-mh-susceptibility/. Accessed April 8, 2019.
152. Butler-Browne GS, Eriksson PO, Laurent C, Thornell LE. Adult human masseter muscle fibers express myosin isozymes characteristic of development. *Muscle Nerve*. 1988;11:610–620.
153. Morgan DL, Proske U. Vertebrate slow muscle: its structure, pattern of innervation, and mechanical properties. *Physiol Rev*. 1984;64:103–169.
154. van der Spek AF, Reynolds PI, Fang WB, Ashton-Miller JA, Stohler CS, Schork MA. Changes in resistance to mouth opening induced by depolarizing and non-depolarizing neuromuscular relaxants. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:21–27.
155. Magee KR, Shy GM. A new congenital non-progressive myopathy. *Brain*. 1956;79:610–621.
156. Norwood FL, Harling C, Chinnery PF, Eagle M, Bushby K, Straub V. Prevalence of genetic muscle disease in Northern England: in-depth analysis of a muscle clinic population. *Brain*. 2009;132:3175–3186.
157. Jungbluth H, Sewry CA, Muntoni F. Core myopathies. *Semin Pediatr Neurol*. 2011;18:239–249.
158. Engel AG, Gomez MR, Groover RV. Multicore disease. A recently recognized congenital myopathy associated with multifocal degeneration of muscle fibers. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1971;46:666–681.
159. Klingler W, Rueffert H, Lehmann-Horn F, Girard T, Hopkins PM. Core myopathies and risk of malignant hyperthermia. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1167–1173.
160. Koch BM, Bertorini TE, Eng GD, Boehm R. Severe multicore disease associated with reaction to anesthesia. *Arch Neurol*. 1985;42:1204–1206.
161. Osada H, Masuda K, Seki K, Sekiya S. Multi-minicore disease with susceptibility to malignant hyperthermia in pregnancy. *Gynecol Obstet Invest*. 2004;58:32–35.
162. Allanson JE. Noonan syndrome. *J Med Genet*. 1987;24:9–13.
163. Benca J, Hogan K. Malignant hyperthermia, coexisting disorders, and enzymopathies: risks and management options. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1049–1053.
164. Briggs BJ, Dickerman JD. Bleeding disorders in Noonan syndrome. *Pediatr Blood Cancer*. 2012;58:167–172.
165. Tartaglia M, Zampino G, Gelb BD. Noonan syndrome: clinical aspects and molecular pathogenesis. *Mol Syndromol*. 2010;1:2–26.
166. Hunter A, Pinsky L. An evaluation of the possible association of malignant hyperpyrexia with the Noonan syndrome using serum creatine phosphokinase levels. *J Pediatr*. 1975;86:412–415.
167. Sharathkumar AA. Bleeding disorders and Noonan syndrome. *Pediatr Blood Cancer*. 2012;59:592; author reply 3.
168. Bajwa SJ, Gupta S, Kaur J, et al. Anesthetic considerations and difficult airway management in a case of Noonan syndrome. *Saudi J Anaesth*. 2011;5:345–347.
169. Dadabhoy ZP, Winnie AP. Regional anesthesia for cesarean section in a parturient with Noonan's syndrome. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:636–638.
170. Campbell AM, Bousfield JD. Anaesthesia in a patient with Noonan's syndrome and cardiomyopathy. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:131–133.
171. McBain J, Lemire EG, Campbell DC. Epidural labour analgesia in a parturient with Noonan syndrome: a case report. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:274–278.
172. Isaacs H, Badenhorst ME. Dominantly inherited malignant hyperthermia (MH) in the King-Denborough syndrome. *Muscle Nerve*. 1992;15:740–742.
173. Heiman-Patterson TD, Rosenberg HR, Binning CP, Tahmoush AJ. King-Denborough syndrome: contracture testing and literature review. *Pediatr Neurol*. 1986;2:175–177.
174. King JO, Denborough MA. Anesthetic-induced malignant hyperpyrexia in children. *J Pediatr*. 1973;83:37–40.
175. McPherson EW, Taylor CA. The King syndrome: malignant hyperthermia, myopathy, and multiple anomalies. *Am J Med Genet*. 1981;8:159–165.
176. Kaplan AM, Bergeson PS, Gregg SA, Curless RG. Malignant hyperthermia associated with myopathy and normal muscle enzymes. *J Pediatr*. 1977;91:431–434.
177. Isaacs H, Barlow MB. Malignant hyperpyrexia occurring in a second Johannesburg family. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45:901–906.
178. Isaacs H, Frere G, Mitchell J. Histological, histochemical and ultramicroscopic findings in muscle biopsies from carriers of the trait for malignant hyperpyrexia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1973;45:860–868.
179. Isaacs H, Barlow MB. Malignant hyperpyrexia. Further muscle studies in asymptomatic carriers identified by creatinine phosphokinase screening. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1973;36:228–243.
180. Reed W, Smith R, Dekovic F, et al. Comprehensive banking of sibling donor cord blood for children with malignant and nonmalignant disease. *Blood*. 2003;101:351–357.
181. Habib AS, Millar S, Deballi P, Muir HA. Anesthetic management of a ventilator-dependent parturient with the King-Denborough syndrome. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:589–592.
182. D'Arcy CE, Bjorksten A, Yiu EM, et al. King-Denborough syndrome caused by a novel mutation in the ryanodine receptor gene. *Neurology*. 2008;71:776–777.
183. Dowling JJ, Lillis S, Amburgey K, et al. King-Denborough syndrome with and without mutations in the skeletal muscle ryanodine receptor (RYR1) gene. *Neuromuscul Disord*. 2011;21:420–427.
184. Glahn KP, Ellis FR, Halsall PJ, et al. Recognizing and managing a malignant hyperthermia crisis: guidelines from the European Malignant Hyperthermia Group. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:417–420.
185. Birgenheier N, Stoker R, Westenskow D, Orr J. Activated charcoal effectively removes inhaled anesthetics from modern anesthesia machines. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1363–1370.
186. Kugler Y, Russell WJ. Speeding dantrolene preparation for treating malignant hyperthermia. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2011;39:84–88.
187. Rosenberg H. Current state of malignant hyperthermia and the use of dantrium IV as treatment. *Anesthesiol News*. 2010:20–21.
188. Flewellen EH, Nelson TE, Jones WP, Arens JF, Wagner DL. Dantrolene dose response in awake man: implications for management of malignant hyperthermia. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:275–280.
189. Brandom BW, Larach MG, Chen MS, Young MC. Complications associated with the administration of dantrolene 1987 to 2006: a report from the North American Malignant Hyperthermia Registry of the Malignant Hyperthermia Association of the United States. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1115–1123.
190. Oh ST, Yedidag E, Conklin JL, Martin M, Bielefeldt K. Calcium release from intracellular stores and excitation-contraction coupling in intestinal smooth muscle. *J Surg Res*. 1997;71:79–86.

191. Korolkiewicz RP, Konstanski Z, Rekowski P, et al. Sources of activator Ca2+ for galanin-induced contractions of rat gastric fundus, jejunum and colon. *J Physiol Pharmacol*. 2000;51:821–831.
192. Gener B, Burns JM, Griffin S, Boyer EW. Administration of ondansetron is associated with lethal outcome. *Pediatrics*. 2010;125:e1514–e1517.
193. Lerman J, McLeod ME, Strong HA. Pharmacokinetics of intravenous dantrolene in children. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:625–629.
194. Burkman JM, Posner KL, Domino KB. Analysis of the clinical variables associated with recrudescence after malignant hyperthermia reactions. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:901–906. quiz 1077–1078.
195. Hopkins PM. Recrudescence of malignant hyperthermia. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:893–894.
196. Gallant EM, Foldes FF, Rempel WE, Gronert GA. Verapamil is not a therapeutic adjunct to dantrolene in porcine malignant hyperthermia. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:601–606.
197. Harrison GG, Wright IG, Morrell DF. The effects of calcium channel blocking drugs on halothane initiation of malignant hyperthermia in MHS swine and on the established syndrome. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1988;16:197–201.
198. Migita T, Mukaida K, Yasuda T, Hamada H, Kawamoto M. Calcium channel blockers are inadequate for malignant hyperthermia crisis. *J Anesth*. 2012;26:579–584.
199. Metterlein T, Schuster F, Kranke P, Hager M, Roewer N, Anetseder M. Magnesium does not influence the clinical course of succinylcholine-induced malignant hyperthermia. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1174–1178.
200. Choi RH, Koenig X, Launikonis BS. Dantrolene requires Mg2+ to arrest malignant hyperthermia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2017;114:4811–4815.
201. Larach MG, Dirksen SJ, Belani KG, et al. Special article: creation of a guide for the transfer of care of the malignant hyperthermia patient from ambulatory surgery centers to receiving hospital facilities. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:94–100.
202. Wong CA, Denholm B. Malignant hyperthermia diagnosis, treatment, and prevention. *Anesthsiol News*. 2011:17–21.
203. Aderibigbe T, Lang BH, Rosenberg H, Chen Q, Li G. Cost-effectiveness analysis of stocking dantrolene in ambulatory surgery centers for the treatment of malignant hyperthermia. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:1333–1338.
204. Maccani RM, Wedel DJ, Hofer RE. Norepinephrine does not potentiate porcine malignant hyperthermia. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:790–795.
205. McGraw TT, Keon TP. Malignant hyperthermia and the clean machine. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36:530–532.
206. Whitty RJ, Wong GK, Petroz GC, Pehora C, Crawford MW. Preparation of the Drager Fabius GS workstation for malignant hyperthermia-susceptible patients. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56:497–501.
207. Crawford MW, Prinzhausen H, Petroz GC. Accelerating the washout of inhalational anesthetics from the Drager Primus anesthetic workstation: effect of exchangeable internal components. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:289–294.
208. Prinzhausen H, Crawford MW, O'Rourke J, Petroz GC. Preparation of the Drager Primus anesthetic machine for malignant hyperthermia-susceptible patients. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:885–890.
209. Petroz GC, Lerman J. Preparation of the Siemens KION anesthetic machine for patients susceptible to malignant hyperthermia. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:941–946.
210. Brunner HW, Pohl S, Grond S. Washout of sevoflurane from the GE Avance and Amingo Carestation anesthetic machines. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:1118–1123.
211. Shanahan H, O'Donoghue R, O'Kelly P, Synnott A, O'Rourke J. Preparation of the Drager Fabius CE and Drager Zeus anaesthetic machines for patients susceptible to malignant hyperthermia. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29:229–234.
212. Gunter JB, Ball J, Than-Win S. Preparation of the Drager Fabius anesthesia machine for the malignant-hyperthermia susceptible patient. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1936–1945.
213. Jones C, Bennett K, Kim TW, Bulger TF, Pollock N. Preparation of Datex-Ohmeda Aestiva and Aisys anaesthetic machines for use in malignant hyperthermia susceptible patients. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2012;40:490–497.
214. Schonell LH, Sims C, Bulsara M. Preparing a new generation anaesthetic machine for patients susceptible to malignant hyperthermia. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2003;31:58–62.
215. Feldman JM. New device simplifies workstation preparation for malignant hyperthermia-susceptible patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:434. author reply 6–7.
216. Block FE. Malignant hyperthermia and charcoal absorbent: too hot to handle. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1270–1271.
217. Jantzen JP, Eck J, Kleemann PP. [An activated charcoal filter for eliminating volatile anesthetics. A contribution to the management of malignant hyperthermia]. *Anaesthesist*. 1989;38:639–641.
218. Preparation of Anesthesia Workstations to Anesthetize MH Susceptible Patients. https://www.mhaus.org/healthcare-professionals/mhaus-recommendations/preparation-of-anesthesia-workstations-to-anesthetize-mh-susceptible-patients/. Accessed April 8, 2019.
219. Criteria for a recommended standard. *Occupational Exposure to Waste Anesthetic Gases and Vapors*; 1977. http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/pdfs/77-140a.pdf. Accessed April 8, 2019.
220. Anesthetic Gases. *Guidelines for Workplace Exposures*; 2000. https://www.osha.gov/dts/osta/anestheticgases/index.html. Accessed April 8, 2019.
221. Anetseder M, Hager M, Muller-Reible C, Roewer N. Regional lactate and carbon dioxide concentrations in a metabolic test for malignant hyperthermia. *Lancet*. 2003;362:494; discussion -5.
222. Bina S, Cowan G, Karaian J, Muldoon S, Mongan P, Bunger R. Effects of caffeine, halothane, and 4-chloro-m-cresol on skeletal muscle lactate and pyruvate in malignant hyperthermia-susceptible and normal swine as assessed by microdialysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:90–100.
223. Schuster F, Metterlein T, Negele S, et al. Intramuscular injection of sevoflurane detects malignant hyperthermia predisposition in susceptible pigs. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:616–620.
224. Schuster F, Scholl H, Hager M, Muller R, Roewer N, Anetseder M. The dose-response relationship and regional distribution of lactate after intramuscular injection of halothane and caffeine in malignant hyperthermia-susceptible pigs. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:468–472.
225. Bina S, Muldoon S, Bunger R. Effects of ryanodine on skeletal muscle lactate and pyruvate in malignant hyperthermia-susceptible and normal swine as assessed by microdialysis. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007:1–10.
226. Girard T, Cavagna D, Padovan E, et al. B-lymphocytes from malignant hyperthermia-susceptible patients have an increased sensitivity to skeletal muscle ryanodine receptor activators. *J Biol Chem*. 2001;276:48077–48082.
227. Litman RS, Rosenberg H. Malignant hyperthermia: update on susceptibility testing. *JAMA*. 2005;293:2918–2924.
228. McKinney LC, Butler T, Mullen SP, Klein MG. Characterization of ryanodine receptor-mediated calcium release in human B cells: relevance to diagnostic testing for malignant hyperthermia. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1191–1201.
229. Ording H, Foder B, Scharff O. Cytosolic free calcium concentrations in lymphocytes from malignant hyperthermia susceptible patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:341–345.
230. Sei Y, Brandom BW, Bina S, et al. Patients with malignant hyperthermia demonstrate an altered calcium control mechanism in B lymphocytes. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1052–1058.
231. Gareau PJ, Janzen EG, Towner RA, Stewart WA. In vivo 31P NMR spectroscopy studies of halothane induced porcine stress syndrome. No effect of C-phenyl N-tert-butyl nitrone (PBN). *Free Radic Res Commun*. 1993;19:43–50.
232. Payen JF, Bosson JL, Bourdon L, et al. Improved noninvasive diagnostic testing for malignant hyperthermia susceptibility from a combination of metabolites determined in vivo with 31P-magnetic resonance spectroscopy. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:848–855.
233. Nanson JK, Sheikh A. Anaesthesia for emergency caesarean section in a parturient with bleeding placenta praevia and a potentially malignant hyperthermia-susceptible fetus. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2000;9:276–278.
234. Stowell K, Pollock N, Langton E. Perinatal diagnosis of malignant hyperthermia susceptibility. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35:454–455.
235. Girard T, Johr M, Schaefer C, Urwyler A. Perinatal diagnosis of malignant hyperthermia susceptibility. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1353–1354.
236. *Suggested Guidelines for Management of the Pregnant-Patient not Believed to be at Risk for Mh, but whose Partners is Susceptible to Malignant Hyperthermia*. 2009. https://www.mhaus.org/healthcare-professionals/mhaus-recommendations/parturient-with-mhs-partner/. Accessed April 8, 2019.
237. Tombul T, Anlar O, Tuncer M, Huseyinoglu N, Eryonucu B. Impaired heart rate variability as a marker of cardiovascular autonomic

dysfunction in multiple sclerosis. *Acta Neurologica Belgica*. 2011; 111:116–120.
238. Freedman MS, Thompson EJ, Deisenhammer F, et al. Recommended standard of cerebrospinal fluid analysis in the diagnosis of multiple sclerosis: a consensus statement. *Arch Neurol*. 2005;62:865–870.
239. Bader AM, Hunt CO, Datta S, Naulty JS, Ostheimer GW. Anesthesia for the obstetric patient with multiple sclerosis. *J Clin Anesth*. 1988;1:21–24.
240. Staikou C, Rekatsina M. Use of rocuronium and sugammadex under neuromuscular transmission monitoring in a patient with multiple sclerosis. *Saudi J Anesth*. 2017;11:472–475.
241. Bornemann-Cimenti H, Sivro N, Toft F, Halb L, Sandner-Kiesling A. Neuraxial anesthesia in patients with multiple sclerosis – a systematic review. *Braz J Anesthesiol (English Edition)*. 2016;67:404–410.
242. Ludolph AC, Brettschneider J, Weishaupt JH. Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. *Curr Opin Neurol*. 2012;25:530–535.
243. Rothstein JD. Edaravone: a new drug approved for ALS. *Cell*. 2017;171:725.
244. Shimizu T, Kawata A, Kato S, et al. Autonomic failure in ALS with a novel SOD1 gene mutation. *Neurology*. 2000;54:1534–1537.
245. You TM, Kim S. Pulseless electrical activity during general anesthesia induction in patients with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. *J Dent Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;17:235–240.
246. Rosenbaum KJ, Neigh JL, Strobel GE. Sensitivity to nondepolarizing muscle relaxants in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis: report of two cases. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:638–641.
247. Jacobs BC, Rothbarth PH, van der Meche FG, et al. The spectrum of antecedent infections in Guillain-Barre syndrome: a case-control study. *Neurology*. 1998;51:1110–1115.
248. Lawn ND, Fletcher DD, Henderson RD, Wolter TD, Wijdicks EF. Anticipating mechanical ventilation in Guillain-Barre syndrome. *Arch Neurol*. 2001;58:893–898.
249. Asbury AK. Diagnostic considerations in Guillain-Barre syndrome. *Ann Neurol*. 1981;(suppl 9):1–5.
250. Hughes RA, Swan AV, van Doorn PA. Intravenous immunoglobulin for Guillain-Barre syndrome. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;7:CD002063.
251. Asahina M, Kuwabara S, Suzuki A, Hattori T. Autonomic function in demyelinating and axonal subtypes of Guillain-Barre syndrome. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 2002;105:44–50.
252. McGrady EM. Management of labour and delivery in a patient with Guillain-Barre syndrome. *Anaesthesia*. 1987;42:899.
253. Steiner I, Argov Z, Cahan C, Abramsky O. Guillain-Barre syndrome after epidural anesthesia: direct nerve root damage may trigger disease. *Neurology*. 1985;35:1473–1475.
254. Brooks H, Christian AS, May AE. Pregnancy, anaesthesia and Guillain Barre syndrome. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:894–898.
255. Zochodne DW, Bolton CF, Wells GA, et al. Critical illness polyneuropathy. A complication of sepsis and multiple organ failure. *Brain*. 1987;110(Pt 4):819–841.
256. Bolton CF. Neuromuscular manifestations of critical illness. *Muscle Nerve*. 2005;32:140–163.
257. Dodson BA, Kelly BJ, Braswell LM, Cohen NH. Changes in acetylcholine receptor number in muscle from critically ill patients receiving muscle relaxants: an investigation of the molecular mechanism of prolonged paralysis. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23:815–821.
258. Hermans G, Wilmer A, Meersseman W, et al. Impact of intensive insulin therapy on neuromuscular complications and ventilator dependency in the medical intensive care unit. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2007;175:480–489.
259. Gronert GA. Disuse atrophy with resistance to pancuronium. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:547–549.
260. O'Neill GN. Acquired disorders of the neuromuscular junction. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2006;44:107–121.
261. Rudnik-Schneborn S, De Visser M, Zerres K. Spinal Muscular Atrophies. In: Engel A, Franzini-Armstrong C, eds. *Myology*. 3rd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2004:1845–1864.
262. Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease. Genetics, clinical features, and diagnosis. *UpToDate*. 2018. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/charcot-marie-tooth-disease-genetics-clinical-features-and-diagnosis. Accessed April 8, 2019.
263. Ginz HF, Ummenhofer WC, Erb T, Urwyler A. [The hereditary motor-sensory neuropathy Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease: anesthesiologic management–case report with literature review]. *Anaesthesist*. 2001;50:767–771.
264. Gratarola A, Mameli MC, Pelosi G. Total intravenous anaesthesia in Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease. Case report. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 1998;64:357–360.
265. Sugino S, Yamazaki Y, Nawa Y, Sato K, Sonoda H, Namiki A. [Anesthetic management for a patient with Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease using propofol and nitrous oxide]. *Masui*. 2002;51:1016–1019.
266. Baur CP, Schara U, Schlecht R, Georgieff M, Lehmann-Horn F. [Anesthesia in neuromuscular disorders. Part 2: specific disorders]. *Anasthesiol Intensivmed Notfallmed Schmerzther*. 2002;37:125–137.
267. Antognini JF. Anaesthesia for Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease: a review of 86 cases. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:398–400.
268. Baranov D,TK, McClung H, Scarfo K, Hecker J. Neurological diseases. In: Fleisher L, ed. *Anesthesia and Uncommon Diseases*. 5th ed. Philadelphia, Pa: Saunders; 2006.
269. Pogson D, Telfer J, Wimbush S. Prolonged vecuronium neuromuscular blockade associated with Charcot Marie Tooth neuropathy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:914–917.
270. Naguib M, Samarkandi AH. Response to atracurium and mivacurium in a patient with Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45:56–59.
271. Schmitt HJ, Munster T. Mivacurium-induced neuromuscular block in adult patients suffering from Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:984–988.
272. Reah G, Lyons GR, Wilson RC. Anaesthesia for caesarean section in a patient with Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53:586–588.
273. Scull T, Weeks S. Epidural analgesia for labour in a patient with Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:1150–1152.
274. Sugai K, Sugai Y. [Epidural anesthesia for a patient with Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease, bronchial asthma and hypothyroidism]. *Masui*. 1989;38:688–691.
275. Tanaka S, Tsuchida H, Namiki A. [Epidural anesthesia for a patient with Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease, mitral valve prolapse syndrome and IInd degree AV block]. *Masui*. 1994;43:931–933.
276. Schmitt HJ, Muenster T, Schmidt J. Central neural blockade in Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51:1049–1050.
277. Dubowitz V. *Muscle Disorders in Childhood*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia, Pa: WB Saunders; 1995.
278. Dalakas M, Palace J, Rose M. The muscular dystrophies. In: Barnes P, Hilton-Jones D, eds. *Myopathies in Clinical Practice*. 1st ed. London: Martin Dunitz; 2003:59–83.
279. *Muscular Dystrophy*. 2017. https://emedicine.medscape.com/article/1259041-overview. Accessed April 8, 2019.
280. Emery A. Population frequencies of inherited neuromuscular diseases– a world survey. *Neuromuscul Disord*. 1991;1:19–29.
281. Sano M, Saito F, Yamamoto K, Tonomura A, Tsukagoshi H. Duchenne muscular dystrophy in a female with 45,X/46,XX chromosome constitution. *Jinrui Idengaku Zasshi*. 1987;32:257–262.
282. Urban M, Lahlou S. Muscle diseases. In: Fleisher L, ed. *Anesthesia and Uncommon Diseases*. Philadelphia, Pa: Saunders Elsevier; 2006:303–325.
283. Hoffman E. Dystrophin: the protein product of the Duchenne muscular dystrophy locus. *Cell*. 1987;51:919–928.
284. Leibowitz D, Dubowitz V. Intellect and behaviour in Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 1981;23:577–590.
285. Finsterer J, Stollberger C. The heart in human dystrophinopathies. *Cardiology*. 2003;99:1–19.
286. Perloff JK, Henze E, Schelbert HR. Alterations in regional myocardial metabolism, perfusion, and wall motion in Duchenne muscular dystrophy studied by radionuclide imaging. *Circulation*. 1984;69: 33–42.
287. Morris P. Duchenne muscular dystrophy: a challenge for the anaesthetist. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1997;7:1–4.
288. Hahn A, Bach JR, Delaubier A, Renardel-Irani A, Guillou C, Rideau Y. Clinical implications of maximal respiratory pressure determinations for individuals with Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1997;78:1–6.
289. Ames WA, Hayes JA, Crawford MW. The role of corticosteroids in Duchenne muscular dystrophy: a review for the anesthetist. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15:3–8.
290. Kawaai H, Tanaka K, Yamazaki S. Continuous infusion propofol general anesthesia for dental treatment in patients with progressive muscular dystrophy. *Anesthesia Progress*. 2005;52:12–16.

291. Molyneux MK. Anaesthetic management during labour of a manifesting carrier of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2005;14:58–61.
292. Angermann C, Spes C, Pongratz D. [Cardiac manifestation of progressive muscular dystrophy of the Duchenne type]. *Zeitschrift fur Kardiologie*. 1986;75:542–551.
293. Smith CL, Bush GH. Anaesthesia and progressive muscular dystrophy. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:1113–1118.
294. Webster R. *Respiratory Function as a Measure of Muscle Strength in Young Boys with Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy*. School of Women and Children's Health, University of N.S.W; 2003.
295. Stevens RD. Neuromuscular disorders and anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2001;14:693–698.
296. Breucking E, Reimnitz P, Schara U, Mortier W. [Anesthetic complications. The incidence of severe anesthetic complications in patients and families with progressive muscular dystrophy of the Duchenne and Becker types]. *Anaesthesist*. 2000;49:187–195.
297. Benson ER, Thomson JD, Smith BG, Banta JV. Results and morbidity in a consecutive series of patients undergoing spinal fusion for neuromuscular scoliosis. *Spine*. 1998;23:2308–2317; discussion 18.
298. Miller F, Moseley CF, Koreska J. Spinal fusion in Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 1992;34:775–786.
299. Jenkins JG, Bohn D, Edmonds JF, Levison H, Barker GA. Evaluation of pulmonary function in muscular dystrophy patients requiring spinal surgery. *Crit Care Med*. 1982;10:645–649.
300. Stoelting R, Dierdorf S. *Anesthesia and Co-Existing Disease*. Philadelphia, Pa: Churchill Livingstone; 2002:505–549.
301. Gurnaney H, Brown A, Litman RS. Malignant hyperthermia and muscular dystrophies. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1043–1048.
302. Farell P. Anesthesia-induced rhabdomyolysis causing cardiac arrest: case report and review of anesthesia and the dystrophinopathies. *Anesth Intensive Care*. 1994;22. 597–561.
303. Schummer W, Schummer C. Acute heart failure during spinal surgery in a boy with Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:149; author reply -50.
304. Ririe DG, Shapiro F, Sethna NF. The response of patients with Duchenne's muscular dystrophy to neuromuscular blockade with vecuronium. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:351–354.
305. Yemen TA, McClain C. Muscular dystrophy, anesthesia and the safety of inhalational agents revisited; again. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16:105–108.
306. Fairfield MC. Increased propofol requirements in a child with Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *Anaesthesia*. 1993;48:1013.
307. Murat I, Esteve C, Montay G, Delleur MM, Gaudiche O, Saint-Maurice C. Pharmacokinetics and cardiovascular effects of bupivacaine during epidural anesthesia in children with Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:249–252.
308. Kirschner J, Bonnemann CG. The congenital and limb-girdle muscular dystrophies: sharpening the focus, blurring the boundaries. *Arch Neurol*. 2004;61:189–199.
309. Moro C, Dangelser G, Veyckemans F. [Anesthetic management of a child with delta sarcoglycanopathy]. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2007;26:359–362.
310. Egi M, Tokioka H, Chikai T, et al. [Propofol anesthesia for a patient with progressive muscular dystrophy]. *Masui*. 2002;51:196–198.
311. Pash MP, Balaton J, Eagle C. Anaesthetic management of a parturient with severe muscular dystrophy, lumbar lordosis and a difficult airway. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:959–963.
312. Myotonic dystrophy: *Etiology, clinical features, and diagnosis*. 2018. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/myotonic-dystrophy-etiology-clinical-features-and-diagnosis. Accessed April 8, 2019.
313. Parness J, Bandschapp O, Girard T. The myotonias and susceptibility to malignant hyperthermia. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1054–1064.
314. Lehmann-Horn F, Iaizzo PA. Are myotonias and periodic paralyses associated with susceptibility to malignant hyperthermia? *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65:692–697.
315. Mathieu J, Allard P, Gobeil G, Girard M, De Braekeleer M, Begin P. Anesthetic and surgical complications in 219 cases of myotonic dystrophy. *Neurology*. 1997;49:1646–1650.
316. Matsuki Y, Hirose M, Tabata M, Nobukawa Y, Shigemi K. The use of sugammadex in a patient with myotonic dystrophy. *Eur J Anaesthesiol. (EJA)*. 2011;28:145–146.
317. Stourac P, Krikava I, Seidlova J, et al. Sugammadex in a parturient with myotonic dystrophy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:657–658.
318. Ahmed S, Naguib A, Tumin D, Tobias JD. Use of sugammadex in a patient with myotonic dystrophy. *Cardiol Res*. 2018;9:50–52.
319. Catena V, Del Monte DD, Rubini A, et al. Anesthesia and myotonic dystrophy (Steinert's syndrome). The role of total intravenous anesthesia with propofol, cisatracurium and remifentanyl. Case report. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2007;73:475–479.
320. Lehmann-Horn F, Reinhardt R, Jurkat-Rott K. Altered excitability of the cell membrane. In: Engel A, Franzini-Armstrong C, eds. *Myology*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2004:1257–1300.
321. Farbu E, Softeland E, Bindoff LA. Anaesthetic complications associated with myotonia congenita: case study and comparison with other myotonic disorders. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:630–634.
322. Newberg LA, Lambert EH, Gronert GA. Failure to induce malignant hyperthermia in myotonic goats. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:57–60.
323. Beck CL, Fahlke C, George AL. Molecular basis for decreased muscle chloride conductance in the myotonic goat. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1996;93:11248–11252.
324. Rosenbaum HK, Miller JD. Malignant hyperthermia and myotonic disorders. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2002;20:623–664.
325. North K. Congenital myopathies. In: Engel A, Franzini-Armstrong C, eds. *Myology*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2004. 1473–1433.
326. Herman GE, Finegold M, Zhao W, de Gouyon B, Metzenberg A. Medical complications in long-term survivors with X-linked myotubular myopathy. *J Pediatr*. 1999;134:206–214.
327. Breslin D, Reid J, Hayes A, Mirakhur RK. Anaesthesia in myotubular (centronuclear) myopathy. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:471–474.
328. Costi D, van der Walt JH. General anesthesia in an infant with X-linked myotubular myopathy. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14:964–968.
329. Garcia-Aguado R, Nunez M. Tommasi Rosso M, Vivo M, Gil F, Bolinches R. [Myotubular myopathy (centronuclear) and expected difficult intubation. Anesthetic management]. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 1994;41:302–303.
330. Gottschalk A, Heiman-Patterson T, deQuevedo R, Quinn PD. General anesthesia for a patient with centronuclear (myotubular) myopathy. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1018–1020.
331. Schmid E, Johr M, Berger TM. X-linked myotubular myopathy: anesthetic management for muscle biopsy. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16:218–220.
332. Tokarz A, Gaszynski T, Gaszynski W, Arkuszewski P. General anaesthesia with remifentanil and propofol for a patient with centronuclear(myotubular)myopathy.*EurJAnaesthesiol*.2002;19:842–844.
333. Dorchies OM, Laporte J, Wagner S, et al. Normal innervation and differentiation of X-linked myotubular myopathy muscle cells in a nerve-muscle coculture system. *Neuromuscul Disord*. 2001;11:736–746.
334. *Glucose-6-Phosphatase Deficiency (Glycogen Storage Disease I, Von Gierke Disease)*; 2018. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/glucose-6-phosphatase-deficiency-glycogen-storage-disease-i-von-gierke-disease. Accessed April 8, 2019.
335. Rake JP, Visser G, Labrune P, Leonard JV, Ullrich K, Smit GP. Guidelines for management of glycogen storage disease type I - European Study on Glycogen Storage Disease Type I (ESGSD I). *Eur J Pediatr*. 2002;161(suppl 1):S112–S119.
336. Visser G, Rake JP, Labrune P, et al. Consensus guidelines for management of glycogen storage disease type 1b - European Study on Glycogen Storage Disease Type 1. *Eur J Pediatr*. 2002;161(suppl 1):S120–S123.
337. Kakinohana M, Tokumine J, Shimabukuro T, Taira Y, Okuda Y. [Patient-controlled sedation using propofol for a patient with von Gierke disease]. *Masui*. 1998;47:1104–1108.
338. Kawai T. [Anesthetic management for an emergency operation in a patient with von Gierke disease]. *Masui*. 2005;54:924–925.
339. Loonen MC, Busch HF, Koster JF, et al. A family with different clinical forms of acid maltase deficiency (glycogenosis type II): biochemical and genetic studies. *Neurology*. 1981;31:1209–1216.
340. Engel A, Hirschhorn R, Huie M. Acid maltase deficiency. In: Engel A, Franzini-Amstrong C, eds. *Myology*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2004:1559–1586.
342. Ehlers KH, Hagstrom JW, Lukas DS, Redo SF, Engle MA. Glycogen-storage disease of the myocardium with obstruction to left ventricular outflow. *Circulation*. 1962;25:96. 109.

343. Bulkley BH, Hutchins GM. Pompe's disease presenting as hypertrophic myocardiopathy with Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome. *Am Heart J*. 1978;96:246–252.
344. Weinik M, King F. Acid maltase deficiency myopathy. *eMedicine*. 2006.
345. Makos MM, McComb RD, Hart MN, Bennett DR. Alpha-glucosidase deficiency and basilar artery aneurysm: report of a sibship. *Ann Neurol*. 1987;22:629–633.
346. Gitlin MC, Jahr JS, Margolis MA, McCain J. Is mivacurium chloride effective in electroconvulsive therapy? A report of four cases, including a patient with myasthenia gravis. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:392–394.
347. Kotani N, Hirota K, Anzawa N, Takamura K, Sakai T, Matsuki A. Motor and sensory disability has a strong relationship to induction dose of thiopental in patients with the hypertropic variety of Charcot-Marie-Tooth syndrome. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:182–186.
348. Ing RJ, Cook DR, Bengur RA, et al. Anaesthetic management of infants with glycogen storage disease type II: a physiological approach. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14:514–519.
349. McFarlane HJ, Soni N. Pompe's disease and anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 1986;41:1219–1224.
350. Mohiddin SA, Fananapazir L. Systolic compression of epicardial coronary and intramural arteries in children with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2002;29:290–298.
351. DiMauro S, Bonilla E. Mitochondrial encephalomyopathies. In: Engel A, Franzini-Amstrong C, eds. *Myology*. 3rd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2004:1623–1662.
352. Siciliano G, Volpi L, Piazza S, Ricci G, Mancuso M, Murri L. Functional diagnostics in mitochondrial diseases. *Biosci Rep*. 2007;27:53–67.
353. Wisely NA, Cook PR. General anaesthesia in a man with mitochondrial myopathy undergoing eye surgery. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2001;18:333–335.
354. Mehndiratta MM, Agarwal P, Tatke M, Krishnamurthy M. Neurological mitochondrial cytopathies. *Neurol India*. 2002;50:162–167.
355. Swash M, Schwartz MS, Sargeant MK. The significance of ragged-red fibres in neuromuscular disease. *J Neurol Sci*. 1978;38:347–355.
356. Shipton EA, Prosser DO. Mitochondrial myopathies and anaesthesia. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21:173–178.
357. Swash M, Schwartz MS, Sargeant MK. The significance of ragged-red fibres in neuromuscular disease. *J Neurol Sci*. 1978;38:347–355.
358. Amato AA, Brown RH. Muscle dystrophies and other muscle diseases. In: Longo DL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, Hauser SL, Jameson JL, eds. *Harrison's Priciples of Internal Medicine*. 18th ed. McGraw-Hill; 2012.
359. DiMauro S, Bonilla E. Mitochondrial encephalomyopathies. In: Engel AG, Franzini-Armstrong C, eds. *Myology*. 3rd ed. McGraw-Hill; 2004:1623–1662.
360. Allison KR. Muscular dystrophy versus mitochondrial myopathy: the dilemma of the undiagnosed hypotonic child. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2007;17:1–6.
361. Hara K, Sata T, Shigematsu A. Anesthetic management for cardioverter-defibrillator implantation in a patient with Kearns-Sayre syndrome. *J Clin Anesth*. 2004;16:539–541.
362. Maurtua M, Torres A, Ibarra V, DeBoer G, Dolak J. Anesthetic management of an obstetric patient with MELAS syndrome: case report and literature review. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2008;17:370–373.
363. Levy E, Muravchick S. Mitochondrial diseases. In: Fleisher L, ed. *Anesthesia and Uncommon Diseases*. Philadelphia, Pa: Saunders Elsevier; 2006:455–467.
364. James RH. Thiopentone and ophthalmoplegia plus. *Anaesthesia*. 1985;40:88.
365. James RH. Induction agent sensitivity and ophthalmoplegia plus. *Anaesthesia*. 1986;41:216.
366. Gurrieri C, Kivela JE, Bojanic K, et al. Anesthetic considerations in mitochondrial encephalomyopathy, lactic acidosis, and stroke-like episodes syndrome: a case series. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58:751–763.
367. Footitt EJ, Sinha MD, Raiman JA, Dhawan A, Moganasundram S, Champion MP. Mitochondrial disorders and general anaesthesia: a case series and review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:436–441.
368. Driessen J, Willems S, Dercksen S, Giele J, van der Staak F, Smeitink J. Anesthesia-related morbidity and mortality after surgery for muscle biopsy in children with mitochondrial defects. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17:16–21.
369. Burns AM, Shelly MP. Anaesthesia for patients with mitochondrial myopathy. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44:975–977.
370. Kelly A, O'Connor M. Mitochondrial myopathy and anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 1990;45:596.
371. Ramchandra DS, Anisya V, Gourie-Devi M. Ketamine monoanaesthesia for diagnostic muscle biopsy in neuromuscular disorders in infancy and childhood: floppy infant syndrome. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:474–476.
372. Guasch E, Civantos B, Aguilar JM, Torres MD, Gilsanz F. Progressive external ophthalmoplegia and ambulatory remifentanil-propofol based anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58:607–608.
373. Sharma AD, Erb T, Schulman SR, Sreeram G, Slaughter TF. Anaesthetic considerations for a child with combined Prader-Willi syndrome and mitochondrial myopathy. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11:488–490.
374. Vanlander AV, Jorens PG, Smet J, et al. Inborn oxidative phosphorylation defect as risk factor for propofol infusion syndrome. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56:520–525.
375. Stowe DF, Kevin LG. Cardiac preconditioning by volatile anesthetic agents: a defining role for altered mitochondrial bioenergetics. *Antioxid Redox Signal*. 2004;6:439–448.
376. Stadnicka A, Marinovic J, Ljubkovic M, Bienengraeber MW, Bosnjak ZJ. Volatile anesthetic-induced cardiac preconditioning. *J Anesth*. 2007;21:212–219.
377. Wallace JJ, Perndt H, Skinner M. Anaesthesia and mitochondrial disease. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1998;8:249–254.
378. Lauwers MH, Van Lersberghe C, Camu F. Inhalation anaesthesia and the Kearns-Sayre syndrome. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49:876–878.
379. Morgan PG, Hoppel CL, Sedensky MM. Mitochondrial defects and anesthetic sensitivity. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:1268–1270.
380. Allen GC. Bispectral index and mitochondrial myopathies. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:282; author reply 3.
381. Frei FJ, Haemmerle MH, Brunner R, Kern C. Minimum alveolar concentration for halothane in children with cerebral palsy and severe mental retardation. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52:1056–1060.
382. Naguib M, el Dawlatly AA, Ashour M, al-Bunyan M. Sensitivity to mivacurium in a patient with mitochondrial myopathy. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:1506–1509.
383. Finsterer J, Stratil U, Bittner R, Sporn P. Increased sensitivity to rocuronium and atracurium in mitochondrial myopathy. *Can J Anaesth.* 1998;45:781–784.
384. Sharma AD, Erb T, Schulman SR, Sreeram G, Slaughter TF. Anaesthetic considerations for a child with combined Prader-Willi syndrome and mitochondrial myopathy. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11:488–490.
385. D'Ambra MN, Dedrick D, Savarese JJ. Kearns-Sayer syndrome and pancuronium–succinylcholine-induced neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51:343–345.
386. Wiesel S, Bevan JC, Samuel J, Donati F. Vecuronium neuromuscular blockade in a child with mitochondrial myopathy. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:696–699.
387. Rowe RW, Helander E. Anesthetic management of a patient with systemic carnitine deficiency. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:295–297.
388. Rosaeg OP, Morrison S, MacLeod JP. Anaesthetic management of labour and delivery in the parturient with mitochondrial myopathy. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:403–407.
389. Hsiao PN, Cheng YJ, Tseng HC, Chuang YH, Kao PF, Tsai SK. Spinal anesthesia in MELAS syndrome: a case with mitochondrial myopathy, encephalopathy, lactic acidosis and stroke-like episodes. *Acta Anaesthesiol Sin*. 2000;38:107–110.
390. Sasano N, Fujita Y, So M, Sobue K, Sasano H, Katsuya H. Anesthetic management of a patient with mitochondrial myopathy, encephalopathy, lactic acidosis, and stroke-like episodes (MELAS) during laparotomy. *J Anesth*. 2007;21:72–75.
391. Farag E, Argalious M, Narouze S, DeBoer GE, Tome J. The anesthetic management of ventricular septal defect (VSD) repair in a child with mitochondrial cytopathy. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:958–962.
392. Sasano N, Tamura T, Azami T, Sasano H. Severe hyponatremia occurring after surgical stress in a patient with mitochondrial disease. *J Anesth*. 2009;23:587–590.
393. Kubota H, Tanabe Y, Takanashi J, Kohno Y. Episodic hyponatremia in mitochondrial encephalomyopathy, lactic acidosis, and strokelike episodes (MELAS). *J Child Neurol*. 2005;20:116–120.
394. Vincent A, Palace J, Hilton-Jones D. Myasthenia gravis. *Lancet*. 2001;357:2122–2128.
395. Lindstrom JM. Acetylcholine receptors and myasthenia. *Muscle Nerve*. 2000;23:453–477.

396. *Anesthesia for the Patient with Myasthenia Gravis*. 2018. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/anesthesia-for-the-patient-with-myasthenia-gravis. Accessed April 8, 2019.
397. Eisenkraft JB, Book WJ, Mann SM, Papatestas AE, Hubbard M. Resistance to succinylcholine in myasthenia gravis: a dose-response study. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:760–763.
398. Baraka A. Suxamethonium block in the myasthenic patient. Correlation with plasma cholinesterase. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:217–219.
399. Seigne RD, Scott RP. Mivacurium chloride and myasthenia gravis. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72:468–469.
400. Kim JM, Mangold J. Sensitivity to both vecuronium and neostigmine in a sero-negative myasthenic patient. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;63:497–500.
401. Sungur Ulke Z, Yavru A, Camci E, Ozkan B, Toker A, Senturk M. Rocuronium and sugammadex in patients with myasthenia gravis undergoing thymectomy. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2013;57:745–748.
402. de Boer HD, van Egmond J, Driessen JJ, Booij LH. A new approach to anesthesia management in myasthenia gravis: reversal of neuromuscular blockade by sugammadex. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 2010;57:181–184.
403. *BRIDION(R) (sugammadex) Injection - First and Only Selective Relaxant Binding Agent - Approved in European Union*. 2008. https://www.fiercebiotech.com/biotech/bridion-r-sugammadex-injection-first-and-only-selective-relaxant-binding-agent-approved. Accessed April 8, 2019.
404. Baraka A. Onset of neuromuscular block in myasthenic patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:227–228.
405. Abel M, Eisenkraft JB. Anesthetic implications of myasthenia gravis. *Mt Sinai J Med*. 2002;69:31–37. New York.
406. Takamori M, Maruta T, Komai K. Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome as an autoimmune calcium-channelopathy. *Neurosci Res*. 2000;36:183–191.
407. Hewett SJ, Atchison WD. Serum and plasma from patients with Lambert-Eaton Myasthenic Syndrome reduce depolarization-dependent uptake of 45Ca2+ into rat cortical synaptosomes. *Brain Res*. 1991;566:320–324.
408. Burge JA, Hanna MG. Novel insights into the pathomechanisms of skeletal muscle channelopathies. *Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep*. 2012;12:62–69.
409. Lehmann-Horn F, Rudel R, Jurkat-Rott K. Nondystrophic myotonias and periodic paralyses. In: Engel AG, Franzini-Armstrong C, eds. *Myology*. McGraw-Hill; 2004:1257–1300.
410. Jurkat-Rott K, Lehmann-Horn F. Paroxysmal muscle weakness: the familial periodic paralyses. *J Neurol*. 2006;253:1391–1398.
411. Chinnery PF, Walls TJ, Hanna MG, Bates D, Fawcett PR. Normokalemic periodic paralysis revisited: does it exist? *Ann Neurol*. 2002;52:251–252.
412. Song YW, Kim SJ, Heo TH, Kim MH, Kim JB. Normokalemic periodic paralysis is not a distinct disease. *Muscle Nerve*. 2012.
413. Vicart S, Sternberg D, Fournier E, et al. New mutations of SCN4A cause a potassium-sensitive normokalemic periodic paralysis. *Neurology*. 2004;63:2120–2127.
414. Viscomi CM, Ptacek LJ, Dudley D. Anesthetic management of familial hypokalemic periodic paralysis during parturition. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:1081–1082.
415. Robinson JE, Morin VI, Douglas MJ, Wilson RD. Familial hypokalemic periodic paralysis and Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome in pregnancy. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47:160–164.
416. Griggs RC, Engel WK, Resnick JS. Acetazolamide treatment of hypokalemic periodic paralysis. Prevention of attacks and improvement of persistent weakness. *Ann Intern Med*. 1970;73:39–48.
417. Bendahhou S, Cummins TR, Griggs RC, Fu YH, Ptacek LJ. Sodium channel inactivation defects are associated with acetazolamide-exacerbated hypokalemic periodic paralysis. *Ann Neurol*. 2001;50:417–420.
418. LoVecchio F, Jacobson S. Approach to generalized weakness and peripheral neuromuscular disease. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 1997;15:605–623.
419. Lin SH, Huang CL. Mechanism of thyrotoxic periodic paralysis. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2012;23:985–988.
420. Depoix JP, Julliard JM, Aubry P. Propofol-remifentanil target-controlled anesthesia in a patient with hyperkalemic familial periodic paralysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:302.
421. Aouad R, Atanassoff PG. Epidural anesthesia in a patient with hyperkalemic periodic paralysis undergoing orthopedic surgery. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51:92.
422. Ashwood EM, Russell WJ, Burrow DD. Hyperkalaemic periodic paralysis and anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:579–584.
423. Aarons JJ, Moon RE, Camporesi EM. General anesthesia and hyperkalemic periodic paralysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:303–304.
424. Cone AM, Sansome AJ. Propofol in hyperkalaemic periodic paralysis. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:1097.
425. Weller JF, Elliott RA, Pronovost PJ. Spinal anesthesia for a patient with familial hyperkalemic periodic paralysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:259–260.
426. Barker MC. Combined spinal/general anesthesia with postoperative femoral nerve block for total knee replacement in a patient with familial hyperkalemic periodic paralysis: a case report. *AANA J*. 2010;78:191–194.
427. Siler JN, Discavage WJ. Anesthetic management of hypokalemic periodic paralysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43:489–490.
428. Melnick B, Chang JL, Larson CE, Bedger RC. Hypokalemic familial periodic paralysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:263–265.
429. Rooney RT, Shanahan EC, Sun T, Nally B. Atracurium and hypokalemic familial periodic paralysis. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:782–783.
430. Hofer C, Zalunardo MP, Zollinger A. Total intravenous anaesthesia in a patient with familial hypokalaemic periodic paralysis. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:1082–1085.
431. Chitra S, Korula G. Anaesthetic management of a patient with hypokalemic periodic paralysis- a case report. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2009;53:226–229.
432. Viscomi CM, Ptacek LJ, Dudley D. Anesthetic management of familial hypokalemic periodic paralysis during parturition. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:1081–1082.
433. Parness J, Bandschapp O, Girard T. The myotonias and susceptibility to malignant hyperthermia. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1054–1064.
434. Lambert C, Blanloeil Y, Horber RK, Berard L, Reyford H, Pinaud M. Malignant hyperthermia in a patient with hypokalemic periodic paralysis. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:1012–1014.
435. Rajabally YA, El Lahawi M. Hypokalemic periodic paralysis associated with malignant hyperthermia. *Muscle Nerve*. 2002;25:453–455.
436. Marchant CL, Ellis FR, Halsall PJ, Hopkins PM, Robinson RL. Mutation analysis of two patients with hypokalemic periodic paralysis and suspected malignant hyperthermia. *Muscle Nerve*. 2004;30:114–117.
437. Neuman GG, Kopman AF. Dyskalemic periodic paralysis and myotonia. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:426–428.

36

Cardiovascular Monitoring

BECKY SCHROEDER, JONATHAN MARK, and ATILIO BARBEITO

KEY POINTS

- Monitoring of the electrocardiogram (ECG) provides continuous monitoring of heart rate, identification of arrhythmias and conduction abnormalities, and detection of myocardial ischemia.
- Accurate and reliable ECG monitoring requires attention to lead placement and selection, choice of filter, and gain that will influence the displayed ECG tracing.
- An anterolateral precordial lead (V_3, V_4, or V_5) should be selected for the most sensitive detection of myocardial ischemia.
- Demand-mediated subendocardial ischemia resulting in ST-segment depression is the most commonly observed form of perioperative ischemia. ST-segment depression is most commonly observed in an anterolateral precordial lead regardless of the coronary territory responsible.
- Supply-mediated transmural ischemia resulting in ST-segment elevation is uncommonly observed intraoperatively except during cardiac operations. In contrast to ST-segment depression, ST-segment elevation is indicative of the myocardial territory and coronary artery involved.
- Most automated noninvasive arterial blood pressure measuring devices use an oscillometric measurement technique and rarely cause complications. Caution should be exercised in patients who cannot complain of arm pain, those with irregular rhythms that force repeated cuff inflation, and those receiving anticoagulant therapy.
- The Allen test for palmar arch collateral arterial flow is not a reliable method to predict complications from radial artery cannulation. Despite the absence of anatomic collateral flow at the elbow, brachial artery catheterization for perioperative blood pressure monitoring is a safe alternative to radial or femoral arterial catheterization.
- The accuracy of a directly recorded arterial pressure waveform is determined by the natural frequency and damping coefficient of the pressure monitoring system. Optimal dynamic response of the system will be achieved when the natural frequency is high, thereby allowing accurate pressure recording across a wide range of damping coefficients.
- The preferred position for alignment (or “leveling”) of external pressure transducers for measuring arterial or central venous pressure (CVP), which eliminates confounding hydrostatic pressure artifacts, lies approximately 5 cm posterior to the sternomanubrial junction. The more conventional location for the reference level used for hemodynamic monitoring including central venous and pulmonary artery pressures, is the mid-thoracic level, which corresponds most closely to the mid-left atrial position and is located halfway between the anterior sternum and the bed surface in the supine patient.
- Because of wave reflection and other physical phenomena, the arterial blood pressure recorded from peripheral sites has a wider pulse pressure than when measured more centrally.
- Dynamic measures of cardiac preload, such as stroke volume and pulse pressure variation, are better predictors of intravascular volume responsiveness than static indicators, such as CVP and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure.
- Selecting the best site, catheter, and method for safe and effective central venous cannulation requires that the physician consider the purpose of catheterization, the patient’s underlying medical condition, the intended operation, and the skill and experience of the physician performing the procedure. Right internal jugular vein cannulation is preferred due to its consistent, predictable anatomic location and its relative ease of access intraoperatively.
- Mechanical complications from central venous catheters can be decreased by the use of ultrasound vessel localization, venous pressure measurement before large catheter insertion, and radiographic confirmation that the catheter tip lies outside the pericardium and parallel to the walls of the superior vena cava.
- CVP is the result of a complex and diverse interplay among many different physiologic variables, the main ones being venous return and cardiac function. No simple relationship exists between CVP and circulating blood volume. Despite this, important pathophysiologic information can be obtained by careful assessment of the CVP waveform morphology.
- Catheter misuse and data misinterpretation are among the most common complications of central venous and pulmonary artery catheters.
- Pulmonary artery wedge pressure is a delayed and damped reflection of left atrial pressure. The wedge pressure provides a close estimate for pulmonary capillary pressure in many cases, but it may underestimate capillary pressure when postcapillary pulmonary vascular resistance is increased, as in patients with sepsis.

- Use of central venous, pulmonary artery diastolic, or pulmonary artery wedge pressures as estimates of left ventricular preload is subject to many confounding factors, including changes in diastolic ventricular compliance and juxtacardiac pressure.
- Pulmonary artery catheter monitoring has not been shown to improve patient outcomes. Reasons cited for these results include misinterpretation of catheter-derived data and failure of hemodynamic therapies that are guided by specific hemodynamic indices.
- Thermodilution cardiac output monitoring, the most widely used clinical technique, is subject to measurement errors introduced by rapid intravenous fluid administration, intracardiac shunts, and tricuspid valve regurgitation.
- Mixed venous hemoglobin oxygen saturation is a measure of the adequacy of cardiac output relative to body oxygen requirements. This measurement is also dependent on the arterial hemoglobin oxygen saturation and hemoglobin concentration.

Introduction to Cardiovascular Monitoring: Focused Physical Examination

Electronic devices currently provide the vast majority of information used in monitoring a patient's cardiovascular status. However, the physician's senses, augmented by clinical context, continue to provide global insight into the patient's condition and remain critical in evaluating, and interpreting data derived from other sources.[1] Manual palpation of an arterial pulse will differentiate true asystole from monitoring artifact more efficiently than troubleshooting any monitor. Regardless of the manner used, though, it is important to understand the strengths and limitations of monitoring techniques.

Heart Rate and Pulse Rate Monitoring

The ability to estimate the heart rate quickly with a "finger on the pulse" is as important as this expression is common despite near-universal use of electronic devices for continuous monitoring. The electrocardiogram (ECG) is the most common heart rate monitoring method used in the operating room, even though any device measuring the period of the cardiac cycle will suffice. Accurate detection of the R wave and measurement of the interval from the peak of one QRS complex to the peak of the next on an ECG (R-R interval) serve as the basis from which digitally displayed values are derived and periodically updated (e.g., at 5- to 15-second intervals) (Fig. 36.1).[2]

The distinction between heart rate and pulse rate lies in the difference between electrical depolarization with systolic contraction of the heart (heart rate) and a detectable peripheral arterial pulsation (pulse rate). Pulse deficit describes the extent to which the pulse rate is less than the heart rate and may arise in conditions such as atrial fibrillation in which stroke volume is periodically compromised by a very short R-R interval to such an extent that no arterial pulse is detectable for that systolic ejection. Electrical-mechanical dissociation and pulseless electrical activity are extreme examples of pulse deficit in which cardiac contraction is completely unable to generate a palpable peripheral pulse. The heart rate is reported from the ECG trace and the pulse rate from the pulse oximeter plethysmograph or arterial blood pressure monitor. Considering both in monitoring and clinical evaluation improves accuracy and reduces measurement errors and false alarms.[3]

Electrocardiography Monitoring

The value and importance of intraoperative monitoring of the ECG is evidenced by its requirement as a basic circulatory monitoring standard by the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA)[4]: "Every patient receiving anesthesia shall have the ECG continuously displayed from the beginning of anesthesia until preparing to leave the anesthetizing location." Similar recommendations have been recently updated by the American Heart Association (AHA) to guide indications, duration, and implementation of ECG monitoring in hospitalized patients outside of the operating room.[5]

The three primary reasons for ECG monitoring are continuous monitoring of heart rate, identification of arrhythmias and conduction abnormalities, and detection of myocardial ischemia. Furthermore, with many patients coming to surgery with pacemakers or implantable cardiac defibrillators in place, the ECG monitor enables the anesthesiologist to follow the proper function of these devices during the perioperative period. (Perioperative management of these devices is described in Chapter 38.) In order for bedside ECG monitoring to be accurate and effective, the clinician must attend to proper lead placement and selection, filter mode, and gain adjustment.

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM LEAD PLACEMENT AND SELECTION

Standard Lead Systems

Current operating room and intensive care monitoring systems have five leads that allow monitoring of the standard limb leads (I, II, III), the augmented limb leads (aVR, aVL, aVF), and a single precordial lead (V_1, V_2, V_3, V_4, V_5, or V_6). Typically, two of these 12 standard leads are simultaneously displayed on the bedside monitor. Historically, the augmented limb leads and precordial leads were described as *unipolar*, whereas the standard limb leads were described as *bipolar*. A recent scientific statement from the AHA and others[6] discourages this distinction because in effect, all the lead configurations are effectively bipolar in their recording of surface electrical potentials.

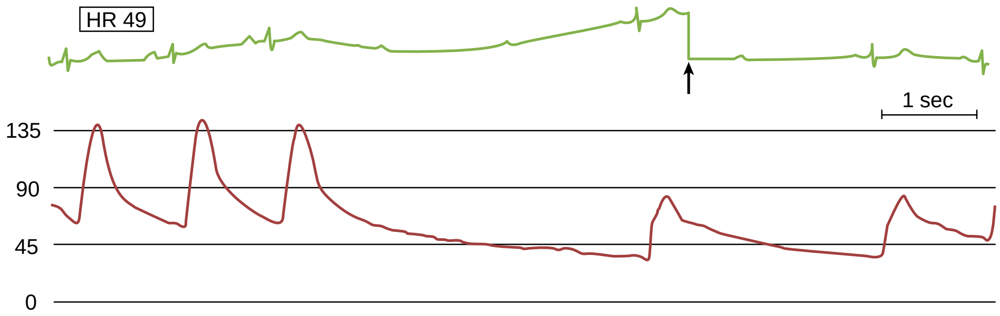


Fig. 36.1 Digital heart rate *(HR)* displays may fail to warn of dangerous bradyarrhythmias. Direct observation of the electrocardiogram (ECG) and the arterial blood pressure traces reveals complete heart block and a 4-second period of asystole, whereas the digital display reports an HR of 49 beats/min. Note that the ECG filter *(arrow)* corrects the baseline drift so that the trace remains on the recording screen. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

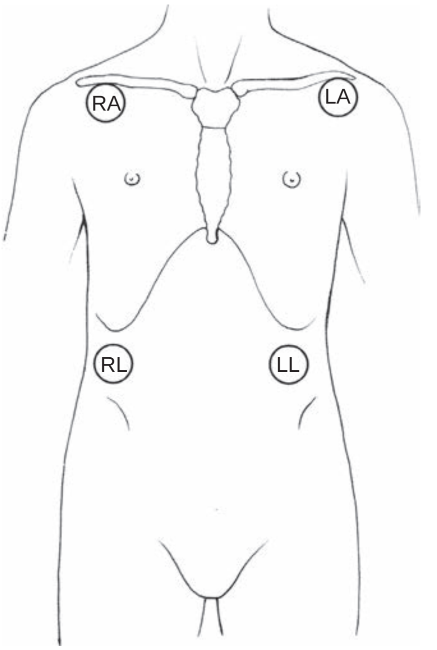


Fig. 36.2 Standard ECG limb lead placement for patient monitoring. *LA*, Left arm; *LL*, left leg; *RA*, right arm; *RL*, right leg. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

Based on AHA guidelines, ECG monitoring leads have a standard color-coding system: right arm (white), left arm (black), right leg (green), left leg (red), and precordial lead (brown). Of note, this color scheme is not the same used internationally or the one recommended by the International Electrotechnical Commission. Unlike recording a standard 12-lead ECG, where the limb leads are attached to electrodes placed on the wrists and ankles or arms and legs, when monitoring patients in the operating room or intensive care unit (ICU), the limb leads are typically placed on the torso, with the right and left arm leads placed just below the clavicles and the leg leads placed above the hips (Fig. 36.2). Of note, placement of the right leg lead (green lead) can be anywhere on the body because it is a ground electrode, and its location will not alter the display of any of the selected standard leads.[7]

Placement of the limb electrodes on the torso has been utilized since 1966, when Mason and Likar introduced a variation on positioning the standard limb electrodes of the 12-lead ECG during exercise stress testing to minimize artifacts in the limb leads caused by movement.[8] Although the limb lead QRS complexes are slightly different in amplitude and axis, and the precordial leads may vary slightly from the standard 12-lead ECG recording, studies have shown that the ST-segment measurements during exercise stress testing were generally similar when the Mason-Likar 12-lead ECG system is used, as compared with the standard 12-lead ECG.[8-11] Consequently, torso-positioned limb leads have become standard for monitoring in the operating room and ICU because of convenience and the potential to obviate motion artifact.

In some cases, surgical incisions, patient positioning, or other procedural aspects may mandate adjusting these limb lead electrode locations. However, for reliable recording of standard limb leads, the electrodes must be outside the cardiac borders, in the transverse plane above and below the heart, and in the sagittal plane to the left and right of the heart (Fig. 36.3). In practice, limb lead placement closer to the heart may lead to unintended distortion of the ECG tracings.[10]

Placement of the precordial lead (brown) electrode requires more attention than the limb leads, since this lead is often misplaced and its position is critical for the reliable and sensitive detection of myocardial ischemia. The V_5 precordial lead is the one most commonly chosen for monitoring patients at risk for myocardial ischemia, since historically it has been shown to be the most sensitive single lead for detecting ischemia during exercise stress testing[12,13] and during anesthesia.[14,15] Importantly, the V_5 precordial lead can be monitored during cardiac operations without interfering with the surgical prep and median sternotomy incision. For patients undergoing other operations, particularly high-risk patients undergoing vascular procedures, leads V_4 or V_3 may be chosen because there is good evidence that these leads are even more sensitive for detecting prolonged postoperative myocardial ischemia.[16]

Standard locations for the six precordial lead electrodes are shown in Fig. 36.4. Given that there is considerable evidence that precordial lead placement is inaccurate even during diagnostic 12-lead ECG recordings,[6] it is likely that this is also commonplace during ECG monitoring in the operating room and ICU. Accurate lead placement is facilitated by locating the manubrial-sternal junction, its immediately inferior rib interspace (the second), and then palpating down to identify the fourth and fifth interspaces for accurate precordial lead location. Note that lead V_4 lies

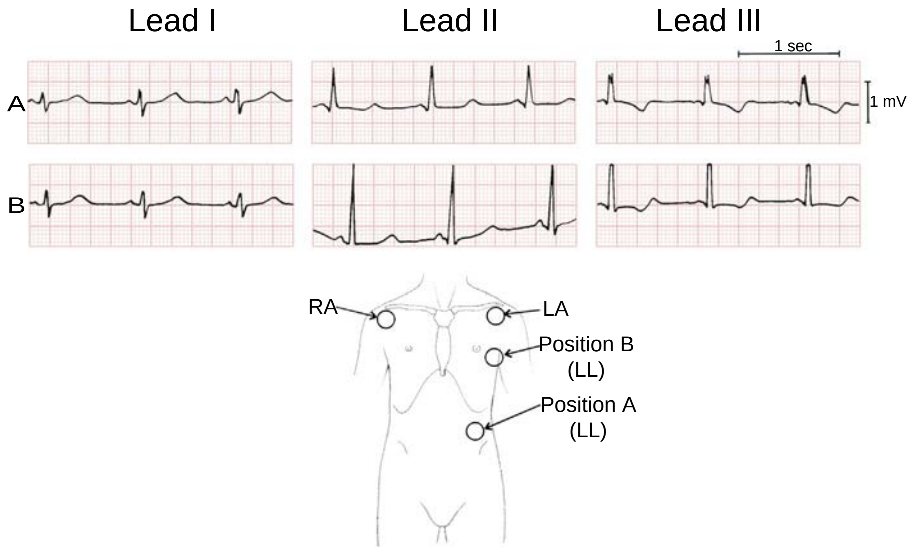


Fig. 36.3 Importance of ECG limb lead placement. ECG recording of leads I, II, and III from position A, with the left leg *(LL)* lead in the standard location below the heart near the left iliac crest compared with position B, with the LL lead placed over the precordium (near the V_5 position). Standard ECG limb lead positioning should be outside the cardiac borders, as shown here in position A. If the LL lead electrode is placed inappropriately in position B, the recording of leads II and III will be modified. Note, however, that the recording of lead I is not affected by the misplaced LL lead, since lead I measures the difference between left arm *(LA)* and right arm *(RA)* electrodes. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

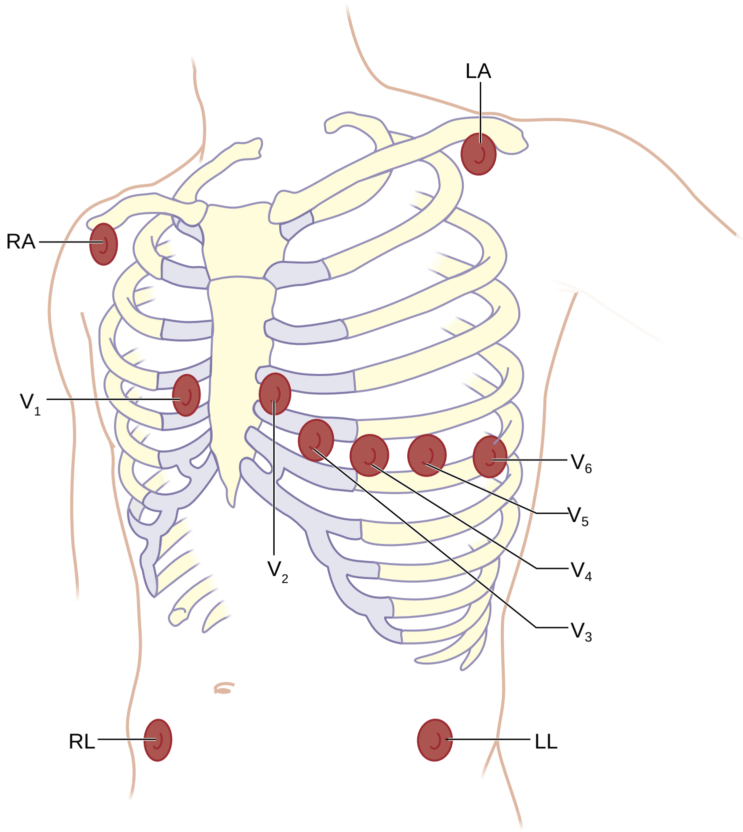


Fig. 36.4 Proper anatomic location of the six standard precordial ECG leads. Precise positioning of the lateral precordial leads is ensured by identifying the fifth intercostal space in the mid-clavicular line for lead V_4, moving laterally to the anterior axillary line for V_5, and further laterally to the mid-axillary line for V_6. *LA*, Left arm; *LL*, left leg; *RA*, right arm; *RL*, right leg.

in the fifth interspace at the mid-clavicular line, and leads V_5 and V_6 are located directly lateral to V_4 in the anterior and mid-axillary lines, respectively.

Given anatomic considerations and the strong evidence that the mid-precordial leads (V_3, V_4, V_5) are best for detection of ischemia, it is important that the precordial lead not be placed haphazardly or too laterally. In some cases (e.g., patients undergoing left thoracotomy), none of these precordial lead placement sites are possible. In this instance, it is reasonable to choose another standard lead position, such as V$_1$, but it is important that the clinician recognize that ECG monitoring for ischemia will not be as sensitive.

Alternative Lead Systems

Electrocardiographic evidence for right ventricular (RV) ischemia and infarction is best identified by right-sided precordial leads, particularly lead V$_{4R}$, a mirror image of the V$_4$ lead, positioned in the fourth intercostal space at the midclavicular line. Although never chosen for routine ischemia monitoring, this lead has proven valuable for detecting RV ischemia and infarction, and might be chosen to monitor patients at risk for inferior left ventricular (LV) ischemia, which is commonly accompanied by RV involvement.[6,17]

Three-lead ECG monitoring systems, while less common today than five-lead systems, remain available particularly in non-operating room procedural settings and for patient transport. A three-lead system is also the standard ECG monitoring system incorporated in external defibrillator devices. The three leads (right arm, left arm, left leg) can be placed in similar locations to their five-lead system counterparts, and this allows reliable monitoring of heart rate, detection of R waves for synchronized direct current cardioversion, and monitoring for potentially life-threatening arrhythmias such as ventricular fibrillation. These systems are more limited than five-lead systems (or standard 12-lead ECG recordings) for diagnosing more complex arrhythmias and detection of myocardial ischemia. Modifications of these standard limb leads allow better sensitivity for ischemia monitoring by placing the positive (left arm) electrode in the standard precordial V$_5$ position and selecting an appropriate limb lead (usually lead I) to create this modified lead recording. These three-lead variations useful for ischemia monitoring are created by placing the right arm lead in the following locations: CS$_5$ (central subclavicular), CM$_5$ (central manubrial), CB$_5$ (central back), and CC$_5$ (central chest) (Fig. 36.5). Each of these lead recordings will be a modification of the standard precordial V$_5$ lead, and owing to differences in R-wave amplitude and ST-segment morphology, may lead to over- or underestimation of ST-segment changes.[18]

Another modified three-lead system is a surrogate for precordial lead V$_1$. This lead (MCL$_1$) is recorded by placing the left arm lead in standard position, the left leg lead at the V$_1$ position, and selecting lead III (see Fig. 36.5). This modified lead system is useful for monitoring in the ICU or other circumstances where detection of P-wave morphology and arrhythmias is of paramount importance.

Following cardiac surgical procedures, recording the ECG signal from an epicardial atrial pacing wire may also be useful for detecting P waves that may not be as evident from skin surface ECG recordings (Fig. 36.6). This alternative lead recording is usually performed in the ICU using a 12-lead ECG system and attaching one of the atrial pacing wires to a precordial lead wire.

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM FILTER SELECTION

The ECG signal is subject to artifacts (noise) both in the low-frequency and high-frequency ranges. Consequently, all ECG monitors use bandpass filters to narrow the signal bandwidth, preserving the signal of interest while reducing artifacts and improving signal quality. As the name suggests, a bandpass filter allows signal frequencies within a certain range to pass or be displayed, while attenuating or functionally eliminating signal frequencies both at a low range and a high range.

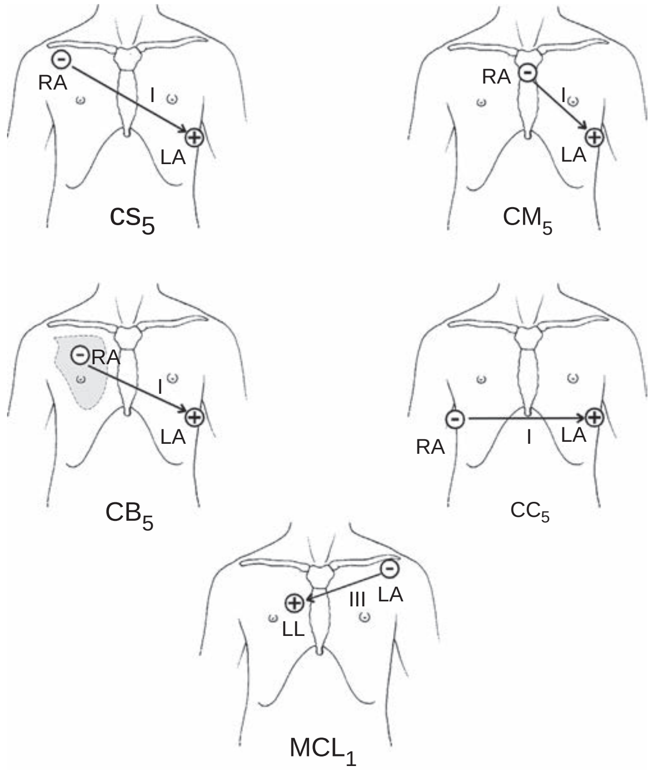


Fig. 36.5 When only a three-electrode lead set is available, modified bipolar limb leads may be recorded as surrogates for standard precordial leads. Alternatives to precordial lead V$_5$ are recorded by selecting lead I on the bedside monitor and placing the positive exploring left arm *(LA)* electrode in the V$_5$ position. The nomenclature describing these leads derives from the location of the positive exploring electrode located in the V$_5$ position and the negative right arm *(RA)* electrode position being located as follows: *(CS$_5$)* central subclavicular, *(CM$_5$)* central manubrial, *(CB$_5$)* central back (shown overlying the right scapula), and *(CC$_5$)* central chest. In contrast, note that the *(MCL$_1$)* lead (modified central lead 1) is recorded by selecting lead III on the bedside monitor and placing the positive exploring left leg *(LL)* electrode in the V$_1$ position with the negative LA lead in a modified position beneath the left clavicle. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

Low-frequency artifact is typically caused by respiration or patient movement that causes the ECG tracing to wander above and below the baseline (Fig. 36.7). Often this will appear as the ECG tracing being cut off or only partially displayed on the bedside monitor channel. Therefore, low-frequency filters (also called high-pass filters) are used in ECG monitoring. The heart rate forms a rough lower bound for the frequency content of the ECG signal and is measured in Hertz (Hz, cycles per second). Since heart rates slower than 40 beats per minute (bpm) (0.67 Hz) are uncommon, traditional low-frequency analog filters are used to cut off signals at frequencies below 0.5 Hz. However, such filters may introduce considerable distortion into the ECG, particularly with respect to the level of the ST segment, resulting from phase nonlinearities that occur in areas of the ECG signal where frequency content and wave amplitude abruptly change, as occurs where the end of the QRS complex meets the ST segment. The 1975 AHA recommendations included

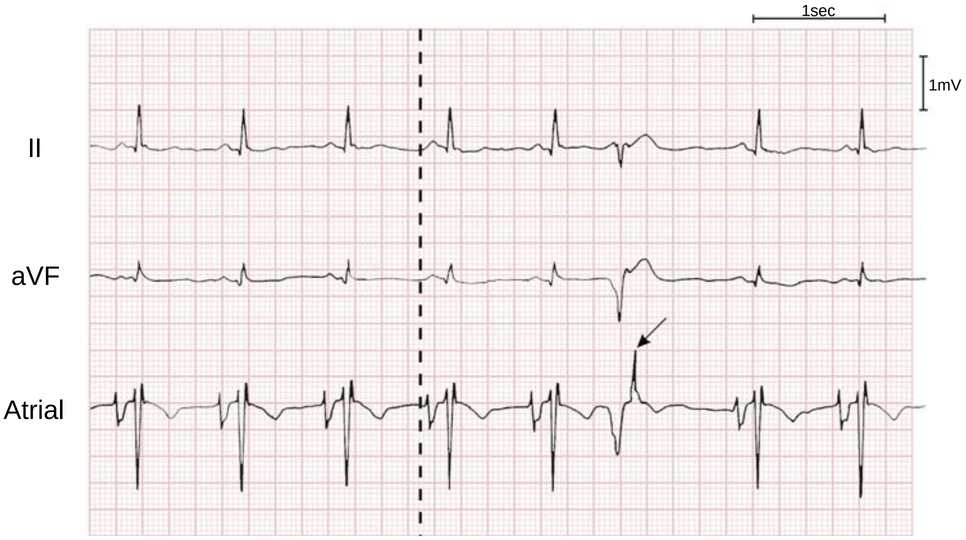


Fig. 36.6 Simultaneous recording of surface ECG leads II and aVF and an atrial epicardial lead *(atrial)* recorded from a pacing wire attached to the surface of the right atrium. Onset of atrial electrical activity is denoted by the P wave in the surface leads and marked by the dashed vertical line. Note that the amplitude of the atrial electrical signal is greatest in the atrial lead recording. In addition, the sixth beat is a ventricular premature beat, and the resulting retrograde atrial depolarization is clearly evident in the atrial lead *(arrow)* but not seen as easily in standard surface ECG leads II or aVF. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

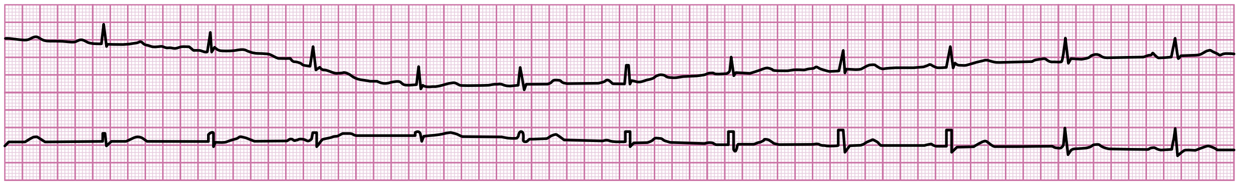


Fig. 36.7 ECG recording of lead II *(top)* and lead V_5 *(bottom)* at standard speed (25 mm/s) and gain (10 mm/mV) with a diagnostic bandpass filter. The respiratory artifact is evident from the varying or wandering baseline most noticeable in lead II. This artifact will be eliminated by using the monitor bandpass filter.

a 0.05-Hz low-frequency cutoff for diagnostic ECGs. This recommendation preserves the fidelity of repolarization, but baseline drift can still be a problem. Current modern digital filtering provides more sophisticated methods for a higher cutoff for low-frequency filtration without those phase distortions observed with analog filtering. Thus, to reduce artifactual distortion of the ST segment, current AHA recommendations suggest the low-frequency cutoff should be either 0.05 Hz for monitors with analog filters or 0.67 Hz or below for monitors and ECG recording devices with linear digital filters with zero phase distortion.[6]

High-frequency ECG artifacts are typically caused by muscle fasciculations, tremors, and most importantly, the ever present 60 cycle (Hz) electromagnetic interference from other electrical equipment in the monitoring environment. These artifacts can be eliminated with high-frequency filters (also termed low-pass filters), but like low-frequency filters, the high-frequency filters may distort the ECG signal in undesirable ways. The higher frequencies in the ECG signal include features such as rapid upstroke velocity (QRS complex), peak amplitude (R wave), and waves of short duration. Most importantly, pacing spikes, which by definition are high frequency and low amplitude, are often eliminated by high-frequency filters and make bedside identification of pacemaker function impossible. A high-frequency cutoff of 100 Hz was considered adequate by the AHA in 1975 to maintain diagnostic accuracy during visual inspection of an ECG, although it has long been recognized that higher-frequency components of the QRS complex may have clinical significance in patients with various forms of heart disease. According to current AHA recommendations, to measure routine duration and amplitudes accurately in adults, adolescents, and children, an upper frequency cutoff of at least 150 Hz is required, and an upper frequency cutoff of 250 Hz is more appropriate for infants.[6]

Current ECG monitors allow the clinician a choice among several filtering modes or bandwidths. The actual filter frequencies tend to vary among manufacturers, but in general there are three different filters that may be selected, termed diagnostic mode, monitoring mode, and filter mode. The ***diagnostic mode*** typically has a bandpass of 0.05 to 150 Hz, and this filter should always be selected for the most undistorted and accurate display of the ST segment and the identification of pacing spikes. The ***monitor mode*** typically has a bandpass of 0.5 to 40 Hz, and while both low-frequency (respiratory drift) and high-frequency (60 Hz) noise is reduced or attenuated, the ST segments are often distorted and typically show an exaggerated deviation that is artifactually introduced by the filter (Figs. 36.8A and B).[19] The ***filter mode*** bandpass is 0.5 to 20 Hz and may incorporate a notch filter aimed at further attenuating and eliminating 60 Hz interference from nearby electrical equipment.

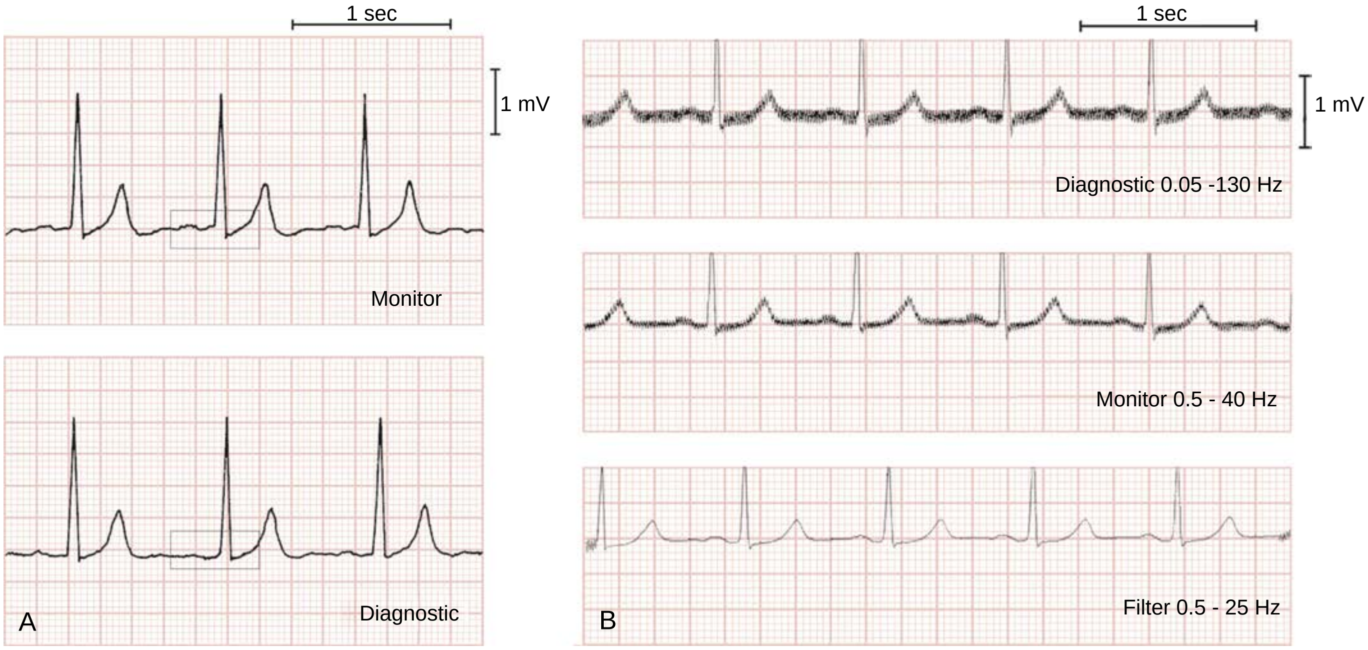


Fig. 36.8 Effects of filter selection on the ST segment. Application of the monitor mode filter (8A, *top panel*) produces artifactual J-point depression and upsloping ST-segment depression *(box)*. These abnormalities are not seen when the diagnostic mode filter (8A, *bottom panel*) is used to record the ECG. Filter selection also effects ECG electrical interference originating from the wall power source (8B). Compared to the diagnostic mode filter (bandpass 0.05-130 Hz), the narrower bandpass of the monitor mode (0.5-40 Hz) reduces this high-frequency artifact, and the filter mode (0.5-25 Hz) that incorporates an additional notch filter at 60 Hz eliminates this electrical artifact entirely. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

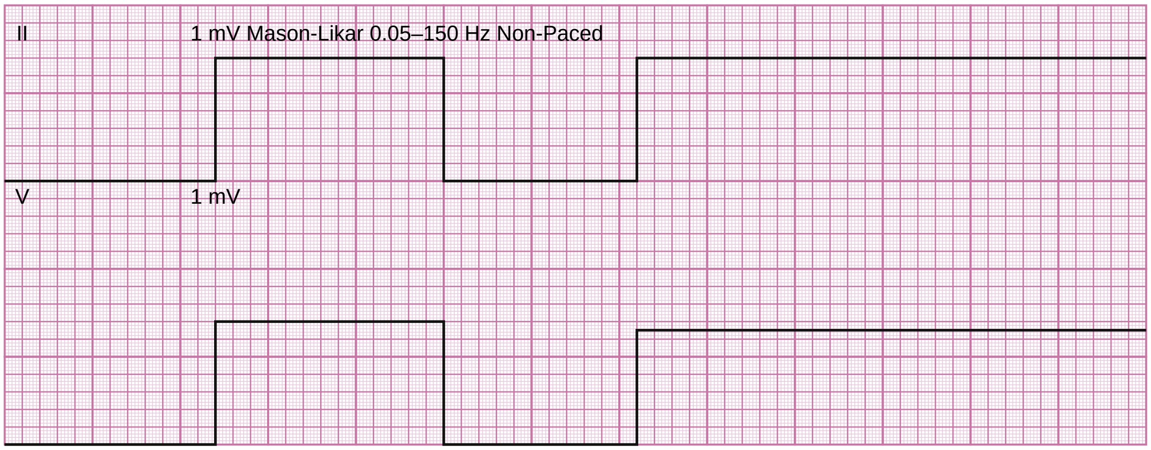


Fig. 36.9 ECG gain is indicated by a 1 mV rectangular calibration signal on a paper recording or by a 1 mV vertical marker at the edge of the bedside monitor ECG waveform. In this example, the ECG is shown at standard gain, 10 mm/mV.

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM GAIN SELECTION

In addition to lead and filter selection, bedside monitors also allow adjustment and selection of the ECG signal gain. A standard ECG is recorded at a gain of 10 mm/mV and is indicated by a 1 mV rectangular calibration signal on a paper recording (Fig. 36.9) or by a 1 mV vertical marker at the edge of the bedside monitor ECG waveform. Bedside monitors may be set to an autogain mode, where the available display space is filled by the ECG tracing and the corresponding increase or decrease from standard gain is indicated by the vertical marker. Alternatively, the clinician may adjust the ECG signal gain manually. This is done when the monitor detection of heart rate is inaccurate. For example, one might reduce the ECG signal gain when the monitor is inappropriately counting a tall T wave as an R wave and displaying an artifactual heart rate that is twice the true rate. Conversely, one would increase the ECG gain when there are very small R waves and the monitor cannot record and display the heart rate.

Gain adjustment is important because all features of the ECG are equally amplified or reduced when the gain is changed from the 10 mm/mV standard. As a consequence, ST-segment deviations can be obscured when gain is reduced and thereby impair clinical observation of important ST-segment changes. Alternatively, if the gain is

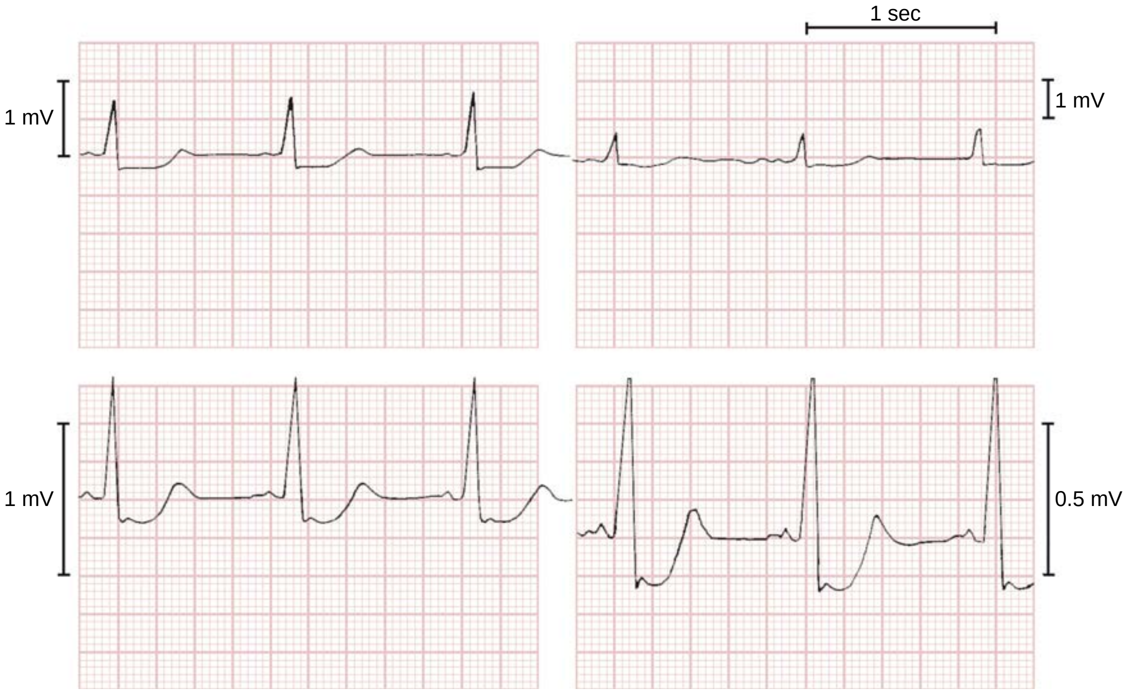


Fig. 36.10 Effect of gain adjustment on the magnitude of ST-segment shift. The magnitude of ST-segment depression and R-wave amplitude vary in direct proportion to overall signal gain denoted by the vertical calibration signals adjacent to the traces (10 mm/mV, *upper left panel*; 5 mm/mV, *upper right panel*; 20 mm/mV, *lower left panel*; 20 mm/0.5 mV or 40 mm/mV, *lower right panel*). Note that at four times standard gain *(lower right panel)*, the ST depression increases to 6 mm but R-wave amplitude only increases to 21 mm because the R-wave peak is "cut off" at the upper limits of the recording display. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

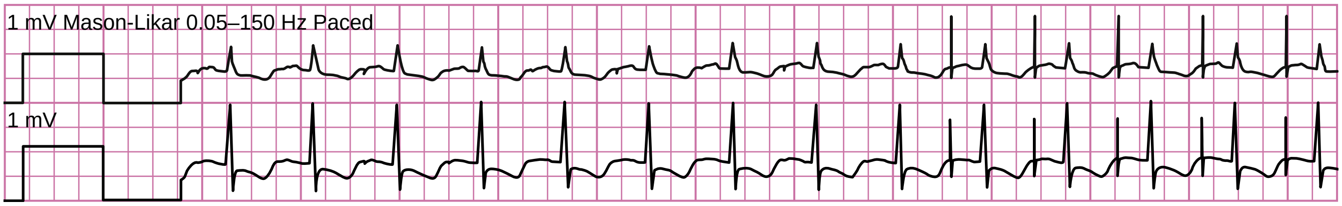


Fig. 36.11 Leads II *(top)* and V_5 *(bottom)* are recorded during atrial pacing (86 beats/min) at standard speed (25 mm/ms) and gain (10 mm/mV). Atrial pacing spikes are small and difficult to discern, particularly in lead V_5. Prior to the 10th beat, the *Pacing Mode* is selected and the monitor marks the atrial pacing spikes clearly on the remaining five beats.

increased, ST deviations will also be amplified proportionally. While common clinical communication of ST-segment shifts is always described in terms of millimeters (mm) of depression or elevation, interpretation of bedside monitor ECG tracings must always be tempered by consideration of the display gain (Fig. 36.10).

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM PACING MODE

While older ECG monitors recorded analog (continuous) signals, current devices convert the analog ECG signal to digital form by sampling the signal at very high rates up to 15,000 times per second.[6] This oversampling of the ECG signal was originally introduced to allow identification and recording of pacemaker stimulus outputs (pacing spikes), which are generally shorter than 0.5 ms, but current systems do not always detect these small-amplitude high-frequency signals reliably. As a result, most bedside ECG monitors now include a ***pacing mode*** selection, which when activated, employs an algorithm to detect and highlight these pacing spikes, making detection of pacemaker function easier. When this monitoring mode is selected, clinicians should recognize that the displayed ECG tracing shows regular markers, often in a different color than the ECG tracing, that indicate and highlight presence of a pacemaker stimulus output. These are not amplified pacemaker signals, but rather monitor-generated markers of their detection. While very helpful to the clinician at the bedside, pacemaker mode monitoring may not reliably detect pacemaker spikes in all patients. In other instances, the intrinsic features of the pacemaker stimulus in different leads might allow their detection in some leads but not others (Fig. 36.11).

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM DISPLAYS AND RECORDINGS

Monitoring the ECG during anesthesia and in the ICU includes both observation of the bedside monitor display and periodic recording of the ECG "rhythm strip" for documentation or more careful analysis. The most common bedside recording system provides a 2-inch strip that records two

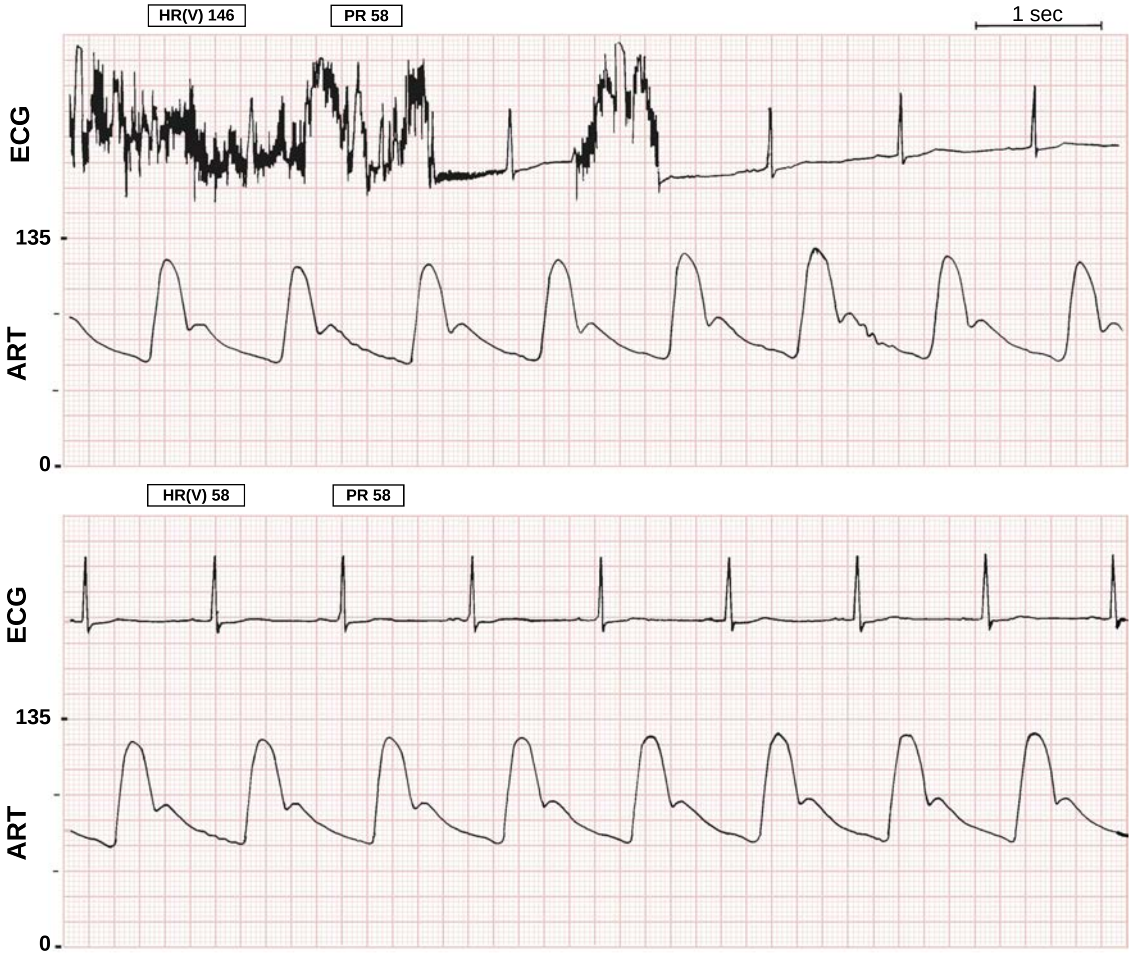


Fig. 36.12 Electrosurgical unit interference with heart rate measurement from the ECG. *(Top panel)* The ECG signal from lead V is distorted by the electrosurgical unit. As a result, the digital value for heart rate *(HR)* is erroneous (146 beats/min), although the pulse rate *(PR)* is measured accurately by the monitor from the arterial blood pressure waveform (58 beats/min). *(Lower panel)* Correct (and identical) digital values for both HR and PR are displayed by the monitor. *ART*, Arterial blood pressure. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

ECG leads (see Fig. 36.11), but other recording systems may provide larger formats for multi-lead or multi-waveform recording. Monitoring systems may also have "full disclosure" capability whereby monitored ECG (and other) waveforms are stored for up to 24 hours and can be retrieved and printed for review. This last system is particularly useful for the retrospective identification, interpretation, and documentation of arrhythmias or other cardiovascular changes that may have escaped detection in real time by clinicians at the bedside.

The ECG tracing on the bedside monitor can be displayed at varying sweep speeds, but most typically is displayed at 25 mm/s, the same speed as a standard 12-lead ECG tracing. As described previously, the ECG gain can be adjusted and the displayed gain should be indicated by a vertical marker overlying the ECG tracing, the standard being 10 mm/mV.

Paper recordings of the ECG should have standard millimeter grids, such that with a standard sweep speed of 25 mm/s, each 1 mm is a 40 ms interval, and a darker line appearing every 5 mm indicates a 200 ms interval (see Fig. 36.11). As noted, the recorded gain is indicated by a 1 mV rectangular calibration signal, the standard being 10 mm/mV.

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM ARTIFACTS

As is the case for all bedside monitoring,[20] artifacts commonly distort the monitored ECG tracing and must be identified to prevent misinterpretation or inappropriate treatment. In the operating room, the most common cause of ECG artifact is the electrosurgical unit (ESU). Since some of the frequencies generated by the ESU fall within the QRS frequency range, and the amplitude of these signals can be very high (1 kV or 1 million times the typical QRS amplitude of 1 mV),[21] even the best current advanced filtering techniques cannot eliminate this artifact that often totally masks the ECG signal (Fig. 36.12). This not only precludes identification of any ECG waveform features, but it can also prevent ECG monitoring of heart rate. The almost universal availability of additional simultaneously displayed waveforms, such as the pulse oximetry plethysmogram or an arterial blood pressure waveform, allow safe patient monitoring during these brief periods of ESU deployment (Fig. 36.12).

Other common ECG artifacts have been identified, and include common sources such as the 60 Hz interference from other medical devices near the patient (see Fig. 36.8B) and less common sources such as the cardiopulmonary

BOX 36.1 Equipment or Component-Related Electrocardiographic Artifacts

- Monitor/components
  - Manufacturing problems (50/60-Hz filter)
  - Defective monitor insulation
- Orthopedic shaver
- Intraoperative MRI
- Sinus endoscope
- Pressure-controlled irrigation pumps
- Flexible bronchoscopes
- ESWL
- Digital urine output-core temperature monitors
- Intravenous fluid warmer/warming sets
- Cardiopulmonary bypass machine
- Ventilator—HFOV
- Electrostimulators
  - Spinal cord, peripheral nerve, thalamic, vagal nerve, transcutaneous nerve, other
- Evoked potential monitoring units
- Hemodialysis machines
- Cellular telephones

ESWL, Extracorporeal shock-wave lithotripsy; *HFOV*, high-frequency oscillatory ventilation; *MRI*, magnetic resonance imaging.

Adapted from Patel SI, Souter MJ. Equipment-related electrocardiographic artifacts: causes, characteristics, consequences, and correction. *Anesthesiology.* 2008;108(1):138–148.

bypass machine.[22] Patel and Souter provide a comprehensive list of reported sources of ECG artifact (Box 36.1).[23]

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM MONITORING FOR MYOCARDIAL ISCHEMIA

The ST segment, representing myocardial repolarization, is the ECG component most sensitive to acute myocardial ischemia. ST elevation, with or without tall positive (hyperacute) T waves, indicates transmural ischemia and is most often the result of acute coronary artery occlusion either by coronary thrombosis or vasospasm (Prinzmetal-variant angina). Reciprocal ST-segment depression may appear in the contralateral leads. Ischemia confined to the subendocardial area is usually denoted by ST-segment depression. Subendocardial, ST-depression–type ischemia typically occurs during episodes of symptomatic or asymptomatic (*silent*) stable angina pectoris, and is characteristic of ischemia occurring during exercise, tachycardia, or pharmacologic stress testing in patients with significant but stable coronary artery disease.

Automated Real-Time ST-Segment Monitoring

Real-time ST-segment analysis first appeared in cardiac monitoring in the mid-1980s and is currently standard in most ECG monitors. On some monitors, the ST-segment analysis is set up to turn on automatically, but while ST-segment analysis is commonplace in the operating room, it is underutilized in other monitoring settings. A recent study has shown that even among coronary care units, less than 50% routinely use ST-segment monitoring for the detection of myocardial ischemia in patients admitted with acute coronary syndromes.[24] Chief among the reasons for the underuse of ST-segment analysis are the frequent number of false alarms and the lack of education on how to use the technology. In addition, no evidence exists as to whether the addition of computerized ST-segment ischemia monitoring improves patient outcomes after surgery.

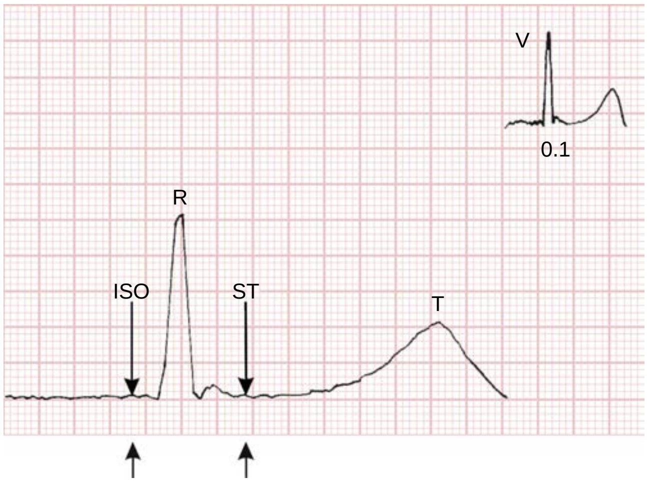


Fig. 36.13 Enlarged display of ECG lead V, showing the isoelectric *(ISO)* and ST-segment *(ST)* measurement points during continuous computer-aided ST-segment monitoring. The ECG R and T waves are also identified. This V lead ECG complex is shown at standard gain (10 mm/mV) in the upper right corner of the panel. The computer measures and displays 0.1 mm (0.01 mV) of ST-segment elevation in this lead. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

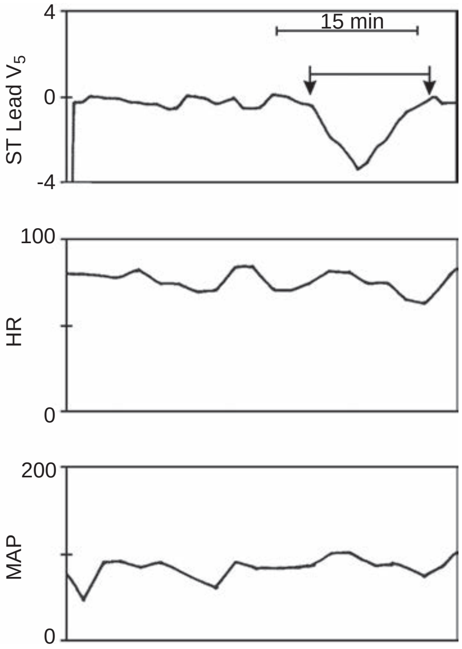


Fig. 36.14 One-hour trend displays for computer-aided continuous ST-segment monitoring in lead V_5, heart rate (*HR*, beats/min), and mean arterial pressure (*MAP*, mm Hg). A 15-minute episode of ST-segment depression *(arrows)* occurs without significant accompanying changes in HR or MAP. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

Computerized ST-segment analysis is achieved by the monitor measuring the ST segment at 60 or 80 ms after the J point (termed as J+60 or J+80 ms) and comparing it with the isoelectric point measured during the PR interval (Fig. 36.13). One millimeter of ST-segment deviation is equivalent to a 0.1 mV difference. The changes in ST-segment level over time in each lead can be displayed as ST-segment trends, just like trend displays of other hemodynamic variables (Fig. 36.14).

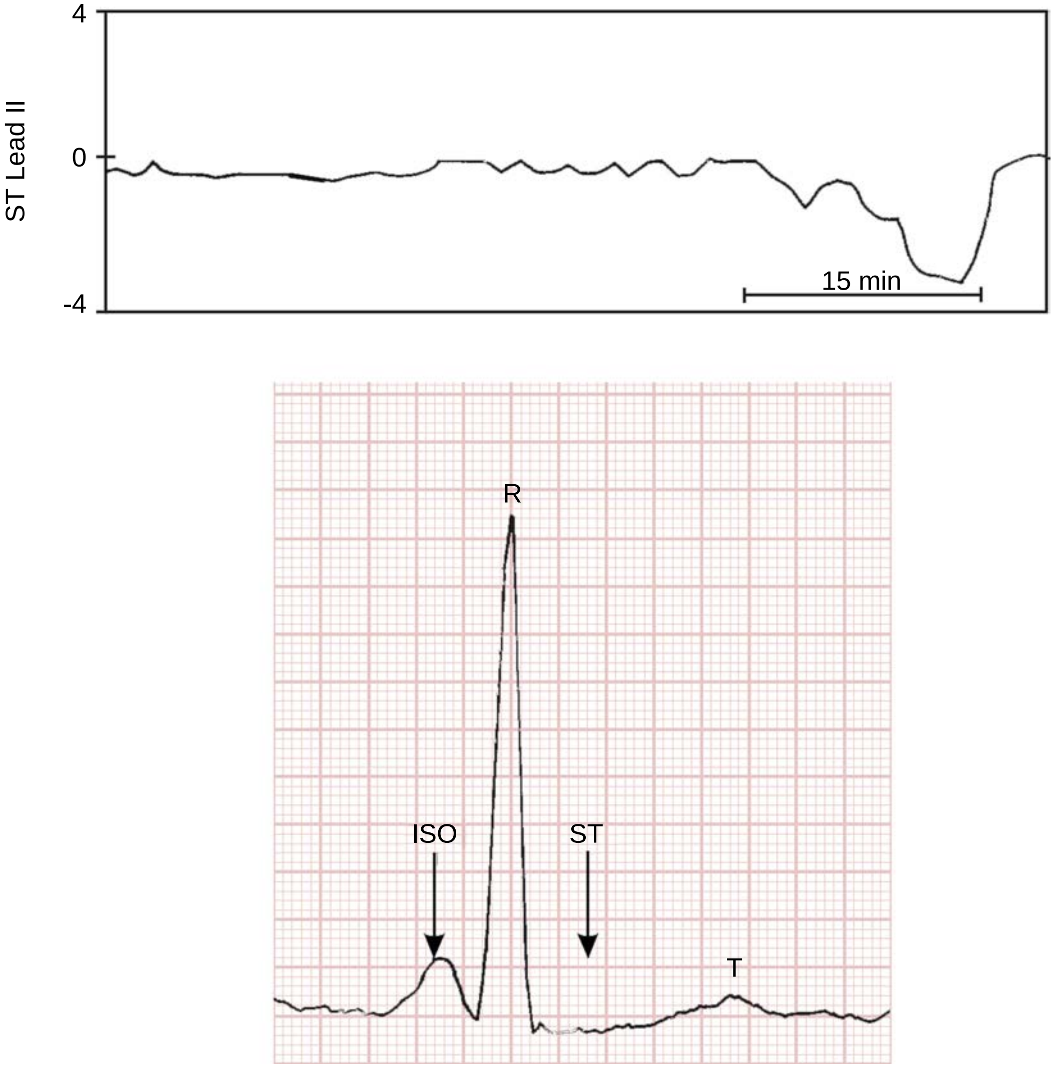


Fig. 36.15 Erroneous identification of the isoelectric *(ISO)* point measurement during computer-aided continuous ST-segment monitoring. A 1-hour trend recording of ST-segment deviations in lead II, displayed as millimeters of ST displacement, shows approximately 15 minutes of ST-segment depression, which reaches 3 mm in magnitude during this episode *(top panel)*. The enlarged display of ECG lead II showing the ISO and ST-segment *(ST)* measurement points during the episode of ST-segment depression reveals that the ISO point is identified inappropriately at the peak of the P wave, thereby producing artifactual ST-segment depression *(bottom panel)*. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

When the computer misidentifies the appropriate isoelectric or ST monitoring point, the clinician can manually adjust the J-point or the ST-segment measurement point (Fig. 36.15).

One major advantage of continuous ST-segment monitoring is that the electrodes stay in place and do not vary as they may with serial 12-lead ECG recordings. However, for improved diagnostic accuracy of ST-segment monitoring, the following points should be recognized:

1. Changes in body position may cause ST-segment changes and lead to false ST-segment alarms. However, changes in the QRS complex almost always accompany these positional ST-segment changes and therefore can be easily distinguished from true ST-segment deviations (Fig. 36.16). Changes in position of the heart in the mediastinum have also shown to affect the ST segment. Mark and associates observed that placement of a sternal retractor during cardiac surgery was associated with a reduction in V_5 R-wave amplitude (Fig. 36.17).[25] Simultaneously, V_5 S-wave amplitude and absolute ST-segment deviation were reduced. These investigators concluded that inclusion of an R-wave gain factor might improve perioperative ECG ischemia monitoring.
2. Many patients have preexisting ECG abnormalities that confound interpretation of ST-segment changes. Early repolarization (a normal variant), intraventricular conduction delays, LV hypertrophy, digitalis, pericarditis, and other conditions may cause baseline ST-segment abnormalities. In these conditions, standard ECG criteria for diagnosing myocardial ischemia are less specific.
3. Most cardiac monitors with ST-segment monitoring software provide displays of ST-segment trends in a single lead or the sum of absolute ST-segment deviations from multiple leads (Fig. 36.18). Although such graphic trends are convenient for the quick identification of potential ischemic events, analysis of the ECG waveform on the monitor screen or by recording the ECG tracing is of paramount importance for verification.

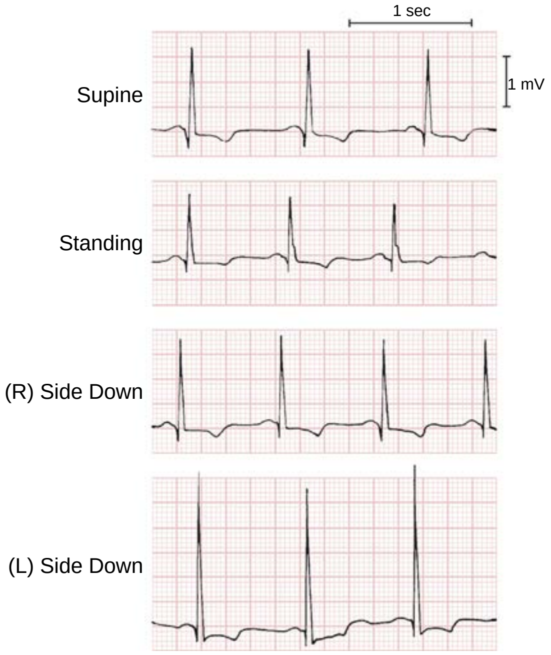


Fig. 36.16 Effect of changing body position on the ECG in a patient with preexisting ST-segment depression. Lead CC_5, a surrogate for lead V_5, is recorded with the patient in four different positions: supine, standing, right *(R)* side down, and left *(L)* side down. The magnitude of ST-segment depression changes in direct proportion to the R-wave amplitude. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

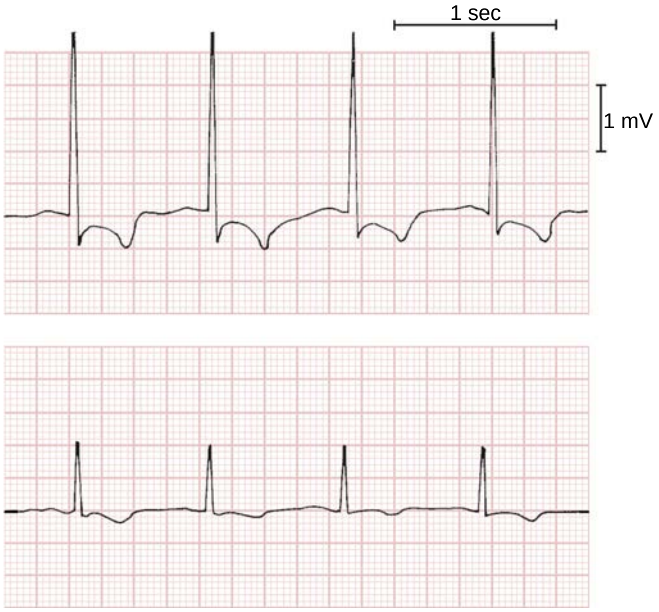


Fig. 36.17 Effect of surgical retraction on the ECG. Baseline lead V_5 recording shows 2 mm ST-segment depression and 27 mm R-wave amplitude *(top panel)*. Placement of a sternal retractor during cardiac surgery displaces the precordial lead electrode relative to the heart, resulting in a marked reduction in R-wave amplitude to 10 mm and a proportional reduction in the magnitude of ST-segment displacement *(bottom panel)*. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

Electrocardiogram Criteria for Acute Myocardial Ischemia

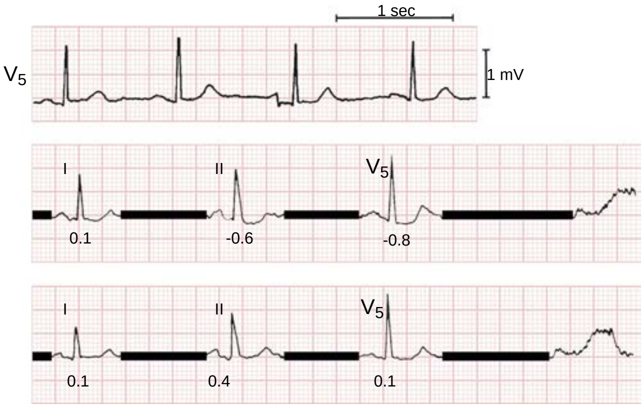


Fig. 36.18 Computer-aided continuous ST-segment monitoring. A baseline recording of lead V_5 shows isoelectric ST segments *(top panel)*. Shortly after induction of anesthesia, the ST-segment monitoring display shows the three monitored leads I, II, and V_5 and the absolute amount of ST-segment elevation (0.1 mm in lead I) or depression (–0.6 mm in lead II, –0.8 mm in lead V_5) in each lead *(middle panel)*. A trend line is displayed on the right side of the panel and demonstrates that the sum of ST-segment deviations in these three monitored leads has increased and reached a plateau over the previous few minutes. Another ST-segment display recorded 5 minutes later shows resolution of these subtle ST changes *(bottom panel)*. Note that the appearance of lead V_5 in this last display closely resembles the baseline recording and that the trend line has returned to pre-induction baseline level. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

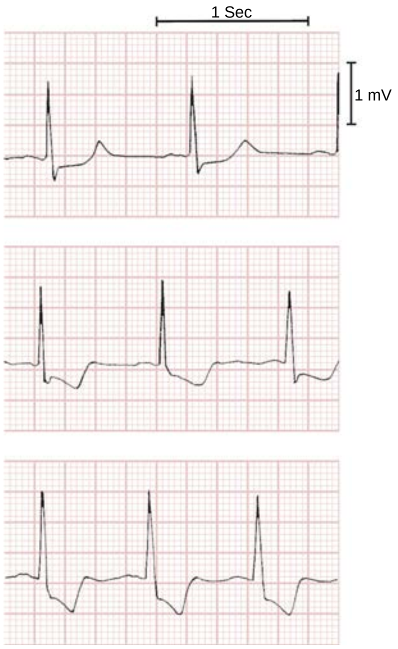


Fig. 36.19 Subendocardial ischemia produces ST-segment depression. As heart rate increases progressively from 63 beats/min *(top panel)* to 75 beats/min *(middle panel)* and finally to 86 beats/min *(bottom, panel)* in this patient with left main coronary artery disease, the ST segment becomes more depressed and more downsloping, owing to an increase in myocardial oxygen demand. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

The ECG criteria most accepted for detecting myocardial ischemia during continuous ECG monitoring are those established and validated during exercise stress testing.[26] During stress testing and with acute subendocardial ischemia, the electrical forces responsible for the ST segment are deviated toward the inner layer of the heart, causing ST-segment depression or demand-mediated ischemia (Fig. 36.19). With acute transmural epicardial ischemia, the electrical forces in the ischemic area are deviated toward the outer layer of the heart, causing ST-segment elevation or supply-mediated ischemia in

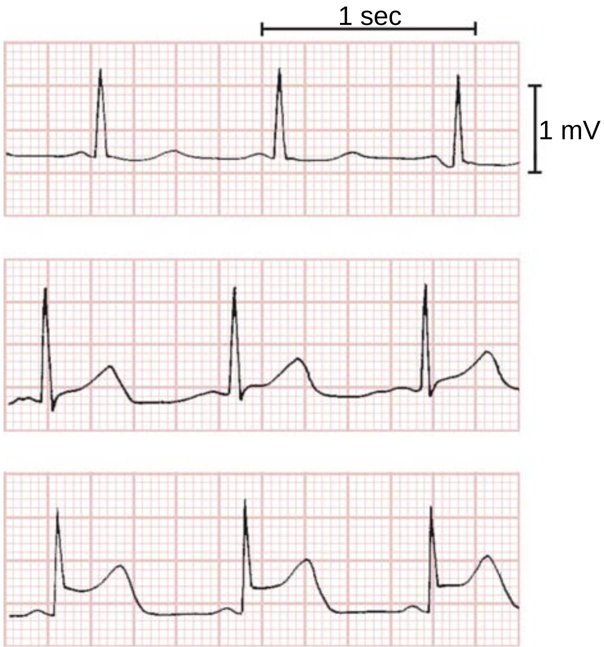


Fig. 36.20 Transmural ischemia produces ST-segment elevation. Occlusion of a patent saphenous vein graft during repeat coronary artery bypass surgery causes an abrupt reduction of coronary blood supply and results in progressive ST-segment elevation *(middle and bottom panels)*. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone;1998.)

the overlying leads (Fig. 36.20). Note that most commonly, intraoperative or perioperative ischemia is demand-mediated subendocardial ischemia, which is manifest as ST-segment depression.[27] Although the anterolateral precordial leads are most sensitive for detecting these changes, they are **non-localizing** as to the coronary distribution responsible. In contrast, supply-mediated transmural ischemia, while much less common perioperatively, causes ST-segment elevation in leads overlying the involved coronary bed and thus are able to **localize** the responsible coronary territory (e.g., ST elevations in inferior leads II, III, aVF suggest occlusion of the right or posterior descending coronary artery).

With demand-mediated ischemia, as heart rate increases, J-point depression and upsloping ST-segment depression occurs. As the severity of ischemia progresses, the ST segment typically becomes horizontal (flattens) and the extent of ST-segment depression may increase and the ST segment may become downsloping (see Fig. 36.19). Standard criteria for stress-induced ischemia are 1 mm (0.1 mV) or more of horizontal or downsloping ST-segment depression measured 60 to 80 ms after the J point. As noted earlier, patients with preexisting ST-segment abnormalities make ST-segment interpretation more difficult.

During the perioperative period, ECG monitoring most commonly identifies stress-induced, ST-depression, demand-mediated ischemia, or other causes of supply-demand imbalance such as prolonged or severe hypotension. Such ECG changes do not provide information about the location of the ischemic myocardial area. In contrast, ST-segment elevation indicating transmural or supply-mediated ischemia, observed particularly during cardiac surgery, provides useful information about the myocardial segment and coronary perfusion territory responsible for the ischemic episode. Because the majority of modern patient-monitoring systems do not simultaneously monitor all 12 ECG leads, selecting which chest leads to monitor is of great importance, particularly in noncardiac surgery. During exercise stress testing, investigators have identified leads V_4 and V_5 as the most sensitive leads to detect exercise-induced ischemia (90%-100% sensitivity).[28] London and colleagues studied high-risk patients undergoing noncardiac surgery and showed that the greatest sensitivity for ischemia was obtained with lead V_5 (75%), followed by lead V_4 (61%).[15] Combining leads V_4 and V_5 increased the sensitivity to 90%, whereas with the standard lead II and V_5 combination, the sensitivity was only 80%. They also suggested that if three leads (II, V_4, and V_5) could be simultaneously examined, the sensitivity would increase to 98%. More recently, Landesberg and associates monitored continuous 12-lead ST-segment changes greater than 0.2 mV from baseline in a single lead or more than 0.1 mV in two contiguous leads at J+60 ms, lasting longer than 10 minutes in patients undergoing major vascular surgery.[16] They showed that leads V_3 and V_4 were more sensitive than V_5 in detecting perioperative ischemia (87%, 79%, and 66%, respectively). As a result of these and other investigations, it appears most appropriate to monitor lead V_3, V_4, or V_5 for optimal detection of perioperative ST-segment depression, choosing the specific lead location based on whether the lead placement might interfere with the surgical prep and procedure.

Blood Pressure Monitoring

Like heart rate, blood pressure has long been a fundamental cardiovascular vital sign included in the mandated standards for basic anesthetic monitoring.[29] Measuring blood pressure is primarily performed with either indirect cuff devices or direct arterial cannulation with pressure transduction. These techniques measure different physical signals and differ in their degree of invasiveness, but both are subject to numerous confounding factors that often result in significant discrepancies among simultaneous measurements.[30]

INDIRECT MEASUREMENT OF ARTERIAL BLOOD PRESSURE

Manual Intermittent Techniques

Most indirect methods of blood pressure measurement utilize a sphygmomanometer, first described by Riva-Rocci in 1896.[31] The systolic pressure was identified using an inflatable elastic cuff around the arm and a mercury manometer to measure cuff pressure, while the radial arterial pulse was palpated as the cuff pressure was increased or rapidly decreased. The technique was later modified to detect both systolic and diastolic pressure with description of auscultatory method of blood pressure measurement by Korotkoff in 1905.[32] Korotkoff sounds are a complex series of audible frequencies produced by turbulent flow beyond the partially occluding cuff. Put simply, the systolic pressure is associated with first sound heard (beginning of turbulent flow through the vessel) and diastolic pressure at the point when the sounds disappear (when vessel flow becomes laminar).[33] Mean blood pressure cannot be measured using this technique.

A fundamental principle of the auscultatory method is its reliance on blood flow to generate Korotkoff sounds. Physiologic conditions that interfere with sound detection (e.g., severe edema, obesity, abnormal compliance of overlying tissue) or blood flow (shock, intense vasoconstriction) will frustrate manual blood pressure measurement.[33-37] Furthermore, the cuff must also be snugly fitted, with a bladder that measures 40% of arm circumference and 80% of length of the upper arm, and centered over the artery. A cuff that is too large will often yield acceptable results when used for *manual* measurements, but a small cuff will usually yield falsely high readings.[36]

Automated Intermittent Techniques

Automated noninvasive blood pressure (NIBP) devices are the most commonly used means of measuring blood pressure in the operating room. Small oscillations in pressure amplitude are measured in an air-filled cuff that slowly deflates from a pressure well in excess of that needed to collapse the underlying artery. The point of maximal oscillation marks the mean arterial blood pressure (MAP), with systolic and diastolic being calculated by various proprietary algorithms specific to individual device manufacturers.[33,35,36] In general, a cuff that is too large will underestimate the blood pressure while a small cuff will overestimate.[36,38] Of the three possible measurements, systolic has the poorest agreement with invasive blood pressure values.[38,39]

Although automated NIBP measurements have generally been shown to approximate directly measured arterial pressures, there are also important shortcomings to keep in mind.[36,38] For reasons involving the ethics of validation against invasive measurements, standards for device performance established by the Association for the Advancement of Medical Instrumentation (AAMI) and the British Hypertension Society are defined by auscultation.[40] New devices must demonstrate average differences ≤ ± 5 mm Hg and standard deviations ≤ 8 mm Hg, which means that deviations of up to 20 mm Hg are still considered "acceptable performance."[41]

Clinical studies comparing NIBP with direct arterial pressure measurements reflect the problematic nature of NIBP monitoring. Direct comparisons of oscillometric devices to invasive monitoring have shown that mean blood pressure measurements generally show the greatest degree of agreement with invasive blood pressure readings while systolic measurements are the most divergent.[39,42-44] Agreement is especially problematic in critically ill or older patients.[38,42-44]

Oscillometric NIBP values tend to underestimate MAP values during periods of hypertension and overestimate during hypotension, potentially biasing clinical decisions in unstable patients.[45] And they often underestimate the systolic while overestimating the diastolic measurements.[46] A well-fitted arm cuff does appear to be helpful in identifying hypotension in unstable patients and differentiating responses to therapy in such situations, but below a MAP of 65 mm Hg, it is not useful for titration of therapy, and a more frequent interval of measurement is probably required to be considered reliable.[38,42,47,48] Dysrhythmia may also result in significant error in blood pressure measurement, especially in systolic and diastolic estimation, although averaging three measurements seems to minimize the clinical impact.[49,50]

While the upper arm is the most common cuff location, various factors may force choice of an alternative site. In obese patients, there is little agreement between any alternate location and invasively measured pressures while ankle, calf, and thigh cuffs have never been validated at all.[51] Interestingly, the forearm may be a preferable site to upper arm in obese patients, although such cuffs display a reversed pattern of bias; overestimation of the systolic and underestimation of the diastolic pressure.[48]

It is important to remember the auscultatory method measures the systolic and diastolic pressures while oscillometric devices measure the mean and calculate the systolic and diastolic, albeit in different and non-interchangeable ways. Furthermore, directly-measured arterial pressure measurements utilize another technique altogether. In some authors' opinions, "current protocols for validating blood pressure monitors give no guarantee of accuracy in clinical practice."[40,52] Expecting them to yield identical values is unrealistic, especially in complex and unstable clinical situations. The sources of error vary significantly for each of these measurement techniques and should closely guide evaluation and therapeutic intervention, especially when there is discrepancy between the measured values or between measurements and clinical conditions.

BOX 36.2 **Complications of Noninvasive Blood Pressure (NIBP) Measurement**

Pain
Petechiae and ecchymoses
Limb edema
Venous stasis and thrombophlebitis
Peripheral neuropathy
Compartment syndrome

Complications of Noninvasive Blood Pressure Measurement

Although automated NIBP measurement is generally safe, there have been reports of rare but severe complications (Box 36.2).[53] Compartment syndrome is possible after prolonged periods of frequent cycling and is most likely related to trauma or impaired distal limb perfusion. Caution should be exercised in cases of peripheral neuropathy, arterial or venous insufficiency, severe coagulopathies, or recent use of thrombolytic therapy.

Automated Continuous Techniques

Continuous methods for NIBP monitoring are being developed with various degrees of success. The most current version is based on the volume clamp technique and involves photoplethysmography and closed loop continuous control of a pressure cuff around a finger. This creates a stable arterial pressure waveform via quantification of an infrared beam applied distal to the finger cuff. Many of these require initial calibration with a standard NIBP

BOX 36.3 **Indications for Arterial Cannulation**

Continuous, real-time blood pressure monitoring
Anticipated pharmacologic or mechanical cardiovascular manipulation
Repeated blood sampling
Failure of indirect arterial blood pressure measurement
Supplementary diagnostic information from the arterial waveform

cuff, and all are significantly affected by changes in vascular tone and perfusion in the finger, as well as movement, vascular disease, and a host of other factors.[54] While none of these devices technically meet AAMI standards when compared with invasive pressures, clinical studies have shown their correlation to be reasonable in a variety of operative cases.[35,55-58]

Other devices use technologies related to pulse transit time or arterial tonometry.[59,60] All of these techniques, however, have limitations, including need for calibration, sensitivity to motion artifact, and limited applicability in critically ill patients.[36,61,62] It remains unclear whether any noninvasive technique will reduce the need for direct arterial pressure monitoring during anesthesia or critical care, but with continued development and technical refinement, they remain promising.

DIRECT MEASUREMENT OF ARTERIAL BLOOD PRESSURE

Arterial cannulation with continuous pressure transduction remains the accepted reference standard for blood pressure monitoring despite its risk, cost, and need for technical expertise for placement and management (Box 36.3). Its superiority over noninvasive techniques for early detection of interoperative hypotension was confirmed by The Australian Incident Monitoring Study of 1993.[42,63] More recently, though, the use of waveform analysis in physiologic monitoring has become more popular. This was initially proposed more than a half century ago by Eather and associates, who advocated monitoring of "arterial pressure and pressure pulse contours" in anesthetized patients.[64] Arterial pressure waveform characteristics used in current clinical practice include the dicrotic notch as a trigger for intra-aortic balloon counterpulsation as well as respiratory-induced variation in an array of directly-measured and derived pressure measurements to indicate preload reserve and volume responsiveness.[65-68] Rates of intraoperative direct arterial blood pressure measurement vary significantly across clinical environments even for similar procedures.[69]

Percutaneous Radial Artery Cannulation

The radial artery is the most common site for invasive blood pressure monitoring because it is technically easy to cannulate and complications are rare.[70,71] Slogoff et al. described 1700 cardiovascular surgical patients who underwent radial artery cannulation without ischemic complications despite evidence of arterial occlusion after decannulation in more than 25% of patients.[72] Furthermore, most investigations of hand perfusion following radial artery harvest have reported no significant decrease relative to the contralateral hand in either the early or late postoperative periods.[73-78]

Before radial artery cannulation, some clinicians assess collateral blood flow to the hand by performing a modified Allen test, originally described in 1929 to assess arterial stenosis in patients suffering from thromboangiitis obliterans.[79] The radial and ulnar arteries are both compressed while the patient makes a tight fist to exsanguinate the palm and then slowly reopens it. As occlusion of the ulnar artery is released, the color of the open palm is observed. Normally, the color will return to the palm within several seconds; severely reduced collateral flow is present when the palm remains pale for more than 6 to 10 seconds. Unfortunately, the predictive value of this test is poor. There are numerous reports of ischemic sequelae in the face of a normal Allen test, and conversely, reports of uncomplicated radial catheter use and even harvest for bypass grafting in the presence of an abnormal result.[72,73,80,81] In recent years, the radial artery has become more popular for coronary catheterization and stenting access, even in individuals with abnormal Allen tests.[82] Overall, the diagnostic accuracy of the modified Allen test with a 5-second threshold is only 80% with 76% sensitivity and 82% specificity. It appears that the test is unable to provide a cutoff point below which perfusion can be deemed vulnerable.[83] Use of pulse oximetry, plethysmography, or Doppler ultrasound as adjuncts does not seem to improve its accuracy. Oximetry detects blood flows at extremely low flows, leading to poor specificity, while there are no established ultrasound criteria by which to evaluate radial or ulnar blood flow.[73,84,85] In general, it seems that while a normal modified Allen test may be useful in identifying patients unacceptable for radial artery use for bypass graft or coronary angiography, there is no evidence that it predicts clinical outcomes following cannulation for blood pressure monitoring.[73]

Techniques for radial artery cannulation have been unchanged for decades with the notable exception of the use of ultrasound in guiding catheter placement. Evidence supports its use, especially as a rescue method following a failed attempt.[86] Although evidence in the critical care setting suggests that ultrasound techniques improve first-pass cannulation success rates, it is not clear that this translates to improved clinical outcomes, nor that the impact on time required to perform the procedure or other factors warrants routine intraoperative use.[87-90] Ultrasound guidance in catheterization of other vessels other than the radial artery or in special populations, such as those on mechanical support without pulsatile flow, is more likely to be of substantial benefit.[91]

Alternative Arterial Pressure Monitoring Sites

If the radial arteries are unsuitable or unavailable, there are multiple alternatives. The *ulnar artery* has been used safely even following failed attempts to access the ipsilateral radial artery.[72,92] Similarly, the *brachial artery*, while lacking collateral branches to protect the hand, has a long track record of safe use. Several investigators have reported large series of brachial artery catheters in patients undergoing cardiac surgery with very few vascular, neurologic, or thrombotic sequelae.[93,94] The *axillary artery* has the advantages of patient comfort and mobility, and complications appear to be similar in incidence to those for radial and femoral

BOX 36.4 Complications of Direct Arterial Pressure Monitoring

Distal ischemia, pseudoaneurysm, arteriovenous fistula
Hemorrhage
Arterial embolization
Infection
Peripheral neuropathy
Misinterpretation of data
Misuse of equipment

arteries.[71] A slightly longer catheter is preferred for the brachial or axillary sites due to their relatively deeper and more mobile anatomic locations. Clinicians should be aware, however, that the risk of cerebral embolization is significantly increased when more central vessels are utilized.

The *femoral artery* is the largest vessel in common use for blood pressure monitoring but its safety profile seems comparable to other sites.[71] Catheterization of the femoral artery is best achieved with a guidewire technique and the point of vessel entry must be distal to the inguinal ligament to minimize the risk of arterial injury, hidden hematoma formation, or even uncontrolled hemorrhage into the pelvis or retroperitoneum.[95]

Less commonly used alternatives include the *dorsalis pedis, posterior tibial*, and *superficial temporal arteries*, with the pedal vessels being more popular in pediatric patients. Lower extremity vessels tend to demonstrate greater with disagreement noninvasively acquired data, with diastolic and mean measurements being the most affected.[96]

Complications of Direct Arterial Pressure Monitoring

Although large clinical investigations confirm the low incidence of long-term complications after radial arterial pressure monitoring, factors that may increase such risks include vasospastic arterial disease, previous arterial injury, thrombocytosis, protracted shock, high-dose vasopressor administration, prolonged cannulation, and infection.[70-73,97,98]

Rare but serious complications have been reported after arterial cannulation at all locations (Box 36.4). In most cases, catheter placement was technically difficult or there were contributory factors such as shock or coagulopathy. In a large observational study of 2000 untoward clinical events resulting from any kind of vascular access, only 13 were related to peripheral arterial cannulation, fewer than those associated with central venous (18) or even peripheral venous cannulation (33). The events involved equipment problems, inadvertent drug administration, or disruption/kinking of the catheter itself. In only 1 case did transient vasospasm follow radial artery cannulation. An additional 10 cases were noted to involve problems with incorrect device calibration or erroneous data interpretation.[63,99] Data from the anesthesia closed claims reports have shown that claims related to arterial pressure monitoring constitute only 8% of all claims related to any vascular access (2% of total claims). Of this small number, almost 54% were related to radial artery use (ischemic injury, median or radial nerve injury, or retained wire fragment), less than 8% were associated with use of the brachial artery, and the remainder involved severe thrombotic or hemorrhagic complications following femoral artery monitoring.[100] While patient physiology is important, equipment misuse, poor placement technique or catheter care, as well as improper data interpretation play important roles in most complications related to arterial pressure monitoring.

Technical Aspects of Direct Blood Pressure Measurement

There are a variety of factors, including extension tubing, stopcocks, flush devices, recorders, amplifiers, and transducers that may confound the process by which pressure waveforms are reproduced for measurement and display.[101]

Most invasive blood pressure monitoring systems are underdamped second-order dynamic systems that demonstrate simple harmonic motion dependent on *elasticity, mass*, and *friction*.[101-103] These three properties determine the system operating characteristics (i.e., *frequency response* or *dynamic response*) which in turn are characterized by *natural frequency* and *damping coefficient*. The natural frequency of a system determines how rapidly the system oscillates after a perturbation, while the damping coefficient reflects how rapidly it returns to its prior resting state. Both parameters may be estimated or measured at the bedside and dramatically influence the appearance of the displayed pressure waveform.

Natural Frequency, Damping Coefficient, and Dynamic Response of Pressure Monitoring Systems

The displayed pressure waveform is a periodic complex wave produced via Fourier analysis of a summation of multiple propagated and reflected pressure waves. As such, it is a mathematical re-creation of the original complex pressure wave created and propagated by stroke volume ejection.[104,105] The original pressure wave is characterized by its fundamental frequency, a characteristic manifested clinically as the pulse rate and expressed as cycles/second (Hertz).

The sine waves that sum to produce the final complex wave have frequencies that are multiples or harmonics of the fundamental frequency (i.e., pulse rate). A very crude arterial waveform depicting a systolic upstroke and peak, dicrotic notch, and so forth can be reconstructed with reasonable accuracy from only two sine waves, the fundamental frequency and the second harmonic (Fig. 36.21). As a general rule, though, 6 to 10 harmonics are required to provide distortion-free reproductions of most arterial pressure waveforms.[104,106] Consequently, accurate blood pressure measurement in a patient with a pulse rate of 120 beats/min (2 cycles/s or 2 Hz) requires a monitoring system dynamic response of 12 to 20 Hz (i.e., 6 to 10 waveforms X 2 Hz). The faster the heart rate and the steeper the systolic pressure upstroke, the greater the demands on the monitoring system.

Natural frequency and damping coefficient are intrinsic characteristics of all monitoring systems. If the system's natural frequency is too low, the system will resonate, and pressure waveforms recorded on the monitor will be exaggerated or amplified versions of true intraarterial pressure. An underdamped system may combine elements of the measurement system itself with the measured sine waves

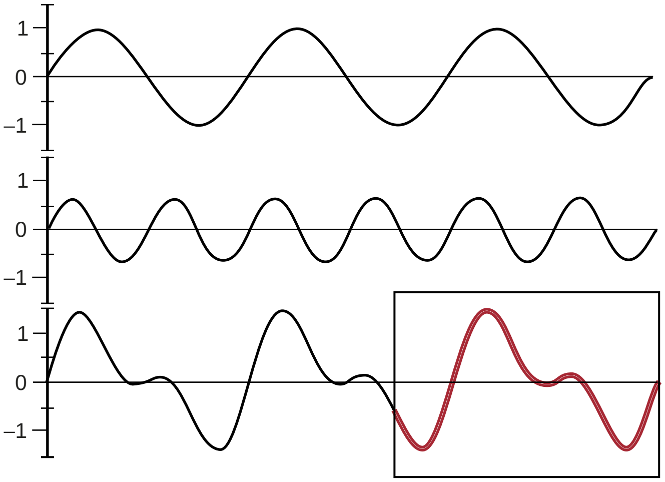


Fig. 36.21 Arterial blood pressure waveform produced by summation of sine waves. The fundamental wave *(top)* added to 63% of the second harmonic wave *(middle)* results in a pressure wave *(bottom)* resembling a typical arterial blood pressure waveform *(box)*. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

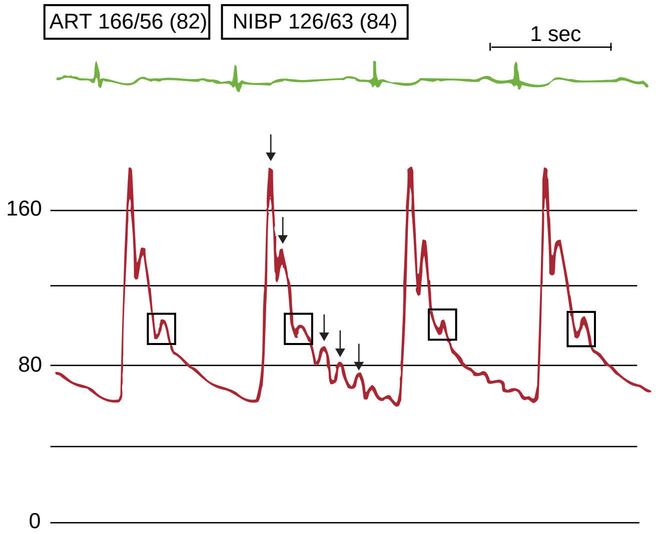


Fig. 36.22 Underdamped arterial pressure waveform. Systolic pressure overshoot and additional small, nonphysiologic pressure waves *(arrows)* distort the waveform and make it hard to discern the dicrotic notch *(boxes)*. Digital values displayed for direct arterial blood pressure (*ART* 166/56, mean 82 mm Hg) and noninvasive blood pressure (*NIBP* 126/63, mean 84 mm Hg) show the characteristic relationship between the two measurement techniques in the presence of an underdamped system. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

and display systolic pressure overshoot (Fig. 36.22). In contrast, an overdamped waveform exhibits a slurred upstroke, absent dicrotic notch, and loss of fine detail. In such cases, the pulse pressure will be falsely narrow but MAP may remain reasonably accurate (Fig. 36.23).

The interplay between natural frequency and damping coefficients is complex, but in general, the lower the natural frequency of the system, the narrower the range of acceptable damping coefficients. It follows logically that for any specific system, the highest possible natural frequency yields the optimal result.[105] In theory, this is best achieved by using short lengths of stiff pressure tubing and limiting

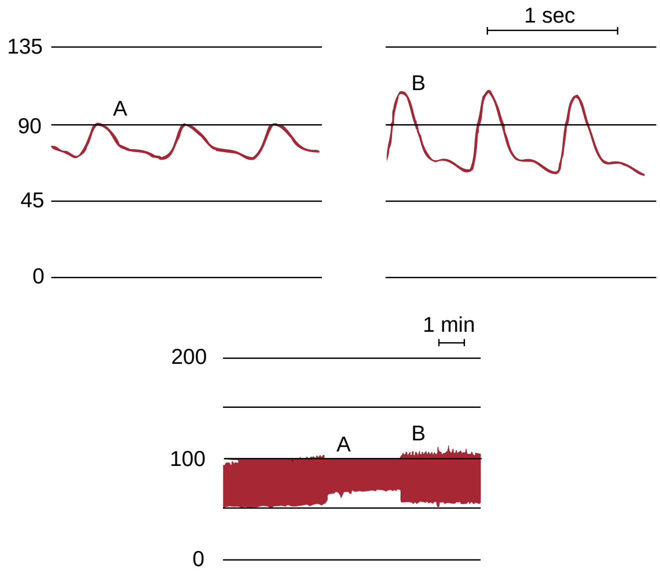


Fig. 36.23 Overdamped arterial pressure waveform. The overdamped pressure waveform (A) shows a diminished pulse pressure compared with the normal waveform (B). The slow-speed recording *(bottom)* demonstrates a 3-minute period of damped arterial pressure. Note that despite the damped system, mean arterial pressure remains unchanged. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

additions or connections to the system such as stopcocks. While adding an air bubble to the monitoring system will increase damping, it simultaneously lowers natural frequency and may actually increase the intrinsic system resonance and worsen systolic pressure overshoot (Fig. 36.24).

The fast-flush test provides a convenient bedside method for determining system dynamic response and assessing signal distortion.[101,103,105] The nature and duration of the flush artifact following a brief opening of the fast-flush valve are noted visually with shorter oscillation cycles indicating a higher natural frequency and the damping coefficient being related to the resulting pattern of peak amplitudes (Fig. 36.25).[101,105] Thus, an adequate fast-flush test pattern has short oscillation cycles (<30 ms) and a pattern of amplitudes that rapidly return to rest. The clinical impact of resonance and under- or over-damping is common, occurring in up to 30% of surgical patients and 44.5% of patients admitted to the ICU. Interestingly, it appears to be more significant for systolic blood pressure measurement than mean or diastolic, and is associated with preexisting arteriopathy, lung disease, hypertension, and smaller-gauge arterial catheters.[107] Distortion of the arterial waveform is common in clinical practice, particularly systolic pressure overshoot secondary to underdamped systems.[101,108]

Pressure Monitoring System Components

Arterial pressure monitoring systems have a number of components, including the intraarterial catheter itself, stopcocks for blood sampling and transducer zeroing, in-line blood sampling ports, a pressure transducer, continuous-flush device, and electronic cable. Innovation to the basic system such as needleless ports and closed aspiration systems, while intended to improve safety, may also degrade the dynamic response of the monitoring system and further exacerbate systolic arterial pressure overshoot.

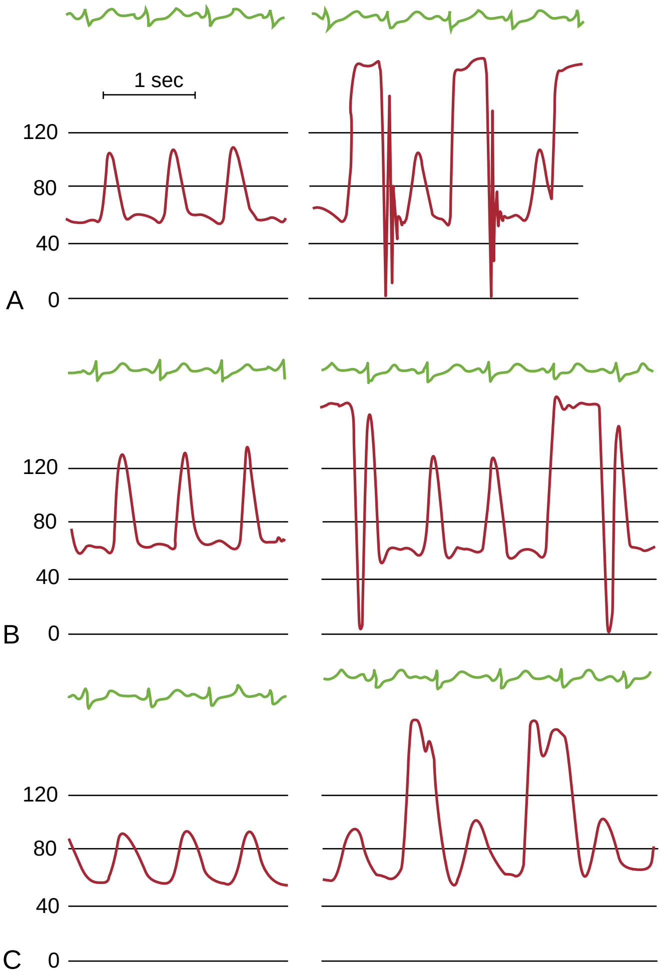


Fig. 36.24 Effect of small air bubbles within arterial pressure monitoring systems. Arterial pressure waveforms are displayed, along with superimposed fast-flush square-wave artifacts. (A) Original monitoring system has an adequate dynamic response (natural frequency 17 Hz, damping coefficient 0.2). (B) A small 0.1-mL air bubble added to the monitoring system produces a paradoxical increase in arterial blood pressure. Note decreased natural frequency of the system. (C) A larger 0.5-mL air bubble further degrades dynamic response and produces spurious arterial hypotension. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

The flush device provides a continuous, slow (1-3 mL/h) infusion of saline to purge the monitoring system and prevent thrombus formation within the system. Dextrose solutions should not be used, since flush contamination of sampled blood may cause serious errors in blood glucose measurement.[109] The flush device not only ensures continuous slow flushing of the system but also includes a spring-loaded valve for periodic, high-pressure flushing following sample collection or to restore the system's dynamic response to baseline.[110]

Transducer Setup: Zeroing and Leveling

Prior to use, pressure transducers must be zeroed, calibrated, and leveled to the appropriate position, a maneuver accomplished by exposing the transducer to atmospheric pressure and performing the zero procedure as defined by each device manufacturer. It is important to recognize that the *zero pressure locus* should be positioned appropriately given the specific clinical context, that it is positioned relative to the patient, that the zero reference point is local atmospheric pressure, and that the zero should be checked and re-zeroed periodically.[105] Occasionally, a faulty transducer, cable, or monitor will cause the zero baseline to drift, introducing significant error until the zero reference is reestablished.[111,112] Because current disposable pressure transducers meet accuracy standards established by the AAMI and the American National Standards Institute, formal bedside transducer calibration is no longer routinely performed. However, it remains good practice to routinely compare pressures obtained via a newly placed arterial catheter with a blood pressure obtained via other means.[111,112]

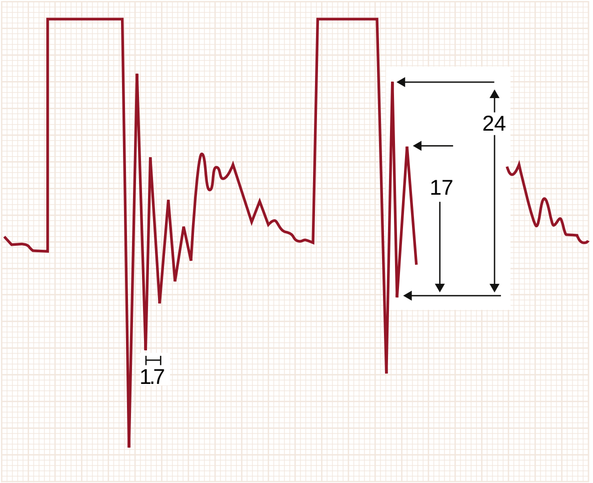


Fig. 36.25 Clinical measurement of natural frequency and damping coefficient. Two square-wave fast-flush artifacts interrupt an arterial pressure waveform recorded on standard 1-mm grid paper at a speed of 25 mm/s. Natural frequency is determined by measuring the period of one cycle of adjacent oscillation peaks (1.7 mm). Damping coefficient is determined by measuring the heights of adjacent oscillation peaks (17 and 24 mm). From these measurements, a natural frequency of 14.7 Hz and an amplitude ratio of 0.71 may be calculated. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

Choosing the appropriate level at which to establish the zero point must be done with respect to the patient and the clinical context. Note that transducer zeroing and leveling are distinct and separate. Zeroing establishes the zero reference point as ambient atmospheric pressure, while leveling aligns this reference point relative to the patient's body, determining where the value "0" will be. This is even more important when monitoring values for which the physiologic range is small, such as central venous or intracranial pressure. In such cases, small zeroing or leveling errors may translate to large relative errors in measurement.

In most cases, arterial pressure transducers should be placed to best estimate aortic root pressure. In general, the best position for this is approximately 5 cm posterior to the sternal border.[113,114] However, a more conventional location for the reference level used for all hemodynamic monitoring, including central venous and pulmonary artery pressures (PAPs), is the mid-thoracic level, which corresponds most closely to the mid-left atrial position and is located halfway between the anterior sternum and the bed surface in the supine patient.[115,116] The most critical point, regardless of where the clinician chooses to assign the reference level, is that it is consistently maintained throughout the monitoring period.

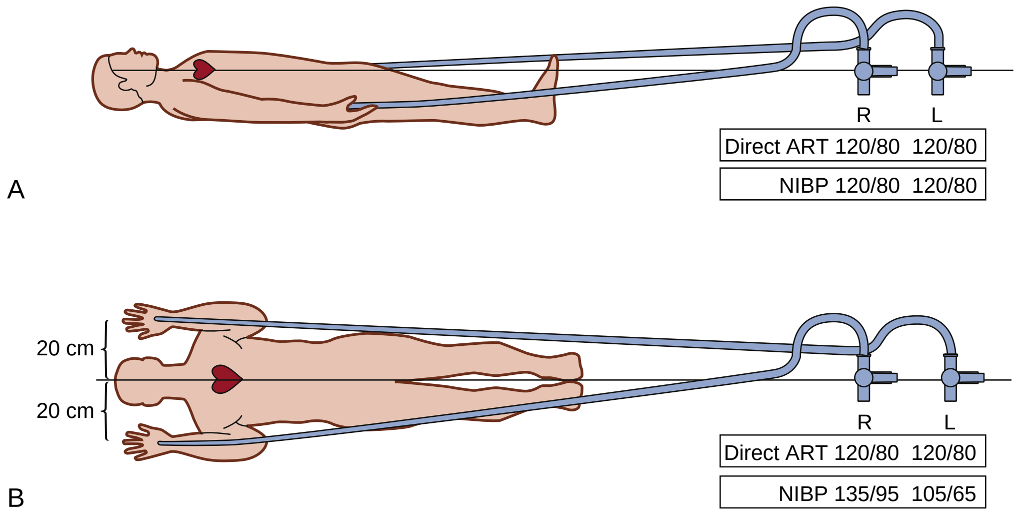


Fig. 36.26 Effect of patient position on the relation between direct arterial blood pressure *(ART)* and indirect noninvasive blood pressure *(NIBP)* measurements. (A) In the supine patient, pressures measured from the right *(R)* or left *(L)* arms by either technique will be the same. (B) In the right lateral decubitus position, ART pressures recorded directly from the right and left radial arteries will remain unchanged so long as the respective pressure transducers remain at heart level. However, NIBP will be higher in the dependent right arm and lower in the nondependent left arm. Differences in NIBP are determined by the positions of the arms above and below the level of the heart and are equal to the hydrostatic pressure differences between the level of the heart and the respective arm. A 20-cm difference in height produces a 15-mm Hg difference in pressure. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York; Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

In specific circumstances, though, clinicians may choose to place the transducer at a level different from the standard. For example, during a sitting neurosurgical procedure, it may be more informative to place it at the level of the patient's ear to approximate the level of the Circle of Willis. In such cases, the blood pressure at the level of the brain is being measured and displayed rather than that of the aortic root, which will be significantly higher. Fixing the transducer to a pole rather than the bed risks introducing error when the bed height or position is changed.

For proper interpretation of blood pressure measurements from a patient in the lateral decubitus position, differentiating zeroing and leveling pressure transducers and appreciating the differences between noninvasive and invasive blood pressure measurement is an informative exercise. In this position, while the aortic root remains stationary, one arm is necessarily higher than the other. However, as long as the pressure transducer remains *fixed at the level of the heart*, the measured pressure remains completely unaffected by the position of the arms, or location of the arterial catheter. Conversely, non-invasive cuff blood pressure measurements will differ in the two arms, being higher in the dependent (down) arm and lower in the non-dependent (up) arm (Fig. 36.26). This relationship must be taken into account when using the cuff to calibrate an invasively measured pressure.

Normal Arterial Pressure Waveforms

The systemic arterial pressure waveform results from ejection of blood from the left ventricle during systole followed by peripheral runoff during diastole. The systolic waveform immediately follows the ECG R wave and consists of a steep pressure upstroke, peak, and ensuing decline. The downslope of the arterial pressure waveform is interrupted by the dicrotic notch, continues its decline during diastole after the ECG T wave, and reaches its nadir at end-diastole (Fig. 36.27). The dicrotic notch of a central aortic pressure waveform is sharply defined and thought to result from aortic valve closure.[117] In contrast, more peripheral arterial waveforms generally display a slightly delayed and mildly blunted dicrotic notch that is more dependent on properties of the arterial wall. Note that the systolic upstroke starts 120 to 180 ms after beginning of the R wave, reflecting the time required for LV depolarization, isovolumic contraction, opening of the aortic valve, LV ejection, and propagation of the pressure wave through the aorta to the pressure transducer (see Fig. 36.27).

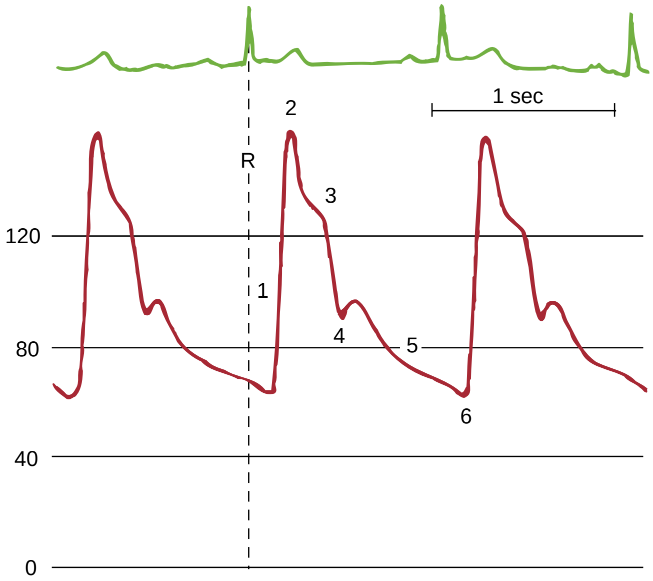


Fig. 36.27 Normal arterial blood pressure waveform and its relation to the electrocardiographic R wave. *(1)* Systolic upstroke, *(2)* systolic peak pressure, *(3)* systolic decline, *(4)* dicrotic notch, *(5)* diastolic runoff, and *(6)* end-diastolic pressure. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

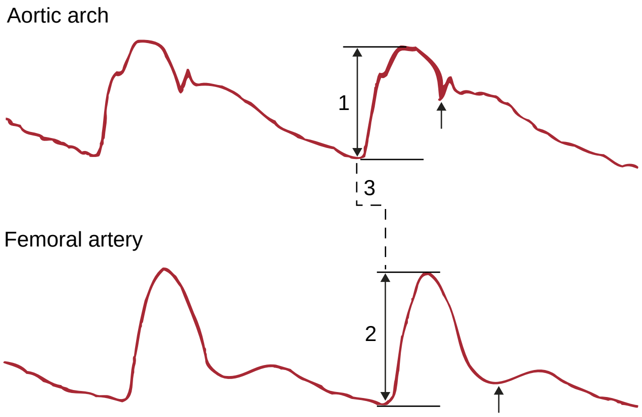


Fig. 36.28 Distal pulse wave amplification of the arterial pressure waveform. Compared with pressure in the aortic arch, the more peripherally recorded femoral artery pressure waveform demonstrates a wider pulse pressure (compare *1* and *2*), a delayed start to the systolic upstroke *(3)*, a delayed, slurred dicrotic notch (compare *arrows*), and a more prominent diastolic wave. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

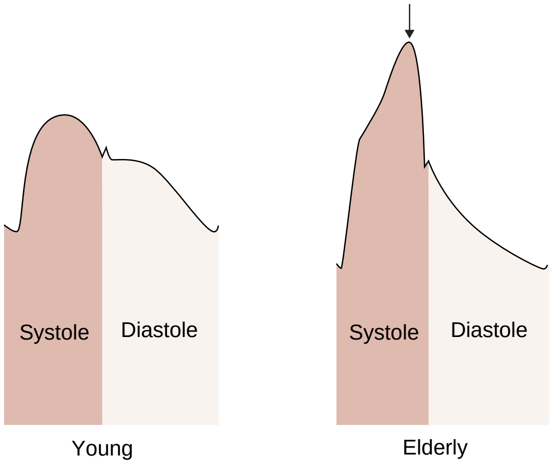


Fig. 36.29 Impact of pressure wave reflection on arterial pressure waveforms. In older individuals with reduced arterial compliance, early return of peripherally reflected waves increases pulse pressure, produces a late systolic pressure peak *(arrow)*, attenuates the diastolic pressure wave, and at times, distorts the smooth upstroke with an early systolic hump.

The bedside monitor displays values for the systolic peak and end-diastolic nadir pressures. In simplest terms, MAP reflects the area beneath the arterial pressure curve divided by the beat period, averaged over multiple cardiac cycles, but is dependent on device-specific algorithms. MAP is sometimes estimated as diastolic pressure plus one third of the pulse pressure but this shortcut is only valid at slower heart rates, because the duration of diastole decreases as the heart rate increases.[118]

The morphology of the arterial waveform and the precise values of systolic and diastolic blood pressure vary throughout the arterial system even under normal conditions in healthy individuals in a variety of ways. Distal pulse amplification is one such example. Pressure waveforms recorded simultaneously from different sites have different morphologies due to the physical characteristics of the vascular tree, namely, impedance and harmonic resonance (Fig. 36.28).[62,119] As the pressure wave travels from the central aorta to the periphery, the arterial upstroke becomes steeper, the systolic peak rises, the dicrotic notch appears later, the diastolic wave becomes more prominent, and end-diastolic pressure falls. As a result, peripheral arterial waveforms have higher systolic, lower diastolic, and wider pulse pressures compared with central aortic waveforms. Interestingly, the displayed MAP is only slight increased.

Reflection of pressure waves within the arterial tree significantly affects the arterial pressure waveform as it travels peripherally.[119] As blood flows from the aorta to the radial artery, MAP decreases only slightly because there is little resistance to flow in the major conducting arteries. At the arteriolar level, though, resistance to flow shrinks pressure pulsations in smaller downstream vessels but augments upstream arterial pressure pulses due to reflected pressure waves.[120] It is the summation of these antegrade and reflected waves that determines the shape of the displayed waveform. For example, reduced arterial compliance causes extremely rapid return of reflected pressure waves, resulting in arterial pressure waveforms with increased pulse pressure, a late systolic pressure peak, attenuated diastolic pressure waves, and at times, an early systolic hump distorting the smooth upstroke (Fig. 36.29).

Arterial Blood Pressure Gradients

Numerous pathophysiologic conditions cause exaggerated arterial pressure gradients between monitoring sites, be they real, iatrogenic, or artifactual. Frank and coworkers found that 21% of patients undergoing peripheral vascular surgery had a blood pressure difference between the two arms that exceeded 20 mm Hg.[121] Atherosclerosis, arterial dissection, stenosis, or embolism may exclude certain locations as reliable sites for invasive monitoring. In addition, certain patient positions, surgical retraction, or clamp placement may compromise perfusion in regional or local areas, precluding specific sites from use for invasive monitoring.[122,123]

Pathologic changes in peripheral vascular resistance may also produce generalized arterial pressure gradients that can affect the choice of site for arterial pressure monitoring. In patients receiving vasopressor infusions for septic shock, the femoral arterial pressure may exceed the radial pressure by greater than 50 mm Hg.[124] Less severe gradients have been noted with general anesthesia, neuraxial blocks, and changes in patient temperature.[62] During hypothermia, vasoconstriction causes systolic pressure in the radial artery to exceed that in the femoral artery, whereas during rewarming, vasodilation reverses the gradient.[125]

Characteristic gradients between central and peripheral sites have also been described during cardiopulmonary bypass (Fig. 36.30). The mean radial artery pressure falls on initiation of bypass and remains lower than mean femoral artery pressure throughout the bypass period and into the initial postbypass period, often by more than 20 mm Hg.[126,127] In most patients, this gradient resolves within the first hour, but occasionally remains well into the postoperative period.

Abnormal Arterial Pressure Waveforms

The morphologic features of individual arterial pressure waveforms can provide important diagnostic information (Table 36.1) (Fig. 36.31A–D). Aortic stenosis produces a

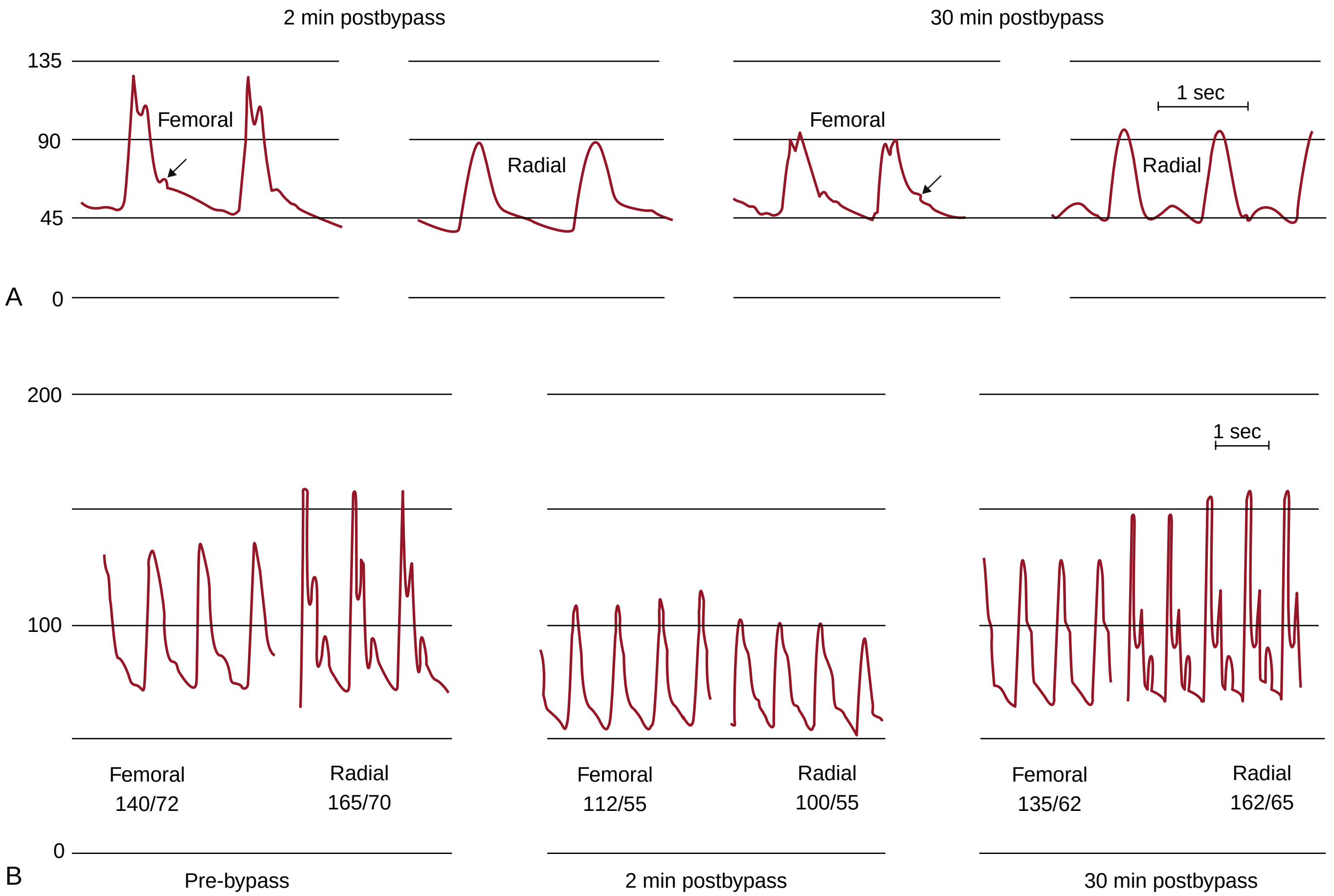


Fig. 36.30 Arterial pressure gradients following cardiopulmonary bypass. (A) Femoral and radial artery pressure traces recorded 2 minutes after bypass (2 min postbypass), when radial artery pressure underestimates the more centrally measured femoral artery pressure and 30 minutes later (30 min postbypass), when radial and femoral arterial pressures have equalized and radial pressure has resumed a more typical morphology. Note that dicrotic notch *(arrows)* is visible in the femoral pressure trace immediately after bypass, but is delayed in the radial pressure trace. (B) Femoral and radial artery pressure traces recorded before cardiopulmonary bypass (pre-bypass), 2 minutes following bypass (2 min postbypass), and 30 minutes following bypass (30 min postbypass). Note changing relationship between femoral and radial artery pressure measurements at these different times.

TABLE 36.1 Arterial Blood Pressure Waveform Abnormalities

Condition	**Characteristics**
Aortic stenosis	Pulsus parvus (narrow pulse pressure) Pulsus tardus (delayed upstroke)
Aortic regurgitation	Bisferiens pulse (double peak) Wide pulse pressure
Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy	Spike and dome (mid-systolic obstruction)
Systolic left ventricular failure	Pulsus alternans (alternating pulse pressure amplitude)
Cardiac tamponade	Pulsus paradoxus (exaggerated decrease in systolic blood pressure during spontaneous inspiration)

fixed obstruction to ejection resulting in reduced stroke volume and a slowed rate of ejection. As a result, the waveform is small in amplitude *(pulsus parvus)*, has a slowly rising systolic upstroke *(pulsus tardus)*, and a delayed peak in systole (see Fig. 36.31B). A distinct shoulder, termed the anacrotic notch, often distorts the pressure upstroke and the dicrotic notch may not be discernible. These features may make the arterial pressure waveform appear overdamped.

In aortic regurgitation, the arterial pressure wave displays a sharp rise, wide pulse pressure, and low diastolic pressure owing to the diastolic runoff of blood both antegrade into the aortic root and retrograde into the left ventricle. The arterial pressure pulse may have two systolic peaks *(bisferiens pulse)*, with the first peak resulting from antegrade ejection and the second from a wave reflected from the periphery (see Fig. 36.31C). In hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, the waveform assumes a peculiar bifid shape termed a "spike-and-dome" configuration. After an initial sharp blood pressure increase resulting from rapid, early systolic ejection, arterial pressure abruptly falls as midsystolic LV outflow obstruction interrupts stroke volume ejection. This is finally followed by a second, late-systolic increase associated with arrival of reflected waves from the periphery (see Fig. 36.31D).

Changes in arterial waveform patterns over time are also valuable. *Pulsus alternans* is a pattern of alternating larger and smaller pressure waves that appear to vary with the respiratory cycle and is generally associated with severe LV systolic dysfunction or aortic stenosis (Fig. 36.32A).

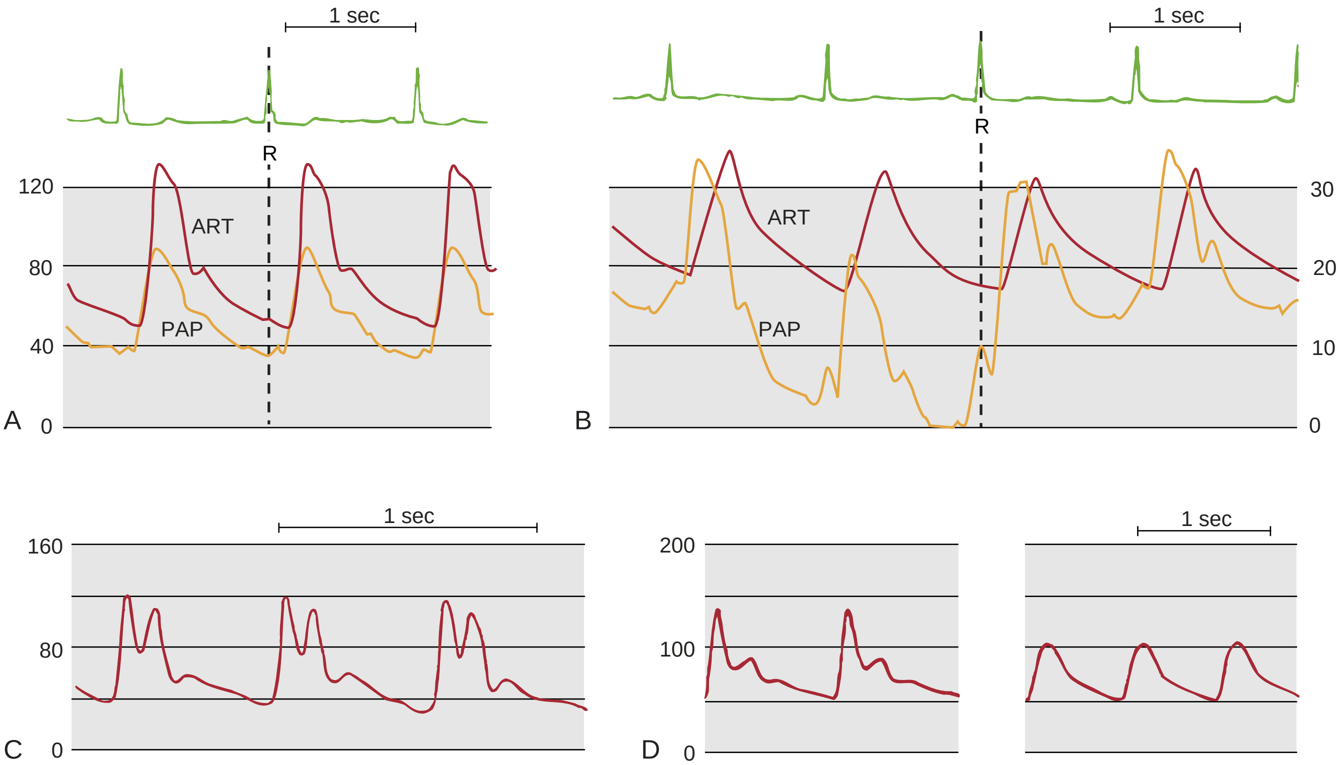


Fig. 36.31 Influence of pathologic conditions on arterial pressure *(ART)* waveform morphology. (A) Normal ART and pulmonary artery pressure *(PAP)* waveform morphologies demonstrating the similar timing of these waveforms relative to the electrocardiographic R wave. (B) In aortic stenosis, the ART waveform is distorted with a slurred upstroke and delayed systolic peak. These changes are particularly striking in comparison with the normal PAP waveform. Note the beat-to-beat respiratory variation in the PAP waveform. For A and B, the ART scale is on the left and the PAP scale is on the right. (C) Aortic regurgitation produces a bisferiens pulse and a wide pulse pressure. (D) Arterial pressure waveform in hypertrophic cardiomyopathy shows a peculiar spike-and-dome configuration. The waveform assumes a more normal morphology following surgical correction of this condition. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

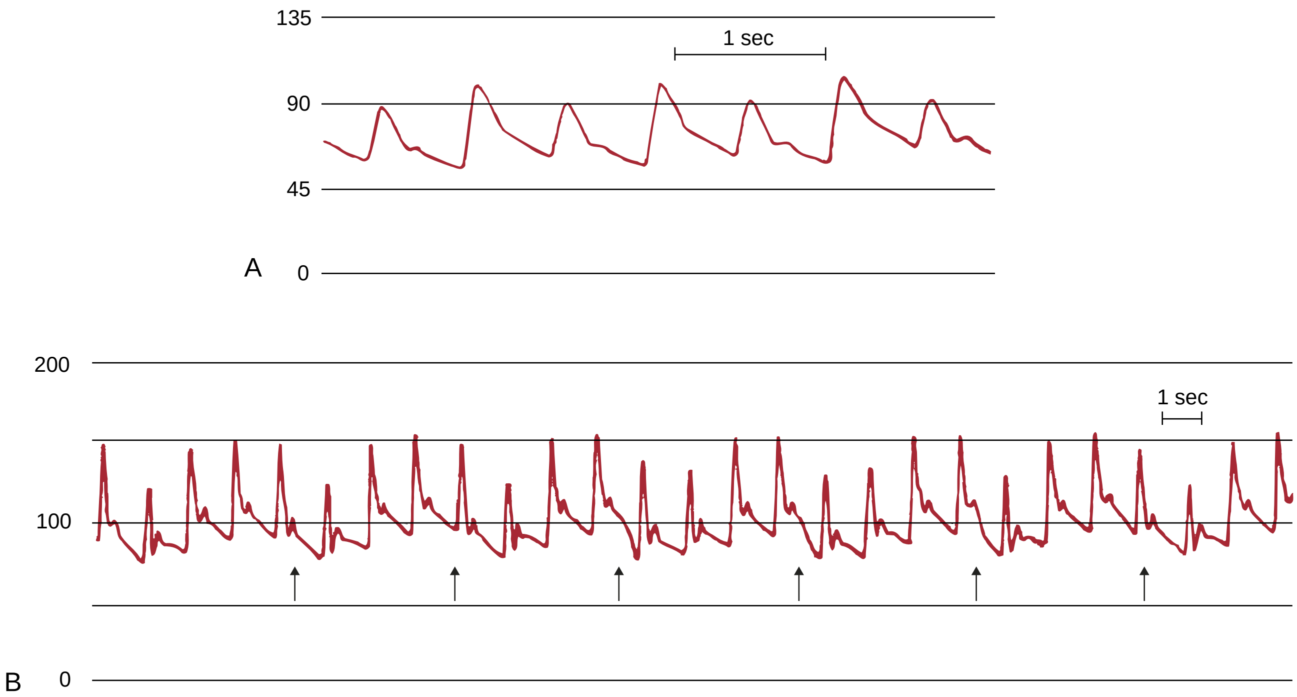


Fig. 36.32 Beat-to-beat variability in arterial pressure waveform morphologies. (A) Pulsus alternans. (B) Pulsus paradoxus. The marked decline in both systolic blood pressure and pulse pressure during spontaneous inspiration *(arrows)* is characteristic of cardiac tamponade. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

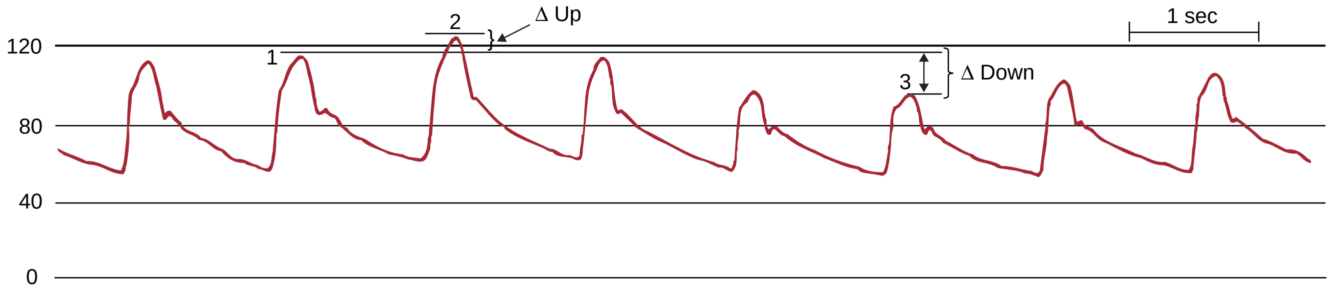


Fig. 36.33 Systolic pressure variation. Compared with systolic blood pressure recorded at end expiration *(1)* a small increase occurs during positive-pressure inspiration (*2*, Δ Up) followed by a decrease (*3*, Δ Down). Normally, systolic pressure variation does not exceed 10 mm Hg. In this instance, the large Δ Down indicates hypovolemia even though systolic arterial pressure and heart rate are relatively normal. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

Pulsus paradoxus is an exaggerated variation in arterial pressure (>10-12 mm Hg) during quiet breathing (see Fig. 36.32B).[128,129] *Pulsus paradoxus* is not truly paradoxical, but rather an exaggeration of a normal variation in blood pressure that accompanies spontaneous ventilation. *Pulsus paradoxus* is a common and important sign in cardiac tamponade but may also be seen with pericardial constriction, severe airway obstruction, bronchospasm, dyspnea, or any condition that involves large swings in intrathoracic pressure. Importantly, though, in cases of cardiac tamponade, the *pulse pressure* and *left ventricular stroke volume* decrease during inspiration, in contrast to the pattern observed associated with large variations in intrathoracic pressure in which *pulse pressure* remains constant.[130]

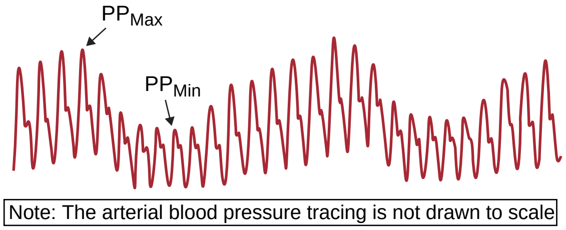
Arterial Pressure Monitoring and Waveform Analysis for Prediction of Volume Responsiveness

The starting point for volume resuscitation begins with optimizing cardiac preload, or more precisely, identifying the presence of residual preload reserve. The limitations and potential confounders of static indicators of preload such as central venous pressure (CVP) are well documented.[131] A wide array of dynamic markers of preload reserve and volume responsiveness have been described and evaluated for their ability to discriminate patients for whom volume expansion would be beneficial from those for whom it would not. These are largely based on cyclic variations in arterial blood pressure resulting from respiratory-induced changes in intrathoracic pressure.

During the inspiratory phase of a positive pressure breath, the increase in intrathoracic pressure simultaneously decreases LV afterload while increasing total lung volume which displaces blood from the pulmonary venous reservoir forward into the left side of the heart and increases LV preload. The increase in LV preload and decrease in afterload produce an increase in LV stroke volume, an increase in cardiac output, and in the absence of changes in system resistance, an increase in systemic arterial pressure. In most patients the preload effects predominate, but in patients with severe LV systolic failure, the reduction in afterload facilitates ventricular ejection. At the same time, rising intrathoracic pressure impairs systemic venous return and RV preload, possibly increasing RV afterload by slightly increasing pulmonary vascular resistance. These effects combine to reduce RV ejection during the early phase of inspiration. During the expiratory phase, however, the situation is reversed. The smaller stroke volume ejected from the RV during inspiration traverses the pulmonary vascular bed and enters the left heart, resulting in reduced LV filling, reduced LV stroke volume, and a fall in systemic arterial blood pressure. This cycle of increasing and decreasing stroke volume and systemic arterial blood pressure in response to inspiration and expiration is known as the *systolic pressure variation* (SPV).

SPV is often subdivided into inspiratory and expiratory components by measuring the increase (Δ Up) and decrease (Δ Down) in systolic pressure relative to the end-expiratory, apneic baseline pressure (Fig. 36.33). In a mechanically ventilated patient, normal SPV is 7 to 10 mm Hg, with Δ Up being 2 to 4 mm Hg and Δ Down being 5 to 6 mm Hg. Values greater than this are felt to indicate hypovolemia.[66,67] Both in experimental animals and critically ill patients, hypovolemia causes a dramatic increase in SPV, particularly the Δ Down component. Patients who manifest increased SPV during positive pressure mechanical ventilation may be described clinically as having residual preload reserve or being "volume responsive." While not synonymous with hypovolemia, preload reserve describes a physiologic state in which volume expansion or fluid challenge shifts the patient upward on the Frank-Starling curve resulting in increased stroke volume and increased cardiac output as long as systemic vascular resistance remains unchanged. Indeed, in a heterogeneous group of intensive care patients, Marik demonstrated that a large SPV (>15 mm Hg) was highly predictive of a low pulmonary artery wedge pressure (PAWP; <10 mm Hg), a surrogate for LV preload reserve.[132]

Pulse pressure variation (PPV), another dynamic indicator of preload reserve, is now available as part of standard monitoring software packages whenever an invasive arterial catheter is in use. In general, normal PPV is less than 13% to 17% (Fig. 36.34).[133-137] More sophisticated methods of pulse contour analysis allow real-time measurement of *stroke volume variation* (SVV), as well as calculation of a *stroke volume variation index*. When these measures exceed 10% to 13%, the patient is likely to have a positive response to volume expansion.[136,138] Although all of these dynamic measures are thought to indicate preload reserve, they are not interchangeable. PPV has been shown to diverge from SVV in the setting of vasopressor use or when the autonomic nervous system intervenes to preserve perfusion pressure in the face of falling stroke volume. In such cases, PPV will remain low while SVV increases.[139,140]



$PP_{Max} = 150–70 = 80$

$PP_{Min} = 120–60 = 60$

$PPV = (PP_{Max}–PP_{Min})/([PP_{Max}+PP_{Min}]/2)$

$PPV = 80–60/([80+60]/2) = 29\%$

Fig. 36.34 Pulse pressure variation. Pulse pressure variation *(PPV)* is calculated as the difference between maximal *(PP_{Max})* and minimal *(PP_{Min})* pulse pressure values during a single mechanical respiratory cycle, divided by the average of these two values. (Note that the arterial blood pressure trace is drawn for illustrative purposes and not to scale.)

Devices based on respiratory cycle-induced variation in the pulse plethysmogram have been developed as a similar but less invasive alternative for assessing preload reserve or volume responsiveness. Measures such as *photoplethysmography variation* (ΔPOP) or the *plethysmography variability index* appear to be useful when clinical and environmental conditions are optimal, but the transcutaneous oximetry signal is even more subject to confounding influences than the arterial blood pressure waveform.[135,141,142] Tidal volume, core and peripheral temperature, ambient light, and cardiac dysrhythmias pose significant impediments to valid and reproducible data collection and interpretation. There is no consensus regarding meaningful threshold values, and validity seems especially poor in children, in settings where patients are ventilated and sedated but not paralyzed, or in the setting of an open abdomen.[142] Furthermore, there are sophisticated auto-gaining features incorporated in most commercially available monitoring systems to optimize signal display. As such, the degree of variation visible to the naked eye may not correlate with true signal variation, resulting in erroneous clinical decisions and incorrect therapy.

Evidence is accumulating that dynamic measures are significantly superior to static indices of intravascular volume, especially in critically ill patients. Both PVV and SVV have been shown to be accurate following cardiac surgery in patients with normal and reduced ventricular function, while PPV was validated in assessing fluid responsiveness in patients with septic shock.[143,144] Intraoperative use has also been examined with similar results.[145,146] Indeed, the ability of clinicians to "eyeball" respiratory variation in the arterial blood pressure waveform as displayed on the monitor seems reasonably accurate. Subjective estimates of such pressure variation were incorrect only 4.4% of the time, a rate that would have resulted in only 1% of treatments being erroneous.[137]

There is disagreement on precise threshold values that differentiate fluid responders from non-responders, and the variety of techniques, devices, and approaches have not been standardized.[135] In a recent systematic review, mean discriminatory thresholds defining volume responsiveness for PVV and SVV were found to be 12.5% ± 1.6% and 11.6% ± 1.9%, respectively, with acceptable sensitivities and specificities (89%, 88% and 82%, 86%, respectively).[147] However, simply differentiating patients who will respond from those who will not fails to take into account the nature of the clinical intervention at issue. Volume expansion does not result in a dichotomous outcome, and the asymmetric nature of the Frank-Starling curve dictates that the cost-benefit ratio of acting in one direction will be different from acting in the other. For any given change in preload, the change in stroke volume will be different depending on the direction of the preload change, with that differential being dependent on how close to the peak of the curve the patient begins. Consequently, the concept of the "gray zone" has been proposed that defines a range of values between which evidence-based decision making is not possible.[148] For PPV, this zone has been described as 9% to 13% such that those above 13% should receive volume expansion while those below 9% should not. Between those two values, the measurement is not able to provide meaningful guidance and the decision should be based on other criteria.[136,149]

Continuous display of PPV is now routine on bedside monitors, a feature that has facilitated rapid adoption of dynamic preload reserve assessment.[150,151] As such, while its use is clinically relevant, it is even more important to understand the shortcomings of all respiratory-induced dynamic indicators and the clinical conditions under which they were originally studied and validated. While PPV appears to be valid in the setting of liver failure, it is significantly affected by increased abdominal pressure; patient position, including steep Trendelenburg, prone, or lateral positions; and use of vasopressors.[136,140,152-154] Variability in diastolic filling causing variable stroke volumes makes irregular heart rhythms highly problematic in the use of all dynamic preload reserve indicators.[155,156] In addition, there is evidence that patients with pulmonary hypertension or reduced RV ejection fraction may not have reliable responses to changes in intrathoracic pressure, increasing the risk of over-hydration and worsening right heart failure.[157] Dynamic indices are of marginal value in the setting of either minimally invasive or open thoracic surgery, and their use in children is considered unreliable due to the increased compliance of the myocardium and the chest wall in younger patients.[158,159] It has even been suggested that tachypnea, (especially in the setting of respiratory failure), or significant bradycardia may disrupt the relationship between respiratory-cycle–induced changes in intrathoracic pressure and cardiac chamber volumes, thus invalidating the theoretical basis for blood pressure variation analysis.[136]

Most importantly, though, is the profound effect of protective lung ventilation on the predictive power of respiratory-induced SPV, PPV, or SVV to identify a patient with residual preload reserve.[160-162] Mechanical ventilation with tidal volume of 8 to 10 mL/kg, positive end-expiratory pressure ≥ 5 mm Hg, regular cardiac rhythm, normal intra-abdominal pressure, and a closed chest are necessary to duplicate the experimental conditions under which most of these indices have been investigated, and these conditions are largely inconsistent with ventilatory parameters chosen for lung protective ventilation. Clinical trials have found waveform analysis to be of limited utility in this setting.[160-162] However, measuring PPV or SVV during or immediately following a recruitment maneuver increased its sensitivity and specificity in predicting fluid responsiveness, although a broader gray zone of up to 26% should be considered.[163,164]

As noted above, respiratory-cycle–induced arterial pressure variations are dependent on changes in LV preload and, to a lesser degree, afterload. Indeed, decreased arterial compliance and the resultant increased pulse pressure that accompanies both normal and pathologic vascular aging results in an exaggerated PPV response to any change in stroke volume. As such, it is possible that PPV thresholds should be higher in such patients than in those with greater elastance in their vascular trees.[165,166]

Central Venous Pressure Monitoring

Cannulation of a central vein and direct measurement of CVP are frequently performed in hemodynamically unstable patients and those undergoing major operations. A central venous catheter may be inserted to provide secure vascular access for administration of vasoactive drugs or fluids, CVP monitoring, transvenous cardiac pacing, temporary hemodialysis, pulmonary artery catheterization (PAC) for more comprehensive cardiac monitoring, or aspiration of entrained air in patients at risk for venous air emboli. A central venous catheter may also be inserted when no peripheral access can be obtained, or when repeated venous blood sampling is required (Box 36.5).

BOX 36.5 **Indications for Central Venous Cannulation**

- Central venous pressure monitoring
- Pulmonary artery catheterization and monitoring
- Transvenous cardiac pacing
- Temporary hemodialysis
- Drug administration
  - Concentrated vasoactive drugs
  - Hyperalimentation
  - Chemotherapy
  - Agents irritating to peripheral veins
  - Prolonged antibiotic therapy (e.g., endocarditis)
- Rapid infusion of fluids (via large cannulas)
  - Trauma
  - Major surgery
- Aspiration of air emboli
- Inadequate peripheral intravenous access
- Sampling site for repeated blood testing

CENTRAL VENOUS CANNULATION

When required in the intraoperative period, the decision to perform central venous cannulation before or after induction of anesthesia is guided most often by individual patient and physician preferences or institutional practice.

CHOOSING THE CATHETER, SITE, AND METHOD FOR CENTRAL VENOUS CANNULATION

Central venous catheters come in a variety of lengths, gauges, compositions, and lumen numbers.[167,168] This makes it critical for the physician to choose the best catheter for any given application. Multiport catheters, which allow monitoring of CVP and infusion of drugs and fluids simultaneously, are the most common,[169] but introducer sheaths with one or two integrated ports for multiple drug infusions are an alternative. Introducer sheaths allow insertion of a single-lumen catheter through the hemostasis valve for continuous CVP monitoring and rapid placement of a pacing wire or PAC for more intensive monitoring should the need arise.

Selecting the best site for safe and effective central venous cannulation ultimately requires consideration of the indication for catheterization (pressure monitoring versus drug or fluid administration), the patient's underlying medical condition, the clinical setting, and the skill and experience of the physician performing the procedure. In patients with severe bleeding diatheses, it is best to choose a puncture site where bleeding from the vein or adjacent artery is easily detected and controlled with local compression. In such a patient, an internal or external jugular approach would be preferable to a subclavian site. Likewise, patients with severe emphysema or others who would be severely compromised by a pneumothorax would be better candidates for internal jugular than subclavian cannulation, owing to the higher risk with the latter approach. If transvenous cardiac pacing is required in an emergency situation, catheterization of the right internal jugular vein is recommended, as it provides the most direct route to the right ventricle. Trauma patients, with their necks immobilized in a hard cervical collar, are best resuscitated using a femoral or subclavian approach; the latter may be placed even more safely if the risk of pneumothorax is obviated by prior placement of a thoracostomy tube. The physician must recognize that the length of catheter inserted to position the catheter tip properly in the superior vena cava will vary according to puncture site, being slightly (3-5 cm) greater when the left internal or external jugular veins are chosen, compared with the right internal jugular vein.[170] Finally, a physician's personal experience undoubtedly plays a significant role in determining the safest site for central venous cannulation, particularly when the procedure is performed under urgent or emergent circumstances.

A central vein may be cannulated using either a landmark technique or ultrasound guidance. Ultrasound technology is now widely available and is strongly recommended for central line placement.[171-173] The reader is referred to other sources for detailed descriptions and tutorials on the various insertion techniques for different access sites.[169,174-176] Regardless of the insertion technique used or the cannulation site chosen, certain general principles should be emphasized. Ideally, a protocol or checklist describing the basic procedural steps for central line insertion should be in place at every institution, and all staff members should feel empowered to speak up when they witness a protocol violation. Standardized equipment, routine use of an assistant, hand washing, and maximal barrier precautions all contribute to the sterility of the procedure.[172] The use of real-time ultrasound guidance for vessel localization and venipuncture should be routine or at least strongly considered, especially when the internal jugular vein site is selected. Waveform manometry or pressure measurement

BOX 36.6 Complications of Central Venous Pressure Monitoring

- Mechanical
  - Vascular injury
    - Arterial
    - Venous
    - Cardiac tamponade
  - Respiratory compromise
    - Airway compression from hematoma
    - Pneumothorax
  - Nerve injury
  - Arrhythmias
- Thromboembolic
  - Venous thrombosis
  - Pulmonary embolism
  - Arterial thrombosis and embolism
  - Catheter or guidewire embolism
- Infectious
  - Insertion site infection
  - Catheter infection
  - Bloodstream infection
  - Endocarditis
- Misinterpretation of data
- Misuse of equipment

should be used to confirm venous placement of the catheter before use. Finally, the position of the catheter tip should be verified as soon as clinically appropriate to avoid delayed complications.

COMPLICATIONS OF CENTRAL VENOUS PRESSURE MONITORING

Complications of central venous cannulation are becoming increasingly recognized as major sources of morbidity with more than 15% of patients experiencing some sort of related adverse event.[177,178] Although serious immediate complications are infrequent when these procedures are performed by well-trained, experienced clinicians, use of CVP catheters continues to result in significant morbidity and mortality. Complications are often divided into mechanical, thromboembolic, and infectious etiologies (Box 36.6).

Mechanical Complications of Central Venous Catheterization

The incidence of complications depends on a number of factors including the catheter insertion site and the patient's medical condition. Large retrospective and observational studies provide the best estimates of incidence and frequency.

Vascular injuries from central venous catheterization have a range of clinical consequences. The most common minor complications are localized hematoma or injury to the venous valves.[179] More serious complications include perforation into the pleural space or mediastinum, resulting in hydrothorax, hemothorax, hydromediastinum, hemomediastinum, and or chylothorax.[180-186]

In general, *unintended arterial puncture* is the most common acute mechanical complication, ranging from 1.9 to 15%.[187] Many of these injuries result in localized hematoma formation, but in rare occasions even small-gauge-needle punctures may lead to serious complications such as arterial thromboembolism.[188] Delayed vascular complications following central venous catheterization are uncommon but should be considered as consequences of this procedure. A number of these have been described in the literature, including aorto-atrial fistula, venobronchial fistula, carotid artery–internal jugular vein fistula, and pseudoaneurysm formation.[189-192]

The most important life-threatening vascular complication of central venous catheterization is **cardiac tamponade** resulting from perforation of the intrapericardial superior vena cava, right atrium, or right ventricle, and resulting hemopericardium or unintentional pericardial instillation of intravenous fluid.[193] Most reports document the avoidable nature of this catastrophic event and highlight that patients are predisposed to this complication when central venous catheter tips are malpositioned within the heart chambers or abutting the wall of the superior vena cava at a steep angle. This latter position can be recognized radiographically as a gentle curvature of the catheter tip within the superior vena cava.[194] These observations emphasize that objective confirmation of proper catheter tip location is mandatory, regardless of whether the catheter is inserted from a central or peripheral site.

Pneumothorax is often cited as the most common complication of subclavian vein cannulation, although it appears that unintended arterial puncture is actually more frequent.[99,195] Mansfield et al. reported 821 patients who underwent attempted subclavian venous cannulation, with a 1.5% incidence of pneumothorax and a 3.7% incidence of arterial puncture when using the landmark technique.[195] Pneumothorax is even less frequent with the internal jugular approach. Shah et al. reported an incidence of pneumothorax of 0.5% in their series of nearly 6000 internal jugular catheterizations.[187] This is most likely a high estimate, as these patients had undergone sternotomy for cardiac surgery, a procedure that may have been responsible for the pneumothorax in many cases.

Nerve injury is another potential complication of central venous cannulation. Damage may occur to the brachial plexus, stellate ganglion, phrenic nerve, or vocal cords.[196-198] In addition, chronic pain syndromes have been attributed to this procedure.[199]

Thromboembolic Complications of Central Venous Catheterization

Catheter-related thrombosis varies according to the site of central venous catheterization, occurring in as many as 21.5% of patients with femoral venous catheters and 1.9% of those with subclavian venous catheters.[200] Catheters that are positioned low in the right atrium may be more prone to thrombus formation, possibly due to mechanical irritation of the right atrial endocardium by the catheter.[201] Thrombi that form at the catheter tip or adhere to the endocardium have the potential to become a nidus for infection, cause superior vena cava syndrome, or embolize into the pulmonary circulation.[202-204] Occasionally, surgical removal is required.[205]

In addition to thromboembolism, other reported embolic complications of central venous catheterization include embolism of portions of the catheter or guidewire, and air embolism.[206,207] Almost invariably, these are the result of misuse of equipment, highlighting the need for proper education and training of nurses and physicians responsible for the use of these devices.

Infectious Complications of Central Venous Catheterization

By far, the most common major late complication of central venous cannulation is *infection.* Major progress has been made in the control of central line-associated blood stream infections (CLABSI), likely due to a focus on evidence-based best practices for catheter insertion and maintenance.[208] In fact, CLABSI rates have declined by about 50% between 2008 and 2016.[209] The majority of CLABSIs are occurring in inpatient wards and outpatients receiving hemodialysis, but approximately one third of these cases still occur in the ICU, a cohort that likely includes most of the catheters placed intraoperatively.[209-211]

As previously noted, the starting point for prevention of infection is meticulous attention to aseptic technique.[212] Multilumen catheters may carry a higher risk of infection than single-lumen catheters although the added clinical functionality of such catheters often mandates their use.[178,213] Catheters are made from materials such as silicone, polyvinyl chloride, Teflon, and polyurethane. Furthermore, catheters of the same material may be manufactured differently, which influences their surfaces and the frequency of bacterial adherence to the surface.[214] Heparin-bonded central venous catheters have been shown to reduce the incidence of catheter-related thrombosis and infection in children and adults.[215,216] The incorporation of antimicrobial treatments such as silver (this metal has broad antimicrobial activity and is nontoxic), combinations of the antiseptics chlorhexidine and silver sulfadiazine, or the antibiotics minocycline and rifampin onto the catheter surfaces have been shown to reduce rates of catheter colonization and in some cases blood stream infection.[216-218] The added expense has prevented more widespread adoption of these catheters, although an analysis has suggested their cost-effectiveness in settings in which the rate of catheter-related infections remains high (more than 3.3 per 1000 catheter days).[219]

A chlorhexidine gluconate-impregnated sponge dressing has been shown to reduce catheter colonization in infants and children, but does not reduce the rate of catheter-associated bloodstream infections.[220,221] Current guidelines from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention do not support routine catheter site changes or scheduled changes over a guidewire and provide other detailed recommendations for catheter management to reduce the risk of infectious complications.[213,222]

Overall, there does not appear to be an ideal site for central venous cannulation with respect to prevention of complications given that, taken together, the risk of mechanical, thrombotic, and infectious complications is similar among the three insertion sites. This was illustrated by a recent prospective, randomized, multicenter trial in adult ICU patients, where catheterization of the subclavian vein is associated with the lowest risk of infectious complications and deep vein thrombosis, but the highest risk of mechanical complications.[223]

TABLE 36.2 Normal Cardiovascular Pressures

Pressures	Average (mm Hg)	Range (mm Hg)
RIGHT ATRIUM		
a wave	6	2-7
v wave	5	2-7
Mean	3	1-5
RIGHT VENTRICLE		
Peak systolic	25	15-30
End-diastolic	6	1-7
PULMONARY ARTERY		
Peak systolic	25	15-30
End-diastolic	9	4-12
Mean	15	9-19
PULMONARY ARTERY WEDGE		
Mean	9	4-12
LEFT ATRIUM		
a wave	10	4-16
v wave	12	6-21
Mean	8	2-12
LEFT VENTRICLE		
Peak systolic	130	90-140
End-diastolic	8	5-12
Central aorta		
Peak systolic	130	90-140
End-diastolic	70	60-90
Mean	90	70-105

Other Complications of Central Venous Catheterization

Although many complications of CVP monitoring relate to equipment misuse, the frequency of complications caused by data misinterpretation remains unknown. It is extremely likely, however, that clinicians misinterpret CVP measurements and have suboptimal understanding of CVP monitoring, just as has been demonstrated repeatedly for PAC monitoring (see discussion later). Safe and effective use of CVP monitoring requires a detailed understanding of cardiovascular physiology, normal CVP waveforms, and common pathologic abnormalities in these measurements.

PHYSIOLOGIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR CENTRAL VENOUS PRESSURE MONITORING

Cardiac filling pressures are measured directly from a number of sites in the vascular system. CVP monitoring is the least invasive method, followed by pulmonary artery and left atrial pressure monitoring. Proper interpretation of all cardiac filling pressures requires knowledge of normal values for these pressures, as well as pressures in the cardiac chambers, the great vessels, and other measured and derived hemodynamic variables (Table 36.2).

Two prerequisites must be met in order to correctly interpret the information provided by the CVP monitor: (a) the clinician must possess a thorough understanding of all the variables that affect right atrial pressure; and (b) measurements need to be made with extreme attention to detail.

CVP is determined by the interaction of the venous return function of the circulatory system and the cardiac function.[224] An increase in cardiac function with an increase in venous return will result in an increase in cardiac output and *rise* in CVP. An increase in cardiac function *without* an increase in venous return will result in an increase in cardiac output and a *fall* in CVP. In other words, an isolated CVP measurement has very little meaning unless the information is interpreted in the context of some estimation of cardiac function.

Central Venous Pressure and Venous Return

What determines venous return to the heart? The relationship among the multiple variables that affect blood return to the right atrium is complex. In short, venous return is mostly determined by the gradient between the *mean circulatory filling pressure* (MCFP) and CVP.[131] MCFP results from the elastic recoil pressure from distended small veins and venules and is the force that drives blood back to the right atrium.[224] This pressure has been estimated to be between 8 and 10 mm Hg in healthy individuals at rest, but it cannot be measured in the clinical setting.[225] MCFP rises when volume is administered intravenously, but also in many other circumstances such as when venous tone changes in response to venoconstrictors or endogenous catecholamines, or when there is a shift of blood volume from the splanchnic system into the systemic circulation.[131] The CVP, typically 2 to 3 mm Hg in healthy individuals, is the downstream pressure. Two important corollaries emerge: right atrial pressure is key for maintaining cardiac output, and the body will compensate through the mechanisms described above and others to preserve venous return. This explains why a patient may lose 10% to 12% of his circulating blood volume without exhibiting changes in blood pressure or CVP. Secondly, the difference between MCFP and CVP is only 6 to 8 mm Hg, and hence small changes in CVP may have profound hemodynamic consequences.

Central Venous Pressure and Cardiac Function

The exact same amount of blood returning to the heart can result in very different CVP values at different cardiac function states. This may be explained by the classic diastolic pressure-volume relationship. This curve is one limb of a pressure-volume loop that describes the relation between pressure and volume for the left or right ventricle during an entire cardiac cycle. When a ventricle is operating along the flat portion of its diastolic filling curve it will exhibit only a small increase in filling pressure (CVP in the case of the right ventricle) after significant increases in filling volume or preload. The same increase in filling volume causes a significant increase in filling pressure when the ventricle is operating on the steep portion of its curve.[226] An even more confusing situation arises when the diastolic pressure-volume relation of the ventricle changes, for example with the onset of myocardial ischemia. Rather than moving along the same diastolic pressure-volume curve, the ventricle now shifts to a different, steeper curve where, somewhat paradoxically, an increase in filling pressure may accompany a decrease in filling volume.[227] As in this example, not only can one not assume that a given measured change in cardiac filling pressure reflects a proportional change in ventricular preload, it cannot even be assumed that pressure and volume change in the same direction.[227] In summary, changes in CVP may be the sole result of changes in inotropic state or compliance of the ventricle, independent of the total circulating volume or venous return to the heart.

To summarize, CVP is the result of a complex and diverse interplay among many different physiologic variables, many of which are impossible to measure in the operating room or ICU. It is therefore not surprising that studies assessing the value of CVP as a predictor of volume status or fluid responsiveness have failed to demonstrate a relationship. There is, in fact, no simple relationship between CVP and circulating blood volume.[131]

Further complicating the analysis are the effects of intrathoracic and intrapericardial pressures on filling pressures such as CVP.[226,228] In general, all intravascular pressures measured in clinical practice are referenced to ambient atmospheric pressure. Thus, a cardiac filling pressure of 10 mm Hg is 10 mm Hg higher than ambient atmospheric pressure. Does this pressure value accurately represent the distending force across the cardiac chamber wall at end-diastole?

To answer this question, one needs to consider transmural pressure. The cardiac chambers are all contained within the pericardium and thorax. Changes in pressure in the structures surrounding the heart will influence pressures recorded within the heart. Transmural pressure is the difference between chamber pressure and juxtacardiac or pericardial pressure. This transmural pressure determines ventricular preload, end-diastolic volume, or fiber length. The same measured filling pressure, referenced to atmospheric pressure, can be associated with markedly different transmural pressures and chamber volumes, depending on whether juxtacardiac pressure is high or low. Although juxtacardiac pressure can be ignored under some circumstances, marked alterations in pleural and pericardial pressures occur commonly and must be considered when any cardiac filling pressure is interpreted. Transmural pressure is always the pressure of physiologic interest. Because juxtacardiac pressure is not measured routinely, one must always consider that the measured central vascular pressure, referenced to the ambient atmosphere, may be a poor estimate of transmural pressure.[226,228]

During spontaneous breathing, inspiration causes a decrease in pleural and juxtacardiac pressures which is transmitted, in part, to the right atrium, and lowers CVP. This same decrease in pleural pressure will influence other measured central vascular pressures in a similar fashion. Note a subtle but critically important observation about the measurement of central vascular pressures. Although CVP measured relative to atmospheric pressure decreases during the inspiratory phase of spontaneous ventilation, transmural CVP, the difference between right atrial pressure and juxtacardiac pressure may actually increase slightly as more blood is drawn into the right atrium. The opposite pattern is observed during positive-pressure ventilation, in which inspiration increases intrathoracic pressure while raising the measured CVP, but decreases transmural CVP,

TABLE 36.3 Central Venous Pressure Waveform Components

Waveform Component	Phase of Cardiac Cycle	Mechanical Event
a wave	End-diastole	Atrial contraction
c wave	Early systole	Isovolumic ventricular contraction, tricuspid motion toward right atrium
v wave	Late systole	Systolic filling of atrium
h wave	Mid- to late diastole	Diastolic plateau
x descent	Mid-systole	Atrial relaxation, descent of the base, systolic collapse
y descent	Early diastole	Early ventricular filling, diastolic collapse

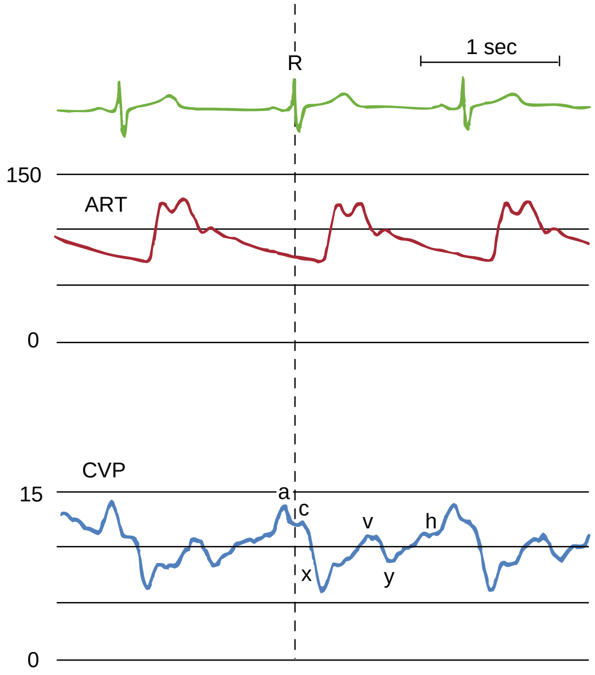


Fig. 36.35 Normal central venous pressure *(CVP)* waveform. The diastolic components (y descent, end-diastolic a wave) and the systolic components (c wave, x descent, end-systolic v wave) are all clearly delineated. A mid-diastolic plateau wave, the h wave, is also seen because heart rate is slow. Waveform identification is aided by timing the relation between individual waveform components and the electrocardiographic R wave. Waveform timing using the arterial *(ART)* pressure trace is more confusing, owing to the relative delay in the systolic arterial pressure upstroke. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

because the elevated intrathoracic pressure reduces venous return. As mentioned before, transmural pressures are rarely measured in clinical practice owing to difficulties in assessing juxtacardiac or intrathoracic pressure. Instead, end-expiratory values for cardiac filling pressures should be recorded in all patients, to provide the best estimate of transmural pressure. At the end of expiration, intrathoracic and juxtacardiac pressures approach atmospheric pressure regardless of ventilatory status and the CVP values will coincide. Proper pressure values can also be determined by visual inspection of the CVP waveform on a calibrated monitor screen or paper recording. This facilitates comparison of CVP values (and other cardiac filling pressures) obtained from the same patient under varying patterns of ventilation, a common situation in anesthesia and critical care.

The second prerequisite for interpretation of CVP values is correct measurement. Details about the correct zeroing and leveling of the transducer are discussed elsewhere in this text. (See Technical Aspects of Direct Blood Pressure Measurement.). Leveling of the transducer for accurate CVP measurements is best achieved by aligning the stopcock (not the transducer) to a point 5 cm below the sternal angle, as opposed to the more commonly used mid-axillary line at the fourth intercostal space. When this reference point is used, measurements can be done in both the supine position or with the patient sitting up (up to an angle of 60 degrees),[116,229,230] and better represent the upper fluid level of the right atrium. Regardless of the position chosen, it is most important to be consistent throughout the monitoring period to maintain the same reference point.

Despite these limitations, there is still a great deal of information that may be gathered from careful interpretation of the CVP waveform. For this, it is essential to understand the components of the normal CVP waveform.

NORMAL CENTRAL VENOUS PRESSURE WAVEFORMS

Mechanical events during the cardiac cycle are responsible for the sequence of waves seen in a typical CVP trace. The CVP waveform consists of five phasic events, three peaks (a, c, v) and two descents (x, y) (Table 36.3, Fig. 36.35).[231,232] The most prominent wave is the **a wave** of atrial contraction, which occurs at end-diastole following the ECG P wave. Atrial contraction increases atrial pressure and provides the “atrial kick” to fill the right ventricle through the open tricuspid valve. Atrial pressure decreases following the a wave, as the atrium relaxes. This smooth decline in pressure is interrupted by the **c wave**. This wave is a transient increase in atrial pressure produced by isovolumic ventricular contraction, which closes the tricuspid valve and displaces it toward the atrium. The c wave always follows the ECG R wave because it is generated during onset of ventricular systole. (Note that the c wave observed in a jugular venous pressure trace might have a slightly more complex origin. This wave has been attributed to early systolic pressure transmission from the adjacent carotid artery and may be termed a carotid impact wave.[233] Because the jugular venous pressure also reflects right atrial pressure, however, this c wave likely represents both arterial [carotid impact] and venous [tricuspid motion] origins.) Atrial pressure continues its decline during ventricular systole, owing to continued atrial relaxation and changes in atrial geometry produced by ventricular contraction and ejection that draw the tricuspid annulus toward the cardiac apex. This is the **x descent** or systolic collapse in atrial pressure. The x descent can be divided into two portions, x and x′, corresponding to the segments before and after the c wave. The last atrial pressure peak is the **v wave**, and is caused by venous filling of the atrium during late systole while the tricuspid valve remains closed. The v wave usually peaks just after the ECG T wave. Atrial pressure then decreases, inscribing the **y descent** or diastolic collapse, as the tricuspid valve opens and blood flows from atrium to ventricle. (A final component of the CVP waveform, the **h wave**, occasionally appears as a pressure plateau in mid- to late diastole. The h wave is not normally seen unless the heart rate is slow and venous pressure is elevated.)[233,234] In summary, the normal venous waveform components may be remembered as follows: the a wave results from atrial contraction; the c wave from tricuspid valve closure and isovolumic RV contraction; the x descent is the systolic decrease in atrial pressure due to atrial relaxation and ventricular contraction; the v wave from ventricular ejection, which drives venous filling of the atrium; and the y descent is the diastolic decrease in atrial pressure due to flow across the open tricuspid valve.

In relation to the cardiac cycle and ventricular mechanical actions, the CVP waveform can be considered to have three systolic components (c wave, x descent, v wave) and two diastolic components (y descent, a wave). By recalling the mechanical actions that generate the pressure peaks and troughs, it is easy to identify these waveform components properly by aligning the CVP waveform and the ECG trace and using the ECG R wave to mark end-diastole and onset of systole. When the radial artery pressure trace is used for CVP waveform timing instead of the ECG, confusion may arise because the arterial pressure upstroke occurs nearly 200 ms after the ECG R wave (see Fig. 36.35). This normal physiologic delay reflects the times required for the spread of the electrical depolarization through the ventricle (≈60 ms), isovolumic LV contraction (≈60 ms), transmission of aortic pressure rise to the radial artery (≈50 ms), and transmission of the radial artery pressure rise through fluid-filled tubing to the transducer (≈10 ms).[117,235]

The normal CVP peaks are designated systolic (c, v) or diastolic (a) according to the phase of the cardiac cycle in which the wave begins. However, one generally identifies these waves not by their onset or upstroke, but rather by the location of their peaks. For instance, the a wave generally begins and peaks in end-diastole, but the peak may appear delayed to coincide with the ECG R wave, especially in a patient with a short PR interval. In this instance, a and c waves merge, and this composite wave is termed an a-c-wave. Designation of the CVP v wave as a systolic event may be even more confusing. Although the ascent of the v wave begins during late systole, the peak of the v wave occurs during isovolumic ventricular relaxation, immediately prior to atrioventricular valve opening and the y descent. Consequently, the most precise description would be that the v wave begins in late systole, but peaks during isovolumic ventricular relaxation, the earliest portion of diastole. For clinical purposes, it is simplest to consider the v wave to be a systolic wave.

Although three distinct CVP peaks (a, c, v) and two troughs (x, y) are discernible in the normal venous pressure trace, heart rate changes and conduction abnormalities alter this pattern. A short ECG PR interval causes fusion of a and c waves, and tachycardia reduces the length of diastole and the duration of the y descent, causing v and a waves to merge. In contrast, bradycardia causes each wave to become more distinct with separate x and x' descents visible and a more prominent h wave. Although there are circumstances in which other pathologic waves may be evident in the CVP trace, one should resist the temptation to assign physiologic significance to each small pressure peak, as many will arise as artifacts of fluid-filled tubing-transducer monitoring systems. It is more useful to search for the expected waveform components, including those waveforms that are characteristic of the pathologic conditions suspected.

TABLE 36.4 Central Venous Pressure Waveform Abnormalities

Condition	Characteristics
Atrial fibrillation	Loss of a wave Prominent c wave
Atrioventricular dissociation	Cannon a wave
Tricuspid regurgitation	Tall systolic c-v-wave Loss of x descent
Tricuspid stenosis	Tall a wave Attenuation of y descent
Right ventricular ischemia	Tall a and v waves Steep x and y descents M or W configuration
Pericardial constriction	Tall a and v waves Steep x and y descents M or W configuration
Cardiac tamponade	Dominant x descent Attenuated y descent
Respiratory variation during spontaneous or positive-pressure ventilation	Measure pressures at end-expiration

ABNORMAL CENTRAL VENOUS PRESSURE WAVEFORMS

Various pathophysiologic conditions may be diagnosed or confirmed by examination of the CVP waveform (Table 36.4). One of the most common applications is the rapid diagnosis of cardiac arrhythmias.[236] In **atrial fibrillation** (Fig. 36.36A), the a wave disappears and the c wave becomes more prominent because atrial volume is greater at end-diastole and onset of systole, owing to the absence of effective atrial contraction. Occasionally, atrial fibrillation or flutter waves may be seen in the CVP trace when the ventricular rate is slow. Isorhythmic **atrioventricular dissociation or accelerated junctional (nodal) rhythm** (see Fig. 36.36B) alters the normal sequence of atrial contraction prior to ventricular contraction. Instead, atrial contraction now occurs during ventricular systole when the tricuspid valve is closed, thereby inscribing a tall "cannon" a wave in the CVP waveform. Absence of normal atrioventricular synchrony during ventricular pacing (see Fig. 36.36C) can be identified in a similar fashion by searching for cannon waves in the venous pressure trace. In these instances, the CVP helps diagnose the cause of arterial hypotension; loss of the normal end-diastolic atrial kick may not be as evident in the ECG trace as it is in the CVP waveform.

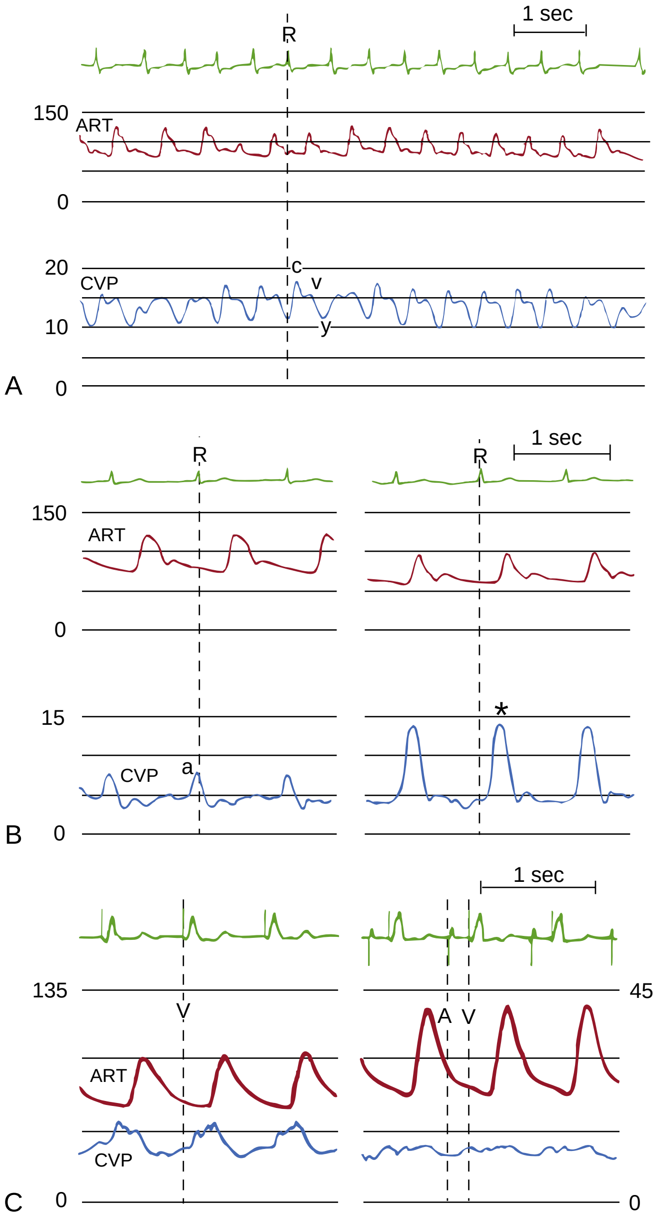


Fig. 36.36 Central venous pressure *(CVP)* changes caused by cardiac arrhythmias. (A) Atrial fibrillation. Note absence of the a wave, a prominent c wave, and a preserved v wave and y descent. This arrhythmia also causes variation in the electrocardiographic (ECG) R-R interval and left ventricular stroke volume, which can be seen in the ECG and arterial *(ART)* pressure traces. (B) Isorhythmic atrioventricular dissociation. In contrast to the normal end-diastolic a wave in the CVP trace *(left panel)*, an early systolic cannon wave is inscribed (*, *right panel*). Reduced ventricular filling accompanying this arrhythmia causes a decreased arterial blood pressure. (C) Ventricular pacing. Systolic cannon waves are evident in the CVP trace during ventricular pacing *(left panel)*. Atrioventricular sequential pacing restores the normal venous waveform and increases arterial blood pressure *(right panel)*. ART scale left, CVP scale right. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

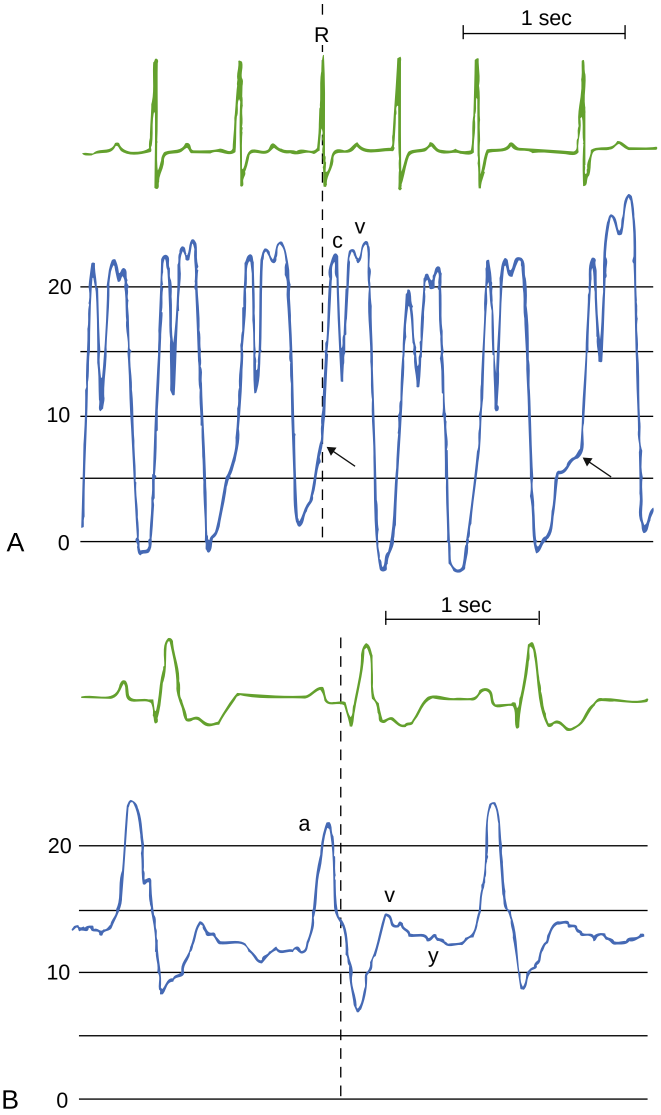


Fig. 36.37 Central venous pressure (CVP) changes in tricuspid valve disease. (A) Tricuspid regurgitation increases mean CVP, and the waveform displays a tall systolic c-v-wave that obliterates the x descent. In this example, the a wave is not seen because of atrial fibrillation. Right ventricular end-diastolic pressure is estimated best at the time of the electrocardiographic R wave *(arrows)* and is lower than mean CVP. (B) Tricuspid stenosis increases mean CVP, the diastolic y descent is attenuated, and the end-diastolic a wave is prominent. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

Right-sided valvular heart diseases alter the CVP waveform in different ways.[237] **Tricuspid regurgitation** (Fig. 36.37A) produces abnormal systolic filling of the right atrium through the incompetent valve. A broad, tall systolic c-v-wave results, beginning in early systole and obliterating the systolic x descent in atrial pressure. The CVP trace is said to be ventricularized, resembling RV pressure.

Note that this regurgitant wave differs in onset, duration, and magnitude from a normal v wave caused by end-systolic atrial filling from the venae cavae. In patients with tricuspid regurgitation, RV end-diastolic pressure is overestimated by the numeric display on the bedside monitor, which reports a single mean value for CVP. Instead, RV end-diastolic pressure is estimated best by measuring the CVP value at the time of the ECG R wave, prior to the regurgitant systolic wave (see Fig. 36.37A). Unlike tricuspid regurgitation, **tricuspid stenosis** produces a diastolic defect in atrial emptying and ventricular filling (see Fig. 36.37B). Mean CVP is elevated, and a pressure gradient exists throughout diastole between right atrium and ventricle. The a wave is unusually prominent and the

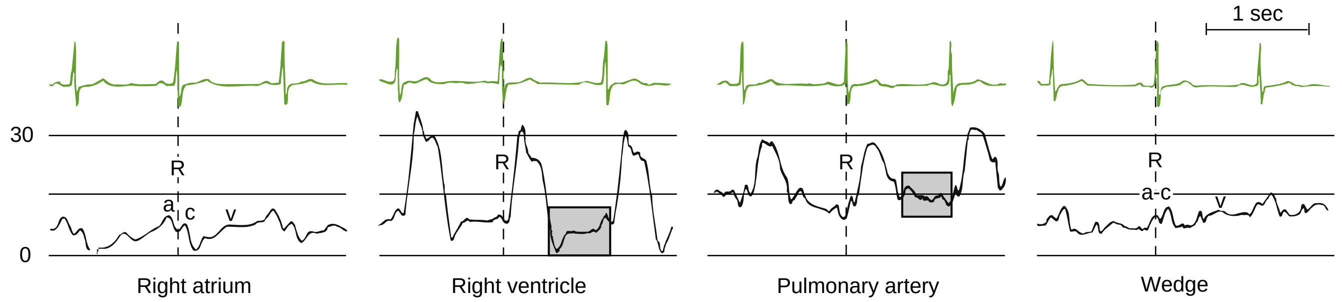


Fig. 36.38 Characteristic waveforms recorded during passage of the pulmonary artery catheter. The right atrial pressure resembles a central venous pressure waveform and displays a, c, and v waves. Right ventricular pressure shows a higher systolic pressure than seen in the right atrium, although the end-diastolic pressures are equal in these two chambers. Pulmonary artery pressure shows a diastolic step-up compared with ventricular pressure. Note also that right ventricular pressure increases during diastole, whereas pulmonary artery pressure decreases during diastole *(shaded boxes)*. Pulmonary artery wedge pressure has a similar morphology to right atrial pressure, although the a-c and v waves appear later in the cardiac cycle relative to the electrocardiogram. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

y descent is attenuated, owing to the impaired diastolic egress of blood from the atrium. Other conditions that reduce RV compliance, such as RV ischemia, pulmonary hypertension, or pulmonic valve stenosis, may produce a prominent end-diastolic a wave in the CVP trace but do not attenuate the early diastolic y descent. CVP waveform morphology changes in other characteristic ways in the presence of pericardial diseases and RV infarction. These patterns are interpreted best in conjunction with PAP monitoring, which is discussed below.

Perhaps the most important traditional application of CVP monitoring is to provide an estimate of the adequacy of the circulating blood volume. Several randomized trials and systematic reviews have demonstrated a very poor relationship between CVP and circulating blood volume, as well as the inability of a static CVP value to predict the hemodynamic response to a fluid challenge.[238-240] This is not surprising in light of the factors described above. Some have argued that the important clinical question with regard to volume responsiveness should be phrased in the negative, that is, whether a patient is *unlikely* to respond to fluids. The subset of patients that will derive all the deleterious effects of fluid administration (capillary leak and tissue edema) and no benefit (increased cardiac output) is in most instances the group of clinical interest. In this regard, the lack of an inspiratory fall in CVP in patients who have spontaneous inspiratory efforts (provided the inspiratory effort is adequate, i.e., >2 mm Hg fall in PAOP with inspiration) was able to predict no improvement in cardiac output following fluid administration.[241]

Pulmonary Artery Catheter Monitoring

In 1970, Swan, Ganz, and colleagues introduced PAC into clinical practice for the hemodynamic assessment of patients with acute myocardial infarction.[242] This device allowed accurate bedside measurement of important cardiovascular physiologic variables, and its popularity soared. While the PAC provides measurements of several hemodynamic variables that clinicians find it hard to predict accurately from standard clinical signs and symptoms,[243] it remains uncertain whether PAC monitoring leads to improved patient outcome.[244]

PULMONARY ARTERY CATHETER INSERTION

The standard PAC has a 7.0 to 9.0 Fr circumference, is 110 cm in length marked at 10-cm intervals, and contains four internal lumens. The distal port at the catheter tip is used for PAP monitoring, while the second is 30 cm more proximal and is used for CVP monitoring. The third lumen leads to a balloon near the tip which is used to float the catheter through the cardiac chambers, and the fourth houses wires for a temperature thermistor, the end of which lies just proximal to the balloon.[245]

PACs can be placed from any of the central venous cannulation sites described earlier, but the right internal jugular vein provides the most direct route to the right heart chambers. The balloon at the tip of the catheter is inflated with air, and the catheter is advanced into the right atrium, through the tricuspid valve, the right ventricle, the pulmonic valve, into the pulmonary artery, and finally into the wedge position. Characteristic waveforms from each of these locations confirm proper catheter passage and placement (Fig. 36.38).

After the PAWP is measured, the balloon is deflated, and the PAP waveform should reappear. Catheter position is confirmed with a chest radiograph. The tip of the PAC should be within 2 cm of the cardiac silhouette on a standard anteroposterior chest film.[246]

If an RV waveform is not observed after inserting the catheter 40 cm, coiling in the right atrium is likely. Similarly, if a pulmonary artery waveform is not observed after inserting the catheter to 50 cm, coiling in the right ventricle has probably occurred. The balloon should be deflated, the catheter withdrawn to 20 cm, and the PAC floating sequence repeated.

A few additional points might aid successful positioning of the PAC. The air-filled balloon tends to float to nondependent regions as it passes through the heart into the pulmonary vasculature. Consequently, positioning a patient head down will aid flotation across the tricuspid valve, and tilting the patient onto the right side and placing the head up will encourage flotation out of the right ventricle, as well as reduce the incidence of arrhythmias during insertion.[247,248] Deep inspiration during spontaneous ventilation will increase venous return and RV output transiently, and may facilitate catheter flotation in a patient with low cardiac output. On occasion, a catheter may be floated to

BOX 36.7 **Complications of Pulmonary Artery Catheter Monitoring**

Catheterization
  - Arrhythmias, ventricular fibrillation
  - Right bundle branch block, complete heart block (if preexisting left bundle branch block)

Catheter residence
  - Mechanical: catheter knots, entangling with or dislodgement of pacing wires
  - Thromboembolism
  - Pulmonary infarction
  - Infection, endocarditis
  - Endocardial damage, cardiac valve injury
  - Pulmonary artery rupture
  - Pulmonary artery pseudoaneurysm

Misinterpretation of data
  - Misuse of equipment

proper position when stiffened by injecting 10 to 20 mL of ice cold solution through the distal lumen. Finally, maneuvering of the PAC can also be guided by transesophageal or transthoracic echocardiography, demonstrating the catheter passage through the right heart.[249,250]

COMPLICATIONS OF PULMONARY ARTERY CATHETER MONITORING

Complications of PAC use may be divided into those resulting from catheter placement, those associated with the *in-vivo* presence of the catheter, and those resulting from catheter use and misuse. For the most part, problems encountered during catheter placement are the same for both PAC and CVP monitoring (see Box 36.6). However, catheterization of the right ventricle and pulmonary artery causes complications uniquely associated with PACs (Box 36.7).[251]

When all adverse effects from PAC use are considered, including self-limited arrhythmias observed during catheter insertion, it appears that minor complications occur in more than 50% of catheterized patients.[252] However, major morbidity specifically attributable to PAC use is uncommon.[253] In both an initial exhaustive review of the literature and in its 2003 update, the ASA Task Force on Pulmonary Artery Catheterization emphasized that the reported incidence of complications from PAC monitoring varies widely, although it seems that serious complications occur in 0.1% to 0.5 % of PAC-monitored surgical patients.[252] In 1984, Shah et al. reported use of PACs in 6245 patients undergoing cardiac and noncardiac operations.[187] Quite remarkably, only 10 patients (0.16%) had serious complications resulting in morbidity and only 1 patient (0.016%) died as a result of PAC. Furthermore, a 1998 European report of PAC use in 5306 patients undergoing cardiac surgery confirms this low incidence of major morbidity, with injury of the right ventricle or PA occurring in only 4 patients (0.07%).[254] Finally, only 1 of 2000 adverse events reported in the Australian Incident Monitoring Study of 1993 involved use of a PAC, in contrast to 64 adverse events involving access to the arterial or venous systems.[99] However, it is important to acknowledge that although these large studies indicate a low incidence of serious complications attributable to the use of PACs, the frequency of complications in a particular clinical setting or patient group remains unknown.

A more insidious but possibly more common complication of PAC use is **misinterpretation of data**.[255,256] Although the magnitude of the problem is not clear, studies show widespread knowledge deficits among practitioners who use PACs. In 1990, Iberti and associates reported the results of a 31-question multiple-choice examination given to 496 physicians. They found a poor overall level of knowledge of PACs, as evidenced by a mean score of only 67% correct answers. Although higher scores were demonstrated by individuals with more training and more experience inserting and using PACs, none of these factors ensured a high level of knowledge.[257] These results have been duplicated in a variety of other specialty care groups.[258] It is especially concerning that PAWP measurement was performed incorrectly by 30% to 50% of the clinicians in these studies and that educational programs failed to improve performance.[259,260] Taken together, these observations highlight the fact that effective use of PACs requires a great deal of expertise and clinical experience, and even measuring the most fundamental PAC-derived variable, namely wedge pressure, is a complicated endeavor.[261]

NORMAL PULMONARY ARTERY PRESSURES AND WAVEFORMS

As the balloon-tipped PAC is floated to its proper position in the pulmonary artery, characteristic pressure waveforms are recorded (see Fig. 36.38). In the superior vena cava or right atrium, a CVP waveform with characteristic a-, c-, and v waves and low mean pressure should be observed. RV pressure is characterized by a rapid systolic upstroke, a wide pulse pressure, and low diastolic pressure. Entry of the PAC into the pulmonary artery is heralded by a step-up in diastolic pressure and a change in waveform morphology.

On occasion, it may be difficult to distinguish RV pressure from PAP, particularly if only the numeric values for these pressures are examined. However, careful observation of the pressure waveforms, focusing on the diastolic pressure contours, allows differentiation. During diastole, the PAP will fall owing to continuous runoff flow to the lung, while the pressure in the right ventricle will increase due to filling from the right atrium (see Fig. 36.38).[262]

As noted above, the wedge pressure is an indirect measurement of pulmonary venous pressure and left atrial pressure and should therefore resemble these venous waveforms with characteristic a and v waves and x and y descents. However, owing to the pulmonary vascular bed interposed between the PAC tip and left atrium, wedge pressure is a delayed and damped representation of left atrial pressure.[263]

The terms PAWP and pulmonary artery occlusion pressure are used interchangeably and refer to the same measurement obtained from the tip of a PAC following balloon inflation and flotation to the wedged position. However, pulmonary capillary pressure must not be confused with wedge pressure or left atrial pressure, nor should the term *pulmonary capillary wedge pressure* be used at all. The hydrostatic pressure in the pulmonary capillaries that causes edema formation according to the Starling equation is different from left arterial pressure (LAP). This is the pressure that must exceed

LAP in order to maintain antegrade blood flow through the lungs. Although the magnitude of the difference between pulmonary capillary pressure and wedge pressure is generally small, it can increase markedly when resistance to flow in the pulmonary veins is elevated.[264] In most situations, the major component of pulmonary vascular resistance occurs at the precapillary, pulmonary arteriolar level. However, rare conditions like pulmonary venoocclusive disease may cause a marked increase in postcapillary resistance to flow. Similar situations arise in conditions that disproportionately increase pulmonary venous resistance, such as central nervous system injury, acute lung injury, hypovolemic shock, endotoxemia, and norepinephrine infusion.[265,266] Under these conditions, measurement of wedge pressure will underestimate pulmonary capillary pressure substantially and thereby underestimate the risk of hydrostatic pulmonary edema.

ABNORMAL PULMONARY ARTERY AND WEDGE PRESSURE WAVEFORMS

PAC monitoring is subject to the same technical artifacts inherent in all invasive pressure monitoring techniques as well as some additional problems unique to this method.[267-269] Because the PAC is longer and passes through the cardiac chambers, it is more prone to distortions from clot or air bubbles, and motion-related artifacts are more problematic. Artifactual pressure spikes may be distinguished from the underlying physiologic pressure waveform by their unique morphology and timing.

At the onset of systole, tricuspid valve closure accompanied by RV contraction and ejection result in excessive **catheter motion** causing the most common PAC trace artifact.[268,270] This pressure artifact may produce an artificially low pressure, erroneously designated as the pulmonary artery diastolic (PAD) pressure (Fig. 36.39). Repositioning the PAC often solves the problem.

Another common artifact in PAC pressure measurement occurs when the balloon is overinflated and occludes the distal lumen orifice. This phenomenon is termed **overwedging** and usually is caused by distal catheter migration and eccentric balloon inflation that forces the catheter tip against the vessel wall. The catheter now records a gradually rising, non-pulsatile pressure as the continuous flush system builds up pressure against the obstructed distal opening (Fig. 36.40). When observed, this should be corrected immediately by gentle catheter withdrawal to a more proximal location in the pulmonary artery.

As emphasized earlier, with each PAC balloon inflation and wedge measurement, the catheter tip migrates distally. When a wedge pressure tracing appears during partial balloon inflation, it suggests that the PAC is inappropriately located in a smaller, distal branch of the pulmonary artery. The catheter should be withdrawn slightly before overwedging can occur and result in vascular injury or pulmonary infarction.

Pathophysiologic conditions involving the left-sided cardiac chambers or valves produce characteristic changes in the pulmonary artery and wedge pressure waveforms. One of the most easily recognized patterns is the tall v wave of **mitral regurgitation**. Unlike a normal wedge pressure v wave produced by late systolic pulmonary venous inflow, the prominent v wave of mitral regurgitation begins in early systole. Mitral regurgitation causes fusion of c and v waves and obliteration of the systolic x descent, as the isovolumic phase of LV systole is eliminated owing to the retrograde ejection of blood into the left atrium.[237] Because the prominent v wave of mitral regurgitation is generated during

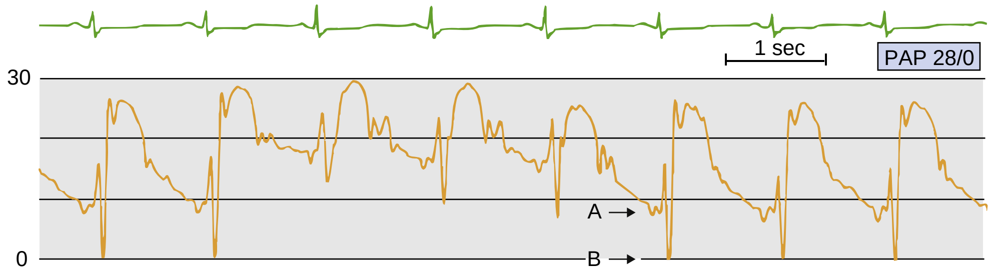


Fig. 36.39 Artifactual pressure peaks and troughs in the pulmonary artery pressure *(PAP)* waveform caused by catheter motion. The correct value for pulmonary artery end-diastolic pressure is 8 mm Hg (A), although the monitor digital display erroneously reports the PAP as 28/0 mm Hg (B). (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

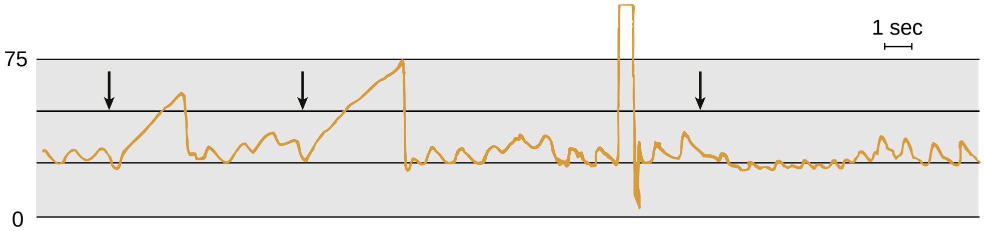


Fig. 36.40 Overwedging of the pulmonary artery (PA) catheter causes artifactual waveform recordings. The first two attempts to inflate the PA catheter balloon *(first two arrows)* produce a nonpulsatile increasing pressure caused by an occluded catheter tip. After the catheter is withdrawn slightly, balloon inflation allows proper wedge pressure measurement *(third arrow)*. Before the third attempt at balloon inflation, the PA pressure lumen is flushed. This restores the appropriate pulsatile nature to the PA and wedge pressure waveforms on the right side of the trace. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

ventricular systole, the mean wedge pressure overestimates LV end-diastolic filling pressure, which is better estimated by the pressure value prior to onset of the regurgitant v wave (Fig. 36.41). However, it remains a good approximation for mean left atrial pressure and the subsequent risk of hydrostatic pulmonary edema.

It should be noted that although the height of the v wave in the wedge pressure trace will be affected by the volume of regurgitant blood entering the left atrium, it also depends on the left atrial volume and compliance (Fig. 36.42). This may explain why patients with acute mitral regurgitation tend to have tall wedge pressure v waves—they have smaller, stiffer left atria with poorer compliance compared to patients with longstanding disease. Therefore, the height of the wedge pressure v wave is neither a sensitive nor a specific indicator of mitral regurgitation severity.[271]

In contrast to mitral regurgitation, which distorts the systolic portion of the wedge pressure waveform, **mitral stenosis** alters its diastolic aspect. In this condition, the holo-diastolic pressure gradient across the mitral valve results in an increased mean wedge pressure, a slurred early diastolic y descent, and a tall end-diastolic a wave. Similar hemodynamic abnormalities are seen in patients with left atrial myxoma or whenever there is obstruction to mitral flow. Diseases that increase LV stiffness (e.g., LV infarction, pericardial constriction, aortic stenosis, and systemic hypertension) produce changes in the wedge pressure that resemble in part those seen in mitral stenosis. In these conditions, mean wedge pressure is increased and the trace displays a prominent a wave, but the y descent remains steep because there is no obstruction to flow across the mitral valve during diastole. Because patients with advanced mitral stenosis often have coexisting atrial fibrillation, the a wave will not be present in many of these cases (Fig. 36.43).[237]

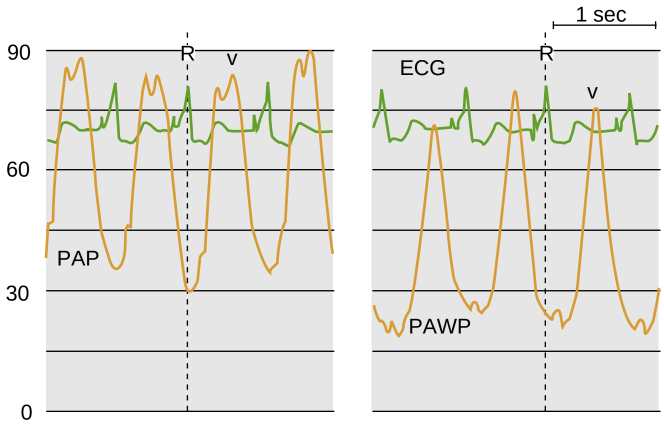


Fig. 36.41 Severe mitral regurgitation. A tall systolic v wave *(v)* is inscribed in the pulmonary artery wedge pressure *(PAWP)* trace and also distorts the pulmonary artery pressure *(PAP)* trace, giving it a bifid appearance. The electrocardiogram *(ECG)* is abnormal owing to ventricular pacing. Left ventricular end-diastolic pressure is estimated best by measuring PAWP at the time of the electrocardiographic R wave, before onset of the regurgitant v wave. Note that mean PAWP exceeds left ventricular end-diastolic pressure in this condition. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

Myocardial ischemia may be detected by PAC in several ways. Ischemia itself impairs LV relaxation resulting in diastolic dysfunction, a pattern particularly characteristic of demand ischemia associated with tachycardia or induced by rapid atrial pacing.[227,272,273] Impaired ventricular relaxation results in a stiffer, less compliant left ventricle, resulting in an increased LV end-diastolic pressure. This will result in a tall a wave on the wedge trace, as the left atrium contracts into a stiff, incompletely relaxed left ventricle (Fig. 36.44).[274]

Myocardial ischemia can also produce LV systolic dysfunction, typically as a result of supply ischemia, caused by a sudden reduction or cessation of coronary blood flow to a region of the myocardium.[273,275] As ejection fraction falls significantly, LV end-diastolic volume and pressure rise, and elevated pulmonary diastolic and wedge pressures develop.[276] Distortion of LV geometry or ischemia of the myocardium underlying the papillary muscles can lead to acute mitral regurgitation with its characteristic PAP trace changes described above (see Fig. 36.41).[277]

Whether the PAC should be used in high-risk patients as a supplemental monitor for detection of myocardial ischemia remains controversial. Although patients with LV ischemia are likely to have higher mean wedge pressures than those without ischemia, these differences are small, may be difficult to detect clinically, and no clear quantitative threshold values for diagnosis of ischemia have been identified.[278]

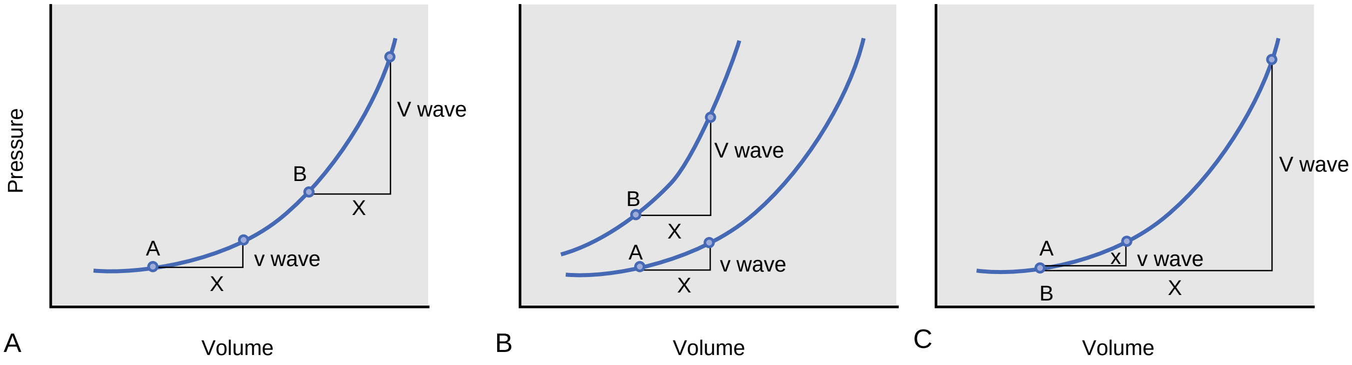


Fig. 36.42 V-wave height as an indicator of mitral regurgitation severity. Left atrial pressure-volume curves describe the three factors that determine v-wave height. (A) Influence of left atrial volume. For the same regurgitant volume (X), the left atrial v wave will be taller if baseline atrial volume is greater (point B versus point A). (B) Influence of left atrial compliance. For the same regurgitant volume (X), the left atrial v wave will be taller if baseline atrial compliance is reduced (point B versus point A). (C) Influence of regurgitant volume. Beginning at the same baseline left atrial volume (points A and B), if regurgitant volume increases (X versus x), the left atrial pressure v wave will increase (V versus v). (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

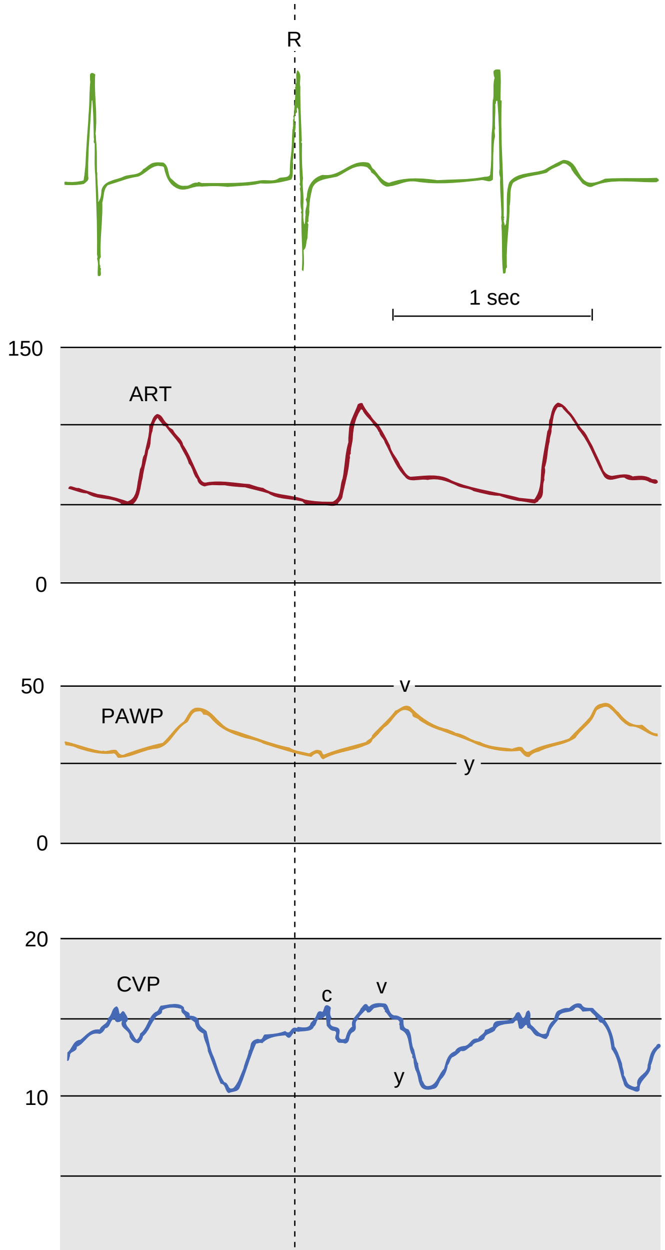


Fig. 36.43 Mitral stenosis. Mean pulmonary artery wedge pressure *(PAWP)* is increased (35 mm Hg), and the diastolic y descent is markedly attenuated. Compare the slope of the y descent in the PAWP trace with the y descent in the central venous pressure *(CVP)* trace. In addition, compare this PAWP y descent with the PAWP y descent in mitral regurgitation (see Figure 36.41); a waves are not seen in the PAWP or CVP traces, owing to atrial fibrillation. *ART,* Arterial blood pressure. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

Right ventricular ischemia produces characteristic PAC waveform patterns that may be helpful in diagnosis and management. Just as LV ischemia increases PAWP, RV ischemia increases CVP. In fact, this is one of the few situations in which CVP may be higher than wedge pressure. In addition, CVP waveforms may display a prominent a wave resulting from RV diastolic dysfunction, and a prominent v wave resulting from ischemia-induced tricuspid regurgitation.[279,280] This particular CVP waveform is described as having an M or W configuration, referring to the tall a and v waves and interposed steep x and y descents. Severe pulmonary artery hypertension may also result in RV ischemia and dysfunction as well as increased CVP, but this is distinguished from primary RV dysfunction in that the PAP and calculated pulmonary vascular resistance are normal in primary RV failure.

The CVP waveform in RV infarction is similar to that from a patient with restrictive cardiomyopathy or **pericardial constriction**, including elevated mean pressure, prominent a and v waves, and steep x and y descents.[281] The cardinal feature common to these conditions is impaired RV diastolic compliance, often termed “restrictive physiology.” In restrictive cardiomyopathy and RV infarction, diastolic dysfunction impairs ventricular relaxation and decreases chamber compliance, whereas in constrictive pericarditis cardiac filling is limited by the rigid, often calcified pericardial shell. Impaired venous return decreases end-diastolic volume, stroke volume, and cardiac output. Despite reduced cardiac volumes, cardiac filling pressures are markedly elevated and equal in all four chambers of the heart at end-diastole (Fig. 36.45). Although PAC monitoring reveals this pressure equalization, the characteristic M or W configuration is more apparent in the CVP trace, most likely because of the damping effect of the pulmonary vasculature on the left-sided filling pressures.[282-284]

Another hallmark of pericardial constriction is observed in the right and LV pressure traces. These demonstrate rapid but short-lived early diastolic ventricular filling, which produces a diastolic “dip-and-plateau” pattern or “square root sign.”[129,285] In some cases, particularly when heart rate is slow, a similar waveform pattern may be noted in the CVP trace: a steep y descent (the diastolic dip) produced by rapid early diastolic flow from atrium to ventricle, followed by a mid-diastolic h wave (the plateau) from the interruption in flow imposed by the restrictive pericardial shell (see Fig. 36.45).

Like pericardial constriction, **cardiac tamponade** impairs cardiac filling, but in the case of tamponade, a compressive pericardial fluid collection produces this effect. This results in a marked increase in CVP and a reduced diastolic volume, stroke volume, and cardiac output. Despite many similar hemodynamic features, tamponade and constriction may be distinguished by the different CVP waveforms seen in these two conditions. In tamponade, the venous pressure waveform appears more monophasic and is dominated by the systolic x pressure descent. The diastolic y pressure descent is attenuated or absent, because early diastolic flow from right atrium to right ventricle is impaired by the surrounding compressive pericardial fluid collection (Fig. 36.46).[282,286,287] Clearly, other clinical and hemodynamic clues help distinguish these diagnoses, such as the presence of *pulsus paradoxus*, an almost invariable finding in cardiac tamponade (see Fig. 36.32).[288]

Probably the single most important waveform abnormality or interpretive problem in PAC monitoring is discerning the correct pressure measurement in patients with large intrathoracic pressure swings like those receiving **positive pressure ventilation** or those with labored spontaneous breathing. During positive pressure ventilation, inspiration increases pulmonary artery and wedge pressures. By measuring these pressures at end-expiration, the confounding

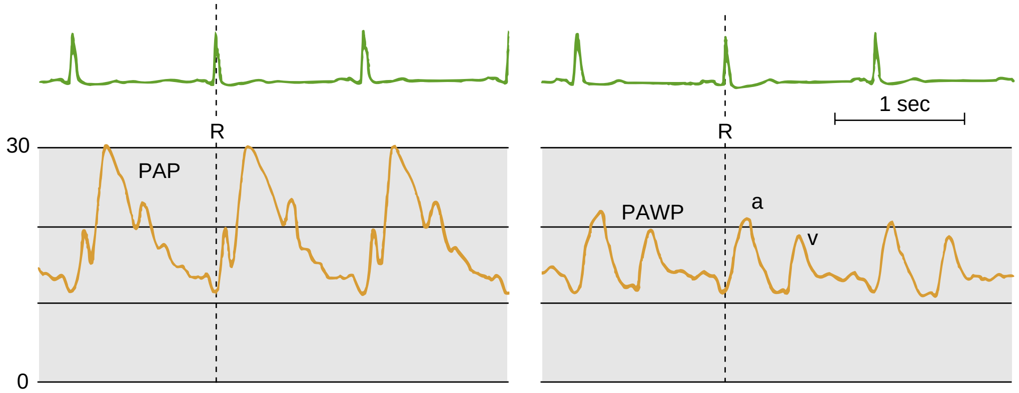


Fig. 36.44 Myocardial ischemia. Pulmonary artery pressure *(PAP)* is relatively normal and mean pulmonary artery wedge pressure *(PAWP)* is only slightly elevated (15 mm Hg). However, PAWP morphology is markedly abnormal with tall a waves (21 mm Hg) resulting from the diastolic dysfunction seen in this condition. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

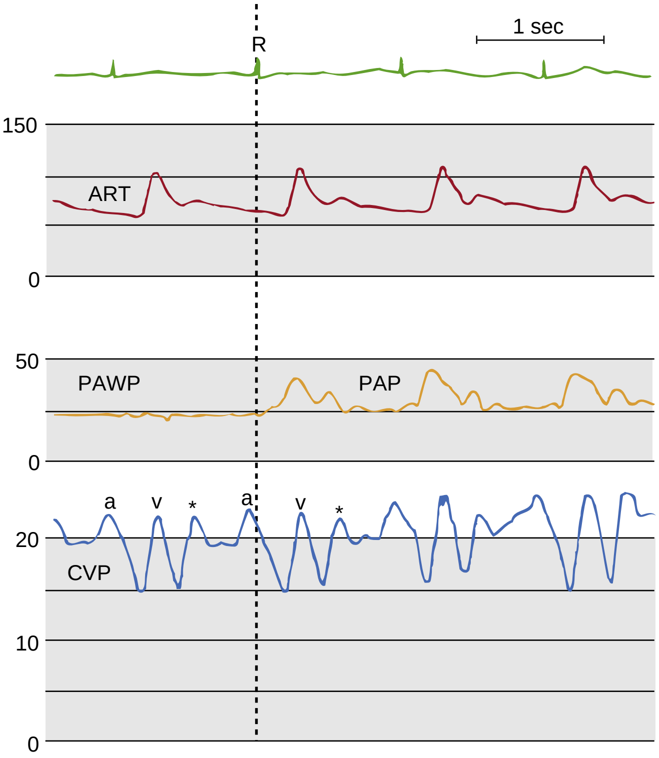


Fig. 36.45 Pericardial constriction. This condition causes elevation and equalization of diastolic filling pressures in the pulmonary artery pressure *(PAP)*, pulmonary artery wedge pressure *(PAWP)*, and central venous pressure *(CVP)* traces. The CVP waveform reveals tall a and v waves with steep x and y descents and a mid-diastolic plateau wave (*) or h wave. *ART*, Arterial blood pressure. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

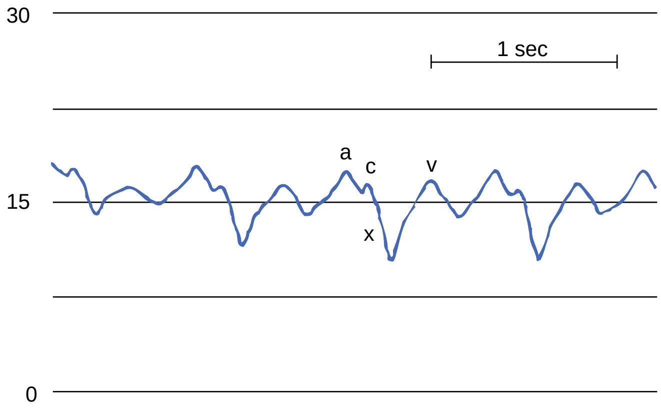


Fig. 36.46 Cardiac tamponade. The central venous pressure waveform shows an increased mean pressure (16 mm Hg) and attenuation of the y descent. Compare with Figure 36.45. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

effect of this inspiratory increase in intrathoracic pressure is minimized (Fig. 36.47).[228] Forceful inspiration during spontaneous ventilation has the opposite effect, but again, measurement of these pressures at end-expiration eliminates this confounding factor. Bedside monitors are designed with algorithms that aim to identify and report the numeric values for end-expiratory pressures but are often inaccurate.[289,290] The most reliable method for measuring central vascular pressures at end-expiration is examination of the waveforms on a calibrated monitor screen or paper recording.[290,291]

PHYSIOLOGIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR PULMONARY ARTERY CATHETER MONITORING: PREDICTION OF LEFT VENTRICULAR PRELOAD

One reason to measure PAD and wedge pressures is to be able to estimate LV end-diastolic pressure, the closest surrogate to LV end-diastolic volume, which is the true LV preload. When a PAC floats to the wedge position, the inflated balloon isolates the distal pressure-monitoring orifice from upstream PAP. A continuous static column of blood now connects the wedged PAC tip to the junction of the pulmonary veins and left atrium. Thus, wedging the PAC, in effect, extends the catheter tip to measure the pressure at the point at which blood flow resumes on the venous side of the pulmonary circuit. Because resistance in the large pulmonary veins is negligible, PAWP provides an indirect measurement of both pulmonary venous pressure and left atrial pressure.[292,293] For the column of blood connecting the tip of the wedged catheter and the draining pulmonary vein to be continuous, however, external compression by surrounding alveoli should be negligible (i.e., the catheter needs to reside in the so-called West zone 3 of the lung) (Fig. 36.48). [293]

PAD pressure is often used as an alternative to PAWP to estimate LV filling pressure. This is acceptable under normal circumstances because when pulmonary venous

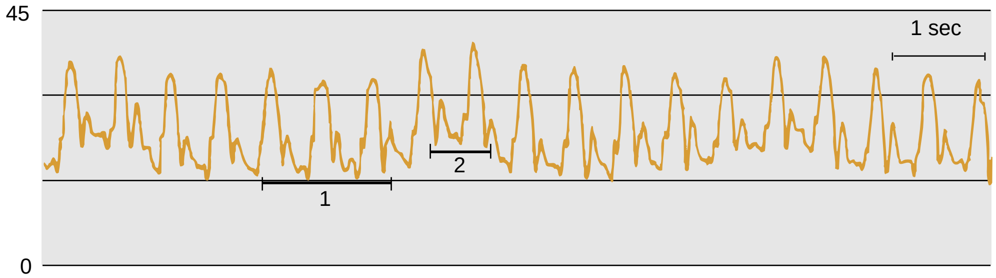


Fig. 36.47 Influence of positive-pressure mechanical ventilation on pulmonary artery pressure. Pulmonary artery pressure should be measured at end expiration (*1*, 15 mm Hg) in order to obviate the artifact caused by positive-pressure inspiration (*2*, 22 mm Hg). (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

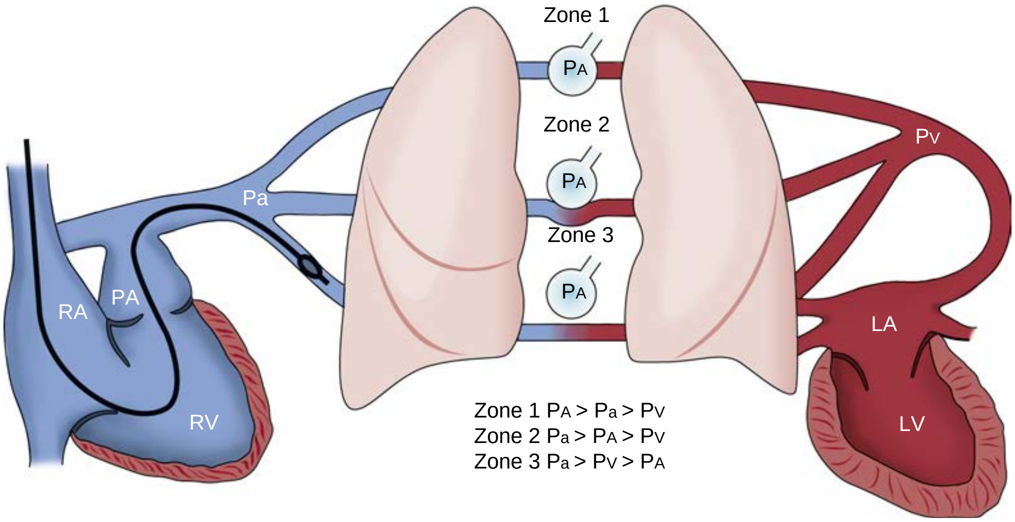


Fig. 36.48 The pulmonary artery catheter tip must be wedged in lung zone 3 to provide an accurate measure of pulmonary venous *(Pv)* or left atrial *(LA)* pressure. When alveolar pressure *(P_A)* rises above Pv in lung zone 2, or above pulmonary arterial pressure *(Pa)* in lung zone 1, wedge pressure will reflect alveolar pressure rather than intravascular pressure. *RA*, Right atrium; *RV*, right ventricle; *PA*, pulmonary artery; *LV*, left ventricle. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998, Fig. 6–10.)

resistance is low, the pressure in the pulmonary artery at end of diastole will equilibrate with downstream pressure in the pulmonary veins and left atrium.[294,295] From a monitoring standpoint, PAD has the added advantage of being available for continuous monitoring whereas PAWP is only measured intermittently.

In many situations, LV end-diastolic pressure can be either underestimated or overestimated by the PAWP and/or PAD. These situations are summarized in Figure 36.49 and Tables 36.5 and 36.6. The interested reader is referred to several excellent references for further discussion of this topic.[292,293,296]

However, even when PAD and wedge pressure accurately estimate LV end-diastolic pressure, many factors can influence the relationship between end-diastolic pressure and end-diastolic chamber volume, which is the true preload. Proper interpretation of filling pressures requires assessment of juxtacardiac pressure as well as ventricular compliance. When both are normal, a wedge pressure of 20 mm Hg is interpreted as hypervolemia, with an increased LV end-diastolic volume causing the increased PAWP. However, if juxtacardiac pressure is increased (e.g., due to cardiac tamponade, pericardial constriction, or positive pressure ventilation), or ventricular compliance is decreased (e.g., with myocardial ischemia, hypertrophy, or cardiomyopathy), a wedge pressure of 20 mm Hg can coexist with a small, hypovolemic left ventricle (Fig. 36.50).

In addition, ventricular interdependence (caused by the shared septum of the left and right ventricles) and pericardial constraint couple changes in RV and LV function. For example, acute pulmonary arterial hypertension increases RV end-diastolic volume and pressure, and shifts the ventricular septum leftward, thus increasing LV end-diastolic pressure while simultaneously decreasing LV end-diastolic volume. Conversely, primary changes on the left side can adversely affect the right heart structures in similar ways. With all these considerations in mind, it should be of no surprise that various studies have repeatedly shown that both CVP and PAWP may not always correlate with cardiac preload and do not necessarily predict the cardiac output response to a fluid challenge.[238,297] In contrast, in patients with systolic ventricular dysfunction, filling pressures were found more accurate than cardiac volume indices in predicting fluid responsiveness.[298]

PULMONARY ARTERY CATHETER-DERIVED HEMODYNAMIC VARIABLES

The cardiovascular system is often modeled as an electrical circuit, with the relationship between cardiac output, blood

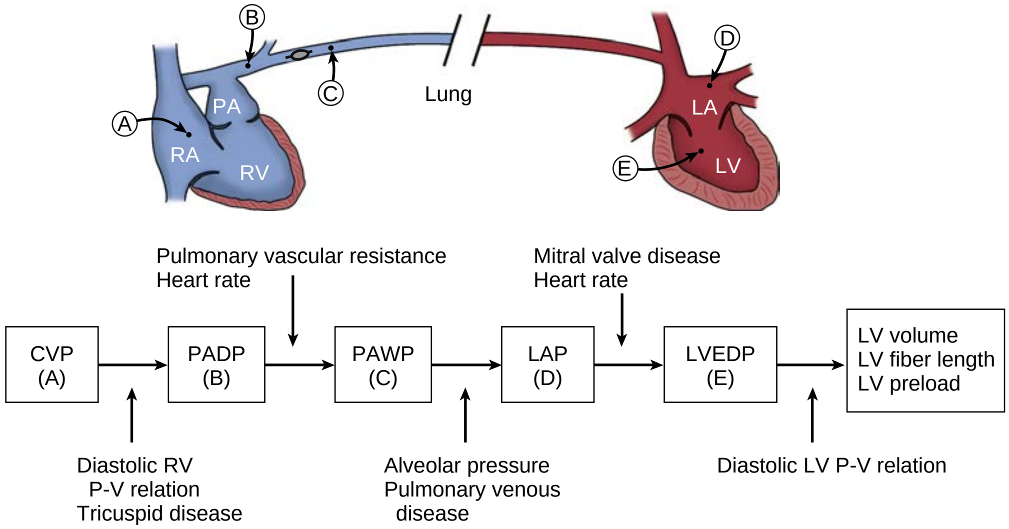


Fig. 36.49 Anatomic and physiologic factors that influence the relations between various measures of left ventricular *(LV)* filling and true LV preload. The further upstream the filling pressure is measured, the more confounding factors may influence the relation between this measurement and LV preload. *CVP*, Central venous pressure; *LA*, left atrium; *LAP*, left atrial pressure; *LVEDP*, left ventricular end-diastolic pressure; *PA*, pulmonary artery; *PADP*, pulmonary artery diastolic pressure; *PAWP*, pulmonary artery wedge pressure; *P-V*, pressure-volume; *RA*, right atrium; *RV*, right ventricle. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

TABLE 36.5 Underestimation of Left Ventricular End-Diastolic Pressure

Condition	Site of Discrepancy	Cause of Discrepancy
Diastolic dysfunction	Mean LAP <LVEDP	Increased end-diastolic a wave
Aortic regurgitation	LAP a wave <LVEDP	Mitral valve closure before end-diastole
Pulmonic regurgitation	PADP <LVEDP	Bidirectional runoff for pulmonary artery flow
Right bundle branch block	PADP <LVEDP	Delayed pulmonic valve opening
Post-pneumonectomy	PAWP <LAP or LVEDP	Obstruction of pulmonary blood flow

LAP, Left atrial pressure; *LVEDP*, left ventricular end-diastolic pressure; *PADP*, pulmonary artery diastolic pressure; *PAWP*, pulmonary artery wedge pressure.
Modified from Mark JB. Predicting left ventricular end-diastolic pressure. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:59.

TABLE 36.6 Overestimation of Left Ventricular End-Diastolic Pressure

Condition	Site of Discrepancy	Cause of Discrepancy
Positive end-expiratory pressure	Mean PAWP >Mean LAP	Creation of lung zone 1 or 2, or pericardial pressure changes
Pulmonary arterial hypertension	PADP >Mean PAWP	Increased pulmonary vascular resistance
Pulmonary venoocclusive disease	Mean PAWP >Mean LAP	Obstruction to flow in large pulmonary veins
Mitral stenosis	Mean LAP >LVEDP	Obstruction to flow across mitral valve
Mitral regurgitation	Mean LAP >LVEDP	Retrograde systolic v wave raises mean atrial pressure
Ventricular septal defect	Mean LAP >LVEDP	Antegrade systolic v wave raises mean atrial pressure
Tachycardia	PADP >Mean LAP >LVEDP	Short diastole creates pulmonary vascular and mitral valve gradients

LAP, Left atrial pressure; *LVEDP*, left ventricular end-diastolic pressure; *PADP*, pulmonary artery diastolic pressure; *PAWP*, pulmonary artery wedge pressure.
Modified from Mark JB. Predicting left ventricular end-diastolic pressure. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:59.

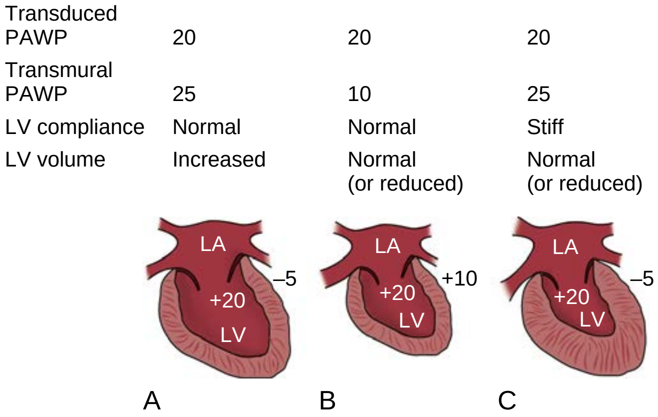
pressure, and resistance to flow related in a manner similar to Ohm's law:

$$\text{PVR} = \frac{\text{MPAP} - \text{PAWP}}{\text{CO}} \bullet (80)$$

$$\text{SVR} = \frac{\text{MAP} - \text{CVP}}{\text{CO}} \bullet (80) \qquad (36.1)$$

Where,
SVR = systemic vascular resistance (dyne•s/cm^5)
PVR= pulmonary vascular resistance (dyne•s/cm^5)
MAP = mean arterial pressure (mm Hg)
CVP = central venous pressure (mm Hg)
MPAP = mean pulmonary artery pressure (mm Hg)
PAWP = pulmonary artery wedge pressure (mm Hg)
CO = cardiac output (L/min)

Normal values for SVR and PVR are given in Table 36.7. Note that these calculations of systemic and pulmonary vascular resistance are based on a hydraulic fluid model that assumes continuous, laminar flow through a series of rigid pipes.[299] This is an oversimplification. A more physiologic model of the systemic circulation considers the vasculature to be a series of collapsible vessels with intrinsic tone. This model, also called the vascular waterfall, describes a critical closing pressure in the downstream end of the circuit that exceeds right atrial pressure and serves to limit flow—an effective downstream pressure that is higher than the right



Transduced PAWP	20	20	20
Transmural PAWP	25	10	25
LV compliance	Normal	Normal	Stiff
LV volume	Increased	Normal (or reduced)	Normal (or reduced)

Fig. 36.50 Influence of juxtacardiac pressure and ventricular compliance on left ventricular *(LV)* preload. Three interpretations of an increased transduced pulmonary artery wedge pressure (*PAWP*, 20 mm Hg) are possible. (A) Juxtacardiac pressure (–5 mm Hg) and LV compliance are normal, transmural PAWP is increased (25 mm Hg), and LV volume is increased. (B) Juxtacardiac pressure is increased (+10 mm Hg), LV compliance is normal, transmural PAWP is decreased (10 mm Hg), and LV volume is normal or decreased. (C) Juxtacardiac pressure is normal, LV compliance is decreased, transmural PAWP is increased (25 mm Hg), and LV volume is normal or decreased. *LA*, Left atrial. (From Mark JB. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

atrial pressure used in the SVR formula. A detailed consideration of these issues is beyond the scope of this discussion and is available in other sources.[300,301] The important point for clinicians, though, is that therapy focused on the fine adjustment of SVR may be very misleading and should be avoided.

Additional problems arise in considering the pulmonary vasculature and using the above formulae as a measure of resistance to flow through the lung.[302] The pulmonary vasculature is more compliant than the systemic vasculature, and marked increases in pulmonary blood flow may not produce any significant increase in PAP. In addition, flow usually ceases at end-diastole in the low resistance pulmonary circuit. Thus, changes in pulmonary vascular resistance may result from intrinsic alterations in pulmonary vascular tone (constriction or dilation), vascular recruitment, or rheologic changes. For the pulmonary circuit, a better approach to evaluating the changes in pulmonary vascular resistance may be to examine the pressure gradient between the PAD and wedge pressures, or the gradient between the mean pulmonary artery and wedge pressures (also termed the trans-pulmonary gradient).

TABLE 36.7 Normal Hemodynamic Values

	Average	Range
Cardiac output (L/min)	5.0	4.0-6.5
Stroke volume (mL)	75	60-90
Systemic vascular resistance (Wood units) (Dynes-sec-cm^{-5})	1200	800-1600
Pulmonary vascular resistance (Wood units) (Dynes-sec-cm^{-5})	80	40-180
Arterial oxygen content (mL/dL)	18	16-20
Mixed venous oxygen content (mL/dL)	14	13-15
Mixed venous oxygen saturation (%)	75	70-80
Arteriovenous oxygen difference (mL/dL)	4	3-5
Oxygen consumption (mL/min)	225	200-250

Another set of common calculations derived from standard hemodynamic variables adjusts these measurements for the patient's body surface area (BSA) in an attempt to normalize these measurements for patients of different sizes. The BSA is generally determined from a standard nomogram based on height and weight. The most commonly indexed variables are the cardiac index (cardiac index = cardiac output/body surface area) and stroke volume index (stroke volume index = stroke volume/body surface area). On occasion, the systemic and pulmonary vascular resistances are indexed as well by multiplying by BSA. In theory, normalizing hemodynamic values through "indexing" should help clinicians determine appropriate normal physiologic ranges to help guide therapy. Unfortunately, there is little evidence that these additional calculations provide valid normalizing adjustments. BSA is a biometric measurement with an obscure relationship to blood flow and cardiac output, and it does not adjust for variations between individuals based on age, sex, body habitus, or metabolic rate.[303] Although it is important to be aware of a patient's size and medical history in interpreting and treating changes in any of the measured or calculated hemodynamic variables, it is not appropriate to target therapy solely at achieving normal indexed values.

PULMONARY ARTERY CATHETERIZATION: INDICATIONS AND OUTCOME CONTROVERSY

The PAC allows continuous tracking of hemodynamic variables, which seems particularly valuable in critically ill high-risk patients with circulatory dysfunction. Measurement of cardiac output (see below section on Thermodilution cardiac output) can separate shock states into hypovolemic etiology (low cardiac output with low filling pressures), cardiogenic etiology (low cardiac output and high filling pressures), and distributive etiology (high cardiac output and low SVR). Through measurement of cardiac output and left and right filling pressures (PAWP and CVP, respectively), it can separate out predominantly LV or RV dysfunction or global dysfunction. For RV dysfunction, the PAC allows distinction of RV dysfunction predominantly related to increased afterload (high PAP) versus dysfunction related mostly to pump failure (high CVP and low PAP).[304,305]

Despite these advantages, the PAC has stimulated a great deal of vigorous controversy.[306,307] It is an expensive, invasive technique that is widely used but still not proven to improve patient outcomes. This controversy was much fueled by a study published by Connors and associates in 1996, showing that PAC-monitored patients in the ICU had 20% increased mortality, increased length of hospital stay, and incurred increased costs.[308] The publication of this study was accompanied by a strongly worded editorial calling for a moratorium on PAC use or a randomized controlled trial to define its efficacy.[309]

Surrounding that time and in subsequent years, several large, randomized, adequately powered studies have been published regarding the use of the PAC in various settings: general non-cardiac surgery,[244] vascular surgery,[310] CABG surgery,[311,312] non-surgical patients with congestive heart failure,[313] patients with acute lung injury,[314] and critically ill patients in the ICU.[315] Generally, these studies have shown no benefit to PAC use, but also no increase in mortality or in hospital or ICU length of stay.

One common drawback to most of these large randomized studies is that they have necessarily examined the routine use of PAC and enrolled a sequential cohort of patients, most of them with a relatively moderate risk of death or complications. Also, not all of them have employed a specific therapeutic intervention protocol.[316] Indeed, in especially high-risk patients, marked either by old age, severe comorbidity, or increased disease acuity, several recent nonrandomized studies were indeed able to demonstrate a clinical benefit from PAC use.[317-320]

The most recent recommendations pertaining to the perioperative use of PACs are the ASA practice guidelines published in 2003.[252] The task force considered PAC monitoring to be appropriate in high-risk surgical patients undergoing high-risk procedures. Furthermore, the specific practice setting as well as the proficiency and experience of clinicians should be considered.

PAC use must be tailored to the degree of risk for the patient and the risk posed by the procedure itself. For example, a patient with advanced ischemic cardiomyopathy who needs lower extremity amputation under regional anesthesia would not warrant PAC monitoring while a patient with stable ischemic heart disease scheduled for extensive abdominal cancer resection may benefit from perioperative use. Furthermore, practice setting must be considered such as the operators' technical skill, knowledge, and experience in PAC use.[252]

A reasonable conclusion from the bulk of published research would be that PAC use should be limited, although a moratorium on use is ill-advised. Indeed, data demonstrate a significant and continuing decrease in PAC usage.[321] Use should be reserved to centers with significant experience and expertise. The PAC generally should be used to monitor and guide therapy in patients at high risk for hemodynamic instability, those who are judged more critically ill by a variety of clinical means, and those who are in shock, especially if elderly and suffering from other systemic diseases.

Obviously, the PAC itself has no potential for benefit unless it guides therapies that improve patient outcomes. Future research should focus on defining subgroups of patients who might benefit from use of the PAC, as well as defining effective therapeutic interventions based on the hemodynamic information gained from the PAC.[316,322,323] Heart failure patients in shock are one such population for which data from clinical registries suggest benefit despite lack of confirmatory evidence from randomized trials.[323,324]

SPECIAL TYPES OF PULMONARY ARTERY CATHETERS

Specific PAC modifications were designed to allow for continuous cardiac output (CCO) measurement (described in the Cardiac Output section), mixed venous oxygen saturation monitoring, or right heart function evaluation, vastly expanding the types of physiologic information available to those caring for critically ill patients.

Mixed Venous Oximetry Pulmonary Artery Catheter

Although the formal Fick cardiac output method is not widely applied in clinical practice outside the cardiac catheterization laboratory, the physiologic relations described by the Fick equation form the basis for another PAC-based monitoring technique termed continuous mixed venous oximetry.[325] Rearrangement of the Fick equation reveals the four determinants of mixed venous hemoglobin saturation ($S_{\bar{v}}O_2$):

$$S_{\bar{v}}O_2 = S_aO_2 - \frac{\dot{V}O_2}{\dot{Q} \bullet 1.36 \bullet \text{Hgb}} \qquad (36.2)$$

Where,

$S_{\bar{v}}O_2$ = mixed venous hemoglobin saturation (%)
S_aO_2 = arterial hemoglobin saturation (%)
$\dot{V}O_2$ = oxygen consumption (mL•O_2/min)
$\dot{Q}$ = cardiac output (L/min)
Hgb = hemoglobin concentration (g/dL)

To the extent that arterial hemoglobin saturation, oxygen consumption, and hemoglobin concentration remain stable, mixed venous hemoglobin saturation may be used as an indirect indicator of cardiac output. Thus, when cardiac output falls, tissue oxygen extraction increases and the mixed venous blood will have a lower hemoglobin oxygen saturation. Monitoring this variable provides more comprehensive information about the balance of oxygen delivery and consumption by the body—not just the cardiac output value, but also the adequacy of that cardiac output compared to tissue oxygen requirements.[325] It is important to remember that mixed venous hemoglobin saturation values reflect global, whole-body measurement. Therefore, regionally inadequate blood flow and tissue oxygen delivery (like limb or intestinal ischemia) can coexist with a normal or high mixed venous hemoglobin saturation.

Although mixed venous hemoglobin saturation may be determined by intermittent blood sampling from the distal port of the PAC, a specially designed PAC can provide this information reliably and continuously. Fiberoptic bundles incorporated into the PAC determine the hemoglobin oxygen saturation in pulmonary artery blood based on the principles of reflectance oximetry using either a two or three wavelength system. A special computer connected to this PAC displays the mixed venous hemoglobin saturation continuously. The technology is typically incorporated into the standard PAC or the CCO PAC (see later), in the latter case providing both CCO and venous oximetry data. These catheters are calibrated at the bedside prior to use but may also be calibrated in vivo from a pulmonary artery blood gas sample. Recalibration every 24 hours is usually recommended due to a drift artifact.

Recently, the technology to continuously measure oxygen saturation has been incorporated into central venous catheters as well. These catheters measure central venous saturation, measured in the superior vena cava. Normally, this saturation is around 70% versus 75% in the pulmonary artery.[325] Low central venous saturation has been associated with increased complications both in trauma patients and in major surgery patients.[326,327]

The real value of measuring venous oxygen saturation lies in its ability to guide therapeutic interventions. Because one of the body's physiologic compensations for anemia is increased oxygen extraction, low venous hemoglobin saturation has been used to guide the need for blood transfusion.[328] Several studies have used venous hemoglobin saturation to guide interventions aimed at increasing cardiac output—a goal-directed approach. A study in patients undergoing cardiac surgery has shown better outcomes in patients randomized to protocol-driven interventions aimed at achieving mixed venous hemoglobin saturation above 70% (and blood lactate <2mg/dL).[329] Similarly, optimizing the central venous oxygen saturation has been shown to improve outcome in high-risk non-cardiac and off-pump cardiac surgical patients.[330,331] Although an early study showed similar benefit in patients with early sepsis,[332] a more recent study could not confirm these results.[333]

It is important to note that these studies have employed strict protocol-driven therapeutic interventions. In contrast, a large Veterans Affairs observational trial of 3265 cardiac surgical patients noted that 49% of patients received continuous mixed venous oximetry PACs, and use of this catheter was associated with increased cost but no better outcome than the standard PAC group.[334] In this study, however, no protocol was used to guide therapeutic interventions based on monitoring results.

Right Ventricular Ejection Fraction Pulmonary Artery Catheter

Although cardiovascular monitoring has focused predominantly on LV performance, in some instances RV dysfunction may be the more important factor limiting circulation. Patient populations at increased risk for RV dysfunction include those with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, adult respiratory distress syndrome, pulmonary hypertension, and RV ischemia and infarction.[335]

Measurement of right ventricular ejection fraction (RVEF) with a specially designed PAC offers another method for evaluating RV function. This method uses a standard PAC equipped with a rapid response thermistor that detects and quantifies the small changes in pulmonary artery blood temperature that occur with each heartbeat, in a manner somewhat analogous to a standard CCO PAC. The cardiac output computer measures the residual fraction of thermal signal following each heart beat and derives the RVEF.[336] RV end-diastolic volume can be calculated from RVEF and stroke volume, and can be used as an index of RV preload. Clearly, all factors that confound standard thermodilution cardiac output measurement (described later) will also interfere with accurate determination of RVEF. In addition, because the temperature changes measured by the RVEF PAC are small beat-to-beat changes, the method will not work if the ECG R waves cannot be detected accurately, the R-R interval is short owing to tachycardia, or the cardiac rhythm is irregular.[337]

Clinical use of the RVEF PAC has been described in critically ill patients, especially in those with respiratory failure,[338,339] as well as intraoperatively during cardiac surgery, where a reduced RVEF has been noted following cardiopulmonary bypass, particularly in patients with preexisting right coronary artery obstruction.[340] However, as in the case of standard PAC monitoring, the benefit of RVEF PAC monitoring in terms of patient outcomes remains unproven.[252]

Cardiac Output Monitoring

Cardiac output is the total blood flow generated by the heart, and in a normal adult at rest ranges from 4.0 to 6.5 L/min. Measurement of cardiac output provides a global assessment of the circulation, and in combination with other hemodynamic measurements (heart rate, arterial blood pressure, CVP, PAP, and wedge pressure), it allows calculation of additional important circulatory variables, such as systemic and pulmonary vascular resistance and ventricular stroke work (see Table 36.7).

Three factors have driven efforts to measure cardiac output in clinical practice. The first is the recognition that in many critically ill patients, low cardiac output leads to significant morbidity and mortality.[341] Secondly, clinical assessment of cardiac output is often inaccurate; for example, seriously ill patients with decreased cardiac output might have normal systemic arterial blood pressures.[342] Finally, newer techniques for cardiac output measurement are becoming less invasive and thus might provide benefit to many patients without the attendant risks of invasive monitoring.[342,343] The advantages and disadvantages of each technique must be appreciated for proper clinical application.

THERMODILUTION CARDIAC OUTPUT MONITORING

The thermodilution technique is considered the gold standard for measuring cardiac output because of its ease of implementation and the long clinical experience with its use in various settings. It is a variant of the **indicator dilution** method, in which a known amount of a tracer substance is injected into the blood stream and its concentration change is measured over time at a downstream site.[344] For thermodilution, a known volume of room temperature fluid is injected as a bolus into the proximal (right atrium) lumen of the PAC, and the resulting change in the pulmonary artery blood temperature is recorded by the thermistor at the catheter tip. In adults, an injectate volume of 10 mL should be used, while in children, an injectate volume of 0.15 mL/kg is recommended.[345] As in all other forms of cardiovascular monitoring, it is important to have a real-time display of the thermodilution curve resulting from each cardiac output measurement.[345] This allows the clinician to discern artifacts that would invalidate the cardiac output measurement, such as unstable blood temperature, recirculation, or incomplete indicator injection.

Usually three cardiac output measurements performed in rapid succession are averaged to provide a more reliable result. If only a single injection is used to determine cardiac output, a difference between sequential cardiac output measurements of 22% is required to suggest a clinically significant change. In contrast, when three injections are

BOX 36.8 Factors Influencing Accuracy of Thermodilution Cardiac Output Measurement

- Intracardiac shunts
- Tricuspid or pulmonic valve regurgitation
- Inadequate delivery of thermal indicator
  - Central venous injection site within catheter introducer sheath
  - Warming of iced injectate
- Thermistor malfunction from fibrin or clot
- Pulmonary artery blood temperature fluctuations
  - Following cardiopulmonary bypass
  - Rapid intravenous fluid administration
- Respiratory cycle influences

averaged to determine the thermodilution measurement, a change greater than 13% indicates a clinically significant change in cardiac output.[346]

Even when carefully performed, some studies have found that thermodilution cardiac output measurements may not agree with other reference methods.[347,348] However, few complications are directly attributable to the technique itself, and following the trend in cardiac output is probably more clinically useful than emphasizing any absolute value.

Sources of Error in Thermodilution Cardiac Output Monitoring

Several important technical issues and potential sources of error must be considered to interpret thermodilution cardiac output measurements properly (Box 36.8).[344,345] The thermodilution technique measures RV output. With **intracardiac shunt**, RV and LV outputs will not be equal.

Patients with **tricuspid or pulmonic valve regurgitation** pose additional problems for thermodilution cardiac output measurement owing to recirculation of the indicator across the incompetent valve. Although minor degrees of valvular regurgitation have little effect on thermodilution cardiac output monitoring, these values are unreliable with more severe valvular regurgitation, either underestimated or overestimated, depending on the severity of valvular regurgitation and the magnitude of the cardiac output.[345,349]

Unrecognized **fluctuation in blood temperature** may also influence cardiac output measurement. In most patients, pulmonary artery blood temperature falls somewhat in the initial minutes **following cardiopulmonary bypass,** when the rewarmed vascular and vessel rich tissues redistribute the heat gained to the less well perfused body core. Therefore, the thermal baseline is unstable and measurements made in the minutes following bypass are notoriously unreliable, most often leading to marked underestimation of the true cardiac output.[350] Pulmonary artery blood temperature can also change due to **rapid fluid infusion.**[351]

One controversy surrounding bolus thermodilution cardiac output monitoring is the proper timing of measurement in relation to the **respiratory cycle**, particularly in patients receiving positive pressure mechanical ventilation, because RV stroke output varies as much as 50% during the respiratory cycle. Although reproducibility of consecutive measurements improves markedly when the bolus injections are synchronized to the same phase of the respiratory cycle, an accurate measurement of average cardiac output is achieved more reliably by making multiple injections during the different phases of the respiratory cycle and then averaging the results.[345,352]

Last, the measured thermodilution cardiac output can overestimate true cardiac output during low flow states because of significant heat loss from slow injectate transit.[353]

Continuous Thermodilution Cardiac Output Monitoring

Newer technologies applied to PAC monitoring allow nearly continuous cardiac output monitoring using warm thermal indicator.[344,354] In brief, small quantities of heat are released from a 10-cm thermal filament incorporated into the RV portion of a PAC, approximately 15 to 25 cm from the catheter tip, and the resulting thermal signal is measured by the thermistor at the tip of the catheter in the pulmonary artery. The heating filament is cycled on and off in a pseudorandom binary sequence, and the cardiac output is derived from cross correlation of the measured pulmonary artery temperature with the known sequence of heating filament activation.[354] Typically, the displayed value for cardiac output is updated every 30 to 60 seconds and represents the average value for the cardiac output measured over the previous 3 to 6 minutes. On the one hand, this will lead to a delayed response during unstable hemodynamic conditions.[355] On the other hand, reproducibility and precision appear to be better compared with the single instantaneous bolus thermodilution technique, especially during positive pressure ventilation.[356,357]

The CCO PAC has been widely accepted into clinical use for a number of practical reasons. Although these catheters are more expensive than standard PACs, obviating the need for bolus injections reduces nursing workload and the potential risk of fluid overload or infection. However, like cold bolus thermodilution techniques, warm thermal CCO has certain methodological pitfalls that must be recognized and avoided. The CCO computer and catheter require a significant amount of time to warm up and may work poorly in an environment where there is a great deal of thermal noise, such as the cardiac operating room. Recent observations also suggest that the use of pneumatic compression devices may introduce artifacts that appear as large variations (oscillations) in CCO values in otherwise stable patients.[358] As already emphasized, CCO monitors have an inherent 5- to 15-minute delay in responding to abrupt changes in cardiac output, and the magnitude of this delay depends on the type of physiologic perturbation, as well as the CCO computer monitor algorithm.[355] Although modifications of CCO algorithms provide a “STAT Mode” rapid response time, acute changes in cardiac output are still detected more slowly by CCO monitoring than by other methods, such as direct arterial pressure or mixed venous oximetry. In effect, the CCO technique involves a fundamental tradeoff between rapid response time and overall accuracy and stability of the displayed value.[356] While it might be useful for clinical decision making, no studies exist that demonstrate improved patient outcomes from use of the CCO PAC.

Transpulmonary Thermodilution Cardiac Output

For transpulmonary thermodilution measurement, ice-cold saline is injected into a central venous line while the change in temperature is measured in a large peripheral artery (femoral, axillary, or brachial artery) via a special arterial catheter equipped with a thermistor.[359] Several studies have shown adequate agreement with standard thermodilution cardiac output.[360,361] In contrast to the standard thermodilution method, the transpulmonary thermodilution measurement lasts over several respiratory cycles and thereby obviates the respiratory effects on stroke volume and measured cardiac output.[362]

Mathematical derivation from the transpulmonary thermodilution curve can produce several additional useful indices. Extravascular lung water is a measure of pulmonary edema and can be used to guide fluid therapy in patients with acute lung injury or sepsis.[363-365] Other derived indices are the global end-diastolic volume and intrathoracic blood volume. Several studies have found these indices to be a better measure of cardiac preload than traditional measurements such as CVP or PAWP.[366,367] However, it appears that these indices still cannot predict cardiac output response to fluid loading.[368] Another parameter derived from the transpulmonary thermodilution curve is the cardiac function index, calculated using cardiac output and the intrathoracic blood volume. In patients without RV failure, it has been shown to correlate with LV ejection fraction and its response to inotropic therapy.[369]

LITHIUM DILUTION CARDIAC OUTPUT MONITORING

The lithium dilution technique is another cardiac output monitoring method that derives its fundamental basis from indicator dilution principles.[370] In brief, following an intravenous bolus injection of a small dose of lithium chloride, an ion-selective electrode attached to a peripheral arterial catheter measures the lithium dilution curve, from which the cardiac output is derived. Several studies have shown that this is an accurate technique compared with standard thermodilution or electromagnetic flowmetry.[371,372] The lithium indicator can be injected through a peripheral intravenous catheter with similar measurement accuracy, thus eliminating the need for a central venous line.[373] This technique can also be used in children.[374] Lithium dilution cannot be used in patients who are taking lithium or those who have just received nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers, since the latter also alter the lithium sensor electrode measurement.

OTHER METHODS FOR MONITORING CARDIAC OUTPUT AND PERFUSION

In recent years, much work has been dedicated to developing minimal or non-invasive methods to measure cardiac output. While it seems that these methods' overall agreement with the traditional thermodilution method is not very high,[375] they do offer other advantages. Some of these newer methods are discussed herein.

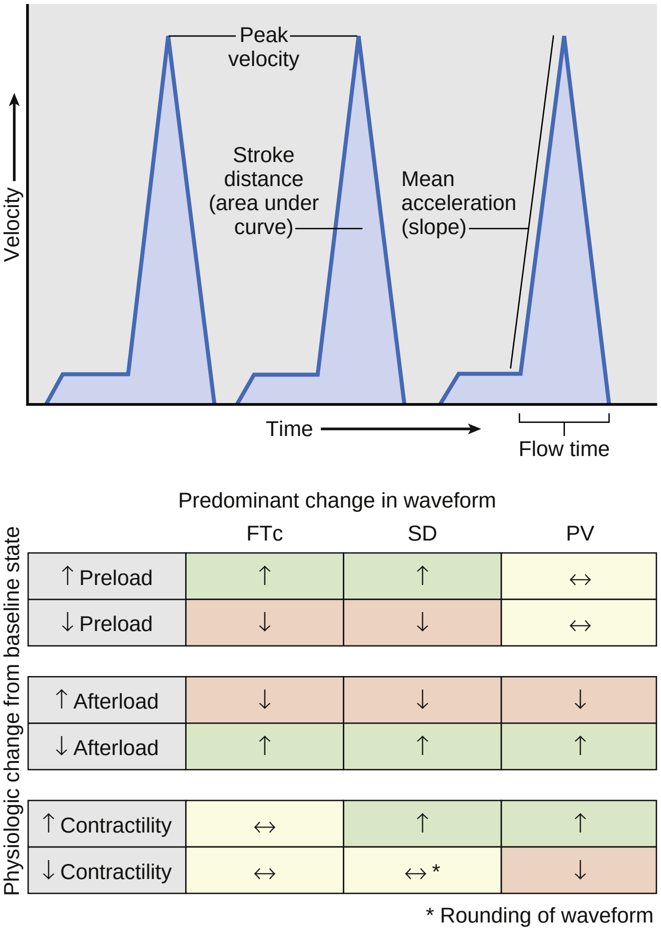
Esophageal Doppler Cardiac Output Monitoring

All of the ultrasound-based methods for cardiac output monitoring employ the Doppler principle as described in detail in Chapter 37. While cardiac output can be intermittently measured by the Doppler technique during transthoracic or transesophageal echocardiography examinations, for monitoring purposes, a special esophageal Doppler probe has been developed that allows continuous monitoring of cardiac output by measuring the Doppler shift of the interrogated blood flow in the descending thoracic aorta. The Doppler probe is inserted into the esophagus to a depth of approximately 35 cm from the incisor teeth and is adjusted to optimize the audible Doppler flow sound from the descending aorta, which lies in close proximity and runs essentially parallel to the esophagus at this location.[376]

Several limitations of the esophageal Doppler technique must be appreciated by the physician to avoid pitfalls in data interpretation. This monitoring method interrogates blood flow in the descending thoracic aorta and therefore only measures a fraction of total cardiac output. To report total cardiac output, either the esophageal Doppler measurement must be "calibrated" by some alternative method, or an empirically determined correction constant of 1.4 is used.[376] This constant is accurate for most patients but does not apply universally, especially in the presence of conditions that redistribute blood flow, such as pregnancy, aortic cross-clamping, and following cardiopulmonary bypass.[377,378] In addition, the descending thoracic aorta diameter is either measured using A-mode ultrasound or calculated from a nomogram based on the patient's age, sex, height, and weight.[376] When calculated, it is assumed that the aortic diameter does not change throughout the cardiac cycle. In addition to these considerations, the technique is likely to be inaccurate in the presence of aortic valve stenosis or regurgitation, or in patients with thoracic aortic disease. It is not easily applied in nontracheally intubated non-sedated patients, and it cannot be used in individuals with esophageal pathology. Finally, like all ultrasound techniques, the acoustic window needed to acquire the Doppler signal may not be adequate in some individuals, thereby precluding use of this method.

Advantages of the esophageal Doppler monitoring technique include its ease of use, minimal invasiveness, and inherent safety. It appears that limited experience is needed for clinical success—as few as 10 to 12 cases for accurate application of the technique.[377] A review of 25 clinical trials comparing esophageal Doppler cardiac output measurement with PAC thermodilution measurements noted that the Doppler cardiac output values correlated well with thermodilution measurements and showed minimal overall bias and good tracking of directional changes in thermodilution cardiac output with low intra- and inter-observer measurement variability.[377]

Recently, the esophageal Doppler method has seen renewed popularity.[379,380] Current devices provide a clear visual display of the spectral Doppler waveform and also calculate and display additional hemodynamic variables including the peak blood flow velocity, flow acceleration, and heart rate-corrected flow time (Fig. 36.51). Some studies have shown that these additional measures provide useful information about LV preload, fluid responsiveness, contractility, and systemic vascular resistance.[381-383] Additionally, respiratory variability of the aortic blood flow velocity can be used to predict cardiac output response to a fluid bolus.[384] One of the more important benefits of this monitor may be focusing clinical attention on optimizing


Peak velocity
Stroke distance (area under curve)
Mean acceleration (slope)
Velocity
Time
Flow time
Predominant change in waveform
Physiologic change from baseline state

	FTc	SD	PV
↑ Preload	↑	↑	↔
↓ Preload	↓	↓	↔
↑ Afterload	↓	↓	↓
↓ Afterload	↑	↑	↑
↑ Contractility	↔	↑	↑
↓ Contractility	↔	↔ *	↓

* Rounding of waveform

Fig. 36.51 The velocity-time waveform displayed by esophageal Doppler cardiac output monitoring devices reflects alterations in contractility, preload, and afterload. Stroke distance *(SD)* is directly related to calculated stroke volume and provides a useful surrogate measure of cardiac output. *FTc*, Systolic flow time corrected for heart rate; *PV*, peak velocity.

stroke volume rather than total cardiac output. Indeed, in critically ill patients, complications may be better predicted by low stroke volume than by low cardiac output.[385] Several studies have shown that hemodynamic optimization, guided by maximizing esophageal Doppler-measured stroke volume in moderate-risk surgical patients, reduces perioperative morbidity and shortens hospital stay.[379,380,386]

Bioimpedance and Bioreactance Cardiac Output Monitoring

The technique of bioimpedance cardiac output monitoring was first described by Kubicek and associates and is based on changes in electrical impedance of the thoracic cavity or the whole body occurring with ejection of blood during cardiac systole.[387] As blood has a significantly lower electrical resistance compared with tissues, changes in impedance to electrical flow reflect a change in blood volume, and this can be used to calculate stroke volume.[388]

For bioimpedance measurement, disposable electrodes are applied to the skin surface along the sides of the neck and lateral aspect of the costal margin (thoracic bioimpedance) or to the four limbs (whole body bioimpedance); a high-frequency, low-amplitude electrical current is applied; and the voltage change is measured. Patient height, weight, and gender are used to calculate the volume of the thoracic cavity. Bioimpedance cardiac output is computed for each cardiac cycle and continuously displayed as an average value over several heart beats.

Although many studies suggest that the bioimpedance method is accurate in healthy volunteers, its reliability deteriorates in surgical and critically ill patients.[389] This led to attempts at improving the technology used. A newer technique, termed bioreactance cardiac output monitoring, measures not only the amplitude change of the received signal, but also its phase shift compared to the applied electrical signal. It utilizes four dual-electrode patches, placed two on each side of the body.[388] Compared to the standard bioimpedance method, the bioreactance method shows somewhat better agreement with traditional cardiac output calculations. Several clinical scenarios where this new method has been validated include the prediction of fluid responsiveness when using the passive leg raising test in patients after cardiac surgery and evaluating cardiac output change during exercise stress testing.[388]

Partial CO_2 Rebreathing Cardiac Output Monitoring

Another method for cardiac output monitoring that does not require a PAC is the partial CO_2 rebreathing technique.[390,391] Owing to the difficulty encountered in the standard Fick method involving measuring oxygen consumption and mixed venous hemoglobin saturation, this alternative technique is based upon a restatement of the Fick Equation for carbon dioxide elimination rather than oxygen uptake.

$$\dot{Q} = \frac{\dot{V}CO_2}{(C_{\dot{v}}CO_2 - C_aCO_2)} \qquad (36.3)$$

Where,

$\dot{Q}$ = cardiac output
$\dot{V}CO_2$ = rate of carbon dioxide elimination
$C_{\dot{v}}CO_2$ = carbon dioxide content of mixed venous blood
C_aCO_2 = carbon dioxide content of arterial blood

This method uses the change in CO_2 production and end-tidal CO_2 concentration in response to a brief, sudden change in minute ventilation. With a specifically designed breathing system and monitoring computer, this measurement is easily performed in any tracheally intubated patient. Changes in end-tidal CO_2 in response to the rebreathing maneuver are used to calculate cardiac output by a differential version of the Fick equation for carbon dioxide. The attractive features of this method are that it is entirely noninvasive, it can be performed every few minutes, and the brief episodes of rebreathing pose no substantial risk to most patients, with end-tidal CO_2 measurements increasing by less than 3 mm Hg. However, as currently designed, accurate measurements with this technique require tracheal intubation for precise measurement of exhaled gasses. Furthermore, changing patterns of ventilation may have an unpredictable influence on the measurement. As with all Fick-based techniques, the partial CO_2 rebreathing method measures pulmonary capillary blood flow as an indicator of total cardiac output and thus requires correction for pulmonary shunt.

Initial clinical trials suggested reasonably good agreement between the partial rebreathing CO_2 cardiac output method and other techniques, such as thermodilution. However, as with most of these alternative monitoring methods, the clinical trials are small and mainly focused on specific patient groups, particularly coronary artery bypass surgery patients.[392] At present, the clinical role for this technique is mainly focused on short-term intraoperative applications or mechanically ventilated postoperative patients. Due to the mandatory increase in arterial pCO_2, the technique is relatively contraindicated in patients with increased intracranial pressure.

Pulse Contour Cardiac Output Monitoring

Much of recent development in the area of cardiac output monitoring has been focused on continuous measurement of cardiac output derived from the analysis of the arterial pulse pressure waveform. These methods, generally termed pulse contour cardiac output, determine stroke volume from computerized analysis of the area under the arterial pressure waveform recorded from an arterial catheter or even a noninvasive finger blood pressure waveform.[393-396] Pulse contour methods offer the potential for non-invasive, continuous, beat-to-beat cardiac output monitoring. Also, the change in stroke volume from beat to beat (termed SVV) in response to tidal ventilation can be used to evaluate volume status in ventilated patients.[147,397]

However, several shortcomings need to be considered.[398,399] First, a baseline calibration with a known cardiac output is required to account for individual differences in vascular resistance, impedance, and wave reflectance. Additionally, recalibration is required every 8 to 12 hours to account for changes in vascular characteristics over time. Also, the use of vasopressors might affect the accuracy of pulse contour methods.[400] This need for external calibration might require the use of a more invasive technique, negating the non-invasiveness advantage of pulse contour methods. Recently, several systems were developed with the capability for an auto-calibration based on a patient's demographic variables. However, the accuracy of this auto-calibration in various clinical situations is questionable.[401] A reasonably well-defined arterial pressure waveform with a discernible dicrotic notch is required for accurate identification of systole and diastole, a condition that might not exist under severe tachycardia or dysrhythmia, or other very low-output states. Last, for a meaningful use of beat-to-beat variation in stroke volume (as well as systolic pressure or PPV), the patient needs to be on controlled mechanical ventilation with a tidal volume of at least 8 mL/kg body weight and to be in a regular cardiac rhythm.[402]

Notwithstanding these shortcomings, clinical trials in surgical patients have shown that the pulse contour cardiac output methods provide an acceptable level of accuracy with a bias of less than 0.5 L/min compared to thermodilution cardiac output.[395,403,404] SVV above 10% has been shown to be a useful predictor of fluid responsiveness.[138] Last, several recent studies have shown that goal-directed therapy based on either maximizing pulse contour derived cardiac output or minimizing SVV results in improved perioperative outcomes.[405-407]

Acknowledgment

This chapter is a consolidation of two chapters in the eighth edition, Chapter 45 Cardiovascular Monitoring and Chapter 47 Electrocardiography, Perioperative Ischemia, and Myocardial Infarction. The editors and publisher would like to thank the following authors: Shahar Bar-Yosef, Giora Landesberg, and Zak Hillel for their contributions to the prior edition of this work. Their contributions have served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Gravenstein JS. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 1998;14:451.
2. Block FE. *J Clin Monit*. 1994;10:366.
3. Zong W, et al. *Med Biol Eng Comput*. 2004;42(5):698.
4. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Standards for basic anesthetic monitoring. ASA standards, guidelines and statements*. Park Ridge, Illinois: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 1993:5.
5. Sandau KE, et al. *Circ*. 2017;136:e273–e344.
6. Kligfield P, et al. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*. 2007;49:1109–1127.
7. Ortega R, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372:e11.
8. Mason RE, Likar I. *Am Heart Jnl*. 1966;71:196–205.
9. Krucoff MW, et al. *Am J Card*. 1994;74:997–1001.
10. Drew BJ. *Cardiol Clin*. 2006;24:309–315. vii.
11. Chaitman BR, Hanson JS. *Am J Card*. 1981;47:1335–1349.
12. Blackburn H, Katigbak R. *Am Heart Jnl*. 1964;67:184–185.
13. Kubota I, et al. *Am Heart Jnl*. 1985;110:949–955.
14. Kaplan JA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1978;57:364–367.
15. London MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:232–241.
16. Landesberg G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:264–270.
17. Klein HO, et al. *Circ*. 1983;67:558–565.
18. Griffin RM, Kaplan JA. *Anaesthesia*. 1987;42:155–159.
19. Slogoff S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:1074–1081.
20. Takla G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:1196–1204.
21. Weinfurt PT. *J Clin Monitor*. 1990;6:132–138.
22. Khambatta HJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:88–91.
23. Patel SI, Souter MJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:138–148.
24. Patton JA, et al. *Am J Crit Care: an official publication, American Association of Critical-Care Nurses*. 2001;10:23–32. quiz 3-4.
25. Mark JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:26–31.
26. Stern S. *Card Electro Rev*. 2002;6:204–208.
27. Helwani MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:1084–1091.
28. Miller TD, et al. *J Electrocard*. 1987;20:131–137.
29. ASA, Standards for Basic Anesthetic Monitoring. 2005. (Accessed May 5, 2008, 2008, at http://www.asahq.org/publicationsAndServices/standards/02.pdf.)
30. Bruner JMR, et al. *Med Instrum*. 1981;15:11.
31. Riva-Rocci S. *Gaz Med Torino*. 1896;47:981.
32. Korotkoff NS. *Bull Imp Med Acad St Petersburg*. 1905;11:365.
33. Kuck K, Baker PD. *Anesth Analg*. 2018 Aug;127(2):408–411.
34. Alpert BS, et al. *J Am Soc Hyper: JASH*. 2014;8:930–938.
35. Lakhal K, et al. *Chest*. 2017.
36. Pickering TG, et al. *Hypertension*. 2005;45(1):142.
37. Cohn JN. *JAMA*. 1967;199:972.
38. Lakhal K, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40(4):1207.
39. Ribezzo S, et al. *Sci World Jnl*. 2014;2014:353628.
40. Wan Y, et al. *J Hum Hypertens*. 2010;24(7):431.
41. AAMI. American national standard for non-invasive sphygmomanometers—part 2: clinical validation of automated measurement type. *AAMI*. 2009;25.
42. Lakhal K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(2):494.
43. Liu B, et al. *Blood pressure*. 2016;25:155–161.
44. Riley LE, et al. *Blood pressure monitoring*. 2017;22:202–207.
45. Wax DB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115(5):973.
46. Jankowski P, et al. *Hypertension*. 2008;51:848–855.
47. Min JY, et al. *BMC anesthesiology*. 2017;17:110.
48. Leblanc ME, et al. *Obesity (Silver Spring, Md)*. 2013;21:E533–E541.
49. Celler BG, et al. *Annual Conference*. 2015;2015:5964–5967.
50. Lakhal K, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017.

51. Anast N, et al. *Can J Anesth* 2016;63:298-306.
52. Benmira A, et al. *Expert review of medical devices*. 2016;13:179–189.
53. Alford JW, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2002;17:163.
54. Kuck K, et al. *J Clin Monit*. 1997;13:424.
55. Tobias JD, et al. *Anesthesia*. 2014;28:861–865.
56. Kim SH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:1080–1097.
57. Balzer F, et al. *J Int Med Res*. 2016;44:832–843.
58. Benes J, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2015;29:11–17.
59. Bilo G, et al. *Blood Pressure Monitoring*. 2015;20:291–294.
60. Dueck R, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2012;26:75–83.
61. Belani K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(3):686.
62. Weiss BM, Pasch T. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 1997;10:459.
63. Cockings JGL, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21:565.
64. Eather KF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1949;10:125.
65. Mark JB. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.
66. Perel A. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1309–1310.
67. Rooke GA. *Curr Opin Anesth*. 1995;8:511–515.
68. Thiele RH, et al. *Can J Anesth*. 2015;62:169–181.
69. Gabriel RA, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31:877–884.
70. Mandel MA, Dauchot PJ. *J Hand Surg*. 1977;2(6):482.
71. Scheer B, et al. *Crit Care*. 2002;6(3):199.
72. Slogoff S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:42.
73. Brzezinski M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(6):1763.
74. Knobloch K, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;80(3):918.
75. Knobloch K, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;79(3):1026. discussion 30.
76. Ciria-Llorens G, et al. *Surg Radiol Anat*. 1998;20(5):377.
77. Ciria-Llorens G, et al. *Br J Plast Surg*. 1999;52(6):440.
78. Richardson D, et al. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1997;99(1):109.
79. Allen EV. *Am J Med Sci*. 1929;178:237.
80. Wilkins RG. *Anaesthesia*. 1985;40(9):896.
81. Abu-Omar Y, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;77(1):116.
82. Barbeau GR, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2004;147(3):489.
83. Jarvis MA, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;70(4):1362.
84. Rozenberg B, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43(6):515.
85. Williams JS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360(5):e6.
86. Levin PD, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31(2):481.
87. Ganesh A, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(1):45.
88. Shiver S, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2006;13(12):1275.
89. Ueda K, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70:1039–1044.
90. Gu WJ, et al. *Chest*. 2016;149:166–179.
91. Htet N, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2017;41:194–197.
92. Karacalar S, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2007;19(3):209.
93. Bazaral MG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:38.
94. Singh A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:1065–1076.
95. Muralidhar K. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1998;12(1):128.
96. Chen Y, et al. *Blood pressure monitoring*. 2016;21:27–32.
97. Rehfeldt KH, Sanders MS. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:45.
98. Rose SH. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:587.
99. Singleton RJ, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21:664.
100. Bhananker SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(1):124.
101. Gardner RM. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:227.
102. Kleinman B. *J Clin Monit*. 1989;5:137.
103. Kleinman B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:1215.
104. O'Quin R, Marini JJ. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1983;128:319.
105. Mark JB. Technical requirements for direct blood pressure measurement. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:99.
106. Geddes LA. *Handbook of blood pressure measurement*. Clifton, NJ: Humana Press; 1991.
107. Romagnoli S, et al. *Crit Care (London, England)*. 2014;18:644.
108. Schwid HA. *J Clin Monit*. 1988;4:181.
109. Sinha S, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(6):615.
110. Promonet C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(1):208.
111. Gardner RM. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24(5):879.
112. Skidmore K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1192.
113. Courtois M, et al. *Circulation*. 1995;92:1994.
114. Seo JH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(2):260.
115. Ortega R, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:e26.
116. Kovacs G, et al. *Euro Resp J*. 2013;42:1586–1594.
117. Braunwald E, et al. *Circ Res*. 1956;4:100.
118. Stouffer G. Arterial Pressure. In: Stouffer G, ed. *Cardiovascular hemodynamics for the clinician*. Malden, Mass: Blackwell Futura; 2008:57.
119. O'Rourke MF, Gallagher DE. *J Hyper*. 1996;14:S147–S157.
120. Franklin SS, Weber MA. *Am Heart J*. 1994;128:793.
121. Frank SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:457.
122. Kinzer JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:1134.
123. Mark JB. Arterial blood pressure. Direct vs. indirect measurement. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:81.
124. Dorman T, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1646.
125. Urzua J, et al. *J Clin Monit*. 1994;10:229.
126. Chauhan S, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2000;14(3):274.
127. Hynson JM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1623.
128. McGregor M. *N Engl J Med*. 1979;301(480).
129. Shabetai R, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1970;26:480.
130. Mark JB. Pericardial constriction and cardiac tamponade. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:313.
131. Gelman S. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108(4):735.
132. Marik PE. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21:405.
133. Gunn SR, Pinsky MR. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2001;7:212.
134. Preisman S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(6):746.
135. Perel A. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(4):1031.
136. Hofer CK, Cannesson M. *Acta Anaesthesiol Taiwan*. 2011;49(2):59.
137. Thiele RH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(1):176.
138. Berkenstadt H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(4):984.
139. Phillips R, Brierley J. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2015;29:197–200.
140. Kong R, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2016;30:81–86.
141. Cannesson M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(4):1189.
142. Antonsen LP, Kirkeboen KA. *Anesthesiol Res Pract*. 2012;617380:2012.
143. Cannesson M, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2011;25(1):45.
144. Michard F, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2000;162(1):134.
145. Biais M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(4):407.
146. Mahjoub Y, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37(2):360.
147. Marik PE, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37:2642–2647.
148. De Hert SG. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:229–230.
149. Cannesson M. *J Card Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:487–497.
150. Cannesson M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(4):1195.
151. Auler Jr JO, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(4):1201.
152. Min JJ, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31:397–405.
153. Audimoolam VK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:480–486.
154. Royer P, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78:994–999.
155. Wyffels PA, et al. *Am J Phys Hrt Circ Phys*. 2016;310:H1194–H1200.
156. Ho KM. *Anesth Int Care*. 2016;44:14–19.
157. Wyler von Ballmoos M, et al. *Crit Care*. 2010;14(3):R111.
158. Yi L, et al. *PLoS One*. 2017;12:e0177590.
159. Jeong DM, et al. *Anesthesia and analgesia*. 2017;125:1158–1165.
160. Hennings LI, et al. *Danish medical journal*. 2015;62.
161. Ikeda K, et al. *Sem Card Vasc Anesth*. 2016;20:188–196.
162. Myatra SN, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45:415–421.
163. Biais M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:260–267.
164. De Broca B, et al. *Medicine*. 2016;95:e4259.
165. Augusto JF, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37(3):411.
166. Barodka VM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(5):1048.
167. Gravenstein N, Blackshear RH. *J Clin Monit*. 1991;7(1).
168. Fisher KL, Leung AN. *AJR Am J Roentgenol*. 1996;166(2):329.
169. Graham AS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(21):e21.
170. Peres PW. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1990;18(4):536.
171. Rupp SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):539.
172. Troianos CA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(1):46.
173. Rothschild JM. *Ultrasound guidance of central vein catheterization. Evidence report/technology assessment, No. 43. Making health care safer. A critical analysis of patient safety practices*. Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality; 2001:245.
174. Schulman PM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;379:e1.
175. Tsui JY, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:e30.
176. Ortega R, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362:e57.
177. Taylor RW, Palagiri AV. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:1390–1396.
178. McGee DC, Gould MK. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348:1123–1133.
179. Imai M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:1041.
180. Wetzel LR, et al. *A & A case reports*. 2017;9:16–19.
181. Kainuma A, et al. *A & A case reports*. 2017;9:258–261.
182. Beilin Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(5):1399.
183. Bernard RW, Stahl WM. *NY State J Med*. 1974;74:83–86.
184. Khalil KG, et al. *JAMA*. 1972;221:908–909.
185. Naguib M, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1985;32(4):412.
186. Rudge CJ, et al. *Br Med J*. 1973;3:23.

187. Shah KB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61(3):271.
188. Heath KJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(5):1273.
189. Ezri T, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2001;15(2):231.
190. Brennan MF, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1973;106:871.
191. Caron NR, et al. *Chest*. 1994;106:1917.
192. Danenberg HD, et al. *Euro Heart J*. 1995;16(2):279.
193. Collier PE, et al. *Angiology*. 1984;35:595.
194. Tocino IM, Watanabe A. *AJR Am J Roentgenol*. 1986;146(3):487.
195. Mansfield PF, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1994;331(26):1735.
196. Gozubuyuk E, et al. *A & A case reports*. 2017;9:207–211.
197. Butsch JL, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1976;111:828.
198. Drachler DH, et al. *JAMA*. 1976;236(25):2880.
199. Burton AW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(3):804.
200. Merrer J, et al. *JAMA*. 2001;286:700–707.
201. Gilon D, et al. *Am Heart J*. 1998;135(3):457.
202. Ghani MK, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29(10):1829.
203. Roguin A, Reisner SA. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2000;1:222.
204. Barbeito A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2008;55(11):774.
205. Horner SM, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 1993;14(1):138.
206. Reynen K. *New Engl J Med*. 1993;329(13):970.
207. Grace DM. *Can J Surg*. 1977;20:51.
208. Miller SE, Maragakis LL. *Curr Opin Inf Dis*. 2012;25:412–422.
209. Healthcare-associated infections in the United States, 2006-2016: a story of progress. In: *Promotion DoHQa*. Atlanta, GA: National Center for Emerging and Zoonotic infectious Diseases (NCEZID); 2018.
210. Marschall J. *Am J Infect Control*. 2008;36(10):S172 e5.
211. Zingg W, Pittet D. *Int J Antimicrob Agents*. 2009;34(suppl 4):S38.
212. Corona ML, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1990;65(July):979.
213. O'Grady NP, et al. *MMWR*. 2002;51:1–29.
214. Tebbs SE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;72(5):587.
215. Long DA, Coulthard MG. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2006;34(4):481.
216. Gilbert RE, Harden M. *Curr Opin Infect Dis*. 2008;21(3):235.
217. Darouiche RO, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;340(1):1.
218. Maki DG, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1997;127(4):257.
219. Veenstra DL, et al. *JAMA*. 1999;282(6):554.
220. Levy I, et al. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 2005;24(8):676.
221. Garland JS, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2001;107(6):1431.
222. O'Grady NP, et al. *Am J Infec Cont*. 2011;39:S1–34.
223. Parienti JJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373:1220–1229.
224. Magder S. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(8):2224.
225. Magder S, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1061–1064.
226. Mark JB. Pressure-volume relations, transmural pressure, and preload. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:247–259.
227. Dwyer EM. *Circ*. 1970;42:1111–1122.
228. Mark JB. Respiratory-circulatory interactions. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:261–285.
229. Magder S. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2006;12(3):219.
230. Kovacs G, et al. *Am J Resp Crit Care Med*. 2014;190:252–257.
231. Mark JB. Getting the most from your central venous pressure catheter. In: Barash PG, ed. *ASA refresher courses in anesthesiology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1995:157–175.
232. Mark JB. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1991;5:163.
233. O'Rourke RA, et al. General examination of the patient. In: Schlant RC, Alexander RW, eds. *The heart, arteries, and veins*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1994:238.
234. Mackay IFS, Walker RL. *Am Heart J*. 1966;71(2):228.
235. Shinozaki T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:498.
236. Mark JB. Arrhythmias, An integrated ECG and hemodynamic approach. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:219.
237. Mark JB. Patterns of valvular heart disease. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:287.
238. Marik PE, et al. *Chest*. 2008;134(1):172.
239. Kuntscher MV, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2006;70:37–43.
240. Wiesenack C, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22(9):658.
241. Coudray A, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:2757–2762.
242. Swan HJC, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1970;283(9):447.
243. Connors AF, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1983;308(5):263.
244. Sandham JD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348(1):5.
245. Kelly CR, Rabbani LE. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369:e35.
246. Bennett D, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1991;17(1):I.
247. Szabo Z. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(6):794.
248. Pipanmekaporn T. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26(3):391.
249. Tan CO. *World Anesthesiology*. 2015;4:30.
250. Cronin B, et al. *J Card Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:178–183.
251. Evans DC, et al. *Scand J Surg*. 2009;98(4):199.
252. Roizen MF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(4):988.
253. Damen J, Bolton D. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1986;30:386.
254. Procaccini B, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80(suppl 2):A26.
255. Jain M, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29:2059.
256. Squara P, et al. *Chest*. 2002;121(6):2009.
257. Iberti TJ, et al. *JAMA*. 1990;264(22):2928.
258. Gnaegi A, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25(2):213.
259. Jacka MJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30(6):1197.
260. Zarich S, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2000;26:698.
261. Marik P, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26(10):1761.
262. Mark JB. Pulmonary artery pressure. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of Cardiovascular Monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:27–37.
263. Mark JB. Pulmonary artery wedge pressure. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:39.
264. Levy MM. *Crit Care Clin*. 1996;12(4):819.
265. Mark JB, Chetham PM. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:375.
266. Zahorec R, Holoman M. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 1997;11(2):379.
267. Shin B, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1977;5(3):125.
268. Mark JB. Pulmonary artery and wedge pressure artifacts. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:49.
269. Morris AH, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12:164.
270. Bashein G. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:310.
271. Fuchs RM, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1982;49:849.
272. Braunwald E, Awe WC. *Circ*. 1963;27:29.
273. Grossman W. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325:1557.
274. Stott DK, et al. *Circ*. 1970;41:1031.
275. Wohlgelernter D, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1978;10:491.
276. Leung JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:802.
277. Sabbah HN, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1993;72:1074.
278. van Daele MERM, et al. *Circ*. 1990;81:865.
279. Goldstein JA, et al. *Circ*. 1990;82:359.
280. Trager MA, et al. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1987;1:123.
281. Kushwaha SS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;336:267.
282. Kern MJ, Aguirre F. *Cathet Cardiovasc Diagn*. 1992;25:336.
283. Kern MJ, Aguirre F. *Cathet Cardiovasc Diagn*. 1992;26:34.
284. Kern MJ, Aguirre F. *Cathet Cardiovasc Diagn*. 1992;26:152.
285. Hirschmann JV. *Am Heart J*. 1978;96:110.
286. Beloucif S, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1992;263:H125.
287. Lorell BH, Braunwald E. Pericardial disease. In: Braunwald E, ed. *Heart disease. A textbook of cardiovascular medicine*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1992:1465.
288. Fowler NO. *Circ*. 1993;87:1738.
289. Mitchell MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:294.
290. Teplick RS. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:289.
291. Cengiz M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1983;11:502.
292. Pinsky MR. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29(1):19.
293. Gidwani UK, et al. *Card Clin*. 2013;31:545–565.
294. Falicov RE, Resnekov L. *Circ*. 1970;42:65.
295. Scheinman M, et al. *Circ*. 1973;47:317.
296. Mark JB. Predicting left ventricular end-diastolic pressure. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:59.
297. Osman D, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(1):64.
298. Trof RJ, et al. *Crit Care*. 2011;15. R73-R.
299. McGregor M, Sniderman A. *Am J Cardiol*. 1985;55:217.
300. Permutt S, Riley RL. *J Appl Phys*. 1963;34:924.
301. Brengelmann GL. *J Appl Physiol*. 2006;101(5):1525. discussion 1526.
302. Naeije R. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29(4):526.
303. Reeves JT, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1961;16:276.
304. De Backer D, et al. *Int Care Med*. 2018;44:960–962.
305. De Backer D, Vincent JL. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2018;24:204–208.
306. Youssef N, Whitlock RP. *Can J Card*. 2017;33:135–141.
307. Lee M, et al. *Can J Card*. 2017;33:142–147.
308. Connors AF, et al. *JAMA*. 1996;276:889–897.
309. Dalen JE, Bone RC. *JAMA*. 1996;276:916.
310. Valentine RJ, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1998;27(2):203. discussion 211.
311. Tuman KJ, et al. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1989;3:625–641.
312. Connors AF, et al. *JAMA*. 1997;277:113–114.

313. Binanay C, et al. *JAMA*. 2005;294(13):1625.
314. Wheeler AP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354(21):2213.
315. Harvey S, et al. *Lancet*. 2005;366(9484):472.
316. De Backer D. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29(11):1865.
317. Friese RS, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(6):1597.
318. Chittock DR, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(4):911.
319. Kavarana MN, et al. *Am Surg*. 2003;69(5):411.
320. Sotomi Y, et al. *Int J Card*. 2014;172:165–172.
321. Ikuta K, et al. *JAMA Cardiology*. 2017;2.
322. Pinsky MR, Vincent JL. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(5):1119.
323. Sotomi Y, et al. *Int J Card*. 2014;172:165–172.
324. Allen LA, et al. *J Card Fail*. 2008;14:661–669.
325. Hartog C, Bloos F. *Anaesthesiology*. 2014;28:419–428.
326. Scalea TM, et al. *J Trauma*. 1990;30(12):1539.
327. Pearse R, et al. *Crit Care*. 2005;9(6):R694.
328. Vallet B, et al. *Crit Care*. 2010;14(2):213.
329. Pölönen P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1052.
330. Donati A, et al. *Chest*. 2007;132(6):1817.
331. Smetkin AA, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(4):505.
332. Rivers E, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345(19):1368.
333. Pro CI, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1683–1693.
334. London MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(4):860.
335. Haddad F, et al. *Circ*. 2008;117(13):1717.
336. Dhainaut J-F, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1987;15(2):148.
337. Nelson LD. *New Horizons*. 1997;5:251–258.
338. Chang MC, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1996;131(7):728.
339. Her C, Lees DE. *Crit Care Med*. 1993;21(11):1665.
340. Boldt J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1989;17:518–522.
341. Dupont H, Squara P. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 1996;9:490.
342. Linton RAF, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2002;16(1):4.
343. Funk DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(3):887.
344. Reuter DA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(3):799.
345. Nishikawa T, Dohi S. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40(2):142.
336. Stetz CW, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1982;126(6):1001.
347. Dhingra VK, et al. *Chest*. 2002;122(3):990.
348. Ganz W, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1971;27:392.
349. Heerdt PM, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2001;15(2):183.
350. Bazaral MG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77(1):31.
351. Wetzel RC, Latson TW. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(5):684.
352. Groeneveld ABJ, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000;89:89.
353. van Grondelle A, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1983;245(4):H690.
354. Yelderman M. *J Clin Monit*. 1990;6(4):322.
355. Siegel LC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:1173.
356. Gardner RM. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26(8):1302.
357. Le Tulzo Y, et al. *J Clin Monit*. 1996;12(5):379.
358. Hatton KW, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:e61–e62.
359. Monnet X, Teboul J-L. *Crit Care*. 2017;21.
360. Mielck F, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17(2):211.
361. Segal E, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14(3):210.
362. von Spiegel T, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 1996;45(11):1045.
363. Michard F. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(4):1186.
354. Matejovic M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48(1):69.
365. Mitchell JP, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1992;145(5):990.
366. Hoeft A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(1):76.
367. Wiesenack C, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2001;15(5):584.
368. Briegel J, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2009;58(2):122.
369. Perny J, et al. *BioMed Res Intl*. 2014;2014:1–7.
370. Linton RAF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:262.
371. Kurita T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79:770.
372. Linton R, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25(11):1796.
373. Garcia-Rodriguez C, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30(10):2199.
374. Linton RA, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2000;26(10):1507.
375. Joosten A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118:298–310.
376. Colquhoun DA, Roche AM. *Anaesthesiology*. 2014;28:353–362.
377. Laupland KB, Bands CJ. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49(4):393.
378. Mark JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:1013.
379. Roche AM, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;23(3):327.
380. Abbas SM, Hill AG. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63(1):44.
381. Singer M. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1993;31:99–125.
382. Thys DM, Hillel Z. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:728.
383. Lee JH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(3):343.
384. Guinot P-G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:28–33.
385. Poeze M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27(7):1288.
386. Calvo-Vecino JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:734–744.
387. Kubicek WG, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1966;37(12):1208.
388. Jakovljevic DG, et al. *Anaesthesiology*. 2014;28:381–394.
389. Peyton PJ, Chong SW. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:1220–1235.
390. Jaffe MB. *J Clin Monit*. 1999;15:387.
391. Orr J, et al. *J Clin Monit*. 1996;12:464.
392. Osterlund B, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39(6):727.
393. Thiele RH, Durieux ME. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(4):766.
394. Wesseling KH, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1993;74(5):2566.
395. Linton NWF, Linton RAF. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86(4):486.
396. Bogert LW, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(11):1119.
397. Michard F. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(2):419. quiz 449.
398. Lieshout JJ, Wesseling KH. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86(4):467.
399. Cecconi M, et al. *Int Care Med*. 2013;39:787–789.
400. Monnet X, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:615–622.
401. Camporota L, Beale R. *Crit Care*. 2010;14(2):124.
402. De Backer D, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2005;31(4):517.
403. Goedje O, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27(11):2407.
404. Pittman J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(9):2015.
405. Benes J, et al. *Crit Care*. 2010;14(3):R118.
406. Mayer J, et al. *Crit Care*. 2010;14(1):R18.
407. Salzwedel C, et al. *Crit Care*. 2013;17:1.

References

1. Gravenstein JS. Monitoring with our good senses. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 1998;14:451–453.
2. Block FE. What is heart rate, anyway? *J Clin Monit*. 1994;10:366–370.
3. Zong W, Moody GB, Mark RG. Reduction of false arterial blood pressure alarms using signal quality assessment and relationships between the electrocardiogram and arterial blood pressure. *Med Biol Eng Comput*. 2004;42:698–706.
4. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Standards for basic anesthetic monitoring. ASA standards, guidelines and statements*. Park Ridge, Illinois: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 1993:5.
5. Sandau KE, Funk M, Auerbach A, et al. Update to practice standards for electrocardiographic monitoring in hospital settings: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2017;136:e273–e344.
6. Kligfield P, Gettes LS, Bailey JJ, et al. Recommendations for the standardization and interpretation of the electrocardiogram: part I: the electrocardiogram and its technology a scientific statement from the American Heart Association Electrocardiography and Arrhythmias Committee, Council on Clinical Cardiology; the American College of Cardiology Foundation; and the Heart Rhythm Society Endorsed By the International Society for Computerized Electrocardiology. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*. 2007;49:1109–1127.
7. Ortega R, Mazzini M, Xue K, Espaillat D. Videos in clinical medicine. Electrocardiographic monitoring in adults. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2015;372:e11.
8. Mason RE, Likar I. A new system of multiple-lead exercise electrocardiography. *American Heart Journal*. 1966;71:196–205.
9. Krucoff MW, Loeffler KA, Haisty Jr WK, et al. Simultaneous ST-segment measurements using standard and monitoring-compatible torso limb lead placements at rest and during coronary occlusion. *The American Journal of Cardiology*. 1994;74:997–1001.
10. Drew BJ. Pitfalls and artifacts in electrocardiography. *Cardiol Clin*. 2006;24:309–315. vii.
11. Chaitman BR, Hanson JS. Comparative sensitivity and specificity of exercise electrocardiographic lead systems. *The American Journal of Cardiology*. 1981;47:1335–1349.
12. Blackburn H, Katigbak R. WHAT electrocardiographic leads to take after exercise? *American Heart Journal*. 1964;67:184–185.
13. Kubota I, Ikeda K, Ohyama T, et al. Body surface distributions of ST segment changes after exercise in effort angina pectoris without myocardial infarction. *American Heart Journal*. 1985;110:949–955.
14. Kaplan JA, Dunbar RW, Hatcher CR. Diagnostic value of the V5 precordial electrocardiographic lead: a case report. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1978;57:364–367.
15. London MJ, Hollenberg M, Wong MG, et al. Intraoperative myocardial ischemia: localization by continuous 12-lead electrocardiography. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:232–241.
16. Landesberg G, Mosseri M, Wolf Y, Vesselov Y, Weissman C. Perioperative myocardial ischemia and infarction: identification by continuous 12-lead electrocardiogram with online ST-segment monitoring. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:264–270.
17. Klein HO, Tordjman T, Ninio R, et al. The early recognition of right ventricular infarction: diagnostic accuracy of the electrocardiographic V4R lead. *Circ*. 1983;67:558–565.
18. Griffin RM, Kaplan JA. Myocardial ischaemia during non-cardiac surgery. A comparison of different lead systems using computerised ST segment analysis. *Anaesthesia*. 1987;42:155–159.
19. Slogoff S, Keats AS, David Y, Igo SR. Incidence of perioperative myocardial ischemia detected by different electrocardiographic systems. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:1074–1081.
20. Takla G, Petre JH, Doyle DJ, Horibe M, Gopakumaran B. The problem of artifacts in patient monitor data during surgery: a clinical and methodological review. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2006;103:1196–1204.
21. Weinfurt PT. Electrocardiographic monitoring: an overview. *Journal of Clinical Monitoring*. 1990;6:132–138.
22. Khambatta HJ, Stone JG, Wald A, Mongero LB. Electrocardiographic artifacts during cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1990;71:88–91.
23. Patel SI, Souter MJ. Equipment-related electrocardiographic artifacts: causes, characteristics, consequences, and correction. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:138–148.
24. Patton JA, Funk M. Survey of use of ST-segment monitoring in patients with acute coronary syndromes. *American Journal of Critical Care : an Official Publication, American Association of Critical-Care Nurses*. 2001;10:23–32. quiz 3-4.
25. Mark JB, Chien GL, Steinbrook RA, Fenton T. Electrocardiographic R-wave changes during cardiac surgery. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1992;74:26–31.
26. Stern S. State of the art in stress testing and ischaemia monitoring. *Cardiac Electrophysiology Review*. 2002;6:204–208.
27. Helwani MA, Amin A, Lavigne P, et al. Etiology of acute coronary syndrome after noncardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:1084–1091.
28. Miller TD, Desser KB, Lawson M. How many electrocardiographic leads are required for exercise treadmill tests? *Journal of Electrocardiology*. 1987;20:131–137.
29. ASA. *Standards for Basic Anesthetic Monitoring*; 2005:2008. http://www.asahq.org/publicationsAndServices/standards/02.pdf
30. Bruner JMR, Krenis LJ, Kunsman JM, Sherman AP. Comparison of direct and indirect methods of measuring arterial blood pressure. *Medical Instrumentation*. 1981;15:11–21. 97-101, 82-88.
31. Riva-Rocci S. Un nuovo sfigmomanometro. *Gaz Med Torino*. 1896;47:981.
32. Korotkoff NS. On the subject of methods of determining blood pressure. *Bull Imp Med Acad St Petersburg*. 1905;11:365.
33. Kuck K, Baker PD. Perioperative Noninvasive Blood Pressure Monitoring. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2017.
34. Alpert BS, Quinn D, Gallick D. Oscillometric blood pressure: a review for clinicians. *Journal of the American Society of Hypertension : JASH*. 2014;8:930–938.
35. Lakhal K, Ehrmann S, Boulain T. Noninvasive BP monitoring in the critically ill: time to abandon the arterial catheter? *Chest*. 2017.
36. Pickering TG, Hall JE, Appel LJ, et al. Recommendations for blood pressure measurement in humans and experimental animals: Part 1: blood pressure measurement in humans: a statement for professionals from the subcommittee of professional and public education of the American Heart Association council on high blood pressure research. *Hypertension*. 2005;45:142–161.
37. Cohn JN. Blood pressure measurement in shock. Mechanism of inaccuracy in auscultatory and palpatory methods. *JAMA*. 1967;199:972–976.
38. Lakhal K, Macq C, Ehrmann S, Boulain T, Capdevila X. Noninvasive monitoring of blood pressure in the critically ill: reliability according to the cuff site (arm, thigh, or ankle). *Critical Care Medicine*. 2012;40:1207–1213.
39. Ribezzo S, Spina E, Di Bartolomeo S, Sanson G. Noninvasive techniques for blood pressure measurement are not a reliable alternative to direct measurement: a randomized crossover trial in ICU. *Scientificworldjournal*. 2014;2014:353628.
40. Wan Y, Heneghan C, Stevens R, et al. Determining which automatic digital blood pressure device performs adequately: a systematic review. *Journal of Human Hypertension*. 2010;24:431–438.
41. AAMI. American national standard for non-invasive sphygmomanometers-part 2. Clinical validation of automated measurement type. *AAMI*. 2009:25–26.
42. Lakhal K, Ehrmann S, Runge I, et al. Tracking hypotension and dynamic changes in arterial blood pressure with brachial cuff measurements. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2009;109:494–501.
43. Liu B, Li Q, Qiu P. Comparison between invasive and non-invasive blood pressure in young, middle and old age. *Blood Pressure*. 2016;25:155–161.
44. Riley LE, Chen GJ, Latham HE. Comparison of noninvasive blood pressure monitoring with invasive arterial pressure monitoring in medical ICU patients with septic shock. *Blood Pressure Monitoring*. 2017;22:202–207.
45. Wax DB, Lin HM, Leibowitz AB. Invasive and concomitant noninvasive intraoperative blood pressure monitoring: observed differences in measurements and associated therapeutic interventions. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:973–978.
46. Jankowski P, Kawecka-Jaszcz K, Czarnecka D, et al. Pulsatile but not steady component of blood pressure predicts cardiovascular events in coronary patients. *Hypertension*. 2008;51:848–855.
47. Min JY, Kim HI, Park SJ, Lim H, Song JH, Byon HJ. Adequate interval for the monitoring of vital signs during endotracheal intubation. *BMC anesthesiology*. 2017;17:110.

48. Leblanc ME, Croteau S, Ferland A, et al. Blood pressure assessment in severe obesity: validation of a forearm approach. *Obesity (Silver Spring, Md)*. 2013;21:E533–E541.
49. Celler BG, Basilakis J, Goozee K, Ambikairajah E. Non-invasive measurement of blood pressure - why we should look at BP traces rather than listen to Korotkoff sounds. Conference proceedings: *Annual International Conference of the IEEE Engineering in Medicine and Biology Society IEEE Engineering in Medicine and Biology Society Annual Conference*. 2015;2015:5964-5967.
50. Lakhal K, Martin M, Ehrmann S, Faiz S, Rozec B, Boulain T. Non-invasive blood pressure monitoring with an oscillometric brachial cuff: impact of arrhythmia. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017.
51. Anast N, Olejniczak M, Ingrande J, Brock-Utne J. The impact of blood pressure cuff location on the accuracy of noninvasive blood pressure measurements in obese patients: an observational study. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia = Journal Canadien D'anesthesie*. 2016;63:298–306.
52. Benmira A, Perez-Martin A, Schuster I, et al. From Korotkoff and Marey to automatic non-invasive oscillometric blood pressure measurement: does easiness come with reliability? *Expert Review of Medical Devices*. 2016;13:179–189.
53. Alford JW, Palumbo MA, Barnum MJ. Compartment syndrome of the arm: a complication of noninvasive blood pressure monitoring during thrombolytic therapy for myocardial infarction. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2002;17:163–166.
54. Kuck K, Fine PG, Westenskow DR. Evaluation of a new esophageal Doppler cardiac output monitor. *J Clin Monit*. 1997;13:424.
55. Tobias JD, McKee C, Herz D, et al. Accuracy of the CNAP monitor, a noninvasive continuous blood pressure device, in providing beat-to-beat blood pressure measurements during bariatric surgery in severely obese adolescents and young adults. *Journal of Anesthesia*. 2014;28:861–865.
56. Kim SH, Lilot M, Sidhu KS, et al. Accuracy and precision of continuous noninvasive arterial pressure monitoring compared with invasive arterial pressure: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:1080–1097.
57. Balzer F, Habicher M, Sander M, et al. Comparison of the non-invasive Nexfin(R) monitor with conventional methods for the measurement of arterial blood pressure in moderate risk orthopaedic surgery patients. *The Journal of International Medical Research*. 2016;44:832–843.
58. Benes J, Simanova A, Tovarnicka T, et al. Continuous non-invasive monitoring improves blood pressure stability in upright position: randomized controlled trial. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2015;29:11–17.
59. Bilo G, Zorzi C, Ochoa Munera JE, Torlasco C, Giuli V, Parati G. Validation of the Somnotouch-NIBP noninvasive continuous blood pressure monitor according to the European Society of Hypertension International Protocol revision 2010. *Blood Pressure Monitoring*. 2015;20:291–294.
60. Dueck R, Goedje O, Clopton P. Noninvasive continuous beat-to-beat radial artery pressure via TL-200 applanation tonometry. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2012;26:75–83.
61. Belani K, Ozaki M, Hynson J, et al. A new noninvasive method to measure blood pressure: results of a multicenter trial. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:686–692.
62. Weiss BM, Pasch T. Measurement of systemic arterial pressure. *Current Opinion in Anaesthesiology*. 1997;10:459–466.
63. Cockings JGL, Webb RK, Klepper ID, Currie M, Morgan C. Blood pressure monitoring--applications and limitations: an analysis of 2000 incident reports. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1993;21:565–569.
64. Eather KF, Peterson LH, Dripps RD. Studies of the circulation of anesthetized patients by a new method for recording arterial pressure and pressure pulse contours. *Anesthesiology*. 1949;10:125–132.
65. Mark JB. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.
66. Perel A. Assessing fluid responsiveness by the systolic pressure variation in mechanically ventilated patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1309–1310.
67. Rooke GA. Systolic pressure variation as an indicator of hypovolemia. *Current Opinion in Anaesthesiology*. 1995;8:511–515.
68. Thiele RH, Bartels K, Gan TJ. Inter-device differences in monitoring for goal-directed fluid therapy. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia = Journal Canadien D'anesthesie*. 2015;62:169–181.
69. Gabriel RA, Beverly A, Dutton RP, Urman RD. Patterns of intra-arterial blood pressure monitoring for patients undergoing total shoulder arthroplasty under general anesthesia: a retrospective analysis of 23,073 patients. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31:877–884.
70. Mandel MA, Dauchot PJ. Radial artery cannulation in 1000 patients. Precautions and complications. *J Hand Surg*. 1977;2:482–485.
71. Scheer B, Perel A, Pfeiffer UJ. Clinical review: complications and risk factors of peripheral arterial catheters used for haemodynamic monitoring in anaesthesia and intensive care medicine. *Critical Care (London, England)*. 2002;6:199–204.
72. Slogoff S, Keats AS, Arlund C. On the safety of radial artery cannulation. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:42–47.
73. Brzezinski M, Luisetti T, London MJ. Radial artery cannulation: a comprehensive review of recent anatomic and physiologic investigations. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2009;109:1763–1781.
74. Knobloch K, Lichtenberg A, Tomaszek S, et al. Long-term physical activity and neurologic function after harvesting of the radial artery as T-graft or free graft in coronary revascularization. *The Annals of Thoracic Surgery*. 2005;80:918–921.
75. Knobloch K, Lichtenberg A, Pichlmaier M, Tomaszek S, Krug A, Haverich A. Palmar microcirculation after harvesting of the radial artery in coronary revascularization. *The Annals of Thoracic Surgery*. 2005;79:1026–1030. discussion 30.
76. Ciria-Llorens G, Gomez-Cia T, Talegon-Melendez A. Angiologic observations following radial artery flap elevation: a case report. *Surgical and Radiologic Anatomy : SRA*. 1998;20:377–381.
77. Ciria-Llorens G, Gomez-Cia T, Talegon-Melendez A. Analysis of flow changes in forearm arteries after raising the radial forearm flap: a prospective study using colour duplex imaging. *British Journal of Plastic Surgery*. 1999;52:440–444.
78. Richardson D, Fisher SE, Vaughan ED, Brown JS. Radial forearm flap donor-site complications and morbidity: a prospective study. *Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery*. 1997;99:109–115.
79. Allen EV. Thromboangiitis obliterans: methods of diagnosis of chronic obstructive lesions distal to the wrist with illustrative cases. *Am J Med Sci*. 1929;178:237.
80. Wilkins RG. Radial artery cannulation and ischaemic damage: a review. *Anaesthesia*. 1985;40:896–899.
81. Abu-Omar Y, Mussa S, Anastasiadis K, Steel S, Hands L, Taggart DP. Duplex ultrasonography predicts safety of radial artery harvest in the presence of an abnormal Allen test. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;77:116–119.
82. Barbeau GR, Arsenault F, Dugas L, Simard S, Lariviere MM. Evaluation of the ulnopalmar arterial arches with pulse oximetry and plethysmography: comparison with the Allen's test in 1010 patients. *American Heart Journal*. 2004;147:489–493.
83. Jarvis MA, Jarvis CL, Jones PR, Spyt TJ. Reliability of Allen's test in selection of patients for radial artery harvest. *The Annals of Thoracic Surgery*. 2000;70:1362–1365.
84. Rozenberg B, Rosenberg M, Birkhan J. Allen's test performed by pulse oximeter. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43:515–516.
85. Williams JS, Brown SM, Conlin PR. Videos in clinical medicine. Blood-pressure measurement. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2009;360:e6.
86. Levin PD, Sheinin O, Gozal Y. Use of ultrasound guidance in the insertion of radial artery catheters. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31:481–484.
87. Ganesh A, Kaye R, Cahill AM, et al. Evaluation of ultrasound-guided radial artery cannulation in children. *Pediatric Critical Care Medicine : a Journal of The Society of Critical Care Medicine and the World Federation of Pediatric Intensive and Critical Care Societies*. 2009;10:45–48.
88. Shiver S, Blaivas M, Lyon M. A prospective comparison of ultrasound-guided and blindly placed radial arterial catheters. *Academic Emergency Medicine : Official Journal of the Society For Academic Emergency Medicine*. 2006;13:1275–1279.
89. Ueda K, Bayman EO, Johnson C, Odum NJ, Lee JJ. A randomised controlled trial of radial artery cannulation guided by Doppler vs. palpation vs. ultrasound. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70:1039–1044.
90. Gu WJ, Wu XD, Wang F, Ma ZL, Gu XP. Ultrasound guidance facilitates radial artery catheterization: a meta-analysis with trial sequential analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Chest*. 2016;149:166–179.
91. Htet N, Vaughn J, Adigopula S, Hennessey E, Mihm F. Needle-guided ultrasound technique for axillary artery catheter placement in critically ill patients: a case series and technique description. *Journal of Critical Care*. 2017;41:194–197.
92. Karacalar S, Ture H, Baris S, Karakaya D, Sarihasan B. Ulnar artery versus radial artery approach for arterial cannulation: a prospective, comparative study. *Journal of Clinical Anesthesia*. 2007;19:209–213.

93. Bazaral MG, Welch M, Golding LAR, Badhwar K. Comparison of brachial and radial arterial pressure monitoring in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:38–45.
94. Singh A, Bahadorani B, Wakefield BJ, et al. Brachial arterial pressure monitoring during cardiac surgery rarely causes complications. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:1065–1076.
95. Muralidhar K. Complication of femoral artery pressure monitoring. *Journal of Cardiothoracic and Vascular Anesthesia*. 1998;12:128–129.
96. Chen Y, Wang E, Zhu Y, Li Y, Lu K. Dorsalis pedis arterial pressure is lower than noninvasive arm blood pressure in normotensive patients under sevoflurane anesthesia. *Blood Pressure Monitoring*. 2016;21:27–32.
97. Rehfeldt KH, Sanders MS. Digital gangrene after radial artery catheterization in a patient with thrombocytosis. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2000;90:45–46.
98. Rose SH. Ischemic complications of radial artery cannulation: an association with a calcinosis, Raynaud's phenomenon, esophageal dysmotility, sclerodactyly, and telangiectasia variant of scleroderma. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:587–589.
99. Singleton RJ, Webb RK, Ludbrook GL, Fox AL. Problems associated with vascular access: an analysis of 2000 incident reports. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1993;21:664–669.
100. Bhananker SM, Liau DW, Kooner PK, Posner KL, Caplan RA, Domino KB. Liability related to peripheral venous and arterial catheterization: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2009;109:124–129.
101. Gardner RM. Direct blood pressure measurement--dynamic response requirements. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:227–236.
102. Kleinman B. Understanding natural frequency and damping and how they relate to the measurement of blood pressure. *J Clin Monit*. 1989;5:137–147.
103. Kleinman B, Powell S, Kumar P, Gardner RM. The fast flush test measures the dynamic response of the entire blood pressure monitoring system. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:1215–1220.
104. O'Quin R, Marini JJ. Pulmonary artery occlusion pressure: clinical physiology, measurement, and interpretation. *The American Review of Respiratory Disease*. 1983;128:319–326.
105. Mark JB. Technical requirements for direct blood pressure measurement. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:99–126.
106. Geddes LA. *Handbook of blood pressure measurement*. Clifton, New Jersey: Humana Press; 1991.
107. Romagnoli S, Ricci Z, Quattrone D, et al. Accuracy of invasive arterial pressure monitoring in cardiovascular patients: an observational study. *Critical Care (London, England)*. 2014;18:644.
108. Schwid HA. Frequency response evaluation of radial artery catheter-manometer systems: sinusoidal frequency analysis versus flush method. *J Clin Monit*. 1988;4:181–185.
109. Sinha S, Jayaram R, Hargreaves CG. Fatal neuroglycopaenia after accidental use of a glucose 5% solution in a peripheral arterial cannula flush system. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:615–620.
110. Promonet C, Anglade D, Menaouar A, et al. Time-dependent pressure distortion in a catheter-transducer system. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:208–218.
111. Gardner RM. Accuracy and reliability of disposable pressure transducers coupled with modern pressure monitors. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24:879–882.
112. Skidmore K, Chen J, Litt L. Arterial catheter pressure cable corrosion leading to artifactual diagnosis of hypotension. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2002;95:1192–1195.
113. Courtois M, Fattal PG, Kovacs SJ, Tiefenbrunn AJ, Ludbrook PA. Anatomically and physiologically based reference level for measurement of intracardiac pressures. *Circulation*. 1995;92:1994–2000.
114. Seo JH, Jung CW, Bahk JH. Uppermost blood levels of the right and left atria in the supine position: implication for measuring central venous pressure and pulmonary artery wedge pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:260–263.
115. Ortega R, Connor C, Kotova F, Deng W, Lacerra C. Use of pressure transducers. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2017;376:e26.
116. Kovacs G, Avian A, Olschewski A, Olschewski H. Zero reference level for right heart catheterisation. *The European Respiratory Journal*. 2013;42:1586–1594.
117. Braunwald E, Fishman AP, Cournand A. Time relationship of dynamic events in the cardiac chambers, pulmonary artery and aorta in man. *Circ Research*. 1956;4:100–107.
118. Stouffer G. Arterial pressure. In: Stouffer G, ed. *Cardiovascular hemodynamics for the clinician*. Malden, MA: Blackwell Futura; 2008:57–66.
119. O'Rourke MF, Gallagher DE. Pulse wave analysis. *Journal of Hypertension*. 1996;14:S147–S157.
120. Franklin SS, Weber MA. Measuring hypertensive cardiovascular risk: the vascular overload concept. *American Heart Journal*. 1994;128:793–803.
121. Frank SM, Norris EJ, Christopherson R, Beattie C. Right- and left-arm blood pressure discrepancies in vascular surgery patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:457–463.
122. Kinzer JB, Lichtentrhal PR, Wade LD. Loss of radial artery pressure trace during internal mammary artery dissection for coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Anesthesia and analgesia*. 1985;64:1134–1136.
123. Mark JB. Arterial blood pressure. Direct vs. indirect measurement. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:81–89.
124. Dorman T, Breslow MJ, Lipsett PA, et al. Radial artery pressure monitoring underestimates central arterial pressure during vasopressor therapy in critically ill surgical patients. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1646–1649.
125. Urzua J, Sessler DI, Meneses G, Sacco CM, Canessa R, Lema G. Thermoregulatory vasoconstriction increases the difference between femoral and radial arterial pressures. *J Clin Monit*. 1994;10:229–236.
126. Chauhan S, Saxena N, Mehrotra S, Rao BH, Sahu M. Femoral artery pressures are more reliable than radial artery pressures on initiation of cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2000;14:274–276.
127. Hynson JM, Katz JA, Mangano DT. On the accuracy of intra-arterial pressure measurement: the pressure gradient effect. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1623–1624.
128. McGregor M. Pulsus paradoxus. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 1979:480–482.
129. Shabetai R, Fowler NO, Guntheroth WG. The hemodynamics of cardiac tamponade and constrictive pericarditis. *The American Journal of Cardiology*. 1970;26:480–489.
130. Mark JB. Pericardial constriction and cardiac tamponade. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:313–326.
131. Gelman S. Venous function and central venous pressure: a physiologic story. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:735–748.
132. Marik PE. The systolic blood pressure variation as an indicator of pulmonary capillary wedge pressure in ventilated patients. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1993;21:405–408.
133. Gunn SR, Pinsky MR. Implications of arterial pressure variation in patients in the intensive care unit. *Current Opinion in Crit Care*. 2001;7:212–217.
134. Preisman S, Kogan S, Berkenstadt H, Perel A. Predicting fluid responsiveness in patients undergoing cardiac surgery: functional haemodynamic parameters including the Respiratory Systolic Variation Test and static preload indicators. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2005;95:746–755.
135. Perel A. Automated assessment of fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients. *Anesthesia and analgesia*. 2008;106:1031–1033.
136. Hofer CK, Cannesson M. Monitoring fluid responsiveness. *Acta anaesthesiologica Taiwanica : Official Journal of the Taiwan Society of Anesthesiologists*. 2011;49:59–65.
137. Thiele RH, Colquhoun DA, Blum FE, Durieux ME. The ability of anesthesia providers to visually estimate systolic pressure variability using the "eyeball" technique. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2012;115:176–181.
138. Berkenstadt H, Margalit N, Hadani M, et al. Stroke volume variation as a predictor of fluid responsiveness in patients undergoing brain surgery. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2001;92:984–989.
139. Phillips R, Brierley J. Fluid responsiveness is about stroke volume, and not pulse pressure yogi: the power of Doppler fluid management and cardiovascular monitoring. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2015;29:197–200.
140. Kong R, Liu Y, Mi W, Fu Q. Influences of different vasopressors on stroke volume variation and pulse pressure variation. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2016;30:81–86.
141. Cannesson M, Delannoy B, Morand A, et al. Does the Pleth variability index indicate the respiratory-induced variation in the plethysmogram and arterial pressure waveforms?. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2008;106:1189–1194. table of contents.

142. Antonsen LP, Kirkeboen KA. Evaluation of fluid responsiveness: is photoplethysmography a noninvasive alternative? *Anesthesiology Research and Practice*. 2012;2012:617380.
143. Cannesson M, Aboy M, Hofer CK, Rehman M. Pulse pressure variation: where are we today? *Journal of Clinical Monitoring and Computing*. 2011;25:45–56.
144. Michard F, Boussat S, Chemla D, et al. Relation between respiratory changes in arterial pulse pressure and fluid responsiveness in septic patients with acute circulatory failure. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*. 2000;162:134–138.
145. Biais M, Bernard O, Ha JC, Degryse C, Sztark F. Abilities of pulse pressure variations and stroke volume variations to predict fluid responsiveness in prone position during scoliosis surgery. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2010;104:407–413.
146. Mahjoub Y, Lorne E, Micaux Y, et al. Accuracy of automated continuous calculation of pulse pressure variation in critically ill patients. *Intensive Care Medicine*. 2011;37:360–361.
147. Marik PE, Cavallazzi R, Vasu T, Hirani A. Dynamic changes in arterial waveform derived variables and fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients: a systematic review of the literature. *Critical Care Medicine*. 2009;37:2642–2647.
148. De Hert SG. Assessment of fluid responsiveness: insights in a “gray zone”. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:229–230.
149. Cannesson M. Arterial pressure variation and goal-directed fluid therapy. *Journal of Cardiothoracic and Vascular Anesthesia*. 2010;24:487–497.
150. Cannesson M, Slieker J, Desebbe O, et al. The ability of a novel algorithm for automatic estimation of the respiratory variations in arterial pulse pressure to monitor fluid responsiveness in the operating room. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2008;106:1195–1200. table of contents.
151. Auler Jr JO, Galas F, Hajjar L, Santos L, Carvalho T, Michard F. Online monitoring of pulse pressure variation to guide fluid therapy after cardiac surgery. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2008;106:1201–1206. table of contents.
152. Min JJ, Lee JH, Hong KY, Choi SJ. Utility of stroke volume variation measured using non-invasive bioreactance as a predictor of fluid responsiveness in the prone position. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31:397–405.
153. Audimoolam VK, McPhail MJ, Willars C, et al. Predicting fluid responsiveness in acute liver failure: a prospective study. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2017;124:480–486.
154. Royer P, Bendjelid K, Valentino R, Resiere D, Chabartier C, Mehdaoui H. Influence of intra-abdominal pressure on the specificity of pulse pressure variations to predict fluid responsiveness. *The Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery*. 2015;78:994–999.
155. Wyffels PA, Van Heuverswyn F, De Hert S, Wouters PF. Dynamic filling parameters in patients with atrial fibrillation: differentiating rhythm induced from ventilation-induced variations in pulse pressure. *American Journal of Physiology Heart and Circulatory Physiology*. 2016;310:H1194–H1200.
156. Ho KM. Pitfalls in haemodynamic monitoring in the postoperative and critical care setting. *Anaesthesia and Intensive Care*. 2016;44:14–19.
157. Wyler von Ballmoos M, Takala J, Roeck M, et al. Pulse-pressure variation and hemodynamic response in patients with elevated pulmonary artery pressure: a clinical study. *Critical Care*. 2010;14:R111.
158. Yi L, Liu Z, Qiao L, Wan C, Mu D. Does stroke volume variation predict fluid responsiveness in children: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One*. 2017;12:e0177590.
159. Jeong DM, Ahn HJ, Park HW, Yang M, Kim JA, Park J. Stroke volume variation and pulse pressure variation are not useful for predicting fluid responsiveness in thoracic surgery. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2017;125:1158–1165.
160. Hennings LI, Haase N, Pedersen UG, Perner A. Arterial waveform-analysis is of limited value in daily clinical practice in the intensive care unit. *Danish Medical Journal*. 2015;62.
161. Ikeda K, Smith G, Renehan J, et al. Multiparameter predictor of fluid responsiveness in cardiac surgical patients receiving tidal volumes less than 10 mL/kg. *Seminars in Cardiothoracic and Vascular Anesthesia*. 2016;20:188–196.
162. Myatra SN, Prabu NR, Divatia JV, Monnet X, Kulkarni AP, Teboul JL. The changes in pulse pressure variation or stroke volume variation after a “tidal volume challenge” reliably predict fluid responsiveness during low tidal volume ventilation. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45:415–421.
163. Biais M, Lanchon R, Sesay M, et al. Changes in stroke volume induced by lung recruitment maneuver predict fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients in the operating room. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:260–267.
164. De Broca B, Garnier J, Fischer MO, et al. Stroke volume changes induced by a recruitment maneuver predict fluid responsiveness in patients with protective ventilation in the operating theater. *Medicine*. 2016;95:e4259.
165. Augusto JF, Teboul JL, Radermacher P, Asfar P. Interpretation of blood pressure signal: physiological bases, clinical relevance, and objectives during shock states. *Intensive Care Medicine*. 2011;37:411–419.
166. Barodka VM, Joshi BL, Berkowitz DE, Hogue Jr CW, Nyhan D. Review article: implications of vascular aging. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2011;112:1048–1060.
167. Gravenstein N, Blackshear RH. In vitro evaluation of relative perforating potential of central venous catheters: comparison of materials, selected models, number of lumens, and angles of incidence to simulated membrane. *J Clin Monit*. 1991;7:1–6.
168. Fisher KL, Leung AN. Radiographic appearance of central venous catheters. *Amer J Roentgen*. 1996;166:329–337.
169. Graham AS, Ozment C, Tegtmeyer K, Lai S, Braner DA. Videos in clinical medicine. Central venous catheterization. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2007;356:e21.
170. Peres PW. Positioning central venous catheters--a prospective study. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1990;18:536–539.
171. Rupp SM, Apfelbaum JL, Blitt C, et al. Practice guidelines for central venous access: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Central Venous Access. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:539–573.
172. Troianos CA, Hartman GS, Glas KE, et al. Special articles: guidelines for performing ultrasound guided vascular cannulation: recommendations of the American Society of Echocardiography and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2012;114:46–72.
173. Rothschild JM. Ultrasound guidance of central vein catheterization. Evidence report/technology assessment, N43 making health care safer a critical analysis of patient safety practices. *Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality*. 2001:245–253.
174. Schulman PM, Gerstein NS, Merkel MJ, Braner DA, Tegtmeyer K. Ultrasound-guided cannulation of the subclavian vein. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2018;379:e1.
175. Tsui JY, Collins AB, White DW, Lai J, Tabas JA. Videos in clinical medicine. Placement of a femoral venous catheter. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2008;358:e30.
176. Ortega R, Song M, Hansen CJ, Barash P. Videos in clinical medicine. Ultrasound-guided internal jugular vein cannulation. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2010;362:e57.
177. Taylor RW, Palagiri AV. Central venous catheterization. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:1390–1396.
178. McGee DC, Gould MK. Preventing complications of central venous catheterization. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2003;348:1123–1133.
179. Imai M, Hanaoka Y, Kemmotsu O. Valve injury: a new complication of internal jugular vein cannulation. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1994;78:1041–1046.
180. Wetzel LR, Patel PR, Pesa NL. Central venous catheter placement in the left internal jugular vein complicated by perforation of the Left brachiocephalic vein and massive hemothorax: a case report. *A & A Case Reports*. 2017;9:16–19.
181. Kainuma A, Oshima K, Ota C, Okubo Y, Fukunaga N, Suh SH. Brachiocephalic vein perforation during cannulation of internal jugular vein: a case report. *A & A Case Reports*. 2017;9:258–261.
182. Beilin Y, Bronheim D, Mandelbaum C. Hemothorax and subclavian artery laceration during “J” wire change of a right internal jugular vein catheter. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1399–1400.
183. Bernard RW, Stahl WM. Mediastinal hematoma: complication of subclavian vein catheterization. *NY State J Med*. 1974:83–84. January Part I.
184. Khalil KG, Parker FB, Mukherjee N, Webb WR. Thoracic duct injury. A complication of jugular vein catheterization. *JAMA*. 1972;221:908–909.
185. Naguib M, Farag H, Joshi RN. Bilateral hydrothorax and hydromediastinum after a subclavian line insertion. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1985;32:412–414.

186. Rudge CJ, Bewick M, McColl I. Hydrothorax after central venous catheterization. *Brit Med J*. 1973;3:23–25.
187. Shah KB, Rao TLK, Laughlin S, El-Etr AA. A review of pulmonary artery catheterization in 6,245 patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:271–275.
188. Heath KJ, Woulfe J, Lownie S, Pelz D, Munoz DG, Mezon B. A devastating complication of inadvertent carotid artery puncture. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1273–1275.
189. Ezri T, Szmuk P, Cohen Y, et al. Carotid artery-internal jugular vein fistula: a complication of internal jugular vein catheterization. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2001;15:231–232.
190. Brennan MF, Sugarbaker PH, Moore FD. Venobronchial fistula: a rare complication of central venous catheterization for parenteral hyperalimentation. *Arch Surg*. 1973;106:871–872.
191. Caron NR, Demmy TL, Curtis JJ. Bronchial erosion by an indwelling central venous catheter. *Chest*. 1994;106:1917–1918.
192. Danenberg HD, Hasin Y, Milgalter E, et al. Aorto-atrial fistula following internal jugular vein catheterization. *Euro Heart J*. 1995;16:279–281.
193. Collier PE, Ryan JJ, Diamond DL. Cardiac tamponade from central venous catheters. Report of a case and review of the English literature. *Angiology*. 1984;35:595–600.
194. Tocino IM, Watanabe A. Impending catheter perforation of superior vena cava: radiographic recognition. *Ajr American Journal of Roentgenology*. 1986;146:487–490.
195. Mansfield PF, Hohn DC, Fornage BD, Gregurich MA, Ota DM. Complications and failures of subclavian-vein catheterization. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 1994;331:1735–1738.
196. Gozubuyuk E, Buget MI, Akgul T, Altun D, Kucukay S. Brachial plexus injury associated with subclavian vein cannulation: a case report. *A & A Case Reports*. 2017;9:207–211.
197. Butsch JL, Butsch WL, Da Rosa JFT. Bilateral vocal cord paralysis. *Arch Surg*. 1976;111:828.
198. Drachler DH, Koepke GH, Weg JG. Phrenic nerve injury from subclavian vein catheterization. *JAMA*. 1976;236:2880–2882.
199. Burton AW, Controy BP, Sims S, Solanki D, Williams CGA. Complex regional pain syndrome type II as a complication of subclavian catheter insertion. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:804.
200. Merrer J, De Jonghe B, Golliot R, et al. Complications of femoral and subcalvian venous catheterization in critically ill patients. A randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2001;286:700–707.
201. Gilon D, Schechter D, Rein AJ, et al. Right atrial thrombi are related to indwelling central venous catheter position: insights into time course and possible mechanism of formation. *American Heart Journal*. 1998;135:457–462.
202. Ghani MK, Boccalandro F, Denktas AE, Barasch E. Right atrial thrombus formation associated with central venous catheters utilization in hemodialysis patients. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29:1829–1832.
203. Roguin A, Reisner SA. Right atrial mass related to indwelling central venous catheters in patients undergoing dialysis. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2000;1:222–223.
204. Barbeito A, Bar-Yosef S, Lowe JE, Atkins BZ, Mark JB. Unusual cause of superior vena cava syndrome diagnosed with transesophageal echocardiography. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia = Journal Canadien D'anesthesie*. 2008;55:774–778.
205. Horner SM, Bell JA, Swanton RH. Infected right atrial thrombus--an important but rare complication of central venous lines. *Eur Heart J*. 1993;14:138–140.
206. Reynen K. 14-year follow-up of central emobilization by a guide wire. *New Engl J Med*. 1993;329:970–971.
207. Grace DM. Air embolism with neurologic complications: a potential hazard of central venous catheters. *Can J Surg*. 1977;20:51–53.
208. Miller SE, Maragakis LL. Central line-associated bloodstream infection prevention. *Current Opinion in Infectious Diseases*. 2012;25:412–422.
209. Healthcare-associated infections in the United States, 2006-2016: a story of progress. In: *Promotion DoHQa*. Atlanta, GA: National Center for Emerging and Zoonotic infectious Diseases (NCEZID); 2018.
210. Marschall J. Catheter-associated bloodstream infections: looking outside of the ICU. *American Journal of Infection Control*. 2008;36:S172 e5–8.
211. Zingg W, Pittet D. Peripheral venous catheters: an under-evaluated problem. *International Journal of Antimicrobial Agents*. 2009;34(suppl 4):S38–42.
212. Corona ML, Peters SG, Narr BJ, Thompson RL. Infections related to central venous catheters. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1990;65:979–986.
213. O'Grady NP, Alexander M, Dellinger EP, et al. Guidelines for prevention of intravascular catheter-related infections. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*. 2002;51:1–29.
214. Tebbs SE, Sawyer A, Elliott TS. Influence of surface morphology on invitro bacterial adherence to central venous catheters. *Brit J Anaesth*. 1994;72:587–591.
215. Long DA, Coulthard MG. Effect of heparin-bonded central venous catheters on the incidence of catheter-related thrombosis and infection in children and adults. *Anaesthesia and Intensive Care*. 2006;34:481–484.
216. Gilbert RE, Harden M. Effectiveness of impregnated central venous catheters for catheter related blood stream infection: a systematic review. *Current Opinion in Infectious Diseases*. 2008;21:235–245.
217. Darouiche RO, Raad II, Heard SO, et al. A comparison of two antimicrobial-impregnated central venous catheters. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 1999;340:1–8.
218. Maki DG, Stolz SM, Wheeler S, Mermel LA. Prevention of central venous catheter-related bloodstream infection by use of an antiseptic-impregnated catheter. A randomized, controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 1997;127:257–266.
219. Veenstra DL, Saint S, Sullivan SD. Cost-effectiveness of antiseptic-impregnated central venous catheters for the prevention of catheter-related bloodstream infection. *JAMA*. 1999;282:554–560.
220. Levy I, Katz J, Solter E, et al. Chlorhexidine-impregnated dressing for prevention of colonization of central venous catheters in infants and children: a randomized controlled study. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 2005;24:676–679.
221. Garland JS, Alex CP, Mueller CD, et al. A randomized trial comparing povidone-iodine to a chlorhexidine gluconate-impregnated dressing for prevention of central venous catheter infections in neonates. *Pediatrics*. 2001;107:1431–1436.
222. O'Grady NP, Alexander M, Burns LA, et al. Guidelines for the prevention of intravascular catheter-related infections. *American Journal of Infection Control*. 2011;39:S1–34.
223. Parienti JJ, Mongardon N, Megarbane B, et al. Intravascular complications of central venous catheterization by insertion site. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2015;373:1220–1229.
224. Magder S. Central venous pressure: a useful but not so simple measurement. *Critical Care Medicine*. 2006;34:2224–2227.
225. Magder S, De Varennes B. Clinical death and the measurement of stressed vascular volume. *Critical Care Medicine*. 1998;26:1061–1064.
226. Mark JB. Pressure-volume relations, transmural pressure, and preload. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:247–259.
227. Dwyer EM. Left ventricular pressure-volume alterations and regional disorders of contraction during myocardial ischemia induced by atrial pacing. *Circ*. 1970;42:1111–1122.
228. Mark JB. Respiratory-circulatory interactions. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:261–285.
229. Magder S. Central venous pressure monitoring. *Current Opinion in Critical Care*. 2006;12:219–227.
230. Kovacs G, Avian A, Pienn M, Naeije R, Olschewski H. Reading pulmonary vascular pressure tracings. How to handle the problems of zero leveling and respiratory swings. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*. 2014;190:252–257.
231. Mark JB. Getting the most from your central venous pressure catheter. In: Barash PG, ed. *ASA refresher courses in anesthesiology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1995:157–175.
232. Mark JB. Central venous pressure monitoring: clinical insights beyond the numbers. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1991;5:163–173.
233. O'Rourke RA, Silverman ME, Schlant RC. General examination of the patient. In: Schlant RC, Alexander RW, eds. *The heart arteries and veins*. New York: McGraw-Hill, Inc.; 1994:238–241.
234. Mackay IFS, Walker RL. An experimental examination of factors responsible for the 'h' (d'') wave of the jugular phlebogram in human beings. *American Heart Journal*. 1966;71:228–239.
235. Shinozaki T, Deane RS, Mazuzan JE. The dynamic responses of liquid-filled catheter systems for direct measurements of blood pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:498–504.
236. Mark JB. Arrhythmias. An integrated ECG and hemodynamic approach. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:219–245.

237. Mark JB. Patterns of valvular heart disease. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:287–312.
238. Marik PE, Baram M, Vahid B. Does central venous pressure predict fluid responsiveness? A systematic review of the literature and the tale of seven mares. *Chest*. 2008;134:172–178.
239. Kuntscher MV, Germann G, Hartmann B. Correlations between cardiac output, stroke volume, central venous pressure, intra-abdominal pressure and total circulating blood volume in resuscitation of major burns. *Resuscitation*. 2006;70:37–43.
240. Wiesenack C, Fiegl C, Keyser A, Prasser C, Keyl C. Assessment of fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated cardiac surgical patients. *European Journal of Anaesthesiology*. 2005;22:658–665.
241. Coudray A, Romand JA, Treggiari M, Bendjelid K. Fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients: a review of indexes used in intensive care. *Critical Care Medicine*. 2005;33:2757–2762.
242. Swan HJC, Ganz W, Forrester J, Marcus H, Diamond G, Chonette D. Catheterization of the heart in man with use of a flow-directed balloon-tipped catheter. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 1970;283:447–451.
243. Connors AF, McCaffree DR, Gray BA. Evaluation of right-heart catheterization in the critically ill patient without acute myocardial infarction. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 1983;308:263–279.
244. Sandham JD, Hull RD, Brant RF, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of the use of pulmonary-artery catheters in high-risk surgical patients. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2003;348:5–14.
245. Kelly CR, Rabbani LE. Pulmonary-artery catheterization. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2013;369:e35.
246. Bennett D, Boldt J, Brochard L, et al. Expert panel: the use of the pulmonary artery catheter. *Intensive Care Med*. 1991;17:I–VIII.
247. Szabo Z. A simple method to pass a pulmonary artery flotation catheter rapidly into the pulmonary artery in anaesthetized patients. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2003;90:794–796.
248. Pipanmekaporn T, Bunchungmongkol N, Pin P, Punjasawadwong Y. Impact of patients' positions on the incidence of arrhythmias during pulmonary artery catheterization. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 26:391-394.
249. Tan CO. Transthoracic echocardiography assists appropriate pulmonary artery catheter placement: an observational study. *World Journal of Anesthesiology*. 2015;4:30.
250. Cronin B, Robbins R, Maus T. Pulmonary artery catheter placement using transesophageal echocardiography. *Journal of Cardiothoracic and Vascular Anesthesia*. 2017;31:178–183.
251. Evans DC, Doraiswamy VA, Prosciak MP, et al. Complications associated with pulmonary artery catheters: a comprehensive clinical review. *Scand J Surg*. 2009;98:199–208.
252. Roizen MF, Berger DL, Gabel RA, et al. Practice guidelines for pulmonary artery catheterization. An updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Pulmonary Artery Catheterization. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:988–1014.
253. Damen J, Bolton D. A prospective analysis of 1400 pulmonary artery catheterizations in patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *Acta Anesthesiol Scand*. 1986;30:386–392.
254. Procaccini B, Clementi G, Miletti E, Lattanzi W. A review of pulmonary artery catheterization in 5,306 consecutive patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *Brit J Anaesth*. 1998;80:A26.
255. Jain M, Canham M, Upadhyay D, Corbridge T. Variability in interventions with pulmonary artery catheter data. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29:2059–2062.
256. Squara P, Bennett D, Perret C. Pulmonary artery catheter. Does the problem lie in the users? *Chest*. 2002;121:2009–2015.
257. Iberti TJ, Fischer EP, Leibowitz AB, et al. A multicenter study of physicians' knowledge of the pulmonary artery catheter. *JAMA*. 1990;264:2928–2932.
258. Gnaegi A, Feihl F, Perret C. Intensive care physicians' insufficient knowledge of right-heart catheterization at the bedside: time to act? *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25:213–220.
259. Jacka MJ, Cohen MM, To T, Devitt JH, Byrick R. Pulmonary artery occlusion pressure estimation: how confident are anesthesiologists? *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:1197–1203.
260. Zarich S, Pust-Marcone J, Amoateng-Adjepong Y, Manthous CA. Failure of a brief educational program to improve interpretation of pulmonary artery occlusion pressure tracings. *Intensive Care Med*. 2000;26:698–703.
261. Marik P, Heard SO, Varon J. Interpretation of the pulmonary artery occlusion (wedge) pressure: physicians' knowledge versus the experts' knowledge. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1761–1763.
262. Mark JB. Pulmonary artery pressure. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:27–37.
263. Mark JB. Pulmonary artery wedge pressure. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:39–48.
264. Levy MM. Pulmonary capillary pressure. Clinical implications. *Critical Care Clinics*. 1996;12:819–839.
265. Mark JB, Chetham PM. Ventricular pacing can induce hemodynamically significant mitral valve regurgitation. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:375–377.
266. Zahorec R, Holoman M. Transatrial access for left atrial pressure monitoring in cardiac surgery patients. *Euro J Cardio-Thorac Surg*. 1997;11:379–380.
267. Shin B, Ayella RJ, McAslan TC. Pitfalls of Swan-Ganz catheterization. *Crit Care Med*. 1977;5:125–127.
268. Mark JB. Pulmonary artery and wedge pressure artifacts. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:49–58.
269. Morris AH, Chapman RH, Gardner RM. Frequency of technical problems encountered in the measurement of pulmonary artery wedge pressure. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12:164–170.
270. Bashein G. Another source of artifact in the pulmonary artery pressure waveform. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:310.
271. Fuchs RM, Heuser RR, Yin FCP, Brinker JA. Limitations of pulmonary wedge V waves in diagnosing mitral regurgitation. *The American Journal of Cardiology*. 1982;49:849–854.
272. Bourdillon PD, Lorell BH, Mirsky I, Paulus WJ, Wynne J, Grossman W. Increased regional myocardial stiffness of the left ventricle during pacing-induced angina in man. *Circ*. 1983;67:316–323.
273. Grossman W. Diastolic dysfunction in congestive heart failure. *New Engl J Med*. 1991;325:1557–1564.
274. Stott DK, Marpole DGF, Bristow JD, Kloster FE, Griswold HE. The role of left atrial transport in aortic and mitral stenosis. *Circ*. 1970;41:1031–1041.
275. Wohlgelernter D, Jaffe CC, Cabin HS, Yeatman LA, Cleman M. Silent ischemia during coronary occlusion produced by balloon inflation: relation to regional myocardial dysfunction. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*. 1978;10:491–498.
276. Leung JM, O'Kelly BF, Mangano DT. Relationship of regional wall motion abnormalities to hemodynamic indices of myocardial oxygen supply and demand in patients undergoing CABG surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:802–814.
277. Sabbah HN, Rosman H, Kono T, Alam M, Khaja F, Goldstein S. On the mechanism of functional mitral regurgitation. *The American Journal of Cardiology*. 1993;72:1074–1076.
278. van Daele ME, Sutherland GR, Mitchell MM, et al. Do changes in pulmonary capillary wedge pressure adequately reflect myocardial ischemia during anesthesia: a correlative preoperative hemodynamic, electrocardiographic, and transesophageal echocardiographic study. *Circ*. 1990;81:865–871.
279. Goldstein JA, Barzilai B, Rosamond TL, Eisenberg PR, Jaffe AS. Determinants of hemodynamic compromise with severe right ventricular infarction. *Circ*. 1990;82:359–368.
280. Trager MA, Feinberg BI, Kaplan JA. Right ventricular ischemia diagnosed by an esophageal electrocardiogram and right atrial pressure tracing. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1987;1:123–125.
281. Kushwaha SS, Fallon JT, Fuster V. Restrictive cardiomyopathy. *The new England Journal of Medicine*. 1997;336:267–276.
282. Kern MJ, Aguirre F. Interpretation of cardiac pathophysiology from pressure waveform analysis: pericardial compressive hemodynamics, part I. *Cathet Cardiovasc Diagn*. 1992;25:336–342.
283. Kern MJ, Aguirre F. Interpretation of cardiac pathophysiology from pressure waveform analysis: pericardial compressive hemodynamics, part II. *Cathet Cardiovasc Diagn*. 1992;26:34–40.
284. Kern MJ, Aguirre F. Interpretation of cardiac pathophysiology from pressure waveform analysis: pericardial compressive hemodynamics, part III. *Cathet Cardiovasc Diagn*. 1992;26:152–158.
285. Hirschmann JV. Pericardial constriction. *American Heart Journal*. 1978;96:110–122.
286. Beloucif S, Takata M, Shimada M, Robotham JL. Influence of pericardial constraint on atrioventricular interactions. *Am J Physiol*. 1992;263:H125–H134.
287. Lorell BH, Braunwald E. Pericardial disease. In: Braunwald E, ed. *Heart disease: a textbook of cardiovascular medicine*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company; 1992:1465–1516.
288. Fowler NO. Cardiac tamponade. A clinical or an echocardiographic diagnosis? *Circulation*. 1993;87:1738–1741.

289. Mitchell MM, Meathe EA, Jones BR, et al. Accurate, automated, continuously displayed pulmonary artery pressure measurement. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:294–300.
290. Teplick RS. Measuring central vascular pressures: a surprisingly complex problem. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:289–291.
291. Cengiz M, Crapo RO, Gardner RM. The effect of ventilation on the accuracy of pulmonary artery and wedge pressure measurements. *Crit Care Med*. 1983;11:502–507.
292. Pinsky MR. Pulmonary artery occlusion pressure. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29:19–22.
293. Gidwani UK, Mohanty B, Chatterjee K. The pulmonary artery catheter: a critical reappraisal. *Cardiology Clinics*. 2013;31:545–565.
294. Falicov RE, Resnekov L. Relationship of the pulmonary artery end-diastolic pressure to the left ventricular end-diastolic and mean filling pressures in patients with and without left ventricular dysfunction. *Circ*. 1970;42:65–73.
295. Scheinman M, Evans GT, Weiss A, Rapaport E. Relationship between pulmonary artery end-diastolic pressure and left ventricular filling pressure in patients in shock. *Circ*. 1973;47:317–324.
296. Mark JB. Predicting left ventricular end-diastolic pressure. In: Mark JB, ed. *Atlas of cardiovascular monitoring*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998:59–79.
297. Osman D, Ridel C, Ray P, et al. Cardiac filling pressures are not appropriate to predict hemodynamic response to volume challenge. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:64–68.
298. Trof RJ, Danad I, Reilingh MWL, Breukers R-MBGE, Groeneveld ABJ. Cardiac filling volumes versus pressures for predicting fluid responsiveness after cardiovascular surgery: the role of systolic cardiac function. *Critical Care*. 2011;15. R73-R.
299. McGregor M, Sniderman A. On pulmonary vascular resistance: the need for more precise definition. *The American Journal of Cardiology*. 1985;55:217–221.
300. Permutt S, Riley RL. Hemodynamics of collapsible vessels with tone: the vascular waterfall. *J Appl Phys*. 1963;34:924–932.
301. Brengelmann GL. Counterpoint: the classical Guyton view that mean systemic pressure, right atrial pressure, and venous resistance govern venous return is not correct. *J Appl physiol*. 2006;101:1525–1526. discussion 6-7.
302. Naeije R. Pulmonary vascular resistance. A meaningless variable? *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29:526–529.
303. Reeves JT, Grover RF, Filley GF. Cardiac output in normal resting man. *J Appl Physiol*. 1961;16:276.
304. De Backer D, Hajjar LA, Pinsky MR. Is there still a place for the Swan–Ganz catheter? We are not sure. *Intensive Care Medicine*. 2018;44:960–962.
305. De Backer D, Vincent JL. The pulmonary artery catheter: is it still alive? *Current Opinion in Critical Care*. 2018;24:204–208.
306. Youssef N, Whitlock RP. The routine use of the pulmonary artery catheter should be abandoned. *Canadian Journal of Cardiology*. 2017;33:135–141.
307. Lee M, Curley GF, Mustard M, Mazer CD. The Swan-Ganz catheter remains a critically important component of monitoring in cardiovascular critical care. *Canadian Journal of Cardiology*. 2017;33:142–147.
308. Connors AF, Speroff T, Dawson NV, et al. The effectiveness of right heart catheterization in the initial care of critically ill patients. *JAMA*. 1996;276:889–897.
309. Dalen JE, Bone RC. Is it time to pull the pulmonary artery catheter? *JAMA*. 1996;276:916–918.
310. Valentine RJ, Duke ML, Inman MH, et al. Effectiveness of pulmonary artery catheters in aortic surgery: a randomized trial. *J Vasc Surg*. 1998;27:203–211. discussion 11-2.
311. Tuman KJ, Carroll GC, Ivankovich AD. Pitfalls in interpretation of pulmonary artery catheter data. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1989;3:625–641.
312. Connors AF, Harrell FEJ, Knaus WA, Wagner D. Effectiveness of right heart catheterization: time for a randomized trial. *JAMA*. 1997;277:113–114.
313. Binanay C, Califf RM, Hasselblad V, et al. Evaluation study of congestive heart failure and pulmonary artery catheterization effectiveness: the ESCAPE trial. *JAMA*. 2005;294:1625–1633.
314. Wheeler AP, Bernard GR, Thompson BT, et al. Pulmonary-artery versus central venous catheter to guide treatment of acute lung injury. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2006;354:2213–2224.
315. Harvey S, Harrison DA, Singer M, et al. Assessment of the clinical effectiveness of pulmonary artery catheters in management of patients in intensive care (PAC-Man): a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2005;366:472–477.
316. De Backer D. Hemodynamic assessment: the technique or the physician at fault? *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29:1865–1867.
317. Friese RS, Shafi S, Gentilello LM. Pulmonary artery catheter use is associated with reduced mortality in severely injured patients: a National Trauma Data Bank analysis of 53,312 patients. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1597–1601.
318. Chittock DR, Dhingra VK, Ronco JJ, et al. Severity of illness and risk of death associated with pulmonary artery catheter use. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:911–915.
319. Kavarana MN, Azimuddin K, Agarwal A, Balsano N, Cayten CG, Agarwal N. Hemodynamic monitoring in the elderly undergoing elective colon resection for cancer. *Am Surg*. 2003;69:411–415.
320. Sotomi Y, Sato N, Kajimoto K, et al. Impact of pulmonary artery catheter on outcome in patients with acute heart failure syndromes with hypotension or receiving inotropes: from the ATTEND Registry. *International Journal of Cardiology*. 2014;172:165–172.
321. Ikuta K, Wang Y, Robinson A, Ahmad T, Krumholz HM, Desai NR. National trends in use and outcomes of pulmonary artery catheters among medicare beneficiaries, 1999-2013. *JAMA Cardiology*. 2017;2.
322. Pinsky MR, Vincent JL. Let us use the pulmonary artery catheter correctly and only when we need it. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:1119–1122.
323. Sotomi Y, Sato N, Kajimoto K, et al. Impact of pulmonary artery catheter on outcome in patients with acute heart failure syndromes with hypotension or receiving inotropes: from the ATTEND Registry. *International Journal of Cardiology*. 2014;172:165–172.
324. Allen LA, Rogers JG, Warnica JW, et al. High mortality without ESCAPE: the registry of heart failure patients receiving pulmonary artery catheters without randomization. *Journal of Cardiac Failure*. 2008;14:661–669.
325. Hartog C, Bloos F. Venous oxygen saturation. *Best Practice & Research Clinical Anaesthesiology*. 2014;28:419–428.
326. Scalea TM, Hartnett RW, Duncan AO, et al. Central venous oxygen saturation: a useful clinical tool in trauma patients. *J Trauma*. 1990;30:1539–1543.
327. Pearse R, Dawson D, Fawcett J, Rhodes A, Grounds RM, Bennett ED. Changes in central venous saturation after major surgery, and association with outcome. *Critical Care*. 2005;9:R694–R699.
328. Vallet B, Robin E, Lebuffe G. Venous oxygen saturation as a physiologic transfusion trigger. *Critical Care (London, England)*. 2010;14:213.
329. Pölönen P, Ruokonen E, Hippeläinen M, Pöyhönen M, Takala J. A prospective, randomized study of goal-oriented hemodynamic therapy in cardiac surgical patients. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2000;90:1052–1059.
330. Donati A, Loggi S, Preiser J-C, et al. Goal-directed intraoperative therapy reduces morbidity and length of hospital stay in high-risk surgical patients. *Chest*. 2007;132:1817–1824.
331. Smetkin AA, Kirov MY, Kuzkov VV, et al. Single transpulmonary thermodilution and continuous monitoring of central venous oxygen saturation during off-pump coronary surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53:505–514.
332. Rivers E, Nguyen B, Havstad S, et al. Early goal-directed therapy in the treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2001;345:1368–1377.
333. Pro CI, Yealy DM, Kellum JA, et al. A randomized trial of protocol-based care for early septic shock. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2014;370:1683–1693.
334. London MJ, Moritz TE, Henderson WG, et al. Standard versus fiberoptic pulmonary artery catheterization for cardiac surgery in the Department of Veterans Affairs. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:860–870.
335. Haddad F, Doyle R, Murphy DJ, Hunt SA. Right ventricular function in cardiovascular disease, part II: pathophysiology, clinical importance, and management of right ventricular failure. *Circulation*. 2008;117:1717–1731.
336. Dhainaut J-F, Brunet F, Monsallier JF, et al. Bedside evaluation of right ventricular performance using a rapid computerized thermodilution method. *Crit Care Med*. 1987;15:148–152.
337. Nelson LD. The new pulmonary artery catheters: continuous venous oximetry, right ventricular ejection fraction, and continuous cardiac output. *New Horizons*. 1997;5:251–258.
338. Chang MC, Blinman TA, Rutherford EJ, Nelson LD, Morris Jr JA. Preload assessment in trauma patients during large-volume shock resuscitation. *Arch Surg*. 1996;131:728–731.
339. Her C, Lees DE. Accurate assessment of right ventricular function in acute respiratory failure. *Crit Care Med*. 1993;21:1665–1672.

340. Boldt J, Kling D, Moosdorf R, Hempelmann G. Influence of acute volume loading on right ventricular function after cardiopulmonary bypass. *Crit Care Med*. 1989;17:518–522.
341. Dupont H, Squara P. Cardiac output monitoring. *Current Opinion in Anaesthesiology*. 1996;9:490–494.
342. Linton RAF, Linton NWF, Kelly F. Is clinical assessment of the circulation reliable in postoperative cardiac surgical patients? *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2002;16:4–7.
343. Funk DJ, Moretti EW, Gan TJ. Minimally invasive cardiac output monitoring in the perioperative setting. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2009;108:887–897.
344. Reuter DA, Huang C, Edrich T, Shernan SK, Eltzschig HK. Cardiac output monitoring using indicator-dilution techniques: basics, limits, and perspectives. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2010;110:799–811.
345. Nishikawa T, Dohi S. Errors in the measurement of cardiac output by thermodilution. *Canadian Journal Of Anaesthesia = Journal Canadien D'anesthesie*. 1993;40:142–153.
346. Stetz CW, Miller RG, Kelly GE, Raffin TA. Reliability of the thermodilution method in the determination of cardiac output in clinical practice. *The American Review of Respiratory Disease*. 1982;126:1001–1004.
347. Dhingra VK, Fenwick JC, Walley KR, Chittock DR, Ronco JJ. Lack of agreement between thermodilution and Fick cardiac output in critically ill patients. *Chest*. 2002;122:990–997.
348. Ganz W, Donoso R, Marcus HS, Forrester JS, Swan HJC. A new technique for measurement of cardiac output by thermodilution in man. *The American Journal of Cardiology*. 1971;27:392–396.
349. Heerdt PM, Blessios GA, Beach ML, Hogue CW. Flow dependency of error in thermodilution measurement of cardiac output during acute tricuspid regurgitation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2001;15:183–187.
350. Bazaral MG, Petre J, Novoa R. Errors in thermodilution cardiac output measurements caused by rapid pulmonary artery temperature decreases after cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:31–37.
351. Wetzel RC, Latson TW. Major errors in thermodilution cardiac output measurement during rapid volume infusion. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:684–687.
352. Groeneveld ABJ, Berendsen RR, Schneider AJ, Pneumatikos IA, Stokkel LA, Thijs LG. Effect of the mechanical ventilatory cycle on thermodilution right ventricular volumes and cardiac output. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000;89:89–96.
353. van Grondelle A, Ditchey RV, Groves BM, Wagner Jr WW, Reeves JT. Thermodilution method overestimates low cardiac output in humans. *Am J Physiol*. 1983;245:H690–H692.
354. Yelderman M. Continuous measurement of cardiac output with the use of stochastic system identification techniques. *J Clin Monit*. 1990;6:322–332.
355. Siegel LC, Hennessy MM, Pearl RG. Delayed time response of the continuous cardiac output pulmonary artery catheter. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1996;83:1173–1177.
356. Gardner RM. Continuous cardiac output: how accurate and how timely? *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1302–1303.
357. Le Tulzo Y, Belghith M, Seguin P, et al. Reproducibility of thermodilution cardiac output determination in critically ill patients: comparison between bolus and continuous method. *J Clin Monit*. 1996;12:379–385.
358. Hatton KW, Yalamuri S, McCartney S, Hessel 2nd EA, Mark JB. Oscillating continuous cardiac output in postoperative critically ill patients: is this phenomenon accurate, artifact, or error? *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:e61–e62.
359. Monnet X, Teboul J-L. Transpulmonary thermodilution: advantages and limits. *Critical Care*. 2017;21.
360. Mielck F, Buhre W, Hanekop G, Tirilomis T, Hilgers R, Sonntag H. Comparison of continuous cardiac output measurements in patients after cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17:211–216.
361. Segal E, Katzenelson R, Berkenstadt H, Perel A. Transpulmonary thermodilution cardiac output measurement using the axillary artery in critically ill patients. *Journal of Clinical Anesthesia*. 2002;14:210–213.
362. von Spiegel T, Wietasch G, Bursch J, Hoeft A. [Cardiac output determination with transpulmonary thermodilution. An alternative to pulmonary catheterization?]. *Anaesthesist*. 1996;45:1045–1050.
363. Michard F. Bedside assessment of extravascular lung water by dilution methods: temptations and pitfalls. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:1186–1192.
364. Matejovic M, Krouzecky A, Rokyta Jr R, Novak I. Fluid challenge in patients at risk for fluid loading-induced pulmonary edema. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:69–73.
365. Mitchell JP, Schuller D, Calandrino FS, Schuster DP. Improved outcome based on fluid management in critically ill patients requiring pulmonary artery catheterization. *The American Review Of Respiratory Disease*. 1992;145:990–998.
366. Hoeft A, Schorn B, Weyland A, et al. Bedside assessment of intravascular volume status in patients undergoing coronary bypass surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:76–86.
367. Wiesenack C, Prasser C, Keyl C, Rodig G. Assessment of intrathoracic blood volume as an indicator of cardiac preload: single transpulmonary thermodilution technique versus assessment of pressure preload parameters derived from a pulmonary artery catheter. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2001;15:584–588.
368. Briegel J, Vogeser M, Keh D, Marik P. [Corticosteroid insufficiency in the critically ill. Pathomechanisms and recommendations for diagnosis and treatment]. *Der Anaesthesist*. 2009;58:122–133.
369. Perny J, Kimmoun A, Perez P, Levy B. Evaluation of cardiac function index as measured by transpulmonary thermodilution as an indicator of left ventricular ejection fraction in cardiogenic shock. *BioMed Research International*. 2014;2014:1–7.
370. Linton RAF, Band DM, Haire KM. A new method of measuring cardiac output in man using lithium dilution. *Brit J Anaesth*. 1993;71:262–266.
371. Kurita T, Morita K, Kato S, Kikura M, Ikeda K. Comparison of the accuracy of the lithium dilution technique with the thermodilution technique for measurement of cardiac output. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 1997;79:770–775.
372. Linton R, Band D, O'Brien T, Jonas M, Leach R. Lithium dilution cardiac output measurement: a comparison with thermodilution. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25:1796–1800.
373. Garcia-Rodriguez C, Pittman J, Cassell CH, et al. Lithium dilution cardiac output measurement: a clinical assessment of central venous and peripheral venous indicator injection. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:2199–2204.
374. Linton RA, Jonas MM, Tibby SM, et al. Cardiac output measured by lithium dilution and transpulmonary thermodilution in patients in a paediatric intensive care unit. *Intensive Care Med*. 2000;26:1507–1511.
375. Joosten A, Desebbe O, Suehiro K, et al. Accuracy and precision of non-invasive cardiac output monitoring devices in perioperative medicine: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2017;118:298–310.
376. Colquhoun DA, Roche AM. Oesophageal Doppler cardiac output monitoring: a longstanding tool with evolving indications and applications. *Best Practice & Research Clinical Anaesthesiology*. 2014;28:353–362.
377. Laupland KB, Bands CJ. Utility of esophageal Doppler as a minimally invasive hemodynamic monitor: a review. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia = Journal Canadien D'anesthesie*. 2002;49:393–401.
378. Mark JB, Steinbrook RA, Gugino LD, et al. Continuous noninvasive monitoring of cardiac output with esophageal Doppler ultrasound during cardiac surgery. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1986;65:1013–1020.
379. Roche AM, Miller TE, Gan TJ. Goal-directed fluid management with trans-oesophageal Doppler. *Best Practice & Research Clinical Anaesthesiology*. 2009;23:327–334.
380. Abbas SM, Hill AG. Systematic review of the literature for the use of oesophageal Doppler monitor for fluid replacement in major abdominal surgery. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:44–51.
381. Singer M. Esophageal Doppler monitoring of aortic blood flow: beat-by-beat cardiac output monitoring. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1993;31:99–125.
382. Thys DM, Hillel Z. Left ventricular performance indices by transesophageal Doppler. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:728–737.
383. Lee JH, Kim JT, Yoon SZ, et al. Evaluation of corrected flow time in oesophageal Doppler as a predictor of fluid responsiveness. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2007;99:343–348.
384. Guinot P-G, de Broca B, Abou Arab O, et al. Ability of stroke volume variation measured by oesophageal Doppler monitoring to predict fluid responsiveness during surgery. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2013;110:28–33.
385. Poeze M, Ramsay G, Greve JWM, Singer M. Prediction of postoperative cardiac surgical morbidity and organ failure within 4 hours of intensive care unit admission using esophageal Doppler ultrasonography. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:1288–1294.

386. Calvo-Vecino JM, Ripollés-Melchor J, Mythen MG, et al. Effect of goal-directed haemodynamic therapy on postoperative complications in low–moderate risk surgical patients: a multicentre randomised controlled trial (FEDORA trial). *British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2018;120:734–744.
387. Kubicek WG, Karnegis JN, Patterson RP. Development and evaluation of an impedance cardiac output system. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1966;37:1208–1212.
388. Jakovljevic DG, Trenell MI, MacGowan GA. Bioimpedance and bioreactance methods for monitoring cardiac output. *Best Practice & Research Clinical Anaesthesiology*. 2014;28:381–394.
389. Peyton PJ, Chong SW. Minimally invasive measurement of cardiac output during surgery and critical CAREA meta-analysis of accuracy and precision. *Anesthesiology: The Journal of The American Society of Anesthesiologists*. 2010;113:1220–1235.
390. Jaffe MB. Partial CO_2 rebreathing cardiac output -- operating principles of the NICO system. *J Clin Monit*. 1999;15:387–401.
391. Orr J, Westenskow D, Kofoed S, Turner R. A non-invasive cardiac output system using the partial rebreathing Fick method. *J Clin Monit*. 1996;12:464–465.
392. Osterlund B, Gedeon A, Krill P, Johansson G, Reiz S. A new method of using gas exchange measurements for the noninvasive determination of cardiac output: clinical experiences in adults following cardiac surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:727–732.
393. Thiele RH, Durieux ME. Arterial waveform analysis for the anesthesiologist: past, present, and future concepts. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2011;113:766–776.
394. Wesseling KH, Jansen JR, Settels JJ, Schreuder JJ. Computation of aortic flow from pressure in humans using a nonlinear, three-element model. *J Appl Physiol*. 1993;74:2566–2573.
395. Linton NWF, Linton RAF. Estimation of changes in cardiac output from the arterial blood pressure waveform in the upper limb. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2001;86:486–496.
396. Bogert LW, Wesseling KH, Schraa O, et al. Pulse contour cardiac output derived from non-invasive arterial pressure in cardiovascular disease. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:1119–1125.
397. Michard F. Changes in arterial pressure during mechanical ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:419–428. quiz 49-5.
398. Lieshout JJ, Wesseling KH. Continuous cardiac output by pulse contour analysis? *British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2001;86:467–469.
399. Cecconi M, Malbrain MLNG. Cardiac output obtained by pulse pressure analysis: to calibrate or not to calibrate may not be the only question when used properly. *Intensive Care Medicine*. 2013;39:787–789.
400. Monnet X, Anguel N, Jozwiak M, Richard C, Teboul J-L. Third-generation FloTrac/Vigileo does not reliably track changes in cardiac output induced by norepinephrine in critically ill patients. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2012;108:615–622.
401. Camporota L, Beale R. Pitfalls in haemodynamic monitoring based on the arterial pressure waveform. *Critical Care (London, England)*. 2010;14:124.
402. De Backer D, Heenen S, Piagnerelli M, Koch M, Vincent JL. Pulse pressure variations to predict fluid responsiveness: influence of tidal volume. *Intensive Care Med*. 2005;31:517–523.
403. Goedje O, Hoeke K, Lichtwarck-Aschoff M, Faltchauser A, Lamm P, Reichart B. Continuous cardiac output by femoral arterial thermodilution calibrated pulse contour analysis: comparison with pulmonary arterial thermodilution. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:2407–2412.
404. Pittman J, Bar-Yosef S, SumPing J, Sherwood M, Mark J. Continuous cardiac output monitoring with pulse contour analysis: a comparison with lithium indicator dilution cardiac output measurement. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:2015–2021.
405. Benes J, Chytra I, Altmann P, et al. Intraoperative fluid optimization using stroke volume variation in high risk surgical patients: results of prospective randomized study. *Critical Care (London, England)*. 2010;14:R118.
406. Mayer J, Boldt J, Mengistu A, Rohm K, Suttner S. Goal-directed intraoperative therapy based on autocalibrated arterial pressure waveform analysis reduces hospital stay in high-risk surgical patients: a randomized, controlled trial. *Critical Care*. 2010;14:R18.
407. Salzwedel C, Puig J, Carstens A, et al. Perioperative goal-directed hemodynamic therapy based on radial arterial pulse pressure variation and continuous cardiac index trending reduces postoperative complications after major abdominal surgery: a multi-center, prospective, randomized study. *Critical Care*. 2013;17:1.

37

Perioperative Echocardiography

MEGAN L. KRAJEWSKI and FEROZE MAHMOOD

KEY POINTS

- Perioperative applications of transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) include monitoring, diagnosis, and procedural guidance. The role of TEE in cardiac surgery, noncardiac surgery, interventional procedures, and critical care continues to evolve.
- In noncardiac surgery, intraoperative TEE serves as a routine monitor or as a rescue tool in life-threatening emergencies.
- TEE aids in decision making during cardiac surgery, and three-dimensional (3-D) TEE adds incremental value in intraoperative assessments.
- TEE is integral to structural heart interventions and is a key component of multimodality imaging.
- Echocardiography plays a vital role in the diagnosis and management of shock.
- Applications of transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) in the perioperative setting are expanding.
- Focused cardiac ultrasound is performed and interpreted at the point of care, and addresses specific questions relevant to the clinical context.
- Critical care societies have proposed distinct competencies and guidelines for critical care echocardiography beyond those included in perioperative TEE guidelines. The skill set of the intensivist performing echocardiography overlaps with that of the intraoperative echocardiographer and includes other unique components.
- Basic knowledge of echocardiography is an expectation of anesthesiology training.
- Simulation is an effective training tool when integrated within a multimodal, curriculum-based approach to echocardiography education.

Introduction

Echocardiography is an invaluable tool used throughout the perioperative period. Image acquisition and interpretation occur at the point of care, enabling real-time integration of the findings in the context of the patient's clinical condition. Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) has broad functionality in the perioperative environment. TEE serves as an intraoperative monitor, provides detailed structural and functional information, facilitates diagnosis of pathology, and guides percutaneous interventions. Applications of TEE have expanded within cardiac surgery, and into the realms of noncardiac surgery, catheter-based procedures, and critical care. As the use of clinical ultrasound grows in modern anesthetic practice, perioperative clinicians are also beginning to embrace transthoracic echocardiography (TTE). Critical care echocardiography shares many similarities with intraoperative echocardiography, but is simultaneously evolving under the larger umbrella of critical care ultrasonography. This chapter provides a historical synopsis and summary of imaging techniques and echocardiographic views and discusses applications of TEE and TTE in perioperative care.

History of Perioperative Echocardiography

INTRAOPERATIVE TRANSESOPHAGEAL ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY

Decades of evolution and advancement have led to the current state of perioperative TEE (Fig. 37.1).[1] Clinical echocardiography first emerged in the 1950s with the use of motion mode (M-mode) ultrasound to record signals from cardiac structures.[2] Nearly two decades later, the first intraoperative echocardiography was performed with epicardial imaging.[3] The first practical clinical application of TEE was reported in 1976.[4] Soon after, a group reported the first use of intraoperative TEE[5] and described its utility in monitoring left ventricular (LV) function during cardiac surgery.[6] In the 1980s, the mounting of two-dimensional (2-D) transducers onto modified flexible gastroscopes[7,8] created more versatile probes, and pioneering anesthesiologists and cardiologists began to demonstrate the usefulness of TEE as an intraoperative monitor.[9-11] Further advancements such as transducers with combined 2-D and Doppler capabilities,[12,13] biplane imaging,[14] multiplane imaging,[15] and pediatric probes[16] unlocked the diagnostic potential of intraoperative TEE. Real-time three-dimensional imaging (RT-3D) entered the scene in the mid-2000s,[17] and since then its intraoperative use has grown exponentially. Advances in probe technology and improved computing power continue to further the practicality of three-dimensional (3-D) image acquisition.

CRITICAL CARE ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY

Prior to the introduction of TEE in 1976, significant advances in 2-D transthoracic imaging occurred, leading to better visualization of cardiac structures.[18-22] Production of commercially available instruments soon followed. In the intensive care units (ICUs), some clinicians incorporated echocardiography in the evaluation of cardiac function in acute respiratory distress syndrome and sepsis.[23,24]

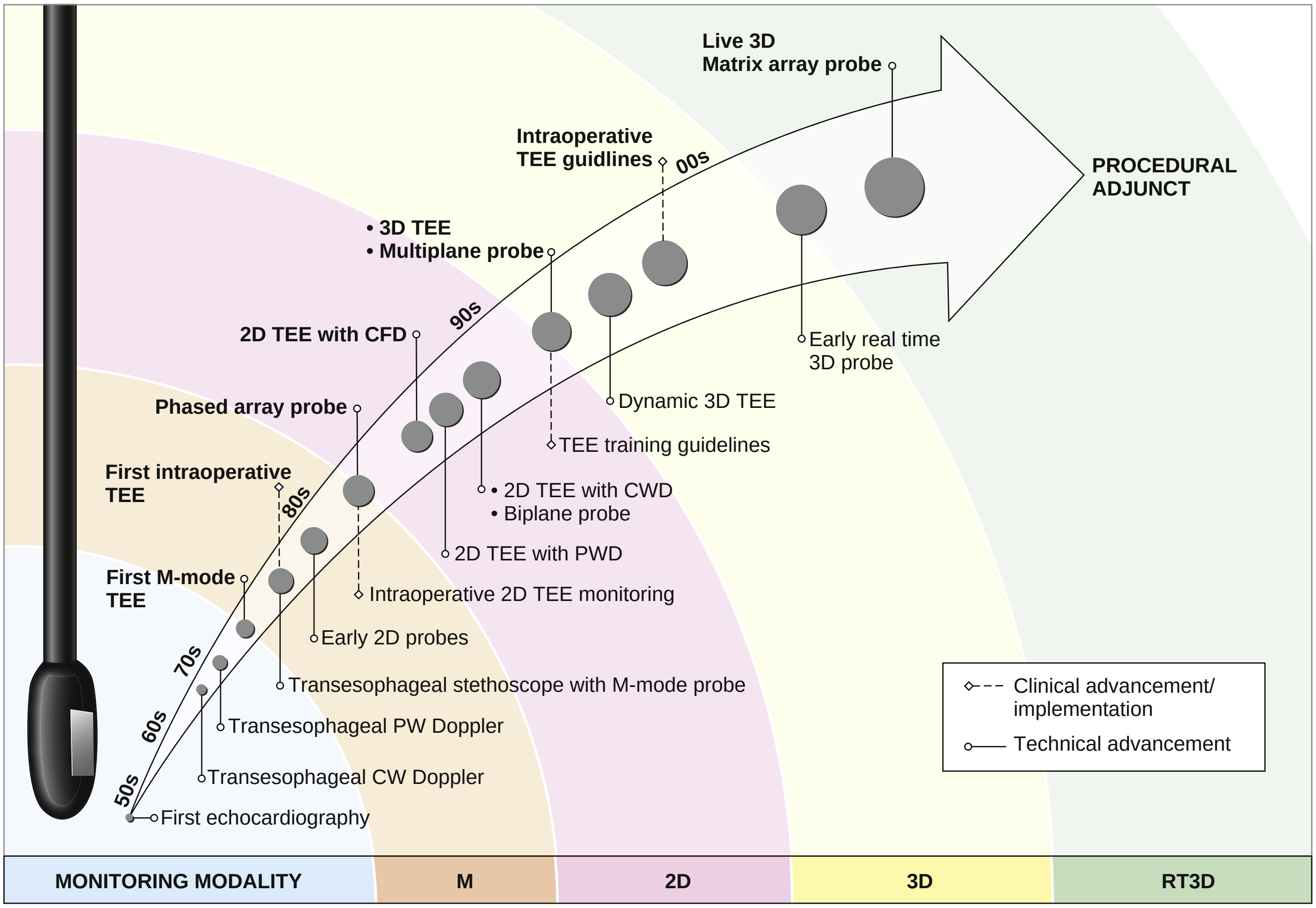

Live 3D
Matrix array probe
PROCEDURAL ADJUNCT
Intraoperative TEE guidlines
00s
• 3D TEE
• Multiplane probe
2D TEE with CFD
90s
Early real time 3D probe
Dynamic 3D TEE
Phased array probe
TEE training guidelines
First intraoperative TEE
80s
• 2D TEE with CWD
• Biplane probe
2D TEE with PWD
First M-mode TEE
Intraoperative 2D TEE monitoring
Early 2D probes
70s
Transesophageal stethoscope with M-mode probe
60s
Transesophageal PW Doppler
Transesophageal CW Doppler
50s
First echocardiography
Clinical advancement/ implementation
Technical advancement
MONITORING MODALITY
M
2D
3D
RT3D

Fig. 37.1 Evolution of transesophageal echocardiography *(TEE)* over the years from a monitoring modality to procedural adjunct. *2D*, two-dimensional; *3D*, three-dimensional; *CFD*, color flow Doppler; *CWD*, continuous wave Doppler; *RT3D*, real-time 3D. (Modified with permission from, Mahmood F, Shernan SK. Perioperative transoesophageal echocardiography: current status and future directions. *Heart*. 2016;102(15):1159–1167.)

TTE was not widely disseminated in ICUs, however, as the intensivist's tool of choice at the time was the pulmonary artery catheter.[25-27] During the late 1990s to 2000s, the use of pulmonary artery catheters declined,[28-32] and TTE simultaneously gained more traction in the ICUs. With the miniaturization of equipment and emphasis on point-of-care ultrasound, use of echocardiography as a hemodynamic monitor and diagnostic tool in the ICU continues to increase.

Principles of Ultrasound

While a thorough discussion of ultrasound physics is beyond the scope of this chapter, a basic understanding of fundamental concepts is requisite for any echocardiographer. Sound is a mechanical, longitudinal wave of vibrations propagated through a medium. Several parameters describe sound waves including frequency, wavelength, amplitude, and propagation speed. Ultrasound waves are sound waves with frequencies above the audible human range (20-20,000 hertz [Hz]). Echocardiography typically uses frequencies between 2 and 12 megahertz (MHz). Ultrasound transducers use piezoelectric elements to convert ultrasound energy into electrical energy and vice versa. Transducers function both as transmitters and receivers of ultrasound signals. 2-D echocardiography uses a phased-array transducer, which has a row of electrically interconnected piezoelectric elements.

As ultrasound energy propagates through tissue, interactions between the wave and tissue result in absorption, divergence, reflection, and scattering of the energy. Reflection of ultrasound energy at tissue interfaces forms the basis of image generation. These sound-tissue interactions reduce the intensity of the ultrasound signal, and this attenuation limits the depth of imaging. Transmitted energy at tissue interfaces often undergoes refraction and changes directions, contributing to imaging artifacts.

The accurate display of an image depends on imaging resolution, components of which include spatial resolution, temporal resolution, and contrast resolution (Table 37.1). Spatial resolution can be described according to the three beam dimensions: axial, lateral, and elevational. Image formation involves a tradeoff between spatial resolution and depth of penetration. Higher frequency (shorter wavelength) transducers provide superior axial resolution, but limited penetration depth due to attenuation. Lower frequencies (longer wavelengths) penetrate more deeply at the expense of axial resolution. Higher

TABLE 37.1 Components of Imaging Resolution

	Description	Practical points
Spatial resolution	The ability to discriminate between two closely-spaced objects The minimum distance necessary between two structures so that they are displayed as separate objects	Determines image details Factors that improve spatial resolution often come at the expense of decreased temporal resolution and vice versa
Axial	Differentiates between objects along the length of the ultrasound beam	Higher frequency transducers have shorter wavelengths and better axial resolution Axial resolution is superior to lateral resolution
Lateral	Discriminates side-to-side (or horizontal) relative to the direction of the beam	Determined by the beam width Best at the focal point of the beam
Elevational	Discriminates between objects vertical to the plane of the ultrasound beam	Determined by the beam height Best at the focal point of the beam
Temporal resolution	The ability to accurately display a structure's motion with respect to time	The higher the frame rate, the better the temporal resolution Factors that decrease the time to scan the sector (e.g., decreasing the imaging depth or creating a narrower imaging sector) improve temporal resolution
Contrast resolution	The ability to resolve subtle differences in echogenicity, which are displayed as different shades of gray	Improved by harmonic imaging, use of contrast agents, B-color maps, and post-processing controls

frequencies are better for imaging superficial structures; lower frequencies are better for deeper structures.

Formation of ultrasound images relies on several assumptions: (1) ultrasound energy propagates in a straight line; (2) all returning echoes originate from the central beam, which is extremely thin; (3) echoes return to the transducer after one reflection; (4) attenuation is constant; and (5) the speed of sound is constant, therefore the depth of a reflector is proportional to the round-trip transit time.[33] Violations of these assumptions result in imaging artifacts. Spectral and color flow Doppler (CFD) and 3-D images are also susceptible to imaging artifacts.

Ultrasound Modalities

Key ultrasound modalities used in echocardiography include motion mode (M-mode), 2-D imaging, Doppler (spectral and color flow), and Doppler tissue imaging (DTI). Table 37.2 highlights important aspects of these techniques. Additional techniques may be applied in specific contexts and are introduced in the next section.

STRAIN AND STRAIN-RATE IMAGING

Strain and strain-rate imaging techniques (also called cardiac mechanics or myocardial deformation) are used to quantify global and regional ventricular function. Strain is the relative change in shape or size of an object as a result of an applied force. In the context of the myocardium, it is the fractional change in the length of a segment relative to its baseline and expressed as a percentage. Positive strain indicates lengthening or thickening and negative strain represents shortening or thinning. Three axes are relevant to myocardial deformation: longitudinal, circumferential, and radial. Normal deformation patterns during systole are longitudinal shortening (negative strain), circumferential shortening (negative strain), and radial thickening (positive strain).

Methods for strain analysis include DTI and the more commonly used speckle tracking echocardiography (STE). DTI measures velocities at two points in the myocardium and derives the strain and strain rate. STE, in contrast, tracks unique acoustic speckles in the myocardium over a series of frames and derives strain and strain rate from the change in distance. Duncan and colleagues have written an excellent review on perioperative strain and strain-rate imaging.[34]

HARMONIC IMAGING

Harmonic imaging is a processing technique used to improve the quality of 2-D images.[35] A sound wave propagates nonlinearly through tissue, distorting the wave's shape. This produces harmonic frequencies, which are integer multiples of the fundamental frequency originally transmitted by transducer. Signals return to the transducer at both the fundamental frequency and harmonic frequencies. Harmonic imaging typically creates images from the second harmonic frequency and filters the fundamental frequency signals. Harmonic imaging increases contrast resolution, improves signal-to-noise ratio, and decreases some artifacts. Disadvantages include slightly decreased spatial resolution and thickened appearance of some cardiac structures.[36,37]

CONTRAST ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY

Contrast echocardiography can be used to improve diagnostic evaluation and enhance suboptimal images.[38,39] Two methods of contrast echocardiography include injection of agitated saline or injection of commercially available contrast agents. Agitated saline can be used to identify the presence of intracardiac right-to-left shunt, because microbubbles created by agitation do not cross the pulmonary circulation.[40] Commercially available contrast agents use encapsulated microbubbles of high-density gas and are able to traverse the pulmonary circulation, allowing for opacification of the left side of the heart. Perioperative applications

TABLE 37.2 Ultrasound Modalities

Modality	Description/Features
Brightness Mode (B-mode)	■ Depicts the strength of returning sound signals using corresponding degrees of brightness ■ M-mode and 2D imaging are modifications of original B-mode imaging
Motion Mode (M-mode)	■ Displays a one-dimensional image of the motion of cardiac structures relative to time ■ Very high temporal resolution ■ Provides limited spatial information ■ Greatest utility in providing information about rapidly moving structures (e.g., valves, walls) in relation to the timing of the cardiac cycle
Two-Dimensional (2D)	■ The mainstay of the echocardiographic examination ■ Scanning of repeated pulses generates an image representative of the cardiac structures with real-time motion ■ Images are produced in a sector format ■ Temporal resolution is less than that of M-mode
Doppler	■ Ultrasound energy scattered from moving red blood cells shifts to a higher frequency when moving toward the transducer and a lower frequency when moving away ■ Doppler modes analyze this frequency shift and use the Doppler equation to estimate velocities of blood flow ■ Velocity (*v*) can be calculated as follows: $v = \frac{c * \Delta f}{2 f_t * cos\theta}$ Where c = the propagation speed of sound in blood (1540 m/s), Δf is the difference between the transmitted frequency (f_t) and the received frequency, and $\cos\theta$ is the angle of incidence between the ultrasound beam and blood flow ■ Angle-dependent ■ Maximum Doppler shift occurs when blood flow is directly parallel to the beam. When the incident angle is ≤ 20 degrees, the percentage error in estimating the velocity is ≤ 6%. At greater incident angles the error significantly increases. ■ Includes spectral (pulsed-wave, continuous wave) and color flow Doppler
Pulsed-Wave Doppler (PWD)	■ Samples blood flow velocities at a specific location ■ The frequency of sampling determines the maximum velocity that can be detected and depends on imaging depth ■ This maximum velocity is half of the pulse repetition frequency and referred to as the Nyquist limit ■ Above the Nyquist limit, *aliasing* occurs. The Doppler information is displayed ambiguously, displaying both positive and negative velocities
Continuous Wave Doppler (CWD)	■ Transducer continuously transmits and receives ultrasound energy along the length of the ultrasound beam ■ Allows measurement of higher velocity flows, such as those that are encountered with stenotic or regurgitant lesions ■ The location of the high velocity flow may occur anywhere along the length of the beam, a limitation referred to as *range ambiguity*
Color Flow Doppler (CFD)	■ A form of pulsed-wave Doppler ■ The direction and velocity of flow are measured in multiple sample volumes within an imaging sector. The direction and velocity information are displayed according to a color scale ■ Flow data are superimposed on the corresponding 2D image ■ Limited by aliasing ■ Lower temporal resolution than 2D imaging
Doppler Tissue Imaging (DTI)	■ Used to assess myocardial motion ■ Eliminates the high-velocity, low-amplitude signals from red blood cells and displays the low-velocity, high-amplitude signals from tissue ■ Angle-dependent ■ Does not distinguish between translational motion and contraction

of contrast echocardiography include improved endocardial border delineation for assessment of function, assessment of regional wall motion, and exclusion of intracardiac thrombus or mass.

Three-Dimensional Image Acquisition

3-D imaging provides information that complements the findings from the 2-D examination. Transducers with 3-D capabilities contain thousands of piezoelectric elements in a rectangular (or matrix) array configuration and create pyramidal-shaped images. The optimal 3-D image involves tradeoffs between temporal resolution, spatial resolution, and sector size. 3-D imaging is susceptible to the same artifacts as 2-D imaging and additional artifacts unique to 3-D image construction. We encourage the interested reader to refer to published 3-D echocardiography guidelines[41] as well as a practical overview focused on intraoperative 3-D image acquisition.[42]

IMAGING MODES

Two-Dimensional Multiplane Acquisition

Matrix array (3-D) transducers have multiplane imaging capabilities and can simultaneously display two or

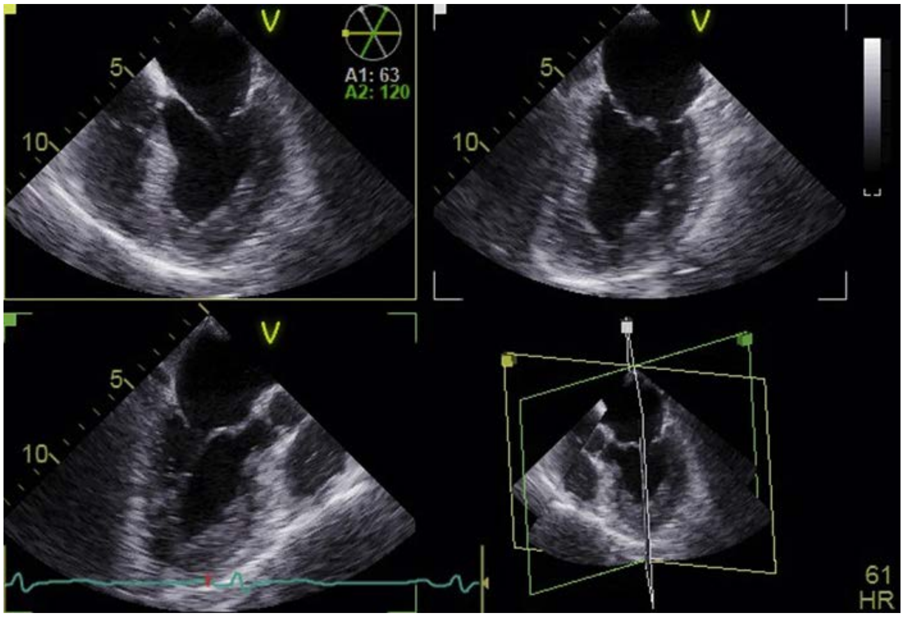


Fig. 37.2 Simultaneous display of multiple two-dimensional scan planes by multiplane imaging. The upper left panel *(yellow panel)* displays the primary reference imaging plane. The circular icon in this panel indicates the positions of the secondary imaging planes. Images from the secondary planes are displayed at the top right *(white panel)* and bottom left *(green panel)*. A three-dimensional representation of the imaging planes and their angulation is displayed at the bottom right.

BOX 37.1 **Perioperative Applications of Multiplane Imaging**

- Simultaneous visualization of segmental wall motion
- Characterization of the mechanism and origin of valvular regurgitation
- Procedural guidance during percutaneous closure of atrial septal defect
- Guidance of transseptal puncture for transcatheter left atrial appendage and mitral valve procedures
- Evaluation of the left atrial appendage morphology and exclusion of thrombus

more live 2-D imaging planes. In biplane imaging, the first image serves as the reference view, and the second image is obtained by rotating the scanning plane around the longitudinal axis of the reference view. The secondary image can also be adjusted by tilting the imaging plane in the elevational or lateral axis. Multiplane imaging allows simultaneous display of multiple rotatable imaging planes (Fig. 37.2). Box 37.1 lists common perioperative applications of multiplane imaging.

Real-Time Three-Dimensional Imaging

3-D images can be displayed live or in “real time.” RT-3D imaging acquires data over a single heartbeat; some authors refer to this as 4-D imaging. The proprietary nomenclature varies, but there are three main RT-3D modes of differing sector size:

- Narrow sector: this mode displays a pyramidal volume with the best temporal and spatial resolution of the live modes. The major limitation is that it often does not capture an entire structure of interest (Fig. 37.3).
- Wide sector: this mode “zooms in” on a selected region of interest. There is a decrease in temporal and spatial resolution compared to narrow sector imaging. Images are easy to acquire. This mode is ideal for real-time image manipulation (see Fig. 37.3).
- Full-volume: full-volume mode has the largest imaging sector. Live full-volume images have reduced temporal and spatial resolution. Ideally, acquisition of full-volume images occurs over multiple beats. Live full-volume mode has utility when multiple-beat acquisition is not feasible.

Gated Acquisition

Gated acquisition divides the imaging volume into multiple narrow subvolumes that are acquired over a specified number of heartbeats. “Stitching” the subvolumes together creates the final image. In order to obtain the subvolumes at the same time in the cardiac cycle, image acquisition is gated to the R-wave of the electrocardiogram (ECG). Gated acquisition requires normal cardiac rhythm and the absence of electrical interference and respiratory variation.

- Wide sector: multiple-beat gated acquisition using wide sector mode significantly improves the temporal resolution of the “zoomed in” view. Spatial resolution marginally improves.
- Full-volume: this mode has the largest sector size with optimal spatial resolution and high temporal resolution (Fig. 37.4; Video 37.1).

Color Flow Doppler

CFD may be incorporated with any of the modalities, but leads to a reduction in temporal resolution. Optimal CFD images are obtained using R-wave gated multiple beat acquisitions.

QUANTITATIVE ANALYSIS

Multiplanar Reformatting

Multiplanar reformatting enables alignment of orthogonal planes to accurately measure linear dimensions and areas (e.g., planimetry of stenotic orifice, annular area).

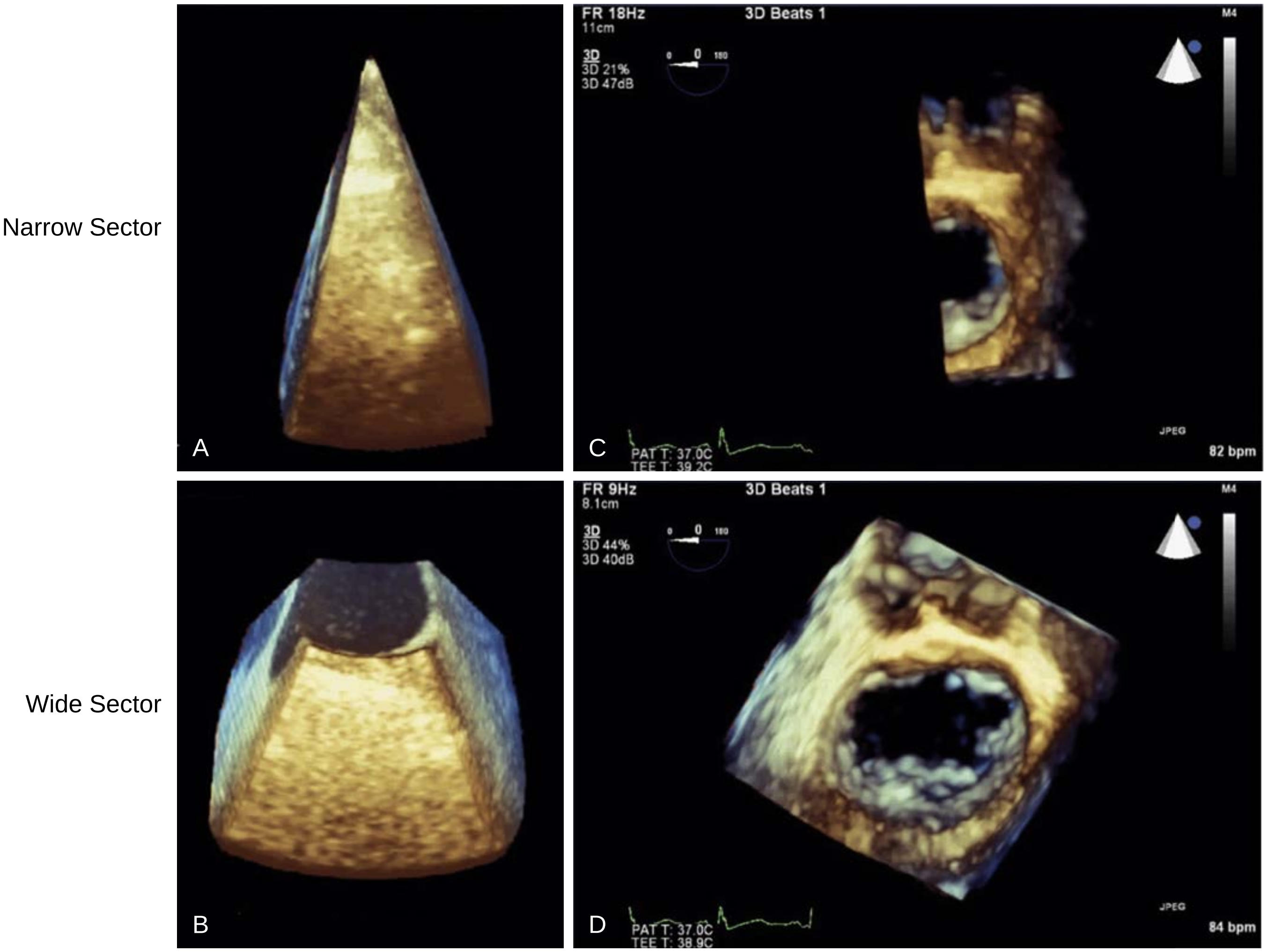

Narrow Sector
Wide Sector
A
B
C
D
FR 18Hz
11cm
3D Beats 1
M4
3D
3D 21%
3D 47dB
0
180
PAT T: 37.0C
TEE T: 39.2C
JPEG
82 bpm
FR 9Hz
8.1cm
3D Beats 1
M4
3D
3D 44%
3D 40dB
0
180
PAT T: 37.0C
TEE T: 38.9C
JPEG
84 bpm

Fig. 37.3 Real-time three-dimensional imaging using narrow sector *(top)* and wide sector *(bottom)* modes. (A) Narrow sector imaging displays a narrow, pyramidal volume. (B) Wide sector imaging displays a defined region of interest selected from a larger pyramidal volume. (C) Narrow sector image of the mitral valve after cropping and rotating. Only a portion of the mitral valve structure is visualized. (D) Wide sector image of the mitral valve after cropping and rotating. The entire mitral valve structure is visualized, but at the expense of decreased spatial and temporal resolution.

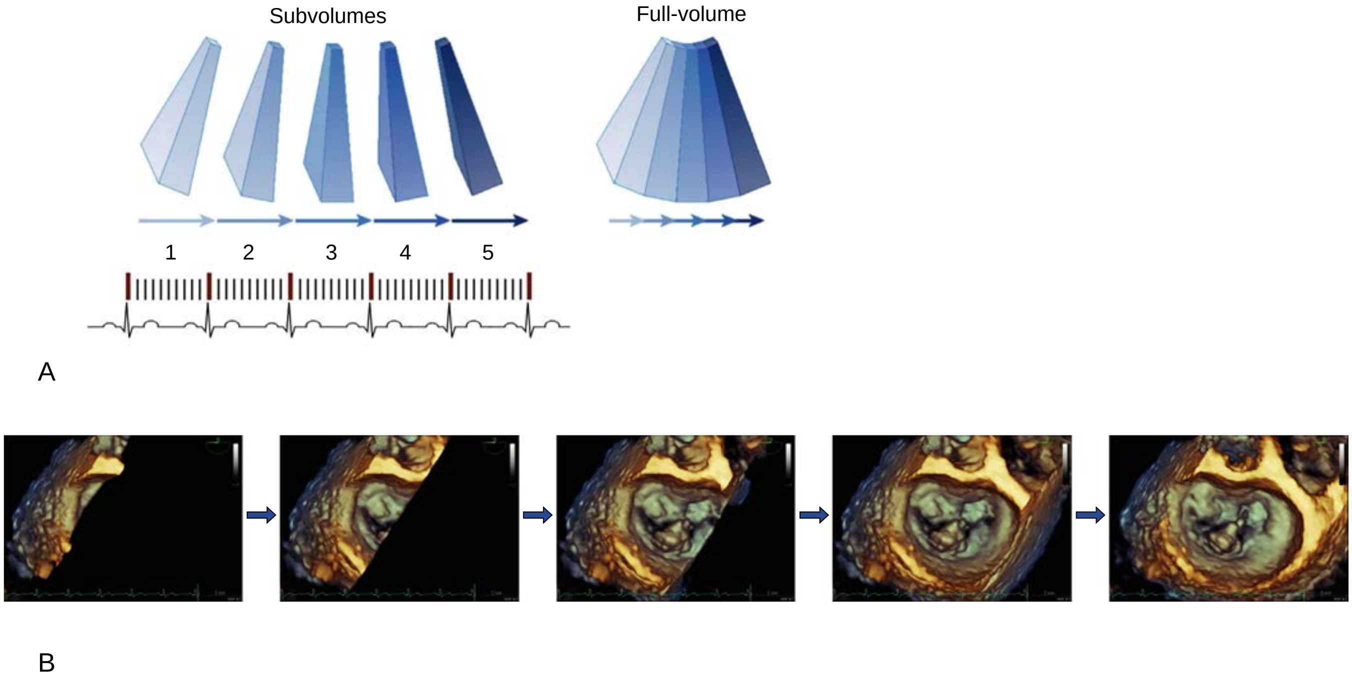

Subvolumes
Full-volume
1
2
3
4
5
A
B

Fig. 37.4 (A) Schematic of multibeat gated full-volume image acquisition. Subvolume acquisition is gated to the R-wave of the electrocardiogram. In this example, subvolume acquisition occurs over five consecutive heartbeats. The individual subvolumes are then synchronized and "stitched" together to create a larger full-volume three-dimensional image. (B) Creation of the three-dimensional (3D) full-volume image from narrow subvolumes. (Modified from Desjardins G. Perioperative echocardiography. In: Miller R, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier/Saunders; 2015:1396–1428.)

Advanced Applications

Quantitative applications exist for 3-D imaging and eliminate some of the geometric assumptions required in 2-D imaging calculations. Example analyses include calculation of ventricular ejection fraction (EF), analysis of mitral valve structure, and dynamic annular measurements. The degree of automation and need for post-processing manipulation vary. Some analyses are performed exclusively offline, making them useful in research, but less applicable to intraoperative decision making.

Indications and Practice Guidelines

PERIOPERATIVE TRANSESOPHAGEAL ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY

The American Society of Anesthesiology (ASA) and Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists (SCA) issued perioperative TEE practice guidelines in 1996, categorizing indications for TEE in various clinical settings.[43] An updated version in 2010 recommended the indications for perioperative TEE based on literature review and expert opinion.[44] In the absence of contraindications, TEE should be used in all adult open heart and thoracic aortic surgical procedures. It should be considered in coronary artery bypass graft surgeries to confirm diagnostic information, detect pathology, influence the anesthetic or surgical plan, and assess surgical results. It is recommended that TEE be considered on a case-by-case basis in small children undergoing cardiac surgery due to unique risks in this population. For catheter-based intracardiac procedures, the 2010 guidelines state TEE may be used. Separate guidelines focus specifically on the role of echocardiography in interventional and catheter-based procedures.[45,46] In noncardiac surgery, TEE is indicated in the setting of persistent unexplained life-threatening circulatory instability. If the surgical procedure or the patient's known or suspected pathology could result in severe hemodynamic, pulmonary, or neurologic compromise, TEE may be used. TEE is recommended in critical care if the diagnostic information is expected to alter management and cannot be obtained by other modalities expediently. European guidelines offer similar recommendations for the use of perioperative TEE,[47-49] while the American Heart Association (AHA) and American College of Cardiology (ACC) make more limited recommendations regarding specific indications for intraoperative TEE.[50,51]

In addition to describing indications for perioperative TEE, the 1996 ASA/SCA guidelines also distinguish between basic and advanced levels of training.[43] In 2002, an American Society of Echocardiography (ASE)/SCA Joint Task Force authored guidelines for training in perioperative echocardiography, defined as TEE, epicardial echocardiography, or epiaortic ultrasonography performed in surgical patients immediately before, during, or after surgery.[52] These guidelines do not include TTE. Expectations for cognitive and technical skills of both basic and advanced training are outlined with recommendations for the minimum numbers of echocardiographic examinations performed. Further discussion of training and certification occurs at the end of the chapter.

TABLE 37.3 List of Contraindications to Transesophageal Echocardiography

Absolute Contraindications	Relative Contraindications
Esophageal pathology ■ Diverticulum ■ Laceration ■ Stricture ■ Tumor	History of: ■ Dysphagia ■ Radiation to neck and chest ■ Upper gastrointestinal surgery
Active upper gastrointestinal bleeding	Recent upper gastrointestinal bleeding
History of esophagectomy	Active peptic ulcer disease, esophagitis
Perforated viscus	Esophageal varices Barrett's esophagus Symptomatic hiatal hernia Restricted cervical spine mobility ■ Atlantoaxial instability ■ Severe cervical arthritis Coagulopathy or thrombocytopenia

Adapted from Hahn RT, Abraham T, Adams MS, et al. Guidelines for performing a comprehensive transesophageal echocardiographic examination: recommendations from the American Society of Echocardiography and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2013;26(9):921–964.

CRITICAL CARE

Critical care societies have further defined competencies and applications of echocardiography in critical care beyond that established by the ASA/SCA guidelines. Several internationally based expert panels have proposed training objectives and competency-based training standards in consensus statements. Similar to the distinction between basic and advanced training in perioperative echocardiography, these statements distinguish between basic and advanced critical care echocardiography,[53-56] or a basic and expert skill set.[57] The Society of Critical Care Medicine has provided evidence-based recommendations for the use of bedside echocardiography (TEE and TTE) in the evaluation of the critically ill patient.[57]

Transesophageal Echocardiography Examination

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND COMPLICATIONS

TEE is a safe and relatively minimally invasive procedure, although echocardiographers should be aware of potential complications resulting from probe insertion and manipulation. Table 37.3 lists absolute and relative contraindications to TEE. The risks and benefits must be carefully considered in patients with oral, esophageal, or gastric disease. Hilberath and associates provide an excellent summary on the safety of TEE, with reviewed studies reporting an overall complication rate in adults of 0.18% to 2.8% and major complication rate of 0.2% to 1.2%.[58] A 2017 retrospective study reviewed recent data regarding complications in a contemporary cardiac surgery cohort.[59] Of the 7948 patients that underwent

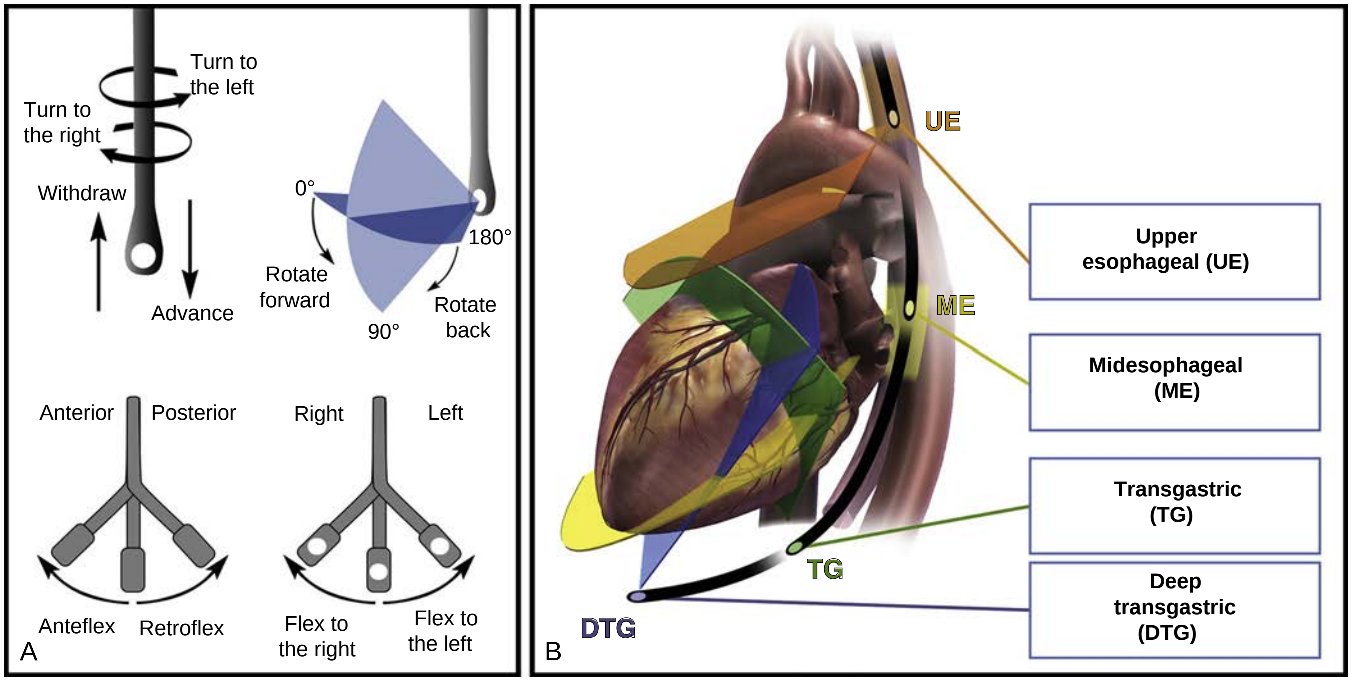


Fig. 37.5 Terminology used to describe manipulation of the transesophageal echocardiographic probe during image acquisition. (A) Terminology used for the manipulation of the transesophageal echocardiographic probe. (B) Four standard transducer positions within the esophagus and stomach and the associated imaging planes. (From Hahn RT, Abraham T, Adams MS, et al. Guidelines for performing a comprehensive transesophageal echocardiographic examination: recommendations from the American Society of Echocardiography and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr.* 2013;26(9):921–964.)

TEE, 111 (1.4%) were identified as having complications likely attributable to TEE (no other cause identified). Incidence of significant dysphagia was 0.3% and esophageal or gastric complications 0.9%. Independent risk factors associated with complications were age, body mass index, previous stroke, procedure other than isolated coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG), cardiopulmonary bypass time, and return to the operating room for any reason.

TRANSESOPHAGEAL ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY IMAGE ACQUISITION

Probe Manipulation and Imaging Planes

TEE probe manipulation includes withdrawal/advancement, turning left/right, and angle adjustment. The large knob on the handle controls anteflexion/retroflexion and the smaller knob allows flexion to the left and right. TEE image acquisition occurs at four different levels: upper esophageal (UE), midesophageal (ME), transgastric (TG), and deep transgastric (DTG) (Fig. 37.5).

Basic Examination

The basic perioperative TEE examination serves as an intraoperative monitoring tool used to identify cardiac causes of hemodynamic or respiratory instability.[60] The basic perioperative examination includes 11 views suited to evaluating hemodynamic instability. A suggested examination sequence progresses through the 11 views as follows: ME four-chamber (ME 4C), ME two-chamber (ME 2C), ME long axis (ME LAX), ME ascending aorta long-axis, ME ascending aorta short-axis, ME aortic valve short-axis (ME AV SAX), ME right ventricular inflow-outflow (ME RV Inflow-Outflow), ME bicaval, TG midpapillary short-axis (TG SAX), descending aorta short-axis, and descending aorta long-axis.

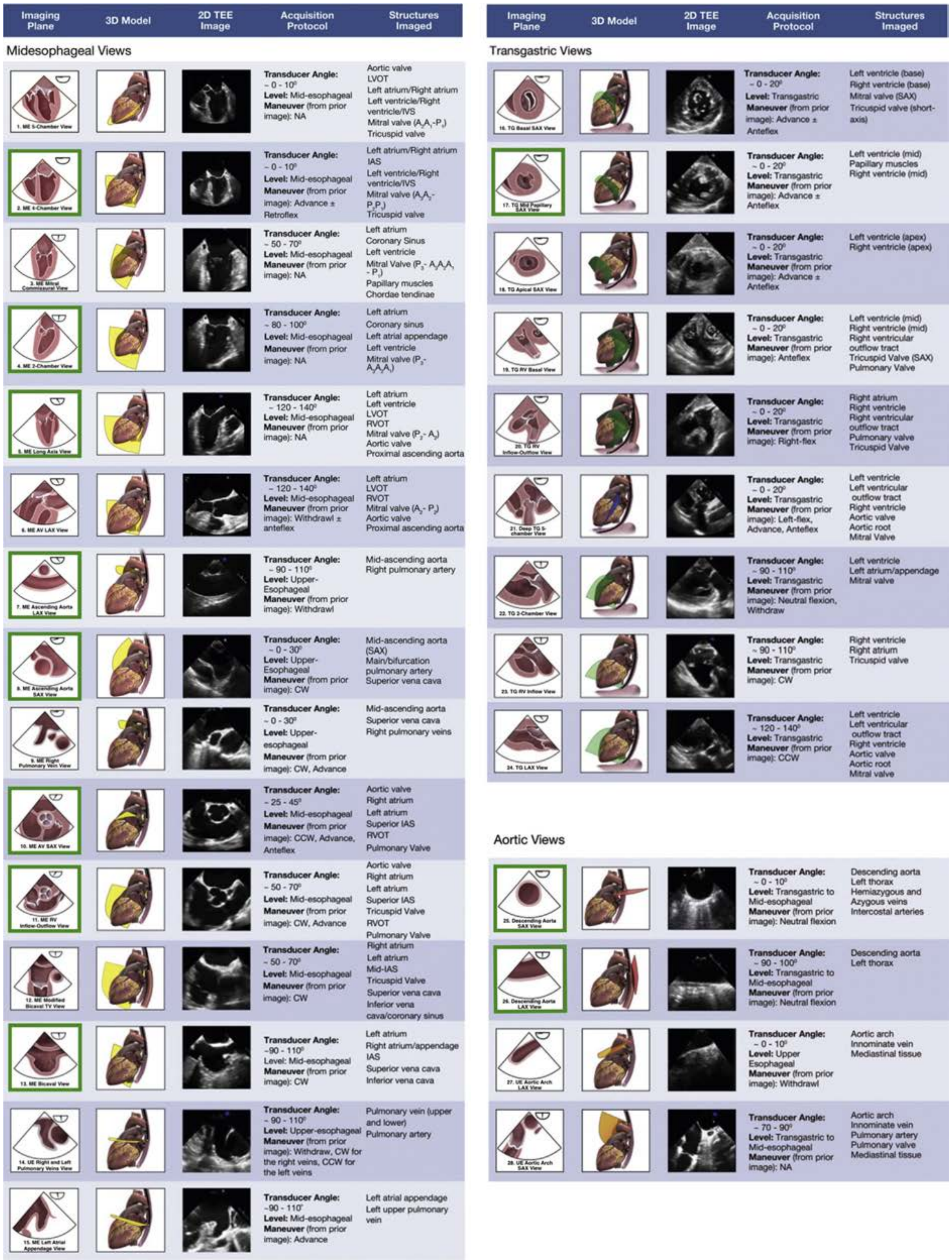
Comprehensive Examination

A comprehensive TEE examination enables practitioners with appropriate training to fully utilize the diagnostic capabilities of TEE. Twenty-eight views (including the 11 basic views) are recommended for comprehensive assessment (Fig. 37.6). Technical aspects of image acquisition have been extensively reviewed elsewhere.[61] Echocardiographers should complete their examinations systematically to avoid missing key findings. As a result of individual patient anatomy and the time constraints of the intraoperative environment, not all views are obtained in every examination.

Epicardial and Epiaortic Imaging

While epicardial echocardiography ushered in the era of intraoperative echocardiography, its use was supplanted by TEE. In the setting of contraindications to TEE or the need for better visualization of anterior structures, epicardial echocardiography remains an alternative modality.[62]

Epiaortic ultrasound (EAU) serves as an imaging adjunct, allowing visualization of the ascending aorta and aortic arch, regions that are unable to be visualized on TEE. Detection of ascending aorta atheroma is superior with



Midesophageal Views

Imaging Plane	3D Model	2D TEE Image	Acquisition Protocol	Structures Imaged
1. ME 5-Chamber View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 0 - 10° **Level:** Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): NA	Aortic valve LVOT Left atrium/Right atrium Left ventricle/Right ventricle/IVS Mitral valve (A_2A_1-P_1) Tricuspid valve
2. ME 4-Chamber View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 0 - 10° **Level:** Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): Advance ± Retroflex	Left atrium/Right atrium IAS Left ventricle/Right ventricle/IVS Mitral valve (A_3A_2-P_2P_1) Tricuspid valve
3. ME Mitral Commissural View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 50 - 70° **Level:** Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): NA	Left atrium Coronary Sinus Left ventricle Mitral Valve (P_3- $A_3A_2A_1$ - P_1) Papillary muscles Chordae tendinae
4. ME 2-Chamber View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 80 - 100° **Level:** Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): NA	Left atrium Coronary sinus Left atrial appendage Left ventricle Mitral valve (P_3-$A_3A_2A_1$)
5. ME Long Axis View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 120 - 140° **Level:** Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): NA	Left atrium Left ventricle LVOT RVOT Mitral valve (P_2- A_2) Aortic valve Proximal ascending aorta
6. ME AV LAX View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 120 - 140° **Level:** Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): Withdrawl ± anteflex	Left atrium LVOT RVOT Mitral valve (A_2- P_2) Aortic valve Proximal ascending aorta
7. ME Ascending Aorta LAX View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 90 - 110° **Level:** Upper-Esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): Withdrawl	Mid-ascending aorta Right pulmonary artery
8. ME Ascending Aorta SAX View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 0 - 30° **Level:** Upper-Esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): CW	Mid-ascending aorta (SAX) Main/bifurcation pulmonary artery Superior vena cava
9. ME Right Pulmonary Vein View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 0 - 30° **Level:** Upper-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): CW, Advance	Mid-ascending aorta Superior vena cava Right pulmonary veins
10. ME AV SAX View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 25 - 45° **Level:** Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): CCW, Advance, Anteflex	Aortic valve Right atrium Left atrium Superior IAS RVOT Pulmonary Valve
11. ME RV Inflow-Outflow View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 50 - 70° **Level:** Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): CW, Advance	Aortic valve Right atrium Left atrium Superior IAS Tricuspid Valve RVOT Pulmonary Valve
12. ME Modified Bicaval TV View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 50 - 70° **Level:** Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): CW	Right atrium Left atrium Mid-IAS Tricuspid Valve Superior vena cava Inferior vena cava/coronary sinus
13. ME Bicaval View			**Transducer Angle:** -90 - 110° Level: Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): CW	Left atrium Right atrium/appendage IAS Superior vena cava Inferior vena cava
14. UE Right and Left Pulmonary Veins View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 90 - 110° **Level:** Upper-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): Withdraw, CW for the right veins, CCW for the left veins	Pulmonary vein (upper and lower) Pulmonary artery
15. ME Left Atrial Appendage View			**Transducer Angle:** -90 - 110° **Level:** Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): Advance	Left atrial appendage Left upper pulmonary vein

Transgastric Views

Imaging Plane	3D Model	2D TEE Image	Acquisition Protocol	Structures Imaged
16. TG Basal SAX View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 0 - 20° **Level:** Transgastric **Maneuver** (from prior image): Advance ± Anteflex	Left ventricle (base) Right ventricle (base) Mitral valve (SAX) Tricuspid valve (short-axis)
17. TG Mid Papillary SAX View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 0 - 20° **Level:** Transgastric **Maneuver** (from prior image): Advance ± Anteflex	Left ventricle (mid) Papillary muscles Right ventricle (mid)
18. TG Apical SAX View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 0 - 20° **Level:** Transgastric **Maneuver** (from prior image): Advance ± Anteflex	Left ventricle (apex) Right ventricle (apex)
19. TG RV Basal View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 0 - 20° **Level:** Transgastric **Maneuver** (from prior image): Anteflex	Left ventricle (mid) Right ventricle (mid) Right ventricular outflow tract Tricuspid Valve (SAX) Pulmonary Valve
20. TG RV Inflow-Outflow View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 0 - 20° **Level:** Transgastric **Maneuver** (from prior image): Right-flex	Right atrium Right ventricle Right ventricular outflow tract Pulmonary valve Tricuspid Valve
21. Deep TG 5-chamber View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 0 - 20° **Level:** Transgastric **Maneuver** (from prior image): Left-flex, Advance, Anteflex	Left ventricle Left ventricular outflow tract Right ventricle Aortic valve Aortic root Mitral Valve
22. TG 2-Chamber View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 90 - 110° **Level:** Transgastric **Maneuver** (from prior image): Neutral flexion, Withdraw	Left ventricle Left atrium/appendage Mitral valve
23. TG RV Inflow View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 90 - 110° **Level:** Transgastric **Maneuver** (from prior image): CW	Right ventricle Right atrium Tricuspid valve
24. TG LAX View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 120 - 140° **Level:** Transgastric **Maneuver** (from prior image): CCW	Left ventricle Left ventricular outflow tract Right ventricle Aortic valve Aortic root Mitral valve

Aortic Views

Imaging Plane	3D Model	2D TEE Image	Acquisition Protocol	Structures Imaged
25. Descending Aorta SAX View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 0 - 10° **Level:** Transgastric to Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): Neutral flexion	Descending aorta Left thorax Hemiazygous and Azygous veins Intercostal arteries
26. Descending Aorta LAX View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 90 - 100° **Level:** Transgastric to Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): Neutral flexion	Descending aorta Left thorax
27. UE Aortic Arch LAX View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 0 - 10° **Level:** Upper Esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): Withdrawl	Aortic arch Innominate vein Mediastinal tissue
28. UE Aortic Arch SAX View			**Transducer Angle:** ~ 70 - 90° **Level:** Transgastric to Mid-esophageal **Maneuver** (from prior image): NA	Aortic arch Innominate vein Pulmonary artery Pulmonary valve Mediastinal tissue

Fig. 37.6 The 28 suggested views of the comprehensive transesophageal echocardiographic *(TEE)* examination. Each view is shown as a 3D image, the corresponding imaging plane, and a 2D image. The acquisition protocol and the structures imaged in each view are listed in the subsequent columns. The green boxes indicate the 11 views of the basic TEE examination. (Modified from Hahn RT, Abraham T, Adams MS, et al. Guidelines for performing a comprehensive transesophageal echocardiographic examination: recommendations from the American Society of Echocardiography and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2013;26(9):921–964.)

EAU compared to that of TEE or manual palpation.[63-65] EAU impacts surgical strategy, but data as to whether this translates into improved clinical outcomes are limited and heterogeneous.[63-65] Examination guidelines and example imaging views are available.[66]

Transthoracic Echocardiography Examination

TRANSTHORACIC ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY IMAGE ACQUISITION

Three elements describe transthoracic sonographic views: (1) transducer position or window, (2) imaging plane, and (3) structures imaged. When feasible, patients should turn to their left side with the left hand resting behind the head. The main windows are parasternal, apical, subcostal, and suprasternal. Imaging motions include translation (sliding), tilting, angulation, and rotation.

Focused Cardiac Ultrasound Versus Limited Examination

With increasing use of ultrasonography at the point of care, it is important for the clinician to recognize the distinction between focused cardiac ultrasound (FoCUS, FCU) and limited TTE examination. Guidelines endorsed by several societies describe the key differences between the two examinations.[67,68] FoCUS is a simplified, point-of-care ultrasound examination that complements the physical examination (Box 37.2). FoCUS addresses specific questions within a given clinical context. Relevant abnormalities are characterized as present or absent, and questions are answered in a yes/no format. In contrast, limited TTE is broad in scope. Interpretation includes normal, pathological, and incidental findings, and quantitative techniques may be employed. Fewer images are acquired in a limited examination compared to a comprehensive examination.[67] Limited TTE requires a practitioner with advanced training and expertise.

Abnormalities identified by FoCUS require follow-up with formal comprehensive echocardiography. If FoCUS does not reveal pathology but there is clinical suggestion of cardiac disease, formal comprehensive echocardiography should also be pursued. Many FoCUS protocols exist, most including five key views: parasternal long-axis (PLAX), parasternal short-axis (PSAX), apical four-chamber (A4C), subcostal four-chamber (SC4), and subcostal inferior vena cava (SIVC) (Fig. 37.7 through 37.10; Video 37.2). Protocols often incorporate lung ultrasound. For those interested in details of image acquisition, we refer the reader to a practical introductory primer.[69]

Comprehensive Examination

A minority of anesthesiologists have the necessary training required to perform and/or formally interpret comprehensive TTE examinations. Standard imaging views occur at the parasternal, apical, and subcostal windows, plus the suprasternal notch. In addition to the views included in FoCUS, a comprehensive TTE examination includes the PLAX right ventricular outflow, PLAX right ventricular inflow, PSAX apical, PSAX mitral (basal), PSAX aortic, apical right ventricle-focused, apical five-chamber (A5C), apical two-chamber (A2C), apical three-chamber (A3C), and suprasternal notch long axis views.[70]

BOX 37.2 **Features of Focused Cardiac Ultrasound**

- Goal-directed
- Problem-oriented
- Limited in scope
- Simplified
- Time sensitive and repeatable
- Qualitative or semiquantitative
- Performed at the point of care
- Usually performed by clinicians

FoCUS, Focused Cardiac Ultrasound.

Adapted from Via G, Hussain A, Wells M, et al. International evidence-based recommendations for focused cardiac ultrasound. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr.* 2014;27(7):683 e681–683 e633.

Qualitative Assessment

VENTRICULAR SIZE AND FUNCTION

Left Ventricle

Qualitative visual assessment of LV systolic function is the mainstay of perioperative echocardiography. Visual estimation of EF by TTE correlates well with quantitative methods[71,72] and real-time intraoperative TEE interpretation can reasonably estimate function compared to formal offline methods.[73] Wall thickening is symmetric and vigorous when LV systolic function is normal (Video 37.3). The key TEE views for global assessment of LV function include the TG SAX (Fig. 37.11), ME 4C, ME 2C, and ME LAX views (Fig. 37.12). Analogous TTE views are PSAX, A4C, A2C, and PLAX views. The TG SAX and PSAX views display distributions of all three coronary arteries.

Assessment of regional function focuses on the thickening and shortening of individual segments. Translational motion, tethering, or dyssynchrony due to conduction delay or pacing can make interpretation challenging. A 17-segment model divides the heart into six basal segments (from the mitral valve annulus to the tips of the papillary muscles), six midpapillary level segments (from the tips to the base of the papillary muscles), four apical (or distal) segments (from the base of the papillary muscles to the LV apex), and the apical cap.[74] The apical cap is difficult to visualize with TEE due to foreshortening. Segmental thickening should be assessed in the context of coronary distribution, recognizing variability among individuals. The left anterior descending artery (LAD) consistently supplies the anterior and anteroseptal segments and apical cap (Fig. 37.13). The right coronary artery (RCA) supplies the right ventricle (RV) and the basal inferior, basal inferoseptal, and mid-inferior and possibly the mid-inferoseptal segments, the latter of which may be supplied by the LAD. The left circumflex typically supplies the lateral segments, although

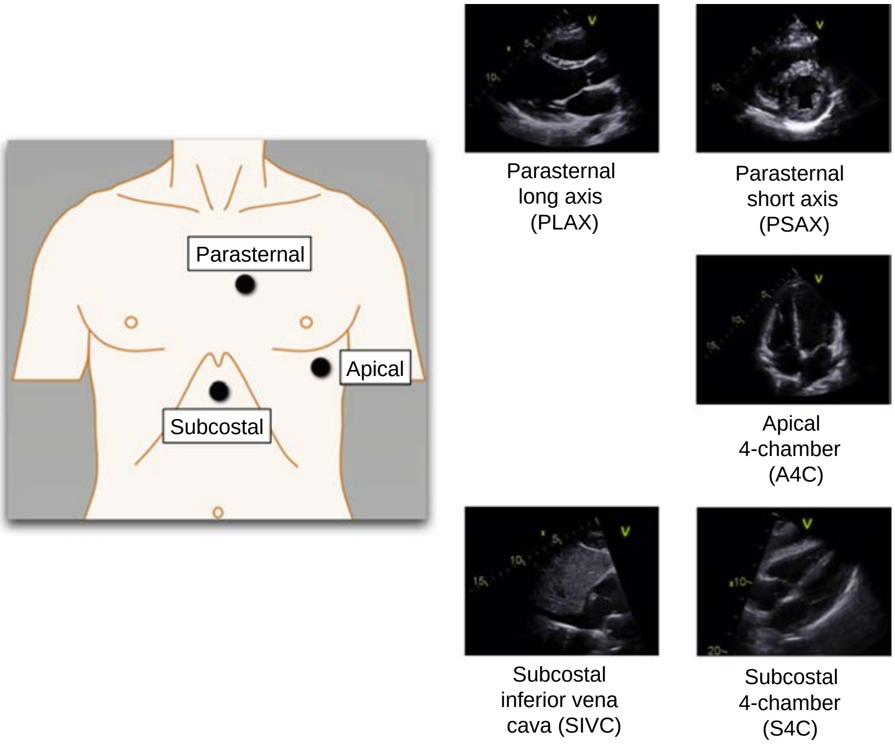

Parasternal
Apical
Subcostal
Parasternal long axis (PLAX)
Parasternal short axis (PSAX)
Apical 4-chamber (A4C)
Subcostal inferior vena cava (SIVC)
Subcostal 4-chamber (S4C)

Fig. 37.7 Views included in the focused cardiac ultrasound *(FoCUS)* examination: parasternal long axis *(PLAX)*, parasternal short axis *(PSAX)*, apical 4-chamber *(A4C)*, subcostal 4-chamber *(S4C)*, and subcostal inferior vena cava *(SIVC)*. The parasternal window is between the third through fifth intercostal space to the left of the sternum. The apical window is near the point of maximal impulse along the mid-axillary line, often near the fifth intercostal space. The subcostal window is just below the xiphoid, along the midline or slightly to the patient's right. (Adapted from Via G, Hussain A, Wells M, et al. International evidence-based recommendations for focused cardiac ultrasound. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2014;27(7):683 e681–683 e633.)

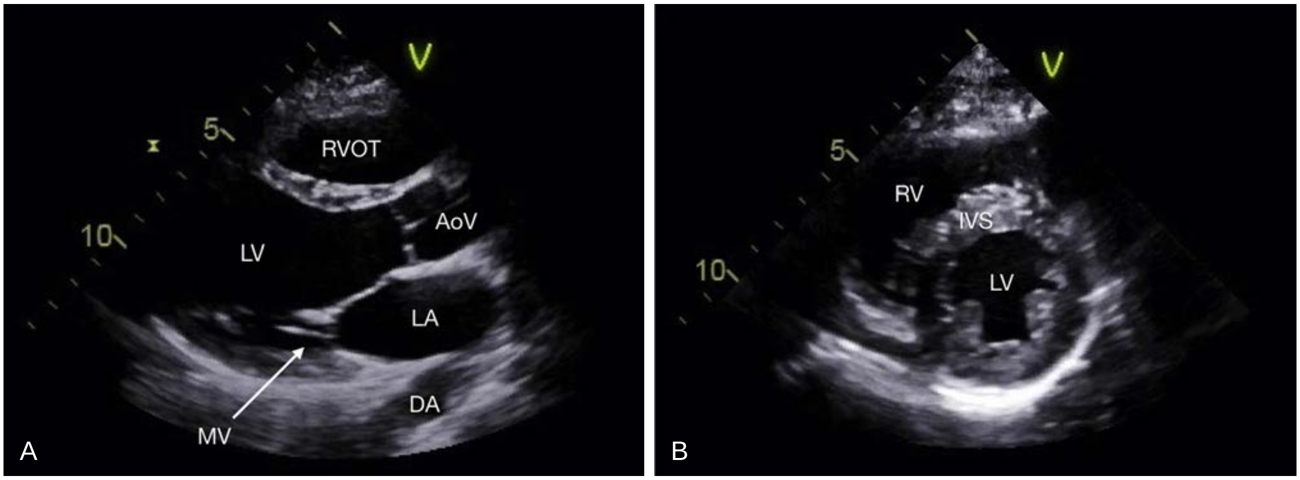


Fig. 37.8 Transthoracic parasternal views included in focused cardiac ultrasound. (A) The parasternal long axis view is shown. This view is analogous to the transesophageal midesophageal long axis view. In transthoracic imaging, anterior structures are closest to the transducer (and therefore displayed at the top of the image), while in transesophageal imaging, posterior structures are in closest proximity to the transducer (and displayed at the top of the image). (B) The parasternal short axis view is shown. This view is analogous to the transesophageal transgastric mid-papillary short axis view. *AoV*, Aortic valve; *DA*, descending aorta; *IVS*, interventricular septum; *LA*, left atrium; *LV*, left ventricle; *MV*, mitral valve; *RV*, right ventricle; *RVOT*, right ventricular outflow tract.

contributions from the LAD to the anterolateral segments or RCA to the inferolateral segments are not uncommon.[75] Each segment should be evaluated as normal/hyperkinetic, hypokinetic (reduced thickening), akinetic (minimal or absent thickening), or dyskinetic (thinning, stretching, or aneurysmal). Echocardiography is more sensitive than the ECG in detecting ischemic changes.[76]

Right Ventricle

The complex geometry of the RV makes assessment more challenging. Qualitatively, the RV should appear approximately two-thirds the size of the left ventricle, assessed in ME 4C and A4C views. Typically the right ventricle does not extend to the LV apex. RV hypertrophy suggests chronic pulmonary hypertension or the presence of cardiomyopathies.

The interventricular septum provides additional information about RV pathology. Normally, the septum curves toward the RV, and the LV cavity appears circular in short axis. In states of RV *volume* overload, the septum shifts away from the RV and flattens resulting in a D-shaped LV cavity mainly in *mid-to-late diastole* (Video 37.4). RV *pressure* overload leads to leftward septal shift and septal flattening throughout the cardiac cycle, with the changes most pronounced at *end-systole* (Video 37.5).[77]

VALVULAR FUNCTION

Qualitative assessment of valvular function begins with sequential assessment of the valve in multiple imaging planes, noting the motion of the leaflets, presence of leaflet thickening or calcification, vegetations or masses, and additional structural abnormalities (Fig. 37.14). Malcoaptation and annular dilation help define the etiology of dysfunction in regurgitant lesions. 3-D imaging modalities clarify the location of structure abnormalities.

CFD provides visual information about flow through valves. Aliasing or turbulence of forward flow through a valve should prompt evaluation for additional signs of stenosis. Further characterization of stenotic lesions is primarily quantitative in nature. Color Doppler imaging also detects

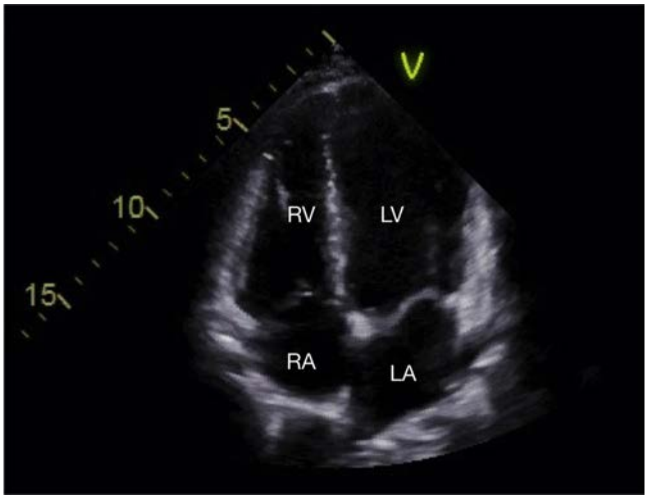


Fig. 37.9 Transthoracic apical four-chamber view. This view is analogous to the midesophageal four-chamber view in transesophageal echocardiography. *LA*, Left atrium; *LV*, left ventricle; *RA*, right atrium; *RV*, right ventricle.

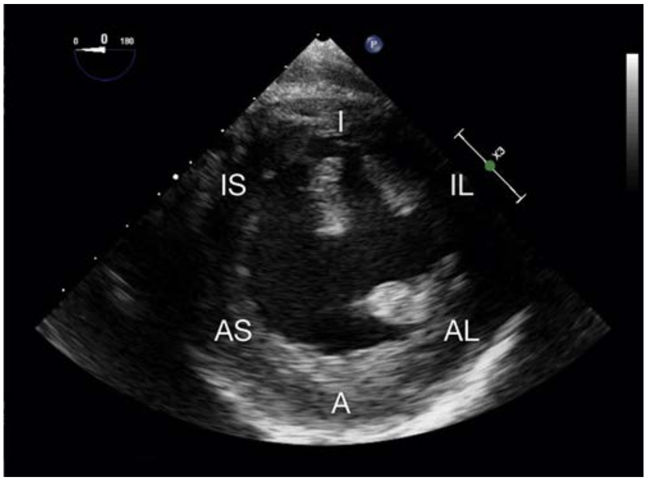


Fig. 37.11 The transesophageal transgastric mid-papillary short axis view (TG SAX) is a common view for qualitative evaluation of global left ventricular systolic function. Basal and apical segments are not visualized in this view, so midesophageal or TG LAX views should also be obtained to provide a more complete picture of the overall function. The TG SAX view includes myocardial segments supplied by each of the coronary arteries, making it useful for detection of new ischemia. The TG SAX view displays the mid inferior *(I)*, mid inferolateral *(IL)*, mid anterolateral *(AL)*, mid anterior *(A)*, mid anteroseptal *(AS)*, and mid inferoseptal *(IS)* segments.

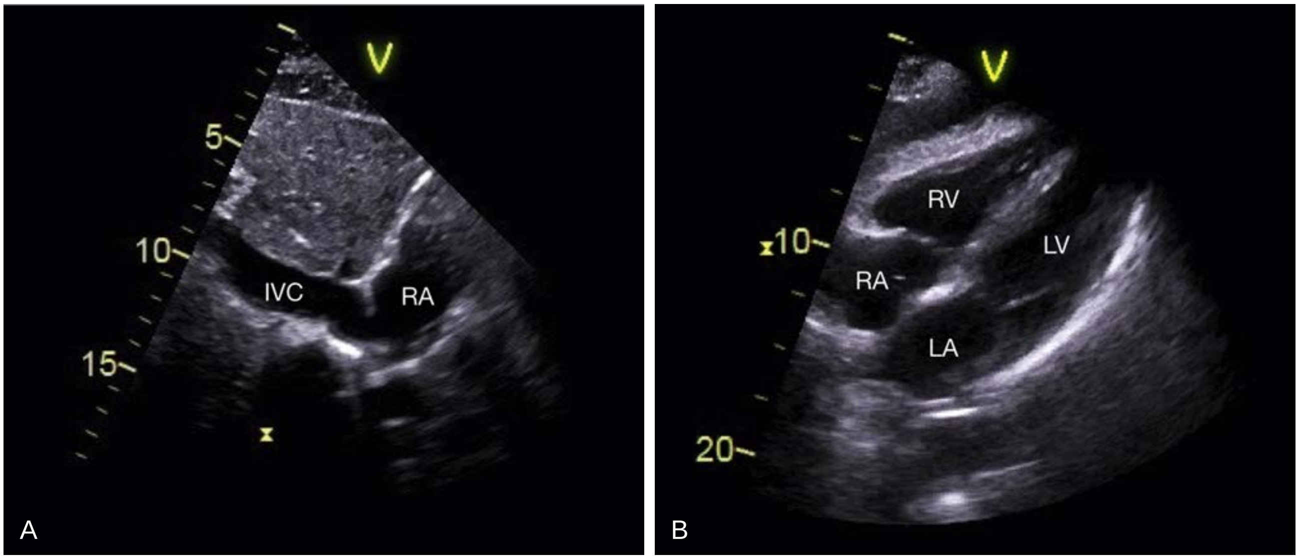


Fig. 37.10 Transthoracic subcostal views included in focused cardiac ultrasound. (A) The subcostal inferior vena cava *(IVC)* view is shown. The IVC diameter and collapsibility index are measured in this view to estimate right atrial pressure in spontaneously breathing individuals (see text). (B) The subcostal four-chamber view is shown. This view is useful for ultrasonographic examination during cardiac arrest, because it can be performed without interrupting chest compressions. *LA*, Left atrium; *LV*, left ventricle; *RA*, right atrium; *RV*, right ventricle.

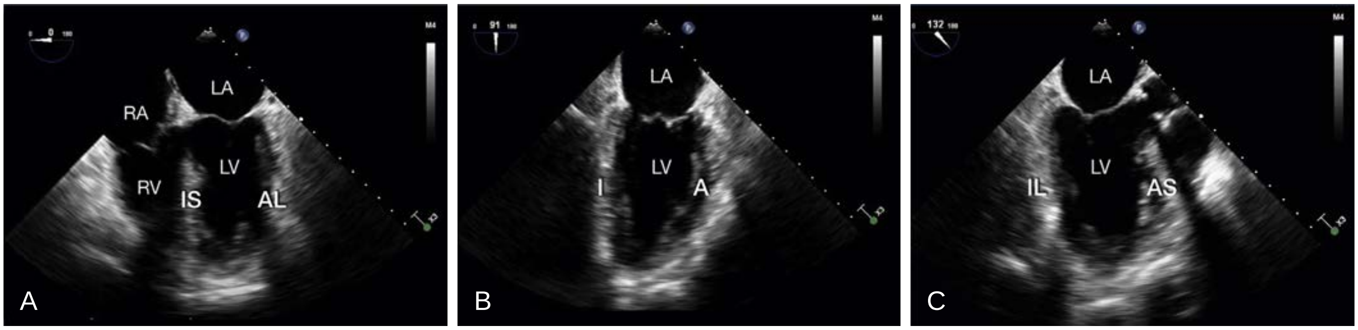


Fig. 37.12 Midesophageal views for assessing left ventricular function using transesophageal echocardiography. (A) The midesophageal four-chamber (ME 4C) view displays the inferoseptal *(IS)* and anterolateral *(AL)* walls. (B) The midesophageal two-chamber (ME 2C) view displays the inferior *(I)* and anterior *(A)* walls. (C) The midesophageal long axis view (ME LAX) displays the inferolateral *(IL)* and anteroseptal *(AS)* walls. *LA,* Left atrium; *LV*, left ventricle; *RA,* right atrium; *RV,* right ventricle.

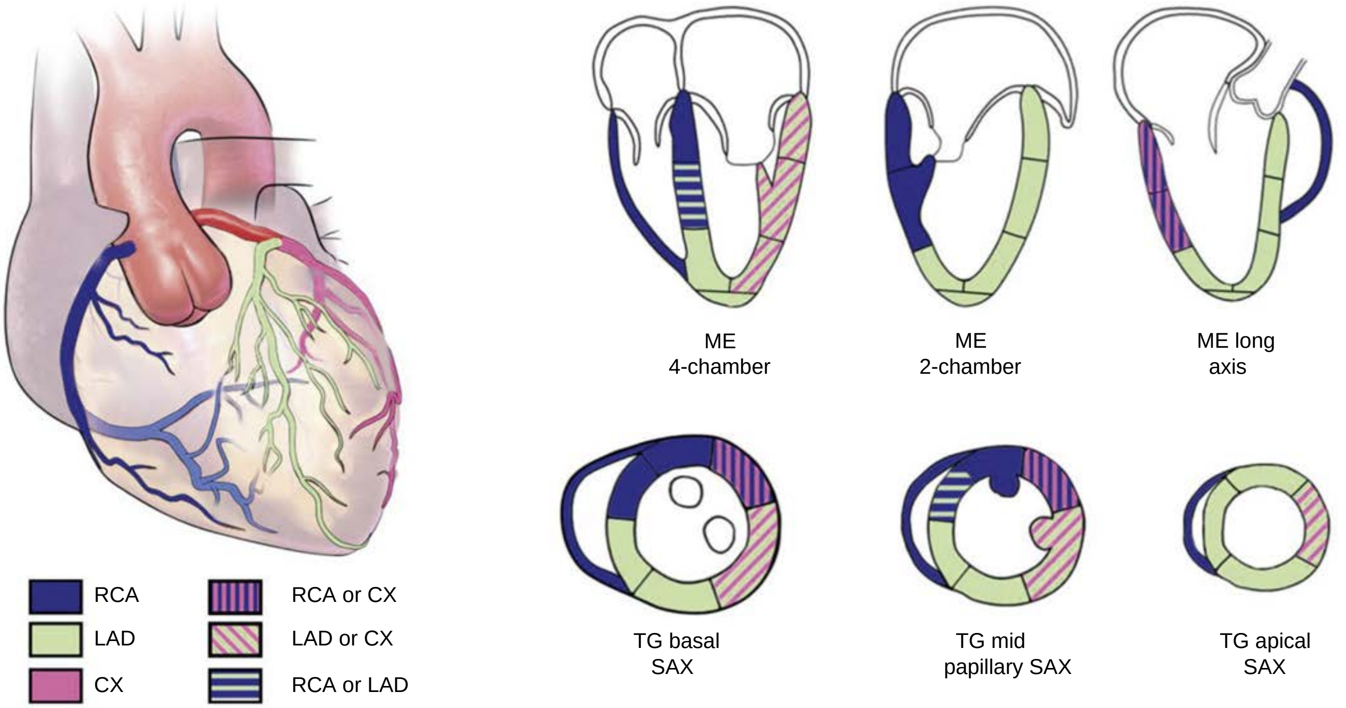


Fig. 37.13 Typical distributions of the right coronary artery *(RCA)*, the left anterior descending coronary artery *(LAD)*, and the circumflex coronary artery *(CX)* from transesophageal views of heart. The arterial distribution varies among patients. Some segments have variable coronary perfusion. *ME*, Mid-esophageal; *TG,* transgastric; *SAX*, short axis. (Modified from Lang RM, Badano LP, Mor-Avi V, et al. Recommendations for cardiac chamber quantification by echocardiography in adults: an update from the American Society of Echocardiography and the European Association of Cardiovascular Imaging. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2015;28(1):1–39 e14.)

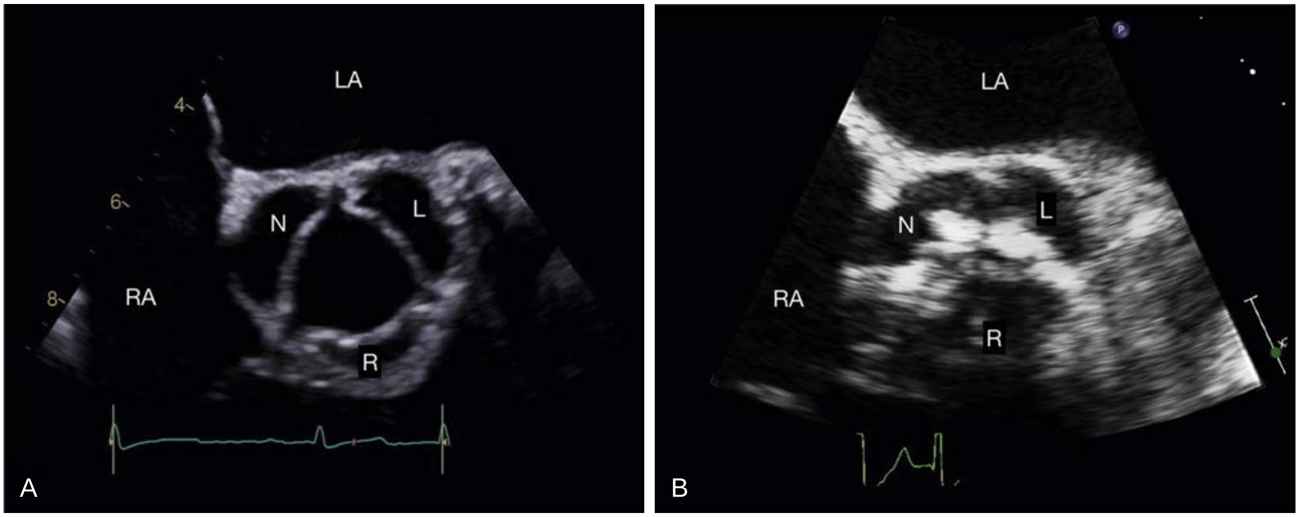


Fig. 37.14 Qualitative assessment of the aortic valve (zoomed-in transesophageal aortic valve short axis view) (A) There are three valve leaflets of normal thickness. Leaflet excursion appears normal. (B) There are three aortic valve leaflets which are severely thickened. Leaflet excursion is reduced. These qualitative findings should prompt additional quantitative assessment of valvular stenosis. *L*, Left coronary cusp; *LA,* left atrium; *N*, non-coronary cusp; *R,* right coronary cusp; *RA,* right atrium

the presence of valvular regurgitation. The three color Doppler components of a regurgitant jet are proximal flow convergence, vena contracta, and jet area (Figure. 37.15). As blood approaches the regurgitant orifice, it accelerates, forming a series of hemispheric shells of increasing velocity and decreasing area. This flow convergence region provides qualitative information about regurgitation severity and is also utilized in quantitative assessments. The vena contracta is the narrowest portion of a regurgitant jet at or immediately downstream of the regurgitant orifice.[78,79] The jet area provides information about the mechanism of regurgitation. For example eccentric regurgitation often arises from structural abnormalities while centrally originating regurgitation may be secondary in nature. The size of the jet area is subject to both technical and hemodynamic limitations, so visual estimation of jet area alone is not a reliable means of assessing regurgitation severity.

Atrial and ventricular dilation suggest chronicity of severe regurgitation; normal chamber size would be unusual in the presence of chronic severe regurgitation. Density and shape of the continuous-wave Doppler (CWD) recording of the regurgitant jet provide additional qualitative information.[79]

An important limitation of intraoperative assessment of valvular regurgitation is the hemodynamic consequences of general anesthesia, resulting in reduced preload, afterload, and contractility. General anesthesia commonly reduces the severity of MR. Pharmacologic increase of afterload may provide more representative measurements, but may also lead to significant overestimation of regurgitation severity.[80]

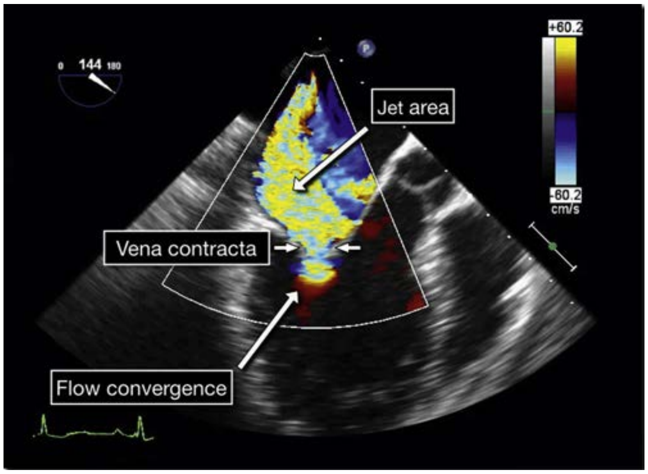


Fig. 37.15 Mitral regurgitation displaying the three components of a regurgitant jet: (1) flow convergence, (2) the vena contracta, and (3) the regurgitant jet area.

TABLE 37.4 Classification of Left Ventricular Systolic Function According to Ejection Fraction

Systolic Function	Male	Female
Normal	52%–72%	54%–74%
Mild dysfunction	41%–51%	41%–53%
Moderate dysfunction	30%–40%	30%–40%
Severe dysfunction	<30%	<30%

From Lang RM, Badano LP, Mor-Avi V, et al. Recommendations for cardiac chamber quantification by echocardiography in adults: an update from the American Society of Echocardiography and the European Association of Cardiovascular Imaging. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2015;28(1):1–39 e14.

Quantitative Assessment

VENTRICULAR SIZE AND FUNCTION

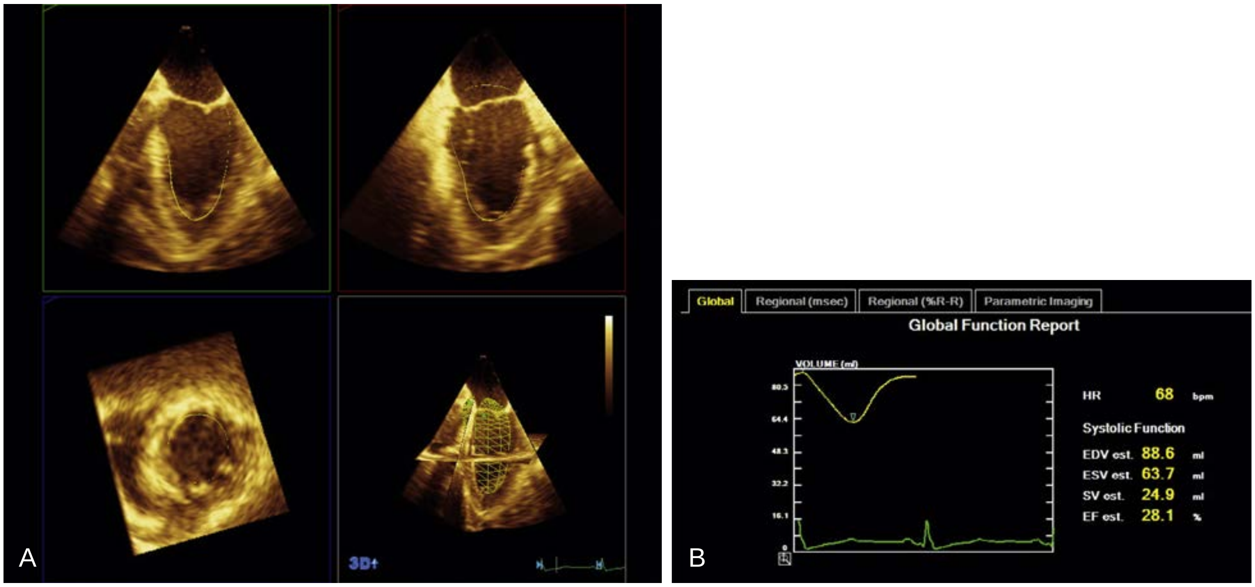
Left Ventricle

Most indices of systolic function used in routine evaluation are load-dependent, necessitating interpretation in context and serial assessments due to changing intraoperative conditions. Global systolic function is assessed by measuring the difference between an end-diastolic and end-systolic value of a parameter and dividing by the end-diastolic value. Fractional shortening uses length measurements and fractional area change (FAC) uses area measurements. Both approaches have limitations in the setting of regional wall motion abnormalities (RWMAs). Ejection fraction (EF) is the difference between the end-diastolic volume (EDV) and end-systolic volume (ESV), divided by EDV:

$$\mathrm{EF} = \frac{(\mathrm{EDV} - \mathrm{ESV})}{\mathrm{EDV}}$$

The recommended method for 2-D calculation of EF is the biplane method of disks (modified Simpson rule).[81] This requires tracing the endocardial border in two perpendicular views and assumes the LV volume consists of a stack of elliptical disks. The upper limit of normal for EDV is 74 mL/m^2 for males and 61 mL/m^2 for females; ESV is 31 mL/m^2 for males and 24 mL/m^2 for females.[81] Table 37.4 presents updated reference ranges for LVEF.[81] Assessment of EF using 3-D echocardiography (Fig. 37.16) is more accurate than 2-D echocardiography.[41] In the presence of significant valvular regurgitation, myocardial contractility may be depressed and forward cardiac output low despite a normal EF.

Additional indices of LV systolic function include DTI of the mitral annular systolic velocity (s′), myocardial performance index (MPI), and the change in LV pressure over time (dP/dt). Pulsed-wave DTI of the myocardium at the level of the mitral annulus yields a myocardial velocity profile (Fig. 37.17). The systolic velocity wave (s′) reflects the apically-directed motion of the myocardium and correlates with EF. Normal s′ reference ranges vary based on sex, age, and mitral annulus measurement size.[82] MPI assesses both systolic and diastolic performance and is calculated by the sum of isovolumetric contraction and relaxation times divided by ejection time. MPI identifies impaired global function and has prognostic value, however it is not routinely part of the perioperative examination. The change in LV pressure over time (dP/dt) derived from the CWD signal of MR provides information about LV contractility. Normal LV dP/dt is greater than 1200 mm mmHg/s; dP/dt less than 800 mmHg/s is consistent with severe dysfunction.[83] Global longitudinal strain is emerging as a technique with utility in identifying systolic dysfunction prior to decrement in EF. Normal values vary across vendor platforms, but in general, a value of −20% (or more negative) would be expected in normal systolic function (Fig. 37.18).



Global Function Report

HR 68 bpm

Systolic Function

EDV est. 88.6 ml

ESV est. 63.7 ml

SV est. 24.9 ml

EF est. 28.1 %

Fig. 37.16 Three-dimensional (3D) transesophageal echocardiographic measurement of left ventricular ejection fraction. (A) A full-volume data set of the left ventricle is displayed using multiplanar reconstruction. After manual tracing of the endocardial borders at end-diastole and end-systole in the planes displayed in the top two panels, a semi-automated endocardial border detection algorithm tracks the borders in the remaining frames. (B) The *yellow line* displays the left ventricular volume over the duration of the cardiac cycle. Measurements reported include end-diastolic volume, end-systolic volume, stroke volume, and ejection fraction. Segmental changes in volume over the course of the cardiac cycle can also be displayed.

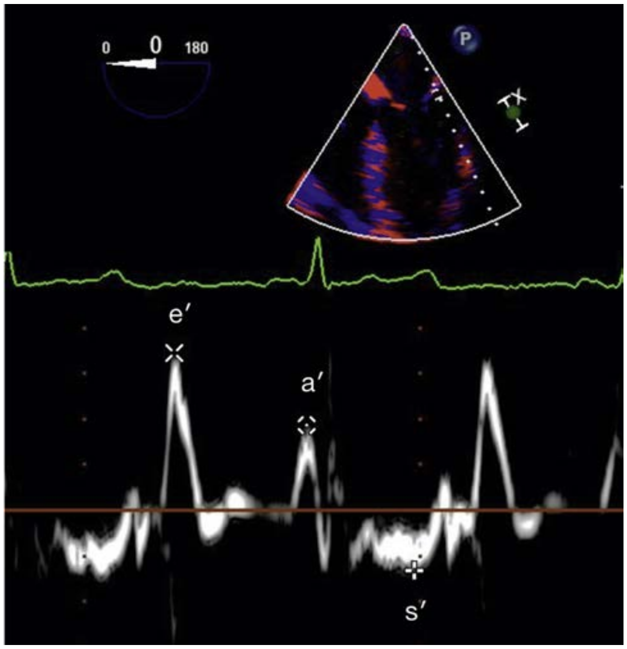


Fig. 37.17 **Spectral Doppler tissue imaging obtained at the lateral mitral annulus in the midesophageal four-chamber view.** The systolic waveform (s′) corresponds to the systolic tissue velocity. The two diastolic waveforms correspond to the early diastolic tissue velocity (e′) and the late (atrial) diastolic tissue velocity (a′). When obtained using TEE, s′ is a negative waveform (directed away from the transducer), while e′ and a′ are positive waveforms. Transthoracic acquisition of mitral annular velocity is performed in the apical four-chamber view. In TTE acquisition, the s′ waveform is positive, while e′ and a′ are negative.

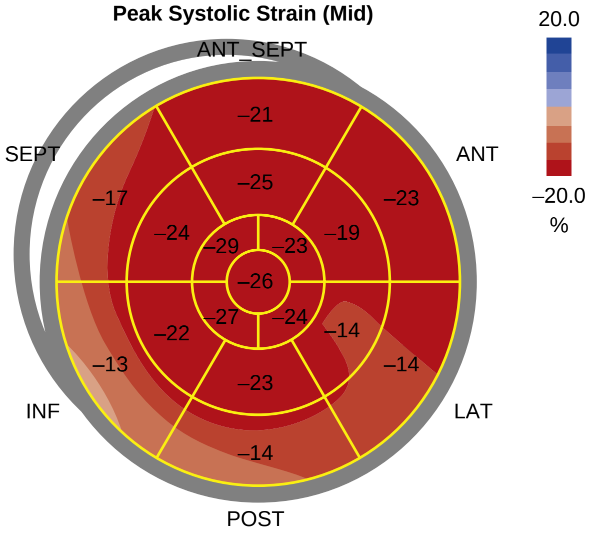


Fig. 37.18 A transthoracic "bulls-eye" plot of speckle tracking-derived global longitudinal strain obtained with transthoracic echocardiography. The image depicts the 17 segments of the left ventricle and the peak segmental systolic strain for each segment. The dark red areas represent normal strain, while the light red and pink areas represent abnormal strain. The average global longitudinal strain in this example is normal (–20.8%, not displayed in the image).

Right Ventricle

Parameters for assessment of RV function include FAC, volumetric assessments (EF), tricuspid annular plane systolic excursion (TAPSE), DTI of the tricuspid annular systolic velocity (s′), and MPI. RV FAC is obtained by tracing the endocardial border in diastole and systole, from the annulus along the free wall (excluding trabeculations) to the apex, from the apex to the annulus along the interventricular septum, and then returning to the annular starting point. RV FAC is calculated as:

$$\text{RV FAC} = \frac{\text{RV EDA} - \text{RV ESA}}{\text{RV EDA}} * 100$$

RV FAC is expressed as a percentage and has a lower limit of normal of 35%.[77] Estimation of RV EF using 2-D echocardiography requires geometric assumptions, and guidelines do not recommend its use.[77] When expertise is available 3-D RV EF is recommended, with less than 45% usually representing abnormal function.[81]

TAPSE is commonly used in TTE for evaluating RV longitudinal function, measured by aligning the M-mode cursor parallel to the tricuspid annular motion in the A4C view.[81] TAPSE less than 17 mm is consistent with RV systolic dysfunction. Parallel alignment of the tricuspid annulus with the M-mode cursor is difficult in TEE, and ME 4C measurements of TAPSE correlate poorly with TTE measurements. Alternative methods for measuring tricuspid annular motion with TEE have been explored. Anatomical M-mode measurements in ME 4C and DTG 4-chamber 0-degree views demonstrate agreement with TTE TAPSE.[84] TEE speckle tracking of tricuspid annular motion has also been demonstrated to correlate well with TTE TAPSE[85,86]; whether this will have practical perioperative applications requires further investigation. Reduction in TAPSE following cardiac surgery is well described. Whether reduced TAPSE reflects a true decrement in RV systolic function or rather geometric alteration from pericardiotomy remains controversial.[87,88]

An s′ of less than 9.5 cm/s is consistent with RV dysfunction, but like TAPSE is an index of longitudinal excursion and may be reduced after cardiac surgery. A right ventricular myocardial performance index (MPI) of greater than 0.43 by pulsed-wave Doppler (PWD) or greater than 0.54 by DTI reflects abnormal RV function.[81] RV strain and strain rate are emerging as prognostic parameters in the cardiology literature, but reference values are vendor specific and measurements are not yet routinely part of the perioperative examination.

Diastolic Function

Many complex interactions contribute to ventricular filling during diastole, but the echocardiographer should have a basic understanding of diastolic physiology and the progression of LV filling abnormalities along a continuum of impaired relaxation and decreased compliance. Myocardial relaxation primarily affects LV filling during early diastole (isovolumetric relaxation and early rapid filling), whereas the effects of ventricular compliance predominate in late diastole (diastasis and atrial contraction).

Transmitral PWD flow patterns reflect changes in LV filling and are used to characterize the stages of diastolic dysfunction. Two waveforms correspond to early rapid filling (E wave) and atrial contraction (A wave), respectively. (Fig. 37.19). The E:A ratio changes with progressive diastolic dysfunction (Fig. 37.20), and traditionally, other parameters such as isovolumetric relaxation time, deceleration time, pulmonary venous flow profiles, and propagation velocities have provided supportive information when grading diastolic dysfunction. Under normal conditions, most ventricular filling occurs during early diastole (resulting from relaxation and suction forces), and the E:A is ratio greater than 1. Grade 1 diastolic dysfunction manifests as *impaired relaxation* with decreased early diastolic filling and a compensatory increase in late diastolic filling (E < A). Relaxation remains impaired in more advanced degrees of diastolic dysfunction. In grade 2 diastolic dysfunction *(pseudonormal pattern)*, decreasing LV compliance leads to a rise in LV end-diastolic pressure (LVEDP). Ultimately an increase in left atrial pressure (LAP) increases driving pressures across the mitral valve, increasing early filling, and "normalizing" the E:A ratio. With progression to a *restrictive* pattern (grade 3 dysfunction), markedly decreased LV compliance and significantly elevated LVEDP and LAP result in very elevated peak E-wave velocity (E:A > 2) and rapid equilibration of LV and LAPs.

DTI is an important technique for evaluating diastolic function. DTI of mitral annular myocardial velocities produces two diastolic waveforms: e′ (early diastolic tissue velocity) and a′ (late diastolic tissue velocity), as shown in Fig. 37.17. Preload conditions have less effect on e′ than on the transmitral E wave. DTI e′ is reduced when impaired relaxation is present, making

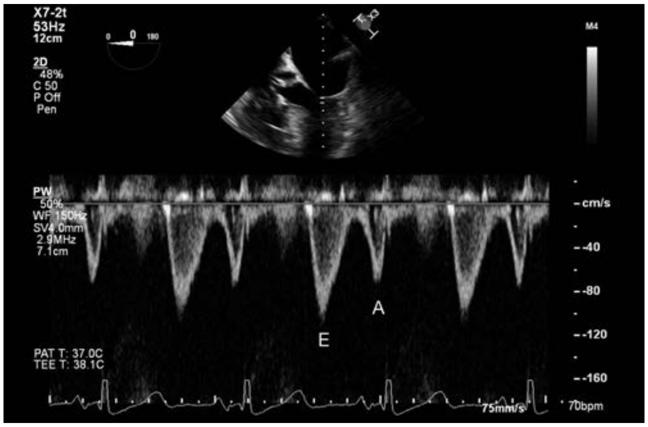


Fig. 37.19 Transmitral pulsed-wave Doppler profile demonstrating the peak early filling (E-wave) and flow due to atrial contraction (A-wave).

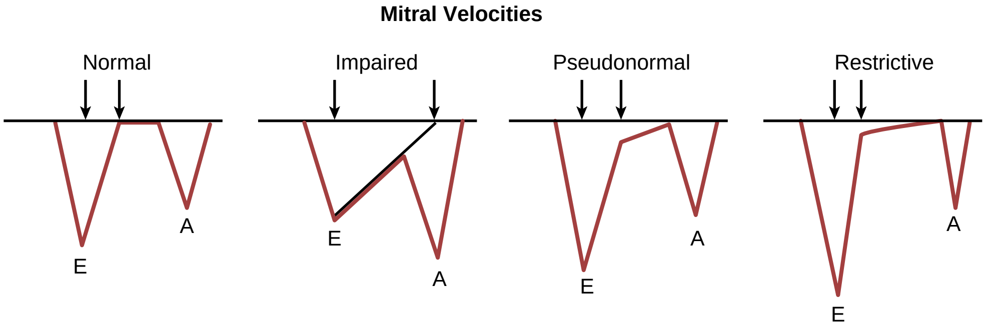


Fig. 37.20 Line drawings representing simultaneous transesophageal pulsed-wave Doppler recordings from the mitral annulus are shown for normal, impaired, pseudonormal, and restrictive left ventricular diastolic function. The black arrows mark the deceleration time of early filling, which is the interval between the peak E velocity and the point where the deceleration slope intersects the baseline. (Modified from Fig. 46.32, Desjardins G. Perioperative echocardiography. In: Miller R, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier/Saunders; 2015:1396–1428.

this a useful parameter for assessing whether diastolic dysfunction is present or absent. Much has been published about site of measurement (septal vs. lateral vs. averaged) and corresponding normal thresholds. A lateral e′ velocity of 10 cm/s or greater virtually excludes diastolic dysfunction (pericardial constriction being an exception). The E:e′ ratio provides information about LV filling pressures: usually filling pressures are normal when the average E:e′ is less than 8, whereas average E:e′ greater than 14 usually reflects elevated filling pressures. However, many factors limit the interpretation of e′, including mitral stenosis, significant mitral annular calcification, mitral valve prosthesis or ring, left bundle branch block, ventricular pacing, and significant MR.[89]

Updated ASE guidelines address the perceived complexities of diastolic function assessment and propose a simplified approach to evaluation. In patients with preserved EF, four parameters should be assessed initially: e′, E:A ratio, left atrial volume index, and peak tricuspid jet annular velocity.[90] These updates reflect an appreciation that increased LA size serves as a marker of chronically elevated LVEDP. In patients with reduced EF, characterization of diastolic dysfunction begins with transmitral E:A ratio. These updated guidelines may not be generalizable to the perioperative period, and moreover, TEE cannot reliably assess LA size. There are several algorithms relevant to the perioperative period that can be referenced for a more in-depth review of diastolic dysfunction.[91-93]

VALVULAR FUNCTION

Stenosis

Aortic and mitral stenosis are the most common stenotic lesions in the perioperative setting. Fundamental to the quantitative evaluation of valvular stenosis is Doppler echocardiography. Two key concepts underlying Doppler hemodynamic measurements are the continuity principle and the pressure-velocity relationship (see *Hemodynamic measurements* section). Recommended parameters for the assessment of aortic stenosis include peak aortic velocity, mean transvalvular gradient, and valve area calculation by continuity equation (Table 37.5).[94] The peak gradient derived using echocardiography estimates the instantaneous peak pressure difference across the valve, whereas conventional catheterization data report the difference between peak LV and peak aortic pressures (peak-to-peak gradient). Dimensionless index and 3-D planimetry corroborate findings obtained by recommended methods. Discordant grading of aortic stenosis by valve area and mean gradient requires additional evaluation of LV function, stroke volume (SV), and assessment of flow reserve. Recommended parameters for assessing mitral stenosis include gradient measurements, planimetry, and pressure half-time.[95] The continuity equation and the proximal isovelocity surface area (PISA) method may be used for additional information.

Limitations exist with quantitative methods. Geometric assumptions made when using the continuity equation may lead to an underestimation of calculated valve area. Loading conditions impact flow, and as a result, impact peak velocities and calculated pressure gradients. Under general anesthesia, gradients may underestimate the severity of stenosis. In high-flow states, elevated gradients may reflect high cardiac output.

TABLE 37.5 Parameters for Evaluating Severity of Aortic Stenosis

	SEVERITY OF STENOSIS		
Parameter	**Mild**	**Moderate**	**Severe**
Peak velocity (m/s)	2.6–2.9	3.0–4.0	≥4.0
Mean gradient (mm Hg)	<20	20–40	≥40
AVA (cm^2)	>1.5	1.0–1.5	<1.0
Indexed AVA (cm^2/m^2)*	>0.85	0.6–0.85	<0.6

*In patients with small body size, aortic valve area (AVA) should be indexed to body surface area. A small valve area in a small patient may only represent moderate stenosis. Indexing to very large body surface area is controversial.

Adapted from: Baumgartner H, Hung J, Bermejo J, et al. Recommendations on the echocardiographic assessment of aortic valve stenosis: a focused update from the European Association of Cardiovascular Imaging and the American Society of Echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr.* 2017;30(4):372–392.

Regurgitation

Recall that the vena contracta is the narrowest portion of a regurgitant jet at or downstream of the regurgitant orifice. The vena contracta width is a semiquantitative parameter for grading regurgitation severity, with cutoff values differing between valves. Pulsed-wave interrogation of flow patterns provides additional semiquantitative information. Pulmonary vein systolic flow reversal is specific for severe mitral regurgitation (MR) and hepatic vein systolic flow reversal is specific for severe tricuspid regurgitation[78].[*] Holodiastolic flow reversal in the descending aorta with velocities sustained above 20 cm/s is specific for severe aortic insufficiency.

Quantitative methods for grading regurgitation include calculation of regurgitant volume, regurgitant fraction, and effective regurgitant orifice area (EROA). Approaches include the stroke volume method, ventricular volumetric method, and the proximal isovelocity surface area (PISA) method. The radius of the previously mentioned flow convergence region is included in the PISA calculation. The details of these approaches are beyond the scope of this chapter. 3-D echocardiography allows for measurement of vena contracta area, which may be advantageous in the case of multiple jets or noncircular regurgitant orifices.

HEMODYNAMIC MEASUREMENTS

Cardiac Output

Doppler-based methods can be used to estimate SV and cardiac output (Fig. 37.21). Volumetric flow or SV can be calculated as a cylindrical volume as follows:

$$\mathrm{SV}\ \left(\mathrm{cm}^3\right) = \mathrm{CSA}\ \left(\mathrm{cm}^2\right) * \mathrm{VTI}\ (\mathrm{cm}),$$

where CSA is the cross-sectional area through which the blood flows and VTI is the velocity time integral of blood flow at that location. The VTI represents the distance the average blood cell travels during one cardiac cycle, and is

---

[*] in the absence of conditions such as atrial fibrillation, atrioventricular dissociation, or pacing with ventriculoatrial conduction.

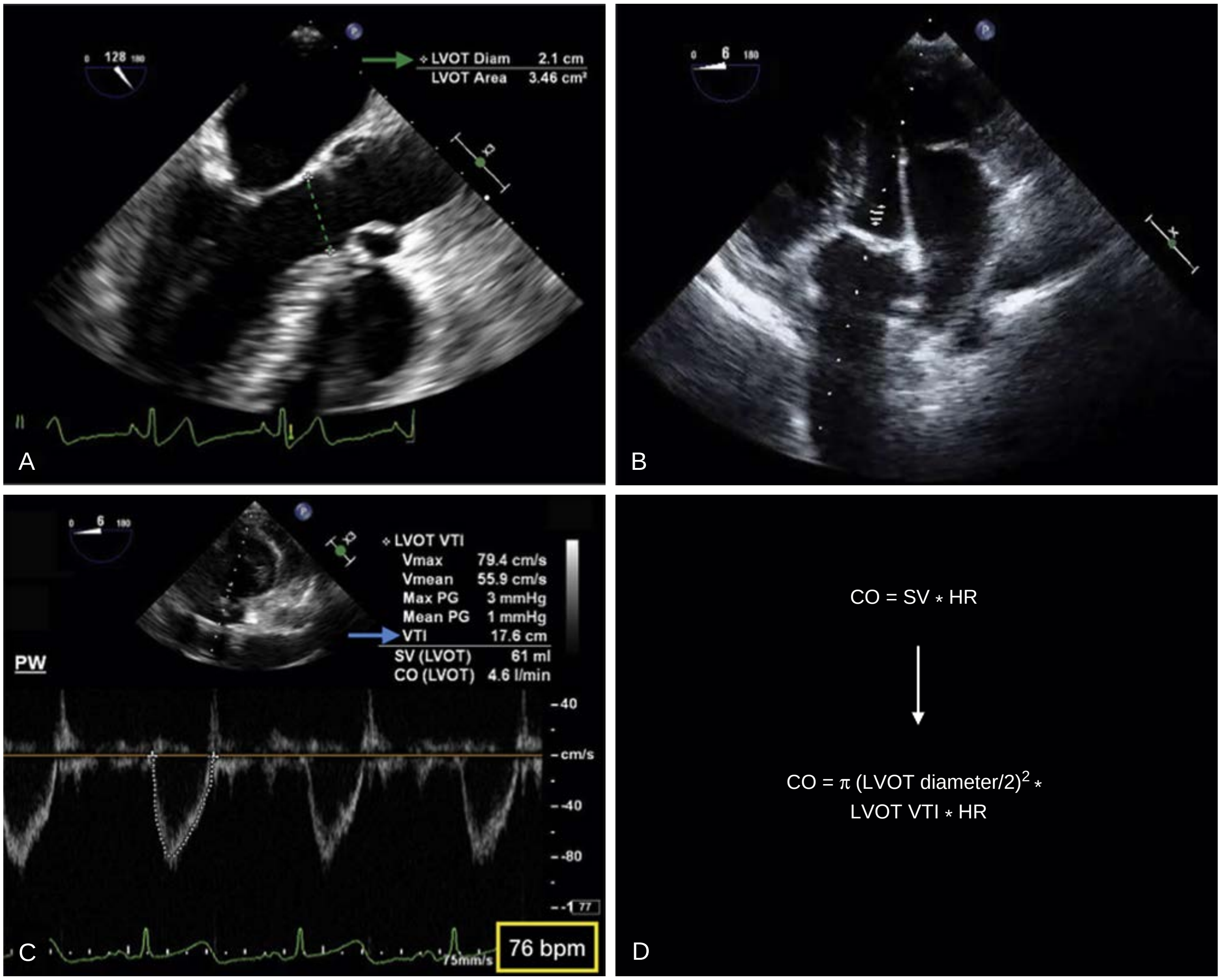


Fig. 37.21 Calculation of cardiac output (CO) using transesophageal echocardiography. (A) The left ventricular outflow tract (LVOT) diameter is measured in the midesophageal aortic valve long axis view. The cross-sectional area (CSA) of the LVOT is assumed to be circular, and is calculated as: $\text{CSA}_{\text{LVOT}} = \pi\left(\frac{\text{LVOT Diameter}}{2}\right)^2$. In this example, $\text{CSA}_{\text{LVOT}} = 3.14 * \left(\frac{2.1\text{ cm}}{1}\right)^2 = 3.46\text{ cm}^2$. (B) Velocity of blood flow through the LVOT is measured using pulsed-wave Doppler in the deep transgastric view. The velocity and diameter measurements should be performed at the same anatomic location. (C) The spectral envelope is traced to determine the area under the curve, which is equal to the velocity time integral (VTI). This represents the distance the column of blood travels with each beat and is sometimes referred to as "stroke distance." Stroke volume (SV) is the product of the cross-sectional area of the LVOT and the LVOT VTI, or $\text{SV} = \text{CSA}_{\text{LVOT}} * \text{LVOT VTI}$. (D) CO is derived by multiplying the stroke volume *(SV)* by heart rate *(HR)*, or $CO = 3.46\,cm^2 * 17.6\,cm * 76\,bpm = 4{,}628\frac{ml}{min}$. In the example provided, the machine is configured to automatically calculate stroke volume and cardiac output as displayed in panel C.

the area under the spectral Doppler envelope. Cardiac output is the product of SV and heart rate.

Cardiac output calculation is typically performed at the LV outflow tract (LVOT). The diameter is measured in the ME AV LAX view using TEE and the parasternal LAX view using TTE. The LVOT VTI is obtained in the Deep TG LAX using TEE and the A5C using TTE. Potential sources of error include inaccurate measurement of the LVOT diameter (with a squaring of any error when calculating the cross-sectional area), poor Doppler alignment with the blood flow, and measurement of the area and velocity measurements at different anatomic locations.

Many studies in surgical and ICU patients have compared Doppler-derived cardiac output (CO) to CO by thermodilution. Some authors interpret the literature to indicate Doppler-derived measurements have good agreement with CO by thermodilution.[96] Other authors, however, highlight the methodological limitations and heterogeneity of studies, and argue echocardiographic and thermodilution-derived CO cannot be used interchangeably.[97] Stronger evidence supports the use of echocardiographic-derived CO for assessing trends over time.[97]

Continuity Principle

The continuity principle states that flow rate proximal to a restricted orifice equals the flow rate through the orifice. Applying this principle to pulsatile intracardiac flow, the stroke volumes proximal to (SV_1) and at a restricted orifice (SV_2) are the same.

$$\text{SV}_1 = \text{SV}_2$$

and therefore

$$\text{CSA}_1 * \text{VTI}_1 = \text{CSA}_2 * \text{VTI}_2$$

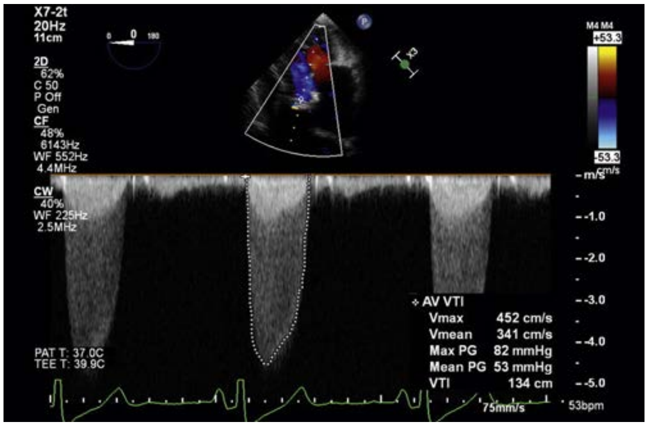


Fig. 37.22 The transvalvular pressure gradient across a stenotic aortic valve is estimated using continuous wave Doppler in the transesophageal deep transgastric view. The peak gradient is derived from the peak velocity of the spectral Doppler signal using the simplified Bernoulli equation. The mean gradient is the average of the instantaneous peak gradients throughout systole and is obtained by tracing the Doppler envelope. The ultrasound system will automatically calculate the mean pressure gradient from the tracing. The measurements in this example are consistent with severe aortic stenosis.

Common clinical applications of this equation include calculation of stenotic valve areas, prosthetic valve areas, and regurgitant orifice areas.

Bernoulli Equation

Pressure cannot be measured directly using echocardiography, however applications of the Bernoulli principle allow for estimation of gradients from velocity information (Fig. 37.22). This technique is commonly applied to quantify the severity of stenosis. The modified Bernoulli equation estimates the transvalvular pressure gradient (ΔP) as follows:

$$\Delta P = 4\left(V_2^2 - V_1^2\right)$$

where V_2 represents the peak velocity at the valve and V_1 represents the peak velocity proximal to the valve. V_1 is usually much lower than V_2 and can be ignored, simplifying the equation to:

$$\Delta P = 4V^2$$

If V_1 exceeds 1.5 m/s it should be included in the calculation.[94]

Intracardiac Pressure Estimates

Right Atrial Pressure. In *spontaneously* breathing individuals, right atrial pressure (RAP) can be estimated from the inferior vena cava (IVC) diameter and collapsibility of the IVC during inspiration (“sniff” maneuver). The IVC collapsibility index (cIVC) is defined as:

$$\text{cIVC} = \frac{(D_{\max} - D_{\min})}{D_{\max}} * 100\,\%$$

where $D_{\max}$ is the maximum diameter on expiration and $D_{\min}$ is the minimum diameter on inspiration. Table 37.6 presents a simplified approach to estimating RAP using IVC diameter and cIVC recommended by Rudski and associates.[77] In cases of intermediate RAP estimates, it is recommended to use secondary indices of elevated RAP to downgrade or upgrade the estimate.[77]

TABLE 37.6 Echocardiographic Estimation of Right Atrial Pressures*

RAP	Estimated RAP (Range) (mm Hg)	IVC Diameter (cm)	cIVC
Normal	3 (0–5)	≤2.1	>50%
Intermediate	8 (5–10)	≤2.1	<50%
Intermediate	8 (5–10)	>2.1	>50%
Elevated	15 (10–20)	>2.1	<50%

*In spontaneously breathing individuals.

In the case of intermediate estimates, the presence or absence of secondary indices of elevated RAP can be used to better characterize the pressure estimate. *cIVC*, IVC collapsibility index (see text for definition); *IVC*, inferior vena cava; *RAP*, right atrial pressures.

As proposed by/adapted from Table 3 in Rudski LG, Lai WW, Afilalo J, et al. Guidelines for the echocardiographic assessment of the right heart in adults: a report from the American Society of Echocardiography endorsed by the European Association of Echocardiography, a registered branch of the European Society of Cardiology, and the Canadian Society of Echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2010;23(7):685–713; quiz 786–688.

Chamber Pressures. Velocity measurements of valvular regurgitation or shunt can be used to estimate chamber pressures using the simplified Bernoulli equation. The pressure gradient (ΔP) reflects the pressure difference between the chamber where blood flow originates and blood flow is received. This is expressed as:

$$P_{\text{OC}} - P_{\text{RC}} = 4V^2$$

where P_{OC} is the pressure in the originating chamber and P_{RC} is the pressure in the receiving chamber. The equation can then be rearranged to:

$$P_{\text{OC}} = 4V^2 + P_{\text{RC}}$$

A common application is estimation of pulmonary artery systolic pressure (PASP) from the maximal tricuspid regurgitant jet velocity (Fig. 37.23). Pulmonary hypertension is defined as a mean pulmonary arterial pressure (mPAP) of 25 mm Hg or greater, which corresponds to a PASP of 38 mm Hg. mPAP can be estimated from PASP as follows: mPAP = (0.61 × PASP) + 2 mm Hg.[98] Alternatively, mPAP can be estimated using the simplified Bernoulli equation and the peak velocity of pulmonary regurgitation.

Hemodynamic Failure and Shock

Hemodynamic instability and circulatory failure may occur at any phase in a patient’s perioperative care, and echocardiography provides valuable information to the operating room anesthesiologist and intensivist alike. Echocardiography enables characterization of the mechanism of shock (cardiogenic, hypovolemic, distributive, and/or obstructive)[99] and can be used for serial assessment of response to therapies.[100] Most clinicians will apply qualitative techniques during echocardiographic assessment; quantitative approaches also add valuable information when used by appropriately trained individuals.

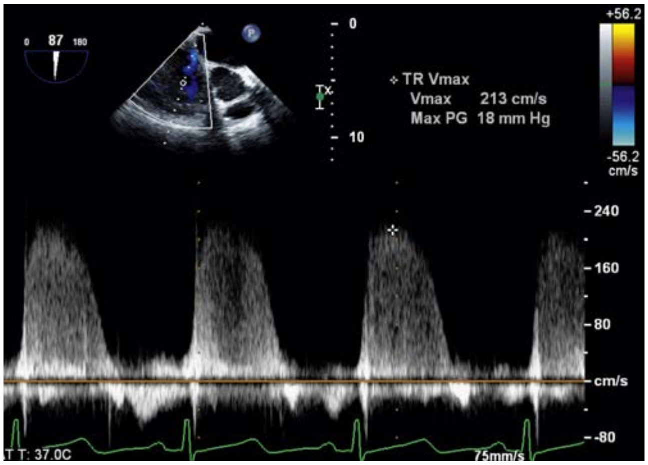


Fig. 37.23 A midesophageal modified bicaval view aligns the Doppler cursor with the tricuspid regurgitant jet. Continuous wave Doppler measures the peak systolic velocity of the tricuspid regurgitation (V_{TR}). V_{TR} reflects difference between the right ventricular systolic pressure (RVSP) and right atrial pressure (RAP), so RVSP = 4 V_{TR}^2 + RAP. In the absence of right ventricular outflow tract obstruction or pulmonary stenosis, RVSP and pulmonary artery systolic pressure (PASP) are essentially equal. In this example, the estimated PASP = 18 mm Hg + RAP.

VENTRICULAR DYSFUNCTION

Qualitative evaluation of biventricular systolic function is central to identifying the etiology of shock or hemodynamic instability. As previously mentioned, visual estimation of LVEF by experienced individuals correlates well with quantitative methods,[71,72] and can be learned easily with proper feedback.[101] A focused examination should identify whether significant myocardial dysfunction is present. Further assessment may suggest myocardial stunning or ischemia, especially if in a segmental distribution or acute in onset. This is not without limitations however, as acute decreases in preload can cause new RWMAs in the absence of ischemia.[102]

Takotsubo cardiomyopathy, a form of stress cardiomyopathy thought to result from excess catecholamine stimulation, may occur with a perioperative incidence of 1 in 6700.[103] Classically described as apical ballooning and basal hyperkinesis in the absence of obstructive coronary disease (Video 37.6), it derives its name from the similarly appearing Japanese takotsubo octopus pot trap. Additional patterns of regional involvement in stress cardiomyopathy include midventricular, basal, localized, or global.[104] Echocardiography allows evaluation of LV morphology and segmental wall motion, right ventricular involvement, and complications such as MR, LVOT obstruction, intracardiac thrombus, and cardiac rupture.[104]

SEVERE HYPOVOLEMIA

Hypovolemia leads to a decrease in LV end-diastolic area (EDA) and end-systolic area (ESA), but at baseline there is wide variability in the normal ranges.[105] For practical purposes, qualitative assessment of chamber size provides the most useful information if monitored serially in the operating room or in the setting of significant hypovolemia, where EDA will be markedly reduced. It is important to distinguish hypovolemia from distributive shock, where ESA is also decreased but the EDA area will be normal.[106] End-systolic cavity obliteration (sometimes described as "kissing walls") is frequently associated with decreased EDA and hypovolemia, but may also occur in high inotropic or vasodilatory states.[105]

As previously described, IVC diameter and cIVC can be used to estimate the RAP in spontaneously breathing individuals.[77] Central venous pressure, however, is a poor predictor of fluid responsiveness.[107] Whether cIVC predicts fluid responsiveness during spontaneous ventilation is an area of active debate,[108–111] and has been examined in several studies.[112–117] In many instances, spontaneously breathing patients with cIVC of more than 40% to 50% will respond to fluid administration,[112,115,117] but this is not found consistently,[113,114] and does not necessarily identify nonresponders.[112,115] We would encourage the reader to read the primary literature to gain a more in-depth understanding of the topic prior to attempting to use cIVC in the assessment of hypovolemia.

Predictors of fluid responsiveness applicable in patients who undergo passive mechanical ventilation, typically in the setting of critical illness, are covered in the *Critical Care* section of the chapter.

LEFT VENTRICULAR OUTFLOW TRACT OBSTRUCTION

LVOT obstruction may precipitate significant hemodynamic compromise, creating a perplexing scenario of worsening instability despite aggressive inotropic resuscitation. LVOT obstruction and systolic anterior motion (SAM) of the mitral valve are classically associated with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. In the perioperative setting, LVOT obstruction and SAM often occur following mitral valve repair. The presence of LVOT obstruction in other susceptible populations is likely underappreciated, and probably results from a combination of anatomic predisposition and precipitating hemodynamic factors associated with enhanced LV contractility (hypovolemia, hyperkinesis, inotropes). Anatomic factors include small LV cavity, basal septal hypertrophy, and an anteriorly-displaced mitral valve coaptation zone with redundant leaflet tissue.[118] One series observed LVOT obstruction in over 20% of patients admitted in septic shock, and the presence of LVOT obstruction was associated with higher mortality.[119] SAM was present in only two-thirds of the cases of LVOT obstruction, underscoring the complex mechanisms leading to clinically relevant obstruction. In a series of perioperative rescue echocardiograms, LVOT obstruction was present in 3.6% of cases.[120]

LVOT obstruction produces high-velocity flow in the LVOT. Interrogation of the LVOT with CFD reveals flow acceleration and turbulence. Blood flow velocity exceeds the Nyquist limit of PWD, so CWD is required for quantification. Visual assessment of CFD and gradual movement of the PW sampling volume through the LV cavity and LVOT can be used to estimate the location of the obstruction. In the presence of LVOT obstruction, the spectral Doppler profile of systolic blood flow across the LVOT is dagger-shaped and mid-to-late peaking (Fig. 37.24). The

M-mode of the aortic valve will demonstrate premature leaflet closure during mid-systole (Fig. 37.25*B*). Findings consistent with SAM include anterior displacement of the mitral leaflet during systole with entrainment in the LVOT (Fig. 37.26; Video 37.7). Variable degrees of MR may be present.

CARDIAC TAMPONADE

Echocardiography readily detects pericardial fluid, which appears as an echolucent space adjacent to the heart. The physiologic significance of a pericardial effusion depends on both the volume and rate of accumulation. A large effusion may develop slowly with minimal consequence, whereas a rapidly accumulating effusion of small volume can have profound hemodynamic impact. Cardiac tamponade develops when intrapericardial pressure exceeds cardiac chamber pressures, thereby compressing the cardiac chambers. This impairs chamber filling ultimately compromising cardiac output. Hemodynamic effects of tamponade occur along a continuum.[121]

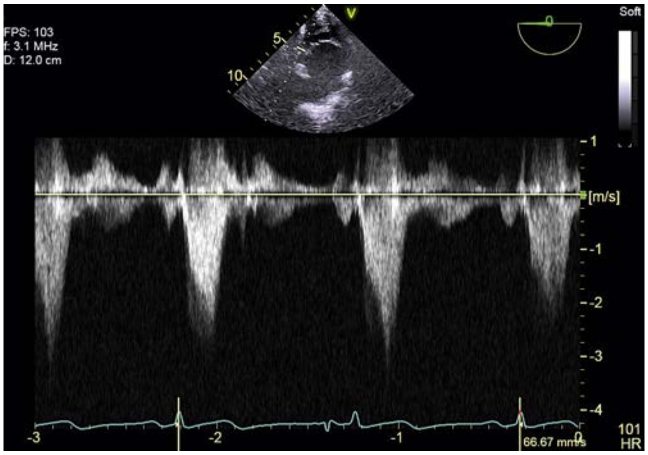


Fig. 37.24 A continuous wave Doppler signal characteristic of left ventricular outflow tract obstruction. The signal appears "dagger-shaped," with the peak velocity occurring in mid-to-late systole. In the perioperative setting, obstruction may be dynamic and unmasked by precipitating factors in susceptible individuals.

Echocardiographic findings can support the diagnosis of cardiac tamponade in the context of relevant clinical findings. When intrapericardial pressure exceeds cardiac chamber pressures, chamber collapse may occur during the respective relaxation phases. The thin right atrium typically has the lowest pressure and usually is the first chamber to show collapse or inversion, which is observed in ventricular systole (Fig. 37.27*A*; Video 37.8).[122,123] Importantly, transient right atrial collapse may be present in the absence of tamponade, and therefore is a nonspecific finding. A longer duration of atrial collapse improves the specificity of this finding.[122] RV diastolic collapse (Video 37.9; see Fig. 37.27*B*) occurs later than right atrial collapse in the progression of tamponade, and is a more specific finding. In a series of patients with moderate or large pericardial effusions, the absence of any right-sided chamber collapse had a high negative predictive value for clinical tamponade.[124] Collapse of right heart chambers may not occur in settings where baseline right-sided pressures are elevated, such as in patients with pulmonary hypertension. Following cardiac surgery, echocardiographic findings in the setting of tamponade may be atypical, including localized compression of cardiac chambers and accumulation of clot.

In spontaneously breathing patients, a dilated IVC with less than a 50% decrease in diameter with deep inspiration is a sensitive sign for tamponade. This combination of findings has poor specificity, however, because it reflects elevated central venous pressure.[125] During spontaneous ventilation in the absence of pathology, there is a normal

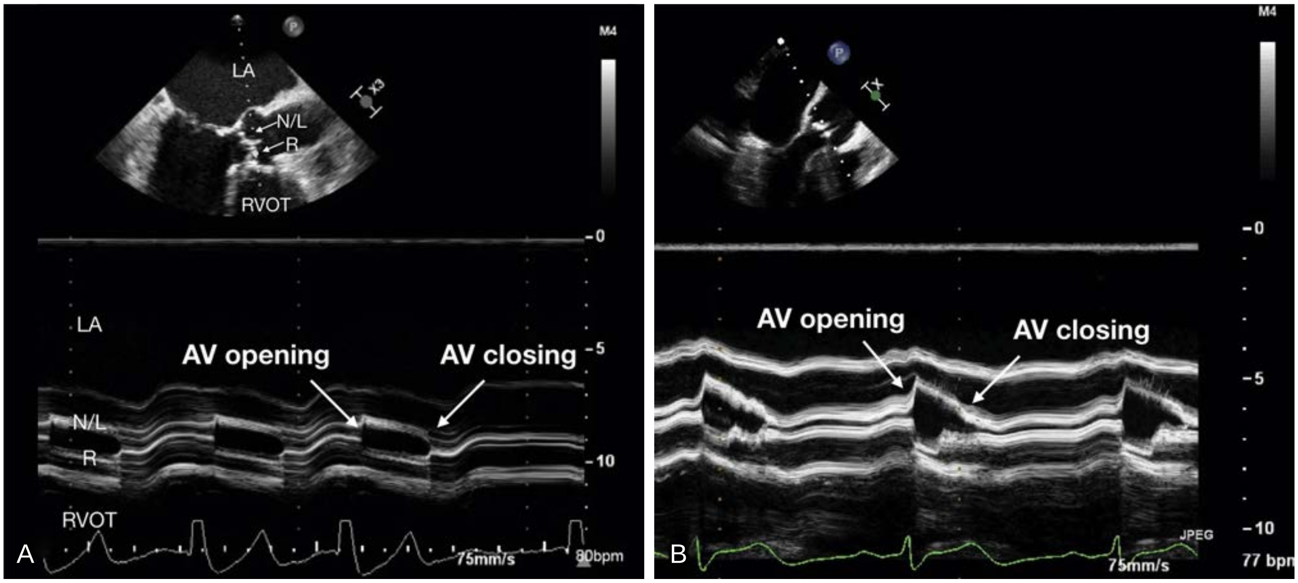


Fig. 37.25 M-mode interrogation of the aortic valve in the midesophageal aortic valve long axis view. The cursor passes through the left atrium *(LA)*, posterior aortic root, the non or left coronary cusp *(N/L)*, the right coronary cusp *(R)*, the anterior aortic root, and the right ventricular outflow tract *(RVOT)*. (A) In the absence of obstruction to flow (or other aortic valve pathology), the motion of the aortic valve leaflets during systole creates a rectangular shape. (B) In the presence of left ventricular outflow tract obstruction, the aortic valve opens normally, but closes prematurely.

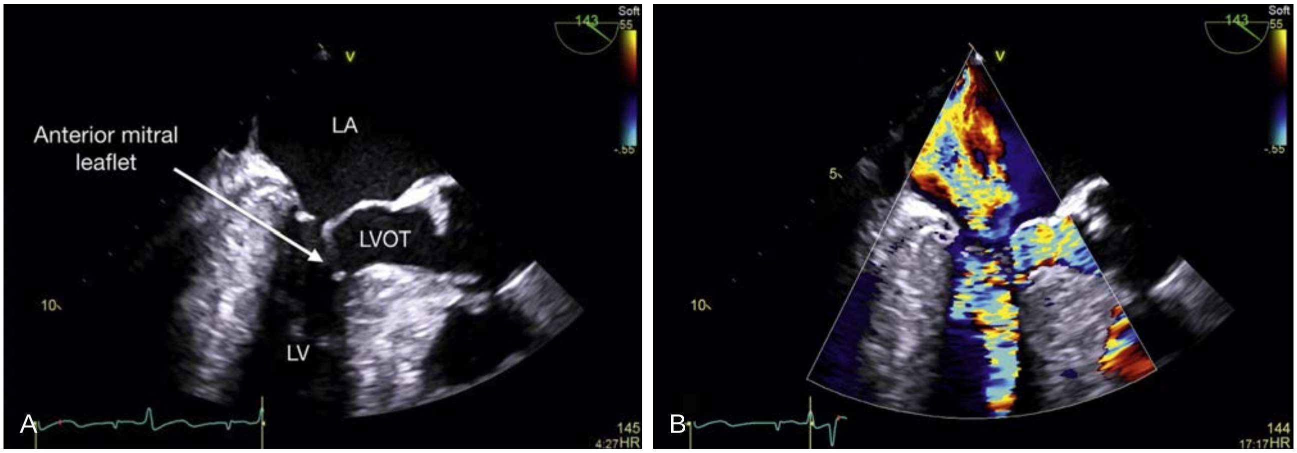


Fig. 37.26 Midesophageal long axis views without (A) and with color (B) demonstrating systolic anterior motion of the mitral valve (SAM). (A) Instead of coapting normally, the anterior mitral leaflet *(arrow)* moves into the left ventricular outflow tract *(LVOT)* during systole. This narrows the effective outflow tract and can lead to dynamic obstruction to flow. (B) Turbulent flow is visualized by color Doppler in the LVOT. In this example, there is significant mitral regurgitation associated with SAM. *LA*, Left atrium; *LV*, left ventricle.

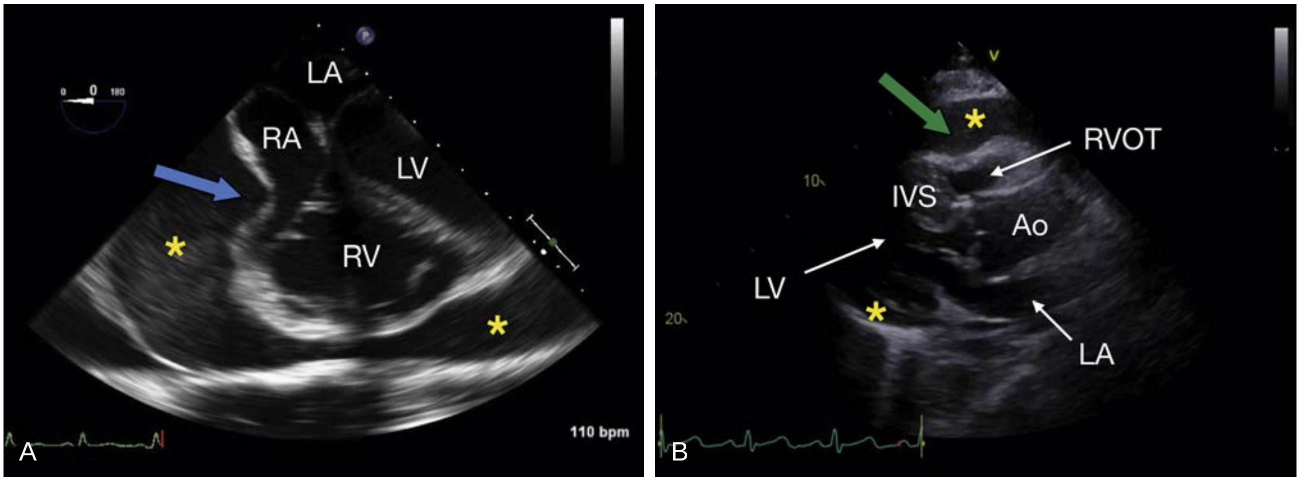


Fig. 37.27 **Echocardiographic features supporting the clinical diagnosis of tamponade.** (A) Transesophageal midesophageal four-chamber view demonstrating a large echolucent pericardial effusion (*). Right atrial collapse *(blue arrow)* is present during ventricular systole (note the red marker on the ECG tracing after the R-wave). (B) Transthoracic parasternal long axis view also demonstrating a large pericardial effusion (*). Right ventricular collapse *(green arrow)* during diastole is present (note the red marker on the p-wave of the ECG tracing). Right ventricular collapse is more specific for tamponade than right atrial collapse. *Ao,* Ascending aorta; *IVS*, interventricular septum; *LA,* left atrium; *LV*, left ventricle; *RA,* right atrium; *RV,* right ventricle.

variation in the peak transvalvular flow velocities, with transtricuspid velocities increasing during inspiration and transmitral velocities decreasing. Exaggerated respiratory variation in transvalvular flow velocities occurs in tamponade, calculated as a percentage change from expiration velocity.[121] In tamponade, there is usually a greater than 30% variation in mitral inflow velocities, and greater than 60% (absolute) variation in tricuspid inflow velocities. Exaggerated respirophasic changes in transvalvular velocities alone are insufficient to support a diagnosis of tamponade. Additionally, these findings have not been validated in patients receiving positive pressure ventilation. In fact, in an experimental animal model of tamponade, the greatest variation in mitral inflow velocities was observed during the control phase, with attenuation of the variation during tamponade.[126] Abnormal venous flow patterns in the superior vena cava (SVC) and hepatic veins can also provide supportive evidence of tamponade; however, analysis may not be feasible in at least one-third of patients due to the presence of TR, atrial fibrillation, paced rhythm, or technical inadequacy.[124] Echocardiography frequently guides pericardiocentesis procedures.

PULMONARY EMBOLISM

Acute pulmonary embolism (PE) is classified into three subgroups: high-risk (massive), intermediate-risk (submassive), and low-risk.[127,128] The presence of sustained hypotension or shock (not explained by other causes) defines massive PE. Patients with intermediate- and low-risk PE by definition are normotensive. The groups are further delineated according to RV dysfunction, myocardial injury, and other clinical features. When PE is suspected, the recommended first-line imaging modality is computed tomography angiography (CTA).[128] Echocardiography, in contrast, is not recommended in the initial diagnostic evaluation of PE.[129] When the diagnosis of PE is established, echocardiography has utility in risk stratification, prognostication, and response to therapy.[128,130]

In cases of suspected PE with hemodynamic instability or shock, obtaining a CTA may not be feasible. In this context, echocardiography has a role in refining the diagnostic assessment and management decisions.[128,131] Freely mobile intracardiac thrombus, or "clot in transit," is visualized rarely on echocardiography (<4% of cases), but more commonly in high-risk PE (22%) and is associated with worse prognosis.[132] Indirect signs of PE include RV dilation, RV dysfunction, and the 60/60 sign, which is a pulmonary ejection acceleration time of less than 60 ms with a mid-systolic notch and a TR peak gradient between 30 and 60 mm Hg.[130] Several parameters may be used to assess RV dysfunction, including "McConnell's sign," TAPSE, increased end-diastolic RV-to-LV diameter ratio (≥0.9 or 1.0), and interventricular septal flattening during systole, indicative of pressure overload.[128,130] Myocardial deformation as a marker of RV dysfunction is not widely used but is an area of investigation.[130,133]

"McConnell's sign" is an echocardiographic finding of RV hypokinesis or akinesis with apical sparing (Video 37.10). It was originally reported as having a high sensitivity and specificity for acute PE,[134] however several subsequent studies have demonstrated this finding to lack sensitivity.[135] The absence of McConnell's sign does not exclude acute PE. In many populations, McConnell's sign is highly specific. Important exceptions include patients with RV infarction[136] or pulmonary hypertension,[133] where McConnell's sign may be observed in the absence of acute PE (i.e., a nonspecific finding).

Few studies focus specifically on echocardiographic findings in the high-risk subgroup. However, in a series of 511 patients with confirmed PE, 16 of the patients met high-risk criteria.[137] Interestingly, all 16 patients had RV enlargement and hypokinesis, and at least one of the following: McConnell's sign, 60/60 sign, or right heart thrombus. Flattened interventricular system, RV free wall hypokinesis plus a RV-to-LV diameter ratio greater than 0.9, McConnell's sign, and right heart thrombus were observed significantly more frequently in patients with high-risk PE than those without.

Recent work has sought to better define the diagnostic utility of echocardiography in PE (including all risk categories), especially in light of the increasing use of point-of-care ultrasound. Meta-analysis of both formal and point-of-care TTE examinations in patients with clinical concern for PE found that echocardiographic signs of right heart strain (variably defined) had a sensitivity of 53% and a specificity of 83%.[135] In the previously mentioned series of 511 patients, over one-third of the non-high-risk patients demonstrated completely normal RV morphology and function.[137]

Intraoperative Transesophageal Echocardiography - Noncardiac Surgery

In noncardiac surgery, TEE serves two main roles: an intraoperative monitor and a rescue tool. TEE has been used in diverse operative settings including vascular, orthopedic, and transplant surgery. A comprehensive review on the topic has been published by Mahmood and colleagues.[138] The impact of TEE tends to be greater when it is used as a rescue tool versus as a monitor.[139] The extent of the therapeutic impact is difficult to quantify, however, in part because interpretation of "impact" is not uniform. Supportive or confirmatory information adds substantial value in many contexts. Therapeutic modifications reported as a result of TEE findings include initiation of pharmacologic therapy, fluid administration, and alteration in anesthetic plan or surgical procedure.[138,140,141] Continuation of patient management without changes may also be considered a relevant impact.

MONITORING ROLE

Myocardial Ischemia

Echocardiographic changes of myocardial ischemia manifest earlier than ECG changes, suggesting a potential role for TEE in the early detection of intraoperative ischemia. Current practice is to perform TEE monitoring selectively in patients with known risk factors or undergoing high-risk procedures. Early research demonstrated a 20% incidence of new or worsening RWMAs in high-risk patients.[142] Intraoperative RWMAs were infrequently associated with postoperative myocardial infarction (MI) and overall complication rate was low. Another study in the 1990s concluded that changes detected by intraoperative TEE added little incremental value in predicting risk of postoperative ischemic outcomes (death, nonfatal MI, unstable angina) compared with preoperative data and two-lead ECG monitoring.[143] The imaging capabilities of current transducers are vastly enhanced compared to those used in earlier decades, and may not reflect TEE's utility as a monitor of ischemia in the current era. A study of 54 high-risk patients undergoing vascular surgery demonstrated new RWMAs on intraoperative TEE in 43% of cases.[144] Overall incidence of postoperative MI was 11%, and all patients with MI demonstrated intraoperative RMWAs. Intraoperative TEE was a sensitive indicator of risk for postoperative MI, although there still were a substantial number of patients with "false positive" echocardiographic changes. Many questions surrounding the optimal use and potential impact of TEE as a monitor for ischemia in high-risk settings remain unanswered. In the absence of patient-specific or procedural risk factors, the routine use of TEE during noncardiac surgery to monitor for myocardial ischemia is not recommended.[51]

Liver Transplantation

Hemodynamic management during orthotopic liver transplantation is complex, with frequent periods of instability from potentially numerous causes.[145,146] At baseline, patients often have high cardiac output and low systemic vascular resistance with significant comorbidities. In the preanhepatic phase (from incision to occlusion of vascular inflow to the liver), hemodynamic alterations may result from an abrupt change in preload due to drainage of large volume ascites, hemorrhage, or surgical caval compression. TEE examination during this phase allows for characterization of dynamic changes, as well as baseline evaluation of biventricular and valvular function. During the anhepatic phase (occlusion of inflow to the liver to unclamping of the portal vein), preload to the heart is decreased. If an end-to-end interposition of the IVC is performed, complete caval occlusion is required and venovenous bypass may be used to improve preload and decrease venous congestion. A piggyback technique only requires partial caval occlusion and venous return to the heart is usually adequate without bypass. TEE findings of ventricular dysfunction, diminished cardiac output, hypovolemia, and intracardiac thrombi may be present regardless of the surgical technique. The reperfusion phase begins with release of the cross clamp from the portal vein, resulting in infusion of cold, hyperkalemic, acidotic blood. Profound instability may result and even progress to cardiac arrest. TEE provides real-time visualization of cardiac function and filling. Over 40% of liver transplant patients demonstrate evidence of inducible LVOT obstruction on preoperative dobutamine stress echocardiography,[147] making this an important diagnosis to exclude in the setting of refractory hypotension. Inspection of the IVC for high-velocity or turbulent flow is also possible with TEE.

Esophageal varices are a relative contraindication to TEE and are a relevant concern in the liver transplant population. However, the reported rate of TEE complications in liver transplantation is low, even in patients with known esophageal varices or history of upper gastrointestinal bleeding. A recent review suggests TEE to be safe in patients without grade 3 varices or active gastrointestinal bleeding.[146] Approaches to minimize risk include limited probe manipulation during the anhepatic phase and avoidance of TG and DTG views.

Lung Transplantation

Intraoperative TEE provides key information in each phase of lung transplantation in a patient population with impaired cardiopulmonary reserve.[148] Initial assessment includes evaluation for RV dilation, hypertrophy, and dysfunction, which result from long-standing pulmonary hypertension. Identification of a patent foramen ovale (PFO) may have clinical consequence if right-sided pressures exceed left-sided pressures, impacting the surgical plan. Common problems during one-lung ventilation and graft implantation include hypoxemia, hypercapnia, and elevated pulmonary vascular resistance, which may precipitate acute RV failure. Recognition of deteriorating RV function by TEE prompts initiation of inotropes or pulmonary vasodilators. Should profound instability result, TEE may provide information leading to initiation of cardiopulmonary bypass or help guide cannula placement for extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO). After reperfusion, in addition to continued assessment of biventricular function, attention turns to the pulmonary artery anastomosis and the pulmonary veins[149] for findings suggestive of kinking, thrombus, or stenosis.

Vascular Surgery/Endovascular Procedures

Patients undergoing vascular procedures are at increased risk of perioperative cardiovascular morbidity and mortality. Applications of TEE in this setting include monitoring for ischemia, assessment of systolic and diastolic function, and guidance for fluid resuscitation. In open abdominal aortic aneurysm repair, significant increases in afterload and wall tension occur with application of the cross clamp. After aortic occlusion, LVEF significantly decreases and EDV and ESV increase.[150] New or worsening RWMAs have been reported in up to one-third of patients, and occur more frequently with suprarenal versus infrarenal clamping.[151] Persistent RWMAs after several hours have been associated with postoperative MI.[151] With unclamping of vessels and ensuing instability, TEE serves as an adjunctive monitor as resuscitation proceeds. Over the past two decades, there has been a dramatic increase in endovascular repairs and a decline in open vascular procedures, consequently impacting the anticipated anesthetic concerns. Potential profound instability may be dramatically reduced, diminishing the value of intraoperative TEE in that context. However, TEE may be used to identify aortic pathology, identify landing zones, and evaluate for endoleaks.[138]

RESCUE ROLE

TEE used in the setting of unanticipated hemodynamic instability or cardiopulmonary arrest, also called “rescue” TEE, rapidly provides valuable information. Rescue TEE identifies causes of shock described earlier in the chapter (e.g., ventricular dysfunction, severe hypovolemia, LVOT obstruction, tamponade, and PE). Embolic phenomena relatively unique to the operative setting include air emboli during upright neurosurgical procedures and fat or cement emboli in orthopedic and spine surgeries.

Several series report the value of rescue echocardiography, describing its ability to identify a cause for instability or confirm expected diagnoses.[152-154] TEE aided or impacted clinical management in the majority of the cases. Rescue TEE commonly implicates LV dysfunction and hypovolemia in instability, although no diagnosis occurs with enough frequency to be predictive without performing an echocardiographic examination. In fact, in one series the most frequent finding was a normal examination or demonstration of known pathology (48%).[155] Despite a “negative” result, the TEE findings influenced management in more than half of these cases, suggesting the impact of TEE is not confined to cases demonstrating pathology. The largest reported study includes 364 rescue studies (96% TEE) performed throughout the perioperative period (55% intraoperatively).[120] The most common findings intraoperatively were hypovolemia (32%) and LV dysfunction (11%), whereas postoperatively RV (24%) and LV (22%) systolic dysfunction predominated. The findings influenced management in 59% of cases. Information can be obtained quickly (<5 minutes)[154] and may make an immediate impact. The sequence of examination and included views may vary among providers, but these should provide information swiftly. One proposed rescue protocol includes a sequence of five views: ME 4C, ME AV LAX, ME bicaval, TG SAX, and descending aorta SAX.[155]

Intraoperative Transesophageal Echocardiography - Cardiac Surgery

Numerous observational studies demonstrate the impact of intraoperative TEE on decision making in cardiac surgery. In a retrospective study of 12,566 patients, new echocardiographic findings on TEE prior to cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) led to changes in surgical management in 7% of cases.[156] After CPB, TEE findings prompted return to CPB in 2.2% of cases. When analyzed according to surgical procedure, influential new findings were demonstrated in 5.4% of 3853 isolated CABG cases pre-CPB, and in 1.5% of CABG cases post-CPB with 0.8% requiring graft revision. A study of 521 patients undergoing CABG demonstrated new pre-CPB findings influencing the surgical plan in 11.9% of cases, and in 0.7% of cases post-CPB.[157] In valvular surgery, an analysis of 8 studies including 15,540 patients demonstrated the influence of TEE findings on surgical decision making in 11% of cases pre-CPB and 4% of cases post-CPB.[64]

When considering the impact of TEE findings on surgical interventions, limitations should be recognized. Selection bias for the use of TEE may be present in cases where it is anticipated to alter decision making, especially in CABG. Also, many studies included PFO as a diagnosis influencing the surgical plan. In the absence of high risk for hypoxemia and right-to-left shunting, optimal management of PFO when the surgical procedure does not involve atriotomy is unclear.[158] In an observational study of patients undergoing cardiac surgery, newly diagnosed PFO was not associated with increased perioperative morbidity or mortality.[159] PFO closure did not influence long-term survival, but was associated with higher risk of intraoperative stroke.

Intraoperative TEE findings provide prognostic value. Detection of RWMAs by TEE at any time during CABG is an independent predictor of postoperative MI.[160] Deterioration of regional wall motion on intraoperative TEE following revascularization is associated with higher risk of both short-term[161] and long-term[162] adverse cardiovascular events.

A general framework is useful when conducting pre-CPB and post-CPB examinations. Prior to initiation of CPB, evaluation includes assessment of overall biventricular function, aortic pathology that may affect cannulation strategy, presence of aortic regurgitation, and identification of unanticipated findings (e.g., severe valvular lesions, intracardiac thrombus). In the case of valvular surgery, diagnosis is confirmed and additional information regarding the mechanism of dysfunction is communicated to the surgeon. In minimally invasive cardiac surgery, TEE enables visualization of wires for cannulae placement and can guide percutaneous coronary sinus catheter placement. Post-CPB examination includes assessment of global and regional ventricular function, appropriate seating and function of newly implanted prosthetic valves,[163] identification of any new valvular abnormalities requiring intervention, and exclusion of iatrogenic aortic injury. Applications of TEE in the context of specific pathology and surgical procedures are outlined in the sections that follow.

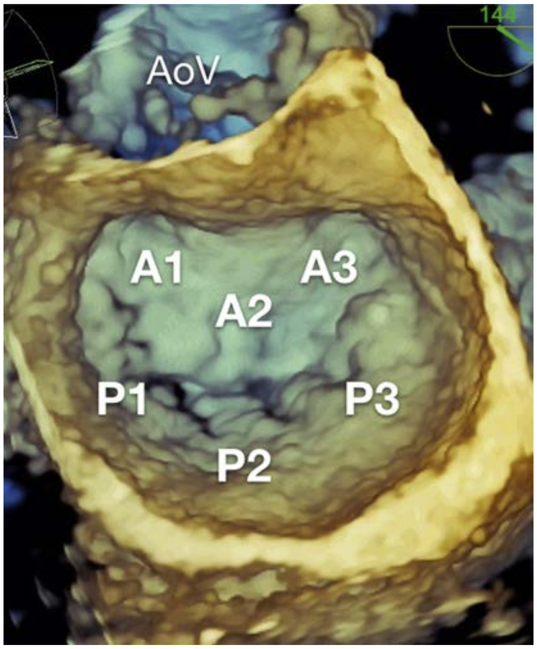


Fig. 37.28 En face display of a three-dimensional image of the mitral valve. This orientation is analogous to the viewpoint of the surgeon, and facilitates communication regarding the location of structural pathology. The scallops of the anterior *(A1, A2, A3)* and posterior *(P1, P2, P3)* mitral leaflets are labeled. *AoV*, Aortic valve.

MITRAL VALVE REPAIR

TEE imaging of the mitral valve has transformed surgical planning, particularly when assessing the suitability of attempted repair versus valve replacement for MR. Assessment of the regurgitant valve begins with examination of the structure of the valve leaflets and valvular apparatus. Primary (degenerative) MR involves abnormality of the leaflets or valvular apparatus, whereas in secondary (functional) regurgitation, the valve is structurally normal with insufficient coaptation resulting from ventricular remodeling. The mechanism of MR is classified according to Carpentier's classification of leaflet motion: type I-normal leaflet motion, type II-excessive leaflet motion, and type III-restricted leaflet motion (IIIa-restricted in systole and diastole, while IIIb is restricted in systole).[164] Quantitative assessment is performed, recognizing that intraoperative conditions often lead to underestimation of the severity of regurgitation.[80] 3-D TEE offers enhanced spatial resolution and superior accuracy in localizing leaflet pathology compared to 2-D TEE.[165-167] "En face" display of 3-D images analogous to the surgeon's intraoperative view facilitates communication regarding structural details (Fig. 37.28). The origin of the regurgitation can be precisely identified using multiplanar reformatting 3-D technology. Vena contracta area, regurgitant volume, and EROA can be quantified using 3-D techniques with potentially improved accuracy. At present, 3-D quantitative analyses are labor-intensive and time consuming, making them largely impractical for routine intraoperative assessments.

Valve repair is often feasible in degenerative disease with isolated prolapse or flail, and moderate or less annular dilation.[79] Bileaflet disease (Barlow disease), severe annular dilation, rheumatic deformities, and severe mitral annular calcification are predictors of unsuccessful repair.[168] Regurgitation recurs in a substantial proportion of patients with ischemic MR following repair. LV remodeling and leaflet tethering with apical displacement of the coaptation point impact the feasibility of repair of ischemic MR. Quantitative measurements include assessment of the tenting height (the perpendicular distance from the plane of the mitral annulus to the point of leaflet coaptation) and systolic tenting area (area enclosed by the mitral annular plane and closed leaflets). Tenting height of 11 mm or greater is associated with recurrent MR. On intraoperative TEE, mitral diastolic annular diameter of 37 mm or greater, tenting area of 1.6 cm^2 or greater, and severe MR are associated with high probability of repair failure.[168]

Additional considerations in the pre-bypass echocardiographic evaluation include predictors of post-repair SAM of the anterior mitral leaflet, which commonly reflect anterior displacement of the coaptation point. This may take the form of reduction in distance between the coaptation point and the septum (C-sept distance < 2.5 cm) or a relatively elongated posterior leaflet (anterior to posterior leaflet ratio of ≤ 1.3 or posterior leaflet height > 1.5 cm), and narrow aorto-mitral angle.[169,170] Other SAM predictors include basal septal hypertrophy (>15 mm), small LV cavity, and anterior displacement of the papillary muscles.

Immediately following separation from CPB, echocardiography assesses for significant regurgitation, stenosis, or dynamic LVOT obstruction due to SAM. Stability of the ring and normal leaflet motion should be demonstrated. Any residual regurgitation should be no more than mild and transvalvular. Should SAM occur, management steps include administration of fluid and discontinuation of any inotropes. If SAM persists, the next therapeutic maneuvers are administration of beta blockers and increase in afterload. The effect of these interventions can be readily observed on TEE. SAM will improve or resolve in most patients, and long-term follow-up demonstrates low incidence of SAM, favoring conservative management.[171] Persistence of significant SAM requires revision. Assessment of mitral inflow typically involves measurement of transvalvular gradient, recognizing this is dependent on cardiac output.

TRICUSPID VALVE REPAIR

Increased recognition of the adverse prognostic effects of TR has stimulated interest in tricuspid valve pathology. After surgical correction of left-sided valvular heart disease, severe secondary TR often fails to improve. Even mild or moderate secondary TR may progress if uncorrected. Current AHA/ACC guidelines recommend tricuspid valve repair for severe TR at the time of left-sided valve surgery.[50]

The decision to intervene upon less than severe TR at the time of left-sided valve surgery is more complex. When not intervened upon at the time of left-sided valve surgery, mild or moderate TR progresses in approximately 25% of individuals.[50] Annular dilation strongly factors in the decision to intervene early. Individuals with mild or greater TR and either annular dilation (diastolic diameter of > 40 mm or > 21 mm/m^2) or evidence of prior right-sided heart failure can benefit from concomitant tricuspid valve repair (type IIa recommendation). In the absence of tricuspid annular dilation, tricuspid valve repair may be considered during left-sided surgery when moderate TR and pulmonary hypertension are present (type IIb recommendation).

The structure of the tricuspid valve is complex. Because the annulus is nonplanar and the valve leaflets unequal in size, it can be difficult to visualize all three leaflets in the same 2-D imaging plane. The anterior location of the valve (far field in the scanning plane) and the thin leaflets also limit 2-D TEE imaging. Measurement of annular diameter by 2-D TTE typically occurs in the A4C view,[172] however this one measurement may not accurately reflect the degree of dilation and has underestimated maximal diameter compared to 3-D TEE.[173] Studies of 3-D TEE have enhanced our understanding of annular dilation in the septal-to-lateral dimension, the progression from an oval to more circular shape, and the accompanying changes in annular dynamism.[174,175] Use of 3-D color may improve quantitative assessment of regurgitation severity,[172] however in the intraoperative environment, underestimation of TR is not unexpected. Technologies using 3-D TEE will continue to fill a larger role in the evaluation of TR.

AORTIC DISSECTION

Acute type A aortic dissection has high morbidity and mortality. Accurate diagnosis is paramount to rapid treatment. The preferred diagnostic approach under most circumstances is CTA, which identifies dissection with a sensitivity of 100% and specificity of 98%.[176] In some cases, TEE may be performed more readily than CTA. TEE performs with slightly lower sensitivity (86%-100%) and specificity (90%-100%), although in many studies TEE performs with comparable specificity to CTA.[176,177] TEE imaging challenges include a blind spot in visualization of the distal ascending aorta and proximal arch due to interposition of the left mainstem bronchus between the aorta and esophagus. Imaging artifacts in the near field are common because of reverberation and refraction (especially in the presence of a pulmonary artery catheter) and may be erroneously interpreted as an intimal flap.

Intraoperative TEE during surgical intervention further defines features of the dissection. Measurements of the aortic annulus and root are performed, effacement of the sinotubular junction excluded, and structure and function of the aortic valve assessed. Mechanisms of aortic insufficiency include regurgitation due to a bicuspid valve, extension of the intimal flap to the annulus causing asymmetric leaflet prolapse, malcoaptation due to root dilation, and prolapse of the intimal flap preventing complete leaflet closure.[178] This mechanistic information influences whether valve repair is feasible and may lead to modification of the planned surgical procedure.[179] Further assessment includes examination of the true and false lumens. Blood flow may be visualized across the intimal flap. Usually the true lumen will expand during systole, which can be appreciated using M-mode echocardiography. The false lumen often demonstrates diastolic expansion and spontaneous echo contrast. Due to the complex nature of some dissections, it may be difficult to determine the true and false lumens accurately.

MECHANICAL CIRCULATORY SUPPORT (MCS)

Durable Mechanical Circulatory Support

Approximately 2500 durable left ventricular assist devices (LVADs) are implanted annually in North America, nearly half of which are destination therapy.[180] Intraoperative TEE confirms known pathology and is integral for identifying abnormalities that may require additional intervention.[181-183] Prior to implantation, echocardiographic assessment includes examination of biventricular size and function, and evaluation for intracardiac shunt (including PFO) and intracardiac thrombus. Preexisting valvular dysfunction is characterized. Greater than mild aortic insufficiency, moderate or greater mitral stenosis, and moderate or greater tricuspid insufficiency may require additional valvular procedures. An existing mechanical aortic valve may require replacement due to the risk for thrombus formation secondary to decreased transvalvular flow after LVAD implantation. Echocardiographic predictors of RV failure following LVAD implantation have been an area of considerable investigation, including the newer myocardial deformation techniques. At this time no measures reliably predict the need for biventricular mechanical support.[183]

During device implantation, TEE guidance facilitates appropriate apical positioning of the inflow cannula. Postimplantation assessment includes LV size, degree of LV decompression, RV function, reassessment for PFO, and frequency and extent of aortic valve opening. Assessment of LV unloading includes determination of overall chamber size and the position of the interventricular septum, which should be midline rather than bowing toward either chamber. As LVAD speeds are increased, parameters are frequently reassessed, especially if there is concern for marginal RV function. An appropriately positioned inflow cannula should be in the apex, directed toward the mitral valve, and should not interfere with the subvalvular apparatus. Acute angulation of the inflow cannula toward the septum may lead to cannula obstruction. Typical inflow velocity is 1.5 m/s or less. Imaging artifacts with newer-generation LVADs may preclude spectral Doppler and color flow assessment of the cannula. The outflow graft–ascending aorta anastomosis may be visualized in ME or UE views. An outflow velocity of 2 m/s or greater raises concern for obstruction, although normal values for newer generation devices may be higher.[183,184] The mid-portion of the outflow graft can also be visualized along the right side of the heart, but should not cause compression.

Temporary Mechanical Circulatory Support

Common percutaneous devices for temporary MCS include intraaortic balloon pumps, ECMO, Impella percutaneous ventricular assist devices (Abiomed, Danvers, MA), and TandemHeart percutaneous ventricular assist devices (CardiacAssist, Pittsburgh, PA). Surgically implanted devices are options when longer duration of temporary support is anticipated. Appropriate device position depends on the specific technology and may be facilitated by TEE guidance.[183,185] When assessing for myocardial recovery, TEE may add to the information provided by hemodynamics and has been incorporated into some venoarterial extracorporeal membrane oxygenation weaning protocols.[186]

CONGENITAL HEART SURGERY

In congenital heart surgery, TEE provides diagnostic information, contributes to surgical planning, identifies residual defects after repair, and influences postoperative medical management.[187] As TEE has been more widely applied in congenital heart surgery, contemporary studies report pre-CPB findings altering the surgical procedure in approximately 1% to 9% of cases and residual lesions requiring surgical revision in approximately 4% to 6% of cases, with greater impact in more complex cases.[188-191] When including return to CPB for brief ventricular support or an assist device, TEE has impacted surgical interventions in close to 13% of cases.[189] TEE further influences pharmacologic management and provides new diagnostic information. Epicardial imaging may provide complementary information to TEE when assessing pulmonary arteries and coronary arteries during pediatric congenital heart surgery.[192] There is a limited body of literature suggesting that intraoperative TEE in pediatric cardiac surgery has cost-saving benefits.[193]

OTHER SURGICAL PROCEDURES

The intraoperative echocardiographer encounters many scenarios where valvular disease requires surgical intervention, including native and prosthetic valve dysfunction. TEE confirms the preprocedure diagnosis and may refine the location of structural abnormalities. Surgical intervention for endocarditis prompts TEE evaluation for vegetations on other valves and the presence of abscess cavities. Other cardiac surgical procedures that commonly rely on intraoperative TEE include minimally invasive approaches (valve repair/replacement and CABG), cardiac mass removal, heart transplantation, and pulmonary thromboendarterectomy.

Intraprocedural Transesophageal Echocardiography- Structural Heart Interventions

Innovations in percutaneous technologies have led to exciting growth in the management of structural heart disease, extending treatment to patients with previously limited therapeutic options. The section that follows elaborates on the role of echocardiography in a few of these percutaneous procedures.

TRANSCATHETER AORTIC VALVE REPLACEMENT

First approved for commercial use in Europe in 2007 and the United States in 2011,[194] transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVR) has revolutionized the treatment paradigm for aortic stenosis. TAVR is indicated for the treatment of extreme- and high-risk populations with severe symptomatic aortic stenosis and it is a reasonable alternative in patients with intermediate surgical risk.[195] The number of procedures performed annually continues to grow.[196] Comprehensive resources are available detailing the periprocedural echocardiographic imaging for TAVR.[197,198]

Valve Sizing

Annular dimensions guide appropriate sizing of the transcatheter valve. The preferred imaging modality for annular size measurements is multidetector computed tomography (MDCT).[199] As compared to MDCT, 2-D TTE and TEE routinely underestimate annular size because of the elliptical shape of the aortic valvular complex.[200,201] 3-D TEE yields larger annular size measurements than 2-D TEE.[202,203] Measurements obtained by 3-D TEE may underestimate[204-206] or be comparable to[200,203,207] MDCT measurements. Both MDCT[208,209] and 3-D TEE[205,210] have been used to predict postimplantation paravalvular regurgitation. Automated 3-D TEE software is under investigation, demonstrating reproducibility and good agreement with MDCT-based prosthesis sizing.[211,212]

Intraprocedural Examination

At the beginning of the procedure, echocardiographic assessment includes not only evaluation of the aortic valve, but also determination of biventricular function, assessment of other valvular abnormalities, characterization of any preexisting pericardial effusion, and identification of other features of procedural significance, including small LV cavity and basal septal hypertrophy. When the procedure is underway, wire and device position can be guided with echocardiography, although often fluoroscopy is the primary tool. Ideal valve position prior to deployment depends on valve design (e.g. self-expanding or balloon-expandable).

Following implantation of the valve, an integrated assessment using fluoroscopy, invasive hemodynamics, and echocardiography provides information about valve position, severity of paravalvular regurgitation, and transvalvular gradients. Early recognition of unfavorable results allows for further interventions such as balloon dilation or implantation of a second device. Echocardiography excludes other complications, including functional mitral stenosis, new pericardial effusion, new RWMAs (potentially due to coronary obstruction), and aortic injury.

Transesophageal Echocardiography Versus Transthoracic Echocardiography

Active debate surrounds the optimal anesthetic approach[213] and intraprocedural imaging strategy[214] for transfemoral TAVR. Original TAVR clinical trials were performed under general anesthesia with intraprocedural TEE.[215,216] However technology has improved and procedures are of shorter duration, making procedures under monitored anesthesia care or with nursing-administered sedation feasible. High-volume centers employ these techniques along a spectrum, ranging from 100% general anesthesia, to using both sedation and general anesthesia, to nearly 100% of cases with sedation.[217] In the United States from 2012 to 2015, use of general anesthesia decreased from 97.6% to 82.6%, while use of moderate sedation increased from 2.2% to 16.6%.[196] In a 2015 survey of 250 centers representing 38 countries, general anesthesia was the most common technique in 60.1% of centers, with 39.5% of the total centers reporting exclusive use of general anesthesia.[218] Forty-six percent of centers reported systematic use of intraprocedural TEE; 62% and 31% of centers reported use of TEE and TTE, respectively, for assessment of aortic regurgitation following device implantation.[218] Despite the increasing shift away from general anesthesia and consequently TEE, use of intraprocedural TEE may be preferable for monitoring patients at high risk for coronary occlusion or annular rupture, reducing intravenous contrast exposure in high-risk patients, and providing secondary measurements for valve sizing.[219]

Because intraprocedural TEE is often performed in the setting of general anesthesia, it is difficult to assess the independent effects of general anesthesia or echocardiographic modality on outcomes. In a study comparing general anesthesia to nongeneral anesthesia in transfemoral TAVR, the majority of patients receiving general anesthesia had intraprocedural TEE, while TEE was performed in a minority of cases without general anesthesia. Propensity-matched analysis adjusted for type of anesthetic did not demonstrate significant differences in rates of successful valve deployment, more-than-mild aortic regurgitation, or other complications in patients that had an intraprocedural TEE versus those that did not.[220] A retrospective study of 454 consecutive patients undergoing transfemoral TAVR with either TTE under moderate sedation ($n = 234$) or TEE under general anesthesia ($n = 220$) showed no difference in the incidence of at least mild paravalvular regurgitation at hospital discharge (33% in TTE group vs. 38% TEE group, respectively $P = .326$).[221] The TTE group did however have a significantly higher incidence of second valve implantation (7% vs. 2%, $P = .026$) and postdilation (38% vs. 17%, $P < .001$).[221] Many retrospective studies are confounded by chronology bias—use of primarily TEE early on with a transition to TTE occurring after the development of procedural expertise. Additionally, findings with earlier generations of valves may not be applicable to the current generation used in clinical practice. While current studies do not allow definitive conclusions to be drawn about TEE versus TTE in TAVR, they represent initial steps in tackling these questions.

TRANSCATHETER MITRAL VALVE REPAIR

Percutaneous treatment of MR with the MitraClip procedure (Abbott Vascular-Structural Heart, Menlo Park, CA) uses a clip to grasp and appose the free edges of the anterior and posterior mitral leaflets at the site of regurgitation, creating a double orifice similar to that of the surgical Alfieri technique. In the United States, MitraClip was initially approved for the treatment of severe primary (degenerative) MR in patients with prohibitive surgical risk. In Europe, percutaneous valve repair has also been used for the treatment of secondary (functional) MR. In both patient populations, impact of treatment and long term outcomes are areas of active investigation.[222] Several randomized trials now include patients with secondary MR[223–225], and the body of literature is rapidly growing. As of 2019, indications for MitraClip therapy in the United States have expanded to include patients with significant secondary MR despite optimal medical therapy.

Echocardiographic imaging is essential in determining the suitability for the procedure, providing intraprocedural guidance, and evaluating procedural success.[226] Preoperative echocardiography characterizes the anatomic features of the valve, examines the subvalvular apparatus, and provides qualitative and quantitative assessments of the severity of the regurgitation. Optimal morphologic features

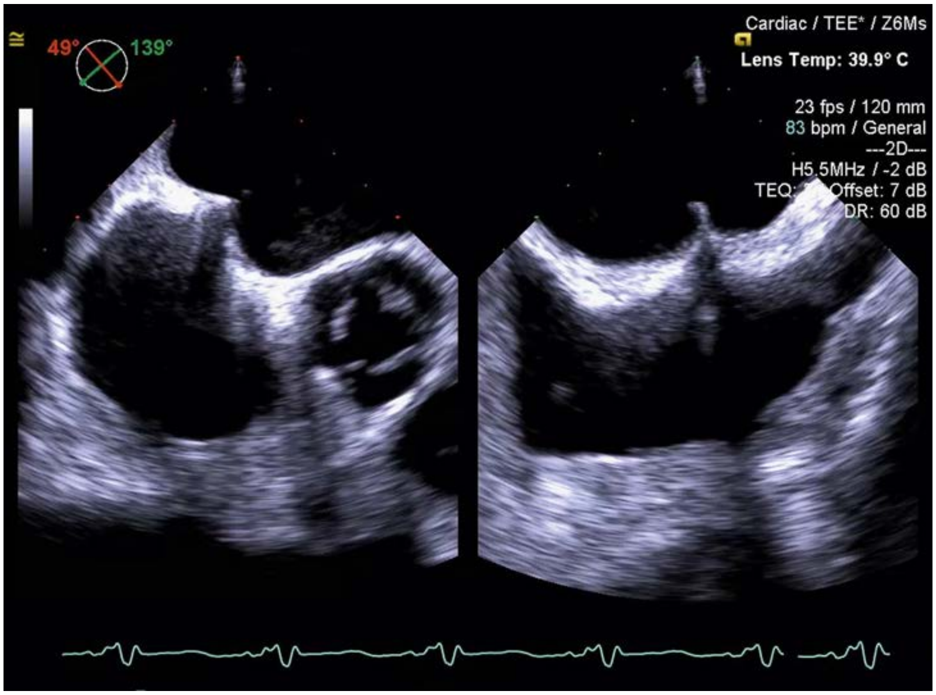


Fig. 37.29 Biplane imaging of modified midesophageal aortic valve short axis *(left)* and bicaval *(right)* views. Live biplane imaging is an essential tool in guiding puncture of the interatrial septum in catheter-based procedures entering the left side of the heart.

are based on the EVEREST study inclusion and exclusion criteria, and include regurgitation central in origin (A2/P2), lack of calcification in grasping area, mitral valve area greater than 4 cm^2, small flail gap (<10 mm), and narrow flail width (<15 mm).[227] Intraprocedural TEE, in combination with fluoroscopy, guides interatrial septal puncture and advancement of the catheter into the LA (Fig. 37.29). Under TEE guidance, the clip is aligned above the leaflets with the arms perpendicular to the line of coaptation. Once satisfactory position is obtained, the device system is advanced into the left ventricle (Fig. 37.30). Live echocardiographic imaging is often utilized as the system is slightly withdrawn so the clip grasps the leaflets; confirmation of bileaflet capture and assessment of the regurgitation severity is performed prior to clip deployment. Presence of significant residual or worsened MR, or evidence of mitral stenosis by echocardiography may prompt repositioning of the clip. Regurgitation and stenosis are quantified after deployment; placement of a second clip may be indicated if significant MR remains.

OTHER PERCUTANEOUS STRUCTURAL HEART PROCEDURES

TEE serves as a standard imaging modality in numerous other catheter-based procedures, including atrial septal defect closures, ventricular septal defect closures, LA appendage occlusion, valve-in-valve therapies for failed prostheses, and paravalvular leak closures. Echocardiography during these procedures assesses the suitability of the intervention, provides real-time guidance, and assesses the effectiveness of the intervention. Transcatheter techniques under investigation include mitral valve replacement[228] and therapies directed at TR, including valve annuloplasty, techniques targeting leaflet coaptation, and caval valve implantation.[229,230]

Emerging Technologies

FUSION IMAGING

Multimodality imaging is essential for planning and execution of percutaneous structural heart procedures. Interventional cardiologists use echocardiographic and fluoroscopic data simultaneously to guide catheter manipulation and device deployment. Often these images are displayed on separate screens, which can provide challenges as the proceduralist must combine the information to reconstruct a mental 3-D representation of the structures. Fusion of echocardiographic and fluoroscopic images provides simultaneous visualization of catheter movements with cardiac structures. Currently a technology in development, the optimal applications will be better characterized in the coming years.[231,232]

THREE-DIMENSIONAL PRINTING

3-D models of valvular structures and complex congenital heart defects can be printed from echocardiographic and other imaging data sets. Visual and tactile interactions with the models allow for improved understanding of structural interactions and abnormalities. At present, 3-D printing in this context is most relevant as a training and simulation tool, but patient-specific models can be used to optimize preprocedural planning.[233] Model quality depends on the quality of the imaging data. High cost, long printing times, and lack of materials capable of replicating tissue structural properties limit perioperative applications of 3-D printing.[234]

ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE/MACHINE LEARNING

Artificial intelligence and its subfield, machine learning, permeate everyday life. The quest to apply these

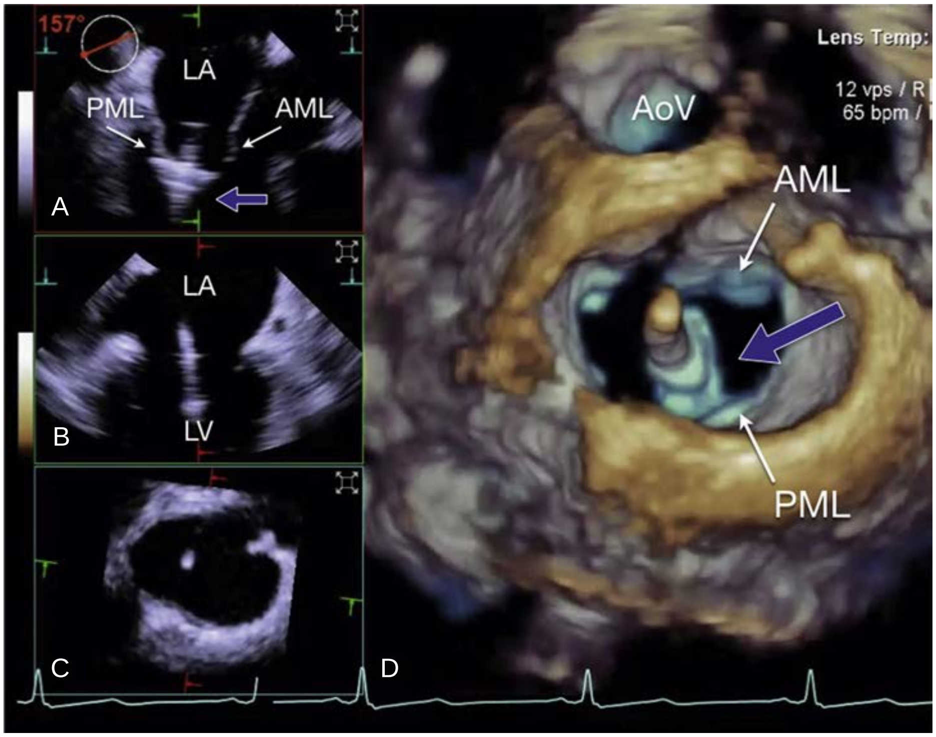


Fig. 37.30 Simultaneous live display of two-dimensional reference planes (Panels A-C) and the three-dimensional volume (Panel D) during a MitraClip procedure. The clip *(blue arrow)* should be aligned orthogonally to the line of coaptation of the mitral valve. Real-time imaging facilitates optimal device positioning by providing visual feedback following changes in catheter and device position. *AML*, Anterior mitral leaflet; *AoV*, aortic valve; *LA*, left atrium; *LV*, left ventricle; *PML*, posterior mitral leaflet.

technologies to questions in medicine is no exception. Artificial intelligence is a branch of computer science focused on development of computer systems capable of emulating human intelligence, including aspects such as learning, knowledge retention, problem solving, and reasoning.[235] Machine learning focuses on the development of predictive models where rules are learned from data rather than explicitly programmed.[236] Currently, many 3-D echocardiography platforms require manual, time-consuming user input for quantitative analysis, making their routine use in the operating room impractical. While not yet mainstream, automated analysis platforms using artificial intelligence in echocardiography exist, including mitral and aortic valve analysis in 3-D TEE[237] (Fig. 37.31) and automated chamber quantification in 3-D TTE.[238-240] Outside of the perioperative arena, machine learning has been applied to 2-D TTE assessment of LV hypertrophy phenotypes.[241] Refinement and continued development of such technologies conceivably could provide complex, quantitative valvular and ventricular analyses under dynamic conditions, improving accuracy and reducing inconsistencies in interpretation.

Perioperative Transthoracic Echocardiography and Focused Cardiac Ultrasound

While TEE has historically been the principal modality of perioperative echocardiography, TTE is emerging as a relevant and feasible counterpart. Anesthesiologists with substantial echocardiography experience have initiated preoperative TTE consult services, providing echocardiographic examination and interpretation when indicated during preoperative evaluation.[242-245] Echocardiographic findings have led to management changes in 54% to 84% of cases, including modification of the planned anesthetic approach and influencing decision making regarding the need for additional preoperative consultation or intraoperative monitoring.[242-244] Interpretation of the images by cardiologists[244] and formal TTE imaging in a subset of patients confirmed the major findings of the focused TTE examination in the majority of cases.[242,243] Standard preoperative echocardiography in patients undergoing major surgery has failed to demonstrate an association with improved outcomes,[246] so the value of preoperative anesthesiologist-performed TTE in guiding interventions or prognostication needs further characterization. As these consult services develop, important considerations include the intended scope of the examination and the experience of the individuals performing and interpreting the studies.

Several small investigations demonstrate the feasibility of FoCUS* prior to urgent or emergent surgical procedures, resulting in changes to the anesthetic technique or management plan.[247-249] Specific patient populations, such as patients sustaining hip fractures, may be optimally suited for FoCUS. Delay in surgery for hip fractures is associated with increased risk of mortality,[250,251] and preoperative echocardiographic examination through standard channels has been associated with delayed surgery.[252] A multi-center,

---

*These studies described the use of "focused transthoracic echocardiography." To maintain consistency with terminology proposed in published guidelines, we described these studies as FoCUS.

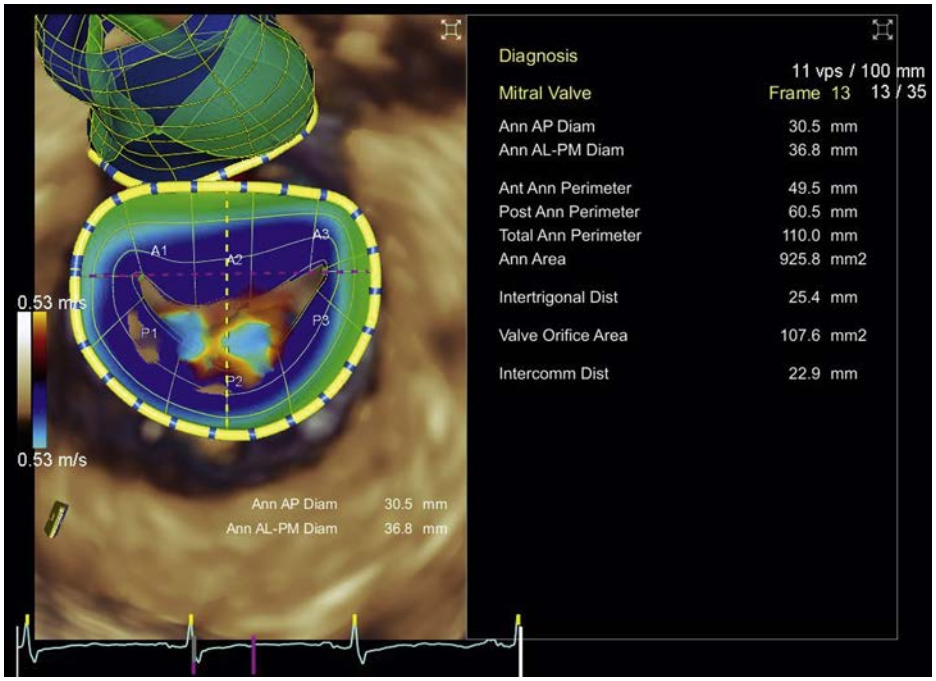


Fig. 37.31 Example of valve analysis program using artificial intelligence. Dynamic measurements of mitral annular geometry are provided throughout the cardiac cycle.

randomized pilot study of preoperative FoCUS in hip surgery has been completed, providing the groundwork for a larger, definitive randomized controlled trial.[253]

The operating theater, with the sterile surgical field and limited patient accessibility, is not necessarily conducive to transthoracic imaging. Despite the perceived challenges, small studies have prospectively demonstrated the feasibility of FoCUS during surgery. In a series that included stable and unstable patients undergoing a range of surgeries (orthopedics/trauma, abdominal/vascular, urology/gynecology, and head or ear, nose, and throat), focused examination was feasible in more than 90% of cases.[254] Patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and those undergoing abdominal surgery had significantly worse image quality. Subsequent studies have demonstrated feasibility in thoracic surgery,[255] and an impact on intraoperative management in 22% to 66% of patients.[255,256]

There is increasing interest in FoCUS and TTE for hemodynamic monitoring and diagnostic assessments in the peripartum anesthetic management of pregnant women.[257] The leftward displacement of the heart and left tilt to avoid aortocaval compression are favorable for parasternal and apical imaging windows.[257] Postpartum hemorrhage, preeclampsia, and cardiomyopathy can all result in hemodynamic derangements detectable by cardiac ultrasound.[258]

Despite the recognized value of FoCUS,[259] it is not yet a routine aspect of anesthesiology practice. A survey of cardiothoracic anesthesiologists revealed a familiarity with FoCUS (81%), but only 47% of respondents use it in their clinical practice.[260] While the study has limitations, including low response rate, it provides insight into current practice patterns. The most frequently cited obstacle to use of FoCUS was lack of training, followed by concerns about missed diagnosis, lack of equipment, and lack of a certification process. As the majority of these anesthesiologists had prior formal echocardiography training (TEE, TTE, or FoCUS), it is likely the obstacles would be further amplified for anesthesiologists without this exposure.

Critical Care

Echocardiography performed and interpreted at the point of care is feasible and influential in the care of critically ill surgical and nonsurgical patients. Both TTE and TEE findings impact the management of patients in shock, influence diagnostic and therapeutic management,[261-263] and provide prognostic information.[264,265] In a study of 110 patients in undifferentiated shock, early resuscitation guided by echocardiography was associated with improved survival, less fluid administration, and greater inotrope use compared to 110 control patients examined retrospectively.[266] Although this does not indicate causality, it highlights the potential value of echocardiography in resuscitation, especially in light of the association between positive fluid balance and mortality.[267-269] TTE use is more prevalent than TEE in the ICU,[270] and European and Australian intensivists use TEE more commonly than their North American counterparts.[271] TEE offers improved diagnostic accuracy in the setting of mechanical ventilation,[261] however several groups have obtained adequate transthoracic images for focused studies in the majority of mechanically ventilated patients.[262,272,273] TEE provides superior imaging for the evaluation of suspected endocarditis or intracardiac mass, evaluation of great vessel pathology, and assessment of valvular dysfunction.[56]

Similar to perioperative TEE, there are proposed basic and advanced applications of critical care echocardiography.[54,57] Basic applications include assessment of global biventricular size and function, identification of pericardial fluid or tamponade, identification of severe valvular regurgitation, and as guidance for resuscitative efforts during and after cardiac arrest. Advanced applications include quantitative assessments of function and filling pressures, evaluation of fluid responsiveness, and detection of abnormalities including cardiac source of embolism, endocarditis, acute aortic pathology or injury, intracardiac shunt, and complications of MI. Evaluation of suspected endocarditis, great vessel pathology or injury, and PE may be considered basic or advanced applications.

FLUID RESPONSIVENESS

When assessing a patient in shock, the decision to administer, withhold, or stop fluids is often challenging. Patients who are fluid responsive will demonstrate an increase in SV or cardiac output in response to a fluid challenge,[107] and dynamic indices (such as heart-lung interactions or the passive leg raise maneuver) temporarily induce changes in preload to assess for this response. In patients receiving passive mechanical ventilation, several echocardiographic dynamic parameters have been used to predict fluid responsiveness and aid in clinical decision making:

- *Inferior vena cava distensibility index:* During positive pressure ventilation, inspiration causes a rise in intrathoracic pressure, which decreases the venous return to the heart and leads to IVC distension. During expiration, IVC diameter is at a minimum. Two IVC distensibility indices (dIVC or ΔIVC) relating the maximum ($D_{\max}$) and minimum ($D_{\min}$) diameters during the respiratory cycle have been described:

$$\Delta \text{IVC} = \frac{D_{\max} - D_{\min}}{D_{\min}} * 100\,\%$$

  where a threshold of 18% or greater discriminated between responders and nonresponders,[274]

  and

$$\Delta \text{IVC} = \frac{D_{\max} - D_{\min}}{(D_{\max} + D_{\min})\,/2} * 100\,\%$$

  where a threshold of 12% or greater discriminated between responders and nonresponders.[275]

  Use of the first equation is most common.[276] In more heterogeneous populations, ΔIVC performs less accurately (two subsequent studies report an area under the receiver operating characteristic curve of 0.43 and 0.635, respectively).[277,278] The reported optimal thresholds for discriminating responders from nonresponders also vary. In general, ΔIVC has greater specificity than sensitivity.

  Several preconditions must be met for ΔIVC to be a useful tool, including absence of spontaneous respiratory effort, 8 to 12 mL/kg tidal volumes (necessary to increase the pleural pressure to affect the IVC diameter), absence of cor pulmonale, and absence of intraabdominal hypertension.[108] Highlighting the importance of these conditions, ΔIVC accurately predicts fluid responsiveness in patients ventilated with tidal volumes of 8 to 10 mL/kg and PEEP of 5 cm H_2O or less but poorly predicts fluid responsiveness in patients receiving tidal volumes less than 8 mL/kg or PEEP greater than 5 cm H_2O.[276]

- *Superior vena cava collapsibility index:* During positive pressure ventilation, the SVC collapses during inspiration due to increased intrathoracic pressure (a pattern opposite that of the IVC). An initial study of patients with septic shock evaluated the SVC collapsibility index (ΔSVC), defined as:

$$\Delta \text{SVC} = \frac{D_{\max} - D_{\min}}{D_{\max}} * 100\,\%$$

  where $D_{\max}$ is the maximum diameter on expiration and $D_{\min}$ is the minimum diameter on inspiration.[279] A threshold of more than 36% distinguished fluid responders from nonresponders with 90% sensitivity and 100% specificity. In a larger cohort including mechanically ventilated patients with any type of shock, ΔSVC of 21% or greater predicted fluid responsiveness with 61% sensitivity and 84% specificity.[278] When compared in the same patients, ΔSVC has greater diagnostic accuracy than ΔIVC_1.[277,278] TEE imaging is required to determine ΔSVC.
- *Variation in peak aortic/LVOT velocity:* Positive pressure ventilation results in cyclical changes in the maximum velocity of flow in the LVOT and across the aortic valve. Application of PWD at the level of the aortic valve[280] or in the LVOT[278] allows for measurement of the highest (V_{max}) and lowest (V_{min}) peak velocities over the course of the respiratory cycle. The difference between the two is divided by their mean and expressed as a percentage as follows:

$$\Delta V_{\max}\text{Ao} = \frac{V_{\max} - V_{\min}}{(V_{\max} + V_{\min})\,/2} * 100\,\%$$

  A threshold of 12% or more discriminated between responders and nonresponders in initial investigations.[280] Similar to other dynamic indices, in larger, diverse populations, this parameter does not perform as accurately as originally reported. When compared in the same cohort, $\Delta V_{\max}\text{Ao}$ had the highest sensitivity, whereas ΔSVC had the highest specificity for predicting fluid responsiveness.[278]

Additional echocardiographic assessments utilizing heart-lung interactions and dynamic parameters are an area of active research. End-expiratory occlusion maneuvers alone or in combination with end-inspiratory occlusions have been used to predict fluid responsiveness as assessed by changes in LVOT velocity time integral and/or maximum aortic velocity.[281,282] These approaches are not currently widely applied and require further validation in varying patient populations. With any of these indices, the clinician should interpret these findings within the overall context of the patient's status and with an awareness of the limitations.

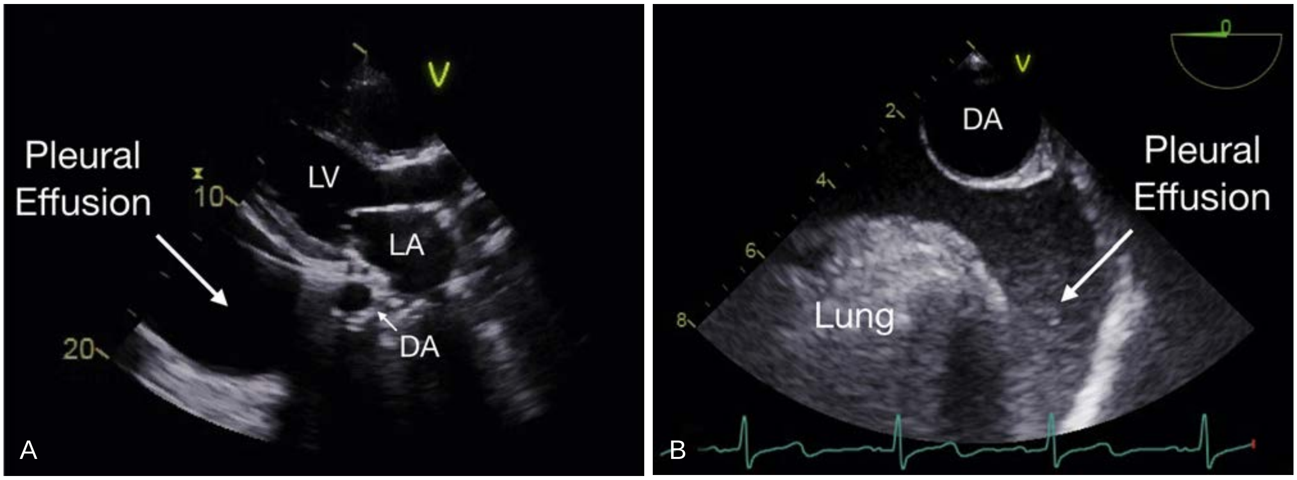


Fig. 37.32 Pleural effusions demonstrated by echocardiography. (A) This transthoracic parasternal long axis view demonstrates an echolucent space posterior to the DA, consistent with a large left pleural effusion. A pericardial effusion (not present in this image) would be seen as an echolucent space anterior to the descending aorta. (B) A transesophageal descending aorta short axis view demonstrating an echolucent space consistent with a left pleural effusion. Note the atelectatic lung at the left of the image. *DA,* Descending aorta; *LA,* left atrium; *LV,* left ventricle.

POST-CARDIAC SURGERY

A 2016 systematic review of 15 studies examining TTE and TEE after cardiac surgery demonstrated that echocardiography (performed by a mix of novice and expert sonographers) was feasible and that findings frequently led to management changes.[283] In hemodynamically unstable postoperative cardiac surgical patients, significant discordance has been demonstrated between diagnoses obtained from continuous TEE and diagnoses obtained from hemodynamic measurements.[284] TEE-based diagnoses have greater interobserver agreement, suggesting that echocardiography may add valuable diagnostic information even in the presence of invasive hemodynamic monitors.

TRAUMA AND RESUSCITATION

For decades, cardiac ultrasound via the subcostal window has been part of the evaluation of the trauma patient within the Focused Assessment with Sonography for Trauma (FAST) examination.[285] FoCUS extends this cardiac examination and has been adopted as a tool to guide resuscitation of trauma patients. A trial randomizing trauma patients to FoCUS or no FoCUS as part of the initial evaluation demonstrated significantly less fluid administration, shorter time from the trauma bay to the operating room, and higher rate of ICU admissions in the FoCUS group.[286] In blunt or penetrating chest trauma, echocardiography reveals complications such as cardiac rupture, dysfunction (due to contusion), valvular injury, hemopericardium, and aortic disruption.[287]

OTHER CLINICAL APPLICATIONS

Echocardiography may identify causes of hypoxia, such as right-to-left intracardiac shunt or pleural effusion (Fig. 37.32). Clinicians often incorporate lung ultrasound with echocardiography when evaluating cardiopulmonary failure (also see Chapter 83).[288]

Novel applications of echocardiography in critical care are emerging. Areas of active research include strain imaging in sepsis[289] and the use of echocardiography in evaluating patients that fail to liberate from mechanical ventilation.[290]

HANDHELD CARDIAC ULTRASOUND

With their compact size and portability, handheld echocardiography devices are ideal for point-of-care assessments.[291] Intensivists with limited echocardiography training have performed and interpreted focused handheld examinations, estimating LV systolic function with reasonable accuracy compared to formal TTE performed by a sonographer and interpreted by an echocardiographer.[292] When performed by intensivists experienced in echocardiography, handheld echocardiographic examinations offer similar 2-D diagnostic capabilities to full-platform TTE in mechanically ventilated, critically ill patients, with limitations due to lack of spectral Doppler.[293]

MINIATURE TEE PROBES

Miniature TEE probes have promise as tools for hemodynamic monitoring or characterization of cardiopulmonary failure in the critical care setting.[294,295] Examination with miniaturized multiplane TEE probes is feasible and well tolerated in ventilated, critically ill patients.[295] When compared to standard TEE, miniature probes enable concordant diagnostic assessments of causes of cardiorespiratory failure, albeit with lesser image quality. Consequent to the diminished image quality, common hemodynamic measurements can be performed less frequently, but when possible, the results agree with those obtained by standard TEE. Larger studies and evaluation of resulting clinical impact are necessary prior to widespread adoption of miniature TEE.

Training and Certification

KNOWLEDGE EXPECTATIONS AND TRAINING

Across the field of anesthesiology, there is a growing impetus for formalized training in perioperative ultrasound including echocardiography. The American Council for Graduate Medical Education requires anesthesiology residents to demonstrate competency in the acquisition of standard transesophageal and transthoracic echocardiographic views.[296] Certification by the American Board of Anesthesiology requires basic knowledge of TEE, assessed both in the written examination[297] and the Objective Structured Clinical Exam.[298] Accredited Anesthesiology Critical Care Medicine programs require fellows to demonstrate knowledge of ultrasound principles and proficiency in TEE and TTE.[299]

Formalized echocardiography training requires curriculum development and educational initiatives. For some trainees, exposure to ultrasound now begins in medical school. Several institutions include cardiac ultrasound in their educational programs, initially using it to teach anatomy and function, and later as an adjunct to the physical examination.[300] Many residency programs are developing multimodal longitudinal curricula including didactic lectures, hands-on workshops, online modules, simulation, and formal echocardiography rotations.[301-304] Online virtual simulation provides users an interactive format to learn standard views and spatial relationships.[305,306] Mannequin-based simulation is an effective method for improving the acquisition of cognitive and technical skills both in TEE[307-312] and TTE,[308,313,314] and may be a useful educational tool for learners early in training. In addition to these multimodal didactic approaches, practical clinical experience under supervision remains a key part of the training process. In North America, advanced training in TEE usually occurs in the context of the cardiothoracic anesthesiology fellowship.

The coming years will likely include increasing emphasis on FoCUS training in anesthesiology. In a survey of US anesthesiology residency program directors and trainees, the majority of respondents indicated FoCUS should be a standard component of training, while only a minority of the programs incorporated such training.[315] A different survey of Canadian residency program directors indicated FoCUS training should be compulsory, and while most of the programs had training opportunities, only a minority included mandatory rotations.[316] The challenge to the specialty is how to best incorporate FoCUS, to define minimum training standards and competencies, and to provide education for trainees as well as anesthesiologists already in practice. The European Association of Cardiovascular Imaging has published a reference curriculum and syllabus for FoCUS education and training.[317] Clinicians must clearly understand the narrow scope of FoCUS, recognizing the limitations and indications for expert consultation. Many examples of the applicability of perioperative FoCUS are in the hands of experienced echocardiographers—whether this translates to operators with less experience and less formal training will need to be examined. After the initial acquisition of cognitive and technical skills in ultrasound, continued use is important to ensure proficiency; when these skills are not used for over a year, significant attrition occurs.[318]

CERTIFICATION

The National Board of Echocardiography offers examination and certification in basic (Basic PTEeXAM) and advanced (Advanced PTEeXAM) perioperative TEE.[319] Individuals that pass the examination achieve testamur status. Testamurs can achieve basic certification via supervised training, practice experience, or extended continuing medical education. Advanced PTEeXAM testamurs can receive certification by completing an accredited cardiothoracic anesthesiology pathway; a practice experience pathway is only available to individuals that completed training prior to 2009. There is no certification for perioperative TTE, however, qualified individuals can take the Examination of Special Competence in Adult Comprehensive Echocardiography (ASCeXAM) and achieve testamur status. In Europe, the European Association of Cardiovascular Imaging and European Association of Cardiothoracic Anaesthesiology jointly offer certification in adult TEE.[320] General critical care ultrasound and basic critical care echocardiography are now considered to be within the scope of practice of intensivists, while certification has been proposed for those obtaining advanced training.[55,56] As of 2019, the National Board of Echocardiography now offers an Examination of Special Competence in Critical Care Echocardiography (CCEeXAM).[321]

Future Directions

The evolution of perioperative echocardiography is at a transformative juncture. The landscape is one of growth, innovation, and accessibility. From its perioperative origin as a monitor in cardiac surgery decades ago, TEE has become integral to the practice of cardiac anesthesia and surgical decision making. More sophisticated and automated platforms will pave the way for increasingly complex, quantitative analyses to be performed in real time. Catheter-based procedures push the boundaries of treatable pathologies, and echocardiography is central to the multimodal imaging techniques employed by structural heart teams. Many cardiac anesthesiologists have an interest in TTE, which complements and builds upon their already established cognitive and technical skills.

Outside of the cardiac arena, anesthesiologists use TEE as an intraoperative monitor in high-risk procedures or populations. Basic knowledge of TEE is now expected of anesthesiology trainees. In the future, knowledge of transthoracic imaging in the form of FoCUS may too become a requirement. Increased portability of ultrasound machines and newer technologies like capacitive micromachined ultrasound transducers make the potential for widespread point-of-care imaging an imminent reality. With the growing interest and investment in ultrasonography, a basic skill set may soon be within the purview of all anesthesiologists. Opportunities for research into education and the impact of anesthesiologist-performed examinations abound. Critical care training objectives now include basic proficiency in echocardiography in the larger context of critical care ultrasound. Similar to advanced perioperative TEE, proficiency in advanced critical care echocardiography requires additional dedicated training and allows comprehensive evaluation of cardiac structure and function, and hemodynamic assessments in the context of the critically ill patient. Whether applied as a routine monitor, a more advanced diagnostic tool, or used in procedural guidance, echocardiography is an essential component of the modern perioperative physician's armamentarium.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Georges Desjardins, Daniel P. Vezina, Ken B. Johnson and Michael K. Cahalan for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Mahmood F, Shernan SK. *Heart*. 2016;102(15):1159–1167.
2. Edler I, Hertz CH. *Clin Physiol Funct Imaging*. 2004;24(3):118–136.
3. Johnson ML, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1972;64(6):922–934.
4. Frazin L, et al. *Circulation*. 1976;54(1):102–108.
5. Matsumoto M, et al. *N Y State J Med*. 1979;79(1):19–21.
6. Matsumoto M, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1980;46(1):95–105.
7. Souquet J, et al. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 1982;29(10):707–712.
8. Schluter M, et al. *Br Heart J*. 1982;48(1):67–72.
9. Roizen MF, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1984;1(2):300–305.
10. Beaupre PN, et al. *Am Heart J*. 1984;107(5 Pt 1):1021–1023.
11. Cucchiara RF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60(4):353–355.
12. de Bruijn NP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(5):386–390.
13. Roewer N, et al. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1987;1(5):418–428.
14. Omoto R, et al. *Int J Card Imaging*. 1989;4(1):57–58.
15. Flachskampf FA, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 1992;13(9):1201–1206.
16. Kyo S, et al. *Int J Card Imaging*. 1989;4(1):41–42.
17. Pothineni KR, et al. *Echocardiography*. 2007;24(10):1099–1104.
18. Kloster FE, et al. *Circulation*. 1973;48(5):1075–1084.
19. Griffith JM, Henry WL. *Circulation*. 1974;49(6):1147–1152.
20. vonRamm OT, Thurstone FL. *Circulation*. 1976;53(2):258–262.
21. Kisslo J, et al. *Circulation*. 1976;53(2):262–267.
22. Feigenbaum H. *Circulation*. 1996;93(7):1321–1327.
23. Jardin F, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1985;13(11):952–956.
24. Jardin F, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1990;18(10):1055–1060.
25. Swan HJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1970;283(9):447–451.
26. Connors Jr AF, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1983;308(5):263–267.
27. Eisenberg PR, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12(7):549–553.
28. Connors Jr AF, et al. *JAMA*. 1996;276(11):889–897.
29. Dalen JE, Bone RC. *JAMA*. 1996;276(11):916–918.
30. Richard C, et al. *JAMA*. 2003;290(20):2713–2720.
31. Sandham JD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348(1):5–14.
32. Wiener RS, Welch HG. *JAMA*. 2007;298(4):423–429.
33. Le HT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(3):633–646.
34. Duncan AE,A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(3):525–544.
35. Thomas JD, Rubin DN. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 1998;11(8):803–808.
36. Turner SP, Monaghan MJ. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2006;7(1):9–15.
37. Hawkins K, et al. *Echocardiography*. 2008;25(2):119–123.
38. Porter TR, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018;31(3):241–274.
39. Bhatia VK, Senior R. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2008;21(5):409–416.
40. Porter TR, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2014;27(8):797–810.
41. Lang RM, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2012;25(1):3–46.
42. Mahmood F, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30(2):470–490.
43. Practice guidelines for perioperative transesophageal echocardiography. A report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists Task Force on Transesophageal Echocardiography. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(4):986–1006.
44. American Society of Anesthesiologists and Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists Task Force on Transesophageal Echocardiography. Practice guidelines for perioperative transesophageal echocardiography. An updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists Task Force on Transesophageal Echocardiography. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(5):1084–1096.
45. Silvestry FE, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2009;22(3):213–231; quiz 316-217.
46. Zamorano JL, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2011;24(9):937–965.
47. Flachskampf FA, et al. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2001;2(1):8–21.
48. Flachskampf FA, et al. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2010;11(7):557–576.
49. Kristensen SD, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2014;35(35):2383–2431.
50. Nishimura RA, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;129(23):e521–643.
51. Fleisher LA, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;130(24):2215–2245.
52. Cahalan MK, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2002;15(6):647–652.
53. Price S, et al. *Cardiovasc Ultrasound*. 2008;6:49.
54. Mayo PH, et al. *Chest*. 2009;135(4):1050–1060.
55. Expert Round Table on Ultrasound in ICU. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37(7):1077–1083.
56. Expert Round Table on Echocardiography in ICU. *Intensive Care Med*. 2014;40(5):654–666.
57. Levitov A, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(6):1206–1227.
58. Hilberath JN, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2010;23(11):1115–1127.
59. Purza R, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2017;103(3):795–802.
60. Reeves ST, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(3):543–558.
61. Hahn RT, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2013;26(9):921–964.
62. Reeves ST, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2007;20(4):427–437.
63. Royse AG, Royse CF. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;23(3):335–341.
64. Michelena HI, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2010;85(7):646–655.
65. Ikram A, et al. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2018;50:30–34.
66. Glas KE, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2007;20(11):1227–1235.
67. Spencer KT, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2013;26(6):567–581.
68. Via G, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2014;27(7): 683.e681-683.e633.
69. Zimmerman JM, Coker BJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(3):753–760.
70. Mitchell C, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018.
71. Gudmundsson P, et al. *Int J Cardiol*. 2005;101(2):209–212.
72. Shahgaldi K, et al. *Cardiovasc Ultrasound*. 2009;7:41.
73. Mathew JP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(2):302–309.
74. Cerqueira MD, et al. *J Nucl Cardiol*. 2002;9(2):240–245.
75. Ortiz-Perez JT, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2008;1(3):282–293.
76. Hauser AM, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1985;5(2 Pt 1):193–197.
77. Rudski LG, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2010;23(7):685–713; quiz 786-688.
78. Zoghbi WA, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2017;30(4):303–371.
79. Lancellotti P, et al. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2013;14(7):611–644.
80. Sanfilippo F, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31(5):1681–1691.
81. Lang RM, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2015;28(1):1–39.e14.
82. Caballero L, et al. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2015;16(9):1031–1041.
83. Nishimura RA, Tajik AJ. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 1994;36(4):309–342.
84. Forner AF, et al. *Int J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2017;33(9):1385–1394.
85. Shen T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(1):62–67.
86. Markin NW, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2017;30(2):180–188.
87. Tamborini G, et al. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2009;10(5):630–634.
88. Unsworth B, et al. *Int J Cardiol*. 2013;165(1):151–160.
89. Nagueh SF. *Curr Heart Fail Rep*. 2009;6(3):154–159.
90. Nagueh SF, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2016;29(4):277–314.
91. Swaminathan M, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2011;91(6):1844–1850.
92. Matyal R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(3):449–472.
93. McIlroy DR, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29(4):1033–1043.
94. Baumgartner H, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2017;30(4):372–392.
95. Baumgartner H, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2009;22(1):1–23; quiz 101-102.
96. Brown JM. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30(6):1361–1364.
97. Wetterslev M, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42(8):1223–1233.
98. Amsallem M, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2016;29(2):93–102.
99. Vincent JL, De Backer D. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(6):583.
100. Cecconi M, et al. 2014;40(12):1795–1815.
101. Akinboboye O, et al. *Clin Cardiol*. 1995;18(12):726–729.
102. Seeberger MD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(6):1252–1257.
103. Hessel 2nd EA. *Can J Anaesth*. 2016;63(9):1059–1074.
104. Citro R, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2015;28(1):57–74.
105. Leung JM, Levine EH. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(5):1102–1109.
106. Porter TR, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2015;28(1):40–56.
107. Marik PE, Cavallazzi R. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41(7):1774–1781.
108. Schmidt GA. *Chest*. 2017;151(3):531–532.
109. Kory P. *Chest*. 2017;151(3):533–536.
110. Schmidt GA. *Chest*. 2017;151(3):536–537.
111. Kory P. *Chest*. 2017;151(3):537–538.
112. Muller L, et al. *Crit Care*. 2012;16(5):R188.
113. Corl K, et al. *Emerg Med Australas*. 2012;24(5):534–539.
114. de Valk S, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2014;14:114.
115. Airapetian N, et al. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:400.
116. Corl KA, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2017;41:130–137.
117. Preau S, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(3):e290–e297.

118. Evans JS, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2017;45(1):12–20.
119. Chauvet JL, et al. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:262.
120. Markin NW, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29(1):82–88.
121. Klein AL, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2013;26(9):965–1012.e1015.
122. Gillam LD, et al. *Circulation*. 1983;68(2):294–301.
123. Kronzon I, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1983;2(4):770–775.
124. Merce J, et al. *J. Am Heart J*. 1999;138(4 Pt 1):759–764.
125. Himelman RB, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1988;12(6):1470–1477.
126. Faehnrich JA, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17(1):45–50.
127. Jaff MR, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;123(16):1788–1830.
128. Konstantinides SV, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2014;35(43):3033–3069.
129. American College of Cardiology Foundation Appropriate Use Criteria Task F, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2011;24(3):229–267.
130. Shafiq Q, et al. *J Echocardiogr*. 2016;14(4):146–155.
131. Labovitz AJ, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2010;23(12):1225–1230.
132. Mansencal N, et al. *Eur Radiol*. 2011;21(2):240–245.
133. Mediratta A, et al. 2016;33(5):696–702.
134. McConnell MV, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1996;78(4):469–473.
135. Fields JM, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2017;30(7):714–723.e714.
136. Casazza F, et al. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2005;6(1):11–14.
137. Kurnicka K, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2016;29(9):907–913.
138. Mahmood F, et al. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2008;12(4):265–289.
139. Denault AY, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49(3):287–293.
140. Suriani RJ, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1998;12(3):274–280.
141. Hofer CK, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59(1):3–9.
142. London MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(4):644–655.
143. Eisenberg MJ, et al. *JAMA*. 1992;268(2):210–216.
144. Galal W, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(3):557–566.
145. Robertson AC, Eagle SS. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(1):141–154.
146. Dalia AA, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018.
147. Maraj S, et al. *Echocardiography*. 2004;21(8):681–685.
148. Nicoara A, Anderson-Dam J. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2017;35(3):473–489.
149. Cartwright BL, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2013;27(1):111–120.
150. Harpole DH, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1989;209(3):356–362.
151. Koolen JJ, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 1992;13(8):1028–1033.
152. Memtsoudis SG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(6):1653–1657.
153. Shillcutt SK, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26(3):362–370.
154. Schulmeyer C, et al. *Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2010;60(5):513–521.
155. Staudt GE, Shelton K. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
156. Eltzschig HK, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85(3):845–852.
157. Guarracino F, et al. *HSR Proc Intensive Care Cardiovasc Anesth*. 2010;2(1):43–49.
158. Ramakrishna H, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(6):1691–1695.
159. Krasuski RA, Hart SA, Allen D, et al. *JAMA*. 2009;302(3):290–297.
160. Comunale ME, Body SC, Ley C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(4):945–954.
161. Leung JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71(1):16–25.
162. Swaminathan M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(5):739–745.
163. Mahmood F, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32(2):823–837.
164. Carpentier A. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1983;86(3):323–337.
165. Grewal J, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2009;22(1):34–41.
166. Ben Zekry S, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2011;24(10):1079–1085.
167. Hien MD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(2):287–295.
168. Mahmood F, Matyal R. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(1):34–58.
169. Maslow AD, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1999;34(7):2096–2104.
170. Varghese R, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2014;45(1):132–137; discussion 137-138.
171. Kuperstein R, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2015;149(2):471–476.
172. Hahn RT. *Circ Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2016;9(12).
173. Dreyfus J, et al. *Circ Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2015;8(7):e003241.
174. Ring L, et al. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2012;13(9):756–762.
175. Hai T, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31(6):2106–2114.
176. Bhave NM, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2018;11(6):902–919.
177. Mussa FF, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;316(7):754–763.
178. Tan CN, Fraser AG. *Can J Anaesth*. 2014;61(4):362–378.
179. Thorsgard ME, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(5):1203–1207.
180. Kirklin JK, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2017;36(10):1080–1086.
181. Estep JD, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2010;3(10):1049–1064.
182. Flores AS, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 2015;7(12):2139–2150.
183. Stainback RF, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2015;28(8):853–909.
184. Grinstein J, et al. *J Card Fail*. 2016;22(10):808–814.
185. Platts DG, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2012;25(2):131–141.
186. Cavarocchi NC, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2013;146(6):1474–1479.
187. Kamra K, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21(5):479–493.
188. Randolph GR, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2002;124(6):1176–1182.
189. Bettex DA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(5):1275–1282.
190. Guzeltas A, et al. *Congenit Heart Dis*. 2014;9(4):300–306.
191. Jijeh AM, et al. *J Saudi Heart Assoc*. 2016;28(2):89–94.
192. Dragulescu A, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;143(2):361–367.
193. Levin DN, Taras J, Taylor K. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2016;26(7):682–693.
194. Dvir D, et al. *Arch Cardiovasc Dis*. 2012;105(3):160–164.
195. Nishimura RA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;70(2):252–289.
196. Grover FL, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69(10):1215–1230.
197. Hahn RT, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2015;8(3):261–287.
198. Hahn RT, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018;31(4):405–433.
199. Otto CM, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69(10):1313–1346.
200. Altiok E, et al. *Heart*. 2011;97(19):1578–1584.
201. Gurvitch R, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Interv*. 2011;4(11):1235–1245.
202. Husser O, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2012;80(6):956–963.
203. Smith LA, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2013;26(4):359–369.
204. Ng AC, et al. *Circ Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2010;3(1):94–102.
205. Jilaihawi H, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;61(9):908–916.
206. Vaquerizo B, et al. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2016;17(1):15–23.
207. Khalique OK, et al. *Circ Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2014;7(1):155–163.
208. Jilaihawi H, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;59(14):1275–1286.
209. Willson AB, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;59(14):1287–1294.
210. Gripari P, et al. *Heart*. 2012;98(16):1229–1236.
211. Queiros S, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018;31(4):515–525.e515.
212. Prihadi EA, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018;31(4):505–514.e503.
213. Neuburger PJ, Patel PA. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31(6):2175–2182.
214. Kronzon I, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2015;8(3):361–370.
215. Leon MB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(17):1597–1607.
216. Smith CR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364(23):2187–2198.
217. Patel PA, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31(3):777–790.
218. Cerrato E, et al. *Int J Cardiol*. 2017;228:640–647.
219. Vahl TP, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2016;67(12):1472–1487.
220. Eskandari M, et al. *Heart*. 2018.
221. Hayek SS, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2017;30(6):533–540.
222. Chiarito M, et al. *Heart*. 2018;104(4):306–312.
223. Obadia JF, et al. *EuroIntervention*. 2015;10(11):1354–1360.
224. Cardiovascular Outcomes Assessment of the MitraClip Percutaneous Therapy for Heart Failure Patients With Functional Mitral Regurgitation (The COAPT Trial). https://ClinicalTrials.gov/show/NCT01626079. Accessed June 6, 2018.
225. A Multicenter, Randomized, Controlled Study to Assess Mitral vAlve reconsTrucTion for advancEd Insufficiency of Functional or iscHemic ORigiN. https://ClinicalTrials.gov/show/NCT02371512. Accessed June 6, 2018.
226. Nyman CB, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018;31(4):434–453.
227. Mauri L, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2010;160(1):23–29.
228. Bapat V, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2018;71(1):12–21.
229. Rodes-Cabau J, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2016;67(15):1829–1845.
230. Prihadi EA, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2018;11(5):736–754.
231. Thaden JJ, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2016;29(6):503–512.
232. Faletra FF, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2017;30(9):886–895.
233. Giannopoulos AA, et al. *Nat Rev Cardiol*. 2016;13(12):701–718.
234. Ginty O, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32(3):1368–1373.
235. Krittanawong C, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69(21):2657–2664.
236. Henglin M, et al. *Circ Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2017;10(10).
237. Jeganathan J, et al. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2017;20(2):129–134.
238. Medvedofsky D, et al. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2018;19(1):47–58.
239. Tsang W, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2016;9(7):769–782.
240. Otani K, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2016;29(10):955–965.
241. Narula S, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2016;68(21):2287–2295.
242. Cowie B. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2009;23(4):450–456.
243. Cowie B. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(4):268–273.
244. Canty DJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(6):618–625.
245. Shillcutt SK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(5):1479–1481.
246. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *BMJ*. 2011;342:d3695.
247. Canty DJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(7):714–720.

248. Canty DJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(11):1202–1209.
249. Botker MT, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58(7):807–814.
250. Moja L, et al. *PLoS One*. 2012;7(10):e46175.
251. Pincus D, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;318(20):1994–2003.
252. O'HEireamhoin S, et al. *J Trauma*. 2011;71(5):1345–1347.
253. Canty DJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(4):428–437.
254. Kratz T, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2015;81(5):490–496.
255. Kratz T, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32(2):848–852.
256. Kratz T, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31(2):602–609.
257. Dennis AT. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2011;20(2):160–168.
258. Dennis AT. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2015;28(3):254–260.
259. Coker BJ, Zimmerman JM. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(3):761–765.
260. Conlin F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(6):1878–1882.
261. Vignon P, et al. *Chest*. 1994;106(6):1829–1834.
262. Orme RM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(3):340–344.
263. Huttemann E. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2006;72(11):891–913.
264. Heidenreich PA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1995;26(1):152–158.
265. Reichert CL, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6(4):429–432.
266. Kanji HD, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2014;29(5):700–705.
267. Vincent JL, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(2):344–353.
268. Boyd JH, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(2):259–265.
269. Benes J, et al. *Biomed Res Int*. 2015;2015:729075.
270. Zieleskiewicz L, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41(9):1638–1647.
271. Mayo PH, et al. *Chest*. 2015;148(5):1323–1332.
272. Jensen MB, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21(9):700–707.
273. Joseph MX, et al. *Chest*. 2004;126(5):1592–1597.
274. Barbier C, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30(9):1740–1746.
275. Feissel M, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30(9):1834–1837.
276. Si X, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127(5):1147–1164.
277. Charbonneau H, et al. *Crit Care*. 2014;18(5):473.
278. Vignon P, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;195(8):1022–1032.
279. Vieillard-Baron A, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30(9):1734–1739.
280. Feissel M, et al. *Chest*. 2001;119(3):867–873.
281. Jozwiak M, Depret F, Teboul JL, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(11): e1131–e1138.
282. Georges D, et al. *Crit Care*. 2018;22(1):32.
283. Heiberg J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(10):1210–1221.
284. Costachescu T, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30(6):1214–1223.
285. Scalea TM, et al. *J Trauma*. 1999;46(3):466–472.
286. Ferrada P, et al. *J Ultrasound Med*. 2014;33(10):1829–1832.
287. Saranteas T, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2017;38:144–151.
288. Lichtenstein DA. *Chest*. 2015;147(6):1659–1670.
289. Ehrman RR, et al. *Crit Care*. 2018;22(1):112.
290. Vignon P, et al. *Crit Care*. 2016;20(1):228.
291. Chamsi-Pasha MA, et al. *Circulation*. 2017;136(22):2178–2188.
292. Melamed R, et al. *Chest*. 2009;135(6):1416–1420.
293. Vignon P, et al. *Crit Care*. 2003;7(5):R84–91.
294. Vieillard-Baron A, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2013;39(4):629–635.
295. Begot E, al Det. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41(11):1886–1894.
296. ACGME Program Requirements for Graduate Medical Education in Anesthesiology. Available at: https://www.acgme.org/Portals/0/PFAssets/ProgramRequirements/040Anesthesiology2018.pdf?ver=2018-06-14-142529-527. Approved focused revision June 10, 2018. Effective July 1, 2018. Accessed July 15, 2018.
297. ABA Primary Certification in Anesthesiology -Content Outline. Available at: http://www.theaba.org/PDFs/ADVANCED-Exam/Basic-and-Advanced-ContentOutline. Revised April 2018. Accessed July 01, 2018.
298. ABA APPLIED Examination - OSCE Content Outline. Available at: http://www.theaba.org/PDFs/APPLIED-Exam/APPLIED-OSCE-ContentOutline. Accessed February 07, 2018.
299. ACGME Program Requirements for Graduate Medical Education in Anesthesiology Critical Care Medicine. Available at: https://www.acgme.org/Portals/0/PFAssets/ProgramRequirements/045_critical_care_anes_2017-07-01.pdf?ver=2017-05-17-155711-140. Approved September 29, 2013. Revised July 1, 2017. Accessed March 1, 2018.
300. Johri AM, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018.
301. Zimmerman J. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017.
302. Mitchell JD, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(3):800–809.
303. Tanzola RC, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60(1):32–37.
304. Mitchell JD, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29(2):402–409.
305. Jerath A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58(1):14–21.
306. Vegas A, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2013;27(3):531–535.
307. Bose RR, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2011;25(2):212–215.
308. Platts DG, et al. *Heart Lung Circ*. 2012;21(5):267–274.
309. Sharma V, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(6):621–627.
310. Jelacic S, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2013;27(4):670–675.
311. Ferrero NA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(1):149–159.
312. Matyal R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(2):389–399.
313. Neelankavil J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(5):1042–1051.
314. Edrich T, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(1):49–53.
315. Conlin F, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30(1):102–106.
316. Mizubuti G, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2017;64(4):441–442.
317. Neskovic AN, et al. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2018.
318. Kimura BJ, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2016;29(10):992–997.
319. National Board of Echocardiography, Inc. NBE Certification General Instructions. http://echoboards.org/Echoboards/Certifications/General_Instructions.aspx. Accessed May 1, 2018.
320. https://www.escardio.org/Education/Career-Development/Certification/Adult-Transoesophageal-Echo. Accessed May 1, 2018.
321. Diaz-Gomez JL, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(11):1801–1804.

Video 37.1 **3D Imaging—multiple beat full-volume acquisition.** Multiple beat full-volume acquisitions create three-dimensional images by acquiring individual data subvolumes over consecutive heartbeats and then "stitching" the data together to create the larger full-volume image.

Video 37.2 **Echocardiographic views in focused cardiac ultrasound (FoCUS):** Parasternal long axis (PLAX), parasternal short axis (PSAX), apical four-chamber (A4C), subcostal four-chamber (SC4), and subcostal IVC (SIVC). *A,* Anterior wall; *AML,* anterior mitral leaflet; *AoV,* aortic valve; *DA*, descending aorta; *I,* inferior wall; *IVC*, inferior vena cava; *IVS,* interventricular septum; *L,* lateral wall; *LA,* left atrium; *LV,* left ventricle; *PML,* posterior mitral leaflet; *RA,* right atrium; *RV*, right ventricle; *RVOT,* right ventricular outflow tract; *S,* septal wall.

Video 37.3 Transesophageal echocardiographic views demonstrating qualitatively normal left ventricular systolic function. *AoV,* Aortic valve; *LA,* left atrium; *LV,* left ventricle; *MV*, mitral valve; *RA,* right atrium; *RV,* right ventricle.

Video 37.4 Transthoracic parasternal short axis view demonstrating flattening of the interventricular septum in *diastole,* a finding observed in states of right ventricular volume overload. The septal curvature remains normal and the left ventricular cavity appears circular during systole. Of note, both left and right ventricular systolic function are reduced. *IVS,* interventricular septum; *LV*, left ventricle; *RV,* right ventricle.

Video 37.5 Transthoracic parasternal short axis view of a patient with right ventricular pressure overload. The leftward shift and flattening of interventricular septum occurs throughout the cardiac cycle, but is most pronounced at *end-systole. IVS,* Interventricular septum; *LV*, left ventricle; *RV,* right ventricle.

Video 37.6 **Takotsubo cardiomyopathy.** These clips demonstrate the classic pattern of apical ballooning with preserved basal contractility seen in Takotsubo (stress-induced) cardiomyopathy. Additional patterns of regional involvement may also be observed.

Video 37.7 **Systolic anterior motion of the mitral valve (SAM).** The anterior mitral leaflet is visualized entering the left ventricular outflow tract and contacting the interventricular septum during systole. Turbulent flow is visualized in the left ventricular outflow tract (LVOT) and significant mitral regurgitation (MR) is present. Treatment of SAM includes discontinuation (or avoidance) of inotropes, increasing preload, increasing afterload, and decreasing the heart rate. With therapeutic interventions, the SAM decreases, there is less turbulence in the LVOT, and the MR decreases.

Video 37.8 **Tamponade-right atrial systolic collapse.** A large echolucent pericardial effusion is demonstrated (*). Within the effusion, there are areas of increased density suggesting organization. Right atrial collapse *(blue arrow)* during ventricular systole supports the clinical diagnosis of tamponade. *LA,* Left atrium; *LV*, left ventricle; *RA,* right atrium; *RV,* right ventricle.

Video 37.9 **Tamponade-right ventricular diastolic collapse.** Transthoracic parasternal long axis views displaying a large pericardial effusion (*). Right ventricular diastolic collapse *(green arrow)* is present, and supports the clinical diagnosis of tamponade. Left atrial collapse during ventricular systole, often observed later than right-sided chamber collapse, is also present *(red arrow). Ao,* Ascending aorta; *IVS,* interventricular septum; *LA,* left atrium; *LV,* left ventricle; *RVOT,* right ventricular outflow tract.

Video 37.10 McConnell's sign is an echocardiographic finding of right ventricular hypokinesis or akinesis with apical sparing. The apparent preservation of apical contractility actually reflects translational motion due to tethering of the apical fibers to the left ventricle. McConnell's sign may be observed in acute pulmonary embolism or right ventricular infarction. *IVS,* Interventricular septum; *RA,* right atrium; *RV,* right ventricle.

References

1. Mahmood F, Shernan SK. Perioperative transoesophageal echocardiography: current status and future directions. *Heart*. 2016;102(15):1159–1167.
2. Edler I, Hertz CH. The use of ultrasonic reflectoscope for the continuous recording of the movements of heart walls. 1954. *Clin Physiol Funct Imaging*. 2004;24(3):118–136.
3. Johnson ML, Holmes JH, Spangler RD, Paton BC. Usefulness of echocardiography in patients undergoing mitral valve surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1972;64(6):922–934.
4. Frazin L, Talano JV, Stephanides L, Loeb HS, Kopel L, Gunnar RM. Esophageal echocardiography. *Circulation*. 1976;54(1):102–108.
5. Matsumoto M, Oka Y, Lin YT, Strom J, Sonnenblick EH, Frater RW. Transesophageal echocardiography; for assessing ventricular performance. *N Y State J Med*. 1979;79(1):19–21.
6. Matsumoto M, Oka Y, Strom J, et al. Application of transesophageal echocardiography to continuous intraoperative monitoring of left ventricular performance. *Am J Cardiol*. 1980;46(1):95–105.
7. Souquet J, Hanrath P, Zitelli L, Kremer P, Langenstein BA, Schluter M. Transesophageal phased array for imaging the heart. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 1982;29(10):707–712.
8. Schluter M, Langenstein BA, Polster J, et al. Transoesophageal cross-sectional echocardiography with a phased array transducer system. Technique and initial clinical results. *Br Heart J*. 1982;48(1):67–72.
9. Roizen MF, Beaupre PN, Alpert RA, et al. Monitoring with two-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography. Comparison of myocardial function in patients undergoing supraceliac, suprarenal-infraceliac, or infrarenal aortic occlusion. *J Vasc Surg*. 1984;1(2):300–305.
10. Beaupre PN, Kremer PF, Cahalan MK, Lurz FW, Schiller NB, Hamilton WK. Intraoperative detection of changes in left ventricular segmental wall motion by transesophageal two-dimensional echocardiography. *Am Heart J*. 1984;107(5 Pt 1):1021–1023.
11. Cucchiara RF, Nugent M, Seward JB, Messick JM. Air embolism in upright neurosurgical patients: detection and localization by two-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60(4):353–355.
12. de Bruijn NP, Clements FM, Kisslo JA. Intraoperative transesophageal color flow mapping: initial experience. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(5):386–390.
13. Roewer N, Bednarz F, Schulte am Esch J. Continuous measurement of intracardiac and pulmonary blood flow velocities with transesophageal pulsed Doppler echocardiography: technique and initial clinical experience. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1987;1(5):418–428.
14. Omoto R, Kyo S, Matsumura M, et al. Bi-plane color transesophageal Doppler echocardiography (color TEE): its advantages and limitations. *Int J Card Imaging*. 1989;4(1):57–58.
15. Flachskampf FA, Hoffmann R, Verlande M, Schneider W, Ameling W, Hanrath P. Initial experience with a multiplane transoesophageal echo-transducer: assessment of diagnostic potential. *Eur Heart J*. 1992;13(9):1201–1206.
16. Kyo S, Koike K, Takanawa E, et al. Impact of transesophageal Doppler echocardiography on pediatric cardiac surgery. *Int J Card Imaging*. 1989;4(1):41–42.
17. Pothineni KR, Inamdar V, Miller AP, et al. Initial experience with live/real time three-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography. *Echocardiography*. 2007;24(10):1099–1104.
18. Kloster FE, Roelandt J, ten Cate FJ, Bom N, Hugenholtz PG. Multiscan echocardiography. II. Technique and initial clinical results. *Circulation*. 1973;48(5):1075–1084.
19. Griffith JM, Henry WL. A sector scanner for real time two-dimensional echocardiography. *Circulation*. 1974;49(6):1147–1152.
20. vonRamm OT, Thurstone FL. Cardiac imaging using a phased array ultrasound system. I. System design. *Circulation*. 1976;53(2):258–262.
21. Kisslo J, vonRamm OT, Thurstone FL. Cardiac imaging using a phased array ultrasound system. II. Clinical technique and application. *Circulation*. 1976;53(2):262–267.
22. Feigenbaum H. Evolution of echocardiography. *Circulation*. 1996;93(7):1321–1327.
23. Jardin F, Gueret P, Dubourg O, Farcot JC, Margairaz A, Bourdarias JP. Two-dimensional echocardiographic evaluation of right ventricular size and contractility in acute respiratory failure. *Crit Care Med*. 1985;13(11):952–956.
24. Jardin F, Brun-Ney D, Auvert B, Beauchet A, Bourdarias JP. Sepsis-related cardiogenic shock. *Crit Care Med*. 1990;18(10):1055–1060.
25. Swan HJ, Ganz W, Forrester J, Marcus H, Diamond G, Chonette D. Catheterization of the heart in man with use of a flow-directed balloon-tipped catheter. *N Engl J Med*. 1970;283(9):447–451.
26. Connors Jr AF, McCaffree DR, Gray BA. Evaluation of right-heart catheterization in the critically ill patient without acute myocardial infarction. *N Engl J Med*. 1983;308(5):263–267.
27. Eisenberg PR, Jaffe AS, Schuster DP. Clinical evaluation compared to pulmonary artery catheterization in the hemodynamic assessment of critically ill patients. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12(7):549–553.
28. Connors Jr AF, Speroff T, Dawson NV, et al. The effectiveness of right heart catheterization in the initial care of critically ill patients. SUPPORT Investigators. *JAMA*. 1996;276(11):889–897.
29. Dalen JE, Bone RC. Is it time to pull the pulmonary artery catheter? *JAMA*. 1996;276(11):916–918.
30. Richard C, Warszawski J, Anguel N, et al. Early use of the pulmonary artery catheter and outcomes in patients with shock and acute respiratory distress syndrome: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2003;290(20):2713–2720.
31. Sandham JD, Hull RD, Brant RF, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of the use of pulmonary-artery catheters in high-risk surgical patients. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348(1):5–14.
32. Wiener RS, Welch HG. Trends in the use of the pulmonary artery catheter in the United States, 1993-2004. *JAMA*. 2007;298(4):423–429.
33. Le HT, Hangiandreou N, Timmerman R, et al. Imaging artifacts in echocardiography. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(3):633–646.
34. Duncan AE, Alfirevic A, Sessler DI, Popovic ZB, Thomas JD. Perioperative assessment of myocardial deformation. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(3):525–544.
35. Thomas JD, Rubin DN. Tissue harmonic imaging: why does it work? *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 1998;11(8):803–808.
36. Turner SP, Monaghan MJ. Tissue harmonic imaging for standard left ventricular measurements: fundamentally flawed? *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2006;7(1):9–15.
37. Hawkins K, Henry JS, Krasuski RA. Tissue harmonic imaging in echocardiography: better valve imaging, but at what cost? *Echocardiography*. 2008;25(2):119–123.
38. Porter TR, Mulvagh SL, Abdelmoneim SS, et al. Clinical applications of ultrasonic enhancing agents in echocardiography: 2018 American Society of Echocardiography guidelines update. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018;31(3):241–274.
39. Bhatia VK, Senior R. Contrast echocardiography: evidence for clinical use. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2008;21(5):409–416.
40. Porter TR, Abdelmoneim S, Belcik JT, et al. Guidelines for the cardiac sonographer in the performance of contrast echocardiography: a focused update from the American Society of Echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2014;27(8):797–810.
41. Lang RM, Badano LP, Tsang W, et al. EAE/ASE recommendations for image acquisition and display using three-dimensional echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2012;25(1):3–46.
42. Mahmood F, Jeganathan J, Saraf R, et al. A practical approach to an intraoperative three-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography examination. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30(2):470–490.
43. Practice guidelines for perioperative transesophageal echocardiography. A report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists Task Force on Transesophageal Echocardiography. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(4):986–1006.
44. American Society of Anesthesiologists and Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists Task Force on Transesophageal Echocardiography. Practice guidelines for perioperative transesophageal echocardiography. An updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists Task Force on Transesophageal Echocardiography. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(5):1084–1096.
45. Silvestry FE, Kerber RE, Brook MM, et al. Echocardiography-guided interventions. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2009;22(3):213–231; quiz 316-217.
46. Zamorano JL, Badano LP, Bruce C, et al. EAE/ASE recommendations for the use of echocardiography in new transcatheter interventions for valvular heart disease. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2011;24(9):937–965.

47. Flachskampf FA, Decoodt P, Fraser AG, et al. Guidelines from the Working Group. Recommendations for performing transesophageal echocardiography. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2001;2(1):8–21.
48. Flachskampf FA, Badano L, Daniel WG, et al. Recommendations for transoesophageal echocardiography: update 2010. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2010;11(7):557–576.
49. Kristensen SD, Knuuti J, Saraste A, et al. 2014 ESC/ESA Guidelines on non-cardiac surgery: cardiovascular assessment and management: The Joint Task Force on non-cardiac surgery: cardiovascular assessment and management of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and the European Society of Anaesthesiology (ESA). *Eur Heart J*. 2014;35(35):2383–2431.
50. Nishimura RA, Otto CM, Bonow RO, et al. 2014 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of patients with valvular heart disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;129(23):e521–643.
51. Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: executive summary: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;130(24):2215–2245.
52. Cahalan MK, Stewart W, Pearlman A, et al. American Society of Echocardiography and Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists task force guidelines for training in perioperative echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2002;15(6):647–652.
53. Price S, Via G, Sloth E, et al. Echocardiography practice, training and accreditation in the intensive care: document for the World Interactive Network Focused on Critical Ultrasound (WINFOCUS). *Cardiovasc Ultrasound*. 2008;6:49.
54. Mayo PH, Beaulieu Y, Doelken P, et al. American College of Chest Physicians/La Societe de Reanimation de Langue Francaise statement on competence in critical care ultrasonography. *Chest*. 2009;135(4):1050–1060.
55. Expert Round Table on Ultrasound in ICU. International expert statement on training standards for critical care ultrasonography. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37(7):1077–1083.
56. Expert Round Table on Echocardiography in ICU. International consensus statement on training standards for advanced critical care echocardiography. *Intensive Care Med*. 2014;40(5):654–666.
57. Levitov A, Frankel HL, Blaivas M, et al. Guidelines for the appropriate use of bedside general and cardiac ultrasonography in the evaluation of critically ill patients-part II: cardiac ultrasonography. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(6):1206–1227.
58. Hilberath JN, Oakes DA, Shernan SK, Bulwer BE, D'Ambra MN, Eltzschig HK. Safety of transesophageal echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2010;23(11):1115–1127; quiz 1220-1111.
59. Purza R, Ghosh S, Walker C, et al. Transesophageal echocardiography complications in adult cardiac surgery: a retrospective cohort study. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2017;103(3):795–802.
60. Reeves ST, Finley AC, Skubas NJ, et al. Special article: basic perioperative transesophageal echocardiography examination: a consensus statement of the American Society of Echocardiography and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(3):543–558.
61. Hahn RT, Abraham T, Adams MS, et al. Guidelines for performing a comprehensive transesophageal echocardiographic examination: recommendations from the American Society of Echocardiography and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2013;26(9):921–964.
62. Reeves ST, Glas KE, Eltzschig H, et al. Guidelines for performing a comprehensive epicardial echocardiography examination: recommendations of the American Society of Echocardiography and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2007;20(4):427–437.
63. Royse AG, Royse CF. Epiaortic ultrasound assessment of the aorta in cardiac surgery. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;23(3):335–341.
64. Michelena HI, Abel MD, Suri RM, et al. Intraoperative echocardiography in valvular heart disease: an evidence-based appraisal. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2010;85(7):646–655.
65. Ikram A, Mohiuddin H, Zia A, et al. Does epiaortic ultrasound screening reduce perioperative stroke in patients undergoing coronary surgery? A topical review. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2018;50:30–34.
66. Glas KE, Swaminathan M, Reeves ST, et al. Guidelines for the performance of a comprehensive intraoperative epiaortic ultrasonographic examination: recommendations of the American Society of Echocardiography and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists; endorsed by the Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2007;20(11):1227–1235.
67. Spencer KT, Kimura BJ, Korcarz CE, Pellikka PA, Rahko PS, Siegel RJ. Focused cardiac ultrasound: recommendations from the American Society of Echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2013;26(6):567–581.
68. Via G, Hussain A, Wells M, et al. International evidence-based recommendations for focused cardiac ultrasound. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2014;27(7):683.e681–683.e633.
69. Zimmerman JM, Coker BJ. The nuts and bolts of performing focused cardiovascular ultrasound (FoCUS). *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(3):753–760.
70. Mitchell C, Rahko PS, Blauwet LA, et al. Guidelines for performing a comprehensive transthoracic echocardiographic examination in adults: recommendations from the American Society of Echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018.
71. Gudmundsson P, Rydberg E, Winter R, Willenheimer R. Visually estimated left ventricular ejection fraction by echocardiography is closely correlated with formal quantitative methods. *Int J Cardiol*. 2005;101(2):209–212.
72. Shahgaldi K, Gudmundsson P, Manouras A, Brodin LA, Winter R. Visually estimated ejection fraction by two dimensional and triplane echocardiography is closely correlated with quantitative ejection fraction by real-time three dimensional echocardiography. *Cardiovasc Ultrasound*. 2009;7:41.
73. Mathew JP, Fontes ML, Garwood S, et al. Transesophageal echocardiography interpretation: a comparative analysis between cardiac anesthesiologists and primary echocardiographers. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(2):302–309, table of contents.
74. Cerqueira MD, Weissman NJ, Dilsizian V, et al. Standardized myocardial segmentation and nomenclature for tomographic imaging of the heart. A statement for healthcare professionals from the Cardiac Imaging Committee of the Council on Clinical Cardiology of the American Heart Association. *J Nucl Cardiol*. 2002;9(2):240–245.
75. Ortiz-Perez JT, Rodriguez J, Meyers SN, Lee DC, Davidson C, Wu E. Correspondence between the 17-segment model and coronary arterial anatomy using contrast-enhanced cardiac magnetic resonance imaging. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2008;1(3):282–293.
76. Hauser AM, Gangadharan V, Ramos RG, Gordon S, Timmis GC. Sequence of mechanical, electrocardiographic and clinical effects of repeated coronary artery occlusion in human beings: echocardiographic observations during coronary angioplasty. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1985;5(2 Pt 1):193–197.
77. Rudski LG, Lai WW, Afilalo J, et al. Guidelines for the echocardiographic assessment of the right heart in adults: a report from the American Society of Echocardiography endorsed by the European Association of Echocardiography, a registered branch of the European Society of Cardiology, and the Canadian Society of Echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2010;23(7):685–713; quiz 786-688.
78. Zoghbi WA, Adams D, Bonow RO, et al. Recommendations for noninvasive evaluation of native valvular regurgitation: a report from the American Society of Echocardiography developed in collaboration with the society for cardiovascular magnetic resonance. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2017;30(4):303–371.
79. Lancellotti P, Tribouilloy C, Hagendorff A, et al. Recommendations for the echocardiographic assessment of native valvular regurgitation: an executive summary from the European Association of Cardiovascular Imaging. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2013;14(7):611–644.
80. Sanfilippo F, Johnson C, Bellavia D, et al. Mitral regurgitation grading in the operating room: a systematic review and meta-analysis comparing preoperative and intraoperative assessments during cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31(5):1681–1691.
81. Lang RM, Badano LP, Mor-Avi V, et al. Recommendations for cardiac chamber quantification by echocardiography in adults: an update from the American Society of Echocardiography and the European Association of Cardiovascular Imaging. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2015;28(1):1–39.e14.

82. Caballero L, Kou S, Dulgheru R, et al. Echocardiographic reference ranges for normal cardiac Doppler data: results from the NORRE Study. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2015;16(9):1031–1041.
83. Nishimura RA, Tajik AJ. Quantitative hemodynamics by Doppler echocardiography: a noninvasive alternative to cardiac catheterization. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 1994;36(4):309–342.
84. Forner AF, Hasheminejad E, Sabate S, Ackermann MA, Turton EW, Ender J. Agreement of tricuspid annular systolic excursion measurement between transthoracic and transesophageal echocardiography in the perioperative setting. *Int J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2017;33(9):1385–1394.
85. Shen T, Picard MH, Hua L, Burns SM, Andrawes MN. Assessment of tricuspid annular motion by speckle tracking in anesthetized patients using transesophageal echocardiography. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(1):62–67.
86. Markin NW, Chamsi-Pasha M, Luo J, et al. Transesophageal speckle-tracking echocardiography improves right ventricular systolic function assessment in the perioperative setting. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2017;30(2):180–188.
87. Tamborini G, Muratori M, Brusoni D, et al. Is right ventricular systolic function reduced after cardiac surgery? A two- and three-dimensional echocardiographic study. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2009;10(5):630–634.
88. Unsworth B, Casula RP, Yadav H, et al. Contrasting effect of different cardiothoracic operations on echocardiographic right ventricular long axis velocities, and implications for interpretation of post-operative values. *Int J Cardiol*. 2013;165(1):151–160.
89. Nagueh SF. Echocardiographic assessment of left ventricular relaxation and cardiac filling pressures. *Curr Heart Fail Rep*. 2009;6(3):154–159.
90. Nagueh SF, Smiseth OA, Appleton CP, et al. Recommendations for the evaluation of left ventricular diastolic function by echocardiography: an update from the American Society of Echocardiography and the European Association of Cardiovascular Imaging. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2016;29(4):277–314.
91. Swaminathan M, Nicoara A, Phillips-Bute BG, et al. Utility of a simple algorithm to grade diastolic dysfunction and predict outcome after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2011;91(6):1844–1850.
92. Matyal R, Skubas NJ, Shernan SK, Mahmood F. Perioperative assessment of diastolic dysfunction. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(3):449–472.
93. McIlroy DR, Lin E, Durkin C. Intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography: a critical appraisal of its current role in the assessment of diastolic dysfunction. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29(4):1033–1043.
94. Baumgartner H, Hung J, Bermejo J, et al. Recommendations on the echocardiographic assessment of aortic valve stenosis: a focused update from the European Association of Cardiovascular Imaging and the American Society of Echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2017;30(4):372–392.
95. Baumgartner H, Hung J, Bermejo J, et al. Echocardiographic assessment of valve stenosis: EAE/ASE recommendations for clinical practice. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2009;22(1):1–23; quiz 101-102.
96. Brown JM. Use of echocardiography for hemodynamic monitoring. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30(6):1361–1364.
97. Wetterslev M, Moller-Sorensen H, Johansen RR, Perner A. Systematic review of cardiac output measurements by echocardiography vs. thermodilution: the techniques are not interchangeable. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42(8):1223–1233.
98. Amsallem M, Sternbach JM, Adigopula S, et al. Addressing the controversy of estimating pulmonary arterial pressure by echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2016;29(2):93–102.
99. Vincent JL, De Backer D. Circulatory shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(6):583.
100. Cecconi M, De Backer D, Antonelli M, et al. Consensus on circulatory shock and hemodynamic monitoring. Task force of the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine. *Intensive Care Med*. 2014;40(12):1795–1815.
101. Akinboboye O, Sumner J, Gopal A, et al. Visual estimation of ejection fraction by two-dimensional echocardiography: the learning curve. *Clin Cardiol*. 1995;18(12):726–729.
102. Seeberger MD, Cahalan MK, Rouine-Rapp K, et al. Acute hypovolemia may cause segmental wall motion abnormalities in the absence of myocardial ischemia. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(6):1252–1257.
103. Hessel 2nd EA. Takotsubo cardiomyopathy and its relevance to anesthesiology: a narrative review. *Can J Anaesth*. 2016;63(9):1059–1074.
104. Citro R, Lyon AR, Meimoun P, et al. Standard and advanced echocardiography in Takotsubo (stress) cardiomyopathy: clinical and prognostic implications. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2015;28(1):57–74.
105. Leung JM, Levine EH. Left ventricular end-systolic cavity obliteration as an estimate of intraoperative hypovolemia. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(5):1102–1109.
106. Porter TR, Shillcutt SK, Adams MS, et al. Guidelines for the use of echocardiography as a monitor for therapeutic intervention in adults: a report from the American Society of Echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2015;28(1):40–56.
107. Marik PE, Cavallazzi R. Does the central venous pressure predict fluid responsiveness? An updated meta-analysis and a plea for some common sense. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41(7):1774–1781.
108. Schmidt GA. POINT: should acute fluid resuscitation be guided primarily by inferior vena cava ultrasound for patients in shock? *Yes. Chest*. 2017;151(3):531–532.
109. Kory P. COUNTERPOINT: should acute fluid resuscitation be guided primarily by inferior vena cava ultrasound for patients in shock? *No. Chest*. 2017;151(3):533–536.
110. Schmidt GA. Rebuttal from Dr Schmidt. *Chest*. 2017;151(3):536–537.
111. Kory P. Rebuttal from Dr Kory. *Chest*. 2017;151(3):537–538.
112. Muller L, Bobbia X, Toumi M, et al. Respiratory variations of inferior vena cava diameter to predict fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients with acute circulatory failure: need for a cautious use. *Crit Care*. 2012;16(5):R188.
113. Corl K, Napoli AM, Gardiner F. Bedside sonographic measurement of the inferior vena cava caval index is a poor predictor of fluid responsiveness in emergency department patients. *Emerg Med Australas*. 2012;24(5):534–539.
114. de Valk S, Olgers TJ, Holman M, Ismael F, Ligtenberg JJ, Ter Maaten JC. The caval index: an adequate non-invasive ultrasound parameter to predict fluid responsiveness in the emergency department? *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2014;14:114.
115. Airapetian N, Maizel J, Alyamani O, et al. Does inferior vena cava respiratory variability predict fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients? *Crit Care*. 2015;19:400.
116. Corl KA, George NR, Romanoff J, et al. Inferior vena cava collapsibility detects fluid responsiveness among spontaneously breathing critically-ill patients. *J Crit Care*. 2017;41:130–137.
117. Preau S, Bortolotti P, Colling D, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of the inferior vena cava collapsibility to predict fluid responsiveness in spontaneously breathing patients with sepsis and acute circulatory failure. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(3):e290–e297.
118. Evans JS, Huang SJ, McLean AS, Nalos M. Left ventricular outflow tract obstruction-be prepared! *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2017;45(1):12–20.
119. Chauvet JL, El-Dash S, Delastre O, et al. Early dynamic left intraventricular obstruction is associated with hypovolemia and high mortality in septic shock patients. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:262.
120. Markin NW, Gmelch BS, Griffee MJ, Holmberg TJ, Morgan DE, Zimmerman JM. A review of 364 perioperative rescue echocardiograms: findings of an anesthesiologist-staffed perioperative echocardiography service. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29(1):82–88.
121. Klein AL, Abbara S, Agler DA, et al. American Society of Echocardiography clinical recommendations for multimodality cardiovascular imaging of patients with pericardial disease: endorsed by the Society for Cardiovascular Magnetic Resonance and Society of Cardiovascular Computed Tomography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2013;26(9). 965-1012.e1015.
122. Gillam LD, Guyer DE, Gibson TC, King ME, Marshall JE, Weyman AE. Hydrodynamic compression of the right atrium: a new echocardiographic sign of cardiac tamponade. *Circulation*. 1983;68(2):294–301.
123. Kronzon I, Cohen ML, Winer HE. Diastolic atrial compression: a sensitive echocardiographic sign of cardiac tamponade. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1983;2(4):770–775.
124. Merce J, Sagrista-Sauleda J, Permanyer-Miralda G, Evangelista A, Soler-Soler J. Correlation between clinical and Doppler echocardiographic findings in patients with moderate and large pericardial effusion: implications for the diagnosis of cardiac tamponade. *Am Heart J*. 1999;138(4 Pt 1):759–764.

125. Himelman RB, Kircher B, Rockey DC, Schiller NB. Inferior vena cava plethora with blunted respiratory response: a sensitive echocardiographic sign of cardiac tamponade. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1988;12(6):1470–1477.
126. Faehnrich JA, Noone Jr RB, White WD, et al. Effects of positive-pressure ventilation, pericardial effusion, and cardiac tamponade on respiratory variation in transmitral flow velocities. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17(1):45–50.
127. Jaff MR, McMurtry MS, Archer SL, et al. Management of massive and submassive pulmonary embolism, iliofemoral deep vein thrombosis, and chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2011;123(16):1788–1830.
128. Konstantinides SV, Torbicki A, Agnelli G, et al. 2014 ESC guidelines on the diagnosis and management of acute pulmonary embolism. *Eur Heart J*. 2014;35(43):3033–3069, 3069a-3069k.
129. American College of Cardiology Foundation Appropriate Use Criteria Task F, American Society of E, American Heart A, et al. ACCF/ASE/AHA/ASNC/HFSA/HRS/SCAI/SCCM/SCCT/SCMR 2011 appropriate use criteria for echocardiography. A report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation appropriate use criteria task force, American Society of Echocardiography, American Heart Association, American Society of Nuclear Cardiology, Heart Failure Society of America, Heart Rhythm Society, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, Society of Critical Care Medicine, Society of Cardiovascular Computed Tomography, Society for Cardiovascular Magnetic Resonance American College of Chest Physicians. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2011;24(3):229–267.
130. Shafiq Q, Moukarbel GV, Gupta R, Hernandez DA, Khouri SJ. Practical echocardiographic approach for risk stratification of patients with acute pulmonary embolism. *J Echocardiogr*. 2016;14(4):146–155.
131. Labovitz AJ, Noble VE, Bierig M, et al. Focused cardiac ultrasound in the emergent setting: a consensus statement of the American Society of Echocardiography and American College of Emergency Physicians. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2010;23(12):1225–1230.
132. Mansencal N, Attias D, Caille V, et al. Computed tomography for the detection of free-floating thrombi in the right heart in acute pulmonary embolism. *Eur Radiol*. 2011;21(2):240–245.
133. Mediratta A, Addetia K, Medvedofsky D, Gomberg-Maitland M, Mor-Avi V, Lang RM. Echocardiographic diagnosis of acute pulmonary embolism in patients with McConnell's sign. *Echocardiography*. 2016;33(5):696–702.
134. McConnell MV, Solomon SD, Rayan ME, Come PC, Goldhaber SZ, Lee RT. Regional right ventricular dysfunction detected by echocardiography in acute pulmonary embolism. *Am J Cardiol*. 1996;78(4):469–473.
135. Fields JM, Davis J, Girson L, et al. Transthoracic echocardiography for diagnosing pulmonary embolism: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2017;30(7):714–723.e714.
136. Casazza F, Bongarzoni A, Capozi A, Agostoni O. Regional right ventricular dysfunction in acute pulmonary embolism and right ventricular infarction. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2005;6(1):11–14.
137. Kurnicka K, Lichodziejewska B, Goliszek S, et al. Echocardiographic pattern of acute pulmonary embolism: analysis of 511 consecutive patients. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2016;29(9):907–913.
138. Mahmood F, Christie A, Matyal R. Transesophageal echocardiography and noncardiac surgery. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2008;12(4):265–289.
139. Denault AY, Couture P, McKenty S, et al. Perioperative use of transesophageal echocardiography by anesthesiologists: impact in noncardiac surgery and in the intensive care unit. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49(3):287–293.
140. Suriani RJ, Neustein S, Shore-Lesserson L, Konstadt S. Intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography during noncardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1998;12(3):274–280.
141. Hofer CK, Zollinger A, Rak M, et al. Therapeutic impact of intra-operative transoesophageal echocardiography during noncardiac surgery. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59(1):3–9.
142. London MJ, Tubau JF, Wong MG, et al. The "natural history" of segmental wall motion abnormalities in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. S.P.I. Research Group. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(4):644–655.
143. Eisenberg MJ, London MJ, Leung JM, et al. Monitoring for myocardial ischemia during noncardiac surgery. A technology assessment of transesophageal echocardiography and 12-lead electrocardiography. The Study of Perioperative Ischemia Research Group. *JAMA*. 1992;268(2):210–216.
144. Galal W, Hoeks SE, Flu WJ, et al. Relation between preoperative and intraoperative new wall motion abnormalities in vascular surgery patients: a transesophageal echocardiographic study. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(3):557–566.
145. Robertson AC, Eagle SS. Transesophageal echocardiography during orthotopic liver transplantation: maximizing information without the distraction. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(1):141–154.
146. Dalia AA, Flores A, Chitilian H, Fitzsimons MG. A comprehensive review of transesophageal echocardiography during orthotopic liver transplantation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018.
147. Maraj S, Jacobs LE, Maraj R, et al. Inducible left ventricular outflow tract gradient during dobutamine stress echocardiography: an association with intraoperative hypotension but not a contraindication to liver transplantation. *Echocardiography*. 2004;21(8):681–685.
148. Nicoara A, Anderson-Dam J. Anesthesia for lung transplantation. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2017;35(3):473–489.
149. Cartwright BL, Jackson A, Cooper J. Intraoperative pulmonary vein examination by transesophageal echocardiography: an anatomic update and review of utility. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2013;27(1):111–120.
150. Harpole DH, Clements FM, Quill T, Wolfe WG, Jones RH, McCann RL. Right and left ventricular performance during and after abdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *Ann Surg*. 1989;209(3):356–362.
151. Koolen JJ, Visser CA, Reichert SL, et al. Improved monitoring of myocardial ischaemia during major vascular surgery using transoesophageal echocardiography. *Eur Heart J*. 1992;13(8):1028–1033.
152. Memtsoudis SG, Rosenberger P, Loffler M, et al. The usefulness of transesophageal echocardiography during intraoperative cardiac arrest in noncardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(6):1653–1657.
153. Shillcutt SK, Markin NW, Montzingo CR, Brakke TR. Use of rapid "rescue" perioperative echocardiography to improve outcomes after hemodynamic instability in noncardiac surgical patients. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26(3):362–370.
154. Schulmeyer C, Farias J, Rajdl E, de La Maza J, Labbe M. Utility of transesophageal echocardiography during severe hypotension in non-cardiac surgery. *Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2010;60(5):513–521.
155. Staudt GE, Shelton K. Development of a rescue echocardiography protocol for noncardiac surgery patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
156. Eltzschig HK, Rosenberger P, Loffler M, Fox JA, Aranki SF, Shernan SK. Impact of intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography on surgical decisions in 12,566 patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85(3):845–852.
157. Guarracino F, Cariello C, Tritapepe L, et al. Transoesophageal echocardiography during coronary artery bypass procedures: impact on surgical planning. *HSR Proc Intensive Care Cardiovasc Anesth*. 2010;2(1):43–49.
158. Ramakrishna H, Patel PA, Gutsche JT, Kohl BA, Savino JS, Augoustides JG. Incidental patent foramen ovale in adult cardiac surgery: recent evidence and management options for the perioperative echocardiographer. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(6):1691–1695.
159. Krasuski RA, Hart SA, Allen D, et al. Prevalence and repair of intraoperatively diagnosed patent foramen ovale and association with perioperative outcomes and long-term survival. *JAMA*. 2009;302(3):290–297.
160. Comunale ME, Body SC, Ley C, et al. The concordance of intraoperative left ventricular wall-motion abnormalities and electrocardiographic S-T segment changes: association with outcome after coronary revascularization. Multicenter Study of Perioperative Ischemia (McSPI) Research Group. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(4):945–954.
161. Leung JM, O'Kelly B, Browner WS, Tubau J, Hollenberg M, Mangano DT. Prognostic importance of postbypass regional wall-motion abnormalities in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery. SPI Research Group. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71(1):16–25.
162. Swaminathan M, Morris RW, De Meyts DD, et al. Deterioration of regional wall motion immediately after coronary artery bypass graft surgery is associated with long-term major adverse cardiac events. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(5):739–745.
163. Mahmood F, Matyal R, Mahmood F, Sheu RD, Feng R, Khabbaz KR. Intraoperative echocardiographic assessment of prosthetic valves: a practical approach. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32(2):823–837.
164. Carpentier A. Cardiac valve surgery--the "French correction". *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1983;86(3):323–337.

165. Grewal J, Mankad S, Freeman WK, et al. Real-time three-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography in the intraoperative assessment of mitral valve disease. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2009;22(1):34–41.
166. Ben Zekry S, Nagueh SF, Little SH, et al. Comparative accuracy of two- and three-dimensional transthoracic and transesophageal echocardiography in identifying mitral valve pathology in patients undergoing mitral valve repair: initial observations. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2011;24(10):1079–1085.
167. Hien MD, Rauch H, Lichtenberg A, et al. Real-time three-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography: improvements in intraoperative mitral valve imaging. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(2):287–295.
168. Mahmood F, Matyal R. A quantitative approach to the intraoperative echocardiographic assessment of the mitral valve for repair. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(1):34–58.
169. Maslow AD, Regan MM, Haering JM, Johnson RG, Levine RA. Echocardiographic predictors of left ventricular outflow tract obstruction and systolic anterior motion of the mitral valve after mitral valve reconstruction for myxomatous valve disease. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1999;34(7):2096–2104.
170. Varghese R, Itagaki S, Anyanwu AC, Trigo P, Fischer G, Adams DH. Predicting systolic anterior motion after mitral valve reconstruction: using intraoperative transoesophageal echocardiography to identify those at greatest risk. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2014;45(1):132–137; discussion 137-138.
171. Kuperstein R, Spiegelstein D, Rotem G, et al. Late clinical outcome of transient intraoperative systolic anterior motion post mitral valve repair. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2015;149(2):471–476.
172. Hahn RT. State-of-the-art review of echocardiographic imaging in the evaluation and treatment of functional tricuspid regurgitation. *Circ Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2016;9(12).
173. Dreyfus J, Durand-Viel G, Raffoul R, et al. Comparison of 2-dimensional, 3-dimensional, and surgical measurements of the tricuspid annulus size: clinical implications. *Circ Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2015;8(7):e003241.
174. Ring L, Rana BS, Kydd A, Boyd J, Parker K, Rusk RA. Dynamics of the tricuspid valve annulus in normal and dilated right hearts: a three-dimensional transoesophageal echocardiography study. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2012;13(9):756–762.
175. Hai T, Amador Y, Mahmood F, et al. Changes in tricuspid annular geometry in patients with functional tricuspid regurgitation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31(6):2106–2114.
176. Bhave NM, Nienaber CA, Clough RE, Eagle KA. Multimodality imaging of thoracic aortic diseases in adults. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2018;11(6):902–919.
177. Mussa FF, Horton JD, Moridzadeh R, Nicholson J, Trimarchi S, Eagle KA. Acute aortic dissection and intramural hematoma: a systematic review. *JAMA*. 2016;316(7):754–763.
178. Tan CN, Fraser AG. Perioperative transesophageal echocardiography for aortic dissection. *Can J Anaesth*. 2014;61(4):362–378.
179. Thorsgard ME, Morrissette GJ, Sun B, et al. Impact of intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography on acute type-A aortic dissection. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(5):1203–1207.
180. Kirklin JK, Pagani FD, Kormos RL, et al. Eighth annual INTERMACS report: special focus on framing the impact of adverse events. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2017;36(10):1080–1086.
181. Estep JD, Stainback RF, Little SH, Torre G, Zoghbi WA. The role of echocardiography and other imaging modalities in patients with left ventricular assist devices. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2010;3(10):1049–1064.
182. Flores AS, Essandoh M, Yerington GC, et al. Echocardiographic assessment for ventricular assist device placement. *J Thorac Dis*. 2015;7(12):2139–2150.
183. Stainback RF, Estep JD, Agler DA, et al. Echocardiography in the management of patients with left ventricular assist devices: recommendations from the American Society of Echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2015;28(8):853–909.
184. Grinstein J, Kruse E, Collins K, et al. Screening for outflow cannula malfunction of left ventricular assist devices (LVADs) with the use of Doppler echocardiography: new lvad-specific reference values for contemporary devices. *J Card Fail*. 2016;22(10):808–814.
185. Platts DG, Sedgwick JF, Burstow DJ, Mullany DV, Fraser JF. The role of echocardiography in the management of patients supported by extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2012;25(2):131–141.
186. Cavarocchi NC, Pitcher HT, Yang Q, et al. Weaning of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation using continuous hemodynamic transesophageal echocardiography. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2013;146(6):1474–1479.
187. Kamra K, Russell I, Miller-Hance WC. Role of transesophageal echocardiography in the management of pediatric patients with congenital heart disease. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21(5):479–493.
188. Randolph GR, Hagler DJ, Connolly HM, et al. Intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography during surgery for congenital heart defects. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2002;124(6):1176–1182.
189. Bettex DA, Schmidlin D, Bernath MA, et al. Intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography in pediatric congenital cardiac surgery: a two-center observational study. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(5):1275–1282.
190. Guzeltas A, Ozyilmaz I, Tanidir C, et al. The significance of transesophageal echocardiography in assessing congenital heart disease: our experience. *Congenit Heart Dis*. 2014;9(4):300–306.
191. Jijeh AM, Omran AS, Najm HK, Abu-Sulaiman RM. Role of intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography in pediatric cardiac surgery. *J Saudi Heart Assoc*. 2016;28(2):89–94.
192. Dragulescu A, Golding F, Van Arsdell G, et al. The impact of additional epicardial imaging to transesophageal echocardiography on intraoperative detection of residual lesions in congenital heart surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;143(2):361–367.
193. Levin DN, Taras J, Taylor K. The cost effectiveness of transesophageal echocardiography for pediatric cardiac surgery: a systematic review. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2016;26(7):682–693.
194. Dvir D, Barbash IM, Ben-Dor I, et al. The development of transcatheter aortic valve replacement in the USA. *Arch Cardiovasc Dis*. 2012;105(3):160–164.
195. Nishimura RA, Otto CM, Bonow RO, et al. 2017 AHA/ACC focused update of the 2014 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of patients with valvular heart disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on clinical practice guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;70(2):252–289.
196. Grover FL, Vemulapalli S, Carroll JD, et al. 2016 Annual report of the Society of Thoracic Surgeons/American College of Cardiology Transcatheter Valve Therapy Registry. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69(10):1215–1230.
197. Hahn RT, Little SH, Monaghan MJ, et al. Recommendations for comprehensive intraprocedural echocardiographic imaging during TAVR. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2015;8(3):261–287.
198. Hahn RT, Nicoara A, Kapadia S, Svensson L, Martin R. Echocardiographic imaging for transcatheter aortic valve replacement. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018;31(4):405–433.
199. Otto CM, Kumbhani DJ, Alexander KP, et al. 2017 ACC expert consensus decision pathway for transcatheter aortic valve replacement in the management of adults with aortic stenosis: a report of the American College of Cardiology task force on clinical expert consensus documents. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69(10):1313–1346.
200. Altiok E, Koos R, Schroder J, et al. Comparison of two-dimensional and three-dimensional imaging techniques for measurement of aortic annulus diameters before transcatheter aortic valve implantation. *Heart*. 2011;97(19):1578–1584.
201. Gurvitch R, Webb JG, Yuan R, et al. Aortic annulus diameter determination by multidetector computed tomography: reproducibility, applicability, and implications for transcatheter aortic valve implantation. *JACC Cardiovasc Interv*. 2011;4(11):1235–1245.
202. Husser O, Rauch S, Endemann DH, et al. Impact of three-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography on prosthesis sizing for transcatheter aortic valve implantation. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2012;80(6):956–963.
203. Smith LA, Dworakowski R, Bhan A, et al. Real-time three-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography adds value to transcatheter aortic valve implantation. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2013;26(4):359–369.
204. Ng AC, Delgado V, van der Kley F, et al. Comparison of aortic root dimensions and geometries before and after transcatheter aortic valve implantation by 2- and 3-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography and multislice computed tomography. *Circ Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2010;3(1):94–102.
205. Jilaihawi H, Doctor N, Kashif M, et al. Aortic annular sizing for transcatheter aortic valve replacement using cross-sectional 3-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;61(9):908–916.

206. Vaquerizo B, Spaziano M, Alali J, et al. Three-dimensional echocardiography vs. computed tomography for transcatheter aortic valve replacement sizing. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2016;17(1):15–23.
207. Khalique OK, Kodali SK, Paradis JM, et al. Aortic annular sizing using a novel 3-dimensional echocardiographic method: use and comparison with cardiac computed tomography. *Circ Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2014;7(1):155–163.
208. Jilaihawi H, Kashif M, Fontana G, et al. Cross-sectional computed tomographic assessment improves accuracy of aortic annular sizing for transcatheter aortic valve replacement and reduces the incidence of paravalvular aortic regurgitation. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;59(14):1275–1286.
209. Willson AB, Webb JG, Labounty TM, et al. 3-dimensional aortic annular assessment by multidetector computed tomography predicts moderate or severe paravalvular regurgitation after transcatheter aortic valve replacement: a multicenter retrospective analysis. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;59(14):1287–1294.
210. Gripari P, Ewe SH, Fusini L, et al. Intraoperative 2D and 3D transoesophageal echocardiographic predictors of aortic regurgitation after transcatheter aortic valve implantation. *Heart*. 2012;98(16):1229–1236.
211. Queiros S, Morais P, Dubois C, et al. Validation of a novel software tool for automatic aortic annular sizing in three-dimensional transesophageal echocardiographic images. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018;31(4):515–525.e515.
212. Prihadi EA, van Rosendael PJ, Vollema EM, Bax JJ, Delgado V, Ajmone Marsan N. Feasibility, accuracy, and reproducibility of aortic annular and root sizing for transcatheter aortic valve replacement using novel automated three-dimensional echocardiographic software: comparison with multi-detector row computed tomography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018;31(4):505–514.e503.
213. Neuburger PJ, Patel PA. Anesthetic techniques in transcatheter aortic valve replacement and the evolving role of the anesthesiologist. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31(6):2175–2182.
214. Kronzon I, Jelnin V, Ruiz CE, et al. Optimal imaging for guiding TAVR: transesophageal or transthoracic echocardiography, or just fluoroscopy? *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2015;8(3):361–370.
215. Leon MB, Smith CR, Mack M, et al. Transcatheter aortic-valve implantation for aortic stenosis in patients who cannot undergo surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(17):1597–1607.
216. Smith CR, Leon MB, Mack MJ, et al. Transcatheter versus surgical aortic-valve replacement in high-risk patients. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364(23):2187–2198.
217. Patel PA, Ackermann AM, Augoustides JGT, et al. Anesthetic evolution in transcatheter aortic valve replacement: expert perspectives from high-volume academic centers in Europe and the United States. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31(3):777–790.
218. Cerrato E, Nombela-Franco L, Nazif TM, et al. Evaluation of current practices in transcatheter aortic valve implantation: the WRITTEN (WoRldwIde TAVI ExperieNce) survey. *Int J Cardiol*. 2017;228:640–647.
219. Vahl TP, Kodali SK, Leon MB. Transcatheter aortic valve replacement 2016: a modern-day "Through the Looking-Glass" adventure. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2016;67(12):1472–1487.
220. Eskandari M, Aldalati O, Dworakowski R, et al. Comparison of general anaesthesia and non-general anaesthesia approach in transfemoral transcatheter aortic valve implantation. *Heart*. 2018.
221. Hayek SS, Corrigan 3rd FE, Condado JF, et al. Paravalvular regurgitation after transcatheter aortic valve replacement: comparing transthoracic versus transesophageal echocardiographic guidance. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2017;30(6):533–540.
222. Chiarito M, Pagnesi M, Martino EA, et al. Outcome after percutaneous edge-to-edge mitral repair for functional and degenerative mitral regurgitation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Heart*. 2018;104(4):306–312.
223. Obadia JF, Armoiry X, Iung B, et al. The MITRA-FR study: design and rationale of a randomised study of percutaneous mitral valve repair compared with optimal medical management alone for severe secondary mitral regurgitation. *EuroIntervention*. 2015;10(11):1354–1360.
224. Cardiovascular Outcomes Assessment of the MitraClip Percutaneous Therapy for Heart Failure Patients With Functional Mitral Regurgitation (The COAPT Trial). https://ClinicalTrials.gov/show/NCT01626079. Accessed June 6, 2018.
225. A Multicenter, Randomized, Controlled Study to Assess Mitral vAlve reconsTrucTion for advancEd Insufficiency of Functional or iscHemic ORigiN. https://ClinicalTrials.gov/show/NCT02371512. Accessed June 6, 2018.
226. Nyman CB, Mackensen GB, Jelacic S, Little SH, Smith TW, Mahmood F. Transcatheter mitral valve repair using the edge-to-edge clip. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018;31(4):434–453.
227. Mauri L, Garg P, Massaro JM, et al. The EVEREST II Trial: design and rationale for a randomized study of the evalve mitraclip system compared with mitral valve surgery for mitral regurgitation. *Am Heart J*. 2010;160(1):23–29.
228. Bapat V, Rajagopal V, Meduri C, et al. Early experience with new transcatheter mitral valve replacement. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2018;71(1):12–21.
229. Rodes-Cabau J, Hahn RT, Latib A, et al. Transcatheter therapies for treating tricuspid regurgitation. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2016;67(15):1829–1845.
230. Prihadi EA, Delgado V, Hahn RT, Leipsic J, Min JK, Bax JJ. Imaging needs in novel transcatheter tricuspid valve interventions. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2018;11(5):736–754.
231. Thaden JJ, Sanon S, Geske JB, et al. Echocardiographic and fluoroscopic fusion imaging for procedural guidance: an overview and early clinical experience. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2016;29(6):503–512.
232. Faletra FF, Biasco L, Pedrazzini G, et al. Echocardiographic-fluoroscopic fusion imaging in transseptal puncture: a new technology for an old procedure. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2017;30(9):886–895.
233. Giannopoulos AA, Mitsouras D, Yoo SJ, Liu PP, Chatzizisis YS, Rybicki FJ. Applications of 3D printing in cardiovascular diseases. *Nat Rev Cardiol*. 2016;13(12):701–718.
234. Ginty O, Moore J, Peters T, Bainbridge D. Modeling patient-specific deformable mitral valves. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32(3):1368–1373.
235. Krittanawong C, Zhang H, Wang Z, Aydar M, Kitai T. Artificial intelligence in precision cardiovascular medicine. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69(21):2657–2664.
236. Henglin M, Stein G, Hushcha PV, Snoek J, Wiltschko AB, Cheng S. Machine learning approaches in cardiovascular imaging. *Circ Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2017;10(10).
237. Jeganathan J, Knio Z, Amador Y, et al. Artificial intelligence in mitral valve analysis. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2017;20(2):129–134.
238. Medvedofsky D, Mor-Avi V, Amzulescu M, et al. Three-dimensional echocardiographic quantification of the left-heart chambers using an automated adaptive analytics algorithm: multicentre validation study. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2018;19(1):47–58.
239. Tsang W, Salgo IS, Medvedofsky D, et al. Transthoracic 3D echocardiographic left heart chamber quantification using an automated adaptive analytics algorithm. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2016;9(7):769–782.
240. Otani K, Nakazono A, Salgo IS, Lang RM, Takeuchi M. Three-dimensional echocardiographic assessment of left heart chamber size and function with fully automated quantification software in patients with atrial fibrillation. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2016;29(10):955–965.
241. Narula S, Shameer K, Salem Omar AM, Dudley JT, Sengupta PP. Machine-learning algorithms to automate morphological and functional assessments in 2D echocardiography. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2016;68(21):2287–2295.
242. Cowie B. Focused cardiovascular ultrasound performed by anesthesiologists in the perioperative period: feasible and alters patient management. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2009;23(4):450–456.
243. Cowie B. Three years' experience of focused cardiovascular ultrasound in the peri-operative period. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(4):268–273.
244. Canty DJ, Royse CF, Kilpatrick D, Bowman L, Royse AG. The impact of focused transthoracic echocardiography in the pre-operative clinic. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(6):618–625.
245. Shillcutt SK, Walsh DP, Thomas WR, et al. The implementation of a preoperative transthoracic echocardiography consult service by anesthesiologists. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(5):1479–1481.
246. Wijeysundera DN, Beattie WS, Karkouti K, Neuman MD, Austin PC, Laupacis A. Association of echocardiography before major elective non-cardiac surgery with postoperative survival and length of hospital stay: population based cohort study. *BMJ*. 2011;342:d3695.
247. Canty DJ, Royse CF, Kilpatrick D, Williams DL, Royse AG. The impact of pre-operative focused transthoracic echocardiography in emergency non-cardiac surgery patients with known or risk of cardiac disease. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(7):714–720.

248. Canty DJ, Royse CF, Kilpatrick D, Bowyer A, Royse AG. The impact on cardiac diagnosis and mortality of focused transthoracic echocardiography in hip fracture surgery patients with increased risk of cardiac disease: a retrospective cohort study. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(11):1202–1209.
249. Botker MT, Vang ML, Grofte T, Sloth E, Frederiksen CA. Routine preoperative focused ultrasonography by anesthesiologists in patients undergoing urgent surgical procedures. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58(7):807–814.
250. Moja L, Piatti A, Pecoraro V, et al. Timing matters in hip fracture surgery: patients operated within 48 hours have better outcomes. A meta-analysis and meta-regression of over 190,000 patients. *PLoS One*. 2012;7(10):e46175.
251. Pincus D, Ravi B, Wasserstein D, et al. Association between wait time and 30-day mortality in adults undergoing hip fracture surgery. *JAMA*. 2017;318(20):1994–2003.
252. O'HEireamhoin S, Beyer T, Ahmed M, Mulhall KJ. The role of preoperative cardiac investigation in emergency hip surgery. *J Trauma*. 2011;71(5):1345–1347.
253. Canty DJ, Heiberg J, Yang Y, et al. Pilot multi-centre randomised trial of the impact of pre-operative focused cardiac ultrasound on mortality and morbidity in patients having surgery for femoral neck fractures (ECHONOF-2 pilot). *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(4):428–437.
254. Kratz T, Campo Dell'Orto M, Exner M, et al. Focused intraoperative transthoracic echocardiography by anesthesiologists: a feasibility study. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2015;81(5):490–496.
255. Kratz T, Holz S, Steinfeldt T, et al. Feasibility and impact of focused intraoperative transthoracic echocardiography on management in thoracic surgery patients: an observational study. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32(2):848–852.
256. Kratz T, Steinfeldt T, Exner M, et al. Impact of focused intraoperative transthoracic echocardiography by anesthesiologists on management in hemodynamically unstable high-risk noncardiac surgery patients. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31(2):602–609.
257. Dennis AT. Transthoracic echocardiography in obstetric anaesthesia and obstetric critical illness. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2011;20(2):160–168.
258. Dennis AT. Transthoracic echocardiography in women with preeclampsia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2015;28(3):254–260.
259. Coker BJ, Zimmerman JM. Why anesthesiologists must incorporate focused cardiac ultrasound into daily practice. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(3):761–765.
260. Conlin F, Connelly NR, Eaton MP, Broderick PJ, Friderici J, Adler AC. Perioperative use of focused transthoracic cardiac ultrasound: a survey of current practice and opinion. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(6):1878–1882.
261. Vignon P, Mentec H, Terre S, Gastinne H, Gueret P, Lemaire F. Diagnostic accuracy and therapeutic impact of transthoracic and transesophageal echocardiography in mechanically ventilated patients in the ICU. *Chest*. 1994;106(6):1829–1834.
262. Orme RM, Oram MP, McKinstry CE. Impact of echocardiography on patient management in the intensive care unit: an audit of district general hospital practice. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(3):340–344.
263. Huttemann E. Transoesophageal echocardiography in critical care. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2006;72(11):891–913.
264. Heidenreich PA, Stainback RF, Redberg RF, Schiller NB, Cohen NH, Foster E. Transesophageal echocardiography predicts mortality in critically ill patients with unexplained hypotension. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1995;26(1):152–158.
265. Reichert CL, Visser CA, van den Brink RB, et al. Prognostic value of biventricular function in hypotensive patients after cardiac surgery as assessed by transesophageal echocardiography. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6(4):429–432.
266. Kanji HD, McCallum J, Sirounis D, MacRedmond R, Moss R, Boyd JH. Limited echocardiography-guided therapy in subacute shock is associated with change in management and improved outcomes. *J Crit Care*. 2014;29(5):700–705.
267. Vincent JL, Sakr Y, Sprung CL, et al. Sepsis in European intensive care units: results of the SOAP study. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(2):344–353.
268. Boyd JH, Forbes J, Nakada TA, Walley KR, Russell JA. Fluid resuscitation in septic shock: a positive fluid balance and elevated central venous pressure are associated with increased mortality. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(2):259–265.
269. Benes J, Kirov M, Kuzkov V, et al. Fluid therapy: double-edged sword during critical care? *Biomed Res Int*. 2015;2015:729075.
270. Zieleskiewicz L, Muller L, Lakhal K, et al. Point-of-care ultrasound in intensive care units: assessment of 1073 procedures in a multicentric, prospective, observational study. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41(9):1638–1647.
271. Mayo PH, Narasimhan M, Koenig S. Critical care transesophageal echocardiography. *Chest*. 2015;148(5):1323–1332.
272. Jensen MB, Sloth E, Larsen KM, Schmidt MB. Transthoracic echocardiography for cardiopulmonary monitoring in intensive care. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21(9):700–707.
273. Joseph MX, Disney PJ, Da Costa R, Hutchison SJ. Transthoracic echocardiography to identify or exclude cardiac cause of shock. *Chest*. 2004;126(5):1592–1597.
274. Barbier C, Loubieres Y, Schmit C, et al. Respiratory changes in inferior vena cava diameter are helpful in predicting fluid responsiveness in ventilated septic patients. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30(9):1740–1746.
275. Feissel M, Michard F, Faller JP, Teboul JL. The respiratory variation in inferior vena cava diameter as a guide to fluid therapy. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30(9):1834–1837.
276. Si X, Xu H, Liu Z, et al. Does respiratory variation in inferior vena cava diameter predict fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127(5):1147–1164.
277. Charbonneau H, Riu B, Faron M, et al. Predicting preload responsiveness using simultaneous recordings of inferior and superior vena cavae diameters. *Crit Care*. 2014;18(5):473.
278. Vignon P, Repesse X, Begot E, et al. Comparison of echocardiographic indices used to predict fluid responsiveness in ventilated patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;195(8):1022–1032.
279. Vieillard-Baron A, Chergui K, Rabiller A, et al. Superior vena caval collapsibility as a gauge of volume status in ventilated septic patients. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30(9):1734–1739.
280. Feissel M, Michard F, Mangin I, Ruyer O, Faller JP, Teboul JL. Respiratory changes in aortic blood velocity as an indicator of fluid responsiveness in ventilated patients with septic shock. *Chest*. 2001;119(3):867–873.
281. Jozwiak M, Depret F, Teboul JL, et al. Predicting fluid responsiveness in critically ill patients by using combined end-expiratory and end-inspiratory occlusions with echocardiography. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(11):e1131–e1138.
282. Georges D, de Courson H, Lanchon R, Sesay M, Nouette-Gaulain K, Biais M. End-expiratory occlusion maneuver to predict fluid responsiveness in the intensive care unit: an echocardiographic study. *Crit Care*. 2018;22(1):32.
283. Heiberg J, El-Ansary D, Royse CF, Royse AG, Alsaddique AA, Canty DJ. Transthoracic and transoesophageal echocardiography: a systematic review of feasibility and impact on diagnosis, management and outcome after cardiac surgery. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(10):1210–1221.
284. Costachescu T, Denault A, Guimond JG, et al. The hemodynamically unstable patient in the intensive care unit: hemodynamic vs. transesophageal echocardiographic monitoring. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30(6):1214–1223.
285. Scalea TM, Rodriguez A, Chiu WC, et al. Focused Assessment with Sonography for Trauma (FAST): results from an international consensus conference. *J Trauma*. 1999;46(3):466–472.
286. Ferrada P, Wolfe L, Anand RJ, et al. Use of limited transthoracic echocardiography in patients with traumatic cardiac arrest decreases the rate of nontherapeutic thoracotomy and hospital costs. *J Ultrasound Med*. 2014;33(10):1829–1832.
287. Saranteas T, Mavrogenis AF, Mandila C, Poularas J, Panou F. Ultrasound in cardiac trauma. *J Crit Care*. 2017;38:144–151.
288. Lichtenstein DA. BLUE-protocol and FALLS-protocol: two applications of lung ultrasound in the critically ill. *Chest*. 2015;147(6):1659–1670.
289. Ehrman RR, Sullivan AN, Favot MJ, et al. Pathophysiology, echocardiographic evaluation, biomarker findings, and prognostic implications of septic cardiomyopathy: a review of the literature. *Crit Care*. 2018;22(1):112.
290. Vignon P, Repesse X, Vieillard-Baron A, Maury E. Critical care ultrasonography in acute respiratory failure. *Crit Care*. 2016;20(1):228.
291. Chamsi-Pasha MA, Sengupta PP, Zoghbi WA. Handheld echocardiography: current state and future perspectives. *Circulation*. 2017;136(22):2178–2188.
292. Melamed R, Sprenkle MD, Ulstad VK, Herzog CA, Leatherman JW. Assessment of left ventricular function by intensivists using handheld echocardiography. *Chest*. 2009;135(6):1416–1420.

293. Vignon P, Chastagner C, Francois B, et al. Diagnostic ability of hand-held echocardiography in ventilated critically ill patients. *Crit Care*. 2003;7(5):R84–91.
294. Vieillard-Baron A, Slama M, Mayo P, et al. A pilot study on safety and clinical utility of a single-use 72-hour indwelling transesophageal echocardiography probe. *Intensive Care Med*. 2013;39(4):629–635.
295. Begot E, Dalmay F, Etchecopar C, et al. Hemodynamic assessment of ventilated ICU patients with cardiorespiratory failure using a miniaturized multiplane transesophageal echocardiography probe. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41(11):1886–1894.
296. ACGME Program Requirements for Graduate Medical Education in Anesthesiology. Available at: https://www.acgme.org/Portals/0/PFAssets/ProgramRequirements/040Anesthesiology2018.pdf?ver=2018-06-14-142529-527. Approved focused revision June 10, 2018. Effective July 1, 2018. Accessed July 15, 2018.
297. ABA Primary Certification in Anesthesiology -Content Outline. Available at: http://www.theaba.org/PDFs/ADVANCED-Exam/Basic-and-Advanced-ContentOutline. Revised April 2018. Accessed July 01, 2018.
298. ABA APPLIED Examination - OSCE Content Outline. Available at: http://www.theaba.org/PDFs/APPLIED-Exam/APPLIED-OSCE-ContentOutline. Accessed February 07, 2018.
299. ACGME Program Requirements for Graduate Medical Education in Anesthesiology Critical Care Medicine. Available at: https://www.acgme.org/Portals/0/PFAssets/ProgramRequirements/045_critical_care_anes_2017-07-01.pdf?ver=2017-05-17-155711-140. Approved September 29, 2013. Revised July 1, 2017. Accessed March 1, 2018.
300. Johri AM, Durbin J, Newbigging J, et al. Cardiac point-of-care ultrasound: state of the art in medical school education. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018.
301. Zimmerman J. A recipe for success in echocardiography training: the University of Utah experience. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017.
302. Mitchell JD, Mahmood F, Bose R, Hess PE, Wong V, Matyal R. Novel, multimodal approach for basic transesophageal echocardiographic teaching. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(3):800–809.
303. Tanzola RC, Walsh S, Hopman WM, Sydor D, Arellano R, Allard RV. Brief report: focused transthoracic echocardiography training in a cohort of Canadian anesthesiology residents: a pilot study. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60(1):32–37.
304. Mitchell JD, Mahmood F, Wong V, et al. Teaching concepts of transesophageal echocardiography via web-based modules. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29(2):402–409.
305. Jerath A, Vegas A, Meineri M, et al. An interactive online 3D model of the heart assists in learning standard transesophageal echocardiography views. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58(1):14–21.
306. Vegas A, Meineri M, Jerath A, Corrin M, Silversides C, Tait G. Impact of online transesophageal echocardiographic simulation on learning to navigate the 20 standard views. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2013;27(3):531–535.
307. Bose RR, Matyal R, Warraich HJ, et al. Utility of a transesophageal echocardiographic simulator as a teaching tool. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2011;25(2):212–215.
308. Platts DG, Humphries J, Burstow DJ, Anderson B, Forshaw T, Scalia GM. The use of computerised simulators for training of transthoracic and transoesophageal echocardiography. The future of echocardiographic training? *Heart Lung Circ*. 2012;21(5):267–274.
309. Sharma V, Chamos C, Valencia O, Meineri M, Fletcher SN. The impact of internet and simulation-based training on transoesophageal echocardiography learning in anaesthetic trainees: a prospective randomised study. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(6):621–627.
310. Jelacic S, Bowdle A, Togashi K, VonHomeyer P. The use of TEE simulation in teaching basic echocardiography skills to senior anesthesiology residents. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2013;27(4):670–675.
311. Ferrero NA, Bortsov AV, Arora H, et al. Simulator training enhances resident performance in transesophageal echocardiography. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(1):149–159.
312. Matyal R, Mitchell JD, Hess PE, et al. Simulator-based transesophageal echocardiographic training with motion analysis: a curriculum-based approach. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(2):389–399.
313. Neelankavil J, Howard-Quijano K, Hsieh TC, et al. Transthoracic echocardiography simulation is an efficient method to train anesthesiologists in basic transthoracic echocardiography skills. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(5):1042–1051.
314. Edrich T, Seethala RR, Olenchock BA, et al. Providing initial transthoracic echocardiography training for anesthesiologists: simulator training is not inferior to live training. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(1):49–53.
315. Conlin F, Roy Connelly N, Raghunathan K, Friderici J, Schwabauer A. Focused transthoracic cardiac ultrasound: a survey of training practices. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30(1):102–106.
316. Mizubuti G, Allard R, Ho AM, Cummings M, Tanzola RC. A survey of focused cardiac ultrasonography training in Canadian anesthesiology residency programs. *Can J Anaesth*. 2017;64(4):441–442.
317. Neskovic AN, Skinner H, Price S, et al. Focus cardiac ultrasound core curriculum and core syllabus of the European Association of Cardiovascular Imagingdagger. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2018.
318. Kimura BJ, Sliman SM, Waalen J, Amundson SA, Shaw DJ. Retention of ultrasound skills and training in “point-of-care” cardiac ultrasound. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2016;29(10):992–997.
319. National Board of Echocardiography, Inc. NBE Certification General Instructions. http://echoboards.org/Echoboards/Certifications/General_Instructions.aspx. Accessed May 1, 2018.
320. https://www.escardio.org/Education/Career-Development/Certification/Adult-Transoesophageal-Echo. Accessed May 1, 2018.
321. Diaz-Gomez JL, Frankel HL, Hernandez A. National certification in critical care echocardiography: its time has come. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(11):1801–1804.

38

Implantable Cardiac Pulse Generators: Pacemakers and Cardioverter-Defibrillators

AMAN MAHAJAN and JACQUES PRINCE NEELANKAVIL

KEY POINTS[a]

- Identify the type of cardiovascular implantable electronic device (CIED) (pacemaker, transvenous defibrillator, subcutaneous defibrillator), as well as the generator manufacturer and model of the CIED.
- Contact the physician or clinic managing the patient's CIED in the preoperative period to obtain appropriate records and a perioperative recommendation (Heart Rhythm Society [HRS]).
- Obtain a copy of this interrogation and the perioperative recommendation from the CIED physician (HRS). Ensure that the implantable cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD) treatment settings are appropriate and that the CIED will pace the heart.
- Consider replacing any CIED near its elective replacement period in a patient scheduled to undergo either a major surgical procedure or a surgical procedure where monopolar electrosurgery will be used within 15 cm of the generator.
- Determine the patient's underlying rate and rhythm to determine the need for backup (external) pacing support.
- Ensure that all magnet behavior (pacing, suspension of shock therapy) is appropriate if magnet use is planned.
- Program minute ventilation rate responsiveness "off," if present.
- Consider disabling all rate enhancements to prevent misinterpretation of cardiac rhythm.
- Consider increasing the lower rate limit to provide optimal oxygen delivery for major procedures.
- If electromagnetic interference is likely, (1) disable antitachycardia therapy if a defibrillator is present and (2) consider asynchronous pacing for some pacing-dependent patients. Magnet application may be acceptable for some ICDs (disable antitachycardia therapy) or pacemakers (provide asynchronous pacing). Asynchronous pacing from an ICD always requires reprogramming.
- Monitor cardiac rhythm with the pulse oximeter (plethysmography) or arterial waveform analysis.
- Use a bipolar electrosurgical unit (ESU), if possible; if not possible, then pure "cut" electrosurgery is better than "blend" or "coag," and ESU should be applied in short bursts (<4 seconds) separated by at least 2 seconds.
- Place the ESU dispersive electrode in such a way to prevent electricity from crossing the generator-heart circuit.
- If the ESU causes ventricular oversensing with pacing quiescence or atrial oversensing with inappropriate ventricular pacing, limit the effect by using short ESU bursts, relocating the dispersive electrode, or placing a magnet over the pacemaker (not indicated for ICDs).
- Some patients require postoperative interrogation, especially if preoperative reprogramming took place. For "low-risk cases," HRS (but not ASA) states that this interrogation can take place in an ambulatory setting up to 1 month postoperatively. Some rate enhancements can be reinitiated, and a determination of optimum heart rate and pacing parameters should be made. Any patient with disabled antitachycardia therapy must be monitored until the antitachycardia therapy is restored.

---

[a] Adapted from the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) *Practice Advisory* (2005, revised 2011) and the Heart Rhythm Society (HRS), formerly the North American Society of Pacing and Electrophysiology (NASPE) and ASA *Consensus Statement* (2011) *for Perioperative Management of Patients With a Pacemaker or Defibrillator.*

Introduction

Cardiac implantable electronic devices (CIEDs) refer to a permanently implanted cardiac pacemaker, an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD), or a cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT) device. Evolving technology for CIEDs and their widespread use for bradyarrhythmias, tachyarrhythmias, and congestive heart failure management have made the perioperative management of these devices critical for anesthesiologists. It is estimated that more than 3 million people in the United States have a pacemaker and more than 300,000 people have an ICD.[1,2] With approximately 1 million patients worldwide receiving a pacemaker or ICD every year, patients with CIEDs are a growing population in the perioperative arena. The prevalence of cardiovascular disease in an aging population is an important driver for the increased utilization of CIEDs.

Historically, there was little guidance for anesthesiologists caring for patients with CIEDs because of the conflicting consensus statements regarding the perioperative management of CIEDs. In 2011, the Heart Rhythm Society (HRS)/American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) published an Expert Consensus Statement on the perioperative management of patients with CIEDs. This statement was in collaboration with the American Heart Association (AHA) and the Society of Thoracic Surgeons (STS).[3] This article provides information and a guided team approach to best manage this patient population, and it has become an important piece of literature for anesthesiologists. In this chapter, we will review basic CIED function, the perioperative management of these devices, and emerging technology of CIEDs.

Basic Cardiac Implantable Electronic Device Function

PACEMAKERS

Pacemakers are devices placed for bradyarrhythmias, and they remain the only effective treatment for ameliorating symptomatic bradycardia due to sinus node dysfunction (e.g., sick sinus syndrome) or a failure of impulse propagation (e.g., complete heart block). Advances in technology and understanding of cardiac conduction physiology have led to the development of more physiologic pacing. Pacemakers have become sophisticated at maintaining the normal atrial-ventricular activation over various heart rate ranges, varying the heart rate in response to metabolic demands, and preserving natural ventricular activation. Pacemakers have many additional features that correspond to the changing needs of patients throughout the day, including rate responsiveness to increase pacing during times of increased physical exertion and sleep functions to decrease pacing rate during times of rest. Standard pacemakers have either one or two (atrial and ventricular) leads. A patient is considered to be pacemaker dependent if they suffer significant symptoms or even cardiac arrest upon the cessation of pacing.[4,5]

The dual chamber pacemakers are capable of pacing and sensing in both the ventricle and the atrium. Such capability permits the pacemaker to ensure not only an adequate ventricular rate, but to preserve the atrial contraction before each ventricular contraction. These pacemakers guarantee a minimum atrial rate and also ensure that a ventricular contraction occurs within a specified amount of time after each atrial contraction. Limitations on ventricular rate are usually built in the circuitry and are programmable. Most pacemakers have the capability of varying the pacing rate. In the rate adaptive mode, the pacemakers sense the patient's level of activity and accordingly adjust the pacing rate using sensors that are typically piezoelectric and detect body motion transmitted from underlying muscles. Another method of determining the presence of physical activity utilizes detection of the respiratory rate and/or volume using bioimpedance sensors.

All pacemakers generate a pulse of current to depolarize a small region of the myocardium; the wave then spontaneously spreads to the rest of the myocardium. The pacing capture threshold is the minimum electrical energy needed to consistently capture the heart outside of the refractory period and is determined by (1) the intrinsic excitability of the myocardium, (2) the current density at the electrode-tissue interface, and (3) the duration of the electric pulse.

The North American Society of Pacing and Electrophysiology (NASPE) and the British Pacing and Electrophysiology Group (BPEG) initially published a generic pacemaker code (NBG code) in 1987. In 2002 the NBG code was subsequently revised (Table 38.1).[6] Common perioperative pacing modes include dual chamber, adaptive-rate pacing (DDDR), dual chamber pacing without atrium synchronous ventricular pacing (DDIR), and dual chamber asynchronous pacing with no rate modulation or multisite pacing (DOO).

1. DDDR pacing defines a pacemaker programmed to pace the atrium and/or ventricle, sense the atrium and/or ventricle, inhibit or trigger pacing output in response to a sensed event, and have a rate responsive sensor that is able to alter paced rates due to changes in perceived metabolic demand. DDDR is a very common program configuration for patients with sick sinus syndrome and/or heart block.

TABLE 38.1 2002 NASPE/BPEG Generic Code for Antibradycardic Pacing

Position	I	II	III	IV	V
Description	Chamber Paced	Chamber Sensed	Response to Sensing	Rate Modulation	Multisite Pacing
Possible designations	D = Dual (A+V) A = Atrium V = Ventricle O = None	D = Dual (A+V) A = Atrium V = Ventricle O = None	D = Dual (T+I) T = Triggered I = Inhibited O = None	R = rate modulation O = None	D = Dual (A+V) A = Atrium V = Ventricle O = None

2. DDIR is a common pacing mode for patients with supraventricular tachyarrhythmias (SVTs). If a patient is set to DDD, the ventricle response depends on the atrial rate. During SVT in DDD mode, rapid ventricular pacing may occur. In DDI, the pacemaker paces and senses both the atrium and ventricle; however, the device will not pace the ventricle at an identical rate if the patient has SVT. The response to a fast rate in the atrium will lead to inhibition of pacing in the ventricle—hence the *I* in the third designation. Most modern pacemakers have built-in automatic mode switching during episodes of SVT. They will switch from DDD to DDI to avoid SVT with a rapid ventricular response.
3. For some perioperative care, devices will be placed in an asynchronous mode like DOO. An asynchronous mode or nontracking mode will pace the atrium and ventricle at a set rate, regardless of the underlying rate and rhythm. This is advantageous in the perioperative environment in order to avoid the pacemaker from oversensing the monopolar electrocautery as intrinsic cardiac conduction. Asynchronous modes avoid oversensing (and under pacing) hearts that are pacemaker dependent and inhibited from pacing due to monopolar electrocautery (Table 38.2).

IMPLANTABLE CARDIOVERTER-DEFIBRILLATORS

ICDs are implanted in patients for primary or secondary prevention of cardiac arrest. Primary prevention refers to ICD placement for patients who have not had any episodes of ventricular arrhythmias but who are at risk for future events. Secondary prevention refers to ICD placement for patients who have had prior ventricular arrhythmias. There is strong evidence that ICDs implanted for primary prevention improve mortality in high-risk patients, including patients with a left ventricular ejection fraction less than 40% who are on optimal medical therapy.[7-11] For patients with ischemic and nonischemic cardiomyopathy, ICDs reduce mortality approximately 23% to 55%.[12,13] Certain groups of patients do not benefit from ICD implantation, including patients with recent myocardial infarction and patients who have received coronary artery bypass grafting.[14] In addition, many of the patients in the decisive trials for ICD placement were younger (mean or median age between 58 and 67 years for the MADIT-II, CABG-PATCH, DINAMIT), whereas many patients currently receiving ICDs are over the age of 70.[15]

ICDs have four main functions. They sense atrial or ventricular electrical activity, classify these signals to various programmed "heart rate zones," deliver tiered therapies to terminate ventricular tachycardia (VT) or fibrillation, and pace for bradycardia. All modern ICDs are pacemakers, and this has important perioperative applications. Although ICDs improve survival in many patients, unnecessary shocks are very detrimental. They are proarrhythmic, can lead to anxiety and depression, and decrease patient quality of life. Inappropriate shocks are common (30% to 50% of all shocks) as a result of inappropriate treatment of SVT, oversensing physiologic T waves, or lead fracture.[16] The discrimination between VT and SVT is critical for ICDs to avoid inappropriate therapy. There are several methods by which ICDs discriminate between SVT and VT. Single chamber ventricular ICDs utilize ventricular–ventricular timing intervals and QRS morphology. Dual chamber ICDs use atrial–atrial timing intervals and the chamber of onset. Subcutaneous ICDs assess surface electrocardiogram (ECG). The sensitivity and specificity for VT detection by QRS morphology is more than 90%.[16]

ICDs terminate ventricular arrhythmias by either antitachycardiac pacing (ATP) or defibrillation. ATP terminates reentrant VT by blocking reentry and it terminates slow VT (<188 to 200) approximately 90% of the time. ATP is desirable because it reduces inappropriate shocks and prolongs battery life. For VT that is not terminated by ATP or for ventricular fibrillation (VF), defibrillation is the treatment of choice. The energy for defibrillation may be incrementally increased or set to maximum energy for each shock.[17]

TABLE 38.2 Common Pacemaker Settings

Examples	Chamber Paced	Chamber Sensed	Response to Sensing	Rate Modulation	Multisite Pacing	Common Clinical Utilization
AAI	Atrium	Atrium	Intrinsic atrial beat inhibits atrial pacing	None	None	Sick sinus syndrome with intact atrioventricular conduction
DDDR	Both	Both	Intrinsic beat will inhibit output; atrial beat will trigger ventricular pacing if lack of intrinsic ventricular beat	Present	None	Atrioventricular block
VVIRV	Ventricle	Ventricle	Intrinsic ventricular beat will inhibit ventricular pacing	Present	Multisite ventricular pacing	Heart failure with prolonged QRS
DOO	Both	None	None	None	None	Perioperative asynchronous setting to avoid electromagnetic interference

CARDIAC RESYNCHRONIZATION THERAPY DEVICES

CRT plays an important role in the management of heart failure and is becoming a device commonly encountered by anesthesiologists because of the large prevalence of heart failure in this country. These devices are indicated in select patients with heart failure, systolic dysfunction, and a prolonged QRS. Conduction abnormalities are frequently seen in systolic heart failure, with approximately 25% to 40% of these patients having a prolonged QRS complex (>120 ms).[18] In these patients, cardiac depolarization spreads slowly through the myocardium without a healthy Purkinje conduction system, leading to intraventricular dyssynchrony. During intraventricular dyssynchrony, the left ventricular (LV) septal wall contracts earlier than the lateral wall, which leads to less efficient ejection from the left ventricle in addition to decreased diastolic filling. The goal of CRT is to restore synchronous contraction of the left ventricle and to optimize timing of LV and right ventricular (RV) ejection. This is accomplished through biventricular pacing using a standard RV lead and an LV lead placed adjacent to the lateral wall via the coronary sinus. Biventricular pacing in the right ventricle and the left ventricle leads to improved hemodynamic variables, including systolic blood pressure, stroke volume, cardiac output, and rate of rise of LV pressure (dP/dt). In contrast to pharmacologic means of improving systolic function, CRT improves cardiac performance with reductions rather than with increases in myocardial metabolic demand. In addition, CRT has been shown to improve mitral regurgitation (MR) and New York Heart Association (NYHA) function class because of reverse ventricular remodeling over time.[19] Standard indications for CRT are LV ejection fraction (LVEF) less than 35% with QRS greater than 120 ms, sinus rhythm, and NYHA class III or IV after optimal medical therapy. Left bundle branch block is the most common conduction abnormality in patients undergoing CRT. Approximately 30% of patients meeting selection criteria for CRT do not respond to biventricular pacing. Risk factors for failure to respond to CRT include ischemic cardiomyopathy, sustained VT, severe MR, and dilated LV cavity.[20] CRT has been shown to reduce mortality, heart failure symptoms, and also heart failure hospitalizations. Patients with CRT should be considered pacemaker-dependent because of the constant pacing they undergo to synchronize the ventricle.

Perioperative Considerations

PREOPERATIVE ASSESSMENT

As perioperative physicians, the preoperative assessment of patients with CIEDs is critical to safe and time-efficient care. The key to the preoperative assessment is timely communication between the anesthesia provider and the CIED team that usually manages the device programming and function. The CIED team may include a cardiologist, an electrophysiologist, and/or a physician extender such as a nurse or nurse practitioner. The CIED team needs to know various information about the surgical case and postoperative disposition in order to create an individualized care plan for the patient. The anesthesiology provider must communicate the specifics of perioperative care to the CIED team in order to ensure a proper plan specific to that patient and the surgical case. Unfortunately, there is no single prescription for CIED management that can be applied to all patients coming for surgery. In addition, it is not recommended that an industry-employed allied profession determine the perioperative plan for a particular CIED.[21]

The perioperative team must convey to the CIED team important information regarding the presence of electromagnetic interference (EMI), the likelihood of cardioversion or defibrillation, patient position, location of surgery that may damage or encroach upon the CIED leads, and postoperative disposition. The CIED team must communicate with the anesthesiology team the date of last interrogation, the type of CIED device, the indication for CIED placement, the battery life, pacemaker dependence, and magnet response. Each of these vital perioperative parameters are discussed in detail in this chapter.

The goal of a thorough preoperative evaluation between the CIED and anesthesia teams is to avoid CIED complications in the perioperative period, such as damage to the device, inability of the device to deliver pacing or shocks, lead-tissue interface damage, changes in pacing behavior, electrical reset to the backup pacing mode, or inappropriate ICD therapies. Any of the these complications can lead to poor patient outcomes, including hypotension, arrhythmias, and myocardial ischemia.

PREOPERATIVE INFORMATION TRANSFER

The ACCF/AHA/HRS 2011 guidelines emphasize that a team approach should be utilized when caring for patients with CIEDs. Patients coming for surgery with CIEDs do not need routine interrogations prior to surgery unless there has been a change in clinical presentation. For patients with a pacemaker, they should have an interrogation report within the last 12 months; patients with an ICD or CRT should have a report within the previous 6 months. The different time courses for interrogations between pacemakers and ICDs and CRT devices reflect the overall cardiovascular comorbidities of these respective patient populations. By definition, patients with ICDs and CRT devices have decreased systolic function and heart failure, and they are more likely to have clinical decompensation compared to patients with isolated pacemakers. Worsening cardiovascular function might negatively impact CIED performance. The preoperative evaluation begins with general considerations, such as establishing whether a patient has a CIED and defining the type of device. A focused history and physical, including rhythm strips and ECGs, can usually answer important basic questions about the patient’s CIED. After these are completed, it is important to define the type of the device to be used. If the patient has been seen by the CIED team, they will leave a detailed note.

Within the interrogation report, it is important to note the type of device. Patients with pacemakers have different clinical risk profiles compared with those with ICDs and CRTs. In addition, the goals of perioperative management for these devices are different. Most pacemakers encourage intrinsic cardiac conduction because this maintains atrial–ventricular synchrony, LV-RV synchrony, and septal

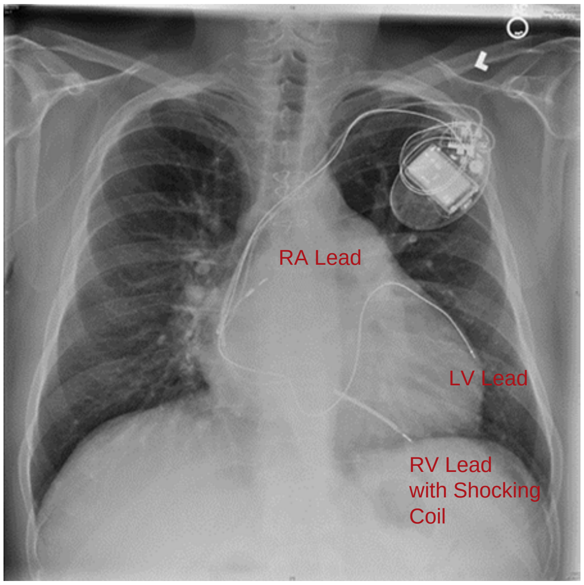


Fig. 38.1 Chest radiograph: the pulse generator is located in the left deltopectoral groove. There are three leads visualized: a lead in the right atrium *(RA)*, a lead in the left ventricle *(LV)* via the coronary sinus, and a lead in the right ventricle *(RV)*. The RV lead has a thicker diameter toward the tip, indicating it is an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator lead.

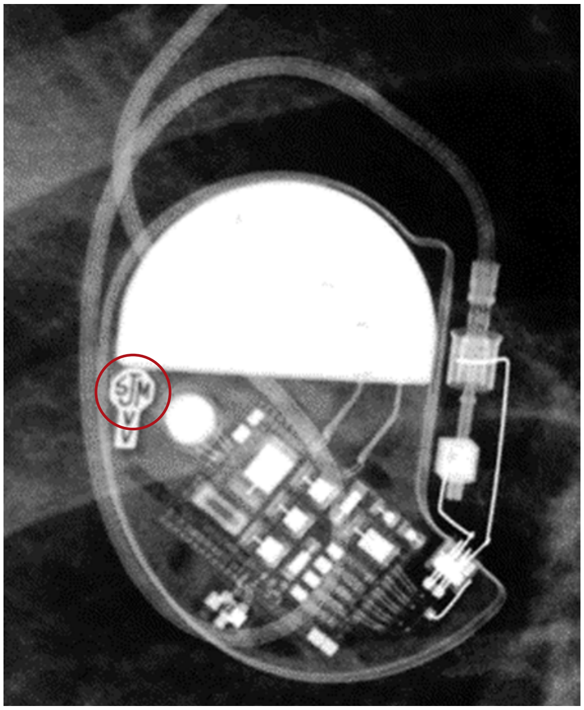


Fig. 38.2 Chest radiograph of the cardiovascular implantable electronic device generator. The letter designation on the generator allows the physician to identify this manufacturer as St. Jude Medical.

LV–lateral LV synchrony. Although DDD pacing of both atrium and ventricle in a dual-chamber pacemaker maintains atrioventricular (AV) synchrony, it creates RV-LV dyssynchrony and LV-LV dyssynchrony because pacing begins in the right ventricle and crosses the septum before activating the LV lateral wall. Preserved synchrony optimizes stroke volume, which is desirable during the perioperative environment. Therefore, in the perioperative environment, it is advantageous to maintain intrinsic cardiac conduction as much as possible if the surgical procedure and use of EMI permits. In contrast, CRT devices attempt to ensure pacing 100% of the time in order to optimize stroke volume.

The manufacturer and model should be noted, along with the indication for placement of the CIED, in order to troubleshoot problems. Theoretically all patients with CIEDs should carry identification cards that identify the type of CIED, the manufacturer, the model, and date of implantation. In practice, many patients do not carry their CIED cards, and it is left to the anesthesia provider to identify these parameters. There are several methods for obtaining this information. Frequently an interrogation note from the CIED team will identify all these parameters. Occasionally, patients present for elective surgery without CIED team communication. In this subset of patients, there are several options. One option for identifying the type of device and manufacturer is the use of chest radiographs (Fig. 38.1). Chest radiographs can identify pacemakers versus ICDs, due to the increased thickness of the shocking coil in ICDs. Chest radiographs can also identify CRT devices due to the lead in the coronary sinus. With some training, the manufacturer can also be identified via chest radiograph (Fig. 38.2). In situations where the patient does not have his or her card, or there is no CIED note and there is no chest radiograph available or it cannot be interpreted, then contact with the CIED manufacturers can be initiated, since they all keep clinical records of their patients. Communicating directly with the manufacturer can disclose information about the type of CIED, date of implantation, and original settings. Unfortunately, current information about pacemaker dependence and battery life is not usually available by phone.

Battery longevity is important to consider as an anesthesia provider. Three months of battery duration is reasonable in the perioperative period. This time point is chosen because battery life depends on the amount of pacing and the number of shocks delivered for pacemakers and ICDs, respectively. The burden of pacing in the perioperative period may be very different than the patient's normal requirements. Sinoatrial (SA) and AV nodal suppressing agents such as opioids, beta-blockers, and calcium channel blockers administered in the hospital may increase pacing requirements; therefore it is prudent to have several months of battery life remaining. In addition, there may be unexpected postoperative complications leading to the increased duration of hospitalization. If a patient is presenting for elective surgery with a diminished battery life, the generator should be replaced prior to the surgery.

It is important to establish if the patient is pacemaker-dependent, which is defined as the absence of a perfusing rhythm without pacing. In order to establish pacemaker dependence, a history and chart review may identify an episode of bradyarrhythmia leading to syncope. In addition, for patients with refractory SVT, they will occasionally have an AV nodal ablation. This is a therapeutic procedure that establishes complete heart block to eliminate rapid ventricular response to SVT. This patient population is pacemaker-dependent. Patients with CRT devices can be considered pacemaker-dependent even if they have a normal sinus rate and intact AV conduction due to

TABLE 38.3 Summary of Information Anesthesiology Team Should Identify Prior to Surgery

Perioperative Considerations	Comments
Last CIED interrogation	12 months for pacemakers 6 months for ICD/CRT
Type of device	Pacemaker ICD CRT Loop recorder
Manufacturer	Obtained via patient card, history, CIED note, chest radiograph, or telephone call to manufacturer
Battery life	Suggested >3 months
Pacemaker dependence	Underlying rhythm CRT devices should be paced 100%
Magnet response	Differs by manufacturer and battery life
Pacing threshold	Should be set several times higher for safety

CIED, Cardiac implantable electronic devices; *CRT*, cardiac resynchronization therapy; *ICD*, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.

the hemodynamic deterioration they suffer with dyssynchrony of the RV-LV and LV-LV. Pacemaker dependence can be established by the CIED team preoperatively. They can decrease the pacing rate in a stepwise fashion to search for intrinsic electrical activity. If no intrinsic rate is present around 40 to 45 beats/min or the patient develops symptoms, the patient may be considered pacemaker-dependent. Some patients who are not pacemaker-dependent may become pacemaker-dependent in the perioperative period due to SA and AV nodal blocking agents; therefore, it is important to be prepared to address this clinical scenario. If the patient is deemed to be pacemaker-dependent, a secondary method for pacing the patient should be considered in the event of a pacemaker failure. Alternative methods of pacing patients intraoperatively include transesophageal pacing, transcutaneous pacing, or transvenous pacing through a pacing pulmonary artery catheter or through a temporary transvenous pacing wire. Transesophageal pacing activates the left atrium, which is in close proximity to the esophagus, so this type of pacing depends on intact AV node conduction. It will not work for heart block. Transcutaneous pacing depends on correct pad position and high pacing outputs, which can be very uncomfortable in a nonsedated patient. Transvenous pacing and pacing pulmonary artery catheters can be time consuming, and they are not ideal choices for emergent pacing. Whatever method is chosen, it is important to have the necessary equipment and support organized and available prior to beginning the procedure. A summary of important information for the anesthesia team to identify is summarized in Table 38.3.

ELECTROMAGNETIC INTERFERENCE

EMI in the preoperative setting can interfere with the functioning of both pacemakers and ICDs.[22,23] EMI may inhibit pacing, damage the lead-tissue interface, damage the pulse generator, and/or trigger an electric reset mode, particularly if the source of EMI is within 6 inches (15 cm) of the CIED generator.[24] Although there are several potential sources of EMI, the most commonly encountered source is monopolar electrocautery. Monopolar electrocautery is the most frequently used type of electrocautery because it has both cutting as well as coagulation capabilities. Monopolar electrocautery creates a current that passes from the probe to the tissue and returns through the patient to the return pad to create an electrical circuit. Bipolar electrocautery is usually not a concern[25]; the electrical current field is small and limited to the two poles at the end of the electrode. Unfortunately, bipolar is less frequently used compared with monopolar electrocautery and is usually reserved for neurosurgery, ophthalmology, and head and neck procedures. Bipolar electrocautery does not cause EMI of CIEDs unless it is applied directly to a CIED, and there are minimal clinical circumstances where that would be indicated. The vast majority of electrocautery encountered in the operating suite is monopolar due to its versatility.

Modern CIEDs have evolved to produce better shielding from EMI, and adverse events from EMI are much less common with improvements in CIED technology.[24-27] Shielding reduces the potential to induce oversensing in the CIED. Oversensing in a pacemaker means the pacemaker "sees" the EMI-generated artifacts as intrinsic cardiac electrical activity and therefore does not initiate a paced rhythm. Such failure to initiate a paced rhythm (inhibition of the pacemaker) can compromise hemodynamics in a pacemaker-dependent patient. If oversensing occurs in an ICD, EMI may be misinterpreted by the ICD as a malignant tachyarrhythmia, which may cause the patient to receive an inappropriate shock. It is important to note that it is not only the location of monopolar electrocautery that is critical to proper CIED function, but it is also the location of the grounding pad that is critical to avoid CIED malfunction. The HRS/ASA Expert Consensus Statement suggests that due to the decreased likelihood of EMI-related interference seen when surgery is below the umbilicus, the patient should proceed to surgery with no magnet application to the device or reprogramming. This assumes that the monopolar electrocautery grounding pad or return pad is also placed below the level of the umbilicus. If current is traveling above the level of the umbilicus, there is significant risk of EMI of the CIED. For procedures above the umbilicus with no EMI from the surgical procedure, the patient may also proceed for surgery without routine magnet use or device reprogramming. For all patients presenting for surgery with CIEDs, there should be a magnet available with the magnet function of the device known in case of a change in the surgical plan or unexpected EMI. Magnet function is discussed in the next section.

MAGNETS

Magnet applications for CIEDs were originally intended to investigate battery life of the device, and they were not created for perioperative management of CIEDs, although that is probably their most common utilization at this time. When magnets are applied to the pacemaker, the effect on the device depends on the manufacturer, in addition to the battery life. For example, when a magnet is applied to a Medtronic pacemaker, the device will pace asynchronously. If the Medtronic device is a single-chamber pacemaker, it will pace that single chamber asynchronously. If the Medtronic device is a dual-chamber pacemaker, it will pace both chambers asynchronously. However, the rate at which the pacemaker will pace depends on battery life. If the Medtronic pacemaker has adequate battery life, the device will pace at 85 beats/min. However, if the battery life is at the elective replacement interval, the device will pace at 65 beats/min. The change in rate is binary, meaning that the rate goes from 85 to 65 beats/min when the battery enters its elective replacement interval. Different manufacturers have difference responses to magnet application. St. Jude pacemakers will pace asynchronously during magnet application if the magnet response is turned on. It is important to note that magnet application is programmable—that is, with some devices, magnet application will have no effect. The effect of magnet response is an important piece of information to obtain from the CIED team. For a St. Jude pacemaker with magnet response programmed on, magnet application will program the device to pace asynchronously at a rate of 100 beats/min if the battery life is normal or a rate of 85 beats/min if the device is at its battery elective replacement interval. Unlike Medtronic devices, the rate change from 100 to 85 beats/min is not binary; it is a gradual reduction from 100 to 85 beats/min.[3]

Magnets continue to be very popular in everyday practice for the management of CIEDs. This is a relatively easy way to render the pacemaker asynchronous, with the added benefit of the device reverting back to its programmed settings once the magnet is removed. Importantly, the asynchronous rate provided by magnet placement may not be appropriate for the patient for a particular procedure. At times, patients require a higher heart rate in order to increase tissue oxygen delivery. To the contrary, most magnet rates are typically around 90 beats/min, which may not be appropriate for a large subset of patients—that is, those with aortic stenosis or coronary artery disease. These variables make it important to confirm the magnet effect on each individual patient's device before the procedure, and to have an individualized plan for each patient.

The choice of reprogramming versus magnet application largely depends on the type of surgery, patient position, accessibility of a programmer, and knowledge of magnet function of a particular patient's device. It should be emphasized that a magnet has different effects when applied to a pacemaker or to an ICD. In a majority of pacemakers, magnet application induces an asynchronous mode. Magnet application to an ICD inhibits tachyarrhythmia detection, thus preventing therapy (i.e., delivery of shocks). However, it does *not* change the mode of the underlying pacemaker. Therefore, a magnet placed over an ICD will not induce asynchronous mode in the underlying pacemaker. For patients with an ICD who are pacemaker dependent, reprogramming is the preferred option if EMI is a significant concern. One advantage of reprogramming are that if the patient is not in the supine position, it may be difficult to maintain the magnet in a location over the device to render it asynchronous. This is particularly true in the prone position. If the patient has a normal sinus rate, adequate chronotropy, and intact AV node conduction, magnet application may compete with the patient's own heart rate if surgical stimulation increases the sinus rate. This can lead to significant arrhythmias caused by depolarization of the ventricle by the pacemaker during a refractory period, due to intrinsic electrical activity. The principal disadvantage of reprogramming versus magnet application is that the changes made with the programmer are not as easily reversed. If the patient develops an arrhythmia or has an increased sinus rate, it may be difficult to reprogram the device intraoperatively, depending on programmer availability and CIED team presence. The other disadvantage of reprogramming a CIED compared with magnet application involves the human factor. Failure to re-enable tachyarrhythmia therapy following surgery can lead to catastrophic consequences for patients with CIEDs. It is important to understand the risks and benefits of magnet application versus reprogramming, and create a perioperative plan that suits the patient.

ELECTROMAGNETIC INTERFERENCE DAMAGE TO THE CARDIAC IMPLANTABLE ELECTRONIC DEVICE

EMI is an important consideration for anesthesiology providers because of oversensing. It is uncommon for modern CIEDs to be damaged by EMI from the operative environment; however, some particular complications will be discussed. Monopolar electrocautery that is done in very close proximity to the pulse generator may directly damage the myocardium at the interface with the CIED lead. This can trigger arrhythmias or loss of pacing capture due to increases in pacing thresholds.[28] Therefore, it is recommended that bipolar electrocautery should be used when electrocautery is performed in close proximity to the pulse generator. Another complication that may happen due to ionizing radiation is device reset.[29,30] It is uncommon for even monopolar electrocautery to cause reset. In the perioperative setting, this very rarely occurs when an energy surge directly contacts the pulse generator, resulting in a major hardware/software failure. The reset mode is unique to each manufacturer and serves as a safety backup in the case of catastrophic failure. Unfortunately, magnet application and device reprogramming will not prevent electrical reset. The best way to prevent reset is to ensure that EMI is as far as possible from the pulse generator (ideally >15 cm). If a patient's CIED does go into reset mode, the pacemaker will commonly revert to a ventricular demand pacing (VVI) mode between 65 and 70 beats/min. Magnet response in reset mode will also vary among manufacturers. ICDs will have a wide range of rate cutoffs for VT detection in the reset mode. ICD pacing will be typically in a VVI mode again around 65 to 70 beats/min. Electrical reset should prompt consultation with a CIED team to ensure proper device functionality.

INTRAOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

The intraoperative management of CIEDs naturally evolves from a thoughtful preoperative plan. A pathway for management of CIEDs during nonemergent surgery is outlined in Fig. 38.3. Pacemaker patients who are pacemaker-dependent and who are having surgery with monopolar electrocautery within 15 cm of the generator should have their

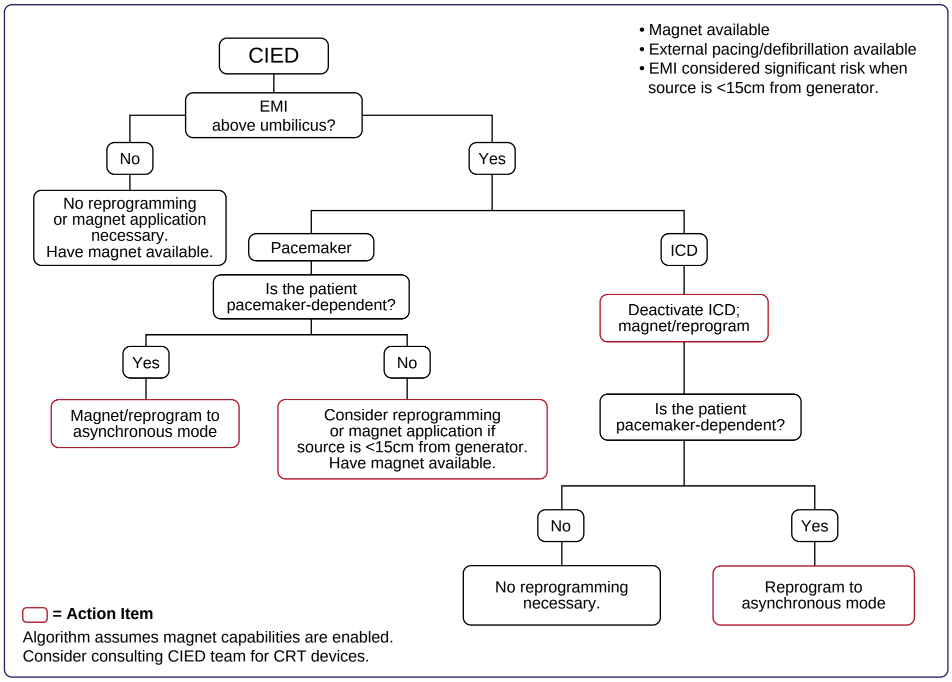

CIED
EMI above umbilicus?
No
Yes
No reprogramming or magnet application necessary. Have magnet available.
Pacemaker
ICD
Is the patient pacemaker-dependent?
Yes
No
Magnet/reprogram to asynchronous mode
Consider reprogramming or magnet application if source is <15cm from generator. Have magnet available.
Deactivate ICD; magnet/reprogram
Is the patient pacemaker-dependent?
No
Yes
No reprogramming necessary.
Reprogram to asynchronous mode
• Magnet available
• External pacing/defibrillation available
• EMI considered significant risk when source is <15cm from generator.
= Action Item
Algorithm assumes magnet capabilities are enabled.
Consider consulting CIED team for CRT devices.

Fig. 38.3 Cardiovascular Implantable Electronic Device pathway for nonemergent surgery. *CIED*, Cardiac implantable electronic devices; *CRT*, cardiac resynchronization therapy; *ICD*, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator; *EMI*, electromagnetic interference. Thompson A, Neelankavil JP, Mahajan A. Current Anesthesiology Reports, 2013, Vol 3, Issue 3, 139–143. (Courtesy Dr. Annemarie Thompson.)

device reprogrammed to avoid pacemaker oversensing of electrocautery as intrinsic cardiac function. This could lead to underpacing and hemodynamic collapse in pacemaker-dependent patients. For patients in the supine position with known magnet function who have magnet rates appropriate for their concurrent comorbidities, placement of a magnet over a pacemaker is a reasonable approach for patients at risk for monopolar electrocautery oversensing. Whether the prescription plan is reprogramming or magnet application, the rate responsive features of the device should be disabled. The rate response is the fourth letter in the 2002 NAPSE guidelines and refers to increasing the heart rate above the lower rate limit when the patient has increased metabolic demand (e.g., exercise). Rate response sensors commonly use minute ventilation or thoracic impedance to increase rate, and both may be affected intraoperatively. Patients on mechanical ventilation will see increases in heart rate if the minute ventilation is increased with these sensors. For patients with thoracic impedance sensors, electrocautery may lead to increases in heart rate. Although these increases in heart rate may be transient, they may be detrimental for patients in whom strict heart rate control is optimal. In addition, these changes in heart rate may be distracting for the anesthesia provider, who may perceive the heart rate fluctuations as CIED malfunction. Patients with ICDs should have their tachyarrhythmia therapies disabled to avoid inappropriate shocks from monopolar cautery oversensing by either reprogramming or magnet application if EMI (or the return pad) is used above the umbilicus. Patients with ICDs who are pacemaker dependent with close EMI to the generator are a special group that must have their devices reprogrammed. Magnet application is not a reasonable strategy in these patients, since the magnet will not make the pacemaker asynchronous. Patients who have CRT devices are another special classification of patients presenting for surgery. Again, most dual-chamber pacemakers are programmed to minimize RV pacing. CRT devices are programmed to achieve ventricular pacing 100% of the time to improve cardiac output, systolic, and diastolic function. Even though CRT devices are pacing the ventricle 100% of the time, they will not have the characteristic wide complex QRS found in RV pacing alone. Programming the CRT device to an asynchronous mode above the intrinsic rate is a reasonable intraoperative management strategy. Since almost all CRT devices are ICDs, magnet application to the device will deactivate tachyarrhythmia therapy but will not make the CRT device asynchronous. It is critical to reprogram CRT devices to an asynchronous mode if EMI is used above the umbilicus. Brief periods of monopolar electrocautery may be tolerated in patients with CRT devices who have a reasonable sinus rate and normal conduction if the device is not reprogrammed. However, prolonged use of monopolar electrocautery will lead to hemodynamic deterioration due to a loss of synchrony between the RV and LV and the LV septal and lateral walls.

Intraoperative monitoring mirrors standard American Society of Anesthesiology (ASA) guidelines. Plethysmographic pulse oximetry is invaluable for patients with CIEDs undergoing surgery because it is the best clinical indicator that the pacemaker is capturing and creating cardiac output. With monopolar electrocautery, monitoring for pacemaker capture with ECG can be challenging. Due to ECG technology, the ECG rate will sometimes double count the heart rate due to counting of a pacemaker spike and the resulting QRS complex. Double counting of the heart rate may lead to erroneous patient management. In addition, pacemaker spikes may be difficult to see due to their low voltage. Pacemaker spikes may be accentuated with various patient monitors; however, they may inaccurately identify a pacemaker spike. It is important to ensure that each pacemaker spike is capturing the myocardium. Ensuring the paced rate of the device is the same as the pulse oximetry rate ensures proper capture of the myocardium and appropriate cardiac output. While arterial lines accurately display pacemaker capture and cardiac output, patients with CIEDs do not need routine arterial line placement unless patient acuity or surgical complexity deems it necessary.

If a patient requires central venous access or a pulmonary artery catheter, it is important to be mindful of CIED leads placed within 1 to 2 months prior to the planned surgical procedure. The risk for dislodging new leads in the right atrium and right ventricle is higher until the leads become fixed within the myocardium. Patients with CRT devices have a coronary sinus lead that can be more easily dislodged when compared with a chamber lead, since there is no mechanism of lead fixation in the coronary sinus.

POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

Patients with CIEDs should be appropriately monitored in a clinical environment that is tailored to their postoperative risk. There does not need to be escalation of postoperative disposition based on the presence of a CIED alone. The patient acuity and operative course should be the major drivers for postoperative disposition. For example, patients presenting for outpatient surgery require routine postoperative continuous monitoring until they meet discharge criteria. Most patients with CIEDs do not require routine interrogation following surgery; however, there are notable exceptions. It is reasonable to evaluate patients with CIEDs within 1 month of their surgery on an outpatient basis.[3] For some patients, they must have their device interrogated prior to leaving a monitored setting, whether that is the postanesthesia care unit or a monitored bed. Patients who have had their tachyarrhythmia therapy disabled for surgery must have their device reprogrammed and their tachyarrhythmia therapy re-enabled prior to leaving a monitored setting. In addition, patients who have undergone hemodynamically significant procedures with large volume shifts should have their device interrogated to ensure proper sensing and capture. Patients receiving cardioversion, defibrillation, and therapeutic radiation are at risk for device reset, and should have interrogations as well in the immediate postoperative period.[3] Patients who fall into high-risk categories are more likely to have a change in CIED functionality. Part of the preoperative communication between the CIED team and the anesthesia team should address the need for CIED interrogation postoperatively. Identifying patients who need CIED interrogation prior to discharge avoids lapses in communication in the postoperative period.

EMERGENCY PROTOCOL

Patients with CIEDs may present for urgent or emergent surgery. In these instances, the bidirectional communication between the CIED and anesthesiology teams may not be feasible. When these clinical scenarios present themselves, it is important for the anesthesiology team to identify several components of the CIED in a time efficient manner (Table 38.4). As described previously, the anesthesiology team can get this information from the patient's CIED wallet card, medical records, or CIED team note, or from the chest radiograph. If these methods do not provide pertinent information, the anesthesiology team should call the device manufacturer to obtain basic information regarding the type of device and date of implantation (Table 38.5).

TABLE 38.4 Cardiovascular Implantable Electronic Device Information for Emergency Surgery

Important Information to Obtain for Emergency Surgery	How to Obtain Information
Type of device	Wallet card Medical record Chest radiograph Manufacturer 1-800 number Device programmer
Pacemaker dependence	Medical record Electrocardiogram Rhythm strip Device programmer
Risk of electromagnetic interference	Discussion with surgeon
Magnet function	Medical record Device programmer

TABLE 38.5 Manufacturer Contact Information

Manufacturer	Phone Number
Medtronic	1-800-633-8766
St. Jude	1-800-722-3423
Boston Scientific	1-800-227-3422
Biotronik	1-800-547-0394

During an emergency procedure, it is important to establish whether the patient is pacemaker dependent. In the absence of a CIED note, a 12-lead ECG or rhythm strip can be examined to look for pacemaker spikes. If the majority of QRS complexes are preceded by a pacing spike, the patient should be treated as pacemaker dependent. The risk of EMI to the CIED should be established using the criteria previously presented, including the use of monopolar versus bipolar electrocautery, in addition to the location of EMI and the return pad. For pacemaker patients who are pacemaker dependent, it is reasonable to use a magnet for surgeries requiring EMI above the umbilicus. However, it is important to remember that a minority of pacemakers will have the magnet function turned off. Therefore, the anesthesiologist should monitor the pulse oximeter to ensure that there is no oversensing of the EMI leading to a lack of pacing in pacemaker-dependent patients, even when the magnet is applied to the device. For patients who are not pacemaker dependent, it is reasonable to have a magnet available in case the patient requires asynchronous pacing. For patients with ICDs, defibrillator pads should be placed on the patient during emergency procedures. Magnet application should be applied for cases with EMI above the level of the umbilicus. Since this will not render the pacemaker asynchronous, if monopolar EMI is used above the umbilicus, it is critical for the surgeon to use short bursts (<5 seconds) of monopolar electrocautery to avoid pacemaker

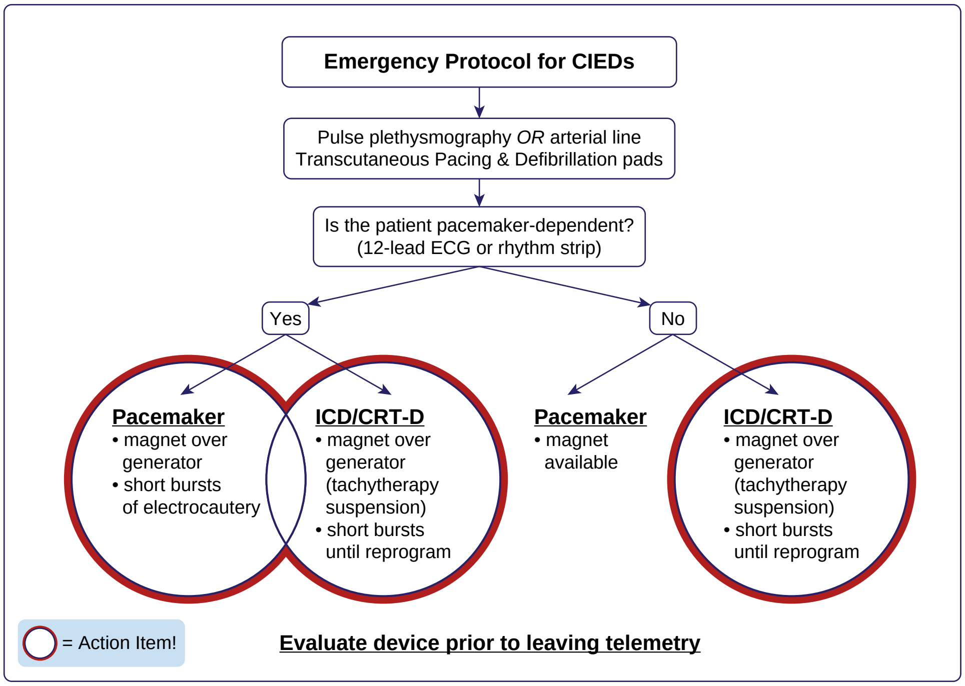

Emergency Protocol for CIEDs
Pulse plethysmography OR arterial line
Transcutaneous Pacing & Defibrillation pads
Is the patient pacemaker-dependent?
(12-lead ECG or rhythm strip)
Yes
No
Pacemaker
• magnet over generator
• short bursts of electrocautery
ICD/CRT-D
• magnet over generator (tachytherapy suspension)
• short bursts until reprogram
Pacemaker
• magnet available
ICD/CRT-D
• magnet over generator (tachytherapy suspension)
• short bursts until reprogram
○ = Action Item!
Evaluate device prior to leaving telemetry

Fig. 38.4 Cardiac implantable electronic device *(CIED)* pathway for emergency surgery. *CRT*, Cardiac resynchronization therapy; *ECG*, electrocardiogram; *ICD*, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator. (Courtesy Dr. Annemarie Thompson.)

oversensing. Interrogation of the CIED under the direction of a physician knowledgeable in the function of these devices should be done as soon as possible. The emergency protocol is described in the HRS/ASA Expert Consensus Statement. A suggested emergency algorithm is shown in Fig. 38.4.

It may be challenging for anesthesiology providers to feel comfortable reprogramming CIEDs in the perioperative environment. Having a structured CIED team that is willing to work with anesthesiologists is a great way to learn how to reprogram devices. Even if one does not feel comfortable reprogramming CIEDs in the perioperative environment, it may be very important for the anesthesiologist to know how to turn on a programmer to obtain important information about a device during an emergency procedure. Interrogating a device and simply reading the home screen can provide critical information regarding the type of device (pacemaker, ICD, CRT), the pacemaker mode, histograms of percentage of time the patient is being paced, battery life, and lead impedance. This is relatively easy to do if one has access to a device programmer in one's institution. Sample images of home screens are shown in Fig. 38.5.

SPECIFIC SURGICAL PROCEDURES

The general perioperative recommendations as outlined before cover the majority of clinical scenarios encountered by anesthesia providers caring for patients with CIEDs. However, there are specific surgical procedures that convey increased risk for CIED malfunction or damage due to high therapeutic energy transfer to the CIED.

Cardioversion

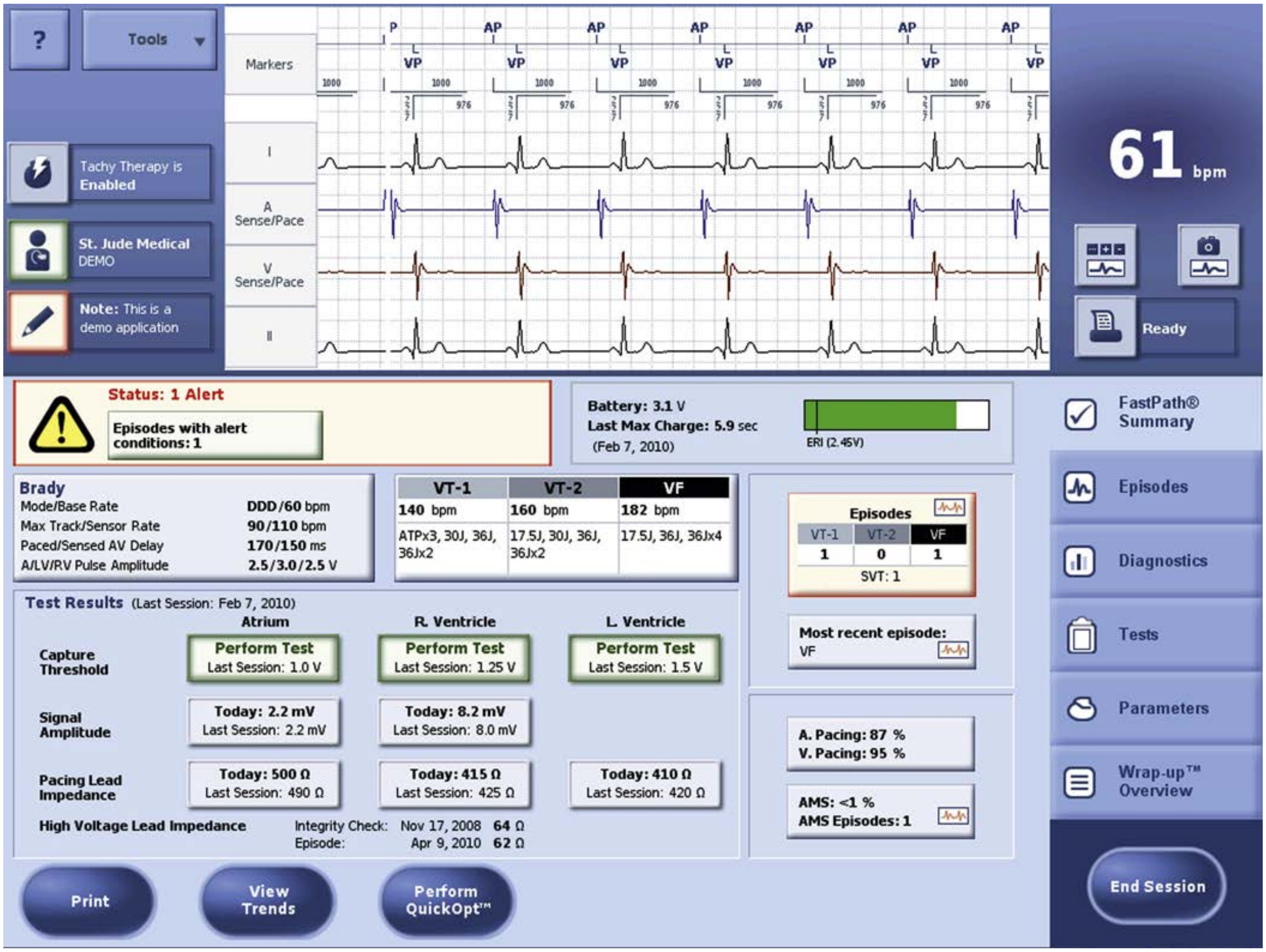
External cardioversion may occur as a planned procedure or as part of advanced cardiovascular life support (ACLS) to treat unstable arrhythmias. Historically, there was increased concern for CIED function because of the use of unipolar leads. With these older leads, the current traveled from the generator (one pole) to the tip of the lead (second pole). There were reports of loss of capture and electrical reset when the cardioversion pads were placed in an anterior and lateral orientation.[31,32] With newer leads, which have a bipolar configuration (both poles located in the tip of the lead), it is uncommon for cardioversion to affect CIED function. In a study with 44 patients, no CIED malfunction was observed during cardioversion with an anterior–posterior pad orientation with the anterior pad more than 8 cm from the CIED generator.[33]

Radiofrequency Ablation

Many patients with CIEDs present to the electrophysiology laboratory for electrophysiology studies and catheter ablation. It is uncommon to have CIED malfunction with radiofrequency ablation (RFA); however, if complications occur, they involve electrical reset, oversensing, and undersensing due to energy delivery near CIEDs. Recommendations include avoiding direct contact between the ablation catheter and the pulse generator and leads, and keeping the path of radiofrequency current (electrode tip to current return pad) as far away from the pulse generator and leads as possible.[34,35]

Lithotripsy

Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy is used for disintegrating renal calculi. From the initial use of lithotripsy, there was theoretical concern that the shockwaves and EMI would damage CIEDs; therefore, CIED presence was originally a contraindication to lithotripsy. As technology has evolved, current lithotripsy requires less energy transfer to the patient with improved focus of energy, as well to the renal calculi. Guidelines from Canada recommend a



Tachy Therapy is Enabled

St. Jude Medical DEMO

Note: This is a demo application

Status: 1 Alert

Episodes with alert conditions: 1

Battery: 3.1 V
Last Max Charge: 5.9 sec
(Feb 7, 2010)
ERI (2.45V)

Brady

Mode/Base Rate	DDD/60 bpm
Max Track/Sensor Rate	90/110 bpm
Paced/Sensed AV Delay	170/150 ms
A/LV/RV Pulse Amplitude	2.5/3.0/2.5 V

VT-1	VT-2	VF
140 bpm	160 bpm	182 bpm
ATPx3, 30J, 36J, 36Jx2	17.5J, 30J, 36J, 36Jx2	17.5J, 36J, 36Jx4

Episodes

VT-1	VT-2	VF
1	0	1

SVT: 1

Most recent episode: VF

Test Results (Last Session: Feb 7, 2010)

	Atrium	R. Ventricle	L. Ventricle
Capture Threshold	Perform Test Last Session: 1.0 V	Perform Test Last Session: 1.25 V	Perform Test Last Session: 1.5 V
Signal Amplitude	Today: 2.2 mV Last Session: 2.2 mV	Today: 8.2 mV Last Session: 8.0 mV	
Pacing Lead Impedance	Today: 500 Ω Last Session: 490 Ω	Today: 415 Ω Last Session: 425 Ω	Today: 410 Ω Last Session: 420 Ω

High Voltage Lead Impedance
Integrity Check: Nov 17, 2008 64 Ω
Episode: Apr 9, 2010 62 Ω

A. Pacing: 87 %
V. Pacing: 95 %

AMS: <1 %
AMS Episodes: 1

Fig. 38.5 Representative image of pacemaker programmer. Battery life, pacemaker settings, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator therapy, and percentage of atrial and ventricular pacing are readily found on the home screen.

distance of 15 cm from the device to treatment area and that abdominal CIEDs are contraindicated.[36] Another study suggests that with improved technology for lithotripsy, most CIEDs do not have complications; however, if complications arise, the device should be reprogrammed immediately by a member of the CIED team.[37]

Radiation

Diagnostic radiation usually does not significantly affect CIEDs. On the other hand, therapeutic radiation can significantly affect CIED function if directed onto the pulse generator.[38-40] If radiation therapy is performed, position the device outside the field of radiation. The concern with therapeutic radiation and CIEDs is that the circuit of the CIED may be damaged directly by the radiation. Direct radiation of CIEDs should be avoided, and accumulated doses should be kept under 5 Gy.[3] In some instances, the pulse generator will require surgical relocation prior to commencing radiation.

Electroconvulsive Therapy

Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) involves direct electric current to the brain for the treatment of depression. There are no reports of direct damage to the CIED; however, the concern is pacemaker oversensing of the electric current leading to underpacing in pacemaker-dependent patients. The medical decision to use ECT should consider the duration of its application. If the therapy is going to be short (<5 seconds), it is unlikely that hemodynamically significant oversensing will occur. It is also unlikely that the patient will receive an inappropriate shock. If prolonged ECT exposure is required, the device should be placed in asynchronous pacing mode and antitachyarrhythmia function should be disabled. A discussion between the CIED team and the psychiatrist may facilitate treatment plans, since these patients usually undergo multiple treatments of ECT. ECT may lead to significant hemodynamic effects unrelated to the CIED, including sinus tachycardia from the seizure and ventricular arrhythmias. A magnet should be available for all patients undergoing ECT in the event that oversensing of myopotentials or inappropriate therapy for sinus tachycardia occurs.[3]

Endoscopy

Most upper and lower endoscopies do not use electrocautery, and for those cases, CIED management is straightforward. However, occasionally, electrocautery is used for some patients. There are case reports of inappropriate ICD therapy in these patients. When electrocautery is planned for endoscopy, the same guidelines as previously presented apply with regard to CIED team communication and the assessment of EMI risk to the CIED.

Emerging Technologies

The past couple of years have seen the advent of a new, leadless pacemaker. The impetus for the development of a leadless pacemaker stems from the fact that many pacemaker complications are related to the leads themselves, including lead fracture and infection. Currently, the Medtronic Micra is the only leadless pacemaker approved for use in the United States. The Micra is a single-chamber device placed in the right ventricle via the femoral vein. Its modes include VVIR, VVI, VOO, and OVO. Because these devices are so new, there is very little data on how to manage these patients in the perioperative period. Because of their small size, these devices do not have a magnet sensor and thus will not respond to a magnet. It is recommended that these devices be reprogrammed to VOO mode to reduce oversensing when EMI is anticipated.[41] It should be noted that these devices use the same programmer as their full-size counterparts.

A new type of ICD is now on the market, and its use continues to grow: the subcutaneous ICD (S-ICD) manufactured by Boston Scientific Inc. A driving force for the design of this pacemaker is similar to the Micra pacemaker. Transvenous systems such as the most common CIEDs on the market may be challenging in patients with difficult vascular anatomy. In addition, the removal of transvenous systems can be complicated in the setting of long-standing CIED placement, requiring a laser lead extraction. This system was initially approved in 2012 as defibrillation therapy and is being used in patients at risk for malignant ventricular arrhythmias who do not have a need for bradycardia pacing, or antitachycardia pacing to manage VT.[42] Although this device is not able to provide long-term pacing, it is capable of pacing at 50 pulses/min for 30 seconds after a defibrillatory shock, should the patient become profoundly bradycardiac posttreatment.[43]

The S-ICD consists of a pulse generator and a single subcutaneous lead. Both the pulse generator and the lead are implanted in the subcutaneous tissue and are extrathoracic.[44] Currently, the S-ICD can only be implanted in the left chest. The pulse generator is usually implanted between the anterior and midaxillary lines at the level of the sixth intercostal space. The lead is then tunneled medially from the pulse generator pocket to the xiphoid process and then superiorly along the left parasternal border.

Although different in its makeup, the S-ICD has the same response to a magnet as a traditional ICD. That is, magnet application over the pulse generator will turn off the antiarrhythmic features of the device, and removing the magnet will revert the device to its prior programmed state. A feature the S-ICD has that ensures the magnet is properly positioned is a beeping sound that indicates that arrhythmia detection and shock therapy have been suspended. If the beep is not heard with magnet application, the magnet should be repositioned over the device until a beep is elicited. Due to the location of the ICD at the midaxillary line, it is best to reprogram this device in the perioperative setting to turn off the antitachycardic function. When the device is reprogrammed, defibrillator pads should be placed on the patient.

Conclusions

Anesthesiologists should have a basic understanding of CIEDs and also the nuances of managing this subset of patients in the perioperative period. As technology continues to evolve, and as the population lives longer and indications for CIED therapy continue to grow, perioperative physicians will encounter this patient population more frequently. It should also be noted that at times, trained CIED experts (cardiologists, manufacturer representatives) are not available, making it the anesthesiologist's duty as a true perioperative physician to be able to fully care for these patients.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to recognize Dr. Marc A. Rozner for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Porkorney SD, et al. *JAMA*. 2015;313(24):2433–2440.
2. Kremers MS, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2013;10(4):e59–e65.
3. Crossley GH, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2011;8(7):1114–1154.
4. Levine PA, Isaeff DM. Follow-up management of the paced patient. In: Kusumoto FM, Goldschlager NF, eds. *Cardiac Pacing for the Clinician*. 2nd ed. New York: Springer; 2008:p647–p694.
5. Levine PA. *Cardiol J*. 2007;14:318–320.
6. Bernstein AD, et al. *J Pacing Clin Electrophys*. 2002;25.
7. Lambiase PD, Srinivasan NT. *Curr Cardiol Rep*. 2014;16:516.
8. Hernandez AF, et al. *Circ Heart Fail*. 2010;3:7–13. 21.
9. Al-Khatib SM, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311:2209–2215.
10. Mezu U, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2011;108:718–722.
11. Pokorney SD, et al. *Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol*. 2015;8:145–151.
12. Khazanie P, et al. *J Am Heart Assoc*. 2015;4(8):e002061.
13. Goldenberg I, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;122:1265–1271.
14. Hiremath S, et al. *Am J Nephrol*. 2010;32:305–310.
15. Kusumoto FM, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2017.10.052.
16. Kramer DB, et al. *Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes*. 2013;6:488–497.
17. Madhavan M, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;128:659–672.
18. Ho J, Mahajan A. *Cardiac Resynchronization Therapy*. A&A; 2010.
19. Ypenburg C, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2008;29:757–765.
20. Kanzaki H, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;44:1619–1625.
21. Lindsay BD, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2005.
22. Niehous M, Tebbenjohanns J. *Heart*. 2001;86:246–248.
23. Lee D, et al. *Urology*. 2005;66:194.
24. Wilson JH, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1991;51:225–226.
25. Bayes J. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;103:1615–1616.
26. Lamas GA, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1986;41:155–157.
27. Mangar D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;38:616–618.
28. Snow JS, et al. *J Invasive Cardiol*. 1995;7:25–32.
29. Furman S, Fisher JD. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1982;5:486–489.
30. Katzenberg CA, et al. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1982;5:156–159.
31. Levine PA, et al. *JACC*. 1983;1:1413–1422.
32. Altamura G, et al. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1995;18:1–8.
33. Manegold JC, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2007;28:1731–1738.
34. Lakkireddy D, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2005;2:1309–1316.
35. Ellenbogen KA, et al. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1996;19:1287–1295.
36. Health Canada Health Products and Food Branch. http://www.healthycanadians.gc.ca/recall-alert-rappel-avis/hc-sc/2005/14340a-eng.php.
37. Platonov M, et al. *J Endourol*. 2008;22.
38. Hayes DL, et al. *JACC*. 1987;10:782–786.
39. Brook C, Mutter M. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1988;6:591–593.
40. Adamec R, et al. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1982;5:145–150.
41. Medtronic Micra Model MC1VR01 Manual. Available at: http://manuals.medtronic.com/wcm/groups/mdtcom_sg/@emanuals/@era/@crdm/documents/documents/contrib_231758.pdf.
42. Burke MC, et al. *J Am Coll Cariol*. 2015;65:1605–1615.
43. Weiss R, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;128:944–953.
44. Lambiase PD, Srinivasan NT. *Curr Cardiol Rep*. 2014;16:516.

References

1. Porkorney SD, Miller AL, Chen AY, et al. Implantable cardioverter-defibrillator use among medicare patients with low ejection fraction after acute myocardial infarction. *JAMA*. 2015;313(24):2433–2440.
2. Kremers MS, Hammill SC, Berul CI. The National ICD Registry Report: version 2.1 including leads and pediatrics for years 2010 and 2011. *Heart Rhythm*. 2013;10(4):e59–65.
3. Crossley GH, Poole JE, Rozner MA, et al. The Heart Rhythm Society (HRS)/American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Expert Consensus Statement on the perioperative management of patients with implantable defibrillators, pacemakers, and arrhythmia monitors: facilities and patient management this document was developed as a joint project with the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA), and in collaboration with the American Heart Association (AHA), and the Society of Thoracic Surgeons (STS). *Heart Rhythm*. 2011;8(7):1114–1154.
4. Levine PA, Isaeff DM. Follow-up management of the paced patient. In: Kusumoto FM, Goldschlager NF, eds. *Cardiac Pacing for the Clinician*. 2nd ed. New York: Springer; 2008:p647–p694.
5. Levine PA. Pacemaker dependency after pacemaker implantation. *Cardiol J*. 2007;14:318–320.
6. Bernstein AD, Daubert J-C, Fletcher RD, et al. The revised NASPE/BPEG generic code for antibradycardia, adaptive-rate, and multisite pacing. *J Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 2002;25.
7. Lambiase PD, Srinivasan NT. Early experience with the subcutaneous ICD. *Curr Cardiol Rep*. 2014;16:516.
8. Hernandez AF, Fonarow GC, Hammill BG, et al. Clinical effectiveness of implantable cardioverter-defibrillators among medicare beneficiaries with heart failure. *Circ Heart Fail*. 2010;3:7–13.
9. Al-Khatib SM, Hellkamp AS, Fonarow GC, et al. Association between prophylactic implantable cardioverter-defibrillators and survival in patients with left ventricular ejection fraction between 30% and 35%. *JAMA*. 2014;311:2209–2215.
10. Mezu U, Adelstein E, Jain S, et al. Effectiveness of implantable defibrillators in octogenarians and nonagenarians for primary prevention of sudden cardiac death. *Am J Cardiol*. 2011;108: 718–722.
11. Pokorney SD, Hellkamp AS, Yancy CW, et al. Primary prevention implantable cardioverter-defibrillators in older racial and ethnic minority patients. *Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol*. 2015;8:145–151.
12. Khazanie P, Hellkamp AS, Fonarow GC, et al. Association between comorbidities and outcomes in heart failure patients with and without an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator for primary prevention. *J Am Heart Assoc*. 2015;4(8):e002061.
13. Goldenberg I, Gillespie J, Moss AJ, et al. Long-term benefit of primary prevention with an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator: an extended 8-year follow-up study of the Multicenter Automatic Defibrillator Implantation Trial II. *Circulation*. 2010;122:1265–1271.
14. Hiremath S, Punnam SR, Brar SS, et al. Implantable defibrillators improve survival in end-stage renal disease: results from a multi-center registry. *Am J Nephrol*. 2010;32:305–310.
15. Kusumoto FM, Bailey KR, Chaouki AS, et al. Systematic review for the 2017 AHA/ACC/HRS guideline for management of patients with ventricular arrhythmias and the prevention of sudden cardiac death: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on clinical practice guidelines and the Heart Rhythm Society. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2017.10.052.
16. Kramer DB, Kennedy KF, Noseworthy PA, et al. Characteristics and outcomes of patients receiving new and replacement implantable cardioverter-defibrillators: results from the NCDR. *Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes*. 2013;6:488–97.
17. Madhavan M, Friedman PA, et al. Optimal programming of implantable cardiac defibrillators. *Circulation*. 2013;128:659–672.
18. Ho J, Mahajan A. *Cardiac Resynchronization Therapy*. A&A; 2010.
19. Ypenburg C, Lancellotti P, Tops LF, et al. Mechanism of improvement in mitral regurgitation after cardiac resynchronization therapy. *Eur Heart J*. 2008;29:757–765.
20. Kanzaki H, Bazaz R, Schwartzman D, Dohi K, Sade LE, Gorcsan 3rd J. A mechanism for immediate reduction in mitral regurgitation after cardiac resynchronization therapy: insights from mechanical activation strain mapping. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;44: 1619–1625.
21. Lindsay BD, Estes III NA, Maloney JD, Reynolds DW. Heart Rhythm Society policy statement update: recommendations on the role of industry employed allied professionals. *Heart Rhythm*. 2005.
22. Niehous M, Tebbenjohanns J. Electromagnetic interference in patients with implanted pacemakers or cardioverter-defibrillators. *Heart*. 2001;86:246–248.
23. Lee D, Sharp VJ, Konety BR. Use of bipolar power source for transurethral resection of bladder tumor in patient with implanted pacemaker. *Urology*. 2005;66:194.
24. Wilson JH, Lattner S, Jacob R, Stewart R. Electrocautery does not interfere with the function of the automatic implantable cardioverter defibrillator. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1991;51:225–226.
25. Bayes J. A survey of ophthalmic anesthatists on managing pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;103: 1615–1616.
26. Lamas GA, Antman EM, Gold JP, Braunwald NS, Collins JJ. Pacemaker backup mode reversion and injury during cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1986;41:155–157.
27. Mangar D, Atlas GM, Kane PB. Electrocautery induced pacemaker malfunction during surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;38:616–618.
28. Snow JS, Kalenderian D, Colasacco JA, Jadonath RL, Goldner BG, Cohen TJ. Implanted devices and electromagnetic interference: case presentation and review. *J Invasive Cardiol*. 1995;7:25–32.
29. Furman S, Fisher JD. Endless loop tachycardia in an AV universal DDD pacemaker. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1982;5:486–489.
30. Katzenberg CA, Marcu FI, Heusinkveld RS, Mammana RB. Pacemaker failure due to radiation therapy. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1982;5:156–159.
31. Levine PA, Barold SS, Fletcher RD, Talbot P. Adverse acute and chronic effects of electrical defibrillation and cardioversion on implanted unipolar cardiac pacing systems. *JACC*. 1983;1:1413–1422.
32. Altamura G, Glanconi L, Lo B. Transthoracic DC shock may represent a serious hazard in pacemaker dependent patients. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1995;18:1–8.
33. Manegold JC, Israel CW, Ehrlich JR, el al. External cardioversion of atrial fibrillation in patients with implanted pacemaker or cardioverter defibrillator systems: a randomized comparison of monophasic and biphasic shock energy application. *Eur Heart J*. 2007;28: 1731–1738.
34. Lakkireddy D, Patel D, Ryschon K, et al. Safety and efficacy of radiofrequency energy catheter ablation of atrial fibrillation in patients with pacemakers and implantable cardiac defibrillators. *Heart Rhythm*. 2005;2:1309–1316.
35. Ellenbogen KA, Wood MA, Stambler BS. Acute effects of radiofrequency ablation of atrial arrhythmias on implanted permanent pacing systems. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1996;19:1287–1295.
36. Health Canada Health Products and Food Branch: Notice to Hospitals – interactions between active implantable medical devices and systems and other medical devices. http://www.healthycanadians.gc.ca/recall-alert-rappel-avis/hc-sc/2005/14340a-eng.php
37. Platonov M, Gillis A, Kavanagh K. Pacemakers, ICDs and extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy: evidence based guielines for the modern era. *J Endourol*. 2008;22.
38. Hayes DL, Holmes DR, Gray JE. Effect of 1.5 tesla nuclear magnetic resonance imaging scanner on implanted permanent pacemakers. *JACC*. 1987;10:782–786.
39. Brook C, Mutter M. Pacemaker failure associated with therapeutic radiation. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1988;6:591–593.
40. Adamec R, Haefliger JM, Killiscch JP, Niederer J, Jaquet P. Damaging effect of therapeutic radiation on programmable pacemakers. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1982;5:145–150.
41. Medtronic Micra Model MC1VR01 Manual. Available at: http://manuals.medtronic.com/wcm/groups/mdtcom_sg/@emanuals/@era/@crdm/documents/documents/contrib_231758.pdf.
42. Burke MC, Gold MR, Knight BP, et al. Safety and efficacy of the totally subcutaneous implantable defibrillator: 2-year results from a pooled analysis of the IDE Study and EFFORTLESS Registry. *J Am Coll Cariol*. 2015;65:1605–1615.
43. Weiss R, Knight BP, Gold MR, et al. Safety and efficacy of a totally subcutaneous implantable-cardioverter defibrillator. *Circulation*. 2013;128:944–953.
44. Lambiase PD, Srinivasan NT. Early experience with the subcutaneous ICD. *Curr Cardiol Rep*. 2014;16:516.

39

Neurologic Monitoring

CHRISTOPH N. SEUBERT, JOHN J. MCAULIFFE III, and
MICHAEL MAHLA

KEY POINTS

- There are four key principles of intraoperative neurologic monitoring.
  - The pathway at risk during the surgical procedure must be amenable to monitoring.
  - The monitor must provide reliable and reproducible data.
  - If evidence of injury to the pathway is detected, there must be some intervention possible.
  - If changes in the neurologic monitor are detected, and no intervention is possible, although the monitor may be of prognostic value, it does not have the potential to provide direct benefit to the patient from early detection of impending neurologic injury.
- There are few randomized prospective studies evaluating the efficacy of neurologic monitoring modalities.
- Anesthesiologists can improve the efficacy of monitoring by maintaining good physiologic homeostasis and stable levels of anesthesia during parts of the surgical procedure that place the nervous system at greatest risk.
- Based on clinical experience and nonrandomized studies, four practice patterns for use of neurologic monitoring have emerged:
  - There are procedures for which monitoring is recommended and used by most centers.
  - There are procedures for which monitoring is used frequently in some centers, but not in others.
  - There are procedures for which there is no clear clinical experience or evidence indicating that monitoring is useful at all (experimental use).
  - There are procedures in which monitoring is used selectively for patients believed to be at higher-than-usual risk for intraoperative neurologic injury.
- Good communication between surgeon, anesthesiologist, and neurophysiologist is essential to optimizing the utility of monitoring.

Neurologic monitoring during anesthesia care for a patient spans a wide spectrum of techniques, diverse procedures, and various intraoperative or even postoperative settings. Techniques for monitoring fall into two broad categories: techniques to assess metabolic integrity of the nervous system, which typically entail either global or regional determinations of blood flow or oxygenation; or techniques to assess functional integrity, which likewise may be global or focused on specific anatomic pathways or structures of the nervous system. Neurologic monitoring implies that the data for the assessment of the integrity of the nervous system are acquired on a continuous or frequent intermittent basis rather than just at the beginning and end of a procedure.

The procedures and settings in which neurologic monitoring is typically applied all share the characteristic that changes in the monitored parameters can be corrected or minimized by either modifying the surgical approach or manipulating parameters under the control of the anesthesiologist. Monitored procedures range from procedures where monitoring dictates the surgical approach, such as localization of the motor strip during tumor surgery or the neurologic examination during an "awake" craniotomy, to procedures that by their nature put parts of the nervous system at increased risk.

In many procedures that require neurologic monitoring, the anatomical target is also susceptible to drugs administered in the course of an anesthetic. The anesthesiologist and the surgeon need to be aware not only of limitations inherent in individual monitoring techniques, but also of nonsurgical factors that influence the monitoring results. The monitoring approach ideally should anticipate nonsurgical factors by providing a degree of redundancy that helps distinguish a localized surgical trespass from a systemic event.

The application of neurologic monitoring to a surgical procedure may be organized in different ways. It may simply consist in setting up a piece of monitoring equipment, such as a facial nerve monitor that provides acoustic feedback to the surgeon. At the other end of the spectrum, it may require the dedicated services of a technologist and a neurophysiologist in addition to the surgical and anesthesia teams as would be the case during the mapping phase of the resection of a brain tumor. Between those extremes are a variety of delivery models for intraoperative neurophysiologic monitoring that may entail components of telemedicine. Regardless of the organizational structure, the utility of intraoperative neuromonitoring will depend on a shared understanding of surgical objectives, anesthetic constraints, and limitations of monitoring. This shared understanding will then need to be supported by open lines of communications by all involved, particularly during critical phases of an operation.[1]

For some procedures, neurologic monitoring is a marker of the quality of care and is routinely employed because outcome data support its use. Examples include correction of scoliosis and resection of vestibular schwannomas. More frequently, the approach to monitoring is based on local conventions and surgical expectations. In this latter case, monitoring utility depends even more on a good understanding of the technique's capabilities and limitations by anesthesiologists, surgeons, and the intraoperative monitoring team; on good communication; and on their mutual collaboration to allow corrective action in the face of changing signals or to prevent false alarms that disrupt surgery.

This chapter first discusses individual monitoring modalities in isolation so that the clinician can appreciate the inherent strengths and weaknesses of each. Subsequent sections apply this information by describing suitable approaches to various clinical settings that combine and integrate individual techniques to optimize neurologic outcome for patients. The chapter ends with a brief discussion of how neurologic monitoring is believed to be useful today, and where more work is needed to determine whether monitoring has a role in surgical patients in the future.

Monitoring Modalities

MONITORS OF ADEQUACY OF NERVOUS SYSTEM BLOOD FLOW

Adequacy of cerebral blood flow (CBF) can be monitored by two principal methods. The first method assesses blood flow itself with the implicit assumption that "normal" flow provides adequately for the metabolic needs of the brain. The second approach assesses oxygen delivery either locally or globally with the implicit assumption that normal oxygen delivery at the site of measurement reflects adequate blood supply throughout the central nervous system (CNS). To illustrate the limitations imposed by such implicit assumptions, let us examine global or hemispheric CBF in the context of a patient's disease process.

In normal brain, values of hemispheric CBF of approximately 50 mL/100 g/min reflect adequate oxygen delivery for maintaining structural integrity and function. Values of less than 20 to 25 mL/100 g/min are associated first with failure of function and on further decrease with structural damage.[2] In neurosurgical patients, structural integrity and function may be altered by disease processes and anesthetics, which have an impact on the interpretation of measured CBF. A CBF of 40 mL/100 g/min in a patient in barbiturate coma after resection of an arteriovenous malformation may represent hyperemia (because metabolic demand is very low), whereas the same CBF in a patient with a mass lesion may reflect a modest decrease in cerebral perfusion pressure secondary to increasing intracranial pressure. Thus the clinical response to an abnormal value requires context and clinical judgement.

Global Blood Flow Monitoring Techniques (Noninvasive)

Intravascular Tracer Compounds. Direct measurement of CBF is possible by determining kinetics of wash-in and/or wash-out of an inert tracer compound, a method originally described by Kety and Schmidt.[3] A widely used modern variation of the same concept is the imaging of the first passage of intravascular contrast agents during computer tomographic or magnetic resonance imaging for determining loco-regional blood flow (Fig. 39.1). These techniques share the limitation of providing a snapshot of CBF in time instead of continuous assessment of flow over time.

Transcranial Doppler Ultrasound. Transcranial Doppler (TCD) ultrasound is a technique that infers CBF from measurements of the blood flow velocity in the large conducting arteries of the brain. The TCD probe transmits pulses of sound waves through the thin temporal bone in a variation of the pulsed wave Doppler technique with which anesthesiologists may be familiar from echocardiography. When these sound waves are reflected off the red blood cells back toward the TCD probe, the velocity of the reflected sound waves is changed because the blood cells themselves are in motion toward or away from the probe. This phenomenon is known as the "Doppler shift," and is directly related to flow velocity and flow direction of the blood cells. Blood flow is faster during systole and in the center of a vessel whereas it is slower in diastole and near the vessel wall. TCD records a spectrum of flow velocities whose outline resembles an arterial waveform tracing. These concepts are illustrated in Fig. 39.2.

Intraoperatively, TCD measurements are most commonly and easily made by continuous monitoring of the middle cerebral artery for the purpose of detecting either significant changes in flow velocity or the presence of particulate emboli.[4] As a diagnostic study, segments of all proximal intracranial arteries and the internal carotid artery of the neck can be insonated. An important limitation of TCD results from the fact that most of the examination is done through the temporal bone, which may be thick enough to preclude an adequate examination in 10% to 20% of patients.[5,6]

Two assumptions that are intuitive and plausible, but ultimately unproven, must be made for TCD-measured blood flow velocity to have a direct relationship to CBF. First, blood flow velocity is directly related to blood flow only if the diameter of the artery where the flow velocity is measured and the measurement angle of the Doppler probe remain constant. In practical terms, the difficulty with this assumption lies in finding a means to affix the TCD probe in a way that prevents dislodgment or movement during monitoring. The second assumption requires that CBF in the basal arteries of the brain is directly related to cortical CBF. Because TCD monitoring is typically done using the middle cerebral artery, this assumption may be invalid if collateral blood flow by leptomeningeal collaterals from anterior and posterior cerebral artery territories is adequate. Although these two assumptions constrain the utility of TCD as a stand-alone monitor of CBF, the changes in flow velocity seen in typical applications (discussed subsequently) are large enough to provide useful clinical information.

More importantly, TCD is the only continuous neurologic monitoring technique that provides early warning for hyperperfusion and for the number of emboli delivered to the brain during various phases of an operation. Because of their high echogenicity, emboli show up in the TCD spectrum as high-intensity transient signals (see Fig. 39.2) and are easily identified as brief beeps or chirps within the background of the Doppler sounds.

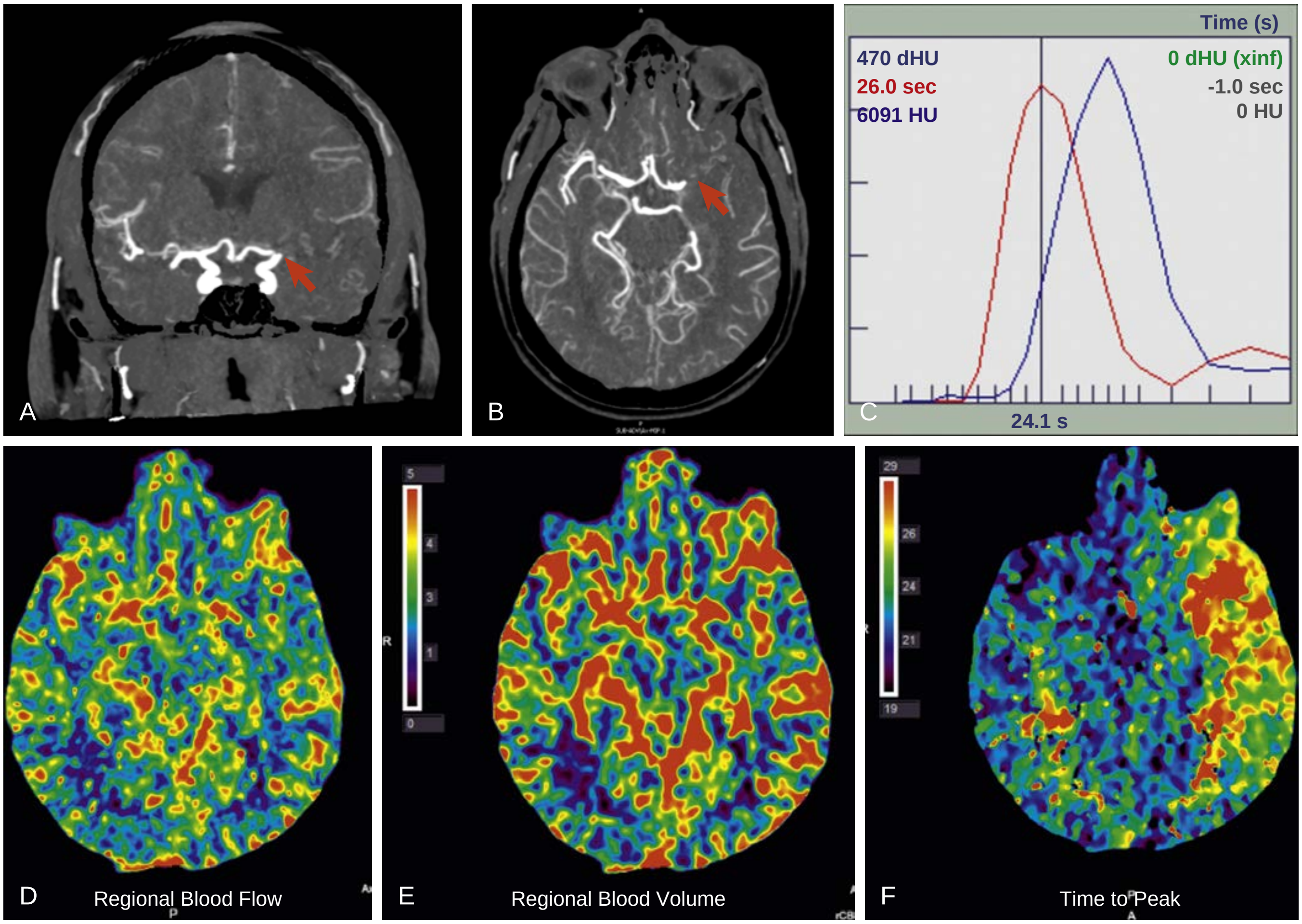
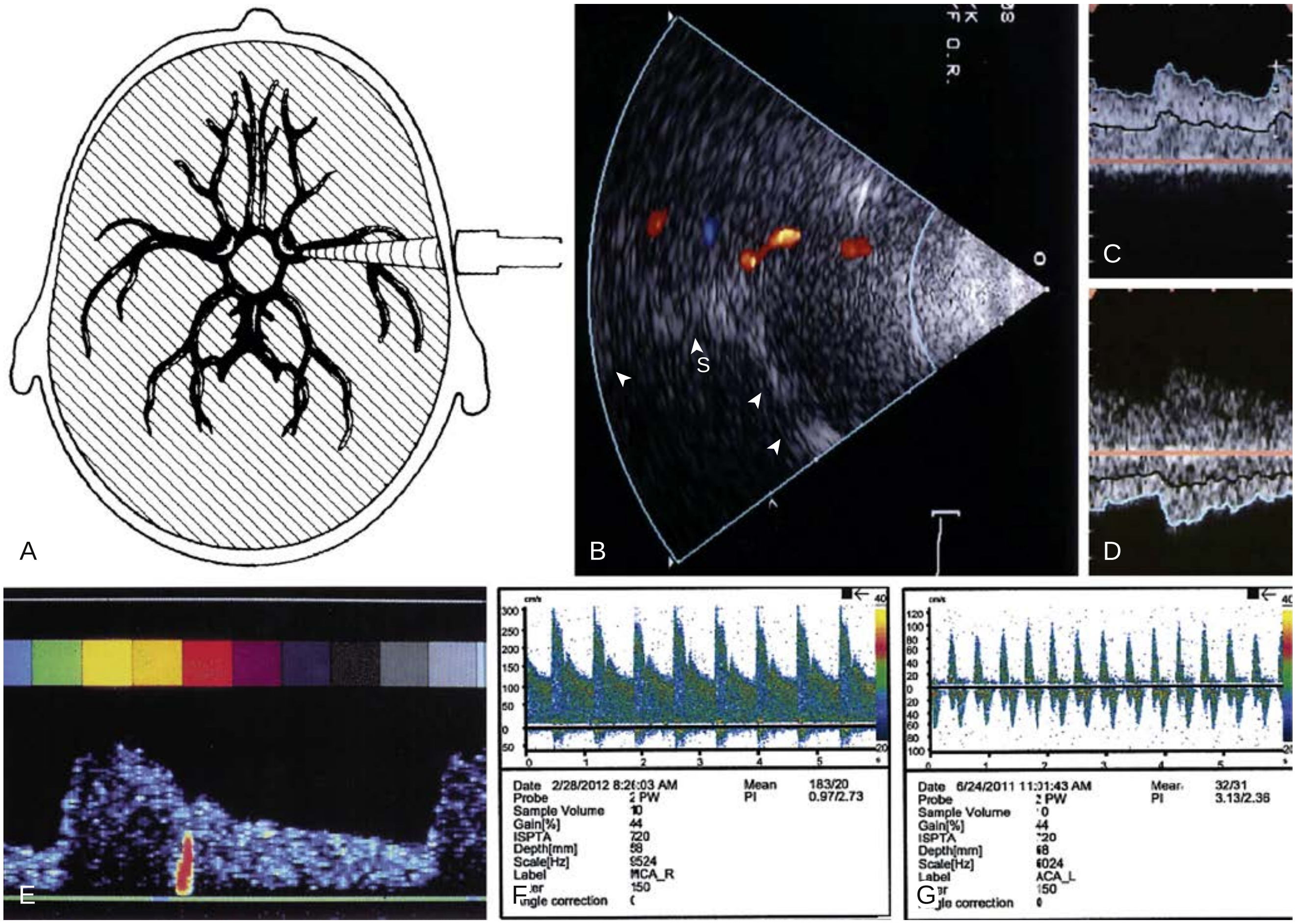


Fig. 39.1 Determination of cerebral blood flow by means of an intravascular tracer. Shown are computer tomographic images of a patient 90 minutes after onset of a left middle cerebral artery stroke. The site of the occlusion in coronal (A) and axial (B) planes is indicated by a red arrow. Panel C shows the arterial inflow function and venous outflow function derived by repeated imaging of the passage of radiopaque contrast through a volume element (voxel) representative of arterial and venous territory, respectively. The A2 segment of the anterior cerebral artery is typically chosen as a voxel for the arterial inflow function and the superior sagittal sinus for the venous outflow function. Based on these functions, blood flow, volume, and flow kinetics can be calculated for other areas of the image. The cerebral blood flow map (D) shows symmetrical flow in both hemispheres, with warmer colors indicating areas of higher flow consistent with grey matter. Blood volume (E) is symmetrical as well, but the time to the peak concentration of contrast (F) is significantly delayed for brain affected by the stroke.

Jugular Bulb Venous Oxygen Saturation. The degree of oxygen extraction by an organ can be monitored by following the oxygen saturation of the mixed venous blood that drains that organ. In the case of the brain, jugular bulb venous oxygen saturation (Sjvo$_2$) is believed to measure the degree of oxygen extraction by the brain and to represent the balance between cerebral oxygen supply and demand. To monitor Sjvo$_2$, a fiberoptic catheter is placed in a retrograde fashion into the jugular bulb through the internal jugular vein under fluoroscopic guidance. Correct tip placement is crucial to minimize admixture of extracranial venous blood. To decrease the risk of complications, usually only one side is monitored.

Several theoretical limitations of the technique must be borne in mind to interpret Sjvo$_2$ values and trends properly. Although nearly all blood from the brain drains via the jugular veins, intracranial mixing of venous blood is incomplete and may result in differences between right-sided and left-sided measurements. The dominant jugular vein (i.e., the right for most patients) drains predominantly cortical venous blood, whereas the contralateral jugular vein drains more of the subcortical regions.[7] Despite such regional differences, Sjvo$_2$ must be considered a monitor of global cerebral oxygenation because inadequate perfusion to a focal brain region may not decrease Sjvo$_2$ values below the normal range of 55% to 75%. Because Sjvo$_2$ represents the balance between supply and demand, interpretation of the absolute value of Sjvo$_2$ must take the clinical circumstances into account.

Cerebral Oximetry. Cerebral oximetry is a noninvasive technique that, similar to Sjvo$_2$, uses reflectance oximetry to measure the oxygen saturation of the tissues underneath the sensor. Typically, two sensors are applied to both sides of the forehead. The light passes not only through parts of the frontal brain, but also through the overlying skull and scalp. Contamination of the oximetry signal by extracranial blood sources is a serious concern, although the use of two sensing diodes with different distances from the light source within one sensor patch and adjustments of the algorithm of the oximeter may minimize this problem.[8,9]



Date 2/28/2012 8:2(:03 AM
Probe 2 PW
Sample Volume 10
Gain[%] 44
ISPTA 720
Depth[mm] 58
Scale[Hz] 9524
Label MCA_R
ler 150
ngle correction (
Mean 183/20
PI 0.97/2.73

Date 6/24/2011 11:01:43 AM
Probe 2 PW
Sample Volume 10
Gain[%] 44
ISPTA 720
Depth[mm] 68
Scale[Hz] 6024
Label ACA_L
r 150
gle correction 0
Mean 32/31
PI 3.13/2.36

Fig. 39.2 (A) Transcranial Doppler monitoring is done by insonating the arteries at the base of the brain through a thin part of the temporal bone. (B) If this procedure is performed with an imaging probe, some intracranial structures, such as the cerebral peduncles (white triangles) or the sella complex (white triangle labeled "S"), can be visualized. The captured Doppler signals originate from the right middle, right anterior, and left anterior cerebral arteries. (C) Normal Doppler spectrum obtained from the middle cerebral artery. By convention, flow toward the probe is displayed as a waveform above the baseline. (D) Doppler profile of the bifurcation of the terminal internal carotid artery as it branches into the middle cerebral artery (flowing toward the transducer) and the anterior cerebral artery (flowing away). This flow signal can be obtained if the transducer is focused as shown in A. (E–G) Examples of three clinical applications of transcranial Doppler. (E) Emboli are highly echogenic and appear as high-energy transient signals. On the audible output, these emboli are easily noticed as brief beeps or chirps. (F) Doppler profile of a middle cerebral artery in a patient with severe vasospasm after an aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage (compare with C). (G) Transcranial Doppler examination consistent with intracranial circulatory arrest. There is a brief systolic inflow followed by retrograde flow during diastole.

Because 66% to 80% of the cerebral blood volume is venous blood, cerebral oximetry determines predominantly "local venous oxygen saturation." The simplicity of its use, and the familiarity with the principles of treating decreases in systemic mixed venous oxygen saturation, have made cerebral oximetry a popular trend monitor in operations that potentially cause decreases in blood flow to the vessels of the head.[10] There are some significant limitations, however, of the use of cerebral oximetry during such procedures. First, adequacy of global cerebral perfusion is inferred from measurements over the frontopolar brain. Second, normative data on normal values or expected changes for cerebral oximetry are largely absent, but preoperative application of the sensors allows the start of a trend in conjunction with a neurologic baseline examination.[11]

An example of how these limitations play out is provided by a study of the use of cerebral oximetry during 100 carotid endarterectomies in awake patients.[12] Cerebral oximetry was able to identify 97.4% of patients with adequate CBF as indicated by the absence of clinical symptoms. The monitor frequently indicated inadequate CBF, defined as a 20% decrease in cerebral oxygen saturation from the pre-clamp baseline, although the patient had no clinical symptoms of inadequate CBF. The false-positive rate of 66.7% may simply illustrate the fact that oxygen extraction increases before function fails. The real problem is that the lower limit for acceptable regional oxygen saturation is unknown in a large population of patients.[13] Acceptable values may be different from patient to patient, and addition of anesthetic drugs that influence cerebral metabolism may confuse the picture further.

Tissue-Level Blood Flow Monitoring Techniques (Invasive)

Tissue-level monitoring for the brain is by definition invasive. All monitors in current clinical or research use are implanted through a burr hole, extend either into the white matter or ventricular system, and typically use a bolt for stabilization. They all share a 1% to 2% risk of bleeding, infection, or ischemia owing to the implantation procedure.[14]

A second shared feature is their limited spatial resolution (i.e., each monitoring probe monitors only a limited area of brain surrounding the probe). When these monitors were first developed, there was considerable debate regarding the optimal placement of the device given such limited spatial resolution. Based on today's appreciation for the impact of secondary neurologic insults on the ultimate outcome, there is growing agreement that tissue-level monitoring is best performed in morphologically and functionally normal tissue that is part of the penumbra or vulnerable zone of interest.[15-17]

Of the tissue-level monitors, tissue partial pressure of oxygen (Po_2) monitoring has undergone sufficient refinement to be in wider clinical use. Thermal diffusion blood flow measurement and laser Doppler flow measurement are experimental and not in widespread clinical use.

Tissue Partial Pressure of Oxygen Monitoring

Localized monitoring of tissue Po_2 is based on an oxygen-sensitive electrode originally described by Clark.[18] The diffusion of oxygen molecules through an oxygen-permeable membrane into an electrolyte solution causes an electric current that is proportional to Po_2. Currently available catheter-based electrodes placed into the subcortical white matter provide stable recording conditions over long periods.

Most of the data on brain tissue oxygen levels ($P_{Br}o_2$) come from studies in patients with head trauma.[19] Comparison with stable xenon CT for assessment of CBF and studies during temporal clipping in aneurysm surgery show good correlation between $P_{Br}o_2$ and CBF.[20,21] Similarly, the time course of changes in $P_{Br}o_2$ after traumatic brain injury resembles that of CBF.[22,23] Critics of the technique argue that $P_{Br}o_2$ values are highly influenced by the partial pressure of arterial oxygen (Pao_2) and are merely an elaborate indicator of the quality of patient ventilation. This view is supported by the observation that increasing the fraction of inspired oxygen (Fio_2) increases $P_{Br}o_2$, but likely represents an oversimplification.[24] Concurrent microdialysis studies have shown that increasing Fio_2 not only increases $P_{Br}o_2$, but also decreases tissue lactate levels, suggesting a true improvement in the metabolic milieu of the brain tissue itself.[25,26] While decreases in $P_{Br}o_2$ are associated with worse outcomes in traumatic brain injury patients, the role of $P_{Br}o_2$-directed therapy is still investigational.[27]

MONITORS OF NERVOUS SYSTEM FUNCTION

The most commonly used monitors of function are the electroencephalogram (EEG), sensory-evoked responses (SERs), motor evoked responses, and the electromyogram (EMG). The EEG is a surface recording of the summation of excitatory and inhibitory postsynaptic potentials spontaneously generated by the pyramidal cells in the cerebral cortex. The signals are very small, and each recording electrode records information both directly beneath the electrode and information volume conducted from deeper tissue.[28] Monitoring the EEG is usually directed toward one or more of four perioperative uses. First, the EEG is used to help identify inadequate blood flow to the cerebral cortex caused by either a surgically induced or anesthetic-induced reduction in blood flow or retraction on cerebral tissue. Second, the EEG may be used to guide an anesthetic-induced reduction of cerebral metabolism either in anticipation of a loss of CBF or in the treatment of high intracranial pressure, when a reduction in CBF and blood volume is desired. Third, the EEG may be used to predict neurologic outcome after a brain insult. Finally, the EEG may be used to gauge the depth of the hypnotic state of the patient under general anesthesia (see Chapter 40).

More than 50 years of experience monitoring the EEG has led to many known correlations of EEG patterns with clinical states of the normal and diseased cerebral cortex. The electroencephalographer can accurately identify consciousness, unconsciousness, seizure activity, stages of sleep, and coma. In the absence of significant changes in anesthetic technique, the electroencephalographer also can accurately identify inadequate oxygen delivery to the brain (from either hypoxemia or ischemia). By using high-speed computerized EEG analysis and statistical methods, EEG patterns in the continuum from awake to deeply anesthetized are becoming, with few exceptions, much better understood. In addition, computer advances have made possible high-speed mathematic manipulation of the EEG signal to present the data in a manner more suitable to continuous trends for use during surgical or anesthetic monitoring.

Evoked potentials are electrical activity generated in response to either a sensory or a motor stimulus. Measurements of evoked responses may be made at multiple points along an involved nervous system pathway. The evoked responses are generally smaller than other electric activity generated in nearby tissue (muscle or brain) and are readily obscured by these other biologic signals. In the case of SERs, repeated sampling and sophisticated electronic summation and averaging techniques are needed to extract the desired evoked potential signal from background biologic signals. Motor-evoked responses are generally larger and commonly do not require averaging.

SERs are the most common type of evoked potentials monitored intraoperatively. During the last three decades, much research has been done on the use of intraoperative motor-evoked potentials (MEPs), and use of MEPs during both intracranial and spinal surgery is now no longer considered experimental. There are three basic types of SERs: somatosensory-evoked potentials (SSEPs), brainstem auditory-evoked potentials (BAEPs), and visual-evoked potentials (VEPs).

Electroencephalogram

Basic Unprocessed Electroencephalogram Concepts. The EEG is produced by a summation of excitatory and inhibitory postsynaptic potentials produced in cortical gray matter. Because the EEG signal is generated only by postsynaptic potentials and is much smaller than action potentials recorded over nerves or from heart muscle, extreme care must be taken when placing electrodes to ensure proper placement and excellent contact with the skin to avoid significant signal loss. Alternatively, subdermal needle electrodes may be used, particularly when sterile application of an electrode close to a surgical field is necessary. When electrodes are applied directly to the surface of the brain, impedance is minimized by close electrode contact and saturation of the area with an electrolyte solution.

EEG electrodes generally are placed according to a mapping system that relates surface head anatomy to underlying brain cortical regions. The placement pattern of recording electrodes is called a montage. Use of a standard recording montage permits anatomic localization of signals produced by the brain and allows development of normative EEG patterns and comparison of EEG recordings made at different times. The standard EEG "map" is called the 10 to 20 system for EEG electrode placement (Fig. 39.3). This system is a symmetric array of scalp electrodes placed systematically based on the distance from the nasion to the inion and from the pretragal bony indentations associated with both temporomandibular joints. Based on 10% or 20% of these distances, recording electrodes are placed systematically over the frontal (F), parietal (P), temporal (T), and occipital (O) regions at increasing distances from the midline. Left-sided electrodes are given odd number subscripts, and right-sided electrodes are given even number subscripts. Increasing numbers indicate a greater distance from the midline. Midline electrodes are designated with a "z" subscript. The standard diagnostic EEG uses at least 16 channels of information,[29] but intraoperative recordings have been reported using 1 to 32 discreet channels.

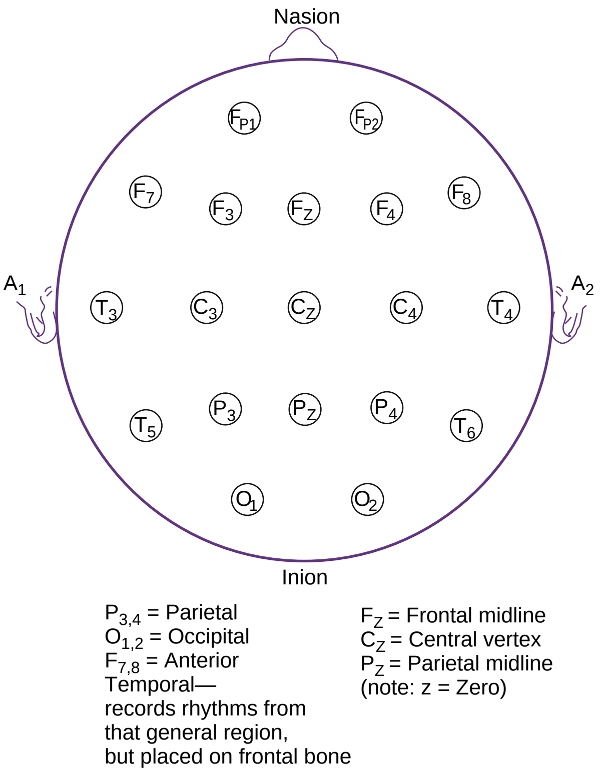


Fig. 39.3 International 10 to 20 system of electrode placement for recording electroencephalogram and sensory-evoked responses. (From Hughes JR. *EEG in Clinical Practice.* 2nd ed. Newton, MA: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1994.)

The intraoperative EEG is most commonly recorded from electrodes placed on the scalp. Recordings also may be made from electrodes placed on the surface of the brain (electrocorticography), or from microelectrodes placed transcortically to record from individual neurons (e.g., during surgery for Parkinson disease).[30,31] The EEG signal is described using three basic parameters: amplitude, frequency, and time. Amplitude is the size, or voltage, of the recorded signal and ranges commonly from 5 to 500 µV (vs. 1-2 mV for the electrocardiogram signal). Because neurons are irreversibly lost during the normal aging process, EEG amplitude decreases with age. Frequency can be thought of simply as the number of times per second the signal oscillates or crosses the zero voltage line. Time is the duration of the sampling of the signal; this is continuous and real time in the standard paper or digital EEG, but is a sampling epoch in the processed EEG (see later).

Normal Electroencephalogram. Normal patterns seen on the EEG vary among normal individuals, but are consistent enough to allow for accurate recognition of normal and pathologic patterns. The usual base frequency in an awake patient is the beta range (>13 Hz). This high-frequency and usually low-amplitude signal is common from an alert attentive brain and may be recorded from all regions. With eye closure, higher amplitude signals in the alpha frequency range (8-13 Hz), seen best in the occipital region, appear (Fig. 39.4). This "eyes closed" resting pattern is the

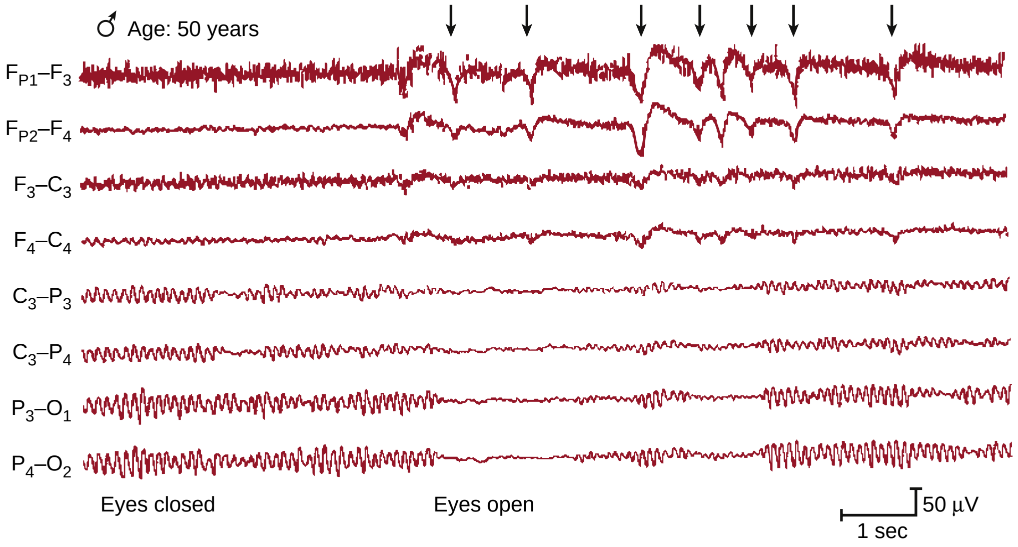


Fig. 39.4 The loss and return of alpha activity as the eyes open and close can be seen. The large spikes (↓) are muscle artifact from eye blinks and hence are best visible in channels that incorporate frontal electrodes (designated F).

baseline awake pattern used when anesthetic effects on the EEG are described. When events that lead the brain to produce higher frequencies and larger amplitudes occur, the EEG is described as "activated," and when slower frequencies are produced (theta = 4-7 Hz, and delta = <4 Hz), the EEG is said to be "depressed." The EEG during natural sleep may contain all of these frequencies at various times. The slower frequencies occur during deep natural sleep with "sleep spindles" (Fig. 39.5), but during light sleep or rapid eye movement sleep, the EEG becomes activated, and the eye muscle EMG appears on the EEG.

In the normal EEG in awake and asleep patients, patterns recorded from corresponding electrodes on each hemisphere are symmetric in terms of frequency and amplitude, the patterns are predictable if clinical states are known, and spike (epileptic) waveforms are absent. In most cases, normal EEG patterns are associated with normal underlying brain function in awake and asleep patients.

Abnormal Electroencephalogram. General characteristics of the "abnormal" EEG include asymmetry with respect to frequency, amplitude, or both, recorded from corresponding electrodes on each hemisphere, and patterns of amplitude and frequency that are unpredictable or unexpected in the normal recording. These abnormal patterns reflect either anatomic or metabolic alterations in the underlying brain. Regional asymmetry can be seen with tumors, epilepsy, and cerebral ischemia or infarction. Epilepsy may be recognized by high-voltage spike and slow waves, whereas cerebral ischemia manifests first with EEG slowing with preservation of voltage. Further slowing and loss of voltage occurs as ischemia becomes more severe. Factors affecting the entire brain may produce symmetric abnormalities of the signal. Identifying pathologic abnormal patterns in the global EEG signal is very important, although sometimes quite difficult, in the clinical situation. Many of the normal global pattern changes produced by anesthetic drugs are similar to pathologic patterns produced by ischemia or hypoxemia. Control of anesthetic technique is very important when the EEG is being used for clinical monitoring of the nervous system.

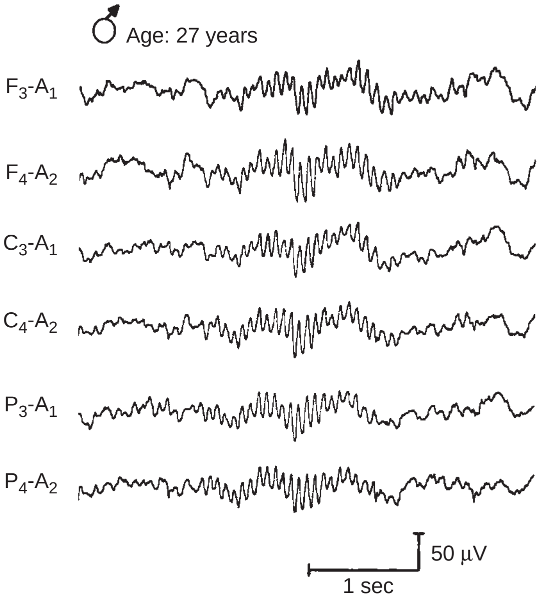


Fig. 39.5 Characteristic sleep spindles in normal sleep are shown in the center.

Processed Electroencephalogram Concepts. Numerous limitations are introduced when moving from the raw EEG domain to the processed EEG domain. First, artifact is processed in many cases along with desired signal leading to a perfectly believable processed EEG display that is materially incorrect. Second, the standard 16-channel EEG montage provides more information than can be practically analyzed or displayed by most processed EEG monitors and perhaps more than is needed for routine intraoperative use. Most available processed EEG devices used by anesthesiologists use four or fewer channels of information—translating to at most two channels per hemisphere. Processed EEG devices generally monitor less cerebral territory than a standard 16-channel EEG. Third, some intraoperative changes are unilateral (e.g., regional ischemia owing to carotid clamping), and some are bilateral (e.g., EEG depression by bolus administration of an anesthetic). Display of the activity of both hemispheres is necessary to delineate unilateral from bilateral changes. An appropriate number of leads over both hemispheres is needed. Most early studies validating intraoperative EEG monitoring used continuous visual inspection of a 16- to 32-channel analog EEG by an experienced electroencephalographer—such monitoring was considered the gold standard.[32,33] Adequate studies comparing the processed EEG with fewer channels with this gold standard across multiple uses and operations have not been done, although limited data using processed EEG monitoring during carotid surgery suggest that two- or four-channel instruments would detect most significant changes,[34,35] provided that the electrodes are appropriately placed over watershed areas of blood supply.

Devices. EEG processing for intraoperative monitoring is typically based on power analysis of a segment of raw EEG, referred to as an epoch. Power analysis uses Fourier transformation to convert the digitized raw EEG signal into component sine waves of identifiable frequency and amplitude. The raw EEG data, which is a plot of voltage versus time, is converted to a plot of frequency and amplitude versus time. Many commercially available processed EEG machines display power (voltage or amplitude squared) as a function of frequency and time. These monitors display the data in two general forms, either compressed spectral array or density spectral array. In compressed spectral array, frequency is displayed along the x axis, and power is displayed along the y axis with height of the waveform equal to the power at that frequency. Time is displayed along the z axis. Tracings overlap each other, with the most recent information in front (Fig. 39.6). Density spectral array also displays frequency along the x axis, time is displayed along the y axis, and power is reflected either by the density of the dots at each frequency or by a spectrum of colors. Each display format provides the same data, and choice depends on the preference of the user.

Many changes that occur during anesthesia and surgery are reflected as changes in amplitude, frequency, or both. These changes can be clearly seen in these displays if adequate and appropriate channels are monitored. Power

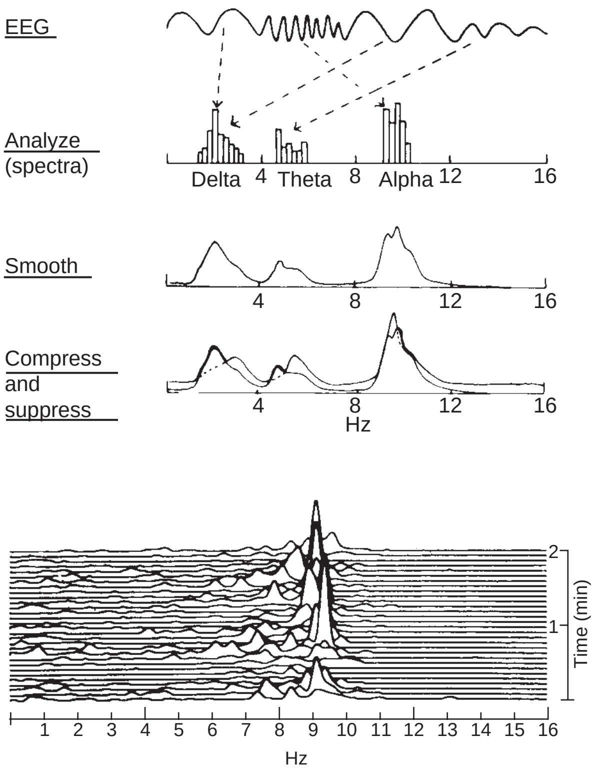


Fig. 39.6 Diagram of a technique used to generate compressed spectral array. Example at the bottom of the figure shows compressed spectra of the alpha rhythm from a normal subject. *EEG*, Electroencephalogram. (From Stockard JJ, Bickford RG. The neurophysiology of anaesthesia. In: Gordon E, ed. *A Basis and Practice of Neuroanesthesia*. New York: Elsevier; 1981:3.)

analysis has been used clinically for many years as a diagnostic tool during procedures with risk for intraoperative cerebral ischemia, such as carotid endarterectomy and cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB). Power analysis has proven to be a sensitive and reliable monitor in the hands of experienced operators using an adequate number of channels. In addition, parameters obtained from power analysis have been investigated as monitors for depth of anesthesia.[36-39]

Data Acquisition Period. An important consideration in the processed EEG is time. Raw EEG is continuous in real time. The processed EEG samples data over a given time period (epoch), processes the data, and then displays information in various formats. There is a relationship between epoch length and spectral resolution. If a long epoch length is chosen, the waveform can be described precisely, but the time required for data processing is long and not real time. If a short length of data is sampled, analysis may be done in near real time, but the epoch chosen for analysis may not be representative of the overall waveform (i.e., the condition of the patient). There also may be insufficient data points for meaningful Fourier transformation. This issue, as related to the use of intraoperative EEG for analysis of anesthetic depth, has been studied by Levy.[40] A longer epoch may produce less epoch-to-epoch variability and allow more precise description of frequency and power; however, the longer epoch increases the delay before new information is processed and displayed, reducing the amount and timeliness of information available for clinical decision making. In studying EEG epochs of 2 to 32 seconds, Levy[40] concluded that 2-second epochs are appropriate during general anesthesia. Many commercially available devices have used 2-second epoch lengths, updated at varying user-selected intervals. With better and faster computers, continuous monitoring of 2-second epochs and now even longer epochs is possible.

Evoked Potentials

Basic Concepts Common to All Modalities. EEG signals provide information about cortical function, but little to no information about subcortical neural pathways crucial to normal neurologic function. Intraoperative monitoring of SERs has gained increasing popularity over the last 35 years because it provides the ability to monitor the functional integrity of sensory pathways in an anesthetized patient undergoing surgical procedures placing these pathways at risk. Because motor pathways are often adjacent anatomically to these sensory pathways or supplied by the same blood vessels, or both, function of motor pathways may be inferred, albeit imperfectly, from the function of these sensory pathways. Today, MEPs are monitored together with SERs to provide direct information about function of motor pathways. SERs are typically 100-fold smaller in amplitude than the EEG. Recording SERs in an environment such as an operating room with its myriad electrical devices is challenging and requires substantial technical expertise.

Sensory-Evoked Responses. SERs are electric CNS responses to electric, auditory, or visual stimuli. SERs are produced by stimulating a sensory system and recording the resulting electric responses at various sites along the sensory pathway up to and including the cerebral cortex. Because of the very low amplitude of SERs (0.1-10 μV), it is often impossible to distinguish SERs from other background biologic signals, such as the EEG or EMG, which may be considered in this case undesirable "noise." To extract the SER from the background noise, the recorded signal is digitized, and signal averaging is applied. With this technique, signal recording is time-locked to the application of the sensory stimulus. For example, during intraoperative posterior tibial nerve SER monitoring, after nerve stimulation at the ankle, only signal information occurring less than 90 ms after the stimulus is recorded (Fig. 39.7). The SER occurs at a constant time after the stimulus application; other electric activity, such as spontaneous EEG, occurs at random intervals after the sensory stimulus. The averaging technique improves the SER signal-to-noise ratio by eliminating random elements and enhancing the SER. This enhancing effect increases directly with the square root of the number of responses added into the averaged response.

SER recordings are of two general types determined by the distance of the recording electrode from the neural generator of the evoked response. SERs recorded from electrodes close to the neural generators (within approximately 3-4 cm in the average adult) are termed "near-field potentials."[41] Near-field potentials are recorded from electrodes placed very close to the actual signal generator site,[42] and the morphology is directly affected by electrode location.[41] Far-field potentials are recorded from electrodes located a greater distance from the neural generator and are conducted to the recording electrode through a volume

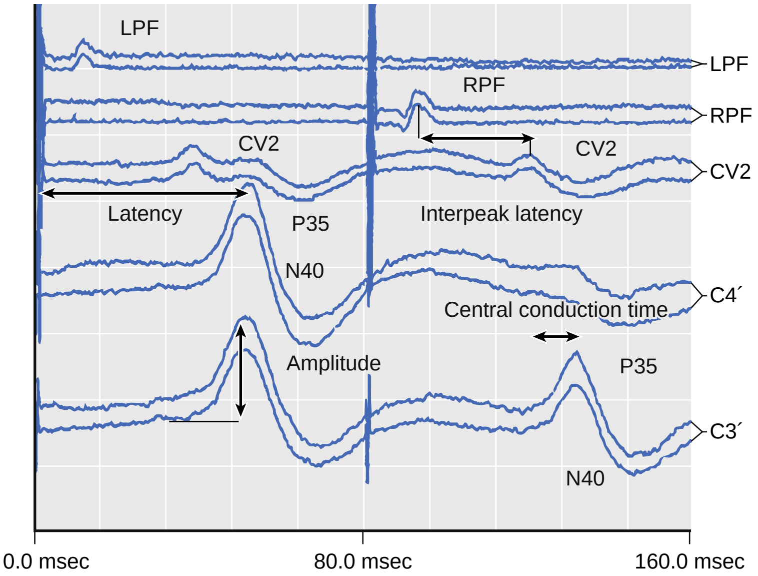


Fig. 39.7 Sensory-evoked responses are described in terms of latency and amplitude. Interpeak latency is the measured time between two peaks. Interpeak latency may be measured between two peaks in the same channel or between peaks in different channels (shown in figure). Note that the polarity of peaks is displayed contrary to standard convention (see text). The example shows a recording of posterior tibial somatosensory-evoked potentials. Each tracing is reproduced twice because reproducibility of a waveform helps distinguish signal from artefact. Left and right posterior tibial nerves are stimulated at 0 and 90 ms, respectively. The first evoked response is recorded from left and right popliteal fossa (*LPF* and *RPF*, respectively). The peak labeled CV2 represents the brainstem response recorded at the craniocervical junction. As a far-field potential, the potential looks similar for right- and left-sided stimulation. The primary cortical responses are recorded from the contralateral hemisphere (labeled P35 and N40).

conductor (brain, cerebrospinal fluid, and membranes). Because the current spreads diffusely throughout the conducting medium, it is more difficult to locate the source of the recorded signal and the electrode position has little effect on the morphology of the recorded evoked potential (see Fig. 39.7).[41,42] As the distance between the recording electrode and the neural generator increases, the recorded SER becomes smaller. More responses have to be averaged to record far-field potentials (several thousand) than near-field potentials (50–100).[41,42]

SERs also may be described as cortical or subcortical in origin. Cortical SERs are generated by the arrival at the cortex of the volley of action potentials generated by stimulating the sensory system. Because they are recorded as a near-field potential, they are typically easy to identify by elapsed time, waveform morphology, and amplitude. Subcortical responses may arise from many different structures depending on the type of response, including peripheral nerves, spinal cord, brainstem, thalamus, cranial nerves, and others. Cortical SERs are usually recorded from scalp electrodes placed according to the standard 10 to 20 system for EEG recordings (see Fig. 39.3). Subcortical evoked responses also may be recorded as far-field potentials from scalp electrodes or, as appropriate, from electrodes placed over the spinal column or peripheral nerve.

Evoked potentials of all types (sensory or motor) are described in terms of latency and amplitude (see Fig. 39.7). Latency is defined as the time measured from the application of the stimulus to the onset or peak (depending on convention used) of the response. The amplitude is simply the voltage of the recorded response. According to convention, deflections below the baseline are labeled “positive (P),” and deflections above the baseline are labeled “negative (N).” Because amplitude and latency change with recording circumstances, normal values must be established for each neurologic monitoring laboratory, and may differ from values recorded in other laboratories.

SERs used for intraoperative monitoring include SSEPs, BAEPs, and rarely VEPs. For all these techniques, cortical recording electrodes are placed on the scalp, using the same standard 10 to 20 system as for recording the EEG, whereas recordings for subcortical and peripheral signals are placed in various standardized anatomic locations. The surgical incision and the need for sterility may necessitate nonstandard electrode placements. Such deviations must be considered when interpreting baseline and subsequent SERs. In the case of MEPs, stimulating electrodes also are placed according to the 10 to 20 system of electrode placement, but over the motor cortex instead. Recording electrodes may be placed over the spinal column, peripheral nerve, and (most commonly) innervated muscle.

One of the most important principles of recording SERs intraoperatively is that reproducible, reliable tracings must be obtained at baseline before any intervention likely to cause changes in the evoked response. If good-quality tracings with identifiable waveforms cannot be recorded and reproduced at baseline, evoked-response monitoring would be of little use in monitoring the integrity of the CNS intraoperatively. If significant variability exists, or waveforms are difficult to identify, it will be impossible intraoperatively to distinguish SER changes that are clinically significant from a preexisting baseline variability of waveforms. When good, reproducible responses cannot be recorded at baseline, monitoring should not be used for clinical decision making. It is helpful to comment on the quality of the baseline SERs during the preincision time out so that the whole team is better positioned to put changes in SERs into context.

Somatosensory-Evoked Potentials. SSEPs are recorded after electric stimulation of a peripheral mixed nerve using needles or surface gel electrodes. SSEP responses consist of short-latency and long-latency waveforms. Cortical short-latency SSEPs are most commonly recorded intraoperatively because they are less influenced by changes in anesthetic drug levels. The pathways involved in the generation of upper extremity short-latency SSEPs include large-fiber sensory nerves with their cell bodies in the dorsal root ganglia and central processes traveling rostrally in the ipsilateral posterior column of the spinal cord synapsing in the dorsal column nuclei at the cervicomedullary junction (first-order fibers), second-order fibers crossing and traveling to the contralateral thalamus through the medial lemniscus, and third-order fibers from the thalamus to the frontoparietal sensorimotor cortex. These primary cortical-evoked responses, which are recordable with most anesthetic techniques, result from the earliest electric activity generated by the cortical neurons and are thought to arise from the postcentral sulcus parietal neurons. The longer-latency secondary cortical waves are thought to arise in the association cortex. These responses have much greater variability in an awake patient,[42] habituate rapidly on repetitive stimulation,[41] and are only poorly reproducible during general anesthesia. Cortical SSEPs other than the primary cortical response are not monitored or interpreted intraoperatively because they are severely altered by general anesthesia.[41]

Although most evidence indicates that upper extremity evoked potentials are conducted rostrally in the spinal cord through dorsal column pathways, some data suggest that lower extremity SSEPs are conducted at least partially by the lateral funiculus.[43] Stimulation of the posterior tibial nerve or common peroneal nerve at or above motor threshold activates group I fibers that synapse and travel rostrally through the dorsal spinocerebellar tract. After synapsing in nucleus Z at the spinomedullary junction, the pathway crosses and projects onto the ventral posterolateral thalamic nucleus.[44] This pathway difference is important because the dorsal lateral funiculus is supplied primarily by the anterior spinal artery, the artery that also supplies the descending motor pathway and neurons in the spinal cord. Manipulations, such as distraction of the spinal column to correct scoliosis, which may secondarily compress or distort radicular blood supply to the anterior spinal cord, should cause changes in the SSEP in the event blood supply is reduced to critical levels. This hypothesis is verified by the very low, but not zero, incidence of postoperative paraplegia on awakening without any intraoperative changes in SSEPs.

For SSEP recordings with median nerve stimulation, recording electrodes are first placed at Erb point, just above the midpoint of the clavicle. This point overlies the brachial plexus, and signals recorded here assure the clinician that the stimulus is actually being delivered properly to the patient. The next electrode is placed midline posteriorly over the neck at level of the second cervical vertebra, relatively near the dorsal column nuclei. Signals recorded here ensure proper transmission of the response from the peripheral nervous system into the spinal cord and rostral along the spinal cord to the lower medulla. The final electrodes are placed on the scalp overlying the sensory (parietal) cortex contralateral to the stimulated limb. Signals recorded here ensure the integrity of the pathway through the brainstem, thalamus, and internal capsule, and may assess adequacy of CBF in this area of the cortex.[45-49]

TABLE 39.1 Generators of Somatosensory-Evoked Potentials After Median Nerve Stimulation

Peak	Generators
N9 (EP)	Brachial plexus*
N11	Posterior columns or spinal roots
N13/P13	Dorsal column nuclei*
N14, 15	Brainstem or thalamus
N19/P22	Parietal sensory cortex*

*Indicates sites commonly recorded during surgical procedures. All other waveforms indicated are not commonly monitored.

To record SSEPs after posterior tibial nerve stimulation, electrodes are placed first over the popliteal fossa to ensure proper stimulus delivery to the nervous system. Electrodes also may be placed over the lower lumbar spine to ensure proper transmission of the signal into the spinal cord itself, but this site is not commonly used because of the proximity of sterile surgical incisions. Cervical spine and scalp recording electrodes are placed in a similar fashion as described previously, although different locations may be used as required by the surgical incision. More invasive recording methods, such as epidural electrodes, also may be used intraoperatively.

Purported generators for short-latency SSEPs are listed in Table 39.1 and shown in Fig. 39.8.[41,50] Induction of anesthesia, a patient's neurological disease or age, and use of different recording electrode locations (montage), necessitated by the surgical incision, may significantly alter the appearance of the SSEP. In these cases, attribution of a particular generator to a given wave on the tracing may be quite difficult. During neurologic monitoring, such precision is not needed, and recorded waveforms are compared with tracings obtained at baseline and during earlier portions of the surgical procedure. After lower limb stimulation, absolute latencies are increased because of the greater distance the response to stimulation must travel along the peripheral sensory nerve and spinal cord. Interpeak latencies (see Fig. 39.7) also are evaluated to assess specific conduction times, such as N9 to N14 conduction time, reflecting transmission time from the brachial plexus to brainstem, or N14 to N20 conduction time, reflecting transmission time between the dorsal column nuclei and the primary sensory cortex.[51] Latencies are also significantly affected by age at both extremes of life and many neurologic disorders.

Brainstem Auditory-Evoked Potentials. BAEPs are produced in the diagnostic laboratory by delivering repetitive clicks or tones via headphones. Headphones are not practical for surgical monitoring of neurosurgical procedures, and click stimuli are delivered using foam ear inserts attached to stimulus transducers (Fig. 39.9). Stimulus intensity is usually set at 60 to 70 dB above the patient's click-hearing threshold, although, practically speaking, many intraoperative laboratories establish monitoring after induction of anesthesia and instead begin with a stimulus

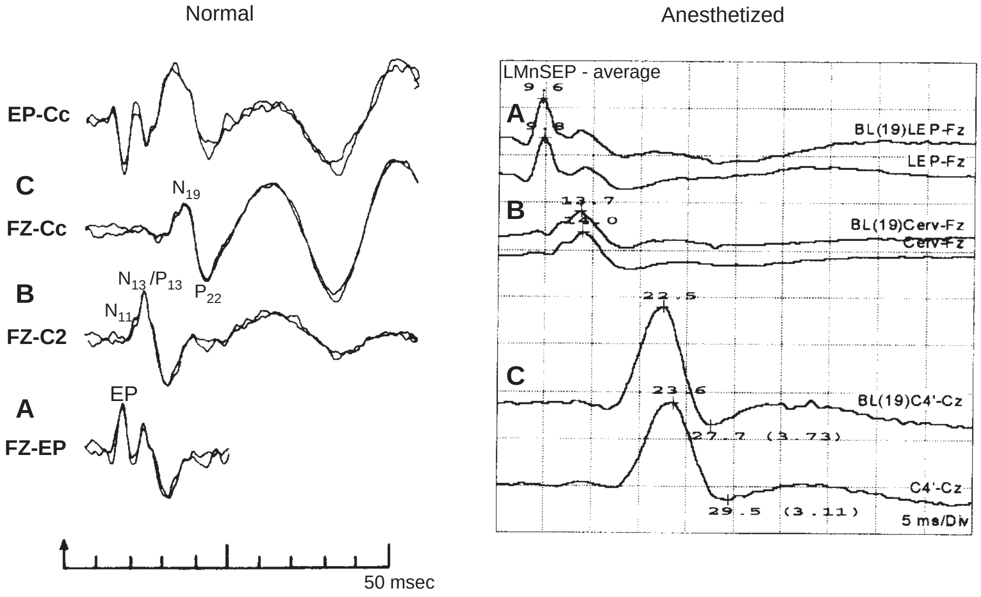


Fig. 39.8 Short-latency somatosensory-evoked potentials *(SEP)* produced by stimulation of the left median nerve *(LMn)* at the wrist. The ability to identify each of the labeled peaks shown in the tracing from the awake patient is compromised by the anesthetic state and use of different recording electrode locations (A–C). Corresponding tracings are labeled with the same letter. (From Chiappa KH, Ropper AH. Evoked potentials in clinical medicine. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;306:1205.)

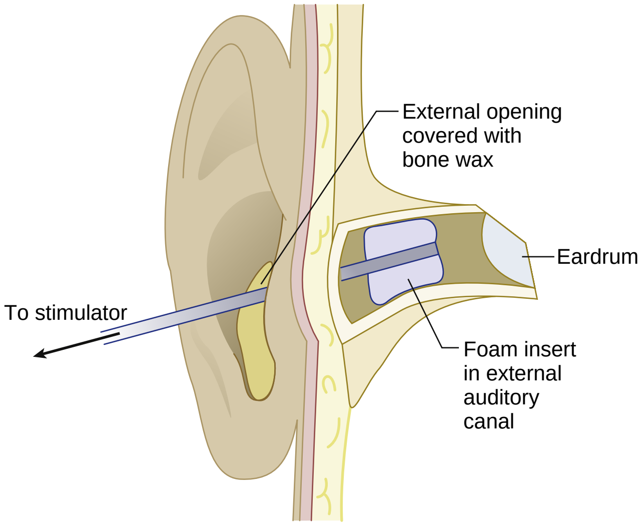


Fig. 39.9 Schematic of brainstem auditory-evoked potential-stimulating apparatus. Loud click stimuli are delivered directly to the eardrum through the ear insert.

intensity of 90 dB nHL (normal hearing level). The duration of the click is approximately 100 µs, and the stimulus is given usually 10 to 15 times per second. Clicks are delivered using different "polarities"—that is, the click may cause initial movement of the tympanic membrane away from the transducer (rarefaction) or toward the transducer (condensation). Use of these two different methods commonly produces very different waveforms, amplitudes, and latencies in individual patients, and the method that produces the largest reproducible response is chosen. If stimulus artifact is a serious problem, clicks of alternating polarity may be used to decrease the artifact, but the waveforms produced are an average of those produced by either stimulating technique alone and may be more difficult to monitor.

Rate and intensity of stimulus delivery affect BAEPs.[41,52] Unilateral stimulation is used because responses from the other ear, which may remain normal during surgery, may obscure any abnormal responses from the monitored ear. Recording electrodes are placed on the lobe of the stimulated ear and on the top of the head (vertex).[52] White noise may be delivered to the contralateral ear to prevent bone conduction from stimulation of the monitored ear from producing an evoked response from the contralateral ear. On average, 500 to 2000 repetitions are required because BAEPs recorded from the scalp are far-field potentials and extremely small (often $<0.3\ \mu V$).[41,52]

Peaks in recordings of BAEPs are labeled I through VII; the purported neural generators for these peaks and the auditory pathway are shown in Fig. 39.10. The anatomic auditory pathway would predict that BAEP monitoring would be most useful for surgical procedures in the posterior fossa that risk hearing or structures in the upper medulla, pons, and midbrain. As with other SERs, amplitude, absolute latencies, and interpeak latencies are evaluated to assess integrity of the auditory system, localize the functional defect when it occurs, and assess peripheral and central conduction times. Because waves VI and VII are inconsistent and variable, they are not routinely monitored,[52] and most articles reporting use of BAEP for surgical monitoring in the operating room monitor waves only up to wave V.[53-55]

Visual-Evoked Potentials. VEPs are recorded after monocular stimulation with recording electrodes over the occipital, parietal, and central scalp.[56] Flash stimulation of the retina using light-emitting diodes embedded in soft plastic goggles through closed eyelids or as needed via contact lenses with built-in light-emitting diodes is provided. VEPs are cortical SERs, which vary with the type of stimulus, part of the retina stimulated, degree of pupil

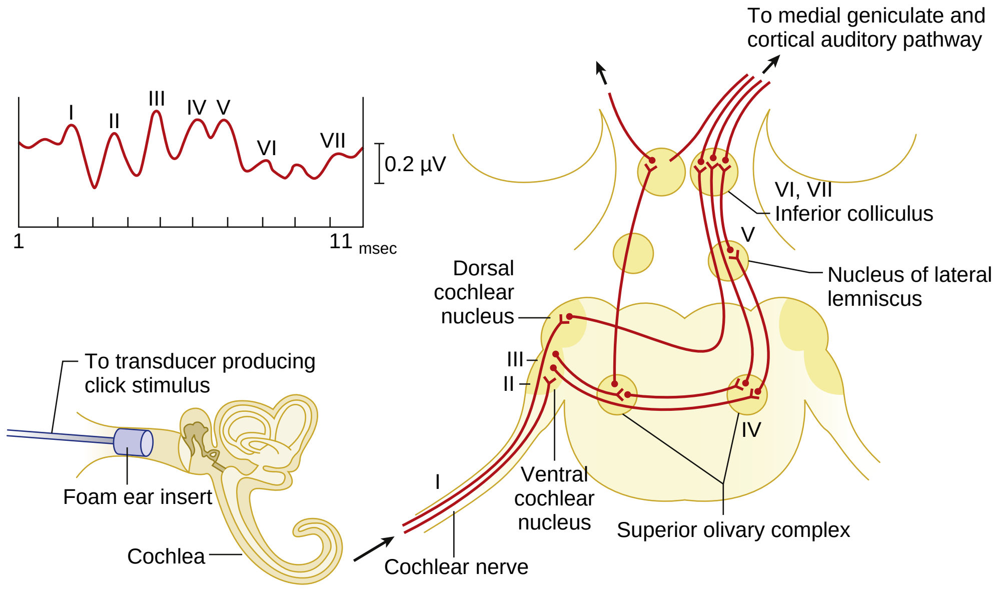


Fig. 39.10 Schematic of auditory neural pathway. The brainstem auditory-evoked potential is initiated by stimulation of the cochlea with a broadband click stimulus given through an ear insert in the external auditory canal. Neural generators of the brainstem auditory-evoked potential peaks are shown.

dilation, and patient's attention level.[41] Because some of these factors change commonly and even constantly during the course of every anesthetic, VEPs would be expected to be highly variable during surgery even when no surgical trespass on the visual system occurs. VEPs are the least commonly used evoked-response monitoring technique intraoperatively. However, some investigators have recently been able to generate reproducible intraoperative VEPs using multiple red light-emitting diodes embedded in a soft silicone disk placed directly on the cornea for stimulating the retina.[56] This technique may allow for further studies which will determine the clinical utility of this modality. However, flash stimuli generate potentials in all areas of the primary visual cortex at once making it difficult detect an injury to a small area of cortex.

Motor-Evoked Potentials. MEPs are generated most commonly by the application of a transcranial train of electric stimuli, and responses are recorded at various points along the spinal column, peripheral nerve, and innervated muscle.

Transcranial Motor-Evoked Potentials. Monitoring of the integrity of the motor tracts within the spinal cord is a technique with great potential benefit, and even during the relative short history of MEP monitoring, there are reported cases of loss of MEPs with preservation of the SSEP.[57-62] This technique is used extensively in spinal surgery, in which transmission across the operative field can be assessed, and in aortic surgery, with the potential for impairment of the blood supply to the vulnerable anterior spinal cord. Relative to SER monitoring, MEP monitoring is quite invasive and, in the case of transcranial stimulation, uses much higher stimulus intensity (≥400 V). Special stimulation techniques may be used to obtain transcranial MEPs (tcMEPs) from young children or adults with some degree of neurologic compromise at baseline.

Several variants of MEP monitoring exist. The most common method involves transcranial electrical stimulation. During transcranial electric MEP monitoring, stimulating electrodes (usually small, metallic screw-type electrodes similar to those used in fetal monitoring) are placed into the scalp overlying the motor cortex, and a train of electric stimuli (usually around 400–500 V) is applied to the scalp. This stimulation definitely activates muscles of mastication, and bilateral bite-blocks must be placed to prevent serious damage to the tongue during stimulation. Alternatively, if the precentral gyrus or motor strip is exposed during surgery, stimulating electrodes may be placed directly onto the cortex. Because approximately 90% of the transcranial stimulus dissipates across scalp and skull, typical stimulus intensities of direct cortical stimulation are 40 to 50 V.

Both stimulating methods also activate surrounding cortical structures and subcortical white matter pathways (sensory and motor). In fact, tcMEPs can frequently be recorded from patients with cerebral palsy, despite the disruption of their cortical neuronal architecture. Distal antidromic propagation of the transcranially applied stimulus is blocked by synapses in all of the ascending sensory pathways. The stimulus is propagated easily orthodromically through descending motor pathways. It is important to note that only the largest diameter fibers, 2% to 3% of all fibers in the corticospinal tract, propagate the impulses associated with tcMEPs. The evoked responses may be recorded over the spinal cord, the peripheral nerve, and, most commonly, the muscle itself. To enhance the MEP, these responses may be averaged in the same manner as SERs, but averaging is almost always unnecessary. Activation of the corticospinal tract well below the motor cortex may limit the utility of tcMEP to assess the adequacy of CBF to the motor cortex, because activation may be distal to the site of ischemia and part of a different vascular bed.

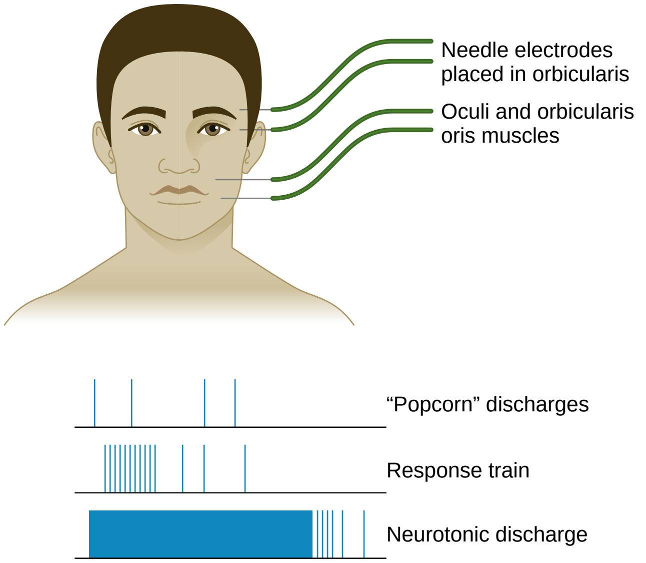

Needle electrodes placed in orbicularis
Oculi and orbicularis oris muscles
“Popcorn” discharges
Response train
Neurotonic discharge

Fig. 39.11 Schematic of facial nerve monitoring and typical responses seen during surgery.

Electromyography. Intraoperative monitoring of EMG responses generated by cranial and peripheral motor nerves allows early detection of surgically induced nerve damage and assessment of level of nerve function intraoperatively. In these cases, the ability of a nerve to produce a response in the innervated muscle is used to assess the health of a cranial or peripheral nerve at risk during surgery. Recordings are made from either surface (electrocardiogram or gold cup) electrodes or needle electrodes placed directly in the innervated muscle of interest. Sensitivity of EMG recordings is best if recordings are made from needles within the muscle itself. Surface electrodes and, to a lesser extent, subdermal needle electrodes may completely miss neurotonic discharges that indicate damage to a nerve.[63] The most experience with this monitoring modality has been obtained during facial nerve monitoring.

EMG monitoring may be either active or passive. During active monitoring, a cranial or peripheral nerve is stimulated electrically, and the evoked EMG (compound muscle action potential) response from the muscle is recorded. Stimulation of the nerve proximal to the operative area or tumor can be used to assess functional integrity of the nerve.[64] Nerve function also may be assessed by noting the intensity of nerve stimulus needed to evoke a muscle response and by the morphology of the compound muscle action potential. Nerve function may be monitored passively during surgery with continuous recording of all generated responses from innervated muscle groups. “Popcorn” EMG discharges are produced by simple, benign contact with the monitored nerve. Response trains are produced with more significant nerve irritation. Neurotonic discharges are produced by significant nerve irritation or damage or both (Fig. 39.11).[65] When these EMG responses reach a certain voltage threshold, they are usually converted into audible signals that provide immediate feedback to the surgeon and warn of impending nerve damage in real time. Real-time feedback is key because density and frequency of neurotonic discharges may correlate with degree of postoperative nerve dysfunction, as shown by data obtained from patients undergoing resection of acoustic tumors.[64] One caveat of EMG monitoring is that sharp section of a nerve may produce no EMG discharge at all.

Intraoperative monitoring of the motor component of other cranial nerves also has been successfully performed. EMG monitoring of the trigeminal nerve can be accomplished with electrodes placed over or in the temporalis or masseter muscles. Trigeminal nerve motor monitoring has been used during nerve section for tic douloureux to ensure preservation of the motor branch of the trigeminal nerve and in combination with facial nerve monitoring during resection of large posterior fossa lesions.[65] Using recording electrodes placed in or over the trapezius or sternocleidomastoid muscles, the spinal accessory nerve has been successfully monitored during resection of large meningiomas, glomus jugulare tumors, and neck carcinomas.[65] EMG monitoring of the hypoglossal nerve with needle electrodes placed in the tongue has been infrequently used for large posterior fossa lesions and clivus tumors.[65] EMG monitoring of the eye muscles can be performed using tiny hook wires for recording; however it is rarely used in practice.

Monitoring of peripheral motor nerves has been performed by placing needle electrodes in or over the muscles innervated by nerves that traverse the operative area and are at risk from the planned surgical procedure. Auditory feedback from EMG monitoring can warn the surgeon of unexpected surgical trespass of the nerve, help locate a nerve within the field (e.g., during untethering of the spinal cord), and localize the level of any conduction block or delay. Because radiculopathies have been reported to occur after spine surgery, particularly because of incorrect pedicle screw placement, EMG monitoring of peripheral nerves has been used in patients undergoing spine surgery to decrease the risk of nerve root injury during the procedure.[65] During pedicle screw placement, the surgeon can stimulate the screw directly with a small amount of current. If EMG responses are produced with only a small amount of current, the screw has likely been placed outside the bony pedicle.

Reactions to Intraoperative Changes in Monitored Responses

Intraoperative changes in evoked responses, such as decreased amplitude, increased latency, or complete loss of the waveform, may result from surgical trespass, such as retractor placement or ischemia, or they may reflect systemic changes, such as changes in anesthetic drug administration, temperature changes, or hypoperfusion. When these changes are detected and considered to be significant, the surgeon or anesthesiologist can make changes to relieve or lessen the insult to the monitored pathway (and presumably surrounding neural structures). Interventions by the anesthesiologist are directed at improving perfusion to the nervous tissue at risk and include increasing arterial blood pressure, especially if induced hypotension is used, or if the patient’s blood pressure has decreased significantly from preoperative values; transfusion, if significant anemia is present; volume expansion; augmentation of cardiac output; and normalization of abnormal arterial blood gas tensions. Changes in evoked potentials after retractor

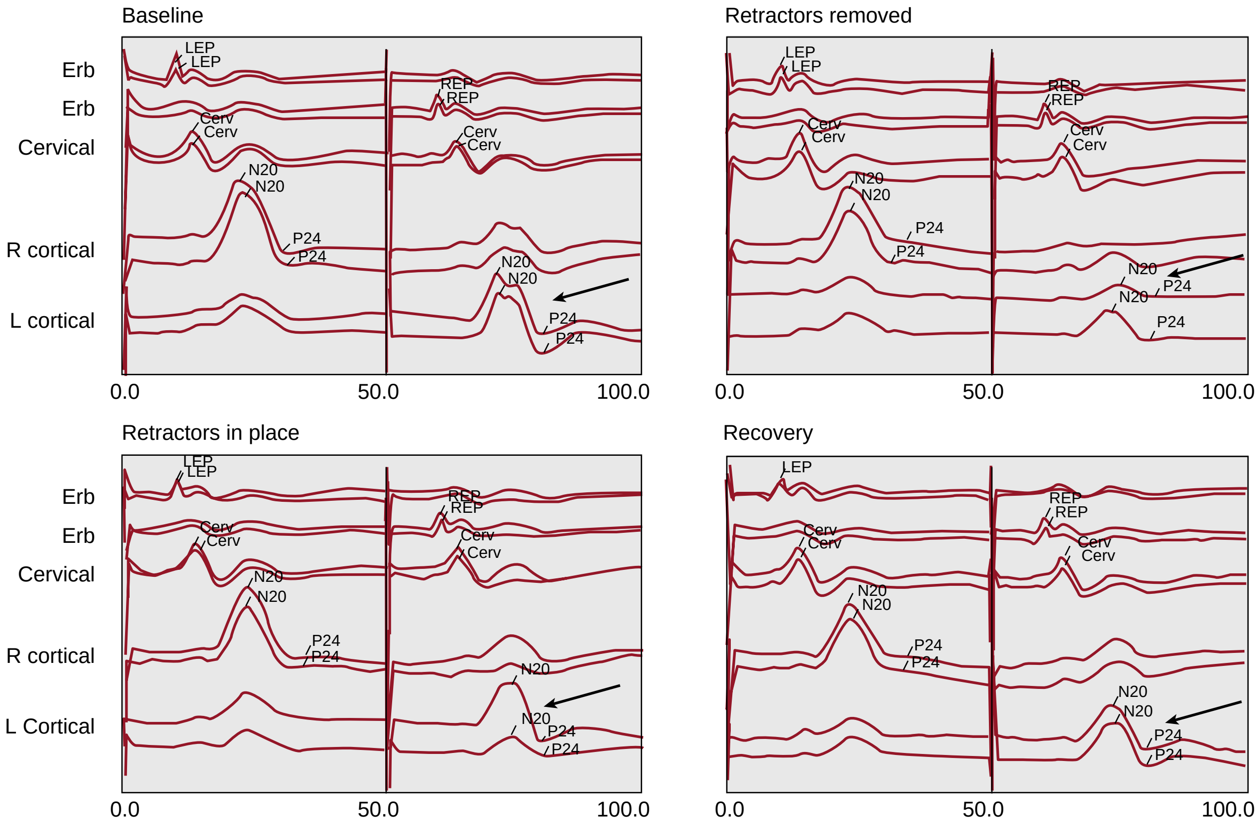


Fig. 39.12 Somatosensory-evoked potentials during aneurysm clipping. Responses generated by the cortex at risk are indicated by arrows. Baseline, after retractor placement, after retractor removal, and recovery traces are shown. The initial evoked response change occurred 4 minutes after retractor placement. Note loss of voltage of cortical-evoked response caused by inadvertent compression of the middle cerebral artery. *Cerv,* Cervical; *LEP,* left Erb point; *REP,* right Erb point.

placement during a craniotomy or after compression of the blood supply to the spinal cord from spinal column distraction promptly allow the surgeon and the anesthesiologist to make appropriate changes to the operative procedure and anesthetic management that may prevent or minimize any postoperative neurologic deficit (Fig. 39.12). It is imperative that clear communication occur between all parties in the operating room when significant intraoperative changes in evoked potentials occur. If expected results of an intervention are not observed the underlying hypothesis as to the cause of the changes must be reevaluated. This can only happen when lines of communication are open between all participants.[66]

Tolerance limits for degree of change in evoked response signals or duration of complete loss of waveform before permanent neurologic dysfunction are becoming better defined, and position statements have been issued by the American Society of Neurophysiologic Monitoring (http://www.asnm.org/page/PositionStatements). Tolerance limits for degree of change are especially unclear for tcMEPs. Such ambiguity is common among intraoperative monitors. Although we do know that increased frequency and duration of ST segment depression during coronary bypass surgery is associated with an increased risk of perioperative infarction, exact limits for degree and duration of ST segment depression for surgery do not exist, and likely vary significantly from patient to patient. The same problem may be exhibited with neurologic monitors.

Many centers using intraoperative SER monitoring define decreases in amplitude of 50% or more from baseline associated with a less than 10% prolongation in latency as clinically significant SER changes. Uncorrected, such changes are associated in clinical series and in case reports with onset of new postoperative neurologic deficits. As a result, such changes are immediately investigated. In practice, any SER changes directly associated with a surgical event are considered clinically significant, however, even if the magnitude of change is less than just described. Changes in SER that do not progress to complete loss of the waveform are less likely to be associated with a major new postoperative neurologic deficit. Complete loss of the SER waveform intraoperatively without recovery is highly likely to be associated with a major new deficit. If the SER recovers either spontaneously or after intraoperative interventions, the likelihood of neurologic injury depends on the procedure, the duration of the SER loss, and on whether the SER is mainly used to judge integrity of adjacent unmonitored structures. These problems are illustrated in one study of intracranial aneurysm surgery in which SSEPs were monitored to predict/prevent postoperative motor deficits. Loss of the SSEP waveform for less than 15 minutes was not associated with a new permanent neurologic deficit, whereas complete loss of the SSEP for longer periods was increasingly likely to reflect permanent neurologic injury, even if the response recovered completely to its intraoperative baseline during surgery.[67]

Clinical Applications of Neurologic Monitoring

NEUROVASCULAR SURGERY (ALSO SEE CHAPTERS 56 AND 57)

Extracranial Neurovascular Surgery: Carotid Vascular Surgery (Monitors: Electroencephalogram, Somatosensory-Evoked Potentials, Transcranial Doppler, Cerebral Oximetry)

Carotid vascular surgery typically requires transient interruption of blood flow to the brain through the affected carotid artery. Although the risk of stroke associated with carotid vascular surgery has been declining,[68] the residual risk varies greatly based on the indication for the procedure. It is lowest for asymptomatic patients and highest after a recent revascularization for ischemic stroke.[69]

Electroencephalogram. The use of the EEG as a monitor of the adequacy of hemispheric blood flow during carotid endarterectomy has been established for many years. In a large series of patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy at the Mayo Clinic,[33] the EEG was compared with regional CBF using the Xe washout method. This study validated the EEG as an indicator of the adequacy of regional CBF.

Normal CBF in gray and white matter averages 50 mL/100 g/min. With most anesthetic techniques, the EEG begins to become abnormal when CBF decreases to 20 mL/100 g/min. Cellular survival is not threatened until CBF decreases to 12 mL/100 g/min. The difference in blood flow between when the EEG becomes abnormal and the blood flow at which cellular damage begins to occur provides a rational basis for monitoring the EEG during carotid surgery. In many cases, prompt detection of EEG changes may allow intervention (e.g., shunting, increasing cerebral perfusion pressure) to restore CBF before onset of permanent neurologic damage.

Serious intraoperative reduction in cerebral oxygen supply may result from surgical factors (e.g., carotid cross-clamping) that are usually beyond the anesthesiologist's control, and from factors that the anesthesiologist can correct. Reduction in CBF produced by hyperventilation, hypotension, or temporary occlusion of major blood vessels may be corrected by reducing ventilation, by restoring normal blood pressure, or, in the case of temporary vessel occlusion, by increasing blood pressure above normal. Because the EEG may readily detect cerebral ischemia, continuous EEG monitoring may be used to evaluate the effectiveness of therapy instituted to correct ischemia.

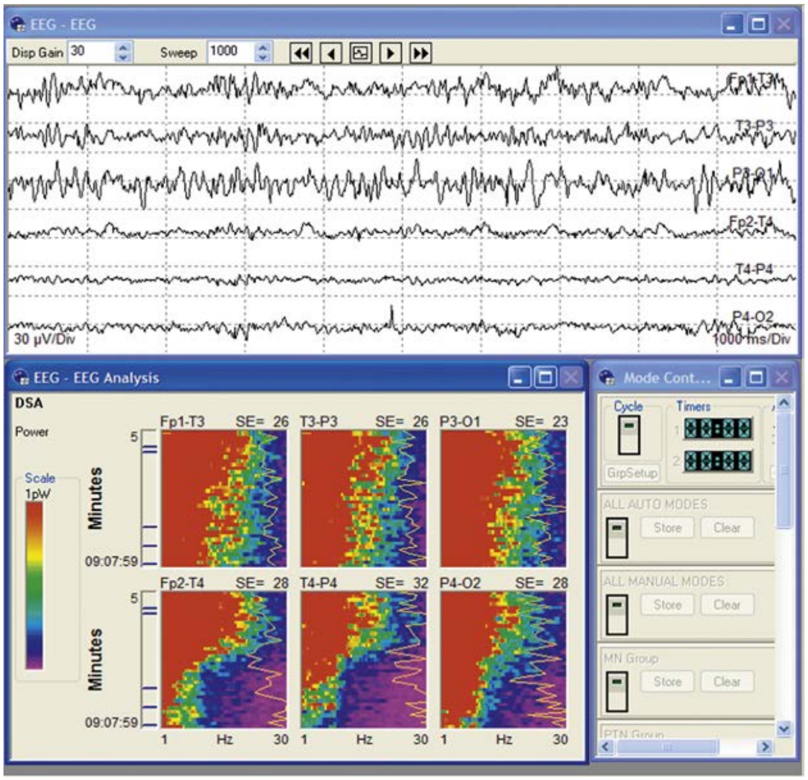
Should the patient undergoing carotid endarterectomy have EEG monitoring? That question cannot be answered based on available data. EEG monitoring provides information about CBF that would not otherwise be available. The clinician has an opportunity to intervene to increase inadequate blood flow when it occurs. Anecdotally, many clinicians have found such monitoring useful and use it routinely. Population studies do not support routine use, reflecting the fact that strokes in carotid vascular surgery are infrequent and the majority are caused by embolism, which may not be adequately treated by simply increasing CBF.

In a large series of patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy with selective shunting who were monitored with 16-channel unprocessed EEG, no patient awakened with a new neurologic deficit that was not predicted by EEG.[70] Transient, correctable EEG changes were not associated with stroke. Persistent changes were associated with stroke. This study had no comparison group, however, analyzing stroke rate when EEG monitoring was not used during surgery. Conversely, in the North American Symptomatic Carotid Endarterectomy Trial and the European Carotid Surgery Trial, retrospective comparisons of patients receiving EEG monitoring and patients not receiving EEG monitoring failed to show a significant difference in outcome.[71,72]

Even more difficult to prove is that EEG monitoring is useful when all patients are shunted during carotid clamping. Such monitoring has detected correctable shunt malfunction, and investigators have described hypotension-related EEG changes in patients with critical stenoses and poor collateral circulation.[73] Advocates of selective shunting based on EEG (or other monitoring) criteria claim that inserting a shunt unnecessarily through a region of diseased vessel would surely increase embolization. A multicenter study of 1495 carotid endarterectomies provides some evidence that shunting of patients without evidence of decreased cerebral perfusion increases the incidence of stroke more than sixfold.[74] Although this study and other more recent studies[75-77] advocate that selective shunting using some form of monitoring of the adequacy of CBF should improve perioperative stroke rate, an analysis by the Cochrane Stroke Group[78] failed to show sufficient evidence to advocate for routine shunting, selective shunting, or even no shunting at all. In addition, this review failed to demonstrate that any type of monitoring for cerebral ischemia was superior to another.

Processed EEG also has been used during carotid vascular surgery. Two issues affect the efficacy and reliability of processed EEG as a monitor for cerebral ischemia. First, what is the minimum number of channels (or areas of the brain) to be monitored? Clinical experience and clinical investigations suggest that four channels (two per side) are the minimum number of channels for adequate sensitivity and specificity.[34] When a limited number of channels were compared with 16-channel EEG monitoring, 100% sensitivity and specificity were obtained using 2 channels per hemisphere, provided that those channels monitored the middle cerebral artery territory. These results were obtained with a frontoparietal channel combined with a frontotemporal channel.[34]

The second issue is the experience level of the observer monitoring the processed EEG. Is a dedicated, experienced technician or electroencephalographer needed? In a study addressing this question, the 16-channel unprocessed EEG monitored by a dedicated technician was compared with a processed EEG reviewed by three anesthesiologists of differing levels of experience with processed EEG.[35] The three anesthesiologists interpreted the tracings without knowledge of the case. They were presented only with the written trace with an indication of the point at which the carotid artery was clamped. In these cases, the most important interpretation pitfall to avoid is the "false-negative" pattern. If the clinician interprets the EEG as showing adequate CBF when in fact it does not, the surgeon may fail to shunt



Disp Gain 30

Sweep 1000

Fig. 39.13 Hemispheric ischemia after clamping of the internal carotid artery. The top panel shows three channels of electroencephalogram *(EEG)* for each hemisphere. The right-sided channels (bottom three tracings) show nearly suppressed *EEG* activity due to ischemia. The bottom panel shows the corresponding density spectral array, where *EEG* power in each frequency is coded in color, with red indicating greater power. The oldest data is at the top of each field and the most recent at the bottom. The lower row of three density spectral array *(DSA)* panels corresponds to the right-sided *EEG* leads. Halfway through the panel there is a dramatic reduction in *EEG* power after clamp placement. The bottom spectrum corresponds to the raw *EEG* shown tracings shown in the top panel. (Image courtesy of Reza Gorji, MD.)

an ischemic patient. A false-positive result may be less of a problem because that patient is not ischemic but is given a shunt anyway. In this case, only the risk of emboli from the "unnecessary" shunt is incurred. The positive predictive value of the anesthesiologist correctly interpreting the trace as unchanged after clamping was 91% to 98%, which indicates that the device can be used by novice interpreters with fair accuracy to determine the presence of cerebral ischemia at the time of carotid occlusion (Fig. 39.13).

Somatosensory-Evoked Potentials. SSEP monitoring also has been used to gauge adequacy of CBF to the cerebral cortex and subcortical pathways during carotid vascular surgery.[49,79,80] SSEPs have been found in the laboratory to have a similar but slightly lower threshold for electrical failure compared with the EEG when CBF is reduced. SSEPs are generally intact until the cortical blood flow decreases to less than 15 mL/100 g/min.[47] A recent review (meta-analysis) of shunting during carotid vascular surgery suggests that selective shunting based on SSEP monitoring results in a perioperative stroke rate similar to when EEG monitoring is used as the basis for shunting.[81] However, logic would also suggest that changes in SSEP are unlikely, for example, with ischemia involving the anterior portions of either the frontal or temporal lobe, which could readily be detected by an appropriately placed EEG electrode. There is even less outcome evidence to support the use of SSEPs during carotid surgery than there is for the EEG, but the authors and others have found SSEPs to be useful as a simultaneous monitor with EEG to detect subcortical ischemia.[82]

Transcranial Doppler. TCD monitoring during carotid vascular surgery is based on measurement of two primary parameters—blood flow velocity in the middle cerebral artery and the number of emboli detected in the same artery. The hypothesis justifying the use of this monitoring during carotid vascular surgery has two components: blood flow velocity correlates with CBF, and increasing numbers of emboli increase the likelihood of embolic stroke. Intraoperative use of TCD has not been widely adopted for many reasons. As previously noted, good TCD signals cannot be obtained in up to 20% of individuals who could benefit from monitoring. Also, TCD probe motion during surgery causes major problems with loss of signal or with angle of insonation–induced changes in the relationship between blood flow velocity and blood flow. Nonetheless, multiple series of carotid endarterectomies with TCD monitoring have been reported with good success, quoting a critical blood flow velocity reduction around 50% as indicative of inadequate CBF requiring intervention (shunt or increased blood pressure or both).[83-89] The relationship between emboli count and stroke is better established. Multiple studies conducted in the preoperative, intraoperative, and postoperative periods indicate that higher emboli counts are associated with higher stroke risk and warrant intervention.[83-89] TCD is the only monitor able to detect dangerous hyperemia, also known as normal perfusion pressure breakthrough, after removal of a severe, flow-limiting carotid stenosis. Typically, a sustained doubling of flow velocity after unclamping should prompt the anesthesiologist to consider lowering the blood pressure. There are no good outcome data supporting TCD use intraoperatively, but data regarding emboli count and risk of stroke suggest that if technical issues with probe attachment to the patient can be overcome, TCD may be useful as a predictor of impending stroke in the preoperative, postoperative, and perhaps intraoperative periods.

Cerebral Oximetry (Near-Infrared Spectroscopy). Near-infrared spectroscopy (NIRS) is an attractive monitor during carotid endarterectomy because of its ease of application and lack of training required for interpretation. The hypothesis governing its use is very simple: as oxygen delivery to the brain decreases, oxygen extraction from arterial blood increases, and the oxygen saturation in cerebral venous blood decreases. Multiple case reports and series document the use of cerebral oximetry during neurovascular surgery, but several major questions surrounding use of NIRS during carotid surgery remain unanswered.

The first and most important question is what degree of decrease in oxygen saturation can be tolerated before intervention is necessary. Because most interventions involve some risk (e.g., shunt → emboli, increased BP → myocardial ischemia), the answer to this question is important. The answer does not yet exist, however, and may vary from patient to patient. Two studies in awake patients showed that the saturation value at which any patient would develop symptoms varied from patient to patient,[12,13] and an absolute value that required shunting could not be determined. Another study showed that cerebral oxygen saturation decreased before the EEG developed changes, and the authors used this observation to claim superiority for NIRS monitoring of the brain during carotid surgery.[90] This finding should not be surprising, however, because function of the brain (in this case, electric function) does not fail until increased extraction of oxygen no longer meets metabolic demands for the tissue. If metabolic demands are being met by increased extraction, it is unclear that intervention is needed.

Finally, a study by Friedell and colleagues[91] compared NIRS with EEG and SSEP monitoring during carotid surgery. In 24 of 323 patients, significant differences were observed between NIRS and monitors of electric function. Seventeen patients showed no changes in electric function with significant decreases in cerebral oxygen saturation. In seven patients, no change in cerebral oxygen saturation occurred despite significant change in the EEG and SSEP. The latter finding may be due to the fact that NIRS and EEG/SSEP monitor different vascular territories. These data in combination with the data from studies in awake patients suggest that use of NIRS alone during carotid vascular surgery may be inappropriate. In addition, an aggregate of studies and case reports available in the literature suggests that there is no clear cutoff value of regional oxygen saturation which would mandate shunt placement or increasing the cerebral perfusion pressure.

Intracranial Neurovascular Surgery (Monitors: Somatosensory-Evoked Potentials, Motor-Evoked Potentials)

Somatosensory-Evoked Potentials. SSEPs have been extensively studied during cerebral aneurysm surgery. During these procedures, the surgical incision and brain retraction diminishes the utility of placing EEG scalp or brain surface electrodes that could detect cerebral ischemia in at-risk cortex. Recording electrodes placed on the surface of the brain have been used successfully, but they are commonly considered “in the way” by neurosurgeons. Thus EEG is typically used only to confirm metabolic suppression during temporary clip placement. Scalp electrodes for SSEP monitoring may be placed more easily, although the recording montage is frequently not the same as that used in an awake patient.

For aneurysms involving the anterior cerebral circulation, SSEP monitoring has an excellent, but not perfect, record for predicting postoperative neurologic function. Most patients without surgically induced SSEP changes during the procedure awaken with an unchanged neurologic examination. Patients with significant SSEP changes that do not revert to normal awaken with a new neurologic deficit. Patients with significant intraoperative SSEP changes that return to normal may show at least a transient postoperative deficit, with the severity and duration of that deficit increasing as the severity of the SSEP change increases. Many authors have reported significant utility of SSEP monitoring in detecting improper aneurysm clip placement (see Fig. 39.12) and in guiding intraoperative blood pressure management, particularly in patients already showing, or at significant risk for, vasospasm after subarachnoid hemorrhage.[48,92-97] The same success cannot be reported, however, for posterior circulation aneurysms. In these cases, many areas of the cortex and subcortical structures are at risk for damage that cannot be monitored at all by somatosensory pathway function. A significant false-negative monitoring pattern exists for these patients, but changes can still be detected when a surgical insult is sufficiently severe to involve large portions of the brain.[98-101]

An important concern during aneurysm surgery is injury to perforating vessels near the aneurysm, which risks damage to subcortical pathways in the internal capsule and may account for half the new neurologic deficits immediately postoperatively.[102] Anatomically, the motor pathway runs anterior to the sensory pathway in the internal capsule and is at greater risk if the anterior choroidal artery, lenticulostriate perforator vessels, or even perforating branches of the anterior cerebral artery are injured during dissection and clip placement. Two concerns need to be addressed if tcMEP is to be incorporated successfully in these cases. First, motion caused by stimulation needs to be minimized to not interfere with the surgery. Second and more importantly, stimulus parameters need to be set to limit deep current spread that would activate the corticospinal tract distal to the internal capsule and obscure ischemia of the proximal pathway. The use of longer stimulus trains at intensities close to the motor threshold addresses both concerns[103] and have made tcMEP monitoring a useful adjunct during aneurysm surgery in many centers.[104]

SUPRATENTORIAL INTRACRANIAL NONVASCULAR SURGERY (MONITORS: AWAKE PATIENT, ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM, SOMATOSENSORY-EVOKED POTENTIALS)

The most comprehensive approach to the problem of functional localization of brain structures that need to be preserved to achieve a good outcome is to perform entire segments of a supratentorial craniotomy in an awake patient, who is undergoing repeated neurologic examinations targeted to assess the eloquent area at risk. Such procedures are typically divided into exposure, mapping, and resection phases, and can be done with the patient entirely awake or awake only during periods when the neurologic examination needs to be assessed.[105] Common to all these approaches is the need for meticulous locoregional anesthesia of the scalp at the craniotomy site and the pin sites of the head holder. A second requirement is a patient who is well informed about the awake parts of the procedure and willing and able to cooperate. Dexmedetomidine, propofol, and remifentanil are the agents most frequently incorporated into the anesthetic regimens for awake craniotomy.[106] Complications of awake craniotomy include nausea and vomiting, respiratory problems, and "tight" brain, but are typically mild and occur in less than 10% of cases in experienced centers. Seizures triggered by cortical stimulation can be stopped by the application of iced saline to the exposed cortex or a small amount of barbiturate or propofol.

Seizure Focus Localization Surgery

Patients with epilepsy who have seizures that generalize from an anatomically distinct focus may benefit greatly from the surgical resection of that seizure focus.[107] Precise localization of a seizure focus is important for achieving the therapeutic objective of seizure control and for minimizing complications from the resection. With sensitive magnetic resonance tomography techniques, neuronavigation, and recordings of typical seizure activity in the awake patient after placement of subdural and depth electrodes, the anatomic location and the appropriate extent of the resection frequently can be determined preoperatively.[108] These developments have diminished the role of intraoperative recordings from the epileptogenic zone using electrocorticography.

Electrocorticography is done by placing a grid of subdural electrodes onto the exposed brain surface and recording spontaneous electric activity. Electrocorticography is constrained by several limitations. The time for such recordings is limited to a few minutes; recordings are limited to interictal discharges, which may not correlate with the epileptogenic focus; and recordings need to be obtained from a brain that is under the effects of general anesthetic agents, which alter the EEG.

To provide good conditions during the recording, the level of anesthesia is lightened (e.g., by use of a strict nitrous oxide–narcotic technique or low concentrations of volatile anesthetic drugs). Provocative techniques, such as hyperventilation or administration of a small dose of methohexital, may be useful to activate the seizure focus. Intraoperative seizure mapping requires the involvement of an expert electroencephalographer familiar with this technique.

Motor Strip Localization

Electrophysiologic monitoring of the somatosensory system in anesthetized patients can provide a simple anatomic guide to the location of the rolandic fissure, which separates the parietal primary sensory and frontal primary motor cortex. The fissure is located by recording cortical SSEPs from a subdural strip electrode that is placed perpendicular to the presumed location of the fissure. The exact location of the fissure is characterized by a reversal in the polarity of the primary cortical response between the electrodes straddling the fissure, as illustrated in the clinical example in Fig. 39.14. Subsequent placement of the electrode strip onto the primary motor area of the precentral gyrus allows subsequent monitoring of the corticospinal tract through direct cortical stimulation.

POSTERIOR FOSSA SURGERY (MONITORS: BRAINSTEM AUDITORY-EVOKED POTENTIALS, CRANIAL NERVE MONITORING, SOMATOSENORY-EVOKED POTENTIALS, MOTOR-EVOKED POTENTIALS)

Besides the cerebellum, the posterior fossa contains within the narrow space of the brainstem many crucial neural structures, including the following: the ascending and descending sensorimotor pathways; cranial nerve nuclei; cardiorespiratory centers; the reticular activating system; and the neural networks that underlie crucial protective reflexes, such as eye blink, swallowing, gag, and cough. Posterior fossa surgery is not undertaken lightly, and even small injuries can leave significant neurologic deficits. Although some of these neural structures, such as the sensory, voluntary motor, or auditory pathway, can be monitored consistently, intraoperative integrity of other neural structures is frequently only inferred from the well-being of neighboring structures amenable to monitoring.

Microvascular Decompression of Cranial Nerves V, VII, and IX

Microvascular decompression is done most frequently for trigeminal neuralgia (cranial nerve V) in patients who present acceptable medical risks for a posterior fossa craniotomy. More rarely, the same approach is used to treat hemifacial spasm or neurovascular compromise of lower cranial nerves. The surgery entails dissecting along the intracranial portion of the nerve, identifying offending blood vessels that encroach on the nerve, and placing an insulating Teflon pad between vessel and nerve. The surgery risks ischemic damage to perforating vessels arising from the offending arteries and cerebellar retraction–related damage to cranial nerves. The facial and vestibulocochlear nerves are at particular risk for stretch-induced injury caused by medial retraction of the cerebellum. Retraction-induced stretch produces a prolongation of the interpeak latency between peaks I and V of the BAEP waveform, ultimately leading to a complete loss of all waves beyond wave I (Fig. 39.15). Failure to release retraction in a timely manner results in postoperative hearing loss. Such monitoring increases the chances for preserved hearing after microvascular decompression.[109-113] During microvascular decompression of the facial nerve for hemifacial spasm, recent developments using EMG monitoring

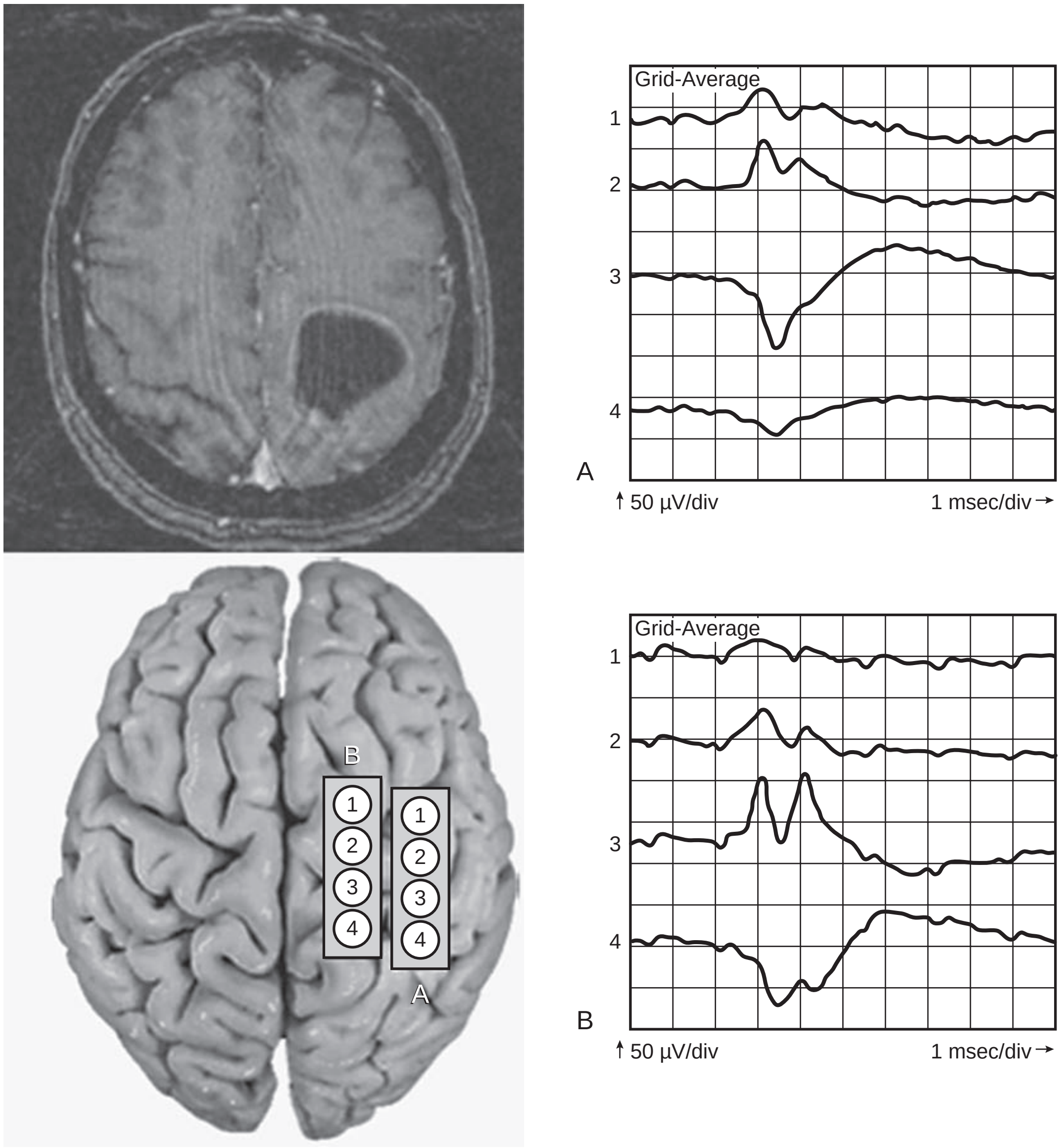


Fig. 39.14 Intraoperative localization of the rolandic fissure separating the primary sensory and motor cortex. The clinical example is from a patient with a large parietal tumor shown in the scan. Two of the recordings made from a four-contact subdural electrode strip are shown. The relative positions of the strip electrode are labeled B and A. In recording A, the primary cortical response from the electrodes anterior to the rolandic fissure shows an upward deflection, whereas the response from electrodes posterior to the fissure shows a downward deflection. Moving the strip electrode anteriorly (recording B) moves this “phase reversal” between electrodes 3 and 4.

have enabled better documentation of the adequacy of nerve decompression and lessen the likelihood of persistence or recurrence of hemifacial spasm postoperatively. This new technique monitors the so-called lateral spread response (LSR) of the facial nerve. A peripheral branch of the facial nerve is stimulated. In the normal patient, this stimulation would not result in a recordable EMG response in a muscle innervated by a different branch of the facial nerve. In patients with hemifacial spasm, EMG responses can be recorded in muscles innervated by a different branch of the facial nerve (an LSR) indicating abnormal crossover of electrical activity. Decompression of the facial nerve has been shown in multiple studies to result in a great decrease or elimination of this LSR, and studies have indicated that elimination of the LSR is highly predictive of immediate postoperative relief of hemifacial spasm.[114]

Vestibular Nerve Schwannoma

Vestibular nerve schwannomas are the most common tumors located in the cerebellopontine angle. Because of the common origin of the cochlear component of cranial nerve VIII and the essentially identical intracranial trajectory of the facial nerve, hearing loss and facial nerve palsy are concerns during surgical resection of these tumors. Size and preoperative auditory function are the best predictors of postoperative hearing.[115] For tumors up to about 1.5 cm in diameter, monitoring of BAEPs can increase the chances of preserving hearing.[116] In addition to BAEPs, the facial nerve is monitored through spontaneous and stimulated EMG. Prospective trials have shown a higher percentage of patients with a functional facial nerve 1 year after surgery if facial nerve monitoring was used. Tonic discharges warn of impending damage caused by stretch or heat

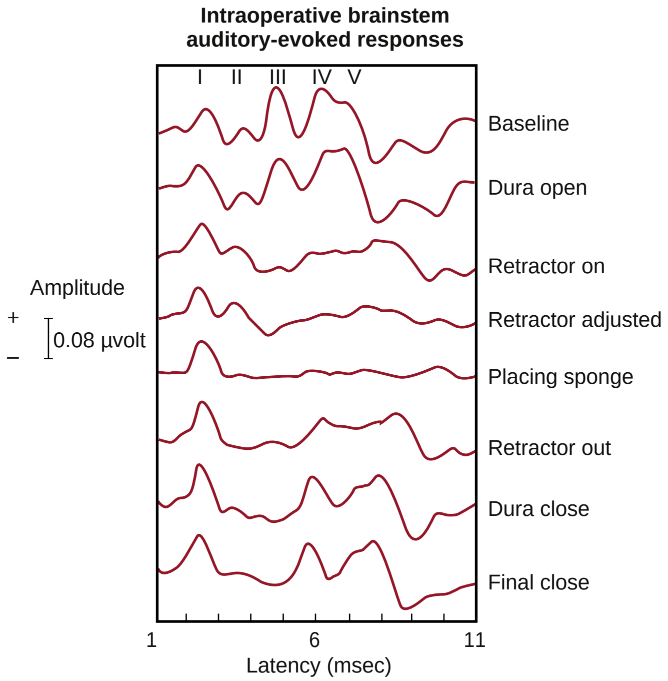


Fig. 39.15 Intraoperative monitoring of brainstem auditory-evoked responses during microvascular decompression. The baseline recording shows the typical five waves of the brainstem auditory-evoked potential response. Intraoperative events are designated to the right of each trace. Placement of the retractor causes a severe increase in latency of wave V even after adjustment of retraction. During placement of the sponge, all waves subsequent to wave I, which originates in the inner ear, are nearly completely lost. Removal of the retractor causes brainstem auditory-evoked potentials to revert toward baseline.

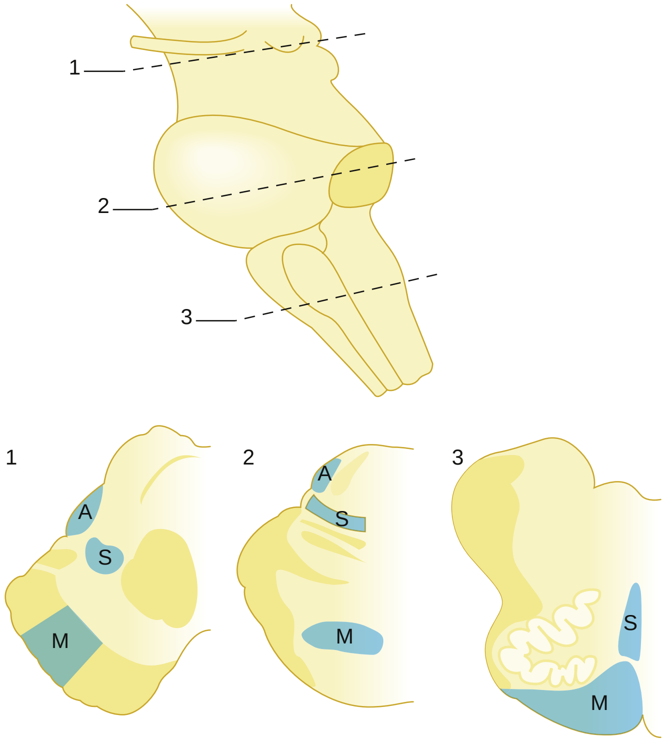


Fig. 39.16 Monitoring of the brainstem with evoked potentials. Evoked potentials monitor specific tracts that encompass defined areas in the brainstem. This is shown in three transverse sections approximately at the levels indicated in the drawings. The areas directly monitored by a given modality are indicated in blue and labeled *M* (motor), *S* (somatosensory), and *A* (auditory). Conclusions about the well-being of the remainder of the brainstem are made by inference from the monitored areas.

(e.g., electrocautery). Sharp section of the nerve may elicit no discharge, and neuromuscular blockade may eliminate the ability to monitor. If the course of the nerve is displaced by the tumor, the surgeon can map its course with a handheld stimulator and real-time auditory feedback.

Other Posterior Fossa Neoplasms

Monitoring for operations on other neoplasms located in the brainstem typically is individualized to each particular case or to the particular surgical approach. EMG and compound muscle action potentials may be recorded not only from the territory of the facial nerve, but also from the tongue to monitor the hypoglossal nerve, and from the glottis through electrodes embedded into a specialized endotracheal tube to monitor the vagus nerve. Such a setup can be used to map the floor of the fourth ventricle functionally, if it is distorted by a tumor.[117] Such monitoring may be insufficient to preserve vital reflexes because only the efferent limb of these reflexes is monitored by recording EMG from innervated muscle. MEPs can be recorded from orbicular oris, or mentalis, to assess the integrity of the facial nerve motor nucleus as well as the proximal facial nerve when tumors prevent visualization of the proximal portion of cranial nerve VII. MEPs can also be recorded from tongue as well. Obtaining these responses relies on placement of additional stimulating electrodes and optimization of stimulating conditions.

Use of neurologic monitoring for brainstem ischemia, although done in some centers, is not well documented or supported by clinical studies. Global well-being of the brainstem may be monitored by combining multiple modalities of evoked potentials, such as BAEPs, SSEPs, and MEPs. Each modality monitors a function whose integrity would be considered important in its own right for the functional outcome of an individual patient. As illustrated in Fig. 39.16, the cross-section monitored by combining all these modalities still leaves out crucial areas. Given that perfusion occurs through perforating vessels, it is easy to see that monitoring may indicate that all is well or, more likely, that a therapeutic intervention was helpful in restoring function, when clinically the patient is still left with a significant deficit. This occurrence invalidates neither monitoring nor the therapeutic intervention, but indicates only that the monitored pathway was not located in an area at risk from the surgical procedure. Because of such obligatory "false-negative" results, few studies address the utility of such monitoring. Given that each individual monitoring modality comes with its own constraints, such an approach typically requires a dedicated neurophysiologist for interpretation and troubleshooting.

SPINAL COLUMN AND SPINAL CORD SURGERY (MONITORS: SOMATOSENSORY-EVOKED POTENTIALS, MOTOR-EVOKED POTENTIALS, ELECTROMYOGRAM, AND BULBOCAVERNOSUS REFLEX)

Intraoperative monitoring of SSEPs has been used most extensively in patients undergoing surgical procedures involving the spinal column or spinal cord, or both. Extensive experience has been gained in patients who have decompressive laminectomies or who have undergone corrective procedures for scoliosis. Intraoperative changes in SSEPs have been noted in 2.5% to 65% of patients undergoing surgical procedures on the spine or spinal cord.[118-121] When these changes are promptly reversed either spontaneously or with interventions by the surgeon or anesthesiologist (e.g., lessening the degree of spine straightening in scoliosis surgery or increasing arterial blood pressure), the patients most often have preserved neurologic function postoperatively. When these changes persisted, however, the patients most often awakened with worsened neurologic function.

False-negative (rare) and false-positive (common) results have been reported with SSEP monitoring during spine surgery. Patients with intact SSEPs throughout the procedure have awakened with a new significant neurologic deficit, but the total reported incidence of this finding is far less than 1% of all cases monitored. Patients with no postoperative neurologic deficit commonly experience significant changes in intraoperative SSEPs.[70] This monitoring pattern is most commonly caused by failure to control for other, nonpathologic factors that may alter the SSEP. Overall, the reliability of properly performed SSEP monitoring to predict the postoperative sensory and motor function has been reported to be excellent.[41,121,122] Motor tracts are not directly monitored by SSEPs, however. In addition, the blood supply to the dorsal columns of the spinal cord, which carries all of the upper extremity SSEPs and at least a portion of the lower extremity SSEPs, is derived primarily from the posterior spinal arteries. The blood supply to motor tracts and neurons is derived primarily from the anterior spinal artery. It is possible for a significant motor deficit to develop postoperatively in patients with intact SSEPs throughout the operative course. Such events have been reported.[123,124]

In operations on the spinal column and after acute spinal cord injury, the sensory and motor changes generally correlate well;[41] however, in patients with neurologic dysfunction after thoracic aortic vascular surgery, frequently posterior spinal cord function (proprioception, vibration, light touch) is left intact when motor and other sensory functions (pain, temperature) are impaired. This result occurred in 32% of patients with neurologic injury after aortic aneurysm repair in one series,[125] with similar results in many other series. Intraoperative SSEP monitoring in these patients carries a significant risk for false-negative results, and as a result, such monitoring is not widely used.

Multiple anecdotal reports and an increasing number of case series suggest that MEP monitoring during surgery on the spine or its blood supply is useful. Several series have reported significant changes in MEPs without changes in SSEPs. These series suggest that combined use of SSEP monitoring and MEP monitoring may eliminate false-negative monitoring patterns during spine surgery.[126-131] In a consensus statement, the American Society of Neurophysiologic Monitoring concluded that use of MEP monitoring in combination with SSEP monitoring is well established to prevent injury to sensory and motor tracts during spinal column surgery.[132] In the case of monitoring paraplegia risk during thoracoabdominal aneurysm surgery, the literature shows mixed but improving support for the use of MEP monitoring. Two earlier studies suggested that MEPs may not be as effective as hoped. The first study recorded MEPs from the lumbar spinal cord in dogs produced by transcranial electric stimulation.[133] Elmore and associates found that these spinally recorded potentials did not accurately predict postoperative motor function. In a second study, Reuter and colleagues[134] recorded MEPs at the spinal cord and the peripheral nerve level in dogs produced by transcranial electric stimulation. They also found that the spinally recorded responses were inaccurate in predicting motor function postoperatively. The peripheral nerve responses disappeared in all animals and were not present 24 hours later regardless of whether the animal could move its lower extremities.

These studies suggest that the spinally recorded MEP likely represents a response generated by the descending corticospinal tract. This white matter pathway is resistant to ischemia compared with the more metabolically active anterior horn cells (gray matter). Recovery of this white matter–generated MEP response could occur after reperfusion of the cord, whereas the gray matter might not recover. Responses recorded from the peripheral nerve would reflect postsynaptic anterior horn cell function, but lower extremity ischemia occurring after aortic cross-clamping may preclude recording this or the response from muscles during surgery.

More recent clinical series have shown much greater success with MEP monitoring during aortic vascular surgery in correctly detecting inadequate spinal cord blood flow and in improving operative outcome. The technique has proven useful, particularly when operative strategies such as reimplantation of crucial intercostal vessels based on results of MEP monitoring, alteration of spinal cord perfusion pressure (blood pressure increase or cerebrospinal fluid drainage or both), spinal cord cooling, and other methods are used.[135] Additional studies, particularly with the use of endovascular stent repair of thoracoabdominal aneurysms, have found MEPs very useful in guiding therapy and improving outcome.[136,137]

For surgeries involving the conus medullaris and sacral nerve roots such as untethering of the spinal cord or resection of a lipoma of the filum terminale, tcMEPs can be recorded from the anal sphincter. In addition, the reflex arc of the bulbocavernosus reflex can be recorded, by stimulating the pudendal nerve and recording a motor response from the anal sphincter.[138]

PERIPHERAL NERVE SURGERY (MONITORS: ELECTROMYOGRAM, NERVE ACTION POTENTIAL)

Neurologic monitoring for surgeries involving peripheral nerves can be done in two different settings. In the first setting, the peripheral nerve is intact, but threatened by the surgery. Examples would be an intrinsic nerve tumor, such as a schwannoma or an extensive soft tissue tumor, particularly if it displaces the normal anatomic course of a nerve. Monitoring of spontaneous and stimulated muscle responses from muscle groups innervated by the nerve in question can be used to guide the resection. Spontaneous EMG discharges can be generated by stretch or compression of the nerve, by local heating from electrocautery, or from ischemia. Two caveats apply to the monitoring

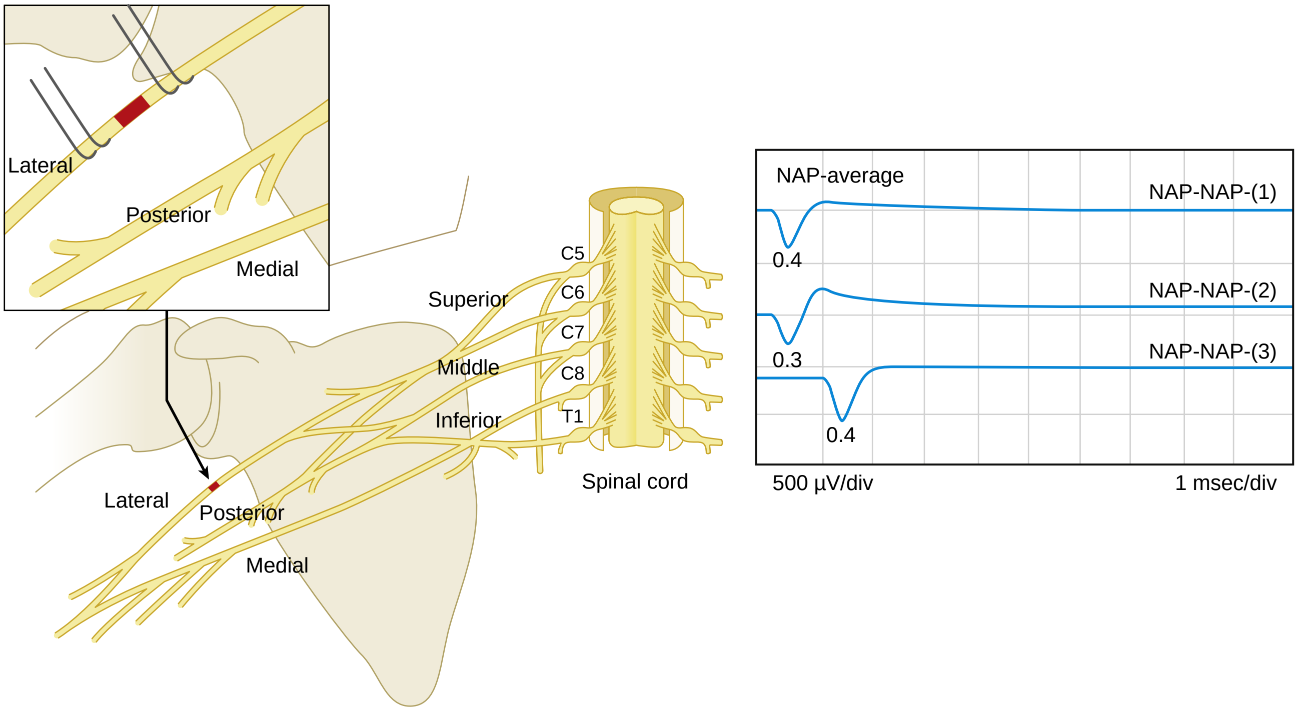


Fig. 39.17 Recording a nerve action potential *(NAP)* during a brachial plexus exploration. The site of the injury on the lateral fascicle is indicated in red. As shown in the inset, the surgeon places hook electrodes on either side of the exposed part of the nerve. If the injury is limited to an axonotmesis, proximal stimulation will result in a distal NAP similar to the ones shown in the recording to the right. The delay in the response in the third tracing is simply the result of a change in technical settings.

of spontaneous EMG. First, the neuromuscular junction is part of the monitored pathway, and muscle relaxation decreases/abolishes the sensitivity of monitoring in a dose-dependent manner. Second, sharp section of the nerve may not result in a noticeable discharge. To search out the course of the nerve intraoperatively, the surgeon may stimulate the wound area with a hand-held probe and listen for stimulated EMG or palpate for muscle contraction. The underlying concept should be familiar to anesthesiologists from the use of nerve stimulators in regional anesthesia.

A variation of this technique of monitoring that is in widespread use, because it is conceptually simple, is monitoring of pedicle screw placement during spinal instrumentation with the aim of avoiding nerve root injuries owing to malpositioned pedicle screws.[139,140] The aim is to avoid malpositioned screws that weaken the construct or cause postoperative radicular pain. Typically, the pilot hole or, less desirable, the shank of an implanted pedicle screw is stimulated repetitively with increasing current to determine the threshold for eliciting a dermatomal compound muscle potential. The interpretation of responses is complicated by the fact that the anatomical relationship between pedicles and nerve roots depends on the level of the spinal cord because the spinal cord is shorter than the bony spinal column. Thus a medially misplaced screw in the lumbar region will come to lie next to a nerve root, whereas in the thoracic spine, a medial misplacement puts the screw next to the corticospinal tract, which cannot be activated by single stimuli. Because thresholds vary among cervical, thoracic, and lumbar spine, as well as between healthy and diseased nerve roots, this technique has limitations but is widely thought to be useful.[141]

A second setting where monitoring of peripheral nerves is used is in patients with prolonged weakness and sensory loss after nerve injury undergoing nerve exploration.[142] The aim is to determine whether nerve reconstruction may improve outcome. The area of the lesion is determined by preoperative nerve conduction studies. Intraoperatively, the nerve is first stimulated proximal to the lesion, and a recording of the nerve action potential is made directly from the nerve distal to the lesion, as illustrated in Fig. 39.17. If there is nerve conduction across the lesion, lysis of scar is performed, and the incision is closed. Natural recovery by means of axonal regrowth produces the best outcome. If conduction does not occur across the lesion, resection of the damaged nerve and nerve cable grafting is performed.[65,143,144]

APPLICATIONS OF INTRAOPERATIVE MONITORING TO PEDIATRIC PATIENTS

In recent years many of the techniques described above have been used during surgery on children as young as 6 weeks of age. Very young children present special challenges due to the immaturity of the CNS. Incomplete myelination of specific tracts that carry sensory or motor signals is the primary source of the challenges. While light anesthesia (0.5 minimum alveolar concentration [MAC] volatile anesthetic) allows MEPs to be elicited from healthy adolescents, infants and young children are exquisitely sensitive to the effects of volatile anesthetic drugs. Therefore total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA) techniques are the anesthetics of choice when recording evoked potentials from these patients. In addition, adaptive strategies need to be applied by the monitoring team to overcome the effects of myelination delays and other developmental factors (Table 39.2).

TABLE 39.2 Additional Considerations When Monitoring Infants and Young Children

Modality	Observation	Developmental Neurophysiology	Compensation Strategy
SSEPs—MN & UN	Prolonged Erb's to cortical or cervical to cortical inter-peak latency	Incomplete myelination of medial lemniscus and thalamocortical pathways	Avoid volatile anesthetic drugs, avoid burst suppression, reduce stimulation rate
SSEP—PTN	Difficult to obtain; low amplitude	Incomplete myelination of dorsal columns; asynchronous volleys	As above, increase pulse length; optimize signal:noise ratio
tcMEP		Cortical and spinal cord motor neurons very susceptible to effects of volatile agents. Variance in conduction velocity of large CST fibers exceeds mean conduction velocity	TIVA, may need low-dose ketamine to help support BP. Double-train stimulation with unequal train lengths; optimizing inter-train interval
D-wave	Difficult to obtain in children under 24 months of age	Signal dispersion due to large variance in conduction velocities	Electrodes with larger surface area may be helpful
ABR	Low quality signals with volatile agents	uncertain	TIVA for ABR for less than 24 months
Bulbocavernosus Reflex	Very susceptible to effects of volatile agents	Oligosynaptic reflex; sensitivity to volatile agents persists	Double pulse train with large inter-train interval

ABR, Auditory brainstem response; *D-wave,* positive or negative deflection recorded from electrodes placed directly over the spinal cord; *SSEPs,* somatosensory-evoked potentials; *tcMEP,* transcranial motor-evoked potential; *TIVA,* total intravenous anesthesia.

Modified from Francis L, Busso V, McAuliffe JJ. Intraoperative neuromonitoring in pediatric surgery. In: Koth A, Sloan TB, Toleikis JR, eds. *Monitoring the Nervous System for Anesthesiologists and Other Health Care Professionals*. Cham: Springer Int; 2017.

Some monitored surgical procedures are performed almost exclusively in children. One example is selective dorsal rhizotomies for relief of spasticity associated with cerebral palsy. This procedure involves interrogation of lower extremity dorsal root subdivisions (rootlets) and evaluating the compound action potentials generated in response. This technique is best performed with a TIVA technique. Infant/toddler hearing evaluations may require the use of auditory brainstem response tests under anesthesia. Experience at the Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center (CCHMC) suggests that a propofol infusion anesthetic yields a more reliable assessment of wave V than a sevoflurane-based anesthetic.

It is important to recognize that the EEG patterns associated with an anesthetic state in adults do not apply to infants under anesthesia. Infants less than 3 months have almost no change in their EEGs when transitioning from a quiet resting state to an anesthetized state as slow wave patterns dominate both states. Alpha and theta patterns emerge under anesthesia at 4 months of age but differ from those of older children and adults.[145]

In summary, infants and young children can benefit from intraoperative neurophysiological monitoring if both monitoring and anesthetic techniques are appropriately modified.

NONNEUROLOGIC SURGERY THAT RISKS DAMAGE TO THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM (MONITORS: ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM, TRANSCRANIAL DOPPLER, CEREBRAL OXIMETRY, JUGULAR VENOUS OXYGEN SATURATION)

Cardiopulmonary Bypass

Electroencephalogram. In humans, changes that occur with the institution of CPB may alter the EEG by multiple different mechanisms. Plasma and brain concentrations of anesthetic drugs may be altered by CPB or by anesthetic drugs commonly given during CPB, alterations in arterial carbon dioxide tension and arterial blood pressure may occur, and hemodilution with hypothermic perfusate nearly always occurs. These effects, all of which may produce EEG changes similar to pathologic changes seen with ischemia, make it difficult to interpret EEG changes occurring during CPB.

Levy and others[146,147] tried to distinguish the normal effects of hypothermia from other events occurring at the institution and conclusion of CPB. Initially, Levy concluded that only a qualitative relationship could be determined, but later, with the use of a much more sophisticated EEG analysis technique (approximate entropy), EEG changes associated with changes in temperature could be quantified.

Chabot and colleagues[148] and Edmonds and colleagues[149] have attempted to use quantitative (processed, multiple-channel) EEG during CPB to detect cerebral hypoperfusion and relate these changes to postoperative neurologic function. In addition, some minimal work has been done with intervention after detection of cerebral hypoperfusion using quantitative EEG. Although the data seem promising, only a few patients have been studied, with very few corroborating studies. In addition, this type of monitoring is extremely costly in time, personnel, and equipment. Given the lack of convincing outcome data, the cost-to-benefit ratio is unclear at best. Some other investigators failed to show any convincing relationship between intraoperative EEG parameters and postoperative neurologic function, especially in small infants and children.[150,151] Whether the processed, quantitative EEG provides useful information for clinical management of patients during CPB is not clear. None of the currently available studies and recommendations would support an evidence-based justification for their routine application. However, use of EEG to document electrocortical silence and maximum reduction of cerebral metabolism prior to institution of circulatory arrest seems logical.

Transcranial Doppler. TCD ultrasound can monitor the cerebral circulation during CPB. Anecdotal reports and case series document the use of TCD for determining adequacy of CBF, detection of emboli, and detection of improper cannula placement.[152] Only very limited outcome data exist, and use of TCD ultrasound during CPB does not stand up to evidence-based examination, primarily because of lack of information. Probe placement instability and inability to obtain signals in some patients also have limited the use of this monitor intraoperatively. Finally, although the hypothesis that cerebral microemboli are at least part of the pathogenesis of postoperative cognitive decline following CPB is attractive, a recent study failed to demonstrate any relationship between CPB counts of presumed emboli and postoperative cognitive dysfunction.[153]

Cerebral Oximetry and Jugular Venous Oxygen Saturation. As is the case with EEG monitoring during CPB, there are multiple case reports and several series that advocate the use of NIRS or jugular venous oxygen saturation ($Sjvo_2$) as indicators of adequate perfusion of the brain during CPB.[154,155] Incorrect placement of CPB cannulae has been detected clinically and in laboratory studies. One more recent series of patients undergoing CPB for coronary bypass surgery showed a higher incidence of major organ system dysfunction and longer hospital stays in patients with lower baseline and intraoperative cerebral oxygen saturation values.[156] The same questions exist for this application of NIRS, however, as do for the use of NIRS during carotid vascular surgical procedures. Although a recent systematic review of the use of NIRS during CPB showed that data are insufficient to conclude that interventions based on low cerebral oxygen saturation values prevent either stroke or postoperative cognitive dysfunction,[157] several more recent studies suggest significant promise for this modality when used in combination with TCD ultrasound. Use of NIRS and TCD ultrasound together identified a significant percentage of patients undergoing CPB with impaired autoregulation who were at higher risk for postoperative cognitive dysfunction and/or stroke.[158-160] This patient population may benefit from higher mean arterial pressure (MAP) during CPB. Use of NIRS during CPB clearly provides information that would not otherwise be available, but more work is needed before we fully understand the role of this monitor during CPB.

$Sjvo_2$ is very invasive. Although data from case reports and studies suggest that $Sjvo_2$ may have utility in detecting inadequate CBF, lack of outcome data, lack of clearly defined critical values at different temperatures during CPB, and availability of less invasive modalities (EEG, cerebral oximetry) have resulted in only limited use of this monitoring method during CPB. Based on current information, no neurologic monitoring techniques, either alone or in combination, are clearly useful in improving outcome during surgical procedures requiring CPB. Further research is needed before the cost in personnel and equipment of neurologic monitoring during CPB can be justified.

INTENSIVE CARE APPLICATIONS OF NEUROLOGIC MONITORING (MONITORS: ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM, EVOKED POTENTIALS, TRANSCRANIAL DOPPLER, JUGULAR VENOUS OXYGEN SATURATION)

Secondary injury to the CNS has been recognized in past decades as a major modifiable risk factor in patients with CNS disease. Aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage, stroke, and traumatic brain injury are examples of CNS insults in which secondary injury has important implications for the ultimate functional outcome.[161-163] These same diseases frequently result in a primary insult to the CNS that severely constrains the utility of the clinical neurologic examination because of the need for mechanical ventilation and sedation. Many techniques of neurologic monitoring discussed earlier are used in the intensive care unit. Generally, however, techniques that require the continued presence of skilled technologists, such as monitoring of evoked potentials, are prohibitively expensive and of less practical value than techniques that provide data that easily integrates into the physiologic support provided through intensive care or techniques that can be performed as daily assessments. Some of this neurophysiologic data can provide important prognostic information in comatose patients and guide decision making.

Continuous Electroencephalogram Monitoring

Continuous EEG monitoring may be of benefit in comatose patients. It facilitates timely intervention for specific diagnoses, such as nonconvulsive seizures, as the underlying cause of a fluctuating neurologic status, or point to focal problems such as regional ischemia due to vasospasm after subarachnoid hemorrhage.[164] The perceived utility of continuous EEG monitoring has led to a degree of standardization in indications and the logistics of the application of this technique in the intensive care unit.[165,166]

Cerebral Ischemia

Cerebral ischemia is an important cause of secondary injury to the CNS. It can be difficult to detect in patients who are either comatose or sedated, but can occur even in patients with adequate cerebral perfusion pressure.[167,168] Three techniques may provide intensivists with additional information about cerebral perfusion. None of the monitors is considered “standard of care.” As with all monitors, the impact of the monitor on outcome depends on the quality of the therapeutic interventions that result from integration of the additional data into the clinical management of a given patient.

$Sjvo_2$ monitoring is used most extensively in the intensive care unit to monitor patients with traumatic brain injury. The data have been used to guide blood pressure and ventilatory management to optimize blood flow. $Sjvo_2$ monitoring has had a major effect on ventilatory management of head-injured patients and has significantly reduced the routine use of hyperventilation in neurosurgical patients.[169-172] $Sjvo_2$ values of less than 50% generally indicate cerebral ischemia. Increases in $Sjvo_2$ may occur in response to therapy, or they may be an ominous sign if the increase is caused by falling demand because of neuronal death.

Similar to $Sjvo_2$ monitoring, monitoring of $P_{Br}o_2$ and blood flow is used most frequently in patients with traumatic brain injury. $P_{Br}o_2$ performs well in clinical practice. Decreases to less than 10 to 15 mm Hg are associated with worsening outcome,[22,173] whereas $P_{Br}o_2$-targeted treatment strategies may improve outcome.[174]

TCD ultrasound is widely used in the intensive care unit to document the presence and severity of cerebral vasospasm after subarachnoid hemorrhage. As the major cerebral arteries narrow, flow velocity within the lumen must increase if blood flow is to be maintained. Such narrowing occurs 12 to 24 hours before the onset of clinical symptoms, thus allowing therapy to be initiated before the onset of clinical symptoms.[175-179] Mean flow velocities of more than 120 cm/s seem to correlate well with angiographic vasospasm,[180,181] although intracranial pressure and concurrent therapy to raise cerebral perfusion pressure modify the flow velocity. The latter two factors result in characteristic changes of the TCD waveform, however, and preserve the utility of the examination.

Prognosis in Coma and Determination of Brain Death

EEG monitoring may help to assess the clinical course and the prognosis of comatose patients. Assessment of prognosis must be separated from the insult that precipitated the coma by more than 24 hours. If not, the EEG may reflect predominantly the effect of the insult and may not predict prognosis. More than 24 hours after the insult, spontaneous sustained burst suppression correlates strongly with severe irreversible brain injury.[182] Absence of EEG variability portends a high likelihood of persistent vegetative state or death,[182,183] whereas spontaneous variability, reactivity to external stimuli, and typical sleep patterns are associated with more favorable outcomes.[184-186]

A specific indication for EEG monitoring is the therapeutic induction of a coma by barbiturate administration. Because neither blood nor cerebrospinal fluid concentrations of barbiturates reliably predict burst suppression and near-maximal reduction in cerebral metabolic rate of oxygen consumption,[187] and because barbiturate administration usually requires an increase in cardiovascular support, documentation of a burst suppression pattern on EEG allows the use of the minimal effective dose of barbiturate.

Similar to EEG, evoked potential studies have a place in predicting prognosis in comatose patients.[188] The presence of normal SSEPs bilaterally is an excellent prognostic sign, whereas the absence of any SSEP cortical response is a poor prognostic indicator. The degree of bad outcome can be predicted by BAEPs. Intact and normal BAEPs with absent cortical SSEPs predict a best outcome of a chronic vegetative state. Outcome may be worse, however, because BAEPs commonly deteriorate later with rostral-to-caudal deterioration. Absent BAEP responses beyond wave I predict a high likelihood of brain death. Present but abnormal SSEPs are associated with outcomes intermediate between good to high function and a chronic vegetative state.[189-198]

TCD ultrasound also has been used in the intensive care unit as an aid to the diagnosis of brain death. As intracranial pressure increases, the pulsatility of the TCD waveform increases, accentuating the systolic peak and diminishing flow during diastole. With further increases in intracranial pressure, a characteristic to-and-fro pattern of flow is established, which is consistent with clinical brain death.[199] TCD studies are easily performed at the bedside and can minimize the need for unnecessary transports of the patient for definitive radiologic studies.

Nonsurgical Factors Influencing Monitoring Results

ANESTHESIA AND THE ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM

Anesthetic drugs affect the frequency and amplitude of EEG waveforms. Although each drug class and each specific drug has some specific, dose-related EEG effects (Table 39.3), some basic anesthesia-related EEG patterns may be described. Subanesthetic doses of intravenous and inhaled anesthetics usually produce an increase in frontal beta activity and abolish the alpha activity normally seen in the occipital leads in an awake, relaxed patient with the eyes closed. As the patient loses consciousness with general anesthesia, the brain waves become larger in amplitude and slower in frequency. In the frontal areas, small beta activity seen in an awake patient slows to the alpha range and increases in size. In combination with the loss of the occipital alpha activity, this phenomenon produces the appearance of a “shift” of the alpha activity from the posterior cortex to the anterior cortex. Further increases in the dose of inhaled or intravenous anesthetic drugs produce further slowing of the EEG. Some anesthetic drugs suppress EEG activity totally (see Table 39.3). Other anesthetic drugs never produce burst suppression or an isoelectric EEG, despite increasing dose, either because they are incapable of completely suppressing the EEG (e.g., opioids, benzodiazepines) or because cardiovascular toxicity of the drug (e.g., halothane) prevents administration of a large enough dose.

Intravenous Anesthetic Drugs

Barbiturates, Propofol, and Etomidate. Despite widely varying potencies and durations of action, barbiturates, propofol, and etomidate produce similar EEG patterns (Fig. 39.18 shows EEG effects of thiopental). These drugs all follow the basic anesthesia-related EEG pattern described previously with initial EEG activation (see Fig. 39.18A), followed by dose-related depression. As the patient loses consciousness, characteristic frontal spindles are seen (see Fig. 39.18B), which are replaced by polymorphic 1- to 3-Hz activity (see Fig. 39.18C) as the drug dose is increased. Further increases in dose result in lengthening periods of suppression interspersed with periods of activity (burst suppression). With a very high dose, EEG silence results. All of these drugs have been reported to cause epileptiform activity in humans, but epileptiform activity is clinically significant only after methohexital and etomidate when given in subhypnotic doses.

Ketamine. Ketamine does not follow the basic anesthesia-related EEG pattern. Anesthesia with ketamine is characterized by frontally dominant rhythmic, high-amplitude theta activity. Increasing doses produce intermittent polymorphic delta activity of very large amplitude interspersed with low-amplitude beta activity.[200] Electrocortical silence cannot be produced with ketamine. EEG activity may be very disorganized and variable at all doses. This disorganization of the EEG with ketamine is responsible for the failure of the bispectral index (BIS) to be useful in looking at the effect of ketamine on consciousness.[201] Recovery of normal EEG

TABLE 39.3 Anesthetic Drugs and Electroencephalogram

Drug	Effect on EEG Frequency	Effect on EEG Amplitude	Burst Suppression?
Isoflurane, Sevoflurane, Desflurane			Yes, >1.5 MAC
Subanesthetic	Loss of alpha, ↑frontal beta		
Anesthetic	Frontal 4-13 Hz activity		
Increasing dose >1.5 MAC	Diffuse theta and delta → burst suppression → silence	↓0	
Nitrous oxide (alone)	Frontal fast oscillatory activity (>30 Hz)	↓, especially with inspired concentration >50%	No
Barbiturates			Yes, with high doses
Low dose	Fast frontal ↑ beta activity	Slight	
Moderate dose	↑Frontal alpha frequency spindles		
Increasing high dose	Diffuse delta → burst suppression → silence	↓0	
Etomidate			Yes, with high doses
Low dose	Fast frontal beta activity		
Moderate dose	Frontal alpha frequency spindles		
Increasing high dose	Diffuse delta → burst suppression → silence	↓0	
Propofol			Yes, with high doses
Low dose	Loss of alpha; frontal beta		
Moderate dose	Frontal delta; waxing/waning alpha		
Increasing high dose	Diffuse delta → burst suppression → silence	↓0	
Ketamine			No
Low dose	Loss of alpha, variability	↓	
Moderate dose	Frontal rhythmic delta		
High dose	Polymorphic delta; some beta	Beta is low amplitude	
Benzodiazepines			No
Low dose	Loss of alpha; increased frontal beta activity		
High dose	Frontally dominant delta and theta		
Opioids			No
Low dose	Loss of beta; alpha slows	None	
Moderate dose	Diffuse theta, some delta		
High dose	Delta, often synchronized		
Dexmedetomidine	Moderate slowing, prominent spindles		No

Alpha =8-13 Hz frequency; beta =>13 Hz frequency; delta =<4 Hz frequency; theta = 4-7 Hz frequency. *EEG*, Electroencephalogram; *MAC*, minimum alveolar concentration.

activity even after a single bolus dose of ketamine is slow compared with barbiturates. There is no information available about the relationship between emergence reactions after ketamine and the EEG. Ketamine also has been associated with increased epileptiform activity.[200]

Benzodiazepines. Despite varying potencies and durations of action, benzodiazepines also follow the basic anesthesia-related EEG pattern. As a class, however, these drugs are incapable of producing burst suppression or an isoelectric EEG.

Opioids. As a class, opioids do not follow the basic anesthesia-related EEG pattern. Opioids generally produce a dose-related decrease in frequency and increase in amplitude of the EEG. If no further doses of opiates are given, alpha and beta activity return as drug redistribution occurs. The rapidity of return depends on the initial dose and on the drug. In rats, remifentanil is associated with the most rapid return to normal.[202] Complete suppression of the EEG cannot be obtained with opioids. Epileptiform activity occurs in humans and in animals receiving large to supraclinical doses of opioids. Sharp wave activity is common after induction of anesthesia with fentanyl, with 20% of patients showing this phenomenon after 30 μg/kg; 60%, after 50 μg/kg; 58%, after 60 μg/kg; and 80%, after 70 μg/kg.[203] Alfentanil bolus has been used clinically to activate seizure foci during epilepsy surgery.[204] This epileptiform activity is mainly noted in the frontotemporal region.

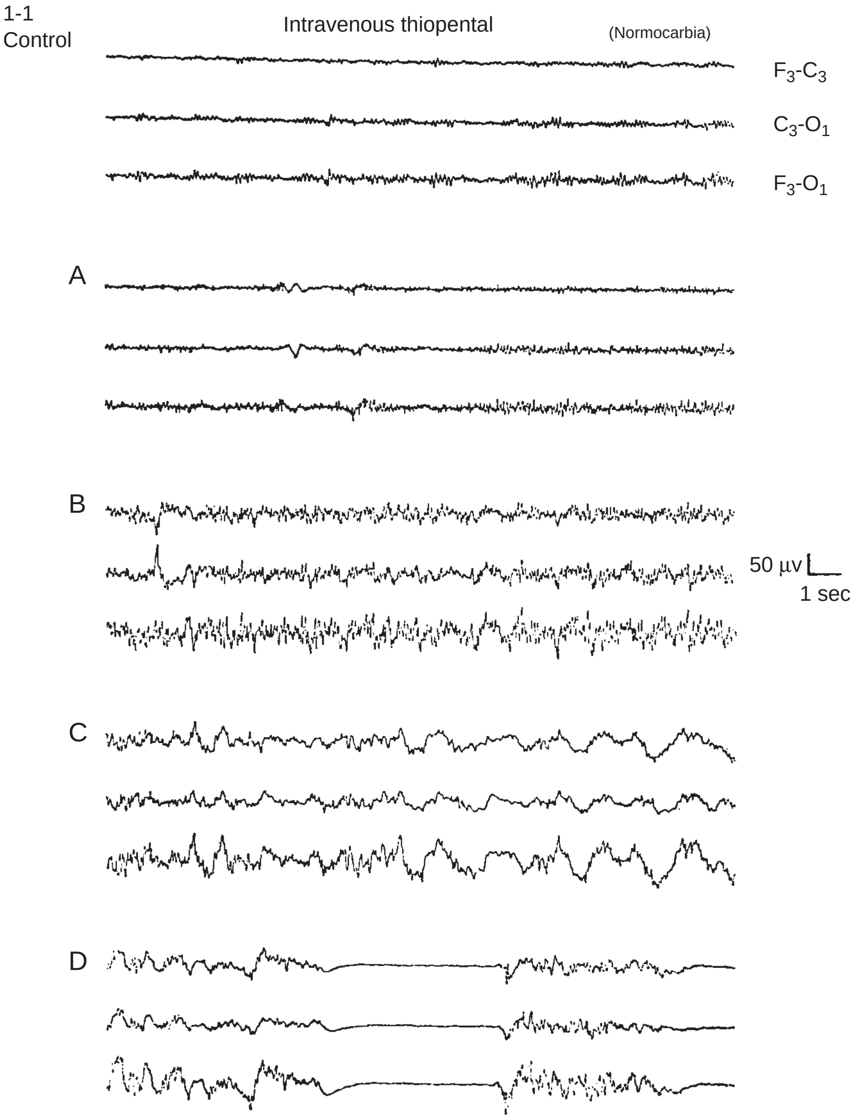


Fig. 39.18 Electroencephalogram effects of intravenous administration of thiopental in humans. (A) Rapid activity. (B) Barbiturate spindles. (C) Slow waves. and (D) Burst suppression. (From Clark DL, Rosner BS. Neurophysiologic effects of general anesthetics. *Anesthesiology.* 1973;38:564.)

Dexmedetomidine. Dexmedetomidine is being increasingly used for sedation in the operating room and in the intensive care unit, and is also used for sedation during diagnostic EEG studies in children. EEG studies of patients undergoing sedation with dexmedetomidine alone show patterns similar to those seen in normal human sleep with increased slow-wave activity and sleep spindles prominent.[205] Burst suppression or an isoelectric EEG pattern cannot be produced even with high doses of the drug. Level of sedation with dexmedetomidine can be effectively monitored using processed EEG parameters and has been reported using BIS and entropy techniques.[206] Interestingly, BIS values at comparable levels of sedation appear to be lower with dexmedetomidine than propofol.[207]

Inhaled Anesthetics

Nitrous Oxide. Used alone, nitrous oxide causes a decrease in amplitude and frequency of the dominant occipital alpha rhythm. With the onset of analgesia and depressed consciousness, frontally dominant fast oscillatory activity (>30 Hz) is frequently seen.[208] This activity may persist to some extent for 50 minutes after discontinuation of nitrous oxide. When nitrous oxide is used in combination with other agents, it increases the effects that would be associated with the agent alone clinically and with respect to the EEG pattern seen.

Isoflurane, Sevoflurane, and Desflurane. Potent inhaled anesthetic drugs, including halothane and enflurane, which are no longer available, follow the basic anesthesia-related EEG pattern. Isoflurane initially causes an activation of the EEG followed by a slowing of the EEG activity that is more marked with increasing dose. Isoflurane begins to produce periods of EEG suppression at 1.5 MAC, which become longer with increasing dose until electric silence is produced at 2 to 2.5 MAC. Isolated epileptiform patterns sometimes can be seen during intersuppression activity at 1.5 to 2 MAC isoflurane.[209] Sevoflurane causes similar dose-dependent EEG effects. Equi-MAC concentrations of sevoflurane and isoflurane

TABLE 39.4 Ability of an Individual Anesthetic Drug to Produce a Change in Sensory- and Motor-Evoked Potentials That Could Be Mistaken for a Surgically Induced Change

	SSEPS		BAEPS		VEPS		TRANSCRANIAL MEPS	
Drug	**LAT**	**AMP**	**LAT**	**AMP**	**LAT**	**AMP**	**LAT**	**AMP**
Isoflurane	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Nitrous oxide*	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Barbiturates	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Etomidate	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No
Propofol	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Diazepam	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Midazolam	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Ketamine	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No
Opioids	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
Dexmedetomidine	No	No	No	No	No	ND	ND	No

*Increases the anesthetic effect of the drug or drugs with which it is used.

Note. This table is not quantitative in any way. "Yes" or "No" designations indicate whether an individual drug is capable of producing an effect on any portion of the evoked response that could be mistaken for a surgically induced change.

AMP, Amplitude; *BAEPs,* brainstem auditory-evoked potentials; *LAT,* latency; *MEPs,* motor-evoked potentials; *ND,* no data available from the literature; *SSEPs,* somatosensory-evoked potentials; *VEPs,* visual-evoked potentials.

cause similar EEG changes.[210] Epileptiform activity has been induced by administration of sevoflurane in patients without epilepsy, and seizure activity on EEG, but not clinical seizure activity, has been reported in pediatric patients with a history of epilepsy during induction of anesthesia with sevoflurane.[211,212] Despite these observations, sevoflurane, similar to other inhalation drugs, is not suitable for use during electrocorticography for localization of seizure foci.[213] EEG patterns seen with enflurane are similar to the patterns seen with isoflurane except that epileptiform activity is considerably more prominent. At 2 to 3 MAC, burst suppression is seen, but virtually all intersuppression activity consists of large spike/wave pattern discharges. Hyperventilation with high concentrations of enflurane increases the length of suppression, decreases the duration of bursts, but increases the amplitude and main frequency component of the intersuppression epileptiform activity. Frank EEG seizures also may occur with enflurane that produce the same cerebral metabolic effects as pentylenetetrazol, a known convulsant.

Halothane also produces EEG patterns similar to those of isoflurane, but dosages of halothane that would produce burst suppression in the EEG (3-4 MAC) are associated with profound cardiovascular toxicity. Desflurane produces EEG changes similar in nature to equi-MAC concentrations of isoflurane. In limited clinical studies, there has been no evidence of epileptiform activity with desflurane, despite hyperventilation and 1.6 MAC dosage,[214] and desflurane has been used as a treatment of refractory status epilepticus.[215]

Clinical studies have shown that the EEG effects of inhaled anesthetic drugs are influenced by age and baseline EEG characteristics. Older patients and patients with EEG slowing at baseline were more sensitive to the EEG effects of isoflurane and desflurane. As anesthesia was deepened, similar EEG pattern changes were noted, but these changes occurred at lower end-tidal anesthetic concentrations.[216]

BOX 39.1 Guidelines for Choosing Anesthetic Techniques During Procedures in Which Sensory-Evoked Responses Are Monitored

1. Intravenous drugs have significantly less effect than "equipotent" doses of inhaled anesthetics
2. Combinations of drugs generally produce "additive" effects
3. Subcortical (spinal or brainstem) sensory-evoked responses are very resistant to the effects of anesthetic drugs. If subcortical responses provide sufficient information for the surgical procedure, anesthetic technique is not important, and effects on cortically recorded responses may be ignored

ANESTHESIA AND SENSORY-EVOKED RESPONSES

Volatile Anesthetics

Multiple drugs used in the perioperative period can influence the ability to monitor SERs accurately (Table 39.4). An extensive review from 2003 provides the interested clinician with a detailed analysis of all drug effects on SERs,[217] which is beyond the scope of this chapter. Table 39.4 does not quantify drug effects, but rather lists whether an individual drug is capable of producing a change in any part of an evoked response that could be mistaken for a surgically induced change. A "no" designation in this table does not mean that there are no effects of a given drug on SERs. The "no" designation indicates that any effects that do occur would not be called clinically significant by *clinicians experienced in intraoperative monitoring*. Several general concepts (Box 39.1) help the clinician who is trying to determine the best choice of drugs for use during monitored cases.

The volatile anesthetics isoflurane, sevoflurane, desflurane, enflurane, and halothane have similar effects in differing degrees on all types of SERs. VEPs are the most sensitive

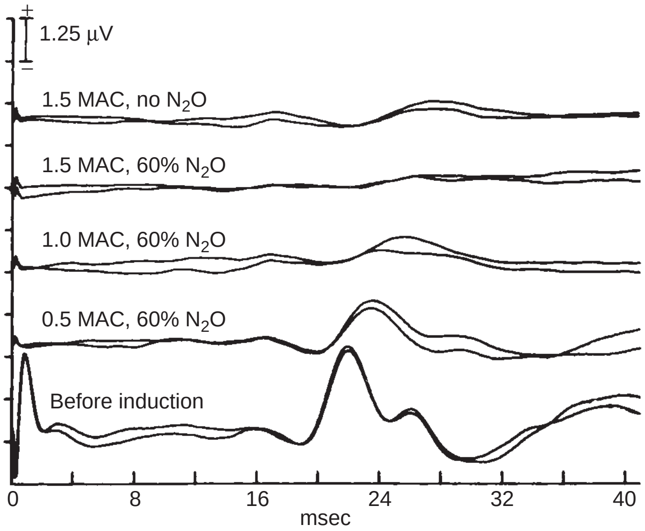


Fig. 39.19 **Representative somatosensory-evoked potential cortical responses (C-3, C-4-FPz) at various minimum alveolar concentration *(MAC)* levels of isoflurane.** (From Peterson DO, Drummond JC, Todd MM. Effects of halothane, enflurane, isoflurane, and nitrous oxide on somatosensory-evoked potentials in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:35.)

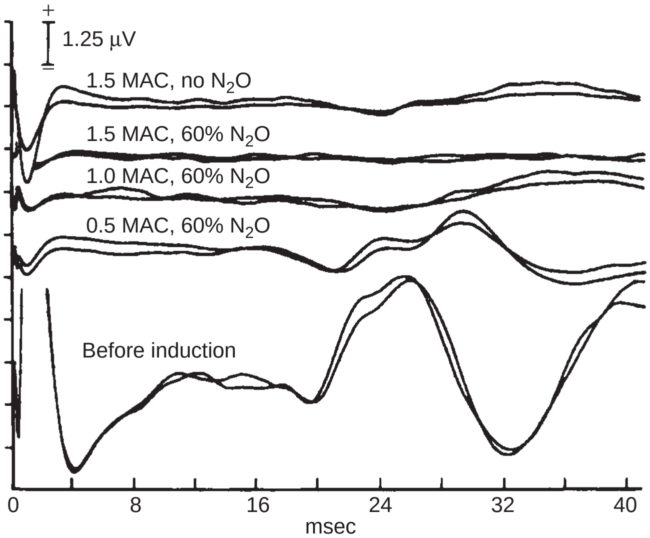


Fig. 39.20 **Representative somatosensory-evoked potential cortical responses (C-3, or C-4-FPz) at various minimum alveolar concentration *(MAC)* levels of enflurane.** (From Peterson DO, Drummond JC, Todd MM. Effects of halothane, enflurane, isoflurane, and nitrous oxide on somatosensory-evoked potentials in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:35.)

to the effects of volatile anesthetics, and BAEPs are the most resistant to anesthetic-induced changes. Spinal and subcortical SSEP responses are significantly less affected than cortical potentials.[218-220]

SSEPs, because they are the most widely used intraoperative SER technique, are the most completely studied with respect to the effects of anesthetic drugs. The effects of the currently used volatile anesthetics on cortical SSEPs are dose-dependent increases in latency and conduction times and a decrease in amplitude of cortically, but not subcortically recorded signals.[221] When comparing the different volatile agents, studies have reported conflicting results.[218,220] None of these differences are clinically important and may be ignored by the practicing clinician. With respect to the newer agents, desflurane and sevoflurane seem to have qualitatively and quantitatively similar effects on SERs as isoflurane.[222-225] In neurologically normal patients, 0.5 to 1 MAC of any of the potent inhaled agents in the presence of nitrous oxide is compatible with monitoring of cortical SSEPs (Figs. 39.19–39.21).[217] Neurologically impaired patients may show a significantly greater sensitivity to inhaled agents, even to the point of not tolerating any recordable level of inhaled agent. Generally, better monitoring conditions are obtained, however, with narcotic-based anesthetics with less than 1 MAC total (nitrous oxide plus potent agent) end-tidal inhaled anesthetic concentration.

The volatile anesthetics result in increases in latency of BAEPs without significantly affecting the amplitude.[226-228] Volatile anesthetics cause increases in latency and decreases in amplitude in the early (middle latency) cortical responses after auditory stimulation,[227] however, and these middle latency responses are now being used to monitor the hypnotic component of general anesthetics.[228] Adequate monitoring of BAEPs is possible with any clinically useful concentrations of inhaled agents (with or without nitrous oxide) (Figs. 39.22 and 39.23).

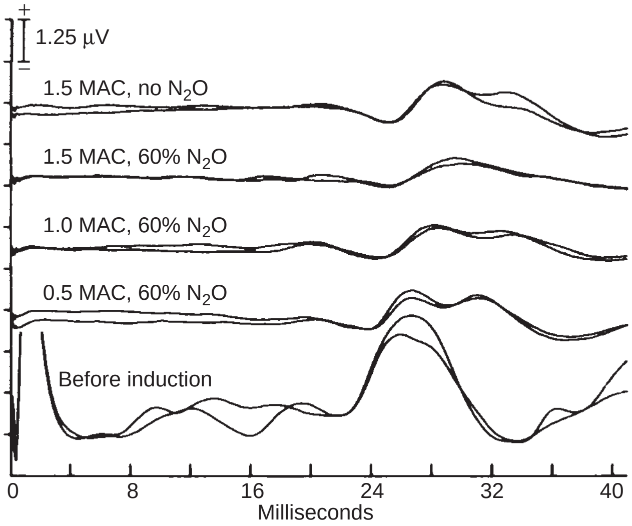


Fig. 39.21 **Representative somatosensory-evoked potential cortical responses (C-3, C-4-FPz) at various minimum alveolar concentration *(MAC)* levels of halothane.** (From Peterson DO, Drummond JC, Todd MM. Effects of halothane, enflurane, isoflurane, and nitrous oxide on somatosensory-evoked potentials in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:35.)

Use of the volatile anesthetic drugs during monitoring of VEPs results in dose-dependent increases in latency with or without changes in amplitude.[229] Isoflurane results in dose-dependent increases in latency and decreases in amplitude up to 1.8% in 100% oxygen, at which time the waveform is lost.[221] More recent studies report some success in recording intraoperative VEPs from patients with normal eyesight, but waveform variability and potent depression of waveforms by volatile agents remain concerns.[230,231] In the opinion of many experts, the variability of VEPs in anesthetized patients is so great that satisfactory monitoring is impossible using any anesthetic technique.

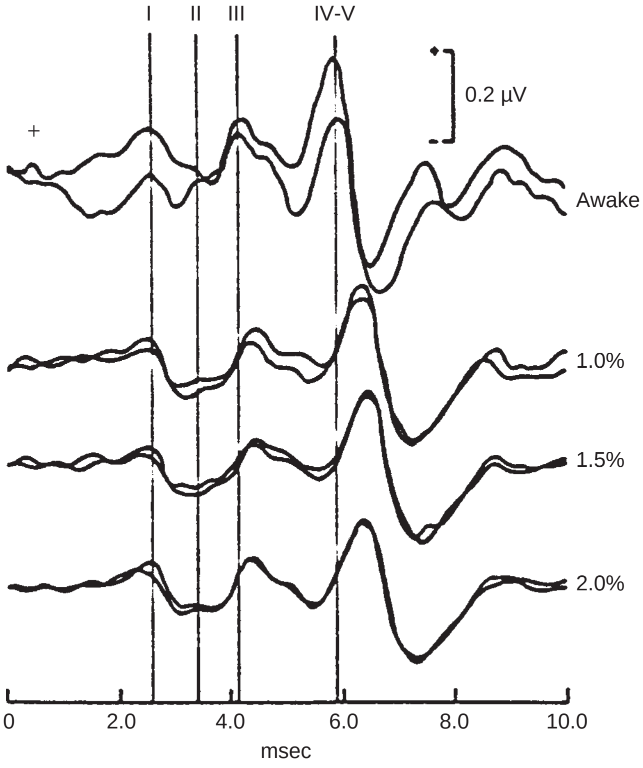


Fig. 39.22 Influence of isoflurane alone on brainstem auditory-evoked potential in a typical subject. Latency of peaks III and IV to V increased at 1.0% but stabilized with increasing anesthetic depth. (From Manninen PH, Lam AM, Nicholas JF. The effects of isoflurane–nitrous oxide anesthesia on brainstem auditory evoked potentials in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:43.)

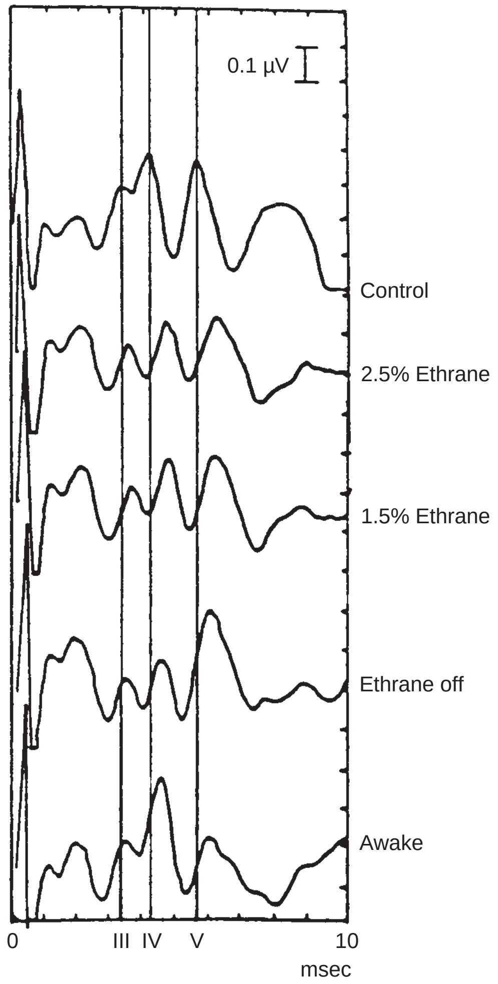


Fig. 39.23 Brainstem auditory-evoked potential recording obtained in one patient at different enflurane (Ethrane)-inspired concentrations. (From Dubois MY, Sato S, Chassy J, et al. Effects of enflurane on brainstem auditory evoked responses in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:898.)

Although volatile anesthetics cause significant changes in the SER waveforms, it is possible to provide adequate monitoring intraoperatively in the presence of anesthetic doses of volatile anesthetics. Doses of anesthetic drugs causing significant depression of the response to be monitored must be prevented. In our experience, end-tidal concentrations of inhaled anesthetic drugs totaling greater than 1.3 MAC have a dose-related, increasing probability of obliterating cortical SSEPs even in neurologically normal patients. Equally important, anesthetic concentration should not be changed during the critical periods of intraoperative monitoring. Critical periods are defined as periods in which surgical interventions are most likely to result in damage to neurologic tissue and changes in the SERs. Because the volatile anesthetic-induced changes in SERs are dose dependent, increasing anesthetic dosage at a crucial point in the operative procedure can result in confusing changes in the SERs that potentially may be caused by the anesthetic, the surgical procedure, or both. The appropriate intervention is difficult to determine.

As with the volatile anesthetics, nitrous oxide causes differing effects on the SERs depending on the sensory system monitored. It causes decreases in amplitude without significant changes in latency in SSEPs when used alone or when added to a narcotic-based or volatile anesthetic.[217,218,232] The addition of nitrous oxide to a maintenance volatile anesthetic during the monitoring of BAEPs causes no further change.[226] Likewise, use of nitrous oxide alone causes no change in BAEPs, unless gas accumulates in the middle ear.[232] Use of nitrous oxide alone results in an increase in latency and a decrease in amplitude in VEPs, but when it is added to a volatile anesthetic technique, it causes no further changes in VEPs.[229,232]

Intravenous Anesthetics

The effects of propofol on SERs have been studied in many different settings. At typical clinical doses required for general anesthesia, propofol has minimal effects on somatosensory-evoked responses recorded along the somatosensory pathway up to the early cortical potentials.[233,234] Thus propofol-based TIVA is frequently used as the preferred technique to optimize signal-to-noise ratio for SSEPs and provide rapid feedback to the surgeon.[235] BAEPs under propofol anesthesia show minor increases in interpeak latencies and decreases in amplitude that are insufficient to interfere with clinical monitoring of auditory function.[236,237]

The effects of barbiturates on SERs have been studied in animals and humans. Increasing doses of thiopental in patients result in progressive dose-dependent increases in latency, decreases in amplitude of SSEPs, and progressive increases in latency of wave V in BAEPs. The changes in SSEPs are more pronounced than the changes in BAEPs, and waveforms beyond the initial primary cortical response are quickly obliterated. This finding is consistent with the theories that barbiturates affect synaptic transmission more than axonal conduction. Early waveforms in SERs result primarily from axonal transmission, and later waves depend on multisynaptic pathways in addition to axonal transmission. At doses of thiopental far greater than doses producing an isoelectric EEG, adequate monitoring of early cortical and subcortical SSEPs and BAEPs was preserved.[238] Other barbiturate compounds show similar effects.[239] This observation is important, especially when attempting to monitor the adequacy of CBF during cerebrovascular surgery when the patient has been given large, "protective" doses of barbiturates. The EEG is isoelectric and not helpful for monitoring. The early cortical SSEP waveforms are still preserved, however, and may be very helpful in determining adequacy of CBF. Preserved ability to monitor SSEPs in head-injured patients receiving therapeutic thiopental infusions has been demonstrated.[240] VEPs are much more sensitive to barbiturates. Low barbiturate doses obliterate all except the earliest waveforms. In cats, the early potentials persisted with increases in latency even to very high pentobarbital doses.[241] Except for VEPs, adequate perioperative monitoring of SERs is possible even in the presence of high-dose barbiturate therapy as long as the effects of the drug (increased latency with moderately decreased amplitude) are considered.

After bolus administration and intravenous infusions, etomidate causes increases in latency of all waves and prolongation of central conduction time in SSEPs. In contrast to virtually all other commonly used anesthetics, etomidate causes increases in amplitude of the cortical SSEP.[242,243] This effect may be due to an alteration in the balance of inhibitory and excitatory influences or an increase in the irritability of the CNS. This effect seems to be present in the cortex, but not in the spinal cord. Etomidate infusions have been used to enhance SSEP recording in patients when it was impossible to obtain reproducible responses at the beginning of intraoperative monitoring because of the pathology (Fig. 39.24). Following baseline responses that could not be monitored, the etomidate augmentation of the SSEP allowed adequate monitoring and detection of intraoperative events leading to compromise of the spinal cord.[243] The effects of etomidate on BAEPs are dose-dependent increases in latency and decreases in amplitude that are not clinically significant.[244]

Benzodiazepines also can cause changes in SERs.[245,246] Diazepam causes increases in latency and decreases in amplitude of SSEPs, increases in latency in the cortical response after auditory stimulation, and no change in BAEPs. Midazolam causes decreases in amplitude without changes in latency of SSEPs.[242]

Generally, opioids cause small dose-dependent increases in latency and decreases in amplitude of SSEPs. These changes are not clinically significant. Effects on amplitude are more variable than the latency increases.[247,248] Even at large doses of fentanyl (60 µg/kg), reproducible SSEPs can be recorded. Other opioids cause similar dose-dependent changes in SSEPs.[249] Opioids can be used even in high doses in patients requiring intraoperative SSEP monitoring without impairment of ability to monitor neurologic function adequately. Opioid-induced changes must be taken into account, however, when evaluating the recordings. Large intravenous bolus administration of opioids should be avoided at times of potential surgical compromise to neurologic function to prevent confusing the interpretation of SEP changes if they develop. BAEPs were resistant to doses of fentanyl of 50 µg/kg with no changes observed in absolute latency, interpeak latency, or amplitude.[250]

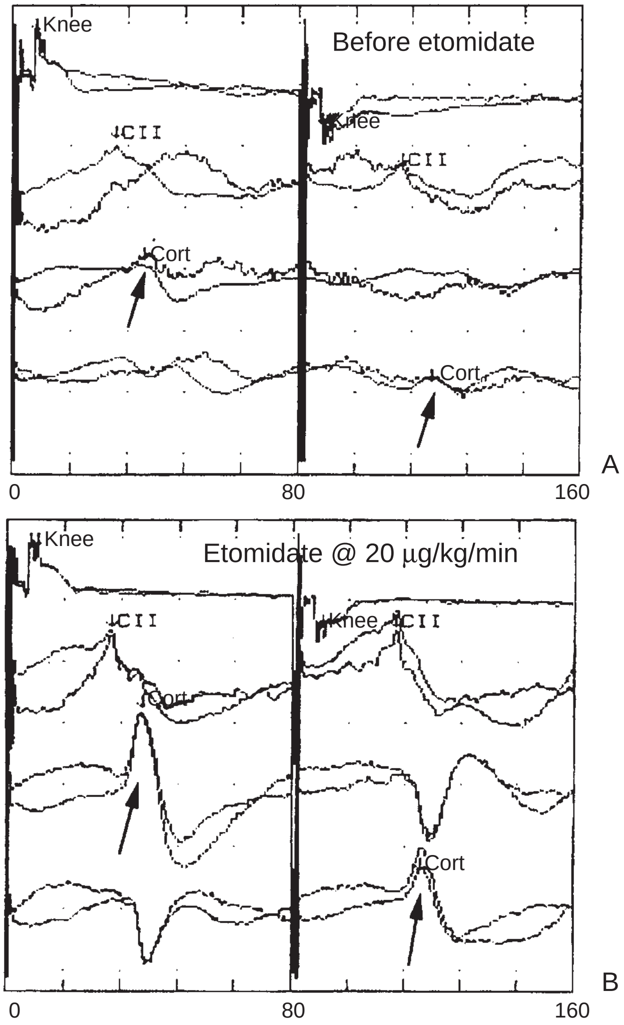


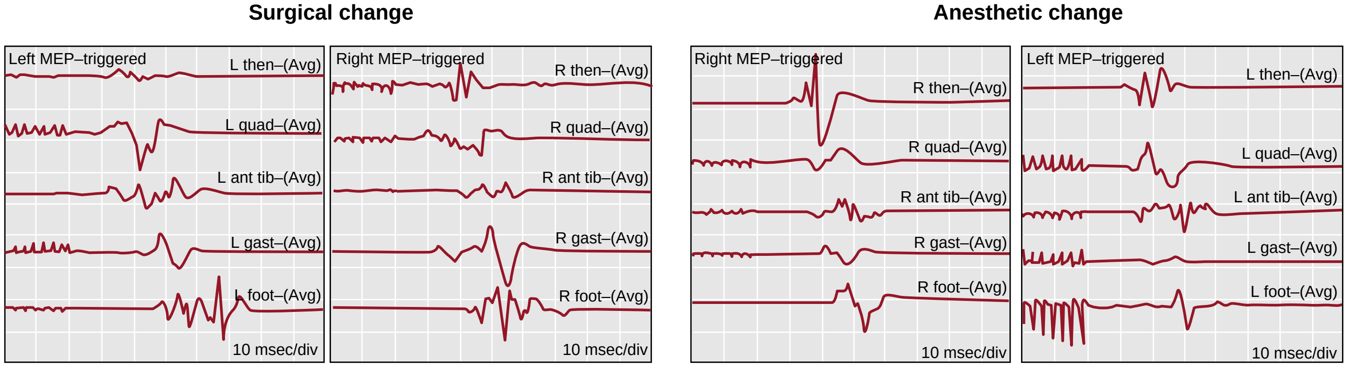
Fig. 39.24 Effects of etomidate on somatosensory-evoked potential. (A) These tracings were obtained from a mildly mentally impaired patient with severe kyphoscoliosis during the early maintenance phase of anesthesia using isoflurane and fentanyl. (B) These tracings were obtained after discontinuing isoflurane and instituting an etomidate infusion at 20 µg/kg/minute. Note dramatically increased amplitude and clarity of the signal in the cortical *(Cort)* channels (marked by *arrows*), which both are recorded with the same amplification scale.

Based on several case reports and small series, dexmedetomidine is compatible with all types of evoked potential monitoring,[251] although data regarding MEPs are not entirely consistent. One recent study demonstrated significant attenuation of MEPs during scoliosis surgery when dexmedetomidine was used as an adjunct to propofol and remifentanil.[252] Data are limited, and large studies are lacking entirely. As the use of this drug increases, more data should become available, but at this time, use of dexmedetomidine does not seem to be clearly problematic.

ANESTHESIA AND MOTOR-EVOKED POTENTIALS

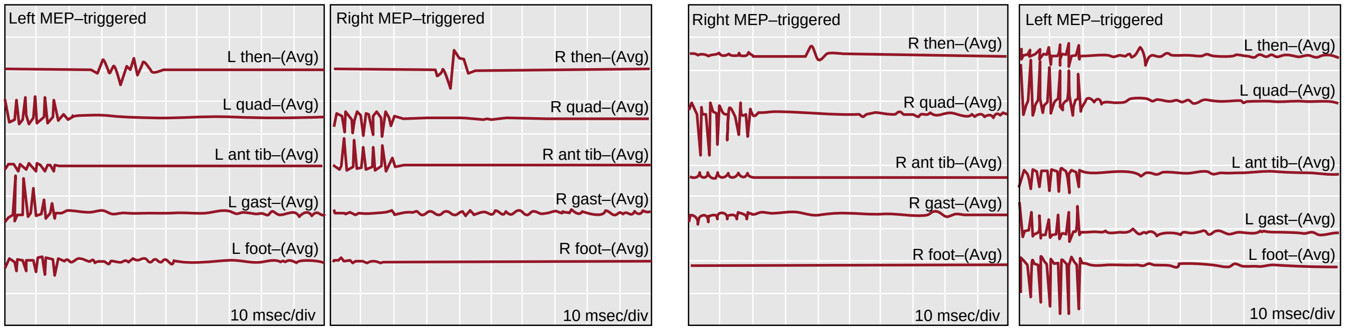
Effects of anesthetics on tcMEPs recorded from muscle are surprisingly profound (see Table 39.4).[253-257] Anesthetic techniques typically used by most anesthesiologists for spine surgery would produce prohibitive depression of the MEP.[258,259] Investigators showed in several studies that intravenous anesthetic drugs produce significantly less depression, and techniques using any of a combination of ketamine, opiates, etomidate, and propofol have been described.[255,256,260-263] The authors have had excellent experience with a combination of propofol and remifentanil, which also is supported in the literature.

Anesthetic effects on MEP responses recorded at spinal levels seem to be less serious. When responses are recorded from muscle, neuromuscular blocking drugs should be monitored quantitatively, maintaining T1 twitch height at around 30% of control values to prevent excessive movement during the operation.[126,254] When responses are not recorded from muscle, profound relaxation is desirable because gross muscle movement produced by MEP stimulation is eliminated, facilitating the surgical procedure. More recent studies using rapid trains of stimuli with transcranial electric and magnetic stimulus techniques have produced responses that are more resistant to the effects of anesthetic drugs, and more "traditional" techniques using inhaled anesthetics and narcotics may be used.[263-265] Most studies support the use of TIVA as preferable to techniques using nitrous oxide or potent inhaled anesthetic drugs, however. Precise control of the anesthetic and avoidance of boluses during critical monitoring periods seem to be even more important than for SSEPs, and active cooperation of the anesthesia care team is essential for good, reproducible results. Fig. 39.25 shows the dramatic effect of introduction of 0.3 MAC isoflurane to a total intravenous technique using propofol and remifentanil. Given ability to monitor the hypnotic component of a TIVA technique with several different available monitors, the authors recommend a total intravenous technique without relaxant whenever possible.


Surgical change
Anesthetic change
Left MEP–triggered
L then–(Avg)
L quad–(Avg)
L ant tib–(Avg)
L gast–(Avg)
L foot–(Avg)
10 msec/div
Right MEP–triggered
R then–(Avg)
R quad–(Avg)
R ant tib–(Avg)
R gast–(Avg)
R foot–(Avg)
10 msec/div
Right MEP–triggered
R then–(Avg)
R quad–(Avg)
R ant tib–(Avg)
R gast–(Avg)
R foot–(Avg)
10 msec/div
Left MEP–triggered
L then–(Avg)
L quad–(Avg)
L ant tib–(Avg)
L gast–(Avg)
L foot–(Avg)
10 msec/div

Before distraction

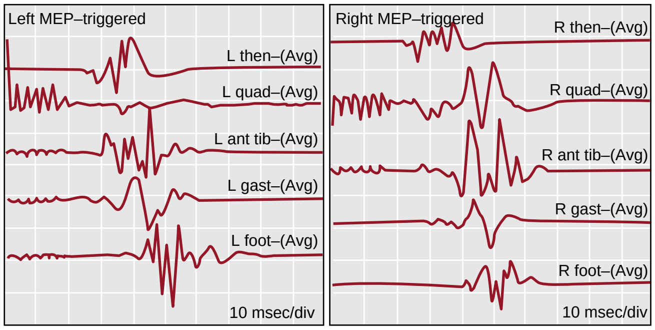
Baseline


Left MEP–triggered
L then–(Avg)
L quad–(Avg)
L ant tib–(Avg)
L gast–(Avg)
L foot–(Avg)
10 msec/div
Right MEP–triggered
R then–(Avg)
R quad–(Avg)
R ant tib–(Avg)
R gast–(Avg)
R foot–(Avg)
10 msec/div
Right MEP–triggered
R then–(Avg)
R quad–(Avg)
R ant tib–(Avg)
R gast–(Avg)
R foot–(Avg)
10 msec/div
Left MEP–triggered
L then–(Avg)
L quad–(Avg)
L ant tib–(Avg)
L gast–(Avg)
L foot–(Avg)
10 msec/div

After distraction

End-tidal isoflurane 0.3%

B


Left MEP–triggered
L then–(Avg)
L quad–(Avg)
L ant tib–(Avg)
L gast–(Avg)
L foot–(Avg)
10 msec/div
Right MEP–triggered
R then–(Avg)
R quad–(Avg)
R ant tib–(Avg)
R gast–(Avg)
R foot–(Avg)
10 msec/div

Distraction released

A

Fig. 39.25 (A) Transcranial electrical motor-evoked potential recording showing surgically induced change during spine surgery (scoliosis repair). (B) Motor-evoked potential with an anesthetic-induced change. Note similarity of the change pattern, except that in the anesthetic-induced change, the responses in the upper extremity also changed. Left-sided and right-sided responses are shown on the corresponding panel. A single upper extremity response is shown (top tracing) in each panel. Responses from four muscle groups in each lower extremity are shown directly below. *Ant tib,* M tibialis anterior; *gast,* m gastrocnemius; *L,* left; *quad,* m quadriceps femoris; *R,* right; *then,* thenar.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGIC EFFECTS ON THE ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM

Hypoxia

Hypoxia may produce inadequate delivery of oxygen to the cerebral cortex generating EEG, and changes similar to those occurring with ischemia result. Initially, hypoxemia may not result in any EEG changes because the brain can increase blood flow to compensate. When the hypoxemia becomes severe enough, further increases in flow are impossible, and EEG changes occur. "Slowing" of the EEG during hypoxia is a nonspecific global effect. Fast frequencies are lost, and low frequencies dominate. Eventually, the EEG is abolished as the brain shuts down electric activity and diverts all oxygen delivered to maintenance of cellular integrity.

Hypotension

In a normal, awake patient, significant levels of hypotension are needed to cause the earliest of CNS signs, as measured by discrimination tests such as the flicker-fusion test. This test examines the flicker rate at which the observer perceives the light to be continuous. In the early days of deliberate hypotension, this test was part of the preoperative evaluation to judge how far the pressure could be reduced during the operation. Clear signs of confusion and inability to concentrate or respond properly to simple commands generally represent very low levels of cerebral perfusion when caused by hypotension because the normal cerebral circulation has a large capacity to vasodilate and maintain normal flow in the face of significant hypotension.

The EEG changes associated with even this level of hypotension are not dramatic, although they are clear by comparison with a previously active recording. Herein lies the problem with using intraoperative EEG to determine whether a given level of hypotension has resulted in brain ischemia. EEG changes are not very pronounced and are bilateral. These changes also are nearly identical to the changes caused by increasing doses of many anesthetic drugs. EEG changes associated with hypotension can be detected, but when the hypotension is induced slowly and associated with changes in anesthetic drugs (e.g., use of isoflurane to reduce blood pressure), the changes are very difficult to interpret. EEG changes associated with acute, severe hypotension such as may be caused by sudden arrhythmias are easier to read. Many patients undergoing surgery do not have a normal cerebral circulation, however. In these individuals, even mild hypotension may result in significant cerebral ischemia. In these individuals, monitoring the EEG during planned hypotension may be helpful, provided that other causes of similar EEG changes may be carefully controlled. There remains little literature to support the use of EEG monitoring during hypotension, but in our opinion, when the EEG is being monitored (e.g., during carotid surgery), EEG changes secondary to hypotension really do represent cerebral ischemia of a significant degree and should be considered an important finding.

Hypothermia

During cooling on CPB, the total power and peak power frequency of the high-frequency band were highly correlated with temperature using Fourier analysis and spectral edge data; however, significant variability was noted among subjects, especially during cooling.[266] Complete EEG suppression usually develops at 15°C to 18°C. Levy and colleagues[147] showed an improved ability to quantify the effects of hypothermia on the EEG using an EEG processing technique known as "approximate entropy."

Hypercarbia and Hypocarbia

Hypocapnia is known to activate excitable seizure foci, and in rare cases may produce EEG evidence of cerebral ischemia even in awake subjects.[267] Hypercapnia, unless severe and associated with hypoxemia, has only indirect effects secondary to increased CBF. In an anesthetized patient, hypercarbia-associated increases in CBF may have similar effects to the effects seen with increasing end-tidal tension of volatile anesthetics.[268]

Untoward Events

One of the suggested reasons for monitoring the brain of an anesthetized patient is to enable detection of injuries to the nervous system that would not be otherwise apparent. Although hundreds of such case reports are in the literature, as well as many in our experience, cost-effectiveness of such monitoring is unclear. In a more recent case at our institution, severe EEG changes occurred at the beginning of a carotid endarterectomy, before surgical incision, and were unassociated with any other vital sign changes or hypotension. Immediate angiography revealed acute carotid occlusion and completely changed the operation performed with this patient, and the patient recovered completely. There are intraoperative events that could lead to CNS insult, which, if detected early, could be rapidly reversed or treated to prevent permanent injury. Given the rarity of such events, however, it is extremely unlikely that such monitoring would be shown to be beneficial in any foreseeable randomized trial. If the "at-risk" patient could be identified preoperatively, perhaps the EEG or other types of neuromonitoring could be useful in detecting untoward CNS events during anesthesia, such as a new stroke after elective general surgery.

PHYSIOLOGIC FACTORS INFLUENCING SENSORY-EVOKED RESPONSES

Numerous physiologic variables, including systemic arterial blood pressure, temperature (local and systemic), and blood gas tensions, can influence SEP recordings. With decreases in mean arterial blood pressure to below levels of cerebral autoregulation owing to either blood loss or vasoactive drugs, progressive changes in SERs have been noted. SSEP changes observed are progressive decreases in amplitude until loss of the waveform with no changes in latency.[269,270] BAEPs are resistant to even profound levels of hypotension (MAP of 20 mm Hg in dogs).[269] Cortical (synaptic) function necessary to produce cortical SERs seems to be more sensitive to hypoperfusion than spinal cord or brainstem, nonsynaptic transmission.[270] Rapid decreases in arterial blood pressure to levels above the lower limit of autoregulation also have been associated with transient SSEP changes of decreased amplitude that resolve after several minutes of continued hypotension at the same level.[271] Reversible SSEP changes at systemic pressures within the normal range have been observed in patients undergoing spinal distraction during scoliosis surgery. These changes resolved with increases of systemic arterial blood pressure to slightly higher than the patient's normal pressure, suggesting that the combination of surgical manipulation with levels of hypotension generally considered "safe" could result in spinal cord ischemia.[272]

Changes in temperature also affect SERs. Hypothermia causes increases in latency and decreases in amplitude of cortical and subcortical SERs after all types of stimulation.[273-275] Hyperthermia also alters SERs, with increases in temperature leading to decreases in amplitude in SSEPs and loss of SSEPs at 42°C during induced hyperthermia.[276]

Changes in arterial blood gas tensions can alter SERs, probably in relation to changes in blood flow or oxygen delivery to neural structures.[277,278] Hypoxia produces SSEP changes (decreased amplitude) similar to the changes seen with ischemia.[278] Decreased oxygen delivery associated with anemia during isovolemic hemodilution results in progressive increases in latency of SSEPs and VEPs that become significant at hematocrit values lower than 15%. Changes in amplitude were variable until very low hematocrit values (approximately 7%) were reached, at which point the amplitude of all waveforms decreased.[279]

Summary

Regardless of the type of intraoperative neurologic monitor, several principles must be observed for neurologic monitoring to provide potential benefit to the patient. First, the pathway at risk during the surgical procedure must be amenable to monitoring. Second, if evidence of injury to the pathway is detected, some intervention must be possible. If changes in the neurologic monitor are detected, and no intervention is possible, although the monitor may be of prognostic value, it does not have the potential to provide direct benefit to the patient from early detection of impending neurologic injury. Third, the monitor must provide reliable and reproducible data. If the data have a high degree of variability in the absence of clinical interventions, their utility for detecting clinically significant events is limited.

This chapter reviews the most common clinically used intraoperative neurologic monitors. Ideally, clinical studies would provide outcome data on the efficacy of a neurologic monitor in a given procedure to improve neurologic outcome. Although there is a wealth of clinical experience with many of these monitoring modalities, there is little in the way of randomized prospective studies evaluating the efficacy of neurologic monitoring. Based on clinical experience with neurologic monitoring and nonrandomized clinical studies in which neurologic monitoring is used and generally compared with historical controls, practice patterns for use of neurologic monitoring have developed. In certain procedures, neurologic monitoring is recommended and used by most centers; in other procedures, monitoring is used almost routinely in some centers, but not in others; and in some procedures, no clear clinical experience or evidence indicates that monitoring is useful at all (experimental use). Finally, there are procedures in which monitoring is used selectively for patients believed to be at higher-than-usual risk for intraoperative neurologic injury. Table 39.5 provides a summary of current clinical practice.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

TABLE 39.5 Current Practices in Neurologic Monitoring

Procedure	Monitors	Current Practice
Carotid endarterectomy	Awake patient neurologic examination, EEG, SSEP, TCD	NIH recommends use of one of these four available monitors
	CO	Threshold value not determined, inadequate normative population data
Scoliosis surgical treatment	SSEP	Monitoring recommended and may substitute for wake-up testing
	Wake-up test	Largely abandoned in centers using electrophysiologic monitoring; monitoring is not continuous, and false-negative monitoring patterns reported
	MEP	Increased clinical use now that transcranial electrical stimulation is FDA approved; useful in combination with SSEP
Acoustic neuroma	Facial nerve monitor	Facial nerve monitoring recommended
	BAEP	BAEP showing some clinical evidence of improved outcome in some procedures
Intracranial aneurysm clipping	SSEP, EEG, tcMEP	Used routinely in some centers; limited clinical data on outcome, but appears clinically useful during anterior circulation procedures
Cranial nerve V decompression	BAEP	Used in some centers; reduces hearing loss
Cranial nerve VII decompression	BAEP, facial nerve monitor	Data from small series showing improved hearing preservation
Supratentorial mass lesions	SSEP, tcMEP	Used in some centers in selected high-risk procedures
Infratentorial mass lesions	BAEP, SSEP, tcMEP	BAEP to detect retractor-related cranial nerve VIII injury; SSEP and tcMEP in rare, high-risk lesions adjacent to ascending sensory or descending motor pathways
Decompression of spinal stenosis	SSEP, tcMEP	Used in some centers in high-risk procedures (more often cervical)
Spinal cord trauma	SSEP, MEP	Used in some centers in high-risk procedures
Cardiopulmonary bypass	EEG, TCD, $Sjvo_2$, CO	Used routinely in some centers; actively studied, but no outcome data yet
Aortic coarctation	SSEP	Used routinely in a few centers; no widespread acceptance
Aortic aneurysm repair	SSEP, MEP	Used routinely in a few centers; no widespread acceptance

BAEP, Brainstem auditory-evoked potential; *CO,* cerebral oximetry; *EEG,* electroencephalogram; *FDA,* U.S. Food and Drug Administration; *MEP,* motor-evoked potential; *NIH,* National Institutes of Health; *$Sjvo_2$,* jugular bulb venous oxygen saturation; *SSEP,* somatosensory-evoked potential; *TCD,* transcranial Doppler; *tcMEP,* transcranial motor-evoked potential.

References

1. Skinner SA, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2014;28:103. 2014.
2. Martin NA, Doberstein C. *Neurosurg Clin North Am*. 1994;5:607. 1994.
3. Kety SS, Schmidt CF. *Am J Physiol*. 1945;143:53. 1945.
4. Udesh R, et al. *J Ultrasound Med*. 2017;36:621. 2017.
5. Bass A, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1989;10:549. 1989.
6. Manno EM. *Crit Care Clin*. 1997;79. 199713.
7. White H, Baker A. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:623. 2002.
8. Hongo K, et al. *Neurol Res*. 1995;17:89. 1995.
9. Davie SN, Grocott HP. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:834. 2012.
10. Zheng F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:663. 2013.
11. Bickler P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:72–82. 2017.
12. Samra SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:964. 2000.
13. Rigamonti A, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17:426. 2005.
14. Dings J, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1998;43:1082. 1998, PMID.
15. Vajkoczy P, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;98:1227. 2003.
16. Lang EW, et al. *Neurosurg Rev*. 2007;30:99. 2007.
17. Vajkoczy P, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2000;93:265. 2000.
18. Clark LC. *Trans Am Soc Artif Int Org*. 1956;2:41. 1956.
19. Ngwenya LB, et al. *Respir Care*. 2016;61:1232. 2016.
20. Menzel M, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1999;11:240. 1999.
21. Gopinath SP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:2337. 1999.
22. Valadka AB, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1576. 1998.
23. Sarrafzadeh AS, et al. *Acta Neurochir Suppl (Wien)*. 1998;71:186. 1998.
24. Rosenthal G, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:1917. 2008.
25. Menzel M, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1999;91(1). 1999.
26. Menzel M, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1999;11:240. 1999.
27. Carney N, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2017;80(6). 2017.
28. Gloor P. In: Wieser HG, Elger CE, eds. *Presurgical Evaluation of Epileptics*. Berlin: Springer; 1987.
29. Hughes JR. *EEG in clinical practice*. Newton, Mass: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1994. 1994.
30. Vitek JL, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1998;88:1027.
31. Garonzik IM, et al. *Mov Disord*. 2002;17(suppl 3):S135. 2002.
32. Martin JT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1959;20:359. 1959.
33. Sharbrough FW, et al. *Stroke*. 1973;4:674. 1973.
34. Craft RM, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1994;6:301. 1994.
35. Spackman TN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:229. 1987.
36. Billard V, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1997;61:45. 1997.
37. Schmidt GN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1072. 2003.
38. Willmann K, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2002;17:345. 2002.
39. Drover DR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:82. 2002.
40. Levy WJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:489. 1987.
41. Grundy BL. *Neurosurgery*. 1982;11:556. 1982.
42. Greenberg RP, Ducker TB. *J Neurosurg*. 1982;56(1). 1982.
43. Cohen AR, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1981;9:157. 1981.
44. York DH. *Progr Neurobiol*. 1985;25(1). 1985.
45. Bundo M, et al. *Stroke*. 2002;33:61. 2002.
46. Symon L. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:34. 1985.
47. Brainston NM, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1984;4:68. 1984.
48. Lopez JR, et al. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1999;66:189. 1999.
49. Guerit JM, et al. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1997;104:459. 1997.
50. Chiappa KH, Ropper AH. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;306:1140. 1982.
51. Ganes T. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1980;49:446. 1980.
52. Chiappa KH, Ropper AH. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;306:1140. 1982.
53. Grundy BL, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1982;57:674. 1982.
54. Raudzens PA, Shetter AG. *J Neurosurg*. 1982;57:341. 1982.
55. Duncan PG, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1979;26:492. 1979.
56. Sasaki T, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2010;112:273. 2010.
57. Levy WJ, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1984;15:287. 1984.
58. Legatt AD. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2002;19:454. 2002.
59. MacDonald DB, et al. *Spine*. 2003;28:194. 2003.
60. Szelenyi A, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;99:575. 2003.
61. Meylaerts S, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1999;230:742. 1999.
62. Pelosi L, et al. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2002;113:1082. 2002.
63. Skinner SA, et al. *J Clin Monit Comp*. 2008;22:131. 2008 .
64. Harner SG, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1987;62:92. 1987.
65. Harper CM, Daube RJ. In: Desmedt JE, ed. *Neuromonitoring in Surgery*. New York: Elsevier Science; 1989:275–297. 1989.
66. Skinner S, et al. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2017;34:477. 2017.
67. Freedman WA, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1991;29:98. 1991.
68. Lokuge K, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2018;105:26. 2018.
69. De Rango P, et al. *Stroke*. 2015;46:3423. 2015.
70. Sundt TW Jr, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1981;56:533. 1981.
71. Bond R, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2002;23:117. 2002.
72. Kalkman CJ. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:381. 2004.
73. Plestis KA, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1997;25:620. 1997.
74. Halsey JH Jr. *Stroke*. 1992;23:1583. 1992.
75. Roseborough GS. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:375. 2004.
76. Schneider JR, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2002;35:1114. 2002.
77. Woodworth GF, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2007;61:1170. 2007.
78. Chongruksut W, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;6:CD000190. 2014.
79. Lam AM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(15). 1991.
80. Ackerstaff RG, van de Vlasakker CJ. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1998;12:341. 1998.
81. AbuRahma AF, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;54:1502. 2011.
82. Thirumala PD, et al. *Neurol Res*. 2016;38:698. 2016.
83. Ackerstaff RG, et al. *Stroke*. 2000;31:1817. 2000.
84. Ogasawara K, et al. *Stroke*. 2008;39:3088. 2008.
85. Mueller M, et al. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 1998;97:110. 1998.
86. Abbott AL, et al. *Cerebrovasc Dis*. 2007;23:362. 2007.
87. Dunne VG, et al. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2001;8:140. 2001.
88. Spencer MP. *Stroke*. 1997;28:685. 1997.
89. Gaunte ME. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 1998;80:377. 1998.
90. Calderon-Arnulphi M, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2007;106:283. 2007.
91. Friedell ML, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2008;48:601. 2008.
92. Friedman WA, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1991;29:83. 1991.
93. Mizoi K, Yoshimoto T. *Neurol Med Chir (Tokyo)*. 1991;31:318. 1991.
94. Misoi K, Yoshimoto T. *Neurosurgery*. 1993;33:434. 1993.
95. Holland NR. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 1998;15:439. 1998.
96. Schramm J, et al. *Neurol Res*. 1994;16:20. 1994.
97. Wiedemayer H, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;96:255. 2002.
98. Manninen PH, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1994;41:92. 1994.
99. Manninen PH, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:S23. 1990.
100. Friedman WA, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1987;20:678.
101. Little JR, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1987;20:421. 1987.
102. Sasaki T, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2007;107:60. 2007.
103. Hemmer LB, et al. *World Neurosurg*. 2014;81:99. 2014.
104. Thomas B, Guo D. *World Neurosurg*. 2017;103:829. 2017.
105. Meng L, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2017;64:517. 2017.
106. Stevanovic A, et al. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0156448. 2016.
107. West S, et al. *Epileptic Disord*. 2016;18:113. 2016.
108. Ryvlin P, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2014;13:1114.
109. Ramnarayan R, Mackenzie I. *Neurol India*. 2006;54:250. 2006.
110. Sindou MP. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 2005;147:1019. 2005.
111. Brock S, et al. *Stereotact Funct Neurosurg*. 2004;82:199. 2004.
112. Sindou M, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 1992;102:678. 1992.
113. Friedman WA, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1985;62:552. 1985.
114. Thirumala PD, et al. *J Clin Neurophys*. 2011;28:56. 2011.
115. Khrais T, Sanna M. *J Laryngol Otol*. 2006;120:366. 2006.
116. Vivas EX, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2018;82:E44. 2018.
117. Sala F, et al. *Childs Nerv Syst*. 2015;31:1791. 2015.
118. McCallum JE, Bennett MH. *Surg Forum*. 1975;26:469. 1975.
119. Maccabee PJ, et al. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1982;53:P32. 1982.
120. Luederes H, et al. *Spine*. 1982;7:110. 1982.
121. Raudzens PA. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1982;388:308. 1982.
122. Grundy BL. In: Nodar RH, Barber C, eds. *Evoked potentials II*. Boston: Butterworth; 1984:624. 1984.
123. Deutsch H, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2000;92(suppl 2):155. 2000.
124. Ben-David B, et al. *Spine*. 1987;12:536. 1987.
125. Szilagyi DE, et al. *Surgery*. 1978;83:38. 1978.
126. Edmonds HL, et al. *Spine*. 1989;14:683. 1989.
127. Boyd SG, et al. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1986;49:251. 1986.
128. Sloan TB, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2008;21:560. 2008.
129. Padberg AM, et al. *Spine*. 1998;23:1392. 1998.
130. Schwartz DM, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2007;89:2440. 2007.
131. MacDonald DB, et al. *Spine*. 2003;28:194. 2003.
132. MacDonald DB, et al. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2013;124:2291. 2013.
133. Elmore JR, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1991;14:131. 1991.
134. Reuter DG, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1992;104:262. 1992.
135. Conrad MF, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;53:1195. 2011.
136. Weigang E, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:1679. 2006.
137. Etz CD, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:1670. 2006.
138. Skinner SA, Vodušek DB. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2014;31:313. 2014.
139. Raynor BL, et al. *Spine*. 2007;32:2673. 2007.
140. Shi YB, et al. *Spine*. 2003;28:595. 2003.
141. Isley MR, et al. *Neurodiagn J*. 2012;52:100. 2012.
142. Shin AY, et al. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2005;13:382. 2005.

143. Kline DG, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1998;89(13). 1998.
144. Kim DH, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;98:1005. 2003.
145. Cornelissen L, et al. *Elife*. 2015;23(4):e06513. 2015.
146. Levy WJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:291. 1984.
147. Levy WJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:53. 2003.
148. Chabot RJ, et al. *Clin Electroencephalogr*. 1997;28:98. 1997.
149. Edmonds HL Jr, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1992;103:555. 1992.
150. Miller G, et al. *Pediatr Neurol*. 1994;10:124. 1994.
151. Hirsch JC, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94:1365. 2012.
152. Doblar DD. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;8:127. 2004.
153. Rodriguez PA, et al. *Stroke*. 2010;41:2229. 2010.
154. Sakamoto T, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:293. 2004.
155. Kussman BD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1294. 2005.
156. Murkin JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:51. 2007.
157. Zheng F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;163:663. 2013.
158. Ono M, et al. *Br J Anesth*. 2012;109:391. 2012.
159. Colak Z, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2015;47:447. 2015.
160. Brady K, et al. *Stroke*. 2010;41:1951. 2010.
161. Gopinath SP, et al. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1994;57:717. 1994.
162. Fandino J, et al. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2000;7:226. 2000.
163. Cormio M, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1999;90(9). 1999.
164. Hilkman DM, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30:192. 2017.
165. Herman ST, et al. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2015;32:87. 2015.
166. Herman ST, et al. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2015;32:96. 2015.
167. Cremer OL, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:2207. 2005.
168. Stiefel MF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2006;105:568.
169. Fortune JB, et al. *J Trauma*. 1995;39:1091. 1995.
170. Skippen P, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25:1402. 1997.
171. Imberti R, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;96:97. 2002.
172. Coles JP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:1950. 2002.
173. van den Brink WA, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2000;46:868. 2000.
174. Stiefel MF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;103:805. 2005.
175. Suarez JI, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:1348. 2002.
176. Topcuoglu MA, et al. *Curr Treat Options Cardiovasc Med*. 2002;4:3731. 2002.
177. Jarus-Dziedzic K, et al. *Neurol Res*. 2002;24:5822. 2002.
178. Aaslid R. *Eur J Ultrasound*. 2002;16(3). 2002.
179. Mascia L, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29:1088. 2003.
180. Sloan MA, et al. *Neurology*. 1989;39:1514. 1989.
181. Sekhar LN, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1988;22:813. 1988.
182. Vespa PM, et al. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 1999;16(1). 1999.
183. Bricolo A, et al. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1978;45:211. 1978.
184. Gutling E, et al. *Neurology*. 1995;45:915. 1995.
185. Alexandre A, et al. *Acta Neurochir Suppl (Wien)*. 1979;28:188. 1979.
186. Bergamasco B, et al. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1968;24:374. 1968.
187. Winer JW, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1991;29:739. 1991.
188. Koenig MA, Kaplan PW. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2015;32:472. 2015.
189. Facco E, et al. *Neurophysiol Clin*. 1993;23:237. 1993.
190. Pohlmann-Eden B, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1997;23:301. 1997.
191. Ruiz-Lopez MJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:412. 1999.
192. Goodwin SR, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1991;19:518. 1991.
193. Morgalla MH, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2006;55:760. 2006.
194. Nuwer MR. *Neurosurg Clin North Am*. 1994;5:647. 1994.
195. Lew HL, et al. *J Head Trauma Rehabil*. 2006;21:350. 2006.
196. Carter BG, Butt W. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29:178. 2001.
197. Carter BG, Butt W. *Intensive Care Med*. 2005;31:765. 2005.
198. Fischer C, Luaute J. *Neuropsychol Rehabil*. 2005;15:372. 2005.
199. Petty GW, et al. *Neurology*. 1990;40:300. 1990.
200. Rosen I, Hagerdal M. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1976;20:32. 1976.
201. Akeju Oluwaseun, et al. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2016;127:2414. 2016.
202. McGuire G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:651. 2003.
203. La Marca S, et al. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 1995;120:426. 1995.
204. Sebel PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:203. 1981.
205. Hyypponen E, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52:289. 2008.
206. Maksimow A, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51:22. 2007.
207. Kasuya Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:2009. 1811.
208. Yamamura T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60:283. 1981.
209. Clark DL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;39:261. 1973.
210. Artru AA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:587. 1997.
211. Komatsu H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1535. 1994.
212. Jaaskelainen SK, et al. *Neurology*. 2003;61:1073. 2003.
213. Endo T, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2002;14:59. 2002.
214. Rampil IJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:434. 1991.
215. Sharpe MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:261. 2002.
216. Hoffman WE, Edelman G. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:811. 1995.
217. Banoub M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:716. 2003.
218. Peterson DO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:35. 1986.
219. McPherson RW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:626. 1985.
220. Pathak KS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:207. 1989.
221. Samra SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:29. 1987.
222. Haghighi SS, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1996;8:148. 1996.
223. Bernard JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:1013. 1996.
224. Boisseau N, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:785. 2002.
225. Vaugha DJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:59. 2001.
226. Manninen PH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:43. 1985.
227. Thornton C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:479. 1983.
228. Matsushita S, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2015;29:621. 2015.
229. Chi OZ, Field C. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:328. 1986.
230. Soffin EM, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017.
231. Uribe AA, et al. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2017;128:2006. 2017.
232. Sebel PS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56:1403. 1984.
233. Liu EH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:193. 2005.
234. Boisseau N, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:785. 2002.
235. Taniguchi M, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1992;31:891. 1992.
236. Chassard D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;62:522.
237. Purdie JA, Cullen PM. *Anaesthesia*. 1993;48:192. 1993.
238. Drummond JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:249. 1985.
239. Shimoji K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40:234. 1974.
240. Ganes T, Lundar T. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1983;46:509. 1983.
241. Sutton LN, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1982;57:178. 1982.
242. Koht A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:435. 1988.
243. Sloan TB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:582. 1988.
244. Heneghan CPH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:554. 1985.
245. Doring WH, Daub D. *Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 1980;227:522. 1980.
246. Grundy BL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;538. 197951.
247. Pathak KS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:833. 1984.
248. Schubert A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:S136. 1986.
249. Grundy BL, Brown RH. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1980;50:177. 1980.
250. Samra SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:261. 1984.
251. Bala E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:417. 2008.
252. Mahmoud M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:1364. 2010.
253. Zentner J, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1989;24:253. 1989.
254. Jellinek D, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1991;29:551. 1991.
255. Taniguchi M, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1993;33:407. 1993.
256. Ubags LH, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1997;9:228. 1997.
257. Kalkman CJ, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1994;35:1066. 1994.
258. Sloan TB, Heyer EJ. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2002;19:430. 2002.
259. Zentner J, et al. *Spine*. 1997;22:1002. 1997.
260. Nathan N, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:493. 2003.
261. Ghaly RF, et al. *Neurol Res*. 2001;23:881. 2001.
262. Scheufler KM, Zentner J. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;96:571.
263. Pechstein U, et al. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1998;108:175. 1998.
264. Pelosi L, et al. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2001;112:1076. 2001.
265. Ubaga LH, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1998;43:90. 1998.
266. Stockard JJ, Bickford RG. In: Gordon E, ed. *A Basis and Practice of Neuroanesthesia*. New York: Elsevier; 1981:3. 1981.
267. Kraaier V, et al. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1988;70:377. 1988.
268. Clowes GHA, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1953;138:558. 1953.
269. Eng DY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:S92. 1980.
270. Kobrine AI, et al. *J Neurol Sci*. 1980;45:65. 1980.
271. Bunegin L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:A232. 1981.
272. Grundy BL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:249. 1981.
273. Russ W, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:207. 1984.
274. Stockard JJ, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 1978;3:368. 1978.
275. Spetzler RF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;68:868. 1988.
276. Dubois M, et al. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1981;52:157. 1981.
277. Nakagawa Y, et al. *Stroke*. 1984;25:275. 1984.
278. Grundy BL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60:437. 1981.
279. Nagao S, et al. *J Surg Res*. 1978;25:530. 1978.

References

1. Skinner SA, Cohen BA, Morledge DE. Practice guidelines for the supervising professional. intraoperative neurophysiological monitoring. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2014;28:103–111. PMID:24022172.
2. Martin NA, Doberstein C. Cerebral blood flow measurement in neurosurgical intensive care. *Neurosurg Clin North Am*. 1994;5:607–618. PMID:7827473.
3. Kety SS, Schmidt CF. The determination of cerebral blood flow in man by the use of nitrous oxide in low concentrations. *Am J Physiol*. 1945;143:53–66.
4. Udesh R, Natarajan P, Thiagarajan K. Transcranial Doppler monitoring in carotid endarterectomy. A systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Ultrasound Med*. 2017;36:621–630. PMID:28127789.
5. Bass A, Krupski WC, Schneider PA, et al. Intraoperative transcranial Doppler. Limitations of the method. *J Vasc Surg*. 1989;10:549–553. PMID:2681842.
6. Manno EM. Transcranial Doppler ultrasonography in the neurocritical care unit. *Crit Care Clin*. 1997;13:79–104. PMID:9012577.
7. White H, Baker A. Continuous jugular venous oximetry in the neurointensive care unit. A brief review. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:623–629. PMID:12067878.
8. Hongo K, Kobayashi S, Okudera H, et al. Noninvasive cerebral optical spectroscopy. Depth-resolved measurements of cerebral haemodynamics using indocyanine green. *Neurol Res*. 1995;17:89–93. PMID:7609855.
9. Davie SN, Grocott HP. Impact of extracranial contamination on regional cerebral oxygen saturation. A comparison of three cerebral oximetry technologies. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:834–840. PMID:22343469.
10. Zheng F, Sheinberg R, Yee MS, Ono M, Zheng Y, Hogue CW. Cerebral near-infrared spectroscopy monitoring and neurologic outcomes in adult cardiac surgery patients. A systematic review. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:663–676. PMID:23267000.
11. Bickler P, Feiner J, Rollins M, Meng L. Tissue oximetry and clinical outcomes. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:72–82. PMID:27308951.
12. Samra SK, Dy EA, Welch K, et al. Evaluation of a cerebral oximeter as a monitor of cerebral ischemia during carotid endarterectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:964–970. PMID:11020747.
13. Rigamonti A, Scandroglio M, Minicucci F, et al. A clinical evaluation of near-infrared cerebral oximetry in the awake patient to monitor cerebral perfusion during carotid endarterectomy. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17:426–430. PMID:16171662.
14. Dings J, Meixensberger J, Jager A, et al. Clinical experience with 118 brain tissue oxygen partial pressure catheter probes. *Neurosurgery*. 1998;43:1082–1095. PMID:9802852.
15. Vajkoczy P, Horn P, Thome C, et al. Regional cerebral blood flow monitoring in the diagnosis of delayed ischemia following aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;98:1227–1234. PMID 12816269.
16. Lang EW, Mulvey JM, Mudaliar Y, et al. Direct cerebral oxygenation monitoring. A systematic review of recent publications. *Neurosurg Rev*. 2007;30:99–107. PMID:17221264.
17. Vajkoczy P, Roth H, Horn P, et al. Continuous monitoring of regional cerebral blood flow. Experimental and clinical validation of a novel thermal diffusion microprobe. *J Neurosurg*. 2000;93:265–274. PMID:10930012.
18. Clark LC. Monitor and control of blood and tissue oxygen tensions. *Trans Am Soc Artif Int Org*. 1956;2:41–45.
19. Ngwenya LB, Burke JF, Manley GT. Brain tissue oxygen monitoring and the intersection of brain and lung. A comprehensive review. *Respir Care*. 2016;61:1232–1244. PMID:27435860.
20. Menzel M, Doppenberg EM, Zauner A, et al. Cerebral oxygenation in patients after severe head injury. Monitoring and effects of arterial hyperoxia on cerebral blood flow, metabolism and intracranial pressure. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1999;11(4):240–251. PMID:28137548.
21. Gopinath SP, Valadka AB, Uzura M, Robertson CS. Comparison of jugular venous oxygen saturation and brain tissue PO_2 as monitors of cerebral ischemia after head injury. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:2337–2345. PMID:10579245.
22. Valadka AB, Gopinath SP, Contant CF, et al. Relation of brain tissue PO_2 to outcome after severe head injury. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1576–1581. PMID:18766094.
23. Sarrafzadeh AS, Kiening KL, Bardt TF, et al. Cerebral oxygenation in contusioned vs. Nonlesioned brain tissue. Monitoring of $PtiO_2$ with Licox and Paratrend. *Acta Neurochir*. 1998;71(suppl):186–189. PMID:9779180.
24. Rosenthal G, Hemphill JC, Sorani M, et al. Brain tissue oxygen tension is more indicative of oxygen diffusion than oxygen delivery and metabolism in patients with traumatic brain injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:1917–1924. PMID:18496376.
25. Menzel M, Doppenberg EM, Zauner A, et al. Increased inspired oxygen concentration as a factor in improved brain tissue oxygenation and tissue lactate levels after severe human head injury. *J Neurosurg*. 1999;91:1–10. PMID:10389873.
26. Menzel M, Doppenberg EM, Zauner A, et al. Cerebral oxygenation in patients after severe head injury. Monitoring and effects of arterial hyperoxia on cerebral blood flow, metabolism and intracranial pressure. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1999;11:240–251. PMID:10527142.
27. Carney N, Totten AM, O'Reilly C, et al. Guidelines for the management of severe traumatic brain injury. 4th ed. *Neurosurgery*. 2017;80:6–15. PMID:27654000.
28. Gloor P. Volume conductor principles. Their application to the surface and depth electroencephalogram. In: Wieser HG, Elger CE, eds. *Presurgical Evaluation of Epileptics*. Berlin: Springer; 1987.
29. Hughes JR. *EEG in Clinical Practice*. 2nd ed. Newton, MA: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1994.
30. Vitek JL, Bakay RAE, Hashimoto T, et al. Microelectrode-guided pallidotomy. Technical approach and its application in medically intractable Parkinson's disease. *J Neurosurg*. 1998;88:1027. PMID:9609298.
31. Garonzik IM, Hua SE, Ohara S, et al. Intraoperative microelectrode and semi-microelectrode recording during the physiological localization of the thalamic nucleus ventral intermediate. *Movement Disord*. 2002;17:S135. PMID:11948768.
32. Martin JT, Faulconer A, Bickford RG. Electroencephalography in anesthesiology. *Anesthesiology*. 1959;20:359. PMID:13650223.
33. Sharbrough FW, Messick JM, Sundt TM. Correlation of continuous electroencephalograms with cerebral blood flow measurements during carotid endarterectomy. *Stroke*. 1973;4:674. PMID:4723697.
34. Craft RM, Losasso TJ, Perkins WJ, et al. EEG monitoring for cerebral ischemia during carotid endarterectomy (CEA). How much is enough? *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1994;6:301. Abstract oral session, no DOI/PMID.
35. Spackman TN, Faust RJ, Cucchiara RF, et al. A comparison of a periodic analysis of the EEG with standard EEG and cerebral blood flow for detection of ischemia. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:229. PMID:3813085.
36. Billard V, Gambus PL, Chamoun N, et al. A comparison of spectral edge, delta power, and bispectral index as EEG measures of alfentanil, propofol, and midazolam drug effect. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1997;61:45. PMID:9024173.
37. Schmidt GN, Bischoff P, Standl T, et al. Narcotrend and bispectral index monitor are superior to classic electroencephalographic parameters for the assessment of anesthetic states during propofol-remifentanil anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1072. PMID:1942640.
38. Willmann K, Springman S, Rusy D, et al. A preliminary evaluation of a new derived EEG index monitor in anesthetized patients. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2002;17:345. PMID:12885178.
39. Drover DR, Lemmens HJ, Pierce ET, et al. Patient state index. titration of delivery and recovery from propofol, alfentanil, and nitrous oxide anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:82. PMID:12131107.
40. Levy WJ. Effect of epoch length on power spectrum analysis of the EEG. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:489. PMID:3565814.
41. Grundy BL. Monitoring of sensory evoked potentials during neurosurgical operation. Methods and applications. *Neurosurgery*. 1982;11:556. PMID:6755296.
42. Greenberg RP, Ducker TB. Evoked potentials in the clinical neurosciences. *J Neurosurg*. 1982;56:1. PMID:7054401.
43. Cohen AR, Young W, Ransohoff J. Intraspinal localization of the somatosensory evoked potential. *Neurosurgery*. 1981;9:157. PMID:7266814.
44. York DH. Somatosensory evoked potentials in man. Differentiation of spinal pathways responsible for conduction from the forelimb vs. hindlimb. *Progr Neurobiol*. 1985;25:1. PMID:3909220.

45. Bundo M, Inao S, Nakamura A, et al. Changes of neural activity correlate with the severity of cortical ischemia in patients with unilateral major cerebral artery occlusion. *Stroke*. 2002;33:61. PMID:11779890.
46. Symon L. Flow thresholds in brain ischaemia and the effects of drugs. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:34. PMID:3881114.
47. Brainston NM, Ladds A, Symon L, et al. Comparison of the effects of ischaemia on early components of the somatosensory evoked potential in brainstem, thalamus, and cerebral cortex. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1984;4:68. PMID:6693514.
48. Lopez JR, Chang SD, Steinberg GK. The use of electrophysiological monitoring in the intraoperative management of intracranial aneurysms. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1999;66:189. PMID:10071098.
49. Guerit JM, Witdoeckt C, de Tourtchaninoff M, et al. Somatosensory evoked potential monitoring in carotid surgery, I. Relationships between qualitative SEP alterations and intraoperative events. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1997;104:459. PMID:9402888.
50. Chiappa KH, Ropper AH. Evoked potentials in clinical medicine. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;306:1205. PMID:6280049.
51. Ganes T. A study of peripheral, cervical, and cortical evoked potentials and afferent conduction times in the somatosensory pathway. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1980;49:446. PMID:6158426.
52. Chiappa KH, Ropper AH. Evoked potentials in clinical medicine. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;306:1140. PMID:7040957.
53. Grundy BL, Jannetta PJ, Procopio PT, et al. Intraoperative monitoring of brain-stem auditory evoked potentials. *J Neurosurg*. 1982;57:674. PMID:7131068.
54. Raudzens PA, Shetter AG. Intraoperative monitoring of brain-stem auditory evoked potentials. *J Neurosurg*. 1982;57:341. PMID:7097329.
55. Duncan PG, Sanders RA, McCollough DW. Preservation of auditory-evoked responses in anaesthetized children. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1979;26:492. PMID:526876.
56. Sasaki T, Itakura T, Suzuki K, et al. Intraoperative monitoring of visual evoked potential. Introduction of a clinically useful method. *J Neurosurg*. 2010;112:273–284. PMID:19199497.
57. Levy WJ, York DH, McCaffrey M, et al. Motor evoked potentials from transcranial stimulation of the motor cortex in humans. *Neurosurgery*. 1984;15:287. PMID:6090972.
58. Legatt AD. Current practice of motor evoked potential monitoring. Results of a survey. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2002;19:454. PMID 12477990.
59. MacDonald DB, Al Zayed Z, Khoudeir I, et al. Monitoring scoliosis surgery with combined multiple pulse transcranial electric motor and cortical somatosensory-evoked potentials from the lower and upper extremities. *Spine*. 2003;28:194. PMID:12544939.
60. Szelenyi A, Bueno de Camargo A, Flamm E, et al. Neurophysiological criteria for intraoperative prediction of pure motor hemiplegia during aneurysm surgery. Case report. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;99:575. PMID:12959448.
61. Meylaerts S, Jacobs MJ, van Iterson V, et al. Comparison of transcranial motor evoked potentials and somatosensory evoked potentials during thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *Ann Surg*. 1999;230:742. PMID:10615928.
62. Pelosi L, Lamb J, Grevitt M, et al. Combined monitoring of motor and somatosensory evoked potentials in orthopaedic spinal surgery. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2002;113:1082. PMID:12088704.
63. Skinner SA, Transfeldt EE, Savik K. Surface electrodes are not sufficient to detect neurotonic discharges. Observations in a porcine model and clinical review of deltoid electromyographic monitoring using multiple electrodes. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2008;22:131. PMID:18335318.
64. Harner SG, Daube JR, Beatty CW. Improved preservation of facial nerve function with use of electrical monitoring during removal of acoustic neuromas. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1987;62:92. PMID:3807440.
65. Harper CM, Daube RJ. Surgical monitoring with evoked potentials. The Mayo Clinic experience. In: Desmedt JE, ed. *Neuromonitoring in Surgery*. New York: Elsevier Science; 1989:275. ISBN. 0444810137.
66. Skinner S, Holdefer R, McAuliffe JJ, Sala F. Medical error avoidance in intraoperative neurophysiological monitoring. The communication imperative. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2017;34:477–483. PMID:29023306.
67. Freedman WA, Chadwick GM, Verhoeven JS, et al. Monitoring of somatosensory evoked potentials during surgery of middle cerebral artery aneurysms. *Neurosurgery*. 1991;29:98. PMID:1870692.
68. Lokuge K, de Waard DD, Halliday A, Gray A, Bulbulia R, Mihaylova B. Meta-analysis of the procedural risks of carotid endarterectomy and carotid artery stenting over time. *Br J Surg*. 2018;105:26–36. PMID:29205297.
69. De Rango P, Brown MM, Chaturvedi S, et al. Summary of evidence on early carotid intervention for recently symptomatic stenosis based on meta-analysis of current risks. *Stroke*. 2015;46:3423–3436. PMID:26470773.
70. Sundt TW, Sharbrough FW, Piepgras DG, et al. Correlation of cerebral blood flow and electroencephalographic changes during carotid endarterectomy. With results of surgery and hemodynamics of cerebral ischemia. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1981;56:533. PMID:7266064.
71. Bond R, Warlow CP, Naylor AR, Rothwell PM. European Carotid Surgery Trialists' Collaborative Group. Variation in surgical and anesthetic technique and associations with operative risk in the European Carotid Surgery Trial. Implications for trials of ancillary techniques. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2002;23:117–126. PMID:11863328.
72. Kalkman CJ. Con. Routine shunting is not the optimal management of the patient undergoing carotid endarterectomy, but neither is neuromonitoring. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:381–383. PMID:15232822.
73. Plestis KA, Loubser P, Mizrahi EM, et al. Continuous electroencephalographic monitoring and selective shunting reduces neurologic morbidity rates in carotid endarterectomy. *J Vasc Surg*. 1997;25:620. PMID:9129616.
74. Halsey JH. Risks and benefits of shunting in carotid endarterectomy. The International Transcranial Doppler Collaborators. *Stroke*. 1992;23:1583–1587. PMID:1440706.
75. Roseborough GS. Pro. Shunting is the optimal management of the patient undergoing carotid endarterectomy. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:375–380. PMID:15232821.
76. Schneider JR, Droste JS, Schindler N, et al. Carotid endarterectomy with routine electroencephalography and selective shunting. Influence of contralateral internal carotid artery occlusion and utility in prevention of postoperative strokes. *J Vasc Surg*. 2002;35:1114–1122. PMID:12042721.
77. Woodworth GF, McGirt MJ, Than KD, et al. Selective versus routine intraoperative shunting during carotid endarterectomy. A multivariate outcome analysis. *Neurosurgery*. 2007;61:1170–1177. PMID:18162895.
78. Chongruksut W, Vaniyapong T, Rerkasem K. Routine or selective carotid artery shunting for carotid endarterectomy (and different methods of monitoring in selective shunting). *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;6:CD000190. PMID:24956204.
79. Lam AM, Manninen PH, Ferguson GG, et al. Monitoring of electrophysiologic function during carotid endarterectomy. A comparison of somatosensory evoked potentials and conventional electroencephalogram. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:15. PMID:2064043.
80. Ackerstaff RG, van de Vlasakker CJ. Monitoring of brain function during carotid endarterectomy. An analysis of contemporary methods. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1998;12:341. PMID:9636921.
81. AbuRahma AF, Mousa AY, Stone PA. Shunting during carotid endarterectomy. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;54:1502–1510. PMID:21906905.
82. Thirumala PD, Natarajan P, Thiagarajan K, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of somatosensory evoked potential and electroencephalography during carotid endarterectomy. *Neurol Res*. 2016;38:698–705. PMID:27342607.
83. Ackerstaff RG, Moons KG, van de Vlasakker CJ, et al. Association of intraoperative transcranial Doppler monitoring variables with stroke from carotid endarterectomy. *Stroke*. 2000;31:1817–1823. PMID:10926940.
84. Ogasawara K, Suga Y, Sasaki M, et al. Intraoperative microemboli and low middle cerebral artery blood flow velocity are additive in predicting development of cerebral ischemic events after carotid endarterectomy. *Stroke*. 2008;39:3088–3091. PMID:18688007.
85. Mueller M, Behnke S, Walter P, et al. Microembolic signals and intraoperative stroke in carotid endarterectomy. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 1998;97:110–117. PMID:9517861.
86. Abbott AL, Levi CR, Stork J, et al. Timing of clinically significant microembolism after carotid endarterectomy. *Cerebrovasc Dis*. 2007;23:362–367. PMID:17268167.
87. Dunne VG, Besser M, Ma WJ. Transcranial Doppler in carotid endarterectomy. *J Clin Neurosci*. 82001;140–145. PMID:11484664

88. Spencer MP. Transcranial Doppler monitoring and causes of stroke from carotid endarterectomy. *Stroke*. 1997;28:685–691. PMID:9099179.
89. Gaunte ME. Transcranial Doppler. Preventing stroke during carotid endarterectomy. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 1998;80:377–387. PMID 10209403.
90. Calderon-Arnulphi M, Alaraj A, Amin-Janjani S, et al. Detection of cerebral ischemia in neurovascular surgery using quantitative frequency-domain near-infrared spectroscopy. *J Neurosurg*. 2007;106:283–290. PMID:17410713.
91. Friedell ML, Clark JM, Graham DA, et al. Cerebral oximetry does not correlate with electroencephalography and somatosensory evoked potentials in determining the need for shunting during carotid endarterectomy. *J Vasc Surg*. 2008;48:601–606. PMID:18639412.
92. Friedman WA, Chadwick GM, Verhoeven FJ, et al. Monitoring of somatosensory evoked potentials during surgery for middle cerebral artery aneurysms. *Neurosurgery*. 1991;29:83. PMID:1870692.
93. Mizoi K, Yoshimoto T. Intraoperative monitoring of the somatosensory evoked potentials and cerebral blood flow during aneurysm surgery. Safety evaluation for temporary vascular occlusion. *Neurol Med Chir (Tokyo)*. 1991;31:318. PMID:1724295.
94. Misoi K, Yoshimoto T. Permissible temporary occlusion time in aneurysm surgery as evaluated by evoked potential monitoring. *Neurosurgery*. 1993;33:434. PMID:8413875.
95. Holland NR. Subcortical strokes from intracranial aneurysm surgery. Implications for intraoperative neuromonitoring. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 1998;15:439. PMID:9821071.
96. Schramm J, Zentner J, Pechstein U. Intraoperative SEP monitoring in aneurysm surgery. *Neurol Res*. 1994;16:20. PMID:7913523.
97. Wiedemayer H, Fauser B, Sandalcioglu IE. The impact of neurophysiological intraoperative monitoring on surgical decisions. A critical analysis of 423 cases. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;96:255. PMID:11838799.
98. Manninen PH, Patterson S, Lam AM, et al. Evoked potential monitoring during posterior fossa aneurysm surgery. A comparison of two modalities. *Can J Anaesth*. 1994;41:92. PMID:8131241.
99. Manninen PH, Cuillerier DJ, Gelb AW, et al. Monitoring of brain stem function during posterior fossa surgery. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37(4 Pt 2):S23. PMID:2361284.
100. Friedman WA, Kaplan BL, Day AL. Evoked potential monitoring during aneurysm operation. Observations after fifty cases. *Neurosurgery*. 1987;20:678. PMID:3601013.
101. Little JR, Lesser RP, Luders H. Electrophysiological monitoring during basilar aneurysm operation. *Neurosurgery*. 1987;20:421. PMID:3574618.
102. Sasaki T, Kodama N, Matsumoto M, et al. Blood flow disturbance in perforating arteries attributable to aneurysm surgery. *J Neurosurg*. 2007;107:60–67. PMID:17639875.
103. Hemmer LB, Zeeni C, Bebawy JF, et al. The incidence of unacceptable movement with motor evoked potentials during craniotomy for aneurysm clipping. *World Neurosurg*. 2014;81:99–104. PMID:23043993.
104. Thomas B, Guo D. The diagnostic accuracy of evoked potential monitoring techniques during intracranial aneurysm surgery for predicting postoperative ischemic damage. A systematic review and meta-analysis. *World Neurosurg*. 2017;103:829–840. PMID:28433839.
105. Meng L, McDonagh DL, Berger MS, Gelb AW. Anesthesia for awake craniotomy. A how-to guide for the occasional practitioner. *Can J Anaesth*. 2017;64:517–529. PMID:28181184.
106. Stevanovic A, Rossaint R, Veldeman M, Bilotta F, Coburn M. Anaesthesia management for awake craniotomy. Systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0156448. PMID:27228013.
107. West S, Nolan SJ, Newton R. Surgery for epilepsy. A systematic review of current evidence. *Epileptic Disord*. 2016;18:113–121. PMID 27193634.
108. Ryvlin P, Cross JH, Rheims S. Epilepsy surgery in children and adults. *Lancet Neurol*. 2014;13:1114–1126. PMID:25316018.
109. Ramnarayan R, Mackenzie I. Brain-stem auditory evoked responses during microvascular decompression for trigeminal neuralgia. predicting postoperative hearing loss. *Neurol India*. 2006;54:250–254. PMID:16936382.
110. Sindou MP. Microvascular decompression for primary hemifacial spasm. Importance of intraoperative neurophysiological monitoring. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 2005;147:1019–1026. PMID:16094508.
111. Brock S, Scaioli V, Ferroli P, Broggi G. Neurovascular decompression in trigeminal neuralgia. Role of intraoperative neurophysiological monitoring in the learning period. *Stereotact Funct Neurosurg*. 2004;82:199–206. PMID:15583464.
112. Sindou M, Fobé JL, Ciriano D, Fischer C. Hearing prognosis and intraoperative guidance of brainstem auditory evoked potential in microvascular decompression. *Laryngoscope*. 1992;102:678–682. PMID:1602916.
113. Friedman WA, Kaplan BJ, Gravenstein D, Rhoton AL. Intraoperative brain-stem auditory evoked potentials during posterior fossa microvascular decompression. *J Neurosurg*. 1985;62:552–557. PMID: 3973725.
114. Thirumala PD, Shah AC, Nikonow TN, et al. Microvascular decompression for hemifacial spasm. evaluating outcome prognosticators including the value of intraoperative lateral spread response monitoring and clinical characteristics in 293 patients. *J Clin Neurophys*. 2011;28:56–66. PMID:21221005.
115. Khrais T, Sanna M. Hearing preservation surgery in vestibular schwannoma. *J Laryngol Otol*. 2006;120:366–370. PMID:16556349.
116. Vivas EX, Carlson ML, Neff BA, et al. Congress of neurological surgeons systematic review and evidence-based guidelines on intraoperative cranial nerve monitoring in vestibular schwannoma surgery. *Neurosurgery*. 2018;82:E44–E46. PMID:29309641.
117. Sala F, Coppola A, Tramontano V. Intraoperative neurophysiology in posterior fossa tumor surgery in children. *Childs Nerv Syst*. 2015;31:1791–1806. PMID:26351231.
118. McCallum JE, Bennett MH. Electrophysiologic monitoring of spinal cord function during intraspinal surgery. *Surg Forum*. 1975;26:469. PMID:1216195.
119. Maccabee PJ, Pinkhasov EI, Tsairis P, et al. Spinal and short latency scalp derived somatosensory evoked potentials during corrective spinal column surgery. *Electroenceph-alogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1982;53:32.
120. Luederes H, Gurd A, Hahn J, et al. A new technique for intraoperative monitoring of spinal cord function. Multichannel recording of spinal cord and subcortical evoked potentials. *Spine*. 1982;7:110. PMID:7089686.
121. Raudzens PA. Intraoperative monitoring of evoked potentials. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1982;388:308. PMID:6953874.
122. Grundy BL. Intraoperative monitoring of sensory evoked potentials. In: Nodar RH, Barber C, eds. *Evoked Potentials I*. Boston: Butterworth; 1984:624.
123. Deutsch H, Arginteanu M, Manhart K, et al. Somatosensory evoked potential monitoring in anterior thoracic vertebrectomy. *J Neurosurg*. 2000;92(suppl 2):155–161. PMID:10763685.
124. Ben-David B, Haller G, Taylor P. Anterior spinal fusion complicated by paraplegia. A case report of a false-negative somatosensory-evoked potential. *Spine*. 12:536–539. PMID:3660079
125. Szilagyi DE, Hageman JH, Smith RF, et al. Spinal cord damage in surgery of the abdominal aorta. *Surgery*. 1978;83:38. PMID: 619471.
126. Edmonds HL, MPJ Paloheimo, Backman MH, et al. Transcranial magnetic motor evoked potentials for functional monitoring of motor pathways during scoliosis surgery. *Spine*. 1989;14:683. PMID:2772715.
127. Boyd SG, Rothwell JC, Cowan JMA, et al. A method of monitoring function in corticospinal pathways during scoliosis surgery with a note on motor conduction velocities. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1986;49:251. PMID:3958738.
128. Sloan TB, Janik D, Jameson L. Multimodality monitoring of the central nervous system using motor-evoked potentials. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2008;21:560–564. PMID:18784479.
129. Padberg AM, Wilson-Holden TJ, Lenke LG, Bridwell KH. Somatosensory and motor evoked potential monitoring without a wake-up test during idiopathic scoliosis surgery. An accepted standard of care. *Spine*. 1998;23:1392–1400. PMID:9654631.
130. Schwartz DM, Auerbach JD, Dormans JP, et al. Neurophysiologic detection of impending spinal cord injury during scoliosis surgery. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2007;89:2440–2449. PMID:17974887.
131. MacDonald DB, Al Zayed Z, Khoudeir I, Stigsby B. Monitoring scoliosis surgery with combined multiple pulse transcranial electric motor and cortical somatosensory-evoked potentials from the lower and upper extremities. *Spine*. 2003;28:194–203. PMID:12544939.

132. MacDonald DB, Skinner S, Shils J, Yingling C. Intraoperative motor evoked potential monitoring. A position statement by the American Society of Neurophysiological Monitoring. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2013;124:2291–2316. PMID:24055297.
133. Elmore JR, Gloviczki P, Harper CM, et al. Failure of motor evoked potentials to predict neurologic outcome in experimental thoracic aortic occlusion. *J Vasc Surg*. 1991;14:131. PMID:1861323.
134. Reuter DG, Tacker WA, Badylak SF, et al. Correlation of motor-evoked potential response to ischemic spinal cord damage. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1992;104:262. PMID:1495288.
135. Conrad MF, Ergul EA, Patel VI, et al. Evolution of operative strategies in open thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;53:1195–1201. PMID:21315544.
136. Weigang E, Hartert M, Siegenthaler MP, et al. Perioperative management to improve neurologic outcome in thoracic or thoracoabdominal aortic stent grafting. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:1679–1687. PMID:17062227.
137. Etz CD, Halstead JC, Spielvogel D, et al. Thoracic and thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair. Is reimplantation of spinal cord arteries a waste of time. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:1670–1677. PMID:17062225.
138. Skinner SA, Vodušek DB. Intraoperative recording of the bulbocavernosus reflex. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2014;31:313–322. PMID:25083842.
139. Raynor BL, Lenke LG, Bridwell KH, et al. Correlation between low triggered electromyographic thresholds and lumbar pedicle screw malposition. Analysis of 4857 screws. *Spine*. 2007;32:2673–2678. PMID:18007243.
140. Shi YB, Binette M, Martin WH, et al. Electrical stimulation for intraoperative evaluation of thoracic pedicle screw placement. *Spine*. 2003;28:595–601. PMID 12642768.
141. Isley MR, Zhang XF, Balzer JR, Leppanen RE. Current trends in pedicle screw stimulation techniques. Lumbosacral, thoracic, and cervical levels. *Neurodiag J*. 2012;52:100–175. PMID:22808751.
142. Shin AY, Spinner RJ, Steinmann SP, Bishop AT. Adult traumatic brachial plexus injuries. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2005;13:382–396. PMID 16224111.
143. Kline DG, Kim D, Midha R, et al. Management and results of sciatic nerve injuries. A 24-year experience. *J Neurosurg*. 1998;89:13. PMID:9647167.
144. Kim DH, Cho YJ, Tiel RL, et al. Outcomes of surgery in 1019 brachial plexus lesions treated at Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;98:1005. PMID:12744360.
145. Cornelissen L, Kim SE, Purdon PL, Brown EN, Berde CB. Age-dependent electroencephalogram (EEG) patterns during sevoflurane general anesthesia in infants. *Elife*. 2015;4:e06513. PMID:26102526.
146. Levy WJ. Quantitative analysis of EEG changes during hypothermia. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:291. PMID:6703384.
147. Levy WJ, Pantin E, Mehta S, et al. Hypothermia and the approximate entropy of the electroencephalogram. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:53. PMID:12502979.
148. Chabot RJ, Gugino LD, Aglio LS, et al. QEEG and neuropsychological profiles of patients after undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass surgical procedures. *Clin Electroencephalogr*. 1997;28:98. PMID:9137873.
149. Edmonds HL, Griffiths LK, van der Laken J, et al. Quantitative electroencephalographic monitoring during myocardial revascularization predicts postoperative disorientation and improves outcome. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1992;103:555. PMID:1545555.
150. Miller G, Rodichok LD, Baylen BG. EEG changes during open heart surgery on infants aged 6 months or less. Relationship to early neurologic morbidity. *Pediatr Neurol*. 1994;10:124. PMID:8024660.
151. Hirsch JC, Jacobs ML, Andropoulos D, et al. Protecting the infant brain during cardiac surgery. A systematic review. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94:1365–1373. PMID:23006704.
152. Doblar DD. Intraoperative transcranial ultrasonic monitoring for cardiac and vascular surgery. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;8:127–145. PMID:15247999.
153. Rodriguez PA, Rubens FD, Wozny D, Nathan HJ. Cerebral emboli detected by transcranial Doppler during cardiopulmonary bypass are not correlated with postoperative cognitive deficits. *Stroke*. 2010;41:2229–2235. PMID:20724717.
154. Sakamoto T, Duebener LF, Laussen PC, Jonas RA. Cerebral ischemia caused by obstructed superior vena cava cannula is detected by near-infrared spectroscopy. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:293–303. PMID:15232808.
155. Kussman BD, Wypij D, DiNardo JA, et al. An evaluation of bilateral monitoring of cerebral oxygen saturation during pediatric cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1294–1300. PMID:16243983.
156. Murkin JM, Adams SJ, Novick RJ, et al. Monitoring brain oxygen saturation during coronary bypass surgery. A randomized prospective study. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:51–58. PMID:17179242.
157. Zheng F, Sheinberg R, Yee MS, Ono M, Zheng Y, Hogue CW. Cerebral near-infrared spectroscopy monitoring and neurologic outcomes in adult cardiac surgery patients. A systematic review. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:663–676. PMID:23267000.
158. Ono M, Joshi B, Brady K, et al. Risks for impaired cerebral autoregulation during cardiopulmonary bypass and postoperative stroke. *Br J Anesth*. 2012;109:391–398. PMID:22661748.
159. Colak Z, Borojevic M, Bogovic A, Ivancan V, Biocina B, Majeric-Kogler V. Influence of intraoperative cerebral oximetry monitoring on neurocognitive function after coronary artery bypass surgery. A randomized prospective study. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2015;47:447–454. PMID:24810757.
160. Brady K, Joshi B, Zweifel C, et al. Real-time continuous monitoring of cerebral blood flow autoregulation using near-infrared spectroscopy in patients undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass. *Stroke*. 2010;41:1951–1956. PMID:20651274.
161. Gopinath SP, Robertson CS, Contant CF, et al. Jugular venous desaturation and outcome after head injury. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1994;57:717–723. PMID:8006653.
162. Fandino J, Stocker R, Prokop S, et al. Cerebral oxygenation and systemic trauma related factors determining neurological outcome after brain injury. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2000;7:226–233. PMID:10833621.
163. Cormio M, Valadka AB, Robertson CS. Elevated jugular venous oxygen saturation after severe head injury. *J Neurosurg*. 1999;90:9–15. PMID:10413150.
164. Hilkman DM, van Mook WN, van Kranen-Mastenbroek VH. Continuous electroencephalographic-monitoring in the ICU. An overview of current strengths and future challenges. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30:192–199. PMID:28151826.
165. Herman ST, Abend NS, Bleck TP, et al. Critical Care Continuous EEG Task Force of the American Clinical Neurophysiology Society. Consensus statement on continuous EEG in critically ill adults and children, Part I. Indications. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2015;32:87–95. PMID:25626778.
166. Herman ST, Abend NS, Bleck TP, et al. Critical Care Continuous EEG Task Force of the American Clinical Neurophysiology Society. Consensus statement on continuous EEG in critically ill adults and children, Part II. Personnel, technical specifications, and clinical practice. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2015;32:96–108. PMID:25626777.
167. Cremer OL, van Dijk GW, van Wensen E, et al. Effect of intracranial pressure monitoring and targeted intensive care on functional outcome after severe head injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:2207–2213. PMID:16215372.
168. Stiefel MF, Udoetuk JD, Spiotta AM, et al. Conventional neurocritical care and cerebral oxygenation after traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2006;105:568–575. PMID:17044560.
169. Fortune JB, Feustel PJ, Graca L, et al. Effect of hyperventilation, mannitol, and ventriculostomy drainage on cerebral blood flow after head injury. *J Trauma*. 1995;39:1091. PMID:7500400.
170. Skippen P, Seear M, Poskitt K, et al. Effect of hyperventilation on regional cerebral blood flow in head-injured children. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25:1402. PMID:9267957.
171. Imberti R, Bellinzona G, Langer M. Cerebral tissue PO_2 and $SjVO_2$ changes during moderate hyperventilation in patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;96:97. PMID:11794610.
172. Coles JP, Minhas PS, Fryer TD, et al. Effect of hyperventilation on cerebral blood flow in traumatic head injury. Clinical relevance and monitoring correlates. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:1950. PMID:12352026.
173. van den Brink WA, van Santbrink H, Steyerberg EW, et al. Brain oxygen tension in severe head injury. *Neurosurgery*. 2000;46:868–876. PMID:10764260.
174. Stiefel MF, Spiotta A, Gracias VH, et al. Reduced mortality rate in patients with severe traumatic brain injury treated with brain tissue oxygen monitoring. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;103:805–811. PMID:16304983.
175. Suarez JI, Qureshi AI, Yahia AB, et al. Symptomatic vasospasm diagnosis after subarachnoid hemorrhage. Evaluation of transcranial Doppler ultrasound and cerebral angiography as related to compromised vascular distribution. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:1348. PMID:12072693.

176. Topcuoglu MA, Pryor JC, Ogilvy CS, et al. Cerebral vasospasm following subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Curr Treat Options Cardiovasc Med*. 2002;4:3731. PMID:12194810.
177. Jarus-Dziedzic K, Juniewicz H, Wronski J, et al. The relation between cerebral blood flow velocities as measured by TCD and the incidence of delayed ischemic deficits. A prospective study after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurol Res*. 2002;24:5822. PMID:12238625.
178. Aaslid R. Transcranial Doppler assessment of cerebral vasospasm. *Eur J Ultrasound*. 2002;16:3. PMID:12470845.
179. Mascia L, Fedorko L, ter Brugge K, et al. The accuracy of transcranial Doppler to detect vasospasm in patients with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29:1088. 12774157.
180. Sloan MA, Haley EC, Kassell NF, et al. Sensitivity and specificity of transcranial Doppler ultrasonography in the diagnosis of vasospasm following subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurology*. 1989;39:1514. PMID:2682350.
181. Sekhar LN, Wechsler LR, Yonas H, et al. Value of transcranial Doppler examination in the diagnosis of cerebral vasospasm after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurosurgery*. 1988;22:813. PMID:3288899.
182. Vespa PM, Nenov V, Nuwer MR. Continuous EEG monitoring in the intensive care unit. Early findings and clinical efficacy. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 1999;16:1–13. 10082088.
183. Bricolo A, Turazzi S, Faccioli F, et al. Clinical application of compressed spectral array in long-term EEG monitoring of comatose patients. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1978;45:211–225. PMID:78831.
184. Gutling E, Gonser A, Imhof HG, Landis T. EEG reactivity in the prognosis of severe head injury. *Neurology*. 1995;45:915–918. PMID:7746406.
185. Alexandre A, Rubini L, Nertempi P, Farinello C. Sleep alterations during post-traumatic coma as a possible predictor of cognitive defects. *Acta Neurochir Suppl (Wien)*. 1979;28:188–192. PMID:225934.
186. Bergamasco B, Bergamini L, Doriguzzi T, Fabiani D. EEG sleep patterns as a prognostic criterion in post-traumatic coma. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1968;24:374–377.
187. Winer JW, Rosenwasser RH, Jimenez F. Electroencephalographic activity and serum and cerebrospinal fluid pentobarbital levels in determining the therapeutic end point during barbiturate coma. *Neurosurgery*. 1991;29:739–741. PMID:1961405.
188. Koenig MA, Kaplan PW. Clinical applications for EPs in the ICU. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2015;32:472–480. PMID:26629757.
189. Facco E, Munari M, Baratto F, et al. Multimodality evoked potentials (auditory, somatosensory and motor) in coma. *Neurophysiol Clin*. 1993;23:237–258. PMID:8326933.
190. Pohlmann-Eden B, Dingethal K, Bender HJ, Koelfen W. How reliable is the predictive value of SEP (somatosensory evoked potentials) patterns in severe brain damage with special regard to the bilateral loss of cortical responses? *Intensive Care Med*. 1997;23:301–308. PMID:9083233.
191. Ruiz-Lopez MJ, Martinez de Azagra A, Serrano A, Casado-Flores J. Brain death and evoked potentials in pediatric patients. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:412–416. PMID:10075069.
192. Goodwin SR, Friedman WA, Bellefleur M. Is it time to use evoked potentials to predict outcome in comatose children and adults? *Crit Care Med*. 1991;19:518–524. PMID:2019138.
193. Morgalla MH, Bauer J, Ritz R, Tatagiba M. Coma. The prognostic value of evoked potentials in patients after traumatic brain injury. *Anaesthesist*. 2006;55:760–768. PMID:16718461.
194. Nuwer MR. Electroencephalograms and evoked potentials. Monitoring cerebral function in the neurosurgical intensive care unit. *Neurosurg Clin North Am*. 1994;5:647–659. PMID:7827476.
195. Lew HL, Poole JH, Castaneda A, et al. Prognostic value of evoked and event-related potentials in moderate to severe brain injury. *J Head Trauma Rehabil*. 2006;21:350–360. PMID:16915010.
196. Carter BG, Butt W. Review of the use of somatosensory evoked potentials in the prediction of outcome after severe brain injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29:178–186. PMID:11176182.
197. Carter BG, Butt W. Are somatosensory evoked potentials the best predictor of outcome after severe brain injury? A systematic review. *Intensive Care Med*. 2005;31:765–775. PMID:15846481.
198. Fischer C, Luaute J. Evoked potentials for the prediction of vegetative state in the acute stage of coma. *Neuropsychol Rehabil*. 2005;15:372–380. PMID:16350978.
199. Petty GW, Mohr JP, Pedley T, et al. The role of transcranial Doppler in confirming brain death. *Neurology*. 1990;40:300. PMID:2405294.
200. Rosen I, Hagerdal M. Electroencephalographic study of children during ketamine anesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1976;20:32. PMID:1266554.
201. Akeju O, Song AH, Hamilos AE, et al. Electroencephalogram signatures of ketamine-induced unconsciousness. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2016;127:2414–2422. PMID:27178861.
202. McGuire G, El-Beheiry H, Manninen P, et al. Activation of electrocorticographic activity with remifentanil and alfentanil during neurosurgical excision of epileptogenic focus. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:651–655. PMID:14570785.
203. La Marca S, Lozito RJ, Dunn RW. Cognitive and EEG recovery following bolus intravenous administration of anesthetic agents. *Psychopharmacol (Berl)*. 1995;120:426. PMID:8539323.
204. Sebel PS, Bovill JG, Wauquier A, et al. Effects of high dose fentanyl anesthesia on the electroencephalogram. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:203. PMID:7270948.
205. Huupponen E, Maksimow A, Lapinlampi P, et al. Electroencephalogram spindle activity during dexmedetomidine sedation and physiological sleep. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52:289–294. PMID:18005372.
206. Maksimow A, Snapir A, Sarkela M, et al. Assessing the depth of dexmedetomidine-induced sedation with electroencephalogram (EEG)-based spectral entropy. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51:22–30. PMID:17073855.
207. Kasuya Y, et al. The correlation between bispectral index and observational sedation scale in volunteers sedated with dexmedetomidine and propofol. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1811–1815. PMID:19923507.
208. Yamamura T, Fukuda M, Takeya H, et al. Fast oscillatory EEG activity induced by analgesic concentrations of nitrous oxide in man. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60:283. PMID:7194592.
209. Clark DL, Hosick EC, Neigh JL. Neural effects of isoflurane (Forane) in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;39:261. PMID:4145825.
210. Artru AA, Lam AM, Johnson JO, et al. Intracranial pressure, middle cerebral artery flow velocity, and plasma inorganic fluoride concentrations in neurosurgical patients receiving sevoflurane or isoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:587. PMID:9296414.
211. Komatsu H, Taie S, Endo S, et al. Electrical seizures during sevoflurane anesthesia in two pediatric patients with epilepsy. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1535. PMID:7997923.
212. Jaaskelainen SK, Kaisti K, Suni L, et al. Sevoflurane is epileptogenic in healthy subjects at surgical levels of anesthesia. *Neurology*. 2003;61:1073. PMID:14581667.
213. Endo T, Sato K, Shamoto H, et al. Effects of sevoflurane on electrocorticography in patients with intractable temporal lobe epilepsy. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2002;14:59. PMID:11773826.
214. Rampil IJ, Lockhart SH, Eger EI, et al. The electroencephalographic effects of desflurane in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:434. PMID:2001021.
215. Sharpe MD, Young GB, Mirsattari S, et al. Prolonged desflurane administration for refractory status epilepticus. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:261. PMID:12131129.
216. Hoffman WE, Edelman G. Comparison of isoflurane and desflurane anesthetic depth using burst suppression of the electroencephalogram in neurosurgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:811. PMID:7574015.
217. Banoub M, Tetzlaff JE, Schubert A. Pharmacologic and physiologic influences affecting sensory evoked potentials. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:716. PMID:12960558.
218. Peterson DO, Drummond JC, Todd MM. Effects of halothane, enflurane, isoflurane, and nitrous oxide on somatosensory evoked potentials in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:35. PMID:3014922.
219. McPherson RW, Mahla M, Johnson R, et al. Effects of enflurane, isoflurane, and nitrous oxide on somatosensory evoked potentials during fentanyl anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:626. PMID:3994028.
220. Pathak KS, Amaddio BS, Scoles PV, et al. Effects of halothane, enflurane, and isoflurane in nitrous oxide on multilevel somatosensory evoked potentials. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:207. PMID:2643892.
221. Samra SK, Vanderzant CW, Domer PA, et al. Differential effects of isoflurane on human median nerve somatosensory evoked potentials. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:29. PMID:3800031.

222. Haghighi SS, Sirintrapun SJ, Johnson JC, et al. Suppression of spinal and cortical somatosensory evoked potentials by desflurane anesthesia. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1996;8:148. PMID:8829563.
223. Bernard JM, Pereon Y, Fayet G, et al. Effects of isoflurane and desflurane on neurogenic motor- and somatosensory-evoked potential monitoring for scoliosis surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:1013. PMID:8916817.
224. Boisseau N, Madany M, Staccini P, et al. Comparison of the effects of sevoflurane and propofol on cortical somatosensory evoked potentials. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:785. PMID:12173194.
225. Vaugha DJ, Thornton C, Wright DR, et al. Effects of different concentrations of sevoflurane and desflurane on subcortical somatosensory evoked responses in anaesthetized, non-stimulated patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:59. PMID:11575411.
226. Manninen PH, Lam AM, Nicholas JF. The effects of isoflurane-nitrous oxide anesthesia on brainstem auditory evoked potentials in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:43. PMID:3966651.
227. Thornton C, Catley DM, Jordan C, et al. Enflurane anaesthesia causes graded changes in the brainstem and early cortical auditory evoked response in man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:479. PMID:6407493.
228. Matsushita S, Oda S, Otaki K, et al. Change in auditory evoked potential index and bispectral index during induction of anesthesia with anesthetic drugs. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2015;29:621–626. PMID:25427598.
229. Chi OZ, Field C. Effects of isoflurane on visual evoked potentials in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:328. PMID:3752582 .
230. Soffin EM, Emerson RG, Cheng J, et al. A pilot study to record visual evoked potentials during prone spine surgery using the SightSaver™ photic visual stimulator. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017. PMID:29264762.
231. Uribe AA, Mendel E, Peters ZA, et al. Comparison of visual evoked potential monitoring during spine surgeries under total intravenous anesthesia versus balanced general anesthesia. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2017;128:2006–2013. PMID:28837906.
232. Sebel PS, Flynn PJ, Ingram DA. Effect of nitrous oxide on visual, auditory, and somatosensory evoked potentials. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56:1403. PMID:6498051.
233. Liu EH, Wong HK, Chia CP, et al. Effects of isoflurane and propofol on cortical somatosensory evoked potentials during comparable depth of anaesthesia as guided by bispectral index. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:193–197. PMID:15516356.
234. Boisseau N, Madany M, Staccini P, et al. Comparison of the effects of sevoflurane and propofol on cortical somatosensory evoked potentials. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:785–789. PMID:12173194.
235. Taniguchi M, Nadstawek J, Pechstein U, Schramm J. Total intravenous anesthesia for improvement of intraoperative monitoring of somatosensory evoked potentials during aneurysm surgery. *Neurosurgery*. 1992;31:891–897. PMID:1436413.
236. Chassard D, Joubaud A, Colson A, et al. Auditory evoked potentials during propofol anaesthesia in man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;62:522–526. PMID:2786421.
237. Purdie JA, Cullen PM. Brainstem auditory evoked response during propofol anaesthesia in children. *Anaesthesia*. 1993;48:192–195. PMID:8460794.
238. Drummond JC, Todd MM, Sang H. The effect of high dose sodium thiopental on brain stem auditory and median nerve somatosensory evoked responses in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:249. PMID:4025886.
239. Shimoji K, Kano T, Nakashima H, et al. The effects of thiamyl sodium on electrical activities of the central and peripheral nervous systems in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40:234. PMID:1962176.
240. Ganes T, Lundar T. The effect of thiopentone on somatosensory evoked responses and EEGs in comatose patients. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1983;46:509. PMID:6875584.
241. Sutton LN, Frewen T, Marsh R, et al. The effects of deep barbiturate coma on multimodality evoked potentials. *J Neurosurg*. 1982;57:178. PMID:7086510.
242. Koht A, Schutz W, Schmidt G, et al. Effects of etomidate, midazolam, and thiopental on median nerve somatosensory evoked potentials and the additive effects of fentanyl and nitrous oxide. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:435. PMID:3364762.
243. Sloan TB, Ronai AK, Toleikis JR, et al. Improvement of intraoperative somatosensory evoked potentials by etomidate. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:582. PMID:3132058.
244. Heneghan CPH, Thornton C, Navaratnarajah M, et al. Effect of etomidate on the auditory evoked response in man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:554–561. PMID:3890909.
245. Doring WH, Daub D. Akustisch evozierte Hirstamm und Rindepotentiale bei sedierung mit diazepam. *Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 1980;227:522.
246. Grundy BL, Brown RH, Greenbergh BA. Diazepam alters cortical potentials. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51:538.
247. Pathak KS, Brown RH, Cascorbi HF, et al. Effects of fentanyl and morphine on intraoperative somatosensory cortical-evoked potentials. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:833. PMID:6465579.
248. Schubert A, Peterson DO, Drummond JC, et al. The effect of high-dose fentanyl on human median nerve somatosensory evoked responses. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:S136. PMID:3829283.
249. Grundy BL, Brown RH. Meperidine enhances somatosensory cortical evoked potentials. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1980;50:177.
250. Samra SK, Lilly DJ, Rush NL, et al. Fentanyl anesthesia and human brain-stem auditory evoked potentials. *Anesthesiology*. 1961:261. PMID:6476433.
251. Bala E, Sessler DI, Nair DR, McLain R, Dalton JE, Farag E. Motor and sensory evoked potentials are well-maintained in patients given dexmedetomidine during spine surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:417–425. PMID:18719439.
252. Mahmoud M, Sadhasivam S, Salisbury S, et al. Susceptibility of transcranial electric motor-evoked potentials to varying targeted blood levels of dexmedetomidine during spine surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:1364–1373. PMID:20460997.
253. Zentner J, Kiss I, Ebner A. Influence of anesthetics—nitrous oxide in particular—on electromyographic response evoked by transcranial electrical stimulation of the cortex. *Neurosurgery*. 1989;24:253. PMID:2918976.
254. Jellinek D, Jewkes D, Symon L. Noninvasive intraoperative monitoring of motor evoked potentials under propofol anesthesia. Effects of spinal surgery on the amplitude and latency of motor evoked potentials. *Neurosurgery*. 1991;29:551. PMID:1944835.
255. Taniguchi M, Nadstawek J, Langenbach U, et al. Effects of four intravenous anesthetic agents on motor evoked potentials elicited by magnetic transcranial stimulation. *Neurosurgery*. 1993;33:407. PMID:8413871.
256. Ubags LH, Kalkman CJ, Been HD, et al. The use of ketamine or etomidate to supplement sufentanil/N_2O anesthesia does not disrupt monitoring of myogenic transcranial motor evoked responses. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1997;9:228. PMID:9239584.
257. Kalkman CJ, Drummond JC, Patel PM, et al. Effects of droperidol, pentobarbital and ketamine on myogenic motor evoked responses in humans. *Neurosurgery*. 1994;35:1066. PMID:7885550.
258. Sloan TB, Heyer EJ. Anesthesia for intraoperative neurophysiologic monitoring of the spinal cord. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2002;19:430. PMID:1247988.
259. Zentner J, Thees C, Pechstein U, et al. Influence of nitrous oxide on motor-evoked potentials. *Spine*. 1997;22:1002. PMID:9152450.
260. Nathan N, Tabaraud F, Lacroix F, et al. Influence of propofol concentrations on multipulse transcranial motor evoked potentials. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:493. PMID:14504148.
261. Ghaly RF, Ham JH, Lee JJ. High-dose ketamine hydrochloride maintains somatosensory and magnetic motor evoked potentials in primates. *Neurol Res*. 2001;23:881. PMID:11760882.
262. Scheufler KM, Zentner J. Total intravenous anesthesia for intraoperative monitoring of the motor pathways. An integral view combining clinical and experimental data. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;96:571. PMID:11883843.
263. Pechstein U, Nadstawek J, Zentner J, et al. Isoflurane plus nitrous oxide versus propofol for recording of motor evoked potentials after high frequency repetitive electrical stimulation. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1998;108:175. PMID:9566630.
264. Pelosi L, Stevenson M, Hobbs GJ, et al. Intraoperative motor evoked potentials to transcranial electrical stimulation during two anaesthetic regimens. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2001;112:1076. PMID:11377268.
265. Ubaga LH, Kalkman CJ, Been HD. Influence of isoflurane on myogenic motor evoked potentials to single and multiple transcranial stimuli during nitrous oxide/opioid anesthesia. *Neurosurgery*. 1998;43:90. PMID:9657194.

266. Stockard JJ, Bickford RG. The neurophysiology of anaesthesia. In: Gordon E, ed. *A Basis and Practice of Neuroanesthesia*. New York: Elsevier; 1981:3.
267. Kraaier V, van Huffelen AC, Wieneke GH. Changes in quantitative EEG and blood flow velocity due to standardized hyperventilation. A model of transient ischaemia in young human subjects. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1988;70:377. PMID:2460311.
268. Clowes GHA, Kretchmer HE, McBurney RW, et al. The electroencephalogram in the evaluation of the effects of anesthetic agents and carbon dioxide accumulation during surgery. *Ann Surg*. 1953;138:558. PMID:13092786.
269. Eng DY, Dong WK, Bledsoe SW, et al. Electrical and pathological correlates of brain hypoxia during hypotension. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:S92.
270. Kobrine AI, Evans DE, Rizzoli HV. Relative vulnerability of the brain and spinal cord to ischemia. *J Neurol Sci*. 1980;45:65. PMID:6766991.
271. Bunegin L, Albin MS, Helsel P, et al. Evoked responses during trimethaphan hypotension. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:A232.
272. Grundy BL, Nash CL, Brown RH. Arterial pressure manipulation alters spinal cord function during correction of scoliosis. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:249. PMID:7469108.
273. Russ W, Kling D, Loesevitz A, et al. Effect of hypothermia on visual evoked potential (VEP) in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:207. PMID:6331776.
274. Stockard JJ, Sharbrough FW, Tinker JA. Effects of hypothermia on the human brainstem auditory response. *Ann Neurol*. 1978;3:368. PMID:666280.
275. Spetzler RF, Hadley MN, Rigamonti D, et al. Aneurysms of the basilar artery treated with circulatory arrest, hypothermia, and barbiturate cerebral protection. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;68:868. PMID:3373282.
276. Dubois M, Loppola R, Buchsbaum MS, et al. Somatosensory evoked potentials during whole body hyperthermia in humans. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1981;52:157. PMID:6167425.
277. Nakagawa Y, Ohtsuka T, Tsura M, et al. Effects of mild hypercapnia on somatosensory evoked potentials in experimental cerebral ischemia. *Stroke*. 1984;25:275. PMID:6422587.
278. Grundy BL, Heros RC, Tung AS, et al. Intraoperative hypoxia detected by evoked potential monitoring. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60:437. PMID:7195166.
279. Nagao S, Roccaforte P, Moody RA. The effects of isovolemic hemodilution and reinfusion of packed erythrocytes on somatosensory and visual evoked potentials. *J Surg Res*. 1978;25:S30. PMID:102873.

40

Monitoring the State of the Brain and Central Nervous System During General Anesthesia and Sedation

EMERY N. BROWN, PATRICK L. PURDON, OLUWASEUN AKEJU, and KEN SOLT

KEY POINTS

- Anesthesiologists rely extensively on physiologic signals and anesthetic dosing strategies to infer and to track states of the brain and central nervous system under general anesthesia.
- Heart rate and systemic arterial blood pressure changes are the principal physiologic signals used to monitor the anesthetic state of patients receiving general anesthesia.
- Use of the neurologic examination during induction of and emergence from general anesthesia can provide information regarding loss and recovery of consciousness.
- Electroencephalogram (EEG)–based indices are used to track the level of unconsciousness of patients receiving general anesthesia. The most commonly used EEG-based indices are the bispectral index (BIS), the Patient Safety Index (PSI), Narcotrend, and Entropy.
- Real-time analysis of the unprocessed EEG and the spectrogram (density spectral array) is a highly informative way to monitor the level of unconsciousness of patients receiving general anesthesia.
- Use of the unprocessed EEG and spectrogram for real-time monitoring of the level of unconsciousness is made possible by the fact that the EEG oscillations of anesthetized patients change systematically with anesthetic dose, with anesthetic class (mechanism of action), and patient age.
- Anesthetic-induced oscillations are one of the primary mechanisms through which these agents induce altered arousal states such as sedation and unconsciousness. Therefore, real-time monitoring of the unprocessed EEG and the spectrogram provide a scientifically based, practical, and patient-specific way to track sedation and unconsciousness in the operating room.
- Normalized symbolic transfer entropy (NSTE) is an approach for quantifying how changes in frontoparietal functional connectivity relate to anesthesia-induced changes in consciousness.
- In the future, closed-loop anesthetic delivery (CLAD) systems may provide highly accurate ways to control states of general anesthesia, medical coma, and sedation.
- Obtaining reliable quantitative markers of nociception is an active area of investigation.

General anesthesia is a drug-induced reversible condition composed of four behavioral and physiologic states: antinociception, unconsciousness, amnesia, immobility; and stability of the physiologic systems, including the autonomic, cardiovascular, respiratory, and thermoregulatory systems.[1-3] Continuously monitoring the status of the patient during general anesthesia is crucial for safe and proper delivery of anesthesia care. The physiologic state of the patient under general anesthesia is commonly monitored using the electrocardiogram and an arterial blood pressure cuff, or an arterial catheter, to monitor the cardiovascular system. In more complex cases, a central venous catheter can be used to monitor central venous pressures, and a pulmonary artery catheter can be placed to monitor cardiac output and pressures in the heart and pulmonary circulation. Transesophageal echocardiography can be used intermittently to gain direct visual information about the anatomy and function of the heart. The capnogram provides a continuous readout of the level of expired carbon dioxide and respiration. In intubated patients, more detailed information about the state of the lungs can be acquired from the pressure and volume tracings on the ventilator. The pulse oximeter estimates the level of hemoglobin saturation in the arterial blood, and the thermometer tracks body temperature. Muscle relaxation, or immobility, is monitored primarily using a train-of-four stimulation device, and more grossly by observing changes in muscle tone or movement.

Monitoring the behavioral states is more challenging. During general anesthesia, amnesia is not monitored directly but implicitly by the extent to which unconsciousness is achieved. If the patient is unconscious and not simply conscious but unresponsive, the patient will likely have amnesia. In this chapter, we discuss approaches for monitoring unconsciousness and analgesia, or more accurately stated antinociception, and each of the three phases of general anesthesia: induction, maintenance, and emergence. This chapter's focus is on physiologic signs and neurologic examination findings, and the electroencephalogram (EEG)–based measures, used to track these states of general anesthesia.

Induction of General Anesthesia

Monitoring of a patient's level of consciousness begins at induction of general anesthesia. Induction is usually achieved by an intravenous bolus dose of a hypnotic drug such as propofol, a barbiturate, ketamine, or etomidate. Unconsciousness usually occurs in 10 to 30 seconds. The brain state of the patient, which in this case is the transition into unconsciousness, is tracked by monitoring the patient's physiologic signs and the EEG-based index.

PHYSIOLOGIC SIGNS OF LOSS OF CONSCIOUSNESS

When a hypnotic drug is administered to induce general anesthesia—usually as an intravenous bolus over a 5- to 10-second period—several physiologic signs are observed. If asked to count backwards from 100, the patient typically does not get beyond 85 to 90. This transition into unconsciousness can be followed easily by asking the patient to perform smooth pursuit of the anesthesiologist's finger.[1] In smooth pursuit, the patient is instructed to move his or her eyes to track the position of the anesthesiologist's finger. As loss of consciousness ensues, the lateral excursions of the eyes during smooth pursuit decrease, nystagmus may appear, blinking increases, and the eyes fix abruptly in the midline. The oculocephalic reflex and the corneal reflex are lost, but the pupillary response to light can remain intact. The patient typically becomes apneic, atonic, and unresponsive at the point when the oculocephalic reflex is lost.

The oculocephalic reflex is assessed by turning the patient's head from side to side, while lifting the eyelids. Before administration of the induction anesthetic, when the reflex is intact in a patient with no neurologic deficits, the eyes move in the direction opposite the motion of the head. When the reflex is lost, the eyes stay fixed in the midline.[4] The oculocephalic reflex requires the circuits of cranial nerves III, IV, VI, and VIII to be intact. The motor nuclei associated with cranial nerves III and IV are located in the midbrain, whereas the nucleus of cranial nerve VI is located in the pons. The corneal reflex has traditionally been assessed using a wisp of cotton at the corner of the eye to stroke the cornea. An easier way to assess the reflex is to allow a drop of sterile water to fall on the cornea. Using a drop of sterile water may be safer than using the wisp of cotton, because the former is less likely to cause a corneal abrasion. With either approach, the reflex is intact if the eyes blink consensually, is impaired if there is a blink in one eye and not the other, and is absent if there is no blink. The afferent component of the corneal reflex travels to the sensory nucleus of the cranial nerve V through the ophthalmic branch, whereas the efferent component arises from the motor nucleus of the cranial nerve VII. The nuclei for these nerves associated with the oculocephalic reflex and the corneal reflex lie in close proximity to the arousal centers in the midbrain, pons, hypothalamus, and basal forebrain.[4]

Loss of the oculocephalic reflex suggests that the motor nuclei required for eye movements have been affected by the anesthetic. Similarly, loss of the corneal reflex suggests that the nuclei that control sensation and motor responses to sensation on the eyes and the face have also been affected. Because the loss of the oculocephalic and corneal reflexes occur concomitantly with the loss of responsiveness, the anesthesiologists can also infer that the loss of consciousness is due at least in part to the effects of the anesthetics on the nearby arousal centers.[1,4,5] Apnea, which commonly occurs on induction of general anesthesia with bolus administration of a hypnotic agent, is most likely due to the inhibitory effects of the anesthetic on the dorsal and ventral respiratory groups in the medulla and pons, respectively.[6] Atonia can be due to anesthetic action at any one of multiple sites in the motor pathways between the primary motor areas and the spinal cord. The most likely brainstem sites are the pontine and medullary reticular nuclei.[2]

Loss of the oculocephalic reflex, the corneal reflex, apnea, and atonia occur concomitantly with loss of consciousness on induction of general anesthesia because of the actions of the hypnotic drug in the brainstem after an intravenous bolus. Blood containing the anesthetic reaches the brainstem through the basilar artery, which supplies the posterior cerebral arteries that provide the posterior input to the circle of Willis.[5] Before terminating in the posterior cerebral arteries, the basilar artery runs on the dorsal surface of the brainstem and gives off multiple penetrating arteries that perfuse the brainstem nuclei with the anesthetic leading to the observed physiological effects.

ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM-MARKERS OF LOSS OF CONSCIOUSNESS

EEG-based indices are among the most commonly used methods for tracking loss of consciousness induced by general anesthesia.[7] With induction of general anesthesia, these indices usually change from high values that indicate the awake state to lower values that indicate states of sedation and unconsciousness.

Maintenance of General Anesthesia: Physiologic Signs and the Nociceptive-Medullary-Autonomic Pathway

Despite the many advances in anesthesia care, the physiologic signs of changes in heart rate, arterial blood pressure, and movement are the measurements most commonly used to track the anesthetic state during maintenance of general anesthesia.[8] When the state of general anesthesia is not adequate for the level of surgical (nociceptive) stimulation, heart rate and arterial blood pressure can increase dramatically. The changes in heart rate and arterial blood pressure that anesthetized patients show in response to a nociceptive stimulus can be explained in terms of the nociceptive-medullary-autonomic (NMA) circuit composed of the spinoreticular tract, the brainstem arousal circuits, and the sympathetic and parasympathetic efferent pathways (Fig. 40.1).[1,9] It is important to understand how the NMA circuit works because it is the pathway most used by anesthesiologists for monitoring the patient's level of unconsciousness and antinociception. One example is a description of the NMA pathway in a clinical context that is commonly observed in the operating room.

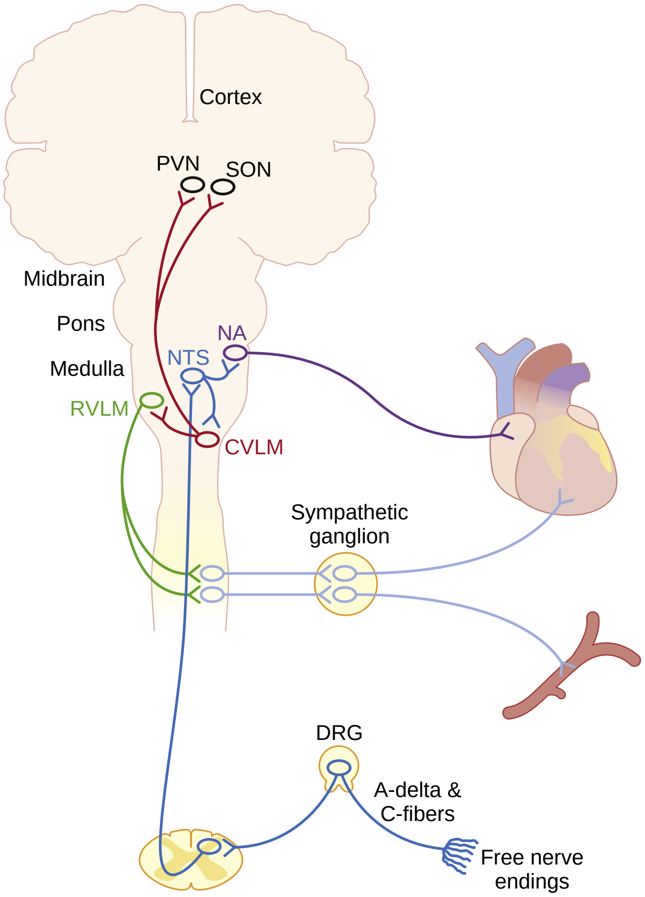


Fig. 40.1 Nociceptive medullary autonomic circuit. The ascending nociceptive (pain) pathway starts with C fibers and A-delta peripheral afferent fibers that synapse on projection neurons (PNs) in the dorsal horn. The PNs cross the midline, course to the brain where they synapse at several targets, including the nucleus of the tractus solitarius *(NTS)* in the medulla. The NTS mediates the autonomic response to a nociceptive stimulus by increasing sympathetic output through the rostral ventral lateral medulla *(RVLM)* and the caudal ventral lateral medulla *(CVLM)*, which projects to the thoracolumbar sympathetic ganglia. The ganglia project to peripheral blood vessels and the heart. The nucleus ambiguous *(NA)* mediates the parasympathetic output to the sinoatrial node of the heart through the vagus nerve. The NTS projects also to the supraoptic nucleus *(SON)* and periventricular nucleus *(PVN)* in the hypothalamus. The NMA circuit is the reason why anesthesiologists use increases in blood pressure and heart rate as markers of increases in nociceptive stimulation and, possibly, a level of general anesthesia that is inadequate. *DRG,* Dorsal root ganglion. (Redrawn from Brown EN, Lydic R, Schiff ND. General anesthesia, sleep, and coma. *N Engl J Med.* 2010;363:2638–2650.)

Suppose that a patient is in a stable state of general anesthesia when, to gain better exposure, the surgeon moves the retractor. Suppose also that this maneuver induces an immediate increase in heart rate and arterial blood pressure. Assuming, that there are no occult hemodynamic or respiratory problems or other common issues that increase heart rate and arterial blood pressure, then these increases likely occurred because the level of general anesthesia did not maintain an adequate level of antinociception. By simultaneously monitoring, in addition, the level of muscle relaxation and oxygen saturation, and oxygen delivery, along with EEG-based indices to track level of unconsciousness, the anesthesia provider can determine that these increases are due to inadequate antinociception and decide to administer more analgesic.

The ascending nociceptive (pain) pathway begins with A-delta and C-fibers whose free nerve endings bring nociceptive information from the periphery to the spinal cord (see Fig. 40.1).[10] In the spinal cord, these fibers synapse in the dorsal horn on projection neurons that travel through the anterolateral fasciculus and synapse at multiple sites in the brainstem, including the nucleus of the tractus solitarius in the medulla.[1,9] The autonomic response to a nociceptive stimulus is initiated from the nucleus of the tractus solitarius, which mediates sympathetic output through the rostral ventral lateral medulla and the caudal ventral lateral medulla to the heart and peripheral blood vessels through projections to the thoracolumbar sympathetic ganglia.[1] The parasympathetic output from the nucleus of the tractus solitarius is mediated through the nucleus ambiguous, which projects through the vagus nerve to the sinoatrial node of the heart.[1] The nucleus of the tractus solitarius also projects to the periventricular nucleus and supraoptic nucleus in the hypothalamus. Thus the nociceptive stimulus of moving the retractor initiates an increase in sympathetic output and a decrease in parasympathetic output through the NMA circuit that rapidly results in the observed increases in heart rate and arterial blood pressure.

The NMA circuit explains why increases in heart rate and arterial blood pressure are used as a rapid indicator of an inadequate level of antinociception. If unconsciousness is sufficiently well maintained, then no EEG changes will likely be observed. If no acute changes in physiology occur for other reasons, such as bleeding, hypoxemia, disconnection of the breathing circuit, or inadequate dosing of the muscle relaxant, the appropriate treatment is administration of more analgesic medication.

Activity in the NMA circuit can be observed rapidly when a patient is under general anesthesia,[11] because this pathway is a fundamental component of the fight-or-flight response.[12] This circuit is used as a sentinel for detecting nociceptive stimuli that can lead to autonomic, stress, and arousal responses. Heart rate and arterial blood pressure changes are the principal markers of activity under general anesthesia because motor responses are often blocked by muscle relaxation. Neurologists frequently test the NMA circuit with nociceptive stimuli, such as total body pinches, nail bed pinches, and sternal rubs, to evaluate the level of arousal of patients with brain injuries that affect the level of consciousness.[4,13,14]

Other signs of inadequate antinociception are perspiration, tearing, pupil dilation, and return of muscle tone and movement.[8] Changes in muscle tone and movement are not observed if the patient is receiving a muscle relaxant. The galvanic skin response has also been studied as a potentially more objective measure of antinociception. However, it is not used in clinical practice.[15]

Maintenance of General Anesthesia: Electroencephalogram-Based Indices of Level of Consciousness

It is widely recognized that the EEG changes systematically in relation to the dose of anesthetic drug administered (Fig. 40.2).[1,7,16-18] As a consequence, the unprocessed EEG and

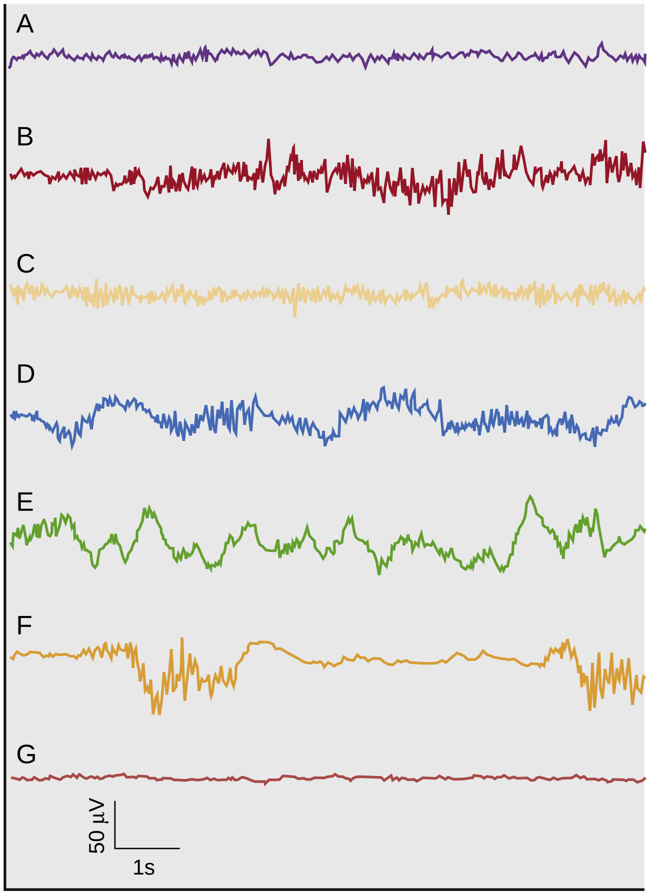


Fig. 40.2 Anesthetic states and electroencephalogram signatures of propofol. (A) Awake electroencephalogram pattern with eyes open. (B) State of paradoxical excitation. (C) Beta (13-25 Hz) oscillations frequently associated with an arousable state of sedation. (D) Slow (0.1-1 Hz), delta (1-4 Hz), and alpha (8-12 Hz) oscillations commonly seen during unconsciousness at surgical planes. (E) Slow oscillations typically recorded during propofol induction and during deep dexmedetomidine sedation (see Fig. 40.8, *D*). (F) Burst suppression, a state of profound anesthetic-induced brain inactivation, seen commonly in the elderly during normal maintenance, anesthetic-induced coma, and hypothermia. (G) Isoelectric electroencephalogram pattern commonly observed in brief periods during normal maintenance, in anesthetic-induced coma, and profound hypothermia.

various forms of processed EEG have been used to track the level of unconsciousness of patients receiving general anesthesia and sedation. Several EEG-based index systems have been studied and used in clinical practice. These systems process the EEG and provide an index value or set of values in real time or near real time that can be used to track the level consciousness. In general, the indices are designed to decrease with decreasing level of consciousness and increase as consciousness returns. In this way, the anesthesia provider can use these indices along with the physiological signs to track the patient's state of unconsciousness and, to some degree, antinociception. A summary of the EEG-based indices that have received the most use in clinical practice and clinical studies follows.

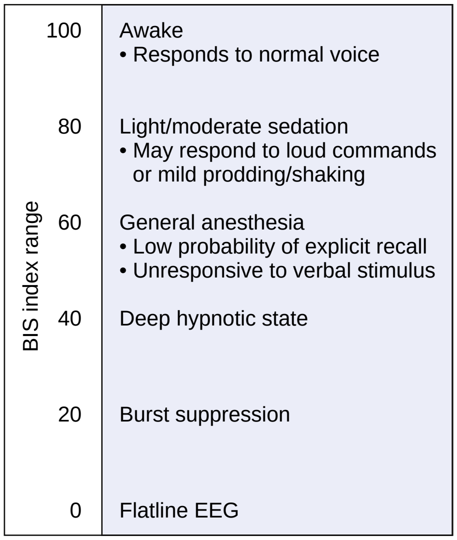

BIS index range
100
80
60
40
20
0
Awake
• Responds to normal voice
Light/moderate sedation
• May respond to loud commands or mild prodding/shaking
General anesthesia
• Low probability of explicit recall
• Unresponsive to verbal stimulus
Deep hypnotic state
Burst suppression
Flatline EEG

Fig. 40.3 Anesthetic states and the bispectral index *(BIS)*. The chart provides a behavioral interpretation of the values of the BIS. *EEG*, Electroencephalogram. (Redrawn from Kelley SD. *Monitoring Consciousness: Using the Bispectral Index*. 2nd ed. Boulder, CO: Covidien; 2010.)

BISPECTRAL INDEX

The bispectral index (BIS) is an empirically derived scale that was proposed in 1994 by Aspect Medical Systems (later acquired by Covidien [Boulder, Colorado] and lastly by Medtronic [Minneapolis, Minnesota]) as a novel way to monitor anesthetic state in patients receiving general anesthesia and sedation.[19,20] The algorithm processes the EEG in near real time and computes an index value between 0 and 100 that indicates the patient's anesthetic state (Fig. 40.3).[21,22] A value of 100 corresponds to being completely awake, whereas 0 corresponds to a profound state of coma or unconsciousness that is reflected by an isoelectric or flat EEG. The BIS algorithm is proprietary, and the actual computation through which the index is derived is not public knowledge. However, it is known that BIS combines information from three EEG analyses: the spectrogram, the bispectrum, and a time domain assessment of burst suppression.[21-23] The spectrogram is a decomposition of the EEG into its power content by frequency as a function of time.[21] The bispectrum measures the degree of nonlinear coupling between pairs of frequencies in the spectrogram.[21] The BIS algorithm works by measuring specific features of the spectrogram, the bispectrum, and the level of burst suppression, and uses a predetermined weighting scheme to convert these features into the index value. The EEG also undergoes various artifact corrections. Along with the index value, the unprocessed EEG, the spectrogram, and the level of electromyographic activity are displayed on the monitor. Production of the index is computationally intensive, so that there is a 20- to 30-second lag between the time the EEG is observed and the computation of the corresponding BIS value.[24] A patient is considered to be appropriately anesthetized (i.e., unconscious) when the value of the BIS is between 40 and 60 (see Fig. 40.3).[22,25] The EEG is recorded from a four-lead frontal montage.

Since its approval by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 1996, the BIS monitor has been studied extensively in clinical trials and used widely in anesthesiology practice. The changes in the index are correlated with the level of sedation and unconsciousness (see Fig. 40.3), primarily because for many anesthetics, the EEG shows lower-frequency, higher-amplitude oscillations as patients achieve deeper states of unconsciousness (see Fig. 40.2). Three exceptions are the anesthetics ketamine, nitrous oxide, and dexmedetomidine. The dissociative anesthetic state produced by ketamine is associated with prominent high-frequency oscillations rather than slow wave oscillations.[26] As a consequence, patients can be unconscious with ketamine but have high index values.[27]

The effect of nitrous oxide on the BIS index is ambiguous. Most recent studies state that nitrous oxide increases the amplitude of high-frequency EEG activity[28] and decreases the amplitude of low-frequency EEG activity,[29] yet it has little to no effect on the BIS index.[22,30] However, these studies have not taken into account the state of profound transient large-amplitude slow oscillations, followed by lower amplitude gamma oscillations that have now been documented to be common features observed when nitrous oxide is administered in high-dose (>50%).[31] In the case of dexmedetomidine, slow oscillations and an appreciable decrease in beta oscillation power[32,33] are prominent during sedation.[34-36] These dynamics most likely lead to BIS values that are typically in the unconscious range, even though the patient can be aroused by verbal commands or light shaking.

As we discuss in the "Changes in EEG Signatures with Aging" section, anesthetic-induced EEG oscillations change systematically with age.[26,37] BIS appears to work poorly in older adults (>60), as patients in this age cohort tend to have lower amplitude oscillations, which the BIS algorithm can interpret as an awake state or state of unconsciousness. Similarly, the BIS algorithm is known to inaccurately reflect the anesthetic state of children because they generally have much more power across a broader range of frequency bands when appropriately anesthetized compared with adults in the 18 to 59 year age range.[37,38] Hence, even though the children may be well anesthetized, the BIS algorithm provides numbers suggesting a state of sedation rather than unconsciousness.

Use of the BIS monitor has been proposed as a way to prevent intraoperative awareness, which is defined as the patient having explicit recall of events that transpired during the time that he or she was under general anesthesia. Use of the BIS monitor as a way to prevent intraoperative awareness was studied in the B-Aware Trial.[39] This study compared patients at high risk for awareness who were randomly assigned to monitoring with BIS using a target range of 40 to 60 and patients monitored with the standard of care at that particular institution. The patients in the BIS group had a significantly lower incidence of awareness.

The findings from this study were called into question because of several design concerns, and for this reason the B-Unaware Trial was conducted.[40] The B-Unaware Trial was a multicenter investigation that randomly assigned patients to either BIS monitoring or monitoring of the end-tidal anesthetic gas concentration to compare the two approaches for preventing awareness. The end-tidal gas concentration was maintained between 0.7 and 1.3 of the age-adjusted minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) of the anesthetic administered to the patient (discussed under End-Tidal Anesthetic Concentration). As in the B-Aware Trial, the objective in the BIS-monitored group was maintenance of the BIS value between 40 and 60. This study found no significant difference in the incidence of awareness among the patients monitored with BIS compared with those monitored with the end-tidal gas concentration. The authors interpreted these findings to mean that BIS monitoring was not more effective than the end-tidal anesthetic criterion in preventing awareness in patients receiving general anesthesia using volatile anesthetics. Several concerns were expressed about the findings of this study as well. The most notable were subject selection and whether the study had sufficient power to detect actual differences, had they been present.[41,42]

As a follow-up to this study, the investigators in the B-Unaware Trail conducted the BIS or Anesthetic Gas to Reduce Explicit Recall (BAG-RECALL) trial, a second trial investigating whether BIS was superior to the end-tidal anesthetic gas concentration in preventing intraoperative awareness in a larger group of patients at high risk for awareness.[41] In this trial, the investigators found that the BIS-guided protocol was not superior to the end-tidal anesthetic concentration-guided protocol in preventing awareness. Because the B-Unaware trial and the BAG-RECALL trial used inhaled anesthetics as the primary agents, their conclusions do not apply to patients receiving total intravenous anesthesia.

Preventing awareness under general anesthesia is a solvable problem if strategies used to monitor the brain states of patients use markers that relate directly rather than indirectly to the mechanisms through which the anesthetics act at specific receptors and neural circuits to alter level of arousal.[1,43,44] Unlike the current EEG-based indices, these markers will differ with patient age and different anesthetics, (See the Unprocessed EEG and the Spectrogram section).

PATIENT SAFETY INDEX

The Patient Safety Index (PSI) is like the BIS index—a proprietary algorithm that assesses anesthetic state based on the EEG for patients receiving general anesthesia or sedation. The PSI was approved by the FDA in 2000 and was originally developed by Physiometrix (North Billerica, Massachusetts), and was ultimately acquired by Masimo (Irvine, California). The development of the PSI was the outgrowth of several years of research conducted by E. Roy John at the Brain Research Laboratory at the New York University School of Medicine.[45] Like the BIS index, the PSI is also scaled between 0 and 100 (Fig. 40.4). However, the PSI range to ensure that the patient is unconscious is between 25 and 50.[46]

The original formulation of the PSI used an electrode montage that included occipital and frontal EEG leads to monitor the phenomenon of anteriorization as a marker of change in anesthetic state. Anteriorization is the forward shift of spectral power from the occipital area to the frontal area during loss of consciousness and the posterior shift of this power from the frontal areas to the occipital areas during the return of consciousness.[44,47-49] The current formulation of the PSI uses a four-lead frontal EEG montage. In addition to displaying the PSI, this monitor also shows

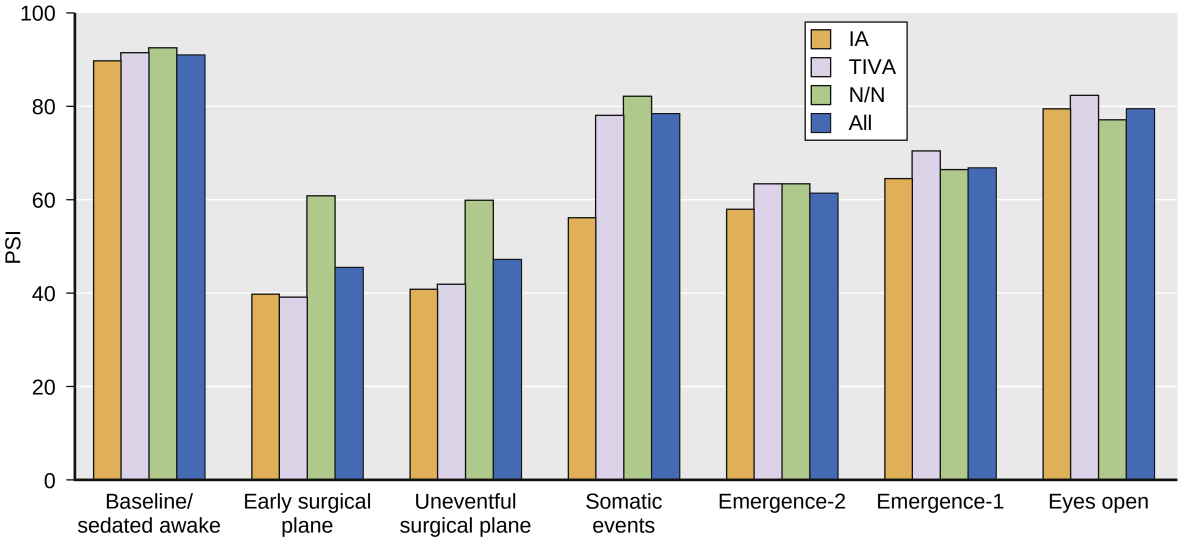


Fig. 40.4 Anesthetic states and the patient safety index *(PSI)*. The histogram provides the anesthetic state interpretation of the values of the PSI. *IA*, Inhaled anesthetics; *N/N*, nitrous narcotic; *TIVA*, total intravenous anesthesia. (Redrawn from Drover D, Ortega HR. Patient state index. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol.* 2006;20:121–128.)

in real time the unprocessed EEG and its spectrogram from both the left and right sides of the head, the level of electromyographic activity, an artifact index, and the suppression ratio. The suppression ratio is a number between 0 and 100 that measures the fraction of time the EEG is in burst suppression. The monitor also allows the user to change the viewing screen among various combinations of the unprocessed EEG traces, the spectrogram, and the time series of the PSI values.

In head-to-head comparisons, the PSI correlates strongly with the BIS readings in terms of tracking a patient's anesthetic state.[50-52] This monitor has been less frequently studied in clinical investigations and has not received the same level of clinical use as the BIS monitor. In our experience, the PSI can also give ambiguous information for ketamine, nitrous oxide, dexmedetomidine, and pediatric patients.

NARCOTREND

The Narcotrend, produced by MonitorTechnik (Bad Bramstedt, Germany), is an EEG-based device designed to monitor the anesthetic state in patients receiving general anesthesia or sedation.[53] This monitor was developed at the University Medical School of Hanover, Germany, and has been approved by the FDA for use in the United States for patient care. Like the BIS and PSI, the Narcotrend uses a proprietary algorithm that converts the EEG into different states, denoted as *A* to *F* (Table 40.1).[54] Stage A corresponds to the patient being wide-awake, whereas stage F corresponds to increasing burst suppression down to an isoelectric state. The newer version of the Narcotrend monitor includes a Narcotrend Index, which is scaled between 0 and 100.[51] In addition, the Narcotrend monitor displays the unprocessed EEG signal and its spectrogram. This monitor has also been validated with respect to the BIS index and separately. Its performance has been variable.[24,55,56] Narcotrend has received less clinical use than BIS and PSI.

TABLE 40.1 Anesthetic States, the Narcotrend Stages, and Narcotrend Index Ranges

	Narcotrend Stage	Narcotrend Index
Awake	A B_0	95-100 90-94
Sedated	B_1 B_2	85-89 80-84
Light anesthesia	C_0 C_1 C_2	75-79 70-74 65-69
General anesthesia	D_0 D_1 D_2	57-64 47-56 37-46
General anesthesia with deep hypnosis	E_0 E_1 E_2	27-36 20-26 13-19
General anesthesia with increasing burst suppression	F_0 F_1	5-12 1-4

The table provides the anesthetic state interpretation of the Narcotrend Stages and the Narcotrend Index values.

From Kreuer S, Wilhelm W. The Narcotrend monitor. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol.* 2006;20:111–119.

ENTROPY

The use of entropy to track the anesthetic state of patients is a relatively new monitoring approach. Entropy is a well-known concept in the physical sciences, mathematics, and information theory. Entropy measures the degree of disorder or the lack of synchrony or consistency in a system.[57] Entropy-based analyses have been applied to the EEG and have been used to construct EEG-based indices meant to indicate the depth of anesthesia. The Entropy monitor was developed by Datex-Ohmeda, which is now part of GE Healthcare (Little Chalfont, United Kingdom). The algorithm in the GE device uses frequency domain analysis,

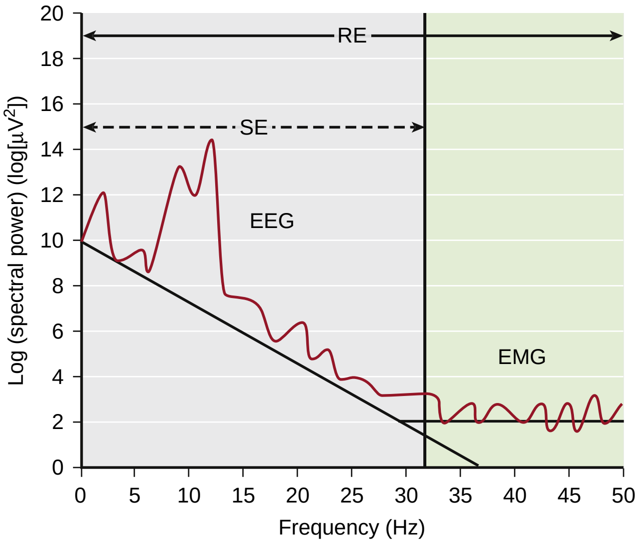


Fig. 40.5 Schematic representation of the spectral entropy. The response entropy *(RE)* is computed from the power in the frequencies between 0 and 47 Hz. The state entropy *(SE)* is computed from the power in the frequencies between 0 and 32 Hz. The power between 32 and 47 Hz is assumed to represent artifacts coming from the electromyogram *(EMG)*. The difference between the RE and SE allows the anesthesiologist to distinguish between electroencephalogram *(EEG)* changes related to changes in the anesthetic state and changes that are due to artifact or movement. (Redrawn from Bein B. Entropy. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol.* 2006;20:101–109.)

combined with burst suppression to measure the entropy of the EEG in patients receiving anesthetic drugs. Unlike several of the other algorithms we have discussed, the entropy algorithm used in the GE entropy device is publicly available.[58,59]

A readily apparent feature of the EEG, as patients proceed through deeper anesthetic states, is that the patterns become more regular and ordered (see Fig. 40.2). That is, we observe an apparent decrease in the entropy of the EEG signal. The Entropy monitor reports two entropy numbers to aid in interpreting this monitor's EEG analysis (Fig. 40.5).[60] The first is the response entropy (RE) and the second is the state entropy (SE). The RE tracks the changes in the EEG power in the higher frequency range 0.8 to 47 Hz, whereas the SE tracks the changes in the EEG power in the lower frequency range of 0.8 to 32 Hz.[58] The relative changes in the RE and the SE have been proposed as a way to distinguish between real brain state changes versus those that are due to muscle activity on the electromyogram.[58] In general, electromyographic activity shows up in the higher frequency range tracked by the RE. As a patient becomes more profoundly unconscious, the RE declines faster than the SE, thereby making it possible to distinguish unconsciousness from movement artifacts. Monitoring entropy is consistent with changes with the BIS.[61]

Like the BIS, PSI, and Narcotrend, the Entropy scores correlate with anesthetic state. The Entropy monitor, like BIS and the PSI, can show paradoxically high readings for ketamine and nitrous oxide. The Entropy scores can be misleading when the patient is receiving dexmedetomidine, because the highly ordered slow waves that are present commonly during deep sedation with dexmedetomidine do not necessarily indicate a profound state of unconsciousness.

END-TIDAL ANESTHETIC CONCENTRATION

In 1965, Eger and colleagues first introduced the concept of the MAC of an inhaled anesthetic required for immobility (defined as lack of movement in response to noxious stimulation).[62] Five years later, Eger's group also introduced the concept of MAC-awake, or the MAC of inhaled anesthetic necessary to ablate response to a verbal command.[63] The median MAC value (i.e., the MAC of inhaled anesthetic required for immobility in 50% of patients) remains the gold standard for dosing inhaled anesthetics, and some modern anesthesia machines calculate age-adjusted MAC values based on the patient's end-tidal anesthetic gas concentration. However, the ratio of MAC to MAC-awake varies widely among general anesthetics,[64] suggesting that MAC cannot be used to define or predict brain states in anesthetized patients. This has been confirmed by animal experiments demonstrating that there is no clear association between anesthetic-induced EEG patterns and immobility,[65] and that inhaled anesthetics produce immobility primarily through their actions in the spinal cord, rather than the brain.[66,67] Nevertheless, the widely accepted concept of MAC has led to the use of end-tidal anesthetic concentration as a way to monitor anesthetic state induced by inhaled anesthetics.

As mentioned previously, this use of MAC has been supported by the B-Unaware Trial, which reported no difference in the incidence of intraoperative awareness with an anesthetic protocol that maintained the BIS value between 40 and 60, and a protocol that maintained an end-tidal anesthetic concentration between 0.7 and 1.3 MAC.[40] Similarly, the BAG-RECALL Trial limited enrollment to patients at high risk for intraoperative awareness. Patients with BIS-guided general anesthesia experienced a small but statistically significant higher incidence of intraoperative awareness than patients receiving general anesthesia guided by an end-tidal anesthetic criterion.[41]

Unlike the BIS, PI, Entropy, and Narcotrend, which provide EEG-based measures of brain activity, the end-tidal anesthetic concentration is related to brain activity through the concentration of inhaled anesthetic expired in the lungs. This assumes that the lung anesthetic concentration is in equilibrium with the brain concentration. Moreover, this assumes that, except for age adjustment, the same brain concentration in every patient, regardless of brain health or physiological state, defines the same anesthetic state. The end-tidal anesthetic concentration is thus an indirect and less nuanced measure of anesthetic state, given that the relevant effects of the anesthetics for inducing unconsciousness are in the brain and not in the lungs. That an EEG-based criterion and a lung-gas criterion are comparable for monitoring the level of consciousness under general anesthesia suggests more of a flaw in the design of the EEG-based marker, rather than the accuracy of the end-tidal anesthetic concentration. Because it is a more indirect measure of anesthetic state, the success of the end-tidal anesthetic concentration in preventing awareness comes likely at the expense of overdosing some patients. A key drawback of the end-tidal anesthetic concentration is that it cannot be used with total intravenous anesthesia.

OTHER STRATEGIES FOR MONITORING LEVEL OF CONSCIOUSNESS

Other strategies for monitoring level of consciousness during general anesthesia and sedation have been studied. For example, the Cerebral State Monitor,[68] the SNAP Index,[69] and the AEP Index[70] are other EEG-based approaches that have been studied and applied in clinical practice.

Emergence From General Anesthesia

ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM-BASED INDICES AND RETURN OF CONSCIOUSNESS

As stated earlier, the EEG-based indices typically specify a range for maintenance of anesthetic state (see Figs. 40.3 to 40.5, and Table 40.1). When delivery of the anesthetic drugs is decreased or terminated, the indices increase toward values that are consistent with the awake state. As the values of the indices increase, the patient is more likely to become conscious. In this way, the EEG-based indices can be used to monitor changes in anesthetic state during emergence from general anesthesia. Although the values of the indices increase during emergence, none of the indices has a value at which the patient is certain to regain consciousness. The lack of any mechanistic relationship between the values of the EEG-based index and level of consciousness is due to imprecision in the definition of the indices, in that many different anesthetic states are presumed to map to the same index value. Friedman and colleagues and Joiner and colleagues found that neural inertia can play a role with inhaled anesthetics.[71,72] Neural inertia is the extent to which equal brain concentrations of anesthetic on induction and emergence often yield different behavioral states. In other words, the history of the brain states helps determine arousability.

PHYSIOLOGIC SIGNS AND RETURN OF CONSCIOUSNESS

The state of the patient during emergence from general anesthesia can be tracked reliably by monitoring the patient's physiologic signs and performing neurologic examinations.[1] Many of these physiologic changes relate to the return of brainstem function (Box 40.1). Therefore, by relating the physiologic signs and the findings from the neurologic examinations to the brainstem centers responsible for them, anesthesia providers can track the return of function to specific brainstem sites during emergence from general anesthesia. Once neuromuscular blockade has been reversed, the patient may breathe unassisted. As the level of carbon dioxide in the cerebral circulation increases, most patients begin to breathe spontaneously. As the patient emerges from general anesthesia, the respiratory pattern can transition from one that is irregular with small tidal volumes to one that is regular with full normal tidal volumes.[1] Return of spontaneous breathing is a distinct indicator of return of function in the medulla and lower pons, as these are the locations of the dorsal and ventral respiratory groups, respectively.[6]

Over the ensuing several minutes and often concomitant with the return of spontaneous respiration, a series of other clinical signs begin to appear (see Box 40.1). These signs include swallowing, gagging, salivation, tearing, and grimacing.[1] The signs each represent return of a specific center in the brainstem and the associated sensory and motor pathways. Swallowing, gagging, and coughing represent return of the motor nuclei of the cranial nerves IX and X located in the medulla and the sensory afferent of these nerves arising from the trachea, larynx, and pharynx.[10] These physiologic signs appear because with the progressive decrease in the hypnotic and antinociceptive effects of the anesthetics, the endotracheal tube becomes a progressively more noxious stimulus. Salivation reflects the return of the inferior salivatory nucleus in the medulla and superior salivatory nucleus in the pons. Both are part of the parasympathetic nervous system. The efferent pathways from these nuclei travel in cranial nerves VII and IX, respectively.[9] Tearing also reflects the return of function in the superior salivatory nucleus. Grimacing, the use of muscles of facial expression, represents the return of function to the motor nucleus of cranial nerve VII, located in the pons.[10] Return of muscle tone to the upper and lower extremities is another important clinical sign that clearly reflects return of function in a number of circuits including the spinal cord, the reticulospinal tract, the basal ganglia, and the primary motor tracts.[1] In addition, as the endotracheal tube is perceived as more noxious and motor tone has returned, the patient may commonly exhibit defensive posturing indicated by reaching for the endotracheal tube.

These physiologic signs are often present in advance of the patient responding to any verbal commands. The patient need not respond to commands to be extubated. Tracheal extubation only requires that the patient have sufficient return of airway reflexes and motor function to ventilate and oxygenate adequately with spontaneous breathing. To meet the criteria for extubation of the trachea, a patient can be in a vegetative state as defined by the criteria used by neurologists and rehabilitation specialists to assess the brain states of patients recovering from coma (see Box 40.1).[13,14,73]

The corneal reflex typically returns before the oculocephalic reflex.[1] Return of the corneal reflex indicates return of function in the sensory nucleus of cranial nerve V and the motor nucleus of cranial nerve VII.[4] The afferent pathway in the corneal reflex is the ophthalmic branch of cranial nerve V that projects to the trigeminal (cranial nerve V) nucleus, whereas the efferent pathway arises from the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) nucleus. The consensual response in the corneal reflex indicates bilateral return of the sensory and motor components of this pathway. The trigeminal nucleus and the motor nucleus of cranial nerve VII lie in the pons. Return of the oculocephalic reflex indicates return of activity in the oculomotor (III), trochlear (IV), and abducens (VI) cranial nerves, which control movement of the eyes.[4] The cranial nerves III and IV nerve nuclei are located in the midbrain, whereas the cranial nerve VI nerve nucleus is in the pons. Return of the oculocephalic and corneal reflexes provides indirect evidence that the nearby arousal centers in the pons, midbrain, hypothalamus, and basal forebrain, may have also recovered function.[1] The oculocephalic reflex may not return even though the patient is extubated.

BOX 40.1 Phases of Emergence From General Anesthesia and States of Coma Recovery

General Anesthesia Stable administration of anesthetic drugs Arousal not possible, unresponsive; eyes closed, with reactive pupils Analgesia, akinesia Drug-controlled blood pressure and heart rate Mechanically controlled ventilation EEG patterns ranging from delta and alpha activity to burst suppression	**Brain-Stem Death** No respiratory response to apneic oxygenation test Total loss of brain-stem reflexes Isoelectric EEG pattern **Coma** Structural brain damage to both cerebral hemispheres, with or without injuries to tegmental midbrain, rostral pons, or both Isolated bilateral injuries to midline tegmental midbrain, rostral pons, or both Arousal not possible, unresponsive Functionally intact brain stem, normal arterial blood gases EEG pattern of low-amplitude delta activity and intermittent bursts of theta and alpha activity or possibly burst suppression
Emergence, Phase 1 Cessation of anesthetic drugs Reversal of peripheral-muscle relaxation (akinesis) Transition from apnea to irregular breathing to regular breathing Increased alpha and beta activity on EEG	**Vegetative State** Spontaneous cycling of eye opening and closing Grimacing and nonpurposeful movements EEG pattern of high-amplitude delta and theta activity Absence of EEG features of sleep Usually able to ventilate without mechanical support
Emergence, Phase 2 Increased heart rate and blood pressure Return of autonomic responsiveness Responsiveness to painful stimulation Salivation (CN VII and IX nuclei) Tearing (CN VII nuclei) Grimacing (CN V and VII nuclei) Swallowing, gagging, coughing (CN IX and X nuclei) Return of muscle tone (spinal cord, reticulospinal tract, basal ganglia, and primary motor tracts) Defensive posturing Further increase in alpha and beta activity on EEG Extubation possible	
Emergence, Phase 3 Eye opening Responses to some oral commands Awake patterns on EEG Extubation possible	**Minimally Conscious State** Purposeful guarding movements, eye tracking Inconsistent communication, verbalizations Following oral commands Return of sleep–wake cycles Recovery of some EEG features of normal sleep–wake architecture

General anesthesia is a drug-induced, reversible coma. The physiological signs observed in the phases of emergence from general anesthesia can be related to changes in activity in specific brainstem nuclei. Emergence from general anesthesia has similarities and differences with recovery from coma due to a brain injury.

CN, Cranial nerve; *EEG*, electroencephalogram.

From Brown EN, Lydic R, Schiff ND. General anesthesia, sleep, and coma. N Engl J Med. 2010;363:2638–2650.

Patients commonly leave the operating room without return of this reflex, suggesting persistent sedation of the brainstem arousal centers. The pupils can remain pinpoint if the patient has received a substantial dose of an opioid. The pupillary light reflex can remain intact even when the patient is profoundly unconscious under general anesthesia[4]; therefore, the presence of the pupillary light reflex might not indicate a change in the level of consciousness while under general anesthesia.

Responding correctly to verbal commands, a criterion that is commonly used to assess the extent to which a patient has recovered from general anesthesia, and hence the patient's readiness for extubation, suggests a return of integrated function between the brainstem, the thalamus and cortex, and among cortical regions.[1,74,75] Responding correctly to verbal commands means that the patient is correctly interpreting auditory information and that the cranial nerve VIII nuclei located in the pons and the auditory pathways from the pons to the cortex and the relevant effector pathways have regained substantial function. If the patient inconsistently follows motor commands, then he or she is classified as being in a minimally conscious state by the criteria neurologists use in examining patients recovering from coma (see Box 40.1).[13,14,73] With emergence, the physiologic signs and neurologic findings can be related to changes in activity in specific brainstem centers. Although the EEG shows the resumption of high-frequency activity consistent with the return of cognitive processing, normal brainstem-cortical, brainstem-thalamic, thalamocortical, and intracortical communication must clearly return for full return of consciousness.[44,75-78] Current clinical monitoring approaches do not allow us to monitor these changes adequately.

Opening of the eyes is typically one of the last physiologic signs observed in patients emerging from general anesthesia. In particular, patients may respond reliably to verbal commands, have substantial return of motor functions, yet not necessarily open their eyes.[1] In general, patients tend to keep their eyes closed even when consciousness has returned. In contrast, during coma recovery, patients can have their eyes open in a vegetative state (see Box 40.1).

Emerging Strategies for Monitoring the Brain States of General Anesthesia and Sedation

In the last several years, there has been strong growth in research on the neuroscience of general anesthesia. As a result, there are several reports of new approaches to monitoring the brain states under general anesthesia.

UNPROCESSED ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM AND THE SPECTROGRAM

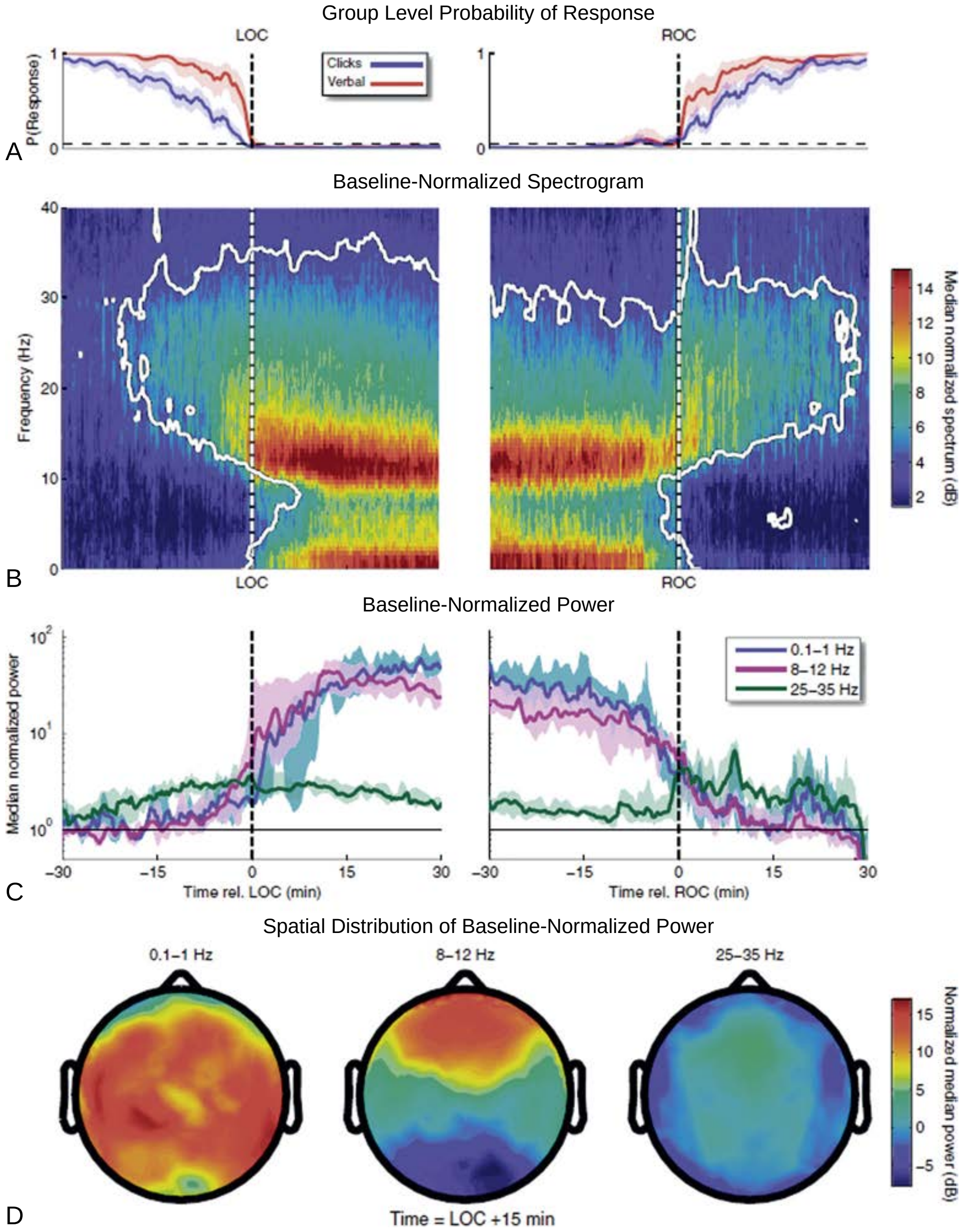
Different anesthetics have different receptor targets[79] and neural circuit mechanisms of action.[1,43] These differences in targets and neural circuits translate into different patterns of activity in the brain that are readily visible in the unprocessed EEG or its spectrogram.[26] The spectrum of a segment of EEG is the decomposition of the EEG signal into its power content by frequency.[26] Power is typically expressed in decibels which is 10 times the base 10 logarithm of the square of the amplitude of a given frequency component.[26] When the spectrum is computed on successive nonoverlapping or overlapping segments of EEG data, it is termed the *spectrogram*[26]; it is called the *compressed spectral array* when the spectrogram is plotted in three dimensions[80] and the *density spectral array* when it is plotted in two dimensions.[81]

The EEG patterns of propofol have been related to its neural circuit mechanisms. The brain states under propofol are readily visible in the unprocessed EEG and the spectrogram (see Figs. 40.2, 40.6 and 40.7, *A*). Propofol acts primarily at $GABA_A$ receptors throughout the brain and spinal cord to enhance inhibition in neural circuits.[79,82] When patients are unconscious from propofol, the EEG shows a characteristic alpha (8-12 Hz) oscillation pattern along with slow (0.1-1 Hz) and delta (1-4 Hz) oscillation patterns (see Fig. 40.7 *A*).[44,49,83,84] Another phenomenon that is observed in patients who are unconscious from propofol and several other anesthetics is anteriorization—the increase in power in the alpha and beta frequency ranges during unconsciousness across the front of the scalp relative to other areas of the scalp (see Fig. 40.6, *C* and *D*).[44,47,49]

During unconsciousness, the alpha oscillations are highly coherent across the front of the scalp, whereas the slow and gamma oscillations are not coherent.[44,49,84] Highly coherent alpha oscillations have also been identified in animal studies of inhaled anesthetics during unconsciousness.[85] The coherent structure in the alpha oscillations is most likely due to strong alpha oscillations between the thalamus and frontal cortex.[86] The slow oscillations are a marker of fragmented intracortical communication because in the presence of the slow oscillations, cortical neurons spike only in a limited phase dictated by their local slow oscillations.[84] As the slow oscillations are spatially incoherent and spiking is phase limited, neuronal communication among brain regions that are separated by more than 1 cm is greatly impeded. There is a strong modulation of the alpha oscillation amplitude by the phase of the slow-delta oscillation[44]. Patients are profoundly unconscious when the maximum amplitude of the alpha oscillations occurs at the peak of the slow oscillation waveform.[44] In contrast, patients are likely to be arousable when the maximum amplitude of the alpha oscillations occurs at the trough of the slow oscillation waveform.[44] With return of consciousness, the alpha and slow oscillations dissipate (see Fig. 40.6.*B*). A mechanism by which propofol produces unconsciousness is through hypersynchronous alpha oscillations impeding communication between the thalamus and prefrontal cortex and through highly desynchronous slow oscillations impeding intracortical communication.[44,84,86,87]

Similarly, the EEG patterns of ketamine (see Fig. 40.7, *B*)[27] and dexmedetomidine (Fig. 40.8, *A* and*B*)[34] are distinctive and can be related to the mechanisms of actions of these drugs in the brain and central nervous system.[1,3,43] Ketamine acts principally by binding to *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors.[43,88] Thus, with small to moderate doses, ketamine has its primary effect by blocking excitatory glutamatergic inputs to inhibitory interneurons.[89,90] Impaired control over pyramidal neurons is why increases in cerebral metabolism, and the appearance of altered behavioral states including hallucinations, dissociative states, euphoria, and dysphoria, are common with low-dose ketamine. Brain regions, such as the limbic system, cortex, and thalamus, continue to communicate but with much less regulatory control from the inhibitory interneurons—that is, information processing proceeds in the absence of proper coordination in time and space.[1,43] Increasing the dose of ketamine blocks the NMDA receptors on the excitatory glutamatergic neurons, and eventual loss of consciousness, as when ketamine is used to induce anesthesia.[91] The increased activity of pyramidal neurons throughout the brain is consistent with the high frequency (20-30 Hz) oscillations that are commonly observed in the EEG of patients receiving ketamine (see Fig. 40.7 *B*).[27,92] This high-frequency EEG activity helps explain why EEG-based indices often give high values in patients receiving ketamine.

Dexmedetomidine induces its sedative effects primarily by actions on presynaptic α2-adrenergic receptors on neurons that project from the locus ceruleus.[93-95] Binding of dexmedetomidine results in a decrease in the release of norepinephrine from these neurons.[96-98] Loss of the norepinephrine-mediated inhibition to the preoptic area of the hypothalamus leads to activation of the preoptic area's GABAergic and galanergic inhibitory inputs to most of the principal arousal centers in the midbrain, pons, basal forebrain, and hypothalamus.[99] Activation of inhibitory inputs from the preoptic area is postulated to be a component of how nonrapid eye movement (NREM) sleep is initiated.[100,101] This suggests why light sedation with dexmedetomidine shows spindles, intermittent bursts of 9 to 15 Hz oscillations, and slow-wave patterns in the EEG that closely resemble NREM sleep stage 2 (see Fig. 40.8, *A*). Recent studies have demonstrated that deep sedation with dexmedetomidine also shows the combined spindle and slow-delta oscillation patterns seen with light dexmedetomidine sedation (see Fig. 40.8, *A*), along with an appreciable decrease in beta oscillation power.[32,33,102] Deep



Group Level Probability of Response

Baseline-Normalized Spectrogram

Baseline-Normalized Power

Spatial Distribution of Baseline-Normalized Power

Fig. 40.6 Behavioral and electroencephalogram dynamics of loss and recovery of consciousness from propofol. (A) Group-level (10 subjects) click or nonsalient stimulus *(blue, P_{clicks})* and verbal or salient stimulus *(red, P_{verbal})* response-probability curves. (B) Group-level spectrograms computed by baseline-normalization from a frontal channel (approximately *Fz*, using nearest-neighbor Laplacian reference) aligned across subject with respect to loss of consciousness *(LOC)*. Area enclosed within the white borders show where power is significantly different from baseline ($P < .05$, sign test) and shows significant power increases spanning slow (0.1-1 Hz) through gamma (25-35 Hz) bands. (C) Time course of group-level power in slow, alpha (8-12 Hz), and gamma bands aligned with respect to LOC and recovery of consciousness *(ROC)*. (D) Group-level spatial distribution of slow, alpha, and gamma power during unconsciousness (LOC + 15 min). The frontal increase in alpha power is termed *anteriorization*. These analyses illustrate that changes in broad-band gamma/beta power occur with the behavioral changes before LOC and after ROC, whereas changes in slow and alpha power occur with LOC and ROC. (From Purdon PL, Pierce ET, Mukamel EA, et al. Electroencephalogram signatures of loss and recovery of consciousness from propofol. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.* 2013;110:E1142–E1151.)

sedation with dexmedetomidine can also show a slow-delta oscillation EEG pattern that closely resembles the patterns observed in NREM sleep stage 3 or slow-wave sleep (see Fig. 40.8 *B*).[26]

Sevoflurane, like the other inhaled ether anesthetics, produces its physiologic and behavioral effects by binding at multiple targets in the brain and spinal cord. These include binding to $GABA_A$ receptors and enhancing GABAergic inhibition, and blocking glutamate release by binding to NMDA receptors, along with activating two-pore potassium channels and hyperpolarization-activated cyclic nucleotide-gated channels.[79] Although debates still exist over the relative importance of these targets, sevoflurane and the other ether anesthetics have distinct EEG signatures.

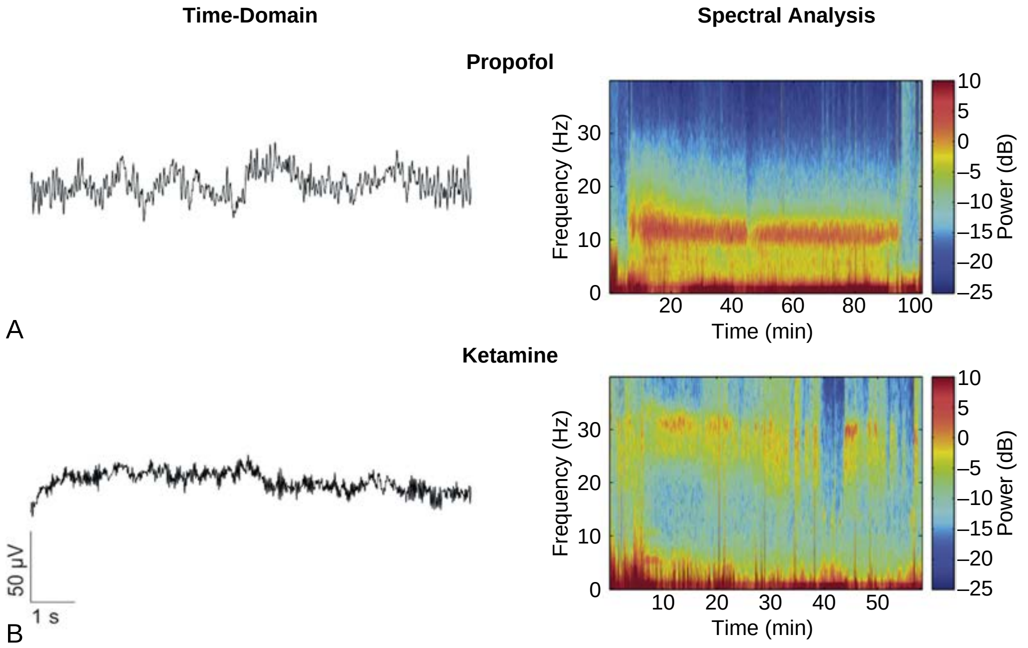


Fig. 40.7 Time-domain and spectral electroencephalogram (EEG) signatures of common anesthetics. The left column shows a 10-s time-domain (unprocessed) segment of the EEG for each anesthetic. The right column shows several minutes of the spectrogram (density spectral array) computed from the EEG for each anesthetic. (A) The EEG and spectrogram of propofol show its characteristic alpha (8-12 Hz) and slow-delta (0.1-4 Hz) oscillation pattern. (B) The ketamine EEG and spectrogram show high frequency oscillations in the high beta (20-24 Hz) and low gamma (25-35 Hz) range.

At doses of sevoflurane appropriate for general anesthesia, the EEG shows strong alpha and slow oscillations like propofol, in addition to a strong theta (4-8 Hz) oscillation (see Fig. 40.8 *C*). The presence of the theta oscillations creates a distinctive pattern of evenly distributed EEG power from the slow oscillation through the alpha oscillation range. The predominance of the alpha and slow oscillations in the sevoflurane spectrogram and those of the other inhaled ethers suggest that GABA$_A$-mediated inhibition is a primary mechanism of action of these anesthetics. This spectrogram pattern further suggests that a primary mechanism through which the inhaled ethers produce unconsciousness is largely similar to that of propofol.[44,84,86,87]

Nitrous oxide has a highly distinctive EEG dynamic. A common practice in our institution, at the end of surgery, is to switch from the inhaled ether, isoflurane, to nitrous oxide to facilitate emergence from general anesthesia (Fig. 40.9 *A*). When nitrous oxide is administered at high doses (greater than 50%), it produces large slow-delta oscillations that last from 3 to 12 minutes before converting to high-frequency gamma oscillations (see Fig. 40.9 *B*).[26,31,103,104] Why the slow-delta oscillations are transient is unknown. Nitrous oxide is known to act by blocking NMDA glutamate receptors.[31,79,105,106] It is likely that the slow-delta oscillations reflect a transient profound state of unconsciousness most likely mediated through inactivation of key NMDA glutamate projections from the parabrachial nucleus and from the median pontine reticular formation into the central thalamus and basal forebrain.[31,107]

Although the unprocessed EEG recordings of the anesthetics can look similar, the spectrograms make clear that each anesthetic has a distinct EEG signature. These signatures can be related to the mechanisms through which the drugs act at specific receptors in specific neural circuits to alter arousal. Using the spectrogram to monitor brain function under general anesthesia and sedation is fundamentally different from using EEG-based indices that are predicated on the assumption that different anesthetics can create the same anesthetic state irrespective of mechanism. The differences in the spectral signatures between propofol (see Fig. 40.7 *A*) and ketamine (see Fig. 40.7 *B*) illustrate why the latter often gives a high index reading when clinically the patient is clearly sedated. Similarly, the predominance of the slow-wave oscillations observed during deep dexmedetomidine (see Fig. 40.8, *B*) sedation helps explain why this drug gives low index values consistent with profound unconsciousness yet the patient remains arousable.

CHANGES IN ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM SIGNATURES WITH AGING

In addition to changing systematically with anesthetic class, the EEG signatures of patients under general anesthesia change systematically with age. Fig. 40.10 shows the spectrogram of patients of different ages anesthetized with propofol. There are three principal changes in the EEG signatures of propofol with age. First, the EEG of children between 0 to 3 months of age, anesthetized with propofol or another GABAergic drug such as sevoflurane as the primary hypnotic, show only slow-delta oscillations (see Fig. 40.10, *A* and *B*).[108] Slow-delta and alpha oscillations do not appear together until children are at least 4 months of age or older (see Fig. 40.10 *C*).[108] The alpha oscillations become coherent and show anteriorization specifically at the alpha frequency, at approximately 1 year of age.[37,38,108,109] Coherence means the oscillations are highly synchronized, whereas anteriorization means that the oscillations are predominant in the

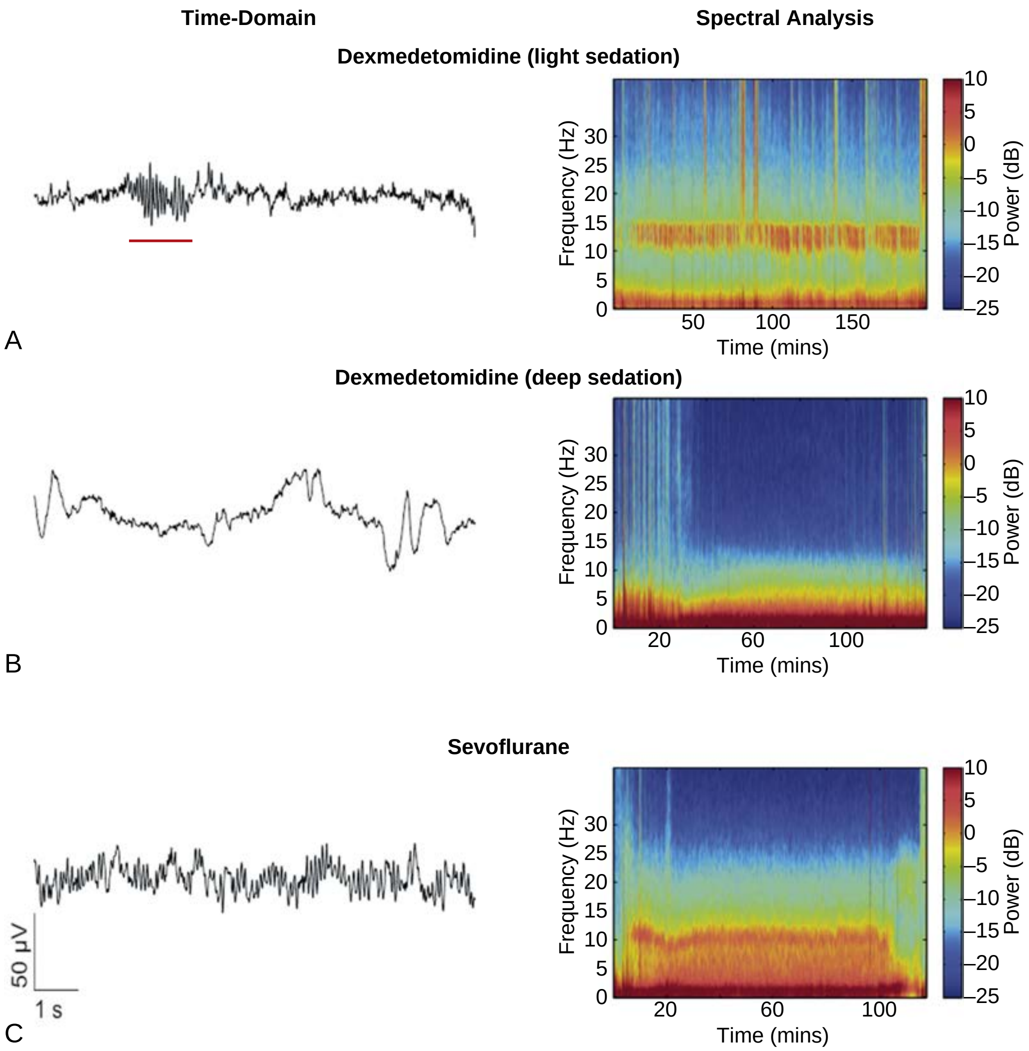


Fig. 40.8 Time-domain and spectral electroencephalogram (EEG) signatures of common anesthetics. The *left column* shows a 10-second time domain (unprocessed) segment of the EEG for each anesthetic. The *right column* shows several minutes of the spectrogram (density spectral array) computed from the EEG for each anesthetic. (A) The dexmedetomidine EEG and spectrogram for light sedation shows spindle (9-15 Hz) oscillations, and the slow (0.1-1 Hz) oscillations, and delta (1-4 Hz) oscillations similar to the EEG patterns observed in nonrapid eye movement (NREM) sleep stage 2. The spindle is apparent in the unprocessed EEG trace (red underscore). The spindles are intermittent and have less intensity than the alpha oscillations observed with propofol. (B) The EEG and spectrogram for deep dexmedetomidine sedation can be associated with an absence of spindles and a predominance of slow and delta waves similar to the slow waves seen in NREM sleep stage 3, termed *slow-wave sleep*. (C) The sevoflurane spectrogram is similar to propofol with the addition of oscillatory activity in the theta band from 4 to 8 Hz.

frontal EEG leads and completely absent in the occipital leads. The mechanisms underlying these age-dependent changes are unclear, but they almost certainly reflect development of underlying brain circuits in children.[37,38,110] According to computational modeling studies propofol can generate alpha oscillations as a result of increasing inhibition in cortical networks.[111] When thalamocortical components are added to this model, the alpha oscillations become highly coherent.[86] Hence, the development of propofol- and sevoflurane-induced alpha oscillations in the first 6 months of life could reflect developing inhibition, particularly within cortical circuits.[110] The later development of coherent alpha oscillations could reflect developing thalamocortical connections that facilitate coherent alpha oscillations.[86,112] Although not shown in the figures presented here, the total power in the spectrogram increases with age from 0 months to a maximum at approximately 6 to 8 years and then declines from there with each year of age.[37,38]

Second, the alpha band is characteristic of young adults (approximately 18-35 years of age) and ranges from 8 to 15 Hz for this group (see Fig. 40.10 *F*). The corresponding band for ages below 18 years falls generally over a broader frequency range, 10 to 20 Hz (see Fig. 40.10, *D* and*E*), and has higher power relative to the alpha band of the young adults (see Fig. 40.10 *F*). The corresponding band for ages greater than 35 years falls generally over a narrower frequency range, 6 to 10 Hz (see Fig. 40.10 *G*), and has less power relative to the alpha band of the young adults (see Fig. 40.10 *F*). Third, the alpha oscillations in adults 55 years or older may be diminished and in the lower frequency range from 6 to 10 Hz or nearly absent (see Fig. 40.10, *G-I*).

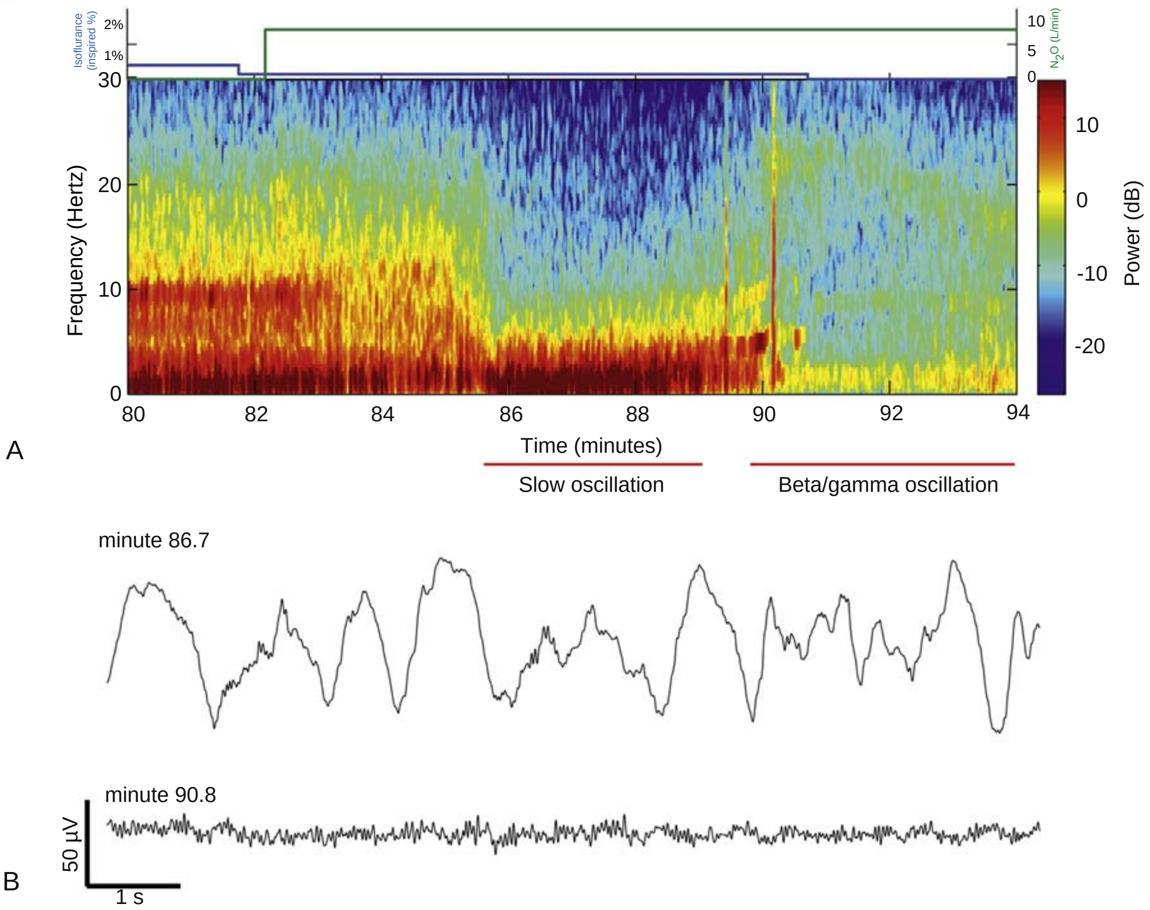


Fig. 40.9 Spectrogram displays of nitrous oxide-induced slow-delta and beta-gamma oscillations. (A) To facilitate emergence, a patient maintained on a mixture of 0.5% isoflurane and 58% oxygen at 3 L/min was changed to 75% nitrous oxide and 24% oxygen at 7 L/min. Between minutes 83 and 85 the slow-delta, theta, and alpha oscillation power decreased. The beta and theta band power appreciably decreased whereas the slow-delta oscillation power substantially increased beginning at minute 86. By minute 90 the slow-delta oscillation power has noticeably decreased, and beta-gamma oscillations begin to appear. (B) Electroencephalogram traces of the slow-delta oscillations recorded at minute 86.7 and the beta-gamma oscillations recorded at minute 90.8. Each trace is 10 s.

The changes in the slow-delta oscillations follow similar changes to the alpha oscillations band in that the band is broad with high power at younger ages (see Fig. 40.10, *C-E*) and becomes narrower with lower power with aging (see Fig. 40.10, *F-I*). Indeed, the alpha and slow-delta oscillations of the 56-year old patient and of the 81-year old patient are barely perceptible (see Fig. 40.10).

Fig. 40.10, *F-G* show that there can be significant between-person variation in power for patients of approximately the same age. The 57-year-old patient (see Fig. 40.10 *G*) has alpha and slow-delta oscillations that resemble the pattern seen in the 30-year-old patient (see Fig. 40.10 *F*), whereas the alpha and slow-delta oscillations of the 56-year-old patient (see Fig. 40.10 *H*) resemble those of the 81-year-old patient (see Fig. 40.10 *I*). We conjecture that these differences in oscillatory dynamics induced by propofol reflect between - individual variation in normal brain aging.[113] The age-related EEG changes of sevoflurane, and presumably those associated with isoflurane and desflurane, are similar to those of propofol, given that all of these agents have primary GABAergic mechanisms of action.

IMPLICATIONS FOR MONITORING ANESTHETIC STATE

These observations suggest that the unprocessed EEG and the spectrogram can be used to monitor the brain states of patients receiving anesthesia care (see Figs. 40.6 to 40.10). The unprocessed EEG waveform has been advocated as a tool for monitoring "depth of anesthesia" since 1937.[16,17,26,114,115] Although the spectrogram is easy to compute in real time and has been reported in studies of anesthetics,[80,81,116] a strategy to use it in conjunction with the unprocessed EEG and the EEG-based indices for management of patients receiving anesthesia care is now being developed. Many of the current EEG brain function monitors display both the unprocessed EEG and the spectrogram.[22,54,117] Training anesthesia providers to track brain states under general anesthesia and sedation by reading the unprocessed EEG and the spectrogram is a program being pursued currently in the Department of Anesthesia, Critical Care and Pain Medicine, of Massachusetts General Hospital in collaboration with the International Anesthesia Research Society (www.eegforanesthesia.iars.org).

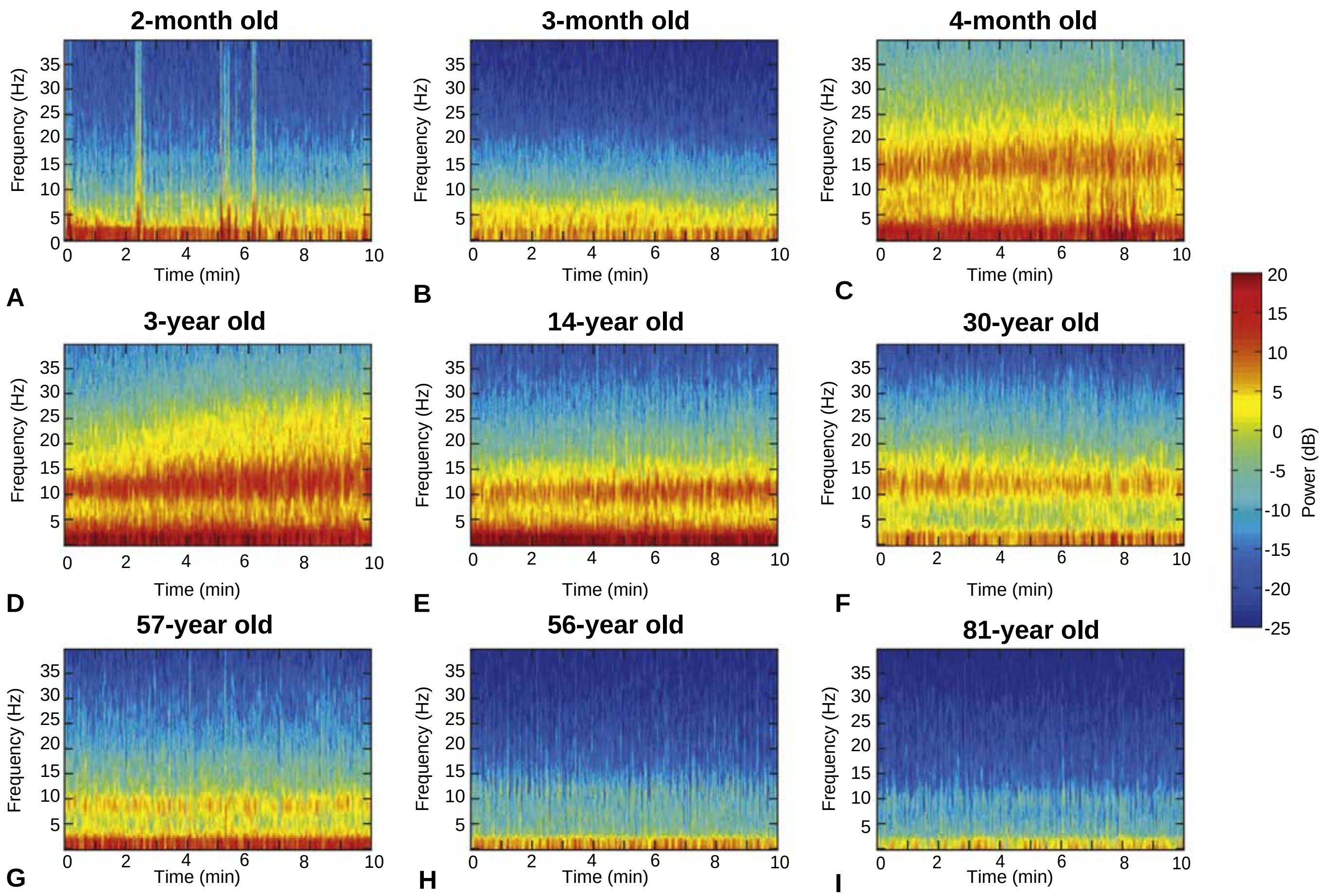


Fig. 40.10 Spectral electroencephalogram signatures of propofol as a function of age. Each panel is a 10-minute segment recorded from a patient receiving a propofol infusion as the primary anesthetic to maintain unconsciousness. The spectral power in all of the panels are plotted on the same decibel scale. (A) A 2-month-old patient. (B) A 3-month-old patient. (C) A 4-month-old patient. (D) A 3-year-old patient. (E) A 14-year-old patient. (F) A 30-year-old patient. (G) A 57-year-old patient. (H) A 56-year-old patient. (I) An 81-year-old patient. Children less than 4 months of age show only slow-delta oscillations. Alpha oscillations appear at 4 months of age. Although children greater than 4 months of age and adults from 18 to 55 years of age show both slow-delta and alpha oscillation patterns under propofol, the frequency range of the alpha oscillations and the power content changes with age. Elderly patients often have a noticeable decrease in or absence of alpha oscillations.

Another EEG education resource has been developed at Washington University (icetap.org). Highly structured oscillations are the sine qua non of anesthetic states. Therefore, use of the spectrogram to track level of consciousness under general anesthesia and sedation facilitates direct integration of clinical and research observations from EEG recordings with experimental studies and biophysically-based modeling studies that help define the neural circuit mechanisms of anesthetic actions.[86,111,118,119]

NORMALIZED SYMBOLIC TRANSFER ENTROPY

A growing body of information suggests that a key marker or mechanism of unconsciousness under general anesthesia is loss of intracortical connectivity.[74,75,84,91,120,121] The loss of functional connectivity between the frontal and parietal areas is associated with unconsciousness.[91,120] By using the EEG recorded from a montage that includes both frontal and parietal electrodes, a mutual information technique termed normalized symbolic transfer entropy (NSTE) can be used to measure this loss of functional connectivity (Fig. 40.11). When NSTE is used to assess functional connectivity from the parietal area to the frontal cortical area, it is termed *feedforward functional connectivity*, whereas when it is used to assess functional connectivity from the frontal area to the parietal area, it is termed *feedback functional connectivity*.

Unconsciousness induced by propofol, sevoflurane, or ketamine has been associated with loss of feedback functional connectivity (see Fig. 40.11).[91,120] As a consequence, measuring NSTE to assess functional connectivity could provide a means of monitoring the level of consciousness in patients receiving general anesthesia. The loss of feedback functional connectivity is present for unconsciousness induced by all three anesthetics, suggesting that NSTE does not distinguish among the mechanisms of actions of these anesthetics.[120] Nevertheless, NSTE could still offer a way to track levels of unconsciousness.

A partial answer regarding the mechanism of loss of the feedback functional connectivity for unconsciousness induced by propofol and the inhaled ether anesthetics may be related to anteriorization (see Fig. 40.6, *D*). The model by Vijayan and colleagues[119] shows that anteriorization can be explained by the differences in the electrophysiologic

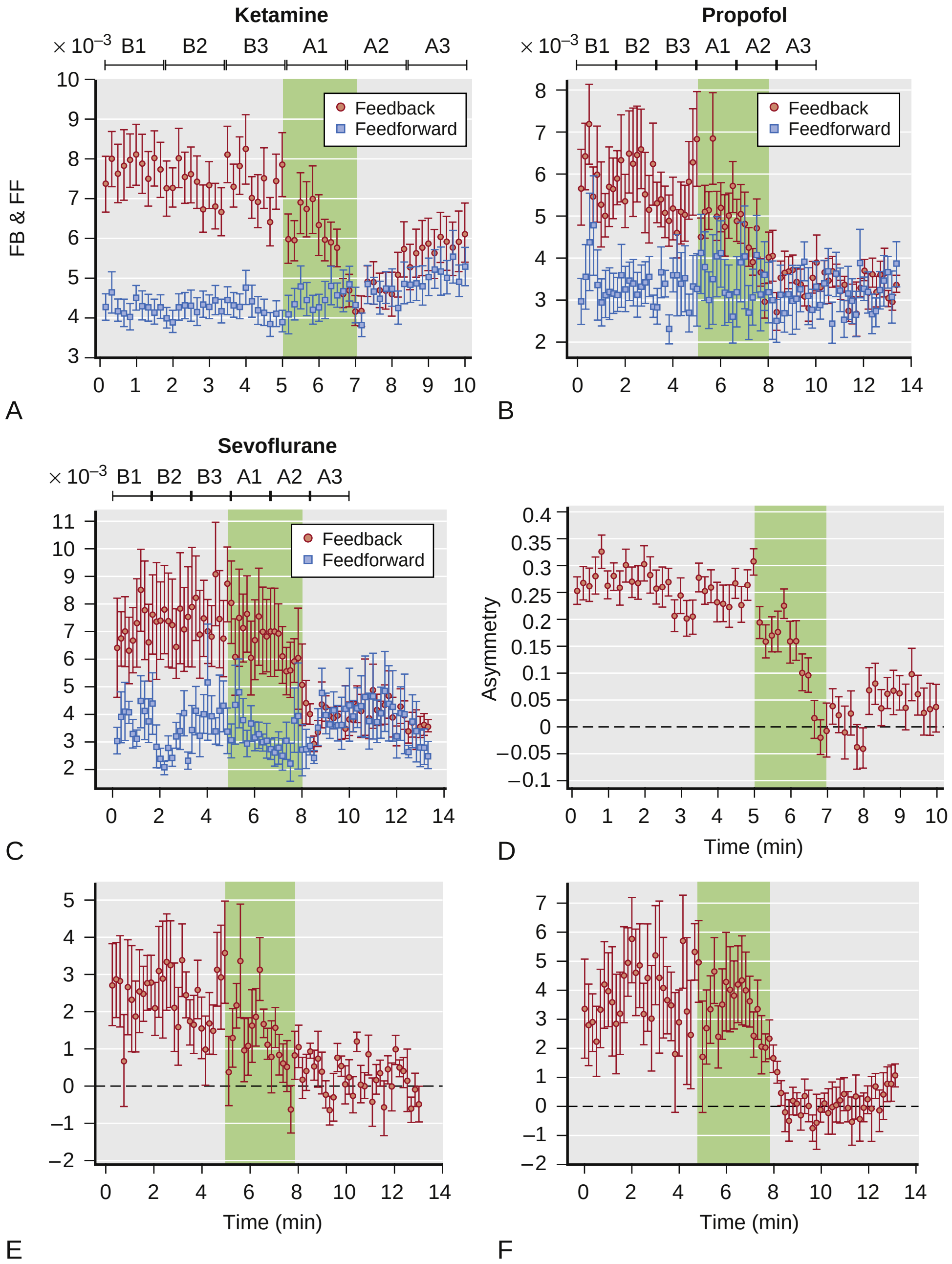


Fig. 40.11 Normalized symbolic transfer entropy. An analysis of loss of consciousness induced by ketamine, propofol, and sevoflurane using normalized symbolic transfer entropy. Asymmetry in the change of feedforward *(FF)* and feedback *(FB)* connectivity is common to all three anesthetics. The FF *(blue)*/FB *(red)* connections (A–C) and their associated asymmetry (D–F) in the frontal–parietal network displayed for (A and D) ketamine, (B and E) propofol, and (C and F) sevoflurane. Green shading highlights induction of general anesthesia. *B1 to B3* define baseline substates. *A1 to A3* define anesthetized substates. There were 30, 9, and 9 subjects in the ketamine, propofol, and sevoflurane groups, respectively. All three anesthetics show a greater loss in FB frontal-parietal connectivity than FF connectivity at loss of consciousness. (Redrawn from Lee U, Ku S, Noh G, et al. Disruption of frontal-parietal communication by ketamine, propofol, and sevoflurane. *Anesthesiology* 2013;118:1264–1275.)

properties, such as the resting membrane potentials and ionic currents, in the frontal thalamocortical connections compared with the posterior thalamocortical connections. If the parietal circuits resemble their nearby occipital counterparts neurophysiologically, then the neurophysiologic dynamics that lead to anteriorization could also contribute to loss of feedback functional connectivity. Studies of functional connectivity changes during loss of consciousness due to general anesthesia using the Vijayan model may shed mechanistic light on the differences between changes in feedback connectivity and feedforward connectivity.

At present, the use of NSTE in the operating room is not tractable because it is not possible to compute these mutual information measures in real time.[91] Moreover, the use of NSTE in its current form requires an EEG montage with both frontal and parietal electrodes, unlike the montages used with most current brain function monitors, which require only frontal electrodes.

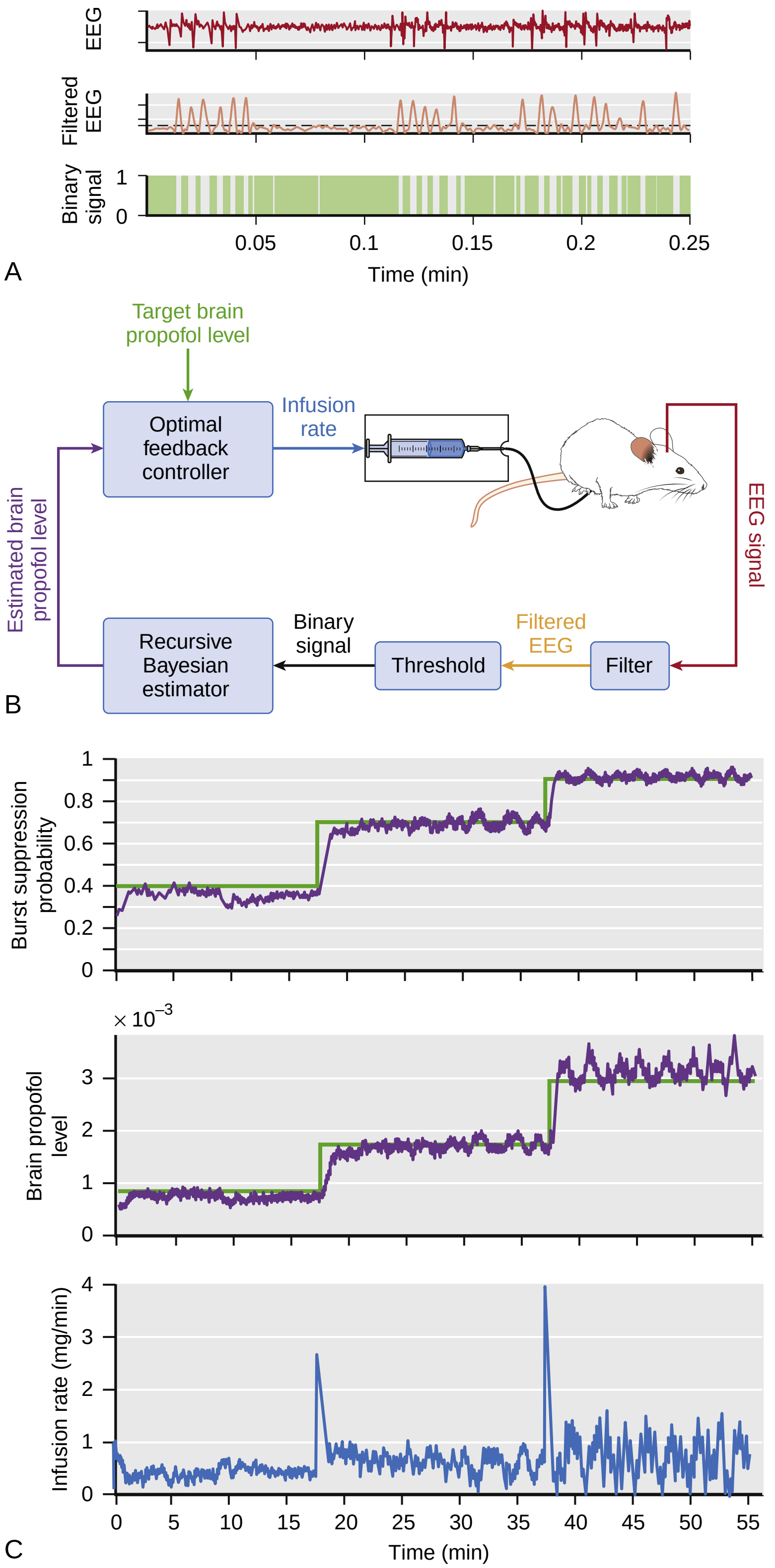


Fig. 40.12 An experimental closed loop anesthetic delivery system for control of medical coma by controlling burst suppression. (A) The electroencephalogram *(EEG)* of the rat in burst suppression is filtered, thresholded, and converted into binary observations (i.e., 0 for a burst and 1 for a suppression). (B) A target brain level of propofol is set by specifying a burst suppression probability. The Bayesian algorithm estimates the brain level of propofol from the EEG. The controller compares the estimated propofol level with the target level and adjusts the infusion rate every second to maintain the specified target burst suppression probability or, equivalently, the target brain propofol level. (C) The *top panel* shows that the target burst suppression probability *(green line)* was maintained at 0.4 for 20 minutes, changed to 0.7 for 20 minutes, and then changed to 0.9 for 15 minutes. The estimated burst suppression probability *(purple curve)* tracks exactly the targeted level. The *middle panel* shows the equivalent close tracking of the target brain propofol level *(green line)* by the estimated propofol level *(purple curve)*. The *bottom panel* shows how the controller instantaneously changed the infusion rate to maintain the targeted level of burst suppression. This experimental study establishes the feasibility of real-time control of burst suppression and most likely other states of general anesthesia. (Redrawn from Shanechi M, Chemali JJ, Liberman M, et al. A brain-machine interface for control of medically-induced coma. *PLoS Comput Biol.* 2013;9:e1003284.)

CLOSED-LOOP ANESTHETIC DELIVERY SYSTEMS

Closed-loop anesthetic delivery (CLAD) systems for maintenance of general anesthesia and sedation have been proposed since the early 1950s. These studies have been summarized.[122,123] The CLAD systems work by using an EEG marker of anesthetic state to define a desired state for maintenance during surgery. The EEG is monitored, the marker is computed from the EEG, and a computer-controlled infusion delivering the anesthetic drug is automatically changed based on the difference between the targeted level of the EEG marker and the actual level of the marker computed from the EEG analysis. Although numerous EEG markers have been used to guide delivery of anesthetics in CLAD systems, the most widely used marker is the BIS index.[25,124] Use of the BIS requires a 20- to 30-second delay in computing updates.[24] Use of a CLAD system leads to maintenance of the desired anesthetic state while delivering significantly less anesthetic drug.[25,125-127] Although most CLAD systems have focused on maintenance of unconsciousness, a recently developed control system has studied maintenance of unconsciousness and antinociception.[128,129]

Recent simulation studies using rodent and human models, as well as recent experimental studies in rodents, have shown that highly reliable and accurate CLAD systems can be devised to maintain medical coma by using burst suppression (see Fig. 40.2 *F*) as the control variable.[122,123] A CLAD system developed by Shanechi and colleagues[130] uses a stochastic control framework and, as the control variable, the burst suppression probability, which is the instantaneous probability that the brain is suppressed (Fig. 40.12).[110] The burst suppression probability is a more reliable way to track burst suppression than the suppression ratio. The CLAD system precisely tracked the target level of burst suppression. If these results are successfully reproduced in human studies, the CLAD system could offer an automatic and highly efficient way to maintain medical coma in the many patients who require this therapy for multiple days to treat intractable status epilepticus or intracranial hypertension.

Several clinical studies have recently demonstrated the feasibility of CLAD systems as a means of controlling level of unconsciousness alone, level of unconsciousness and antinociception, and level of unconsciousness and volume status.[131-133] All of these studies have been conducted outside of the United States, as the FDA has not approved any CLAD system for administering general anesthesia. Many new findings and approaches will probably be reported in the near future because the study of CLAD systems is an active area of research by many investigators.

MONITORING ANTINOCICEPTION

The discussion of monitoring brain states under general anesthesia and sedation has focused largely on monitoring level of unconsciousness. Monitoring antinociception is an important, growing area of investigation. In the introduction, we modified the definition of general anesthesia given previously by Brown and colleagues[1] by substituting antinociception for analgesia.[3] We did so to make a precise distinction between the concept of nociception, which is transmission of potentially harmful and noxious stimuli through the sensory system, and pain, which is conscious processing of nociceptive information. When a patient is unconscious under general anesthesia, the anesthesia care provider is managing nociception, whereas when the patient is awake at the end of surgery, the care provider is managing pain. Antinociception is therefore the extent to which anesthetic and analgesic agents impede the flow of information regarding harmful and noxious stimuli through the nervous system.

At present, movement and the physiological responses of changes in heart rate, blood pressure, and perhaps respiratory rate, are the most commonly used markers of nociception. The changes in these physiological markers are a consequence of the NMA circuit responses to nociceptive information transmission in the central nervous system (see Fig. 40.1). Investigations are using multiple physiologic parameters including heart rate, heart rate variability (0.15-0.4 Hz band power), plethysmograph wave amplitude, skin conductance, skin conductance fluctuations, and the derivatives of these signals to track antinociception.[134,135] In addition, nociception can be tracked by using infrared pupillometry to record pupillary activity.[136] Commercial monitors that track level of antinociception by monitoring physiologic variables are now commercially available.[137-140] A recent report suggests that monitoring simultaneously unconsciousness and antinociception together allows the implementation of more principled multimodal strategies for choosing and administering anesthetic combinations.[3] This new strategy offers the potential to achieve better nociceptive control intraoperatively and pain control postoperatively, and to reduce the likelihood of postoperative cognitive dysfunction and opioid overuse.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Brown EN, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:2638–2650.
2. Cellular and molecular mechanisms of anesthesia. In: Evers AS, PG Barash, BF Cullen, RK Stoelting ed. *Clinical Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lipponcott-Raven; 1997.
3. Brown EN, et al. *Anesth Analg*.2018; 127: 1246-1258.
4. Posner J, et al. Oxford University Press; 2007.
5. Cote CJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:703–705.
6. Feldman JL, Del Negro CA. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2006;7:232–242.
7. Palanca BJ, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:553–559.
8. Prys-Roberts C. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:1341–1345.
9. Price DD. *Science*. 2000;288:1769–1772.
10. Purves D, et al. *Neuroscience*. 4th ed. Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Associates, Inc.; 2008.
11. Kertai MD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:533–546.
12. Pfaff D. Cambridge: Harvard University Press; 2005.
13. Giacino JT, et al. *Neurology*. 2002;58:349–353.
14. Giacino JT, et al. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2004;85:2020–2029.
15. Storm H. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2008;21:796–804.
16. Bennett C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:539–550.
17. Gibbs FA, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 1937;60:154–166.
18. Kiersey DK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1951;23:141–152.
19. Kearse Jr LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1365–1370.
20. Glass PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:836–847.
21. Rampil IJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:980–1002.
22. Kelley SD. *Monitoring Consciousness: Using the Bispectral Index*. 2nd ed. Boulder, CO: Covidien; 2010.
23. Bruhn J, et al. *J Clin Mon Comp*. 2000;16:593–596.
24. Pilge S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:488–494.
25. Struys MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:6–17.
26. Purdon PL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:937–960.
27. Hayashi K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:389–395.
28. Yamamura T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60:283–288.
29. Foster BL, Liley DT. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:758–765.
30. Ozcan MS, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2010;22:309–315.

31. Pavone KJ, et al. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2016;127:556–564.
32. Sleigh JW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:951–959.
33. Xi C, et al. *PLoS One*. 2018;13:e0199120.
34. Huupponen E, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52:289–294.
35. Aksu R, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:373–378.
36. Mason KP, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19:1175–1183.
37. Akeju O, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(suppl 1):i66–i76.
38. Lee JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:293–306.
39. Myles PS, et al. *Lancet*. 2004;363:1757–1763.
40. Avidan MS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:1097–1108.
41. Avidan MS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365:591–600.
42. Myles PS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;359:428–429; author reply 30-1.
43. Brown EN, et al. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2011;34:601–628.
44. Purdon PL, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2013;110:E1142–E1151.
45. Prichep LS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:393–399.
46. Drover D, Ortega HR. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;20: 121–128.
47. Tinker JH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:252–259.
48. Kochs E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1026–1034.
49. Cimenser A, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:8832–8837.
50. Chen X, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1669–1674, table of contents.
51. Soehle M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:172–178.
52. Adesanya AO, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2009;24:322–328.
53. Schultz B, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2003;52:1143–1148.
54. Kreuer S, Wilhelm W. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;20: 111–119.
55. Schneider G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:329–335.
56. Schneider G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:1105–1111.
57. Bruhn J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:30–35.
58. Viertio-Oja H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:154–161.
59. Jantti V, Alahuhta S. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:150–151; author reply 1-2.
60. Bein B. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;20:101–109.
61. Gruenewald M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:1224–1229.
62. Eger 2nd EI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:756–763.
63. Stoelting RK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;33:5–9.
64. Solt K, Forman SA. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2007;20:300–306.
65. Rampil IJ, Laster MJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:920–925.
66. Antognini JF, Schwartz K. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:1244–1249.
67. Rampil IJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:606–610.
68. Anderson RE, Jakobsson JG. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2006;23:208–212.
69. Schmidt GN, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60:228–234.
70. Kreuer S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:336–340.
71. Friedman EB, et al. *PLoS One*. 2010;5:e11903.
72. Joiner WJ, et al. *PLoS Genet*. 2013;9:e1003605.
73. Hirschberg R, Giacino JT. *Neurol Clin*. 2011;29:773–786.
74. Alkire MT, et al. *Science*. 2008;322:876–880.
75. Hudetz AG. *Brain Connect*. 2012;2:291–302.
76. Langsjo JW, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32:4935–4943.
77. Mhuircheartaigh RN, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2010;30:9095–9102.
78. Breshears JD, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107: 21170–21175.
79. Hemmings Jr HC, et al. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2005;26:503–510.
80. Bickford RG, et al. *Trans Am Neurol Assoc*. 1971;96:118–122.
81. Fleming RA, Smith NT. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:456–460.
82. Bai D, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1999;19:10635–10646.
83. Feshchenko VA, et al. *Neuropsychobiology*. 2004;50:257–266.
84. Lewis LD, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109:E3377–E3386.
85. Li D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:81–88.
86. Ching S, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:22665–22670.
87. Soplata AE, et al. *PLoS Comput Biol*. 2017;13:e1005879.
88. Sinner B, Graf BM. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2008:313–333.
89. Olney JW, Farber NB. *Arch Gen Psychiatry*. 1995;52:998–1007.
90. Seamans J. *Nat Chem Biol*. 2008;4:91–93.
91. Lee U, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1264–1275.
92. Tsuda N, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51:472–481.
93. Correa-Sales C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:948–952.
94. Chiu TH, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1995;285:261–268.
95. Mizobe T, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1996;98:1076–1080.
96. Jorm CM, Stamford JA. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:447–449.
97. Nacif-Coelho C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1527–1534.
98. Nelson LE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:428–436.
99. Saper CB, et al. *Nature*. 2005;437:1257–1263.
100. Sherin JE, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1998;18:4705–4721.
101. Morairty S, et al. *Neuroscience*. 2004;123:451–457.
102. Scheinin A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129:22–36.
103. Avramov MN, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:369–374.
104. Hagihira S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:572–577.
105. Mennerick S, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1998;18:9716–9726.
106. Jevtovic-Todorovic V, et al. *Nat Med*. 1998;4:460–463.
107. Boon JA, Milsom WK. *Resp Phys Neurobiol*. 2008;162:63–72.
108. Cornelissen L, et al. *Elife*. 2015;4:e06513.
109. Cornelissen L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:1274–1286.
110. Purdon PL. In: Benasich AA, Ribary U, eds. *Emergent Brain Dynamics: Prebirth to Adolescence*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press; 2018.
111. McCarthy MM, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2008;28:13488–13504.
112. Flores FJ, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2017;114:E6660–E6668.
113. Brown EN, Purdon PL. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2013;26:414–419.
114. Martin JT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1959;20:359–376.
115. Wildes TS, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6:e011505.
116. Levy WJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:430–434.
117. Drover DR, et al. *J Clin Mon Comp*. 2011;25:175–181.
118. Ching S, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109:3095–3100.
119. Vijayan S, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2013;33:11070–11075.
120. Ku SW, et al. *PLoS One*. 2011;6:e25155.
121. Casali AG, et al. *Sci Transl Med*. 2013;5:198ra05.
122. Ching S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013.
123. Liberman MY, et al. *J Neural Eng*. 2013;10:046004.
124. Mortier E, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53:749–754.
125. Agarwal J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53:390–397.
126. Puri GD, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35:357–362.
127. Hemmerling TM, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57:725–735.
128. Liu N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:546–557.
129. Liu N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:286–295.
130. Shanechi M, et al. *PLoS Comp Bio*. 2013.
131. Dutta A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
132. Joosten A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
133. West N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:883–894.
134. Ben-Israel N, et al. *J Clin Mon CompJ*. 2013.
135. Ledowski T, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:1001–1006.
136. Neice AE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:915–921.
137. The Dolosys Paintracker. (Accessed June 29, 2017, at http://www.dolosys.de/Products-EN.htm.)
138. ANI (Analgesia Nociception Index). (Accessed June 29, 2017, at https://www.mdoloris.com/en/technologies/ani-analgesia-nociception-index/.)
139. Storm H. Med-Storm, PainMonitorTM. 2016.
140. Huiku M, et al. *Surgical Plethysmographic Index (SPI) in Anesthesia Practice*; 2014.

References

1. Brown EN, Lydic R, Schiff ND. General anesthesia, sleep, and coma. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:2638–2650.
2. Cellular and molecular mechanisms of anesthesia. In: Evers AS, PG Barash, BF Cullen, RK Stoelting ed. *Clinical Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lipponcott-Raven; 1997.
3. Brown EN, Pavone KJ, Naranjo M. Multimodal general anesthesia: theory and practice. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.;127: 1246-1258.
4. Posner J, Saper C, Schiff N, Plum F. *Plum and Posner's Diagnosis of Stupor and Coma*. Oxford University Press; 2007.
5. Cote CJ, Goudsouzian NG, Liu LM, Dedrick DF, Rosow CE. The dose response of intravenous thiopental for the induction of general anesthesia in unpremedicated children. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55: 703–705.
6. Feldman JL, Del Negro CA. Looking for inspiration: new perspectives on respiratory rhythm. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2006;7:232–242.
7. Palanca BJ, Mashour GA, Avidan MS. Processed electroencephalogram in depth of anesthesia monitoring. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:553–559.
8. Prys-Roberts C. Anaesthesia: a practical or impractical construct? *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:1341–1345.
9. Price DD. Psychological and neural mechanisms of the affective dimension of pain. *Science*. 2000;288:1769–1772.
10. Purves D, Augustine GJ, Hall WC, Lamantia A, McNamara JO, White LE. *Neuroscience*. 4th ed. Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Associates, Inc.; 2008.
11. Kertai MD, Whitlock EL, Avidan MS. Brain monitoring with electroencephalography and the electroencephalogram-derived bispectral index during cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:533–546.
12. Pfaff D. *Brain Arousal and Information Theory: Neural and Genetic Mechanisms*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press; 2005.
13. Giacino JT, Ashwal S, Childs N, et al. The minimally conscious state: definition and diagnostic criteria. *Neurology*. 2002;58:349–353.
14. Giacino JT, Kalmar K, Whyte J. The JFK Coma Recovery Scale-Revised: measurement characteristics and diagnostic utility. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2004;85:2020–2029.
15. Storm H. Changes in skin conductance as a tool to monitor nociceptive stimulation and pain. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2008;21: 796–804.
16. Bennett C, Voss LJ, Barnard JP, Sleigh JW. Practical use of the raw electroencephalogram waveform during general anesthesia: the art and science. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:539–550.
17. Gibbs FA, Gibbs LE, Lennox WG. Effects on the electroencephalogram of certain drugs which influence nervous activity. *Arch Intern Med*. 1937;60:154–166.
18. Kiersey DK, Bickford RG, Faulconer Jr A. Electro-encephalographic patterns produced by thiopental sodium during surgical operations; description and classification. *Br J Anaesth*. 1951;23:141–152.
19. Kearse Jr LA, Manberg P, Chamoun N, deBros F, Zaslavsky A. Bispectral analysis of the electroencephalogram correlates with patient movement to skin incision during propofol/nitrous oxide anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1365–1370.
20. Glass PS, Bloom M, Kearse L, Rosow C, Sebel P, Manberg P. Bispectral analysis measures sedation and memory effects of propofol, midazolam, isoflurane, and alfentanil in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:836–847.
21. Rampil IJ. A primer for EEG signal processing in anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:980–1002.
22. Kelley SD. *Monitoring Consciousness: Using the Bispectral Index*. 2nd ed. Boulder, CO: Covidien; 2010.
23. Bruhn J, Bouillon TW, Shafer SL. Bispectral index (BIS) and burst suppression: revealing a part of the BIS algorithm. *J Clin Mon Comp*. 2000;16:593–596.
24. Pilge S, Zanner R, Schneider G, Blum J, Kreuzer M, Kochs EF. Time delay of index calculation: analysis of cerebral state, bispectral, and narcotrend indices. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:488–494.
25. Struys MM, De Smet T, Versichelen LF, Van De Velde S, Van den Broecke R, Mortier EP. Comparison of closed-loop controlled administration of propofol using bispectral index as the controlled variable versus "standard practice" controlled administration. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:6–17.
26. Purdon PL, Sampson A, Pavone KJ, Brown EN. Clinical electroencephalography for anesthesiologists: part I: background and basic signatures. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:937–960.
27. Hayashi K, Tsuda N, Sawa T, Hagihira S. Ketamine increases the frequency of electroencephalographic bicoherence peak on the alpha spindle area induced with propofol. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:389–395.
28. Yamamura T, Fukuda M, Takeya H, Goto Y, Furukawa K. Fast oscillatory EEG activity induced by analgesic concentrations of nitrous oxide in man. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60:283–288.
29. Foster BL, Liley DT. Nitrous oxide paradoxically modulates slow electroencephalogram oscillations: implications for anesthesia monitoring. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:758–765.
30. Ozcan MS, Ozcan MD, Khan QS, Thompson DM, Chetty PK. Does nitrous oxide affect bispectral index and state entropy when added to a propofol versus sevoflurane anesthetic? *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2010;22:309–315.
31. Pavone KJ, Akeju O, Sampson AL, Ling K, Purdon PL, Brown EN. Nitrous oxide-induced slow and delta oscillations. *Clin Neurophysiol*. 2016;127:556–564.
32. Sleigh JW, Vacas S, Flexman AM, Talke PO. Electroencephalographic arousal patterns under dexmedetomidine sedation. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:951–959.
33. Xi C, Sun S, Pan C, Ji F, Cui X, Li T. Different effects of propofol and dexmedetomidine sedation on electroencephalogram patterns: Wakefulness, moderate sedation, deep sedation and recovery. *PLoS One*. 2018;13:e0199120.
34. Huupponen E, Maksimow A, Lapinlampi P, et al. Electroencephalogram spindle activity during dexmedetomidine sedation and physiological sleep. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52:289–294.
35. Aksu R, Kumandas S, Akin A, et al. The comparison of the effects of dexmedetomidine and midazolam sedation on electroencephalography in pediatric patients with febrile convulsion. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:373–378.
36. Mason KP, O'Mahony E, Zurakowski D, Libenson MH. Effects of dexmedetomidine sedation on the EEG in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19:1175–1183.
37. Akeju O, Pavone KJ, Thum JA, et al. Age-dependency of sevoflurane-induced electroencephalogram dynamics in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(suppl 1):i66–i76.
38. Lee JM, Akeju O, Terzakis K, et al. A prospective study of age-dependent changes in propofol-induced electroencephalogram oscillations in children. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:293–306.
39. Myles PS, Leslie K, McNeil J, Forbes A, Chan MT. Bispectral index monitoring to prevent awareness during anaesthesia: the B-Aware randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2004;363:1757–1763.
40. Avidan MS, Zhang L, Burnside BA, et al. Anesthesia awareness and the bispectral index. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:1097–1108.
41. Avidan MS, Jacobsohn E, Glick D, et al. Prevention of intraoperative awareness in a high-risk surgical population. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365:591–600.
42. Myles PS, Leslie K, Forbes A. Anesthesia awareness and the bispectral index. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;359:428–429; author reply 30-31.
43. Brown EN, Purdon PL, Van Dort CJ. General anesthesia and altered states of arousal: a systems neuroscience analysis. *Annu Rev Neurosci*. 2011;34:601–628.
44. Purdon PL, Pierce ET, Mukamel EA, et al. Electroencephalogram signatures of loss and recovery of consciousness from propofol. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2013;110:E1142–E1151.
45. Prichep LS, Gugino LD, John ER, et al. The Patient State Index as an indicator of the level of hypnosis under general anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:393–399.
46. Drover D, Ortega HR. Patient state index. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;20:121–128.
47. Tinker JH, Sharbrough FW, Michenfelder JD. Anterior shift of the dominant EEG rhythm during anesthesia in the Java monkey: correlation with anesthetic potency. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46: 252–259.
48. Kochs E, Bischoff P, Pichlmeier U, Schulte am Esch J. Surgical stimulation induces changes in brain electrical activity during isoflurane/nitrous oxide anesthesia. A topographic electroencephalographic analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1026–1034.
49. Cimenser A, Purdon PL, Pierce ET, et al. Tracking brain states under general anesthesia by using global coherence analysis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2011;108:8832–8837.
50. Chen X, Tang J, White PF, et al. A comparison of patient state index and bispectral index values during the perioperative period. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1669–1674, table of contents.

51. Soehle M, Kuech M, Grube M, et al. Patient state index vs bispectral index as measures of the electroencephalographic effects of propofol. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:172–178.
52. Adesanya AO, Rosero E, Wyrick C, Wall MH, Joshi GP. Assessing the predictive value of the bispectral index vs patient state index on clinical assessment of sedation in postoperative cardiac surgery patients. *J Crit Care*. 2009;24:322–328.
53. Schultz B, Kreuer S, Wilhelm W, Grouven U, Schultz A. [The Narcotrend monitor. Development and interpretation algorithms]. *Anaesthesist*. 2003;52:1143–1148.
54. Kreuer S, Wilhelm W. The Narcotrend monitor. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;20:111–119.
55. Schneider G, Gelb AW, Schmeller B, Tschakert R, Kochs E. Detection of awareness in surgical patients with EEG-based indices--bispectral index and patient state index. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:329–335.
56. Schneider G, Kochs EF, Horn B, Kreuzer M, Ningler M. Narcotrend does not adequately detect the transition between awareness and unconsciousness in surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:1105–1111.
57. Bruhn J, Lehmann LE, Ropcke H, Bouillon TW, Hoeft A. Shannon entropy applied to the measurement of the electroencephalographic effects of desflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:30–35.
58. Viertio-Oja H, Maja V, Sarkela M, et al. Description of the entropy algorithm as applied in the Datex-Ohmeda S/5 Entropy Module. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:154–161.
59. Jantti V, Alahuhta S. Spectral entropy--what has it to do with anaesthesia, and the EEG?. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:150–151; author reply 1-2.
60. Bein B. Entropy. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;20:101–109.
61. Gruenewald M, Zhou J, Schloemerkemper N, et al. M-Entropy guidance vs standard practice during propofol-remifentanil anaesthesia: a randomised controlled trial. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:1224–1229.
62. Eger 2nd EI, Saidman LJ, Brandstater B. Minimum alveolar anesthetic concentration: a standard of anesthetic potency. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:756–763.
63. Stoelting RK, Longnecker DE, Eger 2nd EI. Minimum alveolar concentrations in man on awakening from methoxyflurane, halothane, ether and fluroxene anesthesia: MAC awake. *Anesthesiology*. 1970;33:5–9.
64. Solt K, Forman SA. Correlating the clinical actions and molecular mechanisms of general anesthetics. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2007;20:300–306.
65. Rampil IJ, Laster MJ. No correlation between quantitative electroencephalographic measurements and movement response to noxious stimuli during isoflurane anesthesia in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:920–925.
66. Antognini JF, Schwartz K. Exaggerated anesthetic requirements in the preferentially anesthetized brain. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:1244–1249.
67. Rampil IJ. Anesthetic potency is not altered after hypothermic spinal cord transection in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:606–610.
68. Anderson RE, Jakobsson JG. Cerebral State Monitor, a new small handheld EEG monitor for determining depth of anaesthesia: a clinical comparison with the bispectral index during day-surgery. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2006;23:208–212.
69. Schmidt GN, Bischoff P, Standl T, et al. SNAP index and bispectral index during different states of propofol/remifentanil anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60:228–234.
70. Kreuer S, Bruhn J, Larsen R, Hoepstein M, Wilhelm W. Comparison of Alaris AEP index and bispectral index during propofol-remifentanil anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:336–340.
71. Friedman EB, Sun Y, Moore JT, et al. A conserved behavioral state barrier impedes transitions between anesthetic-induced unconsciousness and wakefulness: evidence for neural inertia. *PLoS One*. 2010;5:e11903.
72. Joiner WJ, Friedman EB, Hung HT, et al. Genetic and anatomical basis of the barrier separating wakefulness and anesthetic-induced unresponsiveness. *PLoS Genet*. 2013;9:e1003605.
73. Hirschberg R, Giacino JT. The vegetative and minimally conscious states: diagnosis, prognosis and treatment. *Neurol Clin*. 2011;29:773–786.
74. Alkire MT, Hudetz AG, Tononi G. Consciousness and anesthesia. *Science*. 2008;322:876–880.
75. Hudetz AG. General anesthesia and human brain connectivity. *Brain Connect*. 2012;2:291–302.
76. Langsjo JW, Alkire MT, Kaskinoro K, et al. Returning from oblivion: imaging the neural core of consciousness. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32:4935–4943.
77. Mhuircheartaigh RN, Rosenorn-Lanng D, Wise R, Jbabdi S, Rogers R, Tracey I. Cortical and subcortical connectivity changes during decreasing levels of consciousness in humans: a functional magnetic resonance imaging study using propofol. *J Neurosci*. 2010;30:9095–9102.
78. Breshears JD, Roland JL, Sharma M, et al. Stable and dynamic cortical electrophysiology of induction and emergence with propofol anesthesia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:21170–21175.
79. Hemmings Jr HC, Akabas MH, Goldstein PA, Trudell JR, Orser BA, Harrison NL. Emerging molecular mechanisms of general anesthetic action. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2005;26:503–510.
80. Bickford RG, Fleming N, Billinger T. Compression of EEG data. *Trans Am Neurol Assoc*. 1971;96:118–122.
81. Fleming RA, Smith NT. An inexpensive device for analyzing and monitoring the electroencephalogram. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:456–460.
82. Bai D, Pennefather PS, MacDonald JF, Orser BA. The general anesthetic propofol slows deactivation and desensitization of GABA(A) receptors. *J Neurosci*. 1999;19:10635–10646.
83. Feshchenko VA, Veselis RA, Reinsel RA. Propofol-induced alpha rhythm. *Neuropsychobiology*. 2004;50:257–266.
84. Lewis LD, Weiner VS, Mukamel EA, et al. Rapid fragmentation of neuronal networks at the onset of propofol-induced unconsciousness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109:E3377–E3386.
85. Li D, Voss LJ, Sleigh JW, Li X. Effects of volatile anesthetic agents on cerebral cortical synchronization in sheep. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:81–88.
86. Ching S, Cimenser A, Purdon PL, Brown EN, Kopell NJ. Thalamocortical model for a propofol-induced alpha-rhythm associated with loss of consciousness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2010;107:22665–22670.
87. Soplata AE, McCarthy MM, Sherfey J, et al. Thalamocortical control of propofol phase-amplitude coupling. *PLoS Comput Biol*. 2017;13:e1005879.
88. Sinner B, Graf BM. Ketamine. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2008:313–333.
89. Olney JW, Farber NB. Glutamate receptor dysfunction and schizophrenia. *Arch Gen Psychiatry*. 1995;52:998–1007.
90. Seamans J. Losing inhibition with ketamine. *Nat Chem Biol*. 2008;4:91–93.
91. Lee U, Ku S, Noh G, Baek S, Choi B, Mashour GA. Disruption of frontal-parietal communication by ketamine, propofol, and sevoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1264–1275.
92. Tsuda N, Hayashi K, Hagihira S, Sawa T. Ketamine, an NMDA-antagonist, increases the oscillatory frequencies of alpha-peaks on the electroencephalographic power spectrum. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51:472–481.
93. Correa-Sales C, Rabin BC, Maze M. A hypnotic response to dexmedetomidine, an alpha 2 agonist, is mediated in the locus coeruleus in rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:948–952.
94. Chiu TH, Chen MJ, Yang YR, Yang JJ, Tang FI. Action of dexmedetomidine on rat locus coeruleus neurones: intracellular recording in vitro. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 1995;285:261–268.
95. Mizobe T, Maghsoudi K, Sitwala K, Tianzhi G, Ou J, Maze M. Antisense technology reveals the alpha2A adrenoceptor to be the subtype mediating the hypnotic response to the highly selective agonist, dexmedetomidine, in the locus coeruleus of the rat. *J Clin Invest*. 1996;98:1076–1080.
96. Jorm CM, Stamford JA. Actions of the hypnotic anaesthetic, dexmedetomidine, on noradrenaline release and cell firing in rat locus coeruleus slices. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:447–449.
97. Nacif-Coelho C, Correa-Sales C, Chang LL, Maze M. Perturbation of ion channel conductance alters the hypnotic response to the alpha 2-adrenergic agonist dexmedetomidine in the locus coeruleus of the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1527–1534.
98. Nelson LE, Lu J, Guo T, Saper CB, Franks NP, Maze M. The alpha2-adrenoceptor agonist dexmedetomidine converges on an endogenous sleep-promoting pathway to exert its sedative effects. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:428–436.
99. Saper CB, Scammell TE, Lu J. Hypothalamic regulation of sleep and circadian rhythms. *Nature*. 2005;437:1257–1263.
100. Sherin JE, Elmquist JK, Torrealba F, Saper CB. Innervation of histaminergic tuberomammillary neurons by GABAergic and galaninergic neurons in the ventrolateral preoptic nucleus of the rat. *J Neurosci*. 1998;18:4705–4721.

101. Morairty S, Rainnie D, McCarley R, Greene R. Disinhibition of ventrolateral preoptic area sleep-active neurons by adenosine: a new mechanism for sleep promotion. *Neuroscience*. 2004;123:451–457.
102. Scheinin A, Kallionpää RE, Li D, et al. Differentiating drug-related and state-related effects of dexmedetomidine and propofol on the electroencephalogram. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129:22–36.
103. Avramov MN, Shingu K, Mori K. Progressive changes in electroencephalographic responses to nitrous oxide in humans: a possible acute drug tolerance. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:369–374.
104. Hagihira S, Takashina M, Mori T, Mashimo T. The impact of nitrous oxide on electroencephalographic bicoherence during isoflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:572–577.
105. Mennerick S, Jevtovic-Todorovic V, Todorovic SM, Shen W, Olney JW, Zorumski CF. Effect of nitrous oxide on excitatory and inhibitory synaptic transmission in hippocampal cultures. *J Neurosci*. 1998;18:9716–9726.
106. Jevtovic-Todorovic V, Todorovic SM, Mennerick S, et al. Nitrous oxide (laughing gas) is an NMDA antagonist, neuroprotectant and neurotoxin. *Nat Med*. 1998;4:460–463.
107. Boon JA, Milsom WK. NMDA receptor-mediated processes in the parabrachial/kolliker fuse complex influence respiratory responses directly and indirectly via changes in cortical activation state. *Resp Phys Neurobiol*. 2008;162:63–72.
108. Cornelissen L, Kim SE, Purdon PL, Brown EN, Berde CB. Age-dependent electroencephalogram (EEG) patterns during sevoflurane general anesthesia in infants. *Elife*. 2015;4:e06513.
109. Cornelissen L, Kim SE, Lee JM, Brown EN, Purdon PL, Berde CB. Electroencephalographic markers of brain development during sevoflurane anaesthesia in children up to 3 years old. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:1274–1286.
110. Purdon PL. Anesthesia-induced brain oscillations: a natural experiment in human neurodevelopment. In: Benasich AA, Ribary U, eds. *Emergent Brain Dynamics: Prebirth to Adolescence*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press; 2018.
111. McCarthy MM, Brown EN, Kopell N. Potential network mechanisms mediating electroencephalographic beta rhythm changes during propofol-induced paradoxical excitation. *J Neurosci*. 2008;28:13488–13504.
112. Flores FJ, Hartnack KE, Fath AB, et al. Thalamocortical synchronization during induction and emergence from propofol-induced unconsciousness. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2017;114:E6660–E6668.
113. Brown EN, Purdon PL. The aging brain and anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2013;26:414–419.
114. Martin JT, Faulconer Jr A, Bickford RG. Electroencephalography in anesthesiology. *Anesthesiology*. 1959;20:359–376.
115. Wildes TS, Winter AC, Maybrier HR, et al. Protocol for the Electroencephalography Guidance of Anesthesia to Alleviate Geriatric Syndromes (ENGAGES) study: a pragmatic, randomised clinical trial. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6:e011505.
116. Levy WJ. Intraoperative EEG patterns: implications for EEG monitoring. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:430–434.
117. Drover DR, Schmiesing C, Buchin AF, et al. Titration of sevoflurane in elderly patients: blinded, randomized clinical trial, in non-cardiac surgery after beta-adrenergic blockade. *J Clin Mon Comp*. 2011;25:175–181.
118. Ching S, Purdon PL, Vijayan S, Kopell NJ, Brown EN. A neurophysiological-metabolic model for burst suppression. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109:3095–3100.
119. Vijayan S, Ching S, Purdon PL, Brown EN, Kopell NJ. Thalamocortical mechanisms for the anteriorization of alpha rhythms during propofol-induced unconsciousness. *J Neurosci*. 2013;33:11070–11075.
120. Ku SW, Lee U, Noh GJ, Jun IG, Mashour GA. Preferential inhibition of frontal-to-parietal feedback connectivity is a neurophysiologic correlate of general anesthesia in surgical patients. *PLoS One*. 2011;6:e25155.
121. Casali AG, Gosseries O, Rosanova M, et al. A theoretically based index of consciousness independent of sensory processing and behavior. *Sci Transl Med*. 2013;5:198ra05.
122. Ching S, Liberman MY, Chemali JJ, et al. Real-time closed-loop control in a rodent model of medically induced coma using burst suppression. *Anesthesiology*. 2013.
123. Liberman MY, Ching S, Chemali J, Brown EN. A closed-loop anesthetic delivery system for real-time control of burst suppression. *J Neural Eng*. 2013;10:046004.
124. Mortier E, Struys M, De Smet T, Versichelen L, Rolly G. Closed-loop controlled administration of propofol using bispectral analysis. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53:749–754.
125. Agarwal J, Puri GD, Mathew PJ. Comparison of closed loop vs. manual administration of propofol using the bispectral index in cardiac surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53:390–397.
126. Puri GD, Kumar B, Aveek J. Closed-loop anaesthesia delivery system (CLADS) using bispectral index: a performance assessment study. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35:357–362.
127. Hemmerling TM, Charabati S, Zaouter C, Minardi C, Mathieu PA. A randomized controlled trial demonstrates that a novel closed-loop propofol system performs better hypnosis control than manual administration. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57:725–735.
128. Liu N, Chazot T, Hamada S, et al. Closed-loop coadministration of propofol and remifentanil guided by bispectral index: a randomized multicenter study. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:546–557.
129. Liu N, Le Guen M, Benabbes-Lambert F, et al. Feasibility of closed-loop titration of propofol and remifentanil guided by the spectral M-Entropy monitor. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:286–295.
130. Shanechi M, Chemali JJ, Liberman M, Solt K, Brown EN. A brain-machine interface for control of medically-induced coma. *PLoS Comp Bio*. 2013.
131. Dutta A, Sethi N, Sood J, et al. The effect of dexmedetomidine on propofol requirements during anesthesia administered by bispectral index-guided closed-loop anesthesia delivery system: a randomized controlled study. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
132. Joosten A, Jame V, Alexander B, et al. Feasibility of fully automated hypnosis, analgesia, and fluid management using 2 independent closed-loop systems during major vascular surgery: a pilot study. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
133. West N, van Heusden K, Gorges M, et al. Design and evaluation of a closed-loop anesthesia system with robust control and safety system. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:883–894.
134. Ben-Israel N, Kliger M, Zuckerman G, Katz Y, Edry R. Monitoring the nociception level: a multi-parameter approach. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2013.
135. Ledowski T, Pascoe E, Ang B, et al. Monitoring of intra-operative nociception: skin conductance and surgical stress index versus stress hormone plasma levels. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:1001–1006.
136. Neice AE, Behrends M, Bokoch MP, Seligman KM, Conrad NM, Larson MD. Prediction of opioid analgesic efficacy by measurement of pupillary unrest. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:915–921.
137. The Dolosys Paintracker. (Accessed June, 29, 2017, at http://www.dolosys.de/Products-EN.htm.)
138. ANI (Analgesia Nociception Index). (Accessed June 29, 2017, at https://www.mdoloris.com/en/technologies/ani-analgesia-nociception-index/.)
139. Storm H. Med-Storm, PainMonitorTM. 2016.
140. Huiku M, Kamppari L, Viertio-Oja H. *Surgical Plethysmographic Index (SPI) in Anesthesia Practice*; 2014.

41 Respiratory Monitoring

DAVID W. KACZKA, HOVIG V. CHITILIAN, and MARCOS F. VIDAL MELO

KEY POINTS

- Intraoperative respiratory monitoring is a fundamental component of the American Society of Anesthesiologists' standards for basic anesthetic monitoring. Monitoring of oxygenation and ventilation is essential for the safe conduct of an anesthetic.
- A thorough understanding of the physiological and technological principles underlying respiratory monitoring is essential for its appropriate clinical application.
- The majority of respiratory monitors in clinical use provide information at the systemic and whole-lung level from which inferences are made regarding the regional lung and tissue-level conditions.
- The degree of invasiveness of utilized monitors should be determined by clinical requirements.
- Pulse oximetry is a noninvasive, reliable, and simple method for continuously monitoring the fractional arterial oxygen saturation.
- Ventilation-perfusion mismatch, shunt, and hypoventilation are the most common causes of hypoxemia in the perioperative period. Monitoring of gas exchange, and its response to various interventions, may differentiate etiologies for hypoxemia.
- Mixed venous oxygen saturation ($S\bar{v}O_2$) allows for monitoring of the global balance between oxygen delivery and consumption. Its measurement provides information on gas exchange, cardiac output, and global oxygen consumption.
- Systems utilizing near infrared spectroscopy are used clinically to monitor regional tissue oxygenation, particularly in the brain. The value of regional tissue oxygenation monitoring for clinical management is currently being established.
- Capnography is the primary quantitative method to assess ventilation in the perioperative period. Besides providing physiologic information on ventilation, pulmonary blood flow, and aerobic metabolism, capnography is important for verifying the endotracheal tube positioning, and determining the integrity of the breathing circuit.
- End-tidal carbon dioxide (CO_2) is not always a reliable approximation of arterial CO_2 tension, especially in the presence of significant heterogeneity in the distribution of ventilation and perfusion.
- Measurement of the pressures, flows, and volumes associated with ventilation is necessary to optimize mechanical ventilation, as well as to detect pathophysiologic mechanical derangements of the respiratory system (i.e., increased airway resistance or reduced lung compliance).
- Imaging techniques have emerged as important tools for respiratory monitoring. Lung ultrasonography is increasingly utilized in emergency and perioperative settings, allowing for prompt bedside assessments of pulmonary abnormalities such as pneumothorax, lung edema, consolidation, and pleural effusions. Electrical impedance tomography is another noninvasive imaging technique that provides information on lung aeration and recruitment.
- Current approaches to respiratory monitoring primarily assess pulmonary mechanical and global gas exchange processes. The monitoring of tissue and subcellular respiration remains a desirable goal for future innovation.

Overview of Respiratory Monitoring

Respiratory monitoring is essential to every anesthetic. Its major relevance for maintenance of homeostasis and patient safety is acknowledged by its mandatory position in national and international standards for anesthetic monitoring.[1,2] Through the decades, advances in respiratory monitoring have resulted in substantial reduction in anesthetic morbidity and mortality, and opened a new era of safe anesthetic practice.[3]

Respiration is the transport of oxygen (O_2) from the environment to the body cells and the transport of carbon dioxide (CO_2) from those cells to the environment. The concept includes a component of cellular respiration, the process by which cells obtain energy in the form of adenosine triphosphate from the controlled reaction of hydrogen with O_2 to form water.[4] Thus, in its broadest sense, respiratory monitoring refers to the continuous or periodic assessment of processes involved with the exchange of respiratory gases between the environment and the subcellular pathways where those gases are utilized and produced (Fig. 41.1).[4]

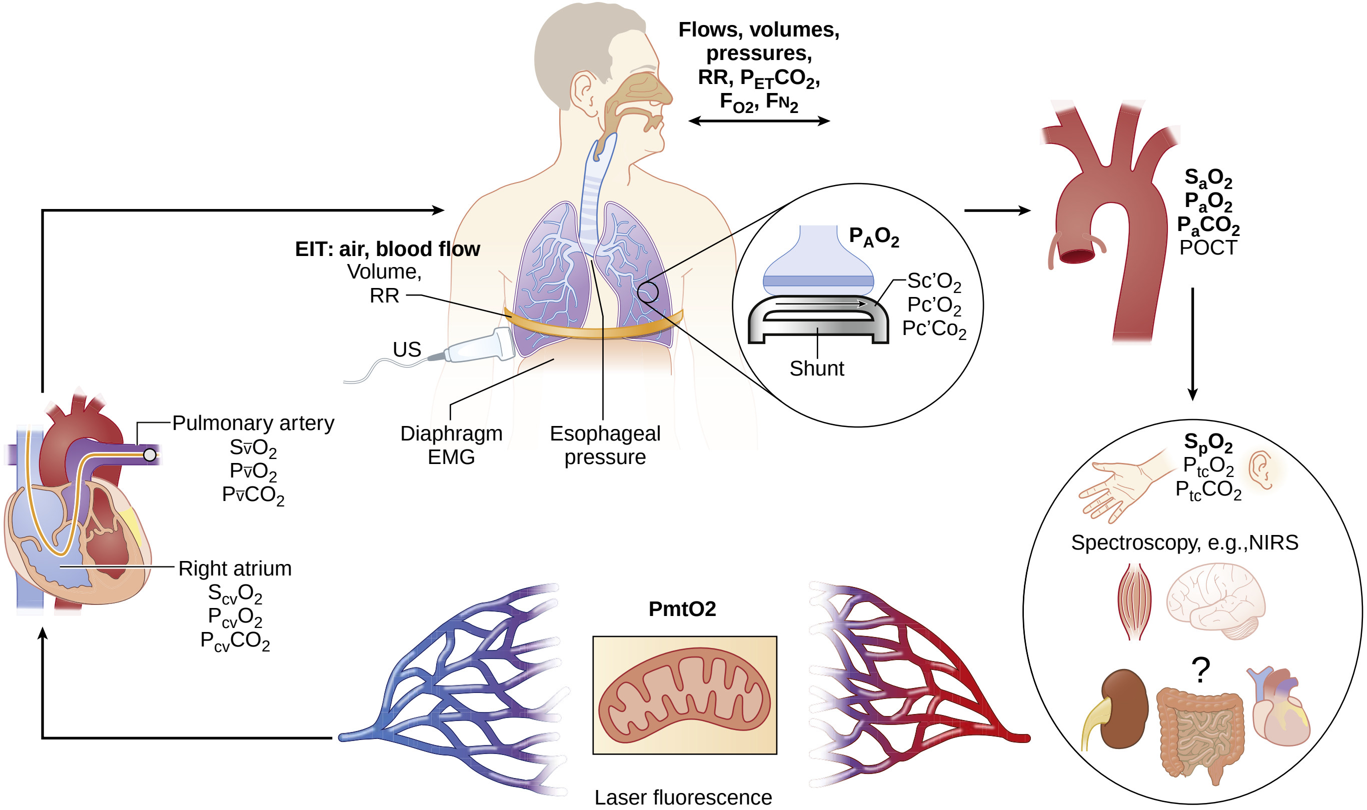


Fig. 41.1 Respiratory Processes and Measurement Sites for Current Respiratory Monitoring Techniques. Most monitored variables are derived from sites at the entrance of the airway and systemic blood (bold) and assess the elements of respiration related to global pulmonary mechanics and gas exchange. Pulse oximetry represents a transition between systemic and local tissue oxygenation assessment. Methods for routine and reliable clinical monitoring of respiratory processes at the tissue, cellular, and subcellular levels are limited. *EMG,* Electromyography; *EIT*, electrical impedance tomography; FN_2, nitrogen fraction; F_{O2}, oxygen fraction; *NIRS*, near-infrared spectroscopy; P_aCO_2, arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide; P_aO_2, arterial partial pressure of oxygen; P_AO_2, alveolar partial pressure of oxygen; $Pc'Co_2$, end-capillary partial pressure of carbon dioxide; $Pc'O_2$, end-capillary partial pressure of oxygen; $P_{CV}CO_2$, central venous partial pressure of carbon dioxide; $P_{CV}O_2$, central venous partial pressure of oxygen; $P_{ET}CO_2$, end-tidal partial pressure of carbon dioxide;   , mixed venous partial pressure of carbon dioxide; , mixed venous partial pressure of oxygen; *POCT,* point of care testing; $P_{tc}Co_2$, transcutaneous partial pressure of carbon dioxide; $P_{tc}O_2$, transcutaneous partial pressure of oxygen; *RR,* respiratory rate; S_aO_2, arterial oxygen saturation; $S_c'O_2$, end-capillary oxygen saturation; $S_{CV}O_2$, central venous oxygen saturation; $S\bar{v}O_2$, mixed venous oxygen saturation; S_pO_2, peripheral oxygen saturation; *US,* ultrasound.

Respiratory monitoring includes assessment of (1) convective and diffusive gas transport through the branching airway tree and alveoli, (2) equilibration of gases between alveoli and pulmonary capillary blood, (3) mass balance of the distinct regional ventilation and perfusion contributions to produce expired gases and arterial and mixed venous blood, (4) gas transport between the blood and body tissues through the microcirculation, (5) gas diffusion between tissues and mitochondria, and (6) cellular respiration with O_2 use and CO_2 production.

Advances in physiologic measurements have enhanced our understanding of these stages of respiratory function during anesthesia. This chapter provides an overview of current and emerging techniques of respiratory monitoring. Despite these technical advancements, current instrumentation is limited in providing accurate and comprehensive information on respiratory function in anesthetized and critically ill patients. The area is therefore rich for research to advance the monitoring of all components of respiration.[5,6]

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF ANESTHESIOLOGISTS STANDARDS

The word *monitoring* is often associated with electronic instrumentation, and it is noteworthy that the current American Society of Anesthesiologists' (ASA) Standards for Basic Anesthetic Monitoring states in Standard I that "Qualified anesthesia personnel shall be present in the room throughout the conduct of all general anesthetics, regional anesthetics, and monitored anesthesia care" (Box 41.1). This precedes reliance on any instrumentation (as implied in Standard II), and clearly indicates that the anesthesia provider brings essential expertise and interpretation to monitoring beyond information provided by equipment. Increased safety in our specialty lies primarily in high-quality training and environments that encourage continuing education, and not exclusively on new technology.[7] The ASA Standards for Basic Anesthetic Monitoring reflect monitoring principles during anesthesia established in the 1980s[3] and should be systematically followed. The

BOX 41.1 American Society of Anesthesiologists Standards for Basic Anesthetic Monitoring Related to Respiratory Monitoring

Standard I

Qualified anesthesia personnel shall be present in the room throughout the conduct of all general anesthetics, regional anesthetics, and monitored anesthesia care.

Standard II

During all anesthetics, the patient's oxygenation, ventilation, circulation, and temperature shall be continually[†] evaluated.

Oxygenation

Objective: To ensure adequate oxygen concentration in the inspired gas and the blood during all anesthetics.

Methods

Inspired gas: During every administration of general anesthesia using an anesthesia machine, the concentration of oxygen in the patient breathing system shall be measured by an oxygen analyzer with a low oxygen concentration limit alarm in use.[*]

Blood oxygenation: During all anesthetics, a quantitative method of assessing oxygenation such as pulse oximetry will be employed.[*] When the pulse oximeter is utilized, the variable pitch pulse tone and the low threshold alarm will be audible to the anesthesiologist or the anesthesia care team personnel.[*] Adequate illumination and exposure of the patient are necessary to assess color.[*]

Ventilation

Objective: To ensure adequate ventilation of the patient during all anesthetics.

Methods

Every patient receiving general anesthesia will have the adequacy of ventilation continually evaluated. Qualitative clinical signs such as chest excursion, observation of the reservoir breathing bag and auscultation of breath sounds are useful. Continual monitoring for the presence of expired carbon dioxide will be performed unless invalidated by the nature of the patient, procedure, or equipment. Quantitative monitoring of the volume of expired gas is strongly encouraged.[*]

When an endotracheal tube or laryngeal mask is inserted, its correct positioning must be verified by clinical assessment and by identification of carbon dioxide in the expired gas. Continual end-tidal carbon dioxide analysis, in use from the time of endotracheal tube/laryngeal mask placement, until extubation/removal or initiating transfer to a postoperative care location, will be performed using a quantitative method such as capnography, capnometry, or mass spectroscopy.[*] When capnography or capnometry is utilized, the end tidal CO_2 alarm will be audible to the anesthesiologist or the anesthesia care team personnel.[†]

When ventilation is controlled by a mechanical ventilator, there will be in continuous use a device that is capable of detecting disconnection of components of the breathing system. The device must give an audible signal when its alarm threshold is exceeded.

During regional anesthesia (with no sedation) or local anesthesia (with no sedation), the adequacy of ventilation will be evaluated by continual observation of qualitative clinical signs. During moderate or deep sedation the adequacy of ventilation will be evaluated by continual observation of qualitative clinical signs and monitoring for the presence of exhaled carbon dioxide unless precluded or invalidated by the nature of the patient, procedure, or equipment.

[†] Note that "continual" is defined as "repeated regularly and frequently in steady rapid succession" whereas "continuous" means "prolonged without any interruption at any time."

[*] Under extenuating circumstances, the responsible anesthesiologist may waive the requirements marked with an asterisk (*); it is recommended that when this is done, it should be so stated (including the reasons) in a note in the patient's medical record.

standards represent a foundation to additional monitoring according to clinical requirements.

The Physical Examination

Physical examination remains an essential component of perioperative respiratory monitoring. It provides essential information for diagnosis and treatment, and may be the first indication of changes in patient status requiring intervention. Physical examination has limitations, but it routinely allows for detection of information relevant for the management of the patient.

Respiratory monitoring starts with inspection of the patient, either awake or during anesthesia. In elective cases, the anesthesiologist will have time to investigate causes for abnormal presentations. In emergent situations, careful inspection may be the only source of information for timely and accurate anesthetic management. The observation of respiratory distress should prompt immediate search for specific causes. Assessment of the respiratory rate provides a measure of the breathing pattern. For example, during sepsis, respiratory rate is significantly correlated with disease severity.[8] Anatomic signs relevant to respiration include (but are not limited to) deformities of the chest wall and spine, goiter, tracheostomy scar, and tracheal deviation. Functional elements to be noticed include the components of inspiration and expiration (diaphragmatic versus thoracic), duration and difficulty of inspiration and expiration, paradoxical chest wall motion, use of accessory muscles, central and peripheral cyanosis, pallor, wheezing, stridor, cough and sputum, aphonia, splinting, and clubbed fingers. Neck vein distension should be examined for a potential cardiovascular contribution to respiratory distress, noting that it is a less reliable indicator of central venous pressure during significant dyspnea. Attention should be paid to painful respiration in trauma patients, as well as the possibility of flail chest, pericardial tamponade, hemothorax, pneumothorax, pulmonary contusion, and tension pneumothorax.

Auscultation of the lung during anesthesia is another essential skill in physical diagnosis. Ambient noise, individual hearing limitations, and the acoustic properties of the stethoscope all influence the anesthesiologist's clinical judgment. A stethoscope of sufficient quality will allow for identification of distinctive normal and abnormal breath sounds: vesicular sounds, ronchi, wheezes, fine and coarse crackles, inspiratory stridor, and pleural friction. A clear understanding of the acoustic mechanisms for each of these sounds is essential for adequate clinical assessment.[9,10]

Pulse Oximetry

PHYSIOLOGIC FUNDAMENTALS

The primary role of the cardiorespiratory system is the transport of O_2 and CO_2 throughout the body. O_2 delivery is quantified as the product of arterial O_2 content and cardiac output (see Chapter 13, "Respiratory Physiology and Pathophysiology"). Arterial O_2 content (C_aO_2, in mL of O_2 per 100 mL of blood [hemoglobin—Hb], mL/100 mL) is calculated as

$$C_aO_2 = (1.34 \times S_aO_2 \times Hb) + 0.0031 \times P_aO_2 \quad (41.1)$$

where 1.34 mL/g is the O_2 binding capacity of Hb (i.e., Hüfner constant, theoretically equal to 1.39 mL/g but experimental range between 1.31 and 1.37 mL/g because of the presence of small amounts of other Hb species[11]); S_aO_2 is the O_2 saturation of Hb in the arterial blood (percent saturation/100); Hb is the concentration of Hb in the arterial blood (g/dL); 0.0031 is the solubility of O_2 in blood (mL/100 mL/mm Hg); and P_aO_2 is the arterial partial pressure of O_2 (mm Hg). As can be inferred from Eq. (41.1), S_aO_2 and Hb are the major determinants of O_2 content in the blood and consequently O_2 delivery to the tissues.

Five species of Hb are found in adult blood: oxygenated Hb (O_2Hb), deoxygenated Hb (deO_2Hb); carboxyhemoglobin (COHb); methemoglobin (MetHb); and sulfhemoglobin (SHb). Under normal circumstances, the concentrations of COHb, MetHb, and SHb are small (1%-3% for COHb and less than 1% for MetHb and SHb). *Functional* O_2 saturation (S_aO_2) refers to the amount of O_2Hb as a fraction of the total amount of O_2Hb and deO_2Hb and is expressed as

$$\text{Functional } S_aO_2 = \frac{[O_2Hb]}{[O_2Hb] + [deO_2Hb]} \times 100\,\% \quad (41.2)$$

The O_2Hb fraction or *fractional* saturation is defined as the amount of O_2Hb as a fraction of the total amount of Hb[12]:

$$\text{Fractional } S_aO_2 = \frac{[O_2Hb]}{[O_2Hb] + [deO_2Hb] + [COHb] + [MetHb] + [SHb]} \times 100\,\% \quad (41.3)$$

S_aO_2 is a function of the P_aO_2. The relationship between the two is described by the O_2Hb dissociation curve (Fig. 41.2). As can be appreciated by inspection of the curve, the relationship is not linear. This has important consequences. First, a high S_aO_2 cannot discriminate between normoxic and hyperoxic conditions; this can be relevant when attempting to limit O_2 exposure in neonates or patients at risk for O_2 toxicity. Second, a large numeric change in P_aO_2 at the flat portion of the curve (P_aO_2 approximately above 70 mm Hg) has relatively small consequences in terms of blood O_2 content. Furthermore, changes in temperature, pH, P_aCO_2, and erythrocyte 2,3-diphosphoglycerate concentration can shift the curve such that the same S_aO_2 can be present under a range of different oxygen partial pressures (PO_2). This may be relevant, given that diffusion from the microcirculation to tissue depends on PO_2 gradients.

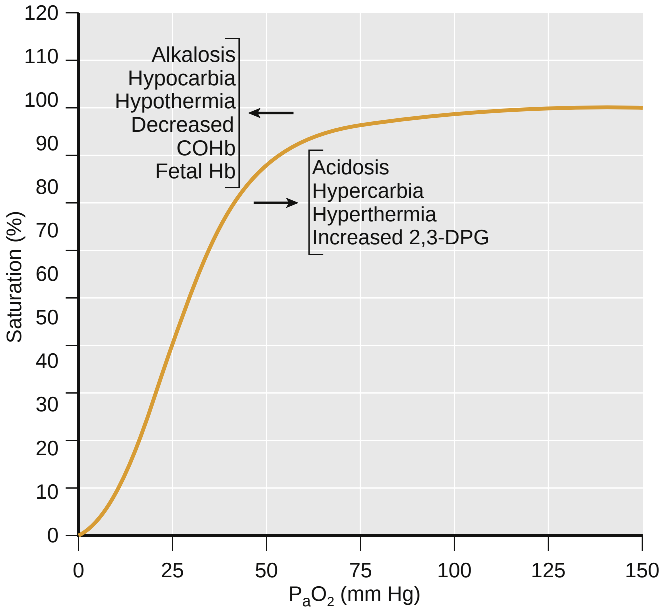


Fig. 41.2 Oxyhemoglobin Dissociation Curve. The relationship between oxyhemoglobin saturation and arterial partial pressure of oxygen is nonlinear and affected by a number of different factors such as pH, PCO_2, and temperature. Given the nonlinear nature of the curve, it is difficult to determine the partial pressure of oxygen at the higher range of oxygen saturations. *2,3-DPG,* 2,3-diphospoglycerate; *COHb*, carboxyhemoglobin. (Redrawn from Longnecker DE, Brown DL, Newman MF, Zapol WM, eds. *Anesthesiology.* 2nd ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill; 2012.)

MEASUREMENT PRINCIPLES

Oximetry

Oximetry is the measurement of the O_2 saturation of Hb. It is an application of the Beer-Lambert law (Eq. 41.4), which relates the transmission of light through a solution to the concentration of the solute in the solution.[13] For each solute in a solution,

$$I_{trans} = I_{in} e^{-DC\varepsilon} \quad (41.4)$$

where I_{trans} is the intensity of transmitted light, I_{in} is the intensity of the incident light, e is the base of the natural logarithm, D is the distance the light is transmitted through the solution, C is the concentration of the solute, and ε is the extinction coefficient of the solute.

The concentration of a single solute in solution can be calculated by measuring the amount of light transmitted through the solution as long as the other variables are known. For a solution containing multiple solutes, the calculation of the concentrations of the different solutes requires that light absorption be measured at a number of different wavelengths at least equal to the number of solutes. In a sample of blood in a cuvette, the absorption of a given wavelength of light passing through the blood will depend on the concentrations of the different species of Hb. Fig. 41.3*A* illustrates the absorption spectra of the five species of Hb for wavelengths of light along the visible spectrum. To measure the concentrations of all five species of Hb in a sample of blood, light absorption of at least five different wavelengths must be measured. This measurement is typically conducted using a co-oximeter. A co-oximeter uses the principle of oximetry to measure the S_aO_2 as well as the concentrations of other Hb species in a blood sample.

Co-oximetry is considered the gold standard for S_aO_2 measurements and is relied on in circumstances when pulse oximetry readings are inaccurate or unobtainable.

Pulse Oximetry

Standard pulse oximetry aims to provide a noninvasive, in vivo, and continuous assessment of functional S_aO_2. Estimates of S_aO_2 based on pulse oximetry are denoted as S_pO_2. The history of the development of the pulse oximetry has been reviewed in detail elsewhere.[14]

Pulse oximetry takes advantage of the pulsatility of arterial blood flow to provide an estimate of S_aO_2 by differentiating light absorption by arterial blood from light absorption by other components. When compared with in vitro oximetry of an arterial blood sample, the challenge of obtaining arterial O_2 saturation in vivo is to ensure that the light is sampling arterial blood and to account for its absorption by other tissues. As illustrated in Fig. 41.4, light absorption by tissue can be divided into a time-varying (pulsatile) component, historically referred to as "AC" (from "alternating current"), and a steady (nonpulsatile) component, referred to as "DC" ("direct current"). In conventional pulse oximetry, the ratio (R) of AC and DC light absorption at two different wavelengths is calculated. The wavelengths of light are selected to maximize the difference between the ratios of the absorbances of O_2Hb and deO_2Hb (see Fig. 41.3*B*). The most commonly used wavelengths of light are 660 nm and 940 nm. At 660 nm, there is greater light absorption by deO_2Hb than by O_2Hb. At 940 nm, there is greater light absorption by O_2Hb than by deO_2Hb,

$$R = \frac{AC_{660}/DC_{660}}{AC_{940}/DC_{940}} \qquad (41.5)$$

where AC_{660}, AC_{940}, DC_{660}, and DC_{940} denote the corresponding AC and DC components of the 640-nm and 940-nm wavelengths.

The ratio R is then empirically related to O_2 saturation based on a calibration curve internal to each pulse oximeter (Fig. 41.5).[13] Each manufacturer develops its own calibration curve by having volunteers breathe hypoxic gas mixtures to create a range of S_aO_2 values between 70% and 100%. The FDA

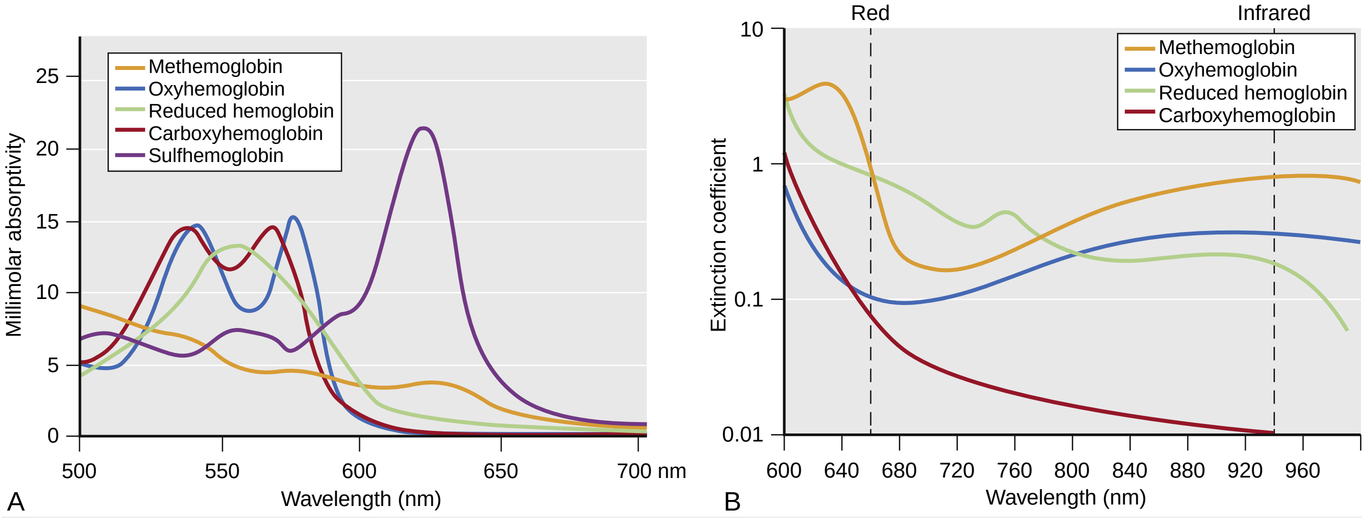


Fig. 41.3 (A) Absorption spectra of five species of hemoglobin for wavelengths of light across the visible spectrum. (B) Extinction coefficients of the most frequently measured hemoglobin species extending to infrared wavelengths used for pulse oximetry. The vertical lines indicate specific wavelengths for red and infrared light applied in pulse oximeters. The differences in the extinction coefficients of oxyhemoglobin and reduced hemoglobin (deoxygenated hemoglobin) are pronounced at these wavelengths. Note that the extinction coefficients of carboxyhemoglobin and methemoglobin are similar to those of oxyhemoglobin and reduced hemoglobin, respectively, at 660 nm. ([A] Redrawn from Zwart A, van Kampen EJ, Zijlstram WG. Results of routine determination of clinically significant hemoglobin derivatives by multicompartment analysis. *Clin Chem*. 1986;32:972–978. [B] Modified from Tremper KK, Barker SJ. Pulse oximetry. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:98–108.)

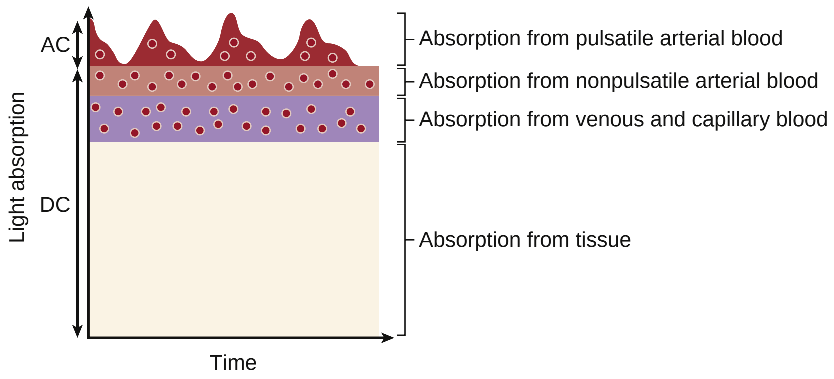

AC
DC
Light absorption
Time
Absorption from pulsatile arterial blood
Absorption from nonpulsatile arterial blood
Absorption from venous and capillary blood
Absorption from tissue

Fig. 41.4 Schematic of the Pulse Principle. Absorption of light passing through tissue is characterized by a pulsatile component (AC) and a nonpulsatile component (DC). The pulsatile component of absorption is due to arterial blood. The nonpulsatile component is due to venous blood and the remainder of the tissues. (Redrawn from Severinghaus JW. Nomenclature of oxygen saturation. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 1994;345:921–923)

recommends root mean square differences between measured values (S_pO_2) and reference values (S_aO_2) under normal conditions ranging from 70% to 100% S_pO_2 of ≤3.0% for transmittance, wrap and clip pulse oximeter sensors and of ≤3.5% for ear clip and reflectance sensors.[14a] Most manufacturing literature reports an accuracy of ± 2% to 3% S_pO_2 over this range.[15] The dependence of S_pO_2 on pulsatility may result in inaccurate estimates of S_aO_2 when pulsatility is reduced or absent.

A pulse oximeter probe is composed of a light emitter and a photodetector. Transmission pulse oximetry involves the placement of the emitter and detector on opposite sides of the tissue being measured, usually of a finger. Reflectance pulse oximetry probes have the emitters and detector arranged on the same side. They are typically placed on the forehead. In a typical pulse oximeter, two light-emitting diodes (LEDs) are used to emit light at the two wavelengths. During operation, each LED is turned on and off in sequence. The photodetector measures transmission of light from each LED. When both LEDs are turned off, the photodetector measures ambient light and subtracts it from the signals obtained throughout the remainder of the cycle.[16]

Pulse oximetry has been an integral component of intraoperative anesthetic management since the first anesthetic monitoring standards were introduced in 1986.[3] It was adopted as a minimum monitoring standard by the ASA the same year and has subsequently been defined as a minimum standard for intraoperative monitoring by the World Federation of Societies of Anaesthesiologists and the World Health Organization (WHO).[17] The use of pulse oximetry is a part of the WHO safe surgery checklist.[18]

Multiwavelength pulse oximeters—that is, pulse oximeters with additional wavelengths of light to allow for the continuous noninvasive measurement of total hemoglobin concentration (S_pHb)[19]—as well as concentrations of MetHb and COHb utilizing up to 12 wavelengths have been developed.[20-21] S_pHb in the surgical and intensive care unit (ICU) settings has shown reasonable bias and precision when compared with laboratory measurements.[22-24] However, few of the measurements were obtained in patients with Hb concentrations within the clinically relevant range of 6 to 10 mg/dL.[25] Another limitation of S_pHb may be its absent or unreliable signal under conditions of low peripheral perfusion.[26] To date, noninvasive COHb measurements have not shown enough precision to replace laboratory measurements.[26,27] Accuracy has improved at hypoxic O_2 levels, but detecting COHb for S_aO_2 less than 87% is still unreliable.[28,29] Pulse oximetry-based MetHb measurements with a newer device are accurate, even under conditions of hypoxia.[30]

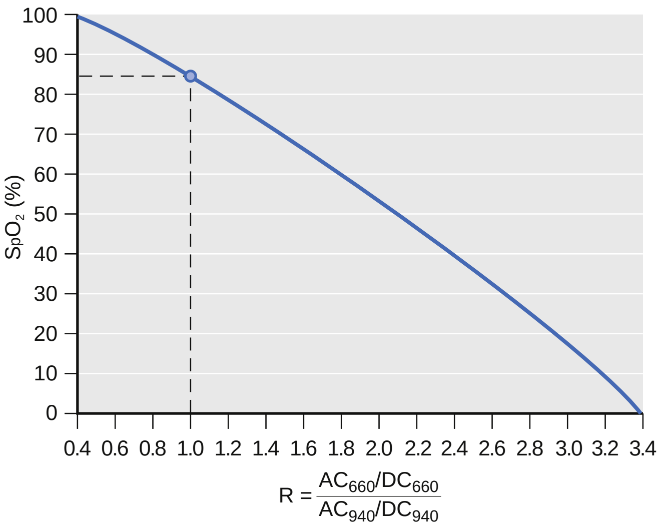


Fig. 41.5 Typical Pulse Oximeter Calibration Curve Relating Oxygen Saturation to the R Value. These curves are developed using healthy volunteers and incorporated into the pulse oximeter. *R*, Ratio of AC and DC light absorption; *S_pO_2*, peripheral oxygen saturation. [Tremper KK and Barker SJ. Pulse Oximetry. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:90-108.]

Universal pulse oximetry has been recommended by the US Secretary of Health and Human Services to screen newborns for critical congenital heart disease.[31,32] Use of a clinical algorithm based on detection of S_pO_2 lower than 95% in either right upper or lower limbs, or more than a 2% difference led to a sensitivity of 75% in suspected cases and 58% in cases that were not suspected. When this modality is combined with a routine anomaly scan and newborn physical examination screening, 92% of critical congenital heart disease lesions can be identified.[33,34]

Photoplethysmography. Along with measuring O_2 saturation, the pulse oximeter can also be used as a photoplethysmograph. Because the absorption of light is proportional to the amount of blood between the transmitter and photodetector, changes in the blood volume are reflected in the pulse oximeter trace (Fig. 41.6).[35] During anesthesia, the plethysmographic trace is affected by changes in blood volume pulsations, which depends on the distensibility of the vessel wall, as well as on the intravascular pulse pressure.[35] Variations in the amplitude of the pulse oximetry plethysmographic waveform (ΔPOP) have been shown to predict fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated patients.[36] An index derived from the percent difference between the maximum and minimum amplitudes of the plethysmographic waveform during a respiratory cycle (PVI, Pleth Variability Index) has been incorporated into a commercially available pulse oximeter and used to quantify ΔPOP and predict fluid responsiveness.[37,38] A number of studies have shown it to be a reasonably reliable indicator of fluid responsiveness perioperatively and in critically ill patients.[39,40] The technique does have greater reliability in mechanically ventilated patients compared with spontaneously breathing patients, but its accuracy may be compromised by the presence of cardiac arrhythmias.[39] Its accuracy has also been shown to be better for 500 mL fluid challenges compared with 250 mL.[41] Goal-directed fluid management based on PVI has been shown to improve outcomes in major abdominal surgery.[42]

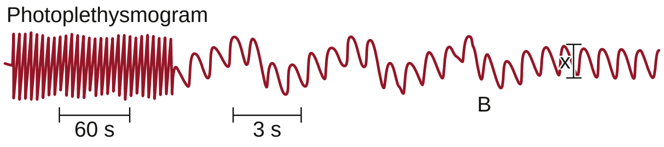


Fig. 41.6 Photoplethysmograph Recorded at Two Speeds Demonstrating Respiratory Variation. At time point (B) ventilation has been stopped, and no variation is observed. The plot illustrates the effect of intrathoracic blood volume in the pulse oximeter trace. The variation in the trace with respiration is associated with the fluid responsiveness of the patient. (Redrawn from Dorlas JC, Nijboer JA. Photo-electric plethysmography as a monitoring device in anaesthesia. Application and interpretation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:524–530.)

LIMITATIONS AND SOURCES OF ERROR

S_pO_2 is an estimate of S_aO_2 of circulating hemoglobin. As a consequence, it does not provide information about *tissue* oxygenation. Because S_pO_2 is a measurement of functional and not fractional S_aO_2, the presence of other Hb variants can significantly affect its accuracy. The nonlinearity of the Hb dissociation curve prevents the detection of hyperoxia with S_pO_2 for high S_aO_2, whereas for low saturations such as at altitude, small changes in P_aO_2 can produce large changes in S_pO_2. There is significant variability in the actual in vivo Hb dissociation curve.[43] Thus changes in S_pO_2 are not necessarily well correlated with changes in S_aO_2.[44,45] These measurements illustrate that knowledge of the individual Hb dissociation curve is important for correct interpretation of S_aO_2 and P_aO_2. More importantly, pulse oximetry does not provide information about ventilation or acid-base status.

A number of conditions can lead to inaccuracies in pulse oximeter readings (Table 41.1). These conditions include decreased perfusion, motion artifact, venous pulsation, low S_aO_2, variant Hb species, the presence of intravascular dyes, and the presence of nail polish.

Despite the recommendations of numerous boards and guidelines, there is no evidence that the use of pulse oximetry improves patient outcomes, not during transfers to ICUs nor in terms of improving patient mortality.[45a,b] There is evidence that pulse oximetry reduces the incidence of hypoxemia,[45a] and the duration and cost of ICU stay, suggesting it allows for early intervention.[45c]

The calibration of pulse oximeters is based on curves obtained in normal individuals under experimental conditions with S_aO_2 as low as 70%. As such, pulse oximeters have limited accuracy for S_aO_2 values less than 70%. Moreover, systematic errors in S_pO_2 tend to increase as S_aO_2 falls below 90%.[46] At S_aO_2 levels under 70%, a positive or negative bias of the S_pO_2 value can be observed, depending on the manufacturer of the pulse oximeter.[47] Manufacturers have developed pulse oximeters with increased accuracy at saturations as low as 60%. Preliminary data suggest that these probes may be useful in neonates with cyanotic congenital heart disease.[48]

Hypoperfusion leads to a reduction in the amplitude of the pulsatile component of the light absorbance waveform, the essential signal for pulse oximetry, consequently giving rise to absent or inaccurate readings. Significantly erroneous reductions in S_pO_2 may be observed for systolic blood pressures lower than 80 mm Hg.[49] Motion artifact can produce considerable error in the pulse oximeter reading. Manufacturers have developed advanced proprietary signal processing algorithms that effectively filter out noise caused by motion.[50,51]

With continued clinical use, the performance of the LEDs in the probe may be degraded, leading to inaccuracy in the S_pO_2 value outside of the range specified by the manufacturer. These inaccuracies are expected to be more pronounced at lower saturations (i.e., <90%).[15]

Venous pulsations may result in the detection of venous O_2Hb saturation by the pulse oximeter, resulting in artifactual reduction of the presumed arterial S_pO_2 being measured. Venous pulsations can be due to excessively tight placement of adhesive finger probes, severe tricuspid regurgitation, probe placement in dependent positions (e.g., forehead during Trendelenburg position), and possibly in distributive shock when vasodilation may result in physiologic arteriovenous shunting.[18,19,52]

TABLE 41.1 Potential Sources of Artifacts in Pulse Oximetry and Their Effects on Measurements

Source of Error	Effect on S_pO_2 Relative to S_aO_2
Hypotension	↓
Anemia	↓
Polycythemia	No significant effect
Motion	↓
Low S_aO_2	variable
Methemoglobinemia	↓/↑ (S_pO_2 approaches 85%)
Carboxyhemoglobinemia	↑
Cyanmethemoglobin	No significant effect
Sulfhemoglobin	No significant effect
Hemoglobin F	No significant effect
Hemoglobin H	No significant effect
Hemoglobin K	↓
Hemoglobin S	No significant effect
Methylene blue	↓
Indigo carmine	↓
Indocyanine green	↓
Isosulfan blue	No significant effect/↓
Fluorescein	No significant effect
Nail polish	Black, dark blue, purple ↓
Acrylic fingernails	No significant effect
Henna	Red—No significant effect ↓
Skin pigmentation	At S_aO_2 >80%, no significant effect At S_aO_2 <80%, ↑
Jaundice	No significant effect
Ambient light	No significant effect
Sensor contact	↓
IABP	↑

IABP, Intraaortic balloon pump; *S_aO_2*, arterial oxygen saturation; *S_pO_2*, peripheral oxygen saturation.

The presence of additional species of Hb can also generate erroneous pulse oximeter readings. As outlined earlier, the function of the pulse oximeter is predicated on the assumption that the only components present in the blood capable of absorbing light at the two wavelengths used are O_2Hb and deO_2Hb. Under normal circumstances, this assumption is valid, and the S_pO_2 readings accurately reflect the S_aO_2. However, the presence of significant concentrations of other Hb species or substances absorbing light at the used wavelengths will lead to erroneous S_pO_2 readings. As illustrated in Fig. 41.3, both COHb and MetHb absorb light at one or both of the wavelengths used by the pulse oximeter. Accordingly, the presence of these Hb species will produce errors in S_pO_2. The absorption of light at 660 nm by COHb is similar to that of O_2Hb. At 940 nm, COHb absorbs virtually no light. Thus, in a patient with carbon monoxide poisoning, the S_pO_2 will be falsely elevated.[53] MetHb absorbs a significant amount of light at both 660 nm and 940 nm. As a result, in its presence, the ratio of light absorption R (Eq. 41.5) approaches unity. An R-value of 1 represents the presence of equal concentrations of O_2Hb and deO_2Hb and corresponds to an S_pO_2 of 85%. Thus, in a patient with methemoglobinemia, the S_pO_2 will be 80% to 85%, irrespective of the S_aO_2.[54] SHb absorbs red light (660 nm) more than deoxyhemoglobin (HHb) or MetHb, and likely as much near the infrared spectrum.[52] This results in S_pO_2 values close to 85% in severe cases of sulfhemoglobinemia. Although newer generations of co-oximeters can detect SHb, most existing co-oximeters cannot; consequently, additional clinical laboratory testing may be required if sulfhemoglobinemia is suspected.[52]

With normal S_aO_2, anemia has little effect on S_pO_2.[55] However, in the presence of hypoxia, S_pO_2 readings underestimate S_aO_2 in anemic patients with true hypoxemia.[56] Pulse oximeters are sufficiently accurate in adult patients with sickle cell disease,[57] as well as in the presence of fetal Hb.[58] However caution is warranted when using pulse oximetry in patients with sickle cell disease, because heme metabolism may result in elevated COHb.[52] Some studies also suggest that S_pO_2 may overestimate S_aO_2 during vaso-occlusive crises.[59,60] Another relevant point is that in patients with sickle cell disease, the affinity of O_2 for Hb is normal under normoxic conditions but becomes low during hypoxia.

A relatively uncommon cause for reduced S_pO_2 readings is the presence of congenital variants of Hb. Some variants, such as Hb Bassett, Hb Rothschild, and Hb Canabiere, have a reduced affinity for O_2, and changes in S_pO_2 appropriately reflect changes in S_aO_2.[61] Other variants, such as Hb Lansing, Hb Bonn, Hb Koln, Hb Cheverly, and Hb Hammersmith, have altered absorption spectra (closer to HHb) that result in low S_pO_2 readings in the setting of normal S_aO_2.[61]

The administration of intravenous dyes can result in inaccurate S_pO_2 readings. Methylene blue leads to a transient, marked decrease in S_pO_2 down to 65% due to its peak light absorption at 668 nm, which is very close to that of HHb. Indigo carmine and indocyanine green also artificially decrease S_pO_2 measurements, although to a lesser extent than methylene blue, because they do not substantially absorb red light.[62] Isosulfan blue can produce a prolonged reduction at higher doses.[62]

Although all colors of nail polish can reduce the calculated value of S_pO_2, black, purple, and dark blue colors have the greatest effect. Nonetheless, the error generally remains within 2%.[63] Depending on the brand of pulse oximeter, artificial acrylic nails may impair S_pO_2 readings, although generally not to a clinically significant extent.[64] Under conditions of normal S_aO_2, skin pigmentation has no effect on S_pO_2 estimates.[65] However, increased skin pigmentation is associated with S_pO_2 values that overestimate S_aO_2 by as much as 8% for S_aO_2 less than 80%.[47,66]

In the presence of severe hyperbilirubinemia (30 mg/dL or greater) caused by increased hemolysis or liver disease, the fraction of oxygenated hemoglobin (FO_2Hb) may be falsely low by artifactual increase in MetHb and COHb, resulting in more accurate S_pO_2 than FO_2Hb measurements.[52] Although earlier case reports and small studies have suggested that ambient light may interfere with the accuracy of S_pO_2 readings,[67,68] a large prospective study found no significant effect on S_pO_2 accuracy with exposure to five types of light sources: quartz-halogen, incandescent, fluorescent, infant bilirubin lamp, and infrared.[69] Infrared light pulses from image guidance systems used for navigational neurosurgery can interfere with pulse oximetry readings by causing decreased readings or disruptions in S_pO_2 waveform detection.[70] Different pulse oximeters show variable susceptibility to such interference.[71] Shielding the probe with a single layer of aluminum foil can protect from this effect.[70,71] Misplacement of the probe can allow for direct detection of LED light by the photodetector. This optical shunt gives rise to an S_pO_2 reading of 85%.[72]

In patients with intraaortic balloon pump support, S_pO_2 accuracy depends on the brand of pulse oximeter used as well as the support ratio. Accuracy is generally reduced in the setting of higher support ratios.[73] In patients with continuous flow ventricular assist devices, pulse oximetry may not be possible because of the absence of pulsatile flow. In these cases, the use of cerebral oximetry as an adjunct is advocated.[74]

Pulse Oximeter Probes

Probes are usually applied to accessible body areas with high vascularity, such as the finger, nose, ear lobe, or forehead. The probes may be reusable or disposable. The advantages of reusable clip probes are that they are more cost-effective compared with disposable adhesive probes, can be rapidly applied, and are amenable to multiple applications in cases of low signal-to-noise ratio at the specified wavelengths. However, disposable probes allow for more secure placement (in case of patient movement) and provide the capability of monitor sites other than acral areas. Although reduced infectious transmission is a purported benefit of disposable probes, evidence is limited, and one must consider that pulse oximetry probes represent a small fraction of anesthetic equipment requiring decontamination.[75] Accordingly, different probe models may be advantageous in specific conditions. For instance, ear and forehead probes may be more reliable during vasoconstriction compared with finger probes, given that the arterial vessels of such regions are less responsive to circulating catecholamines. As an example, in hypotensive patients that require vasopressors, ear and forehead probes may provide more accurate value of S_pO_2, because these areas are less likely to vasoconstrict with endogenous and exogenous catecholamines compared to fingers or toes.[76,77] During hypothermia with secondary vasoconstriction, the forehead probe is more reliable compared with the finger probe.[78,79]

Emerging Techniques: Pulse spectroscopy is a new technique that utilizes hundreds of wavelengths to assess normal and dysfunctional hemoglobins. Initial results are promising with accurate S_pO_2 determinations, as well as COHb and MetHb assessment during normoxia and hypoxia.[80]

Mixed Venous Oxygen Saturation

PHYSIOLOGIC FUNDAMENTALS

Mixed venous oxygen saturation ($S\bar{v}O_2$) is the O_2 saturation of blood at the proximal pulmonary artery. It has been a frequently monitored variable in critically ill patients, since it reflects the average O_2 saturation of the blood returning from the body to the right heart, weighted by the respective regional blood flows. As such, it is a measure of the balance between global oxygen delivery (DO_2) and global oxygen uptake ($\dot{V}_{O_2}$), and a useful resuscitation target.[81] Factors that influence the $S\bar{v}O_2$ can be illustrated through a derivation of the mixed venous O_2 content equation.

$\dot{V}_{O_2}$ (mL/min) is defined as

$$\dot{V}_{O_2} = 10 \times \dot{Q}_T \times (C_aO_2 - C\bar{v}O_2) \qquad (41.6)$$

where $\dot{Q}_T$ is the cardiac output (L/min), and $C\bar{v}O_2$ is the O_2 content of the mixed venous blood (mL/100 mL).

Rearranging Eq. (41.6) to solve for $C\bar{v}O_2$ yields

$$C\bar{v}O_2 = C_aO_2 - \dot{V}_{O_2}/\dot{Q}_T \qquad (41.7)$$

The contribution of dissolved O_2 to the blood O_2 content is small. By expanding the definition of O_2 content (Eq. 41.1) and ignoring the term for dissolved O_2, Eq. (41.7) can be rewritten as

$$S\bar{v}O_2 = S_aO_2 - \dot{V}_{O_2}/(1.34 \cdot Hb \cdot Q_T) \qquad (41.8)$$

Normal values of $S\bar{v}O_2$ range between 65% and 80%.[82,83] Values close to 40% are associated with tissue hypoxia, anaerobic metabolism, and lactate production. $P\bar{v}O_2$ can be derived from $S\bar{v}O_2$ values by utilizing the O_2Hb dissociation curve adjusted to mixed-venous pH, PCO_2, and temperature (see Fig. 41.2). The normal value of $P\bar{v}O_2$ is 40 mm Hg.

DO_2 is defined as

$$DO_2 = Q_T \times C_aO_2 \qquad (41.9)$$

As is evident from Eq. (41.8), a low $S\bar{v}O_2$ indicates either a reduction in DO_2 secondary to low S_aO_2, low Hb, or low $\dot{Q}_T$, or an increase in $\dot{V}_{O_2}$. The association among $S\bar{v}O_2$, DO_2, and $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ can be illustrated by expressing $S\bar{v}O_2$ as a function of the O_2 extraction ratio, ERO_2.

$$ERO_2 = \dot{V}_{O_2}/DO_2 \qquad (41.10)$$

Expanding the terms yields

$$ERO_2 = 1 - C\bar{v}O_2/C_aO_2 \qquad (41.11)$$

Assuming that the O_2 dissolved in plasma is a negligible component to total O_2 content dissolved in the arterial or mixed venous blood, Eq. (41.11) can be rewritten as

$$ERO_2 = 1 - S\bar{v}O_2/S_aO_2 \qquad (41.12)$$

For conditions in which the arterial blood is fully saturated, Eq. (41.12) may be further simplified:

$$ERO_2 = 1 - S\bar{v}O_2 \qquad (41.13)$$

Solving for $S\bar{v}O_2$ yields

$$S\bar{v}O_2 = 1 - ERO_2 \qquad (41.14)$$

Thus a reduction in $S\bar{v}O_2$ results from an increase in ERO_2, from either an increased $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ or a decreased DO_2 (Fig. 41.7). A decrease in DO_2 occurs in conditions such as hemorrhagic or hypovolemic shock. An increase in $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ may occur in conditions such as stress, pain, shivering, sepsis, and thyrotoxicosis. Conversely, an increase in $S\bar{v}O_2$ indicates either an increase in O_2 supply (elevated S_aO_2, Hb, or $\dot{Q}_T$) or a reduction in $\dot{V}_{O_2}$, as occurs during hypothermia.

There are some subtle considerations in the interpretation of changes in $S\bar{v}O_2$. At PO_2 values typical of venous blood, small increases in the fraction of inspired oxygen (F_IO_2) can cause significant increases in $S\bar{v}O_2$ because of the shape of the O_2Hb dissociation curve (Fig. 41.2). Therefore, when $S\bar{v}O_2$ is tracked as a measure of cardiac function, changes in F_IO_2 must be taken into account during its interpretation.[84] In the setting of septic shock, impairment in O_2 extraction may yield normal $S\bar{v}O_2$ values, despite the presence of tissue hypoxia.

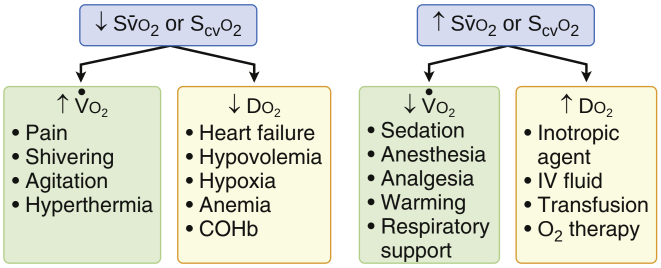


Fig. 41.7 Mixed venous saturation is a measure of the balance between global oxygen delivery and uptake. Conditions which increase $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ or decrease DO_2 will lead to a reduction in $S\bar{v}O_2$. Conversely, conditions which decrease $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ or improve DO_2 will lead to an increase in the $S\bar{v}O_2$. (Modified from Shepherd SJ, Pearse RM. Role of central and mixed venous oxygen saturation measurement in perioperative care. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:649–656.)

Direct measurement of $S\bar{v}O_2$ requires the insertion of a pulmonary artery catheter, a procedure associated with some morbidity. However, in most clinical situations, the O_2 saturation of a blood sample drawn from a central venous catheter will suffice. Thus the use of central venous saturation can be a surrogate for $S\bar{v}O_2$. The saturation of blood at the level of a central venous catheter placed in the superior vena cava ($S_{cv}O_2$) reflects the balance between O_2 supply and demand in the brain and upper extremities. Under normal physiologic conditions, $S_{CV}O_2$ is typically 2% to 5% less than $S\bar{v}O_2$, primarily because of the higher O_2 content of splanchnic and renal venous blood.[85] However, during hemodynamic instability, as circulation is redistributed to the upper body, the relationship between $S\bar{v}O_2$ and $S_{CV}O_2$ may reverse, and the difference between the two may increase significantly.[86-88] Although trends in $S_{CV}O_2$ may reflect those in $S\bar{v}O_2$, the two measures cannot be used interchangeably.[88-96]

Mixed venous CO_2 has been used to compute the arteriovenous CO_2 difference ($\Delta PCO_2 = P\bar{v}CO_2 - P_aCO_2$). In conditions of steady-state CO_2 production, ΔPCO_2 changes inversely and nonlinearly with cardiac output as a result of the Fick equation.[97] Accordingly, ΔPCO_2 is an indicator of the adequacy of cardiac output to provide adequate clearance of tissue CO_2. However, because of several limitations, the parameter has not yet found widespread clinical use.[97]

MEASUREMENT PRINCIPLES

The measurement of venous O2 saturation can be performed intermittently by co-oximetry of blood sampled from the distal tip of a pulmonary artery catheter ($S\bar{v}O_2$) or a central venous catheter ($S_{CV}O_2$). Falsely increased values can occur in the presence of a wedged pulmonary artery tip, mitral regurgitation, or left-to-right shunts.[98] Venous saturations can also be measured continuously by spectrophotometry using specialized fiberoptic catheters, which transmit infrared light and detect the amount of light reflected from red blood cells.[99,100] Specialized venous oximetry catheters are available for both pulmonary artery and central venous monitoring and have the advantage of providing continuous measurements of O_2 saturation. Their disadvantage is the cost. Although continuous venous oximetry catheters trend changes, their reported absolute values are not equivalent to concurrently obtained co-oximetry measurements.[101-103]

APPLICATIONS AND INTERPRETATION

In patients undergoing major abdominal or cardiac surgery, intraoperative reductions in $S\bar{v}O_2$ and $S_{CV}O_2$ have been associated with postoperative complications.[104-108] Protocol-based interventions that target specific values of $S\bar{v}O_2$ or $S_{CV}O_2$ have been shown to reduce the length of stay, organ dysfunction, and mortality in patients undergoing major surgery and patients presenting with sepsis.[109-111] Goal-directed therapy based on $S_{cv}O_2$ has been advocated for the management of sepsis, and the implementation of such protocols is associated with improvements in mortality.[112,113] The use of $S_{CV}O_2$ as a therapeutic endpoint remains controversial for several reasons: $S_{CV}O_2$ may be increased in sepsis because of impaired tissue O_2 extraction[114]; the increased cost associated with the use of $S_{CV}O_2$-measuring catheters[115]; and other measures, such as lactate clearance, are less costly while leading to similar outcomes.[116] Furthermore, the management of sepsis without an $S_{CV}O_2$ endpoint can yield equally favorable results.[115] The difference between $S\bar{v}O_2$ and $S_{CV}O_2$ has been proposed as a marker of complications after cardiac surgery.[117]

Tissue Oxygenation

Arterial and venous O_2 saturations are measures of DO_2 and uptake by the whole body. Although useful, these global measures do not provide information regarding organ or tissue oxygenation, which reflects the important local balance between O_2 supply and demand. Regional O_2 balance can differ both among organs as well as within regions of the same organ.[118] Current noninvasive methods for the assessment of microcirculatory oxygenation make use of reflectance spectroscopy using light either in the visible spectrum (VLS) or in the near-infrared spectrum (NIRS). A recent technique based on the protoporphyrin IX triplet state lifetime aims at the assessment of mitochondrial O_2 tension in vivo, and opens the prospect of future clinical monitoring (see Fig. 41.1).[119]

Reflectance spectroscopy probes have light emitters and receivers positioned in line (Fig. 41.8). When they are placed on a tissue surface, light transmission through the tissue is affected by reflection, absorption, and scatter. Reflection depends on the angle of incidence of the light beam and the wavelength of light, whereas scatter depends on the number and type of tissue interfaces. As previously outlined, the Beer-Lambert law relates the absorption of light by the tissue to the concentration of tissue chromophores, the extinction coefficient of each, and the pathlength of the light through the tissue.[120] The predominant tissue chromophore is hemoglobin. The pathlength of the light is affected by both reflection and scatter, so it cannot be measured directly, but rather must be estimated. Most of the detected photons travel in an arc between the two detectors (see Fig. 41.8). The depth of penetration of the arc into the tissue is proportional to the wavelength of light and the distance between the transmitter and detector.[120,121]

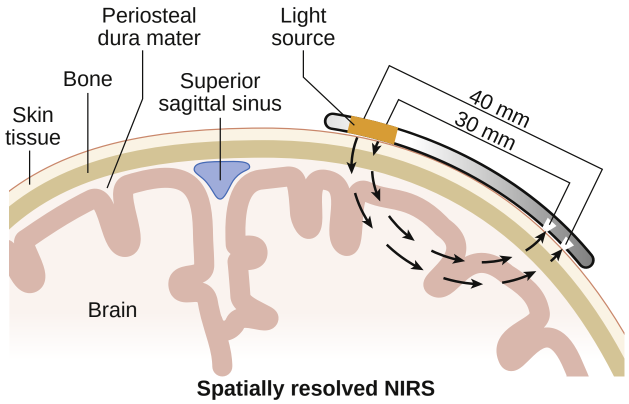


Fig. 41.8 Near Infrared Spectroscopy Applied to Cerebral Oximetry. In this case, a reflectance oximeter is placed on the forehead. Near infrared wavelength light is emitted from the light source and enters the underlying tissue. Light is scattered, reflected, and absorbed. Light that reaches the photodetector travels an arc-shaped path. The depth of the path is a function of the distance between the emitter and the detector. The measured value is the oxygen saturation of the tissue through which the light travels on its way to the detector. It is a primarily venous-weighted value. *NIRS*, Near infrared spectroscopy. (Redrawn from Casati A, Spreafico E, Putzu M, et al. New technology for noninvasive brain monitoring: continuous cerebral oximetry. *Minerva Anestesiol.* 2006;72:605–625.)

VLS makes use of white light with wavelengths of 500 to 800 nm, whereas NIRS employs light in the 700 to 1100 nm range.[122] In general, the depth of penetration of VLS is less than that of NIRS, thus allowing superficial measurements of up to 16 mm and making it suitable for measurements of small subsurface volumes. NIRS can penetrate tissue to a depth of several centimeters and allows sampling of a larger volume of tissue.[123] The O_2 saturation displayed is that of a volume of tissue. This volume includes arteries, capillaries, and veins, and has a predominantly venous weighting.[124]

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS

A number of applications have been described for VLS. Buccal microvascular Hb saturation has been associated with survival in patients with sepsis.[125] VLS has also been used for monitoring flap viability following reconstructive surgery.[126] During gastrointestinal and esophageal surgery, reductions in gastrointestinal tissue saturation, measured by VLS, have been associated with postoperative anastomotic complications.[127,128] Endoscopic VLS differentiates between normal and ischemic areas of colon,[129] and it may be useful for the diagnosis of mesenteric ischemia.[130] In addition, mucosal O_2 saturation of the gastric conduit following esophagectomy is useful and explores the benefits of ischemic preconditioning.[131]

The most widespread application of NIRS has been in cerebral oximetry,[118] with probes placed on the forehead to measure frontal cortical oxygenation (rSO_2). Several NIRS systems are commercially available, with each manufacturer offering a different specific technology. As there is no gold standard for cerebral oximetry, it is difficult to compare the accuracy of the devices. Furthermore, each device has its own set of "normal" values. For this reason, acquisition of baseline values for each patient at the start of the procedure has been recommended.[132] Typical values of rSO_2 range from 51% to 82% with a mean baseline of 66%.[133] A reduction of rSO_2 below 20% to 25% of the baseline, or lower than an absolute value of 50%, is a suggested threshold for intervention.[134,135]

The utility of cerebral oximetry has been explored in cardiovascular, abdominal, thoracic, and orthopedic surgery. In the cardiac surgical setting, intraoperative reductions in rSO_2 have been associated with early postoperative cognitive dysfunction and prolonged ICU and hospital lengths of stay.[135-138] Baseline rSO_2 measurements have been associated with 30-day mortality after left ventricular assist device surgery.[139] As a guide to therapy, interventions for rSO_2 reductions less than 75% of baseline in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery have been shown to significantly reduce the incidence of major organ morbidity and mortality, as well as ICU length of stay.[134]

During carotid endarterectomy, intraoperative reductions in rSO_2 correlate well with changes in transcranial Doppler measurements,[140-144] electroencephalographic waveforms,[145-147] and stump pressure[144,148,149], which are consistent with ischemia. Although some studies indicate that reductions in rSO_2 that are less than 20% of baseline are well tolerated, data are lacking for a clear rSO_2 threshold for carotid shunt placement.[150,151] NIRS has also been preliminarily used during and following ICU open thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm repair for continuous monitoring of spinal cord oxygenation[152].

In elderly patients undergoing major abdominal surgery, protocol-based intraoperative treatment of reductions in rSO_2 results in decreases in postoperative cognitive decline and hospital length of stay.[153] In patients undergoing thoracic surgical procedures with single-lung ventilation, early postoperative cognitive dysfunction is directly related to intraoperative exposure time to rSO_2 less than 65%.[154] Patients undergoing shoulder surgery in the beach chair position have a lower baseline rSO_2 and a larger number of episodes of cerebral desaturation, although the clinical implications of these findings are unclear.[155-157]

Shock is a condition in which patients may have inadequate *regional* perfusion in the setting of normal *global* perfusion parameters. In such circumstances, the use of NIRS to monitor tissue perfusion holds some promise. Values obtained by the application of an NIRS probe to the thenar eminence (S_tO_2) discriminate between healthy volunteers and patients with shock.[158] Furthermore, in patients with major trauma who present with shock, S_tO_2 values can identify patients who proceed to develop multiorgan dysfunction or actually die.[159,160]

Overall, available information is still limited to warrant clinical decision making exclusively based on NIRS measurements. Currently there is insufficient evidence to support the use of perioperative NIRS monitoring in adults to reduce short-term or mild postoperative cognitive dysfunction, postoperative stroke, delirium, or death.[161] Of note, in a 2015 retrospective study, patients who self-identified as African American had lower rSO_2 compared with those who self-identified as Caucasian, a finding attributed to light attenuation by skin pigmentation.[162] Further investigations are necessary to improve our understanding of NIRS and its relevance for clinical management.

Capnometry and Capnography

GENERAL CONCEPTS

The presence CO_2 in exhaled breath reflects the fundamental physiologic processes of ventilation, pulmonary blood flow, and aerobic metabolism. Its continued monitoring ensures the anesthesiologist of correct placement of an endotracheal tube (ETT) or laryngeal mask airway (LMA), as well as the integrity of a breathing circuit. Exhaled CO_2 provides information primarily on ventilation. It is also used to estimate the adequacy of cardiac output. In combination with P_aCO_2, exhaled CO_2 can be used to estimate the ratio of physiologic dead space (V_D) to tidal volume (V_T) by using the Bohr equation[163]:

$$\frac{V_D}{V_T} = \left(\frac{P_aCO_2 - P_{\bar{E}}CO_2}{P_aCO_2}\right) \qquad (41.15)$$

where $P_{\bar{E}}CO_2$ is the mixed expired CO_2 partial pressure, such as measured in exhaled air collected in a mixing bag chamber, or computed from a volumetric capnogram. The ability to detect and quantify CO_2 is a crucial component of respiratory monitoring in anesthesia and critical care medicine.

Considerable confusion arises from inconsistent and interchangeable terminology as applied to medical CO_2 gas analysis.[163-165] In a very general sense, *capnometry* refers to the measurement and quantification of inhaled or exhaled CO_2 concentrations at the airway opening. *Capnography*, however, refers not only to the method of CO_2 measurement, but also to its graphic display as a function of time or volume. A *capnometer* is simply a device that measures CO_2 concentrations. A capnometer may display a numeric value for inspired or exhaled CO_2. A *capnograph*, however, is a device that records and displays CO_2 concentrations, usually as a function of time. A *capnogram* refers to the graphic display that the capnograph generates. Fig. 41.9 illustrates a typical CO_2 concentration profile for three breaths as a function of time.

MEASUREMENT PRINCIPLES

Various methods exist for detecting and quantifying CO_2 concentrations in respiratory gases, such as mass spectrometry, Raman spectrometry, or gas chromatography.[166,167] The most commonly used method in clinical environments relies on nondispersive infrared absorption.[168] With this technique, a beam of infrared light is passed through a gas sample, and the resulting intensity of the transmitted light is measured by a photodetector.[164] Gaseous CO_2 absorbs light over a very narrow bandwidth centered around 4.26 µm. Its presence in the sample cell decreases the amount of infrared light at this wavelength that reaches the detector in proportion to its concentration. Because the absorption spectrum for CO_2 partially overlaps with the spectra of other gaseous species commonly encountered in anesthesia (i.e., water and nitrous oxide[169]), infrared filters and

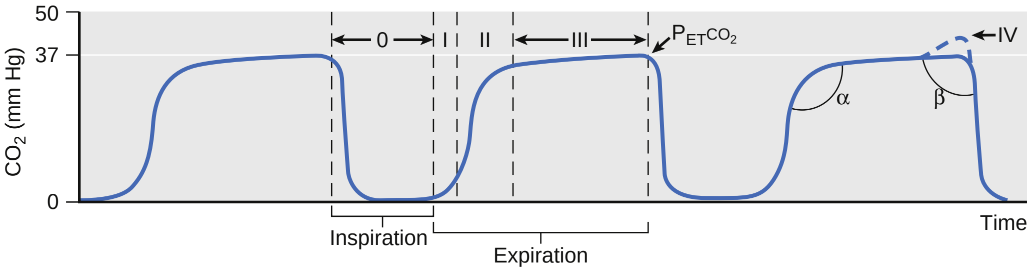


Fig. 41.9 Representative Time Capnogram for Three Breaths. The expiratory segment is divided into phases I, II, III, and IV. The inspiratory segment is referred to as phase 0 in this figure. α denotes the angle between phases II and III, whereas β denotes the angle between phase III and the descending limb of phase 0. Phase IV (*dashed line* in third breath) denotes the upstroke observed at the end of phase III in some patients. $P_{ET}CO_2$, Partial pressure of end-tidal carbon dioxide. (Courtesy Respironics, Inc., Murraysville, PA, with permission.)

compensation algorithms are used to minimize this interference and improve accuracy.[170]

Most capnometers rely on infrared-light source that is focused on a chopper disk that rotates at approximately 60 revolutions per second. The chopper allows the beam to be alternately directed through (1) the sample cell with the gas to be analyzed and (2) a reference cell with no detectable CO_2. In addition, the light source is completely blocked at various points during the revolution of the chopper disk. The photodetector and associated circuitry process these three signals to estimate the changes in CO_2 concentration continuously in the sample cell. Alternatively, CO_2 concentration may be estimated with solid-state technology, using a beam splitter instead of a chopper wheel. The splitter allows for the measurement of infrared energy at wavelengths within and outside the absorption spectrum of CO_2.

Capnometers fall into two general categories: sidestream (diverting) and mainstream (nondiverting). Sidestream analyzers are more frequently used in clinical environments. Their CO_2 sensors are physically located away from the airway gases to be measured. Sidestream analyzers incorporate a pump or compressor that aspirates gases into a sample cell located at the unit's console (Fig. 41.10*A*). Typical tubing length for this aspiration may be 6 feet, and gas withdrawal rates may vary from 30 to 500 mL/min. This lost gas volume may need to be considered during closed-circuit anesthesia or during ventilation of neonates and infants. The volume can be returned to the circuit, or it can be routed to a scavenger to prevent contamination of the environment with anesthetic or waste gases. Gases must also pass through various filters and water traps before they are presented to the sample cell.[164] Sidestream capnometers have a transport delay time corresponding to the rate at which gas is sampled and the washout of the analyzing chamber (see Fig. 41.10*B*). The capnograms generated by sidestream analyzers also have an associated rise time, defined as the time required for the analyzer to respond to a sudden change in CO_2 concentration.[171] By convention, this is usually the time interval required for the for the analyzer output to change from 10% to 70% of its final value.[*,171] Typical rise times for commercially available capnometers range from 10 to 400 ms, and they can depend on the rotation of the chopper wheel, the rate of gas aspiration, the volume of aspiration tubing and water traps, and the dynamic response of the infrared filters and other electronics.

With mainstream analyzers, the sample cell is placed directly into the patient's breathing circuit. Thus the inspiratory or expiratory gases pass directly through the infrared light path (see Fig. 41.10*C*). An advantage of mainstream analyzers is that they have no delay time (see Fig. 41.10*D*). Moreover, their rise time is generally faster than that of sidestream analyzers.[171] A disadvantage is the potential increase in dead space, although recent developments in solid-state electronics have made this much less of an issue.[172] In addition, the sample cell is usually heated to 40°C to minimize the condensation of water vapor, which can bias the measurement. This increase in temperature, combined with the proximity of the sensor to the patient's airway, can potentially increase the risk of facial burns.

TIME CAPNOGRAM

The simplest and most widely used form of display for exhaled CO_2 is the *time capnogram*. The time capnogram displays both inspiratory and expiratory phases. Fig. 41.9 shows a typical time capnogram for three breaths. The expiratory phase is divided into three distinct components. Phase I corresponds to the exhalation of dead space gas from the central conducting airways or any equipment distal to the sampling site, which ideally should have no detectable CO_2 (i.e., partial pressure of CO_2, $PCO_2 \sim 0$). During phase II, a sharp rise in PCO_2 to a plateau indicates the sampling of transitional gas between the airways and alveoli. The plateau region of the capnogram, phase III, corresponds to the PCO_2 in the alveolar compartment. For a lung with relatively homogeneous ventilation, phase III is approximately flat throughout expiration. In fact, various mechanisms contribute to the slight upsloping of CO_2 concentration versus time during phase III. Most of these mechanisms reflect a heterogeneous distribution of ventilation-perfusion ($\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$) or alveolar CO_2 partial pressure (P_ACO_2) throughout the lung. Well-ventilated and well-matched $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ regions tend to have lower PCO_2 and shorter time constants, and they empty earlier during the expiratory phase. Less well-ventilated and poorly matched $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ regions have higher CO_2 levels, and they empty later in the expiratory cycle. Respiratory pathologies associated with an increase in ventilation heterogeneity, such as asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), or acute lung injury,[173] yield a steeper upslope of phase III. Interventions that improve ventilation

---

[*] Rise time may also be defined as the time required for the analyzer output to change from 10% to 90% of its final value.

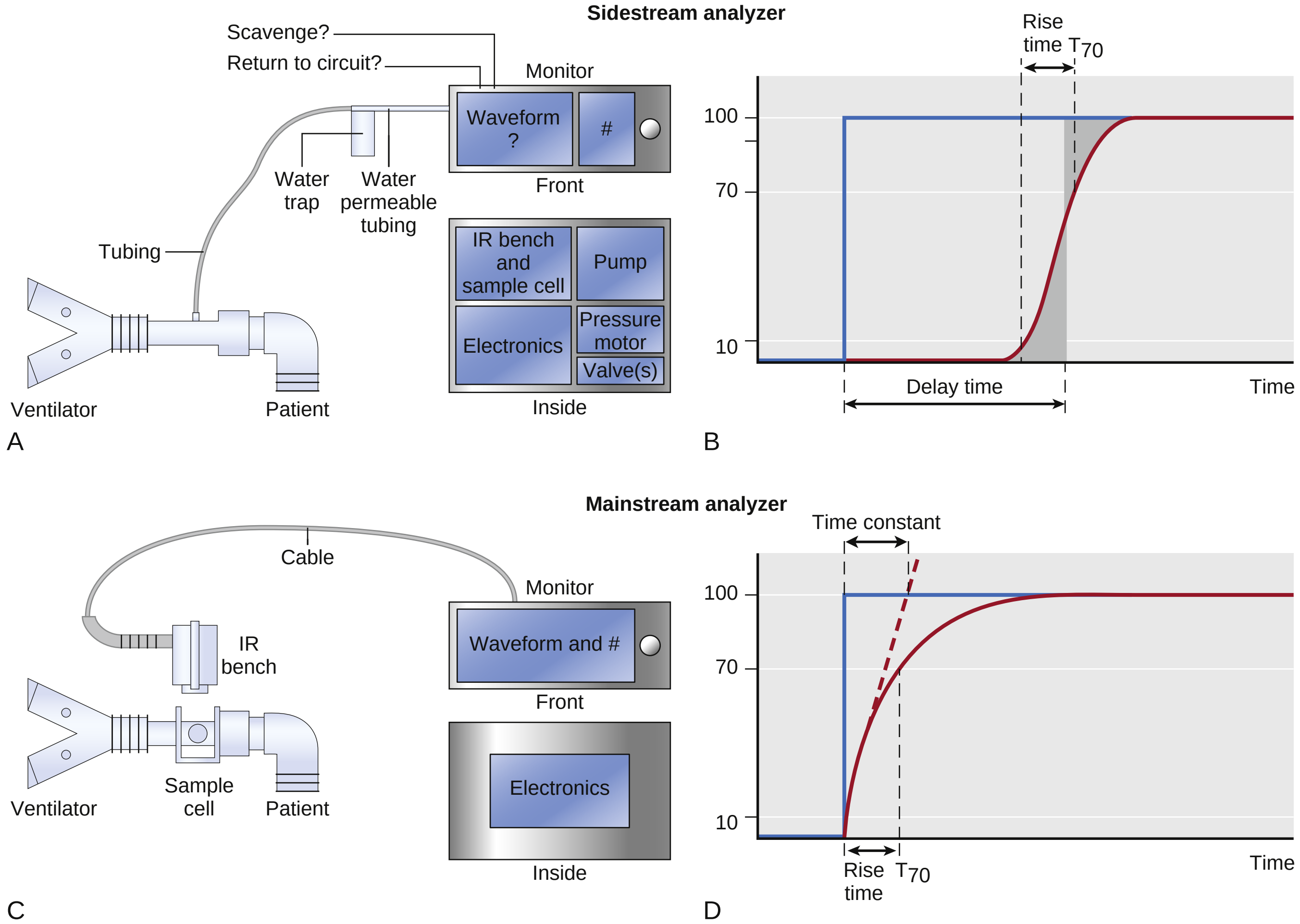

Sidestream analyzer
Scavenge?
Return to circuit?
Monitor
Waveform
?
#
Front
Water trap
Water permeable tubing
Tubing
IR bench and sample cell
Pump
Electronics
Pressure motor
Valve(s)
Inside
Ventilator
Patient
A
Rise time T70
100
70
10
Delay time
Time
B
Mainstream analyzer
Cable
Monitor
Waveform and #
Front
IR bench
Electronics
Inside
Ventilator
Sample cell
Patient
C
Time constant
100
70
10
Rise time T70
Time
D

Fig. 41.10 Schematics of sidestream (A) and mainstream (C) capnometry sampling methods, along with corresponding representative time capnograms (*curves* in B and D) following a step increase in CO_2 concentration *(blue lines)*. Rise time *(T_{70})* corresponds to the time required for either sensor to change from 10% to 70% of its final value. A delay time is observed for the sidestream analyzer, corresponding to the aspiration rate of the sampled gas and the washout of the analyzing chamber. *IR*, Infrared. (Modified from Jaffe MB. Mainstream or sidestream capnography? Technical considerations. Wallingford, CT: Respironics Novametric, Inc; 2002;; and Brunner JX, Westenskow DR. How the rise time of carbon dioxide analysers influences the accuracy of carbon dioxide measurements. *Br J Anaesth.* 1988;61:628–638.)

homogeneity, such as positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) or bronchodilators, flatten phase III. Mechanical disturbances may also be present during phase III, reflecting processes such as spontaneous breathing efforts, cardiogenic oscillations, or surgical manipulation (Fig. 41.11). Following phase III, a sharp downstroke of PCO_2 occurs as fresh inspired gas moves past the sampling site and washes out the remaining CO_2. This is referred to as the beginning of phase 0 by some authors,[165,174] or phase IV by others.[166] Occasionally, a sharp upstroke in PCO_2 is observed at the very end of phase III, which is termed phase IV or IV′, depending on the author.[175] This upstroke probably results from the closure of lung units with relatively low PCO_2 and allows for regions of higher CO_2 to contribute a greater proportion of the exhaled gas to be sampled.[165] Additional insights into various abnormalities in ventilation or perfusion are also obtained by trending time capnograms over many breaths for long periods (Fig. 41.12).

The term "end-tidal" CO_2 ($P_{ET}CO_2$) generally refers to the final value of the exhaled PCO_2 curve, at the very end of the expiratory phase. The method used to determine this number is not universal, and varies according to the manufacturer of the particular capnograph in use. For example, $P_{ET}CO_2$ may simply be (1) the PCO_2 value just before inspiration, (2) the largest PCO_2 value during a single exhalation cycle, or (3) the PCO_2 value at a specified time in the capnogram averaged across several breaths. If $P_{ET}CO_2$ is measured during a reasonably flat and undistorted phase III, it may be well correlated with P_aCO_2.[170] This may not be the case if the duration of phase III is truncated, or if CO_2 is measured from gas that is contaminated with room or O_2-enriched air (i.e., during spontaneous breathing with a nasal cannula or facemask). Potential causes of increased or decreased $P_{ET}CO_2$ are listed in Table 41.2. In healthy individuals with homogeneous ventilation, the difference between P_aCO_2 and $P_{ET}CO_2$ is usually less than 5 mm Hg, thereby expressing the equilibration between alveolar and pulmonary capillary blood. Several disease states compromise this equilibration and produce increased $P_aCO_2 - P_{ET}CO_2$ difference (Box 41.2). There are situations in which $P_{ET}CO_2$ can be greater than P_aCO_2, especially in the presence of severe ventilation heterogeneity and lung units with very low $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$. For steady-state conditions, the $P_{ET}CO_2$ usually reflects the relative balance between CO_2 production and alveolar ventilation.

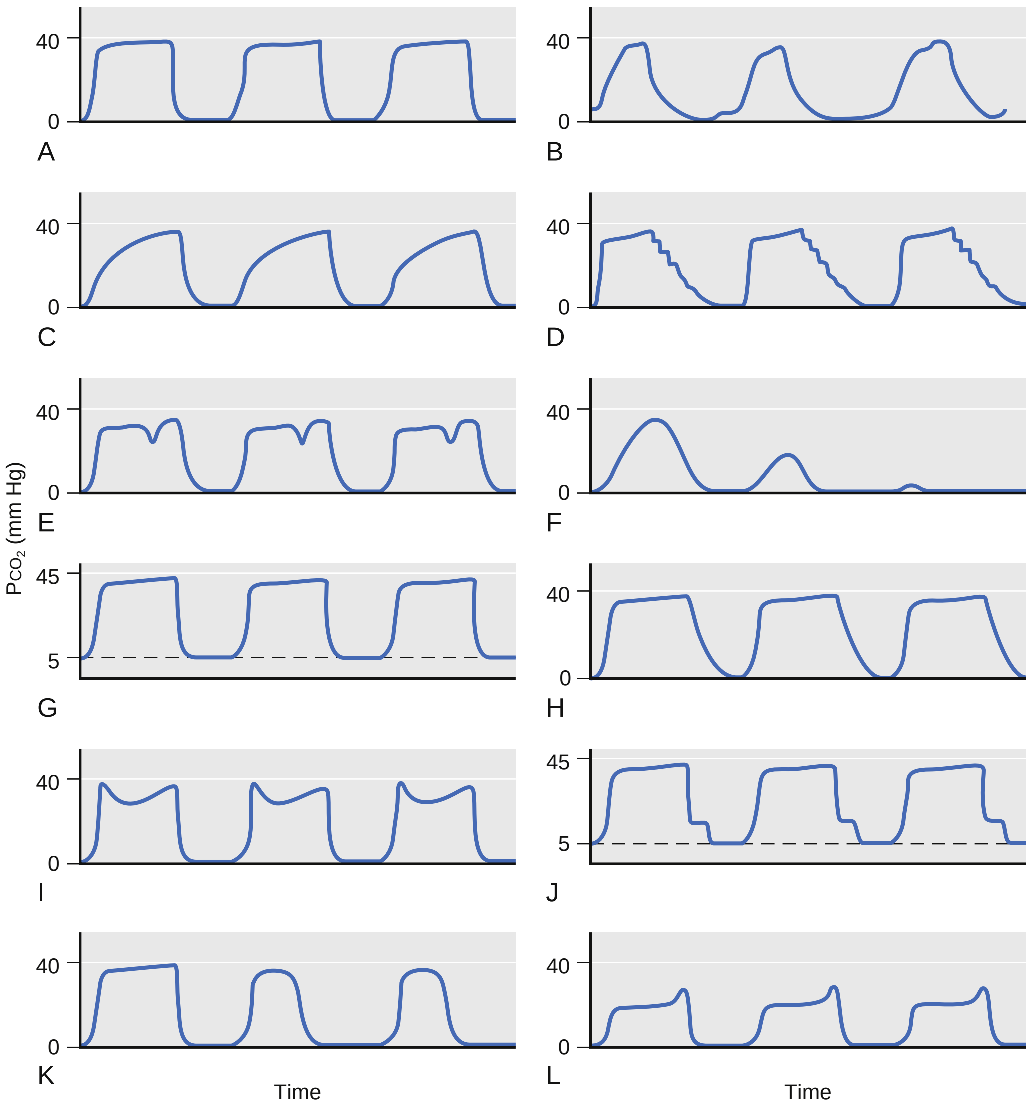


Fig. 41.11 Representative Time Capnograms under Normal and Abnormal Conditions. (A) Normal capnogram during controlled mechanical ventilation; (B) normal capnogram during spontaneous breathing; (C) increased upslope of phase III, as may occur during bronchospasm (asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease), or partially obstructed endotracheal tube/breathing circuit; (D) cardiogenic oscillations at the end of exhalation as flow decreases to zero and the beating heart causes emptying of different lung regions and back-and-forth motion between exhaled and fresh gas; (E) clefts during phase III indicating spontaneous breathing efforts during controlled mechanical ventilation; (F) esophageal intubation; (G) rebreathing of CO_2, as may occur with faulty expiratory valve or exhausted absorber system. Inspiratory CO_2 is consistently above 0; (H) faulty inspiratory valve, resulting in a slower downslope, which extends into the inhalation phase (phase 0) as CO_2 in the inspiratory limb is rebreathed; (I) two peaks in phase III suggestive of sequential emptying of two heterogeneous compartments, as may be seen in a patient with a single lung transplant; (J) faulty inspiratory valve; (K) sudden shortening of the duration of phase III during controlled mechanical ventilation, suggesting the abrupt onset of a ruptured or leaking endotracheal tube cuff; (L) dual plateau in phase III, suggesting the presence of a leak in a sidestream sample line. Early portion of phase III abnormally low due to dilution of exhaled gas with ambient air. The sharp increase in CO_2 at the end of phase III reflects a diminished leak resulting from the increased circuit pressure at the onset of inspiration. *PCO_2*, **Partial pressure of carbon dioxide.** (Modified from Hess D. Capnometry and capnography: technical aspects, physiologic aspects, and clinical applications. *Respir Care*. 1990;35:557–576; Roberts WA, Maniscalco WM, Cohen AR, et al. The use of capnography for recognition of esophageal intubation in the neonatal intensive care unit. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 1995;19:262–268; and Eskaros SM, Papadakos PJ, Lachmann B. Respiratory monitoring. In: Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleisher LA, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. New York, NY: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:1427.)

VOLUME CAPNOGRAM

Although time capnography is relatively straightforward to monitor in clinical environments, a major limitation of the technique is its lack of information regarding respiratory flows or volumes.[174] The *volume capnogram* is a graphic display of CO_2 concentration or partial pressure versus exhaled volume.[166] The inspiratory phase is not defined in a volume capnogram. Similar to its temporal counterpart, it is also partitioned into three distinct phases (I, II, and III) corresponding to anatomic dead space, transitional, and alveolar gas samples (Fig. 41.13). However, it possesses several advantages over the time capnogram. First, it allows for estimation of the relative contributions of anatomic and alveolar components of physiologic dead space.[175a,176] Second, it is more sensitive than the time capnogram in detecting subtle changes in dead space that are caused by alterations in PEEP, pulmonary blood flow, or ventilation heterogeneity (Fig. 41.14). Finally, the numeric integral of PCO_2 as a function of volume allows for determination of

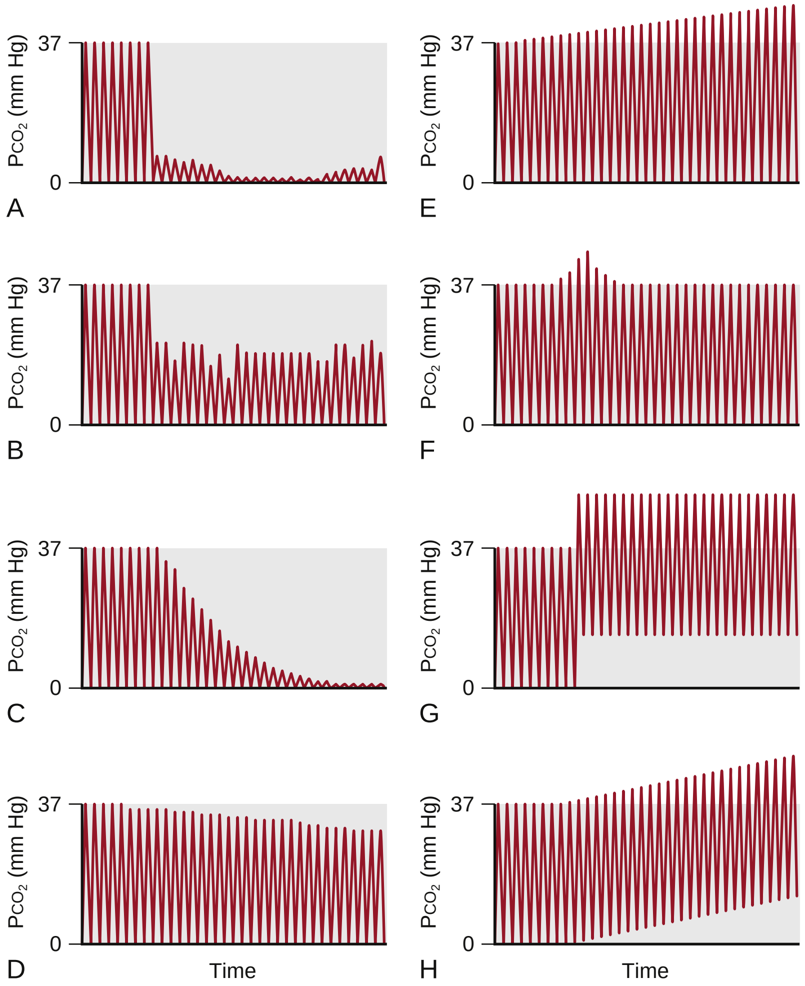


Fig. 41.12 Representative time capnograms trended over many breaths, illustrating various abnormalities in ventilation and/or perfusion. (A) sudden drop in CO_2 due to catastrophic loss of ventilation; (B) leak or partial obstruction in breathing circuit; (C) sudden interruption in pulmonary perfusion, as may occur during cardiac arrest; (D) gradual decrease in CO_2 due to hyperventilation, decreased metabolism, or decreased pulmonary perfusion; (E) gradual increase in CO_2 as may occur during hypoventilation, laparoscopic insufflation, increased metabolism, or increased pulmonary perfusion; (F) transient rise in CO_2 indicated acute increase in CO_2 delivery to the lungs, as may occur during release of a tourniquet or administration of a bicarbonate bolus; (G) rise in both the baseline and end-tidal CO_2, consistent with a contaminated sample cell; (H) gradual rise in baseline and end-tidal CO_2, consistent with rebreathing. *PCO_2*, Partial pressure of CO_2. (Modified from Swedlow DB. Capnometry and capnography: the anesthesia disaster early warning system. *Semin Anesth*. 1986;5:194–205.)

the total mass of CO_2 exhaled during a breath and provides for the estimation of $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$.

Blood Gas Analysis

PHYSIOLOGIC FUNDAMENTALS

Arterial blood gas analysis is used to assess oxygenation, ventilation, and acid-base status. This section focuses on the use of arterial blood gases to assess oxygenation and ventilation. For a discussion of acid-base status, see Chapter 48, "Perioperative Acid-Base Balance."

Oxygenation is reflected in the P_aO_2, which is a function of the alveolar partial pressure of O_2 (P_AO_2) and the efficiency of O_2 transfer from alveoli to the pulmonary capillary blood. In healthy adults breathing room air at sea level, P_aO_2 ranges between 80 and 100 mm Hg. The normal value of P_aO_2 decreases with increasing age and increasing altitude. Hypoxemia is defined as a P_aO_2 less than 80 mm Hg. There are five physiologic causes of hypoxemia: (1) hypoventilation, (2) $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatching, (3) right-to-left shunt, (4) diffusion limitation, and (5) diffusion-perfusion mismatch. The first three causes explain the majority of hypoxemia in the perioperative setting. Reduced inspired PO_2 (e.g., in faulty closed or partially closed anesthesia breathing circuits or at high altitude) is an additional cause of hypoxemia.

These factors produce hypoxemia by affecting different steps of O_2 transport from the environment to the arterial blood. A low inspired PO_2, as well as hypoventilation, reduces the P_AO_2. $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch, right-to-left shunt, and alveolar diffusion limitation affect the efficiency of O_2 exchange. Diffusion limitation plays a role in conditions that thicken the alveolar-capillary barrier, such as interstitial lung diseases, and in hypoxemia induced by exercise or altitude.[177,178] In the clinical setting, impairment of diffusion of O_2 or CO_2 rarely occurs to a significant extent. The remainder of this section focuses on $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch and right-to-left shunt.

TABLE 41.2 Causes of Changes in Partial Pressure of End-Tidal Carbon Dioxide

↑$P_{ET}CO_2$	↓$P_{ET}CO_2$
↑CO_2 Production and Delivery to the Lungs	**↓CO_2 Production and Delivery to the Lungs**
Increased metabolic rate	Hypothermia
Fever	Pulmonary hypoperfusion
Sepsis	Cardiac arrest
Seizures	Pulmonary embolism
Malignant hyperthermia	Hemorrhage
Thyrotoxicosis	Hypotension
Increased cardiac output (e.g., during CPR)	
Bicarbonate administration	
↓Alveolar Ventilation	**↑Alveolar Ventilation**
Hypoventilation	Hyperventilation
Respiratory center depression	
Partial muscular paralysis	
Neuromuscular disease	
High spinal anesthesia	
COPD	
Equipment Malfunction	**Equipment Malfunction**
Rebreathing	Ventilator disconnect
Exhausted CO_2 absorber	Esophageal intubation
Leak in ventilator circuit	Complete airway obstruction
Faulty inspiratory/expiratory valve	Poor sampling
	Leak around endotracheal tube cuff

CO_2, Carbon dioxide; *COPD*, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; *CPR*, cardiopulmonary resuscitation; *$P_{ET}CO_2$*, partial pressure of end-tidal carbon dioxide. Modified from Hess D. Capnometry and capnography: technical aspects, physiologic aspects, and clinical applications. *Respir Care*. 1990;35:557–576.

BOX 41.2 Causes of Increased Arterial-to-End-Tidal Carbon Dioxide Pressure Difference $P_{(a-ET)CO2}$

- Increased ventilation-perfusion heterogeneity, particularly with high V/Q regions
- Pulmonary hypoperfusion
- Pulmonary embolism
- Cardiac arrest
- Positive pressure ventilation (especially with PEEP)
- High-rate low-tidal-volume ventilation

PEEP, Positive end-expiratory pressure. Modified from Hess D. Capnometry and capnography: technical aspects, physiologic aspects, and clinical applications. *Respir Care*. 1990;35:557–576.

$\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch is the most common cause of hypoxemia in the clinical setting. Ventilation and perfusion are nonuniformly distributed throughout the normal lung, with worsening mismatch in the setting of lung disease, general anesthesia, and mechanical ventilation. Areas with low or zero $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ yield low end-capillary PO_2, whereas areas with normal or high $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ produce higher end-capillary PO_2. However, because of the plateau of the O_2Hb dissociation curve (see Fig. 41.2), the normal and high $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ regions are limited in the extent to which they increase the O_2 content and compensate for the low $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ regions (Fig. 41.15). Consequently, $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch results in hypoxemia.

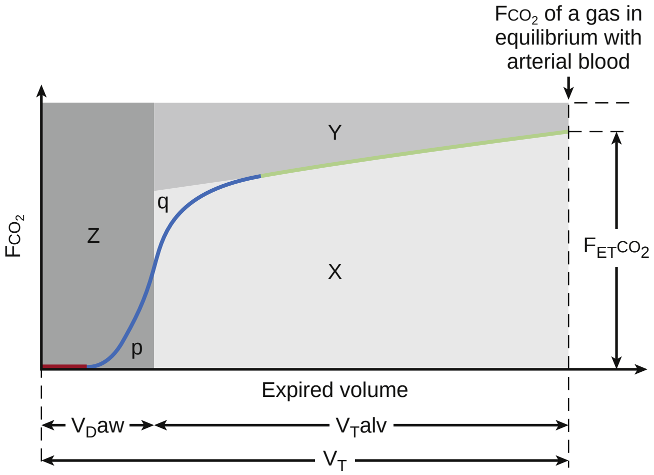


Fig. 41.13 The volume capnogram is a plot of the fraction of CO_2 *(FCO_2)* in exhaled gas versus exhaled volume. It is divided into three phases, which reflect the same sources of expired gas as present in the time capnograph: anatomic dead space (phase I, *red*), transitional (phase II, *blue*), and alveolar gas (phase III, *green*). The volume capnogram allows for the partition of total tidal volume *(V_T)* into airway dead space volume *(V_Daw)* and an effective alveolar tidal volume *(V_Talv)* by a vertical line through Phase II, positioned such that the approximately triangular areas p and q are equal. It also provides the slope of phase III as a quantitative measure of the heterogeneity of alveolar ventilation. The total area below the horizontal line (denoting the FCO_2 of a gas in equilibrium with arterial blood) can be divided into three distinct areas: *X*, *Y*, and *Z*. Area X corresponds to the total volume of CO_2 exhaled over a tidal breath. This value can be used to compute the CO_2 production ($\dot{V}_{CO_2}$), and the mixed expired CO_2 fraction or partial pressure to be used in the Bohr equation (Eq. [41.15]) based on the division of the exhaled CO_2 volume by the exhaled tidal volume. Area Y represents wasted ventilation due to alveolar dead space, while area Z corresponds to wasted ventilation due to anatomic deadspace (V_Daw). Thus areas Y + Z represent the total physiologic dead space. The volume capnogram can also be plotted as a PCO_2 versus exhaled volume curve. *$F_{ET}CO_2$*, Fraction of end-tidal carbon dioxide. (Modified from Fletcher R, Jonson B, Cumming G, et al. The concept of deadspace with special reference to the single breath test for carbon dioxide. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:77–88.)

Right-to left shunt is the amount of blood that flows from the pulmonary artery to the systemic arterial circulation without undergoing pulmonary gas exchange. It represents an extreme case of $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch in which the ratio equals zero and the end-capillary gas partial pressures are equal to the values found in mixed venous blood. In healthy awake spontaneously breathing subjects, intrapulmonary shunt is negligible,[179] and a small (<1% of cardiac output) extrapulmonary shunt results from drainage of the bronchial and Thebesian veins into the arterial side of the circulation.[180] During general anesthesia, a right-to-left shunt can develop as a result of atelectasis.[181,182] Right-to-left shunt can also be seen in pathologic conditions such as pneumonia and acute lung injury. The effect of the shunt on P_aO_2 is a function of the magnitude of the shunt, F_IO_2, and the cardiac output (Fig. 41.16). Importantly, increases in F_IO_2 have a small effect on P_aO_2 in the presence of large true right-to-left shunt (see Fig. 41.16).

The traditional method to estimate flow through shunting regions ($\dot{Q}_s$) as a fraction of the total cardiac output ($\dot{Q}_T$) is based on the modeling of the lung as a three-compartment system (Fig. 41.17).[183] The three compartments represent (1) lung regions receiving both ventilation and perfusion,

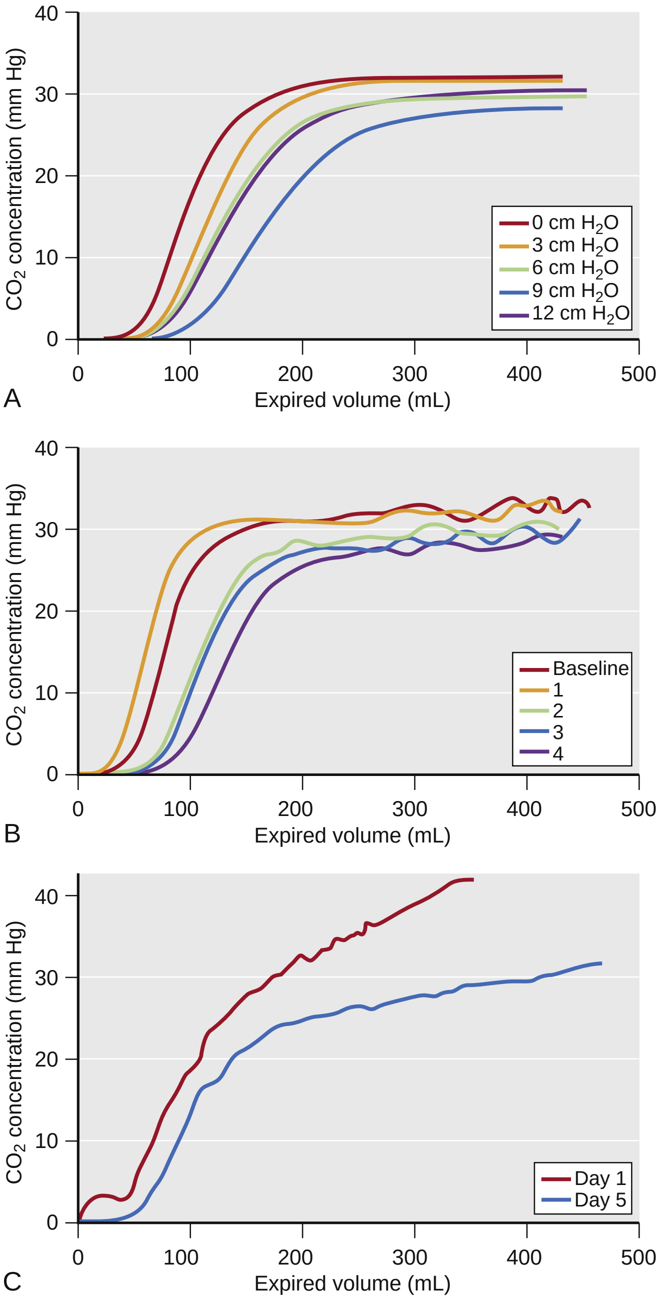


Fig. 41.14 Representative Single-breath Volume Capnograms, Illustrating Various Abnormalities in Ventilation or Perfusion. (A) alterations in phases II and III with corresponding changes in positive end-expiratory pressure (0, 3, 6, 9, and 12 cm H_2O) during positive pressure ventilation; (B) alterations in phases II and III with corresponding changes in pulmonary perfusion (increasing numbers correspond to decreasing pulmonary blood flow); (C) pronounced positive slope of phase III during acute bronchospasm (Day 1). Following resolution (Day 5), there is a noticeable reduction in the slope phase III. ***CO_2*, Carbon dioxide.** (Modified from Thompson JE, Jaffe MB. Capnographic waveforms in the mechanically ventilated patient. *Respir Care*. 2005;50:100–108.)

(2) a shunt compartment ($\dot{V}/\dot{Q} = 0$), and (3) a dead space compartment with ventilation but no perfusion ($\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ = infinity). The application of the concept of mass balance to this model yields the shunt fraction ($\dot{Q}_s/\dot{Q}_T$) expression

$$\dot{Q}_S/\dot{Q}_T = \frac{(Cc'O_2 - Ca\,O_2)}{(Cc'O_2 - C\bar{v}O_2)} \qquad (41.16)$$

where $\dot{Q}_s$ is the shunted blood flow, and $Cc'O_2$ is the end-capillary O_2 content. $Cc'O_2$ is calculated using Eq. (41.1), assuming equilibration between the end-capillary blood and alveolar gas. The P_AO_2 is calculated using the ideal alveolar gas equation:

$$P_AO_2 = F_IO_2 \cdot (P_{atm} - P_{H_2O}) - P_aCO_2/R \qquad (41.17)$$

where F_IO_2 is the inspired O_2 fraction, P_{atm} is barometric pressure (typically assumed to be the pressure of one standard atmosphere at sea level, 760 mm Hg), and P_{H_2O} is partial pressure of water vapor (47 mm Hg at 37°C). R, the respiratory quotient, is the ratio of pulmonary CO_2 elimination to O_2 uptake ($R = \dot{V}_{CO_2}/\dot{V}_{O_2}$), which equals the value of 0.8 under normal diet and metabolic conditions.

The three-compartment model is a simplification of the real lung. As a result, under conditions of F_IO_2 less than 100%, $\dot{Q}_S/\dot{Q}_T$ computed with Eq. (41.16) represents a combination of all factors producing hypoxemia, predominantly true right-to-left shunt and $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch. Under such conditions, $\dot{Q}_S/\dot{Q}_T$ is referred to as venous admixture. When F_IO_2 is 100%, the effects of $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ heterogeneity on O_2 exchange are eliminated and the equation exclusively yields the right-to-left shunt fraction.[184] The administration of 100% O_2 (i.e., F_IO_2 of 1.0) can lead to the development of absorption atelectasis in compartments with very low $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$, thus leading to an increase in true right-to-left shunt.[184]

If the assumptions are made that end-capillary blood has an O_2 saturation of 100% and the O_2 content of blood is predominantly determined by Hb saturation, the shunt fraction equation can be simplified to

$$\dot{Q}_S/\dot{Q}_T = \frac{(1 - S_aO_2)}{(1 - S\bar{v}O_2)} \qquad (41.18)$$

where S_aO_2 is arterial saturation, and S$\bar{v}$O2 is mixed venous saturation.

Other indices of oxygenation: The calculation of the shunt fraction is a fundamental measure of O_2 exchange impairment. However, a pulmonary artery catheter is required for the measurement of S$\bar{v}$O2. For this reason, indices of oxygenation that rely on less invasive measures have been developed. An ideal index should reflect the efficiency of oxygenation, change with changes in lung function, remain constant with changes in extrapulmonary conditions (such as F_IO_2), and provide clinically useful diagnostic and prognostic information.[185] Although P_aO_2 certainly reflects arterial blood oxygenation, it is limited in providing a measure of the magnitude of the O_2 exchange deficiency because of its dependence on the F_IO_2 and to the nonlinear relationship between P_aO_2 and blood O_2 content.[185] As a consequence, several indices based on the P_aO_2 that account for the F_IO_2 or the P_AO_2 have been developed: the alveolar-arterial partial pressure gradient of O_2 ($[A-a]PO_2$), the respiratory index ($[A-a]PO_2/P_aO_2$), the arterial-alveolar ratio of O_2 partial pressures (P_aO_2/P_AO_2), and the ratio between P_aO_2 and F_IO_2 (P_aO_2/F_IO_2).[185]

The advantages of indices based on P_aO_2 are that their calculations are fairly simple and require only arterial blood sampling. However, an important limitation is that these indices vary with the F_IO_2, P_aCO_2, Hb, and O_2 consumption ($\dot{V}_{O_2}$).[186,187] Consequently, changes in those variables can lead to changes in the values of the indices in the absence of

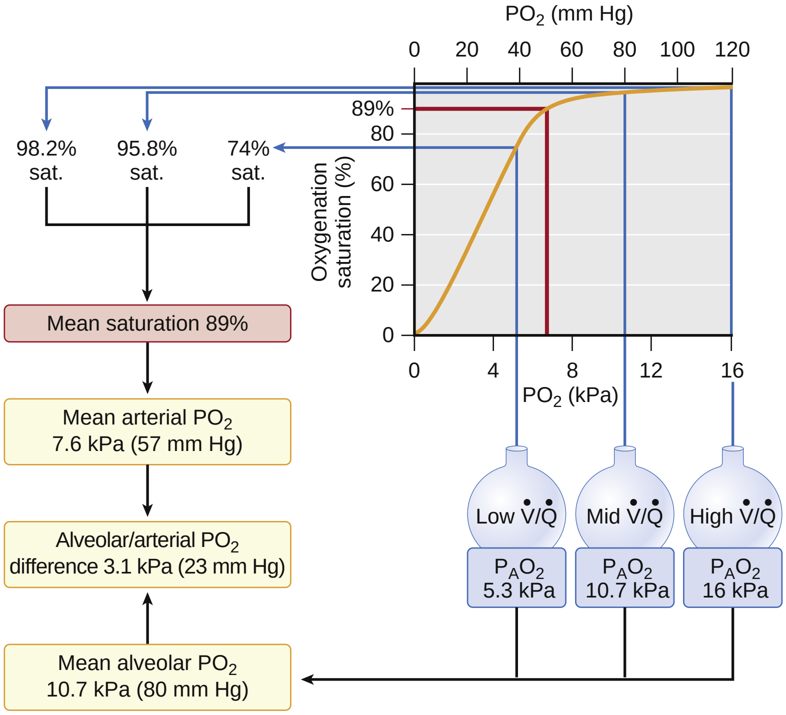


Fig. 41.15 Effect of Different Ventilation-Perfusion ($\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$) Regions on Partial Pressure of Arterial Oxygen (P_aO_2). Because of the shape of the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve, regions of lung with low $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ have a disproportionately greater effect on lowering the arterial saturation than do regions of lung with normal or higher $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ to increase P_aO_2. Assuming equal blood flow, the average partial pressure of alveolar oxygen (P_AO_2) of the V/Q regions represented in the illustration is 10.7 kPa (80 mm Hg). Based on the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve, however, the average saturation of the arterial blood is 89%, producing an average P_aO_2 equal to 7.6 kPa (57 mm Hg). *PO_2*, Partial pressure of oxygen. (Modified from Lumb AB. *Nunn's Applied Respiratory Physiology*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier/Butterworth Heinemann; 2005.)

any change in lung gas exchange function. Another limitation is the failure of these indices to account for changes in $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ matching resulting from changes in the F_IO_2. In addition, indices that use P_AO_2 rely on the assumptions of the alveolar gas equation, including $P_ACO_2 = P_aCO_2$, which may not hold true in pathologic conditions.

An early index developed to assess oxygenation that used only peripheral blood sampling was the (A-a)PO_2.[188] The (A-a)PO_2 can help to differentiate $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch, shunt, and diffusion limitation from hypoventilation and low F_IO_2 as causes of hypoxemia. This is because the (A-a) PO_2 is unchanged under conditions of decreased F_IO_2 and hypoventilation but increased with $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch, shunt, and diffusion limitation.

The A-a gradient of O_2 is calculated as

$$\text{(A-a) } PO_2 = P_AO_2 - P_aO_2 \qquad (41.19)$$

The normal value of the (A-a)PO_2 is less than 10 mm Hg in young adults breathing room air, and it increases with age and the administration of supplemental O_2. The change in (A-a)PO_2 with age can be estimated by[189]

$$\text{(A-a) } PO_2 = 0.21 \cdot (\text{age} + 2.5) \qquad (41.20)$$

The (A-a)PO_2 varies significantly with the F_IO_2 such that the application of supplemental O_2 can lead to an increase in the (A-a)PO_2 independent of pulmonary disease.[186] Like the (A-a)PO_2, the respiratory index (A-a)PO_2/P_aO_2 and the P_aO_2/P_AO_2 are sensitive to F_IO_2, especially in the presence of a high degree of $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch, such as during acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), and less so in the absence of true shunt or when low $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ regions are minimal (e.g., in healthy lung or pulmonary embolus).[190]

Unlike the other indices based on partial pressures, the P_aO_2/F_IO_2 ratio does not use the P_AO_2 and its associated assumptions. This index is more stable, particularly under conditions relevant to ARDS such as P_aO_2 lower than 100 mm Hg in the setting of an F_IO_2 greater than 0.5.[186,187] P_aO_2/F_IO_2 values are part of the diagnostic criteria for ARDS and have been correlated with outcomes in these patients.[191] When repeated arterial blood sampling is not possible, the S_pO_2/F_IO_2 (also referred to as SF) ratio may be useful. SF ratio values have shown good correlation with P_aO_2/F_IO_2 values in both adults and children with respiratory failure who have S_pO_2 values in the range of 80% to 97%.[192,193]

The P_aO_2/F_IO_2 ratio does not characterize factors associated with the severity of respiratory failure such as ventilator settings or respiratory system mechanics.[194-196] Another drawback of the P_aO_2/F_IO_2 ratio is its dependence on PEEP or mean airway pressure, because increases in these variables result in lung recruitment and improved oxygenation. As a consequence, the oxygenation index (OI) was proposed as a more robust alternative to the P_aO_2/F_IO_2 ratio[197]:

$$OI = 100\,\% \times \frac{F_IO_2\bar{P}_{ao}}{P_aO_2} \qquad (41.21)$$

where $\bar{P}_{ao}$ denotes the mean airway pressure. The OI has been used as a prognostic indicator in pediatric patients

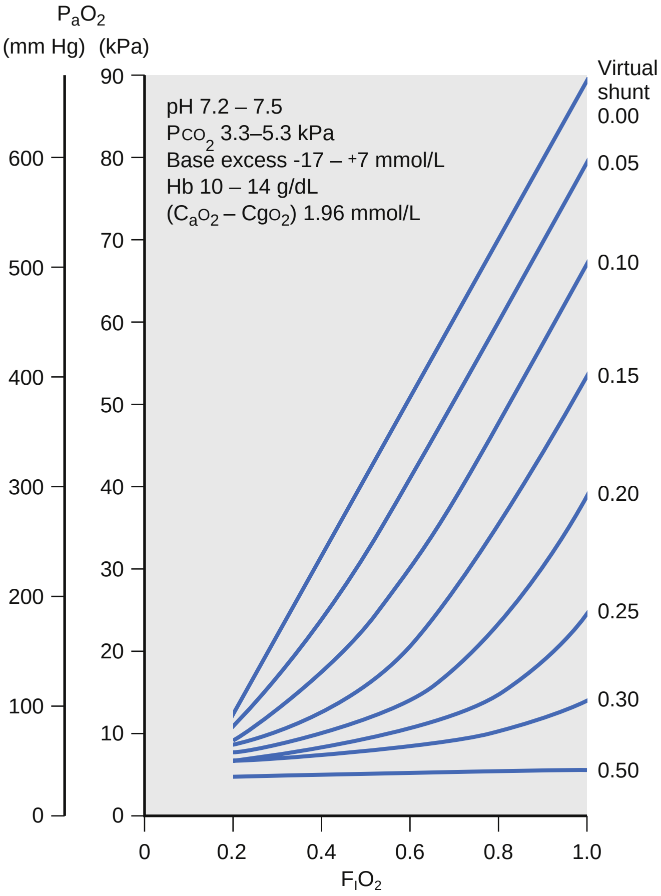


Fig. 41.16 Relationship between partial pressure of arterial oxygen (*P_aO_2*) and fraction of inspired oxygen (*F_IO_2*) for different values of shunt fraction computed for normal values of barometric pressure, pH, partial pressure of carbon dioxide (*PCO_2*), base excess, hemoglobin (*Hb*) concentration, and arterial-mixed venous oxygen content difference (*C_aO_2 – CgO_2*). Note the small increase in P_aO_2 with F_IO_2 in the presence of large shunt. This graph corresponds to the so-called isoshunt diagram presented by Lawler and Nunn. (From Welsby PD, Earis JE. Some high pitched thoughts on chest examination. *Postgrad Med J*. 2001;77:617–620.)

with acute hypoxemic respiratory failure,[198] as a predictor of mortality in adult ARDS,[196,199] and as an index of enhanced lung recruitment during oscillatory ventilation.[200] An alternative "oxygenation saturation index" (OSI) has also been recently proposed:

$$\text{OSI} = 100\,\% \times \frac{F_IO_2\bar{P}_{ao}}{S_pO_2} \qquad (41.22)$$

Similar to the pulse oximetric saturation S_pO_2/F_IO_2 (SF) ratio, the OSI eliminates the need for invasive arterial blood gas sampling by using pulse oximetry. When computed on the day of ARDS diagnosis, it correlates well with the OI and is associated with increased mortality and fewer ventilator free days.[194]

Unlike P_aO_2, P_aCO_2 can be maintained in the normal range in the presence of significant $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatching. The reason is that the CO_2 content curve has no plateau. In this way, compensatory hyperventilation can be used to reduce elevations in P_aCO_2.[201] The dependence of P_aCO_2 on CO_2 elimination ($\dot{V}_{CO_2}$) and alveolar ventilation ($\dot{V}_A$), with k in the equation as a conversion factor equal to 0.863, is expressed by

$$P_aCO_2 = k \times \left(\dot{V}_{CO_2}/\dot{V}_A\right) \qquad (41.23)$$

In steady-state conditions (constant $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$), P_aCO_2 changes inversely with the alveolar ventilation. The traditional measure of ventilation inefficiency has been the fraction of dead space to tidal volume (V_D/V_T) as calculated using the Bohr equation (Eq. 41.15) and the assumption that the arterial and alveolar partial pressures of CO_2 are equivalent (i.e., $P_ACO_2 = P_aCO_2$). The dead space fraction determined in this manner includes alveolar (i.e., nonperfused alveoli) and anatomic dead space, as well as regions of high $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ ratio. As with the discussion on shunt, the dead space fraction characterizes not only real anatomic dead space, but also areas of inefficient ventilation (see Fig. 41.17).

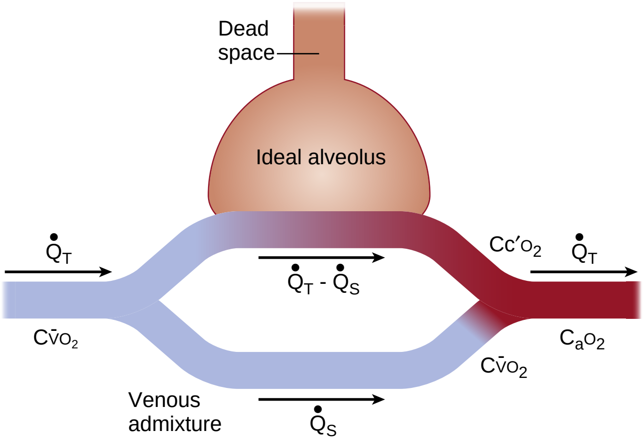


Fig. 41.17 Three-Compartment Model of Gas Exchange. The lung is represented as three functional units: alveolar dead space, "ideal" alveoli, and venous admixture (shunt). Note that the model doesn't differentiate between true shunt or true dead space and components of shunt and dead space that are caused by ventilation-perfusion ($\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$) mismatch. *CaO_2*, Arterial oxygen content; *$Cc'O_2$*, oxygen content of end pulmonary capillary blood; $C\bar{v}O_2$, mixed venous oxygen content; $\dot{Q}_S$, shunted blood flow; $\dot{Q}_T$, total blood flow. (From Lumb AB. *Nunn's Applied Respiratory Physiology*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier/Butterworth Heinemann; 2005.)

MEASUREMENT PRINCIPLES

P_aO_2 is measured using a Clark electrode. The electrode consists of a cathode (either platinum or gold) and an anode in an electrolytic bath, surrounded by a thin O_2 permeable membrane. The electrode is inserted into the sample, and O_2 diffuses through the membrane and is reduced by the cathode, generating a current. The current is proportional to the PO_2 in the sample.[202] The PCO_2 electrode measures the change in pH brought about by the equilibration of blood with a bicarbonate solution.[203]

Effect of Temperature

The solubility of CO_2 and O_2 in blood is affected by temperature. At lower temperatures, solubility is increased, leading to a reduction in partial pressure. Blood gas analyzers measure gas partial pressures at 37°C. As blood from a hypothermic patient is warmed to 37°C by the analyzer, CO_2 and O_2 will come out of solution, leading to P_aCO_2 and P_aO_2

higher than those present in the patient. Blood gas analyzers make use of algorithms to correct the reported values to the patient's actual temperature.[204] The temperature effects on blood gas analysis are most relevant during management of hypothermic patients, such as during hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass (HCPB) or deep hypothermic circulatory arrest (DHCA).

Two strategies have been developed for the management of arterial gas partial pressures under these conditions: alpha-stat and pH-stat. During alpha-stat management, blood gas measurements obtained after the analyzer warms the sample to 37°C are used for acid-base and gas exchange management. Potential benefits of alpha-stat management include the preservation of cerebral autoregulation and the maintenance of protein function.[205] During pH-stat management, measurements are corrected to the patient's temperature before they are used for acid-base and gas exchange management. Because patients are hypothermic, the P_aO_2 and P_aCO_2 at the patient's temperature are lower and the pH higher than those measured in the analyzer at 37°C. CO_2 is usually added to the oxygenator to maintain the temperature-corrected P_aCO_2 and pH at normothermic values. The theoretical benefits of pH-stat management are increased cerebral vasodilation leading to more homogenous cerebral cooling.[206]

Studies have compared the two strategies with respect to outcomes with varying results.[207-214] In general, clinical studies support the use of pH-stat management in pediatric cardiac surgical procedures during HCPB or DHCA.[209,213,215] In adult patients, the use of alpha-stat management is supported for HCPB.[216] For procedures involving DHCA in adults, the use of pH-stat management has been suggested to increase the rate and uniformity of cooling and alpha-stat management during rewarming.[217]

LIMITATIONS AND SOURCES OF ERRORS

Proper handling of arterial blood gas samples is important to prevent errors. Two common sources of error are delays in sample analysis and the presence of air in the sampling syringe.[218] A delay in sample analysis by 20 minutes at room temperature or at 4°C can lead to a decline in P_aO_2.[218] The decline is attributed to the metabolic activity of leukocytes and is not observed in samples placed on ice. The presence of an air bubble in the syringe can lead to a change in the measured P_aO_2 toward the PO_2 of the bubble and decline in P_aCO_2.[218]

Monitoring Lung Flows, Volumes, and Pressures:

As an organ of gas exchange, the human respiratory system relies on convective and diffusive gas transport processes for VO_2 and elimination of CO_2. The transport of air to the alveoli and alveolar gas to the environment requires the creation of a pressure gradient, which results in volume changes in the elastic components of the respiratory system, flow in the airways, velocity of moving tissues, and acceleration of air and tissues. The lung consists of a complex branching network of airway segments and viscoelastic tissues that, during the processes of spontaneous breathing or mechanical ventilation, gives rise to tremendous variations in gas velocities and flow regimens. The movement of gas flow ($\dot{V}$) into and out of the lungs requires pressure (P) to overcome the resistive (P_R), elastic (P_E), and at times inertial (P_I) forces offered by the airway tree, parenchymal tissues, and chest wall:

$$P = P_R + P_E + P_I \tag{41.24}$$

Eq. (41.24) can be used to describe the mechanical behavior of the total respiratory system, the lungs alone, or the chest wall, depending on whether P refers to airway pressure relative to atmosphere (transrespiratory pressure), airway pressure relative to pleural pressure (transpulmonary pressure), or pleural pressure alone.[219-221]

DYNAMIC RESPIRATORY MECHANICS

As a first approximation to Eq. (41.24), the mechanical behavior of the respiratory system during breathing or ventilation can be described according to the simple equation of motion that encompasses its resistive (R), elastic (E), and inertial (I) properties[219,222]:

$$P = R\dot{V} + EV + I\ddot{V} + P_o \tag{41.25}$$

where V is volume, $\ddot{V}$ denotes volume acceleration (i.e., the first time-derivative of flow or the second time-derivative of volume), and P_o is the distending pressure at end expiration. The coefficients R, E, and I in Eq. (41.25) may refer to the mechanical properties of the total respiratory system (rs), the lungs alone (L), or the chest wall (cw), depending on whether P refers to transrespiratory pressure, transpulmonary pressure, or intrapleural pressure, respectively.[221] The resistive properties of the respiratory system (R_{rs}) are generally assumed to arise from viscous and turbulent losses associated with gas flowing through the airway tree and the deformation of parenchymal and chest wall tissues. Hence, airway resistance may reflect airway caliber.[223] Provided that variations in flow are small, resistive pressure losses are assumed to be linearly related to flow according to the first term of Eq. (41.25). With more rapid flow rates, as may be seen during exercise or forced vital capacity maneuvers, resistive losses vary nonlinearly with flow, which may more accurately be described according to[224]

$$P_R = K_1\dot{V} + K_2\dot{V}^2 \tag{41.26}$$

where K_1 and K_2 are empirically determined constants. Additional energy losses arise from the tension within the alveolar surface film,[225] friction within the pleural space, and various tissue components of the parenchyma and chest wall,[220] as well as cross-bridge cycling of contractile elements within the airway walls and lung tissues.[226,227] Such losses are collectively termed "tissue resistance."[228,229] If these tissue resistive losses are assumed to be proportional to flow according to Eq. (41.25), one will observe that they vary inversely with breathing frequency,[226,230] a phenomenon commonly associated with viscoelastic materials.[220] In adult patients, lung tissue resistance comprises about 60% of subglottal total lung resistance at typical breathing rates.[231] During volume-cycled ventilation with an end-inspiratory pause, resistance can quickly be estimated from the difference between the peak (P_{peak}) and plateau (P_{plat}) airway pressures (i.e., the resistive pressure loss P_R) divided

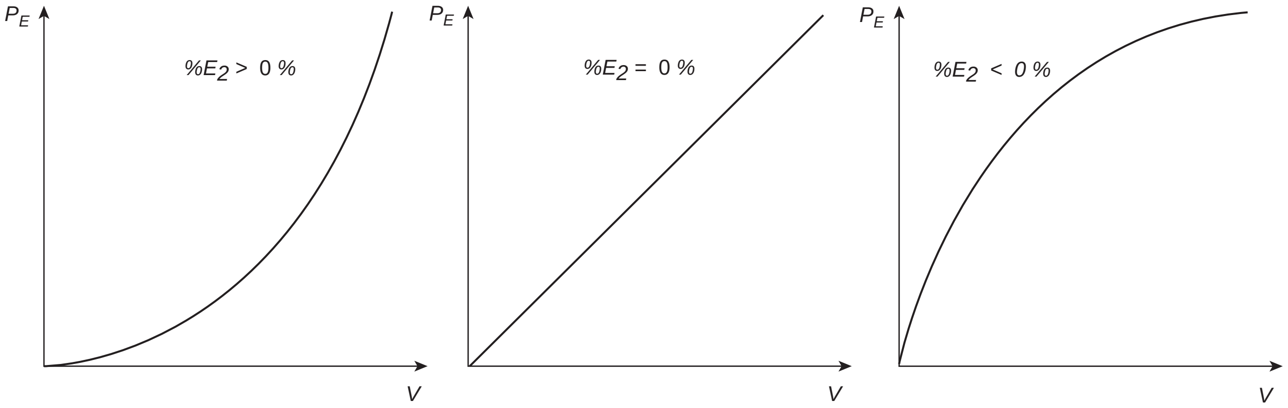


Fig. 41.18 Example elastic pressure *(P_E)* versus volume *(V)* curves and corresponding percentage of volume-dependent respiratory system elastance *($\%E_2$)* values. (Modified from D'Antini D, Huhle R, Herrmann J, et al. Respiratory system mechanics during low versus high positive end-expiratory pressure in open abdominal surgery: a substudy of PROVHILO randomized controlled trial. *Anesth Analg.* 2018;126:143–149.)

by the inspiratory flow ($\dot{V}_I$) immediately before the end-inspiratory pause:

$$R = \frac{P_{peak} - P_{plat}}{\dot{V}_I} = \frac{P_R}{\dot{V}_I} \qquad (41.27)$$

Thus, for a specified flow rate, alterations in P_R may reflect changes in airway caliber, as may occur during an intraoperative asthma exacerbation (Fig. 41.18, center panel), or obstruction within the ETT or breathing circuit.

Elastic pressures arise from the recoil of the lungs and chest wall when their normal anatomic configurations are deformed, either by contraction of the diaphragm and intercostal muscles, or by some external force such as a ventilator.[232] Elastance is defined as the change in distending pressure (transrespiratory, transpulmonary, or intrapleural) for a given change in volume. *Dynamic elastance* refers to the change in elastic (i.e., nonresistive) distending pressure per unit volume during the process of breathing or ventilation.[†]Elastance of the total respiratory system (E_{rs}) comprises both lung (E_L) and chest wall (E_{cw}) elastances:

$$E_{rs} = E_L + E_{cw} \qquad (41.28)$$

In clinical settings, elastance is usually expressed as its reciprocal, compliance (i.e., change in volume per unit change in pressure). This leads to an alternate form of Eq. (41.28), expressing the relationships of the compliant components of the total respiratory system (C_{rs}), lungs (C_L), and chest wall (C_{cw}):

$$\frac{1}{C_{rs}} = \frac{1}{C_L} + \frac{1}{C_{cw}} \qquad (41.29)$$

Factors that increase total respiratory or lung elastance (or likewise reduce the corresponding total respiratory or lung compliance) include consolidation, pulmonary edema, pneumothorax, atelectasis, interstitial disease, pneumonectomy or surgical resection, lung overdistension, and mainstem intubation. Lung compliance generally increases in emphysema. Factors that reduce chest wall compliance are abdominal distension, abdominal compartment syndrome, chest wall edema, thoracic deformity, muscle tone, and extensive thoracic or abdominal scar (e.g., from burns); C_{cw} is reduced with muscle relaxation and flail chest.

In some situations, the magnitude of V_T, relative to the functional lung size, may be such that the linear dependence of P_E on V (Eq. [41.24] and [41.25]) is no longer an accurate description of the pressure-volume (PV) relationship of the lungs and/or chest wall. In these cases, elastic pressure may be more accurately described by a quadratic relationship with volume[232a,232b]:

$$P_E = E_1 V + E_2 V^2 \qquad (41.30)$$

in which E_1 and E_2 denote the so-called volume-independent and volume-dependent components of elastance, respectively, since P_E will be reduced to E_1V when E_2 is negligible (Eq. [41.23]). An advantage of using Equation 41.30 is that it readily allows for the determination of the percentage of volume-dependent elastance contributing to P_E[232c]:

$$\%\,E_2 = \frac{E_2 V_T}{E_1 + E_2 V_T} \times 100\,\% \qquad (41.31)$$

Since the $\%E_2$ index quantifies the deviation of linearity between P_E and V, it may provide quantitative information on the degree of intratidal recruitment or overdistention occurring during a mechanical breath.[232d] For example, positive values of $\%E_2$ (see Fig. 41.18*A*) indicate a convex P_E-V relationship, with probable overdistention occurring for $\%E_2$ greater than 30%.[232c] By contrast, negative values of $\%E_2$ (see Fig. 41.18*C*) indicate concave P_E-V relationship, with likely intratidal recruitment occurring during the breath.[232e]

For the special case of constant inspiratory flow during volume-cycled ventilation, the curvature of the inspiratory pressure-time profile can also be used to infer the processes of intratidal recruitment and overdistention. Raneiri and associates[232f] described this relationship using a simple power law expression:

$$P = at^b + c \qquad (41.32)$$

where, similar to Eq. (41.24), P may refer to either transrespiratory or transpulmonary pressure, and t is time. The constants a, b, and c can be estimated from the inspiratory pressure profile using various nonlinear regression techniques.[232g] The exponent b is referred to as the "stress

---

[†] Certain conventions of nomenclature incorrectly define dynamic elastance as the *peak* airway pressure divided by tidal volume. However, such a definition of dynamic elastance includes both resistive *and* elastic pressures, and thus is not an index of purely elastic processes.

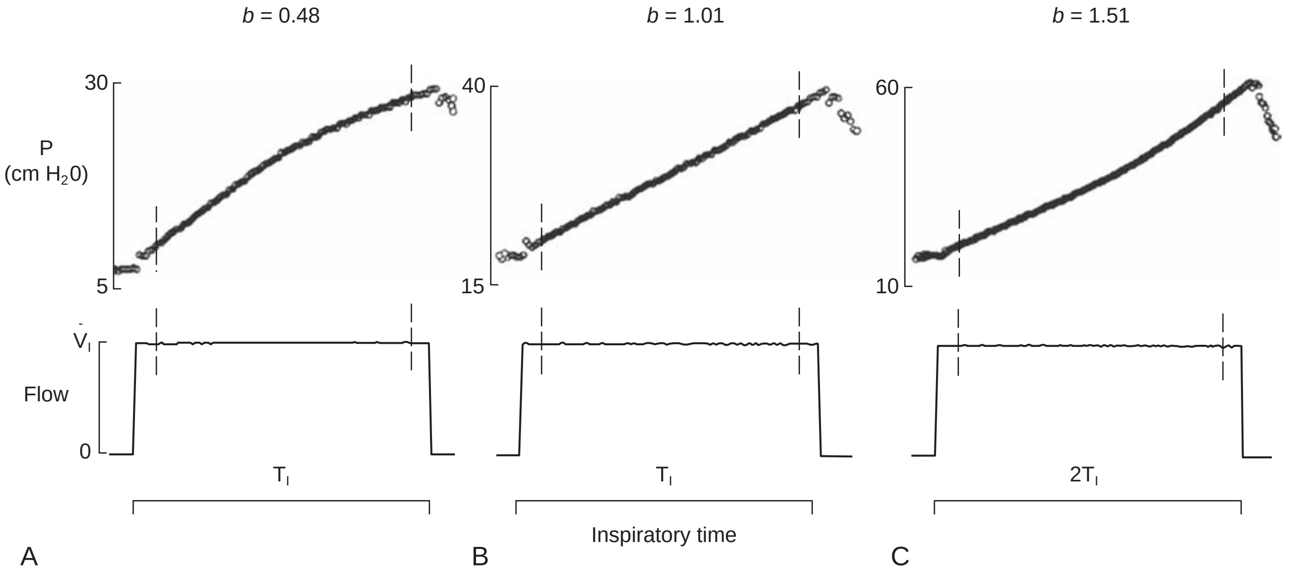


Fig. 41.19 Conceptual example of the stress index during constant inspiratory flow levels of $\dot{V}_I$ over durations of T_I and $2T_I$, assuming that the power law $P = at^b + c$ can describe the pressure-time (P-t) curve. (A) b <1.0, yielding a convex P-t curve, suggesting the dominance of intratidal recruitment; (B) b ~ 1.0, yielding a straight P-t line, suggesting minimal recruitment or overdistension; and (C) b >1.0, yielding a concave P-t curve, suggesting the dominance of parenchymal overdistension. (Modified from Ranieri VM, Zhang H, Mascia L, et al. Pressure-time curve predicts minimally injurious ventilatory strategy in an isolated rat lung model. *Anesthesiology.* 2000:93:1320–1328.)

index," and its estimated value characterizes the convexity (b <1.0), concavity (b >1.0), or linearity (b = 1.0) of the inspiratory pressure with time (Fig. 41.19). Similar to %E_2, b may also provide some insight into the relative contributions of intratidal recruitment (b <1.0) and parenchymal overdistention (b >1.0) to inspiratory pressure, or when these processes may be appropriately balanced (b ~ 1). However, as noted, the stress index is only interpretable during volume-cycled with constant inspiratory flows, in contrast to the %E_2 index, which can be used during other ventilatory modalities.[232h] Moreover, the interpretation of the stress index may be obscured during certain clinical situations, such as abdominal insufflation, abdominal compartment syndrome, or pleural effusion.[232i,j,k]

Similar to Eq. (41.27) to estimate R_{rs}, linear approximations to respiratory system elastance (E_{rs}) can be easily determined during volume-cycled ventilation for periods of zero-flow (i.e., during an end-inspiratory pause, when resistive pressures are zero) as the difference between P_{plat} and PEEP (i.e., the elastic pressure P_E) divided by the V_T:

$$E_{rs} = \frac{P_{plat} - PEEP}{V_T} = \frac{P_E}{V_T} \qquad (41.33)$$

Since the value of E_{rs} in Eq. (41.33) is obtained during zero-flow, it is often referred to as "static elastance." The corresponding static C_{rs} is usually between 50 and 100 mL/cm H_2O in normal mechanically ventilated lungs. Alterations in P_E for a specified V_T may be observed during processes that alter lung or chest wall elastance, such as a pneumothorax during thoracotomy or abdominal insufflation during laparoscopic surgical procedures (Fig. 41.20, *right panel*). In contrast to static E_{rs}, dynamic E_{rs} is estimated during periods of nonzero-flow by using multiple linear regression techniques (see later), and is higher than static elastance because of viscoelasticity[222] and gas redistribution.[233] Both the apparent static or dynamic E_{rs} will decrease following a recruitment maneuver because of an increase in aerated or functional lung volume. However, E_{rs} may also be increased due to *strain stiffening* of the lung tissues,[233a] in which collagen fibers within the extracellular matrix of the parenchyma become progressively recruited with increasing strain. Recruitment of stiff collagen fibers results in their dominance of load-bearing within the lung, in contrast to the more stretchable elastin fibers that are the main load-bearing elements during low levels of tissue strain.[233b] Such behavior may allow for titration of PEEP to achieve an optimal balance between intratidal recruitment and parenchymal overdistention—that is, the PEEP for which E_{rs} is minimized or, equivalently, C_{rs} is maximized.[232b,c,233c-f] The clinical utility of such PEEP titration in patients with ARDS is still not entirely established.[233e,233g]

Finally, inertial pressures are associated with the kinetic energy of accelerating the gas column in the central airways, as well as the motion of the respiratory tissues.[234] Inertial pressures are typically expressed as the product of a lumped "inertia" parameter and volume acceleration (Eq. [41.25]). Inertia is usually not a significant contributor to the apparent airway pressure or the work of breathing, except during sudden changes in air flow, as may occur during inspiratory step profiles or various modalities of high-frequency ventilation (HFV).[235,235a,b]

Eqs. (41.27) and (41.33) cannot be used to estimate R_{rs} and E_{rs} if an end-inspiratory pause is not present in the ventilator waveform. This is because one cannot easily separate the resistive and elastic pressures by visual inspection alone. For example, during pressure-controlled ventilation (PCV), the airway opening is exposed to a constant inflation pressure during inspiration (Fig. 41.21). Airway flow and V_T during PCV are determined not by the ventilator, but rather by the gradient between airway and alveolar pressures. Thus a more robust method of estimating respiratory

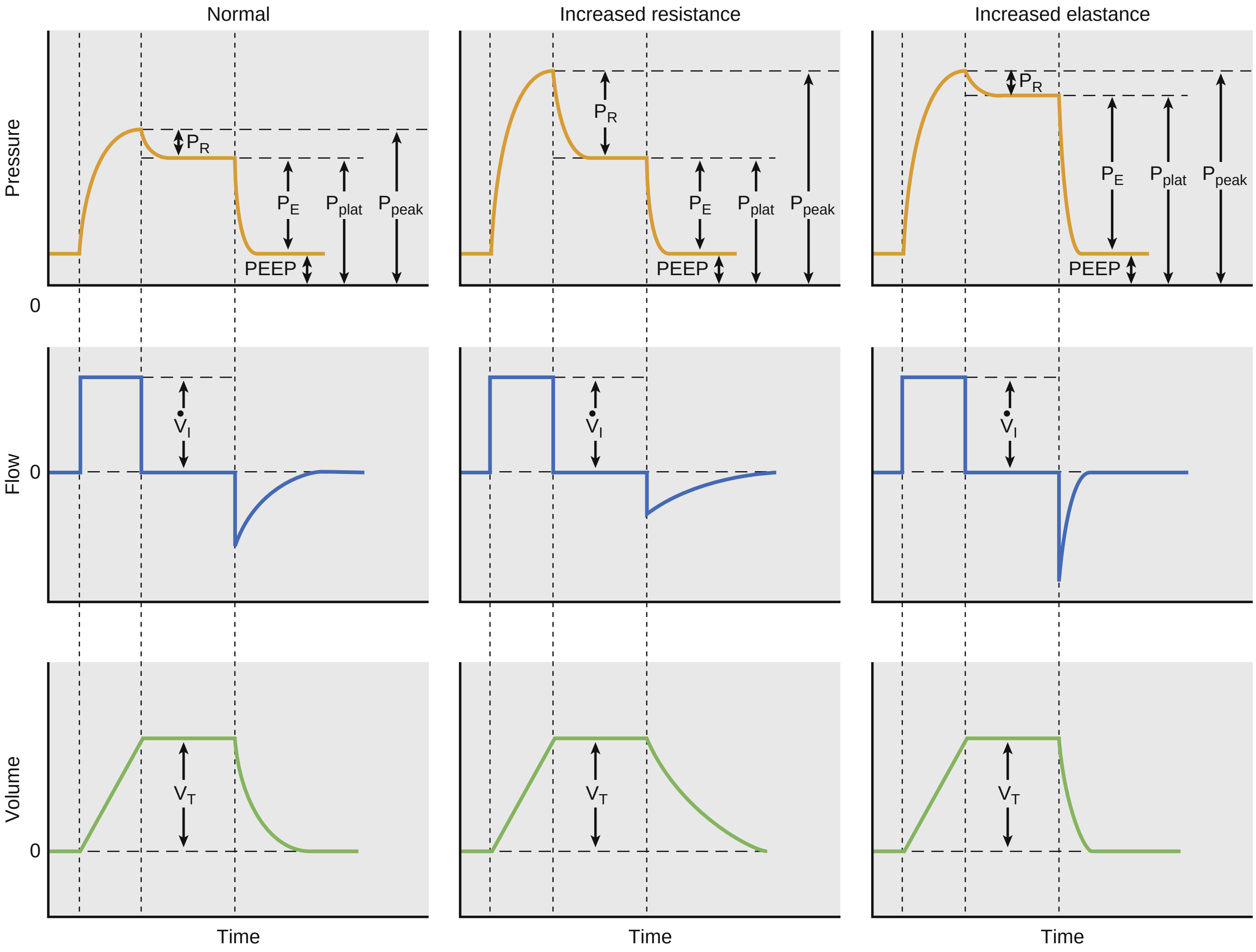


Fig. 41.20 Airway pressure, flow, and volume waveforms during constant-flow volume-cycled ventilation with an end-inspiratory pause. The components of the peak inspiratory pressure *(P_{peak})* and the plateau pressure *(P_{plat})* are presented: *P_R*, resistive pressure; *P_E*, elastic pressure; and *PEEP*, positive end-expiratory pressure. The same peak flow ($\dot{V}_I$) and tidal volume *(V_T)* are delivered by the mechanical ventilator in each case. Leftmost panels represent waveforms in a healthy patient. There is a small resistive pressure component, with most of the peak pressure comprised of elastic pressure. Expiratory flow decreases to zero before the start of the next inspiration, indicating appropriate I:E ratio and the absence of slowly emptying lung regions. Volume, as the integral of flow, also returns to zero before the initiation of the next breath. Middle panels represent waveforms in a patient with an increase in airways resistance. There is a significant increase in the resistive component P_R, and consequently P_{peak}. The elastic component is unchanged, as reflected in identical P_{plat} as compared with the healthy condition. Because increased resistance slows the process of lung emptying, the expiratory phase of the flow and volume curves now take longer to reach the zero. In several cases, the zero will not be reached, and a change in the I:E ratio will be necessary to avoid volume trapping and auto-PEEP. Rightmost panels represent a subject with increased P_E, as may occur during laparoscopic insufflation or pneumothorax. There is an increase in P_{plat} consistent with the increased elastance of the respiratory system, and a fast emptying of the lungs during exhalation.

R_{rs} and E_{rs} involves multiple linear regression of the coefficients in Eq. (41.25) on sampled flow and pressure data.[236-238] Such numerical approaches are present in commercially available respiratory mechanics monitors, and they can be used on almost all ventilator waveforms. Moreover, estimates of mechanical properties based on linear regression are not restricted to volume- or time-cycled waveforms with an end-inspiratory pause. One can separately estimate R_{rs} and E_{rs} during the inspiratory and expiratory phases, which may be different in some patients because of dynamic airway compression or derecruitment.[239,240]

Dynamic estimates of total respiratory R_{rs} and E_{rs} based on positive airway opening pressures are valid only during controlled modes of ventilation when the chest wall is relaxed. Although this is certainly the case during general anesthesia with neuromuscular blockade, the situation is more complicated during spontaneous breathing or assisted modes of ventilation. In such situations, the mechanics of the chest wall can be accounted for, if transpulmonary pressure is estimated using esophageal manometry, as described later.

STATIC RESPIRATORY MECHANICS

As previously illustrated, elastance (or compliance) is most easily measured during periods of zero flow because during these conditions the measured distending pressure is exclusively associated with elastic processes. However, a

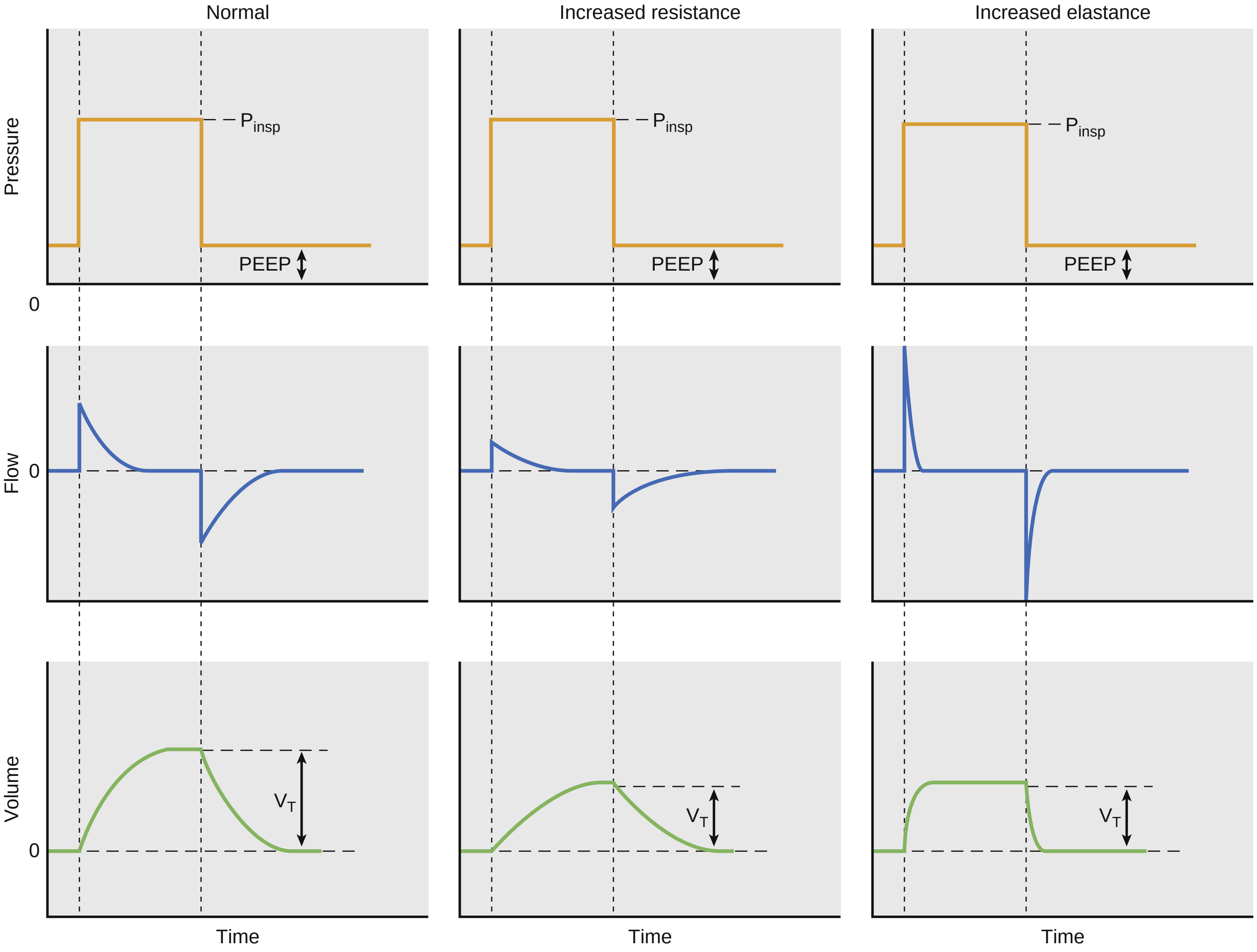


Fig. 41.21 Airway pressure, flow, and volume waveforms during pressure-controlled ventilation for the same patients depicted in Fig. 41.18. In this ventilatory mode, the ventilator delivers a fixed pressure during the inspiratory phase, irrespective of the resistance and compliance. Airflow and tidal volume will consequently change with changes in those parameters. Leftmost panels represent waveforms in a patient with normal lungs. Middle panels represent waveforms in a patient with airway obstruction. Note the absence of a peak-plateau difference as compared with the volume-controlled mode, a lower V_T, and a prolonged time for airflow to reach zero during exhalation as compared to the normal patient. Rightmost panels represent a subject with increased elastance, as may occur during laparoscopic insufflation or pneumothorax. Note a reduction in V_T and a shorter time to reach zero flow consistent with a more rigid lung. *PEEP,* positive end-expiratory pressure; P_{insp}, inspiratory pressure; V_T, tidal volume.

more comprehensive characterization of elastance can be obtained by plotting cumulative inspired or expired lung volume against the distending pressure across the lungs or total respiratory system. This quasi-static PV curve can be constructed during very slow inflations or deflations[241] (when resistive pressures are negligible), or during periodic flow occlusions.[242] For example, the expiratory limb of the PV curve can be constructed by inflating the lungs to a specified volume (usually total lung capacity) and then allowing a passive deflation with flow interruptions of 1 to 2 seconds.

The quasi-static PV curves of the lungs or total respiratory system are inherently nonlinear (Fig. 41.22); that is, compliance, defined as the local slope (dP/dV) of the PV curve, varies with lung volume. Empirically, PV curves are described using single exponential[243] or sigmoidal[244] functions. When they are described using sigmoidal functions, two points are usually demarcated on such curves, which have traditionally been termed the upper inflection point (UIP) and lower inflection point (LIP)[‡] The UIP is thought to represent the point at which lung overdistention occurs, as during parenchymal strain-stiffening,[220] The LIP is thought to reflect the process of maximum alveolar recruitment. During protective ventilation, one seeks to ventilate a patient in the most linear region of the PV curve.

Enough PEEP needs to be applied to avoid the LIP, where cyclic recruitment and derecruitment occur, along with lower V_Ts to avoid the UIP and overdistention.[242] Also, PV curves exhibit hysteresis, a phenomenon in which the lung volume at a specified pressure depends on the direction from which the distending pressure is approached (i.e., either inspiration or expiration). The reasons that the PV curve of the lungs or total respiratory system exhibits hysteresis are numerous and complex, and include the biophysical

---

[‡] The formal mathematical definition of an inflection point is a point on a curve at which its concavity (i.e., its second derivative) changes sign from positive to negative or vice versa.

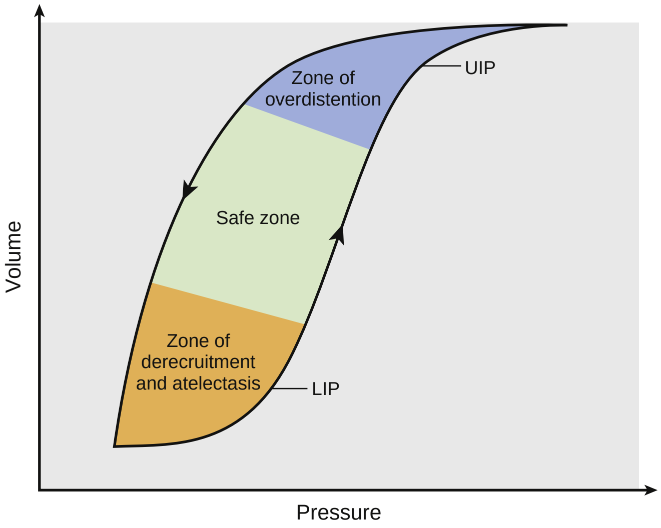


Fig. 41.22 Schematic of a pressure–volume curve for the lungs or total respiratory system, demonstrating hysteresis between inspiratory and expiratory limbs. Upper inflection point *(UIP)* and lower inflection point *(LIP)* are demarcated on the inspiratory limb. During mechanical ventilation, lung regions should be in the Safe Zone for optimal lung protection.

properties of surfactant,[245] time-dependent recruitment or derecruitment,[246] as well as contact friction among various connective tissue elements.[247]

There are a number of problems with managing ventilation based on quasi-static PV curves. First, PV curves are constructed only during periods of zero flow or near zero flow, and they do not reflect the mechanics of the lungs or total respiratory system during the dynamic processes of breathing or mechanical ventilation. In fact, the dynamic PV relationships for the same patient may be very different. Second, the UIP and LIP are not always visually apparent. Finally, a PV curve for the lungs or total respiratory system represents the averaged static behavior of a population of many lung units, with each operating on different portions of their own individual PV curves.

WORK OF BREATHING AND MECHANICAL POWER

The work of breathing (W) represents the energy required to inflate or deflate the lungs, or chest wall, or both, by a specified volume. In its simplest form, it can be represented as the product of the applied distending pressure and resulting volume change:

$$W = PV \qquad (41.34)$$

However, when pressure and volume vary as functions of time (as during the course of a spontaneous or controlled breath), work may be expressed as the cumulative product[248]

$$W = \int PdV \qquad (41.35)$$

or equivalently as the integral of the pressure-flow product with respect to time[249]

$$W = \int_{t=0}^{T} P(t)\,\dot{V}(t)\,dt \qquad (41.36)$$

where T is the duration over which W is determined. For example, if T corresponds to the duration of inspiratory period and P the transpulmonary pressure, then W corresponds to the work required to overcome both the resistive and elastic forces opposing the entry of air into the lungs (Fig. 41.23). If T corresponds to the duration of an entire breath, the energy initially stored in the elastic recoil of the lung tissues will be recovered during a passive exhalation. In this case, the area of the resulting PV loop represents the work performed (i.e., energy lost) overcoming purely resistive losses in the airways and tissues. In general, W is assessed during inspiration only because the respiratory musculature (or a ventilator) must overcome both elastic and resistive pressures to bring air into the lungs. For a given V_T, W varies as a function of respiratory rate and, in most cases, achieves a minimum at a specified frequency. This frequency is termed the *energetically optimum breathing frequency*,[249] as this is the rate at which energy expenditure is minimized. The derivative of W with respect to time is referred to as the *instantaneous mechanical power*, P,

$$P = \frac{dW}{dt} \qquad (41.37)$$

which, based on Eq. (41.31), can simply be expressed as the pressure-flow product with respect to time:

$$P(t) = P(t)\,\dot{V}(t) \qquad (41.38)$$

Mechanical power, as an index of the *rate* of energy dissipation, can be used to assess the risk of developing ventilator-induced lung injury,[249a] particularly with changes in transpulmonary pressure during ventilation.[249b] Moreover, if the relationship between pressure and flow during ventilation can be described by relatively simple mathematical expressions (e.g., Eqs. [41.25]–[41.27]), the mechanical power likewise can be embodied by simple analytic formulæ.[249c,d]

MONITORING OF RESPIRATORY PRESSURES

Fundamental to any quantitative assessment of respiratory mechanics is the measurement of pressure. Such pressures may include those measured in the inspiratory or expiratory limb of the anesthesia machine, at the proximal end of an ETT, or within the trachea or esophagus. Pressure allows for the inference of the forces associated with the movement of gases through the airway tree, as well as the distension of the parenchymal tissues and chest wall, according to the elements described in Eq. (41.24). The most accessible and familiar pressure to the anesthesiologist or intensivist is the airway pressure during controlled mechanical ventilation. Ideally, this should be the pressure measured in the trachea or at the airway opening, exclusive of any distortions from airway devices or breathing circuits. However, for practical reasons, this “airway” pressure is not the actual pressure at the airway opening or within the trachea, but is the pressure transduced at the anesthesia machine or ventilator and reflects the resistive and compliant properties of the breathing circuit and face mask or ETT, as well as the mechanical properties of the respiratory system. Although many ventilators now use computer algorithms to provide some compensation for flow and pressure losses in the breathing circuit,[250] such approaches often rely on idealized, linear models that do not truly reflect the complex

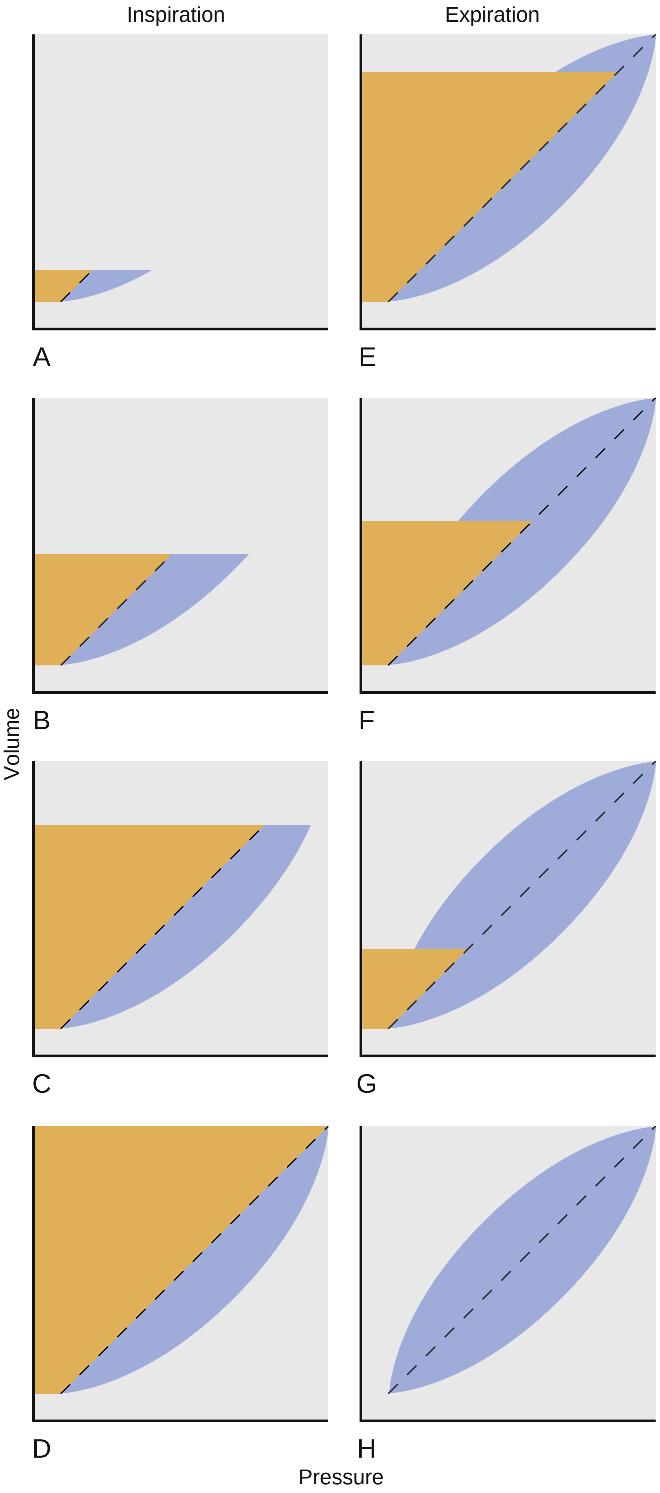


Fig. 41.23 Volume plotted against transpulmonary or (transrespiratory) pressure during the course of a single breath. Plots are shown during inspiration (panels A through D) and expiration (panels E through H). *Gray area* denotes the work of breathing due to tissue elasticity, while the *hatched area* denotes the work of breathing due to airways and tissue resistance. Energy stored in elastic recoil at the end of inspiration will be entirely recovered during expiration. However, resistive energy will always be lost during both inspiration and expiration.

processes of turbulent air flow, polytropic gas compression, or viscoelastic tubing walls.[251,252] Therefore, one must use caution when making physiologic inferences based on airway pressures and volumes reported by a ventilator.

Often airway pressure is improperly used as a surrogate for lung distention. *Transrespiratory pressure* refers to the pressure drop across the lungs and chest wall, which during positive-pressure ventilation is usually determined by the difference between airway pressure and atmospheric pressure. Several processes that may contribute to increased transrespiratory pressure do not correspond to excessive lung inflation. For example, obesity, abdominal insufflation, or steep Trendelenburg position all may contribute to high airway opening pressures, but they do not necessarily indicate parenchymal overdistention.

By contrast, *transpulmonary pressure* refers to the distending pressure across the lungs alone. Its determination requires not only measurement of airway opening pressure, but also estimates of the pressure within the pleural space. This can be obtained relatively noninvasively using an esophageal balloon catheter, because the pressure measured within the esophagus is relatively close to intrapleural pressure.[253,253a] Such catheters are typically 100 cm long, with side holes in the distal tip covered by a thin-walled balloon (Fig. 41.24). The catheter can be placed through the mouth or nares and positioned in the middle-to-distal third of the esophagus. The catheter is connected to a transducer by a three-way stopcock, and a small amount of air is injected into the balloon such that its walls remain flaccid and do not contribute an additional recoil pressure to the measurement. Because the local values of pleural pressure vary depending on gravity, the balloon should be several centimeters in length to provide an average estimate of the pressure field surrounding the lungs. Estimating pleural pressure based on esophageal manometry has several limitations, including mediastinal compression of the balloon in supine patients, catheter migration, and cardiac artifact on the tracing.[254,255] Nonetheless, its use in critically ill patients and under certain special conditions such as obesity, abdominal hypertension (primary or during laparoscopic insufflation), and extreme Trendelenburg position may be valuable in the adjustment of appropriate levels of PEEP.[256,256a] Peak and plateau pressures, which are typical in clinical practice, are obtained from the *transrespiratory* pressure. Accordingly, they do not characterize the pressures acting exclusively on the lungs, but on the whole respiratory system. Current recommendations suggest limiting transrespiratory plateau pressures to 26 to 30 cm H_2O, to minimize alveolar overdistension.[257] However, such recommendations should be applied in appropriate clinical context, given that the same plateau pressure could correspond to very different transpulmonary pressures, and consequently to very different degrees of risk for lung injury, depending on the partitioning between lung and chest wall pressure components.[257a,b]

More recent studies suggest that the “driving pressure”—that is, the V_T normalized by the respiratory system compliance ($\Delta P = V_T/C_{rs}$)—may be one of the most important ventilatory variables to consider when stratifying mortality risk during ARDS.[257c,d] Its relationship to postoperative pulmonary complications in surgical patients has also been demonstrated.[258,259] In practice, driving pressure may be computed as the difference between P_{plat} and PEEP.[257c]

Auto-PEEP or *intrinsic-PEEP* is the positive pressure present within the alveoli at end-exhalation and is typically observed in ventilated patients with COPD, who demonstrate dynamic airway compression and expiratory flow limitation, as well as a significant portion of patients with ARDS, sepsis, and respiratory muscle weakness.[260] Auto-PEEP can promote significant respiratory and hemodynamic compromise. It is usually caused by a combination of increased airway resistance and reduced lung elastic recoil (i.e., an increase in the expiratory time constant of the respiratory system). Other factors are a decrease in expiratory time, an increase in V_T, an increase in external expiratory resistance, and persistent inspiratory muscle activity during exhalation. The amount of auto-PEEP can be estimated in mechanically ventilated patients by occluding the airway at end exhalation, and observing a rise in airway pressure during the occlusion maneuver until a plateau is visible (<4 seconds) (Fig. 41.25). Auto-PEEP is then defined as the difference between end-occlusion to preocclusion airway pressures. Other methods can be used to assess auto-PEEP under dynamic conditions, as well as in spontaneously breathing patients with the use of an esophageal balloon.[260,261]

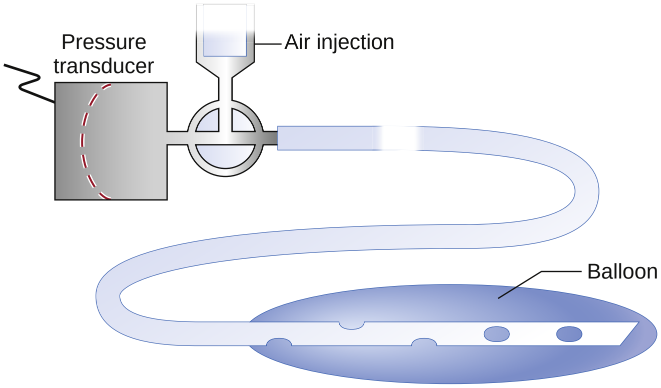


Fig. 41.24 Example of an Esophageal Balloon Catheter. The proximal end of the catheter is connected to a pressure transducer, and air is injected into the balloon via a three-way stopcock. (Modified from Bates JHT. *Lung Mechanics: an Inverse Modeling Approach*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2009:220.)

Any measurement of pressure requires pressure transducers. Most pressure transducers are differential sensors with two input channels, and they produce an electrical output that is proportional to the pressure difference between these channels (Fig. 41.26*A*). Such transducers exhibit a high common-mode rejection ratio, defined as the tendency of the transducer to produce zero output if both of its inputs are exposed to identical pressures. Many pressure waveforms are transduced relative to atmosphere with one of the two inputs left opened to ambient air (see Fig. 41.26*B*), otherwise referred to as gauge configuration. In clinical settings, pressure is most commonly measured using relatively inexpensive, piezoresistive transducers.[222] These devices rely on a pressure-sensing diaphragm

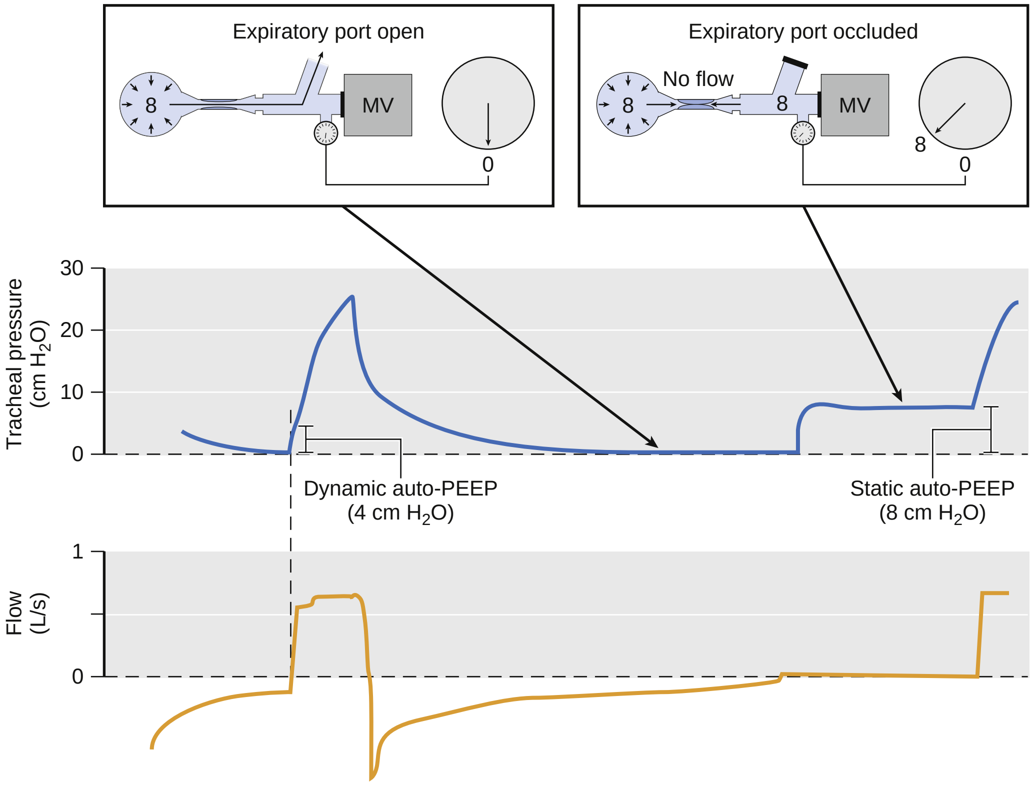


Fig. 41.25 Concept of Intrinsic Positive End-Expiratory Pressure (auto-PEEP). Shown are tracheal pressure and flow waveforms during controlled mechanical ventilation. Dynamic auto-PEEP can be estimated at the beginning of inspiration as the tracheal pressure when the flow trace equals zero. Static auto-PEEP can be estimated as the tracheal pressure following a prolonged expiratory occlusion. (Modified from Blanch L, Bernabé F, Lucangelo U. Measurement of air trapping, intrinsic positive end-expiratory pressure, and dynamic hyperinflation in mechanically ventilated patients. *Respir Care*. 2005;50:110–123; and Moon RE, Camporesi EM. Respiratory monitoring. In: Miller RD, Fleisher LA, Johns RA, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 6th ed. New York, NY: Churchill Livingstone; 2005:1255, 1295.)

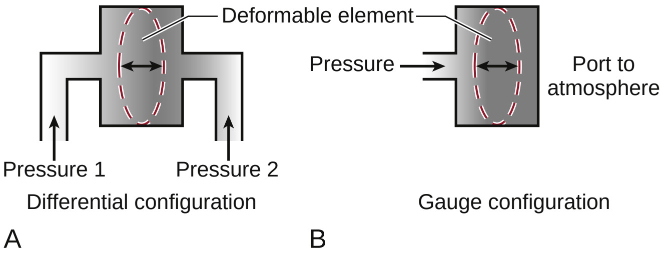


Fig. 41.26 Pressure transducers arranged in differential (A) or gauge (B) configurations. (Modified from Bates JHT. *Lung Mechanics: An Inverse Modeling Approach*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2009:220.)

whose electrical resistance changes when it is deformed in response to a differential pressure. This change in electrical resistance can be sensed with a standard Wheatstone bridge circuit, which produces an output-voltage signal appropriate for amplification and filtering. In general, piezoresistive transducers have adequate frequency responses sufficient for most respiratory applications.[262,263] However, this frequency response can be easily degraded if the transducer is connected to the pressure-sensing location with long, compliant tubing.[264]

MONITORING OF RESPIRATORY FLOWS

Ideally, any measurement of flow should indicate the exact rate at which gas is entering and leaving the patient's lungs. This can be most easily accomplished by placing the flow-measuring device as close to the patient as possible, such as between the circuit Y-connector and the proximal end of the ETT or LMA. However, for practical reasons, most ventilators and anesthesia machines measure flow close to the machine console. This flow can be considerably different from that close to the patient because of the effects of gas compression, wall distention of the breathing circuit, and changes in gas humidity.

An important clinical use of flow monitoring is the detection of nonzero end-expiratory flows. This indicates that a gradient of pressure exists between alveolar regions and the upper airway with incomplete lung emptying at end-expiration, characteristic of auto-PEEP (PVolFl-7). As a consequence, end-expiratory lung volumes would be larger than those in the absence of auto-PEEP, with risk of dynamic lung hyperinflation and reduction of venous return. Increase in expiratory time and reduction of V_T or respiratory rate should be considered to eliminate the issue.

During ventilation, airway flow can often be inferred according to time-dependent changes in delivered or inspired V_T or from the displacement waveform of a piston or cylinder arrangement or bellows.[265-267] Preferably, flow is measured using transducers designed specifically for this task. The most common method involves the measurement of a differential pressure decrease (ΔP) across a fluid resistive element. Ideally, this ΔP is linearly related to the corresponding flow through the device. Such a principle forms the basis for one of the oldest and most widely used flowmeters, the pneumotachograph. Although the instruments provide accurate measurement of flow, pneumotachographs are very sensitive to changes in temperature, humidity, and gas composition,[268] and require frequent calibration using various electronic or software-based techniques to ensure accurate measurements.[269,270] This sensitivity, combined with difficulties in cleaning and sterilization, limits the routine use of these instruments in clinical environments. Orifice flowmeters also have the advantage of having relatively large internal diameters that limit the formation of condensation and minimize obstruction with secretions. Given that these devices can be manufactured using inexpensive plastic injection molding techniques, many orifice flowmeters are designed to be disposable, thus making their use increasingly popular for respiratory applications in clinical environments.[271]

Most anesthesia machines use hot wire anemometers for flow measurement,[272] which rely on temperature-dependent changes in the electrical resistance of a current carrying wire. When gas flows past the wire, the corresponding temperature drop changes the conductivity of the filament, which can be sensed with appropriate electronic circuits.[273] Because a single wire filament cannot sense the direction of flow, two different anemometers can be used in the ventilator circuit: one for the inspiratory limb, and the other for the expiratory limb. Alternatively, two wires in series must be used for sensing bidirectional flow through a single conduit,[274] with the flow direction determined according to which wire is cooled first. In general, hot wire anemometers have a better dynamic response compared with pneumotachographs or orifice flowmeters,[275] making them ideal for flow measurement during HFV.[235a,276] However, these devices must also be calibrated to account for variations in gas density or humidity as well.[276a]

MONITORING OF RESPIRATORY VOLUME

Similar to flow measurement, the ideal measurement of volume should be an accurate accounting of the gas quantity moving into and out of the patient. However, delivered or exhaled V_T measurement is subjected to the same limitations of flow measurement because most anesthesia machines and ventilators determine volume by electrically or numerically integrating the corresponding flow signal.[222] Care must be taken to ensure any drifts or offsets from the flow transducer are minimized, given that their integration will result in errors in estimated volume. This may be accomplished by appropriately zeroing the transducer periodically, such as at the end of a breath. Although electronic or digital high-pass filters may be used to remove drifts and offsets in real-time, these tend to have long transient responses.[276b,c]

Finally, besides the pathophysiologic and monitoring applications described in this section, monitoring of pressures, volumes, and flows has been applied to monitoring, training, and education for neonatal resuscitation.[277]

Plethysmographic Monitoring

Respiratory inductance plethysmography (RIP) is a noninvasive respiratory monitoring technique that quantifies changes in the cross-sectional area of the chest wall and the abdominal compartments. The method is used to assess V_T, respiratory rate, adequacy of high-frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV), lung volume changes during tracheobronchial suctioning, and thoracoabdominal synchrony.[278] RIP relies on the principle that a current applied through a loop of wire generates a magnetic field normal to the orientation of the loop (Faraday's law) and that a change in the area enclosed by the loop creates an opposing current within the loop directly proportional to the change in the area (Lenz's law). Two elastic bands containing a conductor are used: one typically placed around the patient's chest, 3 cm above the xiphoid process; and the other around the abdomen. Each of these bands produces an independent signal representative of the thoracic and abdominal cross-sectional area, and the sum of these two signals calibrated against a known gas volume yields lung volume change.

There have been several pediatric applications of RIP to monitor V_T and respiratory rate, building on the advantage that a facemask, LMA, or ETT is not required for measurements.[279-281] The technique could also guide lung-protective ventilation strategies by facilitating the construction of PV curves for individual patients. These can be used to optimize lung recruitment, maintain an open lung, and limit overdistension (see the section on "Static Respiratory Mechanics"). RIP has found several applications in sleep studies.

Intraoperatively, RIP may be useful in areas for which accurate monitoring of V_T is required but not possible with the usual anesthesia machine monitors. This could occur with a shared airway (e.g., laryngotracheal surgery,[282] flexible and rigid bronchoscopy[283]), or a patient whose trachea is not intubated (e.g., monitored anesthesia care and noninvasive pressure support ventilation).

Limitations of intraoperative RIP include the fact that it cannot be used during thoracic and abdominal surgery, because of the need for the measurement bands. Also, the calibration characteristics of the device are affected by changes in the pattern of breathing.[284]

Respiratory Rate Monitoring: Apnea Monitoring

Apnea and bradypnea are life-threatening events frequently observed in the intraoperative and postoperative periods of anesthesia. Prematurity, morbid obesity, age, obstructive sleep apnea, and central nervous system depressant medications have been associated with risk of apnea or bradypnea.[285,286] Accordingly, many different approaches have been developed for detecting those events.[287,288] Two main types of apnea are observed: central and obstructive. Central apnea is defined as apnea resulting from a failure of the central nervous system to drive respiration. Obstructive apnea is that resulting from upper airway obstruction. Current monitors assess at least one of three processes occurring during breathing to detect apnea[288]: chest wall expansion, gas flow, and gas exchange.

Chest wall expansion is usually measured as follows:

1. Changes in thoracic electrical impedance (impedance pneumography) of the chest wall. The method is based on the changes in electrical conductivity of the chest to an electrical current as air moves in and out of the lungs during breathing and blood volume changes in the same period. This is because air is a poor electrical conductor and blood is a good electrical conductor. A low electrical current at high frequency is applied in two chest electrodes, corresponding changes in voltage of the chest are measured, and the impedance is continuously calculated from these. The technique is implemented in several commercial systems using routine electrocardiographic leads and is also used in home monitoring of neonatal apnea.
2. Inductive plethysmography (as described earlier).
3. Abdominal and chest fiberoptic and resistive strain gauges (a pressure pad placed alongside the infant's rib cage, pneumatic abdominal sensors) are used.
4. Electromyographic signal of respiratory muscles is not frequently used because of the low signal-to-noise ratio.

An important drawback of techniques based on chest expansion is their inaccuracy in the presence of movement. Thus obstructive apnea may be falsely assessed as normal respirations.[289]

Gas flow methods are based on measurements of different variables directly related to the presence of air flow in the airway:

1. Pressure gradients along the breathing circuit. This approach uses the Poiseuille principle ($\Delta P = k \times V$) and differential pressure transducers to detect flow.
2. Temperature of the breathed air in the nose or mouth is used.
3. Rapid response hygrometer is based on assessment of humidity in the exhaled air.

Techniques based on gas exchange focus essentially on exhaled CO_2, as routinely used in intubated patients in the operating room. In nonintubated patients, the use of specifically designed cannulae combining DO_2 and breathed gas sampling facilitates the monitoring of exhaled CO_2. Capnography allows for early detection of respiratory depression before O_2 desaturation, particularly when supplemental O_2 is administered.[290,290a] Off-line or in-line infrared sensors are the most common technique. Respiratory rate measurements using these techniques were more accurate than those obtained with thoracic impedance tomography in extubated patients in postanesthesia care units, even with supplemental O_2 at high flows.[291] Accurate end-tidal CO_2 measurements through a nasal cannula may be difficult in mouth breathers, including obese patients and those with obstructive sleep apnea. In such cases, a nasal cannula with an oral guide may improve measurement accuracy.[292] Simulation studies indicated that respiratory rate can be accurately monitored during esophagogastroduodenoscopies using a CO_2 sampling bite block or a nasal cannula with oral cup. The accuracy of $P_{ET}CO_2$ measurements depends on the device used, O_2 flow, the intensity of oral breathing, and minute ventilation.[293]

Pulse oximetry cannot be used as the primary monitor of apnea or bradypnea because O_2 desaturation occurs only late in a well-oxygenated apneic patient. However, pulse oximetry adds an additional level of safety combined with primary monitors of ventilation. For example, in a study using pulse oximetry and noninvasive capnography for continuous monitoring of 178 patients receiving patient-controlled analgesia, respiratory depression measured by O_2 desaturation occurred in 12% of the patients, in line with previous studies.[285] In contrast to previous estimates, episodes of bradypnea (respiratory rate < 10 breaths/min) were present in 41% of patients, far more frequently than the previously reported 1% to 2%.[294-296]

Respiratory rate monitoring is also critical to infant apnea monitoring. Combinations of transthoracic impedance and pulse oximetry may maximize the detection of true episodes of apnea in home monitors for neonatal apnea.[297] This is because pulse oximetry provides an additional level of monitoring in cases of poor performance of transthoracic impedance secondary to motion artifacts. The value of combining monitors of ventilation such as capnography with pulse oximetry to maximize the detection of alveolar hypoventilation has been confirmed.[298] Capnography allowed for early detection of arterial O_2 desaturation in cases of alveolar hypoventilation in the presence of supplemental O_2.

False-positive and false-negative alarms occur during apnea monitoring. The most dangerous conditions occur when artifacts are detected as breathing and alarms are not activated. Such artifacts include vibrations, cardiac motion, patient movement, and electromagnetic interference from other instrumentation. Impedance pneumographs are subject to cardiovascular artifacts, whereas pressure pads are subject to patient motion artifacts. A more common (yet less dangerous) problem is when an alarm sounds in a patient without apnea. Frequent causes include inadequate sensitivity settings, malfunctioning electrodes, and movement of the patient. Motion transducers based on sensing of acceleration were used in neonates undergoing HFOV, and results showed that monitoring of regional tidal displacement may enable the early recognition of deteriorating ventilation during HFOV that eventually leads to hypoxemia.[299] This study found that in approximately half of the cases, hypoxemia had causes other than slowly deteriorating ventilation.[299]

Current recommendations of the Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation for Essential Monitoring Strategies to Detect Clinically Significant Drug-Induced Respiratory Depression in the Postoperative Period (http://www.apsf.org/initiatives.php), including opioid-induced ventilatory impairment, state that continuous electronic monitoring of oxygenation and ventilation should be available and considered for all patients, not only those at risk for postoperative respiratory insufficiency. This is because selective monitoring is likely to miss respiratory depression in patients without risk factors. These recommendations stress that maintaining status quo while awaiting newer technology is not acceptable, and that intermittent "spot checks" of oxygenation (pulse oximetry) and ventilation (nursing assessment) are not adequate for reliably recognizing clinically significant evolving drug-induced respiratory depression. Continuous electronic monitoring should not replace traditional intermittent nursing assessment and vigilance. All patients should have oxygenation continuously monitored by pulse oximetry. Capnography or other monitoring modalities that measure ventilation and airflow are indicated when supplemental O_2 is needed to maintain acceptable O_2 saturations. The recommendations also call attention to threshold-based alarm limits on individual physiologic variables, which may result in failure to recognize early signs of progressive hypoventilation by either being insufficiently, or too, sensitive (excess false alarms).

Unexpected death has been associated with three patterns of respiratory depression.[300-302] (1) Hyperventilation compensated respiratory distress (e.g., from sepsis, pulmonary embolus, or congestive heart failure): patients present initially with stable S_pO_2 and decreasing P_aCO_2 as metabolic acidosis develops with associated compensatory hyperventilation. High respiratory rate is typical of this pattern. Ultimately, a slow desaturation is followed by an abrupt fall in oxygenation as the ventilatory response to worsening acidosis fails. (2) Progressive unidirectional hypoventilation or CO_2 narcosis: frequently due to opioid or other sedative overdose, it is characterized by a rise in P_aCO_2 (and $P_{ET}CO_2$) initially because of decreased minute ventilation, often while S_pO_2 remains above 90%. (3) Sentinel rapid airflow/O_2 saturation reduction with precipitous S_pO_2 fall: observed in patients with obstructive sleep apnea, who are dependent on the arousal state to maintain oxygenation. Sleep results in precipitous hypoxemia during apnea with potential sudden arrest.

Imaging for Respiratory Monitoring

Imaging as a monitoring technique provides tremendous insight into pulmonary structure, function, and inflammation in both health and disease.[303-305] However, exposure to radiation and bulky devices has prevented its use at the bedside. Technologic advances have led to the introduction of new modalities with more compact equipment for clinical use. This may herald an important shift in respiratory monitoring toward the increased use of bedside imaging. Such improvements come with the advantages of less radiation exposure, noninvasiveness, and more detailed physiologic information.

CHEST RADIOGRAPHY

Chest radiography has been the traditional imaging method to assess intrathoracic conditions in the operating room, postoperative anesthesia care unit, and ICUs. Anesthesiologists should be familiar with basic radiologic findings representative of important pulmonary conditions such as interstitial infiltrates, hyperinflation, pneumothorax, pleural effusion, and consolidation. The image during chest radiography, as well as computed tomography, is based on the physical principle that x-rays reaching a detector (e.g., film) depend on tissue absorption, which varies linearly with tissue density. However, radiation exposure restricts frequency of use. Furthermore, technical difficulties limit image quality. These difficulties include reduced resolution caused by patient movement during acquisition, and image distortion related to proximity of the x-ray beam source to the film/detector and posterior position of the film cassette.

ULTRASONOGRAPHY

Lung ultrasonography is a technique increasingly used in the perioperative, critical care, and emergency settings in adults and children.[306-309] Critical and systematic approaches have proven that important clinical information can be obtained with lung ultrasonography at levels

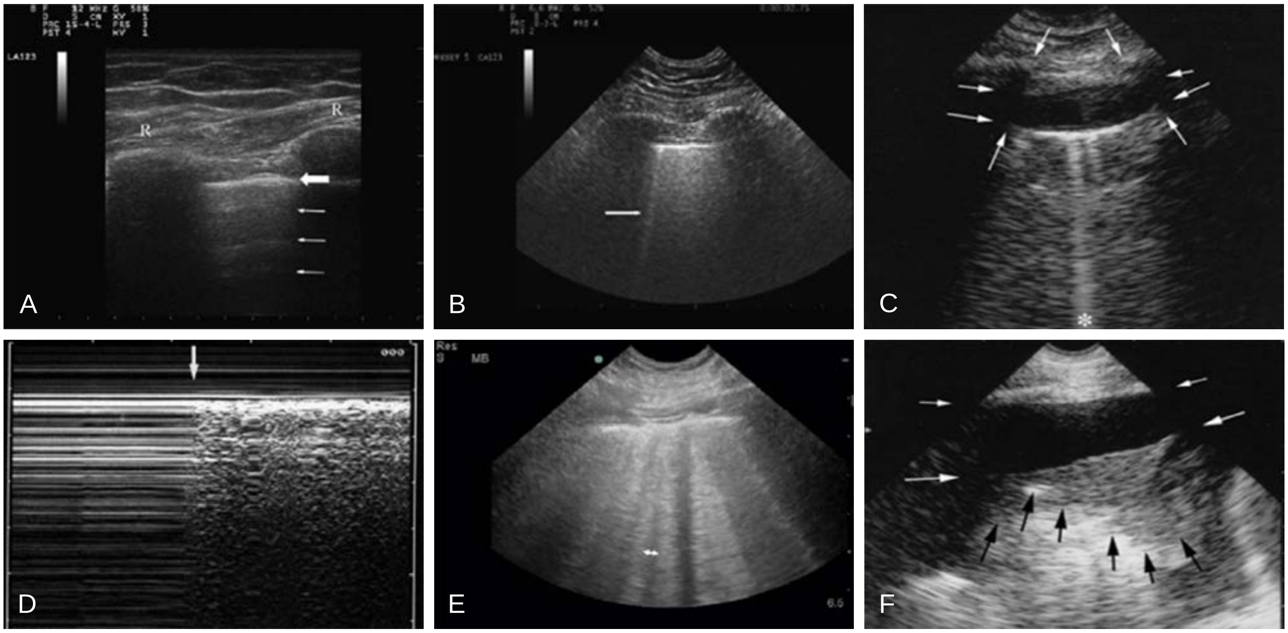


Fig. 41.27 (A) Typical thoracic view depicting adjacent ribs (R) producing acoustic shadowing. The white echogenic pleural line *(block arrow),* is approximately 0.5 cm below the ribs. A-line artifacts *(line arrows)* are seen at equidistant spaces below the pleural line; (B) B-line, or comet-tail artifact *(line arrow)*, is the hyperechoic artifact extending from the pleural line to the edge of the screen, erasing the A-line. A solitary B-line is a usual finding in normal lungs; (C) pleural effusion: image obtained at the posterolateral region showing the parietal pleural *(upper horizontal arrows)*, the rib shadows *(vertical arrows)*, and the visceral pleura (line indicated by the *lower horizontal arrows*) with the underlying lung. The dark anechoic region between the parietal and visceral pleura represents the pleural effusion. A B-line artifact *(asterisk)* originates from the lung and not from the pleural line, implying the presence of aeration; (D) M-mode of lung of lung ultrasound illustrative of the "lung point" for diagnosis of pneumothorax. The sudden inspiratory transition from a parallel line pattern indicative of absence of lung motion (pneumothorax) to a granular pattern indicative of lung tissue can be observed *(arrow)*; (E) Interstitial syndrome case showing B-lines 7 mm or less apart. Notice the increased number of B-lines as compared to panel (B). The pleural line *(arrow)* and ribs are also appreciated; (F) Lung consolidation with pleural effusion. As in (C), the image was obtained at the posterolateral region showing the parietal pleura *(upper horizontal arrows)* and the visceral pleura and lung *(lower horizontal arrows)* with an anechoic pleural effusion between them. Lung tissue denser than that presented in (C) with gas barriers *(vertical arrows)*. This indicates pleural fluid with alveolar fluid often seen in critically ill patients. ([A, B, D, E] From Turner JP, Dankoff J. Thoracic ultrasound. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2012;30:451–473, ix. [C, F] From Lichtenstein DA. BLUE-protocol and FALLS-protocol: two applications of lung ultrasound in the critically ill. *Chest*. 2015;147[6]:1659–1670. doi: 10.1378/chest.14-1313.)

comparable to computed tomography.[309] Such features add to the advantages of practicality, low cost, and absence of radiation or other significant biologic side effects. Excellent reviews have been published, and the reader should refer to those for additional learning.[308,309]

Lung ultrasonography has been applied successfully in the assessment of pneumothorax, interstitial syndrome (i.e., cardiogenic and permeability pulmonary edema), lung consolidation, and pleural effusion. Currently available multipurpose ultrasonography probes can be used for specific portions of the pulmonary exam according to their characteristics. For instance, the high-frequency (10-12 MHz) linear array probe allows for detailed examination of the pleura and superficial changes, such as pneumothorax. This probe's limitations include its size, which impedes access to larger areas of lung tissue because of the interference of the ribs, and high frequency, which limits assessment of deeper structures. A lower frequency (1-5 MHz) probe provides improved depth penetration and is used to assess supradiaphragmatic structures (pleural space, lung). To optimize lung visualization with a single probe, frequently probes with emission frequencies of 5 to 7 MHz are used and are usually small with a tip shaped so that an acoustic window on the lung parenchyma can be obtained on intercostal spaces. The 5 MHz microconvex probe is frequently favored,[306,307] although curvilinear and phased-array probes are also appropriate.[308]

When examining the patient, a methodical approach should be used to ensure comprehensive assessment of lung structure and function. The I-AIM (Indication, Acquisition, Interpretation, Medical Decision-Making) framework has been recently proposed for point of care lung ultrasound.[308] A complete exam involves the bilateral assessment of the anterior, lateral, and posterior lung. Although protocols vary, in the supine patient, each hemithorax should be assessed in at least six zones during emergencies: two anterior (separated by the third intercostal space), two lateral, and two posterior. In routine assessments, 8-zone and 12-zone protocols are most commonly used.[308,310,311] Because of the significant acoustic impedance differences between air, tissue, and bone (ribs), thoracic ultrasound is based primarily on characteristic artifacts and not only on the visualization of anatomic structures.[312] Videos of 1 to 2 breaths should be acquired to take advantage of the lung dynamics in the findings. Machine settings should be optimized at the start of the examination.[308] Usually, studies are initiated with the identification of the ribs as hyperechoic lines producing significant ultrasonography shadow (Fig. 41.27*A*), followed by visualization of the pleural line approximately 0.5 to 1.0 cm deeper and between the ribs. This is typically a bright, slightly curved line. These are major structures to be identified, because many pathologies of relevance to the anesthesiologist affect their observed pattern. In the normal lung, lung sliding represents the

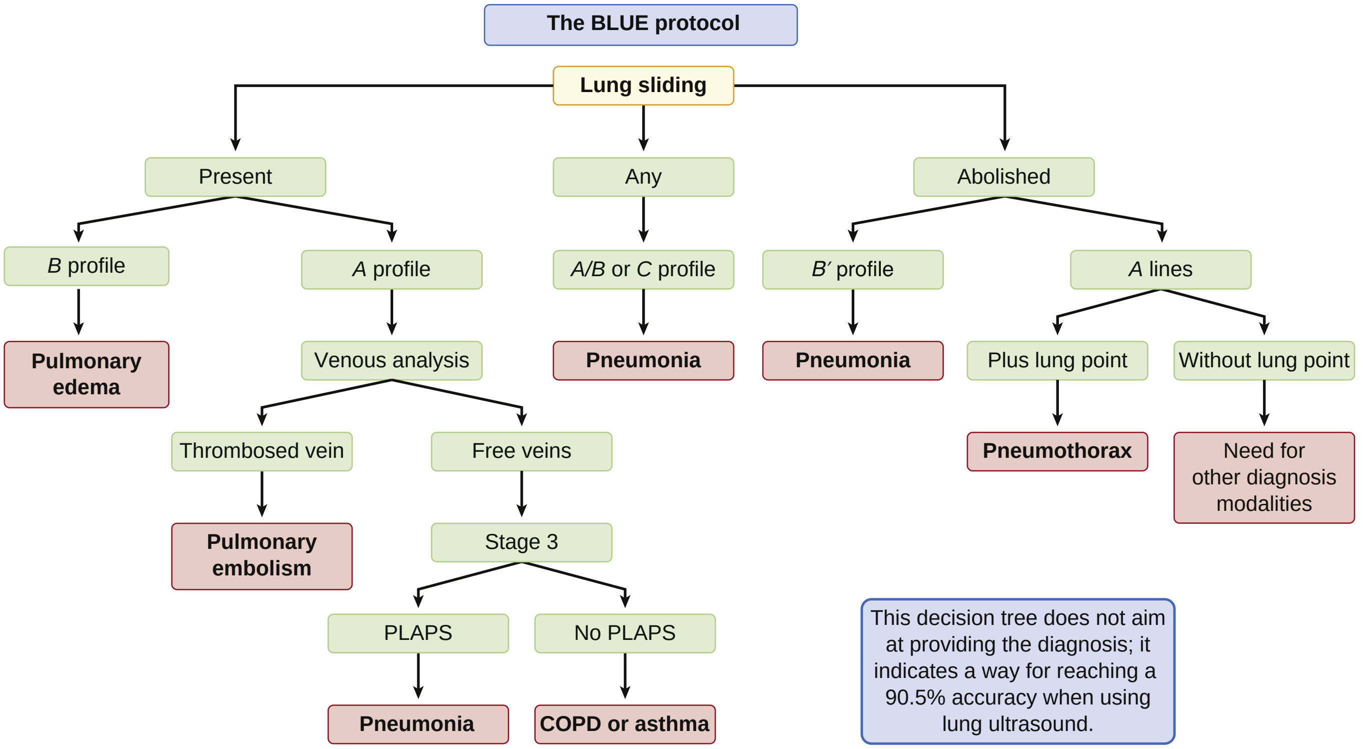

The BLUE protocol
Lung sliding
Present
Any
Abolished
B profile
A profile
A/B or *C* profile
B′ profile
A lines
Pulmonary edema
Venous analysis
Pneumonia
Pneumonia
Plus lung point
Without lung point
Thrombosed vein
Free veins
Pneumothorax
Need for other diagnosis modalities
Pulmonary embolism
Stage 3
PLAPS
No PLAPS
Pneumonia
COPD or asthma
This decision tree does not aim at providing the diagnosis; it indicates a way for reaching a 90.5% accuracy when using lung ultrasound.

Fig. 41.28 The BLUE protocol algorithm based on the particular ultrasound profile of the different kinds of respiratory failure. It uses three lung ultrasound signs with binary answers: anterior lung sliding, multiple B-lines visible between two ribs in the anterior lung, and posterior and/or lateral alveolar and/or pleural syndrome. These are combined with venous analysis to yield 90.5% accuracy in the diagnosis of respiratory failure. *COPD*, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; *PLAPS*, posterolateral alveolar and/or pleural syndrome. (Redrawn from Lichtenstein DA, Mezière GA. Relevance of lung ultrasound in the diagnosis of acute respiratory failure: the BLUE protocol. *Chest*. 2008;134:117–125; Milner QJ, Mathews GR. An assessment of the accuracy of pulse oximeters. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:396–401; and Pologe JA. Pulse oximetry: technical aspects of machine design. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1987;25:137–153.)

movement of the visceral on the parietal pleura during respiration and is another key sonographic finding to be appreciated. The magnitude of the movement is larger in regions closer to the diaphragm than those near the lung apex.

Below the pleura, hyperechoic horizontal reverberation artifacts at regular distances are referred to as A lines (see Fig. 41.27*A*). Another artifact is the B line, a discrete laser-like vertical hyperechoic reverberation artifact that arises from the pleural line (previously described as "comet tails"), extends to the bottom of the screen without fading, moves synchronously with lung sliding, and erases A lines (see Fig. 41.27*B* and *C*). Solitary B lines are a normal finding in the normal lung, and increased numbers are observed in disease. Based on the recognition of such artifacts, pathologic conditions are identified.[306-308,313] Most acute disorders involve the lung surface, and this explains the utility of thoracic ultrasound in visualizing them. Ultrasonography findings for pneumothorax are the absence of lung sliding, B lines, and lung pulse, and the presence of lung points.

Pleural effusions are characterized by a usually anechoic space between the parietal and visceral pleurae (see Fig. 41.27*C* and *F*) and by respiratory movement of the lung within the effusion ("sinusoid sign"). The presence of echogenic material within the effusion suggests an exudate or hemorrhage, although some exudates are anechoic. Most transudates are anechoic. The M-mode ultrasound scan shows parallel lines indicative of no moving structure underlying the probe. The ultrasonographic finding designated as a lung point is found in the presence of pneumothorax and represents the imaging of the cyclic transition during breathing from the absence of any sliding or moving B lines at a physical location (i.e., air with no lung parenchyma) to the visualization of lung sliding, B lines, or altered A lines indicative of lung tissue (see Fig. 41.27*D*).[307,314] Bedside ultrasound scans can detect pneumothorax with sensitivity similar to a CT scan.[306,307]

An interstitial syndrome is characterized by the presence of multiple B lines. A positive region is defined by three or more B lines in a longitudinal plane between two ribs (see Fig. 41.27*E*).[307] Lung consolidation is characterized sonographically by a subpleural echo-poor region or one with tissue-like echo-texture (see Fig. 41.27*F*). Lung consolidations may be caused by infection, pulmonary embolism, lung cancer and metastasis, compression atelectasis, obstructive atelectasis, and lung contusion. Additional sonographic signs that may help determine the cause of lung consolidation include the quality of the deep margins of the consolidation, the presence of comet-tail reverberation artifacts at the far-field margin, the presence of air or fluid bronchograms, and the vascular pattern within the consolidation. Advances in clinical research and experience in lung ultrasonography allowed for the proposal of an algorithm to assess severe dyspnea in the acute setting (Fig. 41.28). The denominated BLUE protocol is a stepwise ultrasonographic approach to the patient with acute respiratory failure that aims at expeditious diagnosis with 90.5% accuracy.[309,313,315]

ELECTRICAL IMPEDANCE TOMOGRAPHY

Electrical impedance tomography (EIT) is a noninvasive and radiation-free imaging modality used to assess regional lung function at the bedside. The method is clinically available and has moderate to low spatial resolution but high temporal resolution, thus allowing for assessment of regional ventilation in real-time.[235a,305,316] Its use in estimating regional lung volume and optimizing mechanical ventilation settings brought significant attention to applications in ICUs and operating rooms.[305]

EIT is based on electrical impedance, a physical variable that reflects the opposition to the passage of a current through an object when a voltage is applied across it.[317] The impedance of biological tissues depends on the tissue composition. High concentrations of electrolytes, extracellular water content, large cells, and number of cell connections by gap junctions as present in blood and muscles reduce impedance. Air, fat, and bone have high electrical impedance. Pathologic changes of tissue composition influence impedance. These include extravascular lung water (EVLW) (e.g., pulmonary edema), intrathoracic blood volume, fluid in cavities (pleural effusion, pericardial effusion, bronchial and alveolar fluid), foreign bodies (pleural drain), and lung fibrosis (e.g., after ARDs or as a primary disorder). During the breathing cycle, thoracic bioimpedance is influenced fundamentally by both ventilation and perfusion.

EIT relies on an array of electrodes (typically 16-32) around the chest region of interest. The location is chosen based on the clinical information desired, usually at the fifth intercostal space for standard lung assessment. The impedance information is provided in the form of a functional EIT image, or EIT waveforms that quantify changes in lung volume or perfusion in the studied thoracic cross section. Usually, images are presented with pixels representing relative impedance change, so-called functional EIT, because air corresponds to high impedances and fluid and tissue to low impedances, and the image represents regional lung ventilation. Absolute EIT (a-EIT) is the modality in which the image represents the actual impedance values. Direct assessment of lung conditions can be accomplished by comparing low impedance (e.g., hemothorax, pleural effusion, atelectasis and lung edema) with high impedance (e.g., pneumothorax, emphysema).[318] EIT has compared successfully with standard methods, including computed tomography.[319]

Because the technique provides direct real-time assessment of changes in regional aeration, several applications related to regional lung function have been identified.[316,319] These include the effect of induction and tracheal intubation on the expiratory lung level and regional ventilation in children (Fig. 41.29)[320]; perioperative monitoring of the distribution of ventilation during spontaneous and controlled breathing,[321,322] including HFOV[235a,278,323]; effects of PEEP on regional ventilation during laparoscopic surgery[324]; the magnitude of bedside lung recruitment; and PEEP titration with assessment of alveolar collapse and hyperdistention in ARDS[325] and obese patients.[326] EIT may also allow for real-time detection of pneumothorax.[327] Recent advances show the potential of EIT to provide measurements of regional perfusion,[319,328] which could be valuable for bedside assessment of $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ matching during spontaneous and mechanical ventilation.

Point of Care Tests

Point-of-care testing (POCT) is the performance of laboratory measurements near the site of patient care. POCT technology includes portable analyzers and use of small blood samples. For the anesthesiologist, it implies the availability of rapid, precise, and accurate measurements in operating rooms and ICUs. POCT yields improvements in patient outcome through expeditious detection of physiologic deterioration and prompt treatment. Respiratory monitoring is a major element of POCT and includes analysis of arterial blood gases (P_aO_2, P_aCO_2, pH), Hb, and lactate.

Blood gas measurements can be obtained with acceptable levels of accuracy and precision with POCT.[329-331] For instance, different platforms for arterial blood gases and Hb were found to show coefficients of variation of

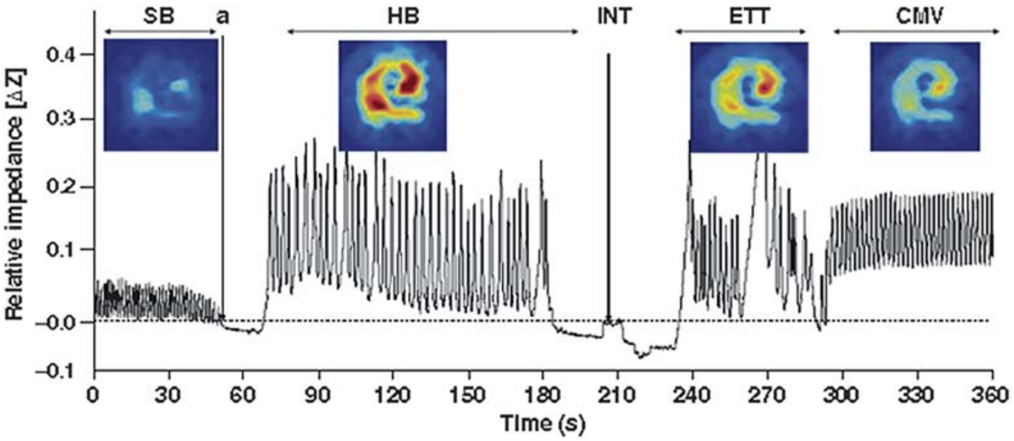


Fig. 41.29 Relative impedance signal at five key stages during induction of anesthesia in children. (a) There is a small impedance signal during spontaneous breathing *(SB)* as muscle paralysis develops. Effective hand bagging *(HB)* produces a high intensity signal, which is zeroed during tracheal intubation *(INT)*. Distribution of regional impedances during hand bagging with the endotracheal tube *(ETT)* and conventional mechanical ventilation *(CMV)* are also visualized. (From Humphreys S, Pham TM, Stocker C, Schibler A. The effect of induction of anesthesia and intubation on end-expiratory lung level and regional ventilation distribution in cardiac children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:887–893.)

approximately 3% to 6%.[330,331] Accuracy is present in wide ranges of P_aO_2 and pH[329-331], and shows bias of some devices for P_aCO_2.[331]

Hb is measured using either conductivity-based methods where hematocrit is assessed and the Hb concentration calculated (Hb [g/dL] = hematocrit × 0.34) or with optical methods, such as using the azide-metHb reaction and photometry absorbance.[332] Conductivity-based Hb measurements can be less than those reported by standard systems, with a clinically significant bias of at least −1.2 g/dL in the Hb range of 8.5 to 14.2 g/dL and a trend to underestimate the Hb value at low ranges.[330,331] Variable measurement agreement across devices, and bias resulting from inspired O_2 fraction are issues that still limit noninvasive Hb assessment.[331,333,334]

The site of blood sampling can influence POCT results. For capillary blood samples obtained from finger and ear punctures, a significant correlation exists between optical-based and automated laboratory Hb analysis, with a nonsignificant bias. Fingerstick samples may approximate standard laboratory Hb measurements better than earlobe samples.[22] Capillary blood samples (lancet puncture to middle or ring finger and fourth drop used) in patients with gastrointestinal bleeding resulted in high deviations (>1 g/dL) in 21% of cases and very high deviations (>2 g/dL) in 4% of cases.[335] In critically ill patients, poor agreement with reference measurements is reported,[336] especially with capillary blood samples and in patients with extremity pitting edema. POCT proved relevant in the assessment of arterial blood gases during pseudohypoxemia (also called "spurious hypoxemia" and "leukocyte larceny"). This is a known cause of inaccurate blood gas measurements and occurs when P_aO_2 is reduced by increased O_2 consumption as a result of markedly elevated white blood cell counts in the arterial blood sample. Measurement error is further aggravated by delayed laboratory analysis or incorrect sampling. Pseudohypoxemia occurs not only in hyperleukocytosis but also in thrombocytosis associated with polycythemia vera.

As POCT progresses, relevant limitations will need to be addressed, including cost, accuracy, data management, and evidence for improved outcomes. Contrary to some expectations, availability of POCT in academic centers does not increase the number of tests performed.[337] Characteristics of individual institutions should be considered before POCT is implemented. For instance, POCT blood-gas analysis may offer minimal time savings and cost benefits compared with central laboratory analysis in an institution with short turnaround time.

Respiratory Monitoring in Special Conditions

As methods for life support are advanced, the physiologic patterns that serve as the basis for assessment of gas exchange and respiratory mechanics can be dramatically changed. This occurs, for instance, during HFV when significant reductions in V_T are combined with large increases in respiratory rate. During rigid bronchoscopy or laryngeal interventions, the anesthesiologist is required to share management of the airway with the surgeon. This may result in intermittent loss of information regarding airway flow, volume, and pressure, as well as end-tidal gas concentration. In these situations, clinical assessment based on physical examination (i.e., inspection, auscultation) becomes paramount. Specific considerations for respiratory monitoring in special conditions are detailed in the next section.

HIGH-FREQUENCY VENTILATION

HFV is a ventilatory mode using V_T smaller than the anatomic dead space, 10-fold to 50-fold higher respiratory frequencies, and high instantaneous flow rates. The HFV is a broad term encompassing various modalities. These include high-frequency jet ventilation (HFJV) and high-frequency percussive ventilation (HFPV), both of which allow for passive exhalation, as well as HFOV, in which exhalation is actively driven by the device. The mechanisms for gas exchange during HFV are complex and include convective transport, turbulence, pendelluft, velocity profile distortion and asymmetry, Taylor dispersion, molecular diffusion, collateral ventilation, and cardiogenic mixing.[338-340] This method results in a fundamentally different relationship for CO_2 elimination ($\dot{V}_{CO_2}$) compared with conventional ventilation.[341] For example, during conventional ventilation,

$$\dot{V}_{CO_2} \propto f\,(V_T - V_D) \tag{41.39}$$

where f is the breathing frequency and V_D is dead space volume. However, during HFOV[342,342a],

$$\dot{V}_{CO_2} \propto f\frac{V_T^2}{V_D} \tag{41.40}$$

The use of HFOV for neonates in respiratory distress failing conventional ventilation is common.[343-345] However, its use in adult patients with ARDS has been limited in light of recent clinical trials,[345a,b] despite the sound physiologic rationale of using high mean airway pressures and low V_T to achieve alveolar recruitment without overdistention.[346-350]

Most high-frequency oscillators use pistons to actively drive flow into and out of the airway at respiratory rates between 3 to 20 Hz.[351,352] However, some oscillators, and most jet ventilators, rely on solenoid valves.[353-355] With HFOV, fresh gas and CO_2 may be removed by a continuous bias flow of warmed, humidified gas past the proximal end of the ETT, and mean airway pressure is regulated by an adjustable valve venting the bias flow and exhaled gas from the circuit. These devices may be either pressure or time cycled, and both the mean airway pressure and oscillatory pressure amplitude are displayed on the console to the clinician. However, for the frequencies used during HFV, a significant portion of the oscillatory pressure amplitude results from the inertia of the gas column contained in the breathing circuit and the patient's airways, and thus it should not be used as a surrogate for lung distention.

Clinically useful physiologic information inferred from airway flow and pressure measurements is somewhat limited during HFV. During conventional mechanical ventilation, airway pressure and flow are related according to basic mechanical properties of the respiratory system, such as airway resistance and tissue compliance. However, during HFV, airway pressure and flow reflect complex resistive and inertial gas properties in the central airways. Many investigators have assessed respiratory mechanics during HFV by transiently switching patients to conventional mechanical ventilation to obtain basic estimates of resistance and compliance,[356] or even making intermittent low-frequency oscillatory measurements to measure airway and tissue properties.[357] The pressure transmission index, defined as the ratio of the pressure measured directly in the trachea to the pressure at the proximal end of the breathing circuit (i.e., the pressure amplitude measured at the oscillator), is strongly correlated with tissue elastance.[357,358]

An important component of monitoring during any form of HFV is the assessment of mechanical function. Many important physiologic parameters, such as mean airway pressure and V_T, are not explicitly controlled by most high-frequency ventilators.[358a,b] Thus the relationship between pressure transduced at the proximal end of the breathing circuit and the V_T delivered to the patient is difficult to assess. Indeed, this relationship is highly nonlinear,[343] and it depends on frequency, gas composition and inertia, and the overall mechanics of the patient's respiratory system.[235,276] Given the important role that V_T plays in CO_2 elimination during HFV (Eq. [41.40]), accurate measurement of airway flow is important for the development and standardization of clinical trials.[359] Hot wire anemometry yields the most accurate estimates of airway flow and delivered V_T during HFOV compared with other measuring devices.[235,276]

Adequacy of gas exchange is essential during HFV. Analysis of arterial blood gas measurements should be performed within 30 minutes of any change in ventilator settings, and at least twice per day on stable settings.[346] Whereas oxygenation is usually assessed with continuous pulse oximetry, CO_2 elimination is more technically challenging to monitor. Attempts have been made to incorporate various forms of capnography into HFV circuits,[360-363] with varying degrees of success. Depending on where exhaled gases are sampled, there may be adequate correlation between $P_{ET}CO_2$ and P_aCO_2 during HFV.[362,363] This is often a reflection of the slower response time of many sidestream CO_2 analyzers.[171]. The PCO_2 sampled at the airway opening may thus underestimate the true alveolar CO_2 levels.[361] The most accurate measurement of alveolar PCO_2 is obtained when it is measured at the very distal tip of the ETT,[364] although this is not always clinically feasible. Transcutaneous measurements of PCO_2 may hold considerable promise for assessment of CO_2 clearance during HFV.[365]

Although HFOV has not been shown to improve outcomes in adult patients with ARDS,[345a,b] this finding may reflect the variable effects of frequency, amplitude, and mean airway pressure with oscillating of a heterogeneously injured lung,[342a,348] as well as the poorly understood phenomena of gas distribution, volume recruitment, and $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ matching in individual patients. Recent studies suggest that oscillation using multiple simultaneous frequencies may improve the efficiency of gas exchange, reduce the heterogeneity of parenchymal strain, and maintain lung recruitment at lower mean airway pressures.[235a,365a] Despite significant gaps in our understanding of the use of HFOV in acute respiratory failure, this modality may still have some clinical application as part of a lung-protective ventilatory strategy, particularly in patients with severe hypoxemia.[290a] Future clinical trials will guide both therapy and technologic development of HFOV,[347] thus providing a scientific basis for the rational use of this technology in critically ill patients.

JET VENTILATION

Jet ventilation is commonly used for procedures in which the surgeon requires unobstructed access to the airway.[366] During inspiration, O_2 or an O_2-air mixture is applied under high pressure to the airway through either a specialized catheter or a rigid bronchoscope. This jet of gas, along with entrained air from the surrounding environment, leads to insufflation of the lungs. Expiration takes place through passive recoil. The entire system is open to the environment, thus leading to significant escape of respiratory gases.[354]

Oxygenation during jet ventilation can be adequately monitored using pulse oximetry. Ascertaining the presence and adequacy of ventilation, especially during HFJV, is more challenging because the composition and volume of the exhaled gases cannot be directly measured. Arterial sampling of P_aCO_2 is accurate but intermittent and invasive. Gas can be sampled at the distal end of the catheter or rigid bronchoscope through a dedicated channel. Quantitative capnography during HFJV does not accurately reflect P_aCO_2 because V_T is smaller than dead space.[367] This problem can be overcome by the intermittent suspension of HFJV or reduction in frequency to 10 breaths/min or less. $P_{ET}CO_2$ measurements obtained in this manner accurately reflect the P_aCO_2 and allow the intermittent monitoring of ventilation.[363,368-370] The measurement of transcutaneous PCO_2 ($P_{tc}CO_2$) is noninvasive and continuous. Although $P_{tc}CO_2$ is not as accurate as capnometry and has a slower response time to changes in P_aCO_2, its use may allow for tracking of changes in P_aCO_2.[370] The absence of V_T and continuous $P_{ET}CO_2$ monitoring precludes standard ventilator disconnect monitoring during intraoperative HFJV. RIP, which uses changes in the inductance of bands placed around the chest to monitor respirations, has been demonstrated to discriminate reliably between the presence and absence of HFJV and may be developed as a monitor to detect disconnect or the absence of adequate thoracic excursion during HFJV.[282]

PATIENT TRANSPORT

Intrahospital transport of critically ill patients is a frequent occurrence. Transport of adult and pediatric patients from locations with advanced monitoring to more remote locations is fraught with difficulty, ranging from simple equipment malfunction to major disasters.[371-373] Complex monitoring and numerous pieces of equipment are often required for safe transfer, especially when additional devices such as extracorporeal membrane oxygenators and ventricular assist devices are present. The lack of standardized monitoring techniques and terminology explains the widely reported discrepancies in the incidence of adverse events. Overall, a high incidence of respiratory complications following transport has been reported.[372-374]

Respiratory monitoring during transport should ideally be the same as that in the operating room or ICU before relocation. In practice, at least clinical signs (e.g., skin color, chest expansion, auscultation, endotracheal secretions), pulse oximetry, and respiratory rate, together with EKGp and blood pressure, should be monitored throughout intrahospital transport. If a transport ventilator is used, airway pressures should be readily available in numeric or graphic formats. Human factors are essential during transport, and a specialized transport team using standardized management procedures with preparatory, transfer, and post-transport stabilization phases likely limits the frequency of adverse events.[375-377] This is particularly important when high-risk patients are involved.[376] Equipment and medications needed to establish and maintain a secure airway and hemodynamics should be available during any transfer. Adequate O_2 supply with functioning low-pressure alarms should be verified during pretransport preparation. A transport ventilator can provide better oxygenation and reduce variability in pH and PCO_2 compared with manual ventilation.[374,378] The transfer phase may require several professionals under the coordination and supervision of an attending anesthesiologist.

Automated Data Systems

Electronic anesthesia records are part of routine clinical practice in many institutions. Such systems provide data from medical devices, clinical information management systems, and laboratory data. The availability of large amounts of real-time data in digital form allows for introduction of new approaches to monitoring that may have been conceptualized, but not yet clinically implemented. In fact, although decision-support research has been done for years, little progress has been made in clinical decision support for the acute management of unstable patients, a major challenge in the operating room and ICU.[379-381] Computerized monitoring has significant potential to improve clinical monitoring.[379,382] However, it has limitations resulting from typical requirements not well-suited for human performance, such as monitoring graphic displays over extended periods, or the execution of overt responses to low-probability events. Humans are limited in their ability to analyze large quantities of data accurately and continuously. Accordingly, computer algorithms that identify subtle but meaningful trends in physiologic data are desirable. Such tools require relevant contextualization of measurement to improve accuracy, as well as minimization of false-negative and false-positive alarms. This automated monitoring should depend not only on timely measurements, but also on prior information. Alarms should not be fixed to specified thresholds, but rather dynamically adapted to information as it becomes available. Algorithms with established clinical rules provide the opportunity to detect subtle changes in time-series data,[383] which exceed human discrimination.[384] Such automated systems minimize monitoring failures and promote timely responses, thus enhancing the performance of anesthesia delivery during long periods. Some tools of respiratory monitoring have been assessed in adult and pediatric populations.[379,385-387] Data banks have been developed for research.[381] Another potential interest in these systems is that of creating closed-loop systems, such as those currently implemented to adjust settings in commercial mechanical ventilators.[386,388]

Although these methods are not currently established for clinical use, they are expected to find increasing application as reliable monitoring algorithms are implemented and validated. Such automated systems allow for the implementation of additional levels of safety. The detection of potentially dangerous events, such as continuously low S_aO_2 or the absence of $P_{ET}CO_2$ measurements for several breaths, can generate an automated alarm, a screen alert, or an automated page to the supervising anesthesiologist.[389] In a different condition, for example when changes in oxygenation occur over a period of minutes, improved processes should be directed to the anesthesia provider in direct contact with the patient, to initiate prompt treatment, assess artifacts, and/or call for assistance.[389]

Additional Monitored Variables

NITROGEN WASHOUT AND END-EXPIRATORY LUNG VOLUME

There has been a resurgence of interest in the use of nitrogen washout methods for adult[390,391] and pediatric[392] patients. Nitrogen washout techniques are found in commercial mechanical ventilators for intensive care use. The main parameter of interest has been the end-expiratory lung volume, a potentially valuable measurement to optimize lung expansion during mechanical ventilation, and for the assessment of ventilatory interventions such as PEEP adjustment.[391] The measurements are performed by introducing a step change in the inspired air (traditionally from room air to 100% O_2, in current systems a nitrogen washout/wash-in method with 10% to 20% change in F_IO_2) and solving mass balance equations for the lung volume. In patients with ARDS, measurements of end-expiratory lung volume demonstrated good accuracy and reproducibility, with a coefficient of variation of less than 4%.[391] In 30 intensive care patients undergoing computed tomography for clinical reasons, the end-expiratory lung volume measured with the modified nitrogen washout/wash-in technique was well correlated ($r^2 = 0.89$) with computed tomography measurements with a bias of 94 ± 143 mL (15 ± 18%, $P = .001$), within the limits of accuracy provided by the manufacturer.[390] Nitrogen washouts can also provide measures of ventilation heterogeneity.[392]

TRANSCUTANEOUS MEASUREMENTS OF PARTIAL PRESSURES OF OXYGEN AND CARBON DIOXIDE

Gas exchange is a dynamic and at times rapidly changing process. Conventional direct measurements of arterial blood gases, although still the gold standard for P_aO_2, P_aCO_2, and pH monitoring, provide only an isolated picture of that process. Expeditious assessment of circulating blood gases could facilitate faster initiation of required therapy and adjustment of implemented ventilation. A method for noninvasive continuous monitoring of P_aO_2 and P_aCO_2 is a current clinical need.

Transcutaneous measurements of PCO_2 ($P_{tc}CO_2$), in addition to transcutaneous PO_2 ($P_{tc}O_2$), aim to provide noninvasive estimates of arterial CO_2 and O_2, or at least trends associated with them. These measurements have been useful in intensive care management of neonates and infants,[393] and in the fields of wound healing and hyperbaric O_2 therapy. An advantage is that transcutaneous monitoring can be applied when expired gas sampling is limited such as during HFOV, apnea testing, and noninvasive ventilation. The measurements are based on the diffusion of O_2 and CO_2 through the skin. Because the skin is not entirely permeable to gases, warming is used to facilitate gas diffusion. Such an increase in temperature (usually 42°C-45°C) promotes increased O_2 and CO_2 partial pressure at the skin surface resulting from changes in structure of the stratum corneum that increase diffusion and dermal hyperemia and shift the Hb dissociation curve. This process ultimately results in arterialization of the regional blood. $P_{tc}O_2$ and $P_{tc}CO_2$ are influenced not only by the arterial gas partial pressures but also by skin O_2 consumption, CO_2 production, and regional blood flow. Accordingly, $P_{tc}O_2$ is usually lower than P_aO_2, and $P_{tc}CO_2$ is usually higher than P_aCO_2.

O_2 transducers are electrochemical polarographic Clark-type electrodes in which the rate of chemical reaction is related to an electrical signal proportional to the O_2 concentration. For CO_2, a transducer using a pH electrode to measure PCO_2 (Stow-Severinghaus electrode) is used, where a change in pH is proportional to the logarithm of the PCO_2 change. For CO_2 monitors, a temperature correction factor is used to estimate P_aCO_2 from $P_{tc}CO_2$. In vivo correction is available in some devices based on arterial blood gases. The thin epidermal layer of infants facilitates the measurements, in contrast to the diffusion barrier introduced by the thicker adult skin. A lower electrode temperature in $P_{tc}CO_2$ monitoring produces systematic bias of the transcutaneous electrode. However, in very preterm babies, monitoring at 40°C or 41°C to reduce the risk of burns is possible, provided a bias correction of 12% to 15% is applied.[394]

The main application of $P_{tc}CO_2$ is in the neonatal ICU population.[393] Even in very low-birth-weight infants, the mean difference between $P_{tc}CO_2$ and P_aCO_2 is 3.0 mm Hg (95% confidence interval, 0.2 to 6.0 mm Hg; $P < .05$).[395] In addition, $P_{tc}CO_2$ may be used to assess the efficacy of mechanical ventilation continuously during respiratory failure. In this setting, in children 1 to 16 years, $P_{tc}CO_2$ was more accurate and precise than $P_{ET}CO_2$ in relation to P_aCO_2. $P_{tc}CO_2$-P_aCO_2 differences were 2.3 ± 1.3 mm Hg in children 1 to 3.4 years old and 2.6 ± 2.0 mm Hg in children 4 to 16 years old.[393] $P_{ET}CO_2-P_aCO_2$ differences were larger (6.8 ± 5.1 and 6.4 ± 6.3 mm Hg) for the same age ranges. When compared with $P_{ET}CO_2$, $P_{tc}CO_2$ monitoring is equally accurate in patients with normal respiratory function. Accuracy and precision in the perioperative period of cardiac surgery for congenital heart disease in infants and children were better for $P_{tc}CO_2$ than $P_{ET}CO_2$ in relation to P_aCO_2, with the exception of patients receiving significant amounts of vasoactive medications and in low cardiac output states.

In adults, $P_{tc}CO_2$ has proven to be a less accurate and precise surrogate for P_aCO_2. Nonetheless, $P_{tc}CO_2$ could be suitable for specific conditions. Laparoscopic surgery with prolonged pneumoperitoneum is one condition in which $P_{tc}CO_2$ may be a more accurate estimate of P_aCO_2 compared with $P_{ET}CO_2$,[396] even for trending P_aCO_2.[397] During deep sedation for ambulatory hysteroscopy in healthy patients, earlobe $P_{tc}CO_2$ agreed better with P_aCO_2 than did nasal sidestream $P_{ET}CO_2$, with lower bias (1.7 vs. –7.0 mm Hg) and smaller mean differences to $PaCO_2$ (3.2 ± 2.6 vs. 8.0 ± 6.0 mm Hg).[398] The sensitivity of the $P_{tc}CO_2$ monitor for detecting P_aCO_2 values higher than 50 mm Hg was also greater than for $P_{ET}CO_2$ (66.7% vs. 33.3%; $P < .01$).[398] $P_{tc}CO_2$ is also helpful during weaning from mechanical ventilation after off-pump coronary artery bypass graft.[399] In adults admitted to an emergency department for acute respiratory failure, agreement between P_aCO_2 and $P_{tc}CO_2$ was 0.1 mm Hg, and the limits of agreement were from −6.0 to 6.2 mm Hg). In patients undergoing noninvasive ventilation, unacceptably wide variability may be observed.[400] In mechanically ventilated ICU patients, $P_{tc}CO_2$ correlated better and with less bias to P_aCO_2 than $P_{ET}CO_2$ even if still with sizeable variability (mean $P_{tc}CO_2 - P_aCO_2 = 2.2 \pm 5.7$ mm Hg).[401] $P_{tc}CO_2$ does not replace $P_{ET}CO_2$ monitoring, which remains the standard of care to confirm intratracheal placement of the ETT following intubation, or to actuate a disconnect alarm in the operating room.

$P_{tc}O_2$ from normal to extremely low-birth-weight infants agreed well with P_aO_2 measurements, with mean $P_{tc}O_2-P_aO_2$ difference 2.3 (−1.5 to 6.8) mm Hg, clinically acceptable in current neonational ICUs. $P_{tc}O_2$ in neonates is additionally important to detect hyperoxia, which is not feasible with pulse oximetry. The use of $P_{tc}O_2$ in adults has been focused on wound management, peripheral vascular disease, and hyperbaric medicine. Although attempts for applications in adults were promising, such as the use of $P_{tc}O_2$ to support resuscitative efforts,[402] measurements following off-pump coronary artery surgical procedures still present very high variability.[403] The dependence of $P_{tc}O_2$ on low-flow states has been used in conjunction with analysis of arterial blood gases to estimate adequacy of cutaneous blood flow and, by inference hemodynamic, stability.[404,405]

In summary, transcutaneous measurements are favorably positioned for continuous gas exchange monitoring in neonates and infants. In contrast, widespread applications of transcutaneous techniques in the perioperative settings are still hindered by limitations, such as poor cutaneous blood flow, need for frequent calibration, slow response time, and risk for skin burns with prolonged application.

LUNG WATER

Pulmonary edema is a hallmark of lung injury. It can result from increased hydrostatic pressure in the pulmonary capillaries (cardiogenic), increased permeability of the alveolar capillary membrane (noncardiogenic), and reduced lymphatic drainage from the lungs. Such mechanisms can be caused by pulmonary or extrapulmonary factors. For these reasons, interest in the development of methods to quantify EVLW has been considered, because this may assist in the diagnosis and management of those conditions, including early detection, differential diagnosis, fluid therapy, diuretics, and mechanical ventilation.[406] In patients, assessment of pulmonary edema is made with imaging techniques (e.g., chest radiography, ultrasonography, and computed tomography), thermodilution, bioimpedance, bioreactance, and remote dielectric sensing.

Imaging Techniques

The method used primarily in clinical practice remains bedside chest radiograph. It allows for semiquantitative assessment of EVLW, its distribution, and its possible etiology. The chest radiograph has limited diagnostic accuracy. This is because (1) edema may not be visible until the amount of lung water increases by 30%[407]; (2) any radiolucent material that fills the air spaces (e.g., alveolar hemorrhage, pus, and bronchoalveolar carcinoma) will produce a radiographic image similar to that of pulmonary edema; (3) technical issues including rotation, inspiration, positive-pressure ventilation, patient position, and underpenetration or overpenetration can reduce sensitivity and specificity; and (4) substantial interobserver variability exists in interpretation of chest radiographs.[408,409] Computed tomography is another radiographic technique to quantify EVLW. In animal experiments, computed tomography densitometry could detect an increase in EVLW by as little as 50%.[162] Computed tomography-based studies indicated that significant hypoxemia secondary to pulmonary edema may not develop until the increase in EVLW approaches 200% to 300%.[163] Lack of portability and high radiation exposure limit the use of computed tomography as a continuous intraoperative monitor. Positron emission tomography[165] and nuclear magnetic resonance[166] are imaging techniques that can assess lung water. However, they are not amenable for routine clinical use in the perioperative setting. Lung ultrasonography is garnering greater acceptance as another method for assessing lung edema.

Indicator Dilution Methods

Such measurements of EVLW have been expected to be superior to blood oxygenation and chest radiography. They are based on the kinetics of one or two tracers injected centrally and measured in an artery. Initial techniques were based on a double-indicator dilution method. These techniques gained renewed attention with the introduction of a clinical device to assess EVLW using the transpulmonary thermodilution technology, which facilitated bedside measurements.[410] The device uses cold saline as the single indicator injected in a central venous line. EVLW and additional hemodynamic parameters (i.e., cardiac output) are computed from the curve of temperature in the peripheral artery.[411] Good reproducibility and correlation can occur with gravimetric methods and can be a useful clinical and research tool. EVLW may be a predictor of mortality in patients with severe sepsis[412] and ARDS.[413,414] It is a diagnostic tool in detecting early pulmonary edema,[415,416] including reperfusion edema after pulmonary endarterectomy,[417] after lung transplantation,[418] and in evaluating the effect of ventilatory modes during esophagectomy.[419] The measurement has also been proposed to guide fluid therapy in ARDS[420] and subarachnoid hemorrhage,[421] as well as assess the effect of steroids during cardiac surgery.[422] EVLW was the primary outcome variable in clinical trials to study the efficacy of salbutamol to resolve pulmonary edema in patients with ARDS (the Beta-Agonist Lung Injury Trial)[423] and lung resection.[424]

The limitations on this technique derive from the considerable and at times conflicting assumptions.[411,425] Measurement premises include that the thermal indicator reaches all lung regions and equilibrates in all of them and that the central circulation volumes between the injection and temperature measurement sites can be described as a small number of individual well-mixed compartments, each showing a monoexponential decay of temperature with time. Experimental evidence indicated that assumptions for the method do not apply to all conditions; an important factor is the changes in the regional distribution of perfusion during lung injury.[411,426,427] These changes may compromise the measurement.[425] Indeed, redistribution of lung perfusion can produce measurement changes larger than those seen in the Beta-Agonist Lung Injury Trial between treatment and control groups.[423,426] Such results are also consistent with the influence of the type of lung injury on the accuracy of EVLW measurements,[428-430] as well as with the poor correlation between transpulmonary thermodilution EVLW and computed tomographic estimates of EVLW.[431,432] Thus the expected reliability of transpulmonary thermodilution EVLW to follow trends[433] cannot be taken for granted, and it requires interpretation in light of potential simultaneous changes in regional perfusion. Finally, the technique requires placement of arterial and central venous catheters, thereby increasing invasiveness.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Standards for Basic Anesthetic Monitoring*; 2011.
2. International Task Force on Anaesthesia Safety. *World Federation of Societies of Anaesthesiologists: International Standards for a Safe Practice of Anaesthesia*; 2010.
3. Eichhorn JH, et al. *JAMA*. 1986;256:1017.
4. Botham KM, Mayes PA. Biologic oxidation, Harper's illustrated biochemistry. In: Murray RK, Rodwell VW, Bender D, Botham KM, Weil PA, Kennelly PJ, eds. *eBook Collection (EBSCOhost)*. 28th ed. McGraw-Hill Medical; 2009:98.
5. Severinghaus JW. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2011;25:155.
6. Severinghaus JW. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:721.
7. Campbell S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:815.
8. Kenzaka T, et al. *Intern Med*. 2012;51:871.
9. Welsby PD, Earis JE. *Postgrad Med J*. 2001;77:617.
10. Epstein O, et al. The respiratory system, Clinical examination. In: *Anonymous*. 4th ed. Elsevier Health Sciences; 2008.
11. Thomas C, Lumb AB. *Contin Educ Anaesth Crit Care Pain*. 2012;12:251.
12. Severinghaus JW. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 1994;345:921.
13. Tremper KK, Barker SJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:98.
14. Severinghaus JW, Honda Y. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1987;25:205.

14a. Pulse Oximeters https://www.fda.gov/RegulatoryInformation/Guidances/ucm341718.htm.

15. Milner QJ, Mathews GR. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:396.
16. Pologe JA. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1987;25:137.
17. Merry AF, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57:1027.
18. Haynes AB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:491.
19. Macknet MR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1424.
20. Barker SJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:892.
21. Roth D, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2011;58:74.
22. Lamhaut L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:548.
23. Frasca D, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39:2277.
24. Berkow L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1396.
25. Morey TE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1289.
26. Shamir MY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:972.
27. Maisel WH, Lewis RJ. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2010;56:389.
28. Caboot JB, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2012;47:808.
29. Feiner JR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:847.
30. Feiner JR, Bickler PE. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1160.
31. Mahle WT, et al. *Circulation*. 2009;120:447.
32. Mahle WT, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2012;129:190.
33. Ewer AK, et al. *Lancet*. 2011;378:785.
34. Thangaratinam S, et al. *Lancet*. 2012;379:2459.
35. Dorlas JC, Nijboer JA. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:524.
36. Cannesson M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1105.
37. Cannesson M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1189.
38. Cannesson M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1195.
39. Yin JY, Ho KM. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:777.

40. Wu CY, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33:645.
41. Sandroni C, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38:1429.
42. Forget P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:910.
43. Gothgen IH, et al. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest Suppl*. 1990;203:87.
44. Perkins GD, et al. *Crit Care*. 2003;7:R67.
45. Van de Louw A, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2001;27:1606.
45a. Pedersen T, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;(3):CD002013.
45b. Moller JT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(3):445.
45c. Ochroch EA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(3):868.
46. Mannheimer PD. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:S10.
47. Feiner JR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:S18.
48. Cox P. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:A1540.
49. Hinkelbein J, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2005;64:315.
50. Barker SJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:967.
51. Shah N, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24:385.
52. Chan ED, et al. *Respir Med*. 2013;107:789.
53. Hampson NB. *Chest*. 1998;114:1036.
54. Eisenkraft JB. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:279.
55. Jay GD, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1994;24:32.
56. Severinghaus JW, Koh SO. *J Clin Monit*. 1990;6:85.
57. Ortiz FO, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1999;159:447.
58. Rajadurai VS, et al. *J Paediatr Child Health*. 1992;28:43.
59. Ahmed S, et al. *Eur J Haematol*. 2005;309:74.
60. Comber JT, Lopez BL. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1996;14:16.
61. Verhovsek M, et al. *Am J Hematol*. 2010;85:882.
62. Scheller MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:550.
63. Hinkelbein J, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2007;72:82.
64. Hinkelbein J, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2007;74:75.
65. Adler JN, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 1998;5:965.
66. Bickler PE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:715.
67. Amar D, et al. *J Clin Monit*. 1989;5:135.
68. Trivedi NS, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:179.
69. Fluck RR Jr, et al. *Respir Care*. 2003;48:677.
70. van Oostrom JH, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:379.
71. Mathes AM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:541.
72. Kelleher JF, Ruff RH. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:787.
73. Zoremba N, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:322.
74. Oleyar M, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:820.
75. Mabadeje O, et al. *J Hosp Infect*. 2010;76:93.
76. Evans ML, Geddes LA. *Med Instrum*. 1988;22:29.
77. Sinex JE. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1999;17:59.
78. Berkenbosch JW, Tobias JD. *Respir Care*. 2006;51:726.
79. MacLeod DB, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60:65.
80. Kulcke A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:1856.
81. Smit M, al ety. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30:379.
82. Jenstrup M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1995;107:29.
83. Harms MP, et al. *Exp Physiol*. 2003;88:611.
84. Ho KM, et al. *Shock*. 2008;29:3.
85. Dahn MS, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1988;14:373.
86. Martin C, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1992;18:101.
87. Varpula M, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2006;32:1336.
88. Ho KM, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:434.
89. Reinhart K, et al. *Chest*. 1989;95:1216.
90. Chawla LS, et al. *Chest*. 2004;126:1891.
91. Dueck MH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:249.
92. Lorentzen AG, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2008;22:853.
93. Grissom CK, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37:2720.
94. Kopterides P, et al. *Shock*. 2009;31:561.
95. Dahmani S, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:714.
96. Lequeux PY, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:295.
97. Lamia B, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2006;72:597.
98. Suter PM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1975;3:175.
99. Pond CG, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:280.
100. Maddirala S, Khan A. *Crit Care Clin*. 2010;26:323.
101. Scuderi PE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:245.
102. Baulig W, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2008;22:183.
103. Baulig W, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:720.
104. Schmidt CR, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12:523.
105. Routsi C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:1104.
106. Polonen P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41:810.
107. Pearse R, et al. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:R694.
108. Collaborative Study Group on Perioperative Scvo2 Monitoring. *Crit Care*. 2006;10:R158.
109. Polonen P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1052.
110. Rivers E, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:1368.
111. Donati A, et al. *Chest*. 2007;132:1817.
112. Dellinger RP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:296.
113. Otero RM, et al. *Chest*. 2006;130:1579.
114. Bellomo R, et al. *Crit Care*. 2008;12:130.
115. Peake SL, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80:811.
116. Jones AE, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;303:739.
117. Suehiro K, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28:528.
118. Bickler P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:72.
119. Ubbink R, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31:1143.
120. Wahr JA, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1996;10:406.
121. Cui W, et al. *Opt Lett*. 1991;16:1632.
122. Schober P, Schwarte LA. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2012;26:255.
123. Jobsis FF. *Science*. 1977;198:1264.
124. Watzman HM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:947.
125. Sakr Y, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:388.
126. Holzle F, et al. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2010;39:21.
127. Karliczek A, et al. *Colorectal Dis*. 2010;12:1018.
128. Pham TH, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2011;91:380.
129. Friedland S, et al. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2003;57:492.
130. Friedland S, et al. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2007;65:294.
131. Bludau M, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;90:1121.
132. Highton D, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:576.
133. Chan MJ, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1155.
134. Murkin JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:51.
135. Slater JP, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;87:36. discussion 44.
136. Yao FS, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:552.
137. Fischer GW, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2011;141:815.
138. de Tournay-Jette E, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2011;25:95.
139. Ghosal S, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32:1185.
140. Kirkpatrick PJ, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1998;89:389.
141. Grubhofer G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1339.
142. Vets P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 2004;55:215.
143. Al-Rawi PG, Kirkpatrick PJ. *Stroke*. 2006;37:2720.
144. Moritz S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:563.
145. de Letter JA, et al. *Neurol Res*. 1998;20(suppl 1):S23.
146. Hirofumi O, et al. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2003;10:79.
147. Rigamonti A, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17:426.
148. Yamamoto K, et al. *Int Angiol*. 2007;26:262.
149. Jonsson M, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2017;53:783.
150. Samra SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:964.
151. Mille T, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2004;27:646.
152. Boezeman RP, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2015;99:1267.
153. Casati A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:740.
154. Tang L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:623.
155. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:496.
156. Moerman AT, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29:82.
157. Tange K, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2010;76:485.
158. Crookes BA, et al. *J Trauma*. 2005;58:806. discussion 813.
159. Cohn SM, et al. *J Trauma*. 2007;62:44. discussion 54.
160. Ikossi DG, et al. *J Trauma*. 2006;61:780. discussion 788.
161. Yu Y, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2018;1:CD010947.
162. Sun X, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114:276.
163. Bohr C. *Skandinavisches Archiv Für Physiologie*. 1891;2:236.
164. Mogue LR, Rantala B. *J Clin Monit*. 1988;4:115.
165. Bhavani-Shankar K, et al. *J Clin Monit*. 1995;11:175.
166. Gravenstein JS, et al. *Capnography in Clinical Practice*. Boston: Butterworth; 1989.
167. Gravenstein JS, et al. *Gas Monitoring in Clinical Practice*. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1995.
168. Jaffe MB. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:890.
169. Raemer DB, Calalang I. *J Clin Monit*. 1991;7:195.
170. Hess D. *Respir Care*. 1990;35:557.
171. Brunner JX, Westenskow DR. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61:628.
172. Jaffe MB. *Mainstream or Sidestream Capnography? Technical Considerations*. Wallingford, Conn: Respironics Novametric; 2002.
173. Kaczka DW, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2011;110:1473.
174. Bhavani-Shankar K, Philip JH. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:973.
175. Moon RE, Camporesi EM. Respiratory monitoring. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 6th ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 2005:1255–1295.
175a. Mondoñedo JR, et al. *ASME J of Medical Diagnostics*. 2018;1(031003):031003–031010.
176. Fletcher R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:77.
177. McKenzie DC. *Br J Sports Med*. 2012;46:381.
178. Grocott MP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:140.

179. Wagner PD, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1974;54:54.
180. Ravin MB, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1965;20:1148.
181. Brismar B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:422.
182. Rothen HU, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:681.
183. Riley RL, Cournand A. *J Appl Physiol*. 1949;1:825.
184. Whiteley JP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:771.
185. Gould MK, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25:6.
186. McCahon RA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:358.
187. Kathirgamanathan A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:291.
188. Lilienthal JL Jr, Riley RL. *Am J Physiol*. 1946;147:199.
189. Mellemgaard K. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 1966;67:10.
190. Gowda MS, Klocke RA. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25:41.
191. Definition Task Force ARDS, Ranieri VM, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;307:2526.
192. Rice TW, et al. *Chest*. 2007;132:410.
193. Khemani RG, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:1309.
194. DesPrez K, et al. *Chest*. 2017;152:1151–1158.
195. Villar J, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2015;5. e006812,2014-006812.
196. Balzer F, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2016;16:108. 016-0272-4.
197. Ortiz RM, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1987;34:39–46.
198. Trachsel D, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2005;172:206–211.
199. Gajic O, et al. *Crit Care*. 2007;11:R53.
200. Kaczka DW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:1394.
201. Christiansen J, et al. *J Physiol*. 1914;48:244.
202. Severinghaus JW, Astrup PB. *J Clin Monit*. 1986;2:125.
203. Severinghaus JW. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:253.
204. Andritsch RF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:311.
205. Kern FH, Greeley WJ. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1995;9:215.
206. Burrows FA. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1995;9:219.
207. Patel RL, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1996;111:1267.
208. Engelhardt W, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:457.
209. du Plessis AJ, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1997;114:991. discussion 1000.
210. Bellinger DC, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2001;121:374.
211. Kiziltan HT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:644.
212. Piccioni MA, et al. *Artif Organs*. 2004;28:347.
213. Sakamoto T, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:12.
214. Hoover LR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1389.
215. Nagy ZL, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;108:577.
216. Murkin JM, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;110:349.
217. Svyatets M, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:644.
218. Biswas CK, et al. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)*. 1982;284:923.
219. Kaczka DW, et al. Computational analyses of airway flow and lung tissue dynamics, image-based computational modeling of the human circulatory and pulmonary systems: methods and applications. In: Chandran KB, Udaykumar HS, Reinhardt JM, eds. *Image-based computational modeling of the human circulatory and pulmonary systems: Methods and applications.* 1st ed. New York: Springer; 2011:375,402; 10.
220. Kaczka DW, Smallwood JL. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2012;183:75.
221. Warner DO. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2000;16:417.
222. Bates JHT. *Lung Mechanics: An Inverse Modeling Approach*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2009:220.
223. Pedley TJ, et al. *Respir Physiol*. 1970;9:387.
224. Rohrer F. *Pfluegers Arch Gesamte Physiol Menschen Tiere*. 1915;162:225.
225. Mora R, et al. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2000;279:L342.
226. Fredberg JJ, Stamenovic D. *J Appl Physiol*. 1989;67:2408.
227. Fredberg JJ, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1997;156:1752.
228. McIlroy MB, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1955;7:485.
229. Bachofen H. *J Appl Physiol*. 1968;24:296.
230. Hantos Z, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1992;72:168.
231. Kaczka DW, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1997;82:1531.
232. Hoppin FG Jr, Hildebrandt J. Mechanical properties of the lung. In: West JB, ed. *Bioengineering Aspects of the Lung*. New York: Marcel Dekker; 1977:83–162.
232a. Kano S, et al. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1994;77:1185.
232b. Amini R, et al. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2017;64:681.
232c. Carvalho AR, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2008;34:2291.
232d. Carvalho AR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:677.
232e. D'Antini D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126:143.
232f. Ranieri VM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1320.
232g. Motulsky H, Christopoulos A. *Fitting Models to Biological Data using Linear and Nonlinear Regression. A Practical Guide to Curve Fitting*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2004:351.
232h. Huhle R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126:725.
232i. Formenti P, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37:561.
232j. Chiumello D, Gattinoni L. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37:561.
232k. Henzler D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(1072). table of contents.
233. Otis AB, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1956;8:427.
233a. Kaczka DW, et al. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 2011;39:1112.
233b. Suki B, Bates JHT. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2011;110:1111.
233c. Carvalho AR. *Crit Care*. 2007;11:R86.
233d. Dellacà RL. *Intensive Care Medicine*. 2011;37:1021.
233e. Zannin E, et al. *Crit Care*. 2012;16:R217.
233f. Writing Group for the Alveolar Recruitment for Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome, Trial I, Cavalcanti AB, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;318:1335.
233g. Fumagalli J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(8):1374.
234. Mead J. *J Appl Physiol*. 1956;9:208.
235. Hager DN, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:1522.
235a. Kaczka DW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:1394.
235b. Amini R, Kaczka DW. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 2013;41:2699.
236. Kaczka DW, et al. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 1995;23:135.
237. Peslin R, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 1992;5:871.
238. Ruiz-Ferron F, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2001;27:1487.
239. Kaczka DW, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2001;90:1833.
240. Kaczka DW, et al. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 2011;39:1112.
241. Downie JM, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2004;169:957.
242. Lu Q, Rouby JJ. *Critical Care*. 2000;4:91.
243. Salazar E, Knowles JH. *J Appl Physiol*. 1964;19:97.
244. Venegas JG, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1998;84:389.
245. Mead J, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1957;10:191.
246. Bates JH, Irvin CG. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;93:705.
247. Hildebrandt J. *J Appl Physiol*. 1970;28:365.
248. Otis AB, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1950;2:592.
249. Bates JHT, Milic-Emili J. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 1993;21:489.
249a. Moraes L, et al. *Front Physiol*. 2018;9:318.
249b. Cressoni M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:1100.
249c. Gattinoni L, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42:1567.
249d. Santos RS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:1193.
250. Masselli GM, et al. *Conf Proc IEEE Eng Med Biol Soc*. 2006;1:5603.
251. Jensen A, Lutchen KR, Kaczka DW, et al. Estimation of respiratory dynamic mechanical properties during clinically used mechanical ventilation. In: *Proceedings of the first joint BMES/EMBS Conference*. Vol 1. Atlanta: IEEE; 1999:337.
252. Lancaster CT, Boyle PM, Kaczka DW. Delivered tidal volume from the Fabius GS depends upon breathing circuit configuration despite compliance compensation. In *Proceedings of the American Society of Anesthesiologists 2005 Annual Meeting*, Atlanta, 2005, abstract A863.
253. Loring SH, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2010;108:512.
253a. Akoumianaki E, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;189:520.
254. Schuessler TF, et al. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 1998;26:260.
255. Hager DN, Brower RG. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1544.
256. Talmor D, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;359:2095.
256a. Eichler L, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2018;28:122.
257. Schultz MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1226.
257a. Mauri T, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42:1360.
257b. Yoshida T, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;197(1018).
257c. Amato MB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372:747.
257d. Bugedo G, et al. *Crit Care*. 2017;21:199.
258. Ladha K, et al. *BMJ*. 2015;351:h3646.
259. Neto AS, et al. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2016;4:272.
260. Laghi F, Goyal A. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2012;78:201.
261. Brochard L. *Intensive Care Med*. 2002;28:1552.
262. McCall CB, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1957;10:215.
263. Lutchen KR, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1993;75:2549.
264. Jackson AC, Vinegar A. *J Appl Physiol*. 1979;47:462.
265. Schuessler TF, Bates JHT. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 1995;42:860.
266. Schuessler TF, Bates JHT, Maksym GN. Estimating tracheal flow in small animals: Engineering in Medicine and Biology Society, 1993. In: *Proceedings of the 15th Annual International Conference of the IEEE*. 1993:560–561.
267. Simon BA, Mitzner W. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 1991;38:214.
268. Sullivan WJ, et al. *Respir Care*. 1984;29:736.
269. Yeh MP, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1982;53:280.
270. Renzi PE, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1990;68:382.
271. Jaffe MB. *IEEE Eng Med Biol Mag*. 2010;29:44.
272. Plakk P, et al. *Med Biol Eng Comput*. 1998;36(17).

273. Ligeza P. *Rev Sci Instrum*. 2008;79(096105).
274. Al-Salaymeh A, et al. *Med Eng Phys*. 2004;26:623.
275. Ligeza P. *Rev Sci Instrum*. 2007;78(075104).
276. Hager DN, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:751.
276a. Mondonedo JR, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31:1263.
276b. Farre R, et al. *Medical & Biological Engineering & Computing*. 1991;29:18.
276c. Jandre FC, et al. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2005;148:309–314.
277. Schmolzer GM, et al. *Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed*. 2010;95: F295.
278. Wolf GK, Arnold JH. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:S163.
279. Stick SM, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 1992;14:187.
280. van Vonderen JJ, et al. *Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed*. 2015; 100:F514.
281. Khemani RG, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2016;193:198.
282. Atkins JH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1168.
283. Greenstein YY, et al. *J Bronchology Interv Pulmonol*. 2017;24:206.
284. Mandel JE, Atkins JH. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:126.
285. Overdyk FJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:412.
286. Walther-Larsen S, Rasmussen LS. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50:888.
287. Folke M, et al. *Med Biol Eng Comput*. 2003;41:377.
288. Al-Khalidi FQ, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2011;46:523.
289. Wiklund L, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1994;6:182.
290. Lam T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:2019.
290a. Meade MO, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;196:727.
291. Gaucher A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:316.
292. Kasuya Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:609.
293. Chang KC, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2016;30:169.
294. Cashman JN, Dolin SJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93(212).
295. Walder B, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:795.
296. Shapiro A, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17:537.
297. Nassi N, et al. *Arch Dis Child*. 2008;93:126.
298. Lightdale JR, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2006;117:e1170.
299. Waisman D, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37:1174.
300. Curry J, Lynn L. *APSF Newsletter*. 2011;26:32.
301. Gupta R, Edwards D. *APSF Newsletter*. 2018;32:70–72.
302. Gupta K, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2018;31:110.
303. Simon BA, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2012;113:647.
304. Harris RS, Schuster DP. *J Appl Physiol*. 2007;102:448.
305. Bodenstein M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37:713.
306. Turner JP, Dankoff J. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2012;30:451.
307. Volpicelli G, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38:577.
308. Kruisselbrink R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:568.
309. Lichtenstein DA. *Chest*. 2015;147:1659.
310. Lichtenstein DA, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30:276.
311. Lichtenstein D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:9.
312. Lichtenstein DA. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:S250.
313. Lichtenstein D. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2009;75:313.
314. Lichtenstein D, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2000;26:1434.
315. Lichtenstein DA, Meziere GA. *Chest*. 2008;134:117.
316. Adler A, et al. *Physiol Meas*. 2012;33:679.
317. Costa EL, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2009;15:18.
318. Hahn G, et al. *Physiol Meas*. 2006;27:S187.
319. Frerichs I, et al. *Thorax*. 2017;72:83.
320. Humphreys S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:887.
321. Victorino JA, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2004;169:791.
322. Radke OC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1227.
323. Frerichs I, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2012;27:172.
324. Karsten J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:878.
325. Costa EL, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35:1132.
326. Nestler C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:1194.
327. Costa EL, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:1230.
328. Borges JB, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2012;112:225.
329. Kok J, et al. *Pathology*. 2015;47:405.
330. Leino A, Kurvinen K. *Clin Chem Lab Med*. 2011;49:1187.
331. Luukkonen AA, et al. *Clin Chem Lab Med*. 2016;54:585.
332. Hopfer SM, et al. *Ann Clin Lab Sci*. 2004;34:75.
333. Gayat E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1820.
334. Allardet-Servent J, et al. *PLoS One*. 2017;12:e0169593.
335. Van de Louw A, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2007;33:355.
336. Seguin P, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2011;26:423.
337. Wax DB, Reich DL. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1711.
338. Chang HK. *J Appl Physiol*. 1984;56:553.
339. Pillow JJ. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:S135.
340. Fredberg JJ. *J Appl Physiol*. 1980;49:232.
341. Hurst JM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1990;211:486.
342. Venegas JG, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1986;60:1025.
342a. Herrmann J, et al. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2016;121:1306.
343. Pillow JJ. *Eur Respir J*. 2012;40:291.
344. Courtney SE, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:643.
345. Johnson AH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:633.
345a. Ferguson ND, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:795.
345b. Young D, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:806.
346. Fessler HE, Brower RG. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:S223.
347. Fessler HE, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:1649.
348. Krishman JA, Brower RG. *Chest*. 2000;118:795.
349. Ali S, Ferguson ND. *Crit Care Clin*. 2011;27:487.
350. Ip T, Mehta S. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2012;18:70.
351. Custer JW, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2011;12:e176.
352. Pillow JJ, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2001;164:1019.
353. Kaczka DW, Lutchen KR. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 2004;32:596.
354. Biro P. *Anesth Clin*. 2010;28:397.
355. Hess DR, et al. *Respir Care Clin North Am*. 2001;7:577.
356. Kalenga M, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1998;84:1174.
357. Pillow JJ, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2004;5:172.
358. Pillow JJ, et al. *Pediatr Res*. 2002;52:538.
358a. Harcourt ER, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014.
358b. Tingay DG, et al. *Neonatology*. 2015;108:220.
359. Hager DN. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25:17.
360. Lucangelo U, et al. Capnography and adjuncts of mechanical ventilation. In: Gravenstein JS, et al., ed. *Capnography*. 2nd ed. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2011:169–181.
361. Kil HK, et al. *Yonsei Med J*. 2002;43:20.
362. Kugelman A, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2012;47:876.
363. Frietsch T, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44:391.
364. Nishimura M, et al. *Chest*. 1992;101:1681.
365. Biro P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:180.
365a. Herrmann J, et al. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2018;124:653.
365b. Mehta PP, et al. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2016;111:395.
366. Evans KL, et al. *J Laryngol Otol*. 1994;108:23.
367. Miodownik S, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12:718.
368. Algora-Weber A, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1986;14:895.
369. Sehati S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;63:47S.
370. Simon M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:861.
371. Wallen E, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23:1588.
372. Waydhas C, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1995;21:784.
373. Bercault N, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:2471.
374. Nakamura T, et al. *Chest*. 2003;123:159.
375. Kue R, et al. *Am J Crit Care*. 2011;20:153.
376. Prodhan P, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2010;11:227.
377. Szem JW, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23:1660.
378. Tobias JD, et al. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 1996;12:249.
379. Ansermino JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:873.
380. Lee J, et al. *Conf Proc IEEE Eng Med Biol Soc*. 2011;2011:8315.
381. Saeed M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39:952.
382. Imhoff M, Kuhls S. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1525.
383. Melek WW, et al. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2005;52:639.
384. Simons DJ, Rensink RA. *Trends Cogn Sci*. 2005;9:16.
385. Dosani M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:686.
386. Schadler D, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;185:637.
387. Blount M, et al. *IEEE Eng Med Biol Mag*. 2010;29:110.
388. Chatburn RL, Mireles-Cabodevila E. *Respir Care*. 2011;56:85.
389. Epstein RH, Dexter F. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:929.
390. Chiumello D, et al. *Crit Care*. 2008;12:R150.
391. Dellamonica J, et al. *Crit Care*. 2011;15:R294.
392. Pillow JJ, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2006;41:105.
393. Tobias JD. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19:434.
394. Sorensen LC, et al. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*. 2011;71:548.
395. Sandberg KL, et al. *Acta Paediatr*. 2011;100:676.
396. Xue Q, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:417.
397. Klopfenstein CE, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52:700.
398. De Oliveira GS Jr, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:774.
399. Chakravarthy M, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:451.
400. Kelly AM, Klim S. *Respir Med*. 2011;105:226.
401. Spelten O, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31:153.
402. Yu M, et al. *Shock*. 2007;27:615.
403. Chakravarthy M, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2009;23:363.
404. He HW, et al. *Shock*. 2012;37:152.
405. Yu M, et al. *Shock*. 2006;26:450.

406. Michard F. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2018.
407. Pistolesi M, Giuntini C. *Radiol Clin North Am*. 1978;16:551.
408. Rubenfeld GD, et al. *Chest*. 1999;116:1347.
409. Meade MO, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2000;161:85.
410. Sakka SG, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2000;26:180.
411. Isakow W, Schuster DP. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2006;291:L1118.
412. Martin GS, et al. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:R74.
413. Kuzkov VV, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1647.
414. Phillips CR, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:69.
415. Fernandez-Mondejar E, et al. *J Trauma*. 2005;59:1420. discussion 1424.
416. Assaad S, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1471.
417. Stephan F, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45:e409–e417.
418. Pottecher J, et al. *Transplantation*. 2017;101:112.
419. Michelet P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:911.
420. Mitchell JP, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1992;145:990.
421. Mutoh T, et al. *Stroke*. 2009;40:2368.
422. von Spiegel T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:827.
423. Perkins GD, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2006;173:281.
424. Licker M, et al. *Chest*. 2008;133:845.
425. Effros RM, et al. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2008;294:L1023.
426. Easley RB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1065.
427. de Prost N, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2011;111:1249.
428. Roch A, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:811.
429. Carlile PV, Gray BA. *J Appl Physiol*. 1984;57:680.
430. Kuntscher MV, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2003;24:142.
431. Saugel B, et al. *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med*. 2011;19:31.
432. Saugel B, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2018.
433. Rossi P, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1437.

References

1. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Standards for Basic Anesthetic Monitoring*; 2011.
2. International Task Force on Anaesthesia Safety. *World Federation of Societies of Anaesthesiologists: International Standards for a Safe Practice of Anaesthesia 2010*; 2010.
3. Eichhorn JH, Cooper JB, Cullen DJ, Maier WR, Philip JH, Seeman RG. Standards for patient monitoring during anesthesia at Harvard Medical School. *JAMA*. 1986;256:1017–1020.
4. Botham KM, Mayes PA. Biologic oxidation, Harper's illustrated biochemistry. In: Murray RK, Rodwell VW, Bender D, Botham KM, Weil PA, Kennelly PJ, eds. *eBook Collection (EBSCOhost)*. 28th ed. McGraw-Hill Medical; 2009:98.
5. Severinghaus JW. Monitoring oxygenation. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2011;25:155–161.
6. Severinghaus JW. Gadgeteering for health care: the John W. Severinghaus lecture on translational science. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:721–728.
7. Campbell S, Wilson G, Engelhardt T. Equipment and monitoring—what is in the future to improve safety? *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:815–824.
8. Kenzaka T, Okayama M, Kuroki S, et al. Importance of vital signs to the early diagnosis and severity of sepsis: association between vital signs and sequential organ failure assessment score in patients with sepsis. *Intern Med*. 2012;51:871–876.
9. Welsby PD, Earis JE. Some high pitched thoughts on chest examination. *Postgrad Med J*. 2001;77:617–620.
10. Epstein O, Perkin G G, et al. The respiratory system, clinical examination. In: *Anonymous*. 4th ed. Elsevier Health Sciences; 2008.
11. Thomas C, Lumb AB. Physiology of haemoglobin. *Cont Ed Anaesth Crit Care Pain*. 2012;12:251–256.
12. Severinghaus JW. Nomenclature of oxygen saturation. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 1994;345:921–923.
13. Tremper KK, Barker SJ. Pulse oximetry. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:98–108.
14. Severinghaus JW, Honda Y. Pulse oximetry. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1987;25:205–214.

14a. Pulse Oximeters - Premarket Notification Submissions [510(k)s]: Guidance for Industry and Food and Drug Administration Staff - Document issued on: March 4, 2013, https://www.fda.gov/RegulatoryInformation/Guidances/ucm341718.htm. Accessed April 7, 2019.

15. Milner QJ, Mathews GR. An assessment of the accuracy of pulse oximeters. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:396–401.
16. Pologe JA. Pulse oximetry: technical aspects of machine design. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1987;25:137–153.
17. Merry AF, Cooper JB, Soyannwo O, Wilson IH, Eichhorn JH. International standards for a safe practice of anesthesia 2010. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57:1027–1034.
18. Haynes AB, Weiser TG, Berry WR, et al. Safe Surgery Saves Lives Study Group. A surgical safety checklist to reduce morbidity and mortality in a global population. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:491–499.
19. Macknet MR, Allard M, Applegate 2nd RL, Rook J. The accuracy of noninvasive and continuous total hemoglobin measurement by pulse co-oximetry in human subjects undergoing hemodilution. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1424–1426.
20. Barker SJ, Curry J, Redford D, Morgan S. Measurement of carboxyhemoglobin and methemoglobin by pulse oximetry: a human volunteer study. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:892–897.
21. Roth D, Herkner H, Schreiber W, et al. Accuracy of noninvasive multiwave pulse oximetry compared with carboxyhemoglobin from blood gas analysis in unselected emergency department patients. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2011;58:74–79.
22. Lamhaut L, Apriotesei R, Combes X, Lejay M, Carli P, Vivien B. Comparison of the accuracy of noninvasive hemoglobin monitoring by spectrophotometry (SpHb) and HemoCue(R) with automated laboratory hemoglobin measurement. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:548–554.
23. Frasca D, Dahyot-Fizelier C, Catherine K, Levrat Q, Debaene B, Mimoz O. Accuracy of a continuous noninvasive hemoglobin monitor in intensive care unit patients. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39:2277–2282.
24. Berkow L, Rotolo S, Mirski E. Continuous noninvasive hemoglobin monitoring during complex spine surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1396–1402.
25. Morey TE, Gravenstein N, Rice MJ. Assessing point-of-care hemoglobin measurement: be careful we don't bias with bias. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1289–1291.
26. Shamir MY, Avramovich A, Smaka T. The current status of continuous noninvasive measurement of total, carboxy, and methemoglobin concentration. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:972–978.
27. Maisel WH, Lewis RJ. Noninvasive measurement of carboxyhemoglobin: how accurate is accurate enough? *Ann Emerg Med*. 2010;56:389–391.
28. Caboot JB, Jawad AF, McDonough JM, et al. Non-invasive measurements of carboxyhemoglobin and methemoglobin in children with sickle cell disease. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2012;47:808–815.
29. Feiner JR, Rollins MD, Sall JW, Eilers H, Au P, Bickler PE. Accuracy of carboxyhemoglobin detection by pulse co-oximetry during hypoxemia. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:847–858.
30. Feiner JR, Bickler PE. Improved accuracy of methemoglobin detection by pulse co-oximetry during hypoxia. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1160–1167.
31. Mahle WT, Newburger JW, Matherne GP, et al., American Heart Association Congenital Heart Defects Committee of the Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, Council on Cardiovascular Nursing, and Interdisciplinary Council on Quality of Care and Outcomes Research, American Academy of Pediatrics Section on Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, and Committee on Fetus and Newborn. Role of pulse oximetry in examining newborns for congenital heart disease: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association and American Academy of Pediatrics. *Circulation*. 2009;120:447–458.
32. Mahle WT, Martin GR, Beekman 3rd RH, Morrow WR. Section on Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery Executive Committee. Endorsement of Health and Human Services recommendation for pulse oximetry screening for critical congenital heart disease. *Pediatrics*. 2012;129:190–192.
33. Ewer AK, Middleton LJ, Furmston AT, et al. Pulse oximetry screening for congenital heart defects in newborn infants (PulseOx): a test accuracy study. *Lancet*. 2011;378:785–794.
34. Thangaratinam S, Brown K, Zamora J, Khan KS, Ewer AK. Pulse oximetry screening for critical congenital heart defects in asymptomatic newborn babies: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet*. 2012;379:2459–2464.
35. Dorlas JC, Nijboer JA. Photo-electric plethysmography as a monitoring device in anaesthesia. Application and interpretation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57:524–530.
36. Cannesson M, Attof Y, Rosamel P, et al. Respiratory variations in pulse oximetry plethysmographic waveform amplitude to predict fluid responsiveness in the operating room. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1105–1111.
37. Cannesson M, Delannoy B, Morand A, et al. Does the Pleth variability index indicate the respiratory-induced variation in the plethysmogram and arterial pressure waveforms?. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(94):1189. table of contents.
38. Cannesson M, Slieker J, Desebbe O, et al. The ability of a novel algorithm for automatic estimation of the respiratory variations in arterial pulse pressure to monitor fluid responsiveness in the operating room. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(200):1195. table of contents.
39. Yin JY, Ho KM. Use of plethysmographic variability index derived from the Massimo((R)) pulse oximeter to predict fluid or preload responsiveness: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:777–783.
40. Wu CY, Cheng YJ, Liu YJ, Wu TT, Chien CT, Chan KC. NTUH Center of Microcirculation Medical Research (NCMMR). Predicting stroke volume and arterial pressure fluid responsiveness in liver cirrhosis patients using dynamic preload variables: a prospective study of diagnostic accuracy. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33:645–652.
41. Sandroni C, Cavallaro F, Marano C, Falcone C, De Santis P, Antonelli M. Accuracy of plethysmographic indices as predictors of fluid responsiveness in mechanically ventilated adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38:1429–1437.
42. Forget P, Lois F, de Kock M. Goal-directed fluid management based on the pulse oximeter-derived pleth variability index reduces lactate levels and improves fluid management. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:910–914.
43. Gothgen IH, Siggaard-Andersen O, Kokholm G. Variations in the hemoglobin-oxygen dissociation curve in 10079 arterial blood samples. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest Suppl*. 1990;203:87–90.

44. Perkins GD, McAuley DF, Giles S, Routledge H, Gao F. Do changes in pulse oximeter oxygen saturation predict equivalent changes in arterial oxygen saturation? *Crit Care*. 2003;7:R67.
45. Van de Louw A, Cracco C, Cerf C, et al. Accuracy of pulse oximetry in the intensive care unit. *Intensive Care Med*. 2001;27:1606–1613.
45a. Pedersen T, Nicholson A, Hovhannisyan K, et al. Pulse oximetry for perioperative monitoring. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;(3): CD002013.
45b. Moller JT, Johannessen NW, Espersen K, et al. Randomized evaluation of pulse oximetry in 20,802 patients: II. Perioperative events and postoperative complications. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(3):445–453.
45c. Ochroch EA, Russell MW, Hanson 3rd WC, et al. The impact of continuous pulse oximetry monitoring on intensive care unit admissions from a postsurgical care floor. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(3):868–875.
46. Mannheimer PD. The light-tissue interaction of pulse oximetry. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:S10–S17.
47. Feiner JR, Severinghaus JW, Bickler PE. Dark skin decreases the accuracy of pulse oximeters at low oxygen saturation: the effects of oximeter probe type and gender. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(23):S18. tables of contents.
48. Cox P. New pulse oximetry sensors with low saturation accuracy claims - a clinical evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:A1540.
49. Hinkelbein J, Genzwuerker HV, Fiedler F. Detection of a systolic pressure threshold for reliable readings in pulse oximetry. *Resuscitation*. 2005;64:315–319.
50. Barker SJ. "Motion-resistant" pulse oximetry: a comparison of new and old models. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(72):967. table of contents.
51. Shah N, Ragaswamy HB, Govindugari K, Estanol L. Performance of three new-generation pulse oximeters during motion and low perfusion in volunteers. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24:385–391.
52. Chan ED, Chan MM, Chan MM. Pulse oximetry: understanding its basic principles facilitates appreciation of its limitations. *Respir Med*. 2013;107:789–799.
53. Hampson NB. Pulse oximetry in severe carbon monoxide poisoning. *Chest*. 1998;114:1036–1041.
54. Eisenkraft JB. Pulse oximeter desaturation due to methemoglobinemia. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:279–282.
55. Jay GD, Hughes L, Renzi FP. Pulse oximetry is accurate in acute anemia from hemorrhage. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1994;24:32–35.
56. Severinghaus JW, Koh SO. Effect of anemia on pulse oximeter accuracy at low saturation. *J Clin Monit*. 1990;6:85–88.
57. Ortiz FO, Aldrich TK, Nagel RL, Benjamin LJ. Accuracy of pulse oximetry in sickle cell disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1999;159:447–451.
58. Rajadurai VS, Walker AM, Yu VY, Oates A. Effect of fetal haemoglobin on the accuracy of pulse oximetry in preterm infants. *J Paediatr Child Health*. 1992;28:43–46.
59. Ahmed S, Siddiqui AK, Sison CP, Shahid RK, Mattana J. Hemoglobin oxygen saturation discrepancy using various methods in patients with sickle cell vaso-occlusive painful crisis. *Eur J Haematol*. 2005;74:309–314.
60. Comber JT, Lopez BL. Evaluation of pulse oximetry in sickle cell anemia patients presenting to the emergency department in acute vaso-occlusive crisis. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1996;14:16–18.
61. Verhovsek M, Henderson MP, Cox G, Luo HY, Steinberg MH, Chui DH. Unexpectedly low pulse oximetry measurements associated with variant hemoglobins: a systematic review. *Am J Hematol*. 2010;85:882–885.
62. Scheller MS, Unger RJ, Kelner MJ. Effects of intravenously administered dyes on pulse oximetry readings. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:550–552.
63. Hinkelbein J, Genzwuerker HV, Sogl R, Fiedler F. Effect of nail polish on oxygen saturation determined by pulse oximetry in critically ill patients. *Resuscitation*. 2007;72:82–91.
64. Hinkelbein J, Koehler H, Genzwuerker HV, Fiedler F. Artificial acrylic finger nails may alter pulse oximetry measurement. *Resuscitation*. 2007;74:75–82.
65. Adler JN, Hughes LA, Vivilecchia R, Camargo CA Jr. Effect of skin pigmentation on pulse oximetry accuracy in the emergency department. *Acad Emerg Med*. 1998;5:965–970.
66. Bickler PE, Feiner JR, Severinghaus JW. Effects of skin pigmentation on pulse oximeter accuracy at low saturation. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:715–719.
67. Amar D, Neidzwski J, Wald A, Finck AD. Fluorescent light interferes with pulse oximetry. *J Clin Monit*. 1989;5:135–136.
68. Trivedi NS, Ghouri AF, Shah NK, Lai E, Barker SJ. Effects of motion, ambient light, and hypoperfusion on pulse oximeter function. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:179–183.
69. Fluck RR Jr, Schroeder C, Frani G, Kropf B, Engbretson B. Does ambient light affect the accuracy of pulse oximetry? *Respir Care*. 2003;48:677–680.
70. van Oostrom JH, Mahla ME, Gravenstein D. The stealth station image guidance system may interfere with pulse oximetry. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:379–382.
71. Mathes AM, Kreuer S, Schneider SO, Ziegeler S, Grundmann U. The performance of six pulse oximeters in the environment of neuronavigation. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:541–544.
72. Kelleher JF, Ruff RH. The penumbra effect: vasomotion-dependent pulse oximeter artifact due to probe malposition. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:787–791.
73. Zoremba N, Brulls C, Thiel V, Rohl A, Rossaint R. Pulse oximetry during intraaortic balloon pump application. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:322–327.
74. Oleyar M, Stone M, Neustein SM. Perioperative management of a patient with a nonpulsatile left ventricular-assist device presenting for noncardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:820–823.
75. Mabadeje O, Agwu A, Passaretti K, Lehman H, Asiyanbola B. Do disposable pulse oximeter sensors impact infection rates? A review of the literature. *J Hosp Infect*. 2010;76:93–94.
76. Evans ML, Geddes LA. An assessment of blood vessel vasoactivity using photoplethysmography. *Med Instrum*. 1988;22:29–32.
77. Sinex JE. Pulse oximetry: principles and limitations. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1999;17:59–67.
78. Berkenbosch JW, Tobias JD. Comparison of a new forehead reflectance pulse oximeter sensor with a conventional digit sensor in pediatric patients. *Respir Care*. 2006;51:726–731.
79. MacLeod DB, Cortinez LI, Keifer JC, et al. The desaturation response time of finger pulse oximeters during mild hypothermia. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60:65–71.
80. Kulcke A, Feiner J, Menn I, Holmer A, Hayoz J, Bickler P. The accuracy of pulse spectroscopy for detecting hypoxemia and coexisting methemoglobin or carboxyhemoglobin. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:1856–1865.
81. Smit M, Levin AI, Coetzee JF. Comparison of minimally and more invasive methods of determining mixed venous oxygen saturation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30:379–388.
82. Jenstrup M, Ejlersen E, Mogensen T, Secher NH. A maximal central venous oxygen saturation (SvO2max) for the surgical patient. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1995;107:29–32.
83. Harms MP, van Lieshout JJ, Jenstrup M, Pott F, Secher NH. Postural effects on cardiac output and mixed venous oxygen saturation in humans. *Exp Physiol*. 2003;88:611–616.
84. Ho KM, Harding R, Chamberlain J. The impact of arterial oxygen tension on venous oxygen saturation in circulatory failure. *Shock*. 2008;29:3–6.
85. Dahn MS, Lange MP, Jacobs LA. Central mixed and splanchnic venous oxygen saturation monitoring. *Intensive Care Med*. 1988;14:373–378.
86. Martin C, Auffray JP, Badetti C, Perrin G, Papazian L, Gouin F. Monitoring of central venous oxygen saturation versus mixed venous oxygen saturation in critically ill patients. *Intensive Care Med*. 1992;18:101–104.
87. Varpula M, Karlsson S, Ruokonen E, Pettila V. Mixed venous oxygen saturation cannot be estimated by central venous oxygen saturation in septic shock. *Intensive Care Med*. 2006;32:1336–1343.
88. Ho KM, Harding R, Chamberlain J, Bulsara M. A comparison of central and mixed venous oxygen saturation in circulatory failure. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:434–439.
89. Reinhart K, Rudolph T, Bredle DL, Hannemann L, Cain SM. Comparison of central-venous to mixed-venous oxygen saturation during changes in oxygen supply/demand. *Chest*. 1989;95: 1216–1221.
90. Chawla LS, Zia H, Gutierrez G, Katz NM, Seneff MG, Shah M. Lack of equivalence between central and mixed venous oxygen saturation. *Chest*. 2004;126:1891–1896.
91. Dueck MH, Klimek M, Appenrodt S, Weigand C, Boerner U. Trends but not individual values of central venous oxygen saturation agree with mixed venous oxygen saturation during varying hemodynamic conditions. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:249–257.

92. Lorentzen AG, Lindskov C, Sloth E, Jakobsen CJ. Central venous oxygen saturation cannot replace mixed venous saturation in patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2008;22:853–857.
93. Grissom CK, Morris AH, Lanken PN, et al. National Institutes of Health/National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute Acute Respiratory Distress. Association of physical examination with pulmonary artery catheter parameters in acute lung injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37:2720–2726.
94. Kopterides P, Bonovas S, Mavrou I, Kostadima E, Zakynthinos E, Armaganidis A. Venous oxygen saturation and lactate gradient from superior vena cava to pulmonary artery in patients with septic shock. *Shock*. 2009;31:561–567.
95. Dahmani S, Paugam-Burtz C, Gauss T, et al. Comparison of central and mixed venous saturation during liver transplantation in cirrhotic patients: a pilot study. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:714–719.
96. Lequeux PY, Bouckaert Y, Sekkat H, et al. Continuous mixed venous and central venous oxygen saturation in cardiac surgery with cardiopulmonary bypass. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:295–299.
97. Lamia B, Monnet X, Teboul JL. Meaning of arterio-venous PCO2 difference in circulatory shock. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2006;72:597–604.
98. Suter PM, Lindauer JM, Fairley HB, Schlobohm RM. Errors in data derived from pulmonary artery blood gas values. *Crit Care Med*. 1975;3:175–181.
99. Pond CG, Blessios G, Bowlin J, McCawley C, Lappas DG. Perioperative evaluation of a new mixed venous oxygen saturation catheter in cardiac surgical patients. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:280–282.
100. Maddirala S, Khan A. Optimizing hemodynamic support in septic shock using central and mixed venous oxygen saturation. *Crit Care Clin*. 2010;26(33):323. table of contents.
101. Scuderi PE, MacGregor DA, Bowton DL, James RL. A laboratory comparison of three pulmonary artery oximetry catheters. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:245–253.
102. Baulig W, Dullenkopf A, Kobler A, Baulig B, Roth HR, Schmid ER. Accuracy of continuous central venous oxygen saturation monitoring in patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2008;22:183–188.
103. Baulig W, Bettex D, Burki C, et al. The PediaSat continuous central SvO2 monitoring system does not reliably indicate state or course of central venous oxygenation. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:720–725.
104. Schmidt CR, Frank LP, Forsythe SB, Estafanous FG. Continuous S-vO2 measurement and oxygen transport patterns in cardiac surgery patients. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12:523–527.
105. Routsi C, Vincent JL, Bakker J, et al. Relation between oxygen consumption and oxygen delivery in patients after cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:1104–1110.
106. Polonen P, Hippelainen M, Takala R, Ruokonen E, Takala J. Relationship between intra- and postoperative oxygen transport and prolonged intensive care after cardiac surgery: a prospective study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41:810–817.
107. Pearse R, Dawson D, Fawcett J, Rhodes A, Grounds RM, Bennett ED. Changes in central venous saturation after major surgery, and association with outcome. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:R694–R699.
108. Collaborative Study Group on Perioperative ScvO2 Monitoring: Multicentre study on peri- and postoperative central venous oxygen saturation in high-risk surgical patients. *Crit Care*. 2006;10:R158.
109. Polonen P, Ruokonen E, Hippelainen M, Poyhonen M, Takala J. A prospective, randomized study of goal-oriented hemodynamic therapy in cardiac surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1052–1059.
110. Rivers E, Nguyen B, Havstad S, et al. Early Goal-Directed Therapy Collaborative Group. Early goal-directed therapy in the treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:1368–1377.
111. Donati A, Loggi S, Preiser JC, et al. Goal-directed intraoperative therapy reduces morbidity and length of hospital stay in high-risk surgical patients. *Chest*. 2007;132:1817–1824.
112. Dellinger RP, Levy MM, Carlet JM, et al. American Association of Critical-Care Nurses, American College of Chest Physicians, American College of Emergency Physicians, Canadian Critical Care Society, European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases, European Society of Intensive Care Medicine, European Respiratory Society, International Sepsis Forum, Japanese Association for Acute Medicine, Japanese Society of Intensive Care Medicine, Society of Critical Care Medicine, Society of Hospital Medicine, Surgical Infection Society, World Federation of Societies of Intensive and Critical Care Medicine. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock: 2008. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:296–327.
113. Otero RM, Nguyen HB, Huang DT, et al. Early goal-directed therapy in severe sepsis and septic shock revisited: concepts, controversies, and contemporary findings. *Chest*. 2006;130:1579–1595.
114. Bellomo R, Reade MC, Warrillow SJ. The pursuit of a high central venous oxygen saturation in sepsis: growing concerns. *Crit Care*. 2008;12:130.
115. Peake SL, Bailey M, Bellomo R, et al. ARISE Investigators, for the Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society Clinical Trials Group. Australasian resuscitation of sepsis evaluation (ARISE): a multi-centre, prospective, inception cohort study. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80:811–818.
116. Jones AE, Shapiro NI, Trzeciak S, Arnold RC, Claremont HA, Kline JA. Emergency Medicine Shock Research Network (EMShockNet) Investigators. Lactate clearance vs central venous oxygen saturation as goals of early sepsis therapy: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2010;303:739–746.
117. Suehiro K, Tanaka K, Matsuura T, et al. Discrepancy between superior vena cava oxygen saturation and mixed venous oxygen saturation can predict postoperative complications in cardiac surgery patients. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28:528–533.
118. Bickler P, Feiner J, Rollins M, Meng L. Tissue oximetry and clinical outcomes. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:72–82.
119. Ubbink R, Bettink MAW, Janse R, et al. A monitor for Cellular Oxygen METabolism (COMET): monitoring tissue oxygenation at the mitochondrial level. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31:1143–1150.
120. Wahr JA, Tremper KK, Samra S, Delpy DT. Near-infrared spectroscopy: theory and applications. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1996;10:406–418.
121. Cui W, Wang N, Chance B. Study of photon migration depths with time-resolved spectroscopy. *Opt Lett*. 1991;16:1632–1634.
122. Schober P, Schwarte LA. From system to organ to cell: oxygenation and perfusion measurement in anesthesia and critical care. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2012;26:255–265.
123. Jobsis FF. Noninvasive, infrared monitoring of cerebral and myocardial oxygen sufficiency and circulatory parameters. *Science*. 1977;198:1264–1267.
124. Watzman HM, Kurth CD, Montenegro LM, Rome J, Steven JM, Nicolson SC. Arterial and venous contributions to near-infrared cerebral oximetry. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:947–953.
125. Sakr Y, Gath V, Oishi J, et al. Characterization of buccal microvascular response in patients with septic shock. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:388–394.
126. Holzle F, Rau A, Loeffelbein DJ, Mucke T, Kesting MR, Wolff KD. Results of monitoring fasciocutaneous, myocutaneous, osteocutaneous and perforator flaps: 4-year experience with 166 cases. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2010;39:21–28.
127. Karliczek A, Benaron DA, Baas PC, Zeebregts CJ, Wiggers T, van Dam GM. Intraoperative assessment of microperfusion with visible light spectroscopy for prediction of anastomotic leakage in colorectal anastomoses. *Colorectal Dis*. 2010;12:1018–1025.
128. Pham TH, Perry KA, Enestvedt CK, et al. Decreased conduit perfusion measured by spectroscopy is associated with anastomotic complications. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2011;91:380–385.
129. Friedland S, Benaron D, Parachikov I, Soetikno R. Measurement of mucosal capillary hemoglobin oxygen saturation in the colon by reflectance spectrophotometry. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2003;57:492–497.
130. Friedland S, Benaron D, Coogan S, Sze DY, Soetikno R. Diagnosis of chronic mesenteric ischemia by visible light spectroscopy during endoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2007;65:294–300.
131. Bludau M, Holscher AH, Vallbohmer D, Gutschow C, Schroder W. Ischemic conditioning of the gastric conduit prior to esophagectomy improves mucosal oxygen saturation. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;90:1121–1126.
132. Highton D, Elwell C, Smith M. Noninvasive cerebral oximetry: is there light at the end of the tunnel? *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:576–581.
133. Chan MJ, Chung T, Glassford NJ, Bellomo R. Near-infrared spectroscopy in adult cardiac surgery patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1155–1165.
134. Murkin JM, Adams SJ, Novick RJ, et al. Monitoring brain oxygen saturation during coronary bypass surgery: a randomized, prospective study. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:51–58.

135. Slater JP, Guarino T, Stack J, et al. Cerebral oxygen desaturation predicts cognitive decline and longer hospital stay after cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;87(36):44. discussion 44-5.
136. Yao FS, Tseng CC, Ho CY, Levin SK, Illner P. Cerebral oxygen desaturation is associated with early postoperative neuropsychological dysfunction in patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:552–558.
137. Fischer GW, Lin HM, Krol M, et al. Noninvasive cerebral oxygenation may predict outcome in patients undergoing aortic arch surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2011;141:815–821.
138. de Tournay-Jette E, Dupuis G, Bherer L, Deschamps A, Cartier R, Denault A. The relationship between cerebral oxygen saturation changes and postoperative cognitive dysfunction in elderly patients after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2011;25:95–104.
139. Ghosal S, Trivedi J, Chen J, et al. Regional cerebral oxygen saturation level predicts 30-day mortality rate after left ventricular assist device surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32:1185–1190.
140. Kirkpatrick PJ, Lam J, Al-Rawi P, Smielewski P, Czosnyka M. Defining thresholds for critical ischemia by using near-infrared spectroscopy in the adult brain. *J Neurosurg*. 1998;89:389–394.
141. Grubhofer G, Plochl W, Skolka M, Czerny M, Ehrlich M, Lassnigg A. Comparing Doppler ultrasonography and cerebral oximetry as indicators for shunting in carotid endarterectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1339–1344.
142. Vets P, ten Broecke P, Adriaensen H, Van Schil P, De Hert S. Cerebral oximetry in patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy: preliminary results. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 2004;55:215–220.
143. Al-Rawi PG, Kirkpatrick PJ. Tissue oxygen index: thresholds for cerebral ischemia using near-infrared spectroscopy. *Stroke*. 2006;37:2720–2725.
144. Moritz S, Kasprzak P, Arlt M, Taeger K, Metz C. Accuracy of cerebral monitoring in detecting cerebral ischemia during carotid endarterectomy: a comparison of transcranial Doppler sonography, near-infrared spectroscopy, stump pressure, and somatosensory evoked potentials. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:563–569.
145. de Letter JA, Sie HT, Thomas BM, et al. Near-infrared reflected spectroscopy and electroencephalography during carotid endarterectomy—in search of a new shunt criterion. *Neurol Res*. 1998;20(suppl 1):S23–S27.
146. Hirofumi O, Otone E, Hiroshi I, et al. The effectiveness of regional cerebral oxygen saturation monitoring using near-infrared spectroscopy in carotid endarterectomy. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2003;10:79–83.
147. Rigamonti A, Scandroglio M, Minicucci F, Magrin S, Carozzo A, Casati A. A clinical evaluation of near-infrared cerebral oximetry in the awake patient to monitor cerebral perfusion during carotid endarterectomy. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17:426–430.
148. Yamamoto K, Miyata T, Nagawa H. Good correlation between cerebral oxygenation measured using near infrared spectroscopy and stump pressure during carotid clamping. *Int Angiol*. 2007;26:262–265.
149. Jonsson M, Lindstrom D, Wanhainen A, Djavani Gidlund K, Gillgren P. Near infrared spectroscopy as a predictor for shunt requirement during carotid endarterectomy. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2017;53:783–791.
150. Samra SK, Dy EA, Welch K, Dorje P, Zelenock GB, Stanley JC. Evaluation of a cerebral oximeter as a monitor of cerebral ischemia during carotid endarterectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:964–970.
151. Mille T, Tachimiri ME, Klersy C, et al. Near infrared spectroscopy monitoring during carotid endarterectomy: which threshold value is critical? *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2004;27:646–650.
152. Boezeman RP, van Dongen EP, Morshuis WJ, et al. Spinal near-infrared spectroscopy measurements during and after thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm repair: a pilot study. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2015;99:1267–1274.
153. Casati A, Fanelli G, Pietropaoli P, et al. Continuous monitoring of cerebral oxygen saturation in elderly patients undergoing major abdominal surgery minimizes brain exposure to potential hypoxia. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(7):740. table of contents.
154. Tang L, Kazan R, Taddei R, Zaouter C, Cyr S, Hemmerling TM. Reduced cerebral oxygen saturation during thoracic surgery predicts early postoperative cognitive dysfunction. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:623–629.
155. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Marymont JH, et al. Cerebral oxygen desaturation events assessed by near-infrared spectroscopy during shoulder arthroscopy in the beach chair and lateral decubitus positions. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:496–505.
156. Moerman AT, De Hert SG, Jacobs TF, De Wilde LF, Wouters PF. Cerebral oxygen desaturation during beach chair position. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29:82–87.
157. Tange K, Kinoshita H, Minonishi T, et al. Cerebral oxygenation in the beach chair position before and during general anesthesia. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2010;76:485–490.
158. Crookes BA, Cohn SM, Bloch S, et al. Can near-infrared spectroscopy identify the severity of shock in trauma patients?. *J Trauma*. 2005;58(13):806. discussion 813-6.
159. Cohn SM, Nathens AB, Moore FA, et al. StO2 in Trauma Patients Trial Investigators. Tissue oxygen saturation predicts the development of organ dysfunction during traumatic shock resuscitation. *J Trauma*. 2007;62(54):44. discussion 54-5.
160. Ikossi DG, Knudson MM, Morabito DJ, et al. Continuous muscle tissue oxygenation in critically injured patients: a prospective observational study. *J Trauma*. 2006;61(8):780. discussion 788-90.
161. Yu Y, Zhang K, Zhang L, Zong H, Meng L, Han R. Cerebral near-infrared spectroscopy (NIRS) for perioperative monitoring of brain oxygenation in children and adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2018;1:CD010947.
162. Sun X, Ellis J, Corso PJ, Hill PC, Chen F, Lindsay J. Skin pigmentation interferes with the clinical measurement of regional cerebral oxygen saturation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114:276–280.
163. Bohr C. Ueber die Lungenathmung. *Skandinavisches Archiv Für Physiologie*. 1891;2:236–268.
164. Mogue LR, Rantala B. Capnometers. *J Clin Monit*. 1988;4:115–121.
165. Bhavani-Shankar K, Kumar AY, Moseley HS, Ahyee-Hallsworth R. Terminology and the current limitations of time capnography: a brief review. *J Clin Monit*. 1995;11:175–182.
166. Gravenstein JS, Paulus DA, Hayes TJ. *Capnography in Clinical Practice*. 1st ed. Boston: Butterworth Publishers; 1989.
167. Gravenstein JS, Paulus DA, Hayes TJ. *Gas Monitoring in Clinical Practice*. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1995.
168. Jaffe MB. Infrared measurement of carbon dioxide in the human breath: "breathe-through" devices from Tyndall to the present day. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2008;107:890–904.
169. Raemer DB, Calalang I. Accuracy of end-tidal carbon dioxide tension analyzers. *J Clin Monit*. 1991;7:195–208.
170. Hess D. Capnometry and capnography: Technical aspects, physiologic aspects, and clinical applications. *Respiratory Care*. 1990;35:557–576.
171. Brunner JX, Westenskow DR. How the rise time of carbon dioxide analysers influences the accuracy of carbon dioxide measurements. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61:628–638.
172. Jaffe MB. *Mainstream or Sidestream Capnography? Technical Considerations*. Wallingford, CT: Respironics Novametric, Inc; 2002.
173. Kaczka DW, Lutchen KR, Hantos Z. Emergent behavior of regional heterogeneity in the lung and its effects on respiratory impedance. *J Appl Physiol*. 2011;110:1473–1481.
174. Bhavani-Shankar K, Philip JH. Defining segments and phases of a time capnogram. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:973–977.
175. Moon RE, Camporesi EM. Respiratory monitoring. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's anesthesia*. New York: Elsevier; 2005: 1255,1295; 33.

175a. Mondoñedo JR, McNeil JS, Herrmann J, Simon BA, Kaczka DW. Targeted versus continuous delivery of volatile anesthetics during cholinergic bronchoconstriction. *ASME J of Medical Diagnostics*. 2018;1(031003):031003–031012.

176. Fletcher R, Jonson B, Cumming G, Brew J. The concept of deadspace with special reference to the single breath test for carbon dioxide. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:77–88.
177. McKenzie DC. Respiratory physiology: adaptations to high-level exercise. *Br J Sports Med*. 2012;46:381–384.
178. Grocott MP, Martin DS, Levett DZ, McMorrow R, Windsor J, Montgomery HE. Caudwell Xtreme Everest Research Group. Arterial blood gases and oxygen content in climbers on Mount Everest. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:140–149.
179. Wagner PD, Laravuso RB, Uhl RR, West JB. Continuous distributions of ventilation-perfusion ratios in normal subjects breathing air and 100 per cent O2. *J Clin Invest*. 1974;54:54–68.

180. Ravin MB, Epstein RM, Malm JR. Contribution of thebesian veins to the physiologic shunt in anesthetized man. *J Appl Physiol*. 1965;20:1148–1152.
181. Brismar B, Hedenstierna G, Lundquist H, Strandberg A, Svensson L, Tokics L. Pulmonary densities during anesthesia with muscular relaxation—a proposal of atelectasis. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:422–428.
182. Rothen HU, Sporre B, Engberg G, Wegenius G, Hedenstierna G. Airway closure, atelectasis and gas exchange during general anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:681–686.
183. Riley RL, Cournand A. Ideal alveolar air and the analysis of ventilation-perfusion relationships in the lungs. *J Appl Physiol*. 1949;1:825–847.
184. Whiteley JP, Gavaghan DJ, Hahn CE. Variation of venous admixture, SF6 shunt, PaO2, and the PaO2/FIO2 ratio with FIO2. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:771–778.
185. Gould MK, Ruoss SJ, Rizk NW, Doyle RL, Raffin TA. Indices of hypoxemia in patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome: reliability, validity, and clinical usefulness. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25:6–8.
186. McCahon RA, Columb MO, Mahajan RP, Hardman JG. Validation and application of a high-fidelity, computational model of acute respiratory distress syndrome to the examination of the indices of oxygenation at constant lung-state. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:358–365.
187. Kathirgamanathan A, McCahon RA, Hardman JG. Indices of pulmonary oxygenation in pathological lung states: an investigation using high-fidelity, computational modelling. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:291–297.
188. Lilienthal JL Jr, Riley RL. An experimental analysis in man of the oxygen pressure gradient from alveolar air to arterial blood during rest and exercise at sea level and at altitude. *Am J Physiol*. 1946;147:199–216.
189. Mellemgaard K. The alveolar-arterial oxygen difference: its size and components in normal man. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 1966;67:10–20.
190. Gowda MS, Klocke RA. Variability of indices of hypoxemia in adult respiratory distress syndrome. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25:41–45.
191. Ranieri VM, Rubenfeld GD, Thompson BT, et al. Acute respiratory distress syndrome: the Berlin definition. *JAMA*. 2012;307:2526–2533.
192. Rice TW, Wheeler AP, Bernard GR, Hayden DL, Schoenfeld DA, Ware LB. For the National Institutes of Health, National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute ARDS Network. Comparison of the SpO2/FIO2 ratio and the PaO2/FIO2 ratio in patients with acute lung injury or ARDS. *Chest*. 2007;132:410–417.
193. Khemani RG, Thomas NJ, Venkatachalam V, et al. Pediatric Acute Lung Injury and Sepsis Network Investigators (PALISI). Comparison of SpO2 to PaO2 based markers of lung disease severity for children with acute lung injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:1309–1316.
194. DesPrez K, McNeil JB, Wang C, Bastarache JA, Shaver CM, Ware LB. Oxygenation saturation index predicts clinical outcomes in ARDS. *Chest*. 2017;152:1151–1158.
195. Villar J, Blanco J, del Campo R, et al. Spanish Initiative for Epidemiology, Stratification & Therapies for ARDS (SIESTA) Network. Assessment of PaO(2)/FiO(2) for stratification of patients with moderate and severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. *BMJ Open*. 2015;5: e006812.
196. Balzer F, Menk M, Ziegler J, et al. Predictors of survival in critically ill patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS): an observational study. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2016;16:108.
197. Ortiz RM, Cilley RE, Bartlett RH. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in pediatric respiratory failure. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1987;34:39–46.
198. Trachsel D, McCrindle BW, Nakagawa S, Bohn D. Oxygenation index predicts outcome in children with acute hypoxemic respiratory failure. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2005;172:206–211.
199. Gajic O, Afessa B, Thompson BT, et al. Second International Study of Mechanical Ventilation and ARDS-net Investigators. Prediction of death and prolonged mechanical ventilation in acute lung injury. *Crit Care*. 2007;11:R53.
200. Kaczka DW, Herrmann J, Zonneveld CE, et al. Multifrequency oscillatory ventilation in the premature lung: effects on gas exchange, mechanics, and ventilation distribution. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:1394–1403.
201. Christiansen J, Douglas CG, Haldane JS. The absorption and dissociation of carbon dioxide by human blood. *J Physiol*. 1914;48:244–271.
202. Severinghaus JW, Astrup PB. History of blood gas analysis. IV. Leland Clark's oxygen electrode. *J Clin Monit*. 1986;2:125–139.
203. Severinghaus JW. The invention and development of blood gas analysis apparatus. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:253–256.
204. Andritsch RF, Muravchick S, Gold MI. Temperature correction of arterial blood-gas parameters: a comparative review of methodology. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:311–316.
205. Kern FH, Greeley WJ. Pro: pH-stat management of blood gases is not preferable to alpha-stat in patients undergoing brain cooling for cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1995;9:215–218.
206. Burrows FA. Con: pH-stat management of blood gases is preferable to alpha-stat in patients undergoing brain cooling for cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1995;9:219–221.
207. Patel RL, Turtle MR, Chambers DJ, James DN, Newman S, Venn GE. Alpha-stat acid-base regulation during cardiopulmonary bypass improves neuropsychologic outcome in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1996;111:1267–1279.
208. Engelhardt W, Dierks T, Pause M, Hartung E. Early cerebral functional outcome after coronary artery bypass surgery using different acid-base management during hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:457–465.
209. du Plessis AJ, Jonas RA, Wypij D, et al. Perioperative effects of alpha-stat versus pH-stat strategies for deep hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass in infants. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1997;114(1000):991. discussion 1000-1.
210. Bellinger DC, Wypij D, du Plessis AJ, et al. Developmental and neurologic effects of alpha-stat versus pH-stat strategies for deep hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass in infants. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2001;121:374–383.
211. Kiziltan HT, Baltali M, Bilen A, et al. Comparison of alpha-stat and pH-stat cardiopulmonary bypass in relation to jugular venous oxygen saturation and cerebral glucose-oxygen utilization. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(50):644. table of contents.
212. Piccioni MA, Leirner AA, Auler JO Jr. Comparison of pH-stat versus alpha-stat during hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass in the prevention and control of acidosis in cardiac surgery. *Artif Organs*. 2004;28:347–352.
213. Sakamoto T, Kurosawa H, Shin'oka T, Aoki M, Isomatsu Y. The influence of pH strategy on cerebral and collateral circulation during hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass in cyanotic patients with heart disease: results of a randomized trial and real-time monitoring. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:12–19.
214. Hoover LR, Dinavahi R, Cheng WP, et al. Jugular venous oxygenation during hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass in patients at risk for abnormal cerebral autoregulation: influence of alpha-stat versus pH-stat blood gas management. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1389–1393.
215. Nagy ZL, Collins M, Sharpe T, et al. Effect of two different bypass techniques on the serum troponin-T levels in newborns and children: does pH-Stat provide better protection? *Circulation*. 2003;108:577–582.
216. Murkin JM, Martzke JS, Buchan AM, Bentley C, Wong CJ. A randomized study of the influence of perfusion technique and pH management strategy in 316 patients undergoing coronary artery bypass surgery. II. Neurologic and cognitive outcomes. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;110:349–362.
217. Svyatets M, Tolani K, Zhang M, Tulman G, Charchaflieh J. Perioperative management of deep hypothermic circulatory arrest. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:644–655.
218. Biswas CK, Ramos JM, Agroyannis B, Kerr DN. Blood gas analysis: effect of air bubbles in syringe and delay in estimation. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)*. 1982;284:923–927.
219. Kaczka DW, Colletti AA, Tawhai MH, Simon BA. Computational analyses of airway flow and lung tissue dynamics, image-based computational modeling of the human circulatory and pulmonary systems: methods and applications. In: *Image-based computational modeling of the human circulatory and pulmonary systems: Methods and applications*. Chandran KB, Udaykumar HS, Reinhardt JM, eds. 1st ed. New York: Springer; 2011:375. 402; 10.

220. Kaczka DW, Smallwood JL. Constant-phase descriptions of canine lung, chest wall, and total respiratory viscoelasticity: effects of distending pressure. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2012;183:75–84.
221. Warner DO. So you want to be a pulmonary mechanic: a clinical guide. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2000;16:417–423.
222. Bates JHT. *Lung Mechanics: An Inverse Modeling Approach Cambridge*. Cambridge University Press; 2009:220.
223. Pedley TJ, Schroter RC, Sudlow MF. The prediction of pressure drop and variation of resistance within the human bronchial airways. *Respiration Physiology*. 1970;9:387–405.
224. Rohrer F. Der Strömungswiderstand in den menschlichen Atemwegen und der Einfluss der unregelmässigen Verzweigung des Bronchialsystems auf den Atmungsverlauf in verschiedenen Lungenbezirken. *Pfluegers Arch Gesamte Physiol Menschen Tiere*. 1915;162:225–299.
225. Mora R, Arold S, Marzan Y, Suki B, Ingenito EP. Determinants of surfactant function in acute lung injury and early recovery. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2000;279:L342–L349.
226. Fredberg JJ, Stamenovic D. On the imperfect elasticity of lung tissue. *J Appl Physiol*. 1989;67:2408–2419.
227. Fredberg JJ, Inouye D, Miller B, et al. Airway smooth muscle, tidal stretches, and dynamically determined contractile states. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1997;156:1752–1759.
228. McIlroy MB, Mead J, Selverstone NJ, Radford EP Jr. Measurement of lung tissue viscous resistance using gases of equal kinematic viscosity. *J Appl Physiol*. 1955;7:485–490.
229. Bachofen H. Lung tissue resistance and pulmonary hysteresis. *J Appl Physiol*. 1968;24:296–301.
230. Hantos Z, Daroczy B, Suki B, Nagy S, Fredberg JJ. Input impedance and peripheral inhomogeneity of dog lungs. *J Appl Physiol*. 1992;72:168–178.
231. Kaczka DW, Ingenito EP, Suki B, Lutchen KR. Partitioning airway and lung tissue resistances in humans: effects of bronchoconstriction. *J Appl Physiol*. 1997;82:1531–1541.
232. Hoppin FG Jr, Hildebrandt J. *Mechanical Properties of the Lung, Bioengineering Aspects of the Lung West JB, ed*. New York: M. Dekker; 1977:83–162.
232a. Kano S, Lanteri CJ, Duncan AW, Sly PD. Influence of nonlinearities on estimates of respiratory mechanics using multilinear regression analysis. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1994;77:1185–1197.
232b. Amini R, Herrmann J, Kaczka DW. Intratidal overdistention and derecruitment in the injured lung: a simulation study. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2017;64:681–689.
232c. Carvalho AR, Spieth PM, Pelosi P, et al. Ability of dynamic airway pressure curve profile and elastance for positive end-expiratory pressure titration. *Intensive Care Medicine*. 2008;34:2291–2299.
232d. Carvalho AR, Pacheco SA, de Souza Rocha PV, et al. Detection of tidal recruitment/overdistension in lung-healthy mechanically ventilated patients under general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:677–684.
232e. D'Antini D, Huhle R, Herrmann J, et al. Respiratory system mechanics during low versus high positive end-expiratory pressure in open abdominal surgery: a substudy of PROVHILO randomized controlled trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126:143–149.
232f. Ranieri VM, Zhang H, Mascia L, et al. Pressure-time curve predicts minimally injurious ventilatory strategy in an isolated rat lung model. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1320–1328.
232g. Motulsky H, Christopoulos A. *Fitting Models to Biological Data using Linear and Nonlinear Regression. A Practical Guide to Curve Fitting*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2004:351.
232h. Huhle R, D'Antini D, Herrmann J, et al. Intratidal analysis of intraoperative respiratory system mechanics: keep it simple. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126:725–726.
232i. Formenti P, Graf J, Santos A, et al. Non-pulmonary factors strongly influence the stress index. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37:594–600.
232j. Chiumello D, Gattinoni L. Stress index in presence of pleural effusion: does it have any meaning? *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37:561–563.
232k. Henzler D, Hochhausen N, Dembinski R, Orfao S, Rossaint R, Kuhlen R. Parameters derived from the pulmonary pressure volume curve, but not the pressure time curve, indicate recruitment in experimental lung injury. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1072–1078. table of contents.
233. Otis AB, McKerrow CB, Bartlett RA, et al. Mechanical factors in the distribution of pulmonary ventilation. *J Appl Physiol*. 1956;8:427–443.
233a. Kaczka DW, Cao K, Christensen GE, Bates JHT, Simon BA. Analysis of regional mechanics in canine lung injury using forced oscillations and 3D image registration. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 2011;39:1112–1124.
233b. Suki B, Bates JHT. Lung tissue mechanics as an emergent phenomenon. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2011;110:1111–1118.
233c. Carvalho AR, Jandre FC, Pino AV, et al. Positive end-expiratory pressure at minimal respiratory elastance represents the best compromise between mechanical stress and lung aeration in oleic acid induced lung injury. *Crit Care*. 2007;11:R86.
233d. Dellacà RL, Zannin E, Kostic P, et al. Optimisation of positive end-expiratory pressure by forced oscillation technique in a lavage model of acute lung injury. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37:1021–1030.
233e. Zannin E, Dellaca RL, Kostic P, et al. Optimizing positive end-expiratory pressure by oscillatory mechanics minimizes tidal recruitment and distension: an experimental study in a lavage model of lung injury. *Crit Care*. 2012;16:R217.
233f. Cavalcanti AB, Suzumura EA, et al. Effect of lung recruitment and titrated positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) vs low PEEP on mortality in patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2017;318:1335–1345.
233g. Fumagalli J, Berra L, Zhang C, et al. Transpulmonary pressure describes lung morphology during decremental positive end-expiratory pressure trials in obesity. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(8):1374–1381.
234. Mead J. Measurement of inertia of the lungs at increased ambient pressure. *J Appl Physiol*. 1956;9:208–212.
235. Hager DN, Fessler HE, Kaczka DW, et al. Tidal volume delivery during high-frequency oscillatory ventilation in adults with acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:1522–1529.
235a. Kaczka DW, Herrmann J, Zonneveld CE, et al. Multifrequency oscillatory ventilation in the premature lung: effects on gas exchange, mechanics, and ventilation distribution. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:1394–1403.
235b. Amini R, Kaczka DW. Impact of ventilation frequency and parenchymal stiffness on flow and pressure distribution in a canine lung model. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 2013;41:2699–2711.
236. Kaczka DW, Barnas GM, Suki B, Lutchen KR. Assessment of time-domain analyses for estimation of low-frequency respiratory mechanical properties and impedance spectra. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 1995;23:135–151.
237. Peslin R, Felico de Silva J, Chabot F, Duvivier C. Respiratory mechanics studied by multiple linear regression in unsedated ventilated patients. *Eur Respir J*. 1992;5:871–878.
238. Ruiz-Ferron F, Rucabado Aguilar L, Ruiz Navarro S, Ramirez Puerta R, Parra Alonso S, Munoz Munoz JL. Results of respiratory mechanics analysis in the critically ill depend on the method employed. *Intensive Care Med*. 2001;27:1487–1495.
239. Kaczka DW, Ingenito EP, Body SC, et al. Inspiratory lung impedance in COPD: effects of PEEP and immediate impact of lung volume reduction surgery. *J Appl Physiol*. 2001;90:1833–1841.
240. Kaczka DW, Cao K, Christensen GE, Bates JHT, Simon BA. Analysis of regional mechanics in canine lung injury using forced oscillations and 3D image registration. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 2011;39:1112–1124.
241. Downie JM, Nam AJ, Simon BA. Pressure-volume curve does not predict steady-state lung volume in canine lavage lung injury. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2004;169:957–962.
242. Lu Q, Rouby JJ. Measurement of pressure-volume curves in patients on mechanical ventilation: methods and significance. *Critical Care*. 2000;4:91–100.
243. Salazar E, Knowles JH. An analysis of pressure-volume characteristics of the lungs. *J Appl Physiol*. 1964;19:97–104.
244. Venegas JG, Harris RS, Simon BA. A comprehensive equation for pulmonary pressure-volume curve. *J Appl Physiol*. 1998;84:389–395.
245. Mead J, Whittenberger JL, Radford EP Jr. Surface tension as a factor in pulmonary hysteresis. *J Appl Physiol*. 1957;10:191–196.

246. Bates JH, Irvin CG. Time dependence of recruitment and derecruitment in the lung: a theoretical model. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;93:705–713.

247. Hildebrandt J. Pressure-volume data of the cat determined by a plastoelastic, linear viscoelastic model. *J Appl Physiol*. 1970;28:365–372.

248. Otis AB, Fenn WO, Rahn H. Mechanics of breathing in man. *J Appl Physiol*. 1950;2:592–607.

249. Bates JHT, Milic-Emili J. Influence of the viscoelastic properties of the respiratory system on the energetically optimum breathing frequency. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 1993;21:489–499.

249a. Moraes L, Silva PL, Thompson A, et al. Impact of different tidal volume levels at low mechanical power on ventilator-induced lung injury in rats. *Front Physiol*. 2018;9:318.

249b. Cressoni M, Gotti M, Chiurazzi C, et al. Mechanical power and development of ventilator-induced lung injury. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:1100–1108.

249c. Gattinoni L, Tonetti T, Cressoni M, et al. Ventilator-related causes of lung injury: the mechanical power. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42:1567–1575.

249d. Santos RS, Maia LA, Oliveira MV, et al. Biologic impact of mechanical power at high and low tidal volumes in experimental mild acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:1193–1206.

250. Masselli GM, Silvestri S, Sciuto SA, Cappa P. Circuit compliance compensation in lung protective ventilation. *Conf Proc IEEE Eng Med Biol Soc*. 2006;1:5603–5606.

251. Jensen A, Lutchen KR, Kaczka DW, Sanborn W, Isaza F. Estimation of respiratory dynamic mechanical properties during clinically used mechanical ventilation. *Proceedings of the First Joint BMES/EMBS Conference, 1999*. 1999;1:337.

252. Lancaster CT, Boyle PM, Kaczka DW. Delivered tidal volume from the fabius gs depends upon breathing circuit configuration despite compliance compensation. *Proceedings of the American Society of Anesthesiologist 2005 Annual Meeting*. 2005:A863.

253. Loring SH, O'Donnell CR, Behazin N, et al. Esophageal pressures in acute lung injury: do they represent artifact or useful information about transpulmonary pressure, chest wall mechanics, and lung stress? *J Appl Physiol*. 2010;108:512–522.

253a. Akoumianaki E, Maggiore SM, Valenza F, et al. The application of esophageal pressure measurement in patients with respiratory failure. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;189:520–531.

254. Schuessler TF, Gottfried SB, Goldberg P, Kearney RE, Bates JHT. An adaptive filter to reduce cardiogenic oscillations on esophageal pressure signals. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 1998;26:260–267.

255. Hager DN, Brower RG. Customizing lung-protective mechanical ventilation strategies. *Critical Care Med*. 2006;34:1544–1555.

256. Talmor D, Sarge T, Malhotra A, et al. Mechanical ventilation guided by esophageal pressure in acute lung injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;359:2095–2104.

256a. Eichler L, Truskowska K, Dupree A, Busch P, Goetz AE, Zollner C. Intraoperative ventilation of morbidly obese patients guided by transpulmonary pressure. *Obes Surg*. 2018;28:122–129.

257. Schultz MJ, Haitsma JJ, Slutsky AS, Gajic O. What tidal volumes should be used in patients without acute lung injury? *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1226–1231.

257a. Mauri T, Yoshida T, Bellani G, et al. Esophageal and transpulmonary pressure in the clinical setting: meaning, usefulness and perspectives. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42:1360–1373.

257b. Yoshida T, Amato MBP, Grieco DL, et al. Esophageal manometry and regional transpulmonary pressure in lung injury. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;197:1018–1026.

257c. Amato MB, Meade MO, Slutsky AS, et al. Driving pressure and survival in the acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372:747–755.

257d. Bugedo G, Retamal J, Bruhn A. Driving pressure: a marker of severity, a safety limit, or a goal for mechanical ventilation? *Crit Care*. 2017;21:199.

258. Ladha K, Vidal Melo MF, McLean DJ, et al. Intraoperative protective mechanical ventilation and risk of postoperative respiratory complications: hospital based registry study. *BMJ*. 2015;351:h3646.

259. Neto AS, Hemmes SN, Barbas CS, et al. PROVE Network Investigators. Association between driving pressure and development of postoperative pulmonary complications in patients undergoing mechanical ventilation for general anaesthesia: a meta-analysis of individual patient data. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2016;4:272–280.

260. Laghi F, Goyal A. Auto-PEEP in respiratory failure. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2012;78:201–221.

261. Brochard L. Intrinsic (or auto-) positive end-expiratory pressure during spontaneous or assisted ventilation. *Intensive Care Med*. 2002;28:1552–1554.

262. McCall CB, Hyatt RE, Noble FW, Fry DL. Harmonic content of certain respiratory flow phenomena of normal individuals. *J Appl Physiol*. 1957;10:215–218.

263. Lutchen KR, Kaczka DW, Suki B, Barnas G, Cevenini G, Barbini P. Low-frequency respiratory mechanics using ventilator-driven forced oscillations. *J Appl Physiol*. 1993;75:2549–2560.

264. Jackson AC, Vinegar A. A technique for measuring frequency response of pressure, volume, and flow transducers. *J Appl Physiol*. 1979;47:462–467.

265. Schuessler TF, Bates JHT. A computer-controlled research ventilator for small animals: design and evaluation. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 1995;42:860–866.

266. Schuessler TF, Bates JHT, Maksym GN. Estimating tracheal flow in small animals. Engineering in Medicine and Biology Society, 1993. *Proceedings of the 15th Annual International Conference of the IEEE*. 1993:560–561.

267. Simon BA, Mitzner W. Design and calibration of a high-frequency oscillatory ventilator. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 1991;38:214–218.

268. Sullivan WJ, Peters GM, Enright PL. Pneumotachographs: theory and clinical application. *Respiratory Care*. 1984;29:736–749.

269. Yeh MP, Gardner RM, Adams TD, Yanowitz FG. Computerized determination of pneumotachometer characteristics using a calibrated syringe. *J Appl Physiol*. 1982;53:280–285.

270. Renzi PE, Giurdanella CA, Jackson AC. Improved frequency response of pneumotachometers by digital compensation. *J Appl Physiol*. 1990;68:382–386.

271. Jaffe MB. Continuous monitoring of respiratory flow and CO$_2$:challenges of on-airway measurements. *IEEE Eng Med Biol Mag*. 2010;29:44–52.

272. Plakk P, Liik P, Kingisepp PH. Hot-wire anemometer for spirography. *Med Biol Eng Comput*. 1998;36:17–21.

273. Ligeza P. Construction and experimental testing of the constant-bandwidth constant-temperature anemometer. *Rev Sci Instrum*. 2008;79:096105.

274. Al-Salaymeh A, Jovanović J, Durst F. Bi-directional flow sensor with a wide dynamic range for medical applications. *Med Eng Phys*. 2004;26:623–637.

275. Ligeza P. Constant-bandwidth constant-temperature hot-wire anemometer. *Rev Sci Instrum*. 2007;78:075104.

276. Hager DN, Fuld M, Kaczka DW, Fessler HE, Brower RG, Simon BA. Four methods of measuring tidal volume during high-frequency oscillatory ventilation. *Critical Care Med*. 2006;34:751–757.

276a. Mondonedo JR, Herrmann J, McNeil JS, Kaczka DW. Comparison of pneumotachography and anemometery for flow measurement during mechanical ventilation with volatile anesthetics. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31:1263–1271.

276b. Farre R, Rotger M, Navajas D. Time-domain digital filter to improve signal-to-noise ratio in respiratory impedance measurements. *Med Biol Eng Comput*. 1991;29:18–24.

276c. Jandre FC, Carvalho ARS, Pino AV, Giannella-Neto A. Effects of filtering and delays on the estimates of a nonlinear respiratory mechanics model. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2005;148:309–314.

277. Schmolzer GM, Kamlin OC, Dawson JA, te Pas AB, Morley CJ, Davis PG. Respiratory monitoring of neonatal resuscitation. *Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed*. 2010;95:F295–303.

278. Wolf GK, Arnold JH. Noninvasive assessment of lung volume: respiratory inductance plethysmography and electrical impedance tomography. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:S163–S169.

279. Stick SM, Ellis E, LeSouef PN, Sly PD. Validation of respiratory inductance plethysmography ("Respitrace") for the measurement of tidal breathing parameters in newborns. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 1992;14:187–191.

280. van Vonderen JJ, Lista G, Cavigioli F, Hooper SB, te Pas AB. Effectivity of ventilation by measuring expired CO2 and RIP during stabilisation of preterm infants at birth. *Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed*. 2015;100:F514–F518.

281. Khemani RG, Hotz J, Morzov R, et al. Evaluating risk factors for pediatric post-extubation upper airway obstruction using a physiology-based tool. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2016;193:198–209.
282. Atkins JH, Mandel JE, Weinstein GS, Mirza N. A pilot study of respiratory inductance plethysmography as a safe, noninvasive detector of jet ventilation under general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1168–1175.
283. Greenstein YY, Shakespeare E, Doelken P, Mayo PH. Defining a ventilation strategy for flexible bronchoscopy on mechanically ventilated patients in the medical intensive care unit. *J Bronchology Interv Pulmonol*. 2017;24:206–210.
284. Mandel JE, Atkins JH. Hilbert-Huang transform yields improved minute volume estimates from respiratory inductance plethysmography during transitions to paradoxical breathing. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:126–131.
285. Overdyk FJ, Carter R, Maddox RR, Callura J, Herrin AE, Henriquez C. Continuous oximetry/capnometry monitoring reveals frequent desaturation and bradypnea during patient-controlled analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:412–418.
286. Walther-Larsen S, Rasmussen LS. The former preterm infant and risk of post-operative apnoea: recommendations for management. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50:888–893.
287. Folke M, Cernerud L, Ekstrom M, Hok B. Critical review of non-invasive respiratory monitoring in medical care. *Med Biol Eng Comput*. 2003;41:377–383.
288. Al-Khalidi FQ, Saatchi R, Burke D, Elphick H, Tan S. Respiration rate monitoring methods: a review. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2011;46:523–529.
289. Wiklund L, Hok B, Stahl K, Jordeby-Jonsson A. Postanesthesia monitoring revisited: frequency of true and false alarms from different monitoring devices. *J Clin Anesth*. 1994;6:182–188.
290. Lam T, Nagappa M, Wong J, Singh M, Wong D, Chung F. Continuous pulse oximetry and capnography monitoring for postoperative respiratory depression and adverse events: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:2019–2029.
290a. Meade MO, Young D, Hanna S, et al. Severity of hypoxemia and effect of high-frequency oscillatory ventilation in acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;196: 727–733.
291. Gaucher A, Frasca D, Mimoz O, Debaene B. Accuracy of respiratory rate monitoring by capnometry using the Capnomask(R) in extubated patients receiving supplemental oxygen after surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:316–320.
292. Kasuya Y, Akca O, Sessler DI, Ozaki M, Komatsu R. Accuracy of postoperative end-tidal Pco2 measurements with mainstream and sidestream capnography in non-obese patients and in obese patients with and without obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:609–615.
293. Chang KC, Orr J, Hsu WC, et al. Accuracy of CO(2) monitoring via nasal cannulas and oral bite blocks during sedation for esophagogastroduodenoscopy. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2016;30:169–173.
294. Cashman JN, Dolin SJ. Respiratory and haemodynamic effects of acute postoperative pain management: evidence from published data. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:212–223.
295. Walder B, Schafer M, Henzi I, Tramer MR. Efficacy and safety of patient-controlled opioid analgesia for acute postoperative pain. A quantitative systematic review. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:795–804.
296. Shapiro A, Zohar E, Zaslansky R, Hoppenstein D, Shabat S, Fredman B. The frequency and timing of respiratory depression in 1524 postoperative patients treated with systemic or neuraxial morphine. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17:537–542.
297. Nassi N, Piumelli R, Lombardi E, Landini L, Donzelli G, de Martino M. Comparison between pulse oximetry and transthoracic impedance alarm traces during home monitoring. *Arch Dis Child*. 2008;93:126–132.
298. Lightdale JR, Goldmann DA, Feldman HA, Newburg AR, DiNardo JA, Fox VL. Microstream capnography improves patient monitoring during moderate sedation: a randomized, controlled trial. *Pediatrics*. 2006;117:e1170–e1178.
299. Waisman D, Levy C, Faingersh A, et al. A new method for continuous monitoring of chest wall movement to characterize hypoxemic episodes during HFOV. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37:1174–1181.
300. Curry J, Lynn L. Threshold monitoring, alarm fatigue, and the patterns of unexpected hospital death. *APSF Newsletter*. 2011;26: 32–35.
301. Gupta R, Edwards D. Monitoring for opioid-induced respiratory depression. *APSF Newsletter*. 2018;32:70–72.
302. Gupta K, Prasad A, Nagappa M, Wong J, Abrahamyan L, Chung FF. Risk factors for opioid-induced respiratory depression and failure to rescue: a review. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2018;31:110–119.
303. Simon BA, Kaczka DW, Bankier AA, Parraga G. What can computed tomography and magnetic resonance imaging tell us about ventilation? *J Appl Physiol*. 2012;113:647–657.
304. Harris RS, Schuster DP. Visualizing lung function with positron emission tomography. *J Appl Physiol*. 2007;102:448–458.
305. Bodenstein M, David M, Markstaller K. Principles of electrical impedance tomography and its clinical application. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37:713–724.
306. Turner JP, Dankoff J. Thoracic ultrasound. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2012;30(451):73. ix.
307. Volpicelli G, Elbarbary M, Blaivas M, et al. International Liaison Committee on Lung Ultrasound (ILC-LUS) for International Consensus Conference on Lung Ultrasound (ICC-LUS). International evidence-based recommendations for point-of-care lung ultrasound. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38:577–591.
308. Kruisselbrink R, Chan V, Cibinel GA, Abrahamson S, Goffi A. I-AIM (Indication, Acquisition, Interpretation, Medical Decision-making) framework for point of care lung ultrasound. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:568–582.
309. Lichtenstein DA. BLUE-protocal and FALLS-protocol: two applications of lung ultrasound in the critically ill. *Chest*. 2015;147:1659-70.
310. Lichtenstein DA, Lascols N, Meziere G, Gepner A. Ultrasound diagnosis of alveolar consolidation in the critically ill. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30:276–281.
311. Lichtenstein D, Goldstein I, Mourgeon E, Cluzel P, Grenier P, Rouby JJ. Comparative diagnostic performances of auscultation, chest radiography, and lung ultrasonography in acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:9–15.
312. Lichtenstein DA. Ultrasound in the management of thoracic disease. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:S250–S261.
313. Lichtenstein D. Lung ultrasound in acute respiratory failure an introduction to the BLUE-protocol. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2009;75:313–317.
314. Lichtenstein D, Meziere G, Biderman P, Gepner A. The “lung point”: an ultrasound sign specific to pneumothorax. *Intensive Care Med*. 2000;26:1434–1440.
315. Lichtenstein DA, Meziere GA. Relevance of lung ultrasound in the diagnosis of acute respiratory failure: the BLUE protocol. *Chest*. 2008;134:117–125.
316. Adler A, Amato MB, Arnold JH, et al. Whither lung EIT: where are we, where do we want to go and what do we need to get there? *Physiol Meas*. 2012;33:679–694.
317. Costa EL, Lima RG, Amato MB. Electrical impedance tomography. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2009;15:18–24.
318. Hahn G, Just A, Dudykevych T, et al. Imaging pathologic pulmonary air and fluid accumulation by functional and absolute EIT. *Physiol Meas*. 2006;27:S187–S198.
319. Frerichs I, Amato MB, van Kaam AH, et al. TREND study group. Chest electrical impedance tomography examination, data analysis, terminology, clinical use and recommendations: consensus statement of the TRanslational EIT developmeNt stuDy group. *Thorax*. 2017;72:83–93.
320. Humphreys S, Pham TM, Stocker C, Schibler A. The effect of induction of anesthesia and intubation on end-expiratory lung level and regional ventilation distribution in cardiac children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:887–893.
321. Victorino JA, Borges JB, Okamoto VN, et al. Imbalances in regional lung ventilation: a validation study on electrical impedance tomography. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2004;169:791–800.
322. Radke OC, Schneider T, Heller AR, Koch T. Spontaneous breathing during general anesthesia prevents the ventral redistribution of ventilation as detected by electrical impedance tomography: a randomized trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1227–1234.
323. Frerichs I, Achtzehn U, Pechmann A, et al. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation in patients with acute exacerbation of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *J Crit Care*. 2012;27:172–181.
324. Karsten J, Luepschen H, Grossherr M, et al. Effect of PEEP on regional ventilation during laparoscopic surgery monitored by electrical impedance tomography. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:878–886.

325. Costa EL, Borges JB, Melo A, et al. Bedside estimation of recruitable alveolar collapse and hyperdistension by electrical impedance tomography. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35:1132–1137.
326. Nestler C, Simon P, Petroff D, et al. Individualized positive end-expiratory pressure in obese patients during general anaesthesia: a randomized controlled clinical trial using electrical impedance tomography. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:1194–1205.
327. Costa EL, Chaves CN, Gomes S,et al. Real-time detection of pneumothorax using electrical impedance tomography. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:1230–1238.
328. Borges JB, Suarez-Sipmann F, Bohm SH, et al. Regional lung perfusion estimated by electrical impedance tomography in a piglet model of lung collapse. *J Appl Physiol*. 2012;112:225–236.
329. Kok J, Ng J, Li SC, et al. Evaluation of point-of-care testing in critically unwell patients: comparison with clinical laboratory analysers and applicability to patients with Ebolavirus infection. *Pathology*. 2015;47:405–409.
330. Leino A, Kurvinen K. Interchangeability of blood gas, electrolyte and metabolite results measured with point-of-care, blood gas and core laboratory analyzers. *Clin Chem Lab Med*. 2011;49:1187–1191.
331. Luukkonen AA, Lehto TM, Hedberg PS, Vaskivuo TE. Evaluation of a hand-held blood gas analyzer for rapid determination of blood gases, electrolytes and metabolites in intensive care setting. *Clin Chem Lab Med*. 2016;54:585–594.
332. Hopfer SM, Nadeau FL, Sundra M, Makowski GS. Effect of protein on hemoglobin and hematocrit assays with a conductivity-based point-of-care testing device: comparison with optical methods. *Ann Clin Lab Sci*. 2004;34:75–82.
333. Gayat E, Imbert N, Roujansky A, Lemasle L, Fischler M. Influence of fraction of inspired oxygen on noninvasive hemoglobin measurement: parallel assessment of 2 monitors. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1820–1823.
334. Allardet-Servent J, Lebsir M, Dubroca C, et al. Point-of-care versus central laboratory measurements of hemoglobin, hematocrit, glucose, bicarbonate and electrolytes: a prospective observational study in critically ill patients. *PLoS One*. 2017;12:e0169593.
335. Van de Louw A, Lasserre N, Drouhin F, et al. Reliability of HemoCue in patients with gastrointestinal bleeding. *Intensive Care Med*. 2007;33:355–358.
336. Seguin P, Kleiber A, Chanavaz C, Morcet J, Malledant Y. Determination of capillary hemoglobin levels using the HemoCue system in intensive care patients. *J Crit Care*. 2011;26:423–427.
337. Wax DB, Reich DL. Changes in utilization of intraoperative laboratory testing associated with the introduction of point-of-care testing devices in an academic department. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(3):1711. table of contents.
338. Chang HK. Mechanisms of gas transport during ventilation by high-frequency oscillation. *J Appl Physiol* . 1984;56:553–563.
339. Pillow JJ. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation: mechanisms of gas exchange and lung mechanics. *Critical Care Med*. 2005;33:S135–S141.
340. Fredberg JJ. Augmented diffusion in the airways can support pulmonary gas exchange. *J Appl Physiol* . 1980;49:232–238.
341. Hurst JM, Branson RD, Davis K, Barrette RR, Adams KS. Comparison of conventional mechanical ventilation and high-frequency ventilation: a prospective, randomized trial in patients with respiratory failure. *Ann Surg*. 1990;211:486–491.
342. Venegas JG, Hales CA, Strieder DJ. A general dimensionless equation of gas transport by high-frequency ventilation. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 1986;60:1025–1030.

342a. Herrmann J, Tawhai MH, Kaczka DW. Regional gas transport in the heterogeneous lung during oscillatory ventilation. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2016;121:1306–1318.

343. Pillow JJ. Tidal volume, recruitment and compliance in HFOV: same principles, different frequency. *Eur Respir J* . 2012;40:291–293.
344. Courtney SE, Durand DJ, Asselin JM, Hudak ML, Aschner JL, Shoemaker CT. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation versus conventional mechanical ventilation for very-low-birth-weight infants. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:643–652.
345. Johnson AH, Peacock JL, Greenough A, et al. Group United Kingdom Oscillation Study. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation for the prevention of chronic lung disease of prematurity. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:633–642.

345a. Ferguson ND, Cook DJ, Guyatt GH, et al. High-frequency oscillation in early acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:795–805.

345b. Young D, Lamb SE, Shah S, et al. High-frequency oscillation for acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:806–813.

346. Fessler HE, Brower RG. Protocols for lung protective ventilation. *Critical Care Med*. 2005;33:S223–S227.
347. Fessler HE, Derdak S, Ferguson ND, et al. A protocol for high-frequency oscillatory ventilation in adults: results from a roundtable discussion. *Critical Care Med*. 2007;35:1649–1654.
348. Krishman JA, Brower RG. High-frequency ventilation for acute lung injury and ARDS. *Chest*. 2000;118:795–807.
349. Ali S, Ferguson ND. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation in ALI/ARDS. *Crit Care Clin*. 2011;27:487–499.
350. Ip T, Mehta S. The role of high-frequency oscillatory ventilation in the treatment of acute respiratory failure in adults. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2012;18:70–79.
351. Custer JW, Ahmed A, Kaczka DW, et al. In vitro performance comparison of the Sensormedics 3100A and B high-frequency oscillatory ventilators. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2011;12.
352. Pillow JJ, Wilkinson MH, Neil HL, Ramsden CA. In vitro performance characteristics of high-frequency oscillatory ventilators. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2001;164:1019–1024.
353. Kaczka DW, Lutchen KR. Servo-controlled pneumatic pressure oscillator for respiratory impedance measurements and high frequency ventilation. *Ann Biomed Eng*. 2004;32:596–608.
354. Biro P. Jet ventilation for surgical interventions in the upper airway. *Anesthesia Clinics*. 2010;28:397–409.
355. Hess DR, Mason S, Branson R. High-frequency ventilation : design and equipment issues. *Respir Care Clin N Am*. 2001;7:577–598.
356. Kalenga M, Battisti O, François A, Langhendries JP, Gerstmann DR, Bertrand JM. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation in neonatal RDS: initial volume optimization and respiratory mechanics. *J Appl Physiol* . 1998;84:1174–1177.
357. Pillow JJ, Sly PD, Hantos Z. Monitoring of lung volume recruitment and derecruitment using oscillatory mechanics during high-frequency oscillatory ventilation in the preterm lamb. *Pediatr Crit Care Med* . 2004;5:172–180.
358. Pillow JJ, Sly PD, Hantos Z, Bates JHT. Dependence of intrapulmonary pressure amplitudes on respiratory mechanics during high-frequency oscillatory ventilation in preterm lambs. *Pediatric Research*. 2002;52:538–544.

358a. Harcourt ER, John J, Dargaville PA, Zannin E, Davis PG, Tingay DG. Pressure and flow waveform characteristics of eight high-frequency oscillators. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014.

358b. Tingay DG, John J, Harcourt ER, et al. Are all oscillators created equal? In vitro performance characteristics of eight high-frequency oscillatory ventilators. *Neonatology*. 2015;108:220–228.

359. Hager DN. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation in adults with acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012; 25:17–23.
360. Lucangelo U, Bernabe F, Blanch L. Capnography and adjuncts of mechanical ventilation. In: Gravenstein JS, Jaffe MB, Gravenstein N, Paulus DA, eds. *Capnography*. 2nd ed. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2011:169. 181; 19.
361. Kil HK, Kim WO, Choi HS, Nam YT. Monitoring of PETCO2 during high frequency jet ventilation for laryngomicrosurgery. *Yonsei Med J*. 2002;43:20–24.
362. Kugelman A, Riskin A, Shoris I, Ronen M, Stein IS, Bader D. Continuous integrated distal capnography in infants ventilated with high frequency ventilation. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2012;47:876–883.
363. Frietsch T, Krafft P, Becker HD, Buelzebruck H, Wiedemann K. Intermittent capnography during high-frequency jet ventilation for prolonged rigid bronchoscopy. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44:391–397.
364. Nishimura M, Imanaka H, Tashiro C, Taenaka N, Yoshiya I. Capnometry during high-frequency oscillatory ventilation. *Chest*. 1992;101:1681–1683.
365. Biro P, Eyrich G, Rohling RG. The efficiency of CO2 elimination during high-frequency jet ventilation for laryngeal microsurgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:180–184.

365a. Herrmann J, Tawhai MH, Kaczka DW. Parenchymal strain heterogeneity during oscillatory ventilation: why two frequencies are better than one. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2018;124:653–663.

365b. Mehta PP, Kochhar G, Albeldawi M, et al. Capnographic monitoring in routine egd and colonoscopy with moderate sedation: a prospective, randomized, controlled trial. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2016;111:395–404.

366. Evans KL, Keene MH, Bristow AS. High-frequency jet ventilation—a review of its role in laryngology. *J Laryngol Otol*. 1994;108:23–25.

367. Miodownik S, Ray C Jr, Carlon GC, Groeger JS, Howland WS. High-frequency jet ventilation: technical implications. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12:718–720.

368. Algora-Weber A, Rubio JJ, Dominguez de Villota E, Cortes JL, Gomez D, Mosquera JM. Simple and accurate monitoring of end-tidal carbon dioxide tensions during high-frequency jet ventilation. *Crit Care Med*. 1986;14:895–897.

369. Sehati S, Young JD, Sykes MK, McLeod CN. Monitoring of end-tidal carbon dioxide partial pressure during high frequency jet ventilation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1989;63:47S–52S.

370. Simon M, Gottschall R, Gugel M, Fritz H, Mohr S, Klein U. Comparison of transcutaneous and endtidal CO2-monitoring for rigid bronchoscopy during high-frequency jet ventilation. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:861–867.

371. Wallen E, Venkataraman ST, Grosso MJ, Kiene K, Orr RA. Intrahospital transport of critically ill pediatric patients. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23:1588–1595.

372. Waydhas C, Schneck G, Duswald KH. Deterioration of respiratory function after intra-hospital transport of critically ill surgical patients. *Intensive Care Med*. 1995;21:784–789.

373. Bercault N, Wolf M, Runge I, Fleury JC, Boulain T. Intrahospital transport of critically ill ventilated patients: a risk factor for ventilator-associated pneumonia—a matched cohort study. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:2471–2478.

374. Nakamura T, Fujino Y, Uchiyama A, Mashimo T, Nishimura M. Intrahospital transport of critically ill patients using ventilator with patient-triggering function. *Chest*. 2003;123:159–164.

375. Kue R, Brown P, Ness C, Scheulen J. Adverse clinical events during intrahospital transport by a specialized team: a preliminary report. *Am J Crit Care*. 2011;20(153):61. quiz 162.

376. Prodhan P, Fiser RT, Cenac S, et al. Intrahospital transport of children on extracorporeal membrane oxygenation: indications, process, interventions, and effectiveness. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2010;11:227–233.

377. Szem JW, Hydo LJ, Fischer E, Kapur S, Klemperer J, Barie PS. High-risk intrahospital transport of critically ill patients: safety and outcome of the necessary "road trip". *Crit Care Med*. 1995; 23:1660–1666.

378. Tobias JD, Lynch A, Garrett J. Alterations of end-tidal carbon dioxide during the intrahospital transport of children. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 1996;12:249–251.

379. Ansermino JM, Daniels JP, Hewgill RT, et al. An evaluation of a novel software tool for detecting changes in physiological monitoring. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:873–880.

380. Lee J, Scott DJ, Villarroel M, Clifford GD, Saeed M, Mark RG. Open-access MIMIC-II database for intensive care research. *Conf Proc IEEE Eng Med Biol Soc*. 2011;2011:8315–8318.

381. Saeed M, Villarroel M, Reisner AT, et al. Multiparameter Intelligent Monitoring in Intensive Care II: a public-access intensive care unit database. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39:952–960.

382. Imhoff M, Kuhls S. Alarm algorithms in critical care monitoring. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1525–1537.

383. Melek WW, Lu Z, Kapps A, Fraser WD. Comparison of trend detection algorithms in the analysis of physiological time-series data. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2005;52:639–651.

384. Simons DJ, Rensink RA. Change blindness: past, present, and future. *Trends Cogn Sci*. 2005;9:16–20.

385. Dosani M, Lim J, Yang P, et al. Clinical evaluation of algorithms for context-sensitive physiological monitoring in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:686–691.

386. Schadler D, Engel C, Elke G, et al. Automatic control of pressure support for ventilator weaning in surgical intensive care patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;185:637–644.

387. Blount M, Ebling MR, Eklund JM, et al. Real-time analysis for intensive care: development and deployment of the artemis analytic system. *IEEE Eng Med Biol Mag*. 2010;29:110–118.

388. Chatburn RL, Mireles-Cabodevila E. Closed-loop control of mechanical ventilation: description and classification of targeting schemes. *Respir Care*. 2011;56:85–102.

389. Epstein RH, Dexter F. Implications of resolved hypoxemia on the utility of desaturation alerts sent from an anesthesia decision support system to supervising anesthesiologists. *Anesth Analg*. 2012.

390. Chiumello D, Cressoni M, Chierichetti M, et al. Nitrogen washout/washin, helium dilution and computed tomography in the assessment of end expiratory lung volume. *Crit Care*. 2008;12:R150.

391. Dellamonica J, Lerolle N, Sargentini C, et al. Accuracy and precision of end-expiratory lung-volume measurements by automated nitrogen washout/washin technique in patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Crit Care*. 2011;15:R294.

392. Pillow JJ, Frerichs I, Stocks J. Lung function tests in neonates and infants with chronic lung disease: global and regional ventilation inhomogeneity. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2006;41:105–121.

393. Tobias JD. Transcutaneous carbon dioxide monitoring in infants and children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19:434–444.

394. Sorensen LC, Brage-Andersen L, Greisen G. Effects of the transcutaneous electrode temperature on the accuracy of transcutaneous carbon dioxide tension. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*. 2011;71:548–552.

395. Sandberg KL, Brynjarsson H, Hjalmarson O. Transcutaneous blood gas monitoring during neonatal intensive care. *Acta Paediatr*. 2011;100:676–679.

396. Xue Q, Wu X, Jin J, Yu B, Zheng M. Transcutaneous carbon dioxide monitoring accurately predicts arterial carbon dioxide partial pressure in patients undergoing prolonged laparoscopic surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:417–420.

397. Klopfenstein CE, Schiffer E, Pastor CM, et al. Laparoscopic colon surgery: unreliability of end-tidal CO2 monitoring. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52:700–707.

398. De Oliveira GS Jr, Ahmad S, Fitzgerald PC, McCarthy RJ. Detection of hypoventilation during deep sedation in patients undergoing ambulatory gynaecological hysteroscopy: a comparison between transcutaneous and nasal end-tidal carbon dioxide measurements. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:774–778.

399. Chakravarthy M, Narayan S, Govindarajan R, Jawali V, Rajeev S. Weaning mechanical ventilation after off-pump coronary artery bypass graft procedures directed by noninvasive gas measurements. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:451–455.

400. Kelly AM, Klim S. Agreement between arterial and transcutaneous PCO2 in patients undergoing non-invasive ventilation. *Respir Med*. 2011;105:226–229.

401. Spelten O, Fiedler F, Schier R, Wetsch WA, Hinkelbein J. Transcutaneous PTCCO2 measurement in combination with arterial blood gas analysis provides superior accuracy and reliability in ICU patients. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31:153–158.

402. Yu M, Chapital A, Ho HC, Wang J, Takanishi D Jr. A prospective randomized trial comparing oxygen delivery versus transcutaneous pressure of oxygen values as resuscitative goals. *Shock*. 2007;27:615–622.

403. Chakravarthy M, Narayan S, Govindarajan R, Jawali V. Improvement in accuracy of transcutaneous measurement of oxygen with resumption of spontaneous ventilation in mechanically ventilated patients after off pump coronary artery bypass procedure: a prospective study. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2009;23:363–368.

404. He HW, Liu DW, Long Y, Wang XT, Chai WZ, Zhou X. The transcutaneous oxygen challenge test: a noninvasive method for detecting low cardiac output in septic patients. *Shock*. 2012;37:152–155.

405. Yu M, Morita SY, Daniel SR, Chapital A, Waxman K, Severino R. Transcutaneous pressure of oxygen: a noninvasive and early detector of peripheral shock and outcome. *Shock*. 2006;26:450–456.

406. Michard F. Lung water assessment: from gravimetry to wearables. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2018.

407. Pistolesi M, Giuntini C. Assessment of extravascular lung water. *Radiol Clin North Am*. 1978;16:551–574.

408. Rubenfeld GD, Caldwell E, Granton J, Hudson LD, Matthay MA. Interobserver variability in applying a radiographic definition for ARDS. *Chest*. 1999;116:1347–1353.

409. Meade MO, Cook RJ, Guyatt GH, et al. Interobserver variation in interpreting chest radiographs for the diagnosis of acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2000;161:85–90.

410. Sakka SG, Ruhl CC, Pfeiffer UJ, et al. Assessment of cardiac preload and extravascular lung water by single transpulmonary thermodilution. *Intensive Care Med*. 2000;26:180–187.
411. Isakow W, Schuster DP. Extravascular lung water measurements and hemodynamic monitoring in the critically ill: bedside alternatives to the pulmonary artery catheter. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2006;291:L1118–L1131.
412. Martin GS, Eaton S, Mealer M, Moss M. Extravascular lung water in patients with severe sepsis: a prospective cohort study. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:R74–82.
413. Kuzkov VV, Kirov MY, Sovershaev MA, et al. Extravascular lung water determined with single transpulmonary thermodilution correlates with the severity of sepsis-induced acute lung injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1647–1653.
414. Phillips CR, Chesnutt MS, Smith SM. Extravascular lung water in sepsis-associated acute respiratory distress syndrome: indexing with predicted body weight improves correlation with severity of illness and survival. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:69–73.
415. Fernandez-Mondejar E, Rivera-Fernandez R, Garcia-Delgado M, Touma A, Machado J, Chavero J. Small increases in extravascular lung water are accurately detected by transpulmonary thermodilution. *J Trauma*. 2005;59(3):1420. discussion 1424.
416. Assaad S, Shelley B, Perrino A. Transpulmonary thermodilution: its role in assessment of lung water and pulmonary edema. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1471–1480.
417. Stephan F, Mazeraud A, Laverdure F, Camous J, Fadel E. Evaluation of reperfusion pulmonary edema by extravascular lung water measurements after pulmonary endarterectomy. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45:e409–e417.
418. Pottecher J, Roche AC, Degot T. Groupe de Transplantation Pulmonaire des Hopitaux Universitaires de Strasbourg. Increased extravascular lung water and plasma biomarkers of acute lung injury precede oxygenation impairment in primary graft dysfunction after lung transplantation. *Transplantation*. 2017;101:112–121.
419. Michelet P, D'Journo XB, Roch A, et al. Protective ventilation influences systemic inflammation after esophagectomy: a randomized controlled study. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:911–919.
420. Mitchell JP, Schuller D, Calandrino FS, Schuster DP. Improved outcome based on fluid management in critically ill patients requiring pulmonary artery catheterization. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1992;145:990–998.
421. Mutoh T, Kazumata K, Ishikawa T, Terasaka S. Performance of bedside transpulmonary thermodilution monitoring for goal-directed hemodynamic management after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Stroke*. 2009;40:2368–2374.
422. von Spiegel T, Giannaris S, Wietasch GJ, et al. Effects of dexamethasone on intravascular and extravascular fluid balance in patients undergoing coronary bypass surgery with cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:827–834.
423. Perkins GD, McAuley DF, Thickett DR, Gao F. The beta-agonist lung injury trial (BALTI): a randomized placebo-controlled clinical trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2006;173:281–287.
424. Licker M, Tschopp JM, Robert J, Frey JG, Diaper J, Ellenberger C. Aerosolized salbutamol accelerates the resolution of pulmonary edema after lung resection. *Chest*. 2008;133:845–852.
425. Effros RM, Pornsuriyasak P, Porszasz J, Casaburi R. Indicator dilution measurements of extravascular lung water: basic assumptions and observations. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol*. 2008;294:L1023–L1031.
426. Easley RB, Mulreany DG, Lancaster CT, et al. Redistribution of pulmonary blood flow impacts thermodilution-based extravascular lung water measurements in a model of acute lung injury. *Anesthesiology*. 2009.
427. de Prost N, Costa EL, Wellman T, et al. Effects of surfactant depletion on regional pulmonary metabolic activity during mechanical ventilation. *J Appl Physiol*. 2011;111:1249–1258.
428. Roch A, Michelet P, Lambert D, et al. Accuracy of the double indicator method for measurement of extravascular lung water depends on the type of acute lung injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:811–817.
429. Carlile PV, Gray BA. Type of lung injury influences the thermal-dye estimation of extravascular lung water. *J Appl Physiol*. 1984;57:680–685.
430. Kuntscher MV, Czermak C, Blome-Eberwein S, Dacho A, Germann G. Transcardiopulmonary thermal dye versus single thermodilution methods for assessment of intrathoracic blood volume and extravascular lung water in major burn resuscitation. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2003;24:142–147.
431. Saugel B, Holzapfel K, Stollfuss J, et al. Computed tomography to estimate cardiac preload and extravascular lung water. A retrospective analysis in critically ill patients. *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med*. 2011;19:31.
432. Saugel B, Wildgruber M, Staudt A, et al. Quantitative computed tomography in comparison with transpulmonary thermodilution for the estimation of pulmonary fluid status: a clinical study in critically ill patients. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2018.
433. Rossi P, Wanecek M, Rudehill A, Konrad D, Weitzberg E, Oldner A. Comparison of a single indicator and gravimetric technique for estimation of extravascular lung water in endotoxemic pigs. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1437–1443.

42

Renal Pathophysiology and Treatment for Perioperative Ischemia and Nephrotoxic Injury

KATHLEEN D. LIU, DANIEL H. BURKHARDT III, and RUPERT M. PEARSE

KEY POINTS

- The incidence of perioperative acute kidney injury (AKI) (previously referred to as acute renal failure) varies, depending on the definition used.
- Although uncommon, AKI requiring dialysis is associated with extremely high morbidity and mortality rates.
- The mechanism for perioperative AKI is complex and commonly involves multiple factors including ischemia-reperfusion injury, inflammation, and toxins.
- Repeated direct perioperative assessments of renal hemodynamics or tubular function are impractical; therefore indirect assessments, such as trends of serum creatinine concentrations, are the best practical perioperative tools to assess renal function.
- Intraoperative urine formation depends on many factors and is not validated as a measure of the risk of postoperative renal dysfunction. Yet postoperatively, patients with low intraoperative urine output may develop renal dysfunction. Therefore urine output should be carefully monitored in the intraoperative setting.
- Early biochemical markers for kidney injury may soon become new tests that can provide prompt clinical information.
- As part of preoperative risk assessment, both serum creatinine and proteinuria can provide important and useful information.
- Intraoperative hypotension and hypovolemia are significant risk factors for AKI.
- With regard to fluid management, the use of balanced salt solutions may reduce the risk of AKI. Volume overload is a risk factor for adverse outcomes in patients with AKI and may influence concentrations of conventional markers of kidney function such as serum creatinine.
- Renal replacement therapy may be indicated for severe AKI: at present, data does not support the use of one modality over another.

Introduction and Acute Kidney Injury Definitions

Acute kidney injury (AKI) (previously known as acute renal failure) is characterized by rapid decline in the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) and the accumulation of nitrogenous waste products (blood urea nitrogen [BUN] and creatinine). AKI occurs in approximately 5% to 25% of all hospitalized patients, depending on the precise definition used for AKI, and with more frequent rates in patients who are critically ill in the intensive care unit (ICU) (also see Chapter 17). AKI is also a serious perioperative complication for patients undergoing major surgery.[1-4] As the incidence of AKI varies by the definition used, the mortality of AKI ranges from 10% to 35% for mild AKI, whereas AKI in the ICU setting is associated with a 50% to 80% mortality rate. However, supportive care with dialysis has reduced mortality from AKI. Whereas the mortality rate of oliguric AKI was 91% during World War II, mortality declined to 53% during the Korean War with the provision of dialysis.[5] AKI requiring dialysis develops in 1% to 7% of patients after cardiac or major vascular surgery and is strongly associated with morbidity and mortality in this context.[6-9]

Perioperative renal failure was long defined as a requirement for postoperative dialysis. However, this concept has evolved during the past several years. First, because the implications of requiring postoperative dialysis are quite different for a patient starting with a normal baseline renal function compared with one starting with advanced chronic kidney disease and because the criteria for the use of dialysis are not standardized, the usefulness of dialysis alone to define AKI has been questioned. Second, studies are difficult to compare because of the use of nonstandard definitions for AKI. For example, in one review of 28 studies,[10] definitions for perioperative AKI varied. Third, consensus definitions that focus on small changes in serum creatinine and on

TABLE 42.1 Comparison of the RIFLE, AKIN, and KDOQI Consensus Criteria for Acute Kidney Injury

RIFLE		AKIN		KDIGO		
Class	**SCr**	**Stage**	**SCr**	**Stage**	**SCr**	**Urine Output**[a]
Risk	Increase in SCr to >1.5× baseline	1	Increase in SCr ≥0.3 mg/dL or to ≥1.5×-2× baseline	1	Increase in SCr ≥0.3 mg/dL within 48 h or to ≥1.5×-2× baseline, which is known or presumed to have occurred within the past 7 days	Urine output <0.5 mg/kg/h for >6 h
Injury	Increase in SCr to >2× baseline	2	Increase in SCr to >2×-3× baseline	2	Increase in SCr to >2×-3× baseline	Urine output <0.5 mg/kg/h for >12 h
Failure	Increase in SCr to >3× baseline, or increase of ≥0.5 mg/dL to absolute value of ≥4 mg/dL	3	Increase in SCr to >3× baseline, or increase of ≥0.5 mg/dL to absolute value of ≥4 mg/dL, or need for RRT	3	Increase in SCr to >3× baseline, or increase to absolute value of ≥4 mg/dL, or need for RRT; in pediatric patients eGFR <35 mL/min/1.73 m^2	Urine output <0.3 mg/kg/h for >12 h or anuria for >12 h
Loss	Need for RRT >4 weeks					
End stage	Need for RRT >3 months					

[a] Is common to all three consensus criteria.

The three consensus criteria use the same urine output criteria, but slight differences in the creatinine criteria are used to define AKI.

AKI, Acute kidney injury; *AKIN,* acute kidney injury network; *eGFR,* estimated glomerular filtration rate; *KDIGO,* kidney disease: improving global outcomes; *RIFLE,* risk, injury, failure, loss, end-stage disease; *RRT,* renal replacement therapy; *SCr,* serum creatinine.

changes in urine output to define AKI have received widespread adoption. This last conclusion is based on the recognition that small changes in renal function directly relate to an increased risk of death.[11]

As a result, recent consensus criteria are being used to define AKI in both the perioperative and other medical settings. The first proposed consensus criteria were the RIFLE (**R**isk, **I**njury, **F**ailure, **L**oss, **E**nd-stage) kidney disease criteria developed by the Acute Dialysis Quality Initiative (Table 42.1).[12] These have subsequently undergone two modifications by the Acute Kidney Injury Network[13] and in the Kidney Disease: Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) AKI guidelines.[14] As detailed in Table 42.1, the central components of these criteria are the focus on relative and absolute changes in creatinine from a baseline value and the definition of several degrees of AKI severity. Consequently, milder AKI (e.g., KDIGO, stage 1 disease) will be more common than stage 3 disease and will also be associated with a lower mortality rate. These criteria have also proposed definitions for AKI based on urine output. Overall, although there are studies demonstrating that AKI defined based on urine output is associated with adverse outcomes in the critical care setting and is more common than AKI defined based on creatinine,[15] the urine output criteria are not as well validated. At present, there is no clear method to correct urine output for morbid obesity; in addition, urine output may be unmeasurable if a urinary bladder catheter is not present.[16] Not surprisingly, AKI by urine output criteria is substantially more common than AKI by creatinine-based criteria; in a study of more than 4000 subjects undergoing major noncardiac surgery, the incidence of AKI increased from 8% to 64% when urine output criteria were incorporated.[17] Although each AKI stage was associated with an increased risk of death, the association with mortality was attenuated in this analysis when urine output criteria for AKI were used. Finally, it should be noted that the importance of oliguria (<0.5 mL/kg/h) as a predictor of creatinine-based AKI is less well established in the perioperative setting than in other clinical settings.[18,19] In a recent large single-center observational study, urine output of less than 0.3 mL/kg/h during major abdominal surgery was associated with an increased risk of perioperative AKI (defined as a 0.3 mg/dL rise in serum creatinine within 48 hours or a 50% increase over 7 days from baseline).[20] However, urine output within the 0.3 to 0.5 mL/kg/h range was not associated with creatinine-based AKI.

Additional challenges for the identification of AKI in the intraoperative setting include large blood volume loss and fluid shifts, which may artificially dilute serum creatinine. Unlike the postoperative or critical care setting where renal monitoring can involve periodic evaluation of kidney function under relatively stable conditions, intraoperative renal monitoring involves a briefer unstable period, often involving significant blood loss, major fluid shifts, wide hemodynamic fluctuations, and even direct compromise to renal artery blood flow. Therefore the anesthesia provider is likely the first monitor (in a sense) required for preserving renal function by recognizing and treating factors that may contribute to or exacerbate AKI; for example, the toxic effects of aminoglycosides and iodinated contrast materials are exacerbated by intravascular volume depletion.

As medical populations shift toward older and more critically ill patients undergoing increasingly high-risk procedures, patients are at an increased risk of AKI in the perioperative setting, and the role of the anesthesia provider becomes even more critical. Indeed, a recent study of dialysis after elective major surgery suggests that the incidence of dialysis-requiring AKI is rising from 0.2% in 1995 to 0.6% in 2009, with the majority of the increase occurring after vascular and cardiac surgery.[21] Although ischemic causes may be primarily responsible for perioperative AKI,[22,23] the successful development of renoprotective strategies has not occurred. Furthermore, other pathophysiologic contributors to perioperative AKI may include contrast-induced nephropathy, pigment nephropathy (e.g., hemoglobin, myoglobin), cholesterol emboli (e.g., atheroembolic renal disease), aminoglycoside toxicity, and sepsis. Animal studies of such pure nephropathies treated

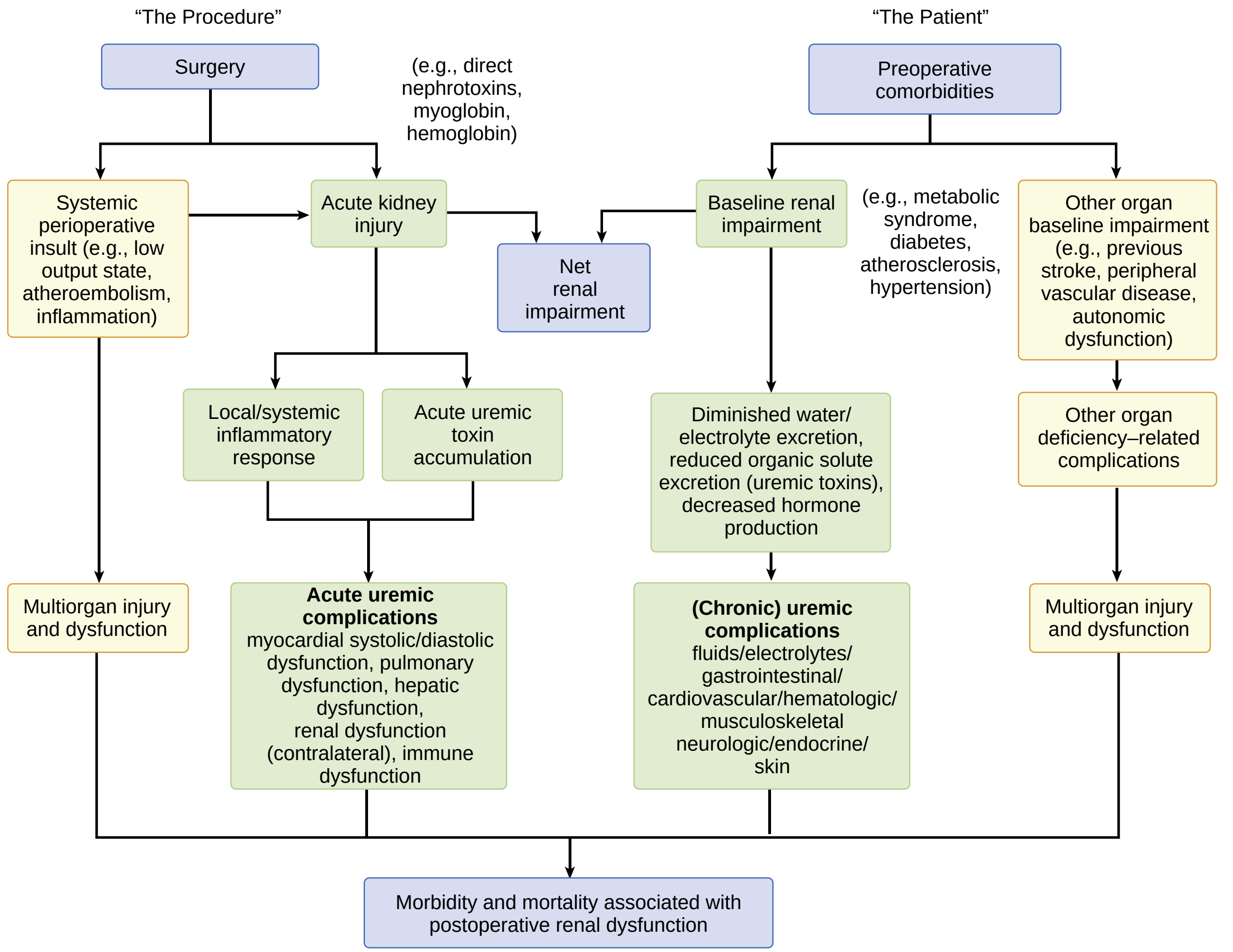

"The Procedure"
"The Patient"
Surgery
(e.g., direct nephrotoxins, myoglobin, hemoglobin)
Preoperative comorbidities
Systemic perioperative insult (e.g., low output state, atheroembolism, inflammation)
Acute kidney injury
Net renal impairment
Baseline renal impairment
(e.g., metabolic syndrome, diabetes, atherosclerosis, hypertension)
Other organ baseline impairment (e.g., previous stroke, peripheral vascular disease, autonomic dysfunction)
Local/systemic inflammatory response
Acute uremic toxin accumulation
Diminished water/ electrolyte excretion, reduced organic solute excretion (uremic toxins), decreased hormone production
Other organ deficiency–related complications
Multiorgan injury and dysfunction
Acute uremic complications
myocardial systolic/diastolic dysfunction, pulmonary dysfunction, hepatic dysfunction, renal dysfunction (contralateral), immune dysfunction
(Chronic) uremic complications
fluids/electrolytes/ gastrointestinal/ cardiovascular/hematologic/ musculoskeletal neurologic/endocrine/ skin
Multiorgan injury and dysfunction
Morbidity and mortality associated with postoperative renal dysfunction

Fig. 42.1 Procedural and patient factors related to surgery contributing to the risk of perioperative acute kidney injury (AKI) and postoperative morbidity and mortality. Of note, although AKI contributes to the risk of morbidity and mortality, a significant part of this association must also be attributed to other very serious conditions, such as sepsis, that can cause injury and are also major sources of adverse outcomes. (Modified from Stafford-Smith M, Patel U, Phillips-Bute B, et al. Acute kidney injury and chronic kidney disease after cardiac surgery. *Adv Chronic Kid Dis.* 2008;15:157–177. Used with permission.)

with logical renoprotective interventions often demonstrate success; unfortunately, this success has not extended to equivalent renoprotection in humans. It may not be surprising that a specific treatment for a pure nephropathy nonselectively applied to a mixture of nephropathies, variably expressed in different patients, would be unsuccessful. Postoperative AKI, rather than being a single entity, is likely a mosaic of several pure nephropathies, each of varying importance for a particular patient and procedure (Fig. 42.1).

Pathophysiologic Processes of Ischemic Acute Kidney Injury

In general, the causes for AKI can be divided into prerenal, intrinsic renal, and postrenal sources. In the perioperative setting, patients may be at increased risk for prerenal AKI, either attributable to volume depletion or to exacerbation of associated chronic prerenal physiologic conditions, such as congestive heart failure, which may be exacerbated by volume overload. Intraoperatively, hypotension due to vasodilation and negative inotropy/chronotropy from anesthetic agents may lead to prerenal physiology. Depending on the nature of the surgical procedure, the patient may also be at increased risk of postrenal AKI attributable to obstruction of the ureters, bladder, or urethra. However, the primary cause of perioperative AKI is *acute tubular necrosis* (ATN). Defining the cause of AKI is also critical because treatment of the underlying cause is critical for the reversal of AKI and potential renal recovery.

The two primary mechanisms of ATN are ischemia-reperfusion and nephrotoxic effects, with three sources of insult common to many surgical procedures during which postoperative AKI is prevalent: hypoperfusion, inflammation, and atheroembolism. Other sources of renal insult in selected patients may include rhabdomyolysis and specific drug-related effects. Certain classes of medications may also contribute to hypoperfusion by virtue of their hemodynamic effects (notably angiotensin-converting enzyme [ACE] inhibitor 1, angiotensin-receptor blockers [ARBs], and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs [NSAIDs]), and, consequently, the risk of ATN.

Ischemic renal failure related to shock or severe dehydration is always preceded by an early compensatory phase of normal renal adaptation (e.g., pre-prerenal failure),

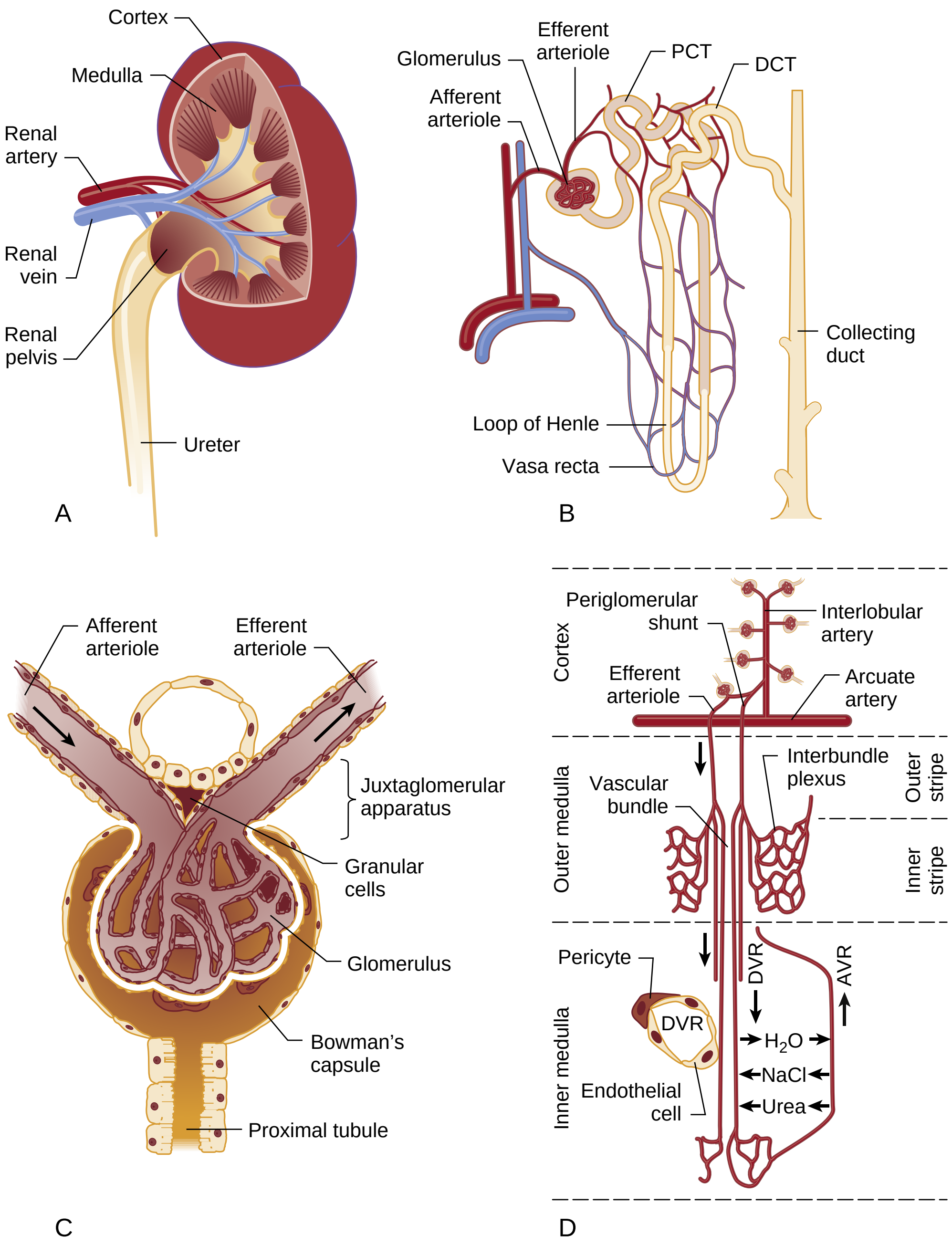

Cortex
Medulla
Renal artery
Renal vein
Renal pelvis
Ureter
A
Glomerulus
Efferent arteriole
Afferent arteriole
PCT
DCT
Collecting duct
Loop of Henle
Vasa recta
B
Afferent arteriole
Efferent arteriole
Juxtaglomerular apparatus
Granular cells
Glomerulus
Bowman's capsule
Proximal tubule
C
Cortex
Periglomerular shunt
Interlobular artery
Efferent arteriole
Arcuate artery
Outer medulla
Vascular bundle
Interbundle plexus
Outer stripe
Inner stripe
Inner medulla
Pericyte
DVR
DVR
AVR
H_2O
NaCl
Urea
Endothelial cell
D

Fig. 42.2 (A) The internal structure of the kidney includes the vasculature, cortex and medulla regions, and urinary tract structures. (B) The functional unit of the kidney is the nephron. (C) The glomerulus is the site where plasma filtration occurs; approximately 20% of plasma entering the glomerulus will pass through the specialized capillary wall into the Bowman capsule and enter the tubule to be processed and to generate urine. (D) The vascular anatomy of the kidney is highly organized, and the medullary microcirculation is part of the mechanism that permits countercurrent exchange.[42] *AVR,* Ascending vasa recta; *DCT,* distal convoluted tubule; *DVR,* descending vasa recta; *NaCl,* sodium chloride; *PCT,* proximal convoluted tubule. (A, From http://www.nida.nih.gov/consequences/kidney/. Accessed February 17, 2008. B, From http://cnx.org/content/m44809/1.8/. Accessed February 24, 2014. C, From http://www.cixip.com/index.php/page/content/id/422/. Accessed June 26, 2014. D, From Pallone TL, Zhang Z, Rhinehart K. Physiology of the renal medullary microcirculation. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol.* 2003;284:F253–F266. Used with permission.)

followed by a condition termed *prerenal azotemia* during which the kidney maximizes activities at the expense of the retention of nitrogenous end-products to preserve the internal environment through retention of solutes and water (Fig. 42.2). In studies of community-acquired AKI, the incidence of prerenal azotemia may be as frequent as 70%.[24] In contrast, in a classic study of hospital-acquired AKI, although hypoperfusion accounted for 42% of cases of AKI, only 41% of these cases of hypoperfusion were attributable to inadequate intravascular volume.[25]

Although prerenal azotemia is ominous and typically accompanied by oliguria (<0.5 mL/kg/h), it is reversible. At a critical tilting point, as conditions go beyond the compensatory mechanisms that maintain renal perfusion, ischemia leads to irreversible renal cell necrosis or ATN.[26] This represents the pure form of ischemic AKI. Other forms of ATN are due to toxins, including medications (e.g., aminoglycosides, cisplatinum), pigments (e.g., hemoglobin, myoglobin), and iodinated contrast dye. These forms of ATN do not involve the typical pattern of preceding prerenal azotemia with

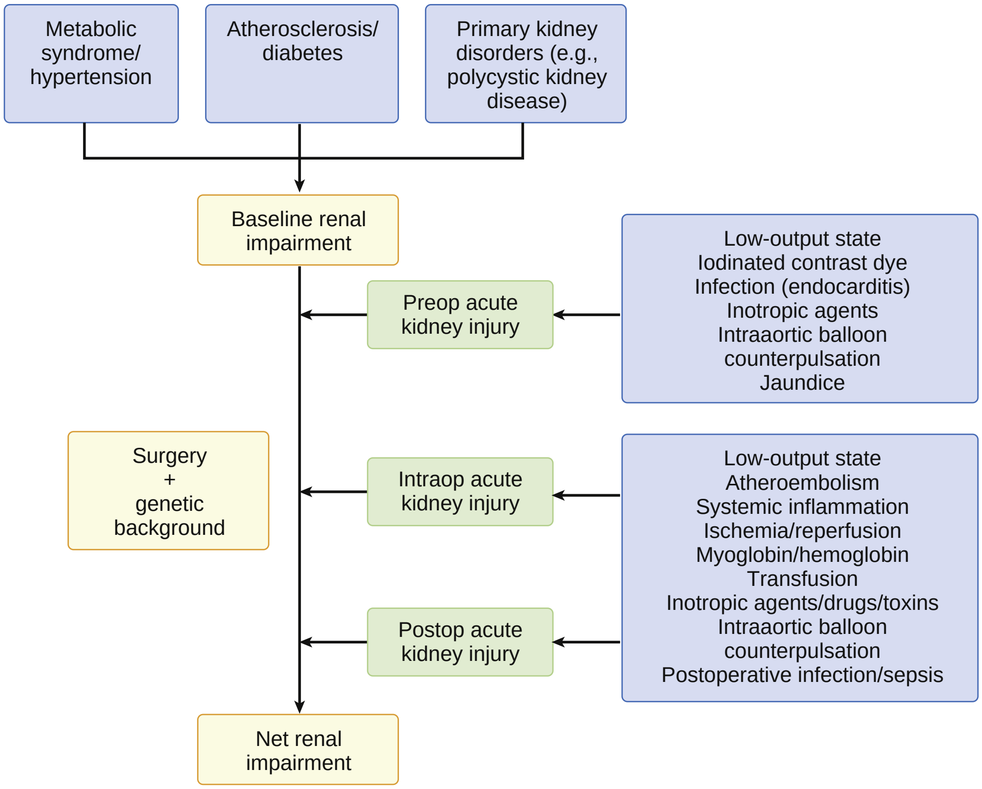

Metabolic syndrome/ hypertension
Atherosclerosis/ diabetes
Primary kidney disorders (e.g., polycystic kidney disease)
Baseline renal impairment
Preop acute kidney injury
Low-output state
Iodinated contrast dye
Infection (endocarditis)
Inotropic agents
Intraaortic balloon counterpulsation
Jaundice
Surgery + genetic background
Intraop acute kidney injury
Low-output state
Atheroembolism
Systemic inflammation
Ischemia/reperfusion
Myoglobin/hemoglobin
Transfusion
Inotropic agents/drugs/toxins
Intraaortic balloon counterpulsation
Postoperative infection/sepsis
Postop acute kidney injury
Net renal impairment

Fig. 42.3 Perioperative clinical risk factors associated with postoperative kidney injury.

associated oliguria, since the insult is sudden. Importantly, most cases of perioperative AKI are the result of numerous renal insults, rather than being attributable to one pure source (Fig. 42.3). In particular, patients with prerenal azotemia are likely at increased risk for toxic ATN.

Interruption of blood flow to the kidneys for more than 30 to 60 minutes results in ATN and irreversible cell damage. The kidneys receive 1000 to 1250 mL/min of blood or 3 to 5 mL/min/g of tissue for the average adult, and this amount far exceeds what is needed to provide the kidney's intrinsic oxygen requirement. Intracortical blood flow may not be evenly distributed.[27] Because the renal cortex contains most of the glomeruli and depends on oxidative metabolism for energy, ischemic hypoxia injures the renal cortical structures, particularly the pars recta of the proximal tubules. As ischemia persists, the supply of glucose and substrates continues to decrease; glycogen is consumed, and the medulla, which depends to a great extent on glycolysis for its energy sources, becomes more adversely affected. Early cell changes are reversible, such as the swelling of cell organelles, especially the mitochondria. As ischemia progresses, a lack of adenosine triphosphate interferes with the sodium pump mechanism, water and sodium accumulate in the endoplasmic reticulum of tubular cells, and the cells begin to swell. Onset of tubular damage usually occurs within 25 minutes of ischemia as the microvilli of the proximal tubular cell brush borders begin to change. Within an hour, they slough off into the tubular lumen, and membrane bullae protrude into the straight portion of the proximal tubule. After a few hours, intratubular pressure rises, and tubular fluid passively backflows. Within 24 hours, obstructing casts appear in the distal tubular lumen.

RENAL RESPONSE TO HYPOPERFUSION: AUTOREGULATION AND DISTRIBUTION OF CARDIAC OUTPUT TO THE KIDNEYS

A common intraoperative stress that puts patients at risk for AKI is hypoperfusion due to hypotension and/or hypovolemia. The fraction of cardiac output perfusing the kidneys depends on the ratio of renal vascular resistance to systemic vascular resistance.[26] In general, the response to renal hypoperfusion involves three major regulatory mechanisms that support renal function: (1) afferent arteriolar dilation increases the proportion of cardiac output that perfuses the kidney; (2) efferent arteriolar resistance increases the filtration fraction and preserves GFR; and (3) hormonal and neural responses improve renal perfusion by increasing intravascular volume, thereby indirectly increasing cardiac output.

The kidney produces vasodilator prostaglandins to counteract the effects of systemic vasoconstrictor hormones such as angiotensin II. In a state of low cardiac output when systemic blood pressure is preserved by the action of systemic vasopressors, RBF is not depressed because the effect of the vasopressors is blunted within the kidney. Studies using specific inhibitors of angiotensin II have shown that efferent arteriolar resistance largely results from the action of angiotensin II.[28] At low concentrations, norepinephrine has a vasoconstricting effect on efferent arterioles, indicating that the adrenergic system may also be important for maintaining the renal compensatory response.[29]

Reductions in cardiac output are accompanied by the release of vasopressin and by increased activity of the sympathetic nervous system and the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. These regulatory mechanisms to preserve RBF conserve salt and water. One study reported the normal response to hemorrhage in otherwise healthy patients, describing a 30% reduction in RBF with a decrease in mean perfusion pressure from 80 to 60 mm Hg.[30] Changes known to occur at the initiation of cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) surgery include greater reduction in renal perfusion than systemic perfusion, loss of RBF autoregulation, and stress hormone and inflammatory responses known to be harmful to the kidney.[31,32] These effects may explain why the duration of CPB surgery independently predicts postcardiac surgery renal impairment.

Detection of Acute Kidney Injury

LABORATORY TESTS OF SERUM AND URINE AS MARKERS OF RENAL FUNCTION

Standard serum and urine markers of renal function are discussed in Chapter 17. It should be emphasized that at present, repeated serum creatinine determinations (relative or absolute changes), are most often used to identify AKI. An inherent limitation of almost all currently available tools to detect AKI is the obligate delay between the *onset* of AKI and the *diagnosis* of AKI. One striking difference between the management of AKI and acute myocardial infarction is the lack of early biomarkers for AKI in routine clinical practice to guide prompt recognition and intervention when tissue is threatened. Thus significant ongoing efforts are testing the value of early AKI biomarkers and of real-time measurement of GFR.

NOVEL (EARLY) BIOMARKERS OF ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY

Limited progress in the care for AKI has fueled an enormous interest in new early biomarkers.[33-36] Although a few of the new tools represent attempts to find a filtration marker that is better than creatinine (e.g., cystatin C), most novel AKI biomarkers take advantage of one of the three early consequences of AKI: (1) tubular cell damage, (2) tubular cell dysfunction, and (3) adaptive stress response of the kidney. The hope is that such biomarkers will allow timely AKI identification, diagnosis (e.g., prerenal azotemia vs. ATN), and prognosis. Some of the more promising biomarkers are presented here (Box 42.1).

BOX 42.1 Early Biomarkers of Acute Kidney Injury

Filtration-Based Markers of Renal Dysfunction

Cystatin C
β-trace protein
β-2 microglobulin

Biomarkers Reflecting Renal Tubular Cell Damage (Tubular Enzymuria)

α-Glutathione S-transferase
π-Glutathione S-transferase
β-*N*-Acetyl-β-D-glucosaminidase
γ-Glutamyl transpeptidase
Alkaline phosphatase
Sodium hydrogen exchanger isoform 3

Biomarkers Reflecting Renal Tubular Cell Dysfunction (Tubular Proteinuria)

α_1-Microglobulin
β_2-Microglobulin
Albumin
Retinol-binding protein
Immunoglobulin G
Transferrin
Ceruloplasmin
Lambda and kappa light chains

Biomarkers Reflecting Renal Tubular Cell Response to Stress

Neutrophil gelatinase–associated lipocalin
Urinary interleukin-18
Kidney injury molecule-1
Liver fatty acid–binding protein
Insulin-like growth factor binding protein 7
Tissue inhibitor of metallo-proteinase 2

New Filtration-Based Markers of Renal Dysfunction

Of the most novel filtration-based markers of renal dysfunction, the most advanced is cystatin C, a member of the cystatin superfamily of cysteine-proteinase inhibitors that is produced by all nucleated cells at a constant rate. Cystatin C has been clinically available for longer than 15 years and can be rapidly determined. Similar to creatinine, cystatin C accumulates in the circulation with renal impairment and can be used as a marker of glomerular filtration. Serum cystatin C has theoretical advantages over creatinine, particularly as an indicator of mild chronic kidney disease and its sequelae.[38] Several GFR estimating equations have been proposed, based on cystatin C alone or cystatin C and creatinine for use in chronic kidney disease.[39,40] Although these are commonly used in clinical research studies, in general these are not in widespread clinical use at present.

Although cystatin C outperformed creatinine in detecting AKI after cardiac surgery in some small studies,[41] this sensitivity has not consistently been the case. Indeed, a large multicenter prospective observational study of AKI after cardiac surgery suggested that serum cystatin C was less, not more, sensitive for the detection of AKI. This study, conducted by the Translational Research Investigating Biomarker Endpoints in Acute Kidney Injury (TRIBE-AKI) Consortium, prospectively enrolled more than 1200 adults undergoing cardiac surgery and has rapidly advanced the field of novel biomarkers in this context. Of note, the subset of patients who had AKI by cystatin C and creatinine had more frequent risk of dialysis and death than those who had AKI by creatinine alone.[42] Conditions such as malignancy, human immunodeficiency viral infection, or corticosteroidal or thyroid hormone therapy are associated with increased serum levels of cystatin C without changes in renal function. Other novel markers of filtration include β-trace protein and β-2-microglobulin; these markers may be novel markers of mortality in the general population, compared with creatinine-based eGFR.[42] However, the additional utility of these markers in estimating GFR above and beyond creatinine and cystatin C is unknown.

Biomarkers Reflecting Renal Tubular Cell Damage (Tubular Enzymuria)

Renal tubular cells contain enzymes that are highly specific to their location within the kidney and even tubule region. Under conditions of cellular stress, these enzymes are shed into the urine, making these potentially appealing markers of kidney dysfunction. These markers include α and π isomers of glutathione s-transferase (GST), which are cytosolic enzymes from proximal and distal tubular cells, respectively, and N-acetyl-β-D-glucosaminidase, a proximal tubule lysosomal enzyme. Of note, although enhanced urinary excretion of tubular enzymes can signal damaged tubular cells, it can also reflect an increased turnover of tubular cells or some other metabolic disturbance; thus the use of these markers may need to be applied with caution.

Biomarkers Reflecting Renal Tubular Cell Dysfunction (Tubular Proteinuria)

When small proteins are filtered by the glomerulus, binding and endocytic reuptake in the proximal tubule normally returns these substances to the body through a megalin-mediated transport system. So-called tubular proteinuria results from functional impairment of this process and the escape of small proteins into the urine. Endogenous low molecular weight proteins that are normally taken up in this way include β_2- and α_1-microglobulin, retinol-binding protein, lysozyme, ribonuclease, IgG, transferrin, ceruloplasmin, and lambda (λ) and kappa (κ) light chains. Appearance of any of these substances in the urine heralds abnormal proximal nephron function consistent with AKI. However, lysine and its analog (e.g., ε-aminocaproic acid, tranexamic acid) can cause a profound but reversible inhibition of low molecular weight protein reuptake[43] that is transient and apparently benign due to blocking renal-binding sites.[44,45]

Biomarkers Reflecting Renal Tubular Cell Response to Stress

Examples of markers that assess the response of the kidney to stress include neutrophil gelatinase–associated lipocalin (NGAL), kidney injury molecule–1 (KIM-1), liver fatty acid–binding protein, and interleukin-18 (IL-18). These have each been extensively reviewed in detail in recent literature.[33-36] Two markers of G1-cell cycle arrest have been shown to be upregulated in AKI, insulin-like growth factor–binding protein 7 (IGFBP-7) and tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinases–2 (TIMP-2).[46] A test that combines levels of IGFBP-7 and TIMP-2 has received U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) clearance as a biomarker for the identification of patients at high risk of AKI.

NGAL is a protein with a critical role in iron scavenging. A transcriptome-wide interrogation for genes induced very early after renal ischemia identified NGAL as a protein generated by ischemic renal tubular cells.[47] Administration of exogenous NGAL in animal models attenuates renal injury.[48] Enthusiasm for NGAL as a biomarker of AKI was fueled by a study in pediatric patients who underwent cardiac surgery, suggesting that plasma and urinary NGAL could predict AKI before elevations in serum creatinine (Fig. 42.4).[49] Although increased NGAL levels are associated with adverse outcomes,[50,51] studies in the adult perioperative literature have not consistently shown NGAL to predict AKI before elevations in serum creatinine.

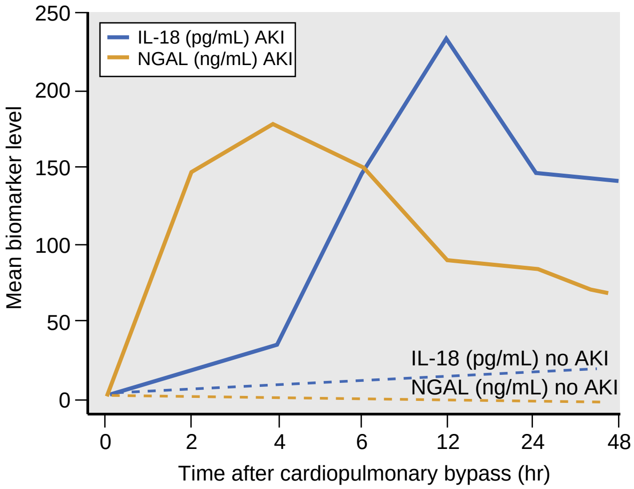


Fig. 42.4 Pattern of early biomarkers for urinary interleukin *(IL)*-18 and neutrophil gelatinase–associated lipocalin *(NGAL)* after cardiopulmonary bypass surgery in 55 patients with and without criteria for acute kidney injury *(AKI)* diagnosed 48 to 72 hours postoperatively (defined as a peak rise in serum creatinine concentration to >150% of baseline). (From Parikh CR, Mishra J, Thiessen-Philbrook H, et al. Urinary IL-18 is an early predictive biomarker of acute kidney injury after cardiac surgery. *Kidney Int*. 2006;70:199–203. Used with permission.)

KIM-1 is a transmembrane protein expressed at low levels under normal conditions that is significantly upregulated in proximal renal tubular cells in response to ischemic or nephrotoxic AKI.[52] In studies conducted by the Predictive Testing Safety Consortium, an academic-industrial partnership that has worked closely with the FDA to develop novel biomarkers of kidney injury for use in the preclinical setting (in particular, as markers of drug toxicity), KIM-1 outperformed a number of traditional markers of kidney injury in a variety of preclinical models.[53] More recently, assays have been developed to detect plasma KIM-1, which appears to correlate with urinary KIM-1 in the setting of both acute and chronic kidney disease.[54]

Finally, cell cycle arrest has been implicated in models of AKI; more recently, two proteins that induce cell cycle arrest, IGFBP-7 and TIMP-2, have both been shown in a multicenter study to predict the development of KDIGO stage 2 and 3 AKI in critically ill patients. In a validation cohort, these biomarkers had an impressive area under the ROC curve of 0.80 for subsequent AKI.[55] There has been tremendous interest in the use of these biomarkers for perioperative risk stratification,[56,57] with clinical trials enrolling patients based on elevated levels of IGFBP-7 and TIMP-2 (typically expressed as the product of these two biomarkers).[58]

Preoperative Evaluation of Renal Function and Risk Stratification

The greater the magnitude and duration of the surgical insult and the number of acute and chronic risk factors, the greater the likelihood of perioperative renal compromise and hence the need for preoperative identification of high-risk individuals.[58-61] Common risk factors for AKI include intravascular volume depletion, aminoglycoside use, radiocontrast dye exposure, use of NSAIDs, septic shock, and pigmenturia. ACE inhibitors and ARBs, respectively, may contribute to intraoperative hypotension and may exacerbate AKI in the setting of impaired hemodynamics (volume depletion, NSAID use). Patients with preexisting renal insufficiency are clearly at increased risk for AKI and should be identified in the perioperative evaluation through measurement of serum creatinine and urinalysis (to evaluate for albuminuria/proteinuria). Chronic kidney disease affects more than 10% of the United States population. Common risk factors for chronic kidney disease include advanced age, diabetes, and hypertension. The potential value of understanding the genetic makeup of patients has yet to be fully explored and is likely to be important. For example, several genetic polymorphisms known to affect inflammation and vasoconstriction demonstrate strong associations with AKI after cardiac surgery,[62] including the IL-6 572C and angiotensinogen 842C polymorphisms. In the future, identification of such polymorphisms may improve perioperative risk stratification.

Large multicenter epidemiologic studies have identified a relationship between markers of abnormal central aortic compliance, such as preoperative isolated systolic hypertension (>160 mm Hg) and wide pulse pressure hypertension (>40 mm Hg),[63,64] and postoperative AKI and dialysis, in particular in patients undergoing cardiac surgery. Pulse pressure is an index of the effects of large artery stiffness and the rate of pressure on propagation and reflection within the arterial tree. Early return of reflected arterial waves during late systolic rather than early diastolic pressure (from increased propagation velocity in stiff vessels) increases systolic blood pressure (i.e., afterload) and decreases diastolic blood pressure (i.e., perfusion pressure). Perfusion pressure and the risk of perioperative renal dysfunction are linked by the preexisting capacity of the vasculature to compensate for low pressure as it determines flow. Those with a predisposition to low flow attributable to abnormal central aortic compliance (e.g., those with wide pulse pressure) may represent patients who require higher pressure to maintain adequate flow and minimize renal risk compared with normotensive patients.

In the context of specific surgery types (e.g., cardiac surgery), perioperative risk prediction tools have been developed. In general, these tend to effectively identify low-risk populations, but discrimination for higher risk patients is more modest. This may reflect the fact that intraoperative factors play a major role in the pathogenesis of AKI in a vulnerable patient. In addition, a number of these risk prediction tools focus on dialysis-requiring AKI, which is only the "tip of the iceberg" with regard to disease burden.

Perioperative Acute Kidney Injury: Mechanisms and Treatment

As described in Chapter 17, anesthesia and surgery influence normal renal function primarily through changes in GFR and urine flow that are attributable to changes in blood pressure and cardiac output. Fluctuations in blood pressure have a major effect on RBF and glomerular filtration.[19,31,65] Here, we will briefly discuss considerations for several anesthetic techniques, followed by several specific perioperative considerations.

REGIONAL ANESTHESIA

Regional anesthetics and the kidneys interact in a complex manner that varies according to the underlying cardiovascular, renal, fluid, and electrolyte status of the patient.[66] In general, epidural and spinal anesthesia reduce systemic and renal vascular sympathetic tone.[67] Spinal cord segments T4 through L1 contribute to the sympathetic innervation of the renal vasculature, which is mediated by sympathetic fibers from the celiac and renal plexus.[67,68] Autonomic blockade above the fourth thoracic level also blocks cardioaccelerator sympathetic innervation to the heart. If neuraxial blockade reduces arterial blood pressure and cardiac output, then the RBF will be decreased with matching reductions in glomerular filtration and urine output.

Although controversial, intraoperative neuraxial blockade and postoperative epidural analgesia decrease rates of AKI. Rodgers and colleagues conducted a systematic review of 107 randomized clinical trials of intraoperative neuraxial blockade and demonstrated a 30% reduction in the odds of postoperative mortality.[69] This reduction was associated with decreases in the incidence of deep venous thrombosis, pulmonary embolism, transfusion, pneumonia, and respiratory depression, as well as renal failure, although the confidence limits for the renal failure estimates were very wide, in part due to the small number of cases of renal failure observed. Moraca and associates conducted a meta-analysis and reported on the association of thoracic epidural anesthesia with improved surgical outcomes attributable, in part, to a reduction of perioperative morbidity, including reductions in infection, ileus, blood loss, and AKI.[70] Other studies have examined the impact of epidural anesthesia during cardiac surgery and have suggested a benefit with regards to renal failure, although the confidence intervals were wide.[71] Unfortunately, renal failure was not an outcome of several recently published meta-analyses focused on epidural anesthesia during cardiac surgery.[72,73] Finally, with regard to postoperative analgesia, a recent Cochrane meta-analysis that focused on abdominal aortic surgery suggested better postoperative analgesia and a reduction in other complications including myocardial infarction and respiratory with epidural analgesia but no effect on AKI or postoperative mortality.[74]

EFFECTS OF INHALED ANESTHETICS

From a historic perspective, older volatile inhaled anesthetics including methoxyflurane and enflurane (no longer clinically used) when used for prolonged periods lead to significant generation of inorganic fluoride[74-77] and were associated with polyuric renal insufficiency. However, despite significant fluoride generation with sevoflurane and the generation of compound A (a metabolite associated with renal injury in experimental models), there is no reported association with AKI.[76] This may be due to the shorter duration of elevated fluoride levels with sevoflurane and the site of metabolism (intrarenal metabolism of methoxyflurane is fourfold greater than that of sevoflurane).

EFFECTS OF INTRAVENOUS ANESTHETICS

Propofol and dexmedetomidine may have antiinflammatory effects that are renoprotective. Propofol increases production of bone morphogenetic protein–7 (BMP-7), which suppresses the tumor necrosis factor α–induced inflammatory cascade during sepsis-induced AKI,[78] as well as decreased injury during ischemia-reperfusion[79,80] and unilateral ureteral obstruction.[81] Similarly, in addition to altering RBF and sodium and water handling, the α_2-adrenoreceptor agonists such as dexmedetomidine may stimulate BMP-7 production in the setting of sepsis and ischemia-reperfusion.[81-84] There has been significant interest in the use of dexmetomidine, in particular in the setting of cardiac surgery, with a recent meta-analysis suggesting a reduction in postoperative AKI with the use of dexmetomidine (OR 0.65; 95% confidence interval [CI], 0.45-0.92, $P = .02$).[85]

SPECIFIC PERIOPERATIVE PERTURBATIONS AND RENAL FUNCTION

Several surgical interventions can affect RBF and, consequently, renal function. Whereas aortic cross-clamping above the renal arteries has obvious influence on glomerular filtration, infrarenal aortic cross-clamping and unclamping also have significant indirect effects on glomerular filtration and urine formation through changes in myocardial function, sympathetic activity, neuronal and hormonal activity (e.g., renin and angiotensin production), intravascular volume, and systemic vascular resistance.[86] During standard CPB surgery, cardiorenal relationships are approximately as expected; RBF decreases to 12% to 13% of total pump flow and is predicted by flow rate and perfusion pressure; however, only mean pressure correlates with urine output.[31,87]

AKI after aortocoronary bypass surgery continues to be a devastating complication that is associated with multiorgan dysfunction, increased resource utilization, high cost, and increased mortality. Annually, approximately 350,000 patients in the United States undergo coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) surgery. In a multicenter observational study focused on AKI after cardiac surgery, 5% of participants developed AKI as defined by the need for acute dialysis or a doubling of serum creatinine from baseline.[88] The mechanism of perioperative AKI during cardiac surgery is multifactorial. Significant risk factors for AKI include underlying patient characteristics, such as age older than 75 years, history of diabetes, hypertension, pulse pressure, ventricular dysfunction, myocardial infarction, renal disease, perioperative medication exposures (e.g., aprotinin, hetastarch), and surgical characteristics such as intraoperative use of multiple inotropes, insertion of intraaortic balloon pump, and extended duration of the CPB surgery.[63,89-92]

The role of CPB surgery in postoperative AKI remains controversial. In their comprehensive guidelines on AKI, KDIGO reviewed the literature on postoperative AKI between patients undergoing off-pump and on-pump coronary revascularization surgeries and ultimately recommended that "off-pump CABG surgery not be selected solely for the purpose of reducing perioperative AKI or need for renal replacement therapy (RRT)."[14] However, patients with chronic kidney disease, who are at the highest risk for AKI after CPB surgery, have often been excluded from randomized clinical trials of off-pump versus on-pump CABG. For example, in the Randomized On/Off Bypass (ROOBY) trial, in which 2303 patients were randomized to off-pump versus on-pump CABG, approximately 7.5% of patients had a preoperative serum creatinine level ≥1.5 mg/dL.[93]

A large observational study of 742,909 nonemergent, isolated CABG cases (including 158,561 off-pump cases) from the Society of Thoracic Surgery Database suggests a benefit to off-pump CABG in those with chronic kidney disease.[94] Propensity methods were used to adjust for patient- and center-level imbalances. The primary endpoint was death or dialysis. In those with lower estimated GFR (eGFR), the risk difference (i.e., number of patients with the outcome per 100 patients in those who underwent CPB minus the number with the outcome in those who underwent off-pump CABG) for the primary endpoint was 0.66 (95% CI, 0.45-0.87) for eGFR 30 to 59 mL/min/1.73 m^2 and 3.66 (95% CI, 2.14-5.18) for eGFR 15 to 29 mL/min/1.73 m^2. Both component endpoints followed the same trend. Highlighting the importance of chronic kidney disease as a risk factor for AKI after cardiac surgery, whereas slightly less than 1% of the overall cohort received dialysis after cardiac surgery, 2% of those with eGFR 30 to 59 mL/min/1.73 m^2 and 12.5% of those with eGFR 15 to 29 mL/min/1.73 m^2 required dialysis. The risk difference for dialysis alone in the same groups was 0.47 (95% CI, 0.31-0.62) and 2.79 (95% CI, 1.37-4.20) with on-pump versus off-pump CABG, respectively (Fig. 42.5). Along the same lines, a 2932 patient-substudy of the CORONARY clinical trial followed patients after off- or on-pump CABG surgery and demonstrated an interaction between preoperative chronic kidney disease (defined as eGFR <60 mL/min/1.73 m^2) and AKI (defined as a 50% increase in serum creatinine from prerandomization baseline within 30 days). In those with chronic kidney disease, 19.2% of those in the off-pump arm had AKI, compared to 30.2% in those who had on-pump surgery. However, there was no difference in sustained renal dysfunction, defined as a 20% or greater loss in eGFR at 1 year between the two study arms (17.1% vs. 15.3% in the off- vs. on-pump arms, $P = .23$). However, when those with AKI were compared to those who did not have AKI (regardless of treatment arm), AKI was independently associated with an increased risk of sustained renal dysfunction, with an adjusted odds ratio of 3.37 (95% CI, 2.65-4.28, $P < .001$.[95] This study highlights the fact that in the setting of chronic kidney disease, AKI is only one of many risk factors for chronic kidney disease progression.

In the setting of CABG, there has been tremendous interest in prevention of AKI, and numerous pharmacologic interventions have been tested. As stated previously, one of the major challenges for AKI prevention is that both pre- and intraoperative factors impact the risk of AKI, so it is difficult to identify a priori those who are at highest risk of AKI. Interventions of recent interest where there is not a sufficient evidence base for wide-spread adoption include remote ischemic preconditioning, atrial natriuretic peptide, and fenoldopam, among others.[96,97]

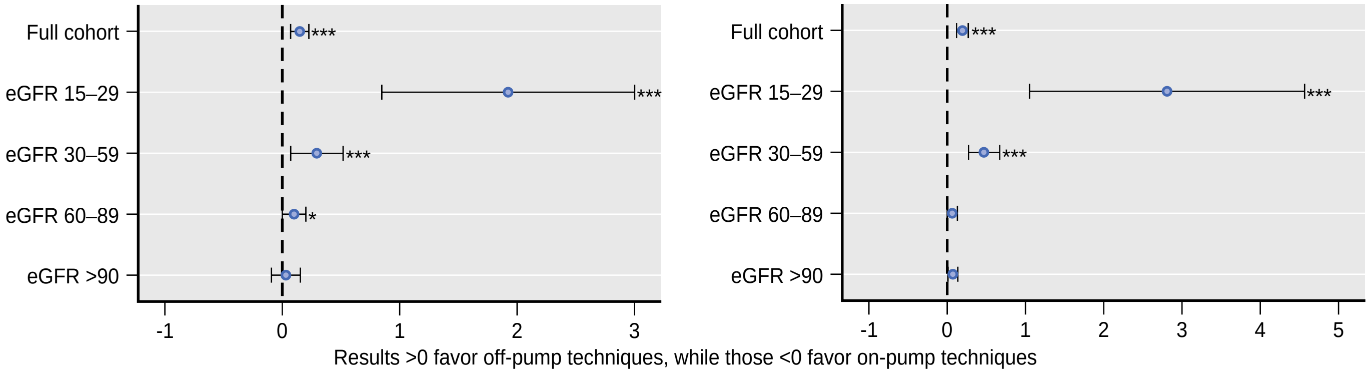


Fig. 42.5 Estimates of adverse outcomes associated with on-pump versus off-pump coronary artery bypass grafting by baseline estimated glomerular filtration rate *(eGFR)*. For both mortality *(left panel)* and renal replacement therapy *(right panel)*, off-pump CABG techniques appear to confer a benefit in those with lower eGFR. $^*P < .05$, $^{**}P < .01$, $^{***}P < .001$. (Redrawn from Chawla LS, Zhao Y, Lough FC, et al. Off-pump versus on-pump coronary artery bypass grafting outcomes stratified by preoperative renal function. *J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2012;23:1389–1397.)

INTRAOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT FOR AKI PREVENTION: OXYGEN DELIVERY: BLOOD GAS, ACID-BASE BALANCE, AND HEMATOCRIT

Severe arterial hypoxemia to a partial arterial pressure of oxygen (PaO_2) value of less than 40 mm Hg is associated with decreased RBF and renal vasoconstriction.[98,99] Inequalities in oxygen supply and demand are exaggerated and medullary hypoxia is extreme during CPB, effects that last well beyond separation from circulatory support in experimental models.[100]

The effects of anemia on the kidney have been studied mostly in the context of CPB management. When crystalloid and colloid solutions are used to prime an extracorporeal circuit, the initiation of CPB surgery obligates an acute decrease of approximately 30% in oxygen-carrying capacity. Animal studies endorse moderate hemodilution (hematocrit 20% to 30%) as renoprotective during CPB surgery through a reduction of blood viscosity and improved regional blood flow.[101] However, although hematocrit values less than 20% during CPB surgery are commonly accepted clinically (extreme hemodilution), very low hematocrit values are linked with adverse outcomes, including AKI.[102-104] The Society of Thoracic Surgeons and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists guidelines suggest that transfusion triggers should be lower during CPB surgery and that a transfusion trigger of 6 g/dL is reasonable, except in those at risk for end-organ ischemia, in whom a higher trigger may be reasonable.[105] More recently, the European Association for Cardio-Thoracic Surgery and the European Association of Cardiothoracic Anesthesia have developed comprehensive guidelines and suggest that a target hematocrit of 21% to 24% during cardiopulmonary bypass is reasonable.[106]

The solution may not be as simple as transfusion because blood transfusions themselves have been linked to AKI. In a systematic review, Karkouti found 22 studies that examined the association between blood transfusions and AKI postcardiac surgery. An independent association between transfusions and AKI was found in 18 of the 22 studies.[107] The association of perioperative anemia with AKI was further examined in 14 studies, and 9 of the studies found an independent association of perioperative anemia with AKI. Proposed mechanisms for transfusion-associated AKI include exacerbation of inflammation and oxidative stress, which occur during the CPB surgery.

There has been tremendous interest in the impact of the age of stored blood on the risk of AKI. Old blood may result in higher circulating levels of free hemoglobin and free iron, and there has been interest in the impact of the “storage lesion” on AKI. However, at present, data does not support the selective use of fresh blood in the perioperative setting to reduce the risk of AKI.[108-110]

Perioperative Blood Pressure and Fluid Management

There has been significant interest in perioperative blood pressure targets and the impact on AKI. Several large observational cohort studies have suggested that even transient hypotension was associated with postoperative AKI.[111-115] One prospective randomized trial compared an individualized blood pressure management strategy targeted at maintaining systolic blood pressure within 10% of baseline versus a standard management strategy (treatment of systolic blood pressure <80 mm Hg or lower than 40% from baseline) and demonstrated a significant reduction in the primary composite endpoint (systemic inflammatory response and at least one organ dysfunction within 7 days). This modest sized clinical trial demonstrated a nonsignificant trend toward reduced postoperative AKI in the individualized blood pressure management arm.[116] Thus blood pressure targets, in particular in patients with chronic kidney disease, need to take into consideration preoperative blood pressure.

Intravascular volume depletion, which commonly occurs in fasting patients undergoing surgery, is a risk factor for AKI. For example, the combination of diabetes mellitus and intravascular volume depletion increases the chance of developing AKI by 100-fold.[117] The most practical preoperative methods to assess volume status are with preoperative patient history and physical examination and by assessing changes in arterial blood pressure in response to changing conditions and dynamic maneuvers. For example, an awake patient normally does not have significant orthostatic changes in arterial blood pressure unless an autonomic or intravascular volume deficit exists. During anesthesia, a similarly dehydrated patient may demonstrate paradoxical arterial pulse changes with positive-pressure inspiration. Nonetheless, there has been tremendous interest in the use of intravascular monitoring techniques in the perioperative setting to reduce the risk of AKI.

The decision to use any monitor should depend on the patient's functional cardiac reserve status and the extent of the proposed surgical insult. Although maintaining adequate cardiac output is necessary for maintaining adequate RBF, adequate flow may still not occur. The use of intravascular volume monitoring techniques must include cautious identification of physiologic conditions that influence their validity as a reflection of preload in a particular patient. For example, monitoring central venous pressure to assess preload involves assumptions about normal left and right ventricular function; pulmonary vascular resistance; and mitral, pulmonary, and tricuspid valve function. Similarly, monitoring pulmonary artery pressure or pulmonary capillary wedge pressure assumes normal left ventricular compliance, mitral valve function, and normal airway pressure.

Direct measurements of left atrial pressure may offer insight into the kidney pressure-flow relationship because left atrial hypotension is a powerful stimulus for renal vasoconstriction. Despite equivalent reductions in cardiac output and arterial blood pressure, RBF decreases significantly more when left atrial pressure is decreased (e.g., hemorrhagic shock), compared with left atrial pressure when it is increased (e.g., cardiogenic shock).[118] Left atrial pressure receptors modulate renal vasoconstriction through the release of ANP, a hormone secreted by the cardiac atria in response to intravascular volume expansion.[119] ANP acts on the arterial and venous systems, the adrenal glands, and the kidneys to reduce intravascular volume and decrease blood pressure.[120] Within the kidney, the hormone increases hydraulic pressure in the glomerular capillaries through afferent arteriolar dilation and efferent arteriolar vasoconstriction. ANP reduces arterial blood pressure by relaxing smooth muscle and reducing sympathetic vascular stimulation and also inhibits renin and aldosterone secretion, causing renal vasodilation, natriuresis, and diuresis.

Despite the direct relationship of left atrial pressure and renal vasoconstriction, static monitors of intravascular volume status are gradually being replaced by echocardiographic and dynamic monitors of intravascular volume status. Intraoperatively, one of the most direct ways to monitor intravascular volume may be by direct assessment of the left ventricular end-diastolic area with transesophageal echocardiography. However, monitoring with invasive devices, such as pulmonary artery catheters, arterial cannulas, and transesophageal echocardiography, has not been demonstrated to reduce the incidence of AKI.

Guided fluid optimization has recently garnered significant interest as a step beyond traditional, somewhat unreliable guides to fluid administration (e.g., central venous pressure).[121,122] The principle behind fluid optimization is to maximize tissue-oxygen delivery by achieving a maximum stroke volume. Intravascular fluid management is typically guided by the physiologic response to dynamic measures; proposed measures include systolic pressure variation, pulse pressure variation, continuous cardiac output monitoring, and esophageal Doppler ultrasonography fluid boluses.[123] Some maneuvers to assess fluid responsiveness may be feasible in the critical care setting but not in the perioperative setting (e.g., passive leg raise).

Given the improved outcomes in patients who are critically ill with the acute respiratory distress syndrome and are managed with a restrictive fluid management strategy,[124] fluid restriction in the perioperative setting has gained attention. A meta-analysis of seven randomized clinical trials in the setting of intraabdominal surgery suggested a restrictive fluid strategy offered no benefit; however, there was also no evidence of harm, including AKI.[125] In some studies, excessive fluid restriction was associated with harm, including an increased risk of anastomotic breakdown and sepsis, and should clearly be avoided.[126] However, more recently, the RELIEF clinical trial randomized 3000 patients undergoing major abdominal surgery to a restrictive or liberal fluid strategy during surgery and up to 24 hours afterward; the restrictive fluid strategy was designed to provide a net even fluid balance.[127] There was no difference in the primary endpoint of disability-free survival at 1 year. However, the restrictive fluid strategy was associated with an increased rate of AKI (8.6% vs. 5.0%, $P < .001$) and surgical site infections (16.5% vs. 13.6%, unadjusted $P = .02$), though the comparison for surgical site infections was not considered significant after adjustment for multiple comparisons. Thus at present, fluid management strategies should avoid markedly positive fluid balance, but also need to be wary of underresuscitation.

There has been considerable interest in the use of balanced salt solutions instead of chloride-rich solutions to prevent AKI; the rationale is that chloride-rich solutions reduce renal perfusion in animal models.[128] Subsequently, a pre-post study of chloride-rich versus balanced salt solutions demonstrated a reduced incidence of stage 2 and 3 AKI during the balanced salt solution period.[129] Similarly, a propensity-matched study of patients undergoing major abdominal surgery suggested that patients who received balanced salt solutions had fewer postoperative complications, including postoperative dialysis.[130] However, a subsequent clinical trial, the SPLIT trial, suggested that there was no decrease in AKI with the use of Plasma-Lyte 148 in ICU patients.[131] Of note, 72% of the trial population was enrolled after surgery, with 49% enrolled after cardiac surgery. More recently, the SALT-ED and SMART trials were pragmatic clinical trials that randomized patients to receive balanced salt solutions or normal saline in alternating months in the Emergency Department and Intensive Care Units, respectively, at a single clinical center.[132,133] Both studies demonstrated a statistically significant reduction in the rate of major adverse kidney events at 30 days, a composite endpoint of death, dialysis, and persistent doubling of creatinine. In SMART, approximately 20% of subjects were admitted in the postoperative setting; there was no evidence of an interaction between treatment effect and type of ICU, but the study was underpowered to observe a difference within this subgroup.

Finally, are these solutions safe in patients who are prone to hyperkalemia? Because balanced salt solutions contain a physiologic amount of potassium, there has been concern that the administration of balanced salt solutions might lead to hyperkalemia in patients with reduced renal function. However, in two randomized clinical trials of intraoperative fluid selection in end-stage kidney disease patients undergoing kidney transplantation, there was no increase in the incidence of hyperkalemia.[134] The median volume of intravenous solution administered in a the trial that compared normal saline to an acetate based buffer was 2625 mL (IQR 2000-3001 mL);[135] in a trial comparing normal saline to lactated Ringers, mean fluid volumes were 6.1 ± 1.2 L and 5.6 ± 1.4 L, respectively.[136] Thus at reasonable doses, balanced salt solutions appear safe across a wide variety of patient populations and are associated with a decreased risk of AKI.

EXCESSIVE INTRAVASCULAR VOLUME AND THE ABDOMINAL COMPARTMENT SYNDROME

The abdominal compartment syndrome was first defined in 1985; since then, it has been progressively recognized as a common contributor to renal dysfunction in the setting of excessive intravascular volume.[137-139] Not surprisingly, excessive intravascular volume and mechanical ventilation with high airway pressures are significant contributors to the abdominal compartment syndrome. Abdominal compartment syndrome is defined as a sustained increase in intraabdominal pressures to greater than 20 mm Hg that causes organ dysfunction; in contrast, intraabdominal hypertension is typically defined as intraabdominal pressures ≥12 mm Hg without organ dysfunction. This increase in intraabdominal pressure decreases abdominal perfusion pressure (which is mean arterial pressure − intraabdominal pressure), and results in a functional prerenal state attributable to reduced renal perfusion.

The intraabdominal pressure can easily be measured using an indwelling Foley catheter and the same pressure tubing setup used for arterial line blood pressure monitoring.[140] The Foley catheter is clamped distal to the instillation port, and up to 25 mL of saline is instilled into the bladder. The transducer should be zeroed at the midaxillary line, and the pressure should be measured at end-expiration approximately 30 to 60 seconds after fluid is instilled into the bladder to allow for detrusor muscle relaxation. Of note, intraabdominal pressure may be chronically elevated to as high as 12 mm Hg in the obese adult but is not associated with end-organ dysfunction in this context.[141] Prompt recognition of the abdominal compartment syndrome and treatment via decompression in the appropriate clinical context is critical.

Nephrotoxins and Acute Kidney Injury

Recently, there has been significant controversy regarding the impact of iodinated contrast on AKI, with a number of observational studies suggesting that at a population level, iodinated contrast is not associated with an increased risk of AKI.[142,143] However, iodinated contrast is associated with intense renal vasoconstriction and causes significant AKI in the vulnerable subject. There has been significant interest in pharmacologic prevention of contrast-associated AKI. Clinical trials have demonstrated that pharmacologic interventions, including fenoldopam, n-acetyl-cysteine, and sodium bicarbonate, do not reduce the incidence of contrast-associated AKI.[144,145] Volume depletion and concomitant exposure to other nephrotoxins are key, preventable risk factors for AKI.

Other nephrotoxins commonly encountered in the perioperative setting include aminoglycosides and NSAIDs. In addition, there has been increasing interest in antibiotic nephrotoxicity. Specifically, the combination of vancomycin and piperacillin-tazobactam has been associated with an increased rate of AKI.[146] When possible, avoiding combinations of nephrotoxins is likely beneficial for AKI prevention.[147]

Renal Replacement Therapy

Despite best supportive care, at times, AKI progresses, and RRT is indicated. Conventional indications for dialysis include acidosis, electrolyte abnormalities (in particular, hyperkalemia), ingestions, volume overload, and uremia. There has been considerable interest in the optimal timing of dialysis initiation in critically ill and postoperative patients. A provocative, single-center study suggested that after cardiac surgery, there was significant benefit to initiation of dialysis for stage 2 AKI (doubling of sCr from baseline or urine output <0.5 mL/kg/h for 12 hours) versus waiting until stage 3 AKI (tripling of sCr from baseline, sCr ≥4 mg/dL with an acute rise of ≥0.5 mg/dL, or urine output <0.3 mL/kg/h for 24 hours).[148] Early RRT was associated with a lower incidence of death (39.3% vs. 54.7%, $P = .03$) and a greater rate of renal recovery at 90 days (53.6% vs. 38.7%, $P = 0.02$). It should be noted 90% of patients in the delayed arm received RRT, and the median difference in time to dialysis initiation was only 21 hours, so this is a remarkably large effect size that should be interpreted with caution. This study is in marked contrast to two large randomized clinical trials in critically ill patients suggesting that dialysis can be safely delayed in a number of patients.[149,150] In these clinical trials, patients were randomized to receive dialysis when they met criteria for stage 3 AKI or to initiate dialysis only after prespecified electrolyte/metabolic criteria were met or after AKI exceeded a prespecified duration. There was no difference in mortality between the two treatment arms; in addition, a significant proportion of subjects in the delayed therapy arm recovered and never required dialysis (29% in the IDEAL-ICU trial). Additional clinical trials are ongoing to further test the hypothesis that in critically ill patients, dialysis can be safely delayed.[151]

There has also been considerable interest in dialysis modality and the impact on outcomes. At present, four modalities of dialysis are possible in the ICU. Peritoneal dialysis requires placement of a catheter in the intraabdominal space; this is typically performed laparoscopically, but can be inserted at the bedside if needed. Dextrose-containing fluids drive fluid and solute removal. Thus a significant risk of peritoneal dialysis is infection (e.g., peritonitis). Furthermore, this modality cannot be used in patients who have had recent intraabdominal surgery, so in general, its role is quite limited in the perioperative setting, with the exception of patients who are maintained on this therapy for end-stage renal disease preoperatively. With regard to hemodialysis, modalities are typically divided into: intermittent hemodialysis (IHD), prolonged intermittent RRT (PIRRT)/slow low efficiency dialysis (SLED), and continuous renal replacement therapies (CRRT). As the name implies, IHD is typically performed over a 3- to 4-hour period, 3 to 6 days/week. PIRRT/SLED is typically performed over 6 to 12 hours/day, 3 to 6 days/week; there is no standard dialysis machine for PIRRT/SLED so dialysis programs may use this therapy quite differently. CRRT is performed on a continuous, 24 hours/day basis.

With regard to modality and outcomes, it has been specifically hypothesized that intradialytic hypotension might prolong AKI and delay renal recovery. However, no randomized clinical trials have demonstrated clear benefit to continuous RRT with regards to mortality or renal recovery.[152] Clinical trials have also examined the impact of dialysis dose and membrane on outcomes. These studies have established that there is a minimum dose of dialysis that should likely be measured and delivered,[153,154] and that modern dialysis membranes are all relatively biocompatible and there is no benefit of one membrane over another.

To maintain circuit patency, anticoagulation is often needed. At present, the two most common forms of anticoagulation are low-dose heparin (100 to 500 units/h) and regional citrate. In both cases, the anticoagulant is infused prefilter to minimize systemic effects. Even though the goal of heparin anticoagulation is to not affect systemic coagulation parameters such as partial thromboplastin time, there is a small increase in bleeding risk.[155,156] The goal of regional citrate anticoagulation is to reduce the ionized calcium concentration in the dialysis filter, since calcium is a required cofactor in the coagulation cascade. Thus citrate is infused prefilter and titrated to maintain a low postfilter ionized calcium. One of the challenges in the United States to the routine use of citrate anticoagulation is the lack of a citrate solution approved by the Food and Drug Administration for use with RRT; thus each center typically has developed its own protocol for titration and monitoring. That said, regional citrate anticoagulation is typically recommended in favor of other forms of anticoagulation.[14,155,156]

Occasionally, RRT is indicated in the operating room, typically during prolonged cases with significant blood product transfusion (e.g., liver transplantation). Close coordination between the nephrologist and the anesthesiologist is needed.

Summary

In patients with or at risk for developing AKI, perioperative management continues to be challenging. Numerous factors contribute to the heterogeneous condition referred to as perioperative AKI, but insults collectively combine through ischemic and toxic mechanisms. Recent research efforts directed to the investigation of AKI will likely lead to rapid developments in the field of renal function monitoring. At present, serum creatinine continues to be the mainstay of most renal function monitoring strategies, along with urine output. Best supportive care for perioperative AKI includes preoperative risk stratification with quantitation of serum creatinine and proteinuria/albuminuria for moderate-high risk surgeries, avoidance of hypotension and hypovolemia, along with judicious use of nephrotoxins. In the setting of severe AKI, support with RRT may be needed. At present, the timing of dialysis initiation is controversial, but early initiation does not appear to be associated with improved outcomes in critically ill patients.

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and authors, Drs. Kathleen D. Liu, Daniel H. Burkhardt III, and Rupert M. Pearse, would like to thank Drs. Mark Stafford-Smith and Andrew Shaw for their contribution to this chapter in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Thakar CV. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2013;20(67).
2. Chaudery H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000003923.
3. O'Connor ME, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2017;104:868.
4. Zarbock A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:1236.
5. Smith Jr LH, et al. *Am J Med*. 1955;18:187.
6. Gaffney AM, Sladen RN. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2015;28:50.
7. Hoste EAJ, Vandenberghe W. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;31:299.
8. Fuhrman DY, Kellum JA. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30:60.
9. Hobson C, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2018;68:916.
10. Novis BK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(143).
11. Chertow GM, et al. *Am J Med*. 1998;104:343.
12. Bellomo R, et al. *Crit Care*. 2004;8:R204.
13. Mehta RL, et al. *Crit Care*. 2007;11:R31.
14. Group KDIGO KAKIW. *Kidney Int Suppl*. 2012;2(1).
15. Kellum JA, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2015;26:2231.
16. Palevsky PM, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2013;61:649.
17. Quan S, et al. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2016;31:2049.
18. Alpert RA, et al. *Surgery*. 1984;95:707.
19. Knos GB, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1989;1:181.
20. Mizota T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:1127–1134.
21. Siddiqui NF, et al. *CMAJ*. 2012;184(1237).
22. Myers BD, Moran SM. *N Engl J Med*. 1986;314:97.
23. Myers BD, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1984;73:329.
24. Kaufman J, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 1991;17:191.
25. Hou SH, et al. *Am J Med*. 1983;74:243.
26. Badr KF, Ichikawa I. *N Engl J Med*. 1988;319:623.
27. Barger A, Herd J. In: Orlaff J, Berliner R, eds. *Handbook of Physiology*. Baltimore, MD: Williams and Wilkins; 1973.
28. Packer M, et al. *Circulation*. 1986;74:766.
29. Edwards RM. *Am J Physiol*. 1983;244:F526.
30. Stone AM, Stahl WM. *Ann Surg*. 1970;172:825.
31. Andersson LG, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 1994;8:597.
32. Laffey JG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:215.
33. Mcmahon G, Waikar S. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2013;61:165.
34. Parikh CR, Mansour SG. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2017;28:1677.
35. Waikar SS, Bonventre JV. *Nephron Clin Pract*. 2008;109:c192.
36. Chen L-X,C, Koyner JL. *Crit Care Clin*. 2015;31:633–648.
37. Shlipak MG, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2013;62:595–603.
38. Inker LA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:20.
39. Stevens LA, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2008;51:395.
40. Zhu J, et al. *Clin Chim Acta*. 2006;374:116.
41. Spahillari A, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2012;60:922.
42. Foster MC, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2013;62:42.
43. Mogensen CE. Sølling. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*. 1977;37:477.
44. Smith MS. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:928.
45. Stafford-Smith M. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2011;57:960; author reply, p1.
46. Kashani K, et al. *Crit Care*. 2013;17:R25.

47. Mishra J, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2003;14:2534.
48. Mishra J, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2004;15:3073.
49. Mishra J, et al. *Lancet*. 2005;365:1231.
50. Haase-Fielitz A, et al. *Ann Clin Biochem*. 2014;51:335.
51. Haase M, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2011;57:1752.
52. Ichimura T, et al. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2004;286:F552.
53. Vaidya VS, et al. *Nat Biotechnol*. 2010;28:478.
54. Sabbisetti VS, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2014;25(2177).
55. Bihorac A, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;189:932.
56. Gunnerson KJ, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2016;80:243.
57. Meersch M, et al. *PLoS One*. 2014;9:e93460. 3968141.
58. Meersch M, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2017;43:1151.
59. Wang Y, Bellomo R. *Nat Rev Nephrol*. 2017;13:697.
60. Wilson T, et al. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2016;31:231.
61. Hobson C, et al. *Crit Care Clin*. 2017;33(379).
62. Stafford-Smith M, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2005;45:519.
63. Aronson S, et al. *Circulation*. 2007;115:733.
64. Chertow GM, et al. *Circulation*. 1997;95:878.
65. Everett GB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1973;52:470.
66. Mark JB, Steele SM. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1989;27:31.
67. Kennedy Jr WF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1969;31:414.
68. Kennedy Jr WF, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1969;37:163.
69. Rodgers A, et al. *BMJ*. 2000;321:1493.
70. Moraca RJ, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2003;238:663.
71. Bignami E, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:586.
72. Landoni G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:25.
73. Svircevic V, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;6:CD006715.
74. Guay J, Kopp S. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;1:CD005059.
75. Cousins MJ, Mazze RI. *JAMA*. 1973;225:1611.
76. Mazze RI. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:843.
77. Mazze RI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:265.
78. Hsing CH, et al. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2011;26:1162.
79. Yuzbasioglu MF, et al. *Renal Fail*. 2010;32(578).
80. Sanchez-Conde P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:371; table of contents.
81. Dikmen B, et al. *J Anesth*. 2010;24:73.
82. Hsing CH, et al. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2012;303:F1443.
83. Sugita S, et al. *J Nippon Med Sch*. 2013;80:131.
84. Gu J, et al. *Crit Care*. 2011;15:R153.
85. Liu Y, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2018;18(7).
86. Gamulin Z, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:394.
87. Szabo G, et al. *Injury*. 1977;9(146).
88. Parikh CR, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2011;22(1748):3171945.
89. Rioux JP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37:1293.
90. Myburgh JA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:1901.
91. Rosner MH, Okusa MD. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2006;1(19).
92. Mangano DT, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:353.
93. Shroyer AL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361:1827.
94. Chawla LS, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2012;23:1389.
95. Garg AX, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311:2191.
96. Deferrari G, et al. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2018;33:813.
97. Romagnoli S, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30:92.
98. Kilburn KH, Dowell AR. *Arch Intern Med*. 1971;127:754.
99. Pelletier CL, Shepherd JT. *Am J Physiol*. 1975;228:331.
100. Stafford-Smith M, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2005;45:519.
101. Utley JR, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1981;31:121.
102. Karkouti K, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2005;129:391.
103. Swaminathan M, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;76(784):92; discussion.
104. Mehta RH, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2013;96:133.
105. Ferraris VA, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2011;91:944.
106. Pagano D, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2018;53(79).
107. Karkouti K. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(suppl 1):i29.
108. Hovaguimian F, Myles PS. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:46.
109. Curley GF. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42:2611.
110. Mazer CD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:2133.
111. Walsh M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119(507).
112. Sun LY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:515.
113. Salmasi V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:47.
114. Hallqvist L, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35:273.
115. Vernooij LM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:1080.
116. Futier E, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;318(1346).
117. Shusterman N, et al. *Am J Med*. 1987;83:65.
118. Gorfinkel HJ, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1972;222:1260.
119. Kahl FR, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1974;226:240.
120. Cogan MG. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 1990;52:699.
121. Bednarczyk JM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(1538).
122. Vincent JL, et al. *Crit Care*. 2015;19(224).
123. Busse L, et al. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2013;20:21.
124. Wiedemann HP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:2564.
125. Boland MR, et al. *World J Surg*. 2013;37:1193.
126. Futier E, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2010;145:1193.
127. Myles PS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:2263.
128. Wilcox CS. *J Clin Invest*. 1983;71(726).
129. Yunos NM, et al. *Crit Care*. 2010;14:226.
130. Shaw AD, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255:821.
131. Young P, et al. *JAMA*. 2015;314:1701.
132. Self WH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:819.
133. Semler MW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:829.
134. Wan S, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;CD010741.
135. Potura E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(123).
136. O'Malley CM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(1518); table of contents.
137. Mohmand H, Goldfarb S. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2011;22:615.
138. Carr JA. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;216:135.
139. Rogers WK, Garcia L. *Chest*. 2018;153:238.
140. Malbrain ML, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2006;32:1722.
141. Lambert D, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2005;15:1225.
142. Wilhelm-Leen E, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2017;28:653.
143. Luk L, et al. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2017;24:169.
144. Weisbord SD, et al. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2013;8:1618.
145. Weisbord SD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:603.
146. Luther MK, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(12).
147. Goldstein SL, et al. *Kidney Int*. 2016;90:212.
148. Zarbock A, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;315:2190.
149. Gaudry S, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:122.
150. Barbar SD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;379:1431.
151. Wald R, et al. *Kidney Int*. 2015;88:897.
152. Nash DM, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2017;41:138.
153. Palevsky PM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;359(7).
154. Bellomo R, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361:1627.
155. Oudemans-van Straaten HM. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2015;41:91.
156. Brandenburger T, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;31:387.

References

1. Thakar CV. Perioperative acute kidney injury. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2013;20:67–75.
2. Chaudery H, MacDonald N, Ahmad T, et al., International Surgical Outcomes Study, G: acute kidney injury and risk of death after elective surgery: prospective analysis of data from an international cohort study. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
3. O'Connor ME, Hewson RW, Kirwan CJ, Ackland GL, Pearse RM, Prowle JR. Acute kidney injury and mortality 1 year after major non-cardiac surgery. *Br J Surg*. 2017;104:868–876.
4. Zarbock A, Koyner JL, Hoste EAJ, Kellum JA. Update on perioperative acute kidney injury. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:1236–1245.
5. Smith Jr LH, Post RS, Teschan PE, et al. Post-traumatic renal insufficiency in military casualties. II. Management, use of an artificial kidney, prognosis. *Am J Med*. 1955;18:187–198.
6. Gaffney AM, Sladen RN. Acute kidney injury in cardiac surgery. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2015;28:50–59.
7. Hoste EAJ, Vandenberghe W. Epidemiology of cardiac surgery-associated acute kidney injury. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;31:299–303.
8. Fuhrman DY, Kellum JA. Epidemiology and pathophysiology of cardiac surgery-associated acute kidney injury. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30:60–65.
9. Hobson C, Lysak N, Huber M, Scali S, Bihorac A. Epidemiology, outcomes, and management of acute kidney injury in the vascular surgery patient. *J Vasc Surg*. 2018;68:916–928.
10. Novis BK, Roizen MF, Aronson S, Thisted RA. Association of preoperative risk factors with postoperative acute renal failure. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:143–149.
11. Chertow GM, Burdick E, Honour M, Bonventre JV, Bates DW. Acute kidney injury, mortality, length of stay, and costs in hospitalized patients. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2005;16:3365–3370.
12. Bellomo R, Ronco C, Kellum J, Mehta R, Palevsky P. Acute renal failure - definition, outcome measures, animal models, fluid therapy and information technology needs: the Second International Consensus Conference of the Acute Dialysis Quality Initiative Group. *Crit Care*. 2004;8:R204–212.
13. Mehta RL, Kellum JA, Shah SV, et al. Acute kidney injury network: report of an initiative to improve outcomes in acute kidney injury. *Crit Care*. 2007;11:R31.
14. The KDIGO AKI Workgroup. KDIGO clinical practice guideline for acute kidney injury. *Kidney Int Suppl*. 2012;2:1–138.
15. Kellum JA, Sileanu FE, Murugan R, Lucko N, Shaw AD, Clermont G. Classifying AKI by urine output versus serum creatinine level. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2015;26:2231–2238.
16. Palevsky PM, Liu KD, Brophy PD, et al. KDOQI US commentary on the 2012 KDIGO clinical practice guideline for acute kidney injury. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2013;61:649–672.
17. Quan S, Pannu N, Wilson T, et al. Prognostic implications of adding urine output to serum creatinine measurements for staging of acute kidney injury after major surgery: a cohort study. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2016;31:2049–2056.
18. Alpert RA, Roizen MF, Hamilton WK, et al. Intraoperative urinary output does not predict postoperative renal function in patients undergoing abdominal aortic revascularization. *Surgery*. 1984;95:707–711.
19. Knos GB, Berry AJ, Isaacson IJ, Weitz FI. Intraoperative urinary output and postoperative blood urea nitrogen and creatinine levels in patients undergoing aortic reconstructive surgery. *J Clin Anesth*. 1989;1:181–185.
20. Mizota T, Yamamoto Y, Hamada M, Matsukawa S, Shimizu S, Kai S. Intraoperative oliguria predicts acute kidney injury after major abdominal surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:1127–1134.
21. Siddiqui NF, Coca SG, Devereaux PJ, et al. Secular trends in acute dialysis after elective major surgery--1995 to 2009. *CMAJ*. 2012;184:1237–1245. 3414596.
22. Myers BD, Miller DC, Mehigan JT, et al. Nature of the renal injury following total renal ischemia in man. *J Clin Invest*. 1984;73:329–341. 425022.
23. Myers BD, Moran SM. Hemodynamically mediated acute renal failure. *N Engl J Med*. 1986;314:97–105.
24. Kaufman J, Dhakal M, Patel B, Hamburger R. Community-acquired acute renal failure. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 1991;17:191–198.
25. Hou SH, Bushinsky DA, Wish JB, Cohen JJ, Harrington JT. Hospital-acquired renal insufficiency: a prospective study. *Am J Med*. 1983;74:243–248.
26. Badr KF, Ichikawa I. Prerenal failure: a deleterious shift from renal compensation to decompensation. *N Engl J Med*. 1988;319:623–629.
27. Barger A, Herd J. Renal vascular anatomy and distribution of blood flow. In: Orlaff J, Berliner R, eds. *Handbook of Physiology*. Baltimore, MD: Williams and Wilkins; 1973.
28. Packer M, Lee WH, Kessler PD. Preservation of glomerular filtration rate in human heart failure by activation of the renin-angiotensin system. *Circulation*. 1986;74:766–774.
29. Edwards RM. Segmental effects of norepinephrine and angiotensin II on isolated renal microvessels. *Am J Physiol*. 1983;244:F526–534.
30. Stone AM, Stahl WM. Renal effects of hemorrhage in normal man. *Annals of Surgery*. 1970;172:825–836.
31. Andersson LG, Bratteby LE, Ekroth R, et al. Renal function during cardiopulmonary bypass: influence of pump flow and systemic blood pressure. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 1994;8:597–602.
32. Laffey JG, Boylan JF, Cheng DC. The systemic inflammatory response to cardiac surgery: implications for the anesthesiologist. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:215–252.
33. Mcmahon G, Waikar S. Biomarkers in nephrology: core curriculum 2013. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2013;61:165–178.
34. Parikh CR, Mansour SG. Perspective on clinical application of biomarkers in AKI. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2017;28:1677–1685.
35. Waikar SS, Bonventre JV. Biomarkers for the diagnosis of acute kidney injury. *Nephron Clin Pract*. 2008;109:c192–197. 2713682.
36. Chen L-X, Koyner JL. Biomarkers in acute kidney injury. *Crit Care Clin*. 2015;31:633–648.
37. Shlipak MG, Mattes MD, Peralta CA. Update on cystatin C: incorporation into clinical practice. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2013;62:595–603.
38. Inker LA, Schmid CH, Tighiouart H, et al. Estimating glomerular filtration rate from serum creatinine and cystatin C. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:20–29.
39. Stevens LA, Coresh J, Schmid CH, et al. Estimating GFR using serum cystatin C alone and in combination with serum creatinine: a pooled analysis of 3,418 individuals with CKD. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2008;51:395–406. 2390827.
40. Zhu J, Yin R, Wu H, et al. Cystatin C as a reliable marker of renal function following heart valve replacement surgery with cardiopulmonary bypass. *Clin Chim Acta*. 2006;374:116–121.
41. Spahillari A, Parikh CR, Sint K, et al. Serum cystatin C- versus creatinine-based definitions of acute kidney injury following cardiac surgery: a prospective cohort study. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2012;60: 922–929. 3496012.
42. Foster MC, Inker LA, Levey AS, et al. Novel filtration markers as predictors of all-cause and cardiovascular mortality in US adults. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2013;62:42–51.
43. Mogensen CE, Solling. Studies on renal tubular protein reabsorption: partial and near complete inhibition by certain amino acids. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*. 1977;37:477–486.
44. Smith MS. Antifibrinolytic agents make alpha1- and beta2-microglobulinuria poor markers of postcardiac surgery renal dysfunction. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:928–929.
45. Stafford-Smith M. Antifibrinolytic use during cardiac and hepatic surgery makes tubular proteinuria-based early biomarkers poor tools to diagnose perioperative acute kidney injury. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2011;57(960):960–961; author reply.
46. Kashani K, Al-Khafaji A, Ardiles T, et al. Discovery and validation of cell cycle arrest biomarkers in human acute kidney injury. *Crit Care*. 2013;17:R25.
47. Mishra J, Ma Q, Prada A, et al. Identification of neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin as a novel early urinary biomarker for ischemic renal injury. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2003;14:2534–2543.
48. Mishra J, Mori K, Ma Q, et al. Amelioration of ischemic acute renal injury by neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2004;15:3073–3082.
49. Mishra J, Dent C, Tarabishi R, et al. Neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin (NGAL) as a biomarker for acute renal injury after cardiac surgery. *Lancet*. 2005;365:1231–1238.
50. Haase-Fielitz A, Haase M, Devarajan P. Neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin as a biomarker of acute kidney injury: a critical evaluation of current status. *Ann Clin Biochem*. 2014;51:335–351.
51. Haase M, Devarajan P, Haase-Fielitz A, et al. The outcome of neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin-positive subclinical acute kidney

injury: a multicenter pooled analysis of prospective studies. *J Amer Coll Card*. 2011;57:1752–1761.

52. Ichimura T, Hung C, Yang C, Stevens J, Bonventre J. Kidney injury molecule-1: a tissue and urinary biomarker for nephrotoxicant-induced renal injury. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2004;286: F552–F563.
53. Vaidya VS, Ozer JS, Dieterle F, et al. Kidney injury molecule-1 outperforms traditional biomarkers of kidney injury in preclinical biomarker qualification studies. *Nat Biotechnol*. 2010;28:478–485.
54. Sabbisetti VS, Waikar SS, Antoine DJ, et al. Blood kidney injury molecule-1 is a biomarker of acute and chronic kidney injury and predicts progression to ESRD in type I diabetes. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2014;25:2177–2186.
55. Bihorac A, Chawla LS, Shaw AD, et al. Validation of cell-cycle arrest biomarkers for acute kidney injury using clinical adjudication. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;189:932–939.
56. Gunnerson KJ, Shaw AD, Chawla LS, et al. TIMP2*IGFBP7 biomarker panel accurately predicts acute kidney injury in high-risk surgical patients. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2016;80:243–249.
57. Meersch M, Schmidt C, Van Aken H, et al. Urinary TIMP-2 and IGFBP7 as early biomarkers of acute kidney injury and renal recovery following cardiac surgery. *PLoS One*. 2014;9:e93460.
58. Meersch M, Schmidt C, Hoffmeier A, et al. Prevention of cardiac surgery-associated AKI by implementing the KDIGO guidelines in high risk patients identified by biomarkers: the PrevAKI randomized controlled trial. *Intensive Care Med*. 2017;43:1151–1161.
59. Wang Y, Bellomo R. Cardiac surgery-associated acute kidney injury: risk factors, pathophysiology and treatment. *Nat Rev Nephrol*. 2017;13:697–711.
60. Wilson T, Quan S, Cheema K, et al. Risk prediction models for acute kidney injury following major noncardiac surgery: systematic review. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2016;31:231–240.
61. Hobson C, Ruchi R, Bihorac A. Perioperative acute kidney injury: risk factors and predictive strategies. *Crit Care Clin*. 2017;33: 379–396.
62. Stafford-Smith M, Podgoreanu M, Swaminathan M, et al. Association of genetic polymorphisms with risk of renal injury after coronary bypass graft surgery. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2005;45:519–530.
63. Aronson S, Fontes ML, Miao Y, Mangano DT. Risk index for perioperative renal dysfunction/failure: critical dependence on pulse pressure hypertension. *Circulation*. 2007;115:733–742.
64. Chertow GM, Lazarus JM, Christiansen CL, et al. Preoperative renal risk stratification. *Circulation*. 1997;95:878–884.
65. Everett GB, Allen GD, Kennedy Jr WF, Gerbershagen HU, Cutler RE, Sawyer TK. Renal hemodynamic effects of general anesthesia in outpatients. *Anesth Analg*. 1973;52:470–479.
66. Mark JB, Steele SM. Cardiovascular effects of spinal anesthesia. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1989;27:31–39.
67. Kennedy Jr WF, Sawyer TK, Gerbershagen HU, et al. Simultaneous systemic cardiovascular and renal hemodynamic measurements during high spinal anaesthesia in normal man. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Supp*. 1969;37:163–171.
68. Kennedy Jr WF, Sawyer TK, Gerbershagen HY, Cutler RE, Allen GD, Bonica JJ. Systemic cardiovascular and renal hemodynamic alterations during peridural anesthesia in normal man. *Anesthesiology*. 1969;31:414–421.
69. Rodgers A, Walker N, Schug S. Reduction of postoperative mortality and morbidity with epidural or spinal anaesthesia: results from overview of randomised trials. *BMJ*. 2000;321:1493.
70. Moraca RJ, Sheldon DG, Thirlby RC. The role of epidural anesthesia and analgesia in surgical practice. *Ann Surg*. 2003;238:663–673.
71. Bignami E, Landoni G, Biondi-Zoccai GG, et al. Epidural analgesia improves outcome in cardiac surgery: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24:586–597.
72. Landoni G, Isella F, Greco M, Zangrillo A, Royse CF. Benefits and risks of epidural analgesia in cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115: 25–32.
73. Svircevic V, Passier MM, Nierich AP, van Dijk D, Kalkman CJ, van der Heijden GJ. Epidural analgesia for cardiac surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;6:CD006715.
74. Guay J, Kopp S. Epidural pain relief versus systemic opioid-based pain relief for abdominal aortic surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;1:CD005059.
75. Cousins MJ, Mazze RI. Methoxyflurane nephrotoxicity. A study of dose response in man. *JAMA*. 1973;225:1611–1616.
76. Mazze RI. Methoxyflurane revisited: tale of an anesthetic from cradle to grave. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:843–846.
77. Mazze RI, Calverley RK, Smith NT. Inorganic fluoride nephrotoxicity: prolonged enflurane and halothane anesthesia in volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;46:265–271.
78. Hsing CH, Chou W, Wang JJ, Chen HW, Yeh CH. Propofol increases bone morphogenetic protein-7 and decreases oxidative stress in sepsis-induced acute kidney injury. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2011;26:1162–1172.
79. Yuzbasioglu MF, Aykas A, Kurutas EB, Sahinkanat T. Protective effects of propofol against ischemia/reperfusion injury in rat kidneys. *Ren Fail*. 2010;32:578–583.
80. Sanchez-Conde P, Rodriguez-Lopez JM, Nicolas JL, et al. The comparative abilities of propofol and sevoflurane to modulate inflammation and oxidative stress in the kidney after aortic cross-clamping. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:371–378; table of contents.
81. Dikmen B, Yagmurdur H, Akgul T, Astarci M, Ustun H, Germiyanoglu C. Preventive effects of propofol and ketamine on renal injury in unilateral ureteral obstruction. *J Anesth*. 2010;24:73–80.
82. Hsing CH, Lin CF, So E, et al. alpha2-Adrenoceptor agonist dexmedetomidine protects septic acute kidney injury through increasing BMP-7 and inhibiting HDAC2 and HDAC5. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol*. 2012;303:F1443–1453.
83. Sugita S, Okabe T, Sakamoto A. Continuous infusion of dexmedetomidine improves renal ischemia-reperfusion injury in rat kidney. *J Nippon Med Sch*. 2013;80:131–139.
84. Gu J, Sun P, Zhao H, et al. Dexmedetomidine provides renoprotection against ischemia-reperfusion injury in mice. *Crit Care*. 2011;15:R153.
85. Liu Y, Sheng B, Wang S, Lu F, Zhen J, Chen W. Dexmedetomidine prevents acute kidney injury after adult cardiac surgery: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2018;18(7).
86. Gamulin Z, Forster A, Morel D, Simonet F, Aymon E, Favre H. Effects of infrarenal aortic cross-clamping on renal hemodynamics in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:394–399.
87. Szabo G, Posch E, Rosivall L, Fazekas A, Harsing L. The effect of haemorrhage on renal blood flow and intrarenal flow distribution. *Injury*. 1977;9:146–150.
88. Parikh CR, Coca SG, Thiessen-Philbrook H, et al. Postoperative biomarkers predict acute kidney injury and poor outcomes after adult cardiac surgery. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2011;22:1748–1757.
89. Rioux JP, Lessard M, De Bortoli B, et al. Pentastarch 10% (250 kDa/0.45) is an independent risk factor of acute kidney injury following cardiac surgery. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37:1293–1298.
90. Myburgh JA, Finfer S, Bellomo R, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch or saline for fluid resuscitation in intensive care. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:1901–1911.
91. Rosner MH, Okusa MD. Acute kidney injury associated with cardiac surgery. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2006;1:19–32.
92. Mangano DT, Tudor IC, Dietzel C. The risk associated with aprotinin in cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:353–365.
93. Shroyer AL, Grover FL, Hattler B, et al. On-pump versus off-pump coronary-artery bypass surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361:1827–1837.
94. Chawla LS, Zhao Y, Lough FC, Schroeder E, Seneff MG, Brennan JM. Off-pump versus on-pump coronary artery bypass grafting outcomes stratified by preoperative renal function. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2012;23:1389–1397.
95. Garg AX, Devereaux PJ, Yusuf S, et al. Kidney function after off-pump or on-pump coronary artery bypass graft surgery: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2014;311:2191–2198.
96. Deferrari G, Bonanni A, Bruschi M, Alicino C, Signori A. Remote ischaemic preconditioning for renal and cardiac protection in adult patients undergoing cardiac surgery with cardiopulmonary bypass: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2018;33:813–824.
97. Romagnoli S, Ricci Z, Ronco C. Therapy of acute kidney injury in the perioperative setting. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30:92–99.
98. Kilburn KH, Dowell AR. Renal function in respiratory failure. Effects of hypoxia, hyperoxia, and hypercapnia. *Arch Intern Med*. 1971;127:754–762.
99. Pelletier CL, Shepherd JT. Effect of hypoxia on vascular responses to the carotid baroreflex. *Am J Physiol*. 1975;228:331–336.

100. Stafford-Smith M, Grocott HP. Renal medullary hypoxia during experimental cardiopulmonary bypass: a pilot study. *Perfusion*. 2005;20:53–58.
101. Utley JR, Wachtel C, Cain RB, Spaw EA, Collins JC, Stephens DB. Effects of hypothermia, hemodilution, and pump oxygenation on organ water content, blood flow and oxygen delivery, and renal function. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1981;31:121–133.
102. Karkouti K, Beattie WS, Wijeysundera DN, et al. Hemodilution during cardiopulmonary bypass is an independent risk factor for acute renal failure in adult cardiac surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2005;129:391–400.
103. Swaminathan M, Phillips-Bute BG, Conlon PJ, et al. The association of lowest hematocrit during cardiopulmonary bypass with acute renal injury after coronary artery bypass surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;76:784–791; discussion 792.
104. Mehta RH, Castelvecchio S, Ballotta A, Frigiola A, Bossone E, Ranucci M. Association of gender and lowest hematocrit on cardiopulmonary bypass with acute kidney injury and operative mortality in patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2013.
105. Ferraris VA, Brown JR, Despotis GJ, et al. 2011 update to the Society of Thoracic Surgeons and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists blood conservation clinical practice guidelines. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2011;91:944–982.
106. Pagano D, Milojevic M, Meesters MI, et al. 2017 EACTS/EACTA Guidelines on patient blood management for adult cardiac surgery. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2018;53:79–111.
107. Karkouti K. Transfusion and risk of acute kidney injury in cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(suppl 1):i29–i38.
108. Hovaguimian F, Myles PS. Restrictive versus liberal transfusion strategy in the perioperative and acute care settings: a context-specific systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:46–61.
109. Curley GF, Shehata N, Mazer CD, Hare GM, Friedrich JO. Transfusion triggers for guiding RBC transfusion for cardiovascular surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42:2611–2624.
110. Mazer CD, Whitlock RP, Fergusson DA, et al. Perioperative anesthesia clinical trials, G: restrictive or liberal red-cell transfusion for cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:2133–2144.
111. Walsh M, Devereaux PJ, Garg AX, et al. Relationship between intraoperative mean arterial pressure and clinical outcomes after noncardiac surgery: toward an empirical definition of hypotension. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:507–515.
112. Sun LY, Wijeysundera DN, Tait GA, Beattie WS. Association of intraoperative hypotension with acute kidney injury after elective noncardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:515–523.
113. Salmasi V, Maheshwari K, Yang D, et al. Relationship between intraoperative hypotension, defined by either reduction from baseline or absolute thresholds, and acute kidney and myocardial injury after noncardiac surgery: a retrospective cohort analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:47–65.
114. Hallqvist L, Granath F, Huldt E, Bell M. Intraoperative hypotension is associated with acute kidney injury in noncardiac surgery: an observational study. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35:273–279.
115. Vernooij LM, van Klei WA, Machina M, Pasma W, Beattie WS, Peelen LM. Different methods of modelling intraoperative hypotension and their association with postoperative complications in patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:1080–1089.
116. Futier E, Lefrant JY, Guinot PG, et al. Effect of individualized vs standard blood pressure management strategies on postoperative organ dysfunction among high-risk patients undergoing major surgery: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2017;318:1346–1357.
117. Shusterman N, Strom BL, Murray TG, Morrison G, West SL, Maislin G. Risk factors and outcome of hospital-acquired acute renal failure. Clinical epidemiologic study. *Am J Med*. 1987;83:65–71.
118. Gorfinkel HJ, Szidon JP, Hirsch LJ, Fishman AP. Renal performance in experimental cardiogenic shock. *Am J Physiol*. 1972;222:1260–1268.
119. Kahl FR, Flint JF, Szidon JP. Influence of left atrial distention on renal vasomotor tone. *Am J Physiol*. 1974;226:240–246.
120. Cogan MG. Renal effects of atrial natriuretic factor. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 1990;52:699–708.
121. Bednarczyk JM, Fridfinnson JA, Kumar A, et al. Incorporating dynamic assessment of fluid responsiveness into goal-directed therapy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45:1538–1545.
122. Vincent JL, Pelosi P, Pearse R, et al. Perioperative cardiovascular monitoring of high-risk patients: a consensus of 12. *Crit Care*. 2015;19(224).
123. Busse L, Davison DL, Junker C, Chawla LS. Hemodynamic monitoring in the critical care environment. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2013;20:21–29.
124. Wiedemann HP, Wheeler AP, Bernard GR, et al. Comparison of two fluid-management strategies in acute lung injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:2564–2575.
125. Boland MR, Noorani A, Varty K, Coffey JC, Agha R, Walsh SR. Perioperative fluid restriction in major abdominal surgery: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized, clinical trials. *World J Surg*. 2013;37:1193–1202.
126. Futier E, Constantin JM, Petit A, et al. Conservative vs restrictive individualized goal-directed fluid replacement strategy in major abdominal surgery: a prospective randomized trial. *Arch Surg*. 2010;145:1193–1200.
127. Myles PS, Bellomo R, Corcoran T, et al. Restrictive versus liberal fluid therapy for major abdominal surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:2263–2274.
128. Wilcox CS. Regulation of renal blood flow by plasma chloride. *J Clin Invest*. 1983;71:726–735.
129. Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Hegarty C, Story D, Ho L, Bailey M. Association between a chloride-liberal vs chloride-restrictive intravenous fluid administration strategy and kidney injury in critically ill adults. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1566–1572.
130. Shaw AD, Bagshaw SM, Goldstein SL, et al. Major complications, mortality, and resource utilization after open abdominal surgery: 0.9% saline compared to plasma-Lyte. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255:821–829.
131. Young P, Bailey M, Beasley R, et al. Effect of a buffered crystalloid solution vs saline on acute kidney injury among patients in the intensive care unit: the SPLIT randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2015;314:1701–1710.
132. Self WH, Semler MW, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in noncritically Ill adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:819–828.
133. Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in critically ill adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:829–839.
134. Wan S, Roberts MA, Mount P. Normal saline versus lower-chloride solutions for kidney transplantation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;8:CD010741.
135. Potura E, Lindner G, Biesenbach P, et al. An acetate-buffered balanced crystalloid versus 0.9% saline in patients with end-stage renal disease undergoing cadaveric renal transplantation: a prospective randomized controlled trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120:123–129.
136. O'Malley CM, Frumento RJ, Hardy MA, et al. A randomized, double-blind comparison of lactated Ringer's solution and 0.9% NaCl during renal transplantation. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1518–1524; table of contents.
137. Mohmand H, Goldfarb S. Renal dysfunction associated with intra-abdominal hypertension and the abdominal compartment syndrome. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2011;22:615–621.
138. Carr JA. Abdominal compartment syndrome: a decade of progress. *J Amer Coll Surg*. 2013;216:135–146.
139. Rogers WK, Garcia L. Intraabdominal hypertension, abdominal compartment syndrome, and the open abdomen. *Chest*. 2018;153:238–250.
140. Malbrain ML, Cheatham ML, Kirkpatrick A, et al. Results from the international conference of experts on intra-abdominal hypertension and abdominal compartment syndrome. I. Definitions. *Intens Care Med*. 2006;32:1722–1732.
141. Lambert D, Marceau S, Forse R. Intra-abdominal pressure in the morbidly obese. *Obes Surg*. 2005;15:1225–1232.
142. Wilhelm-Leen E, Montez-Rath ME, Chertow G. Estimating the risk of radiocontrast-associated nephropathy. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2017;28:653–659.
143. Luk L, Steinman J, Newhouse JH. Intravenous contrast-induced nephropathy-the rise and fall of a threatening idea. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2017;24:169–175.
144. Weisbord SD, Gallagher M, Kaufman J, et al. Prevention of contrast-induced AKI: a review of published trials and the design of the prevention of serious adverse events following angiography (PRESERVE) trial. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2013;8:1618–1631.

145. Weisbord SD, Gallagher M, Jneid H, et al. For the PRESERVE Clinical Trials Group. Outcomes after angiography with sodium bicarbonate and acetylcysteine. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:603–614.
146. Luther MK, Timbrook TT, Caffrey AR, Dosa D, Lodise TP, LaPlante KL. Vancomycin plus piperacillin-tazobactam and acute kidney injury in adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46:12–20.
147. Goldstein SL, Mottes T, Simpson K, et al. A sustained quality improvement program reduces nephrotoxic medication-associated acute kidney injury. *Kidney Int*. 2016;90:212–221.
148. Zarbock A, Kellum JA, Schmidt C, et al. Effect of early vs delayed initiation of renal replacement therapy on mortality in critically ill patients with acute kidney injury: the ELAIN randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2016;315:2190–2199.
149. Gaudry S, Hajage D, Schortgen F, et al. Initiation strategies for renal-replacement therapy in the intensive care unit. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:122–133.
150. Barbar SD, Clere-Jehl R, Bourredjem A, et al. Timing of renal-replacement therapy in patients with acute kidney injury and sepsis. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;379:1431–1442.
151. Wald R, Adhikari NK, Smith OM, et al. Comparison of standard and accelerated initiation of renal replacement therapy in acute kidney injury. *Kidney Int*. 2015;88:897–904.
152. Nash DM, Przech S, Wald R, O'Reilly D. Systematic review and meta-analysis of renal replacement therapy modalities for acute kidney injury in the intensive care unit. *J Crit Care*. 2017;41:138–144.
153. Palevsky PM, Zhang JH, O'Connor TZ, et al. Intensity of renal support in critically ill patients with acute kidney injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;359:7–20.
154. Bellomo R, Cass A, Cole L, et al. Intensity of continuous renal-replacement therapy in critically ill patients. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361:1627–1638.
155. Oudemans-van Straaten HM. Hemostasis and thrombosis in continuous renal replacement treatment. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2015;41:91–98.
156. Brandenburger T, Dimski T, Slowinski T, Kindgen-Milles D. Renal replacement therapy and anticoagulation. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;31:387–401.

43 Neuromuscular Monitoring

CASPER CLAUDIUS and THOMAS FUCHS-BUDER

KEY POINTS

- Good evidence-based practice dictates that clinicians always quantitate the extent of neuromuscular block by objective monitoring.
- The neuromuscular block should be adjusted to ensure optimal surgical conditions. In most procedures, one or two responses to train-of-four (TOF) stimulation will suffice. To avoid involuntary diaphragmatic movements, a deeper level of neuromuscular block is required (i.e., one to five responses to post-tetanic count [PTC]).
- Adequate recovery of postoperative neuromuscular function cannot be guaranteed without objective neuromuscular monitoring.
- Objective neuromuscular monitoring is essential for management of neuromuscular blockade intraoperatively and its reversal for postoperative care. Muscle relaxants should not be given in the intensive care unit without proper monitoring.
- It is impossible to exclude with certainty clinically significant residual neuromuscular block by clinical evaluation of recovery of neuromuscular function.
- Residual postoperative neuromuscular block causes decreased chemoreceptor sensitivity to hypoxia, functional impairment of the pharyngeal and upper esophageal muscles, impaired ability to maintain an open upper airway, and an increased risk of hypoxemic events, as well as the development of postoperative pulmonary complications.
- Absence of tactile fade in the response to TOF stimulation, tetanic stimulation, and double-burst stimulation does not exclude significant residual block.
- To exclude clinically significant residual neuromuscular block, the TOF ratio must exceed 0.9 when measured mechanically or electromyographically and 1.0 when measured acceleromyographically.
- Antagonism of the neuromuscular block with a cholinesterase inhibitor should not be initiated before at least two to four responses to TOF stimulation are observed.
- Antagonism of the neuromuscular block achieved by rocuronium and vecuronium can be initiated at all levels of block with the selective relaxant binding agent sugammadex.
- If adequate recovery (TOF ≥0.9-1.0) has not been documented objectively at the end of the surgical procedure, the neuromuscular block should be antagonized.

Our understanding of the pathophysiologic consequences of residual paralysis has improved over the last decades, and it is now generally accepted that even small degrees of residual paralysis (i.e., a train-of-four [TOF] ratio 0.7-0.9) may be clinically harmful.[1-4] As a consequence, the benchmark of adequate neuromuscular recovery has been revised several times; an adductor pollicis TOF ratio of 0.9 or greater is now required to exclude relevant residual neuromuscular block (i.e., paralysis). Clinically significant residual paralysis cannot be excluded using clinical criteria and it can persist postoperatively.[5,6] Objective monitoring of the degree of neuromuscular block associated with pharmacologic reversal reduces the incidence of residual paralysis and should be part of standard perioperative monitoring when neuromuscular blocking agents (NMBAs) are used.[7-13]

In awake patients, muscle power can be evaluated by tests of voluntary muscle strength, but this is impossible during anesthesia and recovery from anesthesia. Historically, anesthesiologists have used clinical tests to assess muscle power directly and to estimate neuromuscular function indirectly (muscle tone; feel of the anesthesia bag as an indirect measure of pulmonary compliance, tidal volume, and inspiratory force). All these tests are influenced by factors other than the degree of neuromuscular block and, therefore, should not be used to evaluate recovery from neuromuscular blockade. Whenever precise information regarding the status of neuromuscular functioning is desired, the response of muscle to nerve stimulation should be assessed. This procedure also takes into account the considerable variation in individual response and sensitivity to muscle relaxants.

This chapter reviews the basic principles of neuromuscular monitoring and the requirements for effective use of nerve stimulators for peripheral nerve stimulation. It also describes the response to nerve stimulation during depolarizing (phase I and phase II) and nondepolarizing neuromuscular block, provides information about the level of neuromuscular blockade, and discusses the consequences of residual paralysis. Moreover, methods of evaluating evoked neuromuscular responses with and without the availability of recording equipment are discussed.

Principles of Peripheral Nerve Stimulation

Neuromuscular monitoring is used to evaluate the effect of a NMBA. The muscle response after stimulation of its corresponding motor nerve is assessed. The most frequently assessed nerve-muscle unit is the ulnar nerve and the adductor pollicis muscle. The muscle response can be evaluated either qualitatively with a peripheral nerve stimulator or quantified with objective monitors. With the peripheral nerve stimulator, the observer evaluates the muscle response either tactically or visually, whereas with the monitor the response is objectively measured and displayed on a screen. Whatever method is used for neuromuscular monitoring, the clinician should be familiar with the following terms: supramaximal stimulation, calibration, impedance, and safety margin.

SUPRAMAXIMAL STIMULATION

The reaction of a single muscle fiber to a stimulus follows an all-or-none pattern. In contrast, the response (the force of contraction) of the whole muscle depends on the number of muscle fibers activated. If a nerve is stimulated with sufficient intensity, all fibers supplied by the nerve will react, and the maximum response will be triggered. After administration of a neuromuscular blocking drug, the response of the muscle decreases in parallel with the number of fibers blocked. The reduction in response during constant stimulation reflects the degree of neuromuscular block.

For the preceding principles to work, the stimulus must be truly maximal throughout the whole period of monitoring; therefore, the electrical stimulus applied is usually at least 15% to 20% greater than that necessary for a maximal response. For this reason, the stimulus is said to be supramaximal. This compensates for potential changes in skin resistance intraoperatively and assures constant maximal stimulation throughout the procedure.

However, supramaximal electrical stimulation can be painful, which is not a concern during anesthesia, but during recovery the patient may be awake enough to experience the discomfort of nerve stimulation. Therefore, some researchers advocate stimulation with submaximal current during recovery. Although several investigations indicate that testing of neuromuscular function can be reliably performed postoperatively with submaximal stimulation,[14,15] the accuracy of such monitoring is unacceptable with that low current.[15]

CALIBRATION

A device used for objective monitoring of the neuromuscular function should be calibrated before the NMBA is administered. Calibration adjusts the gain of the device to ensure that the observed response to supramaximal stimulation is within the measurement window of the device and as close as possible to the "100% control response." The calibration procedure varies with the type of device used, but most often it is done with 1.0 Hz single-twitch stimulation. It is especially important to calibrate when the onset and recovery of the neuromuscular block are established with single-twitch stimulation.

In the TOF mode of nerve stimulation, calibration is considered less important because all four responses are amplified equally. Consequently, the TOF ratio is rarely influenced by calibration; however, in patients with very weak or strong responses to nerve stimulation, one or more responses to TOF stimulation might be out of the recording window, and the displayed TOF response might be incorrect. In some devices, supramaximal stimulation is established concurrently with the calibration procedure.

IMPEDANCE

An alternative and novel option to ensure a constant maximum stimulus throughout the whole procedure is to control the impedance (resistance) of the skin. Indeed, as long as the resistance of the skin is below a threshold value, the neuromuscular monitoring device will stimulate with the same user-selected electrical current (i.e., 60 mA). For a maximum current of 60 mA, the maximal resistance of the skin should be equal to or lower than 5 kΩ. If the resistance of the skin is above this value, the monitor will not be able to stimulate the patient with the selected current. More recently, nerve stimulators have been introduced that indicate the level of skin impedance on the screen (e.g., TofScan by iDMed, Marseille, France). Using this approach, establishment of supramaximal stimulation is not needed to assure that nerve stimulation is effective and constantly maximal through the whole procedure.

SAFETY MARGIN

Neuromuscular transmission has a substantial margin of safety. Neuromuscular block only becomes evident when 70% to 80% of acetylcholine receptors at the neuromuscular endplate are occupied by nondepolarizing NMBDs and to produce complete block, 90% to 95% of receptors must be occupied. Thus, the currently available equipment and the currently applied stimulation patterns allow only insight to this 70% to 95% range of receptor occupancy. This should be kept in mind, especially during recovery of neuromuscular block, where 70% of the acetylcholine receptors at the neuromuscular endplate may still be occupied but no longer detectable with neuromuscular monitoring.

Types of Peripheral Nerve Stimulation

Neuromuscular function is monitored by evaluating the muscular response to supramaximal stimulation of a peripheral motor nerve. Theoretically, two types of stimulation can be used: electrical and magnetic. Electrical nerve stimulation is by far the most commonly used method in clinical practice, and it is described in detail in this chapter. In theory, magnetic nerve stimulation has several advantages over electrical nerve stimulation.[2,16] It is less painful and does not require physical contact with the body; however, the equipment required is bulky and heavy, it cannot be used for TOF stimulation, and it is difficult to achieve supramaximal stimulation with this method. As a result, magnetic nerve stimulation is not used in clinical anesthesia.

Basic Considerations

STIMULATING ELECTRODES

Electrical impulses are transmitted from stimulator to nerve by means of surface or needle electrodes. Normally, disposable pre-gelled silver or silver chloride surface electrodes are used. The conducting area should be small, approximately 7 to 11 mm in diameter (Fig.43.1). Otherwise, the current produced in the underlying nerve may not be adequate.[17] Ideally, the skin should be cleansed properly and preferably rubbed with an abrasive before application of the electrodes. When the selected current cannot be obtained with surface electrodes, needle electrodes can be used in a few exceptional cases. Although specially coated needle electrodes are commercially available, ordinary steel injection needles often suffice. A sterile technique should be used, and the needles should be placed subcutaneously to avoid direct injury to the underlying nerve.

Sites of Nerve Stimulation and Different Muscle Responses

In principle, any superficially located peripheral motor nerve can be stimulated and the response to corresponding muscle measured. Choosing the site of neuromuscular monitoring depends on several factors: the site should be easily accessible during surgery, it should allow quantitative monitoring and finally, direct muscle stimulation should be avoided. Direct muscle stimulation is characterized by weak contractions without fade persisting even at a deep level of neuromuscular blockade. The risk is increased when the stimulation electrodes are directly attached over the muscle to be assessed. To prevent direct muscle stimulation, the nerve-muscle unit should be chosen so that the site of nerve stimulation and the site of the subsequent evaluation of the twitch response are topographically (anatomically) distinct.

In clinical anesthesia, the ulnar nerve is the gold standard as a stimulation site, but the median, posterior tibial, common peroneal, and facial nerves are also sometimes used. For stimulation of the ulnar nerve, the electrodes are best applied to the volar side of the wrist (see Fig. 43.1). The distal electrode should be placed approximately 1 cm proximal to the point at which the proximal flexion crease of the wrist crosses the radial side of the tendon to the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle. The proximal electrode should preferably be placed so that the distance between the centers of the two electrodes is 3 to 6 cm (see Fig. 43.1). With this placement of the electrodes, electrical stimulation normally elicits only finger flexion and thumb adduction. If one electrode is placed over the ulnar groove at the elbow, thumb adduction is often pronounced because of stimulation of the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle. When this latter placement of electrodes (sometimes preferred in small children) is used, the active negative electrode should be at the wrist to ensure maximal response. Polarity of the electrodes is less crucial when both electrodes are close to each other at the volar side of the wrist; however, placement of the negative electrode distally normally elicits the greatest neuromuscular response.[18] When the temporal branch of the facial nerve is stimulated, the negative electrode should be placed over the nerve, and the positive electrode should be placed somewhere else over the forehead. When the posterior tibial nerve is stimulated, the electrodes should be placed close to the medial malleolus, with the same distance as described above and the negative electrode being placed distally.

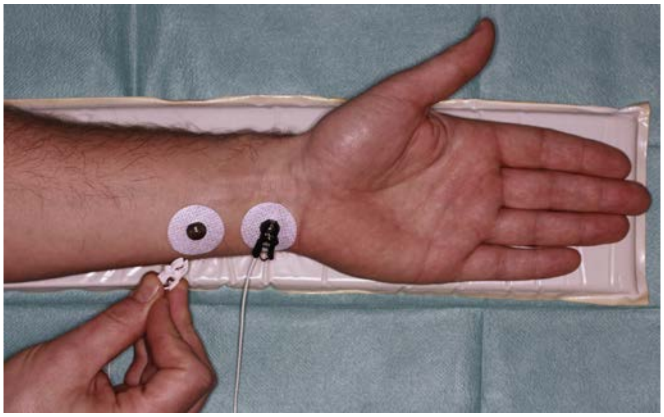


Fig. 43.1 Stimulating electrodes with the appropriate contact area in the correct position over the ulnar nerve of the left forearm.

NERVE-MUSCLE UNIT

Several nerve-muscle units may be chosen in clinical practice. Most often the ulnar nerve-adductor pollicis muscle is used.

Ulnar nerve-adductor pollicis muscle: This nerve-muscle unit is easily accessible intraoperatively if the arm is in the outstretched position and the hand in the supine position. The stimulatory response can be evaluated tactilely, visually, or by objective means. It has the lowest risk of direct muscle stimulation, because it ensures topographic separation of the stimulated nerve and the evaluated muscle by stimulating the ulnar nerve running along the median side of the arm and assessing the muscle response at the adductor pollicis muscle, which is indeed located on the lateral side of the hand.

Posterior tibial nerve-flexor hallucis brevis muscle: This nerve-muscle unit can be used for monitoring when the hands are inaccessible. The flexor hallucis brevis muscle produces flexion of the big toe following posterior tibial nerve stimulation. The characteristics (onset and recovery) of the neuromuscular block at the flexor hallucis brevis muscle is almost consistent with that of the adductor pollicis muscle.

Facial nerve-orbicularis oculi and facial nerve-corrugator supercilii muscle: When the arms are tucked under surgical drapes, quite often the only accessible site for monitoring is the head. Two facial muscles can be used as monitoring sites: the orbicularis oculi muscle and the corrugator supercilii muscle. The former encircles the orbital opening; its stimulation through the zygomatic branches of the facial nerve causes the eyelids to close. Stimulation by the temporal branch of the facial nerve of the latter one draws the medial end of the eyebrow downward, producing wrinkling of the brow. However, because the facial nerve is in direct proximity to the intrinsic mimic muscles, the risk of direct muscle stimulation is significant. Therefore, care must be

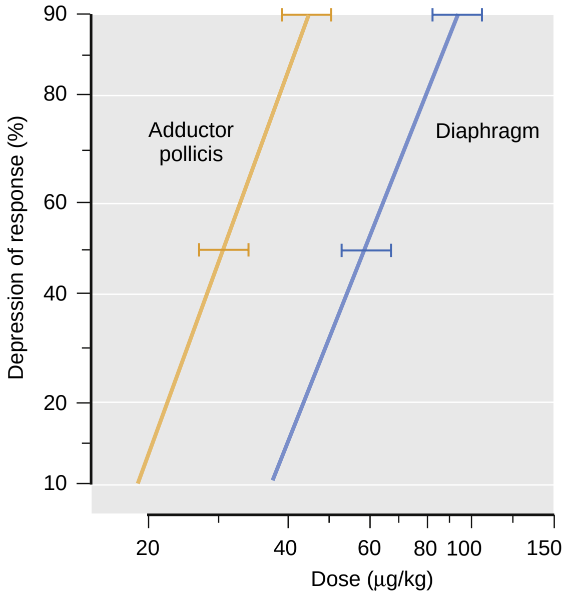


Fig. 43.2 The mean cumulative dose-response curve for pancuronium in two muscles shows that the diaphragm requires approximately twice as much pancuronium as the adductor pollicis muscle for the same amount of neuromuscular block. The depression in muscle response to the first stimulus in train-of-four nerve stimulation (probit scale) was plotted against dose (log scale). The force of contraction of the adductor pollicis was measured on a force-displacement transducer; response of the diaphragm was measured electromyographically. (From Donati F, Antzaka C, Bevan DR. Potency of pancuronium at the diaphragm and the adductor pollicis muscle in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65[1]:1–5.)

taken that the correct stimulatory response is assessed, and any other twitching muscle in the direct proximity of the stimulation electrodes is not falsely interpreted. Stimulation of the facial nerve can be accomplished with significantly lower currents: most often 25 to 30 mA are sufficient. Stimulation of these two muscles is technically difficult and the result often unsatisfactory in clinical practice.

Because different muscle groups have different sensitivities to neuromuscular blocking drugs, results obtained for one muscle cannot be automatically extrapolated to other muscles. However, most of the studies that are the base for dosing recommendations of NMBAs arise from measurement of the stimulation of the ulnar nerve. The diaphragm is among the most resistant of all muscles to both depolarizing[19] and nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs.[20] In general, the diaphragm requires 1.4- to 2.0-fold as much muscle relaxant as the adductor pollicis muscle for an identical degree of block (Fig. 43.2).[20] Also of clinical significance is that onset time is normally shorter for the diaphragm than for the adductor pollicis muscle, and the diaphragm recovers from paralysis more quickly than the peripheral muscles (Fig. 43.3).[21] The other respiratory muscles are less resistant than the diaphragm, as are the larynx and the corrugator supercilii muscles.[22-24] Most sensitive are the abdominal muscles, the orbicularis oculi muscle, the peripheral muscles of the limbs, and the geniohyoid, masseter, and upper airway muscles.[1,25-27] From a clinical point of view, the response of the corrugator supercilii to facial nerve stimulation reflects the extent of neuromuscular block of the laryngeal adductor muscles and abdominal muscles better than the response of the adductor pollicis to

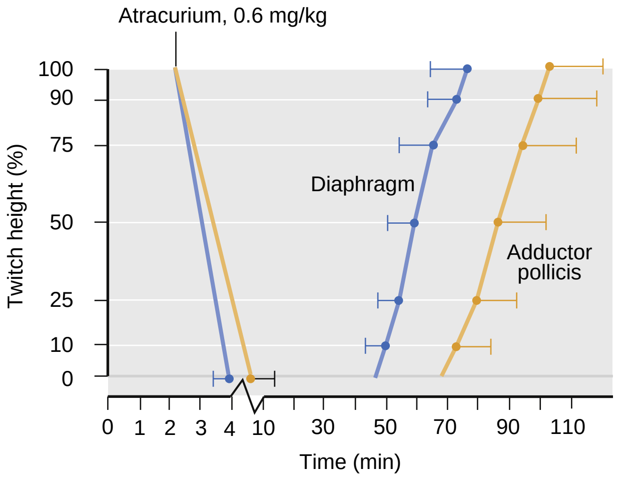


Fig. 43.3 Evolution of twitch height (mean ± SD) of the diaphragm *(blue circles)* and the adductor pollicis muscle *(yellow circles)* in 10 anesthetized patients after the administration of atracurium (0.6 mg/kg). (From Pansard J-L, Chauvin M, Lebrault C, et al. Effect of an intubating dose of succinylcholine and atracurium on the diaphragm and the adductor pollicis muscle in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67[3]:326–330.)

ulnar nerve stimulation.[24,28] Furthermore, the upper airway muscles seem to be more sensitive than the peripheral muscles.[25,26] Although some investigations using acceleromyography (AMG) have indicated small differences in the response to TOF nerve stimulation in the hand (adductor pollicis muscle) compared to the leg (flexor hallucis brevis muscle), these differences are probably of little clinical significance.[29,30] When comparing different sites of stimulation, there might be large differences between contralateral limbs (e.g., arm-to-arm variation of ± 20%).[31,32]

Although the precise source of these differences is unknown, possible explanations may be variations in acetylcholine receptor density, acetylcholine release, acetylcholinesterase activity, fiber composition, innervation ratio (number of neuromuscular junctions), blood flow, and muscle temperature.

Patterns of Nerve Stimulation

For the evaluation of the neuromuscular function, the most commonly used patterns are TOF stimulation, double-burst stimulation (DBS), and posttetanic count (PTC) stimulation. Single-twitch stimulation and tetanic stimulation are mainly used as a component in composite stimulation patterns (i.e., TOF, DBS, or PTC).

SINGLE-TWITCH STIMULATION

Background: Single-twitch stimulation is the earliest and simplest pattern. The first device specifically developed to monitor the neuromuscular block, the "St. Thomas's Hospital nerve stimulator," could only deliver a single twitch.[33] For decades it remained the only established stimulation pattern to assess neuromuscular blockade intraoperatively.

Stimulation pattern: In the single-twitch mode of stimulation, single electrical stimuli are applied to a peripheral motor nerve at frequencies ranging from 1.0 Hz (once every second) to 0.1 Hz (once every 10 seconds; Fig. 43.4) and

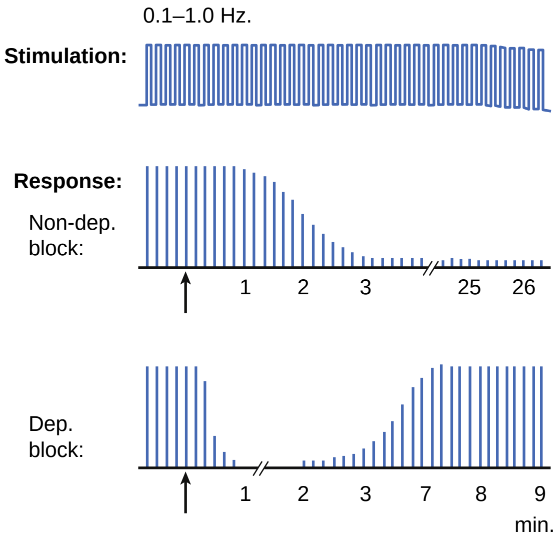


Fig. 43.4 Pattern of electrical stimulation and evoked muscle responses to single-twitch nerve stimulation (at frequencies of 0.1-1.0 Hz) after injection of nondepolarizing (Non-dep.) and depolarizing (Dep.) neuromuscular blocking drugs *(arrows)*. Note that except for the difference in time factors, no differences in the strength of the evoked responses exist between the two types of block.

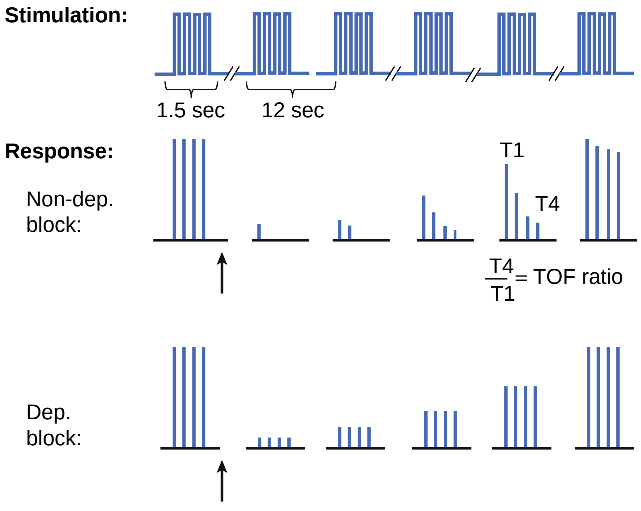


Fig. 43.5 Pattern of electrical stimulation and evoked muscle responses to train-of-four *(TOF)* nerve stimulation before and after injection of nondepolarizing (Non-dep.) and depolarizing (Dep.) neuromuscular blocking drugs *(arrows)*.

the subsequent muscle response is evaluated. The response to single-twitch stimulation depends on the frequency at which the individual stimuli are applied. If the rate of delivery is increased to greater than 0.15 Hz, the evoked response will gradually decrease and stabilize at a lower level. Therefore, results obtained with 1-Hz single-twitch stimulation cannot be compared with results obtained using, for example, 0.1-Hz single-twitch stimulation.[34] As a result, a frequency of 0.1 Hz is generally recommended.

Clinical application: To assess the degree of neuromuscular blockade after single-twitch stimulations, a comparison with a reference value recorded before administration of the NMBA is mandatory. Thus, without appropriate monitoring equipment, this stimulation pattern does not provide sufficient information of the level of block. In clinical practice, the single twitch stimulation has only limited value as a stand-alone stimulation pattern; it is mainly used as a component of the PTC stimulation and as 0.1 Hz single-twitch stimulation, it is sometimes used in scientific trials specifically to evaluate the time to onset of neuromuscular blockade. Moreover, it is the only stimulation pattern that allows, in conjunction with a monitoring device, assessing a depolarizing neuromuscular block after succinylcholine.

TRAIN-OF-FOUR STIMULATION

Background: The TOF stimulation pattern was introduced by Ali and associates[35,36] during the early 1970s. They aimed to develop a tool providing clinically reliable information throughout all phases of neuromuscular blockade with simple nerve stimulator and without the need for a monitoring device.

Stimulation pattern: TOF stimulation consists of four supramaximal stimuli given every 0.5 seconds (2 Hz; Fig. 43.5) and each stimulus in the train causes the muscle to contract. The basis for evaluation is either the number of discernible responses after TOF stimulation (i.e., TOF count) or the “fade” in the train of responses—that is, dividing the amplitude of the fourth response by the amplitude of the first response (i.e., TOF ratio). Without prior administration of a muscle relaxant, all four responses are normally the same: the TOF ratio is 1.0. During a partial nondepolarizing block, the TOF ratio decreases (fades) and is inversely proportional to the degree of block. During a partial depolarizing block, no fade occurs in the TOF response and the TOF ratio remains 1.0, independently of the level of depolarizing neuromuscular blockade. Fade in the TOF response after injection of succinylcholine signifies the development of a phase II block (discussed later in the section on depolarizing neuromuscular block).

When used continuously, an interval of at least 10 seconds should be allowed between each set (train) of four stimuli to avoid fade during the measurement.

Application: TOF stimulation is still the most frequently used stimulation pattern. The advantages of TOF stimulation are most apparent during a nondepolarizing neuromuscular block because the degree of block can be read directly from the TOF response even though a preoperative value is lacking. Clinically relevant information about the onset, surgical relaxation, and neuromuscular recovery can be obtained with the same stimulation pattern by using a simple peripheral nerve stimulator; the TOF count allows reliable assessment of the onset of neuromuscular block, and moderate blockade. Moreover, the TOF ratio can be taken as a measure of neuromuscular recovery from nondepolarizing blockade. TOF stimulation has some advantages over DBS and PTC stimulation; it is less painful and, unlike tetanic stimulation, does not generally influence subsequent monitoring of the degree of neuromuscular block. There are major limitations of the TOF stimulation pattern. First, the subjective assessment of the TOF ratio overestimates neuromuscular recovery, as the tactile of visual estimation of fade is accurate only if the TOF ratio is less than 0.4; in other words, at a TOF ratio between 0.4 and 0.9, fade cannot be detected either visually or tactically. Therefore, objective monitoring devices are needed to further quantify neuromuscular recovery and to reliably exclude residual

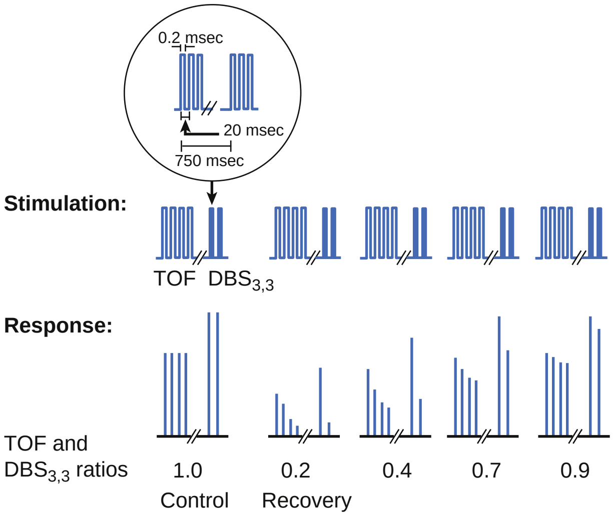


Fig. 43.6 Pattern of electrical stimulation and evoked muscle responses to train-of-four *(TOF)* nerve stimulation and double-burst nerve stimulation (i.e., three impulses in each of two tetanic bursts, *DBS$_{3,3}$*) before injection of muscle relaxants (control) and during recovery from nondepolarizing neuromuscular block. The TOF ratio is the amplitude of the fourth response to TOF divided by the amplitude of the first response. The DBS$_{3,3}$ ratio is the amplitude of the second response to DBS$_{3,3}$ divided by the amplitude of the first response. (See text for further explanation.)

paralysis. Second, the TOF stimulation does not allow the clinician to quantify intense and deep levels of neuromuscular blockade (i.e., at no responses to TOF). Finally, the TOF stimulation does not allow monitoring of the depolarizing phase I blockade.

DOUBLE-BURST STIMULATION

Background: DBS was developed by Viby-Mogensen and associates in 1989 to improve the tactile or visual evaluation of recovery from nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade.

Stimulation pattern: DBS consists of two short bursts of 50-Hz tetanic stimulation separated by 750 ms, with a 0.2-ms duration of each square wave impulse in the burst (Fig. 43.6). The number of impulses in each burst can vary: in the DBS$_{3,3}$ mode, there are three impulses in each of the two bursts, whereas in the DBS$_{3,2}$ mode, the first burst had three impulses and the second burst consisted of only two impulses.[37-39] The individual twitches elicited by each burst blend together and are felt as one single muscle contraction. Thus, the response to DBS is two short muscle contractions and fade in the second burst compared to the first one is the basis for evaluation. In nonparalyzed muscle, both muscle contractions are of equal strength. In a partially paralyzed muscle, the second response is weaker than the first and corresponds to the typical TOF fade (see Fig 43.6). When measured mechanically, the TOF ratio correlates closely with the DBS$_{3,3}$ ratio. Compared to DBS$_{3,3,}$ tactile detection of fade is slightly improved with the DBS$_{3,2}$ mode, especially at higher TOF ratios.

Clinical application: DBS was developed with the specific aim of improving manual (tactile or visual) detection of residual nondepolarizing block under clinical conditions,[38] or during recovery and immediately after surgery. Indeed, tactile evaluation of the response to DBS is more accurate in detecting fade compared to TOF. However, a DBS is still insufficient to exclude reliably residual paralysis corresponding to a TOF ratio between 0.6 and 0.9.[39-41] Accordingly, DBS cannot replace objective monitoring.

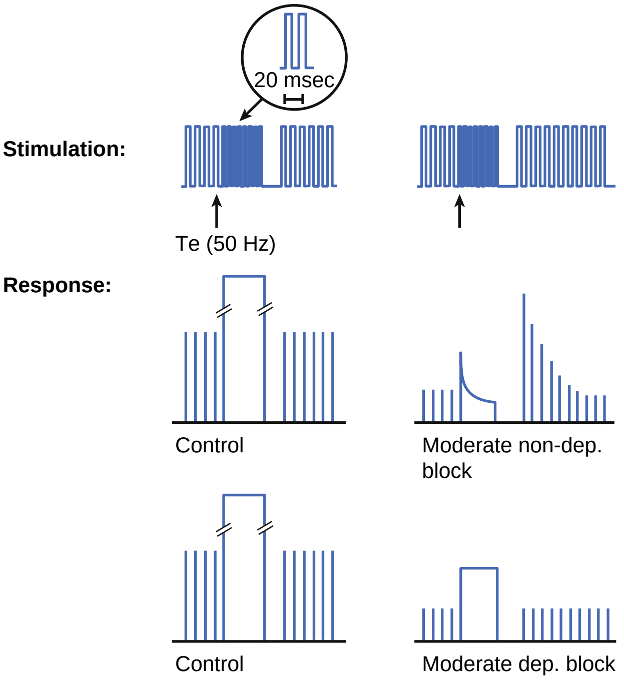


Fig. 43.7 Pattern of stimulation and evoked muscle responses to tetanic (50 Hz) nerve stimulation for 5 seconds *(Te)* and posttetanic twitch stimulation (1.0 Hz; *arrows*). Stimulation was applied before the injection of neuromuscular blocking drugs and during moderate nondepolarizing (non-dep.) and depolarizing (dep.) blocks. Note the fade in the response to tetanic stimulation, plus the posttetanic facilitation of transmission during nondepolarizing block. During depolarizing block, the tetanic response is well sustained, and no posttetanic facilitation of transmission occurs.

TETANIC STIMULATION

Background: Tetanic stimulation was proposed by Tassonyi in 1975[42] as an alternative method to evaluate residual neuromuscular blockade.

Stimulation pattern: Tetanic stimulation consists of high-frequency delivery of electrical stimuli (e.g., 50-100 Hz). The most commonly used pattern in clinical practice is 50-Hz stimulation given for 5 seconds, although some investigators have advocated the use of 100-Hz, or even 200-Hz stimulation for 1 second. In normal neuromuscular transmission, the observer detects one strong, sustained muscle contraction, and fade after tetanic stimulation is the basis for evaluation of nondepolarizing block. During a depolarizing block, the muscle response to 50-Hz tetanic stimulation for 5 seconds is sustained. In contrast, during a phase II block after the injection of succinylcholine, the response following tetanic stimulation is not sustained (i.e., fade occurs; Fig. 43.7).

Fade in response to tetanic stimulation is normally considered a presynaptic event. The traditional explanation is that at the start of tetanic stimulation, large amounts of acetylcholine are released from immediately available stores in the presynaptic nerve terminal. As these stores become depleted, the rate of acetylcholine release decreases until equilibrium between mobilization and synthesis of acetylcholine is achieved. Despite this equilibrium, the muscle response to tetanic nerve stimulation is maintained (given normal neuromuscular transmission) because the acetylcholine released is many times greater than the amount necessary to evoke a response. However, when the "margin of safety"[43] at the postsynaptic membrane (i.e., the number of free cholinergic receptors) is reduced by nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs, a typical reduction in twitch height is seen with a fade, especially during repetitive stimulation. In addition to this postsynaptic block, nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs can also block presynaptic neuronal subtype acetylcholine receptors, thereby leading to impaired mobilization of acetylcholine within the nerve terminal.[44] This effect substantially contributes to fade in the response to tetanic (and TOF) stimulation. Although the degree of fade depends primarily on the degree of neuromuscular block, fade also depends on the frequency (Hz), the length (seconds) of stimulation, and on how often tetanic stimuli are applied. Unless these variables are kept constant, results from different studies using tetanic stimulation cannot be compared.

Clinical application: Traditionally, tetanic stimulation was proposed to evaluate residual neuromuscular block. While the sensitivity of tetanic stimulation to detect residual paralysis is about 70%, its specificity is only about 50%. Especially when anesthesia was maintained with volatile anesthetics, a marked fade can be observed despite adequate neuromuscular recovery or even without prior administration of a nondepolarizing NMBA. Hence, this test is of limited value for assessing neuromuscular recovery. Furthermore, tetanic stimulation is very painful, which limits its use in unanesthetized patients. In the late phase of neuromuscular recovery, tetanic stimulation can produce lasting antagonism of neuromuscular block in the stimulated muscle such that the response of the tested site may no longer be representative of other muscle groups.[45] For all these reasons, tetanic stimulation has little, if any, use in everyday clinical anesthesia, except as a component in DBS and PTC stimulation.

POSTTETANIC COUNT STIMULATION

Background: PTC stimulation was developed by Viby-Mogensen to allow tactile or visual evaluation of profound nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade that does not respond to TOF stimulation.[46]

Stimulation pattern: PTC is a composite stimulation pattern composed by a tetanic stimulation (50 Hz for 5 seconds) followed by 10 to 15 single twitches (i.e., PTC twitches) given at 1 Hz starting 3 seconds after the end of tetanic stimulation.[46] It is based on a phenomenon called "posttetanic potentiation": tetanic stimulation leads to a transient, exaggerated release of acetylcholine that briefly shifts the ratio of acetylcholine and NMBA at the motor endplate in favor of acetylcholine. Even if no twitch response has been discernible prior to the tetanic stimulation, noticeable muscle contractions might occur briefly after tetanic stimulation (see Fig. 43.7). The basis for evaluation of the PTC is the count of these discernible posttetanic twitches.

The response to PTC stimulation depends primarily on the degree of neuromuscular block. It also depends on the frequency and duration of tetanic stimulation, the length of time between the end of tetanic stimulation and the first posttetanic stimulus, the frequency of the single-twitch stimulation, and probably the duration of single-twitch stimulation before tetanic stimulation. When the PTC method is used, these variables should be kept constant. Because of interference between PTC stimulation and the actual neuromuscular block within the monitored hand, tetanic stimulation should ideally not be performed more often than every 6 minutes.[46]

Clinical application and limitation: Moderate levels of neuromuscular blockade (i.e., TOF count between 1 and 4) are not sufficient to reliably prevent reactions of the diaphragm and/or laryngeal muscles after stimulation. Both muscles are rather resistant to the effect of nondepolarizing NMBA. Therefore, more profound levels of neuromuscular blockade are needed in clinical situations where any bucking or coughing in response to tracheal stimulation or sudden diaphragmatic movements during surgery should be avoided. Only PTC stimulation allows assessment of these degrees of neuromuscular blockade. During intense block, there is no response to either tetanic or posttetanic stimulation (Fig. 43.8). As the period of intense neuromuscular block dissipates, the first response to posttetanic twitch stimulation occurs and is followed by a gradual return of posttetanic twitches until the first response to TOF stimulation reappears. The PTC should be 3 or less if a deep block is required for clinical reasons; at 6 to 10 PTC, the return of the first TOF response is most often imminent (Fig. 43.9).[46-50] Because tetanic stimulation should not be performed more often than every 6 minutes, this stimulation pattern cannot be applied continuously.

Equipment

Although many nerve stimulators are commercially available, not all meet the basic requirements for clinical use. The stimulus should produce a monophasic and rectangular waveform, and the length of the pulse should not exceed 0.2 to 0.3 ms. A pulse exceeding 0.5 ms may stimulate the muscle directly or cause repetitive firing. Stimulation at a constant current is preferable to stimulation at a constant voltage because current is the determinant of nerve stimulation. Furthermore, for safety reasons, the nerve stimulator should be operated by a rechargeable battery, include a battery check, and be able to generate 60 to 70 mA, but not more than 80 mA. Some commercially available stimulators can deliver just 25 to 50 mA and provide a constant current only when skin resistance ranges from 0 to 2.5 kΩ. This is a limitation, as skin resistance can increase to approximately 5 kΩ, especially during lower skin temperature. The high skin resistance can cause the current delivered to the nerve to decrease below the supramaximal level and lead to a decrease in the response to stimulation. Ideally, the nerve stimulator should have a built-in warning system, or a current level display that alerts the user when the selected current is not delivered to the nerve. Alternatively, the impedance should be indicated at the screen. The polarity of the electrodes should be indicated, and the

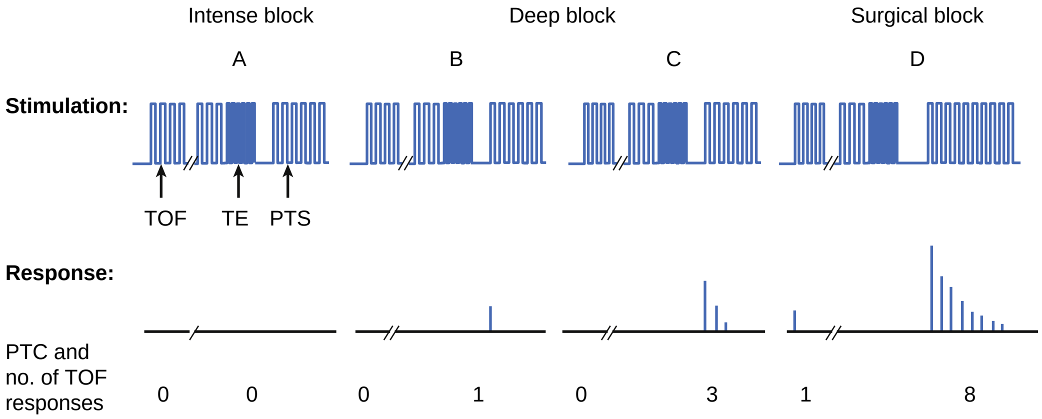


Fig. 43.8 Pattern of electrical stimulation and evoked muscle responses to train-of-four *(TOF)* nerve stimulation, 50-Hz tetanic nerve stimulation for 5 seconds *(TE)*, and 1.0-Hz posttetanic twitch stimulation *(PTS)* during four different levels of nondepolarizing neuromuscular block. During intense block of peripheral muscles (A), no response to any of the forms of stimulation occurs. During less pronounced block (deep block, B and C), there is still no response to TOF stimulation, but posttetanic facilitation of transmission is present. During surgical block (D), the first response to TOF appears and posttetanic facilitation increases further. The posttetanic count (see text) is 1 during very deep block (B), 3 during less deep block (C), and 8 during surgical (or moderate) block (D).

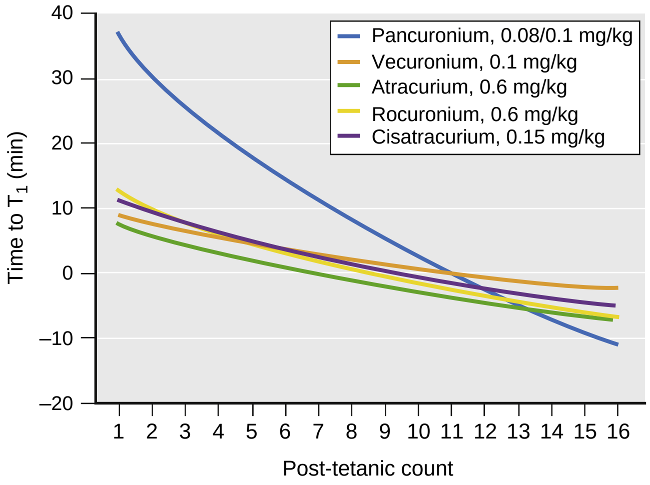


Fig. 43.9 Relationship between the posttetanic count and time when onset of train-of-four (T_1) is likely to be elicited for various neuromuscular blocking agents. (From El-Orbany MI, Joseph JN, Salem MR. The relationship of post-tetanic count and train-of-four responses during recovery from intense cisatracurium-induced neuromuscular block. *Anesth Analg.* 2003;97[1]:80–84.)

apparatus should be capable of delivering the following modes of stimulation: TOF (as both a single train and in a repetitive mode, with TOF stimulation being given every 10-20 seconds), and PTC. Some recent nerve stimulators switch automatically between TOF and PTC, depending on the level of neuromuscular blockade. If the nerve stimulator does not allow objective measurement of the response to TOF stimulation, at least one DBS mode should be available, preferably DBS$_{3,2}$.

Peripheral Nerve Stimulator

Peripheral nerve stimulators only allow stimulation of the target nerve; the subsequent muscular response is assessed subjectively either tactilely or visually. When applying TOF stimulation and evaluating the TOF count, the peripheral nerve stimulator may deliver clinically useful information about the onset of neuromuscular block or the need for an additional dose of relaxant. Moreover, the clinician could be guided for the timing and dosing of reversal agents. It is in the determination of full neuromuscular recovery these devices have clinical limitations. It is impossible to reliably exclude residual paralysis. A simple nerve stimulator acts only as a guide and should not be used as a diagnostic tool to exclude residual paralysis.

Objective Monitors

Objective monitors measure the evoked responses objectively and display it on a screen.

Several methods may be used for objective clinical monitoring of neuromuscular function: evoked mechanical response of the muscle (mechanomyography [MMG]), evoked electrical response of the muscle (electromyography [EMG]), acceleration of the muscle response (AMG), evoked electrical response in a piezoelectric film sensor attached to the muscle (kinemyography [KMG]), measurement of pressure changes in blood pressure cuff after contractions of the upper arm muscles (cuff pressure modality [CPM]), measurement of pressure change of a spherical balloon after hand contraction (compressomyography [CMG]), and measurement of low-frequency sounds evoked by the muscle contraction (phonomyography [PMG]). The different methods are described below. For further information on recording evoked responses, the reader is referred to guidelines for good clinical research practice in pharmacodynamic studies of neuromuscular blocking drugs.[17] The only objective monitors currently available are based on AMG, EMG, CPM, and KMG. The use of computer-guided administration of neuromuscular blocking drugs and "closed loop control" systems has been suggested, but no systems are commercially available.[51,52]

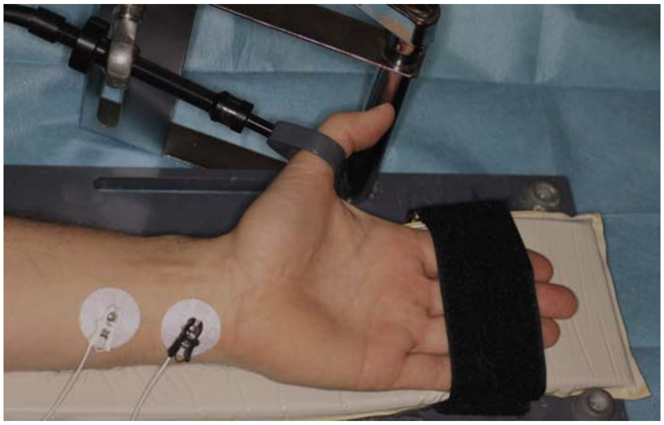


Fig. 43.10 The setup for mechanomyography. The response to nerve stimulation is measured using a force transducer (TD-100; Biometer, Odense, Denmark) placed at the proximal phalanx of the thumb.

MECHANOMYOGRAPHY

MMG measures the isometric contraction of a muscle after stimulation of the corresponding nerve. A transducer converts the force of an isometric contraction into an electrical signal. For correct and reproducible measurement, the muscle contraction needs to be isometric. In clinical anesthesia, this condition is most easily achieved by measuring the force of contraction of the thumb after the application of a resting tension of 200 to 300 g (a preload) to the thumb. When the ulnar nerve is stimulated, the thumb (the adductor pollicis muscle) acts on a force-displacement transducer (Fig. 43.10). The force of contraction is then converted into an electrical signal, which is amplified, displayed, and recorded. The arm and hand should be rigidly fixed, and care should be taken to prevent overloading of the transducer. In addition, the transducer should be placed in correct relation to the thumb (i.e., the thumb should always apply tension along the length of the transducer). It is important to remember that the response to nerve stimulation depends on the frequency with which the individual stimuli are applied and that the time used to achieve a stable control response may influence subsequent determination of the onset time and duration of block.[17] Generally, the reaction to supramaximal stimulation increases during the first 8 to 12 minutes after commencement of the stimulation (staircase phenomenon). Therefore, in clinical studies, recording of the control response (before injection of muscle relaxant) should not be made until the response has stabilized for 8 to 12 minutes or a 2- or 5-second 50-Hz tetanic stimulation has been given.[53] Even then, twitch response often recovers to 110% to 150% of the control response after paralysis with succinylcholine. This increase in response, possibly caused by a change in the contractile response of the muscle, normally disappears within 15 to 25 minutes.

Although there are numerous methods for mechanical recording of evoked mechanical responses, not all meet the criteria outlined. MMG is recognized as the gold standard of neuromuscular monitoring.[17]

Despite this status, there is no commercially available neuromuscular monitor for daily clinical use based on this principle. This type of monitor is relegated to research purpose only.

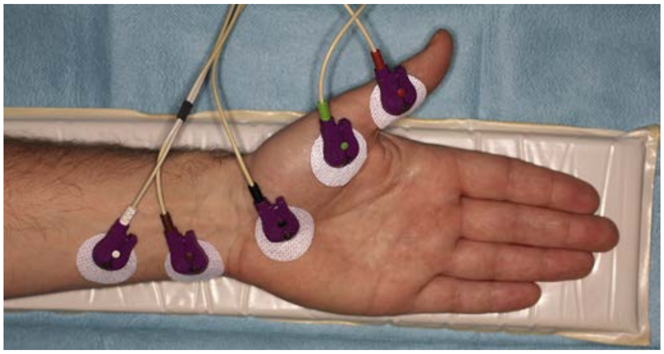


Fig. 43.11 The setup for electromyography (NMT ElectroSensor, Datex-Ohmeda, Helsinki, Finland) for recording the compound action potential from the adductor pollicis muscle.

ELECTROMYOGRAPHY

EMG is the oldest technique used for quantification of neuromuscular blockade. Evoked EMG records the compound muscle action potentials produced by stimulation of a peripheral nerve. The compound action potential is an electrical activity that for many years could be detected only by means of a preamplifier and a storage oscilloscope. Modern neuromuscular transmission analyzers are able to make online electronic analyses and graphic presentations of the EMG response.

The evoked EMG response is most often obtained from muscles innervated by the ulnar or the median nerves. Stimulating electrodes are applied as in force measurements. Most often, the evoked EMG response is obtained from the thenar or hypothenar eminence of the hand or from the first dorsal interosseous muscle of the hand, preferably with the active electrode over the motor point of the muscle (Fig. 43.11). The signal picked up by the analyzer is processed by an amplifier, a rectifier, and an electronic integrator. The results are displayed either as a percentage of control or as a TOF ratio.

Two new sites for recording the EMG response have been introduced: the larynx and the diaphragm.[54,55] Using a noninvasive disposable laryngeal electrode attached to the tracheal tube and placed between the vocal cords, it is possible to monitor the onset of neuromuscular block in the laryngeal muscles. However, the method is mainly of interest in clinical research when investigating onset times of the laryngeal muscles. In paravertebral surface diaphragmatic EMG, the recording electrodes are placed on the right of vertebrae T12/L1 or L1/L2 for monitoring the response of the right diaphragmatic crux to transcutaneous stimulation of the right phrenic nerve at the neck.[54-57] As is the case with surface laryngeal EMG, surface diaphragmatic EMG is mainly of interest in clinical research.

Evoked electrical and mechanical responses represent different physiologic events. Evoked EMG records changes in the electrical activity of one or more muscles, whereas evoked MMG records changes associated with excitation-contraction coupling and contraction of the muscle as well. For these reasons, the results obtained with these methods may differ.[57,58] Although evoked EMG responses generally correlate well with evoked mechanical responses,[38] marked differences can occur, especially in the response to succinylcholine and in the TOF ratio during recovery from a nondepolarizing block.[38,57,59]

In theory, recording of evoked EMG responses has several advantages over recording of evoked mechanical responses. Equipment for measuring-evoked EMG responses is easier to set up, the response reflects only factors influencing neuromuscular transmission, and the response can be obtained from muscles not accessible to mechanical recording. However, evoked EMG does entail some difficulties. Although high-quality recordings are possible in most patients, the results are not always reliable. For one thing, improper placement of electrodes can result in inadequate pickup of the compound EMG signal. If the neuromuscular transmission analyzer does not allow observation of the actual waveform of the compound EMG, determining optimal placement of the electrodes is difficult. Another source of unreliable results may be that fixation of the hand with a preload on the thumb might be more important than is generally appreciated, inasmuch as changes in the position of the electrodes in relation to the muscle can affect the EMG response. In addition, direct muscle stimulation sometimes occurs. If muscles close to the stimulating electrodes are stimulated directly, the recording electrodes can pick up an electrical signal even though neuromuscular transmission is completely blocked. Another difficulty is that the EMG response often does not return to the control value. Whether this situation is the result of technical problems, inadequate fixation of the hand, or changes in temperature is unknown (Fig. 43.12). Finally, the evoked EMG response is highly sensitive to electrical interference, such as that caused by diathermy.

Currently, to our knowledge, there are only a few EMG-based monitors available for clinical use, but more devices are under development.

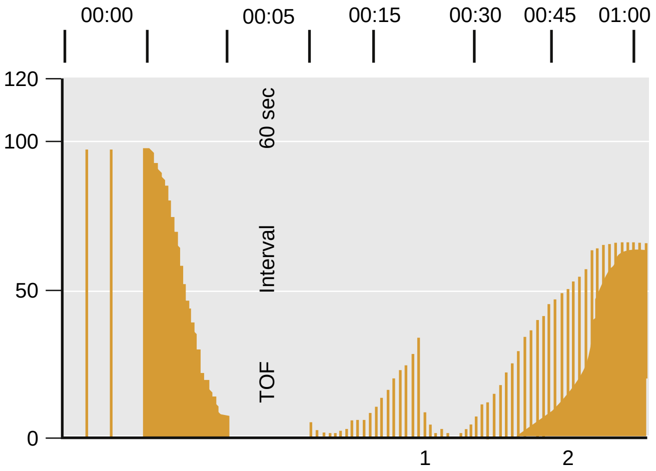


Fig. 43.12 Evoked electromyographic printout from a Relaxograph (Datex-Ohmeda, Helsinki, Finland). Initially, single-twitch stimulation was given at 0.1 Hz, and vecuronium (70 μg/kg) was administered intravenously for tracheal intubation. After approximately 5 minutes, the mode of stimulation was changed to train-of-four *(TOF)* stimulation every 60 seconds. At a twitch height (first twitch in the TOF response) of approximately 30% of control (marker 1), 1 mg of vecuronium was given intravenously. At marker 2, 1 mg of neostigmine was given intravenously, preceded by 2 mg of glycopyrrolate. The printout also illustrates the common problem of failure of the electromyographic response to return to the control level. (Courtesy Datex-Ohmeda, Helsinki, Finland.)

ACCELEROMYOGRAPHY

AMG was developed specifically for clinical use and is widely practiced. The technique of AMG is based on Newton's second law: force = mass × acceleration, it measures the isotonic acceleration of the stimulated muscle.[60] If mass is constant, acceleration is directly proportional to force. Accordingly, after nerve stimulation, one can measure not only the evoked force but also acceleration of the thumb.

AMG uses a piezoelectric ceramic wafer with electrodes on both sides. Exposure of the electrode to a force generates an electrical voltage proportional to acceleration of the electrode. Consequently, when an accelerometer is fixed to the thumb and the ulnar nerve is stimulated, an electrical signal is produced whenever the thumb moves (Fig. 43.13). This signal can be analyzed in a specially designed analyzer[61] or displayed on a recording system.

AMG is a simple method of analyzing neuromuscular function, both in the operating room and in the intensive care unit. Although good correlation exists between the TOF ratio measured by this method and the TOF ratio measured with a force-displacement transducer or EMG,[60,62,63] measurements made via AMG are not directly comparable with results obtained by the other two methods.[63-69] When AMG is used with a free-moving thumb, as originally suggested,[60] wide limits of agreements in twitch height (T1) and TOF ratio and differences in the onset and recovery course of block between AMG and MMG have been found. Moreover, the AMG control TOF ratio is consistently higher than when measured with a force-displacement transducer. In accordance with this, several studies have indicated that when using AMG, the TOF ratio indicative of sufficient postoperative neuromuscular recovery is 1.0 rather than 0.90, as when measured by MMG or EMG in the adductor pollicis muscle.[6,68,70-72] In contrast to MMG and EMG, the control baseline TOF value before administration of a neuromuscular blocking drug is most often 1.1 to 1.2 when measured with AMG, and in some patients is as high as 1.4. A high control baseline value probably indicates that the TOF ratio necessary for excluding residual curarization is equally higher. For instance, in a patient with a high control baseline value (e.g., TOF = 1.2), it is to be expected that a higher TOF ratio during recovery is necessary to exclude residual

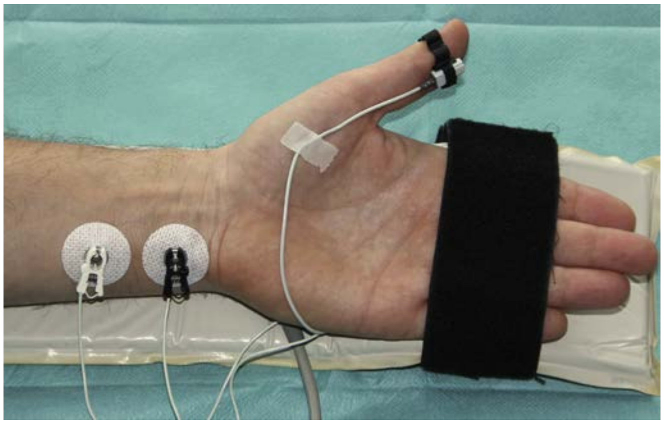


Fig. 43.13 The setup of acceleromyography without preload (TOF Watch, Biometer, Odense, Denmark). The response to nerve stimulation is measured with a small piezoelectric acceleration transducer placed distally on the volar site of the thumb.

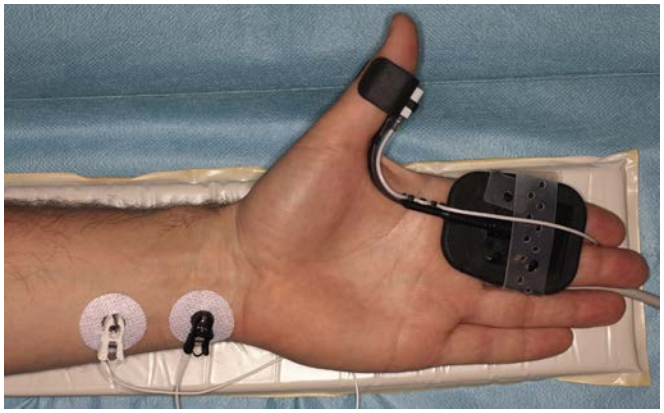


Fig. 43.14 The setup of acceleromyography with preload (TOF Watch with Hand Adapter, Biometer, Odense, Denmark). The piezoelectric acceleration transducer is placed in the Hand Adapter. The stretching wing ensures that the thumb does not touch the palm of the hand.

block compared with a patient with a low control baseline value (e.g., TOF = 0.95). It is generally accepted that the TOF ratio should be at least 0.90 to exclude clinically significant residual paralysis; using the preceding example, a TOF ratio of 1.08 (90% of 1.2) would represent safe recovery in the first patient, whereas a TOF ratio of 0.86 (90% of 0.95) would suffice in the other patient. To overcome such problems, it has been suggested to refer the actually obtained TOF ratios during recovery to the baseline control TOF ratio (normalization).[67,72-76] Currently, no commercially available monitors can "normalize" the TOF ratio automatically. Intuitively, for excluding residual block using AMG, a TOF ratio of at least 1.0 should be targeted to exclude residual block.[67,68,72,74]

One reason for the wide limits of agreement between AMG and MMG is probably and paradoxically connected with one of the originally claimed advantages of the method, that fixation of the hand could be reduced to a minimum as long as the thumb could move freely.[60] In clinical practice, it is often not possible to ensure that the thumb can move freely and that the position of the hand does not change during the surgical procedure. The evoked response can therefore vary considerably. Several solutions have been proposed, but the use of an elastic preload on the thumb improves the precision without compromising the agreement between results obtained with AMG and MMG (Fig. 43.14).[67,68] Several studies have indicated that objective monitoring with AMG reduces and almost eliminates the problem of postoperative residual neuromuscular block.[67,77-81]

When the thumb is not available for monitoring during surgery, some clinicians prefer to monitor the AMG response of the orbicularis oculi or the corrugator supercilii in response to facial nerve stimulation.[28] However, neuromuscular monitoring of both sites with AMG is subject to both large uncertainty regarding the extent of paralysis and high risk of direct muscle stimulation, and it cannot be recommended for routine monitoring. It provides only a rough estimate of the degree of block of the peripheral muscles.[82,83]

AMG was one of the first widely distributed commercially available monitors and has therefore become the standard for qualitative monitoring in the clinical setting. Today, AMG devices are available as portable monitors as well as integrated in the anesthesia monitor.

Recently, AMG monitors with three-dimensional piezoelectric transducers were introduced, which sense the motion of the thumb in all directions,[83a,83b] and not just in one plane. This might further improve the reliability of the AMG technology. This novel method has been compared to the TOF-Watch (one-dimensional AMG) in two small studies. Although both studies showed some disagreement between the two methods, the authors agreed that the three-dimensional monitor may be used in clinical practice. An advantage seems to be that the monitors' integrated internal check-up ensuring that all components including the piezoelectric element are functional is developed. The newest monitors also display the impedance and calculate automatically a modified normalized TOF ratio. Hopefully, the new generation of AMG monitors becomes even more user-friendly and more reliable.

KINEMYOGRAPHY

The technique of KMG is based on the principle that stretching or bending a flexible piezoelectric film (e.g., one attached to the thumb) in response to nerve stimulation generates a voltage that is proportional to the amount of stretching or bending.[84,85]

Few studies have evaluated the function of these monitors.[84-86] Limited data indicate not only a good relationship between results obtained with KMG, AMG, and MMG, but also wide limits of agreement between the methods. Therefore, although KMG may be a valuable clinical tool, the values obtained in an individual patient with this method can vary from those obtained with MMG or AMG. Only one device based on this principle is available commercially in two sizes (adult and pediatric): the NMT MechanoSensor (Datex-Ohmeda, Helsinki, Finland).

CUFF PRESSURE MODALITY (CPM)

The cuff modality detects changes in cuff pressure due to muscle contraction. Electrodes integrated into a blood pressure cuff stimulate the brachial plexus at the humeral level. The subsequent bulk contraction of the upper arm generates pressure change in the blood pressure cuff which is analyzed and displayed at the monitor. However, only limited data are currently available and further clinical investigations are needed to prove the reliability and reproducibility of the new monitoring modality. One monitor based on this technology is commercially available: the TOF-Cuff NMT monitor (RGB Medical devices, Madrid, Spain).

COMPRESSOMYOGRAPHY

CMG measures pressure changes in a hand-held balloon. Following ulnar nerve stimulation, the force of muscle contraction of the hand muscles is transmitted to a balloon secured in the patient's hand. Despite encouraging results of the only publication investigating the device,[49] this technique has not been further developed and is not commercially available.

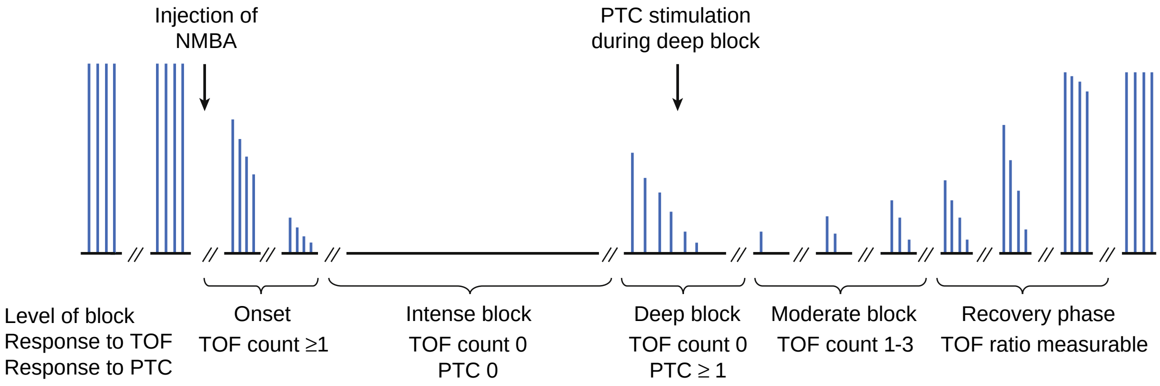


Fig. 43.15 Levels of block after a normal intubating dose of a nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agent *(NMBA)* as classified by posttetanic count *(PTC)* and train-of-four *(TOF)* stimulation. During intense (profound) block, there are no responses to either TOF or PTC stimulation. During deep block, there is response to PTC but not to TOF stimulation. Intense (profound) block and deep block together constitute the "period of no response to TOF stimulation." Reappearance of the response to TOF stimulation heralds the start of moderate block. Finally, when all four responses to TOF stimulation are present and a TOF ratio can be measured, the recovery period has started. (From Fuchs-Buder T, Claudius C, Skovgaard LT, et al. Good clinical research practice in pharmacodynamic studies of neuromuscular blocking agents II: The Stockholm revision. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51[7]:789–808.)

PHONOMYOGRAPHY

PMG measures the intrinsic low-frequency sounds of muscle contraction with special microphones following nerve stimulation. PMG has been evaluated for clinical and research purposes by one study group. This group reports good correlation between evoked acoustic responses and those obtained with more traditional methods of recording, such as MMG, EMG, and AMG.[31,87-92] A potential advantage of PMG, however, is that the method can be applied not only to the adductor pollicis muscle, but also to other muscles of clinical interest such as the diaphragm, larynx, and eye muscles. In addition, the ease of application is attractive. However, PMG-based monitors are not currently commercially available.

Evaluation of Recorded Evoked Responses

In daily clinical practice, the recorded response to TOF stimulation and PTC stimulation are typically used to explain how to evaluate the degree of neuromuscular block during clinical anesthesia.

NONDEPOLARIZING NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCK

After injection of a nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drug in a dose sufficient for smooth tracheal intubation, TOF recording demonstrates four phases, or levels, of neuromuscular block: intense block, deep block, moderate or surgical block, and recovery (Fig. 43.15).

Intense Neuromuscular Block

Intense or profound neuromuscular block occurs within 3 to 6 minutes of injection of an intubating dose of a nondepolarizing muscle relaxant, depending on the drug and the dose given. This phase is also called the "period of no response" because no response to any pattern of nerve stimulation occurs. The length of this period varies, again depending primarily on the duration of action of the muscle relaxant and the dose given. The sensitivity of the patient to the drug also affects the period of no response. An intense block cannot be antagonized with a cholinesterase inhibitor (e.g., neostigmine), and only a high dose of sugammadex (16 mg/kg) can antagonize an intense block caused by rocuronium or vecuronium.[93,94]

Deep Neuromuscular Block

Intense neuromuscular block is followed by a period of deep neuromuscular block, characterized by absence of response to TOF stimulation, but with the presence of at least one response to PTC stimulation (i.e., PTC ≥1; compare with Fig. 43.8). To avoid diaphragmatic movements and thus, to assure surgical stillness and improve surgical space conditions during laparoscopic abdominal procedures, deep neuromuscular blockade corresponding to ≤3 PTC responses is recommended.[49] Although prediction of the duration of a deep neuromuscular block is difficult, correlation usually exists between PTC stimulation and the time until reappearance of the first response to TOF stimulation (see Fig. 43.9). Attempts to reverse a deep neuromuscular block with neostigmine are usually impossible. However, a deep neuromuscular block caused by rocuronium or vecuronium can be antagonized completely within a few minutes using a dose of sugammadex of 4 mg/kg.[95-97]

Moderate Neuromuscular Block

Moderate neuromuscular block begins when the first response to TOF stimulation appears. This phase is characterized by a gradual return of the four responses to TOF stimulation. Furthermore, good correlation exists between the degree of neuromuscular block and the number of responses to TOF stimulation. When only one response is detectable, the degree of neuromuscular block (the depression in twitch tension) is 90% to 95%. When the fourth response reappears, neuromuscular block is usually 60% to 85%.[98,99] The presence of one or two responses in the TOF pattern normally indicates sufficient relaxation for most surgical procedures. During light anesthesia, however, patients may move, buck, or cough; therefore, a deeper block (or a deeper level of anesthesia) may be necessary when elimination of sudden movements or facilitation of surgery is necessary.

Antagonism of neuromuscular block with neostigmine should usually not be attempted when the block is intense or deep. Even if some reversal occurs, it will often be inadequate, regardless of the dose of neostigmine administered.[100] Furthermore, after the administration of large doses of muscle relaxants, reversal of the block with neostigmine to clinically normal activity is not always possible if only one TOF response is present. In general, antagonism with neostigmine should not be initiated before all four responses after TOF stimulation are observed. Even then, sufficient recovery may take time and cannot be guaranteed unless documented using objective monitoring.[101-103]

Antagonism of moderate block induced by rocuronium and vecuronium can be achieved with a small dose of sugammadex (2 mg/kg) within a few minutes.[104-106] However, the reappearance of neuromuscular blockade has been reported by anesthesiologists from Japan[107] when the 2 mg/kg dose has been used. However, they did not monitor the degree of neuromuscular blockade; did the reappearance of neuromuscular blockade occur because of inadequate monitoring or too small a dose of sugammadex? Although the antagonism of neuromuscular block from sugammadex seems to be fast and predictable, neuromuscular monitoring is mandatory for proper dosing, and objective monitoring should still be used until the TOF ratio is 0.9 to 1.0.

Recovery from Neuromuscular Block

Return of the fourth response in the TOF heralds the recovery phase. During neuromuscular recovery, a reasonably good correlation exists between the actual TOF ratio and clinical observation, but the relationship between the TOF ratio and signs and symptoms of residual block varies greatly among patients.[81,100] When the TOF ratio is 0.4 or less, the patient is generally unable to lift the head or arm. Tidal volume may be normal, but vital capacity and inspiratory force is reduced. When the ratio is 0.6, most patients are able to lift their head for 3 seconds, open their eyes widely, and stick out their tongue, but vital capacity and inspiratory force are often still reduced. At a TOF ratio of 0.7 to 0.75, the patient can normally cough sufficiently and lift the head for at least 5 seconds, but grip strength may still be as low as about 60% of control.[108] When the ratio is 0.8 and higher, vital capacity and inspiratory force are normal.[36,109-111] The patient may, however, still have diplopia, blurred vision, and facial weakness (Table 43.1).[81,108]

TABLE 43.1 Clinical Signs and Symptoms of Residual Paralysis in Awake Volunteers after Mivacurium-Induced Neuromuscular Block

Train-of-Four Ratio	Signs and Symptoms
0.70-0.75	Diplopia and visual disturbances
	Decreased handgrip strength
	Inability to maintain apposition of the incisor teeth
	"Tongue depressor test" negative
	Inability to sit up without assistance
	Severe facial weakness
	Speaking a major effort
	Overall weakness and tiredness
0.85-0.90	Diplopia and visual disturbances
	Generalized fatigue

From Kopman AF, Yee PS, Neuman GG. Relationship of the train-of-four fade ratio to clinical signs and symptoms of residual paralysis in awake volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(4):765–761.

However, the TOF ratio must exceed 0.90 when recorded with MMG or EMG, and 1.0 when using AMG to exclude clinically important residual neuromuscular block.[1,3,38,67,68,70,112-116] Moderate degrees of neuromuscular block can impair carotid body chemosensitivity to hypoxia with absent ventilatory response to arterial desaturation.[3,112,114,116] Moreover, residual block (TOF < 0.90) is associated with functional impairment of the pharyngeal and upper esophageal muscles, which most probably predisposes to regurgitation and aspiration of gastric contents.[1] Eikermann and colleagues[4] have documented that partial neuromuscular block, even to a degree that does not evoke dyspnea or oxygen desaturation, can decrease inspiratory upper airway volume and can evoke partial inspiratory airway collapse.[4] Also, residual block (TOF < 0.70) caused by the long-acting muscle relaxant pancuronium is a significant risk factor for the development of postoperative pulmonary complications (Table 43.2 and Fig. 43.16).[113] Intraoperative neuromuscular monitoring, followed by appropriate pharmacological reversal, reduces the risk of residual neuromuscular block and results in fewer patients with hypoxemic events or airway obstruction in the postanesthesia care unit.[80] Even in volunteers without sedation or impaired consciousness, a TOF ratio of 0.90 or less can impair the ability to maintain the airway.[77,108,117] Even small degrees of residual block are unpleasant for patients, causing symptoms such as general weakness and blurred vision.[81] In summary, adequate recovery of neuromuscular function requires the return of an MMG or EMG TOF ratio to at least 0.90, and an AMG TOF ratio to at least 1.0 (or normalized to 0.90),[74] which cannot be guaranteed without objective neuromuscular monitoring.[78,79,81,118-121]

DEPOLARIZING NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCK (PHASE I AND II BLOCKS)

Fade and posttetanic facilitation are the basis for evaluation of all stimulation patterns applied in clinical practice (i.e., TOF, DBS, and PTC stimulation). It is important to realize that during depolarizing neuromuscular phase I block, neither fade nor posttetanic facilitation occurred. Thus, the usually applied stimulation patterns do not allow assessment of depolarizing neuromuscular block. After TOF stimulation, all four responses are reduced at the same degree, no fade occurred, and all four disappear simultaneously. Thus, independently of the degree of depolarizing neuromuscular block, the TOF-ratio remains 1 and the TOF-count is either 4 or 0.

Patients with normal plasma cholinesterase activity who are given a moderate dose of succinylcholine (0.5-1.5 mg/kg) undergo a typical depolarizing neuromuscular block (phase I block; i.e., the response to TOF or tetanic stimulation does not fade, and no posttetanic facilitation of

TABLE 43.2 Relationship Between Train-of-Four Ratio at the First Postoperative Recording and Postoperative Pulmonary Complications

	PANCURONIUM (n = 226)			ATRACURIUM OR VECURONIUM (n = 450)		
		PATIENTS WITH POPC			PATIENTS WITH POPC	
	No. of patients	***n***	**%**	**No. of Patients**	***n***	**%**
TOF $\geq$ 0.70	167	8	4.8	426	23	5.4
TOF < 0.70	59	10	16.9*	24	1	4.2

*$P < .02$ versus patients in the same group with a train-of-four ratio of 0.70 or greater.

Results from a prospective, randomized, and blinded study of postoperative pulmonary complications (POPC) in a total of 691 adult patients undergoing abdominal, gynecologic, or orthopedic surgery and receiving either pancuronium, atracurium, or vecuronium.[82] In 4 of the 46 patients with POPC (1 in the pancuronium group and 3 in the atracurium and vecuronium groups), the train-of-four (TOF) ratio was not available. Because there were no significant differences in the two groups of patients given the intermediate-acting muscle relaxants, the data from these groups are pooled.

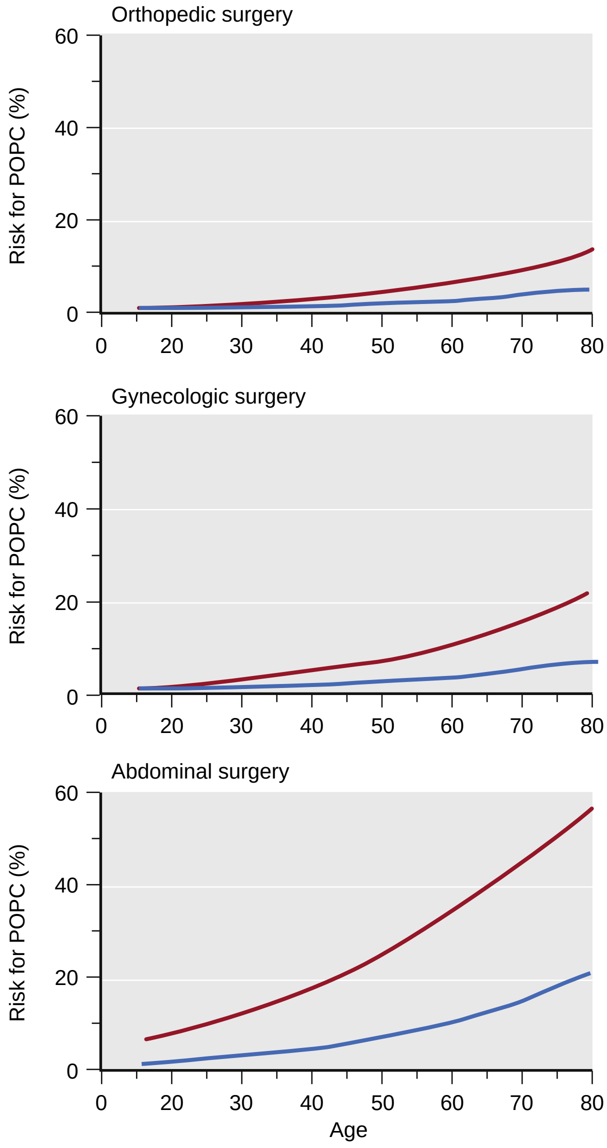


Fig. 43.16 Predicted probabilities of a postoperative pulmonary complication *(POPC)* in different age groups in orthopedic, gynecologic, and major abdominal surgery with duration of anesthesia of less than 200 minutes. The *red lines* represent patients with residual neuromuscular block (train-of-four [TOF] < 0.70) after the administration of pancuronium; the *blue lines* represent patients with a TOF of 0.70 or greater after the administration of pancuronium, as well as all patients after the administration of atracurium and vecuronium, independent of the TOF ratio at the end of anesthesia.[113]

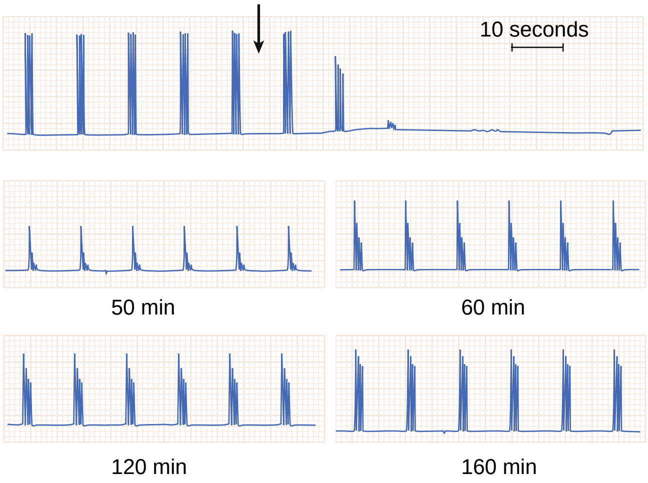


Fig. 43.17 Typical recording of the mechanical response to train-of-four ulnar nerve stimulation after injection of 1 mg/kg of succinylcholine *(arrow)* in a patient with genetically determined abnormal plasma cholinesterase activity. The prolonged duration of action and the pronounced fade in the response indicate a phase II block.

transmission occurs. All four responses are reduced at the same degree [TOF ratio is 1.0] or 0). In contrast, some patients with genetically determined abnormal plasma cholinesterase activity who are given the same dose of succinylcholine undergo a nondepolarizing-like block characterized by fade in the response to TOF and tetanic stimulation and the occurrence of posttetanic facilitation of transmission (Fig. 43.17). This type of block is called a *phase II block* (dual, mixed, or desensitizing block). In addition, phase II blocks sometimes occur in genetically normal patients after repetitive bolus doses or a prolonged infusion of succinylcholine. Therefore, in a clinical setting, TOF stimulation can be used to distinguish depolarizing phase I block and phase II block. Patients with normal plasma cholinesterase activity would recover from the neuromuscular block within a few minutes, showing four equally weak responses (TOF ratio 1.0), which quickly become stronger (still at TOF ratio 1.0). In contrast, patients with abnormal plasma cholinesterase activity and subsequent phase II block would not recover quickly and will return with a TOF count of 1, slowly increasing to 2, 3, and last 4 counts—then having a fade of TOF (TOF-ratio <1.0) during recovery as seen with nondepolarizing block.

From a therapeutic point of view, a phase II block in normal patients must be differentiated from a phase II block in patients with abnormal cholinesterase activity. In healthy patients, a phase II block can be antagonized by administering a cholinesterase inhibitor a few minutes after discontinuation of succinylcholine. In patients with abnormal genotypes, however, the effect of intravenous injection of a cholinesterase inhibitor (e.g., neostigmine) is unpredictable because it inhibits acetylcholinesterase and plasma-cholinesterase. For example, neostigmine can potentiate the block dramatically, temporarily improve neuromuscular transmission, and then potentiate the block or partially reverse the block, all depending on the time elapsed since administration of succinylcholine and the dose of neostigmine given. Therefore, unless the cholinesterase genotype is known to be normal, antagonism of a phase II block with a cholinesterase inhibitor should be undertaken with extreme caution. Even if neuromuscular function improves promptly, patient surveillance should continue for at least 1 hour.

Use of Nerve Stimulators in Daily Clinical Practice

Whenever a neuromuscular blocking drug is administered to a patient, objective monitoring of the evoked response using recording equipment is the best way to evaluate the neuromuscular block.[121a] However, tactile and visual evaluation are still common forms of clinical neuromuscular monitoring, not least when recording equipment is not available or considered unreliable. The following is a description of how to use nerve stimulators with or without recording equipment (objective monitoring).

PREPARATIONS BEFORE INDUCTION OF ANESTHESIA AND ADMINISTRATION OF THE NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKING AGENT

First, for reliable stimulation, careful cleansing of the skin and proper placement and fixation of electrodes are essential. When the ulnar nerve is used for nerve stimulation, one should take advantage of the fact that the nerve follows the artery by placing the electrodes above the pulse. This placement gives the best response (see Fig. 43.1). Second, every effort should be taken to prevent central cooling, as well as cooling of the extremity being evaluated. Both central and local surface cooling of the adductor pollicis muscle can reduce twitch tension and the TOF ratio.[122-124] Peripheral cooling can affect nerve conduction, decrease the rate of release of acetylcholine and muscle contractility, increase skin impedance, and reduce blood flow to the muscles, thus decreasing the rate of removal of muscle relaxant from the neuromuscular junction. These factors might account for the occasional and pronounced difference in muscle response between a cold extremity and the contralateral warm extremity.[125]

USE OF A NERVE STIMULATOR DURING INDUCTION OF ANESTHESIA

The nerve stimulator should be attached to the patient before induction of anesthesia but should not be turned on until after the patient is unconscious.

Single-twitch stimulation at 1 Hz can be used initially when seeking supramaximal stimulation. However, after supramaximal stimulation has been ensured and before the muscle relaxant is injected, the recording equipment (when using objective monitoring) should be calibrated to ensure that the response is in the measurement window and the response to 1 Hz stimulation is set to 100%. Currently, all commercially available devices have an automatic calibration modus. Without calibration, the recorded response to nerve stimulation might differ significantly from the visual or tactile response throughout all levels of neuromuscular block; therefore, the mode of stimulation should be changed to TOF (or 0.1-Hz twitch stimulation). When the response to this stimulation is observed (the control response), the neuromuscular blocking drug is injected. However, devices with integrated impedance measurement do not need calibration, but at least one TOF stimulation without NMBA should be registered, allowing to normalize the recovery TOF-ratio. Although the trachea is often intubated when the response to TOF stimulation disappears, postponement of this procedure for 30 to 90 seconds, depending on the muscle relaxant used, usually produces better conditions.

When possible, the response to nerve stimulation should be evaluated at the thumb (rather than at the fifth finger). Direct stimulation of the muscle often causes subtle movement of the fifth finger when no response is present at the thumb. Finally, the different sensitivities of various muscle groups to neuromuscular blocking drugs should always be kept in mind.

USE OF A NERVE STIMULATOR DURING SURGERY

If tracheal intubation is facilitated by the administration of succinylcholine, no more muscle relaxant should be given until the response to nerve stimulation reappears or the patient shows other signs of returning neuromuscular function. If plasma cholinesterase activity is normal, the muscle response to TOF nerve stimulation reappears within 4 to 8 minutes.

When a nondepolarizing neuromuscular drug is used for tracheal intubation, a longer-lasting period of intense block usually follows. During this period of no response to TOF and single-twitch stimulation, the time until the return of response to TOF stimulation can be evaluated by PTC (see Fig. 43.9 and Fig. 43.18).

For most surgical procedures requiring muscle relaxation, it is not necessary to have a deep or intense block, provided that the patient is adequately anesthetized. If a nondepolarizing relaxant is used, a moderate level of neuromuscular block with one or two responses to TOF stimulation is sufficient. However, because the respiratory muscles (including the diaphragm) are more resistant to neuromuscular blocking drugs than the peripheral muscles are, the patient may breathe, hiccup, or even cough at this moderate level of block. Moreover, tonus of the diaphragm might impede the surgical conditions, especially during abdominal laparoscopic surgery. To ensure paralysis of the diaphragm, neuromuscular block of the peripheral muscles must be deep so that the PTC is 1-3 at the thumb.

The disadvantages of sustaining a deep or intense neuromuscular block is that at these levels of block, the muscles

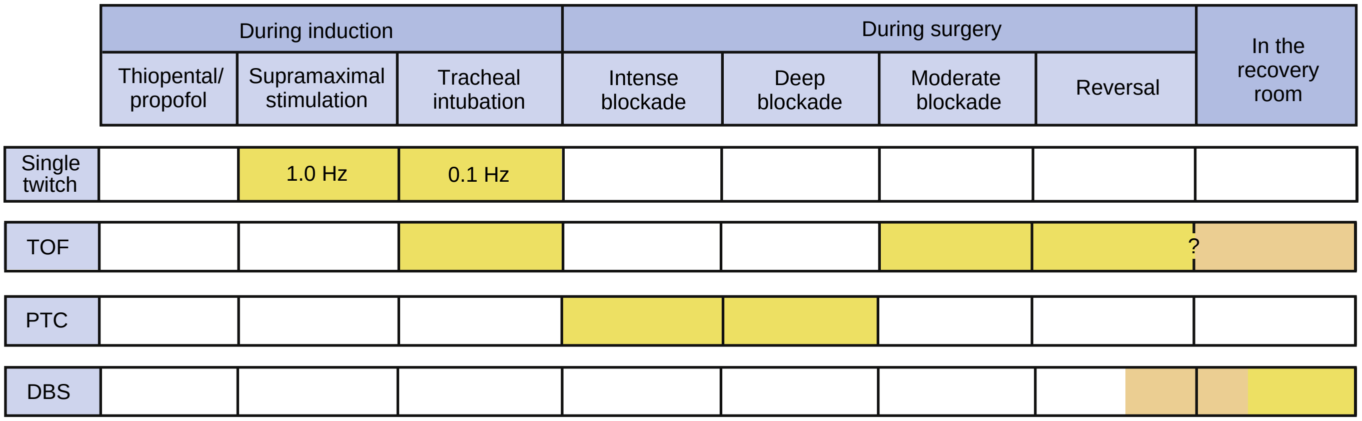


Fig. 43.18 Diagram showing when the different modes of electrical nerve stimulation can be used during clinical anesthesia. *Dark areas* indicate appropriate use and *light areas*, less effective use. Modes of nerve stimulation are train-of-four *(TOF)* stimulation; posttetanic count *(PTC)*; double-burst stimulation *(DBS)*; and the question mark (?), indicating that TOF is less useful in the recovery room unless measured with mechanomyography, electromyography, or acceleromyography. (See text for further explanation.)

are completely paralyzed and the patient cannot signal awareness with voluntary or involuntary movements. Another disadvantage is that deep or intense block cannot readily be reversed by neostigmine. Only sugammadex can reverse a deep or intense neuromuscular block (if caused by rocuronium or vecuronium).

USE OF A NERVE STIMULATOR DURING REVERSAL OF NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCK

Antagonism of nondepolarizing neuromuscular block is most often facilitated with a cholinesterase inhibitor, such as neostigmine, or with the selective relaxant binding agent sugammadex when the neuromuscular block is achieved using rocuronium or vecuronium.

Antagonism with neostigmine should not be initiated before at least all four responses to TOF stimulation are present. Reversal of neuromuscular block will not be hastened and can possibly be delayed by giving neostigmine when no response to peripheral nerve stimulation is present. Moreover, even when there are four responses to TOF stimulation, the reversal is slow and insufficient in some patients. With a large dose of neostigmine (e.g., 5 mg/70 kg), the median time to achieve a TOF ratio of 0.90 is 15 to 20 minutes, and it will take approximately 90 to 120 minutes to achieve a TOF ratio of 0.90 in 95% of the patients after an intermediate-acting neuromuscular blocking drug (e.g., rocuronium).[126] Conversely, a large dose of neostigmine after full recovery might give a paradoxical block with decreasing TOF ratio.[127-131]

When rocuronium or vecuronium is used, the selective relaxant binding drug sugammadex can be used for reversal.[104,105] Sugammadex encapsulates rocuronium and vecuronium with a high affinity, thereby antagonizing the neuromuscular blocking effect. Three different doses of sugammadex are recommended according to the level of block. A large dose (16 mg/kg) is given during intense block (no response to PTC stimulation),[93,94] a medium dose (4 mg/kg) during deep block (at least one response to PTC),[95-97] and a low dose (2 mg/kg) during moderate block (two or more responses to TOF stimulation).[104-106] In most patients, all levels of neuromuscular block are reversed within 2 to 5 minutes. However, appropriate dosing requires neuromuscular monitoring and residual neuromuscular block can be excluded only with objective monitoring (TOF ratio, 0.9-1.0), even after routine use of sugammadex.[107,132]

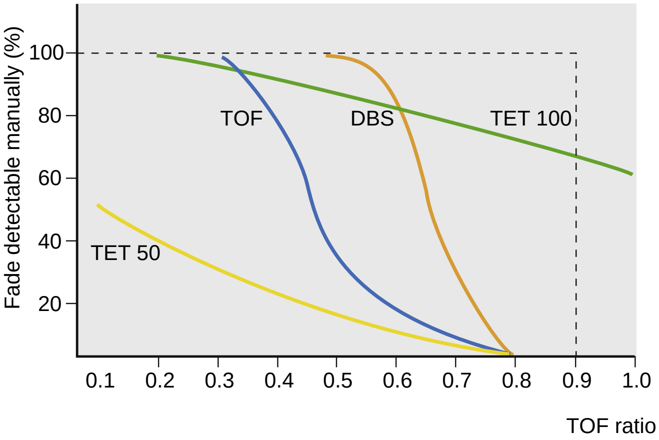


Fig. 43.19 Fade detectable by feel in the response to train-of-four *(TOF)*, double-burst stimulation *($DBS_{3,3}$)*, and 50- and 100-Hz tetanic stimulation (*TET* 50 and TET 100) in relation to the true TOF ratio, as measured mechanically. The axis indicates the percentage of instances in which fade can be detected at a given TOF ratio.[37,39,72] It appears that it is not possible to exclude residual neuromuscular block by any of the methods. (See text for further explanation.)

During recovery of neuromuscular function, when all four responses to TOF stimulation can be felt, an estimation of the TOF ratio can be attempted. However, manual (tactile) evaluation of the response to TOF stimulation (Fig. 43.19) is not sensitive enough to exclude the possibility of residual neuromuscular block.[37,72,118,133] Greater sensitivity is achieved with $DBS_{3,3}$, but even absence of manual fade in the $DBS_{3,3}$ response does not exclude clinically significant residual block (i.e., TOF 0.6-0.9).[41,72] Moreover, some patients might suffer from residual block, even after recovery to a TOF ratio of 0.9 to 1.0.[77,81] Therefore, manual evaluation of responses to nerve stimulation should always be considered in relation to reliable clinical signs and symptoms of residual neuromuscular block (Box 43.1).

BOX 43.1 Clinical Tests of Postoperative Neuromuscular Recovery

Unreliable

- Sustained eye opening
- Protrusion of the tongue
- Arm lift to the opposite shoulder
- Normal tidal volume
- Normal or nearly normal vital capacity
- Maximum inspiratory pressure less than 40-50 cm H_2O

More Reliable, But Still Not Excluding Residual Neuromuscular Block

- Sustained head lift for 5 s
- Sustained leg lift for 5 s
- Sustained handgrip for 5 s
- Sustained "tongue depressor test"
- Maximum inspiratory pressure

When to Use a Peripheral Nerve Stimulator

In clinical practice, significant residual block can be excluded with certainty only if an objective method of neuromuscular monitoring is used.[78,79] Therefore, good evidence-based practice dictates that clinicians should always quantitate the extent of neuromuscular recovery by objective monitoring.[7-13] Only a TOF ratio of 0.90 to 1.00 measured by objective monitoring ensures a low risk of clinically significant residual block.

However, in many departments, clinicians do not have access to equipment for measuring the degree of block.[134] How then to evaluate and, as far as possible, exclude a clinically significant postoperative block? First, long-acting neuromuscular blocking drugs should not be used. Second, the tactile response to TOF nerve stimulation should be evaluated during surgery. Third, if possible, total twitch suppression should be avoided. The neuromuscular block should be managed so that there are always one or two tactile TOF responses. Fourth, the block should be antagonized at the end of the procedure, preferably with sugammadex if rocuronium or vecuronium have been used. When using neostigmine, reversal should not be initiated before at least two to four responses to TOF stimulation are present. Fifth, during recovery, tactile evaluation of the response to DBS is preferable to tactile evaluation of the response to TOF stimulation because it is easier to manually assess fade in the DBS than in the TOF response. Sixth, the clinician should recognize that the absence of tactile fade in both the TOF and DBS responses does not exclude significant residual block. Finally, reliable clinical signs and symptoms of residual block (see Box 43.1) should be considered in relation to the response to nerve stimulation. Fig. 43.20 shows how to minimize the risk of residual block with or without objective monitoring.[135]

In view of the uncertainty connected with the use of clinical tests of postoperative neuromuscular recovery and tactile evaluation of the response to nerve stimulation, all patients receiving neuromuscular blocking drugs should be monitored with an objective monitor. Whether the functioning of such a neuromuscular transmission analyzer is based on EMG, MMG, AMG, CPM, CMG, or PMG is not crucial as long as the apparatus is used appropriately.

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and Dr. Casper Claudius would like to thank Dr. Jorgen Viby-Mogensen for his contribution to this chapter in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation of the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

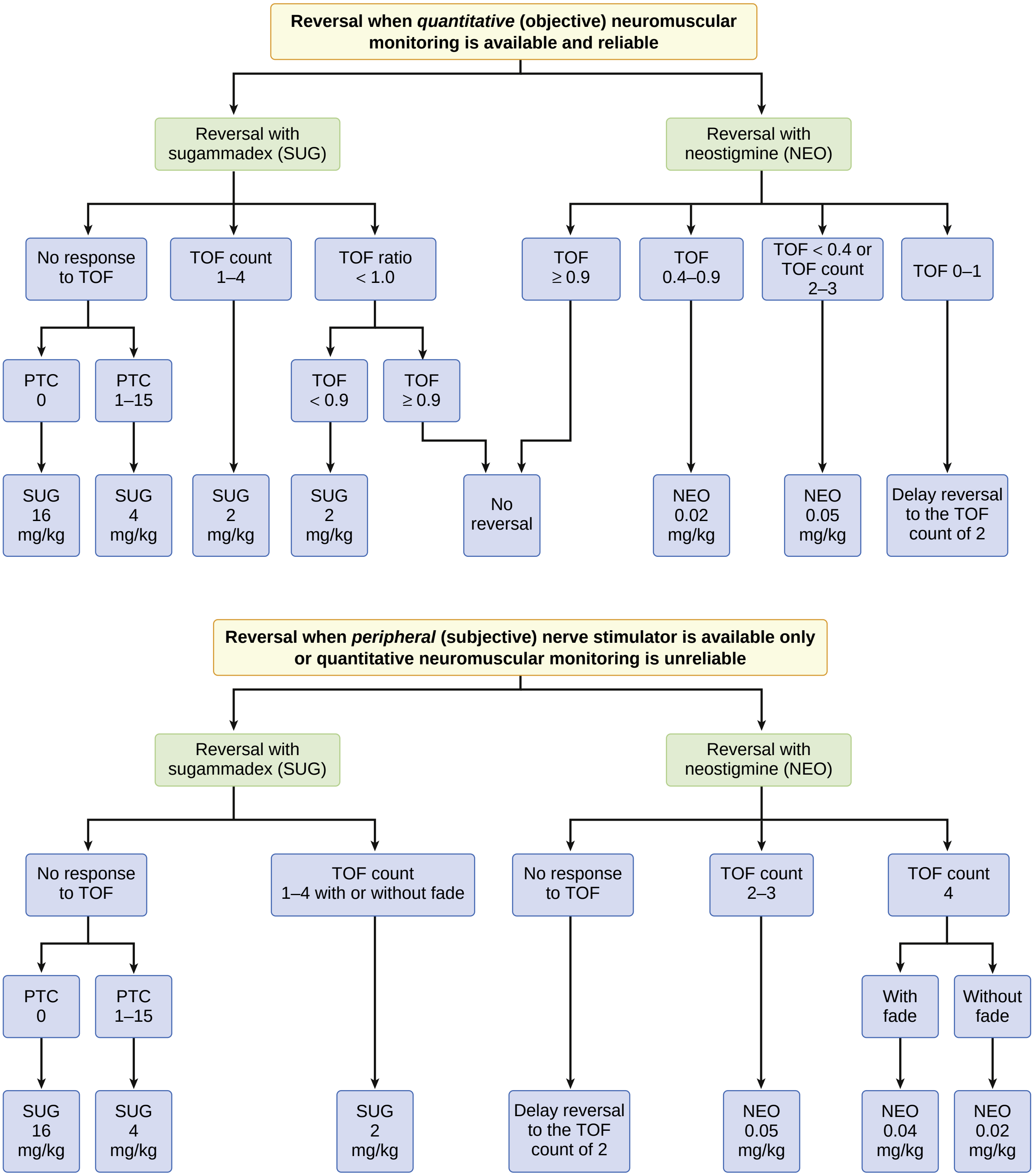

Reversal when *quantitative* (objective) neuromuscular monitoring is available and reliable
Reversal with sugammadex (SUG)
Reversal with neostigmine (NEO)
No response to TOF
TOF count 1–4
TOF ratio < 1.0
TOF ≥ 0.9
TOF 0.4–0.9
TOF < 0.4 or TOF count 2–3
TOF 0–1
PTC 0
PTC 1–15
TOF < 0.9
TOF ≥ 0.9
SUG 16 mg/kg
SUG 4 mg/kg
SUG 2 mg/kg
SUG 2 mg/kg
No reversal
NEO 0.02 mg/kg
NEO 0.05 mg/kg
Delay reversal to the TOF count of 2
Reversal when *peripheral* (subjective) nerve stimulator is available only or quantitative neuromuscular monitoring is unreliable
Reversal with sugammadex (SUG)
Reversal with neostigmine (NEO)
No response to TOF
TOF count 1–4 with or without fade
No response to TOF
TOF count 2–3
TOF count 4
PTC 0
PTC 1–15
With fade
Without fade
SUG 16 mg/kg
SUG 4 mg/kg
SUG 2 mg/kg
Delay reversal to the TOF count of 2
NEO 0.05 mg/kg
NEO 0.04 mg/kg
NEO 0.02 mg/kg

Fig. 43.20 Suggestion to diminish the incidence of residual curarization by neostigmine (NEO) or sugammadex (SUG) according to the level of block, determined with a nerve stimulator (quantitative or peripheral). Note that only a quantitative measured TOF ratio of 0.90 to 1.00 ensures low risk of clinically significant residual block. *PTC,* Posttetanic count; *TOF,* train-of-four. (Modified from Kopman AF, Eikermann M. Antagonism of non-depolarising neuromuscular block: current practice. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64[Suppl 1]:22–30.)

References

1. Eriksson LI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(5):1035.
2. Moerer O, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2002;19(12):883.
3. Eriksson LI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(4):693.
4. Eikermann M, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2007;175(1):9.
5. Viby-Mogensen J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:539.
6. Debaene B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1042.
7. Viby-Mogensen J. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:301.
8. Eriksson LI. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(5):1037.
9. Viby-Mogensen J, Claudius C. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):1.
10. Miller RD, Ward TA. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):3.
11. Donati F. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):6.
12. Kopman AF. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):9.
13. Futter M, Gin T. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):11.
14. Brull SJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(4):629.
15. Brull SJ, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38(2):164.
16. Iwasaki H, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49(9):814.
17. Fuchs-Buder T, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51(7):789.
18. Brull SJ, Silverman DG. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(4):702.
19. Smith CE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67(7):625.
20. Donati F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(1):1.
21. Pansard JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(3):326.
22. Donati F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(5):870.
23. Rimaniol JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(4):808.
24. Plaud B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(1):96.
25. Pavlin EG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70(3):381.
26. Isono S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(6):980.
27. Dhonneur G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(3):376.
28. Kirov K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(5):611.
29. Kern SE, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9(5):383.
30. Saitoh Y, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1998;15(6):649.
31. Michaud G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):718; table of contents.
32. Claudius C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(3):310.
33. Christie Th, Churchill-Davidson HC. *Lancet*. 1958;21:776.
34. Curran MJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59(8):989.
35. Ali HH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1970;42(11):967.
36. Ali HH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1971;43(5):478.
37. Viby-Mogensen J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(4):440.
38. Engbaek J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71(3):391.
39. Drenck NE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70(4):578.
40. Saddler JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(3):401.
41. Fruergaard K, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42(10):1168.
42. Tassonyi E. *Anaesthesist*. 1975;24:374.
43. Paton WD, Waud DR. *J Physiol*. 1967;191(1):59.
44. Jonsson M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(3):521.
45. Saitoh Y, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73(3):416.
46. Viby-Mogensen J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(4):458.
47. Bonsu AK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59(9):1089.
48. Muchhal KK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(6):846.
49. Fernando PU, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1987;31(7):593.
50. Schultz P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45(5):612.
51. Eleveld DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(3):758; table of contents.
52. Gilhuly TJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(5):1609.
53. Lee GC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(1):48.
54. Hemmerling TM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(2):494.
55. Hemmerling TM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(1):106.
56. Hemmerling TM, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48(4):356.
57. Engbaek J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1993;37(8):788.
58. Kopman AF. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(2):208.
59. Kopman AF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(3):583.
60. Viby-Mogensen J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32(1):45.
61. Jensen E, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32(1):49.
62. Werner MU, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32(5):395.
63. May O, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32(3):239.
64. McCluskey A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52(4):345.
65. Kirkegaard-Nielsen H, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 1998;14(1):19.
66. Eikermann M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48(3):365.
67. Claudius C. *Viby-Mogensen J: Anesthesiology*. 2008;108(6):1117.
68. Claudius C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(6):1261.
69. Claudius C, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(4):449.
70. Eikermann M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(6):1333.
71. Capron F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(5):1119.
72. Capron F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(5):1578.
73. Kopman AF. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(10):1575.
74. Suzuki T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96(1):44.
75. Heier T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(4):825.
76. Heier T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(3):444.
77. Eikermann M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(3):937.
78. Gätke MR, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(2):207.
79. Mortensen CR, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39(6):797.
80. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(3):389.
81. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115(5):946.
82. Gätke MR, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(9):1124.
83. Larsen PB, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(9):1131.
83a. Colegrave N, et al. *Anaesth Crit Care Pain Med*. 2016;35(3):223.
83b. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;29(5):880.
84. Kern SE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(5):978.
85. Pelgrims K, Vanacker B. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 2001;52(3):297.
86. Dahaba AA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(3):591; table of contents.
87. Barry DT. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1991;72(8):573.
88. Dascalu A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83(3):405.
89. Hemmerling TM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(3):389.
90. Hemmerling TM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(2):359.
91. Michaud G, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(8):795.
92. Trager G, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53(2):130.
93. de Boer HD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(2):239.
94. Pühringer FK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(2):188.
95. Groudine SB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(3):555.
96. Sparr HJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(5):935.
97. Duvaldestin P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(1):74.
98. O'Hara DA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58(11):1300.
99. Gibson FM, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1987;31(7):655–657.
100. Engbaek J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(5):803.
101. Kirkegaard H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(1):45.
102. Kopman AF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(1):102; table of contents.
103. Tajaate N, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35:184.
104. Sorgenfrei IF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(4):667.
105. Suy K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(2):283.
106. Pühringer FK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(5):610.
107. Kotake Y, Ochiai R, Suzuki T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:345.
108. Kopman AF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(4):765.
109. Ali HH, et al. *I. Br J Anaesth*. 1971;43(5):473.
110. Ali HH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47(5):570.
111. Brand JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1977;56(1):55.
112. Eriksson LI, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36(7):710.
113. Berg H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41(9):1095.
114. Wyon N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(6):1471.
115. Sundman E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(4):977.
116. Jonsson M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(5):488.
117. Herbstreit F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(6):1253.
118. Kopman AF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(6):1253.
119. Naguib M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(3):302.
120. Shorten GD, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(8):711.
121. Viby-Mogensen J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(2):297; author reply 297.
121a. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29200077.
122. Eriksson LI, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35(3):247.
123. Heier T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(5):807.
124. Heier T, Caldwell JE. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(5):1070.
125. Thornberry EA, Mazumdar B. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43(6):447.
126. Brull SJ, Kopman AF. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:173.
127. Payne JP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52(1):69.
128. Eikermann M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(4):621.
129. Eikermann M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101(3):344.
130. Caldwell JE. *J Crit Care*. 2009;24(1):21.
131. Herbstreit F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(6):1280.
132. Le Corre F, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58(10):944.
133. Pedersen T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(5):835.
134. Naguib M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):110.
135. Kopman AF, Eikermann M. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(suppl 1):22.

References

1. Eriksson LI, Sundman E, Olsson R, et al. Functional assessment of the pharynx at rest and during swallowing in partially paralyzed humans: simultaneous videomanometry and mechanomyography of awake human volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(5):1035–1043.
2. Moerer O, Baller C, Hinz J, et al. Neuromuscular effects of rapacuronium on the diaphragm and skeletal muscles in anaesthetized patients using cervical magnetic stimulation for stimulating the phrenic nerves. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2002;19(12):883–887.
3. Eriksson LI, Sato M, Severinghaus JW. Effect of a vecuronium-induced partial neuromuscular block on hypoxic ventilatory response. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(4):693–699.
4. Eikermann M, Vogt FM, Herbstreit F, et al. The predisposition to inspiratory upper airway collapse during partial neuromuscular blockade. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2007;175(1):9–15.
5. Viby-Mogensen J, Jørgensen BC, Ording H. Residual curarization in the recovery room. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:539–541.
6. Debaene B, Plaud B, Dilly MP, Donati F. Residual paralysis in the PACU after a single intubating dose of nondepolarizing muscle relaxant with an intermediate duration of action. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1042–1048.
7. Viby-Mogensen J. Postoperative residual curarization and evidence-based anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:301–303.
8. Eriksson LI. Evidence-based practice and neuromuscular monitoring: it's time for routine quantitative assessment. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(5):1037–1039.
9. Viby-Mogensen J, Claudius C. Evidence-based management of neuromuscular block. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):1–2.
10. Miller RD, Ward TA. Monitoring and pharmacologic reversal of a nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade should be routine. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):3–5.
11. Donati F. Neuromuscular monitoring: what evidence do we need to be convinced? *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):6–8.
12. Kopman AF. Managing neuromuscular block: where are the guidelines? *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):9–10.
13. Futter M, Gin T. Neuromuscular block: views from the Western Pacific. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):11–12.
14. Brull SJ, Ehrenwerth J, Silverman DG. Stimulation with submaximal current for train-of-four monitoring. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(4):629–632.
15. Brull SJ, Ehrenwerth J, Connelly NR, et al. Assessment of residual curarization using low-current stimulation. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38(2):164–168.
16. Iwasaki H, Igarashi M, Namiki A. A preliminary clinical evaluation of magnetic stimulation of the ulnar nerve for monitoring neuromuscular transmission. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49(9):814–816.
17. Fuchs-Buder T, Claudius C, Skovgaard LT, et al. 8th International Neuromuscular Meeting. Good clinical research practice in pharmacodynamic studies of neuromuscular blocking agents II: the Stockholm revision. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2007;51(7):789–808.
18. Brull SJ, Silverman DG. Pulse width, stimulus intensity, electrode placement, and polarity during assessment of neuromuscular block. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(4):702–709.
19. Smith CE, Donati F, Bevan DR. Potency of succinylcholine at the diaphragm and at the adductor pollicis muscle. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67(7):625–630.
20. Donati F, Antzaka C, Bevan DR. Potency of pancuronium at the diaphragm and the adductor pollicis muscle in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(1):1–5.
21. Pansard JL, Chauvin M, Lebrault C, et al. Effect of an intubating dose of succinylcholine and atracurium on the diaphragm and the adductor pollicis muscle in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(3):326–330.
22. Donati F, Meistelman C, Plaud B. Vecuronium neuromuscular blockade at the diaphragm, the orbicularis oculi, and adductor pollicis muscles. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(5):870–875.
23. Rimaniol JM, Dhonneur G, Sperry L, et al. A comparison of the neuromuscular blocking effects of atracurium, mivacurium, and vecuronium on the adductor pollicis and the orbicularis oculi muscle in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(4):808–813.
24. Plaud B, Debaene B, Donati F. The corrugator supercilii, not the orbicularis oculi, reflects rocuronium neuromuscular blockade at the laryngeal adductor muscles. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(1):96–101.
25. Pavlin EG, Holle RH, Schoene RB. Recovery of airway protection compared with ventilation in humans after paralysis with curare. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70(3):381–385.
26. Isono S, Ide T, Kochi T, et al. Effects of partial paralysis on the swallowing reflex in conscious humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(6):980–984.
27. Dhonneur G, Kirov K, Motamed C, et al. Post-tetanic count at adductor pollicis is a better indicator of early diaphragmatic recovery than train-of-four count at corrugator supercilii. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(3):376–379.
28. Kirov K, Motamed C, Ndoko SK, et al. TOF count at corrugator supercilii reflects abdominal muscles relaxation better than at adductor pollicis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(5):611–614.
29. Kern SE, Johnson JO, Orr JA, et al. Clinical analysis of the flexor hallucis brevis as an alternative site for monitoring neuromuscular block from mivacurium. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9(5):383–387.
30. Saitoh Y, Fujii Y, Ueki M, et al. Accelographic and mechanical post-tetanic count and train-of-four ratio assessed at the great toe. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1998;15(6):649–655.
31. Michaud G, Trager G, Deschamps S, et al. Dominance of the hand does not change the phonomyographic measurement of neuromuscular block at the adductor pollicis muscle. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):718–721; table of contents.
32. Claudius C, Skovgaard LT, Viby-Mogensen J. Arm-to-arm variation when evaluating neuromuscular block: an analysis of the precision and the bias and agreement between arms when using mechanomyography or acceleromyography. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(3):310–317.
33. Christie Th, Churchill-Davidson HC. The St. Thomas's nerve stimulator in the diagnosis of prolonged apnoea. *Lancet*. 1958;21:776.
34. Curran MJ, Donati F, Bevan DR. Onset and recovery of atracurium and suxamethonium-induced neuromuscular blockade with simultaneous train-of-four and single twitch stimulation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59(8):989–994.
35. Ali HH, Utting JE, Gray C. Stimulus frequency in the detection of neuromuscular block in humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 1970;42(11):967–978.
36. Ali HH, Utting JE, Gray TC. Quantitative assessment of residual antidepolarizing block. II, *Br J Anaesth*. 1971;43(5):478–485.
37. Viby-Mogensen J, Jensen NH, Engbaek J, et al. Tactile and visual evaluation of the response to train-of-four nerve stimulation. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(4):440–443.
38. Engbaek J, Ostergaard D, Viby-Mogensen J, et al. Clinical recovery and train-of-four ratio measured mechanically and electromyographically following atracurium. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71(3):391–395.
39. Drenck NE, Ueda N, Olsen NV, et al. Manual evaluation of residual curarization using double burst stimulation: a comparison with train-of-four. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70(4):578–581.
40. Saddler JM, Bevan JC, Donati F, et al. Comparison of double-burst and train-of-four stimulation to assess neuromuscular blockade in children. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(3):401–403.
41. Fruergaard K, Viby-Mogensen J, Berg H, et al. Tactile evaluation of the response to double burst stimulation decreases, but does not eliminate, the problem of postoperative residual paralysis. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42(10):1168–1174.
42. Tassonyi E. A new concept in the measurement of neuromuscular transmission and block. *Anaesthesist*. 1975;24:374–377.
43. Paton WD, Waud DR. The margin of safety of neuromuscular transmission. *J Physiol*. 1967;191(1):59–90.
44. Jonsson M, Gurley D, Dabrowski M, et al. Distinct pharmacologic properties of neuromuscular blocking agents on human neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors: a possible explanation for the train-of-four fade. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(3):521–533.
45. Saitoh Y, Masuda A, Toyooka H, et al. Effect of tetanic stimulation on subsequent train-of-four responses at various levels of vecuronium-induced neuromuscular block. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73(3):416–417.
46. Viby-Mogensen J, Howardy-Hansen P, Chraemmer-Jørgensen B, et al. Posttetanic count (PTC): a new method of evaluating an intense nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(4):458–461.
47. Bonsu AK, Viby-Mogensen J, Fernando PU, et al. Relationship of post-tetanic count and train-of-four response during intense neuromuscular blockade caused by atracurium. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59(9):1089–1092.

48. Muchhal KK, Viby-Mogensen J, Fernando PU, et al. Evaluation of intense neuromuscular blockade caused by vecuronium using posttetanic count (PTC). *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(6):846–849.
49. Fernando PU, Viby-Mogensen J, Bonsu AK, et al. Relationship between posttetanic count and response to carinal stimulation during vecuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1987;31(7):593–596.
50. Schultz P, Ibsen M, Østergaard D, et al. Onset and duration of action of rocuronium—from tracheal intubation, through intense block to complete recovery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45(5):612–617.
51. Eleveld DJ, Proost JH, Wierda JM. Evaluation of a closed-loop muscle relaxation control system. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(3):758–764. table of contents.
52. Gilhuly TJ, Macleod BA, Dumont GA, et al. Improved neuromuscular blockade using a novel neuromuscular blockade advisory system: a randomized, controlled, clinical trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(5):1609–1617.
53. Lee GC, Iyengar S, Szenohradszky J, et al. Improving the design of muscle relaxant studies. Stabilization period and tetanic recruitment. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(1):48–54.
54. Hemmerling TM, Schurr C, Walter S, et al. A new method of monitoring the effect of muscle relaxants on laryngeal muscles using surface laryngeal electromyography. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(2):494–497.
55. Hemmerling TM, Schmidt J, Wolf T, et al. Intramuscular versus surface electromyography of the diaphragm for determining neuromuscular blockade. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(1):106–111.
56. Hemmerling TM, Schmidt J, Hanusa C, et al. The lumbar paravertebral region provides a novel site to assess neuromuscular block at the diaphragm. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48(4):356–360.
57. Engbaek J, Skovgaard LT, Fries B, et al. Monitoring of neuromuscular transmission by electromyography (II). Evoked compound EMG area, amplitude and duration compared to mechanical twitch recording during onset and recovery of pancuronium-induced blockade in the cat. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1993;37(8):788–798.
58. Kopman AF. The relationship of evoked electromyographic and mechanical responses following atracurium in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63(2):208–211.
59. Kopman AF, Klewicka MM, Neuman GG. The relationship between acceleromyographic train-of-four fade and single twitch depression. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(3):583–587.
60. Viby-Mogensen J, Jensen E, Werner M, et al. Measurement of acceleration: a new method of monitoring neuromuscular function. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32(1):45–48.
61. Jensen E, Viby-Mogensen J, Bang U. The accelograph: a new neuromuscular transmission monitor. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32(1):49–52.
62. Werner MU, Kirkegaard Nielsen H, May O, et al. Assessment of neuromuscular transmission by the evoked acceleration response. An evaluation of the accuracy of the acceleration transducer in comparison with a force displacement transducer. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32(5):395–400.
63. May O, Kirkegaard Nielsen H, Werner MU. The acceleration transducer—an assessment of its precision in comparison with a force displacement transducer. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32(3):239–243.
64. McCluskey A, Meakin G, Hopkinson JM, et al. A comparison of acceleromyography and mechanomyography for determination of the dose-response curve of rocuronium in children. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52(4):345–349.
65. Kirkegaard-Nielsen H, Helbo-Hansen HS, Lindholm P, et al. New equipment for neuromuscular transmission monitoring: a comparison of the TOF-guard with the Myograph 2000. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 1998;14(1):19–27.
66. Eikermann M, Groeben H, Hüsing J, et al. Predictive value of mechanomyography and accelerometry for pulmonary function in partially paralyzed volunteers. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48(3):365–370.
67. Claudius C, Viby-Mogensen J. Acceleromyography for use in scientific and clinical practice: a systematic review of the evidence. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108(6):1117–1140.
68. Claudius C, Skovgaard LT, Viby-Mogensen J. Is the performance of acceleromyography improved with preload and normalization? A comparison with mechanomyography. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(6):1261–1270.
69. Claudius C, Skovgaard LT, Viby-Mogensen J. Acceleromyography and mechanomyography for establishing potency of neuromuscular blocking agents: a randomized-controlled trial. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(4):449–454.
70. Eikermann M, Groeben H, Hüsing J, et al. Accelerometry of adductor pollicis muscle predicts recovery of respiratory function from neuromuscular blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(6):1333–1337.
71. Capron F, Alla F, Hottier C, et al. Can acceleromyography detect low levels of residual paralysis? A probability approach to detect a mechanomyographic train-of-four ratio of 0.9. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(5):1119–1124.
72. Capron F, Fortier LP, Racine S, et al. Tactile fade detection with hand or wrist stimulation using train-of-four, double-burst stimulation, 50-hertz tetanus, 100-hertz tetanus, and acceleromyography. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(5):1578–1584.
73. Kopman AF. Normalization of the acceleromyographic train-of-four fade ratio. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(10):1575–1576.
74. Suzuki T, Fukano N, Kitajima O, et al. Normalization of acceleromyographic train-of-four ratio by baseline value for detecting residual neuromuscular block. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96(1):44–47.
75. Heier T, Caldwell JE, Feiner JR, et al. Relationship between normalized adductor pollicis train-of-four ratio and manifestations of residual neuromuscular block: a study using acceleromyography during near steady-state concentrations of mivacurium. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(4):825–832.
76. Heier T, Feiner JR, Wright PM, et al. Sex-related differences in the relationship between acceleromyographic adductor pollicis train-of-four ratio and clinical manifestations of residual neuromuscular block: a study in healthy volunteers during near steady-state infusion of mivacurium. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(3):444–451.
77. Eikermann M, Blobner M, Groeben H, et al. Postoperative upper airway obstruction after recovery of the train of four ratio of the adductor pollicis muscle from neuromuscular blockade. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(3):937–942.
78. Gätke MR, Viby-Mogensen J, Rosenstock C, et al. Postoperative muscle paralysis after rocuronium: less residual block when acceleromyography is used. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(2):207–213.
79. Mortensen CR, Berg H, el-Mahdy A, Viby-Mogensen J. Perioperative monitoring of neuromuscular transmission using acceleromyography prevents residual neuromuscular block following pancuronium. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39(6):797–801.
80. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Marymont JH, et al. Intraoperative acceleromyographic monitoring reduces the risk of residual neuromuscular blockade and adverse respiratory events in the postanesthesia care unit. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(3):389–398.
81. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Avram MJ, et al. Intraoperative acceleromyography monitoring reduces symptoms of muscle weakness and improves quality of recovery in the early postoperative period. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115(5):946–954.
82. Gätke MR, Larsen PB, Engbaek J, et al. Acceleromyography of the orbicularis oculi muscle I: significance of the electrode position. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(9):1124–1130.
83. Larsen PB, Gätke MR, Fredensborg BB, et al. Acceleromyography of the orbicularis oculi muscle II: comparing the orbicularis oculi and adductor pollicis muscles. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(9):1131–1136.

83a. Colegrave N, Billard V, Motamed C, Bourgain JL. Comparison of the TOF-Scan™ acceleromyograph to TOF-Watch SX™: influence of calibration. *Anaesth Crit Care Pain Med*. 2016;35(3):223–227.

83b. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Avram MJ, et al. Comparison of the TOF-scan and the TOF-watch SX during recovery of neuromuscular function. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;29(5):880–888.

84. Kern SE, Johnson JO, Westenskow DR, et al. An effectiveness study of a new piezoelectric sensor for train-of-four measurement. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(5):978–982.
85. Pelgrims K, Vanacker B. Comparative study of the TOF-ratio measured by the paragraph versus the TOF-guard, with and without thumb repositioning. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 2001;52(3):297–300.
86. Dahaba AA, von Klobucar F, Rehak PH, et al. The neuromuscular transmission module versus the relaxometer mechanomyograph for neuromuscular block monitoring. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(3):591–596; table of contents.
87. Barry DT. Muscle sounds from evoked twitches in the hand. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1991;72(8):573–575.

88. Dascalu A, Geller E, Moalem Y, et al. Acoustic monitoring of intraoperative neuromuscular block. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83(3):405–409.
89. Hemmerling TM, Donati F, Beaulieu P, et al. Phonomyography of the corrugator supercilii muscle: signal characteristics, best recording site and comparison with acceleromyography. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(3):389–393.
90. Hemmerling TM, Babin D, Donati F. Phonomyography as a novel method to determine neuromuscular blockade at the laryngeal adductor muscles: comparison with the cuff pressure method. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(2):359–363.
91. Michaud G, Trager G, Deschamps S, et al. Monitoring neuromuscular blockade at the vastus medialis muscle using phonomyography. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(8):795–800.
92. Trager G, Michaud G, Deschamps S, et al. Comparison of phonomyography, kinemyography and mechanomyography for neuromuscular monitoring. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53(2):130–135.
93. de Boer HD, Driessen JJ, Marcus MA, et al. Reversal of rocuronium-induced (1.2 mg/kg) profound neuromuscular block by sugammadex: a multicenter, dose-finding and safety study. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(2):239–244.
94. Pühringer FK, Rex C, Sielenkämper AW, et al. Reversal of profound, high-dose rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade by sugammadex at two different time points: an international, multicenter, randomized, dose-finding, safety assessor-blinded, phase II trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(2):188–197.
95. Groudine SB, Soto R, Lien C, et al. A randomized, dose-finding, phase II study of the selective relaxant binding drug, sugammadex, capable of safely reversing profound rocuronium-induced neuromuscular block. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(3):555–562.
96. Sparr HJ, Vermeyen KM, Beaufort AM, et al. Early reversal of profound rocuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade by sugammadex in a randomized multicenter study: efficacy, safety, and pharmacokinetics. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(5):935–943.
97. Duvaldestin P, Kuizenga K, Saldien V, et al. A randomized, dose-response study of sugammadex given for the reversal of deep rocuronium- or vecuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade under sevoflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(1):74–82.
98. O'Hara DA, Fragen RJ, Shanks CA. Comparison of visual and measured train-of-four recovery after vecuronium-induced neuromuscular blockade using two anaesthetic techniques. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58(11):1300–1302.
99. Gibson FM, Mirakhur RK, Clarke RS, et al. Quantification of train-of-four responses during recovery of block from non-depolarising muscle relaxants. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1987;31(7):655–657.
100. Engbaek J, Ostergaard D, Skovgaard LT, et al. Reversal of intense neuromuscular blockade following infusion of atracurium. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(5):803–806.
101. Kirkegaard H, Heier T, Caldwell JE. Efficacy of tactile-guided reversal from cisatracurium-induced neuromuscular block. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(1):45–50.
102. Kopman AF, Zank LM, Ng J, et al. Antagonism of cisatracurium and rocuronium block at a tactile train-of-four count of 2: should quantitative assessment of neuromuscular function be mandatory? *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(1):102–106; table of contents.
103. Tajaate N, Schreiber JU, Fuchs-Buder T, et al. Neostigmine-based reversal of intermediate acting neuromuscular blocking agents to prevent postoperative residual paralysis: a systematic review. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35:184–192.
104. Sorgenfrei IF, Norrild K, Larsen PB, et al. Reversal of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular block by the selective relaxant binding agent sugammadex: a dose-finding and safety study. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(4):667–674.
105. Suy K, Morias K, Cammu G, et al. Effective reversal of moderate rocuronium- or vecuronium-induced neuromuscular block with sugammadex, a selective relaxant binding agent. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(2):283–288.
106. Pühringer FK, Gordon M, Demeyer I, et al. Sugammadex rapidly reverses moderate rocuronium- or vecuronium-induced neuromuscular block during sevoflurane anaesthesia: a dose-response relationship. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(5):610–619.
107. Kotake Y, Ochiai R, Suzuki T. Reversal with sugammadex in the absence of monitoring did not preclude residual neuromuscular block. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117:345–351.
108. Kopman AF, Yee PS, Neuman GG. Relationship of the train-of-four fade ratio to clinical signs and symptoms of residual paralysis in awake volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(4):765–771.
109. Ali HH, Utting JE, Gray TC. Quantitative assessment of residual antidepolarizing block. I. *Br J Anaesth*. 1971;43(5):473–477.
110. Ali HH, Wilson RS, Savarese JJ, et al. The effect of tubocurarine on indirectly elicited train-of-four muscle response and respiratory measurements in humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47(5):570–574.
111. Brand JB, Cullen DJ, Wilson NE, et al. Spontaneous recovery from nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade: correlation between clinical and evoked responses. *Anesth Analg*. 1977;56(1):55–58.
112. Eriksson LI, Lennmarken C, Wyon N, et al. Attenuated ventilatory response to hypoxaemia at vecuronium-induced partial neuromuscular block. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36(7):710–715.
113. Berg H, Roed J, Viby-Mogensen J, et al. Residual neuromuscular block is a risk factor for postoperative pulmonary complications. A prospective, randomised, and blinded study of postoperative pulmonary complications after atracurium, vecuronium and pancuronium. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41(9):1095–1103.
114. Wyon N, Joensen H, Yamamoto Y, et al. Carotid body chemoreceptor function is impaired by vecuronium during hypoxia. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(6):1471–1479.
115. Sundman E, Witt H, Olsson R, et al. The incidence and mechanisms of pharyngeal and upper esophageal dysfunction in partially paralyzed humans: pharyngeal videoradiography and simultaneous manometry after atracurium. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(4):977–984.
116. Jonsson M, Kim C, Yamamoto Y, et al. Atracurium and vecuronium block nicotine-induced carotid body chemoreceptor responses. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(5):488–494.
117. Herbstreit F, Peters J, Eikermann M. Impaired upper airway integrity by residual neuromuscular blockade: increased airway collapsibility and blunted genioglossus muscle activity in response to negative pharyngeal pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(6):1253–1260.
118. Kopman AF, Ng J, Zank LM, et al. Residual postoperative paralysis. Pancuronium versus mivacurium, does it matter? *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(6):1253–1259.
119. Naguib M, Kopman AF, Ensor JE. Neuromuscular monitoring and postoperative residual curarisation: a meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(3):302–316.
120. Shorten GD, Merk H, Sieber T. Perioperative train-of-four monitoring and residual curarization. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(8):711–715.
121. Viby-Mogensen J, Claudius C, Eriksson LI. Neuromuscular monitoring and postoperative residual curarization. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(2):297–299; author reply.

121a. Naguib M, Brull SJ, Kopman AF, et al. Consensus statement on perioperative use of neuromuscular monitoring. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:71–80. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29200077 Accessed 8-6-19.

122. Eriksson LI, Lennmarken C, Jensen E, et al. Twitch tension and train-of-four ratio during prolonged neuromuscular monitoring at different peripheral temperatures. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35(3):247–252.
123. Heier T, Caldwell JE, Sessler DI, et al. The effect of local surface and central cooling on adductor pollicis twitch tension during nitrous oxide/isoflurane and nitrous oxide/fentanyl anesthesia in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(5):807–811.
124. Heier T, Caldwell JE. Impact of hypothermia on the response to neuromuscular blocking drugs. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(5):1070–1080.
125. Thornberry EA, Mazumdar B. The effect of changes in arm temperature on neuromuscular monitoring in the presence of atracurium blockade. *Anaesthesia*. 1988;43(6):447–449.
126. Brull SJ, Kopman AF. Current status of neuromuscular reversal and monitoring: challenges and opportunities. *Anesthesiology*. 2017; 126:173–190.
127. Payne JP, Hughes R, Al Azawi S. Neuromuscular blockade by neostigmine in anaesthetized man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52(1):69–76.
128. Eikermann M, Fassbender P, Malhotra A, et al. Unwarranted administration of acetylcholinesterase inhibitors can impair genioglossus and diaphragm muscle function. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107(4):621–629.
129. Eikermann M, Zaremba S, Malhotra A, et al. Neostigmine but not sugammadex impairs upper airway dilator muscle activity and breathing. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101(3):344–349.

130. Caldwell JE. Clinical limitations of acetylcholinesterase antagonists. *J Crit Care*. 2009;24(1):21–28.
131. Herbstreit F, Zigrahn D, Ochterbeck C, et al. Neostigmine/glycopyrrolate administered after recovery from neuromuscular block increases upper airway collapsibility by decreasing genioglossus muscle activity in response to negative pharyngeal pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(6):1280–1288.
132. Le Corre F, Nejmeddine S, Fatahine C, et al. Recurarization after sugammadex reversal in an obese patient. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58(10):944–947.
133. Pedersen T, Viby-Mogensen J, Bang U, et al. Does perioperative tactile evaluation of the train-of-four response influence the frequency of postoperative residual neuromuscular blockade? *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(5):835–839.
134. Naguib M, Kopman AF, Lien CA, et al. A survey of current management of neuromuscular block in the United States and Europe. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):110–119.
135. Kopman AF, Eikermann M. Antagonism of non-depolarising neuromuscular block: current practice. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(suppl 1):22–30.

44 Airway Management in the Adult

CARLOS A. ARTIME and CARIN A. HAGBERG

KEY POINTS

- One of the fundamental responsibilities of the anesthesiologist is to mitigate the adverse effects of anesthesia on the respiratory system by maintaining airway patency and ensuring adequate ventilation and oxygenation. The term *airway management* refers to this practice and is a cornerstone of anesthesia.
- Successful airway management requires a range of knowledge and skill sets—specifically, the ability to predict difficulty with airway management and to formulate an airway management strategy, as well as the skills to execute that strategy using the wide array of airway devices available.
- The American Society of Anesthesiologists' *Practice Guidelines for Management of the Difficult Airway* and the accompanying Difficult Airway Algorithm provide guidelines for the evaluation of the airway and preparation for difficult airway management and can guide clinical decision making when an anesthesiologist is faced with a known or potentially difficult airway. Cognitive aids, such as the Vortex approach, are useful to help implement airway algorithms in an emergency situation.
- A detailed understanding of airway anatomy is essential for the anesthesia provider.
- A complete evaluation of the airway and knowledge of difficult airway predictors can alert the anesthesiologist to the potential for difficulty with airway management and allow for appropriate planning.
- Apneic oxygenation can be used to prolong the duration of apnea without desaturation and is increasingly being adopted during the management of both difficult and routine airways.
- Application of local anesthesia to the airway or induction of general anesthesia is usually required to facilitate airway management, to provide comfort for the patient, and to blunt airway reflexes and the hemodynamic response to airway instrumentation.
- Over the past 30 years, the laryngeal mask airway (LMA) has emerged as one of the most important developments in airway devices.
- Tracheal intubation establishes a definitive airway, provides maximal protection against aspiration of gastric contents, and allows for positive-pressure ventilation with higher airway pressures than via a face mask or supraglottic airway.
- Flexible scope intubation of the trachea in an awake, spontaneously ventilating, and cooperative patient is the *gold standard* for the management of the difficult airway.
- Invasive airways are indicated as a rescue technique when attempts at establishing a noninvasive airway fail. The anesthesia practitioner should become proficient with techniques for transtracheal jet ventilation and cricothyrotomy.
- Extubation is a critical component of airway management with the potential for significant complications. The plan for extubation of the trachea must be preemptively formulated and includes a strategy for reintubation should the patient be unable to maintain an adequate airway after extubation.

Introduction

General anesthesia is associated with various effects on the respiratory system, including the loss of airway patency, loss of protective airway reflexes, and hypoventilation or apnea. Therefore one of the fundamental responsibilities of the anesthesiologist is to establish airway patency and to ensure adequate ventilation and oxygenation. The term *airway management* refers to the practice of establishing and securing a patent airway and is a cornerstone of anesthetic practice. Traditionally, ventilation via a mask and tracheal intubation have been the foundation of airway management; however, in the past 30 years, the laryngeal mask airway (LMA) has emerged as one of the most important developments in airway devices.

Because failure to secure a patent airway can result in hypoxic brain injury or death in only a few minutes, difficulty with airway management has potentially grave implications. Analysis of the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Closed Claims Project database has demonstrated that the development of an airway emergency increases the odds of death or brain damage by 15-fold.[1]

Although the proportion of claims attributable to airway-related complications has decreased over the past 3 decades, airway complications are still the second-most common cause of claims.[2] In 2011, the Royal College of Anaesthetists and the Difficult Airway Society (DAS) of the United Kingdom reported the results of the 4th National Audit Project (NAP4), a 1-year audit aimed at determining the incidence of major complications of airway management in anesthesia. NAP4 identified 133 major airway-related events in the perioperative period resulting in 16 deaths—a mortality incidence of 1 per 180,000 anesthetics—a number that could be as high as 1 per 50,000 anesthetics when underreporting is considered.[3] The most common airway problems in the NAP4 study were failure, delay, or difficulty in securing the airway; aspiration of gastric contents; and extubation-related complications. Poor assessment of the airway, poor planning, and a lack of personal and/or institutional preparedness for managing difficulty with airway management were the most common contributing factors.[4]

Studies such as these highlight the importance of successful airway management, which requires a range of knowledge and skill sets—specifically, the ability to predict difficulty with airway management, to formulate an airway management strategy, and to have the skills necessary to execute that strategy using the wide array of available airway devices.[5] Development of these skills should be an ongoing endeavor for all anesthesiologists. As with any manual skill, continued practice improves performance and may reduce the likelihood of complications. New airway devices are continually being introduced into the clinical arena, each with unique properties that may be advantageous in certain situations. Becoming familiar with new devices under controlled conditions is important for the anesthesia practitioner—the difficult airway is not an appropriate setting during which to experiment with a new technique.

ALGORITHMS FOR MANAGEMENT OF THE DIFFICULT AIRWAY

The American Society of Anesthesiologists Algorithm

In 1993, the ASA published the first *Practice Guidelines for Management of the Difficult Airway*, which was written with the intent to "facilitate the management of the difficult airway and to reduce the likelihood of adverse outcomes."[6] The most recent update to this report, published in 2013, defines the difficult airway as "the clinical situation in which a conventionally trained anesthesiologist experiences difficulty with ventilation of the upper airway via a mask, difficulty with tracheal intubation, or both" and provides guidelines for the evaluation of the airway and preparation for difficult airway management, including a Difficult Airway Algorithm (DAA) intended to guide clinical decision making when an anesthesiologist is faced with a known or potential difficult airway (Fig. 44.1).[7] The ASA DAA begins with a consideration of the relative clinical merits and feasibility of four basic management choices: (1) awake intubation versus intubation after induction of general anesthesia, (2) noninvasive techniques versus invasive techniques (i.e., surgical or percutaneous airway) for the initial approach to intubation, (3) video-assisted laryngoscopy (VAL) as an initial approach to intubation, and (4) preservation versus ablation of spontaneous ventilation.

The ASA DAA does not follow a linear decision-making tree, as the advanced cardiac life support (ACLS) algorithms do. It can be better understood and remembered by considering it as three separate scenarios: (1) predicted difficult airway (awake intubation), (2) difficult intubation with adequate oxygenation/ventilation (the "*non-emergency*" pathway), and (3) difficult intubation without adequate oxygenation/ventilation (the "cannot intubate, cannot oxygenate" [CICO] scenario or the "*emergency*" pathway).

Other Difficult Airway Algorithms

In addition to the ASA, several different national anesthesia societies have published their own guidelines for management of the difficult airway, including the Difficult Airway Society (DAS) from the United Kingdom,[8] the Canadian Airway Focus Group (CAFG),[9,10] the French Society of Anesthesia and Intensive Care (SFAR),[11] the German Society of Anesthesiology and Intensive Care Medicine (DGAI),[12] the Italian Society for Anesthesia and Intensive Care (SIAARTI),[13] and the Japanese Society of Anesthesiologists.[14] All of these include recommendations for the prediction of the difficult airway and suggest awake intubation as a management strategy (with the exception of the DAS guidelines) and all incorporate algorithms for both unanticipated difficult intubation with adequate oxygenation and the CICO scenario. Common elements include a focus on awakening the patient in the setting of a difficult intubation with adequate ventilation, the use of the LMA as a rescue for difficult mask ventilation, and emergency front of neck access (FONA) in the CICO scenario. The primary differences in these algorithms are in specific details, such as the number of intubation attempts suggested, the specific alternate devices recommended for difficult intubation, and the organization of the algorithm.[15]

Human Factors and Cognitive Aids

There has been growing attention to the influence of "human factors" on difficult airway management—namely, human behaviors, abilities, shortcomings, and biases as well as individual and team performance. Studies such as NAP4 have shown that these human factors contribute to an adverse airway outcome in over 40% of cases.[3] The use of airway checklists, preprocedural team briefings, and cognitive aids are all strategies for addressing human factor challenges.[16]

The Vortex approach, conceived by Dr. Nicholas Chrimes, a specialist anaesthetist in Melbourne, Australia, is one such cognitive aid designed to facilitate management of the unanticipated difficult airway.[17] Rather than relying on complex algorithms that are based on decision trees, the Vortex model utilizes a visual aid in the shape of a funnel or vortex (Fig. 44.2) to guide the airway practitioner through the three basic nonsurgical airway techniques (face-mask ventilation, supraglottic airway [SGA], and tracheal intubation). If after an "optimal attempt" at each of these nonsurgical modalities alveolar oxygen delivery has not been achieved, then one "travels down the vortex," and an emergency surgical airway is indicated. Because this strategic approach is more conceptual, it is simple enough to be utilized and recalled during a stressful airway emergency.

Functional Airway Anatomy

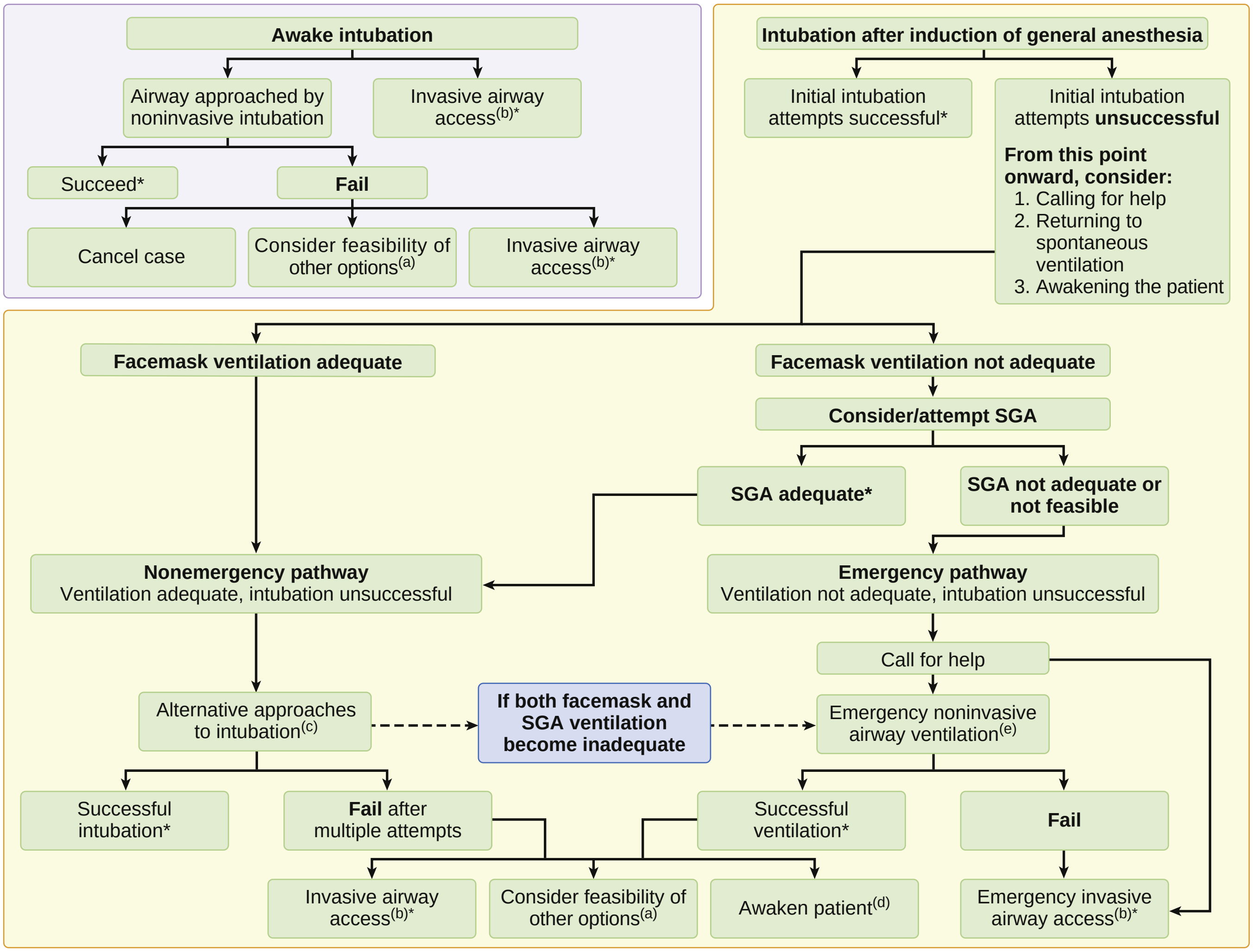
A detailed understanding of airway anatomy is essential for the anesthesiologist. Various aspects of airway

1. Assess the likelihood and clinical impact of basic management problems:
   - Difficulty with patient cooperation or consent
   - Difficult mask ventilation
   - Difficult supraglottic airway placement
   - Difficult laryngoscopy
   - Difficult intubation
   - Difficult surgical airway access

2. Actively pursue opportunities to deliver supplemental oxygen throughout the process of difficult airway management.

3. Consider the relative merits and feasibility of basic management choices:
   - Awake intubation *vs.* intubation after induction of general anesthesia
   - Noninvasive technique *vs.* invasive techniques for the initial approach to intubation
   - Video-assisted laryngoscopy as an initial approach to intubation
   - Preservation *vs.* ablation of spontaneous ventilation

4. Develop primary and alternative strategies:


Awake intubation
Airway approached by noninvasive intubation
Invasive airway access(b)*
Succeed*
Fail
Cancel case
Consider feasibility of other options(a)
Invasive airway access(b)*
Intubation after induction of general anesthesia
Initial intubation attempts successful*
Initial intubation attempts unsuccessful
From this point onward, consider:
1. Calling for help
2. Returning to spontaneous ventilation
3. Awakening the patient
Facemask ventilation adequate
Facemask ventilation not adequate
Consider/attempt SGA
SGA adequate*
SGA not adequate or not feasible
Nonemergency pathway
Ventilation adequate, intubation unsuccessful
Emergency pathway
Ventilation not adequate, intubation unsuccessful
Call for help
Alternative approaches to intubation(c)
If both facemask and SGA ventilation become inadequate
Emergency noninvasive airway ventilation(e)
Successful intubation*
Fail after multiple attempts
Successful ventilation*
Fail
Invasive airway access(b)*
Consider feasibility of other options(a)
Awaken patient(d)
Emergency invasive airway access(b)*

***Confirm ventilation, tracheal intubation, or SGA placement with exhaled CO$_2$.**

a. Other options include (but are not limited to): surgery using facemask or supraglottic airway (SGA) anesthesia (e.g., LMA, ILMA, laryngeal tube), local anesthesia infiltration, or regional nerve blockade. Pursuit of these options usually implies that mask ventilation will not be problematic. Therefore these options may be of limited value if this step in the algorithm has been reached via the Emergency Pathway.

b. Invasive airway access includes surgical or percutaneous airway, jet ventilation, and retrograde intubation.

c. Alternative difficult intubation approaches include (but are not limited to): video-assisted laryngoscopy, alternative laryngoscope blades, SGA (e.g., LMA or ILMA) as an intubation conduit (with or without fiberoptic guidance), fiberoptic intubation, intubating stylet or tube changer, light wand, and blind oral or nasal intubation.

d. Consider re-preparation of the patient for awake intubation or canceling surgery.

e. Emergency noninvasive airway ventilation consists of a SGA.

Fig. 44.1 The American Society of Anesthesiologists' Difficult Airway Algorithm. (From Apfelbaum JL, Hagberg CA, Caplan RA, et al. Practice guidelines for management of the difficult airway: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Management of the Difficult Airway. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:251–270.)

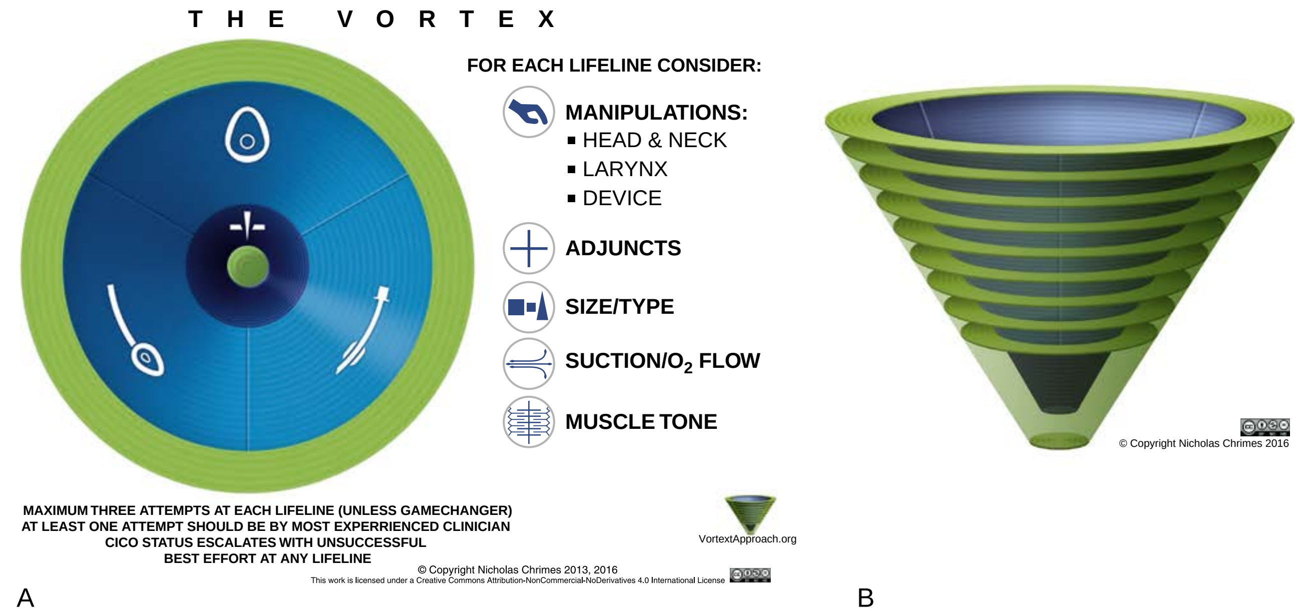

THE VORTEX
FOR EACH LIFELINE CONSIDER:
MANIPULATIONS:
■ HEAD & NECK
■ LARYNX
■ DEVICE
ADJUNCTS
SIZE/TYPE
SUCTION/O₂ FLOW
MUSCLE TONE
MAXIMUM THREE ATTEMPTS AT EACH LIFELINE (UNLESS GAMECHANGER)
AT LEAST ONE ATTEMPT SHOULD BE BY MOST EXPERRIENCED CLINICIAN
CICO STATUS ESCALATES WITH UNSUCCESSFUL
BEST EFFORT AT ANY LIFELINE
VortextApproach.org
© Copyright Nicholas Chrimes 2013, 2016
This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives 4.0 International License
© Copyright Nicholas Chrimes 2016
A
B

Fig. 44.2 (A) The Vortex implementation tool. (B) Lateral aspect of the Vortex in three dimensions, demonstrating the funnel concept. (From Chrimes N. The Vortex: a universal 'high-acuity implementation tool' for emergency airway management. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117:i20–i27.)

management depend on a working knowledge of the anatomy involved, including airway assessment, preparation of the airway for awake intubation, and the proper use of airway devices. Knowledge of normal anatomy and anatomic variations that may render airway management more difficult helps with the formulation of an airway management plan. Because some critical anatomic structures may be obscured during airway management, the anesthesiologist must be familiar with the interrelationship between different airway structures.

The airway can be divided into the upper airway, which includes the nasal cavity, the oral cavity, the pharynx, and the larynx; and the lower airway, which consists of the tracheobronchial tree.

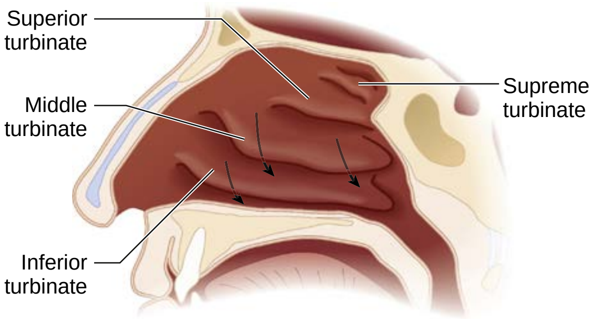

Superior turbinate
Middle turbinate
Inferior turbinate
Supreme turbinate

Fig. 44.3 Lateral wall of the nasal cavity. (From Redden RJ. Anatomic considerations in anesthesia. In: Hagberg CA, ed. *Handbook of Difficult Airway Management*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000, p. 3, Fig. 1.2.)

NASAL CAVITY

The airway begins functionally at the naris, the external opening of the nasal passages. The nasal cavity is divided into the right and left nasal passages (or fossae) by the nasal septum, which forms the medial wall of each passage. The septum is formed by the septal cartilage anteriorly and by two bones posteriorly—\the ethmoid (superiorly) and the vomer (inferiorly). Nasal septal deviation is common in the adult population[18]; therefore the more patent side should be determined before passing instrumentation through the nasal passages. The lateral wall of the nasal passages is characterized by the presence of three turbinates (or conchae) that divide the nasal passage into three scroll-shaped meatuses (Fig. 44.3). The inferior meatus, between the inferior turbinate and the floor of the nasal cavity, is the preferred pathway for passage of nasal airway devices[19]; improper placement of objects in the nose can result in avulsion of a turbinate.[20,21] The roof of the nasal cavity is formed by the cribriform plate, part of the ethmoid bone. This fragile structure, if fractured, can result in communication between the nasal and intracranial cavities and a resultant leakage of cerebrospinal fluid. Because the mucosal lining of the nasal cavity is highly vascular, vasoconstrictor should be applied, usually topically, before instrumentation of the nose to minimize epistaxis. The posterior openings of the nasal passages are the choanae, which lead into the nasopharynx.

ORAL CAVITY

Because of the relatively small size of the nasal passages and the significant risk of trauma, the mouth is often used as a conduit for airway devices. Many airway procedures require adequate mouth opening, which is accomplished by rotation within the temporomandibular joint (TMJ) and subsequent opening by sliding (also known as *protrusion* or *subluxation*) of the condyles of the mandible within the TMJ.[22]

The oral cavity leads to the oropharynx and is inferiorly bounded by the tongue and superiorly by the hard and soft palates. The hard palate, formed by parts of the maxilla and the palatine bone, makes up the anterior two thirds of the roof of the mouth; the soft palate (velum palatinum), a fibromuscular fold of tissue attached to the hard palate, forms the posterior one third of the roof of the mouth.

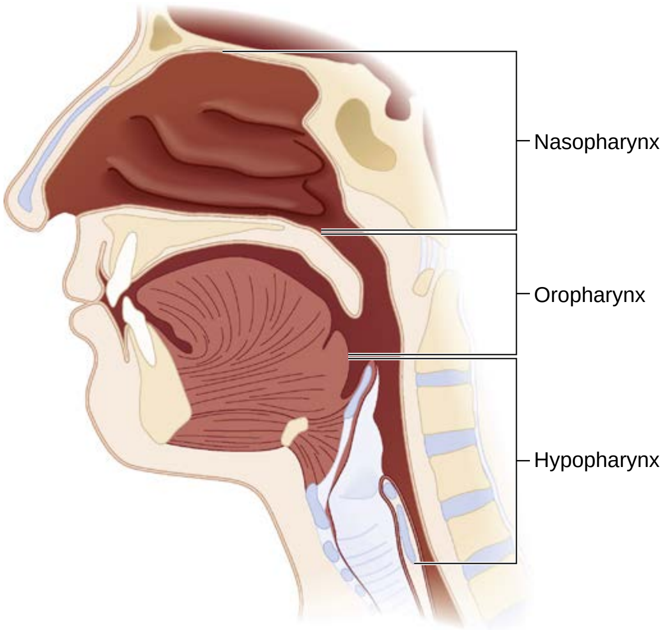


Fig. 44.4 **Sagittal section through the head and neck showing the subdivisions of the pharynx.** (From Redden RJ. Anatomic considerations in anesthesia. In: Hagberg CA, ed. *Handbook of Difficult Airway Management*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000, p. 7, Fig. 1.6.)

The tongue is anchored to various structures by its extrinsic musculature; of these, the most clinically relevant to the anesthesiologist is the genioglossus, which connects the tongue to the mandible. The jaw-thrust maneuver uses the sliding component of the TMJ to move the mandible and the attached tongue anteriorly, thereby relieving airway obstruction caused by the posterior displacement of the tongue into the oropharynx.[22]

Beneath the tongue, the mylohyoid muscles separate the floor of the mouth into the sublingual space superiorly and the submental space inferiorly. Cellulitis (Ludwig's angina) or hematoma formation in these spaces can cause elevation and posterior displacement of the tongue and resultant airway obstruction.[23]

PHARYNX

The pharynx is a muscular tube that extends from the base of the skull down to the level of the cricoid cartilage and connects the nasal and oral cavities with the larynx and esophagus. The posterior wall of the pharynx is made up of the buccopharyngeal fascia, which separates the pharynx from the retropharyngeal space. Improper placement of a gastric or tracheal tube can result in laceration of this fascia and the formation of a retropharyngeal dissection.[24,25] The pharyngeal musculature in the awake patient helps maintain airway patency; loss of pharyngeal muscle tone is one of the primary causes of upper airway obstruction during anesthesia.[26,27] A chin lift with mouth closure increases longitudinal tension in the pharyngeal muscles, counteracting the tendency of the pharyngeal airway to collapse.[28]

The pharynx can be divided into the nasopharynx, the oropharynx, and the hypopharynx (Fig. 44.4). Along the superior and posterior walls of the nasopharynx are the adenoid tonsils, which can cause chronic nasal obstruction and, when enlarged, can cause difficulty passaging airway devices. The nasopharynx ends at the soft palate; this region is termed the *velopharynx* and is a common site of airway obstruction in both awake and anesthetized patients.[26] The oropharynx begins at the soft palate and extends inferiorly to the level of the epiglottis. The lateral walls contain the palatoglossal folds and the palatopharyngeal folds, also termed the *anterior* and *posterior faucial* (tonsillar) *pillars*, respectively; these folds contain the palatine tonsils, which can hypertrophy and cause airway obstruction (Fig. 44.5). The base of the tongue lies in the anterior aspect of the oropharynx, connected to the epiglottis by the glossoepiglottic folds, which bound paired spaces known as the *valleculae* (although these are frequently referred to as a single space called the *vallecula*). The hypopharynx begins at the level of the epiglottis and terminates at the level of the cricoid cartilage, where it is continuous with the esophagus. The larynx protrudes into the hypopharynx, creating two piriform recesses on either side (Fig. 44.6).

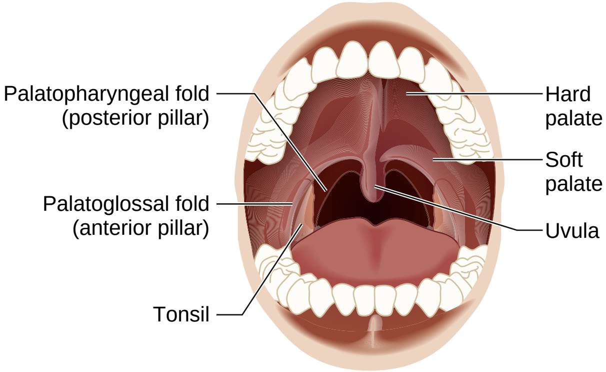


Fig. 44.5 **Oral cavity and oropharynx.** (From Redden RJ. Anatomic considerations in anesthesia. In: Hagberg CA, ed. *Handbook of Difficult Airway Management*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000, p. 8, Fig. 1.7.)

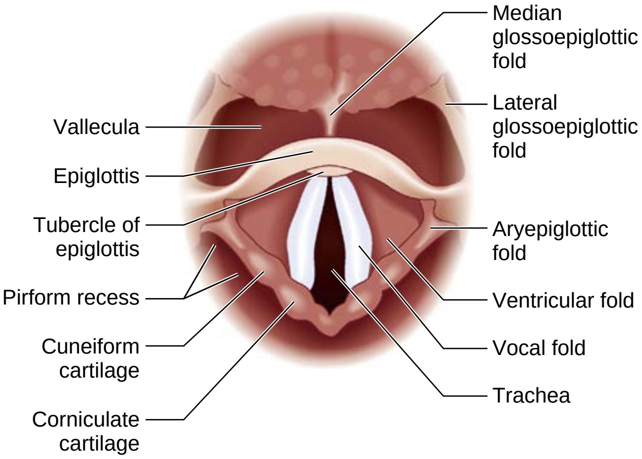


Fig. 44.6 **Larynx as visualized from the hypopharynx.** (From Redden RJ. Anatomic considerations in anesthesia. In: Hagberg CA, ed. *Handbook of Difficult Airway Management*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000, p. 8, Fig. 1.8.)

LARYNX

The larynx is a complex structure of cartilage, muscles, and ligaments that serves as the inlet to the trachea and

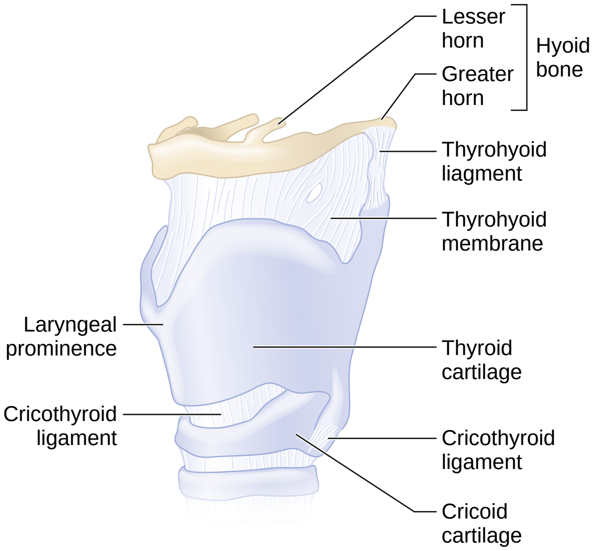


Fig. 44.7 Cartilaginous and membranous components of the larynx. (From Redden RJ. Anatomic considerations in anesthesia. In: Hagberg CA, ed. *Handbook of Difficult Airway Management*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000, p. 10, Fig. 1.9.)

performs various functions, including phonation and airway protection. The cartilaginous framework of the larynx is made up of nine separate cartilages: the thyroid and cricoid cartilages; the paired arytenoid, corniculate, and cuneiform cartilages; and the epiglottis. They are joined by ligaments, membranes, and synovial joints, and are suspended by the hyoid bone via the thyrohyoid ligaments and membrane (Fig. 44.7).

The thyroid cartilage is the largest of these cartilages and supports most of the soft tissues of the larynx. The superior thyroid notch and the associated laryngeal prominence (*Adam's apple*) are appreciable from the anterior neck and serve as important landmarks for percutaneous airway techniques and laryngeal nerve blocks. The cricoid cartilage, at the level of the sixth cervical vertebra, is the inferior limit of the larynx and is anteriorly connected to the thyroid cartilage by the cricothyroid membrane (CTM). It is the only complete cartilaginous ring in the airway. The arytenoid cartilages articulate with the posterior cricoid and are the posterior attachments for the vocal cords.

When viewed from the pharynx, as during direct laryngoscopy (DL), the larynx begins at the epiglottis, which is a cartilaginous flap that serves as the anterior border of the laryngeal inlet. It functions to divert food away from the larynx during the act of swallowing, although its role in this regard is not essential to prevent tracheal aspiration.[29] The anterior surface of the epiglottis is attached to the upper border of the hyoid bone by the hyoepiglottic ligament. The laryngeal inlet is bound laterally by the aryepiglottic folds, and posteriorly by the corniculate cartilages and the interarytenoid notch (see Fig. 44.6).

The space inferior to the laryngeal inlet down to the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage is the laryngeal cavity. The ventricular folds (also referred to as the *vestibular folds* or *false vocal cords*) are the most superior structure within the laryngeal cavity. Beneath these are the true vocal cords, which attach to the arytenoids posteriorly and the thyroid cartilage anteriorly, where they join together to form the anterior commissure. The space between the vocal cords is termed the *glottis*; the portion of the laryngeal cavity above the glottis is known as the *vestibule*, and the portion inferior to the vocal cords is known as the *subglottis*.

TRACHEA AND BRONCHI

The trachea begins at the level of the cricoid cartilage and extends to the carina at the level of the fifth thoracic vertebra; this length is 10 to 15 cm in the adult. It consists of 16 to 20 C-shaped cartilaginous rings that open posteriorly and are joined by fibroelastic tissue; the trachealis muscle forms the posterior wall of the trachea. At the carina, the trachea bifurcates into the right and left mainstem bronchi. In the adult, the right mainstem bronchus branches off at a more vertical angle than the left mainstem bronchus, resulting in a greater likelihood of foreign bodies and endotracheal tubes (ETTs) entering the right bronchial lumen.[30]

Airway Assessment

Although the anesthesia provider should always be prepared for potential difficulty with airway management, the ability to predict the difficult airway in advance is obviously desirable. Certain physical findings or details from the patient's history can be prognostic of difficulty with mask ventilation, supraglottic airway placement, laryngoscopy, tracheal intubation, or the performance of a surgical airway. No single test has been devised to predict a difficult airway accurately 100% of the time; however, a complete evaluation of the airway and knowledge of the difficult airway predictors can alert the anesthesiologist to the potential for difficulty and allow for appropriate planning.

TRADITIONAL METRICS

Airway assessment should begin with a directed patient history whenever possible.[7] One of the most predictive factors for difficult intubation is a history of previous difficulty with intubation.[31] On the other hand, a history of a previously easy airway does not rule out the possibility of difficulty with ventilation or intubation. In either case, the patient interview should specifically address changes in weight, symptomatology, and pathologic conditions since the last induction of an anesthetic (if there was one), and attempts should be made at obtaining prior anesthetic records—they may yield useful information concerning airway management. The presence of pathologic states that increase the risk of a difficult airway should be elicited by performing a medical history. A focused review of systems can alert the anesthesiologist to other potential factors that may predict difficult airway management; for example, a history of snoring has been shown to be predictive of difficult mask ventilation.[32,33]

A physical examination of the airway should be preoperatively performed, when possible, to detect any physical characteristics that may suggest a difficult airway.[7] The specific characteristics that should be evaluated in this examination are listed in Box 44.1.

The visual inspection of the face and neck should focus on any physical characteristics that may indicate the potential

BOX 44.1 Components of the Physical Examination of the Airway

- Visual inspection of the face and neck
- Assessment of mouth opening
- Evaluation of oropharyngeal anatomy and dentition
- Assessment of neck range of motion (ability of the patient to assume the sniffing position)
- Assessment of the submandibular space
- Assessment of the patient's ability to slide the mandible anteriorly (test of mandibular prognathism)

for difficulty with airway management. These include obvious facial deformities, neoplasms involving the face or neck, facial burns, a large goiter, a short or thick neck, or a receding mandible. The presence of a beard has been shown to be associated with difficult ventilation attributable to the difficulty in obtaining a mask seal.[32,33] Cervical collars or cervical traction devices can interfere with both mask ventilation and DL. A neck circumference greater than 43 cm (17 inches) is associated with difficulty with tracheal intubation[34]; Brodsky demonstrated that a large neck circumference is, in fact, more predictive of difficulty with tracheal intubation than a high body mass index (BMI).[35]

Assessment of mouth opening and inspection of the oropharyngeal anatomy is achieved by instructing the patient to open his or her mouth as wide as possible. An interincisor distance of less than 3 cm (or 2 fingerbreadths), as measured from the upper to the lower incisors with maximal mouth opening, can suggest the possibility of difficult intubation[7]; some studies have used 4 or 4.5 cm as the cutoff.[36] A thorough inspection of the oropharynx can help identify pathologic characteristics that may result in difficulty with intubation, such as neoplasm, a high arched palate, or macroglossia. In 1983, Mallampati and associates described a clinical sign to predict difficult tracheal intubation based on the size of the base of the tongue.[37] A Mallampati classification of I to III is assigned, based on the visibility of the faucial pillars, uvula, and soft palate when the patient is seated upright with the head neutral, the mouth open, the tongue protruded, and no phonation.[38] Higher scores on the Mallampati classification indicate poor visibility of the oropharyngeal structures attributable to a large tongue relative to the size of the oropharyngeal space, and, subsequently, a more difficult laryngoscopy. The modified Mallampati classification described by Samsoon and Young,[39] which adds a fourth classification, is the most commonly used airway assessment test in current anesthesia practice and is defined as follows (Fig. 44.8):

- Class I: Faucial pillars, uvula, and soft palate are visualized.
- Class II: Base of the uvula and soft palate are visualized.
- Class III: Soft palate only is visualized.
- Class IV: Hard palate only is visualized.

As a stand-alone test, the modified Mallampati classification is insufficient for accurate prediction of difficult intubation; however, it may have clinical utility in combination with other difficult airway predictors.[40] Some studies support obtaining a Mallampati score with the head in full extension to improve the predictive value of the test.[38,41]

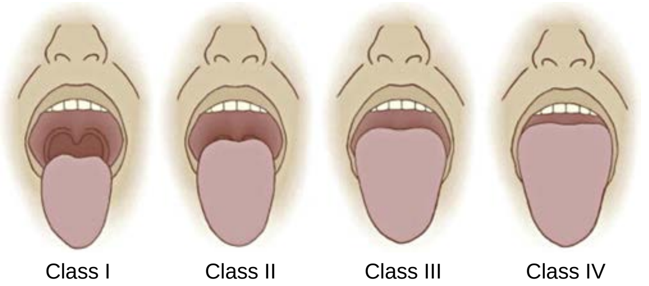


Fig. 44.8 Modified Mallampati classification as described by Samsoon and Young. Classes are differentiated on the basis of the structures visualized: class I—soft palate, fauces, uvula, tonsillar pillars; class II—soft palate, fauces, uvula; class III—soft palate, base of the uvula; class IV—soft palate not visible. (From Mallampati SR. Recognition of the difficult airway. In: Benumof JL, ed. *Airway Management Principles and Practice.* St Louis: Mosby; 1996, p. 132.)

A Mallampati *zero* classification has been proposed when the epiglottis can be visualized during examination of the oropharynx; this finding is usually associated with easy laryngoscopy,[42,43] although difficulty with airway management attributable to a large, floppy epiglottis in patients with a Mallampati zero classification can occur.[44,45]

An examination of dentition should be performed when the oropharyngeal anatomy is being evaluated.[7] Relatively long upper incisors can impair DL. Poor dentition and loose teeth increase the risk of dental trauma and present a risk of tooth dislodgment with subsequent aspiration; very loose teeth should be removed before laryngoscopy. Cosmetic dental work, such as veneers, caps, crowns, and bridges, are particularly susceptible to damage during airway management. Edentulousness is predictive of easy tracheal intubation but potentially difficult mask ventilation.[46]

The ideal positioning for DL is achieved by cervical flexion and atlantooccipital extension and is most commonly referred to as the *sniffing position*[47] (see Direct Laryngoscopy: Preparation and Positioning). Assessment of a patient's ability to assume this position should be included in the airway examination; an inability to extend the neck at the atlantooccipital joint is associated with difficult intubation.[48] Head and neck mobility can also be quantitatively assessed by measuring the sternomental distance between the sternal notch and the point of the chin with the head in full extension and the mouth closed. Distances less than 12.5 cm are associated with difficult intubation.[49] An assessment of overall neck range of motion can be performed by measuring the angle created by the forehead when the neck is fully flexed and then fully extended; a measurement of less than 80 degrees is predictive of difficult intubation.[50]

During DL, the tongue is displaced into the submandibular space; glottic visualization may be inadequate if this space is diminished because of a small mandible. This scenario is frequently referred to as an *anterior larynx*. A thyromental distance of less than 6.5 cm (3 fingerbreadths), as measured from the thyroid notch to the lower border of the mentum, is indicative of reduced mandibular space and may predict difficulty with intubation.[36,49] Compliance of this space should also be assessed; a lack of compliance or the presence of a mass is a nonreassuring finding.[7]

Tests of the ability for mandibular protrusion (prognathism) have predictive value and should be included in the airway assessment. The inability to extend the lower incisors beyond the upper incisors may be indicative of difficult laryngoscopy.[51] A similar evaluation, the upper lip bite test (ULBT) described by Khan and colleagues, has been shown to predict difficult laryngoscopy with higher specificity and less interobserver variability than the Mallampati classification; an inability of the lower incisors to bite the upper lip is associated with more difficult laryngoscopy.[52,53]

Although individual airway tests are limited by low sensitivity and positive predictive value, some multivariable assessments have been shown to have higher predictive power. The Mallampati score has been shown to have improved predictive value when combined with thyromental, sternomental, and/or interincisor distances.[49] Models that use several risk factors, such as the Wilson risk sum score (weight, head and neck movement, jaw movement, receding mandible, and buck teeth) and the El-Ganzouri risk index (mouth opening, thyromental distance, Mallampati class, neck movement, prognathism, weight, and history of difficult intubation) have been developed in an attempt to improve the predictive value of airway assessment.[50,54] On the other hand, a recent large database study of an airway risk index that utilizes seven independent risk factors found that it does not improve prediction of difficult intubation.[55] Langeron and associates developed a computer-assisted model that uses complex interactions among several risk factors (BMI, mouth opening, thyromental distance, Mallampati class, and receding mandible) to predict difficult intubation more accurately than other models based on simpler statistical analyses.[56]

NEW MODALITIES

Owing to the poor sensitivity and specificity of traditional metrics for airway assessment, a number of new modalities are being studied. The use of point-of-care ultrasonography for the prediction of difficult laryngoscopy and intubation has shown some promise in small studies, but its overall value has yet to be established.[57] Computed tomographic images of the head and neck can be used to create three-dimensional virtual endoscopic images that can be used for planning difficult airway management, particularly for patients with complex airway pathology.[58] Early studies of facial image analysis have also shown promise for the use of this technology in predicting difficult intubation.[59]

Physiologic Concepts for Airway Management

PREOXYGENATION

With the induction of anesthesia, hypoxemia can quickly develop as a result of hypoventilation or apnea in combination with decreases in functional residual capacity (FRC) attributable to the supine position, muscle paralysis, and the direct effects of the anesthetic agents themselves. Preoxygenation, the process of replacing nitrogen in the lungs with oxygen, provides an increased length of time before hemoglobin desaturation occurs in an apneic patient. This lengthened *apnea time* provides an improved margin of safety while the anesthesiologist secures the airway and resumes ventilation. Adequate preoxygenation is essential when mask ventilation after the induction of anesthesia is contraindicated or anticipated to be difficult, when intubation is anticipated to be difficult, and in patients with a smaller FRC (i.e., patients who are obese or pregnant).[60] Because difficulty with airway management can unexpectedly occur, routine preoxygenation before induction of general anesthesia is recommended.[61]

Preoxygenation is typically performed via a face mask attached to either the anesthesia machine or a Mapleson circuit. To ensure adequate preoxygenation, 100% oxygen must be provided at a flow rate high enough to prevent rebreathing (10 to 12 L/min), and no leaks around the face mask must be present. An end-tidal concentration of oxygen greater than 90% is considered to maximize apnea time. With maximal preoxygenation, the time to oxyhemoglobin desaturation below 80% can vary from 9 minutes in a healthy, nonobese adult to 3 minutes or less in children or obese adults.[62]

Two primary methods are used to accomplish preoxygenation. The first method uses tidal volume ventilation through the face mask for 3 minutes, which allows the exchange of 95% of the gas in the lungs.[60] The second method uses vital capacity breaths to achieve adequate preoxygenation more rapidly. Four breaths over 30 seconds is not as effective as the tidal volume method but may be acceptable in certain clinical situations; eight breaths over 60 seconds has been shown to be more effective.[60]

Transnasal humidified rapid-insufflation ventilatory exchange (THRIVE) at 60 L/min for 3 minutes has been demonstrated to be as effective as tidal volume preoxygenation by face mask (see Apneic Oxygenation).[63] Head-up positioning has been shown to improve the quality of preoxygenation in both obese[64] and nonobese patients.[65] The use of noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation (PPV) for preoxygenation also prolongs apnea time.[66,67]

APNEIC OXYGENATION

Apneic oxygenation is a physiologic phenomenon by which oxygen from the oropharynx or nasopharynx diffuses down into the alveoli as a result of the net negative alveolar gas exchange rate resulting from oxygen removal and carbon dioxide excretion during apnea. Assuming the airway is patent and oxygen is insufflated through the nose and/or mouth, oxygenation occurs, prolonging apnea time beyond that of standard face-mask preoxygenation.[68]

Oxygen can be insufflated at up to 15 L/min with nasal cannulae (nasal oxygen during efforts securing a tube [NO DESAT])[69] or with a catheter placed through the nose or mouth with the tip in the pharynx (pharyngeal oxygen insufflation).[70] Studies have demonstrated that these techniques are effective in delaying oxyhemoglobin desaturation in morbidly obese patients[71,72] and during emergency tracheal intubation.[73,74]

THRIVE involves the administration of warmed, humidified oxygen, allowing higher oxygen flow rates than the previously described techniques—up to 70 L/min. These higher flows extend the apnea time even further and improve the clearance of carbon dioxide, preventing the potential development of severe respiratory acidosis. In 25 patients with a difficult airway at risk for rapid desaturation, THRIVE was used to achieve a median apnea time of 14 minutes, with a range of 5 to 65 minutes, and an average rate of carbon dioxide rise of only 1.1 mm Hg per minute.[63]

PULMONARY ASPIRATION OF GASTRIC CONTENTS

In 1946, Mendelson was the first to describe aspiration pneumonitis attributable to the pulmonary aspiration of acidic gastric secretions in pregnant women undergoing anesthesia.[75] This potentially fatal complication, occasionally referred to as Mendelson syndrome, has since been the intense focus of preventive efforts among the anesthesia community. Prevention of aspiration of gastric contents is primarily accomplished by adherence to established preoperative fasting guidelines, premedication with drugs that may decrease the risk of aspiration pneumonitis, and specialized induction techniques, which are discussed later in this chapter.

Traditionally, patients who were scheduled for elective procedures requiring sedation, regional anesthesia, or general anesthesia were instructed to remain NPO (Latin for *nulla per os* or *nothing by mouth*) after midnight to ensure an empty stomach to decrease the risk of regurgitation. Based on evidence that allowing ingestion of clear liquids 2 to 4 hours before surgery resulted in lower gastric volumes and higher gastric pH, the ASA published *Practice Guidelines for Preoperative Fasting and the Use of Pharmacologic Agents to Reduce the Risk of Pulmonary Aspiration* in 1999 that liberalized the traditional NPO policy and allowed clear liquids up to 2 hours before beginning elective procedures requiring anesthesia. The guidelines, most recently updated in 2017, recommend 4 hours of fasting from breast milk and 6 hours of fasting from solid foods, infant formula, and nonhuman milk.[76] Fried or fatty foods may require longer fasting times (e.g., 8 hours or more).[76] Although the ASA guidelines do not specifically address chewing gum, hard candies, or smoking, guidelines published by the European Society of Anaesthesiology on the topic do not recommend delaying the start of anesthesia if a patient has consumed any of these immediately before the induction of anesthesia.[77]

The routine use of drugs as prophylaxis against aspiration pneumonitis is not recommended by the ASA guidelines[76] but may be beneficial in patients with specific risk factors for aspiration, such as a full stomach, symptomatic gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD), hiatal hernia, presence of a nasogastric tube, morbid obesity, diabetic gastroparesis, or pregnancy.[78,79] The goal of aspiration prophylaxis is twofold: to decrease gastric volume and to increase gastric fluid pH. Commonly used agents include nonparticulate antacids (e.g., Bicitra), promotility drugs (e.g., metoclopramide), and H_2-receptor antagonists. These drugs may be used alone or in combination.[80]

AIRWAY REFLEXES AND THE PHYSIOLOGIC RESPONSE TO INTUBATION OF THE TRACHEA

One of the most important teleologic functions of the larynx is that of airway protection, which is primarily provided by the glottic closure reflex. This reflex is triggered by sensory receptors in the glottic and subglottic mucosa and results in strong adduction of the vocal cords.[81] An exaggerated, maladaptive manifestation of this reflex, referred to as *laryngospasm*, is a potential complication of airway management. Laryngospasm is usually provoked by glossopharyngeal or vagal stimulation attributable to airway instrumentation or vocal cord irritation (e.g., from blood or vomitus) in the setting of a light plane of anesthesia (stage II of the Guedel classification), but it can also be precipitated by other noxious stimuli and can persist well after the removal of the stimulus. Treatment of laryngospasm includes removal of airway irritants, deepening of the anesthetic, and the administration of a rapid-onset neuromuscular blocking drug (NMBD), such as succinylcholine.[82] Continuous positive airway pressure with 100% oxygen is commonly cited as a therapeutic maneuver, although the pressure may push the aryepiglottic folds closer together and may actually promote laryngospasm by acting as a mechanical stimulus.[83,84] Bilateral pressure at the *laryngospasm notch* between the condyle of the mandible and the mastoid process can be effective at treating laryngospasm by causing an intense, painful stimulus, which may function to terminate laryngospasm by arousing a semiconscious patient or by activating autonomic pathways.[82]

The tracheobronchial tree also possesses reflexes to protect the lungs from noxious substances. Irritation of the lower airway by a foreign substance activates a vagal reflex–mediated constriction of bronchial smooth muscle, resulting in bronchospasm. Untreated bronchospasm can result in an inability to ventilate because of an extremely elevated airway resistance. Treatment includes a deepening of anesthetic with propofol or a volatile agent and the administration of inhaled β_2-agonist or anticholinergic medications. Administration of intravenous (IV) lidocaine has been studied, but the evidence does not support its use for treatment of bronchospasm.[85]

Tracheal intubation, as well as laryngoscopy and other airway instrumentation, provides an intense noxious stimulus via vagal and glossopharyngeal afferents that results in a reflex autonomic activation, which is usually manifested as hypertension and tachycardia in adults and adolescents; in infants and small children, autonomic activation may result in bradycardia. Hypertension and tachycardia are usually of short duration; however, they may have consequences in patients with significant cardiac disease. Central nervous system activation as a result of airway management results in increases in electroencephalographic (EEG) activity, cerebral metabolic rate, and cerebral blood flow, which may result in an increase in intracranial pressure in patients with decreased intracranial compliance.[85]

Anesthesia for Airway Management

To facilitate airway management, some form of anesthesia is usually required to provide comfort for the patient, to blunt airway reflexes, and to blunt the hemodynamic response to airway instrumentation. Most commonly, airway management is performed after induction of general anesthesia. Alternatively, an *awake* technique, which entails establishing an airway (including tracheal intubation) by using local anesthesia of the airway and/or sedation, can be used to meet these goals when clinically indicated. In emergency scenarios where the patient is obtunded or comatose, such as in the event of acute respiratory or cardiac arrest, anesthetic drugs may not be required.

AIRWAY MANAGEMENT AFTER THE INDUCTION OF GENERAL ANESTHESIA

Airway management is usually performed after the induction of general anesthesia if the anesthesiologist determines that it is safe to do so. Several pharmacologic techniques are used for the induction of anesthesia, each with its own implications for airway management. The decision of which induction technique to use should be made with careful consideration of the specific clinical circumstances at hand.

Standard Intravenous Induction with Neuromuscular Blockade

The most common technique for induction of general anesthesia is the standard IV induction, which entails the administration of a rapid-acting IV anesthetic, followed by an NMBD. Muscle relaxation achieved by the administration of NMBDs improves intubating conditions by facilitating laryngoscopy, preventing both reflex laryngeal closure and coughing after intubation.[22,86]

Propofol is the most frequently used IV anesthetic drug; other options include etomidate, ketamine, thiopental, and midazolam. The choice of drug depends on a variety of factors including the patient's hemodynamic status, comorbidities, and allergies, as well as drug pharmacokinetics, side effects, physician preference, and availability.[87] Whether the choice of an anesthetic drug has any effect on the quality of intubating conditions when NMBDs are also administered is not well established. Studies comparing propofol, etomidate, and thiopental in combination with NMBDs showed no difference in intubating conditions between the different anesthetics.[88,89] On the other hand, one study, during which patients received cisatracurium, showed that larger doses of propofol were associated with improved intubating conditions, as compared with smaller doses.[90]

For many years, succinylcholine was the most frequently used NMBD for routine IV induction[87]; however, nondepolarizing NMBDs have gained greater popularity attributable to the risk of adverse effects from succinylcholine administration, including bradycardia, myalgia, hyperkalemia, increased intracranial pressure, and increased intragastric pressure.[91] Succinylcholine, the only depolarizing NMBD in clinical use, has the benefit of a rapid onset combined with a short duration of action, and it is currently used most often when those properties are desired. Most notably, succinylcholine is still commonly used in the setting of a suspected difficult airway; its short duration of action theoretically allows for the resumption of spontaneous ventilation before severe hypoxia develops in a preoxygenated patient, although evidence suggests that this may not predictably occur.[92]

Nondepolarizing NMBDs are the more frequently used relaxants for routine IV induction of anesthesia.[91] The most commonly used nondepolarizing NMBDs in current practice—rocuronium, vecuronium, and cisatracurium—are notable for having a favorable safety profile with relatively few side effects. The primary limitation of these drugs is a significantly longer duration of action; once administered, a functional airway must be established within minutes to avoid life-threatening hypoxia. Sugammadex is a selective relaxant-binding agent for rocuronium that has the ability to reverse profound neuromuscular blockade rapidly in a time comparable with spontaneous recovery from succinylcholine (also see Chapter 28).[93]

Traditional teaching in the United States has advocated withholding NMBDs until the ability to mask ventilate has been established. If ventilation via a mask cannot be achieved, a preoxygenated patient can then theoretically resume spontaneous ventilation or be awakened before the onset of hypoxia.[94] This practice has been increasingly questioned in the literature in part because of a number of studies demonstrating that ventilation via a mask is *not* rendered more difficult by muscle relaxation[95,96]; rather, mask ventilation is, in fact, facilitated by muscle relaxation.[97] One issue with the traditional paradigm is that the theoretical advantage of the practice—the ability to awaken the patient if mask ventilation fails—is rarely used.[98] The desire to preserve that ability may, in fact, result in giving an inadequate dose of anesthetic during induction, resulting in a difficult mask ventilation situation when one would not have otherwise occurred.[98] Delaying the administration of NMBDs can result in the onset of hypoxia before spontaneous recovery (with succinylcholine) or reversal (with sugammadex) is possible.

The authors do not recommend withholding NMBDs in patients who are predicted to be easy to mask ventilate and/or intubate. For patients in whom difficulty with both mask ventilation and intubation are predicted, awake intubation or inhalation induction of anesthesia should be considered, and the administration of NMBDs is best withheld until the ability to ventilate is proven.

Rapid-Sequence Induction and Intubation

Rapid-sequence induction and intubation (often simply referred to as *rapid sequence induction* [RSI] in the anesthesia literature) is a specialized method of IV induction commonly used when an increased risk of gastric regurgitation and pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents exists. After adequate preoxygenation and while cricoid pressure is applied, an induction dose of IV anesthetic is rapidly followed by 1 to 1.5 mg/kg of IV succinylcholine, and the trachea is intubated without attempts at PPV. The goal is to achieve optimal intubating conditions rapidly to minimize the length of time between the loss of consciousness (LOC) and securing of the airway with a cuffed endotracheal tube (ETT). Cricoid pressure, eponymously referred to as the Sellick maneuver after the physician who first described it, involves the application of pressure at the cricoid ring to occlude the upper esophagus, thereby preventing the regurgitation of gastric contents into the pharynx.[99] The recommended force to be applied is 10 Newtons (N) while the patient is awake, increased to 30 N after LOC. These values are based on esophageal manometry on patients undergoing induction of anesthesia and cadaver studies of safe amounts of pressure.[100] RSI is widely practiced and approaches a standard of care in patients with a full stomach (i.e., when NPO guidelines have not been observed) and in the setting of bowel obstruction.[101,102] RSI has historically been recommended for patients who are pregnant, starting in the second trimester,[103] but this dogma has been called into question.[104,105] Other clinical situations for which RSI may be considered due to a higher than normal risk for aspiration of gastric contents, include poorly controlled GERD, presence of a nasogastric tube, morbid obesity, and diabetic gastroparesis. RSI is also a useful induction technique when mask ventilation is predicted to be difficult, but intubation is not, such as with an edentulous, bearded patient with an otherwise reassuring airway examination.

Some common variations to RSI have developed from the technique first described in 1970.[106] When succinylcholine is contraindicated or its side effects are undesired, RSI can be accomplished using nondepolarizing NMBDs (rocuronium 1.0 to 1.2 mg/kg or vecuronium 0.3 mg/kg); these doses provide adequate intubating conditions in less than 90 seconds.[107,108] The primary disadvantage with the nondepolarizing NMBDs used to be the prolonged duration of neuromuscular blockade; however, since the introduction of sugammadex these agents are increasingly employed in place of succinylcholine for RSI (also see Chapters 27 and 28). Although traditional RSI calls for induction with a fixed dose of thiopental, the use of other anesthetics such as propofol, etomidate, or ketamine is common. Some advocate for the titration of the chosen anesthetic agent to LOC rather than the delivery of a fixed, predetermined dose.[101]

The application of cricoid pressure is the most controversial aspect of RSI.[101] Opponents point to studies demonstrating that cricoid pressure results in a decrease in lower esophageal sphincter tone, potentially increasing the risk for regurgitation,[109] and to magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) studies showing that cricoid pressure does not, in fact, result in compression of the esophagus, but rather a lateral displacement.[110] Cricoid pressure also worsens laryngeal visualization during DL, potentially lengthening the time to intubation and increasing the risk of pulmonary aspiration, and can result in occlusion of the subglottic airway, resulting in difficulty with tracheal intubation or mask ventilation.[111] On the other hand, advocates argue that properly applied cricoid pressure is effective in reducing the risk of aspiration and that reports of problems are due to incorrect application. The authors of an MRI study of cricoid pressure argue that the position of the esophagus is irrelevant because the effectiveness of cricoid pressure is due to occlusion of the hypopharynx.[112] In general, because of the relatively low risk of application of cricoid pressure, its use is encouraged for RSI unless glottic visualization proves difficult, in which case it can be easily released.

The term *modified RSI* is frequently used, but no standardized definition exists. A survey of anesthesia residents and attending anesthesiologists in the United States showed that the term was most commonly used to refer to the use of mask ventilation in conjunction with cricoid pressure.[113] Indications for this technique include patients at risk for rapid development of hypoxemia (e.g., patients who are obese, pregnant, or critically ill; pediatric patients) in emergent situations during which preoxygenation cannot be satisfactorily completed, or when a longer time to acceptable intubating conditions is required because of the use of standard doses of nondepolarizing NMBDs. Although the effect of PPV with cricoid pressure applied in terms of gastric insufflation of air is not definitively known, gentle PPV (inspiratory pressure <20 cm water [H_2O]) in conjunction with cricoid pressure may be acceptable in these clinical scenarios.[114]

Inhalational Induction of Anesthesia

Another option for the induction of general anesthesia is inhalational induction with volatile anesthetic. This technique is commonly used in pediatric anesthesia to provide a painless, needle-free experience for the child. In adults, an inhalational induction of anesthesia is used when IV access is not available or when the specific advantages of the technique are desirable. Advantages of an inhalational induction of anesthesia are the maintenance of spontaneous ventilation and the potential for gradual changes in the depth of anesthesia and associated respiratory and cardiovascular effects.[22] Inhalational induction of anesthesia has also been used for RSI, with a rapid-onset NMBD administered at LOC[115] (also see Chapter 27).

Sevoflurane is currently the most commonly used volatile anesthetic for inhalational induction because of its lack of pungency and low blood:gas solubility, allowing for a smooth induction of anesthesia that can provide suitable conditions for airway management with or without adjuvant drugs such as NMBDs or opioids.[116] The two principal techniques for sevoflurane induction of anesthesia are a *tidal volume induction*, in which patients are instructed to breathe normally through the face mask, and a *vital capacity induction*, in which patients are instructed to exhale to residual volume and then take a vital capacity breath from the face mask. High delivered concentrations of sevoflurane (8%) are used for vital capacity induction, whereas tidal volume inductions may start with lower sevoflurane concentrations before the concentration is increased. Nitrous oxide (N_2O) can be used with either method to speed induction via the second-gas effect.[117] Both methods are effective and can be used for either LMA placement or tracheal intubation.[116] Deep levels of anesthesia are required to achieve satisfactory intubating conditions when using sevoflurane as a sole induction agent, increasing the risk of adverse effects, such as hypotension. The administration of propofol,[118] rapid-onset opioids,[119,120] NMBDs,[121] and ketamine[122] have all been shown to improve intubating conditions and allow for lower end-tidal concentrations of sevoflurane.

Halothane, which is still used in developing countries, can also be used for inhalational induction of anesthesia.[123] One main disadvantage of halothane is its high blood:gas partition coefficient, which leads to relatively long induction times. It also can produce cardiac dysrhythmias, myocardial depression, and halothane-induced hepatitis. Because of the inability to achieve deep levels of anesthesia with halothane as a result of its side effects, the use of NMBDs, opioids, or both, is often required.[116] The use of desflurane for inhalational induction of anesthesia is limited by its tendency to cause airway irritation, although reports of its use for induction in combination with opioids has been reported.[124,125]

Intravenous Induction Without Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs

IV induction of general anesthesia without the use of NMBDs is commonly used for LMA placement but can be used to achieve satisfactory intubating conditions as well. This technique is useful when the use of succinylcholine is contraindicated and the prolonged recovery time from nondepolarizing NMBDs is undesirable and their reversal not possible (e.g., when sugammadex is not available). Of the commonly available IV anesthetics, propofol is the best suited for induction without muscle relaxation because of its unique ability to suppress airway reflexes and to produce apnea.[126,127] Larger doses are required, however, when propofol is used as a sole anesthetic, increasing the risk of significant hypotension. Improvement of intubating conditions and smaller doses of propofol are possible when rapid-onset opioids (e.g., alfentanil, remifentanil) or IV magnesium are administered.[128,129] Remifentanil is more effective than comparable doses of alfentanil[128]; in combination with propofol 2 mg/kg, remifentanil 4 to 5 µg/kg can reliably provide good-to-excellent intubating conditions.[130] When combined with cricoid pressure and an avoidance of mask ventilation, this induction technique can be used for RSI.[131]

Disadvantages of this technique include a potentially more frequent incidence of difficult intubation,[132] pronounced hemodynamic side effects such as bradycardia and hypotension, and an increased risk for laryngeal morbidity.[86,133] This technique also introduces the risk of opioid-induced muscle rigidity resulting in difficulty with mask ventilation. Although this risk is commonly attributed to chest wall rigidity, studies in intubated patients and patients with tracheostomies have shown that decreases in pulmonary compliance due to chest wall rigidity are not sufficient to explain an inability to mask ventilate after a large dose of an opioid.[134,135] Examination of the vocal cords during induction with opioids has shown that vocal cord closure is the primary cause of difficult ventilation after opioid-induced anesthesia.[136,137] Treatment with small doses of NMBD or topical lidocaine (laryngotracheal anesthesia [LTA]) can be effective in relaxing the vocal cords to allow for mask ventilation and/or intubation.[136]

AIRWAY MANAGEMENT IN AN AWAKE (NON-ANESTHETIZED) PATIENT

As noted in the ASA DAA, a consideration of whether the airway should be secured before or after induction of general anesthesia is one of the basic management choices that should be considered when an airway management plan is being devised.[7] The benefits of awake airway management include the preservation of pharyngeal muscle tone and patency of the upper airway, the maintenance of spontaneous ventilation, an ability to obtain a quick neurologic examination, and a safeguard against aspiration attributable to the preservation of protective airway reflexes.[138] In general, when difficult mask ventilation and difficult intubation are expected, the safest approach to airway management is to secure the airway while the patient remains awake.[7] Other indications for awake airway management include the risk of severe aspiration of gastric contents, facial or airway trauma, severe hemodynamic instability, and unstable cervical spine pathology.[139]

Because of the nature of these indications, tracheal intubation is most often chosen as the goal of awake airway management; however, awake placement of an LMA for diagnostic bronchoscopy has been described. The most useful technique for awake intubation is the flexible scope intubation (FSI),[138] although other techniques have been successfully used, including VAL,[140] optical stylets,[141] lighted stylets,[142] intubating LMAs,[143] and retrograde intubation (RI).[144]

Topical application of local anesthetic to the airway should, in most cases, be the primary anesthetic for awake airway management.[138] Lidocaine is the most commonly used local anesthetic for awake airway management because of its rapid onset, high therapeutic index, and availability in a wide variety of preparations and concentrations.[145,146] Benzocaine and Cetacaine (a topical application spray containing benzocaine, tetracaine, and butamben; Cetylite Industries, Pennsauken, NJ) provide excellent topical anesthesia of the airway, but their use is limited by the risk of methemoglobinemia, which can occur with as little as 1 to 2 seconds of spraying.[147] Topical cocaine is primarily used for anesthesia and vasoconstriction of the nasal mucosa during awake nasotracheal intubation.[148] A mixture of lidocaine 3% and phenylephrine 0.25%, which can be made by combining lidocaine 4% and phenylephrine 1% in a 3:1 ratio, has similar anesthetic and vasoconstrictive properties as topical cocaine and can be used as a substitute.[149]

Topical application of local anesthetic should primarily be focused on the base of the tongue (pressure receptors here act as the afferent component of the gag reflex), the oropharynx, the hypopharynx, and the laryngeal structures; anesthesia of the oral cavity is unnecessary. If a nasotracheal intubation is planned, then the nasal cavity should also be topicalized. Before topical application of local anesthetic to the airway, administration of an anticholinergic agent should be considered to aid in the drying of secretions, which helps improve both the effectiveness of the topical local anesthetic and visualization during laryngoscopy. Glycopyrrolate is usually preferred because it has less vagolytic effects than atropine at doses that inhibit secretions and does not cross the blood-brain barrier. It should be administered as early as possible to maximize its effectiveness.

Direct application of topical cocaine, lidocaine 4% with epinephrine, or lidocaine 3%/phenylephrine 0.25% solution via cotton swabs or cotton pledgets is effective for anesthesia of the nasal mucosa. Oropharyngeal anesthesia can be achieved by the direct application of local anesthetic or by the use of an atomizer or nebulizer. Topical application of local anesthetic to the larynx can be achieved by directed atomization of a local anesthetic or by the *spray-as-you-go* (SAYGO) method, which involves intermittently injecting local anesthetic through the suction port or working channel of a flexible intubation scope (FIS) or optical stylet, as it is advanced toward the trachea.

Topical application of local anesthetic to the airway mucosa using one or more of these methods is often sufficient. If supplemental anesthesia is required, then a variety of nerve blocks may be used. Three of the most useful are the glossopharyngeal nerve block, superior laryngeal nerve block, and translaryngeal block.

The glossopharyngeal nerve supplies sensory innervation to the posterior third of the tongue, vallecula, the anterior surface of the epiglottis, and the posterior and lateral walls of the pharynx, and is the afferent pathway of the gag reflex. To block this nerve, the tongue is displaced medially, forming a gutter (glossogingival groove). A 25-gauge spinal needle is inserted at the base of the anterior tonsillar pillar, just lateral to the base of the tongue, to a depth of 0.5 cm (Fig. 44.9). After negative aspiration for blood or air, 2 mL of 2% lidocaine is injected. The process is then repeated

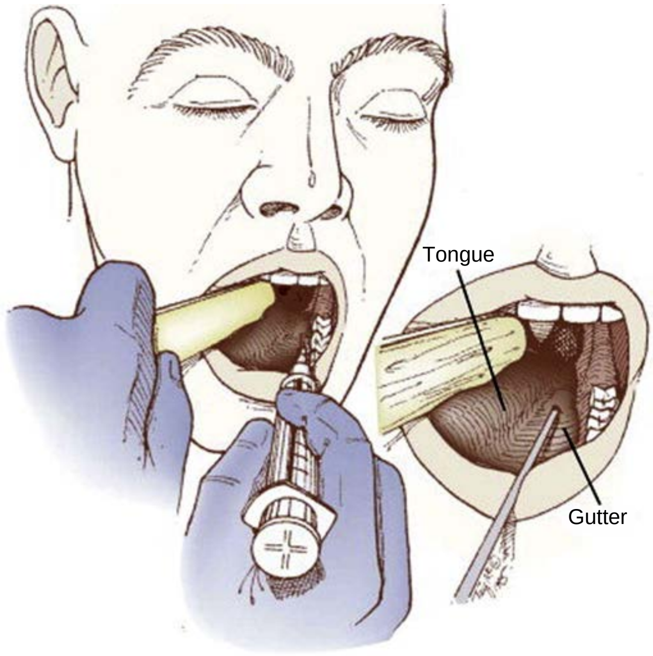


Fig. 44.9 Left glossopharyngeal nerve block. (Reprinted from Artime CA, Sanchez A. Preparation of the patient for awake intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018. From Difficult airway teaching aids, Irvine, University of California, Department of Anesthesia.)

on the contralateral side.[138] The same procedure can be performed noninvasively with cotton-tipped swabs soaked in 4% lidocaine; the swabs are held in place for 5 minutes (Video 44.1).

The superior laryngeal nerve, a branch of the vagus nerve, provides sensory input from the lower pharynx and the upper part of the larynx, including the glottic surface of the epiglottis and the aryepiglottic folds. Blockade of this nerve may be achieved using one of three landmarks (Fig. 44.10). Using either the superior cornu of the hyoid or the superior cornu of the thyroid cartilage, a 25-gauge spinal needle is walked off the cornu anteriorly toward the thyrohyoid ligament. Resistance is felt as the needle is advanced through the ligament, usually at a depth of 1 to 2 cm. After negative aspiration for blood and air, 1.5 to 2 mL of 2% lidocaine is injected and then repeated on the opposite side.[146] The third landmark for the superior laryngeal nerve block is particularly useful in patients who are obese, in whom palpation of the hyoid or the superior cornu of the thyroid cartilage may be difficult or uncomfortable for the patient. In this approach, the needle is inserted 2 cm lateral to the superior notch of the thyroid cartilage and directed in a posterior and cephalad direction to 1 to 1.5 cm depth, where 2 mL of 2% lidocaine is infiltrated and, again, repeated on the contralateral side.[150]

Translaryngeal (or transtracheal) block provides anesthesia of the trachea and vocal cords. This block may be particularly useful in situations where a neurologic examination is needed after intubation; it makes the presence of the ETT in the trachea more comfortable. The CTM is identified, and a 20- to 22-gauge needle attached to 5-mL syringe is directly advanced posteriorly and slightly caudally until air is aspirated, at which point 4 mL of either 2% or 4% lidocaine is quickly injected. This causes the patient to cough,

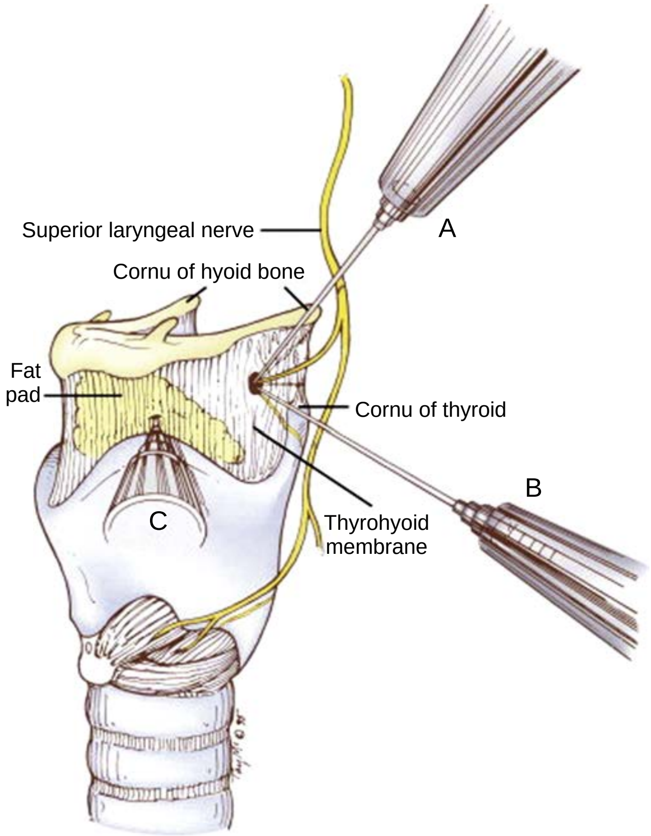


Fig. 44.10 Superior laryngeal nerve block, external approach using as a landmark the greater cornu of the hyoid bone (A), the superior cornu of the thyroid cartilage (B), or the thyroid notch (C). (Reprinted from Artime CA, Sanchez A. Preparation of the patient for awake intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018. From Difficult airway teaching aids, Irvine, University of California, Department of Anesthesia.)

anesthetizing the vocal cords and the trachea. To minimize the risk of trauma, a catheter may first be placed over the needle and the local anesthetic then injected through the catheter (Fig. 44.11 and Video 44.2).[146]

These techniques may be used in various different combinations as long as the maximum dose of local anesthetic is not exceeded. The maximum dose of lidocaine for application to the airway is not well established; different sources suggest total doses in the range of 4 to 9 mg/kg.[146,151,152] Monitoring for signs and symptoms of lidocaine toxicity, including tinnitus, perioral tingling, metallic taste, lightheadedness, dizziness, and sedation is important. Severe lidocaine overdose can cause hypertension, tachycardia, seizures, and cardiovascular collapse.[153]

Depending on the clinical circumstance, IV sedation may facilitate airway management in an awake patient by providing anxiolysis, amnesia, and analgesia. Benzodiazepines, opioids, IV hypnotics, α_2 agonists, and neuroleptics can be used alone or in combination. A summary of common medications used for sedation can be found in Table 44.1. These drugs should be carefully titrated to effect; oversedation can render a patient uncooperative and make awake intubation more difficult. Spontaneous ventilation should always be maintained. Care should be taken in situations with critical airway obstruction since awake muscle tone is sometimes necessary in these patients to maintain airway patency.

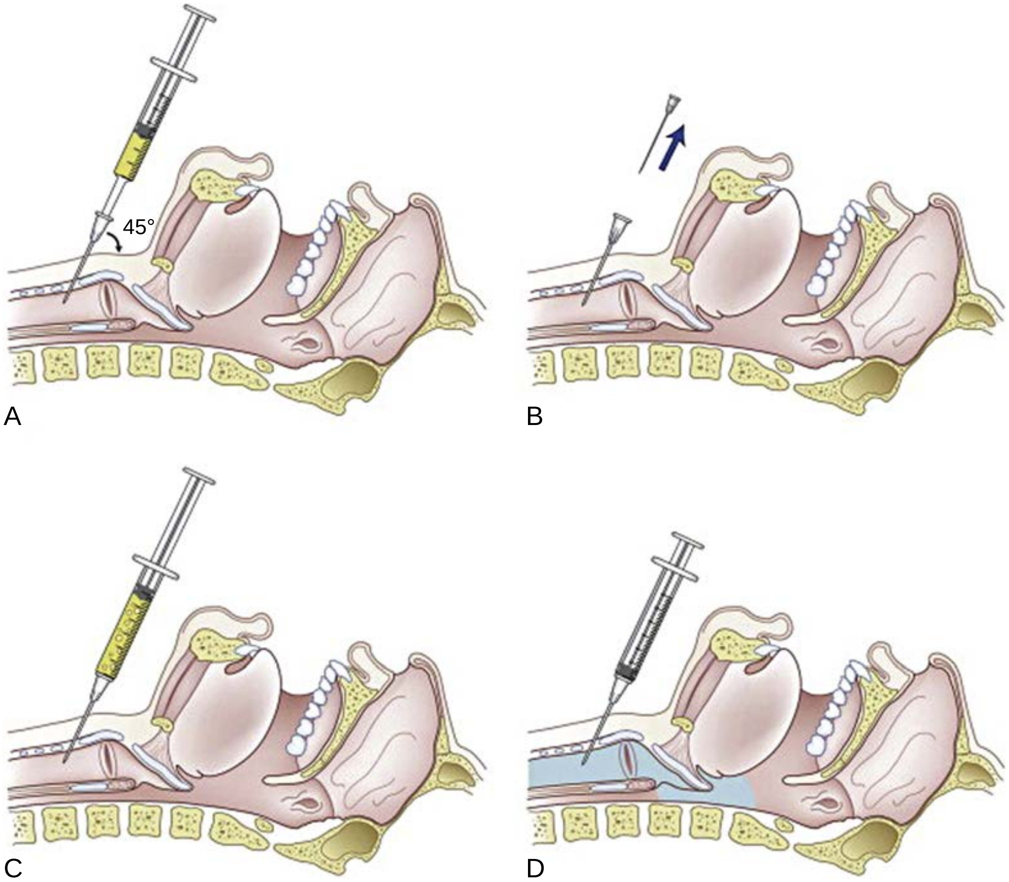


Fig. 44.11 Translaryngeal anesthesia, angiocatheter technique (midsagittal view of the head and neck). (A) The angiocatheter is inserted at the cricothyroid membrane, aimed caudally. An aspiration test is performed to verify the position of the tip of the needle in the tracheal lumen. (B) The needle is removed from the angiocatheter. (C) The syringe containing local anesthetic is attached, and the aspiration test is repeated. (D) Local anesthetic is injected, resulting in coughing and nebulization of the local anesthetic *(shaded blue area)*. (Reprinted from Artime CA, Sanchez A. Preparation of the patient for awake intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018. From Difficult airway teaching aids, Irvine, University of California, Department of Anesthesia.)

TABLE 44.1 Sedative Drugs for Awake Airway Management

Drug	Class	Sedative Dose	Notes
Midazolam	Benzodiazepine	1-2 mg IV, repeated prn (0.025-0.1 mg/kg)	Frequently used in combination with fentanyl.
Fentanyl	Opioid	25-200 μg IV (0.5-2 μg/kg)	Usually used in combination with other agents (e.g., midazolam, propofol).
Alfentanil	Opioid	500-1500 μg IV (10-30 μg/kg)	Has a faster onset, shorter duration than fentanyl.
Remifentanil	Opioid	Bolus 0.5 μg/kg IV, followed by an infusion of 0.1 μg/kg/min	Infusion can be subsequently titrated by 0.025-0.05 μg/kg/min in 5-minute intervals to achieve adequate sedation.
Propofol	Hypnotic	0.25 mg/kg IV in intermittent boluses or Continuous IV infusion of 25-75 μg/kg/min, titrated to effect	Can also be used in combination with remifentanil (decrease dose of both drugs).
Ketamine	Hypnotic	0.2-0.8 mg/kg IV	Pretreat with an antisialagogue. Consider administration of midazolam to attenuate undesirable psychologic effects.
Dexmedetomidine	α_2 Agonist	Bolus 1 μg/kg IV over 10 minutes, followed by an infusion of 0.3-0.7 μg/kg/hr	Reduce dose in older adults and in patients with depressed cardiac function.

IV, Intravenous; *prn,* as needed, *pro re nata* (Latin).

Avoiding oversedation is also important in the patient at increased risk for aspiration of gastric contents, because an awake patient can protect his or her own airway if regurgitation should occur.[80]

Mask Ventilation

Mask ventilation is a straightforward, noninvasive technique for airway management that can be used as a primary mode of ventilation for an anesthetic of short duration or as a bridge to establish a more definitive airway. The use of a face mask is common for preoxygenation, inhalational induction of anesthesia, and as a means to provide oxygen and anesthetic gases to both a spontaneous ventilating patient and an anesthetized, apneic patient via PPV. Mask ventilation is not only used to ventilate and oxygenate before conditions for tracheal intubation have been achieved, but it is also a valuable rescue technique when tracheal intubation proves difficult. For this reason, mask ventilation is an important part of the ASA DAA and an essential skill for the anesthesia practitioner.[7]

Mask ventilation is relatively contraindicated when the risk for regurgitation is increased; no protection from pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents exists. Mask ventilation should also be performed with caution in patients with severe facial trauma and in patients in whom head and neck manipulation must be avoided (e.g., those with an unstable cervical spine fracture).

Anesthesia face masks are designed to form a seal around the patient's nose and mouth, allowing for PPV and the administration of anesthetic gases; they should not be confused with oxygen face masks, which are designed only to administer supplemental oxygen. Early anesthesia face masks were reusable and composed of black rubber. These have been almost entirely replaced in clinical use by disposable, clear plastic masks, which are less frightening for patients and have the added benefit of allowing for better visualization of cyanosis or the need for oral suctioning. Face masks are available in various styles and sizes but share a basic design: a main body, seal, and connector. The seal is the portion of the mask that comes in contact with the face, and in clear plastic masks is comprised of a plastic, air-filled, high-volume, low-pressure cushion that conforms to the facial anatomy while minimizing the chance for pressure ischemia; some models have a valve on the cushion to allow changing the volume of the air within. The connector is a standard 22-mm female adapter that allows a connection to a standard anesthesia circuit or a bag-valve device; pediatric masks usually have a 15-mm male adapter that allows the same connections.

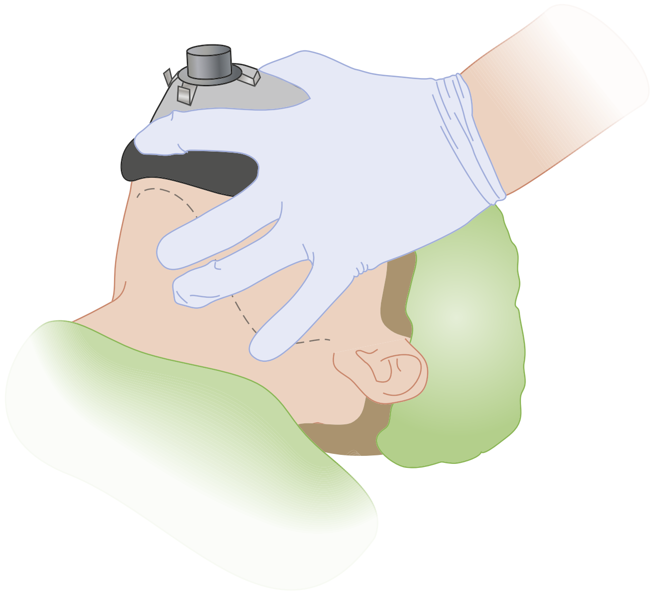


Fig. 44.12 Standard one-handed face-mask ventilation technique. The position of the fifth digit is at the angle of the jaw. (From Matioc AA. The adult ergonomic face mask: historical and theoretical perspectives. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21:300–304.)

The technique for mask ventilation is dependent on two key elements: (1) maintenance of a seal between the face mask and the patient's face, and (2) an unobstructed upper airway.[22] The mask is usually held with the left hand, with the thumb and index finger forming a "C" around the collar of the connector, the third and fourth digits on the ramus of the mandible, and the fifth digit on the angle of the mandible (Fig. 44.12). The thumb and index finger are used to produce downward pressure to ensure a tight mask seal, while the remaining digits provide upward displacement of the mandible (jaw thrust) to aid with airway patency. The right hand is free to provide manual ventilation. Ensuring that pressure from the digits is placed on the bony ridge of the mandible and not the soft tissue is important—compression of the submandibular space can cause obstruction of the airway and difficulty with mask ventilation. Many face masks have hooks around the collar for use with mask straps that can facilitate formation of a seal.

The one-handed technique is occasionally ineffective, especially in patients who are obese or edentulous, attributable to the failure to maintain a seal and/or a patent upper airway. In these situations, a two-handed technique can be more successful. Two-handed techniques depend on either an assistant or the use of pressure-control ventilation (PCV) with the anesthesia machine to provide PPV. The use of PCV for mask ventilation results in lower peak airway pressures and reduced inspiratory flow rates when compared with manual ventilation, providing an additional measure of safety against gastric insufflation.[154] In one approach to the two-handed technique, the left hand is positioned as in the one-handed technique and the right hand is placed on the other side of the mask in an identical conformation. A more effective approach involves using the second and third digits to perform a jaw thrust while the mask is held in place with the thumbs (Video 44.3). A study in anesthetized patients showed that this technique improved upper airway patency, compared with the traditional one-handed technique, as measured by greater tidal volumes during PCV.[155] Additional techniques to improve the mask seal in difficult scenarios include leaving dentures in place in edentulous patients and placing an adhesive plastic dressing over facial hair.

Once a seal is established between the face mask and the patient's face, ventilation is achieved by either spontaneous ventilation or PPV. The effectiveness of mask ventilation should be ascertained by observing for chest rise, exhaled tidal volumes, pulse oximetry, and capnography. During controlled ventilation in patients with normal lungs and a

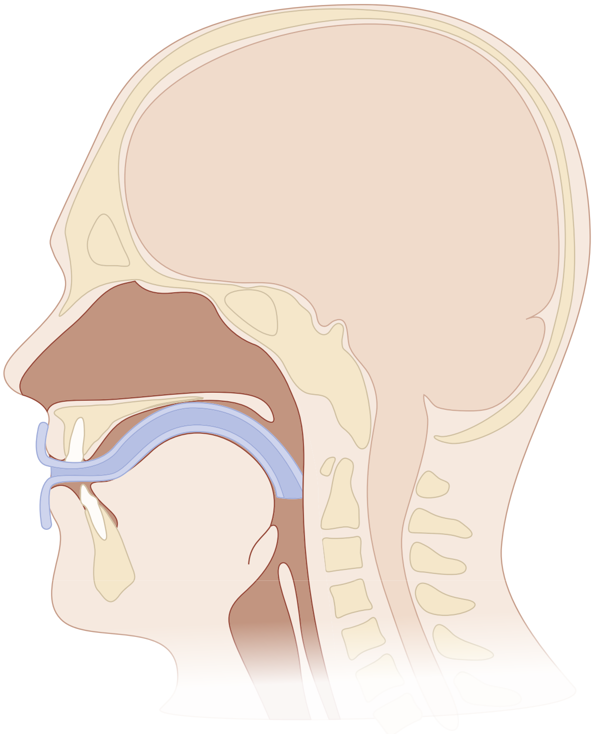


Fig. 44.13 Oropharyngeal airway in place. The airway follows the curvature of the tongue. It pulls the tongue and the epiglottis away from the posterior pharyngeal wall and provides a channel for the passage of air. (Modified from Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 4th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1999.)

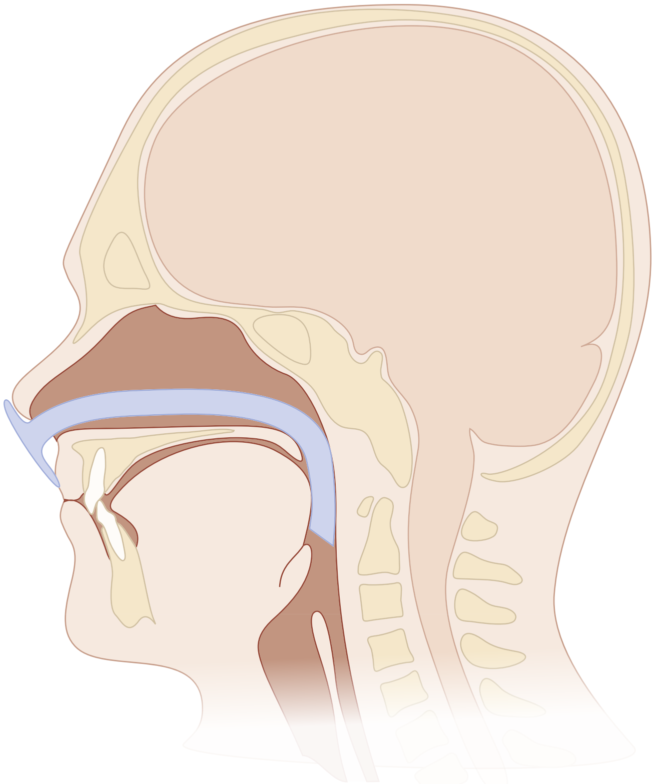


Fig. 44.14 Nasopharyngeal airway in place. The airway passes through the nose and ends at a point just above the epiglottis. (Modified from Dorsch JA, Dorsch SE. *Understanding Anesthesia Equipment*. 4th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1999.)

patent airway, adequate tidal volumes should be achieved with peak inspiratory pressures less than 20 cm H_2O; higher pressures should be avoided to prevent gastric insufflation.[156] If PPV is inadequate at acceptable inspiratory pressures, then airway patency and pulmonary compliance should be assessed.

Because of a reduction in muscle tone as a result of general anesthesia, tissues fall backward under the influence of gravity in a supine patient and can obstruct the upper airway. Upper airway obstruction most commonly takes place at the level of the soft palate (velopharynx), epiglottis, and tongue.[22,26] To maximize airway patency, mask ventilation can be performed with maximal atlantooccipital extension in combination with the forward displacement of the mandible (jaw thrust) involved in the mask-holding techniques.[157] The addition of cervical flexion to head extension (i.e., placing the patient in the sniffing position) improves pharyngeal patency.[158] If the sniffing position and jaw thrust fail to relieve airway obstruction, then oropharyngeal or nasopharyngeal airways may be used to facilitate airway patency.

Oropharyngeal airways are the most commonly used. They follow the curvature of the tongue, pulling it away from the posterior pharynx (Fig. 44.13). Because they place pressure on the base of the tongue and may come in contact with the epiglottis, oropharyngeal airways can precipitate coughing, retching, or laryngospasm if laryngeal and pharyngeal reflexes are not sufficiently blunted; therefore they are not appropriate for use in conscious patients who have not had local anesthetic applied to the airway. The oropharyngeal airway is sized by measuring from the corner of a patient's mouth to the angle of the jaw or the earlobe. Inappropriately sized oropharyngeal airways can actually worsen airway obstruction; therefore correct size selection is important. Proper placement is accomplished by inserting the oropharyngeal airway with the curvature facing posteriorly and then rotating 180 degrees; alternatively, a tongue depressor can be used to displace the tongue anteriorly as the oropharyngeal airway is inserted with the curvature facing anteriorly. Complications from oropharyngeal airways include lingual nerve palsy and damage to the teeth.[159,160] Nasopharyngeal airways are less stimulating than oropharyngeal airways once in place and thus are more appropriate for conscious patients (Fig. 44.14). They should be well lubricated before insertion and inserted perpendicularly to the longitudinal axis of the body with the bevel facing the nasal septum. To avoid epistaxis, force should never be used during insertion of a nasopharyngeal airway.

Difficult mask ventilation occurs when ventilating via the face mask is not possible because of an inadequate mask seal, excessive gas leak, and/or excessive resistance to the ingress or egress of gas.[7] Predictors for difficult mask ventilation that can be identified during the preoperative airway assessment are listed in Box 44.2.

Supraglottic Airways

The term *supraglottic airway* or *extraglottic airway* refers to a diverse family of medical devices that are blindly inserted into the pharynx to provide a patent conduit for ventilation, BOX 44.2 **Predictors of Difficult Mask Ventilation**

- Obstructive sleep apnea or history of snoring
- Age older than 55 years
- Male gender
- Body mass index of 30 kg/m^2 or greater
- Mallampati classification III or IV
- Presence of a beard
- Edentulousness

oxygenation, and delivery of anesthetic gases without the need for tracheal intubation. SGAs have the advantage of being less invasive than tracheal intubation while providing a more definitive airway than a face mask and can be used for either spontaneous ventilation or PPV. One of the first SGAs, the LMA, was described in 1983 by Dr. Archie Brain and introduced into clinical practice in 1988.[161] Since that time, the LMA has proved to be one of the single most important developments in both routine and difficult airway management and is a pivotal component of the ASA DAA. Various different designs of SGAs are now available and are widely used in current anesthesia practice as a primary airway management device, a rescue airway device, and a conduit for tracheal intubation.

The specific advantages of SGAs include the ease and speed of placement, improved hemodynamic stability, reduced anesthetic requirements, lack of a need for muscle relaxation, and an avoidance of some of the risks of tracheal intubation (e.g., trauma to the teeth and airway structures, sore throat, coughing on emergence, or bronchospasm).[162,163] The primary disadvantages are that SGAs have comparatively smaller seal pressures than ETTs, which can lead to ineffective ventilation when higher airway pressures are required, and they provide no protection from laryngospasm. First-generation SGAs also provide little protection from gastric regurgitation and aspiration, although newer devices have incorporated design elements to minimize this risk.

SGAs have many applications. They are considered the first choice for airway management for diagnostic and minor surgical procedures.[164] No standardized classification system exists for the different designs of SGAs, although several have been proposed. This chapter uses the terminology described by Donald Miller: perilaryngeal sealers; cuffless, anatomically preshaped sealers; and cuffed pharyngeal sealers.[165] Second-generation SGAs are differentiated from first-generation SGAs in that they incorporate features designed to reduce the incidence of aspiration.[166]

LARYNGEAL MASK AIRWAY

LMA Classic

The LMA (LMA North America, San Diego, CA) is the most widely used, well-studied SGA and is the archetype of the perilaryngeal sealer. The original version, the LMA Classic (cLMA), consists of an oval-shaped, silicone mask with an inflatable cuff that sits in the hypopharynx and forms a seal around the periglottic tissues (Fig. 44.15). An airway tube attached to the mask exits the mouth and has a standard 15-mm connector for attachment to an anesthesia circuit or to a bag-valve device. The seal around the laryngeal inlet allows for the delivery of oxygen and inhaled anesthetics during spontaneous ventilation and permits PPV at pressures up to 20 cm H_2O. The cLMA is reusable up to 40 times and is available in a variety of sizes from size 1 (neonate) to size 6 (large adult, >100 kg).

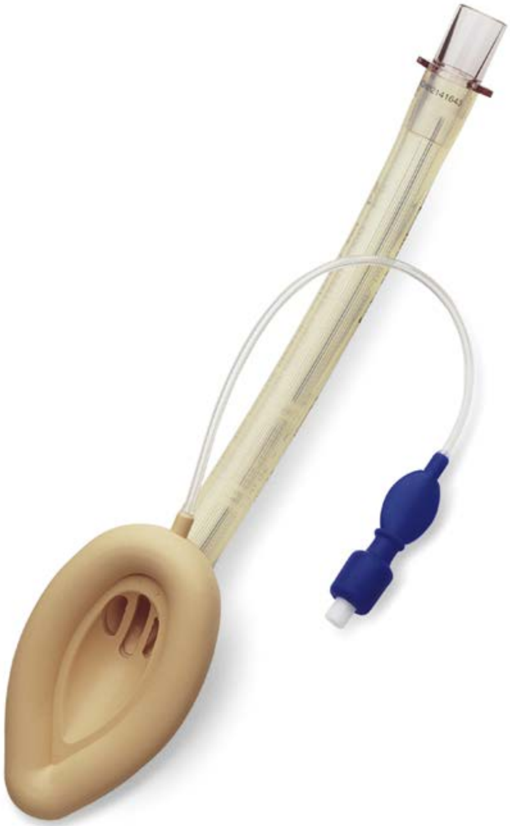


Fig. 44.15 LMA Classic. (Image provided courtesy LMA North America, San Diego, CA.)

The LMA Classic Excel is an updated version that incorporates design features to facilitate tracheal intubation through the device, including an epiglottic-elevating bar, a wider-bore airway tube, and a removable connector. A disposable, single-use version of the cLMA, the LMA Unique, is available with either a polyvinyl chloride (PVC) or silicone cuff and has gained popularity because of its lower cost and maintenance, as well as concerns over the perceived risk of cross-contamination and the transmission of infection with reusable medical devices. The LMA Flexible, available in reusable and single-use models, has a flexible, kink-resistant airway tube that can be positioned away from the surgical field for head and neck procedures.

To achieve a proper fit, the manufacturer of the LMA suggests placing the largest size LMA possible; an airtight seal is achieved more frequently with a size 5 LMA in the average adult man and a size 4 LMA in the average adult woman.[167] Using an undersized LMA can result in overinflation of the cuff to achieve a seal, which can predispose the patient to oropharyngolaryngeal morbidity and nerve damage.[168] Smaller LMA sizes have also been shown to be associated with placement failure.[169] Larger sizes, however, may be

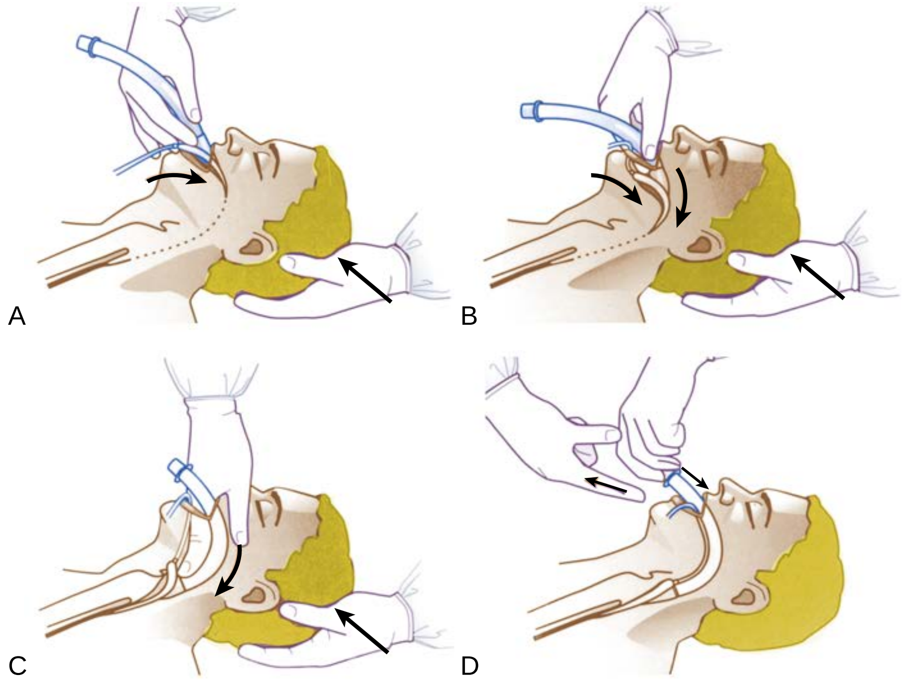


Fig. 44.16 Insertion of a laryngeal mask airway (LMA). (A) The tip of the cuff is pressed upward against the hard palate by the index finger while the middle finger opens the mouth. (B) The LMA is pressed backward in a smooth movement. The nondominant hand is used to extend the head. (C) The LMA is advanced until definite resistance is felt. (D) Before the index finger is removed, the nondominant hand presses down on the LMA to prevent dislodgment during removal of the index finger. The cuff is subsequently inflated. (Courtesy LMA North America, San Diego, CA.)

associated with a more frequent incidence of sore throat; therefore a smaller size may be appropriate when spontaneous ventilation through the LMA is planned.[170]

The manufacturer's instructions for the placement of the cLMA are summarized in Fig. 44.16. Adequate depth of anesthesia for LMA insertion can be achieved with propofol or sevoflurane[171]; short-acting opioids such as fentanyl, alfentanil, and remifentanil may be coadministered to facilitate placement and to decrease the incidence of coughing, gagging, and laryngospasm.[172,173] Before insertion, the LMA cuff should be deflated and the posterior aspect of the mask should be lubricated with a water-based lubricant. Once positioned (see Fig. 44.16), the cuff should be inflated with the minimum effective volume of air, with a target cuff pressure of 40 to 60 cm H_2O.[167] To allow the LMA to position itself correctly, the device should not be secured or attached to the anesthesia circuit until the cuff has been inflated. Confirmation of proper placement is performed by attempting gentle PPV while checking capnography and auscultation and by quantifying the inspiratory pressure at which a leak is audible, which should be 18 to 20 cm H_2O. Once proper positioning is confirmed, a roll of gauze is inserted as a bite block and the LMA is secured in place with tape. Several modifications to the recommended insertion technique have been described, including a *thumb insertion method* by the manufacturer (Video 44.4).[174,175] Cuff pressure should be periodically monitored if N_2O is being used; cuff pressures may increase above the recommended threshold of 60 cm H_2O as a result of diffusion of N_2O into the cuff.

Initial difficulty with ventilation after the placement of an LMA may be due to a down-folded epiglottis. The *up-down maneuver* described by Dr. Brain may help correct this problem; the LMA is withdrawn 2 to 4 cm and reinserted without deflating the cuff. Head extension and LMA repositioning may also improve ineffective ventilation. If these actions do not correct the problem, then a different size may be needed. Insufficient depth of anesthesia, resulting in laryngospasm or bronchospasm, may make ventilation through an LMA impossible; the administration of topical, inhaled, or IV anesthesia can help to correct this. Although not necessary, DL can also facilitate proper LMA placement.

Serious complications from LMA use are relatively rare. More commonly, minor oral, pharyngeal, or laryngeal injury occurs, expressed as complaints of a dry or sore throat.[176] The incidence of sore throat is approximately 10% to 20%,[163,177] and has been linked to higher cuff pressures and larger LMA sizes.[170,178] More serious cases of oropharyngolaryngeal injury have been described, such as trauma to the uvula and pharyngeal necrosis.[179,180] Injury to the lingual, hypoglossal, and recurrent laryngeal nerves has also been reported; these usually spontaneously resolve over a period of weeks to months.[168] Predisposing factors include high cuff pressures (often attributable to the use of N_2O), using too small of an LMA, and nonsupine positions.[168]

LMA ProSeal

The LMA ProSeal (PLMA, LMA North America, San Diego, CA) is a reusable second-generation SGA that incorporates a posterior cuff, improving the perilaryngeal seal and allowing for PPV at pressures up to 30 cm H_2O. It also incorporates a gastric drainage tube that allows for gastric access with an orogastric tube and channels any regurgitated gastric contents away from the airway, effectively isolating the respiratory and gastrointestinal tracts.[181] Additional features include an incorporated bite block and a softer cuff.

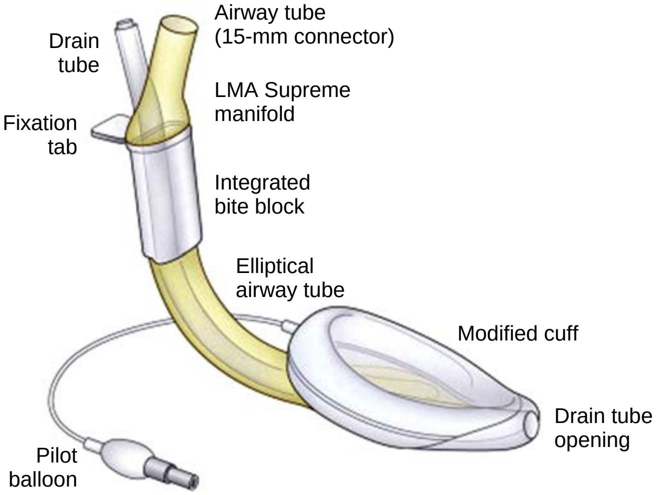


Fig. 44.17 **The LMA Supreme has a modified cuff design, a drainage tube that allows for gastric access, and an integrated bite block.** (From Verghese C, Mena G, Ferson DZ, Brain AIJ. Laryngeal mask airway. In: Hagberg CA, ed. *Benumof and Hagberg's Airway Management*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2013.)

The insertion technique is similar to the cLMA but requires deeper anesthetic levels.[181,182] An optional introducer can be used to facilitate insertion. As with the cLMA, cuff pressure should not exceed 60 cm H_2O. Once inserted, assessment of proper placement is accomplished by providing PPV; adequate tidal volumes should be accomplished with reasonable peak inspiratory pressures, leak pressure should be above 20 cm H_2O, and the capnography waveform should appear normal.[22] An additional test to confirm proper placement and separation of the airway and gastrointestinal tract is performed by placing a small layer (<5 mm) of water-based lubricant over the drainage tube orifice; PPV and suprasternal notch palpation should result in a small up-down movement of the gel meniscus. Easy passage of an orogastric tube through the gastric drainage tube confirms proper positioning.

LMA Supreme

The LMA Supreme (SLMA) is a single-use, second-generation SGA based on the PLMA design. Similar to the PLMA, the SLMA has an improved cuff design that produces higher airway leak pressures, a drainage tube that allows for gastric access, and an integrated bite block (Fig. 44.17). A fixation tab allows for determination of proper sizing (the tab should rest 1 to 2.5 cm above the upper lip) and provides an improved perilaryngeal seal when inward pressure is maintained by securing the mask into position by taping cheek to cheek across the fixation tab.

Although not clinically proven, evidence suggests that second-generation SGAs, such as the PLMA and the SLMA, reduce the risk of aspiration of gastric contents. This property, along with the improved airway seal and higher leak pressures, have enabled SGA devices to be used in various applications where the cLMA is potentially unsuitable, such as in nonsupine positions (e.g., lateral, prone),[183] in laparoscopic surgery (e.g., cholecystectomy, gynecologic surgery),[184,185] and in patients who are obese.[186] The successful, routine use of the SLMA in fasted, nonobese patients for cesarean section has also been reported.[187]

NEWER LMA MODELS

The LMA Protector is an all-silicone second-generation SGA with integrated Cuff Pilot Technology, which allows constant cuff pressure monitoring. Color-coded indicator bands alert the clinician to changes in cuff pressure attributable to temperature, N_2O, and movement within the airway, allowing the clinician to maintain the recommended cuff pressure of 40 to 60 cm H_2O. The LMA Protector is designed to channel fluids away from the airway in the unlikely event of regurgitation and allows for gastric suctioning. The airway channel is wide enough to allow intubation with a standard-sized ETT (see Tracheal Intubation Through a Supraglottic Airway Device). The LMA Gastro is a single-use silicone LMA designed for upper gastrointestinal endoscopy procedures, simultaneously protecting the airway and facilitating passage of an endoscope.

OTHER PERILARYNGEAL SEALERS

Over the past 15 years, a multitude of manufacturers have produced SGAs that incorporate the basic perilaryngeal sealing design of the cLMA. Because the term *LMA* is a protected trademark, these devices are referred to as *laryngeal masks* (LMs). Each has its own unique characteristics that may afford it specific advantages over other designs. Although an exhaustive description of every available LM is outside the scope of this chapter, some unique features merit mentioning.

Some design features address the issue of high cuff pressures, which can lead to oropharyngolaryngeal morbidity, nerve palsies, and improper device positioning. The line of LMs manufactured by AES, Inc. (Black Diamond, WA) incorporates a cuff pilot valve (CPV) that allows constant cuff pressure monitoring. The air-Q SP (Cookgas LLC, St. Louis, MO; distributed by Mercury Medical, Clearwater, FL) has a self-pressurizing cuff that uses the positive pressure that ventilates the patient to also pressurize the cuff, obviating the need for an inflation line and eliminating the possibility of cuff overinflation. On exhalation, the mask cuff deflates to the level of positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP), decreasing the total mucosal pressure over the course of an anesthetic, thereby potentially reducing the incidence of cuff pressure–related complications.

CUFFLESS ANATOMICALLY PRESHAPED SEALERS

Cuffless anatomically preshaped sealers do not have a cuff; rather, they provide an airway seal by their anatomically preshaped design. Advantages include simplicity of insertion and positioning and the lack of a need to inflate a cuff. The first of these devices, the SLIPA (Curveair, London, UK), contains a hollow chamber that can trap regurgitated liquid and prevent aspiration. Other cuffless devices such as the i-gel (Intersurgical Inc., Wokingham, Berkshire, UK) and the Baska Mask (Strathfield, NSW, Australia) can also be included in this classification.

CUFFED PHARYNGEAL SEALERS

Cuffed pharyngeal sealers have an airway with a pharyngeal cuff that seals at the level of the base of the tongue and can be subclassified as to whether they also possess an esophageal sealing cuff.[165] SGAs with only a pharyngeal cuff include the Cobra Perilaryngeal Airway (CobraPLA; Engineered Medical Systems, Indianapolis, IN) and the Tulip Airway (Marshall Medical, Bath, UK); they are not detailed in this chapter. The following devices all have an esophageal sealing cuff.

The esophageal-tracheal combitube (ETC) (Covidien, Mansfield, MA) is a uniquely designed SGA with both a pharyngeal and esophageal sealing cuff and two lumina. The ETC is primarily designed for emergency intubation and is mostly used in the prehospital setting, although it has occasionally been used during general anesthesia as both a primary airway and as a rescue airway device.[188,189] It is inserted blindly through the mouth in a curved, downward motion until the printed ring marks lie between the teeth. Both the proximal, oropharyngeal cuff and the distal esophageal-tracheal cuff are inflated. Greater than 90% of the time, esophageal placement of the device occurs, in which ventilation should be performed via the longer, blue, #1 (esophageal) lumen.[190] This lumen has a closed distal end with eight small perforations located between the two cuffs, which allow oxygenation and ventilation. When the device is placed into the trachea, ventilation should occur via the shorter, clear, #2 (tracheal) lumen, which is open at its distal end. When the ETC is placed in the esophagus, an orogastric tube may be passed through the tracheal lumen to empty the stomach. Use of the ETC as a primary airway is limited by a higher risk of complications, compared with the LMA or tracheal intubation, including hoarseness, dysphagia, and bleeding.[191] Because the oropharyngeal cuff of the ETC contains latex, this device should not be used in latex-sensitive individuals.

The Rüsch EasyTube (Teleflex Medical, Research Triangle Park, NC) is a double-lumen SGA that is similar to the ETC. The primary differences are its nonlatex construction and a proximal lumen that ends just below the oropharyngeal balloon, allowing for the passage of a tube exchanger or FIS. The insertion technique and risks are similar to the ETC; a comparative study showed shorter insertion times with the EasyTube.[192]

The King LT series of SGAs (King Systems Corporation, Noblesville, IN) are similar in design to the ETC and EasyTube, with a ventilation port between the pharyngeal and esophageal cuffs. The King LT and the King LT-D (reusable and disposable, respectively) are single-lumen devices with a tapered distal tip that allows easy passage into the esophagus. The distal (esophageal) portion of the tube is occluded. The King LTS and the disposable King LTS-D, on the other hand, have an open distal tip with a secondary channel to allow suctioning of gastric contents. Although tracheal placement of a King LT device has not be reported, if it should occur, then the device should be removed and reinserted.

Tracheal Intubation

Tracheal intubation is the gold standard for airway management. It establishes a definitive airway, provides maximal protection against the aspiration of gastric contents, and allows for PPV with higher airway pressures than with a face mask or an SGA. Tracheal intubation is usually facilitated by DL; however, a wide variety of alternative intubation devices and techniques have been developed to circumvent the problems encountered when conventional DL is difficult.

In the fasted patient undergoing elective surgery with general anesthesia, an SGA is often suitable. Certain conditions or clinical situations, however, favor tracheal intubation, although the advent of second-generation SGAs has somewhat narrowed this list. Absolute indications for tracheal intubation include patients with a full stomach or who are otherwise at increased risk for aspiration of gastric secretions or blood, patients who are critically ill, patients with significant lung abnormalities (e.g., low lung compliance, high airway resistance, impaired oxygenation), patients requiring lung isolation, patients undergoing otorhinolaryngologic surgery during which an SGA would interfere with surgical access, patients who will likely need postoperative ventilatory support, and patients in whom SGA placement has failed. Other indications for intubation include a surgical requirement for NMBDs, patient positioning that would preclude rapid tracheal intubation (e.g., prone or turned away from the anesthesia provider), a predicted difficult airway, and prolonged procedures.[22]

ENDOTRACHEAL TUBES

The modern, standard ETT is a disposable, single-use, cuffed, plastic tube that is designed to be inserted through the nose or mouth and sit with its distal end in the mid-trachea, providing a patent airway to allow for ventilation of the lungs. A variety of different types of ETTs are available for use in specialized situations. Several features are commonplace among the different styles, however, including a universal 15-mm adapter that allows the attachment of the proximal end to different ventilating circuits and devices; a high-volume, low-pressure cuff; a beveled tip to facilitate passage through the vocal cords; and an additional distal opening in the side wall of the ETT known as a *Murphy eye*, which serves to provide an additional portal for ventilation should the distal end of the lumen become obstructed by either soft tissue or secretions.

Cuffed ETTs are routinely used for tracheal intubation in most patients; cuffless ETTs are used in neonates and infants. The high-volume, low-pressure cuff is inflated with air to provide a seal against the tracheal wall to protect the lungs from pulmonary aspiration and to ensure that the tidal volume delivered ventilates the lungs rather than escapes into the upper airway.[22] A pilot balloon with a one-way valve allows for the inflation of the cuff and an assessment of the cuff pressure. The cuff should be inflated to the minimum volume at which no air leak is present with positive pressure inspiration; the cuff pressure should be less than 25 cm H_2O.[193] Excessive cuff pressure may result in tracheal mucosal injury, vocal cord dysfunction from recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy, and sore throat. Monitoring the cuff pressure with a pressure gauge is recommended. When N_2O is used as part of the anesthetic, cuff pressure should be periodically measured throughout the surgery; N_2O diffusion into the cuff can result in increases in cuff pressure to potentially dangerous levels.

ETT size is normally described in terms of its internal diameter (ID); the relationship of the ID to the external diameter varies between different designs and manufacturers. Selection of the ETT size depends on the reason for placement and patient-specific factors such as gender and airway pathologic conditions. Smaller ETTs result in increased airway resistance and work of breathing, and ETTs with a smaller ID may preclude therapeutic fiberoptic bronchoscopy. Larger ETTs are more likely to be associated with laryngeal or tracheal mucosal trauma and have a higher incidence of sore throat after general anesthesia. Generally, in patients intubated only for the purposes of a general anesthetic, a smaller ETT may be used than on the patient who will remain intubated in the medium to long term as a result of respiratory failure; typically a 7-mm ETT is used for women and a 7.5- or 8-mm ETT is used for men.

A variety of specialized tracheal tubes are available for use in specific clinical situations. Preformed tubes, such as the nasal and oral Ring-Adair-Elwin (RAE) tubes, have a specific contour to maintain a low profile and to avoid surgical interference. Armored (reinforced) tubes have an embedded coil that minimizes kinking of the tube when it is subjected to angulation. Microlaryngeal tubes, which have small IDs with a longer length tube, are useful in laryngeal surgery or for specific applications, such as intubation through a cLMA. The VivaSight ETT (Ambu, Inc., Ballerup, Denmark) has an integrated video camera at the tip, useful during intubation and for confirming ETT position throughout the procedure. Other specialized tubes include laser-resistant tubes and both single- and double-lumen tubes that allow for one-lung ventilation.

ENDOTRACHEAL TUBE INTRODUCERS

ETT introducers are long, slender devices used to assist in guiding an ETT through the glottis. They are particularly useful for performing a blind intubation when the glottic opening cannot be visualized during laryngoscopy.

The original ETT guide was the Eschmann introducer, developed by Venn in 1973.[194] This device, also known as the *gum elastic bougie*, is long enough to allow advancement of an ETT over its distal end after being placed through the vocal cords. It also possesses an anterior angulation at the distal end (coudé tip) to facilitate maneuvering underneath the epiglottis toward the glottic opening, even when the glottic structures are not visualized. A variety of similar introducers with different sizes and features are available; some are hollow to allow for ventilation if the need arises.

Coudé-tip introducers are particularly useful when only a portion of the laryngeal structures, such as only the tip of the epiglottis, can be visualized. Proper placement of the stylet is indicated by the perception of *tracheal clicks* as the coudé tip passes along the tracheal rings and by a *distal hold-up* as it reaches the small bronchi. An ETT is subsequently advanced over the introducer into the correct position (Video 44.5).[195]

OROTRACHEAL VERSUS NASOTRACHEAL INTUBATION

Tracheal intubation can proceed via the orotracheal or nasotracheal route—this decision should be made before deciding which airway management technique will be used. Nasotracheal intubation is generally indicated when the orotracheal route is not possible (e.g., when the mouth opening is severely limited) or when the need for surgical access precludes an orotracheal route. In addition, certain intubation techniques, such as blind intubation, awake intubation, and FSI, are significantly easier when performed through the nose.

When the nasotracheal route is not specifically indicated, however, the orotracheal route is usually preferred for several reasons. The orotracheal route is potentially less traumatic and presents a lower risk of bleeding, it usually allows for the placement of a larger ETT, and it provides for more options in terms of airway management techniques. The major disadvantages include the potential for damage to the teeth and stimulation of the gag reflex during awake intubation, requiring denser airway anesthesia and potentially being less comfortable for the patient. Nasotracheal intubation, on the other hand, bypasses the gag reflex and is usually more easily tolerated by the awake patient. However, the risks of epistaxis, trauma to the nasal turbinates, and submucosal tunneling in the nasopharynx must be taken into account.[138] Nasotracheal intubation is relatively contraindicated in the setting of maxillary or skull base fractures.

DIRECT LARYNGOSCOPY

The most commonly used technique for tracheal intubation is DL, which involves direct visualization of the glottis with the assistance of a laryngoscope. The ETT is inserted through the glottic opening into the trachea under continuous observation.

Preparation and Positioning

Preparation for DL includes proper patient positioning, adequate preoxygenation, and ensuring the availability and proper functioning of all necessary equipment—laryngoscopes, tracheal tubes, tube stylets, an empty syringe for inflating the tracheal tube cuff, a suction apparatus, and the essential equipment for mask ventilation, including an oxygen source. A skilled assistant should be present to help with external laryngeal manipulation and stylet removal, among other tasks. Adequate preparation is of the utmost importance; as with any airway procedure, the first attempt should be the best attempt.

For DL to be successful, a line of sight from the mouth to the larynx must be achieved. The classical model used to describe the anatomic relationships necessary to achieve this was proposed in 1944 by Bannister and Macbeth and involves the alignment of three anatomic axes—oral, pharyngeal, and laryngeal.[196] Positioning the patient in the sniffing position approximates this alignment. Cervical flexion aligns the pharyngeal and laryngeal axes, and maximal head extension at the atlantooccipital joint brings the oral axis closer into alignment (Fig. 44.18). The accuracy of this model has been questioned,[197] and various alternative models to explain the anatomic advantage of the sniffing position have been proposed.[198,199] Regardless of the explanatory model, the evidence in the literature supports the assertion that the sniffing position is the optimal position for DL.[47,200]

Proper positioning in the sniffing position involves approximately 35 degrees of cervical flexion, which is accomplished by a 7- to 9-cm elevation of the head on a firm

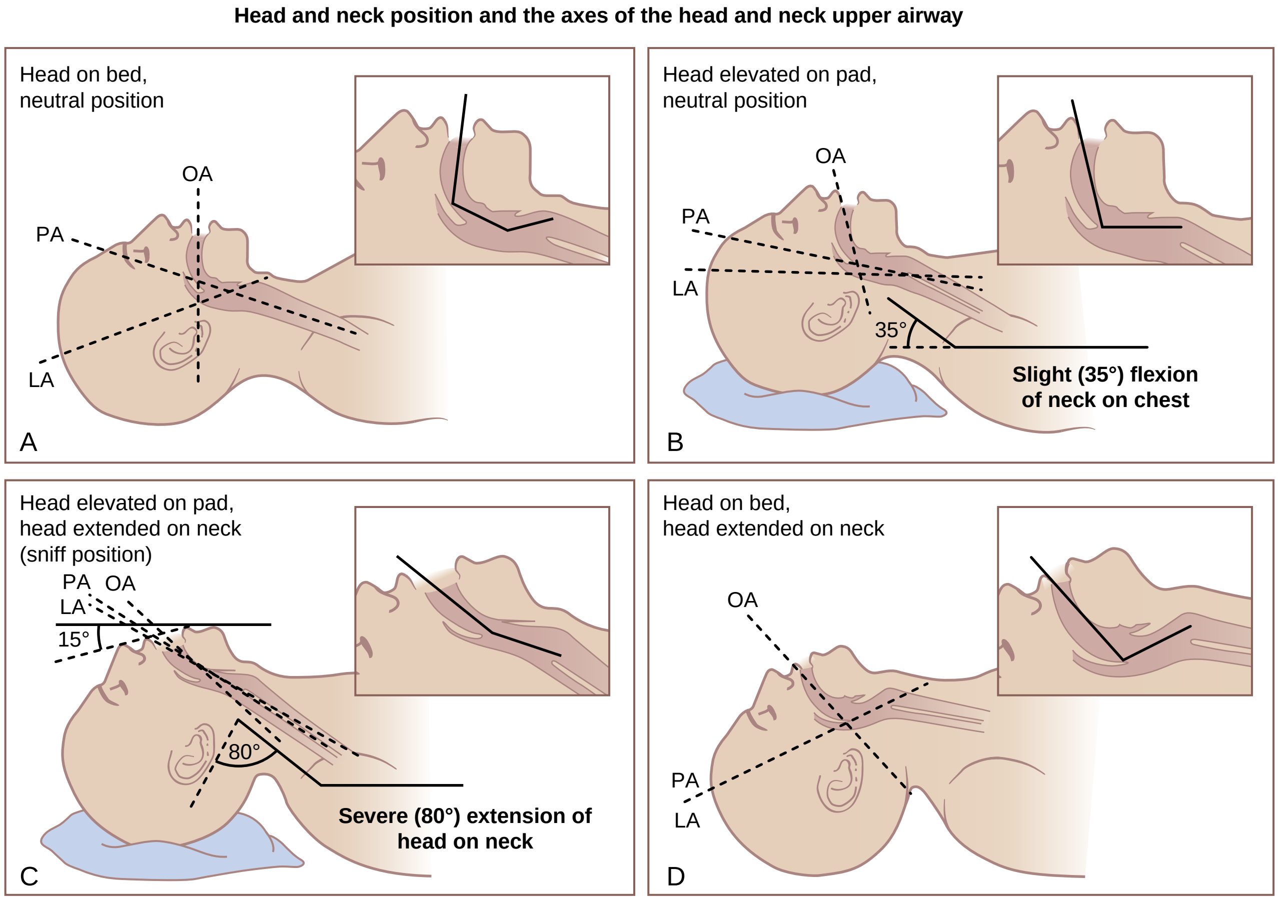


Fig. 44.18 Schematic diagrams show the alignment of the oral axis *(OA)*, pharyngeal axis *(PA)*, and laryngeal axis *(LA)* in four different head positions. Each head position is accompanied by an inset that magnifies the upper airway (oral cavity, pharynx, and larynx) and superimposes *(bold line)* the continuity of these three axes within the upper airway. (A) The head is in the neutral position with a marked degree of nonalignment of the LA, PA, and OA. (B) The head is resting on a large pad that flexes the neck on the chest and aligns the LA with the PA. (C) The head is resting on a pad (which flexes the neck on the chest). Concomitant extension of the head on the neck brings all three axes into alignment (sniffing position). (D) Extension of the head on the neck without concomitant elevation of the head on a pad, which results in nonalignment of the PA and LA with the OA. (From Baker PA, Timmermann A. Laryngoscopic tracheal intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management.* 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.)

cushion; patients with shorter necks may require less head elevation.[47,201] Patients who are obese often require elevation of the shoulders and upper back to achieve adequate cervical flexion, which can be accomplished by placing the patient in the *ramped* position using either a specialized device, such as the Troop Elevation Pillow (Mercury Medical, Clearwater, FL), or folded blankets. Confirming horizontal alignment of the external auditory meatus with the sternal notch is useful for ensuring optimal head elevation in both obese and nonobese patients.[202] Adequate cervical flexion also facilitates maximal atlantooccipital extension, which provides optimal alignment of the oral and pharyngeal axes (the primary determinant for quality of laryngeal view) and enhanced mouth opening.[203]

Technique

The laryngoscope is a handheld instrument consisting of a blade attached to a handle containing a light source. Most are reusable and made of steel, although disposable, plastic versions are available. The curved blade and the straight blade are the two basic types of laryngoscope blades available for DL; multiple variations of both styles exist. The Macintosh is the most commonly used curved blade, whereas the Miller is the most commonly used straight blade. Both are designed to be held in the left hand, and both have a flange on the left side that is used to retract the tongue laterally. Each type of blade has its benefits and drawbacks and is associated with its own technique for use.

The technique for laryngoscopy consists of the opening of the mouth, inserting the laryngoscope blade, positioning of the laryngoscope blade tip, applying a lifting force exposing the glottis, and inserting a tracheal tube through the vocal cords into the trachea. Mouth opening is best achieved using the *scissors* technique; the right thumb pushes caudally on the right lower molars while the index or third finger of the right hand pushes on the right upper molars in the opposite direction (Fig. 44.19).

The decision of whether to use a Macintosh or a Miller blade is multifactorial; however, the personal preferences and experience of the laryngoscopist is a significant consideration. In general, the Macintosh is most commonly used for adults, whereas the straight blades are typically used in pediatric patients.[204] Curved blades provide greater room for passage of an ETT through the oropharynx, attributable to their larger flange, and are generally considered less likely to cause dental damage.[205] Straight blades are preferred in patients with a short thyromental distance or prominent incisors, and usually provide a better view of the glottis in patients with a long, floppy epiglottis. Often, when one style of laryngoscope does not provide an adequate view of the glottis, the other may be more effective. For most adults, a Macintosh size 3 or a Miller size 2 blade is usually the proper size; in larger patients or patients with a very long thyromental distance, a larger blade may be more appropriate.

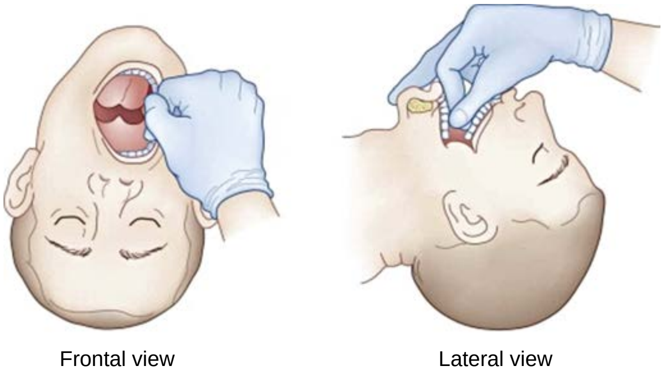

Frontal view
Lateral view

Fig. 44.19 The scissors technique for mouth opening. The thumb of the right hand is pressed on the right lower molars in a caudad direction while the index or third finger of the right hand presses on the right upper molars in a cephalad direction. (From Baker PA, Timmermann A. Laryngoscopic tracheal intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.)

The Macintosh blade is inserted in the right side of the mouth, and the flange is used to sweep the tongue to the left. Once the laryngoscope has been inserted in the mouth, the right hand can be used to ensure that the upper lip is not impinged between the laryngoscope and the upper incisors. The blade is advanced along the base of the tongue until the epiglottis is visualized; the tip of the blade is then advanced further and positioned in the vallecula. A force oriented at a 45-degree angle up and away from the laryngoscopist indirectly lifts the epiglottis by placing tension on the hyoepiglottic ligament, exposing the glottic structures (Fig. 44.20). The tip of the blade should not be lifted by using the laryngoscope as a lever, rocking back on the upper incisors, which can damage the teeth and provides an inferior view of the glottis. A properly oriented vector of force is achieved by using the anterior deltoid and triceps, not by radial flexion of the wrist. Once a complete view of the glottis is achieved, the ETT is grasped similar to a pencil with the right hand and guided through the vocal cords into the trachea. Passage of the ETT may be facilitated by an anterior angulation of the tip, which can be accomplished by shaping the ETT with a malleable stylet into a *hockey stick* shape, with approximately a 60-degree angle formed 4 to 5 cm from the distal end, or by accentuating the natural anterior curvature of the ETT by inserting the tip into the 15-mm connector, forming a circle, for several minutes before performing DL.

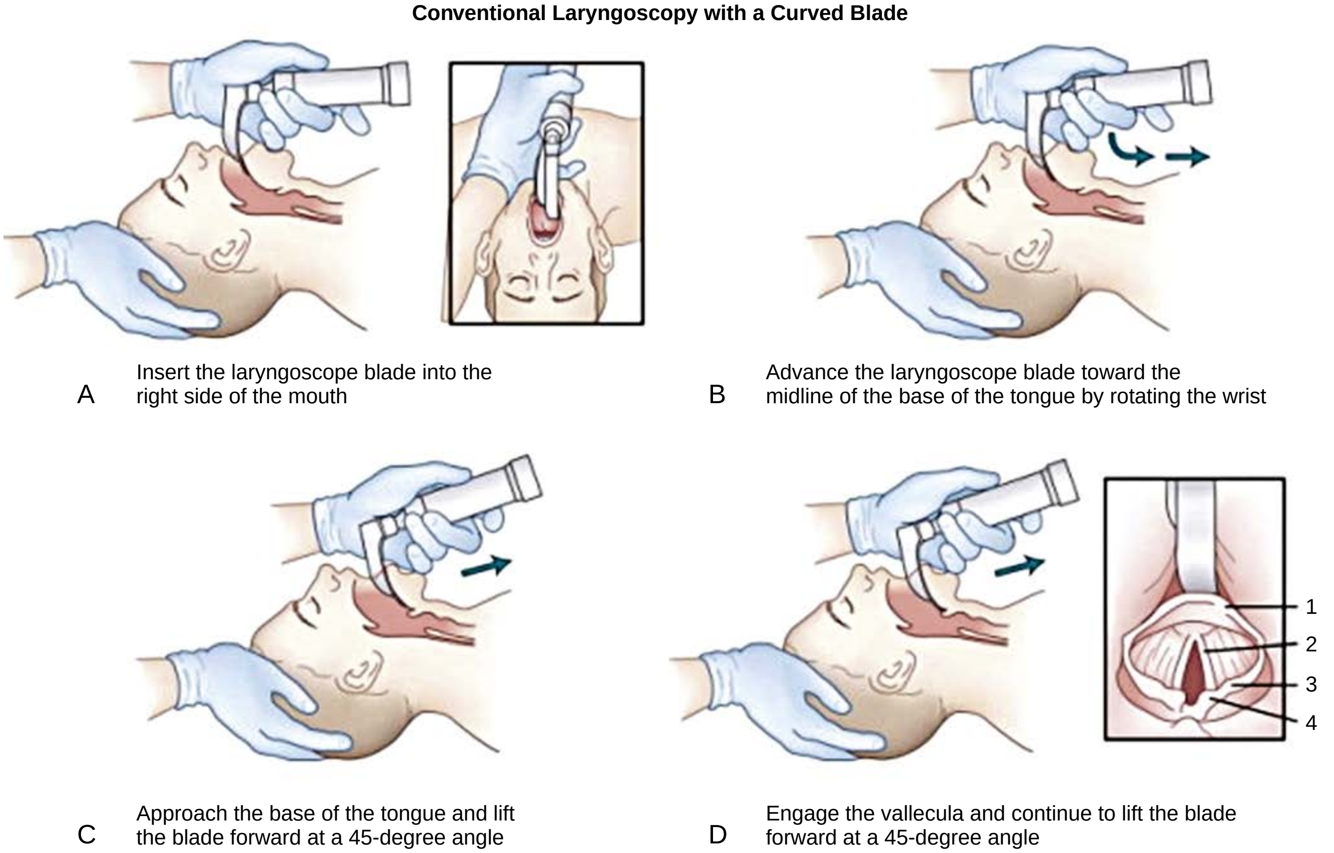

Conventional Laryngoscopy with a Curved Blade
A
Insert the laryngoscope blade into the right side of the mouth
B
Advance the laryngoscope blade toward the midline of the base of the tongue by rotating the wrist
1
2
3
4
C
Approach the base of the tongue and lift the blade forward at a 45-degree angle
D
Engage the vallecula and continue to lift the blade forward at a 45-degree angle

Fig. 44.20 Laryngoscopy technique with a Macintosh (curved) blade. (A) The laryngoscope blade is inserted into the right side of the mouth, sweeping the tongue to the left of the flange. (B) The blade is advanced toward the midline of the base of the tongue by rotating the wrist so that the laryngoscope handle becomes more vertical *(arrows)*. (C) The laryngoscope is lifted at a 45-degree angle *(arrow)* as the tip of the blade is placed in the vallecula. (D) Continued lifting of the laryngoscope handle at a 45-degree angle results in exposure of the laryngeal aperture. The epiglottis (1), vocal cords (2), cuneiform cartilage (3), and corniculate cartilage (4) are identified. (From Baker PA, Timmermann A. Laryngoscopic tracheal intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.)

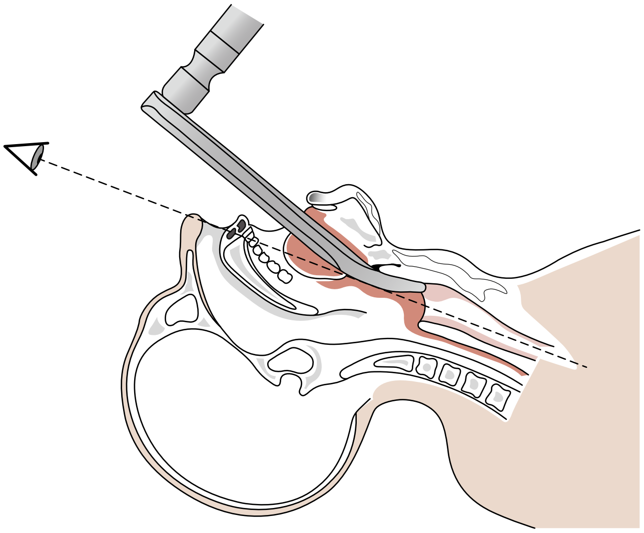


Fig. 44.21 Paraglossal laryngoscopy technique with a Miller (straight) blade. The blade is at the right side of the tongue. The line of sight over the molars is achieved by rotating the head to the left and moving the heel of the laryngoscope to the right. The tip of the blade is placed beneath the epiglottis and a 45-degree lifting force applied to expose the glottic aperture. (From Baker PA, Timmermann A. Laryngoscopic tracheal intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.)

The Miller laryngoscope blade is inserted using the paraglossal technique described by Henderson.[22] This method provides maximal tongue control and avoids contact of the laryngoscope with the maxillary incisors. The laryngoscope is inserted lateral to the tongue and carefully advanced along the paraglossal gutter between the tongue and tonsil. Application of continued moderate lifting force to the laryngoscope handle helps maintain lateral displacement of the tongue and reduces contact with the maxillary teeth. As the laryngoscope is advanced, the epiglottis comes into view and the tip of the laryngoscope is passed posterior to the epiglottis. The optimal position of the tip of the straight laryngoscope is in the midline of the posterior surface of the epiglottis, close to the anterior commissure of the vocal cords (Fig. 44.21).[22] This position achieves good control of the epiglottis and facilitates the passage of the tracheal tube. The direction of force applied to the handle is the same as when using the Macintosh blade.

The use of external laryngeal manipulation can improve the laryngeal view. Backward, upward, rightward pressure (the BURP maneuver) on the thyroid cartilage is most commonly used. Optimal external laryngeal manipulation (OELM) is achieved when the laryngoscopist uses his or her right hand to guide the position and pressure is exerted by an assistant's hand on the larynx (Fig. 44.22).

Difficulty with tracheal intubation by DL is primarily a function of an inadequate view of the glottis. Predictors for difficult laryngoscopy that can be identified during the preoperative airway assessment are listed in Box 44.3. Cormack and Lehane developed a grading scale in 1984 to describe laryngoscopic views.[206] The grades range from I to IV, beginning with grade I (the best view), in which the epiglottis and vocal cords are in complete view, and culminating with grade IV (the most difficult view), in which the epiglottis or larynx is not visualized (Fig. 44.23). A modified classification scheme with five different grades based on the Cormack-Lehane scoring system is described by Yentis, who proposed that grade II be differentiated into IIA (partial view of the glottis) and IIB (arytenoids or posterior vocal cords only are visible).[207] Intubation is rarely difficult when a grade I or IIA view is achieved; grades IIB and III are associated with a significantly higher incidence of failed intubation. A grade IV laryngoscopic view requires an alternate method of intubation. An alternate method of rating laryngoscopic view is the percentage of glottic opening (POGO) scale, which is determined by the percentage of the vocal cords from the anterior commissure to the arytenoid notch that can be visualized during laryngoscopy. This scale has been shown to have a higher interobserver reliability than the Cormack-Lehane scoring system and is potentially more useful for research studies in direct and indirect laryngoscopy.[208]

When the laryngeal view is inadequate, the laryngoscopist should verify that the patient is in an optimal position, that OELM is being provided, and that the laryngoscope has not been inserted too deeply. Whether a larger laryngoscope or an alternate style of blade would be beneficial should be

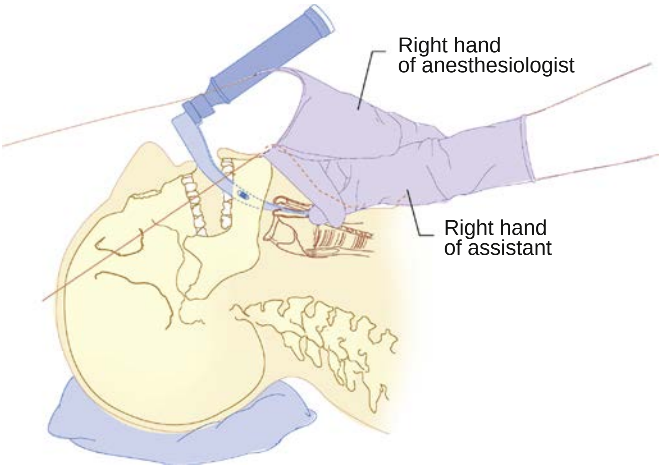


Fig. 44.22 Optimal external laryngeal manipulation. The laryngoscopist guides the position, and pressure is exerted by the assistant's hand on the larynx to maximize the view of the vocal cords. The left hand of the laryngoscopist, which holds the laryngoscope handle, is omitted. (From Henderson J. Airway management. In: Miller RJ, ed. *Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2009.)

BOX 44.3 **Predictors of Difficult Laryngoscopy**

- Long upper incisors
- Prominent overbite
- Inability to protrude mandible
- Small mouth opening
- Mallampati classification III or IV
- High, arched palate
- Short thyromental distance
- Short, thick neck
- Limited cervical mobility

Modified from Apfelbaum JL, Hagberg CA, Caplan RA, et al. Practice guidelines for management of the difficult airway: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Management of the Difficult Airway. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:251–270.

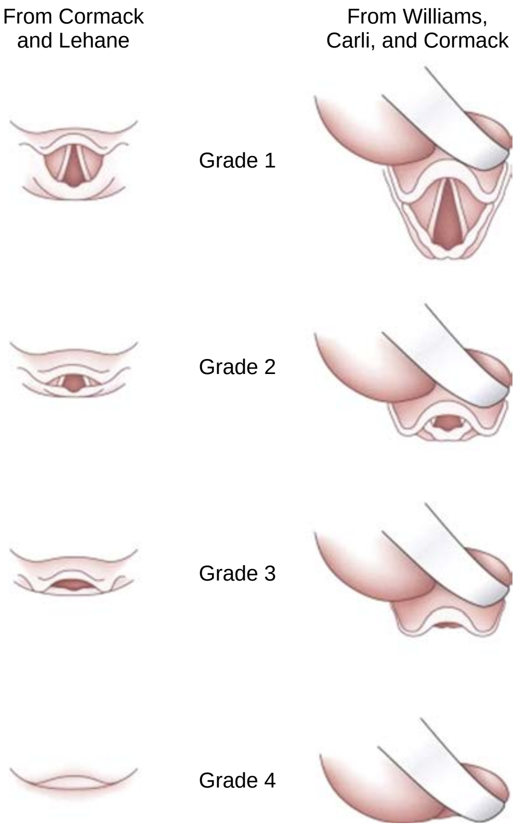


Fig. 44.23 **The Cormack-Lehane grading system for laryngoscopic view. Grade 1 is visualization of the entire laryngeal aperture; grade 2 is visualization of only the posterior portion of the laryngeal aperture; grade 3 is visualization of only the epiglottis; and grade 4 is no visualization of the epiglottis or larynx.** (Modified from Cormack RS, Lehane J. Difficult tracheal intubation in obstetrics. *Anaesthesia.* 1984;39:1105; and Williams KN, Carli F, Cormack RS. Unexpected difficult laryngoscopy: a prospective survey in routine general surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1991;66:38.)

considered. When the ETT cannot be passed into the trachea under direct visualization, the options include the following: (1) attempts at blind passage of the ETT, which risks laryngeal trauma, bleeding, and airway obstruction; (2) the use of an ETT introducer; and (3) alternative approaches to intubation as per the ASA DAA.

When the glottic view is adequate, the ETT should be inserted into the right corner of the mouth and advanced such that it intercepts the long axis of the laryngoscope blade at the glottis, rather than inserted midline and parallel to the long axis of the laryngoscope blade, ensuring that the view of the glottis is not obscured. The tip of the ETT is passed through the glottic inlet and advanced until the proximal portion of the cuff is approximately 2 cm past the vocal cords. If a stylet is being used, then the stylet should be removed when the tip of the ETT is at the level of the vocal cords while the ETT is firmly held stationary; this technique helps limit trauma to the tracheal mucosa from the semirigid stylet.

Nasotracheal Intubation Technique

Before nasotracheal intubation, the more patent nostril should be selected. This selection can be accomplished by separately occluding each nostril and having the patient inhale—the patient will usually be able to inhale more effectively through one of the nares. To reduce the risk of epistaxis, a nasal mucosal vasoconstrictor (e.g., cocaine, phenylephrine, oxymetazoline) should be administered. The nasal ETT should be lubricated and inserted into the naris with the bevel facing away from the midline, which decreases the risk of avulsion of a turbinate. Cephalad traction should be applied as the ETT is advanced through the nasal passage to ensure a trajectory along the floor of the nose, beneath the inferior turbinate.

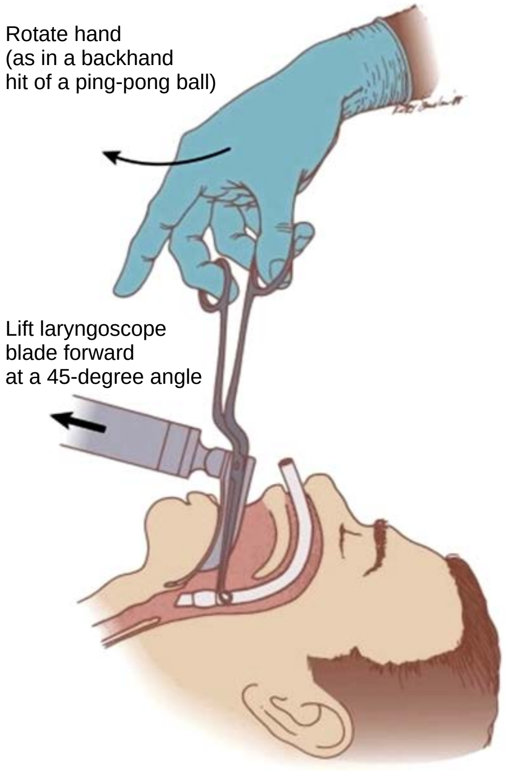


Fig. 44.24 **Guiding a nasal endotracheal tube into the larynx with Magill forceps.** (From Berry JM, Harvey S. Laryngoscopic orotracheal and nasotracheal intubation. In: Hagberg CA, ed. *Benumof and Hagberg's Airway Management*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2013, p. 357.)

Once the ETT enters the oropharynx (typically at a depth of 14 to 16 cm), standard DL is performed. The ETT can be guided into the laryngeal inlet by repositioning the head as the ETT is advanced or with the aid of Magill forceps (Fig. 44.24). Care should be taken to grasp the ETT proximal to the cuff to prevent cuff damage. Other techniques for nasotracheal intubation include blind nasal intubation, VAL, and FSI.

Confirmation of Endotracheal Tube Placement

Once the ETT is in place, the laryngoscope is removed from the mouth, the ETT cuff is appropriately inflated, and the patient is manually ventilated while the ETT is manually held in place. Immediate verification of endotracheal placement of the ETT is necessary; esophageal or endobronchial intubation is a significant source of avoidable anesthetic-related morbidity and mortality. Endotracheal placement can be determined by confirmation of chest rise, visible condensation in the ETT, equal breath sounds bilaterally over the chest wall, lack of breath sounds over the epigastrium, large exhaled tidal volumes, and appropriate compliance of

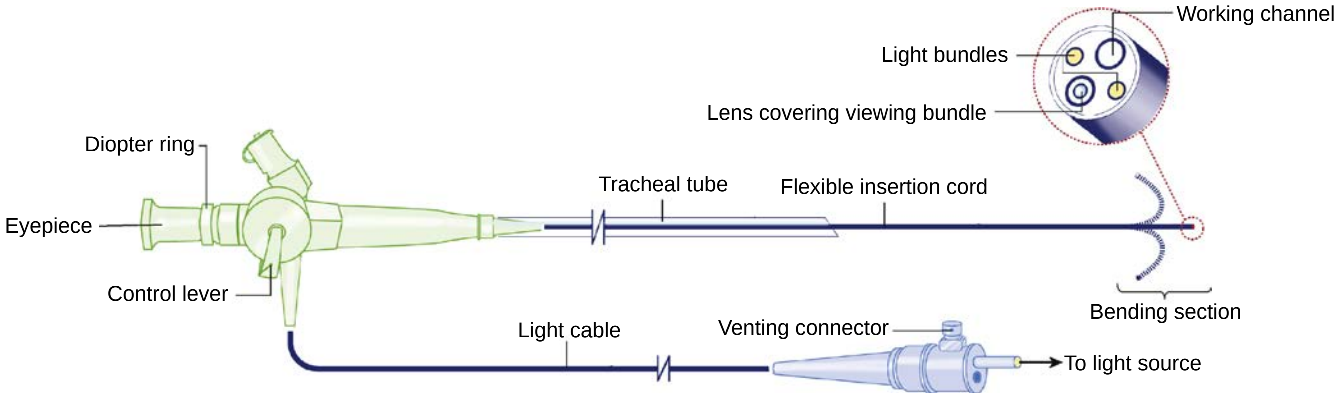


Fig. 44.25 **Flexible fiberoptic bronchoscope.** (From Henderson J. Airway management. In: Miller RJ, ed. *Anesthesia.* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2009.)

the reservoir bag during manual ventilation.[209] The most important and objective indicator of tracheal intubation, however, is the presence of a normal capnogram (carbon dioxide [CO_2] waveform) for the presence of at least three breaths. Severe bronchospasm, equipment malfunction, cardiac arrest, or hemodynamic collapse may prevent the appearance of a capnogram tracing despite proper ETT placement. If doubt remains, then flexible bronchoscopy, although not routinely used, is very reliable at confirming ETT placement.

Hypoxemia, increased airway pressures, asymmetric chest expansion, and the absence of breath sounds over one lung, generally the left, are indicative of endobronchial intubation; pneumothorax can also produce this picture. Flexible bronchoscopy or chest radiography can be used if the clinical picture is unclear.

Securing the Endotracheal Tube

Once the proper depth of the ETT has been determined, the tube should be secured in place to prevent movement and inadvertent endobronchial intubation or extubation. The most common method is to tape the ETT to the skin of the face. Because it is less mobile, the skin of the maxilla is preferred. When tape cannot be used, such as in the case of a severe tape allergy, extensive facial burns, or epidermolysis bullosa, a surgical mask may be tied around the back of the head to secure the ETT. Other methods that may be used for intraoral or facial surgery include wire fixation to a tooth or suturing the ETT to the skin of the cheek.

INDIRECT LARYNGOSCOPY

Conventional DL requires wide mouth opening, cervical flexion, and atlantooccipital extension to create a direct line of vision from the mouth to the larynx. In certain conditions, this positioning is impossible or contraindicated. Other times, attributable to anatomic variations in the airway (e.g., redundant soft tissue, protruding incisors, anterior larynx), DL cannot be achieved, despite optimal positioning and technique. Indirect laryngoscopy entails the indirect visualization of the glottis by way of optical aids, such as fiberoptic bundles, video cameras, mirrors, prisms, or lenses. Various different devices that use indirect laryngoscopy are available, including FISs, video laryngoscopes (VLs), and intubating optical stylets. They are indispensable tools for the management of the known or predicted difficult airway. Because no direct line of sight is needed, visualization of the larynx can occur without tissue distortion; consequently, these techniques can be readily used with topical anesthesia in an awake patient.[22]

Flexible Intubation Scopes

The FIS is the most widely used, versatile, indirect laryngoscopy device. Since the first use of fiberoptics for airway management in 1967, FISs, including the flexible fiberoptic bronchoscope (FOB), have become invaluable tools for tracheal intubation in both awake and anesthetized patients. There are various clinical scenarios within which FSI provides a superior technique for airway management, as compared with DL or alternative airway devices. FSI of the awake and cooperative, spontaneously ventilating patient is considered the *gold standard* for the management of the difficult airway.[195]

The standard FOB (Fig. 44.25) consists of thousands of flexible glass fibers approximately 8 to 10 μm in diameter that are capable of transmitting reflected light along their length. Light is transmitted from an external light source to the distal end of the FOB; the light reflecting off the object to be viewed is transmitted back along the length of the FOB to an eyepiece or video camera at the proximal end of the scope. In recent years, FOBs have been replaced by modern FISs that use video chip and light-emitting diode (LED) technology instead of fiberoptics.

Indications for FSI essentially include any indication for tracheal intubation. However, FSI may be the airway management technique of choice in any one of the following clinical scenarios[195]:

- Known or anticipated difficult airway (i.e., cannot intubate or cannot ventilate [CICV])
- Contraindication to extension of the neck (e.g., unstable cervical fracture, severe cervical stenosis, vertebral artery insufficiency, Chiari malformation)
- Increased risk of dental damage (e.g., poor dentition, fragile dental work)
- Limited mouth opening (e.g., TMJ disease, mandibular-maxillary fixation, severe facial burns)

No specific contraindications exist for FSI; however, in certain clinical situations, successful FSI is unlikely. Severe airway bleeding can obscure anatomic landmarks and soil the tip of the FIS with blood, making visualization of the larynx extremely difficult. Obstruction or severe stenosis of the airway, resulting in the inability to pass an FIS, can also make FSI impossible.

FSI provides several advantages over DL[195]:

- Allows for a more complete visual examination of the airway before intubation.
- Provides confirmation of tube placement, avoiding esophageal and endobronchial intubation.
- Eliminates the need for three-axis alignment; therefore FSI is among the techniques least likely to result in cervical spine movement.
- Is well-tolerated in awake patients; results in less tachycardia and hypertension.
- Has less of a potential for airway and dental trauma.
- Can be performed in multiple positions.

FSI can be performed in the awake or anesthetized patient. Indications for an awake FSI are generally those situations in which ventilation via a mask is anticipated to be difficult, when a postintubation neurologic examination is needed, or when induction of general anesthesia could cause adverse hemodynamic or respiratory consequences. The major technical disadvantage to performing FSI under general anesthesia is the loss of pharyngeal muscle tone, which can lead to upper airway collapse and difficult fiberoptic laryngoscopy.[195]

Before its use, the anesthesia practitioner or skilled assistant must ensure that the FIS, light source, and video monitor are in proper working condition and that all components have been fully prepared for use. This preparation includes focusing the image if using a FOB, ensuring proper view orientation if using a video camera, lubricating the distal third of the flexible insertion cord, applying antifogging solution to the tip of the scope, and connecting a suction line or oxygen source to the suction port. The ETT should be prepared by placing it in a warm water bath, which softens the plastic, easing passage into the trachea and minimizing airway trauma.

FSI is usually performed in the supine or sitting (i.e., beach-chair) position, although emergency FSI in the lateral decubitus or even prone position has also been described.[210] When performing FSI in the supine position, the anesthesia provider stands at the head of the patient. Advantages to this position are that the laryngeal view through the FIS is in the same orientation as during DL, and the patient and physician are already in the optimal position to perform mask ventilation or other airway maneuvers, if necessary. When performing FSI with the patient in the sitting or beach-chair position, the practitioner should stand facing the patient at the patient's side. This position may be the position of choice in awake FSI because of improved ventilation and greater patient comfort. In addition, the sitting position optimizes airway anatomy and prevents airway collapse in patients who are obese, in patients with obstructive sleep apnea, and in patients with anterior extrinsic airway obstruction.[211]

Before FSI, unless contraindicated, an anti-sialagogue, such as glycopyrrolate 0.2-0.4 mg IV, may be administered to dry airway secretions. Both the orotracheal and nasotracheal routes can be used for FSI. While weighing the advantages and disadvantages, the clinician should determine which approach is best-suited for the clinical situation. Whichever route is chosen, however, essentially two steps to FSI must be taken[195]:

1. Indirect laryngoscopy and endoscopy are performed, obtaining a view of the glottis with the FIS and maneuvering the FIS through the vocal cords into the trachea.
2. The ETT is advanced over the FIS into its proper position in the trachea, and the FIS is removed.

When performing orotracheal FSI, navigating the FIS around the base of the tongue to achieve a satisfactory view of the larynx is one of the major challenges. The FIS has a tendency to stray off the midline, and, frequently, little to no airspace is found between the tongue and the palate through which to navigate the FIS. To mitigate this issue, several devices or techniques can be used. Specialized intubating oral airways can be used to protect the FIS from damage by biting, to prevent the tongue from falling back into the pharynx and obstructing the airspace, and to keep the FIS midline while it is guided to the larynx. Several types of intubating oral airways are available, each with unique design differences, and include the Ovassapian, Berman, and Williams airways. A disadvantage of these devices is that they place pressure on the base of the tongue, potentially causing gagging in awake patients. In both awake patients and those under general anesthesia, gentle traction on the tongue anteriorly is helpful in preventing the tongue from falling back into the pharynx if an intubating airway is not used. This traction can be easily accomplished by hand with the help of 4- × 4-inch gauze pads for traction or with Magill forceps. Care should be taken to not injure the tongue on the bottom teeth. As previously described, LMAs and intubating LMAs can also be used as conduits for oral FSI. Obtaining a laryngeal view during nasal FSI is often easier, as compared with the oral approach, as a result of the fact that the FIS stays midline and the tip of the FIS is usually directed at the glottis as it enters the oropharynx.

Once the FIS has been successfully positioned in the oropharynx, the epiglottis and vocal cords can usually be visualized with a slight anterior deflection of the tip of the FIS. The FIS is aimed toward the anterior commissure of the vocal cords and posteriorly flexed to enter into the trachea. The trachea is easily identifiable by the presence of the cartilaginous tracheal rings. The FIS is advanced distally until a point just above the carina, and the ETT is advanced over the FIS while continually visualizing the trachea through the FIS, providing confirmation that the FIS and ETT have not been accidentally dislodged into the oropharynx or esophagus (Video 44.6). Frequently, especially with orotracheal intubation, resistance is met as the tip of ETT reaches the glottic inlet. Often, this resistance has been shown to be attributable to the bevel of the ETT impinging on the right arytenoid.[212] A slight withdrawal of the ETT and a counterclockwise 90-degree turn, orienting the bevel posteriorly, usually resolves this issue. For nasotracheal intubation, a clockwise 90-degree turn, ensuring that the bevel is oriented anteriorly, can prevent the tip of the ETT from impinging on the epiglottis. Alternatively, the Parker Flex-Tip ETT (Parker Medical, Englewood, CO), which has a bull-nosed tip directed toward the center of the distal lumen, can be used. This ETT has been shown to have a high first-pass success rate when being advanced over an FIS.[213]

After successful passage of the ETT, proper depth (2 to 3 cm from the carina) is confirmed during the withdrawal of the FIS. On rare occasions, the FIS may prove difficult to remove from the ETT, which may be attributable to the FIS having passed through the Murphy eye rather than the distal lumen or a result of inadequate lubrication of the FIS. In these situations, forceful removal may damage the device; therefore the FIS and ETT should be removed as a unit and the procedure repeated.

Rigid Indirect Laryngoscopes

The first indirect laryngoscopes for intubation were based on modifications of the standard direct laryngoscope and used mirrors or prisms to project an image at an angle from the horizontal, facilitating visualization of the larynx. Modern indirect laryngoscopes based on the direct laryngoscope design that use optical lenses to project a refracted image of the glottis include the Viewmax (Rüsch, Duluth, GA) and the TruView EVO2 (Truphatek, Netanya, Israel).

The Airtraq SP (Prodol Meditec S.A., Guecho, Spain) is a disposable, portable, anatomically shaped, optical laryngoscope that provides a magnified view of the glottis without alignment of the oral, pharyngeal, and laryngeal axes. It includes a guiding channel to hold the ETT and direct it toward the vocal cords. It can be used for a variety of applications, including the known or predicted difficult airway, as well as for awake intubation. The Airtraq laryngoscope has been shown to result in more rapid tracheal intubation with a reduced incidence of esophageal intubation when compared to DL, especially when used by novices.[214] It is available in two adult and two pediatric sizes, as well as in specific designs for nasotracheal intubation and double-lumen tube placement. The Airtraq Avant is a newer model that features a reusable optic piece that is used in combination with disposable blades.

Lighted Optical Stylets

Lighted optical stylets are rigid or semirigid fiberoptic devices that incorporate the optical and light-transmitting components into a tubular, stainless steel sheath over which the ETT is loaded. A substantial body of evidence supports the use of these optical stylets in patients with limited neck mobility,[215] small mouth opening,[216] abnormal airway anatomy,[217] or anticipated difficult laryngoscopy.

The Bonfils retromolar intubation fiberscope (Karl Storz Endoscopy, Tuttlingen, Germany) is a 40-cm long, rigid optical stylet with a fixed anterior tip curvature of 40 degrees (Video 44.7).[218] The proximal eyepiece can be used with the naked eye or connected to a video monitor. It is available with a working channel that can be used for suction, SAYGO local anesthesia,[219] or oxygen insufflation (oxygen flow rates should be limited to 3 L/min to avoid barotrauma).[220] The Shikani optical stylet (Clarus Medical, Minneapolis, MN) is a similar device to the Bonfils fiberscope but with a malleable shaft. The Levitan FPS stylet (Clarus Medical, Minneapolis, MN) is a shorter version of the Shikani stylet intended for use in combination with DL, although usable on its own.[221] The Clarus Video System (Clarus Medical, Minneapolis, MN) is a newer version of the Shikani stylet that incorporates a liquid crystal display (LCD) screen (Video 44.8).

These optical stylets can be used on their own or in combination with DL or VAL[222] The ETT is mounted on the optical stylet and advanced under direct vision via a midline or right paraglossal route until it passes under the tongue. After indirect visualization of the tip of the stylet passing through the vocal cords (via the eyepiece or video monitor), the ETT is advanced over the stylet into the trachea. When these are not used in conjunction with DL or VAL, the left hand of the operator should lift the patient's jaw by gently grasping the mandible and displacing it anteriorly. This maneuver helps create more airspace in the oropharynx and lifts the epiglottis. Optical stylets can be used for awake intubation and have also been used for the transillumination technique (see Lighted Stylets).[218,223]

The SensaScope (Acutronic, Hirzel, Switzerland) is a hybrid rigid optical stylet that uses video chip technology. It has an S-shaped curvature and a 3-cm long steerable tip.[224] Visualization is achieved by a connection to a video monitor. The SensaScope is designed to be used in combination with DL and has been successfully used for awake intubation in patients with a predicted difficult airway.[225] The Video RIFL (AI Medical Devices, Williamston, MI) is a similar device with a rigid shaft and a flexible, steerable tip. This device features an LCD monitor attached to the handle that displays the video image.

Video Laryngoscopes

As with flexible bronchoscopes, video chip technology has begun to largely replace fiberoptic technology in rigid indirect laryngoscopes because of the advantages of a higher quality image, increased durability, and reduced maintenance costs. Over the past 15 years, VLs have revolutionized the practice of airway management, and their use may become standard not only for difficult airways, but also for routine airways as well. In fact, VAL is now included in the ASA DAA as an alternative approach to intubation and should be considered for patients with a known or predicted difficult airway.[7] A VL is also listed as a suggested piece of equipment on a portable difficult airway cart.[7]

VAL has been shown to result in improved glottic visualization, compared with DL, in both routine airway management and in the predicted difficult airway.[7,226] Although this improved visualization does not necessarily translate into increased success with intubation (particularly in the normal airway), studies have shown improved intubation success with VAL in patients with predicted difficult airways.[227,228] VLs are also useful in the unexpected difficult airway; intubation success rates of 94% and 99% have been reported for VAL as a rescue modality after failed DL.[229,230] These devices have also been successfully used for awake intubation.[231,232]

Various different VLs have been introduced, each with its own design and specific features. Generally, VLs can be divided into three groups: (1) those whose design is based on the Macintosh blade, (2) those that incorporate highly curved or distally angulated blades, and (3) those that incorporate an ETT-guiding channel.[233] Although no single design has been shown to be superior, there are certain clinical circumstances where one style may be preferable to another. Other features that vary among different VLs include the degree of portability and the size of the video monitor. Many VLs are available in both reusable and single-use models.

VLs based on the Macintosh blade design include the C-MAC laryngoscope (Karl Storz, Tuttlingen, Germany), the McGrath MAC laryngoscope (Aircraft Medical, Edinburgh, UK), and the GlideScope Titanium MAC (Verathon, Bothell, WA). These devices can be used for both DL and VAL, making them particularly useful for teaching the DL technique. The C-MAC laryngoscope is the most extensively studied of these and is associated with shorter intubation times and greater ease of use, compared with other VLs,[234,235] which is possibly due to laryngoscopists' familiarity with the use of a Macintosh-style blade (Fig. 44.26). The technique for using the C-MAC laryngoscope is identical to that of DL with a Macintosh blade; alternatively, the tip of the VL can be used to lift the epiglottis directly.[236] In contrast to other VLs, most intubations with the C-MAC laryngoscope can be performed without the use of a stylet[237,238]; the use of an oral RAE ETT can facilitate tracheal intubation.[239]

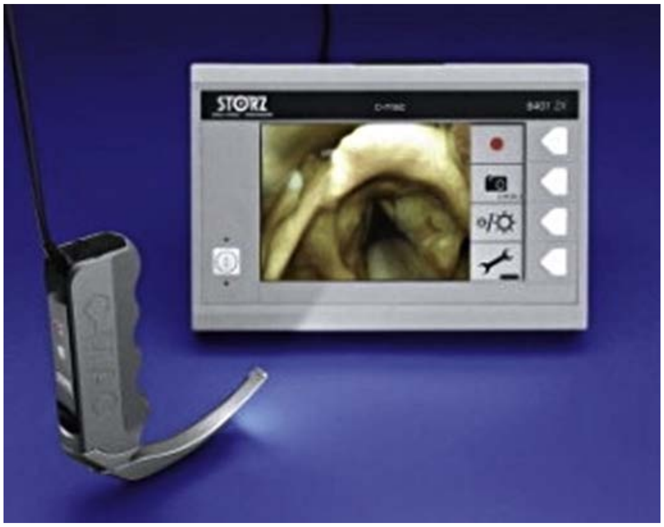


Fig. 44.26 The Storz C-MAC videolaryngoscope. (From Aziz M, Brambrink A. Video-assisted laryngoscopy. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.)

VLs with a distally angulated or highly curved blade permit a "look around the corner," providing an improved laryngoscopic view without requiring manipulation of the cervical spine. These devices are therefore of particular utility in patients with cervical immobilization, micrognathia, or limited mouth opening.[233] The GlideScope Titanium LoPro (Verathon, Bothell, WA) is the updated version of the archetype for this subset of devices. It possesses a 60-degree blade angulation, an antifogging mechanism, a 6.4-inch video monitor, and is available in reusable and single-use models (Fig. 44.27). The McGrath Series 5 laryngoscope (Aircraft Medical, Edinburgh, UK) is a similar device in that it possesses a distally angulated blade; its primary difference is its greater portability and a disarticulating handle that can be useful in patients with limited mouth opening and limited movement of the head and neck. The X-Blade is a hyperangulated blade for the McGrath MAC, while the D-Blade (Karl Storz, Tuttlingen, Germany) is a highly curved VL blade for use with the C-MAC system. These devices are typically inserted in the mouth midline, without sweeping the tongue from right to left as in DL. Because of the high degree of angulation of the blade, an ETT stylet is almost always necessary; malleable stylets with a 60- to 90-degree bend, articulating stylets, and the GlideRite stylet (a rigid stylet with a 90-degree curve specifically designed for use with the GlideScope) have all been successfully used with these VLs.[240,241] The VL and the styletted ETT should be inserted into the oral cavity under direct vision to avoid oropharyngeal trauma (Video 44.9).[242]

Some VLs with highly curved blades have integrated tube-guiding channels to facilitate intubation without the use of a stylet, similar to the Airtraq. The King Vision (King Systems, Noblesville, IN) and the Pentax Airway Scope (AWS; Pentax Medical, distributed by Ambu Inc., Ballerup, Denmark) fall into this category. This type of VL has been shown to be useful in patients with cervical immobilization and has been successfully used for awake intubation.[243,244]

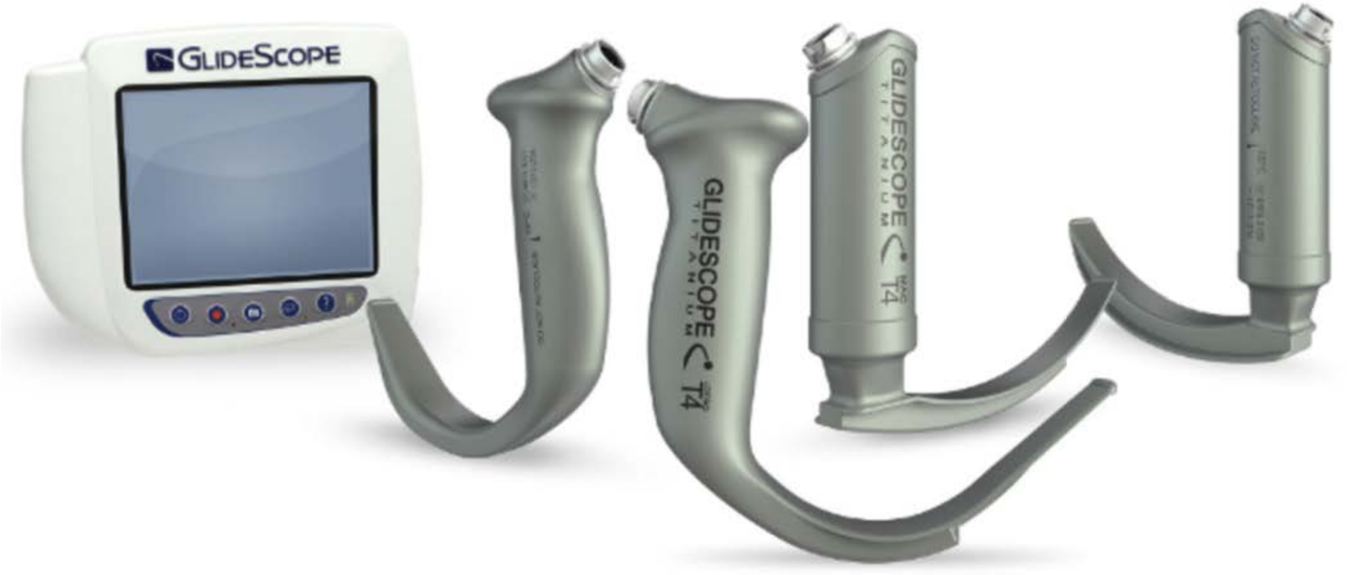


Fig. 44.27 The GlideScope AVL videolaryngoscope system with titanium blades. (From Aziz M, Brambrink A. Video-assisted laryngoscopy. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.)

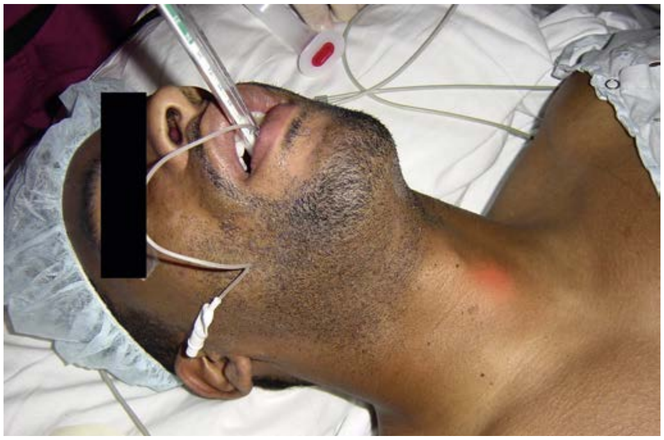


Fig. 44.28 When the tip of a lighted stylet is placed at the glottic opening, a well-circumscribed glow can be seen in the anterior neck just below the thyroid prominence.

The VividTrac (Vivid Medical, Palo Alto, CA) is a single-use, channeled VL with a Universal Serial Bus (USB) interface that works with any monitor.

Lighted Stylets

Lighted stylets make use of the transillumination technique to blindly intubate the trachea and have been described in the literature as an alternative or aid to DL, particularly in the predicted difficult airway. Lighted stylets may be particularly helpful when the presence of blood or heavy secretions limits visualization of the airway. However, because lighted stylet insertion is a blind technique, it is contraindicated in certain clinical situations, such as neoplasm of the airway or airway trauma. Because increased soft tissue leads to difficulty with transillumination, this technique is less useful in the patient who is morbidly obese.[245]

To perform the transillumination technique, an ETT is preloaded onto the stylet. The left hand of the operator lifts the supine patient's jaw by gently grasping the mandible and displacing it anteriorly to facilitate the insertion of the stylet under the tongue. The stylet should be inserted using a retromolar approach. Once inserted, the stylet should be kept midline and advanced under the tongue. A well-circumscribed *glow* (approximately the size of a quarter) should appear in the midline of the patient's neck at the level of the cricoid cartilage (Fig. 44.28), indicating correct positioning of the stylet within the trachea. Subsequently, the ETT can be advanced over the stylet into proper position (Video 44.10).[245]

RETROGRADE INTUBATION

RI is a well-described technique for orotracheal or nasotracheal intubation that involves guiding an ETT into the trachea with a narrow, flexible guide that has been percutaneously placed through the CTM into the trachea and passed retrograde through the larynx and pharynx, exiting the mouth or nose. The guide is typically a steel guidewire, although an epidural catheter can be used. This technique has several modifications, each with its own benefits and disadvantages, and can be successfully used in awake, sedated, obtunded, or apneic patients who have either an anticipated or unanticipated difficult airway.[246] Indications include failure of DL; obstruction of the view of the vocal cords by blood, secretions, or anatomic derangement; and difficult intubation scenarios such as unstable cervical spine, ankylosing spondylitis, maxillofacial trauma, or trismus. RI is also an alternative to FSI in developing countries where the availability of FISs is limited.[246]

The ASA DAA describes RI as an alternative approach to difficult intubation in the nonemergent pathway, when intubation is unsuccessful but mask ventilation is adequate. It is suggested that equipment for RI be included in a portable storage unit for difficult airway management. RI can take several minutes to accomplish; therefore this technique is contraindicated in an emergent CICV scenario.[246] Other contraindications are generally relative and include anatomic abnormalities (e.g., malignancy, goiter) that preclude access to the CTM, tracheal stenosis at the level of the CTM, coagulopathy, and local infection.

The ideal position for RI is supine with the neck in extension, allowing easy palpation of the cricoid cartilage and surrounding structures. If this position is not possible, then RI can also be performed with the patient in the sitting position or with the neck in a neutral position. If landmarks are difficult to identify, then ultrasound guidance may be used. The anterior neck should be cleansed before puncture, and aseptic technique should be used. The translaryngeal puncture site can be performed superior or inferior to the cricoid cartilage. The CTM (superior to the cricoid cartilage) has the advantage of being relatively avascular; however, a puncture at this site allows only 1 cm of space below the level of the vocal cords for the tip of the ETT. A puncture site inferior to the cricoid cartilage, at the cricotracheal ligament, allows the ETT to travel in a straight path with a long length of the ETT below the vocal cords; however, this site is associated with a greater potential for bleeding.[246]

The classic technique for RI involves using a Tuohy needle to puncture the CTM and an epidural catheter as the guide. More commonly, an IV catheter and a steel guidewire are used. The diameter of the guidewire should be small enough to fit through the IV catheter and should be at least twice as long as the ETT to be used; a guidewire with a .038-inch diameter (which passes through an 18-gauge IV catheter) and a length of 110 cm is commonly used. Commercial kits are available that include all necessary equipment. Performing a RI with a J-tip, steel guidewire rather than an epidural catheter provides the following advantages: the J-tip of a guidewire is less traumatic to airway, the guidewire has a lower tendency to coil or kink, retrieval of the guidewire from the oral or nasal cavity is easier, and the technique is quicker.[246]

Once the patient has been positioned, the operator's nondominant hand stabilizes the trachea by placing the thumb and third digit on either side of the cricoid cartilage. The index finger is used to identify the midline of the CTM and the upper border of the cricoid cartilage. A syringe half-filled with saline is attached to an 18-gauge angiocatheter and advanced at a 90-degree angle to the CTM with the bevel facing cephalad, aspirating for air bubbles to confirm the position inside the trachea. The angle of insertion is slightly lowered, and the needle is removed. At this stage, reconfirmation of a position within the trachea and instillation of a local anesthetic can be performed with a second syringe filled with 2 to 4 mL of 2% or 4% lidocaine. This transtracheal block can provide additional comfort to a patient who is awake or sedated and undergoing RI, or it can reduce the incidence of sympathetic stimulation and laryngospasm in a patient under general anesthesia.

The guidewire is then advanced through the angiocatheter until it exits the mouth or nose. DL can be used to facilitate the wire exiting the mouth, if necessary. The guidewire is clamped with a hemostat at the level of the skin of the neck to prevent migration. Although the ETT can then be directly advanced over the guidewire, a tapered guide catheter (e.g., Arndt airway exchange catheter) is useful to reduce the discrepancy in diameter between the guide-wire and the ETT, which can predispose the ETT to catch on the arytenoids or vocal cords rather than smoothly slide into the trachea. The guide catheter is placed over the portion of the wire exiting the mouth or nose and advanced until it contacts the CTM. The wire is then removed, and an ETT is advanced over the guide catheter (Fig. 44.29 and Video 44.11). Potential complications include bleeding (usually minimal), subcutaneous emphysema, pneumomediastinum, pneumothorax, and injury to the posterior trachea or esophagus.[246]

DOUBLE-LUMEN TUBES AND BRONCHIAL BLOCKERS

Single-lung ventilation is required for certain clinical circumstances, including protective lung isolation from infection or hemorrhage, attaining adequate exposure for surgical procedures (e.g., video-assisted thoracoscopy), and for controlling the distribution of ventilation in the setting of major bronchial surgery, trauma, or fistula. Double-lumen tubes (DLTs) and bronchial blockers are two options that allow for ventilation of only one lung (also see Chapter 53).

DLTs have a bronchial lumen and a tracheal lumen. They are designated as left-sided or right-sided, depending on whether the bronchial lumen goes to the left or right main bronchus. Most commonly, a left-sided DLT is used to avoid blockage of the right upper lobe bronchus. DLTs are placed in a similar fashion to the standard ETT, although placement is usually more difficult because of their size and stiffness. Video laryngoscopy can facilitate DLT placement.[247] After placing the DLT into the trachea, verification of the location of the bronchial port with an FIS should be determined. The blue bronchial cuff should be positioned just below the carina in the appropriate bronchus. Inflation of the blue bronchial balloon under direct visualization helps verify proper placement. Care should be taken to ensure that the bronchial cuff does not herniate over the carina. The VivaSight-DL (Ambu Inc., Ballerup, Denmark) is a single-use left-sided DLT with an integrated camera located at the tip of the tracheal lumen and allows for accurate positioning of the DLT without the use of an FIS. Once a DLT is properly placed, isolating a lung is possible by inflating the bronchial cuff and clamping either the tracheal or bronchial connector.

Bronchial blockers are essentially hollow, balloon-tipped catheters that are endobronchially placed to isolate and deflate one lung. In some clinical situations, lung isolation is required, but the use of a DLT is not practical because of a difficult airway, decreased size of the tracheal lumen, or the need for postoperative mechanical ventilation. In these instances, the use of a modified single-lumen tube with an integrated bronchial blocker (e.g., the Univent [Fuji Systems, Tokyo, Japan]) or the use of a bronchial blocker in conjunction with a standard ETT is appropriate.

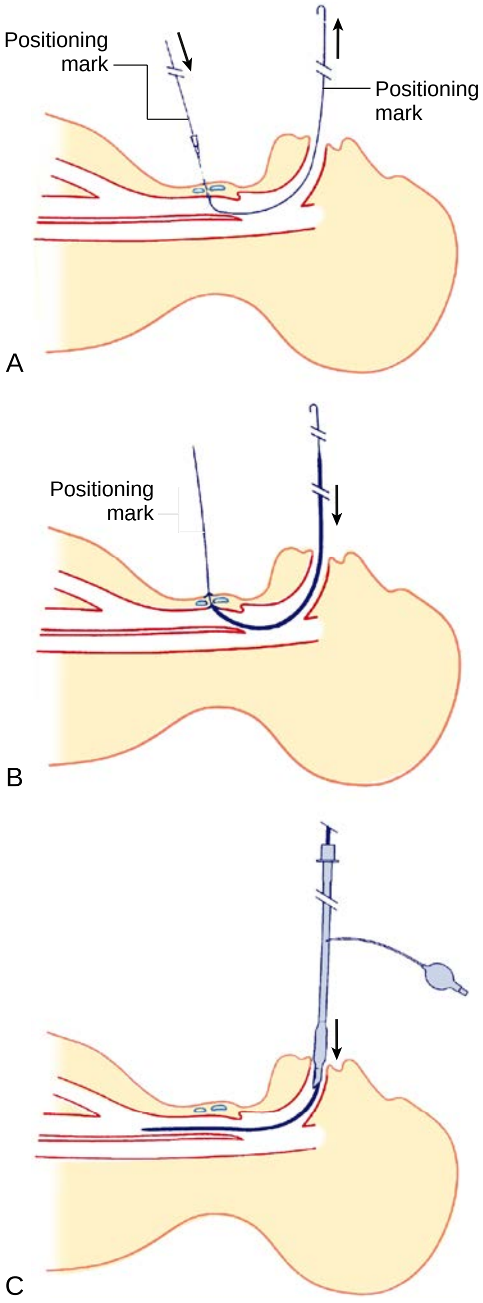


Fig. 44.29 The guidewire technique for retrograde intubation. (A) After the placement of an 18-gauge angiocatheter through the cricothyroid membrane, the J-tip of the guidewire is inserted in a cephalad direction until it exits the mouth or nose. (B) The guide catheter is threaded over the guidewire until it contacts the laryngeal access site. The guidewire is then removed from above. (C) After advancing the guide catheter 2 to 3 cm, the endotracheal tube is advanced into the trachea. (Courtesy Cook Critical Care, Bloomington, IN.)

COMBINATION TECHNIQUES

Tracheal Intubation Through a Supraglottic Airway Device

The intubating LMA (ILMA), known as the LMA Fastrach (LMA North America, San Diego, CA), was first described

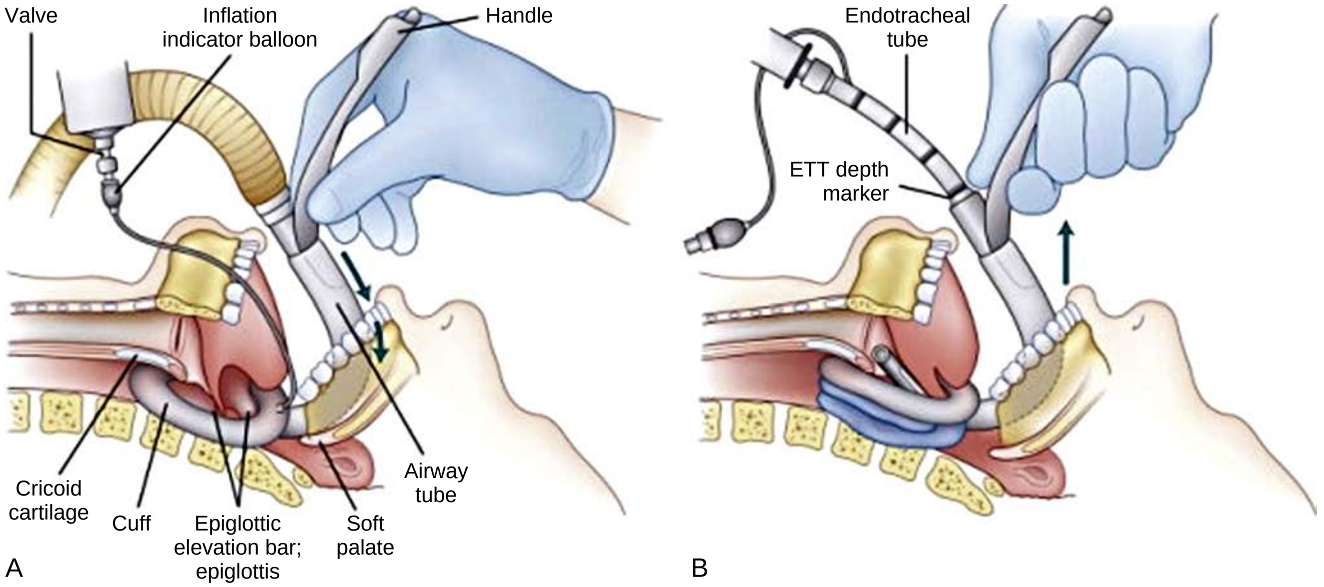


Fig. 44.30 The Chandy maneuver consists of two steps. (A) The first step is important for establishing optimal ventilation. The intubating laryngeal mask airway (ILMA) is slightly rotated in the sagittal plane using the handle until the least resistance to bag ventilation is achieved. (B) The second step is performed just before blind intubation. The handle is used to lift (but not tilt) the ILMA slightly away from the posterior pharyngeal wall, which facilitates the smooth passage of the endotracheal tube into the trachea. (From Lindsay HA, Cook TM, Russo SG, Hagberg CA. Supraglottic airway techniques: laryngeal mask airways. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.)

by Dr. Archie Brain in 1997; it became available for commercial use in the United States shortly thereafter. The ILMA was designed as a conduit for tracheal intubation to facilitate ventilation between attempts at tracheal intubation. The rigid handle and airway tube enable a rapid and precise control of mask position. An epiglottic elevating bar is designed to elevate the epiglottis as the tube is advanced into the bowl. A disposable, single-use version is available in addition to the original reusable model. Specialized reusable or single-use tracheal tubes are designed to facilitate atraumatic blind intubation through the ILMA. The tubes are straight, wire-reinforced, and have a soft molded tip designed to prevent impingement on laryngeal structures.

The technique of inserting the ILMA differs in many respects from the insertion of the cLMA, and the learning curve is significant. A neutral head position (nonextended head on a support) is recommended. The ILMA handle is used to rotate the mask into the pharynx. Oxygenation, ventilation, and anesthesia are stabilized after insertion. If resistance to ventilation is encountered, then the position of the ILMA is adjusted. The *Chandy maneuver* consists of two separate maneuvers: (1) the ILMA is rotated in the sagittal plane until resistance to bag ventilation is minimal; and then (2) the ILMA is gently lifted from the posterior pharyngeal wall just before passage of the tracheal tube (Fig. 44.30). The original, reusable ILMA should be removed soon after tracheal intubation has been verified because its rigidity results in high pressure on adjacent tissues. Although the blind technique has a high rate of success, intubation under vision with an FIS through the ILMA achieves higher first-attempt and overall success rates.

Other SGAs can be used to facilitate tracheal intubation. The cLMA, although not designed for intubation, can be an effective conduit if used in conjunction with an FIS. Because of the long and narrow airway shaft, a microlaryngeal tube must be used. Alternatively, a cLMA can be exchanged for an ETT by using an FIS in conjunction with the Aintree intubation catheter (Cook Critical Care, Bloomington, IN), which is a hollow airway exchange catheter designed to fit over a standard FIS (Fig. 44.31 and Video 44.12). Most newer SGAs have airway shafts that are wide enough to allow intubation through the device with a standard-sized ETT (Video 44.13).

Combined Direct Laryngoscopy Techniques

DL can be used to expand the space available in the oral cavity to manipulate an FIS by displacing pharyngeal tissue, and the epiglottis can be elevated allowing the scope to be more easily directed underneath the epiglottis toward the glottic opening. This may be especially helpful in the morbidly obese patient or patients with soiled airways (e.g., with blood, secretions, or vomitus).[248]

When a Cormack-Lehane grade III view is encountered during DL, the coudé tip of an ETT introducer can be passed underneath the epiglottis, and tracheal positioning confirmed by the sensation of clicks as the bougie tip passes the tracheal rings.

While using an optical stylet as an adjunct to DL, the tip of the stylet can be guided just beneath the tip of the epiglottis under direct vision. While holding the ETT/fiberoptic stylet securely, the clinician transfers his/her vision to the eyepiece or monitor where the glottic opening can be visualized, and the ETT can be advanced through the vocal cords and into the trachea.[248]

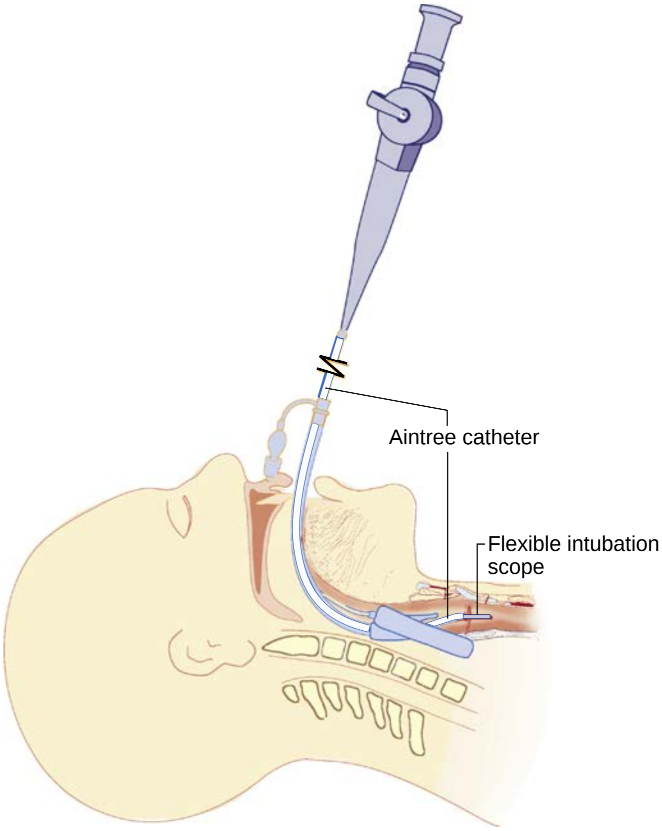


Fig. 44.31 Aintree intubating catheter within a flexible intubation scope, inserted through a laryngeal mask airway. (From Henderson J. Airway management. In: Miller RJ, ed. *Anesthesia.* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2009.)

Combined Video-Assisted Laryngoscopy Techniques

Just as the bougie has been demonstrated to be an invaluable adjunct to DL, it may be used in combination with VAL in order to improve the success of tracheal intubation, and may offer additional advantages. In a trial featuring a simulated airway with vomitus, the use of a bougie improved intubation success rate and decreased the time to intubation with the Pentax-AWS and the McGrath MAC compared to DL.[249] A bougie may also facilitate advancement of the ETT into the trachea when an adequate view is obtained with VAL, but difficulty is encountered with intubation (Video 44.14).[250]

Optical stylets can also be used in combination with VAL. A study examining the use of the C-MAC VL and the Bonfils Intubation Scope in patients with a history of difficult intubation found that the combination of the two devices was superior in terms of glottic view than either device by itself.[251]

Certain circumstances may arise in which a combination of VAL and FSI may be beneficial. A patient with severely limited mouth opening and/or unstable cervical spine injury may preclude the use of DL in order to assist in FSI; using VAL in this situation may provide the ability to view the glottic opening and better guide the FIS into position. VAL can also diagnose difficulties with the passage of the ETT over the FIS into the glottis (Video 44.15).[248]

Combined Retrograde Intubation Techniques

To improve the success of retrograde intubation, it can be combined with DL or an FIS. DL can be used as an adjunct in order to improve success during retrograde guided intubation. During the classic technique of retrograde intubation, after a catheter is placed in the inferior cricothyroid membrane, the J-tip of a guidewire is directed upward until it can be retrieved from the mouth or nares. If orotracheal intubation is desired, DL can aid the clinician in opening the oropharynx and visualizing the wire so that it may be retrieved more easily through the mouth prior to entering the nasopharynx. In addition, after the guiding catheter is advanced anterograde over the wire until tenting is noted at the cricothyroid access point, DL may be used in order to lift the epiglottis and pharyngeal tissue, facilitating the passage of an ETT through the vocal cords.[248]

Alternatively, an FIS can be used to facilitate retrograde intubation. After the guidewire is retrieved from the mouth or naris, it is passed through the working channel of the FIS from distal to proximal. The FIS is then passed over the guidewire and into the glottis until resistance is met at the cricothyroid membrane. The hemostat that held the guidewire in place internally may now be released and the guidewire removed. The FIS may then be advanced until the carina is visualized and the ETT is passed into the trachea. In this fashion, the FOB reduces the likelihood that the ETT will become dislodged and the airway can be visualized throughout the procedure. There are several advantages to passing a FOB antegrade over a retrograde placed wire[248]:

- The outer diameter of the guidewire and the internal diameter of the fiberoptic suction port form a tight fit that allows the FOB to follow a straight path through vocal cords without impinging on anatomic structures.
- The FIS acts as large antegrade guide catheter and allows easy passage of the ETT.
- It allows placement of the ETT under direct visualization.
- The FIS may be advanced to the carina freely (past the puncture site) which eliminates the problem of distance between vocal cords and puncture site.

Emergency Front of Neck Access

Emergency FONA refers to rescue techniques used in a CICO situation when attempts at establishing a noninvasive airway have failed. These techniques may also be used as a primary airway in some difficult airway situations when attempts at securing a noninvasive airway are likely to fail, such as a patient with a laryngeal neoplasm and critical airway obstruction. Options for FONA include transtracheal jet ventilation (TTJV), cricothyrotomy, and tracheostomy. Whereas tracheostomy is usually performed by a surgeon, the anesthesia practitioner should become proficient with the techniques for TTJV and cricothyrotomy; the situation will inevitably arise in which an invasive airway will become necessary. An emergent situation is not the time to become familiar with a new technique.

TRANSTRACHEAL JET VENTILATION

Percutaneous TTJV is a relatively quick and effective but invasive method of oxygenation and ventilation in the CICV scenario when more conservative measures fail. The ASA DAA lists TTJV as an emergent invasive technique to be used in patients who cannot be conventionally ventilated or intubated.[7] TTJV is widely regarded as a life-saving procedure that can provide adequate, temporary oxygenation and ventilation with less training and complications than a surgical airway, the last resort for obtaining an airway in the algorithm.[252] Nonetheless, TTJV is an invasive technique, and its primary use is as an emergency airway. Occasionally, it is used on an elective basis for laryngeal surgery.

Inspiration during TTJV is achieved by insufflation of pressurized oxygen through a cannula placed by needle cricothyrotomy. Expiration is passive as a result of the elastic recoil of the lungs and the chest wall. Allowing sufficient time for passive expiration to avoid barotrauma from breath stacking is essential. Expiration occurs through the glottis and depends on a nonobstructed upper airway, which is imperative to avoid barotrauma and resulting pneumothorax. The egress of air through the glottic aperture can also provide bubbles to facilitate the placement of an ETT. In fact, several case reports have demonstrated that after the initiation of TTJV in an airway with little or no visualization of the glottis, successful intubation occurred because of the opening of the glottis and guidance from the bubbles with jet ventilation.

TTJV should not be performed in patients who have sustained direct damage to the cricoid cartilage or larynx or in patients with complete upper airway obstruction. Other relative contraindications to TTJV include coagulopathy, obstructive pulmonary disease, or distorted anatomy in which catheter placement might be difficult.

Typically, a 12- to 16-gauge kink-resistant catheter is used for TTJV. A coil-reinforced 6Fr catheter (Cook Critical Care, Bloomington, IN) is specifically designed for TTJV to prevent kinking, and its Teflon coating facilitates its passage through the CTM into the trachea. The technique for placement is similar to the technique for RI, with the exception that the needle is inserted with the bevel facing caudally. Confirmation of proper intratracheal placement of the catheter by testing for aspiration of air is imperative before initiating jet ventilation.

The minimum pressure required to drive a jet ventilator is 15 psi. The pipeline pressure for oxygen in hospitals in the United States is approximately 55 psi. Commercially available jet ventilators generally contain pressure regulators to lower the pipeline pressure to provide successful jet ventilation while avoiding higher pressures that might result in barotrauma. In most instances in the operating room, adequate pressure for jet ventilation can be achieved by connecting straight to the pipeline supply. Difficulty usually arises in locations outside of the surgical unit where TTJV may be needed but adequate driving pressure is not available.[252]

A major complication of TTJV is barotrauma with resulting pneumothorax from the use of high-pressure oxygen. To prevent this complication, ensuring that a path for air egress exists and that adequate time for passive expiration is available is an absolute necessity. The lowest possible pressure that will provide adequate oxygenation and ventilation should be used. Other complications associated with TTJV include subcutaneous or mediastinal emphysema, hemorrhage, aspiration, and perforation of the posterior wall of the trachea or esophagus.[252]

The Ventrain is a single-use, manually operated oxygen insufflation device designed to decrease the risk of barotrauma when compared to TTJV through a small-bore percutaneous catheter.[253] It uses the Bernoulli principle to provide expiratory ventilation assistance, meaning that negative pressure is generated that facilitates the egress of gas, and therefore can even be used when the upper airway is obstructed.[254] It is driven by oxygen from a high-pressure source with a controllable flow, e.g., a wall-mounted flowmeter or an oxygen cylinder with a flow regulator.

CRICOTHYROTOMY

Cricothyrotomy is an invasive technique that provides access to the airway in situations when either noninvasive maneuvers have failed or when it is clinically indicated as a primary plan to secure the airway.[255] Cricothyrotomy is included in the ASA DAA as an emergent invasive technique after other rescue maneuvers have failed or are not feasible. Cricothyrotomy equipment should be included in all emergency airway storage units and readily available. Cricothyrotomy is not considered a permanent airway, and, after placement, plans should be made for either the removal of the cricothyrotomy catheter or conversion to a formal tracheostomy.[255]

In children younger than 6 years of age (also see Chapter 77), the cricoid cartilage is the narrowest portion of the airway and the isthmus of the thyroid gland typically reaches the level of the CTM; therefore cricothyrotomy is contraindicated. Needle cricothyrotomy with TTJV is indicated in this pediatric population. Other contraindications to cricothyrotomy include laryngeal fractures, laryngeal neoplasm, subglottic stenosis, coagulopathy, and distorted or unidentifiable neck anatomy.

The two most common techniques for performing a cricothyrotomy are the percutaneous dilational cricothyrotomy and the surgical cricothyrotomy. For the anesthesiologist, the percutaneous technique has historically been preferred because of the familiarity of using the Seldinger technique for other procedures (e.g., central venous catheterization). Recently, however, surgical cricothyrotomy has been advocated as the preferred technique due to its faster speed and higher reliability.[8]

A number of surgical methods for cricothyrotomy have been described; however, the scalpel-bougie technique is the preferred technique in the Difficult Airway Society guidelines for management of the difficult airway. The process is outlined in Box 44.4 and Fig. 44.32. It is recommended that all anesthesiologists learn this technique and receive regular training to avoid fading of skill.[8]

A number of commercially available cricothyrotomy kits use the percutaneous dilational technique. The basis for this procedure is the insertion of an airway catheter over a dilator that has been inserted over a guidewire. The patient's neck is extended, and the cricothyroid groove is identified. If landmarks are difficult to identify, then

BOX 44.4 **Surgical Cricothyrotomy**

Equipment

- No. 10 scalpel
- Bougie with a coudé (angled) tip
- Cuffed endotracheal tube (ETT) with a 6-mm internal diameter

Technique

1. Stand on the patient's left-hand side if you are right handed (reverse if left handed).
2. Stabilize the larynx using the left hand.
3. Use the left index finger to identify the cricothyroid membrane (CTM). If the CTM is not palpable, make a 8-10 cm vertical incision in the midline and use blunt dissection with the fingers of both hands to separate tissues and identify and stabilize the larynx with the left hand.
4. Holding the scalpel in your right hand, make a transverse stab incision through the skin and cricothyroid membrane with the cutting edge of the blade facing toward you.
5. Keep the scalpel perpendicular to the skin and turn it through 90° so that the sharp edge points caudally (toward the feet).
6. Swap hands; hold the scalpel with your left hand.
7. Maintain gentle traction, pulling the scalpel toward you (laterally) with the left hand, keeping the scalpel handle vertical to the skin (not slanted).
8. Pick the bougie up with your right hand.
9. Holding the bougie at a right angle to the trachea, slide the coudé tip of the bougie down the side of the scalpel blade furthest from you into the trachea.
10. Rotate and align the bougie with the patient's trachea and advance gently up to 10-15 cm.
11. Remove the scalpel.
12. Stabilize trachea and tension skin with left hand.
13. Railroad a lubricated size 6.0 mm cuffed tracheal tube over the bougie.
14. Rotate the tube over the bougie as it is advanced. Avoid excessive advancement and endobronchial intubation.
15. Remove the bougie.
16. Inflate the cuff and confirm ventilation with capnography.

Modified from Frerk C, Mitchell VS, McNarry AF, et al. Difficult Airway Society 2015 guidelines for management of unanticipated difficult intubation in adults. *Br J Anaesth.* 2015;115(6):827–848.

ultrasound guidance may be used. A 1- to 1.5-cm vertical incision is made through the skin overlying the CTM. An 18-gauge needle-catheter attached to a fluid-filled syringe is passed through the incision at a 45-degree angle in the caudal direction with continuous aspiration. Because of the location of the cricothyroid artery and the proximity of the CTM to the vocal folds, puncture of the CTM should be made in the lower third of the membrane and directed inferiorly (Fig. 44.33).[255] Aspiration of free air confirms passage through the CTM. The catheter is advanced over the needle into the trachea. The needle is removed, and the catheter is left in place. The guidewire is inserted caudally to a depth of approximately 2 to 3 cm. The catheter is removed, and the curved dilator with the airway cannula is threaded over the guidewire. The dilator and cannula unit is advanced through the CTM while maintaining control of the guidewire. The dilator and guidewire are removed together while the cannula remains in place. The cuff is inflated, and ventilation is attempted. Proper placement is confirmed by capnography, and the airway cannula is secured in place (Video 44.16).[255]

Complications include hemorrhage, injury to the posterior tracheal wall or esophagus, vocal cord injury, laceration of the thyroid gland, and improper insertion of the cannula. Placement of the airway cannula in the subcutaneous tissue can result in subcutaneous or mediastinal emphysema. Late complications from cricothyrotomy include swallowing dysfunction, infection, voice changes, and tracheal stenosis. Tracheal stenosis has an incidence of approximately 2% to 8% in adults and is more likely if preexisting trauma or infection is present.

Extubation of the Trachea

A critical component of airway management is the process of extubation. Although considerable emphasis is placed on the problems that can arise during induction and intubation, the risk of complications can potentially be higher during extubation of the trachea.[256] Analysis of the ASA Closed Claims database has shown that although the number of claims for death and brain damage during intubation have decreased since the adoption of the ASA *Practice Guidelines for Management of the Difficult Airway*, the number of claims arising from injury at extubation and during recovery have not decreased.[1] In response to these trends and in the absence of any well-established strategies for the management of tracheal extubation, the DAS established a set of guidelines in 2012 to "discuss the problems arising during extubation and recovery" and to "promote a strategic, stepwise approach to extubation."[257]

A number of complications can arise during extubation (Box 44.5); although some of these complications are minor with no long-term sequelae, others can lead to a failed extubation. Failed extubation can result from the failure of oxygenation, failure of ventilation, inadequate clearance of pulmonary secretions, or loss of airway patency.[84] If an airway is not quickly reestablished, then serious complications, including death, may result. As such, the anesthesia practitioner needs to stratify extubation risk preemptively and establish an extubation plan before attempting extubation. Per the DAS guidelines, risk stratification can be accomplished by considering the following: (1) whether the airway was normal and uncomplicated at induction; (2) whether the airway has become difficult to manage as a result of surgical changes, trauma, or nonsurgical factors; and (3) whether the patient has general risk factors for an unsuccessful extubation.[257]

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR EXTUBATION OF THE TRACHEA

For both routine and difficult extubation scenarios, an extubation plan must be preemptively formulated, including a plan for reintubation that can be implemented should the patient be unable to maintain an adequate airway after extubation.[7] The decision of whether to extubate the trachea when the patient is fully awake versus a deep extubation before the return of consciousness should be made based on the risks and benefits of each technique. The awake patient can more easily maintain a patent airway, attributable to the recovery of awake pharyngeal muscle tone and airway reflexes. Deep extubation avoids coughing

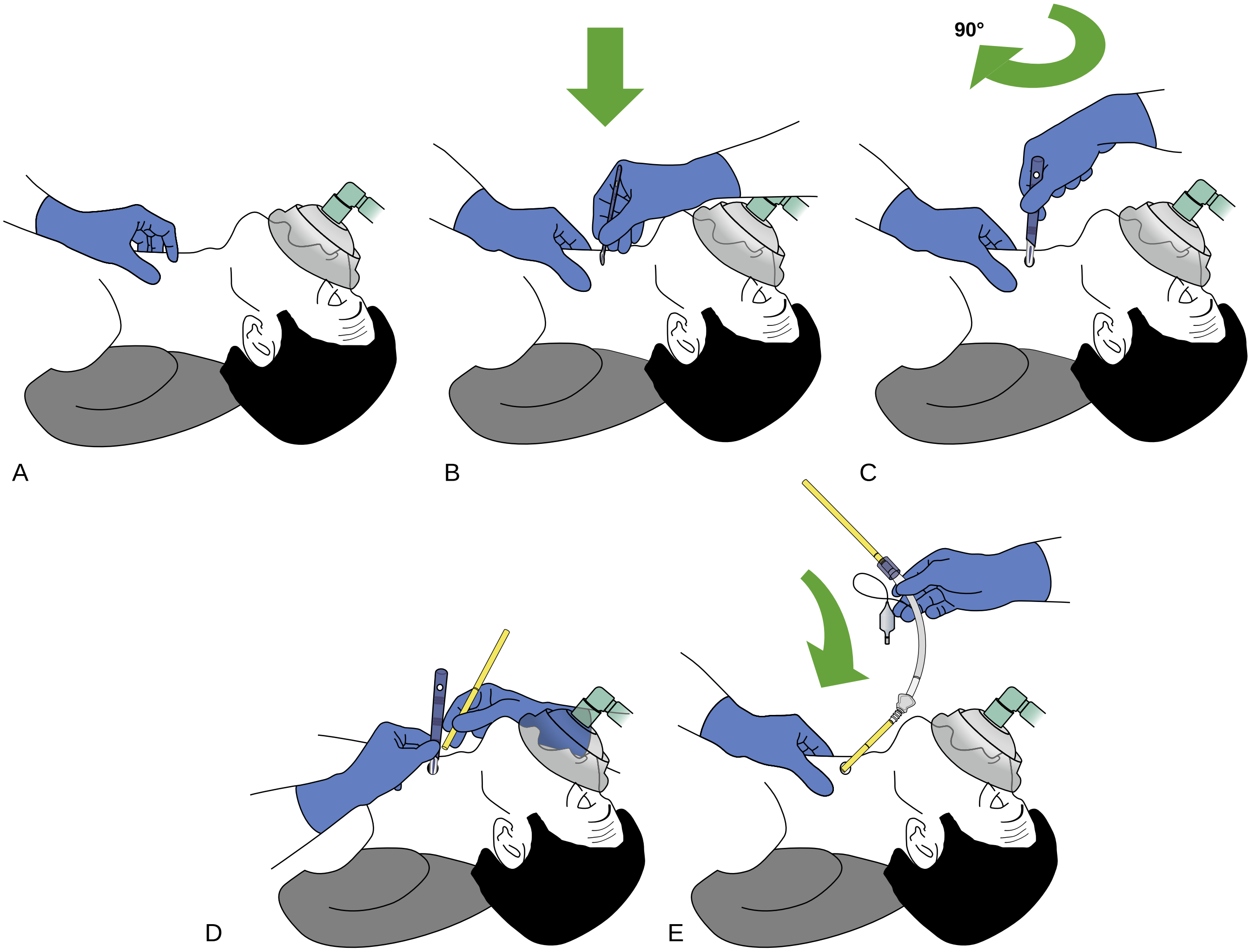


Fig. 44.32 Scalpel-bougie technique—"stab, twist, bougie, tube." (A) Identify the cricothyroid membrane (CTM). (B) Make a transverse stab incision through the CTM. (C) Rotate the scalpel so that the sharp edge points caudally. (D) Pulling the scalpel toward you to open up the incision, slide the coudé tip of the bougie down the scalpel blade into the trachea. (E) Advance the endotracheal tube into trachea. (From Frerk C, Mitchell VS, McNarry AF, et al. Difficult Airway Society 2015 guidelines for management of unanticipated difficult intubation in adults. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(6):827–848.)

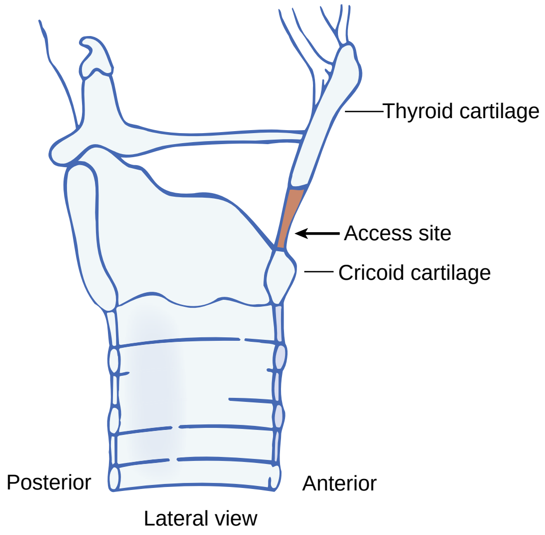


Fig. 44.33 Midsagittal anatomy of the larynx and trachea. The access point for percutaneous cricothyrotomy is in the lower third of the cricothyroid membrane. (Courtesy Cook Critical Care; Bloomington, IN.)

and adverse hemodynamic effects but risks upper airway obstruction and hypoventilation. An alternative extubation technique, known as the Bailey maneuver, involves exchanging an ETT for an SGA while the patient is under deep anesthesia.[258] Extubation during a light plane of anesthesia (stage II) can increase the risk for laryngospasm and other airway complications and should be avoided.

General preparations for extubation should include ensuring adequate reversal or recovery from neuromuscular blockade, hemodynamic stability, normothermia, and adequate analgesia. Patients should be preoxygenated with a 100% fraction of inspired oxygen concentration (F_{IO_2}), and alveolar recruitment maneuvers should be considered if appropriate. Suctioning of the pharynx (and the trachea, if indicated), the removal of throat packs, and the placement of a bite block should be performed while the patient is under deep anesthesia.[22] Bite blocks are essential for an awake intubation to prevent biting of the tube during emergence, which can result in airway obstruction and the development of negative-pressure pulmonary edema. Oropharyngeal airways are not recommended for use as a

Box 44.5 **Complications Associated with Extubation**

- Laryngospasm and bronchospasm
- Upper airway obstruction
- Hypoventilation
- Hemodynamic changes (hypertension, tachycardia)
- Coughing and straining, leading to surgical wound dehiscence
- Laryngeal or airway edema
- Negative-pressure pulmonary edema
- Paradoxical vocal cord motion
- Arytenoid dislocation
- Aspiration

Box 44.6 **Factors Associated with Increased Extubation Risk**

Airway Risk Factors

- Known difficult airway
- Airway deterioration (bleeding, edema, trauma)
- Restricted airway access
- Obesity and obstructive sleep apnea
- Aspiration risk

General Risk Factors

- Cardiovascular disease
- Respiratory disease
- Neuromuscular disease
- Metabolic derangements
- Special surgical requirements

Modified from Popat M, Mitchell V, Dravid R, et al. Difficult Airway Society guidelines for the management of tracheal extubation. *Anaesthesia.* 2012;67:318–340.

bite block because they can result in dental damage; rather, taped, rolled gauze securely inserted between the molars should be used.[259]

Gastric insufflation with air can increase the risk of pulmonary aspiration after extubation and can impede ventilation. Patients in whom mask ventilation with high pressures is necessary should have an orogastric tube placed and suctioned before extubation.

The sniffing position is the standard position for extubation; its major advantage is that the patient is optimally positioned for airway management, if necessary. Patients who are morbidly obese and other patients at risk for hypoventilation and airway obstruction can benefit from extubation in the head-up position. The lateral decubitus position may be the preferred option when the risk for pulmonary aspiration is high.[22]

Application of positive pressure immediately before cuff deflation may help expel secretions that have collected above the ETT cuff. Inspection of the pilot balloon to ensure complete cuff deflation before extubation is essential; extubation with an inflated cuff can cause vocal cord injury or arytenoid dislocation.

EXTUBATION AND REINTUBATION OF THE DIFFICULT AIRWAY

Many surgical and anesthetic factors can increase extubation risk. A summary of the most pertinent factors is listed in Box 44.6. Although several techniques can be used to manage extubation of the difficult airway, including the Bailey maneuver and remifentanil infusion,[257] the use of an airway exchange catheter (AEC) is most common and recommended by the ASA's Task Force on Management of the Difficult Airway. This hollow reintubation guide is passed through the ETT before extubation and kept in situ until the possible need for reintubation has passed. AECs have the additional capability of maintaining oxygenation or monitoring respiration by connection to a capnograph. Smaller AECs (11Fr) are generally well-tolerated by awake patients, who can breathe, talk, and cough around them. They should be secured with tape in place to prevent accidental dislodgement and labeled to distinguish them from traditional feeding tubes, which can have a similar appearance. Reintubation over an AEC, if necessary, can be facilitated by gentle DL to retract the tongue and oropharyngeal soft tissue.

Dissemination of Critical Airway Information

As stated earlier, one of the most predictive factors for difficult intubation is a history of previous difficulty with intubation. Therefore it is crucial that critical airway information be documented and disseminated in such a way that clinicians who subsequently care for a patient with a difficult airway be alerted to the history and obtain the necessary information to safely manage the patient's airway. The ASA Practice Guidelines for Management of the Difficult Airway recommend the that clinicians document the difficulty with airway management and inform the patient or responsible person of the difficulty encountered.[7] Consideration of notification systems, such as a written report or letter to the patient, a written report in the medical chart, communication with the patient's surgeon or primary caregiver, a notification bracelet or equivalent identification device, and/or chart flags is recommended.

In 1992, the MedicAlert Foundation National Difficult Airway/Intubation Registry was created to standardize the documentation and dissemination of critical airway information. By 2010, more than 11,000 patients were included in the registry.[260] Patients with a difficult airway should be directed to the MedicAlert website.

Summary

Airway management is at the core of safe anesthetic practice. The anesthesia practitioner must have a fundamental knowledge of airway anatomy, physiology, and pharmacology, and well-developed skills in the use of a wide variety of airway devices. Although most airways are straightforward, management of the difficult airway remains one of the most relevant and challenging tasks for anesthesia care providers. Prediction and anticipation of the difficult airway and the formulation of an airway management plan are essential. Many airway problems can be solved with relatively simple devices and techniques; however, experience and good clinical judgment are necessary for their successful application. Newer airway devices with the potential to improve patient outcomes are continually being developed. Anesthesia providers must concurrently develop their skills and learn new techniques to be prepared when difficulty presents itself. Competency-based training with routine assessment of clinical ability with airway techniques is likely in the future for all practitioners involved in airway management. Expertise comes from dedicated practice and a commitment from the practitioner for career-long learning.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Peterson GN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 103:33, 2005.
2. Metzner J, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;25:263.
3. Cook TM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(5):617.
4. Cook TM, MacDougall-Davis SR. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(suppl 1):i68.
5. Behringer EC. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 20:813, 2002.
6. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:597.
7. Apfelbaum JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:251.
8. Frerk C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(6):827.
9. Law JA, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60(11):1119.
10. Law JA, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60(11):1089.
11. Langeron O, *Anesthesiology Annales francaises d'anesthesie et de reanimation*. 2008;27(1):41.
12. Piepho T, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2015;64(suppl 1):27.
13. Petrini F, et al. *Minerva anestesiologica*. 2005;71(11):617.
14. Japanese Society of Anesthesiologists. *J Anesth*. 2014;28(4):482.
15. Artime CA, et al. Airway algorithms and guidelines. In: Berkow LC, et al, eds. *Cases in Emergency Airway Management*. Cambridge, UK, 2015, Cambridge University Press; 10–18.
16. Kovacs G, et al. Human factors in airway management. In: Kovacs G, Law JA, eds. *Airway Management in Emergencies: aimeairway.ca*. 2018.
17. Chrimes N. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(suppl 1):i20.
18. Reitzen SD, et al. *Ear Nose Throat J*. 2011;90:112.
19. Ahmed-Nusrath A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:269.
20. Cavusoglu T, et al. *J Craniofac Surg*. 2009;20:566.
21. Zwank M. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2009;27:513.
22. Henderson J. Airway management. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:1573.
23. Srirompotong S. Art-Smart T. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 2003;260:401.
24. Krebs MJ, Sakai T. *J Clin Anesth*. 2008;20:218.
25. Hirshoren N, et al. *J Trauma*. 2009;67:891.
26. Hillman DR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:31.
27. Kuna ST. *Respir Physiol*. 2000;119:155.
28. Reber A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1617.
29. Leder SB, et al. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol*. 2010;119:795.
30. Coleman L, et al. Functional anatomy of the airway. In: Hagberg CA, ed. *Benumof's Airway Management: Principles and Practice*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Mosby; 2012:3.
31. Lundstrom LH, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:1081.
32. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:885.
33. Yildiz TS, et al. *J Anesth*. 2005;19:7.
34. Gonzalez H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1132.
35. Brodsky JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:732.
36. Shiga T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:429.
37. Mallampati SR. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1983;30:316.
38. Mashour GA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1919.
39. Samsoon GL, Young JR. *Anaesthesia*. 1987;42:487.
40. Lundstrom LH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:659.
41. Mashour GA, Sandberg WS. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:1256.
42. Hegde HV, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29:338.
43. Ezri T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1073.
44. Fang B, Norris J. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:870.
45. Grover VK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:911.
46. Racine SX, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:1190.
47. El-Orbany M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:103.
48. Karkouti K, Rose DK, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47(8):730.
49. Iohom G, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20:31.
50. Wilson ME, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61:211.
51. Calder I, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50:756.
52. Khan ZH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:595.
53. Eberhart LH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:284.
54. el-Ganzouri AR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:1197.
55. Norskov AK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116(5):680.
56. Langeron O, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:1223.
57. Kristensen MS, Teoh WH. Ultrasonography in Airway Management. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:74–91.
58. Ahmad I, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2015;27(6):508.
59. Cuendet GL, et al. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2016;63(2):328.
60. Tanoubi I, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56:449.
61. Benumof JL. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:603.
62. Dixon BJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1110.
63. Patel A, Nouraei SA. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(3):323.
64. Dixon BJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(6):1110; discussion 1115A.
65. Ramkumar V, et al. *J Anesth*. 2011;25:189.
66. Futier E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1354.
67. Herriger A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59:243.
68. Levitan RM, et al. Preoxygenation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz MF, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:249–264.
69. Levitan RM. NO DESAT! (Nasal oxygen during efforts securing a tube). *Emergency Physicians Monthly*. 2010.
70. Teller LE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69(6):980.
71. Baraka AS, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(8):769.
72. Ramachandran SK, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22(3):164.
73. Binks MJ, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2017;35(10):1542.
74. Pavlov I, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2017;35(8):1184.
75. Mendelson CL. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1946;52:191.
76. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(3):376.
77. Smith I, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28:556.
78. Mahajan V, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2015;27(5):396.
79. Paranjothy S, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;(2):CD004943.
80. Artime CA, Sanchez A. Preparation of the patient for awake intubation. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:216–234.
81. Kim YH, et al. *Yonsei Med J*. 2009;50:380.
82. Al-alami AA, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:388.
83. Silva DA, Sanders I. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol*. 1992;101(11):893.
84. Cooper RM. Extubation and Reintubation of the Difficult AIrway. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:844–867.
85. Dorsey DP, Joffe AM. Physiologic and Pathophysiologic Responses to Intubation. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:163–177.
86. Combes X, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:276.
87. Gal TJ. Airway management. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. ed 6. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2005:1617.
88. El-Orbany MI, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:710.
89. El-Orbany MI, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2003;15:9.
90. Lieutaud T, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:121.
91. Naguib M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:110.
92. Heier T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:754.
93. Lee C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1020.
94. Broomhead RH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:313.
95. Goodwin MW, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58:60.
96. Ikeda A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:487.
97. Warters RD, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:163.
98. Calder I, Yentis SM. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:113.
99. Sellick BA. *Lancet*. 1961;2:404.
100. Vanner RG, Asai T. *Anaesthesia*. 1999;54:1.
101. El-Orbany M, Connolly LA. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1318.
102. Koerber JP, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:54.
103. Rosen MA. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1159.
104. de Souza DG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1503.
105. Paech MJ. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2010;38:989.
106. Stept WJ, Safar P. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49:633.
107. Deepika K, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1992;4:106.
108. Williamson RM, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:694.
109. Thorn K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1200.
110. Smith KJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:60.
111. Palmer JH, Ball DR. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:263.
112. Rice MJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1546.
113. Ehrenfeld JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:95.

114. Clements P, et al. *Br J Hosp Med (Lond)*. 2009;70:424.
115. El-Orbany MI, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14:115.
116. Wappler F, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20:548.
117. Lee SY, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;110:81.
118. Kim SH, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2011;39:899.
119. Kim JY, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52:106.
120. Wei LX, et al. *Acta Academiae Medicinae Sinicae*. 2008;30:723.
121. Hung CT, et al. *Chang Gung Med J*. 2005;28:174.
122. Kim KS, et al. *J Anesth*. 2011;25:195.
123. Mahboobi N, et al. *East Mediterr Health J*. 2012;18:159.
124. Kong CF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:364.
125. Lee J, Jung CW. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2011;60:12.
126. Erhan E, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:108.
127. Gore MS, Harnagale KD. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;27:27.
128. Erhan E, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20:37.
129. Aissaoui Y, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29:391.
130. Bouvet L, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:719.
131. Politis GD, Tobias JD. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17:285.
132. Lundstrom LH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:283.
133. Mencke T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1049.
134. Abrams JT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:629.
135. Scamman FL. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62:332.
136. Bennett JA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1070.
137. Kohno T, Ikoma M. *Masui*. 2008;57:1213.
138. Benumof JL. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:1087.
139. Thomas JL. *Anaesthesia*. 1969;24:28.
140. Rosenstock CV, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1210.
141. Xue FS, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29:209; author reply 210–211.
142. Xue FS, et al. *Chin Med J (Engl)*. 2009;122:408.
143. Sarma J. *J Clin Anesth*. 2007;19:322.
144. Raval C, et al. *Saudi J Anaesth*. 2010;4:38.
145. Bekhit MH. Lidocaine for neural blockade. In: Sinatra RS, et al. eds. *The Essence of Analgesia and Analgesics*. New York: Cambridge University Press; 2011:279.
146. Simmons ST, Schleich AR. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27:180.
147. Novaro GM, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2003;16:170.
148. Cara DM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58:777.
149. Gross JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:915.
150. Walsh ME, Shorten GD. *Yale J Biol Med*. 1998;71:537.
151. British Thoracic Society Bronchoscopy Guidelines Committee: a Subcommittee of Standards of Care Committee of British Thoracic Society. *Thorax*. 2001;56(suppl 1):i1.
152. Williams KA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:549.
153. Reed AP. *Chest*. 1992;101:244.
154. von Goedecke A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:260.
155. Joffe AM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:873.
156. Weiler N, et al. *Prehosp Disaster Med*. 1995;10:101.
157. Safar P, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1959;14:760.
158. Isono S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:489.
159. Kok PH, et al. *Singapore Med J*. 2001;42:322.
160. Wang KC, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Taiwan*. 2006;44:119.
161. Brain AI. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:801.
162. Brimacombe J. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42:1017.
163. Yu SH, Beirne OR. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2010;68:2359.
164. Lindsay HA, et al. Supraglottic Airway Techniques: Laryngeal Mask Airways. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:328–348.
165. Miller DM. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1553.
166. Vaida S, et al. Supraglottic Airway Techniques: Nonlaryngeal Mask Airways. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:349–370.
167. Asai T, Brimacombe J. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:1179.
168. Brimacombe J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:420.
169. Vannucci A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(6):1959.
170. Grady DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:760.
171. Siddik-Sayyid SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1204.
172. Hui JK, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:508.
173. Bouvet L, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57:222.
174. Jaffe RA, Brock-Utne JG. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14:462.
175. Nakayama S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12:416.
176. Weber S. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2002;20:503.
177. Dingley J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49:251.
178. Burgard G, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1996;8:198.
179. Brimacombe J, Costa e Silva L. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20:502.
180. Emmett SR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:468.
181. Cook TM, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:739.
182. Handa-Tsutsui F, Kodaka M. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17:344.
183. Sharma V, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:228.
184. Abdi W, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54:141.
185. Maltby JR, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:857.
186. Abdi W, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2009;19:1624.
187. Yao T, et al. *Zhonghua Yi Xue Za Zhi*. 2010;90:2048.
188. Gaitini LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:79.
189. Mort TC. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:1264.
190. Ochs M, et al. *Prehosp Emerg Care*. 2000;4:333.
191. Oczenski W, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1999;54:1161.
192. Gaitini LA, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2011;23:475.
193. Sultan P, et al. *J Perioper Pract*. 2011;21:379.
194. Sparrow KA, et al. Intubating Introducers and Lighted and Optical Stylets. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:402–416.
195. Artime C. Flexible Fiberoptic Intubation. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013:97–108.
196. Bannister FB, Macbeth RG. *Lancet*. 1944;2:651.
197. Adnet F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:83.
198. Chou HC, Wu TL. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:261.
199. Greenland KB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:683.
200. Isono S. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:825.
201. Park SH, et al. *J Anesth*. 2010;24:526.
202. Greenland KB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:268.
203. Takenaka I, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2007;54:129.
204. Jain RR, Cameron SD. Airway Management in Pediatric Patients. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:608–639.
205. Baker PA, Timmermann A. Laryngoscopic Tracheal Intubation. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:371–390.
206. Cormack RS. *Lehane J: Anaesthesia*. 1984;39:1105.
207. Yentis SM, Lee DJ. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53:1041.
208. Ochroch EA, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:987.
209. Straker T, Urdaneta F. Confirmation of Tracheal Intubation. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:540.
210. Hung MH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1704.
211. Cattano D, Cavallone L. *Anesthesiology News*. 2011;37:17.
212. Asai T, Shingu K. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:870.
213. Kristensen MS. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:354.
214. Lu Y, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:1160.
215. Rudolph C, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60:668.
216. Shollik NA, et al. *Case Rep Anesthesiol*. 2012;2012:297.
217. Mazeres JE, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28:646.
218. Abramson SI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1215.
219. Xue FS, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21:154.
220. Sorbello M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:386.
221. Aziz M, Metz S. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:579.
222. Van Zundert AA, Pieters BM. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:327.
223. Xue FS, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26:261.
224. Biro P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:255.
225. Greif R, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:525.
226. Kaplan MB, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2006;18:357.
227. Aziz MF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:629.
228. Jungbauer A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:546.
229. Asai T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:898.
230. Aziz MF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:34.
231. Moore AR, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:232.
232. Xue FS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:462.
233. Aziz M, Brambrink A. Video-Assisted Laryngoscopy. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:417–427.
234. McElwain J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:483.
235. Ng I, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:439.
236. Cavus E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:473.
237. Maassen R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1560.
238. van Zundert A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:825.
239. Meininger D, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2010;59:806.
240. Jones PM, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58:256.
241. Cattano D, et al. *Intern Emerg Med*. 2012;7:59.
242. Dupanovic M. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22:152.

243. Komasawa N, et al. *J Anesth*. 2011;25:898.
244. Komasawa N, et al. *Masui*. 2011;60:84.
245. Ferrario L. Intubation stylets. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013:83.
246. Normand KC, Aucoin AP. Retrograde intubation. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013:109.
247. Hsu HT, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:411.
248. Pinsky JR, Hagberg CA. Combination Techniques. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013:143–154.
249. Ohchi F, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2017;35(4):584.
250. Budde AO, Pott LM. *J Clin Anesth*. 2008;20(7):560.
251. Pieters BM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(3):988.
252. Normand KC. Percutaneous transtracheal jet ventilation. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013:117.
253. Hamaekers AE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(6):1017.
254. Fearnley RA, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;33:233.
255. Normand KC. Cricothyrotomy. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013:125.
256. Asai T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80:767.
257. Popat M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:318.
258. Nair I, Bailey PM. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50:174.
259. Falzon D, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:919; author reply 921.
260. Foley L, et al. Dissemination of Critical Airway Information. In: Hagberg CA, et al. eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:905–910.

References

1. Peterson GN, Domino KB, Caplan RA, Posner KL, Lee LA, Cheney FW. Management of the difficult airway: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(1):33–39.
2. Metzner J, Posner KL, Lam MS, Domino KB. Closed claims' analysis. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;25(2):263–276.
3. Cook TM, Woodall N, Frerk C. Major complications of airway management in the UK: results of the Fourth National Audit Project of the Royal College of Anaesthetists and the Difficult Airway Society. Part 1: anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(5):617–631.
4. Cook TM, MacDougall-Davis SR. Complications and failure of airway management. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(suppl 1):i68–i85.
5. Behringer EC. Approaches to managing the upper airway. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2002;20(4):813–832, vi.
6. Practice guidelines for management of the difficult airway. A report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on management of the difficult airway. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(3):597–602.
7. Apfelbaum JL, Hagberg CA, Caplan RA, et al. Practice guidelines for management of the difficult airway: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on management of the difficult airway. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(2):251–270.
8. Frerk C, Mitchell VS, McNarry AF, et al. Difficult Airway Society 2015 guidelines for management of unanticipated difficult intubation in adults. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(6):827–848.
9. Law JA, Broemling N, Cooper RM, et al. The difficult airway with recommendations for management—part 2—the anticipated difficult airway. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60(11):1119–1138.
10. Law JA, Broemling N, Cooper RM, et al. The difficult airway with recommendations for management—part 1—difficult tracheal intubation encountered in an unconscious/induced patient. *Can J Anaesth*. 2013;60(11):1089–1118.
11. Langeron O, Bourgain JL, Laccoureye O, Legras A, Orliaguet G. Difficult airway algorithms and management: question 5. Societe Francaise d'Anesthesie et de Reanimation. *Annales francaises d'anesthesie et de reanimation*. 2008;27(1):41–45.
12. Piepho T, Cavus E, Noppens R, et al. S1 guidelines on airway management: guideline of the German Society of Anesthesiology and Intensive Care Medicine. *Anaesthesist*. 2015;64(suppl 1):27–40.
13. Petrini F, Accorsi A, Adrario E, et al. Recommendations for airway control and difficult airway management. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2005;71(11):617–657.
14. Japanese Society of A. JSA airway management guideline 2014: to improve the safety of induction of anesthesia. *J Anesth*. 2014;28(4):482–493.
15. Artime CA, Hagberg CA. Airway algorithms and guidelines. In: Berkow LC, Sakles JC, eds. *Cases in Emergency Airway Management*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2015:10–18.
16. Kovacs G, Lauria M, Croskerry P, Law JA. Human factors in airway management. In: Kovacs G, Law JA, eds. *Airway Management in Emergencies: aimeairway.ca*. 2018.
17. Chrimes N. The Vortex: a universal 'high-acuity implementation tool' for emergency airway management. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(suppl 1):i20–i27.
18. Reitzen SD, Chung W, Shah AR. Nasal septal deviation in the pediatric and adult populations. *Ear Nose Throat J*. 2011;90(3):112–115.
19. Ahmed-Nusrath A, Tong JL, Smith JE. Pathways through the nose for nasal intubation: a comparison of three endotracheal tubes. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(2):269–274.
20. Cavusoglu T, Yazici I, Demirtas Y, Gunaydin B, Yavuzer R. A rare complication of nasotracheal intubation: accidental middle turbinectomy. *J Craniofac Surg*. 2009;20(2):566–568.
21. Zwank M. Middle turbinectomy as a complication of nasopharyngeal airway placement. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2009;27(4):513. e513–514.
22. Henderson J. Airway management. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingstone/Elsevier; 2010:1573–1610.
23. Srirompotong S, Art-Smart T. Ludwig's angina: a clinical review. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 2003;260(7):401–403.
24. Krebs MJ, Sakai T. Retropharyngeal dissection during nasotracheal intubation: a rare complication and its management. *J Clin Anesth*. 2008;20(3):218–221.
25. Hirshoren N, Gross M, Weinberger JM, Eliashar R. Retropharyngeal infected hematoma: a unique complication of nasogastric tube insertion. *J Trauma*. 2009;67(4):891.
26. Hillman DR, Platt PR, Eastwood PR. The upper airway during anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91(1):31–39.
27. Kuna ST. Respiratory-related activation and mechanical effects of the pharyngeal constrictor muscles. *Respir Physiol*. 2000;119(2-3):155–161.
28. Reber A, Wetzel SG, Schnabel K, Bongartz G, Frei FJ. Effect of combined mouth closure and chin lift on upper airway dimensions during routine magnetic resonance imaging in pediatric patients sedated with propofol. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(6):1617–1623.
29. Leder SB, Burrell MI, Van Daele DJ. Epiglottis is not essential for successful swallowing in humans. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol*. 2010;119(12):795–798.
30. Coleman L, Gold J, Zawkowski M. Functional anatomy of the airway. In: Hagberg CA, Artime C, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:2–18.
31. Lundstrom LH, Moller AM, Rosenstock C, Astrup G, Gatke MR, Wetterslev J. A documented previous difficult tracheal intubation as a prognostic test for a subsequent difficult tracheal intubation in adults. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(10):1081–1088.
32. Kheterpal S, Han R, Tremper KK, et al. Incidence and predictors of difficult and impossible mask ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(5):885–891.
33. Yildiz TS, Solak M, Toker K. The incidence and risk factors of difficult mask ventilation. *J Anesth*. 2005;19(1):7–11.
34. Gonzalez H, Minville V, Delanoue K, Mazerolles M, Concina D, Fourcade O. The importance of increased neck circumference to intubation difficulties in obese patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(4):1132–1136; table of contents.
35. Brodsky JB, Lemmens HJ, Brock-Utne JG, Vierra M, Saidman LJ. Morbid obesity and tracheal intubation. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(3):732–736; table of contents.
36. Shiga T, Wajima Z, Inoue T, Sakamoto A. Predicting difficult intubation in apparently normal patients: a meta-analysis of bedside screening test performance. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(2):429–437.
37. Mallampati SR. Clinical sign to predict difficult tracheal intubation (hypothesis). *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1983;30(3 Pt 1):316–317.
38. Mashour GA, Kheterpal S, Vanaharam V, et al. The extended Mallampati score and a diagnosis of diabetes mellitus are predictors of difficult laryngoscopy in the morbidly obese. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(6):1919–1923.
39. Samsoon GL, Young JR. Difficult tracheal intubation: a retrospective study. *Anaesthesia*. 1987;42(5):487–490.
40. Lundstrom LH, Vester-Andersen M, Moller AM, Charuluxananan S, L'Hermite J, Wetterslev J. Poor prognostic value of the modified Mallampati score: a meta-analysis involving 177, 088 patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(5):659–667.
41. Mashour GA, Sandberg WS. Craniocervical extension improves the specificity and predictive value of the Mallampati airway evaluation. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(5):1256–1259.
42. Hegde HV, Prasad KC, Bhat MT, et al. Airway difficulty in Mallampati 'class zero' patients: a prospective double-blind observational study. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29(7):338–342.
43. Ezri T, Warters RD, Szmuk P, et al. The incidence of class "zero" airway and the impact of Mallampati score, age, sex, and body mass index on prediction of laryngoscopy grade. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(4):1073–1075; table of contents.
44. Fang B, Norris J. Class zero airway and laryngoscopy. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(3):870; author reply 870–871.
45. Grover VK, Mahajan R, Tomar M. Class zero airway and laryngoscopy. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(3):911.
46. Racine SX, Solis A, Hamou NA, et al. Face mask ventilation in edentulous patients: a comparison of mandibular groove and lower lip placement. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(5):1190–1193.
47. El-Orbany M, Woehlck H, Salem MR. Head and neck position for direct laryngoscopy. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(1):103–109.
48. Karkouti K, Rose DK, Wigglesworth D, Cohen MM. Predicting difficult intubation: a multivariable analysis. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47(8):730–739.
49. Iohom G, Ronayne M, Cunningham AJ. Prediction of difficult tracheal intubation. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20(1):31–36.

50. Wilson ME, Spiegelhalter D, Robertson JA, Lesser P. Predicting difficult intubation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61(2):211–216.
51. Calder I, Calder J, Crockard HA. Difficult direct laryngoscopy in patients with cervical spine disease. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50(9):756–763.
52. Khan ZH, Kashfi A, Ebrahimkhani E. A comparison of the upper lip bite test (a simple new technique) with modified Mallampati classification in predicting difficulty in endotracheal intubation: a prospective blinded study. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(2):595–599; table of contents.
53. Eberhart LH, Arndt C, Cierpka T, Schwanekamp J, Wulf H, Putzke C. The reliability and validity of the upper lip bite test compared with the Mallampati classification to predict difficult laryngoscopy: an external prospective evaluation. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(1):284–289; table of contents.
54. el-Ganzouri AR, McCarthy RJ, Tuman KJ, Tanck EN, Ivankovich AD. Preoperative airway assessment: predictive value of a multivariate risk index. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82(6):1197–1204.
55. Norskov AK, Wetterslev J, Rosenstock CV, et al. Effects of using the simplified airway risk index vs usual airway assessment on unanticipated difficult tracheal intubation—a cluster randomized trial with 64,273 participants. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116(5):680–689.
56. Langeron O, Masso E, Huraux C, et al. Prediction of difficult mask ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(5):1229–1236.
57. Kristensen MS, Teoh WH. Ultrasonography in airway management. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz MF, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:74–91.
58. Ahmad I, Millhoff B, John M, Andi K, Oakley R. Virtual endoscopy—a new assessment tool in difficult airway management. *J Clin Anesth*. 2015;27(6):508–513.
59. Cuendet GL, Schoettker P, Yuce A, et al. Facial image analysis for fully automatic prediction of difficult endotracheal intubation. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2016;63(2):328–339.
60. Tanoubi I, Drolet P, Donati F. Optimizing preoxygenation in adults. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56(6):449–466.
61. Benumof JL. Preoxygenation: best method for both efficacy and efficiency. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(3):603–605.
62. Benumof JL, Dagg R, Benumof R. Critical hemoglobin desaturation will occur before return to an unparalyzed state following 1 mg/kg intravenous succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(4):979–982.
63. Patel A, Nouraei SA. Transnasal Humidified Rapid-Insufflation Ventilatory Exchange (THRIVE): a physiological method of increasing apnoea time in patients with difficult airways. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(3):323–329.
64. Dixon BJ, Dixon JB, Carden JR, et al. Preoxygenation is more effective in the 25 degrees head-up position than in the supine position in severely obese patients: a randomized controlled study. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(6):1110–1115; discussion 1115A.
65. Ramkumar V, Umesh G, Philip FA. Preoxygenation with 20 masculine head-up tilt provides longer duration of non-hypoxic apnea than conventional preoxygenation in non-obese healthy adults. *J Anesth*. 2011;25(2):189–194.
66. Futier E, Constantin JM, Pelosi P, et al. Noninvasive ventilation and alveolar recruitment maneuver improve respiratory function during and after intubation of morbidly obese patients: a randomized controlled study. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(6):1354–1363.
67. Herriger A, Frascarolo P, Spahn DR, Magnusson L. The effect of positive airway pressure during pre-oxygenation and induction of anaesthesia upon duration of non-hypoxic apnoea. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59(3):243–247.
68. Levitan RM, Behringer EC, Patel A. Preoxygenation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz MF, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:249–264.
69. Levitan RM. NO DESAT! (Nasal oxygen during efforts securing a tube). *Emergency Physicians Monthly*. 2010.
70. Teller LE, Alexander CM, Frumin MJ, Gross JB. Pharyngeal insufflation of oxygen prevents arterial desaturation during apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69(6):980–982.
71. Baraka AS, Taha SK, Siddik-Sayyid SM, et al. Supplementation of pre-oxygenation in morbidly obese patients using nasopharyngeal oxygen insufflation. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(8):769–773.
72. Ramachandran SK, Cosnowski A, Shanks A, Turner CR. Apneic oxygenation during prolonged laryngoscopy in obese patients: a randomized, controlled trial of nasal oxygen administration. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22(3):164–168.
73. Binks MJ, Holyoak RS, Melhuish TM, Vlok R, Bond E, White LD. Apneic oxygenation during intubation in the emergency department and during retrieval: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2017;35(10):1542–1546.
74. Pavlov I, Medrano S, Weingart S. Apneic oxygenation reduces the incidence of hypoxemia during emergency intubation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2017;35(8):1184–1189.
75. Mendelson CL. The aspiration of stomach contents into the lungs during obstetric anesthesia. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1946;52:191–205.
76. Practice Guidelines for Preoperative Fasting and the Use of Pharmacologic Agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration: application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(3):376–393.
77. Smith I, Kranke P, Murat I, et al. Perioperative fasting in adults and children: guidelines from the European Society of Anaesthesiology. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(8):556–569.
78. Mahajan V, Hashmi J, Singh R, Samra T, Aneja S. Comparative evaluation of gastric pH and volume in morbidly obese and lean patients undergoing elective surgery and effect of aspiration prophylaxis. *J Clin Anesth*. 2015;27(5):396–400.
79. Paranjothy S, Griffiths JD, Broughton HK, Gyte GM, Brown HC, Thomas J. Interventions at caesarean section for reducing the risk of aspiration pneumonitis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;(2):CD004943.
80. Artime CA, Sanchez A. Preparation of the patient for awake intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime C, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:216–234.
81. Kim YH, Kang JW, Kim KM. Characteristics of glottic closure reflex in a canine model. *Yonsei Med J*. 2009;50(3):380–384.
82. Al-alami AA, Zestos MM, Baraka AS. Pediatric laryngospasm: prevention and treatment. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22(3):388–395.
83. Silva DA, Sanders I. Continuous positive airway pressure as a promoter of laryngospasm during halothane anesthesia. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol*. 1992;101(11):893–896.
84. Cooper RM. Extubation and reintubation of the difficult airway. In: Hagberg CA, Artime C, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:844–867.
85. Dorsey DP, Joffe AM. Physiologic and pathophysiologic responses to intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime C, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:163–177.
86. Combes X, Andriamifidy L, Dufresne E, et al. Comparison of two induction regimens using or not using muscle relaxant: impact on postoperative upper airway discomfort. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(2):276–281.
87. Gal TJ. Airway management. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Churchill Livingstone/Elsevier; 2005:1617–1652.
88. El-Orbany MI, Joseph NJ, Salem MR. Tracheal intubating conditions and apnoea time after small-dose succinylcholine are not modified by the choice of induction agent. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(5):710–714.
89. El-Orbany MI, Wafai Y, Joseph NJ, Salem MR. Does the choice of intravenous induction drug affect intubation conditions after a fast-onset neuromuscular blocker? *J Clin Anesth*. 2003;15(1):9–14.
90. Lieutaud T, Billard V, Khalaf H, Debaene B. Muscle relaxation and increasing doses of propofol improve intubating conditions. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50(2):121–126.
91. Naguib M, Kopman AF, Lien CA, Hunter JM, Lopez A, Brull SJ. A survey of current management of neuromuscular block in the United States and Europe. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):110–119.
92. Heier T, Feiner JR, Lin J, Brown R, Caldwell JE. Hemoglobin desaturation after succinylcholine-induced apnea: a study of the recovery of spontaneous ventilation in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(5):754–759.
93. Lee C, Jahr JS, Candiotti KA, Warriner B, Zornow MH, Naguib M. Reversal of profound neuromuscular block by sugammadex administered three minutes after rocuronium: a comparison with spontaneous recovery from succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(5):1020–1025.

94. Broomhead RH, Marks RJ, Ayton P. Confirmation of the ability to ventilate by facemask before administration of neuromuscular blocker: a non-instrumental piece of information? *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(3):313–317.
95. Goodwin MW, Pandit JJ, Hames K, Popat M, Yentis SM. The effect of neuromuscular blockade on the efficiency of mask ventilation of the lungs. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58(1):60–63.
96. Ikeda A, Isono S, Sato Y, et al. Effects of muscle relaxants on mask ventilation in anesthetized persons with normal upper airway anatomy. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(3):487–493.
97. Warters RD, Szabo TA, Spinale FG, DeSantis SM, Reves JG. The effect of neuromuscular blockade on mask ventilation. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(3):163–167.
98. Calder I, Yentis SM. Could 'safe practice' be compromising safe practice? Should anaesthetists have to demonstrate that face mask ventilation is possible before giving a neuromuscular blocker? *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63(2):113–115.
99. Sellick BA. Cricoid pressure to control regurgitation of stomach contents during induction of anaesthesia. *Lancet*. 1961;2(7199):404–406.
100. Vanner RG, Asai T. Safe use of cricoid pressure. *Anaesthesia*. 1999;54(1):1–3.
101. El-Orbany M, Connolly LA. Rapid sequence induction and intubation: current controversy. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(5):1318–1325.
102. Koerber JP, Roberts GE, Whitaker R, Thorpe CM. Variation in rapid sequence induction techniques: current practice in Wales. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(1):54–59.
103. Rosen MA. Management of anesthesia for the pregnant surgical patient. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(4):1159–1163.
104. de Souza DG, Doar LH, Mehta SH, Tiouririne M. Aspiration prophylaxis and rapid sequence induction for elective cesarean delivery: time to reassess old dogma? *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(5):1503–1505.
105. Paech MJ. Pregnant women having caesarean delivery under general anaesthesia should have a rapid sequence induction with cricoid pressure and be intubated. Can this 'holy cow' be sent packing? *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2010;38(6):989–991.
106. Stept WJ, Safar P. Rapid induction-intubation for prevention of gastric-content aspiration. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49(4):633–636.
107. Deepika K, Bikhazi GB, Mikati HM, Namba M, Foldes FF. Facilitation of rapid-sequence intubation with large-dose vecuronium with or without priming. *J Clin Anesth*. 1992;4(2):106–110.
108. Williamson RM, Mallaiah S, Barclay P. Rocuronium and sugammadex for rapid sequence induction of obstetric general anaesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55(6):694–699.
109. Thorn K, Thorn SE, Wattwil M. The effects of cricoid pressure, remifentanil, and propofol on esophageal motility and the lower esophageal sphincter. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(4):1200–1203.
110. Smith KJ, Dobranowski J, Yip G, Dauphin A, Choi PT. Cricoid pressure displaces the esophagus: an observational study using magnetic resonance imaging. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(1):60–64.
111. Palmer JHMG, Ball DR. The effect of cricoid pressure on the cricoid cartilage and vocal cords: an endoscopic study in anaesthetised patients. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55(3):263–268.
112. Rice MJ, Mancuso AA, Gibbs C, Morey TE, Gravenstein N, Deitte LA. Cricoid pressure results in compression of the postcricoid hypopharynx: the esophageal position is irrelevant. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(5):1546–1552.
113. Ehrenfeld JM, Cassedy EA, Forbes VE, Mercaldo ND, Sandberg WS. Modified rapid sequence induction and intubation: a survey of United States current practice. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(1):95–101.
114. Clements P, Washington SJ, McCluskey A. Should patients be manually ventilated during rapid sequence induction of anaesthesia? *Br J Hosp Med (Lond)*. 2009;70(7):424.
115. El-Orbany MI, Wafai Y, Joseph NJ, Salem MR. Tracheal intubation conditions and cardiovascular effects after modified rapid-sequence induction with sevoflurane-rapacuronium versus propofol-rapacuronium. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14(2):115–120.
116. Wappler F, Frings DP, Scholz J, Mann V, Koch C, Schulte am Esch J. Inhalational induction of anaesthesia with 8% sevoflurane in children: conditions for endotracheal intubation and side-effects. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20(7):548–554.
117. Lee SY, Cheng SL, Ng SB, Lim SL. Single-breath vital capacity high concentration sevoflurane induction in children: with or without nitrous oxide? *Br J Anaesth*. 2012.
118. Kim SH, Hong JY, Suk EH, Jeong SM, Park PH. Optimum bolus dose of propofol for tracheal intubation during sevoflurane induction without neuromuscular blockade in children. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2011;39(5):899–903.
119. Kim JY, Kwak YL, Lee KC, Chang YJ, Kwak HJ. The optimal bolus dose of alfentanil for tracheal intubation during sevoflurane induction without neuromuscular blockade in day-case anaesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52(1):106–110.
120. Wei LX, Deng XM, Liu JH, et al. [Inductions and intubating conditions with sevoflurane and different doses of remifentanil without muscle relaxant in children]. *Zhongguo yi xue ke xue yuan xue bao. Acta Academiae Medicinae Sinicae*. 2008;30(6):723–727.
121. Hung CT, Shih MH, Shih CJ, et al. Intubation conditions with low dose rocuronium under sevoflurane induction for children. *Chang Gung Med J*. 2005;28(3):174–179.
122. Kim KS, Kwak HJ, Min SK, Lee SY, Kim KM, Kim JY. The effect of ketamine on tracheal intubating conditions without neuromuscular blockade during sevoflurane induction in children. *Journal of Anesthesia*. 2011;25(2):195–199.
123. Mahboobi N, Esmaeili S, Safari S, Habibollahi P, Dabbagh A, Alavian SM. Halothane: how should it be used in a developing country? *Eastern Mediterranean health journal = La revue de sante de la Mediterranee orientale = al-Majallah al-sihhiyah li-sharq al-mutawassit*. 2012;18(2):159–164.
124. Kong CF, Chew ST, Ip-Yam PC. Intravenous opioids reduce airway irritation during induction of anaesthesia with desflurane in adults. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85(3):364–367.
125. Lee J, Jung CW. The target concentration of remifentanil to suppress the hemodynamic response to endotracheal intubation during inhalational induction with desflurane. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2011;60(1):12–18.
126. Erhan E, Ugur G, Gunusen I, Alper I, Ozyar B. Propofol—not thiopental or etomidate—with remifentanil provides adequate intubating conditions in the absence of neuromuscular blockade. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50(2):108–115.
127. Gore MS, Harnagale KD. Evaluation of intubating conditions with varying doses of propofol without muscle relaxants. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;27(1):27–30.
128. Erhan E, Ugur G, Alper I, Gunusen I, Ozyar B. Tracheal intubation without muscle relaxants: remifentanil or alfentanil in combination with propofol. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20(1):37–43.
129. Aissaoui Y, Qamous Y, Serghini I, Zoubir M, Salim JL, Boughalem M. Magnesium sulphate: an adjuvant to tracheal intubation without muscle relaxation—a randomised study. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29(8):391–397.
130. Bouvet L, Stoian A, Rimmele T, Allaouchiche B, Chassard D, Boselli E. Optimal remifentanil dosage for providing excellent intubating conditions when co-administered with a single standard dose of propofol. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(7):719–726.
131. Politis GD, Tobias JD. Rapid sequence intubation without a neuromuscular blocking agent in a 14-year-old female patient with myasthenia gravis. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(3):285–288.
132. Lundstrom LH, Moller AM, Rosenstock C, Astrup G, Gatke MR, Wetterslev J. Avoidance of neuromuscular blocking agents may increase the risk of difficult tracheal intubation: a cohort study of 103,812 consecutive adult patients recorded in the Danish Anaesthesia Database. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(2):283–290.
133. Mencke T, Echternach M, Kleinschmidt S, et al. Laryngeal morbidity and quality of tracheal intubation: a randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(5):1049–1056.
134. Abrams JT, Horrow JC, Bennett JA, Van Riper DF, Storella RJ. Upper airway closure: a primary source of difficult ventilation with sufentanil induction of anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(3):629–632.
135. Scamman FL. Fentanyl-O2-N2O rigidity and pulmonary compliance. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62(3):332–334.
136. Bennett JA, Abrams JT, Van Riper DF, Horrow JC. Difficult or impossible ventilation after sufentanil-induced anesthesia is caused primarily by vocal cord closure. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(5):1070–1074.
137. Kohno T, Ikoma M. Sudden vocal cord closure during general anesthesia using remifentanil. *Masui*. 2008;57(10):1213–1217.

138. Benumof JL. Management of the difficult adult airway. With special emphasis on awake tracheal intubation. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(6):1087–1110.
139. Thomas JL. Awake intubation. Indications, techniques and a review of 25 patients. *Anaesthesia*. 1969;24(1):28–35.
140. Rosenstock CV, Thogersen B, Afshari A, Christensen AL, Eriksen C, Gatke MR. Awake fiberoptic or awake video laryngoscopic tracheal intubation in patients with anticipated difficult airway management: a randomized clinical trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(6):1210–1216.
141. Xue FS, Liu HP, Liao X, Wang Q, Yuan YJ, Liu JH. Awake intubation performed with the Bonfils intubating fibrescope in patients with a difficult airway. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29(4):209–210. author reply 210-201.
142. Xue FS, He N, Liao X, et al. Clinical assessment of awake endotracheal intubation using the lightwand technique alone in patients with difficult airways. *Chin Med J*. 2009;122(4):408–415.
143. Sarma J. Awake intubation with the Fastrach laryngeal mask airway. *J Clin Anesth*. 2007;19(4):322.
144. Raval C, Patel H, Patel P, Kharod U. Retrograde intubation in a case of ankylosing spondylitis posted for correction of deformity of spine. *Saudi J Anaesth*. 2010;4(1):38–41.
145. Bekhit MH. Lidocaine for neural blockade. In: Sinatra RS, Jahr JS, Watkins-Pitchford JM, eds. *The Essence of Analgesia and Analgesics*. Cambridge ; New York: Cambridge University Press; 2011:279–283.
146. Simmons ST, Schleich AR. Airway regional anesthesia for awake fiberoptic intubation. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27(2):180–192.
147. Novaro GM, Aronow HD, Militello MA, Garcia MJ, Sabik EM. Benzocaine-induced methemoglobinemia: experience from a high-volume transesophageal echocardiography laboratory. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2003;16(2):170–175.
148. Cara DM, Norris AM, Neale LJ. Pain during awake nasal intubation after topical cocaine or phenylephrine/lidocaine spray. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58(8):777–780.
149. Gross JB, Hartigan ML, Schaffer DW. A suitable substitute for 4% cocaine before blind nasotracheal intubation: 3% lidocaine-0.25% phenylephrine nasal spray. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63(10):915–918.
150. Walsh ME, Shorten GD. Preparing to perform an awake fiberoptic intubation. *Yale J Biol Med*. 1998;71(6):537–549.
151. British Thoracic Society guidelines on diagnostic flexible bronchoscopy. *Thorax*. 2001;56(suppl 1):i1–21.
152. Williams KA, Barker GL, Harwood RJ, Woodall NM. Combined nebulization and spray-as-you-go topical local anaesthesia of the airway. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(4):549–553.
153. Reed AP. Preparation of the patient for awake flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopy. *Chest*. 1992;101(1):244–253.
154. von Goedecke A, Voelckel WG, Wenzel V, et al. Mechanical versus manual ventilation via a face mask during the induction of anesthesia: a prospective, randomized, crossover study. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(1):260–263; table of contents.
155. Joffe AM, Hetzel S, Liew EC. A two-handed jaw-thrust technique is superior to the one-handed “EC-clamp” technique for mask ventilation in the apneic unconscious person. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(4):873–879.
156. Weiler N, Heinrichs W, Dick W. Assessment of pulmonary mechanics and gastric inflation pressure during mask ventilation. *Prehosp Disaster Med*. 1995;10(2):101–105.
157. Safar P, Escarraga LA, Chang F. Upper airway obstruction in the unconscious patient. *J Appl Physiol*. 1959;14:760–764.
158. Isono S, Tanaka A, Ishikawa T, Tagaito Y, Nishino T. Sniffing position improves pharyngeal airway patency in anesthetized patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(3):489–494.
159. Kok PH, Kwan KM, Koay CK. A case report of a fractured healthytooth during use of Guedel oropharyngeal airway. *Singapore Med J*. 2001;42(7):322–324.
160. Wang KC, Chan WS, Tsai CT, Wu GJ, Chang Y, Tseng HC. Lingual nerve injury following the use of an oropharyngeal airway under endotracheal general anesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Taiwan*. 2006;44(2):119–122.
161. Brain AI. The laryngeal mask—a new concept in airway management. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55(8):801–805.
162. Brimacombe J. The advantages of the LMA over the tracheal tube or facemask: a meta-analysis. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(11):1017–1023.
163. Yu SH, Beirne OR. Laryngeal mask airways have a lower risk of airway complications compared with endotracheal intubation: a systematic review. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2010;68(10):2359–2376.
164. Lindsay HA, Cook TM, Russo SG, Hagberg CA. Supraglottic airway techniques: laryngeal mask airways. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz MF, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:328–348.
165. Miller DM. A proposed classification and scoring system for supraglottic sealing airways: a brief review. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(5):1553–1559; table of contents.
166. Vaida S, Gatini L, Frass M. Supraglottic airway techniques: nonlaryngeal mask airways. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz MF, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:349–370.
167. Asai T, Brimacombe J. Review article: cuff volume and size selection with the laryngeal mask. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55(12):1179–1184.
168. Brimacombe J, Clarke G, Keller C. Lingual nerve injury associated with the ProSeal laryngeal mask airway: a case report and review of the literature. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(3):420–423.
169. Vannucci A, Rossi IT, Prifti K, et al. Modifiable and nonmodifiable factors associated with perioperative failure of extraglottic airway devices. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(6):1959–1967.
170. Grady DM, McHardy F, Wong J, Jin F, Tong D, Chung F. Pharyngolaryngeal morbidity with the laryngeal mask airway in spontaneously breathing patients: does size matter? *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(5):760–766.
171. Siddik-Sayyid SM, Aouad MT, Taha SK, et al. A comparison of sevoflurane-propofol versus sevoflurane or propofol for laryngeal mask airway insertion in adults. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(4):1204–1209.
172. Hui JK, Critchley LA, Karmakar MK, Lam PK. Co-administration of alfentanil-propofol improves laryngeal mask airway insertion compared to fentanyl-propofol. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49(5):508–512.
173. Bouvet L, Da-Col X, Rimmele T, Allaouchiche B, Chassard D, Boselli E. Optimal remifentanil dose for laryngeal mask airway insertion when co-administered with a single standard dose of propofol. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57(3):222–229.
174. Jaffe RA, Brock-Utne JG. A modification of the Yodfat laryngeal mask airway insertion technique. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14(6):462–463.
175. Nakayama S, Osaka Y, Yamashita M. The rotational technique with a partially inflated laryngeal mask airway improves the ease of insertion in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12(5):416–419.
176. Weber S. Traumatic complications of airway management. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2002;20(3):503–512.
177. Dingley J, Whitehead MJ, Wareham K. A comparative study of the incidence of sore throat with the laryngeal mask airway. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49(3):251–254.
178. Burgard G, Mollhoff T, Prien T. The effect of laryngeal mask cuff pressure on postoperative sore throat incidence. *J Clin Anesth*. 1996;8(3):198–201.
179. Brimacombe J, Costa e Silva L. Pharyngeal necrosis with the laryngeal mask airway. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20(6):502–503.
180. Emmett SR, Lloyd SD, Johnston MN. Uvular trauma from a laryngeal mask. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(3):468–469.
181. Cook TM, Lee G, Nolan JP. The ProSeal laryngeal mask airway: a review of the literature. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(7):739–760.
182. Handa-Tsutsui F, Kodaka M. Propofol concentration requirement for laryngeal mask airway insertion was highest with the ProSeal, next highest with the Fastrach, and lowest with the Classic type, with target-controlled infusion. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17(5):344–347.
183. Sharma V, Verghese C, McKenna PJ. Prospective audit on the use of the LMA-Supreme for airway management of adult patients undergoing elective orthopaedic surgery in prone position. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(2):228–232.
184. Abdi W, Amathieu R, Adhoum A, et al. Sparing the larynx during gynecological laparoscopy: a randomized trial comparing the LMA Supreme and the ETT. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54(2):141–146.
185. Maltby JR, Beriault MT, Watson NC, Liepert D, Fick GH. The LMA-ProSeal is an effective alternative to tracheal intubation for laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49(8):857–862.
186. Abdi W, Dhonneur G, Amathieu R, et al. LMA Supreme versus facemask ventilation performed by novices: a comparative study in morbidly obese patients showing difficult ventilation predictors. *Obes Surg*. 2009;19(12):1624–1630.

187. Yao T, Yang XL, Zhang F, et al. The feasibility of Supreme laryngeal mask airway in gynecological laparoscopy surgery. *Zhonghua Yi Xue Za Zhi*. 2010;90(29):2048–2051.
188. Gaitini LA, Vaida SJ, Mostafa S, et al. The Combitube in elective surgery: a report of 200 cases. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(1):79–82.
189. Mort TC. Laryngeal mask airway and bougie intubation failures: the Combitube as a secondary rescue device for in-hospital emergency airway management. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(5):1264–1266.
190. Ochs M, Vilke GM, Chan TC, Moats T, Buchanan J. Successful prehospital airway management by EMT-Ds using the Combitube. *Prehosp Emerg Care*. 2000;4(4):333–337.
191. Oczenski W, Krenn H, Dahaba AA, et al. Complications following the use of the Combitube, tracheal tube and laryngeal mask airway. *Anaesthesia*. 1999;54(12):1161–1165.
192. Gaitini LA, Yanovsky B, Somri M, et al. Prospective randomized comparison of the easytube and the esophageal-tracheal combitube airway devices during general anesthesia with mechanical ventilation. *J Clin Anesth*. 2011;23(6):475–481.
193. Sultan P, Carvalho B, Rose BO, Cregg R. Endotracheal tube cuff pressure monitoring: a review of the evidence. *J Perioper Pract*. 2011;21(11):379–386.
194. Sparrow KA, Asselin M, Hung OR. Intubating introducers and lighted and optical stylets. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz MF, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:402–416.
195. Artime C. Flexible fiberoptic intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013:97–108.
196. Bannister FB, Macbeth RG. Direct laryngoscopy and tracheal intubation. *Lancet*. 1944;2:651–654.
197. Adnet F, Borron SW, Dumas JL, Lapostolle F, Cupa M, Lapandry C. Study of the "sniffing position" by magnetic resonance imaging. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(1):83–86.
198. Chou HC, Wu TL. Rethinking the three axes alignment theory for direct laryngoscopy. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45(2):261–262.
199. Greenland KB, Edwards MJ, Hutton NJ, Challis VJ, Irwin MG, Sleigh JW. Changes in airway configuration with different head and neck positions using magnetic resonance imaging of normal airways: a new concept with possible clinical applications. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(5):683–690.
200. Isono S. Common practice and concepts in anesthesia: time for reassessment: is the sniffing position a "gold standard" for laryngoscopy? *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(4):825–827.
201. Park SH, Park HP, Jeon YT, Hwang JW, Kim JH, Bahk JH. A comparison of direct laryngoscopic views depending on pillow height. *J Anesth*. 2010;24(4):526–530.
202. Greenland KB, Edwards MJ, Hutton NJ. External auditory meatus-sternal notch relationship in adults in the sniffing position: a magnetic resonance imaging study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(2):268–269.
203. Takenaka I, Aoyama K, Iwagaki T, Ishimura H, Kadoya T. The sniffing position provides greater occipito-atlanto-axial angulation than simple head extension: a radiological study. *Can J Anaesth*. 2007;54(2):129–133.
204. Jain RR, Cameron SD. Airway management in pediatric patients. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz MF, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:608–639.
205. Baker PA, Timmermann A. Laryngoscopic tracheal intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:371–390.
206. Cormack RS, Lehane J. Difficult tracheal intubation in obstetrics. *Anaesthesia*. 1984;39(11):1105–1111.
207. Yentis SM, Lee DJ. Evaluation of an improved scoring system for the grading of direct laryngoscopy. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(11):1041–1044.
208. Ochroch EA, Hollander JE, Kush S, Shofer FS, Levitan RM. Assessment of laryngeal view: percentage of glottic opening score vs Cormack and Lehane grading. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46(10):987–990.
209. Straker T, Urdaneta F. Confirmation of tracheal intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz MF, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:540–551.
210. Hung MH, Fan SZ, Lin CP, Hsu YC, Shih PY, Lee TS. Emergency airway management with fiberoptic intubation in the prone position with a fixed flexed neck. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(5):1704–1706.
211. Cattano D, Cavallone L. Airway management and patient positioning: a clinical perspective. *Anesthesiology News*. 2011;37:17–23.
212. Asai T, Shingu K. Difficulty in advancing a tracheal tube over a fibreoptic bronchoscope: incidence, causes and solutions. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(6):870–881.
213. Kristensen MS. The Parker Flex-Tip tube versus a standard tube for fiberoptic orotracheal intubation: a randomized double-blind study. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(2):354–358.
214. Lu Y, Jiang H, Zhu YS. Airtraq laryngoscope versus conventional Macintosh laryngoscope: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(12):1160–1167.
215. Rudolph C, Schneider JP, Wallenborn J, Schaffranietz L. Movement of the upper cervical spine during laryngoscopy: a comparison of the Bonfils intubation fibrescope and the Macintosh laryngoscope. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60(7):668–672.
216. Shollik NA, Ibrahim SM, Ismael A, Agnoletti V, Piraccini E, Corso RM. Use of the Bonfils intubation fiberscope in patients with limited mouth opening. *Case Rep Anesthesiol*. 2012;2012:297306.
217. Mazeres JE, Lefranc A, Cropet C, et al. Evaluation of the Bonfils intubating fibrescope for predicted difficult intubation in awake patients with ear, nose and throat cancer. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(9):646–650.
218. Abramson SI, Holmes AA, Hagberg CA. Awake insertion of the Bonfils retromolar intubation fiberscope in five patients with anticipated difficult airways. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(4):1215–1217; table of contents.
219. Xue FS, Luo MP, Liao X, He N. Airway topical anesthesia using the Bonfils fiberscope. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21(2):154–155.
220. Sorbello M, Paratore A, Morello G, Merli G, Belluoccio AA, Petrini F. Bonfils fiberscope: better preoxygenate rather than oxygenate!. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(1):386.
221. Aziz M, Metz S. Clinical evaluation of the Levitan optical stylet. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(7):579–581.
222. Van Zundert AA, Pieters BM. Combined technique using videolaryngoscopy and Bonfils for a difficult airway intubation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(2):327–328.
223. Xue FS, Liu HP, Guo XL. Transillumination-assisted endotracheal intubation with the Bonfils fiberscope. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26(3):261–262.
224. Biro P, Battig U, Henderson J, Seifert B. First clinical experience of tracheal intubation with the SensaScope, a novel steerable semirigid video stylet. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97(2):255–261.
225. Greif R, Kleine-Brueggeney M, Theiler L. Awake tracheal intubation using the Sensascope in 13 patients with an anticipated difficult airway. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(5):525–528.
226. Kaplan MB, Hagberg CA, Ward DS, et al. Comparison of direct and video-assisted views of the larynx during routine intubation. *J Clin Anesth*. 2006;18(5):357–362.
227. Aziz MF, Dillman D, Fu R, Brambrink AM. Comparative effectiveness of the C-MAC video laryngoscope versus direct laryngoscopy in the setting of the predicted difficult airway. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):629–636.
228. Jungbauer A, Schumann M, Brunkhorst V, Borgers A, Groeben H. Expected difficult tracheal intubation: a prospective comparison of direct laryngoscopy and video laryngoscopy in 200 patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(4):546–550.
229. Asai T, Liu EH, Matsumoto S, et al. Use of the Pentax-AWS in 293 patients with difficult airways. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(4):898–904.
230. Aziz MF, Healy D, Kheterpal S, Fu RF, Dillman D, Brambrink AM. Routine clinical practice effectiveness of the Glidescope in difficult airway management: an analysis of 2,004 Glidescope intubations, complications, and failures from two institutions. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(1):34–41.
231. Moore AR, Schricker T, Court O. Awake videolaryngoscopy-assisted tracheal intubation of the morbidly obese. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(3):232–235.
232. Xue FS, Cheng Y, Li RP. Awake intubation with video laryngoscope and fiberoptic bronchoscope in difficult airway patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(2):462–463.
233. Aziz M, Brambrink A. Video-assisted laryngoscopy. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz MF, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:417–427.
234. McElwain J, Malik MA, Harte BH, Flynn NM, Laffey JG. Comparison of the C-MAC videolaryngoscope with the Macintosh, Glidescope, and Airtraq laryngoscopes in easy and difficult laryngoscopy scenarios in manikins. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(5):483–489.
235. Ng I, Hill AL, Williams DL, Lee K, Segal R. Randomized controlled trial comparing the McGrath videolaryngoscope with the C-MAC

videolaryngoscope in intubating adult patients with potential difficult airways. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(3):439–443.

236. Cavus E, Kieckhaefer J, Doerges V, Moeller T, Thee C, Wagner K. The C-MAC videolaryngoscope: first experiences with a new device for videolaryngoscopy-guided intubation. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(2): 473–477.
237. Maassen R, Lee R, Hermans B, Marcus M, van Zundert A. A comparison of three videolaryngoscopes: the Macintosh laryngoscope blade reduces, but does not replace, routine stylet use for intubation in morbidly obese patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(5):1560–1565.
238. van Zundert A, Maassen R, Lee R, et al. A Macintosh laryngoscope blade for videolaryngoscopy reduces stylet use in patients with normal airways. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(3):825–831.
239. Meininger D, Strouhal U, Weber CF, et al. Direct laryngoscopy or C-MAC video laryngoscopy? Routine tracheal intubation in patients undergoing ENT surgery. *Anaesthesist*. 2010;59(9):806–811.
240. Jones PM, Loh FL, Youssef HN, Turkstra TP. A randomized comparison of the GlideRite((R)) Rigid Stylet to a malleable stylet for orotracheal intubation by novices using the GlideScope((R)). *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58(3):256–261.
241. Cattano D, Artime C, Maddukuri V, et al. Endotrol-tracheal tube assisted endotracheal intubation during video laryngoscopy. *Intern Emerg Med*. 2012;7(1):59–63.
242. Dupanovic M. Maneuvers to prevent oropharyngeal injury during orotracheal intubation with the GlideScope video laryngoscope. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22(2):152–154.
243. Komasawa N, Ueki R, Kohama H, Nishi S, Kaminoh Y. Comparison of Pentax-AWS Airwayscope video laryngoscope, Airtraq optic laryngoscope, and Macintosh laryngoscope during cardiopulmonary resuscitation under cervical stabilization: a manikin study. *J Anesth*. 2011;25(6):898–903.
244. Komasawa N, Ueki R, Tomita Y, Kaminoh Y, Tashiro C. Case of awake intubation in semi-sitting position for a patient with myasthenia gravis combined with cervical disc hernia utilizing Pentax-AWS Airwayscope. *Masui*. 2011;60(1):84–87.
245. Ferrario L. Intubation stylets. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013:83–96.
246. Normand KC, Aucoin AP. Retrograde intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013:109–115.
247. Hsu HT, Chou SH, Wu PJ, et al. Comparison of the GlideScope(R) videolaryngoscope and the Macintosh laryngoscope for double-lumen tube intubation. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(4):411–415.
248. Pinsky JR, Hagberg CA. Combination techniques. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013:143–154.
249. Ohchi F, Komasawa N, Mihara R, Hattori K, Minami T. Evaluation of gum-elastic bougie combined with direct and indirect laryngoscopes in vomitus setting: a randomized simulation trial. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2017;35(4):584–588.
250. Budde AO, Pott LM. Endotracheal tube as a guide for an Eschmann gum elastic bougie to aid tracheal intubation using the McGrath or GlideScope videolaryngoscopes. *J Clin Anesth*. 2008;20(7):560.
251. Pieters BM, Theunissen M, van Zundert AA. Macintosh blade videolaryngoscopy combined with rigid Bonfils intubation endoscope offers a suitable alternative for patients with difficult airways. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(3):988–994.
252. Normand KC. Percutaneous transtracheal jet ventilation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013:117–124.
253. Hamaekers AE, Borg PA, Enk D. Ventrain: an ejector ventilator for emergency use. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(6):1017–1021.
254. Fearnley RA, Badiger S, Oakley RJ, Ahmad I. Elective use of the ventrain for upper airway obstruction during high-frequency jet ventilation. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;33:233–235.
255. Normand KC. Cricothyrotomy. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013:125–134.
256. Asai T, Koga K, Vaughan RS. Respiratory complications associated with tracheal intubation and extubation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80(6):767–775.
257. Popat M, Mitchell V, et al. Difficult Airway Society guidelines for the management of tracheal extubation. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(3):318–340.
258. Nair I, Bailey PM. Use of the laryngeal mask for airway maintenance following tracheal extubation. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50(2): 174–175.
259. Falzon D, Foye R, Jefferson P, Ball DR. Extubation guidelines: Guedel oropharyngeal airways should not be used as bite blocks. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(8):919; author reply 921-912.
260. Foley L, Feinleib JL, Mark L. Dissemination of critical airway information. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz MF, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2018:905–910.

Video 44.1 Noninvasive Glossopharyngeal Nerve Block. (From Artime CA, Sanchez A. Preparation of the patient for awake intubation. In: Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Aziz M, eds. *Hagberg and Benumof's Airway Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.)

Video 44.2 Transtracheal Anesthesia. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.3 Mask Ventilation Techniques. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.4 LMA Insertion Techniques. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.5 Tracheal Intubation Using Direct Laryngoscopy and an Intubating Stylet. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.6 Transoral Flexible Scope Intubation. (Modified from Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.7 Tracheal Intubation with the Bonfils Retromolar Intubation Fiberscope. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.8 Tracheal Intubation with the Clarus Video System. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.9 Tracheal Intubation Using the GlideScope. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.10 Tracheal Intubation with a Lighted Stylet. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.11 Guidewire-Assisted Retrograde Intubation. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide.* Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.12 Combination Techniques: LMA/Aintree/Flexible Scope Intubation. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.13 Combination Techniques: Supraglottic Airway Device/Flexible Scope Intubation. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.14 Combination Techniques: Videolaryngoscopy/Intubation Stylet. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.15 Combination Techniques: Videolaryngoscopy/Flexible Intubating Scope. (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide.* Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

Video 44.16 Percutaneous Dilational Cricothyrotomy (Seldinger Technique). (From Hagberg CA, Artime CA, Daily WH, eds. *The Difficult Airway: A Practical Guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2013.)

45

Spinal, Epidural, and Caudal Anesthesia

RICHARD BRULL, ALAN J.R. MACFARLANE, and VINCENT W.S. CHAN

KEY POINTS

- The distal termination of the spinal cord varies from L3 in infants to the lower border of L1 in adults.
- The speed of neural blockade depends on the size, surface area, and degree of myelination of the nerve fibers exposed to the local anesthetic.
- Blockade of the peripheral (T1-L2) and cardiac (T1-T4) sympathetic fibers is responsible for the decrease in arterial blood pressure (cardiac output and systemic vascular resistance) associated with neuraxial techniques.
- Cerebrospinal fluid volume and local anesthetic baricity are the most important determinants for the spread (i.e., block height) of spinal anesthesia.
- The use of smaller-gauge spinal needles decreases the incidence of post–dural puncture headache.
- Serious neurologic complications associated with neuraxial blockade are rare, but the risk increases in the elderly and those with preexisting spinal pathology.
- The use of low-molecular-weight heparin and potent platelet inhibitors increases the risk of epidural hematoma from neuraxial blockade.
- Epidural blood patches are greater than 90% effective in relieving post–dural puncture headache.
- Local anesthetic systemic toxicity results from unintentional administration of the drug into an epidural vein.
- Use of neuraxial blockade, particularly when used as the sole anesthetic, can reduce perioperative morbidity and may reduce mortality.

Principles

Spinal, epidural, and caudal neuraxial blocks result in one or a combination of sympathetic blockade, sensory blockade, or motor blockade depending on the dose, concentration, or volume of local anesthetic administered. Despite these similarities, there are significant technical, physiologic, and pharmacologic differences. Spinal anesthesia requires a small mass (i.e., volume) of drug that is almost devoid of systemic pharmacologic effects to produce rapid (<5 minutes), profound, reproducible sensory analgesia. In contrast, epidural and caudal anesthesia progress more slowly (>20 minutes) after a large mass of local anesthetic that produces pharmacologically active systemic blood levels, which may be associated with side effects and complications unknown to spinal anesthesia. The introduction of combined spinal and epidural techniques blurs some of these differences, but also adds flexibility to clinical care.

Practice

Neuraxial blockade has a wide range of clinical applications for surgery, obstetrics, acute postoperative pain management, and chronic pain relief. Single-injection spinal or epidural anesthesia with local anesthetic is most commonly used for surgery to the lower abdomen, pelvic organs (e.g., prostate), and lower limbs, and for cesarean deliveries. Continuous catheter-based epidural infusions of dilute local anesthetics and opioids are used for obstetric labor analgesia and postoperative pain relief after major surgery (e.g., thoracic, abdominal, and less commonly lower limb) to provide analgesia for days if required. Evidence demonstrating that epidural analgesia can reduce pulmonary morbidity and mortality in high-risk patients undergoing major thoracic and abdominal surgery served to propel the practice of epidural analgesia at the beginning of the millennium.[1] Caudal blocks are mostly performed for surgical anesthesia and analgesia in children, and for therapeutic analgesia in adults with chronic pain. Indwelling spinal catheters can be applied long term (from months to years) for the treatment of chronic malignant and nonmalignant pain.

Historical Perspectives

The first case of spinal anesthesia in humans was performed by August Bier in 1898 using the local anesthetic cocaine.[2] Subsequently, spinal anesthesia was successfully performed using procaine by Braun in 1905, tetracaine by Sise in 1935, lidocaine by Gordh in 1949, chloroprocaine by Foldes and McNall in 1952, mepivacaine by Dhunér and

Sternberg in 1961, and bupivacaine by Emblem in 1966. Spinal anesthesia using ropivacaine and levobupivacaine was introduced in the 1980s. The year 1901 marked the first reported use of intrathecal morphine described by Racoviceanu-Pitesti, as well as the first description of caudal anesthesia reported by Cathleen. Lumbar epidural anesthesia in humans was first described by Pagés in 1921, the loss-of-resistance technique by Dogliotti in the 1930s, continuous caudal for obstetrics by Hingson in 1941, and lumbar epidural catheterization for surgery by Curbelo in 1947.[3] The use of epidural morphine analgesia was first reported by Behar in 1979.

Despite the extensive experience using neuraxial techniques throughout the past century, several events caused major setbacks along the way, including the Woolley and Roe case detailing paraplegia after spinal anesthesia in 1954,[4] the reports of persistent neurologic deficits and adhesive arachnoiditis with spinal chloroprocaine in the early 1980s, and cauda equina syndrome with continuous spinal lidocaine anesthesia in the early 1990s.[5] More recently, the potential for catastrophic epidural hematoma with newer potent anticoagulants (e.g., low-molecular-weight heparin [LMWH]) and antiplatelet agents (e.g., clopidogrel) has caused concern.[6]

Anatomy

The spinal cord is continuous with the brainstem proximally and terminates distally in the conus medullaris as the filum terminale (fibrous extension) and the cauda equina (neural extension). This distal termination varies from L3 in infants to the lower border of L1 in adults because of differential growth rates between the bony vertebral canal and the central nervous system.

Surrounding the spinal cord in the bony vertebral column are three membranes (from innermost to outermost): the pia mater, the arachnoid mater, and the dura mater (Fig. 45.1). The cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) resides in the space between the pia mater and the arachnoid mater, termed the *subarachnoid* (or *intrathecal*) *space*. The pia mater is a highly vascular membrane that closely invests the spinal cord and brain. Approximately 500 mL of CSF is formed daily by the choroid plexuses of the cerebral ventricles, with 30 to 80 mL occupying the subarachnoid space from T11 to T12 downward. The arachnoid mater is a delicate, nonvascular membrane that functions as the principal barrier to drugs crossing into (and out of) the CSF and is estimated to account for 90% of the resistance to drug migration.[7] As Liu and McDonald[8] and Bernards[9] emphasize, the functional proof of the arachnoid's role as the primary barrier to flow is the observation that spinal CSF resides in the subarachnoid, and not the subdural, space. The outermost layer is the dura.

Surrounding the dura mater is the epidural space, which extends from the foramen magnum to the sacral hiatus and surrounds the dura mater anteriorly, laterally, and posteriorly. The epidural space is bound anteriorly by the posterior longitudinal ligament, laterally by the pedicles and intervertebral foramina, and posteriorly by the ligamentum flavum. Contents of the epidural space include the nerve roots and fat, areolar tissue, lymphatics, and blood vessels including the well-organized Batson venous plexus.

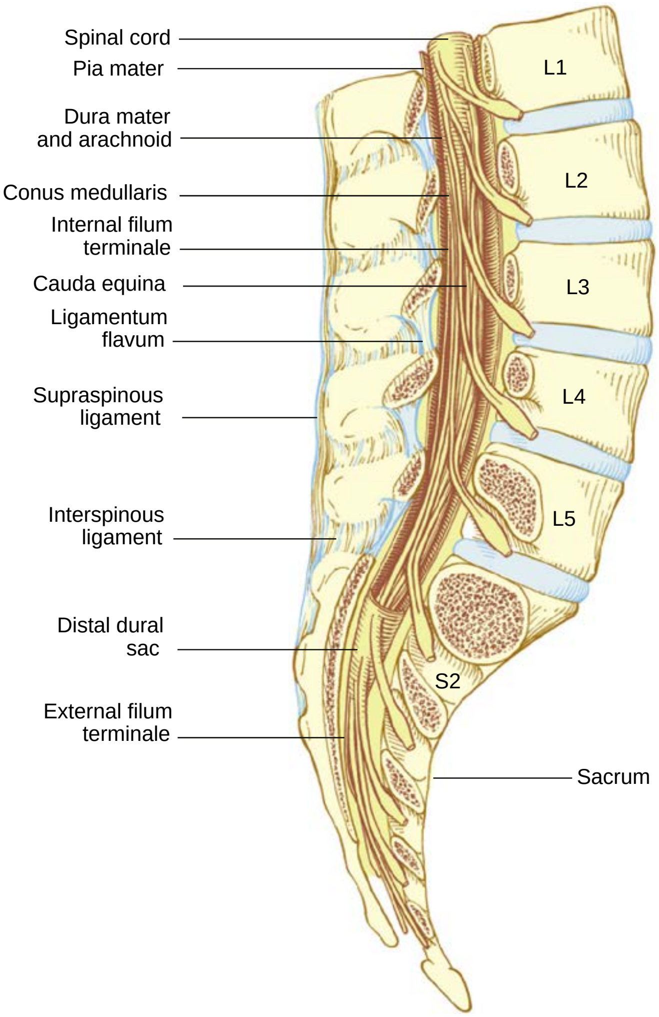


Fig. 45.1 Spinal cord anatomy. Notice the termination of the spinal cord (i.e., conus medullaris) at L1-L2 and termination of the dural sac at S2.

Posterior to the epidural space is the ligamentum flavum (the so-called yellow ligament), which extends from the foramen magnum to the sacral hiatus. Although classically portrayed as a single ligament, it is actually comprised of two ligamenta flava—the right and the left—which join in the middle and form an acute angle with a ventral opening (Fig. 45.2).[10,11] The ligamentum flavum is not uniform from skull to sacrum, nor even within an intervertebral space. Ligament thickness, distance to the dura, and skin-to-dura distance vary with the area of the vertebral canal. The vertebral canal is triangular and largest in area at the lumbar levels, and it is circular and smallest in area at the thoracic levels. The two ligamenta flava are variably joined (fused) in the midline, and this fusion or lack of fusion of the ligamenta flava occurs at different vertebral levels in individual patients.[10] Immediately posterior to the ligamentum flavum are the lamina and spinous processes of vertebral bodies or the interspinous ligaments. Extending from the external occipital protuberance to the coccyx posterior to these structures is the supraspinous ligament, which joins the vertebral spines (see Fig. 45.2).

There are 7 cervical vertebrae, 12 thoracic vertebrae, 5 lumbar vertebrae, and a sacrum. The vertebral arch, spinous process, pedicles, and laminae form the posterior

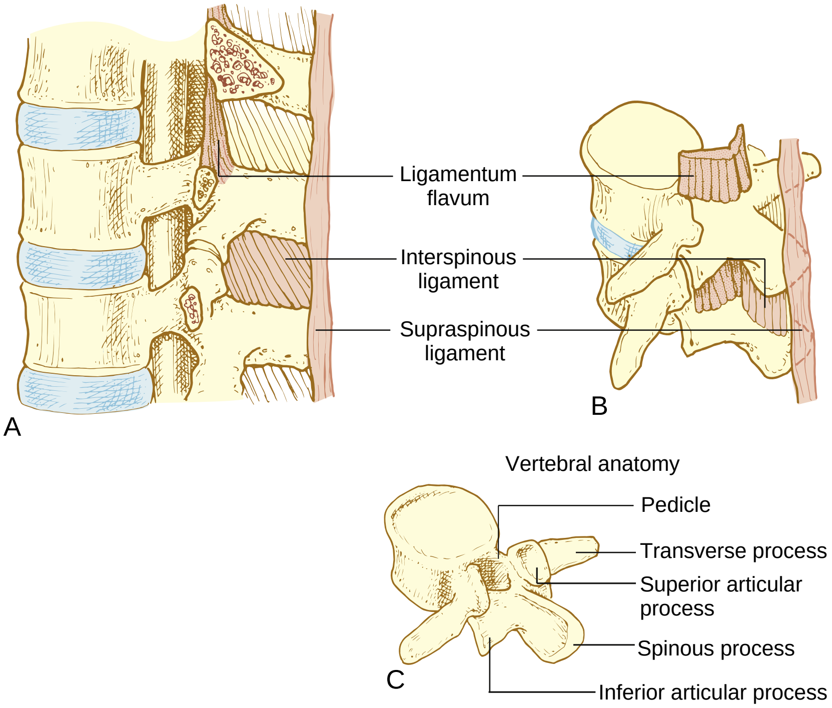


Fig. 45.2 Vertebral anatomy. (A) Sagittal view. (B) Oblique view of the lumbar vertebrae showing the ligamentum flavum thickening in the caudad extent of the intervertebral space and in the midline. (C) Oblique view of a single lumbar vertebra.

elements of the vertebra, and the vertebral body forms the anterior element. The vertebrae are joined together anteriorly by the fibrocartilaginous joints with the central disks containing the nucleus pulposus, and posteriorly by the zygapophyseal (facet) joints. The thoracic spinous process is angulated steeply caudad as opposed to the almost horizontal angulation of the lumbar spinous process. This is a clinically important distinction for needle insertion and advancement in the thoracic versus lumbar levels.

The sacral canal contains the terminal portion of the dural sac, which typically ends at S2. Variation is found in this feature as well, with the termination of the dural sac being lower in children. In addition to the dural sac, the sacral canal contains a venous plexus, which is part of the valveless internal vertebral venous plexus. The volume of the caudal canal in adults, excluding the foramina and dural sac ranges, is about 10 to 27 mL. Perhaps this wide variability in volume accounts for some of the variation in block height with caudal anesthesia (Fig. 45.3).[12]

BLOOD SUPPLY

Blood is supplied to the spinal cord from one anterior spinal artery (originating from the vertebral artery), two posterior spinal arteries (originating from the inferior cerebellar artery), and the segmental spinal arteries (originating from the intercostal and lumbar arteries).[13] The spinal arteries enter the spinal canal at each intervertebral foramen and give off branches to both the nerve roots and the medullary branches to the spinal cord; one of the major branches is the artery of Adamkiewicz, variably entering between T7 and L4 on the left, which supplies the lower thoracic and upper lumbar regions. The anterior two thirds of the spinal cord is supplied by the anterior arterial branches and the posterior one third by the posterior branches. The anterior and deep portion of the cord (gray matter) is most prone to ischemia (leading to anterior horn motor neuron injury, or anterior spinal syndrome) because there are fewer anterior medullary feeder vessels than posterior feeder vessels. Likewise, the midthoracic part of the spinal cord (from T3 to T9) is most at risk where segmental medullary feeder vessels are rare. Venous drainage of the spinal cord follows a similar distribution as the spinal arteries. There are three longitudinal anterior spinal veins and three posterior spinal veins that communicate with the segmental anterior and posterior radicular veins before draining into the internal vertebral venous plexus in the medial and lateral components of the epidural space. There are no veins in the posterior epidural space except those caudal to the L5-S1 disk.

Anatomic Variations

NERVE ROOTS

The spinal nerve roots are not uniform in size and structure. Specifically, Hogan and Toth[14,15] have shown that there is considerable interindividual variability in nerve root size. These differences may help to explain the interpatient differences in neuraxial block quality when equivalent techniques are used on seemingly similar patients. Another anatomic relationship may affect neuraxial blocks; although generally larger than the ventral (motor) roots, the dorsal (sensory) roots are often blocked more easily. This apparent paradox is explained by organization of the dorsal roots into component bundles, which creates a much larger surface area on which the local anesthetics act, possibly explaining why larger sensory nerves are blocked more easily than smaller motor nerves.[8]

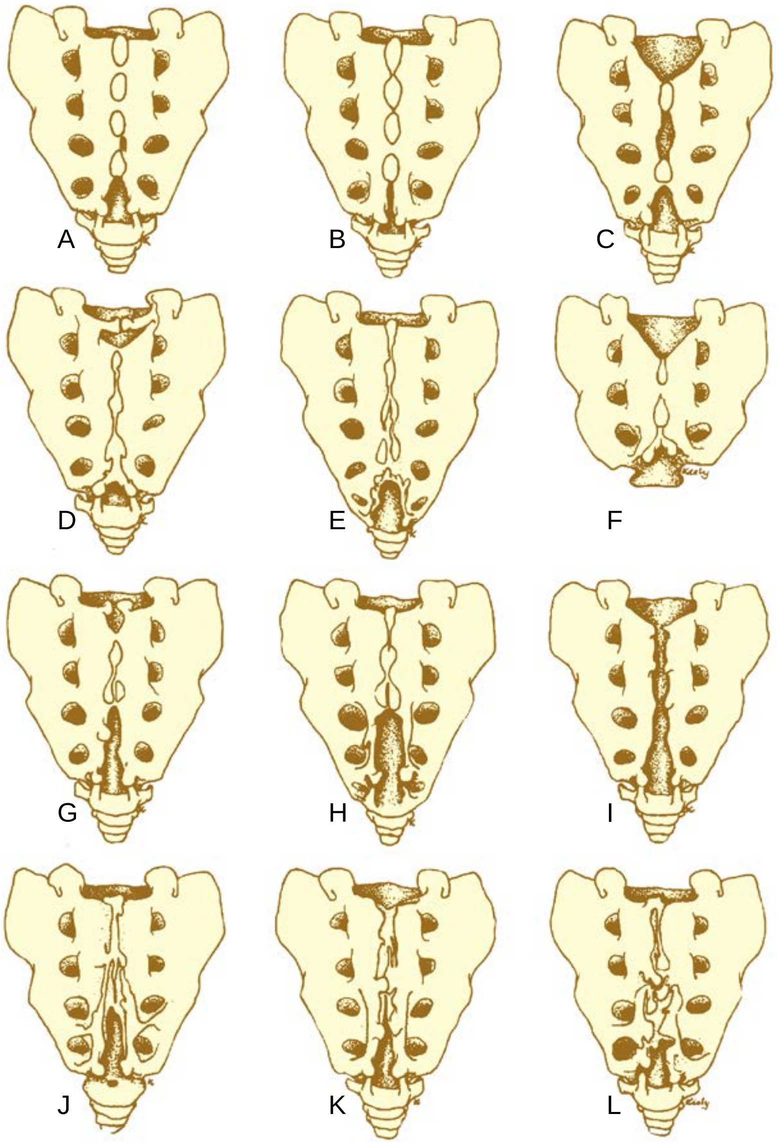


Fig. 45.3 Anatomic variants of the sacrum and sacral hiatus. (A) Normal. (B) Longitudinal slitlike hiatus. (C) Second midline hiatus. (D) Transverse hiatus. (E) Large hiatus with absent cornua. (F) Transverse hiatus with absent coccyx, two prominent cornua, and two proximal "decoy hiatuses lateral to the cornua." (G–I) Large midline defects contiguous with the sacral hiatus. (J–L) Enlarged longitudinal hiatuses, each with an overlying decoy hiatus. (From Willis RJ. Caudal epidural block. In: Cousins MN, Bridenbaugh PO, eds. *Neural blockade in clinical anesthesia and management of pain*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1988:365.)

CEREBROSPINAL FLUID

Lumbosacral CSF has a constant pressure of approximately 15 cm H_2O, but its volume varies by patient, in part because of differences in body habitus and weight.[16] It is estimated that CSF volume accounts for 80% of the variability in peak block height and regression of sensory and motor blockade. Nevertheless, except for body weight (less CSF in subjects with high body mass index [BMI]), the volume of CSF does not correlate with other anthropomorphic measurements available clinically.[17] (See section, Factors Affecting Block Height, later in the chapter.)

EPIDURAL SPACE

Hogan's[10] study of frozen cryomicrotome cadaver sections suggests that the epidural space is more segmented and less uniform than previously believed from indirect anatomic analysis. Another study by Hogan[18] has also shown in cadavers that the spread of solution after epidural injection into the tissues of the epidural space is nonuniform, and he postulated that this accounts for the clinical unpredictability of epidural drug spread. This lack of uniformity also extends to age-related differences. There is evidence that adipose tissue in the epidural space diminishes with age,[19] and this decrease in epidural space in adipose tissue may dominate the age-related changes in epidural dose requirements (see Chapter 65).

Mechanism of Action

Local anesthetic binding to nerve tissue disrupts nerve transmission, resulting in neural blockade. For spinal and epidural anesthesia, the target binding sites are located within the spinal cord (superficial and deep portions) and on the spinal nerve roots in the subarachnoid and epidural spaces. The spinal nerve roots and dorsal root ganglia are considered the most important sites of action. Nerves in the subarachnoid space are highly accessible and easily anesthetized, even with a small dose of local anesthetic, compared with the extradural nerves, which are often ensheathed by dura mater (the "dural sleeve"). The speed of neural blockade depends on the size, surface area, and degree of myelination of the nerve fibers exposed to the local anesthetic. Anatomic studies show that the S1 and L5 posterior roots are the largest and thus most resistant to blockade during epidural anesthesia.[15] Smaller nerves are more sensitive to the effects of local anesthetics because of their relatively high membrane surface area to axon unit volume ratio. For example, the small preganglionic sympathetic fibers (B fibers, 1-3 μm, minimally myelinated) are most sensitive to local anesthetic blockade. Among the sensory nerves, the C fibers (0.3-1 μm, unmyelinated), which conduct cold temperature sensation, are blocked more readily or earlier than the A-delta fibers (1-4 μm, myelinated), which conduct pinprick sensation. The A-beta fibers (5-12 μm, myelinated), which conduct touch sensation, are the last to be affected among the sensory fibers. The larger A-alpha motor fibers (12-20 μm, myelinated) are more resistant than any of the sensory fibers. Regression of blockade ("recovery") follows in the reverse order: motor function followed first by touch, then pinprick, and finally cold sensation.[20] Another manifestation of relative sensitivity or susceptibility to the effects of local anesthetics is the observed differences in the peak block height (highest or most cephalad level of anesthesia) according to each sensory modality, which is termed *differential sensory block*. For example, the level of anesthesia to cold sensation (also an approximate level of sympathetic blockade) is most cephalad and is on average one to two spinal segments higher than the level of pinprick anesthesia, which in turn is one to two segments higher than the level of touch anesthesia.[21]

DRUG UPTAKE

When local anesthetic is injected directly into the subarachnoid space during spinal anesthesia, it diffuses through the pia mater and penetrates through the spaces of Virchow-Robin (extensions of the subarachnoid space accompanying the blood vessels that invaginate the spinal cord from the pia mater) to reach the deeper dorsal root ganglia.[22] Furthermore, a portion of the subarachnoid drug diffuses outward through the arachnoid and dura mater to enter the epidural space,[23] whereas some is taken up by the blood vessels of the pia and dura maters.[24]

Drug penetration and uptake is directly proportionate to the drug mass, CSF drug concentration, contact surface area, lipid content (high in spinal cord and myelinated nerves), and local tissue vascular supply, but is inversely related to nerve root size. The concentration of local anesthetic in the CSF is highest at the site of subarachnoid injection in the case of spinal anesthesia (generally L2-L4 levels).

For epidural anesthesia, drug uptake is more complex. Some of the injected local anesthetic will move from the epidural space through the meninges into the CSF to exert its neural blocking effect, whereas some will be lost through vascular absorption into the capillary vessels and into the systemic circulation and uptake into epidural fat. The bioavailability of local anesthetics found in the CSF after epidural administration is low (<20%).

DRUG DISTRIBUTION

Diffusion is the primary mechanism of local anesthetic distribution in the CSF from areas of high concentration (i.e., at the site of injection) toward other segments of the spinal cord with low drug concentration.[25] Rostral spread after the administration of a small local anesthetic dose, often evident within 10 to 20 minutes, is related to the CSF circulation time. Longitudinal oscillations generated by the pulsations of the arteries in the skull are believed to be responsible for CSF bulk flow. This likely facilitates the cephalad distribution of local anesthetic from the lumbar subarachnoid space to the basal cisterns within 1 hour of injection.

Drug distribution in the epidural space is more complex, with possible contributions from one, some, or all of the following mechanisms: (1) crossing the dura mater into the subarachnoid space, (2) rostral and caudal (longitudinal) spread within the epidural space, (3) circumferential spread within the epidural space, (4) exit of the epidural space through the intervertebral foramina, (5) binding to epidural fat, and (6) vascular absorption into the epidural vessels. Longitudinal spread of local anesthetic by bulk flow within the epidural space may occur after the administration of a larger dose (i.e., volume). Factors that may enhance the distribution of local anesthetic within the epidural space are small caliber (greater spread in the thoracic space), increased epidural space compliance, decreased epidural fat content, decreased local anesthetic leakage through the intervertebral foramina (e.g., in the elderly and with spinal stenosis), and increased epidural pressure (e.g., pregnancy).[26] Drug is also preferentially distributed from areas of high to low concentration. Finally, the direction of drug spread varies with the vertebral level—that is, epidural spread is mostly cephalad in the lumbar region, caudad after a high thoracic injection, and spread mostly cephalad after a low thoracic njection.[26]

DRUG ELIMINATION

Regression of neural blockade results from a decline in the CSF drug concentration, which in turn is caused by nonneural tissue uptake and, most importantly, vascular absorption. Time for block regression is also inversely correlated with CSF volume.[27] Drug is absorbed by the vessels in the pia mater or the epidural vessels through back diffusion before entering the systemic circulation. No drug metabolism takes place in the CSF. The rate of elimination is also dependent on the distribution of local anesthetic; greater spread will expose the drug to a larger area for vascular absorption and thus a shorter duration of action. Lipid-soluble local anesthetics (e.g., bupivacaine) bind to epidural fat to form a depot that can slow vascular absorption.

Physiologic Effects

Safe conduct of spinal, epidural, and caudal anesthesia requires an appreciation of their physiologic effects. Neuraxial anesthesia evokes blockade of the sympathetic and somatic (sensory and motor) nervous systems, along with compensatory reflexes and unopposed parasympathetic activity.[28] The physiologic effects of epidural anesthesia are similar to those of spinal anesthesia, with the exception that local anesthetic blood levels reach concentrations sufficient enough to produce systemic effects on their own.

CARDIOVASCULAR

The effects of neuraxial blocks on blood pressure are similar in some ways to the combined use of intravenous α_1- and β-adrenergic blockers on cardiac output: decreased stroke volume and heart rate (see Chapter 14) caused by blockade of the peripheral (T1-L2) and cardiac (T1-T4) sympathetic fibers as well as adrenal medullary secretion. The decrease in arterial blood pressure is believed to be more gradual and of less magnitude with epidural than with spinal anesthesia of comparable sensory block levels. However, when tetracaine (10 mg) spinal anesthesia was compared with lidocaine (20-25 mL of a 1.5% solution) epidural anesthesia, there was a larger decrease in arterial blood pressure (approximately 10%) with the epidural technique than with the spinal anesthetic.[29] Of prime importance, the extent to which arterial blood pressure decreases with either technique depends on multiple factors, including patient age and intravascular volume status.

Stroke Volume

Sympathectomy usually decreases stroke volume. Venous and arterial vasodilation reduces preload (venous return) and afterload (systemic vascular resistance), respectively. Because of the large amount of blood that resides in the venous system (approximately 75% of the total blood volume), the venodilation effect predominates, owing to the limited amount of smooth muscle in venules; in contrast, the vascular smooth muscle on the arterial side of the circulation retains a considerable degree of autonomous tone. Cardiac output is thought to be either maintained or slightly decreased during the onset of spinal anesthesia. Yet a biphasic response, characterized by an early transient increase followed by an eventual decrease in cardiac output,[30] has been observed. This initial increase is caused by a greater magnitude of decline in the systemic vascular resistance than by venous return, especially in elderly patients with preexisting hypertension and high baseline systemic vascular resistance (also see Chapter 65).

The vasodilatory changes after neuraxial blockade that can affect cardiac output depend on each patient's baseline sympathetic tone (i.e., higher sympathetic tone in the elderly equates to a greater hemodynamic change) and the extent of the sympathectomy (i.e., the height of the block). The extent of the sympathectomy is typically described as extending for two to six dermatomes above the sensory block level with spinal anesthesia and at the same level with epidural anesthesia.[31] If normal cardiac output is maintained, systemic vascular resistance should decrease only 15% to 18% after neuraxial blockade in healthy normovolemic patients, even with nearly total sympathectomy. In elderly patients with cardiac disease, systemic vascular resistance may decrease almost 25% after spinal anesthesia, whereas cardiac output decreases only 10%.[32] Determination of baseline autonomic nervous system activity (e.g., blood pressure variability signaled by low-frequency band power and near-infrared spectroscopy reduction) has been found to predict the risk of hypotension in the elderly.[30]

Heart Rate

Heart rate may decrease during a high neuraxial block as a result of blockade of the cardioaccelerator fibers arising from T1 to T4.

Heart rate may also decrease in the presence of extensive peripheral sympathectomy (T5-L2), with venous pooling in the lower extremity and the abdominal and pelvic viscera. Although hypotension will trigger a compensatory baroreceptor sympathetic response (vasoconstriction and increased heart rate) above the level of blockade, the reduction in venous return and right atrial filling causes a decrease in signal output from intrinsic chronotropic stretch receptors located in the right atrium and great veins,[31] leading to a marked increase in parasympathetic activity (vagal tone). The two opposing responses are usually in check with a minimal change in heart rate (or a slight reduction). However, when neuraxial anesthesia is extended to the T1 level, blockade of the cardioaccelerator fibers in addition to a marked reduction in venous return may result in severe bradycardia and even asystole because of unopposed parasympathetic activity. However rare, the likelihood of cardiac arrest appears to be more likely in young, healthy, and conscious patients.[33] The Bezold-Jarisch reflex may be a possible cause of profound bradycardia and circulatory collapse after spinal anesthesia, especially in the presence of hypovolemia, when a small end-systolic left ventricular volume may trigger a mechanoreceptor-mediated bradycardia.[34]

Coronary Blood Flow

When coronary artery blood flow and myocardial metabolism were determined in humans during spinal anesthesia to T4 in hypertensive and normotensive patients, decreases in coronary blood flow (153 to 74 mL/100 g per minute) paralleled the decrease in mean arterial blood pressure (119 to 62 mm Hg), and the percent extraction of myocardial oxygen was unchanged (75% to 72%). Extraction of oxygen was unchanged because myocardial work, as expressed by myocardial use of oxygen, paralleled the decrease in mean arterial blood pressure and coronary blood flow (16 to 7.5 mL/100 g per minute).[35] A high thoracic block in patients with ischemic heart disease can be beneficial, with improvement in global and regional myocardial function and reversal of ischemic changes likely a result of reduced myocardial oxygen demand and left ventricular afterload.[36] Both infarction size and ischemia-induced arrhythmias improved in coronary occlusion experiments in animals, with no apparent vasodilatory effect on the coronary vessels.[37] These data support the observations by Stanley and coworkers[38] but still do not provide a patient-by-patient indication of the organ most at risk for flow-related ischemia.

Treatment

The clinical question of what level of decrease in arterial blood pressure after a neuraxial block is acceptable without a significant decrease in organ perfusion (e.g., brain, liver, gut) remains to be answered, although some human and animal data are available (see respective sections). Once arterial blood pressure decreases to a level at which treatment is believed to be necessary, ephedrine, a mixed adrenergic agonist, provides more appropriate therapy for the noncardiac circulatory sequelae of neuraxial block than does a pure α-adrenergic agonist (see Chapter 14), unless the patient has a specific and defined arterial blood pressure requirement.[39]

That the decrease in arterial blood pressure after neuraxial block can be minimized by the administration of crystalloids intravenously is probably not a valid concept. Specifically, 250- to 2000-mL preblock hydration regimens may temporarily increase preload and cardiac output but do not consistently increase arterial blood pressure or prevent hypotension.[8] Useful techniques to prevent hypotension include the repeated low-dose local anesthetic boluses through a continuous spinal catheter,[40] small-dose unilateral spinal anesthesia, and selective small-dose spinal anesthesia.

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

Spinal anesthesia–induced hypotension may decrease regional cerebral blood flow (CBF) in elderly patients and those with preexisting hypertension. In a study of elderly patients who had hypotension during bupivacaine spinal anesthesia, Minville and colleagues demonstrated a significant but transient decrease of middle cerebral artery blood flow velocity and an increase in cerebral vascular resistance, both of which suggest a decrease in cerebral perfusion.[41] There was no change in cognitive function after surgery in any of these patients. Both CBF and velocity decline as a result of changes in the cerebral vasculature, especially in the elderly. Whether cerebral autoregulation is impaired in the elderly is still debatable (see Chapter 65).

Kety and colleagues[42] demonstrated that producing spinal anesthesia to the midthoracic levels with procaine, even in patients with essential hypertension, results in a decrease in mean arterial blood pressure of 26% (155 to 115 mm Hg) accompanied by a 12% (52 to 46 mL/100 g per minute) decrease in CBF. When the level of spinal anesthesia was purposely increased to produce higher levels of block (T4) in normotensive and hypertensive patients, CBF was unchanged in the normotensive group (45-46 mL/100 g per minute), whereas a 19% decrease occurred in the apparently untreated hypertensive patients (46.5-37.5 mL/100 g per minute).[43]

RESPIRATORY

Alterations in pulmonary variables in healthy and even in elderly patients during neuraxial block are usually of little clinical consequence.[44] A decrease in vital capacity follows a reduction in expiratory reserve volume related to paralysis of the abdominal muscles necessary for forced exhalation rather than a decrease in phrenic or diaphragmatic function.[45] Blockade of the intercostal and abdominal muscles during neuraxial anesthesia is adequately compensated by unaltered function of the diaphragm and other accessory respiratory muscles (e.g., sternomastoid, scalenes), especially for forceful inspiration and expiration.[46] Nonetheless, neuraxial block should be used cautiously in the setting of severe respiratory disease because paralysis of the intercostal and abdominal muscles is common. However rare, respiratory arrest associated with spinal anesthesia is often unrelated to phrenic or inspiratory dysfunction but rather to hypoperfusion of the respiratory centers in the brainstem. Supportive evidence for this concept is observed after resuscitation, when apnea almost always disappears as soon as pharmacologic and intravascular fluid therapies have restored cardiac output and arterial blood pressure.

Pregnancy

In young healthy pregnant women undergoing cesarean delivery, spinal bupivacaine, ropivacaine, and levobupivacaine affect pulmonary function minimally (a reduction of 3% to 6% for forced vital capacity and 6% to 13% for peak expiratory flow rate), irrespective of the peak sensory block level.[47] However, in overweight pregnant women, vital capacity declines even more (24% vs. 11%) and recovers more slowly compared with normal-weight pregnant women after hyperbaric spinal bupivacaine administration (see also Chapter 62).[48]

Obesity (also see Chapter 58)

The impact of spinal anesthesia on lung volume variables is significantly reduced compared with general anesthesia[49] but is significantly more in overweight patients than in normal-weight patients.[48] The magnitude of decline in vital capacity is proportional to the BMI value (vital capacity 19% for BMI 30–40 kg/m^2 vs. 33% for BMI >40 kg/m^2).[50] Importantly, however, for obese patients undergoing laparotomy surgery, thoracic epidural anesthesia (TEA) lessens the extent of decline in postoperative vital capacity and hastens recovery when compared with parenterally administered opioids.[49]

GASTROINTESTINAL

Neuraxial blockade from T6 to L1 disrupts splanchnic sympathetic innervation to the gastrointestinal tract, resulting in a contracted gut and hyperperistalsis. Nausea and vomiting may be associated with neuraxial block in as much as 20% of patients and they are primarily related to gastrointestinal hyperperistalsis caused by unopposed parasympathetic (vagal) activity.[51] Atropine is effective in treating nausea associated with high (T5) subarachnoid anesthesia.[52]

TEA has a direct blood pressure–dependent effect on intestinal perfusion.[53] TEA improves anastomotic mucosal blood flow in patients undergoing esophagectomy when mean arterial blood pressure is minimally altered but worsens local perfusion when arterial blood pressure is decreased by about 50%. In colorectal surgery, TEA decreases anastomotic blood flow but improves gastric and transverse colonic blood flow.[54] Correction of systemic hypotension by vasopressor therapy (e.g., norepinephrine) has been found to reverse impaired colonic perfusion. TEA may also reduce the rate of anastomotic leak after emergency laparotomy, esophageal surgery,[55] and other gastrointestinal interventions.[56]

A reduction in hepatic blood flow parallels the reduction in mean systemic arterial pressure in the setting of spinal anesthesia.[57] Although lumbar epidural anesthesia also results in a decline in hepatic perfusion despite colloid preloading in young and elderly patients, hepatic perfusion can increase, though mildly (<10%), with TEA after major abdominal surgery.[57]

RENAL

Despite a predictable decrease in renal blood flow accompanying neuraxial blockade, this decrease is of little physiologic importance.[58,59] One aspect of genitourinary function of clinical importance is the belief that neuraxial blocks are a frequent cause of urinary retention, which delays discharge of outpatients and necessitates bladder catheterization in inpatients (see section Complications–Urinary Retention, later in the chapter). However, this belief is questionable. For example, in orthopedic patients undergoing hip replacement, bladder catheterization was no more frequent after spinal or epidural anesthesia than it was after general anesthesia and opioid analgesics. In any case, excessive volumes of intravenous crystalloid solutions should not be given to patients undergoing spinal anesthesia. The requirement for voiding before discharge in low-risk ambulatory surgery patients after short-acting spinal or epidural anesthetics should be encouraged.[60]

Indications

At the most basic level, neuraxial blockade is indicated when the surgical procedure can be accomplished with a sensory level of anesthesia that does not produce adverse patient outcomes. The level of anesthesia or analgesia required is of prime importance because the physiologic effects of a high-level block may be untenable.

NEURAXIAL ANESTHESIA

When considering neuraxial anesthesia, the nature and duration of surgery, patient comorbidities, the ease of spinal insertion (i.e., positioning and spinal pathology), and the relative benefits and risks to the individual are important. Spinal anesthesia is most commonly used for patients who require surgical anesthesia for procedures of known duration that involve the lower extremities, perineum, pelvic girdle, or lower abdomen. Descriptions of spinal anesthesia as the primary surgical anesthetic have more recently expanded to include lumbar spine surgery,[61] as well as upper abdominal procedures, such as laparoscopic cholecystectomy.[62] Spinal anesthesia may be useful when patients wish to remain conscious or when comorbidities such as severe respiratory disease or a difficult airway increase the risks of using general anesthesia. Epidural anesthesia can also be used for the lower extremities, perineum, pelvic girdle, or lower abdomen, but by virtue of intermittent or continuous catheter-based local anesthetic delivery, the duration of surgical anesthesia is not necessarily finite as it is with single-injection spinal anesthesia. Continuous catheter-based spinal anesthesia is both less conventional and less commonly used than either single-shot spinal anesthesia or catheter-based epidural anesthesia, but may be especially useful when insertion of an epidural catheter is challenging[63] or in the setting of severe cardiac disease when the reliability of a single-shot spinal anesthetic must be combined with more hemodynamically stable incremental dosing.

NEURAXIAL ANALGESIA

Local anesthetics (as well as other additives, discussed later) applied to the neuraxis in subanesthetic doses can provide potent, long-lasting analgesia for a variety of indications, including intraoperative analgesia, acute postsurgical pain,[64] and severe chronic pain associated with malignancy. The use of intrathecal and/or epidural opioids either alone or in combination with local anesthetics can provide excellent quality pain relief[65,66,66a] and are an analgesic mainstay in labor and delivery,[67,68] during and after hip[69] or knee replacement,[70] in laparotomy,[71] in thoracotomy,[72] and increasingly even in cardiac surgery.[73,74] Some of the most important benefits of epidural analgesia are realized in patients with preexisting respiratory disease undergoing abdominal surgery.[75] Neuraxial analgesia may have other beneficial outcomes beyond analgesia and these are reviewed later.

Contraindications

ABSOLUTE

There are few absolute contraindications to neuraxial blockade. Some of the most important include patient refusal, localized sepsis, and an allergy to any of the drugs planned for administration. A patient's inability to maintain stillness during needle puncture, which can expose the neural structures to traumatic injury,[76] as well as raised intracranial pressure, which may theoretically predispose to brainstem herniation,[77] should also be considered absolute contraindications to a neuraxial technique.

RELATIVE

Relative contraindications must be weighed against the potential benefits of neuraxial blockade. Relative contraindications can be approached by system.

Neurologic

Myelopathy or Peripheral Neuropathy. A preexisting neurologic deficit can in theory worsen the extent of any injury in this group of patients (so-called double-crush phenomenon). While many reports suggest central neuraxial techniques may be used safely, there is no definitive evidence.[76,78-80] Chronic low back pain without neurologic deficit is not a contraindication to neuraxial blockade. The association between neuraxial techniques and the exacerbation of back pain symptoms is not documented.

Spinal Stenosis. Patients with spinal stenosis appear to be at increased risk of neurologic complications after neuraxial blockade,[81] but the relative contribution of surgical factors and natural history of the spinal pathology itself is unknown. Using a lower mass of local anesthetic may in theory reduce the risk if spinal anesthesia is undertaken in the setting of spinal stenosis.

Spine Surgery. Previous spine surgery does not predispose patients to an increased risk of neurologic complications after neuraxial blockade.[81,82] However, depending on postsurgical anatomy and the presence of scar tissue, adhesions, hardware, and/or bone grafts, needle access to the CSF, or epidural space and/or epidural catheter insertion may be challenging or impossible. In addition, the resultant spread of local anesthetic in the CSF or epidural space can be unpredictable and incomplete.

Multiple Sclerosis. Patients with multiple sclerosis (MS) may be more sensitive to neuraxial local anesthetics and thus exhibit a prolonged duration of motor and sensory blockade; however, any association between neuraxial anesthesia and exacerbation of MS symptoms is not based in evidence.[83,84] Given that demyelinated fibers may be more prone to the toxic effects of local anesthetics, it is prudent to use a lower dose and concentration of spinal local anesthetic in this group of patients, or else consider epidural rather than spinal anesthesia.

Spina Bifida. Spina bifida comprises a wide spectrum of congenital spinal cord malformations. Depending on the severity of the neural tube defect, patients with spina bifida may have a tethered cord and the ligamentum flavum may be absent, thereby increasing the potential for traumatic needle injury to the spinal cord. In patients who have undergone repair of open spinal dysraphisms, the spread of local anesthetic in the CSF and epidural space (if present) can be highly variable. Neuraxial techniques have been successfully used in isolated spina bifida occulta patients, but are not advised in the setting of severe neural tube defects such as diastematomyelia or tethered cord.

If, after consideration of risks and benefits, a neuraxial technique is to be undertaken in a patient with a neural tube defect, a careful clinical and radiologic evaluation of neurologic status must first be undertaken and noted along with documentation of the discussion of the risks and benefits.

Cardiac (also see Chapter 54)

Aortic Stenosis or Fixed Cardiac Output. The unpredictable speed and extent to which systemic vascular resistance is reduced after spinal anesthesia may cause many providers to avoid spinal anesthesia in preload-dependent patients and try to prevent a dangerous decrease in coronary perfusion. This concern is borne of theoretic risk and a great deal of caution rather than evidence.[85] Clinical practice mandates that neuraxial anesthesia be considered individually for each patient with aortic stenosis in the context of their own disease severity, left ventricular function, and case urgency. A catheter-based neuraxial anesthetic, whether it is an epidural or intrathecal catheter, allows for the repeated administration of small doses of local anesthetic, with potentially more control over hemodynamic changes, and may be a logical alternative choice.

Hypovolemia. An extension of patients who are preload-dependent, hypovolemic patients may exhibit an exaggerated hypotensive response to the vasodilatory effects of neuraxial blockade.

Hematologic

Thromboprophylaxis. Borne of the catastrophic cases of spinal hematoma causing paralysis associated with the introduction and use of LMWH in the United States (US FDA public health advisory: reports of epidural or spinal hematomas with the concurrent use of low molecular weight heparin and spinal/epidural anesthesia or spinal puncture. US Department of Health and Human Resources, 1997), the American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine (ASRA) first published a practice advisory to guide the provision of neuraxial techniques in patients receiving antithrombotic or thrombolytic therapy in 2004. Now in its fourth iteration and addressing a myriad of novel potent oral anticoagulants, the ASRA practice advisory[6] is an invaluable resource for providers performing neuraxial techniques in this challenging and ever-growing patient population. A summary of the ASRA guidelines[1] is reproduced in Table 45.1.

Inherited Coagulopathy. The safety of neuraxial techniques in patients with common bleeding diatheses is not well documented. Hemorrhagic complications after neuraxial techniques in patients with known hemophilia, von Willebrand disease, or idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura appear infrequently when factor levels are more than 0.5 IU/mL for factor VIII, von Willebrand factor, and ristocetin cofactor activity, or when the platelet count is greater than 50×10^9/L[1] before block performance.[86] The minimum safe factor levels and platelet count for neuraxial blockade, however, remain undefined in both the obstetric and general populations.[86]

Infection

Theoretic concerns based on animal data and laboratory and case reports in humans[87-89] suggest iatrogenic seeding of the neuraxis in the setting of a systemic infection. Some providers avoid neuraxial techniques in febrile patients. A definitive causative relationship between existing systemic infection and meningitis or epidural abscess after a neuraxial technique has never been shown. In fact, a lumbar puncture is a critical component of the investigation of fever of unknown origin, yet there are no definitive data linking lumbar puncture to increased risk of neuraxial infection in this setting.[90] Although the profound vasodilation may be sufficient reason to avoid neuraxial techniques in patients with profound bacteremia or septic shock, the theoretic risk of seeding the intrathecal or epidural spaces by performing neuraxial techniques in patients with untreated systemic infection further supports using another technique. Yet patients with evidence of systematic infection may safely undergo neuraxial anesthesia once antibiotic therapy has been initiated and the patient has demonstrated a response to the antibiotics.[90]

Spinal Anesthesia

FACTORS AFFECTING BLOCK HEIGHT

The dermatomal level required for various surgical procedures is outlined in Table 45.2. The provider must recall that intraabdominal structures such as the peritoneum (T4), bladder (T10), and uterus (T10) have a spinal segment innervation that may be much more cephalad compared with that of the corresponding skin incision used to operate on these structures.

Drug, patient, and procedural factors can all affect the distribution of local anesthetic spread within the intrathecal space, some of which are more clinically relevant than others.[25,91] Many of these factors are not controllable by the anesthesiologist, leading to significant interpatient variability (Table 45.3).

TABLE 45.1 ASRA Evidence-Based Guidelines for Neuraxial Anesthesia in the Patient Receiving Thromboprophylaxis

DRUG	NEURAXIAL NEEDLE/CATHETER PLACEMENT			NEURAXIAL CATHETER REMOVAL		COMMENTS
	Discontinuation prior to placement	**Restart following needle placement**	**Indwelling catheter placement**	**Discontinuation prior to removal**	**Restart following removal**	
Antiplatelet agents						
Aspirin	*Safe for all categories*					
NSAIDs	*Safe for all categories but caution with concomitant drugs that may affect coagulation*					
Clopidogrel	5-7 d	Immediately *If loading dose*: 6 h	Catheters may be maintained for 1-2 days after restarting Clopidogrel or Ticlodipine		Immediately *If loading dose*: 6 h	
Ticlodipine	10 d					
Prasugrel	7-10 d		Avoid catheters			
Ticagrelor	5-7 d					
Dipyridamole	24 h	6 h	Avoid catheters		6 h	
GP IIa/IIIb inhibitors Abciximab Eptifibatide Tirofiban	*Avoid until platelet function returns to normal*	*These drugs are generally contraindicated for 4 weeks post surgery*				
Unfractionated Heparin						
Intravenous	4-6 h and confirm normal coagulation	1 h	Safe	4-6 h and confirm normal coagulation	1 h	*Check platelet count before needle placement or catheter removal if duration of LMWH > 4 d*
Subcutaneous						
Low-dose prophylaxis	4-6 h or confirm normal coagulation		Safe	4-6 h and confirm normal coagulation		*5,000 U SC bid or tid*
Higher-dose prophylaxis	12 h and confirm normal coagulation	1 h	Safety of catheters not established		1 h	*7,500-10,000 U SC bid or ≤20,000 U/d*
Therapeutic	24 h and confirm normal coagulation		Avoid catheters			*>10,000 U SC/dose or >20,000 U/d*
Low molecular weight heparin						
Once daily prophylaxis	12 h	12 h	Safe	12 h	4 h	*Check platelet count before needle placement or catheter removal if duration of LMWH > 4 d*
Twice daily prophylaxis			Avoid catheters			
Therapeutic dose	24 h	24 - 72 h	Avoid catheters			
Oral anticoagulants						
Coumarins	Ideally 5 d and INR <1.5	No delay	Monitor INR daily and check sensory/motor function routinely	INR < 1.5	No delay	
Apixaban	72 h	6 h	Avoid catheters		6 h	*Refer to ASRA guidelines if unanticipated indwelling catheter*
Rivaroxaban		6 h				

Abbreviations: bid=twice a day, tid=three times a day, d=day(s), h=hour(s), SC=subcutaneous, U=unit(s). *Reg Anes Pain Med* 2018; 43: 263-309.

Drug Factors

The adjustable factors for any given local anesthetic solution are dose, volume, concentration, temperature, and baricity. Baricity and dose are most important.

Baricity. Baricity is the ratio of the density of a local anesthetic solution to the density of CSF. Density is defined as the mass per unit volume of solution (g/mL) at a specific temperature. Density may be compared between different substances by calculating the specific gravity, which is the ratio of the density of a solution to the density of water. Because density varies inversely with temperature, the baricity of a local anesthetic solution is conventionally defined at 37°C. The density of CSF is 1.00059 g/L.[92] Local anesthetic solutions that have the same density as CSF are termed *isobaric*, those that have a higher density than CSF are termed *hyperbaric*, and those with a lower density than CSF are termed *hypobaric*. The spread of hyperbaric solutions is more predictable,[93] with less interpatient variability.[94] To make a drug hyperbaric to CSF, it must be denser than CSF, with a baricity appreciably more than 1.0000 or a density appreciably more than 1.00059. The reverse is true for making a drug hypobaric to the CSF. Dextrose and sterile water are commonly added to render local anesthetic solutions either hyperbaric or hypobaric, respectively. The clinical importance of baricity is the ability to influence the distribution of local anesthetic spread based on gravity. Hyperbaric solutions will preferentially spread to the dependent regions of the spinal canal, whereas hypobaric solutions will spread to nondependent regions. Isobaric solutions tend not to be influenced by gravitational forces.[95] Anesthesiologists can capitalize on this phenomenon by altering the position of the patient. For example, the administration of hyperbaric local anesthetic to patients in the lateral decubitus position will result in a preferential anesthetic effect on the dependent side, whereas the opposite is true for the administration of a hypobaric solution. A thoughtful understanding of the natural curvatures of the vertebral column can help predict local anesthetic spread in patients placed in the horizontal supine position immediately after intrathecal administration. Hyperbaric local anesthetics injected, while sitting, at the L3-L4 or L4-L5 interspace will spread with gravity from the height of the lumbar lordosis down toward the trough of the thoracic kyphosis in the horizontal supine position, resulting in a higher level of anesthetic effect than isobaric or hypobaric solutions.[91] Hyperbaric solutions are also useful in small doses for a saddle block and to achieve unilateral anesthesia. CSF and local anesthetic density change with temperature. Plain bupivacaine 0.5%, for example, may be isobaric at 24°C but is slightly hypobaric at 37°C. A small volume of drug at room temperature injected intrathecally quickly equilibrates after injection and increases to the temperature of the CSF. Nevertheless, increasing temperature decreases density of a solution and warming of local anesthetic solution to body temperature, therefore making it more hypobaric, increases the block height in patients who remain seated for several minutes after injection.[96]

TABLE 45.2 Dermatomal Level Required for Various Common Surgical Procedures

Type of Surgery	Dermatomal Level
Upper abdominal surgery	T4
Cesarean delivery	T4
Transurethral resection of prostate	T10
Hip surgery	T10
Foot and ankle surgery	L2

Dose, Volume, and Concentration. The dose, volume, and concentration are inextricably linked (Volume × Concentration = Dose), but dose is the most reliable determinant of local anesthetic spread (and thus block height) when compared with either volume or concentration for isobaric and hypobaric local anesthetic solutions.[97,98] Hyperbaric local anesthetic injections are primarily influenced by baricity.

The choice of local anesthetic itself does not influence spread if all other factors are controlled. Additive drugs, other than opioids, also do not affect spread. However, opioids do seem to increase mean spread,[91,99] possibly as a result of pharmacologic enhancement at the extremes of the spread where the local anesthetic block alone would have been subclinical.[100,101]

TABLE 45.3 Factors Affecting Local Anesthetic Distribution and Block Height

	More Important	Less Important	Not Important
Drug factors	Dose Baricity	Volume Concentration Temperature of injection Viscosity	Additives other than opioids
Patient factors	CSF volume Advanced age Pregnancy	Weight Height Spinal anatomy Intraabdominal pressure	Menopause Gender
Procedure factors	Patient position Epidural injection post spinal	Level of injection (hypobaric more than hyperbaric) Fluid currents Needle orifice direction Needle type	

CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid. Modified from Greene NM. Distribution of local anesthetic solutions within the subarachnoid space. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64(7):715–730.

Patient Factors

Patient characteristics that may influence block height include patient height, weight, age, sex, pregnancy, anatomic configuration of the spine, and the CSF properties (volume and composition). Within the range of "normal-sized" adults, patient height does not seem to affect the spread of spinal anesthesia. This is likely because the length of the lower limb bones rather than the vertebral column contributes most to adult height. A correlation has been found between the vertebral column length and local anesthetic spread[102] and, at extremes of height, consideration should be given to altering the dose accordingly.

The CSF volume is an important patient-related factor that significantly influences peak block height and regression of sensory and motor blockade.[17] Lumbosacral CSF has a fairly constant pressure of approximately 15 cm H_2O but its volume varies from patient to patient, in part because of differences in body habitus and weight.[16] In a small sample of patients, block height varied indirectly with CSF volume.[17] Unfortunately, CSF volume does not correlate well with anthropomorphic measurements available clinically other than body weight.[17] In theory, the increased abdominal mass in obese patients, and possible increased epidural fat, may decrease the CSF volume and therefore increase the spread of local anesthetic and block height. This has indeed been demonstrated using hypobaric solutions,[103,104] which are characterized by more variable spread anyway, but not hyperbaric solutions (see Chapter 58).[103,105]

CSF density can also vary between and within individuals depending on sex, menopausal status, and pregnancy (see Chapter 62).[92] The density of CSF is lower in women compared with men, premenopausal compared with postmenopausal women, and pregnant compared with nonpregnant women. Although this may affect relative baricity of local anesthetics, the clinical variation in spread is probably unimportant.

Advanced age is associated with increased block height (see Chapter 65).[106,107] In older patients, CSF volume decreases, whereas its specific gravity increases. Further, the nerve roots appear more sensitive to local anesthetic in the aged population.

Gender can theoretically affect block height by several mechanisms. CSF density is higher in males, thereby reducing the baricity of local anesthetic solution and possibly limiting the extent of cephalad spread. In the lateral position, the broader shoulders of males relative to their hips make the lateral position slightly more head-up. The reverse is true in females who have a slightly head-down tilt in the lateral position compared with males. Despite this, there is little objective data that males have a slightly less cephalad spread than females in the lateral position.

Variations of the spine may be an important contributor to block height. Scoliosis, although it possibly makes insertion of the needle more difficult, will have little effect on local anesthetic spread if the patient is turned supine. Kyphosis, however, in a supine patient may affect the spread of a hyperbaric solution. Spread of local anesthetic is enhanced by changes in the lumbar lordosis during pregnancy, as well as by the volume and density of CSF, by twin pregnancies compared with singletons, by intraabdominal pressure increases (possibly), and by a progesterone-mediated increase in neuronal sensitivity.

Procedure Factors

Patient position, needle type and alignment, and the level of injection are each procedure-related factors that can affect block height. Combined with the baricity and local anesthetic dose, patient position is the most important factor in determining the block height. Position should not affect the spread of a truly isobaric solution.[95] Intrathecal local anesthetic appears to stop spreading 20 to 25 minutes after injection, thus positioning of the patient is most important during this time period, but particularly in the initial few minutes. However, marked changes in patient posture up to two hours after injection can still result in significant changes in the block level, probably because of bulk movement of CSF.[108,109] Although a 10-degree head-up tilt can reduce the spread of hyperbaric solutions without hemodynamic compromise,[110] a head-down tilt does not always increase the spread of hyperbaric bupivacaine.[111] Flexion of the hips in combination with the Trendelenburg position flattens the lumbar lordosis and has been shown to increase cephalad spread of hyperbaric solutions.[112] A "saddle block" where only the sacral nerve roots are anesthetized can be achieved by using a small dose of hyperbaric local anesthetic while the patient remains in the sitting position for up to 30 minutes. When larger hyperbaric doses are administered, however, the block can still extend cephalad despite maintaining the sitting position for a prolonged period of time.[113] The reverse holds true for hypobaric solutions, where block height is greater (than hyperbaric solutions) if they are administered in a sitting position.[114]

The specific needle type and orientation of the orifice may affect block quality. With hypobaric solutions, cephalad alignment of the orifice of Whitacre, but not Sprotte, needles produces greater spread.[115-117] The orientation of the needle orifice does not appear to affect the spread of hyperbaric solutions. When directing the needle orifice to one side (and using hyperbaric anesthetic), a more marked unilateral block is achieved again when using a Whitacre, rather than a Quincke, needle.[118]

The level of injection affects block height. Most studies have demonstrated that, even when the difference is only one interspace more cephalad, the block height is greater[119-122] when using isobaric bupivacaine. The level of injection does not appear to influence the spread of hyperbaric solutions.[123,124] Injection rate and barbotage (repeated aspiration and reinjection of CSF) of isobaric and hyperbaric solutions have not consistently been shown to affect block height.[91] A slower injection may actually increase spread, and this is perhaps also safer because forceful injection may cause the syringe to disconnect from the needle. Other maneuvers that do not appear to affect block height are coughing and straining after local anesthetic injection. This is related to the physics of injecting drugs into a closed column of CSF, which instantaneously transmits pressure changes throughout the CSF column, such as those that occur with coughing or straining.[25] The injection of local anesthetic or even saline into the epidural space after a spinal anesthetic increases the block height. This is discussed separately in the combined spinal-epidural (CSE) section.

DURATION

The duration of a spinal anesthetic depends on how this variable is defined. For example, the duration of surgical anesthesia is less than the time for complete block resolution. In addition, surgical anesthesia depends on the surgical site because anesthesia is more prolonged at the lower lumbar and sacral levels than at those more cephalad from where the block regresses first. Duration is affected primarily by the dose,[97,125] the intrinsic properties of the local anesthetic (which affect elimination from the subarachnoid space), and the use of additives (if applicable). The latter two are described later. Hyperbaric solutions have a shorter duration of action than isobaric solutions.[125]

PHARMACOLOGY

The clinical effects of intrathecal local anesthetics are mediated by drug uptake and distribution within the CSF and elimination. These in turn are dictated in part by the p*K*a, lipid solubility, and protein binding of the local anesthetic solution. Rather than their pharmacologic structure (i.e., amide or ester), it is the duration of action—short-acting (i.e., procaine, chloroprocaine, articaine), intermediate-acting (i.e., lidocaine, prilocaine, mepivacaine), and long-acting (i.e., tetracaine, bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, ropivacaine)—that is most often used to classify local anesthetics in the clinical setting. The choice and dose of local anesthetic depend on both the expected duration and the nature (location, ambulatory) of surgery. Table 45.4 shows a range of local anesthetics used for spinal anesthesia with corresponding doses, onset times, and durations of action.[126-134]

Short- and Intermediate-Acting Local Anesthetics

Procaine. Procaine is a short-acting ester local anesthetic and one of the oldest spinal anesthetics, having originally replaced cocaine as the drug of choice for spinal anesthesia in the early 20th century. Procaine itself was then replaced by lidocaine, but with concerns about lidocaine and transient neurologic symptoms (TNS), procaine has recently been reexamined as an alternative fast-acting local anesthetic. However, it is not commonly used because of a more frequent failure rate than lidocaine, significantly more nausea, and a slower time to recovery.[135] If used, it is often administered as a hyperbaric drug in a dose ranging between 50 and 200 mg in a 10% concentration.

Chloroprocaine. Chloroprocaine is an ultra–short-acting ester local anesthetic that was introduced in the 1950s. Its initial popularity stemmed from its rapid metabolism by pseudocholinesterase, which translated into minimal systemic or fetal effects in the setting of epidural labor analgesia. However, its reputation as a spinal anesthetic has been tarnished because of reports of neurologic injury associated with the preservative once used in older preparations of the drug (see Complications, discussed later).[136-139] Recently, interest in chloroprocaine has increased for use in spinal anesthesia for ambulatory surgery (see Chapter 72). Modern, preservative-free preparations of chloroprocaine administered in small doses (30-60 mg) produce reliable, short-duration spinal anesthesia,[126] with a faster recovery time than procaine, lidocaine, and bupivacaine.[140-144] TNS can occur with modern chloroprocaine preparations, albeit at a considerably lesser rate (0.6%) than lidocaine (14%).[145-147]

Articaine. Articaine is a relatively novel amide local anesthetic that also has an ester linkage. The ester linkage allows for metabolism by nonspecific cholinesterases. It has been widely used since 1973 for dental nerve blocks with a good safety profile. Intrathecal articaine has not been extensively investigated, but studies do suggest that doses of 50 to 80 mg with or without glucose appear to provide rapid-onset spinal anesthesia for about 1 hour, with a recovery profile faster than bupivacaine.[148,149]

Lidocaine. Lidocaine is a hydrophilic, relatively poorly protein-bound amide local anesthetic. It has a rapid onset

TABLE 45.4 Dose, Block Height, Onset Times, and Duration of Commonly Used Spinal Anesthetics

	DOSE (MG)		DURATION (MIN)		
Local Anesthetic Mixture	**To T10**	**To T4**	**Plain**	**Epinephrine (0.2 mg)**	**Onset (min)**
Lidocaine 5% (with/without dextrose)[*]	40-75	75-100	60-150[†]	20%-50%	3-5
Mepivacaine 1.5% (no dextrose)	30-45[‡]	60-80[§]	120-180[¶¶]	—	2-4
Chloroprocaine 3% (with/without dextrose)	30-40	40-60	40-90[¶]	N/R	2-4
Bupivacaine 0.5%-0.75% (no dextrose)	10-15	12-20	130-230[#]	20%-50%	4-8
Levobupivacaine 0.5% (no dextrose)	10-15	12-20	140-230[#]	—	4-8
Ropivacaine 0.5%-1% (with/without dextrose)	12-18	18-25	80-210[**]	—	3-8

[*] Lidocaine is not commonly used now.

[†] Regression to T12.

[‡] Note peak with these doses was T12, and not in all cases.

[§] Median peak block height in this study with 60 mg was T5, not T4.

[¶¶] Regression to S1 for block duration.

[¶] Regression to L1.

[#] Regression to L2.

[**] Regression to S2.

N/R, Not recommended. Note that duration depends on how the regression of the block is measured, which varies widely between studies.

and intermediate duration and is used in doses of 50 to 100 mg for shorter procedures that can be completed in 1.5 hours or less. It was traditionally prepared as a 5% solution in 7.5% dextrose; this preparation has been associated with both permanent nerve injury and TNS (see section Complications, discussed later). Despite efforts to reduce the concentration of both the drug and dextrose,[150,151] the use of intrathecal lidocaine declined and has not yet recovered.

Prilocaine. Prilocaine is an amide local anesthetic based on the structure of lidocaine. Prilocaine was introduced in 1965 and has an intermediate duration of action that may lend itself to use in the ambulatory surgery setting.[152] A dose of 40 to 60 mg of 2% hyperbaric prilocaine can provide a block to T10 for 100 to 130 minutes, whereas as little as 20 mg combined with fentanyl has been successfully used for ambulatory arthroscopic knee surgery.[153] Prilocaine is rarely associated with TNS.[152,154,155] In large doses (>600 mg), prilocaine can result in methemoglobinemia. This should not be an issue with doses used for spinal anesthesia, but it has been reported after epidural infusions.[156]

Mepivacaine. Mepivacaine is another short-acting amide local anesthetic. It was first introduced for spinal anesthesia in 1962 and was initially prepared as a hyperbaric solution. The use of spinal mepivacaine has declined because the incidence of TNS after hyperbaric mepivacaine was similar to that of lidocaine,[147] although TNS were less frequent with the isobaric preparation of mepivacaine.[157-159] Doses of 30 to 80 mg with and without additives have been used (see Table 45.4) and, when compared with lidocaine, mepivacaine has a slightly longer duration of action.[160]

Long-Acting Local Anesthetics

Tetracaine. Tetracaine is an ester local anesthetic with a rate of metabolism one tenth that of chloroprocaine. It is packaged either as Niphanoid crystals (20 mg) or as an isobaric 1% solution (2 mL, 20 mg). When Niphanoid crystals are used, a 1% solution is obtained by adding 2 mL of preservative-free sterile water to the crystals. Mixing 1% solution with 10% dextrose produces a 0.5% hyperbaric preparation that may be used for perineal and abdominal surgery in doses of 5 and 15 mg, respectively. Tetracaine is usually combined with a vasoconstrictor additive because the duration of tetracaine alone can be unreliable. Although such combinations can provide up to 5 hours of anesthesia,[161-164] the addition of phenylephrine in particular has been associated with TNS.[165]

Bupivacaine. Bupivacaine was introduced in 1963 and is a highly protein-bound amide local anesthetic with a slow onset because of its relatively high p*K*a. It is appropriate for procedures lasting up to 2.5 to 3 hours (see Table 45.4).[166,167] Bupivacaine is available as 0.25%, 0.5%, and 0.75% clear isobaric solutions and also as a hyperbaric 0.5% (in Europe) and 0.75% solution containing 80 mg/mL glucose. At room temperature, plain bupivacaine is actually slightly hypobaric compared with CSF. Recovery profiles using small doses appear to be similar to that of lidocaine[168-170] and thus low-dose bupivacaine is used in ambulatory procedures. A recent systematic review[171] concluded that 4 to 5 mg of hyperbaric bupivacaine combined with unilateral positioning was adequate for short knee arthroscopy procedures. Bupivacaine is rarely associated with TNS.

Levobupivacaine. Levobupivacaine is the pure S (−) enantiomer of racemic bupivacaine. Although it is used in similar doses to bupivacaine and has a similar onset and duration, levobupivacaine potency appears to be slightly less than bupivacaine.[129] Nevertheless, the majority of clinical studies using identical doses of levobupivacaine and bupivacaine have found no significant difference in clinical efficacy for spinal anesthesia.[129,172-174] The main advantage of levobupivacaine is that it is less cardiotoxic than bupivacaine,[175,176,178] which is more of a theoretic than a real risk in the setting of spinal anesthesia.

Ropivacaine. Ropivacaine was introduced in 1996 and is another highly protein-bound amide local anesthetic. It is structurally related to bupivacaine, with the same p*K*a (8.1) and so it is also characterized by slow onset and a long duration of action. Compared to bupivacaine, the proposed advantages of spinal ropivacaine were less cardiotoxicity and greater motor-sensory block differentiation, resulting in less motor block. Subsequently, the potency of ropivacaine was found to be 0.6 that of bupivacaine.[179-181] When ropivacaine is given in an equivalent dose to bupivacaine, there is slightly less motor block and earlier recovery with ropivacaine.[8,182-184]

Spinal Additives

Whether administered into the CSF in conjunction with a local anesthetic or alone, a variety of medications may exert a direct analgesic effect on the spinal cord and nerve roots, or prolong the duration of sensory and motor blockade. As such, the coadministration of these agents often allows for a reduction in the required dose of local anesthetic, with the advantage of motor block sparing and faster recovery while still producing the same degree of analgesia.

Opioids. The effects of opioids within the CSF are complex, because of a combination of direct spinal cord dorsal horn opioid receptor activation, cerebral opioid receptor activation after CSF transport, and peripheral and central systemic effects after vascular uptake. The effect at each of these sites depends on both the dose administered and the physicochemical properties of the opioid, particularly lipid solubility. Highly lipid-soluble drugs such as fentanyl and sufentanil have a more rapid onset and shorter duration of action than more hydrophilic opioids. In addition to increasing uptake into neural tissue, greater lipid solubility results in rapid uptake into both blood vessels (with a resultant systemic effect) and fatty tissue. The spread of lipophilic opioids within the CSF is therefore more limited than hydrophilic opioids such as morphine, which demonstrate greater spread as a result of slower uptake and elimination from the CSF. As a result, hydrophilic opioids have a greater risk of late respiratory depression, which is one of the rare but most serious consequences of intrathecal opioid administration. The extent of neural tissue and vascular uptake also affects the potency of intrathecal opioids. For example, the relative intrathecal to intravenous potency of morphine is 200 to 300 to 1, whereas for fentanyl and sufentanil it is only 10 to 20 to 1.[185] In addition to respiratory depression, intrathecal opioids have other side effects including nausea and vomiting, pruritus, and urinary retention. These are discussed later in the Complications section.

Hydrophilic Opioids. Preservative-free morphine is the most widely used hydrophilic opioid in spinal anesthesia. It has a slow onset but provides analgesia for up to 24 hours.[186] Adequate analgesia is achieved with 100 µg, with minimal side effects for cesarean deliveries, whereas the most efficacious dose for major orthopedic surgery is less clear.[187] Doses as high as 1000 µg may be used for major abdominal surgery or thoracotomies, where it is becoming increasingly common to administer spinal opioids alone as a simple alternative to epidural local anesthetic–based analgesia. The magnitude of the analgesic response and the optimal dose remain unclear. Given adverse effects increase at higher doses it has been suggested that the lowest effective dose (<300 microg) should be used.[66a] Overall, the beneficial effects of intrathecal morphine seem most marked in abdominal surgery, and within the first 24 hours in particular.[186,188]

Diamorphine is available for use in the United Kingdom only. It is a lipid-soluble prodrug that crosses the dura faster than morphine and is cleared from the CSF more quickly than morphine. Once in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord, it is converted to morphine and 6-monoacetyl morphine, both of which are µ-agonists with a relatively long duration of action. It is recommended for use in doses of 0.3 to 0.4 mg for cesarean delivery[189] and is widely used instead of morphine in the United Kingdom.

There are only limited data related to the use of hydromorphone for spinal analgesia. It is more commonly used epidurally, as discussed later. Limited data suggest that intrathecal hydromorphone 50 to 100 µg provides comparable analgesia with similar side effects to 100 to 200 µg of morphine, with a similar duration of action. However, it has not undergone full neurotoxicity screening and does not provide any advantage compared with morphine.[190]

Meperidine is an opioid of intermediate lipid solubility, but it also has some local anesthetic properties and has been used as the sole intrathecal agent (doses ranging from 0.5 to 1.8 mg/kg) in both obstetric and general surgery.[191,192] Smaller doses are used in combination with local anesthetics. Both 10 mg and 20 mg improve analgesia compared with placebo after cesarean delivery,[193] although side effects were more frequent with the larger dose. However, this drug is used infrequently because of the availability of other opioids and its unknown neurotoxicity profile.

Lipophilic Opioids. Fentanyl and sufentanil are used frequently in obstetrics for labor analgesia and cesarean delivery as discussed elsewhere (also Chapter XX). Sufentanil 2 to 10 µg and fentanyl 25 µg provide comparable analgesia in early labor.[194-197] In transurethral prostatectomy surgery, when combined with low-dose bupivacaine, sufentanil 5 µg provides superior analgesia compared with fentanyl 25 µg.[198] Fentanyl in doses of 10 to 30 µg is commonly used in ambulatory surgery because of its rapid onset time of 10 to 20 minutes and relatively short duration of 4 to 6 hours. Although the local anesthetic dose can be reduced and analgesia prolonged,[199] the addition of fentanyl to bupivacaine may increase side effects and delay discharge.[171]

Vasoconstrictors. Vasoconstrictors, such as epinephrine and phenylephrine, prolong the duration of sensory and motor blockade when added to local anesthetics. The mechanism of action is reduced systemic local anesthetic uptake caused by an α_1-mediated vasoconstriction. Epinephrine may also enhance analgesia via a direct α_2-mediated effect. Traditionally, epinephrine 0.1 to 0.6 mg was thought to prolong tetracaine spinal anesthesia, but not bupivacaine or lidocaine spinal anesthesia.[22] This theory was postulated because of differences in the vasodilatory action of the local anesthetic drugs; plain lidocaine and bupivacaine cause vasodilation, whereas plain tetracaine does not. However, lidocaine spinal anesthesia can be prolonged by epinephrine when measured by both two-dermatome regression in the lower thoracic dermatomes and by occurrence of pain at the operative site for procedures carried out at the level of the lumbosacral dermatomes.[200,201] Similarly, bupivacaine spinal duration may be increased, but because of the already long duration, epinephrine is not generally added to bupivacaine. There is a concern that potent vasoconstrictive action places the blood supply of the spinal cord at risk. However, there are no human data supporting this theory, and in animal studies,[164,202-204] administering either subarachnoid epinephrine (0.2 mg) or phenylephrine (5 mg) does not decrease spinal cord blood flow. Phenylephrine 2 to 5 mg prolongs both lidocaine and tetracaine spinal anesthesia to a similar extent as epinephrine.[201,205] Bupivacaine spinal anesthesia is not prolonged by phenylephrine.[206,207] Concepcion and co-workers[208] compared epinephrine (0.2 and 0.3 mg) and phenylephrine (1 and 2 mg) added to tetracaine and did not find any differences in duration between the two vasoconstrictors. Caldwell and associates[163] used larger doses of vasoconstrictors, epinephrine at 0.5 mg and phenylephrine at 5 mg, and showed that phenylephrine prolonged tetracaine spinal anesthesia significantly more than did epinephrine. The addition of phenylephrine has declined in popularity because of its association with TNS.[165,209]

α_2-Agonists. Clonidine, dexmedetomidine, and epinephrine all act on prejunctional and postjunctional α_2 receptors in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. Activation of presynaptic receptors reduces neurotransmitter release, whereas postjunctional receptor activation results in hyperpolarization and reduction of pulse transmission.[210] In doses of 15 to 225 µg, clonidine prolongs the duration of sensory and motor blockade by approximately 1 hour and improves analgesia, reducing morphine consumption by up to 40%.[211-215] It appears to cause less urinary retention than morphine but, as with intravenous clonidine administration, spinal clonidine can also cause hypotension. A systematic review concluded that the hypotension associated with spinal clonidine was not dose-related and that the risk of bradycardia with clonidine was not increased.[216] Sedation can also occur with spinal clonidine, peaking within 1 to 2 hours and lasting up to 8 hours.[210] Dexmedetomidine is approximately 10-fold more α_2-selective than clonidine is.[217] As little as 3 μg of dexmedetomidine can prolong motor and sensory block without hemodynamic compromise.[218,219]

Other Drugs. Neostigmine in doses of 10 to 50 μg has analgesic effects after intrathecal administration.[220,221] Intrathecal neostigmine has been shown to prolong motor and sensory blockade and reduce postoperative analgesic requirements. Neostigmine inhibits the breakdown of acetylcholine, therefore increasing acetylcholine concentration, which itself is antinociceptive. It also appears to stimulate the release of nitric oxide in the spinal cord. Its benefits, however, are limited by nausea, vomiting, bradycardia, and, in higher doses, lower extremity weakness,[222,223] and is therefore not in widespread use.[224] Midazolam is a γ-aminobutyric acid receptor agonist that in doses of 1 to 2 mg appears to increase sensory and motor block and decrease analgesic requirements postoperatively, without the adverse effects observed with α_2 agonists or opioids. Early work raised concerns of spinal cord toxicity, but more recent studies suggest that it is safe.[225] Ketamine, adenosine, tramadol, magnesium, and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs have also all been administered intrathecally, but further work is required to establish safety and whether these drugs have any clinical value.

Technique

Technique should be classified into a series of steps (i.e., the four Ps): preparation, position, projection, and puncture.

Preparation. Informed consent must be obtained, with adequate documentation of the discussion of risk (see Complications, discussed later). Resuscitation equipment must always be readily available whenever a spinal anesthetic procedure is performed. The patient should have adequate intravenous access and be monitored with pulse oximetry, noninvasive arterial blood pressure, and electrocardiogram. Preprepared packs are now commonly used and often contain fenestrated drapes, swabs and towels, syringes, needles, filters, spinal needles, sterilizing solution, and local anesthetic for skin infiltration. When the local anesthetic for subarachnoid injection is chosen, the duration of block should be matched with both the surgical procedure and patient variables (see Table 45.4).

The most important characteristics of a spinal needle are the shape of the tip and the needle diameter. Needle tip shapes fall into two main categories: those that cut the dura and those with a conical, pencil-point tip. The former include the Pitkin and the Quincke-Babcock needle, and the Whitacre and Sprotte needles belong to the latter group (Fig. 45.4). The orifice of the Whitacre needle is smaller. If a continuous spinal technique is chosen, use of a Tuohy or other thin-walled needle can facilitate passage of the catheter. The use of small needles reduces the incidence of post–dural puncture headache from 40% with a 22-G needle to less than 2% with a 29-G needle. The use of larger needles, however, improves the tactile sense of needle placement, and so although 29-G needles result in a very low rate of post–dural puncture headache, the failure rate is increased.[226,227] Pencil-point needles provide better tactile sensation of the different layers encountered during needle insertion but, more importantly, they reduce the incidence of post–dural puncture headache. Pencil-point needles of 25, 26, and 27-G probably represent the optimal needle choice. An introducer needle can assist with guidance of smaller-gauge spinal needles in particular. Special Luer-Lok needles and syringes for spinal kits are now also available. These have been designed to prevent inadvertent intrathecal injection but still rely on the correct drug being drawn up into the "special" connector syringe (see Fig. 45.4).

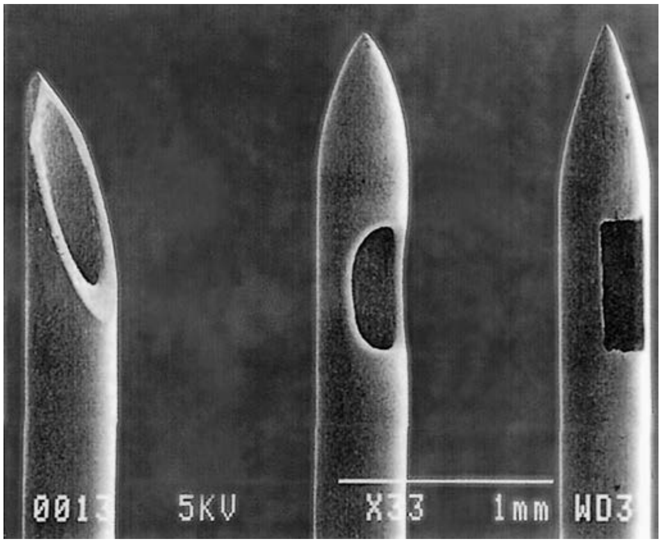


Fig. 45.4 Scanning electron micrographs of spinal needle tip designs: Quincke *(left)*, Sprotte *(middle)*, and Whitacre *(right)*. (Modified from Puolakka R, Andersson LC, Rosenberg PH. Microscopic analysis of three different spinal needle tips after experimental subarachnoid puncture. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25:163–169.)

Sterility is an issue of utmost importance. One of the most common organisms responsible for postspinal bacterial meningitis is *Streptococcus viridans*, which is an oral commensal, emphasizing the purpose of wearing a mask as part of a full aseptic technique. Hands and forearms must be washed and all jewelry removed. A variety of solutions may be used to clean the patient's back prior to skin puncture, such as chlorhexidine or alcohol (alone or in combination), or iodine solutions. Chlorhexidine and alcohol together have been concluded to be most effective.[229-231] It is important that chlorhexidine is allowed to dry completely before skin puncture because chlorhexidine is neurotoxic.

The recently published Practice Advisory for the Prevention, Diagnosis, and Management of Infectious Complications Associated with Neuraxial Techniques by the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Task Force on Infectious Complications Associated with Neuraxial Techniques and the ASRA[229] recommends that to prevent infection, it is important to identify patients at increased risk of infection (e.g., known bacteremia, immunocompromised) and consider alternatives, consider pre-procedure antibiotics in patients with bacteremia, ensure full asepsis including masks and use antiseptic solution such as chlorhexidine, sterile occlusive dressings, and bacterial filters. Disconnection and reconnection of neuraxial catheters should be minimized and catheters should not remain in situ longer than clinically necessary. Patients should be evaluated daily for signs of infection and if suspected then this should be promptly investigated and treated appropriately.

Position (also see Chapter 34). The three primary patient positions include the lateral decubitus, sitting, and prone positions, each of which has advantages in specific situations. The superiority of any one particular position is unclear. In the obstetric population, there have been small studies demonstrating that block operator performance was faster in the sitting position, albeit this benefit was offset by a slower onset time compared with the lateral decubitus position (see Chapter 62).[232] Current consensus guidelines state that neuraxial blocks should not be routinely performed with the patient anesthetized or deeply sedated,[76] except in those circumstances where the physician and patient conclude that benefit outweighs the risk. General anesthesia or heavy sedation can prevent a patient from recognizing warning signs of pain or paresthesia if the needle is in close proximity to nervous tissue.

A patient in the lateral decubitus position facilitates the administration of sedative medication if required, is less dependent on a well-trained assistant than for a patient in the sitting position, and is arguably more comfortable. Patients are placed with their back parallel to the edge of the operating table nearest the anesthesiologist, thighs flexed onto the abdomen, with the neck flexed to allow the forehead to be as close as possible to the knees in an attempt to “open up” the vertebral spaces. The assistant may still be invaluable during this positioning by encouraging and assisting the patient in assuming the ideal lateral decubitus position. Because of the differing proportional sizes of hips and shoulders, the spine may slope down toward the head in females, with the opposite occurring in males. The patient should be positioned so that spread of hypobaric, isobaric, or hyperbaric solution to the operative site is optimized.

Identification of the midline may be easier when the patient is placed in the sitting position, especially when obesity or scoliosis renders midline anatomy difficult to examine. Ultrasound may also be used to identify the midline (see later discussion). When placing patients in this position, a stool can be provided as a footrest and a pillow placed in the lap, or a specially designed stand may be used. The assistant helps to maintain the patient in a vertical plane while flexing the patient’s neck and arms over the pillow, relaxing the shoulders, and asking the patient to “push out” the lower back to open up the lumbar vertebral spaces. Care must be taken not to oversedate a patient in this position. Hypotension may also be more common for a person in the sitting position.

The prone position is rarely used but may be chosen when the patient is to be maintained in that position (often with the jack-knife modification) during the surgical procedure. Such cases may include rectal, perineal, or lumbar procedures. The anesthesiologist may have to aspirate for CSF because CSF pressure is minimized when insertion of the lumbar needle is carried out in this position.

Projection and Puncture. The midline approach relies on the ability of patients and assistants to minimize lumbar lordosis and allow access to the subarachnoid space between adjacent spinous processes, usually at the L2-L3, L3-L4, or the L4-L5 space. The spinal cord ends at the level of L1-L2 and so needle insertion above this level should be avoided. The intercristal line is the line drawn between the two iliac crests and traditionally corresponds to the level of the L4 vertebral body or the L4-L5 interspace, but the reliability of this landmark is questionable as demonstrated by recent ultrasonography studies.[233] Once the appropriate space has been selected, a subcutaneous skin wheal of local anesthetic is developed over this space, and the introducer is inserted at a slight cephalad angle of 10 to 15 degrees through skin, subcutaneous tissue, and supraspinous ligament to reach the substance of the interspinous ligament. The introducer is grasped with the palpating fingers and steadied while the other hand is used to hold the spinal needle like a dart, and the fifth finger is used as a tripod against the patient’s back to prevent patient movement and unintentional insertion to a level deeper than intended. The needle, with its bevel parallel to the midline, is advanced slowly to heighten the sense of tissue planes traversed and to prevent skewing of nerve roots, until the characteristic change in resistance is noted as the needle passes through the ligamentum flavum and dura. On passing through the dura, there is often a slight “click” or “pop” sensation. The stylet is then removed, and CSF should appear at the needle hub. The smaller the needle diameter, the longer the wait for CSF flow, particularly if the patient is not in the sitting position. If the CSF does not flow, the needle might be obstructed and rotation in 90-degree increments can be undertaken until CSF appears. If CSF does not appear in any quadrant, the needle should be advanced a few millimeters and rechecked in all four quadrants. If CSF still has not appeared and the needle is at a depth appropriate for the patient, the needle and introducer should be withdrawn and the insertion steps should be repeated. A common reason for failure is insertion of the needle off the midline (Fig. 45.5).

After CSF is freely obtained, the dorsum of the anesthesiologist’s nondominant hand steadies the spinal needle against the patient’s back while the syringe containing the therapeutic dose is attached to the needle. CSF is again freely aspirated into the syringe, and the anesthetic dose is injected at a rate of approximately 0.2 mL/s. After completion of the injection, 0.2 mL of CSF can be aspirated into the syringe and reinjected into the subarachnoid space to reconfirm location and clear the needle of the remaining local anesthetic.

The paramedian approach exploits the larger “subarachnoid target” that exists if a needle is inserted slightly lateral to the midline (Fig. 45.6). The paramedian approach may be especially useful in the setting of diffuse calcification of the interspinous ligament. The most common error when using the paramedian technique is that the needle entry site is placed too far off midline, which makes the vertebral laminae barriers to insertion of the needle. In the paramedian approach, a skin wheal is raised 1 cm lateral and 1 cm caudad to the corresponding spinous process. A longer needle (e.g., 3-5 cm) is then used to infiltrate deeper tissues in a cephalomedial plane. The spinal introducer and needle are next inserted 10 to 15 degrees off the sagittal plane in a cephalomedial plane (see Fig. 45.6). Similar to the midline approach, the most common error is to angle the needle too far cephalad on initial insertion. Nevertheless, if the needle contacts bone, it is redirected slightly in a cephalad direction. If bone is again contacted, but at a deeper level, the slight cephalad angulation is continued because it is likely that the needle is being “walked up” the lamina. As

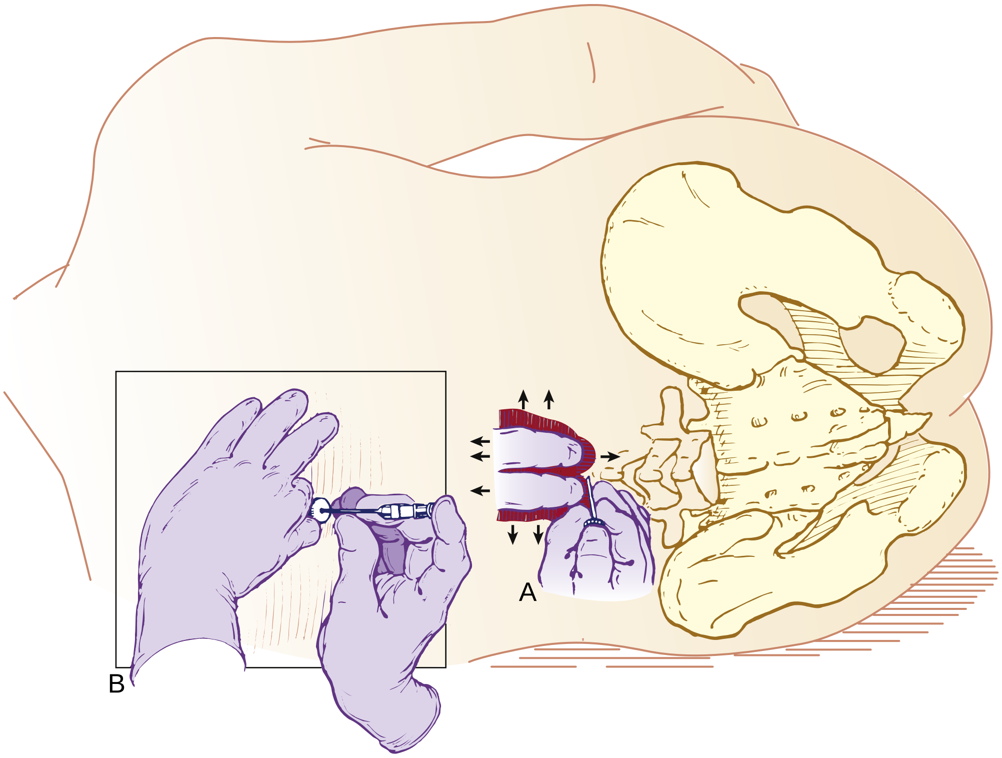


Fig. 45.5 Insertion of the spinal needle. (A) The palpating fingers are "rolled" in a side-to-side and a cephalad-to-caudad direction to identify the interspinous space. (B) During needle insertion, the needle should be stabilized in a tripod fashion while placed in the hand, similar to a dart being thrown.

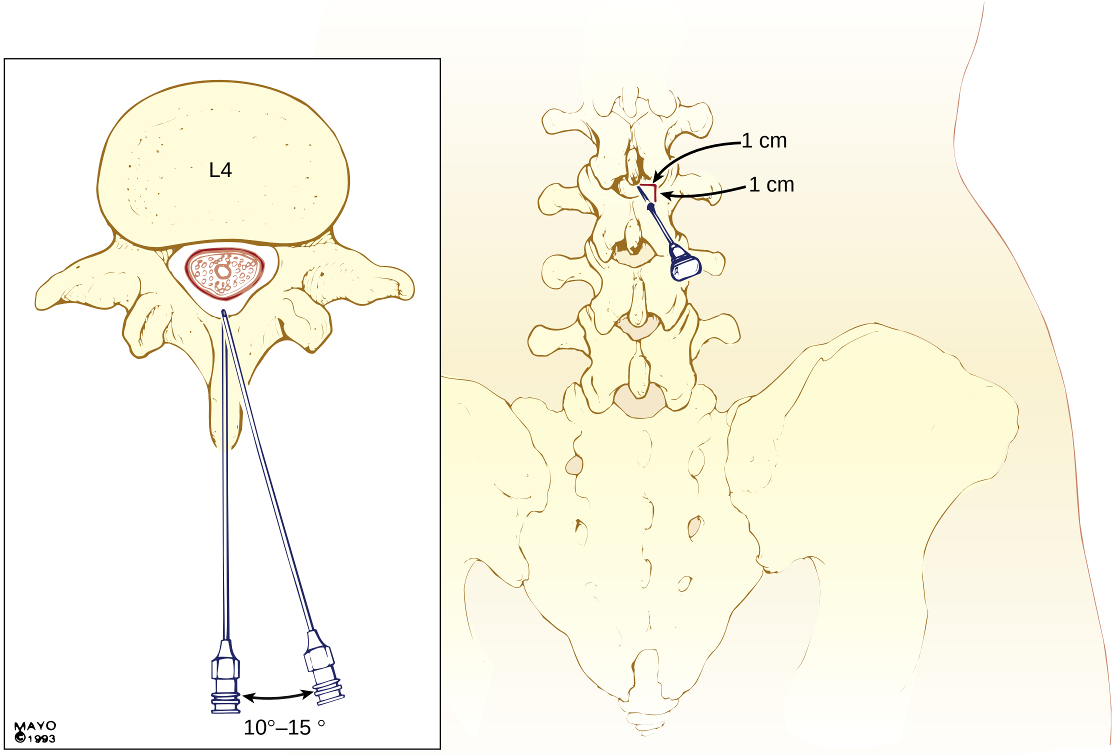


Fig. 45.6 Vertebral anatomy of the midline and paramedian approaches to centroneuraxis blocks. The midline approach highlighted in the inset requires anatomic projection in only two planes: sagittal and horizontal. The paramedian approach shown in the inset and in the posterior view requires an additional oblique plane to be considered, although the technique may be easier in patients who are unable to cooperate in minimizing their lumbar lordosis. The paramedian needle is inserted 1 cm lateral and 1 cm caudad to the caudad edge of the more superior vertebral spinous process. The paramedian needle is inserted approximately 15 degrees off the sagittal plane, as shown in the inset. (Courtesy the Mayo Foundation, Rochester, MN.)

in the midline approach, the characteristic feel of the ligaments and dura is possible, but only once the ligamentum flavum is reached because the needle this time is not passing through the supraspinous and interspinous ligaments. After CSF is obtained, the block is carried out in a manner similar to that described for the midline approach.

SPECIAL SPINAL TECHNIQUES

Continuous Spinal Anesthesia

Continuous spinal anesthesia allows incremental dosing of local anesthetic and therefore predictable titration of the block to an appropriate level, with better hemodynamic stability than a single-shot spinal.[40] It is useful in controlling arterial blood pressure in such patients with severe aortic stenosis or pregnant women with complex cardiac disease. In obstetrics, it may also be used in patients with morbid obesity and where previous spinal surgery may hinder epidural spread. Spinal catheters also serve as an alternative to the CSE technique for prolonged cases and have been used in selected patients for laparotomies where general anesthesia may be too great a risk.[234] If a continuous spinal anesthetic is undertaken, a needle with a laterally facing opening may be used to perform the lumbar puncture (Fig. 45.7). A midline or paramedian approach may be used, with some experts suggesting that use of the paramedian approach facilitates insertion of the catheter.[235] The catheter should be threaded 2 to 3 cm into the subarachnoid space and the needle withdrawn over the catheter. The catheter must never be withdrawn back into the needle shaft in case a piece of the catheter is sheared off and left in the subarachnoid space. Care must also be taken to ensure that the catheter is not inserted more deeply into the subarachnoid space when the needle is withdrawn over the catheter. Spinal microcatheters exist, but these have been associated with cauda equina syndrome,[5] probably because of lumbosacral pooling of local anesthetic. Catheter-over-the-needle devices are also available for use with continuous spinal anesthesia, with the advantage of minimizing leakage of CSF around the catheter,[236] but these may be more difficult to insert.[236] Finally, epidural doses of local anesthetic should not be infused or “bloused” into spinal catheters, and strict attention must also be paid to sterile technique.

Unilateral Spinal Anesthesia and Selective Spinal Anesthesia

The terms *unilateral spinal anesthesia* and *selective spinal anesthesia* overlap slightly, but both refer to small-dose techniques that capitalize on baricity and patient positioning to hasten recovery. A recent systematic review found that a dose of 4 to 5 mg of hyperbaric bupivacaine with unilateral positioning was adequate for knee arthroscopy.[171] This technique has also been used for unilateral inguinal hernia repair with a dose of 8 mg bupivacaine. In selective spinal anesthesia, minimal local anesthetic doses are used with the goal of anesthetizing only the sensory fibers to a specific area.[237,238] These doses are discussed in more detail in the chapter on anesthesia for ambulatory surgery (see Chapter 72).

BLOCK MONITORING

Once the spinal anesthetic has been administered, the onset, extent, and quality of the sensory and motor blocks must be assessed while heart rate and arterial blood pressure are also being monitored for any resultant sympathetic blockade. There are many methods of assessing sensory block, but cold sensation and pinprick representing C- and A-delta fibers, respectively, are used more often than mechanical stimuli such

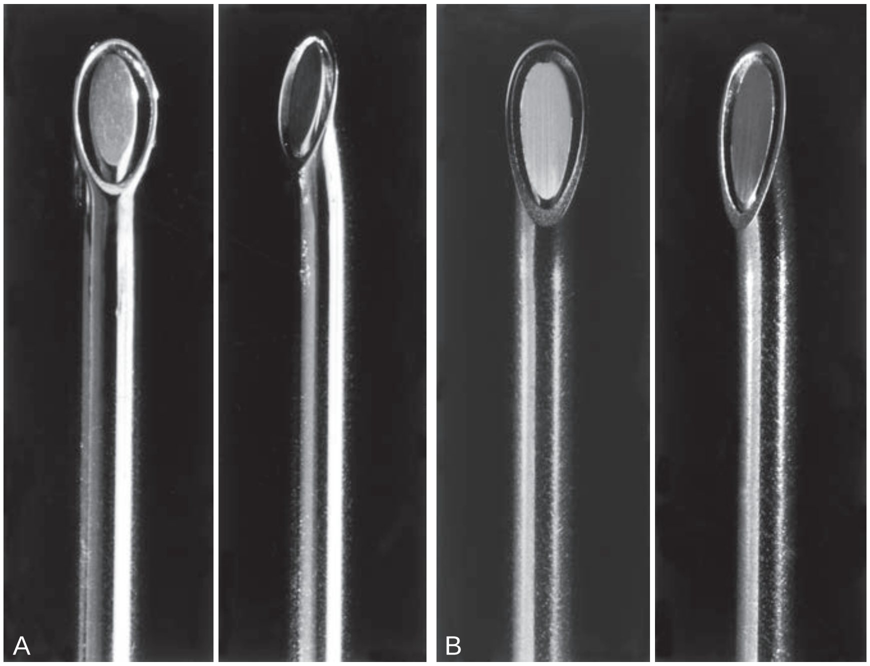


Fig. 45.7 Examples of continuous spinal needles, including a disposable, 18-G Hustead (A) and a 17-G Tuohy (B) needle. Both have distal tips designed to direct the catheters inserted through the needles along the course of the bevel opening; 20-G epidural catheters are used with these particular needle sizes.

as touch, pressure, and von Frey hairs, which reflect the A-beta nerves. Loss of sensation to cold usually occurs first, verified using an ethyl chloride spray, ice, or alcohol, followed by the loss of sensation to pinprick, verified using a needle that does not pierce the skin.[20] Finally, loss of sensation to touch occurs. Dermatomal block height also varies with the method of assessment, but in general, peak height is measured most cephalad using loss of cold, and is measured lower with pinprick, and lowest with touch.[239] Assessing dermatomal block height assumes that absence of sensation to these stimuli equates to blockade of the nociceptive fibers, but this is not necessarily the case.[240] Other electrical and experimental chemical methods of assessing pain have been used but gentle pinprick remains the simplest.[91,241] Motor block may also be measured in a variety of ways. The modified Bromage scale (Box 45.1) is most commonly used, although this represents only lumbosacral motor fibers.[242] Electromyography and pulmonary function tests have been used to measure abdominal and thoracic motor function, but these are neither practical nor specific.

In practice, the combination of sympathetic block with an adequate sensory level and motor block (inability to straight-leg raise ensures at least that lumbar nerves are blocked) is used to confirm spinal efficacy. Ensuring that the level of block using cold or pinprick is two to three segments above the expected level of surgical stimulus is commonly considered adequate.

Epidural Anesthesia

FACTORS AFFECTING EPIDURAL BLOCK HEIGHT

The epidural space is a collapsible, distensible reservoir through which drugs spread and are removed by diffusion, vascular transport, and leakage. Spread of anesthetic within the epidural space, and subsequent block height, is related to a variety of factors, not all of which can be manipulated by the anesthesiologist (Table 45.5).[26]

BOX 45.1 **Modified Bromage Scale**

- 0: No motor block
- 1: Inability to raise extended leg; able to move knees and feet
- 2: Inability to raise extended leg and move knee; able to move feet
- 3: Complete block of motor limb

Drug Factors

The volume and total mass of injectate are the most important drug-related factors that affect block height after the administration of local anesthetic in the epidural space. As a general principle, 1 to 2 mL of solution should be injected per segment to be blocked. Although additives such as bicarbonate, epinephrine, and opioids influence onset, quality, and duration of analgesia and anesthesia, these do not affect spread.

Patient Factors

Age can influence epidural block height.[26] There appears to be a stronger correlation with age and block height in thoracic epidurals, with one study suggesting that 40% less volume is required in the elderly (see Chapter 65).[243] Possible reasons include decreased leakage of local anesthetic through intervertebral foramina, decreased compliance of the epidural space in the elderly resulting in greater spread, or an increased sensitivity of the nerves in the elderly. As with spinal anesthesia, it appears that only the extremes of patient height influence local anesthetic spread in the epidural space. Weight is not well correlated with block height in the settings of either lumbar or TEA.[244] Less local anesthetic is required to produce the same epidural spread of anesthesia in pregnant patients. Although this may be in part a result of engorgement of epidural veins secondary to increased abdominal pressure, the effect also occurs in early pregnancy.[245] Also, continuous positive airway pressure increases the height of a thoracic epidural block.[246,247]

Procedure Factors

The level of injection is the most important procedure-related factor that affects epidural block height. In the upper cervical region, spread of injectate is mostly caudal, in the midthoracic region spread is equally cephalad and caudal, and in the low thoracic region spread is primarily cephalad.[248] After a lumbar epidural, spread is more cephalad than caudal. Some studies suggest that the total number of segments blocked is less in the lumbar region compared with thoracic levels for a given volume of injectate. Patient position has been shown to affect spread of lumbar epidural injections, with preferential spread and faster onset to the dependent side in the lateral decubitus position.[249] The sitting and supine positions do not affect epidural block height. However, the head-down tilt position does increase cephalad spread in obstetric patients.[250] Needle bevel direction

TABLE 45.5 Factors Affecting Epidural Local Anesthetic Distribution and Block Height

	More Important	Less Important	Not Important
Drug factors	Volume Dose	Concentration	Additives
Patient factors	Elderly age Pregnancy	Weight Height Pressure in adjacent body cavities	
Procedure factors	Level of injection	Patient position	Speed of injection Needle orifice direction

Modified from Visser WA, Lee RA, Gielen MJ. Factors affecting the distribution of neural blockade by local anesthetics in epidural anesthesia and a comparison of lumbar versus thoracic epidural anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:708–721.

and speed of injection also do not appear to influence the spread of a bolus injection.

PHARMACOLOGY

Local anesthetics for epidural use may be classified into short-, intermediate-, and long-acting drugs. A single bolus dose of local anesthetic in the epidural space can provide surgical anesthesia ranging from 45 minutes up to 4 hours depending on the type of local anesthetic administered and the use of any additives (Table 45.6). Most commonly, an epidural catheter is left in situ so that local anesthetic–based anesthesia or regular analgesia can be extended indefinitely.

Short-Acting and Intermediate-Acting Local Anesthetics

Procaine. Similar to spinal anesthesia, procaine is not commonly used for epidural anesthesia. Five-percent procaine has a slow onset and the resultant block can be unreliable and of poor quality.

Chloroprocaine. Chloroprocaine is available preservative-free in 2% and 3% concentrations for epidural injection, with the latter preferable for surgical anesthesia because the former may not produce muscle relaxation. The 3% preparation has an onset time of 10 to 15 minutes and a duration of up to 60 minutes. Adding epinephrine prolongs the block for up to 90 minutes. Before the development of preservative-free preparations, large volumes (>25 mL) of chloroprocaine had been associated with deep, aching, burning lumbar back pain.[251] This was thought to be secondary to the ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid that chelated calcium and caused a localized hypocalcemia. In addition, chloroprocaine can antagonize the effects of epidural morphine.[242] This may be a result of opioid receptor antagonism by either the chloroprocaine or a metabolite. Antagonism of an intracellular messenger and decreased morphine availability caused by a reduction in perineural pH are also proposed mechanisms. However, morphine and chloroprocaine seem like an illogical combination because the beneficial ultrashort duration of action of chloroprocaine is offset by the addition of morphine.

Articaine. Articaine is not widely used for epidural anesthesia and has not been studied extensively. When 2% articaine was compared with epidural lidocaine in one study, it had a similar latency, spread, duration, and motor block.[252] It has also been used for obstetric epidural analgesia.[148]

Lidocaine. Lidocaine is available in 1% and 2% solutions; it has an onset time of 10 to 15 minutes and a duration of up to 120 minutes, which can be extended to 180 minutes with the addition of epinephrine. Unlike spinal anesthesia, TNS are not commonly associated with epidural lidocaine.[253]

Prilocaine. Prilocaine is available in 2% and 3% solutions. The 2% solution produces a sensory block with minimal motor block. Onset time is approximately 15 minutes, with a duration of approximately 100 minutes. When compared with lidocaine, prilocaine has a more marked sensory blockade and a longer duration (different from Cousins).[242] In large doses, prilocaine is associated with methemoglobinemia.[156,254]

Mepivacaine. Mepivacaine is available as 1%, 1.5%, and 2% preservative-free solutions. The 2% preparation has an onset time similar to lidocaine of approximately 15 minutes, but a slightly longer duration (up to 200 minutes with epinephrine), making it a preferred option by some centers for surgery of an intermediate duration.

Long-Acting Local Anesthetics

Tetracaine. Tetracaine is not widely used for epidural anesthesia because of unreliable block height and, in larger doses, systemic toxicity.

Bupivacaine. Bupivacaine is available in 0.25%, 0.5%, or 0.75% preservative-free solutions. The onset time is around 20 minutes with a duration of up to 225 minutes, which is prolonged only slightly by the addition of epinephrine (to 240 minutes). More dilute concentrations such as 0.125% to 0.25% can be used for analgesia. However, disadvantages include cardiac and central nervous system toxicity and the potential for motor block from larger doses. Solutions of 0.5% and 0.75% are used to provide surgical anesthesia.

TABLE 45.6 Comparative Onset Times and Analgesic Durations of Local Anesthetics Administered Epidurally in 20- to 30-mL Volumes

			DURATION (MIN)	
Drug	**Concentration (%)**	**Onset (min)**	**Plain**	**1:200,000 Epinephrine**
2-Chloroprocaine	3	10-15	45-60	60-90
Lidocaine	2	15	80-120	120-180
Mepivacaine	2	15	90-140	140-200
Bupivacaine	0.5-0.75	20	165-225	180-240
Etidocaine	1	15	120-200	150-225
Ropivacaine	0.75-1.0	15-20	140-180	150-200
Levobupivacaine	0.5-0.75	15-20	150-225	150-240

Modified from Cousins MJ, Bromage PR. Epidural neural blockade. In: Cousins MJ, Bridenbaugh PO, eds. *Neural Blockade in Clinical Anesthesia and Management of Pain*. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1988;255.

Liposomal bupivacaine is currently under investigation for epidural use. An epidural bolus of liposomal 0.5% bupivacaine provided similar onset but longer-lasting analgesia to boluses of plain bupivacaine.[255] It does not appear to be more toxic than plain bupivacaine or to have a differing cardiac safety profile. The benefit, as with extended-release morphine (discussed later), is the lack of need for an epidural catheter. Conversely, such extended-release boluses are less titratable if for any reason the epidural needs to be terminated early.

Levobupivacaine. Levobupivacaine can be used as an epidural local anesthetic in 0.5% to 0.75% concentrations for surgical anesthesia, whereas analgesia can be achieved with concentrations of 0.125% to 0.25%. Levobupivacaine administered epidurally has the same clinical characteristics as bupivacaine.[129,256,257] The advantage of levobupivacaine is that it is less cardiotoxic compared with bupivacaine.[175,258]

Ropivacaine. Ropivacaine is available in 0.2%, 0.5%, 0.75%, and 1.0% preservative-free preparations. For surgical anesthesia, 0.5% to 1.0% is used, whereas 0.1% to 0.2% is used for analgesia. Ropivacaine is associated with a superior safety profile compared with bupivacaine.[259,260] Data from animal models suggest that bupivacaine has a 1.5 to 2.5 lower seizure threshold than ropivacaine. Ropivacaine is also less cardiotoxic. When compared with bupivacaine and levobupivacaine, ropivacaine at equivalent concentrations has a relatively similar clinical profile. Ropivacaine has a slightly shorter duration of action and less motor block, although the reduced motor block may in fact reflect different potencies of the drugs rather than a true motor-sparing effect of ropivacaine. Epidurally administered ropivacaine is 40% less potent than bupivacaine.[179,180,261]

Epidural Additives

Vasoconstrictors. Epinephrine reduces vascular absorption of local anesthetics in the epidural space. The local anesthetics vary in their responsiveness to epinephrine. The effect is the most with lidocaine,[262] mepivacaine, and chloroprocaine (up to 50% prolongation), with a lesser effect with bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, and etidocaine, and a limited effect with ropivacaine, which already has intrinsic vasoconstrictive properties (see Table 45.6). Epinephrine itself may also have some analgesic benefits because it is absorbed into the CSF, where it can act on dorsal horn α_2 receptors.[263] Phenylephrine has been used in epidural anesthesia less widely than in spinal anesthesia, perhaps because it does not reduce peak blood levels of local anesthetic as effectively as epinephrine does during epidural use.[264]

Opioids. Opioids synergistically enhance the analgesic effects of epidural local anesthetics, without prolonging motor block. A combination of local anesthetic and opioid reduces the dose-related adverse effects of each drug independently. The analgesic benefits of neuraxial opioids must be balanced against the dose-dependent side effects. As with intrathecal opioids, there appears to be a therapeutic ceiling effect above which only side effects increase. Opioids may also be used alone, particularly when there are concerns regarding hemodynamic instability. Epidural opioids work by crossing the dura and arachnoid membrane to reach the CSF and spinal cord dorsal horn. Lipophilic opioids, such as fentanyl and sufentanil, partition into epidural fat and therefore are found in lower concentrations in CSF than hydrophilic opioids, such as morphine and hydromorphone. Fentanyl and sufentanil are also readily absorbed into the systemic circulation, and several studies suggest that this is the principal analgesic mechanism.[265,266]

Epidural morphine is administered as a bolus of 1 to 5 mg, with an onset time of 30 to 60 minutes and duration of up to 24 hours. The optimal dose that balances analgesia while minimizing side effects is 2.5 to 3.75 mg.[267] Alternatively, morphine can be administered continuously in doses of 0.1 to 0.4 mg/h through an epidural catheter. Hydromorphone is more hydrophilic than fentanyl but more lipophilic than morphine. It can be administered as a bolus of 0.4 to 1.5 mg, with onset at 15 to 30 minutes and a duration of 18 hours. Hydromorphone used as an infusion is delivered at rates between 5 and 20 μg/h. The onset of epidural fentanyl and sufentanil is 5 to 15 minutes and lasts only 2 to 3 hours. Bolus doses of 10 to 100 μg may be used to provide analgesia. Diamorphine is available in the United Kingdom and used in doses of 2 to 3 mg as epidural boluses, or approximately 0.05 mg/mL in an infusion.

DepoDur is an extended-release liposomal formulation of morphine used as a single-shot lumbar epidural dose, thereby avoiding issues and side effects of a continuous local anesthetic infusion and indwelling catheters, particularly in patients receiving anticoagulants. When administered before surgery (or after clamping of the cord in cesarean deliveries), DepoDur can provide up to 48 hours of pain relief.[268,269] A dose of 10 to 15 mg is recommended for lower abdominal surgery, and 15 mg is recommended for major lower limb orthopedic surgery.

α_2-Agonists. Epidural clonidine can prolong sensory block to a greater extent than motor block. The mechanism appears to be mediated by the opening of potassium channels and subsequent membrane hyperpolarization[270] rather than an α_2-agonist effect. The addition of clonidine reduces both epidural local anesthetic and opioid requirements.[271-273] Other benefits of clonidine may include a reduced immune stress and cytokine response.[274] Epidural clonidine does have a variety of side effects including hypotension, bradycardia, dry mouth, and sedation. The cardiovascular effects may be greatest when clonidine is administered in the epidural space at the thoracic level.[275] In preliminary studies, epidural dexmedetomidine has also been shown to reduce intraoperative anesthetic requirements, improve postoperative analgesia, and prolong both sensory and motor block.[276]

Other Drugs. Conflicting reports exist regarding the benefit of epidural ketamine and whether it is neurotoxic.[277-279] Epidural neostigmine provides labor analgesia before local anesthetic infusion without causing respiratory depression, hypotension, or motor impairment.[280] Midazolam, tramadol, dexamethasone, and droperidol have also been studied but are not commonly used.

Carbonation and Bicarbonate. Many local anesthetic preparations have a pH between 3.5 and 5.5 for chemical stability and bacteriostasis. At these low pHs, a higher proportion of the drug is in the ionized form and is therefore unable to cross nerve membranes to reach the internal binding site on sodium channels. Both carbonation of the solution and adding bicarbonate have been used in an attempt to increase the solution pH, and therefore the nonionized free-base proportion of local anesthetic. Although carbonation may theoretically increase the speed of onset and quality of the block by producing more rapid intraneural diffusion and more rapid penetration of connective tissue surrounding the nerve trunk,[281,282] available data suggest that there are no clinical advantages for carbonated solutions.[235,283]

EPIDURAL TECHNIQUE

Preparation

Patient preparation as previously described for spinal anesthesia must equally be applied to epidural anesthesia, namely consent, monitoring, and resuscitation equipment, intravenous access, and choosing the patient and drugs appropriately depending on comorbidities and the nature of surgery. Sterility is arguably even more important than spinal anesthesia because a catheter is often left in situ. The extent of the surgical field must be understood so that the epidural may be inserted at the appropriate level—that is, the lumbar, low-, mid-, or high-thoracic, or less commonly, cervical.[26] A variety of epidural needles have been used for epidural anesthesia, but Tuohy needles are most common (Fig. 45.8). These needles are usually 16- to 18-g in size and have a 15- to 30-degree curved, blunt "Huber" tip designed to both reduce the risk of accidental dural puncture and guide the catheter cephalad. The needle shaft is marked in 1-cm intervals so that depth of insertion can be identified. The catheter is made of a flexible, calibrated, durable, radiopaque plastic with either a single end hole or multiple side orifices near the tip. Several investigators have found that multiple-orifice catheters are superior, with a reduced incidence of inadequate analgesia.[284-286] However, the use of multiorifice catheters in pregnant women resulted in a more frequent incidence of epidural vein cannulation.[287]

The method of identifying the epidural space must also be predetermined. Most practitioners use a loss-of-resistance technique to either air or saline, rather than the hanging drop technique, both of which are described later. If a loss-of-resistance technique is used, an additional decision about the type of syringe (i.e., glass vs. low-resistance plastic and Luer-Lok vs. friction hub) is required.

Position

The sitting and lateral decubitus positions necessary for epidural puncture are the same as those for spinal anesthesia (see also Chapter 62). As before, inadequate positioning of the patient can complicate an otherwise meticulous technique. Shorter insertion times occur in the sitting position for thoracic epidurals compared with the lateral decubitus position, but ultimately, success rates are comparable.[288] As with spinal anesthesia, epidurals are performed with the patient awake.[76]

Projection and Puncture

The level of needle insertion depends on the location of surgery (Table 45.7). Important surface landmarks include the intercristal line (corresponding to the L4-L5 interspace), the inferior angle of the scapula (corresponding to the T7 vertebral body), the root of the scapular spine (T3), and the vertebra prominens (C7). Ultrasonography may be useful to identify the correct thoracic space[233]; it is less commonly used for thoracic epidural insertion, however, because the acoustic shadows make visualization of landmarks such as the ligamentum flavum and intrathecal space more difficult.[289] A variety of different needle approaches exist: midline, paramedian, modified paramedian (Taylor approach), and caudal.

A midline approach is commonly chosen for lumbar and low thoracic approaches. After local anesthetic infiltration of the skin, the nondominant hand can be rested on the back of the patient, with the thumb and index finger holding the needle hub or wing. The angle of approach should be only slightly cephalad in the lumbar and low-thoracic regions, whereas in the midthoracic region, the approach should be more cephalad because of the significant downward angulation of the spinous processes (Fig. 45.9). In a controlled fashion, the needle should be advanced with the stylet in place through the supraspinous ligament and into the interspinous ligament, at which point the stylet can be removed and the syringe attached. If it is in the correct location, the needle should rest firmly in the tissues. Some advocate needle placement in the ligamentum flavum for both the loss-of-resistance and hanging-drop methods before attaching the syringe, but this may be difficult, particularly for novices; however, this may allow an improved appreciation of epidural anatomy for the operator. If the needle is merely inserted into the supraspinous ligament and then loss-of-resistance or hanging-drop insertion is begun, there is an increased chance of false loss-of-resistance, possibly because of defects in the interspinous ligament.[290] Such false-positive rates can be as high as 30%.

Air or saline are the two most common noncompressible media used to detect a loss-of-resistance when identifying the epidural space. Each involves intermittent (for air) or constant (for saline) gentle pressure applied to the bulb of the syringe with the dominant thumb while the needle is advanced with the nondominant hand. A combination of air and saline may also be used, incorporating 2 mL of saline and a small (0.25 mL) air bubble. Usually the ligamentum flavum is identified as a tougher structure with increased resistance, and when the epidural space is subsequently entered, the pressure applied to the syringe plunger allows the solution to flow without resistance into the epidural space. There are reports that air is less reliable in identifying the epidural space, results in a higher chance of incomplete block, and may also cause both pneumocephalus (which can result in headaches) and venous air embolism in rare cases. If air is chosen, the amount of air injected after loss-of-resistance should therefore be minimized. Evidence suggests that there is no difference in adverse outcome in the obstetric population when air or saline is used.[291] Another meta-analysis found that fluid inserted through the epidural needle before catheter insertion reduces the risk of epidural vein cannulation by the catheter.[287] One proposed disadvantage of using saline is that it may be more difficult to readily detect an accidental dural puncture.

An alternative method of identifying the epidural space is the hanging-drop technique. After the needle is placed into the ligamentum flavum, a drop of solution such as saline is placed within the hub of the needle. When the needle is advanced into the epidural space, the solution should be "sucked in." The theory behind this maneuver has traditionally been attributed to subatmospheric pressure in the epidural space, although recent experimental evidence in the cervical region suggests that using negative-pressure methods are poorly reliable and only useful in the sitting position.[292] The subatmospheric pressure has been related to expansion of the epidural space as the needle pushes the dura away from the ligamentum flavum.[293] The negative intrathoracic pressure may influence the pressure in the epidural space in the thoracic region and should be maximal during inspiration. Timing needle advancement to coincide with inspiration may be difficult, however.

When a lumbar midline approach is used, the depth from skin to the ligamentum flavum commonly reaches 4 cm, with the depth in most (80%) patients being between 3.5 and 6 cm; it can be longer or shorter in obese or very thin patients, respectively. Ultrasonography may be useful to predict the depth before needle insertion.[233] In the lumbar region, the ligamentum flavum is 5 to 6 mm thick in the midline. When a thoracic approach is chosen, needle control is of equal or greater importance because injury to the spinal cord is possible if the needle is advanced too far,

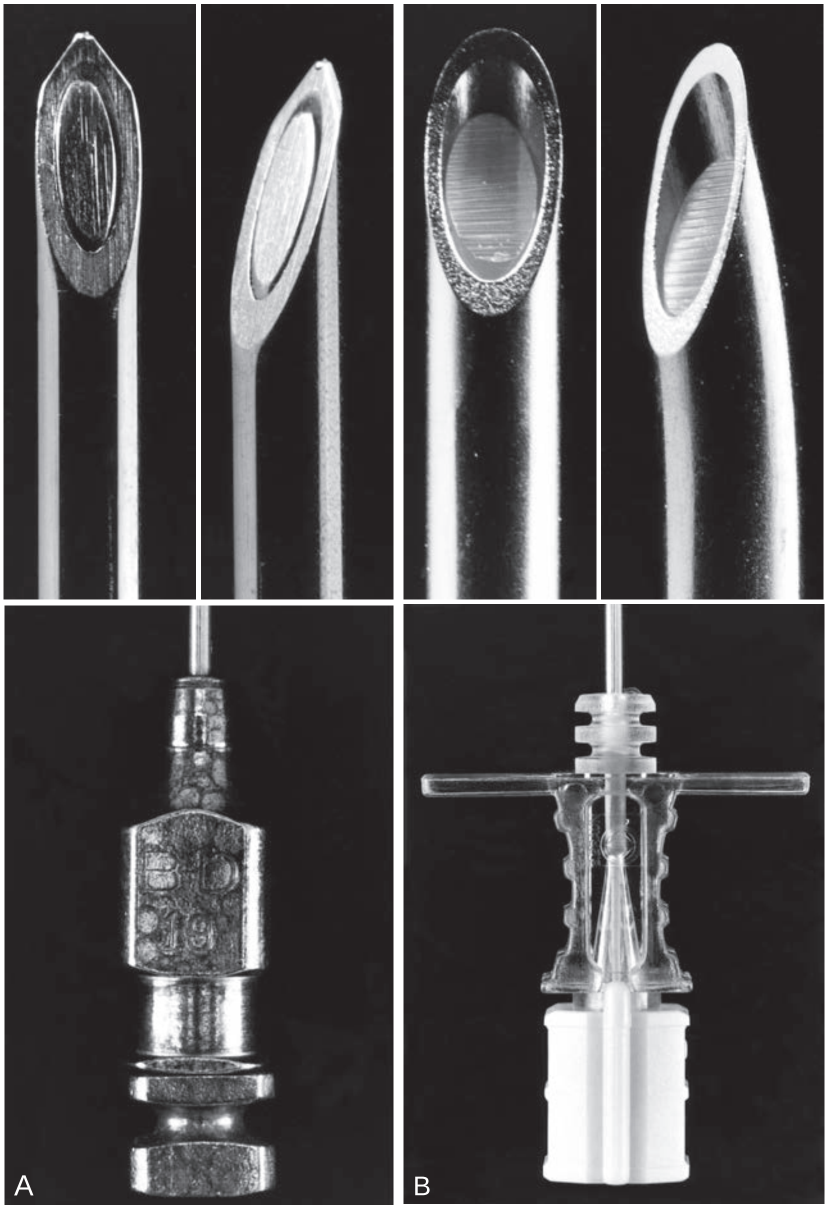


Fig. 45.8 Epidural needles with catheter assortment. (A) A 19-G reusable Crawford epidural needle. (B) A 19-G disposable Tuohy needle. (C) Single–end-hole epidural catheter. (D) Closed-tip, multiple–side-hole catheter. (E) Spring wire–reinforced, polymer-coated epidural catheter.

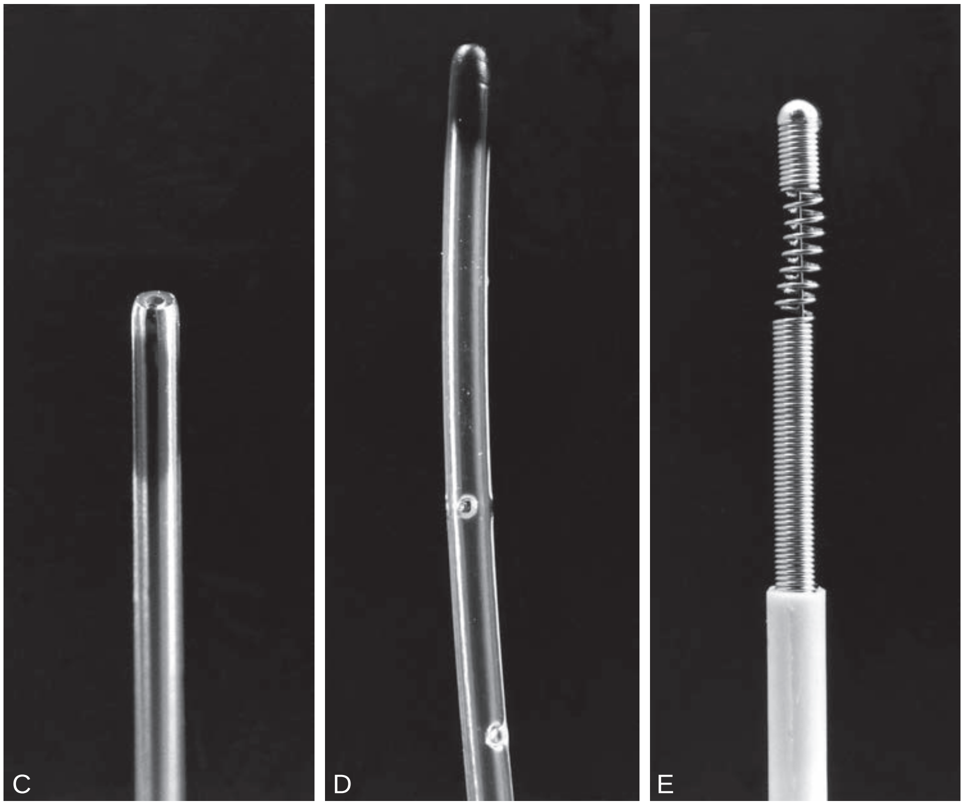


Fig. 45.8, cont'd

TABLE 45.7 Suggested Epidural Insertion Sites for Common Surgical Procedures

Nature of Surgery	Suggested Level of Insertion	Remarks
Hip surgery Lower extremity Obstetric analgesia	Lumbar L2-L5	
Colectomy, anterior resection Upper abdominal surgery	Lower thoracic T6-T8	Spread more cranial than caudal
Thoracic	T2-T6	Midpoint of surgical incision

Modified from Visser WA, Lee RA, Gielen MJ. Factors affecting the distribution of neural blockade by local anesthetics in epidural anesthesia and a comparison of lumbar versus thoracic epidural anesthesia. *Anesth Analg.* 2008;107:708–721.

although there are no data to suggest that approaching the epidural space at the lumbar level is any more or less safe than at the thoracic level. This may be partly because those using the thoracic technique are most often anesthesiologists with considerable experience in lumbar epidural anesthesia.[294] In addition, the increased angle of needle insertion in the thoracic region may theoretically provide an element of safety in that the more acute angle necessary to gain access to the epidural space provides some margin of safety (see Fig. 45.9).

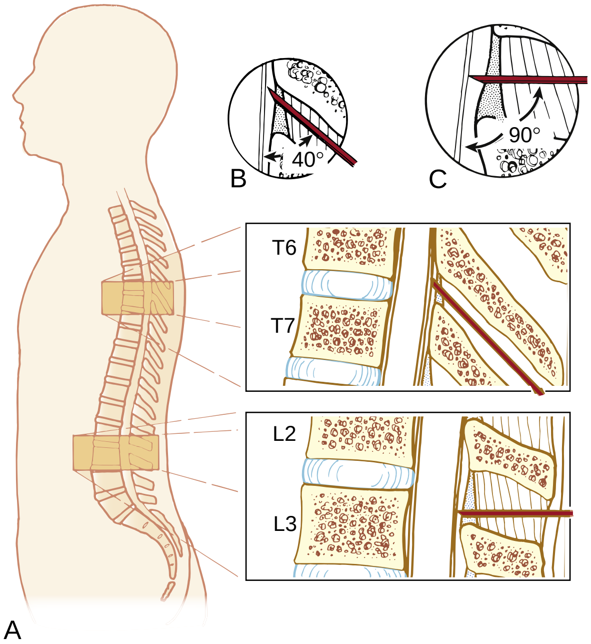


Fig. 45.9 (A) Lumbar and thoracic epidural technique. The increased angle of needle insertion during thoracic epidural cannulation may provide a slightly longer distance of "needle travel" before entering the subarachnoid space. In contrast to lumbar epidural cannulation (B), the distance traveled is modified by a more perpendicular angle of needle insertion (C).

When the epidural space is identified, the depth of the needle at the skin should be noted. The syringe can then be removed and a catheter gently threaded to approximately the 15- to 18-cm mark to ensure a sufficient length has entered the epidural space. The needle can then be carefully withdrawn, and the catheter is withdrawn to leave 4 to 6 cm in the space. Catheter space less than 4 cm in length in the epidural space may increase the risk of catheter dislodgement and inadequate analgesia, whereas threading more catheter may increase the likelihood of catheter malposition or complications.[295-298]

As described earlier, a false loss-of-resistance can occur and is one of the causes of a failed block. The Tsui test may be used to confirm the epidural catheter position.[299] This test stimulates the spinal nerve roots with a low electrical current conducted through normal saline in the epidural space and an electrically conducting catheter. A metal-containing catheter must be used, with the cathode lead of the nerve stimulator connected to the catheter via an electrode adapter, whereas the anode lead is connected to an electrode on the patient's skin. At currents of approximately 1 to 10 mA, corresponding muscle twitches (i.e., intercostal or abdominal wall muscles for thoracic epidural catheters) can be used to identify catheter tip location. Subarachnoid and subdurally positioned epidural catheters elicit motor responses at a much lower threshold current (<1 mA), because the stimulating catheter is in very close or direct contact with highly conductive CSF.[300,301]

When the catheter is positioned at the desired depth, it must be secured to the skin. Commercial fixation devices exist, and some are superior to tape alone.[302] Tunneling can reduce catheter migration and improve lasting block success.[303] However, tunneling has not been compared with noninvasive catheter fixation devices in a well-designed study.

Paramedian Approach

The paramedian approach is particularly useful in the mid- to high-thoracic region, where the angulation of the spine and the narrow spaces render the midline approach problematic. The needle should be inserted 1 to 2 cm lateral to the inferior tip of the spinous process corresponding to the vertebra above the desired interspace. The needle is then advanced horizontally until the lamina is reached and then redirected medially and cephalad to enter the epidural space. The Taylor approach is a modified paramedian approach via the L5-S1 interspace, which may be useful in trauma patients who cannot tolerate or are not able to maintain a sitting position. The needle is inserted 1 cm medial and 1 cm inferior to the posterior superior iliac spine and is angled medially and cephalad at a 45- to 55-degree angle.

Before initiating an epidural local anesthetic infusion, a test dose may be administered. The purpose of this is to exclude intrathecal or intravascular catheter placement. A small volume of lidocaine 1.5% with epinephrine is traditionally used for this purpose. A recent systematic review found reasonable evidence that 10 to 15 µg of epinephrine alone in nonpregnant adult patients was the best pharmacologic method of detecting intravascular placement, using endpoints of an increase in systolic blood pressure more than 15 mm Hg or an increase in heart rate more than 10 beats/min. The optimal method of detecting intrathecal or subdural placement, however, could not be ascertained.[304]

Combined Spinal-Epidural

CSE anesthesia was first described in 1937 but has subsequently been modified over the past 30 years[305-310] and the CSE technique is now seeing increasing popularity. A CSE allows flexibility in a number of clinical settings because the more rapid onset of spinal block compared with epidural anesthesia allows the operative procedure to begin earlier, whereas the epidural catheter still provides both effective postoperative analgesia and allows anesthesia to be extended as the spinal resolves. This is particularly useful during labor, where opioid and a small dose of local anesthetic may be injected through a small spinal needle to provide rapid analgesia, whereas the epidural catheter can be used thereafter for both analgesia and surgical anesthesia if an operative delivery becomes necessary. Another significant advantage of CSE in general is the ability to use a low dose of intrathecal local anesthetic, with the knowledge that the epidural catheter may be used to extend the block if necessary. The addition of either local anesthetic or saline alone to the epidural space via the catheter compresses the dural sac and increases the block height. This latter technique is called epidural volume extension (EVE) and has been shown in cesarean delivery to provide a comparable sensory block to larger doses of intrathecal local anesthetic (with no EVE) but with significantly faster motor recovery.[311] The principle of using a lower dose of spinal anesthetic and titrating the epidural dose after the spinal anesthetic to reach the appropriate block height is a reduction in side effects[312] with faster recovery, which can in turn potentially hasten discharge. This sequential technique also provides greater hemodynamic stability for high-risk patients using a lower initial mass of drug for spinal anesthetic, with subsequent gradual extension of the block if necessary using the epidural.

TECHNIQUE

The CSE technique most commonly involves placement of the epidural needle first, followed by either a "needle through needle" technique to reach the subarachnoid space or an altogether separate spinal needle insertion at either the same or different interspace. Some but not all studies have demonstrated greater success and lower failure rates with the separate needle insertion technique.[313-316] This method has the potential advantage of being able to confirm that the epidural catheter is functional before spinal anesthesia is administered, which, although it is time consuming, may be advantageous if the epidural catheter is to be relied upon for anesthesia when the spinal component resolves. Conversely, this method theoretically risks shearing the epidural catheter that is already in situ. If a needle-through-needle technique is chosen, special CSE kits are available with long spinal needles, some of which can be locked in place for the subarachnoid injection.

Caudal Anesthesia

Caudal anesthesia is popular in pediatric anesthesia (see Chapter 77), but the technique also can be used in adults, although it is unpredictable when upper abdominal or thoracic spread is required. Its indications in adults therefore are essentially the same as those for lumbar epidural anesthesia, although it may be particularly useful when sacral anesthetic spread is desired (e.g., perineal, anal, rectal procedures), where a spinal surgery scar may prevent a lumbar anesthetic technique and, more commonly, in chronic pain and cancer pain management (see Chapter 51). The use of fluoroscopic guidance and, more recently, ultrasonography can help guide correct needle placement and reduce the rate of a failed block.[317] Ultrasonography is of even greater benefit in children because the lack of bony ossification allows visualization of both local anesthetic spread and the position of caudal epidural catheters.[318,319]

PHARMACOLOGY

The local anesthetics used are similar to those described for epidural anesthesia and analgesia. However, in adults approximately twice the lumbar epidural dose is required to achieve a similar block with the caudal approach. The spread is also variable, making this technique in adults unreliable for procedures above the umbilicus.

TECHNIQUE

Patient preparation as described before for spinal and epidural anesthesia must be equally applied to caudal anesthesia, namely consent, monitoring and resuscitation equipment, intravenous access, and the same asepsis precautions. Caudal anesthesia requires identification of the sacral hiatus. The sacrococcygeal ligament (i.e., extension of ligamentum flavum) overlies the sacral hiatus between the two sacral cornua. To facilitate locating the cornua, the posterior superior iliac spines should be located and, by using the line between them as one side of an equilateral triangle, the location of the sacral hiatus should be approximated (Fig. 45.10). Ultrasonography can also be used to identify these landmarks,[317-319] as can fluoroscopy. Three positions (see Chapter 34) are available for caudal anesthesia, with the prone position most often chosen in adults, the lateral decubitus position most chosen in children, and the knee-chest position the most infrequently used. The lateral decubitus position is used in children because it is easier to maintain a patent airway in this position than in the prone position, and the landmarks are more easily palpable than they are in adults (see Chapter 76). This consideration is valuable because caudal anesthesia is often combined with general anesthesia in pediatric patients to decrease the amount of volatile agent used intraoperatively or to provide postoperative analgesia. In contrast, a caudal block is often administered during preoperative sedation in adults and when the prone position is applicable. When placing a patient in the prone position, a pillow should be inserted beneath the iliac crests to rotate the pelvis and make cannulation of the caudal canal easier. An additional aid is to spread the lower extremities about 20 degrees with the heels rotated laterally, which minimizes gluteal muscle contraction and eases needle insertion.

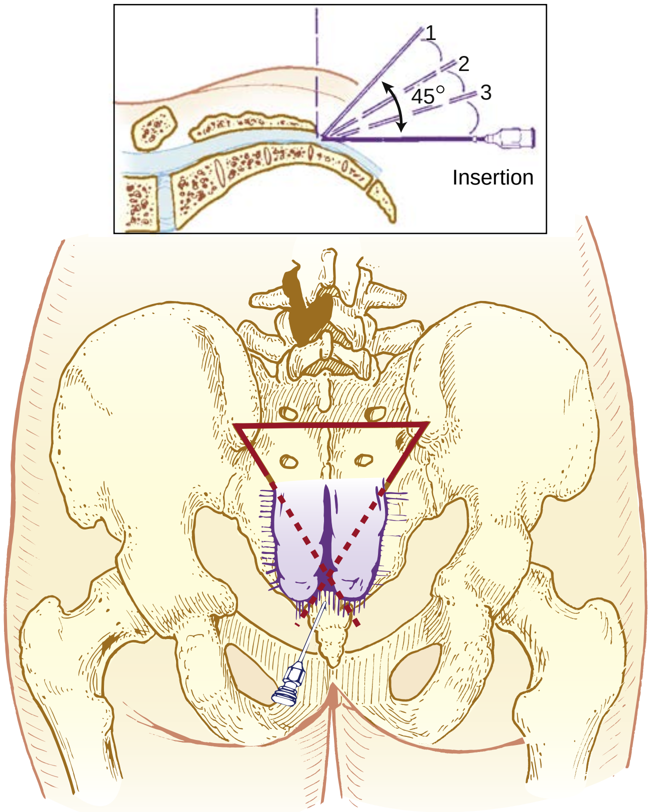


Fig. 45.10 Caudal technique. Palpating fingers locate the sacral cornua by using the equilateral triangle. Needle insertion is completed by insertion and withdrawal in a stepwise fashion (*inset,* so-called 1-2-3 insertion) until the needle can be advanced into the caudal canal and the solution can be injected easily (without creation of a subcutaneous "lump" of fluid).

After the sacral hiatus is identified, the index and middle fingers of the palpating hand are placed on the sacral cornua, and after local infiltration, the caudal needle (or Tuohy needle if a catheter is to be placed) is inserted at an angle of approximately 45 degrees to the sacrum. While the needle is advanced, a decrease in resistance to needle insertion should be appreciated as the needle enters the caudal canal. The needle is advanced until bone (i.e., the dorsal aspect of the ventral plate of the sacrum) is contacted and then is slightly withdrawn, and the needle is redirected so that the angle of insertion relative to the skin surface is decreased. In male patients, this angle is almost parallel to the coronal plane; in female patients, a slightly steeper angle (15 degrees) is necessary. During redirection of the needle, loss-of-resistance is sought to confirm entry into the epidural space, and the needle advanced no more than approximately 1 to 2 cm into the caudal canal. In adults, the tip should never be advanced beyond the S2 level (approximately 1 cm inferior to the posterior superior iliac spine), which is the level to which the dural sac extends. Additional advancement of the needle increases the risk of dural puncture, and unintentional intravascular cannulation becomes more likely. One method of increasing the likelihood of correct caudal needle placement is to inject 5 mL of saline rapidly through the caudal needle while palpating the skin overlying the sacrum. If no midline bulge is detected, the needle is probably positioned correctly. In contrast, if a midline bulge is detected during saline injection, the needle is positioned incorrectly.

After ensuring correct needle position and before injection of the therapeutic dose of caudal anesthetic, aspiration should be performed and a test dose administered because, as in lumbar epidural anesthesia, a vein or the subarachnoid space can be entered unintentionally.

Complications

The physiologic effects of neuraxial blocks may be misinterpreted as complications; however, clear distinction should be made between the physiologic effects of the neuraxial technique and complications, which imply some harm to the patient.[320] The material risks associated with neuraxial anesthesia must be intimately understood and respected because catastrophic injury is not unknown and serves to remind us that a person's nervous system is at the other end of the needle.[321]

NEUROLOGIC

Serious neurologic complications associated with neuraxial anesthesia are rare. As such, prohibitively large numbers of patients are required for study to estimate the frequency of these events. The true incidence of most neurologic injury after neuraxial anesthesia is unknown with published accounts of neurologic complications invariably influenced by the differing identification and reporting processes. The ASRA comprehensively addresses this important topic in their updated Practice Advisory on Neurologic Complications.[76]

Paraplegia

The frequency of paraplegia related to neuraxial anesthesia is reported to be approximately 0.1/10,000,[322,323] and the mechanism of such a severe injury is likely multifactorial and difficult to identify for certain.[324] Although injury resulting from direct needle trauma to the spinal cord[325-329] may be self-evident, historical cases highlight the fundamental danger that accompanies the injection of a foreign substance into the CSF. The highly publicized cases of Woolley and Roe, two healthy, middle-aged men who became paraplegic after spinal anesthesia by the same anesthesiologist using the same drug on the same day for minor surgery at the same hospital in the United Kingdom in 1947, arguably set back the practice of spinal anesthesia for decades despite evidence that contamination by the descaling liquid used to cleanse the procedure tray had most likely been responsible.[4] Another example of catastrophic injury related to intrathecal injectate was the chloroprocaine neurotoxicity experience in the early 1980s, during which several patients developed adhesive arachnoiditis, cauda equina syndrome, or permanent paresis thought to be related to a combination of low pH and the antioxidant sodium bisulfite preservative used in early (and discontinued) preparations of the short-acting ester local anesthetic chloroprocaine.[136-139,330]

Profound hypotension or ischemia of the spinal cord can be important contributing factors in cases of paraplegia associated with neuraxial anesthesia. Anterior spinal artery syndrome, characterized by painless loss of motor and sensory function, is associated with anterior cord ischemia or infarction with sparing of proprioception, which is carried by the posterior column. The anterior cord is believed to be especially vulnerable to ischemic insult because of its single and tenuous source of arterial blood supply (the artery of Adamkiewicz). Ischemia caused by any one or a combination of profound hypotension, mechanical obstruction, vasculopathy, or hemorrhage can contribute to irreversible anterior cord damage.[331-333]

Cauda Equina Syndrome

The rate of cauda equina syndrome is approximately 0.1/10,000 and invariably results in permanent neurologic deficit.[322] The lumbosacral roots of the spinal cord may be particularly vulnerable to direct exposure to large doses of local anesthetic, whether it is administered as a single injection of relatively highly concentrated local anesthetic (e.g., 5% lidocaine)[334] or prolonged exposure to a local anesthetic through a continuous catheter.[5,335,336] The US Food and Drug Administration withdrew approval for spinal catheters smaller than 24-g in size in 1992 because of concerns about a perceived association between the small-bore catheters and the development of cauda equina syndrome.[337] Although small-bore catheters can reduce the risk of headache, they can predispose to pooling of local anesthetic around the lumbosacral nerve roots, possibly because of slow injectate flow through the fine-bore catheter, thereby exposing them to high concentrations of local anesthetic. However, small-bore spinal catheters are being used effectively in Europe, and they are beginning to reappear in the United States, although it has taken nearly 15 years for them to emerge from the regulatory cloud of the early 1990s.[338] Another risk factor for cauda equine syndrome may be spinal stenosis wherein local anesthetic distribution may be limited, thus exposing the cauda equine to higher concentrations of local anesthetic.

Epidural Hematoma

Bleeding within the vertebral canal can cause ischemic compression of the spinal cord and lead to permanent neurologic deficit if not recognized and evacuated expeditiously. Many risk factors have been associated with the development of an epidural hematoma, including difficult or traumatic needle or catheter insertion,[339] coagulopathy, elderly age, and female gender.[340] Radicular back pain, prolonged blockade longer than the expected duration of the neuraxial technique, and bladder or bowel dysfunction are features commonly associated with a space-occupying lesion within the vertebral canal and should prompt magnetic resonance imaging on an urgent basis. Before the recently published United Kingdom National Health Service (NHS) audit, the largest contemporary studies reported rates of epidural hematoma of less than 0.06/10,000 after spinal anesthesia, whereas the reported rates of epidural hematoma after epidural blockade in the audit were as much as 10-fold higher.[294,341-345] The United Kingdom NHS audit arguably provides the most accurate rates of neurologic complications associated with neuraxial anesthesia in contemporary practice. This unique prospective nationwide audit found five cases of epidural hematoma among 707,455 neuraxial techniques (0.07/10,000), all of which occurred among 97,925 perioperative epidural techniques (0.5/10,000) performed over the course of 1 year.[323]

Nerve Injury

In 1955, Vandam and Dripps[346] were the first to capture data prospectively on nerve injury from more than 10,000 patients who underwent spinal anesthesia. No severe neurologic injuries occurred in this population. In 1969, Dawkins[347] published the classic review of neurologic complications after 32,718 epidural anesthetics and reported the frequency of transient and permanent nerve injury to be 0.1% and 0.02%, respectively. Despite interim advances in practice and research methodology, some of the largest contemporary studies available[341,344,348-350] suggest that the rate of neurologic injury related to neuraxial anesthesia is mostly unchanged compared with that reported nearly a half century ago. Most notable from these contemporary data are that epidural (including CSE) anesthesia is likely associated with a more frequent rate of radiculopathy or peripheral neuropathy compared with spinal anesthesia,[322] and that neuraxial anesthesia performed in adults for the purposes of perioperative anesthesia or analgesia is apparently associated with a higher likelihood of neurologic complications compared with that performed in the obstetric, pediatric, and chronic pain settings.[323,341,342,351,352] The rate of permanent nerve injury after neuraxial blockade is even more difficult to determine because methods of investigation and diagnosis, determination of causation, and reporting of outcomes are highly variable within the literature.[353] The United Kingdom NHS audit found the overall rate of permanent nerve injury to be 7 in 707,455 or 0.1/10,000,[323] which is remarkably similar to studies published a half century earlier by Dawkins. Three cases of nerve injury occurred among 293,050 epidurals (0.1/10,000), 3 among 324,950 spinal anesthetics (0.1/10,000), and 1 among 41,875 CSEs (0.2/10,000), mostly in young, healthy patients. Procedure-related risk factors traditionally associated with nerve injury after neuraxial anesthesia in the perioperative setting include radicular pain or paresthesia occurring during the procedure.[321,344,354,355]

Arachnoiditis

Arachnoiditis, an inflammatory reaction of the meninges, is rare after neuraxial anesthesia and its true incidence is unknown. The potential contributory effects of chlorhexidine disinfectant solution has led to the recommendation that chlorhexidine must dry fully before needle puncture,[76] and measures must also be taken to avoid splashing of any chlorhexidine solution onto the needles or syringes, and especially contamination of the injectate drugs.

Post–Dural Puncture Headache

A relatively common complication of neuraxial anesthesia is post–dural puncture headache. As the name implies, post–dural puncture headache is believed to result from unintentional or intentional puncture of the dura membrane in the setting of neuraxial anesthesia or after myelography and diagnostic lumbar puncture. There are two possible explanations for the cause of the headache, neither of which has ever been proven. First, the loss of CSF through the dura is proposed to cause traction on pain-sensitive intracranial structures as the brain loses support and sags. Alternatively, the loss of CSF initiates compensatory yet painful intracerebral vasodilation to offset the reduction in intracranial pressure.[356] The characteristic feature of a post–dural puncture headache is a frontal or occipital headache that worsens with the upright or seated posture and is relieved by lying supine. Associated symptoms can include nausea, vomiting, neck pain, dizziness, tinnitus, diplopia, hearing loss, cortical blindness, cranial nerve palsies, and even seizures. In more than 90% of cases, the onset of characteristic post–dural puncture headache symptoms will begin within 3 days of the procedure,[357] and 66% start within the first 48 hours.[358] Spontaneous resolution usually occurs within 7 days in the majority (72%) of cases, whereas 87% of cases resolve by 6 months.[359]

Post–dural puncture headache can occur in the setting of either spinal or epidural anesthesia, the former associated with certain modifiable risk factors during intentional dural puncture and the latter associated with unintentional puncture of the dura by advancing the Tuohy needle. Orienting a needle bevel parallel with the axis of the spine, such that the longitudinal fibers of the dura would more likely be separated than cut, results in a lower incidence of postspinal puncture headache.[360] This clinical observation is supported by laboratory investigations[361] showing that simulated spinal puncture with cone-shaped (pencil-point) spinal needle tips produces slower transdural loss of fluid than a similar puncture with cutting-tipped needles. Indeed meta-analysis has confirmed that noncutting needle tip designs have a lower frequency of post–dural puncture headache than do cutting spinal needle tip designs.[362] Other studies suggest that the collagen layers of the dura are oriented in a multidirectional fashion, not always in a cephalocaudad direction, and are variable in thickness, leading to the suggestion that damage to the longitudinal cells of the arachnoid membrane is more likely to be influenced by the type of bevel and may even be the predominant factor affecting post–dural puncture headache.[9] Reports vary as to whether the incidence of post–dural puncture headache is increased with the CSE technique compared with epidural alone.[363,364]

Aside from the type of needle tip (cutting vs. pencil-point) and the bevel direction, there are additional risk factors common to the performance of both spinal and epidural anesthesia that contribute to the likelihood of developing a post–dural puncture headache. These risk factors are listed in Box 45.2.[365]

Conservative management for post–dural puncture headache includes supine positioning, hydration, caffeine, and oral analgesics. Sumatriptan has also been used with varying effect but is not without side effects.[366,367] Epidural blood patch is the definitive therapy for post–dural puncture headache.[368] This therapy was introduced by Gormley[369]; its safety and efficacy have been well documented, and contemporary practice has validated that a single epidural blood patch continues to have up to a 90% initial improvement rate[370] and persistent resolution of symptoms in 61% to 75% of cases.[371]

Epidural blood patch is ideally performed 24 hours after dural puncture and after the development of classic

BOX 45.2 Relationships Among Variables and Post–Spinal Puncture Headache

Factors That Can Increase the Incidence of Headache After Spinal Puncture

- Age: Younger, more frequent
- Sex: Females > males
- Needle size: Larger > smaller
- Needle bevel: Less when the needle bevel is placed in the long axis of the neuraxis
- Pregnancy: More when pregnant
- Dural punctures: More with multiple punctures

Factors That Do Not Increase the Incidence of Headache After Spinal Puncture

- Insertion and use of catheters for continuous spinal anesthesia
- Timing of ambulation

post–dural puncture headache symptoms. The efficacy of prophylactic epidural blood patching is not supported by evidence.[372,373] By injecting radionuclide-labeled red blood cells epidurally, Szeinfeld and co-workers[374] demonstrated that approximately 15 mL of blood will spread over a mean distance of nine spinal segments, and that the direction of spread was preferentially cephalad relative to the level of blood injection. As a result, these authors recommend inserting the blood patch needle at or caudad to the level of the previous culprit dural puncture. These findings have since been validated by magnetic resonance imaging of epidural blood patch spread.[375] One multinational, multicenter, randomized, blinded trial suggested that 20 mL of blood is a reasonable starting target volume.[376] A second epidural blood patch may be performed 24 to 48 hours after the first in the case of ineffective or incomplete relief of symptoms.

Transient Neurologic Symptoms

Traditionally associated with lidocaine, TNS have been described after intrathecal administration of every local anesthetic used for spinal anesthesia. TNS, previously known as transient radicular irritation,[377] are usually characterized by bilateral or unilateral pain in the buttocks radiating to the legs or, less commonly, isolated buttock or leg pain. Symptoms occur within 24 hours of the resolution of an otherwise uneventful spinal anesthetic and are not associated with any neurologic deficits or laboratory abnormalities.[378] The pain can range from mild to severe and typically resolves spontaneously in 1 week or less.[379] The likelihood of TNS are highest after intrathecal lidocaine and mepivacaine, and are far less frequent with bupivacaine and other local anesthetics.[147,159,380] The phenomenon is not related to the concentration of lidocaine,[147] the addition of dextrose or epinephrine, or solution osmolarity. The type of needle can influence the likelihood of TNS, with the rate reduced by a double-orifice needle,[381] possibly because single-orifice needles increase the risk of injecting anesthetic caudally in the thecal sac. TNS are not commonly associated with epidural procedures but have occurred with epidural lidocaine and other local anesthetics.[253,382] Finally, TNS occur more commonly in patients who are placed in the lithotomy position for surgery. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs are the first line of treatment, but pain can be severe and may even require opioids.

CARDIOVASCULAR

Hypotension

Hypotension may be considered a complication of neuraxial blockade if the patient faces harm. Recent guidance has placed more emphasis on avoiding hypotension during neuraxial anesthesia (defined as 20%–30% below baseline) in order to reduce the possibility of spinal cord ischemia or infarction.[76] In the setting of spinal anesthesia, hypotension (defined as systolic blood pressure <90 mm Hg) is more likely to occur with a variety of factors including peak block height greater than or equal to T5, age older than or equal to 40 years, baseline systolic blood pressure less than 120 mm Hg, combined spinal and general anesthesia, spinal puncture at or above the L2-L3 interspace, and the addition of phenylephrine to the local anesthetic.[51] Hypotension (defined as a reduction in mean arterial blood pressure >30%) is independently associated with chronic alcohol consumption, history of hypertension, BMI, and the urgency of surgery.[383] Nausea is a common symptom of hypotension in the setting of neuraxial anesthesia, as are vomiting, dizziness, and dyspnea. Although prevention of hypotension caused by vasodilatation using a prophylactic ("preloading") infusion of colloid or crystalloid during the performance of the neuraxial block ("coloading") has been reported,[384] this is no longer recommended as a routine practice.[384]

Bradycardia

The development of severe bradycardia after spinal anesthesia has long been recognized as an important risk of spinal anesthesia.[385,386] Bradycardia stems from blockade of the thoracic sympathetic fibers (preganglionic cardiac accelerator fibers originating at T1-T5), as well as reflexive slowing of the heart rate as vasodilation reduces the venous return to the right atrium where stretch receptors respond by a compensatory slowing of the heart rate. Factors that may increase the likelihood of exaggerated bradycardia (40–50 beats/min) include baseline heart rate less than 60 beats/min, age younger than 37 years, male gender, nonemergency status, β-adrenergic blockade, and prolonged case duration. Severe bradycardia (<40 beats/min) is associated with a baseline heart rate less than 60 beats/min and male gender.[387]

Cardiac Arrest (also see Chapter 87)

In a review of closed insurance claims, Caplan and associates[388] identified 14 cases of sudden cardiac arrest in healthy patients receiving spinal anesthesia. The etiology of sudden cardiac arrest after spinal anesthesia is not understood. Whether these catastrophic events represented lack of vigilant monitoring and treatment as opposed to some mysterious physiologic explanation is not known.[389] The latter notwithstanding, it is clear that hypoxemia and oversedation are complicit in the severe bradycardia and asystole that can occur suddenly during well-conducted spinal anesthesia.[390,391] Curiously, these rare events seem to be preferentially associated with spinal anesthesia rather than epidural techniques. In their inaugural survey of French anesthesiologists, Auroy and colleagues reported the rate of cardiac arrest to be 6.4/10,000 after spinal anesthesia compared with 1/10,000 for all other neuraxial and peripheral regional anesthesia techniques combined.[344] In their larger follow-up survey of all anesthesiologists in France, Auroy and colleagues[350] reported 10 cases of cardiac arrest after 35,439 spinal anesthetics (2.5/10,000) and none after 5561 epidural techniques. Most recently, Cook and colleagues uncovered three cases of cardiovascular collapse among 707,425 neuraxial blocks (0.04/10,000) during their nationwide audit, two of which were during spinal anesthesia and one in the setting of CSE.[323]

RESPIRATORY

Neuraxial opioids are commonly added to local anesthetic solutions to improve the quality and duration of neuraxial anesthesia and analgesia. The risk of respiratory depression associated with neuraxial opioids is dose dependent, with a reported frequency that approaches 3% after the administration of 0.8 mg of intrathecal morphine.[392] Respiratory depression may stem from rostral spread of opioids within the CSF to the chemosensitive respiratory centers in the brainstem.[65] With lipophilic anesthetics, respiratory depression is generally an early phenomenon occurring within the first 30 minutes; respiratory depression has never been described more than 2 hours after the administration of intrathecal fentanyl or sufentanil.[225] With intrathecal morphine, there is a risk of late respiratory depression, occurring as much as 24 hours after injection. Respiratory monitoring for the first 24 hours after the administration of intrathecal morphine is therefore advisable. Patients with sleep apnea can be especially sensitive to the potent respiratory-depressant effects of opioid medications and although definitive safety data evidence is lacking, the decision to administer neuraxial opioids to these patients is made with considerable caution.[393,394] Older patients also have a higher risk of respiratory depression, and the dose of neuraxial opioids should be reduced in this population (see Chapter 65). Coadministration of systemic sedatives also increases this risk.

INFECTION

Bacterial meningitis and epidural abscess are rare, but potentially catastrophic, infectious complications of all neuraxial techniques. Sources of infection in neuraxial procedures include the equipment, the patient, or the practitioner. Staphylococcal infections arising from the patient's skin are one of the most common epidural-related infections, whereas oral bacteria such as *Streptococcus viridans* are a common cause of infection after spinal anesthesia, underscoring the need for the clinician to wear a facemask when performing neuraxial procedures. Other factors that may increase the likelihood of infection include the presence of a concomitant systemic infection, diabetes, immunocompromised states,[90] and prolonged maintenance of an epidural (or spinal) catheter. Large contemporary studies estimate the rate of serious neuraxial infection to be less than 0.3/10,000[341,348,350] for spinal anesthesia, whereas infectious complications after epidural techniques may be at least twice as common.[341,348,350,395-397] Obstetric patients are less likely to develop deep infections related to epidural analgesia. The recent United Kingdom NHS audit reported no cases of meningitis and eight cases of epidural abscess after 707,455 neuraxial techniques, five of which occurred among 293,050 epidural techniques, two among 324,950 spinal anesthetics, and one among 47,550 caudal blocks.[323]

In 2017, the ASA and ASRA published a practice advisory regarding infectious complications associated with neuraxial anesthesia,[229] specifically addressing (1) prevention, (2) diagnosis, and (3) management. Previous publications have addressed infectious risks of neuraxial anesthesia in the febrile or infected patient,[90] the immunocompromised patient,[398] and in the setting of chronic pain treatments.[399]

Aseptic meningitis occurred mostly in the early 20th century, likely secondary to chemical contamination and detergents, which are no longer present in modern preservative-free preparations.

BACKACHE

Back injury is perhaps the most feared complication of neuraxial anesthesia among patients. Evidence indicates that the incidence of back pain after spinal anesthesia is not different from general anesthesia.[400] Indeed, up to 25% of all surgical patients undergoing anesthesia, regardless of anesthetic technique, experience backache, the incidence of which increases to 50% when surgery lasts 4 to 5 hours.[401] There is also no association between epidural analgesia and new-onset back pain up to 6 months postpartum.[402,403] Preexisting back pain does appear to be a risk factor for persistent back pain after neuraxial anesthesia, although the severity of the pain does not appear to be worsened. Other risk factors include immobilization during surgery greater than 2.5 hours, lithotomy position, BMI greater than 32 kg/m^2, and multiple attempts at block placement.[400]

NAUSEA AND VOMITING

There are multiple possible mechanisms that contribute to nausea and vomiting in the setting of neuraxial anesthesia, including direct exposure of the chemoreceptive trigger zone in the brain to emetogenic drugs (e.g., opioids), as well as hypotension associated with generalized vasodilation and gastrointestinal hyperperistalsis secondary to unopposed parasympathetic activity (see also Chapter 80).[404] Although regional anesthesia is often recommended as an alternative to general anesthesia for patients at risk for postoperative nausea and vomiting, there are few studies that have primarily investigated the effects of neuraxial anesthesia on postoperative nausea and vomiting with sufficient statistical power. Factors associated with developing nausea or vomiting after spinal anesthesia include the addition of phenylephrine or epinephrine to the local anesthetic, peak block height greater than or equal to T5, baseline heart rate greater than 60 beats/min, use of procaine, history of motion sickness, and the development of hypotension during spinal anesthesia. Among the opioids commonly added to intrathecal or epidural local anesthetics, morphine administration has the most frequent risk of nausea or vomiting, whereas fentanyl and sufentanil carry the least frequent risk.[404] Neuraxial opioid-related nausea and vomiting appears to be dose dependent. Using less than 0.1 mg morphine reduces the risk of nausea and vomiting, without compromising the analgesic effect.[225]

URINARY RETENTION

Urinary retention can occur in as much as one third of patients after neuraxial anesthesia. Local anesthetic blockade of the S2, S3, and S4 nerve roots inhibits urinary function as the detrusor muscle is weakened. Neuraxial opioids can further complicate urinary function by suppressing detrusor contractility and reducing the sensation of urge.[405] Spontaneous return of normal bladder function is expected once the sensory level decreases to below S2-3.[406] Although male gender and age have been (albeit inconsistently) linked to urinary retention after neuraxial anesthesia, the administration of intrathecal morphine is strongly associated with this complication.[405,407,408]

PRURITUS

Pruritus can be distressing to the patient. It is the most common side effect related to the intrathecal administration of opioids, with rates between 30% and 100%.[225] Pruritus actually occurs more commonly after intrathecal opioid administration than after intravenous opioid administration and is not dependent on the type or dose of opioid administered. Reducing the dose of intrathecal sufentanil from 5 μg to as little as 1.5 μg can reduce the likelihood of pruritus without compromising analgesia when added to hyperbaric bupivacaine for cesarean delivery (see Chapter 62).[409] The mechanism of pruritus is unclear but is likely related to the central opioid receptor activation rather than histamine release because naloxone, naltrexone, or the partial agonist nalbuphine can be used for treatment. Ondansetron and propofol are also useful therapies. Some antiinflammatories have been shown to reduce pruritus (e.g., diclofenac and tenoxicam), while mirtazapine, an antidepressant with $5HT_3$ antagonism properties like ondansetron, may also be helpful if administered preoperatively.

SHIVERING

The rate of shivering related to neuraxial anesthesia is as frequent as 55%.[410] The intensity of shivering is likely related more to epidural anesthesia than spinal.[411] Although there are multiple possible explanations for the difference in shivering intensity, this observation may simply be related to the inability to shiver because of the profound motor block associated with spinal anesthesia compared with epidural techniques. Another explanation may be the relatively cold temperature of the epidural injectate, which can affect the thermosensitive basal sinuses.[410] The addition of neuraxial opioids, specifically fentanyl and meperidine, reduces the likelihood of shivering.[410] Recommended strategies to prevent shivering after neuraxial anesthesia include prewarming the patient with a forced air warmer for at least 15 minutes and avoiding the administration of cold epidural and intravenous fluids.

WRONG ROUTE ADMINISTRATION

Wrong route administration refers to the infusion or injection of a drug into the wrong body compartment. In addition to epidural catheter migration or inadvertent intravascular placement (described below), an epidural infusion may be mistakenly connected to an intravascular device. Using less cardiotoxic local anesthetics may reduce the risk of harm if this does occur. Prevention is paramount and devices have been developed to make regional anesthesia and intravenous connections technically incompatible.

COMPLICATIONS UNIQUE TO EPIDURAL ANESTHESIA

Intravascular Injection

Epidural anesthesia can produce local anesthetic–induced systemic toxicity (see Chapter 29), primarily through the unintentional administration of drug into an epidural vein. The frequency of vascular puncture with the needle or cannulation with the catheter can reportedly approach 10%, with the highest rates seen in the obstetric population, where these vessels are relatively dilated and more vulnerable to entry.[287,412] The rate of seizures related to epidural anesthesia may be as frequent as 1%.[294,344,350] In obstetrics (see also Chapter 62), the likelihood of intravascular injection is decreased by placing the patient in the lateral (as opposed to the sitting) position during needle and catheter insertion, administering fluid through the epidural needle before catheter insertion, using a single-orifice type rather than a multiorifice catheter or a wire-embedded polyurethane type compared with polyamide epidural catheter, and advancing the catheter less than 6 cm into the epidural space. The paramedian as opposed to the midline needle approach, and the use of a smaller-gauge epidural needle or catheter, does not reduce the risk of epidural vein cannulation.[287]

One of the most controversial issues related to epidural anesthesia has been the use of an epinephrine-containing test dose.[413] Epinephrine (15 μg) in 3 mL of local anesthetic remains the best pharmacologic method of detecting intravascular placement in nonpregnant adult patients.[304] However, controversy surrounds the use of epinephrine in obstetric patients, in whom uterine blood flow may be decreased by the intravascular injection, thereby putting the fetus at risk, and where the cardiovascular changes occurring in active labor may represent a false-positive response to epinephrine. Although epinephrine may place the fetus at risk in theory,[414] no such case has been described. The epidural epinephrine test dose can be unreliable in patients receiving β-adrenergic blockers[415] or if the test dose is administered during general anesthesia.[416] Because there is no fail-safe method of guaranteeing an extravascular location of an epidural local anesthetic, prevention of systemic toxicity should also involve aspiration of the catheter and incremental administration of the local anesthetic. The onset of block, quality of the block, and block height are unaffected by administration of the epidural drug in 5-mL fractions.[417]

Subdural Injection

Blomberg[418] used a fiberoptic technique to demonstrate that the subdural extra-arachnoid space is easily entered in 66% of autopsy attempts in humans. Despite this being an infrequent clinical problem with epidural anesthesia (<1%), it does allow a visual understanding of the subdural complications of epidural anesthesia.[419] This space, unlike the epidural space, also extends intracranially. When an epidural block is performed and a higher-than-expected block develops, but only after a delay of 15 to 30 minutes (unlike a total spinal), subdural placement of local anesthetic must be considered. With a subdural block, the motor block will be modest compared to the extent of the sensory block, and the sympathetic block may be exaggerated. The treatment is symptomatic.

COMPLICATIONS UNIQUE TO COMBINED SPINAL-EPIDURALS

The risk of metal toxicity from abraded spinal needle particles using the needle-through-needle technique has not been confirmed.[420]

Outcomes

Although the benefit of properly applied epidural anesthesia and analgesia as an excellent pain relief modality is unquestionable, its effect on postoperative morbidity and mortality is becoming more clear. Early meta-analysis showed a relative risk reduction in overall mortality in patients receiving neuraxial blockade, by as much as 30% in patients undergoing all types of surgery,[421] but these results included studies now over 40 years old, which may not reflect contemporary anesthetic practice. Recent work has focused on large prospective and retrospective database analyses as well as randomized controlled trials with some analyses including over 1 million patients.[422] Although these too must be treated with caution, there still appear to be benefits of neuraxial anesthesia beyond superior analgesia, particularly when neuraxial is used instead of, rather than combined with, general anesthesia.[422a] Furthermore, the specific surgical procedure may also influence outcome and it may be that any benefit is both procedure specific and technique specific (i.e., thoracic epidural may be more advantageous than lumbar epidural, and epidural local anesthetic may be more advantageous than epidural opioid).

As general anesthesia has become safer over the decades, demonstrating a mortality benefit is more challenging. Some large retrospective studies do show a reduction in mortality, but when present, the absolute difference is small. For cardiac surgery, meta-analyses have shown a reduced risk of mortality and myocardial infarction (composite endpoint); a reduced risk for acute renal failure, pulmonary complications, and supraventricular arrhythmia; and reduced duration of postoperative controlled ventilation in patients who received combined intraoperative general anesthesia and TEA.[74,423] For major thoracic and abdominal surgery, thoracic epidural analgesia can reduce mortality, along with reductions in respiratory complications and opioid consumption, and improvements in cough and time to ambulation.[422,424,425] Conversely, there is now some evidence that myocardial infarction rates may be increased when epidural and general anesthesia are combined.[422]

Mortality and morbidity aside, there are other important advantages of neuraxial blockade. For bilateral total knee arthroplasty, neuraxial anesthesia decreases the rate of blood transfusion.[426] In patients undergoing major vascular and abdominal surgery, thoracic epidural local anesthetic infusion can reverse postoperative paralytic ileus associated with pain-induced sympathetic overactivity and systemic opioid.[427] Lumbar epidural infusion or thoracic epidural opioid infusion alone does not speed intestinal function recovery. For fast-track laparoscopic colon resection, thoracic epidural analgesia provides superior pain relief but fails to speed intestinal function recovery or hospital discharge time. In a recent meta-analysis, which compared neuraxial to general anesthesia for all major limb and truncal surgery combined, there was a reduction in length of stay in hospital, but this was measured in hours rather than days.[422]

What are the potential effects of neuraxial anesthesia on stress response, the immune system, and cancer recurrence?[428-430a] Functional cell-mediated immunity is required for monitoring and eradicating cancer cell growth. Lymphocytes, such as the natural killer (NK) cells and the cytotoxic T lymphocytes, can lyse the cancer cell through the perforin and granzyme pathway or through secretion of cytokines (e.g., interferons) to induce cancer cell apoptosis. In addition, the helper T cells control tumor angiogenesis through interferons, inhibit oncogenic signaling, and stimulate tumor destruction by engaging macrophages and granulocytes through interleukin production. There is an inverse relationship between NK cell activity at the time of surgery and the development of metastatic disease. Systemic cancer cell seeding happens during surgical dissection and manipulation. Unfortunately, this happens at a time of significant immunosuppression. Surgically induced stress hormone (e.g., corticosteroids), as well as inhaled volatile anesthetics and systemic opioids (morphine and fentanyl), can diminish NK cell function. Morphine also has proangiogenic properties that may promote dissemination of angiogenesis-dependent tumors. TEA and analgesia may be beneficial by virtue of its opioid and general anesthetic sparing and surgical stress–alleviating properties. Some encouraging data indicate a reduction of cancer recurrence associated with the use of perioperative epidural anesthesia and analgesia in patients undergoing retropubic prostatectomy,[431,432] rectal cancer,[433] and ovarian cancer resection.[434,435] Volatile, but not intravenous, anesthetics have also been shown to have a negative effect on immune function and cancer spread and therefore any benefit of regional anesthesia may simply be due to a reduction or avoidance in the use of volatile anesthetic drugs. In the same manner, this potential effect on the immune system may explain why surgical site infection has been shown to be reduced when using neuraxial compared general anesthesia in some, but not all, studies.[422]

Recent Advances

ULTRASOUND

There is now considerable evidence to support the role of ultrasound imaging for neuraxial blockade, and for lumbar techniques in particular.[436] Ultrasound can accurately identify the intervertebral levels, the midline spinous process, the midline interspinous window, and the paramedian interlaminar window (see also Chapter 46).[233] Bone does not permit ultrasound beam transmission, thus casting a hypoechoic (dark) shadow on the image. Conversely, passage of the ultrasound beam through the interspinous and interlaminar windows allows visualization of the hyperechoic dura (a bright line), the subarachnoid space, and the posterior aspect of the vertebral body. Visualization of the ligamentum flavum and epidural space is often more difficult. Successful transverse or longitudinal scan facilitates identification of the optimal location for proper needle insertion during neuraxial block and an estimation of the skin-to-dura distance. This is particularly useful in patients with difficult surface anatomic landmarks (e.g., obesity), spine pathology (e.g., scoliosis), and previous spine surgery (e.g., laminectomy).[437]

Ultrasound-facilitated neuraxial block involves preprocedure scanning of the spine to determine the best possible intervertebral level and window for needle insertion without actual real-time guidance (a highly challenging technique). Imaging of the lumbar spine is significantly easier than that of the thoracic spine, which has narrow interspinous and interlaminar windows, especially at T5-T8 levels.[438] Ultrasonography in the pediatric population is impressive because the vertebral column with limited ossification not only permits visualization of the spinal canal sonoanatomy, but the inserted needle and catheter tip, dural displacement, and the extent of cranial spread can be visualized during a fluid bolus injection in young infants and children (also see Chapter 77).[439,440] Several outcome studies have confirmed the utility of ultrasonography when neuraxial block is performed by the novice and in patients with difficult anatomic landmarks.[441]

Acknowledgment

The authors thank Cyrus Tse for his assistance in preparing this chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Rigg JRA, et al. *Lancet*. 2002;359(9314):1276.
2. Mandabach MG. *Int Cong Ser*. 2002;1242:163.
3. Franco A, Diz JC. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care*. 2000;11(5):274.
4. Maltby JR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84(1):121.
5. Rigler ML, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(3):275.
6. Horlocker T, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;43:263-309.
7. Bernards CM, Hill HF. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(6):1214.
8. Liu SS, McDonald SB. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(5):888.
9. Bernards CM. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2005;30(1):56.
10. Hogan QH. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(5):767.
11. Zarzur E. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63(5):499.
12. Crighton IM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(4):391.
13. Martirosyan NL, et al. *J Neurosurg Spine*. 2011;15(3):238.
14. Hogan Q, Toth J. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1999;24(4):303.
15. Hogan Q. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(1):37.
16. Hogan QH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(6):1341.
17. Carpenter RL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(1):24.
18. Hogan Q. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27(2):150.
19. Igarashi T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(2):149.
20. Liu S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(1):60.
21. Brull SJ, Greene NM. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69(3):342.
22. Greene NM. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62(11):1013.
23. Cohen EN. *Anesthesiology*. 1968;29(5):1002.
24. Vandenabeele F, et al. *J Anat*. 1996;189(Pt 2):417.
25. Greene NM. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64(7):715.
26. Visser WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(2):708.
27. Higuchi H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(1):106.
28. Butterworth J. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1998;23(4):370; discussion 384.
29. Defalque RJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1962;23:627.
30. Meyhoff CS, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24(9):770.
31. Greene NM. *Physiology of Spinal Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1981.
32. Rooke GA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(1):99.
33. Kopp SL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):855.
34. Crystal GJ, Salem MR. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(3):520.
35. Hackel DB, et al. *Circulation*. 1956;13(1):92.
36. Olausson K, et al. *Circulation*. 1997;96(7):2178.
37. Nygård E, et al. *Circulation*. 2005;111(17):2165.
38. Stanley GD, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1997;22(1):53.
39. Butterworth JF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65(6):612.
40. Moore JM. *Am J Ther*. 2009;16(4):289.
41. Minville V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(4):1291.
42. Kety SS, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1950;29(4):402.
43. Kleinerman J, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1958;37(2):285.
44. Sakura S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82(2):306.
45. Greene NM. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1982;7(2):55.
46. Groeben H. *J Anesth*. 2006;20(4):290.
47. Lirk P, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2010;19(3):287.
48. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94(1):121.
49. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(7):940.
50. Regli A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61(3):215.
51. Carpenter RL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(6):906.
52. Ward RJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1966;45(5):621.
53. Freise H, Fischer LG. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:644.
54. Sutcliffe NP, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1996;51:37.
55. Michelet P, et al. *Chest*. 2005;128:3461.
56. Zügel N, et al. *Chirurgie*. 2002;73:262.
57. Greene N, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1954;140:641.
58. Suleiman MY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(5):1076.
59. Papper EM. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1966;24:105.
60. Breebaart MB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:309.
61. Jellish WS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:559.
62. van Zundert AAJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:682.
63. Denny NM, Selander DE. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:590.
64. Block BM, et al. *JAMA*. 2003;290:2455.
65. Cousins MJ, Mather LE. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:276.
66. Wang JK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:149.

66a. Schug SA, et al. *Acute Pain Management: Scientific Evidence*. 4th ed. Melbourne, 2015, Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists and Faculty of Pain Medicine.

67. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Obstetric Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:843.
68. Hawkins JL. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362:1503.
69. Macfarlane AJR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:335.
70. Macfarlane AJR, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2009;467:2379.
71. Nishimori M, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;3:CD005059.
72. Joshi GP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1026.
73. Svircevic V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:262.
74. Svircevic V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:271.
75. van Lier F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115(2):315.
76. Neal JM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40:401.
77. Hilt H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:676.
78. Upton AR, McComas AJ. *Lancet*. 1973;2:359.
79. Hebl JR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:223.
80. Vercauteren M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55(8):910.
81. Hebl JR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(6):1511.

82. Berkowitz S, Gold MI. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(11):881.
83. Bamford C, et al. *Can J Neurol Sci*. 1978;5(1):41.
84. Perlas A, Chan VWS. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(5):454.
85. McDonald SB. *Reg Anesth Pain Med* 29(5):496.
86. Choi S, Brull R. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(2):648.
87. Ready LB, Helfer D. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71(6):988.
88. Baker AS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1975;293(10):463.
89. Ericsson M, et al. *Scand J Infect Dis*. 1990;22(3):249.
90. Wedel DJ, Horlocker TT. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(4):324.
91. Hocking G, Wildsmith JAW. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93(4):568.
92. Lui AC, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45(4):297.
93. Tetzlaff JE, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1995;20(6):533.
94. Brown DT, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52(6):589.
95. Wildsmith JA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53(3):273.
96. Stienstra R, van Poorten JF. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67(3):272.
97. Sheskey MC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62(10):931.
98. Van Zundert AA, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1996;21(2):112.
99. Henderson DJ, Jones G. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74(5):610.
100. Singh H, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(11):987.
101. Sarantopoulos C, Fassoulaki A. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(1):94.
102. Hartwell BL, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1991;16(1):17.
103. Pitkänen MT. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(2):127.
104. Taivainen T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64(5):542.
105. Nossrin MC. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(3):478.
106. Pitkänen M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56(3):279.
107. Cameron AE, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1981;36(3):318.
108. Niemi L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71(6):807.
109. Povey HM, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1989;33(4):295.
110. GPY Loke, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(2):169.
111. Sinclair CJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1982;54(5):497.
112. Kim J-T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(3):396.
113. Veering BT, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(5):738.
114. Loubert C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(4):811.
115. McShane FJ, et al. *AANA J*. 2000;68(1):67.
116. James KS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;77(2):150.
117. Urmey WF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(2):337.
118. Casati A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(2):355.
119. Chin KW, et al. *Med J Malaysia*. 1994;49(2):142.
120. Logan MR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58(3):292.
121. Sanderson P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73(6):744.
122. Taivainen T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65(2):234.
123. Konishi R, et al. *Masui*. 1997;46(2):184.
124. Veering BT, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;77(3):343.
125. Malinovsky JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(5):1260.
126. Goldblum E, Atchabahian A. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2013;57:545.
127. Salinas FV, Liu SS. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2002;16(2):195.
128. Urmey WF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(3):528.
129. Sanford M, Keating GM. *Drugs*. 2010;70(6):761.
130. Whiteside JB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86(2):241.
131. O'Donnell D, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57(1):32.
132. Zayas VM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(5):1167.
133. Lee YY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:520.
134. McNamee DA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(5):702.
135. Hodgson PS, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25(3):218.
136. Ravindran RS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(6):447.
137. Reisner LS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(6):452.
138. Drasner K. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):549.
139. Taniguchi M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(1):85.
140. Gonter AF, Kopacz DJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):573.
141. Yoos JR, Kopacz DJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):566.
142. Casati A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(4):959.
143. Casati A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(1):234.
144. Hejtmanek MR, Pollock JE. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55(3):267.
145. Pollock JE. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;50(1):93.
146. Vaghadia H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56(2):217.
147. Zaric D, Pace NL. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;2(2):CD003006.
148. Snoeck M. *Local Reg Anesth*. 2012;5:23.
149. Dijkstra T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(1):104.
150. Douglas MJ. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(3):181.
151. Liu S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(4):697.
152. Camponovo C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(2):568.
153. Black AS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(2):183.
154. de Weert K, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55(10):1020.
155. Martínez-Bourio R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(3):624.
156. Climie CR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1967;39(2):155.
157. Liguori GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(3):619.
158. Salazar F, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45(2):240.
159. Salmela L, Aromaa U. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42(7):765.
160. Pawlowski J, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24(2):109.
161. Smith HS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(3A):A193.
162. Abouleish E. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:A375.
163. Caldwell C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(6):804.
164. Kozody R, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1985;32(1):23.
165. Sakura S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(4):771.
166. Moore DC. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(10):743.
167. Casati A, Vinciguerra F. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2002;15(5):543.
168. Ben-David B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(4):716.
169. Kuusniemi KS, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26(1):30.
170. Fanelli G, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47(8):746.
171. Nair GS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(3):307.
172. Frawley G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(5):731.
173. Alley EA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(1):188.
174. Glaser C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(1):194.
175. Bardsley H, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1998;46(3):245.
176. Gristwood RW. *Drug Saf*. 2002;25(3):153.
177. Deleted in proofs.
178. Groban L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(1):37.
179. Polley LS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(4):944.
180. Capogna G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82(3):371.
181. Camorcia M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(3):646.
182. Kallio H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(3):713.
183. Gautier P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91(5):684.
184. Whiteside JB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(3):304.
185. Hamber EA, Viscomi CM. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1999;24(3):255.
186. Meylan N, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(2):156.
187. Murphy PM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(6):1709.
188. Pöpping DM, et al. *Pain*. 2012;153(4):784.
189. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. *Clinical Guideline*. 132 - Caesarean section. http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg132/resources/guidance-caesarean-section.pdf. (Accessed 19.07.14.)
190. Quigley C. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2002;1:CD003447.
191. Nguyen TT, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1994;19:386.
192. Hansen D, Hansen S. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:827.
193. Yu SC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:379.
194. Meininger D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:852.
195. Lee JH, et al. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2011;60(2):103.
196. Dahlgren G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(6):1288.
197. Bucklin BA, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27(1):23.
198. Kim SY, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(5):750.
199. Liu S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80(4):730.
200. Moore DC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(3):416.
201. Leicht CH, Carlson SA. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65(4):365.
202. Kozody R, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1985;32(5):472.
203. Kozody R, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1984;31(5):503.
204. Porter SS, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1985;29(3):330.
205. Vaida GT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65(7):781.
206. Chambers WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61(1):49.
207. Feldman HS, Covino BG, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1986;10(3):133.
208. Concepcion M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63(2):134.
209. Maehara Y, et al. *Hiroshima J Med Sci*. 2001;50(2):47.
210. Eisenach JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(3):655.
211. Dobrydnjov I, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(7):806.
212. De Kock M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(4):574.
213. Dobrydnjov I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(5):1496.
214. Eisenach JC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(3):591.
215. Bedder MD, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1986;33(5):591.
216. Elia N, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(2):159.
217. Kalso EA, et al. *Pharmacol Toxicol*. 1991;68(2):140.
218. Kanazi GE, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50(2):222.
219. Abdallah FW, Brull R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(6):915.
220. Liu SS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(3):710.
221. Xu Z, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(1):107.
222. Eisenach JC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(4):842.
223. Habib AS, Gan TJ. *CNS Drugs*. 2006;20(10):821.
224. Lauretti GR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(4):913.
225. Rathmell JP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(suppl 5):S30.
226. Flaatten H, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44(2):147.
227. Morros-Viñoles C, et al. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 2002;49(9):448.
228. Deleted in proofs.
229. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(4):585.
230. Scott M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(3):456; author reply 456.

231. Sviggum HP, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(2):139.
232. Inglis A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50(4):363.
233. Chin KJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(6):1459.
234. Jaitly VK, Kumar CM. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care*. 2009;20(2):60.
235. Covino B, Scott D. *Handbook of Epidural Anaesthesia and Analgesia*.
236. Puolakka R, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25(6):584.
237. Gudaityte J, et al. *Medicina (Kaunas)*. 2005;41(8):675.
238. Vaghadia H, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48(3):256.
239. Rocco AG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64(9):917.
240. Liu SS, Ware PD. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(1):115.
241. Curatolo M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(6):1517.
242. Bromage PR. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1965;16:55.
243. Hirabayashi Y, Shimizu R. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71(3):445.
244. Duggan J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61(3):324.
245. Fagraeus L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58(2):184.
246. Visser WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(1):268.
247. Visser WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(3):868.
248. Visser WA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(2):332.
249. Seow LT, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1983;11(2):97.
250. Setayesh AR, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48(9):890.
251. Stevens RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(3):492.
252. Brinklov MM. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1977;21(1):5.
253. Wong CA, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1996;21(6):600.
254. Konietzke D, et al. *Reg Anaesth*. 1985;8(4):67.
255. Chahar P, Cummings KC. *J Pain Res*. 2012;5:257.
256. Cox CR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80(3):289.
257. Kopacz DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(3):642.
258. Huang YF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(4):797.
259. McClure JH. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76(2):300.
260. Moller R, Covino BG. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(2):322.
261. Lacassie HJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(1):204.
262. Marinacci AA. *Bull Los Angel Neuro Soc*. 1960;25:170.
263. Niemi G, Breivik H. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(6):1598.
264. Stanton-Hicks M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;39(3):308.
265. Loper KA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70(1):72.
266. Miguel R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(2):346; discussion 25A.
267. Sultan P, et al. *Drugs*. 2011;71:1807.
268. Carvalho B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(1):176.
269. Hartrick CT, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2006;88(2):273.
270. Kroin JS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(2):488.
271. Dobrydnjov I, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(4):538.
272. Milligan KR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(2):393.
273. Farmery AD, Wilson-MacDonald J. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(2):631.
274. Wu C-T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(2):502.
275. De Kock M. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(4):715.
276. Grewal AJ. *Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;27(3):297.
277. Yanli Y, Eren A. *Anaesthesia*. 1996;51(1):84.
278. Himmelseher S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(5):1290.
279. Malinovsky JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(1):109.
280. Roelants F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(6):1205.
281. Park WY, Hagins FM. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 11(3):128.
282. Bokesch PM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(1):9.
283. Morison DH. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(12):1076.
284. Segal S, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9(2):109.
285. Collier CB, Gatt SP. *Reg Anesth*. 1994;19(6):378.
286. D'Angelo R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(6):1276.
287. Mhyre JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(4):1232.
288. Nishi M, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;20(5):656.
289. Grau T, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27(2):200.
290. Sharrock NE. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51(3):253.
291. Schier R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(6):2012.
292. Moon JY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(3):666.
293. Zarzur E. *Anaesthesia*. 1984;39(11):1101.
294. Paech MJ, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 1998;7(1):5.
295. Afshan G, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(10):913.
296. Beilin Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(2):301.
297. D'Angelo R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(1):88.
298. Hamilton CL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(4):778; discussion 29A.
299. Tsui BC, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45(7):640.
300. Tsui BC, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46(7):675.
301. Tsui BC, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47(5):471.
302. Clark MX, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56(9):865.
303. Burstal R, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1998;26(2):147.
304. Guay J. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(3):921.
305. Curelaru I. *Prakt Anaesth*. 1979;14(1):71.
306. Brownridge P. *Anaesthesia*. 1981;36(1):70.
307. Carrie LE. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32(7):595.
308. Dennison B. *Can J Anaesth*. 1987;34(1):105.
309. Rawal N, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32(1):61.
310. Soresi A. *Anesth Analg*. 1937;16:306.
311. Lew E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(3):810.
312. Fan SZ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(3):474.
313. McAndrew CR, Harms P. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2003;31(5):514.
314. Lyons G, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47(3):199.
315. Casati A, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1998;23(4):390.
316. Rawal N, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1997;22(5):406.
317. Chen CPC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(1):181.
318. Roberts SA, Galvez I. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(5):429.
319. Brenner L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(2):229.
320. Mackey D. Physiologic effects of regional block. In: Brown DL, ed. *Regional Anesthesia and Analgesia*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1996.
321. Fettes PDW, Wildsmith JAW. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(6):760.
322. Brull R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(4):965.
323. Cook TM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(2):179.
324. Skouen JS, et al. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 1985;72(4):437.
325. Reynolds F. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55(11):1045.
326. Mayall MF, Calder I. *Anaesthesia*. 1999;54(10):990.
327. Katz N, Hurley R. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77(5):1064.
328. Takii Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(2):513.
329. Kasai T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(1):65.
330. Moore DC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61(2):155.
331. Eastwood DW. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73(1):90.
332. Hong DK, Lawrence HM. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2001;29(1):62.
333. Linz SM, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44(11):1178.
334. Gerancher JC. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(3):687.
335. Drasner K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(4):847.
336. Lambert DH, Hurley RJ. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(6):817.
337. Benson J. *FDA Safety Alert: Cauda Equina Syndrome Associated with the Use of Small-Bore Catheters in Continuous Spinal Anesthesia*. Rockville, MD: Food and Drug Administration; 1992.
338. Förster JG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97(3):393.
339. Vandermeulen EP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(6):1165.
340. Horlocker TT. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51(6):527.
341. Moen V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(4):950.
342. Ruppen W, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(2):394.
343. Horlocker TT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(6):1547.
344. Auroy Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(3):479.
345. Giebler RM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(1):55.
346. Vandam L, Dripps R. *Surgery*. 1955;38(3):463.
347. Dawkins CJ. *Anaesthesia*. 1969;24(4):554.
348. Aromaa U, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41(4):445.
349. Scott DB, Tunstall ME. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 1995;4(3):133.
350. Auroy Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(5):1274.
351. Lee LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(1):143.
352. Wong CA, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2003;101(2):279.
353. Price JM, Carpenter RL. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(3):790.
354. Cheney FW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(4):1062.
355. Reynolds F. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56(3):238.
356. Turnbull DK, Shepherd DB. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91(5):718.
357. Reynolds F. *BMJ*. 1993;306(6882):874.
358. Leibold RA, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1993;22:1863.
359. Vandam L, Dripps R. *J Am Med Assoc*. 1956;161(7):586.
360. Mihic DN. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 10(2):76.
361. Ready LB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69(4):457.
362. Halpern S, Preston R. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(6):1376.
363. Rawal N, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2000;18(2):267.
364. Dunn SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(5):1249.
365. Denny N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(8):791.
366. Connelly NR, et al. *Headache*. 2000;40(4):316.
367. Carp H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(1):180.
368. Harrington BE. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29:136.
369. Gormley JB. *Anesthesiology*. 1960;21:565.
370. Safa-Tisseront V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(2):334.
371. Duffy PJ, Crosby ET, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46(9):878.
372. Scavone BM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(6):1422.
373. Boonmak P, Boonmak S. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010;1:CD001791.
374. Szeinfeld M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64(6):820.
375. Beards SC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71(2):182.

376. Paech MJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(1):126.
377. Hampl KF, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1995;20(5):363.
378. Pollock JE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(2):445.
379. Tarkkila P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74(3):328.
380. Gozdemir M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54(1):59.
381. Evron S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(5):1494.
382. Markey JR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(2):437.
383. Hartmann B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(6):1521.
384. Loubert C. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59(6):604.
385. Thompson KW, Cushing H. *Anesth Analg*. 1934;13:75.
386. Wetstone DL, Wong KC. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41(1):87.
387. Lesser JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(4):859.
388. Caplan RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68(1):5.
389. Zornow M, Scheller M. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:970.
390. Hogan QH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(3):761.
391. Mackey DC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70(5):866.
392. Gwirtz KH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(3):599.
393. Gross JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(5):1081; quiz 1117.
394. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Neuraxial Opioids, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(2):218.
395. Phillips JMG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(5):778.
396. Wang LP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1928.
397. Kindler CH, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42(6):614.
398. Horlocker TT, Wedel DJ. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(4):334.
399. Rathmell JP, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(4):346.
400. Benzon HT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(6):2047.
401. Brown E, Elman D. *Anesth Analg*. 1961;40:683.
402. Dickinson JE, et al. *Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol*. 2002;42(1):59.
403. Breen TW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(1):29.
404. Borgeat A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(2):530.
405. Kuipers PW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(6):1497.
406. Kamphuis ET, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(6):2073.
407. Izard JP, et al. *Can J Urol*. 2006;13(3):3158.
408. Griesdale DEG, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58(12):1097.
409. Demiraran Y, et al. *J Anesth*. 2006;20(4):274.
410. Crowley LJ, Buggy DJ. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(3):241.
411. Saito T, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1998;23(4):418.
412. Bell DN, Leslie K. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35(3):335.
413. Moore DC, Batra MS. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(6):693.
414. Hood DD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64(5):610.
415. Horn M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(3):A268.
416. Liu SS, Carpenter RL. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(1):81.
417. Okutumi T, Hashiba MM. *Reg Anes Pain Med*. 2001;26:450.
418. Blomberg R. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65(7):747.
419. Blomberg RG. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(2):177.
420. Holst D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(2):393.
421. Rodgers A, et al. *BMJ*. 2000;321(7275):1493.
422. Smith LM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(6):1931.
422a. Perlas A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:724.
423. Bignami E, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24(4):586.
424. Pöpping DM, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2008;143(10):990; discussion 1000.
425. Wu CL, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2006;18(7):515.
426. Stundner O, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(6):638.
427. Freise H, Van Aken HK. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(6):859.
428. Tavare AN, et al. *Int J Cancer*. 2012;130(6):1237.
429. Heaney A, Buggy DJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(suppl 1):i17.
430. Snyder GL, Greenberg S. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(2):106.
430a. Sekandarzad MW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1697.
431. Biki B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(2):180.
432. Wuethrich PY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(3):570.
433. Gupta A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(2):164.
434. de Oliveira GS, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2011;36(3):271.
435. Lin L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(6):814.
436. Perlas A, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(2):251.
437. Chin KJ, Chan V. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(1):252.
438. Avramescu S, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(3):349.
439. Triffterer L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(4):670.
440. Tsui BCH, Suresh S. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(3):719.
441. Chin KJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115(1):94.

References

1. Rigg JRA, Jamrozik K, Myles PS, et al. Epidural anaesthesia and analgesia and outcome of major surgery: a randomised trial. *Lancet*. 2002;359(9314):1276–1282.
2. Mandabach M. The early history of spinal anesthesia. *International Congress Series*. 2002:163–168.
3. Franco A, Diz JC. The history of the epidural block. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care*. 2000;11(5):274–276.
4. Maltby JR, Hutter CD, Clayton KC. The Woolley and Roe case. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84(1):121–126.
5. Rigler ML, Drasner K, Krejcie TC, et al. Cauda equina syndrome after continuous spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(3):275–281.
6. Horlocker T, Vandermeulen E, Kopp S, et al. Regional anesthesia in the patient receiving antithrombotic or thrombolytic therapy. American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine Evidence Based Guidelines (Fourth edition). *Reg Anes Pain Med*. 2018;43:263–309.
7. Bernards CM, Hill HF. Morphine and alfentanil permeability through the spinal dura, arachnoid, and pia mater of dogs and monkeys. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(6):1214–1219.
8. Liu SS, McDonald SB. Current issues in spinal anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2001 1;94(5):888
9. Bernards CM. Sophistry in medicine: lessons from the epidural space. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2005;30(1):56–66.
10. Hogan QH. Lumbar epidural anatomy. A new look by cryomicrotome section. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(5):767–775.
11. Zarzur E. Anatomic studies of the human ligamentum flavum. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63(5):499–502.
12. Crighton IM, Barry BP, Hobbs GJ. A study of the anatomy of the caudal space using magnetic resonance imaging. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(4):391–395.
13. Martirosyan NL, Feuerstein JS, Theodore N, et al. Blood supply and vascular reactivity of the spinal cord under normal and pathological conditions. *J Neurosurg Spine*. 2011;15(3):238–251.
14. Hogan Q, Toth J. Anatomy of soft tissues of the spinal canal. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1999;24(4):303–310.
15. Hogan Q. Size of human lower thoracic and lumbosacral nerve roots. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(1):37–42.
16. Hogan QH, Prost R, Kulier A, et al. Magnetic resonance imaging of cerebrospinal fluid volume and the influence of body habitus and abdominal pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(6):1341–1349.
17. Carpenter RL, Hogan QH, Liu SS, et al. Lumbosacral cerebrospinal fluid volume is the primary determinant of sensory block extent and duration during spinal anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(1):24–29.
18. Hogan Q. Distribution of solution in the epidural space: examination by cryomicrotome section. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27(2):150–156.
19. Igarashi T, Hirabayashi Y, Shimizu R, et al. The lumbar extradural structure changes with increasing age. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:149–152.
20. Liu S, Kopacz DJ, Carpenter RL. Quantitative assessment of differential sensory nerve block after lidocaine spinal anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(1):60–63.
21. Brull SJ, Greene NM. Time-courses of zones of differential sensory blockade during spinal anesthesia with hyperbaric tetracaine or bupivacaine. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69(3):342–347.
22. Greene NM. Uptake and elimination of local anesthetics during spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62(11):1013–1024.
23. Cohen EN. Distribution of local anesthetic agents in the neuraxis of the dog. *Anesthesiology*. 1968;29(5):1002–1005.
24. Vandenabeele F, Creemers J, Lambrichts I. Ultrastructure of the human spinal arachnoid mater and dura mater. *J Anat*. 1996;189(Pt 2):417–430.
25. Greene NM. Distribution of local anesthetic solutions within the subarachnoid space. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64(7):715–730.
26. Visser WA, Lee RA, Gielen MJM. Factors affecting the distribution of neural blockade by local anesthetics in epidural anesthesia and a comparison of lumbar versus thoracic epidural anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(2):708–721.
27. Higuchi H, Hirata J-I, Adachi Y, Kazama T. Influence of lumbosacral cerebrospinal fluid density, velocity, and volume on extent and duration of plain bupivacaine spinal anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(1):106–114.
28. Butterworth J. Physiology of spinal anesthesia: what are the implications for management? *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1998;23(4):370–373. discussion 384–7.
29. Defalque RJ. Compared effects of spinal and extradural anesthesia upon the blood pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 1962;23:627–630.
30. Meyhoff CS, Hesselbjerg L, Koscielniak-Nielsen Z, Rasmussen LS. Biphasic cardiac output changes during onset of spinal anaesthesia in elderly patients. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24(9):770–775.
31. Greene NM. *Physiology of Spinal Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1981.
32. Rooke GA, Freund PR, Jacobson AF. Hemodynamic response and change in organ blood volume during spinal anesthesia in elderly men with cardiac disease. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(1):99–105.
33. Kopp SL, Horlocker TT, Warner ME, et al. Cardiac arrest during neuraxial anesthesia: frequency and predisposing factors associated with survival. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):855–865.
34. Crystal GJ, Salem MR. The Bainbridge and the "reverse" Bainbridge reflexes: history, physiology, and clinical relevance. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(3):520–532.
35. Hackel DB, Sancetta SM, Kleinerman J. Effect of hypotension due to spinal anesthesia on coronary blood flow and myocardial metabolism in man. *Circulation*. 1956;13(1):92–97.
36. Olausson K, Magnusdottir H, Lurje L, et al. Anti-ischemic and anti-anginal effects of thoracic epidural anesthesia versus those of conventional medical therapy in the treatment of severe refractory unstable angina pectoris. *Circulation*. 1997;96(7):2178–2182.
37. Nygård E, Kofoed KF, Freiberg J, et al. Effects of high thoracic epidural analgesia on myocardial blood flow in patients with ischemic heart disease. *Circulation*. 2005;111(17):2165–2170.
38. Stanley GD, Pierce ET, Moore WJ, et al. Spinal anesthesia reduces oxygen consumption in diabetic patients prior to peripheral vascular surgery. *Reg Anesth*. 1997;22(1):53–58.
39. Butterworth JF, Piccione W, Berrizbeitia LD, et al. Augmentation of venous return by adrenergic agonists during spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65(6):612–616.
40. Moore JM. Continuous spinal anesthesia. *Am J Ther*. 2009;16 (4):289–294.
41. Minville V, Asehnoune K, Salau S, et al. The effects of spinal anesthesia on cerebral blood flow in the very elderly. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(4):1291–1294.
42. Kety SS, King BD, Horvath SM, et al. The effects of an acute reduction in blood pressure by means of differential spinal sympathetic block on the cerebral circulation of hypertensive patients. *J Clin Invest*. 1950;29(4):402–407.
43. Kleinerman J, Sancetta SM, Hackel DB. Effects of high spinal anesthesia on cerebral circulation and metabolism in man. *J Clin Invest*. 1958;37(2):285–293.
44. Sakura S, Saito Y, Kosaka Y. The effects of epidural anesthesia on ventilatory response to hypercapnia and hypoxia in elderly patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82(2):306–311.
45. Greene NM. Perspectives in spinal anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1982;7(2):55.
46. Groeben H. Epidural anesthesia and pulmonary function. *J Anesth*. 2006;20(4):290–299.
47. Lirk P, Kleber N, Mitterschiffthaler G, et al. Pulmonary effects of bupivacaine, ropivacaine, and levobupivacaine in parturients undergoing spinal anaesthesia for elective caesarean delivery: a randomised controlled study. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2010;19(3):287–292.
48. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, Regli A, Reber A, Schneider MC. Effect of obesity and thoracic epidural analgesia on perioperative spirometry. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94(1):121–127.
49. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, Regli A, Reber A, Schneider MC. Comparison of perioperative spirometric data following spinal or general anaesthesia in normal-weight and overweight gynaecological patients. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(7):940–948.
50. Regli A, von Ungern-Sternberg BS, Reber A, Schneider MC. Impact of spinal anaesthesia on peri-operative lung volumes in obese and morbidly obese female patients. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61(3):215–221.
51. Carpenter RL, Caplan RA, Brown DL, et al. Incidence and risk factors for side effects of spinal anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(6):906–916.
52. Ward RJ, Kennedy WF, Bonica JJ, et al. Experimental evaluation of atropine and vasopressors for the treatment of hypotension of high subarachnoid anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1966;45(5):621–629.
53. Freise H, Fischer LG. Intestinal effects of thoracic epidural anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:644–648.
54. Sutcliffe NP, Mostafa SM, Gannon J, Harper SJ. The effect of epidural blockade on gastric intramucosal pH in the peri-operative period. *Anaesthesia*. 1996;51:37–40.

55. Michelet P, D'Journo X-B, Roch A, et al. Perioperative risk factors for anastomotic leakage after esophagectomy: influence of thoracic epidural analgesia. *Chest*. 2005;128:3461–3466.
56. Zügel N, Bruer C, Breitschaft K, Angster R. Effect of thoracic epidural analgesia on the early postoperative phase after interventions on the gastrointestinal tract. *Chirurgie*. 2002;73:262–268.
57. Greene N, Bunker JP, Kerr WS, et al. Hypotensive spinal anesthesia: respiratory, metabolic, hepatic, renal and cerebral effects. *Ann Surg*. 1954;140:641–651.
58. Suleiman MY, Passannante AN, Onder RL, et al. Alteration of renal blood flow during epidural anesthesia in normal subjects. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(5):1076–1080.
59. Papper EM. Spinal and epidural anesthesia. Effects on renal function. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1966;24:105–110.
60. Breebaart MB, Vercauteren MP, Hoffmann VL, Adriaensen HA. Urinary bladder scanning after day-case arthroscopy under spinal anaesthesia: comparison between lidocaine, ropivacaine, and levobupivacaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:309–313.
61. Jellish WS, Thalji Z, Stevenson K, Shea J. A prospective randomized study comparing short- and intermediate-term perioperative outcome variables after spinal or general anesthesia for lumbar disk and laminectomy surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:559–564.
62. van Zundert AAJ, Stultiens G, Jakimowicz JJ. Laparoscopic cholecystectomy under segmental thoracic spinal anaesthesia: a feasibility study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:682–686.
63. Denny NM, Selander DE. Continuous spinal anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:590–597.
64. Block BM, Liu SS, Rowlingson AJ, et al. Efficacy of postoperative epidural analgesia: a meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2003;290:2455–2463.
65. Cousins MJ, Mather LE. Intrathecal and epidural administration of opioids. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:276–310.
66. Wang JK, Nauss LA, Thomas JE. Pain relief by intrathecally applied morphine in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:149–151.

66a. Schug SA, Palmer GM, Scott DA, et al. Working Group of the Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists and Faculty of Pain Medicine. Acute Pain Management: Scientific Evidence. 4th ed. Melbourne, 2015, Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists and Faculty of Pain Medicine.

67. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Obstetric Anesthesia. Practice guidelines for obstetric anesthesia: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Obstetric Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:843–863.
68. Hawkins JL. Epidural analgesia for labor and delivery. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362:1503–1510.
69. Macfarlane AJR, Prasad GA, Chan VWS, Brull R. Does regional anaesthesia improve outcome after total hip arthroplasty? A systematic review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:335–345.
70. Macfarlane AJR, Prasad GA, Chan VWS, Brull R. Does regional anesthesia improve outcome after total knee arthroplasty? *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2009;467:2379–2402.
71. Nishimori M, Ballantyne JC, Low JHS. Epidural pain relief versus systemic opioid-based pain relief for abdominal aortic surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;3(3):CD005059.
72. Joshi GP, Bonnet F, Shah R, et al. A systematic review of randomized trials evaluating regional techniques for postthoracotomy analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1026–1040.
73. Svircevic V, Nierich AP, Moons KGM, et al. Thoracic epidural anesthesia for cardiac surgery: a randomized trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:262–270.
74. Svircevic V, van Dijk D, Nierich AP, et al. Meta-analysis of thoracic epidural anesthesia versus general anesthesia for cardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:271–282.
75. van Lier F, van der Geest PJ, Hoeks SE, et al. Epidural analgesia is associated with improved health outcomes of surgical patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:315–321.
76. Neal JM, Barrington MJ, Brull R, et al. The second ASRA practice advisory on neurologic complications in regional anesthesia and pain medicine. *Reg Anes Pain Med*. 2015;40:401–430.
77. Hilt H, Gramm HJ, Link J. Changes in intracranial pressure associated with extradural anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:676–680.
78. Upton AR, McComas AJ. The double crush in nerve entrapment syndromes. *Lancet*. 1973;2:359–362.
79. Hebl JR, Horlocker TT, Schroeder DR. Neuraxial anesthesia and analgesia in patients with preexisting central nervous system disorders. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:223–228.
80. Vercauteren M, Waets P, Pitkänen M, Förster J. Neuraxial techniques in patients with pre-existing back impairment or prior spine interventions: a topical review with special reference to obstetrics. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55(8):910–917.
81. Hebl JR, Horlocker TT, Kopp SL, Schroeder DR. Neuraxial blockade in patients with preexisting spinal stenosis, lumbar disk disease, or prior spine surgery: efficacy and neurologic complications. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(6):1511–1519.
82. Berkowitz S, Gold MI. Spinal anesthesia for surgery in patients with previous lumbar laminectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(11):881–882.
83. Bamford C, Sibley W, Laguna J. Anesthesia in multiple sclerosis. *Can J Neurol Sci*. 1978;5(1):41–44.
84. Perlas A, Chan VWS. Neuraxial anesthesia and multiple sclerosis. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(5):454–458.
85. McDonald SB. Is neuraxial blockade contraindicated in the patient with aortic stenosis? *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29(5):496–502.
86. Choi S, Brull R. Neuraxial techniques in obstetric and non-obstetric patients with common bleeding diatheses. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(2):648–660.
87. Ready LB, Helfer D. Bacterial meningitis in parturients after epidural anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71(6):988–990.
88. Baker AS, Ojemann RG, Swartz MN, Richardson EP. Spinal epidural abscess. *N Engl J Med*. 1975;293(10):463–468.
89. Ericsson M, Algers G, Schliamser SE. Spinal epidural abscesses in adults: review and report of iatrogenic cases. *Scand J Infect Dis*. 1990;22(3):249–257.
90. Wedel DJ, Horlocker TT. Regional anesthesia in the febrile or infected patient. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(4):324–333.
91. Hocking G, Wildsmith JAW. Intrathecal drug spread. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93(4):568–578.
92. Lui AC, Polis TZ, Cicutti NJ. Densities of cerebrospinal fluid and spinal anaesthetic solutions in surgical patients at body temperature. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45(4):297–303.
93. Tetzlaff JE, O'Hara J, Bell G, et al. Influence of baricity on the outcome of spinal anesthesia with bupivacaine for lumbar spine surgery. *Reg Anesth*. 1995;20(6):533–537.
94. Brown DT, Wildsmith JA, Covino BG, Scott DB. Effect of baricity on spinal anaesthesia with amethocaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1980;52(6):589–596.
95. Wildsmith JA, McClure JH, Brown DT, Scott DB. Effects of posture on the spread of isobaric and hyperbaric amethocaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53(3):273–278.
96. Stienstra R, van Poorten JF. The temperature of bupivacaine 0.5% affects the sensory level of spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67(3):272–276.
97. Sheskey MC, Rocco AG, Bizzarri-Schmid M, et al. A dose-response study of bupivacaine for spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62(10):931–935.
98. Van Zundert AA, Grouls RJ, Korsten HH, Lambert DH. Spinal anesthesia. Volume or concentration–what matters? *Reg Anesth*. 1996;21(2):112–118.
99. Henderson DJ, Jones G. Effect of i.v. diamorphine on the regression of spinal block. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74(5):610–611.
100. Singh H, Yang J, Thornton K, Giesecke AH. Intrathecal fentanyl prolongs sensory bupivacaine spinal block. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(11):987–991.
101. Sarantopoulos C, Fassoulaki A. Systemic opioids enhance the spread of sensory analgesia produced by intrathecal lidocaine. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(1):94–97.
102. Hartwell BL, Aglio LS, Hauch MA, Datta S. Vertebral column length and spread of hyperbaric subarachnoid bupivacaine in the term parturient. *Reg Anesth*. 1991;16(1):17–19.
103. Pitkänen MT. Body mass and spread of spinal anesthesia with bupivacaine. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(2):127–131.
104. Taivainen T, Tuominen M, Rosenberg PH. Influence of obesity on the spread of spinal analgesia after injection of plain 0.5% bupivacaine at the L3-4 or L4-5 interspace. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64(5):542–546.
105. Norris MC. Patient variables and the subarachnoid spread of hyperbaric bupivacaine in the term parturient. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(3):478–482.
106. Pitkänen M, Haapaniemi L, Tuominen M, Rosenberg PH. Influence of age on spinal anaesthesia with isobaric 0.5% bupivacaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1984;56(3):279–284.
107. Cameron AE, Arnold RW, Ghorisa MW, Jamieson V. Spinal analgesia using bupivacaine 0.5% plain. Variation in the extent of the block with patient age. *Anaesthesia*. 1981;36(3):318–322.

108. Niemi L, Tuominen M, Pitkänen M, Rosenberg PH. Effect of late posture change on the level of spinal anaesthesia with plain bupivacaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71(6):807–809.
109. Povey HM, Jacobsen J, Westergaard-Nielsen J. Subarachnoid analgesia with hyperbaric 0.5% bupivacaine: effect of a 60-min period of sitting. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1989;33(4):295–297.
110. Loke GPY, Chan EHY, Sia ATH. The effect of 10 degrees head-up tilt in the right lateral position on the systemic blood pressure after subarachnoid block for caesarean section. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(2):169–172.
111. Sinclair CJ, Scott DB, Edström HH. Effect of the Trendelenberg position on spinal anaesthesia with hyperbaric bupivacaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1982;54(5):497–500.
112. Kim J-T, Shim J-K, Kim S-H, et al. Trendelenburg position with hip flexion as a rescue strategy to increase spinal anaesthetic level after spinal block. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(3):396–400.
113. Veering BT, Immink-Speet TT, Burm AG, et al. Spinal anaesthesia with 0.5% hyperbaric bupivacaine in elderly patients: effects of duration spent in the sitting position. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(5):738–742.
114. Loubert C, Hallworth S, Fernando R, et al. Does the baricity of bupivacaine influence intrathecal spread in the prolonged sitting position before elective cesarean delivery? A prospective randomized controlled study. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(4):811–817.
115. McShane FJ, Burgos N, Kapp M, Wieczorek C. Influence of Whitacre spinal needle orifice direction on the level of sensory blockade. *AANA J*. 2000;68(1):67–72.
116. James KS, Stott SM, McGrady EM, et al. Spinal anaesthesia for caesarean section: effect of Sprotte needle orientation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;77(2):150–152.
117. Urmey WF, Stanton J, Bassin P, Sharrock NE. The direction of the Whitacre needle aperture affects the extent and duration of isobaric spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(2):337–341.
118. Casati A, Fanelli G, Cappelleri G, et al. Effects of spinal needle type on lateral distribution of 0.5% hyperbaric bupivacaine. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(2):355–359.
119. Chin KW, Chin NM, Chin MK. Spread of spinal anaesthesia with 0.5% bupivacaine: influence of the vertebral interspace and speed of injection. *Med J Malaysia*. 1994;49(2):142–148.
120. Logan MR, McClure JH, Wildsmith JA. Plain bupivacaine: an unpredictable spinal anaesthetic agent. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58(3):292–296.
121. Sanderson P, Read J, Littlewood DG, et al. Interaction between baricity (glucose concentration) and other factors influencing intrathecal drug spread. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73(6):744–746.
122. Taivainen T, Tuominen M, Rosenberg PH. Spinal anaesthesia with hypobaric 0.19% or plain 0.5% bupivacaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65(2):234–236.
123. Konishi R, Mitsuhata H, Saitoh J, et al. The spread of subarachnoid hyperbaric dibucaine in the term parturient. *Masui*. 1997;46(2):184–187.
124. Veering BT, Riet Ter PM, Burm AG, et al. Spinal anaesthesia with 0.5% hyperbaric bupivacaine in elderly patients: effect of site of injection on spread of analgesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;77(3):343–346.
125. Malinovsky JM, Renaud G, Le Corre P, et al. Intrathecal bupivacaine in humans: influence of volume and baricity of solutions. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(5):1260–1266.
126. Goldblum E, Atchabahian A. The use of 2-chloroprocaine for spinal anaesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2013;57:545–552.
127. Salinas FV, Liu SS. Spinal anaesthesia: local anaesthetics and adjuncts in the ambulatory setting. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2002;16(2):195–210.
128. Urmey WF, Stanton J, Peterson M, Sharrock NE. Combined spinal-epidural anesthesia for outpatient surgery. Dose-response characteristics of intrathecal isobaric lidocaine using a 27-gauge Whitacre spinal needle. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(3):528–534.
129. Sanford M, Keating GM. Levobupivacaine: a review of its use in regional anaesthesia and pain management. *Drugs*. 2010;70(6):761–791.
130. Whiteside JB, Burke D, Wildsmith JA. Spinal anaesthesia with ropivacaine 5 mg ml(-1) in glucose 10 mg ml(-1) or 50 mg ml(-1). *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86(2):241–244.
131. O'Donnell D, Manickam B, Perlas A, et al. Spinal mepivacaine with fentanyl for outpatient knee arthroscopy surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *Can J Anesth*. 2010;57(1):32–38.
132. Zayas VM, Liguori GA, Chisholm MF, et al. Dose response relationships for isobaric spinal mepivacaine using the combined spinal epidural technique. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(5):1167–1171.
133. Lee YY, Ngan Kee W, Chang HK, et al. Spinal ropivacaine for lower limb surgery: a dose–response study. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:520–523.
134. McNamee DA, McClelland AM, Scott S, et al. Spinal anaesthesia: comparison of plain ropivacaine 5 mg ml(-1) with bupivacaine 5 mg ml(-1) for major orthopaedic surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(5):702–706.
135. Hodgson PS, Liu SS, Batra MS, et al. Procaine compared with lidocaine for incidence of transient neurologic symptoms. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25(3):218–222.
136. Ravindran RS, Bond VK, Tasch MD, et al. Prolonged neural blockade following regional analgesia with 2-chloroprocaine. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(6):447–451.
137. Reisner LS, Hochman BN, Plumer MH. Persistent neurologic deficit and adhesive arachnoiditis following intrathecal 2-chloroprocaine injection. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(6):452–454.
138. Drasner K. Chloroprocaine spinal anesthesia: back to the future? *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):549–552.
139. Taniguchi M, Bollen AW, Drasner K. Sodium bisulfite: scapegoat for chloroprocaine neurotoxicity? *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(1):85–91.
140. Gonter AF, Kopacz DJ. Spinal 2-chloroprocaine: a comparison with procaine in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):573–579.
141. Yoos JR, Kopacz DJ. Spinal 2-chloroprocaine: a comparison with small-dose bupivacaine in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):566–572.
142. Casati A, Fanelli G, Danelli G, et al. Spinal anesthesia with lidocaine or preservative-free 2-chlorprocaine for outpatient knee arthroscopy: a prospective, randomized, double-blind comparison. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(4):959–964.
143. Casati A, Danelli G, Berti M, et al. Intrathecal 2-chloroprocaine for lower limb outpatient surgery: a prospective, randomized, double-blind, clinical evaluation. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(1):234–238.
144. Hejtmanek MR, Pollock JE. Chloroprocaine for spinal anesthesia: a retrospective analysis. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55(3):267–272.
145. Pollock JE. Intrathecal chloroprocaine–not yet "safe" by US FDA parameters. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;50(1):93–100.
146. Vaghadia H, Neilson G, Lennox PH. Selective spinal anesthesia for outpatient transurethral prostatectomy (TURP): randomized controlled comparison of chloroprocaine with lidocaine. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56(2):217–223.
147. Zaric D, Pace NL. Transient neurologic symptoms (TNS) following spinal anaesthesia with lidocaine versus other local anaesthetics. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;2:CD003006.
148. Snoeck M. Articaine: a review of its use for local and regional anesthesia. *Local Reg Anesth*. 2012;5:23.
149. Dijkstra T, Reesink JA, Verdouw BC, et al. Spinal anaesthesia with articaine 5% vs bupivacaine 0.5% for day-case lower limb surgery: a double-blind randomized clinical trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(1):104–108.
150. Douglas MJ. Neurotoxicity of lidocaine–does it exist? *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(3):181–185.
151. Liu S, Pollock JE, Mulroy MF, et al. Comparison of 5% with dextrose, 1.5% with dextrose, and 1.5% dextrose-free lidocaine solutions for spinal anesthesia in human volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(4):697–702.
152. Camponovo C, Fanelli A, Ghisi D, et al. A prospective, double-blinded, randomized, clinical trial comparing the efficacy of 40 mg and 60 mg hyperbaric 2% prilocaine versus 60 mg plain 2% prilocaine for intrathecal anesthesia in ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(2):568–572.
153. Black AS, Newcombe GN, Plummer JL, et al. Spinal anaesthesia for ambulatory arthroscopic surgery of the knee: a comparison of low-dose prilocaine and fentanyl with bupivacaine and fentanyl. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(2):183–188.
154. de Weert K, Traksel M, Gielen M, et al. The incidence of transient neurological symptoms after spinal anaesthesia with lidocaine compared to prilocaine. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55(10):1020–1024.
155. Martínez-Bourio R, Arzuaga M, Quintana JM, et al. Incidence of transient neurologic symptoms after hyperbaric subarachnoid anesthesia with 5% lidocaine and 5% prilocaine. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(3):624–628.
156. Climie CR, McLean S, Starmer GA, Thomas J. Methaemoglobinaemia in mother and foetus following continuous epidural analgesia with prilocaine. Clinical and experimental data. *Br J Anaesth*. 1967;39(2):155–160.
157. Liguori GA, Zayas VM, Chisholm MF. Transient neurologic symptoms after spinal anesthesia with mepivacaine and lidocaine. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(3):619–623.

158. Salazar F, Bogdanovich A, Adalia R, et al. Transient neurologic symptoms after spinal anaesthesia using isobaric 2% mepivacaine and isobaric 2% lidocaine. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45(2):240–245.
159. Salmela L, Aromaa U. Transient radicular irritation after spinal anesthesia induced with hyperbaric solutions of cerebrospinal fluid-diluted lidocaine 50 mg/ml or mepivacaine 40 mg/ml or bupivacaine 5 mg/ml. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42(7):765–769.
160. Pawlowski J, Orr K, Kim K-M, et al. Anesthetic and recovery profiles of lidocaine versus mepivacaine for spinal anesthesia in patients undergoing outpatient orthopedic arthroscopic procedures. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24(2):109–115.
161. Smith HS, Carpenter RL, Bridenbaugh LD. Failure rate of tetracaine spinal anesthesia with and without epinephrine. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:A193.
162. Abouleish E. Epinephrine improves the quality of spinal anesthesia of bupivacaine. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:A375.
163. Caldwell C, Nielsen C, Baltz T, et al. Comparison of high-dose epinephrine and phenylephrine in spinal anesthesia with tetracaine. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(6):804–807.
164. Kozody R, Palahniuk RJ, Cumming MO. Spinal cord blood flow following subarachnoid tetracaine. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1985;32(1):23–29.
165. Sakura S, Sumi M, Sakaguchi Y, et al. The addition of phenylephrine contributes to the development of transient neurologic symptoms after spinal anesthesia with 0.5% tetracaine. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(4):771–778.
166. Moore DC. Spinal anesthesia: bupivacaine compared with tetracaine. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(10):743–750.
167. Casati A, Vinciguerra F. Intrathecal anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2002;15(5):543–551.
168. Ben-David B, Levin H, Solomon E, et al. Spinal bupivacaine in ambulatory surgery: the effect of saline dilution. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(4):716–720.
169. Kuusniemi KS, Pihlajamäki KK, Kirvelä OA, Korkeila JE. Spinal anesthesia with hypobaric bupivacaine for knee arthroscopies: effect of posture on motor block. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26(1):30–34.
170. Fanelli G, Borghi B, Casati A, et al. Unilateral bupivacaine spinal anesthesia for outpatient knee arthroscopy. Italian study group on unilateral spinal anesthesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47(8):746–751.
171. Nair GS, Abrishami A, Lermitte J, Chung F. Systematic review of spinal anaesthesia using bupivacaine for ambulatory knee arthroscopy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(3):307–315.
172. Frawley G, Smith KR, Ingelmo P. Relative potencies of bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, and ropivacaine for neonatal spinal anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(5):731–738.
173. Alley EA, Kopacz DJ, McDonald SB, Liu SS. Hyperbaric spinal levobupivacaine: a comparison to racemic bupivacaine in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(1):188–193.
174. Glaser C, Marhofer P, Zimpfer G, et al. Levobupivacaine versus racemic bupivacaine for spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(1):194–198.
175. Bardsley H, Gristwood R, Baker H, et al. A comparison of the cardiovascular effects of levobupivacaine and rac-bupivacaine following intravenous administration to healthy volunteers. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 1998;46(3):245–249.
176. Gristwood RW. Cardiac and CNS toxicity of levobupivacaine: strengths of evidence for advantage over bupivacaine. *Drug Safety*. 2002;25(3):153–163.
177. Deleted in proofs.
178. Groban L, Deal DD, Vernon JC, et al. Cardiac resuscitation after incremental overdosage with lidocaine, bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, and ropivacaine in anesthetized dogs. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(1):37–43.
179. Polley LS, Columb MO, Naughton NN, et al. Relative analgesic potencies of ropivacaine and bupivacaine for epidural analgesia in labor: implications for therapeutic indexes. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(4):944–950.
180. Capogna G, Celleno D, Fusco P, et al. Relative potencies of bupivacaine and ropivacaine for analgesia in labour. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82(3):371–373.
181. Camorcia M, Capogna G, Columb MO. Minimum local analgesic doses of ropivacaine, levobupivacaine, and bupivacaine for intrathecal labor analgesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(3):646–650.
182. Kallio H, Snäll E-VT, Kero MP, Rosenberg PH. A comparison of intrathecal plain solutions containing ropivacaine 20 or 15 mg versus bupivacaine 10 mg. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(3):713–717.
183. Gautier P, De Kock M, Huberty L, et al. comparison of the effects of intrathecal ropivacaine, levobupivacaine, and bupivacaine for caesarean section. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91(5):684–689.
184. Whiteside JB, Burke D, Wildsmith JAW. Comparison of ropivacaine 0.5% (in glucose 5%) with bupivacaine 0.5% (in glucose 8%) for spinal anaesthesia for elective surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(3):304–308.
185. Hamber EA, Viscomi CM. Intrathecal lipophilic opioids as adjuncts to surgical spinal anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1999;24(3):255–263.
186. Meylan N, Elia N, Lysakowski C, Tramèr MR. Benefit and risk of intrathecal morphine without local anaesthetic in patients undergoing major surgery: meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(2):156–167.
187. Murphy PM, Stack D, Kinirons B, Laffey JG. Optimizing the dose of intrathecal morphine in older patients undergoing hip arthroplasty. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(6):1709–1715.
188. Pöpping DM, Elia N, Marret E, et al. Opioids added to local anesthetics for single-shot intrathecal anesthesia in patients undergoing minor surgery: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Pain*. 2012;153(4):784–793.
189. National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health: Clinical Guideline 13-caesarean section. http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/CG013NICEguideline.pdf. Accessed 19.07.14.
190. Quigley C. Hydromorphone for acute and chronic pain. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2002;1:CD003447.
191. Nguyen TT, Orliaguet G, Ngû TH, Bonnet F. Spinal anesthesia with meperidine as the sole agent for cesarean delivery. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1994;19:386–389.
192. Hansen D, Hansen S. The effects of three graded doses of meperidine for spinal anesthesia in African men. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:827–830.
193. Yu SC, Ngan Kee W, Kwan A. Addition of meperidine to bupivacaine for spinal anaesthesia for caesarean section. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:379–383.
194. Meininger D, Byhahn C, Kessler P, et al. Intrathecal fentanyl, sufentanil, or placebo combined with hyperbaric mepivacaine 2% for parturients undergoing elective cesarean delivery. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:852–858.
195. Lee JH, Chung KH, Lee JY, et al. Comparison of fentanyl and sufentanil added to 0.5% hyperbaric bupivacaine for spinal anesthesia in patients undergoing cesarean section. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2011;60(2):103–108.
196. Dahlgren G, Hultstrand C, Jakobsson J, et al. Intrathecal sufentanil, fentanyl, or placebo added to bupivacaine for cesarean section. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(6):1288–1293.
197. Bucklin BA, Chestnut DH, Hawkins JL. Intrathecal opioids versus epidural local anesthetics for labor analgesia: a meta-analysis. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27(1):23–30.
198. Kim SY, Cho JE, Hong JY, et al. Comparison of intrathecal fentanyl and sufentanil in low-dose dilute bupivacaine spinal anaesthesia for transurethral prostatectomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(5):750–754.
199. Liu S, Chiu AA, Carpenter RL, et al. Fentanyl prolongs lidocaine spinal anesthesia without prolonging recovery. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80(4):730–734.
200. Moore DC, Chadwick HS, Ready LB. Epinephrine prolongs lidocaine spinal: pain in the operative site the most accurate method of determining local anesthetic duration. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(3):416–418.
201. Leicht CH, Carlson SA. Prolongation of lidocaine spinal anesthesia with epinephrine and phenylephrine. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65(4):365–369.
202. Kozody R, Swartz J, Palahniuk RJ, et al. Spinal cord blood flow following sub-arachnoid lidocaine. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1985;32(5):472–478.
203. Kozody R, Palahniuk RJ, Wade JG, et al. The effect of subarachnoid epinephrine and phenylephrine on spinal cord blood flow. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1984;31(5):503–508.
204. Porter SS, Albin MS, Watson WA, et al. Spinal cord and cerebral blood flow responses to subarachnoid injection of local anesthetics with and without epinephrine. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1985;29(3):330–338.

205. Vaida GT, Moss P, Capan LM, Turndorf H. Prolongation of lidocaine spinal anesthesia with phenylephrine. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65(7):781–785.
206. Chambers WA, Littlewood DG, Scott DB. Spinal anesthesia with hyperbaric bupivacaine: effect of added vasoconstrictors. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61(1):49–52.
207. Feldman HS, Covino BG. Effect of vasoconstrictor agents on the duration of action of intrathecal tetracaine, bupivacaine and lidocaine in the dog. *Reg Anesth*. 1986;10:133–137.
208. Concepcion M, Maddi R, Francis D, et al. Vasoconstrictors in spinal anesthesia with tetracaine–a comparison of epinephrine and phenylephrine. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63(2):134–138.
209. Maehara Y, Kusunoki S, Kawamoto M, et al. A prospective multicenter trial to determine the incidence of transient neurologic symptoms after spinal anesthesia with phenylephrine added to 0.5% tetracaine. *Hiroshima J Med Sci*. 2001;50(2):47–51.
210. Eisenach JC, De Kock M, Klimscha W. alpha(2)-Adrenergic agonists for regional anesthesia. A clinical review of clonidine (1984-1995). *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(3):655–674.
211. Dobrydnjov I, Axelsson K, Samarütel J, Holmström B. Postoperative pain relief following intrathecal bupivacaine combined with intrathecal or oral clonidine. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(7): 806–814.
212. De Kock M, Gautier P, Fanard L, et al. Intrathecal ropivacaine and clonidine for ambulatory knee arthroscopy: a dose-response study. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(4):574–578.
213. Dobrydnjov I, Axelsson K, Thörn S-E, et al. Clonidine combined with small-dose bupivacaine during spinal anesthesia for inguinal herniorrhaphy: a randomized double-blinded study. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(5):1496–1503.
214. Eisenach JC, Hood DD, Curry R. Intrathecal, but not intravenous, clonidine reduces experimental thermal or capsaicin-induced pain and hyperalgesia in normal volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(3):591–596.
215. Bedder MD, Kozody R, Palahniuk RJ, et al. Clonidine prolongs canine tetracaine spinal anaesthesia. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1986;33(5):591–596.
216. Elia N, Culebras X, Mazza C, et al. Clonidine as an adjuvant to intrathecal local anesthetics for surgery: systematic review of randomized trials. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(2):159–167.
217. Kalso EA, Pöyhiä R, Rosenberg PH. Spinal antinociception by dexmedetomidine, a highly selective alpha 2-adrenergic agonist. *Pharmacol Toxicol*. 1991;68(2):140–143.
218. Kanazi GE, Aouad MT, Jabbour-Khoury SI, et al. Effect of low-dose dexmedetomidine or clonidine on the characteristics of bupivacaine spinal block. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50(2):222–227.
219. Brull R, Abdallah F. The facilitatory effects of perineural dexmedetomidine on neuraxial and peripheral nerve blockade: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:915–925.
220. Liu SS, Hodgson PS, Moore JM, et al. Dose-response effects of spinal neostigmine added to bupivacaine spinal anesthesia in volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(3):710–717.
221. Xu Z, Tong C, Eisenach JC. Acetylcholine stimulates the release of nitric oxide from rat spinal cord. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(1):107–111.
222. Eisenach JC, Hood DD, Curry R. Phase I human safety assessment of intrathecal neostigmine containing methyl- and propylparabens. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(4):842–846.
223. Habib AS, Gan TJ. Use of neostigmine in the management of acute postoperative pain and labour pain: a review. *CNS Drugs*. 2006;20(10):821–839.
224. Lauretti GR, Hood DD, Eisenach JC, Pfeifer BL. A multi-center study of intrathecal neostigmine for analgesia following vaginal hysterectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(4):913–918.
225. Rathmell JP, Lair TR, Nauman B. The role of intrathecal drugs in the treatment of acute pain. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(suppl 5): S30–S43.
226. Flaatten H, Rodt SA, Vamnes J, et al. Postdural puncture headache. A comparison between 26- and 29-gauge needles in young patients. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44(2):147–149.
227. Morros-Viñoles C, Pérez-Cuenca MD, Cedó-Lluís E, et al. Comparison of efficacy and complications of 27G and 29G Sprottte needles for subarachnoid anesthesia. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 2002;49(9):448–454.
228. Deleted in proofs.
229. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Practice advisory for the prevention, diagnosis, and management of infectious complications associated with neuraxial techniques: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Infectious Complications Associated with Neuraxial Techniques and the American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(4):585–601.
230. Scott M, Stones J, Payne N. Antiseptic solutions for central neuraxial blockade: which concentration of chlorhexidine in alcohol should we use? *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(3):456; author reply 456-7.
231. Sviggum HP, Jacob AK, Arendt KW, et al. Neurologic complications after chlorhexidine antisepsis for spinal anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(2):139–144.
232. Inglis A, Daniel M, McGrady E. Maternal position during induction of spinal anaesthesia for caesarean section. A comparison of right lateral and sitting positions. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50(4):363–365.
233. Chin KJ, Karmakar MK, Peng P. Ultrasonography of the adult thoracic and lumbar spine for central neuraxial blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(6):1459–1485.
234. Jaitly VK, Kumar CM. Continuous spinal anaesthesia for laparotomy. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care*. 2009;20(2):60–64.
235. Covino B, Scott D. *Handbook of Epidural Anaesthesia and Analgesia*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1994.
236. Puolakka R, Pitkänen MT, Rosenberg PH. Comparison of three catheter sets for continuous spinal anesthesia in patients undergoing total hip or knee arthroplasty. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25(6):584–590.
237. Gudaityte J, Marchertiene I, Pavalkis D, et al. Minimal effective dose of spinal hyperbaric bupivacaine for adult anorectal surgery: a double-blind, randomized study. *Medicina (Kaunas)*. 2005;41(8):675–684.
238. Vaghadia H, Viskari D, Mitchell GW, Berrill A. Selective spinal anesthesia for outpatient laparoscopy. I: characteristics of three hypobaric solutions. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48(3):256–260.
239. Rocco AG, Raymond SA, Murray E, et al. Differential spread of blockade of touch, cold, and pinprick during spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64(9):917–923.
240. Liu SS, Ware PD. Differential sensory block after spinal bupivacaine in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(1):115–119.
241. Curatolo M, Petersen-Felix S, Arendt-Nielsen L. Sensory assessment of regional analgesia in humans: a review of methods and applications. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(6):1517–1530.
242. Bromage PR. A comparison of the hydrochloride and carbon dioxide salts of lidocaine and prilocaine in epidural analgesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl*. 1965;16:55–69.
243. Hirabayashi Y, Shimizu R. Effect of age on extradural dose requirement in thoracic extradural anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71(3): 445–446.
244. Duggan J, Bowler GM, McClure JH, Wildsmith JA. Extradural block with bupivacaine: influence of dose, volume, concentration and patient characteristics. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61(3):324–331.
245. Fagraeus L, Urban BJ, Bromage PR. Spread of epidural analgesia in early pregnancy. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58(2):184–187.
246. Visser WA, Gielen MJM, Giele JLP. Continuous positive airway pressure breathing increases the spread of sensory blockade after low-thoracic epidural injection of lidocaine. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(1):268–271.
247. Visser WA, van Eerd MJPG, van Seventer R, et al. Continuous positive airway pressure breathing increases cranial spread of sensory blockade after cervicothoracic epidural injection of lidocaine. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(3):868–871.
248. Visser WA, Liem TH, van Egmond J, Gielen MJ. Extension of sensory blockade after thoracic epidural administration of a test dose of lidocaine at three different levels. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(2):332–335.
249. Seow LT, Lips FJ, Cousins MJ. Effect of lateral posture on epidural blockade for surgery. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1983;11(2):97–102.
250. Setayesh AR, Kholdebarin AR, Moghadam MS, Setayesh HR. The Trendelenburg position increases the spread and accelerates the onset of epidural anesthesia for cesarean section. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48(9):890–893.
251. Stevens RA, Urmey WF, Urquhart BL, Kao TC. Back pain after epidural anesthesia with chloroprocaine. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(3):492–497.
252. Brinklov MM. Clinical effects of carticaine, a new local anesthetic. A survey and a double-blind investigation comparing carticaine with lidocaine in epidural analgesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1977;21(1):5–16.

253. Wong CA, Benzon H, Kim C. Bilateral radicular pain after epidural lidocaine. *Reg Anesth*. 1996;21(6):600–601.
254. Konietzke D, Leyser KH, Lanz E. Comparison of prilocaine 2% versus lidocaine 2% with adrenaline in peridural anesthesia. A clinical double-blind study. *Reg Anaesth*. 1985;8(4):67–72.
255. Chahar P, Cummings KC. Liposomal bupivacaine: a review of a new bupivacaine formulation. *J Pain Res*. 2012;5:257–264.
256. Cox CR, Faccenda KA, Gilhooly C, et al. Extradural S(-)-bupivacaine: comparison with racemic RS-bupivacaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998; 80(3):289–293.
257. Kopacz DJ, Allen HW, Thompson GE. A comparison of epidural levobupivacaine 0.75% with racemic bupivacaine for lower abdominal surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(3):642–648.
258. Huang YF, Pryor ME, Mather LE, Veering BT. Cardiovascular and central nervous system effects of intravenous levobupivacaine and bupivacaine in sheep. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(4):797–804.
259. McClure JH. Ropivacaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76(2):300–307.
260. Moller R, Covino BG. Cardiac electrophysiologic properties of bupivacaine and lidocaine compared with those of ropivacaine, a new amide local anesthetic. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(2):322–329.
261. Lacassie HJ, Columb MO, Lacassie HP, Lantadilla RA. The relative motor blocking potencies of epidural bupivacaine and ropivacaine in labor. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(1):204–208.
262. Marinacci AA. Neurological aspects of complications of spinal anesthesia, with medicolegal implications. *Bull Los Angel Neuro Soc*. 1960;25:170–192.
263. Niemi G, Breivik H. Epinephrine markedly improves thoracic epidural analgesia produced by a small-dose infusion of ropivacaine, fentanyl, and epinephrine after major thoracic or abdominal surgery: a randomized, double-blinded crossover study with and without epinephrine. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(6):1598–1605.
264. Stanton-Hicks M, Berges PU, Bonica JJ. Circulatory effects of peridural block. IV. Comparison of the effects of epinephrine and phenylephrine. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;39(3):308–314.
265. Loper KA, Ready LB, Downey M, et al. Epidural and intravenous fentanyl infusions are clinically equivalent after knee surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70(1):72–75.
266. Miguel R, Barlow I, Morrell M, et al. A prospective, randomized, double-blind comparison of epidural and intravenous sufentanil infusions. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(2):346–352; discussion 25A–26A.
267. Sultan P, Gutierrez MC, Carvalho B. Neuraxial morphine and respiratory depression: finding the right balance. *Drugs*. 2011;71(14):1807–1819.
268. Carvalho B, Roland LM, Chu LF, et al. Single-dose, extended-release epidural morphine (DepoDur) compared to conventional epidural morphine for post-cesarean pain. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(1):176–183.
269. Hartrick CT, Martin G, Kantor G, et al. Evaluation of a single-dose, extended-release epidural morphine formulation for pain after knee arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2006;88(2):273–281.
270. Kroin JS, Buvanendran A, Beck DR, et al. Clonidine prolongation of lidocaine analgesia after sciatic nerve block in rats is mediated via the hyperpolarization-activated cation current, not by alpha-adrenoreceptors. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(2):488–494.
271. Dobrydnjov I, Axelsson K, Gupta A, et al. Improved analgesia with clonidine when added to local anesthetic during combined spinal-epidural anesthesia for hip arthroplasty: a double-blind, randomized and placebo-controlled study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(4):538–545.
272. Milligan KR, Convery PN, Weir P, et al. The efficacy and safety of epidural infusions of levobupivacaine with and without clonidine for postoperative pain relief in patients undergoing total hip replacement. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(2):393–397.
273. Farmery AD, Wilson-MacDonald J. The analgesic effect of epidural clonidine after spinal surgery: a randomized placebo-controlled trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(2):631–634.
274. Wu C-T, Jao S-W, Borel CO, et al. The effect of epidural clonidine on perioperative cytokine response, postoperative pain, and bowel function in patients undergoing colorectal surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(2):502–509.
275. De Kock M. Site of hemodynamic effects of alpha 2-adrenergic agonists. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(4):715–716.
276. Grewal A. Dexmedetomidine: new avenues. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;27(3):297–302.
277. Yanli Y, Eren A. The effect of extradural ketamine on onset time and sensory block in extradural anaesthesia with bupivacaine. *Anaesthesia*. 1996;51(1):84–86.
278. Himmelseher S, Ziegler-Pithamitsis D, Argiriadou H, et al. Small-dose S(+)-ketamine reduces postoperative pain when applied with ropivacaine in epidural anesthesia for total knee arthroplasty. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(5):1290–1295.
279. Malinovsky JM, Lepage JY, Cozian A, et al. Is ketamine or its preservative responsible for neurotoxicity in the rabbit? *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(1):109–115.
280. Roelants F, Lavand'homme PM, Mercier-Fuzier V. Epidural administration of neostigmine and clonidine to induce labor analgesia: evaluation of efficacy and local anesthetic-sparing effect. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(6):1205–1210.
281. Park WY, Hagins FM. Comparison of lidocaine hydrocarbonate with lidocaine hydrochloride for epidural anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1986;11(3):128–131.
282. Bokesch PM, Raymond SA, Strichartz GR. Dependence of lidocaine potency on pH and PCO_2. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(1):9–17.
283. Morison DH. Alkalinization of local anaesthetics. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(12):1076–1079.
284. Segal S, Eappen S, Datta S. Superiority of multi-orifice over single-orifice epidural catheters for labor analgesia and cesarean delivery. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9(2):109–112.
285. Collier CB, Gatt SP. Epidural catheters for obstetrics. Terminal hole or lateral eyes? *Reg Anesth*. 1994;19(6):378–385.
286. D'Angelo R, Foss ML, Livesay CH. A comparison of multiport and uniport epidural catheters in laboring patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(6):1276–1279.
287. Mhyre JM, Greenfield MLVH, Tsen LC, Polley LS. A systematic review of randomized controlled trials that evaluate strategies to avoid epidural vein cannulation during obstetric epidural catheter placement. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(4):1232–1242.
288. Nishi M, Usukaura A, Kidani Y, et al. Which is a better position for insertion of a high thoracic epidural catheter: sitting or lateral decubitus? *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;20(5):656–658.
289. Grau T, Leipold RW, Delorme S, et al. Ultrasound imaging of the thoracic epidural space. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27(2):200–206.
290. Sharrock NE. Recordings of, and an anatomical explanation for, false positive loss of resistance during lumbar extradural analgesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51(3):253–258.
291. Schier R, Guerra D, Aguilar J, et al. Epidural space identification: a meta-analysis of complications after air versus liquid as the medium for loss of resistance. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(6):2012–2021.
292. Moon JY, Lee P-B, Nahm FS, et al. Cervical epidural pressure measurement: comparison in the prone and sitting positions. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(3):666–671.
293. Zarzur E. Genesis of the "true" negative pressure in the lumbar epidural space. A new hypothesis. *Anaesthesia*. 1984;39(11):1101–1104.
294. Paech MJ, Godkin R, Webster S. Complications of obstetric epidural analgesia and anaesthesia: a prospective analysis of 10,995 cases. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 1998;7(1):5–11.
295. Afshan G, Chohan U, Khan FA, et al. Appropriate length of epidural catheter in the epidural space for postoperative analgesia: evaluation by epidurography. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(10):913–918.
296. Beilin Y, Bernstein HH, Zucker-Pinchoff B. The optimal distance that a multiorifice epidural catheter should be threaded into the epidural space. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(2):301–304.
297. D'Angelo R, Berkebile BL, Gerancher JC. Prospective examination of epidural catheter insertion. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(1):88–93.
298. Hamilton CL, Riley ET, Cohen SE. Changes in the position of epidural catheters associated with patient movement. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(4):778–784; discussion 29A.
299. Tsui BC, Gupta S, Finucane B. Confirmation of epidural catheter placement using nerve stimulation. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45(7):640–644.
300. Tsui BC, Gupta S, Finucane B. Detection of subarachnoid and intravascular epidural catheter placement. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46(7):675–678.
301. Tsui BC, Gupta S, Emery D, Finucane B. Detection of subdural placement of epidural catheter using nerve stimulation. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47(5):471–473.
302. Clark MX, O'Hare K, Gorringe J, Oh T. The effect of the Lockit epidural catheter clamp on epidural migration: a controlled trial. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56(9):865–870.

303. Burstal R, Wegener F, Hayes C, Lantry G. Subcutaneous tunnelling of epidural catheters for postoperative analgesia to prevent accidental dislodgement: a randomized controlled trial. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1998;26(2):147–151.
304. Guay J. The epidural test dose: a review. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(3):921–929.
305. Curelaru I. Long duration subarachnoid anaesthesia with continuous epidural block. *Prakt Anaesth*. 1979;14(1):71–78.
306. Brownridge P. Epidural and subarachnoid analgesia for elective caesarean section. *Anaesthesia*. 1981;36(1):70.
307. Carrie LE. Epidural versus combined spinal epidural block for caesarean section. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32(7):595–596.
308. Dennison B. Combined subarachnoid and epidural block for caesarean section. *Can J Anaesth*. 1987;34(1):105–106. 1987.
309. Rawal N, Schollin J, Wesström G. Epidural versus combined spinal epidural block for cesarean section. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1988;32(1):61–66.
310. Soresi A. Episubdural anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1937;16:306–310.
311. Lew E, Yeo S-W, Thomas E. Combined spinal-epidural anesthesia using epidural volume extension leads to faster motor recovery after elective cesarean delivery: a prospective, randomized, double-blind study. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(3):810–814.
312. Fan SZ, Susetio L, Wang YP, et al. Low dose of intrathecal hyperbaric bupivacaine combined with epidural lidocaine for cesarean section–a balance block technique. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(3):474–477.
313. McAndrew CR, Harms P. Paraesthesiae during needle-through-needle combined spinal epidural versus single-shot spinal for elective caesarean section. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2003;31(5):514–517.
314. Lyons G, Macdonald R, Mikl B. Combined epidural/spinal anaesthesia for caesarean section. Through the needle or in separate spaces? *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47(3):199–201.
315. Casati A, D'Ambrosio A, De Negri P, et al. A clinical comparison between needle-through-needle and double-segment techniques for combined spinal and epidural anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1998;23(4):390–394.
316. Rawal N, van Zundert A, Holmström B, Crowhurst JA. Combined spinal-epidural technique. *Reg Anesth*. 1997;22(5):406–423.
317. Chen CPC, Tang SFT, Hsu T-C, et al. Ultrasound guidance in caudal epidural needle placement. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(1):181–184.
318. Roberts SA, Galvez I. Ultrasound assessment of caudal catheter position in infants. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(5):429–432.
319. Brenner L, Marhofer P, Kettner SC, et al. Ultrasound assessment of cranial spread during caudal blockade in children: the effect of different volumes of local anaesthetics. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(2):229–235.
320. Mackey D. Physiologic effects of regional block. In: Brown DL, ed. *Regional Anesthesia and Analgesia*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1996.
321. Fettes PDW, Wildsmith JAW. Somebody else's nervous system. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(6):760–763.
322. Brull R, McCartney CJL, Chan VWS, El-Beheiry H. Neurological complications after regional anesthesia: contemporary estimates of risk. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(4):965–974.
323. Cook TM, Counsell D, Wildsmith JAW. Royal College of Anaesthetists Third National Audit Project. Major complications of central neuraxial block: report on the Third National Audit Project of the Royal College of Anaesthetists. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(2):179–190.
324. Skouen JS, Wainapel SF, Willock MM. Paraplegia following epidural anesthesia. A case report and a literature review. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 1985;72(4):437–443.
325. Reynolds F. Logic in the safe practice of spinal anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55(11):1045–1046.
326. Mayall MF, Calder I. Spinal cord injury following an attempted thoracic epidural. *Anaesthesia*. 1999;54(10):990–994.
327. Katz N, Hurley R. Epidural anesthesia complicated by fluid collection within the spinal cord. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77(5):1064–1065.
328. Takii Y, Sunouchi K, Tadokoro M, et al. Paraplegia from spinal cord injury after thoracic epidural catheterization performed under general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(2):513.
329. Kasai T, Yaegashi K, Hirose M, Tanaka Y. Spinal cord injury in a child caused by an accidental dural puncture with a single-shot thoracic epidural needle. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(1):65–67.
330. Moore DC, Spierdijk J, vanKleef JD, et al. Chloroprocaine neurotoxicity: four additional cases. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61(2):155–159.
331. Eastwood DW. Anterior spinal artery syndrome after epidural anesthesia in a pregnant diabetic patient with scleroderma. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73(1):90–91.
332. Hong DK, Lawrence HM. Anterior spinal artery syndrome following total hip arthroplasty under epidural anaesthesia. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2001;29(1):62–66.
333. Linz SM, Charbonnet C, Mikhail MS, et al. Spinal artery syndrome masked by postoperative epidural analgesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44(11):1178–1181.
334. Gerancher JC. Cauda equina syndrome following a single spinal administration of 5% hyperbaric lidocaine through a 25-gauge Whitacre needle. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(3):687–689.
335. Drasner K, Sakura S, Chan VW, et al. Persistent sacral sensory deficit induced by intrathecal local anesthetic infusion in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(4):847–852.
336. Lambert DH, Hurley RJ. Cauda equina syndrome and continuous spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(6):817–819.
337. Benson J. *FDA Safety Alert: Cauda Equina Syndrome Associated with the Use of Small-Bore Catheters in Continuous Spinal Anesthesia*. Rockville, MD: Food and Drug Administration; 1992.
338. Förster JG, Rosenberg PH, Niemi TT. Continuous spinal microcatheter (28 gauge) technique for arterial bypass surgery of the lower extremities and comparison of ropivacaine with or without morphine for postoperative analgesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97(3):393–400.
339. Vandermeulen EP, Van Aken H, Vermylen J. Anticoagulants and spinal-epidural anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(6):1165–1177.
340. Horlocker TT. What's a nice patient like you doing with a complication like this? Diagnosis, prognosis and prevention of spinal hematoma. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51(6):527–534.
341. Moen V, Dahlgren N, Irestedt L. Severe neurological complications after central neuraxial blockades in Sweden 1990–1999. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(4):950.
342. Ruppen W, Derry S, McQuay H, Moore RA. Incidence of epidural hematoma, infection, and neurologic injury in obstetric patients with epidural analgesia/anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(2):394–399.
343. Horlocker TT, Abel MD, Messick JM, Schroeder DR. Small risk of serious neurologic complications related to lumbar epidural catheter placement in anesthetized patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(6):1547–1552.
344. Auroy Y, Narchi P, Messiah A, et al. Serious complications related to regional anesthesia: results of a prospective survey in France. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(3):479–486.
345. Giebler RM, Scherer RU, Peters J. Incidence of neurologic complications related to thoracic epidural catheterization. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(1):55–63.
346. Vandam L, Dripps R. A long-term follow-up of 10,098 spinal anesthetics. II. Incidence and analysis of minor sensory neurological defects. *Surgery*. 1955;38(3):463–469.
347. Dawkins CJ. An analysis of the complications of extradural and caudal block. *Anaesthesia*. 1969;24(4):554–563.
348. Aromaa U, Lahdensuu M, Cozanitis DA. Severe complications associated with epidural and spinal anaesthesias in Finland 1987-1993, A study based on patient insurance claims [see comment]. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41(4):445–452.
349. Scott DB, Tunstall ME. Serious complications associated with epidural/spinal blockade in obstetrics: a two-year prospective study. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 1995;4(3):133–139.
350. Auroy Y, Benhamou D, Bargues L, et al. Major complications of regional anesthesia in France: the SOS Regional anesthesia hotline service. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(5):1274–1280.
351. Lee LA, Posner KL, Domino KB, et al. Injuries associated with regional anesthesia in the 1980s and 1990s: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(1):143–152.
352. Wong CA, Scavone BM, Dugan S, et al. Incidence of postpartum lumbosacral spine and lower extremity nerve injuries. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2003;101(2):279–288.
353. Price JM, Carpenter RL. Anesthesia safety, outcomes, and prospective study design. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(3):790–792.
354. Cheney FW, Domino KB, Caplan RA, Posner KL. Nerve injury associated with anesthesia: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(4):1062–1069.
355. Reynolds F. Damage to the conus medullaris following spinal anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56(3):238–247.
356. Turnbull DK, Shepherd DB. Post-dural puncture headache: pathogenesis, prevention and treatment. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91(5):718–729.

357. Reynolds F. Dural puncture and headache. *BMJ*. 1993;306(6882):874–876.
358. Leibold RA, Yealy DM, Coppola M, Cantees KK. Post-dural-puncture headache: characteristics, management, and prevention. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1993;22(12):1863–1870.
359. Vandam L, Dripps R. Long-term follow-up of patients who received 10,098 spinal anesthetics; syndrome of decreased intracranial pressure (headache and ocular and auditory difficulties). *JAMA*. 1956;161(7):586–591.
360. Mihic DN. Postspinal headache and relationship of needle bevel to longitudinal dural fibers. *Reg Anesth*. 1965;10(2):76–81.
361. Ready LB, Cuplin S, Haschke RH, Nessly M. Spinal needle determinants of rate of transdural fluid leak. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69(4):457–460.
362. Halpern S, Preston R. Postdural puncture headache and spinal needle design. Metaanalyses. *Anesthesiol*. 1994;81(6):1376–1383.
363. Rawal N, Holmström B, Crowhurst JA, van Zundert A. The combined spinal-epidural technique. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2000;18(2):267–295.
364. Dunn SM, Connelly NR, Parker RK. Postdural puncture headache (PDPH) and combined spinal-epidural (CSE). *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(5):1249–1250.
365. Denny N, Masters R, Pearson D, et al. Postdural puncture headache after continuous spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(8):791–794.
366. Connelly NR, Parker RK, Rahimi A, Gibson CS. Sumatriptan in patients with postdural puncture headache. *Headache*. 2000;40(4):316–319.
367. Carp H, Singh PJ, Vadhera R, Jayaram A. Effects of the serotonin-receptor agonist sumatriptan on postdural puncture headache: report of six cases. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(1):180–182.
368. Harrington BE. Postdural puncture headache and the development of the epidural blood patch. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29:136–163.
369. Gormley JB. Treatment of postspinal headache. *Anesthesiology*. 1960;21:565.
370. Safa-Tisseront V, Thormann F, Malassiné P, et al. Effectiveness of epidural blood patch in the management of post-dural puncture headache. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(2):334–339.
371. Duffy PJ, Crosby ET. The epidural blood patch. Resolving the controversies. *Can J Anesth*. 1999;46(9):878–886.
372. Scavone BM, Wong CA, Sullivan JT, et al. Efficacy of a prophylactic epidural blood patch in preventing post dural puncture headache in parturients after inadvertent dural puncture. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(6):1422–1427.
373. Boonmak P, Boonmak S. Epidural blood patching for preventing and treating post-dural puncture headache. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010;1:CD001791.
374. Szeinfeld M, Ihmeidan IH, Moser MM, et al. Epidural blood patch: evaluation of the volume and spread of blood injected into the epidural space. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64(6):820–822.
375. Beards SC, Jackson A, Griffiths AG, Horsman EL. Magnetic resonance imaging of extradural blood patches: appearances from 30 min to 18 h. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71(2):182–188.
376. Paech MJ, Doherty DA, Christmas T, Wong CA. Epidural Blood Patch Trial Group. The volume of blood for epidural blood patch in obstetrics: a randomized, blinded clinical trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(1):126–133.
377. Hampl KF, Schneider MC, Thorin D, et al. Hyperosmolarity does not contribute to transient radicular irritation after spinal anesthesia with hyperbaric 5% lidocaine. *Reg Anesth*. 1995;20(5):363–368.
378. Pollock JE, Liu SS, Neal JM, Stephenson CA. Dilution of spinal lidocaine does not alter the incidence of transient neurologic symptoms. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(2):445–450.
379. Tarkkila P, Huhtala J, Tuominen M. Transient radicular irritation after spinal anaesthesia with hyperbaric 5% lignocaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74(3):328–329.
380. Gozdemir M, Muslu B, Sert H, et al. Transient neurological symptoms after spinal anaesthesia with levobupivacaine 5 mg/ml or lidocaine 20 mg/ml. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54(1):59–64.
381. Evron S, Gurstieva V, Ezri T, et al. Transient neurological symptoms after isobaric subarachnoid anesthesia with 2% lidocaine: the impact of needle type. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(5):1494–1499.
382. Markey JR, Naseer OB, Bird DJ, et al. Transient neurologic symptoms after epidural analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(2):437–439.
383. Hartmann B, Junger A, Klasen J, et al. The incidence and risk factors for hypotension after spinal anesthesia induction: an analysis with automated data collection. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(6):1521–1529.
384. Loubert C. Fluid and vasopressor management for cesarean delivery under spinal anesthesia: continuing professional development. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59(6):604–619.
385. Thompson KW, Cushing H. Fatalities from spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1934;13:75–79.
386. Wetstone DL, Wong KC. Sinus bradycardia and asystole during spinal anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41(1):87–89.
387. Lesser JB, Sanborn KV, Valskys R, Kuroda M. Severe bradycardia during spinal and epidural anesthesia recorded by an anesthesia information management system. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(4):859–866.
388. Caplan RA, Ward RJ, Posner K, Cheney FW. Unexpected cardiac arrest during spinal anesthesia: a closed claims analysis of predisposing factors. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68(1):5–11.
389. Zornow M, Scheller M. Cardiac arrest during spinal anesthesia. II. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:970.
390. Hogan QH, Amuzu J, Clifford PS, et al. Hypoxia causes apnea during epidural anesthesia in rabbits. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(3):761–767.
391. Mackey DC, Carpenter RL, Thompson GE, et al. Bradycardia and asystole during spinal anesthesia: a report of three cases without morbidity. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70(5):866–868.
392. Gwirtz KH, Young JV, Byers RS, et al. The safety and efficacy of intrathecal opioid analgesia for acute postoperative pain: seven years' experience with 5969 surgical patients at Indiana University Hospital. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(3):599–604.
393. Gross JB, Bachenberg KL, Benumof JL, et al. Practice guidelines for the perioperative management of patients with obstructive sleep apnea: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Management of Patients with Obstructive Sleep Apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(5):1081–1093; quiz 1117-8.
394. Horlocker TT, Burton AW, Connis RT, et al. Practice guidelines for the prevention, detection, and management of respiratory depression associated with neuraxial opioid administration. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(2):218–230.
395. Phillips JMG, Stedeford JC, Hartsilver E, Roberts C. Epidural abscess complicating insertion of epidural catheters. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(5):778–782.
396. Wang LP, Hauerberg J, Schmidt JF. Incidence of spinal epidural abscess after epidural analgesia: a national 1-year survey. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(6):1928–1936.
397. Kindler CH, Seeberger MD, Staender SE. Epidural abscess complicating epidural anesthesia and analgesia. An analysis of the literature. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42(6):614–620.
398. Horlocker TT, Wedel DJ. Regional anesthesia in the immunocompromised patient. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(4):334–345.
399. Rathmell JP, Lake T, Ramundo MB. Infectious risks of chronic pain treatments: injection therapy, surgical implants, and intradiscal techniques. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(4):346–352.
400. Benzon HT, Asher YG, Hartrick CT. Back pain and neuraxial anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(6):2047–2058.
401. Brown E, Elman D. Postoperative backache. *Anesth Analg*. 1961;40:683–685.
402. Dickinson JE, Paech MJ, McDonald SJ, Evans SF. The impact of intrapartum analgesia on labour and delivery outcomes in nulliparous women. *Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol*. 2002;42(1):59–66.
403. Breen TW, Ransil BJ, Groves PA, Oriol NE. Factors associated with back pain after childbirth. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(1):29–34.
404. Borgeat A, Ekatodramis G, Schenker CA. Postoperative nausea and vomiting in regional anesthesia: a review. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(2):530–547.
405. Kuipers PW, Kamphuis ET, van Venrooij GE, et al. Intrathecal opioids and lower urinary tract function: a urodynamic evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(6):1497–1503.
406. Kamphuis ET, Kuipers PW, van Venrooij GE, Kalkman CJ. The effects of spinal anesthesia with lidocaine and sufentanil on lower urinary tract functions. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(6):2073–2078.
407. Izard JP, Sowery RD, Jaeger MT, Siemens DR. Parameters affecting urologic complications after major joint replacement surgery. *Can J Urol*. 2006;13(3):3158–3163.
408. Griesdale DEG, Neufeld J, Dhillon D, et al. Risk factors for urinary retention after hip or knee replacement: a cohort study. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58(12):1097–1104.

409. Demiraran Y, Ozdemir I, Kocaman B, Yucel O. Intrathecal sufentanil (1.5 microg) added to hyperbaric bupivacaine (0.5%) for elective cesarean section provides adequate analgesia without need for pruritus therapy. *J Anesth*. 2006;20(4):274–278.
410. Crowley LJ, Buggy DJ. Shivering and neuraxial anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(3):241–252.
411. Saito T, Sessler DI, Fujita K, et al. Thermoregulatory effects of spinal and epidural anesthesia during cesarean delivery. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1998;23(4):418–423.
412. Bell DN, Leslie K. Detection of intravascular epidural catheter placement: a review. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35(3):335–341.
413. Moore DC, Batra MS. The components of an effective test dose prior to epidural block. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(6):693–696.
414. Hood DD, Dewan DM, James FM. Maternal and fetal effects of epinephrine in gravid ewes. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64(5):610–613.
415. Horn M, Johnson P, Mulroy M. Blood pressure response to an epinephrine test dose in beta-blocked subjects. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(3):A268.
416. Liu SS, Carpenter RL. Hemodynamic responses to intravascular injection of epinephrine–containing epidural test doses in adults during general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(1):81.
417. Okutomi T, Hashiba MM, Hashiba S, et al. The effects of single and fractionated doses of mepivacaine on the extent of thoracic epidural block. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26(5):450–455.
418. Blomberg R. The dorsomedian connective tissue band in the lumbar epidural space of humans: an anatomical study using epiduroscopy in autopsy cases. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65(7):747–752.
419. Blomberg RG. The lumbar subdural extraarachnoid space of humans: an anatomical study using spinaloscopy in autopsy cases. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(2):177–180.
420. Holst D, Möllmann M, Schymroszcyk B, et al. No risk of metal toxicity in combined spinal-epidural anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(2):393–397.
421. Rodgers A, Walker N, Schug S, et al. Reduction of postoperative mortality and morbidity with epidural or spinal anaesthesia: results from overview of randomised trials. *BMJ*. 2000;321(7275):1493.
422. Smith LM, Cozowicz C, Uda Y, et al. Neuraxial and combined neuraxial/general anesthesia compared to general anesthesia for major truncal and lower limb surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(6):1931–1945.

422a. Perlas A, Chan VW, Beattie S. Anesthesia technique and mortality after total hip or knee arthroplasty: a retrospective, propensity score-matched cohort study. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:724–731.

423. Bignami E, Landoni G, Biondi-Zoccai GGL, et al. Epidural analgesia improves outcome in cardiac surgery: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;24(4):586–597.
424. Pöpping DM, Elia N, Marret E, et al. Protective effects of epidural analgesia on pulmonary complications after abdominal and thoracic surgery: a meta-analysis. *Arch Surg*. 2008;143(10):990–999; discussion 1000.
425. Wu CL, Sapirstein A, Herbert R, et al. Effect of postoperative epidural analgesia on morbidity and mortality after lung resection in Medicare patients. *J Clin Anesth*. 2006;18(7):515–520.
426. Stundner O, Chiu YL, Sun X, et al. Comparative perioperative outcomes associated with neuraxial versus general anesthesia for simultaneous bilateral total knee arthroplasty. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(6):638–644.
427. Freise H, Van Aken HK. Risks and benefits of thoracic epidural anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(6):859–868.
428. Tavare AN, Perry NJS, Benzonana LL, et al. Cancer recurrence after surgery: direct and indirect effects of anesthetic agents. *Int J Cancer*. 2012;130(6):1237–1250.
429. Heaney A, Buggy DJ. Can anaesthetic and analgesic techniques affect cancer recurrence or metastasis? *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(suppl 1):i17–i28.
430. Snyder GL, Greenberg S. Effect of anaesthetic technique and other perioperative factors on cancer recurrence. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(2):106–115.

430a. Sekandarzad MW, van Zundert AAJ, Lirk PB, et al. Perioperative anesthesia care and tumor progression. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1697–1708.

431. Biki B, Mascha E, Moriarty DC, et al. Anesthetic technique for radical prostatectomy surgery affects cancer recurrence: a retrospective analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(2):180–187.
432. Wuethrich PY, Hsu Schmitz SF, Kessler TM, et al. Potential influence of the anesthetic technique used during open radical prostatectomy on prostate cancer-related outcome: a retrospective study. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(3):570–576.
433. Gupta A, Björnsson A, Fredriksson M, et al. Reduction in mortality after epidural anaesthesia and analgesia in patients undergoing rectal but not colonic cancer surgery: a retrospective analysis of data from 655 patients in central Sweden. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(2):164–170.
434. de Oliveira GS, Ahmad S, Schink JC, et al. Intraoperative neuraxial anesthesia but not postoperative neuraxial analgesia is associated with increased relapse-free survival in ovarian cancer patients after primary cytoreductive surgery. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2011;36(3):271–277.
435. Lin L, Liu C, Tan H, et al. Anaesthetic technique may affect prognosis for ovarian serous adenocarcinoma: a retrospective analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(6):814–822.
436. Perlas A, Chaparro LE, Chin KJ. Lumbar neuraxial ultrasound for spinal and epidural anesthesia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(2):251–260.
437. Chin KJ, Chan V. Ultrasonography as a preoperative assessment tool: predicting the feasibility of central neuraxial blockade. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(1):252–253.
438. Avramescu S, Arzola C, Tharmaratnam U, et al. Sonoanatomy of the thoracic spine in adult volunteers. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(3):349–353.
439. Triffterer L, Machata A-M, Latzke D, et al. Ultrasound assessment of cranial spread during caudal blockade in children: effect of the speed of injection of local anaesthetics. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(4):670–674.
440. Tsui BCH, Suresh S. Ultrasound imaging for regional anesthesia in infants, children, and adolescents: a review of current literature and its application in the practice of neuraxial blocks. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(3):719–728.
441. Chin KJ, Perlas A, Chan V, et al. Ultrasound imaging facilitates spinal anesthesia in adults with difficult surface anatomic landmarks. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115(1):94–101.

46

Peripheral Nerve Blocks and Ultrasound Guidance for Regional Anesthesia

REBECCA L. JOHNSON, SANDRA L. KOPP, JENS KESSLER, and
ANDREW T. GRAY

KEY POINTS

- Regional anesthesia is only successful when local anesthetic is inserted in close proximity to the targeted nerves. From the inception of regional anesthesia over a century ago, several techniques have been designed and available to facilitate the correct placement of local anesthetic, including the paresthesia-seeking approach, peripheral nerve stimulator, and most recently ultrasound guidance.
- There are no data to support the superiority of one nerve localization technique—paresthesia, nerve stimulation, ultrasound—over another with regard to reducing the risk of nerve injury.
- Ultrasound imaging can elucidate the structure of peripheral nerves and adjacent anatomic structures for regional block. Peripheral nerves have a characteristic honeycomb echotexture, formed by the internal pattern of connective tissue and nerve fibers.
- Ultrasound provides real-time imaging for needle tip placement and drug injection. Successful local anesthetic injections clarify the border of the nerve and track along the nerve path and its branches. Ultrasound guidance results in more consistent procedure times for peripheral nerve blocks and can be applied to many regional anesthesia procedures. Anatomic variation in nerve position and course, which is a potential source of block failure, can be directly visualized.
- Lipid emulsion bolus and infusion improve the success of resuscitation from cardiac arrest because of local anesthetic toxicity if given immediately after a local anesthetic overdose.
- Prior to regional blocks checklists are now being performed in an effort to make rare adverse events even less common, thereby improving patient safety.

Introduction

Peripheral nerve blocks can be performed using a variety of guidance techniques. Recently, ultrasound has gained popularity for regional anesthesia because it allows direct imaging of peripheral nerves, the block needle, and injection distribution. This chapter is a focused update of two chapters on peripheral nerve blockade from the previous edition. The sections to follow contain a selective description of the more common peripheral nerve blocks utilized in clinical practice.

Techniques for Localizing Neural Structures

PARESTHESIA TECHNIQUES

The paresthesia-seeking technique has a long, successful history as a simple method that requires little specialized equipment. A paresthesia is elicited when a needle makes direct contact with a nerve. Paresthesia-seeking techniques are reliant on patient cooperation and participation to guide the needle and local anesthetic injection accurately; therefore only small doses of sedation medication are recommended. Paresthesia techniques have been criticized for causing patient discomfort, although clinical studies have not shown a significant increase in neurologic complications with this technique.[1] Caution should be used when initiating the injection of local anesthetic to ensure that the needle is not intraneural. There is controversy in the literature regarding the use of B-bevel (blunt bevel or short bevel) needles versus sharp needles regarding the incidence and severity of nerve injury if the needle inadvertently punctures or pierces the nerve. Because B-bevel needles have a blunt tip, which is likely to push the nerve aside, they are much less likely to penetrate the nerve; however, when an injury does occur, it appears to be more severe. In contrast, sharp needles are more likely to penetrate the nerve, but the injury appears to be less destructive.[2,3] Success with the paresthesia technique is highly dependent on the skill of the practitioner and requires a thorough understanding of anatomy. This technique was slowly replaced in the 1980s when peripheral nerve stimulation was introduced. Currently, no single technique has been shown to be superior with respect to incidence of neurologic complications.

PERIPHERAL NERVE STIMULATION

Peripheral nerve stimulators deliver small pulses of electric current to the end of a block needle to cause depolarization and muscle contraction when the tip of the needle is in close proximity to a neural structure. This technique allows for localization of a specific peripheral nerve without requiring the elicitation of a paresthesia, thus allowing patients to be more sedated during block placement. It is necessary to attach the cathode (negative terminal) to the stimulating needle and the anode (positive terminal) to the surface of the patient because cathodal stimulation is more efficient than anodal stimulation. Most current-stimulating needles are coated with a thin layer of electrical insulation along the needle shaft with the exception of the tip. This allows for higher current density at the tip of the needle. Higher current output (>1.5 mA) is more likely to stimulate neural structures through tissue or fascial planes and can be associated with painful, vigorous muscle contractions. After localization of the correct motor response, the current is gradually decreased to a current of 0.5 mA or less. A motor response at a current of approximately 0.5 mA is appropriate when used to facilitate the location for injection of local anesthetic or catheter placement.[4] Immediately following injection of local anesthetic or saline (ionic solutions), the current density at the needle tip will rapidly dissipate and the evoked motor response is eliminated (the Raj test)[5].

The stimulating current pulse can be modified to produce a sensory response. The short-duration impulse commonly used (0.1 ms) is effective in stimulating motor fibers, but a longer-duration pulse (0.3 ms) will also stimulate sensory fibers, a useful feature if a pure sensory nerve is being sought.

Ultrasound Guidance

Ultrasound imaging allows direct visualization of peripheral nerves, the block needle tip, and local anesthetic distribution.[6] This imaging modality has proven highly useful for guiding targeted drug injections and catheter placement. This section describes the general principles of ultrasound imaging for regional blocks.

FUNDAMENTAL ASSUMPTIONS AND ARTIFACTS

Ultrasound is sound with a frequency above the audible range (>20,000 cycles per second). The frequencies used in clinical imaging are within the range of 1 to 20 MHz. High-frequency ultrasound beams are well collimated and therefore can provide high resolution. For most regional blocks, the highest frequency is selected that adequately penetrates the depth of field. Sound waves reflected at the interface of two tissues with different acoustic impedances generate echoes. Ambient lighting has a large effect on visual discrimination; therefore dim lighting without glare is especially useful for imaging low-contrast targets such as peripheral nerves.

Ultrasound imaging is predicated on several common assumptions.[7] First, the speed of sound through soft tissue is 1540 m/s, meaning 13 μs elapse for each centimeter of soft tissue traversed back and forth for the total fly-back time of received echoes. This assumption allows interconversion of time and distance for echo ranging. Local heterogeneities in soft tissue can cause artifactual bending of the block needle on ultrasound scans, known as the bayonet artifact (Fig. 46.1).[8,9] Bayonet artifacts are commonly observed during the lateral in-plane approach to popliteal block (see Sciatic Nerve Blocks in the Popliteal Fossa) because more adipose tissue is present over the nerves near the posterior midline of the leg (adipose tissue has a slower speed of sound than the adjacent muscle). The speed of sound artifacts relate both to time-of-flight considerations and to refraction that occurs at the interface of tissues with different speeds of sound.

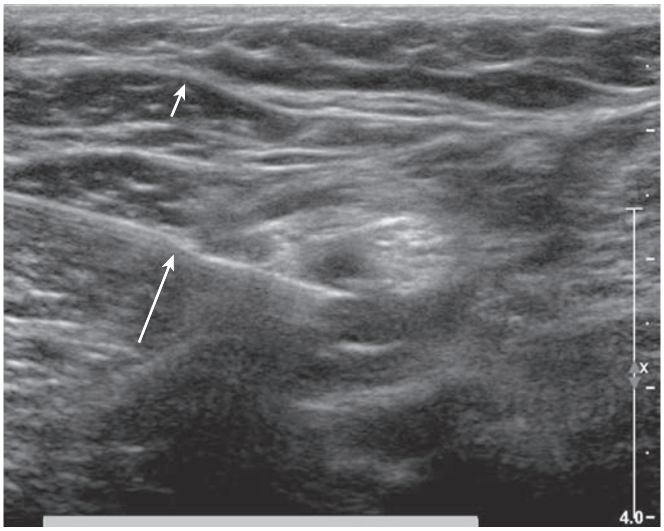


Fig. 46.1 Bayonet artifact is observed during popliteal block of the sciatic nerve. In this sonogram, the block needle appears to bend as it approaches the sciatic nerve in the popliteal fossa *(long arrow)*. The slower speed of sound in the overlying adipose tissue, compared with the adjacent muscle *(short arrow)*, produces this artifact.

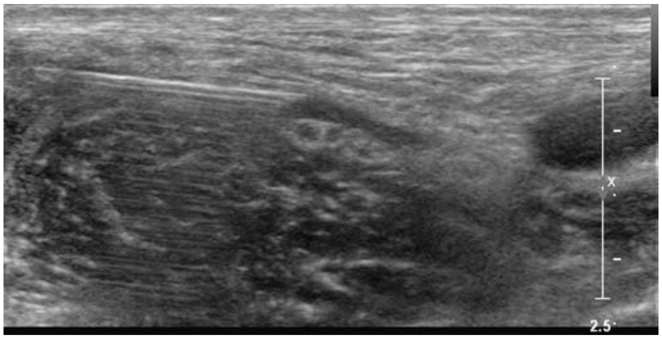


Fig. 46.2 Reverberation artifact is observed during femoral nerve block. Sound waves reverberate back and forth between the walls of the needle and then return later to the transducer. Because the sound waves return at a later time, they are displayed deep within the field of imaging. No reverberation artifact is observed from the needle tip because the bevel opening does not have opposing walls.

Second, ultrasound waves are assumed to take a straight path to and from tissue. When this does not occur, reverberation artifacts are displayed deep to the reflector. Reverberation artifacts are commonly observed from the block needle shaft at shallow angles of insertion because sound waves bounce back and forth between the walls of the needle before returning to the transducer (Fig. 46.2). Comet tail artifact is another type of reverberation artifact and helps identify strong reflectors such as the pleura during supraclavicular and intercostal blocks. At low receiver gain, the comet tail is seen as a tapering series of discrete echo bands just deep

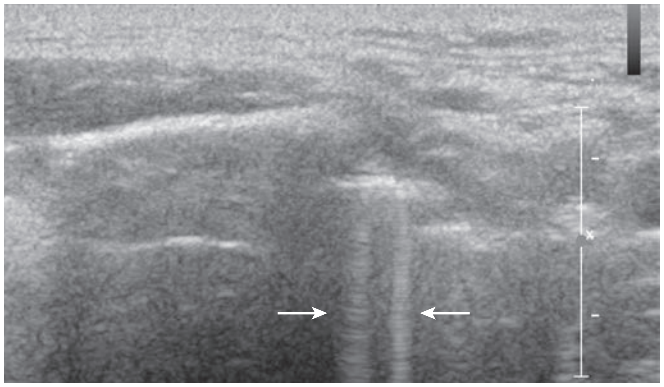


Fig. 46.3 Comet-tail artifact is observed during the scanning of the upper airway *(arrows)*. Small collections of water near the air interface, which also are seen during scanning of the pleura, generate this artifact.

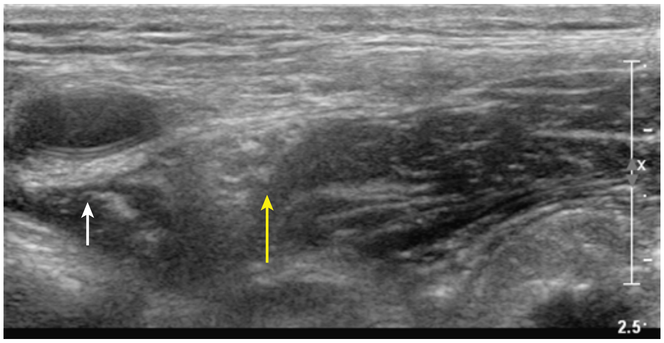


Fig. 46.4 Posterior acoustic enhancement artifact is observed during femoral nerve block. The echoes deep to the femoral artery are enhanced *(white arrow)* and may be incorrectly identified as the femoral nerve *(yellow arrow)*.

to a strongly reflecting structure. The spacing between the bands represents the distance between the anterior and posterior walls of the object.[10] Internal reverberations (arising from within the object) cause the comet tail artifact, most intensely observed when the anatomic object is perpendicular to the beam. Comet tail artifact from the pleura relates to lung water content, because small collections of lung water lined by the strongly reflecting pleura can allow the sound beam to enter and then return at varying times to the transducer (Fig. 46.3).

Third, all reflectors are assumed to be on the central ray of the transducer beam. When this assumption is not true, out-of-plane artifacts are observed (slice thickness artifacts). Definitive proof of out-of-plane artifacts requires multiple views, which are recommended when such ambiguities arise.

Unlike adjacent soft tissue, most biologic fluids do not significantly attenuate the sound beam and therefore cause acoustic enhancement (sometimes referred to as posterior acoustic enhancement or increased through-transmission). Acoustic enhancement artifacts deep to blood vessels can be erroneously interpreted as peripheral nerves (Fig. 46.4). For example, acoustic enhancement deep to the second part of the axillary artery in the axilla can be mistaken for the radial nerve. In the infraclavicular region, acoustic enhancement deep to the axillary artery can be mistaken for the posterior cord of the brachial plexus (and similarly, for the femoral artery and the femoral nerve in the inguinal region).

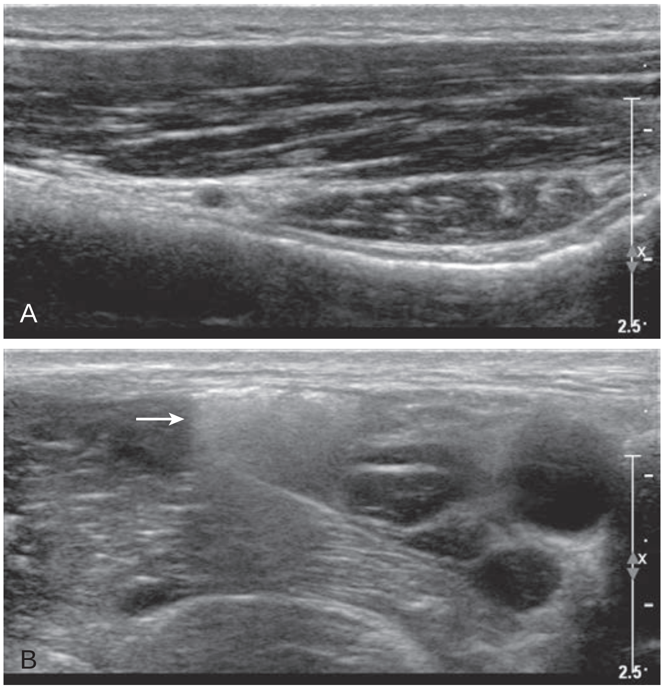


Fig. 46.5 Acoustic shadowing occurs during regional blocks. (A) During block of the axillary nerve in the proximal arm, the cortical surface of the humerus reflects and absorbs sound waves, thereby producing acoustic shadowing deep to the bone surface. (B) During femoral nerve block, air inadvertently injected into the field layers produces strong reflection and acoustic shadowing *(arrow)*.

Acoustic shadowing occurs deep to strong reflecting structures, such as the cortical surface of mature bone (Fig. 46.5). Acoustic shadows from refraction (also termed refractile shadowing or lateral edge shadowing) are often observed deep to the edges of blood vessels when the vessels are imaged in the short-axis view. Refractive edge shadows can be seen from the carotid artery during stellate ganglion block or from the second part of the axillary artery during infraclavicular block. Refraction artifacts (e.g., refractile shadowing) are less apparent when spatial compound imaging (for further information, see later in this chapter) is used to reduce angle-dependent artifacts.

Transducer Selection, Manipulation, and Modes of Imaging

Ultrasound transducers consist of piezoelectric crystals that emit and receive high-frequency sound waves by interconverting electrical and mechanical energy. Transducer selection is important to the success of ultrasound-guided regional anesthesia procedures. High-frequency sound waves provide the best resolution but will not penetrate far into tissue. The frequency range is therefore chosen to be the highest that will allow adequate insonation of the entire depth of field. A low-frequency transducer can be used to image large nerves that lie deep, such as the cords of the

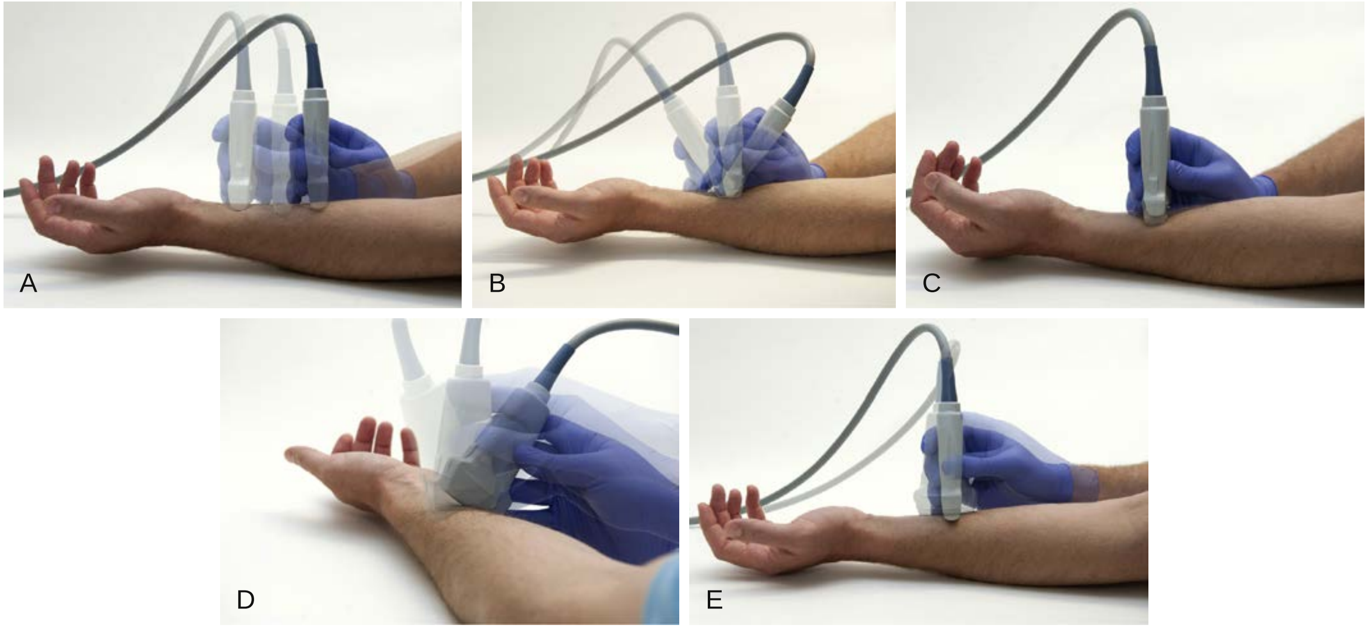


Fig. 46.6 Transducer manipulation. Sliding (A), tilting (B), compression (C), rocking (D), and rotation (E) of the transducer are shown.

brachial plexus that surround the second part of the axillary artery or the proximal sciatic nerve in the gluteal region.

The footprint size (i.e., the length of the active face transducer that contacts the skin) is chosen to provide a broad enough view of the structures of interest. As a general rule, the footprint should be at least as large as the anticipated depth of field. A square or landscape view is better than a keyhole view (i.e., depth greater than footprint) for guidance. As a rule of thumb, for in-plane technique (see Approaches to Regional Block With Ultrasound), every millimeter of the footprint is approximately a millimeter of guidance.

Linear-array transducers generally have a higher scan-line density than curved arrays and therefore produce the best image quality. Images from linear arrays are usually displayed in a rectangular format. When a linear transducer is needed but space at the site of block is limited by anatomic structures such as adjacent bone, a compact linear (hockey stick) transducer that has a smaller footprint can be very useful. Curved arrays provide a broad field of view for a given footprint size and are generally used when space is limited (e.g., infraclavicular region). Curved probes are easier to rock (see Infraclavicular Blocks) and produce images in sector format.

Universal precautions should be used when handling dirty equipment. External surface probes require disinfection between every use and after extended periods of nonuse, per instructions of the manufacturer. Do NOT drop any ultrasound transducer, because the active face of the transducer is especially sensitive to contact with hard surfaces.

One of the essential skills to acquire for regional block with ultrasound is transducer manipulation (Fig. 46.6). For this reason, standardized nomenclature has been established[11]:

- Sliding (moving contact) the transducer along the known course of the nerve using a short-axis view often helps.
- Tilting (cross-plane, side-to-side) will vary the echo brightness of peripheral nerves. Optimizing this angle is critical to promote nerve visibility.
- Compression is often used to confirm venous structures. To improve imaging, compression not only provides better contact, but it also brings the structures closer to the surface of the transducer. Soft tissue is subject to compression; therefore estimates of tissue distances will vary.
- Rocking (in-plane, toward, or away from the indicator) is often necessary to improve visibility of the needle and anatomic structures when the working room is limited.
- Rotation of the probe will produce true short-axis views rather than oblique or long-axis views.

Anisotropy is the change in echogenicity with inclination of the transducer. In general, when objects are obliquely imaged, they appear less echogenic (Fig. 46.7). This relationship is most pronounced for tendons but also occurs for muscle and nerves.[12] Although the term anisotropy was first used to describe changes in received echoes when rocking the transducer with structures viewed in long axis, it has also been used for short-axis views when tilting the transducer. With experience, operators learn to rock and tilt the transducer naturally to fill in the received echoes from peripheral nerves. Sliding and rotating the transducer achieves needle tip localization after optimizing peripheral nerve echoes by tilting.

Spatial compound imaging steers ultrasound beams in different, predetermined angles, typically within approximately 20 degrees from the perpendicular (Fig. 46.8). These multiple lines of insonation are then combined to produce a single composite image. Spatial compound imaging appears to reduce angle-dependent artifacts, anisotropic effects, and acoustic shadows. Another advantage for regional block is that the definition of tissue planes and the detection of nerve borders can be improved. In the systems that have been tested, spatial compound imaging improves needle tip visibility over a limited range of needle insertion angles (<30 degrees). The stray lines of sight (i.e., those that travel off the field underneath the transducer) can be used to form a wider field of view in a trapezoidal format.

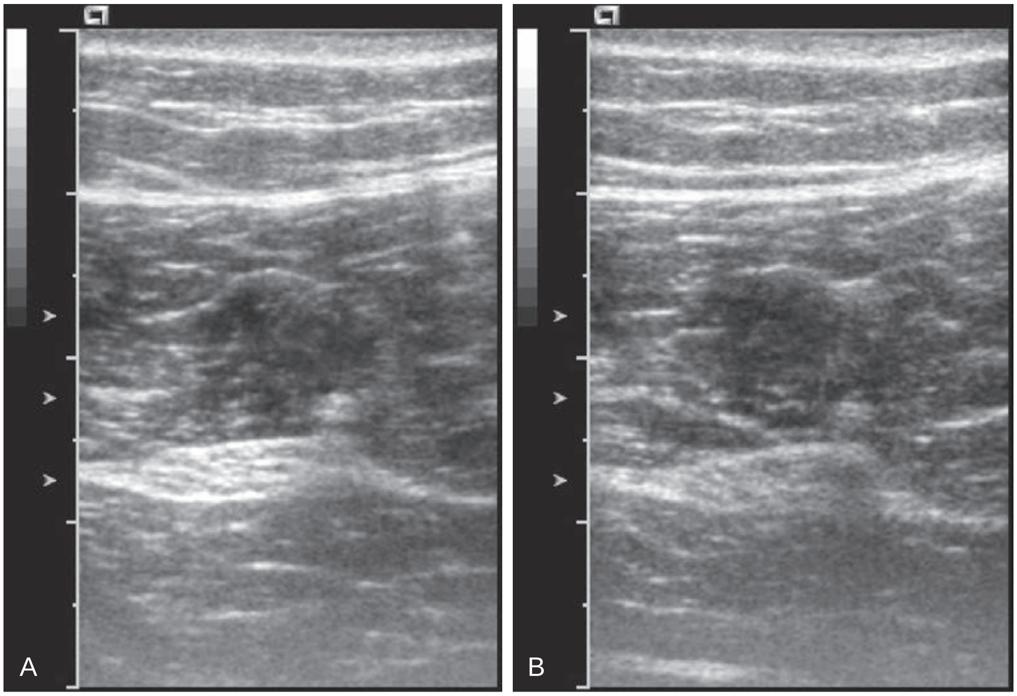


Fig. 46.7 (A) Sciatic nerve imaging in the subgluteal region. (B) The amplitude of the received echoes diminishes when the angle of insonation is changed away from perpendicular to the nerve path, thereby demonstrating anisotropy.

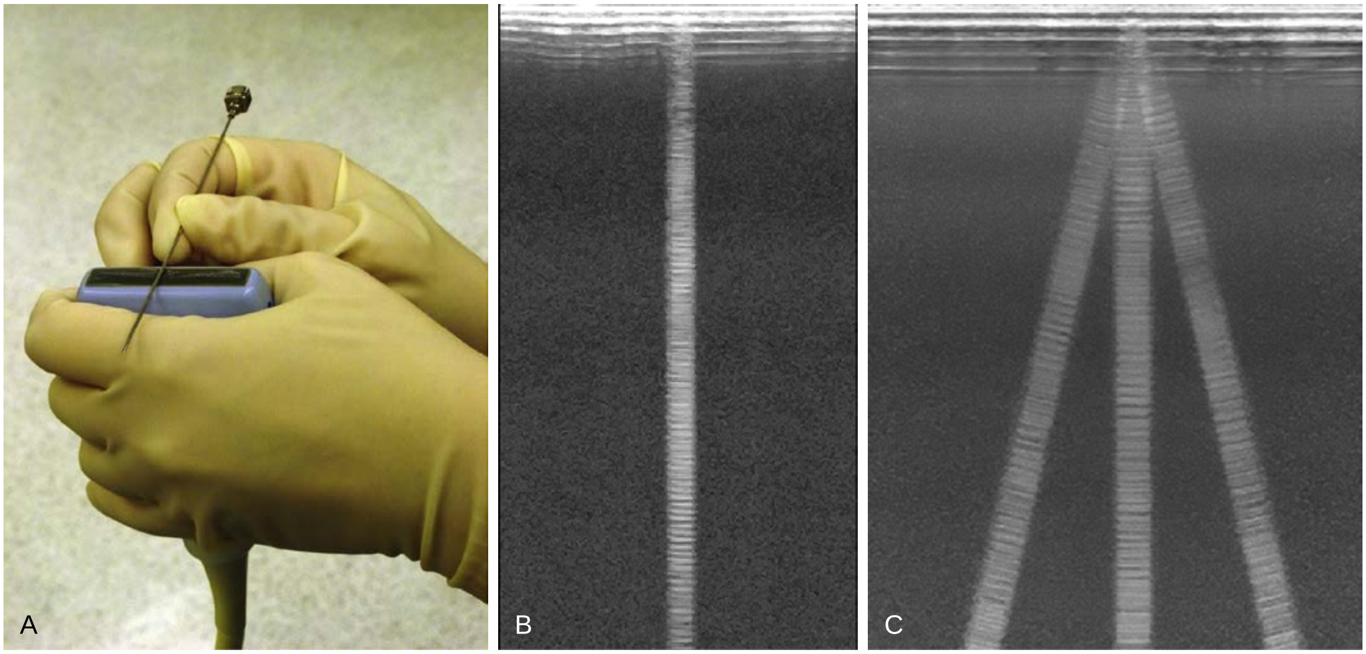


Fig. 46.8 Spatial compound imaging. Some forms of ultrasound imaging use multiple lines of sight by electronically steering the beam to different angles. These sonograms were obtained by placing a linear array test tool (the solid metal stylet of a 17-gauge epidural needle) over the active face of the transducer to isolate a single element. (A) External photograph demonstrates the linear array test tool applied to the active face of the ultrasound transducer. (B) Single-beam imaging is demonstrated. (C) Three lines of sight are used to form a compound image. The test tool images do not display the beam itself, but rather the transmit and receive apertures.

A Doppler shift occurs when a wave source and receiver are moving relative to each other, which produces a change in frequency such that the frequencies of the transmitted and reflected sound waves are not the same. When a wave source and receiver are moving toward each other, the observed frequency is greater than the source frequency; and when moving away from each other, the observed frequency is lower. The change in frequency is related to the velocity of moving reflectors and the angle of insonation. In clinical medicine, red blood cells are the primary reflectors that produce Doppler shifts.

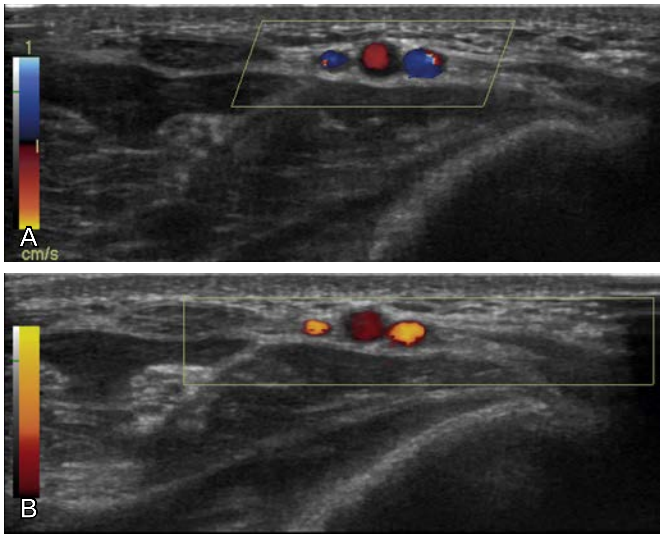


Fig. 46.9 Duplex sonograms illustrate the Doppler shift. (A) In color Doppler, color encoding is based on the mean frequency shift. (B) In power Doppler, color encoding is based on the power spectrum.

Box 46.1 Respective Advantages of Color and Power Doppler Imaging Modalities

Color Doppler

Directional information
Velocity estimates
Less motion artifact (flash artifact)

Power Doppler

More sensitive to detect the presence of flow (by a factor of 3-5 in some cases)
Less angle dependent
No aliasing

Doppler ultrasound imaging has different modes (Fig. 46.9). Traditional color Doppler encodes mean frequency shifts to provide directional velocity information; that is, conventional blue color indicates flow away from the transducer, whereas red color indicates flow toward the transducer. More recently, a more sensitive Doppler technology has been developed that encodes color based on the integration of the Doppler power spectrum.[13] Power Doppler is less angle dependent and not subject to aliasing. The disadvantages are that no directional information is provided and motion sensitivity (flash artifact) is high. Power Doppler is especially useful for detecting small arteries that accompany nerves (Box 46.1). Power Doppler can detect these small arteries and better delineate the course of tortuous vessels that have unfavorable angles to the ultrasound beam.

Needle Tip Visibility

A large number of factors influence needle tip visibility in clinical practice. Metal needles are hyperechoic and can cause reverberation artifact. Needle tip visibility is best when the needle path is parallel to the active face of the transducer. Under this condition, the needle is perpendicular to the sound beam; therefore strong specular reflections will be produced; that is, mirror-like reflections will be produced from a smooth surface. As the angle of incidence is increased, the mean brightness will decrease.[14] In this same study, the bevel angles were ground from 10 to 70 degrees but were found to have no effect on the needle tip echo. However, bevel orientation does influence the needle tip echo; visibility is best with the bevel either directly facing or averting the transducer.[15] Because needle diameters are smaller than the scan plane thickness, larger needles are more echogenic than finer ones.

Visualization of needles in echogenic tissue is difficult, particularly in bright adipose tissue. A number of strategies have been proposed to improve needle tip visibility.[16,17] A low-receiver gain can improve the detection of the needle tip echo. Spatial compound imaging can help identify the needle tip when the needle path is at an angle with respect to the transducer. However, one limitation of this strategy is that only a small triangular section of the field of imaging receives all the lines of sight and is therefore fully compounded. In addition, the range of angles for spatial compound imaging is limited and is usually exceeded by the desired needle insertion path. Rocking back the transducer can improve the angle between the ultrasound beam and needle during in-plane technique (see Approaches to Regional Block with Ultrasound). Most practitioners orient the needle so that the needle bevel faces the transducer.

Among needles originally developed for use in regional anesthesia, Hustead bevels tended to be more visible than side port needles that lack cutting bevels. Needles with echogenic modifications are now commercially marketed for peripheral nerve blocks. One engineering strategy has been to texture the needle surface so that echoes return to the transducer source, regardless of the angle of insonation (Fig. 46.10). One potential limitation of these needle designs is the finite size of the needle texturing. Low-frequency transducers produce longer wavelengths that may be too large to reflect strongly back from the textured surface of the needle.

Approaches to Regional Block With Ultrasound

Peripheral nerves can be directly detected with high-resolution ultrasound imaging.[18] The fascicular echotexture is the most distinguishing feature of nerves (honeycomb architecture) (Fig. 46.11). More central nerves, such as the cervical ventral rami, have fewer fascicles and can appear monofascicular on ultrasound scans. Ultrasound frequencies of 10 MHz or higher are required to distinguish tendons from nerves based on echotexture alone. One of the most powerful techniques to identify nerve fascicles is to slide a broad linear transducer over the known course of a peripheral nerve with the nerve viewed in short axis (transverse cross section).

Nerves can be round, oval, or triangular in shape. Although nerve shape can change along the nerve path, the cross-sectional nerve area is relatively constant in the absence of major branching (Fig. 46.12).[19] Peripheral

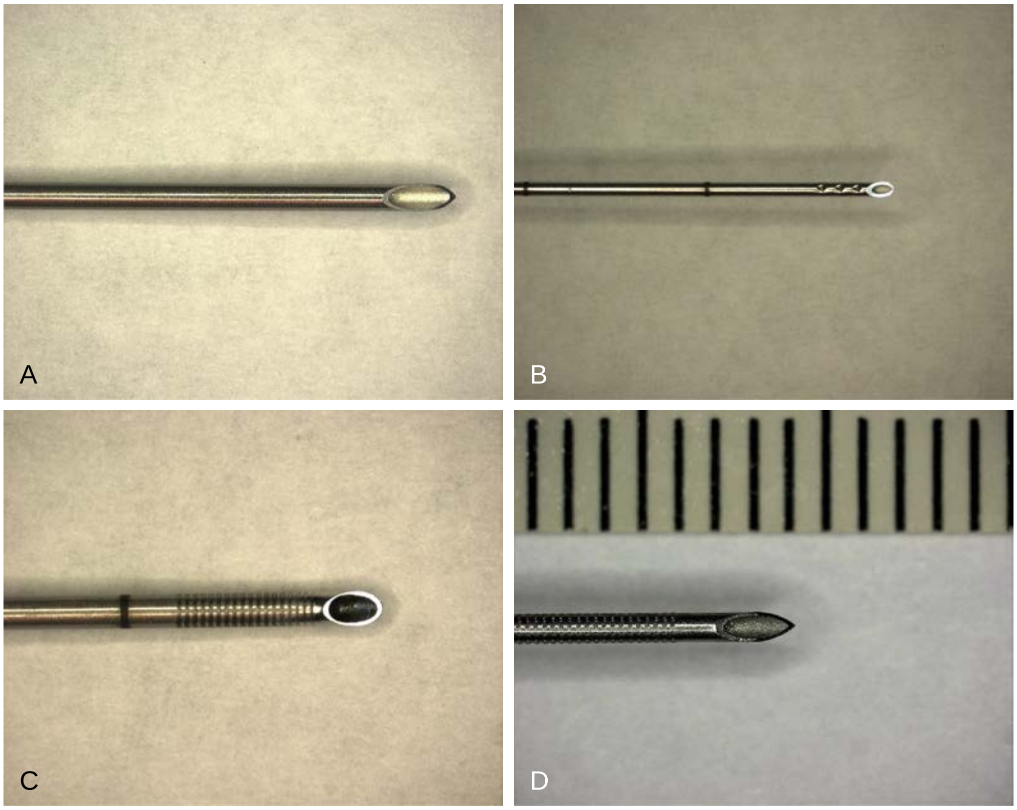


Fig. 46.10 Photomicrographs of needles are used for regional block. A plain conventional needle (A) and echogenic designs (B, C, D) are shown. A smooth needle may not generate a recordable echo because its rounded shaft reflects most incident sound away from the source. A variety of textured surfaces are manufactured and marketed to improve needle tip detection on acquired sonograms. (Modified from Gray AT. *Atlas of Ultrasound-Guided Regional Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2018.)

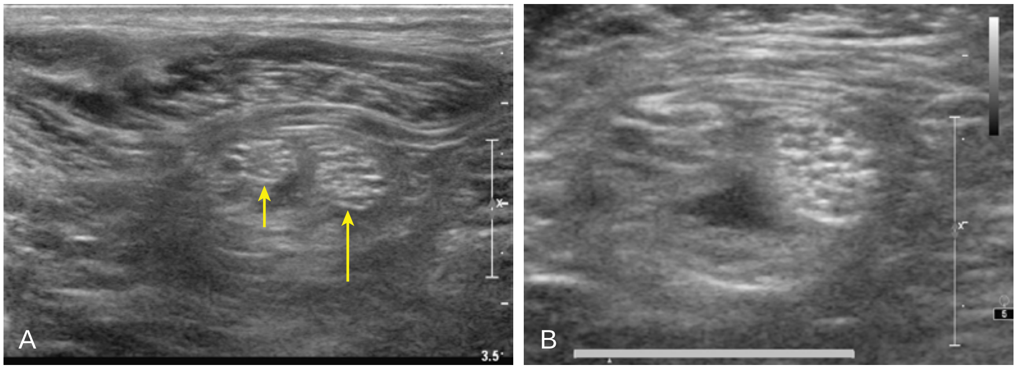


Fig. 46.11 Nerve echotexture. (A) Fascicles of the common peroneal *(short yellow arrow)* and tibial *(long yellow arrow)* nerves are visualized in the popliteal fossa. In this sonogram the honeycomb appearance of a polyfascicular peripheral nerve is observed. (B) Close-up view shows detailed echotexture of the two nerves.

nerves are pathologically enlarged either by entrapment or in certain neuromuscular disorders, such as Charcot-Marie-Tooth, type 1A, disease (Fig. 46.13). Some evidence suggests that patients with diabetic neuropathy also have enlarged peripheral nerves.

Although direct nerve imaging has led to a phenomenal increase in ultrasound-guided regional anesthesia, the identification of other nearby anatomic structures, such as the fascia and other connective tissue, is also critical in this endeavor. These layers permit favorable distribution of local anesthetic, making nerve contact with the block needle unnecessary.

Many approaches to regional blocks with ultrasound are available (Table 46.1). Peripheral nerves are usually viewed in short axis rather than long axis. The needle can approach within the plane of imaging (in-plane technique) or cross the plane of imaging as an echogenic dot (out-of-plane technique). For some regional blocks, offline markings (skin markings before needle insertion) are used instead of online imaging (i.e., imaging during needle insertion and injection). Most studies have suggested that adequate visualization and correct identification of the relevant structures (e.g., peripheral nerve, needle tip, local anesthetic, adjacent anatomic structures) is more important than the

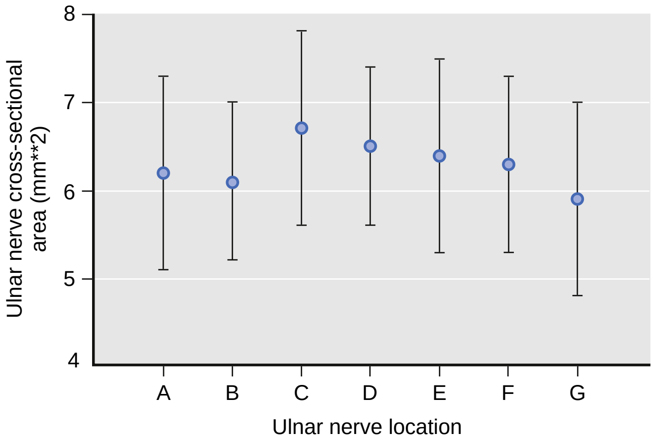


Fig. 46.12 Cross-sectional area of a peripheral nerve as a function of nerve path length. In this figure the cross-sectional area of the ulnar nerve is shown at various points in the upper extremity. Axilla (A); midhumerus (B); 2 cm proximal to medial epicondyle (C); medial epicondyle (D); 2 cm distal to medial epicondyle (E); arterial split (F); and wrist crease (G). Data are shown as mean values with standard deviations. Despite changes in shape that can occur, the cross-sectional area of nerves is relatively constant along the nerve path in the absence of major branching. (Modified from Cartwright MS, Shin HW, Passmore LV, Walker FO. Ultrasonographic findings of the normal ulnar nerve in adults. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 288[3]:394–396, 2007.)

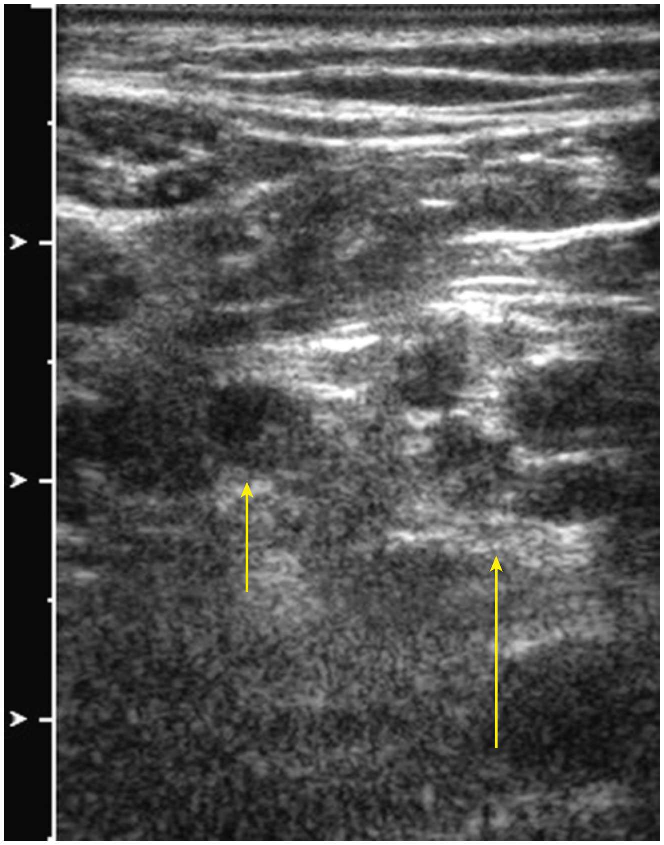


Fig. 46.13 Sonogram demonstrates the popliteal fossa of a patient with Charcot-Marie-Tooth, type 1A, disorder. The peripheral nerves are significantly enlarged because of the large fascicles *(yellow arrows)*. Nerves of the symptomatic and asymptomatic sides can appear similar in these patients. Large tick marks are 10 mm apart.

Table 46.1 Examples of Approaches to Regional Blocks With Ultrasound Guidance

Approach	Examples of Regional Block
Short-axis view, in-plane	Almost any peripheral nerve block Almost any peripheral catheter placement
Short-axis view, out-of-plane	Shallow blocks Interscalene catheter Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve block Femoral nerve catheter placement
Long-axis view, in-plane	Proximal fascia iliaca block Proximal obturator block Anterior sciatic block
Long-axis view, out-of-plane	Epidural placement (longitudinal paramedian view during midline approach) Transtracheal anesthesia

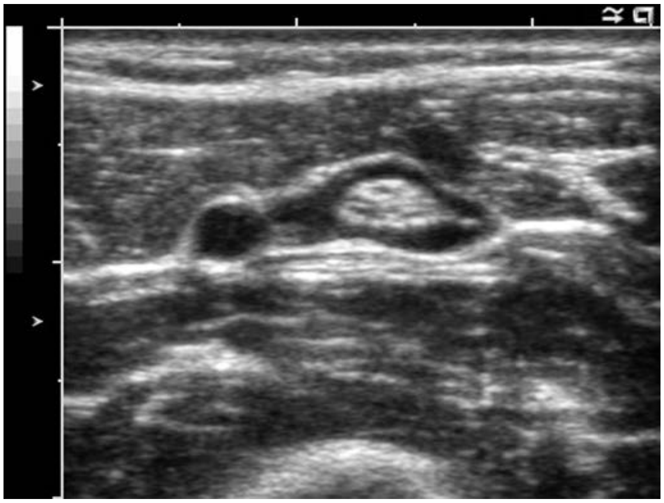


Fig. 46.14 Local anesthetic injection for successful peripheral nerve block. The ulnar nerve and ulnar artery are viewed in short axis in the forearm in this sonogram. The nerve is surrounded with anechoic local anesthetic.

approach, per se, for outcomes after regional blocks. Nevertheless, consistent practice patterns are developing among institutions and illustrate the underlying principles.

Successful injection for peripheral nerve block has typical characteristics (Fig. 46.14). Injections should distribute around the nerve (clarifying the nerve border), travel along the nerve path and branches, and separate the nerve from common anatomic structures such as adjacent arteries that are wrapped together in common fascia and connective tissue. Because anechoic fluid is typically injected, echoes received from the peripheral nerve will also be enhanced by increased through transmission (but not necessarily a sign of block success).

REGIONAL BLOCK TECHNIQUES

Cervical Plexus Blocks

The cervical plexus is derived from the C1, C2, C3, and C4 spinal nerves and supplies branches to the prevertebral muscles, strap muscles of the neck, and phrenic nerve. The deep cervical plexus supplies the musculature of the neck.

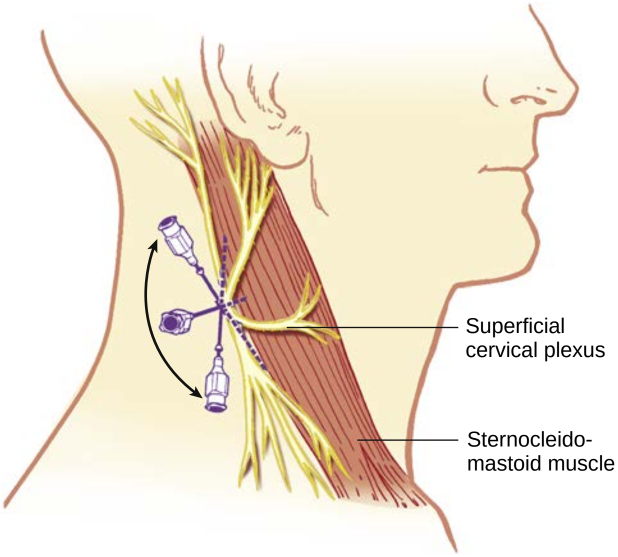


Fig. 46.15 Anatomic landmarks and method of needle placement for a superficial cervical plexus block.

The superficial cervical plexus provides cutaneous sensation of the skin between the trigeminal innervation of the face and the T2 dermatome of the trunk.

Clinical Applications

Blocks of the cervical plexus are easy to perform and provide anesthesia for surgical procedures in the distribution of C2 to C4, including lymph node dissections, plastic surgery repairs, and carotid endarterectomy.[20,21] The ability to continuously monitor the awake patient's neurologic status is an advantage of this anesthetic technique for the latter procedure and has resulted in an upsurge in the popularity of this technique. Bilateral blocks can be used for tracheostomy and thyroidectomy. A variety of approaches to cervical plexus block have been described, including some guided by ultrasound imaging.[22,23]

Superficial Cervical Plexus

The superficial cervical plexus is blocked at the midpoint of the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. A skin wheal is made at this point, and a 22-gauge, 4-cm needle is advanced, injecting 5 mL of solution along the posterior border and medial surface of the sternocleidomastoid muscle (Fig. 46.15). It is possible to block the accessory nerve with this injection, resulting in temporary ipsilateral trapezius muscle paralysis. Deep cervical plexus blocks also are possible but have been associated with a higher incidence of respiratory complications.[24]

Brachial Plexus Blocks

BRACHIAL PLEXUS ANATOMY

The brachial plexus is derived from the anterior primary rami of the fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth cervical nerves and the first thoracic nerve, with variable contributions from the fourth cervical and second thoracic nerves. After leaving their intervertebral foramina, these nerves course anterolaterally and inferiorly to lie between the anterior and middle scalene muscles, which arise from the anterior and posterior tubercles of the cervical vertebra, respectively. The anterior scalene muscle passes caudally and laterally to insert into the scalene tubercle of the first rib; the middle scalene muscle inserts on the first rib posterior to the subclavian artery, which passes between these two scalene muscles along the subclavian groove. The prevertebral fascia invests the anterior and middle scalene muscles, fusing laterally to enclose the brachial plexus in a fascial sheath.

Between the scalene muscles, these nerve roots unite to form three trunks, which emerge from the interscalene space to lie cephaloposterior to the subclavian artery as it courses along the upper surface of the first rib. The superior (C5 and C6), middle (C7), and inferior (C8 and T1) trunks are arranged accordingly and are not in a strict horizontal formation, as often depicted. At the lateral edge of the first rib, each trunk forms anterior and posterior divisions that pass posterior to the midportion of the clavicle to enter the axilla. Within the axilla, these divisions form the lateral, posterior, and medial cords, named for their relationship with the second part of the axillary artery. The superior divisions from the superior and middle trunks form the lateral cord, the inferior divisions from all three trunks form the posterior cord, and the anterior division of the inferior trunk continues as the medial cord.

At the lateral border of the pectoralis minor, the three cords divide into the peripheral nerves of the upper extremity. The lateral cord gives rise to the lateral head of the median nerve and the musculocutaneous nerve; the medial cord gives rise to the medial head of the median nerve, as well as the ulnar, the medial antebrachial, and the medial brachial cutaneous nerves; and the posterior cord divides into the axillary and radial nerves (Fig. 46.16).

Aside from the branches from the cords that form the peripheral nerves as described, several branches arise from the roots of the brachial plexus providing motor innervation to the rhomboid muscles (C5), the subclavian muscles (C5 and C6), and the serratus anterior muscle (C5, C6, and C7). The suprascapular nerve arises from C5 and C6, supplies the muscles of the dorsal aspect of the scapula, and makes a significant contribution to the sensory supply of the shoulder joint.

Sensory distributions of the cervical roots and the peripheral nerves are shown in Fig. 46.17.

Branches arising from the cervical roots were traditionally blocked with the interscalene approach to the brachial plexus. However, interscalene block has a well-documented risk of concomitant phrenic nerve block. This can result in symptomatic hemi-diaphragmatic paralysis and respiratory compromise, especially among those patients with obesity or moderate to severe obstructive pulmonary disease.[25,26] Recent evidence suggests diaphragm paresis may be avoidable with more distal "lung-sparing" block techniques that target the terminal nerves supplying the shoulder joint.

By design, brachial plexus blocks above the clavicle (e.g., interscalene and supraclavicular blocks) primarily target local anesthetic placement near the ventral rami, trunks, and divisions. Blocks below the clavicle (e.g., infraclavicular and axillary blocks) primarily target the cords and terminal nerves.

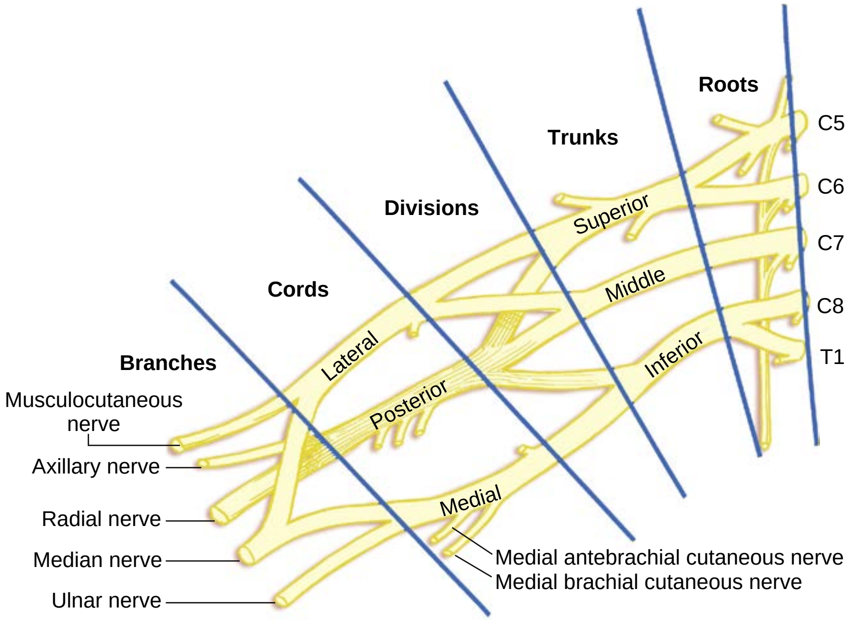

Roots
Trunks
Divisions
Cords
Branches
C5
C6
C7
C8
T1
Superior
Middle
Inferior
Lateral
Posterior
Medial
Musculocutaneous nerve
Axillary nerve
Radial nerve
Median nerve
Ulnar nerve
Medial antebrachial cutaneous nerve
Medial brachial cutaneous nerve

Fig. 46.16 Roots, trunks, divisions, cords, and branches of the brachial plexus.

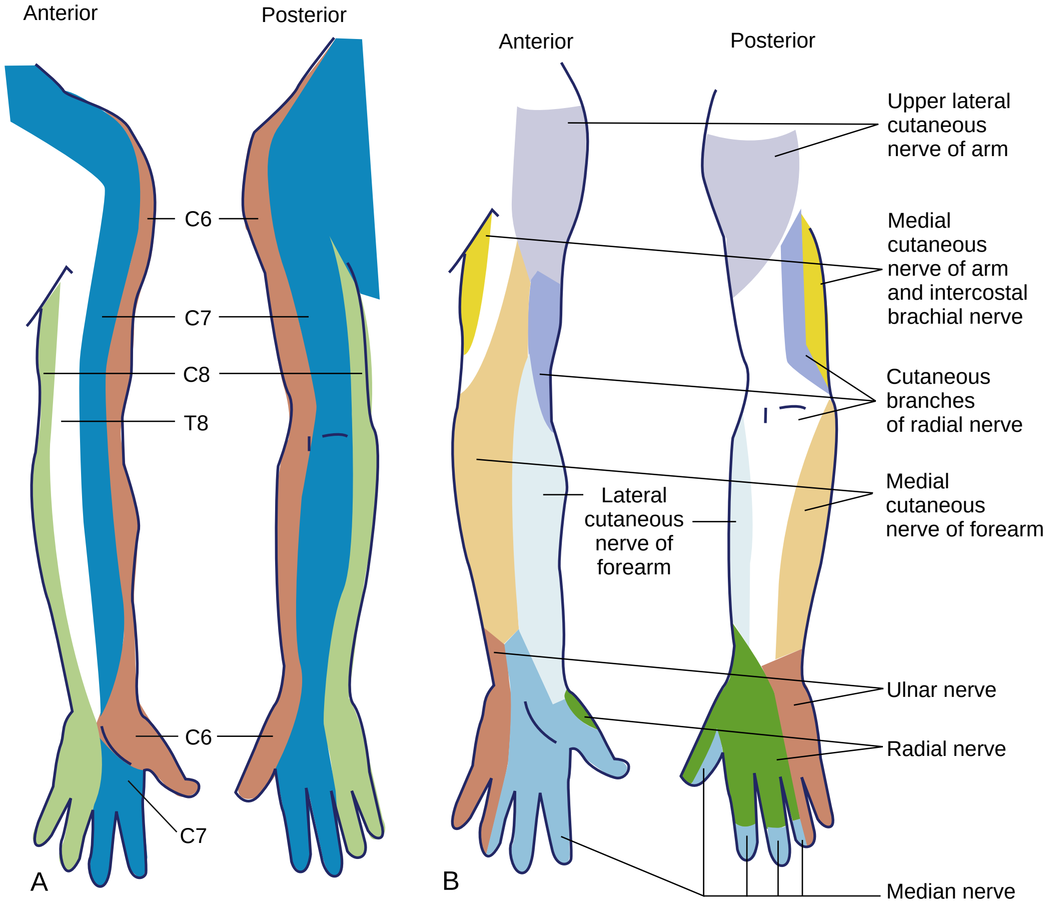

Anterior
Posterior
C6
C7
C8
T8
C6
C7
A
Anterior
Posterior
Upper lateral cutaneous nerve of arm
Medial cutaneous nerve of arm and intercostal brachial nerve
Cutaneous branches of radial nerve
Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
Lateral cutaneous nerve of forearm
Ulnar nerve
Radial nerve
Median nerve
B

Fig. 46.17 (A) Cutaneous distribution of the cervical roots. (B) Cutaneous distribution of the peripheral nerves.

Interscalene Blocks

The interscalene block is often chosen for regional anesthesia technique of the shoulder[27] in those patients without significant pulmonary disease. Blockade occurs at the level of the superior and middle trunks of the brachial plexus. Although this approach can be used for forearm and hand surgery, blockade of the inferior trunk (C8 and T1) can be incomplete and may require supplementation of the ulnar nerve for adequate surgical anesthesia in that distribution.[28] Ultrasound guidance for interscalene block reduces the chance of inferior trunk sparing.[29]

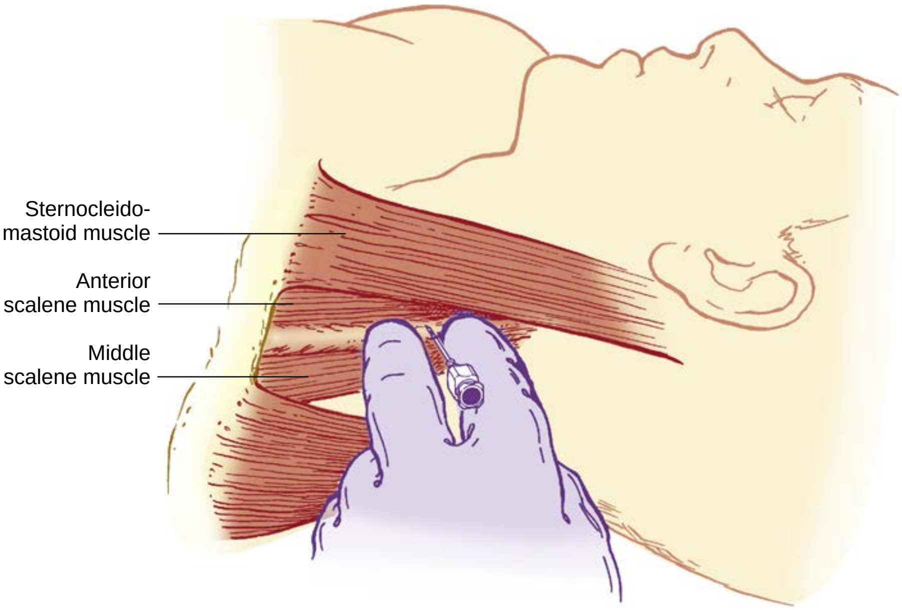


Fig. 46.18 Interscalene block guided by palpation. The fingers palpate the interscalene groove, and the needle is inserted with a caudad and slightly posterior angle.

Several adjacent anatomic structures can serve as important landmarks for performance of interscalene block. The patient should be in the supine position, with the head turned away from the side to be blocked and the patient's arm in any comfortable position. The posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle is readily palpated by having the patient briefly lift the head. The interscalene groove can be palpated by rolling the fingers posterolaterally away from this border over the belly of the anterior scalene muscle into the groove (Fig. 46.18). A line is extended laterally from the cricoid cartilage to intersect the interscalene groove, indicating the level of the transverse process of C6. Although the external jugular vein often overlies this point of intersection, it is not a consistent landmark.

Ultrasound-Guided Technique

Traditional approaches to the interscalene block include paresthesia or peripheral nerve stimulation technique. However, this block is well suited to the use of ultrasound guidance. It is often easiest to obtain a supraclavicular view of the subclavian artery and brachial plexus (Fig. 46.19) and then trace the plexus up the neck with the ultrasound probe until the plexus trunks are visualized as hypoechoic structures between the anterior and medial scalene muscles (the "stoplight" sign[30]). The needle can then be advanced with either an in-plane or out-of-plane approach. After negative aspiration, a small test dose is administered, and local anesthetic spread around the brachial plexus confirms appropriate placement of the needle. Volumes as little as 5 mL may be successful and associated with a decreased frequency of diaphragmatic paresis.[31]

Side Effects and Complications

At the traditional (C6) level of interscalene block, ipsilateral phrenic nerve block and resultant diaphragmatic paresis are inevitable. This effect probably results from the proximity of the phrenic nerve at this level[32] and may cause subjective symptoms of dyspnea. Respiratory compromise can occur in patients with severe preexisting respiratory disease or contralateral phrenic nerve dysfunction.

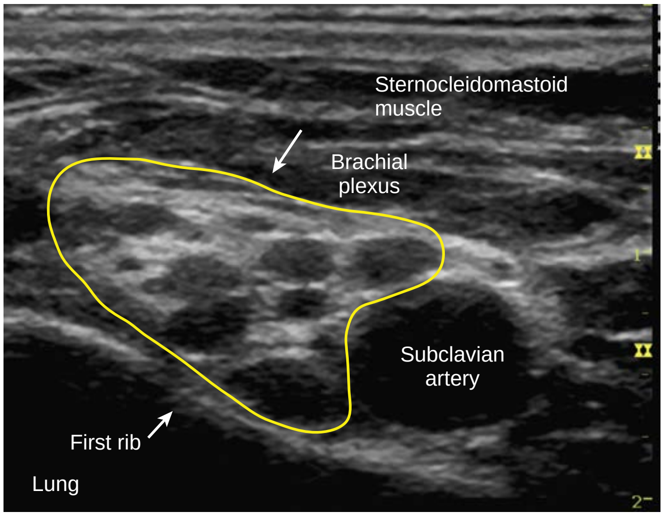


Fig. 46.19 Ultrasound image of the brachial plexus at the level of the first rib.

Involvement of the vagus, recurrent laryngeal, and cervical sympathetic nerves is rarely significant if unilateral, but the patient experiencing symptoms related to these side effects may require reassurance. The risk of pneumothorax is small when the needle is correctly placed at the C5 or C6 level because of the distance from the dome of the pleura.

Severe hypotension and bradycardia (i.e., Bezold-Jarisch reflex) can occur in awake, sitting patients undergoing shoulder surgery under an interscalene block. The cause is presumed to be stimulation of intracardiac mechanoreceptors by decreased venous return, producing an abrupt withdrawal of sympathetic tone and enhanced parasympathetic output. This effect results in bradycardia, hypotension, and syncope. The frequency is decreased when prophylactic β-adrenergic blockers are administered.[33]

Epidural and intrathecal injections can occur with this block. The proximity of significant neurovascular structures may increase the risk of serious neurologic complications when interscalene block is performed in heavily sedated or anesthetized patients. Accordingly, interscalene blocks are usually placed under light sedation in adult patients.

Supraclavicular Blocks. Indications for supraclavicular blocks include operations on the elbow, forearm, and hand. Blockade occurs at the distal trunk–proximal division level of the brachial plexus. At this point, the brachial plexus is relatively compact, and a small volume of local anesthetic produces rapid onset of reliable blockade.

Ultrasound-Guided Technique

The patient is placed in supine position, with the head turned away from the side to be blocked. The arm to be anesthetized is adducted against the side of the body. Similar to interscalene block, traditional approaches to the supraclavicular block include paresthesia or peripheral nerve stimulation. Given the widespread use and availability of ultrasound, this block is now more commonly performed with sonographic guidance. This allows the practitioner to visualize the brachial plexus, subclavian artery, pleura, and first rib. The inherent safety of this technique requires continuous visualization of the needle tip and adjacent anatomic structures during needle advancement.

A high-frequency (15-6 MHz) linear transducer is positioned just proximal to the supraclavicular fossa to obtain a supraclavicular view (see Fig. 46.19). The brachial plexus trunks and divisions are clustered vertically over the first rib on the lateral side of the subclavian artery. The first rib acts as a medial barrier to the needle reaching the pleural dome and is short, wide, and flat.

The needle can then be advanced under direct ultrasound guidance using an in-plane approach from lateral to medial.[34,35] The transducer rests near the clavicle so manipulation can be challenging. Thus advanced skills with needle control are required. After negative aspiration, a small test dose is administered, and local anesthetic spread around the brachial plexus confirms appropriate placement of the needle tip. Volumes as low as 15 to 30 mL may be successful.

Side Effects and Complications

The prevalence of pneumothorax after supraclavicular block is 0.5% to 6% and diminishes with increased experience. Importantly, although the use of ultrasound may decrease the incidence of pneumothorax, the risk has not been eliminated.[36] When this occurs, the onset of symptoms is usually delayed, and it can take up to 24 hours to develop. Thus routine chest radiography after the block is not justified. The supraclavicular approach is best avoided when the patient is uncooperative or cannot tolerate any degree of respiratory compromise. Other complications include phrenic nerve block (as high as 40%-60%), Horner's syndrome, and neuropathy. The presence of phrenic or cervical sympathetic nerve block usually requires only reassurance. Although nerve damage can occur, it is uncommon and usually self-limited.

Suprascapular Nerve Blocks. Suprascapular nerve (SSN) block above the clavicle (anterior approach) is a viable alternative to interscalene block for analgesia of the shoulder region.[37,38] The advantage of this more peripheral approach is that the chance of concomitant phrenic nerve block is significantly reduced. In addition, if the block is semi-selective then other nerves that contribute articular branches to the shoulder joint (e.g., axillary nerve, lateral pectoral nerve) also can be blocked. The anterior approach to SSN block is more shallow (5-10 mm depth) than the more traditional block of the SSN block at the suprascapular notch (20-40 mm depth). Furthermore, the suprascapular notch has variable morphology and in some subjects this landmark is absent. The SSN is the primary sensory innervation of the shoulder joint[39] and is not blocked with approaches to the brachial plexus below the clavicle. Selective low-volume approaches to SSN block above the clavicle also may be useful for pain medicine and rehabilitation.[40]

Indications

The SSN, a mixed-motor and sensory nerve originating from the superior trunk (C5 and C6 nerve roots and often C4 as well) makes a significant contribution to the sensory supply of the shoulder joint. The SSN root may be accessed from within the posterior cervical triangle of the neck where it passes underneath the omohyoid muscle toward the suprascapular notch. The SSN, unlike the suprascapular vessels that remain superficial, then passes deep to the superior transverse scapular ligament exiting through the scapular foramen into the supraspinous fossa finally providing nerve branches to muscles of the shoulder girdle.

Ultrasound-Guided Technique

The anterior SSN block is performed in the supine position with head turned to the contralateral side when accessing the nerve within the posterior cervical triangle (similar positioning as the interscalene nerve block). Alternatively, the patient would be in a seated position to access the scapula for a more distal and posterior SSN block. In the seated position, ask the patient to place his/her hand over to the contralateral shoulder (full shoulder adduction) to move the target (nerve) and scapula lateral from the thorax. Ultrasound guidance is the preferred technique, although a landmark-based method with nerve stimulation for neurolocalization is an option.

Proximal Suprascapular Nerve Block (Anterior Suprascapular Nerve Block). The anterior SSN block technique has emerged as the preferred lung-sparing block alternative to interscalene nerve block.[37,41] A high-frequency linear transducer (15-6 MHz) probe is positioned just proximal to the supraclavicular fossa. Under dynamic scanning, the SSN can be visualized as a round hypoechoic structure deep to the inferior belly of the omohyoid muscle and lateral to the superior trunk in the posterior cervical triangle of the neck (Fig. 46.20) Consider tracing the SSN from its origin (nerve root C5) to facilitate identification. The nerve is then traced more posterior-lateral to a distance away from the superior trunk. A 22-gauge, 5-cm needle is most often selected with shallow 2- to 3-cm depths to the target. Through an out-of-plane or in-plane approach approximately 5 to 15 mL of local anesthetic is deposited deep into omohyoid muscle, but shallow to the prevertebral fascia (higher volumes could result in phrenic nerve blockade). Color Doppler use is advised as the superficial cervical artery and the suprascapular artery, also hypoechoic structures, are strong mimickers of the SSN within the posterior cervical triangle. Auyong and colleagues have shown the anterior SSN block technique provides noninferior, yet lung-sparing, analgesia compared to interscalene nerve block without need for additional terminal nerve block supplementation (e.g., axillary or SSN block).[41]

Shoulder Block (Suprascapular Nerve Plus Axillary [Circumflex] Nerve Block)[42]

In contrast to the anterior suprascapular block, a more distal block of the SSN at the scapula requires the axillary (circumflex) nerve to be also blocked to be remotely comparable to more proximal brachial plexus blockade.[43,44] Unfortunately, the posterior SSN block even with the axillary (circumflex) nerve block will not provide complete anesthesia to the shoulder joint; therefore routinely general anesthesia with supplemental opioid medications would be expected for adequate analgesia.

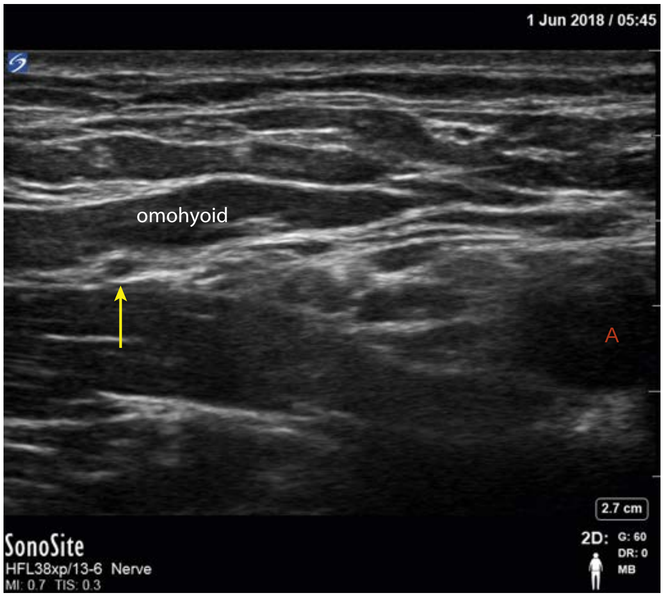


Fig. 46.20 Proximal suprascapular nerve block (anterior suprascapular nerve block). The suprascapular nerve is featured as a round hypoechoic structure deep to the inferior belly of the omohyoid muscle lateral to the superior truck of the brachial plexus within the posterior cervical triangle.

Side Effects and Complications

Serious side effects and complications are primarily due to insertion complications and side effects from local anesthesia use.

Avoid directly targeting the SSN in the suprascapular notch because accidental anterior needle advancement can puncture the pleura. Also, avoid intramuscular placement whether it be avoiding deposit of local anesthesia within the omohyoid (anterior) or within the supraspinatus muscle (posterior), which may result in myotoxicity/myonecrosis. Additionally, the axillary (circumflex) nerve and posterior circumflex artery lie only 2 to 3 mm below the inferior capsule within the neurovascular quadrangular space. Thus a more proximal injection on the posterior upper arm carries a risk of entering the glenohumeral joint space with the block needle and higher local anesthesia volumes have been associated with spread to the posterior cord resulting in radial nerve blockade.

INFRACLAVICULAR BLOCKS

The advantages of the infraclavicular block are that it usually results in complete brachial plexus anesthesia, it is a stable place for a catheter, and no manipulation of the arm is necessary.[45-47] The disadvantages are that the infraclavicular block is a deeper block; therefore needle or probe manipulations are necessary, along with steep angles of needle insertion that result in needle tip visibility issues. Although the arm can remain at the side of the patient, the block is easier when the arm is abducted to straighten the neurovascular bundle. The three arterial wall-hugging cords are named with respect to the second part of the axillary artery; therefore the expected positions are medial, lateral, and posterior. The artery is visualized in short-axis view deep to the pectoralis major and minor muscles (Fig. 46.21). Most practitioners use an in-plane approach from the head of the

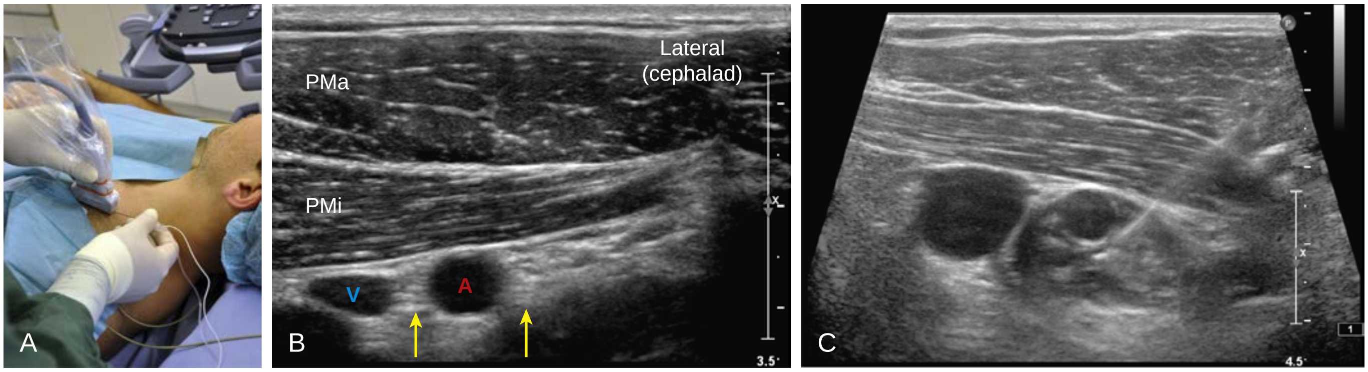


Fig. 46.21 Infraclavicular block with ultrasound imaging. (A) External photograph of the setup for infraclavicular block shows the arm has been abducted in this case. (B) Sonogram of the cords of the brachial plexus *(yellow arrows)* are adjacent to the axillary artery *(A)* and vein *(V)*. The neurovascular bundle lies deep to the pectoralis major *(PMa)* and pectoralis minor *(PMi)* muscles in this anatomic region. (C) Needle tip is in position for infraclavicular block and the resulting local anesthetic distribution.

Table 46.2 Examples of Sonographic Landmarks for Infraclavicular Block

Proximal	Optimal Location	Distal
Cephalic vein	Pectoralis minor muscle (midportion)	Subscapular artery
Thoracoacromial artery	Brachial plexus cords surround axillary artery	Coracobrachialis muscle
Chest wall and pleura	Posterior (or medial) cord underneath axillary artery	Anterior circumflex artery Posterior circumflex artery

Infraclavicular block is usually performed at the level of the second part of the axillary artery (deep to the pectoralis minor muscle). Proximal and distal landmarks along the course of the axillary artery are listed.

Box 46.2 **Sonographic Signs Indicating Infraclavicular Block Success**

- Reduction in axillary artery diameter during injection
- "U-shaped" distribution underneath the axillary artery
- Separation of cords from axillary artery
- *White wall* appearance to the axillary artery (free walls)
- *Dark layer* underneath the axillary artery (long-axis view)

Several studies of clinical block characteristics have validated the high predictive value of local anesthetic distribution underneath the axillary artery for three-cord anesthesia ("U-shaped" distribution).

table or side of the table. The ideal place for local anesthetic distribution to achieve complete infraclavicular block of the brachial plexus is posterior to the axillary artery for single-shot or catheter placement. Substantial evidence suggests that local anesthetic distribution posterior to the axillary artery produces complete brachial plexus block in the infraclavicular region (Table 46.2 and Box 46.2). The cords of the brachial plexus do not need to be directly visualized for successful block. Duplication of the axillary vein is one of the few anatomic variations in the infraclavicular region. The clinical problem is that the accessory vein lies adjacent to the lateral cord of the brachial plexus and near the usual desired position of the needle tip.

AXILLARY BLOCKS

The axillary block is a versatile block for upper extremity anesthesia. Although relatively safe and effective with classical approaches, the cardinal weakness has been the failure to block the musculocutaneous nerve. With the advent of ultrasound imaging, this limitation can be overcome by directly visualizing the musculocutaneous nerve.

The axillary block provides surgical anesthesia of the elbow and more distal upper extremity. The shallow depth of the neurovascular bundle (a 20-mm field is typical) and the large amount of working room make this block relatively easy with ultrasound guidance (Table 46.3). Usually, three arterial wall-hugging branches (median, ulnar, and radial) and one branch with a characteristic medial-to-lateral course in the axilla (musculocutaneous) are visualized. In addition, the musculocutaneous nerve has a characteristic change in shape as it moves from adjacent to the artery (round) to within the coracobrachialis muscle (flat) and then exiting the muscle (triangular).

Table 46.3 Comparison of the Infraclavicular and Axillary Approaches to Brachial Plexus Block

	Infraclavicular Block	Axillary Block
Depth	Deep (two overlying muscles)	Shallow
Onset	Slower	Faster
Tourniquet tolerance	Good	Fair
Catheter success	High	Low

Both in-plane (with needle approaching from the lateral side of the arm) and out-of-plane (with needle approaching from distal to proximal) techniques can be used (Figs. 46.22 and 46.23). The block is performed in the proximal axilla, with the transducer gently pressed against the chest wall to visualize the conjoint tendon of the latissimus dorsi and teres major.[48] A high-frequency linear probe with a small footprint (25–50 mm) with sterile cover can be used for axillary block. The ideal location for local anesthetic injection is between the nerves and the artery so that separation between the two structures occurs to ensure distribution within the neurovascular bundle. These injections result in excellent clinical sensory and motor blocks. The musculocutaneous nerve is usually blocked within the coracobrachialis, where its flat shape gives a large amount of surface area for rapid block. Duplication of the axillary artery and musculocutaneous-median nerve fusion (low-lying lateral cord) are common anatomic variations in the axilla.

Trunk Blocks

INTERCOSTAL NERVE BLOCKS

The intercostal nerves are the primary rami of T1 through T11. T12 is technically the subcostal nerve, and it can communicate with the iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal nerves. Fibers from T1 contribute to the brachial plexus; T2 and T3 provide a few fibers to the formation of the intercostobrachial nerve, which supplies the skin of the medial aspect of the upper arm. Each intercostal nerve has four branches: the gray ramus communicans, which passes anteriorly to the sympathetic ganglion; the posterior cutaneous branch, supplying skin and muscle in the paravertebral area; the lateral cutaneous branch, arising just anterior to the midaxillary line and sending subcutaneous branches anteriorly and posteriorly; and the anterior cutaneous branch, which is the termination of the nerve.

Medial to the posterior angles of the ribs, the intercostal nerves lie between the pleura and the internal intercostal fascia. At the posterior angle of the rib, the nerve lies in the costal groove accompanied by the intercostal vein and artery.

Clinical Applications

Few surgical procedures can be performed with an intercostal block alone, and the application of these blocks in combination with other techniques has largely been supplanted by epidural blockade. However, in patients with contraindications to neuraxial blockade, these techniques can be used alone or combined with other blocks and light

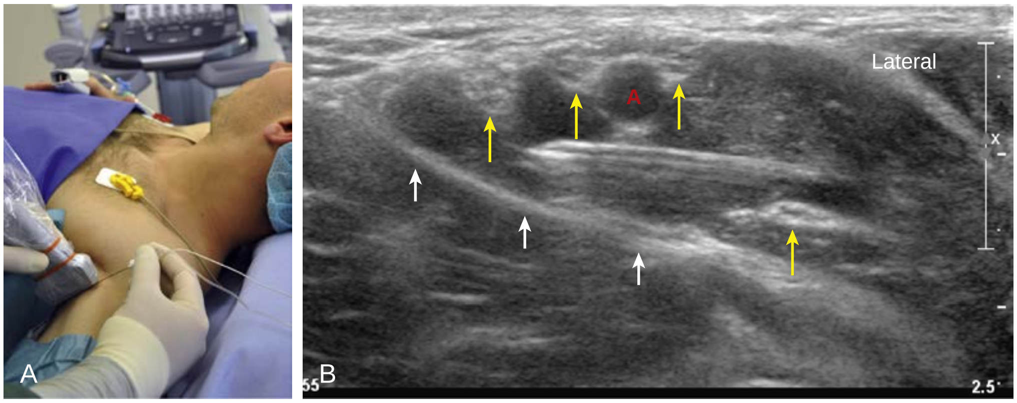


Fig. 46.22 Axillary block with ultrasound guidance. (A) External photograph demonstrates the in-plane approach. (B) Sonogram of the neurovascular bundle in the short-axis view shows the needle tip in-plane after injection of the local anesthetic. The probe compression is just sufficient to coapt the walls of the satellite veins. The block is performed at the level of the conjoint tendon of the latissimus dorsi and teres major *(white arrows)*, which lies under the neurovascular structures. The third part of the axillary artery (A) and nerves of the brachial plexus—radial, ulnar, median, and musculocutaneous—in order from medial to lateral *(yellow arrows)* are shown.

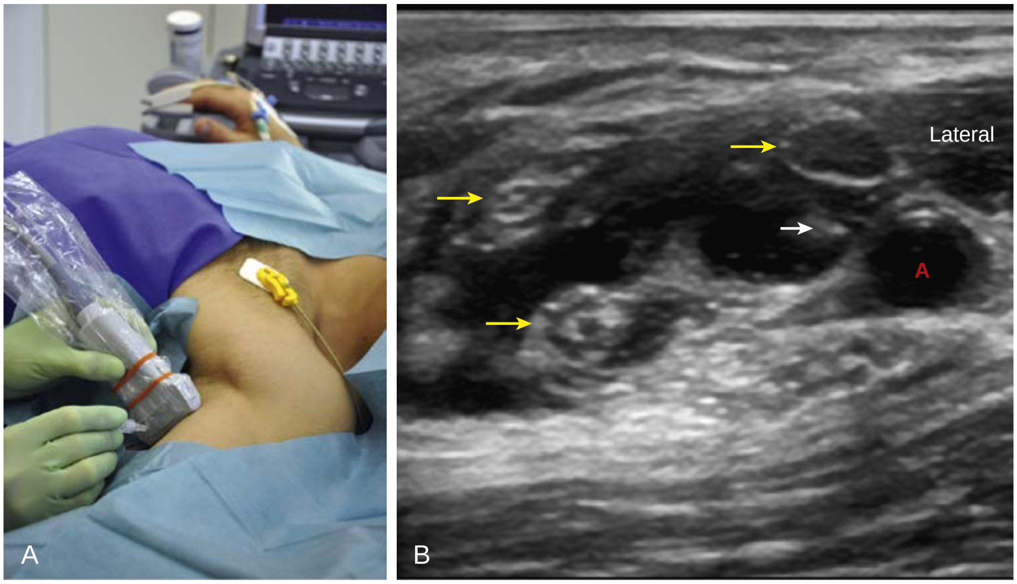


Fig. 46.23 Axillary block with ultrasound guidance. (A) External photograph demonstrates the out-of-plane approach. (B) Sonogram of the neurovascular bundle in the short-axis view shows the needle tip *(white arrow)* crossing the plane of imaging. The probe compression is just sufficient to coapt the walls of the satellite veins. The third part of the axillary artery (A) and nerves of the brachial plexus *(yellow arrows)* are shown.

general anesthesia to provide excellent surgical conditions for intraabdominal procedures. Although surgical applications are possible, the majority of indications are for postoperative analgesia. Intercostal blocks provide a viable alternative to epidural and paravertebral blocks, with a similar safety and efficacy profile.[49]

Intercostal Block Technique

The intercostal nerve can be blocked at the angle of the rib just lateral to the sacrospinalis muscle group. The patient is placed in the prone position with a pillow placed under the abdomen to reduce the lumbar curve (Fig. 46.24). A line is drawn along the posterior vertebral spines. Nearly parallel lines are drawn along the posterior angles of the rib, which can be palpated 6 to 8 cm from the midline. These lines angle medially at the upper levels to prevent overlying of the scapula. The inferior edge of each targeted rib is palpated and is marked on the line intersecting the posterior angle of the rib. After appropriate skin preparation, skin wheals are injected at each of these points. A 22-gauge, short-bevel, 4-cm needle is attached to a 10-mL syringe. Beginning at the lowest marked rib, the index finger of the left hand displaces the skin up over the patient's rib. The needle is inserted at the tip of the finger until it rests on the rib. The fingers of the left hand are shifted to grasp the needle hub firmly. The left hand then walks the needle 3 to 5 mm off the lower rib edge, where 3 to 5 mL of local anesthetic are injected (see Fig. 46.24B and C). This process is repeated at each marked rib. Appropriate intravenous sedation providing analgesia and some degree of amnesia is desirable for the patient's comfort.

Alternatively, intercostal block can be performed in the supine patient at the midaxillary line. Theoretically, the lateral cutaneous branch of the nerve can be missed, but computed tomography studies show that injected solutions spread several centimeters along the costal groove. Further injection of 1 to 2 mL of local anesthetic as the needle is withdrawn blocks the subcutaneous branches.

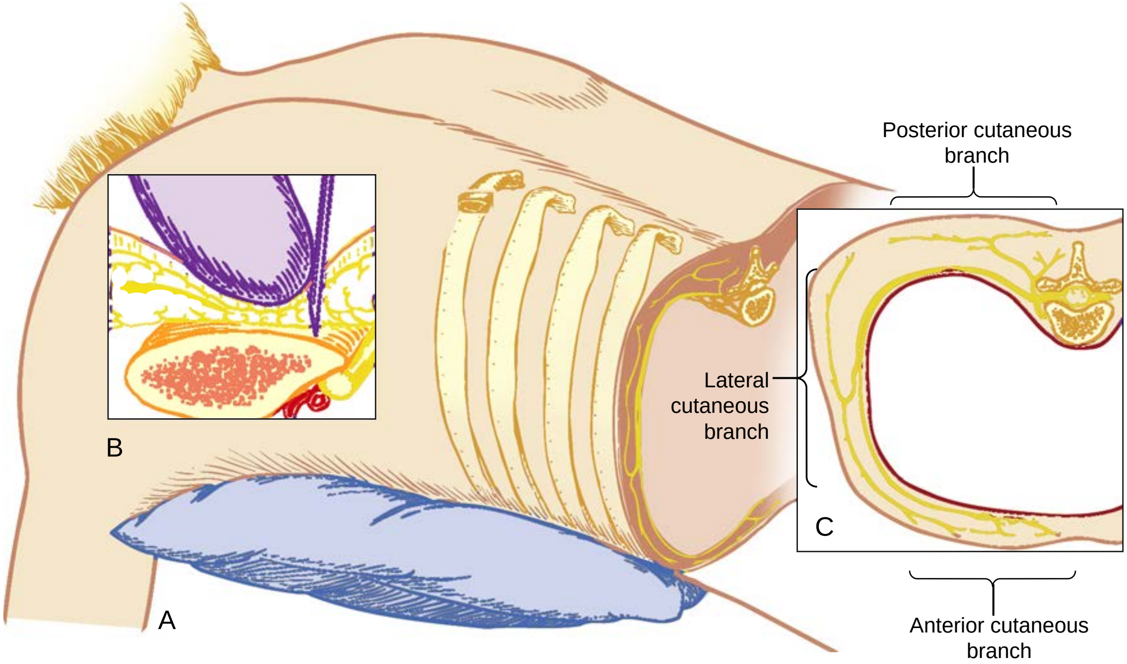


Fig. 46.24 (A) Patient positioning for an intercostal nerve block. (B) The index finger displaces the skin up over the rib. The needle is inserted at the tip of the finger and rests on the rib. The needle is walked off the lower rib edge and inserted 3 to 5 mm. (C) An intercostal nerve and its branches.

Alternative Techniques

Intercostal blocks are possible with ultrasound imaging for guidance. However, the intercostal nerves and vessels are small (about 1-2 mm in diameter) and run in the costal groove and can therefore be difficult to directly image. Similarly, the innermost intercostal muscle, which separates the intercostal nerves and vessels from the internal and external intercostal muscles, is incomplete in the posterior thorax and can be difficult to image.[50] When detected, the innermost intercostal muscle is thin and hypoechoic on ultrasound scans.[51] Intercostal arteries are most visible medially before they enter the costal groove.[52,53] Intercostal arteries are more tortuous in elderly patients, and therefore more exposed and vulnerable to injury.[54]

Intercostal injections dent the pleura, similar to the displacement seen with paravertebral injections.[55] Injections of local anesthetic at the angle of the rib can track medially along the intercostal vessels within the costal groove toward the paravertebral space.[56,57] While variations on ultrasound-guided intercostal nerve blocks have been developed, including anterior approaches to intercostal branches in the serratus plane[58,59] and parasternal region,[60] new technologies are now being developed to improve ultrasound imaging of intercostal nerves and vessels.[61]

Side Effects and Complications

The major complication with intercostal blockade is pneumothorax. The actual incidence, however, was as low as 0.07% in a large series performed by anesthesiologists at all levels of training. Routine postoperative chest radiographs showed an incidence of nonsymptomatic pneumothorax of 0.4% to 1.0%.[62,63] If this unusual complication occurs, treatment is usually limited to observation, administration of oxygen, or needle aspiration. Rarely, chest tube drainage is required.

The risk of systemic local anesthetic toxicity is present with multiple intercostal blocks because of the large volumes and rapid systemic absorption of the solutions. Use of epinephrine has been shown to decrease blood levels. Patients should be monitored and observed carefully during the block and for at least 20 to 30 minutes afterward. Patients with severe pulmonary disease who rely on their intercostal muscles can exhibit respiratory decompensation after bilateral intercostal blockade.

TRANSVERSUS ABDOMINIS PLANE BLOCKS

Four peripheral nerves, the subcostal, ilioinguinal, iliohypogastric, and genitofemoral, primarily innervate the lower abdominal wall. The extended course of the first three nerves through the abdominal wall within the layer between the transversus abdominis and the internal oblique muscles makes this the desired anatomic location for regional block. For ultrasound-guided transversus abdominis plane (TAP) block, the patient is usually in the supine position (Fig. 46.25). The transducer is placed between the iliac crest and costal margin in the midaxillary line. In this location, the muscle layers of the lateral abdominal wall (external oblique, internal oblique, and transversus abdominis) are well defined.

Injection is in the fascial layer that separates the internal oblique and the transversus abdominis muscles. Direct visualization and proximity to the nerves is not critical if 15 to 20 mL of dilute local anesthetic is injected in this layer. The needle approach is in-plane from the anterior side and directed toward the posterolateral corner of the transversus abdominis muscle. The respiratory motion of the peritoneal cavity and influence of muscle contraction makes general anesthesia an appealing option for performing this block. The transversus abdominis muscle is relatively thin; therefore careful placement of the needle tip is necessary.

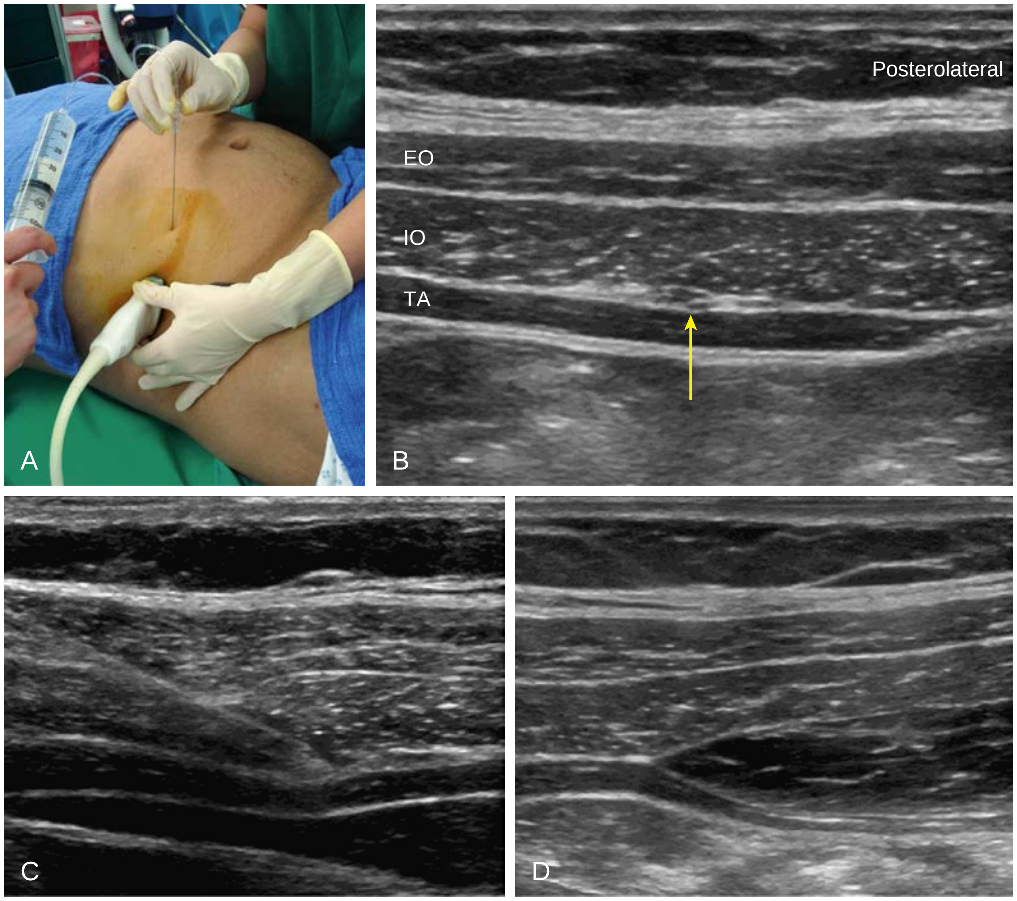


Fig. 46.25 Transversus abdominis plane (TAP) block with ultrasound guidance. (A) Abdominal wall image demonstrates the approach for TAP block. (B) In this sonogram the external oblique *(EO)*, internal oblique *(IO)*, and transversus abdominis *(TA)* muscles are identified (the three-layer-cake appearance). Nerves *(yellow arrow)* are seen entering the plane between the *IO* and *TA* muscles. (C) The needle approaches in-plane and is directed toward the posterolateral edge of the *TA* muscles. (D) The kayak sign demonstrates successful TAP injection. The fascia between the *IO* and *TA* muscles is split apart in the shape resembling a kayak.

ILIOINGUINAL AND ILIOHYPOGASTRIC NERVE BLOCKS

The ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves arise from the first lumbar spinal root. They pierce the transversus abdominis muscle cephalad and medial to the anterior superior iliac spine to lie between the transversus abdominis and internal oblique muscles. After traveling a short distance caudally and medially, their ventral rami pierce the internal oblique muscle before giving off branches, which then pierce the external oblique and provide sensory fibers to the skin. The ilioinguinal nerve courses anteriorly and inferiorly to the inguinal ring, where it exits to supply the skin on the proximal, medial portion of the thigh. The iliohypogastric nerve supplies the skin of the inguinal region.

Indications

Ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric blocks are used for analgesia following inguinal hernia repair and for lower abdominal procedures utilizing a Pfannenstiel incision. These blocks have been shown to reduce pain associated with herniorrhaphy significantly, although they do not provide visceral analgesia, and they cannot be used as the sole anesthetic during surgery. Despite the relatively simple technique, a failure rate as frequent as 10% to 25% has been reported.

Landmark-Based Technique. These blocks can be performed using a loss-of-resistance technique. The local anesthetic should be injected between the transversus abdominis and the internal oblique and between the internal and external oblique muscles.

The anterior superior iliac spine is located and a mark is made 2 cm cephalad and 2 cm medial. A blunt needle is inserted perpendicular to the skin through a small puncture site. Increased resistance is noted as the needle passes into the external oblique muscle. A loss of resistance is then observed as the needle passes through the external oblique muscle to lie between it and the internal oblique muscle. After negative aspiration, 2 mL of local anesthetic is injected. The needle is then inserted further until another loss of resistance is noted as the needle passes out of the internal oblique to lie between it and the transversus abdominis muscle where another 2 mL of local anesthetic is injected. The needle is withdrawn, and the same procedure is repeated two more times in a fan-like distribution between the internal and external oblique and then between the internal oblique and the transversus abdominis muscles. Typically, a total volume of approximately 12 mL of local anesthetic is used.

It is often difficult to appreciate the loss of resistance. Given the potential complications of advancing the needle too far, ultrasound guidance is often used for these

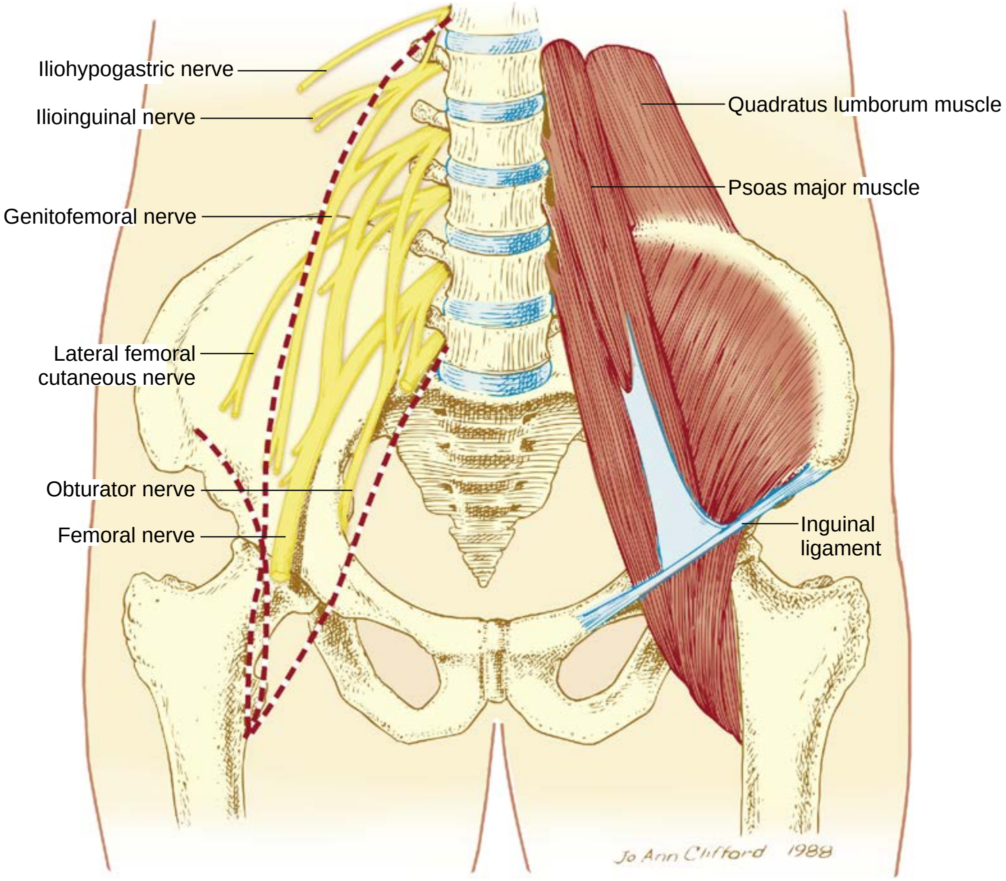


Fig. 46.26 The lumbar plexus lies in the psoas compartment between the psoas major and quadratus lumborum muscles.

blocks.[64,65] The ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves cannot be selectively blocked, even if injection volumes of less than 1 mL are used.[66]

Side Effects and Complications

Blind injection can result in inadvertent injury to the intestine or blood vessels with perforation of the large and small bowel and pelvic hematoma. Lower extremity weakness owing to local anesthetic spread and subsequent femoral nerve blockade can also occur.[66]

Lower Extremity Blocks

LOWER EXTREMITY ANATOMY

The nerve supply to the lower extremity is derived from the lumbar and sacral plexuses. The lumbar plexus is formed by the anterior rami of the first four lumbar nerves, frequently including a branch from T12 and occasionally from L5 (Fig. 46.26). The plexus lies between the psoas major and quadratus lumborum muscles in the psoas compartment. The lower components of the plexus, L2, L3, and L4, primarily innervate the anterior and medial thigh. The anterior divisions of L2, L3, and L4 form the obturator nerve; the posterior divisions of the same components form the femoral nerve; and the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve is formed from posterior divisions of L2 and L3.

The sacral plexus gives off two nerves that are important for lower extremity surgery: the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh and the sciatic nerve. The posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh and the sciatic nerve are derived from the first, second, and third sacral nerves plus branches from the anterior rami of L4 and L5, respectively. These nerves pass through the pelvis together and are blocked by the same technique. The sciatic nerve is a combination of two major nerve trunks, the tibial (i.e., ventral branches of the anterior rami of L4, L5, S1, S2, and S3) and the common peroneal (i.e., dorsal branches of the anterior rami of L4, L5, S1, S2, and S3), which form the sciatic nerve. The trunks separate at or above the popliteal fossa, with the tibial nerve passing medially and the common peroneal laterally. The cutaneous distributions of the lumbosacral and peripheral nerves are shown in Fig. 46.27.

FEMORAL NERVE BLOCKS

The advantages of using ultrasound to guide femoral nerve block include a more complete block, local anesthetic volume sparing, and fewer side effects such as vascular punctures. The femoral nerve usually lies lateral to the femoral artery in the groove formed by the iliacus and psoas muscles. The nerve can be oval or triangular in cross-sectional shape with an anteroposterior diameter of approximately 3 mm and a mediolateral diameter of 10 mm. The best depiction of the femoral nerve is from 10 cm proximal to 5 cm distal to the inguinal ligament. According to the pelvic

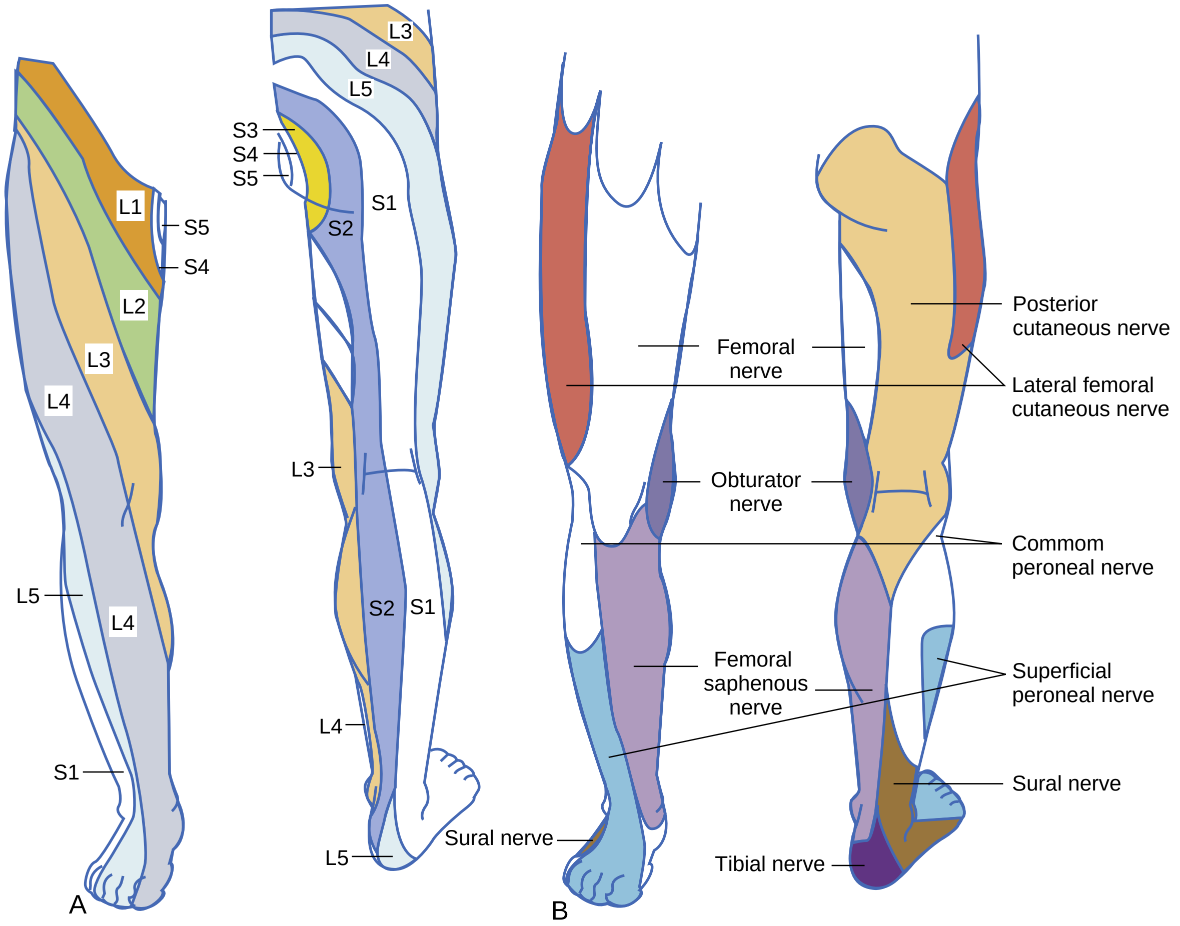


Fig. 46.27 (A) Cutaneous distribution of the lumbosacral nerves. (B) Cutaneous distribution of the peripheral nerves of the lower extremity.

inclination, some tilting of the ultrasound probe is necessary for the sound beam to meet the nerve perpendicularly for optimal scanning. In addition, the femoral nerve has a slight medial-to-lateral course; therefore some rotation of the probe is also necessary for the best view of the nerve. Because the femoral nerve is covered by echobright adipose tissue and fascia, the echogenic outer sheath of the nerve is difficult to establish. In some patients, the psoas tendon can appear similar to the femoral nerve. However, the psoas tendon lies deep within the muscle. If the profunda femoris artery (i.e., the deep branch of the femoral artery) is visualized, then the transducer is usually too distal for complete femoral nerve block. The femoral nerve is often identified as a slight indentation in the surface of the iliacus and psoas muscles.

For femoral nerve block, a broad (35-50 mm footprint) linear transducer is used (Fig. 46.28). Both in-plane (from lateral to medial) and out-of-plane (from distal to proximal) approaches can be used. The advantage of the in-plane approach is visualization of the approaching needle. The disadvantages are the longer needle path and a tendency of the needle to skim over the fascia iliaca by deforming it rather than puncturing it. The out-of-plane approach is often used for catheter placement.

For either approach, the needle tip is positioned between the fascia iliaca and the iliopsoas muscle near the lateral corner of the femoral nerve to avoid the femoral vessels, similar to the method for fascia iliaca block. The fascia iliaca has a characteristic mediolateral slant. The desired distribution is local anesthetic layering under or completely around the femoral nerve. When layering of local anesthetic is restricted over the nerve, the concern is that the fascia iliaca is intact and that block failure will result. In the obese patient, femoral nerve imaging is challenging and ultrasound can therefore be combined with nerve stimulation for successful block in these patients. After successful injection of a local anesthetic, distal branches of the femoral nerve can be appreciated by sliding the transducer along the known course of the nerve.

Fascia Iliaca (Modified Femoral Nerve) Blocks

Technique. The fascia iliaca block was originally described in children and involved detection of a double pop sensation as the needle traverses the fascia lata and fascia iliaca of the thigh (see also Chapter 77).[67] Penetration of both layers of fascia is important for block success. To facilitate the appreciation of the "clicks" or "pops," the use of a short-bevel or bullet-tipped needle has been advocated to provide more tactile feedback than with cutting needles.

Because the fascia iliaca invests the iliopsoas muscle and femoral nerve, high volumes of dilute long-acting local anesthetic can be injected to block nerves of the lumbar plexus via this anterior approach. The clinical applications for fascia iliaca block are similar as those for femoral nerve block.[68]

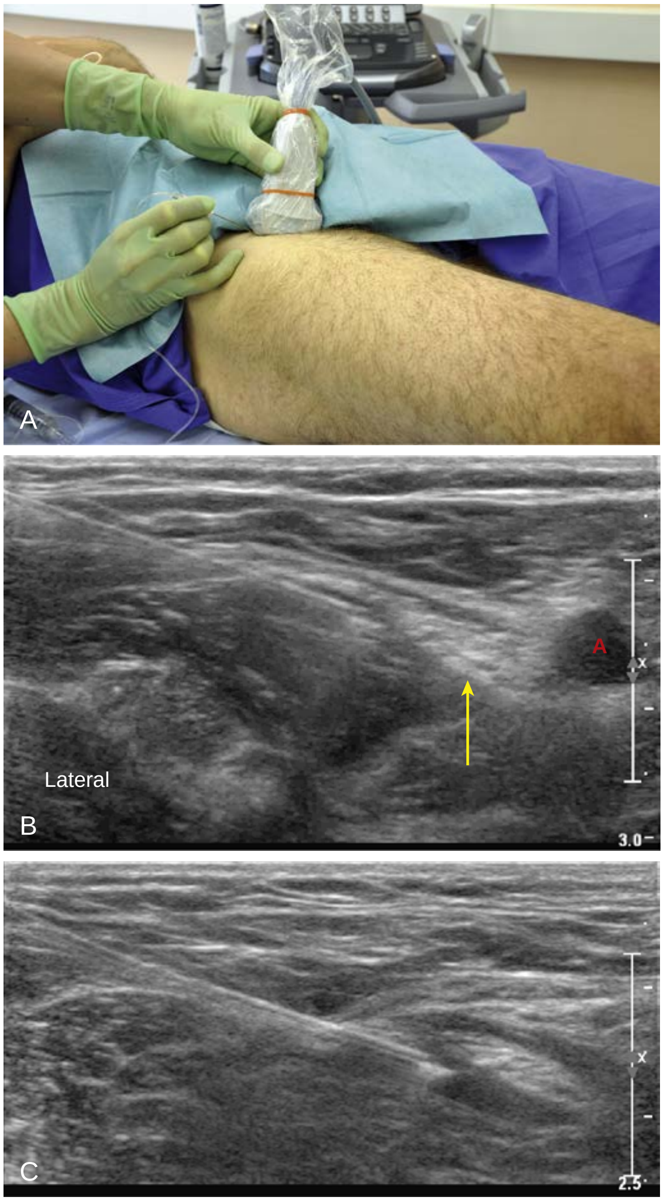


Fig. 46.28 Femoral nerve block with ultrasound imaging (in-plane approach). (A) External photograph shows the setup for femoral nerve block. (B) The needle tip is in position before injecting adjacent to the femoral nerve *(yellow arrow)*. The femoral nerve lies lateral to the femoral artery (A). (C) Local anesthetic surrounds the femoral nerve after injection. (Modified from Gray AT. *Atlas of Ultrasound-Guided Regional Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2018.)

The needle entry site for the fascia iliaca block is determined by drawing a line between the pubic tubercle and the anterior superior iliac spine and dividing this line into thirds. The needle entry point is 1 cm caudal to the intersection of the medial two thirds and lateral one third along this line. This site is well away from the femoral artery, which is useful for patients in whom femoral artery puncture is contraindicated. Ultrasound can also be used to visualize the two fascial layers and monitor the spread of local anesthetic beneath the fascia iliaca.[69,70]

Side Effects and Complications. Intravascular injection and hematoma are possible because of the proximity of the femoral artery. Anatomically, the femoral nerve and artery are located in separate sheaths approximately 1 cm apart. In most patients with normal anatomy, the femoral artery can be easily palpated, allowing correct, safe needle positioning lateral to the pulsation. The presence of femoral vascular grafts is a relative contraindication to these techniques, but these grafts are easily identified with ultrasound imaging in most cases. Because the injection is made between the femoral and lateral femoral cutaneous nerves, nerve damage is rare.

SAPHENOUS NERVE BLOCKS ABOVE THE KNEE (INCLUDING ADDUCTOR CANAL BLOCK)

Indications

Several approaches to the saphenous nerve block have been described using an above-the-knee approach. When used in combination with multimodal analgesia, a saphenous nerve block at or near the mid-thigh can be as effective or in some studies preferable to a femoral nerve block following knee surgery because of reduced rates of quadriceps weakness.[71-73] The correct "adductor canal block" location is a source of active debate even though the putative anatomic targets may be separated by mere inches. The "true" adductor canal block may best be determined with ultrasound by identifying the medial border of the sartorius muscle converging with the medial border of the adductor longus muscle.[74] A double contour is appreciated on the roof of the canal, which denotes the vastoadductor membrane. This anatomic distinction holds importance as the nerve to the vastus medialis often lies outside the adductor canal in a distinct fascial sheath. Hence a too distal adductor canal block within the "true" adductor canal may miss the nerve to the vastus medialis, a major contributor to knee joint pain following total knee arthroplasty. Jaeger and colleagues advocate for a periarterial injection of local anesthesia lateral to the femoral artery under the sartorius muscle deep to the vastoadductor membrane midway between the anterior superior iliac spine and the patella where local anesthetic is likely to bathe both the saphenous nerve and the nerve to the vastus medialis.[71]

Anatomy

As the saphenous nerve is a terminal sensory branch of the femoral nerve above the knee, it supplies innervation to the infrapatellar branches to the knee joint. It pierces the fascia lata between the tendons of the sartorius and gracilis muscles before it runs in the adductor canal along the posterior border of the sartorius muscle. The nerve emerges and divides at the level of the knee before continuing distally along the medial border of the lower leg.

Technique

Adductor canal block is performed in the supine position with thigh positioned in slight external rotation with leg extended to expose the inner thigh. Ultrasound guidance is the preferred neurolocalization technique, although nerve stimulation would also be an option or both used in combination.

Ultrasound-Guided Technique. A high-frequency linear transducer (15-6 MHz) probe is positioned transverse on the anteromedial thigh, which is scanned in short-axis beginning at the junction between the middle and distal thirds of the thigh. The thick vastoadductor membrane

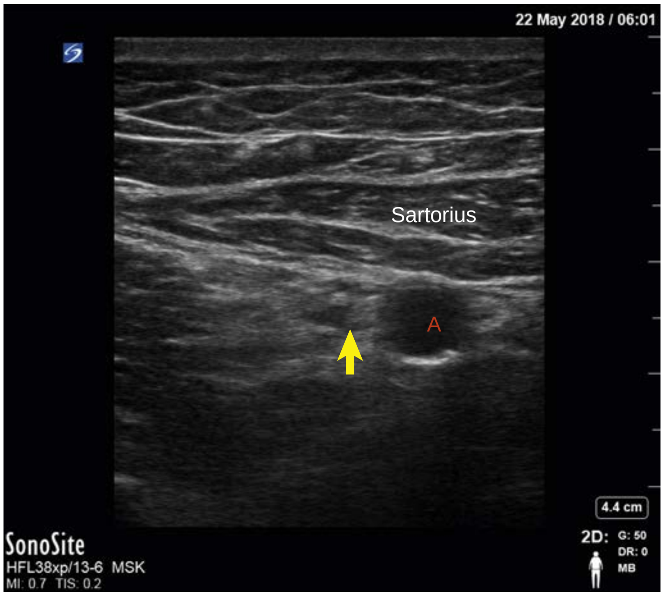


Fig. 46.29 Proximal saphenous nerve block (adductor canal block). Sonographically, the adductor canal block may best be determined by identifying the converging borders between the vastus medialis muscle (lateral), sartorius muscle (anterior), and femoral artery (most medial). Periarterial deposit of local anesthesia is desired lateral to the femoral artery midway between the anterior superior iliac spine and the patella.

defines the border between vastus medialis muscle (lateral), sartorius muscle (anterior), and femoral artery (most medial) (Fig. 46.29). A 22-gauge, 5-cm needle is most often selected with 2- to 3-cm depths to the target. Through an in-plane approach approximately 10 to 15 mL of local anesthetic (higher volumes may result in quadriceps paresis)[75] is injected lateral to the artery, deep to the sartorius muscle.

Side Effects and Complications

The risks of complications with this block are low, although the same theoretical risks with all regional anesthetic techniques apply to this block. Vascular injury leading to arterial pseudoaneurysm is possible. Intramuscular spread of local anesthetic should be avoided as cases of myonecrosis have been reported[76] and unexpected thigh weakness should prompt evaluation. Although adductor canal block is considered among the more selective "muscle-sparing" peripheral blocks of the lower extremity, caution is still advised and fall prevention strategies are important, including patient education on avoidance of unsupported ambulation.[77]

SAPHENOUS NERVE BLOCKS BELOW THE KNEE

Indications

The saphenous nerve provides innervation to the medial aspect of the lower extremity from the knee to the medial malleolus. Saphenous nerve blocks are commonly combined with popliteal and ankle blockade. Several approaches to the saphenous nerve block have been described, including a paravenous (below the knee) approach. Ultrasound guidance can be used for this technique. The saphenous nerve can be blocked at the level of the ankle and can be combined with other injections for ankle block.

Anatomy

The saphenous nerve emerges from the adductor canal hiatus and divides at the level of the knee before continuing distally along the medial border of the tibia, posterior to the great saphenous vein. The saphenous nerve is located approximately 1 cm medial and 1 cm posterior to the saphenous vein at the level of the tibial tuberosity.

Technique

The saphenous nerve at this point is purely sensory; therefore a field block technique is possible and likely equally effective to nerve stimulation. Ultrasound guidance has gained significant popularity as a tool to identify the neural and vascular structures that lie in close proximity to the saphenous nerve.

Paravenous Approach. At the level of the tibial tuberosity, approximately 5 to 10 mL of local anesthetic is infiltrated deep to the great saphenous vein.

Localized Field Block. Approximately 5 to 10 mL of local anesthetic may be infiltrated from the medial condyle of the tibia anteriorly to the tibial tuberosity and posteriorly to the medial head of the gastrocnemius muscle. Success rates for this technique range from 33% to 65%.

Side Effects and Complications

The risks of complications with this block are low, although the same risk pattern for all regional anesthetic techniques apply to this block; that is, nerve or tissue damage and vascular puncture with hematoma formation. Given that the great saphenous vein is used as a landmark for the field block technique, minor hematoma formation is not uncommon.

SCIATIC NERVE BLOCKS IN THE POPLITEAL FOSSA

The sciatic nerve can be blocked anywhere along its course from the gluteal region to the popliteal fossa.[78-80] Many approaches have been described, including those from the anterior aspect of the thigh.[81] One of the most common approaches is to block the sciatic nerve in the popliteal fossa using a lateral approach in supine position with the leg elevated.[82] In this anatomic location, the block can be performed close to the skin surface. The division of the sciatic nerve provides a broad target with large surface area to promote clinical block characteristics. For this technique, the needle tip is positioned between the tibial and common peroneal components of the sciatic nerve near the division so that a single injection distributes to both nerves (Fig. 46.30). By sliding the transducer along the known course of the sciatic nerve, its characteristic division in the popliteal fossa can be identified. This method of sliding assessment is also important to verify the local anesthetic distribution after injection. The tibial nerve has a straighter course than the common peroneal nerve and has approximately twice the cross-sectional area. The tibial nerve lies posterior to the popliteal artery and vein at the popliteal crease, and this location can be a useful starting point when imaging is difficult. When the foot is moved, the nerves of the popliteal fossa have characteristic motions that can be helpful for nerve identification in some patients. The advantages of this

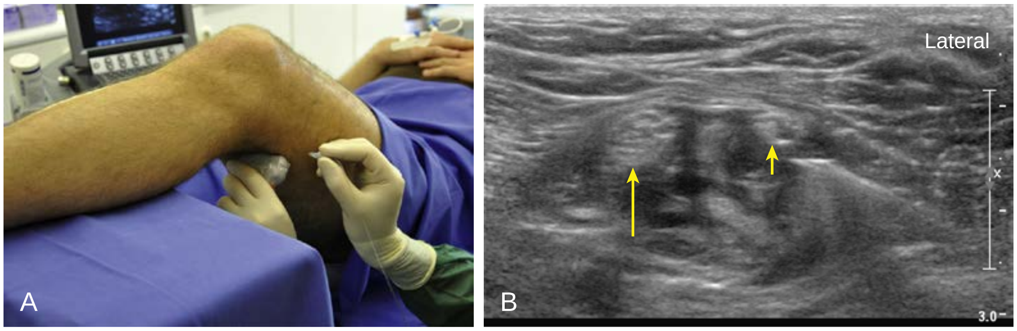


Fig. 46.30 Popliteal block with ultrasound imaging (in-plane approach). (A) External photograph shows the setup for popliteal nerve block in the supine position. The leg is elevated, and the transducer is applied to the posterior surface of the leg. (B) The needle approaches the bifurcation of the sciatic nerve in the plane of imaging from the lateral aspect of the leg. The needle tip is positioned between the tibial *(long yellow arrow)* and common peroneal *(short yellow arrow)* nerves.

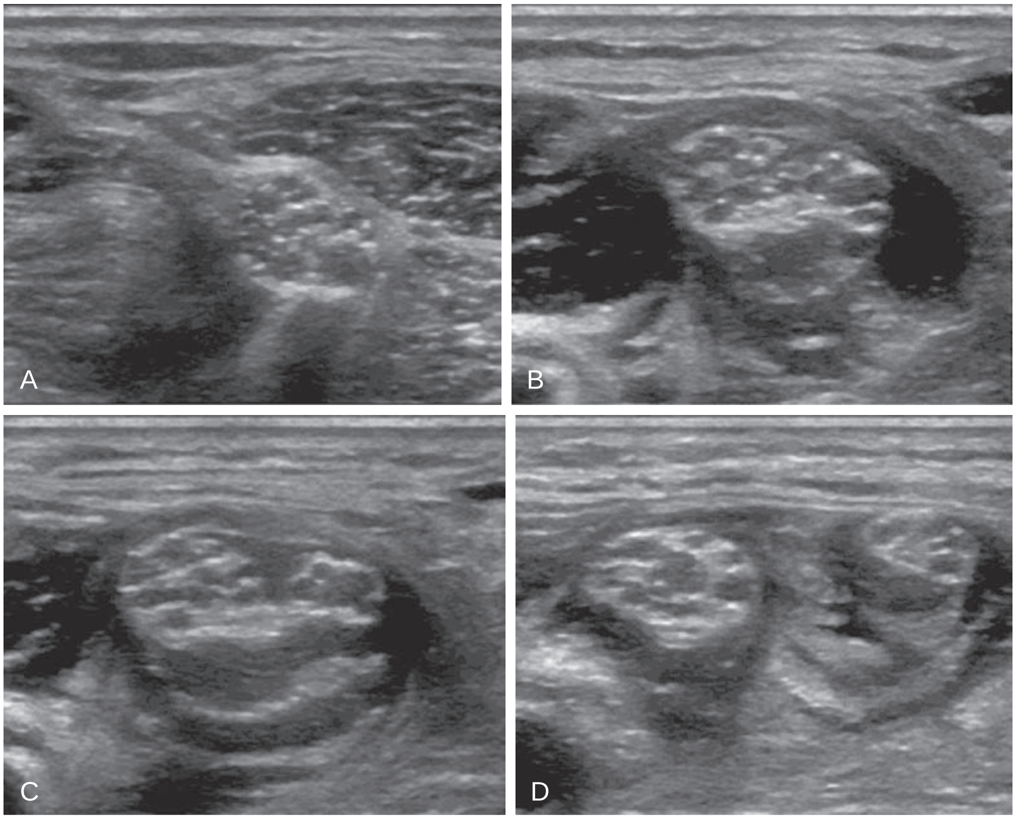


Fig. 46.31 Sciatic nerve imaging in the popliteal fossa before (A), during (B and C), and after (D) division into the tibial and common peroneal nerves. Local anesthetic tracks with both individual nerves, thereby confirming a successful block.

approach are the convenient position, the transducer position is remote from the site of needle entry, and the parallel in-plane approach of the block needle results in optimal needle tip visibility. After injection, following the local anesthetic distribution around and along the nerve path (Fig. 46.31) is relatively easy.

ALTERNATIVE APPROACHES TO SCIATIC NERVE BLOCK

The sciatic nerve can be blocked anywhere along its course. However, approaches proximal to the popliteal fossa are usually more difficult because the nerve lies deeper from the skin surface. The sciatic nerve is a mobile structure with position and orientation varying with extremity motion.[83,84] Because of the depth and variation in position, ultrasound guidance is useful for proximal sciatic nerve blocks in both adults and children.[85]

For procedures above the knee, the parasacral sciatic nerve block can provide an advantage over more distal approaches because the block of both the sciatic and posterior femoral cutaneous nerves is possible.[86-89] Alternatively, the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve can be blocked separately using ultrasound guidance.[90] The subgluteal approach to sciatic nerve block is useful when block of the hamstring muscles is indicated.[91] The anterior approach to sciatic nerve block is useful when the patient cannot be positioned for other approaches due to pain or leg traction.[92-94] These proximal approaches to sciatic nerve block may require multiple injections for rapid onset.[91] The

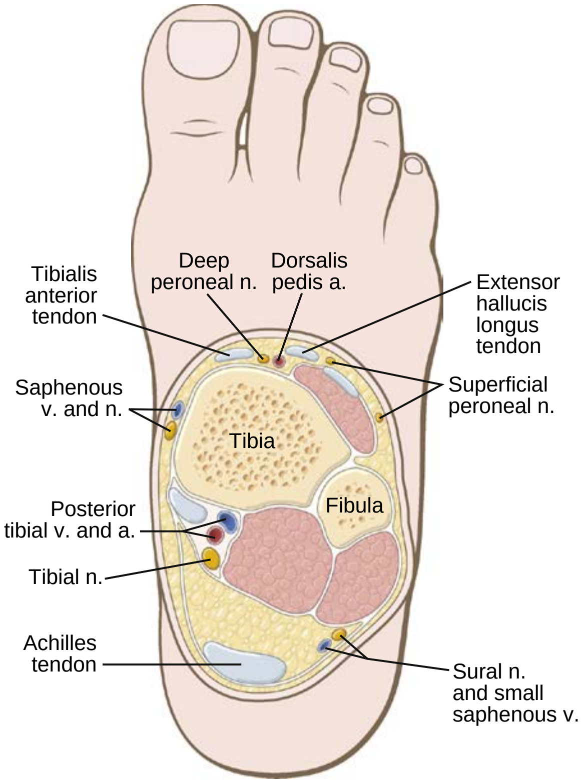


Fig. 46.32 Cross-sectional anatomy for an ankle block. An ankle block is performed by injecting local anesthetic solution at five separate nerve locations. The superficial peroneal nerve, sural nerve, and saphenous nerve are usually blocked by subcutaneous infiltration because they may have already branched as they cross the ankle joint. The tibial and deep peroneal nerves require deeper injection adjacent to the accompanying blood vessels (the posterior tibial and anterior tibial arteries, respectively). Because the block needle approaches the ankle from many angles, it is convenient to elevate the foot by supporting the calf. (Modified from Brown DL, Factor DA, eds. *Regional Anesthesia and Analgesia*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1996.)

blood supply of the sciatic nerve in the gluteal region can be detected with ultrasound imaging, and this can help with nerve localization in some patients.[95]

NERVE BLOCKS AT THE ANKLE

Ankle blocks are relatively simple to perform and offer adequate anesthesia for surgical procedures of the foot. These blocks are traditionally performed at the level of the malleoli and guided by surface landmarks.

Four of the five individual nerves that can be blocked at the ankle to provide anesthesia of the foot are terminal branches of the sciatic nerve: the tibial, sural, superficial peroneal, and deep peroneal branches (Fig. 46.32). The sciatic nerve divides at or above the apex of the popliteal fossa to form the common peroneal and tibial nerves. The common peroneal nerve descends laterally around the neck of the fibula, where it divides into the superficial and deep peroneal nerves. The sural nerve forms in the leg from both tibial and common peroneal nerve contributions.

The saphenous nerve is the major descending sensory branch of the femoral nerve. The territory of this nerve is the medial leg and can extend as far as the base of the great toe and is included as part of the ankle block.[96]

Tibial Nerve Technique

The tibial nerve can be blocked with the patient in either the prone or the supine positions. The posterior tibial artery is palpated, and a 25-gauge, 3-cm needle is inserted posterolateral to the artery at the level of the medial malleolus (Fig. 46.33A and B). A paresthesia is often elicited; however, it is not necessary for a successful block. If a paresthesia is obtained, 3 to 5 mL of local anesthetic should be injected. Otherwise, 7 to 10 mL of local anesthetic should be injected as the needle is slowly withdrawn from the posterior aspect of the tibia. Blockade of the tibial nerve provides anesthesia of the heel, plantar portion of the toes, and the sole of the foot, as well as some motor branches in the same area. Ultrasound imaging of the tibial nerve can shorten onset time (Fig. 46.34).[97]

Sural Nerve Technique. The sural nerve is located superficially between the lateral malleolus and the Achilles tendon. A 25-gauge, 3-cm needle is inserted lateral to the tendon and is directed toward the malleolus as 5 to 10 mL of solution is injected subcutaneously (see Figs. 46.33 and 46.35). This block provides anesthesia of the lateral foot and the lateral aspects of the proximal sole of the foot.

Deep Peroneal, Superficial Peroneal, and Saphenous Nerve Techniques. The deep peroneal, superficial peroneal, and saphenous nerves can be blocked through a single needle entry site (see Fig. 46.35). A line is drawn across the dorsum of the foot connecting the malleoli. The extensor hallucis longus tendon is identified by having the patient dorsiflex the big toe. The anterior tibial artery lies between this structure and the tendon of the extensor digitorum longus muscle and is palpable at this level. A skin wheal is raised just lateral to the arterial pulsation between the two tendons on the intermalleolar line. A 25-gauge, 3-cm needle is advanced perpendicular to the skin entry site, and 3 to 5 mL of local anesthetic is injected deep to the extensor retinaculum to block the deep peroneal nerve. This technique anesthetizes the skin between the first and second toes and the short extensors of the toes.

The needle is directed laterally through the same skin wheal while injecting 3 to 5 mL of local anesthetic subcutaneously, blocking the superficial peroneal nerve and resulting in anesthesia of the dorsum of the foot, excluding the first interdigital cleft. The same maneuver can be performed in the medial direction, thereby anesthetizing the saphenous nerve, a terminal branch of the femoral nerve that supplies a strip along the medial aspect of the foot.

Side Effects and Complications

Multiple injections are required for this procedure, which can result in discomfort for the patient. Persistent paresthesias can occur, but they are generally self-limited. The presence of edema or induration in the area of the ankle block can make palpation of landmarks difficult. When this pathology is present, a more proximal block is usually performed (e.g., popliteal and saphenous nerves blocks in the distal thigh). Intravascular injection is possible but unlikely if aspiration for blood is negative.

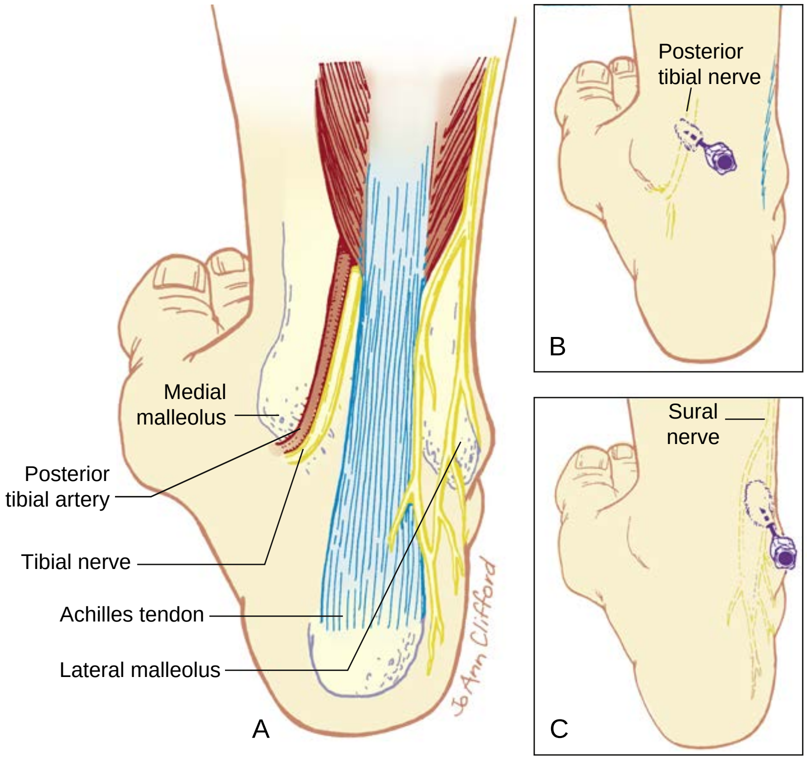

Medial malleolus
Posterior tibial artery
Tibial nerve
Achilles tendon
Lateral malleolus
A
JoAnn Clifford
Posterior tibial nerve
B
Sural nerve
C

Fig. 46.33 (A) Anatomic landmarks for a block of the posterior tibial and sural nerves at the ankle. (B) Posterior tibial nerve and method of needle placement for a block at the ankle. (C) Sural nerve and method of needle placement for a block at the ankle.

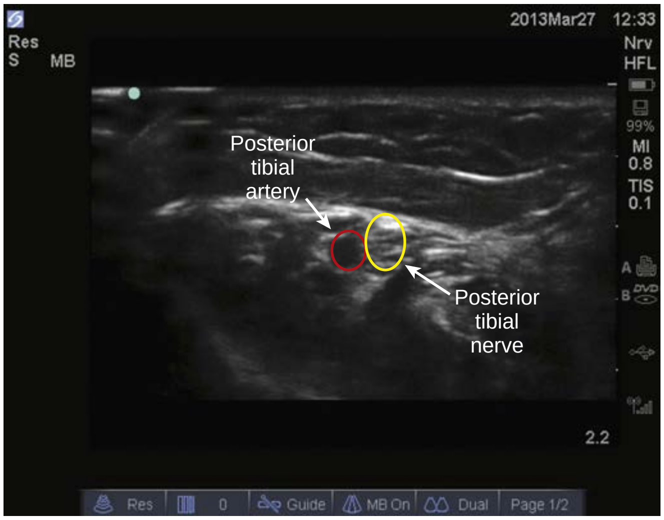

2013Mar27 12:33
Res
S MB
Nrv
HFL
99%
MI
0.8
TIS
0.1
Posterior tibial artery
Posterior tibial nerve
A
B
2.2
Res
0
Guide
MB On
Dual
Page 1/2

Fig. 46.34 Ultrasound image of the medial aspect of the ankle showing the posterior tibial artery *(red)* and the posterior tibial nerve *(yellow)*.

INTRAVENOUS REGIONAL ANESTHESIA (OR BIER BLOCK)

Introduction and Clinical Applications

Intravenous regional blocks were first described in 1908 by the German surgeon, August Bier. The Bier block has multiple advantages, including ease of administration, rapid onset and recovery, muscular relaxation, and controllable duration of anesthesia. It is an excellent technique for short (<60 minutes) surgical procedures. Bier blocks are also used in the management of complex regional pain syndromes (for further details on intravenous regional analgesia in pain syndromes, see Chapter 51). Most commonly IVRA is used for upper extremity procedures such as excision of soft tissue masses or carpal tunnel release. Lower extremity blocks are also possible.

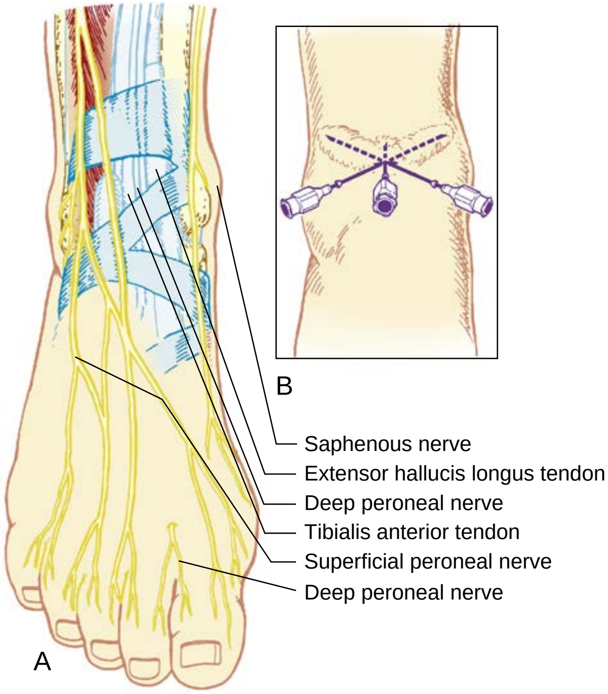

Saphenous nerve
Extensor hallucis longus tendon
Deep peroneal nerve
Tibialis anterior tendon
Superficial peroneal nerve
Deep peroneal nerve
A
B

Fig. 46.35 (A) Anatomic landmarks for a block of the deep peroneal, superficial peroneal, and saphenous nerves at the ankle. (B) Method of needle placement for a block of the deep peroneal, superficial peroneal, and saphenous nerves through a single needle entry site.

Technique (Upper Extremity)

With this technique blood is replaced with local anesthetic using a tourniquet to isolate the extremity from the central circulation. The duration of surgical anesthesia and analgesia for Bier block is essentially the time of tourniquet inflation. Contraindications to Bier block are the same as contraindications to tourniquet placement (limb ischemia, infection).

Prerequisites

Place a thin intravenous catheter (20 or 22 gauge) in the operative extremity (to reduce the amount of bleeding when the catheter is removed). Use only a minimal amount of dressing to secure the catheter. The intravenous catheter is usually placed distal or near the surgical site (although it is not clear if this influences block quality). If intravenous access is difficult, the procedure may need to be aborted.

Importantly, the patient should also have an intravenous cannula in the nonoperative upper extremity for administration of fluids and other drugs. If antibiotics are indicated they should be administered before the block (to allow these drugs to effectively reach the surgical site before tourniquet inflation). Lipid emulsion should be immediately available in the event that local anesthetic systemic toxicity occurs (see Chapter 29 for more details).

Extremity Exsanguination and Tourniquet Inflation

Raise the extremity above the level of the heart prior to exsanguination with an Esmarch bandage. This will passively drain venous blood from the extremity over one to two minutes (this can be done during the timeout). Stretch and wrap an Esmarch bandage around the extremity from distal to proximal in a spiral overlapping fashion, continuing until the cuff of the tourniquet is covered.

Following exsanguination with an Esmarch bandage, the tourniquet is typically inflated to 250 mm Hg or 100 mm Hg above systolic blood pressure. Therefore it is important that the patient be normotensive (systolic blood pressure 150 mm Hg or less) during the period of tourniquet inflation. If necessary, sedation or antihypertensive medications may be given. Another alternative is to increase the tourniquet inflation pressure to 275 mm Hg for brief tourniquet runs (usually <60 minutes for Bier blocks). For these reasons, it is important that blood pressure be carefully monitored and controlled during intravenous regional anesthesia. Both the surgical conditions and block quality are highly dependent on the exsanguination of the extremity.

Use of a single, wide cuff allows use of smaller inflation pressures during intravenous regional anesthesia. The postulated advantage is that the smaller pressures will decrease the incidence of neurologic complications related to high inflation pressures with the narrow double cuffs.[98]

Preservative free 2-chloroprocaine 0.5%, lidocaine 0.5%, or prilocaine 0.5% can be used for intravenous regional anesthesia (plain solution, without epinephrine).[99-101] For upper extremity anesthesia, an arm (about 0.6 mL/kg, maximum 50 mL) or forearm (about 0.4 mL/kg, maximum 25 mL) tourniquet can be used, depending on the surgical site.[102] Bupivacaine is not recommended for intravenous regional anesthesia because cases of severe local anesthetic toxicity have been reported.[103] However, dilute solutions of long-acting amides (0.125% levobupivacaine or 0.2% ropivacaine) have successfully been used to prolong sensory block and analgesia after tourniquet deflation.[104-106]

An additional temporary tourniquet (used for intravenous placement) can be placed immediately proximal to the surgical site while the first 10 or 20 mL of local anesthetic is injected via the catheter (the second tourniquet is then released). This will confine local anesthetic to the distal extremity and promote block onset.[107,108] Inject slowly so that venous pressures remain low. If the injection is at a distal site the leakage under the tourniquet will be reduced. The onset of anesthesia is usually within 5 to 10 minutes. After injection, the intravenous catheter is typically removed (although repeat injections using an indwelling catheter have been described).

Because the Bier block does not result in prolonged analgesia, long-acting local anesthetic should be infiltrated into the surgical field prior to tourniquet deflation. In this manner the onset of infiltrative analgesia matches the offset of the Bier block.

Tourniquet Deflation

The tourniquet can be safely released after 25 minutes, but the patient should be closely observed for local anesthetic toxicity for several minutes after the tourniquet release. Shorter tourniquet times (<25 minutes) are possible with 2-chloroprocaine because this local anesthetic is rapidly degraded by plasma esterases when blood re-enters the extremity upon tourniquet deflation. Rare cases of systemic toxicity from 2-chloroprocaine have been reported in patients with atypical esterases.[109]

Systemic plasma levels of local anesthetic will increase with venous return from the extremity following tourniquet deflation. This occurs when the tourniquet inflation pressure is less than venous levels (nearly 0 mm Hg). Cyclic deflation of the tourniquet at 10-second intervals for two or three cycles increases the time to peak arterial lidocaine levels, which may decrease potential toxicity.[110] It is recommended to not raise the extremity immediately after the tourniquet is removed, as this will promote venous return containing local anesthetic. Reinflate the tourniquet if any signs of systemic toxicity occur.

Comments

Double-Cuff Tourniquets. A double-cuff tourniquet can be used instead of a single-cuff tourniquet to extend the tourniquet tolerance time (Fig. 46.36). Both adjacent cuffs should have secure closures and reliable pressure gauges. After exsanguination of the arm, the proximal cuff is inflated to approximately 100 mm Hg greater than the systolic pressure, and absence of a radial pulse confirms adequate tourniquet pressure. When the patient complains of tourniquet pain, the distal tourniquet, which overlies anesthetized skin, is inflated, and the proximal tourniquet is released. However, if a long tourniquet time is anticipated it is usually best to choose other peripheral nerve block or provide a general anesthesia.

Additives and Adjuncts. Additives and adjuncts should be used with caution because prolonged exposure of these compounds to the venous endothelium during tourniquet

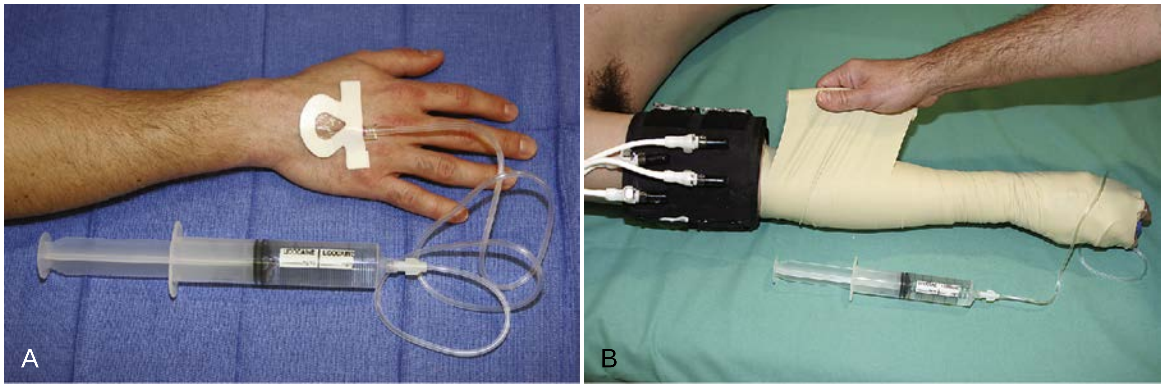


Fig. 46.36 (A) Placement and securing of a small intravenous catheter. (B) Exsanguination of the arm with an Esmarch bandage before inflation of the tourniquet and injection of the local anesthetic solution through the catheter. In this figure a double-cuff tourniquet is shown.

inflation may result in phlebitis (even if the compounds are considered safe for routine intravenous use).

Complications

Technical problems with this block include tourniquet discomfort, rapid resolution leading to postoperative pain, difficulty in providing a bloodless field, and the necessity of exsanguination in the case of a painful injury. Accidental or early deflation of the tourniquet or use of excessive doses of local anesthetics can result in systemic toxicity. Injection of the drug as distally as possible at a slow rate decreases blood levels and theoretically may increase safety. Nerve injury and compartment syndrome have been reported with long tourniquet times and high tourniquet inflation pressures. Hypertonic solutions can cause compartment syndrome and should never be used for intravenous regional anesthesia.[111]

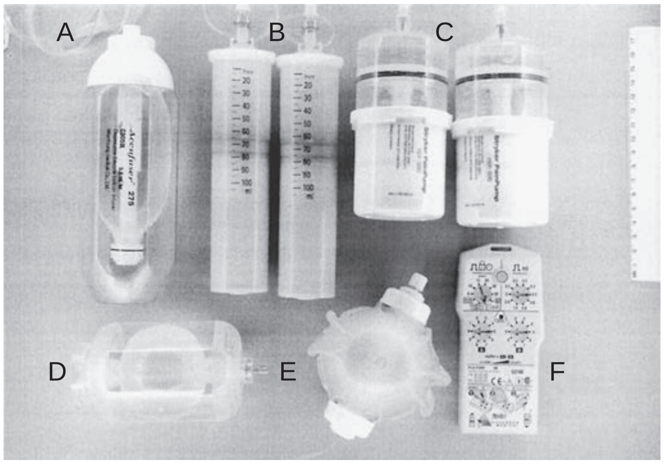


Fig. 46.37 **Portable infusion pumps.** (A) Accufuser (McKinley Medical, Wheat Ridge, Colo.). (B) Sgarlato (Sgarlato Labs, Los Gatos, Calif.). (C) Stryker PainPump (Stryker Instruments, Kalamazoo, Mich.). (D) MedFlo II (MPS Acacia, Brea, Calif.). (E) C-Bloc (I-Flow, Lake Forest, Calif.). (F) Microject PCA (Sorenson Medical, West Jordan, Utah). (From Ilfeld BM, Morey TE, Enneking FK. The delivery rate accuracy of portable infusion pumps used for continuous regional analgesia. *Anesth Analg.* 2002;95:1331–1336.)

Continuous Catheter Techniques

The advantages cited for continuous nerve blockade include prolongation of surgical anesthesia, decreased risk of systemic toxicity because of lower incremental doses, postoperative pain relief, and sympathectomy. Catheter placement using over-needle and through-needle methods have been described. Advances in equipment technology, including the development of stimulating needles and catheters and portable pumps allowing local anesthetic infusion after hospital dismissal, have increased the success rate and popularity of continuous peripheral blockade (Fig. 46.37). Although concern regarding accurate catheter placement and maintenance still exists, the use of stimulating catheters and radiographic confirmation may further improve the functionality. Ultrasound guidance appears to produce more consistent times for catheter placement.[112] Overall, continuous peripheral nerve block provides superior analgesia compared with conventional opioid therapy. Minor technical problems such as catheter kinking, displacement or leakage, and bacterial colonization are frequent, with no adverse clinical consequences in the large majority of cases. Major neurologic and infectious adverse events are rare.

Methods of providing continuous brachial plexus anesthesia have been described since the 1940s. These methods frequently offer ingenious solutions for the placing and securing of the needle or catheter. This technique is especially applicable to patients with upper extremity or digit replantation, total shoulder or elbow arthroplasty, or reflex sympathetic dystrophies, for which prolonged pain relief and sympathectomy are advantageous.

Continuous lower extremity techniques were also described decades ago, but until recently have remained underused compared with continuous upper extremity and neuraxial approaches. Reliable, improved success rates and the risk of spinal hematoma after neuraxial techniques led clinicians to reconsider continuous lower extremity blocks. Contemporary applications for continuous psoas compartment, sciatic, femoral, adductor canal, and popliteal fossa blockade have been reported. Compared with conventional systemic and neuraxial analgesic methods, continuous lower extremity blocks provide superior analgesia with fewer side effects, improve perioperative outcomes, and accelerate hospital dismissal after major joint replacement.

TESTING THE CATHETER

Test injections of saline, local anesthetic, or air with real-time ultrasound imaging can be used to assess catheter tip function. The overall success rate of peripheral nerve catheter placement with ultrasound guidance is high, so the additional value of these subsequent tests is still being established.[113,114]

SECURING THE CATHETER

Catheter migration and dislodgement are clinically relevant issues. Catheter threading distances do not seem to correlate with the chance of dislodgement.[115] Excessively large threading distances (>5 cm) may result in catheter knotting. If ultrasound guidance is used for catheter placement, sterile dry gauze can be used to remove excess gel prior to securing the catheter. Skin adhesive applied to the catheter at the skin exit site may reduce catheter dislodgment, fluid leakage at the site, and chance of catheter related infection.[116,117] Application of skin adhesive at more than one site along the catheter may improve fixation.[118] A partial loop or coiling the catheter at the exit site will help reduce catheter dislodgement, and a variety of strain relief devices are now commercially available. Some practitioners elect to use tunnel catheters that are intended to remain in place for a prolonged period of time.

Choice of Local Anesthetic

The choice of local anesthetic for a peripheral nerve block depends to some extent on the duration of the surgical procedure, although other factors are also important (see Chapter 29). Prolonged blockade for up to 24 hours often occurs with long-acting local anesthetics such as bupivacaine or ropivacaine. Although this feature often results in superb postoperative pain relief, it may be undesirable in some patients because of the possible risk of nerve or tissue injury in a partially blocked limb. A short- or medium-acting local anesthetic, such as lidocaine or mepivacaine, may be more appropriate for surgical anesthesia. Whatever drug is chosen, the total dosage should be calculated for each patient and should be kept within safe limits (see Chapter 29 for details).

The highest concentrations of local anesthetic drugs are not appropriate for peripheral neural blockade; therefore 0.75% bupivacaine or ropivacaine, 2% lidocaine, 2% mepivacaine, and 3% 2-chloroprocaine are not recommended. The lowest concentrations of the same local anesthetics (i.e., 0.25% bupivacaine or ropivacaine and 0.5% mepivacaine or lidocaine) might not provide complete motor blockade.

Vasoconstrictors, usually epinephrine, can be added to the chosen local anesthetic to improve onset of action, to decrease drug uptake, and to prolong action. A concentration of 1:200,000 epinephrine is usually recommended. Ideally, the epinephrine should be added to the local anesthetic at the time the block is to be performed. Commercially prepared solutions with epinephrine have a lower pH than those in which it is freshly added, resulting in a higher percentage of ionized drug molecules. These ionized molecules do not readily cross the neural membrane, delaying the onset of drug action after injection. Epinephrine should not be added to the local anesthetic for blocks of the digits or penis because tissue ischemia can result. Various other additives, including steroids, clonidine, dexmedetomidine, opioids, and ketamine have been reported to enhance or prolong local anesthetic peripheral nerve blockade. Liposomal bupivacaine, which slowly releases this local anesthetic, is now FDA approved for some peripheral nerve blocks.

Box 46.3 Recommendations: Needle Tip Location, Choice of Local Anesthetic, and Nerve Localization Techniques

Needle Tip Location, Choice of Local Anesthetic, and Paresthesia

- Intrafascicular needle insertion and injection should be avoided because it can cause histological and/or functional nerve injury.

Nerve Localization Techniques

- There are no human data to support the superiority of one nerve localization technique over another with regard to reducing the likelihood of peripheral nerve injury.
- Peripheral Nerve Stimulation
  - Presence of an evoked motor response at a current of <0.5 (0.1 ms) indicates intimate needle-nerve relationship, needle-nerve contact, or an intraneural needle placement.
- Injection Pressure Monitoring
  - Animal data have linked high injection pressures to subsequent fascicular injury, but there are no human data that confirm or refute the effectiveness of injection pressure monitoring for limiting PNI.
- Ultrasound
  - Ultrasound can detect intraneural injection.
  - Current ultrasound technology does not have adequate resolution to discern between an interfascicular and intrafascicular injection.
  - Adequate images of needle-nerve interface are not consistently obtained by all operators and in all patients.

Modified from Neal JM, Barrington MJ, Brull R, et al. The second ASRA practice advisory on neurologic complications associated with regional anesthesia and pain medicine: executive summary 2015. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40(5):401–430. PMID:26288034.

Complications and Safety

Nerve injury is a recognized complication of peripheral regional techniques (Box 46.3). Risk factors contributing to neurologic deficit after regional anesthesia include neural ischemia, traumatic injury to the nerves during needle or catheter placement, and infection. However, postoperative neurologic injury because of pressure from improper patient positioning, tightly applied casts or surgical dressings, and surgical trauma is often attributed to the regional anesthetic. Patient factors such as body habitus or a preexisting neurologic dysfunction can also contribute.[119-121]

Although needle gauge, type (i.e., short vs. long bevel), and bevel configuration can influence the degree of nerve injury after peripheral nerve block, the findings are conflicting, and there are no confirmatory human studies. Theoretically, localization of neural structures with a nerve stimulator or ultrasound guidance would allow a high success rate without increasing the risk of neurologic complications, but this has not been established. Likewise, prolonged

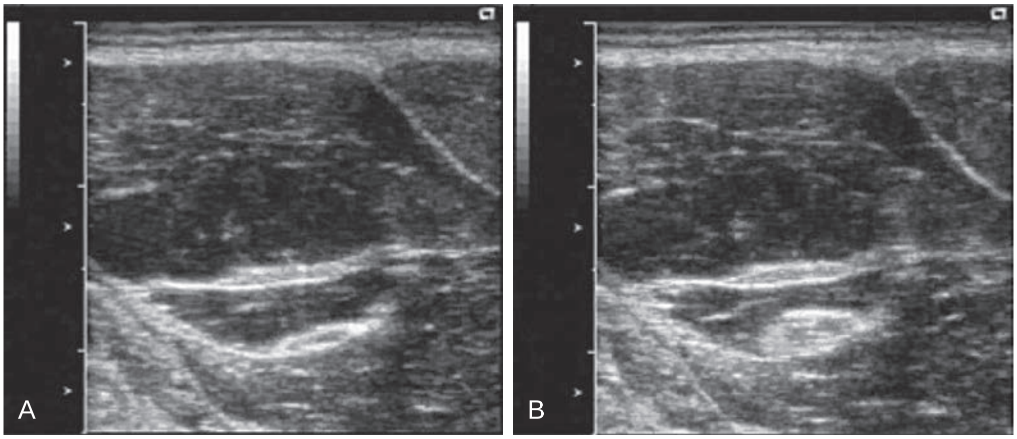


Fig. 46.38 Ultrasound image reveals intraneural injection. These sonograms were obtained in the axilla before (A) and after (B) injection in the musculocutaneous nerve. Nerve expansion is detected but with preservation of the overall integrity of the nerve borders. No paresthesias were observed during or after the procedure. Neurologic outcome was favorable after this low-volume, low-pressure injection.

exposure, high dose, or high concentrations of local anesthetic solutions can also result in permanent neurologic deficits. In laboratory models, the addition of epinephrine increases the neurotoxicity of local anesthetic solutions and decreases nerve blood flow; however, the clinical relevance of these findings in humans remains unclear. Nerve damage caused by traumatic needle placement, local anesthetic neurotoxicity, and neural ischemia during the performance of a regional anesthetic can worsen neurologic outcome in the presence of an additional patient factor or surgical injury.

Hemorrhagic complications have been described with nearly every peripheral technique and range from localized bruising and tenderness to severe hematomas or hemorrhagic complications. The placement of peripheral nerve blocks in patients with a coagulopathy should be performed with caution, especially in a deep, noncompressible site where an expanding hematoma could go unnoticed (e.g., lumbar plexus) or in a location where a hematoma could compress the airway (e.g., interscalene).[122]

Prevention of neurologic complications begins during the preoperative visit with a careful evaluation of the patient's medical history and appropriate preoperative discussion of the risks and benefits of the available anesthetic techniques. It is imperative that all preoperative neurologic deficits are documented to allow early diagnosis of new or worsening neurologic dysfunction postoperatively. Postoperative sensory or motor deficits must also be distinguished from residual (prolonged) local anesthetic effect. Imaging techniques, such as computed tomography and magnetic resonance imaging, are useful in identifying infectious processes and expanding hematomas. Although most neurologic complications resolve completely within several days or weeks, significant neural injuries necessitate neurologic consultation to document the degree of involvement and coordinate further workup. Neurophysiologic testing, such as nerve conduction studies, evoked potentials, and electromyography, are often useful in establishing a diagnosis and prognosis.

Infectious complications can be caused by exogenous (contaminated medication or equipment) or endogenous sources. Infection at the site of needle placement is an absolute contraindication to peripheral nerve blockade, although caution should be used in patients with nearby cellulitis or systemic blood infections (bacteremia or sepsis). Although bacterial colonization of peripheral nerve catheters is not uncommon, cellulitis, abscess, or bacteremia are extremely rare.[123-125]

Several large studies have established that severe systemic toxicity (seizures with or without cardiac arrest) occur on the order of 1:1000 for peripheral nerve blocks. Therefore practitioners of regional anesthesia must be familiar with the immediate detection and treatment of systemic local anesthetic toxicity. Systemic local anesthetic toxicity can occur immediately from an intravascular injection or it may be delayed because of rapid or excessive systemic absorption of local anesthetic. In addition to frequent aspiration during injection of local anesthetic, the addition of epinephrine can help alert the practitioner to potential intravascular injection. Attaching intravenous tubing to the needle allows immobility of the needle during injection. Typically, an assistant will aspirate with the syringe after each 5 mL injection of local anesthetic. Recent studies indicate that lipid emulsion rescue therapy improves success of resuscitation from cardiac arrest due to local anesthetic toxicity if given immediately after a local anesthetic overdose.[126-130]

For more details on treatment of local anesthesia toxicity, see Chapter 29.

Training

Interventional sonography is not without risks. Many studies have now demonstrated efficacy of ultrasound-guided regional blockade. Ultrasound has the potential to prevent and detect two important adverse events during peripheral nerve blocks: intravascular injection and intraneural injection of a local anesthetic.[131,132] The characteristic contrast from dissolved gas that is distributed within the vessel lumen can identify intravascular injection. The hallmark sign of intraneural injection is nerve expansion during injection (Fig. 46.38). Although ultrasound may have a profound impact on the safety of regional blockade,

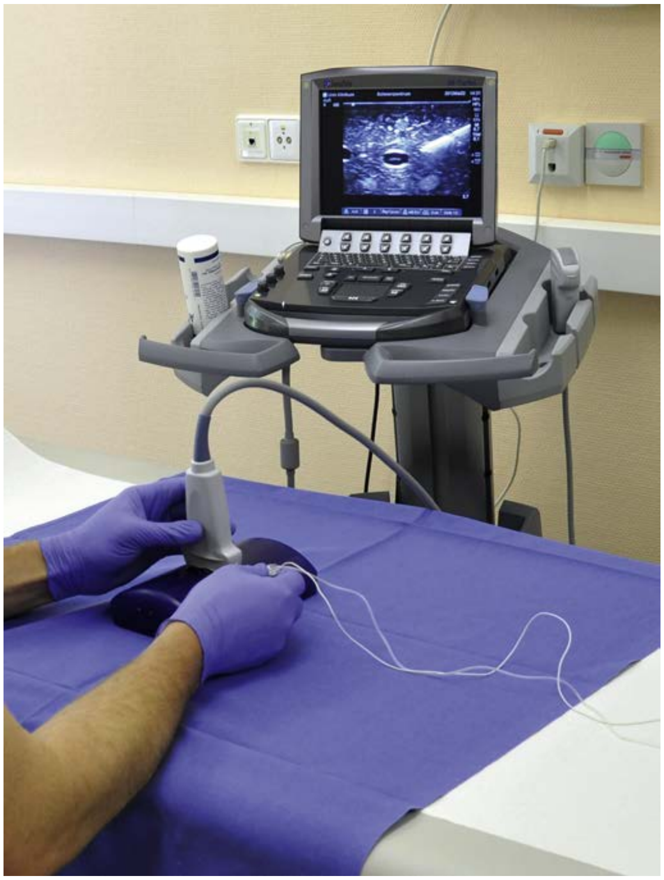


Fig. 46.39 Tissue equivalent phantom for training in ultrasound-guided interventions.

confirmatory studies of clinical practice are in progress. Many of these adverse events have only been recognized in retrospect by the review of recorded sonograms, which is a valuable training practice.

One of the original techniques developed for training novices in ultrasound-guided interventions was use of a tissue-equivalent phantom.[133] The phantom consisted of simulated tissue for needle placement practice (Fig. 46.39). To be realistic, the speed of sound must be similar as in soft tissue. In the first prototype, the phantom and container were clear; as a result, visual confirmation was possible. Several phantoms are now marketed for regional anesthesia purposes, and biologic tissue models that simulate nerve blocks have been developed.

A number of other effective teaching tools are being used. Cadavers have the advantage of realistic regional anatomic structures and can be used for simulated interventions.[134] The cost and use of specialized embalming methods that preserve nerve imaging and cadaver flexibility have limited this approach to a few specialized institutions. Most training studies have concluded that skills for ultrasound-guided procedures can be rapidly acquired.

One training study has identified common errors of novices while learning ultrasound-guided regional blocks.[135] These errors included advancing the needle when it was not visualized and unintentional probe movement. Novices often advance the needle even when it is not visualized, presumably because the natural inclination is to assume the needle has not reached the field of view. The potentially quality-compromising behaviors were largely eliminated by the end of the study period, which ranged from 66 to 114 blocks per training participant.

Summary and Conclusions

Peripheral nerve block techniques benefit the patient intraoperatively and postoperatively. Successfully mastering these techniques and applying them to the appropriate clinical situations add valuable options to the anesthetic care. Knowledge of regional anesthesia is also essential for the diagnosis and treatment of acute and chronic pain syndromes (see Chapters 51 and 82).

Ultrasound is a guidance tool that many people are electing to choose for regional anesthesia blocks. Once proficiency is established for a particular procedure, starting to use ultrasound for other interventional applications is relatively easy. Ultrasound imaging can prevent and detect critical events such as intravascular or intraneural injection that may improve safety during regional anesthesia procedures. However, if safety outcomes are to improve, then education and training play key roles in reducing these relatively uncommon adverse events.

Acknowledgments

The authors would like to thank Ram Jagannathan, MD, MBBS, for his help with imaging. Additionally, we would like to acknowledge Dr. Adam B. Collins for providing figure 46.36.

This chapter contains content from two chapters in the 8th edition text. The editors, publisher, and returning contributors, Drs. Sandra L. Kopp and Andrew T. Gray, would like to thank Drs. Terese T. Horlocker and Denise J. Wedel for their contribution in the prior edition of this work. It has served as a foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Selander D, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1979;23(1):27. PMID: 425811.
2. Selander D, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1977;21(3):182.
3. Rice AS, McMahon SB.*Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:433.
4. Klein SM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(4):383.
5. Tsui BC, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29(3):189.
6. Gray AT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:368.
7. Goldstein A, et al. *J Clin Ultrasound*. 1981;9:365.
8. Fornage BD, et al. *AJR Am J Roentgenol*. 1995;164(4):1022.
9. Gray AT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(6):1291.
10. Ziskin MC, et al. *J Ultrasound Med*. 1982;1(1):1.
11. AIUM technical bulletin. *J Ultrasound Med*. 1999;18(2):169.
12. Soong J, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2005;30(5):505.
13. Rubin JM, et al. *Radiology*. 1994;190(3):853.
14. Bondestam S, et al. *Invest Radiol*. 1989;24(7):555.
15. Hopkins RE, et al. *Clin Radiol*. 2001;56(6):499.
16. Schafhalter-Zoppoth I, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29(5):480.
17. Gray AT, et al. *Atlas of Ultrasound-Guided Regional Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. Saunders; 2018.
18. Silvestri E, et al. *Radiology*. 1995;197(1):291.
19. Cartwright MS, et al. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2007;88(3):394.
20. Roessel T, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2007;32(3):247.
21. Seidel R, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2016;65(12).
22. Winnie AP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1975;54(3):370.

23. Choquet O, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(6):1563.
24. Pandit JJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(2):159.
25. Urmey WF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:498.
26. Urmey WF, McDonald M. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:352.
27. Winnie AP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49(3):455.
28. Lanz E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62(1):55.
29. Kapral S, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(3):253.
30. Franco CD, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(4):452.
31. Gautier P, Williams JM. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(4):951.
32. Kessler J, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(6):545.
33. Liguori GA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(6):1320.
34. Soares LG, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2007;32(1):94.
35. Kang RA, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018.
36. Bhatia A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(3):817.
37. Siegenthaler A, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(3):325.
38. Wiegel M, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(3):310.
39. Aszmann OC, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1996;(330):202.
40. Chang KV, et al. *J Ultrasound Med*. 2015;34(11):2099.
41. Auyong DB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018. PMID:29634491.
42. Price DJ, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35(4):575.
43. Dhir S, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(5):564.
44. Lee JJ, et al. *Arthroscopy*. 2014;30(8):906.
45. Raj PP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1973;52:897.
46. Ootaki C, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25(6):600.
47. Sandhu NS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(2):254.
48. Gray AT. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2009;34(2):179.
49. Perttunen K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75(5):541.
50. Im JG, et al. *Radiology*. 1989;171(1):125.
51. Sakai F, et al. *Rofo*. 1990;153:390.
52. Koyanagi T, et al. *Echocardiography*. 2010;27(1):17. Epub 2009 Aug 31.
53. Helm EJ, et al. *Chest*. 2012.
54. Choi S, et al. *J Med Imaging Radiat Oncol*. 2010;54(4):302.
55. Crossley AW, Hosie HE. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59(2):149.
56. Moore DC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(11):815.
57. Hord AH, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1991;16(1):13.
58. Blanco R, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(11):1107.
59. Mayes J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(9):1064.
60. Ohgoshi Y, et al. *J Anesth*. 2016;30(5):916.
61. Klingensmith JD, et al. *Ultrasound Med Biol*. 2018;(18):30114. pii: S0301.
62. Moore DC, Bridenbaugh LD. *Anesth Analg*. 1962;41:1.
63. Shanti CM, et al. *J Trauma*. 2001;51(3):536.
64. Eichenberger U, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97(2):238.
65. Schmutz M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(2):264.
66. Olsen D, et al. *A Case Rep*. 2016;6(11):362.
67. Dalens B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69(6):705.
68. Guay J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(5):1695.
69. Hebbard P, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(4):300.
70. Desmet M, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(3):327.
71. Jæger P, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2013;38(6):526.
72. Kim DH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(3):540.
73. Macrinici GI, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(1):10.
74. Wong WY, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(2):241.
75. Chen J, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2014;39(2):170.
76. Neal JM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(6):723.
77. Johnson RL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(5):1113.
78. Gray AT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(5):1300.
79. Chan VW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(2):309.
80. Karmakar MK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(3):390.
81. Tsui BC, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(3):275.
82. Gray AT, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29(5):507.
83. Schafhalter-Zoppoth I, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(3):808.
84. Balius R, et al. *Skeletal Radiol*. 2018;47(6):763.
85. Gray AT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(5):1300.
86. Fuzier R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(5):1511.
87. Valade N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(2):664.
88. Dillow JM, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2013;23(11):1042.
89. Bendtsen TF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(2):278.
90. Johnson CS, et al. *J Ultrasound Med*. 2018;37(4):897.
91. Yamamoto H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(6):1442.
92. Beck GP. *Anesthesiology*. 1963;24:222.
93. Tsui BC, Ozelsel TJ. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(3):275.
94. Ota J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(2):660.
95. Elsharkawy H, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(1):57.
96. Benzon HT. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(3):633.
97. Redborg KE, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2009;34(3):256.
98. Pedowitz RA. *Acta Orthop Scand Suppl*. 1991;245:1.
99. Pitkänen MT, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47(7):618.
100. Pitkänen M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1993;48(12):1091.
101. Marsch SC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(6):1789.
102. Chan VW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(6):1602.
103. Davies JA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1984;39(10):996.
104. Atanassoff PG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(2):325.
105. Atanassoff PG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(3):627.
106. Horn JL, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2011;36(2):177.
107. Tham CH, Lim BH, et al. *J Hand Surg Br*. 2000;25:575.
108. Fletcher SJ, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(2):133.
109. Smith AR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(7):677.
110. Sukhani R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68(5):633.
111. Guay J. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21(8):585.
112. Mariano ER, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2009;34(5):480.
113. Swenson JD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(3):1015.
114. Johns J, et al. *J Ultrasound Med*. 2014;33(12):2197.
115. Ilfeld BM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2011;36(3):261.
116. Klein SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(2):590.
117. Auyong DB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(3):959.
118. Tadokoro T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018. PMID 29533260.
119. Neal JM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40(5):401.
120. Sites BD, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(5):478.
121. Neal JM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(5):681.
122. Horlocker TT, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(3):263.
123. Hebl JR. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(4):311.
124. Provenzano DA, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2013;38(5):415.
125. Alakkad H, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40(1):82.
126. Neal JM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018a;43(2):113.
127. Neal JM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018b;43(2):150.
128. Mulroy MF, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2014;39(3):195.
129. Barrington MJ, Kluger R. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2013;38(4):289.
130. Weinberg GL. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(1):180.
131. Schafhalter-Zoppoth I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(2):627.
132. Fredrickson MJ, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56(12):935.
133. Fornage BD, et al. *J Ultrasound Med*. 1989;8(12):701.
134. Kessler J, et al. *Surg Radiol Anat*. 2014;36(4):383.
135. Sites BD, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2007;32(2):107.

References

1. Selander D, Edshage S, Wolff T. Paresthesiae or no paresthesiae? Nerve lesions after axillary blocks. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1979;23(1):27–33. PMID:425811.
2. Selander D, Dhuner KG, Lundborg G. Peripheral nerve injury due to injection needles used for regional anesthesia. An experimental study of the acute effects of needle point trauma. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1977;21(3):182–188. PMID:878831.
3. Rice AS, McMahon SB. Peripheral nerve injury caused by injection needles used in regional anaesthesia: influence of bevel configuration, studied in a rat model. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:433–438. PMID:1467070.
4. Klein SM, Melton MS, Grill WM, Nielsen KC. Peripheral nerve stimulation in regional anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(4):383–392. PMID:22683706.
5. Tsui BC, Wagner A, Finucane B. Electrophysiologic effect of injectates on peripheral nerve stimulation. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29(3):189–193. PMID:15138901.
6. Gray AT. Ultrasound-guided regional anesthesia: current state of the art. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:368–373.
7. Goldstein A, Madrazo BL. Slice-thickness artifacts in gray-scale ultrasound. *J Clin Ultrasound*. 1981;9:365.
8. Fornage BD. Sonographically guided core-needle biopsy of breast masses: the “bayonet artifact.” *Am J Roentgenol*. 1995;164(4):1022.
9. Gray AT, Schafhalter-Zoppoth I. “Bayonet artifact” during ultrasound-guided transarterial axillary block. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(6):1291.
10. Ziskin MC, Thickman DI, Goldenberg NJ, Lapayowker MS, Becker JM. The comet tail artifact. *J Ultrasound Med*. 1982;1(1):1.
11. AIUM technical bulletin: transducer manipulation. American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine. *J Ultrasound Med*. 1999;18(2):169.
12. Soong J, Schafhalter-Zoppoth I, Gray AT. The importance of transducer angle to ultrasound visibility of the femoral nerve. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2005;30(5):505.
13. Rubin JM, Bude RO, Carson PL, et al. Power Doppler US: a potentially useful alternative to mean frequency-based color Doppler US. *Radiology*. 1994;190(3):853.
14. Bondestam S, Kreula J. Needle tip echogenicity. A study with real time ultrasound. *Invest Radiol*. 1989;24(7):555.
15. Hopkins RE, Bradley M. In-vitro visualization of biopsy needles with ultrasound: a comparative study of standard and echogenic needles using an ultrasound phantom. *Clin Radiol*. 2001;56(6):499.
16. Schafhalter-Zoppoth I, McCulloch CE, Gray AT. Ultrasound visibility of needles used for regional nerve block: an in vitro study. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29(5):480–488.
17. Gray AT. *Atlas of Ultrasound-Guided Regional Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. Saunders; 2018.
18. Silvestri E, Martinoli C, Derchi LE, et al. Echotexture of peripheral nerves: correlation between US and histologic findings and criteria to differentiate tendons. *Radiology*. 1995;197(1):291.
19. Cartwright MS, Shin HW, Passmore LV, Walker FO. Ultrasonographic findings of the normal ulnar nerve in adults. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2007;88(3):394.
20. Roessel T, Wiessner D, Heller AR, Zimmermann T, Koch T, Litz RJ. High-resolution ultrasound-guided high interscalene plexus block for carotid endarterectomy. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2007;32(3):247–253. PMID:17543822.
21. Seidel R, Zukowski K, Wree A, Schulze M. Ultrasound-guided intermediate cervical plexus block and perivascular local anesthetic infiltration for carotid endarterectomy: a randomized controlled trial. *Anaesthesist*. 2016;65(12):917–924. PMID:27742968.
22. Winnie AP, Ramamurthy S, Durrani Z, Radonjic R. Interscalene cervical plexus block: a single-injection technic. *Anesth Analg*. 1975;54(3):370–375. PMID:1169028.
23. Choquet O, Dadure C, Capdevila X. Ultrasound-guided deep or intermediate cervical plexus block: the target should be the posterior cervical space. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(6):1563–1564. PMID:21106978.
24. Pandit JJ, Satya-Krishna R, Gration P. Superficial or deep cervical plexus block for carotid endarterectomy: a systematic review of complications. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(2):159–169. PMID:17576970.
25. Urmey WF, Talts KH, Sharrock NE. One hundred percent incidence of hemidiaphragmatic paresis associated with interscalene brachial plexus anesthesia as diagnosed by ultrasonography. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:498–503. PMID:2006740.
26. Urmey WF, McDonald M. Hemidiaphragmatic paresis during interscalene brachial plexus block: effects on pulmonary function and chest wall mechanics. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:352–357. PMID:1539813.
27. Winnie AP. Interscalene brachial plexus block. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49(3):455–466. PMID:5534420.
28. Lanz E, Theiss D, Jankovic D. The extent of blockade following various techniques of brachial plexus block. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62(1):55–58. PMID:6849510.
29. Kapral S, Greher M, Huber G, et al. Ultrasonographic guidance improves the success rate of interscalene brachial plexus blockade. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(3):253–258. PMID:18433677.
30. Franco CD, Williams JM. Ultrasound-guided interscalene block: reevaluation of the “stoplight” sign and clinical implications. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(4):452–459. PMID:27203394.
31. Gautier P, Vandepitte C, Ramquet C, DeCoopman M, Xu D, Hadzic A. The minimum effective anesthetic volume of 0.75% ropivacaine in ultrasound-guided interscalene brachial plexus block. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(4):951–955. PMID:21821517.
32. Kessler J, Schafhalter-Zoppoth I, Gray AT. An ultrasound study of the phrenic nerve in the posterior cervical triangle: implications for the interscalene brachial plexus block. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(6):545–550. PMID:19258969.
33. Liguori GA, Kahn RL, Gordon J, Gordon MA, Urban MK. The use of metoprolol and glycopyrrolate to prevent hypotensive/bradycardic events during shoulder arthroscopy in the sitting position under interscalene block. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(6):1320–1325. PMID:9842820.
34. Soares LG, Brull R, Lai J, Chan VW. Eight ball. Corner pocket: the optimal needle position for ultrasound-guided supraclavicular block. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2007;32(1):94–95. PMID:17196502.
35. Kang RA, Chung YH, Ko JS, Yang MK, Choi DH. Reduced hemidiaphragmatic paresis with a “corner pocket” technique for supraclavicular brachial plexus block: single-center, observer-blinded, randomized controlled trial. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018. PMID: 29746446.
36. Bhatia A, Lai J, Chan VW, Brull R. Case report: pneumothorax as a complication of the ultrasound-guided supraclavicular approach for brachial plexus block. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(3):817–819. PMID: 20508135.
37. Siegenthaler A, Moriggl B, Mlekusch S, et al. Ultrasound-guided suprascapular nerve block, description of a novel supraclavicular approach. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(3):325–328. PMID: 22222688.
38. Wiegel M, Moriggl B, Schwarzkopf P, Petroff D, Reske AW. Anterior suprascapular nerve block versus interscalene brachial plexus block for shoulder surgery in the outpatient setting: a randomized controlled patient- and assessor-blinded trial. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(3):310–318. PMID:28257388.
39. Aszmann OC, Dellon AL, Birely BT, McFarland EG. Innervation of the human shoulder joint and its implications for surgery. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1996;(330):202–207. PMID:8804294.
40. Chang KV, Hung CY, Wang TG, Yang RS, Sun WZ, Lin CP. Ultrasound-guided proximal suprascapular nerve block with radiofrequency lesioning for patients with malignancy-associated recalcitrant shoulder pain. *J Ultrasound Med*. 2015;34(11):2099–2105. PMID:26453125.
41. Auyong DB, Hanson NA, Joseph RS, Schmidt BE, Slee AE, Yuan SC. Comparison of anterior suprascapular, supraclavicular, and interscalene nerve block approaches for major outpatient arthroscopic shoulder surgery: a randomized, double-blind, noninferiority trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2018. PMID:29634491.
42. Price DJ. The shoulder block: a new alternative to interscalene brachial plexus blockade for the control of postoperative shoulder pain. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35(4):575–581. PMID: 18020078.
43. Dhir S, Sondekoppam RV, Sharma R, Ganapathy S, Athwal GS. A comparison of combined suprascapular and axillary nerve blocks to interscalene nerve block for analgesia in arthroscopic shoulder surgery: an equivalence study. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(5):564–571. PMID:27380105.
44. Lee JJ, Kim DY, Hwang JT, et al. Effect of ultrasonographically guided axillary nerve block combined with suprascapular nerve block in arthroscopic rotator cuff repair: a randomized controlled trial. *Arthroscopy*. 2014;30(8):906–914. PMID:24880194.
45. Raj PP, Montgomery SJ, Nettles D, Jenkins MT. Infraclavicular brachial plexus block: a new approach. *Anesth Analg*. 1973;52:897–904.
46. Ootaki C, Hayashi H, Amano M. Ultrasound-guided infraclavicular brachial plexus block: an alternative technique to anatomical landmark-guided approaches. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25(6):600–604. PMID:11097667.

47. Sandhu NS, Capan LM. Ultrasound-guided infraclavicular brachial plexus block. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(2):254–259. PMID:12378663.
48. Gray AT. The conjoint tendon of the latissimus dorsi and teres major: an important landmark for ultrasound-guided axillary block. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2009;34(2):179–180. PMID:19282718.
49. Perttunen K, Nilsson E, Heinonen J, Hirvisalo EL, Salo JA, Kalso E. Extradural, paravertebral and intercostal nerve blocks for post-thoracotomy pain. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;75(5):541–547. PMID:7577277.
50. Im JG, Webb WR, Rosen A, Gamsu G. Costal pleura: appearances at high-resolution CT. *Radiology*. 1989;171(1):125–131. PMID:2928515.
51. Sakai F, Sone S, Kiyono K, et al. High resolution ultrasound of the chest wall. *Rofo*. 1990;153:390–394. PMID:2171083.
52. Koyanagi T, Kawaharada N, Kurimoto Y, et al. Examination of intercostal arteries with transthoracic Doppler sonography. *Echocardiography*. 2010;27(1):17–20. PMID:19725850.
53. Helm EJ, Rahman NM, Talakoub O, Fox DL, Gleeson FV. Course and variation of the intercostal artery by computed tomography. *Chest*. 2012. PMID:23079732.
54. Choi S, Trieu J, Ridley L. Radiological review of intercostal artery: Anatomical considerations when performing procedures via intercostal space. *J Med Imaging Radiat Oncol*. 2010;54(4):302–306. PMID:20718909.
55. Crossley AW, Hosie HE. Radiographic study of intercostal nerve blockade in healthy volunteers. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59(2):149–154. PMID:3828164.
56. Moore DC, Bush WH, Scurlock JE. Intercostal nerve block: a roentgenographic anatomic study of technique and absorption in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(11):815–825. PMID:7191670.
57. Hord AH, Wang JM, Pai UT, Raj PP. Anatomic spread of India ink in the human intercostal space with radiographic correlation. *Reg Anesth*. 1991;16(1):13–16. PMID:2007098.
58. Blanco R, Parras T, McDonnell JG, Prats-Galino A. Serratus plane block: a novel ultrasound-guided thoracic wall nerve block. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(11):1107–1113. PMID:23923989.
59. Mayes J, Davison E, Panahi P, et al. An anatomical evaluation of the serratus anterior plane block. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(9):1064–1069. PMID:27440171.
60. Ohgoshi Y, Ino K, Matsukawa M. Ultrasound-guided parasternal intercostal nerve block. *J Anesth*. 2016;30(5):916. PMID:27325411.
61. Klingensmith JD, Haggard A, Fedewa RJ, et al. Spectral analysis of ultrasound radiofrequency backscatter for the detection of intercostal blood vessels. *Ultrasound Med Biol*. 2018;(18):30114–30115. pii: S0301–5629. PMID:29681422.
62. Moore DC, Bridenbaugh LD. Intercostal nerve block in 4333 patients: indications, technique, and complications. *Anesth Analg*. 1962;41:1–11. PMID:14475639.
63. Shanti CM, Carlin AM, Tyburski JG. Incidence of pneumothorax from intercostal nerve block for analgesia in rib fractures. *J Trauma*. 2001;51(3):536–539. PMID:11535906.
64. Eichenberger U, Greher M, Kirchmair L, Curatolo M, Moriggl B. Ultrasound-guided blocks of the ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerve: accuracy of a selective new technique confirmed by anatomical dissection. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97(2):238–243. PMID:16698865.
65. Schmutz M, Schumacher PM, Luyet C, Curatolo M, Eichenberger U. Ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves cannot be selectively blocked by using ultrasound guidance: a volunteer study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(2):264–270. PMID:23482999.
66. Olsen D, Amundson A, Kopp S. Inadvertent prolonged femoral nerve palsy after field block with liposomal bupivacaine for inguinal herniorrhaphy. *A Case Rep*. 2016;6(11):362–363. PMID:27144899.
67. Dalens B, Vanneuville G, Tanguy A. Comparison of the fascia iliaca compartment block with the 3-in-1 block in children. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69(6):705–713. PMID:2589650.
68. Guay J, Parker MJ, Griffiths R, Kopp SL. Peripheral nerve blocks for hip fractures: a Cochrane review. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(5):1695–1704. PMID:28991122.
69. Hebbard P, Ivanusic J, Sha S. Ultrasound-guided supra-inguinal fascia iliaca block: a cadaveric evaluation of a novel approach. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(4):300–305. PMID:21401544.
70. Desmet M, Vermeylen K, Van Herreweghe I, et al. A longitudinal supra-inguinal fascia iliaca compartment block reduces morphine consumption after total hip arthroplasty. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(3):327–333. PMID:28059869.
71. Jæger P, Zaric D, Fomsgaard JS, et al. Adductor canal block versus femoral nerve block for analgesia after total knee arthroplasty: a randomized, double-blind study. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2013;38(6):526–532. PMID 24121608.
72. Kim DH, Lin Y, Goytizolo EA, et al. Adductor canal block versus femoral nerve block for total knee arthroplasty: a prospective, randomized, controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(3):540–550. PMID 24401769.
73. Macrinici GI, Murphy C, Christman L, et al. Prospective, double-blind, randomized study to evaluate single-injection adductor canal nerve block versus femoral nerve block: postoperative functional outcomes after total knee arthroplasty. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(1):10–16. PMID 27811526.
74. Wong WY, Bjørn S, Strid JM, Børglum J, Bendtsen TF. Defining the location of the adductor canal using ultrasound. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(2):241–245. PMID 28002228.
75. Chen J, Lesser JB, Hadzic A, Reiss W, Resta-Flarer F. Adductor canal block can result in motor block of the quadriceps muscle. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2014;39(2):170–171. PMID 24553306.
76. Neal JM, Salinas FV, Choi DS. Local anesthetic-induced myotoxicity after continuous adductor canal block. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(6):723–727. PMID 27662067.
77. Johnson RL, Duncan CM, Ahn KS, Schroeder DR, Horlocker TT, Kopp SL. Fall-prevention strategies and patient characteristics that impact fall rates after total knee arthroplasty. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(5):1113–1118. PMID 25211392.
78. Gray AT, Collins AB, Schafhalter-Zoppoth I. Sciatic nerve block in a child: a sonographic approach. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(5):1300.
79. Chan VW, Nova H, Abbas S, et al. Ultrasound examination and localization of the sciatic nerve: a volunteer study. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(2):309.
80. Karmakar MK, Kwok WH, Ho AM, et al. Ultrasound-guided sciatic nerve block: description of a new approach at the subgluteal space. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(3):390.
81. Tsui BC, Ozelsel TJ. Ultrasound-guided anterior sciatic nerve block using a longitudinal approach: "expanding the view". *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(3):275.
82. Gray AT, Huczko EL, Schafhalter-Zoppoth I. Lateral popliteal nerve block with ultrasound guidance. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29(5):507–509.
83. Schafhalter-Zoppoth I, Younger SJ, Collins AB, Gray AT. The "seesaw" sign: improved sonographic identification of the sciatic nerve. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(3):808–809. PMID 15329621.
84. Balius R, Susín A, Morros C, Pujol M, Pérez-Cuenca D, Sala-Blanch X. Gemelli-obturator complex in the deep gluteal space: an anatomic and dynamic study. *Skeletal Radiol*. 2018;47(6):763–770. PMID 29218390.
85. Gray AT, Collins AB, Schafhalter-Zoppoth I. Sciatic nerve block in a child: a sonographic approach. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(5):1300–1302. PMID 14570642.
86. Fuzier R, Hoffreumont P, Bringuier-Branchereau S, Capdevila X, Singelyn F. Does the sciatic nerve approach influence thigh tourniquet tolerance during below-knee surgery? *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(5):1511–1514. PMID 15845716.
87. Valade N, Ripart J, Nouvellon E, et al. Does sciatic parasacral injection spread to the obturator nerve? An anatomic study. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(2):664–667. PMID 18227332.
88. Dillow JM, Rosett RL, Petersen TR, Vagh FS, Hruschka JA, Lam NC. Ultrasound-guided parasacral approach to the sciatic nerve block in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2013;23(11):1042–1047. PMID 23683056.
89. Bendtsen TF, Lönnqvist PA, Jepsen KV, Petersen M, Knudsen L, Børglum J. Preliminary results of a new ultrasound-guided approach to block the sacral plexus: the parasacral parallel shift. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(2):278–2780. PMID 21757560.
90. Johnson CS, Johnson RL, Niesen AD, Stoike DE, Pawlina W. Ultrasound-guided posterior femoral cutaneous nerve block: a cadaveric study. *J Ultrasound Med*. 2018;37(4):897–903. PMID 29027690.
91. Yamamoto H, Sakura S, Wada M, Shido A. A prospective, randomized comparison between single- and multiple-injection techniques for ultrasound-guided subgluteal sciatic nerve block. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(6):1442–1448. PMID 25268398.
92. Beck GP. Anterior approach to sciatic nerve block. *Anesthesiology*. 1963;24:222–224. PMID 13970060.
93. Tsui BC, Ozelsel TJ. Ultrasound-guided anterior sciatic nerve block using a longitudinal approach: "expanding the view". *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(3):275–276. PMID 18433684.

94. Ota J, Sakura S, Hara K, Saito Y. Ultrasound-guided anterior approach to sciatic nerve block: a comparison with the posterior approach. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(2):660–665. PMID19151305.
95. Elsharkawy H, Kashy BK, Babazade R, Gray AT. Ultrasound detection of arteria comitans: a novel technique to locate the sciatic nerve. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(1):57–61. PMID:29035937.
96. Benzon HT, Sharma S, Calimaran A. Comparison of the different approaches to saphenous nerve block. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(3):633–638. PMID:15731603.
97. Redborg KE, Antonakakis JG, Beach ML, Chinn CD, Sites BD. Ultrasound improves the success rate of a tibial nerve block at the ankle. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2009;34(3):256–260. PMID:19587626.
98. Pedowitz RA. Tourniquet-induced neuromuscular injury. A recent review of rabbit and clinical experiments. *Acta Orthop Scand Suppl*. 1991;245:1–33. PMID:1950503.
99. Pitkänen MT, Suzuki N, Rosenberg PH. Intravenous regional anaesthesia with 0.5% prilocaine or 0.5% chloroprocaine. A double-blind comparison in volunteers. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47(7):618–619. PMID:1626679.
100. Pitkänen M, Kyttä J, Rosenberg PH. Comparison of 2-chloroprocaine and prilocaine for intravenous regional anaesthesia of the arm: a clinical study. *Anaesthesia*. 1993;48(12):1091–1093. PMID:8285334.
101. Marsch SC, Sluga M, Studer W, Barandun J, Scharplatz D, Ummenhofer W. 0.5% versus 1.0% 2-chloroprocaine for intravenous regional anesthesia: a prospective, randomized, double-blind trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(6):1789–1793. PMID:15155349.
102. Chan VW, Weisbrod MJ, Kaszas Z, Dragomir C. Comparison of ropivacaine and lidocaine for intravenous regional anesthesia in volunteers: a preliminary study on anesthetic efficacy and blood level. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(6):1602–1608. PMID:10360858.
103. Davies JA, Wilkey AD, Hall ID. Bupivacaine leak past inflated tourniquets during intravenous regional analgesia. *Anaesthesia*. 1984;39(10):996–999. PMID:6496915.
104. Atanassoff PG, Aouad R, Hartmannsgruber MW, Halaszynski T. Levobupivacaine 0.125% and lidocaine 0.5% for intravenous regional anesthesia in volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(2):325–328. PMID:12151920.
105. Atanassoff PG, Ocampo CA, Bande MC, Hartmannsgruber MW, Halaszynski TM. Ropivacaine 0.2% and lidocaine 0.5% for intravenous regional anesthesia in outpatient surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(3):627–631. PMID:11575533.
106. Horn JL, Cordo P, Künster D, et al. Progression of forearm intravenous regional anesthesia with ropivacaine. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2011;36(2):177–180. PMID:21270720.
107. Tham CH, Lim BH. A modification of the technique for intravenous regional blockade for hand surgery. *J Hand Surg Br*. 2000;25:575–577.
108. Fletcher SJ, Hulgur MD, Varma S, Lawrence E, Boome RS, Oswal S. Use of a temporary forearm tourniquet for intravenous regional anaesthesia: a randomised controlled trial. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(2):133–136. PMID:21088591.
109. Smith AR, Hur D, Resano F. Grand mal seizures after 2-chloroprocaine epidural anesthesia in a patient with plasma cholinesterase deficiency. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(7):677–678. PMID:3111302.
110. Sukhani R, Garcia CJ, Munhall RJ, Winnie AP, Rodvold KA. Lidocaine disposition following intravenous regional anesthesia with different tourniquet deflation technics. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68(5):633–637. PMID:2719294.
111. Guay J. Adverse events associated with intravenous regional anesthesia (Bier block): a systematic review of complications. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21(8):585–594. PMID:20122591.
112. Mariano ER, Cheng GS, Choy LP, et al. Electrical stimulation versus ultrasound guidance for popliteal-sciatic perineural catheter insertion: a randomized controlled trial. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2009;34(5):480–485. PMID:19920423.
113. Swenson JD, Davis JJ, DeCou JA. A novel approach for assessing catheter position after ultrasound-guided placement of continuous interscalene block. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(3):1015–1016. PMID:18292456.
114. Johns J, Harrison TK, Steffel L, et al. A pilot in vitro evaluation of the “air test” for perineural catheter tip localization by a novice regional anesthesiologist. *J Ultrasound Med*. 2014;33(12):2197–2200. PMID:25425379.
115. Ilfeld BM, Sandhu NS, Loland VJ, et al. Ultrasound-guided (needle-in-plane) perineural catheter insertion: the effect of catheter-insertion distance on postoperative analgesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2011;36(3):261–265. PMID:21519311.
116. Klein SM, Nielsen KC, Buckenmaier CC, Kamal AS, Rubin Y, Steele SM. 2-octyl cyanoacrylate glue for the fixation of continuous peripheral nerve catheters. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(2):590–591. PMID:12552227.
117. Auyong DB, Cantor DA, Green C, Hanson NA. The effect of fixation technique on continuous interscalene nerve block catheter success: a randomized, double-blind trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(3):959–965. PMID:28151818.
118. Tadokoro T, Kakinohana M, Navarro M, Goya M, Odo Y. The effectiveness of applying soft tissue bonding adhesive composed of 2-ethyl cyanoacrylate to epidural catheter fixations using film dressings: an open-label, randomized, parallel-group comparative study. *Anesth Analg*. 2018. PMID:29533260.
119. Neal JM, Barrington MJ, Brull R, et al. The Second ASRA Practice Advisory on neurologic complications associated with regional anesthesia and pain medicine: executive summary 2015. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40(5):401–430. PMID:26288034.
120. Sites BD, Taenzer AH, Herrick MD, et al. Incidence of local anesthetic systemic toxicity and postoperative neurologic symptoms associated with 12,668 ultrasound-guided nerve blocks: an analysis from a prospective clinical registry. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(5):478–482. PMID:22705953.
121. Neal JM, Barrington MJ, Brull R, et al. Asleep versus awake and standard of care. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(5):681–682. PMID:28820806.
122. Horlocker TT, Vandermeuelen E, Kopp SL, Gogarten W, Leffert LR, Benzon HT. Regional anesthesia in the patient receiving antithrombotic or thrombolytic therapy: American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine Evidence-Based Guidelines (fourth edition). *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(3):263–309. PMID:29561531.
123. Hebl JR. The importance and implications of aseptic techniques during regional anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(4):311–323. PMID:16857551.
124. Provenzano DA, Liebert MA, Steen B, Lovetro D, Somers DL. Investigation of current infection-control practices for ultrasound coupling gel: a survey, microbiological analysis, and examination of practice patterns. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2013;38(5):415–424. PMID:23974866.
125. Alakkad H, Naeeni A, Chan VW, et al. Infection related to ultrasound-guided single-injection peripheral nerve blockade: a decade of experience at Toronto Western Hospital. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40(1):82–84. PMID:25469758.
126. Neal JM, Barrington MJ, Fettiplace MR, et al. The Third American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine Practice Advisory on local anesthetic systemic toxicity: executive summary 2017. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018a;43(2):113–123. PMID:29356773.
127. Neal JM, Woodward CM, Harrison TK. The American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine checklist for managing local anesthetic systemic toxicity: 2017 version. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018b;43(2):150–153. PMID:29356775.
128. Mulroy MF, Weller RS, Liguori GA. A checklist for performing regional nerve blocks. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2014;39(3):195–199. PMID:24718017.
129. Barrington MJ, Kluger R. Ultrasound guidance reduces the risk of local anesthetic systemic toxicity following peripheral nerve blockade. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2013;38(4):289–299. PMID:23788067.
130. Weinberg GL. Lipid emulsion infusion: resuscitation for local anesthetic and other drug overdose. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(1):180–187. PMID:22627464.
131. Schafhalter-Zoppoth I, Zeitz ID, Gray AT. Inadvertent femoral nerve impalement and intraneural injection visualized by ultrasound. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(2):627.
132. Fredrickson MJ. Case report: neurological deficit associated with intraneural needle placement without injection. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56(12):935.
133. Fornage BD. A simple phantom for training in ultrasound-guided needle biopsy using the freehand technique. *J Ultrasound Med*. 1989;8(12):701.
134. Kessler J, Moriggl B, Grau T. Ultrasound-guided regional anesthesia: learning with an optimized cadaver model. *Surg Radiol Anat*. 2014;36(4):383–392. PMID:23978870.
135. Sites BD, Spence BC, Gallagher JD, et al. Characterizing novice behavior associated with learning ultrasound-guided peripheral regional anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2007;32(2):107.

47

Perioperative Fluid and Electrolyte Therapy

MARK R. EDWARDS and MICHAEL P.W. GROCOTT

KEY POINTS

- Intravenous fluid therapy is a core part of perioperative practice, with the potential to influence patient outcomes.
- Water makes up approximately 60% of total body weight, varying widely with age and body composition. The ratio between the water volume within the intracellular and functional extracellular compartments is approximately 2:1.
- The endothelial glycocalyx forms a protein-poor intravascular fluid layer at the vessel perimeter; it has been integrated into a revised version of the Starling equation and updated model of capillary fluid movement.
- Sodium is the dominant extracellular cation and is responsible for much of extracellular fluid osmolality; dysnatremia is typically associated with disturbed extracellular fluid volume.
- Potassium is the dominant intracellular cation with a key role in the maintenance of transmembrane potentials; dyskalemia may be accompanied by impaired function of excitable tissues.
- Calcium is a key intracellular second messenger with roles in neuromuscular function, cell division, and oxidative pathways.
- Magnesium has a diverse range of physiologic effects, underlined by the increasing range of therapeutic applications of supplemental magnesium in the perioperative setting.
- Acid-base balance is relevant to fluid therapy because fluids containing supraphysiologic levels of chloride may cause an iatrogenic acidosis; the clinical relevance of this acidosis is debated.
- Intravenous fluids have a range of physiologic effects and should be considered drugs with indications, dose ranges, cautions, and side effects.
- The physiologic insult of the perioperative period may lead to a wide variety of disturbances in fluid and electrolyte balance.
- Clinical evidence to guide perioperative fluid therapy is lacking in many areas and cannot be directly extrapolated from general critical care trials.
- A balance must be found between inadequate fluid administration—allowing tissue hypoperfusion—and the adverse effects of excess intravenous fluids and toxicities related to fluid constituents.
- Goal-directed fluid therapy (GDT) may help in finding this balance for an individual patient in the perioperative setting, with evidence of reduced postoperative morbidity supporting its use in many surgical settings.
- No clear consensus exists on which intravenously administered fluid is associated with the best clinical outcomes in the perioperative setting. Comparisons of "balanced" with "unbalanced" and "crystalloid" with "colloid" fluids are being studied in many clinical settings; definitive conclusions are often lacking.
- The approach to fluid and electrolyte management may need adapting to numerous patient and surgical factors.

The administration of intravenous (IV) fluid is a core expertise for anesthesia providers and an area in which we have an important role in advising clinical colleagues. Alongside the traditional triad of maintenance of unconsciousness, pain relief, and neuromuscular relaxation, IV fluid therapy is a core element of the perioperative practice of anesthesia. The aims of perioperative fluid administration should be to avoid dehydration, maintain an effective circulating volume, and prevent inadequate tissue perfusion during a period when the patient is unable to achieve these goals through normal oral fluid intake.

Knowledge of the clinical effects of different fluids has increased substantially in recent years. The choice of fluid type in a variety of clinical situations can be rationally guided by an understanding of the physicochemical and biologic properties of the various crystalloid and colloid solutions available in combination with the available clinical trial data. Each clinical decision about fluid therapy has two key elements: which fluid to use and how much fluid to give. Recently, several clinical studies have changed our concepts regarding both these questions. However, we should be cautious about overinterpreting data from nonperioperative contexts. Despite recent high-quality "mega-trials" involving thousands of critically ill patients, key questions remain unresolved in the perioperative setting. Goal-directed fluid therapy (GDT) is a good example of an intervention that is effective in the perioperative phase, but ineffective in established critical illness, and this should alert us to other possible similar distinctions. This chapter will review the physiology and pharmacology of IV fluid therapy in humans and discuss the impact of fluid and electrolyte management and alternative approaches on clinical outcomes.

Physiology

FLUID COMPARTMENTS

Water makes up approximately 60% of total body weight in the average adult, varying with age, gender, and body composition. Adipose tissue contains little water compared with other tissues, leading to marked variability in total body water (TBW) proportion between lean (75%) and obese (45%) individuals. Variation in adipose tissue also contributes to differences in TBW between adult males and females; these differences are reduced in old age as adipose tissue is reduced. The variations in body composition with age lead to a wide variation in TBW (Table 47.1). TBW is divided between anatomic and functional fluid compartments within the body, with the major division between intracellular fluid (ICF) and extracellular fluid (ECF). The size of these compartments and their widely differing composition are shown in Fig. 47.1 and Table 47.2. The ECF can be subdivided into the following compartments:

- Interstitial fluid (ISF): Lymphatic fluid and protein-poor fluid occupying cell spaces.
- Intravascular fluid: Plasma volume, including a proportion contained within the subglycocalyx (see later discussion).
- Transcellular fluid: Includes gastrointestinal (GI) tract fluid, bile, urine, cerebrospinal fluid, aqueous humor, joint fluid, and pleural, peritoneal, and pericardial fluid. These are functionally important fluids of widely varying composition contained within epithelial-lined spaces and regulated by active cellular transport (Table 47.3).
- Water in bone and dense connective tissue: Constitutes a substantial proportion of TBW but not part of the *functional* ECF because of slow kinetics of water distribution between this and other compartments.[1]

Total *blood* volume comprises extracellular (plasma and subglycocalyx compartments) and intracellular (blood cells) elements. With the nonfunctional ECF compartment (bone and connective tissue) excluded, the ratio between ICF and functional ECF is approximately 2:1 (ICF 55% of body weight to ECF 27.5% of body weight).

PHYSICOCHEMICAL LAWS GOVERNING FLUID AND ELECTROLYTE MOVEMENT

The movement of water and solutes is governed by a variety of physicochemical and biologic processes, discussed in the following section.

Diffusion

Diffusion is the process by which solute particles fill the available solvent volume by motion from areas of high to low concentration. The speed of this equilibration is proportional to the square of the diffusion distance.

Diffusion also may occur across permeable membranes, according to Fick's law of diffusion:[1]

$$J = -DA\left(\frac{\Delta c}{\Delta x}\right)$$

where J is the net rate of diffusion, D is the diffusion coefficient, A is the cross-sectional area available for diffusion, and $\Delta c/\Delta x$ is the concentration (chemical) gradient.

Diffusion may also be driven by the tendency of charged solutes to move down electrical gradients.

Osmosis

If a semipermeable membrane (one that is permeable to water but not a solute) separates pure water from water in which solute is dissolved, water molecules will diffuse across the membrane into the region of higher solute concentration. The hydrostatic pressure required to resist the movement of solvent molecules in this way is osmotic pressure. This is one of the fundamental colligative properties of a solution—that is, it depends on the number rather than the type of osmotically active particles in a solution, which may be complete molecules or dissociated ions.

Osmotic pressure in an ideal solution is affected by temperature and volume[2]:

$$P = \frac{nRT}{V}$$

TABLE 47.1 Age-Related Variation in Total Body Water and Extracellular Fluid as Percent of Body Weight (MULTIPLY by 10 for mL/kg)

Age	TBW (%)	ECF (%)	Blood Volume (%)
Neonate	80	45	9
6 months	70	35	
1 year	60	28	
5 years	65	25	8
Young adult (male)	60	22	7
Young adult (female)	50	20	7
Elderly	50	20	

In pregnancy, blood and plasma volumes increase by 45% and 50%, respectively, by term.

ECF, Extracellular fluid; *TBW*, total body water.

Data from Jones JG, Wardrop CA. Measurement of blood volume in surgical and intensive care practice. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84(2):226–235; Chumlea WC, Guo SS, Zeller CM, et al. Total body water data for white adults 18 to 64 years of age: the Fels Longitudinal Study. *Kidney Int*. 1999;56(1):244–252; Baarsma R, Hof P, Zijlstra WG, et al. Measurement of total bodywater volume with deuterated water in newborn infants. *Biol Neonate*. 1992;62(2–3):108–112; and Ellis KJ, Shypailo RJ, Abrams SA, et al. The reference child and adolescent models of body composition. A contemporary comparison. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2000;904:374–382.

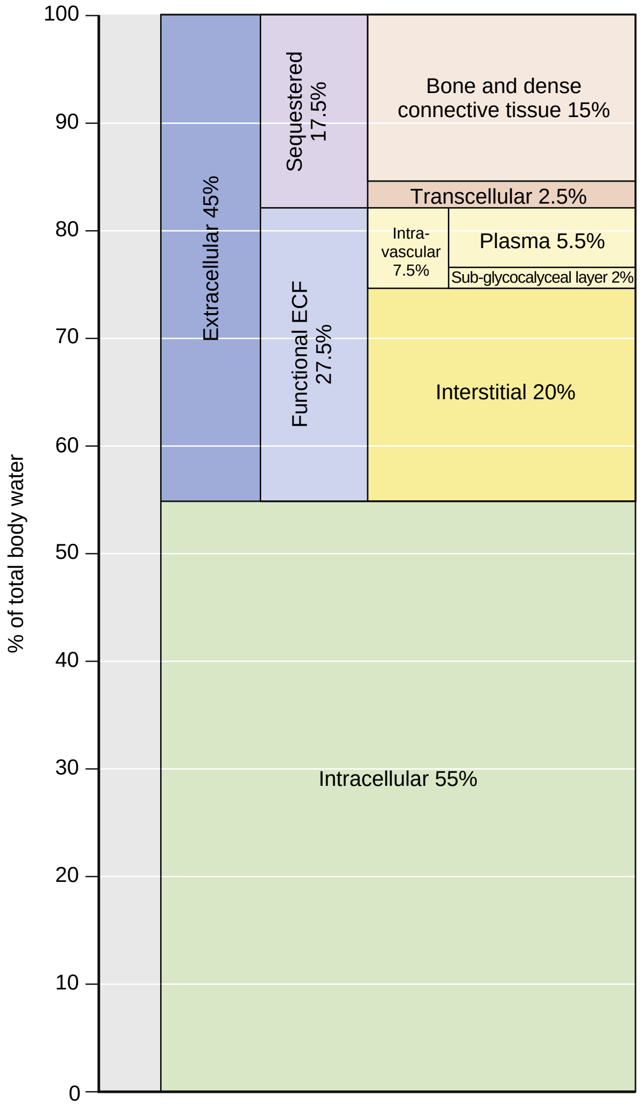


Fig. 47.1 Distribution of total body water between fluid compartments. "Sequestered" extracellular fluid *(ECF)* refers to water associated with bone and dense connective tissue or within the transcellular compartment and therefore not immediately available for equilibration with the other fluid compartments.

TABLE 47.2 Composition of Intracellular and Extracellular Fluid Compartments (in mOsm/L Water)

		EXTRACELLULAR	
	Intracellular	**Intravascular**	**Interstitial**
CATIONS			
Na^+	10	142	145
K^+	157	4	4
Ca^{2+}	0.5*	2.5	2.5
Mg^{2+}	20	0.8	0.7
ANIONS			
Cl^-	10	103	117
HCO_3^-	7	25	27
$HPO_4^{2-}/H_2PO_4^-$	11	2	2
SO_4^{2-}	1	0.5	0.5
Organic acids		6	6
Protein	4	1.2	0.2

Total intracellular Ca^{2+} concentration may be as high as extracellular levels; however, this is largely sequestered or buffered, such that the cytoplasmic ionized Ca^{2+} concentration is approximately 1000 times lower than extracellular fluid (0.3-2.6 μEq/L). The intracellular content of anions such as PO_4^{3-} has been difficult to establish for similar reasons.

Data from Campbell I. Physiology of fluid balance. *Anaesth Intensive Care Med*. 2009;10(12):593–596; Hoffer LJ, Hamadeh MJ, Robitaille L, et al. Human sulfate kinetics. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2005;289(5):R1372–R1380; and Hall JE. The body fluid compartments. In: *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 12th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2010:285–300.

where *P* is the osmotic pressure, n is the number of particles, *R* is the gas constant, *T* the absolute temperature, and *V* the volume. The number of particles *(n)* can be calculated by multiplying (mass of solute/molecular weight of solute) by the number of particles into which the solute dissociates. However, body fluids are not ideal solutions, because interionic interactions reduce the number of particles free to exert an osmotic effect. The total osmotic pressure of plasma is approximately 5545 mm Hg.

Osmolality

Molality is the number of moles (each containing 6×10^{23} particles of *a specific substance*) present in 1 kg of solvent. Osmolality may be used to describe solutions containing many different types of particles and is the number of osmoles (each containing 6×10^{23} of *any type of particle present*) present in 1 kg of solvent. Normal body osmolality is 285 to 290 mOsm/kg and is the same in intracellular and extracellular compartments because of the free movement of water between compartments that consequently prevents the development of any osmotic gradients. The largest contribution to plasma osmolality is made by sodium and its related anions chloride and bicarbonate.

It can be estimated by[3]:

$$\text{Serum osmolality} = (2 \times \text{Na}) + (\text{glucose}/18) + (\text{urea}/2.8)$$

where Na is the serum sodium concentration (mEq/L), glucose is the serum glucose concentration (mg/dL), urea is the blood urea nitrogen concentration (mg/dL), and the (2 × Na) component reflects both Na and its associated anions (predominantly Cl^- and HCO_3^-). Alternatively, osmolality can be measured by depression of plasma freezing point.

Osmolarity is the number of osmoles of solute per liter of solution; unlike osmolality, this may be affected by temperature changes as a result of the volume-expanding effect of increasing temperature.

Tonicity

This is the *effective osmolality* of a solution with respect to a particular semipermeable membrane and takes into account solutes that do not exert an in vivo osmotic effect. For example, Na^+ and Cl^- do not cross cell membranes freely and therefore exert an effective osmotic force across these membranes, whereas urea freely diffuses across cell

TABLE 47.3 Composition of Transcellular Fluids (mEq/L Unless Stated)

	Daily Volume (L)	Cations				Anions		pH
Fluid		Na^+	K^+	Ca^{2+}	Mg^{2+}	Cl^-	HCO_3^-	
Gastrointestinal tract								
Saliva	1-1.5	30-90	20-40	2.5	0.6	15-35	10-40	6-7
Gastric	1.5-2.5	20-60	10-20			20-160	0	1-3.5
Bile	0.7-1.2	130-150	5-12	10-50		25-100	10-45	7-8
Pancreatic	1-1.5	125-150	5-10			30-110	40-115	8-8.3
Small bowel (concentrations from proximal to distal)	1.8	140-125	5-9			110-60	100-75	7-8
Large bowel	0.2 (lost in feces)	20-40	30-90			0-15	40	7-8
Sweat	0.1-0.5	45-60	5-10			45-60	0	5.2
Cerebrospinal fluid		140	2.8	2.1	1.7	120		7.33

Data from Grădinaru I, Ghiciuc C-M, Popescu E, et al. Blood plasma and saliva levels of magnesium and other bivalent cations in patients with parotid gland tumors. *Magnes Res*. 2007;20(4):254–258; Sewón LA, Karjalainen SM, Söderling E, et al. Associations between salivary calcium and oral health. *J Clin Periodontol*. 1998;25(11 Pt 1):915–919; and Lentner C. *Geigy Scientific Tables. Vol. 1. Units of Measurement, Body Fluids, Composition of the Body, Nutrition*. 8th ed. Basle: Ciba-Geigy Ltd; 1981.

membranes and therefore does not exert an osmotic effect here. Similarly, glucose is normally taken into cells by insulin-stimulated facilitated diffusion, so it is an ineffective osmole. Tonicity is important in determining in vivo distribution of fluids across a cell membrane and is sensed by the hypothalamic osmoreceptors. It can be estimated by subtracting urea and glucose concentrations from measured osmolality.

Oncotic Pressure

Oncotic pressure is the component of total osmotic pressure that is due to the colloids, that is, large molecular-weight particles, predominantly proteins (albumin, globulins, fibrinogen). Of the total plasma osmotic pressure of 5545 mm Hg, 25 to 28 mm Hg is due to plasma oncotic pressure. The negative charge on proteins has the net effect of retaining a small excess of Na^+ ions within the plasma (the Gibbs-Donnan effect), which effectively increases the oncotic pressure above what would be predicted by calculations based purely on protein concentration. As the most abundant plasma protein, albumin is responsible for 65% to 75% of plasma oncotic pressure.

FLUID COMPARTMENT BARRIERS AND DISTRIBUTION

The volume and composition of each fluid compartment depends on the barriers separating it from neighboring compartments.

Cell Membrane

The cell membrane separates the intracellular and extracellular compartments and as a lipid bilayer is impermeable to large hydrophilic molecules and charged particles such as free ions. Other than by passive diffusion of certain molecules, solutes may cross cell membranes in several ways.

Carrier Proteins

Primary active transport. Solute transport against a concentration gradient requires energy and is therefore directly coupled to adenosine triphosphate (ATP) hydrolysis—for example, by Na^+/K^+–adenosine triphosphatases (ATPases). This is the fundamental mechanism by which ionic concentration gradients are maintained, which in turn drive a variety of biologic processes, including water and solute movement and electrical impulse transmission in excitable tissues.

Secondary active transport. The process of secondary active transport uses concentration gradients set up by ATPases to transport a solute driven by an ion moving down its concentration gradient, typically Na^+. This process is termed cotransport when the solute is also moving down its concentration gradient or countertransport when the solute is being moved against its concentration gradient.

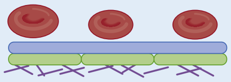
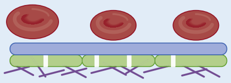
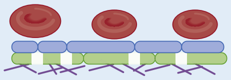
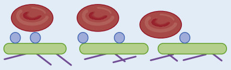
Solute Channels. The solute channels allow much faster transport of solutes than by ATPases or transmembrane diffusion. Examples include voltage-gated Na^+ channels and the glucose transporter GLUT1, which when inserted into the plasma membrane allows glucose to travel down its concentration gradient. This process is termed *facilitated diffusion.*

Endocytosis and Exocytosis. The processes of endocytosis and exocytosis are involved in the transport of large proteins and polypeptides across cell membranes.

Vascular Endothelium

The barrier function of the vascular endothelium is particularly relevant perioperatively because of its key role in maintaining intravascular fluid volume. Surgical tissue trauma typically leads to loss of intravascular volume through surgical blood loss or inflammation-related shifts to other tissue compartments. The physiologic effect of IV fluid administered to overcome these losses and maintain adequate tissue oxygen delivery is highly dependent on

TABLE 47.4 Capillary Characteristics

Capillary Type	Site	Large Pores	Basement Membrane	Glycocalyx Layer	Notes on Function
Nonfenestrated (continuous) 	Muscle, connective tissue, lung, nervous tissue	None	Continuous	Continuous	Intercellular clefts are the main route for fluid filtration. These are partly occluded by junctional strands with multiple breaks. In the blood-brain barrier, these breaks are small (1 nm) and infrequent (zona occludens tight junctions), permitting passage of only the smallest non-lipid soluble molecules. In other tissues, the breaks are larger (5-8 nm) and more frequent (macula occludens loose junctions).
Fenestrated 	Endocrine, gut mucosa, choroid plexus, lymph nodes	Pores within endothelial cells with covering diaphragm 6-12 nm size	Continuous	Continuous	Fenestrations allow capillary reabsorption of fluid from ISF, in contrast to other capillary types.
	Glomeruli	Endothelial pore size up to 65 nm	Continuous	Discontinuous over pores, reducing *effective* pore size	Numerous pores allow large-volume filtration at the glomerulus. The effective pore size is reduced further to 6 nm by podocytes; thus, proteins not usually filtered.
Sinusoidal 	Liver, spleen, bone marrowd	Large intercellular gaps up to 120 nm	Discontinuous	No effective layer because of endothelial uptake of hyaluronic acid	Large fenestrations allow macromolecules (lipoproteins, chylomicrons) to pass between plasma and ISF; the result is no COP to oppose filtration, and the ISF in these tissues is effectively part of the plasma volume. Large volume filtration to the ISF here cannot be accommodated by tissue expansion because of fibrous capsules and is returned via lymphatics (e.g., liver lymph production accounts for 50% of total body lymph production)

COP, Colloid oncotic pressure; *ISF,* interstitial fluid.
Key:
╱ ✕ Basement membrane/extracellular matrix
🟩 Endothelial cell
🟦 Endothelial glycocalyx layer
🔴 Erythrocyte

Modified from Woodcock TE, Woodcock TM. Revised Starling equation and the glycocalyx model of transvascular fluid exchange: an improved paradigm for prescribing intravenous fluid therapy. *Br J Anaesth.* 2012;108:384.

fluid handling at the capillary level. Our understanding of this area has been refined by experimental physiologic models and techniques.

Capillary Structure. As shown in Table 47.4, the structure of capillaries varies depending on the underlying organ function. The most common capillary type is the nonfenestrated capillary, comprising continuous basement membrane and a single layer of endothelial cells joined by junctions that are punctuated by breaks. These intercellular clefts are the primary channel for transcapillary fluid flow. The intravascular aspect of the endothelial cells is covered by a continuous network of glycosaminoglycan (GAG) chains, including syndecan-1, hyaluronic acid, and glypican, associated with membrane-bound proteoglycans; and glycoproteins, together forming the endothelial glycocalyx layer (EGL). The EGL covers fenestrations and intercellular clefts and has a thickness of up to 1 μm. In addition to its functions in preventing platelet and leukocyte adhesion, it has emerged as an important semipermeable layer contributing to endothelial barrier function.[2] Water and electrolytes can move freely across the vascular endothelial barrier through the EGL and then intercellular clefts or through fenestrations in the more specialized capillaries. Proteins were previously thought to be excluded from the ISF at the level of endothelial cells; however, it now appears that this occurs at the level of the glycocalyx. The subglycocalyceal layer (SGL) therefore contains protein-poor fluid; slower protein transport into the ISF may occur across the endothelial cells by endocytosis and exocytosis and by transport through a small number of large pores, forming a gradient in protein concentration from SGL to ISF compartments. The volume of the SGL may be as much as 700 to 1000 mL; this volume therefore forms part of the intravascular volume and has an electrolyte composition in equilibrium with the plasma but a much lower protein concentration because of the effective exclusion of larger molecules by the glycocalyx.

Capillary Function. The movement of fluid across the capillary membrane was initially described by Starling and then further refined. A hydrostatic pressure gradient at the arteriolar end of the capillary, greater than the inward oncotic pressure gradient, leads to net filtration of water into the ISF. Much of this water was previously thought to be reabsorbed into the vascular space toward the venular end of the capillary, where the outward hydrostatic pressure is lower and the inward oncotic pressure gradient is increased by exclusion of proteins from the capillary filtrate by the capillary endothelium. The water not reabsorbed by the capillary is removed from the ISF by the lymphatics.

More recent experimental and modeling techniques have integrated the role of the glycocalyx into a revised Starling equation and updated model of capillary fluid movement:[4]

$$J_v = K_f([P_c - P_i] - \sigma[\pi_c - \pi_{sg}])$$

where J_v is the transcapillary flow, K_f is the filtration coefficient, P_c is capillary hydrostatic pressure, P_i is the interstitial hydrostatic pressure, σ is the reflection coefficient (the degree to which the tendency of a macromolecule to cross the endothelial barrier is resisted), π_c is the capillary oncotic pressure, and π_{sg} is the subglycocalyx oncotic pressure.

The key differences and their clinical relevance are as follows[3]:

- At steady state, continuous capillaries *do not* exhibit fluid reabsorption toward the venous end of the capillary (the "no-absorption" rule). However, overall measured capillary filtration (J_v) is much less than predicted by the Starling principle, consistent with the larger colloid oncotic pressure (COP) gradient between SGL and capillary (opposing filtration) than between ISF and capillary. The smaller volume of filtrate is returned to the circulation by lymphatics.
- Plasma-SGL COP difference, not plasma-*ISF* COP difference, affects J_v. However, the no-absorption rule means that artificially raising COP (e.g., by albumin infusion) may reduce J_v but will not lead to reabsorption of fluid from the ISF into the plasma.
- An exception to the no-absorption rule occurs in acutely subnormal capillary pressures; a transient period of autotransfusion may occur, limited to approximately 500 mL. If subnormal pressures persist beyond this, J_v will approach zero, but ongoing reabsorption does not occur. Infusion of colloid in this setting will expand plasma volume, whereas infusion of crystalloid will expand total *intravascular* volume (plasma and EGL); J_v will remain close to zero in both cases until capillary pressure rises to normal or supranormal levels.
- At supranormal capillary pressures, COP difference is maintained and J_v is proportional to the hydrostatic pressure difference. In this setting, colloid infusion will maintain plasma COP but raise capillary pressure further and increase J_v. Crystalloid infusion will also increase capillary pressure but reduce plasma COP and therefore increase J_v to a greater extent than colloids.

The revised EGL model of fluid distribution, including the proposal that the intravascular volume effects of crystalloids and colloids are partly dependent on the preexisting capillary pressures (context sensitivity), helps explain some of the apparently conflicting findings in clinical fluid research.

CRYSTALLOID VERSUS COLLOID INTRAVASCULAR VOLUME EFFECTS. Infused crystalloid has been thought to distribute evenly throughout the extracellular compartments as a result of capillary filtration (J_v), leaving approximately one fourth or one fifth of the original volume within the circulating blood volume, whereas colloids were presumed to initially remain largely within the intravascular volume. However, many studies of the effects of fluids on blood volume are based on red blood cell (RBC) dilution and changes in the hematocrit and do not account for the influence of the SGL volume, from which RBCs are excluded. Colloids are also excluded from the SGL; by remaining in the plasma volume, they will have a diluting effect on the hematocrit and appear to remain within the circulating volume. Crystalloids initially distribute throughout the plasma and SGL volumes. As a result, their RBC dilutional effects are less than those of colloids. This has previously been interpreted as crystalloid leaving the circulating compartment and entering the ISF; however, a proportion of the infused crystalloid will remain in the blood volume within the SGL. Furthermore, context sensitivity is responsible for the observation that clearance of crystalloid from its central compartment (the intravascular volume) is slower under anesthesia than in awake subjects.[4] It may also explain why the amount of crystalloid required to get intravascular volume effects similar to colloid is in the ratio 1.5:1 rather than the predicted 4:1.[5–7] The value of this ratio in the perioperative context is less clear and has been inferred from large clinical trials in critically ill patients. However, it is likely to be closer to the measured values in critical illness than the theoretic values traditionally used.

FAILURE TO REDUCE EDEMA BY INCREASING CAPILLARY COLLOID ONCOTIC PRESSURE. Hypoalbuminemia is well recognized as a marker of disease severity in critical illness. However, administering exogenous albumin or other colloids to increase capillary COP does not reduce peripheral or pulmonary edema, nor improve overall outcomes in sepsis. The no-absorption rule can provide a partial explanation, because even increasing COP gradient across the capillary wall by administration of albumin will not lead to reabsorption of fluid from edematous tissues. Again, previous studies showing apparent shifts of fluid from the interstitial to the intravascular compartment based on a reduced hematocrit after albumin infusion do not account for the potential role of compaction of the glycocalyx layer and transfer of fluid from the SGL to the plasma volume.

Finally, the importance of the endothelial glycocalyx is highlighted by studies showing that its degradation significantly impairs endothelial barrier function.[8] A range of physiologic insults may lead to glycocalyx injury and shedding, with the subsequent appearance of free heparin, chondroitin, and hyaluronic acid in the plasma. These include natriuretic peptides (which may be released in acute excessive increased intravascular volume),[9] hyperglycemia, and inflammatory mediators released during surgery, trauma, and sepsis, such as C-reactive protein, bradykinin, and tumor necrosis factor (TNF).[10] Glycocalyx degradation may make an important contribution to the already well-characterized endothelial dysfunction seen in inflammation, in which phenotypic changes occur in endothelial cells. Here, an increase in the number of large pores, and a reduction in interstitial hydrostatic pressure favor J_v, with an increase in edema in compliant tissues such as the lung, muscles, and loose connective tissue. Impaired glycocalyx function will further favor J_v and lead to endothelial platelet aggregation and leukocyte adhesion. Maintenance of glycocalyx integrity is therefore gaining interest as a therapeutic target in perioperative fluid management.[11]

PHYSIOLOGIC CONTROL OF OVERALL FLUID BALANCE

In health, 60% of daily water loss is through urinary excretion, although this proportion is less when sweating and insensible losses are increased. Integrated cardiovascular and renal neuroendocrine mechanisms attempt to maintain fluid volume homeostasis in response to perioperative challenges, such as reduced oral fluid intake, blood loss, and IV fluid administration.

TBW volume is controlled by a system of sensors, central control, and effectors. The sensors are (1) hypothalamic osmoreceptors that respond to changes in ECF tonicity, (2) low-pressure baroreceptors in the large veins and right atrium that sense central venous pressure (CVP), and (3) high-pressure baroreceptors in the carotid sinus and aortic arch that sense mean arterial pressure. The sensory inputs are integrated within the hypothalamus, which then triggers either increased water intake from thirst or increased water output via antidiuretic hormone (ADH, arginine vasopressin) secretion. Thirst and ADH release may be triggered by increased plasma tonicity, hypovolemia, hypotension, and angiotensin II. ADH release also may be stimulated by stress (including surgery and trauma) and certain drugs (e.g., barbiturates). Water intake does not usually depend on thirst because of social drinking behavior; thirst acts as a backup mechanism when the normal intake is inadequate. ADH, produced in the hypothalamus and released from the posterior pituitary, acts on the principal cells of the renal collecting ducts, which in the absence of ADH are relatively impermeable to water. ADH combines with the vasopressin 2 (V2) receptors on the basolateral membrane of the cells, triggering cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP)-mediated insertion of aquaporin 2 water channels into the apical membrane. This results in water reabsorption down its osmotic gradient and formation of concentrated urine.

Acute Disturbances in Circulating Volume

Acute variation in the intravascular volume leads to compensatory mechanisms over minutes to hours in an attempt to correct the acute abnormality. The homeostatic processes occurring in response to rapid blood loss are aimed at minimizing the change in effective blood volume (venoconstriction and mobilization of venous reservoirs, limited autotransfusion from ISF to plasma, reduced urine production) and maintenance of cardiac output and arterial pressure (tachycardia, increased inotropy, and vasoconstriction). The sensor organs for the acute change are the low-pressure and high-pressure baroreceptors, and initial changes are mediated through increased sympathetic outflow. Renal vasoconstriction leads to a reduced volume of filtrate and activates the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone (RAA) axis. Renin is released from the juxtaglomerular cells and cleaves angiotensinogen to form angiotensin I, which is rapidly converted to angiotensin II. This induces further sympathetic activity, vasoconstriction, aldosterone release from the adrenal cortex, and hypothalamic ADH production. The overall result is increased renal salt and water retention, increased peripheral vascular resistance, and increased cardiac output. In the absence of ongoing loss, the delayed responses to major blood loss restore plasma volume within 12 to 72 hours, increase hepatic plasma protein synthesis, and restore RBC levels by erythropoiesis within 4 to 8 weeks.

Conversely, the rapid infusion of fluid to a normovolemic healthy adult leads to an initial rise in venous and arterial pressure and cardiac output. Several mechanisms act rapidly to bring these cardiovascular parameters toward normal, including pressure receptor-mediated venodilation and venous blood pooling and reduction in systemic vascular resistance. At a tissue level, autoregulatory responses lead to arteriolar vasoconstriction to maintain constant blood flow in the face of increased perfusion pressure. Multiple mechanisms then act to return circulating volume toward normal. A proportion of the infused fluid will be lost as a result of capillary filtration, particularly if the infused fluid reduces COP. Low-pressure baroreceptor stimulation leads to a decrease in pituitary ADH secretion, allowing diuresis, and atrial stretch leads to atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) release, favoring natriuresis. Further ADH-independent renal mechanisms include glomerulotubular imbalance resulting from the marginal reduction in plasma COP; this rapidly increases the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) and reduces proximal tubule water and Na^+ reabsorption, increasing urine volume. Finally, increased arterial blood pressure promotes the excretion of excess water and salt (i.e., pressure natriuresis and pressure diuresis). This is the pressure-volume control mechanism, one of the key mechanisms for the long-term maintenance of normal blood volume. However, arterial blood pressure is only slowly restored by cardiovascular reflexes after acute hypervolemia. It may take several days for a 20 mL/kg dose of isotonic salt solution to be fully excreted. Excretion of excess Na^+ and water depends more on these passive processes and suppression of the RAA axis than on natriuretic peptide activity.[12] The contrast between this inefficiency and the rapid, effective mechanisms for dealing with reduced fluid volume and Na^+ content reflects the evolution of physiology in an environment with a paucity of salt and variable water availability; excess Na^+ intake is a feature of modern diets.

Long-Term Control of Circulating Intravascular Volume

The Guyton-Coleman model is the archetypal representation of the circulation. Despite calls to refine the mathematic modeling of the long-term control of arterial blood pressure, it remains the most widely used model to explain the chronic control of blood volume and arterial pressure.[13–15] In health, short-term variations in blood volume are very small and the cardiovascular system behaves as a closed system with arterial pressure a product of peripheral resistance, vascular compliance, and the Starling curve.[16] In the chronic setting or in acute alterations in blood volume, as described earlier, the circulating volume will vary and equality of input and output must be restored to avoid chronic fluid retention or dehydration; thus, the circulation acts as an open system. The kidneys are the primary organ regulating this equilibrium, largely through pressure natriuresis and diuresis. Indeed, in the chronic setting, arterial pressure subserves the renal requirement to excrete ingested Na^+ and water rather than simply being a product of cardiac output, vascular compliance, and resistance. A recent interpretation integrates the Guyton-Coleman model with experimental observations (Fig. 47.2).[16] In health, the pressure-natriuresis curve is relatively flat, and excess intake of salt and water can be excreted without long-term rises in circulating volume or blood pressure. In many models of chronic hypertension, the renal excretion mechanism is reset such that natriuresis occurs only at higher arterial pressures and excessive exogenous water and salt results in higher blood pressure.

ELECTROLYTE PHYSIOLOGY

Sodium Physiology

Na^+ is the dominant extracellular cation, and along with its associated anions accounts for nearly all the osmotically active solute in plasma and interstitial fluid. The relatively free movement of water throughout the fluid compartments means that Na^+ is therefore the prime determinant of ECF volume. Total body Na^+ content is approximately 4000 mmol, of which only 10% is intracellular. The concentration gradient between the intracellular and extracellular compartments (ratio 1:15) is maintained by ATPases and is vital for the function of excitable tissues, including action potentials and membrane potential, and for the handling of renal solute.

Na^+ intake is typically far in excess of minimum daily requirements, which are 2 to 3 mEq/kg/day at birth and decrease to 1 to 1.5 mEq/kg/day in adulthood.[17,18] Na^+ is actively absorbed from the small intestine and colon under the influence of aldosterone and the presence of glucose in the gut lumen. Loss is predominantly by the renal route, with minor contributions from feces, sweat, and skin (10 mEq/day each). Na^+ is freely filtered at the glomerulus, of which 99.5% is reabsorbed, mainly at the proximal convoluted tubule. Serum Na^+ concentrations are maintained within a tight range (138-142 mEq/L) despite wide variation in water intake by the systems involved in the control of circulating volume outlined previously:

- hypothalamic osmoreceptor: ADH release
- atrial volume sensing: ANP release
- juxtaglomerular apparatus (renal arteriolar baroreceptor and filtrate NaCl content sensing): RAA activation

The excretion of total body excess Na^+ relies on inefficient passive mechanisms, particularly the pressure-volume effect. Long-term ingestion of excess salt combined with low potassium ingestion contributes to hypertension, a condition not seen in populations with daily salt intake less than 50 mmol. The mechanism involves renal salt retention and initial extracellular volume expansion (later mitigated by pressure natriuresis), with release of an endogenous digitalis-like factor and stimulation of renal Na^+ pumps, furthering renal Na^+ retention. Low K^+ combined with the chronic action of digitalis-like factor inhibits vascular smooth muscle cell Na^+/K^+ ATPases, resulting in excess intracellular Na^+ content and reduced intracellular K^+, smooth muscle contraction, and increased peripheral vascular resistance.[19]

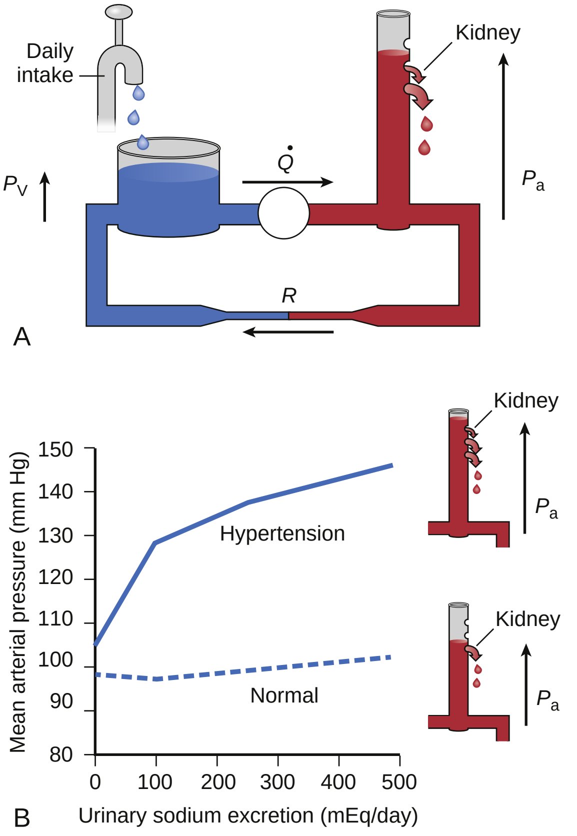


Fig. 47.2 Long-term control of blood volume in health and hypertension. (A) Representation of the open circulation model. In the chronic setting, arterial pressure *(P_a)* depends on daily water and sodium intake *(dripping tap)* and the renal pressure-natriuresis relationship *(represented by the height of the holes in the arterial column)* rather than cardiac output $(\dot{Q})$ and peripheral resistance *(R)*. (B) Experimental models of hypertension (e.g., long-term angiotensin II infusion) with controlled sodium intake (and therefore excretion) demonstrate a reset pressure-natriuresis curve in hypertension. This may be represented by kidney *holes* positioned further up the arterial column. Natriuresis occurs to a degree similar to that in normotension, so as to maintain a stable body water volume, but requires a higher arterial pressure to do so. P_V, Venous pressure. (A, Redrawn from Dorrington KL, Pandit JJ. The obligatory role of the kidney in long-term arterial blood pressure control: extending Guyton's model of the circulation. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:1218. B, Data from Hall JE. The kidney, hypertension, and obesity. *Hypertension*. 2003;41:625.)

Potassium Physiology

K^+ is the dominant intracellular cation in the body, with a total body content of approximately 4000 mmol, 98% of which is intracellular, particularly in muscle, liver, and RBCs. The ratio of ICF to ECF K^+ balance is vital in the maintenance of cellular resting membrane potential, and K^+ therefore has a key role in the behavior of all excitable tissues. Daily requirements reflect age and growth, with more K^+ required at higher metabolic rates. Term infants require 2 to 3 mEq/kg/day and adults 1 to 1.5 mEq/kg/day. Nearly all ingested K^+ is absorbed by the intestine, and minimal amounts are excreted in feces. The acute and chronic handling of K^+ must therefore maintain a stable plasma K^+ concentration and resting membrane potential in the face of a daily K^+ intake of a similar magnitude to the entire ECF K^+ content. Transmembrane potentials particularly depend on K^+ permeability, with K^+ egress occurring through ion channels down its concentration gradient. This leaves behind intracellular anions, with a resultant negative transmembrane potential. The resting value of this potential is achieved when the tendency of K^+ to move extracellularly as a result of its concentration gradient is matched by the tendency of K^+ to move intracellularly because of the electrical gradient.

Acute K^+ distribution involves shifts in K^+ between the ECF and ICF, performed by ion transport systems under the influence of insulin, catecholamines, and ECF pH. The cell membrane Na^+/K^+ ATPase exports three Na^+ for every two K^+ imported and is the means by which the gradients of these ions are maintained. Insulin, released after ingestion of K^+-containing food, stimulates the Na^+/H^+ antiporter, increasing intracellular Na^+, which is then removed by Na^+/K^+ ATPase with the net cellular uptake of K^+. Conversely, in the presence of hypokalemia, skeletal muscle expression of Na^+/K^+ ATPase is reduced, allowing a "leak" of K^+ from the ICF to ECF.[20] Catecholamines activate β_2-adrenoceptors, which ultimately stimulate Na^+/K^+ ATPase activity, leading to increases in ICF K^+, a mechanism that counteracts the release of K^+ from muscle cells during exercise.[21] ECF pH also has a bearing on K^+ handling. The presence of mineral organic acids (where the acid anion is unable to diffuse into the cell) leads to increased cellular H^+ uptake in exchange for K^+ ions with consequent increases in ECF K^+. Organic acids (e.g., lactic acid and ketone bodies) are more able to diffuse across cellular membranes and H^+/K^+ exchange is much less. Hyperkalemia may be observed in the setting of organic acidemia resulting from alternative mechanisms, such as insulin deficiency and osmotic drag in diabetic ketoacidosis or a failure of ATP production for Na^+/K^+ ATPase in situations typified by anaerobic metabolism and lactic acidosis. Other factors that may influence ECF to ICF K^+ balance include aldosterone (which at high levels may induce intracellular K^+ shift, beyond its renal effects), hyperosmolar states (solvent drag of K^+ along with water efflux), and digoxin (inactivates Na^+/K^+ ATPase and may cause hyperkalemia).

Chronic K^+ distribution involves renal mechanisms. K^+ is freely filtered at the glomerulus, and undergoes extensive unregulated reabsorption along the proximal tubule, with only 10% to 15% reaching the distal nephron, where its reabsorption or secretion is tightly controlled. This occurs predominantly in two cell types found in the collecting ducts.

Principal Cells. The principal cells are able to secrete K^+ under the electrochemical gradients set up by basal Na^+/K^+ ATPases, which maintain low intracellular Na^+ concentrations (aiding Na^+ reabsorption from the tubule via Na^+ channels) and high intracellular K^+ concentrations (favoring K^+ secretion into the tubule via K^+ channels). Principal cell behavior is influenced by the following:

- Aldosterone, synthesized and released by the adrenal glands in response to raised K^+ concentrations. This mineralocorticoid increases the synthesis and activity of both basal Na^+/K^+ ATPases and luminal K^+ channels to drive urinary K^+ secretion.
- Tubular Na^+ delivery. Increased distal tubular Na^+ content leads to a steeper Na^+ concentration gradient and increased principal cell reabsorption of Na^+. To maintain electroneutrality of the tubular fluid, K^+ efflux into the tubule increases; this is partly responsible for the hypokalemia associated with diuretics that increase delivery of Na^+ to the cortical collecting ducts (thiazides and loop diuretics). In contrast, amiloride blocks the principal cell luminal Na^+ channel and therefore does not affect K^+ efflux here.

Intercalated Cells. In addition to basal Na^+/K^+ ATPases, these cells have luminal H^+/K^+ ATPases that excrete one hydrogen into the tubule for every K^+ reabsorbed. Low K^+ settings lead to up-regulation of this luminal antiporter, reabsorbing more K^+ at the expense of renal acid loss.

In addition to mechanisms involving aldosterone in a feedback loop, it is likely that feed-forward mechanisms also exist to rapidly modulate renal K^+ handling when K^+ is sensed in the GI system, even before plasma K^+ levels rise.[20]

Calcium Physiology

Beyond its role in bone structure, where 98% of body calcium (Ca^{2+}) is stored, Ca^{2+} is one of the body's most important intracellular second messengers, playing a key role in muscular contraction, neuromuscular transmission, cell division and movement, and oxidative pathways. Intracellular Ca^{2+} entry may have direct effects in cardiac and skeletal muscle contraction—for example, leading to neurotransmitter release or inducing further large-scale release of Ca^{2+} from intracellular stores (Ca^{2+}-induced Ca^{2+} release). A large ECF-to-ICF gradient of ionized Ca^{2+} is maintained by ATPases, and cytoplasmic free Ca^{2+} levels are kept low by pumping into the sarcoplasmic reticulum. Increases in cytoplasmic Ca^{2+} concentration occurring as a result of cellular energetic failure and impaired Ca^{2+} transport are a key mediator of cell death pathways.[22] Ca^{2+}also plays a key role in coagulation by linking coagulation factors to the negatively charged plasma membrane of activated platelets.

Homeostatic mechanisms maintain serum Ca^{2+} concentrations between 4.5 and 5 mEq/L (8.5-10.5 mg/dL), largely under the influence of vitamin D and parathyroid hormone (PTH). Ionized Ca^{2+} is sensed by the extracellular domain of a G-coupled receptor expressed on parathyroid cells (the Ca^{2+}/Mg^{2+}-sensing receptor), inhibiting PTH release.[23] When ionized Ca^{2+} levels decrease, PTH is rapidly released with the following actions:

- Stimulates osteoclast bone resorption, releasing Ca^{2+} into the ECF
- Stimulates distal tubule calcium reabsorption
- Stimulates the renal conversion of 25-(OH)-vitamin D to 1,25-$(OH)_2$-vitamin D (calcitriol, the most active vitamin D metabolite)

The manufacture of active vitamin D involves cholecalciferol formation in the skin during exposure to ultraviolet

TABLE 47.5 Physiologic Roles of Magnesium

System	Effect	Mechanism and Clinical Relevance
Neurologic	Reduction in pain transmission	NMDA antagonism. Mg^{2+} treatment provides effective perioperative analgesia.[254]
	Reduces neuromuscular transmission	Inhibition of neuronal Ca^{2+} influx reduces neuromuscular junction ACh release (and motor end-plate sensitivity to ACh). Hypermagnesemia potentiates the effects of neuromuscular blockade.
	Sympatholysis	Inhibition of neuronal Ca^{2+} influx reduces catecholamine release from adrenal medulla and adrenergic nerve endings. Pharmacologic use of Mg^{2+} in obtunding pressor response to intubation or during surgery for pheochromocytoma.
	Anticonvulsant	Mechanism may relate to NMDA antagonism or cerebral arteriolar vasodilation, possible mechanisms for its efficacy in eclampsia, in which vasospasm has been observed.[29]
	Cortical depression at high levels	
Cardiovascular	Vasodilation	Predominantly arteriolar, because of inhibition of Ca^{2+} influx-mediated vascular smooth muscle contraction. Mg^{2+} administration typically leads to a minor reflex increase in inotropy despite the direct action of Mg^{2+} on reducing cardiac contractility.[255]
	Antiarrhythmic effects	Mixed class IV (Ca^{2+} channel inhibition) and weak class I (Na^+ channel inhibition) effects. Increases atrioventricular nodal conduction time and refractory periods, suppresses accessory pathway transmission, and inhibits early and delayed afterdepolarizations. Clinical use is in supraventricular tachycardias, atrial fibrillation rate control and postoperative prophylaxis, and tachyarrhythmias associated with dyskalemia, digoxin, bupivacaine, or amitriptyline.[29]
	Improved myocardial O_2 supply-to-demand ratio	Coronary vasodilation in combination with reductions in heart rate and contractility; however, no clear evidence of benefit in the setting of acute myocardial infarction.
Respiratory	Bronchodilation	Smooth muscle relaxation. Pharmacologic use of Mg^{2+} is in acute bronchospasm.
Renal	Renal vasodilation and diuresis	Ca^{2+} antagonism-related smooth muscle relaxation
Immune	Antiinflammatory	Pharmacologic doses of magnesium sulfate reduce monocyte inflammatory cytokine production.[256]
	Adaptive immunity	Mg^{2+} is required as a second messenger during T-lymphocyte activation.[257]
Obstetric	Tocolysis	May be due to smooth muscle relaxation

ACh, Acetylcholine; *NMDA, N*-methyl-D-aspartate.

light, which then undergoes hepatic hydroxylation to 25-hydroxy-calciferol, then renal hydroxylation under the influence of PTH to 1,25-dihydroxycalciferol (calcitriol). As with PTH, this stimulates osteoclastic bone resorption and additionally stimulates absorption of Ca^{2+} from the GI tract.

Ca^{2+} homeostasis is interlinked with that of other anions. In particular, magnesium is also able to modulate PTH levels, and hypocalcemia and hypomagnesemia frequently coexist. The homeostasis of phosphate (PO_4^{3-}) is effectively the converse of Ca^{2+} (e.g., renal hydroxylation of vitamin D is inhibited by hyperphosphatemia), and in health the (calcium × phosphate) product is kept relatively stable. An increase in the (calcium × phosphate) product may be seen in advanced chronic kidney disease and is associated with ectopic bone deposition.

Approximately 50% of circulating Ca^{2+} is in the biologically active ionized form (the remaining 40% are bound to proteins, predominantly albumin and globulins, and 10% are complexed to anions such as HCO_3^-, citrate, sulfate, PO_4^{3-}, and lactate). Hypoalbuminemia decreases the total serum Ca^{2+} but has less effect on the biologically important ionized form. To calculate the corrected total Ca^{2+} concentration, 0.8 mg/dL is added per 1 g/dL decrease in albumin concentration below 4 g/dL. The degree of albumin-protein binding is affected by pH, with acidemia reducing protein binding and increasing the ionized fraction. Ionized Ca^{2+} rises by approximately 0.1 mEq/L per 0.1 decrease in pH.[26] Given the approximate nature of corrected total Ca^{2+}, biologically active ionized Ca^{2+} should be measured when possible. Specimens should ideally be taken without tourniquet (uncuffed), because local acidosis increases the ionized fraction.

Magnesium Physiology

Mg^{2+} has a diverse range of cellular actions, including modulation of ion channel activity and as an essential component of ATP production and hydrolysis. It is primarily an intracellular anion, although most is sequestered within organelles, bound to phospholipids, proteins, and nucleic acids. Free ionized Mg^{2+} levels within the cytoplasm and ECF are therefore low (0.8-1.2 mM), and chemical concentration gradients are much less than for other anions. Of total body Mg^{2+}, 50% is within bone, 20% within muscle, and the rest in liver, heart, and other tissues. Only 1% is within the ECF, and normal plasma levels may be maintained in the face of total body Mg^{2+} depletion. Within the plasma, total Mg^{2+} concentration is 1.5 to 2.1 mEq/L, of which approximately 25% is protein (mostly albumin) bound, 65% is in the biologically active ionized form, and the remainder is complexed to phosphates, citrates, and other anions.[27] Measurement of ionized Mg^{2+} can be performed, although correction is required for interference from Ca^{2+} ions.[28] The key roles of Mg^{2+} (Table 47.5) highlight its diverse range of clinical applications when administered exogenously and stem from the following three main cellular actions:

1. Energy metabolism: Mg^{2+} is required for ATP phosphorylation reactions, interacting with the outer two PO_4^{3-}

groups of ATP. Intracellular Mg^{2+} deficiency therefore impairs any enzyme systems using high-energy PO_4^{3-} bonds, such as glucose metabolism.[27]

2. Nucleotide and protein production: Mg^{2+} acts as a cofactor in every step of DNA transcription and replication and messenger RNA (mRNA) translation.
3. Ion transport: by supporting the activity of ion-pumping ATPases, Mg^{2+} helps maintain normal transmembrane electrochemical gradients, effectively stabilizing cell membranes and organelles. In addition, effects on ion *channels* underlie one of the core functions of Mg^{2+}, namely physiologic competitive antagonism of Ca^{2+}. This is mediated through inhibition of L-type Ca^{2+} channels and extracellular local modification of membrane potential, preventing the intracytoplasmic influx of Ca^{2+} from both the ECF and intracellular sarcoplasmic reticulum stores. Mg^{2+} also effectively antagonizes *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors within the central nervous system, reducing Ca^{2+} entry by specific ion channels. These effects result in inhibition of a diverse array of excitable tissue cellular actions, including neurotransmitter release, muscular contraction, cardiac pacemaker and action potential activity, and pain signal transmission.

Mg^{2+} is absorbed from the GI tract by a saturable transport system and passive diffusion, in quantities inversely proportional to the amount ingested. Excretion is via the GI tract (~60% of the ingested amount) and kidneys. Seventy-five percent is freely filtered at the glomerulus, and proximal tubule reabsorption is minimal, with 60% to 70% being reabsorbed at the thick ascending loop of Henle and 10% reabsorbed under regulation in the distal tubule. The regulation of total body Mg^{2+} levels by GI uptake and control of renal excretion is not under the control of a well-defined hormonal feedback loop. Although many factors can influence Mg^{2+} reabsorption (particularly PTH but also calcitonin, glucagon, acid-base balance, Ca^{2+} and K^+ levels), the main determinant is the plasma Mg^{2+} concentration, sensed by Ca^{2+}/Mg^{2+}-sensor receptors present on the basal aspect of thick ascending loop cells. Other influences may alter the intracellular-extracellular balance of magnesium distribution. Catecholamines, acting by both α- and β-adrenoreceptors, and glucagon lead to extrusion of magnesium from intracellular stores. Although experimental models have shown that adrenergic stimulation may increase serum Mg^{2+} concentrations, decreases in serum Mg^{2+} concentrations actually occur after stressors such as surgery, trauma, burns, and sepsis.[27,29] This may be due to a later phase of catecholamine-driven cellular uptake after the initial Mg^{2+} efflux.[30]

Phosphate Physiology

PO_4^{3-} is the most abundant intracellular anion and helps form some of the most important biologic molecules, including ATP, DNA, and RNA, membrane phospholipids, 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG), and hydroxyapatite in bone. PO_4^{3-} is therefore required for energy metabolism, cellular signaling through phosphorylation reactions, cellular replication and protein synthesis, membrane integrity, and O_2 delivery. In addition, the PO_4^{3-} buffer system is one of the key intracellular buffers. Of total body phosphorus, 80% to 90% is stored in bone, with the remainder in the intracellular (soft tissues and erythrocytes) and extracellular fluid compartments.[31] Normal plasma inorganic phosphates are maintained at 3 to 5 mg/dL, and at normal pH, 80% exists in the divalent (HPO_4^{2-}) rather than monovalent ($H_2PO_4^-$) form. Plasma phosphates also include lipid phosphates and organic ester phosphates. Most intracellular PO_4^{3-} is organic.[18]

The typical daily intake of PO_4^{3-} (~1 g) outweighs metabolic requirements, yet 70% is absorbed, leading to postprandial increases in serum PO_4^{3-} levels that are rapidly dealt with by increased renal excretion. GI uptake occurs predominantly by paracellular diffusion and is unregulated unless PO_4^{3-} ingestion is reduced, when vitamin D and PTH-stimulated active transport intervene.[32,33] Plasma inorganic PO_4^{3-} is freely filtered at the glomerulus, 80% of which is reabsorbed in the proximal tubule and a smaller amount in the distal tubule. Proximal tubule reabsorption is via Na^+-dependent cotransporters, the expression and activity of which are under the influence of PTH and PO_4^{3-} intake.

The regulation of normal PO_4^{3-} levels is mediated primarily by the PTH and vitamin D systems. Low plasma PO_4^{3-} levels stimulate 1-hydroxylase activity, with the formation of active vitamin D (1,25-dihydroxycalciferol), which increases GI and renal PO_4^{3-} absorption. Conversely, PTH release (stimulated by reduced plasma Ca^{2+}) reduces renal PO_4^{3-} reabsorption. PO_4^{3-} plasma levels also may be reduced in the short term by cellular uptake in response to dopamine and adrenergic activity and alkalosis and intestinal factors (phosphatonins) released in response to increased intestinal luminal PO_4^{3-}.[31]

Chloride Physiology

As the second most abundant electrolyte in the extracellular compartment, chloride (Cl^-) has a key role in the maintenance of plasma osmolality, preservation of electrical neutrality, and acid-base status (explained by the Stewart model, see later discussion). Normal plasma values are 97 to 107 mEq/L; Cl^- is therefore responsible for nearly a third of plasma osmolality and two thirds of plasma negative charge.[34] Most Cl^- intake is derived from dietary NaCl, and the GI tract absorbs and secretes large amounts of Cl^-, primarily as gastric hydrochloric acid, but also throughout the intestinal lumen. This cellular Cl^- secretion leads to paracellular movement of Na^+ into the lumen, with water moving down its osmotic gradient to form GI secretions. Cl^- excretion is primarily renal, largely in the proximal tubule by passive reabsorption or cotransport. More regulated control of Cl^- excretion is performed in the intercalated cells of the distal nephron under the influence of plasma acid-base balance by exchange of HCO_3^- for Cl^-.

ACID-BASE DISTURBANCES AND FLUID THERAPY

Acid-base balance in general is discussed in Chapter 48; however, the two key areas in which intravascular fluid therapy may affect acid-base balance are iatrogenic acidosis caused by the administration of Cl^--rich fluids and administration of sodium bicarbonate to correct acidosis. In summary, the interpretation of acid-base balance can be viewed in three main ways: by the Henderson-Hasselbach equation, by anion gap, or by Stewart's strong ion model.

The Henderson-Hasselbach equation represents the HCO_3^- buffer system and has plasma HCO_3^- concentration as an independent determinant of plasma pH. The anion gap model is consistent with the Henderson-Hasselbach equation, because it places changes in plasma HCO_3^- at the core of plasma acid-base balance. It represents a simple method for differentiating causes of metabolic acidosis and is defined as the difference between the most abundant *measured* cation and anion concentrations in the plasma ($[Na^+] + [K^+]) - ([Cl^-] + [HCO_3^-]$). The normal anion gap is 4 to 11 mEq/L, and this difference is represented by "unmeasured" anions (PO_4^{3-}, sulfate, and anionic proteins). In the presence of excess organic acids (e.g., lactic acid or ketoacid), the accumulation of unmeasured anions is accompanied by a reduction in HCO_3^- to buffer the excess H^+ ions, leading to an increase in the anion gap. In cases in which Cl^- is administered, even if HCO_3^- falls, the anion gap will remain normal.[35]

Stewart's model of acid-base balance has a different approach and proposes that plasma pH is dependent on the following three independent variables:

1. pCO_2 (the plasma CO_2 tension)
2. A_{tot}, the total plasma concentration of all nonvolatile buffers (albumin, globulins, and PO_4^{3-})
3. Strong ion difference (SID), the difference between the total charge of plasma-strong cations (Na^+, K^+, Mg^{2+}, and Ca^{2+}) and strong anions (Cl^-, lactate, sulfate, and others). In a more simplified approach, apparent SID is defined as $([Na^+] + [K^+]) - ([Cl^-] + [\text{lactate}])$. Normal plasma SID is approximately 42 mEq/L, and reductions in SID will lead to a fall in plasma pH.

The Stewart model has caused some controversy by representing HCO_3^- as a dependent variable,[36] but it has utility in explaining acid-base disturbances caused by fluid administration.[37]

Hyperchloremic Acidosis

Administration of fluid with Cl^- concentration higher than that of plasma will in sufficient quantities (e.g., 30 mL/kg/h of 0.9% saline) cause a metabolic acidosis due to the Cl^- content.[38] This hyperchloremic acidosis may be explained by the Henderson-Hasselbach model of acidosis, where saline infusion causes dilution of bicarbonate and a resultant base deficit, or by the Stewart model. Here, the increasing plasma Cl^- concentration reduces apparent SID and therefore reduces plasma pH; the SID of completely ionized saline is zero, therefore its infusion progressively dilutes the normal plasma SID. Similar changes are not seen with solutions containing non-Cl^- anions which are metabolized after infusion, such as lactated Ringer solution. Although in vitro as an electroneutral solution it also has an SID of zero, following administration, the lactate undergoes metabolism in patients with intact hepatic function, giving it an effective in vivo SID of approximately 29 mEq/L. This is slightly less than the plasma SID and is enough to counteract any alkalosis caused by dilution of A_{tot}.

Saline-induced hyperchloremic acidosis has a variety of potentially deleterious physiological effects. These include renal vasoconstriction, reduced GFR and reduced renin activity in animal models,[39–41] and reduced renal cortical perfusion in healthy volunteers.[42] Coagulopathy and gastrointestinal dysfunction have also been suggested.[43] However, it is not clear that acidosis purely attributable to iatrogenic hyperchloremia leads to clinically important morbidity. A meta-analysis of studies comparing saline with balanced perioperative fluid regimes confirmed the presence of hyperchloremia and acidosis postoperatively in the saline groups, but typically these biochemical abnormalities were cleared by the first or second postoperative day.[38] There were no overall differences in markers of kidney injury or need for renal replacement therapy, nor in other morbidities such as clinically important coagulopathy or gastrointestinal symptoms. However, the available trials were relatively small, and higher-risk surgical groups (those with pre-existing impairment of acid-base status, emergency and major surgery) were under-represented. Interestingly, in one trial of patients undergoing renal transplant, saline administration was associated with significant hyperkalemia, presumably caused by cellular potassium extrusion due to extracellular acidosis.[44] It is therefore possible that the acidosis observed due to saline administration has a greater clinical effect on a selected high-risk group. Recent large trials in the emergency department and intensive care settings have shown an increase in a composite outcome of death or adverse renal event when patients are given saline rather than balanced crystalloid.[45,46] The effect seemed to be greatest in medical patients with sepsis. The difference in composite outcomes was small (15.4% in the saline group, 14.3% in the balanced group), but this should be taken in the context of the large number of hospitalized patients that receive intravenous fluids. Although these trials did not relate specifically to the perioperative setting, an increasingly cautious approach to saline administration seems appropriate.

Bicarbonate Administration

The administration of IV $NaHCO_3$ to treat metabolic acidosis should be reserved for the emergency treatment of select conditions, including severe hyperkalemia and arrhythmias associated with tricyclic antidepressant overdose. In many other situations, clinical benefit is not apparent, a finding that highlights an important pathophysiologic concept. Acidosis in itself may not be physiologically deleterious; indeed, it is a normal event during strenuous exercise, in which it may aid O_2 offloading to tissues. Perhaps acidosis serves as a marker for the severity of underlying disease processes, such as hypoxia, ischemia, or mitochondrial dysfunction, which cause morbidity without adequate correction.[43] HCO_3^- administration also has the following negative effects[18]:

1. Carbon dioxide production. Most of the HCO_3^- administered is converted to CO_2, with two important consequences. First, excess CO_2 requires excretion by hyperventilation. Converted HCO_3^- of 100 mEq represents an excess of 2.24 L of CO_2 to be exhaled, which may present a significant physiologic challenge to critically ill patients with preexisting ventilatory impairment. Although this is disputed, the excess CO_2 may also diffuse into the intracellular space, aggravating intracellular acidosis.[18]

2. IV HCO_3^- brings a significant Na^+ content and therefore osmotic load. This may lead to hyperosmolar hypernatremia, ECF expansion, and volume overload.
3. If renal HCO_3^- distribution is impaired, there may be an "overshoot" toward metabolic alkalosis once the underlying disease process causing the initial acidosis is resolved.

In situations in which HCO_3^- administration is required, the total dose required to correct the base deficit can be calculated using the equation:[5]

$$\text{Dose (mEq)} = 0.3 \times \text{weight(kg)} \times \text{base deficit(mEq/L)}$$

Although half this dose is usually given, because of the problems outlined above, treatment should stop once the pH rises above 7.2.

Fluid Pharmacology

Given the diverse range of physiologic effects of administered fluids, and the potentially large volumes which can be administered perioperatively, they should be considered as drugs with specific indications, cautions, and side effects. Many of the fluids available currently were developed several decades ago and entered clinical practice without rigorous analysis of their clinical benefits, or knowledge of their effects at an organ or cellular level. Newer colloid solutions have been approved by regulatory authorities and entered widespread clinical usage based on relatively small trials of efficacy. In some cases, safety concerns such as the impact of colloid-related renal dysfunction have only been highlighted by much later adequately powered trials.[47] The composition of available fluids is shown in Table 47.6, although not all fluids are available in all countries.

CRYSTALLOIDS

Crystalloids are solutions of electrolytes in water. They may be classified by their tonicity after infusion or their overall composition. Crystalloids containing electrolytes found in plasma and a buffer such as lactate or acetate may be referred to as balanced solutions. Crystalloids are indicated for replacement of free water and electrolytes but also may be used for volume expansion. Conventional concepts of fluid compartments dictate that infused electrolytes will distribute freely throughout the ECF, water will follow down osmotic gradients, and the net result is a distribution of infused crystalloids throughout the entire ECF, with only 20% remaining in the intravascular compartment. This is challenged by large clinical trials and current knowledge of microvascular fluid handling (see the Vascular Endothelium section), which suggest that isotonic crystalloids may have a larger intravascular volume expanding effect than this, particularly in patients with low capillary hydrostatic pressures. The study of volume kinetics has quantified the redistribution of crystalloids from the central (intravascular) volume to the larger peripheral (total extracellular) volume. Perhaps up to 70% of a crystalloid infusion remains in the intravascular compartment at the end of a 20-minute continuous infusion, decreasing to 50% after 30 minutes.[4] Nevertheless, more fluid will ultimately be filtered out of the capillary with crystalloids than with colloids, owing to colloids' effects on oncotic pressure. Patients resuscitated with crystalloids have a more positive fluid balance for the same volume expansion effect.[51] Tissue edema may increase in compliant tissues such as the lung, gut, and soft tissues, particularly when crystalloid solutions are infused into normovolemic subjects. Large-volume crystalloid infusions also may be associated with a hypercoagulable state caused by dilution of circulating anticoagulant factors; the clinical significance of this is not currently known.[52]

Saline Solutions

0.9% Sodium Chloride. One of the most commonly administered crystalloids is 0.9% NaCl solution, yet it is not clear historically how it entered routine clinical practice. Although many of the crystalloids being examined for in vivo clinical usage during the 1800s had a composition much closer to that of plasma, Hamburger ascertained using in vitro red cell lysis experiments that 0.9% was the NaCl concentration that was isotonic with human plasma. Therefore, 0.9% saline was not initially developed with the aim of in vivo administration, yet has entered widespread clinical use despite having a Na^+ and Cl^- concentration far in excess of that of plasma.[53] Its osmolarity, calculated as the sum of the solutes present, is slightly higher than that of plasma, although the osmolality (measured by freezing point depression) is 285 mOsm/kg, very similar to that of plasma. This discrepancy reflects the nonideal behavior of solutions. Both ions remain in the ECF after infusion, and it can be said to be isotonic—that is, of a similar *effective osmolarity* to that of plasma with respect to the cell membrane.

A 2-L infusion of 0.9% NaCl leads to an increase in ECF volume, dilutional decrease in hematocrit and albumin, increase in Cl^- and K^+ concentrations, and decrease in plasma HCO_3^-.[42] The expansion of the ECF is more persistent than with balanced crystalloid solutions. Although both fluids induce diuresis, 0.9% NaCl has a later onset and the excess salt and water load may take multiple days for even a healthy subject to excrete.[12]

A 0.9% NaCL infusion leads to a hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis and reduced renal perfusion. Although important differences in clinical outcomes in the surgical populations are not clear,[54] in the wider critical care population an increased incidence of kidney injury and requirement for renal replacement therapy are seen when compared with the use of lower Cl^- solutions.[46,55] In healthy volunteers, large-volume (50 mL/kg) saline infusions lead to abdominal discomfort, nausea, and vomiting.

These side effects mean that the volume of saline administered perioperatively should be limited, unless there are compelling indications such as the following:

- Situations in which increased plasma Na^+ may be beneficial, such as in the presence of cerebral edema.
- Preexisting Na^+ or Cl^- total body depletion, such as gastric outlet obstruction (see later discussion). However, 0.9% NaCl is not suitable for the treatment of acute severe hyponatremia, because it has little effect on plasma Na^+ levels in this situation.

Downloaded for alex arman davidson (arman@amazingstudy.tk) at Florida International University from ClinicalKey.com by Elsevier on October 21, 2019.
For personal use only. No other uses without permission. Copyright ©2019. Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

TABLE 47.6 Composition of Fluids Available for Intravenous Administration*

Fluid	Sodium	Potassium	Chloride	Calcium	Magnesium	Bicarbonate	Lactate	Acetate	Gluconate	Glucose $(g/L)^{-1}$	Other	Osmolarity	Notes	pH (In Vitro)
Plasma	140	5	100	4.4	2	24	1	—	—	—	—	285	SID 42	7.4
0.9% NaCl	154	—	154	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	308	SID 0	6.0
1.8% NaCl	308	—	308	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	616		
0.45% NaCl	77	—	77	—	—	—	—	—	—	—		154		
5% dextrose	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	50		252		4.5
5% dextrose/0.45% NaCl	77	—	77	—	—	—	—	—	—	50		406		4.0
4% dextrose/0.18% NaCl	33	—	33	—	—	—	—	—	—	40		283		
Lactated Ringer solution (U.S. composition)	130	4	109	3	—	—	28	—	—	—		273		6.5
5% dextrose in lactated Ringer solution	130	4	109	3	—	—	28	—	—	50		525		5.0
Hartmann solution/compound Na⁺ lactate	131	5	111	4	—	—	29	—	—	—		275	In vivo SID 27	6.5
Plasma-Lyte 148/ Normosol-R	140	5	98	—	3	—	—	27	23	—	—	294		4-6.5
Plasma-Lyte 56 and 5% dextrose/ Normosol M with 5% dextrose	40	13	40	—	3	—	—	16	—	50		389 / 363		3.5-6
Plasma-Lyte A pH 7.4	140	5	98	—	3	—	—	27	23	—	NaOH for pH	294		7.4
Sterofundin	140	4	127	5	2	—	—	24	—	—	Maleate 5	309		5.1-5.9
Plasma-Lyte R	140	10	103	5	3	—	8	47	—	—		312		
Hemosol	140	—	109.5	3.5	1	32	3	—	—	—			In vivo SID 33	
4%-5% albumin	†	—	†	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Stabilizer: octanoate (caprylate)	†		7.4
20% albumin	†	—	†	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Stabilizer: octanoate (caprylate)	†		
Plasmanate: Plasma protein fraction (human) 5%	145	0.25	100	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	88% human albumin, 12% α-/β-globulins		COP 20 mm Hg	7.4

Continued

Downloaded for alex arman davidson (arman@amazingstudy.tk) at Florida International University from ClinicalKey.com by Elsevier on October 21, 2019.
For personal use only. No other uses without permission. Copyright ©2019. Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

TABLE 47.6 Composition of Fluids Available for Intravenous Administration*—cont'd

Fluid	Sodium	Potassium	Chloride	Calcium	Magnesium	Bicarbonate	Lactate	Acetate	Gluconate	Glucose (g/L)$^{-1}$	Other	Osmolarity	Notes	pH (In Vitro)
Gelofusine (4%)	154	—	125	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MWw 30 kDa		Succinylated gelatin	
Plasmion/Geloplasma (3%)	150	5	100	—	3	—	30	—	—	—	MWw 30 kDa		Succinylated gelatin	
Isoplex (4%)	145	4	105	—	1.8	—	25	—	—	—	MWw 30 kDa		Succinylated gelatin	
Gelaspan (4%)	151	4	103	2	2	—	—	24	—	—	MWw 30 kDa			
Haemaccel (polygeline)	145	5.1	145	12.5	—	—	—	—	—	—	MWw 35 kDa			
Voluven: Waxy maize HES 6% (130/0.4)	154	—	154	—	—	—	—	—	—	—		308		
Venofundin: Potato HES 6% (130/0.42)	154	—	154	—	—	—	—	—	—	—				
Hetastarch: Waxy maize HES 6% (670/0.75)	154	—	154	—	—	—	—	—	—	—		309		5.5
Hextend: Waxy maize HES 6% (670/0.75)	143	3	124	5	1	—	28	—	—	—				
Pentaspan: Pentastarch 10%	154	—	154	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MWw 264 kDa	326		5.0
Volulyte: Waxy maize HES 6% (130/0.4)	137	4	110	—	3	—	—	34	—	—		287		
Plasma volume: Potato HES 6% (130/0.42)	130	5.4	112	1.8	2	—	—	27	—	—				
Tetraspan: Potato HES 6% (130/0.42)	140	4	118	5	2	—	—	24	5	—				
10% Dextran 40	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	50		255		4.0

HES, Hydroxyethyl starch; *MWw,* weight-averaged mean molecular weight. Plasma-Lyte, PlasmaVolume, Baxter International, Deerfield, IL; Gelofusine, Gelaspan, Venofundin, Sterofundin, and Tetraspan, B Braun (Melsungen, Germany); Plasmion, Geloplasma, Voluven, and Volulyte, Fresenius-Kabi, Bad Homburg, Germany; Hextend, BioTime, Berkeley, Calif; Pentaspan from Bristol-Myers Squibb, Canada; Hemosol, Hosptal, Rugby, United Kingdom.; Isoplex Beacon, Kent, United Kingdom; Normosol, Hospira, Lake Forest, IL.

*Presented as mEq/L, except where stated.

†The NaCl content and osmolarity of albumin solutions varies dependent on formulation. Osmolarity values are calculated in vitro.

Hypertonic Saline. Solutions of 1.8%, 3%, and 7.5% NaCl are available. Their uses include:

Plasma volume expansion: The hypertonic nature of these solutions draws water out of the intracellular compartment and into the extracellular (including plasma) volume and may therefore achieve plasma volume expansion while minimizing the volume of fluid administered. Although it has not been studied extensively, use of hypertonic saline for trauma resuscitation, particularly in the prehospital phase, has not shown convincing benefit. In fact, one large trial showed no improvement in outcome and was stopped early.[56]

- Correction of hypoosmolar hyponatremia (see later discussion)
- Treatment of increased intracranial pressure: The increased plasma osmolality reduces cerebral edema and decreases intracranial pressure. Hypertonic saline may be superior to mannitol in this regard.[57] However, hypertonic saline used early in traumatic brain injury without knowledge of intracranial pressure has not been shown to be beneficial in clinical trials.[58]

At NaCl concentration greater than 7.5%, these solutions may cause endothelial damage; indeed, 11.7% NaCl may be used as a sclerosant agent and should therefore be administered into a central vein.

Balanced Crystalloid Solutions

Intravenous crystalloid solutions were initially used clinically for the management of cholera in 1832 by O'Shaughnessy and Latta. The early solutions were more closely matched to physiologic plasma composition than NaCl solutions and contained 134 mEq/L Na^+, 118 mEq/L Cl^-, and 16 mEq/L HCO_3^-.[53] However, clinical interest in more balanced solutions waned until Hartmann in 1932 used a lactated modification of Ringer solution for pediatric patients with acidosis associated with hypovolemia and liver and renal failure.[59] By this time, NaCl solutions were already in use for resuscitation from hemorrhage and trauma.[53]

Currently available balanced crystalloid solutions have lower overall osmolarity than 0.9% NaCl, with a lower Na^+ concentration and much lower Cl^- concentration (see Table 47.6). The reduction in anionic content is compensated for by the addition of stable organic anionic buffers such as lactate, gluconate, or acetate. The measured osmolality of balanced solutions (265 mOsm/kg) is slightly lower than that of plasma, and they are therefore mildly hypotonic. Fluid compartment distribution of balanced solutions is resembles that of other crystalloids. After administration, the buffer is metabolized to produce HCO_3^- in equimolar quantities by entry into the citric acid cycle. Lactate undergoes predominantly hepatic oxidation or gluconeogenesis to yield HCO_3^- at a maximum rate of approximately 200 mmol/h.[60] Acetate is normally present in trace quantities in the plasma (0.2 mM), because it is rapidly oxidized by liver, muscle, and heart to yield HCO_3^- at a maximum turnover of 300 mmol/h, beyond which zero-order kinetics intervene.[61] A small proportion may be converted to the acetoacetate. The metabolism of gluconate is less well characterized in terms of location and kinetics, but it is converted to glucose with subsequent entry into the citric acid cycle.[62] Although balanced crystalloids can be constituted with HCO_3^- as a main anion, this is limited by two factors. First, HCO_3^- reacts with water to form CO_2, which can diffuse out of most packaging materials. This has been addressed by some products, although availability is limited.[63,64] Second, the pH shift induced by the presence of HCO_3^- can lead to precipitation of Ca^{2+} (and Mg^{2+}) if present.

The excretion of the excess water and electrolyte load with balanced crystalloids is more rapid than with isotonic saline.[65] This is due to the transient decrease in plasma tonicity after infusion, which suppresses ADH secretion and allows diuresis in response to the increased intravascular circulating volume. Balanced crystalloids do not reduce plasma SID to the same degree as NaCl solutions and therefore do not cause an acidosis; HCO_3^- concentration is maintained or slightly elevated.

Some potential negative effects have been identified with balanced crystalloid solutions. Lactated Ringer solutions contain racemic (D- and L-) lactate, although D-lactate is only found in trace quantities in vivo. Concerns that large doses of D-lactate may be associated with encephalopathy and cardiac toxicity in patients with renal failure[66,67] have not been confirmed in human studies at plasma levels achievable with racemic lactated Ringer solution. The metabolism of D-lactate appears to be nearly as rapid as that of L-lactate.[68] The reliance on hepatic metabolism of most of the infused lactate means that lactated solutions should be avoided in severe liver failure. Concerns over the negative effects of excess exogenous acetate have been raised in patients receiving dialysis with an acetate-based dialysate. The proinflammatory, myocardial depressant, vasodilatory, and hypoxemia-promoting effects of high acetate levels manifest as nausea, vomiting, headaches, and cardiovascular instability and have led to the removal of acetate from contemporary dialysis fluids.[61,69–73] Acetate turnover is limited in patients with end-stage kidney disease and by the presence of other substrates for oxidation—for example, during lactic acidosis or proteolysis. It is therefore possible that critically ill patients or those with advanced kidney disease may exhibit biochemical acetate intolerance, although this possibility has not been explored in patients receiving acetate-based balanced crystalloids. Unlike acetate, much less is known about the effects of gluconate-containing fluids.[74] Indeed, this area requires investigation at a cellular, organ, and whole organism level, particularly because data in animal studies suggest poorer outcome and late increases in lactate in a hemorrhage model when acetate/gluconate-containing crystalloids are compared to lactated Ringer solution or isotonic saline for resuscitation.[75]

Dextrose Solutions

Dextrose solutions have the following two main indications in the perioperative setting:

1. As a source of free water: An infusion of 5% dextrose effectively represents administration of free water. The in vitro osmolality resembles that of plasma so the infusion does not lead to hemolysis, but soon after administration, the dextrose is taken up into cells in the presence of insulin, leaving free water. These solutions are therefore hypotonic with respect to the cell membrane and

in excess can dilute plasma electrolytes and osmolality. They should therefore be used with care in the postoperative period, during which the relative syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) leads to water retention, increasing the risk for hyponatremia (see later discussion). Nevertheless, in carefully controlled volumes and with regular monitoring of serum electrolytes, they are a useful source of free water for maintenance requirements postoperatively, particularly if combined with a low concentration of NaCl. Dextrose solutions are less suitable for intravascular plasma volume expansion, because water can move between all fluid compartments, and a very small volume remains in the intravascular space.

2. Source of metabolic substrate: Although the caloric content of 5% dextrose is inadequate to maintain nutritional requirements, higher concentrations are adequate as a metabolic substrate, such as 4000 kCal/L for 50% glucose. Glucose solutions also may be coadministered with IV insulin to diabetic patients to reduce the risk for hypoglycemia, such as 10% dextrose at 75 mL/h.

COLLOIDS

Colloid is defined as large molecules or ultramicroscopic particles of a homogeneous noncrystalline substance dispersed in a second substance, typically isotonic saline, or a balanced crystalloid. These particles cannot be separated out by filtration or centrifugation. Although not all solutions are available in all countries, those in production include semisynthetic colloids and human plasma derivatives. Semisynthetic colloids have a range of molecular sizes (polydispersed) in contrast to human albumin solution, which contains more than 95% albumin molecules of a uniform size (monodispersed). Colloid molecules above 70 kDa are too large to pass through the endothelial glycocalyx and are excluded from the subglycocalyx layer, so their initial volume of distribution is the plasma (rather than the entire intravascular) volume (see discussion of vascular endothelium). In contrast to pure electrolyte solutions, colloids have a higher COP and minimize transcapillary filtration, particularly at low capillary hydrostatic pressures. This maximizes their potential intravascular plasma volume expansion effect. However, at normal or supranormal capillary pressures, hydrostatic pressure will be increased and transcapillary filtration will occur.[3] In addition, colloid molecules may be lost from circulation in several ways—by filtration across capillaries whose barrier function is impaired by glycocalyx shedding or endothelial cell pore formation in inflammation or other stressors, by renal filtration of smaller colloid molecules, or by removal from the circulation by metabolism. Therefore, colloids have variable effective plasma half-lives, as outlined later. Colloids alter blood rheology, improving blood flow by hemodilution which leads to reductions in plasma viscosity and red cell aggregation.[52] In contrast to their beneficial effects, the introduction of a large dose of semisynthetic molecules (typically 40-60 g/L) to a complex physiologic system may bring a variety of undesired effects on the immune, coagulation, and renal systems. To limit these toxicities, maximum dosages are recommended for most colloids, but adverse effects may still occur with lower doses. As the potential clinical relevance of toxicity is highlighted by large clinical trials, the use of colloids, at least in critical care, deserves increasing caution.[76] Whether these trials in critical care can be applied to the entire perioperative period has not been established. The evolving evidence base on the differential effects of isotonic saline or balanced crystalloid is also likely to focus more attention on the carrier solute used in colloids.

Semisynthetic Colloids

Gelatins. Gelatins are derived from the hydrolysis of bovine collagen, with subsequent modification by succinylation (Gelofusine, B Braun, Bethlehem, Pa; Geloplasma®, Fresenius, Waltham, MA) or urea-linkage to form polygeline (Haemaccel, Piramal, Orchard Park, NY). These forms have a similar molecular weight (MW), but the succinylated version undergoes conformational change as a result of increased negative charges, such that it is a larger molecule. The wide range of MWs means that much of an infused gelatin bolus will rapidly leave the circulation, predominantly by renal filtration. Despite this, a recent study suggests that 60 minutes after the end of infusion, 50% of the infused fluid volume remains in the intravascular space, similar to larger MW colloids.[77] Excretion is primarily by the renal route. In terms of negative effects, the gelatins have the least impact on clinically relevant hemostasis of all the semisynthetic colloids despite reductions in von Willebrand factor (vWF), factor VIIIc, and ex vivo clot strength,[78] but the highest estimated incidence of severe anaphylactic and anaphylactoid reactions (<0.35%).[52] The high Ca^{2+} content of Haemaccel is a contraindication to coadministration of citrated blood products in the same infusion set. No known cases of variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease transmission have occurred involving pharmaceutical gelatin preparations. Gelatins are commonly used in perioperative practice in Europe but are not approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration.

Hydroxyethyl Starches. Hydroxyethyl starches (HESs) are modified natural polymers of amylopectin derived from maize or potato. Substitution of hydroxyethyl radicals onto glucose units prevents rapid in vivo hydrolysis by amylase, and the degree of substitution both in terms of hydroxyethyl substitutions per glucose unit (maximum three) and total number of glucose units with substitutions is a determinant of HES elimination kinetics. The degree of substitution (DS) is expressed as the number of substituted glucose molecules present divided by the total number of glucose molecules present. An alternative measure of substitution is the molar substitution (MS) ratio, calculated as the total number of hydroxyethyl groups present divided by the quantity of glucose molecules. MS is used to define starches as hetastarches (MS 0.7), hexastarches (MS 0.6), pentastarches (MS 0.5), or tetrastarches (MS 0.4). The pattern of substitution may vary because hydroxyethylation can occur at carbon positions 2, 3, or 6 of the glucose unit. The substitution type is defined by the C2/C6 hydroxyethylation ratio, and a higher ratio leads to slower starch metabolism. Starches are also classified by in vitro MW into high (450-480 kDa), medium (200 kDa), and low (70 kDa). However, HES solutions are very polydispersed and the MW quoted is an average. The size of starch molecule is responsible for both the therapeutic volume effects and adverse side effects. After administration, smaller HES molecules (<50-60 kDa) are rapidly excreted and larger molecules are hydrolyzed to form a greater number of smaller molecules at a rate depending on the degree of substitution and C2/C6 hydroxyethylation ratio. The in vivo MW is therefore smaller and has a narrower distribution.[79] Ongoing renal excretion accounts for the elimination of smaller HES molecules, with medium-sized molecules being excreted in the bile and feces. A proportion of larger molecules, particularly those resistant to hydrolysis, is taken up by the mononuclear phagocyte (reticuloendothelial) system, where they may persist for several weeks or more.[80] The prolonged metabolism of HES means that their plasma volume effects typically last longer than those of gelatins or crystalloids. Larger MW starches can increase intravascular volume by approximately 70% to 80% of the infused dose even at 90 minutes.[81] Smaller MW starches with a low MS may have even larger volume effects as a result of the rapid initial metabolism with the formation of a large number of oncotically active molecules,[82] but studies in healthy human volunteers suggest only a similar volume effect to that of gelatins.[77]

For all fluids in this category, starch-related side effects have been associated with adverse outcomes in critical illness. Problems such as coagulopathy, accumulation, and renal dysfunction initially appeared to be related to larger MW starches, but now smaller tetrastarches are a concern as well. Despite this, study populations with critical illness, particularly sepsis, cannot be compared directly with elective perioperative patients. These trials should be interpreted with caution when considering the relevance of HES to surgical patients. Nevertheless, the official recommendations against the use of HES are clearly negative.

Coagulation. As with other synthetic colloids, HES products affect coagulation through dilutional effects in the circulation and MW-dependent reductions in vWF, factor VIII, and clot strength. The effect is most likely to occur with larger MW or slowly degraded medium MW (200 kDa/MS 0.62 or 200 kDa/MS 0.5/C2:C6 13) HES preparations and larger amounts of perioperative blood loss. This clinical effect is less marked with more rapidly degraded medium and small MW starches.[52] In patients with sepsis, even lower MW HES is associated with an increased risk of bleeding and blood transfusion, but it is unclear whether this also occurs in the perioperative setting.[83,84]

Accumulation. The accumulation of HES molecules in the mononuclear phagocyte system and skin, liver, muscle, and gut is a dose-dependent effect that gradually decreases over time. However, the accumulation may persist for several years, and larger amounts of tissue deposition are associated with pruritus.[80]

Anaphylactoid Reactions. The estimated incidence of severe anaphylactoid or anaphylactic reactions with HES products is less than with other colloids (<0.06%).[52]

Renal Dysfunction. HES products with medium-to-high MW are associated with oliguria, increased creatinine, and acute kidney injury in critically ill patients with preexisting renal impairment.[6,85] Although newer solutions with low MW (130 kDa/MS 0.4) were initially thought to be safer in this respect, recent large-scale trials have shown a similar effect on the need for renal replacement therapy in severe sepsis, particularly when compared with balanced crystalloids.[83,84] A recent large trial in a mixed critical care population comparing HES with isotonic saline also reported an increase in renal replacement therapy with the starch solution. This study is more difficult to interpret, given the potential renal effects of saline, and, as with previous studies, the possibility that patients were given study fluids after partial resuscitation had already been achieved.[51] Currently, no similar data are available from large-scale studies on the intraoperative use of HES solutions, and a recent meta-analysis examining perioperative use of 6% HES concluded that although no increase in mortality or kidney injury was seen, the available evidence lacked statistical power to definitively answer this question.[86] Meanwhile, the use of starch-based colloids has been restricted or even completely suspended by regulatory authorities in both the United States and Europe.

Dextrans. Dextrans are highly branched polysaccharide molecules produced by the bacterium *Leuconostoc mesenteroides* after conversion of sucrose in the growth medium by bacterial dextran sucrase. The large-MW dextrans produced undergo acid hydrolysis to yield smaller MW molecules, which are then separated by fractionation to produce a solution with a restricted range of MWs. Available dextrans have an average MW of 40 kDa or 70 kDa. As with other colloids, the polydisperse nature of dextran solutions means that a proportion of smaller MW molecules are present that are rapidly filtered at the glomerulus; 70% of a dextran dose is renally excreted within 24 hours. Higher MW molecules are excreted into the GI tract or taken up into the mononuclear phagocyte system, where they are degraded by endogenous dextranases.[52] Dextrans have a plasma volume effect similar to that of starches, with a duration of 6 to 12 hours. In addition to their use in volume expansion, dextran 40 may be used in microvascular surgery, where its dilutional effects on blood viscosity and anticoagulant effects (see later discussion) favor flow in the microcirculation. Overall, the use of dextrans is limited by their range of toxicities.

Antithrombotic effect: This is particularly marked in lower MW dextrans and is mediated through a range of mechanisms, including red cell coating and inhibition of aggregation, factor VIIIc and vWF reductions, and impaired activity of factor VIII. Platelet aggregation is also inhibited. The result is clinically impaired hemostasis and increased perioperative blood loss.[78]

- Blood cross-matching: Dextrans coat the erythrocyte cell membrane and may interfere with blood type cross-matching.
- Anaphylactoid reactions: Dextrans have an intermediate risk for serious anaphylactic and anaphylactoid reactions (<0.28%). Preemptive treatment with dextran 1, a hapten inhibitor, may reduce this incidence to less than 0.0015%.[52]
- Renal dysfunction: Renal dysfunction resulting from osmotic nephrosis is recognized after low-MW dextran infusion,[87] although the true incidence of this phenomenon in perioperative patients is difficult to estimate

because of the limited use of dextrans in contemporary practice.

Human Plasma Derivatives

The human plasma derivatives include human albumin solutions, plasma protein fractions, fresh frozen plasma, and immunoglobulin solution. Preparation techniques result in relatively purified solutions with the elimination of infective agents, although the theoretic risk for transmission of variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease and associated bovine spongiform encephalopathy remains. One U.K. case of presumed prion transmission has been described in association with factor VIII transfusion, although without clinical manifestation.[88] The ongoing transmission risk has been mitigated by sourcing many plasma derivatives from non-U.K. sources.

Solutions such as 5% albumin have a near-physiologic COP of 20 mm Hg and are used for volume expansion. Despite the association of hypoalbuminemia with worse outcomes from critical illness, the administration of exogenous albumin does not improve outcome in these situations. Early concerns that resuscitation with albumin may actually increase mortality in critical illness were not confirmed by a large controlled trial that found no difference in outcomes whether albumin or isotonic saline was used for resuscitation.[5] In this heterogeneous population, the albumin group required less fluid to attain similar endpoints (ratio 1:1.4), although in the subgroup of patients with trauma, and particularly brain injury, albumin may be associated with an increased incidence of mortality.[5,89] Conversely, in a subgroup analysis of patients with sepsis, albumin administration trended toward a decreased frequency of mortality that was supported by a subsequent meta-analysis.[90]

Clinical Fluid and Electrolyte Management

PATHOPHYSIOLOGIC FLUID ALTERATIONS IN THE PERIOPERATIVE PHASE

Before recommending practical approaches to administering fluid in the perioperative phase, it is important to consider the pathophysiologic processes, which affect not just the body's requirement for exogenous fluid and electrolytes but also the manner by which fluids are distributed by the body. The patient may enter the perioperative phase with abnormalities of intravascular fluid volume and distribution. Subsequent trauma (including surgery) induces a range of evolutionarily conserved neurohumoral and inflammatory changes, termed the stress response, which may have a significant impact on fluid and electrolyte responses and distribution. When the stress response is of an appropriate magnitude and duration, it can be a beneficial process for recovery from trauma; however, it could become pathologic if it is either exaggerated or prolonged or presents a physiologic burden to patients with limited baseline physiologic reserves.

Preoperative

Patients may enter the perioperative phase with established derangements of fluid and electrolyte balance. Hepatic, renal, and cardiac dysfunction are all associated with disordered Na^+ distribution (see later discussion), which has profound secondary effects on ECF volume. Patients with end-stage renal disease depend on dialysis for fluid removal, and the timing of dialysis relative to surgery is critical. Chronic treatment with diuretics may also lead to electrolyte depletion. Depending on the treatment, hypertensive patients may have a volume-contracted circulation, making them prone to intraoperative hypovolemia.

The effects of preoperative fasting also should be considered, although its influence on fluid balance has perhaps been overstated. Modern perioperative practice mandates cessation of oral fluids only 2 hours before elective surgery, and overnight fasting usually does not result in changes to normal blood volume when measured using robust experimental techniques.[91] Conversely, bowel preparation can cause a weight loss of 1.5 to 1.7 kg[92,93] with a high water and K^+ content. The potentially deleterious effects of this should be limited by restricting bowel preparations when possible and compensating for fluid loss with simultaneous IV infusion of 1 to 2 L of crystalloid with K^+ supplementation, which can improve hemodynamics and lower serum creatinine.[93]

More severe disturbances of fluid and electrolyte balance can occur in patients presenting with acute disease requiring surgical intervention:

- Direct intravascular depletion from bleeding.
- Loss of fluid from the GI tract. This results in ECF depletion and loss of electrolytes, depending on the GI tract location. Excess gastric loss because of obstruction, vomiting, or excess nasogastric suction results in loss of Na^+, K^+, Cl^-, and acid. Loss of small bowel secretions results in high losses of Na^+, Cl^-, and HCO_3^- with lesser K^+ losses. Large bowel losses, such as in diarrhea, deplete large quantities of K^+ with lesser losses of Na^+ and HCO_3^-. Pathologic fluid sequestration within the bowel lumen may have similar effects without external signs of fluid loss.
- Inflammation-related redistribution from the intravascular to the extracellular compartment (see later discussion).
- Fluid sequestration in the physiologic third space, with edema, pleural effusions, and ascites.

Intraoperative

Many factors influence intraoperative fluid balance, such as:

- Altered distribution of intravascular volume. Anesthetic agents lead to vasodilation, which can affect both the venous and arterial systems and may reduce cardiac preload and afterload. This reduction may be exacerbated by sympathetic blockade caused by central neuraxial blockade, and cardiac output may also be decreased by the negative inotropic effect of anesthetic drugs. The distribution of blood within the vascular system is also influenced by the differential blunting of autoregulatory responses within organ beds caused by anesthesia. Microcirculatory dysfunction related to the effects of anesthesia and the inflammatory response to surgery may result in impaired functional matching of local O_2 delivery with tissue O_2 requirements, which may not be responsive to intravascular fluid therapy.

- Direct loss of intravascular volume from hemorrhage. The clinical manifestation of surgical blood loss may vary greatly depending on the volume and time course of the blood loss.
- Insensible losses. The opening of anatomic compartments leads to evaporative fluid loss from mucosal surfaces, although estimating the extent of this loss may be difficult. Humidity chamber studies indicate that the loss may be as little as 1 mL/kg/h even during a major laparotomy with extensive bowel exposure.[94]
- Inflammation-related redistribution. Major surgery induces an inflammatory response that redistributes fluid from the intravascular to the extracellular compartment. This typically manifests in the postoperative phase (see later discussion), although it may become clinically apparent intraoperatively during surgery of sufficient magnitude and duration.
- Renal output. The suppression of renal urine production is related to perioperative ADH secretion and may also be influenced by the effects of positive-pressure ventilation. Increased intrathoracic pressure reduces venous return and cardiac output, which combine with a variety of neurohumoral responses such as sympathetic activation and suppression of ANP release to decrease GFR and urine output.[95] As a result, intraoperative urine output may be low regardless of the volume of IV fluid administered.[96]

The early phase of the stress response is triggered during major surgery. Absolute or relative (redistributive) hypovolemia during the intraoperative phase invokes a range of conservative responses—described in the section on Acute Disturbances in Circulating Volume—that are aimed at redistributing blood away from the periphery and toward vital organs and maintaining circulating volume by retaining salt and water. The tissue trauma of surgery also triggers a well-described inflammatory and immune response, and together these changes may persist into the postoperative phase. The inflammatory response elicited by tissue trauma may be aggravated by periods of hypotension and tissue hypoperfusion.

Postoperative

As a result of the preoperative and intraoperative factors outlined previously, patients may start the postoperative phase with significant derangements of intravascular volume and fluid compartment distribution. The stress response triggered by surgery may also have an ongoing influence on postoperative fluid balance.

Inflammation and Immune Response. Tissue injury leads to local vasodilation, increased endothelial permeability, and influx of leukocytes to the damaged area, with consequent production of proinflammatory cytokines for up to 72 hours, particularly interleukin-1 (IL-1), TNF-α, and IL-6. Cardiopulmonary bypass, extensive tissue trauma, or surgery in areas with subclinical preoperative inflammation, such as tumor or infection, may lead to a postoperative systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS). An alternative trigger for SIRS is GI hypoperfusion. The physiologic response to hypovolemia is preservation of cardiac and brain perfusion at the expense of kidney, gut, and peripheral perfusion. The intestinal villi have a countercurrent blood supply that shunts blood away from the mucosa in this situation, leading to mucosal necrosis and further impairment of gut barrier function by luminal digestive enzymes and bacteria. This allows gut bacterial endotoxin to translocate into the systemic circulation, acting as a potent trigger for systemic inflammation.[97,98] The reactive O_2 species released on reperfusion of compromised bowel further aggravate the inflammatory cascade.

Systemic inflammation impairs endothelial barrier function through changes in endothelial cell phenotype, increases in endothelial large pores, and degradation of the endothelial glycocalyx.[2] Hypervolemia caused by excessive fluid infusion leads to the release of cardiac natriuretic peptides, which may further degrade the endothelial glycocalyx.[9,99] In severe cases, inflammation-related endothelial dysfunction leads to a capillary leak syndrome, with loss of water, electrolytes, and proteins into the interstitial space causing edema in the lungs, bowel, and connective tissue. Reduced plasma oncotic pressure facilitates ongoing capillary fluid filtration into the extravascular space and consequent hypovolemia.

Catabolic Metabolism. The response to tissue injury requires an increase in energy substrate delivery, particularly to leukocytes involved in the acute inflammatory and immune reaction. This metabolic shift is mediated by catecholamine and cortisol release and involves muscle protein catabolism, with associated hepatic gluconeogenesis and acute phase protein production, and increased substrate delivery to damaged tissues. An increase in basal metabolic rate and adequate circulating volume are required to meet the needs of increased fuel mobilization, processing, and delivery.

Regulation of Salt and Water Balance. As described in the section on physiologic control of overall fluid balance, ADH release is induced during surgery, leading to postoperative retention of water. This may be a direct result of the acute stress response, and IL-6 has been proposed as a key mediator.[100] In addition, periods of hypovolemia and hypotension further stimulate ADH release and activate the RAA system with further water and salt retention and amplified ADH production. This may lead to a temporary period of oliguria despite a restored circulating volume and the risk for postoperative fluid overload and sodium fluctuations. Na^+ retention postoperatively is more pronounced in the hypercatabolic state after major surgery, as excess nitrogen competes with Na^+ for renal excretion.

In addition to these processes, fluid may be lost from the circulating volume as a result of reaccumulation into third spaces drained intraoperatively (ascites or pleural effusions), sequestration into the bowel lumen or removal through vomiting, nasogastric drainage, or stoma losses. Intravascular fluid *distribution* is also a dynamic situation postoperatively because of changes in vascular tone caused by rewarming, evolving epidural sympathetic blockade, or systemic inflammation.

ASSESSMENT AND TREATMENT OF PERIOPERATIVE FLUID AND ELECTROLYTE IMBALANCE

Intravascular Volume

As a key variable influencing cardiac output (preload), and therefore tissue O_2 delivery, intravascular volume is at the core of adequate tissue perfusion. Although the assessment of intravascular volume is an important part of perioperative fluid therapy, it may be challenging. Clinical history suggesting abnormal volume status should be sought (see earlier discussion) and accompanied by frequent clinical examinations, although many of the conventional markers of volume status are not reliable when taken in isolation. Obvious hypovolemia may manifest with tachycardia, reduced pulse pressure, hypotension, and increased capillary refill time, but the abnormalities of these individual physiologic variables may have numerous causes in the perioperative phase. Conversely, loss of up to 25% of blood volume may not be accompanied by significant hemodynamic alterations in healthy patients.[101] Urine output, frequently taken as a measure of adequate end-organ perfusion, may also be reduced postoperatively, even in the presence of normal circulating volume, as a result of ADH and RAA activation. More invasive measures of intravascular volume also have limitations. CVP is used as a marker of central venous volume, but it is also influenced by venous compliance. CVP may be normal or high in venoconstricted states even when the absolute vascular volume is reduced. Furthermore, the relationship between right-heart and left-heart filling pressures is not reliable in the presence of cardiopulmonary pathologic processes. Trends in CVP values over time may be a more useful marker, because static CVP readings are poorly predictive of subsequent responses to intravascular fluid challenges.[102] Stroke volume (SV) and cardiac output may be measured using a variety of techniques, and targeting these variables has been widely investigated in perioperative fluid management, as described later. Alternatively, the adequacy of tissue perfusion may be assessed at a whole organism level using blood lactate concentrations, which may also be elevated during reperfusion of ischemic tissue or in advanced liver failure, or mixed venous O_2 saturation, which identifies a mismatch between global O_2 delivery (DO_2) and O_2 usage (VO_2). Techniques used to assess the perfusion of individual organs have the potential to detect clinically occult hypovolemia affecting those tissue beds or surgical sites most at risk for hypoperfusion, such as the gut. These include near-infrared spectroscopy,[103] microdialysis,[104] and GI CO_2 and pH measurement. The latter technique is gastric tonometry and is based on the association between inadequate gut perfusion and mucosal hypercarbia and acidosis.[105] It may detect hypovolemia of a magnitude not detectable by changes in systemic blood lactate, SV, or other cardiovascular parameters[101] that is nevertheless associated with increased postoperative morbidity.[106] Despite some encouraging findings in early research studies, none of these monitors is currently in routine use for guiding perioperative hemodynamic therapy.

Both excessive and inadequate intravascular volume can have adverse physiologic effects and achieving the fine balance between the two is a key goal of perioperative fluid administration. This concept of the "sweet spot" of fluid volume is backed up by large clinical datasets showing associations between both under- and over-resuscitation and postoperative morbidity.[107] Modest hypovolemia, through its effects on gut perfusion and stimulation of protective neurohumoral reflexes, may exacerbate the inflammatory and antidiuretic aspects of the surgical stress response. More severe hypovolemia reduces preload, cardiac output, and therefore DO_2. The result may be inadequate DO_2 to meet metabolic demands, with an increase in O_2 extraction ratio (reflected in reduced mixed venous O_2 saturation), progressing to inefficient anaerobic ATP production if mitochondrial oxidative phosphorylation cannot be sustained. This situation may be aggravated by insufficient compensatory increases in cardiac output, impaired microvascular blood flow, or failure of cellular O_2 usage. Lactate is a by-product of anaerobic metabolism and its accumulation leads to a metabolic acidosis. ATP production may be inadequate to support normal cell functions in tissues with poor perfusion, leading to cell death and organ dysfunction in the most extreme circumstances. Inadequate global O_2 delivery has been associated with a range of postoperative morbidities and increased mortality and has been the target of numerous clinical trials. At an individual organ level, specific areas that have been manipulated surgically, such as tissue flaps and bowel anastomoses, may be susceptible to poor healing and failure when local perfusion is insufficient.

Hypervolemia also has adverse effects and is often an iatrogenic problem in the perioperative setting. Crystalloids or colloids administered when capillary hydrostatic pressures are normal or increased lead to increased capillary filtration of fluid into the interstitial space. If this exceeds the capacity of the lymphatics to return the excess fluid to the circulation, edema will develop in compliant tissues such as the lungs, muscle, and bowel. The effect is more pronounced if inflammation or deterioration of the glycocalyx reduces the endothelial barrier function opposing the passage of large molecules into the interstitium. The correction of salt and water overload is a slow process because of inefficient renal handling of excess Na^+ loads, and the effects of postoperative ADH secretion. Clinically significant edema contributes to postoperative GI dysfunction, although this is not well defined by small clinical trials.[108,109] Further potential effects of excessive intravascular fluid include reduced tissue oxygenation with impaired healing, pulmonary congestion predisposing to pulmonary infection, and increased myocardial work resulting from ventricular filling beyond the optimum portion of the Starling curve.[110] Side effects may occur that are attributable to the amount of fluid given, such as hypercoagulability or hypocoagulability, hyperchloremic acidosis, or renal dysfunction. A positive fluid balance and weight gain in the early perioperative period increases postoperative morbidity.[111,112]

Electrolyte Imbalance

Sodium Disorders

HYPONATREMIA. Hyponatremia may be present preoperatively, develop as a consequence of perioperative events, or both. It is classified as mild (130-134 mEq/L), moderate (120-130 mEq/L), or severe (<120 mEq/L). Moderate-to-severe hyponatremia, particularly of acute onset, is associated with significant perioperative morbidity.

CAUSES. Assessment of serum osmolality, TBW status, and urinary Na^+ concentration is vital for the accurate diagnosis of the underlying cause of hyponatremia.[113,114] A diagnostic algorithm with common causes is shown in Fig. 47.3. Na^+ is normally the key determinant of serum osmolality, and hyponatremia is usually observed in conjunction with reduced osmolality. In some situations, however, osmolality is normal or raised by the presence of solutes that induce cellular dehydration and translocation of water from cells to

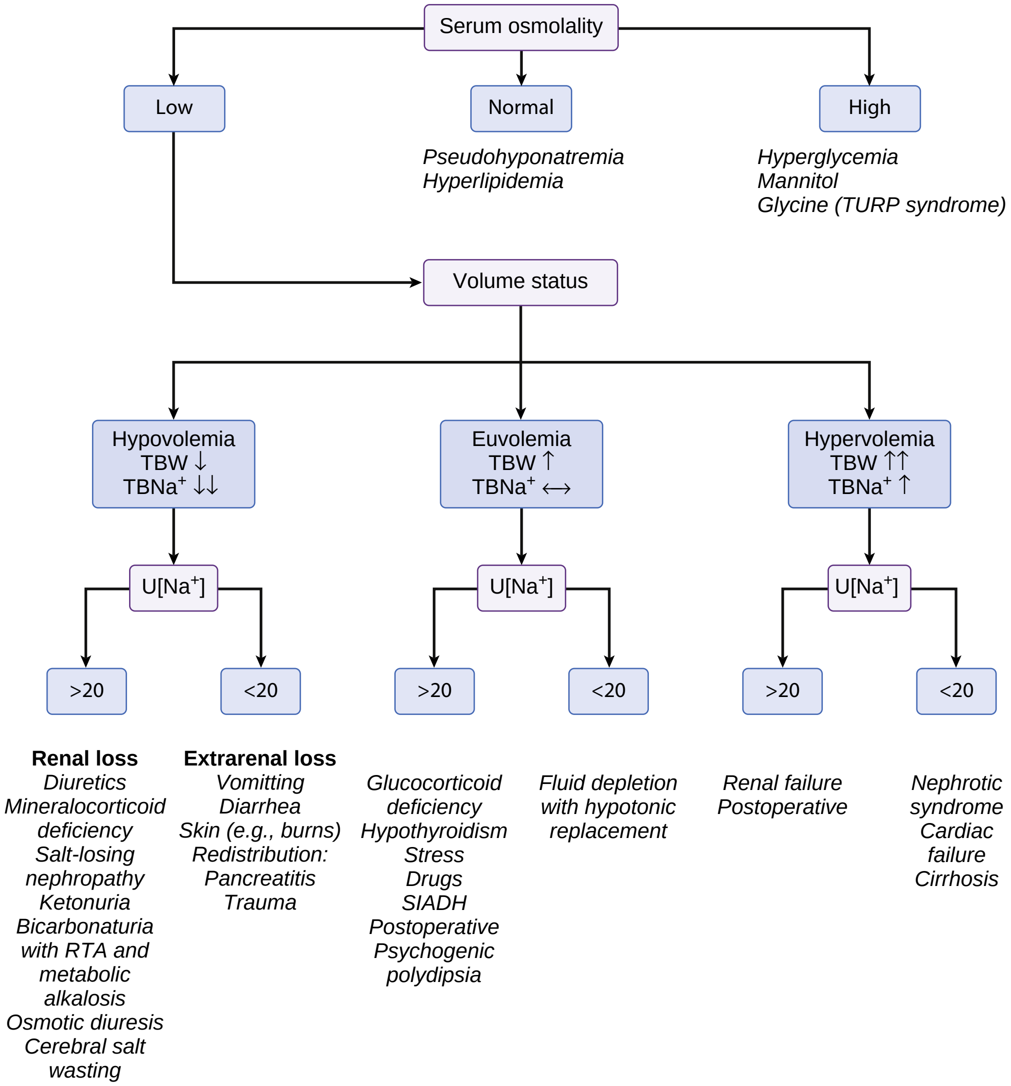

Serum osmolality
Low
Normal
High
Pseudohyponatremia
Hyperlipidemia
Hyperglycemia
Mannitol
Glycine (TURP syndrome)
Volume status
Hypovolemia
TBW ↓
TBNa+ ↓↓
Euvolemia
TBW ↑
TBNa+ ⟷
Hypervolemia
TBW ↑↑
TBNa+ ↑
U[Na+]
U[Na+]
U[Na+]
>20
<20
>20
<20
>20
<20
Renal loss
Diuretics
Mineralocorticoid deficiency
Salt-losing nephropathy
Ketonuria
Bicarbonaturia with RTA and metabolic alkalosis
Osmotic diuresis
Cerebral salt wasting
Extrarenal loss
Vomitting
Diarrhea
Skin (e.g., burns)
Redistribution:
Pancreatitis
Trauma
Glucocorticoid deficiency
Hypothyroidism
Stress
Drugs
SIADH
Postoperative
Psychogenic polydipsia
Fluid depletion with hypotonic replacement
Renal failure
Postoperative
Nephrotic syndrome
Cardiac failure
Cirrhosis

Fig. 47.3 Causes and diagnostic algorithm for hyponatremia. The diagnostic criteria for the syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion *(SIADH)* include exclusion of adrenal, thyroid, and renal disease or diuretic usage, serum hypoosmolality (<270 mOsmol/kg), clinical euvolemia, increased urinary [Na^+] despite normal water and salt intake and inappropriate urinary concentration (>100 mOsmol/kg). A characteristic response to water restriction occurs, with a 2- to 3-kg fall in weight accompanied by a reduction in salt wasting over 2 to 3 days. *RTA,* Renal tubular acidosis; *TBW,* total body water; *TURP,* transurethral resection of the prostate; *U[Na^+],* urinary sodium concentration in mEq/L. (Modified from Kumar S, Berl T. Sodium. *Lancet.* 1998;352:220; and Tisdall M, Crocker M, Watkiss J, et al. Disturbances of sodium in critically ill adult neurologic patients: a clinical review. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol.* 2006;18:57.)

the ECF. These include glucose in the absence of adequate insulin, mannitol, maltose, and glycine. Alternatively, hyponatremia may be artifactual (pseudohyponatremia), caused by the presence of high lipid concentrations. In hypoosmolar hyponatremia, imbalanced gains or losses of TBW and Na^+ occur such that serum Na^+ concentration is reduced.

Preoperative hyponatremia. Hyponatremia may be an incidental finding during preoperative assessment, with the underlying pathologic mechanisms identified in Fig. 47.3. Even mild preoperative hyponatremia is associated with increased 30-day mortality, major cardiac events, wound infection, and pneumonia.[115] Whether hyponatremia is a direct causal mechanism in postoperative adverse events or a marker of underlying overt or subclinical pathologic processes, such as cardiac failure, is not clear, although excess risk is seen even in American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) class 1 and 2 patients undergoing elective surgery. Interestingly, correcting preoperative hyponatremia does not clearly improve outcomes. The finding of preoperative hyponatremia should prompt a search for, and optimization of, potential underlying diseases. In moderate-to-severe hyponatremia, nonurgent surgery should probably be postponed to allow for gradual correction of hyponatremia (see later discussion).

Postoperative hyponatremia. As previously discussed, the surgical stress response, aggravated by periods of hypotension and pain-related or physiologic stress-related sympathetic activity, can lead to a state of Na^+ and water retention similar to SIADH. Avid water retention puts postoperative patients at risk for hyponatremia, particularly when administration of free water from IV dextrose-containing or other hypotonic solutions is ongoing. The incidence of postoperative hyponatremia is 1% to 5%, with children and premenopausal females at particularly high risk for neurologic

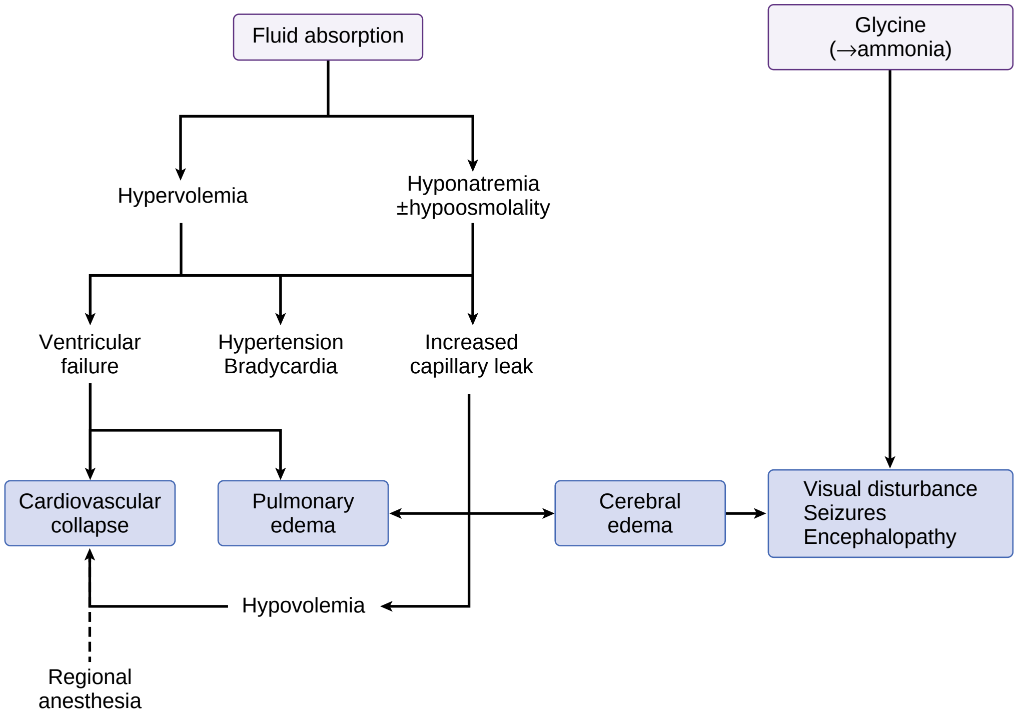


Fig. 47.4 The transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) syndrome. Early hypervolemia-related hypertension may be followed by profound hypotension as a result of increased capillary filtration with hypovolemia, depressed cardiac function, and sympathetic blockade. Glycine itself may lead to seizures through allosteric activation of the *N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptor and is thought to cause the visual disturbance of the TURP syndrome. The hepatic deamination of glycine yields ammonia, which can further contribute to encephalopathy. (Modified from Gravenstein D. Transurethral resection of the prostate [TURP] syndrome: a review of the pathophysiology and management. *Anesth Analg.* 1997;84:438.)

symptoms. In these groups, symptoms and neurologic sequelae may occur at Na^+ levels as high as 128 mEq/L. Elderly women typically do not become symptomatic until 120 mEq/L, unless the decrease is particularly rapid. The potential impact of postoperative hyponatremia is considerable; 8% of hyponatremic patients may develop encephalopathy, of whom 52% suffer permanent neurologic sequelae or death.[116] Failure to recognize hyponatremia as a cause of postoperative symptoms (see later discussion) or inadequate treatment based on fears of causing osmotic demyelination may contribute to these poor outcomes.[117] Prevention of postoperative hyponatremia should be a key goal of postoperative fluid therapy, based on limiting free water administration to pure maintenance requirements (1-1.2 mL/kg/h), replacing losses of Na^+-containing fluids (e.g., GI) with an appropriate isotonic salt solution, stopping IV therapy as soon as the oral route can be used, and daily (or more frequent in high-risk groups) monitoring of serum electrolytes.

TRANSURETHRAL RESECTION OF THE PROSTATE SYNDROME. The transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) syndrome describes symptomatic hyponatremia, excessive intravascular volume, and edema resulting from IV absorption of hypotonic nonconductive (electrolyte-free) irrigation fluid during TURP or, rarely, transurethral resection of the bladder[118] or during ureteroscopic or hysteroscopic procedures. The syndrome may complicate 10% to 15% of TURP procedures, with onset between 15 minutes and 24 hours after the onset of resection.[119] Risk factors include increased intravesical pressure, prolonged resection, hypotonic irrigants, and open prostatic sinuses. The clinical features (Fig. 47.4) are related to intravascular volume changes, hyponatremia, and absorption of irrigant solutes; the use of distilled water as an irrigant has largely been replaced by solutions of glycine, sorbitol, or mannitol because of the incidence of massive hemolysis. Hyponatremia resulting from free water absorption may lead to hypoosmolality, although the presence of glycine or other osmotically active solutes may maintain osmolality in the normal range. The following measures may help prevent the TURP syndrome:

- The use of conducting (isotonic saline) irrigant with bipolar diathermy.[120]
- Monitoring fluid absorption by comparing the amount instilled with the amount removed. Surgery should be halted if 750 mL (for females) or 1000 mL (for males) has been absorbed and the patient should be assessed for Na^+ levels and neurologic status (if awake). Surgery should be terminated if 1000 to 1500 mL (for females) or more than 2000 mL (for males) has been absorbed. If saline irrigant is used, surgery should be terminated after 2500 mL has been absorbed. Although the risk for hypoosmolar hyponatremia is removed, the risk for excessive intravascular volume remains.[121,122]
- Limiting the duration of irrigation: irrigation should continue only for longer than 1 hour after careful assessment of the patient for possible TURP syndrome.
- Limiting intravesical pressure to less than 15 to 25 mm Hg or 70 mm Hg for endometrial procedures.
- Monitoring the patient's neurologic status by using regional anesthetic techniques. Symptoms in the awake patient include nausea and vomiting, visual disturbance, reduced level of consciousness, agitation, confusion, and seizures.

Treatment of the TURP syndrome should take into account the patient's intravascular volume status, Na^+ level, and osmolality, but typically involves cessation of irrigation solutions and water restriction. A loop diuretic should be given to promote free water excretion if intravascular volume overload is present. In severe hypoosmolar hyponatremia with neurologic symptoms, hypertonic saline may be used. When osmolality is normal or marginally decreased, hemodialysis is preferred.[123] Mg^{2+} can be given for seizures, because its negative control of NMDA receptors counteracts dilutional hypomagnesemia and the excitatory effects of glycine.[119]

PRESENTATION AND TREATMENT OF HYPONATREMIA. The symptoms of hyponatremia are related to cerebral edema and increased intracranial pressure and are highly dependent on how rapidly the hyponatremia occurred. In acute onset, symptoms typically occur when Na^+ concentrations are as low as 120 to 125 mEq/L (higher in children and premenopausal females) with headache, confusion, agitation, vomiting, and lethargy. At Na^+ concentrations less than 110 mEq/L, symptoms progress to seizures and coma. In the chronic setting, clinical features may be absent even at concentrations less than 120 mEq/L. In all cases of hyponatremia, potential underlying causes such as steroid deficiency, renal disease, and cardiac disease should be identified and treated. Treatment should be tailored to the patient's intravascular volume status, the chronicity of onset, and the presence of symptoms. Chronic hyponatremia (>48 hours or of unknown duration) should be treated cautiously because of cerebral compensation for the hypoosmolar state; sudden increases in osmolality lead to cerebral water loss and osmotic demyelination (e.g., central pontine myelinolysis). Treatment options for other scenarios are listed below:

- Hypovolemic hyponatremia: Symptoms are unusual because osmotic shifts in the brain are limited by the loss of both Na^+ and water. ECF volume should be restored with isotonic saline, which will also reduce ongoing ADH release.
- Hypervolemic hyponatremia: In chronic cases, this should focus on restriction of water intake and optimization of the underlying disease state, such as improving cardiac output with angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors to reduce the neurohumoral influence on water retention in cardiac failure. Loop diuretics (rather than thiazides, which impair urinary dilution) can be used to excrete free water once a negative Na^+ balance has been achieved.
- Chronic, asymptomatic hyponatremia: No immediate correction of hyponatremia is required, and the underlying cause should be treated. Fluid restriction, ADH antagonists (lithium, demeclocycline), and loop diuretics may be used.
- Symptomatic hyponatremia (typically euvolemic or hypervolemic): In patients with moderate symptoms (confusion, lethargy, nausea, and vomiting), hypertonic 3% saline may be used at an initial rate of 1 mL/kg/h with the goal of increasing $[Na^+]$ by 1 mEq/L/h for 3 to 4 hours, after which electrolytes should be rechecked. The infusion rate should be modified to ensure that $[Na^+]$ is increased by no more than 10 mEq/L in the first 24 hours of treatment. Severely symptomatic hyponatremia (coma, seizures, often with $[Na^+]$ <120 mEq/L) is typically of acute onset and the risks of undertreating are more than those of osmotic demyelination. A bolus of 100 mL of 3% saline should initially be given with the aim of acutely increasing $[Na^+]$ by 2 to 3 mEq/L. If no improvement in neurologic status occurs, this approach may be repeated once or twice at 10-minute intervals. After this, treatment should continue as for moderately symptomatic patients, with a similar goal of increasing $[Na^+]$ by no more than 10 mEq/L in the first 24 hours.[124] Electrolytes and osmolality should be rechecked every few hours, fluid balance should be carefully monitored, and patients reassessed regularly.

HYPERNATREMIA. Hypernatremia ([Na] >145 mEq/L) is less common than hyponatremia but may affect up to 10% of critically ill patients. If severe ([Na] >160 mEq/L), a 75% mortality may occur depending on the severity of the underlying disease process (Fig. 47.5).[113,114] The major mechanisms are excessive water loss with inadequate compensatory intake, lack of ADH, or administration of exogenous sodium. Diabetes insipidus (DI) is caused by a lack of ADH action as a result of impaired production or release (central DI) or reduced renal sensitivity to ADH (nephrogenic DI) with consequent failure to concentrate urine and excretion of large quantities of inappropriately dilute urine. If the patient is unable to accept compensatory fluid orally (e.g., because of coma or in the elderly with impaired thirst reflexes), they may rapidly become hypovolemic. Central DI is seen after pituitary surgery, subarachnoid hemorrhage, traumatic brain injury (particularly skull base fractures), and brainstem death. Nephrogenic DI may be due to renal disease, electrolyte disorders, or drugs (lithium, foscarnet, amphotericin B, demeclocycline).

Clinical features of hypernatremia include altered mental status, lethargy, irritability, seizures, hyperreflexia, and spasticity. Diagnosis is based on assessment of intravascular volume status, urinary osmolality, and Na^+ concentration. In patients with persistent urine output of more than 100 mL/h and hypernatremia, DI should be considered. Diagnostic criteria include an inappropriately dilute urine (<300 mOsm/kg) in combination with hypernatremia and high serum osmolality (>305 mOsm/kg). Urine specific gravity (SG) may provide a rapid guide to urine osmolality where urgent treatment is being considered; urine SG less than 1.005 in the context of hypernatremia and a potential underlying cause is consistent with DI.

Treatment is tailored to the intravascular volume status, but as with hyponatremia, correction of the Na^+ concentration should be no more rapid than 10 mEq/L/day unless the onset has been very acute.

- Hypovolemic hypernatremia: correction of the intravascular volume deficit with isotonic saline and correction of the underlying cause (e.g., insulin to reduce hyperglycemia), then correction of the water deficit with 0.45% saline, 5% dextrose, or enteral water to cover the deficit and ongoing losses.
- Euvolemic hypernatremia: use of 0.45% saline, 5% dextrose, or enteral water to replace the deficit and ongoing losses. In central DI, in which urine output is greater than 250 mL/h and risk exists for hypovolemia, titrated

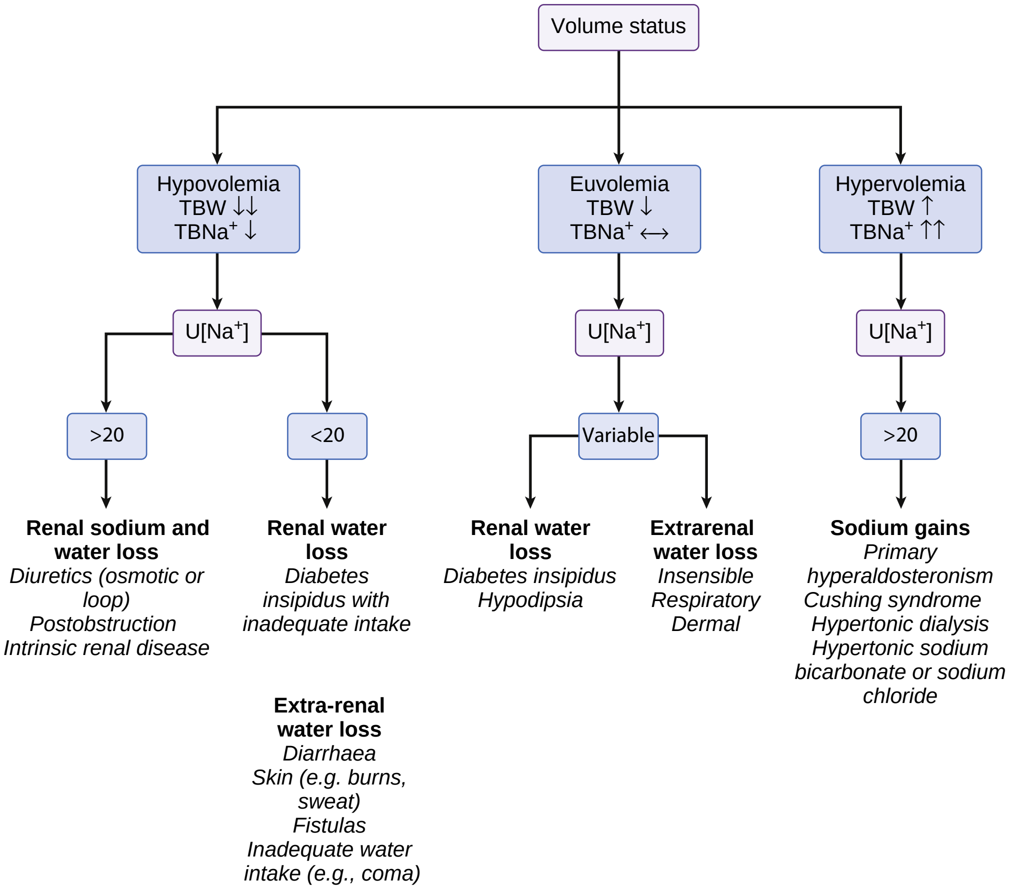

Volume status
Hypovolemia
TBW ↓↓
TBNa+ ↓
Euvolemia
TBW ↓
TBNa+ ↔
Hypervolemia
TBW ↑
TBNa+ ↑↑
U[Na+]
U[Na+]
U[Na+]
>20
<20
Variable
>20
Renal sodium and water loss
Diuretics (osmotic or loop)
Postobstruction
Intrinsic renal disease
Renal water loss
Diabetes insipidus with inadequate intake
Renal water loss
Diabetes insipidus
Hypodipsia
Extrarenal water loss
Insensible
Respiratory
Dermal
Sodium gains
Primary hyperaldosteronism
Cushing syndrome
Hypertonic dialysis
Hypertonic sodium bicarbonate or sodium chloride
Extra-renal water loss
Diarrhaea
Skin (e.g. burns, sweat)
Fistulas
Inadequate water intake (e.g., coma)

Fig. 47.5 Causes and diagnostic algorithm for hypernatremia. *TBW*, Total body water; *U[Na+]*, urinary sodium concentration in mEq/L. (Modified from Kumar S, Berl T. Sodium. *Lancet*. 1998;352:220.)

intravenous doses of desmopressin acetate 0.4 to 1 µg (1-deamino-8-D-arginine vasopressin [DDAVP], an ADH analogue) should be given to reduce the urine output. Higher acute doses may have a prolonged effect with the risk for water intoxication.[113,114]

- Hypervolemic hypernatremia: stop administration of exogenous Na^+, give furosemide with 5% dextrose or enteral water. Dialysis may be indicated in the presence of renal failure.

Potassium Disorders. Because of the key role of K^+ on excitable tissue resting membrane potential, dyskalemia can lead to life-threatening cardiac arrhythmias in the perioperative period. The normally predominant intracellular distribution of K^+ means that abnormal plasma K^+ levels may reflect abnormal ECF to ICF distribution, derangements of total body K^+ content, or both. Sampling artifacts may be introduced into laboratory tests of K^+; anticoagulated samples typically give results 0.4 to 0.5 mEq/L less than those from clotted samples because of erythrocyte K^+ release during clotting. Hemolysis also artificially increases K^+ levels and may be introduced by poor sampling technique or delayed processing of samples.

HYPOKALEMIA. Hypokalemia (<3.5 mEq/L) may be caused by the conditions outlined in Table 47.7. Moderate-to-severe hypokalemia (2-2.5 mEq/L) leads to muscle weakness, electrocardiogram (ECG) abnormalities (ST segment depression, T wave depression, U wave elevation), and arrhythmias (atrial fibrillation and ventricular extrasystoles). All logic dictates that hypokalemia (e.g., as low as 2.6 mEq/L) should be associated with an increased rate of perioperative morbidity or mortality; however, no data support this conclusion.[18] Hypokalemia should be pragmatically corrected in the perioperative period to optimize neuromuscular function and reduce cardiac irritability. Such treatment is of prime importance when acute arrhythmias exist, and K^+ should be maintained at greater than 4 to 4.5 mEq/L. The speed of the infusion should be slow enough to allow equilibration throughout the entire ECF, typically no faster than 0.5 mEq/kg/h. K^+ solutions of concentration more than 40 mEq/L may be an irritant to veins and should be administered via a central venous catheter.

HYPERKALEMIA. Hyperkalemia (>5.5 mEq/L) may result from excess intake, failure of excretion, or shift from the intracellular to extracellular compartment (Table 47.8). Failure of renal secretion is mediated through impaired principal cell function in the cortical collecting duct, which depends on aldosterone-stimulated Na^+/K^+ exchange via basal Na^+/K^+ATPases and luminal Na^+ and K^+ channels. The features of hyperkalemia include muscle weakness, paralysis, and altered cardiac conduction (increased

TABLE 47.7 Causes and Mechanisms of Hypokalemia

Mechanism	Cause	Notes
Inadequate intake	Anorexia nervosa	
	Alcoholism	
	Malnutrition	
Gastrointestinal loss	Vomiting	
	Diarrhea	Especially secretory diarrhea
	Fistulas	
Excess renal loss	Mineralocorticoid excess	Primary and secondary hyperaldosteronism
	Glucocorticoid excess	High concentration of cortisol overwhelms mineralocorticoid receptor despite lower affinity
	Diuretics	Loop or thiazide diuretics deliver increased Na$^+$ load to principal cells
	Osmotic substances	Glucose, urea, and mannitol also lead to increased collecting duct Na$^+$ delivery
	Hypomagnesemia	Impairs thick ascending limb Na$^+$ reabsorption; therefore, increased distal N$^+$ delivery and K$^+$ loss via principal cells
	Renal tubular acidosis	Failure of principal cell H$^+$/K$^+$ exchange
	Bartter and Gitelman syndromes	Tubule ion transporter mutations mimicking loop or thiazide diuretic effect, respectively
Intracellular K$^+$ shift	β_2-Agonists	Also seen in sympathetic activity
	Insulin therapy	
	Acute alkalosis	
	Lithium overdose	
	Hypokalemic periodic paralysis	
	Vitamin B_{12} therapy	

Modified from Kaye AD, Riopelle JM. Intravascular fluid and electrolyte physiology. In: Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleisher LA, et al, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia.* 7th ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 2009:1705.

TABLE 47.8 Causes and Mechanisms of Hyperkalemia

Mechanism	Cause	Notes
Increased intake	Excessive K$^+$ treatment	
	Blood transfusion	Typically in patients who also have impaired excretion (i.e., severe chronic kidney disease)
	Antibiotics containing K$^+$ salts	
Failure of renal secretion	Mineralocorticoid deficiency	Hypoaldosteronism Hyporeninemic, hypoaldosteronemic state (diabetic nephropathy, tubulointerstitial disease)
	Drugs causing mineralocorticoid blockade	Spironolactone (blocks mineralocorticoid receptor) ACE-I and ARBs (reduce aldosterone production) Heparin (selective hypoaldosteronism)
	Collecting duct Na$^+$ channel blockade	Amiloride Trimethoprim Triamterene Pentamidine
	Tubulointerstitial nephritis	Cause damage or destruction of the cortical collecting duct
	Renal obstruction	
Extracellular K$^+$ shift	Succinylcholine	
	Reperfusion of ischemic tissues	Cellular ischemia reduces ATP production with failure of Na$^+$/K$^+$ATPase activity and K$^+$ "leak" to the ECF. Cell lysis further releases K$^+$. On reperfusion, excess ECF K$^+$ is rapidly delivered to the systemic circulation. During solid organ transplantation, this may be combined with residual perfusing solution used for ex vivo organ preservation, which contains a high K$^+$ content
	Insulin deficiency	
	Acute acidosis	
	Malignant hyperpyrexia	

ACE-I, Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor; *ARBs,* angiotensin II receptor blockers; *ATP*, adenosine triphosphate; *ECF,* extracellular fluid.

automaticity and enhanced repolarization) with consequent ECG changes as K$^+$ levels increase[125]:

- 5.5 to 6.5 mEq/L: tall, peaked T-waves
- 6.5 to 7.5 mEq/L: prolonged PR interval
- Greater than 7.5 mEq/L: widened QRS
- Greater than 9.0 mEq/L: sine wave pattern, bradycardia, ventricular tachycardia, increased risk for cardiac arrest

Chronically induced hyperkalemia (e.g., chronic renal failure) is better tolerated than acute increases in K$^+$ concentrations. Ratios between intracellular and extracellular K$^+$ concentrations may be very abnormal with acute hyperkalemia. With chronic hyperkalemia, these ratios are probably reestablished to normal. Acute hyperkalemia sufficient to induce electrocardiographic changes is a medical emergency that requires rapid treatment. The acute treatment of hyperkalemia involves shifting K$^+$ from the ECF to ICF, antagonizing its cardiac toxicity with Ca^{2+}, and increasing renal excretion. Elimination by GI resin exchange also may be used in more chronic cases (Table 47.9). Hyperkalemia greater than 6.5 mEq/L, in the context of anuric renal failure, is an indication for acute dialysis.

Calcium Disorders

HYPOCALCEMIA. The causes of hypocalcemia are related to reduced PTH and/or vitamin D activity, increased bone deposition, Ca^{2+} chelation, or changes in binding protein concentration or ionized fraction (Table 47.10). The

TABLE 47.9 Treatments for Hyperkalemia

Mechanism	Treatment	Indication	Notes
Antagonize cardiac toxicity	$CaCl_2$ 10% (10 mL) or Calcium gluconate	K^+ >6.5 mEq/L, particularly with ECG changes	Onset of action within a few minutes, duration 30-60 min
Intracellular potassium shift	Insulin 10-20 units (administered in 50 mL 50% glucose to avoid hypoglycemia)	K^+ >6.0 mEq/L	Onset within 10-20 min, duration 4-6 h
	β_2-Agonists (e.g., nebulized albuterol 2.5 mg)		
	Hyperventilation		Induce K^+ uptake by increasing extracellular pH
	$NaHCO_3$ 1 mEq/kg	K^+ >6.5 mEq/L	
Increase renal excretion	Furosemide 20-40 mg IV	Moderate-to-severe hyperkalemia	Increases Na^+ delivery to cortical collecting duct and exchange with K^+
	Volume expansion with isotonic saline		
	Fludrocortisone		Mineralocorticoid effect
Other routes of K^+ elimination	Gastrointestinal resin exchange: sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate) 15-30 g PO or per rectum	Any sustained hyperkalemia	
	Hemodialysis	Moderate-to-severe hyperkalemia with oliguria	

Hyperkalemia can be defined as mild (5.5-5.9 mEq/L), moderate (6.0-6.4 mEq/L) or severe (>6.5 mEq/L), with or without ECG changes.[258]
ECG, Electrocardiogram.

TABLE 47.10 Causes and Mechanisms of Hypocalcemia

Mechanism	Cause	Notes
Reduced regulatory hormones	Hypoparathyroidism	Postparathyroid or thyroid surgery. May be acute effect of reduced PTH or more long-term hypocalcemia during remineralization of bone after surgery for hyperparathyroidism ("hungry bone syndrome") Hypomagnesemia (suppresses PTH secretion)
	Pseudohypoparathyroidism	Reduced receptor response to PTH
	Reduced vitamin D activity	Hyperphosphatemia (inhibits hydroxylation—e.g., in chronic kidney disease) Dietary/sunlight deficiency Anticonvulsants (increased turnover into inactive forms)
Ca^{2+} chelation	Massive transfusion	Caused by citrate in stored red blood cell solutions
	Cell lysis	Phosphate release as a result of tumor lysis syndrome, trauma, or rhabdomyolysis
	Pancreatitis	Intraperitoneal free fatty acids formed by the action of released pancreatic lipase, which chelate Ca^{2+} salts; further contributions from coexistent hypomagnesemia and hypoalbuminemia
Increased bone deposition	Prostate, breast cancer	Increased osteoclastic activity
Reduced ionized fraction	Alkalosis	For example, acute intraoperative hyperventilation
Reduced bound Ca^{2+}	Hypoalbuminemia	Critical illness (where ionized Ca^{2+} may be normal, and Ca^{2+} replacement not required), poor nutrition
Unknown mechanism	Endotoxemic shock	

PTH, Parathyroid hormone.

following are characteristic symptoms, some of which will be absent in the anesthetized patient:

- Neuromuscular irritability
  - Circumoral and peripheral paresthesia
  - Chvostek sign (facial twitching induced by tapping on the facial nerve)
  - Trousseau sign (forearm muscular spasm induced by inflating a pressure cuff)
  - Muscle cramps
  - Laryngospasm
  - Tetany
  - Seizures
- Cardiac
  - Impaired inotropy
  - Prolonged QT
  - Ventricular fibrillation
  - Heart block

After a rapid large volume transfusion of citrate-stored blood (>1.5 mL/kg/min) or fresh frozen plasma, ionized hypocalcemia may occur as a result of citrate chelation. This may be particularly severe and prolonged in patients with hepatic impairment, in whom citrate metabolism is reduced.[126] Citrate intoxication has been described for

TABLE 47.11 Causes and Mechanisms of Hypercalcemia

Mechanism	Cause	Notes
Increased PTH	Primary hyperparathyroidism	The most common cause typically manifests with mild hypercalcemia resulting from an isolated parathyroid adenoma
	Secondary and tertiary hyperparathyroidism	The hypocalcemia of kidney disease-related hyperparathyroidism may progress to hypercalcemia with prolonged disease
Malignancy	PTH-related peptide secretion	PTH-rP may be secreted by most solid tumors; mimics PTH effects
	Osteolytic metastases	Breast, lung, lymphoma, thyroid, kidney, prostate, and multiple myeloma
	Calcitriol production	Typical in lymphoma
Excess vitamin D	Ectopic production	Granulomatous disease (e.g., sarcoid), malignancy
	Excess intake	
Decreased renal excretion	Thiazide diuretics	
Increased bone turnover	Hyperthyroidism	
	Immobilization	
Increased Ca^{2+} intake	Milk-alkali syndrome	

PTH, Parathyroid hormone; *PTH-rP,* parathyroid hormone–related peptide.

many years but is rarely a clinical problem. Although Ca^{2+} plays an important role in coagulation, coagulopathy specifically attributable to hypocalcemia only occurs at ionized Ca^{2+} concentrations less than 1.2 mEq/L (0.625 mmol/L); rather, supplemental Ca^{2+} should be given in this situation to support cardiac inotropy and neuromuscular function, aiming for ionized Ca^{2+} more than 1.8 mEq/L (0.9 mmol/L).[127] Ca^{2+} also may be given during other situations in which myocardial contractility is impaired, such as during cardiac surgery, to optimize ventricular function. After parathyroidectomy, Ca^{2+} levels should be checked frequently until they have stabilized, because Ca^{2+} and vitamin D supplementation may be required in both the short and long term. In critical illness, total Ca^{2+} levels may be reduced because of hypoalbuminemia; however, Ca^{2+} supplementation should be required only if the ionized levels are low. Ca^{2+} may be given intravenously as 10% (weight/volume) calcium gluconate or 10% (weight/volume) $CaCl_2$. Although in these formulations calcium gluconate contains less elemental Ca^{2+} (0.45 mEq/mL vs. 1.36 mEq/mL for $CaCl_2$), they are equally efficacious as long as the total Ca content given is equal. Calcium gluconate may be preferable for peripheral administration because the tissue injury from inadvertent extravasation is less severe than with $CaCl_2$. Mg^{2+} levels are often low during hypocalcemia and should also be corrected, particularly when hypocalcemia has been caused by infusion of isotonic saline or colloids in large volumes.

HYPERCALCEMIA. Hypercalcemia occurs when ECF Ca^{2+} influx from the GI tract and/or bone outweighs efflux to bone or excretion via the kidneys (Table 47.11). The symptoms are related to the severity and speed of onset of the abnormality, so mild chronic hypercalcemia is usually asymptomatic. More severe hypercalcemia manifests with neurologic symptoms (drowsiness, weakness, depression, lethargy, coma), GI symptoms (constipation, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, peptic ulcers), renal manifestations (nephrogenic diabetes insipidus—which may further aggravate hypercalcemia through dehydration—and renal stones), electrocardiographic abnormalities (shortened QT interval, prolonged PR interval), and potentiation of digoxin toxicity. Treatment should address the underlying cause, including surgical parathyroidectomy in cases of severe hyperparathyroidism, or cessation of thiazide diuretics. In addition, the treatment of symptomatic hypercalcemia should aim to increase renal Ca^{2+} excretion by volume expansion with isotonic saline and possibly loop diuretics. This combination may reduce Ca^{2+} by 1 to 3 mg/dL in 1 to 2 days.[26] Bisphosphonates enhance osteoclastic bone deposition and are given if the hypercalcemia is severe or in milder cases in which response to hydration has been inadequate. A single IV dose of pamidronate 60 mg (moderate hypercalcemia, up to 13.5 mg/dL) or 90 mg (severe hypercalcemia) should return Ca^{2+} levels to normal within 7 days, and the effect may persist for up to 1 month. Zoledronic acid is a newer bisphosphonate that may be even more effective and is given intravenously at a dose of 4 mg.[128] Bisphosphonates should only be given when clinical dehydration has been treated to avoid calcium bisphosphonate precipitation and nephrotoxicity. Glucocorticoids may also be given for hypercalcemia associated with lymphoproliferative disease or ectopic vitamin D production.[129] Calcitonin increases renal Ca^{2+} excretion and reduces bone resorption for up to 48 hours when given intramuscularly or intravenously and may contribute to a mild reduction in Ca^{2+} levels during the rehydration phase.

Magnesium Disorders

HYPOMAGNESEMIA. Serum Mg^{2+} concentration may be a poor indicator of total body content because of its large distribution in the intracellular compartment and slow equilibration with bone stores. Intraerythrocyte or intralymphocyte Mg^{2+} levels may give a better approximation of total body and tissue stores, but are more complex to process.[130,131] Both chronic and acute hypomagnesemia are associated with cardiovascular morbidity[29] and are particularly prevalent in diverse hospitalized patients (12% of general inpatients, 19% of preoperative cardiac surgery patients, 65% of critical care patients). The causes

TABLE 47.12 Causes and Mechanisms of Hypomagnesemia

Mechanism	Cause
Inadequate gastrointestinal uptake	Malnutrition Prolonged vomiting or diarrhea Intestinal fistula Pancreatitis Prolonged nasogastric suction Malabsorption syndromes Small bowel syndrome Primary intestinal hypomagnesemia
Increased renal losses	Chronic parenteral fluid therapy Hypercalcemia and hypercalciuria Osmotic diuresis Drugs: Alcohol, loop and thiazide diuretics, aminoglycosides, cisplatin, amphotericin, cyclosporin, foscarnet Phosphate depletion Hungry bone syndrome Postobstructive nephropathy Renal transplantation Polyuric phase of acute kidney injury Primary hyperparathyroidism Bartter and Gitelman syndromes

are related to reduced Mg^{2+} intake from the GI tract or increased renal losses (Table 47.12), although relative depletion may occur in times of increased cell turnover and protein production (pregnancy, athletes, cold acclimatization). The clinical presentation of hypomagnesemia may be nonspecific; symptoms often relate to common coexisting hypocalcemia or hypokalemia[32]:

- Neuromuscular: Trousseau and Chvostek signs, vertigo, seizures, weakness
- Metabolic: Carbohydrate intolerance, hyperinsulinemia, atherosclerosis
- Cardiovascular: Wide QRS, prolonged PR, T-wave inversion, ventricular arrhythmias
- Musculoskeletal: Osteoporosis and osteomalacia

Treatment should be tailored to the severity of symptoms and degree of hypomagnesemia. Asymptomatic patients with moderate-severe hypomagnesemia should receive oral supplementation, as acute IV infusions will stimulate the renal Ca^{2+}/Mg^{2+}-sensing receptor, reducing Mg^{2+} reabsorption and leading to renal excretion of much of the acute dose. In the presence of symptoms or Mg^{2+} concentration of less than 1 mg/dL, IV Mg^{2+} should be administered (initial dose of 1-2 gm over 5 to 10 minutes in the presence of seizures or acute arrhythmias).[32] Coexistent hypocalcemia, hypokalemia, or both should also be treated, but they are unlikely to improve without replenishment of Mg^{2+}. Mg^{2+} has many other therapeutic indications, even in the absence of hypomagnesemia, as outlined earlier. A few of these patients are likely to have total body Mg^{2+} depletion that has not been detected by serum Mg^{2+} levels.

HYPERMAGNESEMIA. Limited GI absorption and efficient renal excretion mean that hypermagnesemia is typically iatrogenic. Symptoms reflect the effect of Mg^{2+} on neurologic and cardiac function and relate to the serum concentration[18]:

- 5 to 7 mg/dL: Therapeutic levels in the treatment of preeclampsia
- 5 to 10 mg/dL: Impaired cardiac conduction (widened QRS, long PR), nausea
- 20 to 34 mg/dL: Sedation, reduced neuromuscular transmission with hypoventilation, reduced tendon reflexes, and muscle weakness
- 24 to 48 mg/dL: Diffuse vasodilation with hypotension, bradycardia
- 48 to 72 mg/dL: Areflexia, coma, respiratory paralysis

Mg^{2+} administration should therefore be performed with several important caveats. First, serum Mg^{2+} levels should be monitored closely during therapeutic administration. Second, because excretion is renal, doses should be decreased for patients with kidney disease. Third, it should be used with extreme caution in patients with a background impairment of neuromuscular transmission (myasthenia gravis, Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome). Fourth, coadministration of neuromuscular blockers during anesthesia should be performed in reduced doses titrated to neuromuscular monitoring, because Mg^{2+} potentiates the effects of both depolarizing and nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers. Treatment of acute hypermagnesemia includes promoting renal excretion by administration of fluids intravenously and diuresis. IV Ca^{2+} is given to temporarily antagonize Mg^{2+} and avoid diuretic-induced hypocalcemia. Definitive treatment, particularly in the presence of renal disease, may require dialysis.

Phosphate Disorders

HYPOPHOSPHATEMIA. Hypophosphatemia may be related to impaired enteral uptake, increased renal excretion, or shifts to the cellular compartment or bone (Table 47.13). Symptoms of hypophosphatemia may be precipitated by hyperventilation in patients with chronic depletion. Refeeding syndrome may be observed on commencement of enteral or parenteral nutrition after a period of prolonged starvation and may manifest postoperatively. Insulin secretion is decreased during starvation. The consequent fat and protein catabolism results in intracellular electrolyte depletion despite normal plasma levels, particularly phosphate. On refeeding, a switch back occurs to carbohydrate metabolism, increased insulin secretion, and an increased cellular uptake of PO_4^{3-}, which may lead to profound hypophosphatemia. In the most severe forms (<1.5 mg/dL), features may include rhabdomyolysis, leukocyte dysfunction, cardiac and respiratory failure, seizures, hypotension, and coma. IV PO_4^{3-} replacement carries a risk for precipitating severe hypocalcemia, so should be reserved for moderate (<2.2 mg/dL) to severe or symptomatic cases and avoided in cases of ongoing hypocalcemia. Replacement protocols should be based on patient weight and serum PO_4^{3-}.[132]

HYPERPHOSPHATEMIA. The causes of hyperphosphatemia are shown in Table 47.13. The most common cause in clinical practice is renal failure, in which the filtered PO_4^{3-} load is reduced. This may be partly compensated for in mild chronic kidney disease by increased PTH secretion and inhibition of tubular PO_4^{3-} reabsorption, but in more severe kidney disease hyperphosphatemia must be controlled with

TABLE 47.13 Causes and Mechanisms of Phosphate Abnormalities

HYPOPHOSPHATEMIA		HYPERPHOSPHATEMIA	
Mechanism	**Cause**	**Mechanism**	**Cause**
Internal redistribution	Respiratory alkalosis	Increased endogenous load	Tumor lysis syndrome
	Refeeding		Rhabdomyolysis
	Hormones (insulin, glucagon, epinephrine, cortisol)		Bowel infarction
	Sepsis		Malignant hyperthermia
	Hungry bone syndrome		Hemolysis
Increased urinary excretion	Hyperparathyroidism		Acidosis
	Disorders of vitamin D metabolism	Increased exogenous load	Intravenous infusion
	Renal transplant		Oral supplementation
	Volume expansion		Vitamin D intoxication
	Malabsorption	Reduced urinary excretion	Renal failure
	Renal tubular defects		Hypoparathyroidism
	Alcoholism		Acromegaly
	Metabolic or respiratory acidosis		Tumor calcinosis
Decreased intestinal absorption	Dietary restriction		Bisphosphonate therapy
	Excess antacids		Magnesium deficiency
	Vitamin D deficiency	Pseudohyperphosphatemia	Multiple myeloma
	Chronic diarrhea		In vitro hemolysis
			Hypertriglyceridemia

Data from Weisinger JR, Bellorín-Font E. Magnesium and phosphorus. *Lancet.* 1998;352:391.

oral PO_4^{3-} binders. The features of hyperphosphatemia may be related to symptomatic hypocalcemia caused by an acute elevation in PO_4^{3-} levels. Hypocalcemia is mediated via Ca^+ deposition in soft tissues when the calcium × phosphate product is elevated, and by inhibition of renal 1α-hydroxylase.[32]

Chloride Disorders. Disorders of Cl^- have the potential to affect acid-base balance, although this depends on the other constituents of the SID. As described, exogenous Cl^- administration from isotonic saline will increase the plasma Cl^- concentration with a lesser effect on Na^+ concentration, thus reducing the plasma SID and therefore pH. Conversely, disease states exemplified by both hyperchloremia and hypernatremia or by hypochloremia and hyponatremia will not affect the SID and therefore not alter pH. Many of the causes of Cl^- abnormalities (Table 47.14) are pathologic processes that also affect Na^+ levels. Investigation and treatment of these "matched" electrolyte imbalances should initially target the dysnatremia.

PRACTICAL MANAGEMENT OF PERIOPERATIVE FLUID THERAPY

At each stage in the perioperative journey, the physician must decide how much and what type of IV fluid is required. Unfortunately, a robust evidence base with answers to these questions is not always available, so a pragmatic approach based on sound physiologic knowledge and the best available evidence is required. To make the process more complicated, fluid and electrolyte requirements are a dynamic situation with great inter-individual variability. Different fluid requirements are encountered in the preoperative, intraoperative, and postoperative phases, and these vary depending on patient factors, including weight and comorbidity, and on surgical factors, such as the magnitude and site of surgery. Furthermore, the goals of fluid therapy vary depending on the severity of surgery and its associated morbidity. In "low-risk" minor surgery, fluid strategies may influence the incidence of relatively minor morbidity such as nausea and vomiting,[133,134] whereas in major surgery the focus is on the potential for fluid administration to affect postoperative morbidity, length of stay, and mortality.[111,135,136]

The goals of fluid therapy for major surgery are as follows:

- To ensure adequate circulating volume to support cellular O_2 delivery and avoid the deleterious effects of hypoperfusion on cellular function and survival, inflammation, and neurohumoral responses. This may involve manipulation of not just circulating volume but also of cardiac output and vascular resistance.
- To avoid the iatrogenic side effects of fluid administration; excessive intravascular volume (which may not be readily apparent clinically), edema, excess Na^+ or Cl^- load, toxicities related to synthetic compounds, or nonphysiologic quantities of anions (lactate, acetate, gluconate).

Large studies show that even during relatively standardized surgical procedures, there is a large variety in the volumes of fluid administered. This unexplained variability may be linked with postoperative morbidity, and regrettably appears to be more closely related to the approach of the individual anesthesia provider rather than justifiable patient or surgical factors.[107,137] A number of approaches are still being investigated in an effort to determine the optimum quantity and type of fluid that should be given in order to achieve these goals in perioperative care.

Quantity of Fluid

IV fluid quantities may be given in two main ways: (1) by estimating the requirements based on patient weight, the phase of surgery, and nature of losses to estimate the

TABLE 47.14 Causes and Mechanisms of Chloride Abnormalities

HYPOCHLOREMIA		HYPERCHLOREMIA	
Mechanism	**Cause**	**Mechanism**	**Cause**
Cl^- loss	Diuretics	Cl^- infusion	Cl^--rich fluids
	Gastric drainage		Parenteral nutrition
	Vomiting	Water loss	Skin
	Chronic respiratory acidosis		Fever
			Renal losses
Water balance in excess of Cl^-	Congestive cardiac failure		Diabetes insipidus
	Syndrome of inappropriate of antidiuretic hormone secretion	Water loss exceeding Cl^- loss (extrarenal)	Diarrhea
	Infusion of hypotonic fluids		Burns
		Water loss exceeding Cl^- loss (renal)	Osmotic diuresis
			Postobstructive diuresis
			Intrinsic renal disease
		Increased tubular chloride reabsorption	Renal tubular acidosis
			Recovery from diabetic ketoacidosis
			Early renal failure
			Acetazolamide
			Ureteral diversion
			Posthypocapnia

Data from Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Story D, et al. Bench-to-bedside review: chloride in critical illness. *Crit Care.* 2010;14:226.

required dose, or (2) by direct measurement of an individual's physiologic variables and administering fluid in sufficient quantities to achieve an improvement in these physiologic variables, so-called goal-directed therapy.

TABLE 47.15 The 4-2-1 Estimation of Maintenance Water Requirements

Weight	Fluid Prescription
First 10 kg	4 mL/kg/h
Second 10 kg	2 mL/kg/h
All subsequent kilograms	1 mL/kg/h

Example: A 25-kg patient would require (4 × 10) + (2 × 10) + (1 × 5) = 65 mL/h "maintenance" water.

Data from Holliday MA, Segar WE. The maintenance need for water in parenteral fluid therapy. *Pediatrics.* 1957;19:823.

Targeting Overall Fluid Balance. Traditional approaches to perioperative fluid administration are based on historical estimates of fluid requirements during fasting (e.g., using the "4-2-1" calculation; Table 47.15[138]) and during episodes of excess loss, such as when body cavities are open or bleeding occurs. The fluid volumes prescribed are then based on perceived knowledge of the movement of fluids between compartments—for example, crystalloid being used to replace blood loss in a 3:1 ratio to account for crystalloid movement into the extravascular compartment.[18] However, much of the physiologic basis of this management approach has been questioned recently.[3,11]

An extension of the milliliter-per-kilogram approach to fluid administration has been to examine whether higher (e.g., 12-18 mL/kg/h of intraoperative crystalloid) or lower (5-7 mL/kg/h) fluid doses in the immediate perioperative phase are associated with benefit after major surgery. Unfortunately, this work has been hampered by widely varying definitions of restrictive/conservative, standard, and liberal, differing fluid types (colloids/crystalloids), and different time courses over which the fluid strategy is applied. Despite these differences, a common theme is that when fluid is given based on a milliliter-per-kilogram protocol and on clinical assessment rather than to target defined physiologic endpoints, the administration of more than 3500 to 5000 mL of crystalloid solution in the immediate perioperative period is associated with increased postoperative morbidity in contrast to administration of lower fluid volumes. This may be reflected in increased weight gain, cardiopulmonary dysfunction, impaired wound healing,[111,133] delayed GI function, and increased hospital length of stay.[139,140] One study gives apparently conflicting results,[141] although this may be partly accounted for by methodologic differences with the other studies here. In the recent pragmatic international RELIEF trial,[142] 3000 patients at increased risk for complications during major abdominal surgery were randomly assigned to receive a restrictive or liberal IV fluid regimen during and up to 24 hours after surgery. The restrictive group had a median IV fluid intake of 3.7 liters and a median weight gain of 0.3 kg as compared with 6.1 L and 1.6 kg in the liberal fluid group. There was no difference in the primary outcome of disability-free survival at 1 year, but the rates of surgical-site infection (16.5% vs. 13.6%) and renal-replacement therapy (0.9% vs. 0.3%) were increased in the restrictive group. This study provides an important warning of the consequences of excessive fluid restriction, a target for weight change after surgery (+1.5 kg), and a useful benchmark recipe.

Very few studies have robustly examined the specific effects of postoperatively administered fluid volumes. Of those tackling this area, one showed an earlier return to gut function and hospital discharge when postoperative infusions were limited to 2000 mL of water and less than 100 mEq Na^+/24 h,[108] whereas another showed no difference.[143] These represent very small studies with methodologic differences.

Although it seems likely that there exists an optimum fluid volume to be given to maximize perfusion while avoiding excessive intravascular volumes, the position of this curve likely varies widely across patients and in response to different insults. This is the rationale behind individualization of fluid therapy, where objective variables are measured and targeted with fluid therapy.

Goal-Directed Therapy. The practice of GDT is based on measuring key physiologic variables related to cardiac output or global O_2 delivery and administering fluids, and possibly inotropes, vasopressors, vasodilators, and RBCs to improved tissue perfusion and clinical outcome. This approach to fluid administration is a continuous dynamic process that targets defined physiologic endpoints rather than giving fluids without objective assessments of fluid status. GDT, used both in the perioperative and critical care setting, originated from observations that survivors of high-risk surgery achieved a particular elevation in global O_2 delivery and utilization in the perioperative period.[144] Subsequent trials used hemodynamic manipulation in an effort to replicate these supranormal "survivor values" in patients undergoing major surgery (cardiac index >4.5 L/min/m^2, O_2 delivery index (DO_2I) >600 mL/min/m^2, O_2 consumption index >170 mL/min/m^2).[145,146] The GDT approach has been studied in a wide variety of surgical settings and at various time points, including during preoperative optimization, intraoperative management, and the immediate postoperative period. Various tools to measure the physiologic targets of GDT are discussed below.

- Pulmonary artery catheter (PAC). Considered to be the gold standard hemodynamic monitor, providing measured and derived values for left-heart and right-heart filling pressures, mixed and central venous saturations, cardiac output, DO_2, and VO_2 while allowing access to the central circulation. This was the tool used in the earlier GDT trials targeting increases in cardiac index and DO_2I, but its use is declining because of concerns about catheter-associated morbidity, reduced expertise in insertion and data interpretation, and the availability of less invasive tools. In countries such as the United Kingdom, its use is typically restricted to cardiac, major liver, and transplant surgery.
- Esophageal Doppler monitor (EDM). This device uses transesophageal ultrasound measurement of descending aorta blood velocity, integrating this with estimated aortic cross-sectional area to derive SV. Other measurements include peak velocity, used as an indicator of ventricular contractility, and corrected flow time (FTc), and the duration of systolic aortic blood flow corrected for heart rate. FTc may be reduced (<330 ms) by increased systemic vascular resistance (SVR), reduced SV, or both. SVR may be calculated by inputting CVP and mean arterial pressure (MAP), helping to identify whether a low FTc is due to inadequate preload or excessive afterload. Variation in SV with positive pressure ventilation (stroke volume variation, SVV) is also measured by the latest EDM models.
- Arterial pressure and waveform analysis. These monitors analyze the invasive arterial blood pressure, continuous non-invasive blood pressure from a finger cuff, or plethysmograph trace to yield two types of measurement. First, an estimate of SV (and therefore cardiac output and index) based on the principle that pulse pressure is proportional to SV when arterial compliance is constant. Interpatient variation in arterial compliance may be accounted for by regular calibration steps using lithium dilution (LiDCO Plus, LiDCO, Lake Villa, IL) or thermodilution (PiCCO, Phillips, Andover, MA) or ignored in uncalibrated monitors (LiDCO Rapid, LiDCO; FloTrac, Edwards, Washington, DC), which represent SV trends rather than absolute estimates. Second, SVV, a predictor of fluid responsiveness based on systolic pressure variation with intermittent positive-pressure ventilation, can be measured.
- Thoracic bioimpedance, relatively underexplored in perioperative interventional trials.
- CVP: Despite one study that demonstrated improved outcomes from hip fracture surgery when CVP response to intravascular fluid challenges was compared to unmonitored control,[147] CVP readings are clearly poorly predictive of intravascular blood volume and fluid responsiveness.[148]
- Echocardiography: This advanced technique is used for guiding fluid therapy and yielding information on cardiac performance and filling, but requires operator expertise and a transesophageal approach in the intraoperative setting.
- Lactate: A reduction in elevated blood lactate concentrations is used clinically as a marker of successful resuscitation.[149]
- O_2 extraction and venous O_2 saturation (SvO_2) or central venous saturation ($ScvO_2$): Inadequate tissue O_2 delivery may be signaled by increased O_2 extraction and the resultant mixed or central venous O_2 desaturation. Low $ScvO_2$ is associated with poor outcomes after high-risk surgery,[150] although it has been targeted in only one interventional study in major noncardiac surgery.[151]

A typical approach to GDT is to rapidly administer 250 mL boluses of colloid or crystalloid, aiming to increase SV by 10% or more each time. This process is continued until there is no further rise in SV, at which point ventricular filling is taken to be on the flatter part of the Starling curve. One example is in Fig. 47.6. Trials have varied in terms of the period during which this intervention is used (intraoperative or intra- and postoperative) and whether fluid loading is combined with protocolized inotrope infusion. Recent meta-analyses have highlighted the potential benefits of the GDT process. One meta-analysis with the most

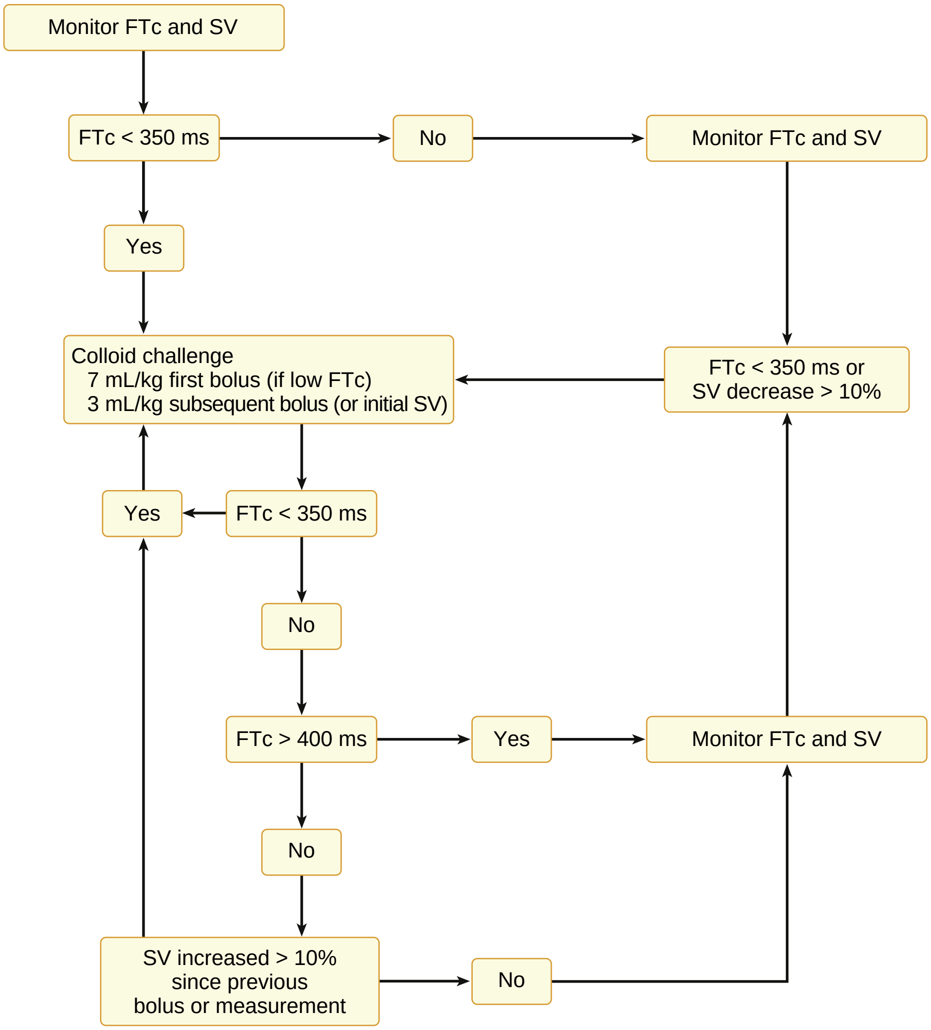


Fig. 47.6 Protocol for EDM-based intraoperative goal-directed fluid therapy. *FTc,* Heart rate-corrected descending aorta flow time; *SV,* stroke volume. (Redrawn from Noblett SE, Snowden CP, Shenton BK, et al. Randomized clinical trial assessing the effect of Doppler-optimized fluid management on outcome after elective colorectal resection. *Br J Surg.* 2006;93:1069.)

tightly defined patient group (surgery but not trauma or sepsis) and all time points (preoperative, intraoperative, and postoperative GDT) and GDT tools (PAC, EDM, and arterial waveform analysis), showed GDT to be associated with a reduction in postoperative morbidity and hospital length of stay.[136] Specifically, GDT leads to a reduction in the number of patients with postoperative renal impairment, respiratory failure, and postoperative wound infection. Many of the individual studies were not powered to detect a mortality difference; however, when analyzed rigorously in this Cochrane systematic review, excluding poorly controlled studies, hospital or 28-day mortality was reduced by GDT.[136]

The lack of more contemporary trials of adequate size to detect important outcome differences has been addressed in recent years. An increasing number of large, pragmatic clinical effectiveness trials using minimally invasive arterial waveform or Doppler devices have been completed or are in progress. Although the results of individual trials are mixed, most results appear to agree with the potential benefit of using these monitors in elective surgery suggested by the previous Cochrane meta-analysis.[152–154] Large trials aiming to give a definitive answer on this intervention are currently underway in both elective and emergency gastrointestinal surgery.

A frequent finding in GDT studies is that the intervention group receives more fluid, typically an extra 500 mL of colloid, a finding that has raised questions, as follows:

- This fluid excess may seem to be at odds with the potential benefits of a conservative fluid strategy. However, it should be noted that the fluid excess in the liberal groups of fluid balance studies is typically of greater magnitude and different type (~1500 mL of excess crystalloid overall) and is indiscriminate, in comparison to the targeted administration to some patients based on specific physiologic variables in GDT. This difference may be partly responsible for the finding that overall outcomes in “liberal” groups are worse than those in GDT groups in their respective trials.[112]
- The potential benefit of the GDT process is underlined by a failure to replicate the improved outcomes when these

fluid balance differences are used as therapeutic targets. This was shown in a study in which the intervention group subjects were uniformly administered an extra 500 mL of colloid compared with the control group, with no improvement in postoperative outcomes.[155] This suggests that it is the individualization of therapy supported by monitored variables that may bring the clinical benefit.

- Even in GDT trials with few overall differences in intravascular fluid balance between the control and intervention groups, the individualization of patient fluid requirements may be reflected in the timing of intraoperative fluid administration. In one study, early intraoperative EDM-guided fluid administration in the first quarter of surgery increased cardiac output above that of the control group, a difference that was sustained until the end of surgery and reduced postoperative morbidity.[156]

Despite the apparent benefit of GDT in the studies performed so far, further research is still required in large-scale multicenter trials to address the following:

- Although most of the GDT studies have used boluses of a variety of colloids, it is not clear if one colloid is superior or whether crystalloids could be used for boluses instead. This is particularly relevant given the cost and potential toxicities of colloids when examined in sufficiently powered studies in critical care populations.[51,84,157]
- Hemodynamic monitors are currently under rapid development, and newer devices should be compared with existing ones for their utility in guiding GDT. Ultimately, as newer technologies are evaluated, the potential benefits of GDT may relate to the process of administering fluids based on rational physiologic endpoints rather than to the specific GDT tool used. As previous evaluations of monitoring devices have shown, no benefit is gained from using a device per se, but rather from the therapeutic intervention that the device allows.[158]

Appropriate Fluid Selection

Crystalloids or Colloids for Intravascular Plasma Volume Expansion. Although crystalloids are the most rational choice of fluid for replacement of evaporative losses, maintenance fluid requirements, and expansion of the entire extracellular fluid volume, the choice of crystalloid or colloid for plasma volume replacement in the perioperative phase is not clear. This underlines the lack of adequately powered perioperative studies directly comparing the two fluid types when administered in a similar fashion. Although most GDT studies use colloid for their intravascular volume expansion, these studies are also comparisons of fluid administration guided by physiologic endpoints with nonguided therapy. Whether the same level of benefit can be achieved by crystalloid-based GDT merits further investigation. Crystalloid may be effective in plasma volume expansion (PVE) at amounts less than previously reported, although typically 40% to 50% more crystalloid than colloid must be administered to obtain the same clinical volume effect.[3] When combined with the increased propensity of crystalloid to filter across the capillary membrane, more extravascular volume expansion occurs, potentially causing tissue edema. When compared with colloids, crystalloids may lead to increased GI mucosal edema[159] and the potential for delayed postoperative GI function and bacterial translocation. The differential effect of crystalloids when compared to colloids on tissue O_2 tension has no clear consensus.[52] The limited data comparing colloid with crystalloid for perioperative PVE may lead clinicians to extrapolate findings from studies in critical care. A Cochrane review highlighted the lack of improvement in all-cause mortality when colloids were used for intravascular volume expansion in unselected critical care populations.[160] In studies specific to patients with sepsis, starch-based colloids, including smaller MW versions, are associated with an increased requirement for renal replacement therapy, blood transfusion, and an increase in severe adverse events.[83] These data should be interpreted cautiously. First, some critical care studies compared starches with saline in the control group, which may itself be associated with renal problems.[51] Second, the surgical population has a different physiologic phenotype to those in critical care; meta-analysis suggests that starch is not associated with excess mortality or kidney injury in surgical patients, although the available trials are limited.[86] Despite these limitations, it is reasonable to avoid starch colloids in perioperative patients with severe sepsis or at increased risk of renal failure, pending the necessary large-scale trials assessing their safety in the perioperative setting. This is reflected in license restrictions for these fluids in the United States. In the United Kingdom, the use of starches has been suspended in all settings. The potential toxicities of colloids must be weighed against the potential fluid overloading effects of PVE using crystalloids until more data are available informing the debate on crystalloids versus colloids for perioperative PVE.

Saline-Based or Balanced Solutions

TYPICAL PRACTICAL APPROACH. The following suggestions represent an assimilation of the physiology, fluid pharmacology, and available evidence presented in this chapter. However, in many areas of perioperative fluid management, the lack of robust evidence means that the choice of fluid and method of administration remains a clinician's choice informed by the balance of risks and benefits. The overall themes in prescribing fluids in moderate-to-major surgery are:

- The indication for giving a specific fluid should always be considered. Pure "maintenance" fluid should be given at a low fixed rate, with fluid required for replacement of losses or for resuscitation considered separately.
- Fluids administered should be individualized. This may be as simple as dosing postoperative maintenance fluids on a milliliter-per-kilogram basis or titrating intraoperative plasma volume expansion to objectively measured physiologic variables.
- Fluid status changes constantly throughout the perioperative period and should be frequently reassessed.
- The approach should be adapted to the patient and surgical factors outlined later.

Preoperative. In preparing for elective surgery, oral clear fluid intake should continue until 2 hours preoperatively and longer fasting discouraged. The use of preoperative bowel preparation should be restricted to carefully selected cases, and in these cases an infusion of 1 to 2 L of balanced crystalloid with K^+ supplementation should be given in the preoperative period. Chronic comorbidities should be assessed for their influence on fluid and electrolyte balance, as outlined later.

Emergency surgery patients are likely to have acute disturbances of fluid compartments. They require timely resuscitation guided by rational physiologic endpoints such as trends in blood pressure and heart rate, lactate, urine output, and mixed or central venous O_2 saturations. Although preoperative fluid administration using cardiac output monitoring makes clinical sense, often logistical implications are involved with this approach and in some cases (ongoing blood loss or early surgical control of sepsis) surgery should not be delayed. A pragmatic approach is required to provide ongoing fluid resuscitation without compromising early surgical intervention. Upper GI losses should be quantified and replaced with isotonic saline, and lower GI losses (fistula, ileus, or obstruction) with balanced crystalloid. K^+ should be supplemented as appropriate.

Intraoperative. A low background infusion (e.g., 1-1.5 mL/kg/h) of crystalloid should be used for maintenance requirements during surgery. Hypotension caused by general or regional anesthesia is related primarily to vasodilation and reduced inotropy, and unless the patient is hypovolemic because of preoperative factors, it is more rational to treat this with small doses of vasopressors and/or inotropes.[11] Fluid therapy in patients considered to be at higher risk should be guided by invasive pressure monitoring to allow for early recognition of overt hypovolemia and global tissue perfusion. Although no universally accepted definitions of a high-risk case exist,[161] factors such as major elective or emergency surgery, advanced age, comorbidities, and poor exercise tolerance, increase postoperative mortality risk to greater than 5%. In these cases and particularly in certain orthopedic and intraabdominal operations, where the evidence is strongest, cardiac output should be optimized by titrating boluses of a suitable colloid or balanced crystalloid to a measured variable such as SV and FTc, or cardiac output and O_2 delivery. Stroke volume variation may also be measured, although its ability to accurately predict fluid responsiveness may be limited.[162] Blood loss should be replaced with colloid or blood products depending on the volume lost and variables suggesting inadequate tissue O_2 delivery. Crystalloid may be used as an alternative for intravascular plasma volume expansion, but the increased volume required and potential for extravascular volume expansion should be considered. Overall, the goal should be to achieve euvolemia by the end of surgery or the early postoperative period.

Postoperative. High-risk surgical patients may benefit from an ongoing period of GDT targeting O_2 delivery in the early postoperative period.[163] In all other patients after major surgery, an assessment of fluid status should be made based on clinical examination and supporting physiologic measurements such as lactate, central or mixed venous saturations, and cardiac output variables, if available. If patients are euvolemic and able to return to oral fluid intake, this is the best way of avoiding the iatrogenic effects of postoperative fluid administration. Early oral intake is typically well tolerated and safe, and early oral nutrition may reduce the incidence of postoperative complications.[164]

The following should be done in patients requiring ongoing IV therapy:

- Electrolytes should be checked at least daily to monitor for hyponatremia and other electrolyte derangements.
- Fluid requirements should be strictly divided into three categories for their ongoing assessment and treatment
  - **"Pure" maintenance requirements.** These should be salt-poor and contain a modest volume of free water to account for the postoperative state of salt and water retention. Infusions should therefore consist of the following[164]: (1) 1500 to 2500 mL in 24 hours, depending on weight, or 1 to 1.2 mL/kg/h. Given the relative reduction in TBW in obesity (see previous discussions on crystalloids, fluid compartments), consideration should be given to dosing this fluid requirement based on ideal body weight in this setting. (2) 50 to 100 mEq Na^+ should be given in 24 hours, and (3) 40 to 80 mEq K^+ should be given in 24 hours.
  - It is likely that part of this minimal maintenance volume should comprise hypotonic fluids such as 5% dextrose or 0.18% saline with 4% dextrose. Because of the risk for postoperative hyponatremia, this maintenance intravascular fluid volume should not be increased if suspicion for hypovolemia exists. Rather, the source of the ongoing loss should be identified and treated separately. As oral fluid intake increases, this maintenance fluid should be reduced proportionately.
  - **Replacement of ongoing losses.** This fluid requirement requires frequent reassessment to appropriately titrate replacement fluids. Volumes given should reflect measured amounts lost and an assessment of intravascular volume status and adequacy of organ perfusion (mental state, lactate, hemodynamic trends). Losses from the GI tract (vomiting, nasogastric aspirates, stoma) should be replaced with an equal volume of isotonic saline or balanced crystalloid with K^+ as appropriate. Losses to third spaces, such as reaccumulation of ascites, should be treated with a mixture of colloid and crystalloid, and blood loss replaced with colloid, blood, or blood products.
  - **New requirements (resuscitation).** New requirements may relate to the development of postoperative complications such as hemorrhage (absolute hypovolemia) or acute sepsis (relative or absolute hypovolemia).

Postoperative oliguria should be interpreted cautiously, particularly in the first postoperative day. The patient should be carefully assessed for corroborative evidence of impaired end-organ perfusion and alternative causes of oliguria, including catheter obstruction and intraabdominal hypertension. In the absence of markers indicating hypovolemia and inadequate tissue perfusion, large volumes of fluid challenge are inappropriate and may aggravate postoperative positive fluid and Na^+ balance in the face of a normal surgical stress response.

Special Considerations

Patient Factors

Heart failure. The diverse pathophysiologic effects of heart failure and their treatment may make perioperative fluid management particularly challenging. The hemodynamic effects of chronic heart failure are characterized by systolic and diastolic dysfunction of the left, right, or both ventricles with secondary maladaptive neurohumoral responses. These include persistent activation of the RAA axis, with consequent salt and water retention, and chronic sympathetic nervous system (SNS) activation, with persistent tachycardia and vasoconstriction. Undertreated patients may therefore present with edema in lungs and peripheral tissues and increased central blood volume in the face of poor myocardial function.

Treatments for heart failure attempt to correct many of the neurohumoral responses, and many have been shown to improve long-term prognosis in heart failure. In the perioperative phase, they may bring challenges to fluid management, including chronic volume depletion, blunting of normal sympathetic responses, and electrolyte disturbances. They include β-adrenoreceptor antagonists, diuretics, digoxin, and antagonists of aldosterone and angiotensin.

Perioperative fluid therapy in patients with heart failure has two goals. The first is to preserve cardiac output, bearing in mind the influence of preload, contractility, and afterload. The ventricles are typically poorly compliant and require adequate preload, which may be reflected in a relatively high CVP and adequate diastolic filling time to maintain good cardiac output. However, the flattened Starling curve of the failing heart means that excessive intravascular volume infusion and preload may lead to impaired contractility and worsening cardiac output. This leads to "forward failure," manifested as inadequate organ perfusion, and "backward failure," manifested as pulmonary and peripheral edema, particularly in the presence of aberrant salt and water excretion. The second goal is to minimize the cardiac work to avoid a vicious cycle of increased cardiac O_2 demand, inadequate O_2 supply, and worsening myocardial function. In particular, tachycardia triggered by hypovolemia and other stimuli should be avoided. Striking a balance between hypovolemia and hypervolemia is particularly important in patients with heart failure, but it may be difficult to assess clinically.

The practical approach to patients with heart failure involves careful preoperative assessment of fluid status and electrolytes and optimization of heart failure treatments when time allows. The complex cardiovascular situation often requires cardiac output monitoring for moderate or major surgery. Invasive modalities include transesophageal echocardiography or pulmonary artery catheterization,[165] although less invasive modalities may also be helpful. Measurement of cardiac filling and contractility is particularly important because the sources of intraoperative hypotension (reduced preload, contractility, or afterload) require different treatments. Infusion of large volumes of any fluid, including blood and products, should be undertaken only with objective evidence of intravascular volume loss.

The effects of heart failure therapies should be evaluated carefully in the perioperative phase. Diuretics may leave patients in a chronically volume-contracted state that worsens anesthesia-related hypotension. Loop diuretics frequently cause hypokalemia and hypomagnesemia, whereas aldosterone antagonists cause hyperkalemia, which may be severe when combined with ACE-inhibitor treatment or chronic kidney disease. Normalization of electrolytes is particularly important in patients taking digoxin, in whom hypokalemia may potentiate digoxin toxicity. ACE-inhibitors or angiotensin receptor antagonists themselves lead to a blunted sympathetic and angiotensin response to anesthesia-related vasodilation. The hypotension caused by these should be treated appropriately by small doses of inotropes or vasopressors, which may include vasopressin analogs.[165]

Kidney disease. Patients with dialysis-dependent chronic kidney disease have multiple pathologic features that must be considered in perioperative fluid therapy. Overall fluid balance may be disturbed by reduced or absent native urine production, with reliance on dialysis to achieve the target "dry" weight, representing estimated euvolemia. Organ O_2 delivery may be impaired by various factors, including chronic anemia, endothelial dysfunction, and microvascular perfusion abnormalities. The frequent coexistence of heart failure and systemic or pulmonary hypertension and the bleeding tendency caused by platelet dysfunction further increase the perioperative risk.[166]

Preoperative assessment should focus on the adequacy of chronic dialysis in attaining euvolemia and estimating the normal volume of native urine output. Comorbidities should be assessed and optimized. Surgery should be undertaken in a facility where preoperative and postoperative dialysis or hemofiltration can be offered in case of intraoperative fluid overload or hyperkalemia. In elective surgery, preoperative dialysis should be timed such that the patient enters the intraoperative phase with a normal blood volume. Surgery in the presence of hypervolemia increases the risk for pulmonary and peripheral edema, hypertension, and poor wound healing, whereas hypovolemia increases the risk for anesthesia-related hypotension and inadequate tissue perfusion. Practically, this means performing dialysis the day before surgery to allow for equilibration of fluid and electrolyte compartments and time for dialysis anticoagulants to be metabolized. Electrolytes should be checked on the morning of surgery; sampling too soon after dialysis, before equilibration, may give an artificially low K^+ result leading to unnecessary exogenous supplementation. Conversely, fasting may actually favor a hyperkalemic state as a result of the reduced presence of insulin; the ideal K^+ value after dialysis is in the low-to-normal range. For emergency surgery, there may not be sufficient time to safely dialyze patients preoperatively. In this case, electrolyte abnormalities must be managed conservatively, with particular care paid to intraoperative fluid balance.

As with other major comorbidities with a critical impact on fluid and electrolyte balance, the importance of avoiding both hypovolemia and hypervolemia and the predisposition to inadequate tissue perfusion mean that detailed monitoring of hemodynamic variables, including invasive central venous and arterial pressure and cardiac output, should be considered for moderate-to-major surgery. The amount of fluid administered intraoperatively should be titrated to objective physiologic measurements, although the type of fluid given is open to debate. Large volumes of isotonic saline should be avoided, because the induced acidosis favors extrusion of K^+ from cells. In contrast, K^+-containing balanced crystalloids did not cause hyperkalemia in clinical trials.[44,167] An alternative crystalloid is a K^+-free HCO_3^--buffered dialysis solution such as Hemosol. Colloids may be used for intravascular volume replacement, although owing to their predominantly renal excretion, the volume effect and potential toxicities may be exaggerated in these patients. Liaising with the nephrologist is important before considering blood transfusion; if the patient is awaiting renal transplantation, human leukocyte antigen-matched blood may be required to minimize antibody formation and future difficulties with blood and tissue matching.

UPPER GASTROINTESTINAL LOSS. Large volume gastric fluid loss may be caused by congenital or acquired gastric outlet obstruction and lead to a distinct pattern of fluid and acid-base abnormalities. Dehydration occurs as a result of water loss, reduced total body Cl^- content, and alkalosis caused by proton loss, with raised serum HCO_3^-. The initial renal response is formation of urine with low Cl^- and high HCO_3^- content. However, progressive dehydration leads to increased aldosterone secretion, aimed at retaining Na^+ and water. Na^+ is retained at the expense of K^+ and H^+ ions, leading to hypokalemia, and worsening metabolic alkalosis with a paradoxically acid urine. The alkalosis also reduces the circulating ionized fraction of Ca^{2+}.

Correction should include gradual rehydration with isotonic saline and K^+ supplementation, changing to dextrose-containing saline solutions depending on electrolyte analysis. Any surgery required to treat gastric outlet obstruction should be scheduled after correction of the volume and acid-base status.

SEPSIS AND ACUTE LUNG INJURY. Patients with infection and sepsis syndromes may be encountered early in their presentations, as surgical source control of infection (drainage of abscesses, debridement of necrotic tissues, removal of infected devices) forms a key part of early sepsis therapy.[168] Cardiovascular instability may be a particular problem, contributed to by endothelial dysfunction and intravascular fluid loss, vasodilation with fluid maldistribution, sympathetic redistribution of blood volume away from the peripheral circulation, and impairment of cardiac function. Fluid resuscitation, with the goal of maintaining adequate end organ perfusion, has historically been a key part of the first six hours of sepsis treatment, which may represent the perioperative period for some patients. Early trials suggested that protocolized fluid resuscitation targeting central venous oxygen saturation was more effective than resuscitation guided by only CVP, MAP, and urine output targets in reducing mortality from sepsis.[169] However, more recent large international trials have shown that this approach has similar outcomes to resuscitation based on standard or protocolized care without targeting central venous oxygen saturations.[170-172] The following approach is suggested for septic patients with evidence of tissue hypoperfusion:[173]

- At least 30 mL/kg of crystalloid should be given within the first three hours of resuscitation.
- Further fluids should be guided by frequent reassessment of hemodynamic status. This assessment may incorporate more detailed measurements such as cardiac output, in addition to routinely available physiological variables (heart rate, blood pressure, urine output).
- Dynamic tests of fluid responsiveness such as passive leg raise or stroke volume response to a fluid challenge are recommended over static targets such as a fixed CVP value.
- Other resuscitation targets may include a MAP >65 mm Hg in those requiring vasopressors, and normalization of lactate in patients with elevated levels.

These guidelines are based on a limited evidence base and further research is needed to refine this area. For example, some trials have suggested that a fluid bolus strategy may not be helpful in attaining hemodynamic targets[174] or may even be harmful in some settings.[175]

In established sepsis, fluid management becomes even more challenging due to the frequent presence of microvascular dysfunction, extravascular fluid overload, and disturbed neurohumoral responses to variations in intravascular volume.[176] There is uncoupling of the O_2 delivery and consumption relationship as a result of cellular inability to use O_2 (cytopathic hypoxia).[177,178] Because of this uncoupling, strategies to elevate global O_2 delivery may be of little benefit while exposing patients to potential side effects of excessive fluid and catecholamine administration.[179,180] At this stage, a less positive overall fluid balance is associated with improved outcomes.[181]

Patients with established acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) may also present for surgical procedures. Here the focus of fluid therapy is the fine balance between avoiding an increase in lung edema while maintaining adequate tissue perfusion. ARDS is typified by increased pulmonary endothelial permeability, with extravasation of water and protein. The consequences are interstitial and alveolar edema, reduced pulmonary compliance, increased pulmonary artery pressures, and hypoxemia. Meanwhile, organ perfusion may be impaired by increased intrathoracic pressures and reduced cardiac filling pressures. Observational studies have highlighted an association between overall positive fluid balance and mortality in ARDS,[182] backed by a large randomized controlled trial demonstrating a reduction in ventilator and intensive therapy unit days in patients treated with a conservative fluid administration strategy.[183] The findings were similar in a subgroup of patients from this trial who had undergone surgery and were treated with lower fluid volumes. There was also no increased kidney injury seen in the low fluid volume group.[184] Extravascular lung water (EVLW) seems to be important in predicting the worse outcomes associated with a more positive fluid balance. Thermodilution studies showed excess EVLW to have reasonable sensitivity and specificity in predicting ICU mortality in patients with ARDS.[185] Assuming global organ perfusion appears adequate, as demonstrated by normal lactate levels, intraoperative losses should be replaced but otherwise be conservative in the volumes of fluid given to patients with ARDS intraoperatively. There is a lack of adequately powered studies on the choice of colloid or crystalloid for intravascular volume replacement in patients with ARDS.

Burns. Extensive burns create a situation of copious fluid loss from the circulation combined with particular sensitivity to the effects of excess fluid administration. Thermal injury creates an area of necrotic tissue with surrounding ischemic areas. The combination of dead tissue with areas undergoing ischemia and subsequent reperfusion causes localized and systemic inflammatory reactions through histamine, prostaglandin, reactive O_2 species, and cytokine release. Local impairment of endothelial barrier function leads to the loss of oncotically active plasma constituents, increased capillary filtration into the interstitial compartment, and evaporative transcutaneous fluid loss as a result of loss of skin integrity. Through similar mechanisms, extensive burns may lead to the systemic inflammatory response syndrome, with its well-recognized effects on fluid compartments outlined previously. The deleterious role of this inflammatory response is underlined by the reduction in mortality seen with early burn excision compared with conservative care.[186] IV fluid therapy is generally instituted for burns of greater than 15% total body surface area in adults and 10% total body surface area in children.[187] However, increasing uncertainty exists about the volume and type of fluid that should be given to patients with burns. Fluid administration is largely still based on formulas such as the Parkland formula (Box 47.1) or the Muir and Barclay versions. Although these have given a starting point for resuscitation volumes based on patient weight and extent of burn, myriad other patient and pathologic factors put such a recipe-based approach at odds with modern perioperative fluid therapy based on objective physiologic goals. Although the approaches based on these formulas advocate down-titration of administered fluid volumes if urine output is adequate (0.5-1 mL/kg/h),[188] in reality this appears not to be practiced. Indeed, large studies have shown that the majority of burn patients receive fluid volumes in excess of those predicted by the Parkland formula, with a mean of 6 mL/kg/% burn compared with 4 mL/kg/% burn in 24 hours predicted by the formula.[189] Conversely, patients with inhaled and other nonburn injuries, electrical burns, or delayed resuscitation are considered to need increased resuscitation intravascular volumes, yet this is not taken into account by the formulas.

Excessive fluid administration in burned patients ("fluid creep") is not benign. As in all conditions typified by systemic inflammation, excess administered fluid will collect in compliant compartments. Pulmonary edema requiring ventilatory support, fasciotomies in muscle compartments, raised intraocular pressure, and conversion of superficial to deep burns have been observed and attributed to fluid resuscitation.[187] Intraabdominal hypertension and compartment syndrome are correlated to the volume of fluid administered, with a particular rise when more than 300 mL/kg is administered in 24 hours.[190] These concerns have led to renewed efforts to find the optimum regimen for burn resuscitation in terms of crystalloid versus colloid, newer formulas using lower volumes such as the Haifa formula, and targeting objective physiologic parameters such as SV or intrathoracic blood volume. Early trials have suggested that minimally invasive cardiac output monitoring may have a role, although there are no adequately sized trials to show whether this approach improves outcomes.[191] Pending a consensus from this ongoing work, burn resuscitation should be commenced with one of the currently accepted formulas, but actively down-titrated if a urine output of 0.5 to 1 mL/kg/h is obtained. A combination of crystalloids and colloids may be used to reduce the total fluid volume administered,[192] although the early use of colloids is controversial due to the perceived risk of extravasation of oncotically active molecules in the presence of severe capillary leak. In addition, patients with burns were included in recent license restrictions on the use of starches.[191] Intraabdominal pressure should be monitored, and consideration given to assessing resuscitation endpoints, such as lactate and cardiac output, in addition to urine output.

BOX 47.1 Parkland Burn Fluid Resuscitation Formula

First 8 h: 2 mL/kg × % TBSA (lactated Ringer solution)
Next 16 h: 2 mL/kg × %TBSA (lactated Ringer solution)
Next 24 h: 0.8 mL/kg × %TBSA (5% dextrose) + 0.015 mL/kg × %TBSA (5% albumin)

%TBSA, Burn size as % of total body surface area. Time periods refer to the time since the burn occurred.

Data from Baxter CR. Problems and complications of burn shock resuscitation. *Surg Clin North Am.* 1978;58:1313.

Pediatrics. Perioperative fluid therapy in pediatric patients has for many years been based on traditional approaches that are increasingly being reexamined. Holliday and Segar[138] proposed a quantity and composition of maintenance fluid in hospitalized children in 1957 based on water requirements to sustain average metabolic activity and the electrolyte composition of milk. This developed into the 4-2-1 volume calculation for maintenance fluid requirements aimed at replacing insensible and urinary losses with hypotonic crystalloids containing glucose to maintain isoosmolality. These concepts were translated into the perioperative phase and glucose-based solutions were administered intraoperatively to reduce the apparently high risk for preoperative hypoglycemia after prolonged fasting,[193] and postoperative maintenance fluids were prescribed based on the 4-2-1 calculation using hypotonic crystalloids. Furthermore, the pediatric population was thought to be at risk for clinically significant preoperative dehydration by fasting, as a result of limited urinary concentrating ability and ongoing insensible losses because of the relatively large body surface area. Intraoperative replenishment of these volumes using 25 mL/kg of isotonic salt solution for those 3 years of age and younger or 15 mL/kg for those 4 years of age and older has been recommended.[194]

Multiple factors have led to a reevaluation of this approach. First, the modern approach to preoperative fasting, such that children may take clear—and potentially carbohydrate-containing—fluids up to 2 hours before surgery, reduces the risk for hemodynamically significant preoperative dehydration.[195] Second, the incidence of preoperative hypoglycemia is infrequent (<2.5%) and related to inappropriately prolonged fasting or other risk factors, such as prematurity, small for gestational age, or poor nutritional status.[196,197] Surgery itself increases blood glucose concentration, and administering glucose-containing solutions intraoperatively may cause hyperglycemia,[198] with the potential for osmotic diuresis and electrolyte abnormalities, or even adverse neurologic outcomes in the event of an ischemic or hypoxic event.[197] Glucose-free balanced crystalloid solutions should therefore be used intraoperatively, except in those at particularly high risk for hypoglycemia. Third, increasing awareness of the incidence and potentially disastrous neurologic outcomes from postoperative hyponatremia in pediatric populations has led to a reappraisal of postoperative hypotonic crystalloid maintenance fluids in 4-2-1 volumes. The effective SIADH induced by surgical stress and aggravated by the presence of pain and hypovolemia causes water retention and the risk for hypoosmolar hyponatremia if hypotonic solutions continue to be infused in significant volumes. Proposed strategies to avoid this include using one half to two thirds of the calculated 4-2-1 formula for maintenance fluids,[195] avoiding the most hypotonic fluids (4% dextrose with 0.18% NaCl),[197] using balanced isotonic crystalloids (containing glucose if available).[199,200] General measures that should be applied to all patients include:

- returning to oral fluids as early as possible
- ensuring euvolemia to minimize the ADH response[201]
- clearly dividing *maintenance* requirements from the variable amounts of fluid required because of *ongoing losses* (e.g., GI or blood), which should typically be replaced by isotonic crystalloids, colloids, or blood
- checking electrolytes at least daily in those still receiving IV fluids

Although isotonic saline has been advocated as a “safer” fluid for postoperative maintenance, this brings the risk for Na^+ overload and hyperchloremic acidosis.

More recent developments in perioperative fluid management remain underexplored in pediatric populations. In particular, there is little data on whether colloid volume expansion is beneficial or harmful in pediatrics when compared with crystalloids, or whether goal-directed fluid therapy may confer the advantages that have been suggested in adult populations.

HEPATIC FAILURE. Progressive liver disease and cirrhosis cause a distinctive pattern of abnormal fluid balance. The combination of peripheral vasodilation and relative intravascular depletion can mimic a decrease in intravascular volume. Yet, total body Na^+ and water are retained with ascites and edema.[202]

The widely accepted pathophysiologic mechanisms are that progressive disruption of liver architecture combines with decreased hepatic nitric oxide (NO) bioavailability and increased vasoconstrictor production, leading to sinusoidal hypertension. Compensatory vasodilatory mechanisms, including NO overproduction, lead to splanchnic and systemic vasodilation, relative hypovolemia, and reduced systemic arterial pressure. This triggers baroreceptor-mediated activation of the RAA, SNS, and ADH release. Although cardiac output increases, reduced systemic vascular resistance persists despite these compensatory mechanisms. The state of hyperaldosteronism causes salt and water retention, but hyponatremia occurs because of a relative excess of water retention. Splanchnic vasodilation and vascular permeability combine with decreased lymphatic drainage to favor the formation of ascites. The neurohumoral response also induces renal artery vasoconstriction, reducing renal blood flow and increasing the risk for hepatorenal syndrome. A range of therapies to maintain patients in a compensated state include: dietary fluid and salt restriction, diuretics (particularly spironolactone and loop diuretics), and intermittent or continuous drainage of ascites. However, the perioperative period presents considerable potential for disturbance of this fine balance. Excessive administration of isotonic saline will aggravate the preexisting salt and water overload, leading to further ascites and edema formation. Conversely, periods of hypovolemia are poorly tolerated, leading to a significant deficit in organ perfusion, further stimulation of the RAA, SNS, and ADH axes, and increasing risk for kidney injury. The approach should therefore be to assess volume status carefully, considering cardiac output monitoring, and to replace losses with appropriate volumes of isotonic crystalloid, colloid, or blood but to avoid salt and water overload. In instances of large-volume (>6 L) paracentesis, hemodynamic instability is a risk. Albumin appears to be a more effective prophylactic treatment for this than saline, abrogating the stimulated increase in plasma renin activity and maintaining more stable hemodynamics.[203] Lactate and other buffered fluids may be used in hepatic failure, although their metabolism may be slowed in advanced liver disease.

In decompensated liver disease with encephalopathy, raised intracranial pressure may be present and osmotherapy, such as hypertonic saline, should be used to bring plasma Na^+ into the high-normal range.[204] This is in contrast to chronic compensated liver disease, in which a degree of hyponatremia is well tolerated and does not require acute correction unless it is severe or symptomatic (see earlier discussion).

OBSTETRICS: PREECLAMPSIA. Preeclampsia is a multisystem disease of pregnancy characterized by hypertension, proteinuria, and multiorgan involvement that may affect the kidneys, liver, pulmonary, and central nervous systems. In contrast to the usual volume-expanded status in pregnancy, patients with preeclampsia have reduced plasma volume, combined with endothelial dysfunction and hypoalbuminemia. Previously IV volume expansion was thought to be beneficial in treating hypertension in preeclampsia; however, this has not been borne out by later studies.[205,206] Furthermore, a clear association exists between positive fluid balance and the incidence of pulmonary edema in this condition.[207] Acute pulmonary edema occurs in between 5% and 30% of cases of preeclampsia. It is associated with increased hospital length of stay and is a leading cause of death in preeclamptic patients. Most cases present in the postpartum period, perhaps reflecting the autotransfusion into a vasoconstricted circulation that occurs after delivery. Low COP also contributes.

Patients with preeclampsia should receive restricted volumes of IV crystalloid (80 mL/h, including that received as drug diluents[208]), and fluid balance should be observed carefully. Oliguria should not be treated by administration of large volumes of fluids in the presence of normal renal function. This conservative strategy has not been associated with an increase in kidney injury.[209] Any blood loss in the peripartum or perioperative period should be replaced with an appropriate volume of crystalloid, colloid, or blood, depending on magnitude. Invasive monitoring should be used to direct fluid therapy in cases of severe preeclampsia.

Surgical Factors

NEUROSURGERY. Multiple physiologic factors mean that fluid and electrolyte therapy are a key component in the perioperative management of intracranial pathology. This management may be complicated by disturbances of water and Na^+ balance caused by neurosurgical diseases themselves. Much of the current fluid management in this area is based on knowledge of this physiology, experimental models, and gradual evolution of interventions investigated in small trials rather than large randomized studies.

The intact blood-brain barrier (BBB) excludes electrolytes and large molecules but allows passage of water. Extravascular brain water is therefore related to plasma osmolality, with cerebral edema a feature of hypoosmolar hyponatremic conditions. Intracranial diseases may compromise the integrity of the BBB, increasing the predisposition to edema. Cerebral perfusion also may be impaired if systemic blood pressure is inadequate in the face of increased intracranial pressure, particularly in pathologic conditions in which autoregulation is impaired. Rational management of fluids in neurosurgical patients should start with maintaining baseline blood volume and cerebral perfusion and avoiding significant decreases in serum Na^+, osmolality, and oncotic pressure. Several situations may require more specific management:

1. Increased intracranial pressure: Increasing serum osmolality may reduce total brain water and therefore intracranial pressure by creating brain-blood osmotic gradients. Mannitol and hypertonic saline given by bolus have been the pharmacologic mainstays in this area. The osmotic action of these drugs may be reduced if the BBB is disrupted by brain injury; however, they also have therapeutic benefits beyond simple osmotic effects.[210] A meta-analysis of the small studies available suggests that hypertonic saline may be superior to mannitol in reducing intracranial hypertension, but large-scale controlled studies are required to confirm this.[57] Conversely, using hypertonic saline in all patients with early traumatic brain injury without intracranial pressure monitoring has not been shown to improve outcomes.[58] Similarly, continuous infusion of hypertonic saline to induce persistent hypernatremia in the presence of cerebral edema also lacks evidence of benefit.[211] Restrictive fluid strategies have been advocated to minimize intracranial hypertension in severe traumatic brain injury. Although retrospective data analysis suggests that positive fluid balance is not associated with refractory intracranial hypertension, an association between hypervolemia and pulmonary edema was observed.[212]
2. Cerebral vasospasm: Manipulation of hemodynamics and hematocrit is traditionally used in the treatment of vasospasm after subarachnoid hemorrhage. This "triple-H" therapy (hypervolemia, hemodilution, hypertension) has entered practice based on small studies of efficacy rather than randomized trials.[213,214] Some workers, using extensive animal models, have advocated a hematocrit no lower than 30%, below which the benefits of reducing blood viscosity are outweighed by a reduction in O_2 delivery. They also caution against hypervolemia, both for its potentially injurious effects in the presence of a dysfunctional BBB and for the extracranial effects such as pulmonary edema.[215] "Prophylactic" hypervolemia aiming to prevent vasospasm is not recommended.[216]
3. An intracranial pathologic condition may itself be a cause of disturbances of both water and Na^+ balance through diabetes insipidus, cerebral salt wasting, or SIADH. This should be assessed and treated as described in the section on electrolyte imbalance.

Clear comparisons of crystalloid and colloid in a variety of neurosurgical settings are lacking. Of the available evidence, albumin is associated with an increase in mortality in traumatic brain injury compared with isotonic saline.[5] In the absence of more robust evidence, a mixture of isotonic crystalloids and colloids is advocated in other neurosurgical settings.[214,217]

TRAUMA. In patients with evidence of major traumatic hemorrhage, the key goals are to avoid clot disruption until definitive control of bleeding, to treat the acute coagulopathy of trauma, to maximize tissue O_2 delivery by the early use of packed red cell transfusion, and to avoid hypothermia and acidosis. This approach is termed hemostatic resuscitation. In the prehospital setting, restrictive fluid therapy may improve outcomes, particularly in penetrating trauma.[218] The approach should initially be one of permissive hypovolemia, with fluid administered to achieve cerebration rather than normotension in awake patients, systolic blood pressure of 70 to 80 mm Hg in penetrating trauma, or 90 mm Hg in blunt trauma.[219] The duration of organ hypoperfusion that may be involved with this approach should be minimized by rapid transfer for damage control intervention to stop bleeding, whether radiologic or surgical. Large volumes of IV crystalloids or colloids in early resuscitation will cause hemodilution and dilute clotting factors, and saline-based fluids may aggravate the acidosis associated with major blood loss. Rather, packed RBCs (PBRCs), clotting factors (e.g., fresh frozen plasma [FFP]) and platelets should be replaced early. Limited evidence, particularly from military populations and retrospective analyses, suggests "high" ratios of FFP to PRBC (e.g., 1:1-1:2) are associated with the best outcomes in massive transfusion compared with lower ratios (e.g., 1:9)[219,220]. Active warming should be used and clot stability improved with tranexamic acid.[221] Once hemostasis has been achieved, restoration of normal circulating volume and tissue perfusion is the goal, with ongoing blood, clotting factors, platelet, and fluid infusions targeting normalization of cardiac output and O_2 delivery, lactate levels, and blood clotting (best checked using near-patient whole-blood tests of clotting, such as thromboelastography). A small number of trials support the practice of GDT in the immediate perioperative trauma setting, but larger controlled trials are required. After surgery and initial resuscitation, much of the evidence for ongoing fluid approaches is derived from unselected critical care populations. As outlined previously, the evidence suggests that in established critical illness, aggressive GDT may be harmful.[218]

Patients with traumatic brain injury in addition to major hemorrhage present a dilemma because the raised cerebral perfusion pressure required for adequate cerebral blood flow in the face of raised intracranial pressure is at odds with the hypotensive resuscitation approach. In isolated head injuries, using fluids and vasopressors to achieve a mean arterial pressure *above* 90 mm Hg is recommended, with avoidance of hyponatremia and hypoosmolality to minimize cerebral edema.[210,217] Little evidence exists to inform resuscitation treatment in patients with mixed intracranial and extracranial trauma, so the strategy should be based on clinical judgment, prioritizing the requirements of the most severe injuries. Control of bleeding is particularly important to allow subsequent normalization of systemic blood pressure to meet the need for adequate cerebral perfusion. Even in general trauma, much of the evidence supporting current resuscitation approaches is derived from animal models and limited randomized trials, predominantly in young otherwise healthy subjects in the prehospital setting.[218] The needs of individual patients should therefore be taken into account, particularly because older patients with comorbidities may tolerate periods of hypoperfusion very poorly.

FREE TISSUE FLAP SURGERY. Free tissue flaps are frequently used during oncoplastic surgery, typically for breast reconstruction or after resection of head and neck tumors and involve the autologous transplantation of tissue to fill a defect, complete with arterial supply and venous drainage. Transplanted vessels are denervated and lack intrinsic sympathetic tone, but the feeding vessels are not; vasoconstriction in these feeding vessels related to cold and excessive doses of vasopressor must be avoided because it may threaten the perfusion of the flap. Flap blood flow depends on systemic blood pressure and blood viscosity, and hypervolemic hemodilution has traditionally been used to address these requirements. However, given the reduction in O_2 carrying capacity and potential for flap edema that this entails, a more conservative fluid strategy should be used, which may improve flap outcome.[219] The use of dextrans to improve blood flow is not currently favored, because no benefit has been demonstrated and the risks for medical complications is relatively high.[220] Free tissue flaps have disrupted lymphatics, which take several weeks to reconnect, making them particularly prone to interstitial edema. Large volumes of crystalloid—favoring increased capillary filtration—should be avoided and colloids used for blood volume expansion.[221]

INTRATHORACIC PROCEDURES. Any procedure within the thorax, including upper GI and thoracic surgery, can lead to postoperative respiratory problems, including ARDS and acute lung injury (ALI). The development of ARDS and ALI is partly due to the proinflammatory nature of one-lung ventilation,[222,223] modified by a host of other patient and surgical risk factors. In esophagogastrectomy, retrospective studies and case series have suggested reduced pulmonary complications with restrictive fluid strategies.[224-227] One retrospective observational study of esophagectomy patients found a cumulative fluid balance greater than 1900 mL from surgery to the second postoperative day to be an independent risk factor for other adverse outcomes, including death.[228] The use of diuretics to actively target fluid balance, degree of cardiovascular support, and presence or absence of epidurals was not explored in this study. More controlled trials of different fluid balance approaches are required in this population. However, the potential benefit of conservative fluid administration in this group is consistent with the large randomized study of patients with ARDS demonstrating improved pulmonary outcomes in those treated with a restrictive rather than liberal fluid regimen.[183] While maintaining adequate tissue perfusion, a cautious approach to fluid administration is recommended, both to minimize pulmonary complications and to avoid anastomotic edema.

HEPATIC RESECTION. Blood loss during liver parenchymal resection, a risk factor for worse outcomes, is associated with high venous pressure and backflow of blood through the valveless hepatic veins. One study has shown that a CVP of 5 cm H_2O or lower is associated with significantly lower blood loss and transfusion requirements.[229] Several techniques are used to maintain a low CVP, including conservative fluid management, at least until the hepatic resection is completed. Despite evidence that using a low CVP technique does not have adverse effects on renal or liver function,[230] a pragmatic compromise must be sought for each patient. Inducing hypovolemia during liver resection risks hemodynamic instability and end-organ hypoperfusion, increases the risk for air embolism, and reduces the physiologic reserve should massive blood loss occur. Once the liver resection is finished, a more generous fluid approach can be taken to ensure adequate circulating volume. This may be guided by invasive hemodynamic monitoring and minimally invasive cardiac output monitoring to provide a rational endpoint to fluid therapy in this phase.

MAJOR INTRAABDOMINAL SURGERY. Major intraabdominal operations, particularly those involving multiple organ resections for tumor, require careful perioperative fluid management. Major gynecologic operations such as pelvic exenteration or ovarian debulking and urologic procedures including cystectomy, radical nephrectomy, and major retroperitoneal lymph node dissection can involve dramatic fluid shifts in the perioperative period. Fluid losses during surgery are caused by prolonged peritoneal exposure, significant blood loss, and acute drainage of tumor-related ascites. The total volume lost is difficult to quantify, so cardiac output monitoring is valuable when combined with CVP and arterial pressure monitoring and serial blood gas analysis.[231,232] Intraoperative drainage of ascites is followed by fluid shift from the vascular space, as this reaccumulates postoperatively and may require large volumes to replace the ongoing loss. Another consequence of fluid redistribution is electrolyte abnormalities; hypokalemia and hypomagnesemia are frequently seen.

RENAL TRANSPLANT. The key goals of fluid therapy in the perioperative management of renal transplant are to ensure adequate renal perfusion to support early graft function and avoid fluid therapy side effects to which patients with impaired renal function may be susceptible. Traditionally, CVP-guided intraoperative fluid therapy has been advocated, using large volumes of crystalloid (up to 60-100 mL/kg) to achieve a CVP of 10 to 12 mm Hg or higher before reperfusion.[233] Recently, more conservative goals have been advocated, limiting crystalloid infusion to 15 mL/kg/h, aiming for a CVP of 7 to 9 mm Hg with no apparent increase in graft failure.[234] The role of alternative tools such as esophageal Doppler or pulse contour analysis to supplement or replace CVP-guided fluid therapy in this area also has been suggested, but so far only exploratory trials have been conducted.[235,236] Patients with renal failure may develop acidosis-related hyperkalemia when isotonic saline is infused during transplant,[44] so balanced crystalloid solutions, or even K$^+$-free, buffered dialysate solutions, should be used. The role of colloids in this population requires further study, although concerns over renal toxicity of starches may limit their use.[235] Postoperative fluid therapy should take into account the baseline maintenance requirements and the ongoing losses resulting from urine production.

LIVER TRANSPLANT. Liver transplantation involves a series of major physiologic disruptions that have direct relevance to fluid and electrolyte management.[237] Therapy should be guided by data from invasive monitoring, possibly including pulmonary artery catheterization. During phase I (preanhepatic), large volume blood loss and further fluid shifts resulting from drainage of ascites may occur. During phase II (anhepatic), a major reduction in venous return and therefore cardiac output may occur if a bicaval approach is used. Crystalloid and colloid infusion may be required along with vasopressors to maintain arterial pressure during this phase, although excessive volume administration risks right heart failure after unclamping. Absent citrate and lactate metabolism during this phase contributes to acidosis, hypocalcemia, and hypomagnesemia. On reperfusion and unclamping, cold, acidotic, hyperkalemic fluid is released into the circulation. Preparation for this must include normalizing pH and maintaining plasma K$^+$ in the low-normal range during phase II. This may require Ca$^+$, insulin-dextrose, hyperventilation, and even NaHCO$_3$ treatment. Phase III (reperfusion) leads to an acute rise in CVP, possibly with hepatic congestion and right heart strain. Systemic vasodilation and cardiac arrest may occur, leading to hypotension requiring vasopressor or inotrope support. If not given already, a bolus of CaCl$_2$ should be used to prevent hyperkalemia-related arrhythmias. Subsequent uptake of K$^+$ by a working graft may then require aggressive replacement. Ongoing infusion of fluids, red cells, and blood products should be guided by clinical blood loss. Other goals are to maintain a hematocrit of 26% to 32% and to correct the coagulopathy as guided by coagulation testing. There is increasing interest in the role of cardiac output-guided fluid in the perioperative care of patients undergoing liver transplantation.[238]

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Brandis K. Fluid & electrolyte physiology. In: *The Physiology Viva: Questions & Answers*. Queensland, Australia, Southport: Author; 2003. Author.
2. Levick JR, et al. *Cardiovasc Res*. 2010;87:198.
3. Woodcock TE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:384.
4. Hahn RG. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:470.
5. Finfer S, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:2247.
6. Brunkhorst FM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:125.
7. James MFM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:693.
8. Rehm M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1211.
9. Bruegger D, et al. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2005;289:H1993.
10. Henry CB, et al. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2000;279:H2815.
11. Chappell D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:723.
12. Drummer C, et al. *Acta Physiol Scand Suppl*. 1992;604:101.
13. Montani J-P, et al. *Exp Physiol*. 2009;94:382.
14. Hall JE, et al. *Fed Proc*. 1986;45:2897.
15. Guyton AC. *Am J Physiol*. 1990;259:R865.
16. Dorrington KL, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:1218.
17. Committee on Medical Aspects of Food Policy. *Rep Health Soc Subj (Lond)*. 1991;41:1.
18. Kaye AD, et al. Intravascular fluid and electrolyte physiology. In: Miller RD, et al., ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 2009:1705.
19. Adrogué HJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356:1966.
20. Greenlee M, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2009;150:619.
21. Clausen T. Role of Na+,K+-pumps and transmembrane Na+,K+-distribution in muscle function. The FEPS lecture - Bratislava 2007. *Acta Physiol (Oxf)*. 2008;192(3):339–349.
22. Kroemer G, et al. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 1998;60:619.
23. Brown EM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333:234.
24. Pondel M. Calcitonin and calcitonin receptors: bone and beyond. *Int J Exp Pathol*. 2000;81(6):405–422.
25. Olsen HS, Cepeda MA, Zhang QQ, Rosen CA, Vozzolo BL. Human stanniocalcin: a possible hormonal regulator of mineral metabolism. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1996;93(5):1792–1796.
26. Bushinsky DA. *Lancet*. 1998;352:306.
27. Dubé L, Granry J-C. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:732.
28. Dimeski G, et al. *Clin Chim Acta*. 2010;411:309.
29. Gomez MN. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:222.
30. Günther T, et al. *FEBS Lett*. 1992;307:333.
31. Shaikh A, et al. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 2008;23:1203.
32. Weisinger JR, et al. *Lancet*. 1998;352:391.
33. Sabbagh Y, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2009;20:2348.
34. Yunos NM, et al. *Crit Care*. 2010;14:226.
35. Kraut JA, et al. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2007;2:162.
36. Morgan TJ. *Clin Biochem Rev*. 2009;30:41.
37. Guidet B, et al. *Crit Care*. 2010;14:325.
38. Bampoe S, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;21:9. CD004089.
39. Wilcox CS. *J Clin Invest*. 1983;71:726.
40. Wilcox CS, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1987;253:F734.
41. Quilley CP, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1993;108:106.
42. Chowdhury AH, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256:18.
43. Handy JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:141.
44. O'Malley CMN, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1518.
45. Self WH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(9):819.
46. Semler MW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(9):829.
47. Reinhart K, Takala J. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(3):507.
48. Lobo DN, Dube MG, Neal KR, Simpson J, Rowlands BJ, Allison SP. Problems with solutions: drowning in the brine of an inadequate knowledge base. *Clin Nutr*. 2001;20(2):125–130.
49. Walsh SR, Walsh CJ. Intravenous fluid-associated morbidity in postoperative patients. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 2005;87(2):126–130.
50. Stoneham MD, Hill EL. Variability in post-operative fluid and electrolyte prescription. *Br J Clin Pract*. 1997;51(2):82–84.
51. Myburgh JA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:1901.
52. Grocott MPW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1093.
53. Awad S, et al. *Clin Nutr*. 2008;27:179.
54. Burdett E, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;12:CD004089.
55. Yunos NM, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1566.
56. Bulger EM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2011;253:431.
57. Kamel H, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39:554.
58. Bulger EM, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;304:1455.
59. Hartmann AF, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1932;11:345.
60. Kreisberg RA. *Ann Intern Med*. 1980;92:227.
61. Vinay P, et al. *Am J Nephrol*. 1987;7:337.
62. Stetten MR, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1953;203:653.
63. Satoh K, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22:703.
64. Ruttmann TG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1475.
65. Reid F, et al. *Clin Sci*. 2003;104:17.
66. Htyte N, et al. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2011;26:1432.
67. Chan L, et al. *Integr Physiol Behav Sci*. 1994;29:383.
68. Kuze S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:702.
69. Bingel M, et al. *Lancet*. 1987;1:14.
70. Thaha M, et al. *Acta Med Indones*. 2005;37:145.
71. Veech RL, et al. *Adv Enzyme Regul*. 1988;27:313.
72. Jacob AD, et al. *Kidney Int*. 1997;52:755.
73. Selby NM, et al. *ASAIO J*. 2006;52:62.
74. Davies PG, et al. *Crit Care*. 2011;15:R21.
75. Traverso LW, et al. *J Trauma*. 1986;26:168.
76. Reinhart K, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38:368.
77. Lobo DN, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38:464.
78. De Jonge E, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29:1261.
79. Treib J, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1999;25:258.
80. Sirtl C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82:510.
81. Lamke LO, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1976;5:93.
82. James MFM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59:738.

83. Haase N, et al. *BMJ*. 2013;346:f839.
84. Perner A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:124.
85. Dart AB, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010;1:CD007594.
86. Gillies MA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112:25.
87. Dickenmann M, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2008;51:491.
88. Peden A, et al. *Haemophilia*. 2010;16:296.
89. Choi PT, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:200.
90. Delaney AP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39:386.
91. Jacob M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52:522.
92. Ackland GL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:924.
93. Sanders G, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2001;88:1363.
94. Lamke LO, et al. *Acta Chir Scand*. 1977;143:279.
95. Koyner JL, et al. *Blood Purif*. 2010;29:52.
96. Mackenzie AI, et al. *Br Med J*. 1969;3:619.
97. Mythen MG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:858.
98. Deitch EA. *Arch Surg*. 1990;125:403.
99. Lewis H, et al. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 1989;247A:281.
100. Swart RM, et al. *Nephron Physiol*. 2011;118:45.
101. Hamilton-Davies C, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1997;23:276.
102. Osman D, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:64.
103. Thorniley MS, et al. *Br J Plast Surg*. 1998;51:218.
104. Edsander-Nord A, et al. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2002;109:664.
105. Hameed SM, et al. *Chest*. 2003;123:475S.
106. Mythen MG, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1995;130:423.
107. Thacker JKM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2016;263(3):502.
108. Lobo DN, et al. *Lancet*. 2002;359:1812.
109. Mythen MG. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:196.
110. Holte K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:622.
111. Brandstrup B, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2003;238:641.
112. Corcoran T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:640.
113. Kumar S, et al. *Lancet*. 1998;352:220.
114. Tisdall M, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2006;18:57.
115. Leung AA, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2012;172:1474.
116. Ayus JC, et al. *Neurology*. 1996;46:323.
117. Lane N, et al. *BMJ*. 1999;318:1363.
118. Dorotta I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1536.
119. Gravenstein D. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:438.
120. Mamoulakis C, et al. *BJU Int*. 2012;109:240.
121. Olsson J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:252.
122. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106:439.
123. Agarwal R, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 1994;24:108.
124. Sterns RH, et al. *Semin Nephrol*. 2009;29:282.
125. Alfonzo AVM, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2006;70:10.
126. Chung HS, et al. *J Int Med Res*. 2012;40:572.
127. Lier H, et al. *J Trauma*. 2008;65:951.
128. Major P, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2001;19:558.
129. Aguilera IM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:779.
130. Huijgen HJ, et al. *Am J Clin Pathol*. 2000;114:688.
131. Saris NE, et al. *Clin Chim Acta*. 2000;294:1.
132. Taylor BE, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2004;198:198.
133. Holte K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:465.
134. Maharaj CH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:675.
135. Rhodes A, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2010;36:1327.
136. Grocott MPW, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;11:CD004082.
137. Lilot M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114(5):767.
138. Holliday MA, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1957;19:823.
139. Nisanevich V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:25.
140. Hübner M, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2012;173:68.
141. Futier E, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2010;145:1193.
142. Myles PS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(24):2263.
143. MacKay G, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2006;93:1469.
144. Shoemaker WC, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1973;106:630.
145. Shoemaker WC, et al. *Chest*. 1988;94:1176.
146. Boyd O, et al. *JAMA*. 1993;270:2699.
147. Venn R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(1):65.
148. Marik PE, et al. *Chest*. 2008;134:172.
149. Polonen P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1052.
150. Pearse R, et al. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:R694.
151. Donati A, et al. *Chest*. 2007;132:1817.
152. Pearse RM, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311(21):2181.
153. Calvo-Vecino JM, et al. British Journal of Anaesthesia [Internet]. 2018 Feb [cited 2018 Mar 11]; Available from: http://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S0007091217542075
154. Pestaña D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(3):579.
155. Parker MJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:67.
156. Noblett SE, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2006;93(9):1069.
157. Morris C, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:819.
158. Harvey S, et al. *Lancet*. 2005;366:472.
159. Prien T, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1990;2:317.
160. Perel P, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;6:CD000567.
161. Ackland GL, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2010;16:339.
162. MacDonald N, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114(4):598.
163. Pearse R, et al. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:R687.
164. Lewis S, et al. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2009;13:569.
165. NICE. *Intravenous Fluid Therapy in Adults in Hospital (Clinical Guidance 174) [Internet]*. 2014 [cited 2014 Apr 16]. Available from: http://www.nice.org.uk/.
166. Groban L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:557.
167. Trainor D, et al. *Semin Dial*. 2011;24:314.
168. Khajavi MR, et al. *Ren Fail*. 2008;30:535.
169. Dellinger RP, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2013;39:165.
170. Rivers E, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345(19):1368.
171. The ProCESS Investigators. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1683.
172. ARISE Investigators, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371(16):1496.
173. Mouncey PR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372(14):1301.
174. Rhodes A, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(3):486.
175. Bihari S, et al. *Shock*. 2013;40(1):28.
176. Maitland K, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364(26):2483.
177. Godin PJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24(7):1117.
178. Krafft P, et al. *Chest*. 1993;103:900.
179. Singer M. *Clin Chest Med*. 2008;29:655.
180. Hayes MA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1994;330:1717.
181. Gattinoni L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333:1025.
182. Boyd JH, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39:259.
183. Rosenberg AL, et al. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2009;24:35.
184. Wiedemann HP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:2564.
185. Stewart RM, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2009;208:725.
186. Neamu RF, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2013;19:24.
187. Ong YS, et al. *Burns*. 2006;32:145.
188. Tricklebank S. *Burns*. 2009;35:757.
189. Baxter CR. *Surg Clin North Am*. 1978;58:1313.
190. Cartotto R, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2010;31:551.
191. Oda J, et al. *Burns*. 2006;32:151.
192. Guilabert P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(3):284.
193. O'Mara MS, et al. *J Trauma*. 2005;58:1011.
194. Thomas DK. *Br J Anaesth*. 1974;46:66.
195. Berry F. Practical aspects of fluid and electrolyte therapy. In: Berry F, ed. *Anesthetic Management of Difficult and Routine Pediatric Patients*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1986:107.
196. Murat I, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18:363.
197. Phillips S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:529.
198. Bailey AG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:375,.
199. Welborn LG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:543.
200. Sümpelmann R, et al. *Pediatric Anesthesia*. 2017;27(1):10.
201. McNab S, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;(12):CD009457.
202. Holliday MA, et al. *Arch Dis Child*. 2007;92:546.
203. Kashani A, et al. *QJM*. 2008;101:71.
204. Sola-Vera J, et al. *Hepatology*. 2003;37:1147.
205. Stravitz RT, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:2498.
206. Ganzevoort W, et al. *BJOG*. 2005;112:1358.
207. Duley L, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2000;2:CD001805.
208. Thornton CE, et al. *Hypertens Pregnancy*. 2011;30:169.
209. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. 2010. NICE clinical guideline no. 107.
210. Thornton C, et al. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can*. 2007;29:794.
211. Wijayatilake DS, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25:540.
212. Ryu JH, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2013;19:222.
213. Fletcher JJ, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2010;13:47.
214. Velat GJ, et al. *World Neurosurg*. 2011;76:446.
215. Sen J, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2003;2:614.
216. Tummala RP, et al. *Clin Neurosurg*. 2006;53:238.
217. van der Jagt M. *Critical Care*. 2016;20:126.
218. Van Aken HK, Kampmeier TG, Ertmer C, Westphal M. Fluid resuscitation in patients with traumatic brain injury: what is a SAFE approach? *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25(5):563–565.
219. Levett D, Vercueil A, Grocott M. Resuscitation fluids in trauma 1: why give fluid and how to give it. *Trauma*. 2006;8(1):47–53.

220. Harris T, et al. *BMJ*. 2012;345:e5752.
221. Johansson PI, Oliveri RS, Ostrowski SR. Hemostatic resuscitation with plasma and platelets in trauma. *J Emerg Trauma Shock*. 2012;5(2):120–125.
222. Roberts I, Shakur H, Coats T, Hunt B, Balogun E, Barnetson L, et al. The CRASH-2 trial: a randomised controlled trial and economic evaluation of the effects of tranexamic acid on death, vascular occlusive events and transfusion requirement in bleeding trauma patients. *Health Technol Assess*. 2013;17(10):1–79.
223. Brain Trauma Foundation, *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24(suppl 1):S1.
224. Sigurdsson GH. *J Reconstr Microsurg*. 1995;11:57.
225. Disa JJ, et al. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2003;112:1534.
226. Shetty PS, et al. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care*. 2009;20:18.
227. Ojima H, et al. *Hepatogastroenterology*. 2007;54:111.
228. Michelet P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:911.
229. Low D, et al. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2007;11:1395.
230. Kita T, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14:252.
231. Neal JM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2003;28:328.
232. Tandon S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:633.
233. Wei S, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;86:266.
234. Jones RM, et al. *Br J Surg*. 1998;85:1058.
235. Redai I, et al. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2004;84:401.
236. Moore J, et al. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care*. 2009;20(8).
237. Shenoy S, et al. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care*. 2009;20(22).
238. Rabey PG. *BJA CEPD Reviews*. 2001;1:24.
239. De Gasperi A, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2006;38:807.
240. Schmid S, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29:552.
241. Calixto Fernandes MH, et al. 2018. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5784708/
242. Fabbroni D, et al. *Crit Care Pain*. 2006;6:171.
243. Froghi F, et al. 2018. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5842525/
244. Jones JG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84:226.
245. Chumlea WC, et al. *Kidney Int*. 1999;56:244.
246. Baarsma R, et al. *Biol Neonate*. 1992;62:108.
247. Ellis KJ, et al. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2000;374:904.
248. Campbell I. *Anaesth Intensive Care Med*. 2009;10:593.
249. Hoffer LJ, et al. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2005;289:R1372.
250. Hall JE. The body fluid compartments. In: *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2010:285.
251. Grădinaru I, et al. *Magnes Res*. 2007;20:254.
252. Sewón LA, et al. *J Clin Periodontol*. 1998;25:915.
253. Lentner C. Units of measurement, body fluids, composition of the body, nutrition. In: *Geigy Scientific Tables*. Basel: Ciba-Geigy Ltd; 1981.
254. Albrecht E, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68:79.
255. Rasmussen HS, et al. *Clin Cardiol*. 1988;11:541.
256. Sugimoto J, et al. *J Immunol*. 2012;188:6338.
257. Li F-Y, et al. *Nature*. 2011;475:471.
258. Soar J, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2010;81:1400.

References

1. Brandis K. Fluid & Electrolyte Physiology. In: *The Physiology Viva: Questions & Answers*. 2nd ed. Author Published; 2003:1–23.
2. Levick JR, Michel CC. Microvascular fluid exchange and the revised Starling principle. *Cardiovasc Res*. 2010;87(2):198–210.
3. Woodcock TE, Woodcock TM. Revised Starling equation and the glycocalyx model of transvascular fluid exchange: an improved paradigm for prescribing intravenous fluid therapy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(3):384–394.
4. Hahn RG. Volume kinetics for infusion fluids. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(2):470–481.
5. Finfer S, Bellomo R, Boyce N, French J, Myburgh J, Norton R. A comparison of albumin and saline for fluid resuscitation in the intensive care unit. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350(22):2247–2256.
6. Brunkhorst FM, Engel C, Bloos F, Meier-Hellmann A, Ragaller M, Weiler N, et al. Intensive insulin therapy and pentastarch resuscitation in severe sepsis. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(2):125–139.
7. James MFM, Michell WL, Joubert IA, Nicol AJ, Navsaria PH, Gillespie RS. Resuscitation with hydroxyethyl starch improves renal function and lactate clearance in penetrating trauma in a randomized controlled study: the FIRST trial (Fluids in Resuscitation of Severe Trauma). *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(5):693–702.
8. Rehm M, Zahler S, Lötsch M, Welsch U, Conzen P, Jacob M, et al. Endothelial glycocalyx as an additional barrier determining extravasation of 6% hydroxyethyl starch or 5% albumin solutions in the coronary vascular bed. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(5):1211–1223.
9. Bruegger D, Jacob M, Rehm M, Loetsch M, Welsch U, Conzen P, et al. Atrial natriuretic peptide induces shedding of endothelial glycocalyx in coronary vascular bed of guinea pig hearts. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2005;289(5):H1993–H1999.
10. Henry CB, Duling BR. TNF-alpha increases entry of macromolecules into luminal endothelial cell glycocalyx. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2000;279(6):H2815–H2823.
11. Chappell D, Jacob M, Hofmann-Kiefer K. A rational approach to perioperative fluid management. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(4):723–740.
12. Drummer C, Heer M, Baisch F, Blomqvist CG, Lang RE, Maass H, et al. Diuresis and natriuresis following isotonic saline infusion in healthy young volunteers before, during, and after HDT. *Acta Physiol Scand Suppl*. 1992;604:101–111.
13. Montani J-P, Van Vliet BN. Understanding the contribution of Guyton's large circulatory model to long-term control of arterial pressure. *Exp Physiol*. 2009;94(4):382–388.
14. Hall JE, Guyton AC, Coleman TG, Mizelle HL, Woods LL. Regulation of arterial pressure: role of pressure natriuresis and diuresis. *Fed Proc*. 1986;45(13):2897–2903.
15. Guyton AC. Long-term arterial pressure control: an analysis from animal experiments and computer and graphic models. *Am J Physiol*. 1990;259(5 Pt 2):R865–R877.
16. Dorrington KL, Pandit JJ. The obligatory role of the kidney in long-term arterial blood pressure control: extending Guyton's model of the circulation. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(11):1218–1228.
17. Dietary reference values for food energy and nutrients for the United Kingdom. Report of the Panel on Dietary Reference Values of the Committee on Medical Aspects of Food Policy. *Rep Health Soc Subj (Lond)*. 1991;41:1–210.
18. Kaye AD, Riopelle JM. Intravascular fluid and electrolyte physiology. In: Miller RD, Eriksson LI, Fleisher LA, eds. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 2009:1705–1737.
19. Adrogué HJ, Madias NE. Sodium and potassium in the pathogenesis of hypertension. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(19):1966–1978.
20. Greenlee M, Wingo C, McDonough A, Youn J-H, Kone B. Narrative review: evolving concepts in potassium homeostasis and hypokalemia. *Ann Intern Med*. 2009;150:619–625.
21. Clausen T. Role of Na+,K+-pumps and transmembrane Na+,K+-distribution in muscle function. The FEPS lecture - Bratislava 2007. *Acta Physiol (Oxf)*. 2008;192(3):339–349.
22. Kroemer G, Dallaporta B, Resche-Rigon M. The mitochondrial death/life regulator in apoptosis and necrosis. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 1998;60:619–642.
23. Brown EM, Pollak M, Seidman CE, Seidman JG, Chou Y-HW, Riccardi D, et al. Calcium-ion–sensing cell-surface receptors. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333(4):234–240.
24. Deleted in Proof
25. Deleted in Proof
26. Bushinsky DA, Monk RD. Electrolyte quintet: calcium. *Lancet*. 1998;352(9124):306–311.
27. Dubé L, Granry J-C. The therapeutic use of magnesium in anesthesiology, intensive care and emergency medicine: a review. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50(7):732–746.
28. Dimeski G, Badrick T, John AS. Ion selective electrodes (ISEs) and interferences—a review. *Clin Chim Acta*. 2010;411(5–6):309–317.
29. Gomez MN. Magnesium and cardiovascular disease. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(1):222–240.
30. Günther T, Vormann J, Höllriegl V. Isoproterenol-induced Mg2+ uptake in liver. *FEBS Lett*. 1992;307(3):333–336.
31. Shaikh A, Berndt T, Kumar R. Regulation of phosphate homeostasis by the phosphatonins and other novel mediators. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 2008;23(8):1203–1210.
32. Weisinger JR, Bellorín-Font E. Magnesium and phosphorus. *Lancet*. 1998;352(9125):391–396.
33. Sabbagh Y, O'Brien SP, Song W, Boulanger JH, Stockmann A, Arbeeny C, et al. Intestinal Npt2b plays a major role in phosphate absorption and homeostasis. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2009;20(11):2348–2358.
34. Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Story D, Kellum J. Bench-to-bedside review: Chloride in critical illness. *Crit Care*. 2010;14(4):226.
35. Kraut JA, Madias NE. Serum anion gap: its uses and limitations in clinical medicine. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2007;2(1):162–174.
36. Morgan TJ. The Stewart approach – one clinician's perspective. *Clin Biochem Rev*. 2009;30(2):41–54.
37. Guidet B, Soni N, Rocca GD, Kozek S, Vallet B, Annane D, et al. A balanced view of balanced solutions. *Crit Care*. 2010;14(5):325.
38. Bampoe S, Odor PM, Dushianthan A, Bennett-Guerrero E, Cro S, Gan TJ, et al. Perioperative administration of buffered versus non-buffered crystalloid intravenous fluid to improve outcomes following adult surgical procedures. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;9:CD004089.
39. Wilcox CS. Regulation of renal blood flow by plasma chloride. *J Clin Invest*. 1983;71(3):726–735.
40. Wilcox CS, Peart WS. Release of renin and angiotensin II into plasma and lymph during hyperchloremia. *Am J Physiol*. 1987;253(4 Pt 2):F734–F741.
41. Quilley CP, Lin YS, McGiff JC. Chloride anion concentration as a determinant of renal vascular responsiveness to vasoconstrictor agents. *Br J Pharmacol*. 1993;108(1):106–110.
42. Chowdhury AH, Cox EF, Francis ST, Lobo DN. A randomized, controlled, double-blind crossover study on the effects of 2-L infusions of 0.9% saline and Plasma-Lyte 148 on renal blood flow velocity and renal cortical tissue perfusion in healthy volunteers. *Annals of Surgery*. 2012:1.
43. Handy JM, Soni N. Physiological effects of hyperchloraemia and acidosis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101(2):141–150.
44. O'Malley CMN, Frumento RJ, Hardy MA, Benvenisty AI, Brentjens TE, Mercer JS, et al. A randomized, double-blind comparison of lactated Ringer's solution and 0.9% NaCl during renal transplantation. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(5):1518–1524. table of contents.
45. Self WH, Semler MW, Wanderer JP, Wang L, Byrne DW, Collins SP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in noncritically ill adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(9):819–828.
46. Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, Ehrenfeld JM, Wang L, Byrne DW, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in critically ill adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(9):829–839.
47. Reinhart K, Takala J. Hydroxyethyl starches: what do we still know? *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(3):507–511.
48. Deleted in Proof
49. Deleted in Proof
50. Deleted in Proof
51. Myburgh JA, Finfer S, Bellomo R, Billot L, Cass A, Gattas D, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch or saline for fluid resuscitation in intensive care. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367(20):1901–1911.
52. Grocott MPW, Mythen MG, Gan TJ. Perioperative fluid management and clinical outcomes in adults. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(4):1093–1106.
53. Awad S, Allison SP, Lobo DN. The history of 0.9% saline. *Clinical Nutrition*. 2008;27(2):179–188.
54. Burdett E, Dushianthan A, Bennett-Guerrero E, Cro S, Gan TJ, Grocott MP, et al. Perioperative buffered versus non-buffered fluid administration for surgery in adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;12:CD004089.

55. Yunos NM, Bellomo R, Hegarty C, Story D, Ho L, Bailey M. Association between a chloride-liberal vs chloride-restrictive intravenous fluid administration strategy and kidney injury in critically ill adults. *JAMA*. 2012;308(15):1566–1572.
56. Bulger EM, May S, Kerby JD, Emerson S, Stiell IG, Schreiber MA, et al. Out-of-hospital hypertonic resuscitation after traumatic hypovolemic shock. *Ann Surg*. 2011;253(3):431–441.
57. Kamel H, Navi BB, Nakagawa K, Hemphill JC 3rd, Ko NU. Hypertonic saline versus mannitol for the treatment of elevated intracranial pressure: a meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(3):554–559.
58. Bulger EM, May S, Brasel KJ, Schreiber M, Kerby JD, Tisherman SA, et al. Out-of-hospital hypertonic resuscitation following severe traumatic brain injury: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2010;304(13):1455–1464.
59. Hartmann AF, Senn MJE. Studies in the metabolism of sodium R-lactate. III. Response of human subjects with liver damage, disturbed water and mineral balance, and renal insufficiency to the intravenous injection of sodium R-lactate. *J Clin Invest*. 1932;11(2):345–355.
60. Kreisberg RA. Lactate homeostasis and lactic acidosis. *Ann Intern Med*. 1980;92(2 Pt 1):227–237.
61. Vinay P, Cardoso M, Tejedor A, Prud'homme M, Levelillee M, Vinet B, et al. Acetate metabolism during hemodialysis: metabolic considerations. *Am J Nephrol*. 1987;7(5):337–354.
62. Stetten MR, Topper YJ. Pathways from gluconic acid to glucose in vivo. *J Biol Chem*. 1953;203(2):653–664.
63. Satoh K, Ohtawa M, Katoh M, Okamura E, Satoh T, Matsuura A, et al. Pharmacological study of BRS, a new bicarbonated Ringer's solution, in haemorrhagic shock dogs. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22(9):703–711.
64. Ruttmann TG, Montoya-Pelaez LF, James MFM. The coagulation changes induced by rapid in vivo crystalloid infusion are attenuated when magnesium is kept at the upper limit of normal. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(6):1475–1480.
65. Reid F, Lobo DN, Williams RN, Rowlands BJ, Allison SP. (Ab)normal saline and physiological Hartmann's solution: a randomized double-blind crossover study. *Clin Sci*. 2003;104(1):17–24.
66. Htyte N, White L, Sandhu G, Jones J, Meisels I. An extreme and life-threatening case of recurrent D-lactate encephalopathy. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2011;26(4):1432–1435.
67. Chan L, Slater J, Hasbargen J, Herndon DN, Veech RL, Wolf S. Neurocardiac toxicity of racemic D,L-lactate fluids. *Integr Physiol Behav Sci*. 1994;29(4):383–394.
68. Kuze S, Naruse T, Yamazaki M, Hirota K, Ito Y, Miyahara T. Effects of sodium L-lactate and sodium racemic lactate on intraoperative acid-base status. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75(5):702–707.
69. Bingel M, Lonnemann G, Koch KM, Dinarello CA, Shaldon S. Enhancement of in-vitro human interleukin-1 production by sodium acetate. *Lancet*. 1987;1(8523):14–16.
70. Thaha M, Yogiantoro M, Soewanto, Pranawa. Correlation between intradialytic hypotension in patients undergoing routine hemodialysis and use of acetate compared in bicarbonate dialysate. *Acta Med Indones*. 2005;37(3):145–148.
71. Veech RL, Gitomer WL. The medical and metabolic consequences of administration of sodium acetate. *Adv Enzyme Regul*. 1988;27:313–343.
72. Jacob AD, Elkins N, Reiss OK, Chan L, Shapiro JI. Effects of acetate on energy metabolism and function in the isolated perfused rat heart. *Kidney Int*. 1997;52(3):755–760.
73. Selby NM, Fluck RJ, Taal MW, McIntyre CW. Effects of acetate-free double-chamber hemodiafiltration and standard dialysis on systemic hemodynamics and troponin T levels. *ASAIO J*. 2006;52(1):62–69.
74. Davies PG, Venkatesh B, Morgan TJ, Presneill JJ, Kruger P, Thomas BJ, et al. Plasma acetate, gluconate and interleukin-6 profiles during and after cardiopulmonary bypass: a comparison of Plasma-Lyte 148 with a bicarbonate-balanced solution. *Critical Care*. 2011;15(1):R21.
75. Traverso LW, Lee WP, Langford MJ. Fluid resuscitation after an otherwise fatal hemorrhage: I. Crystalloid solutions. *J Trauma*. 1986;26(2):168–175.
76. Reinhart K, Perner A, Sprung CL, Jaeschke R, Schortgen F, Johan Groeneveld AB, et al. Consensus statement of the ESICM task force on colloid volume therapy in critically ill patients. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38(3):368–383.
77. Lobo DN, Stanga Z, Aloysius MM, Wicks C, Nunes QM, Ingram KL, et al. Effect of volume loading with 1 liter intravenous infusions of 0.9% saline, 4% succinylated gelatine (Gelofusine) and 6% hydroxyethyl starch (Voluven) on blood volume and endocrine responses: a randomized, three-way crossover study in healthy volunteers. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(2):464–470.
78. de Jonge E, Levi M. Effects of different plasma substitutes on blood coagulation: a comparative review. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29(6):1261–1267.
79. Treib J, Baron JF, Grauer MT, Strauss RG. An international view of hydroxyethyl starches. *Intensive Care Med*. 1999;25(3):258–268.
80. Sirtl C, Laubenthal H, Zumtobel V, Kraft D, Jurecka W. Tissue deposits of hydroxyethyl starch (HES): dose-dependent and time-related. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;82(4):510–515.
81. Lamke LO, Liljedahl SO. Plasma volume changes after infusion of various plasma expanders. *Resuscitation*. 1976;5(2):93–102.
82. James MFM, Latoo MY, Mythen MG, Mutch M, Michaelis C, Roche AM, et al. Plasma volume changes associated with two hydroxyethyl starch colloids following acute hypovolaemia in volunteers. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59(8):738–742.
83. Haase N, Perner A, Hennings LI, Siegemund M, Lauridsen B, Wetterslev M, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.38-0.45 versus crystalloid or albumin in patients with sepsis: systematic review with meta-analysis and trial sequential analysis. *BMJ*. 2013;346:f839.
84. Perner A, Haase N, Guttormsen AB, Tenhunen J, Klemenzson G, Åneman A, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.42 versus Ringer's acetate in severe sepsis. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367(2):124–134.
85. Dart AB, Mutter TC, Ruth CA, Taback SP. Hydroxyethyl starch (HES) versus other fluid therapies: effects on kidney function. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010;1:1–104.
86. Gillies MA, Habicher M, Jhanji S, Sander M, Mythen M, Hamilton M, et al. Incidence of postoperative death and acute kidney injury associated with i.v. 6% hydroxyethyl starch use: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(1):25–34.
87. Dickenmann M, Oettl T, Mihatsch MJ. Osmotic nephrosis: acute kidney injury with accumulation of proximal tubular lysosomes due to administration of exogenous solutes. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2008;51(3):491–503.
88. Peden A, McCardle L, Head MW, Love S, Ward HJT, Cousens SN, et al. Variant CJD infection in the spleen of a neurologically asymptomatic UK adult patient with haemophilia. *Haemophilia*. 2010;16(2):296–304.
89. Choi PT, Yip G, Quinonez LG, Cook DJ. Crystalloids vs. colloids in fluid resuscitation: a systematic review. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27(1):200–210.
90. Delaney AP, Dan A, McCaffrey J, Finfer S. The role of albumin as a resuscitation fluid for patients with sepsis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(2):386–391.
91. Jacob M, Chappell D, Conzen P, Finsterer U, Rehm M. Blood volume is normal after pre-operative overnight fasting. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52(4):522–529.
92. Ackland GL, Harrington J, Downie P, Holding JW, Singh-Ranger D, Griva K, et al. Dehydration induced by bowel preparation in older adults does not result in cognitive dysfunction. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(3):924–929. table of contents.
93. Sanders G, Mercer SJ, Saeb-Parsey K, Akhavani MA, Hosie KB, Lambert AW. Randomized clinical trial of intravenous fluid replacement during bowel preparation for surgery. *Br J Surg*. 2001;88(10):1363–1365.
94. Lamke LO, Nilsson GE, Reithner HL. Water loss by evaporation from the abdominal cavity during surgery. *Acta Chir Scand*. 1977;143(5):279–284.
95. Koyner JL, Murray PT. Mechanical ventilation and the kidney. *Blood Purif*. 2010;29(1):52–68.
96. Mackenzie AI, Donald JR. Urine output and fluid therapy during anaesthesia and surgery. *Br Med J*. 1969;3(5671):619–622.
97. Mythen MG, Purdy G, Mackie IJ, McNally T, Webb AR, Machin SJ. Postoperative multiple organ dysfunction syndrome associated with gut mucosal hypoperfusion, increased neutrophil degranulation and C1-esterase inhibitor depletion. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71(6):858–863.
98. Deitch EA. The role of intestinal barrier failure and bacterial translocation in the development of systemic infection and multiple organ failure. *Arch Surg*. 1990;125(3):403–404.
99. Lewis H, Wilkins M, Selwyn B, Yelland U, Griffith M, Bhoola KD. Relationship between ANP, cyclic GMP and tissue kallikrein following saline infusion in healthy volunteers. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 1989;247A:281–286.

100. Swart RM, Hoorn EJ, Betjes MG, Zietse R. Hyponatremia and inflammation: the emerging role of interleukin-6 in osmoregulation. *Nephron Physiol*. 2011;118(2):45–51.
101. Hamilton-Davies C, Mythen MG, Salmon JB, Jacobson D, Shukla A, Webb AR. Comparison of commonly used clinical indicators of hypovolaemia with gastrointestinal tonometry. *Intensive Care Med*. 1997;23(3):276–281.
102. Osman D, Ridel C, Ray P, Monnet X, Anguel N, Richard C, et al. Cardiac filling pressures are not appropriate to predict hemodynamic response to volume challenge. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(1):64–68.
103. Thorniley MS, Sinclair JS, Barnett NJ, Shurey CB, Green CJ. The use of near-infrared spectroscopy for assessing flap viability during reconstructive surgery. *Br J Plast Surg*. 1998;51(3):218–226.
104. Edsander-Nord A, Röjdmark J, Wickman M. Metabolism in pedicled and free TRAM flaps: a comparison using the microdialysis technique. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2002;109(2):664–673.
105. Hameed SM, Cohn SM. Gastric tonometry: the role of mucosal pH measurement in the management of trauma. *Chest*. 2003;123(5 suppl): 475S–481S.
106. Mythen MG, Webb AR. Perioperative plasma volume expansion reduces the incidence of gut mucosal hypoperfusion during cardiac surgery. *Arch Surg*. 1995;130(4):423–429.
107. Thacker JKM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2016;263(3):502.
108. Lobo DN, Bostock KA, Neal KR, Perkins AC, Rowlands BJ, Allison SP. Effect of salt and water balance on recovery of gastrointestinal function after elective colonic resection: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2002;359(9320):1812–1818.
109. Mythen MG. Postoperative gastrointestinal tract dysfunction. *Anesthesia & Analgesia*. 2005;100(1):196–204.
110. Holte K, Sharrock NE, Kehlet H. Pathophysiology and clinical implications of perioperative fluid excess. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(4):622–632.
111. Brandstrup B, Tønnesen H, Beier-Holgersen R, Hjortsø E, Ørding H, Lindorff-Larsen K, et al. Effects of intravenous fluid restriction on postoperative complications: comparison of two perioperative fluid regimens. *Ann Surg*. 2003;238(5):641–648.
112. Corcoran T, Rhodes JEJ, Clarke S, Myles PS, Ho KM. Perioperative fluid management strategies in major surgery: a stratified meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(3):640–651.
113. Kumar S, Berl T. Sodium. *Lancet*. 1998;352(9123):220–228.
114. Tisdall M, Crocker M, Watkiss J, Smith M. Disturbances of sodium in critically ill adult neurologic patients: a clinical review. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2006;18(1):57–63.
115. Leung AA, McAlister FA, Rogers SO, Pazo V, Wright A, Bates DW. Preoperative hyponatremia and perioperative complications. *Arch Intern Med*. 2012:1–8.
116. Ayus JC, Arieff AI. Brain damage and postoperative hyponatremia: the role of gender. *Neurology*. 1996;46(2):323–328.
117. Lane N, Allen K. Hyponatraemia after orthopaedic surgery. *BMJ*. 1999;318(7195):1363–1364.
118. Dorotta I, Basali A, Ritchey M, O'Hara JF Jr, Sprung J. Transurethral resection syndrome after bladder perforation. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(5):1536–1538.
119. Gravenstein D. Transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) syndrome: a review of the pathophysiology and management. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(2):438–446.
120. Mamoulakis C, Skolarikos A, Schulze M, Scoffone CM, Rassweiler JJ, Alivizatos G, et al. Results from an international multicentre double-blind randomized controlled trial on the perioperative efficacy and safety of bipolar vs monopolar transurethral resection of the prostate. *BJU Int*. 2012;109(2):240–248.
121. Olsson J, Hahn RG. Ethanol monitoring of irrigating fluid absorption in transcervical resection of the endometrium. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39(2):252–258.
122. ACOG technology assessment in obstetrics and gynecology, number 4, August 2005: hysteroscopy. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106(2):439–442.
123. Agarwal R, Emmett M. The post-transurethral resection of prostate syndrome: therapeutic proposals. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 1994;24(1):108–111.
124. Sterns RH, Nigwekar SU, Hix JK. The treatment of hyponatremia. *Semin Nephrol*. 2009;29(3):282–299.
125. Alfonzo AVM, Isles C, Geddes C, Deighan C. Potassium disorders—clinical spectrum and emergency management. *Resuscitation*. 2006;70(1):10–25.
126. Chung HS, Cho SJ, Park CS. Effects of liver function on ionized hypocalcaemia following rapid blood transfusion. *J Int Med Res*. 2012;40(2):572–582.
127. Lier H, Krep H, Schroeder S, Stuber F. Preconditions of hemostasis in trauma: a review. The influence of acidosis, hypocalcemia, anemia, and hypothermia on functional hemostasis in trauma. *J Trauma*. 2008;65(4):951–960.
128. Major P, Lortholary A, Hon J, Abdi E, Mills G, Menssen HD, et al. Zoledronic acid is superior to pamidronate in the treatment of hypercalcemia of malignancy: a pooled analysis of two randomized, controlled clinical trials. *J Clin Oncol*. 2001;19(2):558–567.
129. Aguilera IM, Vaughan RS. Calcium and the anaesthetist. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55(8):779–790.
130. Huijgen HJ, Soesan M, Sanders R, Mairuhu WM, Kesecioglu J, Sanders GT. Magnesium levels in critically ill patients: what should we measure? *AJCP*. 2000;114(5):688–695.
131. Saris NE, Mervaala E, Karppanen H, Khawaja JA, Lewenstam A. Magnesium. An update on physiological, clinical and analytical aspects. *Clin Chim Acta*. 2000;294(1–2):1–26.
132. Taylor BE, Huey WY, Buchman TG, Boyle WA, Coopersmith CM. Treatment of hypophosphatemia using a protocol based on patient weight and serum phosphorus level in a surgical intensive care unit. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2004;198(2):198–204.
133. Holte K, Kristensen BB, Valentiner L, Foss NB, Husted H, Kehlet H. Liberal versus restrictive fluid management in knee arthroplasty: a randomized, double-blind study. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(2):465–474.
134. Maharaj CH, Kallam SR, Malik A, Hassett P, Grady D, Laffey JG. Preoperative intravenous fluid therapy decreases postoperative nausea and pain in high risk patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):675–682. table of contents.
135. Rhodes A, Cecconi M, Hamilton M, Poloniecki J, Woods J, Boyd O, et al. Goal-directed therapy in high-risk surgical patients: a 15-year follow-up study. *Intensive Care Med*. 2010;36(8):1327–1332.
136. Grocott MPW, Dushianthan A, Hamilton MA, Mythen MG, Harrison D, Rowan K. Perioperative increase in global blood flow to explicit defined goals and outcomes following surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;11:CD004082.
137. Lilot M, Ehrenfeld JM, Lee C, Harrington B, Cannesson M, Rinehart J. Variability in practice and factors predictive of total crystalloid administration during abdominal surgery: retrospective two-centre analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114(5):767–776.
138. Holliday MA, Segar WE. The maintenance need for water in parenteral fluid therapy. *Pediatrics*. 1957;19(5):823–832.
139. Nisanevich V, Felsenstein I, Almogy G, Weissman C, Einav S, Matot I. Effect of intraoperative fluid management on outcome after intraabdominal surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(1):25–32.
140. Hübner M, Schäfer M, Demartines N, Müller S, Maurer K, Baulig W, et al. Impact of restrictive intravenous fluid replacement and combined epidural analgesia on perioperative volume balance and renal function within a Fast Track program. *J Surg Res*. 2012;173(1):68–74.
141. Futier E, Constantin J-M, Petit A, Chanques G, Kwiatkowski F, Flamein R, et al. Conservative vs restrictive individualized goal-directed fluid replacement strategy in major abdominal surgery: a prospective randomized trial. *Arch Surg*. 2010;145(12):1193–1200.
142. Myles PS, Bellomo R, Corcoran T, Forbes A, Peyton P, Story D, et al. Restrictive versus liberal fluid therapy for major abdominal surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(24):2263–2274.
143. MacKay G, Fearon K, McConnachie A, Serpell MG, Molloy RG, O'Dwyer PJ. Randomized clinical trial of the effect of postoperative intravenous fluid restriction on recovery after elective colorectal surgery. *Br J Surg*. 2006;93(12):1469–1474.
144. Shoemaker WC, Montgomery ES, Kaplan E, Elwyn DH. Physiologic patterns in surviving and nonsurviving shock patients. Use of sequential cardiorespiratory variables in defining criteria for therapeutic goals and early warning of death. *Arch Surg*. 1973;106(5):630–636.
145. Shoemaker WC, Appel PL, Kram HB, Waxman K, Lee TS. Prospective trial of supranormal values of survivors as therapeutic goals in high-risk surgical patients. *Chest*. 1988;94(6):1176–1186.
146. Boyd O, Grounds RM, Bennett ED. A randomized clinical trial of the effect of deliberate perioperative increase of oxygen delivery on mortality in high-risk surgical patients. *JAMA*. 1993;270(22):2699–2707.

147. Venn R, Steele A, Richardson P, Poloniecki J, Grounds M, Newman P. Randomized controlled trial to investigate influence of the fluid challenge on duration of hospital stay and perioperative morbidity in patients with hip fractures. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(1):65–71.
148. Marik PE, Baram M, Vahid B. Does central venous pressure predict fluid responsiveness? A systematic review of the literature and the tale of seven mares. *Chest*. 2008;134(1):172–178.
149. Polonen P, Ruokonen E, Hippelainen M, Poyhonen M, Takala J. A prospective, randomized study of goal-oriented hemodynamic therapy in cardiac surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(5):1052–1059.
150. Pearse R, Dawson D, Fawcett J, Rhodes A, Grounds RM, Bennett ED. Changes in central venous saturation after major surgery, and association with outcome. *Critical Care*. 2005;9(6):R694.
151. Donati A, Loggi S, Preiser J-C, Orsetti G, Münch C, Gabbanelli V, et al. Goal-directed intraoperative therapy reduces morbidity and length of hospital stay in high-risk surgical patients. *Chest*. 2007;132(6):1817–1824.
152. Pearse RM, Harrison DA, MacDonald N, Gillies MA, Blunt M, Ackland G, et al. Effect of a perioperative, cardiac output-guided hemodynamic therapy algorithm on outcomes following major gastrointestinal surgery: a randomized clinical trial and systematic review. *JAMA*. 2014;311(21):2181–2190.
153. Calvo-Vecino JM, Ripollés-Melchor J, Mythen MG, Casans-Francés R, Balik A, Artacho JP, et al. Effect of goal-directed haemodynamic therapy on postoperative complications in low–moderate risk surgical patients: a multicentre randomised controlled trial (FEDORA trial). British Journal of Anaesthesia [Internet]. 2018 Feb [cited 2018 Mar 11]; Available from: http://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S0007091217542075
154. Pestaña D, Espinosa E, Eden A, Nájera D, Collar L, Aldecoa C, et al. Perioperative goal-directed hemodynamic optimization using noninvasive cardiac output monitoring in major abdominal surgery: a prospective, randomized, multicenter, pragmatic trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(3):579–587.
155. Parker MJ, Griffiths R, Boyle A. Preoperative saline versus gelatin for hip fracture patients; a randomized trial of 396 patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(1):67–70.
156. Noblett SE, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2006;93(9):1069.
157. Morris C, Rogerson D. What is the optimal type of fluid to be used for peri-operative fluid optimisation directed by oesophageal Doppler monitoring? *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(9):819–827.
158. Harvey S, Harrison DA, Singer M, Ashcroft J, Jones CM, Elbourne D, et al. Assessment of the clinical effectiveness of pulmonary artery catheters in management of patients in intensive care (PAC-Man): a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2005;366(9484):472–477.
159. Prien T, Backhaus N, Pelster F, Pircher W, Bünte H, Lawin P. Effect of intraoperative fluid administration and colloid osmotic pressure on the formation of intestinal edema during gastrointestinal surgery. *J Clin Anesth*. 1990;2(5):317–323.
160. Perel P, Roberts I. Colloids versus crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;6:CD000567.
161. Ackland GL, Edwards M. Defining higher-risk surgery. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2010;16(4):339–346.
162. MacDonald N, Ahmad T, Mohr O, Kirk-Bayley J, Moppett I, Hinds CJ, et al. Dynamic preload markers to predict fluid responsiveness during and after major gastrointestinal surgery: an observational substudy of the OPTIMISE trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114(4):598–604.
163. Pearse R, Dawson D, Fawcett J, Rhodes A, Grounds RM, Bennett ED. Early goal-directed therapy after major surgery reduces complications and duration of hospital stay. A randomised, controlled trial [ISRCTN38797445]. *Critical Care*. 2005;9(6):R687–R693.
164. Lewis S, Andersen H, Thomas S. Early enteral nutrition within 24 h of intestinal surgery versus later commencement of feeding: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2009;13(3):569–575.
165. NICE. *Intravenous Fluid Therapy in Adults in Hospital (Clinical Guidance 174) [Internet]*. 2014 [cited 2014 Apr 16]. Available from: http://www.nice.org.uk/.
166. Groban L, Butterworth J. Perioperative management of chronic heart failure. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(3):557–575.
167. Trainor D, Borthwick E, Ferguson A. Perioperative management of the hemodialysis patient. *Semin Dial*. 2011;24(3):314–326.
168. Khajavi MR, Etezadi F, Moharari RS, Imani F, Meysamie AP, Khashayar P, et al. Effects of normal saline vs. lactated ringer's during renal transplantation. *Ren Fail*. 2008;30(5):535–539.
169. Dellinger RP, Levy MM, Rhodes A, Annane D, Gerlach H, Opal SM, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock, 2012. *Intensive Care Med*. 2013;39:165–228.
170. Rivers E, Nguyen B, Havstad S, Ressler J, Muzzin A, Knoblich B, et al. Early goal-directed therapy in the treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345(19):1368–1377.
171. The ProCESS Investigators. A randomized trial of protocol-based care for early septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1683–1693.
172. Peake SL, Delaney A, Bailey M, Bellomo R, et al. Goal-directed resuscitation for patients with early septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371(16):1496–1506.
173. Mouncey PR, Osborn TM, Power GS, Harrison DA, Sadique MZ, Grieve RD, et al. Trial of early, goal-directed resuscitation for septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372(14):1301–1311.
174. Rhodes A, Evans LE, Alhazzani W, Levy MM, Antonelli M, Ferrer R, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock 2016. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(3):486.
175. Bihari S, Prakash S, Bersten AD. Post resusicitation fluid boluses in severe sepsis or septic shock: prevalence and efficacy (price study). *Shock*. 2013;40(1):28–34.
176. Maitland K, Kiguli S, Opoka RO, Engoru C, Olupot-Olupot P, Akech SO, et al. Mortality after fluid bolus in African children with severe infection. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364(26):2483–2495.
177. Godin PJ, Fleisher LA, Eidsath A, Vandivier RW, Preas HL, Banks SM, et al. Experimental human endotoxemia increases cardiac regularity: results from a prospective, randomized, crossover trial. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24(7):1117–1124.
178. Krafft P, Steltzer H, Hiesmayr M, Klimscha W, Hammerle AF. Mixed venous oxygen saturation in critically ill septic shock patients. The role of defined events. *Chest*. 1993;103(3):900–906.
179. Singer M. Cellular dysfunction in sepsis. *Clin Chest Med*. 2008;29(4):655–660. viii–ix.
180. Hayes MA, Timmins AC, Yau EH, Palazzo M, Hinds CJ, Watson D. Elevation of systemic oxygen delivery in the treatment of critically ill patients. *N Engl J Med*. 1994;330(24):1717–1722.
181. Gattinoni L, Brazzi L, Pelosi P, Latini R, Tognoni G, Pesenti A, et al. A trial of goal-oriented hemodynamic therapy in critically ill patients. SvO2 Collaborative Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333(16):1025–1032.
182. Boyd JH, Forbes J, Nakada T, Walley KR, Russell JA. Fluid resuscitation in septic shock: a positive fluid balance and elevated central venous pressure are associated with increased mortality. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(2):259–265.
183. Rosenberg AL, Dechert RE, Park PK, Bartlett RH. Review of a large clinical series: association of cumulative fluid balance on outcome in acute lung injury: a retrospective review of the ARDSnet tidal volume study cohort. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2009;24(1):35–46.
184. Wiedemann HP, Wheeler AP, Bernard GR, Thompson BT, Hayden D, deBoisblanc B, et al. Comparison of two fluid-management strategies in acute lung injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354(24):2564–2575.
185. Stewart RM, Park PK, Hunt JP, McIntyre Jr RC, McCarthy J, Zarzabal LA, et al. Less is more: improved outcomes in surgical patients with conservative fluid administration and central venous catheter monitoring. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2009;208(5):725–735; discussion 735-737.
186. Neamu RF, Martin GS. Fluid management in acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2013;19(1):24–30.
187. Ong YS, Samuel M, Song C. Meta-analysis of early excision of burns. *Burns*. 2006;32(2):145–150.
188. Tricklebank S. Modern trends in fluid therapy for burns. *Burns*. 2009;35(6):757–767.
189. Baxter CR. Problems and complications of burn shock resuscitation. *Surg Clin North Am*. 1978;58(6):1313–1322.
190. Cartotto R, Zhou A. Fluid creep: the pendulum hasn't swung back yet!. *J Burn Care Res*. 2010;31(4):551–558.
191. Oda J, Yamashita K, Inoue T, Harunari N, Ode Y, Mega K, et al. Resuscitation fluid volume and abdominal compartment syndrome in patients with major burns. *Burns*. 2006;32(2):151–154.
192. Guilabert P, Usúa G, Martín N, Abarca L, Barret JP, Colomina MJ. Fluid resuscitation management in patients with burns: update. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(3):284–296.
193. O'Mara MS, Slater H, Goldfarb IW, Caushaj PF. A prospective, randomized evaluation of intra-abdominal pressures with crystalloid and colloid resuscitation in burn patients. *J Trauma*. 2005;58(5):1011–1018.

194. Thomas DK. Hypoglycaemia in children before operation: its incidence and prevention. *Br J Anaesth*. 1974;46(1):66–68.
195. Berry F. Practical aspects of fluid and electrolyte therapy. In: Berry F, ed. *Anesthetic Management of Difficult and Routine Pediatric Patients*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1986:107–135.
196. Murat I, Dubois M-C. Perioperative fluid therapy in pediatrics. *Pediatric Anesthesia*. 2008;18(5):363–370.
197. Phillips S, Daborn AK, Hatch DJ. Preoperative fasting for paediatric anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73(4):529–536.
198. Bailey AG, McNaull PP, Jooste E, Tuchman JB. Perioperative crystalloid and colloid fluid management in children: where are we and how did we get here? *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(2):375–390.
199. Welborn LG, McGill WA, Hannallah RS, Nisselson CL, Ruttimann UE, Hicks JM. Perioperative blood glucose concentrations in pediatric outpatients. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(5):543–547.
200. Sümpelmann R, Becke K, Brenner S, Breschan C, Eich C, Höhne C, et al. Perioperative intravenous fluid therapy in children: guidelines from the Association of the Scientific Medical Societies in Germany. *Pediatric Anesthesia*. 2017;27(1):10–18.
201. McNab S, Ware RS, Neville KA, Choong K, Coulthard MG, Duke T, et al. Isotonic versus hypotonic solutions for maintenance intravenous fluid administration in children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;(12):CD009457.
202. Holliday MA, Ray PE, Friedman AL. Fluid therapy for children: facts, fashions and questions. *Arch Dis Child*. 2007;92(6):546–550.
203. Kashani A, Landaverde C, Medici V, Rossaro L. Fluid retention in cirrhosis: pathophysiology and management. *QJM*. 2008;101(2):71–85.
204. Sola-Vera J, Miñana J, Ricart E, Planella M, González B, Torras X, et al. Randomized trial comparing albumin and saline in the prevention of paracentesis-induced circulatory dysfunction in cirrhotic patients with ascites. *Hepatology*. 2003;37(5):1147–1153.
205. Stravitz RT, Kramer AH, Davern T, Shaikh AOS, Caldwell SH, Mehta RL, et al. Intensive care of patients with acute liver failure: recommendations of the U.S. Acute Liver Failure Study Group. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(11):2498–2508.
206. Ganzevoort W, Rep A, Bonsel GJ, Fetter WPF, van Sonderen L, De Vries JIP, et al. A randomised controlled trial comparing two temporising management strategies, one with and one without plasma volume expansion, for severe and early onset pre-eclampsia. *BJOG*. 2005;112(10):1358–1368.
207. Duley L, Williams J, Henderson-Smart DJ. Plasma volume expansion for treatment of women with pre-eclampsia. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2000;2:CD001805.
208. Thornton CE, von Dadelszen P, Makris A, Tooher JM, Ogle RF, Hennessy A. Acute pulmonary oedema as a complication of hypertension during pregnancy. *Hypertens Pregnancy*. 2011;30(2):169–179.
209. The management of hypertensive disorders during pregnancy. NICE clinical guideline 107. Manchester, UK: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence; 2010.
210. Thornton C, Hennessy A, von Dadelszen P, Nishi C, Makris A, Ogle R. An international benchmarking collaboration: measuring outcomes for the hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can*. 2007;29(10):794–800.
211. Wijayatilake DS, Shepherd SJ, Sherren PB. Updates in the management of intracranial pressure in traumatic brain injury. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;(5):540–547.
212. Ryu JH, Walcott BP, Kahle KT, Sheth SA, Peterson RT, Nahed BV, et al. Induced and sustained hypernatremia for the prevention and treatment of cerebral edema following brain injury. *Neurocrit Care*. 2013.
213. Fletcher JJ, Bergman K, Blostein PA, Kramer AH. Fluid balance, complications, and brain tissue oxygen tension monitoring following severe traumatic brain injury. *Neurocrit Care*. 2010;13(1):47–56.
214. Velat GJ, Kimball MM, Mocco JD, Hoh BL. Vasospasm after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: review of randomized controlled trials and meta-analyses in the literature. *World Neurosurg*. 2011;76(5):446–454.
215. Sen J, Belli A, Albon H, Morgan L, Petzold A, Kitchen N. Triple-H therapy in the management of aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage. *Lancet Neurol*. 2003;2(10):614–621.
216. Tummala RP, Sheth RN, Heros RC. Hemodilution and fluid management in neurosurgery. *Clin Neurosurg*. 2006;53:238–251.
217. van der Jagt M. Fluid management of the neurological patient: a concise review. *Critical Care*. 2016;20:126.
218. Van Aken HK, Kampmeier TG, Ertmer C, Westphal M. Fluid resuscitation in patients with traumatic brain injury: what is a SAFE approach? *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25(5):563–565.
219. Levett D, Vercueil A, Grocott M. Resuscitation fluids in trauma 1: why give fluid and how to give it. *Trauma*. 2006;8(1):47–53.
220. Harris T, Thomas GOR, Brohi K. Early fluid resuscitation in severe trauma. *BMJ*. 2012;345:e5752.
221. Johansson PI, Oliveri RS, Ostrowski SR. Hemostatic resuscitation with plasma and platelets in trauma. *J Emerg Trauma Shock*. 2012;5(2):120–125.
222. Roberts I, Shakur H, Coats T, Hunt B, Balogun E, Barnetson L, etal. The CRASH-2 trial: a randomised controlled trial and economic evaluation of the effects of tranexamic acid on death, vascular occlusive events and transfusion requirement in bleeding trauma patients. *Health Technol Assess*. 2013;17(10):1–79.
223. Brain Trauma Foundation, Neurological Surgeons; Congress of Neurological Surgeons, Brain Trauma Foundation; American Association of. Guidelines for the management of severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24(suppl 1):S1–S106.
224. Sigurdsson GH. Perioperative fluid management in microvascular surgery. *J Reconstr Microsurg*. 1995;11(1):57–65.
225. Disa JJ, Polvora VP, Pusic AL, Singh B, Cordeiro PG. Dextran-related complications in head and neck microsurgery: do the benefits outweigh the risks? A prospective randomized analysis. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2003;112(6):1534–1539.
226. Shetty PS, Boyce H, Chisholm D. Anaesthesia for onco-plastic reconstructive surgery. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care*. 2009;20(1):18–21.
227. Ojima H, Kuwano H, Kato H, Miyazaki T, Nakajima M, Sohda M, et al. Relationship between cytokine response and temporary ventilation during one-lung ventilation in esophagectomy. *Hepatogastroenterology*. 2007;54(73):111–115.
228. Michelet P, D'Journo X-B, Roch A, Doddoli C, Marin V, Papazian L, et al. Protective ventilation influences systemic inflammation after esophagectomy: a randomized controlled study. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(5):911–919.
229. Low D, Kunz S, Schembre D, Otero H, Malpass T, Hsi A, et al. Esophagectomy—it's not just about mortality anymore: standardized perioperative clinical pathways improve outcomes in patients with esophageal cancer. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2007;11(11):1395–1402.
230. Kita T, Mammoto T, Kishi YK. Fluid management and postoperative respiratory disturbances in patients with transthoracic esophagectomy for carcinoma. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14(4):252–256.
231. Neal JM, Wilcox RT, Allen HW, Low DE. Near-total esophagectomy: the influence of standardized multimodal management and intraoperative fluid restriction. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2003;28(4):328–334.
232. Tandon S, Batchelor A, Bullock R, Gascoigne A, Griffin M, Hayes N, et al. Peri-operative risk factors for acute lung injury after elective oesophagectomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86(5):633–638.
233. Wei S, Tian J, Song X, Chen Y. Association of perioperative fluid balance and adverse surgical outcomes in esophageal cancer and esophagogastric junction cancer. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;86(1):266–272.
234. Jones RM, Moulton CE, Hardy KJ. Central venous pressure and its effect on blood loss during liver resection. *Br J Surg*. 1998;85(8):1058–1060.
235. Redai I, Emond J, Brentjens T. Anesthetic considerations during liver surgery. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2004;84(2):401–411.
236. Moore J, McLeod A. Anaesthesia for gynaecological oncology surgery. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care*. 2009;20(1):8–12.
237. Shenoy S, Ward P, Wigmore T. Surgical management of urological malignancy: anaesthetic and critical care considerations. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care*. 2009;20(1):22–27.
238. Rabey PG. Anaesthesia for renal transplantation. *BJA CEPD Reviews*. 2001;1(1):24–27.
239. De Gasperi A, Narcisi S, Mazza E, Bettinelli L, Pavani M, Perrone L, et al. Perioperative fluid management in kidney transplantation: is volume overload still mandatory for graft function? *Transplant Proc*. 2006;38(3):807–809.
240. Schmid S, Jungwirth B. Anaesthesia for renal transplant surgery: an update. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29(12):552–558.
241. Calixto Fernandes MH, Schricker T, Magder S, Hatzakorzian R. *Perioperative Fluid Management in Kidney Transplantation: A Black Box*. Crit Care [Internet] ; 2018. [cited 2018 Apr 30];22. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5784708/.

242. Fabbroni D, Bellamy M. Anaesthesia for hepatic transplantation. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care & Pain*. 2006;6(5):171–175.
243. Froghi F, Koti R, Gurusamy K, Mallett S, Thorburn D, Selves L, et al. Cardiac output Optimisation following Liver Transplant (COLT) trial: study protocol for a feasibility randomised controlled trial. Trials [Internet]. 2018 Mar 7 [cited 2018 Apr 30];19. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5842525/.
244. Jones JG, Wardrop CA. Measurement of blood volume in surgical and intensive care practice. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;84(2):226–235.
245. Chumlea WC, Guo SS, Zeller CM, Reo NV, Siervogel RM. Total body water data for white adults 18 to 64 years of age: the Fels Longitudinal Study. *Kidney Int*. 1999;56(1):244–252.
246. Baarsma R, Hof P, Zijlstra WG, Zock JP, Okken A. Measurement of total bodywater volume with deuterated water in newborn infants. *Biol Neonate*. 1992;62:108–112. 2–3.
247. Ellis KJ, Shypailo RJ, Abrams SA, Wong WW. The reference child and adolescent models of body composition. A contemporary comparison. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2000;904:374–382.
248. Campbell I. Physiology of fluid balance. *Ann Intensive Care*. 2009;10(12):593–596.
249. Hoffer LJ, Hamadeh MJ, Robitaille L, Norwich KH. Human sulfate kinetics. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2005;289(5):R1372–1380.
250. Hall JE. The body fluid compartments. In: *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 12th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2010:285–300.
251. Grădinaru I, Ghiciuc C-M, Popescu E, Nechifor C, Mândreci I, Nechifor M. Blood plasma and saliva levels of magnesium and other bivalent cations in patients with parotid gland tumors. *Magnes Res*. 2007;20(4):254–258.
252. Sewón LA, Karjalainen SM, Söderling E, Lapinleimu H, Simell O. Associations between salivary calcium and oral health. *J Clin Periodontol*. 1998;25(11 Pt 1):915–919.
253. Lentner. Units of Measurement, Body Fluids, Composition of the Body, Nutrition. In: *Geigy Scientific Tables*. 8th ed. Basle: Ciba-Geigy Ltd; 1981.
254. Albrecht E, Kirkham KR, Liu SS, Brull R. Peri-operative intravenous administration of magnesium sulphate and postoperative pain: a meta-analysis. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68(1):79–90.
255. Rasmussen HS, Videbaek R, Melchior T, Aurup P, Cintin C, Pedersen NT. Myocardial contractility and performance capacity after magnesium infusions in young healthy persons: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, cross-over study. *Clin Cardiol*. 1988;11(8):541–545.
256. Sugimoto J, Romani AM, Valentin-Torres AM, Luciano AA, Ramirez Kitchen CM, Funderburg N, et al. Magnesium decreases inflammatory cytokine production: a novel innate immunomodulatory mechanism. *J Immunol*. 2012;188(12):6338–6346.
257. Li F-Y, Chaigne-Delalande B, Kanellopoulou C, Davis JC, Matthews HF, Douek DC, et al. Signaling role for Mg2+ revealed by immunodeficiency due to loss of MagT1. *Nature*. 2011;475(7357):471–476.
258. Soar J, Perkins GD, Abbas G, Alfonzo A, Barelli A, Bierens JJLM, et al. European Resuscitation Council Guidelines for Resuscitation 2010 Section 8. Cardiac arrest in special circumstances: electrolyte abnormalities, poisoning, drowning, accidental hypothermia, hyperthermia, asthma, anaphylaxis, cardiac surgery, trauma, pregnancy, electrocution. *Resuscitation*. 2010;81(10):1400–1433.

48

Perioperative Acid-Base Balance

PATRICK J. NELIGAN

KEY POINTS

- The presence of a significant acid-base abnormality often signals a sinister underlying problem.
- All acid-base abnormalities result from alterations in the dissociation of water.
- Only three factors independently affect acid-base balance—the arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide (PaCO2), the strong ion difference (SID), and the total concentration of weak acids (A_{TOT}).
- Respiratory acidosis and alkalosis are caused by hypercarbia and hypocarbia, respectively.
- Metabolic acidosis is caused by decreased SID or increased A_{TOT}. Decreased SID results from accumulation of metabolic anions (shock, ketoacidosis, and renal failure), hyperchloremia, and free water excess. Increased A_{TOT} results from hyperphosphatemia.
- Metabolic alkalosis is caused by increased SID or decreased A_{TOT}. SID increases due to sodium gain, chloride loss, or free water deficit. A_{TOT} decreases in hypoalbuminemia and hypophosphatemia. This is particularly common in critical illness.
- Most acid-base disorders are treated by reversal of the cause.

Introduction—Why Is Acid-Base Balance Important?

Blood gas and pH analyses have been the most robust laboratory and bedside tools for identifying and monitoring critical illness since the advent of modern medicine. There is good reason to believe that understanding acid-base chemistry will continue to be important for physicians for decades to come.[1]

The human body is composed principally of water, partitioned into intracellular and extracellular compartments. The electrolyte composition of each of these spaces is tightly controlled to maintain homeostasis. Alterations in the relative concentrations of electrolytes and of carbon dioxide (CO_2) impact the tendency of water to auto-ionize into its component parts: hydrogen and hydroxyl ions.[2] Alterations in the water, gas, and electrolyte composition of the fluid compartments manifests as changes in the chemistry profile of body water and acid-base balance.

The hydrogen ion concentration is conventionally measured as pH (literally the "power of hydrogen"), the negative logarithmic value of its concentration. Deviations in extracellular pH away from the resting value of 7.4 have long been associated with acute and critical illness. Such deviations are known as "acid-base abnormalities."[3] All acid-base abnormalities result from changes in the local concentration of strong ions, weak acids, and CO_2.[2,4,5]

This chapter first looks at the basic science behind acid-base abnormalities. Subsequently, we explore the detection and treatment of acid-base conundrums, with specific reference to perioperative medicine and critical care.

What Are Acids and Bases?

The concept of acids and bases is relatively new in medicine,[6] and arose with the development of laboratory science in the early part of the 20th century. However, as early as 1831, O'Shaughnessy identified loss of "carbonate of soda" from the blood as a fundamental disturbance in patients dying of cholera.[7] This led directly to the development of crystalloid replacement therapy for hypovolemic shock. In 1909, L.J. Henderson coined the term "acid-base" balance.[8] He was able to define this process in terms of carbonic acid equilibrium. Henderson's work was later refined by Hasselbalch in 1916.[9] Their method described acid-base balance in terms of the hydration equation for CO_2[10]:

$$CO_2 + H_2O \rightarrow H_2CO_3 \rightarrow H^+ + HCO_3^-$$

$$pH = pK_a + \log\ [HCO_3^-]/[H_2CO_3]$$

$$[\text{Total } CO_2] = [HCO_3^-] + [\text{Dissolved } CO_2] + [\text{Carbamino } CO_2] + [H_2CO_3]$$

$$\approx P_{CO_2} \times 0.03 \text{ mmol } CO_2/\text{L/mm Hg}$$

So, substituting into the foregoing equation:

$$pH = 6.1 + \log\ [HCO_3^-]/PCO_2 \times 0.03$$

This is the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation.

The introduction of this concept into clinical practice became possible with the development of volumetric CO_2 analysis by Van Slyke and others in 1919.[11] This led to

60 years of research and interest in CO_2 and its derivative, bicarbonate, as the principle agents that impact acid-base chemistry, despite the knowledge in the 1920s of the importance of chloride in acid-base equilibria.[12]

An understanding of acid-base chemistry in the human body requires familiarity with physical chemistry. Because the body contains a large quantity of water, the physical properties of water have enormous implication for maintenance of homeostasis. Water is a simple triatomic molecule. Its chemical formula is H_2O and its structural formula is H-O-H. The charge distribution of each covalent bond is unequal, and the molecule has a polar conformation and an H-O-H bond angle of 105 degrees. Water molecules attract and form hydrogen bonds with one another. Consequently, water has a high surface tension, a low vapor pressure, a high specific heat capacity, a high heat of vaporization, and a high boiling point.

Water molecules are in continual motion. Occasionally a collision generates sufficient energy to transfer a proton from one water molecule to another. Thus, water is always slightly dissociated into a negatively charged hydroxyl (OH^-) ion and a positively charged hydronium (H_3O^+) ion. Conventionally, this self-ionization of water is written as follows:

$$[H_2O] \leftrightarrow H^+ + OH^-$$

The symbol H^+ is convenient because, although protons dissociating from water have many aliases (such as H_3O^+ and $H_9O_4{}^+$), most physicians and chemists refer to them as hydrogen ions.

The self-ionization of water is miniscule. In pure water at 25°C, the $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ are 1.0×10^{-7}mmol/L. The tendency for water to dissociate into its component parts is represented by the expression

$$K_{eq}H_2O = [H^+][OH^-]$$

The molarity of water is extremely high—55.5 M ("there is a lot of water in water"). As the concentration of water and the K_{eq} are constants, the ion-product dissociation constant (pKa) for water can be expressed as follows:

$$K_{eq}H_2O = K_{eq}(55.5) = K_w^{'} = [H^+][OH^-]$$

The implication is that the product of the concentrations of hydroxyl and hydrogen is constant, so when there is an increase in the concentration of hydrogen ions, there is a concomitant decrease in the concentration of hydroxyl ions, and vice versa.

Pure water is considered neutral because the relative concentrations of hydrogen and hydroxyl are equal at 1.0×10^{-7}mmol/L. A solution is considered *acidic* if the concentration of hydrogen ions exceeds that of hydroxyl ions ($[H^+] > 1.0 \times 10^{-7}$mmol/L, $[OH^-] < 1.0 \times 10^{-7}$ mmol/L). A solution is considered *alkaline* if the hydroxyl ion concentration exceeds the hydrogen ion concentration.

In 1903, Svante Arrhenius (1859-1927) established the foundations of acid-base chemistry. In an aqueous solution, an Arrhenius acid is any substance that delivers a hydrogen ion into the solution.[5] A base is any substance that delivers a hydroxyl ion into the solution. Because of its high dielectric constant, water is a highly ionizing solution. Therefore, substances with polar bonds will dissociate into their component parts (dissolve) in water. Brønsted and Lowry (BL) independently advanced this concept using slightly different terminology: an acid is a proton donor, a base a proton acceptor. Water itself is amphoteric and can act as either an acid or as a base. Thus, when hydrochloric acid (HCl) is dissolved in water, chloride, the acid, donates a proton to water, the base. Similarly, when potassium hydroxide (KOH) is dissolved in water, potassium, the base, receives a hydrogen ion from water, the acid or proton donor.

The degree of dissociation of substances in water determines whether they are strong acids or strong bases. Lactic acid, which has an ion pKa of 3.4, is completely dissociated at physiologic pH, and is a strong acid. Conversely, carbonic acid, which has a pKa of 6.4, is incompletely dissociated, and is a weak acid. Similarly, ions such as sodium (Na^+), potassium (K^+), and chloride (Cl^-), which do not easily bind other molecules, are considered *strong ions*—they exist free in solution. As each Na^+ delivers a hydroxyl moiety into extracellular fluid (ECF), it is functionally a base, as are all cations. As each Cl^- delivers a hydrogen moiety into ECF, it is functionally an acid, as are all anions. The hydrogen and hydroxyl ions delivered in this way bind to one another, forming water molecules, and relatively few free hydrogen or hydroxyl ions remain free in solution.

$$HCL + H_2O \rightarrow H_3O^+ + Cl^-$$

In this reaction, hydrogen chloride acts as a BL acid and water as a BL base.

$$NaOH + H_2O \rightarrow H_2O + OH^- + Na^+$$

In this reaction, water acts as a BL acid and sodium as a BL base.

$$OH^- + Na^+ + H_3O^+ + Cl^- = Na^+ + Cl^- + H_2O$$

Because of electrical neutrality, the hydrogen and hydroxyl ions delivered by chloride and sodium become water.

In summary, all acid-base reactions in the human body relate to the presence of charged particles within an aqueous environment. In the following section, how the components of ECF influence the acid-base status of the body, as measured by clinicians, is discussed. This is followed by an explanation of different acid-base abnormalities, and the tools used to identify them. These approaches are neither distinct from one another nor scientifically incompatible.

What Determines the Acidity or Alkalinity of a Solution?

Because all acid-base reactions are based on the principles of physical chemistry, three simple rules must be followed:[2]

1. *Electrical neutrality*: in aqueous solutions, in any compartment, the sum of all the positive charged ions must equal the sum of all the negative charged ions.

2. *Dissociation equilibria*: the dissociation equilibria of all incompletely dissociated substances, as derived from the law of mass action, must be satisfied at all times.
3. *Mass conservation*: the amount of a substance in a given compartment remains constant unless it is added, removed, generated, or destroyed. Therefore, the total concentration of an incompletely dissociated substance is the sum of concentrations of its dissociated and undissociated forms.

To determine the acid-base status of a fluid, all substances to which these rules could be applied must be accounted for. Fundamentally this involves counting up all the charges (and hence hydrogen and hydroxyl ions) delivered by strong cations (bases) and strong anions (acids), weak acid buffers, and CO_2.[13] A discussion of key groups follows.

STRONG IONS

The first group of ions, the strong ions, dissociate completely. The most abundant strong ions in the extracellular space are Na^+ and Cl^-. Other important strong ions include K^+, sulfate ($SO_4{}^{2-}$), magnesium (Mg^{2+}), and calcium (Ca^{2+}). These are occasionally referred to as "mineral" acids or bases because they cannot be metabolized.[6] Organic acids are generated from metabolism and accumulate when there is metabolic dysfunction—such as kidney failure, splanchnic hypoperfusion, or hormonal deficiency.

In a solution containing strong ions, created, for example, using specified concentrations of sodium hydroxide (NaOH) and HCL, the hydrogen ion concentration can be calculated by solving for electric neutrality:

$$(\mathrm{Na}^+ - \mathrm{Cl}^-) + (\mathrm{H}^+ - \mathrm{OH}^-) = 0$$

This creates two separate simultaneous equations[14]:

$$\mathrm{H}^+ = \sqrt{K'_W + \frac{([\mathrm{Na}^+] - [\mathrm{Cl}^-])^2}{4}} - \frac{([\mathrm{Na}]^+ - [\mathrm{Cl}^-])}{2}$$

and

$$\mathrm{OH}^- = \sqrt{K'_W + \frac{([\mathrm{Na}^+] - [\mathrm{Cl}^-])^2}{4}} + \frac{([\mathrm{Na}^+] - [\mathrm{Cl}^-])}{2}$$

These equations tell us that hydrogen and hydroxyl concentrations are determined by the Kw′ (water pKa), and the difference in charge between Na^+ and Cl^-. Because the former is constant, in this system ($[Na^+] - [Cl^-]$) must determine $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$. Given that the concentration of both Na+ and Cl^- are known, the net positive charge minus net negative charge can be quantified. It is the *strong ion difference* (SID).[14] Logically, in any solution, the sum total of the charges imparted by strong cations minus the charges from strong anions will represent the SID. SID independently influences hydrogen ion concentration (Fig. 48.1). In human ECF, SID is always positive.

$$\mathrm{SID} = \left([\mathrm{Na}^+] + [\mathrm{K}^+] + [\mathrm{Ca}^{2+}] + [\mathrm{Mg}^{2+}]\right) - ([\mathrm{Cl}^-] + [\mathrm{A}^-]) = 40 - 44\,\mathrm{mEq/L}$$

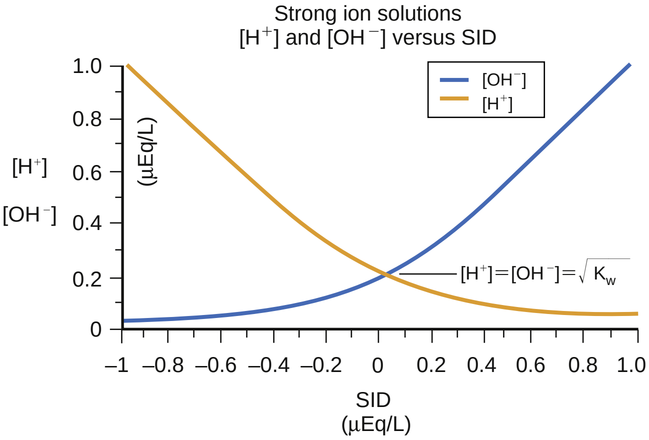


Fig. 48.1 Effect of Changes in the Strong Ion Difference (*SID*) on Hydrogen and Hydroxyl Ion Concentration. (Modified from Stewart PA. Modern quantitative acid-based chemistry. *Can J Physiol Pharmacol.* 1983;61:1444–1461.)

Hydroxyl ions almost always exceed hydrogen ions quantitatively in solution. The relationship between SID and $[H^+]$ is nonlinear in these conditions. Any change in SID will change both $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ concentrations. Because of the Kw′, this relationship is inverse: as $[H^+]$ increases, $[OH^-]$ decreases (see Fig. 48.1). SID is an independent variable, and $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ are dependent, meaning that the addition of hydrogen ions alone (without strong corresponding anions) cannot influence the pH of the solution.

WEAK ACID "BUFFER" SOLUTIONS

The degree of water dissociation, and thus the hydrogen ion concentration, is also influenced by charges derived from weak acids. These acids are partially dissociated compounds whose degree of dissociation is determined by the prevailing temperature and pH. The predominant molecules in this group are albumin and phosphate. Stewart used the term A_{TOT} to represent the total concentration of weak anions or acids that influence acid-base balance.[2]

The acid HA will only partly dissociate, represented by the equilibrium

$$[\mathrm{H}^+] \times [\mathrm{A}^-] = \mathrm{K}_\mathrm{A} \times [\mathrm{HA}]$$

K_A is the weak acid pKa. If we assume that HA and A^- play no further part in this reaction (the law of mass conservation), the amount of A^- present in the solution must equal the amount initially present, so:

$$[\mathrm{HA}] + [\mathrm{A}^-] = [\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{TOT}}]$$

where $[A_{TOT}]$ is the total weak acid concentration.

In order to calculate the effect of weak acid dissociation on $[H^+]$, we must take into account water dissociation and electrical neutrality:

$$[\mathrm{H}^+] + [\mathrm{OH}^-] = \mathrm{K}'_\mathrm{w} \ (\text{water dissociation}).$$

$$[\mathrm{SID}] + [\mathrm{H}^+] - [\mathrm{A}^-] - [\mathrm{OH}^-] = 0 \ (\text{electrical neutrality}).$$

These four simultaneous equations determine the $[H^+]$ in this solution containing strong ions and weak acids. SID and A_{TOT} are independent variables. Kw′ and KA are constants. Consequently, the other variables [HA], $[H^+]$, $[OH^-]$, and $[A^-]$ must adjust to satisfy the foregoing equations. They are dependent variables.

CARBON DIOXIDE

Along with strong ions and weak bases, ECF contains CO_2. The concentration of CO_2 in ECF is determined by tissue production and alveolar ventilation. CO_2, when in solution, exists in four forms: CO_2 (denoted CO_2[d]), carbonic acid (H_2CO_3), bicarbonate ions ($HCO_3{}^-$), and carbonate ions $CO_3{}^{2-}$.

The concentration of CO_2(d) is determined by the solubility coefficient of CO_2 (SCO_2), which depends on body temperature, PCO_2, and other factors. Several equilibrium equations can be derived from the hydration of CO_2:

$$[CO_2\ (d)] = [Sco_2] \times Pco_2$$

The tendency for CO_2 to hydrate to H_2CO_3, and subsequently dissociate to H^+ and $HCO_3{}^-$, is reflected by the equation:

$$[CO_2\ (d)] \times [OH^-] = K_1 \times [HCO_3^-]$$

These equations can be combined together and with water equilibrium to the following:

$$[H^+] \times [HCO_3^-] = K_c \times pCO_2$$

$HCO_3{}^-$ also dissociates to release hydrogen ions and carbonate, the equilibrium reaction which is represented by this equation:

$$[H^+] \times [CO_3^{2-}] = K_3[HCO_3^-]$$

FACTORS INDEPENDENTLY INFLUENCING WATER DISSOCIATION

Now that we have looked at the different factors that may influence the concentration of hydrogen ions in a solution—strong ions, weak acids, and CO_2—we can combine the derived equations to a solve for $[H^+]$:

1. Water dissociation equilibrium:
$$[H^+] \times [OH^-] = K_W'$$
2. Weak acid dissociation equilibrium:
$$[H^+] \times [A^-] = K_A \times [HA]$$
3. Conservation of mass for weak acids:
$$[HA] + [A^-] = [A_{TOT}]$$
4. $HCO_3{}^-$ formation equilibrium:
$$[H^+] \times [HCO_3^-] = K_C \times pCO_2$$
5. Carbonate ion formation equilibrium:
$$[H^+] \times [CO_3^{2-}] = K_3 \times [HCO_3^-]$$
6. Electrical neutrality:
$$[SID] + [H^+] - [HCO_3^-] - [A^-] - [CO_3^{2-}] - [OH^-] = 0$$

There are six independent simultaneous equations, and just six unknown, dependent variables determined by them: [HA], $[A^-]$, $[HCO_3{}^-]$, $[CO_3{}^{2-}]$, $[OH^-]$, and $[H^+]$. There are three known independent variables: [SID], $[A_{TOT}]$, and PCO_2

Solving the equations for $[H^+]$:

$$[SID] + [H^+] - K_C \times P_C/[H^+] - K_A \times [A_{TOT}]/(K_A + [H^+]) - K_3 \times K_C P_C/[H^+]^2 - K_W'/[H^+] = 0$$

In other words, $[H^+]$ is a function of SID, A_{TOT}, PCO_2, and a number of constants. All other variables, most notably $[H^+]$, $[OH^-]$, and $[HCO_3{}^-]$ are dependent and cannot independently influence acid-base balance.

Acid-Base Abnormalities

The value of the physical chemistry ("Stewart") approach is that it allows us to use a simple model for understanding acid-base disturbances, as all abnormalities can be explained in terms of SID, A_{TOT}, or PCO_2.[2,14] Traditionally, acid-base disturbances have been classified as resulting from either alterations in arterial carbon dioxide ($PaCO_2$) tension (respiratory acidosis or alkalosis) or alterations in blood chemistry (metabolic acidosis or alkalosis).[16] This remains a useful classification, although it must be remembered that respiratory or metabolic abnormalities rarely occur independent of one another.

RESPIRATORY ACID-BASE ABNORMALITIES

Respiratory Alkalosis

The normal $PaCO_2$ is 40 mm Hg (5.3 kPa). Respiratory alkalosis occurs when there is an acute decrease in $PaCO_2$ as a result of hyperventilation. Acute respiratory alkalosis is characterized by a pH > 7.45, a low $PaCO_2$, and a low $HCO_3{}^-$. A simple rule of thumb for this reaction is as follows:

Acute respiratory alkalosis:

$$\Delta HCO_3^- = 0.2\ \Delta PaCO_2$$

The hyperventilating patient will present with symptoms and signs of vasoconstriction: lightheadedness, visual disturbances, dizziness, and hypocalcemia from increased binding of calcium to albumin. The hypocalcemia is caused by an increase in the available negative charge on albumin in alkaline states. Acute hypocalcemia is associated with paresthesia and tetany. In anesthesia practice, patients may hyperventilate preoperatively as a consequence of anxiety, and postoperatively secondary to pain, agitation, or a full bladder. More commonly, hyperventilation results from poor mechanical ventilation strategy and may result in significant systemic and, in particular, cerebral vasoconstriction. Therapeutic hyperventilation is no longer used to treat intracranial hypertension because of significant concerns regarding cerebral hypoperfusion and ischemia.

Respiratory Acidosis

Respiratory acidosis occurs when there is an acute rise in $PaCO_2$ usually associated with respiratory failure. This may result from problems with

- Central ventilator control—such as toxicity from anesthetic agents, benzodiazepines, or opioids, stroke, spinal cord injury;
- Peripheral ventilator control—such as myasthenia gravis, poliomyelitis, polymyopathy, or neuromuscular blockade;
- Ventilation-perfusion mismatch—associated with pneumothorax, pleural effusion, atelectasis, pneumonia, or pulmonary edema.

Clinically, patients have signs of CO_2 retention: cyanosis, vasodilatation, and narcosis.

Respiratory acidosis causes a rapid increase in $[H^+]$. Compensation for hypercarbia is slow, requiring increased urinary excretion of Cl^-,[8] and pH falls rapidly. A concomitant increase in the plasma HCO_3^- occurs and reflects a higher total CO_2 load. In the mid-1960s, Brackett, Cohen, and Schwartz elegantly described the relative changes in HCO_3^- in response to acute and chronic elevations in $PaCO_2$, providing us with extremely useful "rules of thumb":[17]

In acute hypercarbia, the bicarbonate concentration of plasma rises slowly

- An increase in $PaCO_2$ by 10 mm Hg (1.3 kPa) results in an increase in HCO_3^- by 1 mmol/L (1 mEq/L)

A patient returning to the intensive care unit from the operating room who has been under ventilation for several hours may be hypercapnic, for example, with a $PaCO_2$ of 80 mm Hg (10.5 kPa). Using this rule, the expected HCO_3 will be 28 mmol/L (Table 48.1).

In chronic respiratory failure, the total CO_2 load in the body increases substantially, reflected by relatively high levels of plasma HCO3⁻. There is a concomitant fall in plasma chloride, reflecting compensation for elevated levels of carbonic acid.

In chronic respiratory acidosis:

- $\Delta H^+ \text{ (nEq/L)} = 0.8\ (\Delta PCO_2)$
- An increase in $PaCO_2$ by 10 mm Hg (1.3 kPa) will increase plasma $[HCO_3^-]$ by 3 mmol/L (3 mEq/L)

A patient returning to the intensive care unit from the operating room, ventilated to a $PaCO_2$ of 40 mm Hg (5.3 kPa) but with high total CO_2, secondary to chronic respiratory failure (for example, from COPD), may fail to liberate from mechanical ventilation, due to acute metabolic alkalosis. Using the "rule" the patient's preoperative total CO_2 of 33 mEq/L (mmol/L) will indicate a baseline $PaCO_2$ of 70 mm Hg (9.3 kPa) for that patient (see Table 48.1).

For anesthesiologists, who routinely administer mechanical ventilation to patients with various levels of CO_2 retention, it is important to consider goals for both arterial and end tidal carbon dioxide ($etCO_2$) in the operating room. This should also include consideration of the impact of drugs, such as opioids and benzodiazepines, on respiratory function and on the effect of intravenous fluids on overall acid-base dynamics. For example, both isotonic saline (0.9%) solution and Ringer's Lactate (or Hartmann's) solution will cause progressive increase in extracellular chloride in a dose-dependent manner. This does not occur with truly balanced solutions such as Plasmalyte-148 or Normosol-R. In theory, this may impact postoperative CO_2-HCO_3^- homeostasis and respiratory function.

In critical illness, in particular in patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), there is general consensus among intensivists that aggressive mechanical ventilation to normalize pH and $PaCO_2$ is more harmful than "permissive" hypercapnia. Data support that such an approach—a "lung protective" strategy— is well tolerated,[18,19] and may indeed be beneficial.[20]

TABLE 48.1 Changes in Bicarbonate HCO_3^- and $PaCO_2$ in Acute and Chronic Hypercarbia

ACUTE HYPERCARBIA

Measured Bicarbonate	**Expected $PaCO_2$ in Acute Respiratory Failure**	
HCO_3^- mEq/L or mmol/L	**$PaCO_2$ mm Hg**	**$PaCO_2$ kPa**
24	40	5.3
25	50	6.6
26	60	8.0
27	70	9.3
28	80	10.5
29	90	11.8
30	100	13

CHRONIC HYPERCARBIA

Measured Bicarbonate	**Expected $PaCO_2$ in Chronic Respiratory Failure**	
HCO_3^- mEq/L or mmol/L	**$PaCO_2$ mm Hg**	**$PaCO_2$ kPa**
24	40	5.3
27	50	6.6
30	60	8.0
33	70	9.3
36	80	10.5
39	90	11.8
42	100	13

METABOLIC ACID-BASE DISTURBANCES

Metabolic acid-base disturbances are caused by abnormalities of extracellular water and electrolyte composition and serum protein levels. Using the terminology described above, metabolic acid-base abnormalities are caused by alterations in the SID or A_{TOT}, or both. An increase in the SID causes alkalemia; a decrease in the SID causes acidemia. The alternation may be caused by a change in the total or relative concentration of strong ions. For example, a decrease in the SID (i.e., more anions relative to cations)

TABLE 48.2 Classification of Primary Acid-Base Abnormalities

Abnormalities	Acidosis	Alkalosis
Respiratory	Increased PCO_2	Decreased PCO_2
Metabolic		
ABNORMAL SID		
Caused by water excess or deficit	Water excess = dilutional	Water deficit = contraction
	$\downarrow$ SID + $\downarrow$ $[Na^+]$	$\uparrow$ SID $\uparrow$ $[Na^+]$
Caused by electrolytes	Chloride excess	Chloride deficit
Chloride (measured)	$\downarrow$ SID $\uparrow$ $[Cl^-]$	$\uparrow$ SID + $\downarrow$ $[Cl^-]$
Other (unmeasured) anions, such as lactate and keto acids	$\downarrow$ SID $\uparrow$ $[UMA^-]$	—
ABNORMAL A_{TOT}		
Albumin [Alb]	$\uparrow$ [Alb] (rare)	$\downarrow$ [Alb]
Phosphate [Pi]	$\uparrow$ [Pi]	

[Alb], Concentration of serum albumin; *A_{TOT}*, to represent the total concentration of weak ions; *$[Cl^-]$*, concentration of chloride ions; *$[Na^+]$*, concentration of sodium ions; *PCO_2*, partial pressure of carbon dioxide; *[Pi]*, concentration of inorganic phosphate; *SID*, strong ion difference; *$[UMA^-]$*, unmeasured anions; ↑, increased; ↓, decreased.

(Modified from Fencl V, Jabor A, Kazda A, Figge J. Diagnosis of metabolic acid-base disturbances in critically ill patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2000;162:2246–2251.)

causes acidosis; this may occur because of a net increase in anions: mineral acids such as chloride or organic acids lactate or ketones (organic acids can be metabolized). In addition, SID can fall due to an increase in the volume of distribution of the same quantity of ions (Table 48.2). A useful rule of thumb is that for every 1 mEq/L fall in the SID, there is a 1 mEq/L fall in the $[HCO_3^-]$ from baseline (although the "normal" level varies with respiratory function; see Table 48.1)—and this approach is widely used to characterize metabolic acidosis. Likewise, for every 1 mEq/L increase in the SID, there is a 1 mEq/L increase in the $[HCO_3^-]$ from baseline—and this approach is widely used to characterize metabolic alkalosis. Note that, in all scenarios, $[HCO_3^-]$ is a *dependent* variable—dependent on changes in SID or A_{TOT}.

Metabolic acidosis is of clinical significance for two reasons: pathologies arising from the acidosis itself and pathologies arising from the cause of the acidosis. Acidosis is associated with alterations in transcellular ion pumps and increased ionized calcium. The result is vasodilation, diminished muscular performance (particularly myocardial), and arrhythmias. The oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve shifts rightward to increase oxygen offload into the tissues. Rapid-onset metabolic acidosis may be associated with profound hypotension, cardiac arrhythmias, and death. The malignancy of the acidosis is strongly related to the underlying disease process; lactic acidosis caused by circulatory shock is more malevolent than hyperchloremic acidosis.[13] The body is hyperresponsive to acidosis. Increasing hydrogen ion content in cerebrospinal fluid activates the respiratory center to stimulate respiration. Alveolar ventilation increases, reducing arterial CO_2 content, hence reducing the total body $[H^+]$. Bicarbonate concentration simultaneously falls, due to buffering activity, and due to the reduction in total CO_2. As a result, the blood pH falls less in metabolic acidosis compared with respiratory acidosis.

Metabolic alkalosis rarely occurs as a result of acute illness. Symptoms and signs of metabolic alkalosis include widespread vasoconstriction, lightheadedness, tetany, and paresthesia. The main compensatory mechanism is hypoventilation that may delay weaning from mechanical ventilation in critically ill patients.

In normal ECF, the SID is 40 to 44 mEq/L, this positive charge being balanced principally by weak acids (without which the pH of blood would be 11.9). Anything that increases the SID will increase the relative concentration of cations to anions and alkalinize the solution. Anything that decreases the SID will decrease the relative concentration of cations to anions and will acidify the solution. Hence, if the extracellular compartment volume is expanded with free water (no electrolytes), the components of the system are diluted, with relatively more dilution of more abundant moieties (sodium rather than chloride); the result is a reduction in SID and "dilutional acidosis." This is rarely seen in clinical practice, due to the renal water clearance. Conversely, if free water is removed from the ECF, for example from increased evaporative losses, there is an increase in the relative concentration of charged moieties, and this concentration effects more abundant ions and compounds (sodium rather than chloride). The SID increases and the patient develops a "contraction alkalosis" (see Table 48.2). This is commonly seen in clinical practice, in particular following the administration of loop diuretics that have a greater impact on water removal over salt.

In hospital medicine, "normal saline" (NaCl 0.9%—NS), containing 154 mEq (3.5 g) of sodium and 154 mEq (5.5 g) of chloride, is commonly used. The SID of this solution is 0. As each liter of fluid delivers relatively more chloride than sodium (as the baseline proportions in ECF are 1.4:1—SID 40), progressive hyperchloremia results. This reduces SID and results in "hyperchloremic acidosis."[21]

Any process that removes chloride without sodium, such as vomiting or aggressive nasogastric suctioning with a loss of HCl, causes metabolic alkalosis (hypochloremic alkalosis) due to an increase in SID. The alkalosis is caused by chloride loss, which obeys the law of conservation of mass (i.e., there is a finite quantity available in the ECF), not hydrogen ions, whose source—water—is unlimited. Severe diarrhea, which is associated with loss of both potassium and sodium, reduces the SID, and is associated with metabolic acidosis. Aggressive use of diuretics causes a net loss of free water over sodium and chloride and causes contraction alkalosis.

The most significant form of metabolic acidosis is associated with a net gain of "unmeasured" (organic—that is electrolytes not conventionally measured on serum chemistry analysis) anions and, consequently, a decreased SID.

1. In dysoxia, liver dysfunction, and, in particular, states of severe stress, lactate is produced, reducing the SID and causing acidosis
2. In out-of-control diabetes (ketoacidosis) or during starvation or liver disease, β-hydroxybutyrate and acetoacetate are produced, reducing SID and causing acidosis
3. In severe renal failure, Cl^-, SO_4^{2-}, PO_4^{3-} ("fixed renal acids"), and various other metabolic intermediaries are not excreted, causing acidosis.

The total weak acid pool, principally serum albumin and phosphate, is also an important determinant of acid-base status. Hyperphosphatemia has long been associated with the acidosis of renal failure. Hypoalbuminemia is common in critical care. Hypoalbuminemia decreases A_{TOT} and is associated with metabolic alkalosis.[22,23] There is a strong association between hypoalbuminemia and severity of critical illness. Albumin deficits result from four different homeostatic changes: reprioritization of hepatic protein production favoring production of acute phase reactants and limiting albumin synthesis; capillary leak with loss of albumin into the interstitium; breakdown of pre-existing albumin so that its constituent amino acids can be used for protein synthesis; and replacement of plasma with protein-free fluids.

The impact of hypoalbuminemia on acid-base balance has been grossly underestimated. Stewart's original theory has been subsequently modified by Fencl and Figge.[24] The serum albumin concentration is the core negative charge offsetting the net positive charge of the SID.[22] Consequently, the presence of hypoalbuminemia may mask the detection of acidosis[25] caused, for example, by unmeasured anions (UMA), when using conventional tools of acid-base chemistry: pH, bicarbonate, base deficit, and the anion gap (AG).[26] Indeed, the presence of hypoalbuminemia has significant implications, not least for its association with adverse outcomes.[27] Hyperalbuminemia is very unusual; in cholera, when associated with hemoconcentration, it results in acidosis.[28]

Regulation of Acid-Base Balance

Extracellular hydrogen ion concentration appears to be tightly controlled by the body. In all probability this regulation reflects a need to prevent rapid changes in extracellular electrochemical balance from interfering with the function of transcellular ion pumps. To prevent fluctuation a variety of intracellular and extracellular buffering systems have evolved. A *buffer* is a solution of two or more chemicals that minimizes changes in pH in response to the addition of an acid or base. Ideally, a buffer has a pK_a that is equal to the pH, and an ideal body buffer has a pK_a between 6.8 and 7.2. Most biologically salient buffers are weak acids.

It is valuable to view control of hydrogen ion concentration in terms of volatile and metabolic acids (mineral and organic). The major source of acid in the body is the volatile acid CO_2, which produces 12,500 mEq of H^+ a day, mostly excreted by the lungs. In contrast, only 20 to 70 mEq of hydrogen ion-promoting anions are excreted daily thru the kidney. Volatile acid is principally buffered by hemoglobin (Hb). Deoxygenated Hb is a strong base and there would be a huge rise in the pH of venous blood if Hb did not bind the hydrogen ions produced in oxidative metabolism.

Carbon dioxide easily passes through cell membranes. Within the erythrocyte CO_2 combines with H_2O, under the influence of the enzyme carbonic anhydrase, to form H_2CO_3, which ionizes to hydrogen and bicarbonate. Hydrogen ions bind to histidine residues on deoxyhemoglobin (the "Haldane" effect), and bicarbonate is actively pumped out of the cell. Chloride moves inward to maintain electroneutrality (the chloride shift) and to ensure the continued production of carbonic acid. CO_2 is also buffered directly by Hb (carbaminohemoglobin) and by plasma proteins (carbamino proteins). Venous blood contains 1.68 mmol/L extra CO_2 over arterial blood: 65% as HCO_3^- and H^+ bound to Hb, 27% as carbaminohemoglobin (CO_2 bound to Hb), and 8% dissolved.

When respiratory failure occurs, the principal CO_2 buffering system, Hb, becomes overwhelmed, leading to the rapid development of acidosis. In response, the kidney excretes an increased chloride load, using NH_4^+, a weak cation, for electrochemical balance. Thus ECF osmolality is maintained. This process is conventionally referred to as "metabolic compensation." Chronic respiratory acidosis is associated with increase in total body CO_2 content, reflected principally by an increase in serum bicarbonate (see Table 48.1). Hypercapnia is associated with a progressive increase in CSF bicarbonate, reflecting an overall increase in total CO_2 load. Compensation for this hypercarbia is a reduction in CSF chloride[29] and an increase in CSF SID.[30-32] This is probably controlled by active transport mechanisms across the blood-brain barrier or at the level of the choroid plexus and can be blocked by furosemide and acetazolamide.[33-36] The result is a rightward shift in the PCO_2 response curve: the respiratory center responds to hypercarbia by increasing respiratory drive at a higher PCO_2 level than under normal conditions.

Bicarbonate is a dependent variable that increases or decreases with PCO_2.[37] The rate of conversion of CO_2 to HCO_3^- is dependent on carbonic anhydrase activity and occurs slowly. Thus, it is possible to mathematically determine whether a rise in $PaCO_2$ is acute or longstanding (see Table 48.1). Metabolic acid is buffered principally by increased alveolar ventilation, producing respiratory alkalosis, and extracellular weak acids. These weak acids include plasma proteins, phosphate, and bicarbonate. The bicarbonate buffering system (92% of plasma buffering and 13% overall) is probably the most important extracellular buffer. The pK_a of bicarbonate is relatively low (6.1), but the system derives its importance from the enormous quantity of CO_2 present in the body. The coupling of bicarbonate and H_2O produces CO_2, which is then excreted through the lungs, increasing alveolar ventilation. Physicians must be aware of the importance of this compensatory mechanism. For example, anesthetized or critically ill patients on controlled mechanical ventilation lose the capacity to regulate their own PCO_2. Consequently, the combination of acute metabolic and respiratory acidosis can cause a devastating reduction in pH.

The major effect of the kidney on acid-base balance relates to renal handling of sodium and chloride ions. As dietary intake of sodium and chloride is roughly equal, the kidney excretes a net chloride load, using NH_4^+, a weak cation, to electrochemically neutralize urinary chloride.[38]

In metabolic acidosis, the kidneys preferentially excrete chloride. In metabolic alkalosis, chloride is retained and sodium and potassium are excreted. The presence of bicarbonate in the urine reflects the need to maintain electrical neutrality. Abnormalities in the renal handling of chloride may be responsible for several inherited acid-base disturbances. In renal tubular acidosis, there is inability to excrete Cl^- in proportion to Na^+.[39] The diagnosis can be made by observing a hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis, with inappropriately low levels of Cl^- in the urine: the urinary SID is positive. If the urinary SID is negative, the process is not of renal origin. Similarly, pseudohypoaldosteronism appears to be due to high reabsorption of chloride.[40] Bartter syndrome is caused by a mutation in the gene encoding the chloride channel—CLCNKB—that regulates the Na-K-2Cl cotransporter (NKCC2).[41]

The other causes of hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis are gastrointestinal losses (diarrhea, small bowel or pancreatic drainage), parenteral nutrition, excessive administration of saline, and the use of carbonic anhydrase inhibitors.

Analytic Tools Used in Acid-Base Chemistry

Acid-base balance is a core component of the clinical evaluation of the acutely and critically ill. Arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis provides immediate information on the status of the patient's respiratory system and whether or not a state of acidosis or alkalosis is present. By applying a variety of empiric rules, the information contained in an ABG is often sufficient to allow one to identify the presence, cause, and progression of a disease. The diagnostic sensitivity of blood gas analysis is augmented when a blood chemistry panel, glucose and lactate, and blood and urinary ketones measurements are added.

Several different approaches to acid-base balance are in widespread use.[42] These can be described as descriptive, based on changes in the Henderson Hasselbalch equation; semi-quantitative, based on calculations and nomograms; or quantitative, based on physical chemistry. These may be used interchangeably—and I would suggest that there is no best or worst approach, merely different methods of analyzing the data. The descriptive approach utilizes the inter-relationship between $PaCO_2$ and $[HCO_3^-]$ to detect and diagnose acid-base abnormalities. An extension of this is the anion gap (AG). The semi-quantitative approach includes the buffer base (BB) concept, the standardized base excess (BE), and the base-deficit gap (BDG). The quantitative approach utilizes SID and A_{TOT} and is quantified using the strong ion gap (SIG).

Over time, quantitative analyses are likely to dominate the clinical approach to acid-base chemistry. Many of the early approaches were developed at a time when only total CO_2 levels could be measured. Indeed, the continued popularity of the AG is curious given that serum lactate and blood ketones can now be easily measured at the bedside.

THE DESCRIPTIVE (CO_2-BICARBONATE [BOSTON]) APPROACH

Schwartz, Brackett, Relman, and colleagues at Tufts University in Boston developed the most popular descriptive approach to acid-base chemistry in the 1960s. Their formulation uses acid-base maps and the mathematical relationship between CO_2 tension and plasma bicarbonate (or total CO_2), derived from the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation, to classify acid-base disturbances in term of two independent variables: $PaCO_2$ and $[HCO_3^-]$.[43,44] To validate this approach, a number of patients with known acid-base disturbances, at steady states of compensation, were evaluated. The degree of compensation, relative to what was considered normal, was measured for each disease state. The investigators were able to describe six primary states of acid-base imbalance, using linear equations or maps, relating hydrogen ion concentration to PCO_2 for respiratory disturbances, and PCO_2 to HCO_3^- concentration for metabolic disturbances (Fig. 48.2). For any given acid-base disturbance, an expected HCO_3^- concentration was determined. These were then compiled into a series of mathematical rules (see Table 48.1 and Box 48.1). For most simple disturbances, this is a reasonable approach. As discussed above, in acute respiratory acidosis, the $[HCO_3^-]$ will increase by 1 mmol/L (mEq/L) for every 10 mm Hg (1.3 kPa) elevation in $PaCO_2$ above 40 mm Hg (5.3 kPa). In chronic respiratory acidosis, the $[HCO_3^-]$ will increase by 3 mEq/L for every 10 mm Hg (1.3 kPa) elevation in $PaCO_2$ above 40 mm Hg (5.3 kPa).

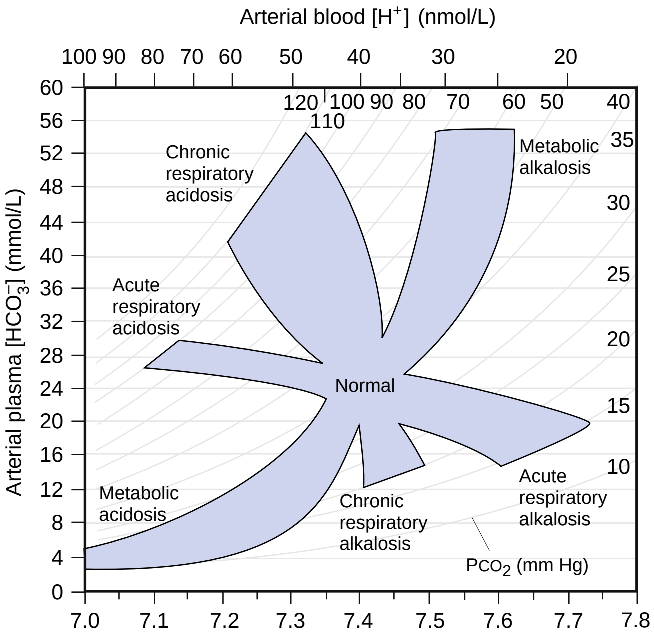


Fig. 48.2 Acid-Base Nomogram Using the Boston Approach. Different acid-base disturbances can be distinguished based on the relative values of PCO_2 and HCO_3^-. (Modified from Brenner BM, Rector FC. *The Kidney*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: WB Saunders; 1986:473.)

In acute metabolic acidosis, the $[HCO_3^-]$ falls by 1 mEq/L for every 1 mEq/L in strong anions. The respiratory center is activated, resulting in a predictable fall in the $PaCO_2$. This was neatly characterized by Winters in a pediatric population in 1967 and remains robust.[45] In acute metabolic acidosis, the $PaCO_2$ (in mm Hg) falls predictably, using the $1.5 \times [HCO_3^-]$ plus 8 rule. For example, if the $[HCO_3^-]$ is 12 mmol/L (mEq/L), then the expected $PaCO_2$ is $1.5 \times 12 + 8 = 26$ mm Hg. If the $PaCO_2$ is higher than this, then compensation is inadequate and there is a concomitant respiratory problem (for example, ketoacidosis in the presence of a respiratory tract infection). Winters also described expected compensation using the BE approach (see next section): for every 1 mEq/L reduction in the BE the $PaCO_2$ is expected to fall by 1 mm Hg—otherwise "compensation" is inadequate.

BOX 48.1 The Descriptive (CO_2–HCO_3^-) Approach to Acid-Base

Respiratory Disorders

Acute Respiratory Acidosis

$$\text{Expected } [HCO_3^-] = 24 + [(\text{measured } PaCO_2 - 40)/10]$$

Chronic Respiratory Acidosis

$$\text{Expected } [HCO_3^-] = 24 + 4\,[(\text{measured } PaCO_2 - 40)/10]$$

Acute Respiratory Alkalosis

$$\text{Expected } [HCO_3^-] = 24 - 2\;[(40 - \text{measured } PaCO_2)/10]$$

Chronic Respiratory Alkalosis

$$\text{Expected } [HCO_3^-] = 24 - 5\;[(40 - \text{measured } PaCO_2)/10]\;\;(\text{range: } \pm 2)$$

Metabolic Disorders

Metabolic Acidosis

$$\text{Expected } PaCO_2 = 1.5 \times [HCO_3^-] + 8\;(\text{range}: \pm 2)$$

Metabolic Alkalosis

$$\text{Expected } PaCO_2 = 0.7\;[HCO_3^-] + 20\;(\text{range}: \pm 5)$$

In metabolic alkalosis, in order to restore pH to homeostatic levels, it is necessary to retain carbonic acid, and hypoventilation occurs, ultimately resulting in increased $[HCO_3^-]$. The expected $PaCO_2$ equals $0.7 \times [HCO_3^-] + 20$ (in mm Hg). So if a patient has a $[HCO_3^-]$ of 34 mEq/L (mmol/L), then the $PaCO_2$ should be 44 mm Hg.

Using these maps, equations, and rules, physicians can determine the nature of most respiratory and metabolic acid-base disturbances and in a manner that is usually accurate. Although there is a mathematical relationship in place, alterations in $[H^+]$ and $[HCO_3^-]$ do not reflect cause and effect. For example, chronic hypoventilation is associated with an increase in PCO_2 and $[HCO_3^-]$. Many physicians have incorrectly assigned the increase in $[HCO_3^-]$ as compensation for raised PCO_2. It is not. The increased HCO_3^- concentration reflects increased total CO_2 in the body.

Although the PCO_2-HCO_3^- approach is relatively accurate for most disturbances, and is particularly useful for respiratory problems, there are several inherent pitfalls, particularly in relation to the metabolic component. First, the approach is not as simple as it seems, requiring the clinician to refer to confusing maps or to learn formulas and perform mental arithmetic. Second, the system neither explains nor accounts for many of the complex acid-base abnormalities seen in perioperative and critically ill patients, such as those with acute acidosis in the setting of hypoalbuminemia, free water deficit or excess, hyperchloremia, hyperphosphatemia, or concurrent metabolic acidosis and alkalosis.

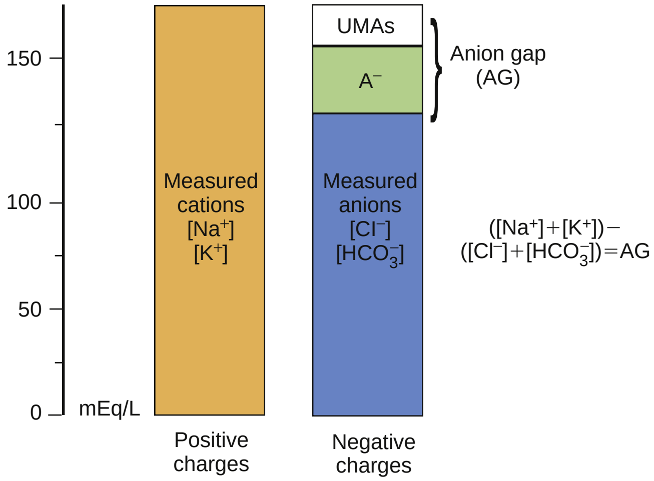


Fig. 48.3 The Anion Gap Represents the Difference in Charge Between Measured Cations and Measured Anions. The missing negative charge is made up of weak acids *(A^-)*, such as albumin and phosphate, and strong unmeasured anions *(UMAs)*, such as lactate.

ANION GAP APPROACH

The most widely used tool for investigating metabolic acidosis is the AG, developed by Emmett and Narins in 1977.[46] It is based on the law of electrical neutrality. It is entirely consistent with the physical chemistry approach, described in the next section, and is usually used alongside the Boston approach to acid-base. Again, the system is based on data that were not easily available or known at the time of publication: the contribution to electrical neutrality ascribed to weak acids (phosphate and albumin) and UMA. The sum of the difference in charge of the common extracellular ions reveals an unaccounted for "gap" of −10 to −12 mEq/L. There are three widely used variants of the AG (Fig. 48.3), depending on whether or not potassium and lactate are included:

$$\text{Anion gap (simple)} = ([Na^+] - [Cl^-] + [HCO_3^-]) = 12 \text{ to } 14 \text{ mEq/L}$$

$$\text{Anion gap (conventional)} = ([Na^+] + [K^+] - ([CL^-] + [HCO_3^-])) = 14 \text{ to } 18 \text{ mEq/L}$$

$$\text{Anion gap (modern)} = ([Na^+] + [K^+] - ([Cl^-] + [HCO_3^-] + [\text{lactate}^-])) = 14 \text{ to } 18 \text{ mEq/L}$$

If the patient develops a metabolic acidosis, and the gap widens to, for example, >20 mEq/L, then the acidosis is caused by UMA (usually renal acids or ketones). If the gap does not widen, then the anions are being measured, and the acidosis has been caused by hyperchloremia (bicarbonate cannot independently influence acid-base status) or lactate (if used). While this is a useful tool, it is weakened by the assumption of what is or is not a "normal gap."[47] The AG frequently underestimates the extent of the metabolic disturbance.[26] The majority of critically ill patients are hypoalbuminemic, and many are also hypophosphatemic. Consequently, the gap may be normal in the presence of UMA. This has been extensively studied by Fencl and Figge, who have provided us with a variant known as the "corrected AG":[26]

$$\text{Anion gap corrected (for albumin)} = \text{calculated anion gap} + 0.25\left(\text{normal albumin}^* - \text{observed albumin g/L}\right).$$

*which may vary between populations/labs; if g/dL used the factor is 2.5.

In this corrected form the AG accurately quantifies metabolic acidosis, and it is useful in discriminating an acidosis due to UMA from one reflecting hyperchloremia, in a previously healthy patient (e.g., in acute trauma). Moviat and colleagues have demonstrated that the AG corrected for albumin accurately detects complex acid-base abnormalities in intensive care.[48]

Another version of the AG is the delta AG (delta ratio DR—Box 48.2), an approach that has successfully predicted adverse outcomes in critical illness.[49] Simply, if the AG is normal, or unchanged, and the bicarbonate level falls, then the delta ratio will be less than 0.4, and a hyperchloremic acidosis is present. A DR between 1 and 2 is what one would expect from metabolic acidosis due to UMA or lactate. If the ratio is greater than 2, mixed acid-base abnormalities are present. Although on the surface, this process is relatively simple, it assumes that the clinician knows the normal AG and bicarbonate for that particular patient. In addition, it does not result in a clear diagnosis other than hyperchloremia.

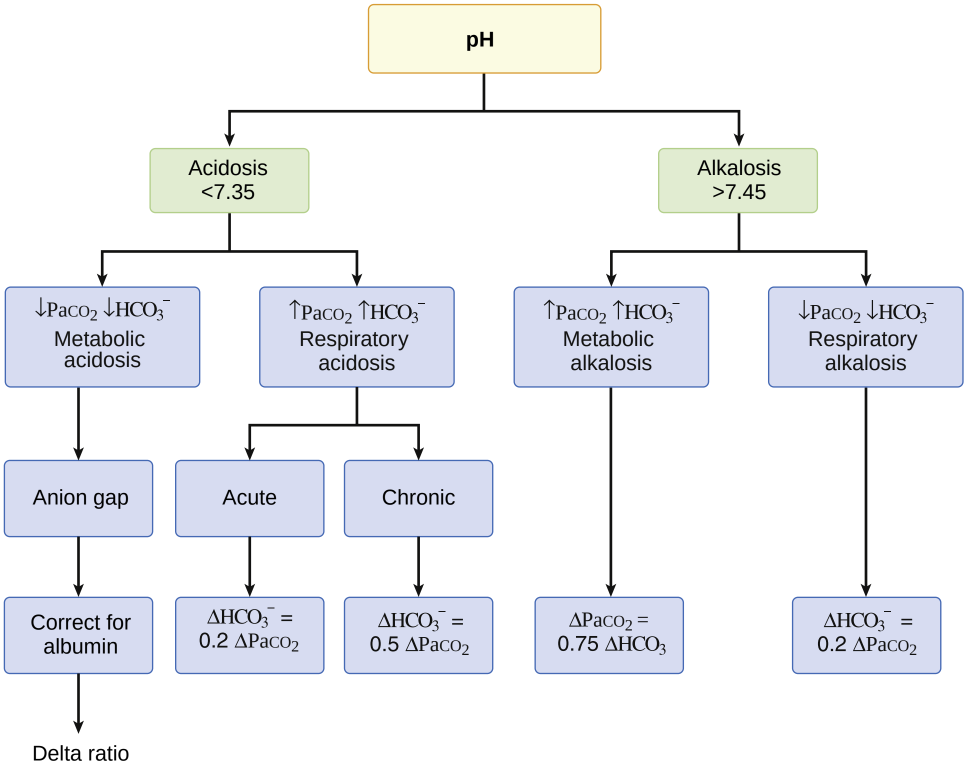
BOX 48.2 **The Delta Anion Gap (Delta Ratio)**

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Delta ratio} &= \Delta\text{Anion gap}/\Delta\,[\text{HCO}_3^-]\ \text{or}\ \uparrow\text{anion gap}/\downarrow[\text{HCO}_3^-]\\ &= \frac{\text{Measured anion gap} - \text{Normal anion gap}}{\text{Normal}\ [\text{HCO}_3^-]\ -\ \text{Measured}\ [\text{HCO}_3^-]}\\ &= \frac{(\text{AG} - 12)}{(24 - [\text{HCO}_3^-])}\end{aligned}$$

Fig. 48.4 is a decision tree that uses this descriptive approach to acid-base.

THE SEMI-QUANTITATIVE (BASE DEFICIT/ EXCESS [COPENHAGEN]) APPROACH

In metabolic acidosis, the addition of UMA to the ECF results in a net gain of one hydrogen ion for each anion. This is buffered, principally by bicarbonate, such that each anion gained results in an equivalent fall in the bicarbonate concentration. Thus, the change in the bicarbonate concentration from baseline should reflect the total quantity of net


pH
Acidosis <7.35
Alkalosis >7.45
↓Pa_{CO_2} ↓HCO_3^- Metabolic acidosis
↑Pa_{CO_2} ↑HCO_3^- Respiratory acidosis
↑Pa_{CO_2} ↑HCO_3^- Metabolic alkalosis
↓Pa_{CO_2} ↓HCO_3^- Respiratory alkalosis
Anion gap
Acute
Chronic
Correct for albumin
$\Delta HCO_3^- = 0.2\ \Delta Pa_{CO_2}$
$\Delta HCO_3^- = 0.5\ \Delta Pa_{CO_2}$
$\Delta Pa_{CO_2} = 0.75\ \Delta HCO_3$
$\Delta HCO_3^- = 0.2\ \Delta Pa_{CO_2}$
Delta ratio

Delta ratio	Clinical assessment
<0.4	Hyperchloremic normal AG acidosis
<1	High AG and normal AG acidosis
1 to 2	Pure anion gap acidosis Lactic acidosis: average value 1.6 DKA more likely to have a ratio closer to 1 because of urine ketone loss
>2	High AG acidosis and concurrent metabolic alkalosis or preexisting compensated respiratory acidosis

Fig. 48.4 The Descriptive ("Boston") Approach to Acid-Base Balance. *DKA*, Diabetic ketoacidosis; *AG*, Anion gap.

anions gained. Adherents to the descriptive approach to acid-base refer to this as the “delta” bicarbonate. However, this is problematic, as it does not separate out the effect of CO_2 metabolism on the $[HCO_3^-]$.

In 1948, Singer and Hastings[50] proposed that changes in the whole blood BB could be used to quantify the metabolic component independent of Henderson-Hasselbalch. The BB represented the sum of the bicarbonate and the nonvolatile buffer ions (essentially the serum albumin, phosphate, and Hb). Applying the law of electrical neutrality, the BB was forced to equal the electrical charge difference between strong (fully dissociated) ions. Thus, normally $BB = [Na^+] + [K^+] - [Cl^-]$. Alterations in BB represented changes in strong ion concentrations (which could not be easily measured in 1948). BB increases in the presence of a metabolic alkalosis and decreases in metabolic acidosis. The major drawback of BB measurements is the potential for changes in buffering capacity associated with alterations in Hb concentration and pH.

Following the development of sophisticated electrodes for measuring CO_2 tension in Copenhagen in the early 1950s,[51] Astrup and Jorgensen developed the standard bicarbonate—the bicarbonate concentration at 37°C and at a $PaCO_2$ of 40 mm Hg (5.3 kPa).[52] Building upon this work, Siggaard-Anderson and Astrup[53] recognized that PCO_2 and $[HCO_3^-]$ were not independent variables. As a result, they derived the BE as a measure that could differentiate respiratory from metabolic acid-base disturbances. As defined, the BE is the amount of strong acid (strong anion) or base (strong cation) required to return the pH to 7.4, assuming that PCO_2 is constant at 40 mm Hg (5.3 kPa) and that the temperature is 37°C.[54] Like the Boston group, the Siggaard-Anderson data were derived from observations on a large population of patients. The investigators carefully titrated known amounts of acid or base to blood maintained by tonometry at various $PaCO_2$ values and a wide range of hemoglobin concentration at 37°C. These studies led to the development of an alignment nomogram (Fig. 48.5 and Table 48.3) that allowed for the determination of BE from a single measurement of pH, $PaCO_2$, and Hb concentration at 37°C. Current algorithms for computing the BE are derived from the Van Slyke equation (1977).[55]

$$BE = (HCO_3^- - 24.4 + [2.3 \times Hb + 7.7] \times [pH - 7.4] \times (1 - 0.023 \times Hb))$$

The most commonly used estimation of BE uses just the bicarbonate and pH by the following equation:

$$BE = 0.93 \times ([HCO_3^-] - 24.4 + 14.83 \times [pH - 7.4])$$

There is a very high level of agreement between this calculation and the empirical data that were used to construct the original nomogram. The calculation is accurate in vitro, but not in vivo because of the dynamic buffering activity of Hb within the acid-base paradigm of gas and electrolyte exchange. Moreover, weak acids such as phosphate and albumin also contribute to nonbicarbonate buffering. Hence the following formula is now used to calculate the standard base excess (SBE) or the BE of ECF:

$$SBE = ((HCO_3^- \text{ actual mEq/L}) - 24.8 + (16.2 \times (pH - 7.40))$$

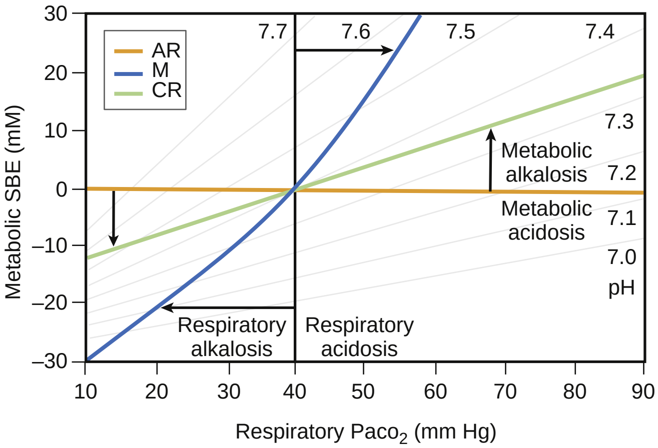


Fig. 48.5 Acid-Base Nomogram Using the Copenhagen Approach as Revised by Schlichtig. The various acid-base disturbances can be distinguished based on PCO_2 and base deficit or excess, here referred to as standard base excess *(SBE)*. *Arrows* represent changes as the body compensates for acute acidosis or alkalosis. *AR*, Acute respiratory acidosis or alkalosis; *CR*, chronic respiratory acidosis or alkalosis; *M*, metabolic acidosis or alkalosis. (From Schlichtig R, Grogono AW, Severinghaus JW. Human $Paco_2$ and standard base excess compensation for acid-base imbalance. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1173–1179.)

TABLE 48.3 Changes in Standard Base Deficit or Excess in Response to Acute and Chronic Acid-Base Disturbances

Disturbance	SBDE vs. $PaCO_2$
Acute respiratory acidosis	$\Delta BDE = 0$
Acute respiratory alkalosis	$\Delta BDE = 0$
Chronic respiratory acidosis	$\Delta BDE = 0.4\ \Delta PaCO_2$
Metabolic acidosis	$\Delta PaCO_2 = \Delta BDE$
Metabolic alkalosis	$\Delta PaCO_2 = 0.6\ \Delta BDE$

Δ, Change in value; *BDE*, base deficit or excess; *$PaCO_2$*, partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide.

Modified from Narins RB, Emmett M. Simple and mixed acid-base disorders: a practical approach. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 1980;59:161–187.

The value of 16.2 mEq/L approximates all of the nonbicarbonate buffers in ECF (albumin, phosphate, and mean ECF Hb). It is likely that Siggaard-Andersen overestimated the impact of Hb as an extracellular buffer and underestimated the uptake and release of chloride into erythrocytes in the peripheries and lungs respectively.[56]

Although various descriptions of this approach to acid-base chemistry refer to the *BE*—and that term is reported on blood gas forms, when a negative base excess (1-BE) is reported—the correct terminology refers to it as the *base deficit*.[57] For simplicity, in the following discussion, I will refer to the BE, keeping in mind that it may be positive (metabolic alkalosis) or negative (metabolic acidosis).

Application of simple mathematical rules allows for use of the BE in each of the common acid-base disturbances (Box 48.3 and Fig. 48.6). For example, in acute respiratory acidosis or alkalosis, BE does not change. Conversely, in acute metabolic acidosis, the magnitude of change of the $PaCO_2$ (in millimeters of mercury) is the same as that of the BE (in mmol/L or mEq/L).

BOX 48.3 Calculation of the Base Excess Gap[12,58,59]

$$\mathrm{BE_{NaW}}\ \text{(water and sodium effect)} = 0.3\ ([\mathrm{Na^+}_{\ meas}]\ \text{-140})\ \mathrm{mEq/L}$$

$$\mathrm{BE_{Cl}}\ \text{(chloride effect)} = 102 - [\mathrm{Cl^-}\ \text{effective}]\ \ (\mathrm{mEq/L})$$

$$\mathrm{BE_{Pi}}\ \text{(phosphate effect)} = (0.309 \times (\mathrm{pH} - 0.47)) \times \mathrm{Pi\ mEq/}$$

$$\mathrm{BE_{prot}}\ \text{(protein effect)} = (42 - [\text{Albumin g/L}])\ *\ \ (0.148 \times \mathrm{pH} - 0.818)$$

$$\mathrm{BE_{calc}} = \mathrm{NE_{NaW}} + \mathrm{BE_{Cl}} + \mathrm{BE_{PO4}} + \mathrm{BE_{prot}}$$

$$\mathrm{BE_{Gap}} = \mathrm{BE_{calc}} - \mathrm{BE_{actual}} - [\text{lactate mEq/L}]$$

A Simplified Calculation of the Base Excess Gap[60]

$$\mathrm{BE_{NaCl}} = ([\mathrm{Na^+}] - [\mathrm{Cl^-}]) - 38$$

$$\mathrm{BE_{Alb}} = 0.25\ \ (42 - \text{albumin g/L})$$

$$\mathrm{BE_{NaCl}} - \mathrm{BE_{Alb}} = \mathrm{BDE_{calc}}$$

$$\mathrm{BE_{actual}} - \mathrm{BE_{calc}} - [\text{lactate}] = \text{BEG} = \text{the effect of unmeasured anions or cations}$$

*This approach involves calculating the base deficit excess for sodium, chloride, and free water ($\mathrm{BE_{NaCl}}$), and that for albumin ($\mathrm{BE_{Alb}}$). The result is the calculated BE ($\mathrm{BE_{calc}}$). This is subtracted from the measured BE to find the BE gap.

There has been considerable discussion over the past 60 years about the merits and demerits of the BE, as compared to the $\mathrm{CO_2}$-$\mathrm{HCO_3}^-$ system. In reality, there is little difference between the two; both equations and nomograms were derived from patient data and abstracted backward. Calculations use bicarbonate as measured on a blood gas analyzer. Consequently, for most patients, either approach is relatively accurate but may be misleading because they do not allow the clinician to distinguish between, for example, acidosis due to lactate or chloride, or alkalosis due to dehydration or hypoalbuminemia. These measures may miss the presence of an acid-base disturbance entirely; for example, a hypoalbuminemic (metabolic alkalosis) critically ill patient with a lactic acidosis (metabolic acidosis) may have a normal range pH, bicarbonate, and BE. This lack of precision may lead to inappropriate or inadequate therapy.

Changes in the BE occur secondary to alterations in the relative concentrations of sodium, chloride, free water, albumin, phosphate, and UMA. By calculating the contribution of the individual components of the BE it is possible to identify: (1) contraction alkalosis, (2) hypoalbuminemic alkalosis, (3) hyperchloremic acidosis, (4) dilution acidosis (if indeed it exists), and (5) acidosis secondary to UMA. This approach, which can be labelled the base-deficit gap, has been proposed by Gilfix and Magder (see Box 48.3)[58] and simplified subsequently by Balasubramanyan and associates[59] and Story and associates.[60] The BDG should mirror the SIG (below) the corrected AG.

The simplified calculation as proposed by Story et al. is very easy to calculate at the bedside and in the majority of situations (see Box 48.3) replicates the more complex calculations originally proposed by Gilfix and Magder.[58]

STEWART APPROACH

A more accurate reflection of true acid-base status can be derived using the Stewart or physical chemical approach, subsequently updated by Fencl.[5,15] This approach is based on the concept of electrical neutrality, a small advance from the AG. There exists, in plasma, a SIDa $\left[\left(\mathrm{Na^+} + \mathrm{Mg^{2+}} + \mathrm{Ca^{2+}} = \mathrm{K^+}\right) - \left(\mathrm{Cl^-} + \mathrm{A^-}\right)\right]$ of 40 to 44 mEq/L, balanced by the negative charge on bicarbonate and $\mathrm{A_{TOT}}$ (the BB—SIDe). There is a small difference between SIDa (apparent SID) and BB (SIDe—effective SID) that represents a SIG and quantifies the amount of UMA present (Fig. 48.7).

$$\text{SIDa (apparent SID)} = \left([\mathrm{Na^+}] + [\mathrm{K^+}] + \left[\mathrm{Mg^{2+}}\right] + \left[\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}\right]\right) - [\mathrm{Cl^-}]$$

$$\text{SIDe (effective)} = [\mathrm{HCO_3^-}] + [\text{charge on albumin}] + [\text{charge on Pi}]\ (\text{in mmol/L})$$

Weak acids' degree of ionization is pH dependent, so one must calculate for this:

$$[\mathrm{alb^-}] = [\text{alb g/L}] \times (0.123 \times \mathrm{pH} - 0.631)$$

$$\text{Pi (mmol/L)} = [\mathrm{PO_4}] \times (0.309 \times \mathrm{pH} - 0.469)$$

$$\text{Strong Ion Gap (SIG)} = \text{SIDa} - \text{SIDe}$$

Unfortunately, the SIG may not represent unmeasured strong anions but only all anions that are unmeasured. For example, if a patient has been resuscitated with gelatin, his/her SIG will increase. Further, SID changes quantitatively in absolute and relative terms when there are changes in plasma water concentration. Fencl has addressed this by correcting the chloride concentration for free water ($\mathrm{Cl^-}$*corr*) using the following equation[5]:

$$[\mathrm{Cl^-}]\,corr = [\mathrm{Cl^-}]\,\text{observed} \times ([\mathrm{Na^+}]\text{normal} / [\mathrm{Na^+}]\text{observed}).$$

This corrected chloride concentration may then be inserted into the SIDa equation above. Similarly, the derived value for UMA can also be corrected for free water by substituting UMA for $\mathrm{Cl^-}$ in the above equation.[25] In a series of nine normal subjects, Fencl estimated the "normal" SIG as 8 ± 2 mEq/L.[25]

Calculation of SIG is cumbersome. The data required are more extensive and thus more expensive than other approaches and there is much confusion about the normal range of SIG. It is unclear, in standard clinical practice, that SIG has any advantage over AGc (which is SIG without calcium, magnesium, and phosphate—which usually cancel out each other's charges).

In all likelihood no single number will ever allow us to make sense of complex acid-base disturbances. Fencl[25] has suggested that, rather than focusing on AG or BDE, physicians should address each blood gas in terms of all alkalinizing and acidifying effects: respiratory acidosis/alkalosis, the presence or absence of abnormal SID (due to

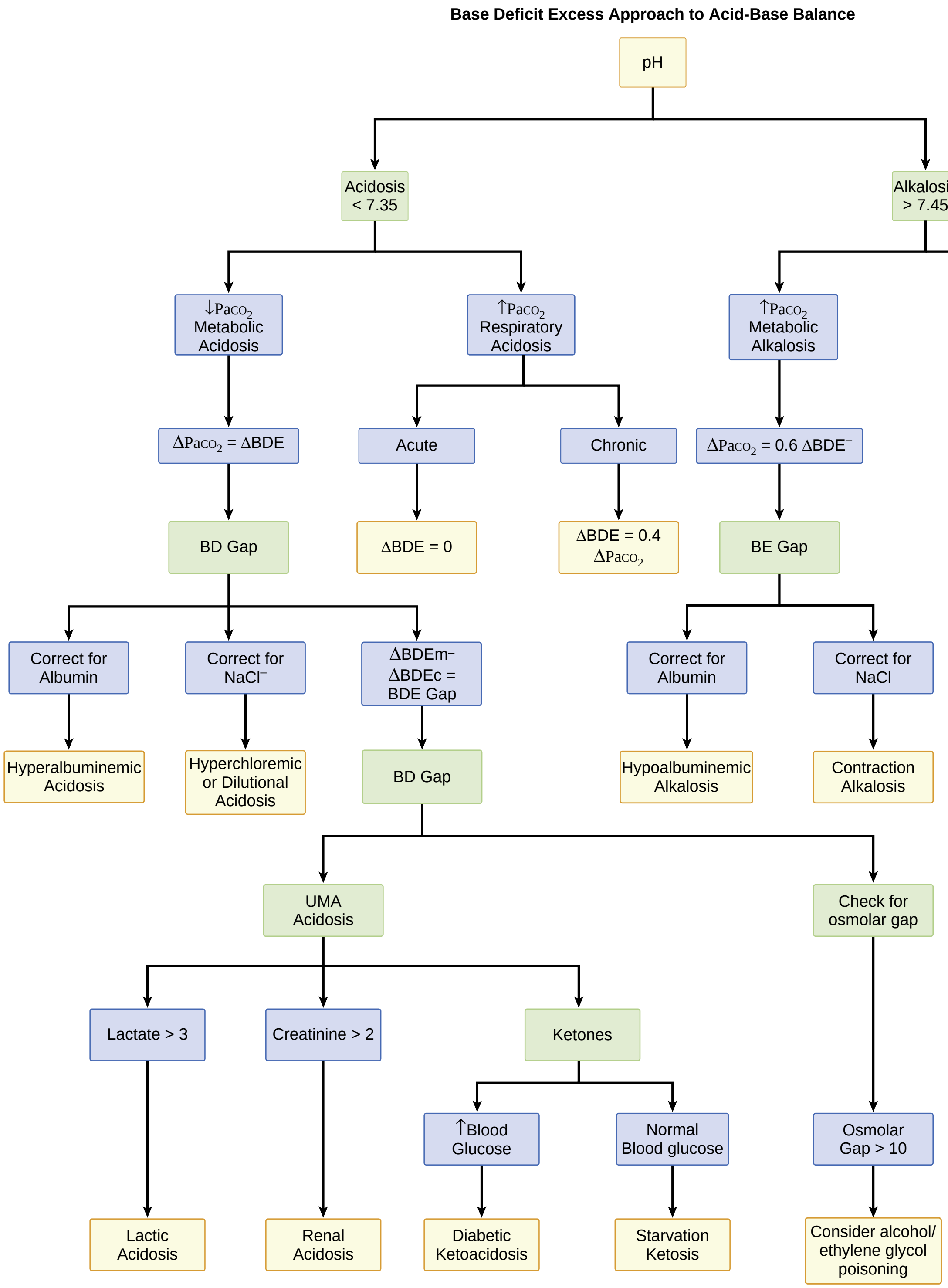

Base Deficit Excess Approach to Acid-Base Balance
pH
Acidosis < 7.35
Alkalosis > 7.45
↓$Paco_2$ Metabolic Acidosis
↑$Paco_2$ Respiratory Acidosis
↑$Paco_2$ Metabolic Alkalosis
↓$Paco_2$ Respiratory Alkalosis
$\Delta Paco_2$ = ΔBDE
Acute
Chronic
$\Delta Paco_2$ = 0.6 ΔBDE⁻
ΔBDE = 0
BD Gap
ΔBDE = 0
ΔBDE = 0.4 $\Delta Paco_2$
BE Gap
Correct for Albumin
Correct for NaCl⁻
ΔBDEm− ΔBDEc = BDE Gap
Correct for Albumin
Correct for NaCl
Hyperalbuminemic Acidosis
Hyperchloremic or Dilutional Acidosis
BD Gap
Hypoalbuminemic Alkalosis
Contraction Alkalosis
UMA Acidosis
Check for osmolar gap
Lactate > 3
Creatinine > 2
Ketones
↑Blood Glucose
Normal Blood glucose
Osmolar Gap > 10
Lactic Acidosis
Renal Acidosis
Diabetic Ketoacidosis
Starvation Ketosis
Consider alcohol/ ethylene glycol poisoning

Fig. 48.6 The Semi-Quantitative ("Copenhagen") Approach to Acid-Base Balance. *BD*, Base deficit, *BE*, base excess, *BDEm*, measured base deficit or excess, *BDEc*, Base deficit or excess corrected for albumin, sodium, chloride, and free water (see Box 48.3); *UMA*, unmeasured anions; lactate in mmol/L, creatinine in mg/dL, osmolar gap in mOsm.

water excess/deficit, measured electrolytes, or unmeasured electrolytes), and abnormal A_{TOT}. Consider the following patient, described by Fencl[25](data in mEq/L unless otherwise stated):

Na 117, Cl 92, Ca 3.0, Albumin 6.0 g/L
K 3.9, Mg 1.4, Pi 0.6 mmol/L

ABG: pH 7.33, PCO_2 30 mm Hg, HCO3 15

Derived values would be:

AG 13, $AG_{corrected}$ 23, BE −10, SID 18, $Cl_{corrected}$ 112, $UMA_{corrected}$ 18.

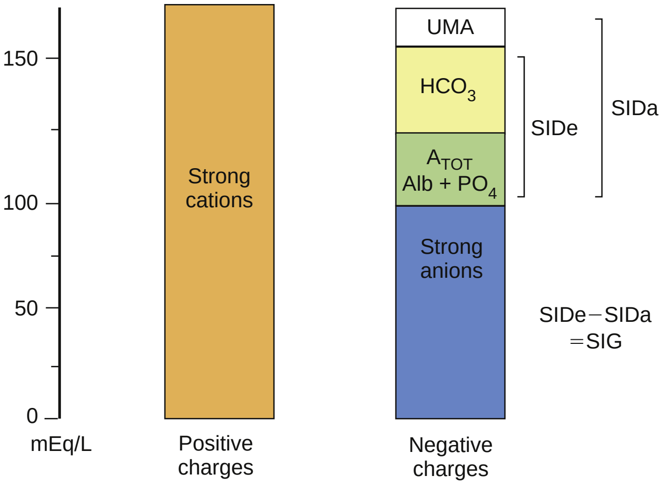


Fig. 48.7 The Strong Ion Gap: SID Apparent is the Sum of ATOT plus [HCO_3^-]. SID effective is the real SID. The difference between the two is made up of unmeasured anions (*UMA*). *SID*, Strong ion difference; *SIG*, strong ion gap.

Using traditional methodology, one would describe this as a nongap metabolic acidosis and look for causes of bicarbonate wasting such as renal tubular acidosis or gastrointestinal losses. The degree of respiratory alkalosis is appropriate for the degree of acidosis ($\Delta BD = \Delta PCO_2$). However, the Fencl-Stewart approach reveals a much more complex situation. SID is reduced to 18 mEq/L, caused by free water excess, UMA, and, surprisingly, hyperchloremia (see the corrected chloride). However, the degree of acidosis does not mirror the metabolic disturbance because of the alkalizing force of hypoalbuminemia. The corrected AG mirrors the change in SID, but this alteration is grossly underestimated by the base deficit. This patient has a dilutional acidosis, a hyperchloremic acidosis, and a lactic acidosis!

In conclusion, for the majority of patients presenting to the emergency room or operating suite who have been previously healthy, the use of tools such as the base deficit or AG to assess metabolic disturbances remains reasonable, particularly if corrected for albumin. However, for critically ill patients, the most effective method of interpreting acid-base conundrums involves unraveling simultaneous acidifying and alkalinizing processes and using calculations to distinguish between the various forces at play. Unfortunately, a clinician's ability to interpret such information is dependent on the amount of available data. A simple blood gas alone may camouflage a significant acid-base disturbance.

In the next section, we will look at the causes of many commonly seen acid-base disturbances in different clinical settings.

Acid-Base Problems in Perioperative and Critical Care Medicine

RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS AND ALKALOSIS

In perioperative medicine respiratory acid-base abnormalities are an uncommon complication of prolonged spontaneous breathing under anesthesia, inadequate mechanical ventilation (both acute respiratory acidosis) or excessive mechanical ventilation (respiratory alkalosis) (Table 48.4). Acute respiratory acidosis results from hypoventilation or increased dead space ventilation. Patients may manifest respiratory distress characterized by respiratory acidosis in the recovery room PACU or surgical ICU. Assessment begins with an examination of the patient's breathing pattern (Fig. 48.8): slow shallow breathing indicates impaired respiratory drive, rapid shallow breathing suggests chest wall or lung pathology, and obstructed breathing signifies airway obstruction. Blood gas analysis of acute respiratory acidosis will reflect a dramatic fall in pH, an elevated $PaCO_2$, and a slight rise in HCO_3^- (by 1 mEq/L [mmol/L] for every 10 mm Hg [or 1.2 kPa] rise in $PaCO_2$). The BE should be zero. Respiratory acidosis as a complication of anesthesia is relatively common—excessive sedation (particularly opioids), partial neuromuscular blockade, intraoperative hypoventilation, pneumothorax, etc. It may also complicate CO_2 insufflation during laparoscopy—the patients' minute ventilation should be dynamically adjusted intraoperatively to maintain $etCO_2$ levels near baseline.

TABLE 48.4 Acid-Base Disturbances Commonly Seen Perioperatively

Disorder	Cause
Respiratory acidosis	Hypoventilation; narcosis, incomplete reversal of neuromuscular blockade
Respiratory alkalosis	Hyperventilation; anxiety, pain
Metabolic acidosis due to unmeasured anions (widened gap acidosis)	Hypoperfusion—lactic acidosis; diabetic ketoacidosis; renal failure
Metabolic acidosis due to measured anions (non-gap hyperchloremic acidosis)	Hyperchloremia—“normal” saline and saline-containing fluids; renal tubular acidosis; bladder reconstructions
Metabolic acidosis due to free water excess (hyponatremia, dilution acidosis)	Hypotonic fluid administration; sodium loss—diarrhea; administration of hyperosmolar fluids—mannitol, alcohol, hyperproteinemia
Metabolic alkalosis	Hyperventilation of patient with history of CO_2 retention (COPD); sodium gain (sodium bicarbonate, massive blood transfusion); chloride loss—nasogastric suctioning

For patients with COPD (or other causes of chronic respiratory failure), it is worthwhile, preoperatively, to calculate the baseline $PaCO_2$ on a patient from the total CO_2 on blood chemistry panel. As discussed earlier, the total CO_2 (HCO_3^-) rises by 3 mEq/L (mmol/L) for every 10 mm Hg (1.3 kPa) rise in $PaCO_2$. A patient, for example, with a baseline total CO_2 of 33 mEq/L (mmol/L) would be expected to have a baseline $PaCO_2$ of 70 mm Hg (9.3 kPa). For intraoperative management, the $etCO_2$ should be maintained, if the patient is undergoing mechanical ventilation, between 3 and 5 mm Hg (0.5 –1 kPa) of baseline (the $PaCO_2$-$etCO_2$ gradient increases with age and nonsupine positioning).

If the patient is hypoventilating, perioperatively, the pH falls, the $PaCO_2$ rises, but the rise in the total CO_2 (HCO_3^-) is lower than expected. If this patient's $PaCO_2$, postoperatively, is 90 mm Hg (12 kPa) and the total CO_2 (HCO_3^-) is

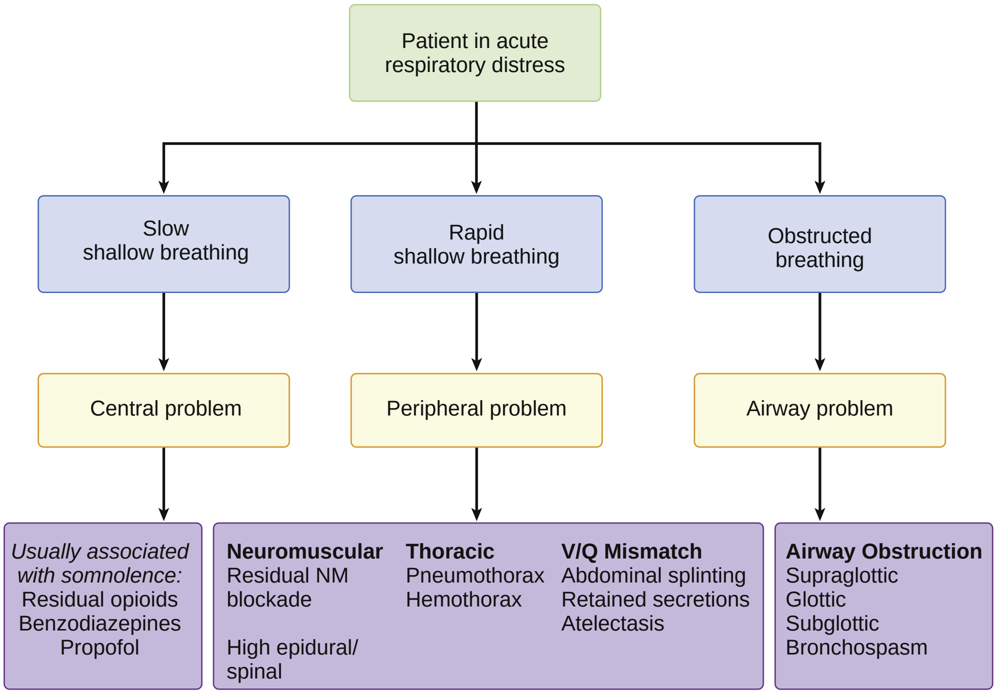

Patient in acute respiratory distress
Slow shallow breathing
Rapid shallow breathing
Obstructed breathing
Central problem
Peripheral problem
Airway problem
Usually associated with somnolence:
Residual opioids
Benzodiazepines
Propofol
Neuromuscular
Residual NM blockade
High epidural/ spinal
Thoracic
Pneumothorax
Hemothorax
V/Q Mismatch
Abdominal splinting
Retained secretions
Atelectasis
Airway Obstruction
Supraglottic
Glottic
Subglottic
Bronchospasm

Fig. 48.8 Using the Breathing Pattern to Determine the Cause of Acute Respiratory Distress and Respiratory Acidosis.

35 mmol/L (mEq/L), then the patient has acute or chronic respiratory acidosis. This problem may be compounded by the patient's lack of pulmonary reserve and the negative impact on the respiratory center by opioids and other anesthetic agents. Consideration should be given to administration of noninvasive ventilation to restore $PaCO_2$ to what is normal for that patient.

In emergency medicine and critical illness, respiratory acidosis complicates a wide variety of pathologies. Most commonly, these cause a problem of the patient "can't breathe"—a neuromuscular or anatomical problem—or the patient "won't breathe"—a central nervous system pathology. The latter includes neurologic injury (stroke, spinal cord injury, botulism, tetanus, and toxic suppression of the respiratory center [opioids, barbiturates, benzodiazepines]). Patients "can't breathe" due to a variety neuromuscular disorders (Guillain-Barré syndrome, myasthenia gravis), flail chest, hydro-hemo-pneumo-thorax, pulmonary edema, and pneumonia. Failure to ventilate, as manifest by respiratory acidosis, may result from abdominal hypertension and abdominal compartment syndrome, where diaphragmatic excursion is impeded by high intra-abdominal pressures, often with associated oliguria and hypotension.

Acute respiratory alkalosis is caused by hyperventilation, either due to anxiety or pain, central respiratory stimulation (as occurs early in salicylate poisoning), or excessive artificial ventilation. In acute respiratory alkalosis the pH is above 7.45, the $PaCO_2$ below 40 mm Hg (5.3 kPa), and the $[HCO_3^-]$ falls by 2 mEq/L (mmol/L) for every 10 mm Hg (1.3 kPa) fall in $PaCO_2$. There is no change in the BE. So, if a patient has a $PaCO_2$ of 30 mm Hg, the $[HCO_3^-]$ should be 22 mEq/L (mmol/L).

Acute respiratory alkalosis usually accompanies acute metabolic acidosis, in which case the reduction in PCO_2 from baseline (usually 40 mm Hg) is equal to the magnitude of the base deficit (see Table 48.3). The fall in bicarbonate, from baseline, is significantly greater than that seen in primary respiratory alkalosis, due to the consumption of bicarbonate as extracellular buffer (the $[HCO_3^-]$ falls 1 mEq/L for every 1 mEq/L gain in strong anions). For example, in a patient with a lactic acidosis whose lactate is 10 mEq/L, the BE should be −10, the $[HCO_3^-]$ 10 mEq/L (mmol/L) lower than baseline, and the PCO_2 30 mm Hg. If the PCO_2 is higher than expected, then there is a concomitant problem with the respiratory apparatus. An example would be a multi-trauma patient, where massive blood loss leads to lactic acidosis and a flail chest causes respiratory acidosis.

Metabolic Acidosis and Alkalosis

METABOLIC ACIDOSIS

Acute metabolic acidosis is caused by an alteration in SID or A_{TOT}. SID is changed by an alteration in the relative quantity of strong anions to strong cations. Anions, mineral or organic, can be gained, as occurs with lactic-, renal-, keto-, and hyperchloremic acidosis, or cation can be lost, as occurs with severe diarrhea or renal tubular acidosis.

Acute metabolic acidosis is characterized by a pH of < 7.35 and a fall in both $PaCO_2$ and (HCO_3^-) below the patient's baseline. For patients without COPD or chronic CO_2 retention, this represents a $PaCO_2$ < 40 mm Hg (5.3 kPa) and a $[HCO_3^-]$ below 24 mEq/L (mmol/L), there is a negative BE (base deficit) whose magnitude represents the net strong anion gain. This simple approach indicates that an acidosis is present, and that it is metabolic in origin. To further investigate the acidosis, one or more of the analytical tools described above may be employed. The most widely used tool is the AG, which should be adjusted for albumin. This differentiates hyperchloremic acidosis from acidosis caused by other measured and UMA. In the setting of metabolic acidosis, where possible, these anions should be directly measured—lactate, ketones, phosphate, albumin or surrogate markers of anion accumulation—serum creatinine and the osmolar gap. Causes of metabolic acidosis that are commonly encountered by anesthesiologists are discussed below.

LACTIC ACIDOSIS

The presence of lactic acidosis is an excellent marker of acute critical illness, the magnitude of which often reflects the degree of hyperlactatemia. Lactic acidosis occurs when the production of lactate in the body is greater than the liver's capacity to clear it—there is a problem of overproduction or inadequate clearance.

Lactic acid is produced physiologically as a degradation product of glucose metabolism. In nature it exists as two isoforms: L-lactate which is produced by the human body and is measured by blood gas analyzers, and D-lactate which can only be produced by fermentation by bacteria. The formation of L-lactate (lactate) from pyruvate is catalyzed by lactate dehydrogenase. Lactate is used as a "buffer" in isotonic fluids, principally lactated Ringer's solution and Hartmann's solution; these contain a racemic mixture of both D and L lactate at a concentration of 14 mmol/L each.

Under normal conditions, the ratio of lactate to pyruvate ratio is less than 20:1. In anaerobic conditions, for example following vigorous exercise, lactate levels increase dramatically, and high levels of circulating lactate are frequently interpreted as evidence of increased glycolytic activity. However, lactate is often produced under aerobic conditions. Activation of β-adrenergic receptors in skeletal muscle by stress (increased circulating catecholamines) or exogenous infusion (epinephrine/norepinephrine infusions) increases [lactate], resulting in aerobic glycolysis. Lactate is metabolized to pyruvate and then into glucose (gluconeogenesis) in the liver and subsequently to CO_2 and H_2O (the Cori cycle). Hence the lactate in Ringer's lactate (or Hartmann's) solution is considered to be a source of bicarbonate. This is only the case if the liver is capable of handling the lactate load.

Plasma lactate and arterial pH should be measured early in any critically ill patient—it is now a diagnostic component of the definition of septic shock.[61] A lactate concentration > 2 mEq/L (mmol/L) is clinically significant and a level of 5 mEq/L(mmol/L) in the presence of metabolic acidosis is severe.[62] Isolated hyperlactatemia in the absence of acidosis is of unclear clinical significance.[63]

Traditionally, lactic acidosis has been described as taking one of two forms: type 1 (may also be termed type A, global inadequate oxygen delivery) is seen in hypovolemic/hemorrhagic shock while type 2 (type B) occurs despite normal global oxygen delivery and tissue perfusion. Lactic acidosis may also develop in situations where there is significant regional hypoperfusion. Examples include bowel ischemia, where lactate is produced in large quantity due to glycolysis despite global oxygen delivery that is normal. Type 2 lactic acidosis is associated with any state in which circulating catecholamines (endogenous or exogenous) are in excess. Examples include simple exercise and the hyperinflammatory state of trauma or sepsis. Type 2 lactic acidosis may also be seen in cyanide poisoning (associated with sodium nitroprusside), with biguanides (metformin, which blocks hepatic gluconeogenesis), and in hypercatabolic diseases such as lymphoma, leukemia, AIDS, or diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA). In critical illness, type 1 and type 2 lactic acidosis frequently coexist.

It is universally accepted that lactic acidosis is a sensitive marker of disease severity.[64] Persistence of lactic acidosis strongly predicts poor outcomes in acute illness.[65-67] Rapid clearance (i.e., reduced plasma concentration presumably due to reduced production and increased metabolism) of lactate has been associated with improved outcomes.[68,69] It remains controversial whether it is possible to institute therapy that improves outcomes and simultaneously increases lactate clearance. Simplistically, improved overall perfusion consequent of blood or isotonic fluid administration should reduce glycolysis and reduce lactate production, increasing hepatic blood flow and increasing metabolism. However, not all patients who are under-resuscitated are hyperlactatemic, and probably the minority of patients who are hyperlactatemic are under-resuscitated. Although fluid resuscitation with the goal of normalizing serum lactate may be associated with improved outcomes, excessive or late fluid resuscitation increases mortality.[70] It is important to note that, following fluid bolus, plasma lactate rapidly falls, perhaps due to hemodilution, and then falls slowly, at 10% to 20% per hour, due to rate-limited hepatic clearance. If plasma lactate does not fall, fluid resuscitation should be discontinued.[71]

The presence of evidence of good overall oxygen delivery and normal consumption, as measured by cardiac output monitors and mixed venous oxygen saturation, in lactic acidosis is not reassuring. Indeed, bowel ischemia may be indicated by otherwise unexplained lactic acidosis, and the availability heuristic associated with sepsis may result in delayed diagnosis and inappropriate fluid resuscitation (Fig. 48.9).

Metformin is associated with severe lactic acidosis, a phenomenon that appears more likely when the patient has liver dysfunction, is dehydrated, is in heart failure, has suffered acute kidney injury (AKI), or is septic.[72] The mechanism of harm is unknown, although metformin is thought to impair oxidative metabolism in hepatocyte mitochondria, and block gluconeogenesis. Renal impairment appears to be a significant risk factor. The patient presenting with metformin-associated lactic acidosis frequently looks reasonably well, despite serum lactate that may exceed 10 mmol/L. There is no specific treatment except for withdrawal of the drug, gentle rehydration, and patience.

D-lactate-induced acidosis can occur, typically in patients with short bowel syndrome and bacterial overgrowth. It manifests as a widened AG acidosis where no other potential source of metabolic acid is identified. Crucially, point-of-care blood gas analyzers do not measure D-lactate. However, many laboratories are able to measure the molecule, and this test should be considered in a high-risk patient (post major abdominal surgery) with unexplained acidosis.

A Clinical Approach to Lactic Acidosis

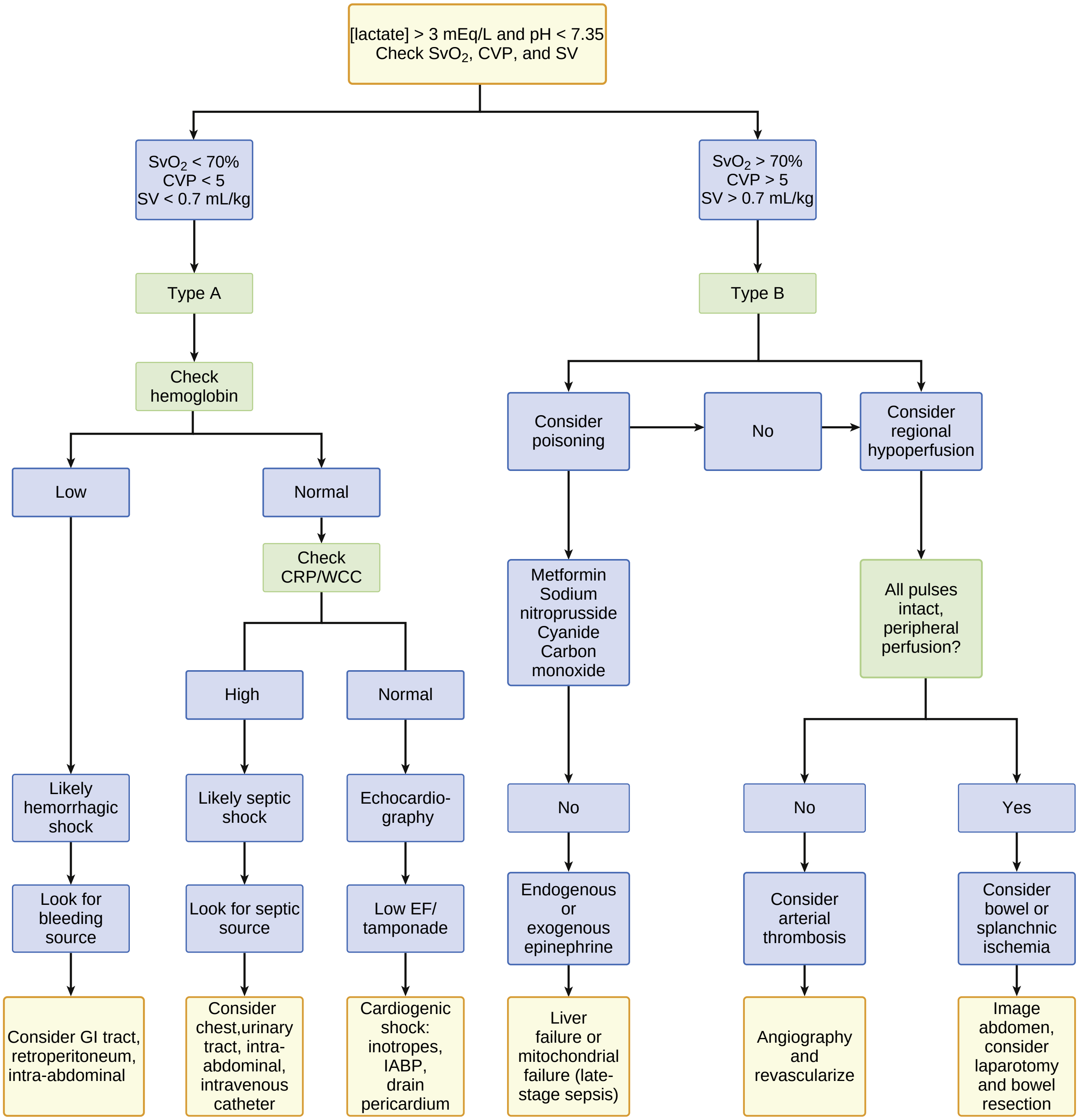

[lactate] > 3 mEq/L and pH < 7.35
Check SvO2, CVP, and SV
SvO2 < 70%
CVP < 5
SV < 0.7 mL/kg
SvO2 > 70%
CVP > 5
SV > 0.7 mL/kg
Type A
Type B
Check hemoglobin
Low
Normal
Check CRP/WCC
High
Normal
Likely hemorrhagic shock
Look for bleeding source
Consider GI tract, retroperitoneum, intra-abdominal
Likely septic shock
Look for septic source
Consider chest,urinary tract, intra-abdominal, intravenous catheter
Echocardio-graphy
Low EF/ tamponade
Cardiogenic shock: inotropes, IABP, drain pericardium
Consider poisoning
No
Consider regional hypoperfusion
Metformin
Sodium nitroprusside
Cyanide
Carbon monoxide
No
Endogenous or exogenous epinephrine
Liver failure or mitochondrial failure (late-stage sepsis)
All pulses intact, peripheral perfusion?
No
Consider arterial thrombosis
Angiography and revascularize
Yes
Consider bowel or splanchnic ischemia
Image abdomen, consider laparotomy and bowel resection

Fig. 48.9 Evaluation of a Patient with Lactic Acidosis. *CRP,* C-Reactive protein; *CVP,* central venous pressure; *EF,* ejection fraction; *GI,* gastrointestinal; *IABP,* intra-aortic balloon counterpulsation; *SV,* stroke volume; *SvO_2,* mixed venous oxygen saturation; *WCC,* white cell count.

Ketoacidosis

Ketone bodies—acetone (<2%), acetoacetate (20%), and 3-β-hydroxybutyrate (βOHB) (78%)—are normal by-products of fat metabolism. They are produced when fatty acids are metabolized by the liver, when glucose is unavailable as an energy source. During ketogenesis, acetoacetate is generated from acetyl co-enzyme A. This either enters mitochondria to be converted to βOHB or it spontaneously decarboxylates to acetone. Ketones are transported by blood to the tissues, in particular the brain, where they are used as energy sources. Under normal dietary conditions, ketones are undetectable in blood and urine. However, in situations where fat becomes the primary source of energy (for example in starvation or low-carbohydrate diets), ketones can be measured in blood (principally βOHB) and urine (principally acetoacetate). In a variety of clinical situations, such as prolonged starvation, alcoholism, alcoholic- or obesity-related steatohepatitis, and, most commonly, insulin deficiency (diabetes mellitus), a dramatic increase in circulating ketones occurs. As these are strong anionic compounds, ketones reduce SID, resulting in metabolic acidosis. When this occurs in type-1 diabetes (T1D), it is known as diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA).

DKA may be the first manifestation of T1D, or may result from poor glycemic control or specific stress triggers, such as infection, trauma, or surgery. Typically there is an imbalance between the relative quantity of insulin and glucose-promoting hormones (cortisol, epinephrine, and glucagon). Blood glucose increases, exceeding the renal reabsorption threshold. This results in glycosuria, osmotic diuresis, dehydration, and the vicious cycle of activation of stress hormones. This leads to increased metabolism of fatty acids and, in the absence of insulin, or consequent of severe insulin resistance, there is unrestrained oxidation of fatty acids to ketones in the liver. Regardless of the cause, there is usually elevated blood glucose, significant dehydration, and depletion of potassium, phosphorous, and magnesium.

The diagnosis of DKA is relatively simple. Usually there is a clear history of either diabetes or polyuria and polydipsia: the patient presents to the emergency room with hyperglycemia and glycosuria, and, usually, positive urinary ketones. Ketoacidosis is confirmed by performing ABG analysis. Every hospital has a protocol for the management of DKA. Insulin is administered by an infusion (with or without an initial bolus). This may be a weight-based fixed-rate infusion (0.1 units of insulin per kilo per hour) or more traditional infusion based on blood glucose.[73] The patient is resuscitated with several liters of isotonic crystalloid (usually isotonic saline [0.9%] solution), and when blood glucose falls within a "controlled" range, intravenous dextrose is administered. Insulin suppresses ketone production. Glucose is required to assist ketone metabolism, which can take some time. Two major mistakes are made in the management of DKA. Administration of 0.9% NaCl results in an entirely predictable hyperchloremic acidosis; this may or may not be harmful but may be perceived incorrectly as persistence of ketoacidosis. A small study that compared NS with Plasmalyte-148 (a balanced salt solution [BSS]) reported that patients receiving the balanced solution instead of NS had more rapid resolution of metabolic acidosis, less hyperchloremia, improved blood pressure profile, and greater urinary output.[74]

The second error is very important for anesthesiologists. As noted above, the majority of ketones in the body are in the form of βOHB. These can only be identified by measuring "blood" ketones. Urinary ketone sticks measure only acetoacetate.[75] The absence of ketones in the urine does not eliminate the diagnosis of ketoacidosis (particularly if it is not associated with diabetes). Blood ketones are easily measured using handheld devices (although these may be hard to find in hospitals due to the current disenfranchisement of point-of-care testing). Interestingly, as βOHB must be metabolized to acetoacetate, urinary ketones may actually increase during the time that the whole body ketone load is falling and ketosis is resolving.

Patients presenting for emergency surgery may have multiple simultaneous acid-base abnormalities, and physicians often miss ketoacidosis due to availability bias—the presence of elevated lactate may result in search satisficing—and a major metabolic abnormality is missed.[76] Despite fluid resuscitation and source control, the acidosis may not resolve. This in turn may lead to inappropriate therapy such as renal replacement therapy (RRT) and sodium bicarbonate administration, neither of which are of any value in ketoacidosis. All forms of ketoacidosis require insulin therapy and, eventually, glucose administration. Ketoacidosis of non-diabetic origin may take many hours, and occasionally days, to resolve.

Renal Acidosis

The kidney excretes water and a variety of metabolic byproducts, principally derived from proteins. The kidney also excretes surplus electrolytes, some of which are strong ions, including chloride, sulfate, formate, urate citric acid cycle metabolites (fumarate, citrate), and phosphate. These accumulate in AKI and cause "renal acidosis." Early in AKI, hyperchloremia is the principle source of acidosis; subsequently, 50% to 60% of acidosis is caused by UMA and up to 30% is associated with hyperphosphatemia.[77] Fifty percent of patients with AKI in critical illness have a normal AG.[77]

AKI, in perioperative medicine, may accompany hypotension, hypovolemia, renal hypoperfusion (from aortic cross clamping or intraabdominal hypertension), rhabdomyolysis, sepsis, or urinary obstruction. Irrespective of the cause, patients develop oliguria, volume overload, and hyperkalemia secondary to metabolic acidosis.

The identification of metabolic acidosis in AKI is key to the diagnosis, severity, and therapeutic strategy in AKI. Although serum creatinine is the most widely used marker of renal function, isolated readings are unhelpful. Fluid resuscitation can artificially lower the creatinine concentration, by dilution; diuresis can artificially elevate it. Metabolic acidosis, particularly in the presence of hyperkalemia with elevated creatinine, should always prompt the clinician to determine the extent of renal acidosis. This is not easy. Hyperchloremia typically accompanies renal acidosis, but isotonic saline solution is frequently administered to patients with elevated creatinine under the mistaken belief that patients are less likely to develop hyperkalemia compared with BSSs.[78] A study of anephric patients undergoing renal transplantation demonstrated that patients treated with NS were more acidotic and hyperkalemic than patients treated with lactated Ringer's solution.[78] Hyperphosphatemia is a minor contributor to renal acidosis, and currently no tests are available to clinically identify the UMA, except by a process of exclusion. Hence, renal acidosis is usually diagnosed by identifying a widened AG, base deficit gap, or SIG, and excluding ketones and lactate. Usually the key decision step regarding RRT involves uncontrolled hyperkalemia. Renal acidosis can be temporarily controlled by administration of sodium bicarbonate (assuming the patient can clear CO_2), by increasing the SID. This may be necessary if the risk of delaying surgery exceeds the risk of delaying RRT. Note, however, in critical illness, delaying RRT was associated with a 4.7% increase in mortality at 90 days.[79]

Hyperchloremic Acidosis

Hyperchloremia has been a known cause of metabolic acidosis since the dawn of acid-base chemistry,[12] but due to difficulty in measuring serum Cl^- during most of the 20th century, hyperchloremia was largely ignored until recent decades. The extracellular space contains 110 to 130 g of salt. For a 70 kg male (ECF volume 18 L), this is approximately 58 g of Na^+ (3.22 g/L) and 65 g (3.62 g/L) of Cl^-. The average American ingests approximately 3 g or more of salt (NaCl) each day (2.3 g is recommended). To maintain the normal ratio of Na^+ to Cl^- (1.4:1 approximately), the body needs to excrete 30% more Cl^- than Na^+, and this is one of the major excretory roles of the kidney. This approximates to 15 to 20 mmol of Cl^- excretion per day; to maintain electrical neutrality Cl^- is excreted with ammonium (NH_4^+), a byproduct of nitrogen metabolism. In renal failure, Cl^- accumulates, and this is often the cause of the early metabolic acidosis associated with AKI. For decades, it has been hypothesized that elevated circulating levels of Cl^-, usually as a consequence of intravenous administration, may actually be nephrotoxic, due, presumably, to increased metabolic demands on the kidney. One liter of isotonic saline solution (0.9%, normal saline, NS) contains 9 g of salt, 3.5 g Na^+, and 5.5 g Cl^- (154 mmol/L of each). For a euchloremic patient (the human body does not store chloride, unlike, for example, calcium), this means that if 1 L of NaCl 0.9% is administered, most or all of the Cl^- must be excreted—an 8- to 10-fold increase in metabolic load for the kidney. Moreover, as NS has a SID of 0, elevated serum chloride is usually associated with a non-AG (hyperchloremic) metabolic acidosis.[80]

Hyperchloremic acidosis is a complication of renal tubular acidosis, which is caused by a defect in chloride excretion. The urine is relatively alkaline. Hyperchloremia also occurs when ureters have been re-implanted in the bowel after, for example, cystectomy, and excreted chloride is reabsorbed.

Are hyperchloremia and hyperchloremic acidosis clinically significant? As a cause of acidosis, hyperchloremia is less sinister than other causes: in a study of critically ill patients with various acid-base disorders, mortality was highest for lactic acidosis (56%); for SIG acidosis it was 39% and for hyperchloremic acidosis 29% ($P < .001$).[81] Nevertheless, hyperchloremia may result in clinically significant organ dysfunction. An observational study of 31,000 surgical patients comparing intravenous saline to intravenous BSS demonstrated significant outcome differences, favoring BSS.[82] Complications enhanced by the use of normal saline included postoperative infections, blood transfusions, and kidney injury requiring dialysis.

A hyperchloremic state may be associated with nephrotoxicity; saline infusion has been associated with reduced renal blood flow, renal vasoconstriction, reduced glomerular filtration, and splanchnic hypoperfusion.[83] In a relatively large before-and-after cohort study of patients treated in an Australian ICU, the use of chloride-rich fluids was associated with a 3.7% absolute increase in the risk for need in RRT relative to BSS.[84]

Two large randomized controlled trials looked at the use of isotonic saline solution versus BSS in emergency medicine patients[85] and critically ill patients.[86] Although the volume of fluid administered intravenously was relatively low, certainly in comparison with perioperative patients, in both studies there was approximately a 1% increase in renal complications. Whether this effect scales up with larger volumes will presumably be the subject of further study and meta-analysis.

NS solution, originally introduced by Hamburger in the 19th century and labelled "normal" due to flawed research, has been the most widely used intravenous fluid for over a century, despite minimal research demonstrating its clinical efficacy and safety.[87] As mounting research demonstrates that this particular fluid may be harmful, and with a variety of other balanced solutions available for clinical practice, the role of NS in perioperative medicine is highly questionable.

Perioperative Metabolic Alkalosis

Perioperative metabolic alkalosis is usually of iatrogenic origin. Overventilation of patients with chronic respiratory failure results in acute metabolic alkalosis because the presence of chronic compensatory alkalosis associated with chloride loss in urine has not been taken into account (Fig. 48.10). More frequently, metabolic alkalosis is associated with increased SID due to sodium gain. This abnormality results from the administration of fluids in which sodium is buffered by weak ions, citrate (in blood products), acetate (in parenteral nutrition), and, of course, bicarbonate. It is important to recognize that buffer ions such as citrate, acetate, gluconate, and lactate are, under normal conditions, rapidly cleared by the liver and do not contribute to acid-base balance. Sodium and chloride obey the law of conservation of mass. Sodium gain is "chloride sensitive" alkalosis, treated by administration of net loads of chloride—0.9% NaCl, potassium chloride, calcium chloride, and, occasionally, hydrogen chloride. It is important to correct chloride-sensitive alkalosis, as the normal compensatory measure is hypoventilation, increasing $PaCO_2$, which may lead to CO_2 narcosis and failure to liberate from mechanical ventilation.

Large volumes of BSSs are likely to cause metabolic alkalosis, due to dilution of A_{TOT} (principally hypoalbuminemia), a process that is curtained when using lactated Ringer's solution (Hartmann's) due to lower SID (20 mEq/L). The acquired hypoalbuminemic alkalosis is of undetermined clinical significance.

Another cause of metabolic alkalosis in perioperative patients reflects loss of chloride-rich fluids from the gastrointestinal tract. Gastric juice contains HCl, which, when lost as a result of continuous suctioning or vomiting, obeys the law of conservation of mass and leads to alkalosis.

Perioperative fluid therapy remains highly controversial. Isotonic fluids are usually administered due to fear of cerebral edema associated with stress-induced water retention. However, this results in large amounts of solute, in particular sodium and chloride, accumulating in the extravascular space. Acquired hypernatremia is associated with adverse clinical outcomes and is very difficult to treat.[88] BSSs appear safer than NS, but large-volume administration of these resuscitation fluids are also associated with worse outcomes.[89]

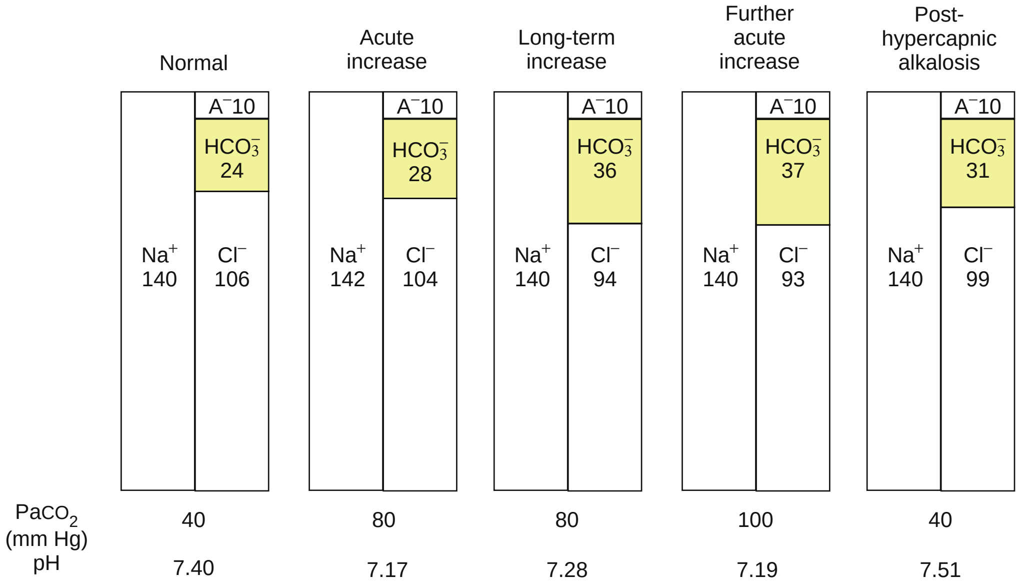


Fig. 48.10 Changes in Acid-Based and Electrolyte Composition in Patients With Respiratory Acidosis. *Left to right*, the panels depict normal acid-base status; adaptation to an acute rise in the partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide ($PaCO_2$) to 80 mm Hg; adaptation to a long-term rise in $PaCO_2$ to 80 mm Hg; superimposition of an acute further increment in $PaCO_2$ (to a level of 100 mm Hg) in the same patient; and post-hypercapnic alkalosis resulting from an abrupt reduction in $PaCO_2$ to the level of 40 mm Hg in the same patient. A^-denotes unmeasured plasma anions, and the numbers within the bars give ion concentrations in millimoles per liter. (Modified from Adrogué HJ, Madias NE. Management of life-threatening acid-base disorders. First of two parts. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;338[1]:26–34.)

ACID-BASE DISTURBANCES IN CRITICAL ILLNESS

Critically ill patients may have many confounding acid-base disturbances that are not evident when only a single quantitative measure, such as base deficit, is employed. Patients will frequently have perturbations of PCO_2, SID, and A_{TOT}, and significant pathology may be overlooked due to apparently normal blood gas results.[90]

The most common single disturbance in acid-base chemistry in critically ill patients is hypoalbuminemia.[24] This abnormality is ubiquitous and causes a metabolic alkalosis of unpredictable magnitude. Hypoalbuminemia may mask significant alterations in SID, for example lactic or renal acidosis. Therefore, when the AG is used in critically ill patients it should be corrected for albumin.[26] Similarly, the use of base deficit to predict lactate is unreliable in critical illness, particularly in patients undergoing secondary deterioration.[25] Further, prolonged respiratory failure, with associated hypercarbia, leads to additional metabolic alkalosis due to chloride loss in urine (see Fig. 48.10)[91] Kidney injury is associated with accumulation of metabolic by-products, phosphate, renal anions, chloride, and other UMA, leading initially to metabolic acidosis. However, late polyuric renal failure may be associated with significant contraction alkalosis, due to loss of sodium, potassium, and free water.

Critically ill patients are vulnerable to significant changes in SID and free water. Nasogastric suctioning causes chloride loss, diarrhea leads to sodium and potassium deficits. Surgical drains placed in tissue beds may remove fluids with varying electrolyte concentrations (the pancreatic bed, for example, secretes fluid rich in sodium). Fever, sweating, evaporation from denuded tissue, and inadequately humidified ventilator circuits all can lead to large-volume insensible loss and contraction alkalosis.

Infusions administered to patients may be responsible for unrecognized alterations in serum chemistry. Many antibiotics, for example piperacillin-tazobactam, are diluted in sodium-rich solutions. Others, such as vancomycin, are administered in large volumes of free water (5% dextrose). Lorazepam is diluted in propylene glycol, large volumes of which will cause metabolic acidosis similar to that seen with ethylene glycol.[92]

Continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT) is used in critical illness to hemofilter and hemodialysis patients who are hemodynamically unstable. Rocktaschel[93] and colleagues have demonstrated that CRRT resolved the acidosis of acute renal failure by removing strong ions and phosphate. However, in the presence of hypoalbuminemia, use of dialysis to correct a metabolic acidosis may unmask a metabolic alkalosis due to hypoalbuminemia. CRRT is not an effective treatment for lactic acidosis or ketoacidosis.

Other seemingly innocuous therapies may cause significant disturbances to acid-base balance. Loop diuretics, such as furosemide, are often administered to critically ill patients. These agents preferentially excrete water over electrolytes and provoke a contraction alkalosis. Similarly, carbonic anhydrase inhibitors such as acetazolamide may be used to treat patients with hypochloremic metabolic alkalosis or respiratory alkalosis by decreasing the plasma SID. This effect is completely explained by the increased renal excretion ratio of sodium to chloride, resulting in an increase in serum chloride.[94]

Neurosurgical patients are vulnerable to a variety of acid-base disturbances as a result of osmotherapy or from disturbances caused by brain injury. Most commonly, NS solution is administered to these patients and results in hyperchloremic acidosis.[95] Diabetes insipidus (DI) is a frequent complication of severe head injury, particularly when the patient is progressing toward brain death. DI is caused by damage to the pituitary and/or the hypothalamus and results in a loss of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) secretion. Absent ADH, the kidney is unable to concentrate the urine and a massive diuresis follows. The disorder is characterized by an increase in plasma osmolality in the presence of a low urinary osmolality. DI will typically manifest as a contraction alkalosis. The treatment is hormonal replacement with either vasopressin or desmopressin.

TREATING ACID-BASE DISTURBANCES

In general, in acute illness and perioperative medicine, acid-base disturbances are clinical indicators of disease processes that are more harmful than hydrogen ion abnormalities themselves. Correcting the pH is usually unlikely to resolve the problem, except in certain circumstances, such as hyperkalemia in AKI, where acidosis is the major cause of the problem.

The treatment of acid-base abnormalities is determined by whether the acids, in particular, are organic or mineral acids. Organic acids can be metabolized, excreted, or dialyzed from the body. Diabetic and nondiabetic ketoacidosis are treated primarily with insulin, intravenous fluid, and glucose. The ketoacids causing metabolic acidosis are metabolized by the liver. AKI is treated with dialysis and ultrafiltration, which directly removes UMA. Surprisingly, there are no clear guidelines regarding the optimal timing of initiation of RRT,[79,96] particularly in the perioperative period.[97]

For decades, sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3^-$) has been used to "correct" acidosis. The sodium component, as a strong anion, widens the SID and is alkalizing. Simultaneously, the bicarbonate moiety provides buffer for hydrogen ions, generating CO_2, which is presumably excreted from the body by increased alveolar ventilation. In respiratory failure, sodium bicarbonate will worsen respiratory acidosis despite increased SID. CO_2 also enters cells and may cause intracellular acidosis, the clinical significance of which is unclear.[98]

$NaHCO_3^-$ is commonly used to treat hyperchloremic acidosis. For patients with renal tubular acidosis, this involves long-term treatment with sodium bicarbonate tablets and chloride restriction. In acquired hyperchloremic acidosis, intravenous sodium bicarbonate corrects the base deficit,[99] but the benefit is unclear. The major drawbacks of $NaHCO_3^-$ therapy include sodium and volume overload, metabolic alkalosis, hypertension, and hypocalcemia.

Sodium bicarbonate therapy has been extensively studied in lactic acidosis and circulatory shock.[100] A recent randomized trial of 389 critically ill patients with metabolic acidosis compared the administration of 4.2% (hypertonic) $NaHCO_3^-$ to keep pH above 7.3, up to a maximum of 1000 mL in the first 24 hours, versus no intervention.[101] Although there were no differences in the primary outcome—28-day mortality—the patients who received $NaHCO_3^-$ had a lower incidence of AKI and requirement for RRT. It is unclear why there was a reduction in the need for RRT. Perhaps the reduction in acidosis delayed the decision to start RRT and resulted in the intervention being avoided completely,[96] or reversal of acidosis reduced vasopressor requirement and improved kidney blood flow; but this is merely speculation. Previous meta-analyse have failed to demonstrate benefit from $NaHCO_3^-$ therapy,[102] presumably due to the paucity of available research. Until larger multicenter trials have been conducted, $NaHCO_3^-$ therapy should be used with caution for treatment of metabolic acidosis, due to circulatory shock or ketoacidosis. It is also unlikely that $NaHCO_3^-$ therapy benefits perioperative patients at risk for postoperative kidney failure.[103]

Metabolic alkalosis is rarely seen in elective perioperative care. It is most likely encountered when unmasked by overventilation of patients who chronically retain CO_2. Minute ventilation should be reduced. Critically ill patients may have metabolic alkalosis due to chloride deficit, free water deficit, or hypoalbuminemia. Contraction alkalosis is treated by correcting the free water deficit using the formula below:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Free water deficit} = 0.6 \times \text{patient's weight in kg} \\ \times (\text{patient's sodium}/140 - 1)\end{aligned}$$

Hypochloremic alkalosis should be treated by correcting the chloride deficit using NS or LR.

There is no evidence that correcting hypoalbuminemia is of clinical benefit for the majority of patients.[104] Respiratory alkalosis usually results from anxiety or pain. Short-term therapy, such as CO_2 rebreathing, should be followed by treating the underlying problem—for example with opioids or benzodiazepines.

Hypercarbic acidosis may be encountered in the perioperative period due to deliberate[105] or inadvertent hypoventilation. It is also associated with elevated dead space ventilation as seen in ARDS. In general, acute respiratory acidosis is well tolerated and can be easily reversed by increasing minute ventilation. However, in ARDS, a high tidal volume and transpulmonary pressures result in ventilator induced lung injury (VILI) and increased mortality.[106] Consequently, hypercarbia must be tolerated by the physician and patient ("permissive hypercarbia") or CO_2 removed by an extracorporeal circuit.[107]

Summary

Much of the confusion regarding acid-base chemistry relates to the attempt to apply observational approaches, such as that of Henderson-Hasselbalch and Schwartz and Brackett, to the entire spectrum of pathophysiologic processes. The use of physical chemistry principles has permitted easier explanation of acid-base balance, and tools to apply to a wide variety of clinical situations. This does not suggest that the "traditional" approach is incorrect, merely that it looks at a mirror image of that proposed by Stewart, Fencl, and others. All acid-base disorders can be explained in terms of SID, A_{TOT}, and PCO_2. This is important to anesthesiologists, who may significantly impact acid-base balance with our choice of fluids and mechanical ventilation strategy.

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and Dr. Patrick Neligan would like to thank Dr. Clifford S. Deutschman for his contribution to previous editions of this chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Berend K, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371:1434.
2. Stewart PA. *Can J Physiol Pharmacol*. 1983;61:1444.
3. Gomez H, Kellum JA. *Crit Care Clin*. 2015;31:849.
4. Adrogue HJ, Madias NE. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2016;68:793.
5. Fencl V, Leith DE. *Respir Physiol*. 1993;91:1.
6. Aiken CGA. *JCDR*. 2013;7:2038.
7. Moon JB. *N Engl J Med*. 1967;276:283.
8. Henderson LJ. *Ergebn Physiol*. 1909;8:254.
9. Hasselbalch KA. *Biochem Z*. 1916;78:112.
10. Sirker AA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:348.
11. Van Slyke DD. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1921;7:229.
12. Henderson LH. Blood as a physiochemical system. *J Biol Chem*. 1921;46:411.
13. Corey HE. *Kidney Int*. 2003;64:777.
14. Stewart PA. Modern quantitative acid-base chemistry. *Can J Physiol Pharmacol*. 1983;61:1444–1461.
15. Deleted in proofs.
16. Severinghaus JW. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;45:539.
17. Brackett NC, Cohen JJ, Schwartz WB. Carbon dioxide titration curve of normal man. *N Engl J Med*. 1965;272:6–12.
18. Hickling KG. *Respir Care Clin North Am*. 2002;8:155.
19. Laffey JG, Kavanagh BP. *Lancet*. 1999;354:1283.
20. Contreras M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:2622.
21. Scheingraber S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1265.
22. Figge J, et al. *J Lab Clin Med*. 1992;120:713.
23. Story DA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:54.
24. Figge J, et al. *J Lab Clin Med*. 1991;117:453.
25. Fencl V, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2000;162:2246.
26. Figge J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1807.
27. Goldwasser P, Feldman J. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 1997;50:693.
28. Wang F, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1986;315:1591.
29. Bleich HL, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1964;43:11.
30. Kazemi H, Johnson DC. *Physiol Rev*. 1986;66:953.
31. Bondoli A, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1981;9:99.
32. Javaheri S, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1994;150:78.
33. Johnson DC, et al. *Respir Physiol*. 1984;56:301.
34. Johnson DC, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;63:1591.
35. Smith QR, Johanson CE. *Brain Res*. 1991;562:306.
36. Javaheri S. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;62:1582.
37. Narins R, Emmett M. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 1980;59:161.
38. Kellum JA. *Diagnosis and Treatment of Acid Base Disorders, Textbook of Critical Care Medicine*. 4th ed. Shoemaker, ed. Saunders; 2000: 839–853.
39. Rodriguez-Soriano J. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 2000;14:1121.
40. Choate KA, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2003;100:663.
41. Shaer AJ. *Am J Med Sci*. 2001;322:316.
42. Kellum JA. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:500.
43. Schwartz WB, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1965;44:291.
44. Brackett NC, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1965;272:6.
45. Albert MS. *Ann Intern Med*. 1967;66:312.
46. Emmett M, Narins RG. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 1977;56:38.
47. Salem MM, Mujais SK. *Arch Intern Med*. 1992;152:1625.
48. Moviat M, et al. *Crit Care*. 2003;7:R41.
49. Lipnick MS, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41:49.
50. Singer RB, Hastings AB. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 1948;10:242.
51. Severinghaus JW. The invention and development of blood gas analysis apparatus. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:253.
52. Jorgensen K. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*. 1957;9:122.
53. Astrup P, Siggard-Andersen O. *Adv Clin Chem*. 1963;69:1.
54. Wooten EW. *J Appl Physiol*. 2003;95:2333.
55. Siggaard-Andersen O. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest Suppl*. 1977;37:15.
56. Prange HD, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2001;91(1985):33.
57. Siggaard-Andersen O. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*. 1971;27:239.
58. Gilfix BM, et al. *J Crit Care*. 1993;8:187.
59. Balasubramanyan N, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:1577.
60. Story DA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:54.
61. Singer M, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;315:801.
62. Fall PJ, Szerlip HM. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2005;20:255.
63. Lee SW, et al. *Emerg Med J*. 2008;25:659.
64. Mikkelsen ME, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37:1670.
65. Abramson D, et al. *J Trauma*. 1993;35:584.
66. Arnold RC, Shapiro NI, et al. *Shock*. 2009;32:35.
67. McNelis J, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2001;182:481.
68. Jones AE, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;303:739.
69. Jansen TC, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2010;182:752.
70. Liu V, et al. *Ann Am Thorac Soc*. 2013;10:466.
71. Bakker J, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42:472.
72. DeFronzo R, et al. *Metabolism*. 2016;65:20.
73. Tran TTT, et al. *Front Endocrinol*. 2017;8:106.
74. Chua HR, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2012;27:138.
75. Brewster S. *Practical Diabetes*. 2017;34:13.
76. Saposnik G, et al. *BMC Med Inform Decis Mak*. 2016;16:138.
77. Rocktaeschel J, et al. *Crit Care*. 2003;7:R60.
78. O'Malley, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1518.
79. Zarbock A. *JAMA*. 2016;315(20):2190.
80. Myles PS, et al. *World J Surg*. 2017;41:2457.
81. Gunnerson KJ, et al. *Crit Care*. 2006;10:R22.
82. Shaw AD, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255:821.
83. Wilkes NJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:811.
84. Yunos N. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1566.
85. Self WH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:819.
86. Semler MW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:829.
87. Awad S. The history of 0.9% saline. *Clin Nutr*. 2008;27(2):179.
88. Tsipotis E, et al. *Am J Med*. 2018;131:72.
89. Simoes CM, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2018;18:49.
90. Moviat M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:752.
91. Adrogue HJ, et al. *Kidney Int*. 1984;(25):591.
92. Tayar J, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346:1253.
93. Rocktaeschel J, et al. *Int J Artif Organs*. 2003;26:19.
94. Moviat M, Pickkers P, et al. *Crit Care*. 2006;10:R14.
95. Lima MF, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2018.
96. Gaudry S, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:122.
97. Romagnoli S, et al. *Nephron*. 2018:1.
98. Swenson ER. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:873.
99. Rehm M, Finsterer U. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1201.
100. Forsythe SM, Schmidt GA. *Chest*. 2000;117:260.
101. Jaber S, et al. *Lancet*. 2018;392:31.
102. Velissaris D, et al. *Crit Care Res Pract*. 2015;2015:605830.
103. McGuinness SP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41:1599.
104. Caironi P, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1412.
105. Lyons C, Callaghan M. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72:1379.
106. Slutsky AS, Ranieri VM. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369:2126.
107. Barrett NA, Camporota L. *Crit Care Resusc*. 2017;19(suppl 1):62.

References

1. Berend K, de Vries APJ, Gans ROB. Physiological approach to assessment of acid base disturbances. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371:1434–1445.
2. Stewart PA. Independent and dependent variables of acid-base control. *Respir Physiol*. 1978;33:9–26.
3. Gomez H, Kellum JA. Understanding acid base disorders. *Crit Care Clin*. 2015;31:849–860.
4. Adrogue HJ, Madias NE. Assessing acid-base status: physiologic versus physicochemical approach. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2016;68:793–802.
5. Fencl V, Leith DE. Stewart's quantitative acid-base chemistry: applications in biology and medicine. *Respir Physiol*. 1993;91:1–916.
6. Aiken CGA. History of medical understanding and misunderstanding of acid base balance. *JCDR*. 2013;7:2038–2041.
7. Moon JB. Sir William Brooke O'Shaughnessy—the foundations of fluid therapy and the indian telegraph service. *N Engl J Med*. 1967;276:283–284.
8. Henderson LJ. Das gleichgewicht zwischen sauren und bases im tierischen organismus. *Ergebn Physiol*. 1909;8:254–325.
9. Hasselbalch KA. Die berechnung der wasserstoffzahl des blutes aus der freien und gebundenen kohlensaure desselben, und die sauerstoffbindung des blutes als funktion der wasserstoffzahl. *Biochem Z*. 1916;78:112–144.
10. Sirker AA, Rhodes A, Grounds RM, Bennett ED. Acid-base physiology: the 'traditional' and the 'modern' approaches. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:348–356.
11. Van Slyke DD. An apparatus for determination of the gases in blood and other solutions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1921;7:229–231.
12. Henderson LH. Blood as a physiochemical system. *J Biol Chem*. 1921;46:411–419.
13. Corey HE. Stewart and beyond: new models of acid-base balance. *Kidney Int*. 2003;64:777–787.
14. Stewart PA. Modern quantitative acid-base chemistry. *Can J Physiol Pharmacol*. 1983;61:1444–1461.
15. Deleted in proofs.
16. Severinghaus JW. Acid-base balance nomogram—a Boston-Copenhagen detente. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;45:539–541.
17. Brackett NC, Cohen JJ, Schwartz WB. Carbon dioxide titration curve of normal man. *N Engl J Medicine*. 1965;272:6–12.
18. Hickling KG. Permissive hypercapnia. *Respir Care Clin N Am*. 2002;8:155–169. v.
19. Laffey JG, Kavanagh BP. Carbon dioxide and the critically ill—too little of a good thing? *Lancet*. 1999;354:1283–1286.
20. Contreras M, Ansari B, Curley G, et al. Hypercapnic acidosis attenuates ventilation-induced lung injury by a nuclear factor-KB dependent mechanism. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40(9):2622–2630.
21. Scheingraber S, Rehm M, Sehmisch C, Finsterer U. Rapid saline infusion produces hyperchloremic acidosis in patients undergoing gynecologic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1265–1270.
22. Figge J, Mydosh T, Fencl V. Serum proteins and acid-base equilibria: a follow-up. *J Lab Clin Med*. 1992;120:713–719.
23. Story DA, Morimatsu H, Bellomo R. Strong ions, weak acids and base excess: a simplified Fencl-Stewart approach to clinical acid-base disorders. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:54–60.
24. Figge J, Rossing TH, Fencl V. The role of serum proteins in acid-base equilibria. *J Lab Clin Med*. 1991;117:453–467.
25. Fencl V, Jabor A, Kazda A, Figge J. Diagnosis of metabolic acid-base disturbances in critically ill patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2000;162:2246–2251.
26. Figge J, Jabor A, Kazda A, Fencl V. Anion gap and hypoalbuminemia. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1807–1810.
27. Goldwasser P, Feldman J. Association of serum albumin and mortality risk. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 1997;50:693–703.
28. Wang F, Butler T, Rabbani GH, Jones PK. The acidosis of cholera. Contributions of hyperproteinemia, lactic acidemia, and hyperphosphatemia to an increased serum anion gap. *N Engl J Med*. 1986;315:1591–1595.
29. Bleich HL, Berkman PM, Schwartz WB. The response of cerebrospinal fluid composition to sustained hypercapnia. *J Clin Invest*. 1964;43:11–18.
30. Kazemi H, Johnson DC. Regulation of cerebrospinal fluid acid-base balance. *Physiol Rev*. 1986;66:953–1037.
31. Bondoli A, Magalini SI, de AC, et al. Changes in plasma and cerebrospinal fluid electrolytes in hypercapnia. *Resuscitation*. 1981;9:99–102.
32. Javaheri S, Corbett W, Wagner K, Adams JM. Quantitative cerebrospinal fluid acid-base balance in acute respiratory alkalosis. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1994;150:78–82.
33. Johnson DC, Frankel HM, Kazemi H. Effect of furosemide on cerebrospinal fluid composition. *Respir Physiol*. 1984;56:301–308.
34. Johnson DC, Singer S, Hoop B, Kazemi H. Chloride flux from blood to CSF: inhibition by furosemide and bumetanide. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;63:1591–1600.
35. Smith QR, Johanson CE. Chloride efflux from isolated choroid plexus. *Brain Res*. 1991;562:306–310.
36. Javaheri S. Effects of acetazolamide on cerebrospinal fluid ions in metabolic alkalosis in dogs. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;62:1582–1588.
37. Narins R, Emmett M. Simple and mixed acid-base disorders: a practical approach. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 1980;59:161–187.
38. Kellum JA. *Diagnosis and Treatment of Acid Base Disorders, Textbook of Critical Care Medicine*. 4th ed. Shoemaker, ed. Saunders; 2000: 839–853.
39. Rodriguez-Soriano J. New insights into the pathogenesis of renal tubular acidosis—from functional to molecular studies. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 2000;14:1121–1136.
40. Choate KA, Kahle KT, Wilson FH, Nelson-Williams C, Lifton RP. WNK1, a kinase mutated in inherited hypertension with hyperkalemia, localizes to diverse Cl- -transporting epithelia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2003;100:663–668.
41. Shaer AJ. Inherited primary renal tubular hypokalemic alkalosis: a review of Gitelman and Bartter syndromes. *Am J Med Sci*. 2001;322:316–332.
42. Kellum JA. Reunification of acid-base physiology. *Critical Care*. 2005;9:500–507.
43. Schwartz WB, Brackett NC, Cohen JJ. The response of extracellular hydrogen Ion concentration to graded degrees of chronic hypercapnia: the physiologic limits of the defense of pH*. *Eur J Clin Invest*. 1965;44:291–301.
44. Brackett NC, Cohen JJ, Schwartz WB. Carbon dioxide titration curve of normal man. *N Engl J Med*. 1965;272:6–12.
45. Albert MS, Dell RB, Winters RW. Quantitative displacement of acid-base equilibrium in metabolic acidosis. *Ann Intern Med*. 1967;66:312–322.
46. Emmett M, Narins RG. Clinical use of the anion gap. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 1977;56:38–54.
47. Salem MM, Mujais SK. Gaps in the anion gap. *Arch Intern Med*. 1992;152:1625–1629.
48. Moviat M, van HF, van der HH. Conventional or physicochemical approach in intensive care unit patients with metabolic acidosis. *Crit Care*. 2003;7:R41–R45.
49. Lipnick MS, Braun AB, Cheung JT, Gibbons FK, Christopher KB. The difference between critical care initiation anion gap and prehospital admission anion gap is predictive of mortality in critical illness. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41:49–59.
50. Singer RB, Hastings AB. An improved clinical method for the estimation of disturbances of the acid-base balance of human blood. *Medicine*. 1948;10:242.
51. Severinghaus JW. The invention and development of blood gas analysis apparatus. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:253–256.
52. Jorgensen K, Astrup P. Standard bicarbonate, its clinical significance, and a new method for its determination. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*. 1957;9:122–132.
53. Astrup P, Siggaard-Andersen O. Micromethods for measuring acid-base values of blood. *Adv Clin Chem*. 1963;69:1–28.
54. Wooten EW. Calculation of physiological acid-base parameters in multicompartment systems with application to human blood. *J Appl Physiol*. 2003;95:2333–2344.
55. Siggaard-Andersen O. The van Slyke equation. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest Suppl*. 1977;37:15–20.
56. Prange HD, Shoemaker JL, Westen EA, Horstkotte DG, Pinshow B. Physiological consequences of oxygen-dependent chloride binding to hemoglobin. *J Appl Physiol*. 2001;91(1985):33–38.
57. Siggaard-Andersen O. An acid-base chart for arterial blood with normal and pathophysiological reference areas. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*. 1971;27:239–245.
58. Gilfix BM, Bique M, Magder S. A physical chemical approach to the analysis of acid-base balance in the clinical setting. *J Crit Care*. 1993;8:187–197.

59. Balasubramanyan N, Havens PL, Hoffman GM. Unmeasured anions identified by the Fencl-Stewart method predict mortality better than base excess, anion gap, and lactate in patients in the pediatric intensive care unit. *Crit Care Med.* 1999;27:1577–1581.
60. Story DA, Morimatsu H, Bellomo R. Strong ions, weak acids and base excess: a simplified Fencl-Stewart approach to clinical acid-base disorders. *Br J Anaesth.* 2004;92:54–60.
61. Singer M, Deutschman CS, Seymour C. The third international consensus definitions for sepsis and septic shock (sepsis-3). *JAMA*. 2016;315:801–810.
62. Fall PJ, Szerlip HM. Lactic acidosis: from sour milk to septic shock. *Intensive Care Med.* 2005;20:255–271.
63. Lee SW, Hong YS, Park DW, et al. Lactic acidosis not hyperlactatemia as a predictor of inhospital mortality in septic emergency patients. *Emerg Med J.* 2008;25:659–665.
64. Mikkelsen ME, Miltiades AN, Gaieski DF, et al. Serum lactate is associated with mortality in severe sepsis independent of organ failure and shock. *Crit Care Med.* 2009;37:1670–1677.
65. Abramson D, Scalea TM, Hitchcock R, Trooskin SZ, Henry SM, Greenspan J. Lactate clearance and survival following injury. *J Trauma.* 1993;35:584–588.
66. Arnold RC, Shapiro NI, Jones AE, et al. Multicenter study of early lactate clearance as a determinant of survival in patients with presumed sepsis. *Shock*. 2009;32(1):35–39.
67. McNelis J, Marini CP, Jurkiewicz A, et al. Prolonged lactate clearance is associated with increased mortality in the surgical intensive care unit. *Am J Surg*. 2001;182:481–485.
68. Jones AE, Shapiro NI, Trzeciak S, Arnold RC, Claremont HA, Kline JA. Lactate clearance vs central venous oxygen saturation as goals of early sepsis therapy: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2010;303:739–746.
69. Jansen TC, van Bommel J, Schoonderbeek FJ, et al. LACTATE study group. Early lactate-guided therapy in intensive care unit patients: a multicenter, open-label, randomized controlled trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2010;182:752–761.
70. Liu V, Morehouse JW, Soule J, Whippy A, Escobar GJ. Fluid volume, lactate values, and mortality in sepsis patients with intermediate lactate values. *Ann Am Thorac Soc.* 2013;10:466–473.
71. Bakker J, de BD, Hernandez G. Lactate-guided resuscitation saves lives: we are not sure. *Intensive Care Med.* 2016;42:472–474.
72. DeFronzo R, Fleming GA, Chen K, Bicsak TA. Metformin-associated lactic acidosis: current perspectives on causes and risk. *Metabolism*. 2016;65:20–29.
73. Tran TTT, Pease A, Wood AJ, et al. Review of evidence for adult diabetic ketoacidosis management protocols. *Front Endocrinol.* 2017;8:106.
74. Chua HR, Venkatesh B, Stachowski E, et al. Plasma-Lyte 148 vs 0.9% saline for fluid resuscitation in diabetic ketoacidosis. *J Crit Care*. 2012;27:138–145.
75. Brewster S, Curtis L, Poole R. Urine versus blood ketones. *Practical Diabetes*. 2017;34:13–15.
76. Saposnik G, Redelmeier D, Ruff CC, Tobler PN. Cognitive biases associated with medical decisions: a systematic review. *BMC Med Inform Decis Mak*. 2016;16:138.
77. Rocktaeschel J, Morimatsu H, Uchino S, et al. Acid-base status of critically ill patients with acute renal failure: analysis based on Stewart-Figge methodology. *Crit Care*. 2003;7:R60.
78. O'Malley CM, Frumento RJ, Hardy MA, et al. A randomized, double-blind comparison of lactated Ringer's solution and 0.9% NaCl during renal transplantation. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1518–1524. table.
79. Zarbock A. Effect of early vs delayed initiation of renal replacement therapy on mortality in critically Ill patients with acute kidney injury: the ELAIN randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2016;315(20):2190–2199.
80. Myles PS, Andrews S, Nicholson J, Lobo DN, Mythen M. Contemporary approaches to perioperative IV fluid therapy. *World J Surg*. 2017;41:2457–2463.
81. Gunnerson K, Saul M, He S, Kellum J. Lactate versus non-lactate metabolic acidosis: a retrospective outcome evaluation of critically ill patients. *Crit Care*. 2006;10:R22.
82. Shaw AD, Bagshaw SM, Goldstein SL, et al. Major complications, mortality, and resource utilization after open abdominal surgery: 0.9% saline compared to plasma-lyte. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255(5): 821–829.
83. Wilkes NJ, Woolf R, Mutch M, et al. The effects of balanced versus saline-based hetastarch and crystalloid solutions on acid-base and electrolyte status and gastric mucosal perfusion in elderly surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:811–816.
84. Yunos N. Association between a chloride-liberal vs chloride-restrictive intravenous fluid administration strategy and kidney injury in critically ill adults. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1566–1572.
85. Self WH, Semler MW, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in noncritically ill adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:819–828.
86. Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in critically ill adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:829–839.
87. Awad S. The history of 0.9% saline. *Clin Nutr*. 2008;27(2):179–188.
88. Tsipotis E, Price LL, Jaber BL, Madias NE. Hospital-associated hypernatremia spectrum and clinical outcomes in an unselected cohort. *Am J Med.* 2018;131:72–82.
89. Simoes CM, Carmona MJC, Hajjar LA, et al. Predictors of major complications after elective abdominal surgery in cancer patients. *BMC Anesthesiol.* 2018;18:49.
90. Moviat M, Terpstra AM, Ruitenbeek W, Kluijtmans LAJ, Pickkers P, van der Hoeven JG. Contribution of various metabolites to the "unmeasured" anions in critically ill patients with metabolic acidosis. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:752.
91. Adrogue HJ, Eknoyan G, Suki WK. Diabetic ketoacidosis: role of the kidney in the acid-base homeostasis re-evaluated. *Kidney Int*. 1984;25:591–598.
92. Tayar J, Jabbour G, Saggi SJ. Severe hyperosmolar metabolic acidosis due to a large dose of intravenous lorazepam. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346:1253–1254.
93. Rocktaschel J, Morimatsu H, Uchino S, Ronco C, Bellomo R. Impact of continuous veno-venous hemofiltration on acid-base balance. *Int J Artif Organs*. 2003;26:19–25.
94. Moviat M, Pickkers P, van der Voort PHJ, van der Hoeven JG. Acetazolamide-mediated decrease in strong ion difference accounts for the correction of metabolic alkalosis in critically ill patients. *Crit Care*. 2006;10:R14.
95. Lima MF, Neville IS, Cavalheiro S, Bourguignon DC, Pelosi P, Malbouisson LMS. Balanced crystalloids versus saline for perioperative intravenous fluid administration in children undergoing neurosurgery: a randomized clinical trial. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2018.
96. Gaudry S, Hajage D, Schortgen F, et al. Initiation strategies for renal-replacement therapy in the intensive care unit. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:122–133.
97. Romagnoli S, Ricci Z, Ronco C. Perioperative acute kidney injury: prevention, early recognition, and supportive measures. *Nephron*. 2018:1–6.
98. Swenson ER. Does aerobic respiration produce carbon dioxide or hydrogen ion and bicarbonate? *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:873–879.
99. Rehm M, Finsterer U. Treating intraoperative hyperchloremic acidosis with sodium bicarbonate or tris-hydroxymethyl aminomethane: a randomized prospective study. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(4):1201–1208.
100. Forsythe SM, Schmidt GA. Sodium bicarbonate for the treatment of lactic acidosis. *Chest*. 2000;117:260–267.
101. Jaber S, Paugam C, Futier E, et al. Sodium bicarbonate therapy for patients with severe metabolic acidaemia in the intensive care unit (BICAR-ICU): a multicentre, open-label, randomised controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet*. 2018;392:31–40.
102. Velissaris D, Karamouzos V, Ktenopoulos N, Pierrakos C, Karanikolas M. The use of sodium bicarbonate in the treatment of acidosis in sepsis: a literature update on a long term debate. *Crit Care Res Pract*. 2015;2015:605830.
103. McGuinness SP, Parke RL, Bellomo R, Van Haren FM, Bailey M. Sodium bicarbonate infusion to reduce cardiac surgery-associated acute kidney injury: a phase II multicenter double-blind randomized controlled trial. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41:1599–1607.
104. Caironi P, Tognoni G, Masson S, et al. Albumin replacement in patients with severe sepsis or septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1412–1421.
105. Lyons C, Callaghan M. Apnoeic oxygenation with high-flow nasal oxygen for laryngeal surgery: a case series. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72:1379–1387.
106. Slutsky AS, Ranieri VM. Ventilator-induced lung injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369:2126–2136.
107. Barrett NA, Camporota L. The evolving role and practical application of extracorporeal carbon dioxide removal in critical care. *Crit Care Resusc*. 2017;19(suppl 1):62–67.

49

Patient Blood Management: Transfusion Therapy

MATTHEW DUDLEY, RONALD D. MILLER, and JOHN H. TURNBULL

KEY POINTS

- Blood transfusion is safer now than at any other time in history. Advances in donor screening, improved testing, automated data systems, and changes in transfusion medicine practices account for these increases in safety.
- Although the overall condition of the patient is of prime importance, hemoglobin (Hb) values remain a primary component for transfusion decisions with the use of either a restrictive or liberal strategy. In general, a transfusion trigger of 6 to 8 g/dL Hb (restrictive strategy) can be tolerated by patients.
- Preoperative anemia is an independent, and potentially modifiable, risk factor for postoperative morbidity and mortality.
- The term *patient blood management* has become synonymous with appropriate transfusion strategy.
- The addition of plasma and sometimes platelets to packed red blood cells (PRBCs) is described by the term *transfusion ratios.* For example, 2 units of plasma with 1 unit of platelets with 1 unit of PRBCs would be 2:1:1.
- Infectivity of blood is no longer a major cause of transfusion-related morbidity and mortality. Transfusion-related acute lung injury is the leading cause of transfusion-related mortality.
- Fresh whole blood has gained renewed interest as a choice in patients with major blood loss and related coagulopathy (see also Chapter 50).
- Although storage lesions of red blood cells increase over time, there is no evidence that blood stored for short periods compared with moderately long periods of time contributes to worse clinical outcomes. However, as newer solutions extend the shelf-life of blood, this may need continued evaluation, particularly in high-risk groups.

Transfusion of human-derived blood products is one of the most common procedures in modern medicine, often proving life-saving. In a recent analysis of electronic medical records from hospitals in the United States, blood transfusion occurred for 12.5% of hospitalized inpatient encounters, with red blood cells (RBCs) being the most commonly transfused component, followed by platelets and plasma.[1] Transfusion is not without risk, and the anesthesiologist must weigh the risks and benefits of providing or withholding transfusion therapy for individual patients in specific clinical settings. This chapter focuses on the physiology and pathology of transfusion medicine with particular attention to the acquisition, processing, storage, indication for, and risk of blood therapy in the perioperative period.

Evolution and Recent History of Blood Transfusion Therapy

THE 1960S

Transfusion medicine has undergone enormous changes in the last 60 years, but the consensus of whether to use whole blood, its components, or both has vacillated every decade or so. In the 1960s, most blood given was in the form of whole blood, whereas fresh frozen plasma (FFP) was available for the treatment of coagulopathies.[2,3]

THE 1970S THROUGH THE 1980S

Transfusion therapy was characterized in this period by "giving the patient only the component of blood that was needed." Component transfusion therapy rather than whole blood transfusion was the standard of care. For example, if the patient was anemic, only packed red blood cells (PRBCs) would be transfused, or if thrombocytopenia existed, only platelet concentrates would be given. Caution regarding administration of blood transfusions increased during this time period in part because of concern regarding the infectivity of blood (e.g., hepatitis and human immunodeficiency virus [HIV]). Furthermore, individual clinical decisions regarding blood transfusions were and continue to be monitored by local hospital transfusion committees (as required by regulatory agencies of various countries including the United States). These committees have the responsibility of monitoring the individual and institutional transfusion practices by evaluating clinical appropriateness of transfusion triggers.[4]

1990S THROUGH THE 2000S

With improved screening techniques for HIV and other blood-borne pathogens during this decade, the incidence of blood transfusion–related infectious disease transmission decreased 10,000-fold. The focus of blood product safety now shifted to *noninfectious serious hazards of transfusion*.[5] These hazards include hemolytic transfusion reactions, transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI), and transfusion-associated circulatory overload (TACO), to name a few. With an increased awareness of the potential morbidity and mortality associated with blood product administration, research focused on the concept of liberal versus restrictive blood transfusion strategy. Attention now turned to balancing the threats posed by two independent (yet related) risk factors of patient outcome—anemia and transfusion.

Although the strategy of specific component therapy was still prominent, the concept of reconstituted "whole blood" was introduced during this decade. Led by trauma hospitals and the military, FFP and platelets were transfused along with PRBCs, resulting in a transfusion ratio that was similar to that of whole blood.[6,7] Because the concept of transfusing components that reconstitute whole blood rouses the prior practice of transfusing whole blood, that concept is being reexamined[8] again in the literature and may yet prove beneficial in patients with life-threatening bleeding.[9,10]

2010 TO THE PRESENT

The 2010s saw a shift away from simply correcting anemia and coagulopathy, to a more patient-centered, multipronged approach to transfusion medicine. As a result, the term *patient blood management (PBM)* has become synonymous with modern, evidence-based transfusion medicine.[11] The Society for the Advancement of Blood Management defines PBM as "the timely application of evidence-based medical and surgical concepts designed to maintain hemoglobin concentration, optimize hemostasis and minimize blood loss in an effort to improve patient outcome." [12] PBM recognizes transfusions are but a temporary solution to an often complex, multifactorial process that requires attention to the underlying cause of anemia.[13]

Integration of PBM into clinical pathways has reduced the reliance on allogenic blood product transfusion as the only means to avoid anemia and likely explains the continued decrease in transfusions noted in U.S. hospitals over the last decade.[14] In a recent retrospective analysis, implementation of a PBM system with a reduced transfusion threshold from 8 g/dL to 7 g/dL Hb in orthopedic surgical patients reduced the use of erythrocytes by 32% while improving clinical outcomes. Most notably, patients 65 years and older demonstrated the most improved clinical outcomes, including 30-day readmission rates.[15] Comprehensive PBM programs also can include evaluation of preoperative anemia, clinical decision support, educational efforts, improved surgical techniques, and blood conservation strategies.

PBM in many countries has been facilitated by computerized data systems[16] and supply guidelines.[17] A limitation of most of the PBM publications is that they describe mostly nonbleeding, anemic patients and the decision to initiate transfusion. Very little information addresses what guidelines should be used for repetitive transfusions. The anesthesia provider offers insight into these issues and can provide guidance as to how PBM fits into the perioperative clinical environment.

Blood Procurement

SOURCE OF DONORS

Significant global disparities exist regarding access to "safe" blood, or blood that is properly collected and tested. According to World Bank definitions, low- and middle-income countries collect 53% of all blood donations worldwide, yet represent 81% of the world's population. In addition, the prevalence of transfusion-transmissible infections in blood donations from low- and middle-income countries is significantly higher than those from high-income countries, yet low-income countries have less access to basic quality screening procedures.[18] Another issue, particularly in low-income countries, is incentivized donors. The World Health Organization's (WHO) decision-making body, the World Health Assembly, has issued resolutions and consensus statements that emphasize the need for all member states to develop national blood systems based on voluntary, unpaid donations as a means to ensure a safe, secure, and sufficient supply of blood products.[19] Some experts have suggested that offering economic incentives or rewards to donors should be seriously considered,[20] because limited empirical research exists to support the assumption that incentivized donations, including noncash incentives, either improve recruitment of donors or pose a risk to blood product safety.[21] However, the WHO strongly defends voluntary nonremunerated blood donation as a vehicle to a safer blood supply and increased donor participation.[22]

In the United States, the Food and Drug Administration's (FDA) Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research provides the regulatory oversight for blood banks and donation centers, with most voluntarily obtaining accreditation from the AABB (formerly, American Association of Blood Banks). In Europe, the European Commission sets standards for blood products and their components in the European Blood Directive (Directive 2002/98/EC). These regulatory and professional societies set standards with regard to the donation, collection, testing, processing, storage, and distribution of products.

In the United States, those over the age of 16 and who weigh at least 110 pounds are eligible for screening for potential blood donation. Vital signs are assessed, including temperature, heart rate, and blood pressure. Hb levels are measured, with minimum cutoffs of 13 g/dL for men and 12.5 g/dL for women. Blood is collected either as whole blood and separated by centrifugation or by apheresis, in which only specific components are collected while other components are returned to the donor. An outline of the separation scheme by which various blood components are derived is shown in Fig. 49.1. Apheresis is particularly helpful in donors with blood type AB, as they represent a rare blood type yet serve as the universal plasma donor. As recipients, patients with blood type AB rarely require AB specific blood, as they can be transfused with any type of red cell. Therefore, if plasma is collected from AB donors while

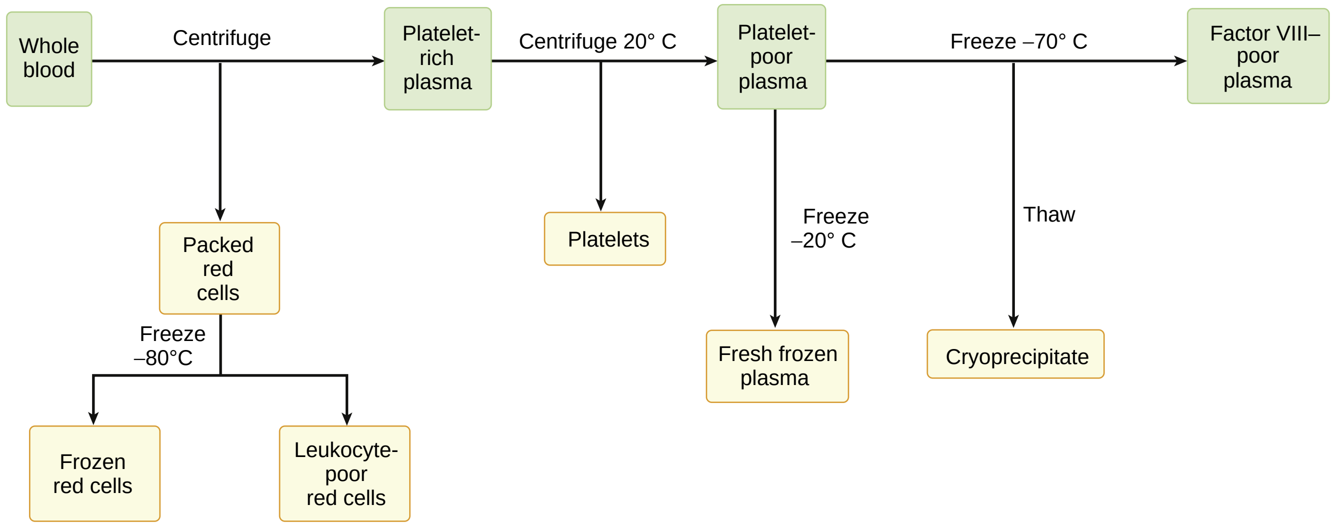


Fig. 49.1 Scheme for separation of whole blood for component therapy.

red cells are immediately returned, this may allow for more frequent plasma donation from this small but vitally important group of donors.

TRANSFUSION-TRANSMISSIBLE INFECTIONS

Donor screening attempts to reduce the risk of a transfusion-transmissible disease and to protect the donor from an adverse reaction due to donation. Deferment based on medical history includes those considered to be in high-risk categories for potential transmission of an infectious agent, including those with a significant travel history, history of injection drug use, recent tattoos, or men who have had sex with men (MSM) in the previous 12 months. The latter deferment category has been controversial in recent years, given the changing epidemiology of the HIV epidemic and improved screening methods. In this population, some advocate for reducing the time interval between potential exposure and donation to 3 months.[23]

The use of more sensitive screening tests in conjunction with changes in transfusion medicine practices have made infectious risks quite rare. The FDA requires blood products to be tested for hepatitis B and C, HIV (types 1 and 2), human T-lymphotropic virus (HTLV; types 1 and 2), and *treponema pallidum* (syphilis), West Nile virus, and Zika virus. Testing is recommended for *Trypanosoma cruzi* (Chagas disease) for first-time donors. Historically, the FDA has published tables on the risks for infectivity, Table 49.1 but because the rates are so infrequent, the last tables published were for data from 2011.

Several blood-safety changes made between the years of 1982 and 2008 have decreased the risk for disease transmission by allogenic blood so that the demand for autologous blood has declined as well. The West Nile virus story illustrates how rapidly our blood banks can respond. In 2002, West Nile virus caused the largest outbreak of arboviral encephalitis ever recorded in the United States (i.e., approximately 4200 patients). Twenty-three cases of transfusion-transmitted infections resulted in seven deaths. In 2003, testing became available that now makes that infection very rare (see Table 49.1). The FDA's response to the 2015 to 2016 Zika virus outbreak was similarly swift—the blood supply was immediately shifted from areas with low risk of infections to areas of known infection; authorization for screening tests was issued within months, and universal screening with a qualitative nucleic acid test (NAT) for the detection of Zika virus ribonucleic acid (RNA) was mandated.[24]

TABLE 49.1 Percentage Risk of Transfusion-Transmitted Infection With a Unit of Screened Blood in the United States

Infection	Risk	Window Period (Days)
Human immunodeficiency virus-1 and -2	1:1,476,000	5-6
Human T-lymphotropic virus (HTLV-II)	1:2,993,000	51
Cytomegalovirus (CMV)	Infrequent with leukocyte-reduced components	
Hepatitis C virus (HCV)	1:1,149,000	3-4
Hepatitis B virus (HBV)	1: 280,000	24
Hepatitis A virus (HAV00)	1:1,000,000	
Bacteria red blood cells	1:1,000 with septic reaction in 1:500,000	
Pheresis platelets (with early aerobic culture)		
Parasites: Babesia and malaria	<1:4,000,000	7-14
West Nile virus (WNV)	1/1,100,000	?
Acute hemolytic transfusion reactions	1:38,000-1:70,000	

Data from AABB: *AABB Technical Manual,* 17th ed. 2011, AABB; and Fiebig ER, Busch MP. Infectious risks of transfusions. In: Spiess BD, Spence RK, Shander A, eds. *Perioperative Transfusion Medicine.* Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006.

The changes in blood transfusion testing can be appreciated when comparing tests used in 1998 (Box 49.1) with those used in 2018 (Table 49.2. The use of nucleic acid technology has decreased the window of infectivity (i.e., time from being infected to a positive test result), which is a major reason for the decrease in infectivity with hepatitis, HIV, West Nile virus, and Zika virus.

BOX 49.1 **Infectious Disease Testing for Blood Transfusions**

1. Discontinue serum alanine aminotransferase testing
2. Hepatitis C antibody testing
3. Antibody to hepatitis B core antigen
4. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) type 1
5. HIV-2
6. HIV Ag (p24 antigen)
7. Human T-cell lymphotropic virus (HTLV) types 1 and 2
8. Serologic test for syphilis

Modified from National Institutes of Health, Consensus Development Panel on Infectious Disease Testing for Blood Transfusions. Infectious disease testing for blood transfusions. *JAMA.* 1995;274:1374–1379.

TABLE 49.2 Tests Used for Detecting Infectious Agents in All Units of Blood: 2018

Virus	Genetic Testing	Antibody To
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)	Nucleic acid technology	HIV-1, HIV-2
Hepatitis C virus (HCV)	Nucleic acid technology	HCV
Hepatitis B virus (HBV)	Nucleic acid technology	Anti-HBc, HBsAg
Human T-cell lymphotropic, virus (HTLV)		HTLV-1, HTLV-2
West Nile virus	Nucleic acid technology	
Zika virus	Nucleic acid technology	

Posttransfusion Hepatitis

When blood transfusions became a reality in the 1940s, viral hepatitis was recognized as a major complication. The concern is primarily with hepatitis B, C, and, rarely, D, which are parenterally transmitted viruses. Before 1985, the overall incidence of posttransfusion hepatitis ranged from a low of 3% to a high of 19%, depending on the institution and the location (e.g., donors from large cities have a more frequent incidence of the hepatitis virus). In most areas, the incidence of hepatitis has ranged from 3% to 10%. Ninety percent of posttransfusion hepatitis is caused by the hepatitis C virus. Fewer than a third of these patients develop jaundice.[25] To determine their ultimate fate, Tong and colleagues[25] monitored 131 patients with chronic posttransfusion hepatitis C for several years and found the following incidence of signs, symptoms, and conditions:

- Fatigue (67%)
- Hepatomegaly (67%)
- Chronic hepatitis (23%)
- Chronic active hepatitis (51%)
- Hepatocellular carcinoma (11%)

It was found that 20 patients had died of the following:

- Complications of cirrhosis (8 patients)
- Hepatocellular carcinoma (11 patients)
- Chronic active hepatitis-pneumonia (1 patient)

Even today, patients with hepatitis C and apparent recovery from the acute infection may go on to develop cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. Several antiviral therapies, such as Mavyret (glecaprevir-pibrentasvir), Harvoni (ledipasvir-sofosbuvir), Epclusa (sofosbuvir-velpatasvir), and Vosevi (sofosbuvir-velpatasvir-voxilaprevir), now exist that may stop progression and even cure infection from certain genotypes of hepatitis C. However, any person who has ever tested positive for hepatitis B or hepatitis C, at any age, is currently ineligible to donate blood.[26]

Cytomegalovirus

Asymptomatic chronic infection with cytomegalovirus (CMV), a double-stranded DNA virus belonging to the herpesviridae family, is common enough in healthy adults that some view CMV as normal flora. Infection with the CMV virus is limited to humans, requires contact with the body fluids of a previously infected individual, survives best within cells, and persists in its latent form in the monocytes of people with antibody evidence of previous exposure infection. Fortunately, the primary concern is recipients who are at risk because of pregnancy (multiple), immaturity, or immunosuppression. CMV seroconversion usually occurs in subsets of patients receiving multiple transfusions. CMV causes a heterophil antibody-negative response that closely resembles infectious mononucleosis in many respects. An infectious mononucleosis–like syndrome that can occur 1 to 2 months after open-heart surgery is known as the *postperfusion syndrome* or *posttransfusion mononucleosis*.[27] The evidence for transmission of CMV is most convincing when the recipient changes from a seronegative state before transfusion to a seropositive state accompanied by the mononucleosis-like illness several weeks after transfusion.

Transfusion-transmitted CMV can cause significant clinical problems in certain patient populations, such as premature neonates, allograft recipients, and patients post splenectomy.[28] To prevent infection in high-risk populations, use of leukocyte-reduced blood, use of frozen deglycerolized RBCs, and screening for CMV antibody negative donors have been recommended (see the section on leukoreduction and irradiation of blood transfusions). Wilhelm and associates[29] concluded that it is not necessary to provide blood products from CMV-seronegative donors for most patients who receive blood transfusions, because the risk for seroconversion is approximately 0.14% overall, or 0.38% per unit of seropositive donor blood. They do recommend continuing to use CMV-seronegative blood to prevent CMV infection in preterm and newborn infants. Plasma components, such as FFP and cryoprecipitate, and leukoreduced components from seropositive donors are considered to be CMV safe.

Zika Virus

More recently, transfusion-transmissible Zika virus infection has been of concern.[30] Transmitted by mosquitos, Zika virus infection is associated with Guillain-Barre syndrome[31] and microcephaly in newborns whose mothers were infected during pregnancy.[32] Although these manifestations of Zika virus infection are striking, 80% of infected persons are asymptomatic, and thus pose a potential threat to the blood supply. As a result, the FDA issued guidance that all donations collected in the United States be tested for Zika virus using NAT.[33]

TABLE 49.3 Infectious Diseases Theoretically Transmissible by Blood Transfusion for Which No Test Is Available: 2004

Disease	Risk
Malaria	<1 million in the United States
Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)	Unknown
Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease	Three potential cases in the United Kingdom

Other Transfusion-Associated Infectious Diseases

Although many other infectious diseases can theoretically be transmitted by blood transfusion, only a few are of real concern. They include *Yersinia enterocolitica* infection, syphilis, malaria, Chagas disease, variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, parvovirus B19, and severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS; Table 49.3).

During the late 1980s, Tripple and colleagues[34] described seven cases of fatal transfusion-associated *Y. enterocolitica* sepsis. These investigators also reviewed the literature and found 26 cases of gram-negative bacterial sepsis with whole blood or PRBCs. *Y. enterocolitica* is a bacterium that can cause mostly mild gastrointestinal problems. However, in severe cases, sepsis and death can occur. Unfortunately, storage of blood at 4°C in phosphate buffer enhances its growth.

Fortunately, posttransfusion syphilis is unlikely because the infective agent cannot survive during storage at 1°C to 6°C. Platelet concentrates are the blood component most likely to be implicated because they commonly are stored at room temperature.

Posttransfusion malaria has never been a significant cause of blood recipient morbidity. Nevertheless, malaria can occur, especially if blood donors at risk for harboring parasites are not excluded. Consequently, blood banks thoroughly question donors for history of travel or migration from areas where malaria is endemic.

Even though there are no cases of variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease from blood transfusions, the virus can be transmitted by blood in animal models and stringent donor policies based on travel and residence in England or other countries in Europe are in place.

Like malaria, there are other infectious agents that can transmit disease through blood transfusions, but there are no available blood testing methods for these cases (see Table 49.3). Without a specific diagnostic test, screening with restrictive donor criteria is used. For example, in 2003 in the United States, donors with suspected SARS or who traveled to certain countries in Southeast Asia would not be accepted.

BIOCHEMICAL CHANGES IN STORED BLOOD

Units of blood collected from donors are usually separated into components (e.g., RBCs, plasma, cryoprecipitate, and platelets; see Fig. 49.1). Citrate phosphate dextrose adenine-1 (CPDA-1) is an anticoagulant preservative that is used for blood stored at 1°C to 6°C. Citrate prevents clotting by binding Ca^{2+}. Phosphate serves as a buffer, and dextrose is a red cell energy source, allowing the RBCs to continue glycolysis and maintain sufficient concentrations of high-energy nucleotides (adenosine triphosphate [ATP]) to ensure continued metabolism and subsequent viability during storage. The addition of adenine prolongs storage time by increasing the survival of RBCs, allowing them to resynthesize the ATP needed to fuel metabolic reactions. This extends the storage time from 21 to 35 days.[35] Without adenine, RBCs gradually lose their ATP and their ability to survive after transfusion. Finally, storage at 1°C to 6°C assists preservation by reducing the rate of glycolysis approximately 40 times the rate at body temperature.

The shelf life of PRBCs can be extended to 42 days when AS-1 (Adsol), AS-3 (Nutricel), or AS-5 (Optisol) is used.[36,37] Adsol contains adenine, glucose, mannitol, and sodium chloride (NaCl). Nutricel contains glucose, adenine, citrate, phosphate, and NaCl. Optisol contains only dextrose, adenine, NaCl, and mannitol. On a national level, 85% of RBCs are collected in AS-1. In Europe, a solution similar to AS-1 containing saline, adenine, glucose, and mannitol is used. As of 2015, the FDA approved a new additive solution, AS-7, which increases storage time to at least 56 days; however, the solution is not yet commercially available in the United States.[38]

The hematocrit (Hct) of the transfused product depends on the storage method. When CPDA is the anticoagulant used, the Hct is greater than 65%, because most of the plasma is removed, and the resulting volume is approximately 250 mL. When AS-1 is used, most of the plasma is also removed, but 100 mL of storage solution is added, resulting in an Hct of 55% to 60% and volume of 310 mL.[39] The duration of storage is set by U.S. federal regulation and is based on the requirement that at least 70% of the transfused RBCs remain in circulation for 24 hours after infusion.

During storage of whole blood and PRBCs, a series of biochemical reactions occur that alter the biochemical makeup of blood and account for some of the complications. Collectively, these are known as *red cell storage lesions* and may be responsible for the organ injury associated with red cell transfusion. During storage, RBCs metabolize glucose to lactate; hydrogen ions accumulate, and plasma pH decreases, while increases in oxidative damage to lipids and proteins are noted. The storage temperature of 1°C to 6°C inhibits the sodium-potassium pump, resulting in a loss of potassium ion (K^+) from the cells into the plasma and a gain of intracellular sodium.[40] Although K^+ concentrations appear elevated in 35-day stored RBC concentrates, the total plasma volume in the concentrates is only 70 mL, so total K^+ is not markedly elevated. Over time, there are progressive decreases in RBC concentrations of ATP, nitric oxide (NO), and 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG).

The osmotic fragility of RBCs increases during storage, and some cells undergo lysis, resulting in increased plasma Hb levels. In addition, deformability of RBCs appears impaired in patients who receive allogenic blood cell transfusion, potentially resulting in micro-occlusive events.[41] Frank and associates[42] studied the blood of patients undergoing posterior spinal fusion surgery and found that increased duration of blood storage was associated with decreased RBC deformability, which was not "readily" reversible after transfusion. They speculated that these deformed cells may be defective in delivering oxygen (O_2) to

TABLE 49.4 Properties of Whole Blood and Packed Red Cell Concentrates Stored in CPDA-1

	DAYS OF STORAGE		
Variable	**0**	**35 (Whole Blood)**	**35 (Packed Cells)**
pH	7.55	6.73	6.71
Plasma hemoglobin (mg/dL)	0.50	46.00	246.00
Plasma potassium (mEq/L)	4.20	17.20	76.00
Plasma sodium (mEq/L)	169.00	153.00	122.00
Blood dextrose (mg/dL)	440.00	282.00	84.00
2,3-Diphosphoglycerate (μM/mL)	13.20	1.00	1.00
Percent survival*	—	79.00	71.00

*Percent recovery of O_R-tagged red blood cells at 24 h.
CPDA-1, Citrate phosphate dextrose adenine-1.

the cells and concluded that both the "age of blood storage" and "amount" of blood given should be considered when giving blood (Table 49.4).

CHANGES IN OXYGEN TRANSPORT

RBCs are transfused primarily to increase transport of O_2 to tissues. Theoretically, an increase in the circulating red cell mass will produce an increase in O_2 uptake in the lungs and a corresponding increase in O_2 delivery to tissues, but RBC function may be impaired during preservation, making it difficult for them to release O_2 to the tissues immediately after transfusion.

The O_2 dissociation curve is determined by plotting the partial pressure of O_2 (PO_2) in blood against the percentage of Hb saturated with O_2 (Fig. 49.2). As Hb becomes more saturated, the affinity of Hb for O_2 also increases. This is reflected in the sigmoid shape of the curve, which indicates that a decrease in the arterial partial pressure of oxygen (PaO_2) makes considerably more O_2 available to the tissues. Shifts in the O_2 dissociation curve are quantitated by the P_{50}, which is the partial pressure of O_2 at which Hb is half saturated with O_2 at 37°C and pH 7.4. A low P_{50} indicates a left shift in the O_2-dissociation curve and an increased affinity of Hb for O_2. The left shift of the curve indicates that a lower than normal O_2 tension saturates Hb in the lung, but the subsequent release of O_2 to the tissues is more difficult, as it occurs at a lower than normal capillary O_2 tension compared with an unshifted curve. In other words, the increased affinity of Hb for O_2 makes it more difficult for Hb to release O_2 to hypoxic tissues. This leftward shift is likely a result of decreased levels of 2,3-DPG in stored RBCs, which can remain low for up to 3 days posttransfusion.[43]

Many of the advances in blood processing and storage are centered on the material of the collections and storage containers.[44] Innovative methods of storing blood are being developed. For example, storing blood in an electrostatic field of 500 to 3000 V decreases hemolysis and attenuates the decrease in pH associated with prolonged storage.[45] Current blood collection and storage systems are made of disposable plastic; these materials must have properties compatible with collection, processing, storage, and administration. Polyvinylchloride (PVC) with use of different plasticizers is commonly used because it is nontoxic, has flexibility, mechanical strength, water impermeability, resistance to temperature extremes for sterilization and freezing, compatibility with blood components, and selective permeability for cellular gas exchange.

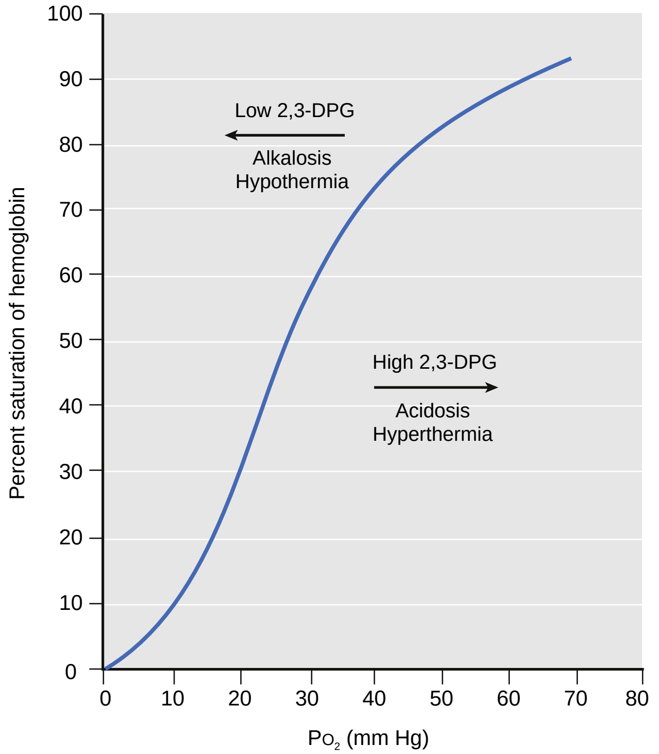


Fig. 49.2 Factors that shift the oxygen dissociation curve. *2,3-DPG,* 2,3-Diphosphoglycerate. (From Miller RD. The oxygen dissociation curve and multiple transfusions of ACD blood. In: Howland WS, Schweizer O, eds. *Management of Patients for Radical Cancer Surgery: Clinical Anesthesia Series.* Vol. 9. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 1972:43.)

Recent animal data suggest that red cells in stored blood can be rejuvenated with solutions of inosine prior to administration, reversing storage lesions and mitigating the potential for organ damage. This could be a promising technique to restore ATP and 2,3-DPG levels, while reducing a recipient's immune response and transfusion-associated organ injury.[46] However, small clinical trials in humans demonstrating clinical benefit are lacking.[47] Larger trials are ongoing.

CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS: DURATION OF BLOOD STORAGE

The fact that blood can be stored for 42 days is a mixed blessing. The obvious advantage is the increased availability of blood, but the clinical evidence regarding safety has not been consistent, reflecting the difficulty of conducting a systematic study of patients in varied clinical settings. For decades, many clinicians have tried to establish a firm relationship between the 2,3-DPG levels associated with stored blood and patient outcome. In 1993, Marik and Sibbald[48] found that the administration of blood that had been stored for more than 15 days decreased intramucosal pH, suggesting that splanchnic ischemia had occurred. In addition, an increased incidence of postoperative pneumonia in cardiac patients has been associated with the use of older blood.[49] Yet prolonged storage of blood was not associated with increased morbidity after cardiac surgery.[50] Purdy and colleagues[51] found that patients who received 17-day-old blood (range, 5-35 days) versus 25-day-old blood (range, 9-36 days) had higher survival rates. Koch and colleagues[52] concluded that giving erythrocytes (PRBCs) older than 14 days was associated with an increased risk for postoperative complications, along with reduced short-term and long-term survival in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass surgery. This article also had an accompanying editorial that concluded, "to the extent possible, newer blood might be used in clinical situations that seem to call for it."[53] In addition, a meta-analysis concluded that older stored blood is associated with an increased risk for death.[54]

However, there is equal data arguing the contrary, and other researchers have not arrived at a clear conclusion and recommended more studies. Weiskopf and associates[55] performed studies in healthy volunteers who were evaluated by a standard computerized neuropsychologic test 2 days and 1 week after acute isovolumic anemia was induced. When correcting the anemia, they concluded that erythrocytes stored for 3 weeks are as efficacious as those stored for 3.5 hours. Spahn[4] wrote an accompanying editorial agreeing with Weiskopf and associates[55] and, furthermore, postulated that 2,3-DPG levels may not be the key factor in determining the delivery of O_2 (i.e., 2,3-DPG levels are reduced in older blood, but the blood still delivers O_2). Cata and associates[56] also concluded that no change in outcome occurred in patients undergoing radical prostatectomy and receiving older blood. Saager and colleagues[57] also found no relationship between duration of blood storage and mortality in nearly 7000 patients undergoing noncardiac surgery.

Since the publication of the eighth edition of this text, several randomized control trials evaluating the influence of the duration of blood storage have been published. In 2016, Heddle and colleagues[58] published results from the INFOMR trial, a large, pragmatic, randomized controlled trial enrolling adult hospitalized patients in six centers from four countries. Patients were randomized to receive either blood that had been stored for the shortest duration (mean duration of storage 13 days) versus blood stored for the longest duration (mean duration of storage 23 days). Only patients with A and O blood types were included as the less common blood types could not achieve an appropriate difference in mean duration of storage. More than 20,000 patients were included in the primary analysis. No significant differences in mortality were noted between the two groups. In prespecified high-risk categories, including patients undergoing cardiovascular surgery, patients admitted to the intensive care unit (ICU), and those with cancer, the results remained the same.

Similarly, the results of the recent RECESS trial published in 2015[59] revealed similar mortality rates among those transfused with blood stored less than 10 days (median storage time 7 days) compared with those transfused with blood stored for more than 21 days (median storage time 28 days). Changes in preoperative to 7 days postoperative Multiple Organ Dysfunction Score (MODS) were similar between the two groups, as well. Finally, two randomized controlled trials in critically ill adults evaluating the age of transfused blood on mortality and other outcomes, such as new bloodstream infections, duration of mechanical ventilation, and the use of renal replacement therapy, failed to demonstrate differences between groups transfused with fresher blood compared with those transfused with older blood.[60,61]

These recent randomized controlled trials demonstrate the safety and noninferiority of "older" versus "younger" blood, but the complete answer may still need further data. First, the measures of outcome may be insufficiently sensitive to detect important and meaningful clinical outcomes. Many studies use mortality as their primary outcome measure. Although this is obviously a critical benchmark, it may not be sensitive enough to detect clinical differences regarding the safe or optimal length of time for the storage of blood. Important adverse clinical outcomes could occur without a change in mortality per se (e.g., duration of hospitalization, cardiovascular events, quality of life, neurocognitive decline). Second, these studies compare moderately young with moderately old blood. Ethical and logistical issues preclude a trial comparing "very" young and "very" old blood or even comparing moderately aged blood to very old blood (e.g., stored for 35-42 days).[62-64] Because the quality of blood decreases with length of storage, increased morbidity with exposure to more aged red cells is physiologically plausible, but the debate regarding the effectiveness of a blood transfusion and its duration of storage continues. More prospective studies are likely required.

Blood Component Therapy: Indications for Transfusion

A major advance in the field of blood banking has been the development of blood component therapy. The basic philosophy is that patients are best treated by administration of the specific fraction of blood that they lack. This concept has presented problems to the surgical team, who often desire the physiologic effects of whole blood.

ALLOGENEIC (HOMOLOGOUS) BLOOD

PRBCs contain the same amount of Hb as whole blood, but much of the plasma has been removed. The Hct value of PRBCs is approximately 60% (Table 49.5). Other than severe hemorrhage, most indications for RBCs can be effectively treated with PRBCs, conserving the plasma and the components for other patients (see Fig. 49.1). Many blood banks have conscientiously followed this principle, and whole blood is not available or only available in trauma centers or by special arrangement.

The administration of PRBCs is facilitated by utilizing crystalloid or colloid as a carrier; however, not all crystalloids are suitable. Solutions containing Ca^{2+} may precipitate clotting. Lactated Ringer solution is not recommended for use as a diluent or carrier for PRBCs because of the Ca^{2+} (Table 49.6), although several experimental studies found lactated Ringer solution and normal saline to be equally acceptable.[65,66] A more important factor may be whether the diluent is hypotonic with respect to plasma. In hypotonic solutions, the RBCs will swell and eventually lyse.

TABLE 49.5 Metabolic Characteristics of Packed Red Blood Cells

Value	Packed Red Blood Cells
Hematocrit (%)	57
pH	6.79
pCO_2 (mm Hg)	79
Bicarbonate (mmol/L)	11
Plasma sodium (mmol/L)	126
Plasma potassium (mmol/L)	20.5
Glucose (mmol/L)	24
Lactic acid (mmol/L)	9.4

From Sumplemann R, Schürholz T, Thorns E, et al. Acid-base, electrolyte and metabolite concentration in packed red blood cells for major transfusion in infants. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11:169–173.

TABLE 49.6 Compatibility of Blood With Intravenous Solutions

	HEMOLYSIS AT 30 MIN	
Blood to Intravenous Solution (1:1 Ratio)	**Room Temperature**	**37°C**
5% Dextrose in water	1+	4+
Plasmanate*	1+	3+
5% Dextrose in 0.2% saline	0	3+
5% Dextrose in 0.45% saline	0	0
5% Dextrose in 0.9% saline	0	0
0.9% Saline	0	0
Normosol-R, pH 7.4†	0	0
Lactated Ringer solution	0 (clotted)	0 (clotted)

*Cutter Laboratories, Berkeley, CA.
†Abbott Laboratories, Chicago, IL.

Solutions that cause hemolysis are listed in Table 49.6. Recommended solutions compatible with packed erythrocytes are 5% dextrose in 0.45% saline, 5% dextrose in 0.9% saline, 0.9% saline, and Normosol-R with a pH of 7.4.

RBC transfusions are given to increase O_2-carrying capacity. Increasing intravascular volume in the absence of significant anemia is not an indication for blood transfusion because volume can be augmented with administration of intravascular fluids that are not derived from human blood (e.g., crystalloids). As such, a sole Hb value should not be the only basis for a transfusion decision. It should be the overall status of the patient that prompts transfusion therapy (e.g., hemodynamics, organ perfusion and oxygen delivery, and anticipated surgical needs).[67] Even so, the Hb value has become the basis for many transfusion strategies. It is the prime criterion for defining restrictive versus liberal transfusion strategies.

When a patient is hemorrhaging, the goals should be to restore and maintain intravascular volume, cardiac output, and organ perfusion to normal levels. By using crystalloids, colloids, or both to treat hypovolemia, normovolemic dilutional anemia may be created. Increasing cardiac output enhances O_2 delivery to the tissues only to a limited extent. In fact, during normovolemic anemia, Mathru and colleagues[68] found inadequate splanchnic and preportal O_2 delivery and consumption when the Hb level decreased to 5.9 g/dL. Although the current PBM emphasis is on fewer or even avoidance of blood transfusions, clearly an Hb value exists below which a blood transfusion should be given.

The basis for using the Hb or Hct value as the initial consideration for defining transfusion requirements followed a 1988 National Institutes of Health (NIH) Consensus Conference that concluded that otherwise healthy patients with Hb value more than 10 g/dL rarely require perioperative blood transfusions, whereas patients with acute anemia with a Hb value of less than 7 g/dL frequently require blood transfusions.[69] They also recognized that patients with chronic anemia (as in renal failure) might tolerate an Hb concentration of less than 6 to 7 g/dL. Amazingly, despite many studies, publications, and debates, the fundamental guidelines have not changed substantially in the 30 plus years since this conference.

An excellent editorial by LeManach and Syed[70] outlines key questions that should be considered regarding transfusion triggers, including what we need to learn and the role of databases. Of prime importance is identifying the variables that predict the need for erythrocyte transfusion and the approach that can most accurately estimate the impact of transfusions. Many studies use death rate as their main indicator. Although clearly an important indicator, there are additional obvious factors in between the extremes of life and death, including vital signs, key laboratory values, and other indicators used in critical care units. Several groups working with patients in ICUs have attempted to define the point at which blood transfusions should be given by measures of tissue oxygenation and hemodynamics (e.g., increase in O_2 consumption in response to added O_2 content).[71-73] The O_2 extraction ratio has been recommended as an indicator for transfusions;[74] however, this technique requires invasive monitoring, and the results were not dramatic between groups who were or were not transfused. No specific measure can consistently predict when a patient will benefit from a blood transfusion. The ultimate determination of the Hb or Hct value at which blood should be given is a clinical judgment based on many factors, such as cardiovascular status, age, anticipated additional blood loss, arterial oxygenation, mixed venous O_2 tension, cardiac output, and intravascular blood volume (Table 49.7).

ADDITIONAL BLOOD TRANSFUSIONS

To determine whether subsequent units of blood are indicated after the initial administration, the overall condition of the patient and the clinical situation need to be reassessed. The following key components of information to consider include:

1. Measurement and trend of vital signs
2. Measurement of blood loss and assessment of anticipated blood loss
3. Quantitation of intravenous fluids given
4. Determination of Hb concentration
5. Surgical concerns.

TABLE 49.7 American College of Surgeons Classes of Acute Hemorrhage

Factors	Class I	Class II	Class III	Class IV
Blood loss (mL)	750	750-1500	1500-2000	2000 or more
Blood loss (% blood volume)	15	15-30	30-40	40 or more
Pulse (beats/min)	100	100	120	140 or higher
Blood pressure	Normal	Normal	Decreased	Decreased
Pulse pressure (mm Hg)	Normal or increased	Decreased	Decreased	Decreased
Capillary refill test	Normal	Positive	Positive	Positive
Respirations per minute	14-20	20-30	30-40	35
Urine output (mL/h)	30	20-30	5-10	Negligible
Central nervous system: mental status	Slightly anxious	Mildly anxious	Anxious, confused	Confused, lethargic
Fluid replacement (3-1 rule)	Crystalloid	Crystalloid	Crystalloid + blood	Crystalloid + blood

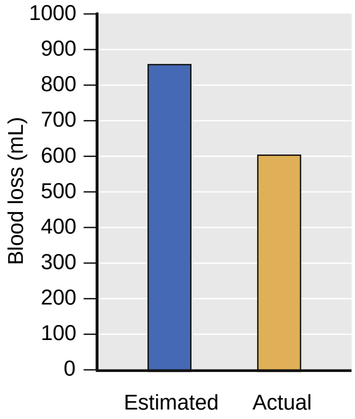


Fig. 49.3 Discrepancy between estimated and actual blood loss. (From Stovener J. Anesthesiologists vastly overstate bleeding. *Anesthesiol News*, May 14, 2012.)

Measurement of Blood Loss

Measuring blood loss is obviously important when assessing the need for both the initial and subsequent blood transfusions (see Table 49.7). A standard approach includes a combination of visualization and gravimetric measurements based on weight differences between dry and blood-soaked gauze pads. A study in patients undergoing spine surgery found that anesthesiologists tended to overestimate blood loss by as much as 40% (Fig. 49.3). On the other hand, optical scanners tended to underestimate blood loss compared with the standard gravimetric calculations.[75] The accuracy of measurements is not uniformly consistent and no "gold standard" for blood loss quantification exists.

Predicting surgical blood loss is also an important component to intraoperative transfusion medicine. As part of the WHO preoperative guidelines to improve the safety of patients undergoing surgery, the anesthesiologist must consider the possibility of a large-volume blood loss prior to the induction of anesthesia.[76] In a prospective trial evaluating both surgeons' and anesthesiologists' ability to predict the estimated blood loss prior to incision, members of both these medical professions underestimated the blood loss by greater than 500 mL in 10% of intermediate or major surgeries, which potentially placed those patients at risk for being without adequate intravenous access or appropriate resuscitative volume.[77]

Determination of Hemoglobin Concentration

While transfusion decisions depend on many clinical factors, the blood Hb value is an important measurement that is fraught with confounding variables. With regard to measurement of blood loss, clinical investigators at Duke University emphasized that "interpretation of intermittent measurements of Hb levels is often complicated by fluid shifts, intravenous volume infusions, and actual transfusions,"[78] yet these values are critical to transfusion decisions.

Continuous blood Hb monitoring has become available on a noninvasive basis using spectrophotometric finger technology (Masimo SpHb, Masimo, Irvine, CA). Numerous studies have been performed in a variety of clinical situations with emphasis on assessment of blood loss and/or the need for transfusions. Although measurements are relatively accurate (i.e., SpHb correlate within 1.0-1.5 g/dL with laboratory Hb measurements), the appearance of inaccurate values is not uncommon.[79,80] SpHb appears to perform worse in patients with moderately to severely low Hb levels or in patients being actively resuscitated.[81,82]

Accuracy also depends on finger blood flow and temperature. The monitor displays a value for perfusion index (PI), which can be helpful in assessing the accuracy of the SpHb value. The accuracy of SpHb can be improved with a PI greater than 4% to 5%. A bupivacaine digital nerve block decreases the number of inaccurate values and increases the number of accurate values for several hours.[83,84] Although not specifically studied, warming the finger should also increase the PI and, therefore, the accuracy of SpHb.

SpHb monitoring can still be valuable even though its accuracy is not consistent. Observation of the trend is often recommended to help clinicians detect a changing Hb level when it is suspected to be stable. For example, Giraud and colleagues[85] concluded that SpHb is less invasive and less accurate than other measurements but provides valuable data on a continuous basis. They then concluded that none of the results would have led to transfusion errors as identified by the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Task Force on Perioperative Blood Transfusion and Adjuvant Therapies' practice guidelines. If the SpHb value suddenly changes 1 or 2 g/dL, the reasons for this change should be explored, even if the absolute value is satisfactory. For example, if the SpHb reading is 11 g/dL, but rapidly decreases to 9.5 g/dL, the clinical situation needs to be reassessed. Although an attractive concept and possibly accurate, more definitive studies are necessary.[86] SpHb could become very valuable with transfusion decision making in the future.[87]

Invasive point-of-care testing, such as HemoCue (HCue; Hemocue America, Brea, CA), provides a quick and efficient method to accurately determine Hb value. This point-of-care test allows for the determination of Hb levels at the bedside in less than 5 minutes. If the person performing the test is properly trained, HCue measurements are extremely accurate.[80,85] Several other point-of-care Hb tests exist, including RapidLab (Siemens, Malvern, PA) and I-Stat (Abbot Inc, Princeton, NJ). Comparative testing of these three modalities demonstrates favorable intertest reliability.[88]

Preoperative Anemia

Preoperative anemia (i.e., low Hb value in women <12 g/dL; in men <13 g/dL) is a common comorbidity among patients undergoing major surgery with an incidence up to 40% and is an independent risk factor for increased perioperative mortality,[89] and postoperative acute kidney injury (AKI).[90] In patients with a moderate to high risk of significant blood loss (defined as >500 mL), the Hb value ideally should be obtained 3 to 8 weeks prior to surgery.[91] This provides sufficient time for the patient to undergo iron therapy or to correct nutritional deficiencies. Erythropoiesis-stimulating agents, especially intravenously administrated iron therapy, may be beneficial for treatment of preoperative anemia. The concept of treating anemia preoperatively as a means to decrease the need for intraoperative transfusions is widely accepted. For example, intravascular iron therapy in patients undergoing abdominal surgery significantly increased preoperative Hb levels, reduced the need for transfusion, and shortened hospital length of stay.[92] PREVENTT, a large phase III randomized controlled trial investigating preoperative intravenous iron therapy, is ongoing to further characterize this intervention. Oral therapy, if given with sufficient time preoperatively and tolerated by the patient, may be just as effective at correcting the anemia as intravenous therapy.[93]

Erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs), such as darbepoetin alfa, act by stimulating red cell progenitor cells in the bone marrow and inducing erythropoiesis. They are frequently prescribed for patients with anemia who have end-stage renal disease or who are undergoing chemotherapy treatment to increase their Hb levels and reduce the incidence of transfusion. The evidence has been mixed on the utility and safety of ESAs as a means to increase Hb levels and decrease transfusions in various perioperative patient populations. This may be a result of the heterogeneity of study protocols. A more recent randomized controlled trial in patients undergoing cardiac surgery found a decreased incidence of transfusion in patients with preoperative anemia who were treated with a single dose of erythropoietin administered 2 days prior to surgery.[94] Although no difference in adverse events was noted, the study was underpowered, leaving the question of safety due to the association of ESAs with hypertension and thrombotic events unanswered.[95]

If limited preoperative time is available, Karkouti and associates[96] suggested that prophylactic erythrocyte transfusion should be used to reduce perioperative anemia. This suggestion met with controversy, and many editorials and letters to the editor were written supporting[97] and condemning[98] such an approach. Recent retrospective data suggest that preoperative transfusion, even in severely anemic patients, offers no benefit and may be an independent predictor of complications in some patients.[99]

Liberal Versus Restrictive Transfusion Strategy

The terminology of liberal versus restrictive has become completely indoctrinated into the transfusion therapy vocabulary. Several medical and surgical organizations have provided documents regarding their own definition of liberal and restrictive approaches. Some of these organizations include the American Association of Blood Banks,[100] International Conference on Transfusion Outcomes Group,[6] and Surgical Hip Fracture Repair (FOCUS).[101] In fact, many of these studies were supported by the NIH, which is an indication of how important this topic is for patient care.

Liberal versus restrictive transfusion strategy is based on the Hb value when a transfusion decision is made. A restrictive policy is the administration of blood transfusion when the Hb value is 7 to 8 g/dL or less. In contrast, a liberal policy is the administration of blood transfusion when the Hb value is 9 to 10 g/dL or greater. Many studies have been performed in multiple clinical situations, with varying patient conditions and acuity. The most recent randomized controlled studies continue to show no benefit to a liberal strategy compared with a restrictive strategy. One conclusion is that if no clinical advantages are associated with the liberal transfusion policy, perhaps the restrictive approach should be used. Certainly, fewer transfusion reactions would be expected with the restrictive approach.[101]

How liberal should the transfusion trigger be in critically ill patients? Some critical care physicians have suggested that administration of blood transfusions is related to the incidence of ventilator-assisted pneumonia[102] and nosocomial infections.[103] Although this possibility cannot be excluded, these are complicated outcomes with many confounding variables. Despite the difficulty with identifying a specific transfusion trigger, Ely and Bernard[104] have generally confirmed the conclusions discussed earlier: better outcomes have not consistently occurred with liberal transfusion triggers (i.e., 9.0 to 10.0 g/dL).[105,106] Subsequent editorials have leaned toward a lower transfusion trigger even for critically ill patients.[107,108]

Recent data from prospective, randomized controlled trials in high-risk cardiac surgery patients and critically ill patients with septic shock continue to show the noninferiority of restrictive transfusion thresholds.[109,110] In addition, a meta-analysis of randomized trials of liberal versus restrictive transfusion approaches concluded, “restrictive strategies may decrease the incidence of healthcare-associated infections.”[111]

Perhaps a one-value, one-size-fits-all approach to a liberal versus restrictive transfusion strategy is too simplistic of an approach for transfusion decision making. In an editorial, Beattie and Wijeysundera[67] advocated for a more context-specific approach to appropriate transfusion triggers. That is, the transfusion trigger for an otherwise healthy young adult patient should be different than that for an elderly patient with significant cardiovascular comorbidities. The American College of Surgeons attempted to categorize patient characteristics and blood loss as a basis for transfusion decisions (see Table 49.7). Small aggregate data support this theory of customized transfusion thresholds, but the results have yet to be proven in a prospective, randomized trial.[112] Hb values are important, but the overall condition of the patient may be of prime importance.

In addition to a dichotomized one-size-fits-all approach, the liberal versus restrictive strategy associated with PBM has some additional limitations. This strategy primarily addresses the indications for administering an initial unit of blood.[113] Most of this strategy is directed toward anemia in stable patients who are not actively bleeding. It does not describe what the indications for administration of subsequent units of blood should be. The need for repetitive transfusions in a bleeding patient is not addressed in the liberal versus restrictive discussion. Yet it is a very important topic for anesthesia providers. Patients with active bleeding, especially those with cardiovascular disease, should probably be subjected to a more liberal transfusion strategy.[114]

General Conclusions

The emphasis on Hb levels for transfusion decisions needs some caution. There can be variability from one patient to another regarding the need for increased O_2-carrying capacity via blood transfusions. Also, an individual patient's Hb level may vary markedly in the perioperative period independent of and in addition to transfusions of RBCs. During acute bleeding, Hb values are only slightly decreased initially because the intravascular volume has not been repleted and the Hb level has not been diluted.[114] The development of more sensitive indicators of tissue oxygenation (e.g., intramucosal pH) may provide indicators for transfusion in the future. As concluded by Weiskopf,[115] "we merely await advances in technology that will enable us to measure directly the value of concern and thereby free us from arguments over which surrogate (e.g., hemoglobin) to measure and what value indicates the need for augmented oxygen delivery." Although Weiskopf wrote this opinion in 1998, surrogate indicators are still used for transfusion decisions today.

In the presence of incomplete data, the ASA's 2015 updated practice guidelines offer these recommendations:[116]

1. Transfusion is rarely indicated when the Hb concentration is more than 10 g/dL and is almost always indicated when it is less than 6 g/dL, especially when the anemia is acute.
2. A restrictive transfusion strategy (Hb <8 g/dL) should be employed to reduce the patient's transfusion requirements and decrease the potential harmful effects of transfusions.
3. Multimodal protocols and algorithms should be employed to reduce intraoperative blood loss and transfusion requirements. These pathways include point-of-care testing to direct care.
4. The use of a single Hb trigger for all patients and other approaches that fail to consider all important physiologic and surgical factors affecting oxygenation is not recommended.
5. When appropriate, intraoperative and postoperative blood recovery, acute normovolemic hemodilution (ANH), and measures to decrease blood loss (i.e., deliberate hypotension and pharmacologic drugs) may be beneficial.

PLATELET CONCENTRATES

Platelet concentrates are obtained either as pooled concentrates from 4 to 6 whole-blood donations or as apheresis concentrates obtained from one donor.[117] If platelets are stored at room temperature, they can be used up to 7 days after collection with constant and gentle agitation. Bacterial contamination, mainly from platelet concentrates, is the third leading cause of transfusion-related deaths (Table 49.8), although the incident rate has steadily declined over the last 15 years.[118] In a report of 10 contaminated platelet transfusions between 1982 and 1985, half were platelets stored for 5 days or more. A prospective analysis from 1987 to 1990 resulted in seven cases of sepsis in patients receiving platelets for thrombocytopenia secondary to bone marrow failure.[119] Because the use of multidonor platelet products stored for 5 days results in an incidence of sepsis five times higher than use of those stored for 4 days, shorter storage times are being emphasized. In studies that actively survey transfused platelets,[120] a rate of bacterial contamination has been identified of approximately 1 per 2500 units (Table 49.9). Twenty-five percent of the patients exposed to contaminated platelet products developed a septic transfusion reaction, although these cases were only identified by active surveillance. Prior to this study, septic transfusion reactions associated with platelet transfusions were reported at a rate of 1 per 100,000 transfused platelets, suggesting this is likely an underreported event.[121]

TABLE 49.8 Transfusion-Related Fatalities in the United States, 2012 Through 2016

Complication	FY 2012-2015 (Number)	FY 2012-2015 (Percent)	FY 2016 (Number)	FY 2016 (Percent)
Anaphylaxis	6	4	5	12
Contamination	14	10	5	12
HTR (ABO)	10	7	4	9
HTR (non-ABO)	18	13	1	2
Hypotensive Reaction	2	1	1	2
TACO	37	26	19	44
TRALI	56	39	8	19

TACO, Transfusion-associated circulatory overload; *TRALI*, transfusion-related acute lung injury.

From Fatalities reported to FDA following blood collection and transfusion: annual summary for fiscal year 2016. These reports are available online at https://www.fda.gov/media/111226/download

TABLE 49.9 History of Platelet Concentrates Shelf Life in Relationship to Key Events

Year	Shelf Life	Practical Shelf Life*
1984-1986	7 days	6-7 days†
1986-1999	5 days	3 days‡
1999-2004	5 days	3 days§
2004-present	5 days	2.5-3 days

*Days that platelet concentrates are actually available to clinicians.

†Reports of bacterial contamination.

‡Nucleic acid technology testing, centralized blood donor testing.

§Bacterial detection implemented.

At present, platelet concentrates are routinely tested for bacteria and are the only blood product stored at room temperature.[122] For any patient who develops a fever within 6 hours after receiving platelets, sepsis from platelets should be considered.

Indications for the use of platelets are somewhat difficult to define. The most recent guidelines published in 2015 by the ASA Task Force on Perioperative Blood Management[116] provide the following recommendations regarding management for platelet transfusions:

1. Monitor platelet count, except in situations of massive transfusion.
2. Monitor platelet function, if available.
3. Consider use of desmopressin in patients with excessive bleeding or suspected platelet dysfunction.
4. Platelet transfusion may be indicated despite an adequate platelet count if there is known or suspected platelet dysfunction (e.g., cardiopulmonary bypass, bleeding, recent use of antiplatelet therapy, congenital platelet dysfunction).
5. Prophylactic platelet transfusion is rarely indicated in surgical or obstetric patients when the platelet count is greater than 100×10^9/L and is usually indicated when the platelet count is less than 50×10^9/L. The determination of whether patients with intermediate platelet counts ($50\text{-}100 \times 10^9$/L) require therapy should be based on the patient's risk for bleeding.

Many institutions have strict thresholds targeted to the patient's condition that outline the minimum platelet count needed for the categories of (1) prophylaxis, (2) periprocedural (based on type of procedure), and (3) active bleeding. In the first category, a required platelet count may be 10×10^9/L in patients receiving chemotherapy.[123] In the second category, patients undergoing bone marrow biopsy or lumbar puncture should have platelet counts between 20 and 30×10^9/L. For neurosurgery, a platelet count of 100×10^9/L may be targeted. Such thresholds are often guided by professional societies. The American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine guidelines also include recommendations in the setting of therapy that may alter platelet function.[124] A clinician's institution will likely have precise platelet recommendations for most procedures.

Patients with severe thrombocytopenia ($<20 \times 10^9$/L) and clinical signs of bleeding usually require platelet transfusion. However, patients may have very low platelet counts (much lower than 20×10^9/L) and not have clinical bleeding. These patients probably do not need platelet transfusions (Table 49.10). The recent PATCH trial evaluated patients receiving antiplatelet therapy who presented with intracerebral hemorrhage (ICH).[125] Such patients often receive platelet transfusions due to concern about the irreversible inhibition of platelet function and the high risk of morbidity and mortality associated with ICH. Study participants were excluded if their Glasgow Coma Scale score was less than 8 or if their treatment plan included expected surgical intervention within the first 24 hours of presentation. Platelet transfusion increased the risk of death or dependence at 3 months and the risk of a serious adverse event during the hospital stay compared with standard medical therapy without transfusion. Although this study excluded patients who were deemed surgical candidates at presentation, even in this high-risk patient population, platelet transfusions are not indicated unless there is active bleeding.

TABLE 49.10 Correlation Between Platelet Count and Incidence of Bleeding

Platelet Count (cells/mm^3)	Total No. Patients	No. Patients With Bleeding
>100,000	21	0
75,000-100,000	14	3
50,000-75,000	11	7
<50,000	5	5

Data from Miller RD, Robbins TO, Tong MJ, et al. Coagulation defects associated with massive blood transfusions. *Ann Surg*. 1971;174:794.

When possible, ABO-compatible platelets should be used. The need to use them, however, is not well documented, and specific testing is difficult. Aggregation cannot be used for matching, because platelets cause clumping. The platelet membrane has immunoglobulins, and any additional deposit of recipient antibodies is difficult to detect. Despite the fact that platelets can be destroyed by antibodies directed against class I human leukocyte antigen (HLA) proteins on their membranes and by antibodies against ABO antigens, platelets will continue to be chosen without regard to antigen systems for the majority of patients.[126] ABO-incompatible platelets produce very adequate hemostasis.

The effectiveness of platelet transfusions is difficult to monitor. Under ideal circumstances, one platelet concentrate usually produces an increase of approximately 7 to 10×10^9/L at 1 hour after transfusion in the 70-kg adult. Ten units of platelet concentrates are required to increase the platelet count by 100×10^9/L. However, many factors, including splenomegaly, previous sensitization, fever, sepsis, and active bleeding, may lead to decreased survival and decreased recovery of transfused platelets.

Other various different types of platelet concentrates have been proposed, including leukocyte-depleted platelets and ultraviolet–irradiated platelets. The use of these products is reviewed by Kruskall.[127]

FRESH FROZEN PLASMA

FFP is the most frequently used plasma product. It is processed shortly after donation, generally frozen within 8 hours or 24 hours (PF24). It contains all the plasma proteins, particularly factors V and VIII, which gradually decline during the storage of blood. PF24 is comparable to FFP, except for a slight reduction in factor V and approximately 25% decrease in factor VIII.[128,129] Thawed plasma is stored at 1 °C to 6 °C for up to 5 days. The use of FFP carries with it the same inherent risks that are observed with the use of any blood product, such as sensitization to foreign proteins.

Although FFP is a reliable solution for intravascular volume replacement in cases of acute blood loss, alternative therapies are equally satisfactory and considerably safer. The risks of FFP administration include TRALI, TACO, and allergic or anaphylactic reactions.

In 2015 the ASA Task Force recommended the following guidelines regarding the administration of FFP:

1. Prior to the administration of FFP, coagulation studies should be obtained when feasible.
2. For the correction of coagulopathy when the international normalized ratio (INR) is greater than 2, in the absence of heparin.
3. For the correction of coagulopathy due to coagulation deficiencies in patients transfused with more than one blood volume (approximately 70 mL/kg) when coagulation studies cannot be easily or quickly obtained.
4. Replacement of known coagulation factor deficiencies with associated bleeding, disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), or both, when specific components are not available.
5. Reversal of warfarin anticoagulation when severe bleeding is present and prothrombin complex concentrations are not available.

FFP or plasma is often given to critical care patients before insertion of an intravascular catheter. Hall and associates[130] studied 1923 patients admitted to 29 ICUs in the United Kingdom who underwent intravascular catheterization. They compared patients who did and did not receive FFP. Chronic liver disease and more abnormal coagulation tests increased the frequency of patients receiving FFP, but the severity of the prothrombin time (PT) alone was not a factor. Whether prophylactic FFP should be given in this situation is not well defined. In 2015, Muller and associates[131] published results from a randomized, open-label trial of prophylactic FFP use prior to an invasive procedure in critically ill patients with an INR of 1.5 to 3. The trial ended before reaching target enrollment, because of slow recruitment. The occurrence of bleeding did not differ between the two groups, but the trial may not have had enough power to distinguish a statistical significance between groups. Also, an INR reduction below 1.5 only occurred in 54% of patients in the intervention group.

In an effort to “expedite” the availability of plasma for patients who require massive transfusions, some trauma centers keep thawed plasma readily available. In one study, patients with severe trauma who had already received 1 unit of RBCs and plasma were then divided into two groups, one of which immediately received 4 units of thawed plasma. The patients who received the plasma had a reduction in overall blood product use and 30-day mortality.[132] More recently, Sperry and colleagues[133] randomized prehospital injured patients in flight transport who were at risk for hemorrhage to standard of care versus empiric administration of 2 units FFP. By 3 hours, Kaplan-Meier curves revealed early separation of the two groups, favoring empiric administration of FFP in the prehospital setting that persisted until their prespecified end point of 30 days following randomization.

CRYOPRECIPITATE

Cryoprecipitate is prepared when FFP is thawed, and the precipitate is reconstituted. The product contains factor VIII:C (i.e., procoagulant activity), factor VIII:vWF (i.e., von Willebrand factor), fibrinogen, factor XIII, and fibronectin, which is a glycoprotein that may play a role in reticuloendothelial clearance of foreign particles and bacteria from the blood. All other plasma proteins are present in only trace amounts in cryoprecipitate.

Cryoprecipitate is frequently administered as ABO compatible; however, this probably is not very important because the concentration of antibodies in cryoprecipitate is extremely low. Cryoprecipitate may contain RBC fragments, and cryoprecipitate prepared from Rh-positive donors can possibly sensitize Rh-negative recipients to the Rh antigen. Cryoprecipitate should be administered through a filter and as rapidly as possible. The rate of administration should be at least 200 mL/h, and the infusion should be completed within 6 hours of thawing.

According to the 2015 ASA Task Force on Perioperative Blood Management,[116] transfusion of cryoprecipitate is rarely indicated when the fibrinogen levels are greater than 150 mg/dL in nonobstetric patients. The following indications were provided regarding the administration of cryoprecipitate:

1. When testing of fibrinogen activity reveals evidence for fibrinolysis
2. When fibrinogen concentrations are less than 80 to 100 mg/dL in patients experiencing excessive bleeding
3. Obstetrical patients who are experiencing excessive bleeding despite a measured fibrinogen concentration greater than 150 mg/dL
4. In patients undergoing massive transfusion when the timely assessment of fibrinogen concentrations cannot be determined
5. In patients with congenital fibrinogen deficiencies and when possible, in consultation with the patient’s hematologist
6. In bleeding patients with von Willebrand disease types 1 and 2A who fail to respond to desmopressin or vWF/FVIII concentrates (or if not available)
7. In bleeding patients with von Willebrand disease types 2B, 2M, 2N, and 3 who fail to respond to vWF/FVIII concentrates (or if concentrates are not available)

Fibrin glue may be used by surgeons to create local hemostasis. It is prepared in a manner similar to that of cryoprecipitate. With added thrombin, it is applied locally to the surgical site. The efficacy of this product has been difficult to demonstrate in clinical trials.

MASSIVE TRANSFUSION AND TRANSFUSION RATIOS

The transition from administration of whole blood to component therapy in the 1970s created new challenges in transfusion medicine, especially in patients undergoing trauma or any type of surgery associated with significant blood loss. FFP was not usually required as a separate component with the administration of whole blood, and significant thrombocytopenia usually occurred only after 15 to 20 units of blood.[5] With the change from whole blood to PRBCs, the incidence of coagulopathies increased, especially in units responsible for trauma patients. Rather than basing transfusion decisions on clinical judgment or laboratory tests, the concept of developing ratios of FFP and/or platelet concentrates with PRBCs evolved. For example, a 1:1:1 ratio would be transfusion of 1 unit of plasma, and one-sixth unit of platelets to 1 unit of RBCs. A 1:1:2 ratio would be transfusion of 1 unit of plasma, and one-sixth unit of platelets to every 2 units of RBCs. The convention of one-sixth unit of platelets results from the common allocation of platelet products in 1 unit (apheresis) from a single donor or 1 pool (pooled) from six donors in a "six pack." In review of the literature, ratios may be expressed as plasma/platelets/RBCs or RBCs/plasma/platelets.

Holcomb and associates[134] concluded that increased platelet ratios were associated with improved survival after massive blood transfusions. Subsequently, Kornblith and associates[135] concluded that the laboratory clotting profile of 1:1:1 plasma/platelets/RBC was significantly more hemostatic when examining activity of factors II, V, VII, VIII, IX, and X; antithrombin III, as well as protein C and higher fibrinogen levels when compared with a 1:1:2 ratio. Results of the Prospective Observational Multicenter Major Trauma Transfusion (PROMMTT) study supported this idea. With data from 10 U.S. level-I trauma centers, the conclusion of the study[136] was that higher plasma and platelet ratios early in resuscitation were associated with decreased mortality in patients who received transfusions of at least 3 units of blood products during the first 24 hours after admission.[136] Among survivors at 24 hours, the subsequent risk for death by day 30 was not associated with plasma or platelet ratios. When comparing groups of patients with similar Injury Severity Scores, only a survival benefit was seen in ratios with high plasma to RBC resuscitation. However, no additional morbidity benefit of 1:1 over 1:2 ratios was identified.[137]

More recently in the randomized control trial Pragmatic Randomized Optimal Platelet and Plasma Ratios (PROPPR) study, Holcomb and associates[138] found that among patients with severe trauma and major bleeding, early administration of plasma, platelets, and red blood cells in a 1:1:1 ratio versus a 1:1:2 ratio did not result in significant differences in mortality at 24 hours or at 30 days.

These aggressive uses of FFP, platelets, and other blood products have only been shown to be beneficial in response to coagulopathies from massive blood transfusions. Aggressive plasma administration to other transfused patients was associated with an increased rate of serious complications, including acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) and organ dysfunction.[126] A retrospective study showed that a higher FFP-PRBC ratio was associated with the need for advanced interventional procedures in patients with postpartum hemorrhage.[139]

Synthetic Oxygen-Carrying Substances

HB-BASED OXYGEN CARRIERS

Various other substances that carry or facilitate the transport of O_2 have been made. Oxygen therapeutics are labeled as Hb-based O_2 carriers (HBOCs). HBOCs have advantages over human blood of not requiring type and crossmatch and not transmitting infectious viruses, typical characteristics of most synthetic blood products (Table 49.11).

Two approaches have dominated attempts to develop synthetic blood. The first approach uses linear binding kinetics, unlike the nonlinear binding of Hb. The most notable is the perfluorochemical emulsion called Fluosol-DA. Fluosol-DA was initially approved by the FDA for perfusion of ischemic tissues in the setting of percutaneous coronary intervention.[140] However, it had little use because it carried O_2 only when the PaO_2 was more than 300 mm Hg.[141] Fluosol was withdrawn from the market in 1994. Another perfluoro compound, perfluorooctyl bromide, carries three to four times more O_2, has a longer half-life, and presumably fewer problems than are associated with Fluosol-DA, but it is not available on the market.[142]

TABLE 49.11 Comparison of General Synthetic Blood With Allogeneic Blood

Parameter	Synthetic	Allogeneic
Oxygen delivery	Rapid and consistent	Dependent on 2,3-DPG
Risk for disease transmission	None	See Table 49.2
Storage	Room temperature	Refrigeration
	Stable efficacy	Loss of efficacy
Shelf life	1-3 year	42 days
Preparation	Ready to use	Crossmatch
Compatibility	Universal	Type specific
Duration of action	1-3 days	60-90 days

2,3-DPG, 2,3-Diphosphoglycerate.

Most HBOCs modify the Hb molecule from humans, animals, or recombinant technology. Original efforts required Hb to be stroma free to prevent nephrotoxicity. The stroma-free Hb needed to be modified to have a favorable O_2 affinity (i.e., decreased O_2 affinity/right shift in the O_2 dissociation curve) and to extend its relatively short intravascular half-life. A variety of approaches have been used, including crosslinking, pyridoxylation and polymerization, and conjugation and encapsulation to accomplish this. Stroma-free Hb causes severe arteriolar vasoconstriction of microvascular structures from NO scavenging, which is not beneficial for organ perfusion. A human recombinant hemoglobin (rHb 1.1) was made in *Escherichia coli* and functions as normal Hb in terms of O_2-carrying capacity, but it, too, was plagued by microvascular vasoconstriction. Although a subsequent iteration, rHbg 2.0, minimized NO scavenging and caused little arteriolar vasoconstriction when compared with rHb 1.1 and diaspirin crosslinked Hb,[143,144] vasoconstriction may still prove to be their ultimate downfall.

Most clinical trials have shown increased use of allogeneic blood transfusions;[145] however, the outcome of the HBOCs have been similar: failure in clinical trials due to increased adverse events. Natanson and colleagues[146] performed a cumulative meta-analysis on 16 trials involving 5 different products and 3711 patients. They concluded that there was a significant increased risk for myocardial infarction and death when HBOCs were given, an outcome that was found among all the technologies (e.g., cross-linked, polymerized, or conjugated). An accompanying editorial concluded that a 30% increased risk for death and a threefold increase in the risk for myocardial infarction should preclude any additional studies.[147]

Several HBOCs are available clinically under the FDA's Expanded Access (compassionate use) program. HBOC-201 hemoglobin glutamer-250 (bovine), Hemopure (Biopure Corporation) is developed from ultrapurified bovine RBCs that have been glutaraldehyde polymerized. It has a higher P_{50} (i.e., 43 instead of 26 mm Hg), which means that it may deliver O_2 to the tissues at least as well, if not better, than human RBCs.[148] A recent case series reported three cases of HBOC–201, under the FDA's Expanded Access to patients in severe sickle cell crisis (SCC) with multiorgan failure, who refused RBCs (Jehovah's Witnesses) or for whom compatible RBCs were not available.[149] A recent case report described use of bovine pegylated carboxyhemoglobin (Sanguinate) in a Jehovah's Witness with a lymphoproliferative disorder, gastrointestinal bleeding, and resultant severe anemia who was bridged to hemostatic interventions.[150] For now, HBOCs are likely to be reserved for situations in which RBC transfusion is not an option or as a bridge to stabilizing therapy.

Autologous Blood

Autologous blood transfusion constitutes three distinct procedures (1) preoperative autologous donation (PAD), (2) acute normovolemic hemodilution (ANH), and (3) intraoperative and postoperative blood salvage. Although the advantages and disadvantages vary with each technique, autologous transfusion aims to decrease the incidence and severity of complications associated with allogenic transfusions and conserve the supply of banked blood. Autologous blood may also be an acceptable solution in patients with rare blood phenotypes or alloantibodies.[151]

PREOPERATIVE AUTOLOGOUS DONATION

It is assumed that preoperative autologous blood transfusion is safer than allogeneic blood, mainly because of the decreased risk for transfusion-transmissible infections, such as HIV and hepatitis C. However, as blood safety has improved with a marked decrease in infectivity from allogeneic blood, the difference in safety compared with autologous blood is much less. Not surprisingly, the proportion of autologous blood collected has significantly decreased since the peak in the mid-1990s.[152]

To be eligible, the AABB requires that most donor's Hb be no less than 11 g/dL prior to donation. Repeated donations should be separated by a week with 72 hours between the last donation and the time of surgery. The latter recommendation is to ensure restoration of intravascular volume and appropriate testing and preparation of the donated blood.[153] At 72 hours postdonation, while intravascular volume may be restored, red cell mass is not. According to the Hemoglobin and Iron Recovery Study (HEIRS), recovery of 80% red cell mass varies from 25 to more than 168 days.[154] On average, for those who undergo PAD, Hb is 1.1 g/dL less than those who do not donate preoperatively. In a meta-analysis incorporating data from multiple surgical patient populations, while PAD decreased the absolute risk of receiving allogenic blood by 44%, the risk of receiving a transfusion from any source (i.e., allogenic or PAD), increased by 24%, which questions the procedure's use as a transfusion-sparing practice.[155]

BOX 49.2 Contradictions to Participation in Autologous Blood Donation Programs

1. Evidence of infection and risk of bacteremia
2. Scheduled surgery to correct aortic stenosis
3. Unstable angina
4. Active seizure disorder
5. Myocardial infarction or cerebrovascular accident within 6 months of donation
6. High-grade left main coronary artery disease
7. Cyanotic heart disease
8. Uncontrolled hypertension

Donation itself is not without risk. In a study of American Red Cross donors, PAD was associated with nearly 12 times the postdonation hospitalization rate as allogenic donors.[156] The criteria for autologous donation are less stringent than those for allogenic donors, as historically 15% of autologous donors do not meet safety criteria for allogenic donation.[157] As such, certain patient populations are poor candidates for PAD because of their underlying comorbidities. These populations include patients with severe cardiopulmonary disease (e.g., severe aortic stenosis, recent myocardial infarction, or cerebrovascular event) and those with bacteremia (Box 49.2).

ACUTE NORMOVOLEMIC HEMODILUTION

ANH is a procedure initiated before the start of significant blood loss, by which the anesthesiologist removes whole blood from a patient while simultaneously restoring intravascular volume with either crystalloid (3 mL/1 mL of blood removed) or colloid (1 mL/1 mL of blood removed) solutions to maintain adequate hemodynamics. Blood is collected in standard blood bags containing citrate anticoagulant and maintained at room temperature in the operating room for up to 8 hours or at 4°C for 24 hours. Bleeding that occurs following ANH sheds a lower percentage of RBCs per unit of total blood volume lost, constituting the presumed major benefit of this procedure.[158]

When major bleeding has stopped or when clinically appropriate, the sequestered blood is then reinfused into the patient in the reverse order of collection because the first unit collected has the highest concentration of coagulation factors and platelets and the highest Hb level.[159] Although some providers advocate that stored blood be gently agitated to preserve platelet function, most practitioners do not do this, and no formal recommendations exist requiring this procedure. Reassuringly, no differences in thromboelastography (TEG) measurements have been noted between samples agitated during storage compared with those left stationary.[160]

The amount of blood saved by ANH is both of a function of the postdilutional Hb achieved and the amount of blood volume lost intraoperatively, the latter hopefully occurring after the blood salvage. Patients undergoing minimal ANH—less than 15% of a patient's blood volume—would only save 100 mL of RBCs, equaling 0.5 units of PRBCs. However, increasing the ANH to target postdilutional Hct of 28% in the setting of 2600 mL blood loss resulted in savings of 215 mL of RBC compared with blood loss without prior hemodilution (Fig. 49.4).[161]

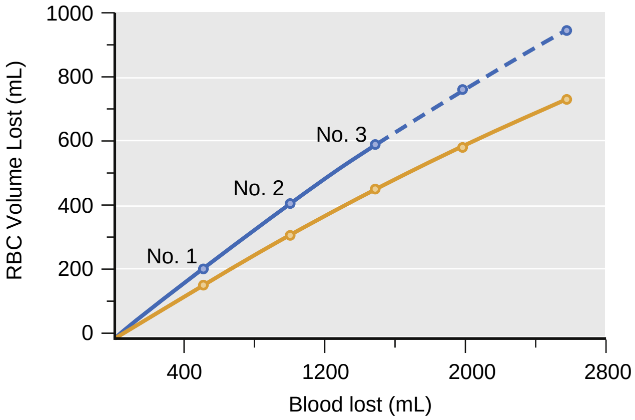


Fig. 49.4 The relationship between whole blood volume *(mL)* lost (abscissa) and red blood cell *(RBC)* volume lost *(ordinate)* in a 100-kg patient undergoing hemodilution: RBC volume lost with 2800 mL whole blood intraoperatively after hemodilution of 1500 mL whole blood *(solid blue line)*; RBC volume lost with 2800 mL whole blood lost during hemodilution at each of three 500 mL volumes *(solid orange line)*; cumulative RBC volume lost intraoperatively, derived for 2800 mL whole blood lost if hemodilution had not been performed *(blue dashed line)*. A net of 215 mL reduction in RBC volume lost with hemodilution is illustrated by the divergence of the two curves. (From Goodnough LT, Grishaber JE, Monk TG, et al. Acute preoperative hemodilution in patients undergoing radical prostatectomy: a case study analysis of efficacy. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:932–937, with permission.)

Although larger volumes of hemodilution provide the largest benefit in terms of RBC mass saved and allogenic transfusions avoided,[162] retrospective data suggest that even mild ANH may help to improve outcomes.[163] Prospective, randomized trials demonstrate ANH as a means to decrease transfusion requirements in multiple types of surgeries, including hip replacement,[164] hepatic resection,[165] and vascular surgery.[166] A recent meta-analysis evaluated 29 randomized controlled trials involving 1252 patients undergoing ANH (and 1187 controls) during cardiac surgery.[167] They found patients who underwent ANH were transfused less frequently than those in the control groups, receiving on average three-fourths fewer allogenic blood units than those in the control groups. Not surprisingly, patients undergoing ANH experienced less postoperative blood cell mass loss with a mean loss of 388 mL in the ANH groups and 450 mL in the control groups. Another meta-analysis demonstrated similar findings in a broader patient population that included multiple surgical specialties, but the findings were criticized due to the heterogeneity of the studies included and the potential for publication bias, which would likely overestimate any true benefit.[168] ANH has also been shown to decrease the need for other component therapy, because the removal of whole blood also removes and stores platelets and plasma.[162] In cardiac surgery specifically, ANH may protect the sequestered blood from the effects of cardiopulmonary bypass and the platelet dysfunction that occurs.[169]

Decisions regarding the use of ANH should be made with consideration given to the patient's vital signs, Hct, blood volume, and the estimation of surgical blood loss and risk of transfusion (Box 49.3). ANH is not without potential risk. A recent study in porcine animal models demonstrated significant adverse effects of ANH transfusions particularly in the adult compared with infant animal models. These effects included the development of bronchoconstriction and acute lung injury as a result of extravasation of fluid and deterioration of cardiopulmonary hemodynamics.[170] Similarly, in dog models, ANH to a Hct of 30% demonstrated decreased oxygen delivery to the kidneys with preserved delivery to other organs, including the heart, brain, and spinal cord, suggesting ANH may place the kidneys at risk.[171] Most studies evaluating ANH have focused on a reduction in RBC mass loss and the use of allogenic blood cell transfusions as the primary outcomes. Fewer studies have reported favorable findings with respect to end-organ damage in patients treated with ANH compared with those not treated, but studies in the future should look more closely at these important outcomes.[162]

BOX 49.3 Criteria for Selection of Patients for Acute Normovolemic Hemodilution

1. Likelihood of transfusion exceeding 10% (i.e., blood requested for crossmatch according to a maximum surgical blood order schedule)
2. Preoperative Hb of at least 12 g/dL
3. Absence of clinically significant coronary, pulmonary, renal, or liver disease
4. Absence of severe hypertension
5. Absence of infection and risk of bacteremia

INTRAOPERATIVE CELL SALVAGE

The term *intraoperative blood collection* or *cell salvage* describes the technique of collecting, processing, and reinfusing blood lost by a patient during surgery. It is a perioperative blood conservation technique to reduce use of allogenic blood and the risks associated with allogeneic blood exposure. It may be acceptable for use in patients that do not consent to allogeneic or preoperative autologous blood transfusions, such as Jehovah's Witnesses. This technique should be discussed with such patients and acceptability should be determined on a case-by-case basis.[172]

The AABB continues to recommend the following general indications for cell salvage use in their 2016 guidelines:[173]

1. Anticipated blood loss is 20% or more than the patient's estimated blood volume.
2. Crossmatch-compatible blood is unobtainable.
3. Patient is unwilling to accept allogeneic blood but will consent to receive blood from intraoperative blood salvage.
4. The procedure is likely to require more than one unit of RBCs.

Cell salvage involves the collection of blood from the surgical field through a specialized double-lumen suction tubing that delivers anticoagulant, commonly heparin or citrate, to the tip of the suction catheter (Fig. 49.5). This prevents suctioned blood from clotting within the collection system. Blood from the surgical field is collected in a reservoir until enough fluid accumulates for processing. Processing involves specialized centrifugation that causes the lower density plasma and anticoagulant fluid to rise up and separate from the higher density RBCs, which are collected at the bottom of a conical- or cylindrical-shaped bowl. In general,

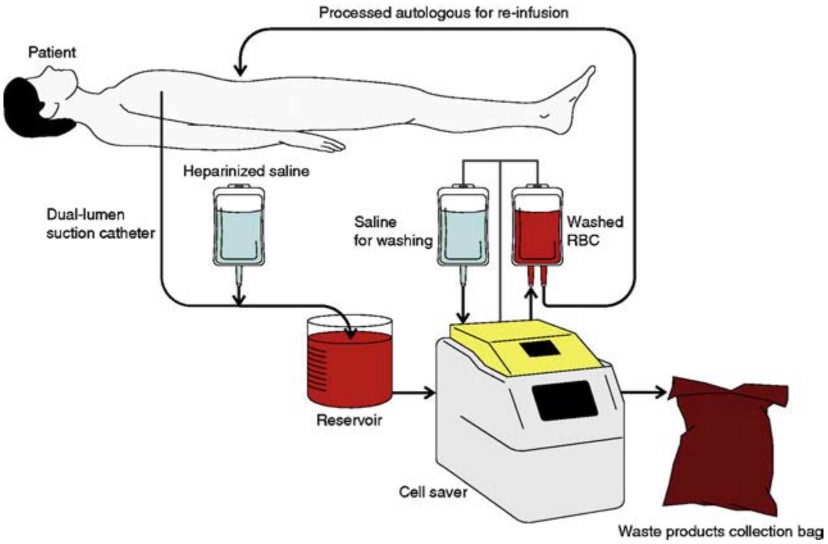

Processed autologous for re-infusion
Patient
Heparinized saline
Dual-lumen suction catheter
Saline for washing
Washed RBC
Reservoir
Cell saver
Waste products collection bag

Fig. 49.5 Diagram of the setup of a standard cell salvage circuit. *RBC*, Red blood cell. (From Ashworth A, Klein A. Cell salvage as part of a blood conservation strategy in anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105[4]:401–416. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aeq244.)

500 to 700 mL of collected blood is required for processing to produce 225 to 250 mL of salvaged saline-suspended PRBCs with a Hct of 50% to 60%.[174] At this point, the salvaged PRBCs are ready for immediate or delayed transfusion. Microaggregate filters (40 µm) are most often employed during reinfusion because recovered and processed blood may contain tissue debris, small blood clots, or bone fragments. Some systems are able to continually process blood and can provide the equivalent of 12 units/h of banked blood to a massively bleeding patient.[175]

The oxygen transport properties and survival of recovered RBCs appears to be equivalent to those of stored allogeneic RBCs. Levels of 2,3-DPG appear to be present at near normal levels in salvaged blood compared with stored allogenic blood cells, which have up to 90% reduction in 2,3-DPG levels.[43] Similarly, the P50 of salvaged blood is similar to that of fresh venous blood drawn from the same patient and significantly higher than that of 2-week old banked blood, suggesting better oxygen-offloading capabilities.[176] RBC deformability also appears improved compared with PRBCs.[41]

Some practical considerations for cell recovery programs are listed in (Box 49.4). If collected under aseptic conditions with a saline-wash device and if properly labeled, blood may be stored at room temperature for up to 4 hours or at 1°C to 6°C for up to 24 hours, provided storage at 1°C to 6°C is begun within 4 hours of ending the collection.[173] The allowable interval of room temperature storage is shorter for recovered blood (4 hours) than for ANH blood (8 hours). Storage times are the same for recovered blood regardless of whether unwashed or washed.

Reinfusion of salvaged blood is not without risk (Box 49.5).[177] Air embolism is a serious, potentially fatal problem, but this risk is now mitigated with newer systems that do not allow for the system's direct connection to the patient's intravenous tubing. Collection systems that neither concentrate nor wash shed blood before reinfusion increase the risk of adverse effects. Shed blood has undergone varying degrees of coagulation or fibrinolysis and hemolysis, and infusion of large volumes of washed or unwashed blood has been associated with disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC).[178] In general, blood collected at low flow rates or during slow bleeding from patients who are not systemically anticoagulated will have undergone coagulation and fibrinolysis and will not contribute to hemostasis on reinfusion. The high suction pressure and surface skimming during aspiration and the turbulence or mechanical compression that occurs in roller pumps and plastic tubing make some degree of hemolysis inevitable.[179] Patients exhibit a level of plasma-free hemoglobin that is usually higher than after allogeneic transfusion. High concentrations of free hemoglobin can be nephrotoxic to patients and free hemoglobin causes severe arteriolar vasoconstriction of microvascular structures from NO scavenging.[180] However, the clinical importance of this phenomenon in

BOX 49.4 Practical Considerations for Intraoperative Cell Recovery, Storage, and Reinfusion

1. If not transfused immediately, units collected from a sterile operating field and processed with a device for intraoperative blood collection that washes with 0.9% saline should be stored under one of the following conditions before initiation of transfusion:
   a. At room temperature for up to 4 h after terminating collection
   b. At 1°C-6°C for up to 24 h, provided storage at 1°C-6°C is begun within 4 h of ending the collection
2. Transfusion of blood collected intraoperatively by other means should begin within 6 h of initiating the collection.
3. Each unit collected intraoperatively should be labeled with the patient's first name, last name, and hospital identification number; the date and time of initiation of collection and of expiration; and the statement "For Autologous Use Only."
4. If stored in the blood bank, the unit should be handled like any other autologous unit.
5. The transfusion of shed blood collected under postoperative or posttraumatic conditions should begin within 6 h of initiating the collection.

BOX 49.5 Types of Adverse Reactions That May Be Seen With Blood Transfusion from Intraoperative Cell Salvage

Hypervolemia
Bacterial contamination
Hypotension
Nonimmune hemolysis
Immune hemolysis
Febrile nonhemolytic reactions
Allergic reactions
Disseminated intravascular coagulation
Coagulopathies
Air embolus
Reactions secondary to reinfusion of anticoagulants or other contaminants
Nonspecific temperature increases, chills, skin flushing, etc.

From Domen R. Adverse reactions associated with autologous blood transfusion: evaluation and incidence at a large academic hospital. *Transfusion*. 1998;38:296–300. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1537-2995.1998.38398222875.x

intraoperative cell salvage has not been established. Many programs limit the quantity of recovered blood that may be reinfused without processing. To minimize hemolysis, the vacuum level should ordinarily not exceed 150 mm Hg, although higher levels of suction may occasionally be needed during periods of rapid bleeding. One study found that vacuum settings as high as 300 mm Hg could be used, when necessary, without causing excessive hemolysis.[181]

Positive bacterial cultures from recovered blood are sometimes observed, but clinical infection is rare[182] and may be mitigated with the use of a leukocyte filter in the system[183] Intraoperative collection is contraindicated when certain procoagulant materials (e.g., topical collagen) are applied to the surgical field because systemic activation of coagulation may result. Other instances that may preclude use of cell savage include: use of parenterally incompatible chemicals (e.g., chlorhexidine, betadine, hydrogen peroxide) in the surgical field, and use of hypotonic solutions in the surgical field, which may lyse red blood cells.

Clinical Studies

As with PAD and ANH, collection and recovery of intraoperative autologous blood should undergo scrutiny with regard to both safety and efficacy.[184] A meta-analysis of 75 studies evaluating the utility for cell salvage to minimize allogeneic blood transfusion found that cell salvage reduced the need for allogeneic blood transfusion in adult-elective surgeries by 38%.[185] The greatest benefit was seen in orthopedic procedures but cardiac surgery patients also benefited. On average, intraoperative blood salvage saved an average of 0.68 units of allogenic banked blood. Of note, two randomized controlled trials published in 2014 of patients undergoing hip and knee arthroplasty with either preoperative hemoglobin concentration between 10 to 13 g/dL or more than 13 g/dL failed to show cell salvage as an effective means to reduce allogenic blood requirements.[186,187] However, both studies combined intraoperative and postoperative cell salvage and did not separate patients who received one technique (or both techniques) from those who received another.

TABLE 49.12 Procedures Where Intraoperative Cell Salvage May Be Indicated

General Surgery	Hepatic resection
	Splenectomy
Neurosurgery	Basilar Aneurysm
Transplant Surgery	Liver transplant
	Kidney transplant
Cardio/Thoracic	Cardiac transplant/VAD implant
	Pulmonary transplant
	Coronary artery bypass grafting
	Cardiac valve repair/replacement
	Aortic arch Aneurysm
	Thoracic trauma
Vascular	Aortic Aneurysm repair
	Femoral bypass grafting
Orthopedic	Total shoulder replacement
	Total hip replacement or revision
	Bilateral knee replacement
	Open reduction/internal fixation pelvic or long bone fracture
	Multilevel spine surgery
Urology	Nephrectomy
	Radical prostatectomy
Gynecology	Hysterectomy
Obstetrics	Placenta accreta, increta, or percreta

Adapted from Esper SA, Waters JH. Intra-operative cell salvage: a fresh look at the indications and contraindications. *Blood Transfus*. 2011;9(2):139–147.

In some cases, the value of blood salvage may not be in terms of patient outcome or reduction of transfusion requirements, but instead in cost savings. The value of intraoperative blood collection was recently demonstrated for high-risk cesarean surgeries but not for routine procedures.[188] A list of surgeries where intraoperative cell salvage may be indicated are provided in Table 49.12. As comprehensive PBM pathways continue to evolve and improve patient outcomes, future studies regarding the efficacy and cost-effectiveness of cell salvage will be needed.

POSTOPERATIVE CELL SALVAGE

Postoperative blood collection denotes the recovery of blood from surgical drains followed by reinfusion, with or without processing.[166] In some programs, postoperative shed blood is collected into sterile canisters and reinfused, without processing, through a microaggregate filter. Recovered blood is dilute, is partially hemolyzed, and may contain high concentrations of cytokines. For these reasons, most programs set an upper limit on the volume (e.g., 1400 mL) of unprocessed blood that can be reinfused. If transfusion of blood has not begun within 6 hours of initiating the

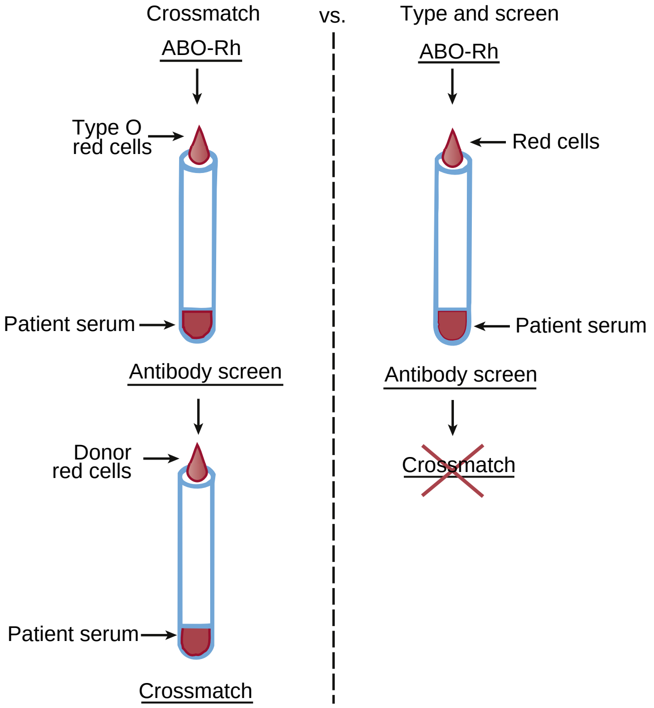


Fig. 49.6 Outline of the tests used for a crossmatch. The X over the word *crossmatch* means that the crossmatch is not included in the type and screen.

collection, the blood must be discarded. Although this technique gained popularity for total joint arthroplasties, the technique is being used less frequently because of a number of factors, including improved PBM programs, lack of evidence for effectiveness, and care pathways that lead to earlier hospital discharge.[174]

Compatibility Testing

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

The ABO-Rh type, antibody screen, and crossmatch are frequently referred to as compatibility tests. These tests were designed to demonstrate harmful antigen-antibody interactions in vitro so that harmful in vivo antigen-antibody interactions can be prevented. Donor blood used for emergency transfusion of type-specific blood must be screened for hemolytic anti-A and/or anti-B antibodies, and Rh antibodies. Similarly, recipient blood must also undergo ABO-Rh typing, as well as testing for unexpected antibodies. Once this has been completed, proper selection of donor blood requires a crossmatch to test for compatibility between recipient blood and donor blood (Fig. 49.6). All approved blood banks have redundant processes in place to ensure that the patient receives the correct unit of blood. Most will require a second confirmatory specimen drawn on a separate occasion from the first type and screen to reduce the risk of a crossmatch error and a hemolytic blood transfusion reaction.[189]

ABO-RH TYPING

Determination of the patient's correct blood type is exceedingly important because the most serious and tragic reactions are usually caused by accidental transfusion of ABO-incompatible blood. In fact, 15% of all transfusion-related deaths are related to hemolytic reactions due to antibody incompatibility.[190] These reactions result from naturally occurring antibodies (i.e., anti-A and anti-B), which activate complement and lead to rapid intravenous hemolysis. Anti-A or anti-B antibodies are formed whenever the individual lacks either or both of the A and B antigens. ABO typing is performed by testing RBCs for the A and B antigens and the serum for the A and B antibodies before transfusion (Table 49.13).

TABLE 49.13 ABO Compatibility Testing

	RED CELLS TESTED WITH		SERUM TESTED WITH	
Blood Group	**Anti-A**	**Anti-B**	**A Cells**	**B Cells**
A	+	–	–	+
B	–	+	+	–
AB	+	+	–	–
O	–	–	+	+

TABLE 49.14 Donor Blood Groups That Patients Can Receive

Donor	Recipient
O	O, A, B, AB
A	A, AB
B	B, AB
AB	AB

The second most important testing is that for the Rh(D) antigen. Antigen D is very common, and, except for the A and B antigens, the one most likely to produce immunization. Of Rh(D)-negative recipients, 60% to 70% of patients given Rh(D)-positive blood produce anti-D antibodies. Anti-D antibodies may also be formed in the Rh(D)-negative parturient. Approximately 85% of individuals possess the D antigen and are classified as Rh(D) positive; the remaining 15%, who lack the D antigen, are classified as Rh(D) negative. Transfusion of Rh(D)-positive blood to a Rh(D)-negative patient with Rh(D) antibodies may produce a hemolytic transfusion reaction. Table 49.14 identifies compatible donor/recipient blood types.

ANTIBODY SCREENING

Antibody screens are performed to identify unexpected RBC alloantibodies. The patient's serum is combined with commercially supplied RBCs that are specifically selected due to their expression of RBC antigens for which clinically significant alloantibodies are formed.[191] The reagent RBCs are type O so they do not react to anti-A or anti-B antibodies that may be present in the patient's serum. Alloantibodies are typically immunoglobulin (Ig)G, and thus do not readily produce agglutination in vitro, but do so in vivo. As a result, an indirect antiglobulin test (formerly an indirect Coombs test) is undertaken to evaluate for the presence of IgG alloantibodies. The patient's serum is combined with the reagent RBCs with an additive that promotes binding of antibodies to the RBCs. The mixture is incubated at 37°C, washed and mixed with reagent containing antibodies to IgG and complement. The reagent binds to any IgG attached to the RBCs, crosslinking the RBCs and producing agglutination in vitro. If the test is positive, follow-up testing must be undertaken to identify the target antigen.

The screen for unexpected antibodies is also used on donor serum and is performed shortly after withdrawal of blood from the donor. It is necessary to screen donor serum for unexpected antibodies to prevent their introduction into the recipient's serum.

Daratumumab, a human monoclonal antibody targeting the CD38 glycoprotein was recently approved for the treatment of multiple myeloma, and has been noted to interfere with antibody screening. The drug binds to CD38 expressed on reagent RBCs, leading to a potentially false positive result.[192] Treatment of reagent RBCs with dithiothreitol negates the interference but also leads to denaturing Kell antigens; therefore, K^- RBC units should be allocated in this circumstance unless the patient is known to be K^+.[193] As immunotherapeutic agents and their indications expand, anesthesiologists should be aware of their implications to antibody screening to allow for appropriate testing to avoid delays in the allocation of blood products.[194]

CROSSMATCHING

A crossmatch is a trial transfusion within a test tube in which donor RBCs are mixed with recipient serum to detect a potential for transfusion reaction. The full crossmatch can be completed in 45 to 60 minutes and is performed in three phases: an immediate spin (IS) phase, an incubation phase, and an indirect antiglobulin phase.

First, the IS phase is conducted at room temperature and is a check against errors in ABO typing. It detects ABO incompatibilities and those caused by naturally occurring antibodies in the MN, P, and Lewis systems, but is insensitive to the presence of other RBC alloantibodies. This takes 1 to 5 minutes to complete. In the setting of a negative antibody screen or during emergency situations when an abbreviated crossmatching process is required, this step may serve as the sole confirmatory process to eliminate reactions that may result from human errors in ABO-Rh typing alone. Blood given after this test is more than 99% safe in terms of avoiding incompatible transfusion reactions caused by unexpected antibodies.[195]

Next, the incubation and indirect globulin or "indirect Coombs" phases primarily detect antibodies in the Rh system and other non-ABO blood group systems.[196] This two-step process involves incubation of the test tube at 37°C in albumin or low–ionic strength salt solution, which aids in the detection of incomplete antibodies or antibodies able to attach to a specific antigen (i.e., sensitization) but are unable to cause agglutination in a saline suspension of RBCs. An incubation period of 30 to 45 minutes in albumin and 10 to 20 minutes in low–ionic strength salt solution in this phase is of sufficient duration to allow antibody binding to cells so that incomplete antibodies missed in this phase can be detected in the subsequent antiglobulin phase. The RBCs are centrifuged, resuspended, and observed for hemolysis and agglutination. The RBCs are then washed and resuspended in solution to remove unbound immunoglobulins. Antiglobulin sera is added to the test tubes. The antihuman antibodies present in the sera become attached to the antibody on the RBCs, causing agglutination. This antiglobulin phase detects most incomplete antibodies in the blood group systems, including the Rh, Kell, Kidd, and Duffy blood group systems.

The incubation and antiglobulin phases are important because the antibodies appearing in these phases are capable of causing serious hemolytic reactions. Except for hemolytic reactions involving anti-A and anti-B, reactions caused by antibodies appearing in the immediate phase are frequently less severe as many are naturally occurring, present in low titers, and not reactive at physiologic temperatures.

ELECTRONIC CROSSMATCH

In previously transfused or pregnant patients, only 1 patient in 100 may have an irregular antibody other than the anti-A and anti-B antibodies. However, some of these irregular antibodies are reactive only at temperatures below 30°C and therefore are insignificant in most transfusions. Others that are reactive at approximately 30°C can produce serious reactions if the transfused cells contain the appropriate antigen. In order of probable significance, anti-Rh(D), Kell, C, E, and Kidd are the most common of clinically significant antibodies. If the correct ABO and Rh blood type is given, the possibility of transfusing incompatible blood is less than 1 in 1000. ABO-Rh typing alone results in a 99.8% chance of a compatible transfusion, the addition of an antibody screen increases the safety to 99.94%, and a crossmatch increases this to 99.95%.[197] Complete transfusion testing for compatibility between donor and recipient blood ensures optimal safety and therapeutic effect of transfused blood, but the process is time-consuming and costly.

Once a serologic crossmatch is complete, blood is allocated and set aside for that patient for up to 72 hours. If unused, the product is returned to circulation for other potential recipients. This practice leads to the loss of use for that blood product and increases the chance for outdating of unused products. Eliminating the serologic crossmatch and replacing it with a type and screen followed by a computerized or electronic crossmatch improves the efficiency of the blood banking system, while maintaining, if not improving, patient safety.[198] According to FDA guidance in the United States, a computerized match requires that software determine if incompatibility exists between donor and recipient. Decisions are made based on two separate ABO/Rh typing results from separate specimens from both the donor and the recipient. Under usual perioperative circumstances, measuring the two results from a single specimen should be avoided, as a major cause of ABO errors is a mislabeled specimen.[199] Mislabeling of specimens occurs with an incidence of more than 7 per 1000 specimens with "wrong blood in tube" occurring at a rate of 0.4 instances per 1000 specimens.[200] Interestingly, in this study by Novis and associates, the incident error rate did not decrease between the years of 2007 and 2015, despite the institution of barcode scanning.

A clinically significant current or previously detected positive antibody screen excludes the use of the electronic crossmatch and a serologic crossmatch should be performed.[201]

Patients with a history of a clinically significant antibody despite a current negative antibody screen should continue to be excluded from the electronic crossmatch. The concern is that low titers of circulating antibodies can produce a falsely negative antibody screen.[202]

The type and screen without the serologic crossmatch does not protect against reactions caused by antibodies reactive against lower incidence antigens. These are antigens not represented on the screening cells but present on the donor RBCs. In general, antibodies that are not detected in the type and screen are weakly reactive antibodies that do not result in serious hemolytic transfusion reactions. In a study of 13,950 patients, Oberman and associates[203] discovered only eight "clinically significant" antibodies after complete crossmatch that were not detected during the antibody screening. The antibodies were all in lower titer and were believed to be unlikely to cause serious hemolytic reactions.

Maximal Surgical Blood Order Schedule

In the 1960s and 1970s, the number of crossmatched units ordered for certain surgical procedures frequently far exceeded the number actually transfused. This led to blood being set aside and potential outdating. To better quantify this problem, the crossmatch-to-transfusion (C/T) ratio has been used. If the C/T ratio is high, a blood bank is burdened with keeping a large blood inventory, using excessive personnel time, and having a high incidence of outdated units. Sarma[204] recommended that for surgical procedures in which the average number of units transfused per case is less than 0.5, determination of the ABO-Rh type and a screen of the patient serum for unexpected antibodies (type and screen) should be used. This would be in lieu of a complete crossmatch for patients with negative antibody screens. More recently, Dexter and associates[205] established that using the estimated blood loss reported in an anesthesia information system is more efficacious at predicting the need for transfusions. Their data indicated that for surgical procedures with less than 50 mL expected blood loss, a type and screen is not required.

To increase the rate of use and lower the C/T ratio, blood banks attempt to decrease the emphasis on crossmatching of blood through such programs as the maximal surgical blood order schedule (MSBOS).[206] Ideally, blood banks aim to maintain C/T ratio of less than 2.[207] The MSBOS consists of a list of surgical procedures and the maximal number of units of blood that the blood bank will crossmatch for each procedure. This schedule is based on the blood transfusion experience for surgical cases in a hospital. Each hospital's MSBOS is unique to that practice. The implementation of the MSBOS resulted in a decrease of blood unit expiration from 6.5% to 4.5% at the University of Michigan.[208] Subsequently, patients were categorized into one of three groups: (1) requiring a crossmatch, (2) requiring a type and screen, or (3) no sample required. Preoperative blood orders decreased by 38% with a C/T ratio that decreased by 27%. However, the authors noted the rate of emergency release RBC units increased from 2.2 to 3.1 patients per 1000, but 60% of those patients requiring emergency release blood were undergoing emergency surgery. Of the patients in the "no sample required" category, only a marginal increase of 0.4 to 1 per 1000 patients requiring emergency release blood was noted.[209]

Instead of the blood bank examining the next day's surgical schedule and allocating blood as described in the previous paragraph, now information technology systems have the capability of displaying the surgical schedule along with the MSBOS's recommendation regarding blood preparation. The night before, the blood bank examines the surgical schedule and MSBOS recommendations to see whether blood is needed. The blood bank also uses the MSBOS information to see if additional testing should be performed. Missing tests are communicated to the primary team so that appropriate orders can be placed.

Emergency Transfusion

In many situations, urgent need for blood occurs before completion of compatibility testing (ABO-Rh typing, antibody screen, or crossmatch; see also Chapter 66, which describes transfusion challenges in patients who require surgery and anesthesia after injury from trauma). In essence, for those situations that do not allow time for complete testing, an abbreviated format for testing can be used or uncrossmatched group O blood can be allocated. The procedures described in the following paragraphs aim to provide the potentially life-saving blood product, while minimizing the risk for acute, intravascular hemolytic transfusion reactions.

TYPE-SPECIFIC, PARTIALLY CROSSMATCHED BLOOD

When using uncrossmatched blood, it is best to obtain at least an ABO-Rh typing and an immediate-phase crossmatch. This incomplete crossmatch is accomplished by adding the patient's serum to donor RBCs at room temperature, centrifuging it, and then reading it for macroscopic agglutination. This takes 1 to 5 minutes and eliminates serious hemolytic reactions resulting from errors that may occur in ABO typing. Only a few unexpected antibodies outside the ABO systems are detected, such as those directed against antigens in the MN, P, and Lewis systems, most of which are not clinically significant.

TYPE-SPECIFIC, UNCROSSMATCHED BLOOD

For proper use of type-specific blood, the ABO-Rh type must be determined during the patient's hospitalization. Reports of blood type from patients, relatives, outside medical records may be inaccurate. For those who have never been exposed to foreign RBCs, most ABO type-specific transfusions are successful. Caution should be used for patients who have previously received transfusions or have been pregnant. Historically, in the military, type-specific uncrossmatched blood has been used in emergencies with no serious consequence. In the civilian setting, using 1 year's experience with 56 patients, uncrossmatched, type-specific blood for emergency transfusion produced no adverse effects.[210] The investigators concluded that although the use of uncrossmatched blood is usually safe, the potential for serious reaction still exists, and they cautioned against its indiscriminate use. For those who have previously been exposed to RBC antigens, transfusion of the ABO-Rh type-specific, uncrossmatched blood may be more hazardous.

TYPE O RH-NEGATIVE (UNIVERSAL DONOR), UNCROSSMATCHED BLOOD

Type O blood lacks A and B antigens and consequently cannot be hemolyzed by anti-A or anti-B antibodies in the recipient's plasma (see Tables 49.13 and 49.14). Type O blood can be used for transfusions when typing or crossmatching is not available. However, some type O donors produce high titers of hemolytic IgG, IgM, anti-A, and anti-B antibodies. High titers of these hemolysins in donor units are capable of causing destruction of A or B RBCs of a non–type O recipient. Type O Rh-negative, uncrossmatched PRBCs should be used in preference to type O Rh-negative whole blood because packed erythrocytes have smaller volumes of plasma and are almost free of hemolytic anti-A and anti-B antibodies. If type O Rh-negative whole blood is to be used, the blood bank must supply type O blood that is previously determined to be free of hemolytic anti-A and anti-B antibodies.

Some hospitals have an emergency-release pack of uncrossmatched O negative RBCs. This blood usually can be provided in approximately 5 minutes for urgent situations. Also available in some hospitals is a massive transfusion protocol (MTP), which provides 4 units uncrossmatched O negative RBCs, 4 units thawed AB plasma, and 1 unit of platelet concentrates. Use of MTP blood is determined by physician judgment, but that decision is reviewed after the emergency situation. Although uncrossmatched blood appropriately causes great concern, the risks for complication appear to be quite infrequent.[211] Boisen and associates describe only a 0.1% occurrence of detectable hemolysis in the transfusion of 10,916 uncrossmatched units in 2906 patients.[212] Also, in patients transfused with uncrossmatched blood with antigens for which they are later found to have antibodies against, only 7 out of 262 patients experienced hemolytic reactions.[213]

If emergency transfusion of more than 2 units of type O Rh-negative, uncrossmatched whole blood is used, the patient cannot be switched to his or her blood type (A, B, or AB) once that is determined. Switching could cause major intravascular hemolysis of donor RBCs because of high titers of transfused anti-A and anti-B. Continued use of O Rh-negative whole blood results only in minor hemolysis of recipient RBCs and hyperbilirubinemia. The patient must not be transfused with his or her correct blood type until the blood bank determines that the transfused anti-A and anti-B has decreased to levels that permit safe transfusion of type-specific blood.

Fresh Whole Blood

The definition of fresh whole blood is based on storage time, which varies widely in the literature.[214] Some investigators[215] define fresh blood as blood stored at 1°C to 6°C within 8 hours after collection and used within 24 hours, while other investigators define it as fresh if it has been stored less than 48 hours at 2°C to 5°C. The degree to which fresh blood regains its various functions is directly related to the length of storage and whether it has been cooled. The longer blood is stored, the less effective it becomes, especially regarding coagulation. Whole blood stored for 24 hours at 4°C has less hemostatic effects than blood stored for less than 6 hours because of decreased platelet aggregability.[216] Whole blood that has been typed and crossmatched, but not cooled, retains most of the factors of normal in vivo blood. The difference between 1 hour and 2 days of storage can be tremendous and may impact clinical outcomes.

Numerous studies have examined the use and safety of fresh whole blood, particularly by the U.S. military in Iraq and Afghanistan.[217] Whole blood has been a component of transfusion for over 70 years.[9] Experience in Vietnam showed that typed and crossmatched warm whole blood was extremely effective in treating the coagulopathy from massive transfusions.[2,3,218]

Complications

COAGULATION ABNORMALITIES

Major trauma or blood loss will initiate a cascade of coagulation abnormalities, including a consumptive coagulopathy from tissue hypoperfusion as manifested by increased protein C levels.[219] This coagulopathy is caused by a combination of factors, of which the most important are the dilution of coagulation factors by volume administration (e.g., crystalloid, colloid, PRBC), and the duration of hypotension and hypoperfusion. Various protocols have been developed for approaches to massive blood transfusion administration (Fig. 49.7). Patients who have adequate perfusion and are not hypotensive for a long period (e.g., 1 hour or less) may tolerate administration of multiple units of blood without developing a coagulopathy. The patient who is hypotensive and has received many units of RBCs will develop a coagulopathy that resembles DIC. When such bleeding occurs, the differential diagnosis is dilutional thrombocytopenia, deficiency of factors V and VIII, a DIC-like syndrome, or a transfusion reaction. Clinical signs include oozing into the surgical field, hematuria, gingival bleeding, petechia, bleeding from venipuncture sites, and ecchymosis.

THROMBOCYTOPENIA

Thrombocytopenia is defined as a platelet count less than 150×10^9/L or more than 50% decrease compared with the previous measurement. Clinical bleeding usually does not occur during surgery until platelet counts are less than 50×10^9/L and for spontaneous bleeding until platelet counts are less than 10×10^9/L.[220] Independent of whether whole blood or PRBCs are given, few viable platelets exist in a unit of blood stored for more than 24 hours. For whole blood stored at 4°C, platelets are damaged sufficiently to be readily trapped and absorbed by the reticuloendothelial system soon after infusion. Even platelets that are not immediately stored have a reduced survival time.

Thrombocytopenia can trigger a hemorrhagic diathesis in a patient who has received multiple units of bank blood.

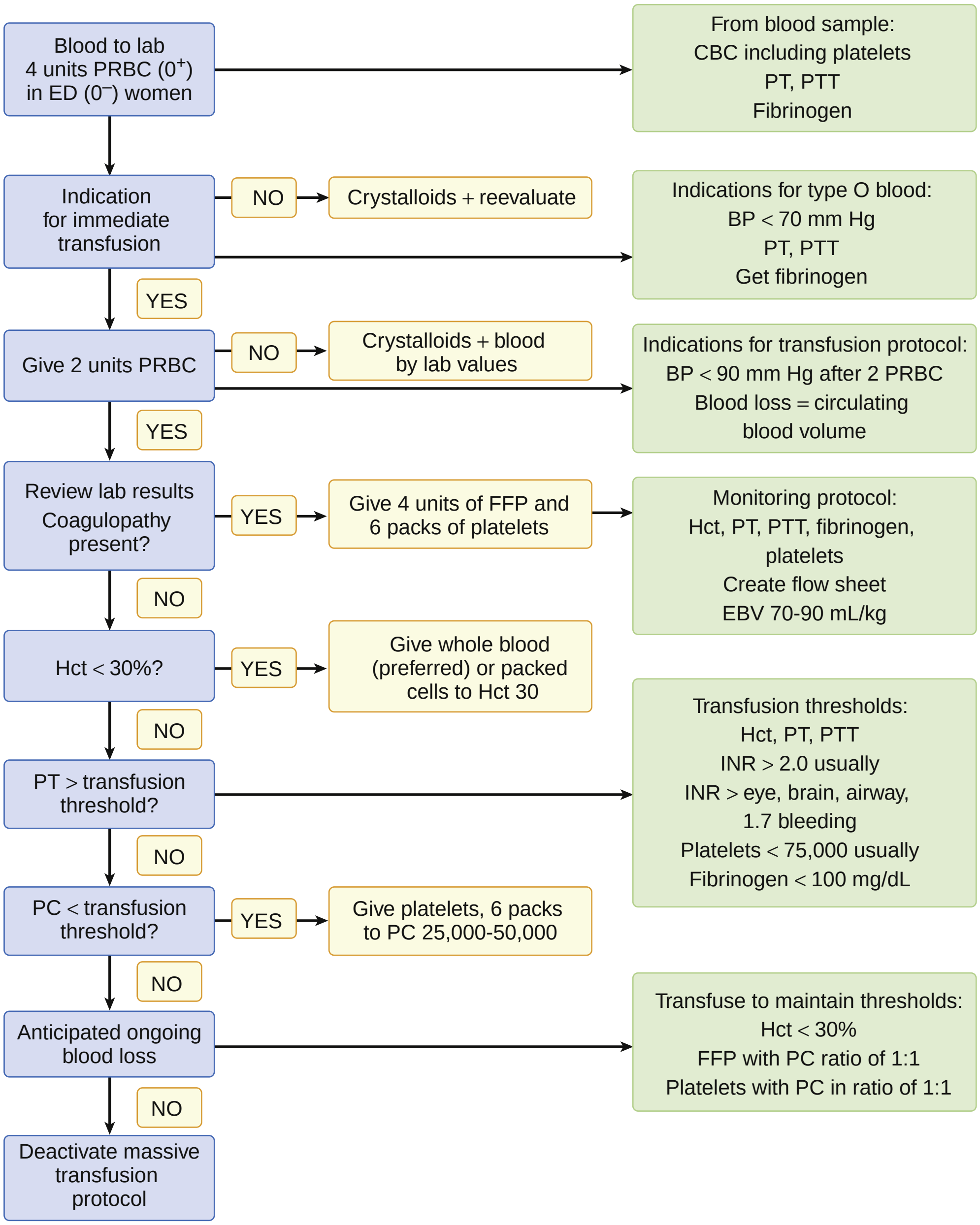

Blood to lab
4 units PRBC (0+)
in ED (0−) women
From blood sample:
CBC including platelets
PT, PTT
Fibrinogen
Indication
for immediate
transfusion
NO
Crystalloids + reevaluate
Indications for type O blood:
BP < 70 mm Hg
PT, PTT
Get fibrinogen
YES
Give 2 units PRBC
NO
Crystalloids + blood
by lab values
Indications for transfusion protocol:
BP < 90 mm Hg after 2 PRBC
Blood loss = circulating
blood volume
YES
Review lab results
Coagulopathy
present?
YES
Give 4 units of FFP and
6 packs of platelets
Monitoring protocol:
Hct, PT, PTT, fibrinogen,
platelets
Create flow sheet
EBV 70-90 mL/kg
NO
Hct < 30%?
YES
Give whole blood
(preferred) or packed
cells to Hct 30
NO
PT > transfusion
threshold?
Transfusion thresholds:
Hct, PT, PTT
INR > 2.0 usually
INR > eye, brain, airway,
1.7 bleeding
Platelets < 75,000 usually
Fibrinogen < 100 mg/dL
NO
PC < transfusion
threshold?
YES
Give platelets, 6 packs
to PC 25,000-50,000
NO
Anticipated ongoing
blood loss
Transfuse to maintain thresholds:
Hct < 30%
FFP with PC ratio of 1:1
Platelets with PC in ratio of 1:1
NO
Deactivate massive
transfusion
protocol

Fig. 49.7 This algorithm for diagnosing and treating a massive transfusion was modified from the massive transfusion protocol used at the San Francisco General Hospital. This protocol suggests how to approach a patient with major blood loss. *BP,* Blood pressure; *CBC,* complete blood cell count; *EBV,* effective blood volume; *ED,* emergency department; *FFP,* fresh frozen plasma; *Hct,* hematocrit; *INR,* international normalized ratio; *PC,* platelet count; *PRBCs,* packed red blood cells; *PT,* prothrombin time; *PTT,* partial thromboplastin time.

Platelet counts decreased to less than 100 × 10^9/L when 10 to 15 units of blood were given to acutely wounded, previously healthy soldiers.[219] Miller and colleagues[2] found that platelet counts less than 75 × 10^9/L are a reasonably accurate guide as to when patients will develop a bleeding problem from dilutional thrombocytopenia (see Table 49.10). One trauma group suggests that a higher than normal platelet count may be required in severely injured trauma patients[222] to maintain adequate hemostasis because damaged capillaries require platelets to "plug the holes." The military and trauma hospitals tend to follow transfusion ratios and do not follow strict platelet thresholds for transfusion.

Several investigators[223,224] have questioned the role of dilutional thrombocytopenia in the coagulopathy of massively transfused patients. They point out that the platelet count rarely decreases to as low a level as would be predicted from dilution alone (Fig. 49.8). It may be that platelets are released into the circulation from the spleen and bone marrow but that some of the platelets present function poorly. Patients with chronic thrombocytopenia or leukemia often do not have a hemorrhagic diathesis with a platelet count lower than 15 × 10^9/L. For unexplained reasons, patients with an acute induced thrombocytopenia (e.g., from blood transfusions) develop a hemorrhagic diathesis at a much higher platelet count than patients with chronic thrombocytopenia (e.g., idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura).

Most would agree that platelets should not be given to treat laboratory evidence of thrombocytopenia unless

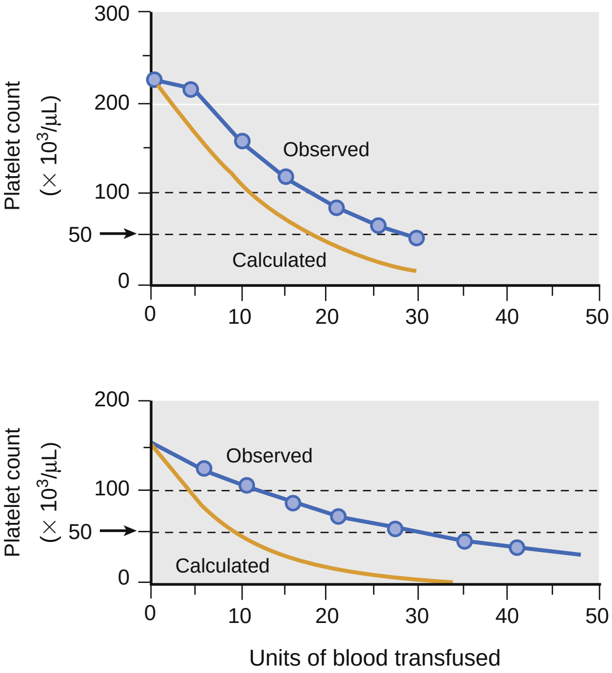


Fig. 49.8 Mean platelet counts after massive transfusions in relation to number of units of blood transfused. Observed versus predicted values calculated on the basis of 2 blood exchange models. (From Myllylä G. New transfusion practice and haemostasis. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand. Suppl.* 1988;89:76.)

clinical coagulopathy is also present. Treating laboratory numbers without correlation with the clinical status is fundamentally contrary to good medical practice. When the platelet count is less than 50 to 70 × 10^9/L, coagulation is likely impaired due to a combination of dilutional thrombocytopenia and DIC. In many cases, certainly with a concomitant medical condition (e.g., DIC, sepsis), the platelet count as a result of dilutional thrombocytopenia cannot be predicted,[225] nor can the actual impact on clinical bleeding. This is just one of the reasons why efficacy of blood product administration is often difficult to assess. Growing use of point-of-care viscoelastic tests such as tTEG and rotational thromboelastometry instead of platelet count to guide hemostatic therapy is becoming more common.[226]

LOW LEVELS OF FIBRINOGEN AND FACTORS V AND VIII

Considerable attention has been paid to the decreases in blood fibrinogen concentrations that occur during blood loss and blood replacement, likely due to the availability of a lyophilized fibrinogen concentrate for clinical use. Fibrinogen supplementation was previously provided by administration of FFP and cryoprecipitate. Levy and colleagues[227] provided an excellent scholarly review of fibrinogen and hemostasis and concluded that fibrinogen is critical for effective clot formation, and its monitoring and supplementation as the treatment of major bleeding should be recognized. Many prospective studies of fibrinogen supplementation in acquired bleeding report that it is the most effective method of supplementation, and a comprehensive safety profile of fibrinogen concentrate is beginning to appear.

Factors V and VIII may also be affected during storage and significant transfusion.[228] These factors decrease to 50% and 30% of normal, respectively, in whole blood after 21 days of storage[229] and are not present in units of PRBCs. By 35 days of storage, factor V and factor VIII fall further to approximately 20% activity of normal.[230]

Administration of FFP, which contains all the factors, has been recommended. However, this practice is of questionable benefit because only 5% to 20% of factor V and 30% of factor VIII are needed for adequate hemostasis during surgery, and even during massive blood transfusion, factors V and VIII rarely decrease below those levels.

DISSEMINATED INTRAVASCULAR COAGULATION–LIKE SYNDROME

The coagulation system consists of clotting and fibrinolytic mechanisms. The function of the former is to prevent excessive blood loss, and that of the latter is to ensure circulation within the vasculature. With this DIC-like syndrome, the clotting system is deranged, leading to disseminated fibrin deposition, which renders the blood unclottable. The deposited fibrin may severely alter the microcirculation and lead to ischemic necrosis in various organs, particularly the kidney. Table 49.15 displays the interchange between various medical conditions and their impact on various measures of the coagulation system.[231]

The specific reasons for the development of DIC syndrome are usually not apparent. However, hypoxic acidotic tissues with stagnant blood flow probably release tissue thromboplastin directly or through the protein C pathway.[219] The release of tissue plasminogen activator from damaged tissue may cause fibrinolysis. The coagulation system is activated by tumor necrosis factor and endotoxins, resulting in consumption of factors I, II, V, and VIII, and platelets. In an attempt to counteract the hypercoagulable state, the fibrinolytic system is activated to lyse the excessive fibrin. If enough thromboplastin lodges in the circulating blood, the result is massive focal necrosis or more generalized activation of the coagulation system.

DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF A HEMORRHAGIC DIATHESIS AFTER BLOOD TRANSFUSIONS

Although treatment is more likely to be successful when the cause of the bleeding problem has been identified, precise diagnosis is often difficult. In addition to clinical examination of the patient, various coagulation laboratory tests may be helpful. One traditional approach has been to obtain a blood sample for platelet count, PTT, and plasma fibrinogen level; observation of a clot for size, stability, and lysis; and observation of the plasma for evidence of hemolysis. If the PTT is 1.5 times normal or more and other tests are normal, the bleeding is probably a result of very low levels of factors V and VIII. This can be treated with FFP or with cryoprecipitate (Fig. 49.9).

Whether platelets are administered in the form of fresh blood, platelet-rich plasma, or platelet concentrates depends on intravascular volume replacement requirements, personal preference, and availability of laboratory personnel. Fresh blood (<6 hours old) supplies the

TABLE 49.15 Laboratory Findings in Various Platelet and Coagulation Disorders in the Intensive Care Unit

Condition	Prothrombin Time	Activated Partial Thromboplastin	Fibrinogen Level	D-Dimer Level	Bleeding Time	Platelet Count	Findings on Blood Smear
Vitamin K deficiency or use of vitamin K antagonist	Prolonged	Normal or mildly prolonged	Normal	Unaffected	Unaffected	Unaffected	
Aspirin or thienopyridines	Unaffected	Unaffected	Unaffected	Unaffected	Prolonged	Unaffected	
Liver failure							
Early stage	Prolonged	Unaffected	Unaffected	Unaffected	Unaffected	Unaffected	
End stage	Prolonged	Prolonged	Low	Increased	Prolonged	Decreased	
Uremia	Unaffected	Unaffected	Unaffected	Unaffected	Prolonged	Unaffected	
DIC	Prolonged	Prolonged	Low	Increased	Prolonged	Decreased	Fragmented red cells
TTP	Unaffected	Unaffected	Unaffected	Unaffected	Prolonged	Very low	Fragmented red cells
Hyperfibrinolysis	Prolonged	Prolonged	Low	Very high	Possibly prolonged	Unaffected	

DIC, Disseminated intravascular coagulation; *TTP,* thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura.
From Hunt BJ. Bleeding and coagulopathies in critical care. *N Engl J Med.* 2014;370;847–859.

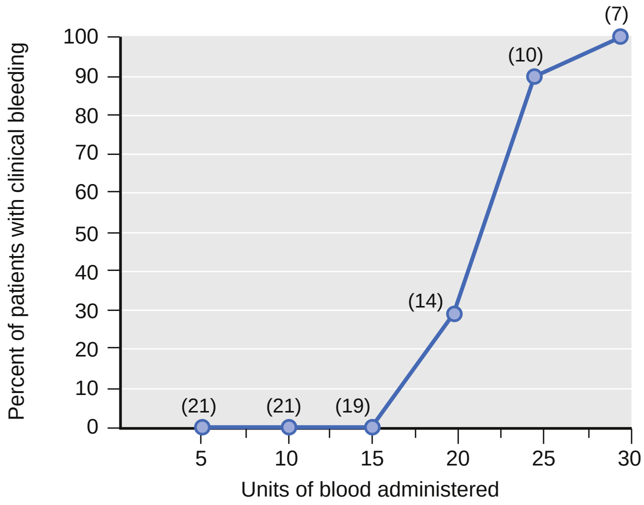


Fig. 49.9 Correlation between units of blood administered and percent of patients who had a hemorrhagic diathesis. The numbers in parentheses represent the number of patients at each data point. (From Miller RD. Transfusion therapy and associated problems. *Reg Refresher Courses Anesthesiol.* 1973;1:101.)

largest number of platelets per donation. More than 80% of the platelets can be given by platelet-rich plasma, which has half of the volume of a unit of blood. However, because most blood banks only have components, platelet concentrates are frequently recommended. Platelet concentrates are contained in a 50-mL unit and provide approximately 70% of the platelets in a unit of blood. In a 70-kg person, approximately 10 units of platelet concentrates are required to increase the platelet count by 10 × 10^9/L in absence of a consumptive process. Although logistically difficult to obtain, fresh blood is extremely effective in treating transfusion-induced coagulopathies. Lavee and associates[232] found that 1 unit of fresh whole blood was as effective as, if not superior to, 8 to 10 platelet units.

Determining the plasma fibrinogen level is useful because this coagulation factor does not decrease in whole blood. If the in vivo plasma fibrinogen level is low (<150 mg/dL), it is not a result of a dilutional coagulopathy and strongly suggests DIC or a DIC-like syndrome. DIC is likely with thrombocytopenia, hypofibrinogenemia, and lysis of clot.[228] With much less plasma, dilution of certain coagulation values may be more profound with the use of PRBCs rather than whole blood. With use of PRBCs, fibrinogen levels decreased significantly in contrast to use of whole blood, in which fibrinogen levels remained unchanged unless DIC is present (Fig. 49.10).[233]

An algorithm for the evaluation and initial therapy of a patient with a suspected coagulopathy is given in Fig. 49.11 (see also the section on blood transfusions, pharmacology, and hemostasis).

Citrate Intoxication and Hyperkalemia

Citrate intoxication leads to hypocalcemia, dysrhythmia, and hypotension due to the sequestration of ionized calcium by citrate. The probability of citrate intoxication is increased in pediatric populations[234] and in the setting of hyperventilation, liver disease, and liver transplantation. Infusion of more than 1 unit of blood every 10 minutes can lead to decreasing ionized Ca^{2+} levels. Even at these rates of infusion, ionized calcium levels do not decrease enough to cause bleeding. Citrate reactions in the setting of apheresis for donation of blood components, however, are more common and in one study occurred in more than 5% of donations.[235]

Similar to citrate intoxication, hyperkalemia as a result of transfusion is relatively rare. Although hyperkalemia is occasionally reported,[234,236] large amounts of blood must be given. Even though serum K^+ levels may be as high as 19 to 50 mEq/L in blood stored for 21 days,[237] the net gain of K^+ is

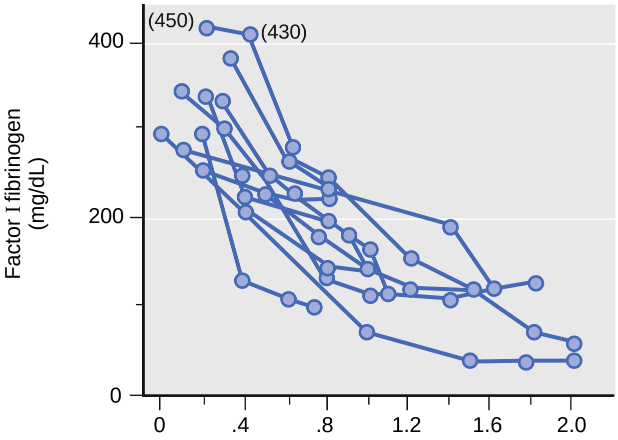


Fig. 49.10 Decreases in fibrinogen level as blood volume is replaced with Adsol-packed red blood cells and crystalloid solutions. Each patient is represented by a solid line. (From Murray DJ, Olson J, Strauss R, et al. Coagulation changes during packed red cell replacement of major blood loss. *Anesthesiology.* 1988;69:839.)

approximately only 10 mEq/L when the loss of K^+ via blood loss is taken into account. For clinically significant hyperkalemia to occur, banked blood must be given at a rate of 120 mL/minute or more. Although still rare, hyperkalemia can occur more frequently in patients with impaired renal function.[238]

Temperature

Administration of blood that has been stored at 4°C can decrease the recipient's temperature and should be avoided if possible due to complications from hypothermia. Hypothermia can interfere with the coagulation process. Even small decreases in body temperature can significantly impair coagulation factors and platelet function.[239] If the temperature decreases to less than 30°C, ventricular irritability and cardiac arrest may occur. Shivering from even mild hypothermia increases metabolic demands and is counterproductive to tissue perfusion, especially in settings where anemia or hypoperfusion is contributing to tissue ischemia.[240]

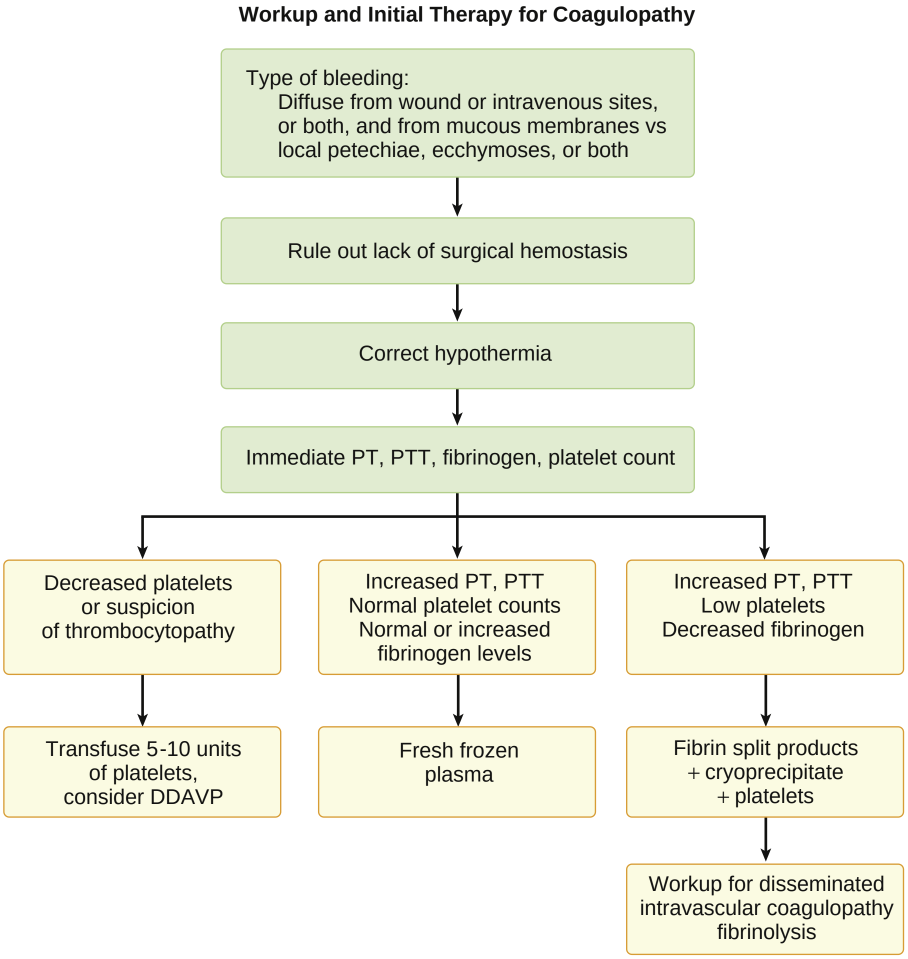

Workup and Initial Therapy for Coagulopathy
Type of bleeding:
Diffuse from wound or intravenous sites, or both, and from mucous membranes vs local petechiae, ecchymoses, or both
Rule out lack of surgical hemostasis
Correct hypothermia
Immediate PT, PTT, fibrinogen, platelet count
Decreased platelets or suspicion of thrombocytopathy
Increased PT, PTT Normal platelet counts Normal or increased fibrinogen levels
Increased PT, PTT Low platelets Decreased fibrinogen
Transfuse 5-10 units of platelets, consider DDAVP
Fresh frozen plasma
Fibrin split products + cryoprecipitate + platelets
Workup for disseminated intravascular coagulopathy fibrinolysis

Fig. 49.11 Algorithm for the evaluation and initial therapy of a patient with suspected perioperative coagulopathy. The evaluation is based on the clinical scenario and is affected by the type and location of injury, the amount of fluid administered, and the age and body temperature of the patient. *DDAVP,* 1-Deamino-8-D-arginine vasopressin, a vasopressin analogue also known as desmopressin acetate; *PT,* prothrombin time; *PTT,* partial thromboplastin time. (Modified from Habibi S, Corrsin DB, McDermott JC, et al. Trauma and massive hemorrhage. In: Muravchick S, Miller RD, eds. *Atlas of Anesthesia: Subspecialty Care.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.)

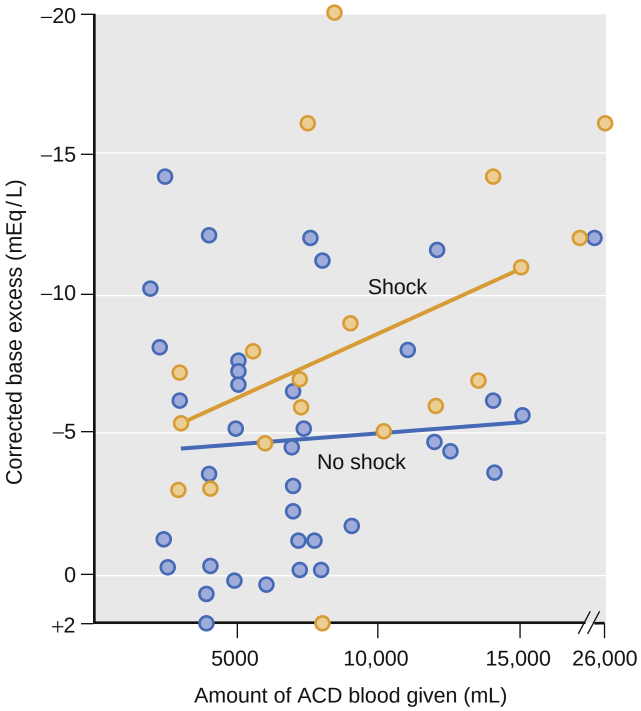


Fig. 49.12 Correlation between the amount of blood administered (milliliters) and intraoperative base excess. *ACD,* Acid citrate dextrose. (From Miller RD, Tong MJ, Robbins TO. Effects of massive transfusion of blood on acid-base balance. *JAMA.* 1971;216:1762.)

Maintaining a patient's normal temperature is considered to be increasingly important. Decreases in body temperature can be prevented by warming the blood to body temperature before transfusing. Perhaps the safest and most common method of warming blood is to pass it through plastic coils or plastic cassettes in a warm water (37°C-38°C) bath or warming plates. These heat exchangers should have upper (e.g., 43°C) and lower (e.g., 33°C) temperature limits.

Acid-Base Abnormalities

The pH of most storage media is very acidic (e.g., pH 5.5 for CPD). When this solution is added to a unit of freshly drawn blood, the pH of the blood immediately decreases from 7.4 to 7.1. As a result of accumulation of lactic and pyruvic acids by RBC metabolism and glycolysis, the pH of bank blood continues to decrease to approximately 6.9 after 21 days of storage. A large portion of the acidosis can be accounted for by the carbon dioxide partial pressure (P_{CO_2}) of 150 to 220 mm Hg. P_{CO_2} is high mainly because the plastic container of blood does not provide an escape mechanism for carbon dioxide. With adequate ventilation in the recipient, the high P_{CO_2} should be of little consequence.

Even when the P_{CO_2} is returned to 40 mm Hg, a metabolic acidosis can be still present in blood (see Table 49.4). The metabolic acid-base response to blood transfusion can be quite variable (Fig. 49.12).[241] The empirical administration of sodium bicarbonate is not indicated because of these unpredictable acid-base changes, but administration should be guided by analyses of arterial blood gases.[242] Blood transfusions provide citrate, which can lead to the endogenous generation of bicarbonate. In some patients, this leads to a significant incidence of metabolic alkalosis after blood transfusions.[242]

Transfusion Reactions

HEMOLYTIC TRANSFUSION REACTION

One of the most catastrophic transfusion reactions is intravascular hemolysis. Intravascular hemolysis occurs when there is a direct attack on transfused donor cells by recipient antibody and complement. Such a reaction can occur from infusion of as little as 10 mL of blood.[243] If properly treated, death is rare.[244] However, prevention of renal failure and DIC is crucial. Hemolytic transfusion reactions involving extravascular RBC destruction are generally less serious than those of the intravascular variety. In these cases, recipient antibody coats but does not immediately hemolyze the transfused RBCs and destruction occurs primarily in the reticuloendothelial system.

Since 1975, the FDA has required that all fatal reactions occurring in blood recipients or donors be reported within 24 hours by telephone or within 7 days in writing by all FDA-registered transfusion services. From 1976 to 1985, 328 deaths were reported and analyzed.[245] Of these deaths, 159 were acute hemolytic reactions and 23 from delayed reactions. Of the 159 deaths from acute hemolytic reactions, 137 were caused by errors involving ABO incompatibility. More than half of these errors occurred after the blood had been issued by the blood bank and were committed by practitioners administering blood products to the patient in the operating room, emergency department, ICU, or ward. In 2011, the incidence of an acute hemolytic transfusion reaction resulting from ABO incompatibility was 1:1200 to 1:190,000.[246] The incidence of hemolytic transfusion reactions is sufficient enough that The Joint Commission[244] requires peer-review programs to reduce transfusion errors and complications. Specifically, two patient identifiers and confirmation of the correct blood product are required before a blood product can be given. New technologies are being used to facilitate a decreased incidence of transfusion-related errors such as barcode scanning of blood prior to administration.

Signs and Symptoms

The classic signs and symptoms (Table 49.16) of a hemolytic transfusion reaction—chills, fever, chest and flank pain, and nausea—are masked by anesthesia. Under general anesthesia, hemoglobinuria, bleeding diathesis, or hypotension may be the only clue. The presenting sign is usually hemoglobinuria. As little as 50 mL of incompatible blood may exceed the binding capacity of haptoglobin, which is a protein that can bind approximately 100 mg of Hb/100 mL of plasma. Usually, free hemoglobin circulates as a complex with haptoglobin, which is cleared by the reticuloendothelial system (Fig. 49.13). A sample of plasma that contains 2 mg/dL of Hb is faintly pink or light brown. When the level of Hb reaches 100 mg/dL, the plasma is red. When the level of plasma Hb reaches 150 mg/dL, hemoglobinuria occurs. In general, the quantity of the free Hb in the plasma correlates with the volume of incompatible blood transfused.

TABLE 49.16 Frequency and Signs and Symptoms of Hemolytic Transfusion Reactions in 40 Patients

Sign or Symptom	No. Patients
Fever	19
Fever and chills	16
Chest pain	6
Hypotension	6
Nausea	2
Flushing	2
Dyspnea	2
Hemoglobinuria	1

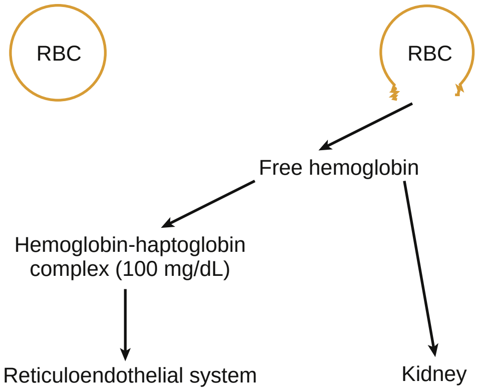

RBC
RBC
Free hemoglobin
Hemoglobin-haptoglobin complex (100 mg/dL)
Reticuloendothelial system
Kidney

Fig. 49.13 Schematic representation of the effect on hemolyzed erythrocytes *(RBC)* due to the administration of incompatible blood.

Complement activation also causes release of various substances, including histamines and vasoactive amines. The symptoms can be so alarming that cessation of blood is indicated, even if Hb is not seen in plasma. Laboratory tests that should be performed if a hemolytic transfusion reaction is suspected include serum haptoglobin, plasma and urine Hb, bilirubin, and direct antiglobulin determinations. The direct antiglobulin test can confirm the presence of hemolytic transfusion reaction because it shows that antibody is attached to transfused donor RBCs.

Treatment

Although several consequences of intravascular hemolysis are possible, the renal and coagulation systems are affected the most. The cause of acute renal failure from intravascular hemolysis is likely due to precipitation of Hb in the form of acid hematin in the distal tubule causing mechanical tubular blockage. The magnitude of the precipitation probably is inversely related to the pH and volume of urine flow. Therapy should be directed toward maintaining urinary output in excess of 75 mL/h by generous administration of intravenous fluids and diuretics. One approach is summarized in Box 49.6 and includes the administration of crystalloids to maintain adequate intravascular volume while initially administering mannitol. If this is ineffective, the dose of mannitol may be increased or the use of more potent diuretics, such as furosemide may be required to maintain adequate urinary output. Alkalization of the urine to prevent precipitation of acid hematin in the distal tubules is of questionable value but is easy and therefore recommended. DIC commonly occurs with hemolytic transfusion reactions, probably because RBC stroma is severed, releasing erythrocytin, which activates the intrinsic system of coagulation and leads to fibrin formation. Subsequently, platelets and factors I, II, V, and VII are consumed. As soon as a hemolytic transfusion reaction is recognized, platelet count, PT, and PTT should be obtained to provide baseline values with which subsequent laboratory values can be compared. Hypotension during a hemolytic transfusion reaction may result from activation of the kallikrein system.[247]

BOX 49.6 Steps in the Treatment of a Hemolytic Transfusion Reaction

1. Stop the transfusion.
2. Maintain the urine output at a minimum of 75-100 mL/h by the following methods:
   a. Administer fluids intravenously and possibly mannitol
   b. Administer furosemide if intravenous fluids and mannitol are ineffective
3. Alkalinize the urine
4. Assay urine and plasma hemoglobin concentrations.
5. Determine platelet count, prothrombin time, partial thromboplastin time, and serum fibrinogen level.
6. Return unused blood to blood bank for repeat crossmatch.
7. Send patient's blood and urine sample to blood bank for examination.
8. Prevent hypotension to ensure adequate renal blood flow.

DELAYED HEMOLYTIC TRANSFUSION REACTION (IMMUNE EXTRAVASCULAR REACTION)

An immediate hemolytic transfusion reaction often is a dramatic event because the concentration of the antibody is high enough to cause immediate and appreciable RBC destruction. In many cases of hemolytic transfusion reaction, the transfused donor cells may survive initially, but after a variable delay (2-21 days), they are hemolyzed.[248] This type of reaction occurs mainly in recipients sensitized to RBC antigens by previous blood transfusions or pregnancy. As a result, this delayed reaction is more common in females with a known disposition for alloimmunization. These delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions occur when the level of antibody at the time of transfusion is too low to be detected. RBC destruction occurs only when the level of antibody is increased after a secondary stimulus (i.e., anamnestic response). These delayed reactions are often manifested only by a decrease in the posttransfusion Hct. Jaundice and hemoglobinuria can occur in these patients and can cause some impairment in renal function, but only rarely do they lead to death. Unlike immediate reactions, antibodies most commonly involved in delayed hemolytic reactions are those in the Rh and Kidd systems rather than the ABO system. Although improved blood-banking procedures have decreased the incidence of immediate hemolytic transfusion reactions, the delayed hemolytic reaction may not be preventable, because pretransfusion testing is unable to detect very low levels of antibody present in potential blood recipients.

The surgical team should include in their differential diagnosis a delayed hemolytic transfusion reaction in any patient who has an unexplained decrease in Hb 2 to 21 days after a transfusion, even without obvious manifestation of hemolysis. This is especially important in a postoperative patient when the decrease in Hb may be attributed to postoperative bleeding and lead to a return to the operative room for additional surgery.

TRANSFUSION-RELATED ACUTE LUNG INJURY

When a blood transfusion is implicated as the cause of ARDS, it is classified as TRALI. From 2012 to 2016, TRALI was the most common cause of transfusion-related mortality reported to the FDA[118] (see Table 49.8). Although it is underdiagnosed and underreported,[249-251] the incidence of TRALI varies from 1.3% to 3%, depending on the surgical procedures. In addition, larger transfused blood volumes appear to be associated with an increased incidence.[252] TRALI occurs in the absence of excessive intravascular volume and cardiac failure[253] and manifests as noncardiogenic pulmonary edema. Symptoms and signs usually appear within 6 hours after transfusion with a clear temporal relationship to the transfusion.[249] Fever, dyspnea, fluid in the endotracheal tube, and severe hypoxia are typical. During anesthesia, a persistent decrease of oxygen saturation can herald its insidious onset. Although the chest radiograph reveals pulmonary edema, excessive circulatory volume (i.e., left atrial hypertension) is not present. All blood components, especially FFP, are implicated as inciting factors. The only specific therapy is to stop the transfusion and institute supportive measures. The blood bank should be notified to provide blood components from a different donor and to quarantine all units from the donor in question. All records should be reexamined, and the results of the patient's HLA testing should be evaluated if possible. Although most patients recover within 96 hours, TRALI remains the leading cause of transfusion-related death.

Identified risk factors include higher interleukin-8 (IL-8) levels, liver surgery, chronic alcohol abuse, shock, higher peak airway pressures while being mechanically ventilated, smoking, and positive fluid-balance.[254] As far as blood products are concerned, receipt of plasma or whole blood from female donors, especially multiparous donors, was identified as the most common risk factor. The decreased use of plasma from female donors has markedly reduced the incidence of TRALI.

TRANSFUSION ASSOCIATED CIRCULATORY OVERLOAD

Unlike TRALI, TACO refers to an excessive administration volume of blood leading to pulmonary edema with evidence for increased left-sided cardiac filling pressures (e.g., elevated B-type natriuretic peptide/protein, elevated central venous pressure, new or worse left heart failure). TRALI and TACO have overlapping clinical findings and can be easily confounded (Table 49.17). In 2016 the FDA noted an increase in the case fatalities attributable to TACO, perhaps as a result of the increased reporting and improved understanding of the two entities.[118]

Recently, a retrospective analysis demonstrated a decreasing incident rate—with a rate of 5.5% in 2004 and 3% in 2011.[254a] Reasons for the decline are unclear but may be related to a more restrictive transfusion practice, thus limiting the exposure of a patient to potential volume overload; although this latter statement is purely conjecture and not supported by the findings of Clifford and associates. Besides volume transfused, other risk factors included advancing age and intraoperative fluid balance. Interestingly, leukoreduction may play a role in the reduced incidence of TACO, suggesting additional mechanisms of this entity's pathophysiology.[255] Diuretics may be helpful, but in both cases supportive measures such as lung protective ventilation should be instituted.

TABLE 49.17 Comparison of definitions of TACO and TRALI per CDC Guidelines.

TACO	TRALI
New onset or exacerbation of 3 or more of the following within 6 h of cessation of transfusion: ▪ Acute respiratory distress (dyspnea, cough, orthopnea) ▪ Elevated brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) ▪ Elevated central venous pressure (CVP) ▪ Evidence of left heart failure ▪ Evidence of positive fluid balance ▪ Radiographic evidence of pulmonary edema	No evidence of acute lung injury prior to transfusion AND ALI onset during or within 6 h of cessation of transfusion AND Hypoxemia defined by any of these methods ▪ PaO2/FiO2 less than or equal to 300 mm Hg ▪ Oxygen saturation less than 90% on room air ▪ Other clinical evidence AND Radiographic evidence of bilateral infiltrates without evidence of left atrial hypertension (i.e., circulatory overload)

Adapted from the CDC, National Healthcare Safety Network Biovigilance Component. Hemovigilance Surveillance Protocol v2.5.2. April 2018.

NONHEMOLYTIC TRANSFUSION REACTIONS

Nonhemolytic reactions to blood transfusions usually are not serious and are categorized into febrile or allergic. The most common adverse reactions to blood transfusions are febrile reactions. The symptoms consist of chills, fever, headache, myalgia, nausea, and nonproductive cough occurring shortly after a blood transfusion and are caused by pyrogenic cytokines and intracellular contents released by donor leukocytes. Use of leukoreduced blood has lowered the incidence of febrile reactions.[256] Less frequently, the patient may have other symptoms such as hypotension, chest pain, vomiting, and dyspnea. Even pulmonary infiltrations with radiographic evidence of prehilar nodule formation and lower lung infiltrates along with overt pulmonary edema have been reported.[256] A direct antiglobulin test readily differentiates a hemolytic reaction from a febrile reaction because this test rules out the attachment of antibody to transfused donor RBCs. More serious complications may need to be ruled out (e.g., hemolytic or septic reactions), which may also be associated with fever and chills. No clear consensus exists on whether the transfusion should be terminated when a febrile reaction occurs.[257,258]

Allergic reactions can be minor, anaphylactoid, or anaphylactic. An anaphylactoid reaction is clinically similar to anaphylaxis, but it is not mediated by IgE. Most allergic transfusion reactions are minor and caused by the presence of foreign protein in the transfused blood. The most common symptom is urticaria associated with itching. Occasionally, the patient has facial swelling. The transfusion usually does not need to be discontinued. Antihistamines are used to relieve the symptoms of the allergic reaction. Infrequently, a more severe form of allergic reaction involving anaphylaxis occurs in which the patient has dyspnea, hypotension, laryngeal edema, chest pain, and shock. These are anaphylactic reactions caused by the transfusion of IgA to patients who are IgA deficient and have formed anti-IgA. This type of reaction does not involve red cell destruction and occurs very rapidly, usually after the transfusion of only a few milliliters of blood or plasma. Patients who experience anaphylactic reactions should be given transfusions with washed RBCs so that all traces of donor IgA have been removed or with blood that lacks the IgA protein.

OTHER ADVERSE EFFECTS OF BLOOD TRANSFUSION

Transfusion-Associated Graft-Versus-Host Disease

Transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) is caused by engraftment of donor lymphocytes from transfused blood products, initiating an immune reaction against recipient tissues. Severely immunocompromised patients are at risk. Also, directed donations from first- or second-degree relatives are at risk because transfused lymphocytes with shared HLA haplotypes cannot be recognized and eliminated.[259] A generalized rash, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia occur. Sepsis and death usually result. Irradiation of blood can prevent transfusion-associated GVHD from occurring, although one case reported it occurring despite leukocyte filtering.[260]

Transfusion-Related Immunomodulation

Homologous (allogeneic) blood transfusion exerts a nonspecific immunosuppressive action on the recipient. More than 150 clinical studies have tried to relate allogeneic blood transfusions to recurrence of resected cancers, postoperative infections, and virus activation, with the conclusion that adverse effects may be caused by transfusion-related immunomodulation. Although the conclusions of these studies are contradictory and inconclusive, universal leukocyte reduction of RBCs is moving forward.[261,262]

OTHER NONINFECTIOUS RISKS OF BLOOD TRANSFUSIONS

Table 49.18 lists some of the less common noninfectious risks of blood transfusions.

1. Microchimerism: Chimerism refers to more than one cell line in an individual organism. Specifically, donor lymphocytes may persist in a patient. The outcome of patients with microchimerism is not known.
2. Posttransfusion purpura: This refers to recipient alloantibodies attacking donor platelet antigens and is treated with intravenous immunoglobulin.
3. Hypotensive transfusion reactions: Activation of the coagulation pathway activates production of bradykinin and allergic reactions.
4. Transfusion-related AKI.
5. Alloimmunization: Only 2% to 8% of recipients who are chronically transfused develop RBC alloantibodies.[5]
6. HLA alloimmunization and human platelet antigen (HPA) alloimmunization: HLA alloimmunization refers to patients whose platelet counts become refractory to transfusions because of antibodies directed against HLA class I antibodies. HPA alloimmunization is platelet refractoriness from antibodies against platelet antigens (HPA antibodies).
7. Iron overload: This complication is the result of chronic transfusion therapy. Iron begins to deposit into vital organs. In the absence of adequate chelation of iron, fatal liver or heart dysfunction, or both, can occur.
8. Adverse ocular reaction: In 1997, 112 cases of bilateral conjunctival erythema occurred within 24 hours of transfusion. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) studied 49 other cases in 1997 and 1998 and concluded that they were toxic reactions to a chemical or material used in the blood collection filtration system, most likely a leukocyte-reducing filter system.[263]

Leukoreduction and Irradiation of Blood Transfusions

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Universal leukoreduction has been implemented because of some anticipated benefits. The chances of a febrile reaction can be reduced, especially in patients who are already alloimmunized from pregnancy. The risk for HLA alloimmunization from blood transfusions can be reduced, minimizing refractoriness to platelet transfusions, and the risk for CMV can be reduced. Leukoreduction can also decrease transmission of variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, leukocyte-induced immunomodulation, and even postoperative mortality. In 2001, the case for and against universal leukoreduction was debated.[264,265] As of 2004, these anticipated benefits were not confirmed, despite numerous studies attempting to do so,[266] but a “may help, won’t hurt” approach has been used to justify universal leukoreduction.[264]

IRRADIATED BLOOD PRODUCTS

Blood products are irradiated to prevent the proliferation of donor T lymphocytes in blood, which are the immediate cause of transfusion-associated GVHD.[267] Fewer than one per million transfusions result in transfusion-associated GVHD, but this disease has a fatality rate greater than 90%. Only cellular products (RBCs, platelets, and granulocytes), but not noncellular products (thawed frozen plasma and cryoprecipitate), need be irradiated. Indications for irradiation include:

1. Fetal recipients of intrauterine transfusions
2. Infants younger than 4 months of age
3. Critically ill children
4. Children younger than 1 year of age undergoing extracorporeal membrane oxygenation/extracorporeal cardiac life support
5. Recipients of cellular components known to be from a blood relative
6. Recipients of cellular components whose donor is selected for HLA compatibility
7. Recipients who have undergone marrow or peripheral blood progenitor cell transplantation

TABLE 49.18 Noninfectious Hazards of Transfusion

Transfusion Reaction	Incidence (per 10^5 Transfusions)	Etiology	Therapy	Prevention
Febrile	All components: 70-6800	Storage-generated proinflammatory cytokines Patient antileukocyte antibodies bind to donor leukocytes	Stop transfusing Give antipyretics Supportive care	Prestorage leukoreduction
TACO	All components: 16.8-8000 Practice-dependent	Circulatory overload Patients with cardiac or renal disease, infants, and the critically ill are at increased risk	Stop transfusing Give diuretics Oxygen	Identify patients at high risk Transfuse slowly
TRALI	Erythrocytes: 10-20 Platelets/plasma: 50-100	Passive transfusion of donor antibodies Storage-generated toxic lipids	Supportive care	Remove high-risk donors from the donor pool
Allergic	All components: 3000 mild, 2 anaphylactic	Mild reactions: Transfusion of soluble antigens in donor plasma Anaphylaxis: IgA deficiency or other recipient protein deficiency	Stop transfusing ASA monitors Large-bore IV access Epinephrine Antihistamines Supportive care	Pretransfusion antihistamine use remains common practice despite limited evidence
Hemolytic	Erythrocytes: 1.1-9.0	Donor antibodies bind to patient erythrocytes Patient antibodies bind to donor erythrocytes	Stop transfusing Repeat matching Supportive care Treat DIC	Standard operating procedures
TRIM	Unknown	The mechanism is unknown but may depend on the presence of donor leukocytes	Treat complications (e.g., infection, malignancy)	Prestorage leukocyte reduction may be beneficial, but this approach is controversial
Microchimerism	All components: 5000-10,000 massive transfusion	Permanent residence of donor cells in recipient	Unknown	Unknown
Posttransfusion purpura	All components: 2	Recipient alloantibodies attack donor platelet antigens	IVIG	Avoid units positive for implicated HPA antigens in patients with a history of PTP
Hypotensive	Unknown	Production of kinins by the activation of the contact system Patients on ACE inhibitors are at increased risk	Stop transfusing ASA monitors Large-bore IV access Supportive care	Avoid the use of negatively charged leukocyte reduction filters
Graft-versus-host	Varies by patient population	Transfusion into immunocompromised host Transfusion of donor cells closely matching HLA type	No consensus exists Consider bone marrow transplant	Gamma irradiation of cellular products

ACE, Angiotensin converting enzyme; *ASA,* American Society of Anesthesiologists; *DIC,* disseminated intravascular coagulation; *HLA,* human leukocyte antigen; *HPA,* human platelet alloantigen; *IgA,* immunoglobulin A; *IV,* intravenous; *IVIG,* intravenous immunoglobulin; *PTP,* posttransfusion purpura; *TACO,* transfusion associated circulatory overload; *TRALI,* transfusion-related acute lung injury; *TRIM,* transfusion-related immunomodulation.

Reprinted from Hillyer CD, Silberstein LE, Ness PM, et al. *Blood Banking and Transfusion Medicine: Basic Principles and Practice.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2007:678–679.

Irradiation is not necessary for patients undergoing routine nonmyeloablative chemotherapy for solid tumors and solid organ transplant patients receiving routine posttransplant immunosuppressive therapy.

Informed Consent

Before any transfusion is given, informed consent should be obtained from the patient or guardian. What constitutes consent varies across the United States and is still changing. If a patient is injured by a transfusion administered without a valid consent, damages may be recovered even though the defendant did everything properly.[146] Many years ago, the *Paul Gann Blood Safety Act* was passed in California. This law mandated that patients be informed of the risks of blood transfusions and of any alternatives. The changes in transfusion medicine should lead to additional education for clinicians who administer blood products to ensure they are compliant with current laws and regulations. Local hospital transfusion medicine committees can provide clinicians with such information.

Acknowledgment

This chapter incorporates portions of the 8th edition Chapter 63, "Patient Blood Management: Autologous Blood Procurement, Recombinant Factor VIIa Therapy, and Blood Utilization." The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Lawrence T. Goodnough and Terri Monk for contributing content on this topic in the prior edition of this work.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Karafin MS, et al. *Transfusion*. 2017;57(12):2903–2913.
2. Miller RD, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1971;174:794.
3. Miller RD. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1412–1416.
4. Spahn DR. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:905.
5. Hendrickson JE, Hillyer CD. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:759–769.
6. Shander A, et al. *Transfus Med Rev*. 2011;25:232–246.
7. Lelubre C, et al. *Transfusion*. 2009;49:1384.
8. Yazer MH, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2016;81:21.
9. Miller RD. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:1392.
10. Spinella PC, Cap AP. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2016;23:536.
11. Desai N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:1211.
12. Society for the Advancement of Blood Management. *A Guide to Patient Blood Management*; 2016. https://www.sabm.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/08/Guide-to-PBM-2016.pdf. Accessed 28 March 2019.
13. Shander A, Goodnough LT. *Annals of Internal Med*. 2019;170:125–126.
14. Ellingson KD, et al. *Transfusion*. 2017;57(suppl 2):1588–1598.
15. Gupta PB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129:1082.
16. Mukhtar SA, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2013;41:207.
17. Liebscher K, et al. *Anästh Intensivmed*. 2013;54:295.
18. WHO. *Global Status Report on Blood Safety and Availability 2016*. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2017. License: CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 IGO.
19. WHO Expert Group. *Vox Sang*. 2012;103:337–342.
20. Lacetera N, et al. *Science*. 2013;342:692.
21. Chell K, et al. *Transfusion*. 2018;58:242–254.
22. Dhingra N. *Science*. 2013;342:691–692.
23. Haire B, et al. *Transfusion*. 2018;58:816–822.
24. https://www.fda.gov/%20EmergencyPreparedness/Counterterrorism/MedicalCountermeasures/MCMIssues/ucm485199.htm. Accessed 10 December 2018.
25. Tong MJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;332:1463–1466.
26. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Hepatitis C FAQs for the Public. https://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/hcv/cfaq.htm. Accessed 16 March 2019.
27. Preiksaitis VK, et al. *J Med Virol*. 1985;15:283–290.
28. Preiksaitis JK, et al. *J Infect Dis*. 1988;157:523–529.
29. Wilhelm JA, et al. *J Infect Dis*. 1986;154:169–171.
30. Goodnough LT, Marques MB. *Anesthesia Analg*. 2017;124:282.
31. Peterson LR, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2016;374:1552–1563.
32. Schuler-Faccini L, et al. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. 2016;65:59–62.
33. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. *Revised recommendations for reducing the risk of Zika virus transmission by blood and blood components;* 2018. https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/Blood/UCM518213.pdf. Accessed 8 November 2018.
34. Tripple MA, et al. *Transfusion*. 1990;30:207–213.
35. Moore GL, et al. *Transfusion*. 1981;21:135–137.
36. Valeri CR. *N Engl J Med*. 1985;312:377–378.
37. Lovric VA, et al. *Vox Sang*. 1985;49:181–186.
38. Cancelas JA, et al. *Transfusion*. 2015;55:491–498.
39. Kleinman S. et al. *UpToDate*. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/practical-aspects-of-red-blood-cell-transfusion-in-adults-storage-processing-modifications-and-infusion. Accessed Feb 7, 2019.
40. Nagababu E, et al. *Transfusion*. 2016;56:1101–1111.
41. Salaria ON, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:1179–1187.
42. Frank SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:975–981.
43. Scott AV, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:616–623.
44. Tsoi W. *VOXS*. 2016;11:49–54.
45. Nishiyama T, Hayashi D. *J Anesth*. 2007;21:42–46.
46. Wozniak MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:375–385.
47. Wozniak MJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118:689–698.
48. Marik PE, Sibbald WJ. *JAMA*. 1993;269:3024–3029.
49. Vamvakas EC, Carven JH. *Transfusion*. 1999;39:701–710.
50. Leal-Noval SR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:815–822.
51. Purdy RF, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44:1256–1261.
52. Koch CG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:1229–1239.
53. Adamson JW. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:1295–1296.
54. Wang D, et al. *Transfusion*. 2012;52:1184–1195.
55. Weiskopf RB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:911–920.
56. Cata JP, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2011;86:120–127.
57. Saager L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:51–58.
58. Heddle NM, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2016;375:1937.
59. Steiner ME, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2015;372:1419.
60. Cooper DJ, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2017;377:1858.
61. Lacroix J, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2015;372:1410.
62. Garraud O. *J Thoracic Dis*. 2017;9:E146–E148.
63. Tobian A, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2016;375:1995–1997.
64. Goel R, et al. *Transfusion*. 2016;56:1690–1698.
65. Cull DL, et al. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1991;173:9–12.
66. Albert K, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56:352–356.
67. Beattie WS, Wijeysundera DN. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(1):11–13.
68. Mathru M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:37.
69. Consensus conference. *JAMA*. 1988;260:2700–2703.
70. Le Manach Y, Syed S. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:1153–1155.
71. Corwin HL, et al. *Chest*. 1995;108:767–771.
72. Hébert PC, et al. *JAMA*. 1995;273:1439–1444.
73. Bishop MH, et al. *J Trauma*. 1995;38:780–787.
74. Frank SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:99–106.
75. McNamara D. *Anesthesiology News 32*. 2012.
76. World Alliance for Patient Safety. *WHO Guidelines for Safe Surgery*; 2008.
77. Solon JG, et al. *J EvalClin Prac*. 2013;19:100–105.
78. Stovener J. *Anesthesiology News 14*. 2012.
79. Berkow L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1396–1402.
80. Miller RD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:858–863.
81. Xu T, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:e344–e352.
82. Bridges E, et al. *Shock*. 2016;46:55–60.
83. Miller RD, et al. *J Anesth*. 2012;26:845–850.
84. Miller RD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:766–771.
85. Giraud B, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:946–954.
86. Barker SJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:565–572.
87. Frasca D, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70:803–809.
88. Kolotiniuk NV, et al. *J Cardiothor Vasc Anesthesia*. 2018;32:1638–1641.
89. Musallam KM, et al. *Lancet*. 2011;3278:1396–1407.
90. Karkouti K, et al. *Can J Anesth*. 2015;62:377–384.
91. Kozek-Langenecker SA, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiology*. 2017;34:332–395.
92. Froessler B, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2016;264:41–46.
93. Keeler BD, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2017;104:214–221.
94. Weltert L, et al. *Transfusion*. 2015;55:1644–1654.
95. Unger EF, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362:189–192.
96. Karkouti K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:523–530.
97. Goodnough LT, Shander A. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:15–34.
98. Levy JH. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1016–1018.
99. Papageorge CM, et al. *Surgery*. 2017;161:1067–1075.
100. Carson JL, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;316:2025–2035.
101. Carson JL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365:2453–2462.
102. Shorr AF, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:666–674.
103. Taylor RW, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:2302–2308.
104. Ely EW, Bernard GR. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;340:467–468.
105. Hébert PC, Fergusson DA. *JAMA*. 2002;288:1525–1526.
106. Vincent JL, et al. *JAMA*. 2002;288:1499–1507.
107. Walsh TS, McClelland DBL. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:719–722.
108. McCrossan L, Masterson G. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:6–9.
109. Mazer CD, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2017;377:2133–2144.
110. Holst LB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371:1381–1391.
111. Rohde HM, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311:1317–1326.
112. Hovaguimian F, Myles PS. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:46–61.
113. Villanueva C, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:11–21.
114. Laine L. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:75–76.
115. Weiskopf RB. *Transfusion*. 1998;38:517–521.
116. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Management. Practice Guidelines for Perioperative Blood Management. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:241.
117. Thiel T, et al. *New Engl J Med*. 2013;368:487–489.
118. https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/SafetyAvailability/ReportaProblem/TransfusionDonationFatalities/UCM598243.pdf. Accessed 22 March 2019.
119. Morrow JF, et al. *JAMA*. 1991;266:255–258.
120. Hong H, et al. *Blood*. 2016;127:496.
121. Benjamin RJ. *Blood*. 2016;127:380.
122. Dunne WM, et al. *Transfusion*. 2005;45:1138–1142.
123. Rebulla R, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:1870–1875.
124. Horlocker TT, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 4th ed. 2018;43:263–309.
125. Baharoglu MI, et al. *Lancet*. 2016;387:2605.
126. Teixeira PG, et al. *J Trauma*. 2009;66:693–697.
127. Kruskall MS. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:1914–1915.
128. Scott E, et al. *Transfusion*. 2009;49:1584–1591.
129. Cardigan R, et al. *Transfusion*. 2005;45:1342–1348.
130. Hall DP, et al. *Br J Anaesthesia*. 2012;109:919–927.
131. Muller MC, et al. *Transfusion*. 2015;55:26.
132. Radwan ZA, et al. *JAMA*. 2013;148:170–175.

133. Sperry JL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;379:315.
134. Holcomb JB, et al. *J Trauma*. 2011;71:S315–S317.
135. Kornblith LZ, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2014;77:818.
136. Holcomb JB, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2013;148:127–136.
137. Bhangu A, et al. *Injury*. 2013;44:1693–1699.
138. Holcomb JB, et al. *JAMA*. 2015;313(5):471–482.
139. Pasquier P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:155–161.
140. Kerins DM. *Am J Med Sci*. 1994;307:218.
141. Tremper KK, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;307:277–283.
142. Spahn DR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1338–1349.
143. Hermann J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:273–280.
144. Crawford MW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:281–287.
145. Wahr JA. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:799–808.
146. Natanson C, et al. *JAMA*. 2008;299:2304–2312.
147. Fergusson DA, McIntyre SL. *JAMA*. 2008;299:2324–2326.
148. Levy J. *Expert Opin Biol Ther*. 2003;3:509–517.
149. Davis JM, et al. *Transfusion*. 2018;58:132.
150. DeSimone, RA, et al. 2018; 58:2297-2300.
151. Goodnough LT, et al. *Transfusion*. 2003;43:668.
152. Vassallo R, et al. *Transfusion Med Reviews*. 2015;29:268–275.
153. AABB. *Standards for Blood Banks and Transfusion Services*. 29th ed. Bethesda MD: AABB Press; 2014.
154. Kiss JE, et al. *JAMA*. 2015;313:575–583.
155. Henry DA, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2002;(2):CD003602.
156. Popovsky MA, et al. *Transfusion*. 1995;35:734–737.
157. AuBuchon JP, et al. *Transfusion*. 1991;31:513–517.
158. Messmer K, et al. *Eur Surg Res*. 1986;18:254–263.
159. Goodnough LT, et al. *Transfusion*. 1998;38:473–476.
160. Lu SY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:264–268.
161. Goodnough LT, et al. *AnesthAnalg*. 1994;78:932–937.
162. Goldberg J, et al. *Ann Thoracic Surg*. 2015;100:1581–1587.
163. Zhou Z, et al. *BMC Anesthesiology*. 2017;17:13.
164. Roberts, et al. *Am J Surg*. 1991;162:477.
165. Jarnagin, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2008;248:360.
166. De Haan, et al. *Ann Thoracic Surg*. 1995;59:901.
167. Barile L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:743.
168. Sniecinksi RM, Mascha EJ. *AnesthAnalg*. 2017;124:726.
169. Sebastian R, et al. *PedAnesth*. 2017;27:85–90.
170. Albu G, et al. *AnesthAnalg*. 2018;126:995.
171. Crystal GJ. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29:320–327.
172. Kisilevksy AE, et al. *J ClinAnesth*. 2016;35:434–440.
173. AABB. *Standards for Perioperative Autologous Blood Collection and Administration*. 7th ed. AABB; 2016.
174. Sikorski RA, et al. *Vox Sanguinis*. 2017;112:499–510.
175. Williamson KR, Taswell HF. *Transfusion*. 1991;31:662.
176. Li, et al. *J Cardiothoracic Surg*. 2015;10:126.
177. Domen RE. *Transfusion*. 1998;38:296.
178. Konig G, et al. *Transfus Altern Transfus Med*. 2012;12:78–87.
179. Yazer MH, et al. *Transfusion*. 2008;48:1188–1191.
180. Tsai AG, et al. *Blood*. 2006;108(10):3603–3610.
181. Gregoretti S. *Transfusion*. 1996;36:57.
182. Bell K, et al. *Transfusion Med*. 1992;2:295.
183. Waters JH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):652–655.
184. Esper SA, Waters JH. *Blood Transfusion Med*. 2011;9:139.
185. Carless PA, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010;(3):CD001888.
186. So-Osman C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:839–851.
187. So-Osman, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:852–860.
188. Lim G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:328–337.
189. Gilsch C, et al. *BMJ Open Quality*. 2018;7:e000270.
190. Hendrickson JE, et al. *Transfusion Med Rev*. 2014;28:137–144.
191. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Transfusion Practices: Questions and Answers*. 3rd ed. Chicago: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 1998:8–9.
192. Chapuy CI, et al. *Transfusion*. 2015;55:1545–1554.
193. Chapuy CI, et al. *Transfusion*. 2016;56:2964–2972.
194. Murphy MF. *N Eng J Med*. 2016;375(3):295–296.
195. Boyd PR, et al. *Am J Clin Pathol*. 1980;74:694–699.
196. Coombs RR, et al. *Br J Exp Pathol*. 1945;26:255–266.
197. Walker RH. In: Polesky HF, Walker RH, eds. *Safety and Transfusion Practices*. Skokie, Ill: College of American Pathologists; 1982:79.
198. Butch SH, et al. *Transfusion*. 1994;34:105–109.
199. Daurat A, et al. *Transfus Clin Biol*. 2017;24:47–51.
200. Novis DA, et al. *Arch Pathol Lab Med*. 2017;141:255–59.
201. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. *Guidance for Industry: Computer Crossmatch*. April 2011.
202. Mazepa MA. *Am J Clin Pathol*. 2014;141:618–624.
203. Oberman AJ, et al. *Transfusion*. 1978;18:137–141.
204. Sarma DP. *JAMA*. 1980;243:1536–1538.
205. Dexter F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:768–778.
206. Friedman BA. *Transfusion*. 1979;19:268–278.
207. Krier DB. *Am J Med Qual*. 1996;11:68–72.
208. Frank SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1286–1297.
209. Frank SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:501–509.
210. Gervin AS, Fischer RP. *J Trauma*. 1984;24:327–331.
211. Mulay SB, et al. *Transfusion*. 2013;53:1416–1420.
212. Boisen et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:191–195.
213. Goodell PP, et al. *Am J Clin Pathol*. 2010;134:202–206.
214. Fergusson DA, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1443–1451.
215. Spinella PC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:571–578.
216. Weiskopf RB. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:518–521.
217. Auten JD, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;79:790-611.
218. Erber WN, et al. *Med J Aust*. 1996;165:11–13.
219. Brohi K, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2007;245:812–818.
220. Kaufman RM, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 162:205–213.
221. Deleted in proofs.
222. Brown LM, et al. *J Trauma*. 2011;71(suppl 3):S337–S342.
223. Counts RB, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1979;190:91–99.
224. Reed RL, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1986;203:40–48.
225. Wang HL, et al. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2013;28:268–280.
226. Gorlinger K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;110:222–230.
227. Levy JH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:261–274.
228. Miller RD. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;39:82–93.
229. Hondow JA, et al. *TANZ J Surg*. 1982;52:265–269.
230. Simon TL. *Plasma Ther Transfus Technol*. 1988;9:309–315.
231. Hunt BJ. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:847–859.
232. Lavee J, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1989;97:204–212.
233. Murray DJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:839–845.
234. Parshuram CS, Jaffe AR. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2003;4:65–68.
235. Robillard P, Grégoire Y. *Comparison of vasovagal and citrate reaction rates in donors according to type of apheresis procedure*. Abstract Presented at American Association of Blood Banks. 09 October 2017.
236. Linko K, Tigerstedt I. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1984;28:220–221.
237. Kleinman, S. Red blood cell transfusion in adults: Storage, specialized modifications, and infusion parameters. *UpToDate*. Available at: www.uptodate.com/contents/red-blood-cell-tranfusion-in-adults-storage-specialized-modifications-and-infusion-parameters? Accessed April 14, 2013.
238. Smith HM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1062–1069.
239. Van Poucke S, et al. *Thromb J*. 2014;12(1):31.
240. De Witte J, Sessler D. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(2):467–484.
241. Miller RD, et al. *JAMA*. 1971;216:1762–1765.
242. Collins JA, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1971;173:6–18.
243. Seyfried H, Walewska I. *World J Surg*. 1987;11:25–29.
244. Linden JV, et al. *Transfusion*. 2000;40:1207–1213.
245. Capon SM, Sacher RA. *J Intensive Care Med*. 1989;4:100–111.
246. *AABB Technical Manual*. 17th ed. AABB; 2011.
247. Lopas H. *Am J Physiol*. 1973;225:372–379.
248. Schonewille H, et al. *Transfusion*. 2006;46:630–635.
249. Toy P, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:721–726.
250. Zhou L, et al. *Transfusion*. 2005;45:1056–1063.
251. Kleinman S, et al. *Transfusion*. 2004;44:774–789.
252. Clifford L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:12–20.
253. Triuli DJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:770–776.
254. Toy P, et al. *Blood*. 2012;119:1757–1767.
254a. Clifford L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:21–28.
255. Blumberg, et al. *Transfusion*. 2010;50:2738–2744.
256. King KE, et al. *Transfusion*. 2004;44:25–29.
257. Oberman HA. *Transfusion*. 1994;34:353–355.
258. Widman FK. *Transfusion*. 1994;34:356–358.
259. Ohto H, Anderson KC. *Trans Med Rev*. 1996;10:31–43.
260. Hayashi H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;79:1419–1421.
261. Vamvakas EC. *Transfus Altern Transfus Med*. 2002;4:48–52.
262. Youssef LA, Spitalnik SL. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2017;24(6): 551–557.
263. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *JAMA*. 1998;279:576–578.
264. Corwin HL, AuBuchon JP. *JAMA*. 2003;289:1993–1995.
265. Vamvakas EC, Blajchman MA. *Transfusion*. 2001;41:691–712.
266. Hébert PC, et al. *JAMA*. 2003;289:1941–1949.
267. *American Association of Blood Banks Technical Manual*. 19th ed. AABB; 2017.
268. Kleinman S, et al. *Transfus Med Rev*. 2003;17:120–162.

References

1. Karafin MS, Bruhn R, Westlake M, et al. Demographic and epidemiologic characterization of transfusion recipients from four US regions: evidence from the REDS-III recipient database. *Transfusion*. 2017;57(12):2903–2913. https://doi.org/10.1111/trf.14370.
2. Miller RD. Coagulation defects associated with massive blood transfusions. *Ann Surg*. 1971;174:794–801.
3. Miller RD. Massive blood transfusions and coagulopathies: impact of vietnam military data on modern transfusion medicine. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1412–1416.
4. Spahn DR. Physiologic transfusion triggers. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:905–906.
5. Hendrickson JE, Hillyer CD. Noninfectious serious hazards of transfusion. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:759–769.
6. Shander A, Fink A, Javidroozi M, et al. Appropriateness of allogeneic red blood cell transfusion: the international consensus conference on transfusion outcomes. *Transfus Med Rev*. 2011;25:232–246.
7. Lelubre C, Piagnerelli M, Vincent JL. Association between duration of storage of transfused red blood cells and morbidity and mortality in adult patients: myth or reality? *Transfusion*. 2009;49:1384–1394.
8. Yazer MH, Jackson B, Sperry JL, et al. Initial safety and feasibility of cold-stored uncrossmatched whole blood transfusion in civilian trauma patients. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2016;81:21–26.
9. Miller RD. Fresh whole blood and the Vietnam military conflict. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:1392–1393.
10. Spinella PC, Cap AP. Whole blood: back to the future. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2016;23:536–542.
11. Desai N, Schofield N, Richards T. Perioperative patient blood management to improve outcomes. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127:1211–1220.
12. Society for the Advancement of Blood Management. *A Guide to Patient Blood Management*; 2016. https://www.sabm.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/08/Guide-to-PBM-2016.pdf
13. Shander A, Goodnough LT. From tolerating anemia to treating anemia. *Annals of Internal Med*. 2019;170:125–126.
14. Ellingson KD, Sapiano MRP, Haass K. Continued decline in blood collection and transfusion in the United States-2015. *Transfusion*. 2017;57(suppl 2):1588–1598.
15. Gupta PB, DeMario VM, Amin RM, et al. Patient blood management program improves blood use and clinical outcomes in orthopedic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129:1082–1091.
16. Mukhtar SA, Leahy MF, Koay K, et al. Effectiveness of a patient blood management data system in monitoring blood use in Western Australia. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2013;41:207–215.
17. Liebscher K, Huschke H, Hammer T. Computer-aided creation of a blood supply guideline. *Anasth Intensivmed*. 2013;54:295–300.
18. WHO. *Global Status Report on Blood Safety and Availability 2016*. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2017. License: CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 IGO.
19. WHO Expert Group. Expert consensus statement on achieving self-sufficiency in safe blood and blood products, based on voluntary non-remunerated blood donation (VNRBD). *Vox Sang*. 2012;103:337–342.
20. Lacetera N, Macis M, Slonim R. In defense of WHO's blood donation policy: response. *Science*. 2013;342:692.
21. Chell K, Davison TE, Masser B, Jensen K. A systematic review of incentives in blood donation. *Transfusion*. 2018;58:242–254.
22. Dhingra N. In defense of WHO's blood donation policy. *Science*. 2013;342:691–692.
23. Haire B, Whitford K, Kaldor JM. Blood donor deferral for men who have sex with men: still room to move. *Transfusion*. 2018;58:816–822.
24. https://www.fda.gov/%20EmergencyPreparedness/Counterterrorism/MedicalCountermeasures/MCMIssues/ucm485199.htm. Accessed 10 December 2018.
25. Tong MJ, El-Farra NS, Reikes AR, et al. Clinical outcomes after transfusion-associated hepatitis C. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;332:1463–1466.
26. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Hepatitis C FAQs for the Public. https://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/hcv/cfaq.htm. Accessed 16 March 2019.
27. Preiksaitis VK, Grumet FC, Smith WK, et al. Transfusion-acquired cytomegalovirus infection in cardiac surgery patients. *J Med Virol*. 1985;15:283–290.
28. Preiksaitis JK, Brown L, McKenzie M. The risk of cytomegalovirus infection in seronegative transfusion recipients not receiving exogenous immunodepression. *J Infect Dis*. 1988;157:523–529.
29. Wilhelm JA, Matter L, Schopfer K. The risk of transmitting cytomegalovirus to patients receiving blood transfusions. *J Infect Dis*. 1986;154:169–171.
30. Goodnough LT, Marques MB. Current status of pharmacologic therapies in patient blood management. *Anesthesia Analg*. 2017;124:282.
31. Peterson LR, et al. Zika Virus. *N Eng J Med*. 2016;374:1552-1563
32. Schuler-Faccini L, et al. Possible association between Zika virus infection and microcephaly - Brazil, 2015. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. 2016;65:59–62.
33. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. *Revised recommendations for reducing the risk of Zika virus transmission by blood and blood components;* 2018. https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/Blood/UCM518213.pdf. Accessed 8 November 2018.
34. Tripple MA, Bland JJ, Murphy MJ, et al. Sepsis associated with transfusion of red cells contaminated with yersinia enterocolitica. *Transfusion*. 1990;30:207–213.
35. Moore GL, Peck CC, Sohmer PR, et al. Some properties of blood stored in CPDA-1 solution. *Transfusion*. 1981;21:135–137.
36. Valeri CR. Measurement of viable ADSOL-preserved human red cells. *N Engl J Med*. 1985;312:377–378.
37. Lovric VA, Archer GT, Wisdom L, et al. Thirty-five-day modified red cells and 7-day stored platelet concentrates from triple bags of identical PVC formation. *Vox Sang*. 1985;49:181–186.
38. Cancelas JA, et al. Additive solution-7 reduces the red blood cell cold storage lesion. *Transfusion*. 2015;55:491–498.
39. Kleinman S. et al. Practical aspects of red blood cell transfusion in adults: storage, processing, modifications, and infusion. *UpToDate*. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/practical-aspects-of-red-blood-cell-transfusion-in-adults-storage-processing-modifications-and-infusion. Accessed Feb 7, 2019.
40. Nagababu E, et al. Oxidative stress and rheologic properties of stored red blood cells before and after transfusion to surgical patients. *Transfusion*. 2016;56:1101–1111.
41. Salaria ON, et al. Impaired red blood cell deformability after transfusion of stored allogeneic blood but not autologous salvaged blood in cardiac surgery patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:1179–1187.
42. Frank SM, Abazyan B, Ono M, et al. Decreased erythrocyte deformability after transfusion and the effects of erythrocyte storage duration. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:975–981.
43. Scott AV, et al. 2,3-Diphosphoglycerate concentrations in autologous salvaged versus stored red blood cells and in surgical patients after transfusion. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:616–623.
44. Tsoi W. Advances in blood storage bags and preservative solutions. *VOXS*. 2016;11:49–54.
45. Nishiyama T, Hayashi D. Electrostatic field can preserve red blood cells in stored blood preparations. *J Anesth*. 2007;21:42–46.
46. Wozniak MJ, et al. A comparison of red cell rejuvenation versus mechanical washing for the prevention of transfusion-associated organ injury in swine. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:375–385.
47. Wozniak MJ, et al. Randomized trial of red cell washing for the prevention of transfusion-associated organ injury in cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118:689–698.
48. Marik PE, Sibbald WJ. Effects of stored-blood transfusion on oxygen delivery in patients with sepsis. *JAMA*. 1993;269:3024–3029.
49. Vamvakas EC, Carven JH. Transfusion and postoperative pneumonia in coronary artery bypass surgery: effect of the length of storage of transfused red cells. *Transfusion*. 1999;39:701–710.
50. Leal-Noval SR, Jara-Lopez I, Garcia-Garmendia JL, et al. Influence of erythrocyte concentrate storage time on postsurgical morbidity in cardiac surgery patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:815–822.
51. Purdy RF, Tweeddale MG, Merrick PM. Association of mortality with age of blood transfused in septic ICU patients. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44:1256–1261.
52. Koch CG, Li L, Sessler DI, et al. Duration of red-cell storage and complications after cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:1229–1239.
53. Adamson JW. New blood, old blood, or no blood? *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:1295–1296.

54. Wang D, Sun J, Solomon SB, et al. Transfusion of older stored blood and risk of death: a meta-analysis. *Transfusion*. 2012;52:1184–1195.
55. Weiskopf RB, Feiner J, Hopf H, et al. Fresh blood and aged stored blood equally efficacious in immediately reversing anemia-induced brain oxygenation deficits in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:911–920.
56. Cata JP, Klein EA, Hoeltge GA, et al. Blood storage duration and biochemical recurrence of cancer after radical prostatectomy. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2011;86:120–127.
57. Saager L, Turan A, Fiqueroa Pl, et al. Erythrocyte storage duration is not associated with increased mortality in noncardiac surgical patients: a retrospective analysis of 6,994 patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:51–58.
58. Heddle NM, et al. Effect of short-term vs. long-term blood storage on mortality after transfusion. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:1937.
59. Steiner ME, et al. Effects of red-cell storage duration on patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372:1419.
60. Cooper DJ, et al. Age of red cells for transfusion and outcomes in critically ill adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:1858.
61. Lacroix J, et al. Age of transfused blood in critically ill adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372:1410.
62. Garraud O. Effect of "old" versus "fresh" transfused red blood cells on patients' outcome: probably more complex than appears. *J Thoracic Dis*. 2017;9:E146–E148.
63. Tobian A, et al. Red cells - aging gracefully in the blood bank. *New Engl J Med*. 2016;375:1995–1997.
64. Goel R, et al. Red blood cells stored 35 days or more are associated with adverse outcomes in high-risk patients. *Transfusion*. 2016;56:1690–1698.
65. Cull DL, Lally KP, Murphy KD. Compatibility of packed erythrocytes and Ringer's lactate solution. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1991;173:9–12.
66. Albert K, Vlymen J, James P, Parlow J. Ringer's lactate is compatible with the rapid infusion of AS-3 preserved packed red blood cells. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56:352–356.
67. Beattie WS, Wijeysundera DN. Approaching a safe last resort: triggers for perioperative blood transfusion. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(1):11–13.
68. Mathru M, Solanki DR, Woodson LC, et al. Oxygen consumption is impaired during acute normovolemic anemia. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:37.
69. Consensus conference. Perioperative red blood cell transfusion. *JAMA*. 1988;260:2700–2703.
70. Le Manach Y, Syed S. Erythrocyte transfusion: remedy or poison? *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:1153–1155.
71. Corwin HL, Parsonnet KC, Gettinger A. RBC transfusion in the ICU: is there a reason? *Chest*. 1995;108:767–771.
72. Hébert PC, Wells G, Marshall J, et al. Canadian critical care trials group: transfusion requirements in critical care: a pilot study. *JAMA*. 1995;273:1439–1444.
73. Bishop MH, Shoemaker WC, Appel PL, et al. Prospective, randomized trial of survivor values of cardiac index, oxygen delivery, and oxygen consumption as resuscitation endpoints in severe trauma. *J Trauma*. 1995;38:780–787.
74. Frank SM, Savage WJ, Rothschild JA, et al. Variability in blood and blood component utilization as assessed by an anesthesia information management system. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:99–106.
75. McNamara D. Tablet-Based Technology Gauges Surgical Blood Loss. *Anesthesiology News32*; 2012.
76. World Alliance for Patient Safety. *WHO Guidelines for Safe Surgery*; 2008.
77. Solon JG, et al. Safe surgery: how accurate are we at predicting intraoperative blood loss? *J Eval Clin Pract*. 2013;19:100–105.
78. Stovener J. Anesthesiologists vastly overstate bleeding. *Anesthesiology News*. 2012:14.
79. Berkow L, Rotolo S, Mirski E. Continuous noninvasive hemoglobin monitoring during complex spinal surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1396–1402.
80. Miller RD, Ward TA, Shiboski SC, et al. A comparison of three methods of hemoglobin monitoring in patients undergoing spine surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:858–863.
81. Xu T, et al. Evaluation of noninvasive hemoglobin monitoring in surgical critical care patients. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:e344–e352.
82. Bridges E, et al. Noninvasive continuous hemoglobin monitoring in combat casualties: a pilot study. *Shock*. 2016;46:55–60.
83. Miller RD, Ward TA, McColloch CE, et al. Does a digital regional nerve block improve the accuracy of noninvasive hemoglobin monitoring? *J Anesth*. 2012;26:845–850.
84. Miller RD, Ward TA, McColloch CE, et al. A comparison of lidocaine and bupivacaine digital nerve blocks on noninvasive continuous hemoglobin monitoring in a randomized trial in volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:766–771.
85. Giraud B, Frasca D, Debaene B, et al. Comparison of haemoglobin measurement methods in the operating theatre. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:946–954.
86. Barker SJ, et al. Continuous noninvasive hemoglobin monitoring: a measured response to a critical review. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:565–572.
87. Frasca D, et al. Continuous monitoring of haemoglobin concentration after in-vivo adjustment in patients undergoing surgery with blood loss. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70:803–809.
88. Kolotiniuk NV, et al. Measures of blood hemoglobin and hematocrit during cardiac surgery: comparison of three point-of-care devices. *J Cardiothor Vasc Anesthesia*. 2018;32:1638–1641.
89. Musallam KM, et al. Preoperative anaemia and postoperative outcomes in non-cardiac surgery: a retrospective cohort study. *Lancet*. 2011;3278:1396–1407.
90. Karkouti K, et al. Interrelationship of preoperative anemia, intraoperative anemia, and red blood cell transfusion as potentially modifiable risk factors for acute kidney injury in cardiac surgery: a historical multicentre cohort study. *Can J Anesth*. 2015;62:377–384.
91. Kozek-Langenecker SA, et al. Management of severe perioperative bleeding: guidelines from the European Society of Anaesthesiology: first update 2016. *Eur J Anaesthesiology*. 2017;34:332–395.
92. Froessler B, et al. The important role for intravenous iron in perioperative patient blood management in major abdominal surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *Ann Surg*. 2016;264:41–46.
93. Keeler BD, et al. Randomized clinical trial of preoperative oral versus intravenous iron in anaemic patients with colorectal cancer. *Br J Surg*. 2017;104:214–221.
94. Weltert L, et al. A single dose of erythropoietin reduces perioperative transfusions in cardiac surgery: results of a prospective single-blind randomized controlled trial. *Transfusion*. 2015;55:1644–1654.
95. Unger EF, Thompson AM, Blank MJ, Temple R. Erythropoiesis-stimulating agents--time for a reevaluation. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362:189–192.
96. Karkouti K, Wijeysundera DN, Yau TM, et al. Risk influence of erythrocyte transfusion on the risk of acute kidney injury after cardiac surgery differs in anemic and nonanemic patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:523–530.
97. Goodnough LT, Shander A. Current status of pharmacologic therapies in patient blood management. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:15–34.
98. Levy JH. Hemoglobin-based oxygen carriers for reversing hypotension and shock: "NO" Way, "NO" How? [Editorial]. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1016–1018.
99. Papageorge CM, et al. Preoperative blood transfusion is a predictor of worse short-term postoperative outcomes after colectomy. *Surgery*. 2017;161:1067–1075.
100. Carson JL, et al. Clinical practice guidelines from the AABB: red blood cell transfusion thresholds and storage. *JAMA*. 2016;316:2025–2035.
101. Carson JL, Terrin ML, Noveck H, et al. Liberal or restrictive transfusion in high-risk patients after hip surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365:2453–2462.
102. Shorr AF, Duh MS, Kelly KM. Red blood cell transfusion and ventilator-associated pneumonia: a potential link? *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:666–674.
103. Taylor RW, O'Brien J, Trottier SJ. Red blood cell transfusions and nosocomial infections in critically ill patients. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:2302–2308.
104. Ely EW, Bernard GR. Transfusions in critically ill patients. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;340:467–468.
105. Hébert PC, Fergusson DA. Red blood cell transfusions in critically ill patients. *JAMA*. 2002;288:1525–1526.
106. Vincent JL, Baron JF, Reinhart K, et al. Anemia and blood transfusion in critically ill patients. *JAMA*. 2002;288:1499–1507.
107. Walsh TS, McClelland DBL. When should we transfuse critically ill and perioperative patients with known coronary artery disease? *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:719–722.

108. McCrossan L, Masterson G. Blood transfusion in critical illness. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:6–9.
109. Mazer CD, et al. Restrictive or liberal red-cell transfusion for cardiac surgery. *N Eng J Med*. 2017;377:2133–2144.
110. Holst LB, et al. Lower versus higher hemoglobin threshold for transfusion in septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371:1381–1391.
111. Rohde HM, Dimcheff DE, Blumberg N, et al. Health care-associated infection after red blood cell transfusion: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2014;311:1317–1326.
112. Hovaguimian F, Myles PS. Restrictive versus liberal transfusion strategy in the perioperative and acute care settings: a context-specific systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:46–61.
113. Villanueva C, Colomo A, Bosch A, et al. Transfusion strategies for acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:11–21.
114. Laine L. Blood transfusion for gastrointestinal bleeding. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:75–76.
115. Weiskopf RB. Do we know when to transfuse red cells to treat acute anemia? *Transfusion*. 1998;38:517–521.
116. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Management. Practice guidelines for perioperative blood management. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:241.
117. Thiel T, Heddle N, Greinacher A. Donor exposures in recipients of pooled platelet concentrates. *New Engl J Med*. 2013;368:487–489.
118. https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/SafetyAvailability/ReportaProblem/TransfusionDonationFatalities/UCM598243.pdf. Accessed 22 March 2019.
119. Morrow JF, Braine HG, Kickler TS, et al. Septic reactions to platelet transfusions. *JAMA*. 1991;266:255–258.
120. Hong H, et al. Detection of septic transfusion reactions to platelet transfusions by active and passive surveillance. *Blood*. 2016;127:496.
121. Benjamin RJ. Transfusion-related sepsis: a silent epidemic. *Blood*. 2016;127:380.
122. Dunne WM, Case LK, Isgriggs L. In-house validation of the BACTEC 9240 blood culture system for detection of bacterial contamination in platelet concentrates. *Transfusion*. 2005;45:1138–1142.
123. Rebulla R, et al. The threshold for prophylactic platelet transfusions in adults with acute myeloid leukemia. Gruppo Italiano Malattie Ematologiche Maligne Dell'adulto. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:1870–1875.
124. Horlocker TT, Vandermeulen E, Kopp SL, et al. Regional anesthesia in the patient receiving antithrombotic or thrombolytic therapy: American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine Evidence-Based Guidelines (Fourth Edition). *Reg Anesth Pain Med* 2018:263–309.
125. Baharoglu MI, et al. Platelet transfusion versus standard care after acute stroke due to spontaneous cerebral haemorrhage associated with antiplatelet therapy (PATCH): a randomised, open-label, phase 3 trial. *Lancet*. 2016;387:2605.
126. Teixeira PG, Inaba K, Shulman I, et al. Impact of plasma transfusion in massively transfused trauma patients. *J Trauma*. 2009;66:693–697.
127. Kruskall MS. The perils of platelet transfusions. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:1914–1915.
128. Scott E, Puca K, Heraly J, et al. Evaluation and comparison of coagulation factor activity in fresh-frozen plasma and 24-hour plasma at thaw and after 120 hours of 1 to 6°C storage. *Transfusion*. 2009;49:1584–1591.
129. Cardigan R, Lawrie AS, Mackie IJ. The quality of fresh-frozen plasma produced from whole blood stored at 4°C overnight. *Transfusion*. 2005;45:1342–1348.
130. Hall DP, Lone NI, Watson DM, et al. Factors associated with prophylactic plasma transfusion before vascular catheterization in non-bleeding critically ill adults with prolonged prothrombin time: a case-control study. *Br J Anaesthesia*. 2012;109:919–927.
131. Muller MC, et al. Transfusion of fresh-frozen plasma in critically ill patients with a coagulopathy before invasive procedures: a randomized clinical trial (CME). *Transfusion*. 2015;55:26.
132. Radwan ZA, Bai Y, Matijevic N, et al. An emergency department thawed plasma protocol for severely injured patients. *JAMA*. 2013;148:170–175.
133. Sperry JL, et al. Prehospital plasma during air medical transport in trauma patients at risk for hemorrhagic shock. *New Engl J Med*. 2018;379:315.
134. Holcomb JB, Wade CE, Trauma Outcomes Group, et al. Defining present blood component transfusion practices in trauma patients: papers from the Trauma Outcomes Group. *J Trauma*. 2011;71:S315–S317.
135. Kornblith LZ, Howard BM, Cheung CK, et al. The whole is greater than the sum of its parts: hemostatic profiles of whole blood variants. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2014;77:818.
136. Holcomb JB, del Junco DJ, Fox EE, et al. The prospective, observational, multicenter, major trauma transfusion (PROMMTT) study: comparative effectiveness of a time-varying treatment with competing risks. *JAMA Surg*. 2013;148:127–136.
137. Bhangu A, Nepogodiev D, Doughty H, et al. Meta-analysis of plasma to red blood cell ratios and mortality in massive blood transfusions for trauma. *Injury*. 2013;44:1693–1699.
138. Holcomb JB, Tilley BC, Baraniuk S, et al. Transfusion of plasma, platelets, and red blood cells in a 1:1:1 vs a 1:1:2 ratio and mortality in patients with severe trauma: the proppr randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2015;313(5):471–482.
139. Pasquier P, Gayat E, Rackelboom T, et al. An observational study of the fresh frozen plasma: red blood cell ratio in postpartum hemorrhage. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:155–161.
140. Kerins DM. Role of the perfluorocarbon Fluosol-DA in coronary angioplasty. *Am J Med Sci*. 1994;307:218.
141. Tremper KK, Friedman AE, Levine EM, et al. The preoperative treatment of severely anemic patients with perfluorochemical oxygen transport fluid, Fluosol-DA. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;307:277–283.
142. Spahn DR, Waschke KF, Standl T, et al. Use of perflubron emulsion to decrease allogeneic blood transfusion in high blood–loss non–cardiac surgery: results of a European phase 3 study. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1338–1349.
143. Hermann J, Corso C, Messmer KF. Resuscitation with recombinant hemoglobin rHb 2.0 in a rodent model of hemorrhagic shock. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:273–280.
144. Crawford MW, Shichor T, Engelhardt T. The novel hemoglobin-based oxygen carrier HRC 101 improves survival in murine sickle cell disease. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:281–287.
145. Wahr JA. The use of bovine hemoglobin glutamer-250 (Hemopure) in surgical patients: results of a multicenter, randomized, single-blinded trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:799–808.
146. Natanson C, Kern SJ, Lurie P, et al. Cell-free hemoglobin-based blood substitutes and risk of myocardial infarction and death: a meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2008;299:2304–2312.
147. Fergusson DA, McIntyre SL. The future of clinical trials evaluating blood substitutes. *JAMA*. 2008;299:2324–2326.
148. Levy J. The use of haemoglobin glutamer-250 (HBOC-201) as an oxygen bridge in patients with acute anaemia associated with surgical blood loss. *Expert Opin Biol Ther*. 2003;3:509–517.
149. Davis JM, El-Haj N, Shah NN, et al. Use of the blood substitute HBOC-201 in critically ill patients during sickle crisis: a three-case series. *Transfusion*. 2018;58:132.
150. DeSimone RA, Berlin DA, Avecilla ST, Goss CA. Investigational use of PEGylated carboxyhemoglobin bovine in a Jehovah's Witness with hemorrhagic shock. *Transfusion*. 2018;58:2297–2300.
151. Goodnough LT, et al. Bloodless medicine: clinical care without allogeneic blood transfusion. *Transfusion*. 2003;43:668.
152. Vassallo R, et al. Preoperative autologous blood donation: waning indications in an era of improved blood safety. *Transfusion Med Reviews*. 2015;29:268–275.
153. AABB. *Standards for Blood Banks and Transfusion Services*. 29th ed. Bethesda MD: AABB Press; 2014.
154. Kiss JE, et al. Oral iron supplementation after blood donation: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2015;313:575–583.
155. Henry DA, et al. Pre-operative autologous donation for minimising perioperative allogeneic blood transfusion. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2002;(2):CD003602.
156. Popovsky MA, et al. Severe outcomes of allogeneic and autologous blood donation: frequency and characterization. *Transfusion*. 1995;35:734–737.
157. AuBuchon JP, et al. The safety of preoperative autologous blood donation in the nonhospital setting. *Transfusion*. 1991;31:513–517.
158. Messmer K, et al. Present state of intentional hemodilution. *Eur Surg Res*. 1986;18:254–263.
159. Goodnough LT, et al. Acute normovolemic hemodilution should replace the preoperative donation of autologous blood as a method of autologous-blood procurement. *Transfusion*. 1998;38:473–476.
160. Lu SY, et al. Stationary versus agitated storage of whole blood during acute normovolemic hemodilution. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:264–268.

161. Goodnough LT, Grishaber JE, Monk TG, et al. Acute preoperative hemodilution in patients undergoing radical prostatectomy: a case study analysis of efficacy. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:932–937.
162. Goldberg J, et al. Greater volume of acute normovolemic hemodilution may aid in reducing blood transfusions after cardiac surgery. *Ann Thoracic Surg*. 2015;100:1581–1587.
163. Zhou Z, et al. Mild volume acute normovolemic hemodilution is associated with lower intraoperative transfusion and postoperative pulmonary infection in patients undergoing cardiac surgery -- a retrospective, propensity matching study. *BMC Anesthesiology*. 2017;17:13.
164. Roberts, et al. Autotransfusion of unwashed mediastinal shed blood fails to decrease banked blood requirements in patients undergoing aortocoronary bypass surgery. *Am J Surg*. 1991;162:477.
165. Jarnagin, et al. A prospective randomized trial of acute normovolemic hemodilution compared to standard intraoperative management in patients undergoing major hepatic resection. *Ann Surg*. 2008;248:360.
166. De Haan, et al. Retransfusion of suctioned blood during cardiopulmonary bypass impairs hemostasis. *Ann Thoracic Surg*. 1995;59:901.
167. Barile L, et al. Acute normovolemic hemodilution reduces allogeneic red blood cell transfusion in cardiac surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:743.
168. Sniecinksi RM, Mascha EJ. Acute normovolemic hemodilution: picking more apples and oranges. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:726.
169. Sebastian R, et al. Revisiting acute normovolemic hemodilution and blood transfusion during pediatric cardiac surgery: a prospective observational study. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27:85–90.
170. Albu G, et al. Cardiorespiratory alterations following acute normovolemic hemodilution in a pediatric and an adult porcine model: a prospective interventional study. *Anesth Analg*. 2018; 126:995.
171. Crystal GJ. Regional tolerance to acute normovolemic hemodilution: evidence that the kidney may be at greatest risk. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29:320–327.
172. Kisilevksy AE, et al. Spine tumor resection among patients who refuse blood product transfusion: a retrospective case series. *J Clinical Anesthesia*. 2016;35:434–440.
173. AABB. *Standards for Perioperative Autologous Blood Collection and Administration*. 7th ed. AABB; 2016.
174. Sikorski RA, et al. Autologous blood salvage in the era of patient blood management. *Vox Sanguinis*. 2017;112:499–510.
175. Williamson KR, Taswell HF. Intraoperative blood salvage: a review. *Transfusion*. 1991;31:662.
176. Li, et al. Oxygen carrying capacity of salvaged blood in patients undergoing off-pump coronary artery bypass grafting surgery: a prospective observational study. *J Cardiothoracic Surg*. 2015;10:126.
177. Domen RE. Adverse reactions associated with autologous blood transfusion: evaluation and incidence at a large academic hospital. *Transfusion*. 1998;38:296.
178. Konig G, et al. Washing and filtering of cell-salvaged blood - does it make autotransfusion safer? *Transfus Altern Transfus Med*. 2012;12:78–87.
179. Yazer MH, et al. A comparison of hemolysis and red cell mechanical fragility in blood collected with different cell salvage suction devices. *Transfusion*. 2008;48:1188–1191.
180. Tsai AG, Cabrales P, Manjula BN, et al. Dissociation of local nitric oxide concentration and vasoconstriction in the presence of cell-free hemoglobin oxygen carriers. *Blood*. 2006;108(10):3603–3610.
181. Gregoretti S. Suction-induced hemolysis at various vacuum pressures: implications for intraoperative blood salvage. *Transfusion*. 1996;36:57.
182. Bell K, et al. A controlled trial of intra-operative autologous transfusion in cardiothoracic surgery measuring effect on transfusion requirements and clinical outcome. *Transfusion Med*. 1992;2:295.
183. Waters JH, Tuohy MJ, Hobson DF, Procop G. Bacterial reduction by cell salvage washing and leukocyte depletion filtration. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):652–655.
184. Esper SA, Waters JH. Intra-operative cell salvage: a fresh look at the indications and contraindications. *Blood Transfus Med*. 2011; 9:139.
185. Carless PA, Henry DA, Moxey AJ, et al. Cell salvage for minimizing perioperative allogeneic blood transfusion. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;3:CD001888.
186. So-Osman C, et al. Patient blood management in elective total hip- and knee-replacement surgery (Part 1): a randomized controlled trial on erythropoietin and blood salvage as transfusion alternatives using a restrictive transfusion policy in erythropoietin-eligible patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:839–851.
187. So-Osman, et al. Patient blood management in elective total hip- and knee-replacement surgery (part 2): a randomized controlled trial on blood salvage as transfusion alternative using a restrictive transfusion policy in patients with a preoperative hemoglobin above 13 g/dl. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:852–860.
188. Lim G, et al. Cost-effectiveness analysis of intraoperative cell salvage for obstetric. *Hemorrhage Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:328–337.
189. Gilsch C, et al. Evaluation of a two-sample process for prevention of ABO mistransfusions in a high volume academic hospital. *BMJ Open Quality*. 2018;7:e000270.
190. Hendrickson JE, et al. Red blood cell alloimmunization mitigation strategies. *Transfusion Med Rev*. 2014;28:137–144.
191. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Transfusion Practices: Questions and Answers*. 3rd ed. Chicago: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 1998:8–9.
192. Chapuy CI, et al. Resolving the daratumumab interference with blood compatibility testing. *Transfusion*. 2015;55:1545–1554.
193. Chapuy CI, et al. International validation of a dithiothreitol (DTT)-based method to resolve the daratumumab interference with blood compatibility testing. *Transfusion*. 2016;56:2964–2972.
194. Murphy MF. Interference of new drugs with compatibility testing for blood transfusion. *N Eng J Med*. 2016;375(3):295–296.
195. Boyd PR, Sheedy KC, Henry JB. Type and screen: use and effectiveness in elective surgery. *Am J Clin Pathol*. 1980;74:694–699.
196. Coombs RR, Mourant AE, Race RR. A new test for the detection of weak and incomplete Rh agglutinins. *Br J Exp Pathol*. 1945;26:255–266.
197. Walker RH. What is a clinically significant antibody? In: Polesky HF, Walker RH, eds. *Safety and Transfusion Practices*. Skokie, Ill: College of American Pathologists; 1982:79.
198. Butch SH, et al. Electronic verification of donor-recipient compatibility: the computer crossmatch. *Transfusion*. 1994;34:105–109.
199. Daurat A, et al. Evaluation of the non-compliance with grouping guidelines which may lead to "wrong blood in tube", an observational study and risk factor analysis. *Transfus Clin Biol*. 2017;24:47–51.
200. Novis DA, et al. Blood bank specimen mislabeling: a College of American Pathologists Q-Probes Study of 41,333 blood bank specimens in 30 institutions. *Arch Pathol Lab Med*. 2017;141:255–259.
201. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. *Guidance for industry: Computer crossmatch (Computerized analysis of the compatibility between the donor's cell type and the recipient's serum or plasma type)* April 2011.
202. Mazepa MA. Pathology consultation on electronic crossmatch. *Am J Clin Pathol*. 2014;141:618–624.
203. Oberman AJ, Barnes BA, Friedman BA. The risk of abbreviating the major crossmatch in urgent or massive transfusion. *Transfusion*. 1978;18:137–141.
204. Sarma DP. Use of blood in elective surgery. *JAMA*. 1980;243:1536–1538.
205. Dexter F, Ledoleter J, Davis E, et al. Systematic criteria for type and screen based on procedure's probability of erythrocyte transfusion. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:768–778.
206. Friedman BA. An analysis of surgical blood use in United States hospitals with application to the maximum surgical blood order schedule. *Transfusion*. 1979;19:268–278.
207. Krier DB. Transfusion-to-cross-match community comparison data. *Am J Med Qual*. 1996;11:68–72.
208. Frank SM, et al. Optimizing preoperative blood ordering with data acquired from an anesthesia information management system. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1286–1297.
209. Frank SM, et al. Reducing unnecessary preoperative blood orders and costs by implementing an updated institution-specific maximum surgical blood order schedule and a remote electronic blood release system. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:501–509.
210. Gervin AS, Fischer RP. Resuscitation of trauma patients with type-specific uncrossmatched blood. *J Trauma*. 1984;24:327–331.
211. Mulay SB, et al. Risks and adverse outcomes associated with emergency-release red blood cell transfusion. *Transfusion*. 2013;53:1416–1420.
212. Boisen, et al. Pretransfusion testing and transfusion of uncrossmatched erythrocytes. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:191–195.
213. Goodell PP, et al. Risk of hemolytic transfusion reactions following emergency-release RBC transfusion. *Am J Clin Pathol*. 2010;134:202–206.

214. Fergusson DA, Hébert P, Hogal DL, et al. Effect of fresh red blood cell transfusions on clinical outcomes in premature, very low-birth-weight infants: the ARIPI randomized trial. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1443–1451.
215. Spinella PC, Reddy HL, Jaffe JS, et al. Fresh whole blood use for hemorrhagic shock: preserving benefit while avoiding complications. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:571–578.
216. Weiskopf RB. Reconstruction deconstructed blood for trauma. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:518–521.
217. Auten JD, et al. The safety of early fresh, whole blood transfusion among severely battle injured at US Marine Corps forward surgical care facilities in Afghanistan. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;79. 790-611.
218. Erber WN, Tan J, Grey D, et al. Use of unrefrigerated fresh whole blood in massive transfusion. *Med J Aust*. 1996;165:11–13.
219. Brohi K, Cohen MJ, Ganter MT, et al. Acute traumatic coagulopathy: initiated by hypoperfusion. *Ann Surg*. 2007;245:812–818.
220. Kaufman RM, Djulbegovic B, Gernsheimer T, et al. Platelet transfusion: a clinical practice guideline from the AABB. *Ann Intern Med*. 162:205–213.
221. Deleted in proofs.
222. Brown LM, Call MS, Knudson MM, et al. A normal platelet count may not be enough: the impact of admission platelet count on mortality and transfusion in severely injured trauma patients. *J Trauma*. 2011;71(suppl 3):S337–S342.
223. Counts RB, Haisch C, Simon TL, et al. Hemostasis in massively transfused trauma patients. *Ann Surg*. 1979;190:91–99.
224. Reed RL, Heimback DM, Counts RB, et al. Prophylactic platelet administration during massive transfusion. *Ann Surg*. 1986;203:40–48.
225. Wang HL, Aguilera C, Knopf KB, et al. Thrombocytopenia in the intensive care unit. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2013;28:268–280.
226. Gorlinger K, Dirkmann D, Solomon C, et al. Fast interpretation of thromboelastometry in non-cardiac surgery: reliability in patients with hypo-, normo-, and hypercoagulability. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;110:222–230.
227. Levy JH, Szlam F, Tanaka KA, et al. Fibrinogen and hemostasis: a primary hemostatic target for the management of acquired bleeding. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:261–274.
228. Miller RD. Complications of massive blood transfusions. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;39:82–93.
229. Hondow JA, Russell WJ, Duncan BM, Lloyd JV. The stability of coagulation factors in stored blood. *ANZ J Surg*. 1982;52:265–269.
230. Simon TL. Changes in plasma coagulation factors during blood storage. *Plasma Ther Transfus Technol*. 1988;9:309–315.
231. Hunt BJ. Bleeding and coagulopathies in critical care. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:847–859.
232. Lavee J, Martinowitz U, Mohr R, et al. The effect of transfusion of fresh whole blood versus platelet concentrates after cardiac operations. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1989;97:204–212.
233. Murray DJ, Olson J, Strauss R, et al. Coagulation changes during packed red cell replacement of major blood loss. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:839–845.
234. Parshuram CS, Jaffe AR. Prospective study of potassium-associated acute transfusion events in pediatric intensive care. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2003;4:65–68.
235. Robillard P, Grégoire Y, Comparison of *vasovagal and citrate reaction rates in donors according to type of apheresis procedure*. Abstract Presented at American Association of Blood Banks. 09 October 2017
236. Linko K, Tigerstedt I. Hyperpotassemia during massive blood transfusions. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1984;28:220–221.
237. Kleinman, Steven, Red blood cell transfusion in adults: Storage, specialized modifications, and infusion parameters. *UpToDate*. Available at: www.uptodate.com/contents/red-blood-cell-tranfusion-in-adults-storage-specialized-modifications-and-infusion-parameters? Accessed April 14, 2013.
238. Smith HM, Farrow SJ, Ackerman JD, et al. Cardiac arrests associated with hyperkalemia during red blood cell transfusion: a case series. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1062–1069.
239. Van Poucke S, Stevens K, Marcus AE, Lancé M. Hypothermia: effects on platelet function and hemostasis. *Thromb J*. 2014;12(1):31.
240. De Witte J, Sessler D. Perioperative shivering: physiology and pharmacology. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(2):467–484.
241. Miller RD, Tong MJ, Robbins TO. Effects of massive transfusion of blood on acid-base balance. *JAMA*. 1971;216:1762–1765.
242. Collins JA, Simmons RL, James PM, et al. The acid-base status of seriously wounded combat casualties. I. Resuscitation with stored blood. *Ann Surg*. 1971;173:6–18.
243. Seyfried H, Walewska I. Immune hemolytic transfusion reactions. *World J Surg*. 1987;11:25–29.
244. Linden JV, Wagner K, Voytovich AE, et al. Transfusion errors in New York State: an analysis of 10 years' experience. *Transfusion*. 2000;40:1207–1213.
245. Capon SM, Sacher RA. Hemolytic transfusion reactions: a review of mechanisms, sequelae, and management. *J Intensive Care Med*. 1989;4:100–111.
246. *AABB Technical Manual*. 17th ed. AABB; 2011.
247. Lopas H. Immune hemolytic transfusion reactions in monkeys: activation of the kallikrein system. *Am J Physiol*. 1973;225:372–379.
248. Schonewille H, van de Watering LMG, Brand A. Additional red blood cell alloantibodies after blood transfusions in nonhematologic alloimmunized patient cohort: is it time to take precautionary measures? *Transfusion*. 2006;46:630–635.
249. Toy P, Popovsky MA, Abraham E, et al. Transfusion-related acute lung injury: definition and review. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:721–726.
250. Zhou L, Giacherio D, Cooling L, et al. Use of B-natriuretic peptide as a diagnostic marker in the differential diagnosis of transfusion-associated circulatory overload. *Transfusion*. 2005;45:1056–1063.
251. Kleinman S, Caulfield T, Chan P, et al. Toward an understanding of transfusion-related acute lung injury: statement of a consensus panel. *Transfusion*. 2004;44:774–789.
252. Clifford L, et al. Characterizing the epidemiology of postoperative transfusion-related acute lung injury. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:12–20.
253. Triuli DJ. Transfusion-related acute lung injury: current concepts for the clinician. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:770–776.
254. Toy P, Gajic P, Bacchetti P, et al. Transfusion-related acute lung injury: incidence and risk factors. *Blood*. 2012;119:1757–1767.
254a. Clifford L, et al. Characterizing the epidemiology of perioperative transfusion-associated circulatory overload. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:21–28.
255. Blumberg, et al. An association between decreased cardiopulmonary complications (transfusion-related acute lung injury and transfusion-associated circulatory overload) and implementation of universal leukoreduction of blood transfusions. *Transfusion*. 2010;50:2738–2744.
256. King KE, Shirey S, Thoman SK, et al. Universal leukoreduction decreases the incidence of febrile nonhemolytic transfusion reactions to RBCs. *Transfusion*. 2004;44:25–29.
257. Oberman HA. Controversies in transfusion medicine: should a febrile transfusion response occasion the return of the blood component to the blood bank? *Transfusion*. 1994;34:353–355.
258. Widman FK. Controversies in transfusion medicine: should a febrile transfusion response occasion the return of the blood component to the blood bank? *Transfusion*. 1994;34:356–358.
259. Ohto H, Anderson KC. A survey of transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease in immunocompetent recipients. *Trans Med Rev*. 1996;10:31–43.
260. Hayashi H, Nishiuchi T, Tamura H, et al. Transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease caused by leukocyte-filtered stored blood. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;79:1419–1421.
261. Vamvakas EC. Transfusion-related immunomodulation. *Transfus Altern Transfus Med*. 2002;4:48–52.
262. Youssef LA, Spitalnik SL. Transfusion-related immunomodulation: a reappraisal. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2017;24(6):551–557.
263. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Adverse ocular reactions following transfusion: United States 1997-1998. *JAMA*. 1998;279:576–578.
264. Corwin HL, AuBuchon JP. Is leukoreduction of blood components for everyone? *JAMA*. 2003;289:1993–1995.
265. Vamvakas EC, Blajchman MA. Universal WBC reduction: a case for and against. *Transfusion*. 2001;41:691–712.
266. Hébert PC, Fergusson DA, Blajchman MA, et al. Clinical outcomes following institution of the Canadian universal leukoreduction program for red blood cell transfusions. *JAMA*. 2003;289:1941–1949.
267. *American Association of Blood Banks Technical Manual*. 19th ed. AABB; 2017.
268. Kleinman S, Chan P, Robillard P. Risks associated with transfusion of cellular blood components in Canada. *Transfus Med Rev*. 2003;17:120–162.

50 Patient Blood Management: Coagulation

ANIL K. PANIGRAHI and LINDA L. LIU

KEY POINTS

- Normal hemostasis is a balance between generation of a localized hemostatic clot and uncontrolled thrombus formation.
- The extrinsic pathway of coagulation begins with exposure of blood plasma to tissue factor and represents the initiation phase of plasma-mediated hemostasis.
- The intrinsic pathway amplifies and propagates the hemostatic response to maximize thrombin generation.
- The common pathway generates thrombin, forms fibrin, and crosslinks fibrin strands to produce an insoluble fibrin clot.
- Routine preoperative coagulation testing of all surgical patients is costly and lacks predictive value for detection of hemostatic abnormalities. Testing should be based on the preoperative history and physical examination and the planned surgery.
- Antiplatelet agents and anticoagulants are used to reduce the formation of blood clots in the setting of coronary or cerebral atherosclerosis or after vascular thrombosis.
- Thrombolytic therapy is used to break up or dissolve blood clots.
- Procoagulant drugs (antifibrinolytics, factor replacements, prothrombin complex concentrate) help control blood loss during surgery.
- Perioperative management of patients who require chronic anticoagulation or antiplatelet therapy involves balancing the risk of surgical bleeding against the risk of developing postoperative thromboembolism.

Introduction

Hemostasis is an ordered enzymatic process involving cellular and biochemical components that function to preserve the integrity of the circulatory system after injury. The ultimate goal of this process is to limit blood loss secondary to vascular injury, maintain intravascular blood flow, and promote revascularization after thrombosis. As such, normal physiologic hemostasis is a constant balance between procoagulant pathways responsible for generation of a stable localized hemostatic clot and counter-regulatory mechanisms inhibiting uncontrolled thrombus propagation or premature thrombus degradation. Vascular endothelium, platelets, and plasma coagulation proteins play equally important roles in this process. Derangements in this delicate system can lead to excessive bleeding or pathologic thrombus formation. This chapter will examine normal and abnormal hemostasis, mechanisms to monitor coagulation, medications to manipulate coagulation, and management options for the perioperative anticoagulated patient.

Normal Hemostasis

Vascular endothelial injury—mechanical or biochemical—leads to platelet deposition at the injury site, a process often referred to as primary hemostasis. Although this initial platelet plug may prove adequate for a minor injury, control of more significant bleeding necessitates stable clot formation incorporating crosslinked fibrin—a process mediated by activation of plasma clotting factors and often referred to as secondary hemostasis. Although the terms primary and secondary hemostasis remain relevant for descriptive and diagnostic purposes, advances in understanding cellular and molecular processes underlying hemostasis suggest a far more complex interplay between vascular endothelium, platelets, and plasma-mediated hemostasis than is reflected in this model.[1]

VASCULAR ENDOTHELIAL ROLE IN HEMOSTASIS

In order to maintain blood flow throughout the circulatory system, the vascular endothelium employs several strategies to inhibit unprovoked thrombus formation. Healthy endothelial cells possess antiplatelet, anticoagulant, and profibrinolytic effects to inhibit clot formation.[2] The negatively charged vascular endothelium repels platelets, and endothelial cells produce potent platelet inhibitors such as prostacyclin (prostaglandin I_2,) and nitric oxide (NO).[3,4] An adenosine diphosphatase (CD39) expressed on the surface of vascular endothelial cells also serves to block platelet activation via degradation of adenosine diphosphate (ADP), a potent platelet activator.[5] Given these endogenous antiplatelet effects, quiescent platelets normally do not adhere to healthy vascular endothelial cells.

The vascular endothelium also plays a pivotal anticoagulant role through expression of several inhibitors of plasma-mediated hemostasis. Endothelial cells increase activation of protein C, an anticoagulant, via surface glycoprotein thrombomodulin (TM), which acts as a cofactor for thrombin-mediated activation of protein C, making its activation 1000 times faster. Endothelial cells also increase endothelial cell protein C receptor, which further enhances protein C activation by an additional 20-fold.[6] Endothelial-bound glycosaminoglycans, such as heparan sulfate, function to accelerate the protease activity of antithrombin (AT), which degrades factors IXa, Xa, and thrombin.[7] Endothelial cells also produce tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI), which inhibits the procoagulant activity of factor Xa as well as the TF-VIIa complex.[8] Finally, the vascular endothelium synthesizes tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA), which is responsible for activating fibrinolysis, a primary counter-regulatory mechanism limiting clot propagation.

Despite these natural defense mechanisms to inhibit thrombus generation, a variety of mechanical and chemical stimuli may shift the balance such that the endothelium instead promotes clot formation. Damage to vascular endothelial cells exposes the underlying extracellular matrix (ECM), which contains collagen, von Willebrand factor (vWF), and other platelet-adhesive glycoproteins.[9,10] Platelets bind to and are activated by exposure to ECM components. Exposure of tissue factor, constitutively expressed by fibroblasts in the ECM, activates plasma-mediated coagulation pathways to generate thrombin and fibrin clot.[11] Certain cytokines (i.e., interleukin-1, tumor necrosis factor, and γ-interferon) and hormones (i.e., desmopressin acetate [DDAVP] or endotoxin) induce prothrombotic changes in vascular endothelial cells by increasing synthesis and expression of vWF, tissue factor, and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1), and down-regulating normal antithrombotic cellular and biochemical pathways.[12,13] Finally, thrombin, hypoxia, and high fluid shear stress can also induce prothrombotic vascular endothelial changes such as increased synthesis of PAI-1. This associated inhibition of fibrinolysis has been implicated in the prothrombotic state and high incidence of venous thrombosis after surgery.[14,15]

PLATELETS AND HEMOSTASIS

Platelets contribute a critical role in hemostasis. Derived from bone marrow megakaryocytes, nonactivated platelets circulate as discoid anuclear cells with a lifespan of 8 to 12 days.[16] Under normal conditions, approximately 10% of platelets are consumed to support vascular integrity with $1.2-1.5 \times 10^{11}$ new platelets formed daily.[17] The platelet membrane is characterized by numerous receptors and a surface-connected open canalicular system serving to increase platelet membrane surface area and provide rapid communication between the platelet interior and exterior environment.[18] Under normal circumstances, platelets do not bind the vascular endothelium. However, when injury occurs, platelets contribute to hemostasis by adhering to the damaged vasculature, aggregating with one another to form a platelet plug, and facilitating generation of fibrin crosslinks to stabilize and reinforce the plug. Initially, upon exposure of the ECM, platelets undergo a series of biochemical and physical alterations characterized by three major phases: adhesion, activation, and aggregation. Exposure of subendothelial matrix proteins (i.e., collagen, vWF, fibronectin) allows for platelet adhesion to the vascular wall. vWF proves particularly important as a bridging molecule between ECM collagen and platelet glycoprotein Ib/factor IX/factor V receptor complexes.[19] Absence of either von Willebrand disease (vWF) or glycoprotein Ib/factor IX/factor V receptors (Bernard-Soulier syndrome) results in a clinically significant bleeding disorder.

In addition to promoting their adhesion to the vessel wall, the platelet interaction with collagen serves as a potent stimulus for the subsequent phase of thrombus formation, termed platelet activation. The generation of thrombin resulting from exposure of tissue factor, functions as a second pathway for platelet activation. Platelets contain two specific types of storage granules: α granules and dense bodies.[18] α granules contain numerous proteins essential to hemostasis and wound repair, including fibrinogen, coagulation factors V and VIII, vWF, platelet-derived growth factor, and others. Dense bodies contain the adenine nucleotides ADP and adenosine triphosphate, as well as calcium, serotonin, histamine, and epinephrine. During the activation phase, platelets release granular contents, resulting in recruitment and activation of additional platelets and propagation of plasma-mediated coagulation.[20] During activation, platelets undergo structural changes to develop pseudopod-like membrane extensions and to release physiologically active microparticles, which serve to dramatically increase platelet membrane surface area. Redistribution of platelet membrane phospholipids during activation exposes newly activated glycoprotein platelet surface receptors and phospholipid binding sites for calcium and coagulation factor activation complexes, which is critical to propagation of plasma-mediated hemostasis.[1]

During the final phase of platelet aggregation, activators released during the activation phase recruit additional platelets to the site of injury. Newly active glycoprotein IIb/IIIa receptors on the platelet surface bind fibrinogen, thereby promoting cross-linking and aggregation with adjacent platelets.[20] The importance of these receptors is reflected by the bleeding disorder associated with their hereditary deficiency, Glanzmann thrombasthenia.

PLASMA-MEDIATED HEMOSTASIS

Plasma-mediated hemostasis was originally described as a cascade or waterfall sequence of steps involving the serial activation of enzymes and cofactors to accelerate and amplify fibrin generation by thrombin.[21] Trace plasma proteins, activated by exposure to tissue factor or foreign surfaces, initiate this series of reactions culminating in conversion of soluble fibrinogen to insoluble fibrin clot.[22] Thrombin generation, the "thrombin burst," represents the key regulatory step in this process. Thrombin not only generates fibrin but also activates platelets and mediates a host of additional processes affecting inflammation, mitogenesis, and even down-regulation of hemostasis.[23]

Traditionally, the coagulation cascade describing plasma-mediated hemostasis has been depicted as extrinsic and intrinsic pathways, both of which culminate in a common pathway in which fibrin generation occurs.[24] This cascade model has proven to be an oversimplification,

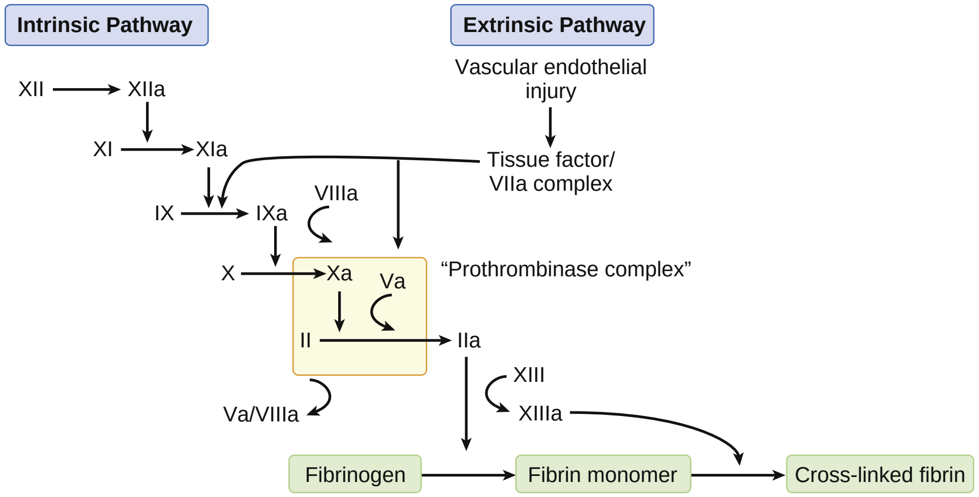


Fig. 50.1 Depiction of the Classic Coagulation Cascade Incorporating Extrinsic and Intrinsic Pathways of Coagulation. (From Slaughter TF. The coagulation system and cardiac surgery. In: Estafanous FG, Barasch PG, Reves JG, eds. *Cardiac Anesthesia: Principles and Clinical Practice.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2001: 320, with permission.)

as it does not fully reflect in vivo hemostasis. For instance, individuals with deficiencies in the intrinsic pathway (factor XII, prekallikrein, or high molecular weight kininogen) exhibit prolongations of the activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT), but do not actually experience an increased bleeding risk. Nevertheless, the cascade model remains a useful descriptive tool for organizing discussions of plasma-mediated hemostasis (Fig. 50.1). Coagulation factors are, for the most part, synthesized by the liver and circulate as inactive proteins termed zymogens. The somewhat confusing nomenclature of the classic coagulation cascade derives from the fact that inactive zymogens were identified using Roman numerals assigned in order of discovery. As the zymogen is converted to an active enzyme, a lower-case letter "a" is added to the Roman numeral identifier. For example, inactive prothrombin is referred to as factor II and active thrombin is identified as factor IIa. Some numerals were subsequently withdrawn or renamed as our understanding of the coagulation pathway evolved.

The cascade characterizes a series of enzymatic reactions in which inactive precursors—zymogens—undergo activation to amplify the overall reaction. Each stage of the cascade requires assembly of membrane-bound activation complexes, each composed of an enzyme (activated coagulation factor), substrate (inactive precursor zymogen), cofactor (accelerator or catalyst), and calcium.[25] Assembly of these activation complexes occurs on platelet or microparticle phospholipid membranes that localize and concentrate reactants. Coagulation factor activation slows dramatically in the absence of these phospholipid membrane anchoring sites. This requirement functionally confines clot formation to sites of injury.

Extrinsic Pathway of Coagulation

The extrinsic pathway of coagulation is now understood to represent the initiation phase of plasma-mediated hemostasis and begins with exposure of blood plasma to tissue factor.[26] Tissue factor is prevalent in subendothelial tissues surrounding the vasculature. Under normal conditions, the vascular endothelium minimizes contact between tissue factor and plasma coagulation factors. After vascular injury, small concentrations of factor VIIa circulating in plasma form phospholipid-bound activation complexes with tissue factor, factor X, and calcium to promote conversion of factor X to Xa.[22] Additionally, the tissue factor/factor VIIa complex also activates factor IX of the intrinsic pathway, further demonstrating the key role of tissue factor in initiating hemostasis.[27]

Intrinsic Pathway of Coagulation

Classically, the intrinsic or contact activation system was described as a parallel pathway for thrombin generation initiated by factor XII activation after contact with negatively charged surfaces such as glass, dextran sulfate, or kaolin. However, the rarity of bleeding disorders resulting from contact activation factor deficiencies led to our current understanding of the intrinsic pathway as an amplification system to propagate thrombin generation initiated by the extrinsic pathway.[28] Recent cell-based models of coagulation suggest that thrombin generation by way of the extrinsic pathway is limited by a natural inhibitor, TFPI,[29] but the small quantities of thrombin generated do activate factor XI and the intrinsic pathway. The intrinsic pathway then subsequently amplifies and propagates the hemostatic response to maximize thrombin generation (Fig. 50.2). Although factor XII may be activated by foreign surfaces (i.e., cardiopulmonary bypass [CPB] circuits or glass vials), the intrinsic pathway plays a minor role in the initiation of hemostasis. Proteins of the intrinsic pathway may, however, contribute to inflammatory processes, complement activation, fibrinolysis, kinin generation, and angiogenesis.[28]

Common Pathway of Coagulation

The final pathway, common to both extrinsic and intrinsic coagulation cascades, depicts thrombin generation and subsequent fibrin formation. Signal amplification results from activation of factor X by both intrinsic (FIXa, FVIIIa, Ca^{2+}) and extrinsic (tissue factor, FVIIa, Ca^{2+}) tenase complexes. The tenase complexes in turn facilitate formation of the

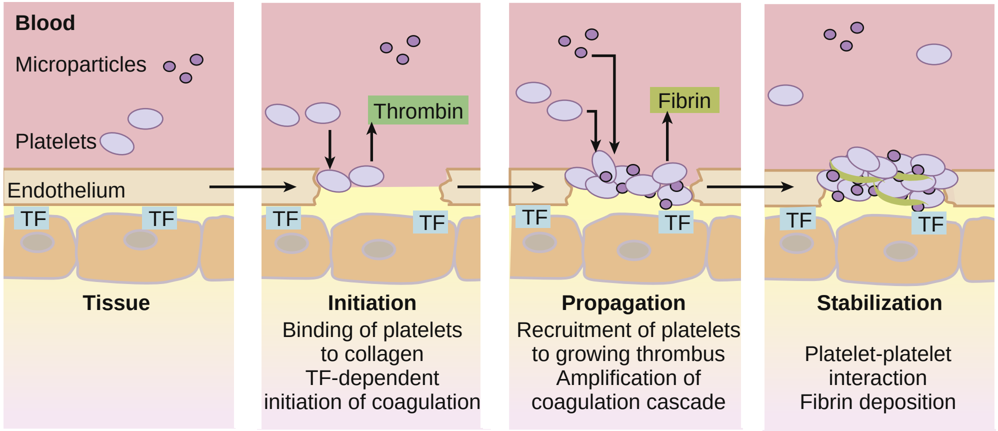

Blood
Microparticles
Platelets
Endothelium
TF
TF
Tissue
Thrombin
TF
TF
Initiation
Binding of platelets to collagen
TF-dependent initiation of coagulation
Fibrin
TF
TF
Propagation
Recruitment of platelets to growing thrombus
Amplification of coagulation cascade
TF
TF
Stabilization
Platelet-platelet interaction
Fibrin deposition

Fig. 50.2 Clot Formation at Vascular Injury Site. Vascular injury exposes subendothelial tissue factor *(TF)* initiating plasma-mediated hemostasis via the extrinsic pathway. The intrinsic pathway further amplifies thrombin and fibrin generation. Platelets adhere to exposed collagen to undergo activation, resulting in recruitment and aggregation of additional platelets. (From Mackman N, Tilley RE, Key NS. Role of extrinsic pathway of blood coagulation in hemostasis and thrombosis. *Arterioscleros Thromb Vasc Biol.* 2007;27:1687–1693, with permission.)

prothrombinase complex (FXa, FII [prothrombin], FVa [cofactor], and Ca^{2+}), which mediates a surge in thrombin generation from prothrombin.[30] Thrombin proteolytically cleaves fibrinopeptides A and B from fibrinogen molecules to generate fibrin monomers, which polymerize into fibrin strands to form clot.[30] Finally, factor XIIIa, a transglutaminase activated by thrombin, covalently crosslinks fibrin strands to produce an insoluble fibrin clot resistant to fibrinolytic degradation.[31]

Both fibrinogen and factor XIII have been implicated in acquired bleeding disorders. Reduced concentrations of either protein may promote excess postoperative hemorrhage and transfusion requirements. Recent availability of plasma concentrates for both fibrinogen and factor XIII suggest the potential for randomized controlled trials to determine efficacy of these biologics in treatment of acquired coagulopathies.[32]

Thrombin generation remains the key enzymatic step regulating hemostasis. Not only does thrombin activity mediate conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin, but it also has a host of other actions. It activates platelets and factor XIII, converts inactive cofactors V and VIII to active conformations, activates factor XI and the intrinsic pathway, up-regulates expression of tissue factor, stimulates vascular endothelial expression of PAI-1 to down-regulate fibrinolytic activity, and suppresses uncontrolled thrombosis through activation of protein C.[33]

Intrinsic Anticoagulant Mechanisms

Once activated, regulation of hemostasis proves essential to limit clot propagation beyond the injury site. One simple, yet important, anticoagulant mechanism derives from flowing blood and hemodilution. The early platelet and fibrin clot proves highly susceptible to disruption by shear forces from flowing blood. Blood flow further limits localization and concentration of both platelets and coagulation factors such that a critical mass of hemostatic components may fail to coalesce.[30,34] However, later in the clotting process, more robust counter-regulatory mechanisms are necessary to limit clot propagation. Four major counter-regulatory pathways have been identified that appear particularly crucial for down-regulating hemostasis: fibrinolysis, TFPI, the protein C system, and serine protease inhibitors (SERPINs).

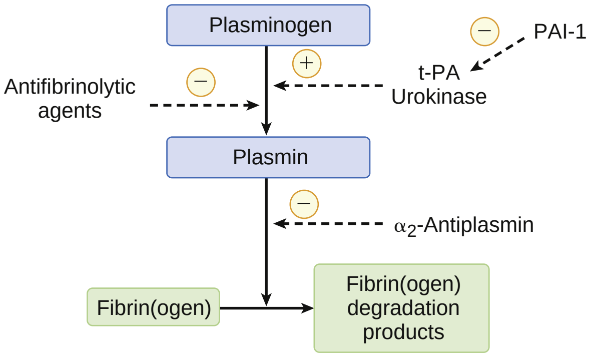


Fig. 50.3 Principal Mediators of Fibrinolysis. Dashed lines depict sites of action for promoters and inhibitors of fibrinolysis. *PAI,* Plasminogen activator inhibitor; *tPA,* tissue plasminogen activator. (From Slaughter TF. The coagulation system and cardiac surgery. In: Estafanous FG, Barasch PG, Reves JG, eds. *Cardiac Anesthesia: Principles and Clinical Practice.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2001:320, with permission.)

The fibrinolytic system comprises a cascade of amplifying reactions culminating in plasmin generation and proteolytic degradation of fibrin and fibrinogen. As with the plasma-mediated coagulation cascade, inactive precursor proteins are converted to active enzymes, necessitating a balanced system of regulatory controls to prevent excessive bleeding or thrombosis (Fig. 50.3). The principal enzymatic mediator of fibrinolysis is the serine protease, plasmin, which is generated from plasminogen.[35] In vivo, plasmin generation is most often accomplished by release of t-PA or urokinase from the vascular endothelium. Activity of t-PA and urokinase is accelerated in the presence of fibrin, which limits fibrinolysis to areas of clot formation. Factor XIIa and kallikrein of the intrinsic pathway also contribute to fibrinolysis through activation of plasminogen after exposure to foreign surfaces.[36] Fortunately, fibrinolytic activity is limited by the rapid inhibition of free plasmin. In addition to enzymatic degradation of fibrin and fibrinogen, plasmin inhibits hemostasis by degrading essential cofactors V and VIII and reducing platelet glycoprotein surface receptors essential to adhesion and aggregation.[37] Fibrin degradation products also possess mild anticoagulant properties.

TFPI and factor Xa form phospholipid membrane-bound complexes that incorporate and inhibit tissue factor/factor VIIa complexes.[38] This inhibition leads to downregulation of the extrinsic coagulation pathway.[39] As TFPI rapidly extinguishes tissue factor/VIIa activity, the critical role of the intrinsic pathway to continued thrombin and fibrin generation becomes apparent.[28]

The protein C system proves particularly important in down-regulating coagulation through inhibition of thrombin and the essential cofactors Va and VIIIa. After binding to TM, thrombin's procoagulant function decreases and instead its ability to activate protein C is augmented.[40] Protein C, complexed with the cofactor protein S, degrades both cofactors Va and VIIIa. Loss of these critical cofactors limits formation of tenase and prothrombinase activation complexes essential to formation of factor Xa and thrombin, respectively. Additionally, once bound to TM, thrombin is rapidly inactivated and removed from circulation, providing another mechanism by which the protein C pathway down-regulates hemostasis.[40]

The most significant SERPINs regulating hemostasis include AT and heparin cofactor II. AT inhibits thrombin, as well as factors IXa, Xa, XIa, and XIIa. [41] Heparin binds AT causing a conformational change that accelerates AT-mediated inhibition of targeted enzymes. Heparin cofactor II is a more recently discovered SERPIN that inhibits thrombin alone.[42] Although the precise physiologic role for heparin cofactor II remains unclear, when bound by heparin, its inhibitory activity is dramatically increased.

Disorders of Hemostasis

EVALUATION OF BLEEDING DISORDERS

The perioperative period presents significant challenges to the hemostatic system; therefore, identification and correction of hemostatic disorders can be of vital importance. Unfortunately, assessment of bleeding risk continues to be a challenge and the optimal methods for preoperative evaluation remain controversial. Although routine preoperative coagulation testing of all surgical patients may seem prudent, such an approach is costly and lacks predictive value for detection of hemostatic abnormalities. Standard coagulation tests such as the prothrombin time (PT) and aPTT were designed as diagnostic tests to be used when a bleeding disorder is suspected based on clinical evaluation. As a result, when used as screening tests, these in vitro assays are limited in their ability to reflect the in vivo hemostatic response.[43] For example, because of the nature of establishing normal value ranges for these tests, 2.5% of healthy individuals will have abnormal PT or aPTT values. Meanwhile, those with mild hemophilia A, vWD, and factor XIII deficiency may experience clinically significant bleeding despite having normal values on standard testing.[44] Consequently, a carefully performed bleeding history remains the single most effective predictor of perioperative bleeding.

A thorough history should focus on prior bleeding episodes.[45] In particular, patients should be asked whether they have experienced excessive bleeding after hemostatic challenges such as dental extractions, surgery, trauma, or childbirth and whether blood transfusions or reoperation were required to control the bleeding. Common presentations suggestive of a bleeding disorder may include frequent epistaxis necessitating nasal packing or surgical intervention. Oral surgery and dental extractions prove particularly good tests of hemostasis because of increased fibrinolytic activity on the mucous membranes of the oral cavity. Women with platelet disorders or vWD may experience menorrhagia, and postpartum hemorrhage commonly occurs in those with underlying disorders of hemostasis.[46] A history of spontaneous nontraumatic hemorrhage proves particularly concerning when associated with hemarthroses or deep muscle bleeding. Identification of a bleeding disorder at an early age or in family members suggests an inherited condition. A careful medication history including direct questions relating to consumption of aspirin and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), as well as supplements such as ginkgo and vitamin E.[47] Finally, inquiries regarding coexisting diseases should be included (i.e., renal, hepatic, thyroid, and bone marrow disorders and malignancy).

For most patients, a thoughtfully conducted bleeding history will eliminate the need for preoperative laboratory-based coagulation testing. Should the preoperative history or physical examination reveal signs or symptoms suggestive of a bleeding disorder, further laboratory testing is indicated. Preoperative coagulation screening tests may be indicated, despite a negative history, in cases in which the planned surgery is commonly associated with significant bleeding (i.e., CPB). Finally, preoperative testing may prove justified in settings in which the patient is unable to provide an adequate preoperative bleeding history. Should evidence of a bleeding disorder be detected, underlying etiologies should be clarified if possible before proceeding with surgery.

INHERITED BLEEDING DISORDERS

Von Willebrand Disease

Inherited disorders of hemostasis include those involving platelet quantity and function, coagulation factor deficiencies, or disorders of fibrinolytic pathways. Among these inherited bleeding disorders, vWD is the most common and is characterized by quantitative or qualitative deficiencies of vWF resulting in defective platelet adhesion and aggregation.[48] Affecting up to 1% of the population, vWD is categorized into three main types (types 1, 2, and 3). with most cases demonstrating an autosomal dominant inheritance pattern.[49] Types 1 and 3 lead to varying quantitative vWF deficiencies, while type 2 encompasses four subtypes expressing qualitative defects that affect vWF function. Under normal conditions, vWF plays a critical role in platelet adhesion to the ECM and prevents degradation of factor VIII by serving as a carrier molecule.[50] Classically, patients with vWD describe a history of easy bruising, recurrent epistaxis, and menorrhagia, which are characteristic of defects in platelet-mediated hemostasis. In more severe cases (i.e., type 3 vWD), concomitant reductions in factor VIII may lead to serious spontaneous hemorrhage, including hemarthroses.

Routine coagulation studies are generally not helpful in the diagnosis of vWD, as the platelet count and PT will be normal in most patients and the aPTT may demonstrate mild-to-moderate prolongation depending on the level of factor VIII reduction.[51] Instead, initial screening tests involve measurement of vWF levels (vWF antigen) and vWF platelet binding activity in the presence of the ristocetin cofactor, which leads to platelet agglutination. Measurable reductions in factor VIII activity may occur in severe cases.[52] Increasingly, platelet function tests have replaced bleeding times in assessing for vWD.[53,54] Mild cases of vWD often respond to DDAVP, which results in the release of vWF from endothelial cell. Use of vWF:factor VIII concentrates (Humate-P, CSL Behring, King of Prussia, PA) may be indicated in the perioperative period if there is a significant bleeding history.[55]

Hemophilias

Although less common than vWD, the hemophilias merit consideration given their diverse clinical presentation. Hemophilia A, factor VIII deficiency, and hemophilia B, factor IX deficiency, are both X-linked inherited bleeding disorders most frequently presenting in childhood as spontaneous hemorrhage involving joints, deep muscles, or both. Hemophilia A occurs with an incidence of 1:5000 males and hemophilia B in 1:30,000 males. While most cases are inherited, nearly one third of cases represent new mutations with no family history.[56] The severity of the disease depends on an individual's baseline factor activity level.[57] In mild cases, patients with hemophilia may not be identified until later in life, often after unexplained bleeding with surgery or trauma. Classically, laboratory testing in patients with hemophilia reveals prolongation of the aPTT, whereas the PT, bleeding time, and platelet count remain within normal limits. However, a normal aPTT may also be seen in mild forms of hemophilia; therefore, specific factor analyses need to be performed to confirm the diagnosis and determine the severity of the factor deficiency. In most cases, perioperative management of patients with hemophilia A or B necessitates consultation with a hematologist and administration of recombinant or purified factor VIII or factor IX concentrates, respectively.[58] Mild cases of hemophilia A may be treated with desmopressin. An increasingly common complication of hemophilia, particularly in the case of hemophilia A, has been the development of alloantibodies directed against the factor VIII protein.[59] Administration of factor VIII concentrates will fail to control bleeding in patients with high-titer antibodies. Several approaches to reduce bleeding in these patients include: substitution of porcine factor VIII, administration of activated (FEIBA, Shire Inc., Lexington, MA) or non-activated prothrombin complex concentrates (PCCs), or treatment with recombinant factor VIIa (NovoSeven, Novo Nordisk Inc., Bagsvaerd, Denmark).[60]

ACQUIRED BLEEDING DISORDERS

Drug Induced

Medications represent the most significant cause of acquired coagulopathy in perioperative patients. In addition to anticoagulants such as heparin and warfarin, the increasing number of direct oral anticoagulants(DOACs) and antiplatelet drugs have further complicated perioperative management. An understanding of the effect of these agents and strategies for reversal can be critical to reduce bleeding complications during urgent and emergent procedures. Additionally, there are several classes of medications that may unintentionally increase bleeding risk due to side effects, primarily via platelet inhibition. β-Lactam antibiotics impair platelet aggregation that can result in clinically significant bleeding in patients with higher baseline risk.[61] Nitroprusside,[62] nitroglycerin,[63] and NO[64] also result in decreased platelet aggregation and secretion. Similarly, selective-serotonin reuptake inhibitors, such as paroxetine, decrease platelet serotonin storage, which inhibits platelet aggregation and may have clinical consequences in individuals with preexisting coagulopathies.[65] These medications should be considered in patients with an otherwise unexplained coagulopathy.

Liver Disease

Hemostatic defects associated with hepatic failure prove complex and multifactorial. Severe liver disease impairs synthesis of coagulation factors, produces quantitative and qualitative platelet dysfunction, and impedes clearance of activated clotting and fibrinolytic proteins. The liver is the primary site for the production of procoagulant factors including fibrinogen, prothrombin (factor II), factors V, VII, IX, X, XI, XII, as well as the anticoagulants protein C and S, and AT. Laboratory findings commonly associated with liver disease include a prolonged PT and possible prolongation of the aPTT, suggesting that these individuals are at increased risk of bleeding. However, the abnormal values only reflect the decrease in procoagulant factors and do not account for the concomitant decrease in anticoagulant factors.[66] As a result, patients with chronic liver disease are thought to have a rebalanced hemostasis and actually generate amounts of thrombin equivalent to healthy individuals.[67]

Similarly, thrombocytopenia from splenic sequestration is often observed in patients with liver disease and portal hypertension[68] and is accompanied by platelet dysfunction due to increased production of endothelial NO and prostacyclin resulting in platelet inhibition.[69] Despite these alterations, increases in vWF commonly observed in these patients may serve to restore platelet function. Also, levels of the plasma metalloprotease ADAMTS13, responsible for cleaving vWF multimers, are decreased in chronic liver disease and result in high circulating levels of large vWF multimers that promote platelet aggregation.[70] This increase in vWF may in part correct for thrombocytopenia and platelet dysfunction but also can result in a prothrombotic state and increased clotting risk.

Fibrinolysis of formed clot is also aberrant in patients with liver disease. Normally, fibrin clot is degraded by plasmin, which is converted to its active form by t-PA and urokinase plasminogen activator (u-PA). Excessive fibrinolysis is prevented by thrombin-activatable fibrinolysis inhibitor (TAFI), which blocks activation of plasmin from plasminogen. TAFI is synthesized by the liver and as levels are decreased in patients with chronic liver disease, it was believed that such individuals are at increased bleeding risk due to hyperfibrinolysis.[71] However, levels of PAI-1, a SERPIN of t-PA and u-PA, are also increased in liver disease, which may in actuality normalize fibrinolysis.[72]

In summary, procoagulant and anticoagulant hemostatic mechanisms are rebalanced in patients with chronic liver disease, but this balance is easily disrupted and these patients are at risk for both bleeding and inappropriate clotting.[73] Traditional coagulation testing does not correlate with bleeding risk in these patients, which has led to studies looking at the use of viscoelastic coagulation testing using thromboelastography (TEG) or rotational thromboelastometry (ROTEM) as a means of assessing functional coagulation and guiding perioperative blood product transfusion and administration of antifibrinolytic agents.[73,74]

Renal Disease

Platelet dysfunction commonly occurs in association with chronic renal failure and uremia, as reflected by a prolonged bleeding time and propensity for bleeding associated with surgery or trauma. The underlying mechanisms are multifactorial but have mostly been attributed to decreased platelet aggregation and adhesion to injured vessel walls. Impaired adhesion is likely due to defects of the glycoprotein IIb/IIIa, which facilitates platelet binding of fibrinogen and vWF.[75,76] Additionally, accumulation of guanidinosuccinic acid and the resulting increase in endothelial NO synthesis further decreases platelet responsiveness.[77] Red blood cell (RBC) concentration has also been speculated to contribute to platelet dysfunction, as correction of anemia results in shortened bleeding times, presumably related to the role of RBCs in causing platelet margination along the vessel wall under laminar flow conditions.[78] Both dialysis and correction of anemia have been reported to shorten bleeding times in patients with chronic renal failure. Treatment of platelet dysfunction related to chronic renal disease includes transfusion of cryoprecipitate (rich in vWF) or administration of desmopressin (0.3 μg/kg), which stimulates release of vWF from endothelial cells.[79] Additionally, conjugated estrogens (0.6 mg/kg intravenously for 5 days) have been demonstrated to shorten bleeding times,[80] perhaps via decreased generation of NO.[81]

Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation

Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) is a pathologic hemostatic response to tissue factor/factor VIIa complex that leads to excessive activation of the extrinsic pathway, which overwhelms natural anticoagulant mechanisms and generates intravascular thrombin. Numerous underlying disorders may precipitate DIC, including trauma, amniotic fluid embolus, malignancy, sepsis, or incompatible blood transfusions.[82] Most often, DIC presents clinically as a diffuse bleeding disorder associated with consumption of coagulation factors and platelets during widespread microvascular thrombotic activity, which results in multiorgan dysfunction. Laboratory findings typical of DIC include reductions in platelet count; prolongation of the PT, aPTT, and thrombin time (TT); and elevated concentrations of soluble fibrin and fibrin degradation products. However, DIC is both a clinical and laboratory diagnosis; hence, laboratory data alone do not provide sufficient sensitivity or specificity to confirm a diagnosis.[83] For example, chronic DIC states have been identified with relatively normal screening coagulation tests accompanied by elevated concentrations of soluble fibrin and fibrin degradation products.[84] Management of DIC requires management of the underlying condition precipitating hemostatic activation. Otherwise, treatment is mostly supportive and includes selective blood component transfusions to replete coagulation factors and platelets consumed in the process. The use of anticoagulants such as heparin remains controversial with recommendations that its use be limited to conditions with the highest thrombotic risk.[85] Antifibrinolytic therapy generally is contraindicated in DIC, owing to the potential for catastrophic thrombotic complications.[86]

CARDIOPULMONARY BYPASS-ASSOCIATED COAGULOPATHY

Institution of CPB by directing blood flow through an extracorporeal circuit causes significant perturbations to the hemostatic system. Initial priming of the bypass circuit results in hemodilution and thrombocytopenia.[87] Adhesion of platelets to the synthetic surfaces of the bypass circuit further decreases platelet counts and contributes to platelet dysfunction.[88] During CPB, expression of platelet surface receptors important for adhesion and aggregation (GPIb, GPIIb/IIIa) are downregulated and the number of vWF-containing α granules are decreased, thereby impairing platelet function.[89] Furthermore, induced hypothermia during CPB results in reduced platelet aggregation and plasma-mediated coagulation by decreasing clotting factor production and enzymatic activity.[90] Hyperfibrinolysis may also occur as a result of CPB, supporting the use of antifibrinolytic drugs to decrease intraoperative blood loss.[91]

TRAUMA-INDUCED COAGULOPATHY

Uncontrolled hemorrhage is a frequent cause of trauma-related deaths. Coagulopathy in this setting may be due to acidosis, hypothermia, and hemodilution from resuscitation; however, an independent acute coagulopathy is also experienced by these individuals.[92] Termed trauma-induced coagulopathy (TIC) or acute traumatic coagulopathy, this process involves disordered hemostasis and increased fibrinolysis observed early after injury.[93] The anticoagulant effect of activated protein C (APC) is thought to play a primary role in TIC by decreasing thrombin generation via inhibition of factor Va and VIIIa and promoting fibrinolysis through inhibition of PAI-1. The relevance of APC in the development of TIC is supported by the association of hypoperfusion and increasing injury severity with increased levels of APC activity.[94] Hypoperfusion is thought to be the stimulus for APC activation.[95] Additionally, degradation of the endothelial glycocalyx (EG), a gel-like matrix lining the vascular endothelium, is linked to factors associated with trauma, including tissue damage, hypoperfusion, elevated catecholamines, and inflammation. The EG has anticoagulant properties and contains proteoglycans such as syndecan-1, hyaluronic acid, heparan sulfate, and chondroitin sulfate which are shed during endothelial injury. Shedding of proteoglycans results in an "autoheparinization" phenomenon that contributes to TIC. Markers of EG degradation have been found to be associated with inflammation, coagulopathy, and increased mortality in trauma patients.[96]

Although platelet counts appear to be normal, platelet dysfunction contributes to increased bleeding in TIC. Significant platelet hypofunction in response to various agonists, including ADP, arachidonic acid, and collagen, has

BOX 50.1 Hypercoagulable States and Risk for Perioperative Thrombosis

High Risk

- Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia
- Antithrombin deficiency
- Protein C deficiency
- Protein S deficiency
- Antiphospholipid antibody syndrome

Moderate Risk

- Factor V Leiden genetic polymorphism
- Prothrombin G20210A genetic polymorphism
- Hyperhomocysteinemia
- Dysfibrinogenemia
- Postoperative prothrombotic state
- Malignancy
- Immobilization

been observed acutely in trauma patients prior to resuscitation.[97,98] It is hypothesized that trauma patients experience "platelet exhaustion" as a result of activation from widespread release of ADP from injured tissues. This diffuse activation renders platelets unresponsive to subsequent stimulation.[98] Platelet insensitivity to ADP is also associated with increased susceptibility of clots to tPA-mediated fibrinolysis.[99] The importance of early treatment to reduce hyperfibrinolysis in trauma is supported by the findings of the Clinical Randomisation of an Antifibrinolytic in Significant Haemorrhage 2 (CRASH-2) trial, which demonstrated a mortality benefit from early administration of tranexamic acid (TXA).[100,101]

PROTHROMBOTIC STATES

Thrombophilia, a propensity for thrombotic events, commonly manifests clinically in the form of venous thrombosis (frequently deep venous thrombosis [DVT] of the lower extremity).[102] As with bleeding disorders, thrombophilia may result from inherited or acquired conditions (Box 50.1). The pathogenesis of thrombosis is thought to be due to Virchow's triad (blood stasis, endothelial injury, and hypercoagulability).[9] In the majority of cases, a risk factor or precipitating event is identified; however, a single factor generally does not result in clinically significant thrombosis.[103] Instead, multiple factors act synergistically to increase risk.[104] For example, thrombotic complications often occur after surgery or during pregnancy in association with obesity, underlying malignancy, or an inherited thrombophilia.[105] Random screening of asymptomatic patients for thrombotic risk has not proven cost effective or clinically efficacious.[106,107] As with bleeding disorders, a history focusing on prior thrombotic events, family history of thrombosis, and concurrent drug therapy offers greater predictive value than random screening.

INHERITED THROMBOTIC DISORDERS

Improvements in biochemical and molecular testing have dramatically improved our understanding of blood coagulation and the prevalence of prothrombotic disorders.[108] Because of more specific testing, an inheritable thrombotic predisposition is identified in as many as 50% of patients presenting with venous thromboembolism.[109] The most common inherited prothrombotic conditions include single point mutations in genes for factor V (factor V Leiden) or prothrombin (prothrombin G20210A). In the case of the factor V Leiden, the mutation results in APC resistance whereby the essential cofactor Va is no longer susceptible to APC-mediated degradation. This simple alteration in balance between hemostasis and the APC counter-regulatory system induces a prothrombotic condition present in approximately 5% of the Caucasian population.[110] In the case of the prothrombin gene mutation, increased prothrombin concentrations in plasma generate a hypercoagulable state. Less common inherited forms of thrombophilia include deficiencies of AT, protein C, or protein S.[108] Inherited forms of thrombophilia are characterized by highly variable penetrance affected by blood type, sex, and other confounding variables. Environmental factors such as oral contraceptive use, pregnancy, immobility, infection, surgery, or trauma greatly affect the incidence of thrombosis in those with an inherited predisposition.[111] In the absence of coexisting precipitating conditions, presence of a family history, test abnormality suggesting thrombophilia, or history of thrombosis, risks associated with long-term preventive anticoagulation may outweigh potential benefits.[106] After a thrombotic complication, however, these patients most often are managed with life-long anticoagulation.

ACQUIRED THROMBOTIC DISORDERS

Antiphospholipid Syndrome

Antiphospholipid syndrome (APS) describes an acquired autoimmune disorder characterized by venous or arterial thromboses, or both, and recurrent pregnancy loss. This syndrome may occur in association with autoimmune disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus or rheumatoid arthritis, or it may occur in isolation. APS results from development of autoantibodies directed against phospholipid-binding proteins, which affect the coagulation system and is associated with up to 10% of cases of DVT and 6% of pregnancy-associated morbidity.[112] Characteristically, APS results in mild prolongation of the aPTT and positive testing for lupus anticoagulant, anticardiolipin or anti-β2-glycoprotein I antibodies.[113] Antibodies associated with APS interfere with phospholipids common to many laboratory-based tests of coagulation. Despite the prolonged aPTT, APS poses no increased bleeding risk but rather increases the potential for thrombosis. Isolated prolongation of an aPTT in a preoperative patient merits consideration of the diagnosis of APS. Patients with this syndrome who have experienced a thrombotic complication are at increased risk for recurrent thrombosis and most often are managed by life-long anticoagulation.[114]

HEPARIN-INDUCED THROMBOCYTOPENIA

Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) describes an autoimmune-mediated drug reaction occurring in as many as 5% of patients receiving heparin therapy. Patients with HIT experience a mild-to-moderate thrombocytopenia. As opposed to other drug-induced thrombocytopenias, HIT

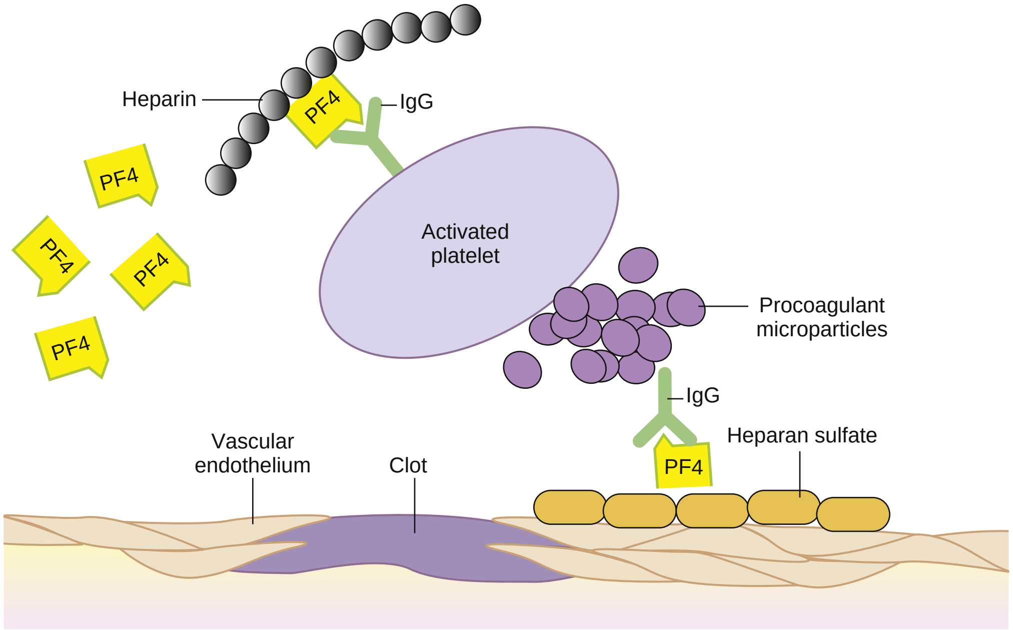


Fig. 50.4 Mechanisms Underlying Thrombosis in Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia. Immune complexes composed of heparin, platelet factor 4 *(PF4)*, and antibodies bind to platelet surface Fcγ receptors to activate platelets. PF4/heparin immune complexes further activate vascular endothelium, monocytes, and macrophages to increase tissue factor expression. *IgG,* Immunoglobulin G. (From Slaughter TF, Greenberg CS. Heparin-associated thrombocytopenia and thrombosis: Implications for perioperative management. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:669, with permission.)

results in platelet activation and potential for venous and arterial thromboses.[115] Evidence suggests that HIT is mediated by immune complexes (composed of immunoglobulin G [IgG] antibody, platelet factor 4 [PF4], and heparin) that bind platelet Fcγ receptors to activate platelets. Anti-PF4/heparin antibodies may "activate" vascular endothelium, monocytes, and macrophages by up-regulating tissue factor expression (Fig. 50.4). Risk factors for development of HIT include patient population, gender, and heparin formulation used. Women are at increased risk of HIT (odds ratio [OR] 2.37; 95% CI 1.37-4.09) as are surgical patients compared to medical patients (OR 3.25; 95% CI 1.98-5.35). [116] Given the high doses of heparin administered during cardiac surgery with CPB, these patients have a higher incidence of anti-PF4 antibody development (up to 50%); however, the incidence of HIT in this population appears to be similar to other surgical groups.[117] Use of unfractionated heparin (UFH) carries a greater risk of HIT development than low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH) (absolute risk 2.6% vs. 0.2%).[118] Patients developing HIT during heparin therapy experience substantially increased risk for thrombosis (OR 20:40, absolute risk 30% to 75%).[115]

HIT manifests clinically as thrombocytopenia occurring 5 to 14 days after initiating heparin therapy. With prior heparin exposure, thrombocytopenia or thrombosis may occur within 1 day. A diagnosis of HIT should be entertained for any patient experiencing thrombosis or thrombocytopenia (absolute or relative ≥ 50% reduction in platelet count) during or after heparin administration. Although HIT remains a clinical diagnosis, HIT antibodies testing should be undertaken to confirm the diagnosis. The enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) is sensitive, but not as specific as the serotonin release assay (SRA), because the SRA indicates heparin-induced platelet activation. For many intensive care patients, a positive ELISA test does not lead to a positive SRA, which means these patients are unlikely to have HIT.[119]

In cases where HIT is suspected, heparin must be discontinued immediately (including UFH, LMWH, heparin-bonded catheters, heparin flushes). Alternative nonheparin anticoagulation must be administered concurrently. In most cases, a direct thrombin inhibitor (DTI, e.g., bivalirudin, lepirudin, or argatroban) is substituted for heparin until adequate prolongation of the international normalized ratio (INR) can be achieved with warfarin. Initiation of warfarin alone is contraindicated for HIT treatment because the initial decreased synthesis of proteins C and S enhances the patient's prothrombotic state. Platelet transfusions should be held unless the patient is severely thrombocytopenic ($<20 \times 10^9$/L) with signs of bleeding. Use of DOACs (e.g., rivaroxaban, apixaban, dabigatran, edoxaban) is being investigated.[120]

Typically, PF4/heparin immune complexes are cleared from the circulation within 3 months. If possible, patients experiencing HIT should avoid future exposure to UFH; however, several reports describe subsequent limited perioperative reexposure to UFH after laboratory testing to ensure absence of PF4/heparin immune complexes. If titers remain high, treatment with plasmapheresis for rapid antibody clearance is an alternative plan, but risks and benefits should be discussed with the hematologists.[121] Otherwise, bivalirudin, the shortest acting DTI, is the alternative agent for anticoagulation while on CPB.

MONITORING COAGULATION

Traditionally, perioperative coagulation monitoring has focused on (1) preoperative testing to identify patients at increased risk for perioperative bleeding and (2) intraoperative monitoring of heparin therapy during cardiac and vascular surgery. The ideal test for perioperative coagulation should be simple to perform, accurate, reproducible, diagnostically specific, and cost effective. No current coagulation monitor meets these expectations; however, integrating results from multiple forms of monitoring may provide valuable diagnostic insight into perioperative coagulopathies.

COMMON LABORATORY-BASED MEASURES OF COAGULATION

Prothrombin Time

The PT assesses the integrity of the extrinsic and common pathways of plasma-mediated hemostasis. It measures time required in seconds for clot formation to occur after mixing a sample of patient plasma with tissue factor (thromboplastin) and calcium. It is sensitive to deficiencies in fibrinogen, and factors II, V, VII, or X. As three of these factors have vitamin K-dependent synthesis (factors II, VII, and X), the PT assay has been used to monitor anticoagulation with vitamin K antagonists (VKAs) such as warfarin. The thromboplastin reagent, derived from animal or recombinant sources, can vary in its ability to bind factor VII and initiate coagulation, which limits interlaboratory comparisons. Given the importance of monitoring PT results for patients on long-term warfarin therapy, the INR was introduced as a means of normalizing PT results among different laboratories.[122]

Thromboplastin reagents are tested against an international recombinant standard and assigned an international sensitivity index (ISI) based on the results. The INR subsequently is calculated as INR = $(\text{patient PT}/\text{standard PT})^{\text{ISI}}$, in which the standard PT represents the geometric mean of multiple normal samples from the testing laboratory. Institution of the INR substantially reduced interlaboratory variations. The PT is more sensitive at detecting decreases in factors VII and X than levels of fibrinogen and factors II and V; however, due to variations in thromboplastin reagents, factor levels as low as 40% to 50% may not prolong the PT.[123]

Any prolongation of the PT should be assessed further with mixing studies to determine whether delayed clot formation is attributable to a coagulation factor deficiency or an inhibitor (e.g., antiphospholipid antibody, fibrin degradation products). The mixing study is performed by mixing the patient's plasma sample with "normal" donor plasma. In the case of a coagulation factor deficiency, time to clot formation will correct whereas time to clot formation will not correct in the presence of an inhibitor.

Activated Partial Thromboplastin Time

The aPTT assesses integrity of the intrinsic and common pathways of plasma-mediated hemostasis. It measures the time required in seconds for clot formation to occur after mixing a sample of patient plasma with phospholipid, calcium, and an activator of the intrinsic pathway of coagulation (e.g., celite, kaolin, silica, or ellagic acid). The aPTT is more sensitive to deficiencies in factors VIII and IX than other factors in the intrinsic and common pathways. In most cases, coagulation factor levels below 30% to 40% of normal are detectable; however, aPTT reagents vary in their sensitivity to factor concentrations and may not be prolonged until levels drop below 15% for some factors.[124] Additionally, as there is no reference standard reagent for the aPTT analogous to the INR for PT, individual institutions must set their own normal ranges and aPTT values cannot be compared between laboratories.

Monitoring anticoagulation during cardiac and vascular surgery remains necessary given the widely acknowledged pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic response to heparin. Patient-specific factors affecting response to heparin include age, weight, intravascular volume, and concentrations of AT, heparin cofactor II, PF4, and other heparin-binding proteins. Therefore, patients experience widely divergent anticoagulant responses to identical weight-based doses of heparin. In situations where heparin therapy must be initiated in patients with a baseline aPTT prolongation (lupus anticoagulant or factor inhibitors), alternative tests such as anti-factor Xa activity or heparin level measurements must be used.

Anti-Factor Xa Activity

The anti-factor Xa activity assay or factor Xa inhibition test is being used with increasing frequency to monitor heparin anticoagulation instead of, or in addition to, the aPTT assay. The assay involves combining patient plasma with reagent factor Xa and an artificial substrate that releases a colorimetric signal after factor Xa cleavage, thereby providing a functional assessment of heparin anticoagulant effect.[125] While aPTT values can be affected by several patient factors such as coagulation factor deficiencies, factor inhibitors, or the presence of lupus anticoagulant, measurement of the heparin-bound AT inhibition of factor Xa activity is not influenced by these variables. Anti-factor Xa testing can also be used to measure the effect of other anticoagulants such as LMWH, fondaparinux, and factor Xa inhibitors. As with the aPTT assay, the anti-factor Xa test lacks adequate standardization, and activity levels vary based on the type of assay used, and patient population assayed.[126] Furthermore, significant discordance between aPTT and anti-factor Xa results can be observed in hospitalized patients receiving heparin therapy.[127] Data supporting the use of anti-factor Xa over aPTT is sparse; however, it may be helpful to use anti-factor Xa testing in combination with the aPTT to monitor both heparin effect and generalized coagulation status, respectively.

Platelet Count and Bleeding Time

The platelet count remains a standard component in screening for coagulation abnormalities. Automated platelet counts are performed in bulk using either optical-based or impedance-based measurements. Recommendations regarding optimal platelet counts prove somewhat arbitrary, but platelet counts exceeding 100,000 μL commonly are associated with normal hemostasis. Abnormally low platelet counts merit further assessment, including a visual platelet count from a blood smear. Sample hemodilution and platelet clumping are common etiologies for falsely low platelet counts.

With the growth of point-of-care platelet function monitors, the bleeding time has declined in popularity. Limitations of the bleeding time include poor reproducibility, time needed to perform the test, and potential for scarring. Furthermore, the bleeding time is affected by numerous confounding variables, including skin temperature, skin thickness, age, ethnicity, anatomic test location, and a host of other factors.[128] In general, the bleeding time is not predictive of bleeding and for that reason its use as a preoperative screening test to assess bleeding risk is not recommended.[129]

COMMON POINT-OF-CARE MEASURES OF COAGULATION

Although laboratory-based measures of coagulation remain the mainstay of preoperative coagulation testing, increasing availability of sensitive and specific point-of-care coagulation monitoring may soon offer opportunities to direct blood component and hemostatic drug therapy more specifically without delays inherent to standard laboratory testing. Commercially available point-of-care tests applicable in the perioperative setting may be considered in four broad categories: (1) functional measures of coagulation that measure the intrinsic ability of blood to generate clot, (2) heparin concentration monitors, (3) viscoelastic measures of coagulation, and (4) platelet function monitors.

Activated Clotting Time

The activated clotting time (ACT), described by Hattersley in 1966 as a variation of the Lee-White whole blood clotting time, employs a contact activation initiator, typically celite (diatomaceous earth) or kaolin, to accelerate clot formation and reduce time for assay completion.[130] Current commercial ACT monitors automate clot detection. One of the more widely available ACT monitors uses a glass test tube containing a small magnet (Hemochron Response Whole Blood Coagulation System, ITC, Edison, NJ). After adding sample blood, the tube is placed into the analyzer and the tube is rotated slowly at 37°C, allowing the magnet to maintain contact with a proximity detection switch. As fibrin clot forms, the magnet becomes entrapped and dislodged from the detection switch, thereby triggering an alarm to signal completion of the ACT. Another ACT device uses a "plumb bob" flag assembly that is raised and released repeatedly to settle in the sample vial containing blood and contact activator (Hepcon HMS Plus, Medtronic, Minneapolis, MN). With clot formation, the flag descent slows, which triggers an optical detector and sets off an alarm to signal completion of the ACT.

The ACT in normal individuals is 107 ± 13 seconds. Because the ACT measures clot formation by way of intrinsic and common pathways, heparin and other anticoagulants prolong time to clot formation. The ACT proves somewhat resistant to platelet dysfunction and thrombocytopenia. ACT testing remains a popular perioperative coagulation monitor because of its simplicity, low cost, and linear response at high heparin concentrations. Limitations of ACT monitoring include lack of sensitivity at low heparin concentrations and poor reproducibility.[131] Further limitations of the ACT include artefactual prolongation of results with hemodilution or hypothermia, and values beyond 600 seconds exceed the linear response range for the assay. Although duplicate measurements improve results, newer electrochemically based ACT analyzers (i-STAT, Abbott, Princeton, NJ) improve reproducibility such that single ACT determinations may prove adequate.

Heparin Concentration Measurement

Protamine titration remains the most popular point-of-care method for determining heparin concentration in perioperative settings. Protamine, a strongly basic polycationic protein, directly inhibits heparin in a stoichiometric manner. In other words, 1 mg of protamine will inhibit 1 mg (~100 units) of heparin, thereby forming the basis for protamine titration as a measure of heparin concentration. As increasing concentrations of protamine are added to a sample of heparin-containing blood, time to clot formation decreases until the point at which the protamine concentration exceeds heparin concentration to delay clot formation. If a series of blood samples with incremental doses of protamine are analyzed, the sample in which the protamine and heparin concentrations are most closely matched will clot first. This methodology allows for an estimate of heparin concentration. Assuming that the heparin-protamine titration curve for an individual patient remains constant throughout the operative period, protamine titration methods may estimate heparin doses required to achieve a desired plasma heparin concentration or the protamine dose needed to reverse a given heparin concentration in blood.[132] Current point-of-care heparin concentration monitoring employs automated measurement techniques (Hepcon HMS Plus, Medtronic, Minneapolis, MN). The advantages of measuring heparin concentration include sensitivity for low heparin concentrations as well as relative insensitivity to hemodilution and hypothermia. A major limitation of heparin concentration monitoring is failure to assess directly for an anticoagulant effect. For example, consider a patient with a homozygous deficiency of AT; in this case, heparin concentration determination alone would fail to identify the lack of anticoagulant effect after heparin administration.

Viscoelastic Measures of Coagulation

Initially developed in the 1940s, viscoelastic measures of coagulation have undergone a resurgence in popularity. The unique aspect of viscoelastic monitors lies in their ability to measure the entire spectrum of clot formation in whole blood from early fibrin strand generation through clot retraction and fibrinolysis. The early TEG developed by Hartert in 1948 has evolved into two independent viscoelastic monitors: the modern TEG (TEG 5000 Thromboelastograph Hemostasis Analyzer System, Haemoscope, Braintree, MA) and ROTEM (TEM Systems, Durham, NC).[133] In the case of the TEG 5000, a small (0.35-mL) sample of whole blood is placed into a disposable cuvette within the instrument. The cuvette is maintained at a temperature of 37°C and continuously rotates around an axis of approximately 5 degrees. A sensor "piston" attached by a torsion wire to an electronic recorder is lowered into the blood within the cuvette. Addition of an activator, most often kaolin or celite, initiates clot formation. As the fibrin-platelet plug evolves, the piston becomes enmeshed within the clot, transferring rotation of the cuvette to the piston, torsion wire, and electronic recorder.[134]

Although variables derived from the TEG tracing do not coincide directly with laboratory-based tests of coagulation, the TEG depicts characteristic abnormalities in clot formation and fibrinolysis. Various parameters describing clot formation and lysis are identified and measured by the TEG.

For example, the R value (reaction time) measures time to initial clot formation. The R value may be prolonged by a deficiency of one or more plasma coagulation factors or inhibitors such as heparin. Maximum amplitude provides a measure of clot strength and may be decreased by either qualitative or quantitative platelet dysfunction or decreased fibrinogen concentration. The α angle and K (BiKoatuguli-erung or coagulation) values measure rate of clot formation and may be prolonged by any variable slowing clot generation such as a plasma coagulation factor deficiency or heparin anticoagulation. Modification of clotting activators may be incorporated to assess platelet or fibrin contributions to clot strength.

In a somewhat analogous manner, ROTEM measures viscoelastic changes in a sample of whole blood subjected to coagulation activation. Specific activators differ from that of the TEG with resulting quantitative measures termed (1) coagulation time (seconds), (2) α angle (clot formation time; seconds), (3) maximal clot firmness (MCF; millimeter), and (4) lysis time (LT; second)(Fig. 50.5 on TEG in attached file).

In contrast to TEG and ROTEM, an alternative viscoelastic measure of coagulation (Sonoclot Analyzer, Sienco Inc., Arvada, CO) immerses a rapidly vibrating probe into a 0.4-mL sample of blood. As clot formation proceeds, impedance to probe movement through the blood increases to generate an electrical signal and characteristic clot signature. The analyzer signature may be used to derive the ACT and to provide information regarding clot strength and presence of fibrinolysis.

Viscoelastic monitors generate characteristic diagrams by translating mechanical resistance to sensor movement within a sample of whole blood to an electronic waveform subject to quantitative analysis.[133] One of the more common applications for viscoelastic monitoring has been real-time detection of excess fibrinolysis during liver transplantation or cardiac surgery. Evidence suggests that viscoelastic monitoring may prove beneficial in differentiating surgically related bleeding from that due to a coagulopathy. When used as one component of a diagnostic algorithm, both TEG and ROTEM have been demonstrated to reduce blood administration.[135,136] More widespread application of viscoelastic monitoring has been hindered by lack of specificity associated with abnormal findings and qualitative assay interpretation.[137] Digital automation of these instruments has simplified interpretation and improved reproducibility.

Platelet Function Monitors

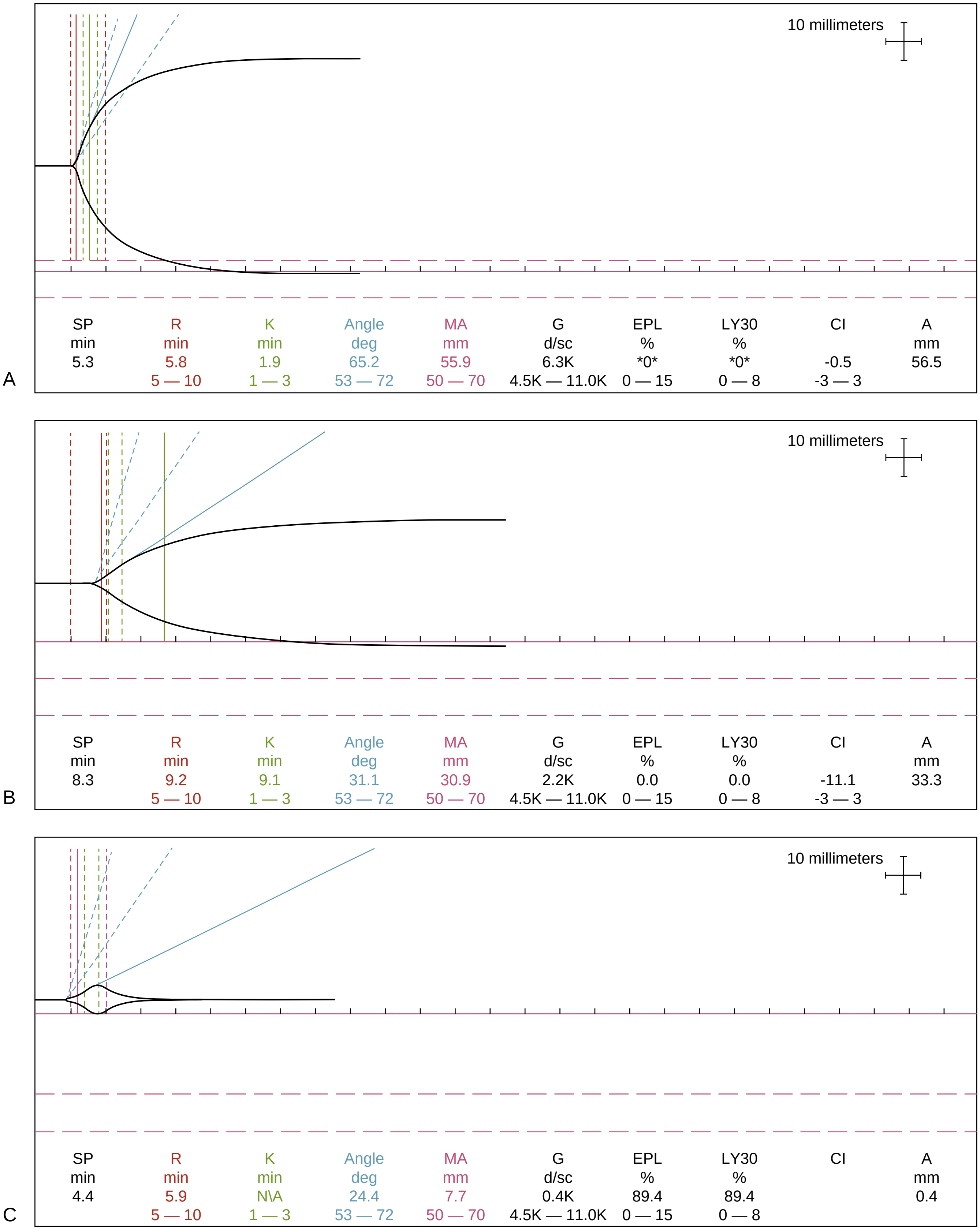
Assessment of platelet function has proved challenging for several reasons. Historically, tests of platelet function are costly, time consuming, and technically demanding. Platelet dysfunction may occur as a result of diverse inherited or acquired disorders affecting surface receptors involved in adhesion or aggregation, storage granules, internal activation pathways, phospholipid membranes, or other mechanisms.[138] Lack of standardized quality controls necessitates use of local donor blood to establish normal control ranges. Complicating assessment further is the fact that platelets are highly susceptible to activation or desensitization during sample collection, transport, storage, and processing.

The technique for platelet aggregometry was developed in the 1960s and soon became the gold standard for assessment of platelet function.[139] The classic method involves centrifugation of patient blood to obtain platelet-rich plasma, which is then analyzed in a cuvette at 37°C placed between a light source and photocell. Addition of platelet agonists such as ADP, epinephrine, collagen, and ristocetin, stimulates platelet aggregation, which in turn results in a decrease in turbidity of the solution and an increase in light transmission. Patterns based upon the kinetics and amplitude of response to these various agonists are associated with specific platelet disorders and aid in diagnosis.[140] In an effort to decrease the labor required to prepare the platelet rich plasma solution as well as to include the effect of RBCs and plasma proteins on platelet function, a technique for whole blood aggregometry was developed.[141] Whole blood aggregometry uses platinum electrodes onto which platelets adhere. Platelet aggregation induced by agonists results in increased adhesion of aggregates to the electrodes, raising the impedance which is measured over time. A multichannel system (Multiplate Analyzer, Roche Diagnostics, Indianapolis, IN) is available and is used to diagnose platelet dysfunction as well as monitor anti-platelet therapy.[142] Flow cytometry employing fluorescent-labeled antibodies provides another sensitive method for quantitating platelet activation, responsiveness, and surface receptor availability.[143] Despite representing standards of care, these measurements remain technically challenging, costly, and time-consuming laboratory-based assays.

Although viscoelastic measures of coagulation (i.e., TEG or ROTEM) may detect platelet dysfunction, the sensitivity and specificity are limited. Incorporation of a platelet mapping assay into TEG provides a method for viscoelastic measurement of drug-induced platelet inhibition with reasonable correlation to optical aggregometry.[134]

Fortunately, an increasing array of platelet function assays specifically designed as point-of-care instruments are becoming available.[140] As a measure of primary hemostasis, a platelet function analyzer (PFA-100, Siemens, Tarrytown, NY) increasingly has replaced the bleeding time in assessment of hemostasis. The PFA-100 incorporates high-shear conditions to simulate small vessel injury in the presence of either ADP or epinephrine, both potent platelet activators.[144] Time to clot-mediated aperture occlusion is reported as closure time. The PFA-100 has proven effective in detecting vWD and aspirin-mediated platelet dysfunction. This instrument, as a component of a standardized screening protocol, reduces time to identify and classify platelet dysfunction. Limitations of the PFA-100 include interference by thrombocytopenia and hemodilution.

Many other different point-of-care platelet function testing devices are on the market today. It is important to keep in mind that monitors from different manufacturers measure differing aspects of platelet-mediated or plasma-mediated hemostasis. When using different instruments, results may vary from “severe” platelet dysfunction to “no platelet dysfunction” in a single sample of blood. Before adopting any point-of-care monitoring, an understanding of the quality assurance requirements, test methodology, and concomitant strengths and weaknesses are essential to inform patient care. Also, in considering any point-of-care coagulation testing, it must be recognized that results will not necessarily mirror those reported from laboratory-based



A

SP	R	K	Angle	MA	G	EPL	LY30	CI	A
min	min	min	deg	mm	d/sc	%	%		mm
5.3	5.8	1.9	65.2	55.9	6.3K	*0*	*0*	-0.5	56.5
	5 — 10	1 — 3	53 — 72	50 — 70	4.5K — 11.0K	0 — 15	0 — 8	-3 — 3	

B

SP	R	K	Angle	MA	G	EPL	LY30	CI	A
min	min	min	deg	mm	d/sc	%	%		mm
8.3	9.2	9.1	31.1	30.9	2.2K	0.0	0.0	-11.1	33.3
	5 — 10	1 — 3	53 — 72	50 — 70	4.5K — 11.0K	0 — 15	0 — 8	-3 — 3	

C

SP	R	K	Angle	MA	G	EPL	LY30	CI	A
min	min	min	deg	mm	d/sc	%	%		mm
4.4	5.9	N\A	24.4	7.7	0.4K	89.4	89.4		0.4
	5 — 10	1 — 3	53 — 72	50 — 70	4.5K — 11.0K	0 — 15	0 — 8		

Fig. 50.5 Thromboelastographs from kaolin-activated samples analyzed using a TEG 5000 system depicting (A) normal coagulation, (B) hypofibrinogenemia, and (C) hyperfibrinolysis .

testing because of differences between using whole blood samples for testing as opposed to plasma or processed platelets. Reagent sensitivities can vary across manufacturers and lots. Hopefully, further advances in point-of-care coagulation monitoring will offer the opportunity for clinicians to make informed, bedside decisions about transfusion therapy and hemostatic drug administration to minimize perioperative bleeding and adopt effective patient blood management practices.

Antithrombotics, Thrombolytics, and Procoagulant Drugs

In the following sections, we will briefly review some common medications used to decrease or increase clot formation and then examine perioperative management strategies to reverse anticoagulants. This is not intended to be an exhaustive list of all FDA-approved drugs, so only more commonly used medications are discussed here.

Starting with antithrombotic drugs, these drugs are usually used to reduce the formation of blood clots in the setting of coronary or cerebral atherosclerosis or after vascular thrombosis. They can be further subdivided into antiplatelet agents and anticoagulants (Table 50.1).

TABLE 50.1 Common Classes of Antithrombotics, Thrombolytics, and Procoagulants

Category	Subcategory	Generic Drug Names
Antiplatelet agents	Cyclooxygenase inhibitors	Aspirin, NSAIDS
	P2Y12 receptor antagonists	Ticlopidine, clopidogrel, prasugrel, cangrelor, and ticagrelor
	Platelet GPIIb/IIIa antagonists	Abciximab, eptifibatide, and tirofiban
Anticoagulants	Vitamin K antagonists	Warfarin
	Heparin	UFH, LMWH, fondaparinux
	Direct thrombin inhibitors	Argatroban, bivalirudin (IV) Desirudin (SQ) Dabigatran (PO)
	Factor Xa inhibitors	Rivaroxaban, apixaban, edoxban
Thrombolytics	Fibrin-specific agents	Alteplase, reteplase, tenecteplase
	Non-fibrin-specific agents	Streptokinase
Antifibrinolytics	Lysine analogs	Tranexamic acid, epsilon-aminocaproic acid
Factor Replacements	Recombinant Factor VIIa	
	Factor VIII-vWF	
	Prothrombin complex concentrates	3-factor PCC; 4-factor PCC, activated PCC, FEIBA
	Fibrinogen concentrates	

FEIBA, Factor VIII Bypass Activity; *IV,* intravenous; *LMWH,* low-molecular-weight heparin; *NSAIDS,* nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs; *PCC,* prothrombin complex concentrate; *PO,* per os, by mouth; *SQ,* subcutaneous; *UFH,* unfractionated heparin; *vWF,* von Willebrand factor.

ANTIPLATELET AGENTS

Antiplatelet agents inhibit thrombus formation by inhibiting platelet aggregation and/or adhesion to clot or damaged endothelium. Depending on the drug, they can work either reversibly or irreversibly. Most common antiplatelet agents can be divided into: (1) cyclooxygenase (COX) inhibitors, (2) P2Y12 receptor antagonists, and (3) platelet GPIIb/IIIa antagonists, although there are several other classes available such as phosphodiesterase inhibitors, protease-activated receptor-1 antagonists, adenosine reuptake inhibitors, and thromboxane inhibitors.

Cyclooxygenase Inhibitors

Aspirin and NSAIDS are the two primary members of this class. There are two forms of the cyclooxygenase enzyme: COX-1 and COX-2. COX-1 maintains the integrity of the gastric lining and renal blood flow and initiates the formation of thromboxane A_2 (TxA_2), which is important for platelet aggregation. COX-2 is responsible for synthesizing the prostaglandin mediators in pain and inflammation.

Aspirin

Aspirin is a non-selective and irreversible COX inhibitor. It acetylates a serine residue on COX-1 and prevents the production of TxA_2 in platelets.[145] COX-2, which leads to antiinflammatory and analgesic effects, is 170 times less sensitive than COX-1 to aspirin so only at high doses can aspirin irreversibly inhibit both COX-1 and COX-2.[146] Because platelets are anuclear, they are unable to synthesize new COX-1 once aspirin has irreversibly inhibited the enzyme. Consequently, despite its short half-life of approximately 15 to 20 minutes, aspirin's inhibitory effect persists through the platelet lifespan of 7 to 10 days.[147]

The recovery of platelet function after aspirin depends on platelet turnover. Generally, megakaryocytes generate 10% to 12% of platelets daily, so near normal hemostasis is expected in 2 to 3 days after the last dose of aspirin with typical platelet turnover. High platelet turnover diseases, which result from increased production (e.g., essential thrombocythemia) or increased consumption (e.g., inflammation), may require more frequent than once daily aspirin dosing.[148] Immediate reversal of aspirin for emergencies can be achieved with platelet transfusions.

NONSTEROIDAL ANTIINFLAMMATORY DRUGS

Most NSAIDS are nonselective, reversible COX inhibitors and therefore provide antipyretic, analgesic, and antiplatelet aggregation effects.[149] Platelet function normalizes 3 days after discontinuing the use of NSAIDS. Selective COX-2 antagonists such as celecoxib were introduced in the late 1990s to provide antiinflammatory, analgesic, and antipyretic activity without the gastrointestinal complications,[150] but clinical trials with selective COX-2 antagonists have reported increased risks for cardiovascular complications.[151] COX-2 specific inhibitors do not affect platelet function because platelets do not express COX-2. The increased cardiovascular risk is thought to be due to inhibition of PGI_2 without inhibition of TxA_2, thus tipping the balance toward thrombosis. Current recommendations are to use COX-2 inhibitors only when necessary for pain and then with the lowest effective dose possible after weighing the risks and benefits.[152]

P2Y12 RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS

These drugs (ticlopidine, clopidogrel, prasugrel, cangrelor, and ticagrelor) interfere with platelet function by inhibiting the P2Y12 receptor, which inhibits platelet adhesion and aggregation by preventing the expression of GPIIb/IIIa on the surface of activated platelets.[153] Ticlopidine, clopidogrel, and prasugrel are members of a class known as thienopyridines, and are pro-drugs requiring hepatic metabolism to generate the active metabolite that then irreversibly inactivates the ADP-binding site of the P2Y12 receptor.[154] Ticagrelor and cangrelor are reversible inhibitors.

Clopidogrel (Plavix) is the most commonly prescribed agent in this class. Platelet functions normalize 7 days after discontinuing clopidogrel and 14 to 21 days after discontinuing ticlopidine. Because clopidogrel is a pro-drug and requires CYP2C19 for activation, it has wide interindividual variability in inhibiting ADP-induced platelet function. Although many factors may be involved in this variability, genetic polymorphism of CYP2C19 along with ABCB1, which affects the intestinal permeability and oral bioavailability of clopidogrel, are thought to play a significant role.[155] Patients treated with clopidogrel who have decreased CYP2C19 and ABCB1 activity were shown to have increased risk of major cardiovascular events.[156] The FDA put a black box warning on clopidogrel to make patients and healthcare providers aware that CYP2C19-poor metabolizers, representing up to 14% of patients, are at high risk of treatment failure and that genotype testing may be helpful prior to drug initiation.[157]

Ticagrelor binds to the P2Y12 receptor at a different site than the thienopyridines, and causes a conformational change of the receptor.[158] While ticagrelor needs to undergo metabolism to an active metabolite, both the parent drug and the active metabolite have anti-platelet effects.[159] Genetic polymorphisms do not appear to be clinically relevant for this drug.[160] Because it is much shorter acting than clopidogrel, ticagrelor must be dosed twice daily, which may be of benefit prior to surgery.

The newest drug in this group is cangrelor. It is the only one available for intravenous administration, and like ticagrelor, it changes the conformation of the P2Y12 receptor, resulting in inhibition of ADP-induced platelet aggregation.[158] It received FDA approval in 2015 for adult patients undergoing percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI). This drug has the fastest onset of action (seconds), and platelet function normalizes within 60 minutes after drug discontinuation.[161] This rapid onset may allow for bridging therapy in patients with drug-eluting stents who require surgery.

GLYCOPROTEIN IIB/IIIA INHIBITORS

Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors (GPI) (abciximab, eptifibatide, and tirofiban) work to prevent platelet aggregation by decreasing the binding of fibrinogen and vWF to glycoprotein IIb/IIIa receptors on the surface of activated platelets.[162] They are given intravenously in order to: (1) stop ongoing arterial thrombosis or (2) eliminate excessive platelet reactivity in diseased vessels so that occlusive thrombi and restenosis do not occur. Their use was highly touted in the past with balloon angioplasty where acute closure was a feared complication. Now with the introduction of stents and P2Y12 receptor antagonists, GPI have become less popular in routine PCI because of the associated bleeding risk and their use is only recommended in a subset of patients with high risk angiographic features or those not loaded adequately with dual antiplatelet agents.[163] Although abciximab has a short plasma half-life (approximately 10 minutes), its effects on platelet function can be seen for much longer, even after the infusion has been stopped. One rare, but serious side effect to be aware of, abciximab can produce thrombocytopenia immediately after drug administration in a small proportion of patients. Mild thrombocytopenia (platelet count $<100 \times 10^9$/L) developed more frequently in patients treated with the drug than control subjects (4.2% vs. 2.0%; $P < .001$).[164]

ANTICOAGULANTS

Vitamin K Antagonists

Warfarin, the most frequently used oral VKA in the United States, inhibits the vitamin K-dependent carboxylation of coagulation factors II, VII, IX, and X and proteins C and S. Warfarin is highly effective in reducing the risk of venous and arterial thromboemboli, and is still the anticoagulant of choice for patients with valvular atrial fibrillation and mechanical heart valves despite the popularity and increased utilization of DOACs for nonvalvular atrial fibrillation. [165]

Warfarin has a long half-life (40 hours) and the complete anticoagulant effect can take 3 to 4 days to emerge because of the long half-lives of the preexisting coagulation factors. Prothrombin (factor II) has the longest half-life (~60 hours). Factor VII and protein C have the shortest half-lives (3-6 hours).[166] Because of this long initiation period, patients at high risk for thromboembolism must be bridged with another anticoagulant (usually UFH or LMWH) until the target INR is achieved. Also, early reductions in the anticoagulant protein C can cause an imbalance toward a hypercoagulable state if warfarin is started alone, resulting in thrombosis or warfarin-induced skin necrosis.

Warfarin is monitored using the INR, and the therapeutic range for warfarin anticoagulation is generally an INR of 2.0 to 3.0, except for patients with mechanical heart valves, where higher values are necessary (INR 2.5-3.5). The INR is not calibrated to evaluate non-warfarin deficiencies such as liver disease and should not be used to evaluate therapeutic effects of other anticoagulants. Warfarin has a very narrow therapeutic window and can be easily affected by drug-drug interactions and patient variability. The need for frequent laboratory monitoring makes warfarin a difficult drug for patients to maintain compliance and the reported time in therapeutic range is only about 65% ± 20% in patients with atrial fibrillation.[167]

Warfarin's pharmacology can be affected by genetic variations in the metabolism of the drug (CYP2C9) and in the production of a vitamin K epoxide reductase enzyme (VKORC1), which reduces vitamin K after it has been oxidized. Recent meta-analyses of randomized trials found that pharmacogenetics testing for polymorphisms unfortunately did not reduce rates of bleeding or thromboembolism.[168] Current recommendations are to only perform pharmacogenetics testing in patients who consistently have INRs outside the therapeutic range or who have an adverse event while on therapy.[169]

Unfractionated Heparin

UFH can be isolated from porcine or bovine intestines and is a mixture of different length polysaccharides with a high molecular weight (mean molecular weight around 15,000 daltons or 35-45 polysaccharide units).[170] UFH binds to AT and indirectly inhibits thrombin (factor IIa) and factor Xa. Benefits of heparin are its short half-life and full reversibility with protamine. Heparin does not have any fibrinolytic activity, so it will not lyse an existing clot.

Full-dose heparin for cardiac surgery is administered as an intravenous bolus of 300 to 400 U/kg. An ACT greater than 400 to 480 seconds is usually considered safe for initiation of CPB. Patients may be resistant to UFH if they have a hereditary deficiency of AT or an acquired deficiency of AT from prolonged heparin administration. The incidence of heparin resistance during CPB is reported at approximately 21%.[171] Simply increasing the dose of heparin in patients with an AT deficiency is often not effective. For these patients, treatment should be with fresh frozen plasma (FFP) transfusions or AT concentrate, which will replenish AT levels and restore heparin response.[172] Other causes of heparin resistance can be due to increased heparin clearance, increased levels of heparin-binding proteins, or elevations of fibrinogen and factor VIII levels.

Low Molecular Weight Heparin and Fondaparinux

LMWH, produced by cleaving UFH into shorter fragments (mean molecular weight approximately 4000 daltons, approximately 15 saccharide units)[173] and fondaparinux, a synthetic pentasaccharide (mean molecular weight 1700 daltons) of the AT binding region of heparin, act more specifically via AT to inhibit factor Xa. LMWH and fondaparinux do not affect the aPTT assay, and coagulation testing is usually not needed. Anti-factor Xa activity levels may be necessary in patients who may have unpredictable drug levels (e.g., renal failure, pregnancy, and body weight less than 50 kg or more than 80 kg).

LMWH has a longer half-life than heparin and can be administered subcutaneously either once or twice daily. LMWH is primarily excreted by the kidney, so its half-life is prolonged in patients with renal failure. Approximately 25% to 50% of LMWH molecules contain 18 or more saccharide units and can inhibit factor Xa and thrombin, while the remaining 50% to 75% of LMWH molecules contain <18 saccharide units and only inhibit factor Xa. [174] Protamine requires more than 14 saccharide units in the heparin molecule for interaction. [175] Therefore, protamine is only partially effective in reversing LMWH. It does not completely abolish the anti-Xa activity, but it may neutralize the higher molecular weight fractions of LMWH.

Fondaparinux has a much longer half-life (17-21 hours) and can be dosed daily.

Because it is only 5 saccharide units, protamine is not effective for reversing fondaparinux.[176] Because antigen formation by the PF4/heparin complex requires a polysaccharide chain of at least 8 to 10 saccharides, fondaparinux-associated HIT is unlikely to occur,[177] and only eight cases of possible fondaparinux-associated HIT have been reported in the literature.[178] Currently, fondaparinux is not FDA approved for use in HIT, but there is considerable positive anecdotal experience in the literature (e.g., decreased bleeding risk) when compared with DTIs.[179]

Direct Thrombin Inhibitors

DTIs bind directly to thrombin and do not require a cofactor such as antithrombin to exert their effect. All DTIs inhibit thrombin in its free (soluble) and fibrin-bound (insoluble) states, unlike heparin, which only has effect on free thrombin. Other advantages over heparin include: lack of binding to other plasma proteins that leads to a more predictable anticoagulant effect, and no concern for developing an immune-mediated thrombocytopenia.

Hirudin is a naturally occurring anticoagulant found in leeches, while argatroban and bivalirudin are synthetic agents. Argatroban, with a half-life of 45 minutes, is the preferred DTI in patients with renal insufficiency because it is eliminated by the liver. It reversibly binds to the active site on thrombin. Argatroban is FDA approved for the prophylaxis and treatment of thrombosis and for PCI anticoagulation in patients with HIT. Clinical effects are usually monitored with aPTT or ACT in the operating room. Dosing goals are to maintain an aPTT 1.5 to 3 times baseline. Because argatroban prolongs thrombin-dependent coagulation, the PT and INR will be prolonged as well, which can complicate transition to warfarin therapy for long-term anticoagulation.[180]

Bivalirudin, a 20-amino acid synthetic analogue of hirudin, is a reversible DTI, and is metabolized by proteolytic cleavage and hepatic metabolism.[181] It has the shortest half-life among the intravenous DTIs and is the drug of choice for patients with both renal and hepatic dysfunction, although dose adjustments are still necessary. In studies, bivalirudin has been shown to have better efficacy in preventing primary outcomes with lower bleeding rates when compared with UFH for percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty for unstable or postinfarction angina,[182] and for use as an alternative to heparin in patients with HIT undergoing PCI.[183]

Desirudin was approved in 2010 and is the only DTI available for subcutaneous administration. An early, small, open label study (16 patients) showed that desirudin may be a potentially cost-effective alternative to argatroban for patients with suspected HIT.[184] Desirudin also has more predictable pharmacokinetics, and dosage adjustments and aPTT monitoring may be unnecessary in patients with a creatinine clearance greater than 30 mL/min.[185]

Direct Oral Anticoagulants

Several new oral anticoagulants have been introduced into the market over the past 10 years. These new drugs have more predictable pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics and fewer drug-drug interactions, allowing them to be dosed without daily laboratory monitoring. The drawback has been the lack of specific antidotes for anticoagulation reversal, but this is slowly changing with the introduction of idarucizumab.

Most DOACs are approved for prevention of venous thromboembolism after hip or knee replacement surgery, treatment and secondary prevention of venous thromboembolism, and prevention of stroke in nonvalvular atrial fibrillation. Many are also being studied for use in secondary prevention of coronary events after acute coronary syndrome, prevention of thrombosis in elective PCI, and prevention of thrombus formation on mechanical heart valves. The results from early preclinical trials have been positive and encourage further randomized trials, so increased impact of these agents in the future is expected.[186] The DOACs have a shorter half-life than warfarin and have demonstrated noninferior efficacy to warfarin. A meta-analysis of phase II and phase III randomized clinical trials comparing DOACs with VKAs in patients with atrial fibrillation showed that use of DOACs was associated with a significant reduction in major bleeding (Relative risk [RR] 0.86, 95% CI 0.72-1.02) and a significantly decreased risk of intracranial hemorrhage (RR 0.46, 95% CI 0.39-0.56).[187]

Dabigatran (Pradaxa), an oral DTI, was the first new antithrombotic agent approved for the prevention of ischemic stroke in patients with non-valvular atrial fibrillation since warfarin. When given at a dose of 150 mg twice daily, dabigatran was shown to reduce the risk of stroke while having a similar bleeding risk as warfarin at an INR of 2.0 to 3.0.[188] Although the bleeding risk is similar, the bleeding profile does differ between the two drugs. Dabigatran increases the risk of major gastrointestinal bleeding but lowers the risk of intracranial bleeding when compared with warfarin.[189] Dabigatran is predominantly eliminated by the kidneys, so the dose should be reduced in patients with a creatinine clearance less than 30 mL/min.

Monitoring of dabigatran therapy is difficult because the perfect laboratory test does not exist. The aPTT does not become linear until dabigatran concentrations are quite high (>200 ng/mL).[190] The TT is very sensitive to dabigatran, so while it is useful to detect any presence of the drug, it cannot be used to quantify the amount of drug present.[191] If available, dilute TT or ecarin clotting time are both linear at clinically relevant dabigatran concentrations and are the tests of choice if monitoring is necessary.[192]

Direct Xa inhibitors, rivaroxaban (Xarelto), apixaban (Eliquis), and edoxaban (Savaysa) are agents whose activity is directed against the active site of factor Xa. Factor Xa inhibitors have been associated with fewer strokes and embolic events, fewer intracranial hemorrhages, and lower all-cause mortality compared with warfarin.[193] A comparison of apixaban versus warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation showed a reduction in stroke risk along with a significant reduction in major bleeding.[194] The anti-factor Xa assays are the tests best suited for monitoring the effects of the direct Xa inhibitors, but assays must be individually calibrated for each drug.[192]

THROMBOLYTICS

Thrombolytic therapy is used to break up or dissolve blood clots. These medications are most commonly used during acute myocardial infarctions, strokes, massive pulmonary embolus, arterial thromboembolism, and venous thrombosis. Thrombolytics may be given through an intravenous line systemically or directly to the site of the blockage. Most thrombolytic agents are serine proteases that work by converting plasminogen to plasmin. Plasmin then lyses the clot by breaking down fibrinogen and fibrin. Fibrinolytic agents are divided into two categories: (1) fibrin-specific agents and (2) non–fibrin-specific agents. Fibrin-specific agents are alteplase (tPA), reteplase, and tenecteplase. They theoretically produce less plasminogen conversion in the absence of fibrin and result in less fibrinogen depletion. Non–fibrin-specific agents (e.g., streptokinase) catalyze systemic fibrinolysis. Streptokinase, produced by beta-hemolytic streptococci, is highly antigenic and can cause immunologic sensitization and allergic reactions, particularly with repeat administration even several years after previous exposure.[195] Streptokinase is not widely used in the United States but is still used internationally because of its lower cost.

t-PAs are both thrombolytics and anticoagulants because as mentioned earlier, fibrinolysis generates increased amounts of circulating fibrin degradation products, which inhibit platelet aggregation. Surgery or puncture of noncompressible vessels is contraindicated within a 10-day period after the use of thrombolytic drugs.

Time is usually of the essence when administering these drugs. Medical providers should quickly obtain a history and physical exam, review absolute and relative contraindications, (Table 50.2), order relevant laboratory tests, request necessary consultations, and proceed with decision making. Many studies have investigated the use of thrombolytics in acute pulmonary embolus, ST-elevation myocardial infarction (STEMI), and ischemic stroke. Thrombolytics are indicated in the setting of hemodynamic instability due to acute pulmonary embolus.[196] A meta-analysis in patients with massive pulmonary embolism found that systemic thrombolytic therapy decreased the composite endpoint of death and recurrent thromboembolism (9.4% vs. 19%, odds ratio 0.45, 95% CI 0.22-0.92).[197] Primary PCI is the preferred treatment for patients with acute STEMI if it can be performed by an experienced operator within 2 hours from presentation to the emergency department, but fibrinolytic therapy remains an important modality in hospitals with limited primary PCI

TABLE 50.2 Absolute and Relative Contraindications for Thrombolytics

Absolute Contraindications	Relative Contraindications
Vascular lesions	Ischemic stroke >3 months prior
Severe, uncontrolled hypertension (SBP > 185 or DBP > 110)	Active peptic ulcer
Recent cranial surgery or trauma	Current use of anticoagulant drugs
Brain tumor	Pregnancy
Ischemic stroke <3 months prior	Prolonged/traumatic CPR <3 weeks prior
Active bleeding	Major surgery <3 weeks prior

CPR, Cardiopulmonary resuscitation; *DBP*, diastolic blood pressure; *SBP*, systolic blood pressure.

availability. Early thrombolysis was associated with a lower mortality rate. When compared between less than 2 hours versus greater than 4 hours from time of symptom presentation to thrombolysis administration, 30-day mortality was decreased with earlier administration (5.5% vs. 9%).[198] For stroke care, the primary goal is to restore blood flow to ischemic regions in order to reduce stroke-related disability and mortality. Alteplase is the recommended therapy for treatment of acute ischemic stroke if treatment can be initiated within 4.5 hours of symptom onset.[199] Mechanical thrombectomy should still be considered even if thrombolysis has been administered for ischemic stroke.

PROCOAGULANT DRUGS

Anesthesiologists may use procoagulant drugs for individuals at risk of bleeding to help control blood loss during surgery. These drugs can be divided into two different classes: antifibrinolytics and factor replacements. (see Table 50.1).

Antifibrinolytics

There are two types of antifibrinolytics, the lysine analogs, epsilon-aminocaproic acid (EACA) and TXA, and a SERPIN, aprotinin. Aprotinin was removed from the US market due to concerns of renal and cardiovascular toxicity and is now only available in Europe and Canada. The lysine analogs act by competitively inhibiting the binding site on plasminogen, leading to inhibition of plasminogen activation as well as preventing plasminogen binding of fibrin, therefore impairing fibrinolysis.[200] TXA has been more thoroughly studied than EACA, but aside from subtle differences, both agents appear to have similar efficacy and have been shown to decrease perioperative blood loss.

TXA has been studied in the large CRASH-2 trial of patients admitted after trauma and was associated with a reduction in all-cause mortality (14.5% vs. 16%, P = .0035), including the risk of death due to bleeding (4.9% vs. 5.8%, P = .0077), without an increase in vascular occlusive events.[100] Subgroup analysis of the CRASH-2 data showed that early treatment (≤1 hour) after traumatic injury significantly reduced the risk of death due to bleeding events in the TXA group (RR 0.68; 95% CI, 0.57-0.82; $P < .0001$). RR was also lower 0.79 (95% CI, 0.64-0.97; P = .03) if TXA was administered between 1 and 3 hours; however, treatment after 3 hours seemed to increase death due to bleeding, with a RR of 1.44 (95% CI, 1.12-1.84; P = .004).[101]

Aside from trauma, there are also trials studying use of TXA in cardiac surgery, orthopedic surgery, neurosurgery, hepatic surgery, and obstetric and gynecology surgery. The World Maternal Antifibrinolytic Trial (WOMAN) found that administration of TXA reduced death due to bleeding in women with postpartum hemorrhage, especially if given within 3 hours of birth, and was not associated with an increase in adverse effects.[201] In a recent meta-analysis in surgical patients, TXA reduced the probability of receiving a blood transfusion by a third (risk ratio 0.62; 95% CI, 0.58-0.65; $P < .001$). [202] Fewer deaths occurred in the TXA group (risk ratio 0.61; 95% CI, 0.38-0.98; P = .04), but the effect of TXA on myocardial infarction (risk ratio 0.68; 95% CI, 0.43-1.09; P = .11), stroke (risk ratio 1.14; 95% CI, 0.65-2.00; P = .65), deep vein thrombosis (risk ratio 0.86; 95% CI, 0.53-1.39; P = .54), and pulmonary embolism (risk ratio 0.61; 95% CI, 0.25-1.47; P = .27) was inconclusive. A Cochrane review also found that TXA significantly reduced blood transfusions by 39%; however, TXA was not associated with decreased mortality in all surgeries in their analysis.[203]

Overall, the lysine analogs (TXA and EACA) appear to be inexpensive and low risk adjunctive agents that should be considered for use in major surgery or critical bleeding. The rate of thrombosis does not appear to be elevated, but further studies are necessary before this can be definitively concluded. In terms of side effects, there is a reported dose-response relationship of high-dose TXA and seizures in patients undergoing cardiac surgery.[204] The reported mechanism is TXA binding to $GABA_A$ receptors, subsequently blocking $GABA_A$-mediated inhibition in the central nervous system.[205]

Factor Replacements

Recombinant Factor VIIa. Recombinant factor VIIa (rFVIIa) increases the generation of thrombin via the intrinsic and extrinsic pathways to enhance hemostasis. The drug was originally FDA approved for use in hemophilia patients. It binds to tissue factor at the site of vessel injury and to the surface of the activated platelet, leading to activation of factor X. Both mechanisms result in a "burst" of thrombin and fibrin generation, which leads to clot formation. The half-life of rFVIIa is only 2 to 2.5 hours, so the initial dose may require repeating until the bleeding is controlled.

Successful use of rFVIIa in hemophilia patients with inhibitors generated a great deal of interest in the drug's ability to enhance hemostasis in hemorrhaging patients without a preexistent coagulation disorder. This off-label use of rFVIIa had been quite varied, and included patients with intracranial hemorrhage,[206,207] trauma,[208,209] and traumatic brain injury,[210] and patients undergoing cardiac surgery[211] and liver transplantation.[212,213] While treatment with rFVIIa reduced the progression of the hematoma following intracranial hemorrhage and reduced the risk of acute respiratory distress syndrome (risk reduction, −0.05; 95% CI, −0.02 to −0.08) in trauma patients, mortality or functional outcomes were not improved in any patient subset.[211]

As the off-label use of rFVIIa increased, there were more troubling reports of arterial and venous thromboses. A review studying the safety of off-label rFVIIa reported a higher rate of arterial thromboembolic events with the use of rFVIIa compared with placebo (5.5% vs. 3.2%, P = .003), and an increased observed rate for coronary events (2.9% vs. 1.1%, P = .002). [214] This rate was noted to be increased with age (for patients aged 65-74 years, OR 2.12; 95% CI: 0.95-4.71 and for those ≥75 years, OR 3.02, 95% CI: 1.22-7.48), as well as higher doses. Considering that no randomized controlled trial has been able to demonstrate a significant benefit in terms of intensive care stay, hospital stay, or mortality, guidelines currently recommend that rFVIIa no longer be used for the off-label indications of prevention and treatment of bleeding in patients without hemophilia.[215] Each clinician will have to weigh the risk of thromboembolic events against the benefit for the refractory bleeding patient where the "last ditch" use of rFVIIa in massive hemorrhage has not been formally assessed.

Prothrombin Complex Concentrate. PCCs are commercially available purified concentrates containing varying amounts of vitamin K-dependent coagulation factors. Three-factor PCCs differ from 4-factor PCCs in that they do not contain significant amounts of factor VII. Most of the factors are preserved in the inactive state, with the aim of decreasing thrombogenic risk; however, FEIBA is a 4-factor PCC that contains activated factor VII. The products may also contain coagulation inhibitors such as heparin, AT, protein C, and protein S to mitigate the thrombotic risk by providing more balanced replacement of procoagulant factors and anticoagulant proteins.

While PCCs are derived from human plasma, they are treated with at least one viral reduction process, reducing the risk of transfusion-transmitted infection and the lower administration volume decreases the risk of transfusion-associated circulatory overload (TACO).[216] While PCCs appear to be safe and have low risk of thrombosis, there is accumulating evidence that the level of factor II and its balance with the coagulation inhibitors may be the important key.[217]

Fibrinogen Concentrate. Fibrinogen concentrate is produced from pooled human plasma, but viral inactivation steps are incorporated into the manufacturing. It can be used to correct hypofibrinogenemia with the goals of reducing coagulopathy, bleeding, and transfusion requirements. Fibrinogen concentrate offers benefits over FFP and cryoprecipitate in terms of standardized fibrinogen content, low infusion volume, and faster time to administration due to rapid reconstitution. Alternatively, cryoprecipitate and FFP are cheaper, and they also provide additional procoagulant factors that could be beneficial during massive bleeding. In a recent meta-analysis, seven randomized controlled trials showed a significant reduction in bleeding and transfusion requirements with the use of fibrinogen concentrates, but data on mortality were lacking and there was significant heterogeneity among the trials.[218] While the data are inconclusive, some hospitals have incorporated fibrinogen concentrate into algorithms based on viscoelastic coagulation tests with the goal of reducing transfusion requirements.

Perioperative Management of Anticoagulation

The perioperative management of patients who require chronic anticoagulation or antiplatelet therapy involves balancing the risk of surgical bleeding against the risk of developing postoperative thromboembolism. Patients should be evaluated with enough time prior to elective surgery to perform these necessary risk assessments and make management decisions regarding discontinuation and reinstitution of anticoagulation or antiplatelet therapy.

VITAMIN K ANTAGONISTS

For patients taking VKAs, the current recommendation is to stop VKAs 5 days prior to surgery for those who are at low risk for perioperative thromboembolism (Table 50.3). VKAs should be restarted 12 to 24 hours postoperatively if there is adequate hemostasis. For patients at high risk of thromboembolism, bridging anticoagulation with UFH or LMWH after discontinuation of VKAs should occur. The difficulty arises in defining a plan for patients who are at moderate risk. No definitive evidence exists, so the approach chosen should be based on individual patient and surgical risk factors.[219]

TABLE 50.3 Perioperative Thromboembolism Risk Stratification

Risk	Indication
High	Mechanical heart valve
	Rheumatic valvular heart disease
	CHADS score ≥ 5
	VTE within 3 months or h/o VTE when VKAs are discontinued
Moderate	CHADS score of 3 or 4
	VTE between 3 and 12 months or h/o recurrence
	Active cancer
Low	CHADS score 0-2
	VTE > 12 months prior and no other risk factors

CHADS, Congestive heart failure, hypertension, age ≥ 75, diabetes mellitus, prior stroke; *VKA,* vitamin K antagonists; *VTE,* venous thromboembolism.

HEPARINS

For those patients receiving bridging therapy with UFH, the infusion should be stopped 4 to 6 hours prior to surgery[220] and resumed without a bolus dose no sooner than 12 hours postoperatively. In surgeries with high postoperative bleeding risk, resumption of UFH should be delayed 48 to 72 hours until adequate hemostasis has been achieved. In patients receiving bridging therapy with LMWH, the last dose of LMWH should be administered 24 hours prior to surgery and dosing should be resumed 24 hours postoperatively in low bleeding risk surgery and delayed until 48 to 72 hours postoperatively for surgeries with high bleeding risk.[219]

ASPIRIN

For patients receiving aspirin therapy, risk assessment is based on (1) the patient's risk of a perioperative cardiovascular event; (2) whether the surgery is a minor procedure, major procedure, or cardiac procedure; and (3) the timing and type of stent placement for those patients who have undergone recent PCI. Low-dose aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid, ASA) has been shown to reduce the risk of stroke and myocardial infarction by 25% to 30%,[221,222] and studies report significant increased risk with the withdrawal of low-dose aspirin because of a platelet rebound phenomenon that leads to increased thrombus stability, improved fibrin crosslinking, and decreased fibrinolysis.[223] The decision to discontinue low-dose aspirin must weigh the risks of bleeding versus the benefits of cardiovascular risk reduction. Studies suggest that perioperative aspirin use may lead to a small increase in the risk for major bleeding (2.9% vs. 2.4%, $P = .04$), [222,224] but continuation of perioperative aspirin may confer a significant reduction in myocardial infarction and other major cardiovascular events (1.8% vs. 9.0%, $P = .02$). [225]

Recommendations currently are to continue aspirin for patients who are at moderate to high risk for cardiovascular events requiring noncardiac surgery and only stop aspirin use 7 to 10 days prior to surgery for patients at low risk for cardiovascular events.[226] Patients who are having minor procedures (e.g., minor dental, dermatologic procedures, or cataract surgery) and are on aspirin for the secondary prevention of cardiovascular disease should continue taking it in the perioperative period.

Patients with coronary stents presenting for surgery are problematic because of the concerns for in-stent thrombosis that can occur with stopping antiplatelet therapy. Surgery should be delayed if possible for at least 6 weeks after bare-metal stent placement and for at least 6 months after drug-eluting stent placement.[227] If surgery is required before this time has passed, dual anti-platelet therapy should be continued unless the risk of bleeding is thought to outweigh the risk of stent thrombosis.

Many studies have examined management of aspirin therapy perioperatively; however, there is much less data for management of clopidogrel in the perioperative setting. In most clinical situations, aspirin provides benefit that outweighs the bleeding risk and should be continued unless the patient is undergoing intracranial procedures, transurethral prostatectomy, intraocular procedures, or surgeries with extremely high bleeding risk.[228] The data are inconclusive about use of bridging therapy for patients with coronary stents who require noncardiac surgery. For patients with a very high risk of stent thrombosis, bridging therapy with intravenous, reversible glycoprotein inhibitors or a reversible intravenous P2Y12 inhibitor have been suggested, but concomitant parenteral anticoagulation therapy is not recommended.

NEURAXIAL ANESTHESIA AND ANTICOAGULATION

In addition to surgical bleeding risk assessment, many patients who are on anticoagulant or antiplatelet therapy can potentially benefit from neuraxial anesthetics. Management of perioperative anticoagulation is becoming increasingly more complex with the advent of the DOACs and the number of patients who are now receiving chronic anticoagulation. There is a lack of randomized controlled trials showing safety in the timing of surgical procedures and regional anesthesia because a broad clinical experience with these drugs along with neuraxial techniques does not exist. Most guidelines in the literature are based exclusively on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of these drugs.[229] These guidelines and recommendations will continue to be updated as evidence emerges on the bleeding risk and pharmacologic profiles of the newer anticoagulants. In the absence of concrete data, many hospital committees are setting local practice guidelines (Table 50.4). Early preoperative assessment of patients receiving anticoagulation and a multidisciplinary team approach between the patient, primary care physician, surgeon, anesthesiologist, and hematologist is essential to ensure the perioperative safety of these patients. Continued research on thromboembolic events and bleeding risk in the setting of these novel therapies is needed before official recommendations can be made regarding management.

TABLE 50.4 UCSF Guidelines for the Use of Antithrombotic Agents in the Setting of Neuraxial Procedures

Anticoagulant	Minimum Time Between the Last Dose and When Neuraxial Catheter can Occur	Minimum Time After Catheter Placement to Drug Start	Minimum Time Between Last Dose of Drug and Catheter Removal	Minimum Time Between Neuraxial Catheter Removal and When Next Dose can be Given
NSAIDs/ASA	No restrictions for catheter placement or removal			
Heparin SQ BID	No restrictions for catheter placement or removal			
Heparin SQ TID	4 h	2 h	4 h	2 h
Lovenox qD	12 h	6 h	12 h	4 h
Warfarin	5 days and INR < 1.5	Contraindicated while catheter in place		2 h
Clopidogrel	7 days	Contraindicated while catheter in place		2 h
Ticlodipine	14 days	Contraindicated while catheter in place		2 h
Dabigatran	5 days	Contraindicated while catheter in place		6 h
Rivaroxaban	3 days	Contraindicated while catheter in place		6 h
Apixaban	3 days	Contraindicated while catheter in place		6 h
Abciximab	48 h	Contraindicated while catheter in place		2 h
Eptifibatide	8 h	Contraindicated while catheter in place		2 h
Alteplase*	10 days	Contraindicated while catheter in place		10 days

*Full dose for stroke or myocardial infarction. No time restrictions for catheter placement or removal with low dose (2 mg) for catheter clearance

ASA, acetylsalicylic acid; *BID*, two times a day; *INR*, international normalized ratio; *NSAIDs*, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs; *qD*, once a day; SQ, subcutaneous; *TID*, three times a day. Adapted from UCSF Guidelines for the use of antithrombotic agents in the setting of neuraxial procedures and Horlocker TT, Wedel DJ, Rowlingson JC, et al. Regional anesthesia in the patient receiving antithrombotic or thrombolytic therapy: American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine Evidence-Based Guidelines (third edition). *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010; 35:64–101.

Emergent Reversal of Anticoagulants

VITAMIN K ANTAGONISTS

The incidence of VKA-associated major bleeding is between 1.1% and 8.1% per year depending on the study design.[230,231] Some of these patients will require warfarin reversal for bleeding and other patients will require warfarin reversal prior to emergency surgery. Four-factor PCCs as opposed to three-factor PCCs are now the drug of choice for emergent reversal of oral VKA in place of FFP or rFVIIa,[232] but PCCs only provide a transient correction due to the short half-life of these factors relative to the long half-life of warfarin. Concomitant administration of vitamin K is required to restore carboxylation of the vitamin K dependent factors (VKDFs) by the liver and provide a more sustained correction after the factors in the PCC infusion have been metabolized. Intravenous administration of vitamin K gives a more rapid response than subcutaneous or oral administration.[233] The dose required depends on the clinical situation and the need to be able to re-establish anticoagulation after surgery. For instance, lower doses (3 mg) may allow for warfarin reversal during the acute event, while avoiding warfarin resistance if rapid re-establishment of a therapeutic INR is required.[234]

Rapid reversal of VKA with FFP is difficult and often unrealistic. Time to thaw ABO-compatible units is a concern, but the large volume required to raise the VKDF by 50% is often untenable, especially in a patient population prone to pulmonary, renal, and cardiac disease.[235] There are also concerns for transmission of viral diseases, and transfusion-related complications such as volume overload, TACO, and lung injury (transfusion-related acute lung injury). In a recent randomized controlled trial using 4-factor PCC to reverse VKA prior to surgery or invasive interventions, effective hemostasis was higher (90% PCC vs. 75% FFP), fluid overload was lower (3% PCC vs. 13% FFP), and thromboembolic events were similar compared with patients who received FFP (7% PCC vs. 8% FFP).[236]

DIRECT THROMBIN INHIBITORS

There are no direct reversal agents for intravenous DTIs; however, their half-lives are relatively short, so time and supportive medical care are often sufficient to manage their anticoagulant effect in acute clinical situations. For the DOACs, idarucizumab, a specific antidote for dabigatran, is a humanized antibody fragment that binds to dabigatran with an affinity 350 times greater than thrombin. The drug received FDA approval in 2015 and can completely reverse the anticoagulant effect of dabigatran in minutes.[237] Andexanet alfa, a recombinant derivative of factor Xa, was developed to reverse the factor Xa inhibitors by acting as a decoy. It has a higher affinity for factor Xa inhibitors than intrinsic factor Xa. The drug was recently approved by the FDA for patients who present with an acute hemorrhage while receiving apixaban or rivaroxaban. The indication currently does not cover edoxaban, or enoxaparin.[238,239]

EMERGING AGENTS

There are additional reversal agents in development that may be approved by the FDA soon. Ciraparantag (PER977), a small, synthetic, water-soluble, cationic molecule, binds and neutralizes UFH, LMWH, fondaparinux, dabigatran, and factor Xa inhibitors through hydrogen bonding and charge-charge interactions. Phase I trials have been completed in healthy volunteers.[240] Common anticoagulants and possible reversal agents for emergencies are listed for reference in Table 50.5.

TABLE 50.5 Common Anticoagulants Along with the Required Laboratory Monitoring and Possible Reversal Agents for Emergencies

Antithrombotic Agent	Drug Name	Stop Before Procedure	Monitoring	Reversal Agents
Antiplatelet agents	ASA P2Y12 receptor antagonists GPIIb/IIIa antagonists	7 days 7-14 days 24-72 h	None	Platelet transfusion
Vitamin K antagonists	Warfarin	2-5 days	PT, INR	PCC, FFP, vitamin K
Heparins	Unfractionated heparin (UFH)(IV)	6 h	aPTT	Protamine
	Low-molecular weight heparin (LMWH)	12-24 h	None required, but fXa levels can monitor levels	Partially reversed by protamine
Pentasaccharide	Fondaparinux	3 days (prophylactic dosing)	None required, but fXa levels can monitor levels	None
Direct thrombin inhibitors	Argatroban, Bivalirudin	4-6 h 3 h	aPTT or ACT	None
	Dabigatran	2-4 days (longer if renal impairment)	None required, thrombin time can monitor levels	Idarucizumab
FXa inhibitors	Rivaroxaban, Apixaban, Edoxaban	2-3 days 2-3 days 2-3 days	None required, but fXa levels can monitor levels	Andexanet alfa for rivaroxaban and apixaban

ACT, activated clotting time; *aPTT*, activated partial thromboplastin time; *ASA*, acetylsalicylic acid; *FFP*, fresh frozen plasma; *INR*, international normalized ratio; *IV*, intravenous; *PCC*, prothrombin complex concentrate; *PT*, prothrombin time.

Conclusion

The coagulation system remains exceedingly complex, but an understanding of the fundamental principles of hemostasis will allow the anesthesia provider to identify patients at risk of bleeding preoperatively, and safely manage blood loss and treat acquired coagulopathy both intraoperatively and postoperatively. Given the abundance of different antithrombotic and anticoagulant medications, perioperative management is becoming increasingly challenging. Early preoperative assessment of patients receiving anticoagulation and a multidisciplinary team approach between the patient, primary care physician, hematologist, surgeon, and anesthesiologist is essential to ensure the perioperative safety of these patients.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Thomas F. Slaughter, Lawrence T. Goonough, and Terri G. Monk for their contributions in the prior edition of this work. Excerpts of their chapters were incorporated and serve as the foundation for the current chapter.

References

1. Furie B, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;359(9):938–949.
2. van Hinsbergh VW, et al. *Semin Immunopathol*. 2012;34(1):93–106.
3. Moncada S, et al. *Nature*. 1976;263(5579):663–665.
4. Broekman MJ, et al. *Blood*. 1991;78(4):1033–1040.
5. Marcus AJ, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1997;99(6):1351–1360.
6. Esmon CT, et al. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2006;32(suppl 1):49–60.
7. Mertens G, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1992;267(28):20435–22043.
8. Wood JP, et al. *Blood*. 2014;123(19):2934–2943.
9. Wolberg AS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(2):275–285.
10. Chiu JJ, et al. *Physiol Rev*. 2011;91(1):327–387.
11. Stern D, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1985;82(8):2523–2527.
12. Margetic S. *Biochem Med (Zagreb)*. 2012;22(1):49–62.
13. Van De Craen B, et al. *Thromb Res*. 2012;130(4):576–585.
14. Achneck HE, et al. *Vascular*. 2008;16(suppl 1):S6–13.
15. Kassis J, et al. *Blood*. 1992;80(7):1758–1764.
16. Broos K, et al. *Thromb Res*. 2012;129(3):245–249.
17. Hanson SR, et al. *Blood*. 1985;66(5):1105–1109.
18. Broos K, et al. *Blood Rev*. 2011;25(4):155–167.
19. Wu YP, et al. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2000;20(6):1661–1667.
20. Brass L. *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program*. 2010;2010:387–396.
21. Macfarlane RG. *Nature*. 1964;202:498–499.
22. Hoffman. *J Thromb Thrombolysis*. 2003;16(1-2):17–20.
23. Coughlin SR. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2005;3(8):1800–1814.
24. Schenone M, et al. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2004;11(4):272–277.
25. Mann KG, et al. *Blood Cells Mol Dis*. 2006;36(2):108–117.
26. Furie B, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;326(12):800–806.
27. Osterud B, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1977;74(12):5260–5264.
28. Renne T. *Semin Immunopathol*. 2012;34(1):31–41.
29. Hoffman M. *Blood Rev*. 2003;17(suppl 1):S1–5.
30. Furie B, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2007;5(suppl 1):12–17.
31. Pisano JJ, et al. *Science*. 1968;160(3830):892–893.
32. Levy JH, et al. *Transfusion*. 2013;53(5):1120–1131.
33. Crawley JT, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2007;5(suppl 1):95–101.
34. Barshtein G, et al. *Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther*. 2007;5(4):743–752.
35. Kolev K, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 2003;89(4):610–621.
36. Woodruff RS, et al. *J Thromb Thrombolysis*. 2011;32(1):9–20.
37. Andrews RK, et al. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2007;27(7):1511–1520.
38. Crawley JT, et al. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2008;28(2):233–242.
39. Broze GJ, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1987;84(7):1886–1890.
40. Esmon CT. *Chest*. 2003;123):26S–32S.
41. Perry DJ. *Blood Rev*. 1994;8(1):37–55.
42. Tollefsen DM, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 1982;257(5):2162–2169.
43. Segal JB, et al. *Transfusion*. 2005;45(9):1413–1425.
44. Chee YL, et al. *Br J Haematol*. 2008;140(5):496–504.
45. Greaves M, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2007;5(suppl 1):167–174.
46. Sadler JE. *Annu Rev Med*. 2005;56:173–1791.
47. Dinehart SM, et al. *Dermatol Surg*. 2005;31(7 Pt 2):819–826. discussion 26.
48. Leebeek FW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375(21):2067–2080.
49. Rodeghiero F, et al. *Blood*. 1987;69(2):454–459.
50. Brinkhous KM, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1985;82(24):8752–8756.
51. Lippi G, et al. *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis*. 2007;18(4):361–364.
52. Roberts JC, et al. *Int J Lab Hematol*. 2015;37(suppl 1):11–17.
53. Posan E, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 2003;90(3):483–490.
54. Castaman G, et al. *Br J Haematol*. 2010;151(3):245–251.
55. Miesbach W, et al. *Thromb Res*. 2015;135(3):479–484.
56. Kasper CK, et al. *Haemophilia*. 2007;13(1):90–92.
57. Franchini M, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2010;8(3):421–432.
58. Srivastava A, et al. *Haemophilia*. 2013;19(1):e1–47.
59. Franchini M, et al. *Blood*. 2008;112(2):250–255.
60. Hoffman M, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2012;10(8):1478–1485.
61. Sattler FR, et al. *Am J Surg*. 1988;155(5A):30–39.
62. Hines R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70(4):611–615.
63. Schafer AI, et al. *Blood*. 1980;55(4):649–654.
64. Hogman M, et al. *Lancet*. 1993;341(8861):1664–1665.
65. Hergovich N, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2000;68(4):435–442.
66. Tripodi A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365(2):147–156.
67. Tripodi A, et al. *Hepatology*. 2005;41(3):553–558.
68. Afdhal N, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2008;48(6):1000–1007.
69. Lisman T, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2002;37(2):280–287.
70. Lisman T, et al. *Hepatology*. 2006;44(1):53–61.
71. Leebeek FW, et al. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2015;41(5):474–480.
72. Lisman T, et al. *Gastroenterology*. 2001;121(1):131–139.
73. Forkin KT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(1):46–61.
74. Yates SG, et al. *Transfusion*. 2016;56(4):791–798.
75. Benigni A, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 1993;22(5):668–676.
76. Gawaz MP, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 1994;5(1):36–46.
77. Noris M, et al. *Blood*. 1999;94(8):2569–2574.
78. Turitto VT, et al. *Science*. 1980;207(4430):541–543.
79. Kim JH, et al. *Ann Hematol*. 2015;94(9):1457–1461.
80. Liu YK, et al. *Lancet*. 1984;2(8408):887–890.
81. Zoja C, et al. *Lab Invest*. 1991;65(4):479–483.
82. Gando S, et al. *Nat Rev Dis Primers*. 2016;2:16037.
83. Toh CH, et al. *Ann Lab Med*. 2016;36(6):505–512.
84. Thachil J. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(1):230–236.
85. Kitchens CS. *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program*. 2009:240–246.
86. Levi M, et al. *Br J Haematol*. 2009;145(1):24–33.
87. Woodman RC, et al. *Blood*. 1990;76(9):1680–1697.
88. Gluszko P, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1987;252(3 Pt 2):H615–621.
89. Harker LA, et al. *Blood*. 1980;56(5):824–834.
90. Weidman JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(4):1009–1014.
91. Brown JR, et al. *Circulation*. 2007;115(22):2801–2813.
92. Brohi K, et al. *J Trauma*. 2003;54(6):1127–1130.
93. Chang R, et al. *Blood*. 2016;128(8):1043–1049.
94. Cohen MJ, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255(2):379–385.
95. Brohi K, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2007;245(5):812–818.
96. Johansson PI, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2011;254(2):194–200.
97. Kutcher ME, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;73(1):13–19.
98. Wohlauer MV, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2012;214(5):739–746.
99. Moore HB, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2015;13(10):1878–1887.
100. CRASH Trial collaborators, et al. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9734):23–32.
101. CRASH Trial collaborators, et al. *Lancet*. 2011;377(9771):1096–1101. 101 e1–e2.
102. Esmon CT, et al. *Blood Rev*. 2009;23(5):225–229.
103. Piazza G, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;121(19):2146–2150.
104. Spencer FA, et al. *J Gen Intern Med*. 2006;21(7):722–727.
105. Douketis J, et al. *BMJ*. 2011;342:d813.
106. Middeldorp S. *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program*. 2011;2011:150–155.

107. Wu O, et al. *Health Technol Assess*. 2006;10(11):1–110.
108. Dahlback B. *Blood*. 2008;112(1):19–27.
109. Heit JA. *Am J Hematol*. 2012;87(suppl 1):S63–67.
110. Ridker PM, et al. *JAMA*. 1997;277(16):1305–1307.
111. Goldhaber SZ, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2010;56(1):1–7.
112. Andreoli L, et al. *Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken)*. 2013;65(11):1869–1873.
113. Giannakopoulos B, et al. *Blood*. 2009;113(5):985–994.
114. Lim W, et al. *JAMA*. 2006;295(9):1050–1057.
115. Kelton JG, et al. *Blood*. 2008;112(7):2607–2616.
116. Warkentin TE, et al. *Blood*. 2006;108(9):2937–2941.
117. Warkentin TE, et al. *Blood*. 2000;96(5):1703–1708.
118. Martel N, et al. *Blood*. 2005;106(8):2710–2715.
119. Berry C, et al. *J Am Coll Sur*. 2011;213(1):10–17.
120. Warkentin TE, et al. *Blood*. 2017;130(9):1104–1113.
121. Welsby IJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(1):30–35.
122. Poller L. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2004;2(6):849–860.
123. Massignon D, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 1996;75(4):590–594.
124. Burns ER, et al. *Am J Clin Pathol*. 1993;100(2):94–98.
125. Teien AN, et al. *Thromb Res*. 1976;8(3):413–416.
126. Ignjatovic V, et al. *Thromb Res*. 2007;120(3):347–351.
127. Price EA, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2013;47(2):151–158.
128. Rodgers RP, et al. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 1990;16(1):1–20.
129. Lind SE. *Blood*. 1991;77(12):2547–2552.
130. Hattersley PG. *JAMA*. 1966;196(5):436–440.
131. Paniccia R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(1):54–59.
132. Enriquez LJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(suppl 1):i14–22.
133. Ganter MT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(5):1366–1375.
134. Bolliger D, et al. *Transfus Med Rev*. 2012;26(1):1–13.
135. Shore-Lesserson L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(2):312–319.
136. Weber CF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(3):531–547.
137. Bolliger D, et al. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2017;43(4):386–396.
138. Hayward CP. *Blood Rev*. 2011;25(4):169–173.
139. Born GV. *Nature*. 1962;194:927–929.
140. Harrison P. *Br J Haematol*. 2000;111(3):733–744.
141. Cardinal DC, et al. *J Pharmacol Methods*. 1980;3(2):135–158.
142. Jambor C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(1):31–39.
143. Panzer S, et al. *Vox Sang*. 2011;101(1):1–9.
144. Kundu SK, et al. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 1995;21(suppl 2):106–112.
145. Roth GJ, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1975;56(3):624–632.
146. Mitchell JA, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90(24).
147. Costello PB, et al. *Arthritis Rheum*. 1982;25(5):550–555.
148. Pascale S, et al. *Blood*. 2012;119(15):3595–3603.
149. Diaz-Gonzalez F, et al. *Eur J Immunol*. 2015;45(3):679–686.
150. Silverstein FE, et al. *JAMA*. 2000;284(10):1247–1255.
151. Solomon SD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(11):1071–1080.
152. Coxib and Traditional NSAID Trialists' (CNT) Collaboration. *Lancet*. 2013;382(9894):769–779.
153. Ferri N, et al. *Drugs*. 2013;73(15):1681–1709.
154. Savi P, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 2000;84(5):891–896.
155. Taubert D, et al. Impact of P-glycoprotein on clopidogrel absorption. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2006;80(5):486–501.
156. Mega JL, et al. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9749):1312–1319.
157. Mega JL, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;304(16):1821–1830.
158. Wallentin L. *Eur Heart J*. 2009;30(16):1964–1977.
159. Floyd CN, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2012;51(7):429–442.
160. Wallentin L, et al. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9749):1320–1328.
161. Akers WS, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2010;50(1):27–35.
162. Subban V, et al. *Indian Heart J*. 2013;65(3):260–263.
163. Hanna EB, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Interv*. 2010;3(12):1209–1219.
164. Dasgupta H, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2000;140(2):206–211.
165. Yates SG, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2015;13(suppl 1):S180–186.
166. Benzon HT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(2):298–304.
167. Pokorney SD, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2015;170(1):141–148.
168. Stergiopoulos K, et al. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2014;174(8):1330–1338.
169. Shaw K, et al. *Ther Drug Monit*. 2015;37(4):428–436.
170. Johnson EA, et al. *Carbohydr Res*. 1976;51(1):119–127.
171. Ranucci M, et al. *Perfusion*. 2002;17(3):199–204.
172. Finley A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(6):1210–1222.
173. Li G, et al. *Anal Chem*. 2014;86(13).
174. Hirsh J, et al. *Circulation*. 1998;98(15):1575–1582.
175. Harenberg J, et al. *Thromb Res*. 1985;38(1):11–20.
176. van Veen JJ, et al. *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis*. 2011;22(7):565–570.
177. Greinacher A, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 1995;74(3):886–892.
178. Bhatt VR, et al. *Eur J Haematol*. 2013;91(5):437–441.
179. Schindewolf M, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;70(21):2636–2648.
180. Hursting MJ, et al. *Clin Appl Thromb Hemost*. 2005;11(3):279–287.
181. Robson R, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2002;71(6):433–439.
182. Bittl JA, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2001;142(6):952–959.
183. Mahaffey KW, et al. *J Invasive Cardiol*. 2003;15(11):611–616.
184. Boyce SW, et al. *Am J Ther*. 2011;18(1):14–22.
185. Nafziger AN, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2010;50(6):614–622.
186. Lee CJ, et al. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;72(4):581–592.
187. Dentali F, et al. *Circulation*. 2012;126(20):2381–2391.
188. Connolly SJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361(12):1139–1151.
189. Wallentin L, et al. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9745):975–983.
190. Garcia D, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2013;11(2):245–252.
191. Miyares MA, et al. *Am J Health Syst Pharm*. 2012;69(17):1473–1484.
192. Tripodi A. 2013;121(20):4032–4035.
193. Bruins Slot KM, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311(11):1150–1151.
194. Granger CB, et al. Apixaban versus warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365(11):981–992.
195. Squire IB, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 1999;20(17):1245–1252.
196. Kearon C, et al. *Chest*. 2012;141(suppl 2):e419S–e96S.
197. Wan S, et al. *Circulation*. 2004;110(6):744–749.
198. Boersma E, et al. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9030):771–775.
199. Powers WJ, et al. *Stroke*. 2015;46(10):3020–3035.
200. Astedt B, et al. *Scand J Gastroenterol Suppl*. 1987;137:22–25.
201. WOMAN Trial Collaborators. *Lancet*. 2017;389(10084):2105–2116.
202. Ker K, et al. *BMJ*. 2012;344:e3054.
203. Henry DA, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;(3):CD001886.
204. Manji RA, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59(1):6–13.
205. Lecker I, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59(1):1–5.
206. Mayer SA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(8):777–785.
207. Mayer SA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(20):2127–2137.
208. Boffard KD, et al. *J Trauma*. 2005;59(1):8–15; discussion -8.
209. Hauser CJ, et al. *J Trauma*. 2010;69(3):489–500.
210. Narayan RK, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2008;62(4):776–786.
211. Yank V, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2011;154(8):529–540.
212. Lodge JP, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2005;11(8):973–979.
213. Planinsic RM, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2005;11(8):895–900.
214. Levi M, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(19):1791–1800.
215. Lin Y, et al. *Transfus Med*. 2012;22(6):383–394.
216. Sorensen B, et al. *Crit Care*. 2011;15(1):201.
217. Dusel CH, et al. *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis*. 2004;15(5):405–411.
218. Lunde J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58(9):1061–1074.
219. Douketis JD, et al. *Chest*. 2012;141(suppl 2):e326S–e50S.
220. Hirsh J, et al. *Chest*. 2004;126(suppl 3):188S–203S.
221. Antithrombotic Trialists' Collaboration. *BMJ*. 2002;324(7329):71–86.
222. Burger W, et al. *J Intern Med*. 2005;257(5):399–414.
223. Lordkipanidze M, et al. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2009;123(2):178–186.
224. Pulmonary Embolism Prevention Trial Collaborative Group. *Lancet*. 2000;355(9212):1295–1302.
225. Oscarsson A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(3):305–312.
226. Biondi-Zoccai GG, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2006;27(22):2667–2674.
227. Levine GN, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2016;68(10):1082–1115.
228. Valgimigli M, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2018;39(3):213–260.
229. Horlocker TT, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35(1):64–101.
230. Palareti G, et al. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9025):423–428.
231. Levine MN, et al. *Chest*. 1992;102(suppl 4).
232. Sarode R, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;128(11):1234–1243.
233. Dezee KJ, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2006;166(4):391–397.
234. Burbury KL, et al. *Br J Haematol*. 2011;154(5):626–634.
235. Hickey M, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;128(4):360–364.
236. Goldstein JN, et al. *Lancet*. 2015;385(9982):2077–2087.
237. Pollack CV, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373(6):511–520.
238. Connolly SJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375(12):1131–1341.
239. Connolly SJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2019;Feb 7. [Epub ahed of print].
240. Ansell JE, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 2017;117(2):238–245.

This page intentionally left blank

References

1. Furie B, Furie BC. Mechanisms of thrombus formation. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;359(9):938–949. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMra0801082. Published Online First: 2008/08/30.
2. van Hinsbergh VW. Endothelium—role in regulation of coagulation and inflammation. *Semin Immunopathol*. 2012;34(1):93–106. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00281-011-0285-5. Published Online First: 2011/08/17.
3. Moncada S, Gryglewski R, Bunting S, Vane JR. An enzyme isolated from arteries transforms prostaglandin endoperoxides to an unstable substance that inhibits platelet aggregation. *Nature*. 1976;263(5579):663–665. Online First: 1976/10/21.
4. Broekman MJ, Eiroa AM, Marcus AJ. Inhibition of human platelet reactivity by endothelium-derived relaxing factor from human umbilical vein endothelial cells in suspension: blockade of aggregation and secretion by an aspirin-insensitive mechanism. *Blood*. 1991;78(4):1033–1040. Online First: 1991/08/15.
5. Marcus AJ, Broekman MJ, Drosopoulos JH, et al. The endothelial cell ecto-ADPase responsible for inhibition of platelet function is CD39. *J Clin Invest*. 1997;99(6):1351–1360. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI119294. Published Online First: 1997/03/15.
6. Esmon CT. Inflammation and the activated protein C anticoagulant pathway. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2006;32(suppl 1):49–60. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-2006-939554. Published Online First: 2006/05/05.
7. Mertens G, Cassiman JJ, Van den Berghe H, Vermylen J, David G. Cell surface heparan sulfate proteoglycans from human vascular endothelial cells. Core protein characterization and antithrombin III binding properties. *J Biol Chem*. 1992;267(28):20435–22043. Online First: 1992/10/05.
8. Wood JP, Ellery PE, Maroney SA, Mast AE. Biology of tissue factor pathway inhibitor. *Blood*. 2014;123(19):2934–2943. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2013-11-512764. Published Online First: 2014/03/13.
9. Wolberg AS, Aleman MM, Leiderman K, Machlus KR. Procoagulant activity in hemostasis and thrombosis: Virchow's triad revisited. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(2):275–285. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0b013e31823a088c. Published Online First: 2011/11/23.
10. Chiu JJ, Chien S. Effects of disturbed flow on vascular endothelium: pathophysiological basis and clinical perspectives. *Physiol Rev*. 2011;91(1):327–387. https://doi.org/10.1152/physrev.00047.2009. Published Online First: 2011/01/21.
11. Stern D, Nawroth P, Handley D, Kisiel W. An endothelial cell-dependent pathway of coagulation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1985;82(8):2523–2527. Online First: 1985/04/01.
12. Margetic S. Inflammation and haemostasis. *Biochem Med (Zagreb)*. 2012;22(1):49–62. Online First: 2012/03/06.
13. Van De Craen B, Declerck PJ, Gils A. The biochemistry, physiology and pathological roles of PAI-1 and the requirements for PAI-1 inhibition in vivo. *Thromb Res*. 2012;130(4):576–585. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.thromres.2012.06.023. Published Online First: 2012/07/18.
14. Achneck HE, Sileshi B, Lawson JH. Review of the biology of bleeding and clotting in the surgical patient. *Vascular*. 2008;16(suppl 1):S6–S13. Online First: 2008/03/01.
15. Kassis J, Hirsh J, Podor TJ. Evidence that postoperative fibrinolytic shutdown is mediated by plasma factors that stimulate endothelial cell type I plasminogen activator inhibitor biosynthesis. *Blood*. 1992;80(7):1758–1764. Online First: 1992/10/01.
16. Broos K, De Meyer SF, Feys HB, Vanhoorelbeke K, Deckmyn H. Blood platelet biochemistry. *Thromb Res*. 2012;129(3):245–249. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.thromres.2011.11.002. Published Online First: 2011/11/29.
17. Hanson SR, Slichter SJ. Platelet kinetics in patients with bone marrow hypoplasia: evidence for a fixed platelet requirement. *Blood*. 1985;66(5):1105–1109. Online First: 1985/11/01.
18. Broos K, Feys HB, De Meyer SF, Vanhoorelbeke K, Deckmyn H. Platelets at work in primary hemostasis. *Blood Rev*. 2011;25(4):155–167. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.blre.2011.03.002. Published Online First: 2011/04/19.
19. Wu YP, Vink T, Schiphorst M, et al. Platelet thrombus formation on collagen at high shear rates is mediated by von Willebrand factor-glycoprotein Ib interaction and inhibited by von Willebrand factor-glycoprotein IIb/IIIa interaction. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2000;20(6):1661–1667. Online First: 2000/06/10.
20. Brass L. Understanding and evaluating platelet function. *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program*. 2010;2010:387–396. https://doi.org/10.1182/asheducation-2010.1.387. Published Online First: 2011/01/18.
21. Macfarlane RG. An enzyme cascade in the blood clotting mechanism, and its function as a biochemical amplifier. *Nature*. 1964;202:498–499. Online First: 1964/05/02.
22. Hoffman M. Remodeling the blood coagulation cascade. *J Thromb Thrombolysis*. 2003;16(1-2):17–20. https://doi.org/10.1023/B:THRO.0000014588.95061.28. Published Online First: 2004/02/05.
23. Coughlin SR. Protease-activated receptors in hemostasis, thrombosis and vascular biology. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2005;3(8):1800–1814. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1538-7836.2005.01377. xpublished Online First: 2005/08/17.
24. Schenone M, Furie BC, Furie B. The blood coagulation cascade. *Curr Opin Hematol*. 2004;11(4):272–277. Online First: 2004/08/18.
25. Mann KG, Brummel-Ziedins K, Orfeo T, Butenas S. Models of blood coagulation. *Blood Cells Mol Dis*. 2006;36(2):108–117. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bcmd.2005.12.034. Published Online First: 2006/02/28.
26. Furie B, Furie BC. Molecular and cellular biology of blood coagulation. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;326(12):800–806. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199203193261205. Published Online First: 1992/03/19.
27. Osterud B, Rapaport SI. Activation of factor IX by the reaction product of tissue factor and factor VII: additional pathway for initiating blood coagulation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1977;74(12):5260–5264. Online First: 1977/12/01.
28. Renne T. The procoagulant and proinflammatory plasma contact system. *Semin Immunopathol*. 2012;34(1):31–41. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00281-011-0288-2. Published Online First: 2011/08/23.
29. Hoffman M. A cell-based model of coagulation and the role of factor VIIa. *Blood Rev*. 2003;17(suppl 1):S1–S5. Online First: 2003/12/31.
30. Furie B, Furie BC. In vivo thrombus formation. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2007;5(suppl 1):12–17. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1538-7836.2007.02482. xpublished Online First: 2007/08/01.
31. Pisano JJ, Finlayson JS, Peyton MP. Cross-link in fibrin polymerized by factor 13: epsilon-(gamma-glutamyl)lysine. *Science*. 1968;160(3830):892–893. Online First: 1968/05/24.
32. Levy JH, Greenberg C. Biology of factor XIII and clinical manifestations of factor XIII deficiency. *Transfusion*. 2013;53(5):1120–1131. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1537-2995.2012.03865. xpublished Online First: 2012/08/30.
33. Crawley JT, Zanardelli S, Chion CK, Lane DA. The central role of thrombin in hemostasis. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2007;5(suppl 1):95–101. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1538-7836.2007.02500. xpublished Online First: 2007/08/01.
34. Barshtein G, Ben-Ami R, Yedgar S. Role of red blood cell flow behavior in hemodynamics and hemostasis. *Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther*. 2007;5(4):743–752. https://doi.org/10.1586/14779072.5.4.743. Published Online First: 2007/07/04.
35. Kolev K, Machovich R. Molecular and cellular modulation of fibrinolysis. *Thromb Haemost*. 2003;89(4):610–621. Online First: 2003/04/02.
36. Woodruff RS, Sullenger B, Becker RC. The many faces of the contact pathway and their role in thrombosis. *J Thromb Thrombolysis*. 2011;32(1):9–20. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11239-011-0578-5. Published Online First: 2011/03/16.
37. Andrews RK, Karunakaran D, Gardiner EE, Berndt MC. Platelet receptor proteolysis: a mechanism for downregulating platelet reactivity. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2007;27(7):1511–1520. https://doi.org/10.1161/ATVBAHA.107.141390. Published Online First: 2007/04/28.
38. Crawley JT, Lane DA. The haemostatic role of tissue factor pathway inhibitor. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2008;28(2):233–242. https://doi.org/10.1161/ATVBAHA.107.141606. Published Online First: 2007/10/24.
39. Broze GJ, Miletich JP. Isolation of the tissue factor inhibitor produced by HepG2 hepatoma cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1987;84(7):1886–1890. Online First: 1987/04/01.
40. Esmon CT. The protein C pathway. *Chest*. 2003;124(suppl 3):26S–32S. Online First: 2003/09/13.

41. Perry DJ. Antithrombin and its inherited deficiencies. *Blood Rev*. 1994;8(1):37–55. Online First: 1994/03/01.
42. Tollefsen DM, Majerus DW, Blank MK. Heparin cofactor II. Purification and properties of a heparin-dependent inhibitor of thrombin in human plasma. *J Biol Chem*. 1982;257(5):2162–2169. Online First: 1982/03/10.
43. Segal JB, Dzik WH. Transfusion Medicine/Hemostasis Clinical Trials Network. Paucity of studies to support that abnormal coagulation test results predict bleeding in the setting of invasive procedures: an evidence-based review. *Transfusion*. 2005;45(9):1413–1425. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1537-2995.2005.00546. xpublished Online First: 2005/09/01.
44. Chee YL, Crawford JC, Watson HG, Greaves M. Guidelines on the assessment of bleeding risk prior to surgery or invasive procedures. British Committee for Standards in Haematology. *Br J Haematol*. 2008;140(5):496–504. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2141.2007.06968. xpublished Online First: 2008/02/16.
45. Greaves M, Watson HG. Approach to the diagnosis and management of mild bleeding disorders. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2007;5(suppl 1):167–174. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1538-7836.2007.02495. xpublished Online First: 2007/08/01.
46. Sadler JE. New concepts in von Willebrand disease. *Annu Rev Med*. 2005;56:173–1791. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.med.56.082103.104713. Published Online First: 2005/01/22.
47. Dinehart SM, Henry L. Dietary supplements: altered coagulation and effects on bruising. *Dermatol Surg*. 2005;31(7 Pt 2):819–826. discussion 26. Online First: 2005/07/21.
48. Leebeek FW, Eikenboom JC. Von Willebrand's Disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375(21):2067–2080. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMra1601561. Published Online First: 2016/12/14.
49. Rodeghiero F, Castaman G, Dini E. Epidemiological investigation of the prevalence of von Willebrand's disease. *Blood*. 1987;69(2):454–459. Online First: 1987/02/01.
50. Brinkhous KM, Sandberg H, Garris JB, et al. Purified human factor VIII procoagulant protein: comparative hemostatic response after infusions into hemophilic and von Willebrand disease dogs. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1985;82(24):8752–8756. Online First: 1985/12/01.
51. Lippi G, Franchini M, Poli G, Salvagno GL, Montagnana M, Guidi GC. Is the activated partial thromboplastin time suitable to screen for von Willebrand factor deficiencies? *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis*. 2007;18(4):361–364. https://doi.org/10.1097/MBC.0b013e32810fd872. Published Online First: 2007/05/03.
52. Roberts JC, Flood VH. Laboratory diagnosis of von Willebrand disease. *Int J Lab Hematol*. 2015;37(suppl 1):11–17. https://doi.org/10.1111/ijlh.12345. Published Online First: 2015/05/16.
53. Posan E, McBane RD, Grill DE, Motsko CL, Nichols WL. Comparison of PFA-100 testing and bleeding time for detecting platelet hypofunction and von Willebrand disease in clinical practice. *Thromb Haemost*. 2003;90(3):483–490. https://doi.org/10.1160/TH03-02-0111. Published Online First: 2003/09/06.
54. Castaman G, Tosetto A, Goodeve A, et al. The impact of bleeding history, von Willebrand factor and PFA-100((R)) on the diagnosis of type 1 von Willebrand disease: results from the European study MCMDM-1VWD. *Br J Haematol*. 2010;151(3):245–251. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2141.2010.08333. xpublished Online First: 2010/08/27.
55. Miesbach W, Krekeler S, Wolf Z, Seifried E. Clinical use of Haemate(R) P in von Willebrand disease: a 25-year retrospective observational study. *Thromb Res*. 2015;135(3):479–484. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.thromres.2014.12.017. Published Online First: 2015/01/18.
56. Kasper CK, Lin JC. Prevalence of sporadic and familial haemophilia. *Haemophilia*. 2007;13(1):90–92. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2516.2006.01397. xpublished Online First: 2007/01/11.
57. Franchini M, Favaloro EJ, Lippi G. Mild hemophilia A. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2010;8(3):421–432. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1538-7836.2009.03717. xpublished Online First: 2009/12/10.
58. Srivastava A, Brewer AK, Mauser-Bunschoten EP, et al. Guidelines for the management of hemophilia. *Haemophilia*. 2013;19(1):e1–47. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2516.2012.02909. xpublished Online First: 2012/07/11.
59. Franchini M, Lippi G. Acquired factor VIII inhibitors. *Blood*. 2008;112(2):250–255. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2008-03-143586. Published Online First: 2008/05/09.
60. Hoffman M, Dargaud Y. Mechanisms and monitoring of bypassing agent therapy. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2012;10(8):1478–1485. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1538-7836.2012.04793. xpublished Online First: 2012/05/29.
61. Sattler FR, Weitekamp MR, Sayegh A, Ballard JO. Impaired hemostasis caused by beta-lactam antibiotics. *Am J Surg*. 1988;155(5A):30–39. Online First: 1988/05/31.
62. Hines R, Barash PG. Infusion of sodium nitroprusside induces platelet dysfunction in vitro. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70(4):611–615. Online First: 1989/04/01.
63. Schafer AI, Alexander RW, Handin RI. Inhibition of platelet function by organic nitrate vasodilators. *Blood*. 1980;55(4):649–654. Online First: 1980/04/01.
64. Hogman M, Frostell C, Arnberg H, Hedenstierna G. Bleeding time prolongation and NO inhalation. *Lancet*. 1993;341(8861):1664–1665. Online First: 1993/06/26.
65. Hergovich N, Aigner M, Eichler HG, Entlicher J, Drucker C, Jilma B. Paroxetine decreases platelet serotonin storage and platelet function in human beings. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2000;68(4):435–442. https://doi.org/10.1067/mcp.2000.110456. Published Online First: 2000/11/04.
66. Tripodi A, Mannucci PM. The coagulopathy of chronic liver disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365(2):147–156. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMra1011170. Published Online First: 2011/07/15.
67. Tripodi A, Salerno F, Chantarangkul V, et al. Evidence of normal thrombin generation in cirrhosis despite abnormal conventional coagulation tests. *Hepatology*. 2005;41(3):553–558. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.20569. Published Online First: 2005/02/24.
68. Afdhal N, McHutchison J, Brown R, et al. Thrombocytopenia associated with chronic liver disease. *J Hepatol*. 2008;48(6):1000–1007. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2008.03.009. Published Online First: 2008/04/25.
69. Lisman T, Leebeek FW, de Groot PG. Haemostatic abnormalities in patients with liver disease. *J Hepatol*. 2002;37(2):280–287. Online First: 2002/07/20.
70. Lisman T, Bongers TN, Adelmeijer J, et al. Elevated levels of von Willebrand Factor in cirrhosis support platelet adhesion despite reduced functional capacity. *Hepatology*. 2006;44(1):53–61. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.21231. Published Online First: 2006/06/27.
71. Leebeek FW, Rijken DC. The fibrinolytic status in liver diseases. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2015;41(5):474–480. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-0035-1550437. Published Online First: 2015/06/07.
72. Lisman T, Leebeek FW, Mosnier LO, et al. Thrombin-activatable fibrinolysis inhibitor deficiency in cirrhosis is not associated with increased plasma fibrinolysis. *Gastroenterology*. 2001;121(1):131–139. Online First: 2001/07/05.
73. Forkin KT, Colquhoun DA, Nemergut EC, Huffmyer JL. The coagulation profile of end-stage liver disease and considerations for intraoperative management. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(1):46–61. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000002394. Published Online First: 2017/08/11.
74. Yates SG, Gavva C, Agrawal D, Sarode R. How do we transfuse blood components in cirrhotic patients undergoing gastrointestinal procedures? *Transfusion*. 2016;56(4):791–798. https://doi.org/10.1111/trf.13495. Published Online First: 2016/02/16.
75. Benigni A, Boccardo P, Galbusera M, et al. Reversible activation defect of the platelet glycoprotein IIb-IIIa complex in patients with uremia. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 1993;22(5):668–676. Online First: 1993/11/01.
76. Gawaz MP, Dobos G, Spath M, Schollmeyer P, Gurland HJ, Mujais SK. Impaired function of platelet membrane glycoprotein IIb-IIIa in end-stage renal disease. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 1994;5(1):36–46. Online First: 1994/07/01.
77. Noris M, Remuzzi G. Uremic bleeding: closing the circle after 30 years of controversies? *Blood*. 1999;94(8):2569–2574. Online First: 1999/10/09.
78. Turitto VT, Weiss HJ. Red blood cells: their dual role in thrombus formation. *Science*. 1980;207(4430):541–543. Online First: 1980/02/01.
79. Kim JH, Baek CH, Min JY, Kim JS, Kim SB, Kim H. Desmopressin improves platelet function in uremic patients taking antiplatelet agents who require emergent invasive procedures. *Ann Hematol*. 2015;94(9):1457–1461. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00277-015-2384-1. Published Online First: 2015/05/03.
80. Liu YK, Kosfeld RE, Marcum SG. Treatment of uraemic bleeding with conjugated oestrogen. *Lancet*. 1984;2(8408):887–890. Online First: 1984/10/20.

81. Zoja C, Noris M, Corna D, et al. L-arginine, the precursor of nitric oxide, abolishes the effect of estrogens on bleeding time in experimental uremia. *Lab Invest*. 1991;65(4):479–483. Online First: 1991/10/01.
82. Gando S, Levi M, Toh CH. Disseminated intravascular coagulation. *Nat Rev Dis Primers*. 2016;2:16037. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrdp.2016.37. Published Online First: 2016/06/03.
83. Toh CH, Alhamdi Y, Abrams ST. Current pathological and laboratory considerations in the diagnosis of disseminated intravascular coagulation. *Ann Lab Med*. 2016;36(6):505–512. https://doi.org/10.3343/alm.2016.36.6.505. Published Online First: 2016/09/01.
84. Thachil J. Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation: a Practical Approach. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(1):230–236. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0000000000001123. Published Online First: 2016/04/01.
85. Kitchens CS. Thrombocytopenia and thrombosis in disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC). *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program*. 2009:240–246. https://doi.org/10.1182/asheducation-2009.1.240. Published Online First: 2009/12/17.
86. Levi M, Toh CH, Thachil J, Watson HG. Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of disseminated intravascular coagulation. British Committee for Standards in Haematology. *Br J Haematol*. 2009;145(1):24–33. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2141.2009.07600. xpublished Online First: 2009/02/19.
87. Woodman RC, Harker LA. Bleeding complications associated with cardiopulmonary bypass. *Blood*. 1990;76(9):1680–1697. Online First: 1990/11/01.
88. Gluszko P, Rucinski B, Musial J, et al. Fibrinogen receptors in platelet adhesion to surfaces of extracorporeal circuit. *Am J Physiol*. 1987;252(3 Pt 2):H615–H621. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpheart.1987.252.3.H615. Published Online First: 1987/03/11.
89. Harker LA, Malpass TW, Branson HE, Hessel EA 2nd, Slichter SJ. Mechanism of abnormal bleeding in patients undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass: acquired transient platelet dysfunction associated with selective alpha-granule release. *Blood*. 1980;56(5):824–834. Online First: 1980/11/01.
90. Weidman JL, Shook DC, Hilberath JN. Cardiac resuscitation and coagulation. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(4):1009–1014. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0000000000000086. Published Online First: 2013/12/04.
91. Brown JR, Birkmeyer NJ, O'Connor GT. Meta-analysis comparing the effectiveness and adverse outcomes of antifibrinolytic agents in cardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 2007;115(22):2801–2813. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.106.671222. Published Online First: 2007/05/30.
92. Brohi K, Singh J, Heron M, Coats T. Acute traumatic coagulopathy. *J Trauma*. 2003;54(6):1127–1130. https://doi.org/10.1097/01.TA.0000069184.82147.06. Published Online First: 2003/06/19.
93. Chang R, Cardenas JC, Wade CE, Holcomb JB. Advances in the understanding of trauma-induced coagulopathy. *Blood*. 2016;128(8):1043–1049. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2016-01-636423. Published Online First: 2016/07/07.
94. Cohen MJ, Call M, Nelson M, et al. Critical role of activated protein C in early coagulopathy and later organ failure, infection and death in trauma patients. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255(2):379–385. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0b013e318235d9e6. Published Online First: 2011/12/03.
95. Brohi K, Cohen MJ, Ganter MT, Matthay MA, Mackersie RC, Pittet JF. Acute traumatic coagulopathy: initiated by hypoperfusion: modulated through the protein C pathway? *Ann Surg*. 2007;245(5):812–818. https://doi.org/10.1097/01.sla.0000256862.79374.31. Published Online First: 2007/04/26.
96. Johansson PI, Stensballe J, Rasmussen LS, Ostrowski SR. A high admission syndecan-1 level, a marker of endothelial glycocalyx degradation, is associated with inflammation, protein C depletion, fibrinolysis, and increased mortality in trauma patients. *Ann Surg*. 2011;254(2):194–200. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0b013e318226113d. Published Online First: 2011/07/21.
97. Kutcher ME, Redick BJ, McCreery RC, et al. Characterization of platelet dysfunction after trauma. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;73(1):13–19. https://doi.org/10.1097/TA.0b013e318256deab. Published Online First: 2012/06/30.
98. Wohlauer MV, Moore EE, Thomas S, et al. Early platelet dysfunction: an unrecognized role in the acute coagulopathy of trauma. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2012;214(5):739–746. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2012.01.050. Published Online First: 2012/04/24.
99. Moore HB, Moore EE, Chapman MP, et al. Viscoelastic measurements of platelet function, not fibrinogen function, predicts sensitivity to tissue-type plasminogen activator in trauma patients. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2015;13(10):1878–1887. https://doi.org/10.1111/jth.13067. Published Online First: 2015/08/11.
100. CRASH Trial collaborators, Shakur H, Roberts I, et al. Effects of tranexamic acid on death, vascular occlusive events, and blood transfusion in trauma patients with significant haemorrhage (CRASH-2): a randomised, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9734):23–32. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(10)60835-5. Published Online First: 2010/06/18.
101. CRASH Trial collaborators, Roberts I, Shakur H, et al. The importance of early treatment with tranexamic acid in bleeding trauma patients: an exploratory analysis of the CRASH-2 randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2011;377(9771):1096–1101. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(11)60278-X. 101 e1-2 Published Online First: 2011/03/29.
102. Esmon CT. Basic mechanisms and pathogenesis of venous thrombosis. *Blood Rev*. 2009;23(5):225–229. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.blre.2009.07.002. Published Online First: 2009/08/18.
103. Piazza G, Goldhaber SZ. Venous thromboembolism and atherothrombosis: an integrated approach. *Circulation*. 2010;121(19):2146–2150. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.110.951236. Published Online First: 2010/05/19.
104. Spencer FA, Emery C, Lessard D, et al. The Worcester Venous Thromboembolism study: a population-based study of the clinical epidemiology of venous thromboembolism. *J Gen Intern Med*. 2006;21(7):722–727. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1525-1497.2006.00458. xpublished Online First: 2006/07/01.
105. Douketis J, Tosetto A, Marcucci M, et al. Risk of recurrence after venous thromboembolism in men and women: patient level meta-analysis. *BMJ*. 2011;342:d813. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.d813. Published Online First: 2011/02/26.
106. Middeldorp S. Is thrombophilia testing useful? *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program*. 2011;2011:150–155. https://doi.org/10.1182/asheducation-2011.1.150. Published Online First: 2011/12/14.
107. Wu O, Robertson L, Twaddle S, et al. Screening for thrombophilia in high-risk situations: systematic review and cost-effectiveness analysis. The Thrombosis: Risk and Economic Assessment of Thrombophilia Screening (TREATS) study. *Health Technol Assess*. 2006;10(11):1–110. Online First: 2006/04/06.
108. Dahlback B. Advances in understanding pathogenic mechanisms ofthrombophilic disorders. *Blood*. 2008;112(1):19–27. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2008-01-077909. Published Online First: 2008/06/25.
109. Heit JA. Predicting the risk of venous thromboembolism recurrence. *Am J Hematol*. 2012;87(suppl 1):S63–S67. https://doi.org/10.1002/ajh.23128. Published Online First: 2012/03/01.
110. Ridker PM, Miletich JP, Hennekens CH, Buring JE. Ethnic distribution of factor V Leiden in 4047 men and women. Implications for venous thromboembolism screening. *JAMA*. 1997;277(16):1305–1307. Online First: 1997/04/23.
111. Goldhaber SZ. Risk factors for venous thromboembolism. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2010;56(1):1–7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2010.01.057. Published Online First: 2010/07/14.
112. Andreoli L, Chighizola CB, Banzato A, Pons-Estel GJ, Ramire de Jesus G, Erkan D. Estimated frequency of antiphospholipid antibodies in patients with pregnancy morbidity, stroke, myocardial infarction, and deep vein thrombosis: a critical review of the literature. *Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken)*. 2013;65(11):1869–1873. https://doi.org/10.1002/acr.22066. Published Online First: 2013/07/19.
113. Giannakopoulos B, Passam F, Ioannou Y, Krilis SA. How we diagnose the antiphospholipid syndrome. *Blood*. 2009;113(5):985–994. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2007-12-129627. Published Online First: 2008/08/30.
114. Lim W, Crowther MA, Eikelboom JW. Management of antiphospholipid antibody syndrome: a systematic review. *JAMA*. 2006;295(9):1050–1057. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.295.9.1050. Published Online First: 2006/03/02.
115. Kelton JG, Warkentin TE. Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: a historical perspective. *Blood*. 2008;112(7):2607–2616. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2008-02-078014. Published Online First: 2008/09/24.
116. Warkentin TE, Sheppard JA, Sigouin CS, Kohlmann T, Eichler P, Greinacher A. Gender imbalance and risk factor interactions in heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. *Blood*. 2006;108(9):2937–2941. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2005-11-012450. Published Online First: 2006/07/22.

117. Warkentin TE, Sheppard JA, Horsewood P, Simpson PJ, Moore JC, Kelton JG. Impact of the patient population on the risk for heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. *Blood*. 2000;96(5):1703–1708. Online First: 2000/08/29.
118. Martel N, Lee J, Wells PS. Risk for heparin-induced thrombocytopenia with unfractionated and low-molecular-weight heparin thromboprophylaxis: a meta-analysis. *Blood*. 2005;106(8):2710–2715. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2005-04-1546. Published Online First: 2005/06/30.
119. Berry C, Tcherniantchouk O, Ley EJ, et al. Overdiagnosis of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia in surgical ICU patients. *J Am Coll Sur*. 2011;213(1):10–17. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2011.04.002. discussion 7-8. published Online First: 2011/05/03].
120. Warkentin TE, Pai M, Linkins LA. Direct oral anticoagulants for treatment of HIT: update of Hamilton experience and literature review. *Blood*. 2017;130(9):1104–1113. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2017-04-778993. Published Online First: 2017/06/25.
121. Welsby IJ, Um J, Milano CA, Ortel TL, Arepally G. Plasmapheresis and heparin reexposure as a management strategy for cardiac surgical patients with heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(1):30–35. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0b013e3181c3c1cd. Published Online First: 2009/11/26.
122. Poller L. International normalized ratios (INR): the first 20 years. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2004;2(6):849–860. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1538-7836.2004.00775. xpublished Online First: 2004/05/14.
123. Massignon D, Moulsma M, Bondon P, et al. Prothrombin time sensitivity and specificity to mild clotting factor deficiencies of the extrinsic pathway: evaluation of eight commercial thromboplastins. *Thromb Haemost*. 1996;75(4):590–594. Online First: 1996/04/01.
124. Burns ER, Goldberg SN, Wenz B. Paradoxic effect of multiple mild coagulation factor deficiencies on the prothrombin time and activated partial thromboplastin time. *Am J Clin Pathol*. 1993;100(2):94–98. Online First: 1993/08/01.
125. Teien AN, Lie M, Abildgaard U. Assay of heparin in plasma using a chromogenic substrate for activated factor X. *Thromb Res*. 1976;8(3):413–416. Online First: 1976/03/01.
126. Ignjatovic V, Summerhayes R, Gan A, et al. Monitoring unfractionated heparin (UFH) therapy: which anti-factor Xa assay is appropriate? *Thromb Res*. 2007;120(3):347–351. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.thromres.2006.10.006. Published Online First: 2006/11/23.
127. Price EA, Jin J, Nguyen HM, Krishnan G, Bowen R, Zehnder JL. Discordant aPTT and anti-Xa values and outcomes in hospitalized patients treated with intravenous unfractionated heparin. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2013;47(2):151–158. https://doi.org/10.1345/aph.1R635. Published Online First: 2013/02/07.
128. Rodgers RP, Levin J. A critical reappraisal of the bleeding time. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 1990;16(1):1–20. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-2007-1002658. Published Online First: 1990/01/01.
129. Lind SE. The bleeding time does not predict surgical bleeding. *Blood*. 1991;77(12):2547–2552. Online First: 1991/06/15.
130. Hattersley PG. Activated coagulation time of whole blood. *JAMA*. 1966;196(5):436–440. Online First: 1966/05/02.
131. Paniccia R, Fedi S, Carbonetto F, et al. Evaluation of a new point-of-care celite-activated clotting time analyzer in different clinical settings. The i-STAT celite-activated clotting time test. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(1):54–59. Online First: 2003/06/27.
132. Enriquez LJ, Shore-Lesserson L. Point-of-care coagulation testing and transfusion algorithms. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(suppl 1):i14–i22. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aep318. Published Online First: 2009/12/17.
133. Ganter MT, Hofer CK. Coagulation monitoring: current techniques and clinical use of viscoelastic point-of-care coagulation devices. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(5):1366–1375. https://doi.org/10.1213/ane.0b013e318168b367. Published Online First: 2008/04/19.
134. Bolliger D, Seeberger MD, Tanaka KA. Principles and practice of thromboelastography in clinical coagulation management and transfusion practice. *Transfus Med Rev*. 2012;26(1):1–13. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tmrv.2011.07.005. Published Online First: 2011/08/30.
135. Shore-Lesserson L, Manspeizer HE, DePerio M, Francis S, Vela-Cantos F, Ergin MA. Thromboelastography-guided transfusion algorithm reduces transfusions in complex cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(2):312–319. Online First: 1999/02/11.
136. Weber CF, Gorlinger K, Meininger D, et al. Point-of-care testing: a prospective, randomized clinical trial of efficacy in coagulopathic cardiac surgery patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(3):531–547. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0b013e318264c644. published Online First: 2012/08/24].
137. Bolliger D, Tanaka KA. Point-of-care coagulation testing in cardiac surgery. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2017;43(4):386–396. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-0037-1599153. published Online First: 2017/03/31].
138. Hayward CP. Diagnostic evaluation of platelet function disorders. *Blood Rev*. 2011;25(4):169–173. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.blre.2011.03.004. published Online First: 2011/04/19].
139. Born GV. Aggregation of blood platelets by adenosine diphosphate and its reversal. *Nature*. 1962;194:927–929. Online First: 1962/06/09].
140. Harrison P. Progress in the assessment of platelet function. *Br J Haematol*. 2000;111(3):733–744. Online First: 2000/12/21].
141. Cardinal DC, Flower RJ. The electronic aggregometer: a novel device for assessing platelet behavior in blood. *J Pharmacol Methods*. 1980;3(2):135–158. Online First: 1980/02/01].
142. Jambor C, von Pape KW, Spannagl M, Dietrich W, Giebl A, Weisser H. Multiple electrode whole blood aggregometry, PFA-100, and in vivo bleeding time for the point-of-care assessment of aspirin-induced platelet dysfunction in the preoperative setting. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(1):31–39. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0b013e31821acddc. published Online First: 2011/04/27].
143. Panzer S, Jilma P. Methods for testing platelet function for transfusion medicine. *Vox Sang*. 2011;101(1):1–9. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1423-0410.2011.01467. xpublished Online First: 2011/06/15].
144. Kundu SK, Heilmann EJ, Sio R, Garcia C, Davidson RM, Ostgaard RA. Description of an in vitro platelet function analyzer—PFA-100. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 1995;21(suppl 2):106–112. Online First: 1995/01/01].
145. Roth GJ, Majerus PW. The mechanism of the effect of aspirin on human platelets. I. Acetylation of a particulate fraction protein. *J Clin Invest*. 1975;56(3):624–632. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI108132. published Online First: 1975/09/01].
146. Mitchell JA, Akarasereenont P, Thiemermann C, Flower RJ, Vane JR. Selectivity of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs as inhibitors of constitutive and inducible cyclooxygenase. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1993;90(24). 11693–1167 Online First: 1993/12/15].
147. Costello PB, Green FA. Aspirin survival in human blood modulated by the concentration of erythrocytes. *Arthritis Rheum*. 1982;25(5):550–555. Online First: 1982/05/01].
148. Pascale S, Petrucci G, Dragani A, et al. Aspirin-insensitive thromboxane biosynthesis in essential thrombocythemia is explained by accelerated renewal of the drug target. *Blood*. 2012;119(15):3595–3603. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2011-06-359224. published Online First: 2012/01/12].
149. Diaz-Gonzalez F, Sanchez-Madrid F. NSAIDs: learning new tricks from old drugs. *Eur J Immunol*. 2015;45(3):679–686. https://doi.org/10.1002/eji.201445222. published Online First: 2014/12/20].
150. Silverstein FE, Faich G, Goldstein JL, et al. Gastrointestinal toxicity with celecoxib vs nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis: the CLASS study: a randomized controlled trial. Celecoxib Long-term Arthritis Safety Study. *JAMA*. 2000;284(10):1247–1255. Online First: 2000/09/09].
151. Solomon SD, McMurray JJ, Pfeffer MA, et al. Cardiovascular risk associated with celecoxib in a clinical trial for colorectal adenoma prevention. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(11):1071–1080. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa050405. published Online First: 2005/02/17].
152. Coxib and Traditional NSAID Trialists' (CNT) Collaboration. Vascular and upper gastrointestinal effects of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs: meta-analyses of individual participant data from randomised trials. *Lancet*. 2013;382(9894):769–779. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(13)60900-9. published Online First: 2013/06/04].
153. Ferri N, Corsini A, Bellosta S. Pharmacology of the new P2Y12 receptor inhibitors: insights on pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic properties. *Drugs*. 2013;73(15):1681–1709. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40265-013-0126-z. published Online First: 2013/10/12].

154. Savi P, Pereillo JM, Uzabiaga MF, et al. Identification and biological activity of the active metabolite of clopidogrel. *Thromb Haemost*. 2000;84(5):891–896. Online First: 2000/12/29.

155. Taubert D, von Beckerath N, Grimberg G, et al. Impact of P-glycoprotein on clopidogrel absorption. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2006;80(5):486–501. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.clpt.2006.07.007. Published Online First: 2006/11/23.

156. Mega JL, Close SL, Wiviott SD, et al. Genetic variants in ABCB1 and CYP2C19 and cardiovascular outcomes after treatment with clopidogrel and prasugrel in the TRITON-TIMI 38 trial: a pharmacogenetic analysis. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9749):1312–1319. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(10)61273-1. Published Online First: 2010/08/31.

157. Mega JL, Simon T, Collet JP, et al. Reduced-function CYP2C19 genotype and risk of adverse clinical outcomes among patients treated with clopidogrel predominantly for PCI: a meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2010;304(16):1821–1830. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2010.1543. Published Online First: 2010/10/28.

158. Wallentin L. P2Y(12) inhibitors: differences in properties and mechanisms of action and potential consequences for clinical use. *Eur Heart J*. 2009;30(16):1964–1977. https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/ehp296. Published Online First: 2009/07/28.

159. Floyd CN, Passacquale G, Ferro A. Comparative pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of platelet adenosine diphosphate receptor antagonists and their clinical implications. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2012;51(7):429–442. https://doi.org/10.2165/11630740-000000000-00000. Published Online First: 2012/05/10.

160. Wallentin L, James S, Storey RF, et al. Effect of CYP2C19 and ABCB1 single nucleotide polymorphisms on outcomes of treatment with ticagrelor versus clopidogrel for acute coronary syndromes: a genetic substudy of the PLATO trial. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9749):1320–1328. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(10)61274-3. Published Online First: 2010/08/31.

161. Akers WS, Oh JJ, Oestreich JH, Ferraris S, Wethington M, Steinhubl SR. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of a bolus and infusion of cangrelor: a direct, parenteral P2Y12 receptor antagonist. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2010;50(1):27–35. https://doi.org/10.1177/0091270009344986. Published Online First: 2009/09/26.

162. Subban V, Sarat Chandra K. Glycoprotein IIb-IIIa inhibitors—do we still need them? *Indian Heart J*. 2013;65(3):260–263. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ihj.2013.04.032. Published Online First: 2013/07/03.

163. Hanna EB, Rao SV, Manoukian SV, Saucedo JF. The evolving role of glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors in the setting of percutaneous coronary intervention strategies to minimize bleeding risk and optimize outcomes. *JACC Cardiovasc Interv*. 2010;3(12):1209–1219. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jcin.2010.09.015. Published Online First: 2011/01/15.

164. Dasgupta H, Blankenship JC, Wood GC, Frey CM, Demko SL, Menapace FJ. Thrombocytopenia complicating treatment with intravenous glycoprotein IIb/IIIa receptor inhibitors: a pooled analysis. *Am Heart J*. 2000;140(2):206–211. https://doi.org/10.1067/mhj.2000.107554. Published Online First: 2000/08/05.

165. Yates SG, Sarode R. New strategies for effective treatment of vitamin K antagonist-associated bleeding. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2015;13(suppl 1):S180–S186. https://doi.org/10.1111/jth.12970. Published Online First: 2015/07/08.

166. Benzon HT, Avram MJ, Benzon HA, Kirby-Nolan M, Nader A. Factor VII levels and international normalized ratios in the early phase of warfarin therapy. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(2):298–304. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0b013e3181ca6cfc. Published Online First: 2010/01/26.

167. Pokorney SD, Simon DN, Thomas L, et al. Patients' time in therapeutic range on warfarin among US patients with atrial fibrillation: results from ORBIT-AF registry. *Am Heart J*. 2015;170(1):141–148, 8 e1. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ahj.2015.03.017. Published Online First: 2015/06/22.

168. Stergiopoulos K, Brown DL. Genotype-guided vs clinical dosing of warfarin and its analogues: meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2014;174(8):1330–1338. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamainternmed.2014.2368. Published Online First: 2014/06/18.

169. Shaw K, Amstutz U, Kim RB, et al. Clinical practice recommendations on genetic testing of CYP2C9 and VKORC1 variants in warfarin therapy. *Ther Drug Monit*. 2015;37(4):428–436. https://doi.org/10.1097/FTD.0000000000000192. Published Online First: 2015/07/18.

170. Johnson EA, Mulloy B. The molecular-weight range of mucosal-heparin preparations. *Carbohydr Res*. 1976;51(1):119–127. Online First: 1976/10/01.

171. Ranucci M, Isgro G, Cazzaniga A, et al. Different patterns of heparin resistance: therapeutic implications. *Perfusion*. 2002;17(3):199–204. https://doi.org/10.1191/0267659102pf562oa. Published Online First: 2002/05/23.

172. Finley A, Greenberg C. Review article: heparin sensitivity and resistance: management during cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(6):1210–1222. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0b013e31827e4e62. Published Online First: 2013/02/15.

173. Li G, Steppich J, Wang Z, et al. Bottom-up low molecular weight heparin analysis using liquid chromatography-Fourier transform mass spectrometry for extensive characterization. *Anal Chem*. 2014;86(13):6626–6232. https://doi.org/10.1021/ac501301v. Published Online First: 2014/06/07.

174. Hirsh J. Low-molecular-weight heparin : a review of the results of recent studies of the treatment of venous thromboembolism and unstable angina. *Circulation*. 1998;98(15):1575–1582. Online First: 1998/10/14.

175. Harenberg J, Gnasso A, de Vries JX, Zimmermann R, Augustin J. Inhibition of low molecular weight heparin by protamine chloride in vivo. *Thromb Res*. 1985;38(1):11–20. Online First: 1985/04/01.

176. van Veen JJ, Maclean RM, Hampton KK, et al. Protamine reversal of low molecular weight heparin: clinically effective? *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis*. 2011;22(7):565–570. https://doi.org/10.1097/MBC.0b013e3283494b3c. Published Online First: 2011/10/01.

177. Greinacher A, Alban S, Dummel V, Franz G, Mueller-Eckhardt C. Characterization of the structural requirements for a carbohydrate based anticoagulant with a reduced risk of inducing the immunological type of heparin-associated thrombocytopenia. *Thromb Haemost*. 1995;74(3):886–892. Online First: 1995/09/01.

178. Bhatt VR, Aryal MR, Shrestha R, Armitage JO. Fondaparinux-associated heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. *Eur J Haematol*. 2013;91(5):437–441. https://doi.org/10.1111/ejh.12179. Published Online First: 2013/08/03.

179. Schindewolf M, Steindl J, Beyer-Westendorf J, et al. Use of Fondaparinux off-label or approved anticoagulants for management of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;70(21):2636–2648. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2017.09.1099. Published Online First: 2017/11/25.

180. Hursting MJ, Lewis BE, Macfarlane DE. Transitioning from argatroban to warfarin therapy in patients with heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. *Clin Appl Thromb Hemost*. 2005;11(3):279–287. Online First: 2005/07/15.

181. Robson R, White H, Aylward P, Frampton C. Bivalirudin pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics: effect of renal function, dose, and gender. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2002;71(6):433–439. https://doi.org/10.1067/mcp.2002.124522. Published Online First: 2002/06/28.

182. Bittl JA, Chaitman BR, Feit F, Kimball W, Topol EJ. Bivalirudin versus heparin during coronary angioplasty for unstable or postinfarction angina: final report reanalysis of the Bivalirudin Angioplasty Study. *Am Heart J*. 2001;142(6):952–959. Online First: 2001/11/22.

183. Mahaffey KW, Lewis BE, Wildermann NM, et al. The anticoagulant therapy with bivalirudin to assist in the performance of percutaneous coronary intervention in patients with heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (ATBAT) study: main results. *J Invasive Cardiol*. 2003;15(11):611–616. Online First: 2003/11/11.

184. Boyce SW, Bandyk DF, Bartholomew JR, Frame JN, Rice L. A randomized, open-label pilot study comparing desirudin and argatroban in patients with suspected heparin-induced thrombocytopenia with or without thrombosis: PREVENT-HIT Study. *Am J Ther*. 2011;18(1):14–22. https://doi.org/10.1097/MJT.0b013e3181f65503. Published Online First: 2010/11/17.

185. Nafziger AN, Bertino JS. Desirudin dosing and monitoring in moderate renal impairment. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2010;50(6):614–622. https://doi.org/10.1177/0091270009350626. Published Online First: 2009/11/17.

186. Lee CJ, Ansell JE. Direct thrombin inhibitors. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;72(4):581–592. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2125.2011.03916. xpublished Online First: 2011/01/19.

187. Dentali F, Riva N, Crowther M, Turpie AG, Lip GY, Ageno W. Efficacy and safety of the novel oral anticoagulants in atrial fibrillation: a systematic review and meta-analysis of the literature. *Circulation*. 2012;126(20):2381–2391. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.112.115410. Published Online First: 2012/10/17.
188. Connolly SJ, Ezekowitz MD, Yusuf S, et al. Dabigatran versus warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361(12):1139–1151. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0905561. Published Online First: 2009/09/01.
189. Wallentin L, Yusuf S, Ezekowitz MD, et al. Efficacy and safety of dabigatran compared with warfarin at different levels of international normalised ratio control for stroke prevention in atrial fibrillation: an analysis of the RE-LY trial. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9745):975–983. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(10)61194-4. Published Online First: 2010/08/31.
190. Garcia D, Barrett YC, Ramacciotti E, Weitz JI. Laboratory assessment of the anticoagulant effects of the next generation of oral anticoagulants. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2013;11(2):245–252. https://doi.org/10.1111/jth.12096. Published Online First: 2012/12/12.
191. Miyares MA, Davis K. Newer oral anticoagulants: a review of laboratory monitoring options and reversal agents in the hemorrhagic patient. *Am J Health Syst Pharm*. 2012;69(17):1473–1484. https://doi.org/10.2146/ajhp110725. Published Online First: 2012/08/18.
192. Tripodi A. The laboratory and the direct oral anticoagulants. *Blood*. 2013;121(20):4032–4035. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2012-12-453076. Published Online First: 2013/04/09.
193. Bruins Slot KM, Berge E. Factor Xa inhibitors vs warfarin for preventing stroke and thromboembolism in patients with atrial fibrillation. *JAMA*. 2014;311(11):1150–1151. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2014.1403. Published Online First: 2014/03/20.
194. Granger CB, Alexander JH, McMurray JJ, et al. Apixaban versus warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365(11):981–992. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1107039. Published Online First: 2011/08/30.
195. Squire IB, Lawley W, Fletcher S, et al. Humoral and cellular immune responses up to 7.5 years after administration of streptokinase for acute myocardial infarction. *Eur Heart J*. 1999;20(17):1245–1252. https://doi.org/10.1053/euhj.1999.1528. Published Online First: 1999/08/24.
196. Kearon C, Akl EA, Comerota AJ, et al. Antithrombotic therapy for VTE disease: antithrombotic therapy and prevention of thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Chest*. 2012;141(suppl 2):e419S–e96S. https://doi.org/10.1378/chest.11-2301. Published Online First: 2012/02/15.
197. Wan S, Quinlan DJ, Agnelli G, Eikelboom JW. Thrombolysis compared with heparin for the initial treatment of pulmonary embolism: a meta-analysis of the randomized controlled trials. *Circulation*. 2004;110(6):744–749. https://doi.org/10.1161/01.CIR.0000137826.09715. 9Cpublished Online First: 2004/07/21.
198. Boersma E, Maas AC, Deckers JW, Simoons ML. Early thrombolytic treatment in acute myocardial infarction: reappraisal of the golden hour. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9030):771–775. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(96)02514-7. Published Online First: 1996/09/21.
199. Powers WJ, Derdeyn CP, Biller J, et al. 2015 American Heart Association/American Stroke Association focused update of the 2013 guidelines for the early management of patients with acute ischemic stroke regarding endovascular treatment: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. *Stroke*. 2015;46(10):3020–3035. https://doi.org/10.1161/STR.0000000000000074. Published Online First: 2015/07/01.
200. Astedt B. Clinical pharmacology of tranexamic acid. *Scand J Gastroenterol Suppl*. 1987;137:22–25. Online First: 1987/01/01.
201. WOMAN Trial Collaborators. Effect of early tranexamic acid administration on mortality, hysterectomy, and other morbidities in women with post-partum haemorrhage (WOMAN): an international, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2017;389(10084):2105–2116. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(17)30638-4. Published Online First: 2017/05/01.
202. Ker K, Edwards P, Perel P, Shakur H, Roberts I. Effect of tranexamic acid on surgical bleeding: systematic review and cumulative meta-analysis. *BMJ*. 2012;344:e3054. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.e3054. Published Online First: 2012/05/23.
203. Henry DA, Carless PA, Moxey AJ, et al. Anti-fibrinolytic use for minimising perioperative allogeneic blood transfusion. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;(3):CD001886. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858. pub4published Online First: 2011/03/18.
204. Manji RA, Grocott HP, Leake J, et al. Seizures following cardiac surgery: the impact of tranexamic acid and other risk factors. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59(1):6–13. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12630-011-9618-z. Published Online First: 2011/11/09.
205. Lecker I, Orser BA, Mazer CD. "Seizing" the opportunity to understand antifibrinolytic drugs. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59(1):1–5. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12630-011-9621-4. Published Online First: 2011/11/05.
206. Mayer SA, Brun NC, Begtrup K, et al. Recombinant activated factor VII for acute intracerebral hemorrhage. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(8):777–785. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa042991. Published Online First: 2005/02/25.
207. Mayer SA, Brun NC, Begtrup K, et al. Efficacy and safety of recombinant activated factor VII for acute intracerebral hemorrhage. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(20):2127–2137. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0707534. Published Online First: 2008/05/16.
208. Boffard KD, Riou B, Warren B, et al. Recombinant factor VIIa as adjunctive therapy for bleeding control in severely injured trauma patients: two parallel randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind clinical trials. *J Trauma*. 2005;59(1):8–15; discussion 8. Online First: 2005/08/13.
209. Hauser CJ, Boffard K, Dutton R, et al. Results of the CONTROL trial: efficacy and safety of recombinant activated factor VII in the management of refractory traumatic hemorrhage. *J Trauma*. 2010;69(3):489–500. https://doi.org/10.1097/TA.0b013e3181edf36e. Published Online First: 2010/09/15.
210. Narayan RK, Maas AI, Marshall LF, et al. Recombinant factor VIIA in traumatic intracerebral hemorrhage: results of a dose-escalation clinical trial. *Neurosurgery*. 2008;62(4):776–786. https://doi.org/10.1227/01.neu.0000316898.78371; discussion 86-8. 74published Online First: 2008/05/23.
211. Yank V, Tuohy CV, Logan AC, et al. Systematic review: benefits and harms of in-hospital use of recombinant factor VIIa for off-label indications. *Ann Intern Med*. 2011;154(8):529–540. https://doi.org/10.7326/0003-4819-154-8-201104190-00004. Published Online First: 2011/04/20.
212. Lodge JP, Jonas S, Jones RM, et al. Efficacy and safety of repeated perioperative doses of recombinant factor VIIa in liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl*. 2005;11(8):973–979. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.20470. Published Online First: 2005/07/22.
213. Planinsic RM, van der Meer J, Testa G, et al. Safety and efficacy of a single bolus administration of recombinant factor VIIa in liver transplantation due to chronic liver disease. *Liver Transpl*. 2005;11(8):895–900. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.20458. Published Online First: 2005/07/22.
214. Levi M, Levy JH, Andersen HF, Truloff D. Safety of recombinant activated factor VII in randomized clinical trials. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(19):1791–1800. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1006221. Published Online First: 2010/11/05.
215. Lin Y, Moltzan CJ, Anderson DR. National Advisory Committee on Blood and Blood Products. The evidence for the use of recombinant factor VIIa in massive bleeding: revision of the transfusion policy framework. *Transfus Med*. 2012;22(6):383–394. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-3148.2012.01164. xpublished Online First: 2012/05/29.
216. Sorensen B, Spahn DR, Innerhofer P, Spannagl M, Rossaint R. Clinical review: prothrombin complex concentrates—evaluation of safety and thrombogenicity. *Crit Care*. 2011;15(1):201. https://doi.org/10.1186/cc9311. Published Online First: 2011/02/25.
217. Dusel CH, Grundmann C, Eich S, Seitz R, Konig H. Identification of prothrombin as a major thrombogenic agent in prothrombin complex concentrates. *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis*. 2004;15(5):405–411. Online First: 2004/06/19.
218. Lunde J, Stensballe J, Wikkelso A, Johansen M, Afshari A. Fibrinogen concentrate for bleeding—a systematic review. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58(9):1061–1074. https://doi.org/10.1111/aas.12370. Published Online First: 2014/07/26.
219. Douketis JD, Spyropoulos AC, Spencer FA, et al. Perioperative management of antithrombotic therapy: antithrombotic therapy and prevention of thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Chest*. 2012;141(suppl 2):e326S–e50S https://doi.org/10.1378/chest.11-2298. Published Online First: 2012/02/15.

220. Hirsh J, Raschke R. Heparin and low-molecular-weight heparin: the Seventh ACCP Conference on Antithrombotic and Thrombolytic Therapy. *Chest*. 2004;126(suppl 3):188S–203S. https://doi.org/10.1378/chest.126.3_suppl.188S. Published Online First: 2004/09/24.
221. Antithrombotic Trialists' Collaboration. Collaborative meta-analysis of randomised trials of antiplatelet therapy for prevention of death, myocardial infarction, and stroke in high risk patients. *BMJ*. 2002;324(7329):71–86. Online First: 2002/01/12.
222. Burger W, Chemnitius JM, Kneissl GD, Rucker G. Low-dose aspirin for secondary cardiovascular prevention—cardiovascular risks after its perioperative withdrawal versus bleeding risks with its continuation—review and meta-analysis. *J Intern Med*. 2005;257(5):399–414. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2796.2005.01477. xpublished Online First: 2005/04/20.
223. Lordkipanidze M, Diodati JG, Pharand C. Possibility of a rebound phenomenon following antiplatelet therapy withdrawal: a look at the clinical and pharmacological evidence. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2009;123(2):178–186. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pharmthera.2009.03.019. Published Online First: 2009/05/12.
224. Pulmonary Embolism Prevention Trial Collaborative Group. Prevention of pulmonary embolism and deep vein thrombosis with low dose aspirin: Pulmonary Embolism Prevention (PEP) trial. *Lancet*. 2000;355(9212):1295–1302. Online First: 2000/04/25.
225. Oscarsson A, Gupta A, Fredrikson M, et al. To continue or discontinue aspirin in the perioperative period: a randomized, controlled clinical trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(3):305–312. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aeq003. Published Online First: 2010/02/13.
226. Biondi-Zoccai GG, Lotrionte M, Agostoni P, et al. A systematic review and meta-analysis on the hazards of discontinuing or not adhering to aspirin among 50,279 patients at risk for coronary artery disease. *Eur Heart J*. 2006;27(22):2667–2674. https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/ehl334. Published Online First: 2006/10/21.
227. Levine GN, Bates ER, Bittl JA, et al. 2016 ACC/AHA Guideline focused update on duration of dual antiplatelet therapy in patients with coronary artery disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2016;68(10):1082–1115. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2016.03.513. Published Online First: 2016/04/03.
228. Valgimigli M, Bueno H, Byrne RA, et al. 2017 ESC focused update on dual antiplatelet therapy in coronary artery disease developed in collaboration with EACTS: the Task Force for Dual Antiplatelet Therapy in Coronary Artery Disease of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and of the European Association for Cardio-Thoracic Surgery (EACTS). *Eur Heart J*. 2018;39(3):213–260. https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/ehx419. Published Online First: 2017/09/10.
229. Horlocker TT, Wedel DJ, Rowlingson JC, et al. Regional anesthesia in the patient receiving antithrombotic or thrombolytic therapy: American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine Evidence-Based Guidelines (Third Edition). *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35(1):64–101. Online First: 2010/01/08].
230. Palareti G, Leali N, Coccheri S, et al. Bleeding complications of oral anticoagulant treatment: an inception-cohort, prospective collaborative study (ISCOAT). Italian study on complications of oral anticoagulant therapy. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9025):423–428. Online First: 1996/08/17.
231. Levine MN, Hirsh J, Landefeld S, Raskob G. Hemorrhagic complications of anticoagulant treatment. *Chest*. 1992;102(suppl 4). 352S–63S. Online First: 1992/10/01.
232. Sarode R, Milling TJ, Refaai MA, et al. Efficacy and safety of a 4-factor prothrombin complex concentrate in patients on vitamin K antagonists presenting with major bleeding: a randomized, plasma-controlled, phase IIIb study. *Circulation*. 2013;128(11):1234–1243. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.113.002283. Published Online First: 2013/08/13.
233. Dezee KJ, Shimeall WT, Douglas KM, Shumway NM, O'Malley PG. Treatment of excessive anticoagulation with phytonadione (vitamin K): a meta-analysis. *Arch Intern Med*. 2006;166(4):391–397. https://doi.org/10.1001/.391. Published Online First: 2006/03/01.
234. Burbury KL, Milner A, Snooks B, Jupe D, Westerman DA. Short-term warfarin reversal for elective surgery—using low-dose intravenous vitamin K: safe, reliable and convenient*. *Br J Haematol*. 2011;154(5):626–634. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2141.2011.08787. xpublished Online First: 2011/07/15.
235. Hickey M, Gatien M, Taljaard M, Aujnarain A, Giulivi A, Perry JJ. Outcomes of urgent warfarin reversal with frozen plasma versus prothrombin complex concentrate in the emergency department. *Circulation*. 2013;128(4):360–364. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.113.001875. Published Online First: 2013/06/19.
236. Goldstein JN, Refaai MA, Milling TJ, et al. Four-factor prothrombin complex concentrate versus plasma for rapid vitamin K antagonist reversal in patients needing urgent surgical or invasive interventions: a phase 3b, open-label, non-inferiority, randomised trial. *Lancet*. 2015;385(9982):2077–2087. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(14)61685-8. Published Online First: 2015/03/03.
237. Pollack CV, Reilly PA, Eikelboom J, et al. Idarucizumab for dabigatran reversal. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373(6):511–520. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1502000. Published Online First: 2015/06/23.
238. Connolly SJ, Crowther M, Eikelboom JW, et al. Full study report of andexanet alfa for bleeding associated with factor Xa inhibitors. *N Engl J Med*. 2019; Feb 7. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1814051. [Epub ahead of print.
239. Connolly SJ, Milling TJ, Eikelboom JW, et al. Andexanet alfa for acute major bleeding associated with factor xa inhibitors. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375(12):1131–1341. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1607887. Published Online First: 2016/08/31.
240. Ansell JE, Bakhru SH, Laulicht BE, et al. Single-dose ciraparantag safely and completely reverses anticoagulant effects of edoxaban. *Thromb Haemost*. 2017;117(2):238–245. https://doi.org/10.1160/TH16-03-0224. Published Online First: 2016/11/18.

51

Management of the Patient with Chronic Pain

CHRISTOPH STEIN and ANDREAS KOPF

KEY POINTS

- The normal physiology of neuronal function, receptors, and ion channels is altered by persistent pain.
- Because of the large number of sources and manifestation of chronic pain, classification must include cancer-related, neuropathic, inflammatory, arthritis, and musculoskeletal pain.
- Interdisciplinary management of chronic pain must include specialists in psychology, physical therapy, occupational therapy, neurology, and anesthesiology.
- Drugs used for chronic pain are multiple and include opioids, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs and antipyretic analgesics, serotonin receptor ligands, antiepileptics, antidepressants, topical analgesics (e.g., nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, capsaicin, local anesthetics, opioids), and adjuvants such as local anesthetics, α_2-agonists, baclofen, botulinum toxin, antiemetics, laxatives, novel drugs such as cannabinoids, and ion channel blockers.
- Interventional management of chronic pain includes the use of diagnostic blocks, therapeutic blocks, continuous catheter techniques (peripheral, epidural, intrathecal), and stimulation techniques such as acupuncture, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation, and spinal cord stimulation.
- Perioperative management of patients with chronic pain involves the following: the use of opioid and nonopioid analgesics; evaluation for dependence, addiction, and pseudoaddiction; and practical considerations.

Introduction

PHYSIOLOGICAL CHANGES IN PERSISTENT PAIN

Excitatory Mechanisms

Pain may be roughly divided into two broad categories: physiologic and pathologic pain. Physiologic (acute, nociceptive) pain is an essential early warning sign that usually elicits reflex withdrawal and thereby promotes survival by protecting the organism from further injury. In contrast, pathologic (e.g., neuropathic) pain is an expression of the maladaptive operation of the nervous system; it is pain as a disease.[1] Physiologic pain is mediated by a sensory system consisting of primary afferent neurons, spinal interneurons and ascending tracts, and several supraspinal areas. Trigeminal and dorsal root ganglia (DRG) give rise to high-threshold Aδ− and C-fibers innervating peripheral tissues (skin, muscles, joints, viscera). These specialized primary afferent neurons, also called nociceptors, transduce noxious stimuli into action potentials and conduct them to the dorsal horn of the spinal cord (Fig. 51.1). When peripheral tissue is damaged, primary afferent neurons are sensitized or directly activated (or both) by a variety of thermal, mechanical, and/or chemical stimuli. Examples are protons, sympathetic amines, adenosine triphosphate (ATP), glutamate, neuropeptides (calcitonin gene-related peptide, substance P), nerve growth factor, prostanoids, bradykinin, proinflammatory cytokines, and chemokines.[2] Many of these agents lead to opening (gating) of cation channels in the neuronal membrane. Such channels include the capsaicin-, proton-, and heat-sensitive transient receptor potential vanilloid 1 (TRPV1), or the ATP-gated purinergic $P2X_3$ receptor. Gating produces an inward current of Na^+ and Ca^{++} ions into the peripheral nociceptor terminal. If this depolarizing current is sufficient to activate voltage-gated Na^+ channels (e.g., $Na_v1.8$), they too will open, further depolarizing the membrane and initiating a burst of action potentials that are then conducted along the sensory axon to the dorsal horn of the spinal cord.[2,3]

Transmission of input from nociceptors to spinal neurons that project to the brain is mediated by direct monosynaptic contact or through multiple excitatory or inhibitory interneurons. The central terminals of nociceptors contain excitatory transmitters such as glutamate, substance P, and neurotrophic factors that activate postsynaptic N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA), neurokinin (NK_1), and tyrosine kinase receptors, respectively. Repeated nociceptor stimulation can sensitize both peripheral and central neurons (activity-dependent plasticity). In spinal neurons such a progressive increase of output in response to persistent nociceptor excitation has been termed "wind-up." Later, sensitization can be sustained by transcriptional changes in the expression of genes coding for various neuropeptides, transmitters, ion channels, receptors, and signaling molecules (transcription-dependent plasticity) in both nociceptors and spinal neurons. Important examples include the NMDA receptor, cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2), Ca^{++} and Na^+ channels, cytokines and chemokines expressed by neurons and/or glial cells.[2,3] In addition, physical rearrangement of neuronal

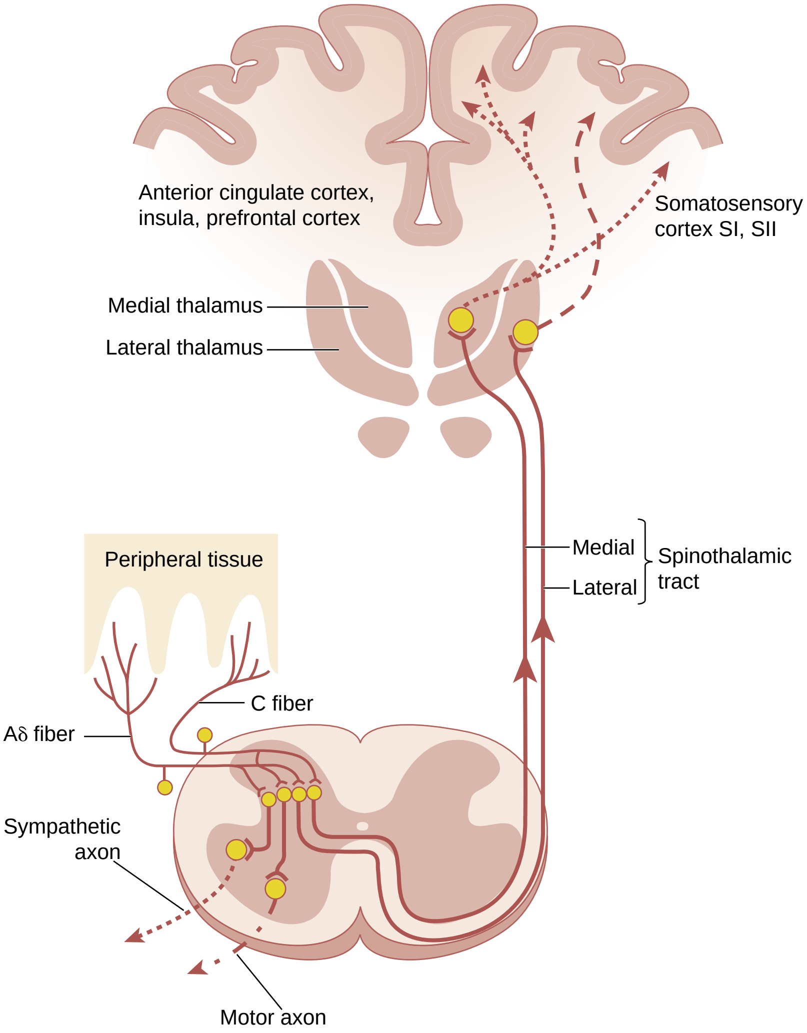


Fig. 51.1 Nociceptive pathways. For details see text. (Adapted from Brack A, Stein C, Schaible HG. Periphere und zentrale Mechanismen des Entzündungsschmerzes. In: Straub RH, ed. *Lehrbuch der klinischen Pathophysiologie komplexer chronischer Erkrankungen*. vol. 1. Göttingen Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht; 2006:183–192.[203])

circuits by apoptosis, nerve growth, and sprouting occurs in the peripheral and central nervous system.[1] Both induction and maintenance of central sensitization are critically dependent on the peripheral drive by nociceptors, indicating that therapeutic interventions targeting such neurons may be particularly effective, even in chronic pain syndromes.[3,4]

Inhibitory Mechanisms

Concurrent with the events just described, powerful endogenous mechanisms counteracting pain unfold. This was initially proposed in the "gate control theory of pain" in 1965[5] and has since been corroborated and expanded by experimental data. In 1990, a "peripheral gate" was discovered at the source of pain generation by demonstrating that immune cell-derived opioid peptides can block the excitation of nociceptors carrying opioid receptors within injured tissue[6] (Fig. 51.2). This represented the first example of many subsequently described neuro-immune interactions relevant to pain.[7-11] Inflammation of peripheral tissue leads to increased expression, axonal transport, and enhanced G-protein coupling of opioid receptors in DRG neurons as well as enhanced permeability of the perineurium. These phenomena are dependent on sensory neuron electrical activity, production of proinflammatory cytokines, and the presence of nerve growth factor within the inflamed tissue. In parallel, opioid peptide-containing immune cells extravasate and accumulate in the inflamed tissue.[9,11] These cells upregulate the gene expression of opioid precursors and the enzymatic machinery for their processing into functionally active peptides. In response to stress, catecholamines, corticotropin-releasing factor, cytokines, chemokines, or bacteria, leukocytes secrete opioids, which then activate peripheral opioid receptors and produce analgesia by inhibiting the excitability of nociceptors, the release of excitatory neuropeptides, or both (see Fig. 51.2).[9,11,12] The clinical relevance of these mechanisms has been shown in studies demonstrating that patients with knee joint inflammation express opioid peptides in immune cells and opioid receptors on sensory nerve terminals within synovial tissue.[13] After knee surgery, pain and analgesic consumption was enhanced by blocking the interaction between the endogenous opioids and their receptors with intraarticular naloxone,[14] and was diminished by stimulating opioid secretion.[15]

In the spinal cord, inhibition is mediated by the release of opioids, γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA), or glycine from interneurons, which activate presynaptic opioid- or GABA-receptors (or both) on central nociceptor terminals

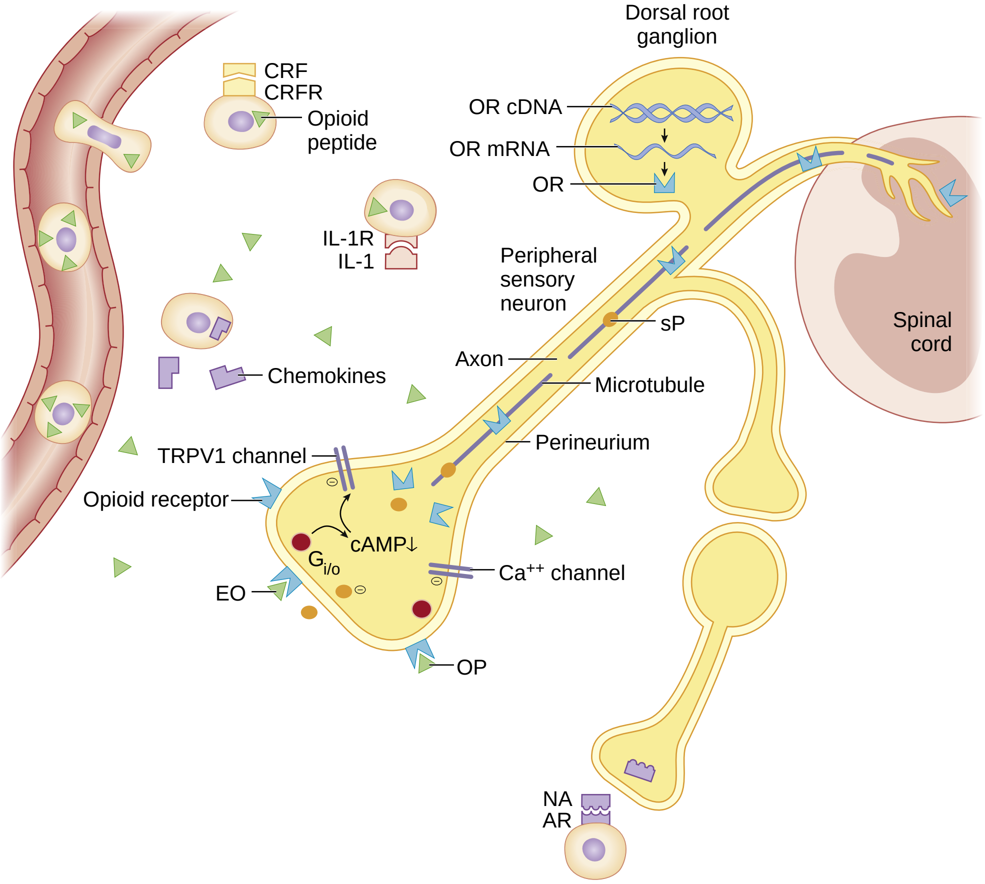


Fig. 51.2 Endogenous antinociceptive mechanisms within peripheral injured tissue. Opioid peptide–containing circulating leukocytes extravasate upon activation of adhesion molecules and chemotaxis by chemokines. Subsequently, these leukocytes are stimulated by stress or releasing agents to secrete opioid peptides. For example, corticotropin-releasing factor *(CRF)*, interleukin-1β *(IL–1)*, and noradrenaline (*NA*, released from postganglionic sympathetic neurons) can elicit opioid release by activating their respective CRF receptors *(CRFR)*, IL-1 receptors *(IL-1R)*, and adrenergic receptors *(AR)* on leukocytes. Exogenous opioids *(EO)* or endogenous opioid peptides (*OP*, green triangles) bind to opioid receptors *(OR)* that are synthesized in dorsal root ganglia and transported along intraaxonal microtubules to peripheral (and central) terminals of sensory neurons. The subsequent inhibition of ion channels (e.g., TRPV1, Ca^{++}) (see Fig. 64.3 and text) and of substance P *(sP)* release results in antinociceptive effects. (Adapted from Stein C, Machelska H. Modulation of peripheral sensory neurons by the immune system: implications for pain therapy. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2011;63:860–881.[9])

to reduce excitatory transmitter release. In addition, the opening of postsynaptic K^+ or Cl^- channels by opioids or GABA, respectively, evokes hyperpolarizing inhibitory potentials in dorsal horn neurons. During ongoing nociceptive stimulation spinal interneurons upregulate gene expression and the production of opioid peptides.[16,17] Powerful descending inhibitory pathways from the brainstem also become active by operating mostly through noradrenergic, serotonergic, and opioid systems. Key regions are the periaqueductal grey and the rostral ventromedial medulla, which then projects along the dorsolateral funiculus to the dorsal horn.[2,18] The integration of signals from excitatory and inhibitory neurotransmitters with cognitive, emotional, and environmental factors (see later) eventually results in the central perception of pain. When the intricate balance between biologic, psychological, and social factors becomes disturbed, chronic pain can develop.[19,20]

Translation of Basic Research

Basic research on pain continues at a rapid pace but translation into clinical applications has been difficult.[4,21] Many obstacles have been discussed, including overinterpretation of data, reporting bias toward neglecting negative results, inadequate animal models, flawed study design, genetic and species differences.[4,21-23] Notwithstanding, animal studies are indispensable, continue to be improved, and have successfully predicted adverse side effects of drug candidates.[22,23] For ethical reasons, many models are restricted to days or weeks, while human chronic pain can last for months or years. Therefore, animal models may be more cautiously termed as reflecting "persistent" pain.[21,23] Brain imaging is an area of intense research and numerous studies have investigated changes in patients with various pain syndromes. However, such studies have not yet provided reproducible findings specific for a disease or a pathophysiologic basis for individual syndromes.[22] Neuroimaging can only detect alterations associated with nociceptive processes whereas clinical pain encompasses a much more complex subjective experience that critically relies on self-evaluation. Thus, although recent data have provided valuable information on pain neurophysiology, current imaging techniques cannot provide an objective proxy, biomarker, or predictor for clinical pain.[24,25] Genetics is another budding scientific field. However, with the possible exception of the metabolic enzyme CYP2D6, pharmacogenetics is not expected to serve as a guide to individualized ("personalized") clinical pain therapy any time soon.[22,26-29]

CLINICAL DEFINITIONS, PREVALENCE, AND CLASSIFICATION OF CHRONIC PAIN

Definitions

The International Association for the Study of Pain (IASP) defines pain as "an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage, or described in terms of such damage."[30] This classification further states that pain is always subjective and that it is a sensation in parts of the body. At the same time, it is unpleasant and therefore also has emotional/psychological components. Aside from malignant disease, many people report chronic pain in the absence of tissue damage or any likely pathophysiologic cause. There is usually no way to distinguish their experience from that due to tissue damage. If patients regard their experience as pain or if they report it in the same ways as pain caused by tissue damage, it should be accepted as pain.[31] Nociception is neurophysiological activity in peripheral sensory neurons (nociceptors) and higher nociceptive pathways and is defined by the IASP as the "neural process of encoding noxious stimuli." Nociception is not synonymous to pain. Chronic pain is defined as "extending in duration beyond the expected temporal boundary of tissue injury and normal healing, and adversely affecting the function or well-being of the individual" by the American Society of Anesthesiologists.[32] The IASP subcommittee on taxonomy defined it in 1986 as "pain without apparent biological value that has persisted beyond the normal tissue healing time usually taken to be three months."

Prevalence

Beyond these general definitions there exists no common understanding about the characteristics of the chronic pain patient. This may be one reason why estimates of prevalence differ greatly from one publication to another. Heterogeneous populations, the occurrence of undetected comorbidity, different definitions of chronic pain, and different approaches to data collection have resulted in estimates from 20% to 60%. Some surveys indicate a more frequent prevalence among women and the elderly. Chronic pain has enormous socioeconomic costs due to the need for healthcare services, disability compensation, lost workdays, and related expenses.[31,33,34]

Classification

There is a tradition to distinguish between malignant (related to cancer and its treatment) and nonmalignant (e.g., neuropathic, musculoskeletal, inflammatory) chronic pain. Nonmalignant chronic pain is frequently classified into inflammatory (e.g., arthritic), musculoskeletal (e.g., low back pain), headaches, and neuropathic pain (e.g., postherpetic neuralgia, phantom pain, complex regional pain syndrome, diabetic neuropathy, human immunodeficiency virus-associated neuropathy). Frequent symptoms of neuropathic pain include spontaneous lancinating, shooting, or burning pain; hyperalgesia; and allodynia.[35] Cancer pain can originate from invasion of the tumor into tissues innervated by primary afferent neurons (e.g., pleura, peritoneum) or directly into a peripheral nerve plexus. In the latter, neuropathic symptoms may be predominant. Pain may be underestimated by medical staff and family members, resulting in poor pain control.[31] Many treatments for cancer are associated with severe pain. For example, cytoreductive radiotherapy or chemotherapy frequently causes painful oral mucositis, especially in patients with bone marrow transplantation.[36]

Biopsychosocial Concept of Chronic Pain

Chronic pain is characterized by the complex interaction of biologic (tissue damage), psychological (cognition, memory, conditioning), and environmental/social factors (attention, reinforcement). Studies have shown that multimodal pain management programs rooted in this concept can lead to reduced pain, increased activity, and improved daily functioning.[37] Therefore, it is of utmost importance to screen patients with ongoing pain for risk factors. Special attention should be paid to patients presenting with limited mobility, lack of motivation, depression, anger, anxiety, and fear of reinjury, which hamper the return to normal work or recreational activities. Such patients may become preoccupied with pain and somatic processes, which may disrupt sleep and cause irritability and social withdrawal. Other cognitive factors such as patients' expectations or beliefs (e.g., perceived inability to control the pain) influence psychosocial and physical functioning. Pain behavior such as limping, medication intake, or avoidance of activity is subject to operant conditioning; that is, it responds to reward and punishment. For example, pain behavior may be positively reinforced by attention from a spouse or healthcare provider (e.g., by inadequate use of nerve blocks or medications). Conversely, such behavior can be extinguished when it is disregarded and incremental activity is reinforced by social attention and praise.[19] Respondent learning mechanisms (i.e., classical conditioning) may also contribute to chronicity.[20] Other issues often coexist, such as substance abuse problems, family dysfunction, and conflicts with legal or insurance systems. Consequently, care seeking is an integral feature of the pain experience, and excessive use of the healthcare system ensues. The interplay between these biologic, psychological, and social factors results in the persistence of pain and illness behaviors.[19,20] Treating only one aspect of this complex syndrome ("monomodal" therapy) is obviously insufficient. The biopsychosocial concept was first described by Engel in 1959[38] but its implementation into daily practice has been tardy, especially concerning chronic pain patients.[39,40] This concept helps to understand why chronic pain may exist without obvious physical cause or why pathologic somatic findings may remain unnoticed by the patient. Interestingly, the experience and regulation of social and physical pain may share a common neuroanatomic basis.[41] In a multimodal approach, pain management simultaneously addresses physical, psychological, and social skills and underscores the patients' active responsibility to regain control over life by improving function and well-being.[20,37,42] Methods usually include (among others) cognitive-behavioral therapy, physical exercise, and medication management. Cognitive-behavioral therapy aims to correct maladaptive cognitive and behavioral patterns, such as catastrophizing and fear-avoidance-beliefs. It encourages patients to take a proactive versus passive role in their healing process, and to experience life mindfully through defusion, acceptance, and committed action.[43,44] Functional restoration includes occupational and physical therapy to help the patient gain confidence in physical activity. Activation per se seems to be more important than specific therapeutic techniques. Social support can affect pain intensity and mood by addressing employment and retirement issues as well as other concerns such as financial and legal disputes.

INTERDISCIPLINARY MANAGEMENT OF CHRONIC PAIN

The anesthesiologist John J. Bonica was the first to appreciate the need for a multidisciplinary approach to chronic pain. His early experiences in and after World War II convinced Bonica that complex pain problems could be more effectively treated when different disciplines contribute their specialized knowledge and skills to the common goal of making a correct diagnosis and developing the most effective therapeutic strategy. The first multidisciplinary facility was put into practice at the Tacoma General Hospital, followed by the University of Washington in 1960. From 1970 through 1990, the number of pain management facilities continued to increase in North America and Europe, mostly directed by anesthesiologists. Such comprehensive pain centers should have personnel and facilities to evaluate and treat the biomedical, psychosocial, and occupational aspects of chronic pain and to educate and teach medical students, residents, and fellows. Guidelines for characteristics of pain treatment facilities have been published by the IASP.[45] Interdisciplinary and multimodal management results in increased physical and psychosocial function, reduced health care use, and vocational rehabilitation. Such programs offer the most efficacious and cost-effective, evidence-based treatment of chronic nonmalignant pain.[37,40] Treatment without an interdisciplinary approach is inadequate and may lead to misdiagnoses. For example, overlooking psychological processes in a presumed discogenic back pain, or overlooking a somatic etiology in a presumed "psychogenic" pain disorder may lead to the wrong conclusions.[46] Moreover, conventional monomodal approaches such as pharmacotherapy alone only perpetuate the expensive, futile, and endless search for medical solutions.[40,42]. A prominent example is the recent "opioid epidemic" with inadequate opioid medication as a monomodal therapy of chronic noncancer pain, which has significantly delayed appropriate diagnostic and therapeutic management.[47] The "current opioid misuse measure" questionnaire may be a useful tool to detect inadequate opioid medication.[48]

The core team usually comprises a pain management physician (often an anesthesiologist with subspecialty training but could also be a physical medicine and rehabilitation physician or psychiatrist with appropriate training), a psychologist, a physical therapist, and an occupational therapist. Depending on the local circumstances, administrators, social workers, pain nurses, and/ or pharmacists can also be involved. The initial screening of the patient by members of the core team determines what other specialists will be needed for a complete assessment. After this evaluation, the patient is presented to the entire core team and a comprehensive treatment plan is developed. This plan is tailored to the patient's needs, abilities, and expectations, with a focus on achieving measurable treatment goals established with the patient. For some patients, education and medical management may suffice, whereas for others, an intensive full-day outpatient or inpatient rehabilitation program over several weeks may be needed. Early stratification of the management according to the patient's prognosis (low, medium, or high risk for persistent disability because of pain) results in significantly higher clinical and cost effectiveness.[49] To foster patient compliance, an open discussion of treatment goals with regard to the patient's expectations is essential. Many patients expect the complete resolution of pain and the return to full function, a goal that may not be achievable. More realistic options are some reduction of pain, improvement of physical function, and/or return to work. Mood, sleep, active coping skills, and social functioning may also be improved.[50,51] Thus, rehabilitation rather than cure is the most appropriate therapeutic option.[40]

Psychology

The role of the psychologist includes the initial assessment and treatment approaches such as education, cognitive-behavioral therapy, and relaxation training. Assessment of the patient addresses the sensory, affective, cognitive, behavioral, and occupational dimensions of the pain problem. This includes an extensive biographic history and behavioral analysis along with the use of questionnaires. Most questionnaires include scoring systems for pain intensity (e.g., numerical or visual analog scales), but pain behavior (e.g., West-Haven-Yale Multidimensional Pain Inventory), multidimensional pain quality, cognitive coping, fear (e.g., State-Trait-Anxiety-Inventory), depression, and other associated symptoms are far more relevant. Indications for psychological pain management are relevant somatization, depressive disorders, inadequate coping, drug abuse, and high levels of pain behavior reinforced by the environment (e.g., family members). A key factor is motivational change for acceptance of the complex therapeutic program.[52] Some types of pain syndromes, such as chronic headache, inflammatory rheumatic pain, or unspecific back pain may specifically benefit from behavioral therapy.[20,40] This usually means a complete change of view for the patient, from a purely passive recipient of curative treatment to an active, self-reliant approach to functional restoration, vocational rehabilitation, and reduced healthcare use despite pain. Thus, pain reduction alone is no longer the focus of therapy.[37,40]

Physical Therapy

The role of the physical therapist includes initial evaluation of the musculoskeletal system, assessment of the patient's workplace and home, education in active physical coping skills, and management of the physical rehabilitation process. An intensive exercise program emphasizing the patient's responsibility for self-management is an integral part of comprehensive programs for chronic nonmalignant pain.[37,40,53] Improving fitness, mobility, and posture counteracts the effects of disuse and complements behavioral treatment. The physical therapist encourages the adoption of regular exercise into daily life, facilitates repeated exposure to movement as much as possible despite pain, and reinforces education in the biopsychosocial model of pain management. Different techniques of exercise such as muscle conditioning and aerobics are efficacious in improving function, pain, disability, and fear avoidance behavior.[54,55] On the other hand, passive treatments like massage or chiropractic interventions are not beneficial.[56] The regimen of graded exercise follows the original concept of Fordyce.[19] Patients are instructed to find a baseline tolerance level for each exercise. Next, a program of improvement is negotiated and agreed upon. Patients note improvements on a daily basis and are required to complete the exercise plan regardless of how they feel. Thus, the control over exercise behavior is contingent upon plan rather than pain, since exercise and pain are disconnected. Individual motivation is an important factor determining how well patients learn to manage pain.[57]

Occupational Therapy

The occupational therapist teaches the patient to achieve life goals despite pain and to overcome the limitations imposed by pain. Occupational therapy assessment includes a history of working life and place, family life, and daily activities, as well as a physical examination to determine range-of-motion and the presence of movement disorders or deformities that might hinder performance. The primary therapeutic objectives are reduction of pain and associated disability, promotion of optimal function in everyday life, and the encouragement of meaningful family, social, and work relationships.[58] An important target is supporting the patient's return to work including specific work conditioning.[59] The chance of returning to work after a period of sick leave from low back pain, for example, apparently decreases over time, thereby generating enormous cost to society through wage compensation, social support, and loss of production.[31] Barriers to return to work include job dissatisfaction and perceptions of the impact of work on the cause of pain. Together with the patient, the occupational therapist should develop a program to increase self-esteem, restore self-efficacy, and promote optimal occupational and recreational function despite pain.

Anesthesiology

The role of the anesthesiologist in the treatment of chronic pain has changed considerably over the last decades. "Nerve block practices" have been replaced by interdisciplinary pain management centers. In this context the anesthesiologist acts as both a physician-educator and a technical expert. The challenge is to optimally complement regional anesthesia skills and pharmacologic knowledge with the psychosocial components of chronic pain to render more comprehensive pain management services. Anesthesiologists need to use their expertise in pharmacotherapy, nerve blocks, and skilled techniques within the broad-based biopsychosocial approach. The focus is not only on reducing pain but also on decreasing disability, improving quality of life, and increasing function. The conventional way of administering medication "as needed" or to use nerve blocks for short-term pain relief may risk reinforcement of pain behavior, and the patient's belief in an underlying physical abnormality that is best managed by biomedical procedures.[42] Moreover, false expectations are maintained; for example, the patient cannot be the passive recipient, but must be an active participant in the process. Patients may believe that pain is the primary problem in the patient's life. This neglects psychosocial factors, perpetuates the expensive and futile search for unidimensional biomedical solutions, and promotes iatrogenic somatization, medicalization, and high health care use by chronic pain patients.[42] The role of the anesthesiologist within the interdisciplinary team differs depending on the type of patient being treated. Cancer and acute pain management demand the full range of the anesthesiologist's technical skills and pharmacologic knowledge. In chronic nonmalignant pain, the anesthesiologist's abilities as an educator, coach, and motivator are far more important. As a member of the interdisciplinary team, the anesthesiologist has to reinforce and maintain the biopsychosocial focus, respond appropriately to somatic concerns, and manage medications. In concert with the other members of the team, the anesthesiologist uses motivational strategies to encourage the patient to attain self-managed reactivation goals in physical, psychosocial, recreational, and vocational domains. At the same time, the anesthesiologist's presence provides "white coat credibility" and is essential to avoid the patient's pejorative conclusion that the pain is "all in my head." The anesthesiologist monitors the patient's physical status, potential development of new medical problems, and medications. In addition, the anesthesiologist provides real-time reassurance and education regarding the absence of relevant abnormality, the minimal role of surgery, and conveys medical information to make informed choices. The anesthesiologist plays a crucial role within the multidisciplinary team to direct the patient toward a multimodal pain treatment plan and to coordinate this program. The majority of pain therapists worldwide are anesthesiologists. They work closely with other healthcare professionals in this setting, thereby gaining added recognition outside the operating room.[42]

Drugs Used for Chronic Pain

Analgesic drugs interfere with the generation or transmission (or both) of impulses following noxious stimulation in the nervous system (nociception). This can occur at both the peripheral and central levels of the neuraxis. The therapeutic aim is to diminish the perception of pain. Analgesics aim at modulating either the formation of noxious chemicals (e.g., prostaglandins) or the activation of neuronal receptors or ion channels transducing or transmitting noxious stimuli (e.g., peptide, kinin, monoamine receptors, Na^+ channels). Drugs currently used in chronic pain include opioids, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), serotonergic compounds, antiepileptics, and antidepressants (Table 51.1). Local anesthetics are used for local and regional anesthetic techniques. Mixed drugs combine different mechanisms, for example noradrenaline reuptake inhibition and opioid agonist effects (tramadol, tapentadol), or opioid agonist and NMDA antagonist effects (ketamine). Various routes of drug administration (e.g., oral, intravenous, subcutaneous, intrathecal, epidural, topical, intraarticular, transmucosal) can be used, depending on the clinical circumstances. In addition, placebo treatments have shown significant analgesic effects, mediated by opioid and nonopioid mechanisms.[60] Chronic pain requires a multidisciplinary approach encompassing both pharmacologic and nonpharmacologic (psychological, physiotherapeutic) treatment strategies (see "Interdisciplinary Management of Chronic Pain").

TABLE 51.1 Analgesic Drugs, Targets, Mechanisms, and Side Effects

Drugs	Targets	Mechanisms	Functional Consequences	Side Effects
Opioids	G-protein coupled μ-, δ-, κ-receptors	↓ cAMP ↓ Ca^{++} currents ↑ K$^+$ currents	↓ Excitability of peripheral and central neurons ↓ Release of excitatory neurotransmitters	μ, δ: sedation, nausea, euphoria/reward, respiratory depression, constipation κ: dysphoria/aversion, diuresis, sedation
NSAIDs	cyclooxygenases (COX-1, COX-2)	↓ prostaglandins ↓ thromboxanes	↓ Sensitization of sensory neurons ↑ Inhibition of spinal neurons	Nonselective: gastrointestinal ulcers, perforation, bleeding, renal impairment COX-2: thrombosis, myocardial infarction, stroke
Serotonin agonists	G-protein coupled 5-HT receptors 5-HT$_3$: ion channels	↓ cAMP (5-HT$_1$) ↑ cAMP (5-HT$_{4-7}$) ↑ PLC (5-HT$_2$)	↓ Release of excitatory neuropeptides ↓ Neurogenic inflammation ↑ Vasoconstriction	Myocardial infarction, stroke, peripheral vascular occlusion
Antiepileptics	Na$^+$, Ca^{++} channels GABA receptors	↓ Na$^+$ currents ↓ Ca^{++} currents ↑ GABA receptor activity	↓ Excitability of peripheral and central neurons ↓ Release of excitatory neurotransmitters	Sedation, dizziness, cognitive impairment, ataxia, hepatotoxicity, thrombocytopenia
Antidepressants	Noradrenaline/5-HT transporters Na$^+$, K$^+$ channels	↓ Noradrenaline/5-HT reuptake ↓ Na$^+$ currents ↑ K$^+$ currents	↓ Excitability of peripheral and central neurons	Cardiac arrhythmia, myocardial infarction, sedation, nausea, dry mouth, constipation, dizziness, sleep disturbance, blurred vision

NSAIDs, Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs; *GABA*, γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA).

OPIOIDS

Opioids act on heptahelical G-protein-coupled receptors. Three types of opioid receptors (μ, δ, κ) have been cloned. Several subtypes (e.g., μ_1, μ_2, δ_1, δ_2), possibly resulting from gene polymorphisms, splice variants, or alternative processing have been proposed. Opioid receptors are localized and can be activated along all levels of the neuraxis including peripheral and central processes of primary sensory neurons (nociceptors), spinal cord (interneurons, projection neurons), brainstem, midbrain, and cortex. All opioid receptors couple to G-proteins (mainly G_i/G_o) and subsequently inhibit adenylyl cyclase, decrease the conductance of voltage-gated Ca^{++} channels, or open rectifying K$^+$ channels, or any combination of these actions (Fig. 51.3*a*).[61] These effects ultimately result in decreased neuronal activity. The prevention of Ca^{++} influx inhibits the release of excitatory (pronociceptive) neurotransmitters. A prominent example is the suppression of substance P release from primary sensory neurons, both within the spinal cord and from their peripheral terminals within injured tissue. At the postsynaptic membrane, opioids produce hyperpolarization by opening K$^+$ channels, thereby preventing excitation or propagation of action potentials in second-order projection neurons. In addition, opioids inhibit sensory neuron-specific tetrodotoxin-resistant Na$^+$ channels, TRPV1 channels, and excitatory postsynaptic currents evoked by glutamate receptors (e.g., NMDA) in the spinal cord. The result is decreased transmission of nociceptive stimuli at all levels of the neuraxis and profoundly reduced perception of pain. Endogenous opioid receptor ligands are derived from the precursors proopiomelanocortin (encoding β-endorphin), proenkephalin (encoding Met-enkephalin and Leu-enkephalin), and prodynorphin (encoding dynorphins). These peptides contain the common Tyr-Gly-Gly-Phe-Met/Leu sequence at their amino terminals, known as the opioid motif. β-Endorphin and the enkephalins are potent antinociceptive agents acting at μ− and δ−receptors. Dynorphins can elicit both pro- and antinociceptive effects via NMDA receptors and κ−opioid receptors, respectively. A fourth group of tetrapeptides (endomorphins) with yet unknown precursors do not contain the pan-opioid motif but bind to μ−receptors with high selectivity. Opioid peptides and receptors are expressed throughout the central and peripheral nervous system, in neuroendocrine tissues, and in immune cells.[9,62] Extracellular opioid peptides are susceptible to rapid enzymatic inactivation by aminopeptidase N and neutral endopeptidase. Both peptidases are expressed in the central nervous system, peripheral nerves, and leukocytes and, among opioids, enkephalins are considered their preferred substrates. Preventing the extracellular degradation of endogenous opioid peptides by peptidase inhibitors, both in central and peripheral compartments, has been shown to produce potent analgesic effects in many animal models and in some small human trials.[63,64]

The commonly available opioid drugs (morphine, codeine, methadone, fentanyl and its derivatives) are μ−agonists. Naloxone is a nonselective antagonist at all three receptors. Partial agonists must occupy a greater fraction of the available pool of functional receptors than full agonists to induce a response of equivalent magnitude. Mixed agonist/antagonists (buprenorphine, butorphanol, nalbuphine, pentazocine) may act as agonists at low doses and as antagonists (at the same or a different receptor type) at higher doses. Such compounds typically exhibit ceiling effects for analgesia and they may elicit an acute withdrawal syndrome when administered together with a pure agonist. All three receptors (μ, δ, κ) mediate analgesia but differing side effects. μ-Receptors mediate respiratory depression, sedation, reward/euphoria, nausea, urinary retention, biliary spasm, and constipation. κ-Receptors mediate dysphoric, aversive, sedative, and diuretic effects. δ-Receptors mediate reward/euphoria, respiratory depression, convulsions,

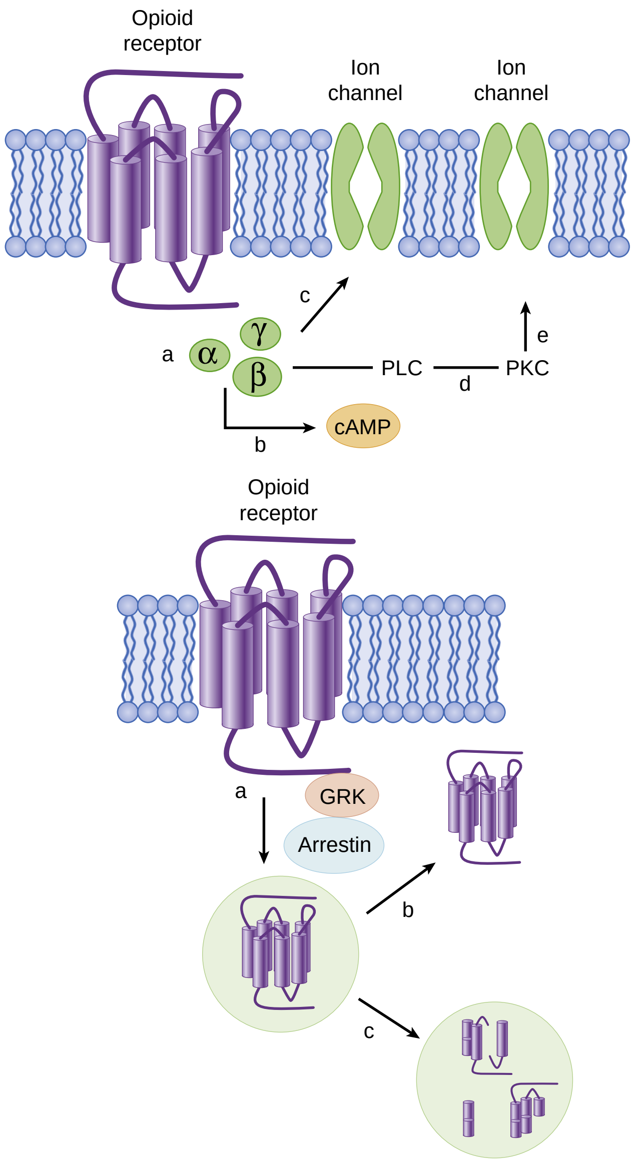


Fig. 51.3 Opioid receptor signaling and recycling. Upper panel: Opioid ligands induce a conformational change at the receptor which allows coupling of G proteins to the receptor. The heterotrimeric G-protein dissociates into active G_{α} and $G_{\beta\gamma}$ subunits (a) which can inhibit adenylyl cyclase and reduce *cAMP* (b), decrease the conductance of voltage-gated Ca^{++} channels, or open rectifying K^{+} channels (c). In addition, the phospholipase C/phosphokinase C pathways can be activated (d) to modulate Ca^{++} channel activity in the plasma membrane (e). Lower panel: Opioid receptor desensitization and trafficking is activated by G protein-coupled receptor kinases *(GRK)*. After arrestin binding, the receptor is in a desensitized state at the plasma membrane (a). Arrestin-bound receptors can then be internalized via a clathrin-dependent pathway, and either be recycled to the cell surface (b) or degraded in lysosomes (c). (Adapted from Zöllner C, Stein C. Opioids. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2007;(177):31–63.[204])

and constipation.[65-67] Immunosuppressive effects of opioids were frequently proposed in experimental studies but have not been verified in clinical outcome trials.[68,69]

Tolerance describes the phenomenon that the magnitude of a given drug effect decreases with repeated administration of the same dose, or that increasing doses are needed to produce the same effect. Tolerance is not synonymous with dependence. Physical dependence is defined as a state of adaptation that is manifested by a withdrawal syndrome elicited by abrupt cessation, rapid dose reduction, and/or administration of an antagonist.[70] All opioids produce clinically relevant physical dependence, even when administered only for a relatively short period of time.[71] All opioid effects (e.g., analgesia, nausea, respiratory depression, sedation, constipation) can be subject to tolerance development, albeit to different degrees. For example, tolerance to respiratory depression, sedation, and nausea often develops faster than to constipation or miosis.[66,67,72,73] Incomplete cross-tolerance between opioids or genetic differences may explain clinical observations that switching drugs ("opioid rotation") is occasionally useful in patients with inadequate pain relief or intolerable side effects.[74] Opioid-induced adaptations occur at multiple levels in the nervous and other organ systems, beginning with direct modulation of opioid receptor signaling and extending to complex neuronal networks including learned behavior. Proposed mechanisms involved in pharmacodynamic tolerance include opioid receptor-G-protein uncoupling, decreased receptor internalization/recycling, and increased sensitivity of the NMDA receptor (see Fig. 51.3*b*).[61] In addition, pharmacokinetic (e.g., altered distribution or metabolism of the opioid) and learned tolerance (e.g., compensatory skills developed during mild intoxication) as well as increased nociceptive stimulation by tumor growth, inflammation, or neuroma formation are possible reasons for increased dose requirements.[72,75] There is a lack of carefully controlled studies that unequivocally demonstrate pharmacodynamic tolerance to opioid analgesia (i.e., reduction of clinical pain) in patients.[76,77]

There is an ongoing debate whether opioids may paradoxically induce hyperalgesia. However, many studies have, in fact, shown withdrawal-induced hyperalgesia, a well-known phenomenon following the abrupt cessation of opioids.[78-80] At high doses, occasionally encountered in extreme cancer pain, singular cases of allodynia have been observed and attributed to neuroexcitatory effects of opioid metabolites.[81] There is no conclusive evidence that hyperalgesia occurs during the perioperative or chronic administration of regular opioid doses in patients.[77,78,82,83]

Opioids are effective in the periphery (e.g., topical or intraarticular administration, particularly in inflamed tissue), at the neuraxis (intrathecal, epidural, or intracerebroventricular administration), and systemically (intravenous, oral, subcutaneous, sublingual, or transdermal administration).[18] The clinical choice of a particular compound or its formulation is based on pharmacokinetic considerations (route of administration, desired onset or duration, lipophilicity) and on side effects associated with the respective route of drug delivery.[18] Dosages are dependent on patient characteristics, type of pain, and route of administration. Systemically and spinally administered opioids can produce similar side effects, depending on dosage and rostral/systemic redistribution. For intrathecal application lipophilic drugs are preferred because they are trapped in the spinal cord and less likely to migrate to the brain within the cerebrospinal fluid. Adverse side effects can be minimized by careful dose titration and close patient monitoring, or can be treated by co-medication (antiemetics, laxatives) or opioid receptor antagonists (e.g., naloxone). No significant side effects have been reported for the peripheral (e.g., topical) application of small, systemically inactive doses of opioids.

Opioids are considered the most effective analgesics for severe acute (e.g., postoperative) and cancer-related chronic pain. However, the long-term use of opioids in chronic noncancer (e.g., neuropathic, musculoskeletal, abdominal) pain is highly controversial. Randomized controlled trials (RCTs) have only been conducted for a maximum period of 3 months. In meta-analyses, the reduction of pain scores was clinically insignificant and epidemiological data suggest that quality of life or functional capacity are not improved.[84-86] A recent meta-analysis of RCTs of patients with chronic noncancer pain, evidence from high-quality studies showed that opioid use was associated with statistically significant but small improvements in pain and physical functioning, and increased risk of vomiting compared with placebo.[86a] In this meta-analysis comparisons of opioids with nonopioid alternatives suggested that the benefit for pain and functioning may be similar, although the evidence was from studies of only low to moderate quality. Adverse side effects (nausea, sedation, constipation, dizziness, etc.) and lack of analgesic efficacy led to the dropout of high numbers of subjects, both in RCTs and in uncontrolled observational studies beyond 3 months.[86] Psychosocial outcome variables were rarely investigated and showed only modest improvement. Thus, consistent with the multifactorial nature of chronic pain, opioids alone probably cannot produce an analgesic response. Clearly, the entire patient must be evaluated, not just the pain.[87] The target of intervention is not only the source of nociception (if at all identifiable) but suffering, dysfunction, psychosocial factors, and dependence on the healthcare system. In addition, addiction has been reported in high numbers of patients treated with opioids for chronic pain, and overdoses, death rates, and abuse of prescription opioids have become a public health problem.[84,88] Thus, the use of opioids as a sole treatment modality in chronic nonmalignant pain is strongly discouraged.[47]

NONSTEROIDAL ANTIINFLAMMATORY DRUGS AND ANTIPYRETIC ANALGESICS

NSAIDs and antipyretic analgesics (e.g., acetaminophen, phenazones) inhibit COX, the enzymes that catalyze the transformation of arachidonic acid (a ubiquitous cell component generated from phospholipids) to prostaglandins and thromboxanes.[89] Two isoforms, COX-1 and COX-2, are constitutively expressed in peripheral tissues and in the central nervous system. In response to injury and inflammatory mediators (e.g., cytokines, growth factors) both isoforms can be upregulated, resulting in increased concentrations of prostanoids. In the periphery, prostanoids (mainly PGE_2) sensitize nociceptors by phosphorylation of ion channels (e.g., Na^+, TRPV1) via EP receptor activation. As a result, nociceptors become more responsive to noxious mechanical (e.g., pressure, hollow organ distension), chemical (e.g., acidosis, bradykinin, neurotrophic factors), or thermal stimuli. In the spinal cord PGE_2 blocks glycinergic neuronal inhibition, enhances excitatory amino acid release, and depolarizes ascending neurons. These mechanisms facilitate the generation of impulses within nociceptors and their transmission through the spinal cord to higher brain areas. By blocking COX, prostanoid formation diminishes. Subsequently, nociceptors become less responsive to noxious stimuli and spinal neurotransmission is attenuated.

Less severe pain states (e.g., early arthritis, headache) are commonly treated with nonselective NSAIDs (e.g., aspirin, ibuprofen, indomethacin, diclofenac) or antipyretic analgesics (e.g., acetaminophen), mostly used orally. Some drugs are available for parenteral, rectal, or topical application. Over-the-counter availability and self-medication have led to frequent abuse and toxicity.[89] Adverse side effects are attributed to COX-1-induced blockade of thromboxane production and impairment of platelet function (gastrointestinal and other bleeding disorders), decrease of tissue-protective prostanoids (gastrointestinal ulcers, perforation), decrease of renal vasodilatory prostanoids (nephrotoxicity), and to formation of highly reactive metabolites (acetaminophen hepatotoxicity). The development of selective COX-2 inhibitors was driven by the assumption that COX-2 expression is selectively induced in inflamed tissue and that the constitutive tissue-protective COX-1 would be spared. It has now become clear that COX-2 expression is constitutive in many tissues (e.g., gastrointestinal epithelium, vascular endothelium, spinal cord) and COX-2 inhibition may exacerbate inflammation, impair ulcer healing, and decrease formation of vasoprotective prostacyclin. COX inhibitors confer an increased risk of thrombosis, myocardial infarction, renal impairment, hypertension, stroke, and liver toxicity, and can cause rare anaphylactic reactions.

NSAIDs and antipyretic analgesics play a controversial role in chronic pain. For example, their uncontrolled use may result in medication overuse headache.[90] In chronic degenerative musculoskeletal pain, their use is disputed[91] and they are not indicated in neuropathic pain.[92]

SEROTONERGIC DRUGS

Serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine; 5-HT) is a monoamine neurotransmitter found in the sympathetic nervous system, in the gastrointestinal tract, and in platelets. It acts on 5-HT receptors expressed at all levels of the neuraxis and on blood vessels. Within the dorsal horn of the spinal cord serotoninergic neurons contribute to endogenous pain inhibition. With the exception of 5-HT_3 (a ligand-gated ion channel), 5-HT receptors are G-protein coupled receptors. 5-$HT_{1B/1D}$ agonists (triptans) have been studied extensively and are effective against neurovascular (migraine, cluster) headaches. Migraine is thought to be related to the release of neuropeptides (e.g., calcitonin gene-related peptide) from trigeminal sensory neurons innervating meningeal and intracranial blood vessels. This leads to vasodilation, an inflammatory reaction, and subsequent pain. Triptans inhibit neurogenic inflammation via 5-HT_{1D} receptors on trigeminal afferents, with possible additional sites of action on thalamic neurons and in the periaqueductal grey. The activation of vascular 5-HT_{1B} receptors constricts meningeal (and coronary) vessels. The latter effects have stimulated a search for alternative approaches such as targeting calcitonin-gene-related-peptide or highly selective 5HT_{1F} agonists.[93] Triptans can be applied orally, subcutaneously, or transnasally and have been used in the treatment of migraine. All triptans narrow coronary arteries via 5-HT_{1B} receptors at clinical doses and should not be administered to patients with risk factors or coronary, cerebrovascular, or peripheral vascular disease. Many compounds have the potential for significant drug-drug interactions.[93]

ANTIEPILEPTIC DRUGS

Antiepileptics are used in neuropathic pain resulting from lesions to the peripheral (e.g., diabetes, herpes) or central (e.g., stroke) nervous system and for migraine prophylaxis. Neuropathic syndromes have been attributed to ectopic activity in sensitized nociceptors from regenerating nerve sprouts, recruitment of previously "silent" nociceptors, or spontaneous neuronal activity (or any combination of these processes). These events may result in sensitization of primary afferents and subsequent sensitization of second- and third-order ascending neurons. Among the best studied mechanisms are the increased expression and trafficking of ion channels (e.g., Na^+, Ca^{++}, TRP) and increased activity at glutamate (NMDA) receptor sites. The mechanisms of action of antiepileptics include neuronal membrane stabilization by blockage of pathologically active voltage-sensitive Na^+ channels (e.g., carbamazepine, lamotrigine, topiramate), blockage of voltage-dependent Ca^{++} channels (gabapentin, pregabalin), inhibition of presynaptic release of excitatory neurotransmitters (gabapentin, lamotrigine), and enhancing the activity of GABA receptors (topiramate). The most common adverse effects are impaired mental (somnolence, dizziness, cognitive impairment, fatigue) and motor (ataxia) function, which limit clinical use, particularly in elderly patients. Other serious side effects have been reported, including hepatotoxicity, thrombocytopenia, dermatologic and hematologic reactions.[94] Specific indications include trigeminal neuralgia for sodium- and diabetic neuropathy for calcium-channel blockers.[95]

ANTIDEPRESSANTS

Antidepressants are used in the treatment of neuropathic pain and headache. They are divided into nonselective noradrenaline/5-HT reuptake inhibitors (amitriptyline, imipramine, clomipramine, duloxetine, venlafaxine), preferential noradrenaline reuptake inhibitors (desipramine), and selective 5-HT reuptake inhibitors (citalopram, fluoxetine). The reuptake block leads to a stimulation of endogenous monoaminergic pain inhibition in the spinal cord and brain. Tricyclic antidepressants also have NMDA receptor antagonist, endogenous opioid enhancing, Na^+ channel blocking, and K^+ channel opening effects, which can suppress peripheral and central sensitization. Block of cardiac ion channels by tricyclics can lead to arrhythmias. In patients with ischemic heart disease, there may be increased risk of sudden arrhythmia, and in patients with recent myocardial infarction, arrhythmia, or cardiac decompensation tricyclics should not be used at all. Tricyclics also block histamine, cholinergic, and adrenergic receptor sites. Adverse events of antidepressants include sedation, nausea, dry mouth, constipation, dizziness, sleep disturbance, and blurred vision.[94]

TOPICAL ANALGESICS

The topical application of various analgesics is an area of considerable interest because many chronic pain syndromes depend on the peripheral activation of primary afferent neurons.[3,4] The localized administration can potentially optimize drug concentrations at the site of pain generation, while avoiding high plasma levels, systemic side effects, drug interactions, and the need to titrate doses into a therapeutic range. Studies have demonstrated effectiveness for topical NSAIDs, tricyclic antidepressants, capsaicin, local anesthetics, and opioids.[4,94,96,97]

Topical NSAIDs are typical over-the-counter medications, widely advertised and used for acute and chronic pain. A large number of formulations (cream, gel, ointment) are commercially available. Meta-analyses concluded that topical NSAIDs have limited efficacy in chronic musculoskeletal pain.[96] Topically applied capsaicin interacts with nociceptive neurons via the TRPV1 receptor. It causes an initial activation of these neurons with release of substance P. This is perceived as a burning or itching sensation with a flare response and occurs in a high number of patients.[96] After repeated application desensitization occurs, probably due to depleting sensory neurons of substance P. Another potential mechanism is a direct toxic effect on small-diameter sensory nerve fibers. Topical capsaicin was shown to provide pain relief in postherpetic neuralgia, postmastectomy syndrome, osteoarthritis, and a variety of neuropathic syndromes.[98]

Topical formulations of local anesthetics block Na^+ channels in primary afferent neurons. Blockade of Na^+ channels reduces impulse generation both in normal and in damaged sensory neurons. Such neurons exhibit spontaneous and ectopic firing, possibly contributing to certain conditions of chronic neuropathic pain. Under these conditions the altered expression, distribution, and function of ion channels along axons is associated with increased sensitivity to local anesthetics. Thus, pain relief may be achieved with local anesthetic concentrations lower than those that totally block impulse conduction.[99] Some studies using lidocaine patches and gels showed reduction of allodynia in postherpetic neuralgia and other types of neuropathic pain.[96]

Topically applied or locally injected opioids produce analgesia by activating opioid receptors on primary afferent neurons. This leads to inhibition of Ca^{++}, Na^+, and TRPV1 currents, which are activated by inflammatory agents.[9,62] Subsequently the excitability of nociceptors, the propagation of action potentials, and the release of proinflammatory neuropeptides (substance P) from sensory nerve endings are inhibited. All of these mechanisms result in analgesia or antiinflammatory effects (or both).[9,100] Other mechanisms accounting for the particular efficacy of peripheral opioids in pain associated with inflammation include upregulation[101] and accelerated centrifugal transport of opioid receptors in sensory neurons,[102] enhanced G-protein coupling of peripheral opioid receptors,[103] and disruption of the perineural barrier facilitating access of opioid agonists to their receptors.[104,105] Consistently, the perineural application of opioids along uninjured nerves (e.g., axillary plexus) does not reliably produce analgesic effects.[106] In addition, the production and secretion of endogenous opioid peptides from immune cells within injured tissue[10,107] appears to produce additive/synergistic interactions[108] rather than tolerance at peripheral opioid receptors.[109] Peripheral opioid administration is regularly used and well documented in the case of perioperative intraarticular morphine.[110-111] Intraarticular morphine also produces analgesia in chronic rheumatoid and osteoarthritis where its effect was shown to be similarly potent to standard intraarticular steroids and long lasting, possibly due to morphine's antiinflammatory activity.[9,100] In numerous small studies, locally applied opioids (e.g., in gels) have shown analgesic efficacy in the treatment of skin ulcers, cystitis, cancer-related oral mucositis, corneal abrasion, and bone injury. No significant adverse effects have been reported.[97]

OTHER ANALGESICS AND ADJUVANTS

Local anesthetics have been used orally, intravenously, in trigger-point injections, and in regional anesthetic techniques for selected chronic pain syndromes (see later under "Interventional Methods Used in Chronic Pain" and other chapters on "local anesthetics"). Their systemic application exhibited mixed success in various neuropathies. Meta-analyses indicate that local anesthetics produce moderate analgesic effects of questionable clinical significance in neuropathic pain.[94] Severe side effects including arrhythmias, dizziness, nausea, and fatigue limit the systemic application of local anesthetics.

α_2-Adrenergic receptors are G-protein coupled and, similar to opioids, α_2-agonists (clonidine) lead to opening of K^+ channels, inhibition of presynaptic Ca^{++} channels, and inhibition of adenylyl cyclase. Thus, like opioids, α_2-agonists reduce neurotransmitter release and decrease postsynaptic transmission, resulting in an overall inhibitory effect.[112] Clonidine may exert analgesic effects in some neuropathic pain syndromes.[94] However, its systemic use is limited by sedation, hypotension, and bradycardia.

Cannabinoids have been studied extensively and are currently in the focus of public interest. Animal and in vitro models have shown that derivatives of tetrahydrocannabinol produce antinociceptive effects and that cannabinoid receptors and their endogenous ligands are expressed in pain-processing areas of the brain, spinal cord, and periphery. Peripheral cannabinoid receptors likely play a prominent role in pain inhibition.[9] Meta-analyses of human studies concluded that the analgesic effects of cannabinoids are modest, not superior to those of other analgesics, and of questionable clinical significance. Psychotropic side effects, sedation, dizziness, cognitive impairment, nausea, dry mouth, and motor deficits are limiting factors in clinical practice.[113,114]

Drugs reducing muscle spasm (e.g., benzodiazepines, baclofen) are often used in musculoskeletal pain but the available evidence does not indicate lasting beneficial effects while drowsiness and dizziness are frequently encountered.[115] Baclofen activates GABA-B receptors presynaptically and postsynaptically, leading to a decrease in excitatory and an increase in inhibitory neurotransmission. In some reports it was found to exhibit analgesic effects in trigeminal neuralgia and central neuropathic pain. The most common side effects are drowsiness, dizziness, and gastrointestinal distress.[116] Botulinum toxin inhibits acetylcholine release at the neuromuscular junction and may alleviate muscle spasticity. The use of botulinum toxin injections has produced inconsistent results in headaches and was not effective in myofascial trigger points, orofacial, or neck pain.[94,117,118] Side effects include pain and erythema at the injection site and unintended paralysis of adjacent muscles.

The synthetic peptide ziconotide blocks N-type voltage-sensitive Ca^{++} channels and thereby inhibits release of excitatory neurotransmitters from central terminals of primary afferent neurons in the spinal cord. It has been approved for intrathecal application but produces substantial side effects (dizziness, confusion, abnormal gait, memory impairment, nystagmus, hallucinations, vertigo, delirium, apnea, hypotension) and, thus, is suitable for only a small subset of patients with otherwise intractable pain.[119] Under the assumption of antiinflammatory activity, steroid injections are frequently used epidurally or perineurally, albeit without convincing evidence for effectiveness (see the later section, "Therapeutic Nerve Blocks").

Antiemetics are used to treat nausea, a frequent side effect of analgesics (particularly opioids) and a frequent complaint in cancer patients. Recommendations for the treatment of postoperative nausea and vomiting cannot readily be extrapolated to the chronic pain patient. For example, in cancer patients, etiologies other than opioids have to be considered, such as radiotherapy and chemotherapy, uremia, hypercalcemia, bowel obstruction, and increased intracranial pressure. In addition, pain itself, as well as anxiety, can cause nausea. Management guidelines for the treatment of nausea and vomiting are available and the selection of antiemetics should be mechanism-based.[67,120] The medullary chemoreceptor trigger zone, gastrointestinal stimulation or failure, vestibular and cortical mechanisms, as well as alterations of taste and smell, may contribute to nausea and vomiting, particularly in cancer patients. Most recommendations for the choice of antiemetic medication include gastrointestinal prokinetics (metoclopramide), phenothiazines (e.g., levomepromazine), dopamine receptor antagonists (e.g., haloperidol), serotonin antagonists (e.g., ondansetron), and antihistamines (e.g., cyclizine). In addition, the use of dexamethasone (unknown mechanism), anticholinergics (e.g., scopolamine), and neurokinin-1 receptor antagonists has been reported. Combinations of antiemetics with different modes of action can be used. Many of these drugs cause undesirable side effects by themselves (e.g., sedation, drowsiness, confusion, extrapyramidal symptoms).[67,120] The efficacy of cannabinoids and benzodiazepines is considered comparatively low and they are not recommended as first-line treatment.[120,121]

Laxatives are indicated when bowel movements are less than three per week, and are associated with difficulty or discomfort. Risk factors for constipation include opioid medication, older age, advanced cancer, hypokalemia, immobilization, as well as therapy with tricyclics, phenothiazines, anticonvulsants, diuretics, and iron supplements. Opioid-related constipation is mediated through intestinal and (partially) through central μ-receptors.[66] It is the most commonly occurring side effect of opioid medication in cancer patients and frequently does not exhibit tolerance. Ample fluid intake, fiber-rich nutrition, and mobilization are nonpharmacologic approaches to prophylaxis, but recommendations are mostly derived from anecdotal evidence.[122] Laxatives include bulk forming, osmotic, and hyperosmolar agents; substances for colonic lavage; prokinetic drugs; and opioid antagonists. Recommendations usually include lactulose, senna, or polyethylene glycol as a first choice.[67] However, lactulose should be avoided in patients with impaired fluid intake, such as the elderly and those with advanced cancer. If insufficient, the drugs of first choice may be combined with paraffin or anthraglycosides (bisacodyl). Rectal sorbitol or contrast medium are the choices for the next more intensified step. Prokinetic drugs, such as metoclopramide, are sometimes added for refractory constipation. A possible alternative in opioid-related constipation are opioid antagonists. To avoid central effects reducing analgesia or producing withdrawal, oral naloxone and the peripherally restricted antagonists methylnaltrexone and alvimopan were developed. Their use in clinical practice is limited by relatively low response rates, adverse effects, and high costs.[123]

DEVELOPMENT OF NOVEL ANALGESICS

Areas of intense research and examples emerging as potential drug targets include calcitonin-gene-related-peptide, Na^+ channels expressed in peripheral nociceptive neurons ($Na_v1.8$, $Na_v1.7$), voltage-gated Ca^{++} channels (e.g., $Ca_v2.2$), antibodies against nerve growth factor, the capsaicin receptor TRPV1, and the P2X receptors.[21] Increasing attention is paid to augmentation of endogenous opioid and cannabinoid mechanisms, to (biased) opioid receptor signaling, and to the activation of peripheral opioid receptors to avoid central side effects.[11,62-64,124,125] However, failures in clinical phases of analgesic drug development are common and have been attributed to inappropriate animal models or nociceptive tests, species differences, publication bias, lack of mechanistic understanding, shortcomings in experimental design, randomization, blinding, and statistical analysis.[21]

Interventional Methods used for Chronic Pain

The popularity of interventional methods has decreased over time. While early pain therapists (e.g., Leriche) were generally using "blocks" to treat pain, the biopsychosocial concept of chronic pain has led to a much more cautious and judicial use of such techniques (see earlier section, "Interdisciplinary Management of Chronic Pain"), particularly since most of these are not evidence-based. Block therapy alone is usually not curative, but it can facilitate participation in rehabilitation and therefore does have a role in the management of chronic pain. Regardless which procedure is considered, a consensus decision on its use has to be reached within the interdisciplinary team.

DIAGNOSTIC NERVE BLOCKS

Neural blockade is thought to be a useful tool to better understand the mechanisms underlying pain in an individual patient and to provide a prognosis for planned neuroablative procedures (particularly in cancer pain). Differential blockade aims to selectively block either single peripheral nerves to identify an anatomical pain source, or to selectively block only one type of nerve fiber (autonomic vs. somatic).[126] However, the clinical usefulness of these procedures could not be confirmed.[127,128] In particular, the validity of diagnostic nerve blocks is limited by the complexity of factors determining pain perception (see above section, "Biopsychosocial Concept of Pain" and "Interdisciplinary Management of Chronic Pain"). Furthermore, the assumption that local anesthetics can selectively produce conduction block of only one fiber type in a nerve is probably false.[126] Nevertheless, experienced and observant clinicians have found that such procedures may occasionally provide information that is helpful in guiding subsequent therapy, although systematic reviews had methodological limitations.[129,130]

THERAPEUTIC NERVE BLOCKS

Cancer Pain

Therapeutic nerve blocks are used only in a minority of patients with cancer-related pain. Here, interventional treatment represents the fourth step in the World Health Organization analgesic ladder.[131] About 90% to 95% of patients usually obtain adequate pain relief from pharmacologic management.[132] A comprehensive biopsychosocial approach to pain management—as in chronic noncancer pain—and carefully balancing risks against benefits in individual patients are prerequisites for successful use of interventional techniques.[133] Therapeutic nerve blocks extend the treatment range when conservative methods fail to achieve tolerable pain or side-effect levels (or both). For example, neuropathic, incidental, or breakthrough pain are sometimes poorly controlled by systemic analgesics and may be indications for invasive therapy. Well evaluated interventional techniques like celiac plexus block, hypogastric plexus block, and saddle blocks should not be withheld from cancer patients in a palliative symptom control context.[134]

Sites for neurolyses are intercostal nerves (e.g., in rib metastasis), the superior hypogastric ganglion, the ganglion impar, and the lumbar sympathetic ganglia (e.g., for pelvic tumors). In perineal pain due to local infiltration of rectum cancer, intrathecal neurolysis may be considered if bladder and sphincter function are not of concern.[134,135] An indication for thoracic intrathecal or epidural neurolysis might be advanced lung cancer.[136] As a neurolytic agent, alcohol may be preferred due to its perceived higher success rate and longer duration of pain relief (3-6 months) compared to phenol (2-3 months), although no studies directly comparing these two agents are available. The limited period of pain reduction and the limited possibility of repeat injections are reasons why neurolysis is mostly used in patients with short life expectancy.[137]

Non-Cancer-Associated Pain

Both the complexity of factors contributing to pain perception and perpetuation (see earlier in sections "Biopsychosocial Concept of Pain" and "Interdisciplinary Management of Chronic Pain") and the detrimental long-term effects of nerve destruction (neuropathic pain caused by spontaneous ectopic neuronal discharges, upregulation of neuronal ion channels, and excitatory amino acid receptors, see earlier in sections "Physiological Changes in Persistent Pain" and "Antiepileptic Drugs") caution against neuroablative procedures in the noncancer patient. Nonetheless, many practitioners advocate radiofrequency ablations or cryoneurolysis at facet joints, sacroiliac joints, and other destructive procedures. However, the IASP makes no conclusive recommendations due to the poor quality of available data.[138]

Nondestructive procedures include trigger point, epidural, perineural, and intraarticular injections of local anesthetics, or steroids (or both). Steroids are used under the assumption of antiinflammatory activity. For example, in chronic back or neck pain (the most common patient complaints), injections into facet (or zygapophyseal) joints or along the medial branch from the posterior ramus of the spinal nerve root are frequently performed, however, without convincing documented long-term results.[139,140] Similarly, injections into sacroiliac joints, trigger points, or occipital nerve blocks show no consistent long-lasting effects.[129,141,142] Epidural steroids are also used extensively for low back and neck pain,[143] but they provide questionable long-term pain relief in RCTs.[144] The same applies to lumbar transforaminal epidural steroid injections.[145] Thus, the described invasive procedures should be limited to acute pain states in patients without biopsychosocial risk factors for chronification of pain, and only as an element within a physical rehabilitation or multimodal treatment program.[146] Sympathetic nerve blocks with local anesthetics, often carried out as a series, such as in herpes zoster-associated pain and complex regional pain syndrome, are commonly used but evidence from RCTs is lacking.[147] Anecdotal reports have described sympathetic blocks for ischemic pain, such as in peripheral vascular or Raynaud disease.

CONTINUOUS CATHETER TECHNIQUES

Continuous drug delivery to the intrathecal or epidural space can be accomplished via programmable implanted pumps, implanted accessible reservoir systems, and tunneled exteriorized catheters. The principal benefit appears to be the reduction of systemic side effects. As with nerve blocks, the evidence of effectiveness of these approaches is stronger for cancer pain than for chronic nonmalignant pain.

Cancer Pain

Only a small minority of cancer patients require neuraxial (intrathecal, epidural) drug delivery due to intolerable side effects, but in patients refractory to systemic analgesics, such methods may be underused.[148,149] The preponderance of evidence supporting this mode of drug delivery is derived from nonrandomized, uncontrolled studies.[150,151] The advantage of the neuraxial technique is its ubiquitous availability in most anesthesia departments, but disadvantages are the chance of inhomogeneous distribution of the analgesics, possible systemic absorption, and limited duration of therapy due to local granuloma formation and technical failures.[151] Usually, morphine (1-15 mg, dependent on preceding systemic dosage) or hydromorphone are recommended as drugs of first choice for intrathecal catheter analgesia. For refractory pain, combinations with bupivacaine, clonidine, ziconotide, and other compounds have been used.[150]

Non-Cancer-Associated Pain

No RCTs are available, but a number of observational reports describe continuous catheter techniques for chronic noncancer pain.[151] Most of these studies used intrathecal morphine, and some hydromorphone, baclofen, or ziconotide in patients with chronic low back pain. On average, these patients exhibited increasing daily morphine doses over time, and a high incidence (up to 25%) of complications, such as catheter obstruction, catheter-tip granuloma formation, pruritus, urinary retention, and infection. Effectiveness of these techniques in relieving pain or improving function compared to placebo, natural history, or other treatments has not been shown[151] or is limited.[152]

STIMULATION TECHNIQUES

Stimulation techniques frequently used in pain management include acupuncture, spinal cord (or dorsal column) stimulation (SCS), and transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS). Acupuncture has been popular among patients for a long time and lately also within the medical community. Systematic reviews of sham-controlled studies in migraine prophylaxis and arthritic pain showed that using traditional Chinese concepts of meridians and specified classic points are as effective as the selection of acupuncture points at random.[153,154] There is inconclusive evidence that acupuncture may be of benefit in osteoarthritis[154,155] and chronic low back pain.[156-158] SCS has gained new interest with the introduction of the high-frequency technique,[159] but its superiority still has to be demonstrated.[160] So far SCS has not been validated by adequately powered and blinded RCTs in chronic pain.[161,162] Unblinded studies suggest that selected patients with complex regional pain syndrome or back pain, especially with failed back surgery syndrome, might benefit from SCS, but controlled trials are needed.[138,163]

Perioperative Management of Patients with Chronic Pain

CHARACTERISTICS OF CHRONIC PAIN PATIENTS IN THE PERIOPERATIVE PERIOD

In chronic pain patients, central sensitization or reduced endogenous inhibition may result in increased and prolonged pain after surgery.[164] Altered opioid sensitivity due to long-term exposure to opioid medications also has to be considered.[165] In addition, chronic pain patients may exhibit higher preoperative expectation of pain, anxiety, depression, or hypervigilance.[166,167] It may be difficult to distinguish normal from maladaptive anxiety, but patients with cancer pain are more likely to be anxious than cancer patients without pain. In addition, the chronic pain patient, including the patient with cancer, is not as confident of recovery as other patients with chronic diseases.[168] Thus, difficult perioperative pain control and, possibly, an increased risk of chronic pain development after surgery have to be expected. However, chronic pain patients, with or without long-term opioid medication, opioid abuse or misuse, require and must receive adequate pain control.

The preanesthetic visit should therefore include questions regarding chronic pain and regular use of analgesics and adjuvant medication (also see Chapter 31). Although a number of characteristics including increased opioid

BOX 51.1 **Risk Factors in the Perioperative Management of the Chronic Pain Patient**

- Conventional perioperative analgesia regimens do not meet the needs of the chronic pain patient.
- Unrelieved postoperative pain due to undermedication may provoke withdrawal.
- Patients tend to underreport their medication.
- With uncontrolled anxiety or fear of pain, patients tend to overestimate the effect of painful stimuli.
- Epidural and intravenous (IV) opioid (including patient-controlled analgesia [PCA]) requirements can be 2-4 times higher in opioid-consuming than in opioid-naïve patients.
- Expect prolonged recovery and need for postoperative analgesia.
- Anxiety and insufficient coping result in poor compliance with analgesic strategies.
- Individual variations in response to opioids may necessitate selection of the optimal drug and dosing by sequential trials.
- Individual titration of doses to find the optimal balance between analgesia and adverse effects is required.
- Adjuvant medication may interfere with anesthesia and postoperative analgesia.

Adapted from Kopf A, Banzhaf A, Stein C. Perioperative management of the chronic pain patient. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;19:59–76.[202]

demand, underreporting of pain, and noncompliance are known, only few specific recommendations are available, such as adequate increase of opioid dose for analgesia, continuation of preoperative analgesics to prevent withdrawal, and intensive education to strengthen the patient's coping potential. No differences between specific techniques for postoperative analgesia (e.g., systemic, patient-controlled, or regional analgesia) have been demonstrated so far. Furthermore, preoperative intensity of pain alone, independent of the use of analgesics, correlates positively with postoperative pain.[169] Chronic pain patients often suffer from prolonged inactivity or neurologic deficits (or both), which increase the risk for adverse events during the perioperative period. Some key issues are summarized in Box 51.1.

CHRONIC USE OF ANALGESICS AND ADJUVANT DRUGS

Chronic pain patients are often pretreated with opioids, COX inhibitors, antidepressants, or anticonvulsants (or combinations). Tolerance, drug interactions, and side effects may occur. In addition, inappropriate or excessive medication is commonly observed.[47,170] Chronic pain patients tend to underestimate and underreport their medication use.[171] Thus, undertreatment in the perioperative period may be unnoticed and may induce a neuroexcitatory withdrawal syndrome and associated cardiopulmonary strain.

Chronic opioid medication has been discussed thoroughly in the literature (see earlier in section "Opioids"). Together with aggressive marketing, this has gradually led to decreasing reservations among practitioners toward the use of these drugs. As a result, opioids are used more frequently in both cancer and noncancer pain patients and the majority of the latter are now prescribed opioid medication.[47,170] While this seems justified in cancer pain, opioids are usually not indicated in chronic noncancer pain (see earlier section "Opioids"). Nevertheless, anesthesia providers are increasingly confronted with patients receiving long-term opioid treatment. Such pretreatment can result in severalfold increased and prolonged requirement for systemic and epidural analgesics in the perioperative period compared to opioid-naïve patients.[73,172-174] Chronic pain patients with prior opioid consumption may also exhibit higher postoperative pain scores.[174] The increased postoperative analgesic demands may be due to lower pain thresholds or to a need for higher drug concentrations. In addition, opioid requirements can be influenced by gender, genetic predisposition, age, type of surgery, and preoperative pain levels.[74,169] On the other hand, opioid-related side effects (e.g., nausea and pruritus) may be less dominant. Physicians and nurses may overestimate tolerance, addiction, and sedation, but underestimate dependence. A paramount concern is the maintenance of adequate perioperative opioid dosing to prevent withdrawal (see Box 51.1).[173,174]

COX inhibitors are the most commonly used nonopioid analgesics. They produce serious side effects in the gastrointestinal tract, kidneys, cardiovascular and coagulation systems (see earlier section "Drugs Used for Chronic Pain"). Major concerns for the anesthesiologist are coagulation disturbances, renal impairment, and the increased risk for hematoma formation associated with spinal and epidural anesthesia.

Antiepileptic drugs can interfere with anesthesia in different ways. Sedation produced by anticonvulsant drugs may have additive effects with anesthetics, whereas drug-induced enzyme induction could alter responses to or contribute to the organ toxicity of anesthetics. Gabapentin has a favorable side effect profile, and its relative absence of drug interactions allow continuation and rapid titration in the perioperative period.[175] Phenytoin and carbamazepine accelerate recovery from nondepolarizing muscle relaxants, but the mechanism is unclear. Preoperative exclusion of toxic serum levels of phenytoin is recommended to reduce the risk of atrioventricular conduction block. States of disorientation, nystagmus, ataxia, and diplopia may be manifestations of excessive plasma concentrations. Carbamazepine may produce sedation, ataxia, nausea, and (rarely) bone marrow depression or hepatorenal dysfunction. Plasma sodium levels have to be monitored perioperatively to avoid hyponatremia. Oral valproic acid is commonly used for prophylaxis of migraine and intravenous valproic acid may be used to control episodic headaches.[176] It may inhibit activity of hepatic microsomal enzymes and interfere with platelet aggregation.[177] Antiepileptics should never be discontinued abruptly to avoid central nervous system hyperexcitability. Stable dosages need to be maintained throughout the perioperative period.

Antidepressants are frequently used for neuropathic pain and for associated depression. Adverse effects are numerous and include sedation, anticholinergic effects, and cardiovascular changes. Electrocardiographic changes, such as prolongation of PR-interval and widening of the QRS complex, can occur but previous suggestions of increased risk of perioperative cardiac dysrhythmias have not been substantiated in the absence of drug overdose.[178] Therefore, antidepressants need not be discontinued before anesthesia, but increased anesthetic requirements may be expected due to enzyme induction. Postoperatively, the likelihood of delirium and confusion may be increased as a result of additive anticholinergic effects. Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and atypical antidepressants like mirtazapin or venlafaxine are less likely to interfere with anesthesia.

Ketamine is a mixed opioid agonist/NMDA antagonist that can produce analgesia at subanesthetic doses in selected patients with neuropathic pain.[179,180] Very rarely, patients taking oral ketamine medication on a chronic basis will be encountered. In these cases, perioperative administration of ketamine should be discontinued because correct conversion from oral to intravenous ketamine is difficult.[181] Within analgesic dose ranges, the risk of a withdrawal syndrome is small.[180,182]

Benzodiazepines are not analgesic and are rarely used in chronic pain, with the exception of palliative care situations.[115,183] Nevertheless, since chronic pain is a predictor of increased benzodiazepine use, this should be explored in the preanesthesia visit.[184] Side effects relevant to anesthesia include sedation and skeletal muscle weakness. Due to their long half-life, delayed withdrawal should be anticipated and avoided by maintaining stable perioperative dosage. Neuroleptics are also inappropriate, but sometimes used in chronic pain.[185] In the perioperative period, patients treated with antipsychotic drugs can develop a neuroleptic malignant syndrome. Hyperthermia, hypertonicity of skeletal muscles, fluctuating levels of consciousness, and autonomic nervous system instability are typical symptoms.

DEPENDENCE, ADDICTION, AND PSEUDOADDICTION

Physical dependence is defined as a state of adaptation that is manifested by a drug class-specific withdrawal syndrome that can be elicited by abrupt cessation, rapid dose reduction, decreasing blood level of the drug, or administration of an antagonist.[186] Dependence is not synonymous with tolerance (see earlier section “Opioids”). All opioids, benzodiazepines, and anticonvulsants produce clinically relevant physical dependence when administered for a prolonged period of time, but sometimes physical dependence can develop within hours of agonist exposure.[71] Thus, all patients with continuous preoperative opioid intake should be considered at risk for withdrawal syndrome if adequate substitution of opioids in the perioperative period is withheld. Opioid and benzodiazepine withdrawal syndromes, especially tachycardia and hypertension, may be detrimental for the high-risk cardiac patient. Rapid withdrawal from anticonvulsant drugs may trigger seizures, anxiety, and depression.

Addiction is a behavioral syndrome characterized by evidence of psychological dependence (craving), uncontrolled/compulsive drug use despite harmful side effects, and other drug-related aberrant behavior (e.g., altering prescriptions, manipulating healthcare providers, drug hoarding or sales, unsanctioned dose escalation).[186,187] The prevalence of opioid addiction is up to 34% in patients with chronic nonmalignant pain and about 8% in patients with cancer pain.[187,188] Special considerations in the management of the drug-addicted patient are discussed elsewhere.[173,174,189]

MANAGEMENT AND PRACTICAL RECOMMENDATIONS

Perioperative management has to address the risk of opioid withdrawal, the altered pain sensitivity, and the psychological alterations typical in the chronic pain patient population. Most of the following recommendations have to be considered as “expert views” only.[174,190,191]

Preoperative Evaluation (also see Chapter 31)

Preanesthesia evaluation is necessary to educate patients, to organize resources for preoperative improvement of the patient’s physical function, to choose optimal anesthetic techniques, and to formulate plans for postoperative recovery, including perioperative pain management.[173] Misconceptions about the surgical procedure, the role of the anesthesiologist in perioperative care, and postoperative pain treatment are common among patients.[192] A thorough history must be obtained to identify all preoperative medications, including opioids, other analgesics and adjuvants, as well as signs of psychiatric comorbidity and aberrant drug-related behavior. Patients with spinal cord stimulators should be instructed to turn off the device. Screening tools and thorough education of the patient are recommended.[167,193] Consultation of a pain specialist should always be considered. Pertinent issues and practical recommendations are summarized in Boxes 51.1 and 51.2.

Perioperative Management

To avoid opioid withdrawal, the preoperative systemic dosage should be continued throughout the perioperative period and mixed agonist/antagonists (buprenorphine, nalbuphine) must be avoided. If a neuraxial catheter with opioid medication is used, the flow and concentration of the opioid should be continued throughout the perioperative period as background analgesia.[194] For minor and medium surgery, oral slow-release opioid medication may be continued at its regular intervals. For major surgery with postoperative restriction of enteral intake, oral opioids should be discontinued and replaced by equivalent doses of intravenous opioids, which have to be continued for the entire perioperative period. This applies to general as well as regional anesthesia. The anesthesia technique should be selected on an individual basis considering the patient’s expectations since no data are available favoring general, regional, or combined anesthesia for this patient population.[191] The frequency and extent of monitoring techniques should be adapted to the risk of patient instability.

Individually adapted regimens are usually superior to “conventional” analgesia, regardless of the specific analgesia technique used.[195] In minor and medium surgery, an opioid/NSAID combination should always be considered to enhance opioid effects. Since pregabalin and gabapentin can reduce postoperative pain and opioid consumption[196] and have anxiolytic effects,[197] the chronic pain patient with anxiety might benefit. A dose range of 150 mg BID until the second or third postoperative day has been recommended.[190] Ketamine may also be applied as an adjunctive therapy,[180] but there are no data to encourage its routine use for the chronic pain patient in the perioperative period. Support from a multimodal pain treatment facility or the acute pain service should be requested. Apart from the

BOX 51.2 **Preoperative Considerations and Recommendations in Patients With Chronic Pain**

- Take thorough history to identify all analgesic and adjuvant medications, risk factors, and comorbidity.
- Educate the patient about the perioperative procedures, the potential for aggravated pain, and increased opioid requirements.
- Communicate plans between the designated anesthesiologist in the operating room, the postanesthesia care unit, and the surgical and nursing personnel on the ward.
- Differentiate between addiction, pseudoaddiction, and physical dependence in patients on long-term opioid medication.
- Expect physical dependence in patients on long-term opioid medication.
- Continue previous long-acting opioid analgesics for short procedures.
- For major surgery calculate and order background infusion of an equianalgesic opioid dose for patients with NPO for >8 h to be started in the OR.
- Order regular opioid medication on the morning of surgery.
- Maintain anticonvulsant drugs and benzodiazepines at preoperative doses.
- Discontinue all other adjuvants if NPO status remains >24 h.
- Identify untreated depressive disorder with screening questions for disturbed sleep, lowered mood, reduced concentration, self-confidence, and motivation.
- Identify untreated anxiety disorder with screening questions for restlessness, irritability, difficulties to control anxiousness, and worrying.
- Consider referral to pain specialist for evaluation.
- Choose regional or general anesthesia based on individual considerations.

OR, Operating Room.

Adapted from Farrell C, McConaghy P. Perioperative management of patients taking treatment for chronic pain. *BMJ.* 2012;345:e4148; and Kopf A, Banzhaf A, Stein C. Perioperative management of the chronic pain patient. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol.* 2005;19:59–76.[191,202]

choice of analgesia technique and adequate opioid medication, optimization of organizational structures is a key factor for improving perioperative analgesia.[198] If addiction is suspected the patient should be re-evaluated for weaning or rehabilitation only after recovery from surgery and postoperative pain.[199] Specific risk factors in chronic pain patients are summarized in Box 51.1.

Postoperative Regional Anesthesia

Although there is no strong evidence indicating superiority of particular anesthetic techniques for postoperative analgesia in chronic pain patients, individual considerations may favor regional anesthesia, particularly because these patients are prone to intensified postoperative pain experiences. Chronically opioid-consuming patients need their daily systemic dosage by the intravenous or oral route to prevent withdrawal.[173] In addition, postoperative analgesia with an epidural or plexus catheter may be accomplished with a combination of local anesthetics and opioids, similar to patients without chronic pain (see Chapters 45 and 46). However, higher doses of epidural opioids are recommended since cross-tolerance between orally and epidurally administered opioids has been described. Epidural lipophilic opioids (fentanyl, sufentanil) may provide better postoperative pain relief than epidural morphine in chronically opioid-consuming patients, which has been attributed to the need of a lower receptor occupancy or incomplete cross-tolerance between morphine and sufentanil.[200]

Postoperative Intravenous Opioids

The total required opioid dose consists of the daily dose taken before and the dose made necessary by surgical stimulation. A continuous perioperative intravenous opioid infusion equivalent to the regular daily dosage is recommended if the oral route is unavailable.[173,195] Additional bolus doses of opioid or nonopioid analgesics (or both) have to be titrated to individual needs to achieve adequate pain control in the postanesthesia care unit. Depending on the local circumstances, this may be patient-, nurse- or physician-controlled. The bolus size should be equal to the hourly dose of the background infusion. Once the patient demands less than four extra bolus doses per day, the background infusion may be reduced in daily steps of about 20% to 30%. For calculation of opioid dose equivalents, the relative potency, half-life, bioavailability, and route of administration have to be considered.[201] As soon as possible, oral medication should be resumed. Intravenous doses during the first 24 to 48 hours after surgery should be converted to oral dose equivalents. Half of the total dosage may be delivered as long-acting and half as short-acting breakthrough medication for on-demand use.[173]

Perioperative Transdermal Opioids

Transdermal fentanyl patches are relatively reliable in administering controlled amounts of the drug to the circulation over long periods. However, during surgery the amount of drug delivered to the patient may significantly shift. Changes in intravascular volume, body temperature, and volatile anesthetics alter skin permeability and perfusion resulting in relatively large fluctuations in transdermal fentanyl passage. In addition, forced-air warming blankets and heat packs applied onto the patch itself can lead to several-fold increases in fentanyl permeation through the skin.[73] Thus, in major surgery, removal of transdermal systems is advisable to avoid unforeseen decreases and increases of systemic opioid uptake. The transdermal opioid dose should be converted to intravenous morphine to be administered as a continuous background infusion.[201] Pertinent issues and practical recommendations are summarized in Box 51.3.

Acknowledgment

Supported by Bundesministerium für Bildung und Forschung (0316177B / C1, 01EC1403E, 01EC1403F) and by the European Union Seventh Framework programme (FP7-Health-2013-Innovation) under grant agreement 602891.

BOX 51.3 Intra- and Postoperative Management Issues and Practical Recommendations

- Start background opioid infusion immediately when patient arrives in the OR.
- Remove opioid patch when major surgery is planned; in minor surgery patch may be continued without background infusion.
- Every chronic pain patient has to be seen postoperatively tid to evaluate pain at rest, pain with exercise (e.g., coughing), nausea, sedation, mobilization, and sleep quality.
- Monitor closely for signs of respiratory depression and of withdrawal (e.g., unexplained tachycardia, restlessness, sweating, confusion, hypertension).
- Integrate the patient in the acute pain service protocol if available.
- Titrate short-acting opioid for acute pain with 2-4 times the usual starting dose needed for an opioid-naïve patient.
- Add COX inhibitors, anticonvulsants, other adjuvants as needed.
- Evaluate demand-delivery-ratio of PCA frequently, adapt demand-dose in relation to background infusion (demand-dose equals hourly dose of background infusion).
- Increase background infusion in PCA in relation to the cumulative daily opioid demand dose (add 50%-75% of the daily demand-dose to background infusion).
- Change technique of postoperative analgesia if inadequate use persists in spite of repeated patient education.
- In case of insufficient epidural analgesia with morphine, use epidural fentanyl or sufentanil.
- In case of IV opioid dose escalation consider spinal/epidural opioid application or switch IV agonist.
- Reduce daily opioid doses after the second postoperative day stepwise to the preexisting dose.
- Switch back to oral or transdermal medication as early as possible; use 50%-75% of last daily IV opioid dose as slow release oral or transdermal delivery plus the rest as demand dose.
- When switching back to transdermal route consider 12-16 h delayed effects and supply patient for this period with sufficient on-demand analgesia.
- Do not attempt to solve a chronic pain problem in the immediate postoperative period.
- Use non-pharmacological techniques (distraction, relaxation) where appropriate and offer counselling in the pain unit after postoperative recovery.

COX, cyclooxygenase; *IV*, intravenous; *OR*, Operating Room; *PCA*, patient-controlled analgesia.

Adapted from Farrell C, McConaghy P. Perioperative management of patients taking treatment for chronic pain. *BMJ*. 2012;345:e4148; and Kopf A, Banzhaf A, Stein C. Perioperative management of the chronic pain patient. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;19:59–76.[191,202]

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Woolf CJ. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;140:441.
2. Basbaum AI, et al. *Cell*. 2009;139:267.
3. Baron R, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 2013;74:630.
4. Richards N, McMahon SB. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:46.
5. Melzack R, Wall PD. *Science*. 1965;150:971.
6. Stein C, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87:5935.
7. Machelska H. *Arch Immunol Ther Exp (Warsz)*. 2011;59:11.
8. Stein C. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;332:1685.
9. Stein C, Machelska H. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2011;63:860.
10. Rittner HL, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:40.
11. Basso L, et al. *Curr Opin Pharmacol*. 2015;25:50.
12. Rittner HL, et al. *PLoS Pathog*. 2009;5:e1000362.
13. Mousa SA, et al. *Ann Rheum Dis*. 2007;66:871.
14. Stein C, et al. *Lancet*. 1993;342:321.
15. Likar R, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2007;23:136.
16. Herz A, et al. *NIDA Res Monogr*. 1989;95:110.
17. Cheng HY, et al. *Cell*. 2002;108:31.
18. Schumacher MA, et al. Opioid agonists and antagonists. In: Katzung BG Trevor AJ, ed. *Basic and Clinical Pharmacology*. New York McGraw-Hill Medical; 2015:531.
19. Fordyce WE, et al. *Behav Res Ther*. 1968;6:105.
20. Flor H, Diers M. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2007:415.
21. Yekkirala AS, et al. *Nat Rev Drug Discov*. 2017;16:545.
22. Mogil JS, et al. *Pain*. 2010;151:12.
23. Berge OG. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2011;164:1195.
24. Davis KD, et al. *Pain*. 2012;153:1555.
25. Smith SM, et al. *J Pain*. 2017;18:757.
26. Roberts NJ, et al. *Sci Transl Med*. 2012;4:133ra158.
27. Walter C, et al. *Pharmacogenomics*. 2013;14:1915.
28. Chidambaran V, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30:349.
29. Matic M, et al. *Clin Chem*. 2017;63:1204.
30. Loeser JD, Treede RD. *Pain*. 2008;137:473.
31. Pizzo PA, Clark NM. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366:197.
32. Anesthesiologists ASo. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:810.
33. Dzau VJ, Pizzo PA. *JAMA*. 2014;312:1507.
34. Leadley RM, et al. *J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother*. 2012;26:310.
35. Baron R. *Nat Clin Pract Neurol*. 2006;2:95.
36. Barasch A, Peterson DE. *Oral Oncol*. 2003;39:91.
37. Kaiser U, et al. *Pain*. 2017;158:1853.
38. Engel GL. *Science*. 1977;196:129.
39. Schatman ME. *Pain Med*. 2011;12:415.
40. Gatchel RJ, Okifuji A. *J Pain*. 2006;7:779.
41. Eisenberger NI, et al. *Science*. 2003;302:290.
42. Jacobson L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1210.
43. Bernardy K, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013:CD009796.
44. Vowles KE, et al. *Behav Res Ther*. 2011;49:748.
45. *Pain IAftSo: Recommendations for Pain Treatment ServicesInternational Association for the Study of Pain*; 2009. http://www.iasp-pain.org/AM/Template.cfm?Section=Pain_Treatment_Facilities&Template=/CM/HTMLDisplay.cfm&ContentID=9218. Accessed Aug 20 2012.
46. Engel CC, et al. *Pain*. 1996;65:197.
47. Dowell D, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;315:1624.
48. Lawrence R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:1092.
49. Hill JC, et al. *Lancet*. 2011;378:1560.
50. Gunreben-Stempfle B, et al. *Headache*. 2009;49:990.
51. Kamper SJ, et al. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h444.
52. Rothman MG, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2013;29:195.
53. Stanos SP, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2007;25(4):721.
54. van Middelkoop M, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol*. 2010;24:193.
55. Hoffman MD, Hoffman DR. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2007;11:93.
56. Ernst E. *Clin J Pain*. 2004;20:8.
57. Jensen MP, et al. *J Pain*. 2003;4:477.
58. Mullersdorf M, Soderback I. *Occup Ther Int*. 2002;9:1.
59. Schaafsma F, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010;(1):CD001822.
60. Carlino E, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:540.
61. Williams JT, et al. *Pharmacological Reviews*. 2013;65:223.
62. Stein C. Opioid receptors. *Annu Rev Med*. 2016;67:433–451.
63. Roques BP, et al. *Nat Rev Drug Discov*. 2012;11:292.
64. Schreiter A, et al. *FASEB J*. 2012;26:5161.
65. Spahn V, Stein C. *Expert Opin Investig Drugs*. 2017;26:155.
66. Imam MZ, et al. *Neuropharmacology*. 2017;131:238.
67. McNicol E. *J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother*. 2008;22:270.
68. Brack A, et al. *J Neuroimmune Pharmacol*. 2011;6:490.
69. Smith MA, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2014;48:77.
70. Smith SM, et al. *Pain*. 2013;154:2287.
71. Compton P, et al. *Pharmacol Biochem Behav*. 2004;77:263.
72. Collett BJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:58.
73. Rozen D. *Grass GW Pain Pract*. 2005;5:18.
74. Ross JR, et al. *Oncologist*. 2006;11:765.
75. Collin E, et al. *Pain*. 1993;55:319.
76. Galer BS, et al. *Pain*. 2005;115:284.
77. Schneider JP, Kirsh KL. *J Opioid Manag*. 2010;6:385.
78. Fishbain DA, et al. *Pain Med*. 2009;10:829.
79. Spahn V, et al. *Pain*. 2012;154:598–608.
80. Comelon M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116:524.
81. Carullo V, et al. *J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother*. 2015;29:378.
82. Fletcher D, Martinez V. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112:991.
83. Angst MS. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29(suppl 1):S16.

84. Szigethy E, et al. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2017.
85. Eriksen J, et al. *Pain*. 2006;125:172.
86. Reinecke H, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2015;172:324.
86a. Busse JW, et al. *JAMA*. 2018.
87. Fordyce WE. *APS Bull*. 1991;1:1.
88. Psaty BM, Merrill JO. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:1502.
89. Grosser T, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2017;102:611.
90. Diener HC, et al. *Nat Rev Neurol*. 2016;12:575.
91. Solomon DH. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2010;62:1568.
92. Moore RA, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015:CD010902.
93. Gonzalez-Hernandez A, et al. *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol*. 2018;14:25.
94. Finnerup NB, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2015;14:162.
95. Attal N, et al. *Eur J Neurol*. 2010;17:1113.
96. Derry S, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;5:CD008609.
97. Graham T, et al. *Pain*. 2013;154:1920.
98. Maihofner CG, Heskamp ML. *Eur J Pain*. 2014;18:671.
99. Yanagidate F, Strichartz GR. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2007:95.
100. Stein C, Küchler S. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2013;34:303.
101. Pühler W, et al. *Neuroscience*. 2004;129:473.
102. Hassan AHS, et al. *Neuroscience*. 1993;55:185.
103. Zöllner C, et al. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2003;64:202.
104. Antonijevic I, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1995;15:165.
105. Rittner HL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1323.
106. Picard PR, et al. *Pain*. 1997;72:309.
107. Celik MO, et al. *Brain Behav Immun*. 2016;57:227.
108. Likar R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:375.
109. Zöllner C, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 2008;118:1065.
110. Stein C, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325:1123.
111. Zeng C, et al. 2013;29:1450–1458.e1452.
113. Whiting PF, et al. *JAMA*. 2015;313:2456.
114. Hauser W, et al. *Dtsch Arztebl Int*. 2017;114:627.
115. Richards BL, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;1:CD008922.
116. Yang M, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;(1):CD004029.
117. Soares A, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;4:CD007533.
118. Langevin P, et al. *J Rheumatol*. 2011;38:203.
119. Brookes ME, et al. *Curr Neuropharmacol*. 2017;15:217.
120. Basch E, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2011;29:4189.
121. Mucke M, et al. *J Cachexia Sarcopenia Muscle*. 2018;9:220.
122. Nee J, et al. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2018.
123. Diego L, et al. *Expert Opin Investig Drugs*. 2011;20:1047.
124. Spahn V, et al. *Science*. 2017;355:966.
125. Gonzalez-Rodriguez S, et al. *Elife*. 2017;6:e27081.
126. Hogan QH, Abram SE. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:216.
127. Cohen SP, Raja SN. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:591.
128. Hansen HC, et al. *Pain Physician*. 2007;10:165.
129. Hansen H, et al. *Pain Physician*. 2012;15:E247.
130. Atluri S, et al. *Pain Physician*. 2012;15:E483.
131. Miguel R. *Cancer Control*. 2000;7:149.
132. de Leon-Casasola OA. *Cancer Invest*. 2004;22:630.
133. Lema MJ. *Surg Oncol Clin N Am*. 2001;10:127.
134. Vissers KC, et al. *Pain Pract*. 2011;11:453.
135. Slatkin NE, Rhiner M. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 2003;20:62.
136. El-Sayed GG. *Pain Pract*. 2007;7:27.
137. Candido K, Stevens RA. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2003;17:407.
138. Boswell MV, et al. *Pain Physician*. 2007;10:7.
139. Boswell MV, et al. *Pain Physician*. 2007;10:229.
140. Manchikanti L, et al. *Anesthesiol Res Pract*. 2012;585806:2012.
141. Shen FH, et al. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2006;14:477.
142. Ashkenazi A, Levin M. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2007;11:231.
143. Benyamin RM, et al. *Pain Physician*. 2009;12:137.
144. Wilkinson IM, Cohen SP. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2012;16:50.
145. Friedly JL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371:11.
146. Boswell MV, et al. *Pain Physician*. 2007;10:7.
147. Zernikow B, et al. *Schmerz*. 2012;26:389.
148. Smith TJ, et al. *Ann Oncol*. 2005;16:825.
149. Brogan SE. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2006;10:254.
150. Hassenbusch SJ, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2004;27:540.
151. Markman JD, Philip A. *Med Clin North Am*. 2007;91:271–286.
152. Patel VB, et al. *Pain Physician*. 2009;12:345.
153. Diener HC, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2006;5:310.
154. Scharf HP, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;145:12.
155. Kwon YD, et al. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*. 2006;45:1331.
156. Manheimer E, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2005;142:651.
157. Furlan AD, et al. *Spine*. 2005;30:944.
158. van Tulder MW, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol*. 2005;19:639.
159. Bicket MC, et al. *Pain Med*. 2016;17:2326.
160. De Andres J, et al. *Pain Med*. 2017;18:2401.
161. Coffey RJ, Lozano AM. *J Neurosurg*. 2006;105:175.
162. Cruccu G, et al. *Eur J Neurol*. 2007;14:952.
163. Frey ME, et al. *Pain Physician*. 2009;12:379.
164. Burgmer M, et al. *Neuroimage*. 2009;44:502.
165. Chu LF, et al. *Pain*. 2012;153:1583.
166. Svensson I, et al. *Eur J Pain*. 2001;5:125.
167. Lautenbacher S, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2009;25:92.
168. Thielking PD. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2003;7:249.
169. Slappendel R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:146.
170. Haffajee RL, Mello MM. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:2301.
171. Breivik H, et al. *Eur J Pain*. 2006;10:287.
172. Hadi I, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:1190.
173. Carroll IR, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29:576.
174. Richebe P, Beaulieu P. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56:969.
175. Fassoulaki A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:985.
176. Stillman MJ, et al. *Headache*. 2004;44:65.
177. Pohlmann-Eden B, et al. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 2003;108:142.
178. Kudoh A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:132.
179. Sarton E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1495. table of contents.
180. Visser E, Schug SA. *Biomed Pharmacother*. 2006;60:341.
181. Benitez-Rosario MA, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2003;25:400.
182. Pal HR, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2002;30:382.
183. Passik SD, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;23:526.
184. Neutel CI. *Int Rev Psychiatry*. 2005;17:189.
185. Lynch ME, Watson CP. *Pain Res Manag*. 2006;11:11.
186. Savage SR, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2003;26:655.
187. Hojsted J, Sjogren P. *Eur J Pain*. 2007;11:490.
188. Vowles KE, et al. *Pain*. 2015;156:569.
189. Peng PW, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:513.
190. Pogatzki-Zahn EM, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:627.
191. Farrell C, McConaghy P. *BMJ*. 2012;345:e4148.
192. Laffey JG, et al. *Ir J Med Sci*. 2000;169:113.
193. Perks A, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2009;21:127.
194. Grider JS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1393.
195. Peacock JE, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:1208.
196. Tiippana EM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1545.
197. Bandelow B, et al. *Expert Rev Neurother*. 2007;7:769.
198. Rawal N. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2005;23:211.
199. Streltzer J. *Curr Psychiatry Rep*. 2001;3:489.
200. de Leon-Casasola OA. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2002;16:521.
201. Gammaitoni AR, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2003;19:286.
202. Kopf A, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;19:59.
203. Brack A, et al. Periphere und zentrale Mechanismen des Entzündungsschmerzes. In: Straub RH, ed. *Lehrbuch der klinischen Pathophysiologie komplexer chronischer Erkrankungen*. Vol. 1. Göttingen, Germany: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht; 2006:183.
204. Zöllner C, Stein C. Opioids. In: *Handb Exp Pharmacol*; 2007:31–63.

References

1. Woolf CJ. Pain: moving from symptom control toward mechanism-specific pharmacologic management. *Ann Intern Med*. 2004;140:441–451.
2. Basbaum AI, Bautista DM, Scherrer G, Julius D. Cellular and molecular mechanisms of pain. *Cell*. 2009;139:267–284.
3. Baron R, Hans G, Dickenson AH. Peripheral input and its importance for central sensitization. *Ann Neurol*. 2013;74:630–636.
4. Richards N, McMahon SB. Targeting novel peripheral mediators for the treatment of chronic pain. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:46–51.
5. Melzack R, Wall PD. Pain mechanisms: a new theory. *Science*. 1965;150:971–979.
6. Stein C, Hassan AH, Przewlocki R, Gramsch C, Peter K, Herz A. Opioids from immunocytes interact with receptors on sensory nerves to inhibit nociception in inflammation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1990;87:5935–5939.
7. Machelska H. Dual peripheral actions of immune cells in neuropathic pain. *Arch Immunol Ther Exp (Warsz)*. 2011;59:11–24.
8. Stein C. The control of pain in peripheral tissue by opioids. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;332:1685–1690.
9. Stein C, Machelska H. Modulation of peripheral sensory neurons by the immune system: implications for pain therapy. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2011;63:860–881.
10. Rittner HL, Brack A, Stein C. Pain and the immune system. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:40–44.
11. Basso L, Bourreille A, Dietrich G. Intestinal inflammation and pain management. *Curr Opin Pharmacol*. 2015;25:50–55.
12. Rittner HL, Hackel D, Voigt P, et al. Mycobacteria attenuate nociceptive responses by formyl peptide receptor triggered opioid peptide release from neutrophils. *PLoS Pathog*. 2009;5:e1000362.
13. Mousa SA, Straub RH, Schäfer M, Stein C. Beta-endorphin, Met-enkephalin and corresponding opioid receptors within synovium of patients with joint trauma, osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis. *Ann Rheum Dis*. 2007;66:871–879.
14. Stein C, Hassan AHS, Lehrberger K, Giefing J, Yassouridis A. Local analgesic effect of endogenous opioid peptides. *Lancet*. 1993;342:321–324.
15. Likar R, Mousa SA, Steinkellner H, et al. Involvement of intraarticular corticotropin-releasing hormone in postoperative pain modulation. *Clin J Pain*. 2007;23:136–142.
16. Herz A, Millan MJ, Stein C. Arthritic inflammation in rats as a model of chronic pain: role of opioid systems. *NIDA Res Monogr*. 1989;95:110–115.
17. Cheng HY, Pitcher GM, Laviolette SR, et al. DREAM is a critical transcriptional repressor for pain modulation. *Cell*. 2002;108:31–43.
18. Schumacher MA, Basbaum AI, Naidu RK. Opioid agonists and antagonists. In: Katzung BG Trevor AJ, ed. *Basic and Clinical Pharmacology*. New York McGraw-Hill Medical; 2015:531–551.
19. Fordyce WE, Fowler RS, DeLateur B. An application of behavior modification technique to a problem of chronic pain. *Behav Res Ther*. 1968;6:105–107.
20. Flor H, Diers M. Limitations of pharmacotherapy: behavioral approaches to chronic pain. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2007:415–427.
21. Yekkirala AS, Roberson DP, Bean BP, Woolf CJ. Breaking barriers to novel analgesic drug development. *Nat Rev Drug Discov*. 2017;16:545–564.
22. Mogil JS, Davis KD, Derbyshire SW. The necessity of animal models in pain research. *Pain*. 2010;151:12–17.
23. Berge OG. Predictive validity of behavioural animal models for chronic pain. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2011;164:1195–1206.
24. Davis KD, Flor H, Greely HT, et al. Brain imaging tests for chronic pain: medical, legal and ethical issues and recommendations. *Nat Rev Neurol*. 2017;13:624–638.
25. Smith SM, Dworkin RH, Turk DC, et al. The potential role of sensory testing, skin biopsy, and functional brain imaging as biomarkers in chronic pain clinical trials: IMMPACT considerations. *J Pain*. 2017;18:757–777.
26. Roberts NJ, Vogelstein JT, Parmigiani G, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Velculescu VE. The predictive capacity of personal genome sequencing. *Sci Transl Med*. 2012;4:133ra158.
27. Walter C, Doehring A, Oertel BG, Lötsch J. Mu-opioid receptor gene variant OPRM1 118 A>G: a summary of its molecular and clinical consequences for pain. *Pharmacogenomics*. 2013;14:1915–1925.
28. Chidambaran V, Sadhasivam S, Mahmoud M. Codeine and opioid metabolism: implications and alternatives for pediatric pain management. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30:349–356.
29. Matic M, de Wildt SN, Tibboel D, van Schaik RHN. Analgesia and opioids: a pharmacogenetics shortlist for implementation in clinical practice. *Clin Chem*. 2017;63:1204–1213.
30. Loeser JD, Treede RD. The Kyoto protocol of iasp basic pain terminology. *Pain*. 2008;137:473–477.
31. Pizzo PA, Clark NM. Alleviating suffering 101–pain relief in the United States. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366:197–199.
32. Anesthesiologists ASo. Practice guidelines for chronic pain management: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on Chronic Pain Management and the American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:810–833.
33. Dzau VJ, Pizzo PA. Relieving pain in America: insights from an Institute of Medicine committee. *JAMA*. 2014;312:1507–1508.
34. Leadley RM, Armstrong N, Lee YC, Allen A, Kleijnen J. Chronic diseases in the European Union: the prevalence and health cost implications of chronic pain. *J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother*. 2012;26:310–325.
35. Baron R. Mechanisms of disease: neuropathic pain–a clinical perspective. *Nat Clin Pract Neurol*. 2006;2:95–106.
36. Barasch A, Peterson DE. Risk factors for ulcerative oral mucositis in cancer patients: unanswered questions. *Oral Oncol*. 2003;39:91–100.
37. Kaiser U, Treede RD, Sabatowski R. Multimodal pain therapy in chronic noncancer pain-gold standard or need for further clarification? *Pain*. 2017;158:1853–1859.
38. Engel GL. The need for a new medical model: a challenge for biomedicine. *Science*. 1977;196:129–136.
39. Schatman ME. The role of the health insurance industry in perpetuating suboptimal pain management. *Pain Med*. 2011;12:415–426.
40. Gatchel RJ, Okifuji A. Evidence-based scientific data documenting the treatment and cost-effectiveness of comprehensive pain programs for chronic nonmalignant pain. *J Pain*. 2006;7:779–793.
41. Eisenberger NI, Lieberman MD, Williams KD. Does rejection hurt? An FMRI study of social exclusion. *Science*. 2003;302:290–292.
42. Jacobson L, Mariano AJ, Chabal C, Chaney EF. Beyond the needle: expanding the role of anesthesiologists in the management of chronic non-malignant pain. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1210–1218.
43. Bernardy K, Klose P, Busch AJ, Choy EH, Hauser W. Cognitive behavioural therapies for fibromyalgia. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013:CD009796.
44. Vowles KE, McCracken LM, O'Brien JZ. Acceptance and values-based action in chronic pain: a three-year follow-up analysis of treatment effectiveness and process. *Behav Res Ther*. 2011;49:748–755.
45. *Pain IAftSo: Recommendations for Pain Treatment Services*. International Association for the Study of Pain; 2009. http://www.iasp-pain.org/AM/Template.cfm?Section=Pain_Treatment_Facilities&Template=/CM/HTMLDisplay.cfm&ContentID=9218. Accessed Aug 20 2012.
46. Engel CC, von Korff M, Katon WJ. Back pain in primary care: predictors of high health-care costs. *Pain*. 1996;65:197–204.
47. Dowell D, Haegerich TM, Chou R. CDC guideline for prescribing opioids for chronic pain–united states, 2016. *JAMA*. 2016;315:1624–1645.
48. Lawrence R, Mogford D, Colvin L. Systematic review to determine which validated measurement tools can be used to assess risk of problematic analgesic use in patients with chronic pain. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:1092–1109.
49. Hill JC, Whitehurst DG, Lewis M, et al. Comparison of stratified primary care management for low back pain with current best practice (STarT Back): a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2011;378:1560–1571.
50. Gunreben-Stempfle B, Griessinger N, Lang E, Muehlhans B, Sittl R, Ulrich K. Effectiveness of an intensive multidisciplinary headache treatment program. *Headache*. 2009;49:990–1000.
51. Kamper SJ, Apeldoorn AT, Chiarotto A, et al. Multidisciplinary biopsychosocial rehabilitation for chronic low back pain: Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h444.
52. Rothman MG, Ortendahl M, Rosenblad A, Johansson AC. Improved quality of life, working ability, and patient satisfaction after a pretreatment multimodal assessment method in patients with mixed chronic muscular pain: a randomized-controlled study. *Clin J Pain*. 2013;29:195–204.

53. Stanos SP, McLean J, Rader L. Physical medicine rehabilitation approach to pain. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2007;25:721–759:v-vi.
54. van Middelkoop M, Rubinstein SM, Verhagen AP, Ostelo RW, Koes BW, van Tulder MW. Exercise therapy for chronic nonspecific low-back pain. *Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol*. 2010;24:193–204.
55. Hoffman MD, Hoffman DR. Does aerobic exercise improve pain perception and mood? A review of the evidence related to healthy and chronic pain subjects. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2007;11:93–97.
56. Ernst E. Manual therapies for pain control: chiropractic and massage. *Clin J Pain*. 2004;20:8–12.
57. Jensen MP, Nielson WR, Kerns RD. Toward the development of a motivational model of pain self-management. *J Pain*. 2003;4:477–492.
58. Mullersdorf M, Soderback I. Occupational therapists' assessments of adults with long-term pain: the Swedish experience. *Occup Ther Int*. 2002;9:1–23.
59. Schaafsma F, Schonstein E, Whelan KM, Ulvestad E, Kenny DT, Verbeek JH. Physical conditioning programs for improving work outcomes in workers with back pain. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010;(1):CD001822.
60. Carlino E, Pollo A, Benedetti F. Placebo analgesia and beyond: a melting pot of concepts and ideas for neuroscience. *Curr Op Anaesth*. 2011;24:540–544.
61. Williams JT, Ingram SL, Henderson G, et al. Regulation of mu-opioid receptors: desensitization, phosphorylation, internalization, and tolerance. *Pharmacol Rev*. 2013;65:223–254.
62. Stein C. Opioid receptors. *Annu Rev Med*. 2016;67:433–451.
63. Roques BP, Fournie-Zaluski MC, Wurm M. Inhibiting the breakdown of endogenous opioids and cannabinoids to alleviate pain. *Nat Rev Drug Discov*. 2012;11:292–310.
64. Schreiter A, Gore C, Labuz D, et al. Pain inhibition by blocking leukocytic and neuronal opioid peptidases in peripheral inflamed tissue. *FASEB J*. 2012;26:5161–5171.
65. Spahn V, Stein C. Targeting delta opioid receptors for pain treatment: drugs in phase I and II clinical development. *Expert Opin Investig Drugs*. 2017;26:155–160.
66. Imam MZ, Kuo A, Ghassabian S, Smith MT. Progress in understanding mechanisms of opioid-induced gastrointestinal adverse effects and respiratory depression. *Neuropharmacology*. 2017;131:238–255.
67. McNicol E. Opioid side effects and their treatment in patients with chronic cancer and noncancer pain. *J Pain Pall Care Pharmacother*. 2008;22:270–281.
68. Brack A, Rittner HL, Stein C. Immunosuppressive effects of opioids--clinical relevance. *J Neuroimmune Pharmacol*. 2011;6:490–502.
69. Smith MA, Hibino M, Falcione BA, Eichinger KM, Patel R, Empey KM. Immunosuppressive aspects of analgesics and sedatives used in mechanically ventilated patients: an underappreciated risk factor for the development of ventilator-associated pneumonia in critically ill patients. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2014;48:77–85.
70. Smith SM, Dart RC, Katz NP, et al. Classification and definition of misuse, abuse, and related events in clinical trials: ACTTION systematic review and recommendations. *Pain*. 2013;154:2287–2296.
71. Compton P, Miotto K, Elashoff D. Precipitated opioid withdrawal across acute physical dependence induction methods. *Pharmacol Biochem Behav*. 2004;77:263–268.
72. Collett BJ. Opioid tolerance: the clinical perspective. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;81:58–68.
73. Rozen D, Grass GW. Perioperative and intraoperative pain and anesthetic care of the chronic pain and cancer pain patient receiving chronic opioid therapy. *Pain Pract*. 2005;5:18–32.
74. Ross JR, Riley J, Quigley C, Welsh KI. Clinical pharmacology and pharmacotherapy of opioid switching in cancer patients. *Oncologist*. 2006;11:765–773.
75. Collin E, Poulain P, Gauvain-Piquard A, Petit G, Pichard-Leandri E. Is disease progression the major factor in morphine 'tolerance' in cancer pain treatment? *Pain*. 1993;55:319–326.
76. Galer BS, Lee D, Ma T, Nagle B, Schlagheck TG. MorphiDex (morphine sulfate/dextromethorphan hydrobromide combination) in the treatment of chronic pain: three multicenter, randomized, double-blind, controlled clinical trials fail to demonstrate enhanced opioid analgesia or reduction in tolerance. *Pain*. 2005;115:284–295.
77. Schneider JP, Kirsh KL. Defining clinical issues around tolerance, hyperalgesia, and addiction: a quantitative and qualitative outcome study of long-term opioid dosing in a chronic pain practice. *J Opioid Manag*. 2010;6:385–395.
78. Fishbain DA, Cole B, Lewis JE, Gao J, Rosomoff RS. Do opioids induce hyperalgesia in humans? An evidence-based structured review. *Pain Med*. 2009;10:829–839.
79. Spahn V, Fischer O, Endres-Becker J, Schäfer M, Stein C, Zöllner C. Opioid withdrawal increases transient receptor potential vanilloid 1 activity in a protein kinase A-dependent manner. *Pain*. 2013;154:598–608.
80. Comelon M, Raeder J, Stubhaug A, Nielsen CS, Draegni T, Lenz H. Gradual withdrawal of remifentanil infusion may prevent opioid-induced hyperalgesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116:524–530.
81. Carullo V, Fitz-James I, Delphin E. Opioid-induced hyperalgesia: a diagnostic dilemma. *J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother*. 2015;29:378–384.
82. Fletcher D, Martinez V. Opioid-induced hyperalgesia in patients after surgery: a systematic review and a meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112:991–1004.
83. Angst MS. Intraoperative use of remifentanil for TIVA: postoperative pain, acute tolerance, and opioid-induced hyperalgesia. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29(suppl. 1):S16–22.
84. Szigethy E, Knisely M, Drossman D. Opioid misuse in gastroenterology and non-opioid management of abdominal pain. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2017.
85. Eriksen J, Sjogren P, Bruera E, Ekholm O, Rasmussen NK. Critical issues on opioids in chronic non-cancer pain: an epidemiological study. *Pain*. 2006;125:172–179.
86. Reinecke H, Weber C, Lange K, Simon M, Stein C, Sorgatz H. Analgesic efficacy of opioids in chronic pain: recent meta-analyses. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2015;172:324–333.

86a. Busse JW, Wang L, Kamaleldin M, et al. Opioids for chronic noncancer pain: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA*.

87. Fordyce WE. Opioids and treatment targets. *American Pain Society Bulletin*. 1991;1:1–4.
88. Psaty BM, Merrill JO. Addressing the opioid epidemic - opportunities in the postmarketing setting. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:1502–1504.
89. Grosser T, Theken KN, FitzGerald GA. Cyclooxygenase inhibition: pain, inflammation, and the cardiovascular system. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2017;102:611–622.
90. Diener HC, Holle D, Solbach K, Gaul C. Medication-overuse headache: risk factors, pathophysiology and management. *Nat Rev Neurol*. 2016;12:575–583.
91. Solomon DH. Strategies for making analgesia safer: the role of comparative effectiveness research. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2010;62:1568–1570.
92. Moore RA, Chi CC, Wiffen PJ, Derry S, Rice AS. Oral nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for neuropathic pain. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015:CD010902.
93. Gonzalez-Hernandez A, Marichal-Cancino BA, MaassenVanDenBrink A, Villalon CM. Side effects associated with current and prospective antimigraine pharmacotherapies. *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol*. 2018;14:25–41.
94. Finnerup NB, Attal N, Haroutounian S, et al. Pharmacotherapy for neuropathic pain in adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet Neurol*. 2015;14:162–173.
95. Attal N, Cruccu G, Baron R, et al. EFNS guidelines on the pharmacological treatment of neuropathic pain: 2010 revision. *Eur J Neurol*. 2010;17:1113–e1188.
96. Derry S, Wiffen PJ, Kalso EA, et al. Topical analgesics for acute and chronic pain in adults - an overview of Cochrane Reviews. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;5:CD008609.
97. Graham T, Grocott P, Probst S, Wanklyn S, Dawson J, Gethin G. How are topical opioids used to manage painful cutaneous lesions in palliative care? A critical review. *Pain*. 2013;154:1920–1928.
98. Maihofner CG, Heskamp ML. Treatment of peripheral neuropathic pain by topical capsaicin: impact of pre-existing pain in the QUEPP-study. *Eur J Pain*. 2014;18:671–679.
99. Yanagidate F, Strichartz GR. Local anesthetics. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2007:95–127.
100. Stein C, Küchler S. Targeting inflammation and wound healing by opioids. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2013;34:303–312.
101. Pühler W, Zöllner C, Brack A, et al. Rapid upregulation of mu opioid receptor mRNA in dorsal root ganglia in response to peripheral inflammation depends on neuronal conduction. *Neuroscience*. 2004;129:473–479.
102. Hassan AHS, Ableitner A, Stein C, Herz A. Inflammation of the rat paw enhances axonal transport of opioid receptors in the sciatic nerve and increases their density in the inflamed tissue. *Neuroscience*. 1993;55:185–195.

103. Zöllner C, Shaqura MA, Bopaiah CP, Mousa SA, Stein C, Schäfer M. Painful inflammation-induced increase in mu-opioid receptor binding and G-protein coupling in primary afferent neurons. *Mol Pharmacol*. 2003;64:202–210.
104. Antonijevic I, Mousa SA, Schäfer M, Stein C. Perineurial defect and peripheral opioid analgesia in inflammation. *J Neurosci*. 1995;15:165–172.
105. Rittner HL, Amasheh S, Moshourab R, et al. Modulation of tight junction proteins in the perineurium to facilitate peripheral opioid analgesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:1323–1334.
106. Picard PR, Tramer MR, McQuay HJ, Moore RA. Analgesic efficacy of peripheral opioids (all except intra-articular): a qualitative systematic review of randomised controlled trials. *Pain*. 1997;72:309–318.
107. Celik MO, Labuz D, Henning K, et al. Leukocyte opioid receptors mediate analgesia via Ca(2+)-regulated release of opioid peptides. *Brain Behav Immun*. 2016;57:227–242.
108. Likar R, Mousa SA, Philippitsch G, et al. Increased numbers of opioid expressing inflammatory cells do not affect intra-articular morphine analgesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:375–380.
109. Zöllner C, Mousa SA, Fischer O, et al. Chronic morphine use does not induce peripheral tolerance in a rat model of inflammatory pain. *J Clin Invest*. 2008;118:1065–1073.
110. Stein C, Comisel K, Haimerl E, et al. Analgesic effect of intraarticular morphine after arthroscopic knee surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325:1123–1126.
111. Zeng C, Gao SG, Cheng L, et al. Single-dose intra-articular morphine after arthroscopic knee surgery: a meta-analysis of randomized placebo-controlled studies. Arthroscopy : the journal of arthroscopic & related surgery official publication of the Arthroscopy Association of North America and the International Arthroscopy Association. 2013;29:1450–1458.e1452.
112. Sanders RD, Maze M. Adrenergic and cholinergic compounds. *Handb Exp Pharmacol*. 2007:251–264.
113. Whiting PF, Wolff RF, Deshpande S, et al. Cannabinoids for medical use: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2015;313:2456–2473.
114. Hauser W, Fitzcharles MA, Radbruch L, Petzke F. Cannabinoids in pain management and palliative medicine. *Dtsch Arztebl Int*. 2017;114:627–634.
115. Richards BL, Whittle SL, Buchbinder R. Muscle relaxants for pain management in rheumatoid arthritis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;1:CD008922.
116. Yang M, Zhou M, He L, Chen N, Zakrzewska JM. Non-antiepileptic drugs for trigeminal neuralgia. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011:CD004029.
117. Soares A, Andriolo RB, Atallah AN, da Silva EM. Botulinum toxin for myofascial pain syndromes in adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;4:CD007533.
118. Langevin P, Lowcock J, Weber J, et al. Botulinum toxin intramuscular injections for neck pain: a systematic review and metaanalysis. *J Rheumatol*. 2011;38:203–214.
119. Brookes ME, Eldabe S, Batterham A. Ziconotide monotherapy: a systematic review of randomised controlled trials. *Curr Neuropharmacol*. 2017;15:217–231.
120. Basch E, Prestrud AA, Hesketh PJ, et al. Antiemetics: American Society of Clinical Oncology clinical practice guideline update. *J Clin Oncol*. 2011;29:4189–4198.
121. Mucke M, Weier M, Carter C, et al. Systematic review and meta-analysis of cannabinoids in palliative medicine. *J Cachexia Sarcopenia Muscle*. 2018;9:220–234.
122. Nee J, Zakari M, Sugarman MA, et al. Efficacy of treatments for opioid-induced constipation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2018.
123. Diego L, Atayee R, Helmons P, Hsiao G, von Gunten CF. Novel opioid antagonists for opioid-induced bowel dysfunction. *Expert Opin Investig Drugs*. 2011;20:1047–1056.
124. Spahn V, Del Vecchio G, Labuz D, et al. A nontoxic pain killer designed by modeling of pathological receptor conformations. *Science*. 2017;355:966–969.
125. Gonzalez-Rodriguez S, Quadir MA, Gupta S, et al. Polyglycerol-opioid conjugate produces analgesia devoid of side effects. *Elife*. 2017;6:e27081.
126. Hogan QH, Abram SE. Neural blockade for diagnosis and prognosis. A review. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:216–241.
127. Cohen SP, Raja SN. Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and treatment of lumbar zygapophysial (facet) joint pain. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:591–614.
128. Hansen HC, McKenzie-Brown AM, Cohen SP, Swicegood JR, Colson JD, Manchikanti L. Sacroiliac joint interventions: a systematic review. *Pain Physician*. 2007;10:165–184.
129. Hansen H, Manchikanti L, Simopoulos TT, et al. A systematic evaluation of the therapeutic effectiveness of sacroiliac joint interventions. *Pain Physician*. 2012;15:E247–278.
130. Atluri S, Singh V, Datta S, Geffert S, Sehgal N, Falco FJ. Diagnostic accuracy of thoracic facet joint nerve blocks: an update of the assessment of evidence. *Pain Physician*. 2012;15:E483–496.
131. Miguel R. Interventional treatment of cancer pain: the fourth step in the World Health Organization analgesic ladder? *Cancer Control*. 2000;7:149–156.
132. de Leon-Casasola OA. Interventional procedures for cancer pain management: when are they indicated? *Cancer Invest*. 2004;22:630–642.
133. Lema MJ. Invasive analgesia techniques for advanced cancer pain. *Surg Oncol Clin N Am*. 2001;10:127–136.
134. Vissers KC, Besse K, Wagemans M, et al. Pain in patients with cancer. *Pain Practice*. 2011;11:453–475.
135. Slatkin NE, Rhiner M. Phenol saddle blocks for intractable pain at end of life: report of four cases and literature review. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 2003;20:62–66.
136. El-Sayed GG. A new catheter technique for thoracic subarachnoid neurolysis in advanced lung cancer patients. *Pain Pract*. 2007;7:27–30.
137. Candido K, Stevens RA. Intrathecal neurolytic blocks for the relief of cancer pain. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2003;17:407–428.
138. Dworkin RH, O'Connor AB, Kent J, et al. Interventional management of neuropathic pain: NeuPSIG recommendations. *Pain*. 2013;154:2249–2261.
139. Boswell MV, Colson JD, Sehgal N, Dunbar EE, Epter R. A systematic review of therapeutic facet joint interventions in chronic spinal pain. *Pain Physician*. 2007;10:229–253.
140. Manchikanti L, Singh V, Falco FJ, Cash KA, Pampati V, Fellows B. The role of thoracic medial branch blocks in managing chronic mid and upper back pain: a randomized, double-blind, active-control trial with a 2-year followup. *Anesthesiol Res Pract*. 2012;2012:585806.
141. Shen FH, Samartzis D, Andersson GB. Nonsurgical management of acute and chronic low back pain. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2006;14:477–487.
142. Ashkenazi A, Levin M. Greater occipital nerve block for migraine and other headaches: is it useful? *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2007;11:231–235.
143. Benyamin RM, Singh V, Parr AT, Conn A, Diwan S, Abdi S. Systematic review of the effectiveness of cervical epidurals in the management of chronic neck pain. *Pain Physician*. 2009;12:137–157.
144. Wilkinson IM, Cohen SP. Epidural steroid injections. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2012;16:50–59.
145. Friedly JL, Comstock BA, Turner JA, et al. A randomized trial of epidural glucocorticoid injections for spinal stenosis. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371:11–21.
146. Boswell MV, Trescot AM, Datta S, et al. Interventional techniques: evidence-based practice guidelines in the management of chronic spinal pain. *Pain Physician*. 2007;10:7–111.
147. Zernikow B, Dobe M, Hirschfeld G, Blankenburg M, Reuther M, Maier C. [Please don't hurt me! : a plea against invasive procedures in children and adolescents with complex regional pain syndrome (CRPS)]. *Schmerz*. 2012;26:389–395.
148. Smith TJ, Coyne PJ, Staats PS, et al. An implantable drug delivery system (IDDS) for refractory cancer pain provides sustained pain control, less drug-related toxicity, and possibly better survival compared with comprehensive medical management (CMM). *Ann Oncol*. 2005;16:825–833.
149. Brogan SE. Intrathecal therapy for the management of cancer pain. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2006;10:254–259.
150. Hassenbusch SJ, Portenoy RK, Cousins M, et al. Polyanalgesic Consensus Conference 2003: an update on the management of pain by intraspinal drug delivery-- report of an expert panel. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2004;27:540–563.
151. Markman JD, Philip A. Interventional approaches to pain management. *Med Clin North Am*. 2007;91:271–286.
152. Patel VB, Manchikanti L, Singh V, Schultz DM, Hayek SM, Smith HS. Systematic review of intrathecal infusion systems for long-term management of chronic non-cancer pain. *Pain Physician*. 2009;12:345–360.

153. Diener HC, Kronfeld K, Boewing G, et al. Efficacy of acupuncture for the prophylaxis of migraine: a multicentre randomised controlled clinical trial. *Lancet Neurol*. 2006;5:310–316.
154. Scharf HP, Mansmann U, Streitberger K, et al. Acupuncture and knee osteoarthritis: a three-armed randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;145:12–20.
155. Kwon YD, Pittler MH, Ernst E. Acupuncture for peripheral joint osteoarthritis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*. 2006;45:1331–1337.
156. Manheimer E, White A, Berman B, Forys K, Ernst E. Meta-analysis: acupuncture for low back pain. *Ann Intern Med*. 2005;142:651–663.
157. Furlan AD, van Tulder M, Cherkin D, et al. Acupuncture and dry-needling for low back pain: an updated systematic review within the framework of the cochrane collaboration. *Spine*. 2005;30:944–963.
158. van Tulder MW, Furlan AD, Gagnier JJ. Complementary and alternative therapies for low back pain. *Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol*. 2005;19:639–654.
159. Bicket MC, Dunn RY, Ahmed SU. High-frequency spinal cord stimulation for chronic pain: pre-clinical overview and systematic review of controlled trials. *Pain Med*. 2016;17:2326–2336.
160. De Andres J, Monsalve-Dolz V, Fabregat-Cid G, et al. Prospective, randomized blind effect-on-outcome study of conventional vs high-frequency spinal cord stimulation in patients with pain and disability due to failed back surgery syndrome. *Pain Med*. 2017;18:2401–2421.
161. Coffey RJ, Lozano AM. Neurostimulation for chronic noncancer pain: an evaluation of the clinical evidence and recommendations for future trial designs. *J Neurosurg*. 2006;105:175–189.
162. Cruccu G, Aziz TZ, Garcia-Larrea L, et al. EFNS guidelines on neurostimulation therapy for neuropathic pain. *Eur J Neurol*. 2007;14:952–970.
163. Frey ME, Manchikanti L, Benyamin RM, Schultz DM, Smith HS, Cohen SP. Spinal cord stimulation for patients with failed back surgery syndrome: a systematic review. *Pain Physician*. 2009;12:379–397.
164. Burgmer M, Pogatzki-Zahn E, Gaubitz M, Wessoleck E, Heuft G, Pfleiderer B. Altered brain activity during pain processing in fibromyalgia. *Neuroimage*. 2009;44:502–508.
165. Chu LF, D'Arcy N, Brady C, et al. Analgesic tolerance without demonstrable opioid-induced hyperalgesia: a double-blinded, randomized, placebo-controlled trial of sustained-release morphine for treatment of chronic nonradicular low-back pain. *Pain*. 2012;153:1583–1592.
166. Svensson I, Sjostrom B, Haljamae H. Influence of expectations and actual pain experiences on satisfaction with postoperative pain management. *Eur J Pain*. 2001;5:125–133.
167. Lautenbacher S, Huber C, Kunz M, et al. Hypervigilance as predictor of postoperative acute pain: its predictive potency compared with experimental pain sensitivity, cortisol reactivity, and affective state. *Clin J Pain*. 2009;25:92–100.
168. Thielking PD. Cancer pain and anxiety. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2003;7:249–261.
169. Slappendel R, Weber EW, Bugter ML, Dirksen R. The intensity of preoperative pain is directly correlated with the amount of morphine needed for postoperative analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:146–148.
170. Haffajee RL, Mello MM. Drug companies' liability for the opioid epidemic. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:2301–2305.
171. Breivik H, Collett B, Ventafridda V, Cohen R, Gallacher D. Survey of chronic pain in Europe: prevalence, impact on daily life, and treatment. *Eur J Pain*. 2006;10:287–333.
172. Hadi I, Morley-Forster PK, Dain S, Horrill K, Moulin DE. Brief review: perioperative management of the patient with chronic non-cancer pain. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:1190–1199.
173. Carroll IR, Angst MS, Clark JD. Management of perioperative pain in patients chronically consuming opioids. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29:576–591.
174. Richebe P, Beaulieu P. Perioperative pain management in the patient treated with opioids: continuing professional development. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56:969–981.
175. Fassoulaki A, Patris K, Sarantopoulos C, Hogan Q. The analgesic effect of gabapentin and mexiletine after breast surgery for cancer. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:985–991.
176. Stillman MJ, Zajac D, Rybicki LA. Treatment of primary headache disorders with intravenous valproate: initial outpatient experience. *Headache*. 2004;44:65–69.
177. Pohlmann-Eden B, Peters CN, Wennberg R, Dempfle CE. Valproate induces reversible factor XIII deficiency with risk of perioperative bleeding. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 2003;108:142–145.
178. Kudoh A, Katagai H, Takazawa T. Antidepressant treatment for chronic depressed patients should not be discontinued prior to anesthesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:132–136.
179. Sarton E, Teppema LJ, Olievier C, et al. The involvement of the mu-opioid receptor in ketamine-induced respiratory depression and antinociception. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1495–1500. table of contents.
180. Visser E, Schug SA. The role of ketamine in pain management. *Biomed Pharmacother*. 2006;60:341–348.
181. Benitez-Rosario MA, Feria M, Salinas-Martin A, Martinez-Castillo LP, Martin-Ortega JJ. A retrospective comparison of the dose ratio between subcutaneous and oral ketamine. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2003;25:400–402.
182. Pal HR, Berry N, Kumar R, Ray R. Ketamine dependence. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2002;30:382–384.
183. Passik SD, Lundberg J, Kirsh KL, et al. A pilot exploration of the antiemetic activity of olanzapine for the relief of nausea in patients with advanced cancer and pain. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;23:526–532.
184. Neutel CI. The epidemiology of long-term benzodiazepine use. *Int Rev Psychiatry*. 2005;17:189–197.
185. Lynch ME, Watson CP. The pharmacotherapy of chronic pain: a review. *Pain Res Manag*. 2006;11:11–38.
186. Savage SR, Joranson DE, Covington EC, Schnoll SH, Heit HA, Gilson AM. Definitions related to the medical use of opioids: evolution towards universal agreement. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2003;26:655–667.
187. Hojsted J, Sjogren P. Addiction to opioids in chronic pain patients: a literature review. *Eur J Pain*. 2007;11:490–518.
188. Vowles KE, McEntee ML, Julnes PS, Frohe T, Ney JP, van der Goes DN. Rates of opioid misuse, abuse, and addiction in chronic pain: a systematic review and data synthesis. *Pain*. 2015;156:569–576.
189. Peng PW, Tumber PS, Gourlay D. Review article: perioperative pain management of patients on methadone therapy. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:513–523.
190. Pogatzki-Zahn EM, Englbrecht JS, Schug SA. Acute pain management in patients with fibromyalgia and other diffuse chronic pain syndromes. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:627–633.
191. Farrell C, McConaghy P. Perioperative management of patients taking treatment for chronic pain. *BMJ*. 2012;345:e4148.
192. Laffey JG, Coleman M, Boylan JF. Patients' knowledge of perioperative care. *Ir J Med Sci*. 2000;169:113–118.
193. Perks A, Chakravarti S, Manninen P. Preoperative anxiety in neurosurgical patients. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2009;21:127–130.
194. Grider JS, Brown RE, Colclough GW. Perioperative management of patients with an intrathecal drug delivery system for chronic pain. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1393–1396.
195. Peacock JE, Wright BM, Withers MR, Luntley JB, Atkinson RE. Evaluation of a pilot regimen for postoperative pain control in patients receiving oral morphine pre-operatively. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:1208–1212.
196. Tiippana EM, Hamunen K, Kontinen VK, Kalso E. Do surgical patients benefit from perioperative gabapentin/pregabalin? A systematic review of efficacy and safety. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1545–1556. table of contents.
197. Bandelow B, Wedekind D, Leon T. Pregabalin for the treatment of generalized anxiety disorder: a novel pharmacologic intervention. *Expert Rev Neurother*. 2007;7:769–781.
198. Rawal N. Organization, function, and implementation of acute pain service. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2005;23:211–225.
199. Streltzer J. Pain management in the opioid-dependent patient. *Curr Psychiatry Rep*. 2001;3:489–496.
200. de Leon-Casasola OA. Cellular mechanisms of opioid tolerance and the clinical approach to the opioid tolerant patient in the post-operative period. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2002;16:521–525.
201. Gammaitoni AR, Fine P, Alvarez N, McPherson ML, Bergmark S. Clinical application of opioid equianalgesic data. *Clin J Pain*. 2003;19:286–297.
202. Kopf A, Banzhaf A, Stein C. Perioperative management of the chronic pain patient. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;19:59–76.
203. Brack A, Stein C, Schaible HG. Periphere und zentrale Mechanismen des Entzündungsschmerzes. In: Straub RH, ed. *Lehrbuch der klinischen Pathophysiologie komplexer chronischer Erkrankungen*. Vol. 1. Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht; 2006:183–192.
204. Zöllner C, Stein C. Opioids. In: *Handb Exp Pharmacol*; 2007:31–63.

52

Palliative Medicine

ANN CAI SHAH, ANNE L. DONOVAN, and SARAH GEBAUER

KEY POINTS

- Palliative care is an interprofessional approach to symptom management and decision making for patients with a wide range of serious illnesses and is not limited to patients who are imminently expected to die.
- Palliative care teams reduce costs and decrease the burden of symptoms for patients with serious illnesses.
- Physicians receive limited training in discussing difficult topics and tend to focus on details and use medical jargon in conversations with seriously ill patients.
- Patients and families want physicians to be truthful and empathetic and to participate in shared decision making.
- While patients and families desire a prognosis, they understand and accept that physicians have difficulty prognosticating the future for an individual patient.
- Opioids administered in small doses are effective in treating dyspnea and do not hasten death in patients receiving palliative care.
- The presence of treatment limitations should prompt a thorough discussion of the perioperative plan between the patient and the surgical team.

What Is Palliative Medicine?

DEFINITION

The World Health Organization (WHO) defines palliative care as "an approach that improves the quality of life of patients and their families facing the problems associated with life-threatening illness, through the prevention and relief of suffering by means of early identification and impeccable assessment and treatment of pain and other problems, physical, psychosocial and spiritual."[1] Importantly, palliative care does not necessarily need to be limited to the end of life. The Center to Advance Palliative Care states, "unlike hospice care, palliative care can be provided at the same time as curative treatments; it is appropriate at any age and at any stage of a serious illness." Illness has many facets; symptom management, family support, and aid in decision making are common areas of focus for palliative care teams (Fig. 52.1).[2] Symptom management encompasses physical symptoms (i.e., pain, constipation, nausea and vomiting, and delirium) as well as emotional symptoms (i.e., depression, anxiety, and distress). Palliative *care* refers to the work of an interprofessional team, whereas palliative *medicine* refers to the medical subspecialty focused on providing symptom relief and decision-making support for patients with serious illnesses.

PRIMARY VERSUS SPECIALIST PALLIATIVE MEDICINE

There is a distinction made among the levels of palliative care: primary versus specialist. This distinction facilitates the differentiation among the skills expected from all physicians, including anesthesiologists, and from those more suitable to a specialist service. Examples of primary palliative medicine include basic pain and symptom management, as well as discussions about prognosis, goals of treatment, and resuscitation status.[3] Specialty palliative medicine includes the management of refractory or complex symptoms, as well as the facilitation of conflict resolution among families, staff members, and treatment teams related to the goals of care (Fig 52.2).[4]

HISTORY OF PALLIATIVE MEDICINE

The word *palliative* comes from the Latin word *to clothe* and refers to the "covering up" of symptoms such as pain. Modern palliative medicine grew out of the hospice movement started by Dr. Cicely Saunders in the late 1960s,[5] and introduced in the United States in the 1970s. Since that time, the field has broadened from a focus on patients at the end of life to include patients with serious illnesses. There is also growing recognition that many hospice principles, such as the relief from suffering, apply to all patients regardless of prognosis (Fig. 52.3).[6] To meet this growing need, several academic medical centers have organized inpatient palliative care teams over the past decades.[7]

Currently, 90% of hospitals with more than 300 beds and 67% of hospitals with 50 or more beds have palliative care teams.[8] Hospice and palliative medicine became a recognized subspecialty in 2006, with the first board examinations offered in 2008. Physicians from 10 medical specialties, including anesthesiology, are eligible to complete a fellowship and take the board examination.[9] Between 2008-2017, 125 anesthesiologists were also certified in hospice and palliative medicine.[10] There are now over 7600 hospice and palliative medicine physicians in the United States, and 1% to 2% of graduating

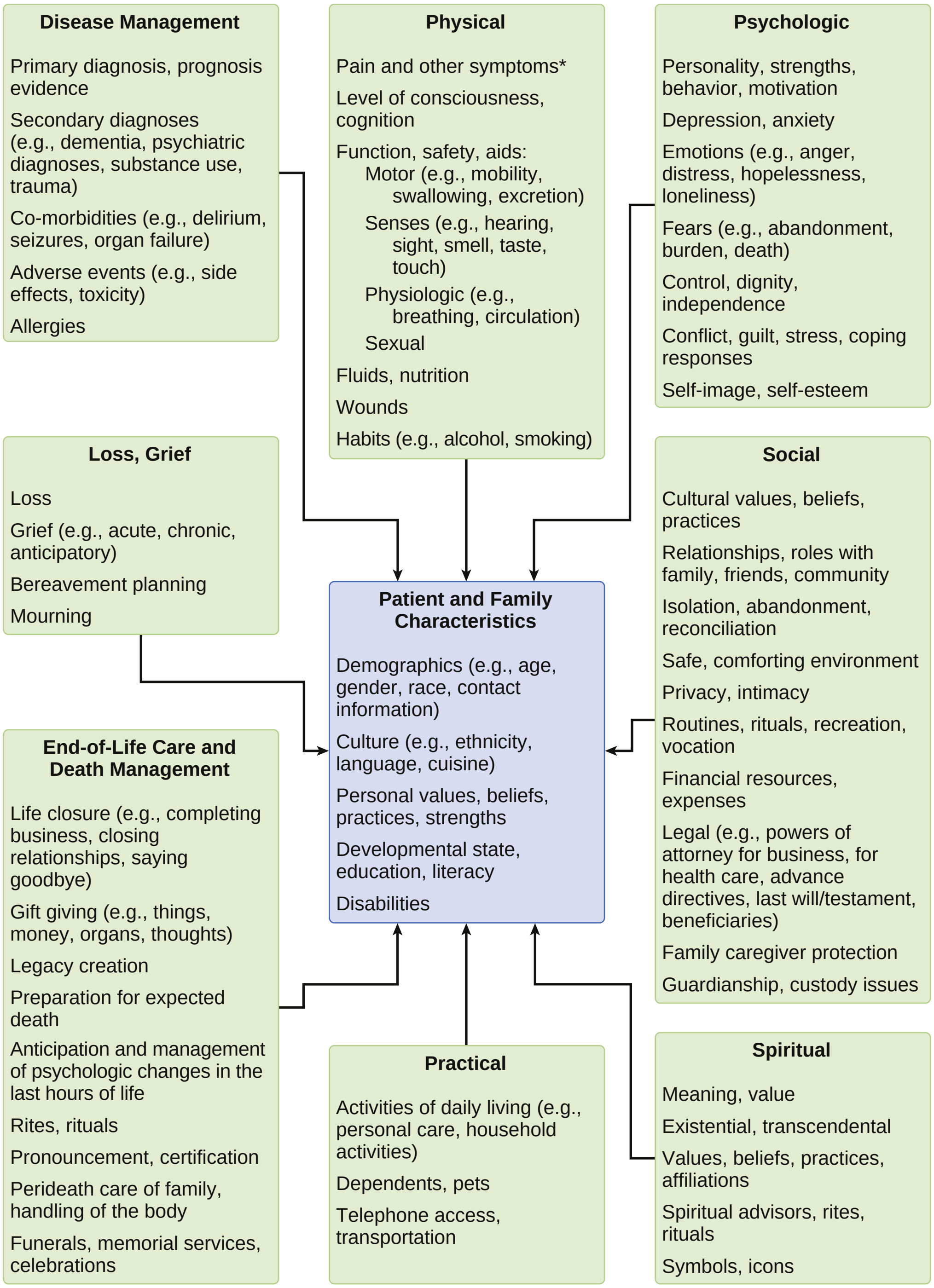

Disease Management
Primary diagnosis, prognosis evidence
Secondary diagnoses (e.g., dementia, psychiatric diagnoses, substance use, trauma)
Co-morbidities (e.g., delirium, seizures, organ failure)
Adverse events (e.g., side effects, toxicity)
Allergies
Physical
Pain and other symptoms*
Level of consciousness, cognition
Function, safety, aids:
Motor (e.g., mobility, swallowing, excretion)
Senses (e.g., hearing, sight, smell, taste, touch)
Physiologic (e.g., breathing, circulation)
Sexual
Fluids, nutrition
Wounds
Habits (e.g., alcohol, smoking)
Psychologic
Personality, strengths, behavior, motivation
Depression, anxiety
Emotions (e.g., anger, distress, hopelessness, loneliness)
Fears (e.g., abandonment, burden, death)
Control, dignity, independence
Conflict, guilt, stress, coping responses
Self-image, self-esteem
Loss, Grief
Loss
Grief (e.g., acute, chronic, anticipatory)
Bereavement planning
Mourning
Patient and Family Characteristics
Demographics (e.g., age, gender, race, contact information)
Culture (e.g., ethnicity, language, cuisine)
Personal values, beliefs, practices, strengths
Developmental state, education, literacy
Disabilities
Social
Cultural values, beliefs, practices
Relationships, roles with family, friends, community
Isolation, abandonment, reconciliation
Safe, comforting environment
Privacy, intimacy
Routines, rituals, recreation, vocation
Financial resources, expenses
Legal (e.g., powers of attorney for business, for health care, advance directives, last will/testament, beneficiaries)
Family caregiver protection
Guardianship, custody issues
End-of-Life Care and Death Management
Life closure (e.g., completing business, closing relationships, saying goodbye)
Gift giving (e.g., things, money, organs, thoughts)
Legacy creation
Preparation for expected death
Anticipation and management of psychologic changes in the last hours of life
Rites, rituals
Pronouncement, certification
Perideath care of family, handling of the body
Funerals, memorial services, celebrations
Practical
Activities of daily living (e.g., personal care, household activities)
Dependents, pets
Telephone access, transportation
Spiritual
Meaning, value
Existential, transcendental
Values, beliefs, practices, affiliations
Spiritual advisors, rites, rituals
Symbols, icons

Fig. 52.1 Aspects of illness. *Other common symptoms include, but are not limited to: Cardiorespiratory: breathlessness, cough, edmea, hiccups, apnea, agonal breathing patterns Gastrointestinal: nausea, vomiting, constipation, obstipation, bowel obstruction, diarrhea, bloating, dysphagia, dyspepsia Oral conditions: dry mouth, mucositis Skin conditions: dry skin, nodules, pruritis, rashes General: agitation, anorexia, cachexia, fatigue, weakness, bleeding, drowsiness, effusions (pleural, peritoneal), fever/chills, incontinence, insomnia, lymphedema, myoclonus, odor, sweats, syncope, vertigo (Modified from Ferris FD, Balfour HM, Bowen K, et al. A model to guide patient and family care: based on nationally accepted principles and norms of practice. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;24:106–123.)

hospice and palliative care fellows each year are from anesthesiology.[10a,b]

WHY IS PALLIATIVE MEDICINE NEEDED?

The combination of an aging population and medical advancement has contributed to an increase in the number of patients with chronic illnesses. In the United States, Medicare expenditures currently exceed $600 billion, with 42% of Medicare expenses going to 5% of patients.[11] Many of these patients have multiple comorbidities, repeated or prolonged hospitalizations, or a life expectancy of less than 1 year, which make many of them appropriate for hospice or palliative care services.[12]

Patients with serious illnesses have a significant symptom burden, most often involving pain, dyspnea, anxiety, and

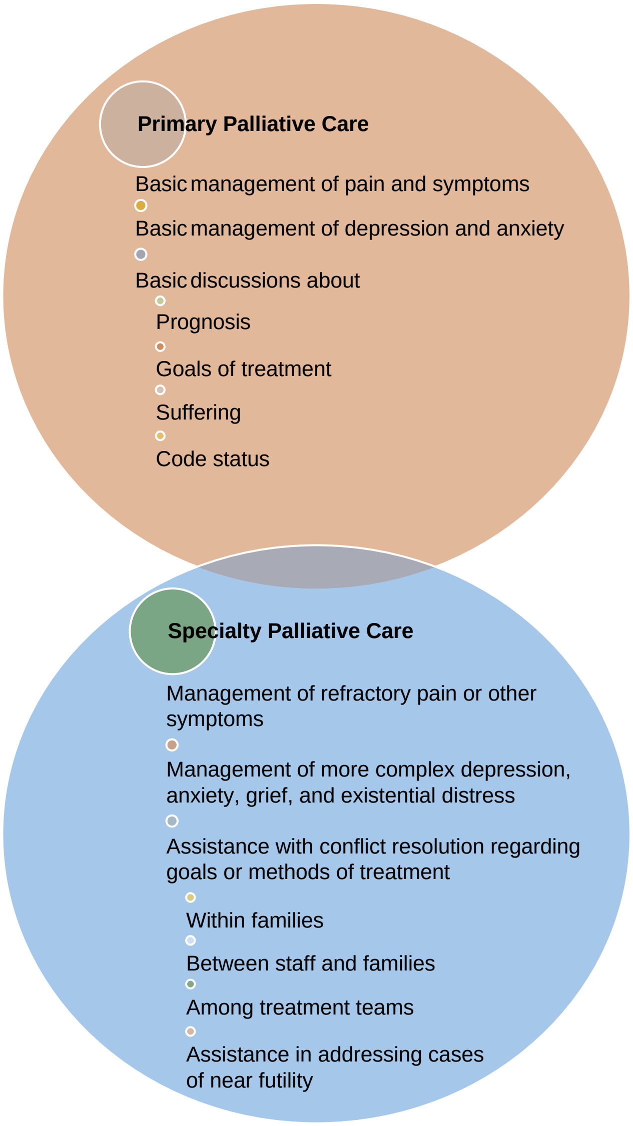

Primary Palliative Care
Basic management of pain and symptoms
Basic management of depression and anxiety
Basic discussions about
Prognosis
Goals of treatment
Suffering
Code status
Specialty Palliative Care
Management of refractory pain or other symptoms
Management of more complex depression, anxiety, grief, and existential distress
Assistance with conflict resolution regarding goals or methods of treatment
Within families
Between staff and families
Among treatment teams
Assistance in addressing cases of near futility

Fig. 52.2 Representative skill sets for primary and specialty palliative care. (Modified from Quill TE, Abernethy AP. Generalist plus specialist palliative care–creating a more sustainable model. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:1173–1175.)

depression, and their family members report similar concerns.[13] Pain control during a life-limiting illness is often a major concern for patients and their families, and unfortunately, several surveys have found that they are often dissatisfied with the quality of pain control.[13,14] Patients and families also describe poor communication with health professionals, particularly in the setting of conversations regarding prognosis.[15] Palliative care, with its emphasis on symptom management and goal setting, attempts to address these concerns.

WHY IS PALLIATIVE MEDICINE IMPORTANT TO ANESTHESIOLOGISTS?

As patients who are older and more seriously ill undergo surgery,[16] anesthesiologists should develop an understanding of the concepts of palliative medicine. Anesthesiologists have specific skills in symptom management that may benefit the patient, and they have a unique perspective on the surgical process that can provide insight to palliative medicine and surgery teams.[17] As more patients and families interact with palliative care teams, anesthesiologists should be able to discuss related concerns and to develop an anesthetic plan that includes palliative concepts, including goals of care discussions and symptom management. Additionally, many pain and critical care anesthesiologists develop this specific expertise through their frequent management of seriously ill patients.

GLOBAL PALLIATIVE CARE

Approximately one half of the countries in the world have at least one hospice or palliative care service, although most exist in larger and more developed countries. Methods and locations of palliative care delivery are widely variable throughout the world, depending on the country's infrastructure. The variation in availability is vast, from 1 physician for every 1000 inhabitants in the tiny country of Niue near New Zealand to 1 per 8.5 million inhabitants in China and 1 per 90 million in Pakistan.[18] The access to appropriate medications is often restricted and variable as well. An estimated 80% of people with pain worldwide are unable to access opioids, due to concerns about addiction or restrictive

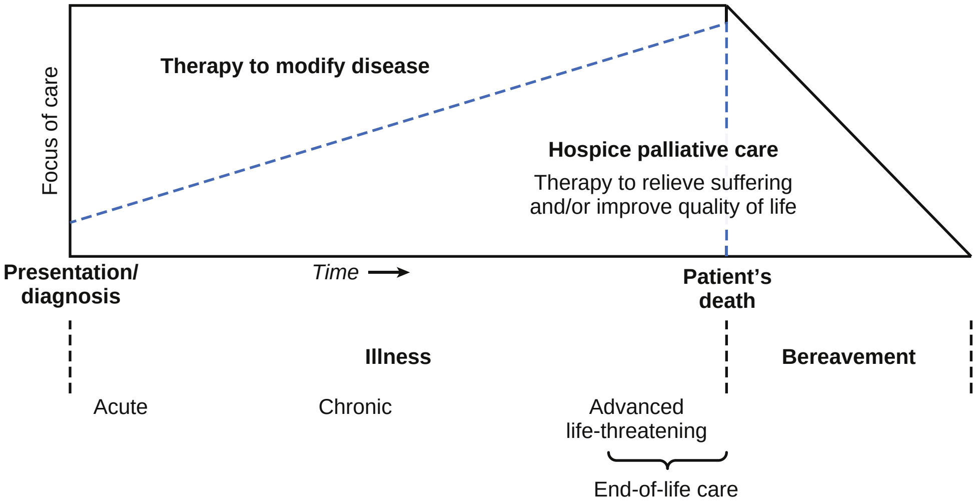

Focus of care
Therapy to modify disease
Hospice palliative care
Therapy to relieve suffering and/or improve quality of life
Presentation/ diagnosis
Time →
Patient's death
Illness
Bereavement
Acute
Chronic
Advanced life-threatening
End-of-life care

Fig. 52.3 Schematic illustration depicting the role of hospice care and palliative care during illness and bereavement. (From Ferris FD, Balfour HM, Bowen K, et al. A model to guide patient and family care: based on nationally accepted principles and norms of practice. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;24:106–123.)

national opioid policies.[19] The WHO has implemented a "Public Health Strategy for Palliative Care" that incorporates aspects of policy, drug availability, and education to customize and integrate palliative care throughout the globe.[20]

PALLIATIVE CARE TEAM

Guidelines suggest that professionals with skills to meet the patient's and family's physical, psychological, social, and spiritual needs participate in the creation of a specialized care plan. Ideally, teams are interprofessional and include a nurse, physician, social worker, and chaplain, as well as other professionals, depending on the need.[21] Many professional disciplines have developed specialized certification or training in palliative care (Box 52.1).

BOX 52.1 Members and Roles in a Palliative Care Team

Physician	Diagnoses, treats, and manages a wide variety of medical issues for patients Provides expert symptom management and consultation Provides expert skills and consultation in communication with patients who are seriously ill, their families, and other providers
Nurse	Participates in the diagnosis, treatment, and management of acute and chronic serious illnesses within his or her scope of practice Assesses the patient's psychosocial and spiritual needs in the setting of a serious illness Participates in symptom management within his or her scope of practice Uses unique skillsets to communicate with the patient, family, healthcare team, and community
Social worker	Addresses the psychosocial needs of patients and their families affected by serious illness Participates in meetings with the medical team, patients, and families Assists in complex discharge needs and communicates with community resources
Spiritual advocate	Assists patients and families in identifying and addressing spiritual distress related to serious illness Provides or facilitates appropriate spiritual or religious rituals Provides liaison services to community spiritual resources
Additional professionals who provide expertise to the palliative care team	Anesthesia pain experts Pharmacists Rehabilitation therapists Psychiatrists

Note: Roles and competencies may vary by region and training. Data from the following resources: National Association of Social Workers. The certified hospice and palliative social worker. https://www.socialworkers.org/Careers/Credentials-Certifications/Apply-for-NASW-Social-Work-Credentials/Certified-Hospice-and-Palliative-Social-Worker. Accessed March 19, 2019; Hospice and Palliative Nurses Association. http://www.hpna.org/DisplayPage.aspx?Title=Position Statements. Accessed June 20, 2013.

Board of chaplaincy certification. Palliative care specialty certification competencies. http://bcci.professionalchaplains.org/content.asp?admin=Y&pl=45&sl=42&contentid=49. Accessed June 20, 2013.

Center to Advance Palliative Care. http://www.capc.org. Accessed June 20, 2013.

Where Is Palliative Care Delivered?

In the United States, palliative care is often delivered by a consult service in hospitals or in an inpatient unit.[6] Approximately two thirds of U.S. hospitals and 85% of middle-to-large hospitals have palliative teams, but again, access varies, depending on the geography and type of hospital.[22] The south-central states have the least access to palliative care with less than one third of hospitals in Arkansas, Mississippi, and Alabama reporting a palliative care team. By contrast, the northeast has the best access to palliative care. All hospitals in New Hampshire and Vermont report palliative care programs, as do 89% in Rhode Island and 88% in Massachusetts. While cancer patients who are admitted to the hospital may have high mortality and often have symptoms that are difficult to manage, only 20% to 26% of U.S. cancer centers offer dedicated palliative care inpatient beds.[6,23] Palliative care clinics are increasingly available, but home palliative care for patients who are not eligible for hospice is rare in the United States due to lack of reimbursement.[6]

INPATIENT PALLIATIVE CARE TEAMS

Outcomes With Palliative Care Teams

Inpatient palliative care teams reduce hospital costs and resource utilization. A retrospective study of six hospitals with well-established palliative care teams showed a decrease of $1700 per admission for patients discharged alive and $5000 for patients who died.[23a] A study of Medicaid beneficiaries showed hospital costs decreased by an average of $6900 during an admission once palliative care teams became involved with reduced intensive care unit (ICU) length of stay[24] and fewer ICU deaths.[25] A cohort study of over 41,000 inpatients who received an inpatient palliative care consultation for goals of care showed significantly reduced future acute care costs, healthcare utilization, and 30-day readmissions when compared with a propensity-matched cohort that did not receive a palliative care consultation.[25a] Studies examining inpatients with advanced cancer have demonstrated greater cost savings when a palliative care consultation is requested earlier in the hospital stay,[25b] and in patients with more comorbidities.[25b] Earlier palliative care consultations also help to facilitate building consensus around goals of care and use of invasive means to support life.[26] Inpatient palliative care teams improve patient-centered outcomes including quality of life,[27] patient and caregiver satisfaction,[27] and, to a variable degree, symptoms.[28,29] Importantly, palliative care consultation does not increase in-hospital mortality,[24,30] and even has been shown to lead to fewer days in the hospital and fewer inpatient deaths.[30a] This fact may be important for families and patients who incorrectly view palliative care as hastening death.

When to Consult Palliative Care Teams

Basic palliative care knowledge and skills are necessary for all clinicians; however, certain situations call for the expertise of a palliative care specialist. A variety of indicators have been developed to help physicians decide when a specialty palliative care assessment should be performed. Patients' palliative care needs should be assessed first by the treating physician, then a consultation with a palliative medicine specialist should follow when warranted. The presence of a potentially life-limiting (e.g., multiorgan failure, major trauma, sepsis) or life-threatening condition (e.g., metastatic cancer, cirrhosis, chronic renal failure) serves as the foundation for specialty palliative care involvement.[31] The palliative care candidate should also fit at least one additional criterion, such as frequent hospital admissions for the same condition, functional decline, or an ICU stay of 7 days or longer. More specific consultation criteria should take into account the local hospital system, resources, and patient population. Each hospital should develop a procedure for identifying patients who would benefit from palliative care consultation,[31] which often includes assistance with symptoms that are difficult to control, complex decision making, and provider or family support.

Palliative Care in the Surgical Intensive Care Unit

The three main models of palliative care integration in the ICU are the consultative model, the integrative model, or a hybrid model.[32] In the consultative model, a specialist palliative care team makes recommendations to the primary physician regarding the care of the patient. In the integrative model, the surgeon or intensivist identifies and addresses issues related to palliative care without specialist input. Hybrid models that combine the two approaches above also exist. The most effective model is not clear at this point and is often determined by hospital resources and culture.

Many quality improvement efforts have been proposed to improve palliative care integration into ICUs.[32a] One such effort involved screening of critically ill patients followed by direct communication between palliative care providers and intensivists for patients meeting prespecified criteria. This led to increased palliative care consultations in the medical intensive care unit (MICU) by 113% and in the surgical intensive care unit (SICU) by 51% over a 1-year timeframe.[32b] Although initial palliative care efforts and research have focused on MICUs, increased attention is being focused on providing palliative care to appropriate patients in the SICU.[32]

Trigger Criteria in the Surgical Intensive Care Unit

Surgical patients who die in the ICU often follow one of two courses. The first is characterized by a prolonged hospital stay with multiple transitions between acute care and ICU settings and intervening periods of prognostic uncertainty, while the second often occurs in trauma patients or other more acutely ill surgical patients with a rapidly declining course.[32] One study of patients in a trauma ICU showed that early assessment of patient and family preferences and early interdisciplinary meetings led to unchanged mortality, do not resuscitate (DNR) orders, and withdrawal of life support; however, the DNR and withdrawal orders were completed earlier in the hospital stay, and the ICU length of stay decreased in patients who ultimately died.[26] Focus on identification of appropriate palliative care consultations early in the hospital course is increasingly important, particularly in the former group.

Use of trigger criteria, in which the presence of one or more predefined patient risk factors results in automatic palliative care consultations, has shown encouraging results.[24] In a broad population of critically ill patients, the use of specific screening criteria to proactively initiate a palliative care referral decreases ICU resources utilization without affecting mortality.[32c] Employment of these screening or trigger criteria encourages proactive and systematic patient screening, thereby eliminating the biases of individual providers in identifying patients that would benefit from palliative care team involvement.[32] For example, one study examined the effect of implementing a structured palliative care intervention followed by an interdisciplinary family meeting within 72 hours of admission for all liver transplant service patients admitted to the SICU.[32d] After the intervention, increases were seen in goals of care discussions on rounds, documented patient code status, and withdrawal of life support, whereas decreases were seen in time to placing a DNR order and ICU length of stay. There was no difference in mortality, and family members indicated that they had more time with their loved one.[32d]

The most effective trigger criteria for palliative care consultations in SICUs have not been defined.[32] Creation of universal criteria is complicated by variation among surgical patient populations, along with many other factors. Many proposals include some combination of these considerations: lengths of stay in the ICU, the lack of improvement during the ICU stay, the patient's age, and the patient's illness.[32] One study performed in the SICU used 10 triggers based on expert opinion. These triggers included multiorgan system failure, SICU stay longer than 1 month, more than three SICU admissions during one hospitalization, and death expected during a current SICU admission.[33] This study showed no increase in palliative care consultation, but only 6% of the patients in this study met the trigger criteria, and although the attending physician was notified when a patient met the criteria, palliative care consultation was still left to the judgment of the attending physician.[33] A more inclusive screening process or a mandated palliative care referral, as observed in some of the successful medical ICU studies,[24] may have altered these results. Current recommendations suggest that referral criteria should be informed by available data but individualized for each hospital, or even each ICU, using input from stakeholders including palliative care providers, intensivists, hospital leadership, and nonphysician ICU care providers.[32c]

OUTPATIENT PALLIATIVE CARE

Outpatient palliative care clinics exist to follow patients after discharge or to provide outpatient symptom management and psychosocial support.[34] The providers, availability, and focus vary widely.[34] A landmark study by Temel in 2010 randomized 151 patients with metastatic non-small-cell lung cancer to early outpatient palliative care plus the standard oncologic care or standard oncologic care alone. Patients in the palliative care group had higher quality of life scores, as well as fewer symptoms of depression.[35] Perhaps most surprisingly to some, the patients in the palliative care group lived a median of 2.7 months longer than those in the standard care group, despite receiving less aggressive care.[35] These results and others have led to a recommendation by the American College of Chest Physicians that palliative care be introduced early in the course of disease for patients with stage IV lung cancer or a high symptom burden.[36] A systematic review of patients with a variety of terminal illnesses showed that outpatient palliative care improved depression and quality of life, reduced aggressive care at the end of life, increased advanced directives, reduced hospital length of stay and hospitalizations, and improved family and caregiver satisfaction. A Cochrane review found that while the effect sizes were small, early palliative care interventions may improve quality of life and symptom intensity in patients with advanced cancer. In 2017, because of multiple new randomized controlled studies in other cancers, the American Society of Clinical Oncology Clinical Practice Guideline expanded their recommendations for early palliative care consultation to cover all advanced cancer, not just advanced lung cancer.

Differences Between Hospice Care and Palliative Care

In contrast to palliative care, the definition of hospice care as it applies to the type of patient, the involvement of the medical team, and the setting, varies between countries.[39] In some countries, the terms hospice care and palliative care are interchangeably used, but in the United States, hospice care refers to a benefit provided by the governmental healthcare system. Patients are eligible to enroll in hospice care when their life expectancy is less than 6 months, and typically after life-prolonging treatments, such as chemotherapy, are stopped. Despite the logistic differences, the philosophy of hospice care generally focuses on reducing suffering, enhancing the quality of life, and supporting the patient and family (Fig. 52.4).

Continuous Features

- Multidisciplinary team
- Symptom management: pain, dyspnea, psychosocial
- Focus on quality-oriented care
- Family support
- Attempts to minimize suffering

Early Palliative Care	Hospice Care
• Appropriate at any stage of serious illness • Often provided in hospitals or outpatient clinics • Can be used in conjunction with "aggressive" care • Free-for-service model	• Prognosis <6 months (can be renewed every 60 days) • Focus on home-based care • Patient usually agrees to focus on comfort rather than life-prolonging treatments • Through Medicare, billed on a per-diem rate

Fig. 52.4 **Features of palliative care and hospice care in the United States.**

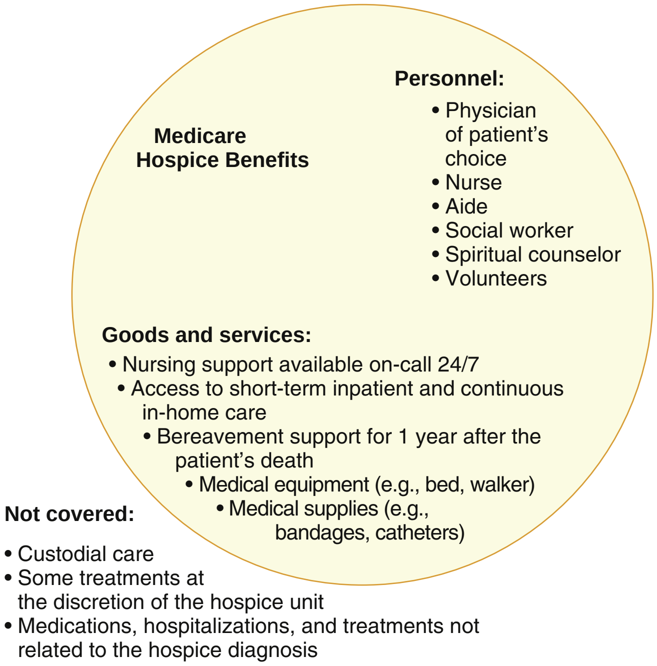

Medicare Hospice Benefits
Personnel:
• Physician of patient's choice
• Nurse
• Aide
• Social worker
• Spiritual counselor
• Volunteers
Goods and services:
• Nursing support available on-call 24/7
• Access to short-term inpatient and continuous in-home care
• Bereavement support for 1 year after the patient's death
• Medical equipment (e.g., bed, walker)
• Medical supplies (e.g., bandages, catheters)
Not covered:
• Custodial care
• Some treatments at the discretion of the hospice unit
• Medications, hospitalizations, and treatments not related to the hospice diagnosis

Fig. 52.5 **Aspects of the Medicare hospice benefits.**

HOSPICE CARE IN THE UNITED STATES

In the United States, hospice is a per-diem capitated payment system for a defined set of services for patients with a life expectancy of 6 months or less, as agreed on by two physicians.[40] Medicare pays for approximately 80% of hospice care in the United States, and many private insurers have established similar guidelines. These services include visits to a patient's residence by a nurse (the main provider of clinical care[41]), aide, social worker, and chaplain.[40] Family members are also eligible to receive a year of bereavement counseling.[40] Continuous care and short-term hospital admission are available for patients with uncontrolled symptoms. A core set of requirements for the hospice benefit exists (Fig. 52.5). However, beyond these requirements, each hospice unit can decide which treatments to cover, and this coverage can vary widely. For example, some hospice organizations may cover palliative radiation treatments, whereas others may not. Patients who outlive their 6-month prognoses may have their benefits extended in 60-day increments after a face-to-face visit with a physician, recertifying that the patient continues to meet hospice criteria.

Who Is Eligible for Hospice Care?

To qualify for hospice, an attending physician and a hospice medical director must certify that the patient's prognosis is less than 6 months if the disease runs its normal course.[40] Medicare has created guidelines that describe eligibility criteria for hospice services, although the opportunity for interpretation does exist. For example, the criteria for a patient with chronic lung disease include disabling dyspnea at rest, poor response to bronchodilators, hypoxemia at rest, and repeated hospitalizations for emergency department visits.[41] As a result of the subjectivity of some of the guidelines, some hospices may accept patients that other hospices deem ineligible. Patients are not required to have a DNR order to be enrolled in hospice.

Recipients of Hospice Care

Although patients with cancer were previously the primary recipients of hospice care, the proportion of patients receiving hospice care with noncancerous diagnoses such as dementia, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), and congestive heart failure (CHF) has increased from 16% in 1990 to 69% in 2010.[42] This increase is particularly problematic, considering the lack of good prognostic criteria for a 6-month life expectancy in some disorders, which can complicate hospice referral timing.[43] During this same period, the percentage of patients with Medicare who died while receiving hospice care increased from 5.5% to 44%,[42] yet the length of enrollment in hospice remains abbreviated. The median length of stay in hospice was 18 days in 2010,[42] and approximately one third of all hospice patients lived for less than 1 week after admission to hospice care.[41] Based on utilization review, 14.3% of Medicare patients with cancer did not enroll until the last 3 days of life.[43a] This trend toward late admission suggests that many patients are referred to hospice well after they are eligible.

Outcomes of Hospice Care

Hospice care decreases patient symptom burden[44] and increases caregiver satisfaction, with 98% of family members recommending hospice care to others.[41] A survey of over 1500 bereaved family members showed that 70% of respondents whose family member received hospice services considered the care "excellent" with less than 50% of those with decedents receiving home health services considering the care "excellent."[45] Studies related to cost effectiveness vary in their conclusions. Yet, a few studies suggest that the length of hospice use is correlated with cost savings.[44,46] A 2007 study by Taylor suggested cost savings with a hospice stay of 53 to 107 days,[46] whereas a 2013 study by Kelley showed cost savings with shorter hospice stays as well.[44] In a study looking at projected savings for beneficiaries with poor-prognosis cancers, increasing hospice utilization from 60% to 80% and increasing duration from 2 to 6 weeks could save $1.79 billion annually.[46a]

PALLIATIVE CARE AND ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

Anesthesiologists, as well as subspecialists in pain management and critical care medicine, are likely to interact with patients who are receiving palliative care services. Awareness of the goals of care in the palliative and hospice setting and what services are provided will help the anesthesiologist develop an appropriate plan based on the individual patient's goals. Critical care anesthesiologists are often called upon to aid in the determination of hospice eligibility and to help families discuss care plans. Pain medicine physicians may provide medication management and interventional procedures alongside palliative care physicians or as part of hospice benefit.

Surgery in Seriously Ill Patients

Palliative surgery has been defined as "the deliberate use of a procedure in a patient with an incurable disease with the intention of relieving symptoms, minimizing patient distress, and improving the quality of life."[51] A 2004 study of over 1000 patients with advanced cancer undergoing palliative surgery showed a 30-day morbidity of 29% and mortality of 11%, with 80% of patients experiencing improved symptoms at 30 days. A similar study by the same author in 2011 showed a significant improvement from their earlier study. Of 227 patients, there was a morbidity of 20% and mortality of 4%, with 90% experiencing symptom resolution.[51,53] The study authors attribute some of this change to better patient selection through shared decision making with patients and families.[51]

Communicating Surgery Risk in Seriously Ill Patients

Decision making concerning surgery near the end of life is complex; while some surgeries may increase quality of life or allow a patient to achieve a specific goal, others may result in excessive pain, functional decline, prolonged ICU or hospital stay, or increased use of resources without a clear benefit. A need exists to improve the quality of preoperative communication, to support decision making by surgeons and patients, and to prioritize advance care planning for patients undergoing high-risk surgery. Despite the recognized risk of performing surgery in high-risk patient populations, many patients do not have a complete understanding of the wide range of possible outcomes associated with surgery.[53a] The mental frameworks often employed by surgeons and their patients can contribute to both a lack of understanding of possible outcomes and the formation of a contractual obligation to engage in maximal life-sustaining measures after surgery.[53b-d] Both of these issues may result in provision of care that is not well-aligned with patient goals and preferences.

Communication frameworks exist that can assist in conducting preoperative conversations with patients considering high-risk surgery.[53e,f] The "Best Case/Worst Case" tool uses a shared decision-making model with a visual aid to explain the best case scenario, the worst case scenario, and the most likely outcomes related to both surgery and conservative management (Fig. 52.6).[53f] This tool allows the surgeon to elicit treatment preferences that are informed by realistic outcomes. Optimal use of the Best Case/Worst Case tool takes patient-specific comorbidities and risk factors combined with surgery-specific risk into account when explaining possible outcomes to patients considering high-risk surgery. A qualitative analysis of the Best Case/Worst Case tool using focus groups of both surgeons and older patients who had been involved in making a medical decision for themselves or their family members within the last year was conducted.[53f] From a patient perspective, the tool was seen as favorable overall in that it establishes a choice, allows visualization of distinct paths to help in decision making, and encourages deliberation based on a variety of treatment preferences. Surgeons pointed out that use of this tool provides a useful structure to guide the conversation, allows discussion of patient preferences, and may legitimize non-operative treatment options as still providing care rather than doing nothing. Use of tools such as this one may improve a patient's understanding of potential complications and consequences of choosing a

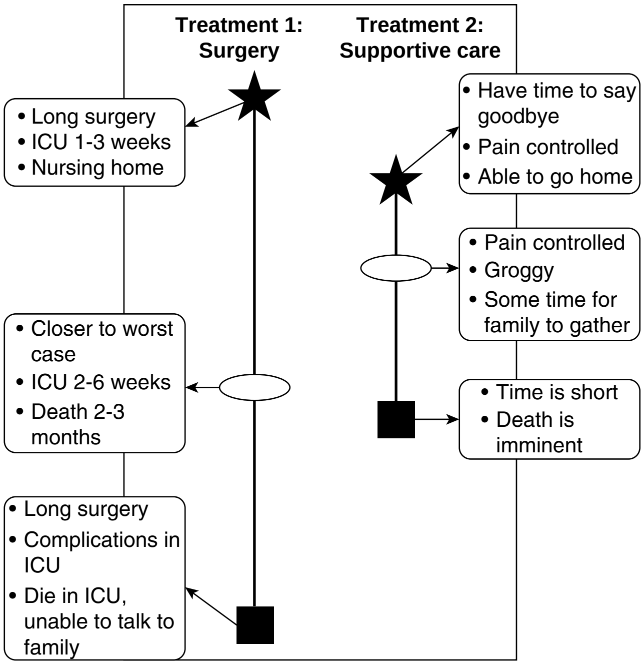


Fig. 52.6 The best case/worst case tool involves the drawing of a pen–and–paper diagram by the physician. A vertical bar depicts each treatment option, and the length of the bar represents the range of possible outcomes. A star represents the best case, a box the worst case, and an oval the most–likely outcome. The physician describes each "case" using narrative derived from clinical experience and relevant evidence and writes key points on the diagram. *ICU*, Intensive care unit. (Redrawn from Kruser J, Nabozny MJ, Steffens NM, et al. "Best case/worst case": Qualitative evaluation of a novel communication tool for difficult in–the–moment surgical decisions. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2015;63[9]:1805–1811.)

specific therapy, which allows them to elect the treatment option that is best aligned with his or her goals near the end of life.

Anesthetic Concerns in the Patient Receiving Palliative Care

PREOPERATIVE CONSIDERATIONS

A patient's decision-making capacity may change during a hospitalization or over time and should be assessed before seeking consent from the patient for anesthesia. As noted in Chapter 8, when a standing DNR order exists in a patient awaiting surgery, a discussion of the patient's goals and the creation of a plan for intraoperative and postoperative management that meets the patient's goals should occur prior to surgery. In the case of the perioperative reversal of a DNR order, a plan for when to reinstitute that order should be developed[53g] and discussed with the surgeon and nurse as appropriate.

A thorough preoperative evaluation of the patient's disease should also take place with attention to the patient's cognitive status, recent medications (including chemotherapy), presence of metastases, and wounds. Knowledge of the patient's preoperative functional status and prognosis may impact the anesthetic plan and also may inform an accurate assessment of risks and benefits. Details on special considerations in specific disease states such as cancer, COPD, and others are included in Chapter 32. Considering the number of patients receiving palliative care who may be on large doses of opioids perioperatively, anesthesiologists are advised to follow the guidelines in Chapter 51 regarding perioperative pain management.

INTRAOPERATIVE CONCERNS

Resuscitation status should be communicated to any perioperative providers caring for the patient. Consideration should be given to postoperative nausea and vomiting prophylaxis, and the care of fragile skin in this population. Patients may have coagulopathies, thrombocytopenias, or neutropenias that may preclude them from receiving regional or neuraxial anesthesia, thereby impacting their intraoperative pain management.

ANESTHETIC CHOICE AND CANCER

Recent studies have attempted to clarify the role of anesthesia in cancer progression and recurrence. Studies of the effect of regional anesthesia on those with cancer are mixed but suggest a possible mortality benefit,[53h] although meta-analyses have not found either a beneficial nor detrimental effect of regional versus general anesthesia regarding cancer recurrence.[53i] Additional discussion is available in Chapter 45. Studies that examine the choice of specific systemic anesthetics on cancer are mostly in vivo or in vitro, but available data also suggest differences in responses to tumor cells among the different drugs (Table 52.1).[53j]

POSTOPERATIVE COURSE

Standard postoperative care is adequate for most patients in palliative care. Risks for postoperative pain, delirium, and nausea and vomiting may be increased, depending on the individual patient. Providers should communicate any limitations in care and when limitations revert to their preoperative status.

Communication

Communication about goals of care and treatment preferences influence many outcomes in patients with serious illness. Better communication has been associated with improvement in quality of life, decreased use of life-prolonging therapies near the end of life, provision of care that is more consistent with patient preferences, and earlier hospice referrals.[53k] The American College of Physicians describes communication with seriously ill patients as a "low-cost, high-value intervention."[53k] The American College of Physicians recommends that communication be initiated early in the course of life-threatening illness, and ideally by a physician with an established relationship with the patient.[53k]

ADVANCE CARE PLANNING

The Patient Self-Determination Act, which took effect in the United States in 1991, requires healthcare providers and institutions to advise patients of their right to an

TABLE 52.1 Anesthetic Drugs and Host Defenses

DRUG	POTENTIAL EFFECT ON ANTITUMOR HOST DEFENSES
Ketamine	Reduces natural killer (NK) cell activity and the number in animal models
Thiopental	Reduces NK cell activity and the number in animal models
Propofol	Reduces NK cell number in animal models
Volatile agents	Inhibits interferon stimulation of NK cell cytotoxicity in animal models Reduces NK cell number in humans; is associated with worse outcomes when compared with local anesthesia for melanoma excision
Nitrous oxide	Associated with acceleration in the development of lung and liver metastases in animal models No effect on cancer outcomes after surgery for colorectal carcinoma in humans Inhibits the formation of hematopoietic cells that may be important for tumor cells
Local anesthetic drugs	Lidocaine inhibits epidermal growth factor (EGF) receptor and tumor cell proliferation *in vitro*; ropivacaine inhibits growth of cancer cells
Morphine	Inhibits cellular immunity including NK cell activity in animal models Inhibits NK cell activity in humans
Fentanyl	Inhibits NK cell activity in humans
Tramadol	Stimulates NK cell activity in animal models Stimulates NK cell activity in humans
Cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) inhibitors	Display anti-angiogenesis and antitumor effects in animal models

From Snyder GL, Greenberg S. Effect of anaesthetic technique and other perioperative factors on cancer recurrence. *Br J Anaesth.* 2010;105:106–115.

advance directive and to develop institutional policies and education regarding advance directives.[54] However, since the introduction of advance directives, multiple issues have been identified, such as amending preferences as the illness and circumstances change.[55-57] Understanding a patient's goals requires open communication with the patient and physician and sometimes repeated conversations to clarify and update the goals of treatment as the patient's condition changes. More information on advance directives and decision-making surrogates can be found in Chapter 8.

OUTCOMES OF ADVANCE CARE PLANNING

The landmark 1995 Study to Understand Prognoses and Preferences for Outcomes and Risks of Treatments (SUPPORT) was a 2-year prospective observational study, followed by a 2-year randomized trial of 9105 patients in five U.S. teaching hospitals, with the goal of improving end-of-life decision making.[14] The study enrolled patients with advanced stages of nine illnesses and a 6-month mortality of 45% to 48%. The observation period showed that 49% of patients who did not want cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) did not have a written DNR order, and that the physicians were often unaware of the patients' wishes.[14] In the intervention, prognostic data were made available to physicians, and a nurse was available to facilitate information sharing, advance care planning, and pain assessment. This intervention did not have any negative impact on physician communication, pain, use of hospital resources, or other measured outcomes.[21] Although more advance directives were documented, only 14% of the patients spoke with a physician when completing their advance directive, and only 25% of the physicians were aware of their patients' advance directives a week after hospital admission.[61] Similar studies did not demonstrate that advance directives influenced the types of care or the resources used.[62,63] These studies suggest that efforts toward increasing advance directives alone are insufficient to drive any changes in care.

Many barriers exist to advance care planning, including timing, setting, and quality of communication. Even though physicians often perceive successful communication about treatment planning with patients, data suggest that patient perceptions of treatment options and prognosis often vary considerably.[63a] For example, between 50% and 75% of patients with incurable cancer perceived that chemotherapy, radiation therapy, or surgery could lead to survival.[63a] It is not clear whether this discordance results from failure in physician communication, inability of the patient to understand and accept the information presented, or a combination of the two. Many professional organizations suggest that end-of-life care planning should begin in the outpatient setting when the patient has approximately 1 year to live.[63a] However, in reality, these discussions often do not occur until much later in the patient's course, such as when an invasive intervention such as mechanical ventilation is needed.[63b]

A variety of factors prevent use of advance directives around the time of high-risk surgery,[63c-e] including surgeon perception.[53d] Over half of the surgeons in a national survey indicated that they would not operate on a patient who expressed a desire to limit life-sustaining interventions postoperatively.[63d] However, patients who have previously undergone high-risk surgery have indicated retrospectively that a greater preoperative emphasis on three critical points would have been helpful: (1) the need for surgery versus alternative treatment options, (2) expectations for postoperative recovery, and (3) use of perioperative advance directives.[53a] This study highlights the need for communication with patients and their families around the surgical management and represents an opportunity for anesthesiologists to play a role in facilitating these conversations.

PHYSICIAN COMMUNICATION SKILLS TRAINING

The physician's approach to communication about difficult issues can affect how patients and families perceive illness, death, and treatment options. These skills are being taught as part of medical school curriculum with increasing frequency, but retention of skills tends to be low.[63f] Most physicians are less comfortable discussing code status than they are with other topics, such as consent for procedures.[64] Between 40% and 75% of physicians, depending on their level of training, assess their own knowledge of delivering "bad news" as inadequate.[65] Despite the fact that the American Board of Surgery includes basic knowledge and skills in palliative care as a requirement for board certification in surgery,[65a] only 9% of surveyed surgical residents believed they "received adequate training in palliation" during residency.[66] Similarly, as many as 90% of internal medicine residents expressed a desire for additional training in discussing topics such as DNR orders.[67] Despite this lack of training, residents often are the ones to talk about these issues with patients,[68] highlighting the importance of education in this area.

PHYSICIAN COMMUNICATION SKILLS

Physicians often rate their communication skills favorably, but surveys of other practitioners and of patients suggest that physicians may not be able to self-assess accurately. One study in an ICU showed that 90% of surgeons were satisfied with their communication skill concerning prognosis, but only 23% of intensivists and 3% of nurses rated the same skill favorably.[69] Similarly, patients' perceptions of their cancer stage and prognosis were often incorrect in one study, although oncologists thought they were clear in their explanations of the illness.[70] Recordings of physician discussions with patients and families show that physicians focus on technical detail, avoid emotional topics, and tend to dominate the conversations,[71] despite increased family satisfaction when the family spoke more and physicians exhibited more supportive behaviors.[71] Even when a conversation takes place between a physician and a patient, the physician and patient may not agree on the outcome. One study of patients with metastatic cancer showed that physicians misunderstood their patients' preferences for CPR 30% of the time.[72] Currently, no comparable studies regarding anesthesiologists have been conducted. These findings highlight the importance of assessing a patient's understanding of his or her disease process before a procedure is performed or during an ICU stay.

The Surgical "Contract"

When caring for surgical patients, it is important to understand the conceptual frameworks that frequently influence both providers and patients in their approach to care. First, many patients perceive that surgery will "fix" their acute abnormality and restore normalcy to their lives,[53f] rather than potentially contribute to further functional or cognitive decline. The potential for the latter problems is rarely discussed preoperatively. In addition, the relationships between surgeons and their patients are unique from other relationships in medicine, because many surgeons perceive an implicit "contractual" agreement to pursue maximal life-sustaining measures after surgery.[53c,d,72a] Surgeons are said to subscribe to a covenantal ethic, meaning that the surgeon takes on individual responsibility for the patient's life once he or she performs surgery.[72a] An ethnographic study examining differences in end-of-life management of surgical patients in three ICUs—one unit run by trauma surgeons, one unit co-managed by surgeons and intensivists, and one unit run by intensivists—identified divergent priorities between surgeons and intensivists. While many intensivists considered use of scarce resources more globally in their decision making, surgeons tended to focus on the individual patient only and delay withdrawal of life-sustaining treatment even when it was requested by family.[72a] Surgeons and intensivists often also delivered differing messages regarding treatment and prognosis.[72a] A study evaluating recorded preoperative conversations conducted by surgeons performing high-risk surgery found that surgeons often described high-risk surgery as "big surgery" and focused on the technical aspects of surgery during their preoperative conversations.[53b] If they discussed need for life support after surgery, they focused on standard recovery rather than potential longer-term complications (e.g., prolonged mechanical ventilation or dialysis). Furthermore, while many surgeons perceived that a contractual agreement to pursue aggressive postoperative care had been made, only rarely did they make this contract explicit with their patients.[53b] Other communication breakdowns may occur at the level of the patient (i.e., anxiety, fear, or inability to understand) or the medical system (i.e., time constraints, lack of advance care planning) and also contribute to decisions to proceed with nonbeneficial surgery.[53e] Having a good understanding of these unique communication challenges in surgical patients at the end of life may help to facilitate communication with patients, families, and the care team.

WHAT DO FAMILIES CONSIDER IMPORTANT IN END-OF-LIFE COMMUNICATION?

A majority of family members consider trust in the treating physician and truthful communication about the patient's illness as two of the most important factors in receiving quality end-of-life care.[73] Families have greater satisfaction when a higher level of decision making is shared.[74] In family meetings, family satisfaction increases with the number of empathetic statements made by a physician during a meeting.[75] Virdun and associates conducted a meta-synthesis of 16 qualitative studies examining factors that patients and families describe as important during inpatient end-of-life care.[75a] Within the theme of effective communication and shared decision making, family members identified honest and clear communication using simple, understandable language; provision of information necessary to help make decisions; and engaging both the patient and family members in care planning as priorities.[75a]

A variety of patient and family preferences influence the quantity of information desired and how to receive it. These preferences may be informed by a combination of personal, cultural, and family characteristics; however, physicians should not assume a preference based on a patient's race or ethnicity.[76] Many practitioners use a question such as, "How much would you like to know?", [77] although no studies of patient perceptions of that approach have been conducted. One study of patients with cancer indicated that some patients' preferences for involvement in decision making changed over the course of the illness.[78] A few studies have noted that caregivers wanted more information than the patients.[79] Some patients may indicate that they do not want to know about their condition and name a surrogate decision maker instead.

SPIRITUALITY AT THE END OF LIFE

Spirituality refers to the ways in which a person expresses meaning or purpose and affects an individual's sense of connectedness to the world around them. Religion may be a component of spirituality for some people, but many other aspects of spirituality also exist. Swinton and colleagues conducted a qualitative study where patients, family members, and clinicians involved in the care of 70 patients dying in the ICU underwent semistructured interviews.[79a] Respondents perceived dying as a spiritual process. They reflected that spirituality comprises an important part of a patient's narrative before, during, and after death. Serious illness and the prospect of death can bring a number of spiritual issues to the foreground for patients and families, from questioning the meaning of one's life to a religion's teaching on specific medical interventions.[80] Patients typically want physicians to ask about their spiritual preferences[81] and describe their spiritual needs as frequently remaining unmet.[82] A simple screening question such as, "Is religion or spirituality important in your life?" has been proposed and may help identify patients in whom a spiritual need exists. Asking about religion and spirituality may provide a context for the healthcare team, since many patients and families make decisions based these beliefs.[83] Physician understanding of the reasoning behind their patients' decisions is likely to improve end-of-life care.

COMMUNICATION FRAMEWORKS

The prior studies, which demonstrate frequent misunderstandings and poor communication, emphasize the need for an understanding of the importance of effective communication among all participants.[85] A number of frameworks have been developed to aid physicians in discussions with patients and families.[86-88] No study has compared their relative effectiveness on patient or family outcomes, and very few assessed the effect of a specific communication framework on outcomes.[77] Commonalities in the approaches include active listening, validating patient concerns, and assessing understanding. A recommended comprehensive conversation guide developed by synthesizing data collected in multiple qualitative studies includes the following elements: set up the conversation, assess understanding and preferences, share prognosis, explore key topics (i.e., goals, fears and worries, sources of strength, critical abilities, tradeoffs, and family), close the conversation, document your conversation, and communicate with key clinicians (Fig. 52.7).[88a]

Family Meetings

Family conferences in the ICU have increasingly been used to facilitate information sharing between families and providers. In the ICU setting, meetings held within 72 hours of admission have shown decreased lengths of stay without increased mortality.[89] One of the few studies that evaluated a standardized communication approach was a single-site study of families of patients who were seriously ill and randomized to either a standardized communication template with a bereavement brochure or the standard care.[87] The communication intervention structured around the mnemonic of VALUE (value, acknowledge, listen, understand, elicit questions) emphasizes empathy, understanding of the patient as a person, and allowing family members to ask questions.[87] Family members in the study arm had decreased symptoms of psychological distress in a survey 3 months later (Box 52.2).[87]

Many physicians struggle with how to begin family meetings. Common approaches include: introducing the family and team members, eliciting the level of understanding from family members, and briefly summarizing the purpose of the meeting; for example, "What have you been told about what's going on with your dad?".

Breaking Bad News

The six-step SPIKES (setting, perception, invitation, knowledge, empathy, sequelae) protocol is a framework for breaking bad news. Several of the elements, such as finding a quiet meeting space, asking what the patient or family understands, and making a plan for the future, apply in many situations (Box 52.3).[86] A meta-synthesis of available qualitative data suggested that breaking bad news is a skill that requires the provider to reassess and adapt the conversation based on a number of factors including the provider-patient relationship, responses from the patient and family, the environment, and cultural or social factors.[89a]

Responding to Emotion

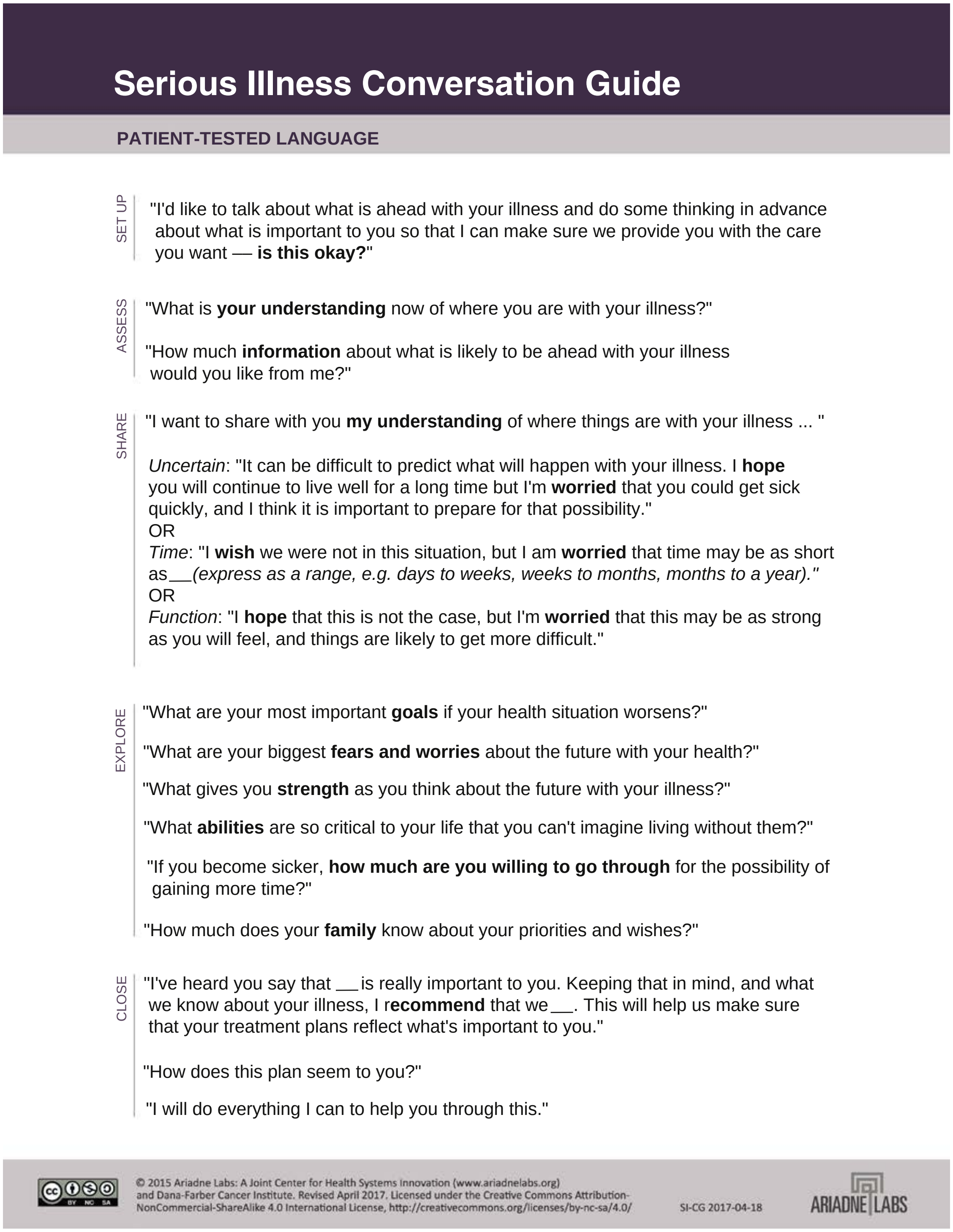
The NURSE (name, understand, respect, support, explore) protocol is a framework for responding to emotion, including anger. Patient and family anger directed toward healthcare providers is common in the setting of serious illness.[90] Crucial concepts in responding to anger include not becoming defensive or personalizing the anger, respectfully listening, and setting appropriate boundaries for safety.[90] Although difficult to accomplish in the moment, viewing anger as a coping mechanism in the grieving process is often helpful (Box 52.4).[91]

Requests for Nondisclosure

Family members may ask physicians to withhold a diagnosis from the patient. The cultural norms for disclosing a patient's diagnosis vary widely among cultures and countries. In the United States, the culture of disclosure has rapidly changed, and now most physicians expect to disclose the prognosis to the patient.[92] No evidence is available that recommends how to deal with requests for nondisclosure, but expert opinions recommend empathetically responding to the family member, trying to understand the family's concerns about disclosing the prognosis, and asking the patient how and if he wants to be involved. For example, "Some people want to be told about any health issues and make their own decisions, while others prefer for a family member to be told the medical information and to make the decisions. What would you like?"[93]

Time-Limited Trials

In cases where the benefit of a clinical intervention is unclear for a specific patient, a time-limited trial, in which



Serious Illness Conversation Guide

PATIENT-TESTED LANGUAGE

SET UP

"I'd like to talk about what is ahead with your illness and do some thinking in advance about what is important to you so that I can make sure we provide you with the care you want — **is this okay?**"

ASSESS

"What is **your understanding** now of where you are with your illness?"

"How much **information** about what is likely to be ahead with your illness would you like from me?"

SHARE

"I want to share with you **my understanding** of where things are with your illness ... "

Uncertain: "It can be difficult to predict what will happen with your illness. I **hope** you will continue to live well for a long time but I'm **worried** that you could get sick quickly, and I think it is important to prepare for that possibility."
OR
Time: "I **wish** we were not in this situation, but I am **worried** that time may be as short as___*(express as a range, e.g. days to weeks, weeks to months, months to a year)."*
OR
Function: "I **hope** that this is not the case, but I'm **worried** that this may be as strong as you will feel, and things are likely to get more difficult."

EXPLORE

"What are your most important **goals** if your health situation worsens?"

"What are your biggest **fears and worries** about the future with your health?"

"What gives you **strength** as you think about the future with your illness?"

"What **abilities** are so critical to your life that you can't imagine living without them?"

"If you become sicker, **how much are you willing to go through** for the possibility of gaining more time?"

"How much does your **family** know about your priorities and wishes?"

CLOSE

"I've heard you say that ___ is really important to you. Keeping that in mind, and what we know about your illness, I **recommend** that we___. This will help us make sure that your treatment plans reflect what's important to you."

"How does this plan seem to you?"

"I will do everything I can to help you through this."

© 2015 Ariadne Labs: A Joint Center for Health Systems Innovation (www.ariadnelabs.org) and Dana-Farber Cancer Institute. Revised April 2017. Licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 4.0 International License, http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/4.0/

SI-CG 2017-04-18

Fig. 52.7 Serious illness conversation guide. (2015 to 2017 Ariadne Labs: A Joint Center for Health Systems Innovation [www.ariadnelabs.org] between Brigham and Women's Hospital and the Harvard T.H. Chan School of Public Health, in collaboration with Dana-Farber Cancer Institute. Licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 4.0 International License, http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/4.0/.)

the physician and patient or family agree to reevaluate the benefit after a specified period, may be helpful.[94] Time-limited trials give families a sense of when the health-care team expects to know whether an intervention is helping and creates the expectation that the issue will be readdressed.

RESUSCITATION STATUS

Outcomes of Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation

CPR was introduced around 1960, initially as a treatment for intraoperative events[95] and then expanded outside the surgical unit. Outcomes of CPR have improved, with over

BOX 52.2 VALUE: Framework for End-of-Life Conferences

Value: Value and appreciate what the family member says. "Thank you for helping me understand how your husband's condition has changed over the past year."

Acknowledge: Acknowledge emotions. "This is often a sad time for families."

Listen: Actively listen. Remember to be silent and to give the family member time to speak.

Understand: Gain an understanding of the patient. Ask who the patient is as a person. "Can you tell me about your father, what kind of person he is and what's important to him?"

Elicit questions: Ask family members if they have questions. "We have discussed a lot of information. Do you have any questions?"

Data from Lautrette A, Darmon M, Megarbane B, et al. A communication strategy and brochure for relatives of patients dying in the ICU. *N Engl J Med.* 2007;356:469–478.

BOX 52.3 SPIKES: Framework for Breaking Bad News

Setting: Arrange for a quiet, private space large enough for all participants.

Perception: Assess the participants' understanding. "What have the doctors told you about your wife's illness?"

Invitation: Ask how much information is desired. "Some people like all the details, others just like the big picture. What would you like?"

Knowledge: Tell the participants what is known, using language that is easy to understand and avoiding the use of complex medical phrases.

Empathy: Acknowledge emotions. "I wish things were different."

Sequelae: Agree on the next steps. "Let's meet tomorrow afternoon so I can update you on her condition."

Data from Baile WF, Buckman R, Lenzi R, et al. SPIKES–A six-step protocol for delivering bad news: application to the patient with cancer. *Oncologist.* 2000;5:302–311.

BOX 52.4 NURSE: Framework for Dealing with Emotion

Name: State the emotion you believe the patient or caregiver is exhibiting. "It seems like you are angry."

Understand: Empathize with and legitimize the emotion. "I can't imagine how hard this must be for you."

Respect: Praise the patient or caregiver for his or her strength. "You've done so much for your mother during this difficult time."

Support: Show support. "I want to help."

Explore: Ask the patient or caregiver to elaborate on the emotion. "Can you help me understand what was so frustrating today?"

Data from Back AL, Arnold RM, Baile WF, et al. Approaching difficult communication tasks in oncology. *CA Cancer J Clin.* 2005;55:164–177.

half the patients who suffer in-hospital cardiac arrest surviving the initial resuscitation and nearly one quarter surviving to discharge.[96] Survival is better for patients with a shockable initial rhythm (37%) when compared with pulseless electrical activity (12%) or asystole (11%),[96a] with time to defibrillation representing a critical factor in patient outcome.

Approximately 85% of cardiac arrests in surgical patients occur postoperatively, and this patient population may have a higher likelihood of survival than other groups of patients.[97,98] In one large study of older surgical patients who survived to discharge after in-hospital CPR, approximately one half had moderate-to-severe neurologic defects[99] and 60% were alive 1 year later.[99] Induced mild hypothermia improves neurologic outcome after cardiac arrest, but benefits are better demonstrated in the out-of-hospital arrest population.[99a] Data increasingly suggest that there are gender differences between outcomes after cardiac arrest. A study comparing outcomes in men and women after cardiac arrest showed that women who survived to discharge after cardiac arrest had worse cognitive, functional, and psychiatric outcomes after multivariate adjustment for multiple confounders.[99b]

Resuscitation Status Discussions

Discussion of resuscitation status can be challenging to some providers.[64] Anesthesiologists may be involved in conducting discussions related to resuscitation status with patients in the ICU or in the perioperative period. Ideally, the discussion about code status takes place in the context of a conversation about the patient's overall health and goals. For example, one patient might decide on life prolongation as a goal, in which case a physician might recommend resuscitation attempts even if unlikely to succeed, whereas another patient with the same illness might prioritize physical independence as a goal, in which case the physician might recommend a DNR order to decrease the likelihood of prolonged ICU time or an unacceptable physical status. The impact of this approach is unknown. A small simulated study that played a standardized video of a code status discussion to cancer patients showed no difference between asking the patient his or her desired resuscitation status or making a suggestion for DNR order.[100] The few studies that formally examine the best way to approach discussions regarding resuscitation do not clearly demonstrate a single best approach.[95] For example, one study examined using the terminology "allow natural death" instead of "do not resuscitate" with terminal cancer patients and did not show that either term was favored over the other.[100a]

Perioperative Limitations on Treatment

The American Society of Anesthesiologists has published guidelines related to orders for the limitation of treatment in the perioperative setting.[101] The ethics of perioperative DNR orders are discussed more comprehensively in Chapter 8.

Prognosis

Multiple studies have examined the ability of physicians to prognosticate survival for a given patient. In a meta-analysis of eight studies in patients with a median survival of 4 weeks, physicians overestimated the prognosis by approximately 30%.[108] Predictions were more accurate in patients with poorer performance status.[108] In a prospective cohort study of 365 physicians and 504 patients receiving hospice care, the physicians overestimated survival by a factor of 5, and 63% of their predictions were overestimates.[109] The longer a physician knew a patient, the more difficult it was for that physician to prognosticate.[109] Physicians in the ICU tend to be overly pessimistic. In a study of 851 patients receiving mechanical ventilation, only 71% of patients for whom a physician estimated a likelihood of survival of less than 10% at some point during their stay in the ICU died in the ICU.[110] A meta-analysis suggested that physicians are more accurate at predicting mortality than algorithmic scoring systems (described in the "Prognostic Tools" section) in the first 24 hours after ICU admission; however, neither physicians nor scoring systems are reliably accurate for individual patients.[111] Overall, physician estimates do correlate with survival[112] and are more accurate in predicting mortality than other outcomes such as return to cognitive baseline.[112a] For example, a study of 521 patients in a MICU found that physicians and nurses were unable to predict satisfaction with the quality of life 6 months after admission. In general, nurses tended to be more pessimistic than physicians and suggested withdrawal of life-sustaining treatment more often in patients who ultimately survived (Figs. 52.8 and 52.9).[113] Prognostic tools that include clinician assessment are better than tools that rely on objective data alone, but the best predictions arise when multiple providers (physicians and/or nurses) agree on the prognosis.[113a]

Difficulty with prognostication has led some physicians to avoid giving any kind of timeframe to eliminate the possibility of being wrong.[114,115] However, 87% of 179 surrogate decision makers wanted the physician to give a prognosis, even if it was uncertain.[116] Most understood the inherent unpredictability of prognostication and preferred that physicians make the prognostic uncertainty clear during the discussion.[116] Prognosis, even in the face of uncertainty, can help families prepare for bereavement and make important decisions about coordinating work, visitors, and finances.[116] Good data suggesting how to present prognoses to patients are not available. One approach to prognostication involves giving ranges such as hours to days, days to weeks, weeks to months, and months to years, with those categories roughly tracking with functional status. These ranges, along with an explanation from the physician about the difficulty of prognosticating, can often give families sufficient guidance with which to make important decisions. However, interpretation of a given prognosis may vary with the patient and family. One study that gave surrogate decision makers in the ICU hypothetical physician statements about prognosis and asked them to interpret them showed that surrogates tended to be optimistic, especially with worse prognoses.[117]

DISEASE TRAJECTORIES

Most disease trajectories can be included in one of the following functional categories: sudden extreme disability or near death; a period of good functionality, followed by a rapid, steady decline; a waxing and waning course with periods of decompensation followed by improvements; and a slow decline, starting at a low functional level (Fig. 52.10).[119] These frameworks can be useful when discussing prognoses with patients, particularly in talking to patients with conditions that are difficult to predict such as COPD and CHF.

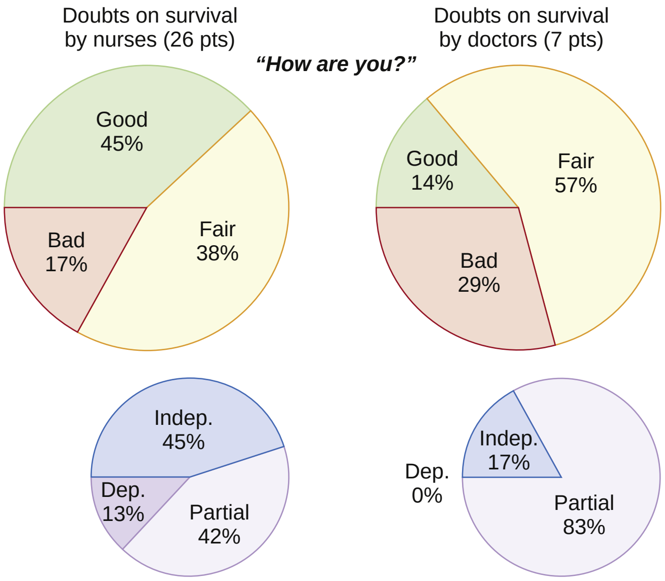


Fig. 52.8 Answers of survivors 6 months after being discharged from the intensive care unit for whom treatment had been considered futile or questionable by nurses or physicians to improve survival. *Dep.*, Dependent; *Indep.*, independent. (From Frick S, Uehlinger DE, Zuercher Zenklusen RM. Medical futility: predicting outcome of intensive care unit patients by nurses and doctors—a prospective comparative study. *Crit Care Med.* 2003;31:456–461.)

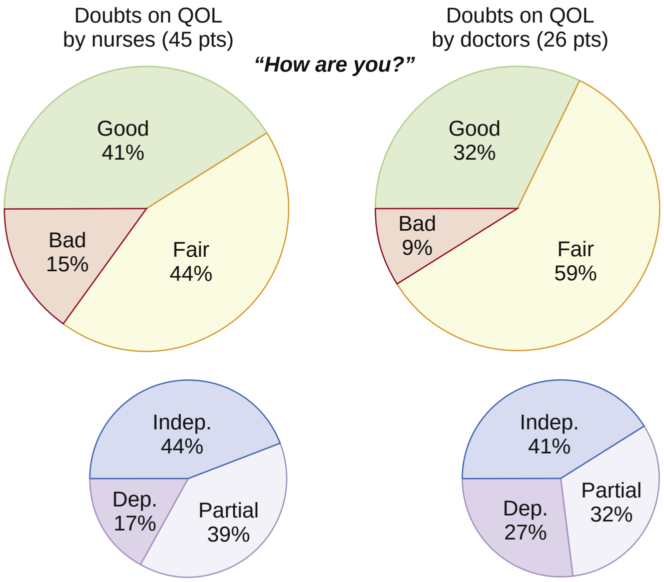


Fig. 52.9 Answers of survivors 6 months after being discharged from the intensive care unit for whom treatment had been considered futile or questionable by nurses or physicians to improve the quality of life *(QOL)*. *Dep.*, Dependent; *Indep.*, independent. (From Frick S, Uehlinger DE, Zuercher Zenklusen RM. Medical futility: predicting outcome of intensive care unit patients by nurses and doctors—a prospective comparative study. *Crit Care Med.* 2003;31:456–461.)

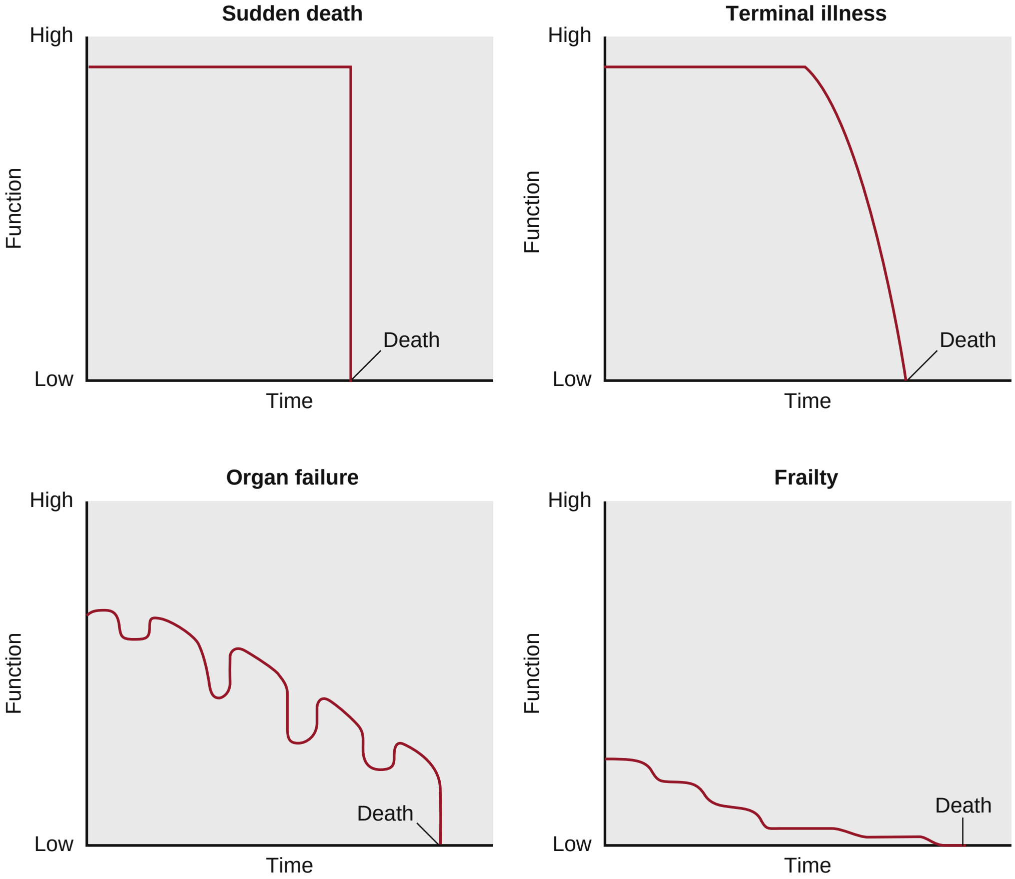


Fig. 52.10 Trajectories of dying. (From Lunney JR, Lynn J, Hogan C. Profiles of older Medicare decedents. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2002;50:1108–1112.)

PROGNOSTIC TOOLS

Multiple web-based prognostic tools exist, but they are typically specific to particular cancers. But an important consideration is that the type of cancer is actually less important than a variety of patient factors (e.g., functional status and laboratory values) as the disease becomes more advanced (Fig. 52.11).[120] In general, a patient with cancer who spends more than half of the day in bed has a median survival of 6 months (Box 52.5).[121]

Multiple tools, which are covered in depth in Chapter 84, have been proposed to help the clinician predict mortality in the ICU. These tools may be more useful in the research setting than for prediction of outcome in an individual patient.

Many conditions have courses that are difficult to predict. Table 52.2 gives characteristics associated with noncancer patients such as heart failure, dementia, hepatic cirrhosis, and COPD, with a median survival of 6 months or less,[122] although it should be noted that the prognostic accuracy of these factors is not known.

Congestive Heart Failure

CHF often has a waxing and waning course. The Seattle Heart Failure Model estimates mean 1- to 3-year survival but does not appear to be able to predict whether individual patients are in the last year of life.[123] Factors associated with a poor prognosis include hospitalization, tachycardia, hypotension, decreased ejection fraction, and increased creatinine level.[124] In patients

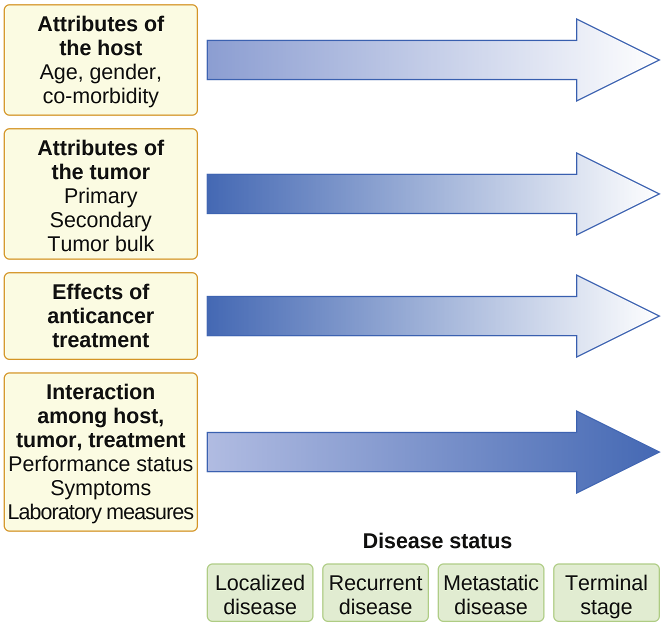

Attributes of the host
Age, gender, co-morbidity
Attributes of the tumor
Primary
Secondary
Tumor bulk
Effects of anticancer treatment
Interaction among host, tumor, treatment
Performance status
Symptoms
Laboratory measures
Disease status
Localized disease
Recurrent disease
Metastatic disease
Terminal stage

Fig. 52.11 Factors associated with the length of survival in patients with cancer. Depth of shading represents relative importance of the factor as a predictor of subsequent survival. (From Hauser CA, Stockler MR, Tattersall MH. Prognostic factors in patients with recently diagnosed incurable cancer: a systematic review. *Support Care Cancer.* 2006;14:999–1011.)

BOX 52.5 Cancer Presentations with a Median Survival of 6 Months or Less

Solid Cancers in General

Any locally advanced or metastatic solid cancer with one or more of the following presentations:

- Patient spends more than one half of the day in bed
- Serum calcium > 11.2 mg/dL
- Episode of extremity venous thromboembolism or pulmonary embolism
- Two or more brain metastases plus intracranial metastases
- Spinal cord compression with decreased ability to walk
- Malignant pericardial effusion

Carcinoma of Unknown Primary Origin

Any metastatic adenocarcinoma or undifferentiated carcinoma of unknown primary origin with one or more of the following presentations:

- Patient is ambulatory and can care for him or herself but cannot work
- Hepatic, bone, or adrenal metastases
- Recurrence of disease after chemotherapy
- Serum albumin < 3.5 mg/dL or weight loss of ≤ 10% in 6 months

Modified from Salpeter SR, Malter DS, Luo EJ, et al. Systematic review of cancer presentations with a median survival of six months or less. *J Palliat Med.* 2012;15:175–185.

hospitalized for acute decompensation of heart failure, older age and COPD were associated with decreased 1-year survival.[125]

Dementia

The course of dementia is difficult to predict, and a patient's 6-month mortality is higher once the patient develops the common problems of infection and an inability to eat.[126] Probability of death within 6 months increases with advancing age, shortness of breath, immobility, and insufficient oral intake, among other presentations.[127]

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease

The BODE Index, which is used to predict the risk of death in COPD, measures **b**ody mass index, airflow **o**bstruction, **d**yspnea, and **e**xercise capacity[128]; however, its use of a 6-minute exercise capacity test makes it impractical for the bedside anesthesiologist. More than 3 days of mechanical ventilation and an inability to extubate the trachea successfully suggest a poor prognosis.[129]

Liver Disease

In decompensated liver disease, the Model for End-Stage Liver Disease score is often used to predict a prognosis.[130] Hepatic encephalopathy and hepatorenal syndrome are also predictors of a poor prognosis.[130,131]

Renal Disease

Patients with chronic kidney disease on dialysis will live 16% to 33% as long as age- and sex-matched patients who are not on dialysis.[132] Probability of survival at 10 years for patients on dialysis who are older than 65 years of age is 3.1%.[132] Poor functional and nutritional status, as well as comorbid conditions, suggest a poor prognosis.[132] Withdrawal of dialysis accounts for up to 20% of deaths in patients on dialysis each year, and the average patient lives 8 to 12 days after dialysis withdrawal.[133]

SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT

Alternative Routes of Drug Delivery

Many patients near the end of life are unable to swallow oral medications as a result of oral lesions, nausea, the dying process, or other reasons. Many patients in palliative and hospice care have difficult intravenous access as a result of frequent medical care, dehydration, or other issues. To avoid multiple attempts at intravenous cannulation, palliative medicine practitioners and most hospices use subcutaneous infusions for the delivery of medications, especially opioids.[136,137] An assumption of safety is based, in part, on studies showing that many intramuscular injections are actually administered into the subcutaneous tissue.[138] In addition, other types of drugs such as benzodiazepines, some antiemetic medications, antibiotics, neuroleptics, and even fluids can be subcutaneously administered in the palliative care setting.[136,137,138a] While the subcutaneous administration of opioids is safe, the optimal conversion ratio from one route to another is a subject of debate.[139] Other studies support the transmucosal, sublingual, and rectal administration of opioids.[139] Finally, neuraxial drug delivery via continuous epidural infusions or intrathecal pumps can be utilized, particularly for intractable pain.[139a]

Pain

Pain management in patients who are seriously ill can be quite different from other patients with pain. Some of these patients have pain that is best managed by a pain management specialist, and some will need adjuvant medications (Table 52.3). In cancer patients, 15% to 90% with solid tumors have pain, depending on the type and stage of cancer, as well as the age, race, and sex of the patient.[144] Most cancer pain is due to the cancer itself, but approximately one fifth of patients develop pain related to the cancer treatment.[145] The majority of cancer pain can be managed with the WHO "Cancer Pain Stepladder."[146] Zech published a prospective study of 2118 cancer patients using this stepladder during which 76% of the patients received pain relief with minimal side effects.[146] However, pain management may be significantly more challenging for patients with advanced cancer. Sixty to 90% of this population report pain that significantly impacts function, mood, and sleep. Pain of this severity may benefit from more advanced techniques such as interventional pain medicine (see Chapter 51),[146a,b] psychological interventions,[147] or palliative chemotherapy or radiation therapy.

Bone Pain

Breast, lung, kidney, and prostate cancers frequently metastasize to the bones.[148] Patients with metastatic disease can have both osteoblastic and osteolytic bony lesions leading to severe pain.[149] Multiple targets for bone pain are possible, but no clear consensus has been reached on the best treatment methods.[150] Hormonal therapy is effective in breast, prostate, and endometrial cancers. Interventional techniques such as intrathecal catheters

TABLE 52.2 Presentations of Noncancer Diagnoses With a Median Survival of 6 Months or Less

Diagnosis	Presentation
HEART FAILURE	
Hospitalization for moderate-to-severe symptomatic heart failure, NYHA Class III or IV, with three or more of the presentations listed.	■ Age >70 years ■ LVEF ≤20% ■ Serum BNP > 950 pg/mL ■ Cardiac troponin I > 0.4 ng/mL ■ CRP >3.5 mg/L ■ Fourth hospitalization for heart failure or repeat hospitalization within 2 months ■ Dependency for two or more activities of daily living or need for home care after hospital discharge ■ Weight loss ≤2.3 kg within 2 months, or serum albumin < 2.5 g/dL ■ History of cardiogenic shock, ventricular or supraventricular arrhythmia, cardiac arrest, CPR, or mechanical ventilation ■ Systolic blood pressure < 110 mm Hg ■ Serum creatinine > 2 mg/dL or BUN > 40 mg/dL ■ Serum sodium < 135 mEq/L ■ Peripheral vascular disease or cerebrovascular disease ■ Other comorbid illness, such as diabetes mellitus, dementia, COPD, cirrhosis, and cancer, among others
DEMENTIA	
Advanced dementia with dependency in all activities of daily living, bedbound status, urinary and bowel incontinence, decreased ability to communicate verbally, and admission to a hospital or skilled nursing facility with one or more of the presentations listed.	■ BMI < 18.5 kg/m^2, decreased oral intake, or significant weight loss ■ Presence of at least one pressure ulcer ■ Evidence of at least one comorbid illness ■ Male sex plus > 90 years of age ■ Placement of a feeding tube attributable to inability to eat or history of aspiration
HEPATIC CIRRHOSIS	
Decompensated hepatic cirrhosis and one or more of the presentations listed.	■ MELD score ≥21
Decompensated hepatic cirrhosis with hospitalization for an acute illness related to liver disease and one or more of the presentations listed.	■ MELD score ≥18 ■ Hospitalization in an intensive care unit related to severe decompensation of liver disease with hypotension requiring the use of pressors, serum creatinine > 1.5 mg/dL, or evidence of jaundice ■ Evidence of hepatopulmonary syndrome or rapidly progressive hepatorenal syndrome
CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE	
Hospitalization for a severe COPD exacerbation, with PaO_2 ≤55 mm Hg, $PaCO_2$ ≥50 mm Hg, and supplemental oxygen dependence, with three or more of the presentations listed.	■ Age >70 years ■ Evidence of right-sided heart failure ■ Repeat hospitalization for COPD within 2 months ■ History of intubation and mechanical ventilation ■ Required considerable assistance and frequent medical care and/or dependence for three or more activities of daily living before hospitalization ■ Need for home care after hospital discharge ■ Malnutrition (weight loss of ≥ 2.3 kg, serum albumin < 2.5 g/dL or BMI < 18 kg/m^2 ■ Serum creatinine > 2 mg/dL

BMI, Body mass index; *BNP,* brain natriuretic peptide; *BUN*, blood urea nitrogen; *COPD,* chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; *CPR*, cardiopulmonary resuscitation; *CRP,* C-reactive protein; *LVEF,* left ventricular ejection fraction; *MELD,* Model for End-Stage Liver Disease; *NYHA,* New York Heart Association; *$Paco_2$*, partial arterial pressure of carbon dioxide; *Pao_2*, partial arterial pressure of oxygen. Modified from Salpeter SR, Luo EJ, Malter DS, et al. Systematic review of noncancer presentations with a median survival of 6 months or less. *Am J Med.* 2012;125:512 e1–6.

TABLE 52.3 Adjuvant Analgesics in the Management of Cancer Pain

	Examples	Comment
MULTIPURPOSE ANALGESICS		
Glucocorticoids	Dexamethasone, prednisone	Are used for bone pain, neuropathic pain, lymphedema pain, headache, and bowel obstruction
ANTIDEPRESSANTS		
TCAs	Desipramine, amitriptyline	Are used for opioid-refractory neuropathic pain; often used with comorbid depression; secondary amine compounds (e.g., desipramine) have fewer side effects and might be preferred
SNRIs	Duloxetine, milnacipran	Good evidence exists for their use in some conditions but are overall less effective than TCAs; better side-effect profile than TCAs and are often tried first
SSRIs	Paroxetine, citalopram	Evidence for their use is scarce; if pain is the target, then other subclasses are preferred

TABLE 52.3 Adjuvant Analgesics in the Management of Cancer Pain—cont'd

Other	Bupropion	Little evidence exists for its effectiveness but less sedating than other antidepressants; is often tried early when fatigue or somnolence is a problem
α_2-Adrenergic agonists	Tizanidine, clonidine	Are seldom used systemically because of side effects, but tizanidine is preferred for a trial; clonidine is used in neuraxial analgesia
Cannabinoid	THC/cannabidiol, nabilone, THC	Good evidence exists for THC/cannabidiol when used in cancer pain; evidence is scarce for other commercially available compounds
TOPICAL AGENTS		
Anesthetic	Lidocaine patch, local anesthetic creams	Sometimes used in localized pain
Capsaicin	8% patch; 0.25%-0.75% creams	High concentration patch is indicated for postherpetic neuralgia
NSAIDs	Diclofenac and others	Evidence exists for their use in focal musculoskeletal pains
TCA	Doxepin cream	Is used in treating itching; can be tried for pain
Others		Compounding creams with various drugs have been empirically tried, but no evidence exists for effectiveness
USED FOR NEUROPATHIC PAIN		
Multipurpose drugs	As above	As above
ANTICONVULSANTS		
Gabapentinoids	Gabapentin, pregabalin	Are used first for opioid-refractory neuropathic pain unless comorbid depression; may have multipurpose uses in view of the evidence in postsurgical pain; both drugs act as N-type calcium channel blockers in the CNS, but individuals vary in response to one or the other
Others	Oxcarbazepine, lamotrigine, topiramate, lacosamide, valproate, carbamazepine, phenytoin	Evidence is scarce for all drugs listed; newer drugs are preferred because of reduced side-effect liability, but individual variation is great; all drugs are considered for opioid-refractory neuropathic pain if antidepressants and gabapentinoids are ineffective
SODIUM-CHANNEL DRUGS		
Sodium-channel blockers	Mexiletine, intravenous lidocaine	Good evidence exists for intravenous lidocaine
Sodium-channel modulator	Lacosamide	New anticonvulsant with very scarce evidence of analgesic effects
GABA AGONISTS		
GABA_A agonist	Clonazepam	Evidence is scarce but used for neuropathic pain with anxiety
GABA_B agonist	Baclofen	Evidence for the treatment of trigeminal neuralgia is the basis for trials in other types of neuropathic pain
N-methyl-D-aspartate inhibitors	Ketamine, memantine, and others	Evidence is scarce for ketamine, but experience is positive with intravenous use in advanced illness or pain crisis; little evidence exists for oral drugs
USED FOR BONE PAIN		
Bisphosphonates	Pamidronate, ibandronate, clodronate	Good evidence exists for their use; similar to NSAIDs or glucocorticoids, usually considered first-line treatment; also reduces other adverse skeletal-related events; concern about osteonecrosis of the jaw and renal insufficiency might restrict its use
Calcitonin		Evidence is scarce but is usually well tolerated
Radiopharmaceuticals	Strontium-89, samarium-153	Evidence is good, but their use is restricted because of bone-marrow effects and the need for expertise
USED FOR BOWEL OBSTRUCTION		
Anticholinergic drugs	Hyoscine compounds, glycopyrronium	Along with a glucocorticoid, are considered first-line adjuvant treatments for nonsurgical bowel obstruction
Somatostatin analog	Octreotide	Along with a glucocorticoid, is considered a first-line adjuvant treatment for nonsurgical bowel obstruction

CNS, Central nervous system; *GABA,* gamma-aminobutyric acid; *NSAIDs,* nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs; *SNRIs,* selective noradrenaline reuptake inhibitors; *SSRIs,* selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors; *TCAs,* tricyclic antidepressants; *THC,* tetrahydrocannabinol. Modified from Portenoy RK. Treatment of cancer pain. *Lancet.* 2011;377:2236–2247.

may be appropriate in some patients.[151] Palliative radiotherapy can be helpful for patients with bone metastases, although pain relief may take several weeks.[152] Dexamethasone orally, subcutaneously, or intravenously is commonly recommended for bone pain by expert consensus, although only a few small studies support its use.[154] Bone-modifying agents, such as zoledronic acid or pamidronate, have shown benefit for bony pain in some cancers and should be considered when appropriate from an oncologic standpoint.[148,155] Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs are helpful in alleviating cancer pain, although their advantage when combined with opioids is less clear.[156] More advanced interventions such as epidural steroid injections, vertebroplasty/kyphoplasty, or surgery may be indicated.[156a]

Neuropathic Pain

Between 17% and 28% of patients with advanced cancer have neuropathic pain.[157] More information on neuropathic pain, the use of lidocaine and ketamine, and other adjuvant medications is available in Chapters 25 and 51 (see Table 52.3). As always, a patient's life expectancy should be considered, because some medications may be difficult to titrate adequately in a short period.

Pain in the Intensive Care Unit

In the ICU, pain is common and attributable to many factors such as surgical wounds, placement of invasive monitoring devices, and immobility.[158] Pain is also difficult to assess in the ICU because the trachea is intubated or the patient is unable to speak. The Behavioral Pain Scale[159] and the Critical Care Pain Observation Tool[160] are validated methods of assessing pain in the ICU population.[161] Commonalities among the tools include assessment of facial expression, body movement, and synchrony with ventilation. In the SUPPORT trial, pain was poorly controlled among those who died in the hospital, with half of the surrogates indicating that their family member had moderate-to-severe pain for at least half of the time in the 3 days before death.[14] Fortunately, a more recent study has demonstrated improved pain assessment and treatment in the ICU.[162]

OPIOID USE

Opioid use at the end of life is common, although consumption dramatically varies throughout the world.[19] In a 2012 study of 1068 patients at six U.S. medical centers, 70% of patients received an opioid in the last week of life, and 47% received opioids in the last 24 hours.[163] Some physicians are hesitant to use opioids at the end of life for fear of hastening a patient's death. A study by Morita in 2001 retrospectively analyzed opioid and sedative consumption of 209 patients in the 48 hours before death and found no difference in survival based on opiate or sedative dose.[164] A small study on the rate of increase of opioids found no correlation with time to death, although total morphine doses were relatively low overall in the study.[165] A larger study by Portenoy in 2006 showed a weak association with total opioid dose and time to death, but this association appeared to account for less than 10% of the variance even when combined with other variables.[166] Most experts believe that appropriately administered opioids do not hasten death, can be safely used, and generally do not require invoking the doctrine of double effect.[167] Some authors have urged caution with the use of opioids in patients with cancer and uncertain prognoses to decrease the risk of opioid dependence and abuse in patients with the possibility of a long life after treatment,[168] but overall, opioids should be titrated based on the clinician's assessment of the pain.

Interventional Pain Management at the End of Life

Despite the guidance provided by the WHO Stepladder,[168a] 10% to 20% of cancer patients have pain that is refractory to parenteral management.[168b,c] Select patients may benefit from interventional pain modalities.[156a] However, patients at the end of life may be more prone to bleeding from coagulopathy or thrombocytopenia and infection from immunosuppression. These issues need to be evaluated carefully by an interventional pain specialist. Abdominal pain, especially for pancreatic cancer, can be treated with celiac plexus blocks or neurolysis, while pelvic pain may be addressed with superior hypogastric blocks or neurolysis. These techniques are described in detail in Chapter 51. Less invasive modalities such as peripheral nerve blocks or trigger point injections may also be beneficial.

Neuraxial (i.e., intrathecal and epidural) analgesia can decrease numerical pain scores while significantly decreasing oral opioid intake, which may lead to fewer side effects such as constipation and sedation.[139a] In a randomized controlled trial of 202 patients with refractory cancer pain comparing comprehensive medical management versus an implantable intrathecal drug delivery system, those in the intrathecal group had significant reductions in fatigue and depressed level of consciousness. Additionally, this study showed a trend toward improved survival, with 53.9% of patients receiving intrathecal analgesia remaining alive at 6 months compared with 37.2% of the control group ($P = .06$).[168d]

NAUSEA AND VOMITING

Nausea and vomiting are common complaints in the palliative care and hospice populations and cause significant distress for patients and families.[169] Many techniques and medications used in the treatment of nausea and vomiting are similar to those used in the perioperative period. As with every patient, the first step in treating nausea and vomiting is a thorough evaluation of possible causes (Fig. 52.12). The following section highlights issues specific to patients with life-limiting diseases.

Nausea and Vomiting Related to Chemotherapy and Radiation Therapy

Many patients undergoing chemotherapy experience anticipatory nausea and vomiting. The 2011 American Society of Clinical Oncology Practice Guidelines for chemotherapy and radiation therapy include the prescription of a 5-hydroxytryptamine-3 antagonist, such as ondansetron, often with dexamethasone, and the addition of a neurokinin-1 antagonist, such as aprepitant, for the most emetogenic chemotherapy regimens.[170] Benzodiazepines may also be beneficial. For nonchemotherapy-related or radiation therapy-related nausea and vomiting, no Level 1a or 1b evidence is currently available to guide decisions on the choice of an antiemetic agent in the palliative care population. Unlike routine postoperative nausea and vomiting, patients may benefit from scheduled antiemetics with additional medications as needed.

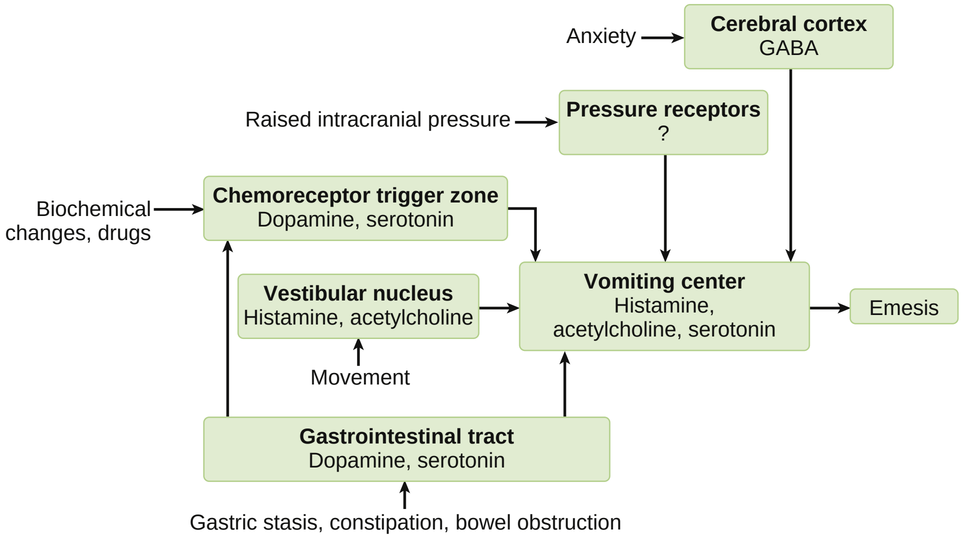


Fig. 52.12 Causes of nausea and vomiting. *GABA,* Gamma-aminobutyric acid. (From Gupta M, Davis M, LeGrand S, et al. Nausea and vomiting in advanced cancer: the Cleveland Clinic protocol. *J Support Oncol.* 2013;11:8–13.)

BOWEL OBSTRUCTION

Some patients with abdominal tumors may develop partial or complete bowel obstruction. First-line therapy consists of medical management, often with steroids and octreotide.[171] Surgical outcomes for patients with bowel obstruction and a life expectancy of less than 2 months are poor,[172] and gastrointestinal stents should be considered. Placement of a nasogastric tube should be considered for immediate relief while other options are considered. A venting gastrostomy tube is an option in patients who are refractory to treatment and can allow the patients to enjoy the taste of food while allowing gastric decompression.

ARTIFICIAL HYDRATION AND NUTRITION

Many patients receiving palliative care are unable to take in food or fluids because of nausea, dysphagia, or obstruction. The decision of whether to administer artificial hydration and nutrition is often a difficult one for patients and physicians. Both parties may hold strong cultural or religious views, and many describe a fear of "starving" the patient.[173] Symptoms of hunger are less common in advanced disease, and thirst can be treated with ice chips or mouth swabs.[174] The administration of artificial hydration and nutrition is associated with risks of fluid overload leading to choking or edema, as well as diarrhea and nausea.[175] Additional risks associated with a gastrostomy tube include dislodgement and the possible increased need for restraints.[175] The administration of enteral or parenteral nutrition and hydration is considered a medical intervention, and, as such, the risks and benefits should be discussed with patients and families.[173] The benefit of artificial hydration and nutrition has been established for patients in a persistent vegetative state or those with acute stroke or head injury, short-term critical illness, oropharyngeal cancers, and possibly bulbar amyotrophic lateral sclerosis.[176] Additionally, artificial hydration may improve symptoms of delirium in patients with cancer, although it does not influence survival in most advanced cancers.[177] The use of percutaneous feeding tubes in patients with advanced dementia does not prevent pneumonia or improve survival and is not recommended.[178,179] For some patients, a time-limited trial of artificial hydration or nutrition may be appropriate to evaluate for benefit, such as improvement in delirium, while monitoring for side effects.

DYSPNEA

Dyspnea is "a subjective experience of breathing discomfort that consists of qualitatively distinct sensations that vary in intensity,"[180] as differentiated from breathing that appears labored or fast to an observer. Dyspnea is common in patients with a high risk of death[182,183] and was identified as the most distressing symptom by patients who could self-report in the ICU, regardless of their mechanical ventilation status.[184] Dyspnea increases closer to the time of death, even in patients without known cardiopulmonary disease.[185] Treatment is either aimed at reversing the cause of dyspnea (e.g., thoracentesis for an effusion) or at symptom management. Nonpharmacologic therapy such as a fan or pulmonary rehabilitation may be helpful.[186] Studies of low-dose opioids in patients with refractory dyspnea support their safety and efficacy.[187,188] A randomized, double-blind, crossover study of 48 COPD patients who were taking 20 mg of sustained-release morphine daily showed a significant improvement in dyspnea with minimal side effects.[189] Studies of the effect of benzodiazepines with and without opioids for dyspnea are small and mixed, with a trend toward possible benefit.[190-192]

DEPRESSION AND ANXIETY IN THE PATIENT RECEIVING PALLIATIVE CARE

Depression and anxiety are common at the end of life, with estimates ranging from 5% to 30% and 7% to 13%, respectively.[198] Many factors contribute to psychological distress, including social, economic, spiritual, and

TABLE 52.4 Distinguishing Characteristics of Grief and Depression in Patients Who Are Terminally Ill

Characteristic	Normal Grief	Depression
Nature of response	Adaptive	Maladaptive
Focus of distress	In response to a particular loss; not affecting all aspects of life	Pervasive; affecting all aspects of life
Symptom fluctuations	Symptoms coming in waves, generally improving with time	Constant
Mood	Sadness and dysphoria	Protracted and constant depression or flat affect
Interests and capacity for pleasure	Interests and capacity for pleasure remaining intact; diminishing engagement in activities because of functional decline	Anhedonia with significant diminished interest or pleasure in all activities
Hope	Episodic and focal loss of hope; hopes possibly changing over time; giving positive orientation toward the future	Persistent and pervasive hopelessness
Self-worth	Maintaining self-worth, although with feelings of helplessness	Worthlessness with the belief that one's life has no value
Guilt	Regrets and guilt over specific events	Excessive feelings of guilt
Suicidal ideation	Passive and fleeting desire for a hastened death	Preoccupation with a desire to die

From Widera EW, Block SD. Managing grief and depression at the end of life. *Am Fam Physician.* 2012;86:259–264.

physical stressors associated with serious illness.[199] A rapid screening test for depression consisting of two questions, "Are you depressed?" and "Have you experienced a loss of interest in things or activities you would normally enjoy?" has a sensitivity of 91% and a specificity of 68% and has been validated in the palliative care population.[200] Patients who screen positive for depression or who have suicidal or homicidal ideations should be referred to a psychiatrist or other experienced provider. Depression should be distinguished from delirium and normal grief (Table 52.4).[201] For the anesthesiologist, recognizing depression and making appropriate referrals is important.

Treatments for depression vary by life expectancy. Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and monoamine oxidase inhibitors may be appropriate for patients with a longer life expectancy, since the time to onset is 1 to 2 months. For patients with a life expectancy of weeks to a few months, methylphenidate has been well studied in the cancer population. The onset of action is 1 to 3 days and is generally effective and well-tolerated for depression and fatigue.[202,203]

DELIRIUM AT THE END OF LIFE

Delirium is covered in depth in Chapter 65. It affects 28% to 88% of patients who are terminally ill, with increasing incidence as death approaches.[204,205] The Confusion Assessment Method has been validated in the palliative care population.[206,207] Some patients may have more than one possible cause of delirium (Box 52.6). Delirium can have a major impact on a patient's ability to make a well-informed decision about treatment options, including surgery, which may have ethical and legal implications. Most patients who recover remember being delirious, and those who do find it very distressing.[208]

As much as half of the delirium near the end of life may be reversible.[205] Increased likelihood of reversible delirium is associated with a younger age, less severe impairment, and lack of organ failure.[209] Patients with true terminal delirium have a very short life expectancy.[204] Attempts at workup should be based on the patient's goals of care (Box 52.7). For example, the family of a cancer patient

BOX 52.6 Causes of Delirium

- Metabolic disturbance
  - Hypercalcemia
  - Hyponatremia
  - Hypernatremia
  - Dehydration
  - Glycemic derangements
- Organ failure
  - Renal failure
  - Liver failure
  - Respiratory failure
- Medications
  - Opioids
  - Benzodiazepines
  - Anticholinergic agents
  - Steroids
- Sepsis
  - Pneumonia
  - Urinary tract infection
- Brain pathologic conditions
  - Tumor
  - Metastases
  - Leptomeningeal disease
  - Nonconvulsive status epilepticus
- Hypoxia
- Withdrawal
  - Alcohol
  - Benzodiazepines
- Hematologic conditions
  - Disseminated intravascular coagulation
  - Anemia

From LeGrand SB. Delirium in palliative medicine: a review. *J Pain Symptom Manage.* 2012;44:583–594.

BOX 52.7 **Evaluation of Delirium**

Determining the goals of care
Reviewing medications
Considering the possibility of withdrawal
Identifying any hematologic or metabolic abnormalities or organ failure
  Complete metabolic panel
  Complete blood count
Evaluating oxygen levels
  Oxygen saturation
Identifying infections
  Urine culture
  Blood cultures
  Chest x-ray imaging
Performing specialized testing, if appropriate
  Electroencephalogram
  Arterial blood gas
  Tests for disseminated intravascular coagulation
  Test for thyroid-stimulating hormone
  Computed tomography scan or magnetic resonance imaging scan of the brain
  Lumbar puncture

From LeGrand SB. Delirium in palliative medicine: a review. *J Pain Symptom Manage.* 2012;44:583–594.

who develops delirium but previously had an acceptable quality of life may desire a workup for potential reversible causes (e.g., urinalysis, chest x-ray study, or brain imaging), whereas the family of a patient who had previously been nearly comatose and expected to die in hours to days may not want to subject their family member to further workup.

Although delirium is often associated with agitation, hypoactive delirium, during which a patient may have decreased interaction with the environment and exhibit inattention, is likely more common than most clinicians appreciate.[210] Hypoactive delirium is considered disturbing by patients who experience it, but no consensus has been reached on whether or how to treat hypoactive delirium.[211]

While delirium is treated similarly for palliative care patients as it is for medical and surgical inpatients, there is inadequate evidence for specific recommendations on management of delirium in the palliative care settings.[211a] Conventional and atypical antipsychotics can both be used to treat delirium in palliative care.[211a] Some patients may ultimately require palliative sedation to treat terminal delirium.

BLEEDING IN THE PATIENT RECEIVING PALLIATIVE CARE

Bleeding can be caused by numerous pathologic conditions, including coagulation disorders and cancers. Fibrinolytic inhibitors such as tranexamic acid, interventional radiologic procedures such as embolization, and surgery have been suggested for patients with compatible goals and life expectancy.[212] Exsanguination in patients receiving palliative care is uncommon but can be upsetting to patients, families, and providers. No randomized trials of best treatments have been conducted. Some practical suggestions include the use of dark towels, suction, holding pressure, and staying with the patient. Medications such as benzodiazepines, opioids, and ketamine are frequently suggested during exsanguination to provide sedation and amnesia.[213]

The Dying Process

Most physicians have observed people die but may not have witnessed the dying process. Over 500,000 people die in the ICU every year in the United States alone, and more die after an ICU stay.[213a] Understanding the dying process is important because family members may ask physicians what the dying process will be like for the patient. Anesthesiologists need to be able to recognize the signs that a patient is imminently dying.

The variation in the timing with which a patient develops many symptoms is substantial, with 84% of patients being drowsy or comatose 24 hours before death, and acrocyanosis and the loss of a radial pulse occurring a median of 1 hour before death[213b] (Table 52.5). Some of the most noticeable symptoms will be cessation of oral intake, lack of responsiveness, and a build-up of oral and tracheal secretions leading to gurgling, sometimes called the “death rattle.” Terminal secretions are thought be from the airway or oropharynx that cannot be cleared because of the inability to cough or swallow.[213c] Despite widespread clinical use of antimuscarinic drugs for terminal secretions, strikingly few studies support this practice. A large study comparing atropine, hyoscine butylbromide, and scopolamine showed improvement in symptoms but no difference among those agents.[213d] A study using sublingual atropine versus placebo showed no difference.[213e] Of note, many of these small studies have multiple methodologic limitations. Family members differ in their interpretations of the sound, with some but not all finding it unsettling.[213f] Many clinicians believe the noisy breathing is not bothersome to patients because most are generally unconscious, although evidence to support this view is lacking.

WITHDRAWAL OF LIFE SUPPORT

Some patients or family members may wish to discontinue mechanical ventilation or other forms of life support. Withdrawal of life support is ethically acceptable and respects patient autonomy. Anesthesiologists can provide expertise in the management of pain and anxiety with the withdrawal of ventilation. Multiple protocols using an opioid for pain or dyspnea and a benzodiazepine for agitation or anxiety are available in the ICU for withdrawal of ventilatory support.[213g] Interestingly, studies of protocolized life support withdrawal have not demonstrated an improvement in provider perception of the quality of death.[213h,i] A pilot study evaluating the effect of the use of a protocol to guide withdrawal of life support suggested that while symptoms are generally well-controlled around the time of extubation, areas in need of improvement include documentation of family meetings and provision of emotional or spiritual support to families and staff members.[213j] This study highlights the need to devote specific attention to the nonsymptomatic needs of patients and families near the time of death, including making arrangements for rituals and family support, and involving a spiritual advisor for some families.[213g]

TABLE 52.5 Changes During the Dying Process

Changes	Exhibited Signs
Fatigue, weakness	Decreasing function Decreasing attention to hygiene Inability to move around the bed Inability to lift head off the pillow
Cutaneous ischemia	Erythema over bony prominences Skin breakdown Wounds
Pain	Facial grimacing Tension in forehead and between eyebrows
Decreasing food intake, wasting	Anorexia Poor intake Aspiration, asphyxiation Weight loss, muscle, and fat loss notable in temples
Loss of ability to close eyes	Eyelids not closed Whites of eyes show (with or without pupils visible)
Decreasing fluid intake, dehydration	Poor intake Aspiration Peripheral edema attributable to hypoalbuminemia Dehydration, dry mucous membranes or conjunctivae
Cardiac dysfunction, renal failure	Tachycardia Hypertension followed by hypotension Peripheral cooling Peripheral and central cyanosis (bluing of extremities) Mottling of the skin (livedo reticularis) Venous pooling along dependent skin surfaces Dark urine Oliguria, anuria
Neurologic dysfunction, including: Decreased level of consciousness	Increased drowsiness Difficulty awakening Nonresponsive to verbal or tactile stimuli
Decreased ability to communicate	Difficulty finding words Monosyllabic words, short sentences Delayed or inappropriate responses Not verbally responsive
Respiratory dysfunction	Change in ventilatory rate—increasing first, then slowing Decreasing tidal volume Abnormal breathing patterns—apnea, Cheyne-Stokes respirations, agonal breaths Loss of ability to swallow Dysphagia Coughing, choking Loss of gag reflex Buildup of oral and tracheal secretions Gurgling
Loss of sphincter control	Incontinence of urine or bowels Maceration of skin Perineal candidiasis Terminal delirium Early signs of cognitive failure, (e.g., day-night reversal) Agitation, restlessness Purposeless, repetitious movements Moaning, groaning
Rare, unexpected events	Bursts of energy just before death occurs, the "golden glow" Aspiration, asphyxiation

From Ferris FD. Last hours of living. *Clin Geriatr Med.* 2004;20:641–667, vi.

Outcomes of Withdrawal of Life Support

One study of 74 medical patients in an ICU who were expected to die shortly after extubation showed a mean morphine dose of 5.3 mg/h in the last hour of mechanical ventilation, followed by 10.6 mg/h during the hour before death.[213k] The average time to death was 153 minutes after extubation, with a range of 4 to 934 minutes. Somewhat surprisingly, each 1 mg/h increase of morphine corresponded to an 8-minute delay in death.[213k] This response is similar to an earlier study that showed a 13-minute increase in the time to death with each 1 mg/h increase of benzodiazepine.[213l] Longer time interval between initiation of withdrawal of life support to death has been associated with improved family satisfaction.[213m]

Paralytic Drugs in the Withdrawal of Life Support

As noted in Chapter 8, patients should not be paralyzed before extubation of the trachea; it obscures symptom assessment and may lead to patient suffering. Patients already on paralytic medications should await the return of neuromuscular function before extubation unless doing so causes undue burden on the patient.[213n]

PEDIATRIC HOSPICE CARE AND PALLIATIVE CARE

Palliative care is appropriate for many children with chronic serious illnesses, and the WHO states that pediatric palliative care can be successfully delivered even in resource-limited settings.[1] Pediatric hospice and palliative care are similar to their adult counterparts, but the patient's developmental stage is incorporated into the pediatric care plan. Explanations of illness and death depend on the child's developmental stage. A child younger than 2 years of age has no concept of death, whereas a 10-year-old child may be interested in the details of the dying process.[213o]

Characteristics of the Pediatric Palliative Care Population

The variety of diagnoses for patients in pediatric palliative care are wider than those for adults[213p] with the most common disorders being congenital and neuromuscular in origin.[213p] In the largest observational study to date, over one third of pediatric patients referred for palliative care consultation services were 1 to 9 years of age, one third were 10 to 18 years old, and less than 20% were younger than 1 year of age.[213p] Children often have prolonged survival after the initial palliative care consultation compared to adults.[213p] Some disorders, including chromosomal or severe developmental abnormalities, are rarely seen by adult palliative care physicians. The decision to forgo treatment with curative intent is generally difficult for families, and prognostication is similarly difficult for providers.[213o] Moreover, multiple legal issues related to declining medical treatment in children exist that differ from those related to adults.[213q]

Symptom Management in Pediatric Palliative Care

Historically, symptoms in children with serious illnesses have been poorly managed. In a retrospective survey of parents of deceased children, parents noted that their children suffered "a lot" or "a great deal," mostly from pain, fatigue, and dyspnea.[213q] In contrast to most studies of adults near the end of life, a 2011 study noted neurologic symptoms being more prevalent, [213p] suggesting a need for a better understanding and treatment of these symptoms in the pediatric population. Regional anesthesia has been reported as being of benefit to pediatric patients with pain that is difficult to manage with systemic treatment.[213r] Data on specific therapies for children are limited, and many practitioners use medications based on adult studies.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. WHO definition of palliative care. http://www.who.int/cancer/palliative/definition/en/.
2. Ferris FD, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;24:106.
3. Quill TE, Abernethy AP. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:1173.
4. von Gunten CF. *JAMA*. 2002;287:875.
5. Meier DE, et al. *Palliative Care: Transforming the Care of Serious Illness*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass; 2010.
6. Morrison RS. *Curr Opin Support Palliat Care*. 2013;7:201.
7. Morrison RS, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2008;168:1783.
8. America's care of serious illness: a state-by-state report card on access to palliative care in our nation's hospitals. https://reportcard.capc.org/wp-content/uploads/2015/08/CAPC-Report-Card-2015.pdf2015. Accessed Feb 28, 2018.
9. ABMS Certification. http://www.aahpm.org/certification/default/abms.html.
10. American Board of Medical Specialties. 2018. https://www.abmsdirectory.com/pdf/Resources_certification_statistics.pdf.
10a. Lupu D, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2017;53(5):944–951.
10b. Kamal AH, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2016;51(3):597–603.
11. Medicare Payment Advisory Commission. *A data book: health care spending and the Medicare program*; 2017. http://www.medpac.gov/docs/default-source/data-book/jun17_databookentirereport_sec.pdf?sfvrsn=0.
12. Meier DE. *Milbank Q*. 2011;89:343.
13. Robinson J, et al. *Palliat Med*. 2013;28:18.
14. The SUPPORT principal investigators. *JAMA*. 1995;274:1591.
15. Nelson JE, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38:808.
16. Kwok AC, et al. *Lancet*. 2011;378:1408.
17. Fine PG. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:183.
18. Lynch T, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;45:1094.
19. Bosnjak S, et al. *Support Care Cancer*. 2011;19:1239.
20. Stjernsward J, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2007;33:486.
21. *National Consensus Project for Quality Palliative Care*. 2013. http://www.nationalconsensusproject.org/. Accessed May 25, 2013.
22. Morrison RS, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2011;14:1094.
23. Hui D, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;303:1054.
23a. Morrison RS, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2008;168:1783–1790.
24. Norton SA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:1530.
25. Morrison RS, et al. *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 2011;30:454.
25a. O'Connor NR, et al. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 2017.
25b. May P, et al. *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 2016;35(1):44–53.
26. Mosenthal AC, et al. *J Trauma*. 2008;64:1587.
27. El-Jawahri A, et al. *J Support Oncol*. 2011;9:87.
28. Zimmermann C, et al. *JAMA*. 2008;299:1698.
29. Casarett D, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2008;56:593.
30. Scheunemann LP, et al. *Chest*. 2011;139:543.
30a. Reyes-Ortiz CA, et al. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 2015;32(5):516–520.
31. Weissman DE, Meier DE. *J Palliat Med*. 2011;14:17.
32. Mosenthal AC, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:1199.
32a. Aslakson RA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(11):2418–2428.
32b. Sihra L, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2011;42(5):672–675.
32c. Nelson JE, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41(10):2318–2327.
32d. Lamba S, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;44(4):508–519.
33. Bradley C, et al. *Surgery*. 2010;147:871.
34. Smith AK, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2013;16:661.
35. Temel JS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:733.
36. Ford DW, et al. *Chest*. 2013;143:e498S.
36a. Davis MP, et al. *Ann Palliat Med*. 2015;4(3):99–121.
36b. Haun MW, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;6:CD011129.
36c. Ferrell BR, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2017;35(1):96–112.
37. Deleted in proofs.
38. Deleted in proofs.
39. Radbruch L, Payne S. *EJPC*. 2009;16:278.
40. MedicareBenefitPolicyManual. http://www.cms.gov/Regulations-and-Guidance/Guidance/Manuals/downloads/bp102c09.pdf. Accessed May 5, 2018.
41. Gazelle G. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357:321.
42. Stevenson DG. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:1683.
43. Han PK, et al. *J Pain Symptom Mnage*. 2012;43:527.
43a. Earle CC, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2008;26(23):3860–3866.

44. Kelley AS, et al. *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 2013;32:552.
45. Teno JM, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2007;34:120.
46. Taylor Jr DH, et al. *Soc Sci Med*. 2007;65:1466.
46a. Powers BW, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2015;18(5):400–401.
47. Deleted in proofs.
48. Deleted in proofs.
49. Deleted in proofs.
50. Deleted in proofs.
51. Miner TJ, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2011;146:517.
52. Deleted in proofs.
53. Miner TJ, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2004;240:719; discussion 726.
53a. Steffens NM, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2016;151(10):938–945.
53b. Pecanac KE, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259(3):458–463.
53c. Schwarze ML, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(3):843–848.
53d. Schwarze ML, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41(1):1–8.
53e. Cooper Z, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(6):1450–1454.
53f. Kruser JM, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2015;63(9):1805–1811.
53g. Ethical guidelines for the anesthesia care of patients with do-not-resuscitate orders or other directives that limit treatment. https://www.asahq.org/resources/ethics-and-professionalism. Last updated 10-16-2013, accessed 02-11-2018
53h. Sun Y, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40(5):589–598.
53i. Sekandarzad MW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(5):1697–1708.
53j. Snyder GL, Greenberg S. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:106–115.
53k. Bernacki RE, et al. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2014 Dec;174(12):1994–2003.
54. La Puma J, et al. *JAMA*. 1991;266:402.
55. Straton JB, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2004;52:577.
56. Fried TR, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2007;55:1007.
57. Ditto PH, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2001;161:421.
58. Deleted in proofs.
59. Deleted in proofs.
60. Deleted in proofs.
61. Teno J, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1997;45:500.
62. Teno JM, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1997;45:508.
63. Teno J, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1997;45:513.
63a. Norals TE, et al. *Oncology (Williston Park, NY)*. 2015;29(8):567–571.
63b. Dy SM, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2011;14(4):451–457.
63c. Bradley CT, et al. *Surgery*. 2010;148(2):209–216.
63d. Redmann AJ, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255(3):418–423.
63e. Yang AD, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2004;188(1):98–101.
63f. Parikh PP, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2017;211:172–177.
64. Sulmasy DP, et al. *J Med Ethics*. 2008;34:96.
65. Orgel E, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2010;13:677.
65a. Weissman DE, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2007;10(2):408–419.
66. Klaristenfeld DD, et al. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2007;14:1801.
67. Siddiqui MF, Holley JL. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 2011;28:94.
68. Smith AK, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2006;166:1597.
69. Aslakson RA, et al. *Crit Care*. 2010;14:R218.
70. Mackillop WJ, et al. *Br J Cancer*. 1988;58:355.
71. Fine E, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2010;13:595.
72. Haidet P, et al. *Am J Med*. 1998;105:222.
72a. Cassell J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31(5):1551–1557; discussion 1557–1559.
73. Heyland DK, et al. *CMAJ*. 2006;174:627.
74. White DB, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167:461.
75. Selph RB, et al. *J Gen Intern Med*. 2008;23:1311.
75a. Virdun C, et al. *Palliat Med*. 2017;31(7):587–601.
76. Barclay JS, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2007;10:958.
77. Back AL, et al. *Cancer*. 2008;113:1897.
78. Mallinger JB, et al. *Psychooncology*. 2006;15:297.
79. Parker SM, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2007;34:81.
79a. Swinton M, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;195(2):198–204.
80. Lo B, et al. *JAMA*. 2002;287:749.
81. Sulmasy DP. *Gerontologist*. 2002;42(Spec No 3):24.
82. Balboni TA, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2007;25:555.
83. Phelps AC, et al. *JAMA*. 2009;301:1140.
84. Deleted in proofs.
85. Prendergast TJ. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29:N34.
86. Baile WF, et al. *Oncologist*. 2000;5:302.
87. Lautrette A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356:469.
88. Billings JA, Block SD. *J Palliat Med*. 2011;14:1058.
88a. Bernacki RE, et al. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2014;174(12):1994–2003.
89. Lilly CM, et al. *Am J Med*. 2000;109:469.
89a. Bousquet G, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2015;33(22):2437–2443.
90. Philip J, et al. *Intern Med J*. 2007;37:49.
91. Rueth TW, Hall SE. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 1999;16:743.
92. Mystakidou K, et al. *Support Care Cancer*. 2004;12:147.
93. Hallenbeck J, Arnold R. *J Clin Oncol*. 2007;25:5030.
94. Quill TE, Holloway R. *JAMA*. 2011;306:1483.
95. Loertscher L, et al. *Am J Med*. 2010;123:4.
96. Girotra S, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:1912.
96a. Meaney PA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(1):101–108.
97. Kazaure HS, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2013;148:14.
98. Ehlenbach WJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361:22.
99. Chan PS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:1019.
99a. Arrich J, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;2:CD004128.
99b. Agarwal S, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2018;125:12–15.
100. Rhondali W, et al. *Cancer*. 2013;119:2067.
100a. Miljković MD, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2015;18(5):457–460.
101. *Ethical guidelines for the anesthesia care of patients with do-not-resuscitate orders or other directives that limit treatment*. 2008. http://www.asahq.org/For-Members/Standards-Guidelines-and-Statements.aspx.
102. Deleted in proofs.
103. Deleted in proofs.
104. Deleted in proofs.
105. Deleted in proofs.
106. Deleted in proofs.
107. Deleted in proofs.
108. Glare P, et al. *BMJ*. 2003;327:195.
109. Christakis NA, Lamont EB. *BMJ*. 2000;320:469.
110. Rocker G, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:1149.
111. Sinuff T, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:878.
112. Glare PA, Sinclair CT. *J Palliat Med*. 2008;11:84.
112a. Detsky ME, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;317(21):2187–2195.
113. Frick S, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31:456.
113a. Gwilliam B, et al. *BMJ Support Palliat Care*. 2015;5(4):390–398.
114. White DB, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:442.
115. Hancock K, et al. *Palliat Med*. 2007;21:507.
116. Evans LR, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2009;179:48.
117. Zier LS, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2012;156:360.
118. Deleted in proofs.
119. Lunney JR, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2002;50:1108.
120. Hauser CA, et al. *Support Care Cancer*. 2006;14:999.
121. Salpeter SR, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2012;15:175.
122. Salpeter SR, et al. *Am J Med*. 2012;125:512 e1.
123. Haga K, et al. *Heart*. 2012;98:579.
124. Muntwyler J, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2002;23:1861.
125. Goldberg RJ, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167:490.
126. Mitchell SL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361:1529.
127. Mitchell SL, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;304:1929.
128. Celli BR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:1005.
129. Nevins ML, Epstein SK. *Chest*. 2001;119:1840.
130. Said A, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2004;40:897.
131. Cardenas A. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2005;100:460.
132. Cohen LM, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2006;9:977.
133. Moss AH, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2000;3:253.
134. Deleted in proofs.
135. Deleted in proofs.
136. Herndon CM, Fike DS. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2001;22:1027.
137. Fonzo-Christe C, et al. *Palliat Med*. 2005;19:208.
138. Chan VO, et al. *Eur J Radiol*. 2006;58:480.
138a. Remington R, Hultman T. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2007;55:2051–2055.
139. Radbruch L, et al. *Palliat Med*. 2011;25:578.
139a. Burton AW, et al. *Pain Med*. 2004;5(3):239–247.
140. Deleted in proofs.
141. Deleted in proofs.
142. Deleted in proofs.
143. Deleted in proofs.
144. Goudas LC, et al. *Cancer Invest*. 2005;23:182.
145. Caraceni A, Portenoy RK. *Pain*. 1999;82:263.
146. Zech DF, et al. *Pain*. 1995;63:65.
146a. van den Beuken-van Everdingen MHJ, et al. *Ann Oncol*. 2007;18(9):1437–1449.
146b. Azevedo São Leão Ferreira K, et al. *Support Care Cancer*. 2006;14(11):1086–1093.
147. Portenoy RK. *Lancet*. 2011;377:2236.
148. Aapro M, et al. *Ann Oncol*. 2008;19:420.
149. Mundy GR. *Nat Rev Cancer*. 2002;2:584.

150. Smith HS, Barkin RL. *Am J Ther*. 2013;21:106.
151. Buga S, Sarria JE. *Cancer Control*. 2012;19:154.
152. Ferris FD, et al. *Surg Oncol Clin N Am*. 2001;10:185.
153. Deleted in proofs.
154. Paulsen O, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;46:96.
155. Van Poznak CH, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2011;29:1221.
156. McNicol E, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 1975;22:2004.
156a. Vayne-Bossert P, et al. *Support Care Cancer*. 2016;24(3):1429–1438.
157. Nekolaichuk CL, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2013;16:516.
158. Stanik-Hutt JA, et al. *Am J Crit Care*. 2001;10:252.
159. Payen JF, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29:2258.
160. Gelinas C, et al. *Am J Crit Care*. 2006;15:420.
161. Puntillo K, et al. *Chest*. 2009;135:1069.
162. Penrod JD, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:1105.
163. Bailey FA, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;44:681.
164. Morita T, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2001;21:282.
165. Thorns A, Sykes N. *Lancet*. 2000;356:398.
166. Portenoy RK, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2006;32:532.
167. Sykes N, Thorns A. *Lancet Oncol*. 2003;4:312.
168. Ballantyne JC. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2007;11:276.
168a. World Health Organization. *Traitement De La Douleur Cancéreuse*. Geneva, Switz: World Health Organization; 1987.
168b. Cleeland CS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1994;330(9):592–596.
168c. Vainio A, Auvinen A. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 1996;12(1):3–10.
168d. Smith TJ, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2002;20(19):4040–4049.
169. Wood GJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;298:1196.
170. Basch E, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2011;29:4189.
171. Davis MP, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2010;39:756.
172. Blair SL, et al. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2001;8:632.
173. Casarett D, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353:2607.
174. Ganzini L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:359.
175. Mitchell SL. *JAMA*. 2007;298:2527.
176. Ganzini L. *Palliat Support Care*. 2006;4:135.
177. Bruera E, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2005;23:2366.
178. Teno JM, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2012;60:1918.
179. Fischberg D, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2013;45:595.
180. Parshall MB, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;185:435.
181. Deleted in proofs.
182. Delgado-Guay MO, et al. *Cancer*. 2009;115:437.
183. Solano JP, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2006;31:58.
184. Puntillo KA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38:2155.
185. Currow DC, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2010;39:680.
186. Buckholz GT, von Gunten CF. *Curr Opin Support Palliat Care*. 2009;3:98.
187. Currow DC, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2011;42:388.
188. Mahler DA, et al. *Chest*. 2010;137:674.
189. Abernethy AP, et al. *BMJ*. 2003;327:523.
190. Navigante AH, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2010;39:820.
191. Navigante AH, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2006;31:38.
192. Gomutbutra P, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2013;45:885.
193. Deleted in proofs.
194. Deleted in proofs.
195. Deleted in proofs.
196. Deleted in proofs.
197. Deleted in proofs.
198. Mitchell AJ, et al. *Lancet Oncol*. 2011;12:160.
199. Block SD. *J Palliat Med*. 2006;9:751.
200. Payne A, et al. *Palliat Med*. 2007;21:193.
201. Rao S, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2011;14:275.
202. Kerr CW, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;43:68.
203. Block SD. *Ann Intern Med*. 2000;132:209.
204. Breitbart W, Alici Y. *JAMA*. 2008;300:2898. E1.
205. Lawlor PG, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2000;160:786.
206. Ryan K, et al. *Palliat Med*. 2009;23:40.
207. Inouye SK, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1990;113:941.
208. Breitbart W, et al. *Psychosomatics*. 2002;43:183.
209. Leonard M, et al. *Palliat Med*. 2008;22:848.
210. Spiller JA, Keen JC. *Palliat Med*. 2006;20:17.
211. LeGrand SB. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;44:583.
211a. Hosker CMG, Bennett MI. *BMJ*. 2016;353:i3085.
212. Gupta D, et al. *J Palliat Med*. 2008;11:250.
213. Harris DG, Noble SI. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2009;38:913.
213a. Mularski RA, et al. *Chest*. 2009;135:1360–1369.
213b. Morita T, et al. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 1998;15:217–222.
213c. Bennett M, et al. *Palliat Med*. 2002;16:369–374.
213d. Wildiers H, et al. *J Pain Symp Manag*. 2009;38(1):124–133.
213e. Heisler M, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2013;45:14.
213f. Wee BL, et al. *Palliat Med*. 2006;20:171.
213g. Marr L, Weissman DE. *J Support Oncol*. 2004;2:283–288.
213h. Treece PD, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:1141–1148.
213i. Campbell ML. AACN Adv crit care. 2007;18:397–403; quiz 344–345.
213j. Rajamani A, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2015;43(3):335–340.
213k. Mazer MA, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2011;42:44–51.
213l. Chan JD, et al. *Chest*. 2004;126:286–293.
213m. Gerstel E, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2008;178(8):798–804.
213n. Truog RD, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:953–963.
213o. Himelstein BP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:1752–1762.
213p. Feudtner C, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2011;127:1094–1101.
213q. Wolfe J, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:326–333.
213r. Rork JF, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2013;46:859–873.
214. Deleted in proofs.

References

1. WHO definition of palliative care. http://www.who.int/cancer/palliative/definition/en/.
2. Ferris FD, Balfour HM, Bowen K, et al. A model to guide patient and family care: based on nationally accepted principles and norms of practice. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;24:106–123.
3. Quill TE, Abernethy AP. Generalist plus specialist palliative care–creating a more sustainable model. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:1173–1175.
4. von Gunten CF. Secondary and tertiary palliative care in US hospitals. *JAMA*. 2002;287:875–881.
5. Meier DE, Issacs SL, Hughes RG. *Palliative Care: Transforming the Care of Serious Illness*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass; 2010.
6. Morrison RS. Models of palliative care delivery in the United States. *Curr Opin Support Palliat Care*. 2013;7:201–206.
7. Morrison RS, Penrod JD, Cassel JB, et al. Cost savings associated with US hospital palliative care consultation programs. *Arch Intern Med*. 2008;168:1783–1790.
8. *America's care of serious illness: a state-by-state report card on access to palliative care in our nation's hospitals*. 2011. https://reportcard.capc.org/wp-content/uploads/2015/08/CAPC-Report-Card-2015.pdf2015. Accessed Feb 28, 2018.
9. ABMS Certification. http://www.aahpm.org/certification/default/abms.html. Accessed May 5, 2018.
10. American Board of Medical Specialties. 2017-2018 ABMS Board Certification Report. 2018. https://www.abmsdirectory.com/pdf/Resources_certification_statistics.pdf.

10a. Lupu D, Salsberg E, Quigley L, Wu X. The 2015 class of hospice and palliative medicine fellows—from training to practice: implications for HPM workforce supply. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2017;53(5):944–951. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2017.01.005.

10b. Kamal AH, Bull J, Wolf S, et al. Characterizing the hospice and palliative care workforce in the U.S.: clinician demographics and professional responsibilities. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2016;51(3):597–603. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2015.10.016.

11. Medicare Payment Advisory Commission. A data book: health care spending and the Medicare program. http://www.medpac.gov/docs/default-source/data-book/jun17_databookentirereport_sec.pdf?sfvrsn=0. Accessed May 5, 2018.
12. Meier DE. Increased access to palliative care and hospice services: opportunities to improve value in health care. *Milbank Q*. 2011;89:343–380.
13. Robinson J, Gott M, Ingleton C. Patient and family experiences of palliative care in hospital: what do we know? An integrative review. *Palliat Med*. 2014;28:18–33.
14. A controlled trial to improve care for seriously ill hospitalized patients. The study to understand prognoses and preferences for outcomes and risks of treatments (SUPPORT). The SUPPORT Principal Investigators. *JAMA*. 1995;274:1591–1598.
15. Nelson JE, Puntillo KA, Pronovost PJ, et al. In their own words: patients and families define high-quality palliative care in the intensive care unit. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38:808–818.
16. Kwok AC, Semel ME, Lipsitz SR, et al. The intensity and variation of surgical care at the end of life: a retrospective cohort study. *Lancet*. 2011;378:1408–1413.
17. Fine PG. The evolving and important role of anesthesiology in palliative care. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:183–188.
18. Lynch T, Connor S, Clark D. Mapping levels of palliative care development: a global update. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;45:1094–1106.
19. Bosnjak S, Maurer MA, Ryan KM, et al. Improving the availability and accessibility of opioids for the treatment of pain: the International Pain Policy Fellowship. *Support Care Cancer*. 2011;19:1239–1247.
20. Stjernsward J, Foley KM, Ferris FD. The public health strategy for palliative care. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2007;33:486–493.
21. *National Consensus Project for Quality Palliative Care*. 2013. http://www.nationalconsensusproject.org/. Accessed May 5, 2018.
22. Morrison RS, Augustin R, Souvanna P, Meier DE. America's care of serious illness: a state-by-state report card on access to palliative care in our nation's hospitals. *J Palliat Med*. 2011;14:1094–1096.
23. Hui D, Elsayem A, De la Cruz M, et al. Availability and integration of palliative care at US cancer centers. *JAMA*. 2010;303:1054–1061.

23a. Morrison RS, Penrod JD, Cassel JB, et al. Cost savings associated with US hospital palliative care consultation programs. *Arch Intern Med*. 2008;168:1783–1790.

24. Norton SA, Hogan LA, Holloway RG, et al. Proactive palliative care in the medical intensive care unit: effects on length of stay for selected high-risk patients. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:1530–1535.
25. Morrison RS, Dietrich J, Ladwig S, et al. Palliative care consultation teams cut hospital costs for Medicaid beneficiaries. *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 2011;30:454–463.

25a. O'Connor NR, Junker P, Appel SM, Stetson RL, Rohrbach J, Meghani SH. Palliative care consultation for goals of care and future acute care costs: a propensity-matched study. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1177/1049909117743475.

25b. May P, Garrido MM, Cassel JB, et al. Palliative care teams' cost-saving effect is larger for cancer patients with higher numbers of comorbidities. *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 2016;35(1):44–53. https://doi.org/10.1377/hlthaff.2015.0752.

26. Mosenthal AC, Murphy PA, Barker LK, et al. Changing the culture around end-of-life care in the trauma intensive care unit. *J Trauma*. 2008;64:1587–1593.
27. El-Jawahri A, Greer JA, Temel JS. Does palliative care improve outcomes for patients with incurable illness? A review of the evidence. *J Support Oncol*. 2011;9:87–94.
28. Zimmermann C, Riechelmann R, Krzyzanowska M, Rodin G, Tannock I. Effectiveness of specialized palliative care: a systematic review. *JAMA*. 2008;299:1698–1709.
29. Casarett D, Pickard A, Bailey FA, et al. Do palliative consultations improve patient outcomes? *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2008;56:593–599.
30. Scheunemann LP, McDevitt M, Carson SS, Hanson LC. Randomized, controlled trials of interventions to improve communication in intensive care: a systematic review. *Chest*. 2011;139:543–554.

30a. Reyes-Ortiz CA, Williams C, Westphal C. Comparison of early versus late palliative care consultation in end-of-life care for the hospitalized frail elderly patients. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 2015;32(5):516–520. https://doi.org/10.1177/1049909114530183.

31. Weissman DE, Meier DE. Identifying patients in need of a palliative care assessment in the hospital setting: a consensus report from the center to advance palliative care. *J Palliat Med*. 2011;14:17–23.
32. Mosenthal AC, Weissman DE, Curtis JR, et al. Integrating palliative care in the surgical and trauma intensive care unit: a report from the Improving Palliative Care in the Intensive Care Unit (IPAL-ICU) project advisory board and the center to advance palliative care. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:1199–1206.

32a. Aslakson RA, Curtis JR, Nelson JE. The changing role of palliative care in the ICU. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(11):2418–2428. https://doi.org/10.1097/CCM.0000000000000573.

32b. Sihra L, Harris M, O'Reardon C. Using the improving palliative care in the intensive care unit (IPAL-ICU) project to promote palliative care consultation. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2011;42(5):672–675. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2011.08.002.

32c. Nelson JE, Curtis JR, Mulkerin C, et al. Choosing and using screening criteria for palliative care consultation in the ICU: a report from the Improving Palliative Care in the ICU (IPAL-ICU) advisory board. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41(10):2318–2327. https://doi.org/10.1097/CCM.0b013e31828cf12c.

32d. Lamba S, Murphy P, McVicker S, et al. Changing end-of-life care practice for liver transplant service patients: structure palliative care intervention in the surgical intensive care unit. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;44(4):508–519.

33. Bradley C, Weaver J, Brasel K. Addressing access to palliative care services in the surgical intensive care unit. *Surgery*. 2010;147:871–877.
34. Smith AK, Thai JN, Bakitas MA, et al. The diverse landscape of palliative care clinics. *J Palliat Med*. 2013;16:661–668.
35. Temel JS, Greer JA, Muzikansky A, et al. Early palliative care for patients with metastatic non-small-cell lung cancer. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:733–742.
36. Ford DW, Koch KA, Ray DE, et al. Palliative and end-of-life care in lung cancer: diagnosis and management of lung cancer, 3rd ed: American College of Chest Physicians evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. *Chest*. 2013;143:e498S–e512S.
37. Deleted in proofs.

38. Deleted in proofs.
39. Radbruch L, Payne S. White paper on standards and norms for hospice and palliative care in Europe: part 1. *EJPC*. 2009;16:278–289.
40. Medicare Benefit Policy Manual. http://www.cms.gov/Regulations-and-Guidance/Guidance/Manuals/downloads/bp102c09.pdf. Accessed May 5, 2018.
41. Gazelle G. Understanding hospice–an underutilized option for life's final chapter. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357:321–324.
42. Stevenson DG. Growing pains for the medicare hospice benefit. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:1683–1685.
43. Han PK, Lee M, Reeve BB, et al. Development of a prognostic model for six-month mortality in older adults with declining health. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;43:527–539.
43a. Earle CC, Landrum MB, Souza JM, Neville BA, Weeks JC, Ayanian JZ. Aggressiveness of cancer care near the end of life: is it a quality-of-care issue? *J Clin Oncol*. 2008;26(23):3860–3866. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2007.15.8253.
44. Kelley AS, Deb P, Du Q, Aldridge Carlson MD, Morrison RS. Hospice enrollment saves money for Medicare and improves care quality across a number of different lengths-of-stay. *Health Aff (Millwood)*. 2013;32:552–561.
45. Teno JM, Shu JE, Casarett D, et al. Timing of referral to hospice and quality of care: length of stay and bereaved family members' perceptions of the timing of hospice referral. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2007;34:120–125.
46. Taylor DH, Ostermann J, Van Houtven CH, Tulsky JA, Steinhauser K. What length of hospice use maximizes reduction in medical expenditures near death in the US Medicare program? *Soc Sci Med*. 2007;65:1466–1478.
46a. Powers BW, Makar M, Jain SH, Cutler DM, Obermeyer Z. Cost savings associated with expanded hospice use in Medicare. *J Palliat Med*. 2015;18(5):400–401. https://doi.org/10.1089/jpm.2015.0014.
47. Deleted in proofs.
48. Deleted in proofs.
49. Deleted in proofs.
50. Deleted in proofs.
51. Miner TJ, Cohen J, Charpentier K, et al. The palliative triangle: improved patient selection and outcomes associated with palliative operations. *Arch Surg*. 2011;146:517–522.
52. Deleted in proofs.
53. Miner TJ, Brennan MF, Jaques DP. A prospective, symptom related, outcomes analysis of 1022 palliative procedures for advanced cancer. *Ann Surg*. 2004;240:719–726; discussion 726–727.
53a. Steffens NM, Tucholka JL, Nabozny MJ, et al. Engaging patients, health care professionals, and community members to improve preoperative decision making for older adults facing high-risk surgery. *JAMA Surg*. 2016;151(10):938–945. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamasurg.2016.1308.
53b. Pecanac KE, Kehler JM, Brasel KJ, et al. It's big surgery: preoperative expressions of risk, responsibility, and commitment to treatment after high-risk operations. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259(3):458–463. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0000000000000314.
53c. Schwarze ML, Bradley CT, Brasel KJ. Surgical "buy-in": the contractual relationship between surgeons and patients that influences decisions regarding life-supporting therapy. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(3):843–848. https://doi.org/10.1097/CCM.0b013e3181cc466b.
53d. Schwarze ML, Redmann AJ, Alexander GC, Brasel KJ. Surgeons expect patients to buy-in to postoperative life support preoperatively: results of a national survey. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41(1):1–8. https://doi.org/10.1097/CCM.0b013e31826a4650.
53e. Cooper Z, Sayal P, Abbett SK, Neuman MD, Rickerson EM, Bader AM. A conceptual framework for appropriateness in surgical care: reviewing past approaches and looking ahead to patient-centered shared decision making. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(6):1450–1454. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0000000000000899.
53f. Kruser JM, Nabozny MJ, Steffens NM, et al. "Best case/worst case": qualitative evaluation of a novel communication tool for difficult in-the-moment surgical decisions. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2015;63(9):1805–1811. https://doi.org/10.1111/jgs.13615.
53g. Ethical guidelines for the anesthesia care of patients with do-not-resuscitate orders or other directives that limit treatment. https://www.asahq.org/resources/ethics-and-professionalism. Last updated 10-16-2013, accessed 02-11-2018.
53h. Sun Y, Li T, Gan TJ. The effects of perioperative regional anesthesia and analgesia on cancer recurrence and survival after oncology surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40(5):589–598. https://doi.org/10.1097/AAP.0000000000000273.
53i. Sekandarzad MW, van Zundert AAJ, Lirk PB, Doornebal CW, Hollmann MW. Perioperative anesthesia care and tumor progression. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(5):1697–1708. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000001652.
53j. Snyder GL, Greenberg S. Effect of anaesthetic technique and other perioperative factors on cancer recurrence. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:106–115.
53k. Bernacki RE, Block SD. American College of Physicians High Value Care Task Force. Communication about serious illness care goals: a review and synthesis of best practices. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2014;174(12):1994–2003. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamainternmed.2014.5271.
54. La Puma J, Orentlicher D, Moss RJ. Advance directives on admission. Clinical implications and analysis of the Patient Self Determination Act of 1990. *JAMA*. 1991;266:402–405.
55. Straton JB, Wang NY, Meoni LA, et al. Physical functioning, depression, and preferences for treatment at the end of life: the Johns Hopkins Precursors Study. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2004;52:577–582.
56. Fried TR, O'Leary J, Van Ness P, Fraenkel L. Inconsistency over time in the preferences of older persons with advanced illness for life-sustaining treatment. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2007;55:1007–1014.
57. Ditto PH, Danks JH, Smucker WD, et al. Advance directives as acts of communication: a randomized controlled trial. *Arch Intern Med*. 2001;161:421–430.
58. Deleted in proofs.
59. Deleted in proofs.
60. Deleted in proofs.
61. Teno J, Lynn J, Wenger N, et al. Advance directives for seriously ill hospitalized patients: effectiveness with the patient self-determination act and the SUPPORT intervention. SUPPORT Investigators. Study to understand prognoses and preferences for outcomes and risks of treatment. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1997;45:500–507.
62. Teno JM, Licks S, Lynn J, et al. Do advance directives provide instructions that direct care? SUPPORT Investigators. Study to understand prognoses and preferences for outcomes and risks of treatment. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1997;45:508–512.
63. Teno J, Lynn J, Connors AF, et al. The illusion of end-of-life resource savings with advance directives. SUPPORT Investigators. Study to understand prognoses and preferences for outcomes and risks of treatment. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1997;45:513–518.
63a. Norals TE, Smith TJ. Advance care planning discussions: why they should happen, why they don't, and how we can facilitate the process. *Oncology (Williston Park, NY)*. 2015;29(8):567–571.
63b. Dy SM, Asch SM, Lorenz KA, et al. Quality of end-of-life care for patients with advanced cancer in an academic medical center. *J Palliat Med*. 2011;14(4):451–457. https://doi.org/10.1089/jpm.2010.0434.
63c. Bradley CT, Brasel KJ, Schwarze ML. Physician attitudes regarding advance directives for high-risk surgical patients: a qualitative analysis. *Surgery*. 2010;148(2):209–216. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.surg.2010.05.020.
63d. Redmann AJ, Brasel KJ, Alexander CG, Schwarze ML. Use of advance directives for high-risk operations: a national survey of surgeons. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255(3):418–423. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0b013e31823b6782.
63e. Yang AD, Bentrem DJ, Pappas SG, et al. Advance directive use among patients undergoing high-risk operations. *Am J Surg*. 2004;188(1):98–101. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amjsurg.2003.12.058.
63f. Parikh PP, White MT, Buckingham L, Tchorz KM. Evaluation of palliative care training and skills retention by medical students. *J Surg Res*. 2017;211:172–177. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jss.2016.11.006.
64. Sulmasy DP, Sood JR, Ury WA. Physicians' confidence in discussing do not resuscitate orders with patients and surrogates. *J Med Ethics*. 2008;34:96–101.
65. Orgel E, McCarter R, Jacobs S. A failing medical educational model: a self-assessment by physicians at all levels of training of ability and comfort to deliver bad news. *J Palliat Med*. 2010;13:677–683.

65a. Weissman DE, Ambuel B, von Gunten CF, et al. Outcomes from a national multispecialty palliative care curriculum development project. *J Palliat Med*. 2007;10(2):408–419. https://doi.org/10.1089/jpm.2006.0183.

66. Klaristenfeld DD, Harrington DT, Miner TJ. Teaching palliative care and end-of-life issues: a core curriculum for surgical residents. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2007;14:1801–1806.

67. Siddiqui MF, Holley JL. Residents' practices and perceptions about do not resuscitate orders and pronouncing death: an opportunity for clinical training. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 2011;28:94–97.

68. Smith AK, Ries AP, Zhang B, et al. Resident approaches to advance care planning on the day of hospital admission. *Arch Intern Med*. 2006;166:1597–1602.

69. Aslakson RA, Wyskiel R, Shaeffer D, et al. Surgical intensive care unit clinician estimates of the adequacy of communication regarding patient prognosis. *Crit Care*. 2010;14:R218.

70. Mackillop WJ, Stewart WE, Ginsburg AD, Stewart SS. Cancer patients' perceptions of their disease and its treatment. *Br J Cancer*. 1988;58:355–358.

71. Fine E, Reid MC, Shengelia R, Adelman RD. Directly observed patient-physician discussions in palliative and end-of-life care: a systematic review of the literature. *J Palliat Med*. 2010;13:595–603.

72. Haidet P, Hamel MB, Davis RB, et al. Outcomes, preferences for resuscitation, and physician-patient communication among patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. SUPPORT Investigators. Study to understand prognoses and preferences for outcomes and risks of treatments. *Am J Med*. 1998;105:222–229.

72a. Cassell J, Buchman TG, Streat S, Stewart RM. Surgeons, intensivists, and the covenant of care: administrative models and values affecting care at the end of life--Updated. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31(5):1551–1557; discussion 1557-1559.

73. Heyland DK, Dodek P, Rocker G, et al. What matters most in end-of-life care: perceptions of seriously ill patients and their family members. *CMAJ*. 2006;174:627–633.

74. White DB, Braddock CH, Bereknyei S, Curtis JR. Toward shared decision making at the end of life in intensive care units: opportunities for improvement. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167:461–467.

75. Selph RB, Shiang J, Engelberg R, Curtis JR, White DB. Empathy and life support decisions in intensive care units. *J Gen Intern Med*. 2008;23:1311–1317.

75a. Virdun C, Luckett T, Lorenz K, Davidson PM, Phillips J. Dying in the hospital setting: a meta-synthesis identifying the elements of end-of-life care that patients and their families describe as being important. *Palliat Med*. 2017;31(7):587–601. https://doi.org/10.1177/0269216316673547.

76. Barclay JS, Blackhall LJ, Tulsky JA. Communication strategies and cultural issues in the delivery of bad news. *J Palliat Med*. 2007;10:958–977.

77. Back AL, Anderson WG, Bunch L, et al. Communication about cancer near the end of life. *Cancer*. 2008;113:1897–1910.

78. Mallinger JB, Shields CG, Griggs JJ, et al. Stability of decisional role preference over the course of cancer therapy. *Psychooncology*. 2006;15:297–305.

79. Parker SM, Clayton JM, Hancock K, et al. A systematic review of prognostic/end-of-life communication with adults in the advanced stages of a life-limiting illness: patient/caregiver preferences for the content, style, and timing of information. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2007;34:81–93.

79a. Swinton M, Giacomini M, Toledo F, et al. Experiences and expressions of spirituality at the end of life in the intensive care unit. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;195(2):198–204. https://doi.org/10.1164/rccm.201606-1102OC.

80. Lo B, Ruston D, Kates LW, et al. Discussing religious and spiritual issues at the end of life: a practical guide for physicians. *JAMA*. 2002;287:749–754.

81. Sulmasy DP. A biopsychosocial-spiritual model for the care of patients at the end of life. *Gerontologist*. 2002;42(spec no 3):24–33.

82. Balboni TA, Vanderwerker LC, Block SD, et al. Religiousness and spiritual support among advanced cancer patients and associations with end-of-life treatment preferences and quality of life. *J Clin Oncol*. 2007;25:555–560.

83. Phelps AC, Maciejewski PK, Nilsson M, et al. Religious coping and use of intensive life-prolonging care near death in patients with advanced cancer. *JAMA*. 2009;301:1140–1147.

84. Deleted in proofs.

85. Prendergast TJ. Advance care planning: pitfalls, progress, promise. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29:N34–39.

86. Baile WF, Buckman R, Lenzi R, et al. SPIKES—A six-step protocol for delivering bad news: application to the patient with cancer. *Oncologist*. 2000;5:302–311.

87. Lautrette A, Darmon M, Megarbane B, et al. A communication strategy and brochure for relatives of patients dying in the ICU. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356:469–478.

88. Billings JA, Block SD. The end-of-life family meeting in intensive care part III: a guide for structured discussions. *J Palliat Med*. 2011;14:1058–1064.

88a. Bernacki RE, Block SD. American College of Physicians High Value Care Task Force. Communication about serious illness care goals: a review and synthesis of best practices. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2014;174(12):1994–2003. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamainternmed.2014.5271.

89. Lilly CM, De Meo DL, Sonna LA, et al. An intensive communication intervention for the critically ill. *Am J Med*. 2000;109:469–475.

89a. Bousquet G, Orri M, Winterman S, Brugière C, Verneuil L, Revah-Levy A. Breaking bad news in oncology: a metasynthesis. *J Clin Oncol*. 2015;33(22):2437–2443. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2014.59.6759.

90. Philip J, Gold M, Schwarz M, Komesaroff P. Anger in palliative care: a clinical approach. *Intern Med J*. 2007;37:49–55.

91. Rueth TW, Hall SE. Dealing with the anger and hostility of those who grieve. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 1999;16:743–746.

92. Mystakidou K, Parpa E, Tsilila E, Katsouda E, Vlahos L. Cancer information disclosure in different cultural contexts. *Support Care Cancer*. 2004;12:147–154.

93. Hallenbeck J, Arnold R. A request for nondisclosure: don't tell mother. *J Clin Oncol*. 2007;25:5030–5034.

94. Quill TE, Holloway R. Time-limited trials near the end of life. *JAMA*. 2011;306:1483–1484.

95. Loertscher L, Reed DA, Bannon MP, Mueller PS. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation and do-not-resuscitate orders: a guide for clinicians. *Am J Med*. 2010;123:4–9.

96. Girotra S, Nallamothu BK, Spertus JA, et al. Trends in survival after in-hospital cardiac arrest. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:1912–1920.

96a. Meaney PA, Nadkarni VM, Kern KB, Indik JH, Halperin HR, Berg RA. Rhythms and outcomes of adult in-hospital cardiac arrest. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(1):101–108. https://doi.org/10.1097/CCM.0b013e3181b43282.

97. Kazaure HS, Roman SA, Rosenthal RA, Sosa JA. Cardiac arrest among surgical patients: an analysis of incidence, patient characteristics, and outcomes in ACS-NSQIP. *JAMA Surg*. 2013;148:14–21.

98. Ehlenbach WJ, Barnato AE, Curtis JR, et al. Epidemiologic study of in-hospital cardiopulmonary resuscitation in the elderly. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361:22–31.

99. Chan PS, Nallamothu BK, Krumholz HM, et al. Long-term outcomes in elderly survivors of in-hospital cardiac arrest. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:1019–1026.

99a. Arrich J, Holzer M, Havel C, Müllner M, Herkner H. Hypothermia for neuroprotection in adults after cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;2:CD004128. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD004128.pub4.

99b. Agarwal S, Presciutti A, Verma J, et al. Women have worse cognitive, functional, and psychiatric outcomes at hospital discharge after cardiac arrest. *Resuscitation*. 2018;125:12–15. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.resuscitation.2018.01.036.

100. Rhondali W, Perez-Cruz P, Hui D, et al. Patient-physician communication about code status preferences: a randomized controlled trial. *Cancer*. 2013;119:2067–2073.

100a. Miljković MD, Emuron D, Rhodes L, Abraham J, Miller K. "Allow natural death" versus "do not resuscitate": what do patients with advanced cancer choose? *J Palliat Med*. 2015;18(5):457–460. https://doi.org/10.1089/jpm.2014.0369.

101. Ethical guidelines for the anesthesia care of patients with do-not-resuscitate orders or other directives that limit treatment. https://www.asahq.org/resources/ethics-and-professionalism. Last updated 10-16-2013, accessed 02-11-2018.

102. Deleted in proofs.

103. Deleted in proofs.

104. Deleted in proofs.

105. Deleted in proofs.

106. Deleted in proofs.

107. Deleted in proofs.
108. Glare P, Virik K, Jones M, et al. A systematic review of physicians' survival predictions in terminally ill cancer patients. *BMJ*. 2003;327:195–198.
109. Christakis NA, Lamont EB. Extent and determinants of error in doctors' prognoses in terminally ill patients: prospective cohort study. *BMJ*. 2000;320:469–472.
110. Rocker G, Cook D, Sjokvist P, et al. Clinician predictions of intensive care unit mortality. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:1149–1154.
111. Sinuff T, Adhikari NK, Cook DJ, et al. Mortality predictions in the intensive care unit: comparing physicians with scoring systems. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:878–885.
112. Glare PA, Sinclair CT. Palliative medicine review: prognostication. *J Palliat Med*. 2008;11:84–103.
112a. Detsky ME, Harhay MO, Bayard DF, et al. Discriminative accuracy of physician and nurse predictions for survival and functional outcomes 6 months after an ICU admission. *JAMA*. 2017;317(21):2187–2195. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2017.4078.
113. Frick S, Uehlinger DE, Zuercher Zenklusen RM. Medical futility: predicting outcome of intensive care unit patients by nurses and doctors–a prospective comparative study. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31:456–461.
113a. Gwilliam B, Keeley V, Todd C, et al. Development of Prognosis in Palliative Care Study (PiPS) predictor models to improve prognostication in advanced cancer: prospective cohort study. *BMJ Support Palliat Care*. 2015;5(4):390–398. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjspcare-2012-d4020rep.
114. White DB, Engelberg RA, Wenrich MD, Lo B, Curtis JR. Prognostication during physician-family discussions about limiting life support in intensive care units. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:442–448.
115. Hancock K, Clayton JM, Parker SM, et al. Truth-telling in discussing prognosis in advanced life-limiting illnesses: a systematic review. *Palliat Med*. 2007;21:507–517.
116. Evans LR, Boyd EA, Malvar G, et al. Surrogate decision-makers' perspectives on discussing prognosis in the face of uncertainty. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2009;179:48–53.
117. Zier LS, Sottile PD, Hong SY, Weissfield LA, White DB. Surrogate decision makers' interpretation of prognostic information: a mixed-methods study. *Ann Intern Med*. 2012;156:360–366.
118. Deleted in proofs.
119. Lunney JR, Lynn J, Hogan C. Profiles of older Medicare decedents. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2002;50:1108–1112.
120. Hauser CA, Stockler MR, Tattersall MH. Prognostic factors in patients with recently diagnosed incurable cancer: a systematic review. *Support Care Cancer*. 2006;14:999–1011.
121. Salpeter SR, Malter DS, Luo EJ, Lin AY, Stuart B. Systematic review of cancer presentations with a median survival of six months or less. *J Palliat Med*. 2012;15:175–185.
122. Salpeter SR, Luo EJ, Malter DS, Stuart B. Systematic review of noncancer presentations with a median survival of 6 months or less. *Am J Med*. 2012;125(512):e1–e6.
123. Haga K, Murray S, Reid J, et al. Identifying community based chronic heart failure patients in the last year of life: a comparison of the gold standards framework prognostic indicator guide and the Seattle Heart Failure Model. *Heart*. 2012;98:579–583.
124. Muntwyler J, Abetel G, Gruner C, Follath F. One-year mortality among unselected outpatients with heart failure. *Eur Heart J*. 2002;23:1861–1866.
125. Goldberg RJ, Ciampa J, Lessard D, Meyer TE, Spencer FA. Long-term survival after heart failure: a contemporary population-based perspective. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167:490–496.
126. Mitchell SL, Teno JM, Kiely DK, et al. The clinical course of advanced dementia. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361:1529–1538.
127. Mitchell SL, Miller SC, Teno JM, et al. Prediction of 6-month survival of nursing home residents with advanced dementia using ADEPT vs hospice eligibility guidelines. *JAMA*. 2010;304:1929–1935.
128. Celli BR, Cote CG, Marin JM, et al. The body-mass index, airflow obstruction, dyspnea, and exercise capacity index in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:1005–1012.
129. Nevins ML, Epstein SK. Predictors of outcome for patients with COPD requiring invasive mechanical ventilation. *Chest*. 2001;119:1840–1849.
130. Said A, Williams J, Holden J, et al. Model for end stage liver disease score predicts mortality across a broad spectrum of liver disease. *J Hepatol*. 2004;40:897–903.
131. Cardenas A. Hepatorenal syndrome: a dreaded complication of end-stage liver disease. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2005;100:460–467.
132. Cohen LM, Moss AH, Weisbord SD, Germain MJ. Renal palliative care. *J Palliat Med*. 2006;9:977–992.
133. Moss AH. Renal Physicians Association, American Society of Nephrology Working Group. A new clinical practice guideline on initiation and withdrawal of dialysis that makes explicit the role of palliative medicine. *J Palliat Med*. 2000;3:253–260.
134. Deleted in proofs.
135. Deleted in proofs.
136. Herndon CM, Fike DS. Continuous subcutaneous infusion practices of United States hospices. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2001;22:1027–1034.
137. Fonzo-Christe C, Vukasovic C, Wasilewski-Rasca AF, Bonnabry P. Subcutaneous administration of drugs in the elderly: survey of practice and systematic literature review. *Palliat Med*. 2005;19:208–219.
138. Chan VO, Colville J, Persaud T, et al. Intramuscular injections into the buttocks: are they truly intramuscular? *Eur J Radiol*. 2006;58:480–484.
138a. Remington R, Hultman T. Hypodermoclysis to treat dehydration: a review of the evidence. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2007;55:2051–2055.
139. Radbruch L, Trottenberg P, Elsner F, Kaasa S, Caraceni A. Systematic review of the role of alternative application routes for opioid treatment for moderate to severe cancer pain: an EPCRC opioid guidelines project. *Palliat Med*. 2011;25:578–596.
139a. Burton AW, Rajagopal A, Shah HN, et al. Epidural and intrathecal analgesia is effective in treating refractory cancer pain. *Pain Med*. 2004;5(3):239–247. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1526-4637.2004.04037.x.
140. Deleted in proofs.
141. Deleted in proofs.
142. Deleted in proofs.
143. Deleted in proofs.
144. Goudas LC, Bloch R, Gialeli-Goudas M, Lau J, Carr DB. The epidemiology of cancer pain. *Cancer Invest*. 2005;23:182–190.
145. Caraceni A, Portenoy RK. An international survey of cancer pain characteristics and syndromes. IASP Task Force on Cancer Pain. International Association for the Study of Pain. *Pain*. 1999;82:263–274.
146. Zech DF, Grond S, Lynch J, Hertel D, Lehmann KA. Validation of World Health Organization Guidelines for cancer pain relief: a 10-year prospective study. *Pain*. 1995;63:65–76.
146a. van den Beuken-van Everdingen MHJ, de Rijke JM, Kessels AG, Schouten HC, van Kleef M, Patijn J. Prevalence of pain in patients with cancer: a systematic review of the past 40 years. *Ann Oncol*. 2007;18(9):1437–1449. https://doi.org/10.1093/annonc/mdm056.
146b. Azevedo São Leão Ferreira K, Kimura M, Jacobsen Teixeira M. The WHO analgesic ladder for cancer pain control, twenty years of use. How much pain relief does one get from using it? *Support Care Cancer*. 2006;14(11):1086–1093. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00520-006-0086-x.
147. Portenoy RK. Treatment of cancer pain. *Lancet*. 2011;377:2236–2247.
148. Aapro M, Abrahamsson PA, Body JJ, et al. Guidance on the use of bisphosphonates in solid tumours: recommendations of an international expert panel. *Ann Oncol*. 2008;19:420–432.
149. Mundy GR. Metastasis to bone: causes, consequences and therapeutic opportunities. *Nat Rev Cancer*. 2002;2:584–593.
150. Smith HS, Barkin RL. Painful boney metastases. *Am J Ther*. 2013;21:106–130.
151. Buga S, Sarria JE. The management of pain in metastatic bone disease. *Cancer Control*. 2012;19:154–166.
152. Ferris FD, Bezjak A, Rosenthal SG. The palliative uses of radiation therapy in surgical oncology patients. *Surg Oncol Clin N Am*. 2001;10:185–201.
153. Deleted in proofs.
154. Paulsen O, Aass N, Kaasa S, Dale O. Do corticosteroids provide analgesic effects in cancer patients? A systematic literature review. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;46:96–105.

155. Van Poznak CH, Temin S, Yee GC, et al. American Society of Clinical Oncology executive summary of the clinical practice guideline update on the role of bone-modifying agents in metastatic breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol*. 2011;29:1221–1227.
156. McNicol E, Strassels S, Goudas L, Lau J, Carr D. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, alone or combined with opioids, for cancer pain: a systematic review. *J Clin Oncol*. 2004;22:1975–1992.
156a. Vayne-Bossert P, Afsharimani B, Good P, et al. Interventional options for the management of refractory cancer pain—what is the evidence? *Support Care Cancer*. 2016;24(3):1429–1438.
157. Nekolaichuk CL, Fainsinger RL, Aass N, et al. The Edmonton classification system for cancer pain: comparison of pain classification features and pain intensity across diverse palliative care settings in eight countries. *J Palliat Med*. 2013;16:516–523.
158. Stanik-Hutt JA, Soeken KL, Belcher AE, Fontaine DK, Gift AG. Pain experiences of traumatically injured patients in a critical care setting. *Am J Crit Care*. 2001;10:252–259.
159. Payen JF, Bru O, Bosson JL, et al. Assessing pain in critically ill sedated patients by using a behavioral pain scale. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29:2258–2263.
160. Gelinas C, Fillion L, Puntillo KA, Viens C, Fortier M. Validation of the critical-care pain observation tool in adult patients. *Am J Crit Care*. 2006;15:420–427.
161. Puntillo K, Pasero C, Li D, et al. Evaluation of pain in ICU patients. *Chest*. 2009;135:1069–1074.
162. Penrod JD, Pronovost PJ, Livote EE, et al. Meeting standards of high-quality intensive care unit palliative care: clinical performance and predictors. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:1105–1112.
163. Bailey FA, Williams BR, Goode PS, et al. Opioid pain medication orders and administration in the last days of life. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;44:681–691.
164. Morita T, Tsunoda J, Inoue S, Chihara S. Effects of high dose opioids and sedatives on survival in terminally ill cancer patients. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2001;21:282–289.
165. Thorns A, Sykes N. Opioid use in last week of life and implications for end-of-life decision-making. *Lancet*. 2000;356:398–399.
166. Portenoy RK, Sibirceva U, Smout R, et al. Opioid use and survival at the end of life: a survey of a hospice population. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2006;32:532–540.
167. Sykes N, Thorns A. The use of opioids and sedatives at the end of life. *Lancet Oncol*. 2003;4:312–318.
168. Ballantyne JC. Opioid misuse in oncology pain patients. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2007;11:276–282.
168a. World Health Organization. *Traitement De La Douleur Cancéreuse*. Geneva: World Health Organization; 1987.
168b. Cleeland CS, Gonin R, Hatfield AK, et al. Pain and its treatment in outpatients with metastatic cancer. *N Engl J Med*. 1994;330(9):592–596. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199403033300902.
168c. Vainio A, Auvinen A. Prevalence of symptoms among patients with advanced cancer: an international collaborative study. Symptom Prevalence Group. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 1996;12(1):3–10.
168d. Smith TJ, Staats PS, Deer T, et al. Randomized clinical trial of an implantable drug delivery system compared with comprehensive medical management for refractory cancer pain: impact on pain, drug-related toxicity, and survival. *J Clin Oncol*. 2002;20(19):4040–4049. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2002.02.118.
169. Wood GJ, Shega JW, Lynch B, Von Roenn JH. Management of intractable nausea and vomiting in patients at the end of life: "I was feeling nauseous all of the time... nothing was working". *JAMA*. 2007;298:1196–1207.
170. Basch E, Prestrud AA, Hesketh PJ, et al. Antiemetics: American Society of Clinical Oncology clinical practice guideline update. *J Clin Oncol*. 2011;29:4189–4198.
171. Davis MP, Hallerberg G. Palliative Medicine Study Group of the Multinational Association of Supportive Care in Cancer: a systematic review of the treatment of nausea and/or vomiting in cancer unrelated to chemotherapy or radiation. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2010;39:756–767.
172. Blair SL, Chu DZ, Schwarz RE. Outcome of palliative operations for malignant bowel obstruction in patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis from nongynecological cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2001;8:632–637.
173. Casarett D, Kapo J, Caplan A. Appropriate use of artificial nutrition and hydration–fundamental principles and recommendations. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353:2607–2612.
174. Ganzini L, Goy ER, Miller LL, et al. Nurses' experiences with hospice patients who refuse food and fluids to hasten death. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:359–365.
175. Mitchell SL. A 93-year-old man with advanced dementia and eating problems. *JAMA*. 2007;298:2527–2536.
176. Ganzini L. Artificial nutrition and hydration at the end of life: ethics and evidence. *Palliat Support Care*. 2006;4:135–143.
177. Bruera E, Sala R, Rico MA, et al. Effects of parenteral hydration in terminally ill cancer patients: a preliminary study. *J Clin Oncol*. 2005;23:2366–2371.
178. Teno JM, Gozalo PL, Mitchell SL, et al. Does feeding tube insertion and its timing improve survival? *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2012;60:1918–1921.
179. Fischberg D, Bull J, Casarett D, et al. Five things physicians and patients should question in hospice and palliative medicine. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2013;45:595–605.
180. Parshall MB, Schwartzstein RM, Adams L, et al. An official American Thoracic Society statement: update on the mechanisms, assessment, and management of dyspnea. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;185:435–452.
181. Deleted in proofs.
182. Delgado-Guay MO, Parsons HA, Li Z, Palmer LJ, Bruera E. Symptom distress, interventions, and outcomes of intensive care unit cancer patients referred to a palliative care consult team. *Cancer*. 2009;115:437–445.
183. Solano JP, Gomes B, Higginson IJ. A comparison of symptom prevalence in far advanced cancer, AIDS, heart disease, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and renal disease. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2006;31:58–69.
184. Puntillo KA, Arai S, Cohen NH, et al. Symptoms experienced by intensive care unit patients at high risk of dying. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38:2155–2160.
185. Currow DC, Smith J, Davidson PM, et al. Do the trajectories of dyspnea differ in prevalence and intensity by diagnosis at the end of life? A consecutive cohort study. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2010;39:680–690.
186. Buckholz GT, von Gunten CF. Nonpharmacological management of dyspnea. *Curr Opin Support Palliat Care*. 2009;3:98–102.
187. Currow DC, McDonald C, Oaten S, et al. Once-daily opioids for chronic dyspnea: a dose increment and pharmacovigilance study. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2011;42:388–399.
188. Mahler DA, Selecky PA, Harrod CG, et al. American College of Chest Physicians consensus statement on the management of dyspnea in patients with advanced lung or heart disease. *Chest*. 2010;137:674–691.
189. Abernethy AP, Currow DC, Frith P, et al. Randomised, double blind, placebo controlled crossover trial of sustained release morphine for the management of refractory dyspnoea. *BMJ*. 2003;327:523–528.
190. Navigante AH, Castro MA, Cerchietti LC. Morphine versus midazolam as upfront therapy to control dyspnea perception in cancer patients while its underlying cause is sought or treated. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2010;39:820–830.
191. Navigante AH, Cerchietti LC, Castro MA, Lutteral MA, Cabalar ME. Midazolam as adjunct therapy to morphine in the alleviation of severe dyspnea perception in patients with advanced cancer. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2006;31:38–47.
192. Gomutbutra P, O'Riordan DL, Pantilat SZ. Management of moderate-to-severe dyspnea in hospitalized patients receiving palliative care. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2013;45:885–891.
193. Deleted in proofs.
194. Deleted in proofs.
195. Deleted in proofs.
196. Deleted in proofs.
197. Deleted in proofs.
198. Mitchell AJ, Chan M, Bhatti H, et al. Prevalence of depression, anxiety, and adjustment disorder in oncological, haematological, and palliative-care settings: a meta-analysis of 94 interview-based studies. *Lancet Oncol*. 2011;12:160–174.
199. Block SD. Psychological issues in end-of-life care. *J Palliat Med*. 2006;9:751–772.
200. Payne A, Barry S, Creedon B, et al. Sensitivity and specificity of a two-question screening tool for depression in a specialist palliative care unit. *Palliat Med*. 2007;21:193–198.

201. Rao S, Ferris FD, Irwin SA. Ease of screening for depression and delirium in patients enrolled in inpatient hospice care. *J Palliat Med*. 2011;14:275–279.
202. Kerr CW, Drake J, Milch RA, et al. Effects of methylphenidate on fatigue and depression: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;43:68–77.
203. Block SD. Assessing and managing depression in the terminally ill patient. ACP-ASIM End-of-Life Care Consensus Panel. American College of Physicians - American Society of Internal Medicine. *Ann Intern Med*. 2000;132:209–218.
204. Breitbart W, Alici Y. Agitation and delirium at the end of life: "We couldn't manage him". *JAMA*. 2008;300(E1):2898–2910.
205. Lawlor PG, Gagnon B, Mancini IL, et al. Occurrence, causes, and outcome of delirium in patients with advanced cancer: a prospective study. *Arch Intern Med*. 2000;160:786–794.
206. Ryan K, Leonard M, Guerin S, et al. Validation of the confusion assessment method in the palliative care setting. *Palliat Med*. 2009;23:40–45.
207. Inouye SK, van Dyck CH, Alessi CA, et al. Clarifying confusion: the confusion assessment method. A new method for detection of delirium. *Ann Intern Med*. 1990;113:941–948.
208. Breitbart W, Gibson C, Tremblay A. The delirium experience: delirium recall and delirium-related distress in hospitalized patients with cancer, their spouses/caregivers, and their nurses. *Psychosomatics*. 2002;43:183–194.
209. Leonard M, Raju B, Conroy M, et al. Reversibility of delirium in terminally ill patients and predictors of mortality. *Palliat Med*. 2008;22:848–854.
210. Spiller JA, Keen JC. Hypoactive delirium: assessing the extent of the problem for inpatient specialist palliative care. *Palliat Med*. 2006;20:17–23.
211. LeGrand SB. Delirium in palliative medicine: a review. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2012;44:583–594.

211a. Hosker CMG, Bennett MI. Delirium and agitation at the end of life. *BMJ*. 2016;353:i3085.

212. Gupta D, Mishra S, Bhatnagar S, Jain V, Gamanagatti S. Trial of angioembolization of advanced stage tumors feeding arteries exemplifying aggressive and active interventional palliation. *J Palliat Med*. 2008;11:250–253.
213. Harris DG, Noble SI. Management of terminal hemorrhage in patients with advanced cancer: a systematic literature review. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2009;38:913–927.

213a. Mularski RA, Puntillo K, Varkey B, et al. Pain management within the palliative and end-of-life care experience in the ICU. *Chest*. 2009;135:1360–1369.

213b. Morita T, Ichiki T, Tsunoda J, Inoue S, Chihara S. A prospective study on the dying process in terminally ill cancer patients. *Am J Hosp Palliat Care*. 1998;15:217–222.

213c. Bennett M, Lucas V, Brennan M, et al. Using anti-muscarinic drugs in the management of death rattle: evidence-based guidelines for palliative care. *Palliat Med*. 2002;16:369–374.

213d. Wildiers H, Dhaenekint C, Demeulenaere P, et al. Atropine, hyosciene butylbromide, or scopolamine are equally effective for the treatment of death rattle in terminal care. *J Pain Symp Manag*. 2009;38(1):124–133. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2008.07.007.

213e. Heisler M, Hamilton G, Abbott A, et al. Randomized double-blind trial of sublingual atropine vs. placebo for the management of death rattle. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2013;45:14–22.

213f. Wee BL, Coleman PG, Hillier R, Holgate SH. The sound of death rattle I: are relatives distressed by hearing this sound? *Palliat Med*. 2006;20:171–175.

213g. Marr L, Weissman DE. Withdrawal of ventilatory support from the dying adult patient. *J Support Oncol*. 2004;2:283–288.

213h. Treece PD, Engelberg RA, Crowley L, et al. Evaluation of a standardized order form for the withdrawal of life support in the intensive care unit. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:1141–1148.

213i. Campbell ML. How to withdraw mechanical ventilation: a systematic review of the literature. *AACN Adv Crit Care*. 2007;18:397–403. quiz 344–345.

213j. Rajamani A, Barrett E, Weisbrodt L, et al. Protocolised approach to end-of-life care in the ICU—the ICU PALCare Pilot Project. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2015;43(3):335–340.

213k. Mazer MA, Alligood CM, Wu Q. The infusion of opioids during terminal withdrawal of mechanical ventilation in the medical intensive care unit. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2011;42:44–51.

213l. Chan JD, Treece PD, Engelberg RA, et al. Narcotic and benzodiazepine use after withdrawal of life support: association with time to death? *Chest*. 2004;126:286–293.

213m. Gerstel E, Engelberg RA, Koepsell T, Curtis JR. Duration of withdrawal of life support in the intensive care unit and association with family satisfaction. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2008;178(8):798–804. https://doi.org/10.1164/rccm.200711-1617OC.

213n. Truog RD, Campbell ML, Curtis JR, et al. Recommendations for end-of-life care in the intensive care unit: a consensus statement by the American College [corrected] of Critical Care Medicine. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:953–963.

213o. Himelstein BP, Hilden JM, Boldt AM, Weissman D. Pediatric palliative care. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:1752–1762.

213p. Feudtner C, Kang TI, Hexem KR, et al. Pediatric palliative care patients: a prospective multicenter cohort study. *Pediatrics*. 2011;127:1094–1101.

213q. Wolfe J, Grier HE, Klar N, et al. Symptoms and suffering at the end of life in children with cancer. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:326–333.

213r. Rork JF, Berde CB, Goldstein RD. Regional anesthesia approaches to pain management in pediatric palliative care: a review of current knowledge. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2013;46:859–873.

214. Deleted in proofs.
215. Bakitas MA, Tosteson TD, Li Z, et al. Early Versus Delayed Initiation of Concurrent Palliative Oncology Care: Patient Outcomes in The ENABLE III Randomized Controlled Trial. *J Clin Oncol*. 2015;33(13):1438–1445. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2014.58.6362.
216. Obermeyer Z, Makar M, Abujaber S, Dominici F, Block S, Cutler DM. Association between the Medicare hospice benefit and health care utilization and costs for patients with poor-prognosis cancer. *JAMA*. 2014;312(18):1888–1896. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2014.14950.
217. Shrime MG, Ferket BS, Scott DJ, et al. Time-limited trials of intensive care for critically ill patients with cancer: how long is long enough? *JAMA Oncol*. 2016;2(1):76–83. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamaoncol.2015.3336.
218. Vidri RJ, Blakely AM, Kulkarni SS, et al. American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Program as a quality-measurement tool for advanced cancer patients. *Ann Palliat Med*. 2015;4(4):200–206. https://doi.org/10.3978/j.issn.2224-5820.2015.10.01.

53 Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery

PETER SLINGER and JAVIER H. CAMPOS

KEY POINTS

- Patients undergoing pulmonary resection should have a preoperative assessment of their respiratory function in three areas: lung mechanical function, pulmonary parenchymal function, and cardiopulmonary reserve (the "three-legged stool" of respiratory assessment).
- Patients with underlying lung disease have a decreased risk of respiratory complications when pulmonary resections are performed with video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery (VATS)
- After lung resection surgery, it is usually possible to wean and extubate patients with adequate predicted postoperative respiratory function in the operating room provided they are "AWaC" (alert, warm, and comfortable).
- Interventions that have been shown to decrease the incidence of respiratory complications in high-risk patients undergoing thoracic surgery include cessation of smoking, physiotherapy, and thoracic epidural analgesia.
- Geriatric patients are at high risk for cardiac complications, particularly cardiac arrhythmias (see Chapter 65), after large pulmonary resections. Preoperative exercise capacity is the best predictor of postthoracotomy outcome in the older patient.
- The ability to perform fiberoptic bronchoscopy and a detailed knowledge of bronchial anatomy are necessary for anesthesiologists to provide reliable lung isolation.
- Use of double-lumen endobronchial tubes (DLTs) is the standard method of providing lung isolation in adults. Bronchial blockers are a reasonable alternative for lung isolation in patients with abnormal upper or lower airways.
- With the use of intravenous anesthetic techniques or volatile anesthetics at less than or equal to 1–minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) doses, hypoxemia during one-lung ventilation (OLV) occurs infrequently. The use of continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) or positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) as treatment for hypoxemia during OLV should be guided by the individual patient's lung mechanics.
- The use of large tidal volumes during OLV (e.g., 10 mL/kg) can contribute to acute lung injury, particularly in patients at increased respiratory risk, such as after pneumonectomy.
- The underlying principle of management of a patient with a bronchopleural fistula is to secure lung isolation before positive pressure ventilation repositioning the patient for surgery.
- Anesthetic management of a patient with an anterior or superior mediastinal mass should be guided by the patient's symptoms, the preoperative computed tomography (CT) scan, and the echocardiography findings. The fundamental principle of anesthetic management for these patients is *noli ponti ignii consumere* ("don't burn your bridges").
- Continuous paravertebral local anesthetic blockade combined with multimodal analgesia is a reasonable alternative to epidural analgesia for thoracic surgery with fewer side effects.

Introduction

Thoracic anesthesia encompasses a wide variety of diagnostic and therapeutic procedures involving the lungs, airways, and other intrathoracic structures. As the patient population presenting for noncardiac thoracic surgery has evolved so have the anesthetic techniques to manage these patients. Thoracic surgery at the beginning of the last century was primarily for infectious indications (lung abscess, bronchiectasis, empyema). Although these cases still present for surgery in the postantibiotic era, now the most common indications are related to malignancies (pulmonary, esophageal, and mediastinal). In addition, the last two decades have seen the beginnings of surgical therapy for end-stage lung diseases with procedures such as lung transplantation and lung volume reduction. Fundamental to anesthetic management for the majority of thoracic procedures are two techniques: (1) lung isolation to facilitate surgical access within the thorax, and (2) management of one-lung anesthesia. In this chapter, we initially discuss preanesthetic assessment for thoracic surgery, outline intraoperative management principles common to most thoracic surgical procedures, discuss specific anesthetic considerations in common and less common surgical operations, and we finish with a description of postoperative management issues in thoracic surgical patients.

PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION OF THE THORACIC SURGERY PATIENT (SEE CHAPTER 31)

Preoperative anesthetic assessment prior to chest surgery is a continually evolving science and art. Recent advances in anesthetic management, surgical techniques, and perioperative care have expanded the envelope of patients now considered to be "operable."[1] This discussion focuses primarily on preanesthetic assessment for pulmonary resection surgery in cancer patients. However, the basic principles described will apply to all other types of nonmalignant pulmonary resections and to other chest surgery.

Although 87% of patients with lung cancer will die of their disease, the 13% cure rate represents approximately 26,000 survivors per year in North America. Surgical resection is responsible for essentially all of these cures. A patient with a "resectable" lung cancer has a disease that is still local or local-regional in scope and can be encompassed in a plausible surgical procedure. An "operable" patient is someone who can tolerate the proposed resection with acceptable risk.

The patient is commonly assessed initially as an outpatient and often not by the member of the anesthesia staff who will actually administer the anesthesia. The actual contact with the responsible anesthesiologist may be only 10 to 15 minutes prior to induction. It is necessary to organize and standardize the approach to preoperative evaluation for these patients into two temporally disjoint phases: the initial (clinic) assessment and the final (day-of-admission) assessment. Elements vital to each assessment are described.

An increasing number of thoracic surgeons are now being trained to perform "lung-sparing" resections such as sleeve-lobectomies or segmentectomies, and resections with minimally invasive techniques such as video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery (VATS) or robotic surgery. The postoperative preservation of respiratory function has been shown to be proportional to the amount of functioning lung parenchyma preserved. To assess patients with limited pulmonary function the anesthesiologist must appreciate these newer surgical options in addition to the conventional open lobectomy or pneumonectomy.

It is the anesthesiologist's responsibility to use the preoperative assessment to identify patients at elevated risk and then to use that risk assessment to stratify perioperative management and focus resources on the high-risk patients to improve their outcome. This is the primary function of the preanesthetic assessment. However, there are occasions when the anesthesiologist should contribute his or her opinion about whether a specific high-risk patient will tolerate a specific surgical procedure. This may occur preoperatively but also occurs intraoperatively when the surgical findings suggest that a planned procedure, such as a lobectomy, may require a larger resection, such as a pneumonectomy. For these reasons, it is imperative that the anesthesiologist have a complete preoperative knowledge of the patient's medical status and also an appreciation of the pathophysiology of lung resection surgery. Prethoracotomy assessment naturally involves all of the factors of a complete anesthetic assessment: past history, allergies, medications, upper airway, and so on. This section concentrates on the additional information, beyond a standard anesthetic assessment, that the anesthesiologist needs to manage a patient undergoing a pulmonary resection.

PERIOPERATIVE COMPLICATIONS

The major cause of perioperative morbidity and mortality in the thoracic surgical population is respiratory complications. Major respiratory complications—atelectasis, pneumonia, and respiratory failure—occur in 15% to 20% of patients and account for the majority of the expected 3% to 4% mortality.[2] For other types of surgery, cardiac and vascular complications are the leading cause of early perioperative morbidity and mortality. Cardiac complications such as arrhythmia and ischemia occur in 10% to 15% of the thoracic population.

ASSESSMENT OF RESPIRATORY FUNCTION

The best assessment of respiratory function comes from a detailed history of the patient's quality of life. All patients undergoing a pulmonary resection should have baseline simple spirometry done preoperatively.[3] Objective measures of pulmonary function are required to guide anesthetic management and to have this information in a format that can be easily transmitted between members of the health care team. Respiratory function can be divided into three related but somewhat independent areas: respiratory mechanics, gas exchange, and cardiopulmonary interaction (i.e., exercise capacity). The basic functional units of extracellular respiration are to move the oxygen: (1) into the alveoli, (2) into the blood, and (3) into the tissues (the process is reversed for carbon dioxide removal).

RESPIRATORY MECHANICS

Many tests of respiratory mechanics and volumes show correlation with postthoracotomy outcome: forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV_1), forced vital capacity (FVC), maximal voluntary ventilation (MVV), residual volume/total lung capacity ratio (RV/TLC), and so on (see Chapter 13 on pulmonary function testing). It is useful to express these as a percent of predicted volumes corrected for age, sex, and height (e.g., FEV_1 %). Of these, the most valid single test for postthoracotomy respiratory complications is the predicted postoperative FEV_1 (ppoFEV_1 %),[4] which is calculated as:

$$\text{ppoFEV}_1\ \% = \text{preoperative FEV1}\ \% \times (1 - \%\ \text{functional lung tissue removed}/100).$$

One method of estimating the percent of functional lung tissue is based on a calculation of the number of functioning subsegments of the lung removed (Fig. 53.1). Patients with a ppoFEV_1 greater than 40% are at low risk for postresection respiratory complications. The risk of major respiratory complications is increased in the subgroup with ppoFEV_1 less than 40% (although not all patients in this subgroup develop respiratory complications) and patients with ppoFEV_1 less than 30% are at high risk.

Lung Parenchymal Function

As important to the process of respiration as the mechanical delivery of air to the distal airways is the subsequent ability of the lung to exchange oxygen and carbon dioxide between the pulmonary vascular bed and the alveoli. Traditionally arterial blood gas data such as PaO_2 less than 60 mm Hg or $PaCO_2$ greater than 45 mm Hg have been used as cut-off values for pulmonary resection. Cancer resections have now been successfully done or even combined with volume reduction in patients who do not meet these criteria, although they remain useful as warning indicators of increased risk. The most useful test of the gas exchange capacity of the lung is the diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide (DLCO). The DLCO correlates with the total functioning surface area of alveolar-capillary interface. The corrected DLCO can be used to calculate a postresection (predicted postoperative [ppo]) value using the same calculation as for the FEV_1 (see Fig. 53.1). A ppoDLCO less than 40% correlates with both increased respiratory and cardiac complications and is, to a large degree, independent of the FEV_1.[5] The DLCO, but not the FEV_1, is negatively affected by preoperative chemotherapy and may be the most important predictor of complications in this subgroup of patients. Some authors feel a higher cutoff risk-threshold for ppoDLCO of less than 50% may be more appropriate.[6] The National Emphysema Treatment Trial has shown that patients with a preoperative FEV_1 or DLCO less than 20% had an unacceptably high perioperative mortality rate.[7] These can be considered as the absolute minimal values compatible with a successful outcome.

Cardiopulmonary Interaction

The final and perhaps most important assessment of respiratory function is an assessment of the cardiopulmonary interaction (evaluation of the patient's exercise capacity). Exercise capacity is commonly described in units of metabolic equivalent of task (MET). Sitting quietly requires an oxygen consumption of 3.5 mL/kg /min (1 MET). Climbing one flight of stairs is 4 METs. In a patient who is a reliable historian, the ability to climb two flights of stairs without stopping is a minimum to be considered for pulmonary resection evaluation. While there is no absolute definition of the height of a flight of stairs, 10 feet (3 M) is a commonly used standard. Patients who cannot give a reliable history, or are limited in their ability to climb stairs because of comorbidities, will require simple and/or formal exercise testing.

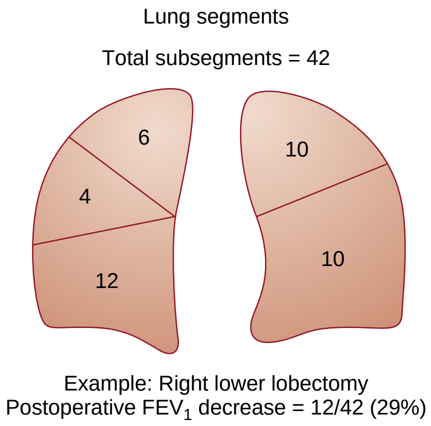

Lung segments
Total subsegments = 42
6
4
12
10
10
Example: Right lower lobectomy
Postoperative FEV_1 decrease = 12/42 (29%)

Fig. 53.1 The number of subsegments of each lobe are used to calculate the predicted postoperative (ppo) pulmonary function (e.g., after a right lower lobectomy, a patient with a preoperative *FEV_1* [or DLCO] 70% of normal would be expected to have a $ppoFEV_1$ of 70% × (1 − 29/100) = 50%. *ppoDLCO*, Predicted postoperative diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide; *$ppoFEV_1$*, predicted postoperative forced expiratory volume. (Reproduced with permission from Slinger P. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.)

The most valid simple exercise test is the maximal distance that a patient can walk in 6 minutes.[8] The 6-minute walk test (6MWT) shows an excellent correlation with maximal oxygen consumption (VO_2max) and requires no laboratory equipment. It has been shown in COPD patients that the VO_2max can be estimated from the 6MWT distance in meters divided by 30 (i.e., 6MWT of 450 m: estimated VO_2max = 450/30 = 15 mL/kg/min).[9] Other simple exercise tests include shuttle walking in which a patient walks at a fixed, and gradually increased, rate between 2 markers 10 meters apart. A distance of less 250 meters correlates with a VO_2max of less than 10 mL/kg/min.[3] Another simple test is exercise-oximetry: patients with a decrease of blood oxygen saturation (SpO_2) greater than 4% during exercise are at increased risk.

Formal laboratory exercise testing is the "gold standard" for assessment of cardiopulmonary function[10] and the VO_2max is the most useful predictor of postthoracotomy outcome. The risk of morbidity and mortality is high if the preoperative VO_2max is less than 15 mL/kg/min, and very high if less than 10 mL/kg/min (35% predicted).[11] Few patients with a VO_2max greater than 20 mL/kg/min (75% predicted) have respiratory complications. (For comparison, a VO_2max of 85 mL/kg/min was documented for the American cyclist Lance Armstrong in 2005[12]; since then several elite rowers and cross-country skiers have exceeded this.)

After pulmonary resection, right ventricular dysfunction appears to be in proportion to the amount of functioning pulmonary vascular bed removed. The exact etiology and duration of this dysfunction remain unknown. Clinical evidence of this hemodynamic problem is minimal when the patient is at rest but is dramatic when the patient exercises, leading to elevation of pulmonary vascular pressures, limitation of cardiac output, and absence of the normal decrease in pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) usually seen with exertion.[13]

Ventilation Perfusion Scintigraphy

Prediction of postresection pulmonary function can be further refined by assessment of the preoperative contribution of the lung or lobe to be resected using ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) lung scanning. If the lung region to be resected is nonfunctioning or minimally functioning, the prediction of postoperative function can be modified accordingly. This is particularly useful in pneumonectomy patients and V/Q scanning should be considered for any pneumonectomy patient who has a preoperative FEV_1 and/or DLCO less than 80%. However, V/Q scanning is of limited usefulness to predict postlobectomy function.[14]

Combination of Tests

No single test of respiratory function has shown adequate validity as a sole preoperative assessment. Prior to surgery, an estimate of respiratory function in all three areas—lung mechanics, parenchymal function, and cardiopulmonary interaction—should be made for each patient. These three aspects of pulmonary function form the "three-legged stool" that is the foundation of prethoracotomy respiratory assessment (Box 53.1).

An algorithm for preoperative respiratory evaluation of the patient for pulmonary resection is presented in Fig. 53.2. The recent increased use of minimally invasive surgical techniques has had a major impact on the assessment of operability in lung cancer patients. Patients previously considered high risk for thoracotomy may not be high risk if the procedure can be done with VATS or robotic surgery.[15] The threshold for increased risk in ppoFEV$_1$ for lobectomy appears to have shifted from less than 40% for open thoracotomy to less than 30% for VATS (Fig. 53.3).[16] The same shift may also have occurred for ppoDLCO (Fig. 53.4).[17]

If a patient has a ppoFEV$_1$ greater than 40%, the trachea usually can be extubated in the operating room at the conclusion of surgery assuming the patient is alert, warm, and comfortable ("AWaC"). If the ppoFEV$_1$ is greater than 30% and exercise tolerance and lung parenchymal function exceed the increased-risk thresholds, then tracheal extubation can be done in the operating room depending on the status of associated medical conditions. Patients in this subgroup who do not meet the minimal criteria for cardiopulmonary and parenchymal function should be considered for staged weaning from mechanical ventilation postoperatively. Patients with a ppoFEV$_1$ of 20% to 30% and favorable predicted cardiorespiratory and parenchymal function can be considered for early tracheal extubation if thoracic epidural analgesia is used or if the resection is performed with VATS. In the increased-risk group, the presence of several associated factors and diseases should be documented during the preoperative assessment and will enter into the consideration for postoperative management (discussed later).

BOX 53.1 The Three-Legged Stool of Prethoracotomy Respiratory Assessment

Respiratory mechanical function. Most valid test: ppoFEV$_1$. Threshold for increased risk : <30%–40% (see text)
Lung parenchymal function. Most valid test: ppoDLCO. Threshold for increased risk: <30%–40% (see text)
Cardiopulmonary interaction. Most valid test: Maximal oxygen consumption. Threshold for increased risk: <15 mL/kg/min

ppoDLCO, Predicted postoperative diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide; *ppoFEV$_1$*, predicted postoperative forced expiratory volume.

Concomitant Medical Conditions

CARDIAC DISEASE

Cardiac complications are the second most common cause of perioperative morbidity and mortality in the thoracic surgical population.

Ischemia

Because the majority of pulmonary resection patients have a smoking history, they already have one risk factor for coronary artery disease. Elective pulmonary resection surgery is regarded as an "intermediate-risk" procedure in terms of perioperative cardiac ischemia.[18] The overall documented incidence of postthoracotomy ischemia is 5% and peaks on days 2 to 3 postoperatively. Beyond the standard history, physical, and electrocardiogram, routine screening testing for cardiac disease does not appear to be cost-effective for

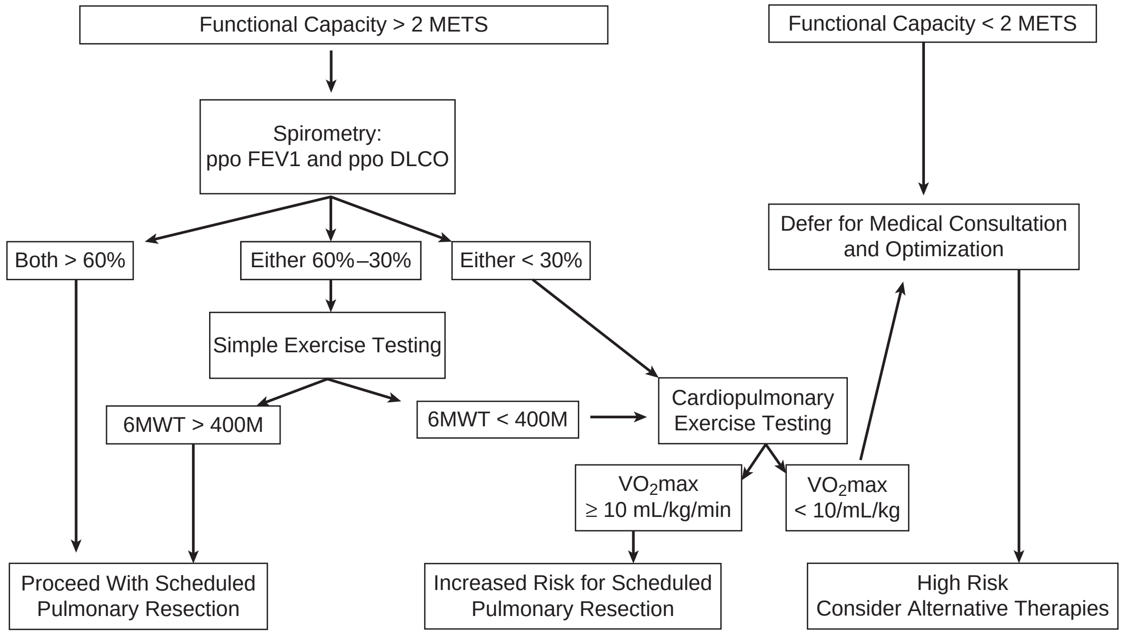

Functional Capacity > 2 METS
Functional Capacity < 2 METS
Spirometry:
ppo FEV1 and ppo DLCO
Both > 60%
Either 60%–30%
Either < 30%
Defer for Medical Consultation and Optimization
Simple Exercise Testing
6MWT > 400M
6MWT < 400M
Cardiopulmonary Exercise Testing
VO2max ≥ 10 mL/kg/min
VO2max < 10/mL/kg
Proceed With Scheduled Pulmonary Resection
Increased Risk for Scheduled Pulmonary Resection
High Risk
Consider Alternative Therapies

Fig. 53.2 A flow-diagram for preoperative respiratory investigation of a patient for pulmonary resection surgery. *MET*, Metabolic equivalent of task; *ppoDLCO*, predicted postoperative diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide; *ppoFEV$_1$*, predicted postoperative forced expiratory volume in 1 second; *6MWT*, = 6-minute walk test distance in meters. (Based on data from Brunelli A, Kim A, et al. Physiological evaluation of the patient with lung cancer being considered for resectional surgery. *Chest.* 2013;143:e166s–190s; and Licker M, Triponez F, Diaper J, et al. Preoperative evaluation of lung cancer patients. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep.* 2014;4:124–134.)

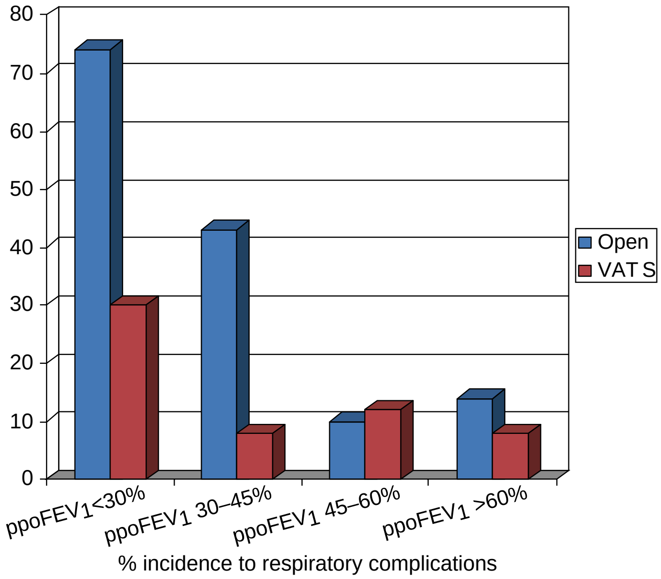


Fig. 53.3 A comparison of the incidence of postoperative respiratory complications after open thoracotomy versus *VATS* lobectomies for lung cancer. *FEV_1*, forced expiratory volume in one second; *ppo*, Predicted postoperative value; *VATS*, video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery. This was a nonrandomized retrospective study. It appears that the threshold for increased risk may have decreased from <40% ppoFEV$_1$ in the open group to <30% in the VATS group. (Based on data from Berry M, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;89:1044–1052.)

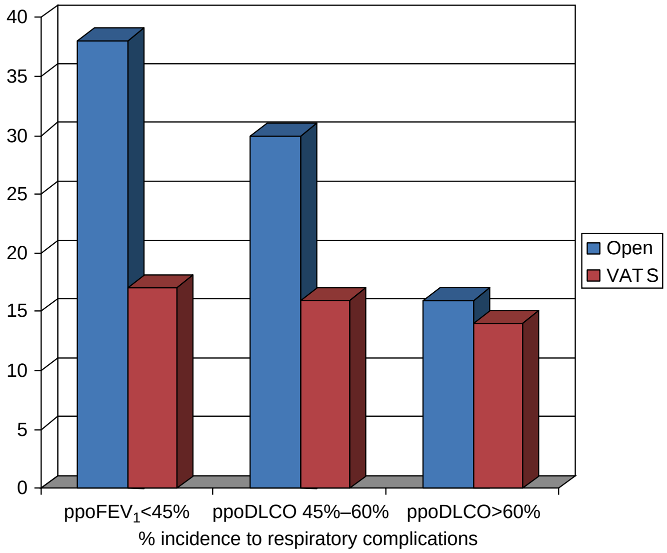


Fig. 53.4 A comparison of the incidence of postoperative respiratory complications after open thoracotomy versus VATS lobectomies for lung cancer. *DLCO*, diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide; *ppo*, Predicted postoperative value; *VATS*, video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery. It appears there is a threshold for increased risk in open procedures with less than 60% ppoDLCO. A threshold for VATS procedures could not be clearly identified, however there were very few patients with a ppoDLCO <40% in this study. (Based on data from Berry M, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;89:1044–1052.)

all prethoracotomy patients. Noninvasive testing is indicated in patients with major (i.e., unstable ischemia, recent infarction, severe valvular disease, significant arrhythmia) or intermediate (i.e., stable angina, remote infarction, previous congestive failure, diabetes) clinical predictors of myocardial risk. Therapeutic options to be considered in patients with significant coronary artery disease are optimization of medical therapy, coronary angioplasty, or coronary artery bypass, either before or at the time of lung resection. Timing of lung resection surgery after a myocardial infarction is always a difficult decision to make. Limiting the delay to 4 to 6 weeks in a medically stable and fully investigated and optimized patient seems acceptable after myocardial infarction. The appropriate delay after coronary stenting is conventionally 4 to 6 weeks after bare metal stents and 6 months after drug-eluting stents.[19,20] Surgery should be delayed until it is safe to temporarily discontinue major antiplatelet drugs (except aspirin).[20] Preoperative investigation of the patient with coronary artery disease for pulmonary resection should follow the most recent guidelines of the American College of Cardiology (see Chapter 31).[21]

Arrhythmia

Dysrhythmias are a common complication of pulmonary resection surgery and the incidence is 30% to 50% of patients in the first week postoperatively, when Holter monitoring is used.[22] Of these arrhythmias, 60% to 70% are atrial fibrillation. Several factors correlate with an increased incidence of arrhythmias, including extent of lung resection (pneumonectomy, 60%; vs. lobectomy, 40%; vs. nonresection thoracotomy, 30%), intrapericardial dissection, intraoperative blood loss, and age of the patient. Extrapleural pneumonectomy patients are a particularly high-risk group.[23]

Two factors in the early postthoracotomy period interact to produce atrial arrhythmias: 1. increased flow resistance through the pulmonary vascular bed because of permanent (lung resection) or transient (atelectasis, hypoxemia) causes, with attendant strain on the right side of the heart; and 2. increased sympathetic stimuli and oxygen requirements, which are maximal on the second postoperative day as patients become more mobile.

In some patients undergoing a pneumonectomy, the right heart may not be able to increase its output adequately to meet the usual postoperative stress. Transthoracic echocardiographic studies have shown that pneumonectomy patients develop an increase in right ventricular systolic pressure as measured by the tricuspid regurgitation jet (TRJ) on postoperative day 2 but not on day 1. An increase in TRJ velocity has been associated with postthoracotomy supraventricular tachyarrhythmias.[24] Preoperative exercise testing, which assesses the cardiopulmonary interaction, can predict postthoracotomy arrhythmias. Patients with COPD are more resistant to pharmacologic-induced heart rate control when they develop postthoracotomy atrial fibrillation and often require multiple drugs.[25]

Guidelines for the prevention of atrial fibrillation after thoracic surgery written by the American Association of Thoracic Surgeons are presented in Table 53.1.[26] At present, diltiazem is the most useful drug for postthoracotomy arrhythmia prophylaxis.[19] It seems that atrial arrhythmias are a sign of the dysfunctional right heart and preventing the complication does not solve the underlying problem. β-Adrenergic blockers may be the most effective drug to prevent arrhythmias, but there are concerns about their routine use in patients with reactive airways diseases.[27]

TABLE 53.1 Recommendations for Prevention of Postoperative Atrial Fibrillation (AF) in Thoracic Surgery

All Patients	High Risk for AF
	Includes: Anterior mediastinal mass, lobectomy, pneumonectomy, and esophagectomy
Continue β-blockers if taken preoperatively	Diltiazem, if preserved cardiac function and not taking β-blockers
Magnesium if serum level is low or suspected total body stores depleted	Consider amiodarone
	Consider statins

Based on 2014 AATS Guidelines. Frendl G, Sodickson A, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2014;148:772–791.

BOX 53.2 Modified Classification of Pulmonary Hypertension for Anesthesia

Left Heart Disease	Lung Disease
Systolic dysfunction	Pulmonary vascular disease
Diastolic dysfunction	Chronic lung diseases, hypoxemia, sleep apnea
Mitral valvular disease: stenosis, regurgitation	Thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension
Congenital cardiac disease	Miscellaneous: Autoimmune, metabolic, etc.

Congestive Heart Failure

During one-lung ventilation (OLV) for thoracotomy or thoracoscopy there is an obligate 20% to 30% shunt through the nonventilated lung. If the baseline cardiac output is decreased, the fall in mixed venous oxygen saturation (SvO_2) will lead to an exaggerated fall in arterial oxygen saturation. Patients with a history of congestive heart failure and/or cardiomyopathy may tolerate OLV poorly. They will need monitoring of venous saturation and inotropes to support cardiac output.

Pulmonary Hypertension

Patients with degrees of pulmonary hypertension (mean pulmonary arterial pressure [PAP] > 25 mm Hg by catheterization or systolic PAP > 35)[28] may present for a variety of noncardiac thoracic surgical procedures including pulmonary resections for malignant or benign lesions, esophageal surgery, or vascular surgery.[29] Compared to patients with normal pulmonary pressures, patients with pulmonary hypertension are particularly at increased risk of respiratory complications and the need for prolonged intubation after noncardiac surgery.[30] There are five different major diagnostic groups in the classification of pulmonary hypertension, with multiple subgroups of each group.[31] However, for the anesthesiologist, there are two main types of pulmonary hypertension: pulmonary hypertension due to left heart disease and pulmonary hypertension due to lung disease (Box 53.2). Most of the anesthesia literature has focused on patients with underlying cardiac disease.[32] However, patients who present for noncardiac surgery are more likely to have pulmonary hypertension secondary to lung disease.[33] The prevalence of pulmonary hypertension in severe chronic lung disease ranges from 40% to 50%.[34]

The myocardium of the right ventricle is normally perfused throughout the cardiac cycle. The increased right ventricular transmural and intracavitary pressures associated with pulmonary hypertension may restrict perfusion of the right coronary artery during systole, especially as PAPs approach systemic levels. Avoiding hypotension is key to managing these patients. In practice, this can be a challenge to achieve because anesthetics are commonly associated with a decrease in systemic vascular resistance (SVR) (e.g., propofol and inhalation anesthetics) and a variable effect on PVR. Ketamine or etomidate are useful anesthetic induction drugs in pulmonary hypertension due to lung disease.[35] Inotropes and inodilators such as dobutamine and milrinone may improve hemodynamics in patients with pulmonary hypertension secondary to left heart disease. However, they can decrease systemic vascular tone and tachycardia, and can cause a deterioration in the hemodynamics of patients with pulmonary hypertension due to lung disease. To maintain a systemic arterial blood pressure that is greater than the pulmonary pressure, vasopressors such as phenylephrine or norepinephrine are commonly used.[36] Vasopressin is also useful to maintain systemic pressures. Vasopressin appears to significantly increase systolic blood pressure without affecting PAP in patients with pulmonary hypertension (Fig. 53.5).[37,38] In patients with severe pulmonary hypertension, selective inhaled pulmonary vasodilators including nitric oxide (NO; 10–40 ppm)[39] or nebulized prostaglandins (prostacyclin 50 ng/kg/min) (Fig. 53.6)[40] should be considered (Box 53.3).

At present, the basis of intraoperative monitoring for a patient with pulmonary hypertension having noncardiac thoracic surgery remains the pulmonary artery catheter. However, pulmonary artery data alone can be misleading in these patients. Rising pulmonary artery pressures are almost always a bad sign. Falling pulmonary artery pressures may be a good sign, indicating pulmonary vasodilation, or may be a very bad sign indicating impending right ventricular decompensation. Thus pulmonary artery pressure data need to be followed in concert with cardiac output or mixed venous saturation data. Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is also helpful to monitor right heart function during thoracic surgery. Advances in echocardiography technology may make continuous objective monitoring of right ventricle function more possible in the near future.[41]

Although there have been multiple case reports of the successful use of lumbar epidural analgesia and anesthesia in obstetric patients with pulmonary hypertension,[42] there are very few reports of the use of thoracic epidural analgesia in pulmonary hypertension. Patients with pulmonary hypertension due to lung disease seem to be extremely dependent on tonic cardiac sympathetic innervation for normal hemodynamic stability. Animal studies suggest that the hemodynamic response to an increase in right ventricular afterload is very different with thoracic versus lumbar epidurals. In one study, right ventricle contractility increased as afterload increased in animals with lumbar epidural local anesthetic blockade, similar to the response in animals without neuraxial block. The cardiac sympathectomy of thoracic epidural blockade abolished this increase in contractility (Fig. 53.7).[43] Because of the increased risk of postoperative respiratory complications in these patients,

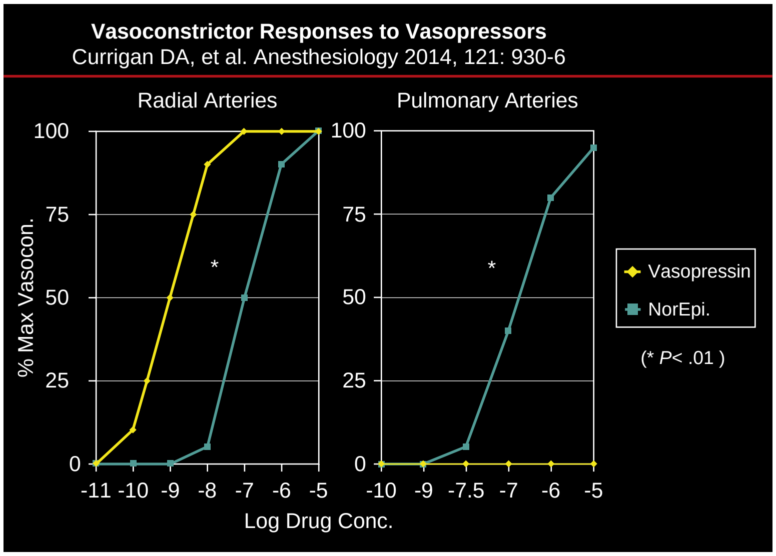


Fig. 53.5 In vitro maximal vasoconstriction (Max Vasocon.) dose-response curves of human radial arteries *(left)* and pulmonary arteries *(right)* to vasopressin and norepinephrine (NorEpi). All vasoconstrictors studied (including phenylephrine and metaraminol) showed similar dose-response patterns in both types of arteries except vasopressin, which showed no constriction of pulmonary arteries. (Based on data from: Currigan DA, Hughes RJA, Wright CE, et al. Vasoconstrictor responses to vasopressor agents in human pulmonary and radial arteries. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:930–936.)

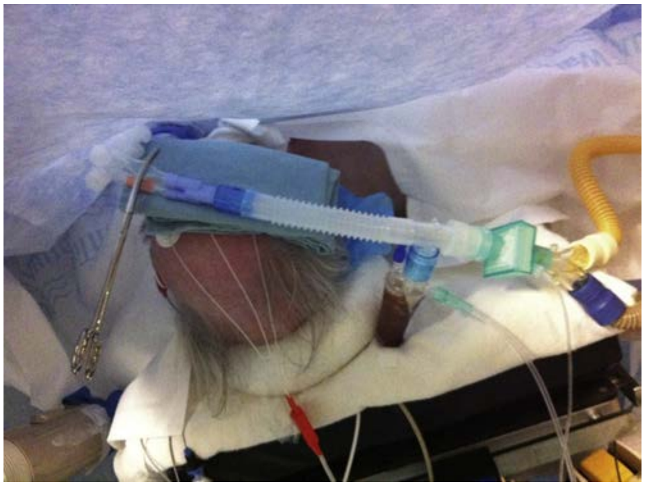


Fig. 53.6 Prostacyclin can be delivered continuously into a standard anesthetic circuit and the dose titrated as needed. In the photograph prostacyclin is delivered by nebulization to the ventilated lung via a double-lumen tube during thoracic surgery and one-lung ventilation in a patient with pulmonary hypertension.

BOX 53.3 Management Principles for Pulmonary Hypertension Secondary to Lung Disease

1. Avoid hypotensive and vasodilating anesthetic agents whenever possible
2. Ketamine does not exacerbate pulmonary hypertension
3. Support mean systolic pressure with vasopressors: norepinephrine, phenylephrine, vasopressin
4. Use inhaled pulmonary vasodilators (nitric oxide, prostacyclin) in preference to intravenous vasodilators when necessary
5. Use thoracic epidural local anesthetics cautiously and with inotropes when necessary
6. Monitor cardiac output

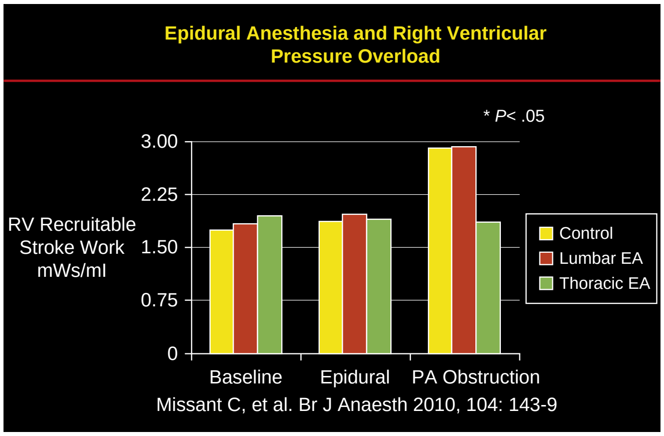


Fig. 53.7 Right ventricular *(RV)* recruitable stroke work, a measure of *RV* contractility, measured in three groups of anesthetized pigs: *Control*, no epidural group; *Lumbar EA*, lumbar epidural group; *Thoracic EA*, thoracic epidural group. Epidural bupivacaine injection had no effect on RV function in any of the study groups. Subsequent inflation of a balloon in the main pulmonary artery (PA Obstruction), increased RV afterload and resulted in a compensatory increase in RV contractility in the Control and Lumbar EA groups but not in the Thoracic EA group. (Based on data from Missant C, Claus P, Rex S, Wouters PF. Differential effects of lumbar and thoracic epidural anaesthesia on the haemodynamic response to acute right ventricular pressure overload. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;104:143–149.)

the use of postoperative thoracic epidural analgesia is often desirable. However, these patients often require a low-dose infusion of inotropes or vasopressors during thoracic epidural local analgesia, which may necessitate continued central venous catheterization and intensive care unit admission. Paravertebral analgesia has been associated with better postthoracotomy hemodynamic stability versus thoracic epidural analgesia in patients with normal cardiac function[44] but this has not been specifically studied in pulmonary hypertensive patients.

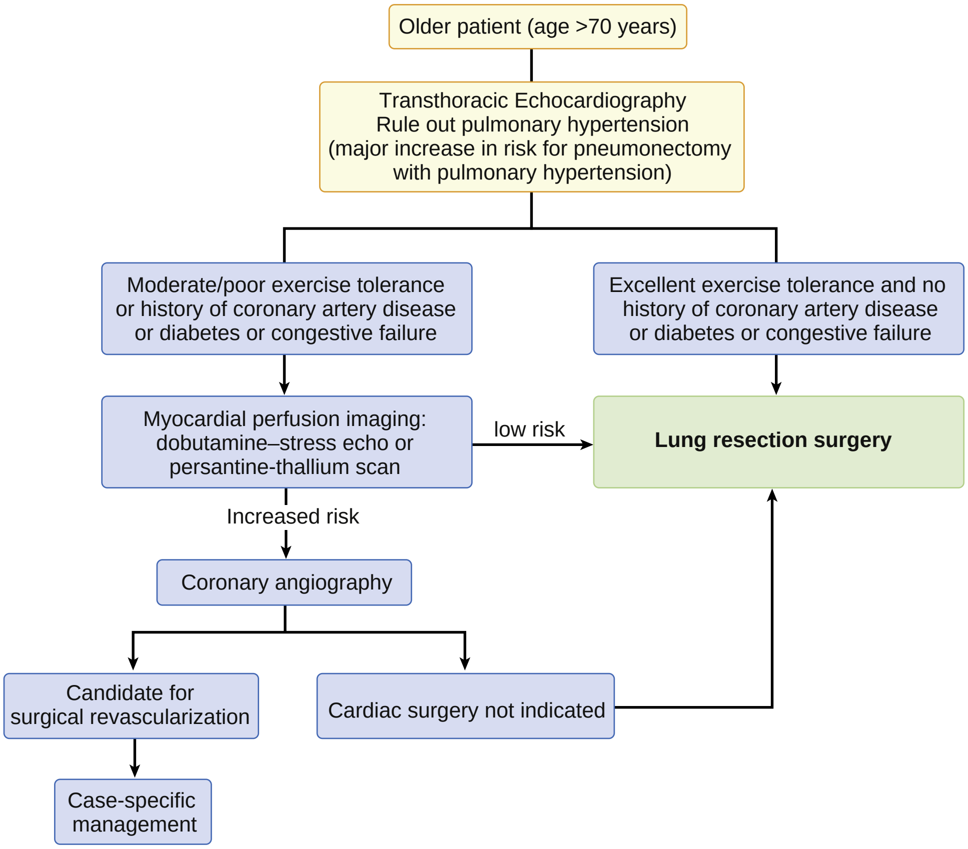

Older patient (age >70 years)
Transthoracic Echocardiography
Rule out pulmonary hypertension
(major increase in risk for pneumonectomy with pulmonary hypertension)
Moderate/poor exercise tolerance or history of coronary artery disease or diabetes or congestive failure
Excellent exercise tolerance and no history of coronary artery disease or diabetes or congestive failure
Myocardial perfusion imaging: dobutamine–stress echo or persantine-thallium scan
low risk
Lung resection surgery
Increased risk
Coronary angiography
Candidate for surgical revascularization
Cardiac surgery not indicated
Case-specific management

Fig. 53.8 Algorithm for the preoperative cardiac assessment of older patients for thoracic (noncardiac) surgery.

AGE

There is no maximum age that is a cutoff for pulmonary resection.[4] The operative mortality in a group of patients 80 to 92 years of age was 3%, a very respectable figure, in one series.[45] However, the rate of respiratory complications (40%) was double that expected in a younger population, and the rate of cardiac complications (40%), particularly arrhythmias, was nearly triple that which would be seen in younger patients. In older patients, thoracotomy should be considered a high-risk procedure for cardiac complications, and cardiopulmonary function is the most important part of the preoperative assessment. An algorithm for the cardiac assessment of the elderly for thoracic surgery is presented in Fig. 53.8. Although the mortality resulting from lobectomy among the older patients is acceptable, the mortality from pneumonectomy, particularly right pneumonectomy, is excessive.[46] Quality of life after pneumonectomy is significantly worse than after lesser pulmonary resections.[47] For these reasons, lung-sparing pulmonary resections are performed whenever possible. As a proportion of all lung cancer resections, pneumonectomy has decreased to approximately one third of its share of 15 years ago.[48] Exercise tolerance seems to be the primary determinant of outcome in older patients. Older patients should have, as a minimum cardiac investigation, a transthoracic echocardiogram to rule out pulmonary hypertension.

RENAL DYSFUNCTION

Renal dysfunction following pulmonary resection surgery was previously associated with a high mortality. Golledge and Goldstraw[49] reported a perioperative mortality of 19% (6/31) in patients in whom a significant elevation of serum creatinine developed in the postthoracotomy period, compared with 0% (0/99) in those who did not show any renal dysfunction. More recently, postthoracotomy renal dysfunction has not been found to be associated with increased mortality.[50] Predictive factors for renal dysfunction include preoperative hypertension, angiotensin II receptor blockers, use of hydroxyethyl starch, and open thoracotomies.

CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE

The most common concurrent illness in the thoracic surgical population is COPD, which incorporates three disorders: emphysema, peripheral airways disease, and chronic bronchitis. Any individual patient may have one or all of these conditions, but the dominant clinical feature is impairment of expiratory airflow.[51] Assessment of the severity of COPD is made on the basis of the FEV_1% of predicted values. The American Thoracic Society categorizes stage I as greater than 50% predicted, stage II as 35% to 50%, and stage III as less than 35%. Stage I patients should not have significant dyspnea, hypoxemia, or hypercarbia, and other causes should be considered if these are present.

Respiratory Drive

Many patients with stage II or III COPD have an elevated $PaCO_2$ at rest. It is not possible to differentiate these "CO_2-retainers" from nonretainers on the basis of history, physical examination, or spirometric pulmonary function testing.[52] CO_2 retention is related more to an inability to maintain the increased work of respiration (W_{resp}) required to keep the $PaCO_2$ normal in patients with mechanically inefficient pulmonary function and not primarily resulting from an alteration of respiratory control mechanisms. It was previously thought that chronically hypoxemic/hypercapnic patients relied on a hypoxic stimulus for ventilatory drive and became insensitive to $PaCO_2$. This explained the clinical observation that COPD patients in incipient respiratory failure could be put into a hypercapnic coma by the administration of a high concentration of oxygen (fraction of inspired oxygen [FiO_2]). In actuality, only a minor fraction of the increase in $PaCO_2$ in such patients is caused by a diminished respiratory drive, because minute ventilation is basically unchanged.[53] The $PaCO_2$ rises because a high FiO_2 causes a relative decrease in alveolar ventilation and an increase in alveolar dead space and shunt by the redistribution of perfusion away from lung areas of relatively normal V/Q matching to areas of very low V/Q ratio because regional hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction (HPV) is decreased[54] and also as a result of the Haldane effect.[55] However, supplemental oxygen must be administered to these patients postoperatively to prevent the hypoxemia associated with the unavoidable fall in functional residual capacity (FRC). The attendant rise in $PaCO_2$ should be anticipated and monitored. To identify these patients preoperatively, all stage II and III COPD patients need an arterial blood gas analysis.

Nocturnal Hypoxemia

COPD patients desaturate more frequently and severely than normal patients during sleep.[56] This is due to the rapid/shallow breathing pattern that occurs in all patients during REM sleep. In COPD patients breathing air, this causes a significant increase in the respiratory dead space/tidal volume (V_D/V_T) ratio and a fall in alveolar oxygen tension (PAO_2) and PaO_2. This is not the sleep-apnea-hypoventilation syndrome (SAHS). There is no increased incidence of SAHS in COPD.

Right Ventricular Dysfunction

Right ventricular dysfunction occurs in as many as 50% of COPD patients. The dysfunctional right ventricle is poorly tolerant of sudden increases in afterload[57] such as the change from spontaneous to controlled ventilation.[58] Right ventricular function becomes critical in maintaining cardiac output as the pulmonary artery pressure rises. The RV ejection fraction does not increase with exercise in COPD patients as it does in normal patients. Chronic recurrent hypoxemia is the cause of the RV dysfunction and the subsequent progression to cor pulmonale. Patients who have episodic hypoxemia in spite of normal lungs (e.g., central alveolar hypoventilation, SAHS)[59] develop the same secondary cardiac problems as COPD patients. The only therapy that improves long-term survival and decreases right-sided heart strain in COPD is administration of increasing concentrations of oxygen. COPD patients who have a resting PaO_2 less than 55 mm Hg, as well as those who have decreases to less than 44 mm Hg with exercise, should receive supplemental oxygen at home. The goal of supplemental oxygen is to maintain a PaO_2 60 to 65 mm Hg. Compared with patients with chronic bronchitis, emphysematous COPD patients tend to have a decreased cardiac output and mixed venous oxygen tension while maintaining lower pulmonary artery pressures.

Bullae

Many patients with moderate or severe COPD will develop cystic air spaces in the lung parenchyma known as bullae. These bullae will often be asymptomatic unless they occupy more than 50% of the hemithorax, in which case the patient will present with findings of restrictive respiratory disease in addition to their obstructive disease. A bulla is a localized area of loss of structural support tissue in the lung with elastic recoil of surrounding parenchyma (Fig. 53.9). The pressure in a bulla is actually the mean pressure in the surrounding alveoli averaged over the respiratory cycle. This means that during normal spontaneous ventilation the intrabulla pressure is actually slightly negative in comparison to the surrounding parenchyma.[60] However, whenever positive-pressure ventilation is used the pressure in a bulla will become positive in relation to the adjacent lung tissue and the bulla will expand with the attendant risk of rupture, tension pneumothorax, and bronchopleural fistula. Positive-pressure ventilation can be used safely in patients with bullae provided the airway pressures are kept low and there is adequate expertise and equipment immediately available to insert a chest drain and obtain lung isolation if necessary. Management of patients for bullectomy is discussed later.

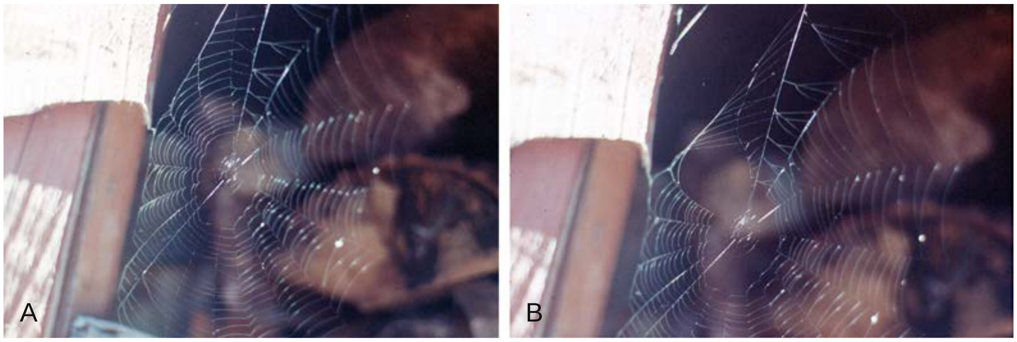


Fig. 53.9 (A) A spider's web as a lung model to demonstrate the pathophysiology of bullae. (B) Breaking one septum of the spider's web causes a bulla to appear as elastic recoil pulls the web away from the area where structural support has been lost. Although the cells surrounding the bulla appear compressed, this is only because of redistribution of elastic forces. It is not positive pressure inside the bulla that causes this appearance of surrounding compression. (Reproduced with permission from Slinger P. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.)

Flow limitation

Severe COPD patients are often "flow-limited" even during tidal volume expiration at rest.[61] Flow limitation is present in normal patients only during a forced expiratory maneuver. Flow limitation occurs when an equal pressure point (EPP) develops in the intrathoracic airways during expiration. During quiet expiration in the normal patient the pressure in the lumen of the airways always exceeds the intrapleural pressure because of the upstream elastic recoil pressure which is transmitted from the alveoli. The effect of this elastic recoil pressure diminishes as air flows downstream in the airway. With a forced expiration the intrapleural pressure may equal the intraluminal pressure at a certain point, the EPP, which then limits the expiratory flow. Then, any increase in expiratory effort will not produce an increase in flow at that given lung volume.[62]

Flow limitation occurs particularly in emphysematous patients, who primarily have a problem with loss of lung elastic recoil and have marked dyspnea on exertion. Flow limitation causes dyspnea because of stimulation of mechanoreceptors in the muscles of respiration, thoracic cage, and in the airway distal to the EPP. Any increase in the work of respiration will lead to increased dyspnea. This variable mechanical compression of airways by over-inflated alveoli is the primary cause of the airflow obstruction in emphysema.

Severely flow-limited patients are at risk for hemodynamic collapse with the application of positive-pressure ventilation due to dynamic hyperinflation of the lungs. Even the modest positive airway pressures associated with manual ventilation with a bag/mask at induction can lead to hypotension since these patients have no increased resistance to inspiration but a marked obstruction of expiration. In some of these patients this has contributed to the "Lazarus" syndrome in which patients have recovered from a cardiac arrest only after resuscitation and positive-pressure ventilation were discontinued.[63]

Auto-Positive End-Expiratory Pressure

Patients with severe COPD often breathe in a pattern that interrupts expiration before the alveolar pressure has fallen to atmospheric pressure. This incomplete expiration is due to a combination of factors which include flow limitation, increased work of respiration, and increased airway resistance. This interruption leads to an elevation of the end-expiratory lung volume above the FRC. This positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) in the alveoli at rest has been termed auto-PEEP or intrinsic-PEEP. During spontaneous respiration the intrapleural pressure will have to be decreased to a level which counteracts auto-PEEP before inspiratory flow can begin. Thus COPD patients can have an increased inspiratory load added to their already increased expiratory load.

Auto-PEEP becomes even more important during mechanical ventilation. It is directly proportional to tidal volume and inversely proportional to expiratory time. The presence of auto-PEEP is not detected by the manometer of standard anesthesia ventilators. It can be measured by end-expiratory flow interruption, a feature available on most intensive care ventilators. Auto-PEEP has been found to develop in most COPD patients during one-lung anesthesia.[64]

PREOPERATIVE THERAPY OF CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE

There are four treatable complications of COPD that must be actively sought and therapy begun at the time of the initial prethoracotomy assessment. These are: atelectasis, bronchospasm, respiratory tract infections, and pulmonary edema (Table 53.2). Atelectasis impairs local lung lymphocyte and macrophage function predisposing to infection. Pulmonary edema can be very difficult to diagnose by auscultation in the presence of COPD and may present very abnormal radiological distributions (e.g., unilateral, upper lobes). Bronchial hyperreactivity may be a symptom of congestive failure or may represent an exacerbation of reversible airways obstruction. All COPD patients should receive maximal bronchodilator therapy as guided by their symptoms. Only 20% to 25% of COPD patients will respond to corticosteroids. In a patient who is poorly controlled on sympathomimetic and anticholinergic bronchodilators, a trial of corticosteroids may be beneficial.

PHYSIOTHERAPY

Patients with COPD have fewer postoperative pulmonary complications when a perioperative program of intensive chest physiotherapy is initiated preoperatively.[65] Among the different modalities available (cough and deep breathing, incentive spirometry, PEEP, continuous positive airway pressure [CPAP]), there is no clearly proven superior method. Family members or nonphysiotherapy hospital staff can easily be trained to perform effective preoperative chest physiotherapy, and this should be arranged at the time of the initial preoperative assessment. Even in the most severe COPD patient, it is possible to improve exercise tolerance with a physiotherapy program. Little improvement is seen before 1 month. Among COPD patients, those with excessive sputum benefit the most from chest physiotherapy.

A comprehensive program of pulmonary rehabilitation involving physiotherapy, exercise, nutrition, and education can improve functional capacity for patients with severe COPD.[66] These programs are usually of several months duration and are generally not an option in resections for malignancy although for nonmalignant resections in severe COPD patients, rehabilitation should be considered. The benefits of short duration rehabilitation programs prior to malignancy resection have not been fully assessed.

Smoking: Pulmonary complications are decreased in thoracic surgical patients who cease smoking for more

TABLE 53.2 Concurrent Problems That Should Be Treated Prior to Anesthesia in Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease Patients

Problem	Method of Diagnosis
Bronchospasm	Auscultation
Atelectasis	Chest radiograph
Infection	History, sputum analysis
Pulmonary edema	Auscultation, chest radiograph

than 4 weeks before surgery.[67] Carboxyhemoglobin concentrations decrease if smoking is stopped more than 12 hours.[68] It is extremely important for patients to avoid smoking postoperatively. Smoking leads to a prolonged period of tissue hypoxemia. Wound tissue oxygen tension correlates with wound healing and resistance to infection. There is no rebound increase in pulmonary complications if patients stop for shorter (<8 week) periods before surgery.[69] Intensive smoking-cessation interventions are the most successful.[70]

PRIMARY THORACIC TUMORS

The majority of patients presenting for major pulmonary surgery will have some type of malignancy. Because the different types of thoracic malignancies have varying implications for both surgery and anesthesia, it is important for the anesthesiologist to have some knowledge of the presentation and biology of these cancers. By far the most common tumor is lung cancer. There are over 200,000 new cases of lung cancer diagnosed per year in North America and more than 1.2 million in the world. Lung cancer is currently the leading cause of cancer deaths in both sexes in North America subsequent to the peak incidence of smoking in the period 1940 to 1970.[71]

Lung cancer is broadly divided into small-cell lung cancer (SCLC) and non–small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC), with about 75% to 80% of these tumors being NSCLC. Other less common and less aggressive tumors of the lung include the carcinoid tumors (typical and atypical) and adenoid cystic carcinoma. In comparison to lung cancer, primary pleural tumors are rare. They include the localized fibrous tumors of pleura (previously referred to as benign mesotheliomas) and malignant pleural mesothelioma (MPM). Asbestos exposure is implicated in up to 80% of MPM. A dose-response relationship is not always apparent and even brief exposures can lead to the disease. An exposure history is often difficult to obtain because the latent period before clinical manifestation of the tumor may be as long as 40 to 50 years.

Tobacco smoke is responsible for approximately 90% of all lung cancers and the epidemiology of lung cancer follows the epidemiology of cigarette smoking with approximately a 3-decade lag time.[72] Other environmental causes include asbestos and radon gas (a decay product of naturally occurring uranium) which act as co-carcinogens with tobacco smoke. For a pack-a-day cigarette smoker the lifetime risk of lung cancer is approximately 1 in 14. Assuming current mortality patterns continue, cancer will pass heart disease as the leading cause of death in North America in this decade.

Non–Small-Cell Lung Cancer

This pathologically heterogeneous group of tumors includes squamous cell, adenocarcinoma, and large-cell carcinoma. Overall 5-year survival with surgery approaches 40%. This seemingly low figure must be viewed in the light of an estimated 5-year survival without surgery of less than 10%. Although it is not always possible to be certain of the pathology of a given lung tumor preoperatively, many patients will have a known tissue diagnosis at the time of preanesthetic assessment on the basis of prior cytology, bronchoscopy, mediastinoscopy, or transthoracic needle aspiration. This is useful information for the anesthesiologist to obtain preoperatively. Specific anesthetic implications of the different types of lung cancer are listed in Table 53.3.

TABLE 53.3 Anesthetic Considerations for Different Types of Lung Cancer

Type	Considerations
Squamous cell	Central lesions (predominantly) Often with endobronchial tumor Mass effects: obstruction, cavitation Hypercalcemia
Adenocarcinoma	Peripheral lesions Extrapulmonary invasion common Most Pancoast tumors Growth hormone, corticotropin Hypertrophic osteoarthropathy
Large Cell	Large, cavitating peripheral tumors Similar to adenocarcinoma
Small Cell	Central lesions (predominantly) Surgery usually not indicated Paraneoplastic syndromes Lambert-Eaton syndrome Fast growth rate Early metastases
Carcinoid	Proximal, endobronchial Bronchial obstruction with distal pneumonia Highly vascular Benign (predominantly) No association with smoking 5 year survival >90% Carcinoid syndrome (rarely)

Squamous Cell Carcinoma

This subgroup of NSCLC is strongly linked to cigarette smoking. The tumors tend to grow to a large size and metastasize later than others. They tend to cause symptoms related to local effects of a large tumor mass with a dominant endobronchial component, such as cavitation, hemoptysis, obstructive pneumonia, superior vena cava syndrome, and involvement of mainstem bronchus, trachea, carina, and main pulmonary arteries. Hypercalcemia may be associated with this cell type due to elaboration of a parathyroid-like factor and not due to bone metastases.

Adenocarcinoma

Adenocarcinoma is currently the most common NSCLC in both sexes. These tumors tend to be peripheral and often metastasize early in their course, particularly to brain, bones, liver, and adrenals. They often invade extrapulmonary structures, including chest wall, diaphragm, and pericardium. Almost all Pancoast tumors are adenocarcinomas. A variety of paraneoplastic metabolic factors can be secreted by adenocarcinomas such as growth hormone and corticotropin. Hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy (HPOE) is particularly associated with adenocarcinoma.

Bronchioloalveolar carcinoma is a subtype of adenocarcinoma that is not related to cigarette smoking. In its early stages it lines the alveolar membrane with a thin layer of tumor cells without destroying the alveolar architecture. Because of its low potential to spread outside of the lungs, multifocal bronchioloalveolar carcinoma can be treated by lung transplantation.[73]

Large-Cell Undifferentiated Carcinoma

This is the least common of the NSCLCs. It tends to present as a large, often cavitating peripheral tumor. The rapid growth rate may lead to widespread metastases, similar to adenocarcinoma.

Small-Cell Lung Cancer

This tumor of neuroendocrine origin is considered metastatic on presentation and is usually regarded as a medical, not a surgical, disease. Surgery is only very rarely indicated. The staging system differs from NSCLC and is divided simply into limited stage and extensive stage. Treatment of limited stage SCLC with combination chemotherapy (etoposide/cisplatin or cyclophosphamide/doxorubicin/vincristine) gives objective response rates in over 80% of patients. In addition these patients typically receive aggressive radiotherapy to the primary lung tumor and prophylactic cranial irradiation. Despite this initial response, the tumor invariably recurs and is quite resistant to further treatment. The overall survival rate is no better than 10%. Extensive-stage disease is treated with chemotherapy and palliative radiation as needed.

SCLC is known to cause a variety of paraneoplastic syndromes due to the production of peptide hormones and antibodies. The most common of these is hyponatremia, usually as a result of an inappropriate production of antidiuretic hormone (syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion). Cushing syndrome and hypercortisolism through ectopic production of adrenocorticotropic hormone are also commonly seen.

A rare neurologic paraneoplastic syndrome associated with small-cell lung tumors is the Lambert-Eaton (also called Eaton-Lambert) myasthenic syndrome due to impaired release of acetylcholine from nerve terminals. This typically presents as proximal lower limb weakness and fatigability that may temporarily improve with exercise. The diagnosis is confirmed by electromyography showing increasing amplitude of unusual action potentials with high-frequency stimulation. Similar to true myasthenia gravis patients, myasthenic syndrome patients are extremely sensitive to nondepolarizing muscle relaxants. However, they respond poorly to anticholinesterase reversal agents.[74] It is important to realize that there may be subclinical involvement of the diaphragm and muscles of respiration. Thoracic epidural analgesia has been used following thoracotomy in these patients without complication. These patients' neuromuscular function may improve following resection of the lung cancer.

Carcinoid Tumors

These are part of a continuum of neuroendocrine tumors that form a spectrum of diseases from SCLC as the most malignant to typical carcinoid as the most benign. Five-year survival following resection for typical carcinoid exceeds 90%. Systemic metastasis is rare, as is the carcinoid syndrome, which is caused by the ectopic synthesis of vasoactive mediators, and is usually seen with carcinoid tumors of gut origin that have metastasized to the liver. Atypical carcinoid tumors are more aggressive and may metastasize. Carcinoid tumors can precipitate an intraoperative hemodynamic crisis or coronary artery spasm even during bronchoscopic resection.[75] The anesthesiologist should be prepared to deal with severe hypotension that may not respond to the usual vasoconstrictors and will require the use of the specific antagonists octreotide or somatostatin.[76]

Pleural Tumors

Localized fibrous tumors of pleura are usually large, space occupying masses that are attached to visceral or parietal pleura. They can be either benign or malignant.

MPMs are strongly associated with exposure to asbestos fibers. Their incidence in Canada has almost doubled in the past 15 years. With the phasing out of asbestos-containing products and the long latent period between exposure and diagnosis, the peak incidence is not predicted for another 10 years. The tumor initially proliferates within the visceral and parietal pleura, typically forming a bloody effusion. Most patients present with shortness of breath or dyspnea on exertion from this pleural effusion. Thoracentesis often relieves the symptoms but rarely provides a diagnosis. Pleural biopsy by VATS is most efficient to secure a diagnosis and talc pleurodesis is performed during the same anesthetic to treat the effusion.

MPMs respond poorly to therapy and the median survival is less than 1 year. In patients with early disease, extrapleural pneumonectomy may be considered but it is difficult to know whether survival is improved. Recently, several groups have reported improved results with combinations of radiation, chemotherapy, and surgery. Extrapleural pneumonectomy is an extensive procedure that is rife with potential complications, both intraoperative and postoperative.[77] Blood loss from the denuded chest wall or major vascular structures is always a risk. Complications related to resection of the diaphragm and pericardium are additional risks to that of pneumonectomy.

ASSESSMENT OF THE PATIENT WITH LUNG CANCER

At the time of initial assessment, cancer patients should be assessed for the "4 Ms" associated with malignancy (Box 53.4): mass effects, metabolic abnormalities, metastases, and medications. The prior use of medications that can exacerbate oxygen-induced pulmonary toxicity, such as bleomycin, should be considered.[78] Bleomycin is not used to treat primary lung cancers, but patients presenting for excision of lung metastases from germ-cell tumors often have received prior bleomycin therapy. Although the association between previous bleomycin therapy and pulmonary toxicity from high inspired oxygen concentrations is well documented, none of the details of the association are understood (i.e., safe doses of oxygen or safe period after bleomycin exposure). The safest anesthetic management is to use the lowest FiO_2 consistent with patient safety and closely monitor oximetry in any patient who has received bleomycin. We have seen lung cancer patients who received preoperative chemotherapy with cisplatin and then developed an elevation of serum creatinine when they received NSAIDs postoperatively. For this

BOX 53.4 Anesthetic Considerations in Lung Cancer Patients (the “4 Ms”)

1. Mass effects: Obstructive pneumonia, lung abscess, SVC syndrome, tracheobronchial distortion, Pancoast syndrome, recurrent laryngeal nerve or phrenic nerve paresis, chest wall or mediastinal extension
2. Metabolic effects: Lambert-Eaton syndrome, hypercalcemia, hyponatremia, Cushing syndrome
3. Metastases: Particularly to brain, bone, liver, and adrenal
4. Medications: Chemotherapy agents, pulmonary toxicity (bleomycin, mitomycin), cardiac toxicity (doxorubicin), renal toxicity (cisplatin)

reason, we do not routinely administer NSAIDs to patients who have been treated recently with cisplatin.

POSTOPERATIVE ANALGESIA

The strategy for postoperative analgesia should be developed and discussed with the patient during the initial preoperative assessment; a discussion of postoperative analgesia is presented at the end of this chapter. Many techniques have been shown to be superior to the use of on-demand parenteral (intramuscular or intravenous) opioids alone in terms of pain control. These include the addition of neuraxial blockade, paravertebral blocks, and antiinflammatories to narcotic-based analgesia. However, only epidural techniques have been shown to consistently have the capability to decrease postthoracotomy respiratory complications in high-risk patients.[2] Continuous paravertebral blockade may offer comparable analgesia with a lower rate of block failure and fewer side effects.[79]

At the time of initial preanesthetic assessment, the risks and benefits of the various forms of postthoracotomy analgesia should be explained to the patient. Potential contraindications to specific methods of analgesia should be determined, such as coagulation problems, sepsis, or neurologic disorders. If the patient is to receive prophylactic anticoagulants and the use of epidural analgesia has been elected, appropriate timing of anticoagulant administration and neuraxial catheter placement need to be arranged. American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine (ASRA) guidelines suggest an interval of 2 to 4 hours before or 1 hour after catheter placement for prophylactic heparin administration.[80] Low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH) recommendations and precautions are: (1) a minimal interval of 12 hours after low-dose LMWH and (2) 24 hours after higher-dose LMWH before catheter placement.

PREMEDICATION

We do not routinely order preoperative sedation or analgesia for pulmonary resection patients. Mild sedation such as an intravenous short-acting benzodiazepine is often given immediately prior to placement of invasive monitoring lines and catheters. In patients with copious secretions, an antisialagogue (e.g., glycopyrrolate) is useful to facilitate fiberoptic bronchoscopy for positioning of a double-lumen endobronchial tube (DLT) or bronchial blocker. To avoid an intramuscular injection, this can be given orally or intravenously immediately after placement of the intravenous catheter. It is a common practice to use short-term intravenous antibacterial prophylaxis such as a cephalosporin in thoracic surgical patients. If it is the local practice to administer these drugs before admission to the operating room, they will have to be ordered preoperatively. Consideration for those patients allergic to cephalosporins or penicillin should be made at the time of the initial preoperative visit.

BOX 53.5 Initial Preanesthetic Assessment for Thoracic Surgery

1. All patients: assess functional capacity, spirometry, discuss postoperative analgesia, discontinue smoking
2. Patients with $ppoFEV_1$ or DLCO < 60%: exercise test
3. Cancer patients: consider the 4 Ms: mass effects, metabolic effects, metastases, medications
4. COPD patients: arterial blood gas, physiotherapy, bronchodilators
5. Increased renal risk: measure creatinine and blood urea nitrogen levels

COPD, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; *ppoDLCO*, predicted postoperative diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide; *$ppoFEV_1$*, predicted postoperative forced expiratory volume.

BOX 53.6 Final Preanesthetic Assessment for Thoracic Surgery

1. Review initial assessment and test results
2. Assess difficulty of lung isolation: examine chest radiograph and computed tomographic scan
3. Assess risk of hypoxemia during one-lung ventilation

SUMMARY OF THE INITIAL PREOPERATIVE ASSESSMENT

The anesthetic considerations that should be addressed at the time of the initial preoperative assessment are summarized in Box 53.5. Patients need to be specifically assessed for risk factors associated with respiratory complications, which are the major cause of morbidity and mortality following thoracic surgery.

FINAL PREOPERATIVE ASSESSMENT

The final preoperative anesthetic assessment for the majority of thoracic surgical patients is carried out immediately before admission of the patient to the operating room. At this time, it is important to review the data from the initial prethoracotomy assessment and the results of tests ordered at that time. In addition, two other specific areas affecting thoracic anesthesia need to be assessed: (1) the potential for difficult lung isolation and (2) the risk of desaturation during OLV (Box 53.6).

Difficult Endobronchial Intubation

The most useful predictor of difficult endobronchial intubation is the chest imaging (Fig. 53.10).

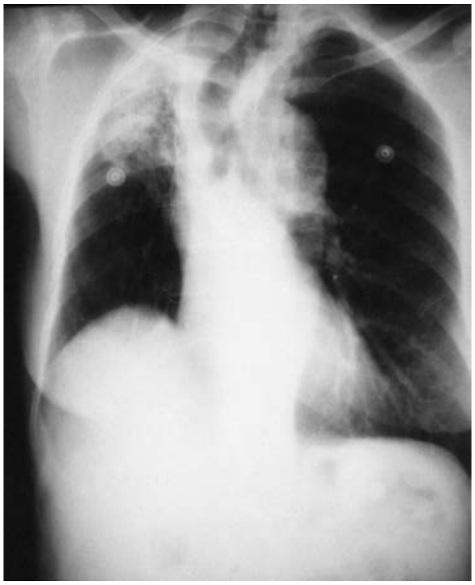


Fig. 53.10 Preoperative chest radiograph of a 50-year-old woman with a history of previous tuberculosis, right upper lobectomy, and recent hemoptysis presenting for right thoracotomy possible completion pneumonectomy. The potential problems positioning a left-sided double-lumen tube in this patient are easily appreciated by viewing the radiograph but are not mentioned in the radiologist's report. The anesthesiologist must solely examine the chest imaging preoperatively to anticipate problems in lung isolation. (Reproduced with permission from Slinger P. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.)

The anesthesiologist should view the chest imaging before induction of anesthesia because neither the radiologist's nor the surgeon's report of the imaging is made with the specific consideration of lung isolation in mind. Distal airway problems not detectable on the plain chest film can sometimes be visualized on the computed tomography (CT) scan: a side-to-side compression of the distal trachea, the so-called "saber-sheath" trachea, can cause obstruction of the tracheal lumen of a left-sided DLT during ventilation of the dependent lung for a left thoracotomy.[81] Similarly, extrinsic compression or intraluminal obstruction of a mainstem bronchus that can interfere with endobronchial tube placement may only be evident on the CT scan. The major factors in successful lower airway management are anticipation and preparation based on the preoperative assessment. Management of lung isolation in patients with difficult upper and lower airways is discussed later in this chapter.

Prediction of Desaturation During One-Lung Ventilation

In the vast majority of cases, it is possible to determine those patients who are most at risk of desaturation during OLV for thoracic surgery. The factors that correlate with desaturation during OLV are listed in Box 53.7. In patients at high risk of desaturation, prophylactic measures can be used during OLV to decrease this risk. The most useful prophylactic measures are the use of CPAP (2–5 cm H_2O of oxygen) to the nonventilated lung and/or PEEP to the dependent lung (see "Treatment of Hypoxemia During One-Lung Ventilation").

BOX 53.7 Factors That Correlate With an Increased Risk of Desaturation During One-Lung Ventilation

1. High percentage of ventilation or perfusion to the operative lung on preoperative V/Q scan
2. Poor PaO_2 during two-lung ventilation, particularly in the lateral position intraoperatively
3. Right-sided thoracotomy
4. Normal preoperative spirometry (FEV_1 or FVC) or restrictive lung disease
5. Supine position during one-lung ventilation

FEV_1, forced expiratory volume in 1 second; *FVC*, forced vital capacity.

The most important predictor of PaO_2 during OLV is the PaO_2 during two-lung ventilation (TLV), specifically the intraoperative PaO_2 during TLV in the lateral position before OLV.[82] The proportion of perfusion or ventilation to the nonoperated lung on preoperative V/Q scans also correlates with the PaO_2 during OLV.[83] If the operative lung has little perfusion preoperatively because of unilateral disease, the patient is unlikely to desaturate during OLV. The side of the thoracotomy has an effect on PaO_2 during OLV. Because the left lung is 10% smaller than the right lung, there is less shunt when the left lung is collapsed. In a series of patients, the mean PaO_2 during left thoracotomy was approximately 70 mm Hg higher than during right thoracotomy.[84] Finally, the degree of obstructive lung disease correlates in an inverse fashion with PaO_2 during OLV. Other factors being equal, patients with more severe airflow limitation on preoperative spirometry tend to have a better PaO_2 during OLV than patients with normal spirometry (this is discussed later in "Anesthetic Management").[85]

Assessment for Repeat Thoracic Surgery

Patients who survive lung cancer surgery form a high-risk cohort who have a recurrence of the original tumor or develop a second primary tumor. The incidence of developing second primary lung tumors is estimated at 2% per year. The use of routine screening low-dose spiral CT scans probably increases the rate of early detection.[86] Patients who present for repeat thoracotomy should be assessed using the same framework as those who present for surgery the first time. Predicted values for postoperative respiratory function based on the preoperative lung mechanics, parenchymal function, exercise tolerance, and the amount of functioning lung tissue resected should be calculated and used to identify patients at increased risk.

Intraoperative Monitoring

A few points specific to intraoperative monitoring of the thoracic surgical patient need to be emphasized. The majority of these operations are major procedures of moderate duration (2–4 hours) and are performed with the patient in the lateral position and the hemithorax open. Thus consideration for monitoring and maintenance of body temperature

TABLE 53.4 Intraoperative Complications That Occur With Increased Frequency during Thoracotomy

Complication	Etiology
1. Hypoxemia	Intrapulmonary shunt during one-lung ventilation
2. Sudden severe hypotension	Surgical compression of the heart or great vessels
3. Sudden changes in ventilating pressure or volume	Movement of endobronchial tube/blocker, air leak
4. Arrhythmias	Direct mechanical irritation of the heart
5. Bronchospasm	Direct airway stimulation, increased frequency of reactive airway disease
6. Massive hemorrhage	Surgical blood loss from great vessels or inflamed pleura
7. Hypothermia	Heat loss from the open hemithorax

and fluid volume should be given to all of these cases. Because surgery is usually performed in the lateral position, monitors are initially placed with the patient in the supine position and have to be rechecked and repositioned after the patient is turned. It is difficult to add additional monitoring, particularly invasive vascular monitoring, after the case is started if complications arise. Thus the risk/benefit ratio often tends to favor being overly invasive at the outset. Choice of monitoring should be guided by a knowledge of which complications are likely to occur (Table 53.4).

OXYGENATION

Significant desaturation ($SpO_2 < 90\%$) during OLV occurs in 1% to 10% of the surgical population in spite of a high FiO_2 (1.0) (see "Management of One-Lung Ventilation" later). Pulse oximetry (SpO_2) has not negated the need for direct measurement of arterial P_aO_2 via intermittent blood gases in the majority of thoracotomy patients. The P_aO_2 value offers a more useful estimate of the margin of safety above desaturation than the S_pO_2. A patient with a TLV P_aO_2 greater than 400 mm Hg with an FiO_2 of 1.0 (or an equivalent P_aO_2/FiO_2 ratio) is unlikely to desaturate during OLV, whereas a patient with a P_aO_2 of 200 mm Hg is prone to desaturate during OLV, although both may have S_pO_2 values of 99% to 100%.

CAPNOMETRY

The end-tidal CO_2 ($P_{ET}CO_2$) is a less reliable indicator of the P_aCO_2 during OLV than during TLV, and the P_aCO_2-$P_{ET}CO_2$ gradient tends to increase during OLV. Although the $P_{ET}CO_2$ is less directly correlated with alveolar minute ventilation during OLV, because the $P_{ET}CO_2$ also reflects lung perfusion and cardiac output, it gives an indication of the relative changes in perfusion of the two lungs independently during position changes and during OLV.[87] As the patient is turned to the lateral position, the $P_{ET}CO_2$ of the nondependent lung will fall relative to the dependent lung, reflecting increased perfusion of the dependent lung and increased dead space of the nondependent lung. However, the fractional excretion of CO_2 will be higher from the nondependent lung in most patients because of the increased fractional ventilation of this lung. At the onset of OLV, the $P_{ET}CO_2$ of the dependent lung will usually fall transiently as all of the minute ventilation is transferred to this lung. The $P_{ET}CO_2$ will then rise as the fractional perfusion is increased to this dependent lung by collapse and pulmonary vasoconstriction of the nonventilated lung. If there is no correction of minute ventilation, the net result will be both an increased baseline P_aCO_2 and $P_{ET}CO_2$ with an increased gradient. Severe (>5 mm Hg) or prolonged decreases in $P_{ET}CO_2$ can indicate a maldistribution of perfusion between ventilated and nonventilated lungs and may be an early warning of a patient who will subsequently desaturate during OLV.

Invasive Hemodynamic Monitoring

ARTERIAL LINE

There is a significant incidence of transient severe hypotension from surgical compression of the heart or great vessels during intrathoracic procedures. For this reason, plus the utility of intermittent arterial blood gas sampling, it is useful have beat-to-beat assessment of systemic blood pressure during the majority of thoracic surgery cases. Naturally, exceptions occur during limited procedures, such as thoracoscopic resections in younger and healthier patients. For most thoracotomies, placement of a radial artery catheter can be in either the dependent or nondependent arm.

CENTRAL VENOUS PRESSURES

It is a common impression that CVP readings in the lateral position with the chest open are not reliable as a monitor of volume status. The CVP may be a useful monitor postoperatively, particularly for cases where fluid management is critical (e.g., pneumonectomies). A CVP may be required in some cases for vascular access or for vasopressor/inotrope infusions. It is our practice to routinely place CVP lines in pneumonectomy cases, complex procedures, or redo thoracotomies, but not for lesser resections unless there is significant other concurrent illness. Our choice is to use the right internal jugular vein to minimize the risk of pneumothorax for CVP access unless there is a contraindication. Internal jugular CVP data are not reliable in patients with superior vena cava obstruction.

PULMONARY ARTERY CATHETERS

Similar to CVP data, intraoperative pulmonary artery pressure may be a less accurate indicator of true left-heart preload in the lateral position with the chest open than in other clinical situations. This is partly because it is often initially not known if the catheter tip lies in the dependent or nondependent lung. In addition, it is possible that thermodilution cardiac output data may be unreliable if there are significant transient unilateral differences in perfusion between the lungs, as can occur during OLV. There is no consensus on the reliability of thermodilution cardiac output data during OLV.[88]

FIBEROPTIC BRONCHOSCOPY

Placement of DLTs and bronchial blockers is discussed later in the section on Lung Isolation. Significant malpositions of DLTs and blockers that can lead to desaturation during OLV are often not detected by auscultation or other traditional methods of confirming placement.[89] Placement of DLTs or blockers should be performed with fiberoptic bronchoscopic guidance and should be reconfirmed after placing the patient in the surgical position because a large number of these tubes/blockers migrate during repositioning of the patient.[90]

CONTINUOUS SPIROMETRY

The development of side-stream spirometry has made it possible to continuously monitor inspiratory and expiratory volumes, pressures, and flow interactions during one-lung anesthesia. This monitoring is particularly useful during pulmonary resection surgery. The breath-by-breath monitoring of inspired and expired tidal volumes gives early warning of accidental changes in the intraoperative position of a DLT, with loss of lung isolation if the expired volume suddenly decreases (there is normally a 20- to 30-mL/breath difference caused in part by the uptake of inspired oxygen). The development of a persistent end-expiratory flow during OLV, which correlates with the development of auto-PEEP, can be seen on the flow-volume loop.[91] Also, the ability to accurately measure differences in inspiratory and expiratory tidal volumes is extremely useful in assessing and managing air leaks during and after pulmonary resections.

TRANSESOPHAGEAL ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY

TEE allows the anesthesiologist to have a continuous real-time monitor of myocardial function and cardiac preload. This information is difficult to estimate intraoperatively in the lateral position from other hemodynamic monitors.[92] Potential indications for intraoperative TEE that apply to thoracic surgery include hemodynamic instability (Fig. 53.11), pericardial effusions, cardiac involvement by tumor, air emboli, pulmonary thromboendarterectomy, thoracic trauma, lung transplantation, and pleuropulmonary disease. A rare cause of hypoxemia associated with thoracic surgery is reversal of shunt flow through an undiagnosed patent foramen ovale. When PEEP (to 15 cm H_2O) was applied during controlled ventilation for nonthoracic surgery, 9% of the patients developed a right-to-left intracardiac shunt.[93] TEE should be capable of detecting situations in patients who might intraoperatively develop a right-to-left interatrial shunt during or after thoracic surgery.

Other Monitoring Technology

Cerebral oximetry ($SctO_2$) has been reported for intraoperative monitoring during OLV.[94] Elderly, debilitated patients are more likely to experience decreases in $SctO_2$ during OLV, and these are associated with decreases in SpO_2 and postoperative cognitive dysfunction. However, it has not been shown if any treatment for decreases in $SctO_2$ affects outcomes.

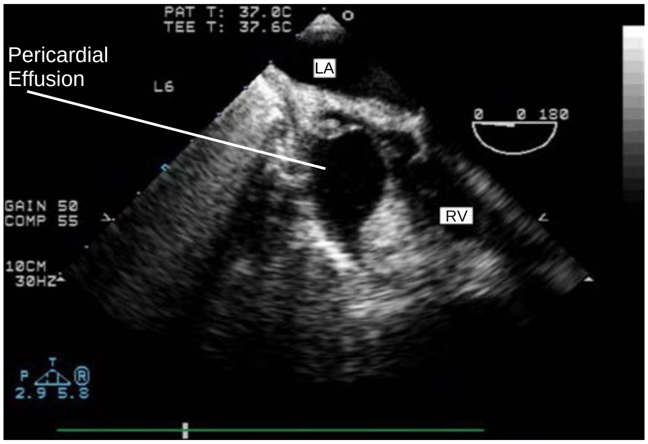


Fig. 53.11 Midesophageal transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) view of a patient with metastatic breast cancer who had a hemodynamic collapse after induction of general anesthesia for video-assisted thoracoscopic drainage of a left pleural effusion. *TEE* was performed for diagnosis of hemodynamic instability and revealed a previously undiagnosed large pericardial effusion. The "Pericardial Effusion" label shows complete collapse of the right atrium during systole as a result of the effusion, consistent with tamponade. The procedure was modified to include creation of a pericardial window. *LA*, Left atrium; *RV*, right ventricle.

Indirect Cardiac Output

It is not certain that goal-directed fluid therapy using indirect monitors of cardiac output or venous oxygen saturation improves outcomes in abdominal surgery.[95] At present, the validity of this technology as a valid guide for fluid management when the chest is open remains unclear.

Lung Isolation

Lung-isolation techniques are primarily designed to facilitate OLV in patients undergoing cardiac, thoracic, mediastinal, vascular, esophageal, or orthopedic procedures involving the chest cavity.[96] Lung isolation is also used to protect the lung from soiling by the contralateral lung in such cases as bronchopleural fistula, pulmonary hemorrhage, and whole-lung lavage. In addition, lung isolation can be used to provide differential patterns of ventilation in cases of unilateral reperfusion injury (after lung transplantation or pulmonary thromboendarterectomy) or in unilateral lung trauma.

Lung isolation can be achieved by three different methods: DLTs, bronchial blockers, or single-lumen endobronchial tubes (SLTs) (Table 53.5). The most common technique is with a DLT. The DLT is a bifurcated tube with both an endotracheal and an endobronchial lumen and can be used to achieve isolation of either the right or the left lung. The second method involves blockade of a mainstem bronchus to allow lung collapse distal to the occlusion. These bronchial blockers can be used with a standard endotracheal tube (ETT) or contained within a separate channel inside a modified SLT such as the Univent tube (LMA North America, San Diego, CA). The final option for lung isolation is to use either an SLT or endobronchial tube that is advanced into the contralateral mainstem bronchus, protecting this lung while allowing collapse of the lung on the

TABLE 53.5 Options for Lung Isolation

Options	Advantages	Disadvantages
Double-lumen tube 1. Direct laryngoscopy 2. Via tube exchanger 3. Fiberoptically	Easy to place successfully Repositioning rarely required Bronchoscopy to isolated lung Suction to isolated lung CPAP easily added Can alternate OLV to either lung easily Placement still possible if bronchoscopy not available Best device for absolute lung isolation	Size selection more difficult Difficult to place in patients with difficult airways or abnormal tracheas Not optimal for postoperative ventilation Potential laryngeal trauma Potential bronchial trauma
Bronchial blockers (BBs) Arndt Cohen Fuji EZ-Blocker	Size selection rarely an issue Easily added to regular ETT Allows ventilation during placement Easier placement in patients with difficult airways and in children Postoperative two-lung ventilation by withdrawing blocker Selective lobar lung isolation possible CPAP to isolated lung possible	More time needed for positioning Repositioning needed more often Bronchoscope essential for positioning Limited right lung isolation due to RUL anatomy Bronchoscopy to isolated lung impossible Minimal suction to isolated lung Difficult to alternate OLV to either lung
Univent tube	Same as BBs Less repositioning compared with BBs Rarely used	Same as for BBs ETT portion has higher air flow resistance than regular ETT ETT portion has larger diameter than regular ETT
Endobronchial tube	Like regular ETTs, easier placement in patients with difficult airways Longer than regular ETT Short cuff designed for lung isolation	Bronchoscopy necessary for placement Does not allow for bronchoscopy, suctioning, or CPAP to isolated lung Difficult right lung OLV
Endotracheal tube advanced into bronchus	Easier placement in patients with difficult airways	Does not allow for bronchoscopy, suctioning, or CPAP to isolated lung Cuff not designed for lung isolation Extremely difficult right OLV

CPAP, Continuous positive airway pressure; *ETT*, endotracheal tube; *OLV*, one-lung ventilation; *RUL*, right upper lobe.

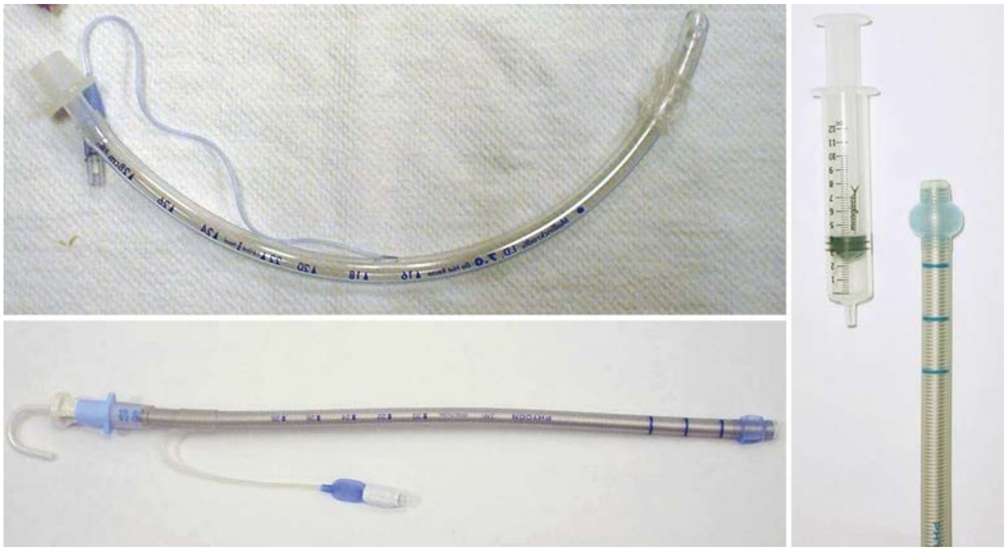


Fig. 53.12 Photographs of a standard single-lumen endotracheal tube (SLT) *(upper left)* and a specifically designed SLT (*lower left* and *right*). The endobronchial tube is longer and has a shorter cuff. It can be used as an endotracheal tube and advanced into a mainstem bronchus with fiberoptic guidance when needed for lung isolation. (Courtesy Phycon, Fuji Systems Corp., Tokyo, Japan.)

side of surgery (Fig. 53.12). This technique is rarely used today in adult practice (except in some cases of difficult airways, carinal resection, or after a pneumonectomy), owing to the limited access to the nonventilated lung and the difficulty in positioning a standard SLT in the bronchus. This technique is still used when needed in infants and small children: an uncuffed uncut pediatric-size ETT is advanced into the mainstem bronchus under direct guidance with an infant bronchoscope.

DOUBLE-LUMEN ENDOTRACHEAL TUBES

The design of the Carlens DLT for lung surgery in 1950 was a landmark in the development of thoracic anesthesia

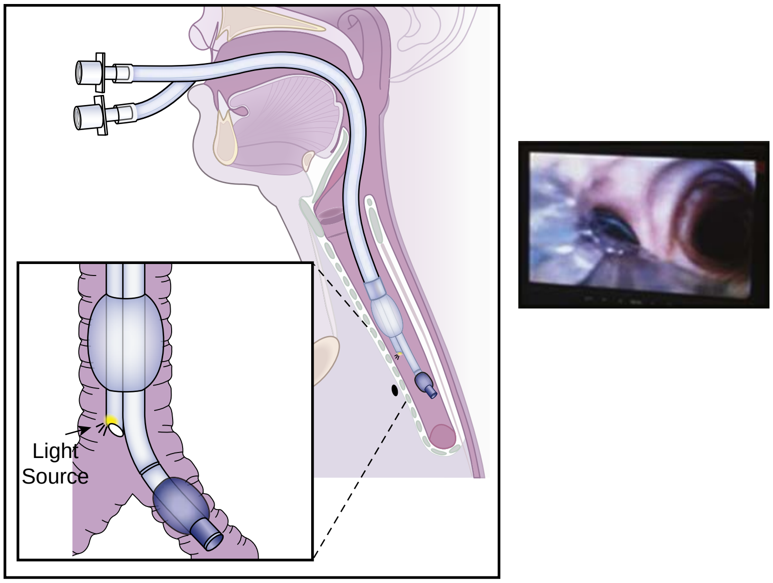


Fig. 53.13 The diagram on the left shows the placement of the VivaSight DLT in the tracheal and left main bronchus. The photograph on the right shows the view of the carina from the camera located beside the light source at the tracheal lumen orifice. *DLT*, Double-lumen tube. (Courtesy ETView Medical.)

because it allowed anesthesiologists to obtain reliable lung isolation in a majority of patients using only laryngoscopy and auscultation. However, the Carlens tube had a high flow resistance owing to the narrow lumina and the carinal hook was difficult to pass through the glottis in some patients. In the 1960s, Robertshaw introduced design modifications for separate left- and right-sided DLTs, removing the carinal hook and using larger lumina. In the 1980s, manufacturers introduced disposable DLTs made of polyvinyl chloride based on the design of the Robertshaw DLT. Among other subsequent improvements is the inclusion of radiographic markers near the endotracheal and endobronchial cuffs and a radiographic marker surrounding the ventilation slot for the right upper lobe bronchus for the right-sided DLT version. Bright blue, low-volume, low-pressure endobronchial cuffs are incorporated for easier visualization during fiberoptic bronchoscopy.

The VivaSight DLT (ETView Medical, Misgav, Israel) has an integrated camera, allowing continuous visualization of its position within the trachea.[97] This camera is embedded at the end of the endotracheal lumen, so that when connected to a screen monitor via a cable it allows a continuous view of the tracheal carina. In addition, this DLT device has an integrated flushing system that allows for in situ camera lens cleaning.[98] One of the advantages of the VivaSight DLT is that it allows continuous airway monitoring and its view facilitates immediate correction of DLT malpositions at the level of the tracheal carina. In order to maintain a good visualization with the VivaSight camera, it is recommended that a defogging solution be used prior to insertion. Fig. 53.13 shows the VivaSight DLT and monitor. Some centers have reported that the VivaSight DLT enables more rapid placement when compared to the conventional DLT and may eliminate the need for flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopy in some patients.[99] However, connecting the camera for prolonged periods of time in vitro may lead to melting the portion of the tube near the light source.

The ECOM-DLT (ECOM Medical, Inc., San Juan Capistrano, CA) contains multiple electrodes on the cuff and the tube that continuously measure the bioimpedance signal from the ascending aorta, in close proximity to the trachea. This device when connected to the ECOM monitor, in conjunction with an arterial catheter, provides cardiac output measurements (Fig. 53.14). This new ECOM-DLT has not been compared to other technology; however based on the original ECOM ETT,[100] it appears to be promising to derive hemodynamic parameters while in thoracic surgical patients.

Fuji Systems (Tokyo, Japan) has introduced the Silbroncho DLT, which is made of silicone. The unique characteristic of this device relies on the flexible wire-reinforced endobronchial tip. In addition, there is a beveled bronchial orifice and reduced bronchial cuff length that should increase the margin of safety when compared with other designs of DLTs. The Silbroncho DLT is particularly useful for performing a tube exchange from a single- to a double-lumen tube in combination with a video-laryngoscope and a tube exchange catheter (see “Difficult Airways and One-Lung Ventilation” later).[101]

Size Selection

Table 53.6 lists the different sizes of DLT, the appropriate fiberoptic bronchoscope sizes to be used, and the comparable diameters of SLTs. A properly sized, left-sided DLT should have a bronchial tip 1 to 2 mm smaller than the patient’s left bronchus diameter to allow for the space occupied by the deflated bronchial cuff. A study by Eberle and associates[102] used a three-dimensional image reconstruction of tracheobronchial anatomy from the spiral CT scans combined with superimposed transparencies of DLTs to predict proper size for a right- or left-sided DLT. Chest radiographs and CT scans are valuable tools for selection of proper DLT size in addition to their proven value in assessment of abnormal tracheobronchial anatomy and should be reviewed before the placement of the DLT (Fig. 53.15). A multidetector CT

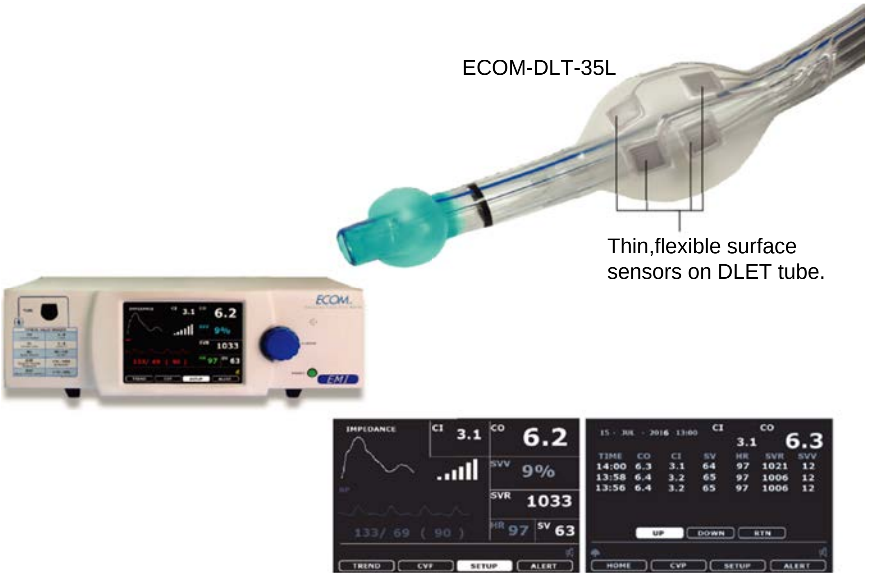


Fig. 53.14 The ECOM DLT has multiple electrodes on the cuff and the tube that continuously measure the bioimpedance signal from the ascending aorta with measurements of cardiac output. *DLT*, Double-lumen tube. (Courtesy ECOM Medical, Inc., San Juan Capistrano, CA.)

TABLE 53.6 Comparative Diameters of Single- and Double-Lumen Tubes

SINGLE-LUMEN TUBES		DOUBLE-LUMEN TUBES			
Internal Diameter (ID) (mm)	**External Diameter (ED) (mm)**	**French Size (Fr)**	**Double-lumen ED (mm)**	**Bronchial Lumen ID (mm)**	**FOB size (mm)**
6.5	8.9	26	8.7	3.2	2.4
7.0	9.5	28	9.3	3.4	2.4
8.0	10.8	32	10.7	3.5	2.4
8.5	11.4	35	11.7	4.3	≥3.5
9.0	12.1	37	12.3	4.5	≥3.5
9.5	12.8	39	13.0	4.9	≥3.5
10.0	13.5	41	13.7	5.4	≥3.5

ED, External diameter; *FOB*, fiberoptic bronchoscope; *ID*, internal diameter. Double-lumen ED = the approximate external diameter of the double-lumen portion of the tube. FOB size = the maximal diameter of fiberoptic bronchoscope that will pass through both lumens of a given size of double-lumen tube.

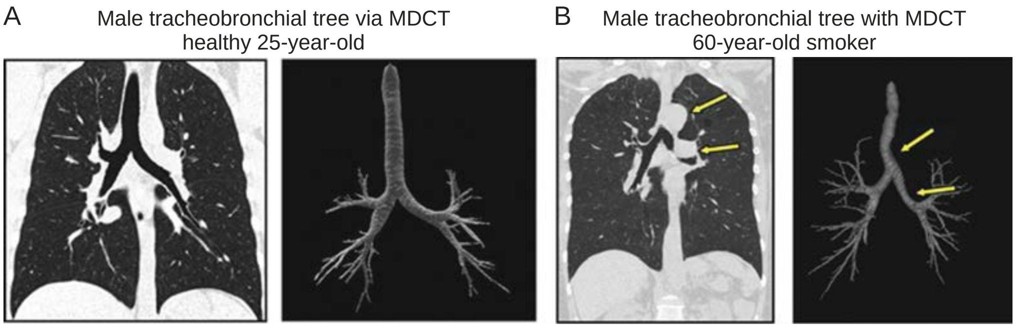
scan (MDCT) of the chest allows appreciation of any abnormal tracheobronchial anatomy before placement of a DLT. A simplified method of selection of DLT size is given in Table 53.7. It is important to appreciate that compared with SLTs, DLTs have a large external diameter (Fig. 53.16) and they should not be advanced against significant resistance.

Methods of Insertion

Two techniques are commonly used when inserting and placing a DLT. One is the blind technique: the DLT is passed with direct laryngoscopy and then turned 90 degrees counterclockwise (for a left-sided DLT placement) after the endobronchial cuff has passed beyond the vocal cords. The DLT should pass the glottis without any resistance. Seymour[103] showed that the mean diameter of the cricoid ring is approximately the same as that of the left mainstem bronchus. The optimal depth of insertion for a left-sided DLT is correlated with the patient's height in average-sized adults. In adults, depth, measured at the teeth, for a properly positioned DLT, will be approximately 12 + (patient height/10) cm.[104] In patients of Asian descent, many of whom are of shorter stature (<155 cm), patient height is not a good predictor of depth of insertion of a DLT[105] An inadvertently deep insertion of a DLT can lead to serious complications, including rupture of the left mainstem bronchus. Fig. 53.17 depicts the blind method technique for insertion of a left-sided DLT.

The direct vision technique uses bronchoscopic guidance, in which the tip of the endobronchial lumen is guided into the correct bronchus after the DLT passes the vocal cords using direct vision with a flexible fiberoptic bronchoscope. A study by Boucek and associates[106] comparing the blind technique versus fiberoptic bronchoscopy-guided technique showed that of the 32 patients who underwent the blind technique approach, primary success occurred in 27 patients and eventual success occurred in 30 patients. In contrast, in the 27 patients using the bronchoscopy-guided technique, primary success was achieved only in 21 patients and eventual success in 25 patients. Although both methods resulted in successful left mainstem bronchus placement in all patients, more time was required when fiberoptic bronchoscopy guidance technique was used (181 vs. 88 seconds).

Videolaryngoscopy is an important technique in the management of patients with expected or unexpected difficult airways. Clinical studies have shown that videolaryngoscopes improve visualization of laryngeal structures and facilitate insertion of a single-lumen ETT.[107] The use of the C-MAC videolaryngoscope has been compared with the Macintosh blade (the most common device used during laryngoscopy with a DLT) and the Miller blade during DLT intubation in patients with normal airways. The authors of this retrospective study showed that videolaryngoscopy views were similar to the views obtained with a Miller blade while passing a DLT.[108] In contrast the group that used a Macintosh blade had reported higher difficult intubations with the DLTs. A study comparing the GlideScope


A
B
Male tracheobronchial tree via MDCT
healthy 25-year-old
Male tracheobronchial tree with MDCT
60-year-old smoker

Normal tracheobronchial anatomy

Abnormal tracheobronchial anatomy. The enlarged aorta produced a tracheal deviation to the right

Fig. 53.15 (A) The multidetector CT scan and also three-dimensional view of tracheobronchial anatomy in a healthy volunteer. (B) Abnormal tracheobronchial anatomy in a 60-year-old smoker. The arrows show enlarged aorta *(left)* and the deviation of the trachea toward the right caused by the enlarged aorta *(right)*. *CT*, Computed tomography.

TABLE 53.7 Selection of Double-Lumen Tube Size Based on Adult Patient's Sex and Height

Sex	Height (cm)	Size of Double-Lumen Tube (Fr)
Female	<160 (63 in)*	35
Female	>160	37
Male	<170 (67 in)**	39
Male	>170	41

*For females of short stature (<152 cm or 60 in), examine bronchial diameter on computed tomographic, scan, consider 32-Fr double-lumen tube.
**For males of short stature (<160 cm), consider 37-Fr double-lumen tube.

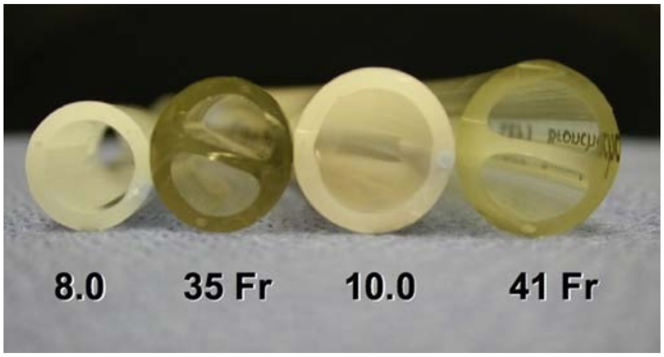


Fig. 53.16 Photograph of the cut cross sections of several SLTs and DLTs. The external diameter of a 35-Fr DLT is larger than that of an 8.0-mm (internal diameter) SLT, and a 41-Fr DLT is larger than a 10-mm SLT. *DLT*, Double-lumen tube; *SLT*, single-lumen tube. (Photo courtesy Dr. J Klafta.)

videolaryngoscope and the Macintosh direct laryngoscope for DLT intubation in patients with normal airways showed that the overall ease of successful intubation was higher with the Macintosh blade compared with the GlideScope[109]; also voice changes were less common in the Macintosh group. Therefore the authors do not recommend the routine use of the GlideScope in patients who have normal airways while using a DLT. In contrast, a study using the Airtraq DL videolaryngoscope during placement of DLT showed an improvement in exposure of the supraglottis during insertion of the DLT in patients with normal airways.[110] The usefulness of a videolaryngoscope while inserting a DLT will depend on the experience of the operator and the individual anatomy of the patient's airway.

RIGHT-SIDED DOUBLE-LUMEN ENDOBRONCHIAL TUBES

Although a left-sided DLT is used more commonly for most elective thoracic procedures,[111] there are specific clinical situations in which the use of a right-sided DLT is indicated (Box 53.8). The anatomic differences between the right and the left mainstem bronchus are reflected in the fundamentally different designs of the right-sided and left-sided DLTs. Because the right mainstem bronchus is shorter than the left bronchus, and because the right upper lobe bronchus originates at a distance of 1.5 to 2 cm from the carina, techniques using right endobronchial intubation must take into account the location and potential for obstruction of the orifice of the right upper lobe bronchus. The right-sided DLT incorporates a modified cuff and slot on the endobronchial lumen that allows ventilation for the right upper lobe (Fig. 53.18).[112]

Positioning of Double-Lumen Tubes

Auscultation alone is unreliable for confirmation of proper DLT placement. Auscultation (Fig. 53.19) and bronchoscopy should both be used each time a DLT is placed and again when the patient is repositioned. Fiberoptic bronchoscopy is performed first through the tracheal lumen to ensure that the endobronchial portion of the DLT is in the left bronchus and that there is no bronchial cuff herniation over the carina after inflation. Through the tracheal view, the blue endobronchial cuff ideally should be seen approximately 5 to 10 mm below the tracheal carina in the left bronchus. It is crucial to identify the take-off of the right upper lobe bronchus through the tracheal view. Going inside this right upper lobe with the bronchoscope should reveal three orifices (apical, anterior, and posterior). This is the only structure in the tracheobronchial tree that has three orifices. In the supine patient, the take-off of the right upper lobe is normally on the lateral wall of the right mainstem bronchus at the 3- to 4-o'clock position in relation to the main carina. Broncho-Cath tubes from Mallinckrodt have a radiopaque line encircling the tube. This line is proximal to the bronchial cuff and can be useful

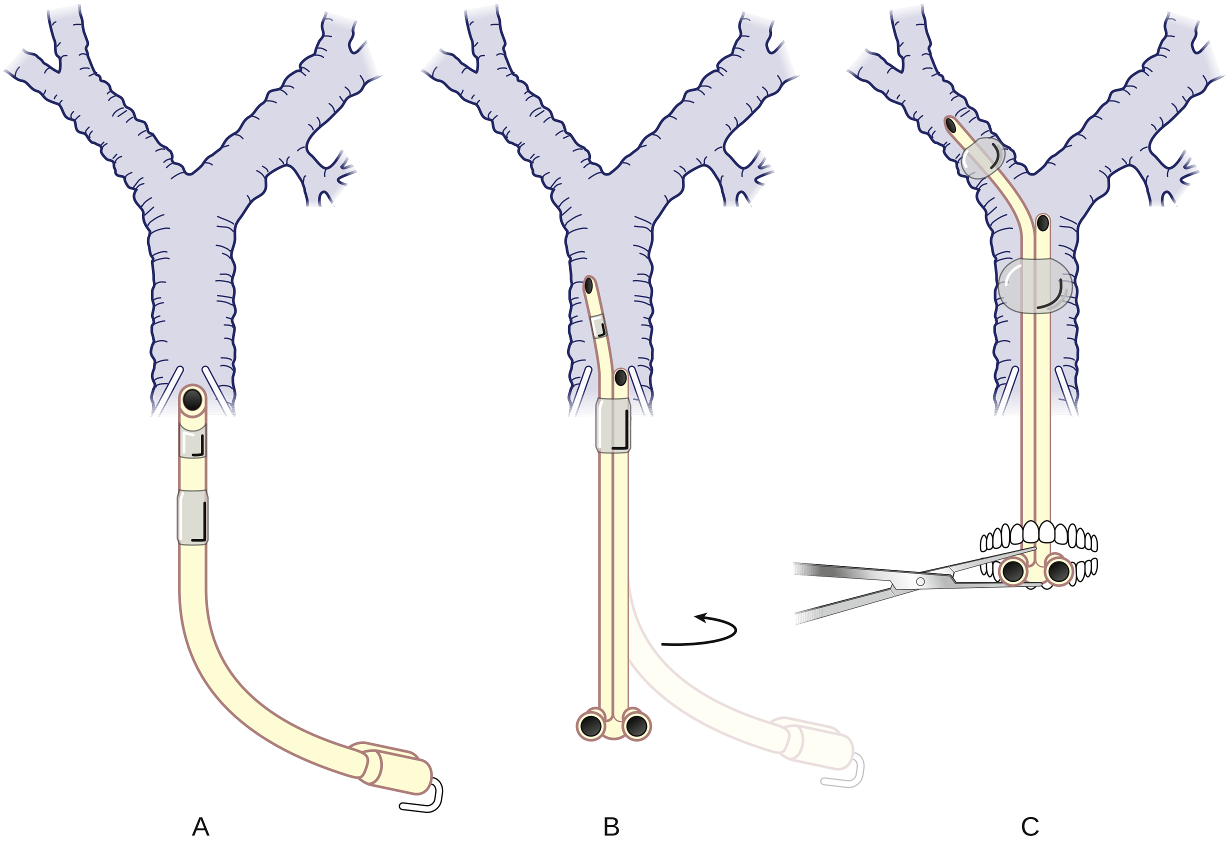


Fig. 53.17 Blind method for placement of a left-sided DLT. (A) The DLT is passed with direct laryngoscopy beyond the vocal cords. (B) The DLT is rotated 90 degrees to the left (counter-clockwise). (C) The DLT is advanced to an appropriate depth (in general 27-29 cm marking at the level of the teeth). *DLT*, Double-lumen tube. (Reproduced with permission from Slinger P. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.)

BOX 53.8 **Indications for a Right-Sided Double-Lumen Tube**

- Distorted anatomy of the entrance of left mainstem bronchus
    - External or intraluminal tumor compression
    - Descending thoracic aortic aneurysm
- Site of surgery involving the left mainstem bronchus
    - Left lung transplantation
    - Left-sided tracheobronchial disruption
    - Left-sided pneumonectomy*
    - Left-sided sleeve resection

*It is possible to manage a left pneumonectomy with a left-sided DLT or bronchial blocker; however, the DLT or blocker will have to be withdrawn before stapling the left mainstem bronchus.

This is a common clinical practice pattern for using right-sided double-lumen tubes (DLTs) and assumes normal tracheobronchial anatomy, specifically a normal position of the orifice of the right upper lobe; however, some clinicians prefer to use right DLTs for all left-sided surgeries.

while positioning a left-sided DLT. The radiopaque marker is 4 cm from the distal tip of the endobronchial lumen. This marker reflects white during fiberoptic visualization and, when positioned slightly above the tracheal carina, should provide the necessary margin of safety for positioning into the left mainstem bronchus.[113] The next observation with the fiberoptic bronchoscope is made through the endobronchial lumen to check for patency of the tube and determination of margin of safety. The orifices of both the left upper and lower lobes must be identified to avoid distal impaction in the left lower lobe and occlusion of the left upper lobe (Fig. 53.20). Fig. 53.21 displays the tracheobronchial anatomy along with fiberoptic bronchoscopy findings from the endotracheal or endobronchial lumen for a left-sided DLT.

Problems Related to Double-Lumen Tubes

The most common problems and complications associated with the use of a DLT are malposition and airway trauma. A malpositioned DLT will fail to allow collapse of the lung, causing gas trapping during positive-pressure ventilation, or it may partially collapse the ventilated or dependent lung, producing hypoxemia. A common cause of malposition is dislodgment of the endobronchial cuff because of overinflation, surgical manipulation of the bronchus, or extension of the head and neck during or after patient positioning. Fiberoptic bronchoscopy is the recommended method to diagnose and correct intraoperative malposition of DLTs along with proper recognition of tracheobronchial anatomy. If a DLT is malpositioned in the supine or lateral decubitus position, there is a greater likelihood of hypoxemia during OLV. If a DLT is in the optimal position, but lung deflation is not completely achieved, a suction catheter should be passed to the side where lung collapse is supposed to occur. This suction will expedite lung deflation. The suction catheter must then be removed to avoid including it in a suture line.

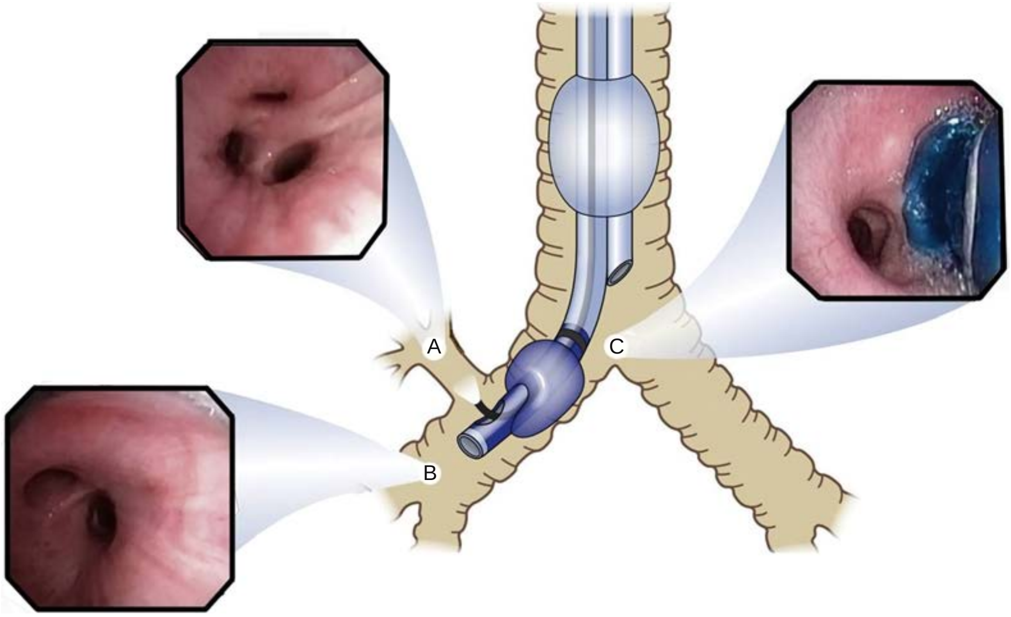


Fig. 53.18 Fiberoptic bronchoscopic examination of a Rusch right-sided DLT. (A) Slot of the bronchial lumen properly aligned within the entrance of the right upper lobe bronchus. (B) Part of the bronchus intermedius when the bronchoscope is advanced through the distal portion of the bronchial lumen. (C) Edge of the bronchial cuff at the entrance of the right mainstem bronchus when the bronchoscope is passed through the tracheal lumen. (Reproduced with permission from Slinger P. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.)

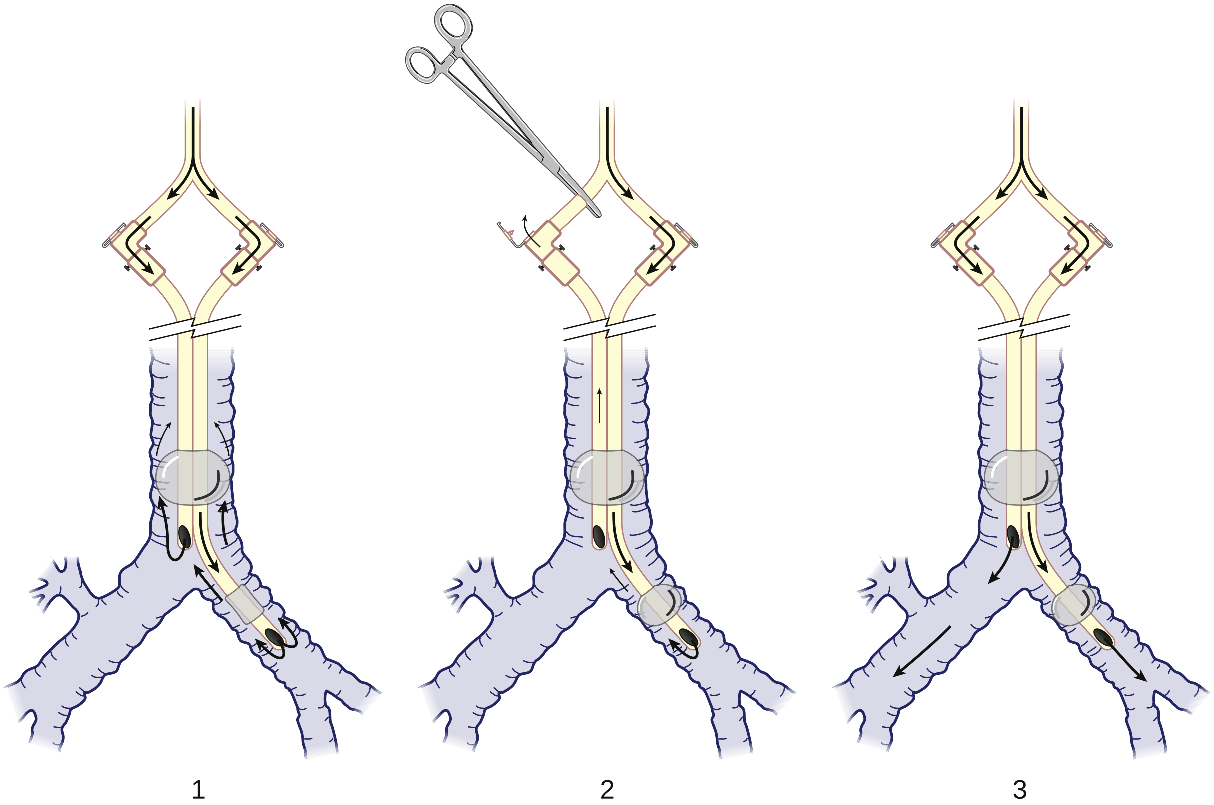


Fig. 53.19 A “3-step” method to confirm position of a left DLT by auscultation. Step 1, During bilateral ventilation, the tracheal cuff is inflated to the minimal volume that seals the air leak at the glottis. Auscultate to confirm bilateral ventilation. Step 2, The tracheal lumen of the DLT is clamped proximally (“clamp the short side short”) and the port distal to the clamp is opened. During ventilation via the bronchial lumen, the bronchial cuff is inflated to the minimal volume that seals the air leak from the open tracheal lumen port. Auscultate to confirm correct unilateral ventilation. Step 3, The tracheal lumen clamp is released and the port is closed. Auscultate to confirm resumption of bilateral breath sounds. *DLT*, Double-lumen tube. (Reproduced with permission from Slinger P. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.)

Airway trauma and rupture of the membranous part of the trachea or the bronchus is a potential complication with the use of DLTs.[114] Airway trauma can occur from an oversized DLT or when an undersized DLT migrates distally into the lobar bronchus and the main (i.e., tracheal) body of the DLT comes into the bronchus, producing lacerations or rupture of the airway. Airway damage during the use of DLTs can present as an unexpected air leak, subcutaneous emphysema, massive airway bleeding into the lumen of the DLT, or protrusion of the endotracheal or endobronchial cuffs into the surgical field, with visualization of this by the surgeon. If any of the aforementioned problems occur, a bronchoscopic examination and surgical repair should be performed. Another potential problem is the development of a tension pneumothorax in the dependent, ventilated lung during OLV.[115]

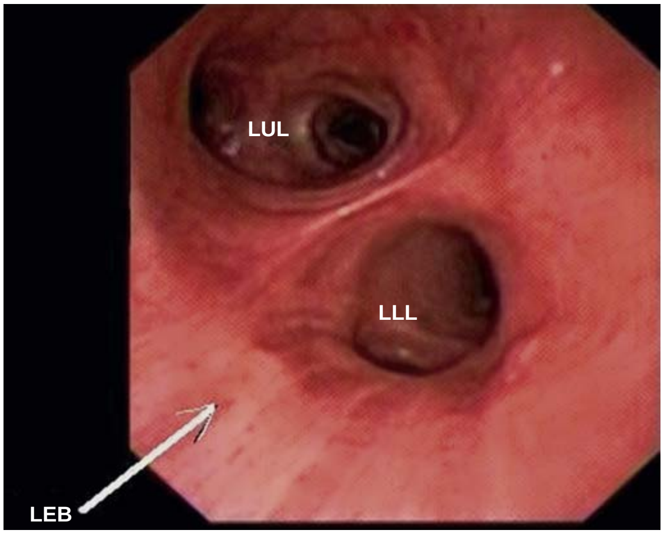


Fig. 53.20 The view from the distal bronchial lumen of a well-positioned left-sided DLT. Both the orifices of the left upper lobe *(LUL)* and left lower lobe *(LLL)* can be identified. Note the longitudinal elastic bundles (*LEB*, *arrow*). These extend down the posterior membranous walls of the trachea and mainstem bronchi. They are useful landmarks to orient the bronchoscopist to anterior-posterior directions. In the left mainstem bronchus, they extend into the left lower lobe and are a useful landmark to distinguish the lower from the upper lobe. *DLT*, Double-lumen tube.

BRONCHIAL BLOCKERS

An alternative method to achieve lung separation involves blockade of a mainstem bronchus to allow lung collapse distal to the occlusion (Fig. 53.22). Bronchial blockers also can be used selectively to achieve lobar collapse if necessary. Currently, there are several different bronchial blockers available to facilitate lung separation. These devices are either within a modified SLT as an enclosed bronchial blocker (Torque Control Blocker Univent; Vitaid, Lewinston, NY) or are used independently with a conventional SLT, such as the Arndt wire-guided endobronchial blocker (Cook Critical Care, Bloomington, IN), the Cohen tip-deflecting endobronchial blocker (Cook Critical Care), the Fuji Uniblocker (Vitaid), and the EZ-Blocker (Teleflex, Dresden, Germany).

There are specific conditions in which a bronchial blocker may be preferred to a DLT, such as patients with previous oral or neck surgery who present with a challenging airway and require lung separation for intrathoracic surgery. In these cases, the use of an SLT during an awake nasotracheal or orotracheal intubation or via tracheostomy secures the

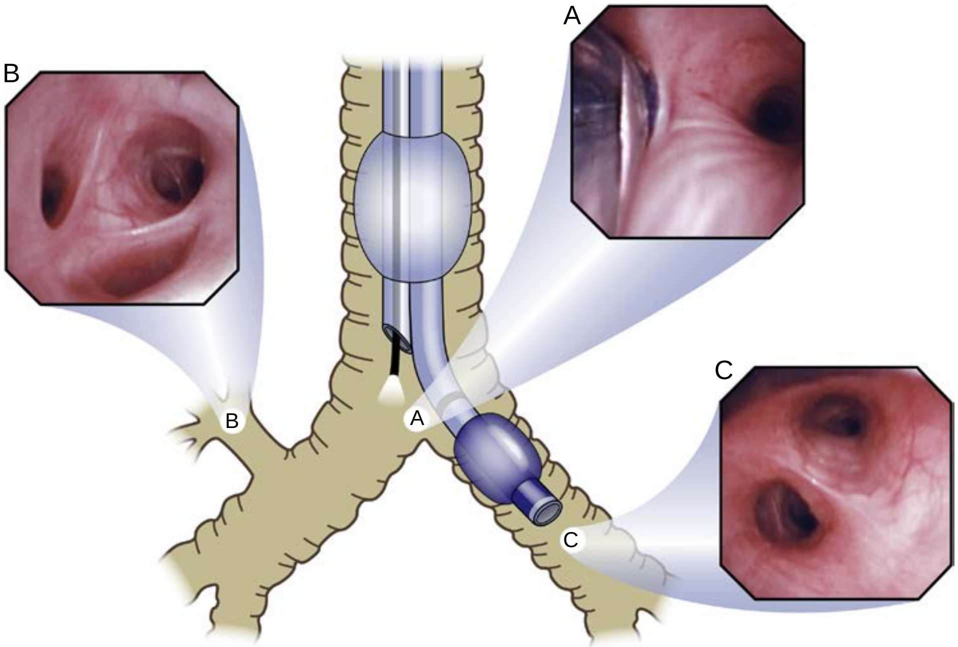


Fig. 53.21 Fiberoptic bronchoscopic examination of a Mallinckrodt left-sided DLT. (A) The edge of the endobronchial cuff around the entrance of the left mainstem bronchus when the bronchoscope is passed through the tracheal lumen. A white line marker is seen above the tracheal carina. (B) Clear view of the right upper lobe bronchus and its three orifices: apical, anterior, and posterior segments. (C) A clear view of the bronchial bifurcation (*left upper* and *left lower* bronchi) when the left-sided DLT is in the optimal position and the fiberoptic bronchoscope is being advanced through the endobronchial lumen. *DLT*, double-lumen tube. (Reproduced with permission from Slinger P. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.)

airway, and thereafter an independent bronchial blocker can be placed to achieve lung separation. Another group of patients who may benefit from the use of bronchial blockers are those cancer patients who have undergone a previous contralateral pulmonary resection. In such cases, selective lobar blockade with a bronchial blocker in the ipsilateral side improves oxygenation and facilitates surgical exposure. Blockers can be advanced over a guidewire placed with a fiberoptic bronchoscope into the required lobar bronchus. Bronchial blockers are most commonly used intraluminally (coaxially) with the SLT. The Cohen and Fuji Uniblockers can also be placed separately through the glottis or tracheostomy exterior to the SLT. This allows the use of a smaller SLT and is often an option in pediatrics. Another advantage of the bronchial blockers is when postoperative mechanical ventilation is being considered after prolonged thoracic or esophageal surgery. In many instances, these patients have an edematous upper airway at the end of the procedure. If a bronchial blocker is used, there is no need to change the SLT and there is no compromise of the airway if mechanical ventilation is needed in the postoperative period. Table 53.8 describes the characteristics of current bronchial blockers. The smallest internal diameter (ID) of an ETT that will allow passage of both a bronchial blocker and a fiberoptic bronchoscope depends on the diameters of the bronchoscope and blocker. For standard adult 9-Fr blockers, an ETT greater than or equal to 7.0 mm ID can be used with a bronchoscope less than 4.0 mm in diameter. Larger bronchoscopes will require an ETT greater than 7.5 mm ID. All blockers need to be well lubricated before placement.

Wire-Guided Endobronchial Blocker (Arndt Blocker)

Fig. 53.23*A* displays the Arndt blockers. The Arndt blocker has a retractable loop that is placed over the fiberoptic bronchoscope, which is then used to guide the blocker into place. The Arndt blockers usually advance easily into the right mainstem bronchus without the loop.

Cohen Endobronchial Blocker

The Cohen blocker (see Fig. 53.23*B*, left blocker) uses a wheel located in the most proximal part of the unit that deflects the tip of the distal part of the blocker into the desired bronchus. This blocker has been preangled at the distal tip to facilitate insertion into a target bronchus. On the distal shaft above the balloon, there is an arrow that, when seen with the fiberoptic bronchoscope, indicates in which direction the tip deflects. To position the Cohen blocker, the arrow is aligned with the

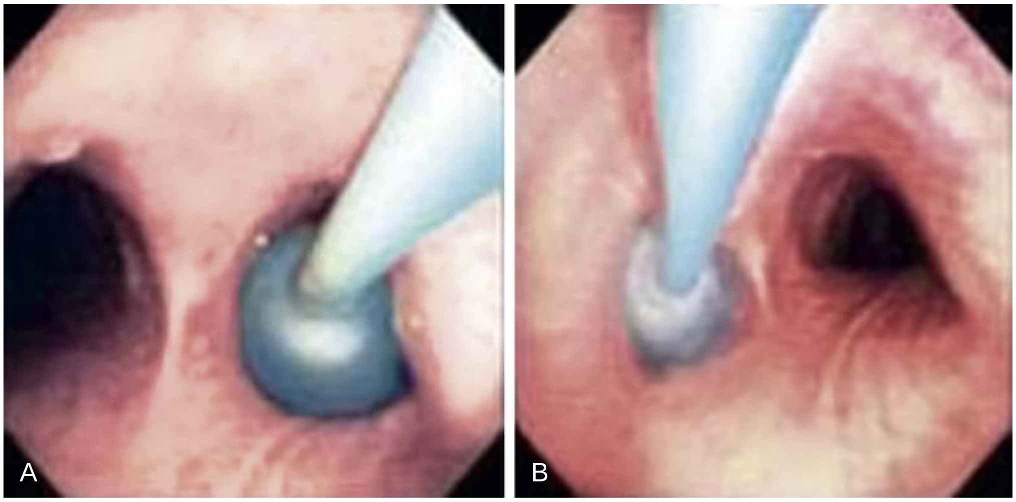


Fig. 53.22 Placement of a bronchial blocker. In the photos, correct positioning of a blocker in the right (A) and left (B) mainstem bronchi as seen through a fiberoptic bronchoscope just above the carina in the trachea. (Reproduced with permission from Slinger P. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.)

TABLE 53.8 Characteristics of the Cohen, Arndt, Fuji, and EZ Bronchial Blockers

	Cohen Blocker	Arndt Blocker	Fuji Uniblocker	EZ-Blocker
Size	9-Fr	5-Fr, 7-Fr, and 9-Fr	5-Fr, 9-Fr	7-Fr
Balloon shape	Spherical	Spherical or elliptical	Spherical	Spherical × 2
Guidance mechanism	Wheel device to deflect the tip	Nylon wire loop that is coupled with the fiberoptic bronchoscope	None, preshaped tip	None
Smallest recommended ETT for coaxial use	9-Fr (8.0 ETT)	5-Fr (4.5 ETT), 7-Fr (7.0 ETT), 9-Fr (8.0 ETT)	9-Fr (8.0 ETT)	7.5 ID
Murphy eye	Present	Present in 9-Fr	Not present	No
Center channel	1.6 mm ID	1.4 mm ID	2.0 mm ID	1.4 mm ID

ETT, Endotracheal tube; *ID*, internal diameter.
Modified from Campos JH: Which device should be considered the best for lung isolation: Double-lumen endotracheal tube versus bronchial blockers. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2007;20:30, with permission.

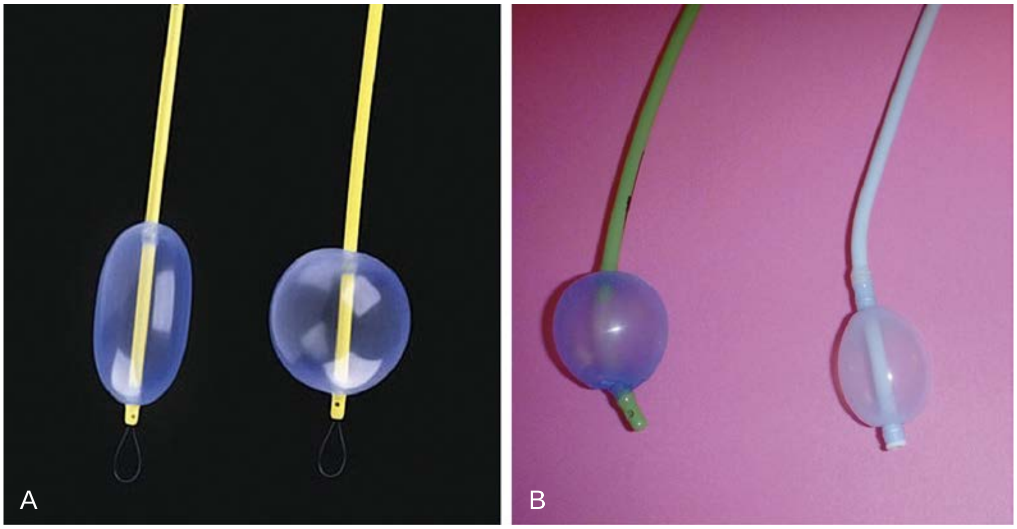


Fig. 53.23 (A) The original elliptical *(left)* and the newer spherical Arndt designs of bronchial blocker (Cook Critical Care, Bloomington, IN). (B) The Cohen *(left)* (Cook Critical Care, Bloomington, IN) and Fuji Uniblocker *(right)* (Vitaid, Lewinston, NY) bronchial blockers.

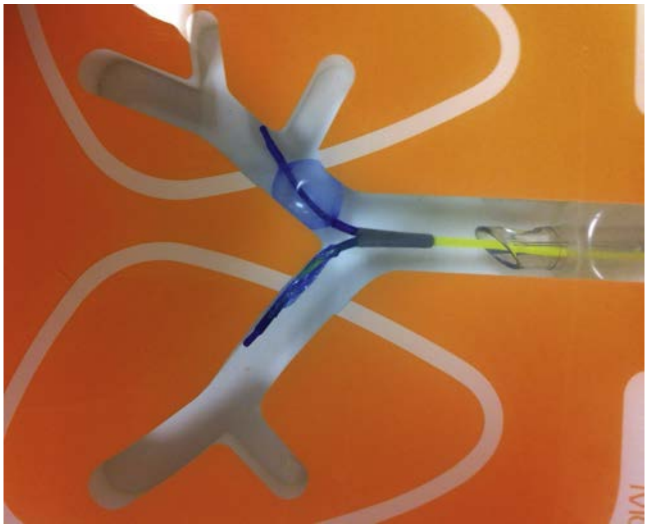


Fig. 53.24 The EZ-Blocker (Rusch, Teleflex) has two distal limbs each with a blocker-balloon that are positioned in each mainstem bronchus and is fixed at the carina. The two limbs are color-coded (*blue* and *yellow*) and the appropriate blocker is inflated via a matching colored pilot balloon.

bronchus to be intubated, the proximal wheel is turned to deflect the tip toward the desired side, and then the blocker is advanced with fiberoptic guidance.

Fuji Uniblocker

The Fuji Uniblocker (see Fig. 53.22*B*, right blocker) is an independent blocker that is made of silicone material and has a simple, fixed distal hockey-stick angulation to facilitate insertion. The blocker is simply rotated to the left or right as needed under fiberoptic bronchoscope guidance for placement in the required bronchus.

EZ-Blocker

The EZ-blocker (Fig. 53.24) is a recently introduced 7-Fr, 4-lumen catheter with a Y-shaped bifurcation. Each distal end has a balloon that can be guided into the right and left main bronchus. This device comes with its own multiport adaptor and is used through a 7.5 SLT. The end of the Y sits on the tracheal carina. Each distal end is positioned into the right and left bronchus, and the bronchial balloon is inflated in the operative side for lung isolation.

Complications Related to the Bronchial Blockers

Failure to achieve lung separation because of abnormal anatomy or lack of a seal within the bronchus has been reported.[116] Inclusion of the bronchial blocker or the distal wire loop of an Arndt blocker into the stapling line has been reported during a lobectomy[117] and required surgical reexploration after unsuccessful removal of the bronchial blocker after extubation. To avoid these mishaps, communication with the surgical team regarding the presence of a bronchial blocker in the surgical side is crucial. Clearly, the bronchial blocker needs to be withdrawn a few centimeters before stapling.

Another potentially dangerous complication with all bronchial blockers is that the inflated balloon may move and lodge above the carina or be accidentally inflated in the trachea. This leads to an inability to ventilate, hypoxia, and potentially cardiorespiratory arrest unless quickly recognized and the blocker deflated.[118] There is a report of more malpositions with the use of bronchial blockers when compared to DLTs.[119]

In a retrospective review of 302 consecutive cases from a single institution, no major complications were found with the use of different bronchial blockers during lung isolation.[120] A recent report described three cases where the balloon of the Fuji blocker failed to deflate at the conclusion of the surgery. In two of the cases, the already inflated bronchial blocker had to be removed along with the single-lumen ETT during extubation.[121] It is our recommendation to test the pilot and the balloon prior to use to ensure that the air that is injected is aspirated and the balloon completely deflates.

Difficult Airways and One-Lung Ventilation

A number of patients requiring OLV are identified during preoperative evaluation to have a potentially difficult airway.[122] Others present with unexpected difficulty to intubate after induction of anesthesia. Between 5% and 8% of patients with primary lung carcinoma also have a carcinoma of the pharynx, usually in the epiglottic area.[123] Many of these patients have had previous radiation therapy on the neck or previous airway surgery, such as hemimandibulectomy or hemiglossectomy, making intubation and achievement of OLV difficult due to distorted upper airway anatomy. Also, a patient who requires OLV might have distorted anatomy at or beyond the tracheal carina, such as descending thoracic aortic aneurysm compressing the entrance of the left mainstem bronchus or an intraluminal or extraluminal tumor near the tracheobronchial bifurcation that makes the insertion of a left-sided DLT relatively difficult or impossible. Such anomalies can be detected by reviewing the chest radiographs and CT scans of the chest. A flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopic examination is necessary to assess a distorted area of the airway before selection of a specific tube or blocker to achieve OLV.

In patients who require OLV and present with a difficult airway, the primary goal is to establish an airway with an SLT placed orally with the aid of a flexible fiberoptic bronchoscope, after appropriate airway anesthesia is achieved. In selected patients who seem easy to ventilate, this may be performed after induction of anesthesia with a bronchoscope or with a videolaryngoscope.[124] Once the SLT is in place, an independent bronchial blocker can be passed. If the patient requires OLV and cannot be intubated orally, an awake nasotracheal intubation can be performed with an SLT and, once the airway is established, then a bronchial blocker can be used.

An alternative to achieve OLV in a patient with a difficult airway is to intubate the patient's trachea with an SLT; then a DLT-SLT tube-exchange catheter can be used to replace the existing SLT with a DLT after general anesthesia is induced. For a DLT the exchange catheter should be at least 83 cm. A 14-Fr exchange catheter can be used for 41-Fr and 39-Fr DLTs; for 37-Fr or 35-Fr DLTs an 11-Fr exchange catheter is used. Specially designed exchange catheters for DLTs are available with a softer distal tip to try to decrease the risk of distal airway trauma (e.g., Cook Exchange Catheter, Cook Critical Care).

The exchange catheter, SLT, and the DLT combination should be tested in vitro before the exchange. A sniffing position facilitates tube exchange. After the exchange catheter is lubricated, it is advanced through an SLT. The catheter should not be inserted deeper than 24 cm at the lips to avoid accidental rupture or laceration of the trachea or bronchi. After cuff deflation, the SLT is withdrawn. Then the endobronchial lumen of the DLT is advanced over the exchange catheter. It is optimal to use a videolaryngoscope during the tube exchange to guide the DLT through the glottis under direct vision (Fig. 53.25). If a videolaryngoscope is not available, having an assistant perform standard laryngoscopy during tube exchange partially straightens out the alignment of the oropharynx and glottis and facilitates the exchange. Proper final position of the DLT is then achieved with auscultation and bronchoscopy.

Lung-Isolation Techniques in Patients With a Tracheostomy in Place

Placement of a DLT through a tracheostomy stoma may be prone to malposition because the upper airway has been shortened and the conventional DLT may be too long. Before placing any lung isolation devices through a tracheostomy stoma it is important to consider whether it is a fresh stoma (i.e., a few days old, when the airway can be lost immediately on decannulation) versus a chronic tracheostomy. The alternatives to achieve OLV in a tracheostomized patient include (1) insertion of an SLT followed by an independent bronchial blocker passed coaxially or externally to the SLT[125]; (2) the use of a disposable cuffed tracheostomy cannula with an independent bronchial blocker; (3) replacement of the tracheostomy cannula with a specially designed short DLT such as the Naruke DLT, which is made for use in tracheostomized patients[126]; (4) placement of a small DLT through the tracheostomy stoma; or (5) if possible, oral access to the airway for standard placement of a DLT or blocker (this is occasionally an option in patients on prolonged mechanical ventilation for respiratory failure or postoperative complications).

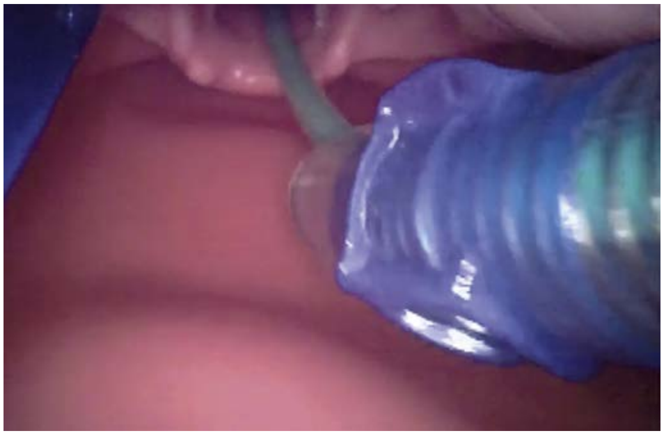


Fig. 53.25 A DLT is placed over a tube-exchange catheter using a video laryngoscope for guidance. The green SLT-DLT tube-exchange catheter (Cook Critical Care, Bloomington, IN) was passed initially through the SLT, which has been withdrawn (before the photo was taken) and the catheter then passed retrograde through the bronchial lumen of a DLT, which is advanced under direct vision through the glottis. The DLT in this picture (Fuji, Phycon, Vitaid, Lewinston, NY) has a bevel on the distal bronchial orifice and a flexible bronchial lumen that facilitates this procedure. *DLT*, Double-lumen tube; *SLT*, single-lumen tube.

In summary, the optimal method of lung isolation will depend on a number of factors, including the patient's airway anatomy, the indication for lung isolation, the available equipment, and the training of the anesthesiologist. Whatever method of lung isolation is used, the "ABCs" of lung isolation are:

Anatomy. Know the tracheobronchial anatomy. One of the major problems that many anesthesiologists have in achieving satisfactory lung isolation is due to lack of familiarity with distal airway anatomy (Fig. 53.26).

Bronchoscopy. Whenever possible use a fiberoptic bronchoscope to position endobronchial tubes and blockers. The ability to perform fiberoptic bronchoscopy is now a fundamental skill needed by all anesthesiologists providing anesthesia for thoracic surgery. An online bronchoscopy simulator has been developed to help train anesthesiologists in positioning DLTs and blockers. This simulator, which uses real-time video, is available without cost at www.thoracicanesthesia.com.

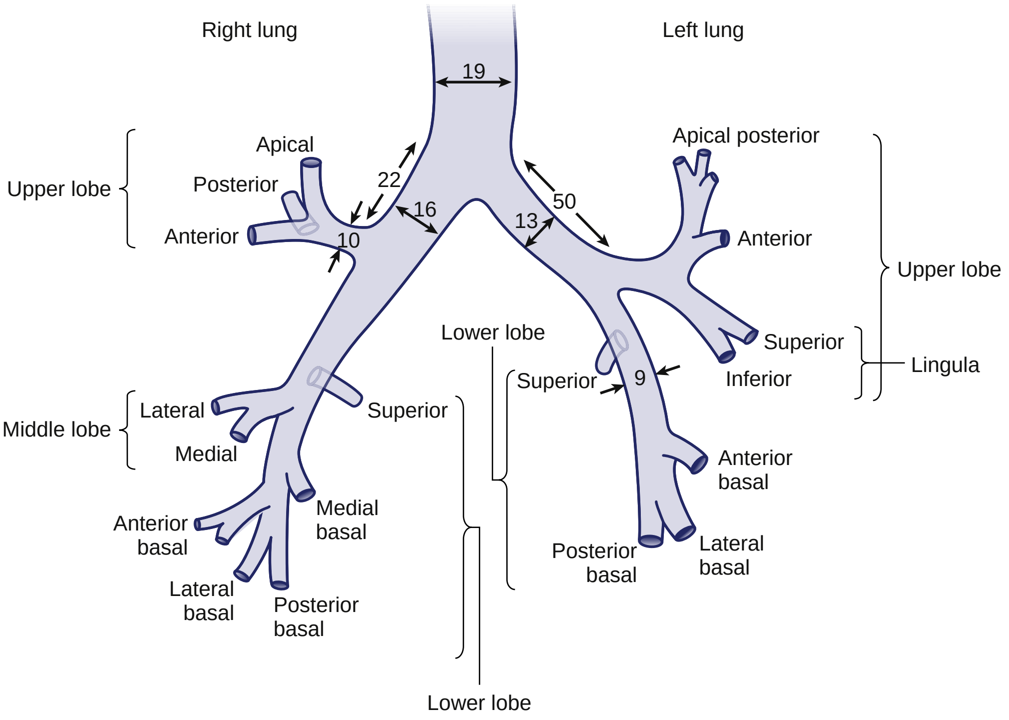


Fig. 53.26 Diagram of the tracheobronchial tree. Mean lengths and diameters are shown in millimeters. Note that the right middle lobe bronchus exits directly anteriorly and the superior segments (some authors refer to these as the "apical" segments) of the lower lobes exit directly posteriorly. Using the apical designation, on the right side the segmental bronchi in a rostral to caudal sequence give the mnemonic "A PALM A MAPL". (Reproduced with permission from Slinger P. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.)

Chest imaging. The anesthesiologist should always look at the chest imaging before placement of a DLT or blocker. Abnormalities of the lower airway can often be identified in advance, and this will have an impact on the selection of the optimal method of lung isolation for a specific case (see Figs. 53.10 and 53.15).

POSITIONING

The majority of thoracic procedures are performed in the lateral position, most often the lateral decubitus position, but depending on the surgical technique a supine, semisupine or semiprone lateral position may be used. These lateral positions have specific implications for the anesthesiologist.

Position Change

It is awkward to induce anesthesia in the lateral position. Thus monitors will be placed and anesthesia will usually be induced in the supine position and the anesthetized patient will then be repositioned for surgery. It is possible to induce anesthesia in the lateral position and this may rarely be indicated with unilateral lung diseases such as bronchiectasis or hemoptysis until lung isolation can be achieved. However, even these patients will then have to be repositioned and the diseased lung turned to the nondependent side.

Because of the loss of venous vascular tone in the anesthetized patient, it is not uncommon to see hypotension when turning the patient to or from the lateral position. All lines and monitors will have to be secured during position change and their function reassessed after repositioning. The anesthesiologist should take responsibility for the head, neck, and airway during position change and must be in charge of the operating team to direct repositioning. It is useful to make an initial "head-to-toe" survey of the patient after induction and intubation checking oxygenation, ventilation, hemodynamics, lines, monitors, and potential nerve injuries. This survey then must be repeated after repositioning. It is nearly impossible to avoid some movement of a DLT or bronchial blocker during repositioning. Certainly the patient's head, neck, and endobronchial tube should be turned "en-bloc" with the patient's thoracolumbar spine. However, the margin of error in positioning endobronchial tubes or blockers is often so narrow that even very small movements can have significant clinical implications. The carina and mediastinum may shift independently with repositioning and this can lead to proximal misplacement of a previously well-positioned tube. Endobronchial tube/blocker position and the adequacy of ventilation must be rechecked by auscultation and fiberoptic bronchoscopy after patient repositioning.

In addition, with the introduction of robotics for thoracic surgery careful attention must be given to airway devices because changes in patient position required for robotic surgery have the potential to cause malposition of airway devices. In robotic thoracic surgery access to the airway in midoperation can be very difficult.[127]

Neurovascular Complications

There is a specific set of nerve and vascular injuries related to the lateral position that must be appreciated. The brachial plexus is the site of the majority of intraoperative nerve injuries related to the lateral position.[128] These are basically of two varieties: the majority are compression injuries of the brachial plexus of the dependent arm but there is also significant risk of stretch injuries to the brachial plexus of the nondependent arm. The brachial plexus is fixed at two

BOX 53.9 Factors That Contribute to Brachial Plexus Injury in the Lateral Position

a. Dependent arm (compression injuries)
   1. Arm directly under thorax
   2. Pressure on clavicle into retroclavicular space
   3. Cervical rib
   4. Caudal migration of thorax padding into the axilla*

b. Nondependent arm (stretch injuries)
   1. Lateral flexion of cervical spine
   2. Excessive abduction of arm (>90 degrees)
   3. Semiprone or semisupine repositioning after arm fixed to a support

*Unfortunately, this padding under the thorax is misnamed an "axillary roll" in some institutions. This padding absolutely should NOT be placed in the axilla.

points: proximally by the transverse process of the cervical vertebrae and distally by the axillary fascia. This two-point fixation, plus the extreme mobility of neighboring skeletal and muscular structures, makes the brachial plexus extremely liable to injury (Box 53.9). The patient should be positioned with padding under the dependent thorax to keep the weight of the upper body off the dependent arm brachial plexus. However, this padding will exacerbate the pressure on the brachial plexus if it migrates superiorly into the axilla.

The arms should not be abducted beyond 90 degrees and should not be extended posteriorly beyond the neutral position nor flexed anteriorly greater than 90 degrees. Fortunately, the majority of these nerve injuries resolve spontaneously over a period of months. Anterior flexion of the arm at the shoulder (circumduction) across the chest or lateral flexion of the neck toward the opposite side can cause a traction injury of the suprascapular nerve.[129] This causes a deep, poorly circumscribed pain of posterior and lateral aspects of the shoulder and may be responsible for some cases of postthoracotomy shoulder pain.

It is very easy, after repositioning the patient in the lateral decubitus position, to cause excessive lateral flexion of the cervical spine because of improper positioning of the patient's head. This malpositioning, which exacerbates brachial plexus traction, can cause a "whiplash" syndrome and can be difficult to appreciate from the head of the operating table, particularly after the surgical drapes have been placed. It is useful for the anesthesiologist to survey the patient from the side of the table immediately after turning to ensure that the entire vertebral column is aligned properly.

The dependent leg should be slightly flexed with padding under the knee to protect the peroneal nerve lateral to the proximal head of the fibula. The nondependent leg is placed in a neutral extended position and padding placed between it and the dependent leg. The dependent leg must be observed for vascular compression. Excessively tight strapping at the hip level can compress the sciatic nerve of the nondependent leg. Other sites particularly liable for neurovascular injury in the lateral position are the dependent ear pinna and eye. A "head-to-toe" protocol to monitor for possible neurovascular injuries related to the lateral decubitus position is presented in Box 53.10.

BOX 53.10 Neurovascular Injuries Specific to the Lateral Position: Routine "Head-to-Toe" Survey

1. Dependent eye
2. Dependent ear pinna
3. Cervical spine in line with thoracic spine
4. Dependent arm: (i) brachial plexus, (ii) circulation
5. Nondependent arm*: (i) brachial plexus, (ii) circulation
6. Dependent and nondependent suprascapular nerves
7. Nondependent leg sciatic nerve
8. Dependent leg: (i) peroneal nerve, (ii) circulation

*Neurovascular injuries of the nondependent arm are more likely to occur if the arm is suspended or held in an independently positioned arm rest.

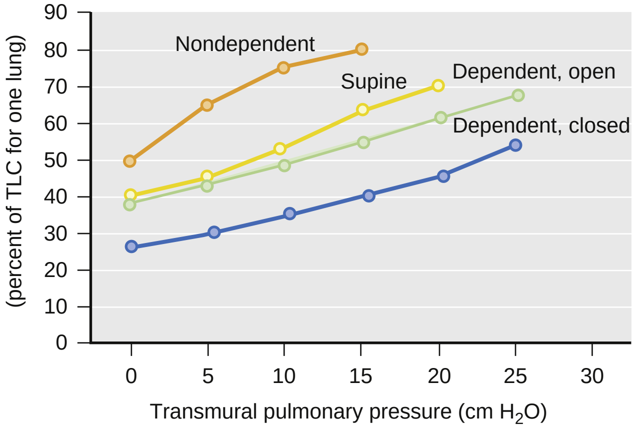


Fig. 53.27 Changes in the compliance of a single lung during position changes in an anesthetized, paralyzed patient during controlled mechanical ventilation. These compliance changes are responsible for the resulting differences in ventilation between the lungs that occur in the lateral position. Note: the compliance of the dependent lung is increased when the nondependent hemithorax is open versus closed. *TLC*, Total lung capacity.

Physiologic Changes in the Lateral Position

Ventilation. Significant changes in ventilation develop between the lungs when the patient is placed in the lateral position.[130] The compliance curves of the two lungs are different because of their difference in sizes. The lateral position, anesthesia, paralysis, and opening the thorax all combine to magnify these differences between the lungs (Fig. 53.27). The compliance curve (change in volume vs. change in pressure) of a lung depends on the balance of two "springs": the chest wall (normally distending the lung) and the elastic recoil of the lung itself. Any factor that changes the mechanics of either of these springs places the lung on a different compliance curve.[131]

In a healthy, conscious, spontaneously breathing patient, the ventilation of the dependent lung will increase approximately 10% when the patient is turned to the lateral position. Once the patient is anesthetized and paralyzed, the ventilation of the dependent lung will then decrease 15%. Although the ventilation will not change significantly once the nondependent hemithorax is open, the FRC of this nondependent lung will tend to increase approximately 10%. These changes depend on the method used for ventilation in the individual patient.

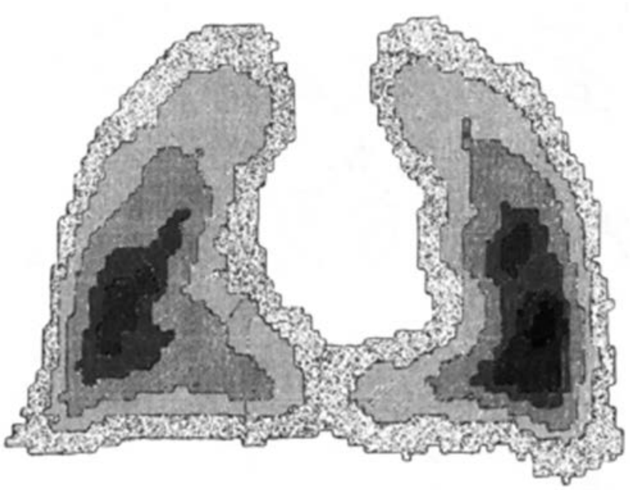


Fig. 53.28 In vivo perfusion lung scanning in the upright position demonstrates a predominant central to peripheral distribution of pulmonary blood flow in addition to a gravitational effect which also increases the blood flow in dependent lung regions. (Reproduced with permission from Slinger P. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.)

When the chest is open, due to disruption of the chest wall, both lungs tend to collapse to a minimal lung volume if expiration is prolonged. Thus the end-expiratory volume of each lung is directly a function of the time allowed for expiration. The compliance of the entire respiratory system increases significantly once the nondependent hemithorax is open.

Because of the fall in FRC and compliance of the dependent lung in the lateral position, application of PEEP selectively to this lung only (using a DLT and two anesthetic circuits), will improve gas exchange.[132] This is different than the effect of nonselectively applying PEEP to both lungs in the lateral position where PEEP tends to preferentially distribute to the most compliant lung regions and will tend to hyperinflate the nondependent lung without causing any improvement in gas exchange.[133]

Atelectasis will develop in an average of 6% of the lung parenchyma after induction of anesthesia in the supine position. This atelectasis will be evenly distributed in the dependent portions of both lungs.[134] Turning the patient to the lateral position, there will be a slight decrease of total atelectasis to 5% of lung volume but this will now be concentrated totally in the dependent lung.

Perfusion. Gravity has some effect on distribution of pulmonary blood flow. In the lateral position, the blood flow to the dependent lung is generally thought to be increased by 10% compared to the same lung in the supine position.[135] However, the distribution of pulmonary blood flow in various positions may be more related to inherent pulmonary vascular anatomy than to gravity (Fig. 53.28).[136] The matching of ventilation and perfusion will usually be decreased in the lateral position compared to the supine position during anesthesia. Pulmonary arteriovenous shunt during general anesthesia will usually increase from approximately 5% in the supine position to 10% to 15% in the lateral position.[137]

BOX 53.11 **Fluid Management for Pulmonary Resection Surgery**

- Total positive fluid balance in the first 24-h perioperative period should not exceed 20 mL/kg
- For an average adult patient, crystalloid administration should be limited to less than 3 L in the first 24 h
- No fluid administration for third-space fluid losses during pulmonary resection
- Urine output greater than 0.5 mL/kg/h is unnecessary
- If increased tissue perfusion is needed postoperatively, it is preferable to use invasive monitoring and inotropes rather than to cause fluid overload

Anesthetic Management

The development of thoracic anesthesia and thoracic surgery was delayed more than 50 years after the introduction of ether because anesthesiologists could not manage patients during mask anesthesia with spontaneous ventilation and an open chest. These patients developed what was originally called the “pneumothorax syndrome.”[138] The respiratory systems of mammals do not function adequately with an open hemithorax due to two physiologic problems. First, paradoxical ventilation (also called “pendelluft”) in which gas moves into the open-chest lung from the intact lung during expiration and then reverses flow during inspiration. This leads to hypercapnia and hypoxemia. And second, due to the swinging motion of the mediastinum between the hemithoraces during the respiratory cycle, which interferes with cardiac preload and causes hemodynamic instability. In the early 1900s, several pioneers such as the New Orleans surgeon Matas advocated positive-pressure ventilation and a primitive form of endotracheal ventilation, which had been demonstrated to be safe in animal experiments, for thoracic anesthesia. Modern methods, incorporating OLV, have evolved from this. Essentially any anesthetic technique that provides safe and stable general anesthesia for major surgery can and has been used for lung resection.

FLUID MANAGEMENT

Because of hydrostatic effects, excessive administration of intravenous fluids can cause increased shunting and subsequently lead to pulmonary edema of the dependent lung, particularly during prolonged surgery.[139] Because the dependent lung is the lung that must carry on gas exchange during OLV, it is best to be as judicious as possible with fluid administration. Intravenous fluids are administered to replace volume deficits and for maintenance only during lung resection anesthesia. No volume is given for theoretical “third space” losses (Box 53.11).[140]

TEMPERATURE

Maintenance of body temperature can be a problem during thoracic surgery because of heat loss from the open hemithorax. This is particularly a problem at the extremes of the age spectrum. Most of the body’s physiological functions, including HPV, are inhibited during hypothermia.

Increasing the ambient room temperature, fluid warmers, and the use of lower and/or upper-body forced-air patient warmers are the best methods to prevent inadvertent intraoperative hypothermia.

PREVENTION OF BRONCHOSPASM

Because of the high incidence of coexisting reactive airways' disease in the thoracic surgical population, it is advisable to use an anesthetic technique that decreases bronchial irritability. This is particularly important because the added airway manipulation caused by placement of a DLT or bronchial blocker is a potent trigger for bronchoconstriction. The principles of anesthetic management are the same as they are for any asthmatic patient: avoid manipulation of the airway in a lightly anesthetized patient, use bronchodilating anesthetics, and avoid drugs that release histamine. For intravenous induction of anesthesia, either propofol or ketamine can be expected to diminish bronchospasm. This benefit is not seen with barbiturate, opioid, benzodiazepine, or etomidate intravenous induction. For maintenance of anesthesia, propofol and/or any of the volatile anesthetics will diminish bronchial reactivity. Sevoflurane may be the most potent bronchodilator of the volatile anesthetics.[141]

CORONARY ARTERY DISEASE

Because the lung resection population is largely elderly and smokers, there is a high coincidence of coronary artery disease. This consideration will be a major factor in the choice of the anesthetic technique for most thoracic patients. The anesthetic technique should optimize the myocardial oxygen supply/demand ratio by maintaining arterial oxygenation and diastolic blood pressure while avoiding unnecessary increases in cardiac output and heart rate. Thoracic epidural anesthesia/analgesia may aid in this (see Postoperative Analgesia later).

Management of One-Lung Ventilation

During OLV, the anesthesiologist has the unique and often conflicting goals of trying to maximize atelectasis in the nonventilated lung to improve surgical access while trying to avoid atelectasis in the ventilated lung (usually the dependent lung) to optimize gas exchange. The gas mixture in the nonventilated lung immediately before OLV has a significant effect on the speed of collapse of this lung. Because of its low blood-gas solubility, nitrogen (or an air-oxygen mixture) will delay collapse of this lung (Fig. 53.29).[142] This is particularly a problem at the start of VATS surgery when surgical visualization in the operative hemithorax is limited and in patients with emphysema who have delayed collapse of the nonventilated lung because of decreased lung elastic recoil. It is important to thoroughly denitrogenate the operative lung, by ventilating with oxygen, immediately before it is allowed to collapse. Although nitrous oxide (N_2O) is even more effective than oxygen in speeding lung collapse, for the reasons just cited, it is not commonly used in thoracic anesthesia because many patients may have blebs or bullae.

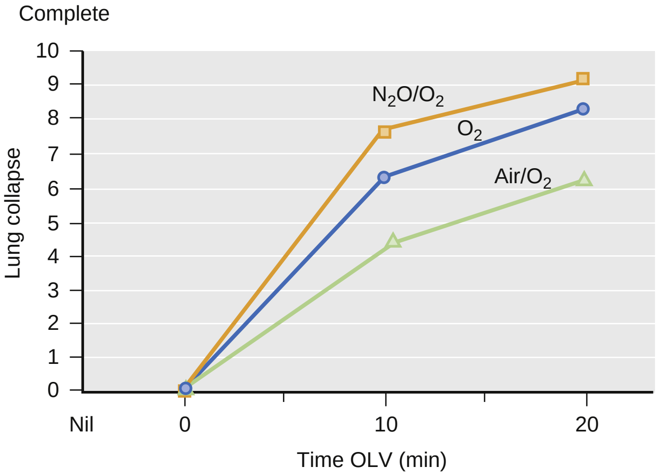


Fig. 53.29 The effects of the gas mixture used during two-lung ventilation *(TLV)*, immediately before one-lung venation *(OLV)*, on the speed of collapse of the nonventilated lung during OLV. $O_2 = FiO_2$ 1.0; N_2O/O_2 = nitrous oxide/oxygen 60/40; air/O_2 = air/oxygen FiO_2 0.4. All patients were ventilated with a FiO_2 of 1.0 during OLV. The poorly soluble nitrogen in the air/oxygen mixture delays collapse of the nonventilated lung. (Based on data from Ko R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1029.)

Also, during the period of two-lung anesthesia before the start of OLV, atelectasis will develop in the dependent lung. It is useful to perform a recruitment maneuver to the dependent lung (similar to a Valsalva maneuver, holding the lung at an end-inspiratory pressure of 20 cm H_2O for 15–20 seconds) immediately after the start of OLV to decrease this atelectasis. Recruitment is important to maintain PaO_2 levels during subsequent OLV.[143]

HYPOXEMIA

A major concern that influences anesthetic management for thoracic surgery is the occurrence of hypoxemia during OLV. There is no universally acceptable figure for the safest lower limit of oxygen saturation during OLV. A saturation greater than or equal to 90% ($PaO_2 > 60$ mm Hg) is commonly accepted, and for brief periods a saturation in the high 80%s may be acceptable in patients without significant comorbidity. However, the lowest acceptable saturation will be higher in patients with organs at risk of hypoxia because of limited regional blood flow (e.g., coronary or cerebrovascular disease) and in patients with limited oxygen transport (e.g., anemia or decreased cardiopulmonary reserve). It has been shown that during OLV patients with COPD desaturate more quickly during isovolemic hemodilution than normal patients.[144]

Previously, hypoxemia occurred frequently during OLV. Reports for the period between 1950 and 1980 describe an incidence of hypoxemia (arterial saturation < 90%) of 20% to 25%.[145] More recent reports describe an incidence of less than 5%.[146] This improvement is most likely a result of several factors: improved lung isolation techniques such as routine fiberoscopy to prevent lobar obstruction from DLTs, improved anesthetic drugs that cause less inhibition of HPV, and better understanding of the pathophysiology of OLV. The pathophysiology of OLV involves the body's ability to redistribute pulmonary blood flow to the ventilated lung. Several factors aid and impede this redistribution

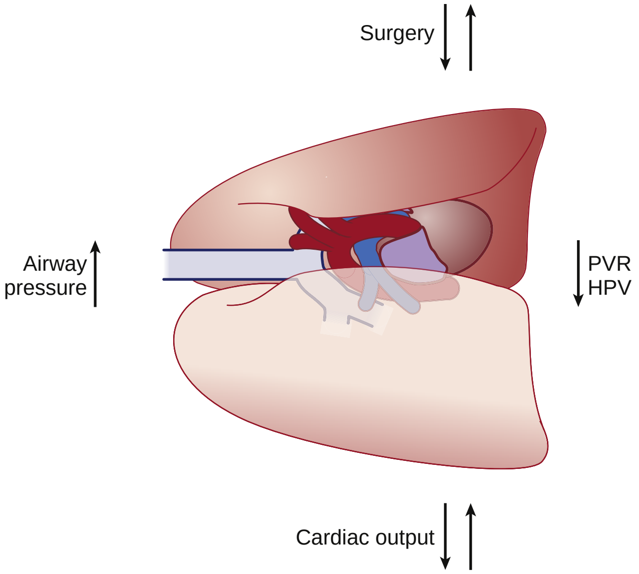


Fig. 53.30 Factors affecting the distribution of pulmonary blood flow during one-lung ventilation. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction *(HPV)*, and the collapse of the nonventilated lung, which increases pulmonary vascular resistance *(PVR)*, tend to distribute blood flow toward the ventilated lung. The airway pressure gradient between the ventilated and nonventilated thoraces tends to encourage blood flow to the nonventilated lung. Surgery and cardiac output can have variable effects, either increasing or decreasing the proportional flow to the ventilated lung.

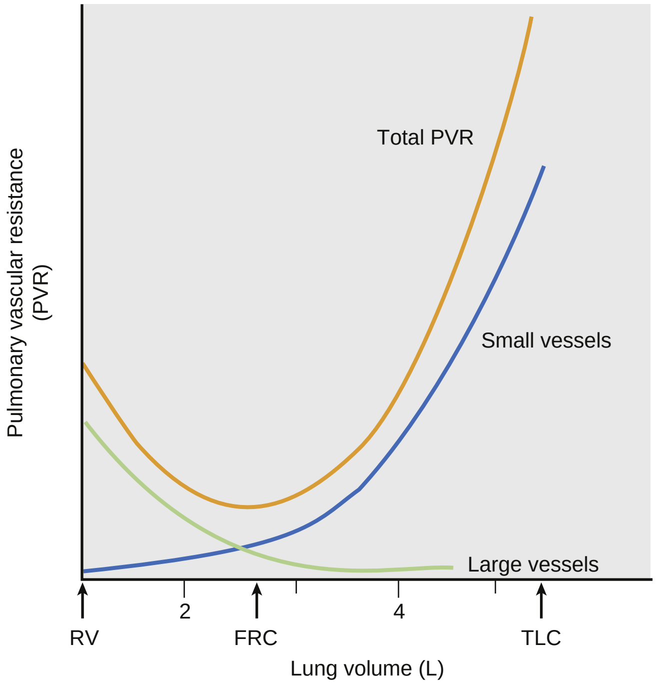


Fig. 53.31 The relationship between pulmonary vascular resistance *(PVR)* and lung volume. PVR is lowest at functional residual capacity *(FRC)* and increases as the lung volume decreases toward residual volume *(RV)*, caused primarily by an increase in the resistance of large pulmonary vessels. PVR also increases as lung volume increases above FRC toward total lung capacity *(TLC)* as a result of an increase in the resistance of small interalveolar lung vessels.

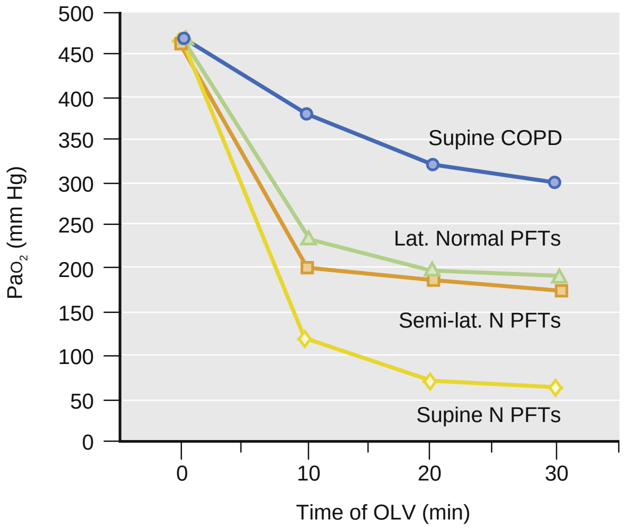


Fig. 53.32 Mean PaO$_2$ in groups of patients versus time of one-lung ventilation *(OLV)*. Supine chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) = patients with COPD having OLV in the supine position. Lat. Normal PFTs = patients with normal pulmonary function having OLV in the lateral position. Semi-lat. N PFTs = patients with normal pulmonary function having OLV in the semilateral position. Supine N PFTs = patients with normal pulmonary function having OLV in the supine position. Patients with normal pulmonary function having OLV in the supine position are the most likely to desaturate. (Based on data from Watanabe S, et al. *Anesth Anal*. 2000;90:28; and Bardoczy G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;90:35.)

and these are under the control of the anesthesiologist to a variable degree. These factors are illustrated in Fig. 53.30. The anesthesiologist's goal during OLV is to maximize PVR in the nonventilated lung while minimizing PVR in the ventilated lung. Key to understanding this physiology is the appreciation that PVR is correlated with lung volume in a hyperbolic fashion (Fig. 53.31). PVR is lowest at FRC and increases as lung volume rises or falls above or below FRC.[147] The anesthesiologist's aim, to optimize pulmonary blood flow redistribution during OLV, is to maintain the ventilated lung as close as possible to its FRC while facilitating collapse of the nonventilated lung to increase its PVR.

INTRAOPERATIVE POSITION

Most thoracic surgery is performed in the lateral position. Patients having OLV in the lateral position have significantly better PaO$_2$ levels than patients during OLV in the supine position.[148] This applies both to patients with normal lung function and to those with COPD (Fig. 53.32).[149]

Hypoxic Pulmonary Vasoconstriction

HPV is thought to be able to decrease the blood flow to the nonventilated lung by 50%.[150] The stimulus for HPV is primarily the PAO$_2$, which stimulates precapillary vasoconstriction, redistributing pulmonary blood flow away from hypoxemic lung regions via a pathway involving NO and/or cyclooxygenase (COX) synthesis inhibition.[151] The mixed venous PO$_2$ (P_vO_2) is also a stimulus although considerably weaker than PAO$_2$. HPV has a biphasic temporal response

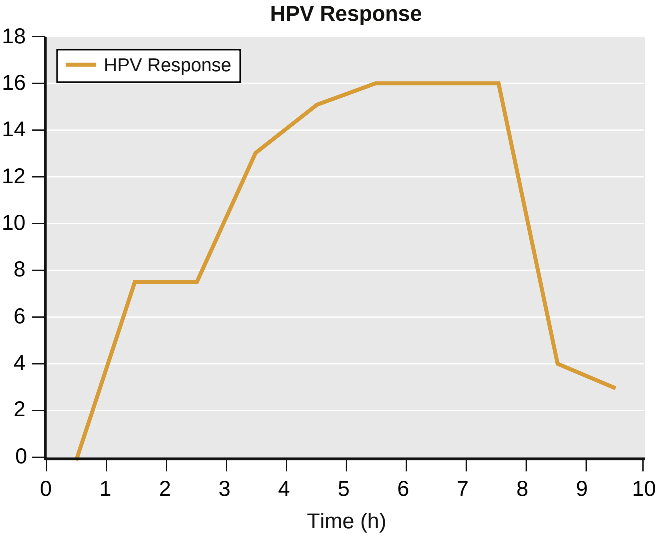


Fig. 53.33 The relationship between hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction *(HPV)* (vertical axis) and time in hours (h) (horizontal axis) in humans exposed to isocapnic hypoxia (approximate inspired PO_2 60 mm Hg) beginning at baseline with a return to normoxia at 8 hours. HPV response was measured as the increase in echocardiographic right ventricular systolic pressure. Note the two-phase, rapid and slow, onset of HPV. Also note that after prolonged HPV, the pulmonary pressures do not return to baseline for several hours. (Based on data from Talbot, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2005;98:1125.)

to alveolar hypoxia. The rapid-onset phase begins immediately and reaches a plateau by 20 to 30 minutes. The second (delayed) phase begins after 40 minutes and plateaus after 2 hours (Fig. 53.33).[152] The offset of HPV is also biphasic and PVR may not return to baseline for several hours after a prolonged period of OLV. This may contribute to increased desaturation during the collapse of the second lung during bilateral thoracic procedures. HPV is also a reflex that has a preconditioning effect and the response to a second hypoxic challenge will be greater than to the first challenge.[153]

The surgical trauma to the lung can affect pulmonary blood flow redistribution. Surgery may oppose HPV by release of vasoactive metabolites locally in the lung. Conversely, surgery can dramatically decrease blood flow to the nonventilated lung by deliberately or accidentally mechanically interfering with either the unilateral pulmonary arterial or venous blood flow.[154] Ventilation increases blood flow through a hypoxic lung more than in a normoxic lung, which is generally not of clinical relevance but does complicate studies of HPV. HPV is decreased by vasodilators such as nitroglycerin and nitroprusside. In general, vasodilators can be expected to cause a deterioration in P_aO_2 during OLV. Thoracic epidural sympathetic blockade probably has little or no direct effect on HPV, which is a localized chemical response in the lung.[155] However thoracic epidural anesthesia can have an indirect effect on oxygenation during OLV if it is allowed to cause hypotension and a fall in cardiac output (see "Cardiac Output" later).

CHOICE OF ANESTHETIC

All of the volatile anesthetics inhibit HPV in a dose-dependent fashion. Animal studies suggest that this inhibition is dependent on the agent: halothane > enflurane > isoflurane.[156] The older anesthetics were potent inhibitors of HPV and this may have contributed to the high incidence of hypoxemia reported during OLV in the 1960s and 1970s (see earlier); many of these studies used 2- to 3-minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) doses of halothane.

In doses of less than or equal to 1 MAC, the modern volatile anesthetics (isoflurane, sevoflurane,[157] and desflurane[158]) are weak, and equipotent, inhibitors of HPV. The inhibition of the HPV response by 1 MAC of a volatile anesthetic such as isoflurane is approximately 20% of the total HPV response, and this could account for only a net 4% increase in total arteriovenous shunt during OLV, which is a difference too small to be detected in most clinical studies.[159] In addition, volatile anesthetics cause less inhibition of HPV when delivered to the active site of vasoconstriction via the pulmonary arterial blood than via the alveolus. This pattern is similar to the HPV stimulus characteristics of oxygen. During established OLV, the volatile agent only reaches the hypoxic lung pulmonary capillaries via the mixed venous blood. No clinical benefit in oxygenation during OLV has been shown for total intravenous anesthesia above that seen with 1 MAC of the modern volatile anesthetics.[160]

The use of N_2O/O_2 mixtures is associated with a higher incidence of postthoracotomy radiographic atelectasis (51%) in the dependent lung than when air/oxygen mixtures are used (24%). N_2O also tends to increase pulmonary artery pressures in patients who have pulmonary hypertension and N_2O inhibits HPV. For these reasons N_2O is usually avoided during thoracic anesthesia.

Volatile anesthetic techniques seem to be associated with less release of proinflammatory cytokines and possibly fewer postoperative pulmonary complications following OLV compared to intravenous anesthetics. In a randomized study comparing sevoflurane to propofol for anesthesia in pulmonary resection, the sevoflurane group had significantly fewer postoperative pulmonary complications (14% vs. 28%) and lower 1-year mortality (2.3% vs. 12.5%).[161]

CARDIAC OUTPUT

The effects of alterations of cardiac output during OLV are complex (Fig. 53.34). Increasing cardiac output tends to cause increased pulmonary artery pressures and passive dilation of the pulmonary vascular bed, which in turn opposes HPV and has been shown to be associated with increased arteriovenous shunt (Qs/Qt) during OLV.[162] However, in patients with a relatively fixed oxygen consumption, as is seen during stable anesthesia, the effect of an increase in cardiac output is to increase the S_VO_2. Thus increasing cardiac output during OLV tends to increase both shunt and S_VO_2, which have opposing effects on P_aO_2. There is a ceiling effect to the amount that S_VO_2 can be increased. Increasing the cardiac output to supranormal levels by administering inotropes, such as dopamine, tends to have an overall negative effect on PaO_2.[163] Conversely, allowing the cardiac output to fall will lead to falls in both shunt and S_VO_2 with a net effect of decreasing PaO_2. Because even with optimal anesthetic management there is usually a shunt of 20% to 30% during OLV, it is very important to maintain cardiac output.

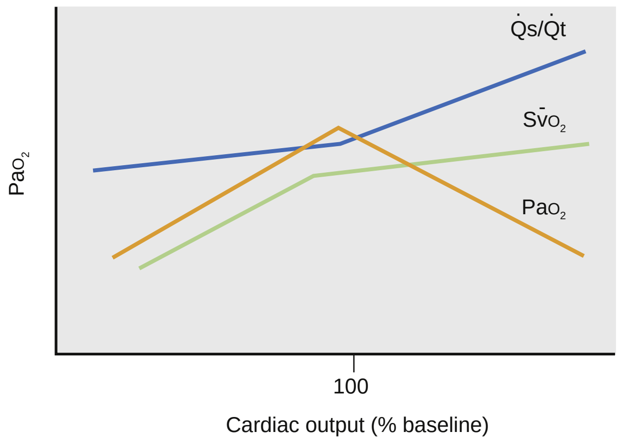


Fig. 53.34 The relationship between PaO_2 and cardiac output during OLV. As cardiac output falls below baseline, arteriovenous shunt (Qs/Qt) falls, but the mixed venous oxygen saturation (SvO_2) also decreases, resulting in a net fall in PaO_2. Conversely, raising cardiac output above baseline tends to increase SvO_2 but also increase Qs/Qt and the net result again is a decrease in PaO_2. *OLV*, One-lung ventilation. (Based on data from Slinger P, Scott W. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:940, and Russell W, James M. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 2004;32:644.)

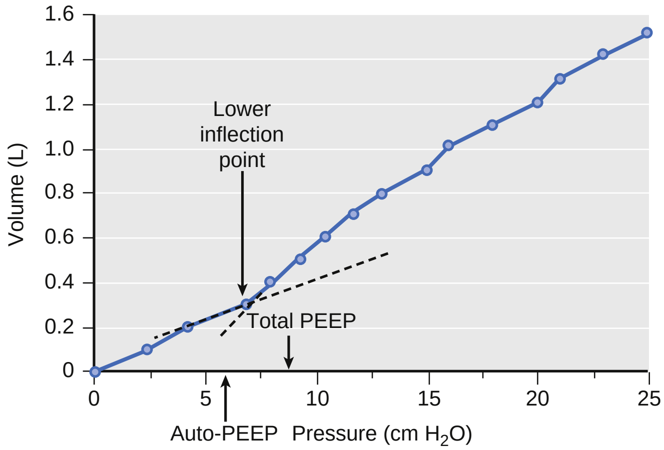


Fig. 53.35 The static compliance curve of the ventilated (dependent) lung in a typical lung cancer patient with mild COPD. The Lower Inflection Point is thought to represent functional residual capacity. This patient had 6 cm H_2O of auto-PEEP during OLV. Adding 5 cm H_2O PEEP to the ventilator resulted in a total PEEP in the circuit of 9 cm H_2O. This patient had a decrease in PaO_2 with the addition of PEEP. *auto-PEEP*, Occult positive end-expiratory pressure; *COPD*, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; *PEEP*, positive end-expiratory pressure. (Based on data from Slinger P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1096.)

Ventilation Strategies During One-Lung Ventilation

The strategy used to manage the ventilated lung during OLV plays an important part in the distribution of pulmonary blood flow between the lungs. It has been the practice of many anesthesiologists to use the same large tidal volume (e.g., 10 mL/kg ideal body weight) during OLV as during TLV. This strategy probably decreases hypoxemia by recurrently recruiting atelectatic regions in the dependent lung and may result in higher PaO_2 values during OLV than compared to smaller tidal volumes.[164] However, there is a trend to use smaller tidal volumes with PEEP during OLV for several reasons. First, the incidence of hypoxemia during OLV is much lower than 20 to 30 years ago. Second, there is a risk of causing acute injury to the ventilated lung with prolonged use of large tidal volumes. And third, a ventilation pattern that allows recurrent atelectasis and recruitment of lung parenchyma seems to be injurious.[165] The ventilation technique needs to be individualized depending on the patient's underlying lung mechanics.

RESPIRATORY ACID-BASE STATUS

The efficacy of HPV in a hypoxic lung region is increased in the presence of respiratory acidosis and is inhibited by respiratory alkalosis. However, there is no net benefit to gas exchange during OLV from hypoventilation because the respiratory acidosis preferentially increases the pulmonary vascular tone of the well-oxygenated lung and this opposes any clinically useful pulmonary blood flow redistribution.[166] Overall, the effects of hyperventilation will usually tend to decrease pulmonary vascular pressures.

POSITIVE END-EXPIRATORY PRESSURE

Resistance to blood flow through the lung is related to lung volume in a biphasic pattern and is lowest when the lung is at its FRC. Keeping the ventilated lung as close as possible to its normal FRC favorably encourages pulmonary blood flow to this lung. Several intraoperative factors known to alter FRC tend to cause the FRC of the ventilated lung to fall below its normal level; these include lateral position, paralysis, and opening the nondependent hemithorax, which allows the weight of the mediastinum to compress the dependent lung. Attempts to measure FRC in human patients during OLV have been complicated by the presence of a persistent end-expiratory airflow in COPD patients.[167] Many patients do not actually reach their end-expiratory equilibrium FRC lung volume as they try to exhale a relatively large tidal volume through one lumen of a DLT. These patients develop dynamic hyperinflation and an occult positive end-expiratory pressure (auto-PEEP).[61]

Auto-PEEP occurs in patients with decreased lung elastic recoil, such as the elderly or those with emphysema.[168] Auto-PEEP increases as the inspiratory/expiratory (I:E) ratio increases (i.e., as the time of expiration decreases). This auto-PEEP, which averages 4 to 6 cm H_2O in most series of lung cancer patients with COPD, opposes the previously mentioned factors, which tend to diminish dependent-lung FRC during OLV. The effects of applying external PEEP through the ventilator circuit to the lung in the presence of auto-PEEP are complex (Fig. 53.35). Patients with low auto-PEEP (<2 cm H_2O) will experience a greater increase in total PEEP from a moderate (5 cm H_2O) external PEEP than those with a high level of auto PEEP (>10 cm H_2O). Whether the application of PEEP during OLV will improve a patient's gas exchange depends on the individual's lung mechanics. If the application of PEEP tends to shift the expiratory equilibration position on the compliance curve toward the lower inflection point (LIP) of the curve (i.e., toward the FRC) then external PEEP is of benefit (Fig. 53.36). However, if the application of PEEP raises the equilibration point such that it is further from the LIP, then gas exchange deteriorates.

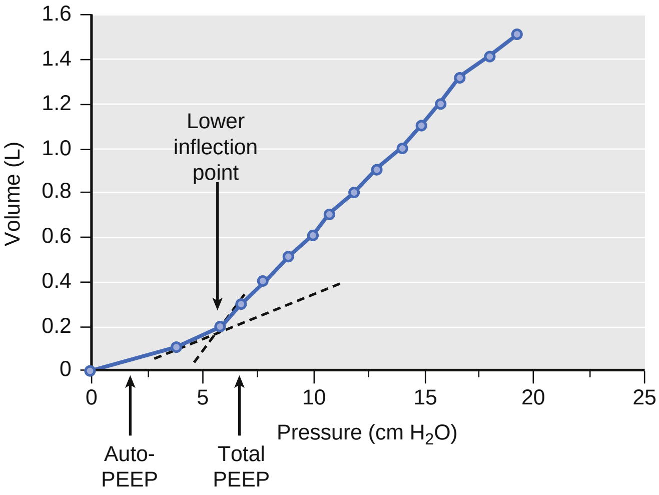


Fig. 53.36 Static compliance curve of a young patient with normal pulmonary function during OLV (in this case for removal of a mediastinal tumor). The Lower Inflection Point of the curve (functional residual capacity) was at 6 cm H_2O. The patient had 2 cm H_2O auto-PEEP during OLV. Adding 5 cm H_2O PEEP to the ventilator raised the total PEEP to 7 cm H_2O and improved PaO_2. Patients with normal lung mechanics and patients with increased lung elastic recoil (such as caused by restrictive lung diseases) have an increase in PaO_2 from PEEP during OLV. *auto-PEEP*, occult positive end-expiratory pressure; *OLV*, One-lung ventilation; *PEEP*, positive end-expiratory pressure. (Based on data from Slinger P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1096.)

Auto-PEEP is difficult to detect and measure using currently available anesthetic ventilators. To detect auto-PEEP the respiratory circuit must be held closed at the end of a normal expiration until an equilibrium appears in the airway pressure.[169] Most current intensive care ventilators can be used to measure auto-PEEP.

TIDAL VOLUME

There will be an optimal combination of tidal volume, respiratory rate, I:E ratio, and pressure- or volume-control ventilation for each individual patient during OLV. However, to try to assess each of these parameters while still providing anesthesia with the available anesthetic ventilators is not practical, and the clinician must initially rely on a simplified strategy (Table 53.9). The results of alterations in tidal volume are unpredictable. This may be caused partly by the interaction of tidal volume with auto-PEEP. The use of 5 to 6 mL/kg ideal body weight tidal volumes plus 5 cm H_2O PEEP initially for most patients (except those with COPD) seems a logical starting point during OLV.[170] Tidal volume should be managed so that peak airway pressures do not exceed 35 cm H_2O. This will correspond to a plateau airway pressure of approximately 25 cm H_2O.[171] Peak airway pressures exceeding 40 cm H_2O may contribute to hyperinflation injury of the ventilated lung during OLV.[172]

Turning the patient to the lateral position will increase respiratory dead space and the arterial to end-tidal CO_2 tension gradient ($P_{a\text{-}ET}CO_2$). This will usually require a 20% increase in minute ventilation to maintain the same P_aCO_2. Individual variations in $P_{a\text{-}ET}CO_2$ gradient become much larger, and $P_{ET}CO_2$ is less reliable as a monitor of P_aCO_2 during OLV. This effect is possibly because there are individual differences in the excretion of CO_2 between the dependent and nondependent lungs.

TABLE 53.9 Suggested Ventilation Parameters for One-Lung Ventilation

Parameter	Suggested	Guidelines/Exceptions
1. Tidal volume	5–6 mL/kg ideal body weight	Maintain: Peak airway pressure <35 cm H_2O Plateau airway pressure <25 cm H_2O
2. Positive end-expiratory pressure	5–10 cm H_2O	Patients with COPD, no added PEEP
3. Respiratory rate	12 breaths/min	Maintain normal $PaCO_2$, Pa-et CO_2 will usually increase 1–3 mm Hg during OLV
4. Mode	Pressure-controlled or volume-controlled	Pressure-control for patients at risk of lung injury (e.g., bullae, pneumonectomy, postlung transplantation)

COPD, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; *OLV*, one-lung ventilation; *PEEP*, positive end-expiratory pressure.

VOLUME-CONTROL VERSUS PRESSURE-CONTROL VENTILATION

Pressure-control ventilation has not been shown to improve oxygenation versus volume-control ventilation for most patients, although the peak airway pressures are lower.[173] The decrease in peak pressure with pressure-control ventilation may be largely in the anesthetic circuit and not at the distal airway.[174] Pressure-control ventilation will avoid sudden increases in peak airway pressures that may result from surgical manipulation in the chest. This will be of benefit when a bronchial blocker is used and in patients at increased risk for lung injury from high pressures such as after lung transplantation or during a pneumonectomy.[175] Because of the rapid changes of lung compliance that occur during pulmonary surgery, when pressure-control ventilation is used the delivered tidal volume needs to be closely monitored as this may change suddenly.

Prediction of Hypoxemia During One-Lung Ventilation

The problem of hypoxemia during OLV has prompted much research in thoracic anesthesia. Hypoxemia during OLV is predictable (see Box 53.7), preventable, and treatable in the vast majority of cases.[176]

PREOPERATIVE VENTILATION-PERFUSION SCAN

The shunt and P_aO_2 during intraoperative OLV are highly correlated with the fractional perfusion of the ventilated lung as determined by a preoperative ventilation/perfusion scan.[177] Patients with long-standing unilateral disease on the operative side develop a unilateral decrease of ventilation and perfusion and tolerate OLV very well. Similarly, patients who intraoperatively have a higher proportion of gas exchange in the dependent lung during OLV tend to have better oxygenation during OLV.

SIDE OF OPERATION

Patients having right-sided thoracotomies tend to have a larger shunt and lower P_aO_2 during OLV because the right lung is larger and normally 10% better perused than the left. The overall mean P_aO_2 difference between left and right thoracotomies during stable OLV is approximately 100 mm Hg.[178]

TWO-LUNG OXYGENATION

Patients who have better P_aO_2 levels during TLV in the lateral position tend to have better oxygenation during OLV. These patients may have better abilities to match ventilation and perfusion (individual variability of HPV response) and/or they may have less atelectasis in the dependent lung. This is a particularly relevant consideration in trauma patients who may require a thoracotomy but have a contusion of the dependent lung.

PREOPERATIVE SPIROMETRY

Studies consistently show that when the aforementioned factors are controlled, patients with better spirometric lung function preoperatively are more likely to desaturate and have lower P_aO_2 values during OLV. Clinically this is evident because emphysematous lung-volume reduction patients generally tolerate OLV very well. The explanation is not clear but may be related to maintenance of a more favorable FRC in patients with obstructive airways' disease during OLV with an open hemithorax due to the development of auto-PEEP.[64]

Treatment of Hypoxemia During One-Lung Ventilation

During OLV there will be a fall in arterial oxygenation that usually reaches its nadir 20 to 30 minutes after the initiation of OLV then the saturation will stabilize or may rise slightly as HPV increases over the next 2 hours. The majority of patients who desaturate do so quickly and within the first 10 minutes of OLV. Hypoxemia during OLV responds readily to treatment in the vast majority of cases. Potential therapies are outlined in Box 53.12.

BOX 53.12 **Therapies for Desaturation during One-Lung Ventilation**

- **Severe or precipitous desaturation:** resume two-lung ventilation (if possible)
- **Gradual desaturation:**
  - Ensure that delivered FiO_2 is 1.0
  - Check position of double-lumen tube or blocker with fiberoptic bronchoscopy
  - Ensure that cardiac output is optimal, decrease volatile anesthetics to <1 MAC
  - Apply a recruitment maneuver to the ventilated lung (this will transiently make the hypoxemia worse)
  - Increase PEEP to the ventilated lung (except in patients with emphysematous pathology)
  - Apneic oxygen insufflation of the nonventilated lung
  - Apply CPAP 1–2 cm H_2O to the nonventilated lung (apply a recruitment maneuver to this lung immediately before CPAP)
  - Partial ventilation techniques of the nonventilated lung
    - Intermittent positive pressure ventilation
    - Fiberoptic lobar insufflation
    - Selective lobar collapse (using a bronchial blocker)
    - Small tidal volume ventilation
  - Pharmacologic manipulations (see text)
  - Mechanical restriction of the blood flow to the nonventilated lung (if possible)
  - Venovenous ECMO

CPAP, Continuous positive airway pressure; *ECMO*, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation; *MAC*, minimum alveolar concentration; *PEEP*, positive end-expiratory

1. Resume two-lung ventilation. Reinflate the nonventilated lung and deflate the bronchial cuff of the DLT or the bronchial blocker. This will necessitate interruption of surgery but is necessary in case of severe or precipitate desaturation. After an adequate level of oxygenation is obtained, the diagnosis of the cause of desaturation can be made and prophylactic measures instituted (see later) before another trial of OLV is attempted.
2. Increase FiO_2. Ensure that the delivered FiO_2 is 1.0. This is an option in essentially all patients except those who have received bleomycin or similar therapies that potentiate pulmonary oxygen toxicity.
3. Recheck the position of the DLT or bronchial blocker. Ensure that there is no lobar obstruction in the ventilated lung.
4. Check the patient's hemodynamics to ensure that there has been no decrease in cardiac output. It is very common for the surgeon to accidentally compress the inferior vena cava during pulmonary resections and the fall in blood pressure and cardiac output that this causes leads to rapid desaturation during OLV. Treat the fall in cardiac output as indicated (e.g., inotropes/vasopressors if due to thoracic epidural sympathetic blockade). Stop administration of vasodilators, decrease MAC of volatile anesthetics to less than or equal to 1 MAC.
5. Perform a recruitment maneuver of the ventilated lung. To eliminate any atelectasis inflate the lung to 20 cm H_2O or more for 15 to 20 seconds. This may cause transient hypotension and will also cause a transient further fall in the PaO_2 as the blood flow is temporarily redistributed to the nonventilated lung.
6. Apply PEEP to the ventilated lung. It is necessary to perform a recruitment maneuver before applying PEEP to get the maximal benefit. PEEP will raise the end-expiratory volume of the ventilated lung toward the FRC in patients with normal lung mechanics and in those with increased elastic recoil caused by restrictive disease. It is not possible to predict the optimal PEEP for individual patients. It is useful to titrate PEEP between 5 to 10 cm H_2O to maximize compliance while maintaining a driving pressure (plateau pressure-PEEP) of 15 cm H_2O or less.[179] PEEP will increase the end-expiratory lung volume of patients with significant levels of auto-PEEP (e.g., emphysema patients). Unlike CPAP, application of PEEP does not require reinflation of the nonventilated lung and interruption of surgery. PEEP has been shown to be as effective for increasing PaO_2 levels during OLV in patients with normal lung function as CPAP

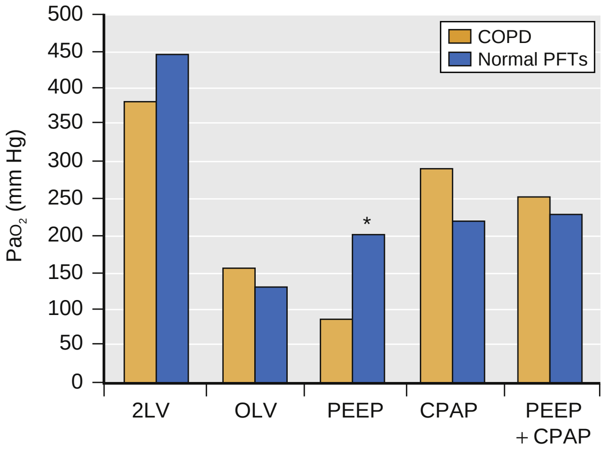


Fig. 53.37 A comparison of the effects of positive end-expiratory pressure *(PEEP)* to the ventilated lung and continuous positive airway pressure *(CPAP)* to the nonventilated lung on mean PaO_2 levels during one-lung ventilation *(OLV)*. *2LV*, Two-lung ventilation; *COPD*, a group of lung cancer surgery patients; *Normal PFTs*, a group of esophageal surgery patients with normal preoperative pulmonary function tests. *Significance of $P < .05$ versus OLV. (Based on data from Fujiwara M, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13:473; and Capan L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:847.)

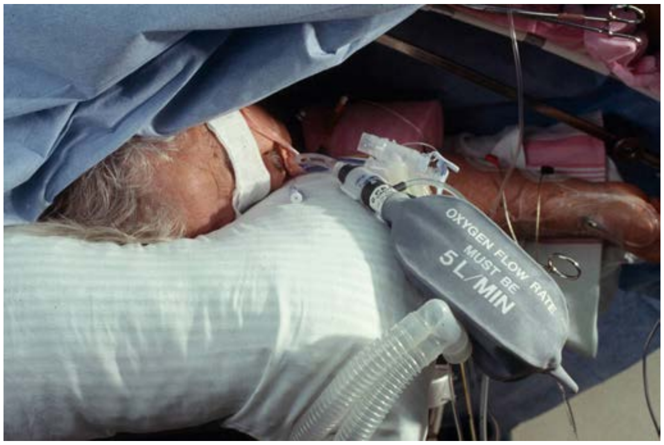


Fig. 53.38 Photograph of a commercial (Mallinckrodt, St. Louis, MO) disposable CPAP circuit applied to the nonventilated lung during a left thoracotomy (in this case applied to the tracheal lumen of a right-sided DLT). This circuit has an adjustable exhaust valve that allows titration of CPAP between 1 and 10 cm H_2O. *CPAP*, Continuous positive airway pressure; *DLT*, double-lumen endobronchial tube.

(Fig. 53.37).[180] For patients with normal pulmonary function it is logical to routinely apply a recruitment maneuver and PEEP from the start of OLV.

7. Apneic oxygen insufflation to the nondependent lung. Application of 3 liters of O_2, via a suction catheter to the nonventilated lumen of the DLT, improved PaO_2 during OLV without interference to the surgical field.[181]
8. CPAP with oxygen to the nonventilated lung is a reliable method to improve PaO_2 during OLV.[182] CPAP should be applied to an inflated (recruited) lung to be completely effective. The opening pressure of atelectatic lung regions is greater than 20 cm H_2O[183] and these units will not be recruited by simple application of CPAP levels of 5 to 10 cm H_2O.[184] When CPAP is applied to an inflated lung, levels of CPAP as low as 1 to 2 cm H_2O can be used.[185] Since the normal transpulmonary pressure of the lung at FRC is approximately 5 cm H_2O, levels of 5 to 10 cm H_2O CPAP applied to a fully recruited lung result in a large-volume lung that impedes surgery particularly during minimally invasive procedures. Lower FiO_2 levels of CPAP are of clinical benefit and can be titrated to the ventilated lung in patients at risk of oxygen toxicity using an air/oxygen blender.

   Numerous anesthetic systems to apply CPAP to the nonventilated lung have been described. Essentially all that is required is a CPAP (or PEEP) valve and an oxygen source. Ideally the circuit should permit variation of the CPAP level and include a reservoir bag to allow easy reinflation of the nonventilated lung and a manometer to measure the actual CPAP supplied. Such circuits are commercially available (Fig. 53.38) or can be readily constructed from standard anesthetic equipment.

   CPAP, even when properly administered, is not completely reliable to improve oxygenation during OLV. When the bronchus of the operative lung is obstructed, or open to atmosphere (as in a bronchopleural fistula or during endobronchial surgery), CPAP will not improve oxygenation. Also in certain situations, particularly during thoracoscopic surgery where access to the operative hemithorax is limited, CPAP can significantly interfere with surgery.[186]
9. Use of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO). There have been multiple case reports of ECMO being used to manage thoracic surgery where oxygenation cannot be maintained with conventional techniques. The safety of venovenous ECMO makes it an option in some cases of complex lung surgery.[187]

PHARMACOLOGIC MANIPULATIONS

Eliminating known potent vasodilators such as nitroglycerin, halothane, and large doses of other volatile anesthetics will improve oxygenation during OLV.[188] The combination of NO and other pulmonary vasoconstrictors such as phenylephrine has been shown to improve oxygenation in ventilated intensive care unit patients with adult respiratory distress syndrome[189] and this may have applications in OLV. Systemic administration of a vasoconstrictor, to enhance pulmonary vasoconstriction, with simultaneous administration of an inhaled pulmonary vasodilator to the ventilated lung may improve hypoxemia in some cases of desaturation during OLV. This has been reported with the combination of intravenous phenylephrine and inhaled epoprostenol (Flolan).[190] A caveat is that the glycine diluent for nebulized epoprostenol tends to build up in the heat-moisture exchange (HME) filter of an anesthetic circuit causing increased airflow resistance. The HME filter should be changed every hour when nebulized epoprostenol is used.

Another drug that has been used is dexmedetomidine, a selective α-2 adrenoreceptor agonist. One study has shown that a continuous infusion of dexmedetomidine during OLV with sevoflurane anesthesia improved oxygenation and increased the PaO_2/FiO_2 ratio during the intraoperative period.[191] A subsequent meta-analysis reported that the use of dexmedetomidine improved the oxygenation index (assessment of intrapulmonary shunt and mean airway pressure) by improving oxygenation and decreasing intrapulmonary shunt fraction during OLV in patients receiving

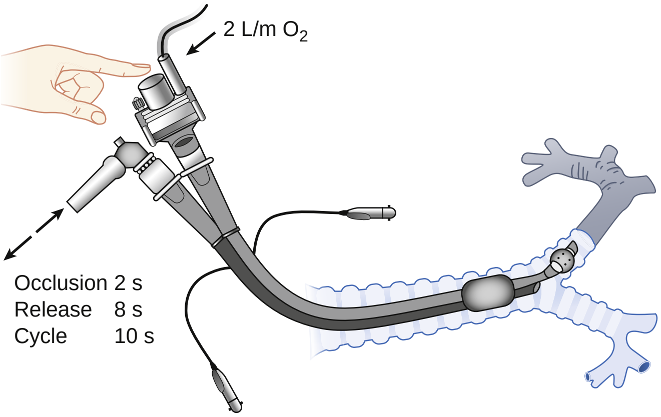


Fig. 53.39 A simple device to provide intermittent positive airway pressure to the nonventilated lung. A standard bacteriostatic filter is attached the lumen of the double-lumen tube to the nonventilated lung and an oxygen source is connected to the CO_2 sampling port of the filter. Intermittent manual occlusion of the open filter end improves oxygenation with minimal impact on surgical exposure (see text for details). (Reproduced with permission from Slinger P. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.)

intravenous and or inhalational agents.[192] One potential explanation for the effects of dexmedetomidine is that it reduces the required doses of inhalational anesthetics, thus reducing their potential negative effects on HPV.

INTERMITTENT REINFLATION OF THE NONVENTILATED LUNG

HPV becomes more effective during repeated hypoxic exposure. Often after reinflation, the oxygen saturation will be more acceptable during a second period of lung collapse. Reexpansion can be performed by regular reinflation of the operative lung via an attached CPAP circuit.

PARTIAL VENTILATION METHODS

Several alternative methods of OLV, all involving partial ventilation of the nonventilated lung, have been described and improve oxygenation during OLV. These techniques are useful in patients who are particularly at risk of desaturation such as those who have had previous pulmonary resections of the contralateral lung. These alternatives include:

1. Intermittent positive airway pressure to the nonventilated lung. This can be performed by a variety of methods. Russell described attaching a standard bacteriostatic filter to the nonventilated lumen of the DLT with a 2-L oxygen inflow attached to the CO_2 port of the filter (Fig. 53.39).[193] Manual occlusion of the filter for 2 seconds gives an insufflation of approximately 66 mL of oxygen to the nonventilated lung. This could be repeated at 10 second intervals with minimal interference with surgical exposure.
2. Selective insufflation of oxygen to recruit lung segments on the side of surgery but remote from the site of surgery (Fig. 53.40).[194] A useful technique in minimally invasive surgery is intermittent insufflation of oxygen using a fiberoptic bronchoscope. A 5-L oxygen flow is attached to the suction port of a fiberoptic bronchoscope that is passed under direct vision into a segment of the lung remote from the site of surgery, which is then reinflated by triggering the suction on the fiberoptic bronchoscope. The surgeon aids this technique by observing the lung inflation with the videoscope to avoid overdistention of the recruited segment(s).
3. Selective lobar collapse of only the operative lobe in the open hemithorax.[195] This is accomplished by placement of a blocker in the appropriate lobar bronchus of the ipsilateral operative lung while continuing to ventilate the other lobe(s) of the lung.
4. Ventilation of the operative (nondependent lung) with a small tidal volume via another ventilator connected to a limb of a DLT to the nondependent lung. A brief period of intermittent positive pressure ventilation to the nondependent lung with a small tidal volume (e.g., 70 mL) and respiratory rate of 6/min was effective in improving PaO_2 and SpO_2 during OLV without interference with the surgery.[196]

MECHANICAL RESTRICTION OF PULMONARY BLOOD FLOW

It is possible for the surgeon to directly compress or clamp the blood flow to the nonventilated lung.[197] This can be done temporarily in emergency desaturation situations or definitively in cases of pneumonectomy or lung transplantation. Another technique of mechanical limitation of blood flow to the nonventilated lung is the inflation of a pulmonary artery catheter balloon in the main pulmonary artery of the operative lung. The pulmonary artery catheter can be positioned at induction with fluoroscopic guidance and inflated as needed intraoperatively. This has been shown to be a useful technique for resection of large pulmonary arteriovenous fistulae.[198]

HYPOXEMIA PROPHYLAXIS

The majority of the treatments outlined as therapies for hypoxemia can be used prophylactically to prevent hypoxemia in patients who are at high risk of desaturation during OLV. The advantage of prophylactic therapy of hypoxemia, in addition to the obvious patient safety benefit, is that maneuvers involving CPAP or alternative ventilation patterns of the operative lung can be instituted at the onset of OLV in a controlled fashion and will not require interruption of surgery and emergent reinflation of the nonventilated lung at a time that may be extremely disadvantageous.

BILATERAL PULMONARY SURGERY

Because of mechanical trauma to the operative lung, the gas exchange in this lung will always be temporarily impaired after OLV. Also HPV offset may be delayed after reinflation of the first lung collapsed. Desaturation during bilateral lung procedures is particularly a problem during the second period of OLV (i.e., during OLV of the lung that has already had surgery).[199] Thus for bilateral procedures it is advisable to operate first on the lung that has better gas exchange and less propensity to desaturate during OLV. For the majority of patients, this means operating on the right side first.

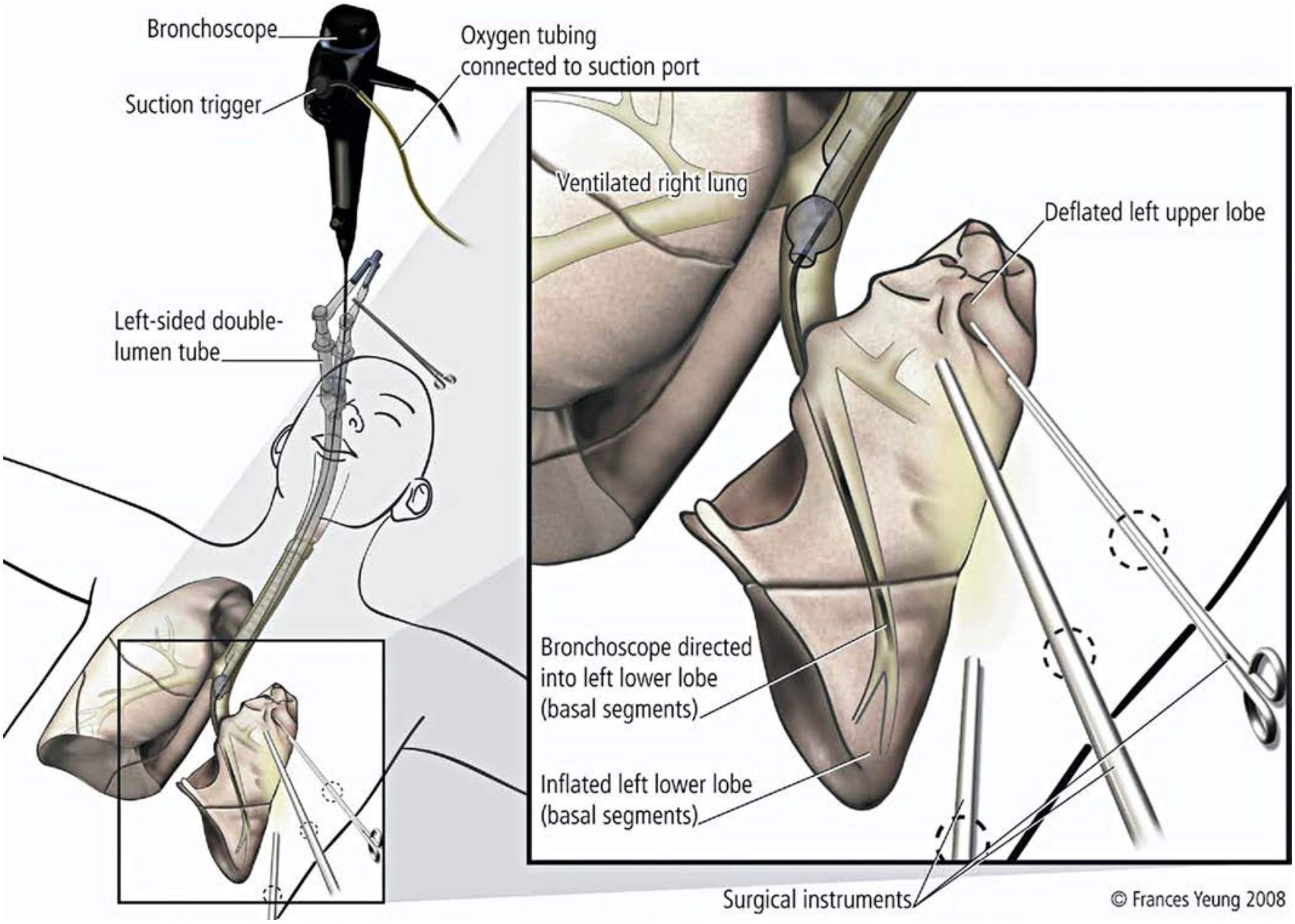

Bronchoscope
Suction trigger
Oxygen tubing connected to suction port
Left-sided double-lumen tube
Ventilated right lung
Deflated left upper lobe
Bronchoscope directed into left lower lobe (basal segments)
Inflated left lower lobe (basal segments)
Surgical instruments
© Frances Yeung 2008

Fig. 53.40 Intermittent oxygen insufflation during thoracoscopic surgery to segments of the nonventilated lung on the side of surgery using a fiberoptic bronchoscope (see text for details). (Reproduced with permission from Slinger P. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.)

Anesthetic Management for Common Surgical Procedures

FLEXIBLE FIBEROPTIC BRONCHOSCOPY

Flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopy is a diagnostic and therapeutic procedure of great value in the clinical practice of thoracic surgery and anesthesia. In many centers, it is common practice to perform flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopy prior to lung resections, to reconfirm the diagnosis (if a tumor compresses the airway), or to determine the invasion and obstruction of the distal airway (in relation to the extension of the bronchial resection).

Anesthetic Management

There are multiple techniques for flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopy. Options include awake versus general anesthesia and oral versus nasal approaches. Options for local anesthesia include: topical anesthesia via a nebulizer, handheld aerosol, or soaked pledgets; nerve blocks (laryngeal and/or glossopharyngeal nerves); direct administration of local anesthetic through the bronchoscope (spray-as-you-go technique),[200] with/without sedation/opioid; or antisialagogues. Options during general anesthesia include spontaneous versus positive-pressure ventilation with/without muscle relaxation. Airway management during general anesthesia can be with an ETT or a laryngeal mask airway (LMA). A Portex swivel connector with a self-sealing valve is used to facilitate the ventilation and manipulation of the bronchoscope; at the same time inhalation and/or intravenous agents can be used for anesthesia. Patients who have copious secretions in the preoperative period should receive anticholinergic medication to ensure a dry field, which provides optimal visualization with the flexible bronchoscope.

The advantages of an LMA technique include visualization of the vocal cords and subglottic structures as well as a lower airway resistance versus the ETT when the bronchoscope is inserted (Fig. 53.41). This is particularly useful in the patient with a difficult airway, when maintaining spontaneous respiration may be the safest method of anesthetic management.[201] Self-expanding flexometallic tracheal and bronchial stents can be placed with fiberoptic or rigid bronchoscopy (Fig. 53.42). However, Silastic airway stents require rigid bronchoscopy for placement.

RIGID BRONCHOSCOPY

Rigid bronchoscopy has traditionally been considered the technique of choice for the preoperative diagnostic assessment of an airway obstruction involving the trachea, and in the therapy of massive hemoptysis and foreign bodies in the airway. The role of interventional bronchoscopy with laser, bronchial dilation, or stent insertion is well established for the treatment of malignant and benign central airway and endobronchial lesions (Fig. 53.43).[202] Rigid bronchoscopy is the procedure of choice for operative procedures such as dilation of tracheal stenosis.

Anesthetic Management

Patients undergoing rigid bronchoscopy should have a complete preoperative evaluation including radiological studies. Chest radiographs and chest CT scans should be reviewed in the preoperative evaluation. If time permits, it is recommended that patients with severe stridor receive pharmacologic interventions for temporary stabilization of the condition. Treatments may include inspired cool saline mist, nebulized racemic epinephrine, and the use of systemic steroids.[203]

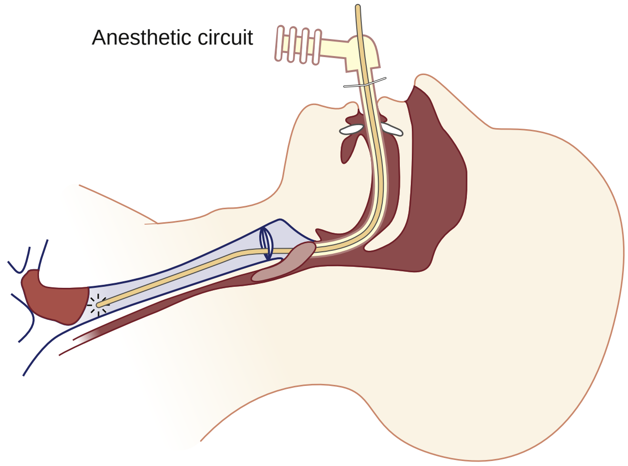


Fig. 53.41 Diagram of fiberoptic bronchoscopy performed via a laryngeal mask airway (LMA) during general anesthesia in a spontaneously breathing patient with a carinal tumor, in this case for diagnosis and Nd:YAG laser tumor excision. The LMA permits visualization of the vocal cords and subglottic structures with the bronchoscope, which is not possible when fiberoptic bronchoscopy is performed via an endotracheal tube.

There are four basic methods of ventilation management for rigid bronchoscopy:

1. Spontaneous ventilation. The addition of topical anesthesia or nerve blocks to the airway decreases the tendency to breath-hold and cough when volatile anesthetics are used.
2. Apneic oxygenation (with/without insufflation of oxygen). This requires thorough preoxygenation, and the anesthesiologist will have to interrupt surgery to ventilate the patient before desaturation occurs. This should allow the surgeon working intervals of 3 minutes. or longer depending on the underlying condition of the patient.
3. Positive-pressure ventilation via a ventilating bronchoscope (Fig. 53.44). This allows the use of a standard anesthetic circuit but may cause significant air leaks if there is a discrepancy between the size of a smaller bronchoscope and a larger airway.
4. Jet ventilation. This can be performed with a handheld injector such as the Sanders injector[204] or with a high-frequency ventilator. These techniques are most useful with intravenous anesthesia since they entrain gas from either the room air or an attached anesthetic circuit, and the dose of any volatile agent delivered will be very uncertain.

The use of anticholinergic agents (e.g., 0.2 mg intravenous glycopyrrolate) before manipulation of the airway will decrease secretions during the bronchoscopic examination. For a patient undergoing rigid bronchoscopy, the surgeon must be at the bedside for the induction of anesthesia and be prepared to establish airway control with the rigid bronchoscope. In children, anesthesia for rigid bronchoscopy is most commonly performed with spontaneous ventilation. In adults, intravenous anesthesia and the use of muscle relaxants is more common.

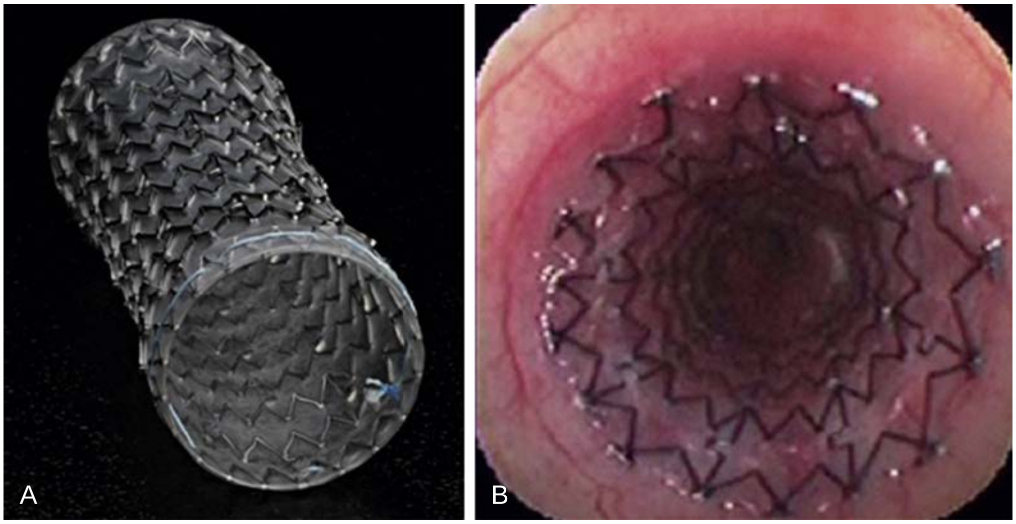


Fig. 53.42 (A) A self-expanding flexometallic airway stent. (B) Fiberoptic bronchoscopic view of the proximal end of a flexometallic tracheal stent.

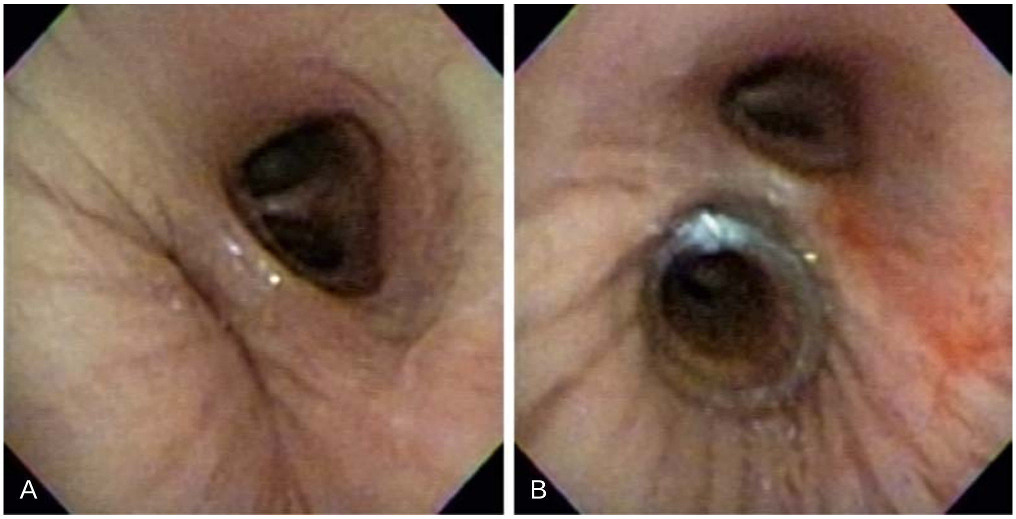


Fig. 53.43 (A) Photograph of a patient with a collapse of the left lower lobe bronchus post–lung transplantation. (B) A silastic stent has been placed in the left lower lobe bronchus with rigid bronchoscopy.

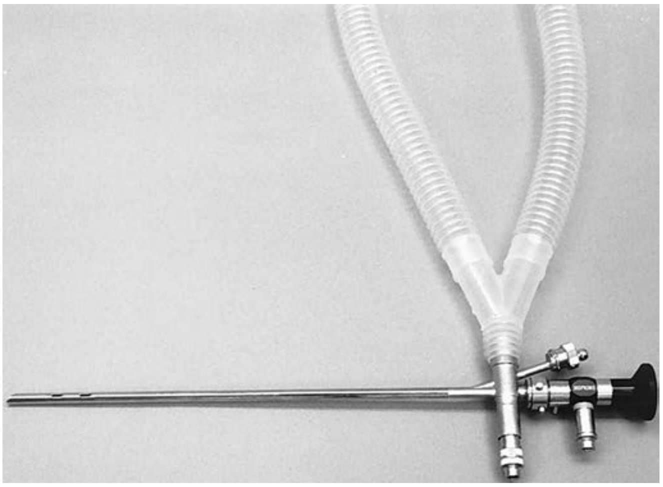


Fig. 53.44 Photograph of a ventilating rigid bronchoscope with an anesthetic circuit attached to the side arm. In this photograph there is a telescopic lens sealing the proximal end of the bronchoscope. (From Kaplan J, Slinger P, eds. *Thoracic Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2003.)

In cases for which the use of muscle relaxants is not contraindicated, a short-acting agent (succinylcholine) can be used initially to facilitate intubation with either a small SLT or the rigid bronchoscope. Nondepolarizing relaxants may be needed for prolonged procedures such as stent placement or tumor resection. Mouth guards should be used to protect the upper and lower teeth and gums from the pressure of the bronchoscope. Remifentanil and propofol infusions can be administered if an intravenous regimen is the planned anesthetic.[205] This is a useful technique if the surgeon needs repeated access (for suction or instrumentation) to the open airway since it maintains the level of anesthesia and avoids contaminating the operating room with exhaled anesthetic vapors.

For cases in which a neodymium-doped yttrium-aluminum-garnet (Nd:YAG) laser is used, the FiO_2 should be maintained in the lowest acceptable range (i.e., $<30\%$ if possible) according to patient oxygen saturation, to avoid the potential for fire in the airway. Since any common material (including porcelain and metal) can be perforated by the Nd:YAG laser it is best to avoid any potentially combustible substance in the airway when the Nd:YAG laser is used.[206] Because of its high energy and short wavelength, the Nd:YAG laser has several advantages for distal airway surgery over the CO_2-laser, which is used in upper airway surgery. The Nd:YAG laser penetrates tissue more deeply so it causes more coagulation in vascular tumors and it can be refracted and passed in fibers through a flexible or rigid bronchoscope. However, there is a higher potential for accidental reflected laser strikes and there is more delayed airway edema.

Rigid bronchoscopes have different sizes, commonly from 3.5- to 9-mm diameters, with a ventilating side port to facilitate ventilation when the bronchoscope is placed into the airway. If excessive leak of tidal volume occurs around the bronchoscope with positive-pressure ventilation, it may be necessary to place throat packs to facilitate ventilation. Continuous communication with the surgeon or pulmonologist is necessary in case desaturation occurs. If desaturation does occur it must be corrected by stopping surgery and allowing the anesthesiologist to ventilate and oxygenate the patient, either via the rigid bronchoscope or by removing the bronchoscope and ventilating with a mask, LMA, or ETT.

Pulse oximetry is vital during rigid bronchoscopy because there is a high risk of desaturation. There is no simple way to monitor end-tidal CO_2 or volatile anesthetics since the airway remains essentially open to atmosphere. For prolonged procedures, it is useful to perform repeated arterial blood gas analysis to confirm the adequacy of ventilation. An alternative is to interrupt surgery and ventilate the patient with a standard circuit and a mask or ETT to assess the end-tidal CO_2.

Unlike during fiberoptic bronchoscopy via an ETT, with rigid bronchoscopy the airway is never completely secure and there is always the potential for aspiration in patients at increased risk, such as those with a full stomach, hiatus hernia, morbid obesity, and so on. It is always best to defer rigid bronchoscopy to decrease the aspiration risk if possible in these patients. When there is no benefit to be gained by deferring and/or the airway risk is acute (e.g., aspiration of an obstructing foreign body), there is no simple solution and each case will need to be managed on an individual basis depending on the context and considering the competing risks.

Other uses of the rigid bronchoscope that require anesthesia include: dilation for benign airway stenosis, coring-out of malignant lesions in the trachea, laser ablation of endobronchial and carinal tumors, and therapeutic bronchoscopic interventions before surgical resection of lung cancer. Additionally, interventional bronchoscopy is often used for the management of airway complications following lung transplantation.

Complications of rigid bronchoscopy include: airway perforation, mucosal damage, hemorrhage, postmanipulation airway edema, and potential airway loss at the end of the procedure. In some situations, it may be necessary to keep the patient intubated with a small (i.e., 6.0-mm ID) SLT after a rigid bronchoscopy if an edematous airway is suspected or if the patient is not able to be extubated. These patients may require the use of steroids, nebulized racemic epinephrine, or helium-oxygen mixtures to treat stridor in the postoperative period.

MEDIASTINOSCOPY

Mediastinoscopy is the traditional method for the evaluation of mediastinal lymph nodes in the staging of NSCLC. It has largely been replaced for most patients by a combination of positron-emission tomography scans and endobronchial ultrasound-guided biopsies. In addition, mediastinoscopy is used to aid in the diagnosis of anterior/superior mediastinal masses.[207] The most common mediastinal diagnostic procedure is a cervical mediastinoscopy, in which a small transverse incision (2-3 cm) is made in the midline of the lower neck in the suprasternal notch. The pretracheal fascial plane is dissected bluntly and the mediastinoscope inserted toward the carina. An alternative procedure is a parasternal (or anterior) mediastinoscopy with a small incision made through the interchondral space or the space of the excised second costal cartilage.

Morbidity related to mediastinoscopy ranges from 2% to 8%. The most severe complication of mediastinoscopy is major hemorrhage, which may require emergent thoracotomy. Other potential complications include airway obstruction, compression of the innominate artery, pneumothorax, paresis of the recurrent laryngeal, phrenic nerve injury, esophageal injury, chylothorax, and air embolism.[208]

Anesthetic Management

For patients undergoing cervical mediastinoscopy, it is important to review the chest radiograph and CT scan for the presence of a mass that might obstruct the airway during the preoperative evaluation. It is possible to perform mediastinoscopy (particularly anterior mediastinoscopy) with local anesthesia. This may be an option with an anterior mediastinal mass in a cooperative adult with a compromised airway. However, patient coughing or movement could result in surgical complications. The majority of these patients require general anesthesia with placement of an SLT. An arterial line is not necessarily used in these cases. However, it is mandatory to monitor the pulse in the right arm (pulse oximeter on the right hand, arterial line, or anesthesiologist's finger) because compression of the innominate artery by the mediastinoscope may occur and the surgeon usually is not aware that this is happening. The innominate artery supplies not only the right arm but also the right common carotid. Patients who do not have good cerebral collateral circulation (it is generally not possible to predict who these patients are) are at risk for cerebrovascular ischemia with innominate compression. A noninvasive blood pressure cuff is placed on the left arm to confirm the correct systolic pressure in case of suspected innominate compression.

Minor mediastinal hemorrhage may respond to conservative measures, such as placing the patient in the head-up position, keeping the systolic pressure in the 90s, and tamponading the wound with surgical sponges. However, massive hemorrhage requires an emergent sternotomy or thoracotomy to stop the bleeding (Box 53.13). A bronchial blocker can be passed through the lumen of the existing lung isolation device if lung isolation is required since it is often difficult to change to a DLT while the surgeon is tamponading the wound. An arterial line should be placed (if not placed previously) to measure arterial blood pressure. If hemorrhage originates from a tear in the superior vena cava, volume replacement and drug treatment may be lost into the surgical field unless they are administered through a peripheral intravenous line placed in the lower extremity.

Pneumothorax is an infrequent complication of mediastinoscopy. Pneumothorax that occurs intraoperatively (as evidenced by increased peak inspiratory pressure, tracheal shift, distant breath sounds, hypotension, and cyanosis) requires immediate treatment by chest tube decompression. All patients must have a chest radiograph taken in the postanesthesia care unit after mediastinoscopy to rule out pneumothorax.

When mediastinoscopy causes injury to the recurrent laryngeal nerve, it can be permanent in approximately 50% of the cases. If injury to the recurrent laryngeal nerve is suspected, the vocal cords should be visualized while the patient is spontaneously breathing. If the vocal cords do not move or are in a midline position, consideration has to be given to the problem of postoperative laryngeal obstruction.

BOX 53.13 **Anesthetic Management of Mediastinoscopy Hemorrhage**

1. Stop surgery and pack the wound. There is a serious risk that the patient will approach the point of hemodynamic collapse if the surgery-anesthesia team does not realize soon enough that there is a problem.
2. Begin the resuscitation and call for help, both anesthetic and surgical.
3. Obtain large-bore vascular access in the lower limbs.
4. Place an arterial line (if not placed at induction).
5. Prepare for massive hemorrhage with blood warmers and rapid infusers.
6. Obtain cross-matched blood in the operating room.
7. Place a double-lumen tube or bronchial blocker if the surgeon believes that thoracotomy is a possibility.
8. Once the patient is stabilized and all preparations are made, the surgeon can reexplore the cervical incision.
9. Convert to sternotomy or thoracotomy if indicated.

TABLE 53.10 Comparison of Surgical Approaches for Pulmonary Resections

Incision	Pro	Con
Posterolateral thoracotomy	Excellent exposure to entire operative hemithorax	Postoperative pain with or without respiratory dysfunction (short and long term)
Lateral muscle-sparing thoracotomy	Decreased postoperative pain	Increased incidence wound seromas
Anterolateral thoracotomy	Better access for laparotomy, resuscitation, or contralateral thoracotomy, especially in trauma	Limited access to posterior thorax
Axillary thoracotomy	Decreased pain. Adequate access for first rib resection, sympathectomy, apical blebs, or bullae.	Limited exposure
Sternotomy	Decreased pain Bilateral access	Decreased exposure of left lower lobe and posterior thoracic structures
Transsternal bilateral thoracotomy (“clamshell”)	Good exposure for bilateral lung transplantation	Postoperative pain and chest wall dysfunction
Video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery (VATS) or robotic surgery	Less postoperative pain and respiratory dysfunction	Technically difficult with central tumors and chest wall adhesions

During mediastinoscopy, the tip of the mediastinoscope is located intrathoracically and therefore it is directly exposed to pleural pressure. A venous air embolus can occur if venous bleeding occurs and patients are breathing spontaneously because of the development of negative intrathoracic pressure during inspiration. Autonomic reflexes may result from compression or stretching of the trachea, vagus nerve, or great vessels. With an uncomplicated mediastinoscopy, the patient can be extubated in the operating room and discharged home the same day.

ENDOBRONCHIAL ULTRASOUND-GUIDED BIOPSY

Various alternative techniques are available for obtaining pathology specimens from the mediastinal lymph nodes. These include CT-guided percutaneous needle aspiration, conventional bronchoscopy with transbronchial needle aspiration, and endobronchial ultrasound-guided biopsy. Endobronchial ultrasonography (EBUS) employing a radial probe through a working channel of the flexible fiberoptic bronchoscope can be used to identify mediastinal and hilar lymph nodes.[209] Under direct EBUS guidance with fine-needle aspiration for mediastinal staging, an ultrasound puncture bronchoscope can be used to assist with the safe and accurate diagnostic interventional bronchoscopy of the mediastinal and hilar lymph nodes. Management of these patients is often done at a satellite location, either in the bronchoscopy facility or CT suite. In general, these patients are managed with topical anesthesia (aerosolized lidocaine) and conscious sedation (e.g., fentanyl and/or midazolam). When general anesthesia is used, it is preferable to place an LMA or a large diameter (≥8.5 mm ID) ETT because of the large diameter of the EBUS bronchoscope,

Pulmonary Surgery

Any given pulmonary resection can be accomplished by a variety of different surgical approaches. The approach used in an individual case will depend on the interaction of several factors that include the site and pathology of the lesion(s) and the training and experience of the surgical team. Common thoracic surgical approaches and their generally accepted advantages and disadvantages are listed in Table 53.10.

MINIMALLY INVASIVE THORACOSCOPIC SURGERY

VATS is the procedure of choice for the diagnosis and management of diseases of the pleura, nondiagnosed peripheral pulmonary nodules, and interstitial lung disease (Fig. 53.45). Since the start of the modern era of thoracoscopic surgery in the early 1990s, VATS has been proposed as a less invasive approach than open thoracotomy. Today it is a well-accepted and established operation and has become the first-choice technique for lung biopsies, pleurectomies, sympathectomies, and other various pulmonary procedures.[210]

In addition, VATS may be used in a variety of other surgical procedures. Some centers routinely perform the majority of lobectomies under VATS. The outcomes for VATS lobectomies in patients with limited respiratory reserves seems superior to that for open thoracotomy.[211] Other surgeries, such as spinal fusion and scoliosis, have been performed with VATS. The advantages of VATS, when compared to open thoracotomy, include: (1) reduced hospital length of stay, (2) less blood loss if no mishaps occur, (3) less pain, (4) improvement in pulmonary function when compared with open thoracotomy,[212] (5) early patient mobilization with early recovery and rapid return to work and daily activities, and (6) less inflammatory reaction, as measured by cytokine response in patients undergoing VATS lobectomy compared to open thoracotomy.[213]

VATS lobectomy has been demonstrated to be a safe and effective procedure to treat early-stage NSCLC.[214] Thoracoscopic lobectomy is performed with a limited number of ports and an access incision of approximately 5 cm in length.[215] The advantage of the VATS technique is that

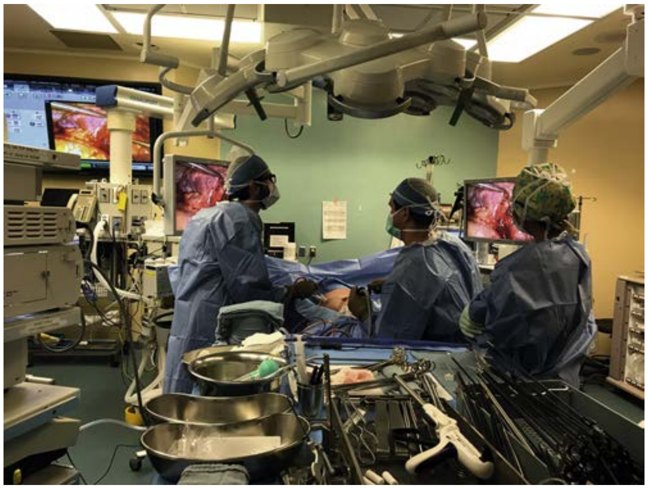


Fig. 53.45 Intraoperative photograph during video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery seen from the foot of the operating table. Multiple high-definition video screens facilitate communication between the anesthesiologist and the surgeon on the progress of the procedure.

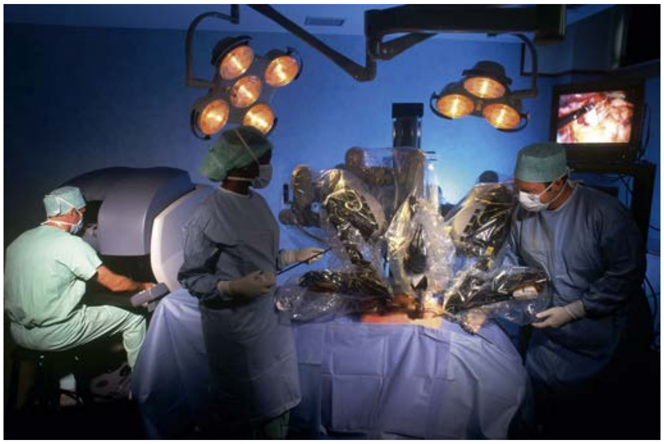


Fig. 53.46 Robotic surgery. The operating surgeon is on the far left in the photograph seated at the robot consol. Note the limited access to the patient for the anesthesiologist after the robot has been docked.

the ribs are not spread. VATS procedures are commonly performed in the lateral decubitus position; however bilateral VATS procedures, such as bilateral wedge resections or lung volume reduction, can be performed in the supine position. There is a trend to use only one port for VATS surgery.[216] Uniportal VATS may be associated with decreased postoperative pain and a shorter length of hospital stay.

Robotic thoracic surgery has been suggested as the logical advancement of VATS because of the perceived superior three-dimensional vision and increased range of motion in the chest for the surgeon with robotic techniques (Fig. 53.46).[217] Important points in anesthetic management are outlined in Box 53.14.

BOX 53.14 Anesthetic Considerations for Robotic Thoracic Surgery

1. A protocol for rapid emergency undocking (<60 s) of the robot must be developed and practiced in advance.
2. Limited access to the patient. The position of lung isolation device needs to be confirmed prior to docking the robot.
3. Extensions to monitoring lines and anesthesia circuit may be required.
4. There is an increased need for intrathoracic CO_2 insufflation with possible venous return and hemodynamic compromise.
5. Take precautions so that the operating room table cannot be moved while the robot is docked.
6. There is an increased risk of positional neuropathies because of potentially prolonged procedures; therefore fluid restriction is advisable.

ANESTHETIC TECHNIQUE

Thoracoscopic surgery can be performed under local, regional, or general anesthesia with OLV or TLV.[218] For minor diagnostic procedures, VATS can be done in the awake patient. Intercostal nerve blocks performed at the level of the incision and two interspaces above and below provide adequate analgesia. Partial collapse of the lung on the side of surgery occurs when air enters the pleural cavity. When using local anesthesia with the patient awake, it is hazardous to insufflate gases under pressure into the hemithorax in an attempt to increase visualization of the pleural space. Although many patients suffer from advanced pulmonary disease, changes in PaO_2, $PaCO_2$, and cardiac rhythm are usually minimal during the procedure when it is performed under local anesthesia and the patient is breathing spontaneously.[219] However, it is recommended that a high FiO_2 is delivered via a facemask to overcome the shunt because of the loss in lung volume caused by the unavoidable pneumothorax.

For most invasive procedures VATS is performed under general anesthesia with a DLT or a bronchial blocker to achieve OLV. If the procedure is short in duration and the lung needs to be deflated for only a brief period, blood gases are not routinely monitored during the procedure. However, for patients undergoing prolonged VATS procedures such as lobectomy or for patients with marginal pulmonary status, an arterial line and measurement of arterial blood gases is required. Paravertebral blocks have been used with a single dose of local anesthetics and have been shown to reduce pain for 6 hours after thoracoscopic surgery.[220]

Anesthetic complications are rare during this procedure, although it is possible that any structure that the surgeon has to manipulate may be damaged. The anesthesiologist needs to be aware of the potential for conversion to open thoracotomy if massive bleeding ensues, or the surgeon is unable to localize the lung nodule to be biopsied. The majority of thoracoscopic surgery requires placement of a chest tube postoperatively. It is important to have a functional chest tube with underwater seal drainage so that extubation can be performed safely.

Lobectomy

Lobectomy is the standard operation for the management of lung cancer because local recurrence of the tumor is reduced compared to lesser resections. Lobectomy is commonly performed via open thoracotomy or VATS. Occasionally, if the clinical staging of the lung cancer is advanced, an elective lobectomy is converted to a bi-lobectomy (right lung) or pneumonectomy during the operation. Although a posterolateral thoracotomy is the classic incision for lobectomies, anterolateral and muscle-sparing lateral incisions have also been used.

Postoperative analgesia is commonly performed with TEA or paravertebral analgesia for open procedures (see “Postoperative Analgesia” later in the chapter). An arterial line for management of arterial blood gases and measurement of systemic blood pressure is used in all patients requiring an open thoracotomy or major VATS surgery. It is useful to have two lines of intravenous access, at least one of which is large-bore, to facilitate rapid transfusion if necessary. Patients undergoing a lobectomy must be kept normothermic, normotensive, and with an acceptable PaO_2 and oxygen saturation, particularly during OLV. Patients should have a thermal blanket on the lower extremities to prevent hypothermia and its deleterious effects during HPV. After the lobe and blood vessels have been dissected, a test maneuver is performed with the surgeon clamping the surgical bronchus to confirm that the specific lobe is extirpated. This maneuver is accomplished by unclamping the limb of the DLT connector of the respective side, or in the case of a bronchial blocker, by deflating the blocker balloon, and reexpanding the lung with manual ventilation. During VATS lobectomy, as a result of the interference to the surgical field caused by reinflating the residual lobe, the anesthesiologist may be asked to fiberoptically inspect the bronchial tree to confirm patency of the bronchus of the noninvolved lobe(s). Once the lobectomy has been performed, the bronchial stump is usually tested with 20 cm H_2O positive pressure in the anesthetic circuit to detect the presence of air leaks. A patient undergoing an uncomplicated lobectomy can be usually extubated in the operating room provided preoperative respiratory function is adequate (see “Preoperative Evaluation of the Thoracic Surgery Patient” earlier in the chapter) and the patient is AWaC.

Pancoast tumors are carcinomas of the superior sulcus of the lung and can invade and compress local structures including the lower brachial plexus, subclavian blood vessels, stellate ganglion (causing Horner syndrome), and vertebrae. Lobectomy may require a two-stage procedure with an initial operation for posterior instrumentation/stabilization of the spine. During lobectomy, extensive chest wall resection may be required and massive transfusion is a possibility. Peripheral lines and monitoring should be in the contralateral arm due to frequent compression of the ipsilateral vessels during surgery.

SLEEVE LOBECTOMY

Bronchial sleeve resections are performed for neoplasms or benign strictures. Bronchogenic carcinoma is the most frequent indication for a sleeve lobectomy, followed by carcinoid tumors, endobronchial metastases, primary airway tumors, and bronchial adenomas. Sleeve lobectomy involving parenchyma-sparing techniques in patients with limited pulmonary reserve is an alternative procedure for patients that cannot tolerate a pneumonectomy. The sleeve technique involves mainstem bronchial resection without parenchymal involvement and possibly resection of pulmonary arteries to avoid pneumonectomy (Fig. 53.47).

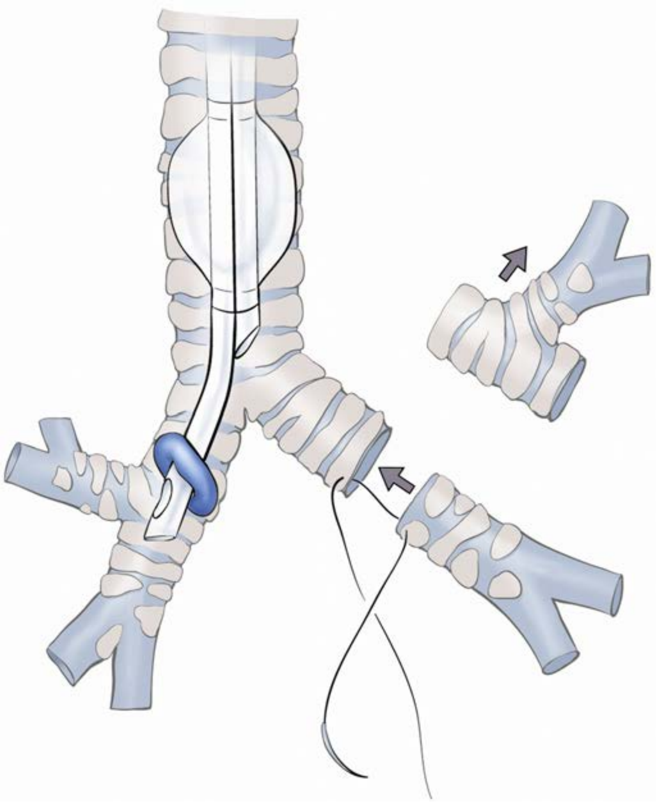


Fig. 53.47 Diagram of the surgical procedure for a left upper sleeve lobectomy. Airway management is with a right-sided double-lumen tube. Note that it will not be possible to position an endobronchial tube or bronchial blocker in the ipsilateral mainstem bronchus during this procedure.

Patients undergoing sleeve lobectomy require lung isolation with a contralateral DLT or endobronchial tube (i.e., use a right-sided DLT for a left sleeve lobectomy). High-frequency jet ventilation (HFJV) can be used for resections close to the tracheal carina. For a sleeve lobectomy involving resection of vessels, heparinization is necessary. In these cases, thoracic epidural catheters should not be manipulated for 24 hours following heparin administration. During pulmonary arterioplasty, uncontrollable bleeding may occur. For this reason, large-bore intravenous catheters should be used. Patients undergoing sleeve lobectomy are usually extubated in the operating room before transfer to the postanesthesia recovery room. Immediate and long-term survival is better after sleeve lobectomy compared with right pneumonectomy for comparable stages of right upper lobe cancer.[221]

Pneumonectomy

Complete removal of the lung is required when a lobectomy or its modifications is not adequate to remove the local disease and/or ipsilateral lymph node metastases. Atelectasis and pneumonia occur following pneumonectomy as they do following lobectomy but may in fact be less of a problem because of the absence of residual parenchymal dysfunction on the operative side. However, the mortality rate following pneumonectomy exceeds that for lobectomy because of postoperative cardiac complications and acute lung injury.

The overall operative mortality for the first 30 days after pneumonectomy ranges from 5% to 13% and correlates inversely with the surgical case volume.[222] The risk of complications increases fivefold in patients age 65 and older.[223]

Thoracotomy for pneumonectomy is usually performed through a standard posterolateral incision. After all vessels are stapled, stapling of the bronchus occurs and the entire lung is taken from the chest. A test for air leaks is generally performed at this point and reconstruction of the bronchial stump is completed. The bronchial stump should be as short as possible to prevent a pocket for the collection of secretions.

There is no consensus among thoracic surgeons on the best method of management of the postpneumonectomy space. If suction is applied to an empty hemithorax or a chest drain is connected to a standard underwater-seal system it may cause a mediastinal shift with hemodynamic collapse. Some thoracic surgeons do not place a chest drain after a pneumonectomy; some prefer to use a temporary drainage catheter to add or remove air. The removal of air, ranging from 0.75 up to 1.5 L, is necessary to empty the chest and to keep the mediastinum ("balanced") and the trachea in the midline. Some surgeons place a specifically designed postpneumonectomy chest drainage system with both high- and low-pressure underwater relief valves to balance the mediastinum.[224] A chest radiograph is mandatory after the patient arrives in the postanesthesia care unit or in the surgical intensive care unit to assess the mediastinal shift.

The patient scheduled to undergo a pneumonectomy is considered at high risk for perioperative morbidity and mortality. The placement of large-bore intravenous lines is necessary in case blood products need to be administered. An invasive arterial line is placed for measurement of beat-to-beat blood pressure and to monitor arterial blood gases. A CVP catheter is recommended to help guide intravascular fluid management and to administer vasopressors if needed, specifically in the postoperative period.

A major lung resection, such as pneumonectomy, decreases ventilatory function and has significant effects on the right ventricular function.[225] Immediately after pneumonectomy, the right ventricle may dilate and the right ventricular function decrease. Increased right ventricular afterload is due to an increase in pulmonary artery pressure and PVR. This is considered to be one of the main causes of right ventricular dysfunction after a major lung resection.

Management of lung isolation in a pneumonectomy patient can be achieved with a DLT, bronchial blocker, or SLT. When using a DLT for a pneumonectomy patient, it is optimal to use a device that does not interfere with the ipsilateral airway (i.e., for a right pneumonectomy a left-sided DLT). If a left-sided DLT or bronchial blocker is used for a left pneumonectomy, it must be withdrawn prior to stapling the bronchus, in order to avoid accidental inclusion into the suture line.

Specific areas of concern in the management of the patient undergoing pneumonectomy include: (1) fluid management, (2) intraoperative tidal volume, and (3) acute lung injury postsurgery. Fluid administration after major lung resection continues to be an issue. In a retrospective report by Zeldin and associates,[226] the risk factors that were identified for the development of acute lung injury ("postpneumonectomy pulmonary edema") were a right-sided pneumonectomy, increased perioperative intravenous fluid administration, and increased urine output in the postoperative period. A more recent study by Licker and colleagues has shown that the excessive administration of intravenous fluids in thoracic surgical patients (more than 3 L in the first 24 hours) is an independent risk related to an acute lung injury.[227] There is reasonable clinical evidence that excessive fluid administration is associated with the development of an acute lung injury, which has a high mortality rate following pneumonectomy. Consequently, pneumonectomy patients should have restricted intraoperative fluid administration while preserving renal function. Some cases may require the use of inotropes/vasopressors to maintain hemodynamic stability while restricting fluids (see Box 53.11).

Respiratory failure is a leading cause of postoperative morbidity and mortality in patients undergoing pneumonectomy. A retrospective report[228] involving 170 pneumonectomy patients showed that patients that received median tidal volumes greater than 8 mL/kg had a greater risk of respiratory failure in the postoperative period after pneumonectomy. In contrast, patients that received tidal volumes less than 6 mL/kg were at lower risk of respiratory failure. Schilling and associates[229] have shown that a tidal volume of 5 mL/kg during OLV significantly reduces the inflammatory response to alveolar cytokines. Considering these factors, it is prudent to use lower tidal volumes (i.e. 6 mL/kg, ideal body weight) in the pneumonectomy patient, and limit peak and plateau inspiratory pressures (i.e., <35 and 25 cm H_2O, respectively) during OLV.

The incidence of acute lung injury (postpneumonectomy pulmonary edema) after pneumonectomy is only 4%. However, the mortality rate is 30% to 50%. The etiology seems multifactorial. One study[229] has identified four independent risk factors for acute lung injury after pulmonary resection: (1) pneumonectomy, (2) excessive administration of fluids in the intraoperative period, (3) high intraoperative ventilatory pressure index (combined airway pressure and time), and (4) preoperative alcohol abuse. The incidence of an acute lung injury is greater for a right-sided versus left-sided pneumonectomy. This may be related to the higher postoperative pulmonary artery pressures after a right versus left pneumonectomy (Fig. 53.48).[230] At the present time only symptomatic management is appropriate for this lung injury. This includes fluid restrictions, diuretic administration, low ventilatory pressures and tidal volumes (if mechanical ventilation is used), and measures to decrease the pulmonary artery pressure. ECMO may be useful in managing this complication.[231]

EXTRAPLEURAL PNEUMONECTOMY

Extrapleural pneumonectomy is a therapeutic option for selected patients with MPM.[232] Significant improvement in survival has been achieved in patients who have an advanced MPM with extrapleural pneumonectomy and high-dose radiotherapy in the postoperative period. Extrapleural pneumonectomy involves an extensive resection that may include lymph nodes, pericardium, diaphragm, parietal pleura, and the chest wall. The anesthetic management of the extrapleural pneumonectomy patient is

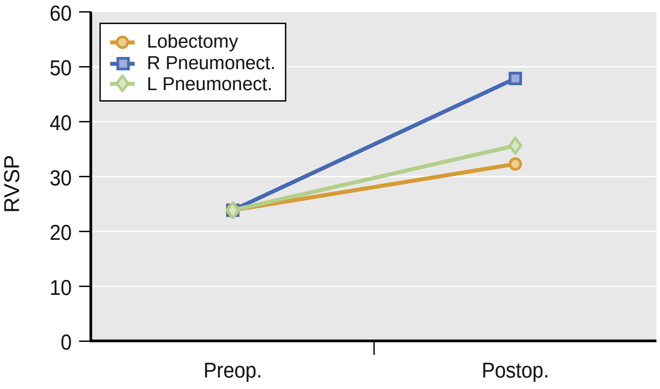


Fig. 53.48 Comparison of right ventricular systolic pressure *(RVSP)* measured by echocardiography in patients before (Preop.) and at 6 months after (Postop.) pulmonary resections. *L Pneumonect*, Left pneumonectomy; *R Pneumonect*, right pneumonectomy. Note the elevated RVSP, and therefore pulmonary artery pressure, after a right pneumonectomy. (Based on data from Foroulis C, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg.* 2004;26:508.)

characterized by significant loss of blood because of chest wall vessel involvement. In these patients, it is recommended that a CVP catheter be used to guide intravascular fluid administration and insure large-bore intravenous access. During tumor dissection, venous return to the heart may be compromised due to multiple factors including blood loss, compression effect by the tumor in superior vena cava, or surgical causes. If excessive bleeding ensues, it must be replaced to maintain an acceptable hematocrit and to keep the coagulation profile within normal limits. Because of extensive tumor resection and the potential for a pericardial resection in right-sided surgery, cardiac herniation or hemodynamic instability can appear postoperatively after the patient is turned from lateral decubitus to supine position. It is common to ventilate these patients for a short period postoperatively because of the extended duration of the surgery and the large fluid shifts. If a DLT is used intraoperatively, the DLT is usually replaced at the end of the case with an SLT.

SLEEVE PNEUMONECTOMY

Tumors involving the most proximal portions of the mainstem bronchus and the carina may require a sleeve pneumonectomy. These are most commonly performed for right-sided tumors and can usually be performed without ECMO via a right thoracotomy. A long SLT can be advanced across into the left mainstem bronchus during the period of tracheobronchial anastomosis. High-frequency positive-pressure ventilation (HFPPV) has also been used for this procedure and the combined use of HFPPV and a DLT has been described.[233] Since the carina is surgically more accessible from the right side, left sleeve pneumonectomies are commonly performed as a two-stage operation: first there is a left thoracotomy and pneumonectomy followed by a right thoracotomy for the carinal excision. The complication rate and mortality are higher, and the 5-year survival (20%) significantly lower than for other pulmonary resections. Postpneumonectomy pulmonary edema is particularly a problem following right sleeve pneumonectomy.

Limited Pulmonary Resections: Segmentectomy and Wedge Resection

A limited pulmonary resection is one in which less than a complete lobe is removed. The two procedures fitting this definition are segmentectomy and wedge resection. Segmentectomy is an anatomic pulmonary resection of the pulmonary artery, vein, bronchus, and parenchyma of a particular segment of the lung. Segmentectomy is usually performed as surgical therapy for patients with primary lung cancer and limited cardiorespiratory reserves. In contrast, a wedge resection is a nonanatomic removal of a portion of the lung parenchyma with a 1.5- to 2.0-cm margin and can be accomplished by open thoracotomy or VATS. Wedge resections are most commonly performed for diagnosis of lung lesions with unknown histology or as palliation in patients with metastatic lesions in the lungs from distant primary tumors. Lung cancers that are considered for limited resection are usually less than 3 cm in size and are located in the periphery of the lung with regional lymph nodes free of metastatic cancer. Small peripheral lung lesions may be localized preoperatively for VATS resection by CT placement of a marker such as a coil.[234] The relevance of this for anesthesia is that the CT procedure may cause a pneumothorax and possibly a bronchopleural fistula. To avoid a possible tension pneumothorax at induction, positive-pressure TLV should be avoided (or minimized) and lung isolation with OLV commenced as soon as possible.

A group of patients considered for limited pulmonary resection are those who develop a new primary lesion after a previous lobectomy or pneumonectomy. The patient with compromised lung function presents a greater risk in the intraoperative period (hypoxemia during OLV or prolonged intubation after surgery). Cerfolio and associates[235] reported that lung cancer patients with compromised pulmonary function can safely undergo limited pulmonary resection if selected appropriately. Segmentectomies and wedge resections can be performed with any of the standard thoracotomy or VATS incisions. Segments that are most commonly resected are in the upper lobes or the superior segments of the lower lobes.

Anesthetic technique and monitoring are essentially the same as for larger pulmonary resections. In order to facilitate surgical exposure and achieve OLV, it is necessary to use either a DLT or a bronchial blocker. If the patient had a previous contralateral lobectomy or a pneumonectomy, selective lobar collapse with the use of a bronchial blocker will facilitate surgical exposure while maintaining oxygenation. In selected cases, the combined use of a DLT and a bronchial blocker will allow selective lobar collapse/ventilation in the ipsilateral lung.[236] It is very important to use low tidal volumes (i.e., 3-4 mL/kg) during selective lobar ventilation, particularly in patients with previous pneumonectomy to prevent overinflation in the remaining lobes.

Segmentectomy plays a significant role in the management of patients with a second primary lung cancer. Many of these patients have previously undergone thoracic surgery, including previous lobectomy or pneumonectomy; therefore the potential for increased intraoperative bleeding is always a risk. In addition, because many of these patients have compromised lung function, early extubation may not be feasible. A common complication after surgery is an air leak. Chest tubes are placed to maximize postoperative expansion and minimize space complications. Suction and underwater-seal chest drainage is used in the postoperative period.

Anesthetic Management for Specific Surgical Procedures

ESOPHAGEAL SURGERY

Esophageal surgery is performed for both malignant and benign disease and may be curative or palliative. General considerations that apply to many esophageal surgery patients include an increased risk of aspiration caused by esophageal dysfunction and the possibility of preoperative malnutrition.

Esophagectomy

Esophagectomy is a palliative and potentially curative treatment for esophageal cancer and may occasionally be required for some benign obstructive lesions which do not respond to conservative therapy. It is a major surgical procedure and is associated with high morbidity and mortality rates (10%–15%). There is an inverse correlation between perioperative mortality and surgical volume and the cure rate of esophageal cancer with esophagectomy is between 10% and 50%. There are multiple surgical procedures for esophageal cancer (Table 53.11) that combine some or all of three fundamental approaches: (1) transthoracic approach, (2) transhiatal approach, and (3) minimally invasive surgery (laparoscopic/thoracoscopic or robotic esophagectomy).[237] The incidence of respiratory complications has been reported to be between 18% and 26% for both the transthoracic and transhiatal esophagectomy approaches.[238] One study showed that the development of acute respiratory distress syndrome occurred in 14.5% of patients and acute lung injury in 24%.[239] Complications associated with the gastroesophageal anastomosis are anastomotic leakage/dehiscence (5%–26%) and stenosis (12%–40%). Outcomes are improved with a multimodal anesthetic management protocol using fluid restriction, early extubation, thoracic epidural analgesia, and vasopressor/inotrope infusions to support blood pressure.[240] Hypotension decreases the blood flow to the esophagogastric anastomosis. The use of vasopressors or inotropes, in normovolemic patients, restores the systemic pressure and the anastomotic blood flow.[241] Fluid management for esophageal surgery is essentially the same as for pulmonary resection surgery.

Transthoracic Approach. Transthoracic esophagectomy is commonly a two-phase procedure. The first phase involves a laparotomy performed with the patient in the supine position and the creation of a neoesophagus tube using the stomach. The second phase involves a right-sided thoracotomy in the left lateral position and esophageal reconstruction through the thoracic route. Some surgeons may perform this procedure through an extended left thoracoabdominal incision.

The anesthetic management for these patients includes the use of standard monitors, an invasive arterial line, and a CVP catheter to the large fluid shifts. Access to the right internal jugular is not a problem; however there is always a possibility of a surgical esophageal anastomosis in the left neck contraindicating access to the left internal jugular. A thoracic epidural catheter is usually placed to provide postoperative analgesia. Because of the wide number of dermatomes that must be covered for both incisions by the epidural infusion, it is best to use hydrophilic opioids (such as hydromorphone) in combination with local anesthetics in preference to lipophilic opioids. Most patients with an esophageal carcinoma have gastric reflux; for this reason, precautions (including a rapid-sequence induction with cricoid pressure) should be taken to protect the airway against aspiration.

During the second phase (right thoracotomy), a left-sided DLT or a right-sided bronchial blocker is required to facilitate lung collapse. Because esophagectomy requires a prolonged period of OLV, this procedure is marked by

TABLE 53.11 Surgical Approaches for Esophagectomy and Esophagogastrectomy

Surgery	Incisions	Anesthetic Considerations
Laparotomy and right thoracotomy ("Ivor Lewis")	Two incisions: upper abdominal midline, right thoracotomy at approx. 5th or 6th intercostal space	One-lung ventilation necessary. Repositioning of patient intraoperatively from supine to right lateral
Transhiatal ("Orringer") (lower-third lesions; may be used for mid-third in some centers)	Two incisions: upper abdominal midline and left neck	Hemodynamic instability from cardiac compression during blunt intrathoracic dissection. Possibility of occult perforation of tracheobronchial tree during blunt dissection (may need to advance endotracheal tube into bronchus) No vascular access in left neck
Left thoracoabdominal (lower esophageal lesions only)	One incision: left lateral thoracotomy extended to left upper lateral abdominal	One-lung ventilation desirable
Combined chest, abdominal, and neck ("three hole"; upper and mid-esophageal lesions)	Three incisions: right thoracotomy, laparotomy, left neck	One-lung ventilation necessary Repositioning lateral to supine intraoperatively No vascular access in left neck
Minimally invasive, laparoscopy plus VATS or robotic surgery	One to three small incisions plus video port access. Possible left neck incision at end.	One-lung ventilation necessary Potentially prolonged surgery

VATS, Video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery.

an important inflammatory response. Michelet and colleagues[242] have shown that the use of protective ventilatory strategies during OLV decrease the proinflammatory systemic response. This decreased response can be achieved by delivering 5 mL/kg of tidal volume and a PEEP of 5 cm H_2O to the dependent lung, instead of the 9 mL/kg of tidal volume that is conventionally used during esophagectomy.

Manipulation of the esophagus during thoracotomy may compromise venous return, which can cause hypotensive episodes. Early extubation in the operating room is encouraged if the patient meets standard criteria for extubation. If extubation is not possible, the DLT should be exchanged for an SLT and mechanical ventilation used in the postoperative period.

Transhiatal Approach. Airway management is done with an SLT. Apart from this, anesthetic management is essentially the same as for a transthoracic approach. Of special concern is that the blunt/blind manual dissection of the thoracic esophagus by the surgeon through the hiatus during this approach is often associated with cardiac compression and sudden severe hypotension. Also, this blind dissection can cause vascular or distal airway injuries if the tumor is adherent.[243] It is a good practice to not cut the ETT for this procedure in case of surgical perforation of the trachea or bronchus necessitating advancement of the ETT into a mainstem bronchus for emergent OLV.

Minimally Invasive Approach. Minimally invasive esophagectomy involves the use of laparoscopic, thoracoscopic, and/or robotic surgical approaches. For a laparoscopic approach, distension of the peritoneum may produce hemodynamic changes because of the intragastric pressure generated by carbon dioxide insufflation. In these cases, it is important to adjust ventilatory parameters to achieve an optimal $PaCO_2$. For the thoracoscopic approach, a left-sided DLT or a bronchial blocker is required. During robotic surgery, the use of a lung isolation device is required to achieve OLV. Special considerations for robotic surgery include protecting the patient against any injury related to the robot and not moving the operating room table while the robot is being used. The thoracoscopic-assisted esophagectomy has several advantages including less blood loss, less pain, and a shorter length of hospitalization. This method may require a prolonged duration of surgery. Some centers favor performing the VATS portion of a minimally invasive esophagectomy in the prone position to improve surgical access.[244] Lung isolation for these cases is usually with a bronchial blocker via an SLT.

Patients undergoing esophagectomy usually require a nasogastric tube, which must be well-secured at the end of the operation. Respiratory complications, including the development of an acute lung injury, may be present after an esophagectomy. Intrathoracic anastomotic leakage is a feared major complication after esophageal surgery, and carries a high mortality rate of 4% to 30%.[245] To treat this potential complication, nasogastric decompression and nutritional support should be used. Severe leakage usually occurs in the early postoperative period as a consequence of gastric necrosis, and it may present with respiratory symptoms and signs of shock. Even though there is a very high mortality rate, prompt surgical intervention is recommended. Patients older than 80 years have an increased risk of mortality after esophagectomy, independent of comorbidity.[246]

Esophageal Surgery for Benign Disease

Hiatal Hernia. Although most patients with gastroesophageal reflux have a hiatal hernia, most patients with a hiatal hernia do not have significant reflux.[247] Patients with heartburn have a lowered barrier pressure and may be at increased risk for regurgitation of gastric contents. Two types of hiatal hernia have been described. Type I hernias, also called sliding hernias, make up approximately 90% of esophageal hiatal hernias. In this type, the esophagogastric junction and fundus of the stomach have herniated axially through the esophageal hiatus into the thorax (Fig. 53.49). The term sliding refers to the presence of a sac of parietal peritoneum. The lower esophageal sphincter is cephalad to the diaphragm and may not respond appropriately to increased abdominal pressure. Thus a reduced barrier-pressure during coughing or breathing leads to regurgitation. The type II or paraesophageal hiatus hernia is characterized by portions of the stomach herniating into the thorax next to the esophagus. In the presence of a type II hernia, the esophagogastric junction is still located in the abdomen. The most common complications from type II hernias are blood loss, anemia, and gastric volvulus.

The goal of surgical repair of a sliding hernia is to obtain competence of the gastroesophageal junction. Since restoration of the normal anatomy is not always successful in preventing subsequent reflux, several antireflux operations have been developed, such as the Nissen fundoplication. Repair of a hiatal hernia can be performed via a thoracotomy or laparotomy, or minimally invasively.

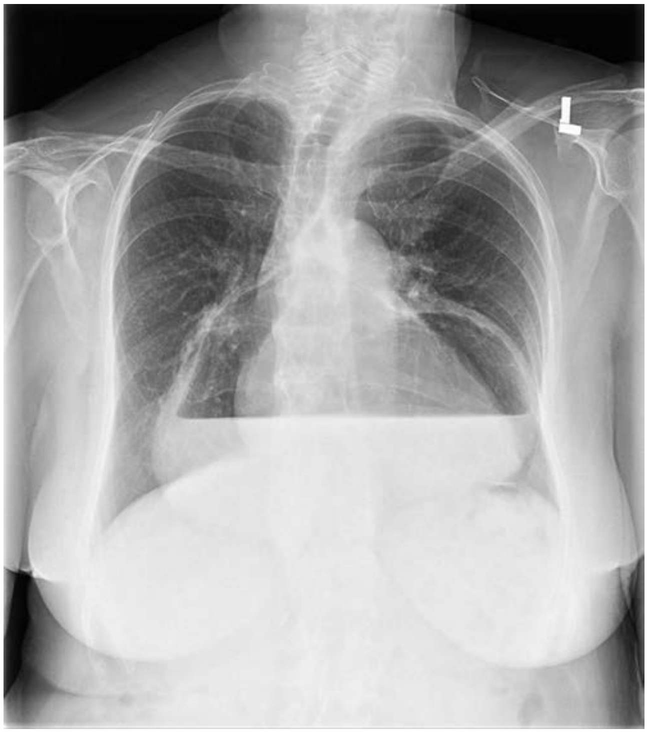


Fig. 53.49 Chest radiograph of a patient with a hiatal hernia and a dilated intrathoracic stomach, scheduled for hiatal hernia repair via a left thoracotomy. An air-fluid level can be seen in the stomach behind the heart. These patients are at high risk for aspiration on induction of anesthesia.

Benign Esophageal Stricture. Chronic reflux of acidic gastric contents can lead to ulceration, inflammation, and eventually stricture of the esophagus. The pathologic changes are reversible if the acidic gastric contents cease their contact with the esophageal mucosa. Surgery may be necessary if medical treatment and dilatations are inadequate. There are two types of surgical repair, both of which are usually approached via a left thoracoabdominal incision. Gastroplasty after esophageal dilatation interposes the fundus of the stomach between esophageal mucosa and the acidic milieu of the stomach. The remaining fundus may be sewn to the lower esophagus to create a valvelike effect. The second type of repair is resection of the stricture and the creation of a thoracic end-to-side esophagogastrostomy. Vagotomy and antrectomy are performed to eliminate stomach acidity, and a Roux-en-Y gastric drainage procedure is performed to prevent alkaline intestinal reflux.

Esophageal Perforation and Rupture. There are multiple causes of esophageal perforation, including foreign bodies, endoscopy, bougienage, traumatic tracheal intubation, gastric tubes, and oropharyngeal suctioning. Iatrogenic causes are the most common, with upper gastrointestinal endoscopy being the most frequent cause. A rupture is a burst injury often due to uncoordinated vomiting, straining associated with weight-lifting, childbirth, defecation, and crush injuries to the chest and abdomen. The rupture is usually located within 2 cm of the gastroesophageal junction on the left side. Rupture is the result of a sudden increase in abdominal pressure with a relaxed lower esophageal sphincter and an obstructed esophageal inlet. In contrast to a perforation, in the presence of a rupture, the stomach contents enter the mediastinum under high pressure and the patient becomes symptomatic much more abruptly.

In addition to chest and/or back pain, patients with intrathoracic esophageal perforation or rupture may develop hypotension, diaphoresis, tachypnea, cyanosis, emphysema, and hydrothorax or hydropneumothorax.[248] Radiologic studies may reveal subcutaneous emphysema, pneumomediastinum, widening of the mediastinum, pleural effusion, and pneumoperitoneum. In some cases, minor perforations can be managed conservatively. Major injuries will rapidly develop mediastinitis and sepsis if not treated surgically, so repair and drainage is an emergency procedure usually performed via a left or right thoracotomy.

Achalasia. Achalasia is a disorder in which there is a lack of peristalsis of the esophagus and a failure of the lower esophageal sphincter to relax in response to swallowing. Clinically, the patients have esophageal distention that may lead to chronic regurgitation and aspiration. The goal of treatment is to alleviate the distal obstruction. This can be done by either esophageal dilatation or by surgery. Dilatation, which carries with it the risk of perforation, can be achieved by mechanical, hydrostatic, or pneumatic means. The surgical repair consists of a Heller myotomy, which is an incision through the circular muscle of the esophagogastric junction. The myotomy is often combined with a hiatal hernia repair to prevent subsequent reflux. This can be performed via thoracotomy, laparotomy, or laparoscopy.[249] This procedure can also be performed endoscopically. Peroral endoscopic myotomy (POEM) requires general anesthesia with endotracheal intubation.[250] Insufflation of CO_2 via the endoscope frequently leads to pneumoperitoneum, which requires abdominal decompression during the procedure.

Esophagorespiratory Tract Fistula. Esophagorespiratory tract fistula in an adult is most often due to malignancy. Occasionally, the fistula is benign, and may be due to injury by a tracheal tube, trauma, or inflammation. Of the malignant fistulae, approximately 85% are secondary to esophageal cancer. In contrast to the pediatric patient with esophagorespiratory tract fistulae, which usually connect the distal esophagus to the posterior tracheal wall, these fistulae may connect to any part of the respiratory tract.[251] In most cases, the fistula can be seen on esophagoscopy or bronchoscopy. In malignant cases, the goal of surgery is usually palliation. The technique of lung isolation will depend on the location of the fistula. One option in adults with a distal tracheal fistula is the use of bilateral small (5–6 mm ID) endobronchial tubes.[252]

Zenker Diverticulum. Zenker diverticulum is actually a diverticulum of the lower pharynx. It arises from a weakness at the junction of the thyropharyngeus and cricopharyngeus muscles just proximal to the esophagus. It is commonly considered as an esophageal lesion because of its proximity to the upper esophagus and because the underlying cause may be a failure of relaxation of the upper esophageal sphincter during swallowing. Early symptoms may be nonspecific with dysphagia and complaints of food sticking in the throat. As the diverticulum enlarges patients describe noisy swallowing, regurgitation of undigested food, and supine coughing spells. Recurrent aspiration and pneumonia may develop.

The major concern for anesthesia is the possibility of aspiration on induction of general anesthesia for excision of the diverticulum.[253] Even prolonged fasting does not ensure that the diverticulum will be empty. The best method to empty the diverticulum is to have the patient express and regurgitate the contents immediately prior to induction. Many of these patients will be used to doing this on a regular basis at home. Since the diverticulum orifice is almost always above the level of the cricoid cartilage, cricoid pressure during a rapid-sequence induction does not prevent aspiration and may contribute to aspiration by causing the sac to empty into the pharynx. Surgical excision is usually done through a lower left neck incision.

The safest method of managing the airway for these patients may be awake fiberoptic intubation. However, intubation has been managed without incident using a modified rapid-sequence induction without cricoid pressure and with the patient supine and in a head-up position of 20 to 30 degrees. Other considerations in these patients include the possibility of perforation of the diverticulum when passing an orogastric or nasogastric tube or an esophageal bougie.

Anesthesia for Tracheal Resection

Tracheal resection and reconstruction is indicated in patients who have a tracheal obstruction as a result of a

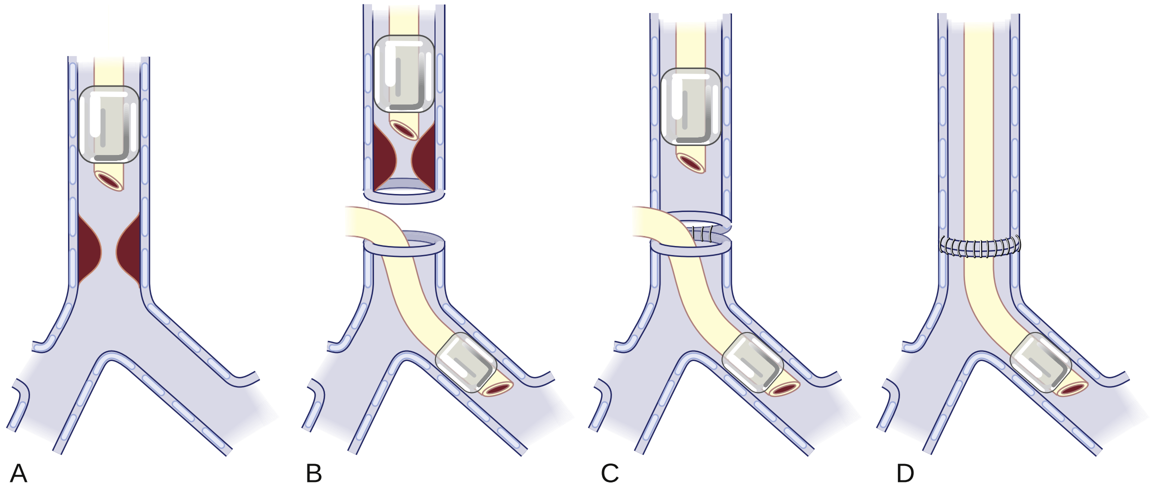


Fig. 53.50 Airway management and surgical procedure for resection of a low tracheal lesion. (A) Initial intubation above the lesion. (B) Left endobronchial intubation distal to the lesion after the trachea has been opened. (C) Placement of sutures for the posterior anastomosis. (D) The endobronchial tube has been removed, and the original endotracheal tube has been advanced distal to the anterior anastomosis into an endobronchial position. (Modified from Geffin B, Bland J, Grillo HC. Anesthetic management of tracheal resection and reconstruction. *Anesth Analg*. 1969;48:884.)

tracheal tumor, previous tracheal trauma (most commonly due to postintubation stenosis), congenital anomalies, vascular lesions, and tracheomalacia. For patients who have operable tumors, approximately 80% undergo segmental resection with primary anastomosis, 10% undergo segmental resection with prosthetic reconstruction, and the remaining 10% undergo placement of a T-tube stent.

Diagnostic studies are reviewed as part of the preoperative evaluation. The CT scan is a useful diagnostic tool to evaluate the degree, level, and length of the lesion. Bronchoscopy is one of the definitive diagnostic tests for tracheal obstruction. Bronchoscopy for a patient with tracheal stenosis should be carried out in the operating room where the surgical and anesthesia teams are present and ready to intervene should loss of airway occur. An advantage of rigid bronchoscopy over flexible bronchoscopy is that it can bypass the obstruction and provide a ventilation pathway if complete obstruction occurs. During surgery, all patients should have an invasive arterial catheter placed to facilitate measurement of arterial blood gases, as well as measure arterial blood pressure. CVP catheters are only used if the patient requires cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB).

A variety of methods for providing adequate oxygenation and elimination of CO_2 have been used during tracheal resection. The different alternatives include: (1) standard orotracheal intubation, (2) insertion of a sterile SLT into the opened trachea or bronchus distal to the area of resection, (3) HFJV through the stenotic area, (4) HFPPV, and (5) the use of ECMO.

Induction of anesthesia in patients with a compromised airway requires good communication between the surgical team and the anesthesiologist. The surgeon should always be in the operating room during induction and available to manage a surgical airway if this becomes necessary.[254] A rigid bronchoscope must be immediately available. The patient should be thoroughly preoxygenated with 100% oxygen before induction. The airways of patients with congenital or acquired tracheal stenosis are unlikely to collapse during induction of anesthesia. However, intratracheal masses may lead to airway obstruction with induction of anesthesia and should be managed similarly to anterior mediastinal masses (discussed later in chapter). One airway management technique is to begin the case with rigid bronchoscopy and tracheal dilation and then to pass an SLT through the stenosis. This tube is withdrawn into the proximal trachea once the distal trachea is opened and a second sterile SLT is placed into the distal trachea by the surgeon. Ventilation is done via a sterile anesthetic circuit with an airway gas sampling catheter passed across the drapes into the surgical field (this technique is commonly referred to a "cross-field ventilation"). With a low tracheal lesion, a right thoracotomy provides the optimal surgical exposure. A sterile SLT is used to provide ventilation to the lung distal to the resection. After the posterior anastomosis is completed, the endobronchial tube is removed and the original SLT is advanced past the site of resection (Fig. 53.50). This technique can also be used for carinal resection.

A third technique for airway management during tracheal resection includes HFJV through a small-bore ETT or catheter.[255] With this technique, a small-bore uncuffed catheter is placed through the stenotic area, and ventilation is accomplished by intermittently exposing the lung to a high flow of fresh gas through the catheter. Other techniques that have been used for oxygenation during distal airway resections include HFPPV, helium-oxygen mixtures, and CPB.

After the tracheal resection is completed, most patients are kept in a position of neck flexion to reduce tension on the suture line. Replacement of the SLT by an LMA for emergence facilitates bronchoscopy if required. A thick chin-sternum suture may be placed for several days to maintain neck flexion or a cervical splint may be used.[256] A Montgomery T-tube with the upper limb 0.5 to 1 cm above the vocal cords may be inserted at the end of surgery as a tracheal stent in cases when glottic edema is a concern, or for patients requiring ventilatory support. If a tracheostomy is performed, it will be done distal to the anastomosis. Early extubation is highly desirable. If a patient requires reintubation, it should be performed with a flexible fiberoptic bronchoscope by advancing an SLT under direct vision over

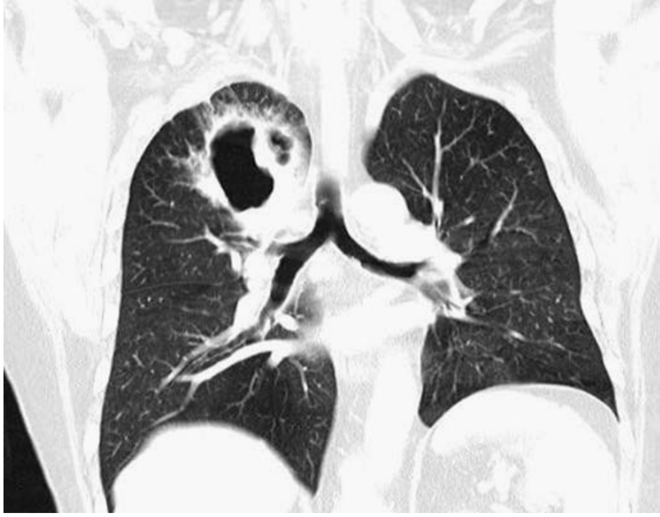


Fig. 53.51 Computed tomographic scan of a patient with a lung abscess distal to an obstructing carcinoma of the right upper lobe. The diagnostic thick wall of the abscess and the air-fluid level can be appreciated in the right upper thorax. These patients are at risk for soiling of uncontaminated lung regions during repositioning for surgery from pus in the abscess. The optimal method of lung isolation is with a double-lumen endobronchial tube.

the bronchoscope and then placing it in the patient's trachea. The patient is kept in a head-up position to diminish swelling. Steroids may be useful in these cases to decrease airway edema.

One of the complications in the postoperative period is tetraplegia, with hyperflexion of the neck having been implicated as a potential cause. In these cases, it is necessary to cut the chin stitch. Infusions of propofol/remifentanil or dexmedetomidine, with fiberoptic bronchoscopy guidance and full patient cooperation, can aid extubation.[257]

BRONCHIECTASIS/LUNG ABSCESS/EMPYEMA

Bronchiectasis is a disease that causes localized, irreversible dilatation of part of the bronchial tree. Involved bronchi are inflamed and easily collapsible, resulting in airflow obstruction and impaired clearance of secretions. Bronchiectasis is associated with a wide range of disorders, but it usually results from necrotizing bacterial infections. Bronchiectasis may require surgery if it causes hemoptysis or recurrent pneumonia. An abscess is a nonanatomic area of liquefactive necrosis of the lung often distal to an obstruction or following a pneumonia (Fig. 53.51). An empyema is a collection of pus between the visceral and parietal pleural layers often a complication of pneumonia or surgery. Empyema complicating lung resections occurs in 2% to 16% of cases and with a 40% increase in the associated perioperative mortality rate. Mortality further increases when the empyema is associated with a bronchopleural fistula. Surgical interventions for patients with empyema include decortication (the method of choice when the underlying lung is unable to expand because of a thick inflammatory coat) or open-window thoracostomy (the ideal method for drainage of the pleural cavity to control septic symptoms in patients with postpulmonary resection empyema).[258] In less severe cases, tube drainage, antibiotic irrigation, and debridement may be sufficient.

All of these infective indications for thoracic surgery are less common in the developed world since the introduction of antibiotics. Anesthetic considerations during surgery for these infective indications include the need for lung isolation to protect uninvolved lung regions from soiling by pus in the infected areas. The risk of soiling occurs if the patient is repositioned for surgery, after induction of anesthesia, before the lung is adequately isolated. Because of the inflammation, surgery is technically more difficult and there is a greater risk of massive hemorrhage.

Anesthetic Management

Some of these patients may present with sepsis at the time of surgery. In septic patients, the placement of a thoracic epidural catheter is not recommended. These patients require lung isolation, preferably with a DLT. The DLT facilitates suctioning of debris and copious secretions that are present in the tracheobronchial tree. Patients undergoing a decortication may have massive blood loss. If the lung has been chronically collapsed, expansion should be done gradually to avoid the development of pulmonary edema upon reexpansion. Extubation in the operating room is encouraged if the patient meets standard criteria for extubation.

BRONCHOPLEURAL FISTULA

A bronchopleural fistula may be caused by: (1) rupture of a lung abscess, bronchus, bulla, cyst, or parenchymal tissue into the pleural space; (2) the erosion of a bronchus by carcinoma or chronic inflammatory disease; or (3) stump dehiscence of a bronchial suture line after pulmonary resection. Pneumonectomy patients have an incidence of bronchopleural fistula ranging from 2% to 11%,[259] with mortality ranging from 5% to 70%.

The diagnosis of bronchopleural fistula is usually made clinically. After pneumonectomy, the diagnosis is based on the sudden onset of dyspnea, subcutaneous emphysema, contralateral deviation of the trachea, and a decrease of fluid level on serial radiographs of the chest (Fig. 53.52). In lobectomy patients, persistent air leak, purulent drainage, and expectoration of purulent material are usually diagnostic indicators of a bronchopleural fistula. When the fistula appears after removal of a chest tube, the diagnosis of bronchopleural fistula is made on the basis of fever, purulent sputum, and a new air-fluid level in the pleural cavity on the chest radiograph.

The diagnosis is confirmed by bronchoscopic examination. Additionally, bronchography and sinograms of the fistula may be used to confirm the diagnosis. Other diagnostic methods include the injection of an indicator, such as methylene blue, into the pleural space and subsequent recovery of the indicator from sputum. Accumulation of radionuclide in the pleural space after inhalation of xenon or a mixture of O_2 and N_2O to detect the presence of a bronchopleural fistula can also be used as indicators.[260]

If the disruption occurs early in postpneumonectomy patients, it can be life threatening and it is possible to resuture the stump. Late or chronic postpneumonectomy bronchial disruption is managed with drainage or with the Clagett procedure, which includes open pleural drainage and the use of a muscle flap to reinforce the bronchial stump. In nonpneumonectomy cases, if the lung expands to

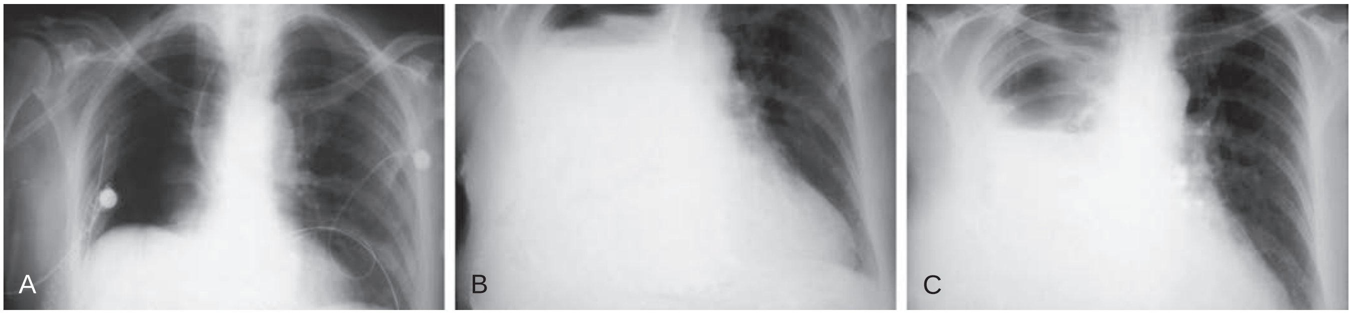


Fig 53.52 (A) Chest radiograph of a patient immediately postoperatively after a right pneumonectomy. (B) The same patient on postoperative day 6. This is a normal postpneumonectomy film. The right hemithorax is gradually filling with serous fluid. (C) The same patient on postoperative day 7. The patient had the sudden onset of severe dyspnea, desaturation, and coughing. The chest radiograph reveals a decrease in the fluid level in the right hemithorax. This is diagnostic of a bronchopleural fistula caused by the dehiscence of the bronchial stump.

fill the thoracic cavity, the air leak can usually be controlled with chest tube drainage alone. However, if the fistula is large and a significant leak through a large persistent pleural space occurs, it is unlikely that the fistula will close, and surgical resection is necessary.

Anesthetic Management

The patient with a bronchopleural fistula presents several intraoperative challenges for the anesthesiologist. These include: (1) the need for lung isolation to protect healthy lung regions, (2) the possibility of tension pneumothorax with positive-pressure ventilation, and (3) the possibility of inadequate ventilation due to air leak from the fistula. Preoperatively, it is useful to estimate the loss of tidal volume through the bronchopleural fistula, which may be done in two ways. First, one should determine whether air bubbles flow intermittently or continuously through the chest tube. If air bubbles flow intermittently, then the fistula is small. In contrast, when a patient has a large bronchopleural fistula or bronchial rupture, air will bubble continuously through the water-seal chamber of the chest-tube drainage system. Second, the size of the bronchopleural fistula may be quantified by the difference between inhaled and exhaled tidal volumes. In a nonintubated patient, this may be determined with a tight-fitting mask and a fast-responding spirometer. In an intubated patient, it is determined by direct attachment of the spirometer to the ETT. The larger the air leak, the greater the need to isolate the bronchopleural fistula with the use of a lung isolation device (a DLT or an independent bronchial blocker).

Several nonsurgical approaches (i.e., the use of various mechanical ventilation–chest tube drainage systems) have been used for the treatment of patients with a bronchopleural fistula. These approaches consist of OLV and differential lung ventilation, including HFV, PEEP to the pleural cavity equal to intrathoracic PEEP, and unidirectional chest tube valves. One-way endobronchial valves have been used successfully in patients with bronchopleural fistula who were considered unfit for surgery.[261]

For patients undergoing operative repair, the ability to adequately deliver positive-pressure ventilation intraoperatively must be carefully considered prior to surgery. A chest drain should be placed prior to induction to avoid the possibility of tension pneumothorax with positive-pressure ventilation. A DLT is the best choice for delivering positive-pressure ventilation. The DLT can provide positive-pressure ventilation to the normal lung without loss of minute ventilation through the fistula and prevent the hazard of contamination of the uninfected lung with infected material when the patient is turned to the lateral decubitus position.

The safest method of obtaining lung isolation may be awake fiberoptic intubation with a DLT.[262] However, this requires a cooperative patient and excellent topical anesthesia and is often not an option. Another option is to maintain spontaneous ventilation during induction and intubation until lung isolation is secured. This avoids the possibility of inadequate positive-pressure ventilation because of air-leak but is not well tolerated in older patients with significant comorbidity. With the availability of appropriate fiberoptic bronchoscopes, it is usually acceptable to manage patients with a normal airway using a modified rapid-sequence induction and direct bronchoscopic guidance of the DLT placement. If the patient has a postpneumonectomy fistula, the endobronchial lumen of the DLT or SLT should be placed in the noninvolved lung (i.e., for right-sided fistula a left-sided tube). Whatever anesthetic technique is used, the principle of anesthetic management for a bronchopleural fistula is: lung isolation must be confirmed before positive-pressure ventilation or repositioning the patient.

One option to avoid instrumentation of the airway in patients with bronchopleural fistula after pneumonectomy is the use of thoracic epidural anesthesia with intravenous sedation during minimally invasive surgery (discussed later in "Nonintubated Thoracic Surgery").[263] An alternative method of ventilating patients with multiple bronchopleural fistulas is the use of high-frequency oscillatory ventilation with permissive hypercapnia. This avoids barotrauma to the nonoperative lung, decreases bronchopleural fistula air-leak, and optimizes the operative outcome.[264] The advantage of high-frequency oscillatory ventilation over conventional mechanical ventilation is that it uses lower peak airway pressure and higher minimum airway pressure and may decrease the air leak across the fistula. Early extubation in the operating room should be considered in all patients undergoing fistula repair to avoid barotrauma to the surgical stump from positive-pressure ventilation in the postoperative period.

A report of two cases described the use of venovenous ECMO in a patient with an existing left bronchopleural fistula and thoracostomy who required a right thoracotomy for tumor resection (left lung ventilation and right lung collapse).[265] ECMO was initiated prior to OLV to maintain oxygenation during lung collapse.

Blebs, Bullae, Cysts, and Pneumatoceles

BLEBS

A bleb is a subpleural collection of air under the visceral pleura caused by a ruptured alveolus. The air dissects through the pulmonary parenchyma and enlarges to form a bubble on the surface of the lung. Blebs most commonly occur at the apices of the lung and can rupture into the interpleural space, causing a pneumothorax. A single episode of spontaneous pneumothorax is usually treated conservatively with chest tube drainage until the air leak has stopped. Resection of blebs is commonly indicated for recurrent pneumothoraces, bilateral pneumothoraces, or prolonged chest tube drainage. Resection of blebs after a single pneumothorax may be indicated if the patient's occupation exposes them to significant rapid fluctuations in atmospheric pressure (e.g., flight crews or scuba divers). Resection is most commonly combined with a procedure to obliterate the pleural space by partial pleurectomy or pleural abrasion. Resection of blebs is most often performed by VATS. Although VATS procedures per se are generally associated with a limited need for postoperative analgesia, pleurectomy or abrasion can be very painful.

BULLAE

Bullae are thin-walled, air-filled intraparenchymal lung spaces caused by the loss of alveolar structural tissue (Fig. 53.53). These are usually associated with emphysema, but their exact cause is unclear. Although there is some confusion over terminology in this area, bullous-like lesions of the lung associated with congenital malformations or secondary to trauma or infection are more correctly termed pneumatoceles or cysts. There are no universally accepted surgical indications for resection of lung bullae. A patient with symptomatic dyspnea and a giant bulla (or bullae) that occupies more than 30% of a hemithorax and in whom radiography and CT scans suggest that reasonably functional lung tissue can be restored to a more anatomically favorable position should be considered for bullectomy. Factors that support the effect of the bullae as a cause of a patient's dyspnea are a restrictive pattern of spirometry (proportional decrease of both FEV_1 and FVC) and a discrepancy in lung volume studies in which the FRC measured by plethysmography exceeds the FRC measured by helium dilution by more than 2 liters.

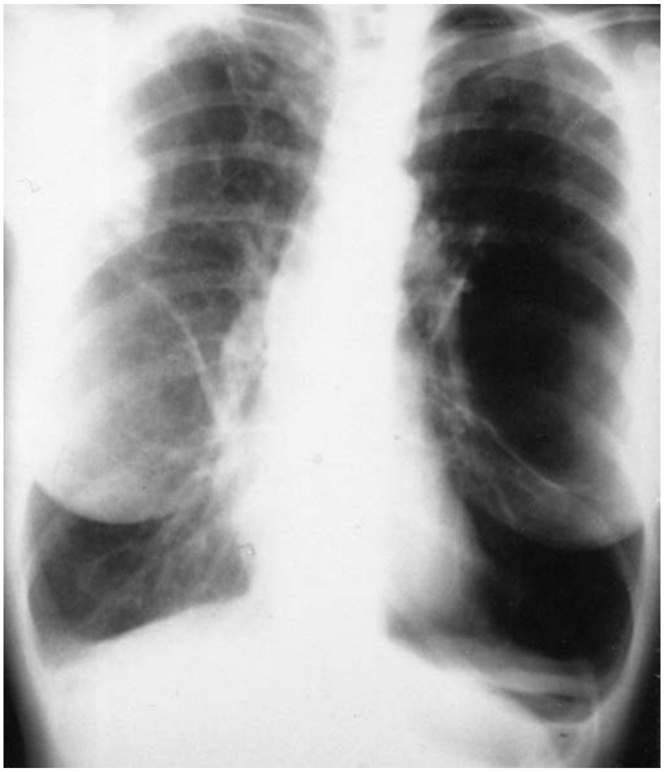


Fig. 53.53 Chest radiograph of a patient with severe emphysema and multiple bullae including giant bullae of the left upper and lower lobes. This patient also has a carcinoma of the right upper lobe.

In the usual tidal volume range, bullae are more compliant than normal lung and fill preferentially during spontaneous ventilation. However, beyond the normal tidal volume range, bullae become much less compliant and the intrabulla pressure rises acutely as airway pressure increases. Measurement of in vivo intrabullae pressures in patients using fine needles both before and during anesthesia showed no evidence of a valve mechanism.[60] All bullae studied communicated with the central airways, although some very slowly. The typical compression pattern seen on radiographs or CT scans is most likely due to secondary elastic recoil of normal lung regions (see Fig. 53.9). Intrabulla pressure at FRC corresponds with the mean airway pressure averaged over the respiratory cycle. Thus during spontaneous ventilation, the intrabulla pressure will be negative with respect to the surrounding lung tissue. However, whenever positive pressure is used, the intrabulla pressure will rise in relation to surrounding lung regions. There is a risk of hyperinflation and rupture whenever positive pressure is used. The complications of bulla rupture can be life threatening because of hemodynamic collapse from tension pneumothorax or inadequate ventilation owing to resultant bronchopleural fistulae.

Relief of dyspnea symptoms and improved pulmonary function are well documented in patients after resection of giant bullae with most patients showing an increase in FEV_1 of more than 0.3 L and excellent short-term improvement in quality of life, but with a decrease in improvement by 3 years.[266] Hypercapnia is not a contraindication to bullae resection. Lung infection must be meticulously treated preoperatively. Outcome depends on patient age, smoking history, and cardiac status. In the postoperative period lung air leaks are the major complication. The surgical approach can be by traditional sternotomy or by VATS. Laser resection may decrease the incidence of air leaks. Various nonsurgical thoracoscopic and bronchoscopic procedures such as the subsegmental injections of fibrin glue have been used to deal with these air leaks.

The anesthetic considerations for bullectomy are similar to those for a patient with a bronchopleural fistula, with the exceptions that it is best not to place a chest drain prophylactically as this may enter the bulla and create a fistula, and there is not the risk of soiling healthy lung regions from extrapleural fluid that there is with fistulae. For induction of anesthesia it is optimal to maintain spontaneous ventilation or to use small tidal volumes and low airway pressures until the lung or lobe with the bulla or bleb is isolated.[267] When there is a risk of aspiration or it is felt that the patient's gas exchange or hemodynamics may not permit spontaneous ventilation for induction, the anesthesiologist will have to use small tidal volumes and low airway pressures during positive pressure ventilation until the airway is isolated.

CYSTS

Congenital bronchogenic cysts are products of abnormalities in the tracheobronchial budding process of lung organogenesis. They may occur peripherally within the lung parenchyma (70%) or centrally attached to the mediastinum or hilum. Bronchogenic cysts become problematic if they become enlarged, exerting a mass effect on functional lung or mediastinal structures; if they rupture and create a pneumothorax; or if they become infected. Small cysts without communication to a bronchus are asymptomatic and may be incidentally noted as round, clearly demarcated lesions on chest radiographs. Communicating cysts often produce air-fluid levels, are prone to recurrent infection, and may trap air by a ball-valve mechanism, risking rapid expansion or rupture. Infected cysts may be obscured by surrounding pneumonia, or they may be difficult to differentiate from an empyema. CT scans help differentiate cystic from solid lesions. Conservative surgical excision of bronchogenic cysts is generally recommended, whether or not a bronchial communication is evident.

Pulmonary hydatid cysts are watery, parasitic cysts containing larvae of the dog tapeworm, *Echinococcus granulosus*.[268] *E. granulosus* is a relatively common cause of pulmonary cysts in endemic areas (Australia, New Zealand, South America, and some third-world regions). Hydatid cysts may grow in diameter by as much as 5 cm/year and become medically problematic in several ways. By mass effect, they may exert pressure on adjacent structures (e.g., bronchus, great vessels, esophagus). Spontaneous or traumatic rupture may occur, sending fluid, parasites, or laminated debris into adjacent tissue, bronchus, pleura, or the circulation (i.e., systemic emboli). Hypersensitivity reactions, bronchospasm, and anaphylaxis can result. Drainage into the bronchi may cause dramatic expulsion of fluid with respiratory distress or asphyxiation, depending on the amount of fluid involved. Rupture into the pleural space may result in a large hydropneumothorax, severe dyspnea, shock, suffocation, or anaphylaxis. Rupture becomes more dangerous and more likely as cysts become larger. It is recommended that any cyst larger than 7 cm should be removed.

Small, intact peripheral cysts are often easily enucleated without loss of lung parenchyma. Segmentectomy or lobectomy is indicated when single or multiple cysts occupy most of the segment or lobe. Patients with suppurative cysts should be prepared for surgery with postural drainage and antibiotics. Lung isolation and/or reduced airway pressure during dissection may be helpful in preventing herniation of the cyst. Increased airway pressure at the time of delivery may aid removal of the cyst. The multiple bronchial openings in the residual cavity must then be identified and closed. Multiple “leak tests” with saline in the residual opening may be required to locate all bronchial openings. An alternative surgical strategy is to inject hypertonic saline into the cyst to sterilize it, followed by aspiration of the contents and removal of the evacuated cyst.

PNEUMATOCELE

Pneumatoceles are thin-walled, air-filled spaces generated by pulmonary infections or trauma. They usually appear in the first week of a pneumonia and resolve spontaneously within 6 weeks. As with other lung cysts, potential complications of pneumatoceles include secondary infection and enlargement as a result of air entrapment, with possible rupture or displacement and compression of normal lung. Adverse hemodynamic consequences may result either from a tension pneumothorax or a tension pneumatocele. The latter is unusual and is presumed to result from a one-way valve mechanism, usually in the setting of positive-pressure mechanical ventilation.[269] Occasionally, surgical decompression is required and is performed by percutaneous needle aspiration, catheter drainage, or chest tube drainage under CT or fluoroscopic guidance. Rarely is thoracoscopic or open surgical drainage or excision required.

Lung Transplantation

End-stage pulmonary disease is one of the most common causes of death. Lung transplantation is a definitive treatment for these patients. Indications and contraindications to lung transplantation are summarized in Box 53.15. Approximately 1500 lung transplantations are performed annually worldwide; the number is limited by the supply of donor organs. Recipients fall into four major categories (by frequency of indication):

1. Pulmonary fibrosis: idiopathic, associated with connective tissue disorders, other
2. COPD
3. Cystic fibrosis (Fig. 53.54) and other congenital forms of bronchiectasis
4. Primary pulmonary hypertension

There are also several other, rarer indications such as primary bronchoalveolar lung cancer, lymphangioleiomyomatosis, and so on.[270] Depending on the patient's pathophysiology, there are several surgical options: single-lung transplantation, bilateral sequential (double) lung transplantation, heart-lung transplantation, and living-related lobar transplantation. An overall 5-year survival rate of 50% is the benchmark but depends on recipient age and diagnosis. Survival is generally better with double-lung than single-lung transplants, with the exception of elderly pulmonary fibrotic patients, for whom there is no outcome difference between the two procedures.

Anesthetic airway management is most commonly done with a DLT. The advantage of using a DLT in transplantation is that it allows direct continuous access to both lungs for suctioning, oxygenation, and examination of the bronchial anastomoses. Several advances have allowed the use of DLTs for transplantation. The use of segmental bronchial lavage at induction via an SLT, before placement of the DLT, facilitates suctioning via the DLT in patients with copious secretions. Monitoring

BOX 53.15 **Indications and Contraindications for Lung Transplantation**

Indications

Untreatable end-stage pulmonary, parenchymal, and/or vascular disease
Absence of other major medical illnesses
Substantial limitation of daily activities
Projected life expectancy less than 50% of 2- to 3-year predicted survival
New York Heart Association Class III or IV functional level
Rehabilitation potential
Satisfactory psychosocial profile and emotional support system
Acceptable nutritional status
Disease-specific mortality exceeding transplant-specific mortality over 1 to 2 years

Relative Contraindications

Over 65 years of age
Critical or unstable clinical conditions (e.g., shock, mechanical ventilation, or extracorporeal membrane oxygenation)
Severely limited functional status with poor rehabilitation potential
Colonization with highly resistant or virulent bacteria, fungi, or mycobacteria
Severe obesity defined as a body mass index greater than 30 kg/m^2
Severe or symptomatic osteoporosis
Other medical conditions not resulting in end-organ damage (e.g., diabetes mellitus, systemic hypertension, peripheral vascular disease, gastroesophageal reflux, patients with coronary artery disease s/p coronary artery stenting or percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty)

Absolute Contraindications

Untreatable advanced dysfunction of another major organ system (e.g., heart, liver, kidney)
Active malignancy within the previous 2 years
Noncurable chronic extrapulmonary infection
Chronic active viral hepatitis B, hepatitis C, or HIV
Significant chest wall or spinal deformity
Documented nonadherence or inability to follow through with medical therapy, office follow-up, or both
Untreatable psychiatric or psychologic condition associated with inability to cooperate or comply with medical therapy
Absence of a consistent or reliable social support system
Substance addiction (e.g., alcohol, tobacco, narcotics) that is either active or was active within the previous 6 months

Based on Weill D, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2015;34:1.

includes invasive arterial and pulmonary catheters and TEE in most centers. Anesthetic maintenance is based mainly on intravenous infusions because of the frequent need for airway access (i.e., suctioning, bronchoscopy), which causes problems maintaining a stable level of inspired anesthetic vapor. In spite of advances in lung preservation techniques, it is optimal to limit the donor lung ischemic period to 4 hours.

There are wide site-specific variations in the use of ECMO and CPB during lung transplantation. For adults, intraoperative venoarterial ECMO is largely replacing CPB due to the decreased need for blood transfusions and improved postoperative outcomes.[271] Venovenous ECMO is used increasingly for postoperative respiratory support.

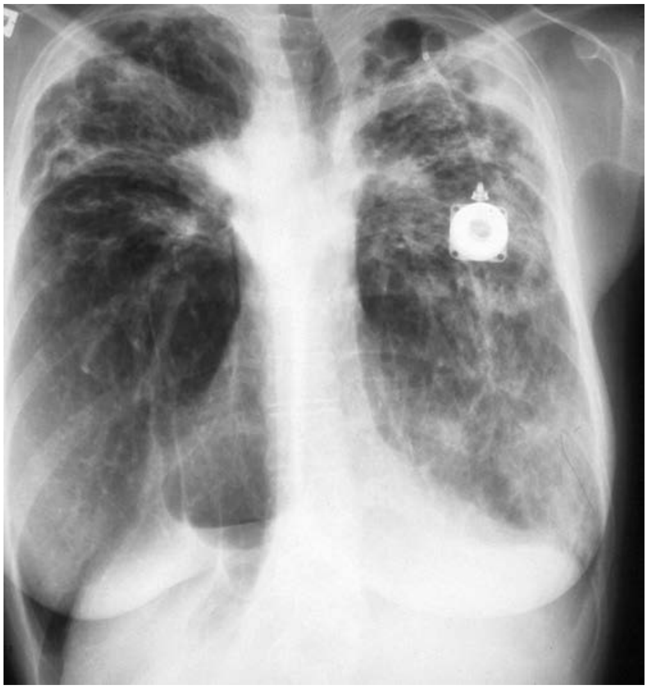


Fig. 53.54 Chest radiograph of a patient with cystic fibrosis for bilateral lung transplantation. The chest image shows a typical pattern of bronchiectasis. A subcutaneous intravenous injection reservoir is seen over the upper left chest.

The intraoperative anesthetic complications depend, in large part, on the underlying lung disease. Emphysema patients are prone to hypotension on induction from positive-pressure ventilation (see COPD in “Preoperative Evaluation of the Thoracic Surgery Patient” earlier). Problems in cystic fibrosis patients include the inability to deal with thick bronchial secretions and to adequately ventilate these patients. Cystic fibrosis patients, because they have both increased inspiratory and expiratory flow resistances, may benefit from slow inspiratory phase ventilation with a high airway pressure.[272] Because of the severely decreased lung compliance, this method of ventilation causes little hemodynamic compromise in this subgroup of patients, if air trapping is avoided. Other recipient disease-specific problems include: hemodynamic collapse on induction because of right-heart dysfunction in primary pulmonary hypertensives, the poor tolerance of pulmonary fibrotic patients for OLV, and the risk of pneumothoraces in patients with lymphangiomyomatosis.

ANESTHESIA FOR THE PATIENT AFTER LUNG TRANSPLANTATION

Many lung transplant recipients subsequently require anesthesia for related, or unrelated, surgical problems.[273] The frequency with which they present for surgery may be caused by complications of immunosuppression (e.g., infection, tumor, renal failure) or complications of the transplantation (e.g., bronchial stenosis, bronchiolitis obliterans).

A review of the patient’s prior spirometry and diffusion capacity tests should be carried out to identify patients who have low pulmonary reserve. Bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome (BOS) is a chronic rejection disorder seen in many post–lung transplant patients that leads to a restrictive lung disease. BOS accounts for a considerable proportion of the deterioration in lung function and affects more than half of the recipients that survive beyond 5 years. It is the main cause of mortality in patients who survive more than a year.[274]

Most transplant recipients can be managed according to routine anesthetic practice including optimal perioperative respiratory care, antibiotic prophylaxis, and maintenance of immune suppression. Results of recent blood gas analysis, chest radiographs, and CT scans are vital in managing these patients. Most adults will have bronchial anastomoses and there will be no problem with endotracheal intubation. If endobronchial intubation or a DLT is used, a bronchoscopy should be performed first to assess the bronchial anastomoses, and the intubation should be with fiberoptic guidance.

Single-lung transplant recipients with native lung emphysema are a specific concern. They have a marked imbalance in pulmonary compliance, with the native lung highly compliant and the donor lung of normal or reduced (if there is rejection) compliance. However, the major proportion of the pulmonary blood flow is usually to the allograft. With standard methods of positive pressure ventilation they may develop dynamic hyperinflation of the emphysematous lung with hemodynamic instability and problems with gas exchange. These patients may require the use of a DLT and independent lung ventilation techniques, reducing the airway pressure and minute ventilation in the native lung, if positive pressure ventilation is required.

LUNG VOLUME REDUCTION

The use of multiple wedge resections can reduce lung volume and improve symptoms in selected severe emphysema patients.[275] Depending on the patient and center, this procedure may be unilateral or bilateral and performed by thoracotomy, sternotomy, or VATS. The surgery is more effective in patients with heterogeneous lung disease where the most severely affected areas (often apical) can be resected, than in patients with homogenous types of emphysema (e.g., Alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency). Patients with extremely severe disease (FEV_1 or DLCO < 20% predicted) have poor survival after surgery.[276] This procedure is now most commonly seen as an option for patients with severe emphysema who have contraindications to transplantation.

Immediate postoperative improvements in symptoms and pulmonary function are common, and many patients are able to discontinue or reduce home oxygen therapy. These changes are the result of a decompression of the airways and a reduction of airflow resistance and work of breathing,[277] which results in a dramatic fall in auto-PEEP (intrinsic PEEP) with a corresponding increase in dynamic compliance. Despite the encouraging changes in early postoperative pulmonary function, the improvement in respiratory function as a result of this surgery is transient.[278] However, this must be viewed in the context of the short life expectancy of patients with this degree of emphysema and the potential for improvement in their quality of life from the operation.

Anesthetic management is similar to that for other patients with severe COPD having thoracic surgery (see COPD in "Preoperative Evaluation of the Thoracic Surgery Patient" earlier) with the risk of hypotension on induction caused by auto-PEEP and the need for excellent analgesia to avoid postoperative mechanical ventilation.[279] This procedure is now performed in some centers using one-way valves or coils placed bronchoscopically in the most involved segments to cause collapse of severely emphysematous distal lung regions,[280] thus avoiding surgery.

Pulmonary Hemorrhage

Massive hemoptysis is defined as expectoration of more than 200 mL of blood in 24 to 48 hours. The most prevalent causes are carcinoma, bronchiectasis, and trauma (e.g., blunt, penetrating, or secondary to a pulmonary artery catheter). Death can occur quickly as a result of asphyxia. Management requires four sequential steps: lung isolation, resuscitation, diagnosis, and definitive treatment. The anesthesiologist is often called to deal with these cases outside of the operating room. There is no consensus on the best method of lung isolation for these cases. The initial method for lung isolation will depend on the availability of appropriate equipment and an assessment of the patient's airway. All three basic methods of lung isolation have been used: DLTs, SLTs, and bronchial blockers. Fiberoptic bronchoscopy is usually not helpful to position endobronchial tubes or blockers in the presence of torrential pulmonary hemorrhage and lung isolation must be guided by clinical signs (primarily auscultation). DLTs will achieve rapid and secure lung isolation. Even if a left-sided tube enters the right mainstem bronchus, only the right upper lobe will be obstructed. However, suctioning large amounts of blood or clots is difficult through the narrow lumens of a DLT. An option is initial placement of an SLT for oxygenation and suctioning then replacement with a DLT either by laryngoscopy or with an appropriate tube exchanger. An uncut single-lumen ETT can be advanced directly into the right mainstem bronchus or rotated 90 degrees counterclockwise for advancement into the left mainstem bronchus.[281] A bronchial blocker will normally pass easily into the right mainstem bronchus and is useful for right-sided hemorrhage (90% of pulmonary artery catheter-induced hemorrhages are right-sided). Except for cases with blunt or penetrating trauma, after lung isolation and resuscitation have been achieved, diagnosis and definitive therapy of massive hemoptysis are now most commonly performed by coiling of the pulmonary artery false aneurysm in invasive radiology.[282]

PULMONARY ARTERY CATHETER-INDUCED HEMORRHAGE

Hemoptysis in a patient with a pulmonary artery catheter must be assumed to be caused by perforation of a pulmonary vessel by the catheter until proven otherwise. The mortality rate may exceed 50%. This complication seems to be occurring less than previously, possibly related to stricter indications for the use of pulmonary artery catheters and more appropriate management of the catheters with less reliance on wedge measurements. Therapy for pulmonary artery catheter-induced hemorrhage should follow an organized protocol with some variation depending on the severity of the hemorrhage (Box 53.16).

BOX 53.16 Management of the Patient With a Pulmonary Artery Catheter

Induced Pulmonary Hemorrhage

1. Initially position the patient with the bleeding lung dependent.
2. Perform endotracheal intubation, oxygenation, airway toilet.
3. Isolate the lung by endobronchial double- or single-lumen tube or bronchial blocker.
4. Withdraw the pulmonary artery catheter several centimeters, leaving it in the main pulmonary artery. Do not inflate the balloon (except with fluoroscopic guidance).
5. Position the patient with the isolated bleeding lung nondependent. Administer positive end-expiratory pressure to the bleeding lung if possible.
6. Transport the patient to medical imaging for diagnosis and embolization if feasible.

During Weaning from Cardiopulmonary Bypass

Weaning from CPB is one of the times when pulmonary artery catheter-induced hemorrhage is most likely to occur. Management of the pulmonary artery catheter during CPB by withdrawal from a potential wedge depth and observing the pulmonary artery pressure waveform to avoid wedging during CPB may decrease the risk of this complication. When hemoptysis occurs during CPB weaning, the anesthesiologist should resist the temptation to rapidly reverse the anticoagulation in order to quickly discontinue CPB, because this can lead to fatal asphyxiation from hemorrhage. Resumption of full CPB ensures oxygenation while the tracheobronchial tree is suctioned and then visualized with fiberoptic bronchoscopy. The use of a pulmonary artery vent may be required to decrease the pulmonary blood flow sufficiently to define the bleeding site (usually the right lower lobe). The pleural cavity should be opened to assess the lung parenchymal damage. Conservative management with lung isolation, to avoid lung resection, is optimal therapy if possible. In patients with persistent hemorrhage who are not candidates for lung resection, temporary lobar pulmonary artery occlusion with a vascular loop during and after weaning from CPB may be an option.

Posttracheostomy Hemorrhage

Hemorrhage in the immediate postoperative period following a tracheostomy is usually from local vessels in the incision such as the anterior jugular or inferior thyroid veins. Massive hemorrhage 1 to 6 weeks postoperatively is most commonly caused by tracheoinnominate artery fistula.[283] A small sentinel bleed occurs in most patients before a massive bleed. The management protocol for tracheoinnominate artery fistula is outlined in Box 53.17.

BOX 53.17 Management of Tracheoinnominate Artery Fistula Hemorrhage

- Overinflate the tracheostomy cuff to tamponade the hemorrhage.
- If this fails:
  - Replace the tracheostomy tube with an oral endotracheal tube. Position the cuff with fiberoptic bronchoscopic guidance just above the carina.
  - Apply digital compression of the innominate artery against the posterior sternum using a finger passed through the tracheostomy stoma.
- If this fails:
  - Slowly withdraw the endotracheal tube and overinflate the cuff to tamponade.
  - Proceed with definitive therapy: sternotomy and ligation of the innominate artery.

Pulmonary Thromboendarterectomy

Pulmonary thromboendarterectomy is a potentially curative procedure for chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension (CTEPH). CTEPH is a progressive disorder that responds poorly to conservative therapy, and pulmonary thromboendarterectomy is the most appropriate treatment, with a perioperative mortality of approximately 4%, which is less than lung transplantation. The majority of patients with CTEPH present for medical evaluation late in the disease because many have not had an obvious episode of deep venous thrombosis or pulmonary embolus, and the progression of the disease is insidious. Patients present with severe dyspnea on exertion and signs of right-sided heart failure. Surgical candidates have hemodynamically significant pulmonary vascular obstruction (pulmonary vascular resistance >300 dynes/sec/cm^5), with potentially accessible proximal areas of thromboemboli.

An inferior vena cava filter is often placed prophylactically prior to surgery. Surgery is performed via a midline sternotomy with CPB with or without periods of deep hypothermic circulatory arrest (DHCA). Anesthetic management is essentially the same as for a patient with primary pulmonary hypertension for lung transplantation, with the exception that there is no need for lung isolation, so airway management is done with a standard ETT. Monitoring includes femoral and pulmonary artery catheters, TEE, processed electroencephalography, and rectal/bladder temperatures.[284]

These patients are at risk of hemodynamic collapse because of right ventricular failure from hypotension during induction of general anesthesia. Induction may be performed with etomidate or ketamine to avoid hypotension. Support of SVR with noradrenaline or phenylephrine is usually required. If DHCA is used, it is preceded by mannitol and methylprednisolone to try to decrease cerebral cellular edema and to improve free-radical scavenging. The speed of warming and cooling is controlled on CPB to maintain a temperature gradient less than 10°C between blood and bladder/rectal temperatures. Periods of DHCA are usually limited to 20 minutes. Massive pulmonary hemorrhage occurs rarely during CPB in these cases. The instillation of phenylephrine 10 mg and vasopressin 20 units diluted in 10 mL saline via the ETT may be beneficial. Postoperatively, the patients are kept sedated, intubated, and ventilated for at least 24 hours to decrease the risk of reperfusion pulmonary edema. Noradrenaline or vasopressin infusions may be used to elevate the SVR and decrease cardiac output in order to decrease pulmonary blood flow.

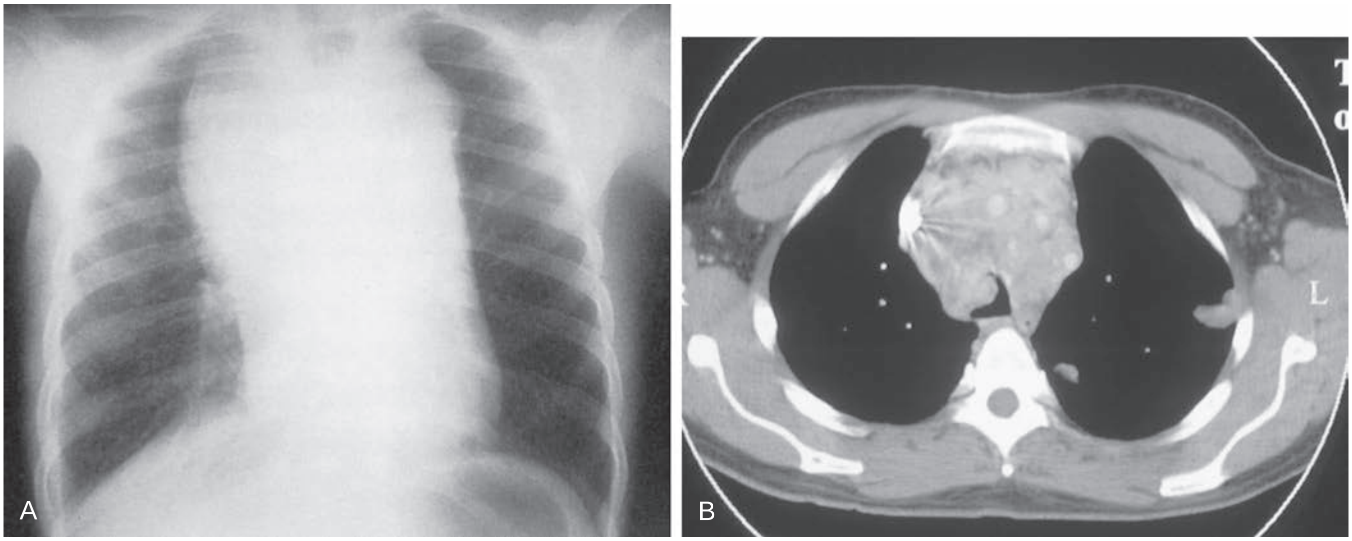


Fig. 53.55 (A) Chest radiograph of an adult patient with an anterosuperior mediastinal mass. This mass was a lymphoma. (B) A thoracic computed tomographic scan with contrast just above the level of the carina shows partial compression of the carina and right mainstem bronchus. This patient has an "Uncertain" distal airway (see text).

Bronchopulmonary Lavage

Bronchopulmonary lavage (BPL) is a treatment during which up to 10 to 20 L of normal saline are instilled then drained in 500- to 1000-mL aliquots through one side of a DLT into one lung under general anesthesia until the effluent is clear.[285] It may then be performed on the contralateral lung during the same anesthetic or during a subsequent anesthetic after a period of several days for recovery. It is the most effective treatment modality for symptomatic pulmonary alveolar proteinosis. This lung disease results from accumulation in the alveoli of a lipoprotein material similar to surfactant.[286] This disease seems to have an immune component, and some patients respond to conservative medical therapy with granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor.[287] Other pathologic states that have been treated by BPL include cystic fibrosis, asthma, radioactive dust inhalation, lipoid pneumonitis, and silicosis, all without convincing success.

General anesthesia is induced and maintained with intravenous infusions as for lung transplantation. Airway management is with a left-sided DLT.[288] The patient is kept in the supine position during the procedure. Because of transmitted hydrostatic pressure from the lavage lung to the pulmonary circulation, oxygenation increases during the filling phase and decreases during the emptying phase in synchrony with changes in the pulmonary blood flow distribution. These changes are usually transient and well tolerated. Usually 10 to 15 L is instilled and more than 90% is recovered leaving a deficit of less than 10%. At the end of the procedure, the lavaged lung is thoroughly suctioned. A dose of furosemide (10 mg) is administered to increase diuresis of absorbed saline. If the plan is to proceed to a lavage of the contralateral lung, there is a period of at least 1 hour of TLV to allow recovery of the lavaged lung, during which arterial blood gases are monitored. If there is a persistent large alveolar-arterial oxygen gradient preventing lavage of the second lung, venovenous ECMO may be instituted or the patient can be brought back for lavage of the other lung at a later date. Postprocedure, after reintubation with an SLT, a fiberoptic bronchoscopic inspection is performed for suctioning. Conventional ventilation with PEEP is continued, usually for less than 2 hours. Observation in the intensive care unit for 24 hours is part of the routine procedure. Some patients require lavage every few months, whereas others remain in remission for years.

Mediastinal Masses

Patients with mediastinal masses, particularly masses in the anterior or superior mediastinum, or both, present unique problems for the anesthesiologist. Patients may require anesthesia for biopsy of these masses by mediastinoscopy or VATS, or they may require definitive resection via sternotomy or thoracotomy. Tumors of the mediastinum include thymoma, teratoma, lymphoma, cystic hygroma, bronchogenic cyst, and thyroid tumors . Mediastinal masses may cause obstruction of major airways, main pulmonary arteries, atria, and the superior vena cava. During induction of general anesthesia in patients with an anterior or superior mediastinal mass, airway obstruction is the most common and feared complication. It is important to note that the point of tracheobronchial compression usually occurs distal to an ETT (Fig. 53.55) and it may not be possible to forcibly pass an ETT through the airway once it has collapsed. A history of supine dyspnea or cough should alert the clinician to the possibility of airway obstruction upon induction of anesthesia. Life-threatening complications may occur in the absence of symptoms in children. The other major complication is cardiovascular collapse secondary to compression of the heart or major vessels. Symptoms of supine presyncope suggest vascular compression.

Anesthetic deaths have mainly been reported in children. These deaths may be the result of the more compressible cartilaginous structure of the airway in children or because of the difficulty in obtaining a history of positional symptoms in children. The most important diagnostic test in the patient with a mediastinal mass is the CT scan of the trachea and chest. Children with tracheobronchial compression greater than 50% on CT scan cannot be safely given general anesthesia.[289] Flow-volume loops, specifically the exacerbation of a variable intrathoracic obstructive pattern (expiratory plateau) when supine, are unreliable[290] for predicting which patients will have intraoperative airway collapse.[291] Transthoracic echocardiography is indicated for patients with vascular compression symptoms.

MANAGEMENT

General anesthesia will exacerbate extrinsic intrathoracic airway compression in three ways. First, reduced lung volume occurs during general anesthesia and tracheobronchial diameters decrease according to lung volume. Second, bronchial smooth muscle relaxes during general anesthesia allowing greater compressibility of large airways. And third, paralysis eliminates the caudal movement of the diaphragm seen during spontaneous ventilation. This eliminates the normal transpleural pressure gradient that dilates the airways during inspiration and minimizes the effects of extrinsic intrathoracic airway compression.

Management of these patients is guided by their symptoms and the CT scan (Boxes 53.18 and 53.19). Patients with "uncertain" airways should have diagnostic procedures performed under local or regional anesthesia whenever possible. Patients with "uncertain" airways requiring general anesthesia need a step-by-step induction of anesthesia with continuous monitoring of gas exchange and hemodynamics. This "NPIC" (*noli pontes ignii consumere*; i.e., "don't burn your bridges") anesthetic induction can be an inhalation induction with a volatile anesthetic such as sevoflurane or intravenous titration of propofol with or without ketamine, maintaining spontaneous ventilation until either the airway is definitively secured or the procedure is completed.[292] Awake intubation of the trachea before induction is a possibility in some adult patients if the CT scan shows an area of noncompressed distal trachea to which the ETT can be advanced before induction. If muscle relaxants are required, ventilation should first be gradually taken over manually to assure that positive-pressure ventilation is possible and only then can a short-acting muscle relaxant be administered (Box 53.20).

BOX 53.18 **Grading Scale for Symptoms in Patients With an Anterior or Superior Mediastinal Mass**

Asymptomatic
Mild: Can lie supine with some cough/pressure sensation
Moderate: Can lie supine for short periods but not indefinitely
Severe: Cannot tolerate supine position

BOX 53.19 **Stratification of Patients with Mediastinal Masses Regarding Safety for General Anesthesia**

A.	**Safe**	(I)	Asymptomatic adult, CT minimal tracheal/bronchial diameter >50% of normal
B.	**Unsafe**	(I)	Severely symptomatic adult or child
		(II)	Children with CT tracheal/bronchial diameter <50% of normal, regardless of symptoms
C.	**Uncertain**	(I)	Mild/moderate symptomatic child with CT tracheal/bronchial diameter >50% of normal
		(II)	Mild/moderate symptomatic adult with CT tracheal/bronchial diameter <50% of normal
		(III)	Adult or child unable to give history

CT, Computed tomography scan.

Development of airway or vascular compression requires that the patient be awakened as rapidly as possible and then other options for the procedure be explored. Intraoperative life-threatening airway compression usually responds to one of two therapies: either repositioning of the patient (it must be determined before induction if there is a position that causes less compression and less symptoms) or rigid bronchoscopy and ventilation distal to the obstruction (this means that an experienced bronchoscopist and equipment must always be immediately available in the operating room for these cases). The rigid bronchoscope, even if passed into only one mainstem bronchus, can be used for oxygenation during resuscitation (see "Rigid Bronchoscopy," earlier).[293] Once adequate oxygenation has been restored the rigid bronchoscope can be used to position an airway exchange catheter, over which an ETT is passed after the bronchoscope is withdrawn. An alternative technique to secure the airway with rigid bronchoscopy is to first mount an ETT over a small rigid bronchoscope (e.g., 6 mm) and then perform rigid bronchoscopy using the bronchoscope to deliver the ETT distal to the obstruction.[294]

Institution of femorofemoral ECMO before induction of anesthesia is a possibility for some adult patients who are "unsafe" for NPIC general anesthesia. The concept of CPB "standby" during attempted induction of anesthesia is fraught with danger[295] because there is not enough time after a sudden airway collapse to establish CPB before hypoxic cerebral injury occurs.[296] Other options for "unsafe" patients include local anesthetic biopsy of the mediastinal mass or biopsy of another node (e.g., supraclavicular), preoperative radiotherapy with a nonradiated "window" for subsequent biopsy, preoperative chemotherapy or short-course steroids, and CT-guided biopsy of mass or drainage

BOX 53.20 **Management for All Patients With a Mediastinal Mass and an Uncertain Airway for General Anesthesia**

1. Determine optimal positioning of patient preoperatively
2. Secure airway beyond stenosis when patient is awake, if feasible
3. Have rigid bronchoscope and surgeon available at induction of anesthesia
4. Maintain spontaneous ventilation if possible *(noli pontes ignii consumere)*
5. Monitor for airway compromise postoperatively

of a cyst. The salient points in managing a patient with an anterior or superior mediastinal mass include[297]:

1. In virtually all children and adults with a mediastinal mass, diagnostic procedures and imaging and can be performed, if necessary, without subjecting the patient to the risks of general anesthesia.[298]
2. An extrathoracic source of tissue for diagnostic biopsy (pleural effusion or extrathoracic lymph node) should be sought as an initial measure in every patient.
3. Regardless of the proposed diagnostic or therapeutic procedure, the flat, supine position is never mandatory.
4. In the high-risk child (Box 53.21) without extrathoracic lymphadenopathy or a pleural effusion, prebiopsy steroid therapy is justifiable.[299] In this case, coordination with oncology, surgery, and anesthesiology is essential to organize timing of the biopsy. An alternative to preoperative steroids in the cooperative high-risk patient includes irradiating the tumor while leaving a small area covered with lead for subsequent biopsy.

With improved awareness of the risk of acute intraoperative airway obstruction in these patients, life-threatening events are now less likely to occur in the operating room. In children these events now tend to occur preoperatively if the patient is forced to assume a supine position for imaging. In adults, acute airway obstruction is now more likely to occur postoperatively in the recovery room.[300] Vigilance must be maintained throughout the entire perioperative period.

Thymectomy for Myasthenia Gravis

Myasthenia gravis is a disease of the neuromuscular junction; affected patients have weakness caused by a decreased number of acetylcholine receptors at the motor endplate.[301] Patients may or may not have an associated thymoma. Thymectomy is frequently performed to induce clinical remission, even in the absence of a thymoma. The effects of muscle relaxants are modified by this disease; myasthenic patients are resistant to succinylcholine and extremely sensitive to nondepolarizing blockers. Thymectomy may be performed via full or partial sternotomy, or with a minimally invasive approach via a transcervical incision or VATS. For thymectomy with a thymoma, a sternotomy is used. In the absence of an identifiable tumor, minimally invasive techniques are commonly used. Ideally, the use of neuromuscular relaxation is avoided. Induction of anesthesia with propofol, remifentanil, and topical anesthesia of the airway facilitates intubation without the use of muscle relaxants. Alternatively, inhalational induction with a halogenated agent such as sevoflurane may be performed.[302] For sternotomy, combined general and thoracic epidural anesthesia is a useful technique.

Neuromuscular blockers should be used with caution in myasthenic patients because of the increased sensitivity to nondepolarizing muscle relaxants that might result in prolonged postoperative partial paralysis associated with increased morbidity and the need for postoperative mechanical ventilation.[303] The cyclodextrin derivative, sugammadex, encapsulates steroidal neuromuscular blocking agents. Sugammadex has been approved as a therapy for reversal of neuromuscular blockade induced by the steroidal nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs, rocuronium and vecuronium. Sugammadex is used to reverse rocuronium in myasthenics.[304] Sugammadex dosing is dictated by the train-of-four response using a neuromuscular blockade monitor.

Most patients take pyridostigmine, an oral anticholinesterase, and many patients are on immunosuppressive medication (e.g., corticosteroids). On the day of surgery, pyridostigmine dosing should ensure that the patient's usual regimen is provided during the immediate perioperative period. A few patients require intravenous dosing with neostigmine until they are able to resume oral intake of pyridostigmine. A scoring system was devised for prediction of the need for prolonged mechanical ventilation after thymectomy via sternotomy.[305] Among the criteria that contributed to the predicted need for support were disease duration longer than 6 years, chronic respiratory illness, pyridostigmine dosage greater than 750 mg/day, and vital capacity less than 2.9 L. The relevance of this score has diminished with better preoperative preparation and minimally invasive surgery.[306] Referral for surgery early in the course of the disease and stabilization of symptoms with corticosteroids, intravenous immunoglobulin and plasmapheresis, combined with the increased use of minimally invasive approaches, have made the need for postoperative ventilation infrequent. In optimized patients, mean hospital length of stay can be reduced to 1 day after minimally invasive, and 3 days after transsternal thymectomy.[307] Patients should remain on their full medical regimen postoperatively. The remission from myasthenia gravis after thymectomy occurs slowly over a period of months to years.

BOX 53.21 Predictors of Airway Compromise in Children With a Mediastinal Mass

1. Anterior location
2. Histological diagnosis of lymphoma
3. Superior vena cava syndrome
4. Radiologic evidence of major vessel compression or displacement
5. Pericardial or pleural effusion

Based on Lam JCM, et al. *Pediatr Surg Int*. 2004;20:180.

NONINTUBATED THORACIC SURGERY

During the original thoracic surgery procedures in the late 1800s, patients were anesthetized with ether and breathed spontaneously without intubation. During open thoracotomy without oxygen supplementation, this led to progressive hypoxemia and hypercapnia and limited the duration of safe surgery. With improvements in anesthesia and VATS there has been a trend to return to nonintubated thoracic surgery in some centers. Initial reports focused on pleural drainage, lung biopsies, drainage of empyema, and similar procedures.[308] More recently the use of nonintubated surgery has expanded to lobectomy, segmentectomy, and other more complex operations. Benefits may include shorter hospital stays and fewer postoperative complications.[309]

Techniques of nonintubated thoracic anesthesia include a variety of methods of sedation or general anesthesia that maintain spontaneous ventilation.[310] Patients should receive supplemental oxygen to avoid hypoxemia. Patients may develop hypercapnia; however, mild hypercapnia is usually well tolerated. For patients who are hypercapnic at rest, the use of high-flow nasal oxygen may be beneficial. Dexmedetomidine provides satisfactory sedation in combination with epidural anesthesia for VATS in patients with severe respiratory dysfunction. If general anesthesia is selected, with either total intravenous or volatile anesthesia, an LMA is useful for nonintubated procedures. Regional anesthesia is commonly provided by either intercostal, paravertebral, or epidural blocks. Either of two ultrasound-guided chest wall blocks (serratus anterior plane and erector spinae plane [ESP]) (see later) may be appropriate in some patients. A remifentanil infusion may be helpful in patients who are tachypneic without hypoxemia. Also, remifentanil may decrease the cough reflex. But the risk of apnea must be appreciated and ventilation closely monitored. For surgical procedures that involve manipulation near the hilum, coughing may be problematic. Chen and associates describe the use of an intrathoracic vagal block with 2 to 3 mL of 0.25% bupivacaine injected close to the vagus nerve at the level of the lower trachea in the right hemithorax or in the aortopulmonary window on the left. This resulted in abolition of coughing for 3 hours.[311]

EXTRACORPOREAL MEMBRANE OXYGENATION

There is an increasing use of ECMO to manage oxygenation in thoracic surgery. ECMO has a well-established role in lung transplantation. There have been an increasing number of case reports of ECMO being used to manage oxygenation during other types of thoracic surgery where oxygenation cannot be maintained with conventional techniques.[312] The advantage of utilizing ECMO includes the ability to maintain oxygenation and carbon dioxide removal in cases where proper ventilation is not feasible or sufficient because of patient-specific comorbidities or anatomic derangements. There are multiple reports and case series describing the use of ECMO in patients with critical airway obstruction undergoing tracheal mass removal or stenting.[313] Also, ECMO has been used in patients with poor gas exchange when lung collapse was required. In these reports, elective initiation of ECMO (usually venovenous) prior to induction of anesthesia or prior to the start of the procedure led to acceptable outcomes.[314] A list of potential indications for ECMO in thoracic surgery is included in Box 53.22. Venovenous ECMO can be performed via a single double-lumen cannula (right internal jugular) or two cannulae (usually femoral and jugular). Venoarterial ECMO can be performed with peripheral cannulation (femoral) or central cannulation (e.g., right atrium and ascending aorta). It is useful to monitor cerebral oxygen saturation in addition to peripheral saturation when ECMO is used during surgery.

BOX 53.22 **Potential Indications for Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation to Improve Oxygenation During Thoracic Surgery**

- Severe airway obstruction
- Emergency loss of airway
- Extended carinal pneumonectomy
- Severe emphysema undergoing lung volume reduction surgery
- Acute respiratory distress syndrome undergoing thoracotomy and decortication
- Tracheoesophageal fistula repair after previous pneumonectomy
- Esophagectomy after previous pneumonectomy
- Segmentectomy after previous contralateral pneumonectomy
- Thoracotomy after previous single lung transplantation
- Thoracotomy with existing contralateral bronchopleural fistula
- Salvage therapy for severe chest trauma

Postoperative Management

ENHANCED RECOVERY AFTER SURGERY

Enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) is a combined multispecialty approach to perioperative management that has been adopted by many surgical specialties.[315] The concept is to mitigate the stress response to surgery and enable a faster recovery. ERAS pathways in lung cancer surgery are associated with reduced complications, a shorter length of stay, and cost savings.[316] A recent panel convened by the European Society of Thoracic Surgeons has published guidelines for ERAS in thoracic surgery (Tables 53.12 and 53.13)[317] with suggestions for both surgical and anesthetic management. Their recommendations (strong or weak) are based on the quality of the evidence (high, moderate, low, and very low) and also the balance between desirable and undesirable effects of each intervention.

TABLE 53.12 Surgical Modifiable Factors for Enhanced Recovery

Surgical Factor	Evidence Level	Recommendation Grade
Nutritional supplements if malnourished	Moderate	Strong
Smoking cessation	High	Strong
Pulmonary rehabilitation for borderline lung function or exercise capacity	Low	Strong
Mechanical and pharmacologic VTE prophylaxis	Moderate	Strong
Antibiotic prophylaxis	High	Strong
VATS for early stage lung cancer	High	Strong
Postoperative incentive spirometry	Low	Strong

VATS, Video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery.
Based on Batchelor T, Rasburn N, Abdelnour-Berchtold E, et al. *Eur J Cardio-Thorac Surg*. 2018, in press.

EARLY MAJOR COMPLICATIONS

There are multiple potential major complications that can occur in the immediate postoperative period following thoracic surgery, such as torsion of a remaining lobe after lobectomy, dehiscence of a bronchial stump, or hemorrhage from

TABLE 53.13 Anesthetic Modifiable Factors for Enhanced Recovery

Anesthetic Factor	Evidence Level	Recommendation Grade
Double-lumen tube or bronchial blocker for lung isolation	Moderate	Strong
Lung protective ventilation	Moderate	Strong
Temperature monitoring and active warming	High	Strong
Combined regional and general anesthesia	Low	Strong
Multimodal management of postoperative nausea and vomiting	Moderate	Strong
Inclusion of acetaminophen and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs in analgesia	High	Strong
Euvolemic fluid management	High	Strong
Nonintubated thoracic surgery	Low	Not Recommended

Based on Batchelor T, Rasburn N, Abdelnour-Berchtold E, et al. *Eur J Cardio-Thorac Surg*. 2018, in press.

a major vessel. Fortunately, these are infrequent and when they do occur, the principles of management are as outlined earlier for common and specific procedures. Among the possible complications, two will be discussed in more detail: (1) respiratory failure, because it is the most common cause of major morbidity after thoracic surgery; and (2) cardiac herniation because, although it is rare, it is usually fatal if it is not quickly diagnosed and appropriately treated.

Respiratory Failure

Respiratory failure is a leading cause of postoperative morbidity and mortality in patients undergoing major lung resection. Acute respiratory failure after lung resection is defined as the acute onset of hypoxemia ($PaO_2 < 60$ mm Hg) or hypercapnia ($PaCO_2 > 45$ mm Hg) or the use of postoperative mechanical ventilation for more than 24 hours or reintubation for controlled ventilation after extubation. The incidence of respiratory failure after lung resection is between 2% and 18%. Patients with decreased respiratory function preoperatively are at increased risk of postoperative respiratory complications. In addition, age, the presence of coronary artery disease, and the extent of lung resection play major roles in predicting postoperative mortality and morbidity. Crossover contamination, because of the failure of lung isolation intraoperatively during lung resection in patients with contaminated secretions, can result in contralateral pneumonia and postoperative respiratory failure.[318] Mechanical ventilation during the postoperative period after lung resection is associated with the risk of acquired nosocomial pneumonia and bronchopleural fistula.

Decreased pulmonary complications in high-risk patients are associated with the use of thoracic epidural analgesia during the perioperative period.[2] The prevention of atelectasis and secondary infections have been attributed to better preservation of the functional RV, efficient mucociliary clearance, and alleviation of the inhibiting reflexes acting on the diaphragm in patients receiving epidural analgesia.[319] Chest physiotherapy, incentive spirometry, and early ambulation are crucial in order to minimize pulmonary complications after lung resection. For an uncomplicated lung resection, early extubation is desirable to avoid potential complications that can arise as a result of prolonged intubation and mechanical ventilation. Current therapy to treat acute respiratory failure is supportive therapy attempting to provide better oxygenation, treat infection, and provide vital organ support without further damaging the lungs.

Cardiac Herniation

Acute cardiac herniation is an infrequent but well-described complication of pneumonectomy, where the pericardium is incompletely closed or the closure breaks down.[320] It usually occurs immediately or within 24 hours after chest surgery and is associated with greater than 50% mortality. Cardiac herniation may also occur after a lobar resection with pericardial opening, or in other chest tumor resections involving the pericardium or in trauma.[321] When cardiac herniation occurs after a right pneumonectomy, the clinical presentation is caused by impairment of the venous return to the heart with a concomitant increase in CVP, tachycardia, profound hypotension, and shock. An acute superior vena cava syndrome ensues because of the torsion of the heart.[322] In contrast, when the cardiac herniation occurs after a left-sided pneumonectomy, there is less cardiac rotation, but the edge of the pericardium compresses the myocardium. This may lead to myocardial ischemia, the development of arrhythmias, and ventricular outflow tract obstruction. Cardiac herniation occurs after chest closure because of the pressure difference between the two hemithoraces. This pressure difference may result in the heart being extruded through a pericardial defect.

Management for a patient with a cardiac herniation should be considered as dire emergent surgery. The differential diagnosis should include massive intrathoracic hemorrhage, pulmonary embolism, or mediastinal shift from improper chest drain management. Early diagnosis and immediate surgical treatment by relocation of the heart to its anatomic position with repair of the pericardial defect or by the use of analogous or prosthetic patch material is key to patient survival. Because these patients have undergone a previous thoracotomy, all precautions should be taken for a "redo" exploration. This includes the use of large-bore intravenous catheters and an arterial line. Maneuvers to minimize the cardiovascular effects include positioning the patient in the full lateral position with the operated side up. Because time is crucial an SLT is used. Vasopressors or inotropes, or both, are required to support the circulation while exploration takes place. The use of TEE intraoperatively and after resuscitation and relocation of the heart can be considered during pericardial patch repair to prevent excessive compression of the heart by the repair.[323] In general, patients undergoing an emergency thoracic reexploration remain intubated and are transferred to the intensive care unit postoperatively.

Postoperative Analgesia

Studies prior to 1990 consistently reported a 15% to 20% rate of major respiratory complications (atelectasis, pneumonia, respiratory failure) within the first 3 days

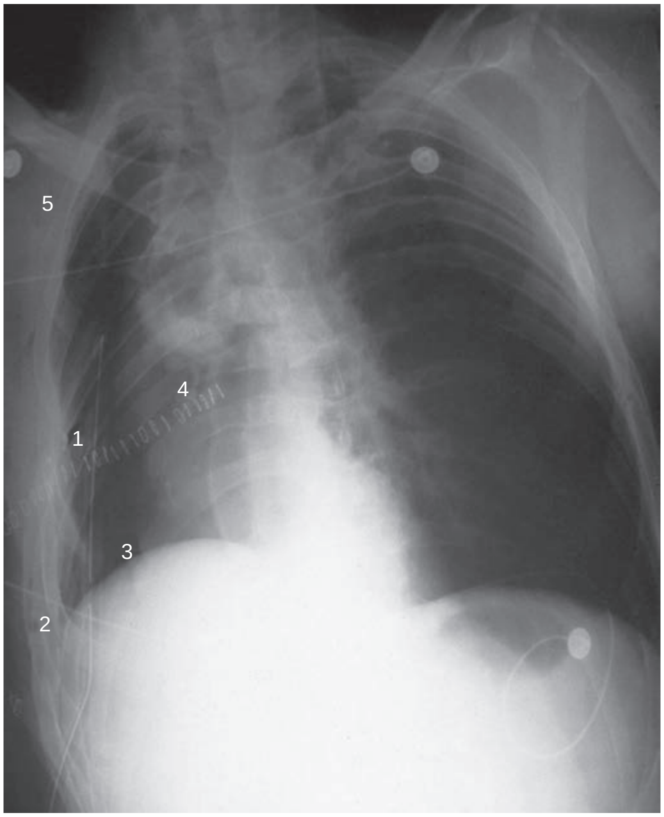


Fig. 53.56 Multiple sources of afferent transmission of pain sensations after thoracotomy. (1) Intercostal nerves at the site of the incision (usually T4-T6); (2) intercostal nerves at the site of chest drains (usually T7-T8); (3) phrenic nerve afferents from the dome of the diaphragm; (4) vagal nerve innervation of the mediastinal pleura; (5) brachial plexus.

after thoracic surgery.[1] This time of onset may relate to the unique pattern of recovery of pulmonary function following thoracotomy, which shows a delay in the initial 72-hour postoperative period that is not seen with other major surgical incisions.[324] The incidence of postthoracotomy respiratory complications has shown an overall decline to less than 10%, whereas the cardiac complication rate has not changed.[2] Improvements in postoperative care, specifically pain management, are the major cause of this decline.

There are multiple sensory afferents that transmit nociceptive stimuli following thoracotomy (Fig. 53.56). These include the incision (intercostal nerves T4-T6), chest drains (intercostal nerves T7-T8), mediastinal pleura (vagus nerve, CN 10), central diaphragmatic pleura (phrenic nerve, C3-C5),[325] and ipsilateral shoulder (brachial plexus). There is no one analgesic technique that can block all these various pain afferents, so analgesia should be multimodal. The optimal choice for an individual patient depends on patient factors (i.e., contraindications, preferences), surgical factors (i.e., type of incision), and system factors (i.e., available equipment, monitoring, nursing support). The ideal postthoracotomy analgesic technique will include three classes of drugs: opioids, antiinflammatory agents, and local anesthetics.

SYSTEMIC ANALGESIA

Opioids

Systemic opioids alone are effective in controlling background pain, but the acute pain component associated with cough or movement requires plasma levels that produce sedation and hypoventilation in most patients. Even when administered by patient-controlled devices, pain control is generally poor[326] and patients have interrupted sleep patterns when serum opioid levels fall below the therapeutic range.

Nonsteroidal Antiinflammatory Drugs

NSAIDs can reduce opioid consumption more than 30% following thoracotomy and are particularly useful treating the ipsilateral shoulder pain that is often present postoperatively and is poorly controlled with epidural analgesia. NSAIDs act through reversible inhibition of COX, which has antiinflammatory and analgesic effects but can also be associated with decreased platelet function, gastric erosions, increased bronchial reactivity, and decreased renal function. Acetaminophen is an antipyretic/analgesic with weak COX inhibition and can be administered orally or rectally in doses up to 4 g/day. It is effective against shoulder pain and has a low toxicity compared with more potent COX-inhibiting NSAIDs.[327]

Ketamine

Ketamine is used increasingly for postthoracotomy pain as part of multimodal analgesic therapy in combination with regional analgesia, opioids, and antiinflammatory agents.[328] Ketamine can be started intraoperatively as low-dose boluses or infusions and continued postoperatively as an infusion. Common postoperative infusion doses are in the range of 0.1 to 0.15 mg/kg/h.[329] The possibility of psychomimetic effects with ketamine is always a concern but is rarely seen with analgesic, subanesthetic doses. Although perioperative ketamine is useful to reduce acute postthoracotomy pain, it is unclear if it has any benefit in reducing chronic postthoracotomy pain.[330]

Dexmedetomidine

Dexmedetomidine, a selective adrenergic alpha-2 receptor agonist, has been reported as a useful adjunct for postthoracotomy analgesia and can significantly decrease the requirement for opioids when used in combination with other analgesics.[331] Maintenance infusion doses for analgesia in children and adults are in the range of 0.3 to 0.4 μg/kg/h.[332] It is associated with some hypotension, but it seems to preserve renal function.

Intravenous Lidocaine

Intra- and postoperative lidocaine infusions are frequently included in multimodal analgesic regimens for a wide variety of surgical procedures.[333] Commonly used doses range between 1 to 2 mg/kg/h. Intravenous lidocaine has not been well studied for postthoracotomy/VATS pain. Small studies of intravenous lidocaine in thoracic surgery have had mixed results.[334,335]

Gabapentinoids

Gabapentin and pregabalin are well known drugs used to treat chronic pain syndromes. Their usefulness in treating acute pain following thoracic surgery is unclear. A single dose of preoperative gabapentin did not show any benefit when used in conjunction with epidural analgesia.[336] One study of postthoracotomy pain using intravenous morphine analgesia showed a benefit when gabapentin was administered pre- and postoperatively.[337]

LOCAL ANESTHETICS/NERVE BLOCKS

Intercostal Nerve Blocks

Regional blocks of the intercostal nerves supplying the dermatomes of the surgical incision can be an effective adjunct to methods of postthoracotomy analgesia. These can be done percutaneously or under direct vision when the chest is open. The duration of analgesia is limited to the duration of action of the local anesthetic used, and the blocks will need to be repeated to have any useful effect on postoperative lung function. Indwelling intercostal catheters are an option but they can be difficult to position reliably percutaneously. Nerve blocks are useful supplements for the pain associated with the multiple small-port incisions and chest drains after VATS. It is important to avoid injection into the intercostal vessels, which are adjacent to the nerve in the intercostal groove. It is also important to place the block near the posterior axillary line to be certain to block the lateral cutaneous branch of the intercostal nerve. Total bupivacaine dose for a single session of blocks should not exceed 1 mg/kg (e.g., for a 75-kg patient: 3 mL bupivacaine 0.5% with epinephrine 1:200,000 at each of 5 levels).

Liposomal encapsulated bupivacaine has a slow release of local anesthetic over a period of 72 to 96 hours. Liposomal bupivacaine was originally introduced for local wound infiltration; however, it has been also used for intercostal blocks for thoracotomy and VATS. In combination with multimodal techniques, the postoperative analgesia may be comparable to thoracic epidural analgesia.[338] The onset of useful analgesia with liposomal bupivacaine is at least 45 minutes, which may be a problem if it is injected only at the end of surgery.[339]

Epidural Analgesia

The routine use of neuraxial analgesia for postthoracotomy patients is a well-established concept. Spinal injection of opioids can have a duration of analgesia that approaches 24 hours after thoracotomy. Because of the concerns of possible infection with subarachnoid catheters and the need to repeat spinal injections, investigation and therapy has focused on epidural techniques. A meta-analysis of respiratory complications after various types of surgery has shown that epidural techniques reduce the incidence of respiratory complications.[340] Thoracic epidural analgesia for thoracic surgery with infusions of local anesthetic and opioids has become the “gold-standard” against which other techniques of postthoracotomy analgesia are measured. Opioid and local anesthetic combinations provide better analgesia at lower doses than either drug alone.[341] The use of epidural infusions has an excellent record for patient safety when used on routine postoperative surgical wards.[342] The use of a paramedian approach to the epidural space in the midthoracic levels (Fig. 53.57) has improved the success rate for many clinicians. Ultrasound guidance has not yet proven to be as useful for thoracic epidural catheter placement as it has for other types of regional blockade.[343] Identification of the epidural space is most commonly performed with a loss-of-resistance technique that is operator dependent. After injection of a small volume of saline (5 mL) through the Tuohy needle, the epidural pressure can be transduced and a typical waveform can be seen that identifies the epidural space with a high degree of sensitivity and specificity.[344]

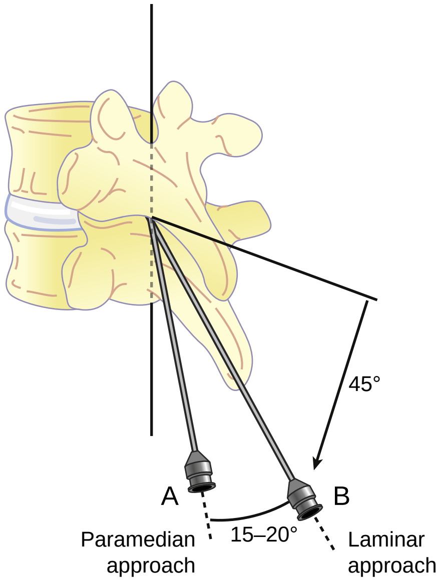


Fig. 53.57 (A) The paramedian approach to the epidural space is now favored by most anesthesiologists at the midthoracic levels. The needle is inserted 1 cm lateral to the superior tip of the spinous process and then advanced perpendicular to all planes to contact the lamina of the vertebral body immediately below. The needle is then “walked” up the lamina at an angle rostrally (45 degrees) and medially (20 degrees) until the rostral edge of the lamina is felt. The needle is then advanced over the edge of the lamina seeking a loss of resistance on entering the epidural space after transversing the ligamentum flavum. (B) The laminar approach is favored by some practitioners. The needle is inserted next to the rostral edge of the spinous process and advanced straight without any angle from the midline. (Reprinted with permission from Ramamurthy S. Thoracic epidural nerve block. In: Waldman SD, Winnie AP, eds. *Interventional Pain Management*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1996)

Research has shed light on the pharmacology, which underlies the synergy between local anesthetics and opioids to produce segmental epidural analgesia. In a double-blind randomized study, Hansdottir and associates[345] compared epidural infusions of lumbar sufentanil, thoracic sufentanil, and thoracic sufentanil plus bupivacaine (S+B) for postthoracotomy analgesia. Infusions were titrated for equianalgesia at rest. Thoracic sufentanil plus bupivacaine provided significantly better analgesia with movement and less sedation than the other infusions. Although sufentanil dosages and serum levels were significantly lower in the combined (S+B) group than in the other two groups, lumbar cerebral spinal fluid levels of sufentanil at 24 and 48 hours were higher in the combined group than in the thoracic sufentanil group (this suggests that the local anesthetic facilitates entry of the opioid from the epidural space into the cerebral spinal fluid).

In patients with severe emphysema, analgesic doses of thoracic epidural analgesia plus bupivacaine do not cause any significant reduction in lung mechanics or increase in airway resistance.[346] In volunteers, a thoracic level of epidural blockade increases FRC.[347] This increase is largely because of an increase in thoracic gas volume caused by a fall in the resting level of the diaphragm without a fall in tidal volume. Differences in lipid solubility that create relatively minor clinical differences in the effects of opioids when used systemically cause major differences in the effects of these same opioids when used neuraxially. The highly lipid-soluble agents (e.g., fentanyl, sufentanil) are associated with narrow dermatomal spread, rapid onset, and low incidence of pruritus/nausea, and can be potentiated by epinephrine. However, these lipid-soluble agents have significant absorption and systemic effects when used as epidural infusions.[348] For incisions that cover many dermatomes (e.g., sternotomy) or for procedures that have combined abdominal and thoracic incisions (e.g., esophagectomy), the hydrophilic opioids (e.g., morphine, hydromorphone) are preferable.

Paravertebral Block

The paravertebral space is a potential space deep to the endothoracic fascia that the intercostal nerve traverses as it passes from the intervertebral foramen en route to the intercostal space (Fig. 53.58). A catheter can be placed in the thoracic paravertebral space either percutaneously or by approaching the space anteriorly and directly when the chest is open intraoperatively.

There is also a combined percutaneous/direct-vision method in which the tip of the Tuohy needle is advanced percutaneously into the paravertebral space under direct vision either during open thoracotomy or VATS. The tip of the needle is seen to enter the paravertebral space and the pleura is not punctured. Saline is injected via the Tuohy needle to hydrodissect the paravertebral space and an epidural catheter is passed into the pocket that has been created in the paravertebral space and then secured at the skin.

Paravertebral local anesthetics provide a reliable multilevel intercostal blockade that tends to be unilateral with a low tendency to spread to the epidural space. Clinically the analgesia is comparable to that from epidural local anesthetics.[349] Studies comparing paravertebral versus thoracic epidural analgesia for thoracotomies have suggested the following advantages for paravertebral blockade[350]: comparable analgesia; fewer failed blocks; decreased risk of neuraxial hematoma; and less hypotension, nausea, or urinary retention. Because there is the option to place the paravertebral catheter under direct vision, this may contribute to the lower incidence of failed blocks versus thoracic epidural analgesia.

Paravertebral infusions in combination with NSAIDs and systemic opioids are a reasonable alternative to epidural techniques in children or some patients with contraindications to neuraxial blockade. Using common therapeutic doses (e.g., 0.1 mL/kg/h of bupivacaine 0.5%), serum bupivacaine levels can approach toxic levels by 4 days.[351] An alternative regime for paravertebral infusions is lidocaine 1% (1 mL/10 kg/h; maximum 7 mL/h). It has not yet been demonstrated if paravertebral analgesia can contribute to a decrease in respiratory morbidity in high-risk cases, which has been shown for thoracic epidural analgesia.[352]

Ultrasound-Guided Blocks

The increasing use of ultrasound in regional anesthesia has improved the success of percutaneous paravertebral blocks[353] and has enabled the development of several useful new blocks for postthoracotomy/VATS analgesia.

The serratus anterior plane block is performed at the level of the fifth rib in the midaxillary line. At this level, the serratus anterior muscle can be identified overlying the ribs, with the latissimus dorsi muscle lying superior to the serratus muscle. Needle insertion can be performed in-plane or out-of-plane, depending on provider preference. The serratus anterior plane block can be achieved by injecting local anesthetic either above or below the serratus muscle, with equivalent analgesic spread with both techniques. Serratus anterior plane block has been shown to improve the analgesia provided by patient-controlled morphine.[354]

The ESP block is an ultrasound-guided block for both acute and chronic postthoracotomy pain. It may, in fact, be a variant of the paravertebral block. Injection of 20 mL of solution into the fascial plane deep into the erector spinae

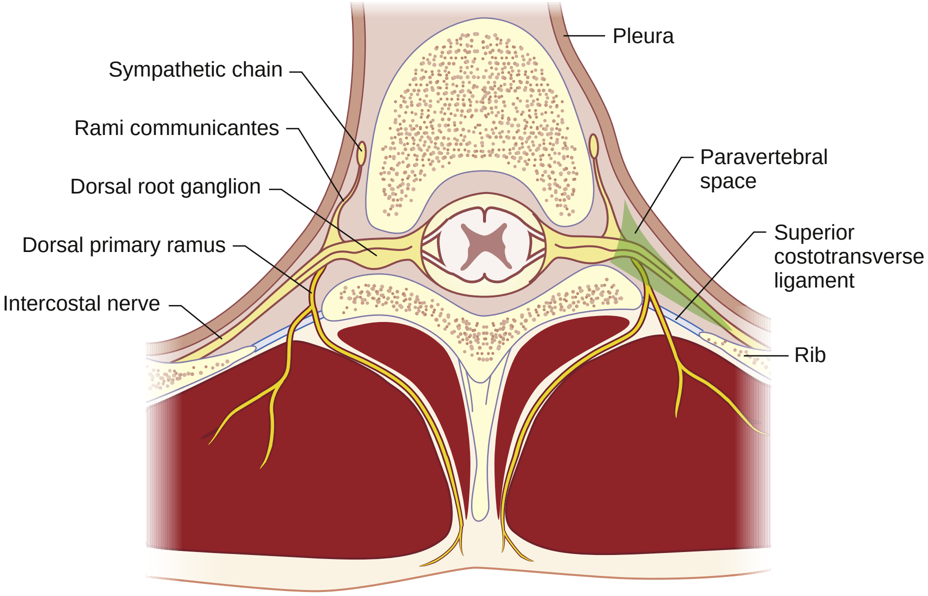


Fig. 53.58 Diagram of the paravertebral space. The space is bound medially by the vertebral body, posteriorly by the costotransverse ligaments and the heads of the ribs, and anteriorly by the endothoracic fascia and parietal pleura. (From Conacher ID, Slinger PD. *Thoracic Anesthesia.* 3rd ed. Kaplan J, Slinger P, eds. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2003.)

muscle at the level of the T5 transverse process can result in a spread of injectate from C7 to T8 vertebral levels.[355] This block has been described for postthoracotomy analgesia rescue in a case of failed epidural analgesia in a patient receiving prophylactic anticoagulation.[356] The benefit of an ESP block over a paravertebral block may be the more obvious end-point for an ESP block as the needle tip contacts the transverse process of the vertebra. An ultrasound-visible regional anesthetic needle (e.g., 8 cm, 17-gauge) is inserted to contact the transverse process of the appropriate thoracic vertebra deep to the anterior fascia of the erector spinae muscle (Fig. 53.59). A total of 20 to 25 mL of local anesthetic solution (e.g., 0.2% ropivacaine) is administered in 5 mL aliquots under direct vision. A catheter is then passed 5 cm distal to the tip of the needle and an infusion of 5 to 8 mL/h is begun.

POSTOPERATIVE PAIN MANAGEMENT PROBLEMS

Shoulder Pain

Ipsilateral shoulder pain is very common after thoracic surgery. It has been documented in 78% of patients immediately postoperatively.[357] In 42% of patients this pain was judged to be clinically relevant. By postoperative day 4, 32% of patients had shoulder pain, but only 7% had clinically relevant shoulder pain. Shoulder pain occurred after both open and VATS surgery; the incidence may be decreased after VATS. This pain was felt to be of two major types:

1. Referred pain (55%). This is thought to originate from phrenic nerve afferent fibers and related to diaphragmatic or mediastinal irritation.
2. Musculoskeletal (45%). This pain was associated with tenderness of the involved shoulder muscles and pain with movement.

Of the two types, the musculoskeletal pain was more intense and more difficult to treat.

Shoulder pain is not treated by any of the common regional blocks performed for thoracic surgery (e.g., thoracic epidural analgesia, paravertebral block). Shoulder pain is most responsive to antiinflammatories. Phrenic nerve infiltration and interscalene brachial plexus block[358] have had some success but carry a risk of causing diaphragm dysfunction.

Postthoracotomy Neuralgia and Chronic Incisional Pain

In one prospective study, chronic postoperative pain at 6 months was documented in 33% of patients after thoracotomy and 25% after VATS.[359] In this study, chronic pain was not associated with preoperative psychosocial measurements found to correlate with chronic postoperative pain in other types of surgery. Chronic pain was associated with acute postoperative pain. This suggests that chronic pain after thoracic surgery may be partially preventable by intensive management of acute postoperative pain.[360]

MANAGEMENT OF OPIOID TOLERANT PATIENTS

The opioid tolerant patient requiring thoracic surgery presents a significant challenge. Patients may be using physician prescribed opioids for pain related to their thoracic pathology, or other chronic pain syndromes. Active abusers of narcotics or those in a rehabilitation program receiving daily methadone also are included in this group. Whenever possible, patients should take their regular analgesia or methadone preoperatively; otherwise substitute opioids must be provided. The opioid doses required to produce adequate postoperative analgesia are increased.

A multimodal analgesic regimen is optimal. A choice must be made regarding the method of increased opioid delivery, either systemically and/or through an epidural. An increased narcotic dose may be provided in the epidural solution, or standard narcotic concentrations may be used in the epidural with additional systemic narcotic. de Leon-Casasola and Yarussi[361] report that higher epidural doses of opioid can curtail the appearance of narcotic withdrawal in most patients. More frequently, the patient receives a standard or slightly increased concentration of opioid in the epidural infusion and additional systemic opioid to minimize the occurrence of withdrawal. A convenient way to provide drug delivery in patients not immediately able to take oral medication is in the form of a transdermal fentanyl patch. Systemic opioids can be provided as a continuous intravenous infusion or in oral format.

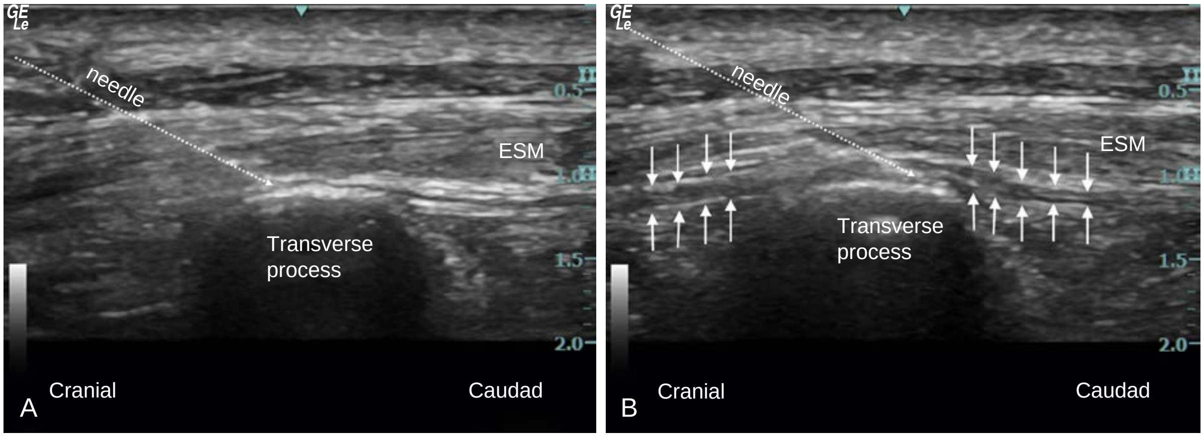


Fig. 53.59 (A) The erector spinae plane block. The ultrasound probe is placed lateral to the spinous process to obtain a parasagittal view of the tip of the targeted transverse process with overlying erector spinae muscle *(ESM)*. The block needle *(dotted arrow)* is advanced in a cranial-caudal direction to contact the transverse process. (B) Correct needle tip position is signaled by linear spread of local anesthetic *(solid arrows)* deep to the ESM and superficial to the transverse process. (Photos courtesy KJ Chin Medicine Professional Corporation.)

Patient-controlled analgesic techniques are often difficult to manage in these patients and they may be best managed with fixed dosage regimens that are modified as needed. Ultimately, after dose titration the patient may be receiving both increased epidural opioid and greater than preoperative doses of systemic opioid, without significant side effects. Patients in whom epidural bupivacaine-morphine analgesia is inadequate may respond to a switch to bupivacaine-sufentanil.[362] Patients in drug rehabilitation programs with methadone may be reluctant to modify their methadone dose perioperatively, having struggled to establish a stable dose in the past. They frequently can take their full methadone dose throughout the perioperative period.

Supplemental therapies to be considered for these patients include adding epinephrine 5 µg/mL to the epidural infusion solution and the addition of low-dose continuous intravenous ketamine infusions.[363] All opioid-tolerant patients require frequent adjustment of analgesic doses. Despite this, pain scores of 4 to 5 out of 10 with movement are often the lowest achievable. The increased analgesic requirements for opioid-tolerant patients are for a longer duration postoperatively than the usual need for analgesia in opioid-naïve patients.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Slinger P, et al. Preanesthetic assessment for thoracic surgery. In: Slinger P, ed. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011.
2. Licker M, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81:1830.
3. Brunelli A, et al. *Chest*. 2013;143:e166s–190s.
4. Licker M, et al. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2014;4:124.
5. Choi H, Mazzone P. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2015;28:18.
6. Amar D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1343.
7. National Emphysema Treatment Trial Research Group. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348:2059.
8. Lee L, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68:811.
9. Carter R, et al. *Arch Phys Med Rehab*. 2003;84:1158.
10. Weisman IM, et al. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2001;13:116.
11. Licker M, et al. *Eur Resp J*. 2011;37:1189.
12. Coyle EF, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2005;98:2191.
13. Heerdt PM, et al. Cardiovascular adaptation to lung resection. In: *Thoracic Anesthesia*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2003:423.
14. Win T, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:1215.
15. Donahoe LL, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2017;103(6):1730.
16. Berry M, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;89:1044.
17. Burt B, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2014;148:19.
18. Fleisher LA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:15.
19. ASA Committee on Practice Standards. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:22.
20. Wijeysundera ND, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;113:s62.
21. Fleisher L, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;130:2215.
22. Ritchie AJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1990;50:86.
23. Amar D, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1997;63:1374.
24. Amar D, et al. *Chest*. 1995;108(349).
25. Sekine Y, et al. *Chest*. 2001;120(1783).
26. Frendl G, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2014;148:772.
27. Zhao B-C, et al. *Chest*. 2017;151:149.
28. Galie N, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2009;30:2493.
29. Fischer LG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(6):1603.
30. Lai H-C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:184.
31. Simonneau G, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;62:D34.
32. Pritts CD, Pearl RG. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:411.
33. Lai H-C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:184.
34. Han MK, et al. Pulmonary diseases and the heart. *Circulation*. 2007;116(25):2992.
35. Maxwell BG, Jackson E. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:e24.
36. Subramaniam K, Yared JP. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;11(2):119.
37. Price LC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(4):552.
38. Curriqan DA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:930.
39. Wauthy P, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;126:1434.
40. Jerath A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:365.
41. Focardi M, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2014.
42. Smedstadt KG, et al. *Can J Anesth*. 1994;41:502.
43. Missant C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;104:143.
44. Powell ES, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:364.
45. Osaki T, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1994;57:188.
46. Spaggiari L, et al. *Curr Opin Oncol*. 2007;19:84.
47. Schulte T, et al. *Chest*. 2009;135:322.
48. Tang SS, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2009;34:898.
49. Golledge J, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1994;58:524.
50. Ahn H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:186.
51. American Thoracic Society. *Am J Resp Crit Care Med*. 1995;152:s78.
52. Parot S, et al. *Am Rev Resp Dis*. 1980;121:985.
53. Aubier M, et al. *Am Rev Resp Dis*. 1980;122:747.
54. Simpson SQ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:258.
55. Hanson III CW, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24(23).
56. Douglas NJ, et al. *Am Rev Resp Dis*. 1990;141:1055.
57. Schulman DS, et al. *Cardiol Clin*. 1992;10:111.
58. Myles PE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:340.
59. MacNee W, et al. *Am J Resp Crit Care Med*. 1994;150:833.
60. Morgan MDL, et al. *Thorax*. 1989;44:533.
61. O'Donnell DE, et al. *Am Rev Resp Dis*. 1987;135:912.
62. Slinger P, et al. *Curr Rev Clin Anesth*. 1995;15:169.
63. Ben-David B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:690.
64. Slinger P, et al. *Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1998;12:133.
65. Warner DO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1467.
66. Kesten S, et al. *Clin Chest Med*. 1997;18:174.
67. Vaporciyan AA, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;73:420.
68. Akrawi W, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1997;11:629.
69. Barrera R, et al. *Chest*. 2005;127:1977.
70. Thomsen T, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2009;96:451.
71. *American Cancer Society*. ; 2012. www.cancer.org.
72. Feinstein MB, et al. *Chest Surg Clin N Am*. 2000;10:653.
73. de Perrot M, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2004;22:4351.
74. Levin KH, et al. *Neurol Clin*. 1997;15:597.
75. Metha AC, et al. *Chest*. 1999;115:598.
76. Vaughan DJ, et al. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1997;35:129.
77. Hartigan PM, et al. *Thorac Surg Clin*. 2004;14:575.
78. Sleijfer S, et al. *Chest*. 2001;120:617.
79. Davies RG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:418.
80. Horlocker T, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35:64.
81. Bayes J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:186.
82. Slinger P, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:1030.
83. Hurford WE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;64:841.
84. Lewis JW, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:705.
85. Katz JA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:164.
86. Naunheim KS, et al. *Chest Surg Clin N Am*. 2001;11:213.
87. Fujii S, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2004;16:347.
88. Hasan FM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12:387.
89. Klein U, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:346.
90. Bussieres J, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59:431.
91. Bardoczy GI, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70:499.
92. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:1084.
93. Jaffe RA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:484.
94. Tang L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:223.
95. Gomez-Izquierdo JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:36.
96. Campos JH, et al. *Thorac Surg Clin*. 2005;15(71).
97. Campos J, Hanada S. DLT with Incorporated Fiberoptic Bronchoscopy. In: Rosenblatt W, Popescu W, eds. *Chapter 116 in Master Techniques in Upper and Lower Airway Management*. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer; 2015:250–251.
98. Saracoglu A, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;33:442.
99. Levy-Faber D, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70:1259.
100. Leclercq T, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2018;32:81.
101. Gamez R, Slinger P. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119:449.
102. Eberle B, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1999;13:532.
103. Seymour AH, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17:299.
104. Bahk JH, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1999;16:370.
105. Yasumoto M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2006;23:42.
106. Boucek CD, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1998;10:557.
107. Cavus E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:473.
108. Purugganan RV, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:845.
109. Russell T, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68:1253.

110. Chastel B, et al. *Anaesth Crit Care Pain Med*. 2015;34:89.
111. Brodsky JB, Lemmens JMH. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17:289.
112. Campos JH, Gomez MN. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2002;16:246.
113. Campos J. Lung isolation. In: Slinger P, ed. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011:227–246.
114. Yüceyar L, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:622.
115. Weng W, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14:529.
116. Peragallo RA, Swenson JD. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:300.
117. Soto RG, Oleszak SP. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;20:131.
118. Sandberg WS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1728.
119. Narayanaswamy M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1097.
120. Ueda K, Goetzinger EH, Gauger C, et al. *J Anes*. 2012;26:115.
121. Honikman R, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1799.
122. Collins SR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
123. Campos JH, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:12.
124. Jones PM, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2007;54:677.
125. Tobias JD, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13:35.
126. Saito T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1038.
127. Campos JH, Ueda K. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2014;80(83).
128. Britt BA, Gordon RA. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1964;11:514.
129. Lawson NW, et al. The lateral decubitus position. In: Marton JT, ed. *Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1987:175.
130. Larsson A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:585.
131. Lumb AB, ed. *Nunn's Applied Respiratory Physiology*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:33.
132. Bachrendtz S, Klingstadt C. *Acta Anaesthiol Scand*. 1984;28:252.
133. Rehder K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;39:597.
134. Klingstedt C, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34:315.
135. Chang H, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;92:745.
136. Johser J, et al. Physiology of the lateral position, open chest and one-lung ventilation. In: Slinger P, ed. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. Springer; 2011:72.
137. Klingstedt C, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34:421.
138. Mushin WM, Rendell-Baker L. *The Origins of Thoracic Anesthesia*. Park Ridge: Wood Library-Museum of Anesthesia; 1991:47.
139. Ray III JF, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1974;109(537).
140. Chappell D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:723.
141. Rooke GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1294.
142. Ko R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1092.
143. Unzueta C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:517.
144. Szegedi LL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(15).
145. Tarhan S, Lundborg RO. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1970;17(4).
146. Karzai W, Schwarzkopf K. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1402.
147. Lumb AB, ed. *Nunn's Applied Respiratory Physiology*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:104.
148. Watanabe S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(28).
149. Bardoczky GI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(35).
150. Eisenkraft JB. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;65:63.
151. Moudgil R, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2005;98:390.
152. Talbot NP, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2005;98:1125.
153. Dorrington KL, et al. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 1997;273:H1126.
154. Ishikawa S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:21.
155. Brimioulle S, et al. *Cardiovasc Res*. 1997;34:384.
156. Marshall C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:304.
157. Wang JY, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;81:850.
158. Wang JY, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55(167).
159. Benumof J. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:419.
160. Reid CW, et al. *J Cardiothroac Vasc Anesth*. 1997;10:860.
161. de la Gala F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:655.
162. Slinger P, Scott WAC. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:940.
163. Russell WJ, James MF. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2004;32:644.
164. Kim SH, et al. *J Anesth*. 2012;26:568.
165. Kozian A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1009.
166. Loepply JA, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1993;72:1787.
167. Larsson A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:585.
168. Bardoczky GI, et al. *Chest*. 1996;110:180.
169. Pepe P, Marini JJ. *Am Rev Resp Dis*. 1982;126:166.
170. Colquhoun D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126:495.
171. Szegedi LL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:1034.
172. van der Weff YD, et al. *Chest*. 1997;111:1278.
173. Unzueta MC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1029.
174. Roze H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:377.
175. Slinger P. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:268.
176. Slinger P. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:1030.
177. Hurford WE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;64:841.
178. Ribas J, et al. *Chest*. 2001;120:852.
179. Spadaro S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:531.
180. Fujiwara M, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13:473.
181. Jung DM, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2017;154:360.
182. Capan LM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:847.
183. Rothen HU, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:788.
184. Slinger P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:291.
185. Hogue Jr CW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:364.
186. Bailey S, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1998;12:239.
187. Campos JH, Feider A. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;(17):31014. pii: S1053-0770.
188. Nomoto Y, Kawamura M. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36:273.
189. Doering EB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(18).
190. Raghunathan K, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;89:981.
191. Lee SH, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33:275.
192. Huang SQ, et al. *Chin Med J*. 2017;130:1707.
193. Russell WJ, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2009;37:432.
194. Ku CM, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2009;37:432.
195. Campos JH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:583.
196. Chigurupati K, et al. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2017;20(72).
197. Ishikawa S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:21.
198. Abiad MG, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1995;9:89.
199. Antognini SF, Hanowell LH. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:1137.
200. Stolz D, et al. *Chest*. 2005;128:1756.
201. Slinger P, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:755.
202. Herth F, et al. *Chest*. 2001;119:1910.
203. Stephens KE, Wood DE. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;119:289.
204. Sullivan MT, Neff WB. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:473.
205. Hillier JE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1610.
206. Van Der Spek AFL, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;60:709.
207. Metin M, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;73:250.
208. Lohser J, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2005;19:678.
209. Rintoul RC, et al. *Eur Resp J*. 2005;25:416.
210. Stammberger U, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2000;18:7.
211. Berry MF, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;89:1044.
212. Kaseda S, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;70:1644.
213. Yim AP, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;70:243.
214. McKenna RJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81:421.
215. D'Amico TA, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2006;132:464.
216. Ismail M, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9:885.
217. Steenwyck B, et al. *Anesth Clin*. 2012;30:699.
218. Cerfolio JR, et al. *Chest*. 2004;126:281.
219. Pompeo E, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:1761.
220. Hill SE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1047.
221. Bagan P, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;80:2046.
222. Ramnath N, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:1831.
223. Powell ES, et al. *J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2009;4:41.
224. Alvarez J, et al. Post-pneumonectomy pulmonary edema. In: Slinger P, ed. *Progress in Thoracic Anesthesia. Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists Monograph*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams Wilkins; 2004:87.
225. Foroulis CN, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2004;26:508.
226. Zeldin RA, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1984;87:359.
227. Licker M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1558.
228. Fernandez-Perez ER, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:14.
229. Schilling T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:957.
230. Foroulis CN, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2004;26:508.
231. Iglesias M, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85:237.
232. de Perrot M, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;13:111.
233. Dartevelle PG, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1988;46:68.
234. Donahoe L, Nguyen E, Chung T-B, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 1986;8:2016.
235. Cerfolio RJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;62:348.
236. McGlade DP, et al. *Slinger PD: Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1021.
237. Smithers BM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2007;245:232.
238. Rentz J, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;125:1114.
239. Tandon S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:633.
240. Buise M, et al. *Acta Anaesthiol Belg*. 2008;59:257.
241. Al-Rawi OY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:884.
242. Michelet P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:911.
243. Sung H, Nelems B. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36:333.
244. Jarral O, et al. *Surg Endoscopy*. 2012;26:2095.
245. Pross M, et al. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2000;51:73.

246. Moskovitz AH, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:2031.
247. Eisenkraft JB, Neustein SM. Anesthesia for esophageal and mediastinal surgery. In: Kaplan J, Slinger P, eds. *Thoracic Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2003:269.
248. Topsis J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:532.
249. Finley RJ, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2001;13:892.
250. Yang D, Pannu D, Zhang Q, et al. *Endosc Int Open*. 2015;3:e289.
251. Hindman B, Bert A. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1987;1:438.
252. Au C, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:688.
253. Aouad MT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:187.
254. Pinsonneault C, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:439.
255. Watanabe Y, et al. *Scand J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1988;22:227.
256. Mueller DK, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:720.
257. Saravanan P, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:507.
258. Chan DT, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;84:225.
259. Wright CD, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1996;112:1367.
260. Mulot A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1122.
261. Travaline JM, et al. *Chest*. 2009;136:355.
262. Patane PS, et al. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1990;4:229.
263. Williams A, Kay J. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1482.
264. Tietjen CS, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:69.
265. Perdomo JM, et al. *J Anesth Clin Res*. 2015;6(2).
266. Schipper PH, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:976.
267. Eagle C, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42:168.
268. Jacob R, Sen S. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11:733.
269. Shen H, et al. *Chest*. 2002;121:284.
270. Trulock EP, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2007;26:782.
271. Machuca T, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2015;149:1152.
272. Robinson RJ, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 1994;13:779.
273. Haddow GR, Brock-Utne JG. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1999;43:960.
274. Cheng M, et al. Anesthesia for the patienst with a previous lung transplant. In: Slinger P, ed. *Chapt. 48 in Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. 2nd ed. NY: Springer; 2019.
275. Shah P, Herth F, van Geffen W, et al. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2017;5:147.
276. National Emphysema Treatment Trial Research Group. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348:2059.
277. Tschernko EM, et al. *Thorax*. 1997;52:545.
278. Roue C, et al. *Chest*. 1996;110:28.
279. Zollinger A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:845.
280. Strange C, et al. *BMC Pulm Med*. 2007;7:10.
281. Kubota h, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:587.
282. Fortin M, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;20:376.
283. Grant CA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:127.
284. Maus T, Banks D. Anesthesia for pulmonary thromboendarterectomy. In: Slinger P, ed. *Chapt. 49 in Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. 2nd ed. Springer; 2018.
285. Bussieres JS, et al. *Anesthiol Clin North America*. 2001;19:543.
286. Ramirez -RJ, et al. *Dis Chest*. 1966;50:581.
287. Huizar I, Kavuru MS. *Curr Opin Pulm Med*. 2009;50:64.
288. Bussieres JS, et al. Whole lung lavage. In: Slinger P, ed. *Principles and practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgey*. New York: Springer; 2011:497.
289. Shamberger RC, et al. *Surgery*. 1995;118:468.
290. Vander Els NJ, et al. *Chest*. 2000;117:1256.
291. Hnatiuk OW, et al. *Chest*. 2001;120:1152.
292. Frawley G, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1995;23:610.
293. McMahon CC, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52:150.
294. Pelton JJ, Ratner IA. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1989;48:301.
295. Takeda S, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1999;68:2324.
296. Turkoz A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1040.
297. Slinger P, Karsli C. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2007;20:1.
298. Chait P, et al. *Pediatr Radiol*. 2005;35:S76.
299. Borenstein SH, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2000;35:973.
300. Bechard P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:826.
301. White MC, Stoddart PA. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14:625.
302. Della Rocca G, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50:547.
303. Campos JH. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017.
304. de Boer HD, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2014;31:715.
305. Leventhal SR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:26.
306. Eisenkraft JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:79.
307. De Perrot M, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2003;24:677.
308. Katlic M, Facktor M. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;90:240.
309. Deng H-Y, et al. *Interactive Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2016;23:31.
310. Sunaga H, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2017;30(1).
311. Chen K, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 2012;4:347.
312. Perdomo JM, et al. *J Anesth Clin Res*. 2015;6:2.
313. Dunkman WJ, et al. *A&A Case Rep*. 2017;9:97.
314. Redwan B, et al. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2015;21:766.
315. Teeter E, Mena G, Lasala D. Enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) for thoracic surgery. In: Slinger P, ed. *Chapt. 52 in Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. 2nd ed. New York: Springer Clinical Medicine; 2019.
316. Li S, et al. *Cancer Manag Res*. 2017;9:657.
317. Batchelor T, et al. *Eur J Cardio-Thorac Surg*. 2018.
318. Schweizer A, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1998;10:678.
319. Azad SC, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2000;49:9.
320. Baisi A, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2002;123:1206.
321. Rippey JC, et al. *CJEM*. 2004;6:126.
322. Mehanna MJ, et al. *J Thorac Imaging*. 2007;22:280.
323. Sugarbaker DJ, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;128:138.
324. Ali J, et al. *Am J Surg*. 1974;128:376.
325. Scawn NDA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:260.
326. Kavanagh BP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:737.
327. Mac TB, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2005;19:475.
328. Moyse D, et al. *Pain Physician*. 2017;20:173.
329. Subramaniam K, et al. *Aneth Analg*. 2004;99:482.
330. Humble S, Dalton A. *Eur J pain*. 2015;19:451.
331. Dong C, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2017;17:33.
332. Chrysostomou C, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;7:186.
333. Omote K. *Anethesiology*. 2007;106(5).
334. Cui W, et al. *Eur J Anaesth*. 2010;27:41.
335. Slovak M, et al. *Can J Anesth*. 2015;62:676.
336. Kinney M, et al. *Pain Pract*. 2012;12:175.
337. Omran A. *Egypt J Anaesth*. 2002;21:277.
338. Khalil K, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2013;100:2015.
339. Mehran R, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2016;102:e595.
340. Ballantyne JC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:598.
341. Wiebalck A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:124.
342. Moniche S, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1993;37:65.
343. Chin KJ, Karmakar MK. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1446.
344. Leurcharusmee P, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40:694.
345. Hansdottir V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:394.
346. Gruber EM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:1015.
347. Warner DO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:761.
348. Ginosar Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1428.
349. Casati A, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2006;7(1).
350. Davies RG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:418.
351. Dauphin A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44:367.
352. Rigg JRA, et al. *Lancet*. 2002;359:1276.
353. Luyet C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:534.
354. Okmen K, Okmen B. *J Anesth*. 2017;31(4):579.
355. Chin KJ, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(3):372.
356. Forero M, et al. *A&A Case Reports*. 2017;8:254.
357. Blichfeldt-Eckhardt M, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:147.
358. Barak M, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;21:554.
359. Bayman E, Parekh K, Keech J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:938.
360. Senturk M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:11.
361. de Leon-Casasola OA, et al. *Curr Rev Pain*. 2000;4:203.
362. de Leon-Casasola OA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:303.
363. Schmid R, et al. *Pain*. 1999;82:111.

References

1. Slinger P, Darling G. Preanesthetic assessment for thoracic surgery. In: Slinger P, ed. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. 2nd ed. New York: Springer; 2019.
2. Licker M, Widikker I, Robert J, et al. Operative mortality and respiratory complications after lung resection for cancer: impact of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and time trends. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81:1830.
3. Brunelli A, Kim A, Berger K, et al. Physiological evaluation of the patient with lung cancer being considered for resectional surgery. *Chest*. 2013;143:e166s–e190s.
4. Licker M, Triponez F, Diaper J, et al. Preoperative evaluation of lung cancer patients. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2014;4:124–134.
5. Choi H, Mazzone P. Preoperative evaluation of the patient with lung cancer being considered for lung resection. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2015;28:18–25.
6. Amar D, Munoz D, Weiji S, et al. A clinical prediction rule for pulmonary complications after thoracic surgery for primary lung cancer. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1343.
7. National Emphysema Treatment Trial Research Group. A randomized trial comparing lung-volume-reduction surgery with medical therapy for severe emphysema. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348:2059.
8. Lee L, Schwartzman K, Carli F, et al. The association of the distance walked in 6 min with preoperative peak oxygen consumption and complications 1 month after colorectal resection. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68:811–816.
9. Carter R, Holiday DB, Stocks J, et al. Predicting oxygen uptake for men and women with moderate to severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Arch Phys Med Rehab*. 2003;84:1158.
10. Weisman IM. Cardiopulmonary exercise testing in the preoperative assessment for lung resection surgery. *Seminars in Thorac and Cardiovasc Surg*. 2001;13:116.
11. Licker M, Schnyder JM, Frey JG, et al. Impact of aerobic exercise capacity and procedure-related factors in lung cancer surgery. *Eur Resp J*. 2011;37:1189.
12. Coyle EF. Improved muscular efficiency as Tour de France champion matures. *J Appl Physiol*. 2005;98:2191.
13. Heerdt PM. Cardiovascular adaptation to lung resection. In: *Thoracic Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2003:423.
14. Win T, Larouche CM, Groves AM, et al. Use of quantitative lung scintigraphy to predict pulmonary function in lung cancer patients undergoing lobectomy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:1215.
15. Donahoe LL, de Valence M, Atenafu EG, et al. High risk for thoracotomy but not thoracoscopic lobectomy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2017;103(6):1730–1735.
16. Berry M, Villamizar-Ortiz N, Tong B, et al. Pulmonary function tests do not predict pulmonary complications after thoracoscopic lobectomy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;89:1044–1052.
17. Burt B, Kosinski A, Shrager J, et al. Thoracoscopic lobectomy is associated with acceptable morbidity and mortality in patients with predicted postoperative forced expiratory volume in 1 second or diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide less than 40% of normal. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2014;148:19–28.
18. Fleisher LA, Beckman JA, Brown KA, et al. ACC/AHA 2006 guideline update on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation for noncardiac surgery: focused update on perioperative beta-blocker therapy. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:15.
19. ASA Committee on Practice Standards. Practice alert for the perioperative management of patients with coronary artery stents. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:22.
20. Wijeysundera ND, Wijeysundera HC, Wasowicz M, et al. Risk of elective major non-cardiac surgery after coronary stent insertion. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;113:s62.
21. Fleisher L, Fleischmann K, Auerbach A, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA Guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 2014;130:2215–2245.
22. Ritchie AJ, Bowe P, Gibbons JRP. Prophylactic digitalisation for thoracotomy: a reassessment. *Ann Thoracic Surg*. 1990;50:86.
23. Amar D, Roistacher N, Burt ME, et al. Effects of diltiazem versus digoxin on dysrhythmias and cardiac function after pneumonectomy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1997;63:1374.
24. Amar D, RoistacherN, Burt N, et al. Clinical and echocardiographic correlates of symptomatic tachydysrhythmias after noncardiac thoracic surgery. *Chest*. 1995;108:349.
25. Sekine Y, Kesler KA, Behnia M, et al. COPD may increase the incidence of refractory supraventricular arrhythmias following pulmonary resection for non-small cell lung cancer. *Chest*. 2001;120:1783.
26. Frendl G, Sodickson A, Chung M, et al. 2014 AATS Guidelines for the prevention and management of perioperative atrial fibrillation and flutter for thoracic surgical procedures. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2014;148:772–791.
27. Zhao B-C, Huang T-Y, Deng Q-W, et al. Prophylaxis against atrial fibrillation after general thoracic surgery. Trial sequential analysis and network analysis. *Chest*. 2017;151:149.
28. Galie N, Hoeper MM, Humbert M, et al. Guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of pulmonary hypertension: the Task Force for the Diagnosis and Treatment of Pulmonary Hypertension of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and the European Respiratory Society (ERS), endorsed by the International Society of Heart and Lung Transplantation (ISHLT). *Eur Heart J*. 2009;30:2493–2537.
29. Fischer LG, Van Aken H, Bürkle H. Management of pulmonary hypertension: physiological and pharmacological considerations for anesthesiologists. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(6):1603.
30. Lai H-C, Lai H-C, Wang K-Y, et al. Severe pulmonary hypertension complicates postoperative outcome of non-cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:184.
31. Simonneau G, Gatzoulis M, Adatia I, et al. Updated clinical classification of pulmonary hypertension. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;62:D34–D41.
32. Pritts CD, Pearl RG. Anesthesia for patients with pulmonary hypertension. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:411.
33. Lai H-C, Lai H-C, Wang K-Y, et al. Svere pulmonary hypertension complicates postoperative outcome of non-cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:184–190.
34. Han MK, McLaughlin VV, Criner GJ, et al. Pulmonary diseases and the heart. *Circulation*. 2007;116(25):2992.
35. Maxwell BG, Jackson E. Role of ketamine in the management of pulmonary hypertension and right ventricular failure. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:e24.
36. Subramaniam K, Yared JP. Management of pulmonary hypertension in the operating room. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;11(2):119.
37. Price LC, Forrest P, Sodhi V, et al. Use of vasopressin after caesarean section in idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(4):552.
38. Currigan DA, Hughes RJA, Wright CE, et al. Vasoconstrictor responses to vasopressor agents in human pulmonary and radial arteries. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:930.
39. Wauthy P, Kafi SA, Mooi WJ, et al. Inhaled nitric oxide versus prostacyclin in chronic shunt-induced pulmonary hypertension. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;126:1434.
40. Jerath A, Srinivas C, Vegas A, Brister S. The successful management of severe protamine-induced pulmonary hypertension using inhaled prostacyclin. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:365.
41. Focardi M, Cameli M, Carbone SF, et al. Traditional and innovative echocardiographic parameters for the analysis of right ventricular performance in comparison with cardiac magnetic resonance. *Eur Heart J*. 2014.
42. Smedstadt KG, Cramb R, Morison DH. Pulmonary hypertension and pregnancy: a series of eight cases. *Can J Anesth*. 1994;41:502.
43. Missant C, Claus P, Rex S, Wouters PF. Differential effects of lumbar and thoracic epidural anesthesia on the haemodynamic response to acute right ventricular pressure overload. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;104:143.
44. Powell ES, Cook D, Pearce AC, et al. A prospective, multi-center, observational cohort study of analgesia and outcome after pneumonectomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:364.
45. Osaki T, Shirakusa T, Kodate M, et al. Surgical treatment of lung cancer in the octogenarian. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1994;57:188.
46. Spaggiari L, Scanagatta P. Surgery of non-small cell lung cancer in the elderly. *Curr Opinion in Oncology*. 2007;19:84.
47. Schulte T, Schniewind B, Dohrman p, et al. The extent of lung parenchyma resection significantly impacts log-term quality of life in patients with non-small cell lung cancer. *Chest*. 2009;135:322.
48. Tang SS, Redmond K, Griffiths M, et al. The mortality from acute respiratory distress syndrome after pulmonary resection is decreasing: a 10-year single institutional experience. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2009;34:898.

49. Golledge J, Goldstraw P. Renal impairment after thoracotomy: incidence, risk factors and significance. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1994;58:524.
50. Ahn H, Kim J, Lee A, et al. The risk of acute kidney injury from fluid restriction and hydroyxethel starch in thoracic surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:186.
51. American Thoracic Society. Standards for the diagnosis and care of patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Resp Critic Care Med*. 1995;152:s78.
52. Parot S, Saunier C, Gauthier H, Milic-Emile J, Sadoul P. Breathing pattern and hypercapnia in patients with obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am Rev Resp Dis*. 1980;121:985.
53. Aubier M, Murciano D, Milic-Emili J, et al. Effects of the administration of O2 on ventilation and blood gases in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease during acute respiratory failure. *American Rev Resp Dis*. 1980;122:747.
54. Simpson SQ. Oxygen-induced acute hypercapnia in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: what's the problem? *Critic Care Med*. 2002;30:258.
55. Hanson CW III, Marshall BE, Frasch HF, Marshall C. Causes of hypercarbia in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Critic Care Med*. 1996;24:23.
56. Douglas NJ, Flenley DC. Breathing during sleep in patients with obstructive lung disease. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1990;141:1055.
57. Schulman DS, Mathony RA. The right ventricle in pulmonary disease. *Cardiology Clinics*. 1992;10:111.
58. Myles PE, Madder H, Morgan EB. Intraoperative cardiac arrest after unrecognized dynamic hyperinflation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:340.
59. MacNee W. Pathophysiology of cor pulmonale in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Resp Crit Care Med*. 1994;150:833.
60. Morgan MDL, Edwards CW, Morris J, Matthews HR. Origin and behavior of emphysematous bullae. *Thorax*. 1989;44:533.
61. O'Donnell DE, Sami R, Anthonisen NR, Younes M. Effect of dynamic airway compression on breathing pattern and respiratory sensation in severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1987;135:912.
62. Slinger P. Anesthesia for patients with COPD. *Curr Rev Clin Anesth*. 1995;15:169.
63. Ben-David B, Stonebraker VC, Hershman R, Frost CL, Williams HK. Survival after failed intraoperative resuscitation: a case of "Lazarus syndrome". *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:690.
64. Slinger P, Hickey D. The interaction between Applied PEEP and Auto-Peep during one-lung ventilation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1998;12:133.
65. Warner DO. Preventing postoperative pulmonary complications. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1467.
66. Kesten S. Pulmonary rehabilitation and surgery for end-stage lung disease. *Clinic Chest Med*. 1997;18:174.
67. Vaporciyan AA, Merriman KW, Ece F, al at. Incidence of major pulmonary complications after pneumonectomy; association with timing of smoking cessation. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;73:420.
68. Akrawi W, Benumof JL. A pathophysiological basis for informed preoperative smoking cessation counseling. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1997;11:629.
69. Barrera R, Shi W, Amar D, et al. Smoking and timing of cessation. Impact on pulmonary complications after thoracotomy. *Chest*. 2005;127:1977.
70. Thomsen T, Tonnesen H, Moller AM. Effect of preoperative smoking cessation interventions on postoperative complications and smoking cessation. *Br J Surg*. 2009;96:451.
71. *American Cancer Society*; 2012. www.cancer.org.
72. Feinstein MB, Bach PB. Epidemiology of lung cancer in lung cancer: past, present and future. In: Ginsberg RJ, Ruckdeschel JC, eds. *Chest Surg Clin North Am*. 10; 2000:653.
73. de Perrot M, Cherenko S, Waddell t, et al. Role of lung transplantation in the treatment of bronchogenic carcinomas for patients with end-stage pulmonary disease. *J Clin Oncol*. 2004;22:4351.
74. Levin KH. Paraneoplastic neuromuscular syndromes. *Neurologic Clinics*. 1997;15:597.
75. Metha AC, Rafanan AL, Bulkley R, et al. Coronary spasm and cardiac arrest during laser bronchoscopy. *Chest*. 1999;115:598.
76. Vaughan DJ, Brunner MD. Anesthesia for patients with the carcinoid syndrome. *Int Anesthesiol Clinics*. 1997;35:129.
77. Hartigan PM, Ng JM. Anesthetic strategies for patients undergoing extrapleural pneumonectomy. *Thorac Surg Clin*. 2004;14:575.
78. Sleijfer S. Bleomycin-induced pneumonitis. *Chest*. 2001;120:617.
79. Davies RG, Myles PL, Graham JM. A comparison of the analgesic efficacy and side-effects of paravertebral vs. epidural blockade for thoracotomy—a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Br J Anesth*. 2006;96:418.
80. Horlocker T, Wedel D, Rowlinson J, et al. Regional anesthesia in the patient receiving anti-thrombolytic therapy. ASRA guidelines *Reg Aneth Pain Med*. 2010;35:64.
81. Bayes J, Slater EM, Hadberg PS, Lawson D. Obstruction of a double-lumen tube by a saber-sheath trachea. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:186.
82. Slinger P, Suissa S, Triolet W. Predicting arterial oxygenation during one-lung anaesthesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:1030.
83. Hurford WE, Kokar AC, Strauss HW. The use of ventilation/perfusion lung scans to predict oxygenation during one-lung anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;64:841.
84. Lewis JW, Serwin JP, Gabriel FS, Bastaufar M, Jacobsen G. The utility of a double-lumen tube for one-lung ventilation in a variety of non-cardiac thoracic surgical procedures. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:705.
85. Katz JA, Lavern RG, Fairley HB, et al. Pulmonary oxygen exchange during endobronchial anesthesia, effect of tidal volume and PEEP. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56:164.
86. Naunheim KS, Virgo KS. Postoperative surveillance following lung cancer resection. *Chest Surg Clin N Am*. 2001;11:213.
87. Fujii S, Kikura M, Takada T, et al. A non-invasive partial carbon dioxide rebreathing technique for measurement of pulmonary blood flow is also a useful oxygenation monitor during one-lung ventilation. *J Clin Anesth*. 2004;16:347.
88. Hasan FM, Mangala A, Corrao WM, Bramnan FS. Effect of catheter position on thermodilution cardiac output during continuous positive pressure ventilation. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12:387.
89. Klein U, Karzai W, Bloos F, et al. Role of fiberoptic bronchoscopy in conjunction with the use of double-lumen tubes for thoracic anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:346.
90. Bussieres J, Slinger P. Correct positioning of double-lumen tubes. *Can J Anesth*. 2012;59:431.
91. Bardoczy GI, Lievarlet M, Engleman E, Defrancquen P. Continuous spirometry for detection of double-lumen endobronchial tube displacement. *Br J Anesth*. 1993;70:499.
92. ASA/SCA taskforce on TEE. Practice guidelines for perioperative TEE. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:1084.
93. Jaffe RA, Pinto FS, Schmittger I. Aspects of mechanical ventilation affecting intra-atrial shunt flow during general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:484.
94. Tang L, Kazan R, Taddei R, et al. Reduced cerebal oxygen saturation during thoracic surgery predicts early postoperative cognitive dysfunction. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:223.
95. Gomez-Izquierdo JC, Trainito A, Mirzakandov D, et al. Goal-directed fluid therapy does not reduce primary postoperative ileus after elective laparoscopic colorectal surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:36–49.
96. Campos JH. Progress in lung separation. *Thorac Surg Clin*. 2005;15:71.
97. Campos J, Hanada S. DLT with incorporated fiberoptic bronchoscopy. In: Rosenblatt W, Popescu W, eds. *Chapter 116 in Master Techniques in Upper and Lower Airway Management*. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer; 2015:250–251.
98. Saracoglu A, Saracoglu K. VivaSight: a new era in the evolution of tracheal tubes. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;33:442.
99. Levy-Faber D, Malyanker Y, Nir RR, et al. Comparison of VivaSight double-lumen tube with a conventional double-lumen tube in adult patients undergoing video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70:1259–1263.
100. Leclercq T, Lilot M, Schulz T, et al. Endotracheal bioimpedance cardiography improves immediate postoperative outcome: a case-control study in off-pump coronary surgery. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2018;32:81.
101. Gamez R, Slinger P. A simulator study of tube exchange with three different designs of double-lumen tubes. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119:449–453.
102. Eberle B, Weiler N, Vogel N, et al. Computed tomography based tracheobronchial image reconstruction allows selection of the individually appropriate double-lumen tube size. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1999;13:532.

103. Seymour AH. The relationship between the diameters of the adult cricoid ring and main tracheobronchial tree: a cadaver study to investigate the basis for double-lumen tube selection. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17:299.
104. Bahk JH, Oh YS. Prediction of double-lumen tracheal tube depth. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1999;16:370.
105. Yasumoto M, Higa K, Nitahara K, et al. Optimal depth of insertion of left-sided double-lumen endobronchial tubes cannot be predicted from body height in below average-sized adult patients. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2006;23:42.
106. Boucek CD, Landreneau R, Freeman JA, et al. A comparison of techniques for placement of double-lumen endobronchial tubes. *J Clin Anesth*. 1998;10:557.
107. Cavus E, Kieckhaefer J, Doerges V, et al. The C-MAC videolaryngoscope: first experiences with a new device for videolaryngoscopy-guided intubation. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:473.
108. Purugganan RV, Jackson TA, Heir JS, et al. Video laryngoscopy versus direct laryngoscopy for double-lumen endotracheal tube intubation: a retrospective analysis. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:845.
109. Russell T, Slinger P, Roscoe A, et al. A randomised controlled trial comparing the GlideScope(®) and the Macintosh laryngoscope for double-lumen endobronchial intubation. *Anaesthesia*. 2013;68:1253.
110. Chastel B, Perrier V, Germain A, et al. Usefulness of the Airtraq DL™ videolaryngoscope for placing a double-lumen tube. *Anaesth Crit Care Pain Med*. 2015;34:89.
111. Brodsky JB, Lemmens JMH. Left double-lumen tubes: clinical experience with 1,170 patients. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17:289.
112. Campos JH, Gomez MN. Pro: Right-sided double-lumen endotracheal tubes should be used routinely in thoracic surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2002;16:246.
113. Campos J. Lung isolation. In: Slinger P, ed. *Chapter 16 in Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2011:227–246.
114. Yüceyar L, Kaynak K, Canturk E, et al. Bronchial rupture with a left-sided polyvinylchloride double-lumen tube. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:622.
115. Weng W, DeCrosta DJ, Zhang H. Tension pneumothorax during one-lung ventilation: a case report. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14:529.
116. Peragallo RA, Swenson JD. Congenital tracheal bronchus: the inability to isolate the right lung with a Univent bronchial blocker tube. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:300.
117. Soto RG, Oleszak SP. Resection of the Arndt bronchial blocker during stapler resection of the left lower lobe. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;20:131–132.
118. Sandberg WS. Endobronchial blocker dislodgment leading to pulseless electrical activity. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1728.
119. Narayanaswamy M, McRae K, Slinger P, et al. Choosing a lung isolation device for thoracic surgery: a randomized trial of three bronchial blockers versus double-lumen tubes. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1097–1101.
120. Ueda K, Goetzinger C, Gauger EH, et al. Use of bronchial blockers: a retrospective review of 302 cases. *J Anes*. 2012;26:115.
121. Honikman R, Rodriguez-Diaz CA, Cohen E. A ballooning crisis: three cases of bronchial blocker malfunction and a review. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1799.
122. Collins SR, Titus BJ, Campos JH, et al. Lung isolation in the patient with a difficult airway. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
123. Campos JH. Lung isolation techniques for patients with difficult airway. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:12–17.
124. Jones PM, Harle CC, Turkstra TP. The GlideScope(R) cobalt videolaryngoscope—a novel single-use device. *Can J Anaesth*. 2007;54:677.
125. Tobias JD. Variations on one-lung ventilation. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13:35.
126. Saito T, Naruke T, Carney E, et al. New double intrabronchial tube (Naruke tube) for tracheostomized patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:1038.
127. Campos JH, Ueda K. Update on anesthetic complications of robotic thoracic surgery. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2014;80:83.
128. Britt BA, Gordon RA. Peripheral nerve injuries associated with anaesthesia. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1964;11:514.
129. Lawson NW. The lateral decubitus position. In: Marton JT, ed. *Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1987:175.
130. Larsson A, Malmkvist G, Warner O. Variations in lung volume and compliance during pulmonary surgery. *Br J Anesth*. 1987;59:585.
131. Lumb AB, ed. *Nunn's Applied Respiratory Physiology*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:33.
132. Bachrendtz S, Klingstadt C. Differential ventilation and selective PEEP during anaesthesia in the lateral decubitus posture. *Acta Anaesth Scand*. 1984;28:252.
133. Rehder K, Wenthe FM, Sesslar AD. Function of each lung during mechanical ventilation with ZEEP and with PEEP in man anesthetized with thiopental-meperidine. *Anesthesiology*. 1973;39:597.
134. Klingstedt C, Hedenstierna G, Lundqvist A, et al. The influence of body position and differential ventilation on lung dimensions and atelectasis formation in anaesthetized man. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34:315.
135. Chang H, Lai-Fook SJ, Domino KB, et al. Spatial distribution of ventilation and perfusion in anesthetized dogs in lateral postures. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;92:745.
136. Johser J. Physiology of the lateral position, open chest and one-lung ventilation. In: Slinger P, ed. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. Springer; 2011:72.
137. Klingstedt C, Hedenstierna G, Baehrendtz S, et al. Ventialtion-perfusion relationships and atelectasis formation in the supine and lateral positions during conventional mechanical mechanical and differential ventilation. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34:421.
138. Mushin WM, Rendell-Baker L. *The Origins of Thoracic Anesthesia*. Park Ridge: Wood Library-Museum of Anesthesia; 1991:47.
139. Ray JF III, Yost L, Moallem S, et al. Immobility, hypoxemia and pulmonary arteriovenous shunting. *Arch Surg*. 1974;109:537.
140. Chappell D, Jacob M, Hofman-Keifer K. A rational approach to perioperative fluid management. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109:723.
141. Rooke GA, Choi JH, Bishop MS. The effect of isoflurane, halothane, sevoflurane and thiopental/nitrous oxide on respirator resistance after tracheal intubation. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:1294.
142. Ko R, Kruger M, McRae K, et al. The use of air in the inspired gas mixture during two-lung ventilation delays lung collapse during one-lung ventilation. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1092.
143. Unzueta C, Tusman G, Suarez-Sipman F, et al. Alveolar recruitment improves ventilation during thoracic surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:517.
144. Szegedi LL, Van der Linden P, Ducart A, et al. The effects of acute isovolemic hemodilution on oxygenation during one-lung ventilation. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:15.
145. Tarhan S, Lundborg RO. Effects of increased expiratory pressure on blood gas tensions and pulmonary shunting during thoracotomy with the use of the Carlens catheter. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1970;17:4.
146. Karzai W, Schwarzkopf K. Hypoxemia during one-lung ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1402.
147. Lumb AB, ed. *Nunn's Applied Respiratory Physiology*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:104.
148. Watanabe S, Noguchi E, Yamada S, et al. Sequential changes in arterial oxygen tension in the supine position during one-lung ventilation. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:28.
149. Bardoczky GI, Szegedi LL, d'Hollander AA, et al. Two-lung and one-lung ventilation in patients with chronic lung disease: the effects of position and FiO2. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:35.
150. Eisenkraft JB. Effects of anaesthetics on the pulmonary circulation. *Brit J Anaesth*. 1990;65:63.
151. Moudgil R, Michelakis D, Archer SL. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. *J Appl Physiol*. 2005;98:390.
152. Talbot NP, Balanos GM, Dorrington KL, Robbins PA. Two temporal components within the human pulmonary vascular response to 2h of isocapnic hypoxia. *J Appl Physio*. 2005;98:1125.
153. Dorrington KL, Clar C, Young JD, et al. Time course of the human vascular response to 8 hours of isocapnic hypoxia. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 1997;273:H1126.
154. Ishikawa S, Nakazawa K, Makita K. Progressive changes in arterial oxygenation during one-lung anesthesia are related to the response to compression of the non-dependent lung. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:21.
155. Brimioulle S, Vachiery J-L, Brichant J-F, et al. Sympathetic modulation of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction in intact dogs. *Cardiovasc Res*. 1997;34:384.
156. Marshall C, Lindgren L, Marshall C, Lindgren L, Marshall BE. Effects of the halothane, enflurane and isoflurane on hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction in dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:304.

157. Wang JY, Russel GN, Page RD, et al. A comparison of the effects of sevoflurane and isoflurane on arterial oxygenation during one-lung anesthesia. *Br J Anesth*. 2000;81:850.
158. Wang JY, Russel GN, Page RD, et al. A comparison of the effects of desflurane and isoflurane on arterial oxygenation during one-lung anesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:167.
159. Benumof J. Isoflurane anesthesia and arterial oxygenation during one-lung ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:419.
160. Reid CW, Slinger PD, Lewis S. Comparison of the effects of propofol-alfentanil versus isoflurane anesthesia on arterial oxygenation during one-lung anesthesia. *J Cardiothroac Vasc Anesth*. 1997;10:860.
161. de la Gala F, Piniero P, Reyes A, et al. Postoperative pulmonary complications; pulmonary and systemic inflammatory responses after lung resection surgery with prolonged one-lung ventilation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:655.
162. Slinger P, Scott WAC. Arterial oxygenation during one-lung anesthesia: a comparison of enflurane and isoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:940.
163. Russell WJ, James MF. The effects on arterial haemoglobin oxygen saturation and on shunt of increasing cardiac output with dopamine or dobutamine during one-lung ventilation. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 2004;32:644.
164. Kim SH, Jung KT, An TH. Effects of tidal volume and PEEP on arterial blood gases and pulmonary mechanics during one-lung ventilation. *J Anesth*. 2012;26:568.
165. Kozian A, Schilling T, Schutze H. Ventilatory protective strategies during thoracic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1009.
166. Loepply JA, Scotto P, Riedel CE, et al. Effects of acid/base status on acute pulmonary vasoconstriction and gas exchange. *J Appl Physiol*. 1993;72:1787.
167. Larsson A, Malmkvist G, Werner O. Variations in lung volume and compliance during pulmonary surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1987;59:585.
168. Bardoczky GI, Yernault JC, Engleman E, et al. Intrinsic positive end-expiratory pressure during one-lung ventilation for thoracic surgery. *Chest*. 1996;110:180.
169. Pepe P, Marini JJ. Occult positive end-expiratory pressure in mechanically ventilated patients with airflow obstruction. *Am Rev Resp Dis*. 1982;126:166.
170. Colquhoun D, Naik B, Durieux M, et al. Management of 1-lung ventilation-variations and trends in clinical practice. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126:495.
171. Szegedi LL, Bardocky GI, Engleman EE, d'Hollander AA. Airway pressure changes during one-lung ventilation. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:1034.
172. van der Weff YD, van der Houwen HK, Heijamans PJM, et al. Postpneumonectomy pulmonary edema. A retrospective analysis of incidence and possible risk factors. *Chest*. 1997;111:1278.
173. Unzueta MC, Casas JI, Moral MV. Pressure-controlled versus volume-controlled ventilation during one-lung ventilation for thoracic surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1029.
174. Roze H, lafargue M, Batoz H, et al. Pressure-controlled ventilation and intrabronchial pressure during one-lung ventilation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:377.
175. Slinger P. Pro: Low tidal volume is indicated for one-lung ventilation. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:268–270.
176. Slinger P, Suissa S, Triolet W. Predicting arterial oxygenation during one-lung anaesthesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:1030.
177. Hurford WE, Kokar AC, Strauss HW. The use of ventilation/perfusion lung scans to predict oxygenation during one-lung anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;64:841.
178. Ribas J, Jimenez MJ, Barbera JA, et al. Gas exchange and pulmonary hemodynamics during lung resection in patients at increased risk. *Chest*. 2001;120:852.
179. Spadaro S, Grasso S, Karbring D, et al. Physiologic evaluation of ventilation perfusion mismatch and respiratory mechanics at different positive end-expiratory pressure in patients undergoing protective one-lung ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:531.
180. Fujiwara M, Abe K, Mashimo T. The effect of positive end-expiratory pressure and continuous positive airway pressure on the oxygenation and shunt fraction during one-lung ventilation with propofol anesthesia. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13:473.
181. Jung DM, Ahn HJ, Jung SH, et al. Apneic oxygen insufflation decreases the incidence of hypoxemia during one-lung ventilation in open and thoracoscopic pulmonary lobectomy: a randomized controlled trial. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2017;154:360.
182. Capan LM, Turndorf H, Patel C, et al. Optimization of arterial oxygenation during one-lung anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59:847.
183. Rothen HU, Sporrc B, Engberg G, Weyemius G, Hedenstierna G. Re-expansion of atelectasis during general anesthesia: a computed tomographic study. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:788.
184. Slinger P, Triolet W, Wilson J. Improving arterial oxygenation during one-lung ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:291.
185. Hogue CW Jr. Effectiveness of low levels of non-ventilated lung continuous positive airway pressure in improving oxygenation during one-lung ventilation. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:364.
186. Bailey S, Mikhail M, Haddy S, Thangathurai D. Problems with CPAP during one-lung ventilation for thoracoscopic surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1998;12:239.
187. Campos JH, Feider A. Hypoxia during one-lung ventilation—a review and update. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;(17):31014–31015.
188. Nomoto Y, Kawamura M. Pulmonary gas exchange effects by nitroglycerine, dopamine and dobutamine during one-lung ventilation in man. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36:273.
189. Doering EB, Hanson CW III, Reily DJ, Marshall C, Marshall E. Improvement in oxygenation by phenylephrine and nitric oxide in patients with adult respiratory distress syndrome. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:18.
190. Raghunathan K, Connelly N, Robbins L, et al. Inhaled epoprostanol during one-lung ventilation. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;89:981.
191. Lee SH, Kim N, Lee CY, et al. Effects of dexmedetomidine on oxygenation and lung mechanics in patients with moderate chronic obstructive pulmonary disease undergoing lung cancer surgery: a randomised double-blinded trial. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33:275.
192. Huang SQ, Zhang J, Zhang XX, et al. Can dexmedetomidine improve arterial oxygenation and intrapulmonary shunt during one-lung ventilation in adults undergoing thoracic surgery? a meta-analysis of randomized, placebo-controlled trials. *Chin Med J*. 2017;130:1707.
193. Russell WJ. Intermittent positive airway pressure to manage hypoxemia during one-lung anaesthesia. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 2009;37:432.
194. Ku CM, Slinger P, Waddell T. A novel method of treating hypoxemia during one-lung ventilation for thoracoscopic surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;25(3):552–583. author reply 583.
195. Campos JH. Effects on oxygenation during selective lobar versus total lung collapse with or without continuous positive airway pressure. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:582.
196. Chigurupati K, Raman SP, Pappu UK, et al. Effectiveness of ventilation of nondependent lung for a brief period in improving arterial oxygenation during one-lung ventilation: a prospective study. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2017;20:72.
197. Ishikawa S, Nakazawa K, Makita K. Progressive changes in arterial oxygenation during one-lung anesthesia are related to the response to compression of the non-dependent lung. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:21.
198. Abiad MG, Cohen E, Krellenstein DL, Schulman SR, Greely ES. Anesthetic management for resection of a giant pulmonary arteriovenous malformation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1995;9:89.
199. Antognini SF, Hanowell LH. Intraoperative hypoxemia complicating sequential resection of bilateral pulmonary metastases. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:1137.
200. Stolz D, Chhajed PN, Leuppi J, et al. Nebulized lidocaine for flexible bronchoscopy. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Chest*. 2005;128:1756.
201. Slinger P, Robinson R, Shennib H, et al. Alternative anesthetic technique for laser resection of a carinal obstruction. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:755.
202. Herth F, Becker HD, LoCicero J III, et al. Successful bronchoscopic placement of tracheobronchial stents without fluoroscopy. *Chest*. 2001;119:1910.
203. Stephens KE, Wood DE. Bronchoscopic management of central airway obstruction. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;119:289.
204. Sullivan MT, Neff WB. A modified Sanders ventilating system for rigid-wall bronchoscopy. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:473.
205. Hillier JE, Toma TP, Gillbe ChE. Bronchoscopic lung volume reduction in patients with severe emphysema: anesthetic management. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1610.
206. Van Der Spek AFL, et al. The physics of lasers and implications for their use during airway surgery. *Br J Anaesthesia*. 1988;60:709.

207. Metin M, Sayar A, Turna A, et al. Extended cervical mediastinoscopy in the diagnosis of anterior mediastinal masses. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;73:250.
208. Lohser J, Donington JS, Mitchell JD, et al. Case 5—2005: anesthetic management of major hemorrhage during mediastinoscopy. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2005;19:678.
209. Rintoul RC, Skwarski KM, Murchison JT, et al. Endobronchial and endoscopic ultrasound-guided real-time fine-needle aspiration for mediastinal staging. *Eur Resp J*. 2005;25:416.
210. Stammberger U, Steinacher C, Hillinger S, et al. Early and long-term complaints following video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery: evaluation in 173 patients. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2000;18:7.
211. Berry MF, Villamizar-Ortiz NR, Tong BC, et al. Pulmonary function tests do not predict pulmonary complications after thoracoscopic lobectomy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;89:1044.
212. Kaseda S, Aoki T, Hangai N, et al. Better pulmonary function and prognosis with video-assisted thoracic surgery than with thoracotomy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;70:1644.
213. Yim AP, Wan S, Lee TW, et al. VATS lobectomy reduces cytokine responses compared with conventional surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;70:243.
214. McKenna RJ, Houck W, Fuller CB. Video-assisted thoracic surgery lobectomy: experience with 1,100 cases. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81:421.
215. D'Amico TA. Thoracoscopic lobectomy: evolving and improving. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2006;132:464.
216. Ismail M, Swierzy M, Nachira D, et al. Uniportal video-assisted thoracic surgery for major lung resections. *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9:885.
217. Steenwyck B, Lyerly R. Anesthesia for robotic thoracic surgery. *Anesth Clinics*. 2012;30:699.
218. Cerfolio JR, Bryant AS, Sheils TM, et al. Video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery using single-lumen endotracheal tube anesthesia. *Chest*. 2004;126:281.
219. Pompeo E, Mineo D, Rogliani P, et al. Feasibility and results of awake thoracoscopic resection of solitary pulmonary nodules. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:1761.
220. Hill SE, Keller RA, Stafford-Smith M, et al. Efficacy of single-dose, multilevel paravertebral nerve blockade for analgesia after thoracoscopic procedures. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1047–1053.
221. Bagan P, Berna P, Das Neves Pereiera JC, et al. Sleeve lobectomy versus pneumonectomy: tumor characteristics and comparative analysis of feasibility and results. *Ann Thor Surg*. 2005;80:2046.
222. Ramnath N, Demmy TL, Antun A, et al. Pneumonectomy for bronchogenic carcinoma: analysis of factors predicting survival. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:1831.
223. Powell ES, Pearce AC, Cook D, et al. UK pneumonectomy outcome study. *J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2009;4:41.
224. Alvarez J. Post-pneumonectomy pulmonary edema. In: Slinger P, ed. *Progress in Thoracic Anesthesia. Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists Monograph*. Lippincott Williams Wilkins; 2004:187.
225. Foroulis CN, Kotoulas CS, Kakouros S, et al. Study on the late effect of pneumonectomy on right heart pressures using Doppler echocardiography. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2004;26:508.
226. Zeldin RA, Normadin D, Landtwig BS, et al. Postpneumonectomy pulmonary edema. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1984;87:359.
227. Licker M, Perrot M, Spiliopoulos A, et al. Risk factors for acute lung injury after thoracic surgery for lung cancer. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1558.
228. Fernandez-Perez ER, Keegan MT, Brown DR, et al. Intraoperative tidal volume as a risk factor for respiratory failure after pneumonectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:14.
229. Schilling T, Kozian A, Huth C, et al. The pulmonary immune effects of mechanical ventilation in patients undergoing thoracic surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:957.
230. Foroulis CN, Kotoulas CS, Kakouros S, et al. Study on the late effect of pneumonectomy on right heart pressure using Doppler echocardiography. *Eur J Cardio-thorac Surg*. 2004;26:508.
231. Iglesias M, Martinez E, Badia JR, Macchiarini P. Extrapulmonary ventilation for unresponsive severe acute respiratory distress syndrome after pulmonary resection. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85:237.
232. de Perrot M, Uy K, Anraku M, et al. Impact of lymph node metastasis in outcome alter extrapleural pneumonectomy for malignant pleural mesothelioma. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;13:111.
233. Dartevelle PG, Khalife J, Chapelier A, et al. Tracheal sleeve pneumonectomy for bronchogenic carcinoma: a report of 55 cases. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1988;46:68.
234. Donahoe L, Nguyen E, Chung T-B, et al. CT-guided microcoil VATS resection of lung nodules. *J Thorac Dis*. 2016;8:1986.
235. Cerfolio RJ, Allen MS, Trastek VF, et al. Lung resection in patients with compromised pulmonary function. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;62:348.
236. McGlade DP, Slinger PD. The elective combined use of a double-lumen tube and endobronchial blocker to provide selective lobar isolation for lung resection following contralateral lobectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1021.
237. Smithers BM, Gotley DC, Martin I, et al. Comparison of the outcomes between open and minimally invasive esophagectomy. *Ann Surg*. 2007;245:232.
238. Rentz J, Bull D, Harpole D, et al. Transthoracic versus transhiatal esophagectomy: a prospective study of 945 patients. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;125:1114.
239. Tandon S, Batchelor A, Bullock R, et al. Peri-operative risk factors for acute lung injury after elective oesophagectomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:633.
240. Buise M, Van Bommel J, Mehra M, et al. Pulmonary morbidity following esophagectomy is decreased after introduction of a multimodal anesthetic regimen. *Acta Anaesth Belg*. 2008;59:257.
241. Al-Rawi OY, Pennefather S, Page RD, et al. The effect of thoracic epidural bupivacaine and an intravenous adrenalin infusion on gastric tube blood flow during esophagectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:884.
242. Michelet P, D'Journo XB, Roch A, et al. Protective ventilation influences systemic inflammation after esophagectomy: a randomized controlled study. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:911.
243. Sung H, Nelems B. Tracheal tear during laryngopharyngectomy and transhiatal oesophagectomy. *Can J Anaest*. 1989;36:333.
244. Jarral O, Purkayastha S, Athanasiou T, et al. Thoracoscopic esophagectomy in the prone position. *Surg Endoscopy*. 2012;26:2095.
245. Pross M, Manger T, Reinheckel T, et al. Endoscopic treatment of clinically symptomatic leaks of thoracic esophageal anastomoses. *Gastrointest Endos*. 2000;51:73.
246. Moskovitz AH, Rizk NP, Venkatraman E, et al. Mortality increases for octogenarians undergoing esophagogastrectomy for esophageal cancer. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:2031–2036.
247. Eisenkraft JB, Neustein SM. Anestehsia for esophageal and mediastinal surgery. In: Kaplan J, Slinger P, eds. *Thoracic Anesthesia*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2003:269.
248. Topsis J, Kinas H, Kandall S. Esophageal perforation—a complication of neonatal resuscitation. *Anesth Anal*. 1989;69:532.
249. Finley RJ, Clifton JC, Stewart KC, Graham AJ, Worsley DF. Laparoscopic Heller myotomy improves esophageal emptying and the symptoms of achalasia. *Arch Surg*. 2001;13:892.
250. Yang D, Pannu D, Zhang Q, et al. Evaluation of anesthesia management, feasibility and efficacy of peroral endoscopic myotomy (POEM) for achalasia performed in the endoscopy unit. *Endosc Int Open*. 2015;3:e289.
251. Hindman B, Bert A. Malignant esophago-respiratory tract fistulas: anesthetic considerations for exclusion procedures using esophageal bypass. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1987;1:438.
252. Au C, White SA, Grant R. A novel intubation technique for tracheoesophageal fistula in adults. *Can J Anesth*. 1999;46:688.
253. Aouad MT, Berzina CE, Baraka AS. Aspiration after anesthesia in a patient with a Zenker Diverticulum. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:187.
254. Pinsonneault C, Fortier J, Donati F. Tracheal resection and reconstruction. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:439.
255. Watanabe Y, Murakami S, Iwa T, et al. The clinical value of high-frequency jet ventilation in major airway reconstructive surgery. *Scand J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1988;22:227.
256. Mueller DK, Becker J, Schell SK, et al. An alternative method of neck flexion after tracheal resection. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:720.
257. Saravanan P, Marnane C, Morris EAJ. Extubation of the surgically resected airway—a role for remifentanil and propofol infusions. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:507.
258. Chan DT, Sihoe AD, Chan S, et al. Surgical treatment for empyema thoracis: is video-assisted thoracic surgery "Better" than thoracotomy? *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;84.
259. Wright CD, Wain JC, Mathisen DJ, et al. Postpneumonectomy bronchopleural fistula after sutured bronchial closure: incidence, risk factors, and management. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1996;112:1367.

260. Mulot A, Sepulveda S, Haberer JP, et al. Diagnosis of postpneumonectomy bronchopleural fistula using inhalation of oxygen or nitrous oxide. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1122.
261. Travaline JM, McKenna RJ, De Giacomo T, et al. Treatment of persistent pulmonary air leaks using endobronchial valves. *Chest*. 2009;136:355.
262. Patane PS, Snell BA, Mahla ME. Awake fiberoptic endobronchial intubation. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1990;4:229.
263. Williams A, Kay J. Thoracic epidural anesthesia for thoracoscopy, rib resection, and thoracotomy in a patient with a bronchopleural fistula postpneumonectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1482.
264. Tietjen CS, Simon BA, Helfaer MA. Permissive hypercapnia with high-frequency oscillatory ventilation and one-lung isolation for intraoperative management of lung resection in a patient with multiple bronchopleural fistulae. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:69.
265. Perdomo JM, Gomar C, Navarro R, et al. Use of venovenous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation to anticipate difficult one lung ventilation in thoracic surgery. *J Anesth Clin Res*. 2015;6:2.
266. Schipper PH, Meyers BF, Battafarano RJ, et al. Outcomes after resection of giant emphysematous bullae. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:976.
267. Eagle C, Tang T. Anesthetic management of a patient with a descending thoracic aortic aneurysm and severe bilateral bullous pulmonary disease. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42:168.
268. Jacob R, Sen S. The anaesthetic management of deliberately created bronchoatmospheric fistula in bilateral pulmonary hydatids. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11:733.
269. Shen H, Lu FL, Wu H, et al. Management of tension pneumatocele with high-frequency oscillatory ventilation. *Chest*. 2002;121:284.
270. Trulock EP, Christie JD, Edwards LB, et al. Registry of the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation: Twenty-Fourth Official Adult Lung and Heart-Lung Transplantation Report-2007. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2007;26:782.
271. Machuca T, Collaud S, Mercier O, et al. Outcomes of intraoperative extracorporeal membrane oxygenation versus cardiopulmonary bypass for lung transplantation. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2015;149:1152.
272. Robinson RJ, Shennib H, Norclerc M. Slow-rate, high-pressure ventilation: a method of management of difficult transplant recipients during sequential double lung transplantation for cystic fibrosis. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 1994;13:779.
273. Haddow GR, Brock-Utne JG. A non-thoracic operation for a patient with single-lung transplantation. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1999;43:960.
274. Cheng M. Anesthesia for the patienst with a previous lung transplant. In: Slinger P, ed. *Chapt. 48 in Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. 2nd ed. New York: Springer; 2019.
275. Shah P, Herth F, van Geffen W, et al. Lung volume reduction for emphysema. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2017;5:147.
276. National Emphysema Treatment Trial Research Group. A randomized trial comparing lung-volume-reduction surgery with medical therapy for severe emphysema. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348:2059.
277. Tschernko EM, Wisser W, Wanke T. Changes in ventilatory mechanics and diaphragmatic function after lung volume reduction surgery in patients with COPD. *Thorax*. 1997;52:545.
278. Roue C, Mal H, Sleiman C, et al. Lung volume reduction in patients with severe diffuse emphysema. *Chest*. 1996;110:28.
279. Zollinger A, Zaugg M, Weder W, et al. Video-assisted thoracoscopic volume reduction surgery in patients with diffuse pulmonary emphysema gas exchange and anesthesiological management. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:845.
280. Strange C, Herth FJ, Kovitz KL, et al. Design of the Endobronchial Valve for Emphysema Palliation Trial (VENT): a non-surgical method of lung volume reduction. *BMC Pulm Med*. 2007;7:10.
281. Kubota H, Kubota Y, Toyoda Y, et al. Selective blind endobronchial intubation in children and adults. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:587.
282. Fortin M, Turcotte R, Gleeton O, Bussieres JS. Catheter induced pulmonary artery rupture; using balloon occlusion to avoid lung isolation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;20:376.
283. Grant CA, Dempsey G, Harrison J, Jones T. Tracheo-innominate artery fistula after percutaneous tracheostomy: three case reports and a clinical review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:127.
284. Maus T, Banks D. Anesthesia for pulmonary thromboendarterectomy. In: *Chapt. 49 in Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. 2nd ed. Slinger P: Springer; 2018.
285. Bussieres JS. Whole lung lavage. *Anesth Clin North Am*. 2001;19:543.
286. Ramirez-R J. Bronchopulmonary lavage. *Dis of the Chest*. 1966;50:581.
287. Huizar I, Kavuru MS. Alveolar proteinosis syndrome: pathogenesis, diagnosis and management. *Curr Opin Pulm Med*. 2009;50:64.
288. Bussieres JS. Whole lung lavage. In: Slinger P, ed. *Chapt. 35 in Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgey*. New York: Springer; 2011:497.
289. Shamberger RC, Hozman RS, Griscom NT, et al. Prospective evaluation by computed tomography and pulmonary function tests of children with mediastinal masses. *Surgery*. 1995;118:468.
290. Vander Els NJ, Sorhage F, Bach AM, et al. Abnormal flow volume loops in patients with intrathoracic Hodgkin's Disease. *Chest*. 2000;117:1256.
291. Hnatiuk OW, Corcoran PC, Sierra P. Spirometry in surgery for anterior mediastinal masses. *Chest*. 2001;120:1152.
292. Frawley G, Low J, Brown TCK. Anaesthesia for an anterior mediastinal mass with ketamine and midazolam infusion. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1995;23:610.
293. McMahon CC, Rainey L, Fulton B, Conacher I. Central airway compression. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52:150.
294. Pelton JJ, Ratner IA. A technique of airway management in children with obstructed airway due to tumor. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1989;48:301.
295. Takeda S, Miyoshi S, Omori K, Okumura M, Matsuda H. Surgical rescue for life-threatening hypoxemia caused by a mediastinal tumor. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1999;68:2324.
296. Turkoz A, Gulcan O, Tercan F. Hemodynamic collapse caused by a large unruptured aneurysm of the ascending aorta in an 18 year old. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1040.
297. Slinger P, Karsli C. Management of the patient with a large anterior mediastinal mass: recurring myths. *Curr Opinion Anaesthesiol*. 2007;20:1.
298. Chait P, Rico L, Amaral J, Connolly B, John P, Temple M. Ultrasound-guided core biopsy of mediastinal masses in children. *Pediatric Radiology*. 2005;35:S76.
299. Borenstein SH, Gerstle T, Malkin D, Thorner P, Filler RM. The effects of prebiopsy corticosteroid treatment on the diagnosis of mediastinal lymphoma. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2000;35:973.
300. Bechard P, Letourneau L, Lacasse Y, Cote D, Bussieres JS. Perioperative cardiorespiratory complications in adults with mediastinal mass: incidence and risk factors. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:826.
301. White MC, Stoddart PA. Anesthesia for thymectomy in children with myasthenia gravis. *Paed Anaesth*. 2004;14:625.
302. Della Rocca G, Coccia C, Diana L, et al. Propofol or sevoflurane anesthesia without muscle relaxants allow the early extubation of myasthenic patients. *Can J Anesth*. 2003;50:547.
303. Campos JH. Prediction of postoperative mechanical ventilation after thymectomy in patients with myasthenia gravis: a myth or reality. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017.
304. de Boer HD, Shields MO, Booij LH. Reversal of neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex in patients with myasthenia gravis: a case series of 21 patients and review of the literature. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2014;31:715.
305. Leventhal SR, Orkin FK, Hirsh RA. Predicting postoperative ventilatory need in myasthenia gravis. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53:26.
306. Eisenkraft JB, Papatestas AE, Kahn CH, et al. Predicting the need for postoperative mechanical ventilation in myasthenia gravis. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:79.
307. De Perrot M, Bril V, McRae K, et al. Impact of minimally invasive trans-cervical thymectomy on outcome in patients with myasthenia gravis. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2003;24:677.
308. Katlic M, Facktor M. Video-assisted thoracic surgery utilizing local anesthesia and sedation: 384 consecutive cases. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;90:240.
309. Deng H-Y, Zhu Z-J, et al. Non-intubated video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery under loco-regional anesthesia for thoracic surgery: a meta-analysis. *Interactive Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2016;23:31.
310. Sunaga H, Blasberg J, Heerdt P. Anesthesia for non-intubated video-assisted thoracic surgery. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2017;30(1).
311. Chen K, Chen Y, Hung M, et al. Nonintubated thoracoscopic surgery for lung cancer using epidural anesthesia and intercostal blockade. *J Thorac Dis*. 2012;4:347.

312. Perdomo JM, Gomar C, Navarro R, et al. Use of venovenous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation to anticipate difficult one lung ventilation in thoracic surgery. *J Anesth Clin Res*. 2015;6:2.
313. Dunkman WJ, Nicoara A, Schroder J, et al. Elective venovenous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for resection of endotracheal tumor: a case report. *A&A Case Rep*. 2017;9:97.
314. Redwan B, Ziegeler S, Freermann S, et al. Intraoperative venovenous extracorporeal lung support in thoracic surgery: a single-centre experience. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2015;21:766.
315. Teeter E, Mena G, Lasala D, et al. Enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) for thoracic surgery. In: Slinger P, ed. *Chapt. 52 in Principles and Practice of Anesthesia for Thoracic Surgery*. 2nd ed. New York: Springer Clinical Medicine; 2019.
316. Li S, Zhou K, Che G, et al. Enhanced recovery programs in lung cancer surgery: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Cancer Manag Res*. 2017;9:657–670.
317. Batchelor T, Rasburn N, Abdelnour-Berchtold E, et al. Guidelines for perioperative care in thoracic surgery: Enhanced Recovery After Surgey (ERAS) Society and European Society of Thoracic Surgeons (ESTS) recommendations. *Eur J Cardio-Thorac Surg*. 2018.
318. Schweizer A, de Perrot M, Hohn L, et al. Massive contralateral pneumonia following thoracotomy for lung resection. *J Clin Anesth*. 1998;10:678–680.
319. Azad SC, Groh J, Beyer A, et al. Continuous peridural analgesia vs patient-controlled intravenous analgesia for pain therapy after thoracotomy. *Anaesthesist*. 2000;49:9–17.
320. Baisi A, Cioffi U, Nosotti M, et al. Intrapericardial left pneumonectomy alter induction chemotherapy: the risk of cardiac herniation. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2002;123:1206.
321. Rippey JC, Rao S, Fatovich D. Blunt traumatic rupture of the pericardium with cardiac herniation. *CJEM*. 2004;6:126.
322. Mehanna MJ, Israel GM, Katigbak M, Rubinowitz AN. Cardiac herniation after right pneumonectomy: case report and review of the literature. *J Thorac Imaging*. 2007;22:280.
323. Sugarbaker DJ, Jaklitsch MT, Bueno R, et al. Prevention, early detection, and management of complications after 328 consecutive extrapleural pneumonectomies. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;128:138.
324. Ali J, Weisel RD, Layug AB, Kripke BJ, Hechtman HB. Consequences of postoperative alterations in respiratory mechanics. *Am J Surg*. 1974;128:376.
325. Scawn NDA, Pennefather SH, Soorae A, Wang JY, Russell GN. Ipsilateral shoulder pain after thoracotomy with epidural analgesia: the influence of phrenic nerve infiltration with lidocaine. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:260.
326. Kavanagh BP, Katz J, Sandler AN. Pain control after thoracic surgery. A review of current techniques. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:737.
327. Mac TB, Girard F, Chouinard P, et al. Acetaminophen decreases early post-thoracotomy ipsilateral shoulder pain in patients with thoracic epidural analgesia. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2005;19:475.
328. Moyse D, Kaye A, Diaz J, et al. Perioperative ketamine administration fpr thoracotomy pain. *Pain Physician*. 2017;20:173.
329. Subramaniam K, Subramaniam B, Steinbrook R. Ketamine as adjuvant analgesic to opioids: a quantitative and qualitative systematic review. *Aneth Analg*. 2004;99:482.
330. Humble S, Dalton A. A systematic review of therapeutic interventions to reduce acute and chronic post-surgical pain after amputation, thoracotomy or mastectomy. *Eur J Pain*. 2015;19:451.
331. Dong C, Zhang J, Lu Q, et al. Effect of dexmedetomidine combined with sufentanil for post-thoracotomy intravenous analgesia. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2017;17:33.
332. Chrysostomou C, Di Filippo S, Manrique AM, et al. Use of dexmedetomidine in children after cardiac and thoracic surgery. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;7:186.
333. Omote K. Intravenous lidocaine to treat postoperative pain management. *Anethesiology*. 2007;106:5.
334. Cui W, Yanping L, Shuren L, et al. Systemic administration of lidocaine reduces morphine requirements and postoperative pain of patients undergoing thoracic surgery after propofol-remifentanil based anaesthesia. *Eur J Anaesth*. 2010;27:41.
335. Slovak M, Taylor B, Bryce R, et al. Does intravenous lidocaine infusion during video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery reduce postoperative analgesia? *Can J Anesth*. 2015;62:676.
336. Kinney M, Mantilla C, Carns P, et al. Preoperative gabapentin for acute post-thoracotomy analgesia. *Pain Pract*. 2012;12:175.
337. Omran A. A randomized study of the effects of gabapentin versus placebo on post-thoracotomy pain and pulmonary function. *Egypt J Anaesth*. 2002;21:277.
338. Khalil K, Boutrous M, Irani A, et al. Operative intercostal nerve blocks with long-acting bupivacaine liposome for pain control after thoracotomy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2015;100:2013.
339. Mehran R, Martin L, Baker C, et al. Pain management in an enhanced recovery pathway after thoracic surgical procedures. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2016;102:e595.
340. Ballantyne JC, Carr JB, deFerranti S, et al. The comparative effects of postoperative analgesic therapies on pulmonary outcome: cumulative meta-analysis of randomized, controlled trials. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:598.
341. Wiebalck A, Brodner G, Van Aken H. The effects of adding sufentanil to bupivacaine for post-operative patient contraolled analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:124.
342. Moniche S, Hjortso N-C, Blemmer T, et al. Blood pressure and heart rate during orthostatic stress and walking with continuous postoperative epidural bupivacaine/morphine. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1993;37:65.
343. Chin KJ, Karmakar MK. Ultrasonography of the adult thoracic and lumbar spine for central neuraxial blockade. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1446.
344. Leurcharusmee P, Aruntasupakul V, de la Garza D, et al. Reliability of waveform analysis as an adjunct to loss of resistance for thoracic epidural blocks. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40:694.
345. Hansdottir V, Wostenborghs R, Nordberg G. The pharmacokinetics of continuous epidural sufentanil and bupivacaine infusion after thoracotomy. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:394.
346. Gruber EM, Tschernko EM, Kritzinger M, et al. The effects of thoracic epidural analgesia with bupivacaine 0.25% on ventilatory mechanics in patients with severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:1015.
347. Warner DO, Warner MA, Ritman EL. Human chest wall function during epidural anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:761.
348. Ginosar Y, Riley ET, Angst MS. The site of action of epidural fentanyl in humans: the difference between infusion and bolus administration. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1428.
349. Casati A, Alessandrini P, Nuzzi M, et al. A prospective, randomized, blinded comparison between continuous thoracic paravertebral and epidural infusion of 0.2% Ropivacaine after lung resection surgery. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2006;7:1.
350. Davies RG, Myles PS, Graham JM. A comparison of the analgesic efficacy and side-effects of paravertebral vs. epidural blockade for thoracotomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:418.
351. Dauphin A, Gupta RN, Young JE, Morton WD. Serum bupivacaine concentrations during continuous extrapleural infusion. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44:367.
352. Rigg JRA, Jamrozik K, Myles P, et al. Epidural anaesthesia and analgesia and outcome of major surgery: a randomized trial. *Lancet*. 2002;359:1276.
353. Luyet C, Eichenberger U, Greif R, et al. Ultrasound guided paravertebral puncture and placement of catheters in human cadavers. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:534.
354. Okmen K, Okmen B. The efficacy of serratus anterior plane block in analgesia for thoracotomy: a retrospective study. *J Anesth*. 2017;31(4):579.
355. Chin KJ, Malhas L, Perlas A. The erector spinae plane block provides visceral abdominal analgesia in bariatric surgery, a report of 3 cases. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(3):372.
356. Forero M, Rajarathinam M, Adhikary S, Chin KJ. Continuous erector spinae plane block for rescue analgesia in thoracotomy after epidural failure: a case report. *A&A Case Reports*. 2017;8:254.
357. Blichfeldt-Eckhardt M, Andersen C, Ording H, et al. Shoulder pain after thoracic surgery: type and time course a prospective study. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:147.
358. Barak M, Iaroshevski D, Poppa E, et al. Low-volume interscalene brachial plexus block for post-thoracotomy shoulder pain. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;21:554.
359. Bayman E, Parekh K, Keech J, et al. A prospective study of chronic pain after thoracic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126:938.
360. Senturk M, Ozcan PE, Talu GK, et al. The effects of three different analgesia techniques on long-term post-thoracotomy pain. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:11.

361. de Leon-Casasola OA, Yarussi A. Physiopathology of opioid tolerance and clinical approach to the opioid-tolerant patient. *Curr Rev Pain*. 2000;4:203–205.
362. de Leon-Casasola OA, Lema MJ. Epidural bupivacaine/sufentanil therapy for postoperative pain control in patients tolerant to opioid and unresponsive to epidural bupivicaine/morphine. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:303.
363. Schmid R, Sandler AN, Katz J. Use and efficacy of low dose ketamine in the management of acute postoperative pain. *Pain*. 1999;82:111.

54

Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgical Procedures

MUHAMMAD F. SARWAR, BRUCE E. SEARLES, MARC E. STONE, and LINDA SHORE-LESSERSON

KEY POINTS

- Common cardiac surgical procedures in adults include coronary revascularization with either cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) or off pump, as well as cardiac valve repair or replacement for valvular regurgitation or stenosis, surgical management of heart failure (e.g., ventricular assist devices, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation, cardiac transplantation), initial repair of or reoperation for congenital heart disease, surgical ablation of atrial fibrillation, pericardiocentesis or pericardiectomy, and repair of traumatic injuries to the heart or thoracic aorta.
- Patients undergoing "redo" cardiac surgery (i.e., those who have previously had a median sternotomy) warrant special concern about the possibility of sudden, massive hemorrhage. At least 2 units of blood should be immediately available for all such cases.
- The choice of anesthetic drugs and techniques for inducing anesthesia should include consideration of the patient's cardiac pathophysiology and other comorbid conditions. Hypotension may result from vasodilation secondary to decreased sympathetic tone induced by anesthetics, particularly in patients with poor left ventricular function. Conversely, hypertension may occur from preinduction anxiety or sympathetic stimulation caused by laryngoscopy and endotracheal intubation.
- During the prebypass period, hemodynamic and metabolic stability of the patient should be achieved while making preparations for CPB. The degree of surgical stimulation varies markedly during this period.
- CPB activates the extrinsic and intrinsic coagulation pathways and alters platelet function through the influence of hemodilution, hypothermia, and contact activation by bypass circuit materials.
- Problems that may occur during the postbypass or postoperative time periods include hypotension resulting from surgical or technical failure, left or right ventricular dysfunction, vasoplegia syndrome, or left ventricular outflow tract obstruction. Other potential problems include dysrhythmias, pulmonary complications (e.g., atelectasis, bronchospasm, mucus or blood plugging of the endotracheal tube, pulmonary edema, hemothorax, pneumothorax), metabolic disturbances (e.g., hypokalemia, hyperkalemia, hypocalcemia, hypomagnesemia, hyperglycemia), and bleeding and coagulopathy.
- The Society of Thoracic Surgeons (STS), the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, and the American Society of ExtraCorporeal Technology published a joint statement on practice guidelines for transfusion and blood conservation in cardiac surgery. A European Guideline published by the European Association for Cardio-Thoracic Surgery and European Association of Cardiothoracic Anesthesiology confirm these recommendations. The guidelines include recommendations regarding the following: (1) use of drugs that decrease postoperative bleeding, including antifibrinolytic drugs; (2) techniques for conserving blood and minimizing hemodilution, including cell saver sequestration, retrograde priming of the pump, and normovolemic hemodilution; and (3) implementation of transfusion algorithms supported with point-of-care testing.
- The incidence of overt postoperative stroke after isolated coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) surgery has decreased significantly to 1.2% despite the more frequent and current prevalence of diabetes mellitus and hypertension. The major risk factor for central nervous system injury or dysfunction is particulate and microgaseous emboli; other factors include cerebral hypoperfusion and the inflammatory response to surgery and CPB.
- STS guidelines state that blood glucose levels should be maintained at less than 180 mg/dL throughout the perioperative period, although many centers treat cardiac surgical patients somewhat more aggressively with continuous insulin infusions in an attempt to keep glucose levels lower than 150 mg/dL. Hypoglycemia should be avoided.

KEY POINTS—cont'd

- Postoperative pain after median sternotomy or thoracotomy causes enhanced sympathetic tone and may lead to myocardial ischemia secondary to increased heart rate, pulmonary vascular resistance, myocardial work, and myocardial oxygen consumption. Furthermore, pain may cause "splinting" that interferes with the patient's ability to cough and clear secretions and leads to postoperative respiratory insufficiency.
- Common procedures performed in "hybrid" operating rooms or cardiac interventional suites include electrophysiology procedures and procedures that involve percutaneous management of structural heart lesions. These include valvular lesions and atrial or ventricular septal defects. Other percutaneous procedures performed in non-OR locations include placement of ventricular assist devices, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation, and aortic endovascular stenting.

Cardiovascular Disease in the 21st Century

AGE, GENDER, AND RACE

An estimated 82,600,000 U.S. adults (<1 in 3) have one or more types of cardiovascular disease (CVD), of whom approximately half are 60 years old or older.[1] The prevalence of CVD will likely increase because of the "graying" of the United States (i.e., the aging of our population) and the increasing incidences of obesity and hypertension.[2] Although mortality from coronary artery disease (CAD) specifically has decreased since the 1970s, CVD remains the leading cause of death for both men and women in the United States (Fig. 54.1). Furthermore, approximately 7,588,000 inpatient cardiovascular operations and procedures are performed yearly in the United States, with direct and indirect costs totaling approximately $315.4 billion.[3] As the current healthcare reforms expand treatment coverage, these costs will probably increase.[2]

Despite the common perception that CVD affects mainly men, this is true only in younger age groups. The sex distribution of CVD changes with age; CVD becomes equally prevalent between the sexes by the age of 60 years, and by the age of 80 years, more women than men are affected.[1] The impact of CVD on the health status of U.S. women has gained recognition and is the focus of public education efforts such as the "Go Red for Women" campaign sponsored by the American Heart Association (AHA) and the "Red Dress" project sponsored by the Department of Health and Human Services, the National Institutes of Health, and the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute.[4] Furthermore, a series of editorials and articles in the *Journal of Thoracic and Cardiovascular Surgery*[5] and gender-specific practice guidelines for coronary artery surgery in the *Annals of Thoracic Surgery*[6] have emphasized sex differences that affect patients who undergo cardiac surgical procedures. For example, using internal mammary artery (IMA) grafts significantly reduces mortality in patients of both sexes, but, until more recently, these grafts were underused in women.[6] Although some studies have shown that women's short-term survival is worse than men's after coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) surgery,[7] others have found that 5-year post-CABG survival is actually better in women than in men.[8]

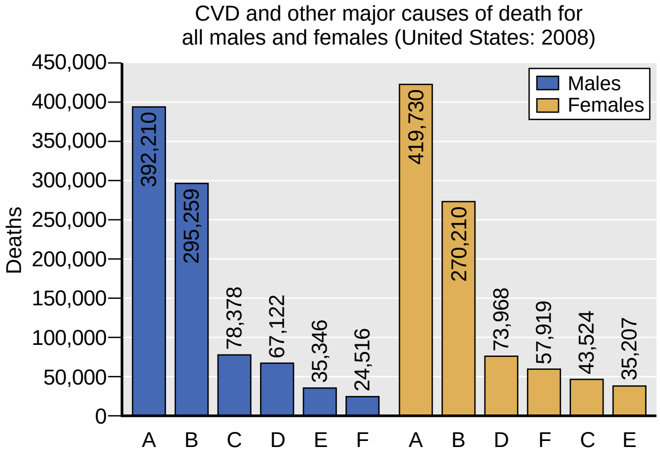


Fig. 54.1 Cardiovascular disease *(CVD)* and other major causes of death for all male and female members of the U.S. population in 2008. (From Roger VL, Go AS, Lloyd-Jones DM, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics—2012 update: a report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2012;125:e2–e220; Chart 3–10.)

Mortality resulting from CVD has been consistently more frequent in black than white patients.[1] In 2008, the overall CVD-related death rate per 100,000 persons was 390.4 for black male patients, 287.2 for white male patients, 277.4 for black female patients, and 200.5 for white female patients. Furthermore, racial disparities have been reported in outcomes after CABG: both unadjusted mortality rates and mortality rates adjusted for patient-related characteristics are higher in black patients than in white patients.[9] In fact, as an unfortunate consequence of the public release of quality information through CABG "report cards" in certain states, institutions and individual surgeons may use "racial profiling" in selecting patients for CABG.[10] For example, in New York State, physicians' avoidance of racial and ethnic minorities, who may be at a higher risk for poor outcomes, may have temporarily widened the disparity in CABG use among white versus black and Hispanic patients.

GENETIC INFLUENCES IN CARDIAC DISEASE

Evolving rapidly beyond racial considerations (which are increasingly losing their medical and scientific meaning in the "melting pot" of the United States), *perioperative genomics* is the study of the unique biologic makeup of surgical patients. This field holds promise for uncovering the biologic reasons that patients with similar risk factors can have dramatically different perioperative clinical outcomes.[11] Patients with complex comorbid conditions are exposed to controlled trauma in the cardiac surgical operating room (Fig. 54.2). The hope is that preoperative risk assessment and outcome prediction will soon include testing for genetic markers related to individual differences in inflammatory, thrombotic, and vascular responses to stress related to cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) and to the operation itself.

One example is the prevention of perioperative myocardial infarction (MI). Mechanisms in the pathogenesis of myonecrosis include the complex acute inflammatory response to surgery and CPB. Functional genetic variants in cytokine and leukocyte-endothelial interaction pathways are independently associated with the severity of myonecrosis after cardiac surgery.[12] Increased concentrations of the most extensively studied inflammatory marker, C-reactive protein (CRP), are associated with increased mortality in patients who undergo CABG.[13] Both increased baseline plasma CRP levels and increased acute-phase postoperative plasma CRP levels are genetically determined.[14] Another pathophysiologic process in perioperative MI is coagulation variability with a tendency toward thrombosis. Polymorphisms in platelet activation[15] and thrombin formation have been associated with myocardial injury and with mortality after cardiac surgery.

Genetic factors have been associated with other postoperative complications. Common genetic variants of CRP and interleukin-6 (IL-6) are significantly associated with the risk of stroke[16] and cognitive decline after cardiac surgery.[17] Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) gene polymorphisms predict a patient's risk of respiratory complications that necessitate prolonged mechanical ventilation after cardiac surgery.[18]

Research in the field of genetic and molecular determinants of outcomes in patients undergoing cardiac surgery continues. In addition to preoperative risk assessments, intraoperative diagnoses and therefore planning for the postoperative care of the patient will be influenced as new discoveries are made.

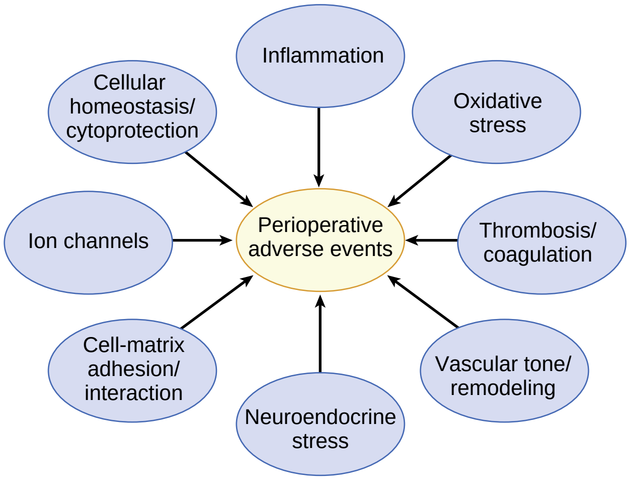

Inflammation
Cellular homeostasis/ cytoprotection
Oxidative stress
Ion channels
Perioperative adverse events
Thrombosis/ coagulation
Cell-matrix adhesion/ interaction
Vascular tone/ remodeling
Neuroendocrine stress

Fig. 54.2 **Biologic systems and mechanistic pathways genetically associated with perioperative adverse events.** (Redrawn from Podgoreanu MV, Schwinn DA. New paradigms in cardiovascular medicine: emerging technologies and practices: perioperative genomics. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2005;46:1965–1977.)

Approach to Anesthesia for the Adult Cardiac Patient

PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION, PREPARATION, AND MONITORING

Heart and Vascular System

Electrocardiography. Standard monitoring of cardiac surgical patients by electrocardiography (ECG) involves using the five-lead electrode system. An electrode is placed on each extremity, and one precordial electrode is placed in the V_5 position (on the left anterior axillary line at the fifth intercostal space). Ischemia detection is greatest (75%) with the V_5 lead. This sensitivity increases to 80% when lead II is paired with a V_5 lead.[19] The addition of a second precordial lead, V_4, increases the sensitivity, thus making it possible to detect nearly 100% of ischemic episodes.[20] Currently, most ECG monitors can perform ST-segment analysis automatically with high sensitivity and specificity for detecting ischemia.

Despite appropriate lead selection and the use of automated ST-segment monitoring, perioperative ECG monitoring has important limitations. Visual inspection of the ECG on the monitor has low sensitivity in diagnosing ischemic changes, and automated ST-segment analysis depends on the computer's ability to set the isoelectric and J-point reference points accurately. During cardiac surgical procedures, the set points should be checked before and after bypass, especially persistent changes in heart rate, because the reference points chosen at the beginning of the case may not be accurate under conditions that may arise later.[21]

Arterial and Central Venous Pressure Monitoring (see also Chapter 36). Invasive arterial cannulation and monitoring comprise a standard of care for cardiac surgical patients. Patients' comorbidities often include labile hypertension, atherosclerotic CVD, or both. Furthermore, cardiac surgical technique frequently causes sudden, rapid changes in arterial blood pressure resulting from factors such as direct compression of the heart, impaired venous return caused by retraction and cannulation of the great vessels, and arrhythmias resulting from mechanical stimulation.[22] In addition, sudden, significant blood loss may induce hypovolemia and hypotension. Finally, during nonpulsatile CPB, noninvasive blood pressure recordings are not accurate. Intraarterial monitoring provides continuous, real-time, beat-to-beat assessment of arterial perfusion pressure and waveform throughout the cardiac surgical procedure. Having an indwelling arterial catheter also enables the frequent drawing of arterial blood for laboratory analyses.[22]

Although the radial artery is the most commonly accessed site, the femoral, brachial, ulnar, dorsalis pedis, posterior tibial, and axillary arteries can also be used. The pressures measured in the peripheral arteries are different from the central aortic pressure because the arterial waveform becomes progressively more distorted as the signal is transmitted down the arterial system.[22] Although the mean arterial pressure (MAP) measured in the peripheral arteries is usually similar to the central aortic pressure, this may change after CPB is initiated.[23] When cannulating a radial artery, one should consider the native state of the collateral circulation in the hand and the possible surgical use of a radial artery free graft as an arterial conduit. If a radial arterial graft is to be harvested, it is usually taken from the nondominant hand or arm; thus, the arterial line should be placed on the dominant side.

Central venous access is also standard of care during cardiac surgery. In addition to monitoring central venous pressure (CVP), central venous access provides a portal for intravascular volume replacement, pharmacologic therapy, and the insertion of other invasive monitors, such as pulmonary artery (PA) catheters. In addition, a CVP catheter can be used to measure the filling pressure of the right ventricle and estimate intravascular volume status.[22] Although the CVP does not directly reflect left-sided heart filling pressure, it may be used as an estimate of left-sided pressures in patients with good left ventricular (LV) function. Following trends is more useful than relying on an individual measurement.[22] In many patients, using a central venous catheter may offer a better risk-to-benefit ratio than using a PA catheter.[24] For the accurate measurement of pressure, the distal end of the catheter must lie within one of the large intrathoracic veins or the right atrium.[22]

An internal jugular vein is most commonly selected for catheterization because it provides ease of approach and optimal distance from the operative field. A femoral or subclavian vein can be considered as well, but groin access can be challenging in obese patients and may be inappropriate if femoral bypass cannula placement or vein graft harvesting is necessary. The subclavian approach is also imperfect because it is associated with an increased risk of catheter obstruction during sternal retraction.

The use of ultrasound is being rapidly adopted throughout the United States for facilitating the placement of central venous catheters and reducing the complications associated with them.[25] Although ultrasound-guided central catheter placement is easily accomplished and appears to improve patients' outcomes, concerns regarding the associated costs of the required hardware and training are reasons for the lack of universal adoption of this technique (Box 54.1).

Pulmonary Artery Catheterization. The PA catheter is a flow-directed catheter typically placed through an introducer in the central venous compartment via the internal jugular, subclavian, or femoral vein (see also Chapter 36). This catheter can measure PA pressure (PAP), CVP, and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP). However, the PCWP can both overestimate and underestimate LV filling pressure (Box 54.2). Some PA catheters are designed with a thermistor to register blood temperature changes, which are used to calculate right-sided heart cardiac output (CO) or ejection fraction (EF) by thermodilution. PA catheters may also have oximetric capabilities to measure mixed venous oxygen saturation ($S\bar{v}O_2$). Thus, a PA catheter can be used to assess intravascular volume status, measure CO, measure $S\bar{v}O_2$, and derive hemodynamic parameters.[22]

BOX 54.1 Some of the Recognized Benefits of and Concerns About Ultrasound-Guided Central Venous Cannulation

Benefits*

Greater success rate on first attempt
Fewer overall attempts
Better access in patients with difficult neck anatomy (e.g., resulting from obesity or prior surgery)
Fewer complications (e.g., carotid artery puncture, anticoagulant-enhanced bleeding)
Visible vessel patency, anatomic variants
Relatively inexpensive technology

Concerns

Need for personnel to be trained to maintain aseptic technique when using sterile probe sheaths
Requirement for additional training
Inability to show surface anatomy
Potential loss of landmark-guided skills when needed for emergency central venous catheterization

*Ultrasonic guidance of internal jugular vein cannulation can be particularly advantageous in patients with difficult neck anatomy (e.g., short neck, obesity) or prior neck surgery, anticoagulated patients, and infants.

Modified from Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:426.

BOX 54.2 Conditions Resulting in Discrepancies Between Pulmonary Capillary Wedge Pressure and Left Ventricular End-Diastolic Pressure

PCWP > LVEDP

Positive-pressure ventilation
PEEP
Increased intrathoracic pressure
Non-West lung zone III PAC placement
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
Increased pulmonary vascular resistance
Left atrial myxoma
Mitral valve disease (e.g., stenosis, regurgitation)

PCWP < LVEDP

Noncompliant left ventricle (e.g., ischemia, hypertrophy)
Aortic regurgitation (premature closure of the mitral valve)
LVEDP > 25 mm Hg

LVEDP, Left ventricular end-diastolic pressure; *PAC,* pulmonary artery catheter; *PCWP,* pulmonary capillary wedge pressure; *PEEP,* positive end-expiratory pressure.

Modified from Tuman KJ, Carroll CC, Ivankovich AD. Pitfalls in interpretation of pulmonary artery catheter data. *Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth Update.* 1991;2:1.

The CO, the amount of blood delivered to the tissues by the heart, is of particular interest to cardiac anesthesiologists. The product of stroke volume and heart rate, CO is affected by preload, afterload, heart rate, and contractility. PA catheters capable of measuring CO continuously were introduced into clinical practice in the 1990s.[22] The correlation of continuous CO measurements with those measurements obtained by using the intermittent thermodilution method is good in physiologically and thermally stable prebypass and postbypass periods.

Continuous monitoring of $S\bar{v}O_2$ provides a means to estimate the adequacy of oxygen delivery relative to oxygen consumption.[22] Decreases in $S\bar{v}O_2$ may indicate decreased CO, increased oxygen consumption, decreased arterial oxygen saturation, or decreased hemoglobin concentration. If it is assumed that oxygen consumption and arterial oxygen content are constant, changes in $S\bar{v}O_2$ should reflect changes in CO.[22] However, London and colleagues found that continuous $S\bar{v}O_2$ monitoring did not lead to better outcomes than standard PA catheter monitoring.[26]

Pacing PA catheters are also commercially available. Electrode PA catheters include five electrodes for atrial, ventricular, or atrioventricular (AV) sequential pacing. Paceport PA catheters (Edwards Lifesciences, Irvine, CA) have a port for the insertion of a ventricular wire or of both atrial and ventricular wires for temporary pacing.

The risk-to-benefit ratio involved in using PA catheters has been a subject of controversy since the 1990s. Complications of PA catheter placement include those mentioned in the section on CVP placement, as well as transient arrhythmias, complete heart block, pulmonary infarction, endobronchial hemorrhage, thrombus formation, catheter knotting and entrapment, valvular damage, and thrombocytopenia.[22] In addition, a common complication is incorrect interpretation of the data obtained from the PA catheter, with resultant incorrect treatment of the patient.[27] Schwann and colleagues published a large, international, prospective observational study showing that using a PA catheter was associated with a more frequent risk of a composite mortality and morbidity outcome than using a CVP alone in patients undergoing CABG surgery.[24] Smaller observational trials have also associated the PA catheter with increased morbidity and decreased survival in cardiac surgical patients.[28,29]

Currently, the trend in the United States is to be selective in deciding which patients may benefit from a PA catheter, especially with the widespread use of transesophageal echocardiography (TEE). Absolute contraindications to PA catheter placement include tricuspid or pulmonic valvular stenosis, right atrial (RA) or right ventricular (RV) masses, and tetralogy of Fallot.[22] Relative contraindications include severe arrhythmias and newly inserted pacemaker wires (which may be dislodged by the catheter during insertion). Clearly, patients undergoing low-risk cardiac surgical procedures can be managed safely without PA catheter placement.[22] However, many cardiac surgeons and anesthesiologists still use the device in high-risk cardiac operations and in patients with right-sided heart failure (HF) or pulmonary hypertension, particularly to assist in postoperative management (Box 54.3).

BOX 54.3 Possible Clinical Indications for Pulmonary Artery Catheter Monitoring

Major procedures involving large fluid shifts or blood loss in patients with:
Right-sided heart failure, pulmonary hypertension
Severe left-sided heart failure not responsive to therapy
Cardiogenic or septic shock or multiple organ failure
Hemodynamic instability requiring inotropes or intraaortic balloon counterpulsation
Surgery of the aorta requiring suprarenal cross-clamping
Hepatic transplantation
Orthotopic heart transplantation

Modified from Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:435.

Transesophageal Echocardiography. TEE is used in many, if not most, cardiac surgical procedures in the current era. See Chapter 37 for a thorough discussion of this extraordinarily valuable diagnostic and monitoring modality.

Central Nervous System

The incidence of overt postoperative stroke after isolated CABG decreased significantly from 1.6% in the year 2000 to 1.2% in the year 2009, despite the greater prevalence of diabetes mellitus and hypertension in the current era.[30] A more subtle entity, postoperative cognitive decline (POCD), or more recently termed delayed neurocognitive recovery as part of the postoperative neurocognitive disorders (PND), has also been described in numerous studies.[31] However, the measurement of POCD is complicated by variations in the tests used to assess cognitive function, the timing of these tests, and the diagnostic and statistical definitions of decline.[32] Furthermore, studies have shown that compared with nonsurgical and healthy controls, patients who undergo CABG have similar rates of cognitive decline 1 year postoperatively.[33,34]

BOX 54.4 Mechanisms of and Contributing Factors to Neurologic Lesions

Embolization

Hypoperfusion

Inflammation

Influencing Factors

Aortic atheromatous plaque
Cerebrovascular disease
Altered cerebral autoregulation
Hypotension
Intracardiac debris
Air
Cerebral venous obstruction on bypass
Cardiopulmonary bypass circuit surface
Reinfusion of unprocessed shed blood
Cerebral hyperthermia
Hypoxia

From Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:1070.

Risk factors for central nervous system (CNS) injury or dysfunction after cardiac surgery are listed in Box 54.4.[35] The most common cause is thought to be particulate or microgaseous emboli.[36,37] Other factors include cerebral hypoperfusion, particularly in patients with cerebrovascular disease, and the inflammatory response to surgery and CPB.[38,39]

Monitoring

Transesophageal and Epiaortic Echocardiography. TEE allows direct visualization of the first segment of the ascending aorta, the middle distal segment of the aortic arch, and a good portion of the descending thoracic aorta. However, the distal segment of the ascending aorta and the proximal

TABLE 54.1 Grading Aortic Atherosclerosis

Aortic Atheromatous Disease	Echocardiographic Findings
Grade 1	Normal or mild intimal thickening
Grade 2	Severe intimal thickening No protruding atheromas
Grade 3	Atheroma protruding <5 mm into the lumen
Grade 4	Atheroma protruding ≥5 mm into the lumen
Grade 5	Atheroma of any size with a mobile component

Modified from Béïque FA, Joffe D, Tousignant G, Konstadt S. Echocardiography-based assessment and management of atherosclerotic disease of the thoracic aorta. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1998;12:206–220.

midportion of the aortic arch cannot be visualized well because of the interposition of the trachea and bronchi between the TEE probe and these aortic structures. Instead, epiaortic imaging with a handheld, high-frequency probe placed over the ascending aorta or aortic arch can be used to visualize aortic segments that are in the TEE probe's "blind spot."

The echocardiographic finding of atheromatous disease of the aorta has been linked to CNS injury in cardiac surgical patients.[40] Atherosclerosis of the ascending aorta is present in 20% to 40% of cardiac surgical patients, and the percentage increases with age. The severity of atheromatous disease of the aorta is a strong predictor of death and stroke after CABG (Table 54.1).[41] Using TEE to guide cannula placement or surgical technique significantly reduced the stroke rate in a series of 500 consecutive patients compared with controls in a statewide database.[42] Avoiding instrumentation of the ascending aorta (the "no touch technique") in patients with severe aortic atherosclerosis has been advocated.[43] The addition of epiaortic scanning of the ascending aorta increases the sensitivity of intraoperative echocardiography in identifying significant atheromatous disease in this segment of the aorta. Certainly, this combination of techniques is superior to surgical palpation in detecting such disease.[44]

Cerebral Oximetry. Cerebral oximetry uses near-infrared spectroscopy technology similar to that used in pulse oximeters. Light-emitting electrodes are placed on the patient's forehead, lateral to the midline, and over both frontal cortices. Because the skull is translucent to infrared light, and because oxygenated and deoxygenated blood have different absorption characteristics when exposed to infrared light of two different wavelengths, regional cerebral oxygen saturation (rSO_2) can be computed from the returning signal. The design of the cerebral oximeter enables it to measure change from the patient's own established baseline and to monitor both frontal lobes simultaneously.

The use of near-infrared spectroscopy has been studied in the perioperative setting; a relative decrease in rSO_2 to less than 80% of the preoperative baseline or to absolute levels less than 50% increased the incidence of adverse postoperative outcomes.[45,46] These outcomes include POCD,[47] stroke,[48] organ dysfunction, mortality,[49,50] and length of hospital stay.[51] A physiologically derived treatment algorithm for management of perioperative cerebral oxygen desaturation has been proposed (Fig. 54.3).[52] As noted by Murkin,[35] an important confounder in evaluating the role of monitoring cerebral oximetry is the efficacy of treatment for cerebral desaturation.

A baseline rSO_2 that is low even though the patient is breathing supplemental oxygen (absolute value ≤50%) is an independent risk factor for 30-day and 1-year mortality.[53] A baseline rSO_2 could act as a refined marker for preoperative risk stratification and help clinicians identify patients who require more intensive monitoring and care in the postoperative period.[53,54]

Transcranial Doppler. Transcranial Doppler (TCD) involves the ultrasonic interrogation of blood flow velocity through the middle cerebral or common carotid arteries as an indirect measure of cerebral blood flow.[45] The technology has been used extensively as a research tool. For example, in conjunction with cerebral oximetry, TCD has been used to delineate the limits of cerebral autoregulation during CPB.[55] TCD can also detect cerebral emboli. Contrary to previous information, an association between TCD-detected emboli and POCD is questionable.[56,57]

A primary limitation of TCD technology has been its inability to discern gaseous from solid emboli.[45,56] Other general limitations of TCD technology include the following: (1) the quality of information is heavily user dependent; (2) accuracy requires stable and precise probe placement, which can be quite cumbersome; and (3) information is affected by patient-related characteristics, such as skin thickness. These difficulties have limited use of this technology in the perioperative setting.[45]

Electroencephalography and Bispectral Index Monitoring. The electroencephalogram (EEG), recorded from multiple adhesive or screw-in scalp electrodes, represents surface cerebral cortical activity (see also Chapters 9 and 10). Awake patients produce a pattern of EEG readings that differs from the pattern produced by patients who are under anesthesia. Establishing a baseline and monitoring the changes from that baseline form the premise of EEG monitoring. Changes in the frequency of EEG signals (slower brain waves) and the reduction of wave amplitude may indicate changes in cortical neuronal function that warrant concern.

Multichannel EEG monitoring is not routinely used in cardiac surgery. However, a resurgence of interest in single- or dual-channel processed EEG monitoring, such as the bispectral index (BIS), has occurred.[45,58,59] The BIS has been studied as a means to monitor for intraoperative awareness, to reduce overall anesthetic consumption, and to provide information on cerebral perfusion. However, controversy surrounds the usefulness of BIS monitoring in reducing intraoperative awareness.[45,60-62] Similarly, the effectiveness of BIS monitoring in either guiding the safe reduction of anesthetic dosing or contributing to the success of fast tracking has not been demonstrated by randomized clinical trials in cardiac surgical patients.[58]

With respect to cerebral ischemia, sudden EEG changes during cardiac surgery and CPB can be attributable to correctable problems such as superior vena cava (SVC) obstruction or severe decrease in CO.[58] The latest iteration of the BIS monitor incorporates bilateral frontal EEG channels, which may increase its ability to detect unilateral

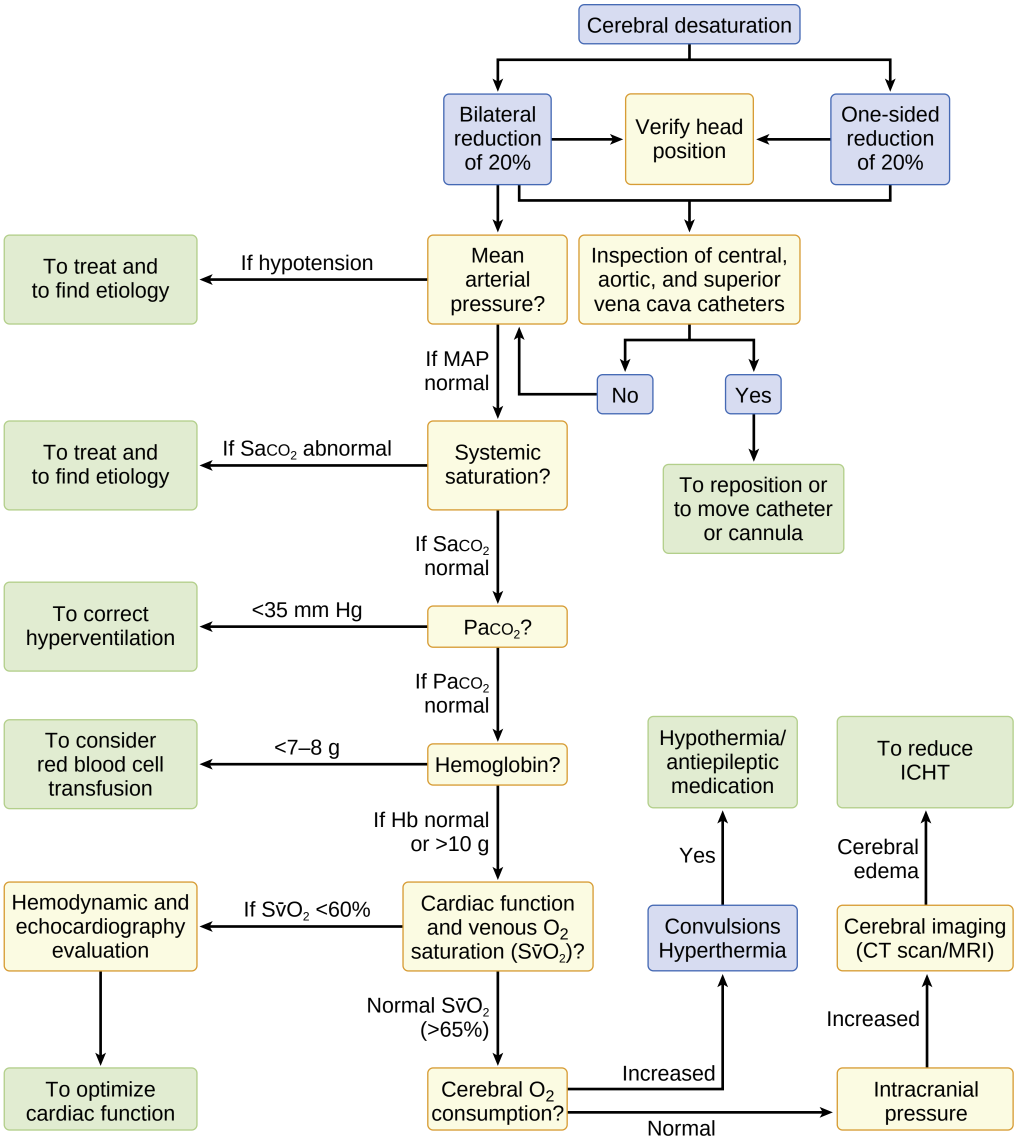

Cerebral desaturation
Bilateral reduction of 20%
Verify head position
One-sided reduction of 20%
To treat and to find etiology
If hypotension
Mean arterial pressure?
Inspection of central, aortic, and superior vena cava catheters
If MAP normal
No
Yes
To treat and to find etiology
If $Saco_2$ abnormal
Systemic saturation?
To reposition or to move catheter or cannula
If $Saco_2$ normal
To correct hyperventilation
<35 mm Hg
$Paco_2$?
If $Paco_2$ normal
To consider red blood cell transfusion
<7–8 g
Hemoglobin?
Hypothermia/ antiepileptic medication
To reduce ICHT
If Hb normal or >10 g
Yes
Cerebral edema
Hemodynamic and echocardiography evaluation
If $S\bar{v}O_2$ <60%
Cardiac function and venous O_2 saturation ($S\bar{v}O_2$)?
Convulsions Hyperthermia
Cerebral imaging (CT scan/MRI)
Normal $S\bar{v}O_2$ (>65%)
Increased
Increased
To optimize cardiac function
Cerebral O_2 consumption?
Normal
Intracranial pressure

Fig. 54.3 Algorithm for the use of brain oximetry. *CT,* Computed tomography; *ICHT,* intracranial hypertension; *MAP,* mean arterial pressure; *MRI,* magnetic resonance imaging; *O_2,* oxygen; *$Paco_2$,* partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide; *Sao_2,* arterial oxygen saturation; $S\bar{v}O_2$, mixed venous oxygen saturation. (Redrawn from Denault A, Deschamps A, Murkin JM. A proposed algorithm for the intraoperative use of cerebral near-infrared spectroscopy. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth.* 2007;11:274–281.)

frontal ischemia, especially if anesthesia is stable, if the insult is sudden, extended, or located in the frontal area, and if the preoperative EEG was normal.[58,63] However, many variables may confuse EEG interpretation during cardiac surgery. These include hypothermia, the pharmacologic suppression of EEG signals, and interference produced by pump mechanics. In addition, the EEG measures only cortical activity, so ischemic or embolic injury that occurs below the level of the cortex may go undetected. Therefore, the EEG and derived indices are neither sensitive nor specific in detecting cerebral ischemia.[58]

SUMMARY. Currently, evidence-based recommendations cannot be made regarding the efficacy of treatment for abnormal values. Although not yet recognized as a clinical standard of care, neuromonitoring will likely continue to be the subject of significant research effort.

Renal System

Acute kidney injury (AKI) after cardiac surgery remains a significant cause of postoperative morbidity, increased cost of care, later development of chronic kidney disease, and short-term as well as long-term mortality.[59] Although the pathogenesis of AKI is multifactorial, control of some specific factors may limit its incidence in cardiac surgical patients. Bellomo and associates identified six major injury pathways of cardiac surgery–associated AKI: toxins (both exogenous and endogenous), metabolic factors, ischemia-reperfusion injury, neurohormonal activation, inflammation, and oxidative stress.[60]

Randomized trials of specific potential preventive measures for AKI after cardiac surgery are few. Certainly, all potentially nephrotoxic drugs should be avoided in the perioperative period (Box 54.5).[59,61] Hydration is, of course, a universally accepted component of strategies to prevent

BOX 54.5 Drugs That Contribute to Kidney Injury

Radiocontrast agents
Aminoglycosides
Amphotericin
Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs
β-Lactam antibiotics (specifically contribute to interstitial nephropathy)
Sulfonamides
Acyclovir
Methotrexate
Cisplatin
Cyclosporine
Tacrolimus
Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors
Angiotensin receptor blockers

Modified from Bellomo R, Kellum JA, Ronco C. Acute kidney injury. *Lancet.* 2012;380:756–766.

contrast nephropathy.[61] Unfortunately, no pharmacologic strategy has definitive efficacy in preventing early AKI.[61] Atherosclerosis of the ascending aorta appears to be an independent risk factor for AKI.[60]

Intraoperative TEE should be used to identify patients at increased risk for thromboembolic phenomena.[60,61] Although observational studies have suggested a possible benefit of off-pump procedures and avoidance of aortic manipulation, definitive evidence is lacking.[60,61] For cardiac surgical cases that require CPB, the duration of aortic cross-clamping should be limited if possible, especially in patients who are at a higher-than-normal risk for renal complications, such as patients with preexisting renal insufficiency.[60] Hemodynamic instability should be addressed quickly, and intravascular volume should be maintained or rapidly restored.[60,61] Finally, perioperative hyperglycemia should be avoided.[60,61]

Clearly, definition of measures that may prevent AKI after cardiac surgery is needed.[60,61] The cost of this complication to the patient and to society is probably higher than previously thought.[59]

Endocrine System

Glucose Control. Hyperglycemia in surgical patients is a consequence of the inflammatory or stress response to the trauma of surgery. Components of this response include an endocrine response (i.e., increased production of counter-regulatory hormones such as cortisol, growth hormone, glucagon, and catecholamines) (Fig. 54.4), an immune response resulting in increased cytokine production, an autonomic response resulting in increased sympathetic stimulation, and altered insulin signaling. These changes increase glucose production, decrease glucose elimination during CPB, and induce insulin resistance, thereby causing hyperglycemia.[62]

All patients are at risk for developing hyperglycemia during cardiac surgery. Older patients, diabetic patients, and patients with CAD are particularly prone to perioperative hyperglycemia. Although cardiac surgery without CPB initiates a stress response, CPB increases this response manyfold.[63] The degree of hyperglycemia depends on several variables associated with the use of CPB, such as the pump prime fluid selected and the degree of hypothermia induced. Epinephrine and other inotropic drugs may contribute to hyperglycemia after CPB by stimulating hepatic glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis.

Impaired fasting glucose blood levels before cardiac surgery and persistently increased glucose levels during and immediately after surgical procedures are predictive of longer hospital stay and increased perioperative morbidity and mortality in both diabetic and nondiabetic patients.[64,65] However, in diabetic patients undergoing cardiac operations, hyperglycemia may only partly explain the increased risk for adverse outcomes.[65] Immunologic abnormalities common to diabetic patients, such as decreased chemotaxis, phagocytosis, opsonization, bacterial killing, and antioxidant defense, also promote adverse outcomes by increasing diabetic patients' risk of infection.[66]

Glucose blood levels should be controlled, beginning in the preoperative period and continuing until discharge.[67] However, in a classic study, patients were randomly assigned to intensive intraoperative insulin treatment (to maintain glucose levels at 80-100 mg/dL) or to standard insulin treatment (to keep glucose levels <200 mg/dL).[68] Surprisingly, the investigators reported a statistically nonsignificant increase in the incidence of death and stroke in the group receiving intensive insulin treatment. Current Society of Thoracic Surgeons (STS) guidelines state that blood glucose levels should be kept lower than 180 mg/dL throughout the perioperative period.[69] Some cardiac surgical centers more aggressively administer continuous insulin infusions in an attempt to keep glucose levels lower than 150 mg/dL.

Thyroid Hormone. Fig. 54.5 shows the effect of thyroid hormone on cardiovascular hemodynamics.[70] Abnormal thyroid function ultimately affects cardiac function in many ways (Table 54.2). During cardiac surgery, the effect of CPB on thyroid hormone production is uncertain. Both increased and decreased levels of thyroid hormone can occur during or immediately after CPB. Free triiodothyronine (T_3), the biologically active form of the thyroid hormone, is frequently reduced in cardiac patients because of the reduced activity of the 5′-monodeiodinase responsible for converting thyroxine (T_4) into T_3 in peripheral tissues.[71] Patients with low T3 values are predisposed to low CO and therefore death as a complication of cardiac surgery. Patients should be profiled for T3 levels and labelled high risk if the levels are low preoperatively.[72]

Notably, hypothyroidism is more common in female than in male patients undergoing CABG.[73] Zindrou and associates noted a 17% higher mortality rate in women who underwent CABG while receiving thyroxine replacement therapy for hypothyroidism.[74] A review of the literature by Edwards and colleagues concluded that ensuring a perioperative euthyroid state in women with hypothyroidism who were undergoing CABG could be helpful in reducing the perioperative mortality of these patients.[75]

Hematologic System

Bleeding is the primary complication of cardiac operations that require CPB. In fact, 10% to 15% of blood product use in the United States is associated with cardiac surgery, and this percentage is increasing, largely because of

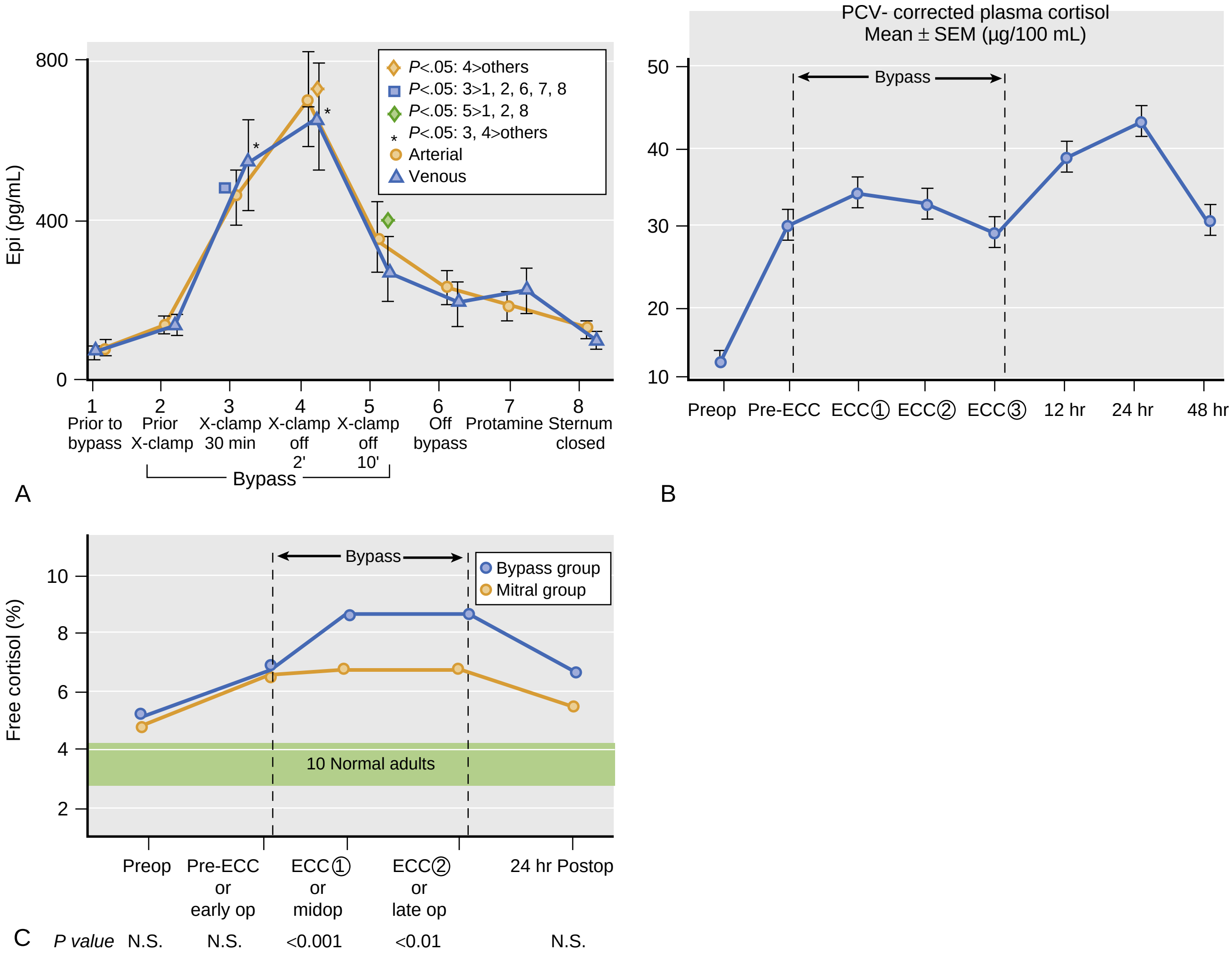


Fig. 54.4 (A) Plasma levels of epinephrine *(Epi)* during cardiac surgery. *Bars* indicate standard error of the mean. *X-clamp,* Cross-clamp. (B and C) Levels of cortisol during cardiac surgery. *ECC,* Extracorporeal circulation; *Midop,* intraoperatively; *N.S.,* not significant; *op,* operatively; *PCV,* packed cell volume; *Postop,* postoperatively; *Preop,* preoperatively. ([A] Redrawn from Reves JG, Karp RB, Buttner EE, et al. Neuronal and adrenomedullary catecholamine release in response to cardiopulmonary bypass in man. *Circulation.* 1982;66:49–55; [B and C] From Taylor KM, Jones JV, Walker MS, et al. The cortisol response during heart-lung bypass. *Circulation.* 1976;54:20–25.)

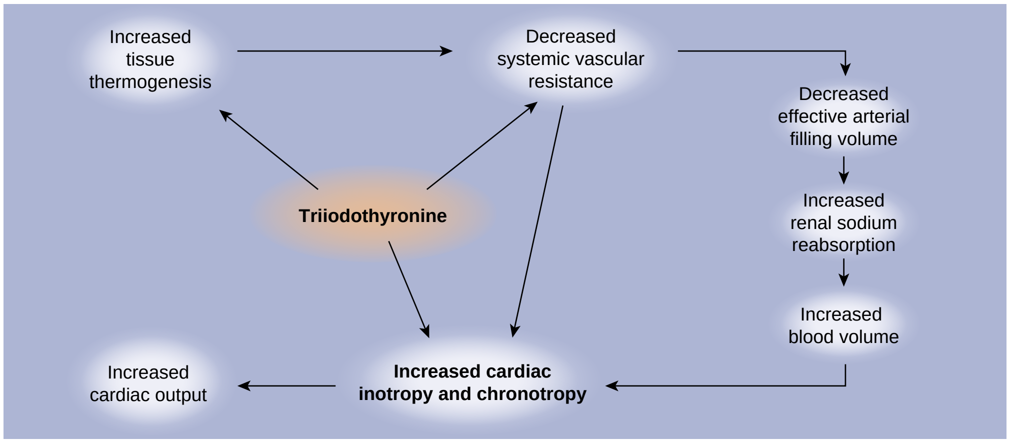

Increased tissue thermogenesis
Decreased systemic vascular resistance
Decreased effective arterial filling volume
Triiodothyronine
Increased renal sodium reabsorption
Increased blood volume
Increased cardiac output
Increased cardiac inotropy and chronotropy

Fig. 54.5 **Effects of thyroid hormone on cardiovascular hemodynamics.** The diagram shows the way in which triiodothyronine increases cardiac output by affecting tissue oxygen consumption (thermogenesis), vascular resistance, blood volume, cardiac contractility, and heart rate. (Redrawn from Klein I, Ojamaa K. Thyroid hormone and the cardiovascular system. *N Engl J Med.* 2001;344:7.)

TABLE 54.2 Effects of Thyroid Dysfunction on Hemodynamics and Cardiac Function

Parameter	Normal Values	Hyperthyroidism	Hypothyroidism
Blood volume (% of normal value)	100	105.5	84.5
Heart rate (beats/min)	72-84	88-130	60-80
Cardiac output (L/min)	4.0-6.0	>7.0	<4.5
Systemic vascular resistance (dyne•s•cm^{-5})	1500-1700	700-1200	2100-2700
Left ventricular ejection fraction (%)	>50	>65	≤60
Isovolumic relaxation time (ms)	60-80	25-40	>80

Reprinted with permission from Klein I, Ojamaa K. Thyroid hormone and the cardiovascular system. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:501–509. Copyright © 2001 Massachusetts Medical Society.

the increasing complexity of cardiac surgical procedures. Real-world data obtained from a large sample of patients and entered into the STS Adult Cardiac Surgery Database suggest that 50% of patients who undergo cardiac surgical procedures receive a blood transfusion.[76] Complex cardiac operations such as "redo" procedures, aortic operations, and the implantation of ventricular assist devices (VADs) require blood transfusion much more often than do simpler operations. Donor blood is viewed as a scarce resource that is associated with increased healthcare costs and significant risk to patients. Furthermore, perioperative blood transfusion is associated with worse short-term and long-term outcomes.[77,78] Hence, reducing bleeding and blood transfusions has become a major focus of quality improvement efforts in cardiac surgery.

Heparin as an Anticoagulant. Since its discovery by Jay McLean, MD, in 1915, heparin has stood the test of time and remains the primary anticoagulant used in cardiac operations that require CPB. The mechanism underlying heparin's anticoagulant effect centers on the heparin molecule's ability to bind simultaneously to antithrombin III and thrombin. Modern nomenclature refers to antithrombin III as antithrombin (AT). The binding process is mediated by a unique pentasaccharide sequence that binds to AT. The proximity of AT and thrombin, mediated by the heparin molecule, allows AT to inhibit the procoagulant effect of thrombin by binding to the active-site serine residue of the thrombin molecule.[79] The inhibitory effect of AT is increased 1000-fold in the presence of heparin. The heparin-AT complex can affect several coagulation factors, but factor Xa and thrombin are the most sensitive to inhibition by heparin, and thrombin is 10 times more sensitive to the inhibitory effects of unfractionated heparin than is factor Xa.[80]

Only approximately onethird of the heparin molecules in a dose of heparin contain the critical pentasaccharide segment that is needed for high-affinity binding to AT. Thus, relatively large doses are required to produce the anticoagulant effect necessary for CPB. In fact, dosing of heparin for CPB is somewhat empiric. After a baseline activated clotting time (ACT) is measured (the normal range is 80-120 seconds), a dose of 300 to 400 units/kg of heparin is given as an intravenous bolus. Commercially available assays are used for calculating the patient's dose-responsiveness to heparin in vitro. Some practitioners administer heparin at the dose that is indicated by such an in vitro dose-response assay. Subsequent heparin dosing for extracorporeal circulation (ECC) is targeted at maintaining ACT values longer than 400 to 480 seconds. Also available is a heparin concentration monitor that uses protamine titration analysis for ex vivo calculation of the whole blood heparin concentration. This result is often used as an adjunct to the ACT value in confirming an adequate heparin concentration for CPB. Unfortunately, ACT test results vary substantially with clinical conditions and the particular platform used for measurement. Thus, the evidence supporting the use of a threshold of 400 or 480 seconds is almost entirely anecdotal.[81]

The dose of heparin used in patients on CPB is based on early landmark work published by Bull and coauthors in 1975.[82] A small study that sought evidence of thrombin activity during CPB in nonhuman primates and pediatric patients found results supporting a safe lower limit for ACT of 400 seconds.[83] In 1979, Doty and colleagues proposed a simplified dosing regimen guided by ACT values without dose-response curves.[84] The data and recommendations from these few studies constitute the primary basis for current heparin dosing protocols.

Despite heparin's historic and continued role in anticoagulation for patients maintained on CPB, it is not a perfect anticoagulant. Intrinsic and extrinsic pathway coagulation occurs despite heparin administration, and platelets can still be activated by contact with bypass circuitry and by heparin directly.[85] Alternative anticoagulants are discussed briefly in the section on heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT).

Monitoring of Anticoagulation. Using ACT to monitor the effectiveness of heparin is not an exact science. Tremendous variability is observed in patients' anticoagulation responses to a given dose of heparin; reasons for this variability include variations in levels of heparin-binding proteins and AT. Hence, ACT values correlate poorly with actual heparin concentrations. Nevertheless, since the publication of Bull and colleagues' early work,[82] ACT has been the mainstay of anticoagulation monitoring in cardiac operations that require CPB.

Many different ACT measurement devices are commercially available, and each uses a different platform for clot detection and endpoint signaling. However, they all involve the addition of whole blood to a tube or channel containing a contact-phase activator. The activator can be celite, kaolin, glass, or any combination thereof. The sample is warmed to 37°C before the measurement technique is performed. Clot formation occurs, and the measurement ends when a change in velocity, pressure, oscillation, electromagnetic

TABLE 54.3 Clinical Variables That Can Affect the Activated Clotting Time

Hemodilution	Prolongs ACT in heparinized patients
Hypothermia	Prolongs ACT
Thrombocytopenia	Prolongs ACT
Platelet inhibitors	Prolongs ACT
Platelet lysis	Shortens ACT
Aprotinin	Prolongs only celite ACT
Surgical stress	Shortens ACT

ACT, Activated clotting time.

forces, or even color is observed, depending on the particular platform of measurement.[85]

Several clinical variables can affect the ACT (Table 54.3). In addition to physiologic variations, the design of ACT measurement devices (which varies across their many manufacturers) also affects ACT normal and therapeutic values. ACTs also correlate poorly with whole blood and plasma heparin levels, and responses to heparin differ somewhat between adult and pediatric patients.[86] Some authors argue that, because of its poor correlation with heparin concentration, ACT alone is not an adequate monitor of heparin efficacy, and that simultaneous or adjunct monitoring of heparin concentration should also be used during CPB. Prolongation of ACT by non–heparin-related clinical factors, such as hypothermia, hemodilution, or quantitative or qualitative platelet abnormalities, is a well-documented phenomenon, and the anesthesiologist must understand these factors to determine whether it is safe to reduce the heparin dose when the ACT is prolonged. The poor correlation between ACT and measured heparin concentration also makes it possible that a dose reduction will render the heparin concentration inadequate, even when the ACT remains within an acceptable range.

Some point-of-care (POC) monitors, such as the Hepcon HMS system (Medtronic Perfusion Systems, Minneapolis, MN), use a protamine titration assay to calculate the heparin concentration. Despotis et al. suggest that monitoring and maintaining heparin concentration—and thus giving larger doses of heparin—actually protect the hemostatic system and may decrease transfusion requirements.[87] However, other investigators have not been able to confirm that higher doses of heparin confer better hemostatic protection; markers of ongoing coagulation are essentially the same whether traditional ACT monitoring or heparin concentration monitoring is used.[88] The 2018 STS, Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists (SCA), and the American Society of ExtraCorporeal Technology (AmSECT) Guidelines state: "Use of heparin concentration monitoring in addition to ACT might be considered, for the maintenance of CPB, as this strategy has been associated with a significant reduction in thrombin generation, fibrinolysis, and neutrophil activation. However, its effects on postoperative bleeding and blood transfusion are inconsistent (class IIb, Level of Evidence B)."[81] An additional recommendation includes: "During CPB, routine administration of heparin at fixed intervals, with ACT monitoring, might be considered and offers a safe alternative to heparin concentration monitoring. (class IIb, Level of Evidence C)."[81]

The high-dose thrombin time (HiTT) is a modification of the thrombin time that is designed to measure the high levels of heparin that are used during CPB.[81] Unlike ACT, the HiTT correlates well with heparin concentration, both before and during CPB, and it is not affected by hemodilution and hypothermia. As a measure of thrombin inhibition, the HiTT is a more specific test of heparin's effect on thrombin than ACT, and it appears to possess less artifactual variability. Preoperative heparin infusions do not affect HiTT values.[89]

Protamine and Reversal of Anticoagulation. Protamine, which has been in clinical use for as long as heparin has, remains the heparin reversal drug of choice in cardiac surgery. The protamine dose required to reverse heparin is somewhat controversial. In the first published study to examine this question, Bull and associates chose a dose of 1.3 mg protamine for every 100 units of heparin to provide a slight excess of protamine from a projected needed amount of 1.2 mg for every 100 units of heparin.[90] Protamine is usually administered according to the total amount of heparin given (i.e., 1-1.3 mg protamine per 100 units of heparin). This method may result in luxuriant protamine doses, which reduce any theoretic or real risks of heparin rebound but may put the patient at higher risk for bleeding events because of the anticoagulant effect of protamine. Guidelines for the practice of anticoagulation in CPB recommend the following:

1. "It is reasonable to limit the ratio of protamine/heparin to less than 2.6 mg protamine/100 Units of heparin, since total doses above this ratio inhibit platelet function, prolong ACT, and increase the risk of bleeding (class IIa, Level of Evidence C)."[81]
2. Because of the risk of heparin rebound in patients requiring high doses of heparin and with prolonged CPB times, low-dose protamine infusion (25 mg/h) for up to 6 hours after the end of CPB may be considered as part of a multimodality blood conservation program (class IIb, Level of Evidence C).[81]

Protamine can also be administered at a dose calculated from the heparin concentration, which is measured by a protamine titration assay. Guidelines[81] do support this practice stating that "it can be beneficial to calculate the protamine reversal dose based upon a titration to existing heparin in the blood, since this technique has been associated with reduced bleeding[87] and blood transfusion" (class IIa, Level of Evidence B).[87] If the heparin concentration is not measured, the protamine dose can be graphically derived by plotting ACT values throughout the case and creating heparin dose-response curves. The amount of protamine used in this method is based on the circulating concentration of heparin in the patient at the time of reversal. Because, theoretically, no excess protamine exists, these patients may be at risk for heparin rebound and therefore may require additional protamine. In a small study conducted in patients undergoing valve surgery, administering protamine in two divided doses by titration resulted in a larger dose but reduced bleeding, presumably by treating heparin rebound.[91]

Unique Hematologic Considerations in Cardiac Surgery

Hematologic Effects of Cardiopulmonary Bypass. The hematologic effects of CPB are complex. Exposure of blood to the surfaces of the extracorporeal circuit is a profound stimulus for inflammatory system upregulation, and activation of the hemostatic system is a component of the normal inflammatory response. According to traditional models of hemostasis, ECC activates both the intrinsic and extrinsic coagulation pathways and directly impairs platelet function. Intrinsic pathway activation can occur by contact activation and the conversion of factor XII to factor XIIa on the various surfaces of the CPB circuit. The tissue factor generated from the wound and the circulating tissue thromboplastin combine to cause the extrinsic activation of coagulation by cell-mediated hemostasis, which involves tissue factor–bearing leukocytes and activated endothelial cells. Tissue factor pathway generation of thrombin has a primary role in CPB-associated hemostasis abnormalities (Fig. 54.6).[92]

In addition to activating both extrinsic and intrinsic coagulation pathways, CPB directly impairs platelet function through a variety of mechanisms. Platelets express on their surface numerous glycoproteins that serve as receptors for several circulating ligands, such as fibrinogen, thrombin, and collagen (Fig. 54.7). The components of the bypass circuit adsorb circulating proteins that can serve as foci for platelet attraction and adherence. These surface-bound platelets activate and release the contents of their cytoplasmic granules, which can then serve as localized sources of thrombin generation, or they may embolize to initiate microvascular thrombosis.

Fibrinolytic activity is also increased by CPB. Contact activation leads to the activation of factor XII, prekallikrein, and high-molecular-weight kininogen, which causes endothelial cells to produce tissue plasmin activator, and lysis of fibrin and fibrinogen ensues (Fig. 54.8).

The vascular endothelium is itself an active substrate that is sensitive to circulating mediators, and it expresses and releases anticoagulant and procoagulant factors. When exposed to hypoxia or inflammatory mediators during CPB, the endothelium responds and can induce a relatively prothrombotic state marked by tissue factor upregulation, accelerated platelet adhesion, and increased expression of leukocyte adhesion molecules (Fig. 54.9).[93]

Heparin Resistance, Altered Heparin Responsiveness, and Antithrombin. Heparin resistance is marked by the inability to raise the ACT to therapeutic levels after administration of the recommended doses of unfractionated heparin. Some investigators have defined heparin resistance as

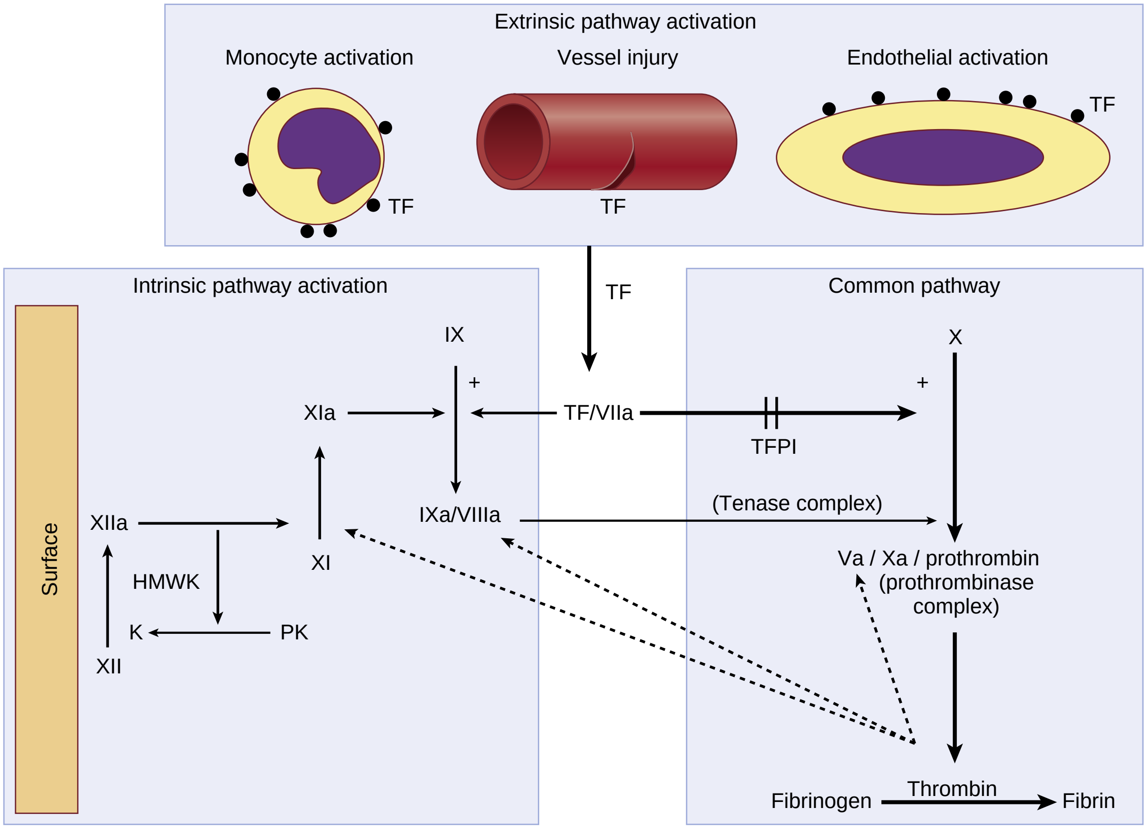


Fig. 54.6 Coagulation can be activated during cardiopulmonary bypass *(CPB)* by the intrinsic pathway, with surface adsorption and activation of factor XII, high-molecular-weight kininogen *(HMWK)*, and prekallikrein *(PK)*. Activation of the extrinsic pathway during CPB occurs with tissue injury, as well as with systemic inflammation, and it leads to monocyte and endothelial expression of tissue factor *(TF)*. TF, in combination with factor VIIa, starts the common pathway with the activation of factor X to factor Xa. Assembly of the prothrombinase complex on phospholipid surfaces leads to the production of thrombin and conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin. Tissue factor pathway inhibitor *(TFPI)* inhibits TF/VIIa. Thrombin can overcome this TFPI blockade by activating factors XI, VIII, and V and initiating activation of factor X by the tenase complex. *K,* Kallikrein. (From Kottke-Marchant K, Sapatnekar S. Hemostatic abnormalities in cardiopulmonary bypass: pathophysiologic and transfusion considerations. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth.* 2001;5:187–206.)

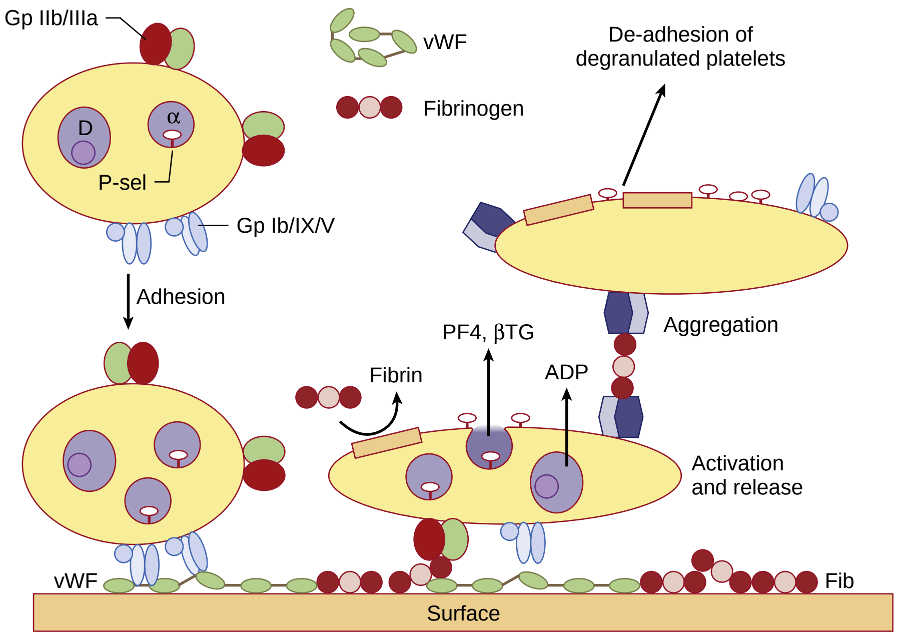

Gp IIb/IIIa
vWF
Fibrinogen
De-adhesion of degranulated platelets
D
α
P-sel
Gp Ib/IX/V
Adhesion
PF4, βTG
Aggregation
Fibrin
ADP
Activation and release
vWF
Fib
Surface

Fig. 54.7 Platelet activation by cardiopulmonary bypass materials is facilitated by rapid adhesion and conformational alteration of plasma proteins, including von Willebrand factor *(vWF)* and fibrinogen *(Fib)*. Platelets adhere to vWF through the glycoprotein *(Gp)* Ib/IX/V surface glycoprotein and to fibrinogen through the Gp IIb/IIIa receptor. Platelet adhesion stimulates intracellular signaling, which leads to degranulation of α granules (platelet factor 4 *[PF4]* and β-thromboglobulin *[βTG]*) and phospholipid reorganization with the formation of coagulation complexes and fibrin formation. Release of adenosine diphosphate *(ADP)* from dense granules and activation of the Gp IIb/IIIa receptor also occur and lead to the aggregation of platelets to the adherent layer. Because of shear forces, adherent and aggregated platelets can detach from the membrane and circulate in a degranulated state or form small microaggregates that lodge in the distal vasculature. (From Kottke-Marchant K, Sapatnekar S. Hemostatic abnormalities in cardiopulmonary bypass: pathophysiologic and transfusion considerations. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2001;5:187–206.)

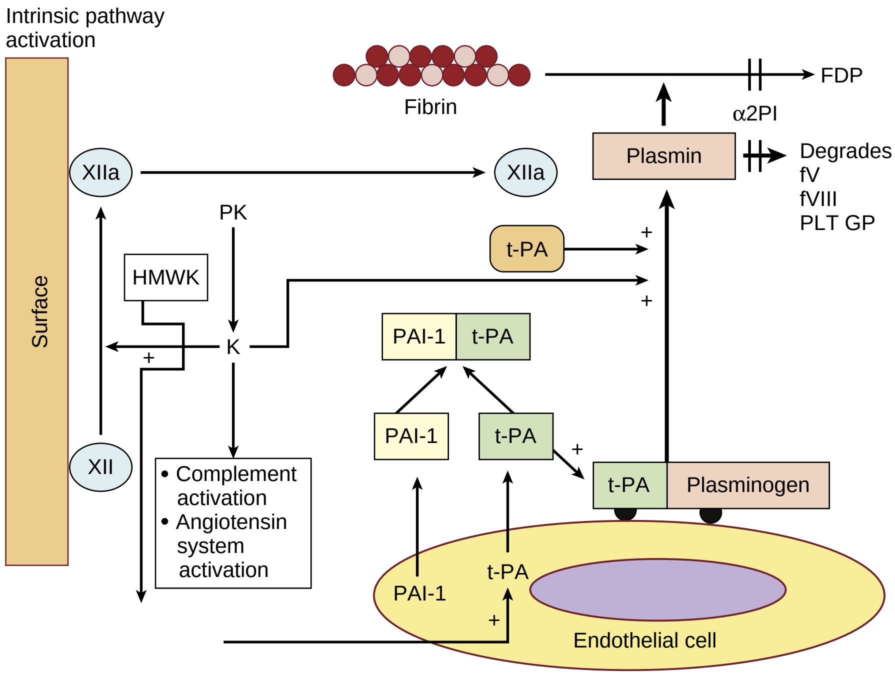

Intrinsic pathway activation
Surface
Fibrin
FDP
α2PI
XIIa
XIIa
Plasmin
Degrades
fV
fVIII
PLT GP
PK
HMWK
t-PA
+
+
K
+
PAI-1
t-PA
PAI-1
t-PA
+
XII
Complement activation
Angiotensin system activation
t-PA
Plasminogen
PAI-1
t-PA
+
Endothelial cell

Fig. 54.8 The fibrinolytic system results in the degradation of fibrin by plasmin. The intrinsic factors participate in the fibrinolytic system. Adsorption and activation of factor XII, high-molecular-weight kininogen *(HMWK)*, and prekallikrein *(PK)* occur on the cardiopulmonary bypass material surfaces. Kallikrein *(K)* and factor XIIa participate in the conversion of plasminogen to plasmin. Plasminogen is also activated by tissue plasminogen activator *(t-PA)*, which is released from endothelial cells, along with its inhibitor, plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 *(PAI-1)*. Plasmin degrades not only fibrin but also coagulation factors V and VIII *(fV and fVIII)* and platelet surface glycoproteins *(PLT GP)*. Kallikrein plays additional roles in the activation of complement and the angiotensin system, and HMWK accelerates fibrinolysis by stimulating endothelial production of t-PA. *FDP*, Fibrin degradation product; *α2PI*, α2 plasmin inhibitor. (From Kottke-Marchant K, Sapatnekar S. Hemostatic abnormalities in cardiopulmonary bypass: pathophysiologic and transfusion considerations. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2001;5:187–206.)

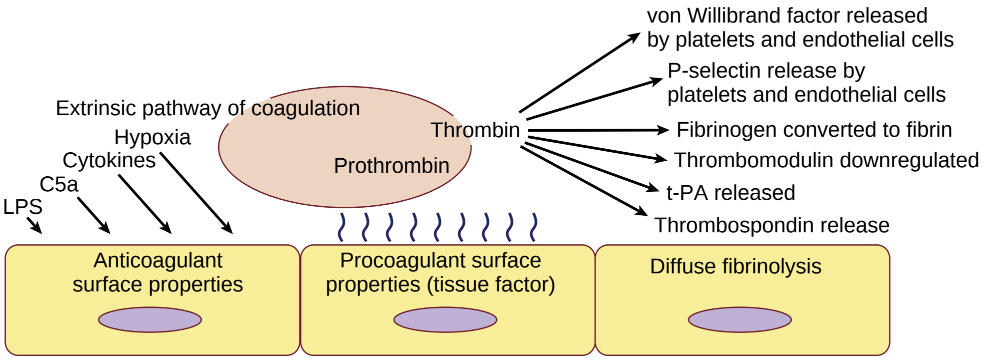

von Willibrand factor released
by platelets and endothelial cells
P-selectin release by
platelets and endothelial cells
Extrinsic pathway of coagulation
Hypoxia
Cytokines
C5a
LPS
Thrombin
Prothrombin
Fibrinogen converted to fibrin
Thrombomodulin downregulated
t-PA released
Thrombospondin release
Anticoagulant
surface properties
Procoagulant surface
properties (tissue factor)
Diffuse fibrinolysis

Fig. 54.9 Procoagulant endothelial cell activation. When endothelial cells are activated, they express tissue factor, which converts prothrombin to thrombin. Thrombin has multiple biologic actions: (1) stimulation of the release of von Willebrand factor and P-selectin, which cause platelet clumping and platelet, neutrophil, and endothelial cell adhesion; (2) conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin, the solid component of clot; (3) downregulation of the thrombomodulin/protein C and S systems; (4) release of tissue plasminogen activator *(t-PA)*, which catalyzes the formation of plasmin; and (5) release of thrombospondin, which binds to t-PA, prevents its breakdown by plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 *(PAI-1)*, and accelerates the formation of plasmin. *LPS,* Lipopolysaccharide. (From Boyle EM Jr, Verrier ED, Spiess BD. Endothelial cell injury in cardiovascular surgery: the procoagulant response. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;62:1549–1557.)

an ACT of less than the target (400-480 seconds) after 600 to 800 units/kg of intravenous heparin are administered.[94] Others have defined heparin resistance as an ACT of less than 400 seconds at any time during the course of CPB and heparin administration.[95] Heparin resistance can result from a congenital deficiency or abnormality of AT, which requires treatment with AT to restore heparin's anticoagulant properties.[96] More often, however, heparin resistance is the result of an acquired condition caused by the patient's disease status and physiologic state. Giving these patients larger doses of heparin may augment the ACT value; therefore, a more accurate term for describing these clinical findings is altered heparin responsiveness. This alteration can result from an acquired AT deficiency, increased levels of heparin-binding proteins, activated platelets, sepsis, or other conditions. In a small study of cardiac surgical patients stratified by their history of preoperative heparin use, altered heparin responsiveness was found in approximately 40% of the patients who had received preoperative heparin therapy.[96]

Reported risk factors for altered heparin responsiveness include AT levels less than 60% of normal, preoperative heparin therapy, and a platelet count greater than 300,000/μL. Ranucci and associates also found that low postoperative AT levels were predictive of a longer length of stay in the ICU,[97] and others have associated low AT levels with adverse myocardial outcomes.[98] Not all heparin resistance is AT mediated; thus, it is critical to understand the physiologic factors that contribute to the altered heparin responsiveness so that appropriate treatment can be instituted.[99-101]

The most common treatment for altered heparin responsiveness is supplemental heparin. In refractory cases, treatment with AT concentrate, or recombinant AT, in doses that are calculated to produce 80% to 100% AT activity, restores heparin responsiveness. AT supplementation is a class I indication for heparin resistance that is due to AT deficiency.[102] Thus the practice of replacing AT using this specific factor replacement is preferred over the use of plasma transfusion, which is no longer recommended due to the morbidity of allogeneic transfusion. When AT is used for this purpose, careful neutralization with protamine and attention to hemostasis are essential because AT augments the effect of heparin and thereby slightly increases postoperative bleeding.[102]

Heparin Rebound. Heparin rebound is clinical bleeding that occurs within approximately 1 hour of protamine neutralization. It is accompanied by coagulation test results indicating residual heparinization, such as a prolonged partial thromboplastin time (PTT) or thrombin time and increased anti-factor Xa activity. Mechanisms of heparin rebound include slow dissociation of protein-bound heparin after protamine clearance, more rapid clearance of protamine than of heparin, lymphatic return of extracellular sequestered heparin, and the clearance of an unknown heparin antagonist. Heparin rebound is rare, yet it is more likely to occur when the protamine dose is based on the residual heparin concentration at the end of CPB than when protamine is given as a ratio to the total heparin administered, because using this ratio usually results in a slight "overdose." With coagulation monitoring, heparin rebound is easily prevented or treated with supplemental protamine. A protamine infusion has also been successful in preventing heparin rebound in patients in whom heparin rebound is a risk.[103] These include cases in which high doses of heparin were administered or in whom CPB time was prolonged. Perfusion management guidelines suggest that a low dose protamine infusion (25 mg/h) for up to 6 hours after the end of CPB may be considered as part of a multimodality blood conservation program (class IIb, Level of Evidence C).[82]

Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia. HIT is an immune-mediated prothrombotic disorder that occurs in patients exposed to heparin. Antibodies form against the protein platelet factor 4 (PF4) when PF4 has formed a complex with heparin. Although PF4 is found in only trace amounts in human plasma and is stored in platelet α granules, the presence of heparin increases plasma PF4 concentrations 15- to 30-fold by displacing bound PF4 on endothelial cell surfaces. PF4 is also expressed on the surface membrane of activated platelets by membrane fusion with the α-granule membrane; thus, PF4 is exposed and available to bind with heparin. The resulting PF4-heparin complex on the platelet surface is recognized by a specific immunoglobulin G (IgG), which binds to the complex and leads to immunologically mediated platelet activation. Hyperaggregability of these activated platelets is the hallmark of HIT and is responsible for its prothrombotic complications.[104,105] Often a clinical score such as the 4 Ts score can be used to determine whether a heparin-platelet antibody test should be performed to diagnose HIT (class IIa, Level of Evidence B).[82] Diagnosis can be difficult in the postcardiac surgery patient and often the 4 Ts score is unreliable.

A common presentation in patients with HIT is a reduction in the platelet count to less than 100,000/μL or to less than 50% of the baseline count. The incidence of seroconversion after CPB and heparin exposure is quite frequent (20%-50%).[106] However, the reported prevalence of clinical HIT after CPB is only 1% to 3%.[107] Thus, the risk of HIT in cardiac surgical patients with postoperative seroconversion is less than 10%.

The strength of the immunologic response, not the mere presence of PF4 or heparin antibodies, may determine which patients are prone to HIT and are at risk for thromboembolic complications.[107] The presence of preoperative antibody, in addition to postoperative antibody, has been associated with increased morbidity after cardiac surgery.[108] This morbidity takes the form of gut ischemia, renal dysfunction, limb ischemia, and other prothrombotic events.

Management of the cardiac surgical patient with HIT must include a careful risk-to-benefit analysis. The likelihood that a patient has true disease and is at increased risk for a thrombotic event must be weighed against the risks posed by using an alternative anticoagulant to heparin. The urgency of the surgical procedure is also an important factor that can affect decision making. It is preferable, when possible, to defer the operation until antibody titers have become undetectable[82] or only weakly positive, which may occur after 90 days (class IIa, Level of Evidence C).[107] If surgical postponement is not practical, then other therapeutic options must be considered (Boxes 54.6 and 54.7). Currently, the direct thrombin inhibitors are used as the anticoagulants of choice. Hirudin and argatroban are approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for use in patients with HIT-related thrombosis.[109] The use of these drugs as anticoagulants for CPB is fraught with hemorrhagic complications. Bivalirudin has been approved by the FDA for use in percutaneous interventions and, because of its short half-life, has been favored as an anticoagulant for CPB in patients with HIT.[110-112] Guidelines suggest that in patients with a diagnosis of HIT and in need of an urgent operation requiring CPB, anticoagulation with bivalirudin is a reasonable option (class IIa, Level of Evidence B).[82] However, no drug other than heparin has FDA approval for specific use as an anticoagulant in patients undergoing CPB. Bivalirudin undergoes renal elimination. Therefore, in seropositive HIT patients who have significant renal dysfunction, anticoagulation for urgent operations requiring CPB can be accomplished with argatroban, plasmapheresis prior to heparin to remove antibodies, or heparin with concomitant antiplatelet agents to prevent platelet activation (tirofiban, iloprost) (class IIb, Level of Evidence C).[82] These latter two techniques have risk because they include heparin, and have been fraught with increased risks of bleeding. Boxes 54.6 and 54.7 summarize therapeutic options and alternative anticoagulant strategies for the patient with HIT whose operation cannot be deferred until seronegativity is documented. Fig. 54.10 delineates how each alternative drug inhibits factor Xa, thrombin, or fibrinogen.

BOX 54.6 Therapeutic Options for Anticoagulation for Cardiopulmonary Bypass in Patients With Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia

1. Ancrod
2. Low-molecular-weight heparin or heparinoid (test first)
3. Alternative thrombin inhibitor (hirudin, bivalirudin, argatroban)
4. Using a single dose of heparin, promptly neutralizing it with protamine, *and*
    a. Delaying surgery so antibodies can regress *or*
    b. Using plasmapheresis to decrease antibody levels *or*
    c. Inhibiting platelets with iloprost, aspirin and dipyridamole (Persantine), abciximab, or RGD blockers

In all cases:

1. No heparin in flush solutions
2. No heparin-bonded catheters
3. No heparin lock intravenous ports

No agent is currently indicated for anticoagulation in cardiopulmonary bypass.

RGD, Receptor glycoprotein–derived.

Modified from Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:966.

BOX 54.7 Potential Alternative Anticoagulants for Cardiopulmonary Bypass

Ancrod
Low-molecular-weight heparins
Factor Xa inhibitors
Bivalirudin or other direct thrombin inhibitors (hirudin, argatroban)
Platelet receptor inhibitors

From Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:967.

Protamine Reactions. Protamine is associated with several hemodynamic effects that can be categorized by their presentation and mechanism. Adverse reactions to protamine range from moderate hypotension to more profound and hemodynamically significant reactions that can increase in-hospital mortality risk.[113,114] The clinical presentation of these reactions serves as a starting point for understanding their mechanistic relationships. Commonly, these reactions are classified as type I, type II, or type III. A type I protamine reaction involves isolated hypotension, with normal to low filling pressures and normal airway pressures. This reaction is usually mild and responds to volume infusion, slowing of protamine infusion, and the gentle titration of vasoactive medications. Type II reactions include moderate to severe hypotension and features of anaphylactoid reactions, such as bronchoconstriction. Anaphylactoid reactions include protamine sensitivity reactions that are classically immunologic or allergic in that they are immunoglobulin E (IgE) antibody mediated. Nonimmunologic mechanisms may involve IgG antibodies

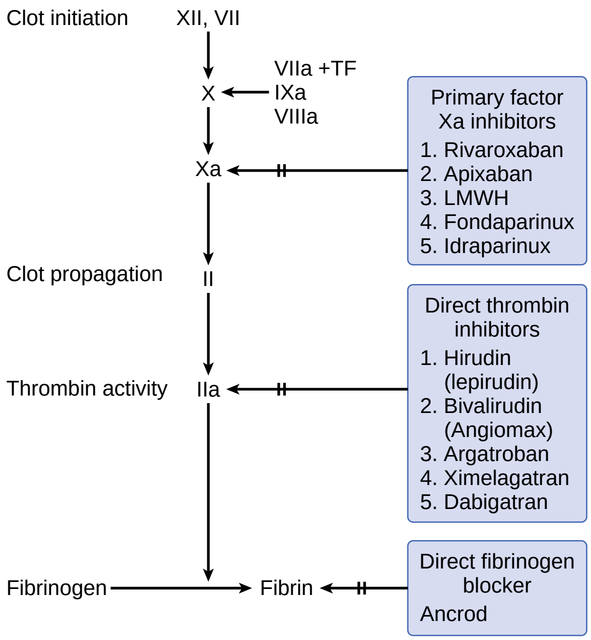


Fig. 54.10 Alternatives to heparin. Newer anticoagulants are shown in the boxes on the *right side* of the figure; these drugs inhibit factor Xa, thrombin, or fibrinogen. *LMWH,* Low-molecular-weight heparin; *TF,* tissue factor. (From Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:968.)

or complement activation. Type III reactions are thought to be caused by large heparin-protamine complexes that lodge in the pulmonary circulation, cause the release of mediators, and result in severe hypotension and elevated PA pressures that may lead to acute RV failure. This is obviously a profound response, resulting in global cardiovascular collapse or necessitating the reinstitution of CPB because of intractable RV failure. Fortunately, catastrophic hypotension and intractable RV failure are relatively rare events on the spectrum of protamine reactions.[113]

Mechanistic explanations for protamine reactions include endothelial nitric oxide release, mast cell degranulation, and histamine release associated with rapid infusion. A study by Kimmel and colleagues found that neutral protamine Hagedorn insulin use, documented fish allergy, and a history of nonprotamine medical allergies were independent risk factors for protamine hypersensitivity reactions.[115] In this study, 39% of patients who presented for cardiac surgery had one or more of these risk factors. Other possible but unconfirmed risk factors include prior exposure to protamine, a history of vasectomy, decreased LV function, and hemodynamic instability.[115] The site of injection does not influence the incidence of protamine reactions.[116] Pretreatment with histamine blockade is not preventive.

The following principles summarize treatment options for patients at risk for protamine reactions:

1. Protamine should be administered slowly (i.e., over ≥5 minutes). Limit protamine dose to less than 2.6 mg protamine/100 units of heparin, since total doses above this ratio inhibit platelet function, prolong ACT, and increase the risk of bleeding (class IIa, Level of Evidence C).[82]
2. In patients with documented adverse events related to protamine, consideration should be given to *not* rechallenging the patient with protamine. Pharmacologic alternatives to protamine can be considered, or a decision can be made not to reverse heparin. Consideration may be given to using non–heparin-based CPB, performing off-pump coronary artery bypass (OPCAB) with an alternative to heparin, or, if heparin is used, administering nonprotamine heparin reversal drugs such heparinase, or simply waiting for heparin's effects to dissipate.
3. Hypotension associated with protamine reversal of heparin often is ameliorated by simply slowing or pausing protamine infusion while volume is infused through intravenous lines or the aortic cannula. Vasoactive medications, such as phenylephrine or ephedrine, use of calcium chloride, or increased inotropic support may be necessary.
4. Severe or intractable hypotension, with or without evidence of pulmonary circulatory involvement, bronchospasm, or overt RV failure, demands immediate aggressive attention, intervention, and planning for a potential return to CPB. Steps to consider include the following:
    a. Reheparinization to prepare the patient for a return to CPB and to reduce heparin-protamine complex size. If hemodynamics permit, a low dose of heparin (70 units/kg) may be tried first while supportive treatment continues, followed by a full CPB dose of heparin (300 units/kg) if it becomes necessary to return the patient to CPB. (class I, Level of Evidence C).[82]
    b. Inotropic support, either by infusion or by intermittent bolus administration, is warranted. Epinephrine and norepinephrine are acceptable options, and milrinone may be considered if the patient's hemodynamic status permits.
    c. If the patient's hemodynamic status allows, nebulized albuterol is helpful in the management of bronchospasm and elevated airway pressures.

Antifibrinolytic Therapy: Prophylaxis for Bleeding. Prophylactic use of antifibrinolytic drugs before CPB reduces bleeding and transfusion requirements in cardiac surgical patients in randomized trials and in multiple meta-analyses.[117,118] The most well-known antifibrinolytic drugs include the synthetic lysine analogues ε-aminocaproic acid (EACA) and tranexamic acid (TA) and the serine protease inhibitor aprotinin. Presumably, the blood-sparing effects of the synthetic drugs result from the inhibition of fibrinolysis by their binding to the lysine-binding sites on plasmin. This also has platelet protective properties because plasmin's antiplatelet effects are also inhibited by antagonist binding.

Aprotinin is a direct enzymatic inhibitor of plasmin and has other protease-inhibiting properties that confer its antiinflammatory and antikallikrein effects. However, aprotinin was notably associated with increases in post-CPB creatinine values and other adverse organ system outcomes in large-scale observational trials.[119] When a randomized prospective trial showed an increase in mortality in the aprotinin group, despite a reduction in bleeding, the drug was removed from the global market.[120] Although the causes of death in the aprotinin-treated patients were not found to be related to thrombosis or other drug-related effects, aprotinin was rendered unavailable for commercial use for years after publication of this study. The decision to remove aprotinin from clinical use was revisited on reevaluation of these study data, and aprotinin has been reintroduced in Canada and other countries specifically for use as labeled in CABG surgery.

Hypercoagulable States. The use of antifibrinolytics has become common in cardiac operations that require CPB. The use of antifibrinolytic drugs and prohemostatic drugs and blood products to treat bleeding has brought to light the risk of thrombosis in CPB, during which feedback mechanisms are critical and homeostasis is perturbed. All patients incur this risk of thrombosis as consumptive coagulopathy increases, but the risk is greatly increased in patients with congenital or acquired thrombophilic states.[121] These states may be important in view of current practices that involve pharmacologically inhibiting fibrinolytic pathways in cardiac surgical patients.

The factor V Leiden (FVL) mutation is the most common inherited thrombophilic disorder; its prevalence is 3% to 7% in white populations.[122,123] Mechanistically and clinically, FVL has been implicated in thrombotic complications in cardiac operations, most often those involving a period of circulatory arrest and the use of antifibrinolytics.[124] In a review of FVL mutation, Donahue gave the following summation and recommendations[121]:

- Cardiac surgical patients who are heterozygous for the FVL mutation bleed less than do noncarriers.
- The risk of early graft thrombosis may be increased in patients with FVL deficiency.
- The use of antifibrinolytic drugs may increase thrombotic risk in patients with FVL.
- Anecdotal evidence suggests that in patients with FVL mutation who are exposed to deep hypothermic circulatory arrest, antifibrinolytics increase thrombotic risk.

Cardiac Surgical Patients Taking Anticoagulant or Antithrombotic Drugs. Antithrombotic therapy in cardiac surgical patients has many roles and applications. Patients with ischemic heart disease can be managed short- or long-term with pharmacologic drugs that may include aspirin, AT inhibitors (heparins), direct thrombin inhibitors, or an array of platelet inhibitors (adenosine diphosphate [ADP] receptor inhibitors and glycoprotein IIb/IIIa [Gp IIb/IIIa] receptor inhibitors). Patients with a history of peripheral vascular disease, valvular heart disease, or low ventricular ejection states can similarly be managed with some form of antithrombotic therapy that may also include warfarin. Frequently, patients arrive for surgery while receiving multiple antithrombotic medications. Thus, postoperative bleeding is a common but challenging complication of cardiac surgery, especially when the bleeding risk posed by CPB itself is considered.

The use of percutaneous coronary interventions such as angioplasty and intracoronary stent deployment for ischemic heart disease has led to the use of antithrombotic medications to maintain stent patency and to prevent stent thrombosis. The American College of Cardiology and AHA (ACC/AHA) initial guidelines for percutaneous coronary intervention recommended (on the basis of class I evidence) the use of both aspirin and clopidogrel for at least 1 year after drug-eluting stent placement.[125] However, percutaneous coronary intervention data with the second generation drug-eluting stents indicate that shorter periods of dual anti-platelet therapy are equally effective in preventing in-stent thrombosis, and thus allow for earlier cessation of a single anti-platelet agent after 6 months.[126] This opens the door for interventions and surgical procedures to be performed sooner and with less risk of bleeding. The administration of thienopyridine antiplatelet drugs in addition to aspirin increases the risk of bleeding after cardiac surgery[127]; however, it is unclear whether aspirin alone increases this risk. Abundant evidence (mostly level B evidence from small, retrospective, nonrandomized studies) suggests that the ADP receptor antagonist clopidogrel (Plavix) has been associated with excessive perioperative bleeding in patients who undergo CABG.[128] This trend has even been reported in the OPCAB population, although not consistently.[129] Earlier recommendations included a 5- to 7-day delay after discontinuation of clopidogrel in patients who require CABG. However, guidelines[77] suggest that a 3-day delay may be sufficient to lessen bleeding risk and provide safe outcomes.[130] It is likely that a 5- to 7-day delay is not necessary, but some interval between the discontinuation of clopidogrel and CABG is supported by the available evidence.

Patients with a history of Gp IIb/IIIa receptor blockade as a part of their acute coronary syndrome management are at risk of increased bleeding and blood component use when they are given abciximab, especially within 12 hours of cardiac surgery.[131,132] Shorter-acting Gp IIb/IIIa receptor antagonists do not seem to increase bleeding or adverse outcomes and in fact may improve myocardial outcomes when Gp IIb/IIIa blockers are in use.[133] The interval between the discontinuation of antiplatelet therapy and cardiac or noncardiac surgery is critical to preventing thrombotic events without increasing the risk of bleeding. These decisions regarding the cessation of therapy can be guided by knowledge of drug pharmacology and testing of antiplatelet drug efficacy.

Enoxaparin, a low-molecular-weight heparin, increases transfusion rates and the risk of surgical reexploration when it is used in association with CPB.[134] Low-molecular-weight heparin may also decrease heparin responsiveness.[135]

Patients who present for cardiac surgery with residual warfarin effects may benefit by having enhanced anticoagulation during CPB. Postoperatively, if excessive bleeding is noted and is confirmed by hemostasis testing, factor replacement can be performed with blood products or pharmacologic prothrombin complex concentrates (PCCs).

Patients with atrial fibrillation may be maintained on new antithrombotic therapeutic drugs, direct oral anticoagulants (DOACs) that include thrombin inhibitors (dabigatran) and factor Xa inhibitors (rivaroxaban, apixaban, and edoxaban). These drugs are potent and long-acting, and they have no antidote, so one would expect that treating cardiac surgical patients with these drugs would increase their bleeding risk. When compared to vitamin K antagonists, the DOACs have similar thromboprophylaxis efficacy yet fewer bleeding complications.[136] An additional benefit is that DOACs have a predictable pharmacodynamic profile and routine monitoring is often unnecessary. Routine monitoring tests such as the INR and aPTT do not even accurately assess anticoagulant activity of the DOACs and thus a thrombin time or a direct measure of anti-Xa activity would be considered more accurate.[137,138]

In summary, patients who present for cardiac surgery with preexisting, pharmacologically induced inhibition of the hemostatic system may have undesirable post-CPB bleeding. The diagnosis and treatment of this complication should be the same whether the derangement is a function of CPB itself, coexisting pharmacologic inhibition, or both. The management and treatment of persistent postoperative bleeding are discussed in the section on problems in the postoperative period.

INDUCTION OF ANESTHESIA AND THE PREBYPASS PERIOD

Premedication

The anesthesiologist should ensure that appropriate premedications are administered with a sip of water on the morning of surgery. With a few exceptions, patients should receive their usual long-term medications, particularly β-adrenergic blocking drugs, on the day of surgery. The clinician should be aware that ACE inhibitors (ACEIs), if administered on the day of surgery, may increase the patient's propensity for hypotension.[139] With respect to aspirin, it is recognized that aspirin administration in the early postoperative period may reduce the risk of ischemic complications after CABG surgery.[140] However, patients who receive aspirin immediately preoperatively may have more mediastinal bleeding and greater transfusion requirements. A consensus statement published by the STS recommends that low-intensity antiplatelet drugs (e.g., aspirin) be discontinued before cardiac surgery to reduce patients' blood transfusion requirements, but this should be done only in purely elective cases in patients without acute coronary syndromes.[76]

However, drugs that inhibit the platelet P2Y12 receptor should be discontinued before operative coronary revascularization (either on-pump or off-pump), if possible.[76] The interval between drug discontinuation and operation is determined from the drug's pharmacodynamics but may be as short as 3 days for irreversible inhibitors of the P2Y12 platelet receptor. POC tests are available to measure platelet ADP responsiveness. POC tests that show normal platelet ADP responsiveness after administration of an initial dose of clopidogrel indicate P2Y12 resistance with as much as 85% specificity.[141,142] This is called "high on-treatment platelet reactivity." Flow cytometry may be more specific in diagnosing the degree of platelet inhibition, but it cannot be measured at the point of care.[141,143]

The prospect of undergoing cardiac surgery provokes anxiety in most patients. Furthermore, the insertion of intravenous and arterial catheters is painful and must be done before anesthesia is induced. The resultant anxiety and pain can lead to undesirable sympathetic stimulation, with consequent tachycardia and hypertension. The first step in preventing this cycle is thoroughly explaining the anticipated anesthetic techniques and procedures to the patient. Premedication with a narcotic or anxiolytic drug, or both, to mitigate pain and anxiety is usually indicated before the patient is transported to the operating suite. Supplemental intravenous drugs—commonly midazolam and possibly fentanyl—are usually necessary during radial artery cannulation before anesthesia is induced. However, in patients with low CO secondary to congestive HF (CHF), sedation should be performed judiciously to avoid myocardial depression and resultant hypotension. Moreover, in patients with significant pulmonary hypertension, oversedation and respiratory depression leading to hypercapnia or hypoxia must be avoided.

Induction of Anesthesia

In preparing for induction, the clinician should have the following drugs immediately available: vasopressors (e.g., phenylephrine, ephedrine, calcium chloride, readily available vasopressin), one or more inotropes (e.g., ephedrine; epinephrine; readily available norepinephrine, dopamine, or dobutamine), one or more vasodilators (e.g., nitroglycerin, nitroprusside, nicardipine), an anticholinergic drug (atropine), antiarrhythmic drugs (e.g., lidocaine, esmolol, magnesium, amiodarone, adenosine), and heparin.[144] Commonly administered drugs should be drawn up and ready for administration by bolus or infusion, as appropriate; agents that are used less commonly should be readily available in the operating room. Protamine should be readily available, but many institutions require that protamine be stored in unique packaging or at a separate, nearby location to prevent inadvertent premature administration.

Furthermore, the selected antibiotic should be ready to administer according to Surgical Care Improvement Project guidelines. The STS recommends a cephalosporin as the primary prophylactic antibiotic for cardiac surgery; the drug should be administered within 1 hour before incision.[145] In patients who are allergic to penicillin, vancomycin is administered within 2 hours of incision. Finally, antifibrinolytic drugs are commonly used to minimize bleeding and the need for transfusion during cardiac surgery. The most commonly used antifibrinolytic drugs are the synthetic lysine analogues TA and EACA; both reduce total blood loss and decrease the number of patients who require blood transfusion during cardiac procedures.[76]

Anesthetic drugs and techniques for inducing anesthesia should be selected with consideration of the patient's cardiac pathophysiology and other comorbid conditions. No single "recipe" can guarantee hemodynamic stability during anesthetic induction. Hypotension may result in a patient who is relatively hypovolemic and receives a vasodilator or whose sympathetic tone is reduced by anesthesia. Hypotension is particularly common in patients with poor LV function. Conversely, in patients with good myocardial function, hypertension may occur during induction because of preinduction anxiety or sympathetic stimulation caused by laryngoscopy and endotracheal intubation.

The radial artery or an alternative site should be cannulated before induction of anesthesia to monitor arterial pressure on a beat-to-beat basis. If the radial artery is being harvested as a vascular conduit, the contralateral radial or brachial artery or a femoral artery can be cannulated. Basic monitors, including the ECG and pulse oximeter, should also be used during the induction of anesthesia. During any cardiac surgical procedure, central venous access is necessary to secure so that volume infusion, transfusion therapy, and vasoactive drug administration can be easily delivered directly to the central circulation. A central venous catheter or a PA catheter can be placed either before or after anesthesia is induced. Placement before anesthesia induction is ideal so that the CVPs can be monitored during the induction of anesthesia. However, the placement of these lines in the awake patient can take more time and create discomfort, thus causing unwanted hypertension and tachycardia. The risk-benefit analysis usually dictates that the central venous line be placed after anesthesia induction. The urinary bladder catheter, nasogastric tube, TEE probe, and any additional temperature monitors (e.g., a nasopharyngeal probe) are positioned after induction of anesthesia.

When choosing anesthetic drugs and doses during induction and maintenance, one should consider any pharmacodynamic properties that could affect arterial blood pressure, heart rate, or CO, as well as the desirability of "early" extubation of the trachea (i.e., within a few hours after the operation is completed). Anesthesia is most commonly induced with an opioid and a sedative-hypnotic (etomidate, thiopental, propofol, or midazolam). All anesthetics decrease arterial blood pressure by decreasing sympathetic tone, decreasing systemic vascular resistance (SVR), inducing bradycardia, or directly depressing myocardial function. The only exception is ketamine, which has sympathomimetic effects; however, in patients with catecholamine depletion, ketamine's sympathomimetic effects may not counterbalance its direct negative inotropic effects. Because of their pharmacologic complexities, all anesthetic agents should be administered judiciously in patients who are critically ill or who have poor LV function.

Muscle relaxants are usually given early in the sequence of anesthetic induction, particularly if relatively large doses of opioids are administered, to minimize chest wall rigidity (see also Chapter 27). With the routine use of fast-track anesthesia techniques, including a trend toward earlier extubation, volatile anesthetics are often chosen as the primary maintenance anesthetic. The predominant effect of isoflurane, desflurane, and sevoflurane is dose-dependent vasodilation with resultant decreases in SVR and arterial blood pressure. These volatile anesthetics may have an advantage in inducing preconditioning, which is particularly important in patients undergoing either CABG with CPB or OPCAB, in which myocardial ischemic insults are likely. The volatile anesthetic agents have several cardioprotective effects, including triggering the preconditioning cascade and mitigating reperfusion injury.[146] However, nitrous oxide probably should be avoided because it can increase gaseous bubble size and adversely affect pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR).

The Pre-Cardiopulmonary Bypass Period

After anesthesia is induced, several important details must be remembered, especially positioning (see also Chapter 34). Methods of positioning the arms vary according to institutional practice, but one must avoid causing brachial plexus injury by hyperextending the arms, ulnar nerve injury by improperly padding the olecranon, radial nerve injury by compressing the upper part of the arm against the sternal retractor support posts, or finger injury by entrapping the finger against the metal edge of the surgical table. Proper positioning also ensures that arterial catheters previously placed in the radial, ulnar, or brachial arteries are not "dampened." The head should be padded and occasionally repositioned during the procedure to prevent occipital alopecia, which can occur several days postoperatively. The eyes should be taped, possibly lubricated, and definitely free from pressure. Pressure-related injury to any soft tissue will potentially be exacerbated by hypothermia and decreased perfusion during CPB. All monitors and tubing should be checked after final positioning to ensure that none are kinked, entrapped, tangled, or inaccessible. Additionally, antibiotics must be administered (with documentation) within 1 hour of incision (vancomycin within 2 hours). Arterial blood gases and blood chemistry (electrolytes, glucose, and calcium), as well as baseline ACT, should be measured shortly after anesthesia is induced. If a continuous mixed venous PA catheter has been inserted, mixed venous hemoglobin oxygen saturation should be measured to calibrate the device.

During the prebypass period, the anesthesiologist's main goal is to maintain the hemodynamic and metabolic stability of the patient while making preparations for CPB. The degree of surgical stimulation varies markedly during this period. Positioning the patient, inserting additional monitors, preparing the skin, and harvesting the saphenous vein or veins cause only minimal sympathetic stimulation. Therefore, hypovolemic patients and those with poor ventricular function may be susceptible to hypotension during these periods. In contrast, chest incision, sternal splitting, and harvesting of the IMA involve more intense surgical stimulation. These events may cause hypertension, tachycardia, and dysrhythmias, even in previously hypotensive patients. However, just before CPB is initiated, during the cannulation of the great vessels, surgical stimulation is again minimal, and manipulation of the heart and great vessels may transiently decrease venous return and cause a precipitous decline in blood pressure. The anesthesiologist must be ready to treat all hemodynamic aberrations with the vasopressor, inotropic, vasodilator, antiarrhythmic, and anticholinergic drugs mentioned earlier.

In preparation for CPB, anticoagulation must be achieved. Heparin is still the standard drug used and is administered through a central venous catheter at an initial dose of 300 to 400 units/kg. The onset of anticoagulation is almost immediate, but generally, the drug is allowed to circulate for 3 to 5 minutes before its effect is measured. The ACT must increase to at least 300 seconds before CPB is initiated, although most institutions use at least 400 seconds as their standard. Additional heparin is administered, if necessary, to increase the ACT to the desired level. Subsequently, it is common to administer an antifibrinolytic drug (EACA or TA) in an attempt to minimize bleeding and the need for transfusion during cardiac surgery.

After heparinization, the next major step in the prebypass phase is vascular cannulation. One or more large veins or the right atrium is cannulated so that all systemic venous blood is diverted to the pump oxygenator. Additionally, a large artery, usually the ascending aorta, is cannulated so that oxygenated blood is delivered back to the arterial circulation. Heparin is always administered before cannulation. Usually, arterial cannulation is established before venous cannulation to allow rapid intravascular volume or blood resuscitation if necessary. Complications of aortic cannulation include arterial dissection, hemorrhage and resultant hypotension, inadvertent cannulation of the aortic arch vessels, and embolic phenomena caused by dislodged atherosclerotic plaque or by air introduced into or entrained around the aortic cannula. Complications of venous cannulation include hypotension from blood loss, dysrhythmias, and surgical mechanical compression of the heart or great vessels. When arterial cannulation is successful and the cannula has been inspected to ensure that no air is present, volume can be administered in 100-mL increments to treat bleeding and hypovolemia. If necessary, dysrhythmias are treated by cardioversion, medications, or rapid initiation of CPB.

Patients undergoing redo cardiac surgery (i.e., those who have previously had a median sternotomy) warrant special concern about the possibility of sudden, massive hemorrhage. At least 2 units of blood should be immediately available for all redo cases. Frequently, the surgeon will elect to use an oscillating saw in these patients, but mediastinal structures adherent to the underside of the sternum may nevertheless be injured. If the right atrium, right ventricle, great vessels, or an existing coronary graft is cut, the surgeon may elect to initiate CPB on an emergency basis. Therefore, the anesthesiologist should have a systemic dose of heparin prepared. As soon as the patient is heparinized, the femoral or aortic arterial cannula is inserted, and the cardiotomy suckers can be used to create venous return (so-called sucker bypass).

Onset of Cardiopulmonary Bypass

Preparing for the onset of CPB brings about a new set of challenges for a cardiac anesthesiologist. As a preparation for CPB, the surgeon would start by placing purse string sutures in the ascending aorta for the eventual placement of aortic cannula. It is imperative that at this point the anesthesiologist keeps the patient's blood pressure in a range that would not jeopardize the integrity of the aorta while the cannula is placed. A systolic blood pressure of 90 to 110 mm Hg is traditionally accepted for this stage of the procedure. Around this time heparin will also be administered. Usually 300 units/kg patient weight is administered for a target ACT of 450 to 500 seconds, to safely start the CPB. After the safe placement of aortic cannula, remaining cannulas will be placed by the surgeon, followed by start of the CPB.

During the abovementioned process, a cardiac anesthesiologist monitors the patient's hemodynamics and rhythm for any undesired changes.

With the onset of CPB, to guard against malposition of the aortic or venous cannula, the perfusionist checks the aortic inflow line pressure and for signs of inadequate venous return while the anesthesiologist checks for persistently low arterial pressure, unilateral blanching of the face, or any swelling in the neck veins, face, or conjunctiva. Once full bypass is established and aortic ejection by the heart has ceased, ventilation and inhaled drugs can be discontinued. If a PA catheter is present, it is pulled back 3 to 5 cm to minimize the risk of pulmonary perforation as the pulmonary arteries collapse. Prebypass urine output is recorded and emptied so that urine output during CPB can be monitored separately. The TEE probe may be used to watch for LV distention with the onset of CPB, which may indicate aortic valve regurgitation or other hemodynamic problems. Once CPB is established, the probe is left in the unlocked (neutral) position until the cardiac chambers are de-aired and the patient is weaned from CPB.

To ensure adequate anesthetic depth, supplemental intravenous sedative-hypnotics are administered, or a volatile agent is administered through a vaporizer connected to the oxygenator gas inlet of the CPB circuit. Administration of muscle relaxant is continued to prevent spontaneous ventilation, movement, or shivering during hypothermia and rewarming.

WEANING FROM CARDIOPULMONARY BYPASS

After the completion of surgery on CPB, the patient is prepared for coming off of the CPB and the resumption of patient's own physiology.

As part of a cardiac anesthesiologist's responsibilities it is of paramount importance that a plan is made beforehand for this part of cardiac surgery. The plan should take into account the nature of surgery, the length of bypass run, length of the aortic cross clamp and patient's presurgical cardiac status and comorbidities.

In preparation of weaning the patient off of the CPB several issues need to be addressed before a successful weaning process is started. Issues that need to be addressed include temperature, electrolytes (specifically potassium), rhythm, systemic blood pressure, contractility, and any air in the left ventricle (LV).

After addressing the abovementioned issues, the perfusionist gradually allows more and more blood to be pumped by the heart instead of the bypass machine. During this time the cardiac anesthesiologist ensures that any inotropic and/or volume requirements of the patient are met to successfully bring the CPB run to its conclusion.

The "CVP" Mnemonic

Fortunately, for most patients, separation from CPB is a relatively uneventful process. A review by Licker and colleagues emphasized that the key to successful weaning from bypass is clear communication among members of the operating room team.[147] In a study conducted at the Mayo Clinic in Rochester, Minnesota,[148] a strong correlation was noted between the frequency of technical errors and poor communication or coordination among the surgeon, anesthesiologist, and perfusionist.

Regarding clinical issues, several criteria should be met in all cardiac surgical cases before weaning from CPB is attempted. Morris and colleagues suggest a mnemonic, "CVP," to help the clinician remember the main tasks necessary for the successful termination of CPB (Table 54.4).[149] Each letter of CVP represents several tasks or important points to remember that begin with that letter.

The first "C" stands for cold, which refers to the patient's temperature at the time of weaning from CPB, which should be 36°C to 37°C. Neither the temperature of the venous blood returning to the CPB circuit nor the nasopharyngeal temperature should ever exceed 37°C because hyperthermia may increase the risk of postoperative neurologic complications (see the section on "Temperature").

The second "C" stands for conduction, which refers to cardiac rate and rhythm. A heart rate of 80 to 100 beats/min is usually desirable. Bradycardia is treated with epicardial pacing wires and/or with β-adrenergic drugs that have chronotropic and dromotropic, as well as inotropic, properties. Tachycardia (i.e., heart rate >120 beats/min) is also undesirable. Sinus tachycardia may result from anemia, hypovolemia, “light” anesthesia, or the administration of chronotropic drugs; treatment is tailored to the presumed cause. Rhythm is also an important factor in optimizing CO. Third-degree AV block requires pacing, ideally AV pacing. Sinus rhythm is preferable, particularly in patients with poor LV compliance, who are especially dependent on an “atrial kick” to achieve adequate filling. If supraventricular tachycardia is present, direct synchronized cardioversion is often warranted. In addition, pharmacologic therapy with amiodarone, esmolol, verapamil, or adenosine may be used in the initial treatment of or to prevent the recurrence of supraventricular tachycardia.

The third “C” stands for CO or contractility. Contractility may be estimated from TEE or PA catheter data, if available.

The fourth “C” refers to cells (i.e., red blood cells [RBCs]). The patient’s hemoglobin concentration should be 7 to 8 g/dL, or slightly higher, before weaning from CPB. If the hemoglobin concentration is less than 6.5 g/dL when rewarming commences, the perfusionist and anesthesiologist can consider hemoconcentration or transfusion of a unit of packed RBCs (PRBCs).

The fifth “C” refers to calcium, which should be immediately available for possible administration to treat hypocalcemia and hyperkalemia. Ionized calcium levels should be measured after rewarming to help direct therapy. Although calcium is not administered routinely, if ionized calcium levels are in the low-normal range, SVR can be beneficially increased by calcium administration.

The sixth “C” stands for coagulation. After protamine is administered, ACT is measured. In patients at risk for coagulation abnormalities, prothrombin time, PTT, and platelet count should also be measured a few minutes later. If POC coagulation monitoring such as the viscoelastic tests are available, these should be measured at this time. Examples of patients at risk for coagulation abnormalities include the following: those with long CPB times; those with extreme hypothermia, elective circulatory arrest, or both, during CPB; and those with chronic renal failure. Platelet function tests may be useful in patients taking platelet inhibitors (e.g., clopidogrel or aspirin). (For further discussion of patients having emergency surgery who are taking warfarin or who have been exposed to thrombolytic drugs, antiplatelet Gp IIb/IIIa agents, or direct thrombin inhibitors see the sections on the “hematologic system” and on bleeding and coagulopathy.)

The first “V” stands for ventilation of the lungs. As CPB is discontinued, the venous outflow line is gradually occluded, and PA blood flow is gradually restored. Pulmonary ventilation and oxygenation must be reestablished, thus allowing the lungs to become the site of gas exchange again. Ideally, the lungs are initially reinflated manually, with a few sustained inflations to a peak pressure of approximately 30 cm H_2O. If an IMA has been grafted to a coronary artery, the anesthesiologist must examine the surgical field during these inflations to ensure that the grafted artery is not overstretched, which could disrupt the distal anastomosis. Additionally, the compliance of the lungs is judged by these initial inflations, and bronchodilators can be administered if necessary. The surgeon should remove any fluid or blood from the pleural spaces and ensure that any pneumothorax is treated with a chest tube.

The second “V” refers to visualization of the heart, both directly in the surgical field (where the right-sided chambers are visible) and on the TEE, to estimate global and regional contractility. Furthermore, the degree of chamber filling (hypovolemic, euvolemic, or distended) can be estimated. In addition, one can do a final check for air within the cardiac chambers with TEE examination.

The third “V” stands for vaporizer, meaning that if volatile agents were used to ensure lack of awareness or to control blood pressure during CPB, the clinician usually reinstitutes a low dose immediately after weaning. However, because all the volatile agents decrease contractility and blood pressure, these effects can confuse the differential diagnosis of hypotension and myocardial dysfunction during weaning.

The final “V” refers to volume expanders. When all products from the pump have been exhausted and if blood transfusion is not indicated, crystalloid and albumin or hetastarch should be readily available to increase preload rapidly if necessary.

As for the letter “P” in the CVP mnemonic, Morris et al. explained that the first task “P” represents the need to be aware of predictors of adverse cardiovascular outcome.[149] For example, preoperative low EF and prolonged CPB often predict difficulty in weaning the patient from CPB and the need for inotropic support. In addition, emergency surgery in patients with acute coronary syndrome may lead to myocardial stunning. Furthermore, inadequate surgical repair (e.g., incomplete coronary revascularization) may result in ongoing ischemia.

The second “P” stands for pressure. Calibration and rezeroing are accomplished shortly before the patient begins being weaned from CPB. Any discrepancy between the distal (usually radial) arterial pressure and the central aortic pressure should be recognized. Occasionally, the surgeon may need to insert a temporary aortic root cannula or a longer-lasting femoral arterial cannula to monitor systemic blood pressure accurately during and after the termination of CPB.

The third “P” refers to pressors, meaning vasopressors and inotropic agents that should be immediately available. A vasodilator, such as nitroglycerin, nicardipine, or nitroprusside, also should be immediately available.

The fourth “P” represents pacer because an external pacemaker should be readily available for all patients. Pacing is often needed to treat bradycardia. In patients with heart block, ideally, an AV sequential pacemaker is used to maintain the atrial kick.

The fifth “P” stands for potassium because hypokalemia may contribute to dysrhythmias, and hyperkalemia may result in conduction abnormalities. In addition, the patient’s ionized calcium level is usually checked; most clinicians have a low threshold for administering additional calcium chloride. Furthermore, magnesium (2-4 g) is usually administered before CPB is terminated. Although magnesium’s efficacy in preventing postoperative atrial or ventricular dysrhythmias has not been clearly demonstrated, hypomagnesemia is common after CPB. The risk-to-benefit ratio for administering a 2- to 4-g dose is low.

TABLE 54.4 Elements of Morris, Romanoff, and Royster's "Central Venous Pressure" Mnemonic for Weaning Patients from Cardiopulmonary Bypass

C	V	P
Cold	Ventilation	Predictors
Conduction	Visualization	Pressure
Cardiac output	Vaporizer	Pressors
Cells	Volume expanders	Pacer
Calcium		Potassium
Coagulation		Protamine

From Morris BN, Romanoff ME, Royster RL. The postcardiopulmonary bypass period: weaning to ICU transport. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008:230–260.

The final "P" refers to protamine. Many institutions require that protamine be uniquely packaged or kept in a nearby but separate area to ensure that the drug is not prematurely administered. (Administration during ongoing CPB is a disastrous error.) Nevertheless, it should take but a few moments to retrieve protamine when the surgeon, anesthesiologist, and perfusionist agree that it is time to reverse anticoagulation.

TERMINATION OF CARDIOPULMONARY BYPASS

After all the preparations described previously have been made and the patient's ventilation has been reestablished, the venous return to the pump is reduced by gradually clamping the venous line. The patient's intravascular volume is carefully increased by continued inflow through the aortic or other arterial cannula. Ventricular distention should be avoided because it increases wall tension and myocardial oxygen consumption. The pump flow into the aorta is lowered, in effect moving into a "partial bypass" phase, in which some of the venous blood still goes into the pump and some passes through the right ventricle and lungs to be ejected into the aorta by the LV. Some clinicians reduce the pump flow to half flow rather than gradually reducing venous return to the pump. Once loading conditions are optimal and contractility appears adequate, the aortic inflow line may be clamped to separate the patient from CPB.

If CPB has been successfully terminated but cardiac performance is not optimal, preload can be increased by infusing additional blood from the pump into the aortic cannula, usually in 100-mL increments in adult patients. Monitoring the left intraventricular volume in a qualitative fashion by TEE, observing the right ventricle directly, and monitoring the filling pressures give a good estimate of the adequacy of preload. At this point, the anesthesiologist and surgeon jointly determine whether myocardial filling and performance are adequate. This determination can best be accomplished by using TEE to observe the global and regional function of both ventricles. Supplemental information can be obtained by measuring CO, if possible. Afterload can also be optimized at this point. Usually, 95 to 125 mm Hg is a desirable systolic pressure in adult patients in the immediate postbypass period, whereas increased systolic blood pressure should be avoided to prevent excessive stress on suture lines in the heart and aorta. If the patient is hemodynamically unstable and additional time is needed to administer initial or additional inotropes or vasoconstrictors, CPB can be reinstituted by unclamping the venous outflow line and directing all flow to the oxygenator again (Fig. 54.11).

Once protamine is administered, the reinstitution of CPB becomes a more complicated process because the patient must first be reheparinized and antithrombin levels may be inadequate. Therefore, final checks of cardiac function, heart rate and rhythm, preload, afterload, and perfusion should be made jointly by the anesthesiologist and the surgeon. The venous cannula or cannulas are usually removed after the initial test dose of protamine is given. Many surgeons remove the aortic cannula only after at least half of the protamine dose has been administered. The rate and mode of protamine administration (incremental small boluses vs. continuous infusion) vary according to institutional and individual clinicians' practices, but a large dose of protamine should never be administered as a rapid bolus.

Table 54.5 shows the characteristics and treatment modalities of specific TEE-diagnosed difficulties that may be encountered during weaning and termination from CPB.[147]

CHEST CLOSURE

As the cardiac surgery proceeds toward its conclusion a critical step is still to come—chest closure. Chest closure is important because of the hemodynamic consequences that can result from it.

Usually the surgical team would announce the closure of the chest to the anesthesia team, but the anesthesiologists should remain vigilant of the timing of chest closure even if the surgeons do not announce it.

In the immediate post-CPB period patients are generally hypovolemic. Closure of the chest would exacerbate the consequence of hypovolemia (i.e., hypotension). To prepare for chest closure, anesthesiologists administer crystalloid, colloid, or blood depending on the patient's requirement. If chest closure causes severe hypotension surgeons should be requested to reopen the chest and wait until volume resuscitation has caught up (or at least the volume status is relatively easily manageable) to close the chest.

In addition to hypovolemia, chest closure is important in regard to causing ischemic changes by impinging on a venous or arterial graft that lies in a vulnerable position on or around the heart. In this situation ECG and/or hemodynamic changes will be observed which should prompt the anesthesiologist to inform the surgical team, who will reopen the chest and reposition the graft in a way that it is not affected by chest closure.

Other reasons for severe hypotension during chest closure in addition to hypovolemia and ischemia secondary to kinking of a coronary graft include impairment of RV contractility and venous return in patients with significant myocardial edema. TEE can be particularly useful in determining the cause of hypotension during chest closure because it can quickly reveal tamponade, hypovolemia, RV or LV global dysfunction, and severe new

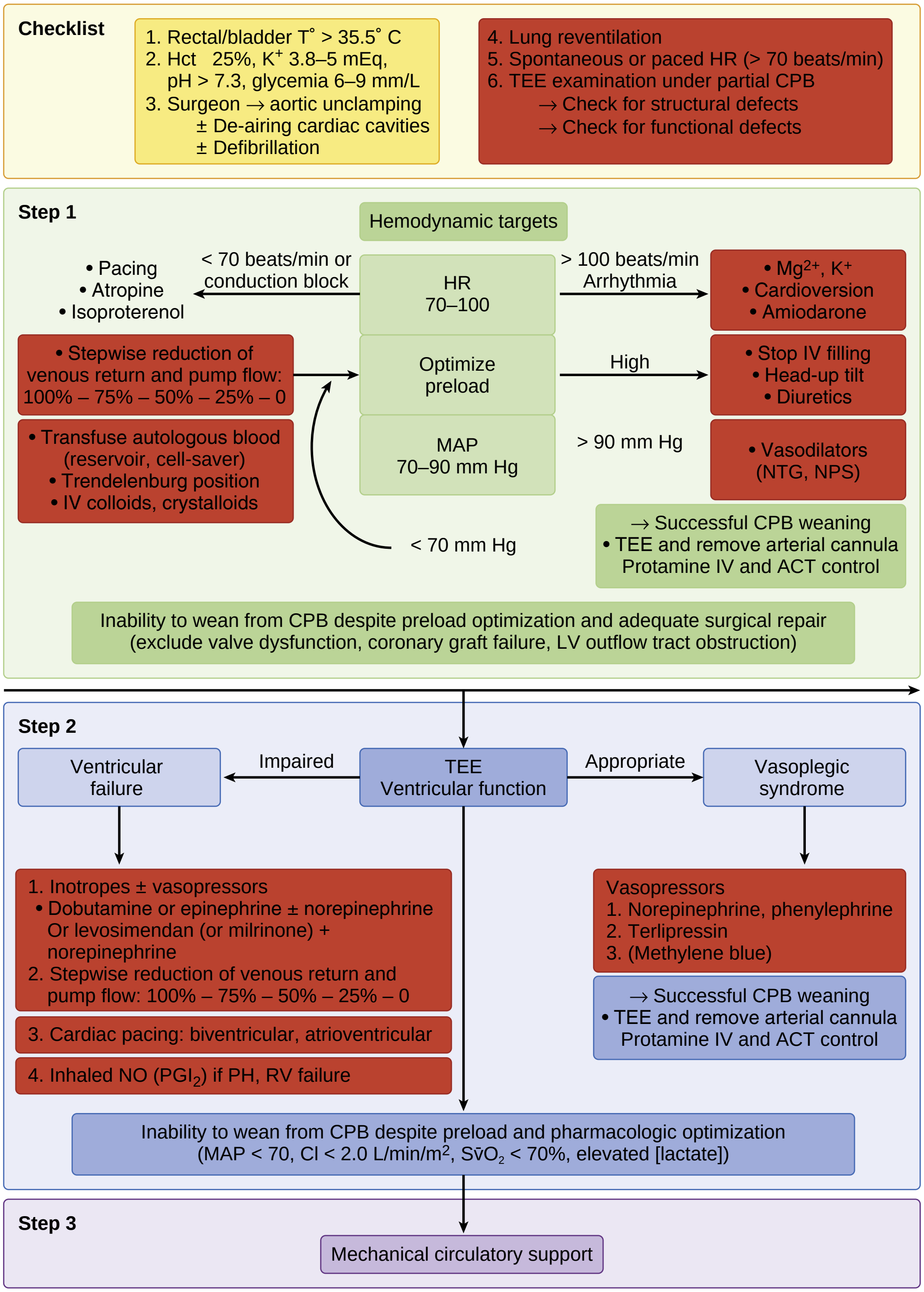

Checklist
1. Rectal/bladder T° > 35.5° C
2. Hct 25%, K+ 3.8–5 mEq,
pH > 7.3, glycemia 6–9 mm/L
3. Surgeon → aortic unclamping
± De-airing cardiac cavities
± Defibrillation
4. Lung reventilation
5. Spontaneous or paced HR (> 70 beats/min)
6. TEE examination under partial CPB
→ Check for structural defects
→ Check for functional defects
Step 1
Hemodynamic targets
• Pacing
• Atropine
• Isoproterenol
< 70 beats/min or conduction block
HR 70–100
> 100 beats/min Arrhythmia
• Mg2+, K+
• Cardioversion
• Amiodarone
• Stepwise reduction of venous return and pump flow: 100% – 75% – 50% – 25% – 0
Optimize preload
High
• Stop IV filling
• Head-up tilt
• Diuretics
• Transfuse autologous blood (reservoir, cell-saver)
• Trendelenburg position
• IV colloids, crystalloids
MAP 70–90 mm Hg
> 90 mm Hg
• Vasodilators (NTG, NPS)
< 70 mm Hg
→ Successful CPB weaning
• TEE and remove arterial cannula
Protamine IV and ACT control
Inability to wean from CPB despite preload optimization and adequate surgical repair
(exclude valve dysfunction, coronary graft failure, LV outflow tract obstruction)
Step 2
Ventricular failure
Impaired
TEE Ventricular function
Appropriate
Vasoplegic syndrome
1. Inotropes ± vasopressors
• Dobutamine or epinephrine ± norepinephrine
Or levosimendan (or milrinone) + norepinephrine
2. Stepwise reduction of venous return and pump flow: 100% – 75% – 50% – 25% – 0
3. Cardiac pacing: biventricular, atrioventricular
4. Inhaled NO (PGI2) if PH, RV failure
Vasopressors
1. Norepinephrine, phenylephrine
2. Terlipressin
3. (Methylene blue)
→ Successful CPB weaning
• TEE and remove arterial cannula
Protamine IV and ACT control
Inability to wean from CPB despite preload and pharmacologic optimization
(MAP < 70, CI < 2.0 L/min/m2, Sv̄O2 < 70%, elevated [lactate])
Step 3
Mechanical circulatory support

Fig. 54.11 Algorithm for weaning from cardiopulmonary bypass *(CPB)*. *ACT,* Activated clotting time; *Hct,* hematocrit; *HR,* heart rate; *IV,* intravenous; *K+,* potassium; *LV,* left ventricular; *MAP,* mean arterial pressure; *Mg^{2+},* magnesium; *NO,* nitric oxide; *NPS,* sodium nitroprusside; *NTG,* nitroglycerin; *PGI_2,* prostacyclin; *PH,* pulmonary hypertension; *RV,* right ventricular; *$S\bar{v}O_2$,* mixed venous oxygen saturation; *TEE,* transesophageal echocardiography. (From Licker M, Diaper J, Cartier V, et al. Clinical review: management of weaning from cardiopulmonary bypass. *Ann Card Anaesth.* 2012;15:206–223.)

wall motion abnormalities. Reopening the chest may be necessary while treatment is instituted. Occasionally, the patient's sternum cannot be closed because of hemodynamic instability; in such cases, only skin closure is attempted, and plans are made to return to the operating room for sternal wiring after a period of myocardial recovery in the ICU.

TRANSPORT TO THE INTENSIVE CARE UNIT

Transportation of postcardiac surgical patients to the ICU is frequently dangerous and underestimated. Preparation for transportation of a postcardiac surgical patient should start with evaluation of the stability of the patient in the operating room. An ICU bed with a portable

TABLE 54.5 Characteristics and Treatment Modalities of Weaning Difficulties

	Surgical or Technical Failure	**Ventricular Dysfunction**	**Vasoplegic Syndrome**	**Left Ventricular Outflow Tract Obstruction**
Diagnostic criteria	**TEE** Valvular regurgitation or stenosis Patient-prosthesis mismatch Paraprosthetic leakage Intracardiac shunt Occluded vascular graft	**1. TEE** ↓ Contractility of LV and RV Dilated LV and RV ↓ Relaxation **2. Hemodynamics** ↓ CO and ↓ MAP	**1. TEE** Preserved ventricular contractility **2. Hemodynamics** ↑ Or normal CO and ↓ MAP	**TEE** Systolic anterior motion of anterior mitral leaflet LV septal hypertrophy Pressure gradient in LV outflow tract
Incidence	2%-6%	15%-40%	4%-20%	5%-10% after mitral valve surgery
Risk factors	Team and operator's experience, qualification Low surgical volume Extended disease, difficult anatomy	Age (>65 years), female sex CHF, low LVEF LV diastolic dysfunction Previous MI, COPD eGFR < 60 mL/min Extensive CAD, left main CAD Reoperation, emergency, combined procedure Prolonged CPB	Preoperative therapy with ACEI or angiotensin II antagonist, β-blockers, heparin High EuroScore Prolonged CPB Low LVEF (<35%)	Myxomatous mitral valve Hyperdynamic LV Short distance between MV coaptation point and LV septum
Specific treatment	**Reoperation** Secondary repair or valve replacement Shunt closure Additional coronary bypass graft	**1. Drugs** Adrenergic agonists (dobutamine, epinephrine, dopamine) Phosphodiesterase inhibitors (milrinone) Calcium sensitizer (levosimendan) Systemic vasodilators (NTG, NPS) Pulmonary vasodilators (NO, PGI_2) **2. Electromechanical Support** Biventricular pacing Intraaortic balloon pump Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation Ventricular assist device	**Vasopressors** Phenylephrine Norepinephrine Terlipressin Methylene blue	**1. Medical** Volume expansion Inotrope discontinuation β-blockers **2. Surgical** Septal bulge resection MV repeat repair or replacement

ACEI, Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor; *CAD,* coronary artery disease; *CHF,* congestive heart failure; *CO,* cardiac output; *COPD,* chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; *CPB,* cardiopulmonary bypass; *eGFR,* estimated glomerular filtration rate; *LV,* left ventricle; *LVEF,* left ventricular ejection fraction; *MAP,* mean arterial pressure; *MI,* myocardial infarction; *MV,* mitral valve, *NO,* nitric oxide; *NPS,* nitroprusside sodium; *NTG,* nitroglycerin; *PGI_2,* prostacyclin; *RV,* right ventricle; *TEE,* transesophageal echocardiography.

From Licker M, Diaper J, Cartier V, et al. Clinical review: management of weaning from cardiopulmonary bypass. *Ann Card Anaesth.* 2012;15:206–223.

hemodynamic monitor should be prepared and ready for these patients. Monitoring should not be completely interrupted even for a few moments. The ideal transport monitoring system has a "brick" that can be ejected from the operating room monitor and is compatible with the transport monitor. If such equipment is not available, sequential disconnection of monitors is advised so that an online monitor is always visible and the patient is never "unmonitored."

Staff should be educated about the importance of sequential transfer of monitors.

In the post-CPB period patients are frequently receiving infusions. A cardiac anesthesiologist should make sure that the pumps used for infusions in cardiac surgery are adequately functional. It is a good practice to unplug infusion pumps a few minutes before leaving the operating room to test the battery life for transport. Regardless of the proximity of the ICU to the operating room, disconnection of vasoactive infusions during transport could be devastating in certain critically ill patients.

As many patients are transported intubated, it is a good practice to carry a laryngoscope blade and an endotracheal tube. Even if the patient is extubated before leaving the operating room, airway management equipment and a means to ventilate the patient should still travel to the ICU with the patient. In addition, emergency medications should be brought during transport. It is recommended that the anesthesiologist carries at least one round of "code drugs" to assist in the event of cardiac arrest during transportation. A defibrillator should be on every patient's transportation bed.

Upon reaching the ICU, it is the responsibility of the cardiac anesthesiologist to ensure that a detailed report is given to the receiving physician or nurses.

On arrival in the ICU or cardiac recovery area, a transfer of the patient and the patient's information from one team to another, termed handoff or handover, occurs. Handoff failures have been identified as a significant source of medical errors, both between and within teams.[150-152] Implementing a handoff protocol reduces information omission and reduces errors. The process is intended to be strictly sequential: monitoring should be transferred before ventilator transfer, and all phase 1 items should be completed before information transfer.[153,154] Using formal, sequential handoff procedures does not increase the duration of the process.[155] The following sequence is suggested[155] (Wahr J, personal communication, November 17, 2012):

Phase 1: Equipment and Technology Handover

1. Monitoring transferred to ICU equipment
2. Ventilator function initiated
3. Infusions and fluids checked
4. Chest drains secured and on suction
5. Vital signs confirmed to be stable, ventilator functioning well, infusions running appropriately
6. Anesthesiologist, nurse, and surgeon confirm that they are ready for information transfer

Phase 2: Information Handover

1. Anesthesiologist presents
   a. Patient-specific information (age, weight, medical and surgical history, allergy status, baseline vital signs, pertinent laboratory results, diagnosis, current condition, and vital signs)
   b. Anesthetic information (intraoperative course and any complications, lines present, blood transfusion or fluid totals, paralytics or opioids, antibiotics, current infusions, vital sign parameters or limits, pain relief plan, laboratory values)
2. Surgeon presents: surgical course (diagnosis, operation performed, surgical findings, complications, blood loss, drains, antibiotic plan, deep vein thrombosis prophylaxis, medication plan, tests to be done, nutrition, key goals for the next 6 to 12 hours)

Phase 3: Questions and Discussion

In all cases, the anesthesiologist should remain with the patient until hemodynamic stability and overall stability are ensured.

THE POSTBYPASS PERIOD: COMMON PROBLEMS AFTER CARDIOPULMONARY BYPASS

Awareness

The potential for the patient's awareness must be assessed during and after CPB (see also Chapter 40). The incidence of this distressing complication is more frequent in cardiac operations than in other cases.[156,157] Although patients may sweat during the rewarming period, usually because of perfusion of the thermoregulatory site in the hypothalamus with warm blood, sweating may also result from awareness if anesthetic concentrations are low during the period when the brain becomes normothermic. Awareness may be more likely if considerable time has elapsed since any sedative-hypnotic or narcotic has been administered, if small doses of anesthetic drugs were administered during CPB, or if the patient is young. Consideration should be given to continuing to administer a volatile anesthetic agent once pulmonary ventilation is reestablished and to administering additional sedative-hypnotic doses, an opioid, or both. Some clinicians begin infusing an anesthetic agent such as propofol or dexmedetomidine shortly after weaning the patient from CPB and continue it during and after transport to the ICU or cardiac recovery area.

Published studies support the hypothesis that the use of depth-of-anesthesia monitors such as the BIS can decrease the incidence of intraoperative awareness in patients at high risk for this problem (see also Chapter 40).[156,157] However, falsely high BIS values during cardiac surgery have been attributed to interference from pump head rotation, pacemakers, and hypothermia itself.[158] Furthermore, because processing of the raw EEG and data smoothing to generate the BIS number occur over 15 to 30 seconds, the BIS number lags slightly behind clinical events.

Another important decision to be made is whether additional neuromuscular blocking drugs are needed during and after weaning from CPB. Use of a peripheral nerve stimulator may facilitate this decision (see also Chapter 43). Although movement of the patient may serve as an indication of the patient's awareness, such movement can be extremely dangerous if it results in dislodgment of the aortic or venous cannulas. Furthermore, shivering can occur because of the "afterdrop" in temperature after a period of hypothermic CPB. Because shivering can increase oxygen demand by 300% to 600%, it should be prevented by administering a neuromuscular blocking drug.

BOX 54.8 Risk Factors for Low Cardiac Output Syndrome After Cardiopulmonary Bypass

Preoperative left ventricular dysfunction
Valvular heart disease requiring repair or replacement
Long aortic cross-clamp time and total cardiopulmonary bypass time
Inadequate cardiac surgical repair
Myocardial ischemia and reperfusion
Residual effects of cardioplegia solution
Poor myocardial preservation
Reperfusion injury and inflammatory changes

From Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:1028.

Cardiovascular Decompensation (Low Cardiac Output Syndrome)

Although improvements in myocardial protection have occurred during recent decades, it is well documented that significant declines in LV function after CABG and other cardiac operations occur in the first 8 to 24 postoperative hours.[159] A combination of ischemia and reperfusion injury after cardiac surgery contributes to an energy deficit state in the myocardium that limits uptake of exogenous energy substrates from blood (Box 54.8). Prolonged aortic cross-clamp time, incomplete revascularization, or poor myocardial preservation adds additional risk. In particular, patients with preexisting LV dysfunction experience a delay in myocardial recovery after cardiac surgery and require measures to relieve the workload of the heart. Furthermore, preexisting diastolic dysfunction is associated with an increased risk of difficulty in weaning from CPB and ongoing need for vasoactive support during the postbypass period and in the ICU.[160]

Criteria used to define low CO syndrome (LCOS) include a cardiac index of less than 2.4 L/min/m^2, elevated lactate levels, and urine output of less than 0.5 mL/h for more than 1 hour.[161]

Postoperative management of patients at high risk for LCOS requires a physiologic approach. Optimizing preload and reducing afterload help maximize cardiac function.

TABLE 54.6 Relative Potency of Commonly Used Vasoactive Drugs

		CARDIAC			PERIPHERAL VASCULATURE	
	Dose	**Heart Rate**	**Contractility**	**Vasoconstriction**	**Vasodilation**	**Dopaminergic**
Norepinephrine	2-40 μg/min	+	++	++++	0	0
Dopamine	1-4 μg/kg/min	+	+	0	+	++++
	4-20 μg/kg/min	++	++, +++	++, +++	0	++
Epinephrine	1-20 μg/min	++++	++++	++++	+++	0
Phenylephrine	20-200 μg/min	0	0	+++	0	0
Vasopressin	0.01-0.03 units/min	0	0	++++	0	0
Dobutamine	2-20 μg/kg/min	++	+++, ++++	0	++	0
Milrinone	0.375-0.75 μg/kg/min	+	+++	0	++	0
Levosimendan	0.05-0.2 μg/kg/min	+	+++	0	++	0

From Hollenberg SM, Parrillo JE. Acute heart failure and shock. In: Crawford MH, DeMarco J, Paulus WJ, eds. *Cardiology*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2010:964.

Both tachycardia and bradycardia should be avoided, and postoperative arrhythmias should be treated. In addition, shivering should be prevented because it raises the heart rate by increasing oxygen demand. Postoperative deep sedation and muscle relaxation are often used to reduce myocardial workload by reducing the body's overall metabolic demand by 25% to 30%.

Pharmacologic support is often needed to improve contractility as the patient is weaned from CPB and, eventually, recovering in the ICU (Table 54.6).[161,162] Catecholamines (β-adrenergic agonists) and phosphodiesterase inhibitors are the main classes of pharmacologic agents used for this purpose. Catecholamines (e.g., epinephrine, norepinephrine, dopamine, dobutamine, dopexamine, isoproterenol) are often the first line of therapy. They exert positive inotropic action by stimulating the β_1 receptor, which leads to increased intracellular cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP). The predominant hemodynamic effect of a specific catecholamine depends upon the degree to which the α, β_1, β_2, and dopaminergic receptors are stimulated. Phosphodiesterase inhibitors (e.g., milrinone, amrinone), sometimes termed inodilators, may be used either as first-line therapy or added to β-adrenergic therapy. Phosphodiesterase inhibitors augment β-adrenergic stimulation by inhibiting the breakdown of cAMP. When these drugs are added to catecholamine infusions, the result is an additive or possibly synergistic increase in inotropy. Phosphodiesterase inhibitors also induce systemic and pulmonary vasodilation. Hence, they are particularly useful in patients with pulmonary hypertension, RV failure, or aortic or mitral valve regurgitation.

Although not yet available in the United States, a newer class of drugs—the calcium sensitizers—exhibit potent inodilatory properties.[163,164] Levosimendan is the first such drug in this class, and has been studied extensively in other parts of the world. A randomized controlled trial of levosimendan in cardiac surgery in the U.S., (although it was found to be beneficial), did not meet its primary endpoint,[165] and thus the drug has not received approval by the U.S. FDA. Its mechanism of action is that it increases myocyte sensitivity to calcium by stabilization of the calcium binding to troponin C, thus enhancing actin-myosin cross-bridging and increasing contractility.[166] Therefore, inotropic performance is enhanced, whereas diastolic performance is preserved. Like phosphodiesterase inhibitors, levosimendan may augment inotropy without significantly increasing myocardial oxygen consumption.

RV failure may also be present in patients with LCOS, and it manifests as elevated PA and CVP pressures. Echocardiography can be diagnostic—findings include an enlarged and poorly contracting right ventricle, often with significant TR. The management of RV failure consists of ensuring adequate RV filling and maintaining adequate systemic pressures to prevent RV ischemia. Afterload reduction with agents effective in the pulmonary circulation is helpful. Milrinone may reduce PVR and improve CO. Nitric oxide and inhaled prostaglandins are selective for pulmonary vasodilation. Other measures to decrease PVR include hyperventilation (higher respiratory rate) to induce mild hypocapnia and aggressive treatment of hypoxemia and acidosis.

Right Heart Failure

Any situation where the right heart is not able to fulfill the requirements of circulation is labelled as right HF. With the development of new imaging modalities, it has become easy to accurately evaluate the right heart for management purposes.

Box 54.9 lists the key points of right HF which include the importance of identifying the problem in a timely manner with the help of new imaging modalities. A cardiac anesthesiologist can play a key role in this regard by using the three-dimensional TEE imaging. A number of parameters are used to evaluate right HF by the cardiac anesthesiologist using TEE: size of the right atrium and ventricle, RV systolic function, septal curvature, tricuspid regurgitation (TR), gradient across the RV outflow tract, and an estimation of the PA and RA pressures.[167]

Management of right HF starts by identifying the etiology of failure: ischemia, PE, outflow tract obstruction, air embolism, etc. Maintenance of sinus rhythm, reducing RV afterload, and inotropic support play an important role in supporting the right heart. Importance of maintaining adequate MAP should not be underestimated in these cases.

BOX 54.9 Key Points of Right Heart Failure

- Right ventricular (RV) function is associated with significant mortality
- New echocardiographic modalities using strain appear promising in predicting RV failure
- Monitoring the impact of RV function using near infrared spectroscopy and liver hemodynamics appear as useful intraoperative methods in adjusting therapeutic interventions and fluid management

From Haddad F, Elmi-Sarabi M, Fadel E, et al. Pearls and pitfalls in managing right heart failure in cardiac surgery. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2016;29:68–79.

Inhaled vasodilators are also used in right HF. In some institutions two inhaled agents are instituted with different mechanisms of action, especially in unexpected right HF cases.

Fluid management in these patients should be very judicious as they might already be congested.

Finally, mechanical support for the failing right heart is available and has seen significant advancement in the last few years. Depending on the situation of the patient, these devices can be either temporary or permanent in nature.[167]

Right Ventricular Dysfunction or Failure

RV dysfunction or failure may also occur after CPB, usually because of inadequate myocardial protection, inadequate revascularization with resultant RV ischemia or infarction, preexisting pulmonary hypertension, intracoronary or pulmonary air embolism, chronic mitral valve disease, or TR. Such RV failure may be evidenced by RV distention and hypokinesis on TEE, as well as by elevations in CVP and PA pressure (PAP).

Therapy for RV failure includes increasing preload and inotropic support; milrinone, dobutamine, and isoproterenol are the usual first-line drugs. Other pharmacologic drugs occasionally used to induce pulmonary vasodilation include nitroglycerin and nitroprusside. One potential problem with the use of intravenous inodilator and vasodilator agents is that their effects are not limited to the pulmonary circulation. SVR must be adequate to maintain RV perfusion pressure. Inhaled drugs such as nitric oxide, epoprostenol (Flolan), and inhaled iloprost are considered in refractory cases. Adjuncts to decrease PVR include hyperventilation (higher respiratory rate) to induce mild hypocapnia, and preventing hypoxemia and acidosis. Rarely, patients may require support with an RVAD.

Vasoplegia

Inappropriate vasodilation with a low SVR is another common cause of immediate post-CPB cardiovascular decompensation that may result in unacceptable hypotension. Predisposing factors include long-term administration of medications such as ACEIs or angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs), prolonged duration of CPB, severe anemia with decreased viscosity, acid-base disturbances, and sepsis. Treatment with infusion of a vasoconstrictor drug such as phenylephrine, norepinephrine, vasopressin, or, rarely, methylene blue or B12 is usually successful.

TABLE 54.7 Postoperative Rate and Rhythm Disturbances

Disturbance	Usual Causes	Treatments
Sinus bradycardia	Preoperative or intraoperative β blockade	Atrial pacing β-Agonist Anticholinergic
Heart block (first, second, and third degree)	Ischemia Surgical trauma	Atrioventricular sequential pacing Catecholamines
Sinus tachycardia	Agitation or pain Hypovolemia Catecholamines	Sedation or analgesia Volume administration Change or stopping of drug
Atrial tachyarrhythmias	Catecholamines	Change or stopping of drug
	Chamber distention Electrolyte disorder (hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia)	Treatment of underlying cause (e.g., vasodilator, give K^+/Mg^{2+}) Possible need for synchronized cardioversion or pharmacotherapy
Ventricular tachycardia or fibrillation	Ischemia Catecholamines	Cardioversion Treatment of ischemia; possible need for pharmacotherapy Change or stopping of drug

K^+, Potassium; *Mg^{2+}*, magnesium.

Modified from Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:1030.

Dysrhythmias

Normal sinus rhythm is ideal because it provides an atrial contribution to ventricular filling and a normal synchronized contraction of the ventricle. However, either supraventricular or ventricular arrhythmias can occur in the immediate postbypass period.

Postoperative arrhythmias are frequently seen in postcardiac surgical procedures. Table 54.7[168] summarizes causes and treatments of common postoperative arrhythmias. Postoperative arrhythmias can be divided into atrial and ventricular arrhythmias.

Atrial Arrhythmias. Atrial fibrillation (AF) is the most common postoperative arrhythmia (27%-40%).[169,170] Patients are at highest risk for new-onset atrial fibrillation 2 to 3 days after cardiac surgery.[170] This arrhythmia can potentially prolong the patient's hospital stay and increase management costs by causing hemodynamic compromise or thromboembolic complications in the postoperative period.[171]

Many potential risk factors have been studied in efforts to predict the occurrence of postoperative atrial fibrillation. With advancing age, dilatation of the atrium interrupts cell-to-cell electrical coupling between atrial muscle fibers. Other preoperative risk factors for postoperative atrial fibrillation include a history of atrial fibrillation, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, valve surgery, and postoperative withdrawal of a β-blocker or ACEI.[170]

Increased preoperative hemoglobin A1c,[172] physical activity of low intensity during 1 year prior to surgery,[173] Caucasian race,[174] obesity, and electrolyte disturbances (hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia) have also been shown to contribute towards increased risk of atrial fibrillation.

Perioperative factors include inadequate atrial protection during surgery, pericardial inflammation, autonomic imbalance during the postoperative period, change in atrial size with fluid shifts, electrolyte (potassium and magnesium) abnormalities, and excessive production of catecholamines.[175] Reduced risk has been associated with the postoperative administration of β-blockers, ACEIs, potassium supplementation, and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs).[170]

Treatment for atrial fibrillation includes both pharmacologic agents and electrical stimulation. Many studies have shown that β blockade significantly reduces the incidence of postoperative atrial fibrillation and that withdrawal of β-blockers increases risk.[176,177] Synchronized cardioversion is reserved for patients who show signs of hemodynamic instability during atrial fibrillation.[178] In the absence of hemodynamic instability, pharmacologic agents are used with the goal of preventing a rapid ventricular response. Drugs usually employed for this purpose include calcium channel blockers, β-blockers, magnesium, and amiodarone. Expert consultation should be obtained before treatment is initiated, especially in a stable patient.[177,178]

Ventricular Arrhythmias. Although ventricular arrhythmias occur after cardiac surgical procedures, sustained ventricular arrhythmias are relatively uncommon. Associated factors may include hemodynamic instability, electrolyte abnormalities, hypoxia, hypovolemia, ischemia or infarction, acute graft closure reperfusion, and the use of inotropic agents.[178]

Ventricular arrhythmias can range from simple premature ventricular complexes (PVCs) to VT. Simple PVCs do not pose a significant risk of life-threatening ventricular arrhythmia. Conversely, complex ventricular arrhythmias, including both frequent PVCs (>30/h) and nonsustained VT, may make patients prone to sudden death, especially in the long term. Sudden death is even more likely if ventricular function is also compromised. A study of 126 patients with postoperative complex ventricular ectopy found a mortality rate of 75%.[178] Patients with sustained ventricular arrhythmias have a poor prognosis in both the short and the long term.

Although hemodynamically unstable VT should be treated by synchronized cardioversion, patients with PVCs or short runs of nonsustained VT with hemodynamic stability do not need to be treated. Any reversible causes should be sought and corrected. Amiodarone is reserved for hemodynamically stable patients with VT or an uncertain rhythm. Ventricular fibrillation should be treated promptly with electrical defibrillation.[178] For long-term management of ventricular arrhythmias, in addition to antiarrhythmic agents, electrophysiologic studies or placement of an ICD should be considered.

Bradyarrhythmias. Bradyarrhythmias are not uncommon in the immediate postoperative period. In most cases, a temporary epicardial pacemaker is sufficient. In a small percentage of patients, a permanent pacemaker may be necessary, especially in patients with sinus node dysfunction or AV conduction disturbances after either CABG or valve repair.[178] Patients who need a permanent pacemaker may receive either a single-chamber or a dual-chamber pacemaker. Multiple factors dictate which particular device would most benefit an individual patient.[179]

BOX 54.10 Vasodilators Available for the Treatment of Perioperative Hypertension

Adenosine
α_1-Adrenergic antagonists
α_2-Adrenergic agonists
Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (enalaprilat)
Angiotensin II antagonists
Atrial natriuretic peptide (nesiritide)
β_2-Adrenergic agonists
Dihydropyridine-type calcium channel blockers*
Dopamine agonists
Hydralazine
Nitrovasodilators*
Phosphodiesterase enzyme inhibitors
Prostaglandins

*Intravenous vasoactive therapies in widespread use to treat perioperative hypertension.

From Levy JH. Management of systemic and pulmonary hypertension. *Tex Heart Inst J.* 2005;32:467–471.

Hypertension

Immediately after cardiac surgery, the patient remains prone to hemodynamic instability, including hypertension.[180] Causes of postoperative hypertension are often multifactorial and may include withdrawal from preoperative antihypertensive medications (e.g., β-blockers and centrally acting α_2-agonists), pain, hypoxemia, hypercarbia, and hypothermia. However, arterial vasoconstriction usually plays a central role in acute postoperative hypertension.[181] The hazards of untreated postoperative hypertension include increased myocardial work and oxygen consumption, MI, rhythm disturbances, cerebrovascular accidents, increased bleeding, and even suture line disruption. In the postoperative period, deepening sedation to control a hypertensive episode may not be the best or the only possible approach, particularly if early extubation (fast tracking) is desirable.[180,181]

Several pharmacologic agents are available for use as antihypertensive agents (Box 54.10).[181] The drugs most commonly used in clinical practice are the nitrovasodilators and the dihydropyridine-type calcium channel blockers. Because of its antiischemic effects and familiarity, nitroglycerin is often the first agent used to treat hypertension in patients who have undergone coronary revascularization. However, nitroglycerin is not always effective in such patients because it primarily causes venodilation rather than arterial dilation. In addition, patients tend to develop tolerance to nitroglycerin.[181]

Because arterial vasoconstriction plays an important role in the development of hypertension after cardiac surgery, the therapeutic agent chosen should usually be one that effectively reduces this vasoconstriction. Sodium nitroprusside, a nonspecific venous and arterial vasodilator, is a common choice. Though the risks of coronary steal with nitroprusside are theoretical,[181] patients with renal failure eliminate sodium nitroprusside more slowly than normal, which makes them vulnerable to the toxic effects of this drug's metabolites (cyanide and thiocyanate).

Fenoldopam is a short-acting dopamine agonist that causes arterial-specific vasodilation by stimulating D_1-receptors. Unlike sodium nitroprusside, fenoldopam increases renal blood flow to produce diuresis and natriuresis.[182] Nevertheless, the results of most clinical trials regarding the renal protective effects of fenoldopam are equivocal. In addition, severe hypertension may require higher doses of fenoldopam, which may be associated with undesirable increases in heart rate.

Dihydropyridine-type calcium channel blockers, such as nicardipine and clevidipine, selectively relax arterial resistance vessels without negative inotropic or dromotropic (conduction) effects and cause generalized vasodilation of the renal, cerebral, intestinal, and coronary vascular beds. Recently, due to manufacturing issues with nitroprusside, the price in the U.S. has risen to several thousands of dollars. For this reason, the author's institution now uses nicardipine as a first-line drug to treat hypertension.

It is important to ensure that the patient's intraarterial pressure is monitored adequately when any vasoactive agent is administered. Vasoconstriction or poor perfusion of the extremities may create a discrepancy between central aortic and peripheral arterial pressures.

While monitoring a patient's blood pressure it is important to take note of the position of the arterial line transducer. A transducer placed lower than the mid axillary line will give artifactually high blood pressure readings. In addition, a short radial arterial catheter may be "positional" if hand positioning is suboptimal, or "dampening" of the tracing may result from poor perfusion of the distal extremities. Occasionally, during the perioperative period, the cardiac anesthesiologist or surgeon must replace a distal peripheral arterial catheter (e.g., with a femoral arterial catheter) to ensure that the effects of vasoactive therapy are monitored accurately.

Renal Insufficiency

Perioperative renal failure that necessitates dialysis occurs in approximately 2% of patients.[183] Although the definition of renal insufficiency or failure varies among studies, three useful criteria are (1) a serum creatinine level more than 44 mmol/L (>0.5 mg/dL) higher than its preoperative value, (2) a serum creatinine level more than 50% greater than its preoperative value, and (3) a serum creatinine level more than 177 mmol/L (>2.0 mg/dL).[184] Another definition of acute renal insufficiency involves a classification scheme that uses the acronym RIFLE (Table 54.8).[185]

Preoperative risk factors that are commonly associated with postoperative renal dysfunction after cardiac operations include preexisting renal insufficiency, type 1 diabetes mellitus, age older than 65 years, major vascular surgery, arteriopathy, genetic predisposition, and recent exposure to nephrotoxic agents (e.g., radiocontrast dyes, bile pigments, aminoglycoside antibiotics, and NSAIDs).[183,184] Ejaz and colleagues showed that in addition to serum creatinine, serum uric acid is a significant predictor of AKI.[186]

TABLE 54.8 RIFLE* Classification Scheme for Acute Renal Failure

	GFR Criteria	Urine Output Criteria
Risk	Plasma creatinine increased 1.5× or GFR decrease >25%	<0.5 mL/kg/h × 6 h
Injury	Plasma creatinine increased 2× or GFR decrease >50%	<0.5 mL/kg/h × 12 h
Failure	Plasma creatinine increased 3×, acute plasma creatinine ≥350 μmol/L, or acute rise ≥44 μmol/L	<0.3 mL/kg/h × 24 h or anuria × 12 h
Loss	Persistent acute renal failure = complete loss of kidney function >4 weeks	
ESKD	End-stage kidney disease (>3 months)	

*Acronym for risk, injury, failure, loss, and end-stage kidney disease.
ESKD, End-stage kidney disease; *GFR,* glomerular filtration rate.
From Kuitunen A, Vento A, Suojaranta-Ylinen R, et al. Acute renal failure after cardiac surgery: evaluation of the RIFLE classification. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81:542–546.

In addition, several intraoperative factors may predispose a patient to renal dysfunction, including the need for emergency surgery, repeat cardiac surgery, valve surgery, and a CPB time exceeding 3 hours.[183,184] Other perioperative risk factors for renal dysfunction after cardiac surgery are hypovolemia, hypotension resulting from either hypovolemia or LCOS, and embolic phenomena. Furthermore, damage to nephrons in the medullary region of the kidney results in acute tubular necrosis; hypoxia is a common cause of damage to the nephrons in this region.[184]

Postoperative renal insufficiency in cardiac surgical patients is associated with longer ICU stay, longer overall hospital stay, and increased mortality.[183,184] Thus, this disorder should be prevented whenever possible. On the basis of studies conducted in patients with radiocontrast nephropathies, investigators theorized that hydration before radiocontrast media are administered may protect the kidneys.[184] Because the mechanism of renal injury after CPB appears similar to that triggered by the administration of radiocontrast dyes, it is thought that adequate hydration and maintaining normovolemia can help to prevent postoperative renal dysfunction in cardiac surgical patients.[184]

Several treatment modalities have been suggested to prevent or ameliorate postoperative renal dysfunction (Box 54.11).[184] Basic supportive therapy involves ensuring adequate CO, perfusion pressure, and intravascular volume. Discontinuing any nephrotoxic drug (NSAIDs, certain antibiotics) is usual. Diuretics are not helpful and may be harmful.[187] Unproven pharmacologic therapies include mannitol, calcium channel blockers, ACEIs, atrial natriuretic peptide, and *N*-acetylcysteine. Finally, if dialysis is needed, continuous dialysis may be better than intermittent dialysis.[188]

Central Nervous System Dysfunction

The risk of overt postoperative stroke has decreased over the last few decades.[30] However, an increased risk of neurologic complications remains in older patients,[189] as well as in patients undergoing combined CABG and valvular heart

BOX 54.11 Aims of and Treatment Modalities to Reduce or Prevent the Development of Postoperative Renal Dysfunction

1. Maintain adequate oxygen delivery—by ensuring adequate cardiac output, adequate oxygen-carrying capacity, and proper hemoglobin saturation.
2. Suppress renovascular constriction—by ensuring adequate volume preload and use of infusions of mannitol, calcium entry blockers, and angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors.
3. Promote renal vasodilation—by dopaminergic agents, prostaglandins, and atrial natriuretic peptide.
4. Maintain renal tubular flow—by loop diuretics and mannitol (which may act to prevent tubular obstruction, which can cause cellular swelling, ischemia, and death).
5. Decrease oxygen demand—by the use of loop diuretics and mild cooling.
6. Attenuate ischemic reperfusion injury—as a result of the release of oxygen free radicals and calcium ions.

Modified from Sear JW. Kidney dysfunction in the postoperative period. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:20–32.

surgery or other complex cardiac surgical procedures.[190] Risk factors for overt neurologic complications are listed in Box 54.4. The impact of overt stroke is profound in terms of worse adjusted hospital outcomes, longer ICU and postoperative stays, and poorer downstream survival.[191]

A less well-defined entity, POCD or the newer terminology of PND, is far more common. Delirium is included in the definition of POCD, as are deficits of memory, concentration, and psychomotor speed. Early cognitive loss, once thought to be transient, may persist for 5 years after cardiac surgery in as many as 40% of patients.[192] Formerly, POCD was assumed to be caused by physiologic disturbances resulting from CPB. However, more recent studies have confirmed that POCD occurs with similar frequencies after on-pump cardiac surgery, off-pump cardiac surgery, coronary stenting, and noncardiac surgery.[193] Hence, current attention focuses on factors related to surgical stress, anesthetic agents, and patient-related predisposing factors, particularly the degree of preoperative cerebrovascular disease.[194,195] In fact, surgical procedures are likely to uncover a patient's susceptibility to cognitive loss that was already present and would eventually manifest even without surgery, usually as a result of the progression of cerebrovascular disease.[195] Although POCD is less devastating than stroke, its potential impact on quality of life and overall healthcare resource use is still profound.[196]

Neuroprotection Strategies. Numerous strategies have been tried to decrease the incidence and severity of neurologic injury in cardiac surgical patients. The most common nonpharmacologic approaches emphasize the reduction of macroemboli and microemboli. As described in earlier sections of this chapter, these strategies include avoiding aortic atheroma by using transesophageal or epiaortic echocardiography, optimizing the placement of the aortic cannula in the aorta, avoiding partial occlusion clamping of the aorta for proximal anastomoses by using a single cross-clamp, and, in selected patients, avoiding all cross-clamping of the aorta (the "no touch technique").[43,197,198] Other strategies to minimize particulate microemboli include the routine use of arterial filtration in the cardiopulmonary circuit and use of the cell saver before reinfusing blood suctioned into the cardiotomy, to remove particulate and lipid material.[199] Strategies to minimize air microemboli include carefully removing air after any procedure involving opening a cardiac chamber, and flooding the field with carbon dioxide to minimize embolism of air entrained into the heart from the surgical field.[200] Eliminating CPB by performing off-pump CABG surgery has been touted as a means to reduce emboli in selected patients, but this approach has not decreased POCD rates at 1 or 5 postoperative years.[201] Many of the late-occurring strokes are probably caused by atrial fibrillation. Early pharmacologic or electrical correction and adequate anticoagulation are mandatory (see the section on arrhythmias in the postoperative period).

Other nonpharmacologic approaches include perioperative temperature control, as well as blood gas management (α-stat or pH-stat) during hypothermic CPB. These considerations are discussed in the section on CPB.

Diabetes is recognized as a risk factor for stroke and delirium after cardiac operations.[202] Even in nondiabetic patients, hyperglycemia is extremely common during cardiac surgical procedures because of the stress response to surgery (as well as CPB), the resultant increases in circulating catecholamines and cortisol, and hypothermia-induced reductions in insulin effectiveness. Experimental evidence has revealed a relationship between hyperglycemia and worse outcome after different types of neurologic injury. However, attenuating the hyperglycemic response to cardiac surgery or CPB has proved difficult. Furthermore, concerns exist regarding inducing even a single episode of severe hypoglycemia with aggressive attempts to control glucose levels.[203] The aim of perioperative glucose control for most patients is a level between 140 and 180 mg/dL.[204]

The influence of intraoperative hemodynamics may influence neurologic and other outcomes. The prospective, randomized trial conducted by Gold and colleagues compared maintaining "normal" MAP (minimum of 50 mm Hg) with keeping the MAP elevated (target of 80-100 mm Hg).[205] These investigators found that the overall incidence of combined cardiac and neurologic complications was significantly lower in the high-MAP group. In another study,[206] investigators noted a higher frequency of hypoperfusion-type "watershed" strokes in patients who underwent cardiac surgical procedures with a MAP that was at least 10 mm Hg lower during CPB than before CPB. The current recommendation is to maintain higher targets for MAP (i.e., >50 mm Hg) in patients at high risk for neurologic injury. Because high-risk patients can be identified and a defined therapeutic window exists, pharmacologic protection would be very desirable. However, no definitively proven drug therapy currently exists for the prevention or treatment of neurologic injury after cardiac surgery.

Cerebral oximetry has been proposed to be of benefit in preventing neurologic injury in cardiac surgery, but the evidence is still lacking in this regard.

Postoperative Management of Central Nervous System Injury or Dysfunction. Postoperative stroke may be suggested by the patient's inability to follow commands or move all extremities shortly after the surgical procedure. Neurologic consultation should be obtained, including diagnostic imaging. Diffusion-weighted magnetic resonance imaging is the most sensitive and accurate imaging technique for postoperative cardiac surgical patients.[207] It detects more microembolic lesions than does conventional magnetic resonance imaging and is better able to find multiple watershed lesions.

Management of CNS injury or dysfunction after cardiac operations consists of general supportive measures. Hypotension should be avoided, and consideration should be given to using volume expansion, inotropic augmentation (pharmacologic or mechanical), or vasoactive medications (vasopressin or phenylephrine) to support blood pressure and brain perfusion. The brain oxygen supply-demand balance should be optimized through adequate oxygenation, sedation, and strict temperature control. Hyperthermia (fever) should be aggressively controlled. Both hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia should be avoided. Lytic therapy is of little use in cardiac surgery because it poses a risk of postoperative surgical bleeding.

POCD can manifest subtly, being evident only with psychometric testing, or, at the other extreme, it can manifest as postoperative delirium. *Delirium* is defined as an acute and overt change in cognition and attention, which may include alterations in consciousness and disorganized thinking.[208] In the cardiac surgical literature, the reported incidence of delirium depends greatly on the methods used for delirium assessment, varying from 3% (chart review only) to 8% (interviews with nurses); however, with rigorous daily mental status testing and the application of a validated diagnostic algorithm, the incidence may be as high as 53%.[209]

Risk factors include preexisting cognitive impairment, poor preoperative functional status, prior stroke or transient ischemic attack, depression, alcohol abuse, and abnormal preoperative laboratory values (glucose, sodium, potassium, and albumin).[208] Precipitating factors for delirium in the postoperative period include intraoperative and postoperative medications, particularly sedatives and analgesics. The postoperative environment in the ICU often results in sleep deprivation and overstimulation, contributing to the onset of delirium.[208] Complications of hospitalization and surgical procedures, including those that result in prolonged controlled ventilation and reduced mobility, also contribute to the development and severity of delirium.

Nonpharmacologic postoperative strategies to prevent delirium are listed in Table 54.9.[208] Medications, including those used to control pain and anxiety, are a common cause. Debate continues in the literature for a better drug to minimize the incidence of delirium between benzodiazepines and dexmedetomidine. For patients who develop agitation, the mainstay of treatment is a thorough review of medications, as well as removing other precipitating factors, such as low CO or perfusion state, metabolic disorders (e.g., hyperglycemia), fluid and electrolyte disturbances (hypoglycemia or hyperglycemia and uremia), constipation, urinary retention, and environmental noise. For patients in whom these nonpharmacologic interventions are not sufficient, an antipsychotic, usually haloperidol, is considered first-line therapy for agitation associated with delirium.

TABLE 54.9 Prevention of Delirium after Surgical Procedures

Module	Postoperative Interventions
Cognitive stimulation	Orientation (clock, calendar, orientation board) Avoidance of cognitively active medications
Improvement in sensory input	Glasses Hearing aids and amplifiers
Mobilization	Early mobilization and rehabilitation
Avoidance of psychoactive medication	Elimination of unnecessary medications Pain management protocol
Fluid and nutrition	Fluid management Electrolyte monitoring and repletion Adequate nutrition protocol
Avoidance of hospital complications	Bowel protocol Early removal of urinary catheters Adequate central nervous system oxygen delivery, including supplemental oxygen and transfusion for very low hematocrit Postoperative complication monitoring protocol

Modified from Rudolph JL, Marcantonio ER. Postoperative delirium: acute change with long-term implications. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1202–1211.

Delirium may accelerate cognitive decline in patients with Alzheimer disease or cause a type of posttraumatic stress disorder in younger patients.[208] The long-term mental health implications of delirium have not been fully studied but may include impairment of functional recovery.

Peripheral Nerve Injuries. Peripheral nerve injuries are not uncommon in cardiac surgical patients and are often self-limited. These are the result of positioning of the upper extremities with inadequate padding of the ulnar nerve. In addition, the brachial plexus is also prone to injury from excessive stretch by the sternal retractor. Usual presenting symptoms are numbness, weakness, pain, decreased reflexes, and diminished coordination.

Phrenic nerve, recurrent laryngeal nerve, and sympathetic chain injuries have also been reported. Saphenous nerve injury during saphenous vein harvesting is also known to have been reported.

Respiratory Insufficiency

Respiratory failure is a very common complication of cardiac surgery. Pulmonary complications that arise immediately after CPB vary from mild to severe and include atelectasis, bronchospasm, hemothorax, pneumothorax, endobronchial intubation, mucus plugs or blood clots in the endotracheal tube, pulmonary edema, and pulmonary dysfunction that varies from a mild increase in the alveolar-arterial oxygen gradient to a form of adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) known as postperfusion lung syndrome.[210] Atelectasis is a common cause of decreased arterial oxygenation in the postbypass period because during CPB either the lungs are not ventilated or very small tidal volumes are used. During controlled ventilation, it is common to apply positive end-expiratory pressure after CPB and in the immediate postoperative period.

Hemothorax is caused by the accumulation in the pleural cavity of blood and clot, which should be surgically removed before chest closure. Pneumothorax may result from entry of the pleural cavity during dissection of the IMA or from excessive positive-pressure ventilation of the lungs. Pneumothorax may not manifest until after chest closure; it is treated by inserting a chest tube. Endobronchial intubation may occur when the patient's head is partially hidden from the anesthesiologist's view. The expansion of both lungs should be confirmed during initial full ventilation before weaning from CPB, when the chest is open, so that a good view of both lungs may be obtained. If any blood or mucus is present in the endotracheal tube, it should be suctioned during and after weaning from CPB.

More severe postoperative respiratory insufficiency that causes difficulty in ventilator weaning may reflect intrinsic pulmonary problems such as CPB-related acute lung injury, transfusion-related acute lung injury, or cardiogenic pulmonary edema. Patients with marginal cardiac function may require diuresis, afterload reduction, or inotropy in order to assist with weaning from mechanical ventilation.

Preoperative efforts to minimize pulmonary complications after cardiac surgery include optimizing pulmonary function for patients undergoing elective surgical procedures.

In previous decades, critical care management after cardiac surgery included overnight mechanical ventilation, which today would be considered "prolonged ventilation." It is clinically important to have a period of controlled ventilation to allow rewarming and emergence from anesthesia, optimize cardiac function, and ensure hemodynamic stability and the absence of bleeding. However, many patients are currently removed from mechanical ventilation within 3 to 6 hours of arriving in the postoperative care unit (fast tracking), if appropriate criteria have been met (see Box 54.11).[211]

In planning for fast tracking, it is important to limit the use of narcotics and muscle relaxants during the surgery to a minimum and that administration be timed appropriately.

A majority of patients undergoing cardiac surgery indeed are extubated within a few hours of reaching the ICU. Multiple risk factors are responsible for prolonged intubation in patients that do require prolonged ventilator support. These factors include emergency procedures, low preoperative LVEF, advanced age, preoperative renal compromise, prolonged aortic cross-clamp time, hyperglycemia, recent MI, current smoking, and FEV_1 of less than 70% predicted.[211,212]

Pulmonary-related reasons for the inability to wean from mechanical ventilation include noncardiogenic pulmonary edema, pneumonia, severe COPD, ARDS, and pulmonary embolism. Nonpulmonary complications such as persistent postoperative bleeding, neurologic complications (including stroke and delirium), renal insufficiency or failure, gastrointestinal complications, and sepsis also may result in a need for prolonged mechanical ventilation. In a large study of ventilator dependency (i.e., ventilation for >72 hours) after cardiac surgery, survival was 76% at 30 days, 49% at 1 year, and 33% at 5 years.[213]

Furthermore, strategies to avoid ventilator-associated pneumonia should be employed. These include formal infection control programs, handwashing, maintaining adequate endotracheal tube cuff pressure, avoiding gastric overdistention, semirecumbent positioning of the patient, scheduled drainage of condensate from ventilator circuits, daily sedation "vacation," adequate nutritional support, early removal of endotracheal and nasogastric tubes, and avoiding unnecessary reintubation.[210,211]

Pain management should be included in postoperative efforts to minimize pulmonary complications. Sternotomy pain may limit the patient's ability to cough and perform deep breathing exercises, and incisional leg pain resulting from saphenous vein harvesting may prevent early ambulation, thus increasing the risk of pulmonary complications. The reader is referred to the later section on pain after cardiac surgery for other options for improving postoperative pain control and thereby minimizing splinting and complications such as lobar collapse, pneumonia, and increased duration of hospitalization.

Metabolic Disturbances

Metabolic disturbances after CPB can be highly varied and include derangements in the levels of calcium, potassium, magnesium, abnormal glucose metabolism, and alterations in urine output and temperature control.

Electrolyte Imbalance. After CPB, levels of calcium, potassium, and magnesium are usually lower due to hemodilution. Hypocalcemia can occur after CPB, particularly in bleeding patients who are receiving multiple blood transfusions with large amounts of citrate. This phenomenon is exacerbated by hypothermia and low-output states. Hypocalcemia should be corrected because it may reduce cardiac contractility. Routine administration of calcium is not encouraged however,[214] due to the possibility of reperfusion injury and possible spasm of the IMA graft.[214,215] There is also a possibility of decreased ventricular wall compliance and an acute rise in SVR as a result of a bolus dose of calcium.[216] The most commonly used agent for replenishment of calcium is 10% calcium chloride, given in small doses while monitoring the patient's blood pressure.

Hypokalemia in the immediate postbypass period is seen secondary to either diuretic therapy, mannitol therapy, or to insulin therapy for control of glucose during surgery. If an insulin infusion is used during CPB to control glucose, it is recommended that careful and frequent monitoring of glucose and potassium take place. Generally, insulin needs are less toward the end of CPB and the infusion rate can be decreased during this time to avoid hypoglycemia and hypokalemia. Depending on the level of potassium, replenishment may be needed and should be performed, as the post-CPB myocardium is exquisitely sensitive to hypokalemia. Hypokalemia contributes to increased automaticity and may lead to atrial or ventricular arrhythmias. Therefore, hypokalemia should be corrected by the carefully monitored administration of potassium through an infusion pump at a rate of 10 to 20 mEq/h, with frequent measurement of potassium, as well as glucose and arterial blood gases.

Hyperkalemia is another possibility in the postbypass period. Common etiologies can be secondary to impaired renal function or cardioplegia administration during CPB. Occasionally, hyperkalemia is severe enough to interfere with conduction. Usual strategies to counter hyperkalemia (hyperventilation, insulin, bicarbonate, diuresis, calcium) are effective in restoring potassium to normal levels.

Magnesium levels may also be low in the post-CPB period. Usual etiologies include hemodilution with magnesium-free fluids or diuresis; the presentation may be new dysrhythmias, ventricular dysfunction, or ischemia. If hypomagnesemia is suspected, and a magnesium level cannot be obtained in a short period of time, it is recommended that magnesium be replaced in the dose of 1 to 2 grams over 15 minutes.[217] Many centers routinely administer 2 to 4 g of magnesium during weaning or after CPB in an attempt to minimize the incidence of ventricular and atrial arrhythmias.

Hyperglycemia. Hyperglycemia is extremely common after CPB (see the earlier section on the endocrine system). Poor perioperative glycemic control in patients undergoing CABG is associated with increased morbidity and mortality.[218] In patients with diabetes, maintaining serum glucose less than or equal to 180 mg/dL during CABG reduces morbidity and mortality, lowers the incidence of wound infections, reduces hospital length of stay, and enhances long-term survival. In nondiabetic patients undergoing CABG surgery, maintaining serum glucose at less than 180 mg/dL has also improved perioperative outcomes. Current recommendations from the STS are to maintain a blood glucose of less than 180 mg/dL[219,220] in the early postoperative period and at less than 150 mg/dL in patients who require more than 3 days of ICU care as a result of ventilator dependency, the need for inotropes, mechanical device support, antiarrhythmic drugs, or renal replacement therapy.[218] There has been considerable debate over how tight to control blood glucose in these patients. Poor control has been linked with adverse outcomes, yet tight control of glucose was shown to cause a significant rise in the incidence of stroke in cardiac surgical patients[219] and was more prone to cause hypoglycemia consequences.

Treatment strategies for the control of glucose vary from institution to institution. Often an insulin infusion is started during the surgery with close monitoring of the blood glucose. If an insulin infusion is used, it is important that it be reduced as CPB is terminated so as to avoid hypoglycemia that may occur after CPB is weaned. Intravenous insulin boluses can also be used in addition to or instead of an infusion. In addition, since insulin causes potassium to migrate from the extracellular to the intracellular space, potassium should be carefully monitored and hypokalemia avoided.

Urine Output. Urine output can vary in the intraoperative period. This could be secondary to multiple factors. Normal or high urine output can occur in patients because they have adequate renal blood flow or in patients with compromised renal blood flow but in whom diuretic therapy has been administered. In oliguric patients, the differential diagnosis includes hypovolemia, hypoperfusion, or ischemic renal injury. In order to monitor renal function, we monitor the urine output frequently and communicate any prolonged decrease in urine output to the perfusionist and the surgical team so that timely steps can be taken to improve. Preservation of renal function is critically important in the cardiac surgery patient since adverse renal outcomes are associated with increased morbidity in the postoperative period.

Hypothermia. Although cardiac surgical patients are weaned from CPB after an appropriate period of rewarming and when the patient's temperature is close to 37°C, a drop in temperature is observed in the post-CPB period, called "afterdrop."[221] Hypothermia can lead to myocardial dysfunction, coagulopathy, and delayed metabolism of medications.

In order to prevent hypothermia, measures can be taken to prevent the afterdrop commonly seen after the patient is successfully separated from CPB. Careful monitoring of temperature is employed and measures that can be employed include the use of warm fluids, a forced air warming blanket, and raising the room temperature.

Pain

Pain after cardiac surgery can have many sources, including the sternotomy incision, chest tubes, vascular cannulation sites, and leg incisions (see also Chapter 81).[222] Chest surgical procedures through thoracotomy are especially debilitating because of pain and consequent respiratory dysfunction.[223] Some of the deleterious effects of postoperative pain after cardiac surgery are caused by the stress response and resultant inflammation and enhanced sympathetic tone, which can increase the heart rate, PVR, myocardial work, and myocardial oxygen consumption, all leading to myocardial ischemia.

Pain after cardiac surgical procedures can also cause respiratory complications related to diaphragmatic dysfunction. Moreover, the patient's pain may cause voluntary reduction of muscular movement in the thorax and abdomen, a phenomenon often described as "splinting," which may interfere with the patient's ability to cough and clear secretions. However, at present, evidence to state definitively that any postoperative analgesic technique significantly affects morbidity or mortality after cardiac surgery is insufficient.[224]

Unrelieved pain does have psychological effects. Pain-related anxiety, depression, and sleep deprivation may contribute to delirium in patients in the intensive care setting. A primary benefit of effective pain control is patient satisfaction. So-called fast-track anesthesia, entailing earlier extubation, a relatively brief stay in the ICU, faster discharge from the hospital, and lower overall cost, has become a standard of care for the cardiac anesthesiologist. Effective pain control probably helps achieve these goals.

Opioids remain the gold standard for pain control after cardiac surgery, but these drugs have side effects that include nausea, vomiting, urinary retention, decreased gastric motility, pruritus, sedation, and respiratory depression. A meta-analysis showed small incremental benefits for morphine analgesia that was patient controlled compared with nurse controlled in the treatment of postoperative pain after cardiac surgery.[225]

Intrathecal and epidural local anesthetics and narcotics have increasingly been used to improve analgesia in patients undergoing cardiac surgical procedures. However, neither meta-analyses nor randomized trials of central neuraxial analgesia in cardiac surgical patients have shown that these techniques improve outcome.[226,227] Nevertheless, in some studies, thoracic epidural analgesia did significantly reduce pain and the risk for dysrhythmias, pulmonary complications, and time to tracheal extubation, and it reduced analog pain scores at rest and with activity. A major concern with the use of intrathecal, and particularly epidural, analgesia in cardiac surgery is the administration of anticoagulation during the operation and consequent fear of spinal cord damage from a possible epidural hematoma,[227] although the incidence is reported to be rare. Other techniques include the use of bilateral single-shot paravertebral blocks[228] or intercostal nerve blocks followed by a subcutaneous continuous infusion of local anesthetic agents.[229]

Because all analgesics have side effects, some authors have suggested that it is better to use combinations of drugs or techniques (i.e., multimodal analgesia; see also Chapter 72). Although a multimodal approach to pain control after cardiac surgery is advocated, use of cyclooxygenase-2-selective inhibitors and nonselective NSAIDs remains contraindicated after cardiac surgery because of risk of thromboembolic events.[230]

Bleeding and Coagulopathy

Although inadequate surgical hemostasis is a common reason for blood loss after CPB, coagulopathy resulting from excessive contact activation, platelet dysfunction, and fibrinolysis can occur and must be excluded. Historically, the most common causes of excessive bleeding in cardiac surgical patients have been related to platelet activation, platelet consumption, and hyperfibrinolysis induced by the extracorporeal circuit. Despite the use of high-dose heparin, thrombin generation remains ongoing during CPB. This results in microvascular coagulation and fibrinolysis and has deleterious effects on platelet function.[231] In the current era, viscoelastic testing can be employed to help differentiate the causes of post-CPB bleeding among themselves and to distinguish coagulopathy from surgical sources of bleeding.

Patients who are taking antithrombotic or anticoagulant medication before cardiac operations constitute yet another subset of patients at risk for post-CPB bleeding. When possible, information should be obtained preoperatively about the degree of platelet inhibition so that if a patient is bleeding after CPB, the degree to which anti-platelet drug therapy may be a factor can be ascertained.[232] Chen and Teruya found that preoperative testing of platelet function using one POC platelet function monitor can identify patients at highest risk for perioperative bleeding; other monitors of platelet function can be used similarly.[233]

An evidence-based approach to the diagnosis and treatment of residual post-CPB microvascular bleeding entails the timely detection and treatment of specific causes of coagulopathy.[234] Patients with postoperative bleeding benefit from POC testing incorporated into a transfusion algorithm that uses pharmacologic and transfusion therapies. Algorithms are designed to minimize unnecessary and indiscriminate blood product transfusion.[235-237]

Transfusion to treat coagulopathy or anemia is sometimes indicated, but it carries a cost in terms of healthcare resources and patients' outcomes. A study of more than 1900 cardiac surgical patients found that patients who received transfusions had a 70% increased risk of death and a doubling of their 5-year mortality rate, after adjustment for comorbidities, compared with patients who received no transfusions.[77] A multinational study showed that differences in transfusion practices among countries may account for differences in outcomes.[238] A study of 10,000 patients who underwent CABG from the Cleveland Clinic database confirmed the association of transfusion with early and late (i.e., 10-year) mortality; this study used a balancing score to account for confounding.[239] In addition, Marik and Corwin performed a meta-analysis of 45 trials that examined complications of transfusion therapy and found that mortality was increased in transfused patients (odds ratio, 1.7, 95% confidence interval, 1.4-1.9).[240.]

Guidelines and Recommendations. The STS and the SCA published a joint statement in 2007 and an update in 2011 regarding practice guidelines for transfusion and blood conservation in cardiac surgery.[77,241] They noted six factors that appear to be important predictors of blood product transfusion in cardiac surgery:

1. Advanced age
2. Low preoperative RBC volume (i.e., preoperative anemia or low body surface area)
3. Preoperative antiplatelet or antithrombotic medications
4. Complex or redo operation
5. Emergency operation
6. Noncardiac comorbidities

The Task Force gave specific recommendations on blood conservation that included the following five points[241]:

1. Consideration should be given to the use of drugs that either increase preoperative blood volume (e.g., erythropoietin) or decrease postoperative bleeding (e.g., antifibrinolytic drugs).
2. Techniques of conserving blood, including cell saver sequestration and retrograde priming of the pump, should be included in the operative plan.
3. To spare the patient's blood from the insult of CPB, normovolemic hemodilution or platelet-rich plasmapheresis can be considered.
4. Institutions should implement transfusion algorithms supported with POC testing.
5. A multimodal application of all of the previously mentioned guidelines is the best way to conserve blood.

These recommendations are parallel to and completely congruous with the tenets of patient blood management, which is a novel approach to blood transfusion that focuses on patient-centered therapies. The three pillars of patient blood management are as follows:

1. Preoperative optimization of RBC mass
2. Perioperative minimization of RBC loss
3. Perioperative optimal treatment of anemia

Definition of Bleeding and Transfusion Triggers. The decision to transfuse the cardiac surgical patient is one that should be made with great caution and careful consideration because allogeneic transfusion has several associated risks. The excessively bleeding patient who has a surgical source of bleeding should be carefully assessed, and often, allogeneic blood products are required to maintain hemoglobin and the integrity of hemostasis until the source of bleeding is found. Patients who have excessive microvascular bleeding from a coagulopathic cause should have careful testing of the hemostatic system, usually with POC monitoring, to assess which blood products or pharmacologic products are needed. The problem in defining a trigger for transfusion is the ambiguity of the definition of bleeding. Many sources state that excessive chest tube drainage can be defined as more than 250 mL of bleeding per hour for at least 2 consecutive hours, or 300 mL of bleeding in a single hour. In addition to defining the severity of bleeding, these criteria also often help clinicians determine whether to return the patient to the operating room for surgical exploration.

Knowing when to transfuse RBCs is equally challenging because the triggers for transfusion often rely on hemoglobin level, which is a poor surrogate for tissue oxygen delivery. It is well known that cardiac surgery and CPB are associated with anemia, which poses certain risks.[242] These risks include renal failure,[243] other end-organ morbidity, and even mortality,[244] all of which have been demonstrated observationally in well-designed multivariate analyses. However, the lowest tolerable hemoglobin level clearly differs among patient populations and remains ill-defined in the literature. Nevertheless, the STS/SCA guidelines for blood conservation provide a framework for transfusion triggers within which most patients are treated appropriately. These triggers include a hemoglobin level of at least 6 g/dL during CPB and 6 to 7 g/dL before and after CPB.[241] However, underlying comorbidities can and do raise the minimum safe hemoglobin or hematocrit level.

If only standard laboratory testing is available, monitoring the coagulopathic patient in the operating room is limited to monitoring hemoglobin concentration, prothrombin time or international normalized ratio, activated PTT, platelet count, and levels of fibrinogen and fibrin degradation products. These parameters are of limited utility in the post-CPB patient because they do not interrogate platelet function and because their turnaround time is too slow to allow timely initiation of therapy. For these reasons, without POC testing of hemostasis, transfusion therapy is often initiated empirically and indiscriminately.

The platelet count provides quantitative information about platelet concentrations but little, if any, qualitative information about platelet function. Even platelet counts lower than 50,000/μL do not correlate with postoperative bleeding. Laboratory measures of platelet function, including bleeding time, aggregometry, and cytometry, are not rapid (requiring > 1 hour to produce results) and therefore are impractical for obtaining timely information intraoperatively. When unacceptable microvascular bleeding occurs, no matter what the platelet count, CPB-induced platelet dysfunction is often assumed to be the culprit; however, platelet function can now be measured at the point of care.

POC monitors may be able to provide more timely information about the coagulation cascade than can laboratory measures and to assess the dynamic nature of platelet function sequentially. Such monitors are designed to test segments of the hemostatic system. The viscoelastic tests are dynamic measures of whole blood clot formation and can measure platelet integrity and the strength of the platelet-fibrinogen bond. These tests include thromboelastography (TEG; Haemonetics, Braintree, MA), Sonoclot (Sienco, Arvada, CO), and rotational thromboelastometry (ROTEM; Tem Innovations GmbH, Munich, Germany). The response of platelets to an agonist stimulus is another means of measuring platelet function. Platelet function can be measured at the point of care in this manner by the Platelet Function Analyzer-100 (PFA-100; Siemens Healthcare, Malvern, PA), Plateletworks (Helena Laboratories, Beaumont, TX), VerifyNow (Accriva Diagnostics, San Diego, CA), and the Multiplate analyzer (Roche Diagnostics, Rotkreuz, Switzerland).[244] POC monitors have also shown promise in stratifying bleeding risk for patients who come to the operating room after receiving antithrombotic drugs, such as clopidogrel, prasugrel, or Gp IIb/IIIa receptor inhibitors.[245-249] Finally, POC monitors provide data to support the implementation of institutional policies and practices directed at blood conservation and transfusion in cardiac surgical patients.[241]

POINT-OF-CARE ALGORITHMS. The STS/SCA blood conservation guidelines strongly encourage multimodal efforts to reduce transfusion rates and conserve blood products (see also Chapters 49 to 50). Studies that used transfusion algorithms paired with POC data to guide therapy have found these measures to be both efficacious and cost effective.[76,241] Examples of standard POC algorithms, one using the TEG and one using the ROTEM, are shown in Figs. 54.12 and 54.13, respectively. Algorithms can be constructed to incorporate any particular dynamic POC monitor or monitors.[250-256] Studies that have incorporated many different varieties of POC tests have generally shown a reduction in or even the

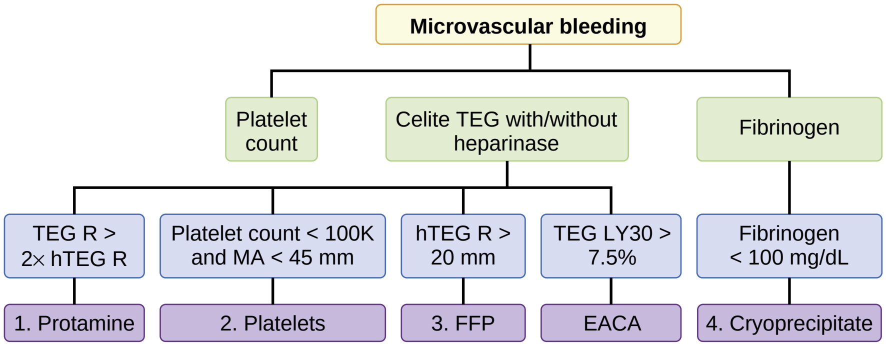


Fig. 54.12 Algorithm for transfusion requirements in the thromboelastography *(TEG)* group in a study. Once bleeding was diagnosed, patients received transfusions based on the results of tests in the algorithm. Based on the assumption that bleeding is often platelet related and on the finding that the platelet count and TEG results return promptly, therapy was given in the numbered order of priority. *EACA*, ε-Aminocaproic acid; *FFP*, fresh-frozen plasma; *hTEG*, heparinase-activated TEG; *LY30*, lysis index at 30 minutes; *MA*, maximum amplitude; *R*, reaction time. (From Shore-Lesserson L, Manspeizer H, DePerio M, et al. Thromboelastography-guided transfusion algorithm reduces transfusions in complex cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg.* 1999;88:312–319.)

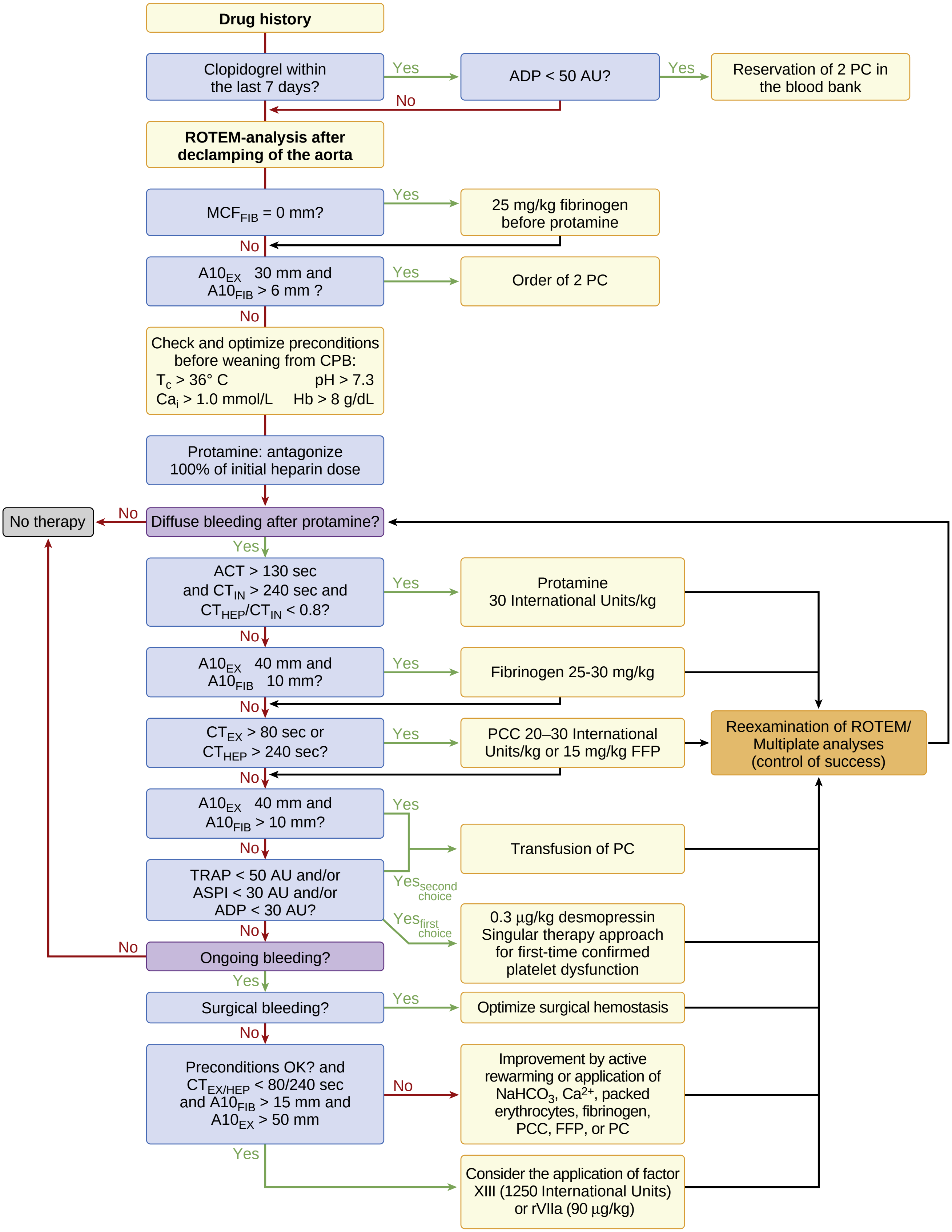

Drug history
Clopidogrel within the last 7 days?
Yes
ADP < 50 AU?
Yes
Reservation of 2 PC in the blood bank
No
ROTEM-analysis after declamping of the aorta
MCF_{FIB} = 0 mm?
Yes
25 mg/kg fibrinogen before protamine
No
$A10_{EX}$ 30 mm and $A10_{FIB}$ > 6 mm ?
Yes
Order of 2 PC
No
Check and optimize preconditions before weaning from CPB:
T_c > 36° C
pH > 7.3
Ca_i > 1.0 mmol/L
Hb > 8 g/dL
Protamine: antagonize 100% of initial heparin dose
No therapy
No
Diffuse bleeding after protamine?
Yes
ACT > 130 sec and CT_{IN} > 240 sec and CT_{HEP}/CT_{IN} < 0.8?
Yes
Protamine 30 International Units/kg
No
$A10_{EX}$ 40 mm and $A10_{FIB}$ 10 mm?
Yes
Fibrinogen 25-30 mg/kg
No
CT_{EX} > 80 sec or CT_{HEP} > 240 sec?
Yes
PCC 20–30 International Units/kg or 15 mg/kg FFP
Reexamination of ROTEM/ Multiplate analyses (control of success)
No
$A10_{EX}$ 40 mm and $A10_{FIB}$ > 10 mm?
Yes
Transfusion of PC
No
TRAP < 50 AU and/or ASPI < 30 AU and/or ADP < 30 AU?
Yes second choice
Yes first choice
0.3 µg/kg desmopressin Singular therapy approach for first-time confirmed platelet dysfunction
No
No
Ongoing bleeding?
Yes
Surgical bleeding?
Yes
Optimize surgical hemostasis
No
Preconditions OK? and $CT_{EX/HEP}$ < 80/240 sec and $A10_{FIB}$ > 15 mm and $A10_{EX}$ > 50 mm
No
Improvement by active rewarming or application of $NaHCO_3$, Ca^{2+}, packed erythrocytes, fibrinogen, PCC, FFP, or PC
Yes
Consider the application of factor XIII (1250 International Units) or rVIIa (90 µg/kg)

Fig. 54.13 Hemostatic therapy algorithm using point-of-care testing. *ACT*, Activated clotting time; *ADP*, ADPtest; *ASPI*, *ASPitest*; *AU*, aggregation unit; *A10*, amplitude of clot firmness 10 minutes after clotting time; *Ca^{2+}*, calcium; *Cai*, ionized calcium; *CPB*, cardiopulmonary bypass; *CT*, clotting time; *EX*, EXTEM; *FFP*, fresh frozen plasma; *FIB*, FIBTEM; *Hb*, hemoglobin concentration; *HEP*, HEPTEM; *IN*, INTEM; *MCF*, maximum clot firmness; *$NaHCO_3$*, sodium bicarbonate; *PC*, pooled platelet concentrate; *PCC*, prothrombin complex concentrate; *TRAP*, TRAPtest. The manufacturers of *ROTEM* (rotational thromboelastometry) and Multiplate were Tem International GmbH and Verum Diagnostica GmbH, respectively, both of Munich, Germany. (From Weber CF, Gorlinger K, Meininger D, et al. Point-of-care testing: a prospective, randomized clinical trial of efficacy in coagulopathic cardiac surgery patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:531-547.)

elimination of transfusions when POC is used.[254] As a general recommendation, the POC instrument or instruments used should be able to measure some aspect of platelet function. The viscoelastic test in the TEG measures both platelet function and the platelet response to ADP and arachidonic acid. Many TEG-guided and ROTEM-guided algorithms have been studied and shown to reduce blood product use effectively in cardiac surgery-related hemorrhage. A more recent approach to POC algorithm includes using ROTEM and an algorithm that includes early treatment with fibrinogen and PCCs (see Fig. 54.13).[257] This sort of approach to bleeding postpones the moment when allogeneic blood products are needed and thus has been successful in reducing allogeneic blood product usage. Preliminary work suggests that no increase in thrombotic events occurs with this "pharmacologic" approach to bleeding, but more large-scale studies need to be conducted before safety can be confirmed.

Pharmacologic Treatment. Pharmacologic drugs used for hemostasis in CPB are used both prophylactically to prevent hyperfibrinolysis and therapeutically to treat bleeding. Antifibrinolytic drugs are used before CPB to prevent the inevitable activation of fibrinolysis and coagulation that result from contact between blood and the extracorporeal circuit. The STS/SCA guidelines provide the strongest evidence-based support (class I) for the use of synthetic antifibrinolytic agents in blood conservation.

In structural terms, the synthetic antifibrinolytic agents are lysine analogues. They bind to plasminogen and plasmin, thus inhibiting their ability to bind to lysine residues on fibrin and thereby impeding fibrinolysis. The two synthetic antifibrinolytic agents that are used clinically are EACA (Amicar) and TA. They differ primarily in potency and elimination half-life: TA is 6 to 10 times more potent and has a longer half-life than EACA.[258]

Dose regimens for the synthetic antifibrinolytic agents are anything but standardized. Generally, the dose of EACA is a 50- to 150-mg/kg load followed by an infusion of 15 to 25 mg/kg/h; the dose of TA may be a 10- to 30-mg/kg load followed by an infusion of 1 to 15 mg/kg/h. However, many other dosing strategies are described in the literature.[259-264]

Because both EACA and TA are renally excreted, they should not be given to patients with upper urinary tract bleeding; the concentration of the drug in the renal collection system could cause thrombosis and obstructive nephropathy.[265]

Aprotinin as an antifibrinolytic agent was used as a routine part of perioperative care in cardiac surgical patients until 2006, when published reports suggested adverse outcomes that had not been found in previous randomized controlled studies.[119,266] After several observational studies confirmed these adverse outcomes and a single randomized controlled trial suggested an increase in mortality associated with aprotinin, the FDA and other global agencies suspended the marketing of aprotinin.[120]

Other pharmacologic drugs that may be used in cardiac surgical bleeding are mentioned in the STS/SCA Task Force guideline update.[76] Using desmopressin was classified as "not unreasonable" in patients with characteristics known to be responsive to desmopressin (von Willebrand factor or factor VIII deficiencies, cirrhosis, aspirin use, and uremic platelet dysfunction).[241] Desmopressin is administered in doses of 0.3 to 0.4 μg/kg, which are usually given slowly over 20 to 30 minutes to reduce the drug's propensity to cause hypotension. The use of recombinant factor VIIa (factor rVIIa) was reevaluated, but the published class IIb recommendation was unchanged in the update.[76] Factor VIIa use was classified as "not unreasonable" for treating intractable life-threatening hemorrhage that is unresponsive to traditional therapies.[241] A multicenter randomized trial in cardiac surgery found that patients treated with factor rVIIa had less bleeding than did control patients; however, a nonsignificant trend toward increased adverse events in the treated patients caused the study to be halted and the recommendations to proceed with caution when considering administration of this drug.[267] Prophylactic use of factor rVIIa is not recommended in cardiac surgery.

The PCCs have evolved into a more common treatment for coagulation factor deficiencies after CPB. 4-factor PCCs that were originally marketed either for hemophilia or for warfarin reversal have been used "off-label" in transfusion algorithms in bleeding cardiac surgical patients.[257]

In summary, interdisciplinary approaches to blood conservation are vital to the care of cardiac surgical patients. Perioperative and critical care personnel must use a series of combined approaches to reduce transfusions and the adverse effects of transfusion and anemia. Important to this approach is a sound algorithmic procedure that incorporates POC testing, pharmacology, and rational blood product use to improve outcomes.

Cardiopulmonary Bypass

CPB is a form of extracorporeal (*extra* = "outside of," *corporeal* = "the body") circulation (ECC) in which the patient's blood is rerouted outside the vascular system, and the function of the heart, the lungs, and, to a lesser extent, the kidneys is temporarily assumed by surrogate technology. The circuitry and equipment used to facilitate this substitution are topics of the next section of this chapter.

CIRCUITRY AND EQUIPMENT

The most common and most complicated ECC procedure is CPB. The goal of CPB is to provide a motionless and bloodless field for the surgeon by rerouting the patient's entire CO around both the heart and the lungs. Other ECC techniques include left heart bypass (LHB), cardiopulmonary support (CPS), and extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO).

The pumps, tubing, artificial organs, and monitoring systems used in CPB are diagrammed in Fig. 54.14. Simply stated, venous blood is intercepted as it returns to the right atrium and is diverted through the *venous line* of the CPB circuit to a *venous reservoir*. The *arterial pump* functions as an artificial heart by withdrawing blood from the reservoir and propelling it through a *heat exchanger*, an artificial lung (the *oxygenator*), and an *arterial line filter* before returning it through the *arterial line* to the patient's arterial system. Additional pumps and components are used to assist in the operation to manage shed blood (the *pump sucker*), decompress the heart *(vent)*, and deliver the *cardioplegia solution*.

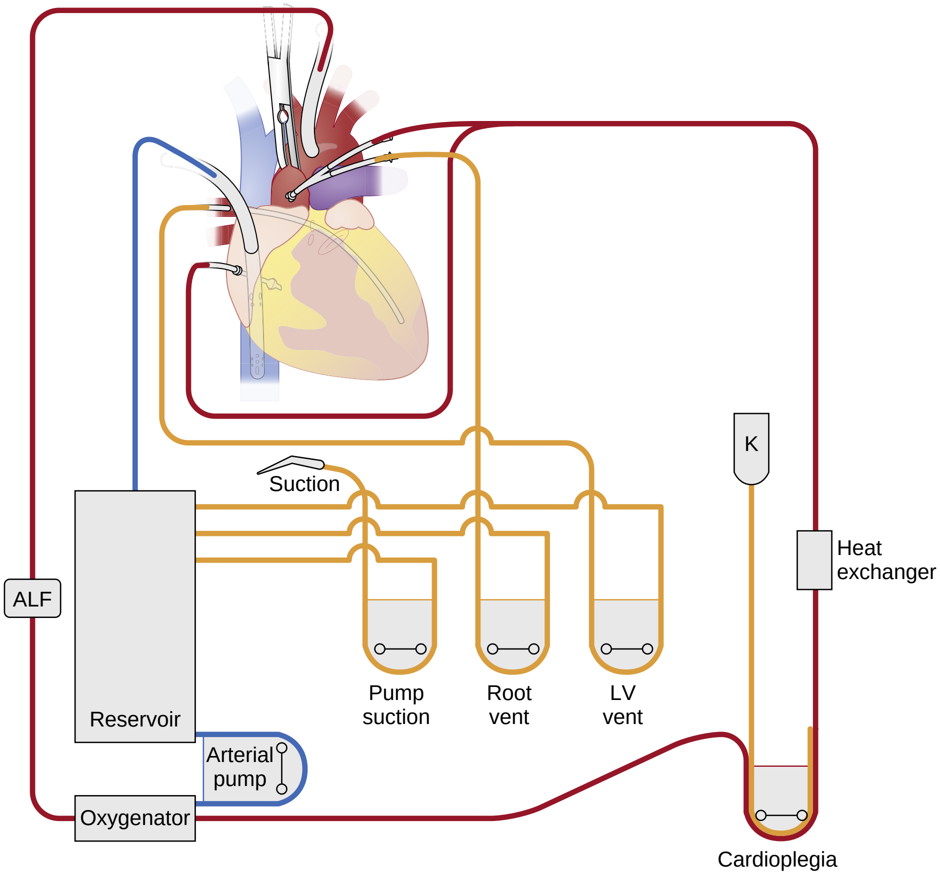


Fig. 54.14 A typical cardiopulmonary bypass circuit interfaced with a patient. *ALF,* Arterial line filter; *K,* potassium; *LV,* left ventricular.

Blood Tubing

The tubing used to connect the various components and conduct blood into and out of the patient's vascular system is medical-grade polyvinyl chloride. For decades, the blood-tubing interface was untreated polyvinyl chloride. However, the newer generation of polyvinyl chloride tubing has surface coatings and other modifications that significantly alter the bioreactivity of the surface. Collectively, these coatings have been shown to reduce plasma levels of markers of subclinical coagulation, attenuate the increase of cytokines and other inflammatory markers, and shorten intubation times.[268-270]

Venous Reservoirs

Blood reservoirs perform an important function in the conduct of CPB by facilitating the displacement of a large volume of blood out of the circulation at strategic times during the operation. Positioned between the venous line and the arterial pump, blood reservoirs may be collapsible plastic bags or clear plastic hard-shelled containers. Hard-shelled reservoirs include an integral filtration mechanism with a screen and depth filters through which blood must pass before leaving the outlet of the vessel. Almost universally, hard-shelled reservoirs have integrated positive- and negative-pressure release valves, which are necessary for the application of vacuum to the reservoir to augment venous drainage. If vacuum-assisted venous drainage is employed, the vacuum pressure in the reservoir should be maintained at the minimum necessary, and entrainment of air from the surgical field into the venous line should not be permitted. Reservoir pressures in excess of 60 mm Hg have been shown to increase microbubble counts measured in the circuit's arterial infusion line dramatically.[271]

Arterial Pumps

The pumping device used to replace the function of the heart generally uses one of two primary technologies: a roller pump or a centrifugal pump. Roller pumps are positive-displacement pumps that function by occluding a point in a piece of tubing and then rolling the occlusive point of contact along a length of the tubing. This process forces the fluid in the tubing to move forward in front of the occlusive point while simultaneously drawing in fluid behind the occlusive point. Centrifugal pumps, in contrast, are nonocclusive kinetic pumps that generate flow by magnetically coupling the high-speed revolution of a reusable motor to the plastic plates, fins, or channels inside a disposable cone. This process produces a constrained vortex that propels fluid through the opening on the side of the cone while drawing fluid into the point of the cone. Both pump technologies are traumatic to the formed elements in blood; however, centrifugal pumps are thought to be less traumatic than roller pumps.[272]

Each type of pump poses unique risks that must be appreciated. Roller pumps, by virtue of their occlusive nature, are capable of generating extremely high positive and negative pressure and are also able to pump massive quantities of air. Consequently, the national standard of care requires that these pumps be servoregulated to reduce their speed automatically when either high pressure or air is detected in the path of the blood. In contrast, centrifugal pumps, being nonocclusive, are unable to generate extremely high or low pressure. Additionally, if a large bolus of air is introduced into the disposable cone, the air will remain in the cone, thus displacing the blood, and the pump will be unable to generate forward flow. This feature prevents centrifugal pumps from pumping large volumes of air. However, the lack of a point of tubing occlusion inside the pump allows retrograde flow from the patient's high-pressure arterial system backward through the arterial line, filter, and oxygenator and ultimately into the low-pressure venous reservoir. This situation may occur whenever the pump's revolutions per minute are reduced below a critical threshold. A large-bore one-way valve or a computer-activated electronic clamp can be positioned in the arterial line to eliminate the possibility of retrograde arterial flow and inadvertent exsanguination of the patient.

Heat Exchanger

Heat exchangers are essential to CPB because they facilitate the management of the patient's blood temperature. Throughout the period of CPB, 20% to 35% of the patient's circulating blood volume is outside the body and is exposed to the ambient temperature of the operating suite, which can cause hypothermia. Therefore, in all CPB procedures, an inherent need exists to warm the blood before CPB is terminated. Additionally, for many surgical procedures, some amount of hypothermia, from mild (35°C) to profound (18°C), is desirable to reduce the patient's metabolic rate. In these cases, the heat exchangers may be used to reduce the temperature of the blood when CPB is initiated and then to warm the blood before CPB is terminated.

Oxygenator

The oxygenator substitutes for the patient's native lungs and performs the essential function of gas exchange. Several similarities exist between the native lung and the oxygenator: both have a gas space and a blood space, both are driven by passive diffusion gradients, and both use a membrane to separate the blood from the gas. In the oxygenator, the membrane is usually made from microporous polypropylene. This material is extruded into thin straws with an outer diameter of 200 to 400 μm, a wall thickness of 20 to 50 μm, and a total surface area of 2 to 4 m^2. Typically, oxygenators have a static priming volume of 135 to 340 mL and are capable of arterializing up to 7 L/min of typical venous blood.[273]

The native lung uses the conductive airways for both inspiration and expiration and depends on a certain tidal volume and respiratory rate to refresh the gas in the alveolar space regularly. The oxygenator, however, has separate gas inlet and outlet ports and can refresh the gas inside its gas space (the internal lumen of the straws) with a continuous flow or "sweep" of gas through the oxygenator. The blood space of an oxygenator is the space around the outside of the straws. Venous blood entering the oxygenator is directed across the outside of the fibers while gas is concurrently circulated through the inside of the fibers. Pressure gradients between the blood space and the gas space drive oxygen across the membrane and into the blood, whereas carbon dioxide is driven out of the blood and into the gas phase. Similarly, volatile anesthetic agents can be delivered to the patient through the oxygenator's sweep gas. Unlike the membrane in the native lung, however, the oxygenator's membrane is not a true membrane. The microscopic (0.5- to 1.0-μm) pores on the sides of the fibers are small enough to prevent plasma and the formed elements of blood from leaking through but are still large enough to allow gas to pass through. Therefore, care must be taken to ensure that the pressure in the gas space never exceeds the pressure in the blood space, or gaseous emboli will form in the blood. In appreciation of the risks inherent in using a pressurized gas space, most oxygenators are designed with multiple gas outlet ports. In any case, caution should be exercised to ensure that the outlet of the gas phase cannot become occluded.

Arterial Line Filter

In the United States, arterial line filters are used in more than 95% of CPB procedures in adults. These filters are placed in the arterial line as the last component through which blood passes before it returns to the patient. With pore sizes of 20 to 40 μm, arterial line filters increase the patient's safety by removing particulate and gaseous microemboli. To remove bubbles from the blood path effectively, arterial line filters must be continuously "purged" by allowing a small amount of blood to recirculate from the top of the filter back into the venous reservoir. Many ECCs are designed to capitalize on this continuous arterial shunt with the incorporation of a flow-through blood gas sensor that continually monitors the blood gas concentrations in the postoxygenator blood. These in-line blood gas measurements are generally reliable and can be used for the early identification of trends and precise management of oxygenator performance.

SEQUENCE OF EVENTS

Although the approach to surgical procedures that require CPB varies among institutions, all procedures loosely follow a predictable sequence of events. At any institution, CPB requires circuit selection and priming, anticoagulation, cannulation, initiation and maintenance of CPB, myocardial protection, and finally, weaning and termination from CPB.

Circuit Selection and Priming

When selecting the components for an extracorporeal circuit, the perfusionist first calculates the highest blood flow that may be necessary during the procedure. Typically, the highest blood flow is approximately 2.4 to 3.0 L/min/m^2 or 60 to 70 mL/kg/min. The calculated flow is then compared with the rated flow for the components of the ECC circuit. This flow rating represents the highest blood flow rate at which the component can perform its function within the acceptable range of hydraulic forces (pressure and shear stress) without causing an unacceptable amount of blood trauma.

The combination of components included in the ECC determines the prime volume of the circuit, or the volume of balanced electrolyte solution necessary to de-air the circuit

BOX 54.12 Resultant Hematocrit Formula

HCTr = Patient's preoperative red blood cell volume/Total volume of distribution at the start of CPB

$$\text{HCTr} = (\text{BVp} \times \text{HCT})/(\text{BVp} + \text{PVc})$$
$$\text{HCTr} = (\text{kg} \times 75 \times \text{HCT})/(\text{kg} \times 75) + \text{PVc}$$

where
HCTr = resultant hematocrit
BVp = patient's blood volume
kg = patient's weight in kg
PVc = prime volume of the extracorporeal circuit

CPB, Cardiopulmonary bypass.

completely. This prime volume is the main cause of the hemodilution associated with CPB. Therefore, the perfusionist must calculate the patient's resultant hematocrit (HCTr), which is the patient's predicted hematocrit after the patient's preoperative blood volume is mixed with the asanguineous prime volume of the ECC. The HCTr is computed by dividing the patient's calculated volume of RBCs into the calculated total volume of distribution represented by the addition of the ECC prime volume to the patient's blood volume (Box 54.12). An adult patient's intravascular volume of distribution will increase by 20% to 35% when CPB is initiated. This increased volume of distribution dilutes not only all the proteins and formed elements of the blood but also plasma levels of drugs. If this dilution is not anticipated, the patient's depth of anesthesia and circulating concentrations of many pharmacologic drugs may be reduced when CPB is initiated.

The solution used to prime the CPB circuit is generally a balanced electrolyte solution containing normal plasma concentrations of many of the standard blood ions. Various drugs may be added to the solution to attenuate the dilutional effect of CPB on those ions (e.g., albumin, heparin, bicarbonate) or to discourage edema formation or encourage diuresis of the prime fluid by the patient (e.g., mannitol).

Anticoagulation

With the circuit primed and the vessels exposed, standard procedure requires that the patient be fully anticoagulated before cannulation. Dosing of heparin and monitoring of the ACT are discussed earlier in this chapter. Many commercial devices are designed to monitor the ACT, and although the ACT is used as if it were a standardized test, the results produced by different instruments are far from standardized. These devices, when used on the same pool of heparinized blood, can produce ACT results that vary by as much as 40% (see Fig. 54.7).

The ACT test is not used to monitor heparin levels but to monitor the anticoagulant effects of heparin and other anticoagulants. Thus, elevated ACT measurements taken before, during, or after CPB may be influenced by variables other than heparin (e.g., hypothermia, hemodilution, coagulopathy, and anticoagulants).

Some studies suggest that subclinical coagulation may progress despite acceptable ACT times during CPB and that maintaining higher circulating heparin levels may reduce this process.[88,274] POC heparin level tests are commercially available and may be used to monitor circulating heparin levels in CPB-supported patients. Indeed, some centers monitor both the circulating level of heparin and its anticoagulant effects and administer heparin intermittently throughout the procedure to maintain a predetermined therapeutic heparin level, as well as a minimally acceptable ACT.

Heparin dosing may be based on the patient's weight (300-400 units/kg) or determined by a dose-response curve. Heparin dose-response curves are determined in vitro by measuring the ACT of the patient's blood at baseline (without heparin) and after a known concentration of heparin (2.5 units/mL) is added. By graphing the ACT in seconds against the blood concentration of heparin, one can extrapolate the blood concentration of heparin needed to achieve a target ACT acceptable for CPB. Most patients need circulating blood heparin concentrations between 1.5 and 3.0 units/mL to achieve an ACT of greater than 400 seconds. Commercial devices have been designed to automate this process and calculate the heparin dose using the in vitro dose-response curve, however these calculated doses do not simulate the in vivo response to heparin and often the calculations are flawed. Most centers have adopted a weight-based heparin dosing strategy for the initiation of CPB.[275] From the patient's height, weight, sex, and heparin dose-response test results, the machine calculates the appropriate patient-specific heparin dose to administer during CPB.

Cannulation

Every CPB procedure requires a high-flow cannula in a large vein and a cannula in a large artery for respectively withdrawing blood from and returning blood to the patient (Table 54.10). Most procedures include additional cannulas for administering cardioplegia solutions to the heart and removing (venting) blood and air from the chambers of the heart (Fig. 54.15). Different surgical procedures require different cannulation techniques, the most common of which are described here.

The target for venous cannulation is generally the right atrium. The right atrium is the central repository for all venous blood, and the RA appendage is conveniently accessible through a sternotomy. Although RA cannulation is optimal for most cardiac surgical cases, the cannula may not perform well when the heart is being retracted. Significant retraction of the heart is necessary to access some posterior coronary arteries for bypass or to access the mitral valve through a left atriotomy. Because of a need for surgical exposure or retraction involving the right atrium, the venous cannulation site for mitral valve or tricuspid valve procedures is moved out of the atrium and to the SVC and inferior vena cava (IVC). If a cannula is placed in each vena cava, venous blood can be intercepted just before it enters the right atrium so that the surgeon can have a bloodless field for operating and yet acceptable drainage is provided throughout the procedure. The right atrium may also be approached through the femoral vein. A femoral venous cannula extends the entire length of the IVC and rests with its openings in the right atrium.

An improperly sized or positioned venous cannula obstructs the flow of blood into the ECC circuit. This may elevate CVP and encourage extravasation of blood volume from the vascular compartment into the extracellular compartment (third spacing). Therefore, it is important to

TABLE 54.10 Common Approaches to Venous and Arterial Cannulation for Cardiopulmonary Bypass

Procedure	Venous	Arterial	Cardioplegia	Vent	Comments
CABG	2-stage approach in the RA	Ascending aorta	Root and/or CS	Aortic root	Patients with low EF or failure to wean from CPB may benefit from LV venting
AVR	2-stage approach in the RA	Ascending aorta	Root and/or CS, plus handheld selective once the root is open	LV and aortic root	None
MVR	Bicaval	Ascending aorta	Root and/or CS	LV and aortic root	None
Aortic root replacement, not including the arch	2-stage approach in the RA	Ascending aorta	Root and/or CS	LV and aortic root	The closer the repair is to the head vessels, the more difficult aortic cannulation becomes
Aortic arch	2-stage approach in the RA	Axillary or femoral artery	Root and/or CS	LV and aortic root	CS cardioplegia unlikely if the coronaries are unobstructed
Redo procedures	Femoral vein	Femoral artery	Root and/or CS	Aortic root and/or LV	Only in extreme cases (i.e., when the heart is tightly adhered to the back of the sternum, or any time that the heart is lacerated during sternotomy)
Other intracardiac procedures	Bicaval	Ascending aorta	Root and/or CS	LV and aortic root	Any procedure that requires opening the RA or excessive surgical retraction

AVR, Aortic valve repair or replacement; *CABG,* coronary artery bypass grafting; *CPB*, cardiopulmonary bypass; *CS,* coronary sinus; *EF*, ejection fraction; *LV,* left ventricle; *MVR,* mitral valve repair or replacement; *RA,* right atrium.

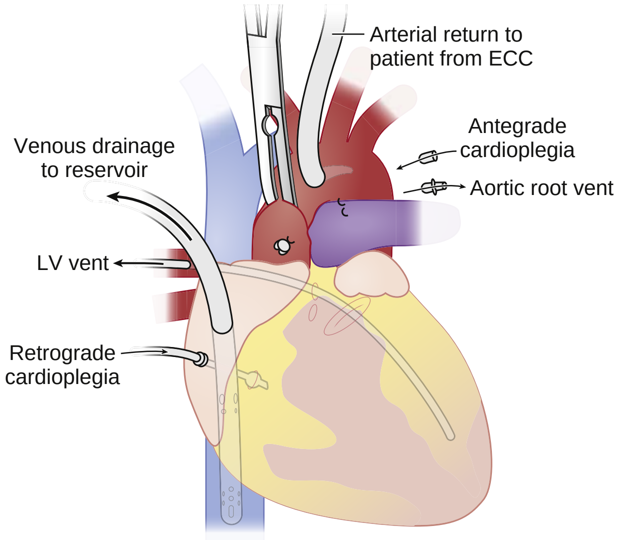


Fig. 54.15 A common cannulation approach for cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) procedures. Two cannulas are necessary to provide CPB. A cannula in the right atrium provides venous drainage to the extracorporeal circuit *(ECC)*, and an arterial cannula placed in the ascending aorta allows arterial return to the patient from the ECC. Additional cannulas are necessary to protect the heart after cross-clamping. Cardioplegia can be administered in antegrade fashion through a special needle placed in the ascending aorta between the aortic valve and the aortic cross-clamp. Retrograde cardioplegia can be delivered directly into the coronary sinus through a special balloon-tipped cannula. Vent cannulas are used to decompress the heart while the aorta is clamped and to remove bubbles before cross-clamp removal. The aortic root vent is integrated into the antegrade cardioplegia needle, and the left ventricular *(LV)* vent cannula is inserted through the right superior pulmonary vein.

evaluate the performance of the venous cannula or cannulas when CPB is initiated. Properly placed venous cannulas allow complete decompression of the right side of the heart, as indicated by a CVP and PAP of zero and a nonpulsatile arterial blood pressure.

The ECC returns oxygenated blood to the patient through the arterial cannula. For CABG and valve procedures, the standard target for the arterial cannula is the portion of the ascending aorta below the aortic arch but 3 to 4 cm above the aortic valve. The alternative approaches of axillary or femoral artery cannulation are used in procedures that require the manipulation of much of the aortic root, arch, or both. Axillary artery cannulation is generally facilitated by the anastomosis of a tube graft to the side of the axillary artery to provide access for the arterial cannula without interrupting blood flow to the right arm. An added benefit of axillary cannulation for aortic arch procedures is that clamping the innominate artery allows antegrade cerebral perfusion to be performed during a period of circulatory arrest. Femoral arterial cannulation involves inserting the cannula through the femoral artery and into the abdominal aorta. Blood flow to the thorax is directed in retrograde fashion upward into the aorta. Ischemia of the cannulated limb is a risk commonly associated with femoral arterial cannulation, and dissection of the cannulated artery is a risk associated with the cannulation of any arterial site. Iatrogenic aortic dissection at the cannulation site occurs in approximately 200 procedures annually in the United States, with a resultant mortality of 48%.[276] Proper cannula placement and patency should be confirmed before CBP is initiated.

With venous and arterial cannulas in place, the heart and the lungs can be bypassed. However, additional cannulas are needed to facilitate aortic cross-clamping and cardioplegic arrest. For example, cardioplegia cannulas can be placed in the ascending aorta, and then the aorta can be occluded by placing a large vascular clamp (i.e., a cross-clamp) across it. Occluding the aorta between the arterial cannula and the antegrade cardioplegia cannula interrupts blood flow from the arterial line of the ECC to the coronary arteries, thereby initiating a period of global myocardial ischemia. Intermittent or continuous administration of cardioplegia through the antegrade and retrograde cardioplegia cannulas (see Fig. 54.15) serves to attenuate the ischemic insult (by a mechanism discussed later).

Bronchial pulmonary vascular connections deliver approximately 1% of the CO to the lungs, from where it is subsequently returned to the left side of the heart. In patients with chronic pulmonary disease, this recirculation may increase to more than 10% of CO. During the period when the aorta is cross-clamped, this blood volume will distend the left side of the heart and the pulmonary vasculature if the blood is not actively removed. Additionally, intracardiac procedures inherently introduce air into the left-sided chambers, and this air must be removed before the patient is weaned from CPB.

Vent cannulas facilitate decompression and de-airing of the heart. The heart is most commonly vented at the aortic root or directly from the LV. Aortic root vents use the same cannula that is used to deliver antegrade cardioplegia (see Fig. 54.15) and draw blood and air from the LV across the aortic valve and into the reservoir of the ECC circuit. Because the antegrade cardioplegia needle has a small gauge and is positioned above the aortic valve, root vents have a couple significant limitations: they cannot be used when antegrade cardioplegia is being administered, and they are ineffective in decompressing the LV when the cross-clamp has been removed. These limitations are not generally significant during an uncomplicated CABG procedure, but for CABG in patients with severely compromised ventricular function and for all intracardiac procedures, direct LV venting becomes essential. Typically, LV vents are introduced through the right superior pulmonary vein and are advanced through the left atrium, across the mitral valve, and into the LV (see Fig. 54.15). The 10- to 14-Fr cannula used for this purpose offers significantly better venting capacity than does the root vent. Flows in the range of several liters per minute can be drawn through these cannulas when necessary, and because these cannulas are inserted directly inside the LV, they are very effective in removing air bubbles that remain after an intracardiac procedure has been completed. Additionally, because the LV vent is separate from the cardioplegia cannula, it can be used to decompress the heart during antegrade cardioplegia administration, which may be necessary for patients with aortic insufficiency. Unfortunately, numerous case reports exist of injuries to patients that resulted from air being pumped into the heart through malfunctioning vent lines. The proper function of the vent pump should be confirmed at the field before the pump is connected to the patient.

Initiation and Maintenance of Cardiopulmonary Bypass

Once anticoagulation is confirmed and cannulation is performed, CPB may be initiated. Before initiating CPB, it is good practice to verify the patency of the arterial cannula. After the proper position of this cannula is confirmed, CPB may be initiated by removing the clamps on the venous line between the venous cannula and the reservoir. The patient's blood then passively drains into the ECC. Simultaneously, the arterial pump on the CPB machine begins to infuse the mixture of prime solution and autologous blood into the patient through the arterial cannula. Evaluating the performance of the venous and arterial cannulas is very important during the initial seconds of CPB. The pressure in the arterial line of the ECC should be maintained at less than 300 mm Hg to prevent excessive trauma to the formed elements of the blood. Venous cannula position is evaluated mainly by examining the patient's hemodynamics. Provided the venous cannula is adequately draining the venous return to the heart, right-sided heart pressure (CVP and PAP) should decrease to 0 mm Hg, and the arterial blood pressure should reach a normal mean pressure (50-90 mm Hg) while also becoming nonpulsatile.

The arterial trace usually becomes nonpulsatile as the heart is emptied and the pumping force is changed from the ventricle to the nonpulsatile heart and lung machine. However, patients with aortic insufficiency continue to have a pulsatile arterial trace despite complete venous drainage (CVP and PAP = 0 mm Hg) because of regurgitation of blood from the arterial cannula across the incompetent aortic valve and back into the LV. If right-sided heart pressure does not reduce to 0 mm Hg, the arterial trace remains pulsatile, and arterial pump flow cannot be increased to full flow; in that case, the position of the venous cannula must be reevaluated. Once full flow has been achieved, the function of the heart and lungs will have been completely transferred to the CPB machine; the anesthesiologist then can turn off the ventilator, and hypothermia of the patient can be initiated.

The initiation of CPB is often associated with a period of hypotension, which can be managed with the administration of an α-agonist (e.g., phenylephrine) into the venous reservoir of the ECC circuit (Fig. 54.16). Although it is common for cerebral oximetry values to reduce transiently at this point, acutely reduced cerebral oximetry values on CPB initiation may provide the first indication of poor SVC drainage or selective perfusion of a single aortic head vessel.[277-279] Markedly changed cerebral oximetry values warrant additional confirmation of cannula position and function. While CPB is maintained, the adequacy of perfusion is continuously evaluated by monitoring hemodynamic variables. Blood flow from the arterial pump can be manipulated across a range of 1.6 to 3.0 L/min/m^2 to deliver an arterial blood pressure of 50 to 90 mm Hg and maintain $S\bar{v}O_2$ greater than 65%. Any hypotension or hypertension that occurs despite adequate flow and $S\bar{v}O_2$ can be treated by adjusting the patient's SVR with vasoconstrictors or vasodilators.

Blood samples should be taken at least every 30 minutes. Arterial blood gas is drawn to assess the performance of the oxygenator and to monitor the patient for the development of acidosis. Base deficit values of −5.0 mmol/L or less can be corrected with sodium bicarbonate, but the underlying cause of the acid production should ultimately be addressed. Increased perfusion flow and blood pressure may be indicated. ACTs are drawn to assess continued adequacy of anticoagulation and values shorter than the institutional parameter acceptable for CPB (usually ≥400

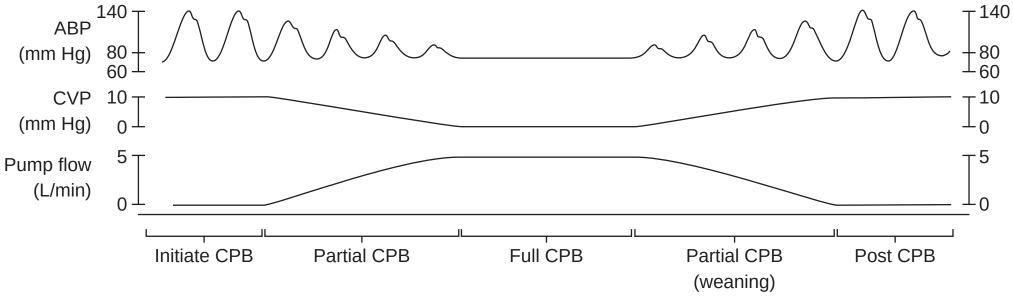


Fig. 54.16 Illustration of a patient's hemodynamics before cardiopulmonary bypass *(CPB)*, during the initiation of CPB, during full CPB, while weaning from CPB, and after CPB. *ABP,* Arterial blood pressure; *CVP,* central venous pressure.

seconds) should be treated with a heparin bolus administered into the ECC.

Urine output is also monitored during CPB as an indicator of perfusion flow and pressure. However, poor urine production during CPB has not been shown to predict postoperative renal insufficiency. Rather, age, preoperative renal function, the duration of CPB, and EF have been correlated with postoperative renal dysfunction.[280]

Myocardial Protection

To provide a motionless field for the surgeon, the heart is arrested in diastole by the administration of a potassium-enriched cardioplegia solution. Cessation of myocardial electromechanical activity is the single most important step in reducing the heart's metabolism. Potassium-induced arrest alone reduces the heart's myocardial oxygen consumption by 90%. It is common to augment this reduction with hypothermia by administering cold cardioplegia solution. The combined influence of potassium arrest and myocardial temperatures lower than 22°C reduces myocardial oxygen consumption by 97% and enables the tissue to withstand a complete interruption of blood flow for periods of 20 to 40 minutes. Once the surgical procedure is completed, myocardial arrest can be reversed by reperfusing the coronary arteries with warm normokalemic blood.

The ingredients of cardioplegia solutions vary considerably from institution to institution, save that potassium is always used as the arrest agent. Whereas some centers may use a very simple solution of potassium-enriched whole blood, others may choose a more complex solution with a variety of chemical additives. The trend in clinical practice has been not to use purely crystalloid cardioplegia solutions; instead, most centers now use some form of blood cardioplegia. The ratio of blood to crystalloid is generally 4:1 or 8:1. The crystalloid solution is often mixed with arterialized whole blood from the ECC circuit in an exact ratio by placing two different-sized tubes (the larger drawing from the arterial line of the ECC and the smaller drawing from the bag of cardioplegia solution) through a single roller pump and splicing the two tubes together downstream from the outlet of the pump. Generically, the chemicals added to the cardioplegia solutions are designed to make the solution slightly hypertonic to reduce edema, and these chemicals include a buffer to counter the heart's production of acidic metabolites and a substrate for energy or catalysts to assist the heart in the production of adenosine triphosphate. Typically, solutions with two different potassium concentrations are used during the procedure. For inducing cardioplegic arrest, a "high-K" solution with a potassium concentration of approximately 20 to 30 mEq is used. After isoelectric arrest is induced, the solution is changed to a "low-K" mixture with a potassium concentration of approximately 10 mEq.

These solutions can be administered in *antegrade* fashion into the coronary arteries via the aortic root, through a needle placed between the aortic cannula and the aortic valve, or in *retrograde* fashion into the coronary veins, via a balloon-tipped cannula placed in the coronary sinus. Antegrade cardioplegic delivery is the most physiologic approach. However, when the patient has pronounced CAD or aortic valve insufficiency, antegrade administration may not reach the coronary arteries uniformly and thus will not adequately deliver cardioplegia to the myocardium. In these instances, retrograde cardioplegia is used. Limitations of retrograde cardioplegia also exist however, and include the fact that the free wall of the right ventricle and the posterior onethird of the interventricular septum (the distribution territory of the right coronary artery [RCA]) are poorly perfused by retrograde delivery.[281] Additionally, the microvascular areas of the heart that are perfused by retrograde cardioplegia are less able to sustain normal myocardial energy metabolism.[282] Thus, the most complete technique for myocardial protection involves both antegrade and retrograde delivery. In fact, it is not uncommon for cardioplegia to be delivered simultaneously in both antegrade and retrograde fashion.

Cardioplegia is commonly administered intermittently in a volume-dosing regimen. After an initial arrest dose of approximately 1000 to 1500 mL of "high-K" solution is administered, perfusion of the heart is suspended for a period of 10 to 40 minutes while the surgeon operates on the heart. Then, periodically throughout the procedure, 200- to 500-mL doses of "low-K" solution are administered to deliver nutrients to the cells and maintain the potassium concentration. Intraoperative evaluation of the adequacy of myocardial protection is empirical and based on the quiescence of the ECG, the time since the last dose was administered, and the temperature of the heart. The filling state of the ventricular chambers should also be evaluated. If the vent lines are not keeping the heart empty, it will warm more quickly and the heart muscle will be under tension. This state increases myocardial oxygen consumption and compromises myocardial protection. To reinstitute the electromechanical activity of the heart, warm, normokalemic blood is infused into the coronary arteries. This may be done by administering a "hot shot" through the cardioplegia cannulas or by simply removing the cross-clamp.

Weaning and Termination of Cardiopulmonary Bypass

The process of weaning the patient from the heart and lung machine requires an increased level of communication and awareness among the anesthesiologist, perfusionist, and surgeon. Before weaning and termination, the patient should be rewarmed and the heart de-aired. Regular cardiac electrical activity should be confirmed and supported with a pacemaker if necessary. Ventilation of the lungs must be resumed and laboratory values confirmed and corrected if needed. By slowly reducing venous drainage to the ECC and transfusing volume from the reservoir to the patient, normal filling volume can be returned to the heart. As the CO is returned to normal, flow from the arterial pump of the heart and lung machine is decreased and eventually terminated. Immediately after the termination of CPB, the patient is often hemodynamically supported by volume replacement with the blood remaining in the ECC, frequently supplemented with vasopressors or inotropic agents (see the earlier section on weaning from CPB).

When the patient is hemodynamically stable, protamine can be administered to reverse the anticoagulatory effect of heparin. The administration of protamine to the patient is a sentinel event that must be communicated clearly by the anesthesiologist to the perfusionist and surgeon. In the event of inadvertent return of blood containing protamine to the ECC through the pump sucker, the blood remaining in the circuit may clot and render the circuit unusable for urgently reinstituting CPB. Therefore, all cannulas should be removed before the action of heparin is fully reversed, and the blood remaining in the ECC should be salvaged by centrifugation or hemofiltration for return to the patient by the anesthesiologist.

Protamine inactivates heparin by irreversibly binding with the strongly acidic heparin molecule to form a stable salt with no anticoagulant effects. POC tests are available for several ACT machines to calculate a patient-specific protamine dose.[283] If an automatically generated protamine dose-response curve is not available, many institutions calculate the protamine dose needed from the total dose of heparin delivered to the patient. This calculation usually results in the administration of 1 to 1.3 mg of protamine for every 100 units of heparin given. Protamine should be administered slowly over a period of 5 to 10 minutes to reduce the risk of hypotension. After protamine administration, ACTs should return to baseline. An increased ACT may indicate residual heparin or may be the result of a coagulation deficiency that necessitates additional laboratory tests, such as coagulation panel tests, heparin assays, platelet function analysis, thromboelastography, or any combination of these investigations.

OTHER ISSUES

Temperature

Deliberate hypothermia is a reliable method of neuroprotection and is often used during routine CPB. Deep hypothermia unquestionably confers cerebral protection when the circulation must be arrested during cardiac surgery. Even mild hypothermia (as little as 1°C-2°C) minimizes the severity of cerebral ischemia in animal models. Various suggested mechanisms for the neuroprotective effects of hypothermia have been tested in animal models (Table 54.11).[284] Hypothermia may attenuate the effects of cerebral ischemia by creating a favorable balance between oxygen supply and demand, and by decreasing the cerebral metabolic rate of oxygen. Hypothermia not only reduces the metabolic rate but also delays the release of excitatory amino acids, neurotransmitters that play an important role in the process of neuronal death. Additionally, hypothermia reduces the permeability of brain arterioles and prevents blood-brain barrier dysfunction. Hypothermia may also interfere with the inflammatory response by suppressing the adhesion of polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the damaged region.

TABLE 54.11 Protective Effects of Hypothermia and Deleterious Effects of Hyperthermia During Cerebral Ischemia

Hypothermia	Hyperthermia
Favorable balance between oxygen supply and demand	Imbalance between oxygen supply and demand
↓ Excitotoxic neurotransmitter release	↑ Excitotoxic neurotransmitter release
↓ Blood-brain barrier permeability	↑ Blood-brain barrier permeability
↓ Inflammatory response	↑ Inflammatory response
	↑ Free radical production
	↑ Intracellular acidosis
	Destabilized cytoskeleton

From Hindler K, Nussmeier NA. Central nervous system risk assessment. In: Newman M, Fleisher L, Fink M, eds. *Perioperative Medicine: Managing for Outcome*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2008:69–88.

However, after performing a meta-analysis, Rees and colleagues concluded that no definitive evidence for a neuroprotective effect of hypothermia during routine CPB exists,[285] although the studies examined in that analysis had some important limitations. For example, the timing of hypothermia may have limited its protective value. Hypothermia is always initiated after aortic cannulation and the onset of bypass, but macroembolization to the brain is unlikely during this period because the heart is excluded from the circulation by the aortic cross-clamp. Instead, the periods of highest risk for microembolization and macroembolization are during and shortly after aortic manipulation, cross-clamping, and unclamping because aortic cannulation and cross-clamping are performed near the start of CPB, when the brain is not yet cold. Similarly, the aortic cross-clamp is removed near the end of CPB, usually after the patient has been rewarmed.

In contrast, hyperthermia is known to be deleterious. Elevation of body temperature by as little as 2°C decreases cerebral tolerance to ischemia. Hyperthermia delays neuronal metabolic recovery and increases excitotoxic neurotransmitter release, oxygen free radical production, intracellular acidosis, and blood-brain barrier permeability, with subsequent multifocal breakdown at sites in the thalamus, hippocampus, and striatum (see Table 54.11). Hyperthermia also affects protein kinase activity and destabilizes the cytoskeleton. Clinically, fever and hyperthermia worsen the prognosis of hospitalized patients with stroke.[286]

TABLE 54.12 Summary of Blood Gas Management Strategies

Strategy	Goal	Implementation	Total CO_2 Content	Theoretic Benefits
α-stat	Achieve electrochemical neutrality by maintaining a constant OH^-/H^+ ratio	Use normal *temperature-uncorrected* blood gas values	Constant	Preserves enzyme function and cerebral autoregulation
pH-stat	Maintain constant pH	Use normal *temperature-corrected* blood gas values	Increases	Produces more homogeneous brain cooling; decreases brain O_2 consumption
Combination	Maintain constant pH during cooling, then restore electrochemical neutrality before circulatory arrest	During the cooling phase, use *temperature-corrected* values, then switch to *temperature-uncorrected* values before interrupting flow; use *temperature-corrected* values during the rewarming period	Initially increases during cooling, then returns to baseline	Produces homogeneous brain cooling, then restores neutrality; improves $CMRO_2$

$CMRO_2$, Cerebral metabolic rate of oxygen; *CO_2,* carbon dioxide; *O_2,* oxygen; *OH^-/H^+*, ratio of hydroxyl ion to hydrogen ion.

In the 1990s, some centers began using normothermic cardioplegia to improve cardiac outcomes while avoiding deliberate hypothermia. This practice of "warm heart surgery" was debated because of concern that the neuroprotective effects of hypothermia would be lost. Subsequent studies produced inconsistent results with respect to the incidence of stroke and postoperative neurocognitive decline. Such differences in neurologic outcome may have resulted from variations in the temperature management strategies used in different "warm heart surgery" studies; these variations ranged from allowing a downward "drift" that resulted in actual mild hypothermia to active rewarming that may have led to inadvertent cerebral hyperthermia.[287]

In patients undergoing CPB, cerebral hyperthermia during the rewarming period may aggravate any cerebral injury that has occurred. Aggressive rewarming was once commonly practiced to prevent the "afterdrop" in temperature that usually occurs after CPB is discontinued, but this practice can cause cerebral hyperthermia at the exact moment when cerebral embolization is most likely. Therefore, rewarming should be gradual and should start early enough to achieve stability of the desired temperature before CPB is terminated.[288]

The surgeon should also be aware of the limitations of any temperature-monitoring site used during CPB. Brain parenchymal temperature cannot be measured directly during cardiac surgery; rather, it must be estimated from tympanic, nasopharyngeal, esophageal, rectal, bladder, skin surface, pulmonary arterial, or jugular venous bulb temperature. However, concordance between cerebral temperature and temperatures measured at most of these sites is poor.[289,290] Jugular bulb temperature is generally considered to be the gold standard because the proximity of the jugular bulb to the carotid artery origins and the aortic cannula makes jugular bulb temperature more similar to brain temperature than are temperatures measured at other commonly used sites (class I, Level C).[290,291] Temperatures measured at the nasopharyngeal, esophageal, bladder, rectal, or skin surface sites underestimate jugular bulb temperature during rewarming.[289,290] Because monitoring jugular bulb temperature is not usually feasible, monitoring the temperature of the blood in the arterial line that exits the oxygenator is considered the closest surrogate for brain temperature.[290,292] Temperature measured in the PA or the nasopharynx (class IIa, Level C) are also reasonable sites to monitor during weaning from CPB.

Hyperthermia that develops postoperatively may be just as hazardous as intraoperative hyperthermia. Temperatures exceeding 38.5°C are common during the first 48 hours after cardiac surgery and occur in nearly 40% of patients.[293] This postoperative hyperthermia is known to be correlated with increased cognitive dysfunction 6 weeks after cardiac surgery.[294] Therefore, hyperthermia in the postoperative period should be treated with antipyretics and, if necessary, active body surface cooling.

In summary, patients maintained on CPB should be rewarmed early and slowly. No monitored temperature should be allowed to exceed 37.0°C.[292] This practice prevents cerebral overheating.

Blood Gas Management

Temperature has a significant effect on the solubility of gases in solution. Specifically, in blood gas analysis, the carbon dioxide concentration (and consequently the pH) is profoundly altered by changes in temperature. As temperature decreases, the partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide ($Pa{CO_2}$) decreases as carbon dioxide becomes more soluble in plasma. Therefore, inducing hypothermia during CPB poses a dilemma in terms of how best to approach acid-base management at lower temperatures (i.e., whether *temperature-corrected* or *temperature-uncorrected* blood gas values should be used to manage the patient's care). This question has been the basis for a decades-old debate: α-stat versus pH-stat blood gas management (Table 54.12).

α-Stat Hypothesis. In aqueous systems, neutrality (pN) is said to occur when $[H^+] = [OH^-]$. The dissociation of water depends on temperature; therefore, the pH value at which pN occurs varies with the temperature. Acid-base comparative physiologic studies of animals whose blood temperature varies (i.e., ectotherms and poikilotherms) suggest that blood and intracellular pH values parallel the temperature-related changes seen in the neutrality of water.[295] From these findings emerged the α-stat strategy, which endeavors to maintain intracellular electrochemical neutrality across all temperatures.

Maintaining this neutrality requires an appropriate buffering system. It is thought that protein buffering is largely responsible for maintaining this temperature-pH relationship. Specifically, the imidazole group of the amino acid histidine has a dissociation constant (p*Ka*) value similar to that of blood. Therefore, if carbon dioxide stores are held constant during cooling, the ionization state (termed α) will remain constant. This may be important because the ionization state affects both the structure and the function of proteins. Keeping the charge state constant (α-stat) by allowing blood pH to change with the neutrality of water is thought to be essential for maintaining the most physiologically beneficial structure and function of enzymes during hypothermia. Research suggests that when the α-stat strategy is used, cerebral autoregulation remains largely intact until deep hypothermic temperatures are reached.[296]

To manage acid-base balance during hypothermic CPB by using the α-stat approach, one must maintain temperature-*un*corrected blood gas values. The term *un*corrected is often confusing because it refers to the values that the blood gas machine typically reports without being programmed to correct the values to the actual temperature of the patient. For example, blood drawn from a patient undergoing CPB at 18°C is measured in a blood gas machine, which anaerobically warms the sample to 37°C and reports values at normothermia. With α-stat management, one would strive for normal temperature-uncorrected results, which would theoretically maintain intracellular electrochemical neutrality.

pH-Stat Hypothesis. An alternative strategy is the pH-stat approach to acid-base management. The pH-stat strategy endeavors to maintain a constant pH despite changes in temperature. Hibernating animals tend to follow this strategy. To counter the tendency of cooling blood to follow the neutrality of the water curve and become more alkalotic as temperature decreases, these animals increase their blood carbon dioxide content and maintain normal pH at hypothermic body temperatures.

Carbon dioxide is a potent cerebral vasodilator; therefore, the increase in carbon dioxide content during pH-stat management uncouples cerebral autoregulation; cerebral blood flow increases independent of cerebral metabolic demand. These effects are thought to be neuroprotective for infants maintained on CPB who may have aortopulmonary collateral vessels and also to promote deep homogeneous cooling of the brain before circulatory arrest.[297] However, during rewarming, the higher cerebral blood flow that results from using pH-stat management may increase the embolic load sent to the brain.

Using the pH-stat strategy with CPB involves managing blood gas parameters with temperature-*corrected* values by programming the blood gas machine to correct the values to the patient's body temperature. During bypass, decreasing blood temperature increases the solubility of carbon dioxide and, consequently, results in decreased $Pa\text{CO}_2$ values. Therefore, the perfusionist must either decrease the "sweep speed" of the air-oxygen mixture or, less commonly, add carbon dioxide to the oxygenator ventilation system to increase the carbon dioxide content and maintain a $Pa\text{CO}_2$ of 40 mm Hg (and normal pH) as the temperature of the blood decreases. The extracorporeal circuitry must be equipped with an in-line blood gas analyzer so that $Pa\text{CO}_2$ levels can be continually monitored during CPB.

Which Strategy Is Best?. In adult patients, several independent, prospective randomized trials have shown that using α-stat management during moderate hypothermia produces better neurologic outcomes than observed with pH-stat management. These and other data have led to an evidence-based recommendation (ACC/AHA class I, level A) that α-stat management be used in adults undergoing moderate hypothermic CPB.[288,298] It is unclear which strategy is superior in adults when deep hypothermia is used with or without circulatory arrest.

In pediatric CPB, however, several human and animal studies suggest that pH-stat management may be more beneficial than α-stat management for infants. These studies showed that pH-stat management produced more homogeneous cooling, less oxygen consumption, and better cerebral metabolic recovery than did α-stat management. The clear trend in pediatric CPB is to use pH-stat alone or in combination with α-stat (i.e., to use pH-stat during cooling and α-stat during rewarming) when deep hypothermia is used.[299]

Inflammatory Response to Cardiopulmonary Bypass

Since the 1980s, much has been written about the rapid and profound inflammatory response that CPB elicits. Surgical stress itself causes an inflammatory response, which CPB aggravates by subjecting the patient's blood to contact with foreign surfaces, ischemia and reperfusion, and gaseous and particulate microembolization, which initiate and amplify multiple redundant and interconnected immune cascades. With the onset of CPB, the increased expression of *initiator* substances (including endotoxin, tumor necrosis factor [TNF], and nuclear factor κB, as well as anaphylatoxins and cytokines) stimulates *effector* cells (including polymorphonuclear neutrophils, platelets, and endothelial cells) to upregulate adhesion molecules and release cytotoxic oxygen radicals and proteases. This response can produce tissue injury of varying degree in a variety of organ systems.

Numerous clinical approaches have been shown to reduce the inflammatory response measurably in cardiac surgical patients (Fig. 54.17). These approaches can be loosely grouped into three primary categories: modification of surgical and perfusion techniques, modification of circuit components, and pharmacologic strategies.

Modification of Surgical Techniques or Perfusion Techniques

Modification of Surgical Technique. The movement toward minimally invasive cardiac surgery is at least partly motivated by the goal of reducing inflammation in the patient. The term *minimally invasive* may refer to procedures that use modified surgical techniques, including miniature incisions with or without robotic assistance, and to procedures that use classic surgical approaches that minimize or eliminate the use of CPB and thus exposure to the ECC (e.g., OPCAB). Although OPCAB does not eliminate the patient's inflammatory response, it may produce less expression of inflammatory cytokines than does CABG with CPB.[300] However, it may be that the OPCAB-related reduction in inflammation is minimal in the days after the surgical procedure.[301] Moreover, any improvements in outcomes that

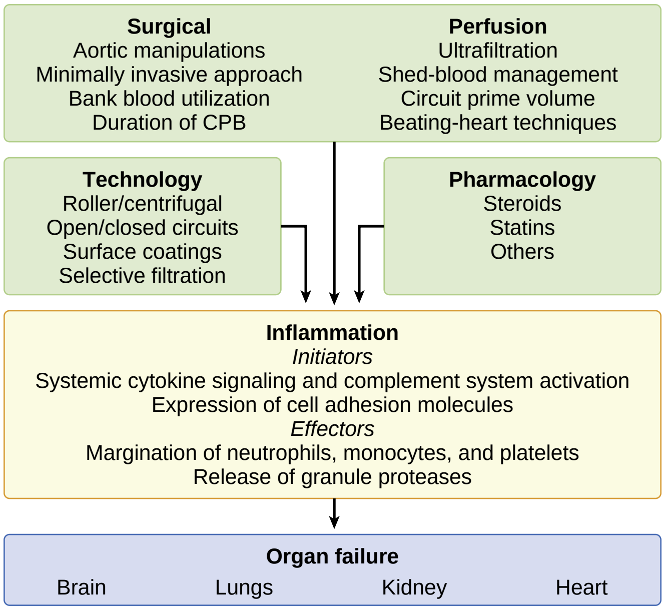


Fig. 54.17 Brief review of the current understanding of the many variables that influence the inflammatory response in patients undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass *(CPB)*.

may be attributable to the use of OPCAB instead of standard CABG are probably not exclusively caused by elimination of the ECC. Rather, minimizing or eliminating aortic manipulation, particularly in patients with severe atherosclerosis, may independently reduce the incidence of stroke.[43]

Modification of Perfusion Techniques. Reasons for the lack of consensus on the exact contribution of CPB to the inflammatory process include the issue that perfusion practice is far from standardized.[298] Various perfusion techniques and technologies have been shown to reduce inflammation, including shed-blood management,[302] ultrafiltration,[303,304] temperature management,[285] circuit miniaturization,[305,306] and on-pump beating-heart techniques.[307]

Perfusion Technology

In addition to the ways in which perfusion technology is used, the type of technology used may moderate the inflammatory response to CPB. No consensus exists regarding which arterial pump technology—roller pumps or centrifugal pumps—is less hemolytic. Some investigators have shown that using modified surface materials in the CPB circuit, such as heparin coatings, may reduce inflammation.[308-310] Additionally, selective filtration of leukocytes with an in-line leukocyte filter has been proposed as a method for reducing the concentration of activated leukocytes and inflammation. Warren and associates,[311] in a review of 63 studies, concluded that leukocyte filtration may have some modest benefits, but definitive evidence of any improvement in inflammatory-mediated complications is insufficient. Additionally, hemoconcentrators may be able to remove inflammatory mediators from circulation through large-volume zero-balance ultrafiltration techniques,[304] but little evidence exists of significant clinical improvements in the adult CPB population.

Pharmacologic Strategies

After decades of laboratory studies and clinical trials, a rigorously vetted pharmacologic approach to reducing inflammation in CPB-supported patients is still lacking. The best-established drug, aprotinin, was removed from the market in 2007 because of concerns about an increased risk of acute kidney failure after administration.[119] Thus, the clinician is left to select from a short list of drugs whose use is supported only by mixed mechanistic results and insipid evidence of improved clinical outcomes.

Corticosteroids have been used in cardiac surgery for decades for their immunosuppressive and antiinflammatory effects. The results of meta-analyses of small randomized clinical trials of methylprednisolone or dexamethasone have yielded conflicting results.[312,313] These drugs may reduce the incidence of atrial fibrillation, but they may also increase gastrointestinal bleeding, and they did not influence postoperative mortality or cardiac or pulmonary complications.[312,313] The first large (4494 patients) randomized controlled clinical trial of the use of routine corticosteroids during cardiac surgery in adults showed that high-dose (1 mg/kg) dexamethasone did not reduce the 30-day incidence of major adverse events (death, MI, stroke, renal failure, or respiratory failure).[314]

One meta-analysis of randomized controlled studies of the use of prophylactic preoperative statins to reduce inflammatory mediators concluded that evidence indicates that statins reduce plasma concentrations of IL-6, IL-8, TNF-α, and CRP when doses of 20 to 80 mg/day are administered for 1 day to 3 weeks preoperatively.[315] In a Cochrane Database review of 11 randomized controlled trials performed in patients undergoing on- or off-pump cardiac surgical procedures, pooled analysis showed that statin pretreatment before surgery reduced the incidence of postoperative atrial fibrillation and was associated with a shorter length of stay in the ICU but failed to influence mortality.[316] Finally, a meta-analysis of 14 studies of ketamine, which may also have antiinflammatory effects, suggests that ketamine administration significantly reduces the IL-6 response to surgery.[317]

DEEP HYPOTHERMIC CIRCULATORY ARREST

DHCA involves reducing the patient's core temperature to profoundly hypothermic levels (15°C-22°C) before globally interrupting blood flow to the body, draining all the blood out of the patient, and collecting it in the ECC reservoir. In adults, this procedure is primarily used during surgical repair of the aorta, especially in cases of dissection or aneurysm involving the transverse arch.

Deliberate hypothermia with systemic cooling is the only reliable method of neuroprotection during complete global ischemia. Some clinicians also put ice bags on the patient's head to augment or maintain cerebral cooling. Pharmacologic approaches to neuroprotection, such as administering steroids to reduce inflammation or barbiturates or propofol to induce burst suppression, are used in some centers, although evidence to support their efficacy in the setting of complete global ischemia is scant. Furthermore, if the EEG is monitored, it is important to induce EEG isoelectricity with hypothermia before commencing the period of circulatory arrest rather than relying on supplemental barbiturates or propofol to provide neuroprotection.[318]

The equipment and circuitry of the heart and lung machine used for DHCA procedures are not generally different from those used for standard CPB procedures. Blood gas management during cooling and rewarming for DHCA procedures typically follows the α-stat management scheme in adult patients and the pH-stat management scheme in pediatric patients (see the earlier section on blood gas management). Systemic cooling is begun when CPB is initiated and is continued until the temperature of the patient is low enough to provide adequate protection for the anticipated duration of circulatory arrest. When deciding what temperature is "adequate," one must give top priority to protecting the brain. Because no clinically feasible method for measuring brain temperature is available, surrogate temperatures must be used to estimate core temperature (see the earlier section on temperature). A time lag exists between the time that arterial blood reaches a target temperature and the time that the brain's parenchymal tissue equilibrates with the blood temperature. Consequently, when aggressive cooling is used, arterial blood temperature underestimates brain temperature. For an average-sized adult, cold arterial perfusion at full CO flow should be continued for 20 to 30 minutes after the "goal" arterial blood temperature is reached to ensure that the brain has had sufficient time to cool. For an anticipated circulatory arrest period of 30 to 40 minutes, a temperature of 18°C to 20°C is probably adequate; however, slightly warmer temperatures may be acceptable if a shorter period of arrest is used or if cerebral perfusion is maintained.[319] It is also good practice to monitor temperatures at multiple sites on the patient, in addition to blood temperature, to observe the relative change over time during cooling and rewarming. Furthermore, the EEG provides a good pharmacodynamic endpoint for the cerebral effects of cooling; hypothermia-induced EEG isoelectricity should be present before elective circulatory arrest commences.[319]

As the patient cools, the viscosity of blood will increase. At a temperature of 18°C, the viscosity of blood with a hematocrit of 30% to 35% increases to three to four times its normal level. Cardiac surgical textbooks suggest that hemodilution is important in minimizing any microcirculatory disturbances that may occur because of increased blood viscosity. Consequently, some clinicians may target a hematocrit value that is appropriate to the patient's temperature during DHCA, approximately 18% to 20%. However, the results of a study performed in piglets by Duebener and colleagues suggested that a hematocrit of 30% is preferable if DHCA is used.[320]

When the patient has reached an appropriate core temperature as determined by temperatures measured at multiple sites and after adequate time for equilibration, the arterial blood flow from the pump is stopped, and the patient's blood is drained into the ECC reservoir. During the period of circulatory arrest, the blood in the ECC reservoir should be recirculated to prevent stasis and maintain the desired temperature. Gas flow to the oxygenator should be discontinued to prevent profound hypocapnia. Reperfusion should be initiated with cold blood. An initial period (5-10 minutes) of cold reperfusion may enhance cerebral protection by removing accumulated metabolic products from the cerebral capillary beds while maintaining a low cerebral metabolic rate of oxygen.

The risk of neurologic injury after cardiac surgery involving DHCA extends into the postoperative period because cerebral vascular resistance is increased and cerebral blood flow is decreased for several hours after the procedure. In addition, hyperthermia, possibly secondary to a systemic inflammatory response, is common in the postoperative period and should be treated aggressively.

In an effort to reduce the period of cerebral ischemia during circulatory arrest, selective cerebral perfusion techniques have been developed. Selective antegrade cerebral perfusion can be accomplished by directly cannulating the left common carotid artery,[321] or perfusion can easily be delivered through the right common carotid artery when the aortic cannulation approach for CPB involves cannulating the axillary or innominate artery.[322] Axillary cannulation facilitates the delivery of arterial blood from the ECC to the entire circulatory system during cooling and rewarming or, with the addition of a clamp to the proximal innominate artery, selectively into the right common carotid and radial arteries. Because of the proximity of the arterial cannula to the right radial artery, arterial blood pressure monitored in the right radial artery may be significantly higher than pressure monitored in the left radial or femoral artery. Consequently, right radial arterial pressure should not be used to control perfusion during cooling and rewarming. During delivery of selective antegrade cerebral perfusion, cold arterial blood from the extracorporeal circuit should be delivered to maintain the cerebral blood pressure between 30 and 60 mm Hg. The perfusion flow rates necessary to achieve this pressure vary depending on the site or sites of arterial cannulation. Direct cannulation of only the left common carotid artery requires the least flow, whereas cannulation of multiple head vessels or of the axillary artery (which perfuses the right common carotid, right internal thoracic artery, and right arm) requires higher flow rates. Subsequently, flow rates of 150 to 1500 mL/min have been reported. Selective retrograde cerebral perfusion is delivered through a snared cannula introduced into the right atrium and advanced into the SVC; this type of perfusion can be initiated after the patient's systemic perfusion is discontinued. Cold oxygenated blood from the ECC can be administered at a flow rate (≈5 mL/kg/min) high enough to maintain SVC pressure between 35 and 40 mm Hg.[323] Although some debate remains about whether selective cerebral perfusion of any kind is necessary to achieve optimal neurologic outcome after DHCA procedures,[324] investigators generally agree that antegrade cerebral perfusion, when used properly, is superior to retrograde perfusion.[325,326]

LEFT HEART BYPASS

If a descending aortic aneurysm or aortic dissection is to be surgically replaced with a tube graft, blood flow through the patient's thoracic aorta must be interrupted. The application of vascular clamps to this major vessel acutely increases the afterload of the heart and produces global ischemia in all parts of the body distal to the clamp. Patients with compromised cardiac function or those undergoing a surgical procedure in which the duration of ischemia will be unacceptably long require some method of circulatory support. Temporary interposition of a shunt (e.g., a Gott shunt) around the area of repair is the simplest approach, but it does not offer the level of support that can be achieved with LHB or CPB.

For these procedures, the approach is usually through a left thoracotomy incision, which provides excellent access to the left atrium. The simplest approach to LHB is to withdraw blood from the left atrium with a centrifugal pump and return the blood to the patient's femoral artery. This *simple* LHB circuit gives the clinician excellent control of blood flow distal to the clamps and therefore the ability to manipulate the afterload against which the heart must work. However, the complexity of some surgical procedures requires that full CPB be used.

Surgical complications are not uncommon in these patients and include hypoxia, hypothermia, and exsanguination. A double-lumen endotracheal tube or bronchial blocker is often used to isolate the left lung from the right. After left thoracotomy and exposure of the aneurysm, ventilation of the left lung is discontinued. Patients with preexisting lung dysfunction or traumatic lung injury associated with aortic dissection may have difficulty maintaining oxygenation with a single lung. Because of the large surgical exposure required and the sometimes extended duration of the procedure, it is not unusual for the patient to become hypothermic. Furthermore, these procedures carry an elevated risk of blood loss and the consequent need for rapid replacement of fluids and blood products. It is often advisable to use *complete* LHB to reduce these risks. Currently the use of LHB has decreased in clinical practice because of the widespread application of endovascular techniques for the treatment of descending aorta pathologies.

Fig. 54.18 illustrates the simple-circuit and complete-circuit approaches to LHB. The major difference between a complete LHB circuit and the standard CPB circuit is the position of the reservoir in the circuit and the position of the venous cannula in the patient. In a complete LHB circuit, the reservoir does not receive the blood returning from the patient as in the CPB circuit. With the reservoir out of the pathway of the blood, the effective surface area of the ECC is reduced; this reduction attenuates contact activation of the blood and minimizes the need for high-dose heparinization.

In both circuits, the management goal is the same—to keep arterial blood pressure higher than 60 mm Hg both proximal and distal to the aortic cross-clamp throughout the procedure. However, the complete LHB circuit gives the clinician the ability to manage hypoxia, hypothermia, and blood loss. The addition of an oxygenator to the circuit makes it possible to augment the patient's ventilation and oxygenation. The heat exchanger is used to maintain normothermia. The reservoir facilitates the addition of large volumes of fluid or blood products in the event of hemorrhage, hypovolemia, or both.

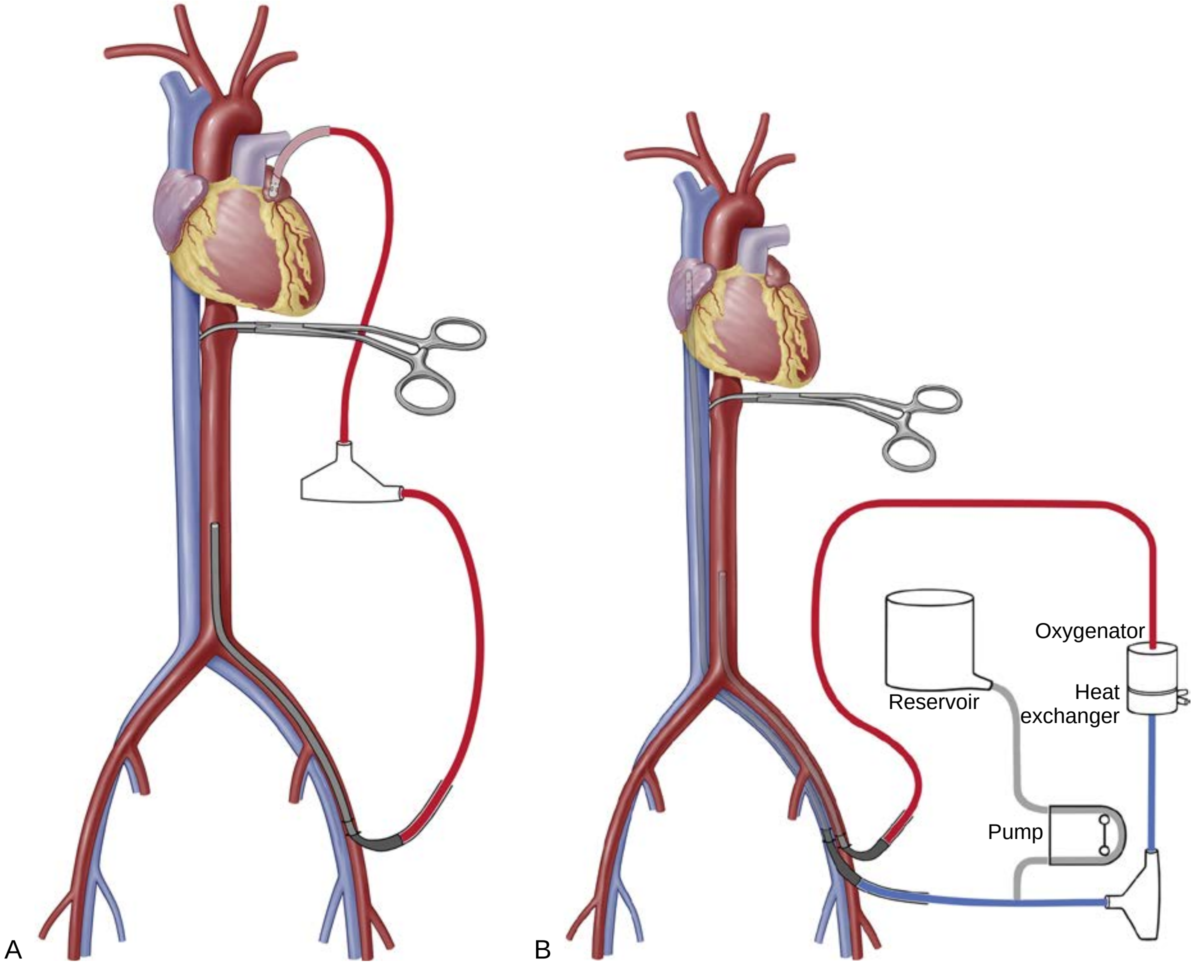


Fig. 54.18 Left heart bypass (LHB) diagram. (A) Simple LHB (left atrium, cone, and femoral artery). (B) Complex LHB (including an oxygenator, heat exchanger, and reservoir for fluid administration).

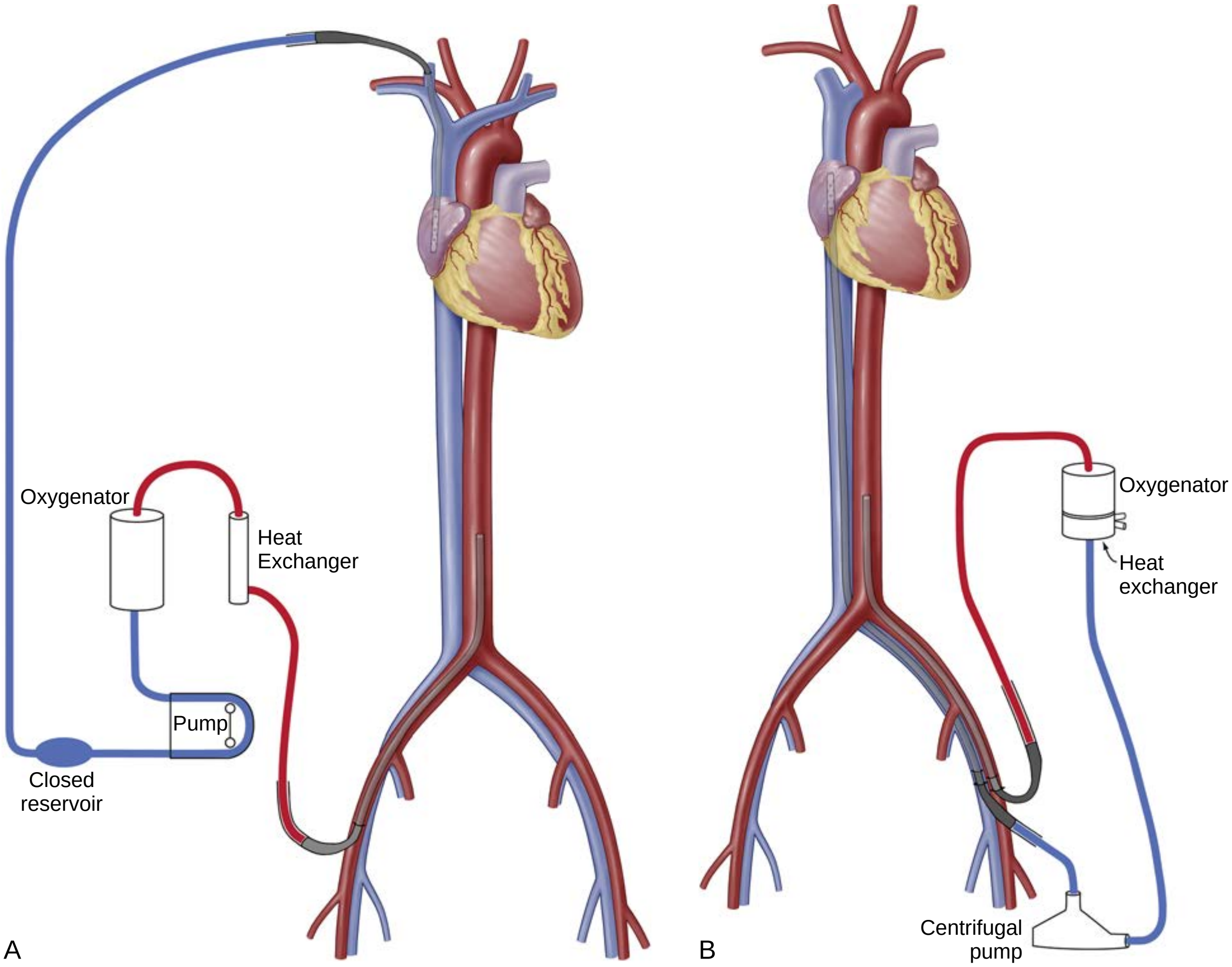


Fig. 54.19 (A) Patient cannulated through the internal jugular vein and femoral artery, with a traditional extracorporeal membrane oxygenation circuit. (B) Patient cannulated through the femoral vein and femoral artery, with a simple cardiopulmonary support circuit.

CARDIOPULMONARY SUPPORT AND EXTRACORPOREAL MEMBRANE OXYGENATION CIRCUITS

For all practical purposes, no difference exists between a CPS circuit and an ECMO circuit. Both consist of a CPB circuit without a reservoir, an arterial line filter, or any of the ancillary pumps that are used during cardiac surgery (i.e., pump suction, vent, and cardioplegia). Because the reservoir is removed from the circuit, these systems are considered closed. Closed circuits have a static internal volume and cannot unload the patient's vascular system.

The removal of the reservoir and filters from the circuit has advantages and disadvantages. The chief advantage is that the surface area of the circuit is significantly reduced, which facilitates a reduced anticoagulation regimen with an initial heparin dose of 75 to 150 units/kg and a continuous infusion of heparin at 25 to 75 units/kg/h to maintain ACTs of 180 to 250 seconds.[†]

The chief disadvantage is that the closed circuits are less able to trap emboli. Special precautions should be taken when connecting a closed ECC to the patient's cannulas, injecting fluids and medications into the circuit, or sampling from the venous line. Additionally, because of the reduced anticoagulation regimen, blood stasis in the circuit should be avoided, and periods of low flow should be minimized.

In intensive care settings, ECMO or CPS is used to support the heart, lungs, or both for days or weeks. The newer generation of centrifugal pumps and hollow-fiber oxygenators perform acceptably well during these long-term applications and are becoming more commonly used in desperate situations (Fig. 54.19).

Specific Cardiovascular Disease States

CORONARY ARTERY DISEASE

Pathophysiology of Coronary Disease

Coronary Anatomy. Understanding the coronary anatomy is important to understand the pathophysiology of CAD and the anesthetic care of patients undergoing myocardial revascularization. Two main coronary arteries take off from the aorta and supply the myocardium: the left main coronary artery (LMCA) and the RCA. The LMCA subsequently divides into the left anterior descending (LAD) coronary artery and the left circumflex artery (LCx). The LAD courses down the interventricular groove and gives rise to the diagonal and septal branches. The diagonal branches of the LAD supply the anterolateral aspect of the heart. The septal branches supply the interventricular septum, as well as the bundle branches and the Purkinje system. The LAD itself terminates at the apex of the LV. The other branch of the LMCA, the LCx, courses along the left AV groove and gives rise to one to three obtuse marginal branches that supply the lateral wall of the LV. In 45% of patients, the sinus node arterial supply arises from the LCx. In 15% of patients, the LCx gives rise to the posterior descending artery, which supplies the posterior inferior aspect of the LV ("left-dominant" system).

[†] For Extracorporeal Life Support Organization (ELSO) anticoagulation guidelines see https://www.elso.org/Portals/0/Files/elsoanticoagulationguideline8-2014-table-contents.pdf

The RCA traverses the right AV groove and supplies the right anterior wall of the right ventricle through its acute marginal branches. In 85% of the population, the RCA gives rise to the posterior descending artery supplying the posterior inferior aspect of the LV ("right-dominant" system). The AV node arterial branch arises from the dominant artery to supply the node, the bundle of His, and the proximal part of the bundle branches. In addition, in 55% of the population, the sinus node arterial supply arises from the RCA.

Determinants of Myocardial Oxygen Supply and Demand. The balance of oxygen supply versus demand is somewhat complex (Figs. 54.20 and 54.21). Oxygen supply is determined by the oxygen content of arterial blood and by coronary blood flow. Extraction of oxygen from arterial blood is maximal at rest. As demand increases (with exercise or hemodynamic stress), the oxygen supply to the myocardium must also increase.

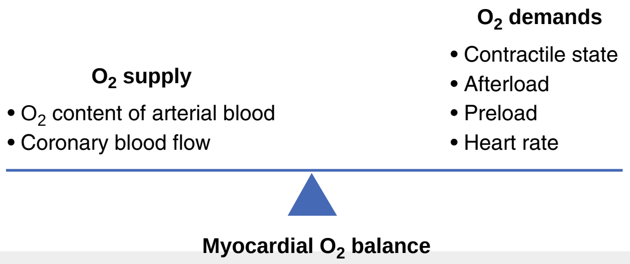


Fig. 54.20 **Factors determining myocardial oxygen (O_2) supply and demand.** (From Mittnacht AJC, Weiner M, London MJ, et al. Anesthesia for myocardial revascularization. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:524.)

Determinants of blood flow in normal coronary arteries include the pressure differential across the coronary bed (i.e., the coronary perfusion pressure) and coronary vascular resistance. The coronary perfusion pressure for the LV is the aortic blood pressure during diastole minus the LV end-diastolic pressure (LVEDP); thus, elevations in LVEDP impede subendocardial blood flow. Because coronary stenosis causes vessels to dilate maximally distal to the stenosis, manipulating coronary perfusion pressure is an important means of controlling coronary blood flow (and preventing or treating myocardial ischemia). However, because the determinants of myocardial oxygen balance interact in a complex manner, altering any one of them can have multiple effects. For example, a rise in blood pressure increases coronary blood flow but also increases afterload, thereby elevating wall tension and oxygen demand.

The duration of diastole is another important factor affecting oxygen supply to the myocardium because 70% to 80% of coronary arterial blood flow occurs during the diastolic phase of the cardiac cycle. During the systolic phase, cardiac contraction increases intraventricular cavitary pressure and coronary vascular resistance, thus impeding myocardial perfusion. The total time per minute spent in diastole is a function of the heart rate, but a nonlinear relationship exists between heart rate and the duration of diastole (Fig. 54.22). This is a major reason for the use of β-blockers as antiischemic drugs, both for long-term therapy and for preventing even small increases in heart rate during the perioperative period.

The oxygen content of blood depends on hemoglobin-bound oxygen and, to a lesser extent, dissolved oxygen. Although a high hemoglobin level gives the blood high oxygen-carrying capacity, the minimum level of hemoglobin necessary to avoid ischemia has not been well defined in clinical studies. Factors that affect this limit include the severity of CAD, the heart rate, perfusion pressure, and myocardial wall thickness and tension. Furthermore, delivery of oxygen to myocardial tissue also depends on a high partial pressure of oxygen (PO_2), and actual release of oxygen from hemoglobin occurs according to the oxyhemoglobin

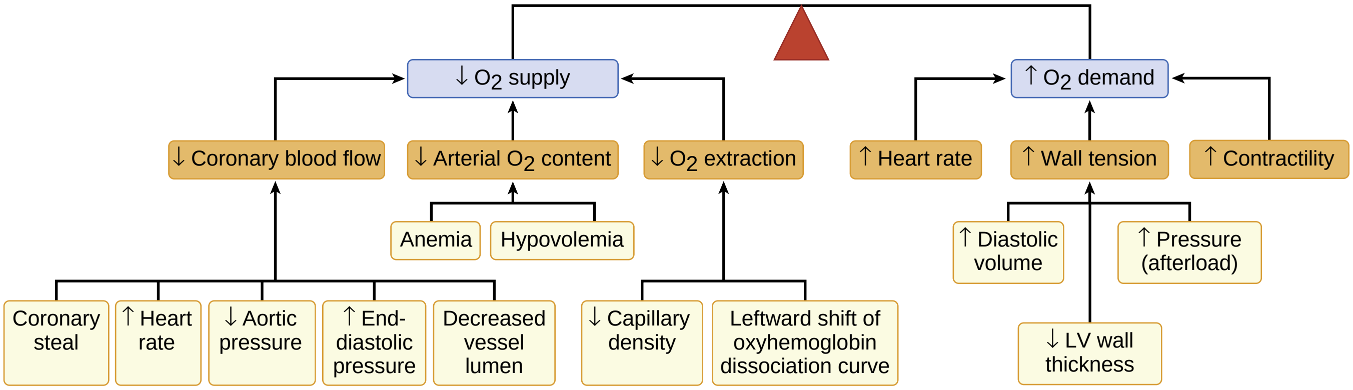


Fig. 54.21 **Summary of factors that affect myocardial oxygen supply and demand.** ***LV,*** **Left ventricular.** (From Green MS, Okum GS, Horrow JC. Anesthetic management of myocardial revascularization. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:319–358; and Modified from Crystal GJ. Cardiovascular physiology. In: Miller RD, ed. *Atlas of Anesthesia,* Vol 8, *Cardiothoracic Anesthesia.* Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 1999:1.)

dissociation curve. A leftward shift of this curve caused by alkalosis, hypothermia, or low levels of 2,3-diphosphoglycerate decreases the release of oxygen.

In patients undergoing myocardial revascularization, reductions in myocardial oxygen supply may occur because of hypotension, tachycardia, anemia, or coronary vasoconstriction, as well as increases in demand secondary to tachycardia or increased afterload. Although myocardial ischemia is certainly possible without any changes in systemic hemodynamics, vigilant monitoring for imbalances in myocardial oxygen supply versus demand, as well as monitoring for the development of ischemia, is necessary throughout the perioperative period. Myocardial ischemia may be detected by ECG monitoring and ST-segment analysis, as well as by TEE monitoring for the development of regional wall motion abnormalities.

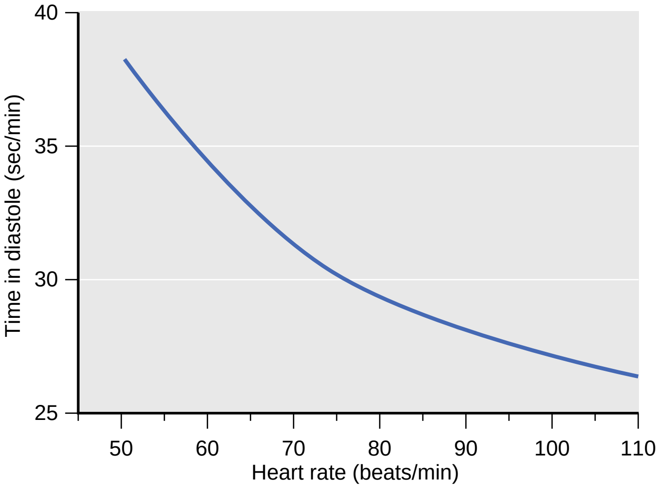


Fig. 54.22 Total time spent in diastole each minute plotted as a function of heart rate in beats per minute. The reduction in diastolic interval leads to diminished left ventricular blood flow as heart rate increases. (From Green MS, Okum GS, Horrow JC. Anesthetic management of myocardial revascularization. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:298.)

On-Pump Coronary Artery Bypass Grafting Surgery

Preoperative Evaluation. Typically, patients undergoing CABG have had extensive preoperative assessment of their cardiac disease (see Chapter 31). Coronary artery anatomy should be noted, particularly a high-grade lesion in the LMCA or proximal LAD coronary artery or triple-vessel disease. Ventricular function, assessed by angiography or echocardiography, is usually recorded as an estimated EF. Other cardiac disease discovered in the preoperative workup should be noted and understood, including valvular abnormalities such as concurrent MR, aortic stenosis (AS), aortic insufficiency, atrial septal defect (ASD) or ventricular septal defect (VSD), or ventricular aneurysm. The anesthesiologist should be aware of any abnormal cardiac rhythm on the ECG or noted in the history, such as atrial fibrillation or other supraventricular tachycardia (which may lead to hemodynamic instability or increase the patient's risk of an embolic neurologic complication), left bundle branch block or a prolonged PR interval (which may progress to a more advanced heart block), or complete heart block, which may be underlying a paced rhythm. Antiarrhythmic therapy, with either pharmacologic drugs or devices such as a pacemaker or automated implantable cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD), should be noted.

Various models for assessing overall risk have been developed that include certain factors associated with increased risk: poor LV function (history of CHF or LVEF <30%), advanced age, obesity, emergency surgery, combined procedures (e.g., valve repair or replacement combined with CABG), prior cardiac surgery, and history of diabetes or renal failure (Table 54.13).[327,328]

Premedication. In the current era, cardiac surgical patients often have same-day admissions. Frequently, the only premedication they receive is midazolam on the morning of the surgical procedure, to allay anxiety. However, small additional doses of midazolam, fentanyl, or both may be administered during line placement, especially if the central line is placed before the induction of general anesthesia (see the section on induction of anesthesia and the

TABLE 54.13 Risk Factors Used in Various Risk-Stratification Schemas for Coronary Artery Bypass Graft Surgery

	Montreal	Cleveland	Newark	New York	Northern New England	Society of Thoracic Surgery
Emergency	+	+	+	+	+	+
Poor LV function or congestive heart failure	+	+	+	+	+	+
Redo operation	+	+	+	+	+	+
Gender or small size	–	+	+	+	+	+
Valve disease	–	+	+	+	–	–
Advanced age	+	+	+	+	+	+
Renal disease	–	+	+	+	+	–
Obesity	+	–	+	–	–	–

LV, Left ventricular.

Modified from Green MS, Okum GS, Horrow JC. Anesthetic management of myocardial revascularization. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:293–318.

prebypass period); this may be particularly important in patients with CAD, to minimize undesirable sympathetic stimulation that could cause tachycardia and hypertension. However, administration of these drugs should be incremental and judicious in patients with low CO or significant pulmonary hypertension.

Induction and maintenance of anesthesia. No single anesthetic agent or combination of anesthetic drugs is suitable for anesthetic induction and maintenance in every patient undergoing CABG surgery. Induction of anesthesia for coronary revascularization is often achieved by administering a benzodiazepine (typically midazolam) in combination with a narcotic, usually fentanyl, and a muscle relaxant.[328] However, either etomidate or propofol in combination with a narcotic has frequently been used. The goal is to avoid wide swings in hemodynamics with induction and with subsequent intubation. Typically, volatile agents are used throughout the prebypass, bypass, and postbypass periods. In addition, the volatile anesthetics have several cardioprotective effects, including triggering the preconditioning cascade and mitigating reperfusion injury.[146] Additional midazolam may be given to ensure that intraoperative awareness is avoided.

One factor in the choice of specific anesthetic agents and doses is the patient's preexisting LV function. Patients with normal LV function can have a significant sympathetic response to surgical stimulation that results in hypertension and tachycardia. Use of β-blockers, additional propofol, higher doses of a volatile anesthetic agent, or vasodilators may be warranted if this situation develops. Conversely, in patients with poor LV function, hypotension may develop with the administration of anesthetic agents because of a reduction in CO or vasodilation, or both. Such patients may require vasopressor or inotropic pharmacologic support, or both.

Another factor in the choice of anesthetic agent is the possibility of early extubation within 4 to 6 hours of arrival in the ICU (so-called fast tracking). Patients who have good preexisting cardiac function and who will be undergoing CABG as an isolated procedure are usually candidates for fast tracking. This strategy necessitates the use of agents in dosages that would not keep the patient sedated or render the patient unable to ventilate adequately for a prolonged period. Early extubation may not be appropriate in patients with poor cardiac function, severe pulmonary disease, or obesity or in those undergoing emergency procedures, CABG combined with other procedures, or redo operations.

Monitoring. Monitoring for patients scheduled to undergo coronary revascularization surgery has evolved since the 1960s, in an effort to detect intraoperative ischemia. The standard American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) monitors and invasive arterial blood pressure monitoring (with noninvasive blood pressure backup) are always used. Typically, both leads II and V_5 are used for continuous monitoring, as well as automated ST-segment analysis to improve the chances of detecting ischemia.[329]

PA catheters are used less commonly now than in the past because several studies have shown that using such catheters does not improve outcome.[330] In fact, the risks inherent in the use of these catheters may actually exceed the benefits.[24] Certainly, the absolute PAP is not diagnostic of ischemia, although waveform changes may be more predictive. For example, the appearance of a new V wave on the PCWP tracing indicates ischemic papillary muscle dysfunction. In addition, specialized PA catheters allow derivation of several indices of cardiac function, including CO, cardiac index, and $S\bar{v}O_2$. Furthermore, some clinicians believe that the PA catheter is useful in the postoperative period when TEE is not available for continuous monitoring of the patient. In summary, use of the PA catheter for routine CABG surgeries has devolved over the years due to risks inherent in misuse of the information that the catheter provides. Practitioners in individual institutions have developed preferences and policies regarding the use of PA catheters in cardiac surgery. Use of the PA catheter mandates that a risk-benefit assessment be made for each individual patient when placing these catheters.

Regional wall motion abnormalities detected by TEE are more sensitive to ischemia than ECG changes or PA catheter waveform and pressure changes.[329] TEE can be used to interrogate regions of the heart representative of all three major coronary arteries simultaneously. This technology is commonly used throughout revascularization procedures to assess regional wall motion by qualitative inspection of radial shortening and wall thickening, and it is particularly useful after revascularization. In addition, TEE is used to assess ventricular preload and contractility, diagnose any valvular abnormalities, evaluate calcific and atherosclerotic lesions at the aortic cannulation sites, and detect LV thrombus and uncommon congenital abnormalities (e.g., ASD or VSD, persistent left SVC). See Chapter 37 for details on the perioperative use of TEE.

Surgical Considerations. Conventional (on-pump) CABG is the most commonly performed procedure in cardiac surgery. A full median sternotomy performed with a sternal saw is standard. Ventilation of the lungs is halted briefly during sawing of the sternum to avoid a pleural tear. An oscillating saw may be used in patients with a previous sternotomy (redo). The risks posed by redo sternotomy include perforation of the right ventricle, damage to existing vein grafts, and ventricular fibrillation from the transmission of electrocautery energy through preexisting sternal wires. Therefore, PRBCs (2 units) should be immediately available, and external defibrillation pads should be positioned before preparation and draping. Furthermore, surgical manipulation of previous vein grafts may result in embolization of atheroma and resultant ischemia. If a complication does occur during sternotomy or exposure of the heart and cannulation sites, emergency bypass may be established by cannulating a femoral artery and vein.

If an IMA is to be used, the surgical table is elevated and often rotated somewhat to the left to facilitate surgical comfort in performing the dissection. Tidal volumes are also reduced to facilitate exposure. Heparin administration usually occurs before the IMA pedicle is clamped, and papaverine may be injected into this vessel. The prebypass period for on-pump CABG may be relatively short (<1 hour) or may require several hours for dissection of the left IMA, right IMA, radial arteries, or any combination of these vessels. In addition, for most CABG procedures, adequate venous conduits must be harvested, and endoscopic saphenectomy is now common.

Before aortic cannulation, TEE or epiaortic echocardiography, or both, provides critical information regarding the presence and precise location of calcification or mobile atheromas in the aortic arch. The surgeon may request TEE guidance for placement of the retrograde catheter into the coronary sinus; furthermore, if a persistent left SVC is diagnosed, this abnormality may render retrograde cardioplegia problematic.[328] After CPB is initiated, TEE may also be used to ensure correct placement of the LV vent, as well as to verify the absence of LV thrombus in patients with a recent anterior wall MI or aneurysm.

Surgical and technical complications of CABG surgery that manifest as ischemia include (1) poor-quality proximal or distal anastomoses of the grafts, (2) inadvertent incision of the coronary back wall leading to coronary dissection, (3) suturing of the coronary artery closed, (4) inadequate vein graft length resulting in stretching of the vein when the heart is filled, (5) excessive vein graft length leading to kinking of the vein, and (6) vein graft thrombosis.[327] CPB may need to be reinstituted to correct surgical causes of ischemia after revascularization. Heparin should be immediately available if emergency reinstitution of CPB becomes necessary.

After bypass, other causes of ischemia include (1) incomplete revascularization resulting from ungraftable vessels or diffuse distal disease, (2) coronary embolization of air or atheromatous debris, (3) coronary spasm, (4) mechanical factors such as vein graft stretching or occlusion of IMA flow secondary to overinflation of the lungs, and (5) thrombus formation.[327] The treatment of ischemia includes administering various drugs: nitroglycerin or vasopressors when SVR is either high or low; nitroglycerin, a calcium channel blocker (diltiazem, nifedipine, or nicardipine), or both to treat coronary spasm; a vasoconstrictor (usually phenylephrine) to "push" intracoronary air through the vasculature when air embolism is suspected; a β-blocker (usually esmolol) to treat tachycardia; and one or more inotropic agents to increase CO if necessary. In addition, AV sequential pacing may be used to improve rate, rhythm, and hemodynamic stability when appropriate. At times, mechanical support with intraaortic balloon counterpulsation or an LV and/or RV assist device (LAVD or RVAD) may become necessary. Residual effects of cardioplegia, a ventricular aneurysm, or pericarditis may cause ST-segment elevation without actual ischemia.

Off-Pump Coronary Artery Bypass Surgery, Minimally Invasive Coronary Artery Bypass Surgery, and Hybrid Coronary Revascularization

Off-Pump Coronary Artery Bypass Surgery. Awareness of the deleterious effects of CPB has driven advocacy for alternative myocardial revascularization techniques, particularly OPCAB surgery. Proponents of OPCAB cite the low morbidity and mortality of patients who undergo this procedure, as well as faster recovery and reduced procedural costs. Data from the STS suggest that approximately 22% of coronary revascularization procedures are being performed off pump.[331]

The midline sternotomy is the traditional approach used for OPCAB procedures. Potential sources of bypass grafts include the right and left mammary arteries, the saphenous veins, and the radial arteries. The pericardium is incised, reflected, and secured to the edges of the mediastinum. Special sternal retractors allow the placement of adjustable and flexible fixation devices that work by direct surface pressure on the myocardium, by suction, or by both methods. These devices stabilize the target vessel and allow the surgeon to "verticalize" the cardiac apex out of the pericardial well to access the posteriorly and laterally located vessels (Fig. 54.23). Dosing of heparin for OPCAB cases is institution specific; both full-dose and low-dose regimens are currently in use.

When the target vessel and surrounding myocardium are stabilized, an elastic ligature is placed circumferentially around the coronary artery to minimize bleeding as an arteriotomy is performed. Surgical visualization is also optimized by the application of a blower or mister, held by a surgical assistant, that releases sterile irrigation fluid aerosolized in carbon dioxide gas. Under these conditions, one or more distal coronary anastomoses are performed. The proximal connections of saphenous vein grafts or free arterial conduits are anastomosed directly to the aorta with a side-biting clamp. Alternatively, an indirect proximal connection is made by creating a T-graft (end-to-side anastomosis) to a mammary artery that is still connected to a vascular pedicle on the subclavian artery.

Surgical considerations include (1) obtaining adequate exposure of the anastomosis site, (2) restraining cardiac motion during anastomosis, and (3) preserving myocardium during coronary flow interruption.[332] To achieve the first two goals, the surgeon must use maneuvers that may significantly compromise hemodynamics by several mechanisms, including impairment of biventricular filling, particularly in the thin-walled, easily compressed right ventricle. In addition, altered ventricular filling can result from verticalization of the cardiac ventricular apex (which may kink or partially obstruct venous return) (see Fig. 54.23). Furthermore, myocardial ischemia occurs in native coronary arteries and is exacerbated by temporary elastic suture ligation of a target vessel.[328] Ischemia of distal myocardial segments can occur during anastomosis of bypass grafts, and the degree of functional deterioration depends on the severity of the stenosis and the extent of collateralization.[332]

Therefore, the anesthesiologist must take measures to prevent severe hypotension to minimize the reduction in coronary perfusion caused by these hemodynamic changes and intraoperative myocardial ischemia. Typically, intravascular volume loading (either crystalloid or colloid) and a head-down position of the patient are used, and it is also common to administer a vasoconstrictor drug (either phenylephrine or norepinephrine). When increased mitral insufficiency further exacerbates the hemodynamic changes, repositioning the heart is a simple maneuver that may increase ventricular filling and normalize ventriculoannular geometry.

Monitoring of the patient includes a five-lead ECG and an invasive arterial pressure catheter. PAP and CO measurements or continuous pulse contour CO can be considered.[332] TEE is beneficial, but views are limited during certain portions of the surgical procedure; verticalization of the heart and the application of external compression footplates cause suboptimal imaging. The midesophageal

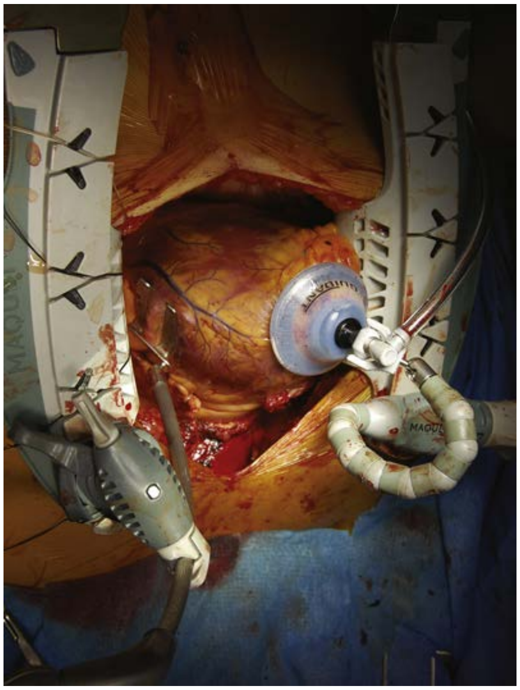


Fig. 54.23 Image depicting the first obtuse marginal (OM1) anastomosis during off-pump coronary artery bypass grafting with a saphenous vein graft. The view is from the head of the patient. The previously completed left internal mammary artery-to-left anterior descending coronary artery anastomosis is seen. The Maquet access device (MAQUET, Wayne, NJ) uses suction to position the heart (verticalization) for easy access to the circumflex coronary artery system. (Courtesy Alexander Mittnacht, MD, Mount Sinai School of Medicine, New York; From Mittnacht AJC, Weiner M, London MJ, et al. Anesthesia for myocardial revascularization. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:524.)

imaging view, rather than the transgastric view, may be best for continuous TEE monitoring while distal coronary anastomoses are performed.

Persistent or worsening ECG change or impending cardiovascular collapse warrants quick action on the part of the anesthesiologist and surgeon. One option is to have a low threshold for the insertion of small, flexible intracoronary stents into the open coronary anastomosis to allow some distal segment flow. Instituting full or partial CPB and placing an IABP are other therapeutic options. Emergency conversion from OPCAB to CABG with CPB, which occurs in approximately 3% of these cases,[333,334] is not an innocuous event. Such unplanned conversions are reportedly associated with an elevated risk of death, stroke, renal failure, wound infections, and respiratory failure.

The short-term outcomes and long-term efficacy of OPCAB surgery continue to be investigated and debated in the literature. Meta-analyses have noted no significant differences in 30-day mortality.[335,336] In the largest multicenter randomized trial to compare on-pump CABG with OPCAB, no difference was seen in 30-day mortality or the composite outcome of death and complications.[337] In contrast, very large observational analyses do suggest a mortality benefit. Hannan and associates found a mortality benefit in 49,830 patients from the New York State registry by using a risk-adjusted analysis (i.e., Cox proportional hazard models and propensity analysis).[338] However, the need for repeat revascularization was greater among OPCAB patients (93.6%) than CABG patients (89.9%).[338] Several large retrospective reviews of traditional CABG versus OPCAB procedures have found a gender-specific survival benefit for women who undergo OPCAB surgery, compared with those who undergo on-pump CABG.[339-341]

A recent 5-year trial of more than 4000 patients from 19 different countries found no difference in stroke, MI, renal failure, repeat revascularization, and death at 5 years of follow up of patients who underwent on-pump versus off-pump CABG.[342]

Minimally Invasive Coronary Artery Bypass Surgery. The most popular alternative approach to sternotomy is the minimally invasive coronary artery bypass (MIDCAB) through a left anterior thoracotomy, which allows direct-access IMA harvesting and grafting to the LAD artery. Some surgeons harvest the left IMA (LIMA) by using robot-assisted endoscopic technology before making the small incision to complete the LIMA-to-LAD anastomosis through the left anterior thoracotomy incision. In these cases, deflation of the left lung is required for visualization of the anastomosis, accomplished with a double-lumen endotracheal tube or a bronchial blocker. In addition, carbon dioxide is insufflated into the left hemithorax during the period while the lung is deflated.

Usually, the MIDCAB technique involves grafting of only a single vessel, and exposure for this anastomosis may be suboptimal.[332] Challenges for the anesthesiologist in MIDCAB cases include the need for single-lung ventilation while the LIMA is dissected, and the anastomosis is performed. Because the graft is only to the LAD in these cases, no extreme positioning of the heart occurs that could significantly compromise hemodynamic status. However, external defibrillator or pacing pads should be attached to the patient before preparing and draping because surgical access to the heart is limited during these procedures.[343]

Since the MIDCAB procedures were first introduced, as the technology has evolved so have the surgical techniques and the anesthetic techniques. Still, there are a variety of different ways to manage anesthetics for MIDCAB operations and different institutions have different techniques that they employ to take care of these patients.

In addition to standard ASA monitors, these patients are monitored with an arterial line (preferably in the radial artery), a central line introducer, and potentially a PA catheter.

Patients presenting for MIDCABs are induced in a routine fashion, as for any patient undergoing CABG surgery. In order to maximize surgical exposure by lung isolation, cardiac anesthesiologists prefer to intubate with double lumen endotracheal tubes or use bronchial blockers for MIDCAB surgeries.[344] Maintenance of anesthesia must keep in mind that the MIDCAB is an off-pump case. Hemodynamic control is achieved by fluid administration and pharmacology. Norepinephrine and phenylephrine have both been used effectively for these cases. Procedures for extubation after MIDCAB vary from institution to institution.

Outcomes of MIDCAB. Multiple studies over the years have evaluated the outcomes of MIDCAB, both in the United

States and abroad. MIDCAB has shown promise when compared to the conventional CABG surgery. MIDCAB is associated with less morbidity and mortality when compared to on-pump and off-pump CABG procedures.[345,346]

TOTAL ENDOSCOPIC CORONARY ARTERY BYPASS. Total endoscopic coronary artery bypass (TECAB) is currently the most minimally invasive approach to performing CABG. TECAB is performed via a few port sites (Fig. 54.24),[347] with the surgeon remotely controlling the ports via a robotic system.[347]

TECAB is performed in three different ways: arrested heart TECAB, beating heart TECAB with CPB, and beating heart TECAB without CPB. Defibrillation pads are placed on the patient in the preoperative period. In cases where the heart is arrested, a remotely accessed perfusion technique is used with the help of an endoaortic occlusion balloon clamp (EAOBC) (Fig. 54.25).[347]

The EAOBC is placed via the femoral vessels, or via the axillary artery if accessing the femoral vessels or the descending aorta is contraindicated or not possible. TEE can provide useful information to guide placement of the EAOBC.

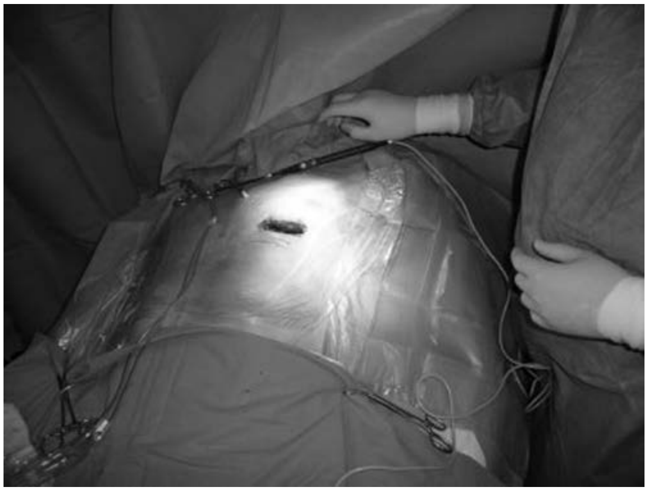


Fig. 54.24 TECAB is performed via a few port sites, with the surgeon remotely controlling the ports via a robotic system.

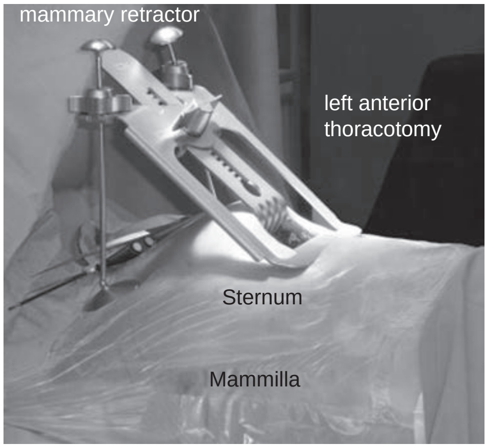


Fig. 54.25 Remotely accessed perfusion technique with an endoaortic occlusion balloon clamp (EAOBC).

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS. Anesthetic management of patients undergoing TECAB differs from general anesthesia for routine cardiac cases. General anesthesia is induced in routine fashion. Since one lung ventilation is needed for these procedures, this goal is achieved by either using a double lumen endotracheal tube, or a bronchial blocker, similar to the MIDCAB. At least one large-bore peripheral intravenous line, a central line with an introducer, and bilateral radial arterial lines are required for TECAB procedures. Bilateral radial arterial lines are used to monitor the position of the EAOBC to ensure that it doesn't migrate and occlude the innominate artery. TECAB cases may require placement of a PA vent or a coronary sinus catheter. Supplemental regional anesthesia has been reported to have been successfully employed in TECAB cases, which can facilitate early extubation in these patients.[347] Extubation of TECAB patients is mostly dictated by patients' comorbidities.

TEE IN TECAB. TEE serves as a crucial tool in the management of patients undergoing minimally invasive procedures. In addition to the usual monitoring and diagnostic capabilities of TEE, it is also used to monitor major vascular structures and to guide cannulas and catheters during the cannulation process.

In cases where the EAOBC is used, TEE provides real-time imaging of the position of the balloon, which serves as a critical monitor for migration or malposition.

OUTCOMES OF TECAB. Similar to MIDCAB there is a paucity of large-scale randomized studies looking at the outcome data for TECAB procedures. Studies looking at smaller number of patients are promising, though acknowledge their limitations.[348]

Hybrid Coronary Revascularization. Hybrid coronary revascularization combines MIDCAB techniques with catheter-based interventions.[349] Ideally, a hybrid operating room is used. The surgical component of the hybrid procedure may be offered in a completely endoscopic fashion, using robotic technology. The goal of such procedures is a very short recovery time.[349] Although the perioperative results and intermediate-term outcomes of hybrid procedures appear to meet the standards of CABG performed with CPB, no data on long-term outcomes are available.

Patients undergoing OPCAB, MIDCAB, or hybrid coronary revascularization do not undergo CPB, and thus may suffer from temperature alterations that cannot be treated using the CPB perfusate temperature. Therefore, heating blankets for patients and a warm operating room environment are essential to prevent unacceptable reductions in body temperature.

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT OF HYBRID CORONARY REVASCULARIZATION. As mentioned earlier, HCAR combines coronary revascularization via a minimally invasive surgical approach and catheter-based coronary intervention. HCAR can be done in a staged manner.

A two-stage model used commonly in the early days of the procedure requires the patient to have either surgery or PCI and then return at a later date for the other part of the procedure. This entails two separate admissions, two separate procedures, along with the concomitant patient and family inconvenience. Anesthesiologists are involved in the surgical procedures in a hybrid revascularization, though they are rarely involved in the PCI. The one-stage model allows for both the surgical and the PCI revascularization to be done in one admission, typically in one sitting in a hybrid operating room. Patients can be exposed to one anesthetic and can undergo the surgical procedure and the PCI sequentially, in either order.

HYBRID CORONARY REVASCULARIZATION OUTCOMES. Though large-scale studies are lacking at this time, smaller institutional-based studies looking at outcomes are increasing, thus adding to the body of literature in this regard. A review of the available data suggests that HCAR outcomes are promising, which is not surprising since HCAR takes advantage of the benefits of CABG and PCI while minimizing the risks of each. If outcomes are similar or superior to those of conventional revascularization, then a careful cost-benefit analysis will take place to determine the role that HCAR holds in our armamentarium.[350]

CARDIAC VALVE LESIONS

Mitral Valve Disease

In the United States and other industrialized nations, mitral valve disease is usually caused by primary degenerative (i.e., age-associated) or inherited mitral valvular abnormalities or, increasingly, by ischemic heart disease resulting in functional mitral incompetence. In developing countries, conversely, rheumatic heart disease is relatively more prevalent and therefore a more common cause of mitral valve disease.[351] Primary or “organic” mitral valve disease involves abnormalities in the valve itself or in its subvalvular structural components.[352] Mitral valve prolapse, myxomatous degeneration of the mitral valve, rheumatic mitral insufficiency, cleft mitral valve associated with an AV septal defect, and any infiltrative or fibrotic processes caused by systemic diseases are all associated with inherent structural abnormalities of the mitral valve.

Anatomy of the Mitral Valve

Mitral valve anatomy includes the leaflets, commissures, chordae, annulus, papillary muscles, and the LV. The mitral valve has two leaflets, the anterior mitral leaflet (AML) and the posterior mitral leaflet (PML). Both leaflets are subdivided according to the Carpentier classification. The PML is divided into three scallops: the anterior or medial scallop (P1), the middle scallop (P2), and the posterior or lateral scallop (P3). The corresponding AML sections that oppose these PML scallops are similarly called A1, A2, and A3 (Figs. 54.26 and 54.27). The AML is broad in shape, occupies a larger portion of the mitral valve area (MVA) than the PML, yet attaches itself to only twofifths of the annulus. The PML, though smaller in area, is crescentic in shape and attaches to threefifths of the annulus. Fig. 54.28[353] shows the components of the mitral valve leaflets using three-dimensional echocardiography. Common nomenclature is used to ensure accurate communication between the surgeon and the echocardiographer.

The commissures of the mitral valve define the area where the leaflets come together at their annular insertion sites. Chordae tendineae originate from the papillary muscle heads and attach to the mitral leaflets. Chordae are generally divided into three types. Primary chordae attach to the free margins of the leaflets, thus preventing the prolapse of the margins and ensuring alignment of the “rough edges” for coaptation. Secondary chordae attach to the body or the ventricular surfaces of the two leaflets and prevent billowing during systole, additionally providing a reduction in tension. Tertiary or basal chordae extend from the papillary muscle to the annulus of the valve.

The mitral annulus is the anatomical junction between the LA and the LV and attaches to the mitral valve leaflets in an anterior and a posterior segment. The anterior segment also provides the attachment to the fibrous trigones. There are two fibrous trigones, the right and the left. Parts of the mitral, tricuspid, aortic annuli, and the membranous portion of the interventricular septum comprise the right fibrous trigone. The fibrous left border of the aortic-mitral curtain makes up the left fibrous trigone. The fibrous skeleton of the heart is not continuous in the region of the posterior mitral annulus, thus this area is relatively weaker and prone to enlarge with the dilatation of the left heart. The overall shape of the mitral annulus is saddle-like, and during systole, the mitral annulus contracts as the commissures move toward the apex.

The anterolateral and the posteromedial papillary muscles attach to the LV free wall between the middle third and the apex of the ventricle. The anterolateral papillary muscle has one body (or head) while the posteromedial muscle can have two or more bodies. Blood supply to the anterolateral muscle can originate from one or more branches of the left coronary artery, while the posteromedial papillary muscle only has a single blood supply (i.e., from the circumflex coronary artery). This explains the vulnerability of the posteromedial papillary muscle to ischemia and infarction. Due to the intricate connections of the papillary muscles to the LV, changes in ventricular geometry can cause distortion and abnormal functioning of the mitral valve.[354]

Mitral Stenosis

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY. The disease process of rheumatic mitral stenosis (MS) includes thickening, commissural fusion, and increased rigidity of the mitral valve leaflets, as well as thickening, fusion, and contracture of the

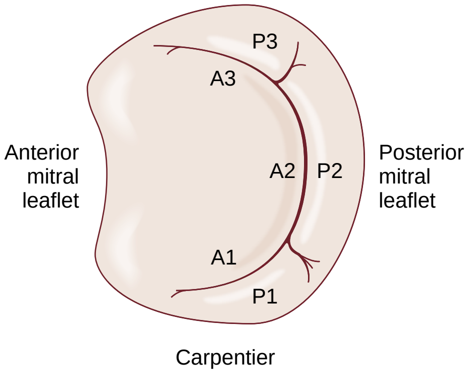


Fig. 54.26 Standard terminology as applied to the mitral valve leaflets is illustrated in this image. The anterior and posterior mitral valve leaflets are each divided into three segmental regions. (From Savage RM, Aronson S, Thomas JD, et al., eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Intraoperative Transesophageal Echocardiography.* Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005.)

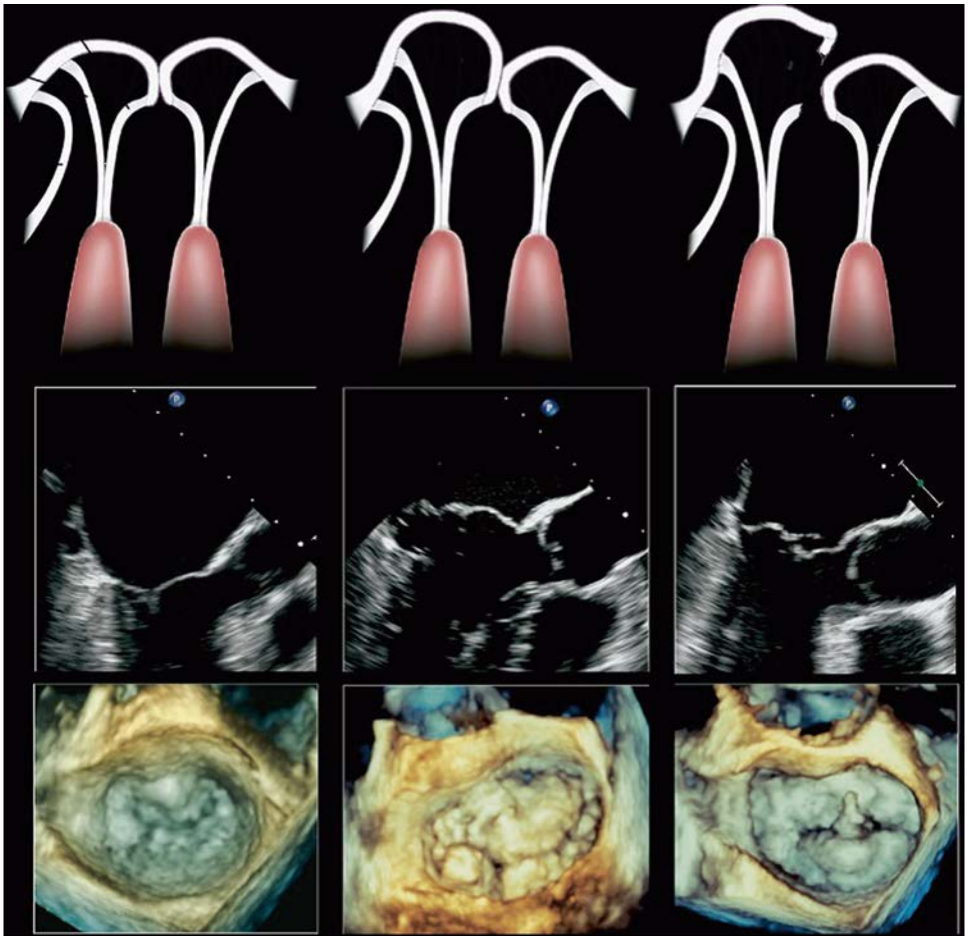


Fig. 54.27 Intra-operative 2D and 3D TEE depiction of MV prolapse and leaflet flail. (From O'Gara P, Sugeng L, Lang R, et al. The role of imaging in chronic degenerative mitral regurgitation. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2008;1[2]:221–237.)

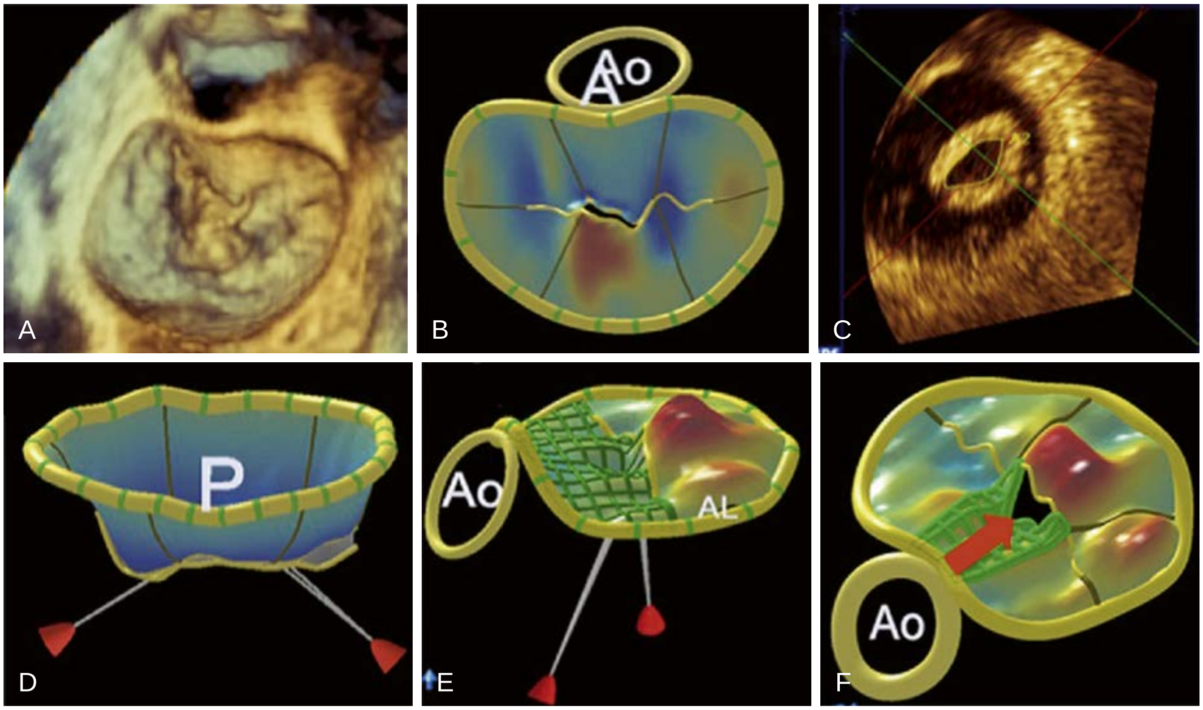


Fig. 54.28 The components of the mitral valve leaflets using three-dimensional echocardiography. *A,* Atrial aspect of the Mitral valve. Prolapsing P2 scallop can be seen. *B,* 3D reconstruction of the Mitral valve showing P2 scallop in red. *C,* Ventricular aspect of the Mitral valve. *D,* Side view of the 3D reconstruction of the Mitral valve with the chordae in view. *E,* View from the anterolateral commissure of the Mitral valve, with prolapsing scallop in red. *F,* Atrial view of the valve showing prolapsing scallops and the failure of coaptation of leaflets causing the regurgitant jet

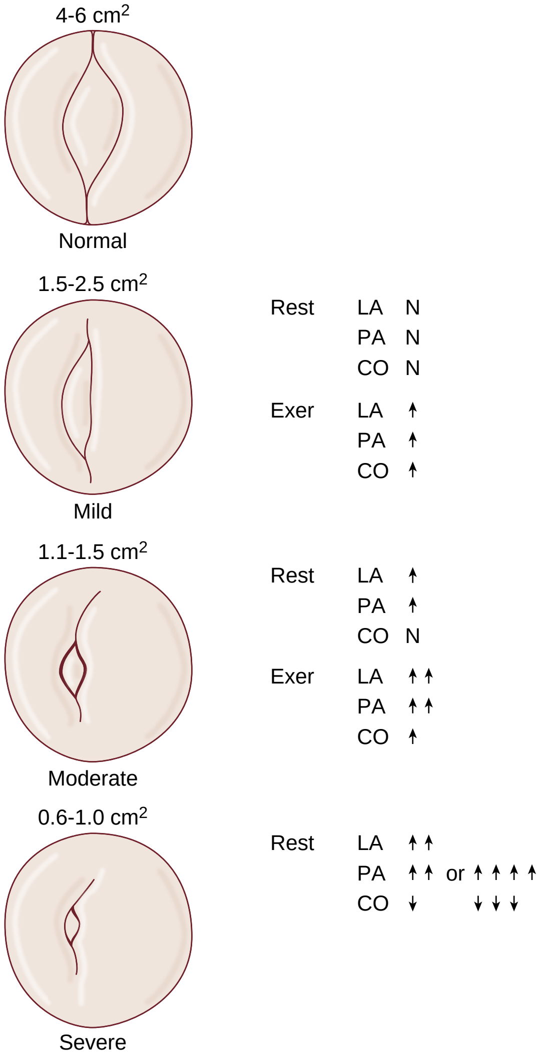


Fig. 54.29 Diagrammatic representation of the hemodynamic changes that occur at various stages of severity of mitral stenosis. The valve area is listed above each stage. ↑, Increased; ↓, decreased; *CO*, cardiac output; *Exer*, exercise; *LA*, left atrial pressure; *N*, normal; *PA*, pulmonary arterial pressure. (From Rappaport E. Natural history of aortic and mitral valve disease. *Am J Cardiol*. 1975;35:221–227.)

chordae and papillary heads. Furthermore, with longstanding rheumatic disease, some degree of calcification of the valve apparatus inevitably occurs. Physiologically, these changes result in obstruction at the level of the mitral valve.

The normal mitral valve orifice area is approximately 4 to 5 cm^2.[355] Symptoms can occur if the valve area is less than 2.5 cm^2 and can be precipitated by clinical events associated with increased CO and consequent increased flow across the valve; these events include stress, exercise, anemia, pregnancy, and febrile illness (Fig. 54.29). Symptoms do not usually occur at rest unless the MVA is less than 1.5 cm^2. Obstructed flow across the mitral valve is associated with a pressure differential or gradient across the valve. The more severe the MS, the greater the gradient, as long as flow across the valve is held constant. Grading of MS is shown in Table 54.14.[353]

Transmitral pressure gradients through the mitral valve depend on the volume flow rate. Severe MS may be present with a low measured or calculated gradient across the valve, as in patients with right HF and pulmonary hypertension. An MVA estimate is a more independent measure of the severity of MS. Currently, MS is primarily diagnosed and monitored with echocardiography, although MVA can be calculated during catheterization by using the Gorlin equation.[356] Assessing MS severity by echocardiography involves two-dimensional planimetry of the valve orifice and Doppler-derived measurements of gradient, pressure half-time, and deceleration time. The advent of three-dimensional technology has enabled clinicians to visualize the mitral valve anatomy more accurately (Fig. 54.30).[354]

Management considerations in MS emphasize the pathophysiologic changes that occur in the left atrium, the pulmonary vasculature, the right heart, and the LV. Obstructed mitral inflow with secondary increases in LA pressure (LAP) gradually causes enlargement of the left atrium, which can lead to the onset of atrial fibrillation, thromboembolic complications, or both if low blood flow velocity causes clot formation in the atrium or appendage.

Patients with MS and chronic atrial fibrillation are at increased risk of embolic stroke, at a rate of 7% to 15% per year.[356] Treatment may include anticoagulation with intravenous heparin or oral warfarin, pharmacologic rate control, and pharmacologic or electrical cardioversion for hemodynamically significant or acute-onset atrial fibrillation. In patients scheduled for cardioversion, TEE may need to be performed first to rule out the presence of LA thrombus.[355]

Elevated LAP leads to passive increases in pulmonary venous and arterial pressures. Most patients with MS have a greater PAP than would be expected if PAP were estimated solely from elevations in LAP. These exaggerated pressures are secondary to reactive pulmonary vasoconstriction or histologic changes in the medial and intimal layers of pulmonary arteries and arterioles. PAP sometimes correlates with the severity of MS, but pressures can range widely because of factors such as transmitral pressure gradient, LVEDP, the actual MVA, and a history of chronic pulmonary disease.

The chronic elevation in PAP caused by MS leads to compensatory and decompensatory changes in the right ventricle. Exposure to elevated pressure leads to compensatory RV hypertrophy; however, the response in the right ventricle is less efficient than in the LV because of the shape, wall thickness, and smaller muscle mass of the right ventricle. Because of the right ventricle's relative vulnerability, chronic pulmonary hypertension invariably leads to progressive RV dilation and eventual RV failure.

The effect of MS on the LV is primarily the result of obstruction of diastolic inflow. The narrowed mitral valve orifice leads to prolonged early diastolic mitral inflow and delayed filling of the LV. Late diastolic filling, which occurs during atrial systole, is obviously compromised in patients who have atrial fibrillation secondary to MS. In cases of MS, pressure-volume loops are shifted to the left, so LVEDP and LV end-diastolic volume (LVEDV) are lower. Stroke volume is diminished, especially in clinical situations that result in elevated heart rate and shortened diastolic filling intervals (Fig. 54.31).[357]

LV function or contractility is assumed to be normal in most patients with MS. However, in a review of the literature,

TABLE 54.14 Grading of Mitral Stenosis

Severity	MVA, cm^2	Gradient, mm Hg	PAP	Symptoms	Signs	Therapy
Mild	>1.8	2-4	Normal	Usually absent	S_2-OS >120 ms; normal P_2	IE prophylaxis
Moderate	1.2-1.6	4-9	Normal	Class II	S_2-OS 100-120 ms; normal P_2	IE prophylaxis; diuretics
Moderate to severe	1.0-1.2	10-15	Mild pulmonary HTN	Class II–III	S_2-OS 80-100 ms; P_2 increase	IE prophylaxis; BMV if applicable or surgery if more than mild Sx
Severe	<1.0	>15	Mild to severe pulmonary HTN	Class II–IV	S_2-OS <80 ms; P_2 increase; RV lift Sx if R heart fails	IE prophylaxis; BMV or surgery

HTN, Hypertension; *IE*, infective endocarditis; *MVA*, mitral valve area; *OS*, opening snap; *PAP*, pulmonary artery pressure; *RV*, right ventricular; *Sx*, symptoms.
From Carabello BA. Modern management of mitral stenosis. *Circulation*. 2005;112:432–437.

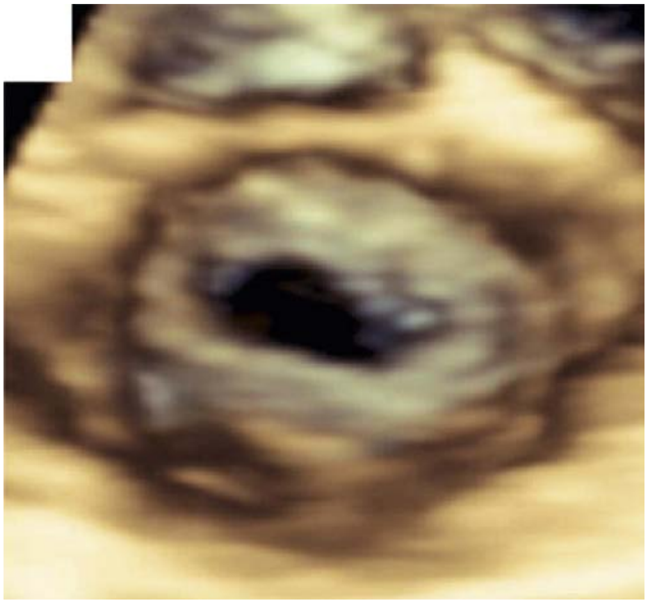


Fig. 54.30 **Three-dimensional image of a stenotic mitral valve from the left atrial perspective.** (From Lang RM, Tsang W, Weinert L, et al. Valvular heart disease: the value of 3-dimensional echocardiography. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2011;58:1933–1944.)

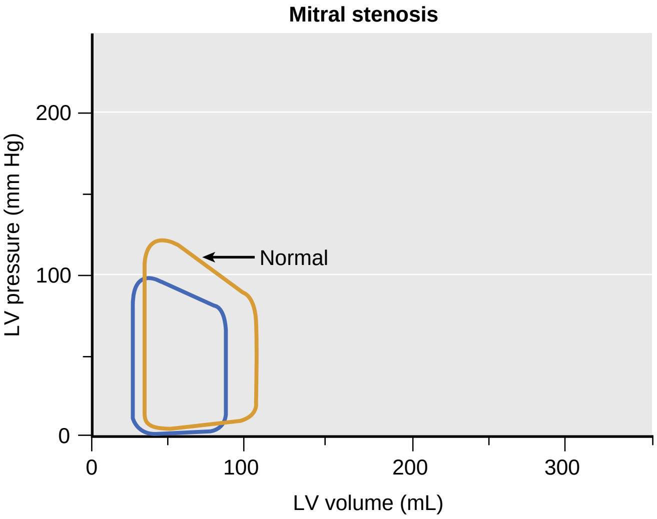


Fig. 54.31 **Pressure-volume loop in mitral stenosis.** *LV,* Left ventricular. (From Jackson JM, Thomas SJ, Lowenstein E. Anesthetic management of patients with valvular heart disease. *Semin Anesth,* 1982;1:239.)

Klein and Carroll showed that the assumption of preserved LV contractility in patients with MS is debatable.[358] Instead, the prevalence of LV dysfunction in patients with MS may be as high as 30%. Proposed mechanisms include reduced filling of the LV, muscle atrophy, inflammatory myocardial fibrosis leading to wall-motion abnormalities, scarring of the subvalvular apparatus, abnormal patterns of LV contraction, reduced LV compliance with diastolic dysfunction, increased LV afterload leading to ventricular remodeling, right-to-left septal shift secondary to the effect of pulmonary hypertension on the right ventricle, and coexistent diseases such as systemic hypertension and CAD.[358] The hemodynamic changes associated with MS are summarized in Fig. 54.29.

Anesthetic Management. An understanding and appreciation of the pathophysiologic changes associated with MS form the foundation of anesthetic management in these patients (Table 54.15). Primary concerns in patients with MS include managing ventricular preload, heart rate, and coexisting pulmonary hypertension, as well as potentially diminished RV and LV contractile function. Most patients with valvular heart disease have increased dependency on and sensitivity to ventricular preload. Flow through a stenotic mitral valve requires a higher-than-normal pressure gradient between the left atrium and the LV. Thus, reduction in preload, either from blood loss or from the venodilatory effects of anesthesia, can markedly affect stroke volume, CO, and tissue perfusion. However, in higher grades of MS, LAP may be very high, and the difference between adequate filling pressure and an LAP that leads to congestive failure may be small. Thus, judicious fluid management is required.

In patients with MS, the heart rate should be kept within its normal range. Tachycardia may be poorly tolerated because of the decreased time for diastolic filling. Moreover, pressure gradients are somewhat flow dependent in MS. Elevated flow states, such as pregnancy and increased sympathetic activity from any source, can dramatically increase the pressure gradient across the valve and are reflected in elevated LAP or pulmonary venous pressure. From data obtained by continuous wave Doppler interrogation of the inflow velocities across the mitral valve, the pressure gradient is derived through the use of a modified form of Bernoulli's equation, $\Delta P = 4v^2$, where v is the measured velocity of blood flow through the valve. Thus, any increase in transvalvular flow rate caused by an increase in heart

TABLE 54.15 Pathophysiologic Changes Associated With Mitral Stenosis

	LV Preload	Heart Rate	Contractility	Systemic Vascular Resistance	Pulmonary Vascular Resistance
Mitral stenosis	↑	↓	Maintain	Maintain	↓

LV, Left ventricular.

From Townsley MM, Martin DE. Anesthetic management for the surgical treatment of valvular heart disease. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia,* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:340.

TABLE 54.16 Acute and Chronic Mitral Regurgitation

Characteristic	Chronic Compensated	Chronic Decompensated	Acute
Symptom onset	None	Gradual DOE	Abrupt CHF
PHYSICAL EXAMINATION			
Blood pressure	Normal	Normal	↓
Pulmonary congestion	None	Variable	↑↑↑↑
HEMODYNAMICS			
LA pressure	Normal	↑	↑↑
v wave	Absent	Variable	↑
ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY			
LV size	↑	↑↑	Normal
LA size	↑	↑	Normal
MR jet v wave	Absent	Variable	↑

CHF, Congestive heart failure; *DOE,* dyspnea on exertion; *LA,* left atrial; *LV,* left ventricular; *MR,* mitral regurgitation; *arrows* indicate relative increase (↑) or decrease (↓) in comparison with normal.

From Otto CM. Valvular heart disease: prevalence and clinical outcomes. In: Otto CM, ed. *Valvular Heart Disease.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2004:1–17.

rate has a significant impact on transvalvular flow dynamics and on LAP.

Atrial contributions to stroke volume may be elevated in patients with MS who are in the early stages of the disease and are not in atrial fibrillation. When atrial fibrillation has occurred, the atrial kick is lost. However, the most important factor in the deterioration of the patient's clinical condition is tachycardia itself, rather than loss of the atrial kick.

Contractility and SVR are usually preserved in MS. If anything, the LV is chronically underloaded, but wall motion abnormalities or global systolic dysfunction develop in a small percentage of MS patients. Usually, SVR is not a factor in augmenting forward flow because stroke volume is determined by the mitral valve orifice area and the diastolic filling interval. It may be appropriate to lower SVR for an LV that has marked systolic dysfunction, but care must be exercised because a reduction in afterload is inevitably accompanied by a reduction in preload, which may not be desirable in patients with significant MS.

RV dysfunction probably poses a greater challenge in treating patients with MS than does LV dysfunction. The chronic elevations in LAP can be persistent in patients with long-standing pulmonary hypertension. In the patient with residual pulmonary vascular disease and irreversible pulmonary hypertension, supporting a failing or marginally functional right ventricle becomes the top clinical priority.

Monitoring includes standard noninvasive modalities and invasive monitoring of blood pressure, CVP, and intraoperative echocardiography. Monitoring PAP and using a PA catheter to monitor CO may be very helpful, but care and judgment must be exercised, given the propensity for PA rupture in patients with long-standing pulmonary hypertension. Inotropic support may be needed for patients with secondary RV dysfunction or failure. Epinephrine and milrinone are good therapeutic options. Management of RV dysfunction includes optimizing acid-base balance and using hypocapnia, hyperoxia, and possibly vasodilators to decrease PVR.

Mitral Regurgitation. The complex anatomic structure of the mitral valve is especially pertinent in any consideration of the pathophysiology and management of patients who present for operative intervention for MR. The mitral apparatus consists of six primary components: the LA wall, the annulus of the mitral valve, the mitral valve leaflets, the chordae tendineae, the papillary muscles, and the wall of the LV. Abnormalities or dysfunction in any component can result in mitral valve incompetence.

MR can be classified as either organic (intrinsic valvular disease) or functional (i.e., related to nonvalvular components of the mitral apparatus).[359] It is common for MR to have a functional and an organic component, as in rheumatic valve disease resulting in annular or LV dilation with superimposed abnormalities of leaflet coaptation. In developed countries, the most common causes of MR are as follows: (1) myxomatous degeneration of the mitral valve resulting in annular dilation, chordal elongation and rupture, and redundant, prolapsing, or flail mitral valve leaflets; and (2) mitral insufficiency caused by ischemic heart disease. The most common indication for surgical repair or replacement of the regurgitant mitral valve is myxomatous degeneration, which includes mitral valve prolapse syndromes.[360] Chronic ischemic or functional MR is present in 10% to 20% of patients with CAD and, unlike MR with primary valvular causes, it does not involve abnormalities in the morphology of the mitral valve.[361] Nonetheless, the long-term morbidity and mortality associated with this type of MR are significant.[352]

The severity of MR is assessed in the context of whether the MR is acute or chronic. Symptom presentation, physical examination, hemodynamics, and echocardiography all provide useful information for ascribing a severity grade (Table 54.16). Echocardiographic assessment is particularly important for guiding intraoperative decisions about the need for intervention and the adequacy of repair or replacement of the mitral valve (Fig. 54.32). As with MS, several echocardiographic parameters, both two-dimensional and Doppler-derived, can be used to grade the severity of MR (Table 54.17). The advent of three-dimensional technology

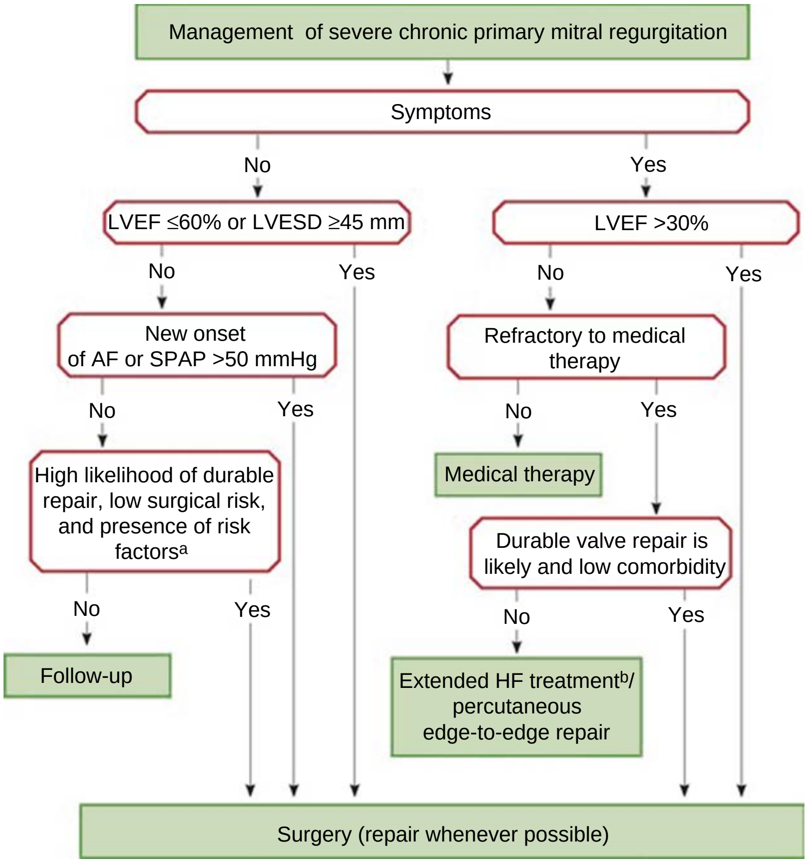

Management of severe chronic primary mitral regurgitation
Symptoms
No
Yes
LVEF ≤60% or LVESD ≥45 mm
LVEF >30%
No
Yes
No
Yes
New onset of AF or SPAP >50 mmHg
Refractory to medical therapy
No
Yes
No
Yes
High likelihood of durable repair, low surgical risk, and presence of risk factors[a]
Medical therapy
Durable valve repair is likely and low comorbidity
No
Yes
No
Yes
Follow-up
Extended HF treatment[b]/ percutaneous edge-to-edge repair
Surgery (repair whenever possible)

Fig. 54.32 Management of severe chronic primary mitral regurgitation. [a]When there is a high likelihood of durable valve repair at a low risk, valve repair should be considered (IIa C) in patients with LVESD ≥40 mm and one of the following is present: flail leaflet or LA volume ≥60 mL/m^2 BSA at sinus rhythm. [b]Extended HF management includes the following: CRT; ventricular assist devices; cardiac restraint devices; heart transplantation. *AF*, Atrial fibrillation; *BSA*, body surface area; *CRT*, cardiac resynchronization therapy; *HF*, heart failure; *LA*, left atrial; *LVEF*, left ventricular ejection fraction; *LVESD*, left ventricular end-systolic diameter; *SPAP*, systolic pulmonary arterial pressure. (Redrawn from Baumgartner H, Falk H, Bax JJ, et al. 2017 ESC/EACTS guidelines for the management of valvular heart disease. *Eur Heart J*. 2017;38:2739–2791.)

TABLE 54.17 Classification of the Severity of Mitral Valve Regurgitation in Adults

	MITRAL VALVE REGURGITATION		
	Mild	**Moderate**	**Severe**
QUALITATIVE			
Angiographic grade	1+	2+	3-4+
Color Doppler jet area	Small central jet (<4 cm^2 or <20% left atrial size)	Signs of MR greater than mild but no severe MR	Vena contracta width >0.7 cm with large central jet (area >40% of left atrium) or with a wall-impinging jet swirling in left atrium
Doppler vena contracta width (cm)	<0.3	0.3-0.69	≥0.7
QUANTITATIVE			
Regurgitant volume (mL/beat)	<30	30-59	≥60
Regurgitant fraction (%)	<30	30-49	≥50
Regurgitant orifice area (cm^2)	<0.2	0.2-0.39	≥0.4
ADDITIONAL CRITERIA			
Left atrial size			Enlarged
Left ventricular size			Enlarged

MR, Mitral regurgitation.

From Bonow RO, Carabello BA, Chatterjee K, et al. 2008 focused update incorporated into the ACC/AHA 2006 guidelines for the management of patients with valvular heart disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to revise the 1998 guidelines for the management of patients with valvular heart disease). Endorsed by the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, and Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008;52:e1–142.

and current calculation software greatly improved clinicians' ability to assess the severity and identify the precise cause of MR (Fig. 54.33; see also Fig. 54.32).

Pathophysiology. The incompetent mitral valve allows retrograde passage of blood from the LV into the left atrium during systole. The magnitude of the regurgitant volume is a function of the size of the regurgitant orifice, the pressure differential between the left atrium and the LV, and the duration of the regurgitant cycle.[359] Thus, higher systolic driving pressures, as in hypertension, can increase the regurgitant volume. Loading conditions are important as well, especially whenever functional changes in annular and LV geometry are important components of the mechanism of MR. These conditions should be considered during the intraoperative evaluation of MR because anesthetic effects on afterload and preload can drastically alter the severity of MR from its baseline level, as seen in preoperative echocardiographic or catheterization assessments. (Table 54.18)

LV function and pressure tend to be normal in patients with chronic MR. EF is often normal or supranormal unless the ventricle has decompensated with chronic MR or is acutely ischemic. A normal EF can be misleading, and masked ventricular dysfunction may be revealed after valve repair or replacement. The left atrium serves as a low-pressure pathway during systolic ejection, so that EF overestimates ventricular function.

When MR has an acute onset, LAP is elevated, because LA compensatory changes have had no time to occur. A v-wave may be present on the LAP, PAP, or PCWP recordings. In contrast, in chronic MR, the LAP increases are less dramatic because of compliance changes in the left atrium as a function of chamber dilation.

The long-term sequelae of MR are related to chronic pressure and volume effects on the left atrium and the LV. The LV is exposed to a chronic, isolated volume-overload state. Eccentric hypertrophy of the LV develops, causing chamber enlargement without significant increases

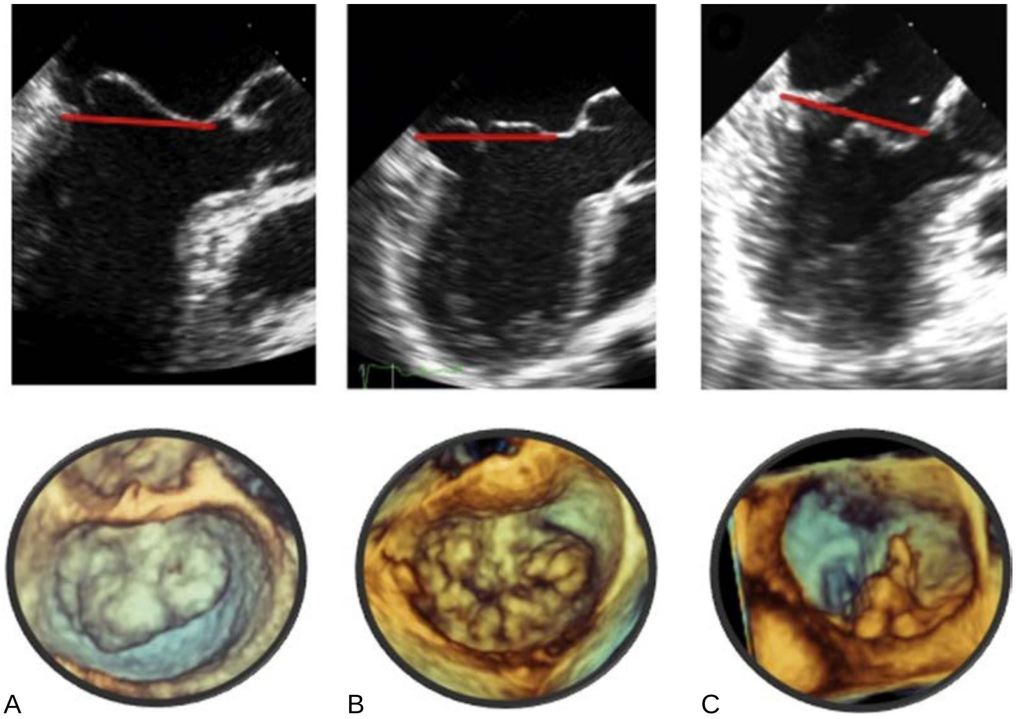


Fig. 54.33 Differential diagnosis of mitral leaflet prolapse. Two-dimensional (2D) transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) long-axis view demonstrating anterior leaflet prolapse (A, *top*) with a three-dimensional (3D) transesophageal example as seen from the left atrium (A, *bottom*). Leaflet prolapse should be diagnosed when the free edge of the leaflet overrides the plane of the mitral annulus during systole. 2D TEE long-axis view demonstrating bileaflet billowing of the mitral valve with prolapse resulting from chordae tendineae elongation (B, *top*) with a 3D transesophageal example as seen from the left atrium (B, *bottom*). Leaflet billowing is diagnosed when systolic excursion of the leaflet body occurs into the left atrium resulting from excess leaflet tissue, with the leaflet free edge remaining below the plane of the mitral annulus. 2D TEE long-axis view demonstrating flail valve resulting from chordae rupture (C, *top*) with a 3D transesophageal example of P2 flail as viewed from the left atrium (C, *bottom*). (From Lang RM, Tsang W, Weinert L, et al. Valvular heart disease: the value of 3-dimensional echocardiography. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2011;58:1933–1944.)

TABLE 54.18 Pathophysiologic Changes Associated With Mitral Regurgitation

	LV Preload	Heart Rate	Contractility	Systemic Vascular Resistance	Pulmonary Vascular Resistance
Mitral regurgitation	↑ or ↓	↑, maintain	Maintain	↓	↓

LV, Left ventricular.

From Townsley MM, Martin DE. Anesthetic management for the surgical treatment of valvular heart disease. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:346.

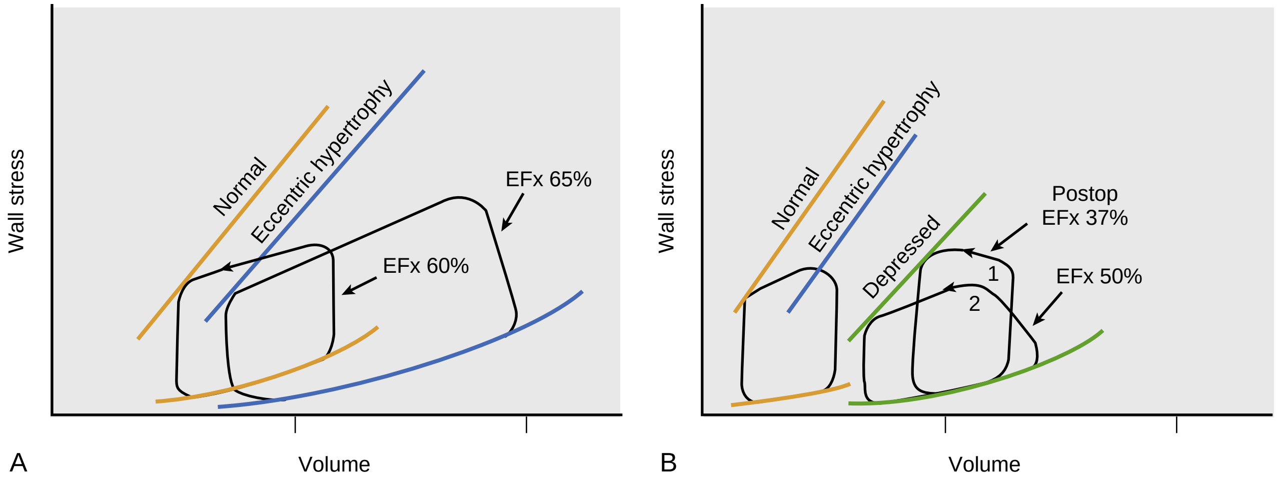


Fig. 54.34 Diagram of wall stress–volume loops and end-systolic volume–wall stress relationships in severe mitral regurgitation. (A) As in aortic regurgitation, the shift to the right of the diastolic and end-systolic relationships allows the volume-overloaded left ventricle to maintain a high stroke volume. Mean wall stress during ejection is somewhat reduced, and in mitral regurgitation the ejection fraction (EFx) is high normal when contractility is normal. (B) With the development of depressed contractility, the end-systolic wall stress–volume relationship is shifted to the right preoperatively. Despite severely depressed contractility, the ventricle is able to deliver a nearly normal EFx because of the very large ventricular volume and the relatively low mean wall stress during ejection (beat 2, EFx = 50%). Contractility remains depressed after mitral valve replacement (Postop), and with correction of the low-impedance leak, the ventricle must now deliver the total stroke volume into the aorta against higher wall stress; the EFx therefore falls to 37% (beat 1).

in wall thickness. Forward CO is preserved because of eccentric hypertrophy and the low impedance of the left atrium—a physiologic equivalent of afterload reduction. The larger stroke volume ejected by the LV is composed of the normal venous return into the left atrium in addition to the regurgitant volume from the previous cardiac cycle. In the early stages of MR, LVEDP is relatively normal because of compliance changes of the LV. With time, however, compensatory eccentric hypertrophy fails to preserve LV systolic function, and gradual systolic failure ensues, as noted on pressure-volume loops (Fig. 54.34). In patients with MR, deciding on the timing of surgical intervention is an important duty of the referring cardiologist because LV systolic performance can deteriorate to a point that full functional recovery after valve surgery may not be possible.

The LA is exposed to increases in volume and pressure. The LA dilates to compensate for the regurgitant volume during systole, and in the early stages of MR, preservation of near-normal LAP and protection of the pulmonary vasculature is likely. Progressive LA enlargement commonly leads to atrial fibrillation, which occurs in approximately 50% of patients who are about to undergo surgical correction of MR. However, patients with MR appear to be at a lower risk for thromboembolic complications than are patients with MS.

When LAP compliance thresholds are reached, LAP and PAP become elevated. Eventually, if chronically exposed to elevated PAP, the right ventricle progressively enlarges, and RV dysfunction develops.

Carpentier classifies MR into three different types by the mechanism causing regurgitation. Type I MR is characterized by "normal leaflet motion" and annular dilatation as the cause of regurgitation. Type II MR is caused by excessive motion of the margin of a leaflet and is the most common of the three etiologies. In the type II etiology excessive motion causes the leaflet to rise above the annular plane. Type III MR is characterized by restricted motion of the mitral leaflet. It is further subdivided into two components: Type IIIa is due to fibrosis of the subvalvular apparatus of the mitral valve, whereas IIIb is due to tethering of the leaflet to the ventricular wall as a result of remodeling of the ventricle (ischemic etiology).[354]

Fig. 54.27[354] shows the above mentioned Carpentier classification.

Anesthetic Management. In the anesthetic management of MR, the primary goal is maintaining forward systemic flow. In chronic, compensated MR, maintaining preload, judiciously reducing afterload, and keeping the heart rate in the high-normal range may be adequate (see Table 54.18).

As with most compensated forms of valvular heart disease, patients with hemodynamically significant MR are sensitive to ventricular loading conditions. Augmenting preload may be prudent in the interval before anesthetic induction. However, MR is dynamic; ventricular distention can lead to the expansion of an already dilated mitral annulus and thus worsen MR.

The heart rate should be maintained in the high-normal range (i.e., 80-100 beats/min). Bradycardia has dual detrimental effects on MR: it lengthens the systolic period, thus prolonging regurgitation, and it increases the diastolic filling interval, which can lead to LV distention. A sinus rhythm is preferred, but with less dependency on the atrial kick in chronic, compensated MR than in stenotic valvular heart disease.

LV contractility may be preserved in early compensated MR. However, EF indices are poorly correlated with LV systolic function in patients with moderate to severe MR, and underlying systolic dysfunction may be woefully underestimated. Hypotension in patients with significant MR can be managed to a certain degree by manipulating heart rate and volume, but persistent hemodynamic instability may be best treated with inotropic support. Dobutamine,

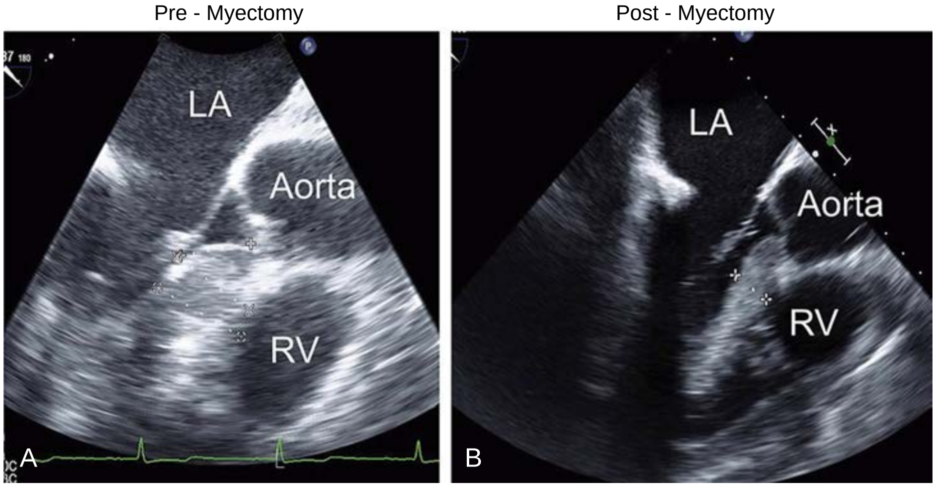


Fig. 54.35 Transesophageal echocardiography of septal measurements before myectomy (A) (thickness, 2.9 cm) and after myectomy (B) (thickness, 1.5 cm). *LA*, Left atrium; *RV*, right ventricle. (From Nagueh SF, Bierig SM, Budoff MJ, et al. American Society of Echocardiography clinical recommendations for multimodality cardiovascular imaging of patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: endorsed by the American Society of Nuclear Cardiology, Society for Cardiovascular Magnetic Resonance, and Society of Cardiovascular Computed Tomography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2011;24:473–498.)

low-dose epinephrine, and milrinone are all acceptable inotropic choices, depending on the clinician's interpretation of the monitor data.

With respect to SVR, the general rule of thumb for patients with MR is to decrease afterload so that forward CO is maximized. Adequate anesthetic depth, systemic vasodilators, inodilators, and at times mechanical reduction of afterload with an IABP may be clinical options, depending on the situation. Direct-acting α_1-agonists increase SVR and blood pressure, lower heart rate, and may worsen the MR. Temporary use of small doses of ephedrine may be a better choice, after which inotropic support should be considered if a persistent need exists to augment pressure.

Both PAP and PVR may be elevated in patients with either acute or long-standing MR. Secondary changes in RV size and function may be important clinical considerations. Factors that may increase PVR and unfavorably load an already dysfunctional right ventricle (e.g., hypoxia, hypercarbia, and acidosis) should be remedied whenever possible.

Finally, in the patient with acute, severe MR and cardiogenic shock from ischemic rupture of a papillary muscle, pharmacologic support of the LV, often accompanied by mechanical support with IABP counterpulsation, may be necessary.

Hypertrophic Obstructive Cardiomyopathy and the Mitral Valve. Hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy (HOCM) may result in dynamic valvular insufficiency, as well as LV outflow tract (LVOT) obstruction. In addition, surgical attempts to repair an incompetent mitral valve can create iatrogenic LVOT obstruction.

Classically, HOCM is a familial disease transmitted with autosomal dominant inheritance. Inheritance and phenotypic expressions are heterogeneous and vary in their manifestations. Some mutations in genes that code for cardiac sarcomere proteins can cause hypertrophy of segments of the ventricle. Septal involvement is common, but HOCM can involve other areas of the LV as well.[362] This disease is the most common cause of sudden death in young people, but it can also cause death and morbidity in older patients.

When the basal septum of the LV is affected, the LVOT can narrow (Fig. 54.35). Depending on the shape of the ventricle and the mitral valve, dynamic outflow tract obstruction can occur, paired with mitral valve insufficiency. As the outflow tract is narrowed by hypertrophy, the basal septum and the anterior leaflet of the mitral valve come into close proximity. The hypertrophy and the reduced septal–anterior leaflet distance can create a channel that narrows to the point of creating a pressure gradient across the outflow tract. This obstructed flow and its pressure gradient lead to progressive compensatory hypertrophy that, in turn, further narrows the outflow tract and worsens the gradient. As blood is ejected through this narrowed outflow channel during systole, the velocity of blood through the narrowed orifice increases. This increased blood velocity creates a Venturi effect that pulls the anterior leaflet of the mitral valve or the chordal structures into the outflow tract, thus leading to mechanical and dynamic obstruction of the LVOT and also causing MR because of a coaptation defect of the mitral valve.[363] Echocardiographically, this is termed systolic anterior motion (SAM) of the mitral valve (Fig. 54.36). Such dysfunctional mitral valve motion is seen in cardiac surgical patients who present for surgical management of known HOCM (i.e., for surgical myomectomy, mitral valve repair, or both).

Sometimes, SAM is noted preoperatively or as an incidental finding at the time of surgery in patients who present for surgical revascularization or mitral valve repair. Furthermore, SAM may be created iatrogenically as a result of surgical mitral valve repair. In patients with MR who are to undergo mitral valve repair, echocardiographic assessment and surgical inspection are performed to elucidate the mechanism of the mitral insufficiency. The patient may have ruptured or elongated chordal attachments, redundant or prolapsing leaflet tissue, or annular dilation that reduces effective leaflet coaptation. Frequently, multiple contributing factors are present. Surgical treatment can involve just a simple annuloplasty ring in the case of isolated annular dilation, but it more commonly involves resection of diseased segments of the mitral valve, possibly chordal reassignment or reconstruction, and a ring valvuloplasty.

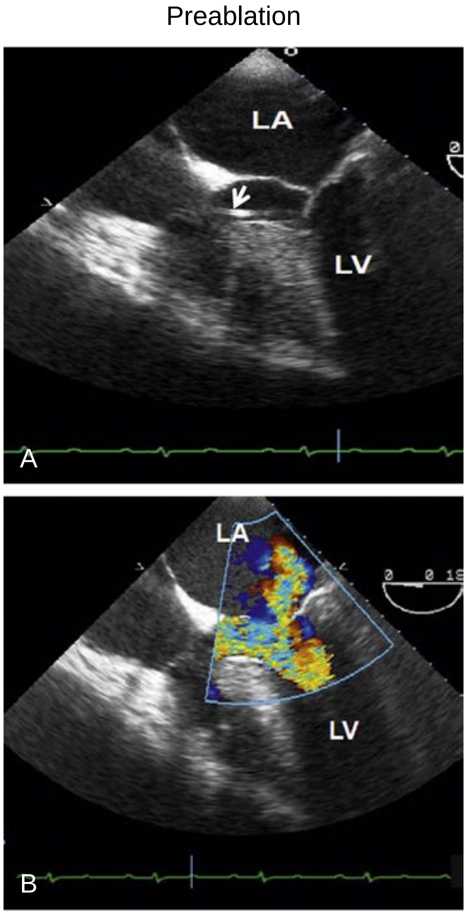


Fig. 54.36 Transesophageal echocardiographic images. (A) Two-dimensional image shows a narrowed left ventricular outflow tract with systolic anterior motion *(arrow)*. (B) Color Doppler image shows high-velocity signals in mosaic color; eccentric mitral regurgitation is directed posterolaterally. *LA,* Left atrium; *LV,* left ventricle. (From Naguch SF, Bierig M, Budoff MJ, et al. American Society of Echocardiography clinical recommendations for multimodality cardiovascular imaging of patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr.* 2011;24:473–498.)

Depending on LV geometry and size and the physical characteristics of the mitral valve, surgical repair may bring the anterior leaflet and the coaptation point of the valve into close approximation with the interventricular septum and the LVOT. That septal coaptation point can narrow enough to create a gradient in the outflow tract, so that the anterior leaflet is pulled into the LVOT by the Venturi effect, leading to obstruction and secondary mitral insufficiency (see Fig. 54.36). This anterior displacement of the mitral coaptation point and the amount of the extra anterior leaflet have been proposed to be mechanisms for SAM, thus leading to the development of surgical techniques that can reduce the incidence of SAM in high-risk patients.[364] Anesthetic management of obstructive cardiomyopathy centers on fluid and pharmacologic interventions to decrease the magnitude of the obstruction and, at the same time, lessen the severity of the mitral insufficiency. Most patients with outflow tract abnormalities have normal to supranormal contractility.

Generally, inotropic agents should not be used. The thick, hypertrophied ventricle usually has reduced compliance and is very load sensitive, so that outflow tract obstruction increases in hypovolemic conditions. Thus, optimizing preload and ventricular filling is appropriate both in managing the patient with LVOT and in assessing the need for surgical reconstruction of the LVOT, mitral valve repair, or both. Afterload reduction should be avoided because it worsens the obstruction. Conversely, increasing the afterload decreases the trans–outflow tract gradient and leads to a reduction of SAM and outflow tract obstruction. Hence, vasoconstrictors such as phenylephrine and vasopressin should be considered. In both congenital and iatrogenic LVOT obstruction, the degree of obstruction is dynamic. Obstruction is exacerbated by hypercontractile states and elevations in heart rate; therefore, reducing the heart rate with β-adrenergic blockade should be considered.

Continuous, skilled echocardiographic assessment and interpretation are important for optimal intraoperative management of these patients. Assessing the severity and mechanism of outflow tract obstruction and determining whether to reinstitute CPB to revise the repair or replace the valve are not innocuous decisions, and they must be carefully made jointly by the anesthesiologist and the surgeon, ideally with input from the appropriate cardiologist.

Minimally Invasive Mitral Valve Surgery. Cosgrove, Sabik, and Cohen were among the first surgeons to modify the traditional approach to cardiac surgery and pioneer the concept of minimally invasive cardiac surgery.[365] The rapid development and refinement of minimally invasive techniques have resulted in the realizations that minimally invasive cardiac surgery does not compromise patients' safety or surgical exposure and that results are comparable to those of traditional open procedures. Mihaljevic and colleagues published a series of 1000 minimally invasive valve operations performed between 1996 and 2003, and noted the following benefits: reduced bypass and cross-clamp times, reduced stroke and MI rates, reduced length of hospital stay, and a higher rates of discharge home rather than to another facility.[366]

Access to the mitral valve through minimally invasive techniques can be through a lower hemisternotomy, a right parasternal incision excising the cartilaginous portions of the third and fourth ribs, or a right thoracotomy through a 4-cm incision.[367] The mitral valve is then exposed through the left atrium or by a transseptal approach through the right atrium. Visualization of the valve for repair or replacement can be achieved in the following ways: by direct inspection and instrumentation; by "port access" under thoracoscopic guidance and video assistance; or by a more complete endoscopic technique using the DaVinci robotic system (Intuitive Surgical, Inc., Sunnyvale, CA). The DaVinci system uses robotic arms and instrumentation controlled by the surgeon sitting at a remote, computer-enhanced, three-dimensional imaging console to assist in completing the surgery.[368] The DaVinci robot set up on the patient is shown in Fig. 54.37.[369] Fig. 54.38 shows the surgeon's location in the operating room.[370]

Endoscopic or minimally invasive mitral procedures usually involve CPB with aortic and venous cannulas placed through the femoral artery and vein respectively. In addition, the surgeon may choose to use an endoscopic aortic occlusion device that allows a bloodless operative field

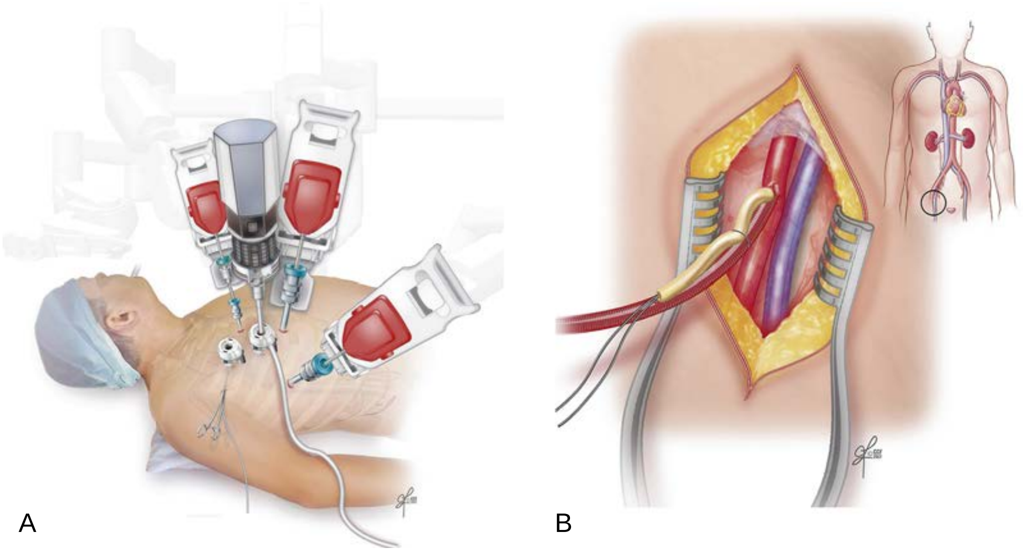


Fig. 54.37 Patient setup for robotic mitral valve repair. (A) Port placement; (B) cannulation of the femoral vessels. (Cleveland Clinic Foundation, 2017. From Cuartas M, Javadikasgari H, Pfannmueller B, et al. Mitral valve repair: robotic and other minimally invasive approaches. *Progr Cardiovasc Dis*. 2017;60[3]:394–404.)

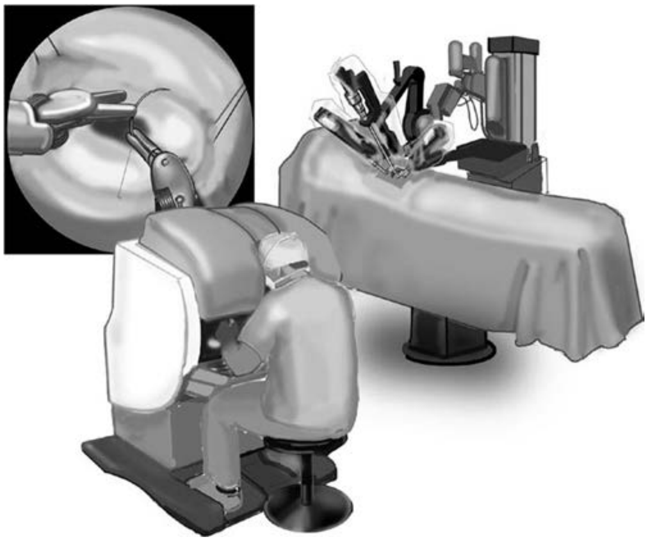


Fig. 54.38 Robotic surgery showing the DaVinci surgical system. **The surgeon sits at the console and the robot is positioned at the operating table. The inset shows the surgeon's view of a mitral valve repair.** (From Soltesz EG, Cohn LH. Minimally invasive valve surgery. *Cardiol Rev*. 2007;15:109–115.)

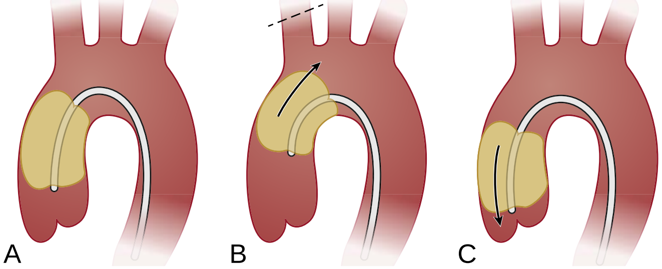


Fig. 54.39 (A) Drawing of a well-positioned EndoClamp in the ascending aorta. (B) Distal migration of the EndoClamp and potentially obstructing flow to the innominate artery. (C) Proximal migration of the EndoClamp that may prevent adequate aortic occlusion or cardioplegia. (Modified with permission from Kottenberg-Assenmacher E, Kamler M, Peters J. Minimally invasive endoscopic port-access intracardiac surgery with one lung ventilation: impact on gas exchange and anaesthesia resources. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:231–238; and From Vernick WJ, Woo JY. Anesthetic considerations during minimally invasive mitral valve surgery. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;16:11–24.)

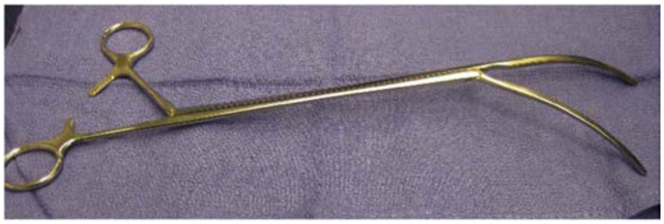


Fig. 54.40 **Chitwood transthoracic aortic cross-clamp (Scanlan International, Inc., St. Paul, MN) seen before use.** (From Vernick WJ, Woo JY. Anesthetic considerations during minimally invasive mitral valve surgery. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;16:11–24.)

and the delivery of cardioplegia (Fig. 54.39).[371] As mentioned with total endoscopic coronary revascularization surgery, positioning of the EAOBC requires intraoperative fluoroscopy or echocardiography to confirm the catheter's position definitively. Known concerns and risks include catheter migration into the heart across the aortic valve and distal migration with occlusion of the brachiocephalic trunk.[372] Alternatively, the aorta can be occluded directly with flexible cross-clamps introduced through small chest wall incisions. The Chitwood transthoracic aortic cross-clamp (Scanlan International, Inc., St. Paul, MN) and the Cosgrove Flex Clamp (Cardinal Health, McGaw Park, IL) are being used for this purpose (Fig. 54.40).[367] Cardioplegia needles may be inserted under direct vision or thoracoscopic guidance.[372] Retrograde cardioplegia, although not necessarily used in all patients, can be accomplished by directly cannulating the coronary sinus with a retrograde catheter at the operative site (RA approach) or by placing a percutaneous coronary sinus catheter in the internal jugular vein and positioning it under echocardiographic guidance.

Secondary operative considerations include the unique positioning of the patient for the use of robotic instrumentation. Most minimally invasive approaches require a 30-degree "right side up" position.

Anesthetic management includes selective lung ventilation with the use of a double-lumen tube or bronchial blocker, if this is needed for surgical exposure. Monitoring considerations are similar to those for standard approaches to valvular heart surgery. Furthermore, a PA ventilation (PA vent) catheter is placed in a manner similar to placement of a PA catheter.[372] These two catheters differ in two important ways. First, the PA vent has a significant amount of transducer "noise" in the tracings due to its excessive compliance. Second, the PA vent has fewer ports and thus does not allow for CO measurement. Some surgeons prefer to place a PA vent in the field. In these cases the cardiac anesthesiologist can place a PA catheter, and derive the benefits of mixed venous blood sampling and CO measurement in addition.

The outcomes of minimally invasive mitral valve surgery have been encouraging. Although prospective trials comparing minimally invasive mitral valve surgery and standard approaches are limited, developments in technology and an integrated team approach may facilitate favorable postoperative outcomes.[367] Reports describe mortality and morbidity rates comparable to those of full-sternotomy approaches, with reduced postoperative bleeding and trends toward reduced length of hospital stay and a higher rate of discharge home.[370,373]

Aortic Valve Disease

Aortic Stenosis

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY. AS is the most common cardiac valve lesion diagnosed in the United States. Marked increases in the annual volume of aortic valve replacements have occurred recently, especially in older and high-risk patients.[374]

AS is often caused by congenital defects in the valve because congenital bicuspid aortic valve occurs in 1% to 2% of the population.[374] Inheritance has been found to play a role, with an autosomal dominant pattern and a variable penetrance.[375] Even a normally functioning bicuspid aortic valve tends to open and close with abnormal folding and creasing, leading to scarring and calcification which ultimately culminates in AS with or without aortic regurgitation (AR). Although patients with a bicuspid aortic valve are asymptomatic until late in the disease process, severe, symptomatic AS or AR may develop in midlife. In addition, the abnormal motion of the bicuspid leaflets causes some turbulent flow into the aorta, which eventually can lead to dilatation and subsequent rupture or dissection.[376,377] A typical "fish-mouth" or elliptical shaped opening of the aortic valve in a midesophageal, cross-sectional TEE view of the valve is a telltale sign of a bicuspid aortic valve.

Acquired AS is usually the result of senile degeneration with sclerosis and calcification of the valve. The prevalence of AS in the population is increasing. Approximately 3% of people over the age of 75 years have AS, and 12% of these have moderate or severe aortic stenosis.[374,378] A clear association is reported between clinical risk factors for atherosclerotic disease (e.g., the process of chronic inflammation) and the development of AS.[378,379] In developed countries, rheumatic disease is a less common cause of AS, and AS is usually associated with concomitant AR.

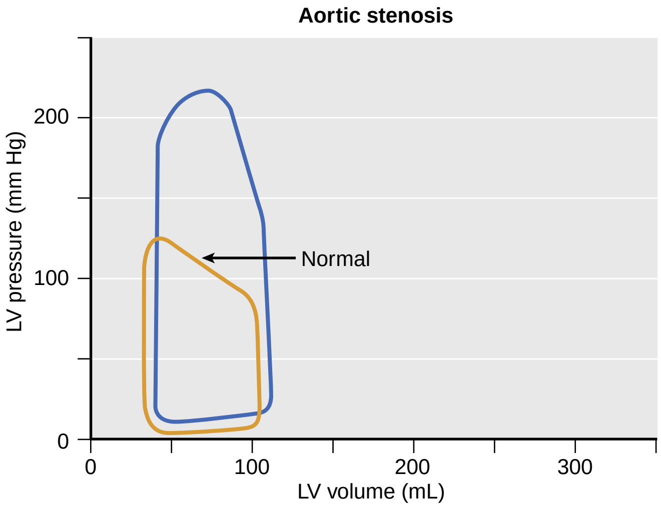


Fig. 54.41 Pressure-volume loop in aortic stenosis. *LV*, Left ventricular. (Modified from Jackson JM, Thomas SJ, Lowenstein E. Anesthetic management of patients with valvular heart disease. *Semin Anesth.* 1982;1:239.)

A typical pressure-volume loop for AS is shown in Fig. 54.41. In patients with AS, the obstruction of LV outflow increases peak systolic wall stress, resulting in chronic pressure overload that directly stimulates parallel replication of sarcomeres in the LV and consequently causes concentric ventricular hypertrophy. The peak pressure generated by the LV during systole is much higher than normal because of the high transvalvular pressure gradient. Concentric LV hypertrophy nearly always develops as a result of the increases in pressure load (Fig. 54.42). This increased load also leads to diastolic dysfunction, an increase in LVEDP, and subendocardial ischemia.

Echocardiography and intraoperative TEE in particular play important roles in the diagnosis and ultimate management of patients with AS, both in the outpatient setting and during surgical aortic valve replacement. The severity of AS can be assessed from various echocardiographic parameters. One that is commonly used is the aortic valve area (AVA). The normal range of the AVA is 3 to 4 cm^2; AS is graded as severe if the AVA is reduced to 1 cm^2 or less.[380] Another parameter commonly used to determine the severity of AS is the gradient across the aortic valve; AS is considered severe if the mean gradient is greater than 40 mm Hg.[355] Echocardiography can be used to examine multiple aspects of the pathophysiology of AS, including the severity of AS, any structural abnormalities of the valve causing LVOT obstruction, any ascending aortic pathology, and any concomitant heart valve lesions.

With TEE, the best views for evaluating the aortic valve are the midesophageal aortic valve short-axis view, the midesophageal long-axis view, and the transgastric views. Midesophageal views are helpful in ascertaining the shape of the aortic valve and the two-dimensional anatomy of AS (Fig. 54.43), whereas transgastric views are helpful in obtaining gradient measurements across the valve and the LVOT (Fig. 54.44). In addition, both the midesophageal and

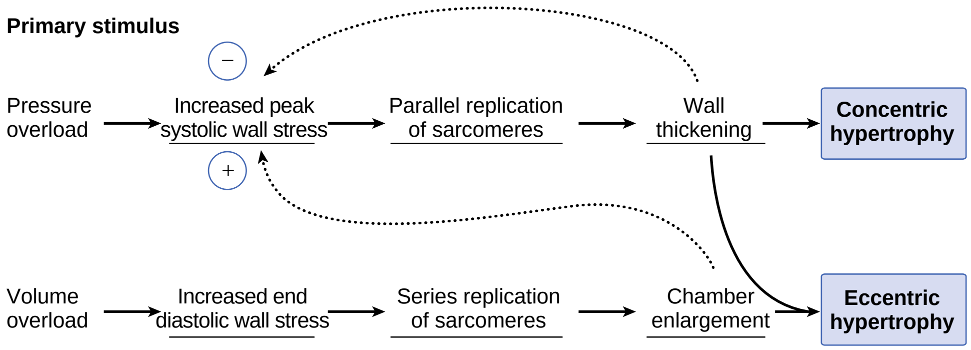

Primary stimulus
−
+
Pressure overload
Increased peak systolic wall stress
Parallel replication of sarcomeres
Wall thickening
Concentric hypertrophy
Volume overload
Increased end diastolic wall stress
Series replication of sarcomeres
Chamber enlargement
Eccentric hypertrophy

Fig. 54.42 **The increased peak systolic wall stress resulting from chronic pressure overload directly stimulates concentric ventricular hypertrophy, which tends to counteract or "normalize" the elevated ventricular wall stress.** (From Grossman W, Jones D, McLaurin LP. Wall stress and pattern of hypertrophy in the human left ventricle. *J Clin Invest.* 1975;56:56.)

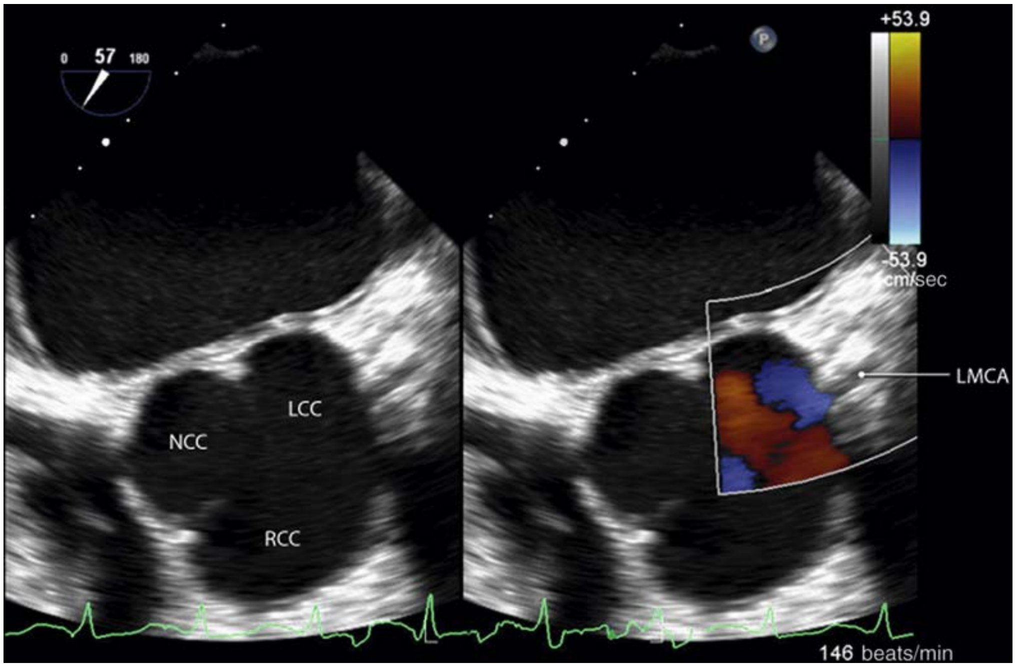

0 57 180
+53.9
-53.9 cm/sec
LMCA
LCC
NCC
RCC
146 beats/min

Fig. 54.43 **Midesophageal aortic short-axis view.** *LCC,* Left coronary cusp; *LMCA,* left main coronary artery; *NCC,* noncoronary cusp; *RCC,* right coronary cusp. (From Virtual TEE: <http://pie.med.utoronto.ca/tee>.)

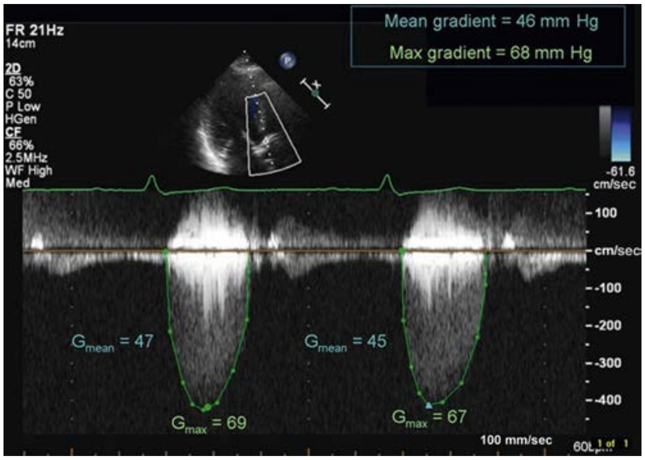

FR 21Hz
14cm
2D
63%
C 50
P Low
HGen
CF
66%
2.5MHz
WF High
Med
Mean gradient = 46 mm Hg
Max gradient = 68 mm Hg
-61.6
cm/sec
-100
cm/sec
--100
--200
--300
--400
G$_{mean}$ = 47
G$_{mean}$ = 45
G$_{max}$ = 69
G$_{max}$ = 67
100 mm/sec

Fig. 54.44 **Quantification of the degree of aortic stenosis with continuous Doppler.** G_{max}, Maximum gradient; G_{mean}, mean gradient. (From http://web.stanford.edu/group/ccm_echocardio/cgi-bin/mediawiki/index.php/Aortic_stenosis_assessment. Accessed August 21, 2014.)

the transgastric views can be used to measure the dimensions of the aortic valve annulus and the LVOT; these measurements are helpful in making surgical decisions related to the size of the valve.

Patients with AS who have not yet developed symptoms should be closely monitored over time for progression of the disease. Patients who develop symptoms (including decreased exercise tolerance and exertional dyspnea, angina, CHF, and syncope) are considered for valve replacement. A delay in surgical intervention in symptomatic patients can worsen their prognosis.[378]

Anesthetic Management. Premedication may alleviate a patient's anxiety regarding cardiac surgery, and it helps to prevent perioperative tachycardia in patients with AS. Monitoring in these patients includes standard noninvasive modalities and invasive monitoring of blood pressure and CVP. Depending on the severity of the AS, pulse pressure may be as low as 50 mm Hg or less. TEE is indicated for monitoring and the measurements obtained yield extremely valuable information (Fig. 54.45; see also Figs. 54.43 and 54.44).[381,382]

Insertion of a PA catheter may be considered to monitor PAP and CO during surgical procedures, but is rarely needed in patients with normal ventricular function. Patients with AS are at increased risk if arrhythmias develop during PA catheter placement as coronary perfusion can be severely compromised. Furthermore, if cardiopulmonary resuscitation is needed, chest compressions do not generate effective CO across the stenotic valve.

The anesthetic management of patients with AS should not involve any medication that could have negative inotropic, tachycardic, or vasodilatory effects. Furthermore, every effort should be made to ensure that the patient stays in sinus rhythm. In patients with AS, the atrial kick may contribute as much as 40% of the total CO.

Table 54.19 summarizes the goals of anesthetic care of a patient with AS.

Aortic Regurgitation

Pathophysiology. AR is the flow of blood from the aorta backward into the LV during the diastolic phase of the cardiac cycle. Chronic AR is more prevalent than acute AR and has compensatory physiologic changes, whereas acute AR is not handled well hemodynamically. However, the precise prevalence of AR—acute and chronic—remains unknown.[383]

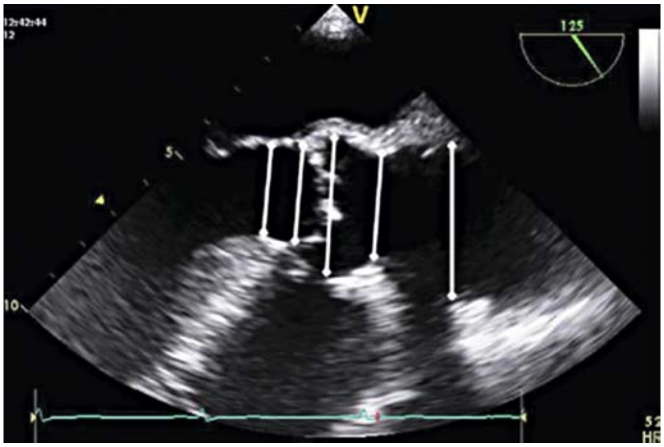


Fig. 54.45 Intraoperative transesophageal echocardiographic measurements of the aortic valve annulus, including the diameter of the left ventricular outflow tract (to exclude severe asymmetric septal hypertrophy), aortic valve annulus, sinuses of Valsalva, sinotubular junction, and ascending aorta *(arrows, from left to right).* (From Pasic M, Buz S, Dreysse S, et al. Transapical aortic valve implantation in 194 patients: problems, complications, and solutions. *Ann Thorac Surg.* 2010;90:1463–1469; discussion: 1469–1470.)

Causes of chronic AR include congenital lesions, degenerative processes, and rheumatic disease, but idiopathic causes seem to be the most common.[383] These processes cause malcoaptation of the aortic valve leaflets by producing abnormalities in the leaflets themselves or dilation of the aortic valve annulus, the aortic root, or both. Abnormalities of the aortic valve leaflets include congenital conditions (e.g., bicuspid aortic valve), endocarditis, rheumatic heart disease, inflammatory diseases, certain connective tissue diseases, and chest wall trauma causing injury to an aortic valve leaflet. Dilation of the proximal aortic root may be caused by annuloaortic ectasia resulting from long-term chronic hypertension or simply from the normal aging process.[384] Other aortic valve annular or aortic root causes of AR include Marfan syndrome, syphilis, congenital diseases such as osteogenesis imperfecta and Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, and idiopathic causes.[383,384]

Chronic Aortic Regurgitation. Patients with chronic AR may remain asymptomatic for years or even decades. The LV undergoes a process of remodeling resulting from series replication of sarcomeres and the development of eccentric ventricular hypertrophy and chamber enlargement in the presence of a chronically increasing volume of regurgitation (see Fig. 54.42). Although the pressure-volume loop is shifted far to the right in patients with chronic AR, the LVEDP remains relatively normal because the LVEDV increases slowly (Fig. 54.46). Forward flow is improved by peripheral vasodilation. Typically, a normal EF is maintained by a large stroke volume. However, over time, increases in LV wall stress and afterload result. Eventually, as LV dilation and hypertrophy progress, irreversible LV dysfunction develops, and patients become symptomatic. As a compensatory mechanism for poor CO, sympathetic constriction of the peripheral vasculature occurs to maintain blood pressure, but this adaptation exacerbates regurgitation and further reduces CO.

In addition to a detailed history and physical examination, diagnostic modalities such as magnetic resonance imaging, radionuclide angiography, and exercise stress testing are used to assess AR. However, echocardiography remains the most important diagnostic tool (Fig. 54.47). The severity of AR is assessed as follows: regurgitation of less than 20% of the total LV stroke volume is considered mild, 20% to 39% is considered moderate, 40% to 60% is considered moderately severe, and more than 60% is considered severe.

Several semiquantitative echocardiographic modalities are used to assess AR. These include color flow mapping, in which the ratio of the AR jet width to the width of the LVOT is used to ascertain the severity of the condition. Jets that appear to be central in flow may appear to be larger than

TABLE 54.19 Pathophysiologic Changes Associated With Aortic Stenosis

	LV Preload	Heart Rate	Contractility	Systemic Vascular Resistance	Pulmonary Vascular Resistance
Aortic stenosis	↑	↓ (sinus)	Maintain constant	↑	Maintain constant

LV, Left ventricular.

From Townsley MM, Martin DE. Anesthetic management for the surgical treatment of valvular heart disease. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:327.

they actually are because of the entrainment of fluids.[383] This possibility should be considered when one is evaluating a centrally directed jet as compared with an eccentrically directed jet. The vena contracta, the narrowest part of the regurgitant jet, can be measured to determine the severity of AR (see Fig. 54.47). A vena contracta measurement of 6 mm or greater carries a sensitivity of 95% and a specificity of 90% for the presence of severe AR.[385] A vena contracta of less than 3 mm indicates mild AR. The pressure half-time of the AR jet can be measured echocardiographically. A pressure half-time of less than 200 ms indicates severe AR, while a pressure half-time of greater than 500 ms indicates mild AR. In addition, holodiastolic flow reversal in the descending aorta signifies moderate-to-severe AR.

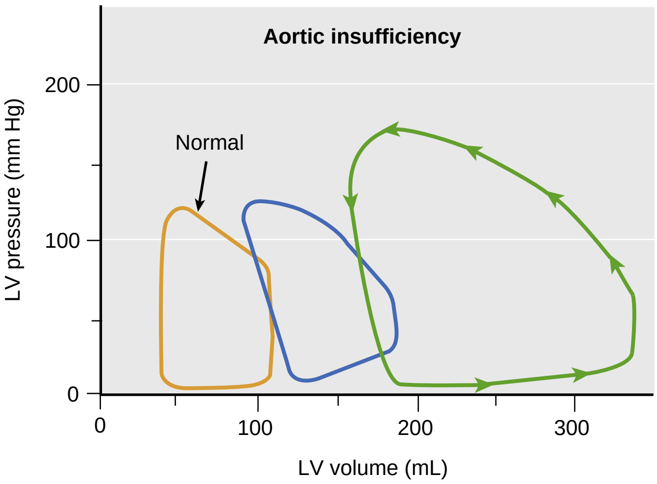


Fig. 54.46 Pressure-volume loop in aortic regurgitation (AR). Acute AR, *middle loop;* chronic AR, *right loop. LV,* Left ventricular. (Modified from Jackson JM, Thomas SJ, Lowenstein E. Anesthetic management of patients with valvular heart disease. *Semin Anesth.* 1982;1:239.)

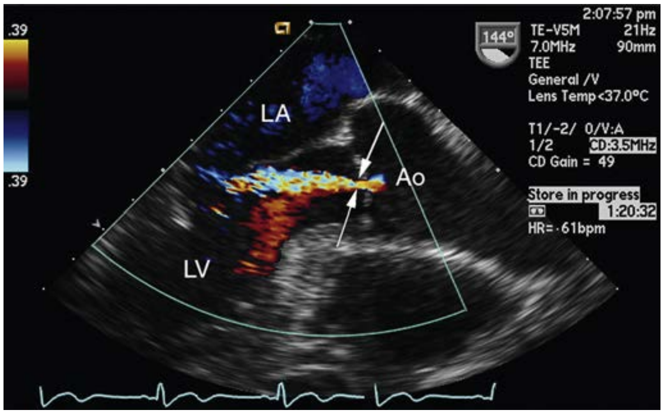


Fig. 54.47 Vena contracta. Calipers measure the narrowest portion of the aortic regurgitant jet, which corresponds to an approximation of the regurgitant orifice area. *Ao,* Aorta; *LA,* left atrium; *LV,* left ventricle. (From Perino AC, Reeves ST, eds. *A Practical Approach to Transesophageal Echocardiography.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia; Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008:232.)

Although patients with chronic AR can remain asymptomatic for decades, symptoms of left-sided HF eventually occur, such as exercise intolerance, dyspnea, and paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea or orthopnea. Afterload reduction may become necessary as the disease progresses. In addition, a few patients present with angina despite having normal coronary arteries; this angina results from poor coronary perfusion resulting from low diastolic aortic pressure. A difficult decision for the cardiologist is at what point in the course of the disease surgery should be performed to prevent the development of irreversible LV dysfunction, especially in patients with severe chronic AR.[382,383]

ACUTE AORTIC REGURGITATION. Acute AR is less common than chronic AR but carries a more ominous prognosis. Common causes of acute AR include trauma, bacterial endocarditis, and aortic dissection. Rarely, acute AR occurs as an idiopathic complication, such as after aortic valvuloplasty. The pathophysiology of acute AR is that an acute volume load compromises the LV. Because the LV has not had time to undergo the process of eccentric hypertrophy, as it does in chronic AR, it is unprepared to accommodate this sudden increase in volume. As shown in Fig. 54.46, this sudden increase in the LVEDP causes a rightward shift in the pressure-volume loop.[384] A sympathetic response is activated; tachycardia and an increased contractile state are the chief compensatory mechanisms for maintaining adequate CO. Unless acute AR is managed appropriately, these compensatory mechanisms rapidly fail. Furthermore, the sympathetic response causes sympathetic constriction of the peripheral vasculature, thereby increasing SVR and further worsening the AR. LV function can deteriorate rapidly, necessitating emergency surgery. Vasodilator therapy may temporarily stabilize the patient during transport to the operating room.[383]

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT. The anesthetic management of patients with AR should include maintaining a relatively fast heart rate (≈90 beats/min) and a relatively low SVR while maintaining preload and contractility. Table 54.20 summarizes the goals of anesthetic care for a patient with AR. Light premedication is recommended. Regarding the choice of drugs for general anesthesia in these patients, medications that cause bradycardia or high blood pressure should be avoided because these changes worsen the degree of AR and can precipitate LV failure.

Preoperative placement of an arterial catheter and central venous catheter is standard, and a PA catheter may

TABLE 54.20 Pathophysiologic Changes Associated With Aortic Regurgitation

	LV Preload	Heart Rate	Contractility	Systemic Vascular Resistance	Pulmonary Vascular Resistance
Aortic regurgitation	↑	↑	Maintain	↓	Maintain

LV, Left ventricular.
From Townsley MM, Martin DE. Anesthetic management for the surgical treatment of valvular heart disease. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:335.

be considered if PAPs are high or ventricular function is compromised. In the prebypass period, TEE allows the anesthesiologist to determine the cause and severity of the AR, evaluate LV size and function, and assess the function of the other cardiac valves. Furthermore, TEE assessment in the immediate postbypass period confirms the proper positioning and function of the new aortic valve.

Weaning from CPB may be complicated by preexisting LV dysfunction. Furthermore, mechanical aortic valve replacement results in a mild transvalvular pressure gradient. Therefore, inotropic agents may be needed to improve LV function. Preload augmentation must be continued to maintain the filling of the dilated LV.

Minimally Invasive Aortic Valve Surgery. The surgical approach to the aortic valve can be made through several different incisions, including a right parasternal incision, upper hemisternotomy, or lower hemisternotomy.[365] Because surgical exposure is limited, transcutaneous defibrillator pads should be placed before preparing and draping, should the need to defibrillate arise.[372]

Placement of CPB cannulas from distant sites is a hallmark of minimally invasive surgery and speaks to the importance of TEE guidance led by the anesthesiologist. To achieve arterial access, a surgical decision may be made to cannulate the femoral artery.[373] Alternatively, if aortic atheromatous disease precludes retrograde aortic arterial flow, the surgeon may attempt aortic cannulation through an incision directly into the aorta, or through the axillary artery.[370,372] Venous bypass drainage can be accomplished by cannulating the right atrium (if surgical exposure is not compromised) or through the femoral vein. Positioning of the distal drainage portion of the femoral vein cannula in the IVC, right atrium, or distal segment of the SVC is guided and confirmed by TEE (Fig. 54.48).[373] To reduce the incidence and magnitude of retained intracavitary LV air, carbon dioxide can be insufflated into the surgical field.[370]

In general, anesthetic monitoring considerations are similar to those for standard approaches to valvular heart surgery. However, in the absence of direct visualization of the heart, TEE is even more valuable for assessing cannula positioning and ensuring adequate ventricular deairing.[372] If retrograde cardioplegia is required, TEE may be used to guide a transjugular retrograde catheter into the coronary sinus.

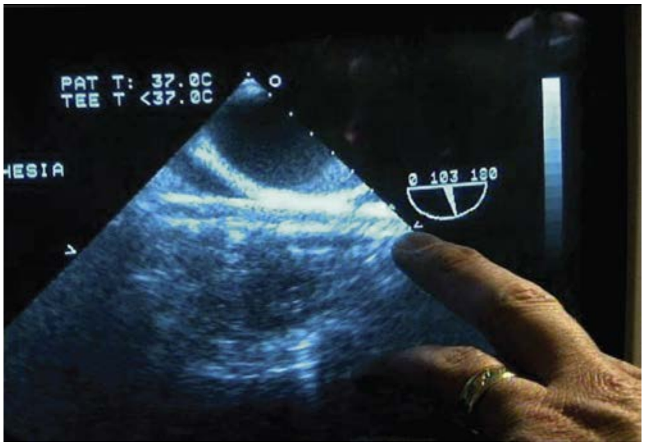


Fig. 54.48 Venous cannula placement through the inferior vena cava–right atrium into the superior vena cava.

One report of a large series of minimally invasive aortic valve procedures included more than 900 patients. Compared with the national average, these patients had decreased blood product use (with 53% of first-time aortic valve surgery patients receiving no blood products) and higher rates of discharge home (including 40% of the octogenarian patients).[386]

Other Valvular Disease

Tricuspid Valve Disease. Right-sided valvular disease in adults is most often a manifestation of increased pulmonary pressures (e.g., secondary to intrinsic lung disease, pulmonary vascular disease, or left-sided cardiac disease), but it can also result from rheumatic, traumatic, infectious, humoral, and/or neoplastic processes.

Tricuspid Regurgitation. Tricuspid valvular disease in adults is predominately regurgitant. Though it may be well-tolerated when mild-moderate, patients with significant TR will eventually demonstrate signs and symptoms of elevated RA pressure (e.g., hepatomegaly, peripheral edema, ascites). Compensatory changes with long-standing TR involve RV and RA chamber dilatation, and possibly atrial fibrillation. Long-standing TR and RV enlargement will progressively result in RV systolic dysfunction due to the alteration in RV geometry, which leads to further tricuspid annular dilation, worsening of TR severity, and further RV enlargement. TR has been categorized into stages based on severity and secondary findings of importance with implications regarding the manner of repair once indicated.[387]

- Stage 1: initial annular dilatation secondary to RV enlargement. TR is not usually significant.
- Stage 2: progressive annular dilatation results in poor leaflet coaptation. TR is significant. RV dilatation is more pronounced.
- Stage 3: severe RV dilatation and dysfunction, with tethering of tricuspid leaflets due to RV dilatation causing severe TR

If the tricuspid insufficiency is secondary to RV pressure overload states, as with pulmonary hypertension, RV hypertrophy also ensues. This hypertrophy and increased RV pressure can lead to leftward displacement of the interventricular septum and impaired LV systolic and diastolic performance.

Primary or structural TR results in morphological abnormalities of the leaflets themselves as a result of rheumatic, traumatic, infectious, humoral, and/or neoplastic processes. Secondary or functional TR is the most commonly observed etiology of TR in Western countries,[388] and can be a sequelae of left-sided cardiac disease that results in elevated pulmonary vascular pressures, cor pulmonale, and/or primary pulmonary hypertension. Functional TR is most often the result of a dilated tricuspid annulus (the tricuspid leaflets are morphologically normal), and is frequently present in patients undergoing aortic, and particularly mitral, valve surgery. It has long been known that a small degree of TR can be demonstrated in about 70% of normal individuals, but it remains somewhat controversial to conclude that it is therefore normal to have TR. What is not in debate, however, is that TR leads to progressive right-sided volume overload and progressive annular dilatation that will not spontaneously remodel following repair of left-sided valvular lesions, and may even continue to dilate further.[389]

Severe TR is a predictor of long-term mortality (65% 1-year survival rate in patients with severe TR compared with 90% of patients without TR),[390] and thus is now considered a class I indication in both American and European guidelines for concomitant tricuspid valve repair or replacement in patients undergoing left-sided heart valve surgical procedures. Tricuspid annular dilatation alone with lesser degrees of TR is considered a class II indication for tricuspid valve repair or replacement in patients undergoing left-sided heart valve surgical procedures.

TR impairs the ability of the RV to pump blood through the lungs and across to the left side, so the main anesthetic management consideration for the patient with TR is preload preservation. The most effective management strategy to improve forward flow from the RV derives from the principle of ventriculoarterial coupling, which holds that no matter how compromised the intrinsic systolic mechanics of a pumping chamber may be, its ability to function as a pump will generally be improved by reducing the afterload against which it must pump. Thus, reductions in PVR (e.g., with nitric oxide or inhaled prostaglandins) can help to optimize RV function, decrease TR, and get blood across the pulmonary bed to the left side. High-normal heart rates, maintenance of atrial kick, and judicious use of inotropes or inodilators will also help optimize forward flow from the RV as needed. Repair of functional TR usually entails either surgical annuloplasty (e.g., with a ring or band) or bicuspidization, either of which are usually successful in decreasing the amount of TR, but which can sometimes leave mild residual TR or create an elevated pressure gradient across the tricuspid valve if the annular size is excessively downsized.[385]

TRICUSPID STENOSIS. Tricuspid stenosis (TS) is a relatively rare clinical finding in adults. Patients with TS may have significant RA enlargement and possibly atrial fibrillation. Chronic elevation of RA pressure leads to IVC dilatation, jugular venous distention, and hepatic congestion. Clinical symptoms and signs can include hepatomegaly (with or without hepatic dysfunction), ascites, peripheral edema, fatigue, and dyspnea.[385,391]

TS results in reduced RV filling. The normal tricuspid valve area is 7 cm^2, and ventricular filling is compromised once the valve area falls to less than 1.5 cm^2. The severity of TS is usually assessed echocardiographically by measuring the Doppler-derived transvalvular gradient. Mild TS is associated with a gradient of 2 mm Hg or less; moderate TS, 2 to 6 mm Hg; and severe TS, greater than 6 mm Hg.[392]

Anesthetic management centers on maintaining preload and controlling heart rate. Overt tachycardia should be avoided because it significantly shortens the interval for diastolic filling, which is necessary in these patients. The target heart rate is not frank bradycardia, because CO may not be optimal, but the heart rate should be in the low-normal range. When atrial fibrillation is not part of the clinical picture, preserving AV synchrony is important for maintaining RV preload and CO. Although RV inotropic failure is not usually a major concern in isolated TS, it may be when TS is a part of multivalvular heart disease or ischemic heart disease, thus warranting consideration of inotropic support. SVR should be maintained because the fixed obstruction at the level of the tricuspid valve prevents a compensatory increase in preload if afterload declines.

Pulmonic Valve Disease. Pulmonic valvular disease can be congenital or acquired, with congenital etiologies responsible for the vast majority of the cases. Previous pulmonic valve surgery is not an infrequent etiology of pulmonic valve disease in adults.

PULMONIC STENOSIS. Pulmonic stenosis (PS) *as an entity* entails an obstruction to right-sided CO, with the obstruction potentially located at the subvalvar level (just below the valve in the RVOT), at the level of the valve itself, or supravalvar (above the valve in the main PA). Valvular PS is caused by congenital valve abnormalities in 95% of cases,[385] but isolated valvular PS is relatively rare as a congenital lesion. Acquired etiologies in adults include carcinoid disease, rheumatic disease, and prior pulmonic valve, RVOT, or main PA procedures. This would include a prior Ross Procedure (to correct congenital AS) in which the pulmonic valve is translocated to the aortic position and a homograft is implanted in the pulmonic position. Elevated transvalvular pressure gradients may lead to RV hypertrophy, RV and tricuspid annular dilatation, TR, and possibly eventual RV failure. Treatments for valvular PS include percutaneous balloon valvuloplasty, surgical valvotomy, RV to PA conduits, and surgical or percutaneous valve replacement. However, recent data indicate that the currently available percutaneous transcatheter pulmonic valve "may not be able to adequately address a subset of patients with complex RVOT morphology."[393] Medical management strategies for valvular PS include judicious heart rate control, preload maintenance, and inotropic support as a bridge to percutaneous or surgical intervention. Supravalvular narrowings are often amenable to percutaneous dilatation and/or stenting. Subvalvular muscular infundibular obstruction may occur naturally in tetralogy of Fallot (and is generally relieved by afterload augmentation with or without volume loading as needed). Infundibular obstruction can also result from chronic long-standing PS. As with dynamic LVOT obstruction, tachycardia and hypovolemia can precipitate a dynamic clinical condition in which RVOT obstruction is accentuated. Dynamic RVOT obstruction is managed as for dynamic LVOT obstruction, with preload maintenance, afterload augmentation, control of heart rate, and avoidance of an enhanced inotropic state.

PULMONIC INSUFFICIENCY. Pulmonic insufficiency (PI) can result when the pulmonic valve is rendered incompetent in childhood during balloon valvuloplasty for congenital PS or during surgical valvotomy for tetralogy of Fallot. PI may also be associated with rheumatic heart disease, pulmonary hypertension, pulmonary embolus, carcinoid syndrome, trauma, Marfan syndrome, idiopathic dilation of the pulmonary trunk, and endocarditis.[385] A common cause of mild PI is left-sided disease resulting in pulmonary hypertension. Most patients are asymptomatic, but long-standing severe PI can lead to symptomatic RV dilation and failure, warranting replacement of the pulmonic valve.

Anesthetic management requires being mindful of the primary cardiac or pulmonary disease that led to the pulmonic valvular insufficiency. In primary PI, anesthetic management goals may include maintaining preload, supporting contractility, and reducing PVR through ventilatory maneuvers and/or initiation of selective pulmonary vasodilatation (e.g., with nitric oxide or inhaled prostaglandins).

Minimally invasive surgical approaches can also be used to treat tricuspid valve disease,[394] as well as ASDs. Minimally invasive approaches to heart surgery are best accomplished through careful design of a hybrid operating room.

Structural Heart Procedures

Hybrid Operating Room. To address the technologic and procedural demands regarding surgical and imaging equipment for selected endovascular and transcatheter procedures, hybrid operating rooms have been built in many institutions. These rooms have complete dual capabilities for procedures that require fluoroscopy, open surgery, or both. Ideally, such rooms are within or adjacent to the regular surgical suite. The physical location of such hybrid rooms may represent an advance in care in that key personnel are more readily available to handle unanticipated complications and emergencies.

The types of procedures that are performed in the hybrid operating room vary according to institutional preferences but may include (1) electrophysiology procedures, (2) percutaneous management of valvular lesions, (3) placement of occlusion or umbrella devices to close intracardiac defects or communications, (4) placement of percutaneous VAD, (5) left atrial appendage (LAA) occlusion device placement, and (6) stenting of abdominal or thoracic aortic aneurysms.[395-397]

Although requirements vary depending on the nature of the procedure, sedation or general anesthesia along with monitoring by an anesthesiologist improves the efficacy and safety of many procedures.[398] Providing stable hemodynamics for organ perfusion and preservation during the procedure is an important goal. Some procedures can be performed with the aid of monitored anesthesia care or regional blocks, provided a certain patient comfort level can be achieved; however, in many cases, a general anesthetic regimen may be the best option. If indicated, general anesthesia with endotracheal intubation provides a controlled situation: the patient's comfort is maximized, and the airway is secured.[399] Use of a laryngeal mask or a standard mask airway is also possible, but the constant diaphragmatic movements that occur during spontaneous ventilation may interfere with fluoroscopic visualization of cardiac and vascular structures. In the absence of significant complications or comorbid conditions, the patient may be allowed to emerge from anesthesia before being transferred to a recovery area. In more complex cases, the patient may be transferred to an ICU and a slower emergence from general anesthesia can take place.

Most percutaneous procedures that are performed with fluoroscopic and TEE guidance are performed with the patient under general anesthesia. These include mitral valve repairs and many TAVI procedures where sternotomy and CPB are avoided, yet TEE is crucial to the performance and evaluation of the procedure.[396] Percutaneous closure devices, such as for ASDs and VSDs, and fenestrations are often performed with intracardiac echocardiography (ICE). If ICE or transthoracic imaging can be used, or imaging can be restricted to fluoroscopy only, procedures can be done with sedation.[397,398] Large-bore peripheral or femoral venous access is needed, and a radial arterial line is often placed.

Percutaneous VADs (TandemHeart, Cardiac Assist, Inc., Pittsburgh, PA, and Impella Recover LP 2.5 and 5.0, Abiomed, Inc., Danvers, MA) are placed in patients undergoing high-risk coronary interventions or ablation procedures or who are in cardiogenic shock.[397] These devices can almost fully support LV function and produce a CO with nonpulsatile blood flow. Thus, pulse oximetry and noninvasive blood pressure measurement may not work properly, and intraarterial line placement is recommended. Either sedation or general anesthesia can be used, depending on the patient's hemodynamic status and ability to cooperate. Large-bore intravenous access is desirable because a large amount of blood loss is possible. Surgical backup is necessary during these procedures.

Transcatheter Aortic Valve Implantation. Symptomatic patients with severe AS have a poor prognosis; the mortality at 1 year in medically treated patients is 50%.[400] Transcatheter aortic valve implantation (TAVI) was originally an alternative treatment option in patients with severe AS for whom cardiac surgery and traditional aortic valve replacement posed substantial risks, particularly patients of advanced age who have extreme comorbidities (e.g., porcelain aorta, prior radiation therapy, frailty, severe hepatic or pulmonary disease).[401-403] Now transcutaneous aortic valve replacement is being employed for treatment of patients categorized as moderate-risk patients, and trials are under way to study the procedure in low-risk patients.[404]

The technologic advances made in the development of TAVI procedures are ingenious. However, the procedure is associated with short-term and long-term morbidity, including mortality, stroke, need for permanent pacemaker insertion, vascular complications, valve embolization, renal failure, cardiac rupture, aortic rupture, cardiac tamponade, and bleeding.[405,406] Published guidelines regarding the TAVI procedure recommend specialized multidisciplinary heart teams that include cardiologists, cardiac surgeons, anesthesiologists, intensivists, nurses, and others.[404] The hybrid operating room or cardiac catheterization laboratory (CCL) where the procedure is performed must have adequate space, expert echocardiography, emergency supplies, support from colleagues, and immediate access to CPB technicians and a cardiac surgeon if necessary.

The TAVI procedure requires vascular access to the aortic valve annulus (Fig. 54.49).[407] Most procedures are performed using retrograde access via the femoral artery, however, other retrograde access can be accomplished using the subclavian or innominate artery or a direct ascending aortic approach. In cases where aortic disease or anatomy precludes a retrograde approach, anterograde access can also be performed through surgical exposure of the LV and a transapical approach. General anesthesia is needed for transapical procedures.[405] Large-bore intravenous access, an arterial catheter, and central venous access are essential, and a PA catheter may be used in patients with preexisting pulmonary hypertension. External defibrillation pads are placed and connected to the defibrillator before the procedure begins (ventricular fibrillation can result from manipulation of catheters within the heart or from rapid ventricular pacing).[405] Because a period of rapid ventricular pacing is required during deployment of certain of the valves, a transvenous lead for temporary pacing is inserted, typically through the femoral or subclavian vein (or, in the case of transapical procedures, sewn directly on the epicardial surface).[405]

When general anesthesia is used, a TEE probe is introduced after induction of anesthesia, so that structural anatomy can be confirmed after the TAVI procedure. A number of centers have adopted a minimalist approach to transfemoral TAVI in which sedation has replaced general anesthesia, and a fast-track protocol speeds the throughput of these patients. This has led it to be a "same-day" procedure in some sites with relatively good results, although these techniques are highly institutionally dependent and success is predicated upon the dynamics and experience of a well-trained team.[408,409]

The advantages of this approach include neurologic status monitoring, greater hemodynamic stability, and possibly reduced postprocedure length of stay in the ICU compared with an approach using general anesthesia.[410] However, if TEE is a planned part of the procedure to evaluate valve placement, aortic integrity, and to rule out cardiac complications, general anesthesia is suggested.

TEE has a central role in evaluating annulus size, aortic disease, ventricular function, and MR, as well as determining reasons for hemodynamic instability.[407,411] A balloon valvuloplasty of the aortic valve often precedes the insertion of a bioprosthetic valve, which is crimped on a valvuloplasty balloon catheter and implanted by inflation. The device is guided into position through the combined use of real-time TEE and fluoroscopy. Immediately after inflation, TEE is employed to measure the degree and source of any AR[412] and to examine the aorta for any aortic dissection.[407,411]

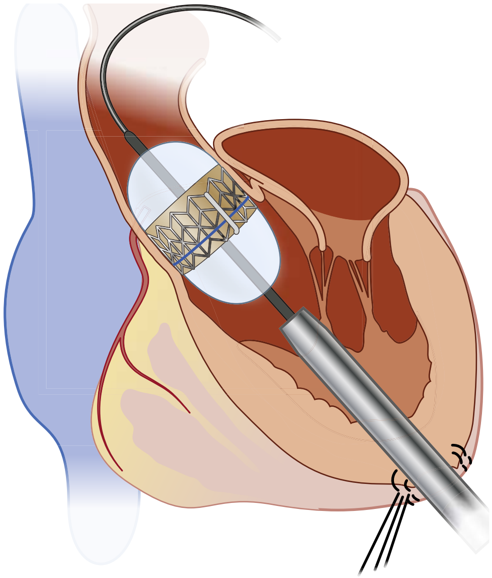


Fig. 54.49 Schematic of transapical aortic valve implantation. The prosthesis is implanted within the native annulus by balloon inflation. (From Walther T, Ralk V, Borger MA, et al. Minimally invasive transapical beating heart aortic valve implantation: proof of concept. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg.* 2007;31:9–15.)

A major challenge during the TAVI procedure is maintaining hemodynamic stability. In patients with severe concentric LV hypertrophy and intravascular volume depletion, hemodynamic status may deteriorate rapidly because of ventricular pacing, intracardiac guidewire or catheter manipulation, or balloon aortic valvuloplasty itself.[405] Avoiding prolonged hypotension and the cycle of hypotension, subendocardial ischemia, and low output is critical to prevent hemodynamic collapse. The frequency and duration of rapid ventricular pacing episodes may need to be limited to allow enough time between episodes for spontaneous circulation to recover. Vasopressors (norepinephrine, epinephrine, or phenylephrine), administered as incremental boluses or as a continuous infusion, may be necessary. Constant communication among team members is essential throughout this multidisciplinary procedure.

The TAVI procedure requires state-of-the-art imaging capability, as well as the immediate availability of personnel to secure surgical access and institute CPB.[403] The short-term efficacy of TAVI, as shown by echocardiographic measurements, is good.[406] However, evidence on long-term outcomes awaits further data collection in national TAVI registries.[405,413]

Mitral Valve Clipping. Percutaneous mitral valve repair by clipping is a catheter-based procedure, in which edge-to-edge repair of the mitral valve is performed by the MitraClip (Abbott Inc., North Chicago, IL) (Fig. 54.50).[414] The MitraClip is used to perform mitral valve repair in patients who are considered too high-risk to undergo conventional mitral valve repair surgery. The percutaneous procedure is performed on a beating heart. TEE plays a crucial role in

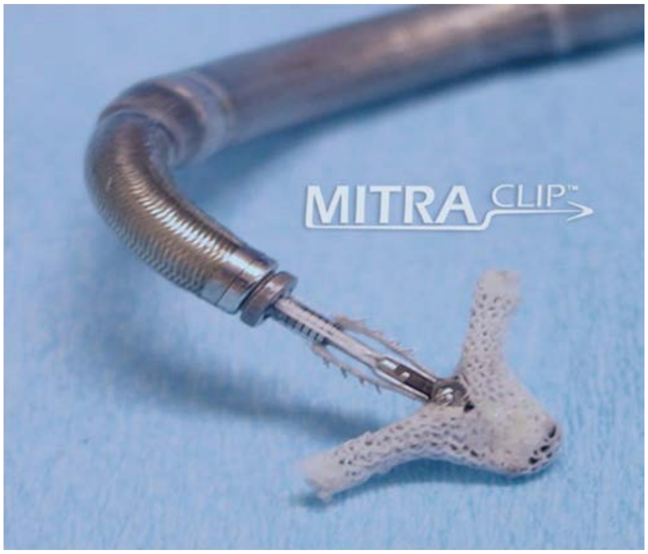


Fig. 54.50 Close-up view of the MitraClip (Abbott Inc., North Chicago, IL). (From Kothandan H, Vui KH, Khung KY, et al. Anesthesia management for MitraClip device implantation. *Ann Card Anaesth.* 2014;17[1]:17–22.)

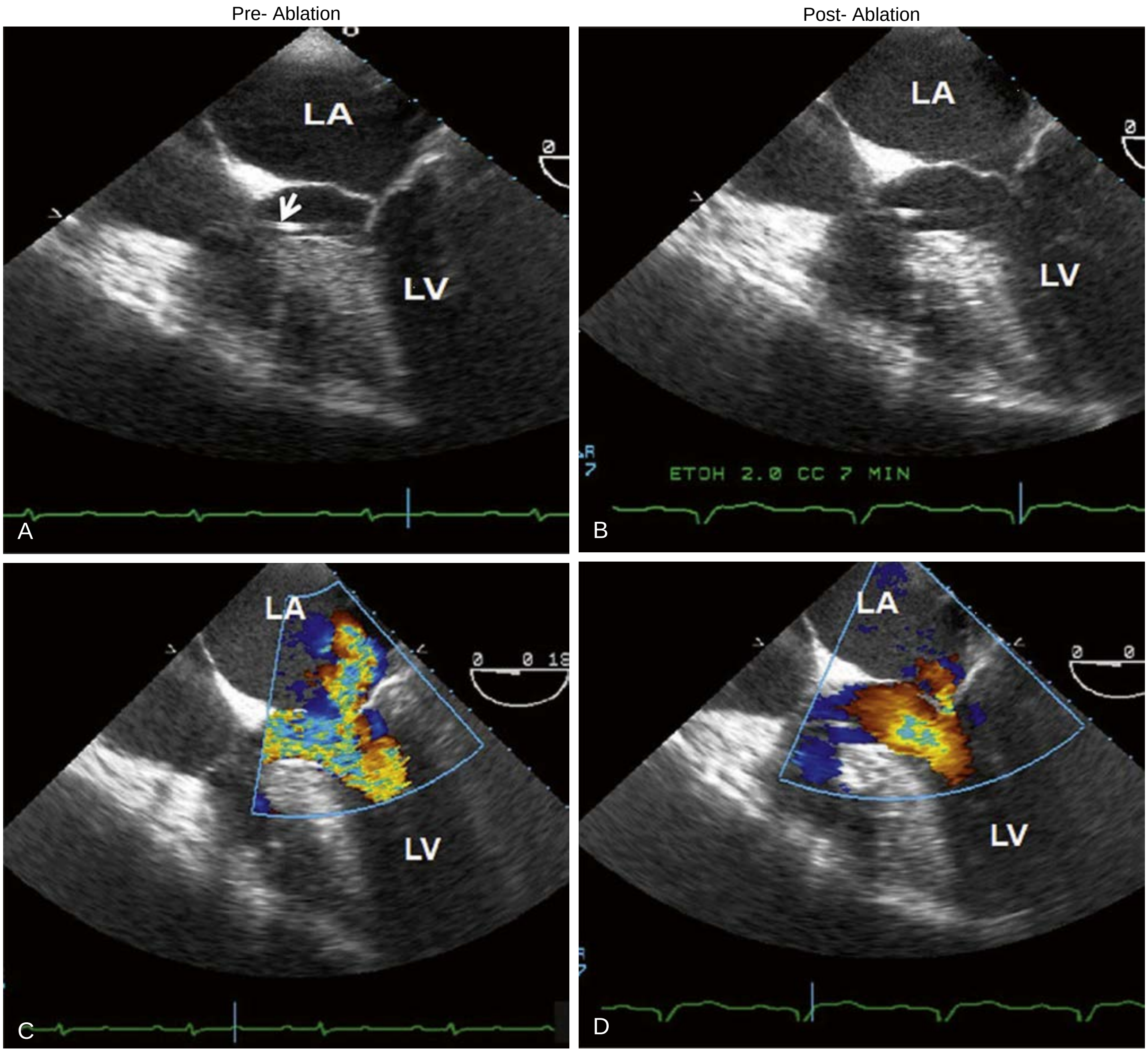


Fig. 54.51 Transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) shows images before and after MitraClip implantation in a patient with functional mitral regurgitation. 4-chamber views showing MR (A) before and (B) after MitraClip implantation. 2-chamber view showing MR before (C) and after (D) MitraClip implantation. *LA,* Left atrium; *LV,* left ventricle. (From Kothandan H, Vui KH, Khung KY, et al. Anesthesia management for MitraClip device implantation. *Ann Card Anaesth.* 2014;17[1]:17–22.)

directing the deployment of the device and placement of the clip(s). At the start of the procedure, 3D TEE is performed to provide pertinent annular and leaflet measurements. The device is advanced through the femoral vein and, after interatrial septal puncture, it is advanced into position under the guidance of TEE, taking care to avoid the atrial walls. A successfully performed MitraClip implantation produces a double orifice mitral valve (Fig. 54.51),[414] similar to an Alfieri repair, a mitral valve edge-to-edge stitch that is performed in the operating room with the use of CPB.[414]

MitraClip implantation has been shown to significantly reduce mitral regurgitation, improve the NYHA functional class of the patient,[415] and to shorten hospital stay relative to open cardiac surgery (Fig. 54.52). Potential problems associated with the procedure include worsening of the regurgitation, valvular stenosis, residual ASD, and rupture of the atrial wall with resultant tamponade.[414]

A multidisciplinary team comprised of a cardiologist, cardiac surgeon, cardiac anesthesiologist, cardiac specialty nursing staff, and a radiology technician is necessary to ensure success of these procedures.

Anesthetic Considerations. Mitral valve clipping is performed under general anesthesia with endotracheal intubation. Standard ASA monitors and arterial line for blood pressure monitoring are used. Two optimally functioning peripheral intravenous lines are generally considered adequate.

After the interatrial septal puncture is made, anticoagulation is achieved by administering heparin to achieve an ACT of approximately 250 seconds. Maintenance of ACT at

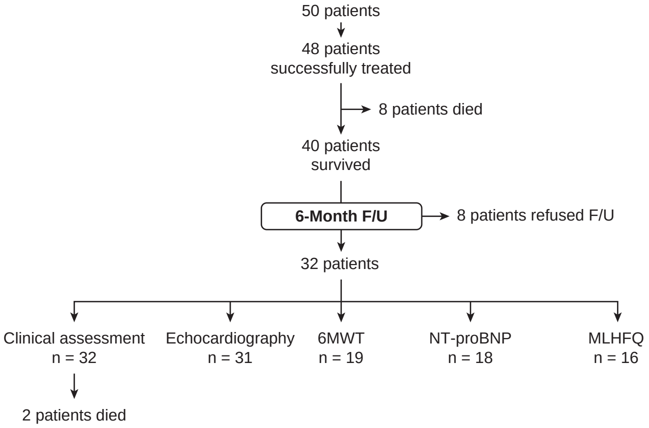


Fig. 54.52 Outcomes of MitraClip implantation at 6 months. Clinical follow–up was obtained from 32 and echocardiographic follow–up from 31 successfully treated patients at a median of 6.1 months (range, 4.2-10.4 months). Eight patients had died by the time of their scheduled follow–up visit, and eight patients did not return for a follow–up visit—one patient because he had received an LV assist device 3 months after MitraClip therapy and the others because they lived too far away from their respective treatment centers. Flow of patients over the 6–month period. *F/U*, follow–up; *MLHFQ*, Minnesota Living with Heart Failure Questionnaire; *6MWT*, 6–minute walk test. (Redrawn from Franzen O, van der Heyden J, Baldus S, et al. MitraClip therapy in patients with end-stage systolic heart failure. *Eu J Heart Fail.* 2011;13:569–576.)

an adequate level is ensured by checking the values every 30 minutes.[414]

During the procedure, ventilation holding may be required at certain critical points. Placement of a second clip may require special attention on the part of the cardiac anesthesiologist. During the advancement of the second clip from atrium to the ventricle there is a potential for damage to the first clip. Some patients may experience transient hypotension during this process, and the use of vasopressors might be needed to support the blood pressure. Blood pressure should be brought to patient's non-anesthetized state at the end of each grasp and before the release of the device to evaluate any residual regurgitation. This will eventually help determine if the clip can be deployed or an additional clip will be needed.[414]

At the conclusion, protamine is used to reverse anticoagulation and patients are typically extubated at the end of the procedure, unless there is a medical need to keep the endotracheal tube in place. All patients typically spend the first night after the procedure in an ICU, although trends toward fast-tracking and bypassing the ICU have permeated the mitral clipping procedures as well.

Left Atrial Appendage Occlusion Device Implantation. AF remains the most common arrhythmia. AF increases the risk of stroke by fivefold due to appendage thrombus embolization, and consequently carries significant morbidity and mortality.[416] Drugs commonly used for the prevention of thrombus formation include warfarin, factor Xa inhibitors, and direct thrombin inhibitors, which reduce the risk of stroke by 60%. Patients for whom anticoagulant medication is contraindicated would be candidates for LAA occlusion techniques, which are increasingly available.

The PROTECT AF clinical trial studied the Watchman LAA system (Boston Scientific Corporation, Natick, MA) under the hypothesis that AF patients can be protected from stroke with the Watchman as effectively as with systemic anticoagulation.[416]

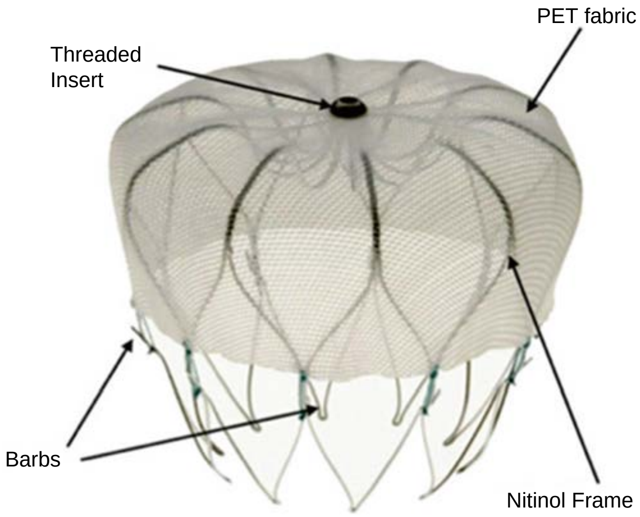


Fig. 54.53 Watchman device (Boston Scientific Corporation, Natick, MA), a self-expanding nitinol frame structure with fixation barbs and a permeable polyester fabric that covers the atrial facing surface of the device. (From Ding J, Zhu J, Lu J, et al. Transcatheter closure of the LAA: initial experience with the Watchman device. *Int J Clin Exp Med.* 2015;8[9]:15230–15237.)

Fig. 54.53[416] shows the Watchman device (Boston Scientific Corporation). Designed like a parachute, the Watchman device is deployed percutaneously from the femoral vein approach, and using TEE and fluoroscopic guidance, is directed across the interatrial septum and into the LAA. TEE is used extensively to evaluate the final deployment of the device and to confirm that there is minimal peri-device blood leakage.

Role of Transesophageal Echocardiography in the Watchman Procedure. Preprocedure TEE should be performed to rule out presence of a thrombus in the LAA, as it is a contraindication to the procedure. The presence of spontaneous contrast, on the other hand, is not considered a contraindication. TEE is further used to ascertain the shape of the LAA, the number and location of lobes of the LAA, and compared with the cardiac CT exam. In addition, the width of the orifice is measured using multiple viewing angles to determine the ideal landing zone, 10 mm distal to the ostium of the appendage. It is recommended that the device be sized 3-5 mm larger than the largest diameter.[417]

The device is advanced through a transseptal puncture. In order to align the device with the axis of the LAA the septal puncture is made in the inferior and posterior part of the fossa ovalis. Care must be taken to guide the device away from the aortic valve. The midesophageal aortic valve short-axis view and the midesophageal bicaval view can be used to ensure that the device is positioned near the IVC and is being advanced away from the aortic valve. After testing the device with a tug test and using color Doppler to rule out any significant perioccluder blood leakage, the device is finally released from the delivery cable.

Postimplantation it is important to perform a thorough TEE evaluation to rule out complications of implantation.

These complications may include left upper pulmonary vein compression, mitral valve impingement, and circumflex coronary artery compression.[417]

Anesthetic Management. LAA occluders are deployed under general anesthesia with endotracheal intubation. In addition to the standard ASA monitors, two large-bore peripheral intravenous lines are required for these procedures. At the time of septal puncture, heparin is administered to achieve a target ACT of greater than 250 seconds. Depending on the ACT toward the end of the procedure, heparin may be reversed with protamine. Generally, Watchman procedures are short in duration, in the range of 30 to 45 minutes. Patients are extubated on the table and are kept in the hospital overnight for observation after the procedure.

HEART FAILURE

HF can be defined as a complex clinical syndrome caused by any structural or functional cardiac disorder that impairs the ability of the heart (as a pump) to meet the metabolic demands of the body. Thus HF can result from an impairment of diastolic filling, systolic ejection, or both. Once HF is present, progressive cycles of deterioration and transient compensation ensue that may continue for years. Essentially, increases in end-diastolic volumes are compensated for by endogenously promoted diuresis, which is compensated for by sympathetic activation. This activation promotes further diuresis, which then requires compensation by further sympathetic activation, and so on. As the syndrome progresses, the hemodynamic changes, the cycles of fluid retention and relative hypovolemia, and bodily hypoperfusion perturb many neuroendocrine, humoral, and inflammatory feedback loops (Box 54.13), with resulting progressive and inexorable cycles of physical and functional deterioration of the heart and major bodily organs. In the United States, more than 6 million people currently have HF, and its prevalence is estimated at 10% in people older than 65 years. Although survival with HF has improved, the mortality associated with HF remains high, and at least 50% of patients with HF are expected to die within 5 years of diagnosis.

The ACC/AHA guidelines for the evaluation and management of chronic HF place patients in four classes based on the stages of the syndrome (Box 54.14).[418] Early in the course of the disease, ventricular contractility is maintained by adrenergic stimulation and activation of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone and other neurohormonal and cytokine systems.[419,420] Patients in this stage would be considered to be in ACC/AHA class B. However, these compensatory mechanisms become less effective over time, and ventricular dilatation and fibrosis occur, progressively worsening cardiac function. This produces a chronic state of low perfusion and, ultimately, refractory end-stage HF, labeled class D in the ACC/AHA classification scheme. The New York Heart Association (NYHA) functional classification system is also used to assess the severity of functional limitations and correlates fairly well with prognosis (Box 54.15). Some patients may remain asymptomatic for years despite ventricular remodeling, dilatation, and decreased EF.

BOX 54.13 Pathophysiology of Heart Failure: From Injury to Clinical Syndrome

1. Causes
    a. Myocardial injury
        i. Ischemia
        ii. Toxins
        iii. Volume overload
        iv. Pressure overload
    b. Genetic perturbation
2. Cardiac remodeling
    a. Myocyte growth
        i. Concentric hypertrophy
        ii. Eccentric hypertrophy
    b. Interstitial fibrosis
    c. Apoptosis
    d. Sarcomere slippage
    e. Chamber enlargement
3. Clinical heart failure milieu
    a. Pump performance
    b. Circulatory dynamics
    c. Metabolic abnormalities

BOX 54.14 American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Classification of Chronic Heart Failure Stages

A: High risk for heart failure
  Hypertension, diabetes mellitus, coronary artery disease, family history of cardiomyopathy
B: Asymptomatic heart failure
  Previous myocardial infarction, left ventricular dysfunction, valvular heart disease
C: Symptomatic heart failure
  Structural heart disease, dyspnea, fatigue, impaired exercise tolerance
D: Refractory end-stage heart failure
  Marked symptoms at rest despite maximal medical therapy

From Hunt SA, Abraham WT, Chin MH, et al. 2009 Focused update incorporated into the ACC/AHA 2005 guidelines for the diagnosis and management of heart failure in adults: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines developed in collaboration with the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2009;53:e1–e90.

BOX 54.15 New York Heart Association Heart Failure Symptom Classification System

NYHA Class Level of Impairment

I: Ordinary physical activity not limited by symptoms
II: Ordinary physical activity somewhat limited by dyspnea
III: Exercise limited by dyspnea during a mild workload
IV: Dyspnea at rest or with very little exertion

NYHA, New York Heart Association.

Medical Management of Heart Failure

Medical strategies for treating developing HF aim to limit disease progression, prolong life, and improve quality of life as the syndrome progresses. Medical therapies, such as ACEIs, β-blockers, diuretics, inotropic agents, and antiarrhythmics, represent the usual standard of care for HF patients. In general, β-blockers, ACEIs, and ARBs (for those who cannot tolerate ACEIs) are class I indications in the current ACC/AHA guidelines for class A and B patients with HF who have cardiac structural abnormalities and who have not yet developed symptoms of HF.[418] Signs and symptoms of HF (class C) are class I indications for the use of certain β-blockers that have been shown to prolong life (e.g., bisoprolol, carvedilol, and sustained release metoprolol), ACEIs, and ARBs. Diuretics and salt restriction should be added for patients with fluid retention. The implantation of devices for cardiac resynchronization therapy and defibrillatory capability is recommended, and revascularization and valve repair or replacement should be performed as appropriate. In both symptomatic and asymptomatic patients, current ACC/AHA guidelines list several additional potential therapies with class II and III indications.

However, even multidrug regimens may not prevent progression toward class D HF. A patient who has reached this category has a 2-year mortality risk greater than 75%. Thus, surgical intervention at less advanced stages of HF has become common in an attempt to prevent the inexorable progression of the syndrome.

Surgical Management of Heart Failure

In prior decades, the only established surgical treatment option for advanced HF was cardiac transplantation, which is still associated with excellent survival rates and functional capacity. It is now currently accepted that certain surgical interventions (in conjunction with pharmacological) have the capacity to retard or even potentially reverse the pathophysiology of cardiac failure. Though there are no large multicenter trials showing an independent effect on enhanced survival, specific surgical interventions (e.g., coronary revascularization, mitral valve repair/replacement) are now routinely performed for patients with advanced stages of HF to improve quality of life.

CAD is still the most common cause of HF, as it has been reported to be for many years. Where viable myocardium and feasible targets exist, revascularization of the failing heart can improve cardiac function and NYHA functional class.[421,422] It can also slow remodeling and decrease the incidence of arrhythmias,[423] and it has been demonstrated to improve survival. For example, Liao and associates found that among patients with CHF, survival was improved in patients who underwent revascularization compared with those who did not.[421] The optimal method of revascularization has not been conclusively determined, however, and studies continue to examine the issue of whether percutaneous coronary intervention is as effective as the gold standard intervention, CABG, in promoting long-term survival. The issue may be further complex in that certain subpopulations of patients benefit differently (e.g., those with diabetes), that surgical technique is not uniform, and that not all stents are equivalent. A meta-analysis demonstrated that in transplanted patients with HF from coronary allograft vasculopathy, patients who underwent percutaneous intervention instead of CABG had both a lower early mortality (PCI 4.3% vs. CABG 36.4%; $P < .001$) and a convincing trend regarding overall mortality (PCI 21.4% vs. CABG 42.3%; $P = .049$).[424]

Carefully selected patients with advanced CHF and MR receive several benefits from mitral valve repair or replacement. Among them are a progressive decrease in LVEDV, reverse remodeling, a progressive improvement in LVEF, improved functional status or NYHA class, improved 6-minute walk-test performance, improved peak oxygen consumption, and lower long-term mortality risk.[425,426] In fact, the 2017 focused update to the 2014 ACC/AHA Guidelines for the Management of Valvular Heart Disease provide several recommendations regarding surgical interventions for valvular dysfunction in the setting of HF.[427] Notably, a reminder is put forth in the guidelines that primary and secondary MR are different diseases. Primary (structural) mitral regurgitation is the subject of both curative and preventative recommendations. From a curative perspective, it is a class I recommendation that primary severe MR should be addressed surgically in the setting of LV dysfunction (LVEF 30%-60%) and/or LV end-systolic dimension (LVESD) ≥ 40 mm, to allow for reverse remodeling and to prevent further progression of disease. From a purely preventative perspective, it is a class IIa recommendation that severe asymptomatic primary MR be addressed surgically when the preserved LVEF progressively falls below 60% and/or the LVESD increases above 40 mm on serial exams. However, once LV dysfunction has progressed, it is only a class IIb recommendation that repair of symptomatic severe MR "may be considered" when the EF is less than 30%. The importance of appropriate patient selection is paramount, however, if optimal benefits are to be realized; the best results occur when mitral valve repair or replacement is undertaken before the geometric derangements to the LV and functional derangements of the valve reach certain levels. Several key predictors of lack of reverse remodeling have been identified: LV end-diastolic dimension greater than 6.5 cm, LVESD greater than 5.1 cm, large LA volume, high LV sphericity index, and severely depressed LVEF.[321,426-430] The optimal type of repair remains a subject of ongoing study, as does the issue of whether mitral repair or replacement affords the greater survival benefit to these often older and highly comorbid patients. Clearly, the quality of any repair greatly influences its outcome.

With respect to secondary, or functional, MR (most often secondary to ischemic disease), the 2017 ACC/AHA recommendations provide a class IIa recommendation for choosing chordal-sparing mitral valve replacement over "repair" for chronic severe MR in NYHA class III or IV patients. A 2016 trial of 251 patients with severe ischemic MR randomized to repair or replacement demonstrated no difference in reverse remodeling or mortality at 2 years, but an increased recurrence of moderate-severe MR with repair (vs. replacement) at 2 years, as well as an increased incidence of recurrent HF and rehospitalization for HF in the repair group.[431]

The effectiveness and potential survival benefits of combining revascularization with other surgical procedures (e.g., valve repair or replacement, ventricular reshaping) have been and continue to be the subject of large, multicenter investigations. Surgical ventricular restoration (reshaping), when performed in conjunction with revascularization, has thus far not been shown to improve survival, decrease symptoms, or increase exercise tolerance in patients with HF.[432]

In addition to common surgical interventions, electrophysiologic interventions (see chapter XX) play a key role in the initial modern management of HF. Large, international, multicenter trials in symptomatic and asymptomatic HF patients treated with cardiac resynchronization therapy, and/or ICD, have demonstrated improved survival, decreased risk of hospitalization, decreased incidence of sudden cardiac death, improvements in LVEF, decreased LV volumes, and decreased symptomatology.[433-437]

Today, when pharmacologic, electrophysiologic, and surgical interventions fail to stave off the inevitable progression of HF, mechanical circulatory support (MCS) with VADs is commonly implemented. Short-term MCS is generally used as a "bridge to immediate survival," a "bridge to recovery," a "bridge to next decision," and/or a "bridge to a bridge" after an acute cardiac event. Patients with advanced HF who have little expectation of ventricular recovery (or who have not recovered despite short-term support) now regularly receive intermediate- and long-term VAD support as a potential "bridge to transplantation" and a "bridge to candidacy." It is known that time spent on MCS can improve multisystem organ function to the point where previously transplant-ineligible patients can become transplant eligible. Since 2002, transplant-ineligible patients may receive approved LVADs as "destination therapy," a final treatment strategy shown to confer a survival advantage compared with medical management alone. Heart transplantation remains, of course, the ultimate surgical intervention for end-stage HF, but the number of patients with HF far exceeds the number of donor organs available each year worldwide, thus leaving MCS with an LVAD as the best option for most patients with advanced and end-stage HF.

The use of MCS with LVADs as a bridge to cardiac transplantation was previously shown to improve the survival rates and outcomes of patients with decompensated HF and was also found to improve multiorgan function during the time spent on VAD support.[438-443] This has been the rationale for the tremendous increase in the use of bridging technology.

However, analyses from the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation indicate that among patients who received cardiac transplants between July 2004 and June 2009, bridging to transplantation with pulsatile or nonpulsatile VADs did not actually confer a statistically significant survival advantage.[444] Those bridged patients who received a transplant between January 2002 and June 2009 actually had a worse 6-month posttransplant survival but an equivalent 7-year survival, to patients who were not bridged. However, the preponderance of deaths in the early years of this technology and the statistical methods used to perform the analyses may have great bearing on meta-analyses conducted in the modern era. Nevertheless a subsequent publication found that bridging to transplantation with an LVAD was associated with increased transfusion requirements for blood and blood products perioperatively, a higher incidence of clinically significant cell-mediated rejection within the first posttransplant year, and a trend toward increased postoperative mortality.[445] Further analyses are currently under way because overall, there does seem to be a survival advantage in more recent years with modern devices and our more extensive collective experience with patient management. Thus, the indication for bridging (e.g., elective vs. "required" because of severe decompensation) may be a vitally important part of the selection criteria going forward. In this regard, the Interagency Registry for Mechanically Assisted Circulatory Support (INTERMACS) profile plays an important role in appropriate patient selection and the timing of intervention.[446] The INTERMACS profile characterizes patients with HF on the basis of clinical status and symptoms.[447]

- INTERMACS 1: critical cardiogenic shock
- INTERMACS 2: deteriorating on inotropes
- INTERMACS 3: stable, but inotrope dependent
- INTERMACS 4: symptomatic at rest
- INTERMACS 5: exertion intolerant
- INTERMACS 6: limited with exertion
- INTERMACS 7: advanced NYHA class III

With regard to destination therapy in the United States, the most recent statistics from the INTERMACS registry indicate that overall survival has dramatically increased since the introduction of continuous flow devices: 1-year survival is now approximately 80%, 2-year survival is approximately 70%, 3-year survival is approximately 60%, and 4-year survival is approximately 50%.[448] These numbers are extremely noteworthy considering the approximate 25% rate 1-year survival originally shown in the Randomized Evaluation of Mechanical Assistance for the Treatment of Congestive Heart Failure (REMATCH) trial, which led to FDA approval of the HeartMate VE for destination therapy in September 2002.

The first generation of pulsatile VADs used as bridges to recovery and bridges to transplantation in the 1990s and early 2000s have now been supplanted worldwide by second- and third-generation, nonpulsatile devices, which generate continuous flow and have the advantages of being small, silent, valveless, and significantly more durable than the first generation of devices.

Though the current generation of devices is associated with a significant reduction in specific perioperative and long-term complications that were common with the first-generation pulsatile support devices, it seems that the total burden of "adverse events" has not apparently decreased because new complications have emerged that did not exist with the first generation of devices. Quality of life is arguably more important than quantity of life for many, and it is important to weigh the demonstrated clinical benefits of VADs against the risks of infection, pump malfunction (nowadays, most often due to pump thrombosis or electrical driveline issues), neurologic events, and bleeding complications. That said, the survival of end-stage HF is clearly better with MCS than without.

At the time of this writing, the most commonly used long-term LVAD in the United States is the HeartMate II (HM II; Abbott) The HM II is a small axial flow pump that continuously draws blood from the LV apex by the action of a rapidly rotating impeller and returns the blood to the ascending aorta in a nonpulsatile fashion. It has been approved in the

United States as a bridge to transplantation since 2008 and as destination therapy since 2010. Rates of specific common complications are dramatically lower with the HM II than with the previous generation of pulsatile devices, and the durability of the device far exceeds that of the HeartMate I (>10 years, compared with only approximately 18 months). The current rate of successful bridging to transplantation with the HM II is approximately 87%. Chronic anticoagulation to an INR of 2.5 to 3.5 is recommended for all currently available implantable LVADs, but one advantage of the HM II over other current devices appears to be the duration one can be without anticoagulation, which may be helpful if patients tend toward non-compliance.

The Heartware HVAD (Medtronic) is a miniaturized centrifugal flow pump with a magnetically levitated impeller. It was approved as a "bridge to transplantation" in 2012 and for "destination therapy" in 2017. Its small size and intrapericardial site of implantation are advantageous to allow for its use in patients with smaller body surface areas. Successful rates of bridging to transplantation and overall survival with the HVAD are similar to the HM II, but the HVAD appears to be associated with a slightly higher risk of stroke than the HM II.[449,450] It may be that HVAD would be a less desirable choice in uncontrolled hypertensive patients, as MAPs greater than 90 have been associated with an increased risk for stroke during LVAD support.[449]

The HeartMate 3 (Abbott) is a small intrapericardially positioned continuous flow centrifugal pump with a bearingless, magnetically levitated, magnetically driven impeller. With this centrifugal pump, rotational speeds of 3000 to 5000 rpm can produce upwards of 10 LPM of flow. According to the manufacturer, and as described in the first reported implant in a human,[451] the hemocompatibility of the device was improved through coating of all blood surfaces with the classic HeartMate sintered-titanium microsphere lining. In addition, the risk of thrombosis was reduced by creating three separate flow paths through the device to continuously wash all internal device elements. As well, magnetic levitation of the rotor obviates the need for a bearing, which not only reduces wear-and-tear, but decreases the amount of heat produced during impeller rotation. As has been shown to be advantageous with other "maglev" devices, less heat means less hemolysis, with less resultant plugging of the microvasculature from free hemoglobin in the plasma. In addition, small size and intrapericardial site of implantation allow its use in patients with smaller body surface areas, as with the HVAD.

As overall survival has improved over the past decade, analyses now focus on other details of importance, and the issue of "centrifugal versus axial" design has become an important one. The HM3 was compared to the HM II in the MOMENTUM 3 trial (Multicenter Study of MagLev Technology in Patients Undergoing Mechanical Circulatory Support Therapy with HeartMate 3).[452] The first analysis of this key multicenter trial of nearly 300 patients demonstrated a significantly higher rate of a composite endpoint of survival free from either disabling stroke or reoperation for device malfunction at 6 months with the HM3 compared to the HMII (86.2% vs. 76.8%; $P < .001$ for non-inferiority; $P = .04$ for superiority). There were **NO** suspected or confirmed pump thromboses in HM3 patients at 6 months compared to 10.1% of patients implanted with the HMII. Importantly, there were also no significant differences detected between the two groups in the rates of stroke; bleeding; sepsis; RV failure; hepatic, renal, or pulmonary failure; hospital length of stay; rate of discharge from the hospital; arrhythmias; hemolysis; or drive-line infections. Thus, the overall conclusion was that implantation with the HM3 resulted in better outcomes, mainly as a result of fewer reoperations for pump "malfunction." Two-year follow-up data from MOMENTUM 3 was published in 2018,[453] and again, the HM3 was found to be not only "noninferior" to the HM II, but frankly "superior." Regardless of the indication for implantation (bridge to transplantation vs. destination therapy), at 2 years following implantation, 79.5% of those implanted with the HM3 demonstrated survival free from either disabling stroke or reoperation for device malfunction compared to 60.2% of those implanted with the HM II ($P < .001$ for noninferiority and $P < .001$ for superiority). Driving the finding was again freedom from reoperation for pump malfunction (1.6% in the centrifugal-flow pump group vs. 17.0% in the axial-flow pump group $P < .001$). The rates of death and disabling stroke were similar in the two groups, but the overall rate of stroke was lower in the centrifugal-flow pump group than in the axial-flow pump group (10.1% vs. 19.2%; $P = .02$). The HM 3 received FDA approval for "short-term indications" (e.g., "bridge to transplantation") in 2017, and approval for "long-term" indications (e.g., "destination therapy") is anticipated but still pending at the time of this writing.

The CardioWest total artificial heart (TAH-t, SynCardia Systems, Inc, Tucson, AZ) is FDA approved (and approved and available in Europe and Canada) as a bridge to transplantation for patients requiring biventricular long-term support. Two sizes are available: 70 mL ventricles (for patients with a body surface area >1.7 m^2 and an intrathoracic anteroposterior diameter >10 cm at the level of the 10th vertebral level), and 50 mL ventricles (for patients with body surface area <1.7 m^2). Indications for the TAH include: irreversible biventricular failure, allograft failure (rejection or heart transplant vasculopathy), failure to wean from ECMO, massive MI that affects technical insertion of a VAD, recurrent ventricular tachycardia/fibrillation, intracardiac thrombus, tumor, restrictive cardiomyopathy, post infarction VSD, type A aortic dissection with coronary artery dissection, or end-stage congenital heart disease (CHD).[454-456] Survival rates at 3 and 6 months after TAH implantation were reported in 2016 as 76% and 65%, respectively, and 45% of TAH patients from 2005 to 2015 were transplanted by 6 months.[457] Recently, the TAH-t has seen renewed popularity, mainly because it is the only implantable intermediate- to long-term support solution for patients with biventricular failure that is currently available. In previous years, the TAH-t was reported to enjoy a 79% successful rate of bridging patients to transplantation, but no recent data is published in this regard. According to the manufacturer, more than 1100 TAH-t devices have been implanted.

CARDIOMYOPATHIES

Current understanding(s) and classification(s) of "cardiomyopathies" have changed dramatically since the 1980

WHO/ISFC task force definition as "heart muscle diseases of *unknown* cause" and a classification that simply included:

- Dilated cardiomyopathy
- Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
- Restrictive cardiomyopathy

That same task force document[458] defined heart muscle diseases of *known* cause or associated with disorders of other systems as "specific heart muscle diseases" that included a wide variety of infective diseases, metabolic disorders, generalized systemic diseases (e.g., infiltrative and connective tissue disorders), heredofamilial diseases (e.g., muscular dystrophies), sensitivities, and toxic reactions.

By 2006, significant advances in molecular genetics afforded entirely new understandings of the etiologies and pathogenesis of "heart muscle diseases" such that an entirely new definition and classification of cardiomyopathies was proposed. According to the American Heart Association's 2006 Scientific Statement[459]:

> *"Cardiomyopathies are a heterogenous group of diseases of the myocardium associated with mechanical and/or electrical dysfunction that usually (but not invariably) exhibit inappropriate ventricular hypertrophy or dilatation and are due to a variety of causes that frequently are genetic. Cardiomyopathies either are confined to the heart or are part of generalized systemic disorders, often leading to cardiovascular death or progressive HF-related disability."*

> *"Cardiomyopathies…are not… a direct consequence of other cardiovascular abnormalities such as which occurs with valvular disease, systemic hypertension, CHD, and atherosclerotic coronary artery disease producing ischemic myocardial damage secondary to impairment in coronary flow."*

Thus the current conception of cardiomyopathies classifies them as either primary (a disease confined to the heart) or secondary (cardiac pathology/pathophysiology results as a manifestation of a systemic condition). Primary cardiomyopathies are further subcategorized into genetic, acquired, or mixed in their etiology. Secondary causes of cardiomyopathy are classified by the pathogenesis, and include a wide variety of infectious, endocrine, infiltrative, autoimmune/inflammatory, nutritional, toxic, and neuromuscular diseases. Box 54.16[460] lists examples of the primary cardiomyopathies. In the current conception, acquired (non-genetic) cardiomyopathies are distinguished from secondary cardiomyopathies (e.g., the myocardial dysfunction that results from ischemic coronary disease is no longer considered a "cardiomyopathy").

Distinct from the classification of cardiomyopathies for medical purposes, and regardless of whether the cardiac dysfunction is now called primary or secondary, acquired or inherited, the surgical management of "cardiomyopathy" derives directly from the resultant cardiac pathophysiology. Some cardiomyopathies are amenable to surgical interventions, and some are "managed" with electrophysiological procedural interventions, with or without pharmacological therapies; some require all of these.

Given the acute and potentially severe cardiac mechanical dysfunction associated with several of the primary cardiomyopathies (e.g., peripartum, Takotsubo, myocarditis), urgent MCS or ECMO may be required as a "bridge to immediate survival," a "bridge to next decision," a "bridge to recovery," or a "bridge to a bridge." The majority of the secondary cardiomyopathies and some of the primary ones (e.g., LV noncompaction and dilated) are progressive in nature from the time of their onset. Aside from acute decompensation, they are managed on a long-term basis with either eventual planned cardiac transplantation, or intermediate- and long-term MCS as a "bridge to transplantation," a "bridge to candidacy" (for transplantation), and in some cases, "destination therapy."

Many of the cardiomyopathies associated primarily with electrical dysfunction (but otherwise histiologically normal myocardium) are managed with electrophysiologic procedural interventions (e.g., implantable defibrillators [ICDs], catheter-based percutaneous ablations, cardiac resynchronization therapy with biventricular pacing, etc.).

BOX 54.16 Primary Cardiomyopathies

Genetic

- Hypertrophic
- Ion channelopathies
- Arrhythmogenic RV dysplasia
- LV noncompaction
- Mitochondrial myopathies

Acquired

- Peripartum
- Stress (Takotsubo)
- Myocarditis
- Tachymyopathy

Mixed

- Restrictive
- Dilated

LV, Left ventricular; *RV*, right ventricle.

Adapted from Brieler J, Breeden MA, Tucker J. Cardiomyopathy: an overview. *Am Fam Phys*. 2017;96(10):640–647.

Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy

Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM) is of autosomal dominant genetic inheritance, and is reported to be the most common primary cardiomyopathy, with a prevalence of 1:500 people.[461] HCM is eminently amenable to both surgical and procedural interventions. Though there are a few described variants, in the most common form, asymmetric interventricular septal hypertrophy can result in ventricular arrhythmias, and (often) SAM of the mitral valve, in which systolic LVOT obstruction can occur; the entity is then called hypertrophic *obstructive* cardiomyopathy, or HOCM. Both arrhythmias and SAM present the risk of sudden death. Thus ICDs and surgical interventions (e.g., septal myectomy, mitral valve repair, release of papillary muscles, etc.) can mitigate both the risk of sudden death and symptomatology. In patients deemed too high-risk for surgery, percutaneous septal alcohol injection can be used to ablate the hypertrophied septal tissue.

Patients with HCM/HOCM should be evaluated regarding their risk of sudden death and the implantation of an ICD.[462] In addition to the potentially protective effects of an ICD, surgical septal myectomy is the treatment of choice for HOCM in patients with interventricular septal thickness greater than 15 mm and/or SAM-prone MV anatomy, but the resection of septal tissue alone is not always sufficient to ameliorate the LVOT obstruction. Adjunctive procedures often need to be performed on the mitral valve and subvalvular apparatus to effect a complete repair. The majority of the patients with LVOT obstruction and associated anomalies of the MV apparatus can be corrected with MV repair without the need for MV replacement.

Potential surgical procedures include:

1. The Morrow myectomy: a classic subaortic septal resection, which is not as commonly performed. The subaortic area is easily accessible for resection but is not always the area causing the SAM.[463]
2. Extended myectomy: more commonly performed in the modern era; the hypertrophied septal myocardium is resected to a point beyond that of mitral-septal contact, usually to the base of the anterolateral papillary muscle, as such resection redirects flow medially and anteriorly away from the mitral leaflets to ameliorate SAM.[464]
3. Papillary muscle release: dividing connections between the papillary muscles and the LV free wall. With release, the mitral apparatus drops posteriorly into the LV, better separating the inflow and outflow portions of the LV, to ameliorate SAM.[465,466]
4. AML plication: to shorten the redundant anterior leaflet and reduce leaflet slack that predisposes to SAM.[467]

Transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) is generally used at the time of initial presentation to verify the location and extent of the disease process and suitability for surgical repair, but TEE is generally used in the operating room. Prior to surgery, TEE is used to assess the location and degree of septal thickness, the presence of SAM-prone anatomy, coexisting mitral regurgitation of primary etiology, associated abnormalities of the mitral apparatus, and quantitation of the gradient across the LVOT. For the best possible outcome, it is important for the echocardiographer to review and discuss ALL TEE findings with the surgeon before instituting CPB, before separating from CPB, and again after final separation from CPB.

Following surgical intervention, it is especially critical for the echocardiographer to understand the specific surgical procedure(s) performed, as this will allow for a more complete assessment of the effectiveness of the intervention. The post-intervention TEE assessment should include:

- the effectiveness of the intervention, sometimes by employing provocative maneuvers to determine if continued obstruction can be elicited,
  - the mitral valve, the chordae tendineae, and the papillary muscles (which may also have been thinned, plicated, resected, and/or released as part of the repair) and,
  - evaluation for potential surgical complications of the myectomy (e.g., VSD, lacerated septal perforator(s)).

Postoperatively the magnitude of the gradient across the LVOT is critically dependent on optimization of preload, afterload, heart rate, and contractility, and whether or not there is still SAM. Initial postbypass gradients often disappear once the patient is optimized and there is no SAM. Factors known to promote SAM include: hypovolemia, vasodilatation, a high contractile state, and tachycardia. One should not attempt to interpret residual gradients until the determinants of hemodynamics more closely mimic the awake state and the patient is rendered normovolemic postoperatively. Residual LVOT gradients between 10 and 30 mm Hg without SAM may be considered acceptable but should prompt consideration of a provocative maneuver to see if it increases. Residual LVOT gradients between 30 and 50 mm Hg and no SAM suggest that the myectomy may be inadequate. Gradients of this magnitude with SAM suggest that hemodynamic optimization may not yet have been realized, and/or that additional repairs of the mitral valve and/or subvalvular apparatus might be needed. A residual LVOT gradient greater than 50 mm Hg due to SAM suggests that further repair of the mitral valve (leaflets, annulus, and/or subvalvular apparatus) may be necessary. If the surgeon has already performed the valve "repair" in addition to the myectomy, this should likely prompt a discussion of possible mitral valve replacement or Alfieri stitch to control the SAM.

Provocative maneuvers that can be used to try to elicit LVOT residual obstruction are not always necessary, but include Valsalva maneuver, reduction in preload (e.g., reverse Trendelenburg position, bolus of NTG, etc.), pharmacological vasodilatation, and/or increase in inotropic state.

An iatrogenic VSD (with flow from left to right ventricles) should be excluded following myectomy, as such will require immediate repair. It is also important, however, to distinguish a VSD from a severed septal branch of the coronary artery anatomy (a coronary-cameral fistula). Such fistulae will demonstrate diastolic flow at the site of the myectomy into the LV. Large severed perforator branches may require ligation or occlusion lest the intracardiac shunt contribute to volume overload and potential cardiac failure.

Historically, such fistulae have generally been reported to be "rare," but the identification of such fistulae is a common echocardiographic finding of which studies report a prevalence in the range of 19% to 23% following myectomy.[468,469] The clinical significance of these fistulae depends on their size (most are trivial), and the natural history is that most spontaneously close within a few weeks. Though one study of 40 myectomy patients in the modern era found that nearly onequarter of such fistulae were still detectable by echocardiography at 6 months postoperatively.[469]

Cardiac Transplantation

Discovery of the immunosuppressive agent cyclosporine in the early 1980s made cardiac transplantation an accepted surgical option for end-stage HF.[470] Currently, 1-year survival is in the range of 80% to 90%, and 5-year survival is approximately 70%.[444] Patients 30 to 59 years old tend to have the best survival, as do recipients who required transplantation because of nonischemic cardiomyopathy. Patients who required transplantation due to CHD and those receiving a retransplant have a reported 1-year survival of approximately 68%.[471]

Most candidates for cardiac transplantation have class D HF that has been maximally treated medically but is nevertheless likely to result in death in less than 1 year. Such patients typically are in cardiogenic shock or have a chronic low-output state that necessitates mechanical or inotropic support, but candidates also include patients with advanced symptomatic HF and peak oxygen uptake less than 10 mL/kg/min (with the achievement of an anaerobic threshold), patients with NYHA class IV HF caused by advanced hypertrophic or restrictive cardiomyopathy, patients with refractory angina pectoris and inoperable CAD, and patients with life-threatening ventricular arrhythmias that are refractory to all appropriate medical and surgical treatment. Usually, the patient's EF is less than 20%. However, patients with NYHA class III HF who are at risk for sudden death related to malignant arrhythmias are sometimes placed on the waiting list.

In the United States, cardiac transplantation is performed in member centers of the United Network for Organ Sharing (UNOS), an umbrella organization responsible for coordinating organ procurement, organ allocation, and statistical information. UNOS allocates donor hearts according to each patient's priority status, ABO group compatibility, body size match, and distance from the donor center. The highest priority is given to inpatients supported by mechanical circulatory assist devices for acute hemodynamic decompensation, patients maintained on assist devices who have significant device-related complications, patients requiring continuous infusion of single or multiple high-dose intravenous inotropic medications, and patients with a life expectancy of less than 7 days without transplantation.

The most common diagnoses in adult patients with HF who require cardiac transplantation include idiopathic or ischemic cardiomyopathy and complex CHD. Less common diagnoses include viral cardiomyopathy, postpartum cardiomyopathy, refractory valvular disease, primary myocardial diseases (e.g., sarcoidosis, amyloidosis), and drug-induced myocardial disease.

The first most common indication is idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy, which accounted for approximately 46% of all cases in 2018.[471] Worldwide, ischemic cardiomyopathy is now the second most common indication for heart transplantation, accounting for 38% of all registered cases.[444] Similar to the U.S. experience, nonischemic cardiomyopathy has been the most common indication worldwide, accounting for 53% of all registered cases.

The selection criteria have been broadened for both heart recipients and heart donors.[472] For example, patients with diabetes and those older than 65 years old are now considered transplantation candidates in many centers, though they were previously considered exclusion criteria.[473] In addition, although centers generally prefer donors to be younger than 35 years old, the age criterion has been expanded to include suitable donors (e.g., those without cardiac risk factors or evidence of CAD) who are 60 years old or older. Suitability involves the absence of CAD or of major cardiac risk factors for CAD. Major contraindications to heart transplantation that continue to steer patients toward destination therapy with a VAD instead of transplantation include age greater than 70 years, chronic renal dysfunction, and high body mass index.[447] Modifiable risk factors (e.g., pulmonary hypertension) remain the subject of ongoing clinical investigation. Classically, a PVR greater than 5 dyne•s•cm^{-5} unresponsive to pulmonary vasodilators is a relative contraindication, as it indicates a "fixed" PVR, and has been associated with an increased risk for early mortality after orthotopic heart transplantation.[473] Significant issues of non-compliance, lack of a social support structure, comorbidities with a poor prognosis, and significant drug and/or alcohol abuse may also render a patient ineligible for transplantation.

The manner in which the donor heart is implanted has also changed, with a shift away from the classic biatrial technique (originally described by Lower and Shumway in 1960) to the bicaval Wythenshawe technique described in the early 1990s. The advantages of a bicaval implantation technique include lower incidences of LA dilatation, diuretic use, atrial dysrhythmias, conduction disturbances, mitral and tricuspid valve incompetence, and RV failure. In addition, this technique has been demonstrated to be associated with shorter hospital stays. Furthermore, several series that compared the classic Shumway technique with the bicaval technique showed greater 12-month survival in the bicaval group.[474,475]

An even more recent implantation technique further reduces the size of the native LA remnant to two islands containing the pulmonary veins on either side. This so-called "total" technique was described by Dreyfus and Carpentier in 1991.[476]

Because the recipient sinoatrial node is no longer routinely retained with either of the modern bicaval techniques, the concept of two P waves on the posttransplant ECG is now only of historical interest. Posttransplantation physiology, however, remains unchanged: the requisite denervation of the donor organ during harvesting results in the absence of both direct afferent and efferent neural innervation via autonomic or somatic neural pathways after implantation. In plain English, the transplanted heart functions in isolation from the recipient's nervous system, although the potential for direct activation of myocardial receptors (e.g., myocardial adrenergic receptors) by circulating factors is retained, as are all intrinsic myocardial reflexes (e.g., the Starling mechanism, the Anrep effect, the Bowditch effect). The loss of parasympathetic tone in the transplanted heart means that the resting heart rate is faster than normal, and heart rates of approximately 90 to 110 beats/min are usual and often necessary to maintain CO.

A clear understanding of what remains intact and what is lost in the transplanted heart dictates and guides posttransplant anesthetic management. Adequate preload is critical. Direct-acting drugs (e.g., epinephrine, isoproterenol) and pacing are maximally and immediately effective when needed to increase inotropy or chronotropy, respectively, in the transplanted heart. Indirect-acting drugs (e.g., ephedrine, dopamine) rely primarily on the release of epinephrine and norepinephrine from the adrenal glands. Digoxin retains its direct inotropic effect on the heart through inhibition of sodium-potassium adenosine triphosphatase, with resultant buildup of intramyocardial calcium, but loses its potential to decrease chronotropy (a parasympathetically mediated effect on the AV node). One should not expect a decrease or increase in heart rate after the administration of medications that cause bradycardia (e.g., fentanyl) or tachycardia (e.g., meperidine, pancuronium) as a side effect since these side effects work through neural mechanisms. Anticholinergic medications (e.g., atropine, glycopyrrolate) are not expected to increase heart rate in the denervated heart but are always administered at the time of reversal of muscle relaxation by acetylcholinesterase inhibitors to reduce the adverse *extracardiac* cholinergic effects of the anticholinesterase drugs.

The denervated heart is subject to accelerated atherosclerotic disease, causing a significant 5-year incidence of CAD in transplant recipients, but these recipients do not experience angina. Significant dysrhythmias or arrhythmias in a transplanted heart should be considered harbingers of ischemia until proven otherwise.

CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE IN ADULTS

Background and Current Perspective

Medical and surgical advances in CHD surgery since the 1960s have significantly reduced the death rates of patients with CHD. Today, 85% to 95% of babies born with CHD can reach adulthood, and the number of adults with CHD now exceeds the number of children with CHD.[477] Currently there is no formal database of adults with CHD but this population is increasing at a rate of more than 5% annually. Adult patients who present with CHD can have extremely complex conditions that require careful assessment and operative planning. They may present for cardiac surgery for the first time or for further palliative correction, either definitively or for residua. Most patients with CHD face a lifetime of significant challenges,[478] ranging from the complications of long-term antibiotic prophylaxis to thromboembolic ventricular dysfunction resulting from cardiac arrhythmias and pulmonary hypertension.

Preoperative Anesthetic Considerations

The unique problems of this population include the multisystem effects of single-ventricle physiology, cyanosis, systemic right ventricle, complex intracardiac baffles, and failing subpulmonary right ventricle.[477] The initial assessment, history taking, and physical examination of an adult patient with CHD must be broadly systemic to capture any noncardiac organ involvement. A full review of each organ system is beyond the scope of this chapter, but readers are referred to the excellent review articles by Chassot and Bettex[478] and by Lovell.[479] Appropriate consultation with the patient's cardiologist (pediatric or adult), as well as access to old medical records, is valuable, especially for patients who have complex CHD or have undergone complex surgical procedures. Preoperative echocardiography is extremely helpful in understanding the anatomy and the primary and compensatory cardiac function of patients with CHD.

One of the early clinical decisions to be made for an individual patient involves determining the appropriateness of surgical care in a given institution. Obviously, emergency procedures give very little latitude, but elective procedures should warrant careful assessment, especially of the abilities and experience of the anesthesiologist who will be caring for a patient with complex corrected or palliated CHD. In 2001, the Thirty-second Bethesda Conference on CHD advocated the creation of regional centers for the care of adults with CHD (ACHD centers), whose personnel would include a cardiac anesthesiologist and other subspecialists with expertise in the management of patients with CHD.[480] The conference recommended that all adult patients with complex (Box 54.17) and moderate (Box 54.18) CHD be referred to such ACHD centers. Current U.S.[481,482] and Canadian[477] updates to these guidelines continue to support these recommendations.

BOX 54.17 **Types of Adult Congenital Heart Disease of Great Complexity**

Conduits, valved or nonvalved
Cyanotic congenital heart disease (all forms)
Double-outlet ventricle
Eisenmenger syndrome
Fontan procedure
Mitral atresia
Single ventricle (also called double inlet or outlet, common, or primitive)
Pulmonary atresia (all forms)
Pulmonary vascular obstructive disease
Transposition of the great arteries
Tricuspid atresia
Truncus arteriosus or hemitruncus
Other abnormalities of atrioventricular or ventriculoarterial connection not included here (i.e., crisscross heart, isomerism, heterotaxy syndromes, ventricular inversion)

From Warnes CA, Williams RG, Bashore TM, et al. ACC/AHA 2008 guidelines for the management of adults with congenital heart disease: executive summary: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to Develop Guidelines for the Management of Adults with Congenital Heart Disease). Developed in collaboration with the American Society of Echocardiography, Heart Rhythm Society, Angiography and Interventions and Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *Circulation*. 2008;118:2395–2451.

Intraoperative Anesthetic Considerations

Discussion of specific anesthetic management techniques for particular congenital heart defects in adult patients is not within the scope of this chapter. However, a few basic principles are essential for all anesthesiologists to know, especially those who do not have specialized training in cardiac anesthesia or CHD but who may be faced with an older patient with CHD who needs urgent noncardiac surgery.

Preparation of the anesthetic plan requires detailed knowledge of the anatomy and physiology of the lesion.[479] A skilled multidisciplinary team is very helpful for providing optimal management.[483,484] During the preoperative assessment of an adult with CHD, an extensive review should be conducted to elicit signs of CHF, cyanosis, or compromised peripheral vascular disease. Anesthetic considerations are lesion specific and are discussed in several reviews.[479,485,486]

Principle 1: The Presence or Absence of Cyanosis. Cyanosis is usually a marker for complex CHD. Chronic cyanosis can lead to the development of abnormalities of RBC production and hemostasis. Elevated levels of erythropoietin in cyanotic patients can lead to a hyperviscosity syndrome and increased risk of neurologic injury.

In any patient with cyanotic CHD, the anesthesiologist should establish intravenous fluid therapy and monitor

BOX 54.18 Diagnoses in Adult Patients With Congenital Heart Disease of Moderate Complexity

Anomalous pulmonary venous drainage, partial or total
Aorto–left ventricular fistula
Atrioventricular septal defect (partial or complete)
Coarctation of the aorta
Ebstein anomaly
Infundibular right ventricular outflow obstruction of significance
Ostium primum atrial septal defect
Patent ductus arteriosus (not closed)
Pulmonary valve regurgitation (moderate to severe)
Pulmonary valve stenosis (moderate to severe)
Sinus of Valsalva fistula or aneurysm
Sinus venosus atrial septal defect
Subvalvular or supravalvular aortic stenosis (except HOCM)
Tetralogy of Fallot
Ventricular septal defect with:
  Absent valve or valves
  Aortic regurgitation
  Coarctation of the aorta
  Mitral valve disease
  Right ventricular outflow tract obstruction
  Straddling tricuspid or mitral valve
  Subaortic stenosis

HOCM, Hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy.
From Warnes CA, Williams RG, Bashore TM, et al. ACC/AHA 2008 guidelines for the management of adults with congenital heart disease: executive summary: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to Develop Guidelines for the Management of Adults with Congenital Heart Disease). Developed in collaboration with the American Society of Echocardiography, Heart Rhythm Society, Angiography and Interventions, and Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *Circulation.* 2008;118:2395–2451.

urine output to overcome the adverse circulatory effects of perioperative fasting, dehydration, and intraoperative hypovolemia. These conditions cause hyperviscosity, which can be associated with hemostatic abnormalities. Many patients with congenital repairs that include a conduit or graft are maintained on antiplatelet medications, and this should be noted. Arterial pressure monitoring may be prudent, and the decision to place a central venous catheter should be made in careful consideration of the patient's anatomy and proposed surgical repair.

Principle 2: The Presence or Absence of Intracardiac or Extracardiac Shunts. Intracardiac shunts are classically located at the level of the atria or ventricles. The magnitude of the shunt is often expressed in terms of the ratio of pulmonary blood flow (Qp) to systemic blood flow (Qs): Qp/Qs. Balanced flow, or a ratio equal to 1, is the hallmark of normal physiology. A Qp/Qs ratio greater than 1 is generally consistent with acyanotic heart disease and luxuriant pulmonary blood flow. A Qp/Qs ratio less than 1 would be consistent with cyanosis. Intracardiac shunts and the Qp/Qs are often bidirectional, depending on situational physiology, and therefore must always be considered to be a risk for systemic embolization. The location and size of intracardiac shunts are critically important to the management of anesthesia care for patients with CHD.[478] The direction and magnitude of flow across an intracardiac or extracardiac shunt is directly related to the balance between PVR and SVR, a relationship that can be managed by vasoactive agent administration.

1. The direction of shunt flow is important. Shunts can be right, left, or bidirectional. Shunt flow can be influenced by changes in driving pressure across a shunt or pressure in the receiving chamber. The high intrathoracic pressure that can occur with mechanical ventilation, coughing, the Valsalva maneuver, bronchospasm, or positive end-expiratory pressure can actually reverse the direction of a left-to-right shunt or at least make it bidirectional. Therefore, paradoxical embolization by clot or air is a real risk in patients with intracardiac shunts and warrants fastidious attention to de-airing intravenous lines and careful administration of drugs by syringes through ports in intravenous lines.
2. The size of the intracardiac defect is important. Shunts are commonly labeled as restrictive or nonrestrictive according to their blood velocity or pressure characteristics measured at catheterization or by echocardiography. Large defects with associated low-pressure gradients across them have nonrestrictive flow. In addition, larger defects can be expected to have a greater effect on downstream structures and pressures. Small defects with high pressure or gradients restrict the amount of blood flow. The mainstays of the anesthetic management of shunt lesions are understanding and controlling factors that may influence the direction and magnitude of the shunt. Shunt flow and direction are directly influenced by both PVR and SVR. Elevated SVR and decreased PVR generally increase the magnitude of left-to-right shunting. Conversely, decreased SVR and/or increased PVR decrease the magnitude of left-to-right shunting, or will create a right-to-left shunt. Mechanical ventilation, the inspired oxygen concentration, carbon dioxide levels, and the hemodynamic effects of anesthetic drugs are all used to achieve certain therapeutic goals in relation to PVR and SVR, and hence, shunt management. Oxygen is a potent pulmonary vasodilator, as is hypocapnia. If the clinical problem is luxuriant pulmonary blood flow, a high FiO_2 should be avoided. Similarly, the direction and magnitude of the shunt flow determine whether one should hyperventilate a patient to achieve a low $Paco_2$ or tolerate a high-normal $Paco_2$.
3. In the presence of a shunt, the potential dilation of the cardiac chambers and resultant increase in chamber volume and pressure are important. A shunt above the level of the AV valves, such as a left-to-right shunt at the atrial level, usually causes right-sided chamber enlargement. Left-to-right shunts at any level that increase pulmonary blood flow can lead to elevations in PVR and pulmonary arterial pressure. Furthermore, exposure to elevated pulmonary pressure and afterload leads to continued right heart enlargement, RV failure, bidirectional shunting, and in extreme cases, a reversal of shunt direction, or right-to-left shunting. Clinically this manifests as cyanosis. When PVR becomes elevated, fixed, and irreversible, this is referred to as Eisenmenger syndrome.

Extracardiac shunts can be native to CHD (e.g., aberrant pulmonary venous return), surgically created (e.g., Blalock-Taussig shunt), or compensatory (e.g., aortopulmonary collateral formation with long-standing cyanotic heart disease). Special mention of certain aortopulmonary shunts, used commonly in the past to palliate some forms of cyanotic heart disease, is warranted. The proximal connection may be to the ascending aorta, brachiocephalic trunk, or subclavian artery. Because blood flow through this type of shunt is dependent on systemic blood pressure, systemic hypotension may lead to worsening hypoxemia. Furthermore, long-term exposure to these extracardiac shunts can result in left-sided chamber enlargement and dysfunction secondary to chronic volume overload.

Principle 3: The Presence of Pulmonary Hypertension. Pulmonary arterial hypertension is defined as a mean PAP greater than 25 mm Hg or greater than 30 mm Hg with exercise. Some degree of pulmonary hypertension develops in 5% to 10% of adult patients with CHD. This is associated with exercise intolerance and decreased functional capacity, which appear to have important prognostic implications.[484]

The anesthetic management of patients with pulmonary hypertension can be challenging. Invasive monitoring and careful anesthetic titration may be required. Regional anesthesia may be used for appropriate procedures, but neuraxial blocks should be administered with caution because of the sympathetic blockade produced. Patients with significant pulmonary hypertension are very sensitive to preload; therefore, hypovolemia, should be treated immediately and aggressively. Pulmonary hypertension can be managed pharmacologically and mechanically. Factors associated with decreasing PVR and, subsequently, reductions in PAP are listed in Box 54.19.[479]

BOX 54.19 Factors Associated With Decreasing Pulmonary Vascular Resistance and Reductions in Pulmonary Artery Pressure

Decrease in Pulmonary Vascular Resistance

- Increasing PaO_2
- Hypocapnia
- Alkalemia
- Minimizing intrathoracic pressure
  - Spontaneous ventilation
  - Normal lung volumes
  - High-frequency and jet ventilation
  - Avoidance of sympathetic stimulation
  - Deep anesthesia
- Pharmacologic methods
  - Isoproterenol
  - Phosphodiesterase III inhibitors
  - Prostaglandin infusion (PGE_1 and PGI_2)
  - Inhaled nitric oxide

Increase in Pulmonary Vascular Resistance

- Sympathetic stimulation
  - Light anesthesia
  - Pain
- Acidemia
- Hypoxia
- Hypercapnia
- Hypothermia
- Increased intrathoracic pressure
  - Controlled ventilation
  - Positive end-expiratory pressure
  - Atelectasis

PaO_2, Partial pressure of arterial oxygen; *PGI_2*, prostacyclin.

From Lovell AT. Anaesthetic implications of grown-up congenital heart disease. *Br J Anaesth.* 2004;93:129–139.

Principle 4: The Presence of Ventricular Dysfunction. As in adult patients with acquired heart disease, the presence of ventricular dysfunction is an important risk factor for morbidity and mortality, both in the perioperative period and in the long term. Regarding RV dysfunction, predictors of a poor outcome may include pulmonary hypertension, pulmonic valve incompetence, and consequent dysfunction of the subpulmonic ventricle.[486] LV dysfunction has been observed after repair of tetralogy of Fallot in the adult. Risk factors associated with this dysfunction include male gender, LV enlargement, duration of shunt before repair, history of arrhythmia, long QRS duration, presence of an ICD, and moderate-to-severe RV dysfunction preoperatively.[487]

OTHER CARDIAC PROCEDURES

Surgical Ablation of Atrial Fibrillation

In the United States, 2.7 to 6.1 million persons are estimated to have atrial fibrillation.[488] Among Medicare patients 65 years old or older, the prevalence of atrial fibrillation increased from 3.2% in 1992 to 6.0% in 2002 and is higher in older patients.[489] Stroke remains the most feared complication of atrial fibrillation; stroke risk is fourfold to fivefold higher in patients with atrial fibrillation than in patients without this arrhythmia. Additionally, atrial fibrillation causes 24% of strokes in patients older than 80 years old.[488]

With regard to persistent atrial fibrillation, both the left atrium and the pulmonary veins have been implicated in the pathogenesis and maintenance of persistent atrial fibrillation. Paroxysmal atrial fibrillation, conversely, may result from the juxtaposition of the pulmonary vein endothelium and the LA endocardium. The transition of the electrical signal from one type of tissue to the other is probably responsible for this arrhythmia.

The classic Maze procedure is currently the most effective curative therapy for atrial fibrillation.[490,491] To simplify the procedure and improve its results, Cox and colleagues modified the operation twice, hence its current name, the Cox-Maze III procedure.[490] This procedure appears to cure atrial fibrillation in 99% of cases.[491] Current indications for the Cox-Maze III operation include drug intolerance, arrhythmia intolerance, and recurrent embolic events.[492]

Ablative treatments for atrial fibrillation involve making RA and LA incisions and cryolesions to interrupt the multiple reentrant circuits that cause atrial fibrillation. Isolating the pulmonary veins and excising the LAA are integral parts of the Maze procedure, which requires CPB and cardiac standstill using cardioplegia.[493-495] This procedure can be performed through a minimally invasive chest incision, as an alternative to sternotomy, while the patient is undergoing CPB.

A study done by Prasad and co-workers found that the Cox-Maze III procedure effectively cured atrial fibrillation when the operation was performed alone or concomitantly with coronary or valve procedures.[492] In patients who underwent such concomitant operations, the Cox-Maze III

TABLE 54.21 Energy Sources for Surgical Ablation of Atrial Fibrillation

Energy Type	Endocardial Application	Epicardial Application	Flexible Probe	Assess Transmural	No Char	Rapid
Radiofrequency*	+	+	+	+	–	+
Microwave	+	+	+	–	+	+
Cryothermy	+	+	–	–	+	–

*Radiofrequency energy may be delivered in unipolar or bipolar fashion. A commercially available bipolar instrument allows the operator to assess transmurality.
From Gillinov AM, Blackstone EH, McCarthy PM. Atrial fibrillation: current surgical options and their assessment. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;74:2210–2217.

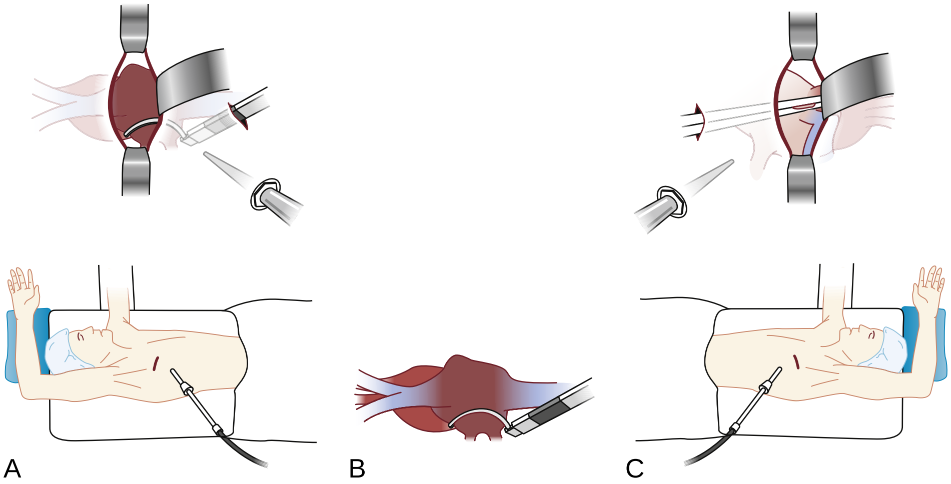


Fig. 54.54 "Keyhole" approach for minimally invasive epicardial pulmonary vein isolation with excision of the left atrial appendage. (A) Access to the right pulmonary veins is gained through a keyhole incision under endoscopic guidance. (B) A bipolar radiofrequency clamp is used to isolate the left atrial cuff adjacent to the right pulmonary veins. (C) Stapled excision of the left atrial appendage after the left pulmonary veins are isolated with a technique similar to that shown for the right pulmonary veins. (From Gillinov AM, Wolf RK. Surgical ablation of atrial fibrillation. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 2005;48:169–177.)

procedure did not significantly add to the mortality or morbidity associated with the revascularization or valve repair procedure.

The underuse of the Maze procedure in the past probably reflected the procedure's perceived complexity. Currently, newer technologies enable the rapid creation of lines of conduction blockade, which surgeons use to ablate atrial fibrillation in patients undergoing concomitant cardiac surgical procedures. These technologies include alternate energy sources such as radiofrequency and microwave energy, ultrasound, cryotherapy, and laser (Table 54.21). These technologies are also used in minimally invasive surgical ablation procedures to cure isolated atrial fibrillation.[491] Furthermore, the development of epicardial probes has facilitated off-pump ablation of atrial fibrillation in the beating heart.

Because cardiac structures can be visualized directly during open surgical procedures, ablation lines can be created safely, thus avoiding the complication of pulmonary vein stenosis. An epicardial approach to ablation eliminates the risk of esophageal injury.[490,491] The advantage of a surgical approach is the ease of excising the LAA, which virtually eliminates the risk of stroke. However, isolation of the pulmonary vein and excision of the LAA can now be done through the minimally invasive "keyhole approach" (Fig. 54.54) or a thoracoscopic approach.[496] Both epicardial approaches can be used without the need for CPB.[491] As experience with the Cox-Maze procedures increases and the technology continues to advance, the goal is to improve patients' quality of life and free them from the need for antiarrhythmic and anticoagulant medications.

Pericardial Tamponade and Constrictive Pericarditis

Pericardial Tamponade. The pericardial sac has two layers: the outer, parietal pericardium; and the inner, visceral pericardium (epicardium), which is directly adherent to the surface of the heart. The normal amount of fluid between the two layers is 15 to 30 mL, which generates a pressure that is 5 mm Hg less than the CVP and approximates the pleural pressure.

Cardiac tamponade occurs when the volume of fluid trapped in the pericardial sac increases and compresses the heart, thereby compromising CO.[497] In classic tamponade, the circulation adapts by increasing the systemic venous and pulmonary venous pressures to equalize with the pericardial pressure so that total collapse of the cardiac chambers is prevented.[498] The PCWP and the LV, RV, and RA diastolic pressures increase to equalize with the pressure in the pericardium. As a result, the atrial and ventricular diastolic transmural pressures are essentially zero, a hallmark of pericardial tamponade. Although this virtual loss of pressure reduces the stroke volume, high adrenergic tone helps to partially preserve CO by increasing the heart rate.

If enough fluid accumulates, the pericardium reaches a stage at which it can no longer distend; therefore, the

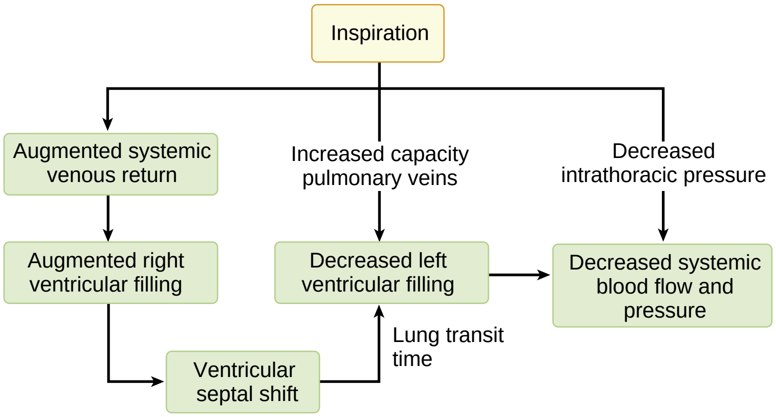

Inspiration
Augmented systemic venous return
Increased capacity pulmonary veins
Decreased intrathoracic pressure
Augmented right ventricular filling
Decreased left ventricular filling
Decreased systemic blood flow and pressure
Lung transit time
Ventricular septal shift

Fig. 54.55 Physiology of paradoxical pulses in cardiac tamponade. (From Fowler NO. Diseases of the pericardium. *Curr Probl Cardiol.* 1978;2:6–38.)

total pericardial volume no longer changes throughout the respiratory cycle.[498] This results in a phenomenon referred to as ventricular interdependence, wherein any change in the volume of one side of the heart causes the opposite change in the volume of the other side. During inspiration, increased venous return and filling of the right heart cause the interatrial and interventricular septa to bulge to the left, compromising the ability of the LV to eject. Opposite changes occur during expiration. Such ventricular interdependence is evident on echocardiography.

Ventricular interdependence manifests clinically as pulsus paradoxus,[499] an exaggeration of the normal diminution of the radial pulse on inspiration (Fig. 54.55). *Pulsus paradoxus* is defined as a drop in systolic blood pressure exceeding 10 mm Hg during inspiration.[500] In particularly severe cases, no brachial or radial pulse may be palpable on inspiration.[501]

Cardiac tamponade is not necessary to cause pulsus paradoxus. Wide swings in intrathoracic pressure and conditions such as pulmonary embolism or hypovolemic shock can also give rise to the phenomenon. Additionally, patients with cardiac tamponade may not have pulsus paradoxus if they have coexisting aortic insufficiency, ASD, or preexisting elevated LVEDP resulting from LV hypertrophy or dilatation.

Fig. 54.56 illustrates the pressure-volume relationship in the pericardium, depending on whether the effusion is accumulating slowly or rapidly.[501] This J-shaped curve suggests that a sudden increase in pericardial fluid volume of 100 to 200 mL can increase pericardial pressure to 30 mm Hg or more and cause severe cardiac tamponade. The faster the fluid accumulation, the more severe is the hemodynamic compromise. Causes of this type of acute tamponade include rupture of a thoracic aortic aneurysm, traumatic mediastinal injury, and accidental puncture of a cardiac chamber or blood vessel in the CCL.[498]

When accumulation of pericardial fluid is slower, compliance of the parietal pericardium is greater, and changes in volume produce smaller rises in pressure than they would if fluid accumulated more rapidly. As pericardial volume increases, so does intrapericardial pressure, with a compensatory increase in CVP to maintain a gradient to allow cardiac filling.[497] When pericardial compliance cannot increase further, the intrapericardial pressure gradually equalizes with the pressures in the cardiac chambers.

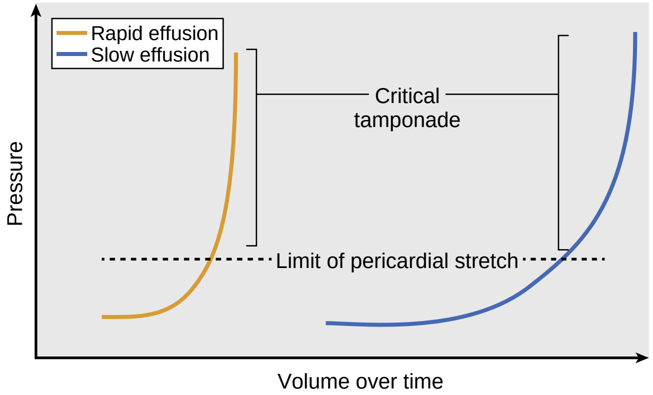


Fig. 54.56 Cardiac tamponade. Pericardial pressure-volume (or strain-stress) curves are shown in which the volume increases slowly or rapidly over time. On the *left,* rapidly increasing pericardial fluid first reaches the limit of the pericardial reserve volume (the initial flat segment) and then quickly exceeds the limit of parietal pericardial stretch, thus causing a steep rise in pressure, which becomes even steeper as smaller increments in fluid cause a disproportionate increase in the pericardial pressure. On the *right,* a slower rate of pericardial filling takes longer to exceed the limit of pericardial stretch because more time is available for the pericardium to stretch and for compensatory mechanisms to become activated. (From Spodick DH. Acute cardiac tamponade. *N Engl J Med.* 2003;349:684–690.)

CO gradually declines, accompanied by a compensatory tachycardia, peripheral vasoconstriction, and increased contractility.

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS. Patients with pericardial tamponade may present with pain or feelings of fullness in the chest, dyspnea, lethargy, fever, cough, weakness, fatigue, anorexia, or palpitations.[497] The Beck triad may appear as a combination of three signs of severe tamponade: low blood pressure, increased jugular venous pressure, and distant heart sounds. However, patients whose tamponade develops secondary to a chronic medical condition (e.g., malignant disease, end-stage renal disease, collagen vascular disease) may not present with the classic findings of the Beck triad.

ECHOCARDIOGRAPHIC FEATURES OF PERICARDIAL TAMPONADE. Of the various echocardiographic signs of cardiac tamponade (Box 54.20), one of the best established is diastolic collapse of the right atrium or right ventricle. RV collapse, seen in early diastole, appears as an invagination of the RV free wall (Fig. 54.57). In contrast, RA collapse is seen in late diastole and early systole and appears as an invagination of the RA wall (see Fig. 54.57). The timing of the collapse of the two chambers is related to the lowest intracavitary pressures in those chambers (i.e., early diastole for the right ventricle and late diastole to systole for the right atrium). The presence of both RV and RA collapse indicates hemodynamically significant pericardial effusion. Left-sided heart collapse is rarely seen, both because the thickness and stiffness of the LV enable it to resist collapse and because the left atrium is located posteriorly. However, in patients with very large effusions, fluid does accumulate behind the left atrium and eventually collapses this chamber.[502] The presence of LA collapse is highly specific for tamponade.[501]

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT OF PERICARDIAL TAMPONADE. Indications for pericardiocentesis (surgical drainage of the pericardial effusion) were summarized by Soler-Soler and co-workers (Box 54.21).[503] Surgical intervention for pericardial disease warrants invasive monitoring, which should involve an intraarterial catheter and possibly a central venous catheter. Large-bore intravenous access should be secured prior to anesthesia induction.

BOX 54.20 Doppler Echocardiographic Signs of Cardiac Tamponade

- Exaggerated inspiratory variation of the two ventricles (inspiratory expansion of the right ventricle and simultaneous compression of the left ventricle; reciprocal changes in the expiratory phase)
- Right atrial collapse
- Right ventricular collapse
- Left atrial collapse
- Left ventricular collapse
- Inferior vena cava plethora
- Abnormal increased respiratory variation in transvalvular blood flow velocities (mitral and aortic flow reduction in the inspiratory phase)

From Pepi M, Muratori M. Echocardiography in the diagnosis and management of pericardial disease. *J Cardiovasc Med (Hagerstown).* 2006;7:533–544.

In patients who are severely hemodynamically compromised, one surgical option is to perform pericardiocentesis or subxiphoid exploration using local anesthesia[504] and inducing general anesthesia after the tamponade has been partially relieved. If general anesthesia is planned, the watchwords in the management of cardiac tamponade are *fast*, *full*, and *strong*. Heart rate should be maintained at a high normal level so as to maintain CO in a stroke-volume-limited ventricle. Intravenous fluids should be administered before induction of anesthesia to optimize preload. Increasing intravascular volume helps to increase the effective filling pressures of the heart, restore the gradient between the chambers, and increase arterial pressure.

Any manipulation that can decrease venous return to the heart should be avoided. This includes controlled positive-pressure ventilation with large tidal volumes, which may significantly decrease preload and CO.[504] If general anesthesia is required, one option is to perform prep and drape to the point of surgical incision and then, after induction of anesthesia, rapidly perform evacuation of the pericardial effusion. Another option is to induce general anesthesia but to allow the patient to breathe spontaneously, avoiding positive intrathoracic pressure, until the pericardial sac is opened.[504] Alternatively, a ventilation pattern of high rate and low tidal volumes can be used to minimize mean airway pressure.

Drugs that may cause myocardial depression should be avoided and thus etomidate is often chosen as the induction agent of choice.[505] Additionally, bradycardia should be avoided because tachycardia is the most important compensatory mechanism for preserving CO. The use of ketamine to induce general anesthesia for creation of a pericardial window has been described.[506]

Once cardiac tamponade is relieved, endogenously generated and exogenously administered catecholamines may cause sudden, severe increases in blood pressure and heart rate. This phenomenon should be anticipated and treated.

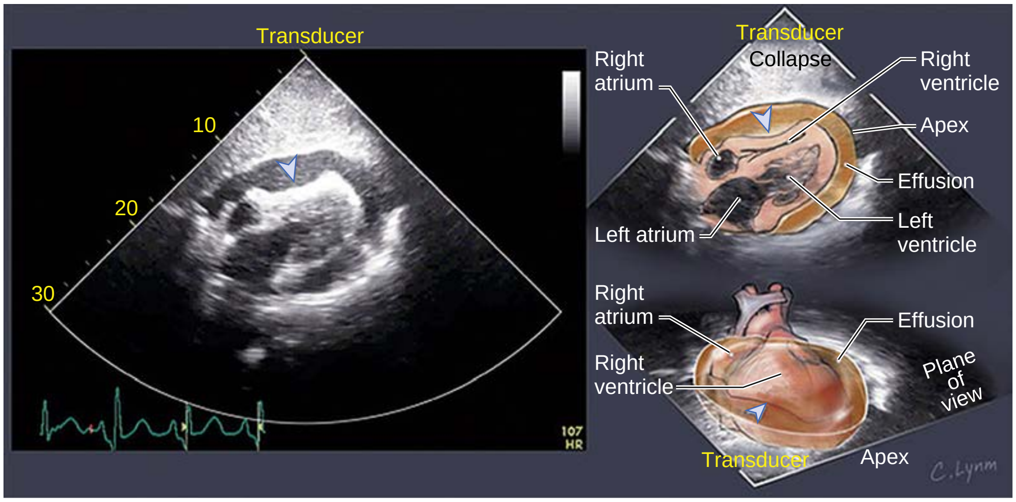


Fig. 54.57 Echocardiogram (and drawings) showing pericardial effusion causing cardiac tamponade. A subcostal view in early diastole shows a large circumferential pericardial effusion compressing the heart, with the right ventricle completely collapsed (*arrowheads*). (From Roy CL, Minor MA, Brookhart MA, et al. Does this patient with a pericardial effusion have cardiac tamponade? *JAMA.* 2007;297:1810–1818.)

Constrictive Pericarditis

Pathophysiology. Constrictive pericarditis is said to be present when the diastolic filling of the heart is restricted by a thickened and adherent pericardium. Several causes of constrictive pericarditis have been identified, including infectious processes. In addition, radiation to the chest area and cardiac surgery itself have emerged as additional causes of constrictive pericarditis over the past few decades.[507] If the two pericardial layers—visceral and parietal—become adherent as a result of fibrosis and calcification of the pericardium, the space between the two layers is obliterated.[507]

Signs and Symptoms. Typically, patients with constrictive pericarditis present with signs and symptoms of right-sided HF. A high driving pressure across the valves causes a rapid filling of the ventricles in diastole and results in sudden increase in the ventricular pressures. As the ventricular pressures exceed the atrial pressures, flow abruptly stops, and pressures are elevated and equalized in all four chambers.[507]

Another sign seen in constrictive pericarditis is the Kussmaul sign (an exaggeration of the x and y descent on the CVP tracing), which is elicited in response to increased blood return to the right side of the heart on inspiration. Because the thickened pericardium no longer allows the heart to expand to accommodate all the blood flowing into it, the pressure generated by this returning volume is transmitted to the central venous system.[508]

As in pericardial tamponade, pulsus paradoxus is also usually seen in constrictive pericarditis. However, in some cases, thickening of the pericardium can shield the myocardium from the effects of the respiratory cycle; therefore, pulsus paradoxus may not be that obvious. Dyspnea and orthopnea are common in patients with constrictive pericarditis because the low CO caused by constrictive pericarditis severely reduces the patient's exercise tolerance and, in extremely advanced cases, causes cardiac cachexia and muscle wasting.[509] Ascites and peripheral edema may also be seen. Echocardiography is particularly helpful in differentiating constrictive pericarditis from other disease processes with similar presenting symptoms, such as restrictive cardiomyopathy.[509,510]

Anesthetic Considerations for Pericardiectomy. The definitive treatment for constrictive pericarditis is pericardiectomy.[511] This procedure is usually performed through a sternotomy, but it can also be performed through a left thoracotomy incision. In patients with severe cases of the disease, pericardiectomy may involve stripping the pericardium off the heart, which may necessitate the use of CPB.

The hemodynamic management of a patient undergoing pericardiectomy for constrictive pericarditis is similar to that of a patient having a surgical intervention for pericardial effusion and tamponade. However, because the pericardium may need to be "peeled" from the surface of the heart, pericardiectomy carries an additional risk of arrhythmia and injury to the myocardium itself, including rupture of one of the chambers. The raw surface of myocardium and the peeling of pericardium cause the release of fibrinolytic activators, and the complement and coagulation cascades are activated. Thus, pericardiectomy can be associated with generalized bleeding due to consumptive coagulopathy, in addition to actual surgical bleeding. Measures should be taken to avoid and treat arrhythmias and massive intraoperative bleeding.

BOX 54.21 Indications for Pericardiocentesis and Surgical Drainage

Pericardiocentesis is indicated in patients with overt clinical tamponade, in patients with suspected purulent pericarditis, and in patients with idiopathic chronic large pericardial effusion.

Indications for surgical drainage are tamponade, either unresolved or relapsing after pericardiocentesis, and persistent active illness 3 weeks after hospital admission.

Pericardial drainage does not seem to be warranted in the initial management of patients with large pericardial effusions without clinical tamponade because of its low diagnostic yield and poor influence on the evolution of pericardial effusion. Even the presence of echocardiographic right chamber collapse (suggesting raised intrapericardial pressure) does not by itself warrant pericardial drainage because most of these patients do not develop overt tamponade.

Modified from Soler-Soler J, Sagrista-Sauleda J, Permanyer-Miralda G. Management of pericardial effusion. *Heart.* 2001;86:235–240.

Cardiac and Aortic Trauma

Penetrating Cardiac Injury. With the increase in violent crime over the past few decades, the number of cases of gunshot and stab wounds to the heart has risen. Patients with penetrating cardiac injury may be critically unstable because of hemorrhage or cardiac tamponade, or they may have a benign injury to the heart.[512] Hemodynamic and ECG changes may be deceptively absent in many cases. The absence of these changes does not rule out the presence of life-threatening injury to the heart or its surrounding structures.[513] Echocardiography can identify fluid or blood around the heart and can inform the surgical decision regarding whether to perform a sternotomy or to use an alternative approach.[512,514]

The anesthetic management of patients with penetrating cardiac injury is similar to that of other trauma patients. Unstable patients require emergency surgical intervention. The anesthesiologist must ascertain that blood is available on first knowledge of impending surgery for penetrating cardiac injury. With critically unstable patients, the anesthesiologist must secure the airway, establish intravenous access, and place the monitoring lines while the surgical incision is being made. An assistant can be very helpful in efficiently caring for such a patient. In planning the induction of anesthesia and the securing of the airway, the anesthesiologist should assume that the patient probably has a full stomach and volume depletion. Monitoring lines should include an arterial line and a central venous catheter. Barring any contraindications, on the basis of the scant history that may be available at that time, TEE should be considered as an additional monitor. Anesthesia management involves attempting to maintain stable hemodynamics and prevent recall. As in any trauma case, if the patient is unstable, controlled postoperative ventilation is usually preferred, including transportation to the ICU with full monitoring and ventilatory support.

Traumatic Aortic Injury. Blunt aortic injury, which can result in either traumatic aortic transection (TAT) or acute rupture, is one of the most common causes of death from blunt trauma, second only to head injury. On arrival at the hospital, only 25% of patients with blunt thoracic trauma and resultant aortic injury (TAT or acute rupture) are alive.[515] Furthermore, the prognosis of patients who survive the initial injury and remain untreated is poor: 30% die within the first 6 hours, 50% die in the first 24 hours, and 90% die within the first 4 months.[516]

In blunt trauma to the chest, the mechanism of injury to the thoracic aorta is sudden traction on the relatively immobile portion of the aorta, the isthmus, as a result of sudden deceleration.[515] The isthmus is distal to the left subclavian artery, proximal to the third intercostal artery, and fixed to the left PA by the ligamentum arteriosum. This area of attachment of the ligamentum arteriosum acts as a hinge for movement of the aortic arch; thus, it receives the brunt of the shearing force during violent injury to the chest area. Hence, it is the most common location for rupture of the aorta (50%-70%), followed by the ascending aorta or the aortic arch in 18% and the distal thoracic aorta in 14% of cases.[515] The spectrum of injuries to the thoracic aorta in blunt thoracic trauma ranges from simple subintimal hemorrhage to complete aortic transection.

The diagnosis of the aortic injury may be made on the basis of a plain chest radiograph, computed tomography, angiography, or TEE. TEE can also detect cardiac tamponade, left pleural effusion, hypovolemia, ventricular dysfunction from myocardial contusion, or vascular injuries from penetrating chest wounds.[517] Diagnosing TAT with TEE requires recognition of a mural flap at the site of intimal disruption and corresponding deformities of the aortic wall caused by a contained rupture. A gap of more than 7 mm between the probe and the aorta at the level of the proximal descending thoracic aorta, in addition to blood between the aortic wall and the pleura, strongly suggests disruption of the aorta. TEE can also be useful in monitoring the progression of a small intimal tear or as a screening tool for patients who have a normal mediastinum after blunt thoracic trauma.

Management of TAT focuses on the high risk of rupture that this injury entails. The unpredictable timing of this event adds to the concerns regarding these patients. Aggressive management of blood pressure in the preoperative period is necessary to minimize the risk of rupture.[518] Systolic blood pressure should not exceed 100 mm Hg, and the heart rate should not exceed 100 beats/min. The use of β-blockers and nitroglycerin or sodium nitroprusside infusions is recommended.

Intraoperative monitoring should include an arterial catheter and central venous access and a large-bore IV should be secured. The keys to anesthetic management of patients with TAT are avoiding wide swings in systolic blood pressure and continuously monitoring the patient for end-organ ischemia. Because many operations on patients with TAT are performed on an emergency basis, it may be necessary to use a modified rapid-sequence induction. Despite all precautions, marked swings in blood pressure are often seen during induction and laryngoscopy. Agents such as nitroglycerin and esmolol should be immediately available to treat any undesirable hypertension during endotracheal intubation, TEE probe insertion, and surgical incision.

Surgical repair of injuries to the ascending aorta or aortic arch typically requires CPB with DHCA. Injuries to the descending thoracic aorta may require open repair of a short segment. Challenges include preservation of vital organs, particularly the spinal cord. In open procedures, use of partial LHB can facilitate the operation and at the same time preserve visceral organ and spinal cord perfusion. This technique also prevents aggravation of any other injuries that the patient may have sustained because this type of bypass does not require large-dose heparin.[516] Although open repair is possible, transcutaneous endovascular aortic repair has emerged as the preferred intervention whenever possible (STS class I recommendation; level of evidence B).[519,520]

Ischemic and Other Emergencies in the Cardiac Catheterization Laboratory

With rapid advances in interventional cardiology, the number of patients in the United States and Europe who undergo interventional therapy in a CCL is increasing. Such emergencies include coronary artery dissection, free rupture, tamponade, foreign body embolism, and wire entrapment. Patients may be at high risk for complications in the CCL if they have unfavorable coronary anatomy or severe ventricular dysfunction. In some cases, cardiac surgery and cardiac anesthesia services should be consulted and placed on standby for a possible emergency intervention. Rapid surgical intervention, such as revascularization or temporary mechanical support, is crucial to reducing the mortality and morbidity of patients who suffer angiography-related accidents.

When ischemic complications occur during cardiac catheterization with percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty and stenting, pharmacologic intervention and, possibly, a device such as an IABP or VAD may be used to stabilize the patient's hemodynamic condition before the patient is transferred to the operating room on an urgent or emergency basis for open coronary revascularization. Patients may be intubated on an emergency basis in the CCL. Patients with coronary dissection or severe ischemia may require CPR during transport to the operating room.[521] Although the anesthesiologist, cardiologist, or both may lead these resuscitative efforts, all members of the catheterization team—physicians, nurses, and technologists—should complete a course in basic CPR; additionally, certification in advanced cardiac life support, with annual recertification, is strongly urged.[522]

If the patient is not already intubated, the choice of induction agents should be tailored to the patient's hemodynamic condition; one should avoid hypotension and tachycardia while keeping in mind the patient's NPO (nothing by mouth) status. Perioperative monitoring of these patients should include an arterial line and central intravenous access, which should be established as soon as possible. TEE can be of immense importance in both diagnosing the cardiac problem and monitoring the patient intraoperatively.

Other procedures performed in the CCL, invasive vascular laboratory, and electrophysiology laboratory—notably aortic aneurysm stenting and ablation procedures—may also require operating room backup. A dedicated surgical team should be available in the event of a life-threatening complication. Planning for the possibility of conversion to an open procedure, such as in cases of an aneurysm leak or catheter perforation of a major blood vessel or cardiac chamber, is imperative. A hybrid interventional cardiovascular suite is ideal for such events.[523] In institutions without such a hybrid suite, urgent transportation to a general operating room may be necessary.

Optimal care also depends on the ready availability of a stat laboratory. Blood gas analysis, as well as the assessment of electrolytes and hemoglobin or hematocrit, is important in urgent situations. Patients undergoing procedures for coronary revascularization may be receiving platelet inhibitor drugs. Conventional coagulation tests may not be sufficient for diagnosing clinical bleeding in these patients, therefore POC tests that evaluate platelet function and viscoelastic testing to manage perioperative bleeding are useful.[523]

Compared with elective cardiac surgical procedures, emergency cardiac surgery carries higher mortality and morbidity risks, especially if the patient is in cardiogenic shock.[524] Identifying high-risk patients going to the CCL for interventional procedures, as well as communication about these high-risk patients among the interventional cardiologists, cardiac surgeons, and cardiac anesthesiologists, is of prime importance in improving the outcome of these emergency procedures.

Procedures in the Hybrid Operating Room

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Since the 1990s, the scope of activity in the CCL and electrophysiology laboratory has greatly increased and has diverged considerably from the simple diagnosis and evaluation of valvular heart disease, CAD, and CHD.[396,397,522,525] Procedures and interventions in these settings are more complex and often involve acutely ill patients.[397] Cardiac anesthesiologists may find themselves in a relatively isolated environment with bulky equipment, subdued lighting, and limited access to the patient.[521,524] Assistance from surgical colleagues, if required, may not be readily available, nor may the services of anesthesia support personnel, the pharmacy, and the stat laboratory. Finally, for patients with moderate or severe cardiac disease who have undergone heavy sedation or general anesthesia, a suitable recovery area may be in a distant location.

Because fluoroscopy is frequently used during interventional procedures in the CCL and hybrid operating rooms, it can present a significant risk of radiation exposure to both patients and healthcare workers. The potential hazards of ionizing radiation include skin injuries and cellular mutation, which can lead to leukemia, bone cancer, and birth defects. The radiation safety program at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has developed the concept that radiation doses should be "as low as reasonably achievable" (ALARA). Exposure to radiation can be minimized by three means: distance, time, and shielding.[522] The distance between the person and the source should be maximized because the dose rate varies with the inverse square of that distance. In addition, the person's exposure time should be minimized because the dose rate and time are directly related. Finally, personal shielding and shielding of the radiation source should be maximized.

BOX 54.22 **Maximum Allowable Radiation Limits for Medical Workers**

- Whole body: 5 rem/year (50 mSv/year)
- Skin: 50 rad/year (500 mGy/year)
- Lens of eye: 2 rad/year (20 mGy/year)
- Fetus (for pregnant worker): 0.5 rad (5 mGy) for total pregnancy or 0.05 rad/month (0.5 mGy/month) (estimated by abdominal badge under lead apron)
- Cumulative exposure (lifetime): 1 rem × age (10 mSv × age)

Modified from Bashore TM, Balter S, Barac A, et al. 2012 American College of Cardiology Foundation/Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions expert consensus document on cardiac catheterization laboratory standards update: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation Task Force on Expert Consensus documents. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2012;59:2221–2305.

The rad is a unit of absorbed dose, which is the energy imparted to matter by ionizing radiation per unit mass of irradiated material at the point of interest.[522] The rem is a unit of effective dose, which is the estimated total body dose. Healthcare personnel in a radiation environment must wear a dosimeter badge to track cumulative radiation exposure. The dosimeter should be worn on areas at highest risk for frequent exposure, such as the thyroid collar, and outside any shielding garments. Corrective action is recommended if an individual (patient or provider) receives more than 5 rem/year to the whole body (Box 54.22).[522] In the case of pregnant women, the total radiation exposure to the fetus throughout gestation should be no more than 0.05 rad/month or 0.5 rad total.

Identifying patients at risk for a reaction to iodinated contrast material is another consideration unique to procedures performed in the CCL or hybrid suite. A previous anaphylactoid reaction and a history of atopic conditions such as asthma are the most significant risk factors for acute hypersensitivity reactions.[522] Premedication regimens with histamine (H_2) blockers and steroids are recommended for the highest-risk atopic patients, particularly those with a known prior reaction. Current options include giving 50 mg oral prednisone 13 hours, 7 hours, and 1 hour before the procedure or 200 mg intravenous hydrocortisone, with or without H_2 blockers, 2 hours before the cardiac catheterization.[522]

In patients with renal insufficiency, radiocontrast media–induced nephropathy is a concern, and diabetic patients are at particularly high risk for acute renal failure after exposure to contrast agents.[521,522] These effects can be minimized through careful contrast administration and limitation of the total dose. Preprocedural and postprocedural hydration with normal saline solution, sodium bicarbonate, or both is recommended.[522] However, in patients with severe HF or near–end-stage renal disease, one must be careful to avoid volume overload.[521,522] Elevated serum creatinine levels are common after the administration of radiocontrast media, and these levels should be monitored for 72 or more hours in patients at risk. Two definitions (an incremental increase >0.5 mg/dL or a rise >25% in serum creatinine level) are now accepted as indicators of contrast-induced nephropathy. Fortunately, renal dysfunction is usually transient and rarely progresses to acute renal failure.

HYBRID OPERATING ROOM

To address some of the issues regarding the technologic and procedural demands regarding surgical and imaging equipment for selected endovascular and transcatheter procedures, hybrid operating rooms have been built in many institutions. These rooms have complete dual capabilities for procedures that require fluoroscopy, open surgery, or both. Ideally, such rooms are within or adjacent to the regular surgical suite. The physical location of such hybrid rooms may represent an advance in care in that key personnel are more readily available to handle unanticipated complications and emergencies.

The types of procedures that are performed in the CCL or the hybrid operating room vary according to institutional preferences but may include (1) electrophysiology procedures, (2) percutaneous management of valvular lesions, (3) the use of occlusion or umbrella devices to close an ASD or VSD or a PDA, (4) percutaneous VADs, and (5) stenting of abdominal or thoracic aortic aneurysms.[400-402]

Although requirements vary depending on the nature of the procedure, sedation or anesthesia improve the efficacy and safety of many procedures.[525] Providing stable hemodynamics for organ perfusion and preservation during anesthesia is an important goal. Some procedures can be performed with the aid of monitored anesthesia care or regional blocks, provided a certain patient comfort level can be achieved. However, during difficult and lengthy procedures, patients may have trouble lying still. In many cases, a general anesthetic regimen may be the best option. If indicated, general anesthesia with endotracheal intubation provides a controlled situation: the patient's comfort is maximized, and the airway is secured.[521] Use of a laryngeal mask or a standard mask airway is also possible, but the constant diaphragmatic movements that occur during spontaneous ventilation may interfere with fluoroscopic visualization of cardiac and vascular structures. In the absence of significant complications or comorbid conditions, the patient may be allowed to emerge from anesthesia before being transferred to the CCL recovery area and, eventually, to a hospital floor. In more complex cases, the patient may be transferred to an ICU.

Percutaneous mitral valve repairs (e.g., correction of MR and commissurotomy for MS) share the same advantages as TAVI with respect to avoiding sternotomy, implementing CPB, and cross-clamping the aorta.[399] These procedures are similarly performed with the patient under general anesthesia, with fluoroscopic and TEE guidance.[402]

Percutaneous closure procedures are used to close ASDs and, less commonly, VSDs, as well as PDAs and fenestrations.[402,525] Echocardiography is used to help guide device placement and confirm a successful result. If TEE is used, general anesthesia is necessary. If ICE is used, the procedure can potentially be performed with sedation only.[402] Large-bore peripheral or femoral venous access is needed, and a radial arterial line is often placed.

Percutaneous VADs (TandemHeart, and Impella Recover LP 2.5 and 5.0) are placed in patients undergoing high-risk coronary interventions or ablation procedures or who are in cardiogenic shock.[402] These devices can produce CO that completely replaces LV function with nonpulsatile blood flow. Hence, pulse oximetry and noninvasive blood pressure measurement may not work properly since they rely on the presence of a pulse for their mechanism of measurement. Either sedation or general anesthesia can be used, depending on the patient's hemodynamic status and ability to cooperate. Invasive monitoring of the arterial blood pressure is easily available because arterial cannulation is used during the procedure.[402] Large-bore intravenous access is desirable because a large amount of blood loss is possible. Surgical backup is necessary during these procedures. The institution of ECMO for full cardiorespiratory support is often performed in a catheterization laboratory or a hybrid operating room.

Acknowledgment

This chapter consolidates the 8th edition chapter of the same title and Chapter 104 Nitric Oxide and Other Inhaled Pulmonary Vasodilators. The returning authors Muhammad F. Sarwar Bruce E. Searles, Linda Shore-Lesserson, and Marc E. Stone as well as the editors and publisher would like to thank the following authors: Nancy A. Nussmeier, Isobel Russell, Fumito Ichinose, and Warren M. Zapol for their contributions to the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Roger VL, et al. *Circulation*. 2012;125:e2.
2. Capewell S, Lloyd-Jones DM. *JAMA*. 2010;304:2057.
3. Alan SG, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;129:e28.
4. Kim ES, Menon V. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2009;29:279.
5. Wechsler AS. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;126:617.
6. Edwards FH, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;79:2189.
7. Blankstein R, et al. *Circulation*. 2005;112:I323.
8. Guru V, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:1158.
9. Konety SH, et al. *Circulation*. 2005;111:1210.
10. Werner RM, et al. *Circulation*. 2005;111:1257.
11. Podgoreanu MV, Schwinn DA. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2005;46:1965.
12. Podgoreanu MV, et al. *Circulation*. 2006;114:I275.
13. Perry TE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:607.
14. Perry TE, et al. *BMC Med Genet*. 2009;10(38).
15. Rinder CS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1118.
16. Grocott HP, et al. *Stroke*. 2005;36:1854.
17. Mathew JP, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;49:1934.
18. Yende S, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:922.
19. London MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:232.
20. Landesberg G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:264.
21. Fleisher LA. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1183.
22. Reich DL, et al. Monitoring of the heart and vascular system. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:416.
23. Carmona MJ, et al. *Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2007;57:618.
24. Schwann NM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:994.
25. Hind D, et al. *BMJ*. 2003;327:361.
26. London MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:860.
27. Iberti TJ, et al. *JAMA*. 1990;264:2928.
28. Connors Jr AF, et al. *JAMA*. 1996;276:889.

29. Peters SG, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2003;18:166.
30. ElBardissi AW, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;143:273.
31. van Harten AE, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:280.
32. Rudolph JL, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54:663.
33. Sweet JJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85:1571.
34. Währborg P, et al. *Circulation*. 2004;110:3411.
35. Murkin JM. Central nervous system dysfunction after cardiopulmonary bypass. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:1061.
36. Abu-Omar Y, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:1759.
37. Hindman BJ. *Heart Surg Forum*. 2002;5(249).
38. Ridderstolpe L, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2002;16:278.
39. Murkin JM. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2001;72:S1838.
40. Djaiani G, et al. *Stroke*. 2004;35:e356.
41. Hartman GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:701.
42. Gold JP, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:1579.
43. Emmert MY, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2011;142:1499.
44. Wilson MJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;70(25).
45. Grocott HP. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:216.
46. Murkin JM, Arango M. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(suppl 1):i3.
47. Yao FS, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:552.
48. Goldman S, et al. *Heart Surg Forum*. 2004;7:E376.
49. Fischer GW, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2011;141:815.
50. Murkin JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(51).
51. Slater JP, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;87:36. discussion 44.
52. Denault A, et al. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;11:274.
53. Heringlake M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(58).
54. Murkin JM. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(12).
55. Joshi B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(503).
56. van Dijk D, Kalkman CJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(1006).
57. Liu YH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(1013).
58. Kertai MD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(533).
59. Bellomo R, et al. *Lancet*. 2012;380:756.
60. Bellomo R, et al. *Int J Artif Organs*. 2008;31:166.
61. Schetz M, et al. *Int J Artif Organs*. 2008;31:179.
62. Rassias AJ. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2006;18:330.
63. Reves JG, et al. *Circ*. 1982;66(1).
64. Wade AO, Cordingley JJ. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2006;12:437.
65. Lazar HL. *Adv Surg*. 2012;46:219.
66. Streeter NB. *J Cardiovasc Nurs*. 2006;21:E14.
67. McDonnell ME, et al. *J Card Surg*. 2012;27:470.
68. Gandhi GY, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2007;146:233.
69. Lazar HL, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;87:663.
70. Klein I, Ojamaa K. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344(No. 7).
71. Iervasi G, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;107:708.
72. Cerillo AG, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2014;97:2089.
73. Eagle KA, et al. *Circulation*. 2004;110:e340.
74. Zindrou D, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;74:2121.
75. Edwards FH, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;79:2189.
76. Society of Thoracic Surgeons Blood Conservation Guideline Task Force, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2011;91(3):944.
77. Engoren MC, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;74(4):1180.
78. Koch CG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(12):1229.
79. Young G, et al. *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis*. 2007;18(2):97.
80. Hirsh J, et al. *Circulation*. 2001;103(24):2994.
81. Shore-Lesserson L, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2018;105(2):650.
82. Bull BS, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1975;69(5):674.
83. Young JA, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1978;26(3):231.
84. Doty DB, et al. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 1979;20(6):597.
85. Shore-Lesserson L. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2005;9(1):41.
86. Guzzetta NA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):173.
87. Despotis GJ, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 1996;76(6):902.
88. Gravlee GP, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1990;99(3):518.
89. Shore-Lesserson L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(4):813.
90. Bull BS, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1975;69(5):685. 1975.
91. Guo Y, et al. *Can J Cardiol*. 2012;28(5):547.
92. Edmunds Jr LH, Colman RW. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82(6):2315.
93. Boyle Jr EM, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;62(5):1549.
94. Levy JH. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18(2):129.
95. Ranucci M, et al. *Perfusion*. 2002;17(3):199.
96. Linden MD, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18(2):131.
97. Ranucci M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(2):355.
98. Garvin S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(4):862.
99. Avidan MS, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2005;130(1):107.
100. Dietrich W, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(1):66.
101. Garvin S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(4):856.
102. Avidan MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(2):276.
103. Teoh KH, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;128(2):211.
104. Warkentin TE, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 1998;79(1):1.
105. Warkentin TE, et al. *Chest*. 2008;133(suppl 6):340S.
106. Everett BM, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(2):592.
107. Warkentin TE. *Br J Haematol*. 2003;121(4):535.
108. Kress DC, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(5):1737.
109. Lewis BE, et al. *Circulation*. 2001;103(14):1838.
110. Koster A, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(2):572.
111. Koster A, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(1):72.
112. Koster A. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(5):1865.
113. Welsby IJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(2):308.
114. Kimmel SE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(6):1402. table of contents.
115. Kimmel SE, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1998;32(7):1916.
116. Comunale ME, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17(3):309.
117. Brown JR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354(18):1953. author reply -7.
118. Henry D, et al. *CMAJ*. 2009;180(2):183.
119. Mangano DT, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354(4):353.
120. Fergusson DA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(22):2319.
121. Donahue BS. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(6):1623. table of contents.
122. Donahue BS. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(6):1598. table of contents.
123. Donahue BS, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;107(7):1003.
124. Donahue BS. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(3):760. author reply 1.
125. Levine GN, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;124(23):e574.
126. Levine GN, et al. *Circulation*. 2016;134(10):e123.
127. Ferraris VA, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94(5):1761.
128. Berger JS, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008;52(21):1693.
129. Berger PB, et al. *J Interv Cardiol*. 2015;28(3):223.
130. Maltais S, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2008;34(1):127.
131. Singh M, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2001;76(8):784.
132. Lincoff AM, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;70(2):516.
133. Brown DL, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2001;87(5):537.
134. McDonald SB, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2005;19(1):4.
135. Bar-Yosef S, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2007;54(2):107.
136. Ruff CT, et al. *Lancet*. 2014;383(9921):955.
137. Douxfils J, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 2012;107(5):985.
138. Douxfils J, et al. *Thromb J*. 2014;12:24.
139. Sun JZ, et al. *Hypertens Res*. 2011;34(15).
140. Mangano DT. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:1309.
141. Gremmel T, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 2009;101(333).
142. Breet NJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;303:754.
143. Bonello L, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008;51:1404.
144. Puskas F, et al. Induction of anesthesia. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:179.
145. Engelman R, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:1569.
146. Raphael J. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;14:54.
147. Licker M, et al. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2012;15:206.
148. ElBardissi AW, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2008;34:1027.
149. Morris BN, et al. The post cardiopulmonary bypass period: weaning to ICS transport. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:238.
150. Nagpal K, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2010;252:171.
151. Nagpal K, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2011;253:831.
152. Kitch BT, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2008;34:563.
153. Joy BF, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2011;12:304.
154. Petrovic MA, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:11.
155. Catchpole KR, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17:470.
156. Myles PS, et al. *Lancet*. 2004;363:1757.
157. Avidan MS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:1097.
158. Dahaba AA. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:765.
159. Levy JH, et al. Postoperative cardiovascular management. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:1025.
160. Bernard F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:291.
161. Gillies M, et al. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:266.
162. Hollenberg SM. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;183:847.
163. Maharaj R, Metaxa V. *Crit Care*. 2011;15:R140.
164. Toller WG, Stranz C. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:556.
165. Landoni G, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:2021.
166. Desai AS, Jarcho JA. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:2076.
167. Haddad F, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2016;29:68.
168. Kaplan JA, et al. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. ; 2011.
169. Al-Sarraf N, et al. *Cardiol Res Pract*. 2012;2012:272384.

170. Mathew JP, et al. *JAMA*. 2004;291:1720.
171. Davis EM, et al. *Pharmacotherapy Jul*. 2010;30(7):749. 274e.
172. Kinoshita T, et al. *Eur J Card Surg*. 2012;41:102.
173. Giaccardi M, et al. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil Apr*. 2011;90(4):308.
174. Rader F, et al. *Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol*. 2011;4:644.
175. Hill LL, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2002;16:483.
176. European Heart Rhythm Association, European Association for Cardio-Thoracic Surgery, Camm AJ, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2010;31:2369.
177. Hogue Jr CW, et al. *Chest*. 2005;128(9S).
178. Chung MK. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28:N136.
179. Atlee JL, Bernstein AD. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1265.
180. Vuylsteke A, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2000;14:269.
181. Levy JH. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2005;32:467.
182. Cogliati AA, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;21:847.
183. Bove T, et al. *J CardiothroracVasc Anesth*. 2004;18(4):442.
184. Sear JW. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:20.
185. Kuitunen A, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81:542.
186. Ejaz AA, et al. *J Nephrol*. 2012;25:497.
187. Mehta RL, et al. *JAMA*. 2002;288:2547.
188. Kellum JA, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2002;28(29).
189. Alexander KP, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2000;35:731.
190. Bucerius J, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;75:472.
191. Kaplan JA et al.: *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*, 6th ed.. p 1070
192. Tarakji KG, et al. *JAMA*. 2011;305:381.
193. Newman MF, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:395.
194. van Harten AE, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;66:280.
195. Selnes OA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366:250.
196. Grocott HP. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:213.
197. Gold JP, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:1579.
198. Wilson MJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;70(25).
199. Djaiani G, et al. *Circulation*. 2007;116:1888.
200. Martens S, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85:543.
201. van Dijk D, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;297:701.
202. Bucerius J, et al. *Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;51(11).
203. Krinsley JS, Grover A. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:2262.
204. Galindo RJ, et al. *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am*. 2018;47:203.
205. Gold JP, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;110:1302. discussion 1311.
206. Gottesman RF, et al. *Stroke*. 2006;37:2306.
207. McKhann GM, et al. *Stroke*. 2006;37:562.
208. Rudolph JL, Marcantonio ER. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1202.
209. Rudolph JL, et al. *Circulation*. 2009;119(229).
210. Higgins TL, et al. Postoperative respiratory care. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:1046.
211. Reddy SL, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;84:528.
212. Kapadohos T, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9(1):70.
213. Murthy SC, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;134:484.
214. Prielipp R, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vas Anes*. 1997;11(No 7):908.
215. Janelle GM, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vas Anes*. 2000vol. 14(No 1, 4).
216. Dehert SG, et al. *J Cardiothorac Van Anes*. 1997;11(No 7):864.
217. England MR, et al. *JAMA*. 1992;268(No 17).
218. Lazar HL. *Adv Surg*. 2012;46:219.
219. Gandhi GY, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2007;146:233.
220. Lazar HL, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;87:663.
221. Tindall MJ et al.: *Mathematical medicine and biology: a journal of IMA*, V 25, Issue 4, December 2008
222. Mueller XM, et al. *Chest*. 2000;118:391.
223. Gottschalk A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:594.
224. Liu SS, Wu CL. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:689.
225. Bainbridge D, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:492.
226. Liu SS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(153).
227. Svircevic V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:262.
228. Olivier JF, et al. *Heart Surg Forum*. 2007;10:E357.
229. Dowling R, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;126:1271.
230. Joshi GP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1793.
231. Despotis GJ, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 1996;76(6):902.
232. Mahla E, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2016;102(6):2010.
233. Chen A, Teruya J. *Clin Lab Med*. 2009;29(2):391.
234. Nuttall GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(5):773. discussion 5A-6A.
235. Ak K, et al. *J Card Surg*. 2009;24(4):404.
236. Karkouti K, et al. *Circulation*. 2016;134(16):1152.
237. Shore-Lesserson L, et al. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1999;88(2):312.
238. Ott E, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;133:1242.
239. Koch CG, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81:1650.
240. Marik PE, Corwin HL. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:2667.
241. Ferraris VA, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:S27.
242. Loor G, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;144:654.
243. Ranucci M, et al. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2006;33:300.
244. Rochon AG, Shore-Lesserson L. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2006;24:839.
245. White MM, et al. *J Thromb Thrombolysis*. 2004;18:163.
246. Agarwal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:676.
247. Malinin A, et al. *Thromb Res*. 2007;119:277.
248. Wheeler GL, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2002;143:602.
249. Steinhubl SR, et al. *Circulation*. 2001;103:2572.
250. Avidan MS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:178.
251. Nuttall GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:773.
252. Despotis GJ, et al. *Transfusion (Paris)*. 1994;34:290.
253. Shore-Lesserson L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:312.
254. Helm RE, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1998;65:125.
255. Spiess BD, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1995;9:168.
256. Royston D, von Kier S. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:575.
257. Weber CF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:531.
258. Ozier Y, Schlumberger S. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:S21.
259. DelRossi AJ, et al. *Chest*. 1989;96(27).
260. Horrow JC, et al. *Circulation*. 1991;84:2063.
261. Fiechtner BK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:1131.
262. Butterworth J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1624.
263. Kikura M, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2006;202(216).
264. Horrow JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:383.
265. Spiess BD, et al. Transfusion medicine and coagulation disorders. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:949.
266. Mangano DT, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;297:471.
267. Gill R, et al. *Circulation*. 2009;120(21).
268. Ask A, et al. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2006;38:27.
269. De Somer F, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2000;18:602.
270. Nutter BT, et al. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2004;36:36.
271. Willcox TW, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1999;68:1285.
272. Linneweber J, et al. *Int J Artif Organs*. 2002;25:549.
273. Federspiel WJ, Henchir KA. Lung, artificial: basic principles and current applications. In: Wnek GE, Bowlin GL, eds. *Encyclopedia of Biomaterials and Biomedical Engineering*. New York: Marcel Dekker; 2004:910.
274. Despotis GJ, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;110:46.
275. Shore-Lesserson L, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2018;105(2):650.
276. Williams ML, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;90:1812.
277. Gottlieb EA, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16:787.
278. Ing RJ, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:472.
279. Tovedal T, et al. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2010;11:561.
280. Bove T, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:442.
281. Oriaku G, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;119:1102.
282. Tian G, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;125:872.
283. Guarracino F, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2001;67(165).
284. Hindler K, Nussmeier NA. Central nervous system risk assessment. In: Newman M, Fleisher L, Fink M, eds. *Perioperative Medicine: Managing for Outcome*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2008:69.
285. Rees K, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2001;1:CD002138.
286. Kammersgaard LP, et al. *Stroke*. 2002;33:1759.
287. Hogue Jr CW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(21).
288. Nussmeier NA. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2005;32:472.
289. Akata T, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;133:1559.
290. Nussmeier NA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(1373).
291. Johnson RI, et al. *Perfusion*. 2002;17(145).
292. Engelman R, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2015;100(2):748.
293. Thong WY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1489.
294. Grocott HP, et al. *Stroke*. 2002;33(537).
295. Rahn H. *Pneumonologie*. 1974;151(87).
296. Murkin JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:825.
297. Sakamoto T, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:12.
298. Shann KG, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2006;132:283.
299. Groom RC, et al. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2005;37:343.
300. Schulze C, et al. *Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;48:364.
301. Parolari A, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;84:823.
302. Carrier M, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:51.
303. Searles B. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2006;38:64.
304. Tallman RD, et al. *Perfusion*. 2002;17(111).
305. Ohata T, et al. *J Artif Organs*. 2007;10:92.

306. Fromes Y, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2002;22:527.
307. Rastan AJ, et al. *Circulation*. 2006;114:I477.
308. de Vroege R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1586.
309. Deptula J, et al. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2006;38:22.
310. Ikuta T, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;77:1678.
311. Warren O, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2007;31:665.
312. Cappabianca G, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2011;25:156.
313. Dieleman JM, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;5:CD005566.
314. Dieleman JM, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1761.
315. Morgan C, et al. *Crit Care*. 2009;13:R165.
316. Liakopoulos OJ, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;4:CD008493.
317. Dale O, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:934.
318. Edmonds Jr HL. Central nervous system monitoring. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:466.
319. Cook RC, et al. *J Card Surg*. 2006;21:158.
320. Duebener LF, et al. *Circulation*. 2001;104:I260.
321. Lee AP, et al. *Circulation*. 2009;119:2606.
322. Immer FF, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85:1614. discussion 1618.
323. Li Z, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;73:1514.
324. Gega A, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;84:759.
325. Harrington DK, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:S799. discussion S824.
326. Barnard J, et al. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2004;3:621.
327. Green MS, et al. Anesthetic management of myocardial revascularization. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:319.
328. Mittnacht AJC, et al. Anesthesia for myocardial revascularization. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:522.
329. Shanewise JS. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;10:101.
330. Harvey S, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;3:CD003408.
331. Halkos ME, Puskas JD. *Curr Opin Cardiol*. 2010;25:583.
332. Chassot PG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:400.
333. Mack MJ, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:167.
334. Patel NC, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;128:655.
335. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2005;46:872.
336. Cheng DC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:188.
337. Shroyer AL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361:1827.
338. Hannan EL, et al. *Circulation*. 2007;116(1145).
339. Puskas JD, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;84:1447. discussion 1454.
340. Fu SP, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;87:1090.
341. Eifert S, et al. *J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2010;5:90.
342. Lamy A, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2016;375:2359.
343. Kim JY, et al. Alternative approaches to cardiac surgery with and without cardiopulmonary bypass. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:359.
344. Grayes Emery. *J Cardio Thorac Vasc Anes*. 1997;11(No 5):625.
345. Reser D, et al. *Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2015;63:313.
346. Tekin AI, et al. *Videosurgery Miniinv*. 2017;12(3):285.
347. Deshpande, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2014;27:49.
348. Cao C, et al. *Ann Cardiothorac Surg*. 2016;5(6):530.
349. Bonatti JO, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94:1920.
350. Halkos ME, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2014;97:484.
351. Rheumatic fever and rheumatic heart disease: World Health. *Organ Tech Rep Ser*. 2004;923(1).
352. Borger MA, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81:1153.
353. Quader N, Rigolin VH. *Cardiovascula Ultrasound*. 2014;12(42).
354. O'Gara P, et al. *JACC: Cardiovascular Imaging*. 2008;1(2).
355. Bonow RO, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008;52:e1.
356. Carabello BA. *Circulation*. 2005;112:432.
357. Savage RM, et al. *Comprehensive Textbook of Perioperative Transesophageal Echocardiography*. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer; 2005.
358. Klein AJ, Carroll JD. *Heart Fail Clin*. 2006;2(443).
359. Adams DH, et al. Mitral valve regurgitation. In: Hurst JW, Fuster V, Walsh RA, et al., eds. *Hurst's the Heart*. 13th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical; 2011:1721.
360. Nishimura RA, Schaff HV. Mitral regurgitation: timing of surgery. In: Otto CM, Bonow RO, eds. *Valvular Heart Disease: A Companion to Braunwald's Heart Disease*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2009:274.
361. Levine RA, et al. Ischemic mitral regurgitation. In: Otto CM, Bonow RO, eds. *Valvular Heart Disease: A Companion to Braunwald's Heart Disease*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2009:260.
362. Hudson JKC, et al. Echocardiographic assessment of cardiomyopathies. In: Savage RM, Aronson S, Shernan SK, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Perioperative Transesophageal Echocardiography*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2010:611.
363. Roberts R, Sigwart U. *Circulation*. 2001;104:2113.
364. Manabe S, et al. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2012;15:235.
365. Soltesz EG, Cohn LH. *Cardiol Rev*. 2007;15(109).
366. Mihaljevic T, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2004;240(529). discussion 534.
367. Bhamidipati CM, et al. *Innovations (Phila)*. 2010;5(295).
368. Rehfeldt KH, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2011;25:721.
369. Javadikasgari H, et al. *Heart*. 2018;104(10):861–867.
370. Soltesz EG, et al. MIMVS. *Cardiol Rev*. 2007;15:109–115.
371. Kottenberg-Assenmacher E, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(3):231.
372. Vernick WJ, Woo JY. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;16:11.
373. Mihaljevic T, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2004;240:529–534.
374. Dunning J, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2011;142. 776 e773.
375. Cripe L, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;44:138.
376. Robicsek F, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;77:177.
377. Beller CJ, et al. *Circulation*. 2004;109:763.
378. Freeman RV, Otto CM. *Circulation*. 2005;111:3316.
379. Schoen FJ. *Cardiovasc Pathol*. 2005;14(189).
380. Mochizuki Y, Pandian NG. *Curr Opin Cardiol*. 2003;18:327.
381. Pasic M, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;90:1463. discussion 1469.
382. Augoustides JG, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2009;23:569.
383. Bekeredjian R, Grayburn PA. *Circulation*. 2005;112(125).
384. Scheuble A, Vahanian A. *Am J Cardiovasc Drugs*. 2005;5:113.
385. Otto CM. Right-sided valve disease. In: Otto CM, Bonow RO, eds. *Valvular Heart Disease: a Companion to Braunwald's Heart Disease*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2009:334.
386. Kim BS, et al. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2006;18:148.
387. Taramasso M, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;2012(59):703.
388. Cohen SR, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1987;94:481.
389. Matsunaga A, Duran CM. *Circulation*. 2005;112:I453.
390. Nath J, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;43:405.
391. O'Rourke RA. Tricuspid valve, pulmonic valve, and multivalvular disease. In: Fuster V, Wayne AR, O'Rourke RA, eds. *Hurst's the Heart*. 11th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical; 2004:1707.
392. Sivarajan M, Modak R. Valvular stenosis. In: Mathew JP, Ayoub CM, eds. *Clinical Manual and Review of Transesophageal Echocardiography*. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical; 2005:118.
393. Kheiwa A, et al. *Exp Rev Cardiovasc Ther*. 2018;16(3):197.
394. Pfannmuller B, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94:2005.
395. Chikwe J, et al. Procedures in the hybrid operating room. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:807.
396. Braithwaite S, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:507.
397. Shook DC, Savage RM. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:47.
398. Reddy K, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61:1175.
399. Joe RR, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin Nrth America*. 2003;(3):639.
400. Leon MB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:1597.
401. Braithwaite S, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:507.
402. Shook DC, Savage RM. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:47.
403. Chikwe J, Kerr J, Love BA. Procedures in the hybrid operating room. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:807–813.
404. Otto CM, et al. *JACC*. 2017;69(1313).
405. Holmes Jr DR, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;144:e29.
406. Yan TD, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2010;139:1519.
407. Billings 4th FT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(1453).
408. Hosoba S, et al. *Int CardVasc Thor Surg*. 2018;26:420.
409. Greason KL, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2016;151:1026.
410. Fassl J, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2011;25:576.
411. Patel PA, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:698.
412. Pressman GS. *Cardiology*. 2017;137(25).
413. Tommaso CL, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;143:1254.
414. Kothandan H, et al. *Ann Card Anaest*. 2014;17(1):17.
415. Franzen O, et al. *Eur J Heart Fail*. 2011;13:569.
416. Ding J, et al. *Int J Clin Exp Med*. 2015;8(9):15230.
417. Kumar D, et al. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2018;21:88.
418. Hunt SA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2009;53:e1.
419. Francis GS, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1984;101:370.
420. Levine B, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;323:236.
421. Liao L, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2004;93:1275.
422. Vitali E, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2003;91:88F.
423. Kumpati GS, et al. *Cardiol Clin*. 2001;19:669.
424. Luc JG, et al. *Ann Cardiothorac Surg*. 2018;7(1):19.

425. Atluri P, Acker MA. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;24:51.
426. Romano MA, Bolling SF. *Heart Fail Monit*. 2003;4(7).
427. Nishimura R, et al. *JACC*. 2017;70(2):252.
428. Bax JJ, et al. *Circulation*. 2004;110:II103.
429. Braun J, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85:430. discussion 436.
430. Ciarka A, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2010;106:395.
431. Goldstein D, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;374:344.
432. Jones RH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:1705.
433. Bardy GH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:225.
434. Bristow MR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:2140.
435. Buxton AE, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;341:1882.
436. Cleland JG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:1539.
437. Moss AJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346:877.
438. Delgado DH, et al. *J Card Surg*. 2004;19:47.
439. Feller ED, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:1082.
440. Maybaum S, et al. *Circulation*. 2007;115:2497.
441. Reinlib L, Abraham W. *J Card Fail*. 2003;9:459.
442. Rose EA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:1435.
443. Xydas S, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2006;25(7).
444. Stehlik J, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2011;30:1078.
445. Stone ML, et al. *J Card Surg*. 2015;30:194.
446. Kirklin JK, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2008;27:1065.
447. Kirklin JK, et al. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2004;84:257. xi.
448. Kirklin JK, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2015;34(12):1495.
449. Rogers JG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:451.
450. Stulak JM, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2015;34:1535.
451. Schmitto JD, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2015;34:858.
452. Mehra MR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(5):440. 2017.
453. Mehra MR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018.
454. Feldman D, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2013;32:157.
455. Shah KB, et al. *J Card Fail*. 2016;22(11):913.
456. Cook JA, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 2015;7(12):2172.
457. Yaung J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1412.
458. Report of the WHO/ISFC task force on the definition and classification of cardiomyopathies. *Br Heart J*. 1980;44:672.
459. Maron BJ, et al. *Circulation*. 2006;113:1807.
460. Brieler J, et al. *Am Fam Phys*. 2017;96(10):640.
461. Argulian E, et al. *Am J Med*. 2016;129(2):148.
462. Gersh BJ, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;124(24):e783.
463. Morrow AG, Brockenbrough EC. *Ann Surg*. 1961;154:181.
464. Sherrid MV, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;75:620.
465. Messmer B. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1994;58:575.
466. Schoendube FA, et al.: *Circulation* 92 (suppl II):II 122, 1995.
467. Balaram SK, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94:1990.
468. Chenzbraun A, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1993;71:1244.
469. Sgalambro A, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2010;140:1046.
470. Gemmato CJ, et al. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2005;32:168.
471. Health Resources and Services Administration, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services: Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network. <http://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov/data/> (Accessed 2.24.2018)
472. Frazier OH, et al. Surgical treatment of advanced heart failure. In: Willerson JT, Cohn JN, Wellens HJJ, et al., eds. *Cardiovascular Medicine*. 3rd ed. New York: Springer; 2007:1461.
473. Natale ME, Pina IL. *Curr Opin Cardiol*. 2003;18:136.
474. Myers J, et al. *Chest*. 2003;124:2000.
475. Sun JP, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2007;26:1243.
476. Dreyfus G, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1991;52(11).
477. Silversides CK, et al. *Can J Cardiol*. 2010;26:143.
478. Chassot PG, Bettex DA. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;20:414.
479. Lovell AT. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:129.
480. Webb GD, Williams RG. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2001;37:1166.
481. Warnes CA, et al. *Circulation*. 2008;118:2395.
482. Bhatt AB, et al. *Circulation*. 2015;131:1884.
483. Marelli A, et al. *Can J Cardiol*. 2010;26:e65.
484. Diller GP, et al. *Circulation*. 2005;112:828.
485. Cannesson M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:432.
486. Stayer SA, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2003;21:653.
487. Broberg CS, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2011;107:1215.
488. Roger VL, et al. *Circulation*. 2012;225:e2.
489. Lakshminarayan K, et al. *Stroke*. 2006;37:1969.
490. Cox JL, et al. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;12(15).
491. Gillinov AM, Wolf RK. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 2005;48:169.
492. Prasad SM, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;126:1822.
493. Arcidi Jr JM, et al. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;12:38.
494. McCarthy PM, et al. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;12:25.
495. Schaff HV, et al. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;12:30.
496. Cox JL. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2004;31:257.
497. Roy CL, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;297:1810.
498. Shabetai R. *Heart*. 2004;90(255).
499. Kussmaul A. *Berl Klin Wochenschr*. 1873;10(433).
500. Maisch B, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2004;25:587.
501. Spodick DH. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:684.
502. Pepi M, Muratori M. *J Cardiovasc Med (Hagerstown)*. 2006;7:533.
503. Soler-Soler J, et al. *Heart*. 2001;86:235.
504. Longo SR, Campbell DB. Management of cardiothoracic surgical emergencies. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008:474.
505. De Jong A, Jaber S. *Critical Care*. 2014;18:560.
506. Aye T, Milne B. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:283.
507. Nishimura RA. *Heart*. 2001;86:619.
508. Osterberg L, et al. *West J Med*. 1998;169:232.
509. Little WC, Freeman GL. *Circulation*. 2006;113:1622.
510. Asher CR, Klein AL. *Cardiol Rev*. 2002;10:218.
511. Imazio M. *Curr Opin Cardiol*. 2012;27:308.
512. Parasramka SV, et al. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2008;9:563.
513. Degiannis E, et al. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 2005;87:61.
514. Lin PH, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2006;43(suppl A):22A.
515. Jamieson WR, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2002;183:571.
516. Nzewi O, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2006;31:18.
517. Cinnella G, et al. *J Trauma*. 2004;57:1246.
518. Kahn RA, Moskowitz DM. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2002;16:218.
519. Svensson LG, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85(S1).
520. Akowuah E, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2009;138:768.
521. Joe RR, Chen LQ. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2003;21:639.
522. Bashore TM, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;59:2221.
523. Bracey AW, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2006;98:25N.
524. Hata M, et al. *Ann Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2006;12(28).
525. Reddy K, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61:1175.

References

1. Roger VL, Go AS, Lloyd-Jones DM, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics-2012 update: a report from the AHA. *Circulation*. 2012;125:e2–e220.
2. Capewell S, Lloyd-Jones DM. Optimal cardiovascular prevention strategies for the 21st century. *JAMA*. 2010;304:2057–2058.
3. Alan SG, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics-2014 update: a report from the AHA. *Circulation*. 2013;129:e28–e292.
4. Kim ES, Menon V. Status of women in cardiovascular clinical trials. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol*. 2009;29:279–283.
5. Wechsler AS. The gender initiative. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;126:617.
6. Edwards FH, Ferraris VA, Shahian DM, et al. Gender-specific practice guidelines for coronary artery bypass surgery: perioperative management. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;79:2189–2194.
7. Blankstein R, Ward RP, Arnsdorf M, et al. Female gender is an independent predictor of operative mortality after coronary artery bypass graft surgery: contemporary analysis of 31 Midwestern hospitals. *Circulation*. 2005;112:I323–327.
8. Guru V, Fremes SE, Tu JV. Time-related mortality for women after coronary artery bypass graft surgery: a population-based study. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:1158–1165.
9. Konety SH, Vaughan Sarrazin MS, Rosenthal GE. Patient and hospital differences underlying racial variation in outcomes after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Circulation*. 2005;111:1210–1216.
10. Werner RM, Asch DA, Polsky D. Racial profiling: the unintended consequences of coronary artery bypass graft report cards. *Circulation*. 2005;111:1257–1263.
11. Podgoreanu MV, Schwinn DA. New paradigms in cardiovascular medicine: emerging technologies and practices. Perioperative genomics. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2005;46:1965–1977.
12. Podgoreanu MV, White WD, Morris RW, et al. Inflammatory gene polymorphisms and risk of postoperative myocardial infarction after cardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 2006;114:I275–281.
13. Perry TE, Muehlschlegel JD, Liu KY, et al. Preoperative C-reactive protein predicts long-term mortality and hospital length of stay after primary, nonemergent coronary artery bypass grafting. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:607–613.
14. Perry TE, Muehlschlegel JD, Liu KY, et al. C-reactive protein gene variants are associated with postoperative C-reactive protein levels after coronary artery bypass surgery. *BMC Med Genet*. 2009;10(38).
15. Rinder CS, Mathew JP, Rinder HM, et al. Platelet PlA2 polymorphism and platelet activation are associated with increased troponin I release after cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:1118–1122.
16. Grocott HP, White WD, Morris RW, et al. Genetic polymorphisms and the risk of stroke after cardiac surgery. *Stroke*. 2005;36:1854–1858.
17. Mathew JP, Podgoreanu MV, Grocott HP, et al. Genetic variants in P-selectin and C-reactive protein influence susceptibility to cognitive decline after cardiac surgery. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;49:1934–1942.
18. Yende S, Quasney MW, Tolley EA, et al. Clinical relevance of angiotensin-converting enzyme gene polymorphisms to predict risk of mechanical ventilation after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:922–927.
19. London MJ, Hollenberg M, Wong MG, et al. Intraoperative myocardial ischemia: localization by continuous 12-lead electrocardiography. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:232–241.
20. Landesberg G, Mosseri M, Wolf Y, et al. Perioperative myocardial ischemia and infarction: identification by continuous 12-lead electrocardiogram with online ST-segment monitoring. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:264–270.
21. Fleisher LA. Real-time intraoperative monitoring of myocardial ischemia in noncardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1183–1188.
22. Reich DL, Mittnacht AJ, Manecke Jr GR, et al. Monitoring of the heart and vascular system. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:416–441.
23. Carmona MJ, Barboza Junior LC, Buscatti RY, et al. Evaluation of the aorta-to-radial artery pressure gradient in patients undergoing surgery with cardiopulmonary bypass. *Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2007;57:618–629. [in Portuguese].
24. Schwann NM, Hillel Z, Hoeft A, et al. Lack of effectiveness of the pulmonary artery catheter in cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:994–1002.
25. Hind D, Calvert N, McWilliams R, et al. Ultrasonic locating devices for central venous cannulation: meta-analysis. *BMJ*. 2003;327:361.
26. London MJ, Moritz TE, Henderson WG, et al. Standard versus fiberoptic pulmonary artery catheterization for cardiac surgery in the Department of Veterans Affairs: a prospective, observational, multicenter analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:860–870.
27. Iberti TJ, Fischer EP, Leibowitz AB, et al. A multicenter study of physicians' knowledge of the pulmonary artery catheter: Pulmonary Artery Catheter Study Group. *JAMA*. 1990;264:2928–2932.
28. Connors Jr AF, Speroff T, Dawson NV, et al. The effectiveness of right heart catheterization in the initial care of critically ill patients: SUPPORT Investigators. *JAMA*. 1996;276:889–897.
29. Peters SG, Afessa B, Decker PA, et al. Increased risk associated with pulmonary artery catheterization in the medical intensive care unit. *J Crit Care*. 2003;18:166–171.
30. ElBardissi AW, Aranki SF, Sheng S, et al. Trends in isolated coronary artery bypass grafting: an analysis of the Society of Thoracic Surgeons adult cardiac surgery database. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;143:273–281.
31. van Harten AE, Scheeren TW, Absalom AR. A review of postoperative cognitive dysfunction and neuroinflammation associated with cardiac surgery and anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:280–293.
32. Rudolph JL, Schreiber KA, Culley DJ, et al. Measurement of postoperative cognitive dysfunction after cardiac surgery: a systematic review. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54:663–677.
33. Sweet JJ, Finnin E, Wolfe PL, et al. Absence of cognitive decline one year after coronary bypass surgery: comparison to nonsurgical and healthy controls. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85:1571–1578.
34. Währborg P, Booth JE, Clayton T, et al. Neuropsychological outcome after percutaneous coronary intervention or coronary artery bypass grafting: results from the Stent or Surgery (SoS) Trial. *Circulation*. 2004;110:3411–3417.
35. Murkin JM. Central nervous system dysfunction after cardiopulmonary bypass. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:1061–1085.
36. Abu-Omar Y, Balacumaraswami L, Pigott DW, et al. Solid and gaseous cerebral microembolization during off-pump, on-pump, and open cardiac surgery procedures. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:1759–1765.
37. Hindman BJ. Emboli, inflammation, and CNS impairment: an overview. *Heart Surg Forum*. 2002;5:249–253.
38. Ridderstolpe L, Ahlgren E, Gill H, et al. Risk factor analysis of early and delayed cerebral complications after cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2002;16:278–285.
39. Murkin JM. Attenuation of neurologic injury during cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2001;72:S1838–1844.
40. Djaiani G, Fedorko L, Borger M, et al. Mild to moderate atheromatous disease of the thoracic aorta and new ischemic brain lesions after conventional coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Stroke*. 2004;35. e356–358.
41. Hartman GS, Yao FS, Bruefach III M, et al. Severity of aortic atheromatous disease diagnosed by transesophageal echocardiography predicts stroke and other outcomes associated with coronary artery surgery: a prospective study. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:701–708.
42. Gold JP, Torres KE, Maldarelli W, et al. Improving outcomes in coronary surgery: the impact of echo-directed aortic cannulation and perioperative hemodynamic management in 500 patients. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:1579–1585.
43. Emmert MY, Seifert B, Wilhelm M, et al. Aortic no-touch technique makes the difference in off-pump coronary artery bypass grafting. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2011;142:1499–1506.
44. Wilson MJ, Boyd SY, Lisagor PG, et al. Ascending aortic atheroma assessed intraoperatively by epiaortic and transesophageal echocardiography. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;70:25–30.
45. Grocott HP. Monitoring the brain in cardiac surgery: an evolving area for research. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:216–219.
46. Murkin JM, Arango M. Near-infrared spectroscopy as an index of brain and tissue oxygenation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(suppl 1):i3–i13.
47. Yao FS, Tseng CC, Ho CY, et al. Cerebral oxygen desaturation is associated with early postoperative neuropsychological dysfunction in patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:552–558.

48. Goldman S, Sutter F, Ferdinand F, et al. Optimizing intraoperative cerebral oxygen delivery using noninvasive cerebral oximetry decreases the incidence of stroke for cardiac surgical patients. *Heart Surg Forum*. 2004;7:E376–E381.
49. Fischer GW, Lin HM, Krol M, et al. Noninvasive cerebral oxygenation may predict outcome in patients undergoing aortic arch surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2011;141:815–821.
50. Murkin JM, Adams SJ, Novick RJ, et al. Monitoring brain oxygen saturation during coronary bypass surgery: a randomized, prospective study. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:51–58.
51. Slater JP, Guarino T, Stack J, et al. Cerebral oxygen desaturation predicts cognitive decline and longer hospital stay after cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;87:36–44. discussion 44-45.
52. Denault A, Deschamps A, Murkin JM. A proposed algorithm for the intraoperative use of cerebral near-infrared spectroscopy. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;11:274–281.
53. Heringlake M, Garbers C, Kabler JH, et al. Preoperative cerebral oxygen saturation and clinical outcomes in cardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:58–69.
54. Murkin JM. Cerebral oximetry: monitoring the brain as the index organ. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:12–13.
55. Joshi B, Ono M, Brown C, et al. Predicting the limits of cerebral autoregulation during cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:503–510.
56. van Dijk D, Kalkman CJ. Why are cerebral microemboli not associated with cognitive decline? *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1006–1008.
57. Liu YH, Wang DX, Li LH, et al. The effects of cardiopulmonary bypass on the number of cerebral microemboli and the incidence of cognitive dysfunction after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1013–1022.
58. Kertai MD, Whitlock EL, Avidan MS. Brain monitoring with electroencephalography and the electroencephalogram-derived bispectral index during cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:533–546.
59. Bellomo R, Kellum JA, Ronco C. Acute kidney injury. *Lancet*. 2012;380:756–766.
60. Bellomo R, Auriemma S, Fabbri A, et al. The pathophysiology of cardiac surgery-associated acute kidney injury (CSA-AKI). *Int J Artif Organs*. 2008;31:166–178.
61. Schetz M, Bove T, Morelli A, et al. Prevention of cardiac surgery–associated acute kidney injury. *Int J Artif Organs*. 2008;31:179–189.
62. Rassias AJ. Intraoperative management of hyperglycemia in the cardiac surgical patient. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2006;18:330–338.
63. Reves JG, et al. Neuronal and adrenomedullary catecholamine release in response to cardiopulmonary bypass in man. *Circulation*. 1982;66(No. 1).
64. Wade AO, Cordingley JJ. Glycaemic control in critically ill patients with cardiovascular disease. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2006;12:437–443.
65. Lazar HL. How important is glycemic control during coronary artery bypass? *Adv Surg*. 2012;46:219–235.
66. Streeter NB. Considerations in prevention of surgical site infections following cardiac surgery: when your patient is diabetic. *J Cardiovasc Nurs*. 2006;21:E14–20.
67. McDonnell ME, Alexanian SM, White L, et al. A primer for achieving glycemic control in the cardiac surgical patient. *J Card Surg*. 2012;27:470–477.
68. Gandhi GY, Nuttall GA, Abel MD, et al. Intensive intraoperative insulin therapy versus conventional glucose management during cardiac surgery: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 2007;146:233–243.
69. Lazar HL, McDonnell M, Chipkin SR, et al. The Society of Thoracic Surgeons practice guideline series: blood glucose management during adult cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;87:663–669.
70. Klein I, Ojamaa K. Thyroid hormone and the cardiovascular system. *N Engl J Med*. 2001Vol. 344(No. 7).
71. Iervasi G, et al. Low T4 syndrome: a strong prognostic predictor of death in patients with heart disease. *Circulation*. 2003;107:708–713.
72. Cerillo AG, et al. The low triiodothyronine syndrome: a strong predictor of low cardiac output and death in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2014;97:2089–2096.
73. Eagle KA, et al. ACC/AHA 2004 guideline update for coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Circulation*. 2004;110(14):e340–437.
74. Zindrou D, et al. Excess coronary artery bypass graft mortality among women with hypothyroidism. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;74:2121–2125.
75. Edwards FH, et al. Gender specific practice guidelines for coronary artery bypass surgery: perioperative management. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;79:2189–2194.
76. Society of Thoracic Surgeons Blood Conservation Guideline Task F, Ferraris VA, Brown JR, Despotis GJ, et al. 2011 update to the Society of Thoracic Surgeons and the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists blood conservation clinical practice guidelines. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2011;91(3):944–982.
77. Engoren MC, Habib RH, Zacharias A, Schwann TA, Riordan CJ, Durham SJ. Effect of blood transfusion on long-term survival after cardiac operation. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;74(4):1180–1186.
78. Koch CG, Li L, Sessler DI, et al. Duration of red-cell storage and complications after cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(12):1229–1239.
79. Young G, Yonekawa KE, Nakagawa PA, Blain RC, Lovejoy AE, Nugent DJ. Differential effects of direct thrombin inhibitors and antithrombin-dependent anticoagulants on the dynamics of clot formation. *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis*. 2007;18(2):97–103.
80. Hirsh J, Anand SS, Halperin JL, Fuster V, American Heart A. Guide to anticoagulant therapy: Heparin: a statement for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2001;103(24):2994–3018.
81. Shore-Lesserson L, Baker RA, Ferraris VA, et al. The Society of Thoracic Surgeons, The Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, and The American Society of ExtraCorporeal Technology: Clinical Practice Guidelines-Anticoagulation During Cardiopulmonary Bypass. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2018;105(2):650–662.
82. Bull BS, Korpman RA, Huse WM, Briggs BD. Heparin therapy during extracorporeal circulation. I. Problems inherent in existing heparin protocols. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1975;69(5):674–684.
83. Young JA, Kisker CT, Doty DB. Adequate anticoagulation during cardiopulmonary bypass determined by activated clotting time and the appearance of fibrin monomer. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1978;26(3):231–240.
84. Doty DB, Knott HW, Hoyt JL, Koepke JA. Heparin dose for accurate anticoagulation in cardiac surgery. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 1979;20(6):597–604.
85. Shore-Lesserson L. Evidence based coagulation monitors: heparin monitoring, thromboelastography, and platelet function. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2005;9(1):41–52.
86. Guzzetta NA, Monitz HG, Fernandez JD, Fazlollah TM, Knezevic A, Miller BE. Correlations between activated clotting time values and heparin concentration measurements in young infants undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):173–179.
87. Despotis GJ, Joist JH, Hogue Jr CW, et al. More effective suppression of hemostatic system activation in patients undergoing cardiac surgery by heparin dosing based on heparin blood concentrations rather than ACT. *Thromb Haemost*. 1996;76(6):902–908.
88. Gravlee GP, Haddon WS, Rothberger HK, et al. Heparin dosing and monitoring for cardiopulmonary bypass. A comparison of techniques with measurement of subclinical plasma coagulation. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1990;99(3):518–527.
89. Shore-Lesserson L, Manspeizer HE, Bolastig M, Harrington D, Vela-Cantos F, DePerio M. Anticoagulation for cardiac surgery in patients receiving preoperative heparin: use of the high-dose thrombin time. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(4):813–818.
90. Bull BS, Huse WM, Brauer FS, Korpman RA. Heparin therapy during extracorporeal circulation. II. The use of a dose-response curve to individualize heparin and protamine dosage. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1975;69(5):685–689.
91. Guo Y, Tang J, Du L, et al. Protamine dosage based on two titrations reduces blood loss after valve replacement surgery: a prospective, double-blinded, randomized study. *Can J Cardiol*. 2012;28(5):547–552.
92. Edmunds Jr LH, Colman RW. Thrombin during cardiopulmonary bypass. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82(6):2315–2322.
93. Boyle Jr EM, Verrier ED, Spiess BD. Endothelial cell injury in cardiovascular surgery: the procoagulant response. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1996;62(5):1549–1557.
94. Levy JH. Heparin resistance and antithrombin: should it still be called heparin resistance? *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18(2):129–130.
95. Ranucci M, Isgro G, Cazzaniga A, et al. Different patterns of heparin resistance: therapeutic implications. *Perfusion*. 2002;17(3):199–204.

96. Linden MD, Schneider M, Baker S, Erber WN. Decreased concentration of antithrombin after preoperative therapeutic heparin does not cause heparin resistance during cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18(2):131–135.
97. Ranucci M, Frigiola A, Menicanti L, Ditta A, Boncilli A, Brozzi S. Postoperative antithrombin levels and outcome in cardiac operations. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(2):355–360.
98. Garvin S, Muehlschlegel JD, Perry TE, et al. Postoperative activity, but not preoperative activity, of antithrombin is associated with major adverse cardiac events after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(4):862–869.
99. Avidan MS, Levy JH, van Aken H, et al. Recombinant human antithrombin III restores heparin responsiveness and decreases activation of coagulation in heparin-resistant patients during cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2005;130(1):107–113.
100. Dietrich W, Braun S, Spannagl M, Richter JA. Low preoperative antithrombin activity causes reduced response to heparin in adult but not in infant cardiac-surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(1):66–71.
101. Garvin S, Fitzgerald D, Muehlschlegel JD, et al. Heparin dose response is independent of preoperative antithrombin activity in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery using low heparin concentrations. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(4):856–861.
102. Avidan MS, Levy JH, Scholz J, et al. A phase III, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicenter study on the efficacy of recombinant human antithrombin in heparin-resistant patients scheduled to undergo cardiac surgery necessitating cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(2):276–284.
103. Teoh KH, Young E, Blackall MH, Roberts RS, Hirsh J. Can extra protamine eliminate heparin rebound following cardiopulmonary bypass surgery? *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;128(2):211–219.
104. Warkentin TE, Chong BH, Greinacher A. Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: towards consensus. *Thromb Haemost*. 1998;79(1):1–7.
105. Warkentin TE, Greinacher A, Koster A, Lincoff AM. Treatment and prevention of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines (8th Edition). *Chest*. 2008;133(suppl 6). 340S–80S.
106. Everett BM, Yeh R, Foo SY, et al. Prevalence of heparin/platelet factor 4 antibodies before and after cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(2):592–597.
107. Warkentin TE. Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: pathogenesis and management. *Br J Haematol*. 2003;121(4):535–555.
108. Kress DC, Aronson S, McDonald ML, et al. Positive heparin-platelet factor 4 antibody complex and cardiac surgical outcomes. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(5):1737–1743.
109. Lewis BE, Wallis DE, Berkowitz SD, et al. Argatroban anticoagulant therapy in patients with heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. *Circulation*. 2001;103(14):1838–1843.
110. Koster A, Dyke CM, Aldea G, et al. Bivalirudin during cardiopulmonary bypass in patients with previous or acute heparin-induced thrombocytopenia and heparin antibodies: results of the CHOOSE-ON trial. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(2):572–577.
111. Koster A, Huebler S, Potapov E, et al. Impact of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia on outcome in patients with ventricular assist device support: single-institution experience in 358 consecutive patients. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(1):72–76.
112. Koster A, Weng Y, Bottcher W, Gromann T, Kuppe H, Hetzer R. Successful use of bivalirudin as anticoagulant for ECMO in a patient with acute HIT. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(5):1865–1867.
113. Welsby IJ, Newman MF, Phillips-Bute B, Messier RH, Kakkis ED, Stafford-Smith M. Hemodynamic changes after protamine administration: association with mortality after coronary artery bypass surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(2):308–314.
114. Kimmel SE, Sekeres M, Berlin JA, Ellison N. Mortality and adverse events after protamine administration in patients undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(6):1402–1408. table of contents.
115. Kimmel SE, Sekeres MA, Berlin JA, Ellison N, DiSesa VJ, Strom BL. Risk factors for clinically important adverse events after protamine administration following cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1998;32(7):1916–1922.
116. Comunale ME, Maslow A, Robertson LK, Haering JM, Mashikian JS, Lowenstein E. Effect of site of venous protamine administration, previously alleged risk factors, and preoperative use of aspirin on acute protamine-induced pulmonary vasoconstriction. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2003;17(3):309–313.
117. Brown JR, Birkmeyer NJ, O'Connor GT. Aprotinin in cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354(18):1953–1957. author reply -7.
118. Henry D, Carless P, Fergusson D, Laupacis A. The safety of aprotinin and lysine-derived antifibrinolytic drugs in cardiac surgery: a meta-analysis. *CMAJ*. 2009;180(2):183–193.
119. Mangano DT, Tudor IC, Dietzel C, Multicenter Study of Perioperative Ischemia Research G, Ischemia R, Education F. The risk associated with aprotinin in cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354(4):353–365.
120. Fergusson DA, Hebert PC, Mazer CD, Fremes S, MacAdams C, Murkin JM, et al. A comparison of aprotinin and lysine analogues in high-risk cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(22):2319–2331.
121. Donahue BS. Factor V Leiden and perioperative risk. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(6):1623–1634. table of contents.
122. Donahue BS. The response to activated protein C after cardiopulmonary bypass: impact of factor V leiden. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(6):1598–1603. table of contents.
123. Donahue BS, Gailani D, Higgins MS, Drinkwater DC, George Jr AL. Factor V Leiden protects against blood loss and transfusion after cardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 2003;107(7):1003–1008.
124. Donahue BS. Thrombosis after deep hypothermic circulatory arrest with antifibrinolytic therapy: is factor V leiden the smoking gun?. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(3):760–761. author reply 1.
125. Levine GN, Bates ER, Blankenship JC, et al. 2011 ACCF/AHA/SCAI Guideline for Percutaneous Coronary Intervention: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines and the Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions. *Circulation*. 2011;124(23):e574–651.
126. Levine GN, Bates ER, Bittl JA, 2016 ACC/AHA Guideline Focused Update on Duration of Dual Antiplatelet Therapy in Patients With Coronary Artery Disease: A Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines, et al. An Update of the 2011 ACCF/AHA/SCAI Guideline for Percutaneous Coronary Intervention, 2011 ACCF/AHA Guideline for Coronary Artery Bypass Graft Surgery, 2012 ACC/AHA/ACP/AATS/PCNA/SCAI/STS Guideline for the Diagnosis and Management of Patients With Stable Ischemic Heart Disease, 2013 ACCF/AHA Guideline for the Management of ST-Elevation Myocardial Infarction, 2014 AHA/ACC Guideline for the Management of Patients With Non-ST-Elevation Acute Coronary Syndromes, and 2014 ACC/AHA Guideline on Perioperative Cardiovascular Evaluation and Management of Patients Undergoing Noncardiac Surgery. *Circulation*. 2016;134(10):e123–e155.
127. Ferraris VA, Saha SP, Oestreich JH, et al. 2012 update to the Society of Thoracic Surgeons guideline on use of antiplatelet drugs in patients having cardiac and noncardiac operations. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94(5):1761–1781.
128. Berger JS, Frye CB, Harshaw Q, Edwards FH, Steinhubl SR, Becker RC. Impact of clopidogrel in patients with acute coronary syndromes requiring coronary artery bypass surgery: a multicenter analysis. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008;52(21):1693–1701.
129. Berger PB, Kirchner HL, Wagner ES, et al. Does preoperative platelet function predict bleeding in patients undergoing off pump coronary artery bypass surgery? *J Interv Cardiol*. 2015;28(3):223–232.
130. Maltais S, Perrault LP, Do QB. Effect of clopidogrel on bleeding and transfusions after off-pump coronary artery bypass graft surgery: impact of discontinuation prior to surgery. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2008;34(1):127–131.
131. Singh M, Nuttall GA, Ballman KV, et al. Effect of abciximab on the outcome of emergency coronary artery bypass grafting after failed percutaneous coronary intervention. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2001;76(8):784–788.
132. Lincoff AM, LeNarz LA, Despotis GJ, et al. Abciximab and bleeding during coronary surgery: results from the EPILOG and EPISTENT trials. Improve Long-term Outcome with abciximab GP IIb/IIIa blockade. Evaluation of Platelet IIb/IIIa Inhibition in STENTing. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;70(2):516–526.
133. Brown DL, Fann CS, Chang CJ. Meta-analysis of effectiveness and safety of abciximab versus eptifibatide or tirofiban in percutaneous coronary intervention. *Am J Cardiol*. 2001;87(5):537–541.
134. McDonald SB, Renna M, Spitznagel EL, et al. Preoperative use of enoxaparin increases the risk of postoperative bleeding and re-exploration in cardiac surgery patients. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2005;19(1):4–10.

135. Bar-Yosef S, Cozart HB, Phillips-Bute B, Mathew JP, Grocott HP. Preoperative low molecular weight heparin reduces heparin responsiveness during cardiac surgery. *Can J Anaesth*. 2007;54(2):107–113.
136. Ruff CT, Giugliano RP, Braunwald E, et al. Comparison of the efficacy and safety of new oral anticoagulants with warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation: a meta-analysis of randomised trials. *Lancet*. 2014;383(9921):955–962.
137. Douxfils J, Mullier F, Robert S, Chatelain C, Chatelain B, Dogne JM. Impact of dabigatran on a large panel of routine or specific coagulation assays. Laboratory recommendations for monitoring of dabigatran etexilate. *Thromb Haemost*. 2012;107(5):985–997.
138. Douxfils J, Tamigniau A, Chatelain B, Goffinet C, Dogne JM, Mullier F. Measurement of non-VKA oral anticoagulants versus classic ones: the appropriate use of hemostasis assays. *Thromb J*. 2014;12:24.
139. Sun JZ, Cao LH, Liu H. ACE inhibitors in cardiac surgery: current studies and controversies. *Hypertens Res*. 2011;34:15–22.
140. Mangano DT. Aspirin and mortality from coronary bypass surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:1309–1317.
141. Gremmel T, Steiner S, Seidinger D, et al. Comparison of methods to evaluate clopidogrel-mediated platelet inhibition after percutaneous intervention with stent implantation. *Thromb Haemost*. 2009;101:333–339.
142. Breet NJ, van Werkum JW, Bouman HJ, et al. Comparison of platelet function tests in predicting clinical outcome in patients undergoing coronary stent implantation. *JAMA*. 2010;303:754–762.
143. Bonello L, Camoin-Jau L, Arques S, et al. Adjusted clopidogrel loading doses according to vasodilator-stimulated phosphoprotein phosphorylation index decrease rate of major adverse cardiovascular events in patients with clopidogrel resistance: a multicenter randomized prospective study. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008;51:1404–1411.
144. Puskas F, Howie MB, Gravlee GP. Induction of anesthesia. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:179–191.
145. Engelman R, Shahian D, Shemin R, et al. The Society of Thoracic Surgeons practice guideline series: antibiotic prophylaxis in cardiac surgery. Part II. Antibiotic choice. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:1569–1576.
146. Raphael J. Physiology and pharmacology of myocardial preconditioning. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2010;14:54–59.
147. Licker M, Diaper J, Cartier V, et al. Clinical review: management of weaning from cardiopulmonary bypass after cardiac surgery. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2012;15:206–223.
148. ElBardissi AW, Wiegmann DA, Henrickson S, et al. Identifying methods to improve heart surgery: an operative approach and strategy for implementation on an organizational level. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2008;34:1027–1033.
149. Morris BN, Romanoff ME, Royster RI. The post cardiopulmonary bypass period: weaning to ICS transport. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:238–264.
150. Nagpal K, Arora S, Abboudi M, et al. Postoperative handover: problems, pitfalls, and prevention of error. *Ann Surg*. 2010;252:171–176.
151. Nagpal K, Abboudi M, Fischler L, et al. Evaluation of postoperative handover using a tool to assess information transfer and teamwork. *Ann Surg*. 2011;253:831–837.
152. Kitch BT, Cooper JB, Zapol WM, et al. Handoffs causing patient harm: a survey of medical and surgical house staff. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2008;34:563–570.
153. Joy BF, Elliott E, Hardy C, et al. Standardized multidisciplinary protocol improves handover of cardiac surgery patients to the intensive care unit. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2011;12:304–308.
154. Petrovic MA, Aboumatar H, Baumgartner WA, et al. Pilot implementation of a perioperative protocol to guide operating room-to-intensive care unit patient handoffs. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:11–16.
155. Catchpole KR, de Leval MR, McEwan A, et al. Patient handover from surgery to intensive care: using Formula 1 pit-stop and aviation models to improve safety and quality. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17:470–478.
156. Myles PS, Leslie K, McNeil J, et al. Bispectral index monitoring to prevent awareness during anaesthesia: the B-Aware randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2004;363:1757.
157. Avidan MS, Zhang L, Burnside BA, et al. Anesthesia awareness and the bispectral index. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:1097–1108.
158. Dahaba AA. Different conditions that could result in the bispectral index indicating an incorrect hypnotic state. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:765–773.
159. Levy JH, Ramsay JG, Tanaka K, et al. Postoperative cardiovascular management. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:1025–1045.
160. Bernard F, Denault A, Babin D, et al. Diastolic dysfunction is predictive of difficult weaning from cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:291–298.
161. Gillies M, Bellomo R, Doolan L, et al. Bench-to-bedside review: inotropic drug therapy after adult cardiac surgery—a systematic literature review. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:266–279.
162. Hollenberg SM. Vasoactive drugs in circulatory shock. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2011;183:847–855.
163. Maharaj R, Metaxa V. Levosimendan and mortality after coronary revascularisation: a meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *Crit Care*. 2011;15:R140.
164. Toller WG, Stranz C. Levosimendan, a new inotropic and vasodilator agent. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:556–569.
165. Landoni G, Lomivorotov VV, Alvaro G, et al. Levosimendan for hemodynamic support after cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:2021–2031.
166. Desai AS, Jarcho JA. Levosimendan for the low cardiac output syndrome after cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:2076–2078.
167. Haddad F, et al. Pearls and pitfall in managing right heart failure in cardiac surgery. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2016;29:68–79.
168. Kaplan JA, et al. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. ; 2011.
169. Al-Sarraf N, Thalib L, Hughes A, et al. Effect of preoperative atrial fibrillation on postoperative outcome following cardiac surgery. *Cardiol Res Pract*. 2012;2012:272–384.
170. Mathew JP, Fontes ML, Tudor IC, et al. A multicenter risk index for atrial fibrillation after cardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2004;291:1720–1729.
171. Davis EM, Packard KA, Hilleman DE. Pharmacologic prophylaxis of postoperative atrial fibrillation in patients undergoing cardiac surgery: beyond beta-blockers. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2010;30(7):274e–318e. 749.
172. Kinoshita T, et al. Preoperative hemoglobin A1c predicts atrial fibrillation after off-pump coronary bypass surgery. *European journal of cardiothoracic surgery*. 2012;41:102–107.
173. Giaccardi M, et al. Postacute rehabilitation after coronary surgery: the effect of preoperative physical activity on the incidence of paroxysmal atrial fibrillation. *Am j Phys Med Rehabil*. 2011;90(4):308–315.
174. Rader F, et al. Influence of race on atrial fibrillation after cardiac surgery. *Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol*. 2011;4:644–652.
175. Hill LL, Kattapuram M, Hogue Jr CW. Management of atrial fibrillation after cardiac surgery. Part I. Pathophysiology and risks. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2002;16:483–494.
176. European Heart Rhythm Association, European Association for Cardio-Thoracic Surgery, Camm AJ, et al. Guidelines for the management of atrial fibrillation: the Task Force for the Management of Atrial Fibrillation of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). *Eur Heart J*. 2010;31:2369–2429.
177. Hogue Jr CW, Creswell LL, Gutterman DD, et al. Epidemiology, mechanisms, and risks: American College of Chest Physicians guidelines for the prevention and management of postoperative atrial fibrillation after cardiac surgery. *Chest*. 2005;128:9S–16S.
178. Chung MK. Cardiac surgery: Postoperative arrhythmias. *Crit care Med*. 2000Vol. 28(No. 10 Suppl.).
179. Atlee JL, Bernstein AD. Cardiac rhythm management devices. Part I. Indications, device selection, and function. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1265–1280.
180. Vuylsteke A, Feneck RO, Jolin-Mellgard A, et al. Perioperative blood pressure control: a prospective survey of patient management in cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2000;14:269–273.
181. Levy JH. Management of systemic and pulmonary hypertension. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2005;32:467–471.
182. Cogliati AA, Vellutini R, Nardini A, et al. Fenoldopam infusion for renal protection in high-risk cardiac surgery patients: a randomized clinical study. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;21:847–850.

183. Bove T, et al. The incidence and risk of acute renal failure after cardiac surgery. *J of Cardiothroracic and vascular anesthesia*. 2004Vol. 18(No 4):442–445.
184. Sears JW. Kidney dysfunction in the postoperative period. *Br. J Anaesth*. 2005;95:20–32.
185. Kuitunen A, et al. Acute renal failure after cardiac surgery: Evaluation of the RIFLE classification. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81:542–546.
186. Ejaz AA, et al. Effects of serum uric acid on estimated GFR in cardiac surgery patients: A pilot study. *Am J Nephrol*. 2015;42(6):402–409.
187. Mehta RL, et al. Diuretics, mortality, and nonrecovery of renal function in acute renal failure. *JAMA*. 2002Vol. 288(No. 20).
188. Kellum JA, et al. Continuous versus intermittent renal replacement therapy: a meta-analysis. *Intensive care med*. 2002;28:29–37.
189. Alexander KP, Anstrom KJ, Muhlbaier LH, et al. Outcomes of cardiac surgery in patients ≥80 years: results from the National Cardiovascular Network. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2000;35:731–738.
190. Bucerius J, Gummert JF, Borger MA, et al. Stroke after cardiac surgery: a risk factor analysis of 16,184 consecutive adult patients. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;75:472–478.
191. Kaplan JA et al.: *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era,* ed 6th ed.m p 1070
192. Tarakji KG, Sabik 3rd JF, Bhudia SK, et al. Temporal onset, risk factors, and outcomes associated with stroke after coronary artery bypass grafting. *JAMA*. 2011;305:381–390.
193. Newman MF, Kirchner JL, Phillips-Bute B, et al. Longitudinal assessment of neurocognitive function after coronary-artery bypass surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:395–402.
194. van Harten AE, et al. A review of postoperative cognitive dysfunction and neuroinflammation associated with cardiac surgery and anaesthesia. *Anaesthesa*. 2012;66:280–293.
195. Selnes OA, et al. Cognitive and neurologic outcomes after coronary artery bypass surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366:250–257.
196. Grocott HP. Monitoring the brain in cardiac surgery-an evolving area for research. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:213–225.
197. Gold JP, et al. Improving outcomes in coronary surgery: the impact of echo directed aortic cannulation and perioperative hemodynamic management in 500 patients. *Ann thorac surg*. 2004;78:1579–1585.
198. Wilson MJ, et al. Ascending aortic atheroma assessed intraoperatively by epiaortic and TEE. *Ann Thorac surg*. 2000;70:25–30.
199. Djaiani G, Fedorko L, Borger MA, et al. Continuous-flow cell saver reduces cognitive decline in elderly patients after coronary bypass surgery. *Circulation*. 2007;116:1888–1895.
200. Martens S, Neumann K, Sodemann C, et al. Carbon dioxide field flooding reduces neurologic impairment after open heart surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85:543–547.
201. van Dijk D, Spoor M, Hijman R, et al. Cognitive and cardiac outcomes 5 years after off-pump vs on-pump coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *JAMA*. 2007;297:701–708.
202. Bucerius J, Gummert JF, Walther T, et al. Impact of diabetes mellitus on cardiac surgery outcome. *Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;51:11–16.
203. Krinsley JS, Grover A. Severe hypoglycemia in critically ill patients: risk factors and outcomes. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:2262–2267.
204. Galindo RJ, et al. Perioperative management of hyperglycemia and diabetes in cardiac surgery patients. *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am*. 2018;47:203–222.
205. Gold JP, Charlson ME, Williams-Russo P, et al. Improvement of outcomes after coronary artery bypass: a randomized trial comparing intraoperative high versus low mean arterial pressure. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;110:1302–1311. discussion 1311-1304.
206. Gottesman RF, Sherman PM, Grega MA, et al. Watershed strokes after cardiac surgery: diagnosis, etiology, and outcome. *Stroke*. 2006;37:2306–2311.
207. McKhann GM, Grega MA, Borowicz Jr LM, et al. Stroke and encephalopathy after cardiac surgery: an update. *Stroke*. 2006;37:562–571.
208. Rudolph JL, Marcantonio ER. Postoperative delirium: acute change with long-term implications. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1202–1211.
209. Rudolph JL, Jones RN, Levkoff SE, et al. Derivation and validation of a preoperative prediction rule for delirium after cardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 2009;119:229–236.
210. Higgins TL, et al. Postoperative Respiratory Care. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. ; 2011.
211. Reddy SL, et al. Logistic risk model for prolonged ventilation after adult cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;84:528–536.
212. Kapadohos T, et al. Determinants of prolonged intensive care unit stay in patients after cardiac surgery: a prospective observational study. *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9(1):70–79.
213. Murthy SC, et al. Ventilatory dependency after cardiovascular surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;134:484–490.
214. Prielipp R, et al. Con: Calcium is not routinely indicated during separation from cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Cardiothorac and vas anes*. 1997vol. 11(No 7):908–912.
215.
216. Dehert SG, et al. Effects of calcium on left ventricular function early after cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Cardiothorac and vasc anes*. 1997vol. 11(No 7):864–869.
217. England MR, et al. Magnesium administration and dysrhythmias after cardiac surgery: a placebo controlled, double blind, randomized trial. *JAMA*. 1992Vol. 268(No 17).
218. Lazar HL. How important is glycemic control during coronary artery bypass? *Advances in surgery*. 2012;46:219–235.
219. Gandhi GY, et al. Intensive intraoperative insulin therapy versus conventional glucose management during cardiac surgery. *Ann Intern Med*. 2007;146:233–243.
220. Lazar HL, et al. The Society of Thoracic Surgeons practice guideline series: blood glucose management during adult cardiac surgery. *Ann thorac Surg*. 2009;87:663–669.
221. Tindall MJ et al.: Understanding postoperative temperature drop in cardiac surgery: a mathematical model. Mathematical medicine and biology: a journal of IMA, V 25, Issue 4, December 2008
222. Mueller XM, et al. Pain location, distribution, and intensity after cardiac surgery. *CHEST*. 2000;118:391–396.
223. Gottschalk A, et al. Preventing and treating pain after thoracic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:594–600.
224. Liu SS, et al. Effect of postoperative analgesia on major postoperative complications: a systematic update of the evidence. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:689–702.
225. Bainbridge D et al.: Patient controlled versus nurse controlled analgesia after cardiac surgery – a meta-analysis. Can J Anesth 2006/53:5/pp 492-499
226. Liu SS, et al. Effects of perioperative central neuraxial analgesia on outcome after coronary artery bypass surgery; a meta-analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:153–161.
227. Svircevic V, et al. Thoracic epidural anesthesia for cardiac surgery: a randomized trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:232–233.
228. Olivier JF, et al. A novel approach for pain management in cardiac surgery via median sternotomy: bilateral single shot paravertebral blocks. *Heart Surg Forum*. 2007;10(5):E357–E362.
229. Dowling R, et al. Improved pain control after cardiac surgery: Results of a randomized double blind clinical trial. *J Thorac Cardovasc Surg*. 2003;126:1271–1278.
230. Joshi GP et al.: Cardiovascular thromboembolic adverse effects associated with cyclooxygenase-2 selective inhibitors and nonselective anti-inflammatory drugs. Anesthesia and analgesia 105(6):1793-1804
231. Despotis GJ, Joist JH, Hogue Jr CW, Alsoufiev A, Joiner-Maier D, Santoro SA, et al. More effective suppression of hemostatic system activation in patients undergoing cardiac surgery by heparin dosing based on heparin blood concentrations rather than ACT. *Thromb Haemost*. 1996;76(6):902–908.
232. Mahla E, Prueller F, Farzi S, Pregartner G, Raggam RB, Beran E, et al. Does Platelet Reactivity Predict Bleeding in Patients Needing Urgent Coronary Artery Bypass Grafting During Dual Antiplatelet Therapy? *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2016;102(6):2010–2017.
233. Chen A, Teruya J. Global hemostasis testing thromboelastography: old technology, new applications. *Clin Lab Med*. 2009;29(2):391–407.
234. Nuttall GA, Oliver WC, Santrach PJ, Bryant S, Dearani JA, Schaff HV, et al. Efficacy of a simple intraoperative transfusion algorithm for nonerythrocyte component utilization after cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(5):773–781. discussion 5A-6A.
235. Ak K, Isbir CS, Tetik S, Atalan N, Tekeli A, Aljodi M, et al. Thromboelastography-based transfusion algorithm reduces blood product use after elective CABG: a prospective randomized study. *J Card Surg*. 2009;24(4):404–410.
236. Karkouti K, Callum J, Wijeysundera DN, Rao V, Crowther M, Grocott HP, et al. Point-of-Care Hemostatic Testing in Cardiac Surgery: A Stepped-Wedge Clustered Randomized Controlled Trial. *Circulation*. 2016;134(16):1152–1162.

237. Shore-Lesserson L, Manspeizer HE, DePerio M, Francis S, Vela-Cantos F, Ergin MA. Thromboelastography-guided transfusion algorithm reduces transfusions in complex cardiac surgery. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1999;88(2):312–319.
238. Ott E, Mazer CD, Tudor IC, et al. Coronary artery bypass graft surgery–care globalization: the impact of national care on fatal and nonfatal outcome. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;133:1242–1251.
239. Koch CG, Li L, Duncan AI, et al. Transfusion in coronary artery bypass grafting is associated with reduced long-term survival. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81:1650–1657.
240. Marik PE, Corwin HL. Efficacy of red blood cell transfusion in the critically ill: a systematic review of the literature. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:2667–2674.
241. Ferraris VA, Ferraris SP, Saha SP, et al. Perioperative blood transfusion and blood conservation in cardiac surgery: the Society of Thoracic Surgeons and The Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists clinical practice guideline. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:S27–S86.
242. Loor G, Li L, Sabik 3rd JF, et al. Nadir hematocrit during cardiopulmonary bypass: end-organ dysfunction and mortality. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;144:654–662. e654.
243. Ranucci M, Biagioli B, Scolletta S, et al. Lowest hematocrit on cardiopulmonary bypass impairs the outcome in coronary surgery: an Italian Multicenter Study from the National Cardioanesthesia Database. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2006;33:300–305.
244. Rochon AG, Shore-Lesserson L. Coagulation monitoring. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2006;24:839–856.
245. White MM, Krishnan R, Kueter TJ, et al. The use of the point of care Helena ICHOR/Plateletworks and the Accumetrics Ultegra RPFA for assessment of platelet function with GPIIB-IIIa antagonists. *J Thromb Thrombolysis*. 2004;18:163–169.
246. Agarwal S, Coakley M, Reddy K, et al. Quantifying the effect of antiplatelet therapy: a comparison of the platelet function analyzer (PFA-100) and modified thromboelastography (mTEG) with light transmission platelet aggregometry. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:676–683.
247. Malinin A, Pokov A, Spergling M, et al. Monitoring platelet inhibition after clopidogrel with the VerifyNow-P2Y12(R) rapid analyzer: the VERIfy Thrombosis risk ASsessment (VERITAS) study. *Thromb Res*. 2007;119:277–284.
248. Wheeler GL, Braden GA, Steinhubl SR, et al. The Ultegra rapid platelet-function assay: comparison to standard platelet function assays in patients undergoing percutaneous coronary intervention with abciximab therapy. *Am Heart J*. 2002;143:602–611.
249. Steinhubl SR, Talley JD, Braden GA, et al. Point-of-care measured platelet inhibition correlates with a reduced risk of an adverse cardiac event after percutaneous coronary intervention: results of the GOLD (AU-Assessing Ultegra) multicenter study. *Circulation*. 2001;103:2572–2578.
250. Avidan MS, Alcock EL, Da Fonseca J, et al. Comparison of structured use of routine laboratory tests or near-patient assessment with clinical judgement in the management of bleeding after cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:178–186.
251. Nuttall GA, Oliver WC, Santrach PJ, et al. Efficacy of a simple intraoperative transfusion algorithm for nonerythrocyte component utilization after cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:773–781.
252. Despotis GJ, Grishaber JE, Goodnough LT. The effect of an intraoperative treatment algorithm on physicians' transfusion practice in cardiac surgery. *Transfusion (Paris)*. 1994;34:290–296.
253. Shore-Lesserson L, Manspeizer HE, DePerio M, et al. Thromboelastography-guided transfusion algorithm reduces transfusions in complex cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:312–319.
254. Helm RE, Rosengart TK, Gomez M, et al. Comprehensive multimodality blood conservation: 100 consecutive CABG operations without transfusion. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1998;65:125–136.
255. Spiess BD, Gillies BS, Chandler W, et al. Changes in transfusion therapy and reexploration rate after institution of a blood management program in cardiac surgical patients. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1995;9:168–173.
256. Royston D, von Kier S. Reduced haemostatic factor transfusion using heparinase-modified thrombelastography during cardiopulmonary bypass. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:575–578.
257. Weber CF, Gorlinger K, Meininger D, et al. Point-of-care testing: a prospective, randomized clinical trial of efficacy in coagulopathic cardiac surgery patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:531–547.
258. Ozier Y, Schlumberger S. Pharmacological approaches to reducing blood loss and transfusions in the surgical patient. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53:S21–S29.
259. DelRossi AJ, Cernaianu AC, Botros S, et al. Prophylactic treatment of postperfusion bleeding using EACA. *Chest*. 1989;96:27–30.
260. Horrow JC, Van Riper DF, Strong MD, et al. Hemostatic effects of tranexamic acid and desmopressin during cardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 1991;84:2063–2070.
261. Fiechtner BK, Nuttall GA, Johnson ME, et al. Plasma tranexamic acid concentrations during cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:1131–1136.
262. Butterworth J, James RL, Lin Y, et al. Pharmacokinetics of epsilon-aminocaproic acid in patients undergoing aortocoronary bypass surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1624–1635.
263. Kikura M, Levy JH, Tanaka KA, et al. A double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of epsilon-aminocaproic acid for reducing blood loss in coronary artery bypass grafting surgery. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2006;202:216–222.
264. Horrow JC, Van Riper DF, Strong MD, et al. The dose-response relationship of tranexamic acid. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:383–392.
265. Spiess BD, et al. Transfusion medicine and coagulation disorders. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:949.
266. Mangano DT, Miao Y, Vuylsteke A, et al. Mortality associated with aprotinin during 5 years following coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *JAMA*. 2007;297:471–479.
267. Gill R, Herbertson M, Vuylsteke A, et al. Safety and efficacy of recombinant activated factor VII: a randomized placebo-controlled trial in the setting of bleeding after cardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 2009;120:21–27.
268. Ask A, Holt D, Smith L. In vivo comparison study of FDA-approved surface-modifying additives and poly-2-methoxyethylacrylate circuit surfaces coatings during cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2006;38:27–32.
269. De Somer F, Francois K, van Oeveren W, et al. Phosphorylcholine coating of extracorporeal circuits provides natural protection against blood activation by the material surface. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2000;18:602–606.
270. Nutter BT, Stammers AH, Schmer RG, et al. The rheological effects of X-Coating with albumin and hetastarch on blood during cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2004;36:36–43.
271. Willcox TW, Mitchell SJ, Gorman DF. Venous air in the bypass circuit: a source of arterial line emboli exacerbated by vacuum-assisted drainage. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1999;68:1285–1289.
272. Linneweber J, Chow TW, Kawamura M, et al. In vitro comparison of blood pump induced platelet microaggregates between a centrifugal and roller pump during cardiopulmonary bypass. *Int J Artif Organs*. 2002;25:549–555.
273. Federspiel WJ, Henchir KA. Lung, artificial: basic principles and current applications. In: Wnek GE, Bowlin GL, eds. *Encyclopedia of Biomaterials and Biomedical Engineering*. New York: Marcel Dekker; 2004:910–921.
274. Despotis GJ, Joist JH, Hogue Jr CW, et al. The impact of heparin concentration and activated clotting time monitoring on blood conservation. A prospective, randomized evaluation in patients undergoing cardiac operation. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;110:46–54.
275. Shore-Lesserson L, Baker RA, Ferraris VA, et al. The Society of Thoracic Surgeons, The Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, and The American Society of ExtraCorporeal Technology: Clinical Practice Guidelines-Anticoagulation During Cardiopulmonary Bypass. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2018;105(2):650–662.
276. Williams ML, Sheng S, Gammie JS, et al. Richard E. Clark Award. Aortic dissection as a complication of cardiac surgery: report from the Society of Thoracic Surgeons database. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;90:1812–1816. discussion 1816-1817.
277. Gottlieb EA, Fraser Jr CD, Andropoulos DB, et al. Bilateral monitoring of cerebral oxygen saturation results in recognition of aortic cannula malposition during pediatric congenital heart surgery. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16:787–789.
278. Ing RJ, Lawson DS, Jaggers J, et al. Detection of unintentional partial superior vena cava occlusion during a bidirectional cavopulmonary anastomosis. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:472–474.
279. Tovedal T, Jonsson O, Zemgulis V, et al. Venous obstruction and cerebral perfusion during experimental cardiopulmonary bypass. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2010;11:561–566.

280. Bove T, Calabro MG, Landoni G, et al. The incidence and risk of acute renal failure after cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18:442–445.
281. Oriaku G, Xiang B, Dai G, et al. Effects of retrograde cardioplegia on myocardial perfusion and energy metabolism in immature porcine myocardium. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;119:1102–1109.
282. Tian G, Xiang B, Dai G, et al. Retrograde cardioplegia. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;125:872–880.
283. Guarracino F, De Cosmo D, Penzo D, et al. Automated protamine dose assay in heparin reversal management after cardiopulmonary bypass. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2001;67:165–169.
284. Hindler K, Nussmeier NA. Central nervous system risk assessment. In: Newman M, Fleisher L, Fink M, eds. *Perioperative Medicine: Managing for Outcome*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2008:69–88.
285. Rees K, Beranek-Stanley M, Burke M, et al. Hypothermia to reduce neurological damage following coronary artery bypass surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2001;1:CD002138.
286. Kammersgaard LP, Jorgensen HS, Rungby JA, et al. Admission body temperature predicts long-term mortality after acute stroke: the Copenhagen Stroke Study. *Stroke*. 2002;33:1759–1762.
287. Hogue Jr CW, Palin CA, Arrowsmith JE. Cardiopulmonary bypass management and neurologic outcomes: an evidence-based appraisal of current practices. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:21–37.
288. Nussmeier NA. Management of temperature during and after cardiac surgery. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2005;32:472–476.
289. Akata T, Setoguchi H, Shirozu K, et al. Reliability of temperatures measured at standard monitoring sites as an index of brain temperature during deep hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass conducted for thoracic aortic reconstruction. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;133:1559–1565.
290. Nussmeier NA, Cheng W, Marino M, et al. Temperature during cardiopulmonary bypass: the discrepancies between monitored sites. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:1373–1379.
291. Johnson RI, Fox MA, Grayson A, et al. Should we rely on nasopharyngeal temperature during cardiopulmonary bypass? *Perfusion*. 2002;17:145–151.
292. Engelman R, Baker RA, Likosky DS, et al. The Society of Thoracic Surgeons, The Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, and The American Society of ExtraCorporeal Technology: Clinical Practice Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Bypass--Temperature Management During Cardiopulmonary Bypass. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2015;100(2):748–757.
293. Thong WY, Strickler AG, Li S, et al. Hyperthermia in the forty-eight hours after cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1489–1495.
294. Grocott HP, Mackensen GB, Grigore AM, et al. Postoperative hyperthermia is associated with cognitive dysfunction after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Stroke*. 2002;33:537–541.
295. Rahn H. Body temperature and acid-base regulation. *Pneumonologie*. 1974;151:87–94.
296. Murkin JM, Farrar JK, Tweed WA, et al. Cerebral autoregulation and flow/metabolism coupling during cardiopulmonary bypass: the influence of $Paco_2$. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:825–832.
297. Sakamoto T, Kurosawa H, Shin'oka T, et al. The influence of pH strategy on cerebral and collateral circulation during hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass in cyanotic patients with heart disease: results of a randomized trial and real-time monitoring. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:12–19.
298. Shann KG, Likosky DS, Murkin JM, et al. An evidence-based review of the practice of cardiopulmonary bypass in adults: a focus on neurologic injury, glycemic control, hemodilution, and the inflammatory response. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2006;132:283–290.
299. Groom RC, Froebe S, Martin J, et al. Update on pediatric perfusion practice in North America: 2005 survey. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2005;37:343–350.
300. Schulze C, Conrad N, Schutz A, et al. Reduced expression of systemic proinflammatory cytokines after off-pump versus conventional coronary artery bypass grafting. *Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;48:364–369.
301. Parolari A, Camera M, Alamanni F, et al. Systemic inflammation after on-pump and off-pump coronary bypass surgery: a one-month follow-up. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;84:823–828.
302. Carrier M, Denault A, Lavoie J, et al. Randomized controlled trial of pericardial blood processing with a cell-saving device on neurologic markers in elderly patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:51–55.
303. Searles B. Ultrafiltration techniques and CPB: what we know and what we think we know. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2006;38:64–65.
304. Tallman RD, Dumond M, Brown D. Inflammatory mediator removal by zero-balance ultrafiltration during cardiopulmonary bypass. *Perfusion*. 2002;17:111–115.
305. Ohata T, Mitsuno M, Yamamura M, et al. Minimal cardiopulmonary bypass attenuates neutrophil activation and cytokine release in coronary artery bypass grafting. *J Artif Organs*. 2007;10:92–95.
306. Fromes Y, Gaillard D, Ponzio O, et al. Reduction of the inflammatory response following coronary bypass grafting with total minimal extracorporeal circulation. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2002;22:527–533.
307. Rastan AJ, Eckenstein JI, Hentschel B, et al. Emergency coronary artery bypass graft surgery for acute coronary syndrome: beating heart versus conventional cardioplegic cardiac arrest strategies. *Circulation*. 2006;114:I477–I485.
308. de Vroege R, van Oeveren W, van Klarenbosch J, et al. The impact of heparin-coated cardiopulmonary bypass circuits on pulmonary function and the release of inflammatory mediators. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1586–1594.
309. Deptula J, Glogowski K, Merrigan K, et al. Evaluation of biocompatible cardiopulmonary bypass circuit use during pediatric open heart surgery. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2006;38:22–26.
310. Ikuta T, Fujii H, Shibata T, et al. A new poly-2-methoxyethylacrylate–coated cardiopulmonary bypass circuit possesses superior platelet preservation and inflammatory suppression efficacy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;77:1678–1683.
311. Warren O, Alexiou C, Massey R, et al. The effects of various leukocyte filtration strategies in cardiac surgery. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2007;31:665–676.
312. Cappabianca G, Rotunno C, de Luca Tupputi Schinosa L, et al. Protective effects of steroids in cardiac surgery: a meta-analysis of randomized double-blind trials. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2011;25:156–165.
313. Dieleman JM, van Paassen J, van Dijk D, et al. Prophylactic corticosteroids for cardiopulmonary bypass in adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;5:CD005566.
314. Dieleman JM, Nierich AP, Rosseel PM, et al. Intraoperative high-dose dexamethasone for cardiac surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1761–1767.
315. Morgan C, Zappitelli M, Gill P. Statin prophylaxis and inflammatory mediators following cardiopulmonary bypass: a systematic review. *Crit Care*. 2009;13:R165.
316. Liakopoulos OJ, Kuhn EW, Slottosch I, et al. Preoperative statin therapy for patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;4:CD008493.
317. Dale O, Somogyi AA, Li Y, et al. Does intraoperative ketamine attenuate inflammatory reactivity following surgery? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:934–943.
318. Edmonds Jr HL. Central nervous system monitoring. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6thed 6. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:466–495.
319. Cook RC, Gao M, Macnab AJ, et al. Aortic arch reconstruction: safety of moderate hypothermia and antegrade cerebral perfusion during systemic circulatory arrest. *J Card Surg*. 2006;21:158–164.
320. Duebener LF, Sakamoto T, Hatsuoka S, et al. Effects of hematocrit on cerebral microcirculation and tissue oxygenation during deep hypothermic bypass. *Circulation*. 2001;104:I260–I264.
321. Lee AP, Acker M, Kubo SH, et al. Mechanisms of recurrent functional mitral regurgitation after mitral valve repair in nonischemic dilated cardiomyopathy: importance of distal anterior leaflet tethering. *Circulation*. 2009;119:2606–2614.
322. Immer FF, Moser B, Krahenbuhl ES, et al. Arterial access through the right subclavian artery in surgery of the aortic arch improves neurologic outcome and mid-term quality of life. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85:1614–1618. discussion 1618.
323. Li Z, Yang L, Jackson M, et al. Increased pressure during retrograde cerebral perfusion in an acute porcine model improves brain tissue perfusion without increase in tissue edema. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;73:1514–1521.
324. Gega A, Rizzo JA, Johnson MH, et al. Straight deep hypothermic arrest: experience in 394 patients supports its effectiveness as a sole means of brain preservation. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;84:759–766.
325. Harrington DK, Fragomeni F, Bonser RS. Cerebral perfusion. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:S799–S804. discussion S824-S831.

326. Barnard J, Dunning J, Grossebner M, et al. In aortic arch surgery is there any benefit in using antegrade cerebral perfusion or retrograde cerebral perfusion as an adjunct to hypothermic circulatory arrest? *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2004;3:621–630.
327. Green MS, Okum GS, Horrow JC. Anesthetic management of myocardial revascularization. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:319–358.
328. Mittnacht AJC, Weiner M, London MJ, et al. Anesthesia for myocardial revascularization. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:522–569.
329. Shanewise JS. How to reliably detect ischemia in the intensive care unit and operating room. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;10:101–109.
330. Harvey S, Young D, Brampton W, et al. Pulmonary artery catheters for adult patients in intensive care. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;3:CD003408.
331. Halkos ME, Puskas JD. Off-pump coronary surgery: where do we stand in 2010? *Curr Opin Cardiol*. 2010;25:583–588.
332. Chassot PG, van der Linden P, Zaugg M, et al. Off-pump coronary artery bypass surgery: physiology and anaesthetic management. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:400–413.
333. Mack MJ, Pfister A, Bachand D, et al. Comparison of coronary bypass surgery with and without cardiopulmonary bypass in patients with multivessel disease. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:167–173.
334. Patel NC, Patel NU, Loulmet DF, et al. Emergency conversion to cardiopulmonary bypass during attempted off-pump revascularization results in increased morbidity and mortality. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;128:655–661.
335. Wijeysundera DN, Beattie WS, Djaiani G, et al. Off-pump coronary artery surgery for reducing mortality and morbidity: meta-analysis of randomized and observational studies. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2005;46:872–882.
336. Cheng DC, Bainbridge D, Martin JE, et al. Does off-pump coronary artery bypass reduce mortality, morbidity, and resource utilization when compared with conventional coronary artery bypass? A meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:188–203.
337. Shroyer AL, Grover FL, Hattler B, et al. On-pump versus off-pump coronary-artery bypass surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361:1827–1837.
338. Hannan EL, Wu C, Smith CR, et al. Off-pump versus on-pump coronary artery bypass graft surgery: differences in short-term outcomes and in long-term mortality and need for subsequent revascularization. *Circulation*. 2007;116:1145–1152.
339. Puskas JD, Edwards FH, Pappas PA, et al. Off-pump techniques benefit men and women and narrow the disparity in mortality after coronary bypass grafting. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;84:1447–1454. discussion 1454-1456.
340. Fu SP, Zheng Z, Yuan X, et al. Impact of off-pump techniques on sex differences in early and late outcomes after isolated coronary artery bypass grafts. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;87:1090–1096.
341. Eifert S, Kilian E, Beiras-Fernandez A, et al. Early and mid term mortality after coronary artery bypass grafting in women depends on the surgical protocol: retrospective analysis of 3441 on- and off-pump coronary artery bypass grafting procedures. *J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2010;5:90.
342. Lamy A, Devereaux PJ, Prabhakaran D, et al. Five year outcomes after off-pump or on-pump coronary artery bypass grafting. *N Eng J Med*. 2016;375:2359–2368.
343. Kim JY, Ramsay J, Licina MG, et al. Alternative approaches to cardiac surgery with and without cardiopulmonary bypass. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013:359–388.
344. Gayes JM, Emery RW. The MIDCAB experience: A current look at evolving surgical and anesthetic approaches. *J cardio thorac vas canes*. 1997vol. 11(No 5):625–628.
345. Reser D, et al. Mid-term outcomes of minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass grafting. *Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2015;63:313–318.
346. Tekin AI, et al. Perioperative outcomes in minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass versus off-pump coronary artery bypass with sternotomy. *Videosurgery Miniinv*. 2017;12(3):285–290.
347. Deshpande, et al. Totally endoscopic coronary artery bypass. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2014;27:49–56.
348. Cao C, et al. A systematic review on robotic coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Ann Cardiothorac Surg*. 2016;5(6):530–543.
349. Bonatti JO, Zimrin D, Lehr EJ, et al. Hybrid coronary revascularization using robotic totally endoscopic surgery: perioperative outcomes and 5-year results. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94:1920–1926.
350. Halkos ME, et al. Hybrid coronary revascularization. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2014;97:484–491.
351. Rheumatic fever and rheumatic heart disease: World Health. *Organ Tech Rep Ser*. 2004;923:1–122.
352. Borger MA, Alam A, Murphy PM, et al. Chronic ischemic mitral regurgitation: repair, replace or rethink? *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81:1153–1161.
353. Quader N, Rigolin VH. Two and three dimensional echocardiography for pre-operative assessment of mitral valve regurgitation. *Cardiovascula Ultrasound*. 2014;12:42.
354. O'Gara P, et al. The role of imaging in chronic degenerative mitral regurgitation. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008vol. 1(no 2).
355. Bonow RO, Carabello BA, Chatterjee K, et al. 2008 focused update incorporated into the ACC/AHA 2006 guidelines for the management of patients with valvular heart disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to revise the 1998 guidelines for the management of patients with valvular heart disease). Endorsed by the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, and Society of Thoracic Surgeons *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008;52:e1–e142.
356. Carabello BA. Modern management of mitral stenosis. *Circulation*. 2005;112:432–437.
357. Savage RM, Aronson S, Shernan SK. *Comprehensive Textbook of Perioperative Transesophageal Echocardiography*. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer; 2005.
358. Klein AJ, Carroll JD. Left ventricular dysfunction and mitral stenosis. *Heart Fail Clin*. 2006;2:443–452.
359. Adams DH, Carabello BA, Castillo JG. Mitral valve regurgitation. In: Hurst JW, Fuster V, Walsh RA, et al., eds. *Hurst's the Heart*. 13th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical; 2011:1721–1737.
360. Nishimura RA, Schaff HV. Mitral regurgitation: timing of surgery. In: Otto CM, Bonow RO, eds. *Valvular Heart Disease: A Companion to Braunwald's Heart Disease*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2009:274–289.
361. Levine RA, Beeri R, Otsuji Y, et al. Ischemic mitral regurgitation. In: Otto CM, Bonow RO, eds. *Valvular Heart Disease: A Companion to Braunwald's Heart Disease*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2009:260–273.
362. Hudson JKC, Hudson CCC, Mackensen GB. Echocardiographic assessment of cardiomyopathies. In: Savage RM, Aronson S, Shernan SK, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Perioperative Transesophageal Echocardiography*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2010:611–621.
363. Roberts R, Sigwart U. New concepts in hypertrophic cardiomyopathies. *Part I Circulation*. 2001;104:2113–2116.
364. Manabe S, Kasegawa H, Fukui T, et al. Morphological analysis of systolic anterior motion after mitral valve repair. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2012;15:235–239.
365. Soltesz EG, Cohn LH. Minimally invasive valve surgery. *Cardiol Rev*. 2007;15:109–115.
366. Mihaljevic T, Cohn LH, Unic D, et al. One thousand minimally invasive valve operations: early and late results. *Ann Surg*. 2004;240:529–534. discussion 534.
367. Bhamidipati CM, et al. Robot-assisted mitral valve repair: a single institution review. *Innovations*. 2010;5:295–299.
368. Rehfeldt KH, et al. Robot-assisted mitral valve repair. *J Cardiothorac vasc Anesth*. 2011;25:721–730.
369. Javadikasgari H, Suri RM, Tappuni B, et al. Minimally invasive mitral valve repair. *Heart*. 2018;104(10):861–867.
370. Soltesz EG, et al. MIMVS. *Cardiol Rev*. 2007;15:109–115.
371.
372. Vernick WJ, et al. Anesthetic considerations during MIMVS. *Semin Cardiothorac vasc Anesth*. 2012;16:11–24.
373. Mihaljevic T, et al. One thousand minimally invasive valve operations: early and late results. *Ann Surg*. 2004;240:529–534.
374. Dunning J, Gao H, Chambers J, et al. Aortic valve surgery: marked increases in volume and significant decreases in mechanical valve use—an analysis of 41,227 patients over 5 years from the Society for Cardiothoracic Surgery in Great Britain and Ireland National database. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2011;142:776–782. e773.

375. Cripe L, Andelfinger G, Martin LJ, et al. Bicuspid aortic valve is heritable. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;44:138–143.
376. Robicsek F, Thubrikar MJ, Cook JW, et al. The congenitally bicuspid aortic valve: how does it function? Why does it fail? *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;77:177–185.
377. Beller CJ, Labrosse MR, Thubrikar MJ, et al. Role of aortic root motion in the pathogenesis of aortic dissection. *Circulation*. 2004;109:763–769.
378. Freeman RV, Otto CM. Spectrum of calcific aortic valve disease: pathogenesis, disease progression, and treatment strategies. *Circulation*. 2005;111:3316–3326.
379. Schoen FJ. Cardiac valves and valvular pathology: update on function, disease, repair, and replacement. *Cardiovasc Pathol*. 2005;14:189–194.
380. Mochizuki Y, Pandian NG. Role of echocardiography in the diagnosis and treatment of patients with aortic stenosis. *Curr Opin Cardiol*. 2003;18:327–333.
381. Pasic M, Buz S, Dreysse S, et al. Transapical aortic valve implantation in 194 patients: problems, complications, and solutions. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2010;90:1463–1469. discussion 1469-1470.
382. Augoustides JG, Wolfe Y, Walsh EK, et al. Recent advances in aortic valve disease: highlights from a bicuspid aortic valve to transcatheter aortic valve replacement. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2009;23:569–576.
383. Bekeredjian R, Grayburn PA. Valvular heart disease: aortic regurgitation. *Circulation*. 2005;112:125–134.
384. Scheuble A, Vahanian A. Aortic insufficiency: defining the role of pharmacotherapy. *Am J Cardiovasc Drugs*. 2005;5:113–120.
385. Otto CM. Right-sided valve disease. In: Otto CM, Bonow RO, eds. *Valvular Heart Disease: A Companion to Braunwald's Heart Disease*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2009:334–355.
386. Kim BS, Soltesz EG, Cohn LH. Minimally invasive approaches to aortic valve surgery: Brigham experience. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2006;18:148–153.
387. Taramasso M, Vanermen H, Maisano F, et al. The Growing Importance of Secondary Tricuspid Regurgitation. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;59:703–710.
388. Cohen SR, Sell JE, McIntosh CL, et al. Tricuspid regurgitation in patients with acquired, chronic, pure mitral regurgitation: I. Prevalence, diagnosis, and comparison of preoperative clinical and hemodynamic features in patients with and without tricuspid regurgitation. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1987;94:481–487.
389. Matsunaga A, Duran CM. Progression of tricuspid regurgitation after repaired functional ischemic mitral regurgitation. *Circulation*. 2005;112:I453–I457.
390. Nath J, Foster E, Heidenreich PA. Impact of tricuspid regurgitation on long-term survival. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;43:405–409.
391. O'Rourke RA. Tricuspid valve, pulmonic valve, and multivalvular disease. In: Fuster V, Wayne AR, O'Rourke RA, eds. *Hurst's the Heart*. 11th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical; 2004:1707–1722.
392. Sivarajan M, Modak R. Valvular stenosis. In: Mathew JP, Ayoub CM, eds. *Clinical Manual and Review of Transesophageal Echocardiography*. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical; 2005:118–136.
393. Kheiwa A, Divanji P, Mahadevan VS. Transcatheter pulmonary valve implantation: will it replace surgical pulmonary valve replacement? *Exp Rev Cardiovasc Ther*. 2018;16(3):197–207.
394. Pfannmuller B, Misfeld M, Borger MA, et al. Isolated reoperative minimally invasive tricuspid valve operations. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94:2005–2010.
395. Chikwe J, et al. Procedures in the hybrid operating room. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:807.
396. Braithwaite S, et al. Anaesthesia in the cardiac catheterization lab. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:507–512.
397. Shook DC, et al. Anesthesia in the cardiac catheterization lab and electrophysiology lab. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009 Mar;27(1):47–56.
398. Reddy K, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61:1175.
399. Joe RR, et al. Anesthesia in the cardiac catheterization lab. *Anesthesiol Clin Nrth America*. 2003;(3):639–651.
400. Leon MB, Smith CR, Mack M, et al. Transcatheter aortic-valve implantation for aortic stenosis in patients who cannot undergo surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:1597–1607.
401. Braithwaite S, Kluin J, Buhre WF, et al. Anaesthesia in the cardiac catheterization laboratory. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23:507–512.
402. Shook DC, Savage RM. Anesthesia in the cardiac catheterization laboratory and electrophysiology laboratory. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:47–56.
403. Chikwe J, Kerr J, Love BA. Procedures in the hybrid operating room. In: Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Savino JS, eds. *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia: The Echo Era*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2011:807–813.
404. Otto CM, Kumbhani DJ, Alexander KP, et al. ACC Expert Consensus on TAVR for Adults With Aortic Stenosis. *JACC*. 2017;69(6):1313–1314.
405. Holmes Jr JR, Mack MJ, Kaul S, et al. 2012 ACCF/AATS/SCAI/STS expert consensus document on transcatheter aortic valve replacement: developed in collaboration with the American Heart Association, American Society of Echocardiography, European Association for Cardio-Thoracic Surgery, Heart Failure Society of America, Mended Hearts, Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, Society of Cardiovascular Computed Tomography, and Society for Cardiovascular Magnetic Resonance. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;144. e29–84.
406. Yan TD, Cao C, Martens-Nielsen J, et al. Transcatheter aortic valve implantation for high-risk patients with severe aortic stenosis: a systematic review. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2010;139:1519–1528.
407. Billings 4th FT, Kodali SK, Shanewise JS. Transcatheter aortic valve implantation: anesthetic considerations. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1453–1462.
408.
409. Greason KL, Pochettino A, Sandhu GS, et al. Transfemoral transcatheter aortic valve insertion-related intraoperative morbidity: Implications of the minimalist approach. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2016vol. 151:1026–1029.
410. Fassl J, Seeberger MD, Augoustides JG. Transcatheter aortic valve implantation: is general anesthesia superior to conscious sedation? *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2011;25:576–577.
411. Patel PA, Fassl J, Thompson A, et al. Transcatheter aortic valve replacement. Part 3. The central role of perioperative transesophageal echocardiography. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:698–710.
412. Pressman GS. Paravalvular Regurgitation after Transcutaneous Aortic Valve Replacement: A Dynamic Lesion? *Cardiology*. 2017;137:25–26.
413. Tommaso CL, Bolman 3rd RM, Feldman T, et al. Multisociety (AATS, ACCF, SCAI, and STS) expert consensus statement: operator and institutional requirements for transcatheter valve repair and replacement. Part 1. Transcatheter aortic valve replacement. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;143:1254–1263.
414. Kothandan H, et al. Anesthesia management for MitraClip device implantation. *Annals of Cardiac Anaesthesia*. 2014;17(1):17–22.
415. Franzen O, et al. MitraClip therapy in patients with end-stage systolic heart failure. *European J of Heart Failure*. 2011;13:569–576.
416. Ding J, et al. Transcatheter closure of the LAA: initial experience with the Watchman device. *Int J Clin Exp Med*. 2015;8(9):15230–15237.
417. Kumar D, Kumar S, Desai N. Role of transesophageal echocardiography during left atrial appendage occlusion device closure in a patient with non-valvular atrial fibrillation and angiodysplasia of the colon. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2018;21:88–91.
418. Hunt SA, Abraham WT, Chin MH, et al. 2009 Focused update incorporated into the ACC/AHA 2005 guidelines for the diagnosis and management of heart failure in adults: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines developed in collaboration with the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2009;53:e1–e90.
419. Francis GS, Goldsmith SR, Levine TB, et al. The neurohumoral axis in congestive heart failure. *Ann Intern Med*. 1984;101:370–377.
420. Levine B, Kalman J, Mayer L, et al. Elevated circulating levels of tumor necrosis factor in severe chronic heart failure. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;323:236–241.
421. Liao L, Cabell CH, Jollis JG, et al. Usefulness of myocardial viability or ischemia in predicting long-term survival for patients with severe left ventricular dysfunction undergoing revascularization. *Am J Cardiol*. 2004;93:1275–1279.
422. Vitali E, Colombo T, Fratto P, et al. Surgical therapy in advanced heart failure. *Am J Cardiol*. 2003;91:88F–94F.
423. Kumpati GS, McCarthy PM, Hoercher KJ. Surgical treatments for heart failure. *Cardiol Clin*. 2001;19:669–681.

424. Luc JG, Choi JH, Rizvi SSA, et al. Percutaneous coronary intervention versus coronary artery bypass grafting in heart transplant recipients with coronary allograft vasculopathy: a systematic review and meta-analysis of 1,520 patients. *Ann Cardiothorac Surg*. 2018;7(1):19–30.
425. Atluri P, Acker MA. Mitral valve surgery for dilated cardiomyopathy: current status and future roles. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;24:51–58.
426. Romano MA, Bolling SF. Mitral valve repair as an alternative treatment for heart failure patients. *Heart Fail Monit*. 2003;4:7–12.
427.
428. Bax JJ, Braun J, Somer ST, et al. Restrictive annuloplasty and coronary revascularization in ischemic mitral regurgitation results in reverse left ventricular remodeling. *Circulation*. 2004;110:II103–II108.
429. Braun J, van de Veire NR, Klautz RJ, et al. Restrictive mitral annuloplasty cures ischemic mitral regurgitation and heart failure. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85:430–436. discussion 436-437.
430. Ciarka A, Braun J, Delgado V, et al. Predictors of mitral regurgitation recurrence in patients with heart failure undergoing mitral valve annuloplasty. *Am J Cardiol*. 2010;106:395–401.
431. Goldstein D, Moskowitz AJ, Gelijns AC, et al. Two-Year Outcomes of Surgical Treatment of Severe Ischemic Mitral Regurgitation. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;374:344–353.
432. Jones RH, Velazquez EJ, Michler RE, et al. Coronary bypass surgery with or without surgical ventricular reconstruction. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:1705–1717.
433. Bardy GH, Lee KL, Mark DB, et al. Amiodarone or an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator for congestive heart failure. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:225–237.
434. Bristow MR, Saxon LA, Boehmer J, et al. Cardiac-resynchronization therapy with or without an implantable defibrillator in advanced chronic heart failure. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:2140–2150.
435. Buxton AE, Lee KL, Fisher JD, et al. A randomized study of the prevention of sudden death in patients with coronary artery disease: Multicenter Unsustained Tachycardia Trial Investigators. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;341:1882–1890.
436. Cleland JG, Daubert JC, Erdmann E, et al. The effect of cardiac resynchronization on morbidity and mortality in heart failure. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:1539–1549.
437. Moss AJ, Zareba W, Hall WJ, et al. Prophylactic implantation of a defibrillator in patients with myocardial infarction and reduced ejection fraction. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346:877–883.
438. Delgado DH, Rao V, Miriuka SG, et al. Explantation of a mechanical assist device: assessment of myocardial recovery. *J Card Surg*. 2004;19:47–50.
439. Feller ED, Sorensen EN, Haddad M, et al. Clinical outcomes are similar in pulsatile and nonpulsatile left ventricular assist device recipients. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:1082–1088.
440. Maybaum S, Mancini D, Xydas S, et al. Cardiac improvement during mechanical circulatory support: a prospective multicenter study of the LVAD Working Group. *Circulation*. 2007;115:2497–2505.
441. Reinlib L, Abraham W. Recovery from heart failure with circulatory assist: a working group of the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. *J Card Fail*. 2003;9:459–463.
442. Rose EA, Gelijns AC, Moskowitz AJ, et al. Long-term mechanical left ventricular assistance for end-stage heart failure. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:1435–1443.
443. Xydas S, Rosen RS, Ng C, et al. Mechanical unloading leads to echocardiographic, electrocardiographic, neurohormonal, and histologic recovery. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2006;25:7–15.
444. Stehlik J, Edwards LB, Kucheryavaya AY, et al. The Registry of the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation: twenty-eighth adult heart transplant report—2011. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2011;30:1078–1094.
445. Stone ML, LaPar DJ, Benrashid E, et al. Ventricular Assist Devices and Increased Blood Product Utilization for Cardiac Transplantation. *J Card Surg*. 2015;30:194–200.
446. Kirklin JK, Naftel DC, Stevenson LW, et al. INTERMACS database for durable devices for circulatory support: first annual report. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2008;27:1065–1072.
447. Kirklin JK, McGiffin DC, Pinderski LJ, et al. Selection of patients and techniques of heart transplantation. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2004;84:257–287. xi-xii.
448. Kirklin JK, Naftel DC, Pagani FD, et al. Seventh INTERMACS annual report: 15,000 patients and counting. *J Hear Lung Transplant*. 2015;34(12):1495–1504.
449. Rogers JG, Pagani FD, Tatooles AJ, et al. Intrapericardial left ventricular assist device for advanced heart failure. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:451–460.
450. Stulak JM, Dunlay SM, Sharma S, et al. Treatment of device thrombus in the HeartWare HVAD: Success and outcomes depend significantly on the initial treatment strategy. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2015;34:1535–1541.
451. Schmitto JD, Hanke JS, Rojas SV, Avsar M, Haverich A. First implantation in man of a new magnetically levitated left ventricular assist device (HeartMate 3). *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2015;34:858–860.
452. Mehra MR, Naka Y, Uriel N, et al. for the MOMENTUM 3 investigators. A Fully Magnetically Levitated Circulatory Pump for Advanced Heart Failure. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(5):440–450.
453. Mehra MR, Goldstein DJ, Uriel N, et al. Two-Year Outcomes with a Magnetically Levitated Cardiac Pump in Heart Failure. *N Engl J Med*. 2018 (epub ahead of print) PMID 29526139.
454. Feldman D, Pamboukian SV, Teuteberg JJ, et al. The 2013 International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation Guidelines for mechanical circulatory support: executive summary. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2013;32:157–187.
455. Shah KB, Thanavaro KL, Tang DG, et al. Impact of INTERMACS profile on clinical outcomes for patients supported with the total artificial heart. *J Card Fail*. 2016;22(11):913–919.
456. Cook JA, Shah KB, Quader MA, et al. The total artificial heart. *J Thorac Dis*. 2015;7(12):2172–2180.
457. Yaung J, Arabia FA, Nurok M. Perioperative Care of the Patient With the Total Artificial Heart. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1412–1422.
458. Report of the WHO/ISFC task force on the definition and classification of cardiomyopathies. *Br Heart J*. 1980;44:672–673.
459. Maron BJ, Towbin JA, Thiene G, et al. Contemporary Definitions and Classification of the Cardiomyopathies; An American Heart Association Scientific Statement From the Council on Clinical Cardiology, Heart Failure and Transplantation Committee; Quality of Care and Outcomes Research and Functional Genomics and Translational Biology Interdisciplinary Working Groups; and Council on Epidemiology and Prevention. *Circulation*. 2006;113:1807–1816.
460. Brieler J, Breeden MA, Tucker J. Cardiomyopathy: An Overview. *Am Fam Phys*. 2017;96(10):640–647.
461. Argulian E, Sherrid MV, Messerli FH. Misconceptions and facts about hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. *Am J Med*. 2016;129(2):148–152.
462. Gersh BJ, Maron BJ, Bonow RO, et al. ACC/AHA/AATS/ASE/ASNC/HFSA/HRS/SCAI/STS Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*. 2011;124(24):e783–831.
463. Morrow AG, Brockenbrough EC. Surgical treatment of idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis: technique and hemodynamic results of subaortic ventriculomyotomy. *Ann Surg*. 1961;154:181–189.
464. Sherrid MV, Chaudhry FA, Swistel DG. Obstructive hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: echocardiography, pathophysiology, and the continuing evolution of surgery for obstruction. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;75:620–632.
465. Messmer B. Extended myectomy for hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1994;58:575–577.
466. Schoendube FA, Klues HG, Reith s, et al. Long term clinical and echocardiographic follow up after surgical correction of hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy with extended myectomy and reconstruction of the subvalvular mitral apparatus. *Circulation*. 1995;92(suppl II). II 122-7.
467. Balaram SK, Ross RE, Sherrid MV, et al. Role of mitral valve plication in the surgical management of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94:1990–1997.
468. Chenzbraun A, Pinto FJ, Meyer B, et al. Frequency of acquired coronary-cameral fistula after ventricular septal myectomy in hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. *Am J Cardiol*. 1993;71:1244–1246.

469. Sgalambro A, Olivotto I, Rossi A, et al. Prevalence and clinical significance of acquired left coronary artery fistulas after surgical myectomy in patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2010;140:1046–1052.
470. Gemmato CJ, Forrester MD, Myers TJ, et al. Thirty-five years of mechanical circulatory support at the Texas Heart Institute: an updated overview. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2005;32:168–177.
471. Health Resources and Services Administration, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services: Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network. <http://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov/data/> (Accessed 2.24.18
472. Frazier OH, Gregoric ID, Cohn WE. Surgical treatment of advanced heart failure. In: Willerson JT, Cohn JN, Wellens HJJ, et al., eds. *Cardiovascular Medicine*. 3rd ed. New York: Springer; 2007:1461–1478.
473. Natale ME, Pina IL. Evaluation of pulmonary hypertension in heart transplant candidates. *Curr Opin Cardiol*. 2003;18:136–140.
474. Myers J, Geiran O, Simonsen S, et al. Clinical and exercise test determinants of survival after cardiac transplantation. *Chest*. 2003;124:2000–2005.
475. Sun JP, Niu J, Banbury MK, et al. Influence of different implantation techniques on long-term survival after orthotopic heart transplantation: an echocardiographic study. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2007;26:1243–1248.
476. Dreyfus G, Jebara V, Milaileanu S, et al. Total orthotopic heart transplantation: an alternative to the standard technique. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1991;52:11–14.
477. Silversides CK, Marelli A, Beauchesne L, et al. Canadian Cardiovascular Society 2009 consensus conference on the management of adults with congenital heart disease: executive summary. *Can J Cardiol*. 2010;26:143–150.
478. Chassot PG1, Bettex DA. Anesthesia and adult congenital heart disease. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2006;20:414–437.
479. Lovell AT. Anaesthetic implications of grown-up congenital heart disease. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:129–139.
480. Webb GD, Williams RG. Care of the adult with congenital heart disease: introduction. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2001;37:1166.
481. Warnes CA, Williams RG, Bashore TM, et al. ACC/AHA 2008 guidelines for the management of adults with congenital heart disease: executive summary, A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to Develop Guidelines for the Management of Adults With Congenital Heart Disease). *Circulation*. 2008;118:2395–2451.
482. Bhatt AB, Foster E, Kuehl K, et al. Congenital Heart Disease in the Older Adult. *Circulation*. 2015;131:1884–1931.
483. Marelli A, Beauchesne L, Mital S, et al. Canadian Cardiovascular Society 2009 consensus conference on the management of adults with congenital heart disease: introduction. *Can J Cardiol*. 2010;26.e65–69.
484. Diller GP, Dimopoulos K, Okonko D, et al. Exercise intolerance in adult congenital heart disease: comparative severity, correlates, and prognostic implication. *Circulation*. 2005;112:828–835.
485. Cannesson M, Earing MG, Collange V, et al. Anesthesia for noncardiac surgery in adults with congenital heart disease. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:432–440.
486. Stayer SA, Andropoulos DB, Russell IA. Anesthetic management of the adult patient with congenital heart disease. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2003;21:653–673.
487. Broberg CS, Aboulhosn J, Mongeon FP, et al. Prevalence of left ventricular systolic dysfunction in adults with repaired tetralogy of Fallot. *Am J Cardiol*. 2011;107:1215–1220.
488. Roger VL, Go AS, Lloyd-Jones DM, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics—2012 update: a report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2012;225:e2–e220.
489. Lakshminarayan K, Solid CA, Collins AJ, et al. Atrial fibrillation and stroke in the general Medicare population: a 10-year perspective (1992 to 2002). *Stroke*. 2006;37:1969–1974.
490. Cox JL, Ad N, Palazzo T, et al. Current status of the Maze procedure for the treatment of atrial fibrillation. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;12:15–19.
491. Gillinov AM, Wolf RK. Surgical ablation of atrial fibrillation. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 2005;48:169–177.
492. Prasad SM, Maniar HS, Camillo CJ, et al. The Cox Maze III procedure for atrial fibrillation: long-term efficacy in patients undergoing lone versus concomitant procedures. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;126:1822–1828.
493. Arcidi Jr JM, Doty DB, Millar RC. The Maze procedure: the LDS Hospital experience. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;12:38–43.
494. McCarthy PM, Gillinov AM, Castle L, et al. The Cox-Maze procedure: the Cleveland Clinic experience. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;12:25–29.
495. Schaff HV, Dearani JA, Daly RC, et al. Cox-Maze procedure for atrial fibrillation: Mayo Clinic experience. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;12:30–37.
496. Cox JL. The role of surgical intervention in the management of atrial fibrillation. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2004;31:257–265.
497. Roy CL, Minor MA, Brookhart MA, et al. Does this patient with a pericardial effusion have cardiac tamponade? *JAMA*. 2007;297:1810–1818.
498. Shabetai R. Pericardial effusion: haemodynamic spectrum. *Heart*. 2004;90:255–256.
499. Kussmaul A. Über schwielige Mediastino-Perikarditis und den paradoxen Puls. *Berl Klin Wochenschr*. 1873;10:433–435.
500. Maisch B, Seferovic PM, Ristic AD, et al. Guidelines on the diagnosis and management of pericardial diseases executive summary. The Task Force on the Diagnosis and Management of Pericardial Diseases of the European Society of Cardiology. *Eur Heart J*. 2004;25:587–610.
501. Spodick DH. Acute cardiac tamponade. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:684–690.
502. Pepi M, Muratori M. Echocardiography in the diagnosis and management of pericardial disease. *J Cardiovasc Med (Hagerstown)*. 2006;7:533–544.
503. Soler-Soler J, Sagrista-Sauleda J, Permanyer-Miralda G. Management of pericardial effusion. *Heart*. 2001;86:235–240.
504. Longo SR, Campbell DB. Management of cardiothoracic surgical emergencies. In: Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravlee GP, eds. *A practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008:474–488.
505. De Jong A, Jaber S. Etomidate for anesthesia induction: friends or foe in major cardiac surgery? *Critical Care*. 2014;18:560.
506. Aye T, Milne B. Ketamine anesthesia for pericardial window in a patient with pericardial tamponade and severe COPD. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:283–286.
507. Nishimura RA. Constrictive pericarditis in the modern era: a diagnostic dilemma. *Heart*. 2001;86:619–623.
508. Osterberg L, Vagelos R, Atwood JE. Case presentation and review: constrictive pericarditis. *West J Med*. 1998;169:232–239.
509. Little WC, Freeman GL. Pericardial disease. *Circulation*. 2006;113:1622–1632.
510. Asher CR, Klein AL. Diastolic heart failure: restrictive cardiomyopathy, constrictive pericarditis, and cardiac tamponade: clinical and echocardiographic evaluation. *Cardiol Rev*. 2002;10:218–229.
511. Imazio M. Contemporary management of pericardial diseases. *Curr Opin Cardiol*. 2012;27:308–317.
512. Parasramka SV, Ghotkar S, Kendall J, et al. Use of transoesophageal echocardiography in management of penetrating cardiac injury. *Eur J Echocardiogr*. 2008;9:563–564.
513. Degiannis E, Bowley DM, Westaby S. Penetrating cardiac injury. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 2005;87:61–63.
514. Lin PH, Bush RL, Zhou W, et al. Endovascular treatment of traumatic thoracic aortic injury: should this be the new standard of treatment? *J Vasc Surg*. 2006;43(suppl A):22A–29A.
515. Jamieson WR, Janusz MT, Gudas VM, et al. Traumatic rupture of the thoracic aorta: third decade of experience. *Am J Surg*. 2002;183:571–575.
516. Nzewi O, Slight RD, Zamvar V. Management of blunt thoracic aortic injury. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2006;31:18–27.
517. Cinnella G, Dambrosio M, Brienza N, et al. Transesophageal echocardiography for diagnosis of traumatic aortic injury: an appraisal of the evidence. *J Trauma*. 2004;57:1246–1255.
518. Kahn RA, Moskowitz DM. Endovascular aortic repair. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2002;16:218–233.

519. Svensson LG, Kouchoukos NT, Miller DC, et al. Expert consensus document on the treatment of descending thoracic aortic disease using endovascular stent-grafts. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85:S1–S41.
520. Akowuah E, Angelini G, Bryan AJ. Open versus endovascular repair of traumatic aortic rupture: a systematic review. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2009;138:768–769.
521. Joe RR, Chen LQ. Anesthesia in the cardiac catheterization lab. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2003;21:639–651.
522. Bashore TM, Balter S, Barac A, et al. 2012 American College of Cardiology Foundation/Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions expert consensus document on cardiac catheterization laboratory standards update: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation Task Force on Expert Consensus documents. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;59:2221–2305.
523. Bracey AW, Grigore AM, Nussmeier NA. Impact of platelet testing on presurgical screening and implications for cardiac and noncardiac surgical procedures. *Am J Cardiol*. 2006;98:25N–32N.
524. Hata M, Shiono M, Sezai A, et al. Outcome of emergency conventional coronary surgery for acute coronary syndrome due to left main coronary disease. *Ann Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2006;12:28–31.
525. Reddy K, Jaggar S, Gillbe C. The anaesthetist and the cardiac catheterisation laboratory. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61:1175–1186.

55

Anesthesia for Correction of Cardiac Arrhythmias

SAMUEL A. IREFIN

KEY POINTS

- Cardiac arrhythmias are caused by disorders of impulse formation, disorders of impulse conduction, or both. Cardiac arrhythmias may be life-threatening because of a reduction in cardiac output and/or myocardial blood flow or precipitation of a more serious arrhythmia.
- Radiofrequency ablation is the therapy of choice for many types of cardiac arrhythmias.
- Electrophysiologic studies are used to map out normal and abnormal intracardiac structures. In this process, the mechanism of arrhythmia is delineated and ablation can be performed at the same time.
- Pacing technologies have been developed to treat heart failure resulting in increases in pulse pressure, left ventricular stroke volume, cardiac index, and wedge pressure.
- Implantable pacemakers are placed for treatment of symptomatic bradycardia with the ability to respond to changing hemodynamic demands.
- The development of implantable cardioverter-defibrillators (ICDs) to terminate ventricular tachyarrhythmias by delivering high-voltage shocks to the ventricle has revolutionized therapy for cardiac arrhythmias.
- The main purpose of ICD placement is to prevent sudden cardiac death resulting from hemodynamically unstable ventricular arrhythmias.
- An ICD can be placed for cardiac resynchronization. Cardiac resynchronization therapy improves heart failure symptoms, quality of life, exercise capacity, and electrocardiographic variables.
- Anesthetic management of patients for correction of cardiac arrhythmias depends on associated comorbid illness and the procedure that is planned.

In the United States, cardiac arrhythmias are responsible for about 1 million hospitalizations and nearly 50,000 deaths.[1] Pharmacotherapy with potentially toxic medications was used to treat cardiac arrhythmias in the past but electrophysiology has transformed the care of patients with arrhythmias from diagnostic studies to direct therapeutic interventions, as demonstrated in clinical trials. Cardiac arrhythmias are caused by disorders of impulse formation, disorders of impulse conduction, or both. Disorders of impulse formation include enhancement or depression of automaticity, parasystolic activity, and triggered activity. Disorders of conduction include decremental conduction, reentry, entry block, exit block, concealed conduction, and supernormal conduction.[2]

At the present time, radiofrequency catheter ablation has replaced antiarrhythmic drug therapy as the treatment of choice for many types of cardiac arrhythmias. Before the 1980s, cardiac electrophysiology was primarily used to confirm mechanisms of arrhythmias, with management mainly by pharmacologic means. As a result of shortcomings in antiarrhythmic drug therapy (including the results of randomized trials), radiofrequency ablation and implantable cardioverter-defibrillators (ICDs) were developed.[3,4]

Historical Perspectives

The treatment of cardiac arrhythmias with device-based therapy may have begun in 1899, when Prevost and Batteli[5] noted almost as an afterthought that direct electric shock could terminate ventricular fibrillation in dogs. Hooker and colleagues[6] showed three decades later that the passage of electric current across the heart can initiate and terminate ventricular fibrillation. In 1947, Beck[7] saved the first human life by the successful use of cardiac defibrillation in a 14-year-old boy who developed ventricular fibrillation during a thoracic procedure and went on to achieve full recovery. These early achievements provided the foundation for the landmark work of Mirowski and Mower[8] which ultimately led to the development of ICDs in humans in 1980. During the past three decades, an increase has occurred in the numbers of patients with pacemakers and ICDs for the correction of cardiac arrhythmias.

Scope of Cardiac Arrhythmias

Cardiac arrhythmias are common. Some cardiac arrhythmias are life-threatening, and others are merely a nuisance.

Cardiac arrhythmias are caused by abnormalities in impulse formation or conduction that lead to slow or fast, regular or irregular heart rhythms. At the present time, it is not difficult to treat slow rhythms because available pacemakers are able to adapt slow function to the needs of the body.[9] The situation is different, however, for patients with rapid rhythms. Rapid rhythms may originate anywhere in the heart and result from various mechanisms. These mechanisms may be focal, meaning that the abnormal impulse formation is confined to a small area, or they may be the result of an impulse running in a circuit composed of several interconnected cardiac cells. Such a circuit may be small or large, as in atrial flutter and in arrhythmias in which the normal atrioventricular conduction system and an extra connection between the atrium and the ventricle are incorporated into the circuit of the arrhythmia.[10]

Pharmacologic interventions originally were used to terminate and prevent rapid rhythms. However, antiarrhythmic drugs may have serious side effects and sometimes may even be responsible for the occurrence of life-threatening arrhythmias and sudden death.[11] As a result of these effects, techniques were developed for localizing the site of origin or pathway of an arrhythmia and then isolating or destroying the tissue that is responsible. By employing an intracardiac catheter, the site of origin or pathway of an arrhythmia can be identified and the rhythm disturbance corrected by applying radiofrequency, laser, ultrasound, microwave energy, or freezing temperatures to the tissue causing the arrhythmia.

Heart failure is a major problem in older patients. Although pharmacologic treatment of heart failure has improved, outcome generally remains poor. New pacing technologies may be used to treat selected patients with heart failure. For many years, permanent pacing has been used to treat symptomatic bradycardia, and pacing may alleviate heart failure when associated with heart block. Several studies have examined the use of conventional dual-chamber atrioventricular–right ventricular pacing for treatment of heart failure in the absence of symptomatic bradycardia or heart block.[4,12] Biventricular pacing aims to restore synchronous cardiac contraction. When ventricular dyssynchrony is reduced, the heart is able to contract more efficiently and increase left ventricular ejection fraction and cardiac output, while working less and consuming less oxygen.[13] In addition, reestablishment of left ventricular synchrony can increase left ventricular filling times, decrease pulmonary capillary wedge pressure, and reduce mitral regurgitation.

Normal Cardiac Rhythm

In the normal heart, the dominant impulse arises in the sinus node with a rate of 60 to 100 beats/min (Fig. 55.1). During sleep, the rate may decrease to 30 to 50 beats/min.[14] Episodes of sinus pauses up to 3 seconds, sinoatrial block, junctional rhythms, and first-degree and second-degree atrioventricular nodal block that occur quite often (especially in trained athletes) are considered to be normal variants.[9]

The impulses generated from the sinoatrial node propagate along three intraatrial conduction pathways: the anterior, middle, and posterior internodal tracts. These tracts are not discrete pathways, but groups of cells that conduct slightly faster than the atrial myocardium.[15] The internodal tracts give rise to interatrial fibers. The electric impulse, whether propagated in the atrial myocardium or along the internodal tracts, converges on the atrioventricular junction. The atrioventricular node located in the atrioventricular junction ultimately receives the impulses generated from the sinoatrial node. The impulses are delayed in the atrioventricular node before they are finally distributed to the ventricular myocardium via the His-Purkinje system.

Normally, the heart rate increases with exercise to at least 85% of the age-predicted maximum of 220 minus age in years; failure to do so is termed chronotropic incompetence. Sinus arrhythmia is defined as sinus rhythm with P-to-P variations of more than 10% (Fig. 55.2). Sinus arrhythmia is due to cyclic variations in vagal tone commonly related to respiration (the rate is faster with inspiration and slower with expiration).[16] Sinus arrhythmia disappears with exercise, breath-holding, and atropine, and is more likely to be seen in individuals who do not have heart disease.[17]

Cardiac Arrhythmias

Cardiac arrhythmia is caused by a disorder of impulse generation, impulse conduction, or a combination of both. Cardiac arrhythmia may be life-threatening because of

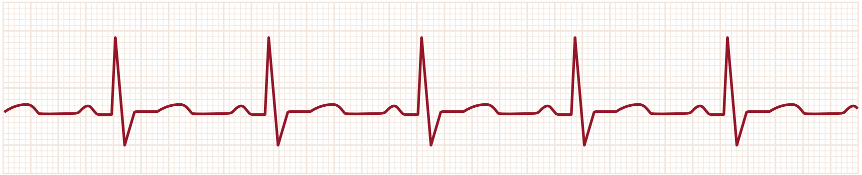


Fig. 55.1 Normal sinus rhythm. (Courtesy M. Kanj, MD, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH.)

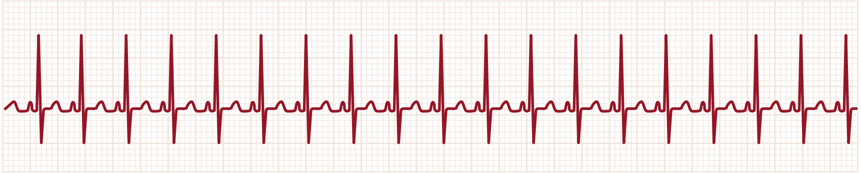


Fig. 55.2 Sinus arrhythmia. (Courtesy M. Kanj, MD, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH.)

a reduction in cardiac output, reduction in myocardial blood flow, or precipitation of a more serious arrhythmia.[18] Arrhythmias may be described based on (1) rate (bradycardia or tachycardia), (2) rhythm (regular or irregular), (3) origin of impulse (supraventricular, ventricular, or artificial pacemaker), (4) impulse conduction (atrioventricular, ventriculoatrial, or block), (5) ventricular rate, or (6) special phenomena (e.g., preexcitation).

Reentry is a common electrophysiologic mechanism that predisposes to most ventricular arrhythmias and to most supraventricular tachyarrhythmias. The most common mechanism of reentry is based on the model originally proposed by Erlanger and Schmitt and later modified by Wit.[2] This model postulates the presence of a ring or loop of cardiac tissue that is functionally separate from neighboring tissue and the presence of transient or permanent unidirectional block in a portion of the loop. Unidirectional block may be anatomic in origin (e.g., bundle branches, fibrosis, dual pathways, atrioventricular node plus accessory pathway) or functional (e.g., ischemia, drug effect).

Atrial flutter is a macro-reentrant arrhythmia identified by flutter waves, often best seen in the inferior leads at 250 to 350 beats/min (Fig. 55.3). Patients often present with a 2:1 atrioventricular conduction with a ventricular rate of 150 beats/min, although the atrioventricular conduction ratio can change abruptly. Atrial fibrillation is a narrow-complex tachyarrhythmia and is the most common in the general population (Fig. 55.4). It is associated with significant morbidity. The prevalence of atrial fibrillation in the general population increases exponentially with age, from 0.9% in individuals 40 years of age to 5.9% in individuals older than age 65 years. The most important risk factors for development of atrial fibrillation in the general population are structural heart disease, valvular heart disease, and left ventricular hypertrophy.[19] Atrial fibrillation is a significant contributor to the development of angina and stroke, with an estimated stroke risk in untreated individuals of 3% to 5%.[20]

Ventricular tachyarrhythmia is defined as three or more consecutive ectopic beats at a rate more rapid than 100 beats/min (Fig. 55.5).[21] Ventricular tachyarrhythmia is traditionally classified as nonsustained or sustained. Sustained ventricular tachyarrhythmia is defined as ventricular tachyarrhythmia lasting more than 30 seconds. Nonsustained ventricular tachyarrhythmia is defined as ventricular tachyarrhythmia that terminates spontaneously within 30 seconds. Sustained ventricular tachyarrhythmia also is traditionally classified as monomorphic (one site of origin) or polymorphic (two or more sites of origin).[22] Monomorphic ventricular tachyarrhythmia usually results from reentry, and the site of reentry depends in part on the type of heart disease. In patients with coronary artery disease, the reentry circuit is usually located in ventricular myocardium, whereas in dilated cardiomyopathy with left bundle branch block, bundle branch reentry is common.[23] Monomorphic ventricular tachyarrhythmia may occur in individuals with an otherwise normal heart, whereas polymorphic ventricular tachyarrhythmia may occur in acquired states that produce a marked prolongation of the Q-T interval. Nonsustained ventricular tachyarrhythmia is frequently asymptomatic, but may produce palpitations, weakness, and presyncope.[22]

Torsade de pointes is a French term translated as "twisting of the points." It is a syndrome composed of polymorphic ventricular tachyarrhythmia (Fig. 55.6). It may be due to various medications or electrolyte imbalances. Torsade de pointes is usually paroxysmal, but is frequently symptomatic and often produces loss of consciousness. It

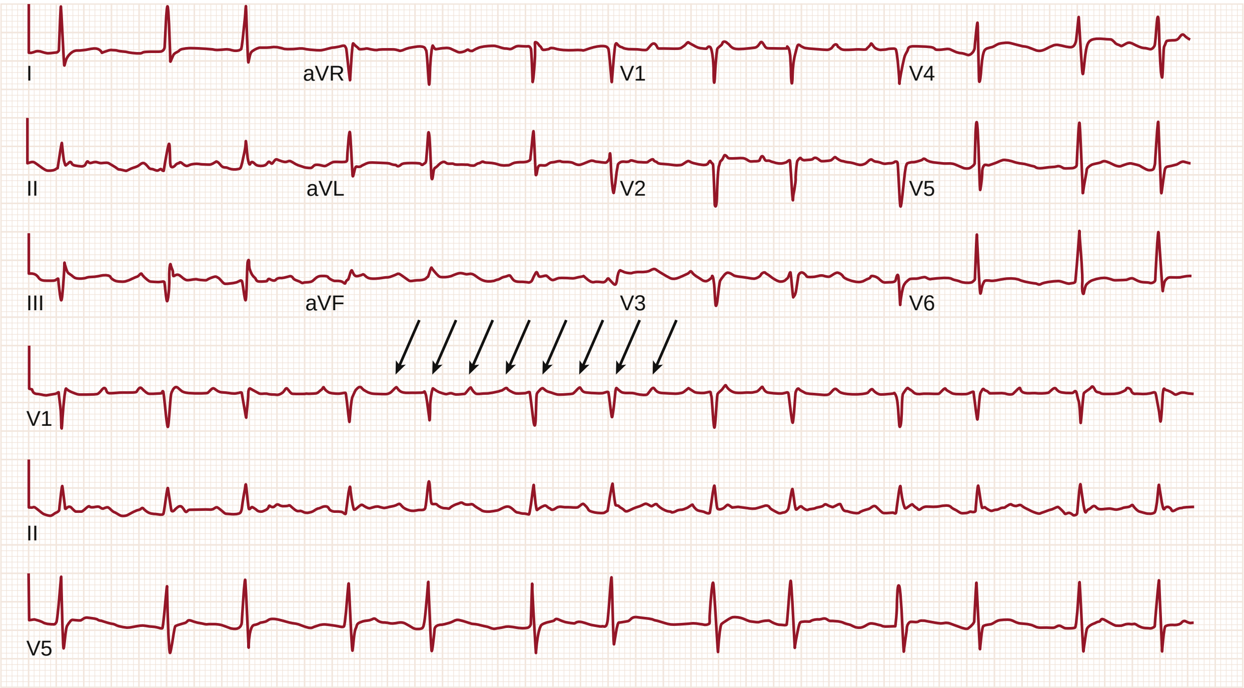


Fig. 55.3 Atrial flutter. Note the flutter wave pattern in lead V1 (*arrows*). (Courtesy M. Kanj, MD, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH.)

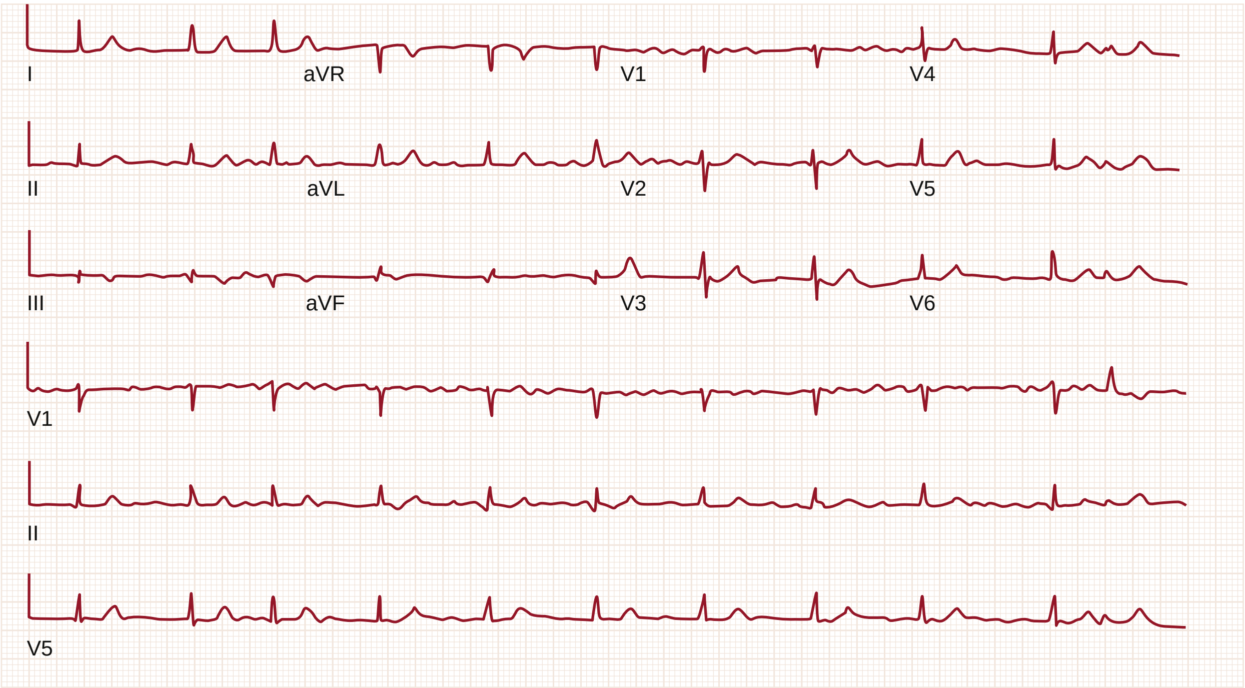


Fig. 55.4 Atrial fibrillation. (Courtesy M. Kanj, MD, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH.)

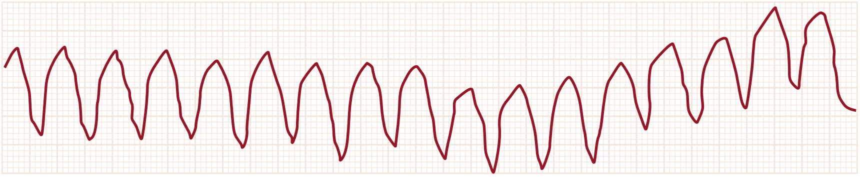


Fig. 55.5 Ventricular tachycardia. (Courtesy M. Kanj, MD, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH.)

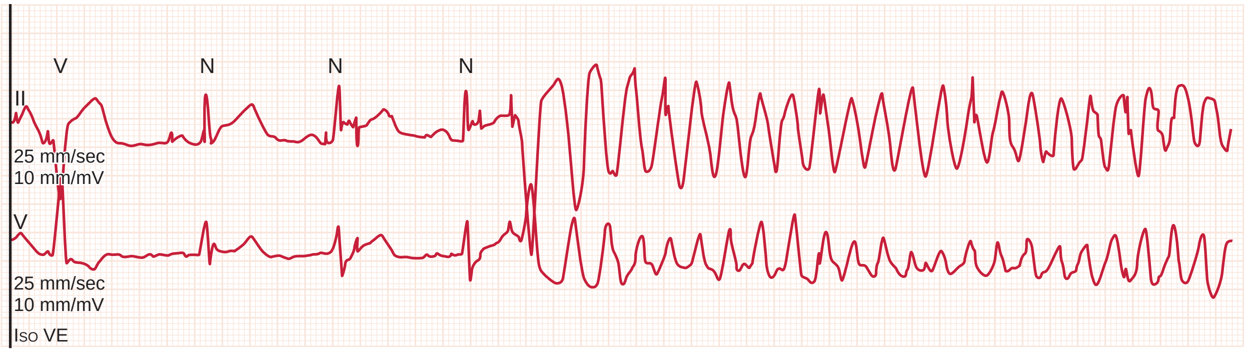


Fig. 55.6 Torsade de pointes. (Courtesy M. Kanj, MD, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH.)

occasionally degenerates to ventricular fibrillation. Ventricular fibrillation accounts for 80% to 85% of sudden cardiac deaths.[22]

Ventricular fibrillation is usually preceded by ventricular tachyarrhythmia, but also may occur as a primary arrhythmia (Fig. 55.7). More recent studies suggest that ventricular fibrillation results from multiple wavelengths that disperse randomly, using the leading circle form of reentry.[22] The most common cause of ventricular fibrillation is acute myocardial infarction. It also is observed in patients with chronic ischemic heart disease, hypoxia resulting from any cause, acidosis, hypokalemia, and massive hemorrhage.

INDICATIONS FOR CORRECTION OF CARDIAC ARRHYTHMIAS

Intracardiac electrophysiologic studies can give valuable information about normal and abnormal electrophysiology of intracardiac structures (see also Chapters 36, 38, and 86). These studies are used to confirm the mechanism of an arrhythmia, to delineate its anatomic substrate, and to ablate it. The electric stability of the ventricles also can be assessed, as can the effects of an antiarrhythmic regimen.

In addition, pacing technologies have been developed to treat heart failure with promising results, leading to

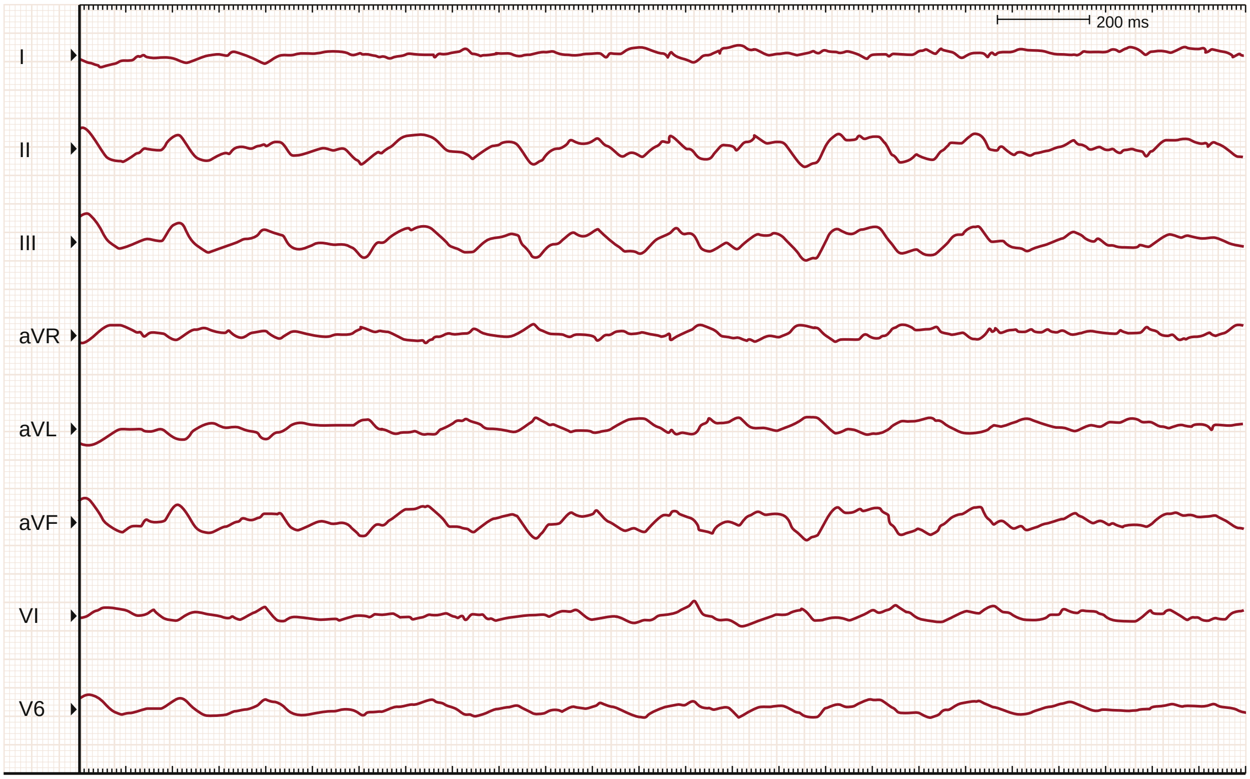


Fig. 55.7 Ventricular fibrillation. (Courtesy M. Kanj, MD, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH.)

improvement in morbidity and mortality in patients with heart failure.

Hemodynamic responses to biventricular pacing include an increase in the rate of elevation of left ventricular pressure and increases in pulse pressure, left ventricular stroke work, cardiac index, and wedge pressure.[23] Cardiac resynchronization therapy improves ventricular function without increasing myocardial energy consumption, in contrast to the effect of inotropic agents, such as dobutamine.[13] In addition, cardiac resynchronization therapy may reverse left ventricular remodeling over time.[24]

Permanent Pacing

Indications for pacemaker therapy have increased in recent years and now include the treatment of bradyarrhythmias and heart failure according to the American College of Cardiology and American Heart Association guidelines.[25] These guidelines discuss indications for pacing in patients with sinus node dysfunction, acquired atrioventricular block, chronic bifascicular and trifascicular block, hypersensitive carotid sinus, and neurally mediated syndromes. The guidelines direct the treating physician in selecting patients who would benefit from device therapy.

A Swedish team led by Sennings and Elmqvist implanted the first pacemaker in 1958.[26] A thoracotomy was required, and pacing was done through electrodes sutured to the epicardium. In these early systems, significant problems with changes in pacing threshold, lead infection, and lead breakage were common. Transvenous lead implantation subsequently developed by Furman and colleagues[27] would resolve many of these issues. In 1958, Furman successfully paced an elderly patient with a catheter electrode inserted transvenously. Other investigators took on the challenge of solving various technical problems, such as device miniaturization; longer-life batteries; and stable, reliable lead material.[28] As the indication for implantation expanded from atrioventricular conduction disturbances to management of sinus node dysfunction, the need for implantable pacemakers grew in proportion.[28] Technology evolved rapidly with the development of lithium-iodide batteries that had greater longevity. Electronic advances then led to major miniaturization using integrated circuits as opposed to discrete components. Lead materials used in today's pacemaker rely on silicone and polyurethane, which are more biocompatible and reliable than earlier materials. With these technical refinements, present-day pacemakers are small and can pace reliably for 8 to 10 years before generator replacement is needed. The primary functional challenge for contemporary pacemakers is to maintain the heart rate based on circulatory needs, pacing in a manner that mimics the natural physiology of excitation and conduction. In a healthy heart, the sinus node is modulated by the autonomic nervous system, and its rate is determined by a multiplicity of factors, such as physical activity, emotion, and blood pressure. Not only the rate, but also the activation sequence and atrioventricular conduction time vary with demand; these requirements also must be considered. Rate is controlled by pacemaker discharge, and the excitation and conduction sequence depends on the placement of pacing electrodes. Approximately 120,000 pacemakers are implanted each year in the United States. Indication for implantation for most of these cases is sick sinus syndrome.

Other indications include atrioventricular block, carotid sinus hypersensitivity, malignant vasodepressor syndrome, and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy.[29] The primary purpose of implantable pacemakers is to treat symptomatic bradycardia. With the extraordinary developments that have occurred in pacemaker therapy for the traditional indication—bradycardia—new uses are now beginning to be explored. Pacemakers have progressed from large, fixed-rate, single-chamber devices to multiprogrammable, multichamber devices with the ability to respond to changing hemodynamic demands. As technology advances, other possible uses are likely to be conceived.

Resynchronization Therapy

Cardiac resynchronization is a pacing therapy aimed at improving coordination of atria and both ventricles. This therapy has been demonstrated to be effective for patients with heart failure who have conduction delay and left ventricular systolic dysfunction.[30] In addition, this therapy can reduce hospital readmission rates and improve quality of life in patients with heart failure.[31]

Cardiac resynchronization therapy improves heart failure symptoms, quality of life, exercise capacity, hospitalization, and echocardiographic variables.[32] It is indicated in patients with drug-refractory, symptomatic New York Heart Association functional class III and IV heart failure of either ischemic or nonischemic origin.[31] In addition, these patients are protected from associated risk for sudden cardiac death when combined with an ICD system.[30]

The development of an automatic internal defibrillator, or ICD, began in the 1960s. External cardiac defibrillation was increasingly being used in coronary care units for the treatment of ventricular fibrillation and sudden cardiac death. Although the idea of automatic external defibrillation had been discussed initially by Zycoto, Mirowski, and colleagues[33] were the first to champion and begin practical development of an automatic internal device. In 1969, Mirowski and Mower developed the prototype of today's automatic internal defibrillator.[34]

The primary goal of all defibrillators is to terminate ventricular tachyarrhythmias by delivering high-voltage shocks to the ventricle. As with implantable pacemakers, defibrillating devices need to be small and reliable and have adequate longevity. ICDs have evolved not only to perform this function but also to take on additional tasks, such as antitachycardia pacing of the ventricle, dual-chamber pacing, and termination of atrial tachyarrhythmias.

A key difference between pacing and defibrillation of the heart is that for pacing only a very small mass of myocardium needs to be stimulated, whereas for defibrillation, most, if not all, of the myocardium must be stimulated. Because the myocardium is easily excitable throughout diastole, a small wave of depolarization during pacing can readily propagate throughout the whole heart. In contrast, during ventricular fibrillation, multiple reentrant wavefronts usually occur that are continuously changing in location and size and must be quelled. To defibrillate successfully, most of these wavefronts must be interrupted simultaneously; to achieve this, it is necessary to capture most of the tissue that is in a state of relative refractoriness.[35] One unique property of defibrillation success is that it is probabilistic.[36] The same energy that can defibrillate the heart on one occasion may be unsuccessful at another time.

The main purpose of ICD placement is to prevent death from hemodynamically unstable ventricular tachyarrhythmias. Although advances in technology have made these devices much more flexible in terms of arrhythmia detection and electric therapy potions, their main purpose is to reduce sudden cardiac death, which claims approximately 300,000 lives in the United States annually. Secondary prevention of sudden cardiac death in patients who have survived cardiac arrest is another major indication for ICD placement. In such patients and especially in patients of this group for whom no reversible or curable cause can be found, ICD implantation has been repeatedly documented to provide a major mortality benefit.[37] Interest in managing atrial tachyarrhythmias also has grown significantly in recent years. It is now recognized that approximately 30% of patients with ventricular tachyarrhythmia also have atrial tachyarrhythmias.[38] Such atrially initiated tachyarrhythmias can worsen patient symptoms, can result in inappropriate ventricular shocks, and may be responsible for initiating ventricular tachyarrhythmias that can exacerbate other pathologic processes, such as heart failure. New strategies for treatment and prevention of atrial tachyarrhythmias are incorporated into devices that are capable of defibrillation and anti-tachycardia pacing in the atrium and ventricle, in addition to combined dual-chamber pacing.[39]

The relative ease of ICD implantation and longevity of current defibrillators have made them a valuable tool in primary prevention. Patients no longer must survive cardiac arrest to justify the risk in ICD implantation.

PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION

Most patients who require pacemaker or ICD placement have significant cardiovascular disease. In addition, correction of cardiac arrhythmia may require radiofrequency catheter ablation. Radiofrequency catheter ablation has proved highly effective in the treatment of atrioventricular nodal reentrant and accessory pathway tachycardias. Indications for pacemaker and ICD placement continue to evolve as the utility of these devices continues to increase. Although most pacemaker placement is done with local anesthetic infiltration, ICD placement may require monitored anesthesia care or in some cases general anesthesia. The modern ICD unit is capable of delivering the full spectrum of therapy for ventricular tachyarrhythmias and for bradycardia therapy with dual-chamber pacing or sensing, rate modulation, and mode-switching features.

As mentioned earlier, ICD placement has two common indications. One is continued ventricular tachyarrhythmias despite adequate drug therapy, and the other is history of sudden cardiac arrest that is not associated with myocardial infarction. Preoperative evaluation processes necessary for placement of an ICD should be complete by the time the decision is made to place the device. These patients need a thorough preoperative evaluation. This evaluation includes electrophysiologic testing to determine the inducibility of ventricular tachycardia and electrophysiologically guided drug therapy. Preoperative pulmonary function tests may be necessary in patients on amiodarone to evaluate possible toxicity of this drug, which can result in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease or interstitial lung disease. In some instances, the underlying pathophysiology of malignant ventricular arrhythmias is related to ischemic or idiopathic cardiomyopathy.[40] These patients often present with poor left ventricular function and more frequent incidence of congestive heart failure. Patients with a history of congestive heart failure should be in optimal condition before surgery.

Generally, all patients who present for correction of cardiac arrhythmia require preoperative evaluations including electrocardiogram (ECG), chest radiograph, hemoglobin value, and electrolyte levels. Patients should receive nothing by mouth (NPO) for at least 8 hours before the procedure. In addition, patients who require device and lead extractions because of malfunction or infection may require blood product transfusions during the procedure. Consequently, type and crossmatch of blood products is frequently necessary for these procedures.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Pacemakers

Permanent implantable pacemakers have been the standard modality of treatment for patients with all types of bradyarrhythmias. A significant number of these patients present with sick sinus syndrome and are older. Consequently, devices are placed under general anesthesia in these patients. As a result of more recent advances in pacemaker technology, these devices now can be placed as a therapeutic modality to alter hemodynamic states. Surgeons used to be primarily responsible for device insertion. Now the task falls under the services of cardiologists. Device placement is commonly performed in the cardiac catheterization suite under local anesthesia on an outpatient basis. Patients at high risk who have complicated disease now present for pacemaker insertion, however, in addition to those with indications more recently identified by the American College of Cardiology and American Heart Association for these devices. In light of these increased indications, the expertise of anesthesiologists is needed for monitoring and perioperative care of these patients.

Monitored Anesthesia Care

Currently, most pacemaker insertions are performed by cardiologists. Most of these cases are performed under local anesthesia with sedation. Depending on the level of training, administration of sedatives and analgesics can be provided by nurses.

In instances that require deeper sedation for a patient's comfort or for critically ill patients with hemodynamic instability, monitored anesthesia care by an anesthesiologist may be required. Adequate monitoring and resuscitation equipment are required in such situations. The goal of monitored anesthesia care is to provide analgesia, sedation, and anxiolysis, while ensuring rapid recovery with minimal or no side effects. Any sedative-hypnotic medication may be used during monitored anesthesia care with a wide variety of delivery systems.[41] Subanesthetic concentrations of inhaled agents also have been used to supplement local anesthetics. Newer drugs, such as centrally mediated α_2-agonists, have been shown to produce anxiolysis, sedation, and reduced requirements for supplemental analgesic medications during monitored anesthesia care.

General Anesthesia

Patients requiring pacemaker placement rarely require general anesthesia for placement. If general anesthesia is required, it should be directed toward underlying cardiac pathophysiology, indications, complications, and hemodynamic goals. Immediate access to life-support equipment, such as a cardiac defibrillator and a transcutaneous pacemaker, is necessary if the device is being placed under general anesthesia.

Implantable Cardioverter-Defibrillator

Since the 1980s, indications for use and implantation of ICDs have steadily increased. Over the past two decades, ICDs have undergone a significant evolution. In the 1970s and 1980s, ICD placement usually required thoracotomy for placement of epicardial patches.

PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION

As mentioned earlier, common indications for ICD implantation include continued ventricular tachyarrhythmias unresponsive to adequate pharmacotherapy and history of sudden cardiac arrest unassociated with myocardial infarction. Newer indications include patients with various forms of the congenital long QT syndrome.[42] Patients with long QT syndrome who have survived an episode of cardiac arrest or documented polymorphic ventricular tachyarrhythmia, especially if on pharmacotherapy at the time, are increasingly being evaluated as ICD candidates. In addition, patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathies and without a history of sudden death are usually evaluated for ICD placement.[43] In these patients, sustained ventricular arrhythmias, nonexertional syncope, or a strong family history of sudden death with early age of presentation strongly indicates ICD implantation.

In all instances, the evaluation that is necessary for ICD implantation is completed by the time the decision is made to place the device. Electrophysiologic studies may have been done to determine the forms of arrhythmias present. When the pathophysiology of ventricular arrhythmias is related to idiopathic or ischemic cardiomyopathy,[44] these patients may present with poor left ventricular function and a high incidence of congestive heart failure. Consequently, they should be optimized as much as possible preoperatively.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

In the 1980s, ICD implantation was done with epicardial leads via thoracotomy under general anesthesia with one-lung ventilation. The technologic development of implantable ICDs with transvenous lead systems has simplified their implantation. Consequently, it was reasoned that ICDs can be placed under deep sedation with little or no intervention by the anesthesiologist analogous to what is needed for pacemaker placement.[45] Placement of an ICD under general anesthesia may be safer and more comfortable for the patient, however. Patients who present for ICD placement are often critically ill with cardiopulmonary comorbidity. These patients often present with ejection fractions of less than 30% and require vasopressors to support hemodynamics during the procedure. In addition, some form of general anesthesia is necessary for intraoperative testing of defibrillating thresholds.

Monitored Anesthesia Care

Small, new-generation devices and transvenous lead systems lend themselves to the use of local anesthesia and intravenous sedation for ICD implantation. Midazolam and fentanyl are usually the drugs of choice when an ICD is placed under monitored anesthesia care. Monitoring includes pulse oximetry, five-lead ECG, and noninvasive blood pressure. Depth of anesthesia is monitored clinically. One of the major aspects of ICD placement is testing the device. Testing the device may require deep sedation or general anesthesia because the shocks associated with this procedure can be very painful. The presence of an anesthesiology team may be necessary for ICD placement under monitored anesthesia care.

General Anesthesia

Most patients who present for ICD placement typically have comorbidities such as ventricular tachycardia, congestive heart failure with ejection fraction less than 30%, coronary artery disease, pulmonary hypertension, chronic renal insufficiency, or valvular heart disease. These patients may be unable to lie flat for the prolonged period necessary for placement of the ICD. In addition, they may require close hemodynamic monitoring during testing of the device. General anesthesia should be considered in these patients. When general anesthesia is chosen, in addition to standard monitoring, an arterial line may be added. External cardioverter-defibrillator pads are required for all ICD placements. These are employed in cases in which an implanted defibrillator fails. General anesthesia also may be requested for anxious and extremely nervous patients. Because pacemakers and ICDs are placed percutaneously, anesthesiologists must be vigilant for possible complications, such as myocardial infarction, stroke, possible cardiac injury (perforation or tamponade), and pneumothorax from subclavian vascular access.

EXTRACTION OF DEVICES

As a result of continued growth and expanding indications for pacemakers and ICD placement, leads may require extraction because of mechanical dysfunction, the need to upgrade to more complex devices, or local or systemic infection. Lead extractions are probably one of the most challenging procedures that a cardiac electrophysiologist faces today.

Indications for lead extractions can be divided into two categories—patient-related and lead-related. Patient-related indications include infection, ineffective therapy (high defibrillation threshold), perforation, migration, embolization, induction of arrhythmias, venous thrombosis, unrelenting pain, device interactions, and device upgrades.[46] Lead-related indications include lead recalls, lead failure, and lead interactions.[47] Lead extraction is performed via powered sheaths through which energy is delivered to the tip in the form of excimer laser light or electrocautery. These systems burn through scar tissue adherent to the wall of the lead throughout its course. The potential for life-threatening complications, such as lead fracture, venous or myocardial rupture, and tamponade, makes general anesthesia with invasive monitors a prudent choice for lead extractions. There is also a small chance of needing emergent cardiac surgery with lead extraction and therefore the team must be vigilant for signs of cardiovascular decompensation.

POSTOPERATIVE CARE

Postoperative care of patients with pacemaker or ICD implantation depends on various factors surrounding the implantation of the device. As mentioned earlier, most of these patients are quite ill with significant comorbidities. It is not unusual for patients to have congestive heart failure with an ejection fraction less than 30% as a result of poor left ventricular function. Consequently, it is imperative to have these patients monitored in the postanesthesia care unit, especially if the device is placed or extracted under general anesthesia. The spectrum of recovery sites after these procedures may vary from postprocedure units to a coronary intensive care unit. Most of these procedures are done on an outpatient basis, and anesthesia is tailored to ensure rapid recovery after implantation.

Correction of Cardiac Arrhythmias With Ablation Therapy

Catheter ablation is a safe and curative option for most cardiac arrhythmias, with 85% to 98% cure rates among the arrhythmias treated most frequently.[48] The rate of major complications is less than 3%.[48] Cardiac ablation therapy involves the delivery of energy through a catheter that is usually placed in the endocardial position in the heart, destroying myocardial tissue that is responsible for the tachyarrhythmia (Fig. 55.8). Multiple electrodes are inserted to locate the arrhythmia and ablate it. Usually the diagnostic portions of the ablation study are done during the same procedure.[49] The efficacy of catheter ablation depends on accurate identification of the site of origin of the arrhythmia. When the site is identified, the electrode catheter is positioned in direct contact with the site of the arrhythmia, and radiofrequency energy is delivered through the catheter to destroy it.

The current generated by radiofrequency is alternating current and is delivered at cycle lengths of 300 to 750 kHz when used for catheter ablation.[50] It causes resistive heating of the tissue in contact with the electrode. The degree of tissue heating is inversely proportional to the radius to the fourth power.[51] Consequently, the lesions created by radiofrequency energy are small. Although electric injury may be a contributing factor, the primary mechanism of tissue destruction by radiofrequency current is thermal injury. Acute lesions created by a radiofrequency current consist of a central zone of coagulation necrosis surrounded by a zone of hemorrhage and inflammation.[52] Cardiac arrhythmias

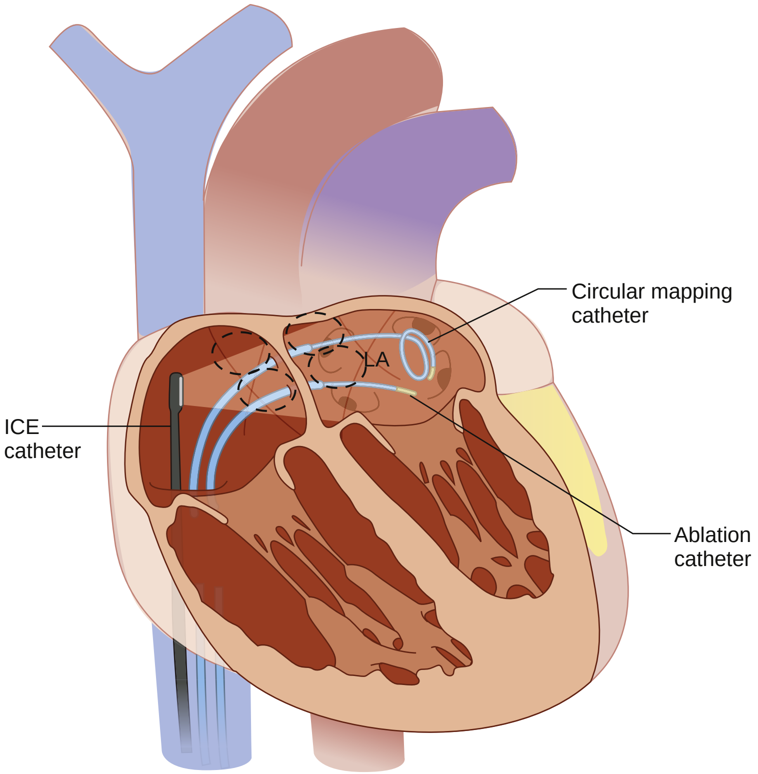


Fig. 55.8 Catheter placement during ablation procedures. Mapping and ablation catheters were placed under the guidance of intracardiac echocardiography. *ICE,* Intracardiac echocardiography *LA,* Left atrium. (Courtesy O. Wazni, MD, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH.)

that can be treated with radiofrequency ablation include paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia, Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome, atrial flutter, atrial fibrillation, and idiopathic ventricular tachycardia. Most cardiac arrhythmias treated with radiofrequency ablation are not life-threatening but have a significant impact on a patient's quality of life.[53] Advantages of radiofrequency ablation of cardiac arrhythmias include relief of symptoms, improvement in functional capacity and quality of life, and elimination of the need for lifelong antiarrhythmic drug therapy. The principal disadvantage is the risk for complications, which varies depending on the type of ablation procedure and skill of the operator.

ANESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS

Catheter ablation was introduced into clinical practice in 1982. Initially, ablation was performed with direct electric shocks.[54] As a result of several advantages over direct current, radiofrequency ablation has replaced direct current ablation. These advantages include the absence of skeletal and cardiac muscle stimulation, minimal discomfort during delivery of energy, the possibility of performing the procedure in conscious patients, and the discrete nature of resulting lesions.[52]

Until recently, most cardiac ablation therapy for correction of arrhythmias could be performed under moderate sedation or monitored anesthesia care. In some of these cases, deep sedation may have been required as the case progressed. General anesthesia is now being employed routinely in most cases of cardiac ablation therapy due to patient anxiety and the extended period required for these procedures. General anesthesia may be implemented with standard American Society of Anesthesiologists monitors with adequate vascular access. Catheter ablation is the first-choice treatment for most cardiac arrhythmias. It is a safe treatment and is usually effective as a single procedure. Because it is curative in many patients, it is offered to all patients who would otherwise be committed to long-term drug therapy.

Future Trends

Correction of cardiac tachyarrhythmias has improved dramatically in the past two decades. Emphasis has shifted from pharmacologic therapy to nonpharmacologic therapy of tachyarrhythmias; this has led to a significant increase in the number of radiofrequency catheter ablations and defibrillator implantations. These developments were triggered by technologic advances that showed superiority of these procedures over the use of antiarrhythmic drugs.[55] As a result, treatment of supraventricular tachycardias and tachycardias involving accessory atrioventricular pathways will probably remain the domain of catheter ablation. The cure rate of patients treated with catheter ablation is very high. In addition, treatment of life-threatening ventricular tachyarrhythmia will remain in the domain of ICDs for the foreseeable future. The role of ICD therapy has been clearly defined with respect to prolongation of life and has been expanded to include primary prophylaxis of sudden death in high-risk populations.[56]

The demand for perioperative care in the electrophysiology suite, especially for those undergoing ablation procedures, has resurrected the use of high-frequency jet ventilation (HFJV) in recent years.[57] Although the use of HFJV in the electrophysiology suite is relatively new, studies have demonstrated improved outcomes and decreases in procedure time.[58] HFJV has been demonstrated to provide a more stable environment, especially in the posterior wall of the atrium. As a consequence, in the future HFJV use will increase and provide an attractive alternative to the conventional mode of ventilation during catheter ablation.[20,59] The anesthetic implications of this modality in the electrophysiology suite has recently been reviewed.[60]

As a result of these developments, the presence of an anesthesiology team will continue to increase in cardiology suites. Patients who are being cared for in these areas are sicker with significant comorbidities. The role of conscious sedation will continue to diminish in the performance of these procedures. These patients will require full monitoring and care under the direction of an anesthesiologist.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Roger VL, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;123:e18.
2. Wit AL. *Cardiol Clin*. 1990;8:393.
3. Jackman WM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;327:313.
4. Hochleitner M, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1990;66:198.
5. Prevost J, et al. *J Physiol Path Gen*. 1899;1:399.
6. Hooker D, et al. *Elect Eng*. 1936;55:444.
7. Beck C, et al. *JAMA*. 1947;135:985.
8. Mirowski M, et al. *Heart Lung*. 1973;2:867.
9. Mangrum JM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:703.
10. Anonymous. *Am Heart J*. 1979;98:263.
11. Kjekshus J, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1992;69:103.
12. Linde C, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1995;75:919.
13. Nelson GS, et al. *Circulation*. 2000;102:3053.
14. Clarke JM, et al. *Lancet*. 1976;1:508.
15. Truex RC. *Cardiovasc Clin*. 1974;6:1.
16. Anonymous. *Br Med J*. 1978;2:1663.
17. Barrett PA, et al. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 1981;23:299.
18. Schamroth L. *Circulation*. 1973;47:420.
19. Josephson ME, et al. *Circulation*. 1987;75:III–41.
20. Wazni O, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365:2296.
21. Hsia HH, et al. *Cardiol Clin*. 1993;11:21.
22. DiMarco JP. *Cardiol Clin*. 1993;11:11.
23. Kass DA, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;99:1567.
24. St. John Sutton MG, et al. *Circulation*. 1985;107:2003.
25. Gregoratos G, et al. *J Cardiovasc Electrophysiol*. 2002;13:1183.
26. Elmqvist R, et al. *Am Heart J*. 1963;65:731.
27. Furman S, et al. *Surg Forum*. 1958;9:245.
28. Greatbatch W, et al. *IEEE Eng Med Biol Soc*. 1991;10:38.
29. Daley WR. *Am J Cardiol*. 1998;82:392.
30. Abraham WT, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1845;346:2002.
31. Cleland JG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:1539.
32. Auricchio A, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2002;39:2026.
33. Mirowski M, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 1972;129:773.
34. Mower MM. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1995;18(3 Pt 2):506.
35. Mehra R, et al. Tachyarrhythmia termination: lead system and hardware design. In: Singer I, ed. *Implantable Cardioverter-Defibrillator*. Armonk, NY: Futura; 1994:109.
36. McDaniel WC, et al. *Med Instrum*. 1987;21:170.
37. Antiarrhythmics Versus Implantable Defibrillators (AVID) Investigators. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:1576.
38. Schmitt C, et al. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1994;17(3 Pt 1):295.
39. Wharton M, et al. *Circulation*. 1998;98(1):190.
40. Gartman DM, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1990;100:353.
41. Newson C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:486.
42. Groh WJ, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1996;78:703.
43. Primo J, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1998;31:1081.
44. Tchou PJ, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1988;109:529.
45. Tung RT, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1995;75:908.
46. Chua JD, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2000;133:604.
47. Brodell GK, et al. *Cleve Clin J Med*. 1992;59:91.
48. Calkins H, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;99:262.
49. Calkins H, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324:1612.
50. Borggrefe M, et al. *Clin Cardiol*. 1990;13:127.
51. Haines DE, et al. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1989;12:962.
52. Huang SK, et al: Pacing Clin Electrophysiol 11:449.
53. Bubien RS, et al. *Circulation*. 1996;94:1585.
54. Scheinman MM, et al. *JAMA*. 1982;248:851.
55. Echt DS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324:781.
56. Moss AJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1933;335:1996.
57. Raiten J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1110.
58. Goode JS Jr, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2006;3:13.
59. Hutchinson MD, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2013;10:347.
60. Raiten J, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25:482.

References

1. Roger VL, Go AS, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics 2011 update: a report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2011;123:e18–e209.
2. Wit AL. Cellular electrophysiologic mechanisms of cardiac arrhythmias. *Cardiol Clin*. 1990;8:393–409.
3. Jackman WM, Beckman KJ, McClelland JH, et al. Treatment of supraventricular tachycardia due to atrioventricular nodal reentry, by radiofrequency catheter ablation of slow-pathway conduction. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;327:313–318.
4. Hochleitner M, Hortnagl H, Ng CK, et al. Usefulness of physiologic dual-chamber pacing in drug-resistant idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy. *Am J Cardiol*. 1990;66:198–202.
5. Prevost J, Batelli F. La mort par les courants electriques: courant alternative a bas voltage. *J Physiol Path Gen*. 1899;1:399–412.
6. Hooker D, Kouwnehoven W, Langworthy D. The effect of alternating electrical currents on the heart. *Elect Eng*. 1936;55:444–454.
7. Beck C, Pritchard W, Heil H. Ventricular fibrillation of long duration abolished by electrical shock. *JAMA*. 1947;135:985–986.
8. Mirowski M, Mower MM. Transvenous automatic defibrillator as an approach to prevention of sudden death from ventricular fibrillation. *Heart Lung*. 1973;2:867–869.
9. Mangrum JM, DiMarco JP. The evaluation and management of bradycardia. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:703–709.
10. Anonymous Classification of cardiac arrhythmias and conduction disturbances. *Am Heart J*. 1979;98:263–267.
11. Kjekshus J, Swedberg K, Snapinn S. Effects of enalapril on long-term mortality in severe congestive heart failure. CONSENSUS Trial Group. *Am J Cardiol*. 1992;69:103–107.
12. Linde C, Gadler F, Edner M, et al. Results of atrioventricular synchronous pacing with optimized delay in patients with severe congestive heart failure. *Am J Cardiol*. 1995;75:919–923.
13. Nelson GS, Berger RD, Fetics BJ, et al. Left ventricular or biventricular pacing improves cardiac function at diminished energy cost in patients with dilated cardiomyopathy and left bundle-branch block. *Circulation*. 2000;102:3053–3059.
14. Clarke JM, Hamer J, Shelton JR, et al. The rhythm of the normal human heart. *Lancet*. 1976;1:508–512.
15. Truex RC. Structural basis of atrial and ventricular conduction. *Cardiovasc Clin*. 1974;6(1–24).
16. Anonymous Breathing and control of heart rate. *Br Med J*. 1978;2:1663–1664.
17. Barrett PA, Peter CT, Swan HJ, et al. The frequency and prognostic significance of electrocardiographic abnormalities in clinically normal individuals. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 1981;23:299–319.
18. Schamroth L. How to approach an arrhythmia. *Circulation*. 1973;47:420–426.
19. Josephson ME, Almendral JM, Buxton AE, et al. Mechanisms of ventricular tachycardia. *Circulation*. 1987;75:III-41–III-47.
20. Wazni O, Wilkoff B, Salid W. Catheter ablation for atrial fibrillation. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;365:2296–2304.
21. Hsia HH, Buxton AE. Work-up and management of patients with sustained and nonsustained monomorphic ventricular tachycardias. *Cardiol Clin*. 1993;11:21–37.
22. DiMarco JP. Work-up and management of sudden cardiac death survivors. *Cardiol Clin*. 1993;11:11–19.
23. Kass DA, Chen CH, Curry C, et al. Improved left ventricular mechanics from acute VDD pacing in patients with dilated cardiomyopathy and ventricular conduction delay. *Circulation*. 1999;99:1567–1573.
24. St. John Sutton MG, Plappert T, et al. Effect of cardiac resynchronization therapy on left ventricular size and function in chronic heart failure. *Circulation*. 2003;107:1985–1990.
25. Gregoratos G, Abrams J, Epstein AE, et al. ACC/AHA/NASPE 2002 guideline update for implantation of cardiac pacemakers and antiarrhythmia devices: summary article—a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (ACC/AHA/NASPE Committee to Update the 1998 Pacemaker Guidelines). *J Cardiovasc Electrophysiol*. 2002;13:1183–1199.
26. Elmqvist R, Landegren J, Pettersson SO, et al. Artificial pacemaker for treatment of Adams-Stokes syndrome and slow heart rate. *Am Heart J*. 1963;65:731–748.
27. Furman S, Robinson G. The use of an intracardiac pacemaker in the correction of total heart block. *Surg Forum*. 1958;9:245–248.
28. Greatbatch W, Holmes CF. History of implantable devices: entrepreneurs, bioengineers and the medical profession, in a unique collaboration, build an important new industry. *IEEE Eng Med Biol Soc*. 1991;10(49):38–41.
29. Daley WR. Factors associated with implantation of single- versus dual-chamber pacemakers in 1992. *Am J Cardiol*. 1998;82:392–395.
30. Abraham WT, Fisher WG, Smith AL, et al. Cardiac resynchronization in chronic heart failure. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346:1845–1853.
31. Cleland JG, Daubert JC, Erdmann E, et al. The effect of cardiac resynchronization on morbidity and mortality in heart failure. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:1539–1549.
32. Auricchio A, Stellbrink C, Sack S, et al. Long-term clinical effect of hemodynamically optimized cardiac resynchronization therapy in patients with heart failure and ventricular conduction delay. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2002;39:2026–2033.
33. Mirowski M, Mower MM, Staewen WS, et al. The development of the transvenous automatic defibrillator. *Arch Intern Med*. 1972;129:773–779.
34. Mower MM. Implantable cardioverter defibrillator therapy: 15 years experience and future expectations. In the beginning: from dogs to humans. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1995;18(3 Pt 2):506–511.
35. Mehra R, Cybulski Z. Tachyarrhythmia termination: lead system and hardware design. In: Singer I, ed. *Implantable Cardioverter-Defibrillator*. Armonk, NY: Futura; 1994:109–133.
36. McDaniel WC, Schuder JC. The cardiac ventricular defibrillation threshold: inherent limitations in its application and interpretation. *Med Instrum*. 1987;21:170–176.
37. Antiarrhythmics Versus Implantable Defibrillators (AVID) Investigators. A comparison of antiarrhythmic-drug therapy with implantable defibrillators in patients resuscitated from near-fatal ventricular arrhythmias. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:1576–1583.
38. Schmitt C, Montero M, Melichercik J. Significance of supraventricular tachyarrhythmias in patients with implanted pacing cardioverter defibrillators. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1994;17(3 Pt 1):295–302.
39. Wharton M, Santini M. Treatment of spontaneous atrial tachyarrhythmias with the Medtronic 7250 Jewel AF: worldwide clinical experience. *Circulation*. 1998;98(I):190.
40. Gartman DM, Bardy GH, Allen MD, et al. Short-term morbidity and mortality of implantation of automatic implantable cardioverter-defibrillator. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1990;100:353–357.
41. Newson C, Joshi GP, Victory R, et al. Comparison of propofol administration techniques for sedation during monitored anesthesia care. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:486–491.
42. Groh WJ, Silka MJ, Oliver RP, et al. Use of implantable cardioverter-defibrillators in the congenital long QT syndrome. *Am J Cardiol*. 1996;78:703–706.
43. Primo J, Geelen P, Brugada J, et al. Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: role of the implantable cardioverter-defibrillator. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1998;31:1081–1085.
44. Tchou PJ, Kadri N, Anderson J, et al. Automatic implantable cardioverter defibrillators and survival of patients with left ventricular dysfunction and malignant ventricular arrhythmias. *Ann Intern Med*. 1988;109:529–534.
45. Tung RT, Bajaj AK. Safety of implantation of a cardioverter-defibrillator without general anesthesia in an electrophysiology laboratory. *Am J Cardiol*. 1995;75:908–912.
46. Chua JD, Wilkoff BL, Lee I, et al. Diagnosis and management of infections involving implantable electrophysiologic cardiac devices. *Ann Intern Med*. 2000;133:604–608.
47. Brodell GK, Wilkoff BL. A novel approach to determining the cause of pacemaker lead failure. *Cleve Clin J Med*. 1992;59:91–92.
48. Calkins H, Yong P, Miller JM, et al. Catheter ablation of accessory pathways, atrioventricular nodal reentrant tachycardia, and the atrioventricular junction: final results of a prospective, multicenter clinical trial. The Atakr Multicenter Investigators Group. *Circulation*. 1999;99:262–270.
49. Calkins H, Sousa J, el-Atassi R, et al. Diagnosis and cure of the Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome or paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardias during a single electrophysiologic test. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324:1612–1618.
50. Borggrefe M, Hindricks G, Haverkamp W, et al. Catheter ablation using radiofrequency energy. *Clin Cardiol*. 1990;13:127–131.
51. Haines DE, Watson DD. Tissue heating during radiofrequency catheter ablation: a thermodynamic model and observations in isolated perfused and superfused canine right ventricular free wall. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1989;12:962–976.

52. Huang SK, Graham AR, Wharton K. Radiofrequency catheter ablation of the left and right ventricles: anatomic and electrophysiologic observations. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1988;11:449–459.
53. Bubien RS, Knotts-Dolson SM, Plumb VJ, et al. Effect of radiofrequency catheter ablation on health-related quality of life and activities of daily living in patients with recurrent arrhythmias. *Circulation*. 1996;94:1585–1591.
54. Scheinman MM, Morady F, Hess DS, et al. Catheter-induced ablation of the atrioventricular junction to control refractory supraventricular arrhythmias. *JAMA*. 1982;248:851–855.
55. Echt DS, Liebson PR, Mitchell LB, et al. Mortality and morbidity in patients receiving encainide, flecainide, or placebo. The cardiac arrhythmia suppression trial. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324:781–788.
56. Moss AJ, Hall WJ, Cannom DS, et al. Improved survival with an implanted defibrillator in patients with coronary disease at high risk for ventricular arrhythmia. Multicenter automatic defibrillator implantation trial investigators. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;335:1933–1940.
57. Raiten J, Elkassabany N, Gao W, et al. Medical intelligence article: novel uses of high frequency ventilation outside the operating room. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1110–1113.
58. Goode JS Jr, Taylor RL, Buffington CW, et al. High-frequency jet ventilation: utility in posterior left atrial catheter ablation. *Heart Rhythm*. 2006;3:13–19.
59. Hutchinson MD, Garcia FC, Mandel JE, et al. Efforts to enhance catheter stability improve atrial fibrillation ablation outcome. *Heart Rhythm*. 2013;10:347–353.
60. Raiten J, Elkassabany N, Mandel JE. The use of high-frequency jet ventilation for out of operating room anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25:482–485.

56 Anesthesia for Vascular Surgery

AHMED SHALABI and JOYCE CHANG

KEY POINTS

- Perioperative management of patients undergoing vascular surgery requires an understanding of the underlying pathophysiology of the specific vascular lesion.
- Major vascular surgery is particularly challenging to the anesthesiologist because these are high-risk operations in a patient population with a high prevalence of either overt or occult coronary artery disease, which is the leading cause of perioperative and long-term mortality after vascular surgery.
- Accurate clinical assessment of the pretest probability of significant coronary artery disease is necessary for prudent use and rational interpretation of preoperative cardiac testing.
- Guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and care suggest that coronary intervention is rarely necessary to simply decrease the risk for surgery unless such intervention is indicated, irrespective of the preoperative context. Prophylactic coronary revascularization has not been shown to reduce perioperative or long-term morbidity after major vascular surgery. Medical therapy is the cornerstone for the management of coronary artery disease.
- Patients should take their usual cardiovascular medications throughout the perioperative period. Antiplatelet therapy requires special consideration and must be individualized to each patient.
- Prevention and treatment of perioperative myocardial ischemia require careful control of the determinants of myocardial oxygen supply and demand. ST-segment monitoring, particularly with computerized ST-segment analysis, should be used to detect myocardial ischemia during the perioperative period.
- Initiation of perioperative β-adrenergic blocker therapy has potential benefits and risks.
- All patients who require statin therapy on an ongoing basis should also receive statins in the perioperative period.
- The clinical usefulness of any intraoperative monitoring technique ultimately depends on patient selection, accurate interpretation of data, and appropriate therapeutic intervention.
- Maintenance of vital organ perfusion and function by the provision of stable perioperative hemodynamics is more important to overall outcome after aortic surgery than is the choice of anesthetic drug or technique.
- The pathophysiology of aortic cross-clamping and unclamping is complex and depends on many factors, including the level of the cross-clamp, the extent of coronary artery disease and myocardial dysfunction, intravascular blood volume and distribution, activation of the sympathetic nervous system, and the anesthetic drugs and techniques.
- The degree of preoperative renal insufficiency is the strongest predictor of postoperative renal dysfunction.
- Endovascular aortic surgery has become an established, less invasive alternative to conventional open aortic repair. Endoleak, or the inability to obtain or maintain complete exclusion of the aneurysm sac from arterial blood flow, is a complication specific to endovascular aortic repair.
- The primary clinical utility of cerebral monitoring during carotid endarterectomy is to identify patients in need of carotid artery shunting; second, such monitoring is used to identify patients who may benefit from an increase in arterial blood pressure or change in surgical technique.
- Postoperative hypothermia is associated with many undesirable physiologic effects and may contribute to adverse cardiac outcome.

Preoperative Evaluation

COEXISTING DISEASE

Patients undergoing vascular surgery have a high incidence of coexisting disease, including diabetes mellitus, hypertension, renal impairment, and pulmonary disease, all of which should be assessed and, if possible, optimized before surgery. Because of the systemic nature of atherosclerotic disease, patients with vascular disease frequently have arterial disease affecting multiple vascular territories. Coronary artery disease (CAD) is the leading cause of perioperative mortality at the time of vascular surgery, and long-term survival after vascular procedures is significantly limited by the frequent occurrence of morbid cardiac events.[1] Less than 10% of patients who undergo vascular surgery have normal coronary arteries, and more than 50% have advanced or severe CAD. Unrecognized myocardial infarction (MI) (determined by wall motion abnormalities at rest in the absence of a history of MI) and silent myocardial ischemia (determined by stress-induced wall motion abnormalities in the absence of angina) often occur in vascular surgery patients (23% and 28%, respectively) and are associated with increased long-term mortality and adverse cardiac events.[2] Left ventricular systolic dysfunction (LVSD) is five times more common in patients with vascular disease than in matched controls.[3] It is not clear whether any specific category of vascular disease is associated with a greater likelihood of coexisting CAD. Some investigators have shown a similar incidence and severity of CAD in patients with aortic, lower extremity, and carotid disease. Others have shown that patients with lower extremity vascular disease are more likely to have significant CAD and to experience perioperative morbidity. Medical therapy is the cornerstone of the management of CAD.

PERIOPERATIVE AND LONG-TERM CARDIAC OUTCOMES

Preoperatively, the potential for MI and death in patients undergoing vascular surgery must be considered (Table 56.1). Nonfatal and fatal MIs are the most important and specific outcomes that determine perioperative cardiac morbidity. When multiple recent studies are pooled, the overall prevalence of perioperative MI and death is 4.9% and 2.4%, respectively. When outcomes are assessed over the long term (2 to 5 years), the prevalence of MI and death is 8.9% and 11.2%, respectively. This perioperative and long-term morbidity and mortality persist despite aggressive medical and surgical therapy.[4]

TABLE 56.1 Rates of Myocardial Infarction and Death in Patients Undergoing Vascular Surgery

Study	MI (%)	Death (%)	Comments
SHORT-TERM FOLLOW-UP (IN HOSPITAL OR 30-DAY)			
Ouyang et al.[5]	8	0	Small study
Raby et al.[6]	2.3	0.06	Aortic, lower extremity, carotid
Mangano et al.[7]	4.1	2.3	Vascular patient only reported
Bode et al.[8]	4.5	3.1	All lower extremity
Christopherson et al.[9]	4.0	2.0	All lower extremity
Mangano et al.[7]	5.0	0	Vascular patient only reported
Fleisher et al.[10]	6.0	3.0	Vascular patient only reported
Pasternack et al.[11]	4.5	1.0	Aortic, lower extremity, carotid
Krupski et al.[12]	2.1	2.9	Aortic, lower extremity
Baron et al.[13]	5.9	4.0	All aortic
Norris et al.[14]	3.3	5.4	All aortic
Fleron et al.[15]	5.5	4.1	All aortic
McFalls et al.[4]	8.4	3.2	Aortic, lower extremity
Average	4.9	2.4	
LONG-TERM FOLLOW-UP (IN HOSPITAL AND AFTER DISCHARGE)			
Raby et al[6]	7.4	5.1	20-mo follow-up
Mangano et al.[7]	4.7	3.5	15-mo follow-up
Mangano et al.[16]	19.4	13.5	24-mo follow-up
Hertzer et al.[17]	12		60-mo follow-up
Krupski et al.[12]	3.9	11.2	24-mo follow-up
McFalls et al.[4]	22		30-mo follow-up
Average	8.9	11.2	

MI, Myocardial infarction.

GUIDELINE-BASED APPROACH

A guideline-based approach to health care is relatively new and originated primarily in the United States. The American College of Cardiology (ACC) Foundation and the American Heart Association (AHA) jointly produced guidelines in the area of cardiovascular disease for more than 2 decades. The ACC/AHA Task Force on Practice Guidelines published "Guidelines on Perioperative Cardiovascular Evaluation for Noncardiac Surgery" in 1996. This evidence-based approach to perioperative evaluation and management was updated in 2002, 2007,[18] 2009,[19] and 2014.[20] A stepwise approach (simplified from the 2007 guidelines) to perioperative cardiac evaluation and care for noncardiac surgery is provided in Chapter 31. The authors emphasize that the purpose of the preoperative evaluation is not to give medical clearance but rather to perform an evaluation of the patient's current medical status; make recommendations concerning the evaluation, management, and risk for cardiac problems; and provide a clinical risk profile that the patient and caregivers can use in making treatment decisions that may influence perioperative and longer-term cardiac outcomes. The overriding theme of the perioperative guidelines is that intervention is rarely necessary to simply lower the risk associated with surgery unless such intervention is indicated, irrespective of the preoperative context. Thus, preoperative testing should not be performed unless it is likely to influence patient care. The particular challenge that the vascular surgery patient presents is emphasized throughout the document. Aspects of the updated guidelines and their evidence-based approach will be discussed throughout this chapter.

CARDIAC RISK ASSESSMENT

The preoperative cardiac assessment presents an opportunity to initiate and optimize pharmacologic management, perform appropriate diagnostic and therapeutic interventions, and adjust overall care to decrease not only perioperative risk but also long-term risks from cardiovascular events. The challenge for clinicians is to accurately assess risk for cardiac morbidity while maintaining a cost-effective, clinically relevant, and evidence-based strategy. The ACC/AHA stepwise approach considers vascular surgery distinct from other noncardiac surgical procedures and is reviewed in detail in Chapter 31. Only issues specific to vascular surgery are reviewed in this chapter.

After assessment of cardiac risk, the additional challenge exists of modifying perioperative management to reduce risk by adjusting or adding cardiac medications (e.g., β-adrenergic blocker), direct coronary intervention (e.g., percutaneous coronary intervention [PCI] or coronary artery bypass grafting [CABG]), modifying or intensifying perioperative management (e.g., invasive hemodynamic monitoring), or changing preoperative plans (e.g., performing endovascular aneurysm repair [EVAR] rather than open aortic repair). Coordination is essential among surgeons, anesthesiologists, and cardiologists, each of whom may have different criteria for risk assessment and different objectives for risk modification.

Clinical Risk Indices

Assessing cardiac risk in patients before vascular surgery is a controversial and difficult task. Although risk indices are a cost-effective screening method for determining which patients may require further cardiac evaluation (i.e., additional risk stratification with noninvasive technologies), the high pretest probability of CAD in vascular surgery patients makes the risk index somewhat less useful. Vascular surgery-specific indices have been recently developed to optimize the prediction of perioperative mortality[21] and cardiac morbidity[22] in patients undergoing elective and urgent vascular surgery. Risk indices do not provide specific risk prediction for individuals, but rather place patients in general risk categories, most commonly designated as low (cardiac risk generally <1%), intermediate (cardiac risk of 1% to 5%), or high (cardiac risk often >5%). Clinical risk variables identified by logistic regression in vascular surgery cohorts can be used along with noninvasive cardiac testing to optimize preoperative assessment of cardiac risk before vascular surgery. From the registry of the Coronary Artery Revascularization Prophylaxis (CARP) trial, the absence of multiple preoperative cardiac risk variables identifies patients with the best long-term survival after elective vascular surgery.[23]

Noninvasive Diagnostic Cardiac Testing

Accurate clinical assessment of the pretest probability of significant CAD is extremely important. In general, noninvasive cardiac testing before vascular surgery is best directed at patients considered to be at intermediate clinical risk. Such testing should not be undertaken if it is unlikely to alter patient management and should not be considered as a preliminary step leading to coronary revascularization. A revascularization procedure is rarely needed solely for the purpose of getting a patient through the perioperative period. Extensive cardiac evaluation before vascular operations can result in morbidity, delays, and patient refusal to undergo vascular surgery. A complete review of this subject is found in Chapter 31.

Cardiac Catheterization and Prophylactic Revascularization

The largest series on outcome in vascular surgery patients is that of Hertzer and colleagues[24] from the Cleveland Clinic. These investigators performed cardiac catheterization in 1000 consecutive patients scheduled to undergo peripheral vascular surgery (aortic aneurysm resection, carotid endarterectomy, and lower extremity revascularization). The incidence and severity of CAD were assessed according to the following classification: normal coronary arteries; mild-to-moderate CAD with no lesion exceeding 70% stenosis; advanced, compensated CAD with one or more lesions exceeding 70% stenosis but with adequate collateral circulation; severe, correctable CAD with more than 70% stenosis in one or more coronary arteries; and severe inoperable CAD with greater than 70% stenosis in one or more coronary arteries and severe distal disease or poor ventricular function. The most remarkable findings were that only 8.5% of patients had normal coronary arteries and 60% had advanced or severe coronary lesions (>70% stenosis). Even when CAD was not suspected by the clinical history, more than a third of patients had advanced or severe coronary lesions (Table 56.2).

TABLE 56.2 Results of Coronary Angiography in 1000 Patients with Peripheral Vascular Disease

	CLINICAL CAD					
	NONE		SUSPECTED		TOTAL	
Angiographic Classification	**No.**	**%**	**No.**	**%**	**No.**	**%**
Normal coronary arteries	64	14	21	4	85	8.5
Mild–to–moderate CAD	218	49	99	18	317	32
Advanced, compensated CAD	97	22	192	34	289	29
Severe, correctable CAD	63	14	188	34	251	25
Severe, inoperable CAD	4	1	54	10	58	5.8

CAD, Coronary artery disease.

Data from Hertzer NR, Beven EG, Young JR, et al. Coronary artery disease in peripheral vascular patients: a classification of 1000 coronary angiograms and results of surgical management. *Ann Surg*. 1984;199:223–233.

In the Hertzer series, patients with severe correctable CAD were offered CABG before their vascular surgery, patients with normal or mild-to-moderate CAD went directly to vascular surgery, and those with severe inoperable CAD were treated on an individual basis. Combined mortality rates over the immediate- and long-term (4.6-year follow-up) postoperative period are shown in Table 56.3.[17] Of the 216 patients who underwent coronary revascularization (CABG), 12 (5.5%) died after this surgery. This mortality rate is higher than that reported for patients undergoing CABG surgery without peripheral vascular disease (1% to 2%). Perhaps the risks associated with CABG should be seriously considered as part of the preoperative evaluation of these patients. When overall early and late mortality (>5 years) is considered, death occurred in 12% versus 26% of patients who did or did not undergo CABG. Although these data appear to support the beneficial effect of CABG on outcome, the mortality from CABG itself (5.5%) reduces its apparent benefits.

Two randomized clinical trials have been performed to determine the impact of prophylactic coronary artery revascularization on outcome after open aortic and lower extremity arterial vascular surgery.[4,25] Of the 5859 patients screened in the CARP trial, 41190 underwent coronary angiography based on a combination of clinical risk factors and noninvasive stress imaging data.[26] The incidence and severity of CAD on these angiograms were 43% of patients had one or more major coronary arteries with at least a 70% stenosis suitable for revascularization (and were randomized to either revascularization or no revascularization before vascular surgery); 31% had

TABLE 56.3 Perioperative and Late Cardiac Deaths after Peripheral Vascular Reconstruction in Patients Monitored over a 5-Year Period According to Coronary Angiographic Classification

		NORMAL OR MILD-TO-MODERATE CAD		ADVANCED, COMPENSATED CAD		SEVERE, CORRECTABLE CAD				SEVERE, INOPERABLE CAD		TOTAL CARDIAC DEATHS	
						WITH CABG		NO CABG					
Clinical Features	**Total No. of Patients**	**No.**	**%**	**No.**	**%**	**No.**	**%**	**No.**	**%**	**No.**	**%**	**No.**	**%**
Men	685	10/242	4.1	33/204	16	13/174	7.5	6/24	25	14/41	34	76	11
Women	315	5/160	3.1	12/85	14	12/42	29	3/11	27	8/17	47	40	13
Age <70 yr	722	10/328	3.0	29/198	15	19/148	13	3/20	15	13/28	46	74	10
Age >70 yr	278	5/74	6.8	16/91	18	6/68	8.8	6/15	40	9/30	30	42	15
Normotensive	403	7/185	3.8	15/102	15	8/82	9.8	2/15	13	8/19	42	40	9.9
Hypertensive	597	8/217	3.4	30/187	16	17/134	13	7/20	35	14/39	36	76	13
Nondiabetic	830	12/348	3.4	28/232	12	17/183	9.3	8/30	27	13/37	35	78	9.4
Diabetic	170	3/54	5.5	17/57	30	8/33	24	1/5	20	9/21	43	38	22
Total	1000	15/402	3.7	45/289	16	25/216	12	9/35	26	22/58	38	116	12

CABG, Coronary artery bypass grafting; CAD, coronary artery disease.

Data from Hertzer NR, Young JR, Beven EG, et al. Late results of coronary bypass in patients with peripheral vascular disease. II. Five–year survival according to sex, hypertension, and diabetes. *Cleve Clin J Med*. 1987;54:15–23.

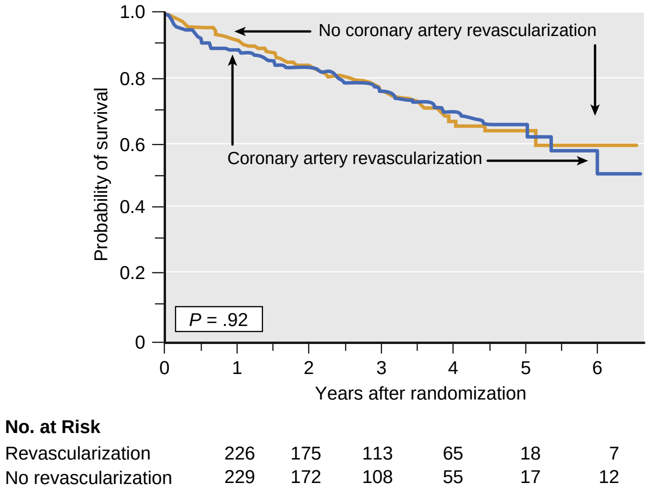


Fig. 56.1 Long-term survival in patients randomized to undergo coronary artery revascularization or no coronary artery revascularization before elective major vascular surgery (Coronary Artery Revascularization Prophylaxis trial). (From McFalls EO, Ward HB, Moritz TE, et al. Coronary-artery revascularization before elective major vascular surgery. *N Engl J Med.* 2004;351:2796–2804.)

nonobstructed coronary arteries; 18% had coronary stenosis considered unsuitable for revascularization; and 5% had left main coronary artery stenosis of 50% or more. The CARP trial showed that prophylactic revascularization (by CABG or PCI) was generally safe but did not improve long-term outcome after vascular surgery. Long-term mortality (2.7 years) was 22% in the revascularization group and 23% in the group considered inappropriate for revascularization (Fig. 56.1). Although the trial was not designed to test the short-term benefit of prophylactic revascularization, perioperative outcomes were not decreased, including death (3.1% vs. 3.4%) and MI (12% vs. 14%). The CARP trial results can be applied to most of the vascular surgery patients; however, they cannot be extrapolated to patients with unstable cardiac symptoms, left main coronary artery disease, aortic stenosis, or severe left ventricular dysfunction because these conditions excluded patients from study participation. The DECREASE-V trial 26 screened 1880 vascular surgery patients, 430 of whom with three or more clinical risk factors underwent noninvasive stress testing using stress-echo or perfusion imaging. Patients with extensive stress-induced ischemia (26%) were randomly assigned to revascularization or no revascularization. Coronary angiography showed two-vessel disease in 24%, three-vessel disease in 67%, and left main coronary artery disease in 8%. Prophylactic coronary revascularization (CABG or PCI) did not improve perioperative or long-term outcome (Table 56.4). The incidence of all-cause death or nonfatal MI at 30 days in patients who underwent revascularization or who did not was 43% versus 33%, respectively. The incidence of the composite end point at 1 year was similar, 49% versus 44%, respectively. As noted previously, this trial has come under scrutiny based on concerns of scientific misconduct by the principal investigator.

The lack of benefit of prophylactic coronary revascularization in the CARP and DECREASE-V trials is difficult to reconcile with the more favorable data from Hertzer and co-workers 25 and other studies (Coronary Artery Surgery Study [CASS][27] and Bypass Angioplasty Revascularization Investigation [BARI][28]). Clearly, issues are involved that go beyond critical coronary lesions; perhaps the current understanding of the pathophysiology of perioperative MI is incomplete. For example, perioperative MI may be caused by culprit lesions (i.e., vulnerable plaques with high likelihood of thrombotic complications) often located in coronary vessels *without* critical stenosis.[29] For this type of MI (atherothrombotic), perioperative strategies aimed at reducing potential triggers of coronary plaque destabilization and rupture may be more appropriate than those leading to coronary revascularization. Demand ischemia is likely the predominant cause of perioperative MI, which has been confirmed by a recent angiographic study.[30]

TABLE 56.4 Perioperative and Long-Term Patient Outcomes from the Dutch Echocardiographic Cardiac Risk Evaluation Applying Stress Echocardiography (DECREASE)-V—V TRIAL

	Revascularization No. (%)	No Revascularization No. (%)	HR (95% CI)	*P*-value
NO. OF PATIENTS	49	52		
Events before surgery	2 (4.1)	0		0.23
All-cause mortality	1 (2.1)	0		0.11
Myocardial infarction	3 (6.1)	0		
Composite				
Events up to 30 days after surgery	11 (22.5)	6 (11.5)	2.2 (0.74-6.6)	0.14
All-cause mortality	17 (34.7)	16 (30.8)	1.4 (0.73-2.8)	0.30
Myocardial infarction	21 (42.9)	17 (32.7)		
Composite				
Events up to 365 days after surgery	13 (26.5)	12 (23.1)	1.3 (0.55-2.9)	0.58
All-cause mortality	18 (36.7)	19 (36.5)	1.2 (0.68-2.3)	0.48
Myocardial infarction	24 (49.0)	23 (44.2)		
Composite				

CI, Confidence interval; *HR*, hazard ratio.

From Poldermans D, Schouten O, Vidakovic R, et al. A clinical randomized trial to evaluate the safety of a noninvasive approach in high-risk patients undergoing major vascular surgery. The DECREASE-V Pilot Study. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;49:1763–1769.

ASSESSMENT OF PULMONARY FUNCTION

Postoperative pulmonary complications are potentially serious in patients undergoing vascular surgery, with the most significant morbidity seen in patients undergoing open aortic procedures (see also Chapter 54). The most important pulmonary complications are atelectasis, pneumonia, respiratory failure, and exacerbation of underlying chronic disease. Given the prevalence of cigarette smoking in this population, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) and chronic bronchitis are common and, when present, place the patient at increased risk for postoperative pulmonary complications. When clinical assessment suggests severe pulmonary compromise, pulmonary function tests may be useful in evaluating and optimizing respiratory function (see also Chapters 32 and 41). Preoperative analysis of arterial blood gases should be used to establish a baseline for postoperative comparison. Baseline hypercapnia (partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide >45 mm Hg) indicates a more frequent risk for postoperative morbidity. Bronchodilator therapy may be indicated on the basis of results of pulmonary function tests, although the risk for β-adrenergic agonist–induced arrhythmia or myocardial ischemia also must be considered. Preoperative treatment with a short course of glucocorticoids (prednisone 40 mg/day for 2 days) may be helpful for patients with significant COPD or asthma. Evidence of pulmonary infection should be treated with appropriate antibiotics. Although improved pulmonary outcome with regional anesthesia is not clear, patients with significant pulmonary disease may benefit from epidural techniques. Use of these techniques in the postoperative period helps to avoid respiratory depression from systemic opiates (see also Chapter 81). Pulmonary complications in the postoperative period are difficult to avoid. Incentive spirometry and continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) do provide benefit.[31] Given proper pulmonary care, even patients with severe pulmonary insufficiency, however, may undergo aortic surgery with acceptable morbidity and mortality outcomes.[32]

ASSESSMENT OF RENAL FUNCTION

Chronic renal disease is common in vascular surgery patients and is associated with an increased risk for death and cardiovascular disease (see also Chapters 30 and 42).[33] Chronic renal disease strongly predicts long-term mortality in patients with symptomatic lower extremity arterial occlusive disease irrespective of disease severity, cardiovascular risk, and concomitant treatment.[34] Cardiovascular disease is independently associated with a decline in renal function and the development of kidney disease.[35] Serum creatinine and creatinine clearance are used to assess renal function perioperatively. A preoperative serum creatinine level more than 2 mg/dL is an independent risk factor for cardiac complications after major noncardiac surgery.[36] Preoperative creatinine clearance less than 60 mL/min is an independent predictor of both short-term and long-term mortality after elective vascular surgery.[37] Perioperative β-adrenergic blocker[38] and statin[37] administration decrease risk for death in vascular surgery patients with renal impairment. Atherosclerotic disease in the abdominal aorta or renal arteries may compromise renal blood flow and renal function. Conversely, renal artery stenosis causes hypertension through renin-induced and angiotensin-induced vasoconstriction. Hypertension itself may cause renal insufficiency or failure. Diabetic nephropathy is also common (see also Chapter 32). Superimposed on baseline abnormalities in renal function are the preoperatively and intraoperatively administered angiographic dyes, which are directly nephrotoxic. Renal ischemia occurs with interruption of renal blood flow from aortic cross-clamping. Even with infrarenal aortic cross-clamps, renal blood flow may decrease despite normal systemic arterial blood pressure and cardiac output. Embolic plaque can be showered into the renal arteries, especially when suprarenal aortic cross-clamps are applied and released. Fluctuations in intravascular volume and cardiac output can compromise renal perfusion during the intraoperative and postoperative periods. In one series of more than 500 patients, the prevalence of acute renal failure was 7% after abdominal aortic reconstruction.

PERIOPERATIVE β-ADRENERGIC BLOCKER THERAPY

Perioperative β-adrenergic blocker therapy is an important and controversial topic, particularly in patients undergoing vascular surgery, and is reviewed more fully in Chapters 31 and 32. Patients receiving chronic β-adrenergic blocker therapy should continue taking β-adrenergic blockers throughout the perioperative period. However, β-adrenergic blockers should not be used as the initial or primary treatment of tachycardia caused by perioperative events, such as hypovolemia, anemia, pain, or infection, because these conditions require prompt treatment of the underlying cause. Treatment of tachycardia caused by the sympathetic stimulation associated with surgical stress should be considered in high-risk patients, particularly those with known ischemic potential (i.e., ischemia on preoperative testing). Hypotension and bradycardia should be avoided. Acute initiation of large-dose β-adrenergic blockade in the perioperative period should be avoided. If a decision is made to initiate β-blocker treatment in the perioperative period to reduce cardiac risk, the safest approach may be to initiate therapy with a small dose and titrate to effect over a 7- to 10-day period before the planned surgery. Perioperative β-adrenergic blocker therapy can decrease the number of patients referred for preoperative cardiac testing. However, such testing should not be eliminated, and its risk-to-benefit ratio should be carefully assessed.

PERIOPERATIVE STATIN THERAPY

In addition to their lipid-lowering properties, statins have beneficial anti-inflammatory, plaque-stabilizing, and antioxidant effects (see also Chapter 32). Over the last decade, statin use has emerged as a promising strategy for the prevention of perioperative cardiovascular complications in patients undergoing vascular surgery.[39] This approach is supported by the double-blind, placebo-controlled DECREASE-III trial. Unfortunately, controversy exists regarding this trial because of scientific misconduct identified by a recent investigation by Erasmus University.[40] Statin use can help preserve renal function after aortic surgery and improve graft patency after lower extremity bypass surgery. Although current guidelines recommend the use of statins in all patients with peripheral arterial disease, the optimal timing and dosing of statins for perioperative use have not been established.

PERIOPERATIVE DUAL ANTIPLATELET THERAPY

The timing of noncardiac surgery in patients treated with coronary stents with the risk of stent thrombosis if the dual antiplatelet therapy (DAPT) is discontinued versus the risk of increased intraoperative bleeding if DAPT is continued. [20,41] Previous recommendations regarding the duration of DAPT and timing of noncardiac surgeries were based on observations of those treated with first-generation stents. Currently, used newer generations of stents, particularly the newer drug eluting stents (DES), have lower risk of in-stent thrombosis and require a shorter minimum duration of DAPT.[42] The safety of treating patients with newer generation DES treated for shorter durations of DAPT (3 to 6 months) has been demonstrated in a meta-analysis of four trials.[43] Also, in the PARIS (Patterns of Nonadherence to Antiplatelet Regimens in Stented Patients) registry, interruption of DAPT based on the physician judgment in patients undergoing surgery at any point did not affect the risk of major cardiac events.[44] Hence, the ACC/AHA guidelines were changed in 2016 to reflect those changes (see Chapters 31 and 32).[45]

Abdominal Aortic Reconstruction

Anesthesia for conventional abdominal aortic reconstruction requires an understanding of the pathophysiology, extensive knowledge of the surgical procedure, the ability to interpret sophisticated hemodynamic data, and skillful pharmacologic control and manipulation of hemodynamics. Preoperative and intraoperative communication with the surgical team is essential. All open operative procedures on the abdominal aorta and its major branches require large incisions and extensive dissection, clamping and unclamping of the aorta or its major branches, varying duration of organ ischemia-reperfusion, significant fluid shifts and temperature fluctuations, and activation of neurohumoral and inflammatory responses. The major objectives of surgical treatment of the aorta are to relieve symptoms, reduce the frequency of associated complications, and in the case of aortic aneurysm, prevent rupture. Over the last two decades, the growth and development of catheter-based technology for the treatment of peripheral arterial disease have generated tremendous interest for less invasive methods to treat aortic disease.

Endovascular aortic aneurysm repair (discussed later) has become an established, less invasive alternative to conventional open repair, and its use has expanded to more than 75% of elective repairs and 30% of rupture repairs.[46] The endovascular field continues to evolve rapidly with new devices, innovations, and indications for aortic disease.

NATURAL HISTORY AND SURGICAL MORTALITY

Abdominal Aortic Aneurysm

Abdominal aortic aneurysms (AAAs) occur frequently in elderly men, with an incidence approaching 8% (see also Chapter 65). Increasing age, smoking, family history of AAA, and atherosclerotic disease are established risk factors. Although the prevalence is less frequent in women, the risk factors for AAA resemble those in men. More than 30,000 deaths result from rupture of AAAs each year in the United States.[47] The number of hospital discharges each year with the first diagnosis of aortic aneurysm is nearly 70,000. Approximately 40,000 patients undergo repair of AAA each year in the United States, at a cost likely to exceed a billion dollars. The incidence of AAA appears to be increasing and is age- and gender-dependent.

AAA is a multifactorial disease associated with aortic aging and atherosclerosis. Although no unified concept of pathogenesis exists, genetic, biochemical, metabolic, infectious, mechanical, and hemodynamic factors may contribute to the development of AAA disease. Adventitial elastin degradation (elastolysis), a hallmark of AAA formation, may be the primary event. Chronic inflammation plays a fundamental role in the destruction of connective tissue in the aortic wall. Concomitant aortoiliac occlusive disease is present in approximately 20% to 25% of patients with AAA. Approximately 5% of patients undergoing abdominal aortic resection have inflammatory aneurysms. Rare causes of AAA disease include trauma, mycotic infection, syphilis, and Marfan syndrome.

Most AAAs are detected incidentally when imaging is performed for other reasons or through screening programs. The natural history of AAA disease is progressive enlargement and ultimate rupture and death. The diameter and rate of expansion of asymptomatic AAAs are the best predictors of the risk for rupture. Current guidelines emphasize that it is not possible to recommend a single threshold diameter for operative intervention that can be generalized to all patients. Yet, elective repair should be undertaken in all patients with AAA 6 cm or larger in diameter. Although some controversy exists regarding elective AAA repair when its diameter is in the 5.5- to 5.9-cm range, the risk for rupture of a 5.5-cm aneurysm (per year) is equal to or greater than the risk for perioperative mortality, and thus surgical repair is indicated. The 1-year incidence of probable rupture in patients refusing or unfit for elective repair is 9.4%, 10.2%, and 32.5% for aneurysms 5.5 to 5.9 cm, 6.0 to 6.9 cm, and 7.0 cm or greater, respectively.[48] Over 90% of AAAs are less than the current threshold (5.5 cm) for surgical repair at the time of detection. Randomized controlled trials in patients with AAAs 4.0 to 5.5 cm in diameter have provided important insight into the natural history of small asymptomatic aortic aneurysms.[49] Four trials have demonstrated that surveillance of small aneurysms (4.0 to 5.5 cm) is a safe management option and that early repair (open or endovascular surgery) did not result in any long-term survival benefit. Surgical repair is often considered if small aneurysms become symptomatic or expand more than 0.5 cm in a 6-month period. Although significant interest exists in medical treatment (e.g., antibiotics, β-adrenergic blockers, statins) to delay or reverse expansion of small aneurysms, evidence for a protective effect is limited.[50] Aneurysms less than 4.0 cm in diameter are thought to be relatively benign in terms of rupture and expansion.

Perioperative mortality from elective resection of infrarenal AAAs has progressively declined from 18% to 20% during the 1950s, 6% to 8% in the mid-1960s, 5% to 6% in the early 1970s, and 2% to 4% in the 1980s, at which time it plateaued. A publication of data from 1000 consecutive elective open infrarenal abdominal aneurysm repairs over a 15-year period reported a perioperative mortality rate of 2.4%.[51] Hertzer and co-workers[52] reported a mortality rate of 1.2% for 1135 consecutive elective open infrarenal abdominal aortic repairs at the Cleveland Clinic. This single-center mortality rate is considerably less than the mortality rates of 5.6% to 8.4% reported from large national data sets. These more frequent mortality rates on the national level suggest that all the technologic and treatment advances over the last 2 decades have not had an impact on outcomes of patients requiring open AAA repair. Regionalization of patient care and endovascular treatments currently hold the most promise for improvement in operative mortality.

For ruptured AAAs, perioperative mortality has not changed significantly over the last 4 decades and remains nearly 50%, with few exceptions. Including patients with rupture who die before reaching a hospital, the overall mortality rate after rupture may very well exceed 90%.

The long-term durability of open infrarenal AAA repair is excellent and well established. The incidence of late graft complications is infrequent (0.4% to 2.3%). Postoperative survival rates after repair of non-ruptured AAA are 92% at 1 year and 67% at 5 years.

Aortoiliac Occlusive Disease

The infrarenal aorta and the iliac arteries are two of the most common sites of chronic atherosclerosis. Because of the diffuse and progressive nature of aortoiliac atherosclerosis, plaque enlargement may reduce blood flow to the lower extremities below a critical level and result in symptoms of ischemia. Unlike patients with aortic aneurysmal disease, patients undergo surgery for aortoiliac occlusive disease only if they are symptomatic. Surgical intervention is indicated for disabling intermittent claudication and limb-threatening ischemia. Intervention is directed toward restoring peripheral pulsatile circulation to relieve claudication and toward preventing amputation. Patients with localized aortoiliac occlusive disease typically have claudication because collateral circulation adequate to prevent critical lower extremity ischemia usually exists. Perioperative mortality is lower in patients undergoing aortoiliac reconstruction than in those undergoing abdominal aortic surgery.

Therapeutic options for managing aortoiliac occlusive disease include anatomic or direct reconstruction (i.e., aortobifemoral bypass), extra-anatomic or indirect bypass grafts (i.e., axillofemoral bypass), and catheter-based endoluminal techniques (i.e., percutaneous transluminal angioplasty [PTA] with or without stent insertion). Aortobifemoral bypass is viewed as the gold standard in treating aortoiliac occlusive disease. Extra-anatomic bypass grafts are generally reserved for specific indications, usually patients with infection, failure of previous reconstruction, or prohibitive risk. Reduced long-term patency and inferior functional results are frequently the trade-off for lower perioperative morbidity and mortality. Catheter-based endoluminal techniques, such as PTA, are used for relatively localized disease and may be reasonable alternatives to aortobifemoral bypass in 10% to 15% of patients with aortoiliac occlusive disease.

Renal and Visceral Arterial Insufficiency

Atherosclerosis is the most common cause of renal artery stenosis. Occlusive lesions are located almost exclusively in the proximal segment and orifice of the renal artery and are usually an extension of aortic atherosclerosis. Fibromuscular dysplasia is an important, but less common, cause of renal artery stenosis and most frequently involves the distal two thirds of the renal arteries. Hemodynamically significant renal artery stenosis may cause hypertension by activation of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, and bilateral involvement may result in renal failure. Patients with renovascular hypertension frequently have poorly controlled hypertension despite maximal medical therapy. These patients often have severe bilateral renal artery stenosis and may have recurrent congestive heart failure or flash pulmonary edema. Indications for intervention include control of hypertension and salvage of renal function.

Operative interventions include aortorenal bypass, extra-anatomic bypass (hepatorenal or splenorenal bypass), or transaortic endarterectomy. Suprarenal or supraceliac aortic cross-clamping is frequently required for open operative interventions. PTA with stenting of the renal artery is used as the first-line treatment in selected patients.

Stenosis at the origin of the celiac and mesenteric arteries occurs as a result of extension of aortic atherosclerosis. The inferior mesenteric artery is by far the most commonly involved, followed by the superior mesenteric artery and the celiac artery.

Occlusion of a single vessel rarely causes ischemic symptoms because of the extensive nature of visceral collateralization. However, occlusion or significant stenosis of any two vessels may compromise collateral flow sufficiently to give rise to chronic visceral ischemia. Operative repair of visceral artery stenosis is reserved for symptomatic patients. Operative interventions include transaortic endarterectomy and bypass grafts, which frequently require supraceliac aortic cross-clamping. Mortality rates for such procedures range from 7% to 18%. To avoid the high mortality associated with open repair, PTA with stenting has increasingly been applied in patients with chronic visceral ischemia. Acute visceral artery occlusion can be caused by an embolus or, less commonly, by thrombosis. To avoid the extremely high mortality associated with acute visceral ischemia, diagnosis and surgical intervention must occur before gangrene of the bowel develops.

AORTIC CROSS CLAMPING

The pathophysiology of aortic cross-clamping is complex and depends on many factors, including level of the cross-clamp, status of the left ventricle, degree of periaortic collateralization, intravascular blood volume and distribution, activation of the sympathetic nervous system, and anesthetic drugs and techniques. Most abdominal aortic reconstructions require clamping at the infrarenal level. However, clamping at the suprarenal and supraceliac levels is required for suprarenal aneurysms and renal or visceral reconstructions and is frequently necessary for juxtarenal aneurysms, inflammatory aneurysms, and aortoiliac occlusive disease with proximal extension. These higher levels of aortic occlusion have a significant impact on the cardiovascular system, as well as on other vital organs rendered ischemic or hypoperfused. Ischemic complications may result in renal failure, hepatic ischemia and coagulopathy, bowel infarction, and paraplegia. With EVAR now common, an increasing proportion of patients undergoing open repair have anatomically complex aneurysms, many of which require suprarenal cross- clamping.[53]

Hemodynamic and Metabolic Changes

The hemodynamic and metabolic changes associated with aortic cross-clamping are summarized in Box 56.1. The magnitude and direction of these changes are complex, dynamic, and vary among experimental and clinical studies. However, several important factors must be considered (Box 56.2). The systemic cardiovascular consequences of aortic cross-clamping can be dramatic, depending primarily on the level at which the cross-clamp is applied. Arterial hypertension above the clamp and arterial hypotension below the clamp are the most consistent components of the hemodynamic response to aortic cross-clamping at any level. The increase in arterial blood pressure above the clamp is primarily due to the sudden increase in impedance to aortic blood flow and the resultant increase in systolic ventricular wall tension or afterload. However, factors such as myocardial contractility, preload, blood volume, and activation of the sympathetic nervous system also may be important.[54] Cross-clamping of the aorta at or above the diaphragm results in the most profound increases in arterial blood pressure unless diverting circulatory support or IV vasodilators are used. Changes in cardiac output and filling pressure with aortic cross-clamping are not consistent and require an integrated approach in understanding

BOX 56.1 Physiologic Changes With Aortic Cross-Clamping* and Therapeutic Interventions

Hemodynamic Changes

↑ Arterial blood pressure above the clamp
↓ Arterial blood pressure below the clamp
↑ Segmental wall motion abnormalities
↑ Left ventricular wall tension
↓ Ejection fraction
↓ Cardiac output[†,‡]
↓ Renal blood flow
↑ Pulmonary occlusion pressure
↑ Central venous pressure
↑ Coronary blood flow

Metabolic Changes

↓ Total body oxygen consumption
↓ Total body carbon dioxide production
↑ Mixed venous oxygen saturation
↓ Total body oxygen extraction
↑ Epinephrine and norepinephrine
Respiratory alkalosis
Metabolic acidosis

Therapeutic Interventions

- Afterload reduction
  - Sodium nitroprusside
  - Inhalational anesthetics
  - Amrinone
  - Shunts and aorta-to-femoral bypass
- Preload reduction
  - Nitroglycerin
  - Controlled phlebotomy
  - Atrial-to-femoral bypass
- Renal protection
  - Fluid administration
  - Distal aortic perfusion techniques
  - Selective renal artery perfusion
  - Mannitol
  - Drugs to augment renal perfusion
- Other
  - Hypothermia
  - ↓ Minute ventilation
  - Sodium bicarbonate

*These changes are of greater significance with longer duration of cross-clamping and with more proximal cross-clamping.

[†] Cardiac output may increase with thoracic cross-clamping.

[‡] When ventilatory settings are unchanged from pre-clamp levels.

BOX 56.2 Factors That May Influence the Magnitude and Direction of Physiologic Changes Occurring With Aortic Cross-Clamping

Level of aortic cross-clamp
Species differences
Anesthetic agents and techniques
Use of vasodilator therapy
Use of diverting circulatory support
Degree of periaortic collateralization
Left ventricular function
Status of the coronary circulation
Volume status
Neuroendocrine activation
Duration of aortic cross-clamp
Body temperature

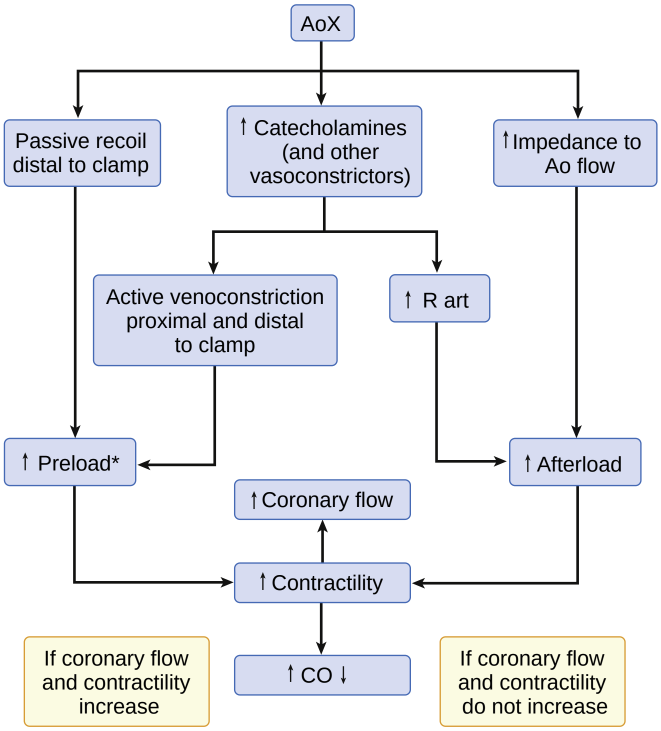

AoX
Passive recoil distal to clamp
↑ Catecholamines (and other vasoconstrictors)
↑ Impedance to Ao flow
Active venoconstriction proximal and distal to clamp
↑ R art
↑ Preload*
↑ Afterload
↑ Coronary flow
↑ Contractility
If coronary flow and contractility increase
↑ CO ↓
If coronary flow and contractility do not increase

Fig. 56.2 Systemic hemodynamic response to aortic cross-clamping. Preload *(asterisk)* does not necessarily increase with infrarenal clamping. Depending on splanchnic vascular tone, blood volume can be shifted into the splanchnic circulation and preload will not increase. *Ao*, Aortic; *AoX*, aortic cross-clamping; *CO*, cardiac output; *R art*, arterial resistance.

TABLE 56.5 Percent Change in Cardiovascular Variables on Initiation of Aortic Occlusion

	PERCENT CHANGE AFTER OCCLUSION		
Cardiovascular Variable	**Supraceliac**	**Suprarenal-Infraceliac**	**Infrarenal**
Mean arterial blood pressure	54	5*	2*
Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure	38	10*	0*
End-diastolic area	28	2*	9*
End-systolic area	69	10*	11*
Ejection fraction	−38	−10*	−3*
Patients with wall motion abnormalities	92	33	0

*Statistically different ($P < .05$) from group undergoing supraceliac aortic occlusion.

From Roizen MF, Beaupre PN, Alpert RA, et al. Monitoring with two-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography: comparison of myocardial function in patients undergoing supraceliac, suprarenal-infraceliac, or infrarenal aortic occlusion. *J Vasc Surg*. 1984;1:300–305.

the direction and magnitude of such changes (Fig. 56.2). Cross-clamping of the proximal descending thoracic aorta increases mean arterial, central venous, mean pulmonary arterial, and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure by 35%, 56%, 43%, and 90%, respectively, and decreases the cardiac index by 29%.[55] Heart rate and left ventricular stroke work are not significantly changed. Supraceliac aortic cross-clamping increases mean arterial pressure by 54% and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure by 38%.[56] Ejection fraction, as determined by two-dimensional echocardiography, decreases by 38%. Despite normalization of systemic and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure with anesthetic agents and vasodilator therapy, supraceliac aortic cross-clamping causes significant increases in left ventricular end-systolic and end-diastolic area (69% and 28%, respectively), as well as wall motion abnormalities indicative of ischemia in 11 of 12 patients (Table 56.5). Aortic cross- clamping at the suprarenal level causes similar but smaller cardiovascular changes and clamping at the infrarenal level is associated with only minimal changes and no wall motion abnormalities.

The marked increases in ventricular filling pressure (preload) reported with high aortic cross-clamping have been attributed to increased afterload and redistribution of blood volume, which is of prime importance during thoracic aortic cross-clamping. The splanchnic circulation, an important source of functional blood volume reserve, is central to this hypothesis. The splanchnic organs contain nearly 25% of the total blood volume, nearly two thirds (>800 mL) of which can be autotransfused from the highly compliant venous vasculature into the systemic circulation within seconds.[57] Primarily because of smaller splanchnic venous capacitance, blood volume is redistributed from vascular beds distal to the clamp to the relatively noncompliant vascular beds proximal to the clamp (Fig. 56.3). Both passive and active mechanisms lower splanchnic venous capacitance with thoracic aortic cross-clamping. Cross-clamping the aorta above the splanchnic system dramatically reduces splanchnic arterial flow, which produces a significant reduction in pressure within the splanchnic capacitance vessels.[58] This decreased pressure allows the splanchnic veins to passively recoil and increase venous return to the heart and blood volume proximal to the clamp. Thoracic aortic cross-clamping also results in significant increases in plasma epinephrine and norepinephrine, which may enhance venomotor tone both above and below the clamp. The splanchnic veins are highly sensitive to adrenergic stimulation. The major effect of catecholamines on the splanchnic capacitance vessels is venoconstriction, which actively forces out splanchnic blood, reduces splanchnic venous capacitance, and increases venous return to the heart.[58]

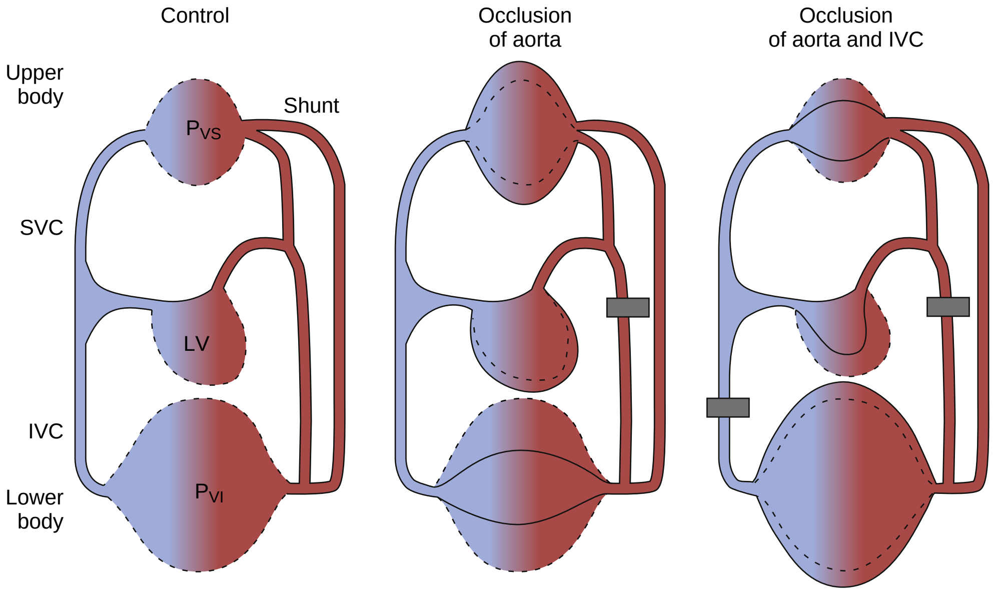


Fig. 56.3 Schematic drawing of the circulation. Compliant regions *(dashed lines)* of the upper and lower part of the body and end-diastolic volumes of the left ventricle in control state *(left panel)* are shown after occlusion of the aorta alone *(middle panel)* and combined occlusion of the aorta and inferior vena cava *(right panel)*. *IVC*, Inferior vena cava; *LV*, left ventricle; *PVS and PVI*, pressure in compliant regions of the upper and lower body, respectively; *Shunt*, physiologic shunt; *SVC*, superior vena cava.

Several animal studies support the blood volume redistribution hypothesis. Cross-clamping the thoracic aorta in dogs results in marked increases in mean arterial pressure and end-diastolic left ventricular pressure (84% and 188%, respectively) and no significant change in stroke volume.[59] In this same experimental model, simultaneous cross-clamping of the thoracic aorta and the inferior vena cava resulted in no significant change in mean arterial pressure or preload (see Fig. 56.3). Stroke volume was reduced by 74%. By transfusing blood (above the clamps) during this period of simultaneous clamping, the authors reproduced the hemodynamic effect of thoracic aortic cross-clamping alone. This study also demonstrated that thoracic aortic cross-clamping is associated with a significant and dramatic increase (155%) in blood flow above the level of the clamp whereas no change in blood flow occurred with simultaneous aortic and inferior vena cava clamping. In other animal models, the proximal aortic hypertension and increased central venous pressure (CVP) occurring after thoracic aortic cross-clamping were completely reversed by phlebotomy.[60] Aortic cross-clamping at the thoracic and suprarenal levels in dogs both resulted in proximal aortic hypertension, but only occlusion at the thoracic level increased central venous pressure.[61] In this study, thoracic aortic occlusion increased blood volume in organs and tissues proximal to the clamp whereas no such increase occurred with suprarenal aortic cross-clamping. These experimental data strongly support the hypothesis of blood volume redistribution during aortic cross-clamping and help explain the marked differences in hemodynamic responses observed after aortic cross-clamping at different levels.[56]

Afterload-dependent increases in preload also occur with aortic cross-clamping, usually in the setting of impaired myocardial contractility and reduced coronary reserve. The impaired left ventricle may respond to increased afterload with an increase in end-systolic volume and a concomitant reduction in stroke volume (afterload mismatch). The reduction in stroke volume may be due to limited preload reserve, myocardial ischemia, or inability of the heart to generate a pressure-induced increase in contractility (the Anrep effect). If right ventricular function remains normal, the pre-clamp right ventricular stroke volume added to the increased left ventricular end-systolic volume results in left ventricular dilation and elevated end-diastolic volume. If corrective measures are not undertaken, overt left ventricular overload may result, with severe peripheral organ dysfunction and pulmonary edema.

Most clinical studies indicate that cardiac output decreases with thoracic aortic cross-clamping (without vasodilator therapy or diverting circulatory support), whereas most animal studies show no significant change or an increase in cardiac output.

However, the status of the left ventricle clearly plays a major role. Whereas a normal intact heart can withstand large increases in volume without significant ventricular distention or dysfunction, an impaired heart with reduced myocardial contractility and coronary reserve may respond to such increase in volume conditions with marked ventricular distention as a result of acute left ventricular dysfunction and myocardial ischemia. Although impaired myocardial contractility and reduced coronary reserve are rare in animal experiments, such disorders are frequent in the elderly population undergoing aortic reconstruction. The increase in ventricular loading conditions seen with thoracic and supraceliac cross-clamping[55,56] in the clinical setting may increase left ventricular wall stress (afterload), with resultant acute deterioration of left ventricular function and myocardial ischemia.

Impaired subendocardial perfusion caused by high intramyocardial pressure may be the cause of wall motion abnormalities and changes in ejection fraction. Reflex mechanisms causing immediate feedback inhibition may also explain the reduction in cardiac output with aortic cross-clamping. For example, baroreceptor activation resulting from increased aortic pressure should depress the heart rate, contractility, and vascular tone. Thoracic aortic cross-clamping with the use of vasodilator therapy to normalize ventricular loading conditions maintains or increases cardiac output.[65] The metabolic effects of aortic cross-clamping are summarized in Box 56.1. Cross-clamping of the thoracic aorta decreases total-body O2 consumption by approximately 50%. For reasons that are unclear, O2 consumption decreases in tissues above the clamp. In clinical studies, increased mixed venous O2 saturation occurs with aortic cross-clamping above the celiac axis. This increase in mixed venous O2 saturation may be explained by a reduction in O2 consumption that exceeds the reduction in cardiac output, thus decreasing total body O2 extraction. Central hypervolemia and increased arteriovenous shunting in tissues proximal to the aortic clamp may play a role in reducing total body O2 extraction. Arterial blood pressure, blood flow, and O2 consumption distal to a thoracic aortic cross-clamp decrease by 78% to 88%, 79% to 88%, and 62%, respectively, from baseline values before clamping. Blood flow through tissues and organs below the level of aortic occlusion is dependent on perfusion pressure and is independent of cardiac output. Administration of sodium nitroprusside to maintain proximal aortic pressure above the cross-clamp at pre-clamp levels has been shown to further reduce arterial pressure distal to the clamp by 53%. As discussed later, these data have significant implications regarding vital organ protection during aortic cross-clamping.

The cardiovascular response to infrarenal aortic cross-clamping is less significant than with high aortic cross-clamping (see Table 56.5). Although several clinical reports have noted no significant hemodynamic response to infrarenal cross-clamping, the hemodynamic response generally consists of increases in arterial pressure (7% to 10%) and systemic vascular resistance (20% to 32%), with no significant change in heart rate. Cardiac output is most consistently decreased by 9% to 33%. Reported changes in ventricular filling pressure have been inconsistent. Blood volume redistribution may affect preload with infrarenal aortic cross-clamping (see Fig. 56.3). In this situation, blood volume below the clamp shifts to the compliant venous segments of the splanchnic circulation above the clamp, thereby dampening the expected increase in preload. The preload changes with infrarenal aortic cross-clamping also may depend on the status of the coronary circulation. Patients with severe ischemic heart disease responded to infrarenal aortic cross-clamping with significantly increased central venous (35%) and pulmonary capillary (50%) pressure, whereas patients without CAD had decreased filling pressure. Echocardiographically detected segmental wall motion abnormalities occur in up to 30% of patients during infrarenal aortic reconstruction, with over 60% occurring at the time of aortic cross-clamping. Patients with aortoiliac occlusive disease may have less hemodynamic response to infrarenal aortic cross-clamping than do patients with AAA disease, perhaps as a result of more extensive periaortic collateral vascularization.

RENAL FUNCTION AND PROTECTION

Preservation of renal function is highly important during aortic reconstructive surgery. Acute renal failure occurs in approximately 3% of patients undergoing elective infrarenal aortic reconstruction, and mortality resulting from postoperative acute renal failure is more frequent than 40%. Despite significant improvements in the perioperative care of these patients, the frequent incidence of morbidity and mortality resulting from acute renal failure has remained largely unchanged over the last several decades. Most of the morbidity associated with significant postoperative renal dysfunction is nonrenal.

The adequacy of renal perfusion “cannot” be assumed by urine output. Although urine output is closely monitored and often augmented during aortic surgery, intraoperative urine output does not predict postoperative renal function. Procedures requiring aortic cross-clamping above the renal arteries dramatically reduce renal blood flow. Experimental studies report an 83% to 90% reduction in renal blood flow during thoracic aortic cross-clamping. Infrarenal aortic cross-clamping in humans is associated with a 75% increase in renal vascular resistance, a 38% decrease in renal blood flow, and a redistribution of intrarenal blood flow toward the renal cortex. These rather profound alterations in renal hemodynamics occurred despite no significant change in systemic hemodynamics, and they persisted after unclamping. The sustained deterioration in renal perfusion and function during and after infrarenal aortic cross-clamping has been attributed to renal vasoconstriction, but the specific pathophysiologic process remains unknown. Renal sympathetic blockade with epidural anesthesia to a T6 level does not prevent or modify the severe impairment in renal perfusion and function that occurs during and after infrarenal aortic cross-clamping. Although plasma renin activity is increased during aortic cross-clamping, pretreatment with converting enzyme inhibitors before infrarenal aortic cross-clamping does not attenuate the decreased renal blood flow and glomerular filtration rate. Other mediators, such as plasma endothelin, myoglobin, and prostaglandins, may contribute to the decreased renal perfusion and function after aortic cross-clamping.

Acute tubular necrosis accounts for nearly all the renal dysfunction and failure after aortic reconstruction. The degree of preoperative renal insufficiency remains the strongest predictor of postoperative renal dysfunction. In addition to aortic cross-clamping-induced reductions in renal blood flow, ischemic reperfusion injury, intravascular volume depletion, embolization of atherosclerotic debris to the kidneys, and surgical trauma to the renal arteries all contribute to renal dysfunction.

Mannitol, loop diuretics, and dopamine are used clinically to preserve renal function during aortic surgery. Significant controversy exists regarding the use of these drugs, as well as the mechanisms by which they may offer a protective effect. Although not proved, pharmacologic “protection” before aortic cross-clamping is believed to be beneficial and is therefore given. The use of mannitol 12.5 g/70 kg to induce osmotic diuresis before aortic cross-clamping is ubiquitous in clinical practice. Mannitol improves renal cortical blood flow during infrarenal aortic cross-clamping and reduces ischemia-induced renal vascular endothelial cell edema and vascular congestion. Other mechanisms by which mannitol may be beneficial include acting as a scavenger of free radicals, decreasing renin secretion, and increasing renal prostaglandin synthesis. Loop diuretics and low-dose dopamine (1 to 3 μg/kg/min) are used to protect the kidneys from aortic cross-clamp-induced injury by increasing renal blood flow and urine output intraoperatively. Routine use of these drugs is common for patients with preoperative renal insufficiency and for procedures requiring suprarenal aortic cross-clamping. Intraoperative use of these drugs requires increased surveillance of intravascular volume and electrolytes during the postoperative period. Therapy with these drugs could actually be harmful because of hypovolemia and resultant renal hypoperfusion. In addition, dopamine's positive inotropic and chronotropic activity may cause tachycardia and increase myocardial O2 consumption in patients with limited coronary reserve.

Fenoldopam mesylate, a selective dopamine type 1 agonist that preferentially dilates the renal and splanchnic vascular beds, has shown some promise as a renoprotective drug. However, its role in the prevention of renal dysfunction after aortic surgery is not known. Statin use is associated with preserved renal function after aortic surgery requiring suprarenal aortic cross-clamping.[63] Remote ischemic preconditioning reduces the incidence of renal impairment after open aortic surgery.[64] Optimal systemic hemodynamics, including maintenance of intravascular volume and hematocrit, is generally considered the most effective means of renal protection during and after aortic cross-clamping. The goal is to achieve a preload adequate to allow the left ventricle to cope with cross-clamping-induced changes in contractility and afterload while maintaining cardiac output. However, in providing such therapy, excessive intravascular volume should be avoided because it may lead to inappropriate increases in preload or pulmonary edema in patients with decreased myocardial reserve.

THERAPEUTIC STRATEGIES

Patients with preexisting impaired ventricular function and reduced coronary reserve are most vulnerable to the stress imposed on the cardiovascular system by aortic cross-clamping. Rational therapeutic strategies to prevent the deleterious effect of aortic cross-clamping primarily include measures to reduce afterload and maintain a normal preload and cardiac output. Vasodilators, positive and negative inotropic drugs, and controlled intravascular volume depletion (i.e., phlebotomy) may be used selectively.

Patients with impaired ventricular function requiring supraceliac aortic cross-clamping are the most challenging. Myocardial ischemia, reflecting an unfavorable balance between myocardial O2 supply and demand, may result from the hemodynamic consequences of aortic cross-clamping. Controlled (i.e., slow clamp application) supraceliac aortic cross-clamping is important to avoid abrupt and extreme stress on the heart. Both afterload and preload reduction are often required. Afterload reduction, most commonly accomplished with the use of sodium nitroprusside or clevidipine (predominantly arteriolar dilators), is necessary to unload the heart and reduce ventricular wall tension. In a large series of patients requiring cross-clamping of the descending thoracic aorta, stable left ventricular function was maintained with sodium nitroprusside during cross-clamping. Sodium nitroprusside most likely allowed adequate intravascular volume before unclamping, which resulted in stable unclamping hemodynamics. A normal preload is equally important and involves careful IV fluid titration and vasodilator administration. Nitroglycerin can be used because it increases venous capacity more than does sodium nitroprusside.

In patients without evidence of left ventricular decompensation or myocardial ischemia during supraceliac aortic cross-clamping, a proximal aortic mean arterial pressure of up to 120 mm Hg is acceptable. The surgeon may request lower proximal arterial pressure if friable aortic tissue is encountered. Blood flow below the aortic clamp depends on pressure and decreases further during therapy with vasodilators. In this setting, vital organs and tissues distal to the clamp are exposed to reduced perfusion pressure and blood flow. Though infrequent, maintenance of adequate cardiac output may require active intervention with inotropic drugs.

BOX 56.3 Physiologic Changes With Aortic Unclamping* and Therapeutic Intervention

Hemodynamic Changes

↓ Myocardial contractility
↓ Arterial blood pressure
↑ Pulmonary artery pressure
↓ Central venous pressure
↓ Venous return
↓ Cardiac output

Metabolic Changes

↑ Total body oxygen consumption
↑ Lactate
↓ Mixed venous oxygen saturation
↑ Prostaglandins
↑ Activated complement
↑ Myocardial-depressant factor(s)
↓ Temperature
Metabolic acidosis

Therapeutic Interventions

↓ Inhaled anesthetics
↓ Vasodilators
↑ Fluid administration
↑ Vasoconstrictor drugs
Reapply cross-clamp for severe hypotension
Consider mannitol
Consider sodium bicarbonate

*These changes are of greater significance with longer duration of cross-clamping and with more proximal cross-clamping.

AORTIC UNCLAMPING

The hemodynamic and metabolic effects of aortic unclamping are listed in Box 56.3. The hemodynamic response to unclamping depends on many factors, including the level of aortic occlusion, total occlusion time, use of diverting support, and intravascular volume. Hypotension, the most consistent hemodynamic response to aortic unclamping, can be profound, particularly after removal of a supraceliac cross-clamp (Fig. 56.4). Reactive hyperemia in tissues and organs distal to the clamp and the resultant relative central hypovolemia are the dominant mechanisms of the hypotension. Washout of vasoactive and cardiodepressant mediators from ischemic tissues, as well as humoral factors,

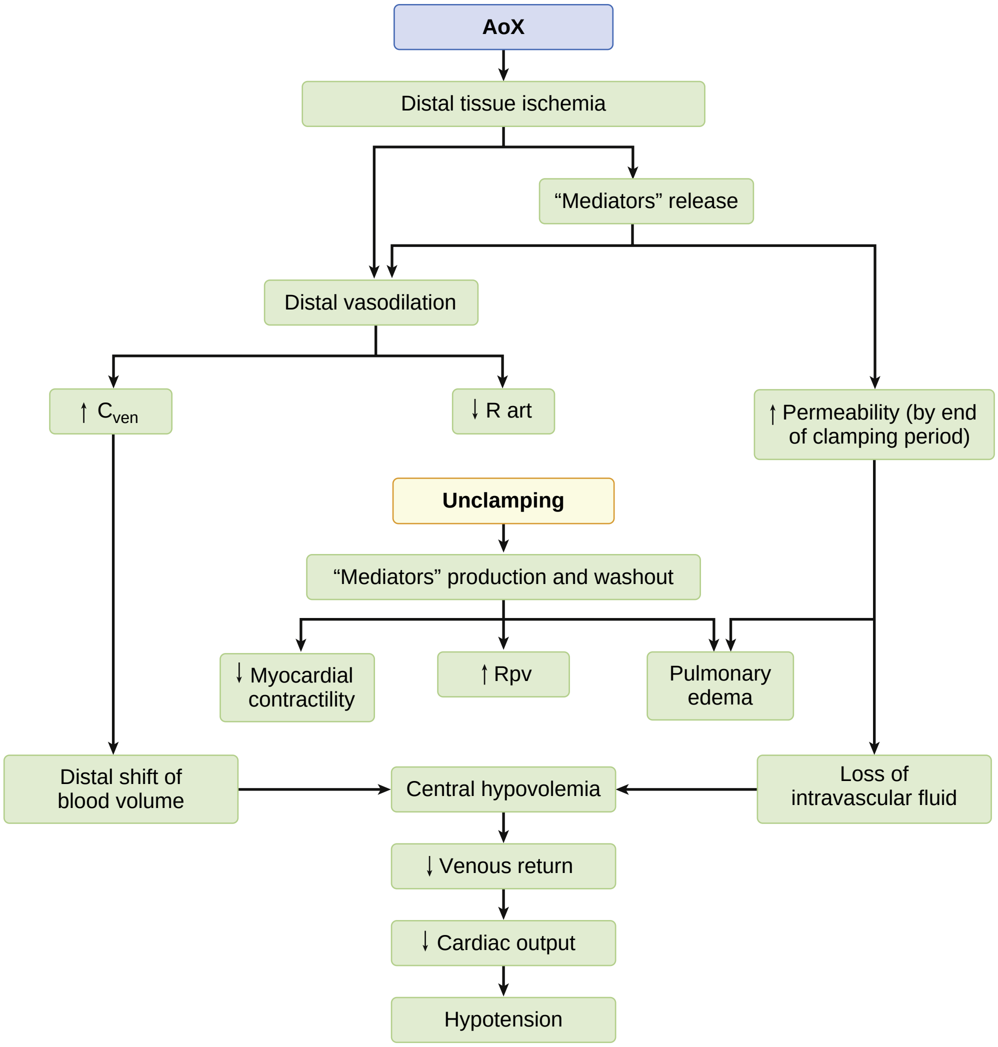

AoX
Distal tissue ischemia
"Mediators" release
Distal vasodilation
↑ C_{ven}
↓ R art
↑ Permeability (by end of clamping period)
Unclamping
"Mediators" production and washout
↓ Myocardial contractility
↑ Rpv
Pulmonary edema
Distal shift of blood volume
Central hypovolemia
Loss of intravascular fluid
↓ Venous return
↓ Cardiac output
Hypotension

Fig. 56.4 Systemic hemodynamic response to aortic unclamping. *AoX*, Aortic cross-clamping; C_{ven}, venous capacitance; *R art*, arterial resistance; *Rpv*, pulmonary vascular resistance.

may also contribute to the hemodynamic responses after unclamping the aorta. These humoral factors and mediators, which may also play a role in organ dysfunction after aortic occlusion, include lactic acid, renin-angiotensin, O2 free radicals, prostaglandins, neutrophils, activated complement, cytokines, and myocardial-depressant factors.[54]

Avoidance of significant hypotension with unclamping requires close communication with the surgical team, awareness of the technical aspect of the surgical procedure, and appropriate administration of fluids and vasoactive drugs. It is essential that correction of preoperative fluid deficits, maintenance of intraoperative fluid requirements, and replacement of blood loss be accomplished before unclamping. Vasodilators, if used, should be gradually reduced and discontinued before unclamping. The inspired concentrations of volatile anesthetics should be decreased. Moderate augmenting of intravascular volume by administration of fluids (~500 mL) during the immediate prerelease period is indicated for infrarenal unclamping. More aggressive intravascular fluid administration is required in the period immediately preceding supraceliac unclamping. Maintaining increased central venous or pulmonary capillary wedge pressure during the cross-clamp period is not indicated and may result in significant overtransfusion of fluids and blood products. If significant hypotension results, gradual release of the aortic clamp and reapplication or digital compression are important measures in maintaining hemodynamic stability during unclamping. Although vasopressor requirements are minimal after release of the infrarenal clamp, significant support is often needed after the removal of supraceliac clamps. Caution must be observed when vasopressor support is used in this setting because profound proximal hypertension may occur if reapplication of the cross-clamp is required above the celiac axis. In addition, hypertension should be avoided to prevent damage to or bleeding from the vascular anastomoses.

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT

Intraoperative Monitoring

The potential for significant and rapid blood loss cannot be underestimated. A central line and two peripheral lines are usually used as intravenous (IV) access. The choice of the type and the size of the central line can be decided on a case-by-case basis. Placement of an arterial catheter should be routine in all patients undergoing aortic reconstruction.

As with other vascular procedures, the radial artery is most commonly selected for cannulation because of its superficial location, easy accessibility, and low complication rate. A noninvasive blood pressure cuff should be placed on the arm contralateral to the arterial catheter in the event of catheter malfunction.

A central venous catheter should be used for all open aortic procedures. It allows monitoring of CVP and administration of drugs directly into the central circulation. The routine, nonselective use of pulmonary artery catheter monitoring is not recommended. It should be reserved for patients with severely limited cardiopulmonary function or complex aortic reconstruction. In patients with good left ventricular and pulmonary function, CVP correlates well with left ventricular filling pressure. The invasive monitoring catheters can be placed before or after induction of general anesthesia. The advantage of preinduction catheter placement is assessment of the patient's awake (i.e., baseline) cardiovascular status, which allows correction of significant abnormalities in cardiac filling and function before induction.

With selective use, accurate interpretation of data, and rational treatment strategies, pulmonary artery catheter monitoring may be beneficial in high-risk patients undergoing complex aortic reconstruction. Yet the clinical value of pulmonary artery catheter monitoring in high-risk patients has not been established.[65] Clinical studies over the last 2 decades have yielded quite conflicting and variable results, including both increases and decreases in mortality. The National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute and the Food and Drug Administration (FDA)[66] sponsored a large prospective, randomized trial that compared goal-directed therapy guided by a pulmonary artery catheter with standard care without the use of a pulmonary artery catheter in high-risk surgical patients. The result found no benefit in treatment guided by a pulmonary artery catheter.[67] Yet this study did not find an increase in mortality with insertion and use of a pulmonary artery catheter.

Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) has been used intraoperatively to assess global ventricular function, guide intravascular fluid therapy, and monitor for myocardial ischemia. Patients requiring supraceliac aortic cross-clamping have significant increases in the end-diastolic area and significant decreases in ejection fraction on echocardiography that are not completely normalized with vasodilators and frequently are not detected by pulmonary artery catheter monitoring.[56]

The optimal intraoperative monitoring techniques for patients undergoing abdominal aortic reconstruction have not been established. Existing clinical studies offer insufficient data to conclusively answer the question of whether pulmonary artery catheter or TEE monitoring improves outcome. The clinical usefulness of any monitoring technique ultimately depends on patient selection, accurate interpretation of data, and appropriate therapeutic intervention.

Cell Salvage

Intraoperative cell salvage is a widely used technique combined with allogenic blood transfusion and in some centers is considered routine. The equipment is expensive and requires significant training and expertise. An early, nonrandomized study reported a 75% reduction in the number of allogeneic red blood cell (RBC) units transfused during elective aortic surgery with the use of cell salvage. Later randomized studies have reported conflicting results. The routine use of cell salvage during aortic surgery may not be cost-effective and thus it may best be reserved for a select group of patients with an expected large blood loss. A cost-effective option is to use the cell salvage reservoir for blood collection and activate the full salvage process only if large blood loss occurs.

Anesthetic Drugs and Techniques

Various anesthetic techniques, including general anesthesia, regional (epidural) anesthesia, and combined techniques, have been used successfully for abdominal aortic reconstruction. Combined techniques most commonly use a lumbar or low thoracic epidural catheter in addition to general anesthetic. Local anesthetics, opioids, or, more commonly, a combination of the two may be administered by bolus or continuous epidural infusion. Maintenance of vital organ perfusion and function by the provision of stable perioperative hemodynamics is more important to overall outcome than is the choice of anesthetic drug or technique.[14] Therefore, the specific anesthetic technique for patients undergoing abdominal aortic reconstruction is important insofar as it allows rapid and precise control of hemodynamic parameters. Given the frequent incidence of cardiac morbidity and mortality in patients undergoing aortic reconstruction, factors that influence ventricular work and myocardial perfusion are of prime importance. Induction of general anesthesia should ensure that stable hemodynamics are maintained during loss of consciousness, laryngoscopy and endotracheal intubation, and the immediate postinduction period. A variety of IV anesthetics (propofol, etomidate, thiopental) are suitable. The addition of a short-acting, potent opioid such as fentanyl or sufentanil usually provides stable hemodynamics during and after induction of anesthesia. Volatile anesthetics may be administered in low concentrations before endotracheal intubation during assisted ventilation as an adjunct to blunt the hyperdynamic response to laryngoscopy and endotracheal intubation. Esmolol 10 to 25 mg, sodium nitroprusside 5 to 25 μg, nitroglycerin 50 to 100 μg, or clevidipine 100 mcg and phenylephrine 50 to 100 μg should be available for bolus administration during induction if needed to maintain appropriate hemodynamics.

Maintenance of anesthesia may be accomplished with a combination of a potent opioid (fentanyl or sufentanil) and an inhaled anesthetic (sevoflurane, desflurane, or isoflurane) (i.e., balanced anesthesia). Patients with severe left ventricular dysfunction may benefit from a pure opioid technique, but a balanced anesthetic technique allows the clinician to take advantage of the most desirable characteristics of potent opioids and inhaled volatile anesthetics while minimizing their undesirable side effects. Nitrous oxide can be used to supplement either an opioid or an inhaled anesthetic.

Various regional anesthetic and analgesic techniques have been used effectively during and after aortic reconstruction. For over 2 decades, interest has focused on the use of regional anesthetic and analgesic techniques to reduce the incidence of perioperative morbidity in patients undergoing aortic reconstruction. The benefits of combined general and epidural anesthesia intraoperatively, with or without epidural analgesia continued into the postoperative period, remain controversial.[13,14,68-71] Moreover, studies that have reported improved outcome do not determine whether the benefit results from the intraoperative anesthetic technique or the postoperative analgesic regimen (or a combination of the two). In a randomized trial using epidural morphine in patients undergoing aortic surgery, Breslow and associates[72] found attenuation of the adrenergic response and a less frequent incidence of hypertension in the postoperative period. A large randomized trial reported no reduction in nonsurgical complications with the use of intrathecal opioid.[15] The effects of the anesthetic or analgesic technique on the incidence of perioperative myocardial ischemia have received considerable attention. Four randomized trials, with nearly 450 combined patients undergoing aortic reconstruction, failed to demonstrate a reduction in the incidence of perioperative,[14,73] intraoperative,[74] or postoperative[70] myocardial ischemia when epidural techniques were used. Additionally, randomized trials have not demonstrated a reduction in the incidence of cardiovascular, pulmonary, or renal complications after aortic surgery with the use of epidural techniques.[13,14,69,70,75]

The duration and intensity of postoperative care after aortic surgery are critically dependent on the physiologic derangements incurred during the perioperative period (i.e., depression of consciousness, hypothermia, excessive intravascular fluids, incisional pain, ileus, and respiratory depression), as well as on the development of certain less common, but more severe postoperative complications (i.e., MI, pneumonia, sepsis, renal failure, and decreased tissue perfusion). Length of hospital stay may therefore be considered the outcome variable most directly proportional to an integrated final negative effect of all significant perioperative morbidity (excluding in-hospital death) and the variable most likely to be altered by the anesthetic or analgesic technique. Randomized trials have not demonstrated any reduction in length of hospital stay after aortic surgery with the use of regional techniques. Norris and colleagues[14] reported the results of a randomized clinical trial comparing alternative combinations of intraoperative anesthesia (i.e., general or combined epidural and general) and postoperative analgesia (i.e., IV patient-controlled analgesia [PCA] or epidural PCA) with respect to length of stay after abdominal aortic surgery. Two unique features of the trial included a factorial design (Fig. 56.5), which allowed the inclusion of all four combinations of intraoperative anesthesia and postoperative analgesia and the ability to separate the influence of time period and technique, and a double-blind design, which helped eliminate investigator and treating physician bias. The study rigorously protocolized perioperative management, standardized postoperative surgical care, and optimized postoperative pain management. Although the overall length of stay was much shorter (median, 7.0 days) than that reported in other studies,[13,68,70,75] they were not able to demonstrate a reduction in length of stay or direct medical costs based on anesthetic or analgesic technique (Table 56.6). The overall incidence of postoperative complications in the trial was low and not different based on anesthetic or analgesic technique. Postoperative pain was well controlled overall, with similar pain scores in both analgesic treatment groups. Thus, if perioperative care and pain relief are optimized, epidural anesthetic and analgesic techniques for aortic surgery offer no major advantage or disadvantage over general anesthesia and IV PCA.

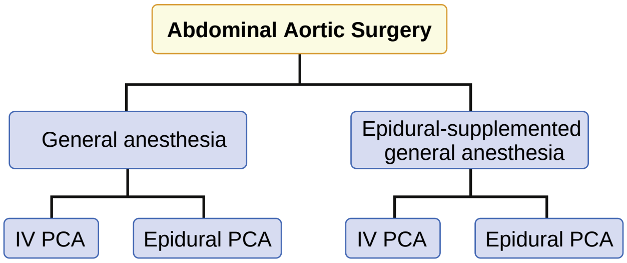


Fig. 56.5 Outline of factorial study design. This design allows the inclusion of all four possible combinations on intraoperative anesthesia and postoperative analgesia and the ability to separate the influences of time period and technique. Data analysis by treatment group, intraoperative treatment, postoperative treatment, and any epidural activation, as well as simultaneous consideration of both intraoperative and postoperative treatments in the same model (factorial analysis), is possible and allows improvement in outcome to be attributed to the intraoperative anesthesia, postoperative analgesia, the combination of the two, or to unrelated factors. *IV*, Intravenous; *PCA*, patient-controlled analgesia.

The use of epidural local anesthetics in combination with general anesthesia during aortic reconstruction poses several problems, including hypotension at the time of aortic unclamping and the need for increased intravascular fluid and vasopressor requirements. Supraceliac aortic cross-clamping may significantly exaggerate these disadvantages, and, as a result, some clinicians avoid running local anesthetics in the epidural around the period of aortic clamping and unclamping. Epidural opioids without local anesthetics can be used in the interim and local anesthetic can be given later, after aortic unclamping, when hemodynamics and intravascular volume have stabilized. Although elective aortic reconstruction via the retroperitoneal approach using straight epidural anesthesia (no general anesthetic) has been reported, this technique is not recommended for routine use.

Hypertension and tachycardia are aggressively controlled during emergence by the use of short-acting drugs such as esmolol, nitroglycerin, clevidipine, or sodium nitroprusside. Emergence from anesthesia should be conducted after restoration of circulation and establishment of adequate organ perfusion. Hemodynamic, metabolic, and temperature homeostasis must be achieved before extubation; otherwise, patients should be transported intubated to the intensive care unit (ICU).

Temperature Control

Postoperative hypothermia is associated with many undesirable physiologic effects and may contribute to adverse outcomes (see also Chapter 80). Normothermia should be maintained before skin incision by increasing ambient temperature in the operating room, applying warm cotton blankets, and warming IV fluids. If significant hypothermia occurs early in the procedure, normothermia is extremely difficult to achieve, and emergence and tracheal extubation may be delayed. During surgery, all fluids and blood products should be warmed before administration. A forced-air warming blanket should be applied over the upper part of the body. The lower part of the body should not be warmed

TABLE 56.6 Duration of Hospital Stay and Direct Medical Costs by Randomized Treatment Assignment for Patients Surviving to Discharge after Abdominal Aortic Surgery

	GA-IVPCA	RSGA-IVPCA	GA-EPCA	RSGA-EPCA	Total	*P*-value
No. of Patients	35	36	36	44	151	
Duration of hospital stay (days)[*]	7.0 (2.2)	8.0 (2.8)	7.0 (2.0)	7.0 (2.8)	7.0 (2.2)	.833[†]
Range	4–43	5–28	5–20	5–18	4–43	
95% CI	7.0–13.3	7.4–10.2	6.9–8.8	7.6–9.6	7.9–9.7	
Direct medical costs (US$ 1997)[*]						
Inpatient	12,413 (2867)	13,786 (4413)	12,492 (3111)	13,767 (3900)	12,793 (3777)	.242
Physician	10,394 (5993)	10,288 (4538)	9609 (3866)	9790 (3567)	9934 (4072)	.459
Total	22,674 (8783)	23,001 (6079)	22,182 (3914)	22,727 (3961)	22,674 (4903)	.851

CI, Confidence interval; *GA-EPCA,* general anesthesia and epidural patient-controlled analgesia; *GA-IVPCA,* general anesthesia and intravenous patient-controlled analgesia; *RSGA-EPCA,* regional supplemented general anesthesia and epidural patient-controlled analgesia; *RSGA-IVPCA,* regional supplemented general anesthesia and intravenous patient-controlled analgesia.

From Norris EJ, Beattie C, Perler B, et al. Double-masked randomized trial comparing alternate combinations of intraoperative anesthesia and postoperative analgesia in abdominal aortic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1054–1067.

during the cross-clamp period because doing so can increase injury to ischemic tissue distal to the cross-clamp by increasing metabolic demands.

THORACOABDOMINAL AORTIC SURGERY

Open repair of the thoracoabdominal aorta is widely regarded as the most challenging surgical procedure in terms of overall anesthetic and perioperative management. Surgical repair is required for a spectrum of disease, including degenerative aneurysm, acute and chronic dissection, intramural hematoma, mycotic aneurysm, pseudoaneurysm, penetrating aortic ulcer, coarctation, and traumatic aortic tear. Since the first thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm (TAA) repair in 1955, tremendous advances have been made in the field. These advances have led to significant reductions in operative mortality and perioperative complications. However, even in centers where numerous procedures are performed, morbidity and mortality are frequent, especially in patients with dissecting or ruptured aneurysms. To successfully care for these patients, the anesthesiologist must be knowledgeable in the areas of one-lung ventilation; extracorporeal circulatory support, including circulatory arrest; renal and spinal cord protection; induced hypothermia; invasive hemodynamic monitoring, including TEE; massive transfusion; and management of coagulopathy. Intraoperative management requires a team effort with intimate cooperation among surgeons, anesthesiologists, perfusionists, nurses, and electrophysiologic monitoring staff. Endovascular stent-graft repair of lesions that affect the descending thoracic and thoracoabdominal aorta is evolving rapidly. As discussed later, accumulating experience with stent-graft repair of thoracic aortic aneurysm, dissection, and traumatic tear has demonstrated this modality to be an effective alternative to open repair for select patients.

ETIOLOGY AND CLASSIFICATION

Aneurysms of the thoracoabdominal aorta occur primarily because of atherosclerotic degenerative disease (80%) and chronic aortic dissection (17%).[76] The remainder are caused by either trauma or connective tissue diseases involving the aortic wall from conditions such as Marfan syndrome, cystic medial degeneration, Takayasu arteritis, or syphilitic aortitis. The true incidence of TAA is unknown, but population studies suggest a prevalence much less than that of infrarenal AAA. Degenerative and dissecting TAAs differ in their associated risk factors, extent of aortic involvement, and natural history. Thus complete characterization of each TAA is required to formulate a comprehensive treatment plan. Development of both degenerative and dissecting TAAs is ultimately related to weakening of the aortic wall. Although the natural history of TAA without surgery is uncertain, enlargement tends to be progressive and nonoperative management is generally associated with a poor prognosis. With progressive enlargement, nutritional blood flow to the aorta is compromised. The increasing diameter is associated with increased wall tension, even when arterial pressure is constant (law of Laplace). The frequent incidence of associated systemic hypertension enhances aneurysm enlargement.

Degenerative and dissecting TAAs are symptomatic at initial evaluation in 57% and 85% of patients, respectively. The most common initial complaint is back pain. Additional symptoms can be caused by compression of organs or structures adjacent to the aneurysm. Aortic rupture, as a manifestation of TAA, occurs with equal frequency (9%) in both degenerative and dissecting aneurysms. Rupture of the thoracic and abdominal segments occurs with equal frequency and primarily in patients with aneurysms larger than 5 cm. Surgical repair is usually recommended when aneurysm diameter exceeds 6 cm, but earlier repair may be offered to patients with Marfan syndrome and those with a strong family history of an aortic aneurysm.

In addition to cause, aneurysms of the thoracoabdominal aorta may be classified according to their anatomic location. In 1986, Crawford and colleagues,[76] recognizing the correlation between aneurysm extent and clinical outcome, proposed a classification based on the extent of aortic involvement (Fig. 56.6). The Crawford classification defines aneurysms as types I, II, III, and IV and is appropriately applied to aneurysms of all causes (degenerative and dissecting). Type I aneurysms involve all or most of the descending thoracic aorta and the upper abdominal aorta. Type II aneurysms involve all or most of the descending thoracic aorta and all or most of the abdominal aorta. Type III aneurysms involve the lower portion of the descending thoracic aorta and most of the abdominal aorta. Type IV aneurysms involve all or most of the abdominal aorta, including the visceral segment. Types II and III are the most difficult to repair because they involve

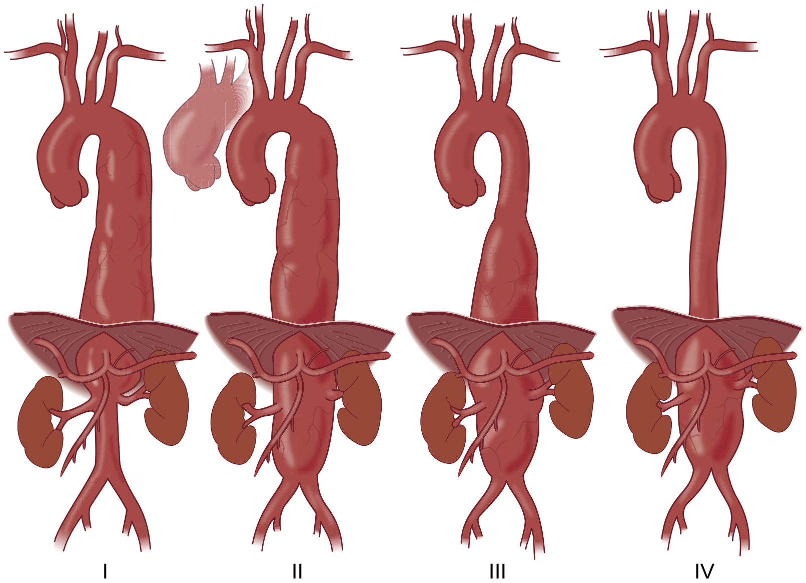


Fig. 56.6 The Crawford classification of thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysms is defined by anatomic location and the extent of involvement. *Type I* aneurysms involve all or most of the descending thoracic aorta and the upper abdominal aorta; *type II* aneurysms involve all or most of the descending thoracic aorta and all or most of the abdominal aorta; *type III* aneurysms involve the lower portion of the descending thoracic aorta and most of the abdominal aorta; and *type IV* aneurysms involve all or most of the abdominal aorta, including the visceral segment.

both the thoracic and the abdominal segments of the aorta. Patients with Crawford type II aneurysms are at greatest risk for paraplegia and renal failure from spinal cord and kidney ischemia during cross-clamping. Even with extracorporeal circulatory support, an obligatory period occurs when blood flow to these organs is interrupted because the origin of the blood flow is between the cross-clamps. For this reason, protective measures to prevent ischemic injury are important in reducing morbidity.

Aortic dissection, with or without aneurysm formation, has likewise been classified according to the extent of aortic involvement. The most widely used classification, proposed by DeBakey and colleagues, defines aortic dissection as types I, II, and III (Fig. 56.7).

Type I aneurysms begin in the ascending aorta and extend throughout the entire aorta. These lesions are usually repaired via a two-stage approach, with the first procedure on the ascending aorta and aortic arch and the second procedure on the descending thoracic aorta. Type II aneurysms are confined to the ascending aorta. Both types I and II often involve the aortic valve and cause aortic regurgitation, and sometimes they involve the ostia of the coronary arteries. Type III aneurysms begin just distal to the left subclavian artery (SCA) and extend either to the diaphragm (type IIIA) or to the aortoiliac bifurcation (type IIIB).

Another commonly used classification of aortic dissection is the Stanford classification. This more simplified classification divides aortic dissection into those that involve the ascending aorta (Stanford type A) and those that do not involve the ascending aorta (Stanford type B). Aortic dissection is also classified by duration, with those less than 2 weeks classified as acute and those greater than 2 weeks classified as chronic. This classification has very significant mortality implications, with much higher mortality in the acute phase.

Acute aortic dissection involving the ascending aorta (DeBakey types I and II, Stanford type A) is a surgical emergency that requires immediate cardiac surgical repair (see also Chapter 54). Acute dissections involving the descending aorta (DeBakey type III, Stanford type B) are most often treated conservatively (i.e., arterial blood pressure, heart rate, and pain control) because surgical repair has no proved benefit over medical or interventional treatment in stable patients. Early surgical intervention may be required for a variety of reasons, including aneurysmal formation, impending rupture, organ or leg ischemia, and inadequate response to medical therapy. In approximately 20% to 40% of patients with chronic aortic dissection, significant aneurysmal dilatation of the descending thoracic or thoracoabdominal aorta will develop.

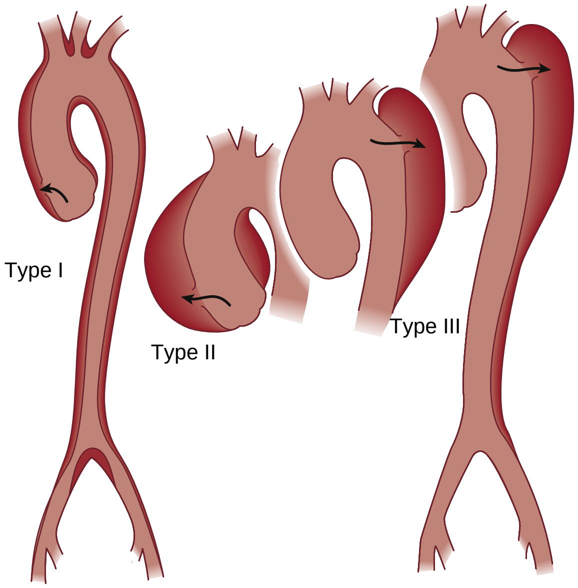


Fig. 56.7 The DeBakey classification of dissecting aneurysms of the aorta. *Type I* has an intimal tear in the ascending aorta with dissection extending down the entire aorta. *Type II* has an intimal tear in the ascending aorta with dissection limited to the ascending aorta. *Type III* has an intimal tear in the proximal descending thoracic aorta with dissection either limited to the thoracic aorta (type IIIA) or extending distally to the abdominal aorta or aortoiliac bifurcation (type IIIB).

MORBIDITY AND MORTALITY

Despite tremendous development in surgical and anesthetic technique, mortality and complication rates remain frequent for open surgical repair of TAA. Patients who undergo replacement of the entire thoracoabdominal aorta (Crawford extent type II) have the most frequent perioperative risk. Contemporary mortality rates reported from large institutions range from 5% to 14%. Statewide and nationwide mortality rates may be considerably more frequent (~20%). The perioperative mortality rate may significantly underestimate the risk associated with TAA repair. In a large statewide series, the mortality with elective TAA repair was 19% at 30 days and 31% at 365 days.[77]

The incidence of paraplegia or paraparesis in patients undergoing surgical repair of TAA is reported to be 3.8% to 40%, depending on complex factors such as anatomic location, the duration of cross-clamping, the use of protective measures, the degree of dissection, and whether the aneurysm has ruptured. Extensive dissecting TAA repair carries the highest risk for neurologic deficit. A contemporary report of 210 consecutive open TAA repairs reported three patients with paraplegia and two with temporary paraparesis for an overall rate of neurologic deficit of 2.4% (1.4% permanent).[78] Renal failure occurs in 3% to 30% of patients, depending on similar factors noted earlier. Overall, approximately 6% of patients need postoperative dialysis after TAA repair, which is associated with high mortality (30% to 60%). Gastrointestinal complications occur in approximately 7% of patients and are associated with a mortality approaching 40%. Not surprisingly, pulmonary complications are the most common problem associated with TAA repair. The incidence of postoperative pulmonary insufficiency approaches 50%, with 8% to 14% of patients requiring tracheostomy. As with all other vascular surgical procedures, cardiac complications are common and a leading cause of perioperative mortality. In general, perioperative mortality and major complication rates after open isolated descending thoracic aortic replacement are lower than those described for TAA repair.

PREOPERATIVE PREPARATION AND MONITORING

Open surgical TAA repair requires extensive preoperative evaluation and planning. The evaluation and management of coexisting cardiac and pulmonary disease are discussed earlier. Before the day of surgery, the anesthesiologist and vascular surgeon should discuss, at a minimum, extent of the aneurysm and technique of surgical repair, plans for distal aortic perfusion, monitoring for spinal cord ischemia (SCI), renal and spinal cord protection, hemodynamic monitoring, and ventilation strategy. Depending on the extent and the location of the aortic disease in the descending aorta, the decision to use left heart bypass or not is usually made.

Blood loss during TAA repair can be profound, and the need for massive transfusion must not be underestimated. This author routinely has 10 units of packed RBCs, 10 units of thawed fresh frozen plasma, and several units of platelets immediately available in the operating room, and additional units must be readily obtainable.

Large-bore IV access is obviously important, especially if partial bypass (in contrast to full bypass) is planned, because it is difficult or impossible for the perfusionist to administer fluid or blood products into the closed partial bypass circuit. Large-sized central venous catheters with introducer sheaths for pulmonary artery catheters and large bore peripheral IVs are recommended. Rapid infuser systems are used to allow the delivery of up to 1500 mL/min of blood products at a temperature of 37°C to 38°C. A right radial arterial catheter is used for aneurysms involving the proximal descending thoracic aorta because occasionally the cross-clamp is placed proximal to the left subclavian artery, thus occluding flow to the left upper extremity. When distal aortic perfusion techniques are used, arterial blood pressure distal to the cross-clamps can be monitored . This can be accomplished with the placement of a right femoral arterial catheter, or the surgical team can place a catheter directly into the femoral artery or distal aorta. This catheter monitors perfusion pressure to the kidneys, spinal cord, and mesenteric circulation during the time when the cross-clamps are high on the descending aorta and the lower body region is perfused by a shunt or bypass circuit. Radial and femoral arterial pressure should be simultaneously displayed on the anesthesiologist's monitor and a monitor visible to the surgeons and the perfusionists. TEE is used routinely during TAA repair (see also Chapter 37). When TEE is used by a properly trained individual, assessment of left ventricular end-diastolic volume, myocardial ischemia, and valvular function is possible. It is also possible to determine the size and extent of the aneurysm.

A double-lumen endobronchial tube or a bronchial blocker should be inserted for the purpose of one-lung ventilation (see also Chapter 53). One-lung ventilation provides optimal visualization of the surgical field and reduces retraction-related trauma to the left lung. The double-lumen tube is usually changed, if possible, to a single-lumen tube at the completion of surgery. This facilitates ICU management of pulmonary hygiene and reduces resistance to breathing during weaning in the postoperative period. Many centers use electrophysiologic monitoring with somatosensory evoked potentials (SSEPs) or motor evoked potentials (MEPs) to monitor for SCI (see also Chapter 39). These monitoring techniques may be helpful in both identifying the important intercostal arteries that perfuse the spinal cord and confirming successful reimplantation into the aortic graft. If SCI is identified, cross-clamps can often be repositioned, upper or lower body blood pressure can be increased to augment perfusion through collateral channels, or other measures may be taken to protect the spinal cord (i.e., cerebrospinal fluid [CSF] drainage, induced hypothermia, or intrathecal pharmacologic agents). These techniques are discussed later. Three general problems exist with SSEP monitoring when used during TAA repair. First, sensory monitoring is more likely to detect lateral and posterior sensory column ischemia and is a poor monitor for the anterior motor column. As a result, paraplegia can occur despite normal SSEP signals. Second, inhaled anesthetics and hypothermia can significantly interfere with SSEP signals. Third, ischemia affects peripheral nerves, and ischemia in the lower extremities delays conduction from the usual stimulation sites (e.g., posterior tibial nerve). To eliminate the peripheral nerves as a confounding factor, spinal stimulation via a lumbar epidural electrode can be used, which may be more specific for ischemic injury than peripheral monitoring alone. Lower extremity and peripheral nerve ischemia can be avoided with the use of distal aortic perfusion techniques. To avoid lower extremity ischemia from occlusion of the left femoral artery at the insertion site of the retrograde perfusion cannula, some surgeons suture a small-caliber graft onto the femoral artery (end to side) for insertion of the cannula, which allows both antegrade and retrograde perfusion. These limitations of SSEP monitoring probably account for the lack of identification of critical spinal arteries. The transcranial MEP technique has been used successfully to monitor the anterior columns of the spinal cord. The technique is relatively simple and can be viewed as a "train-of-four" for the brain and spinal cord. Electrical stimulation over the motor cortex activates α-motor neurons, and evoked electromyographic responses are obtained in lower extremity muscle. Only electromyogenic responses are specific for the status of the motor neurons in the anterior horn gray matter. Bilateral recording needles should be placed in the popliteal fossae (i.e., popliteal nerve) and bilateral surface electrodes over the gastrocnemius and tibialis anterior muscles. Bilateral stimulating needles are routinely placed in the popliteal fossae to monitor direct muscle responses and the level of neuromuscular blockade. During aortic cross-clamping, MEPs are monitored every minute. A reduction in MEP amplitude to less than 25% of baseline is considered an indication of SCI and requires corrective measures. Because signal averaging is not required and the anterior horn cells react with an almost immediate functional loss after the onset of ischemia, the technique can be used to rapidly identify intercostal arteries supplying the spinal cord. Additionally, the technique can be used to evaluate the adequacy of distal aortic perfusion and the patency of reimplanted critical intercostal arteries. Careful titration of a short-acting neuromuscular blocker is required to maintain a stable level of neuromuscular blockade. Complete neuromuscular blockade makes MEP monitoring impossible. Isoflurane, desflurane, sevoflurane, and N2O depress synaptic conduction and significantly decrease the amplitude of myogenic MEPs. Although modifications of the stimulating technique have somewhat improved monitoring with inhaled anesthetics, a total IV anesthetic technique may be optimal. Fentanyl and ketamine have little effect on myogeneic MEPs and have been used successfully as a combined anesthetic in a large series of patients undergoing TAA repair with MEP monitoring.[78] This series of 210 consecutive patients had the lowest rate of neurologic deficit (2.4%) and permanent paraplegia (1.4%) reported.[78] Body temperature should be monitored at two sites (core and peripheral) to assess cooling and warming when bypass techniques are used. However, an important difference exists between full and partial bypass in temperature monitoring. With full bypass, perfusion is usually into the ascending aorta, and typically the upper body core temperature (i.e., nasopharynx or esophagus) cools and warms fastest, whereas the lower body temperature changes more slowly. With partial bypass, the opposite is true. The blood from bypass is returned into the femoral artery, and the lower part of the body (i.e., rectum or bladder) changes before the upper part changes. This difference is important to recognize to achieve complete cooling and warming because the lagging temperature should be the end point for cooling and warming.

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT

Simple Aortic Cross Clamping

Descending thoracic and thoracoabdominal aortic surgery can be performed without extracorporeal support (i.e., left heart bypass or cardiopulmonary bypass). The "clamp-and-sew" technique has had relatively favorable outcomes, but these cases are from institutions with extensive clinical experience and the shortest cross-clamp times. Advocates of this technique favor its surgical simplicity. However, the benefits of avoiding the complexity and complications of bypass must be weighed against the risk for vital organ ischemia and complications such as renal failure and paraplegia. Other than the location and extent of the aneurysm, the duration of cross-clamping on the aorta is the single most important determinant of paraplegia and renal failure with the clamp-and-sew technique. With longer clamp times, specific adjuncts directed against end-organ ischemic complications have been described in literature. Such adjuncts include epidural cooling for spinal cord protection, regional hypothermia for renal protection, and in-line mesenteric shunting to reduce visceral ischemia, although they lack enough clinical evidence to support any of them.

When the simple clamp-and-sew technique is used, the application of the aortic cross-clamp results in significant proximal hypertension, which requires active pharmacologic intervention. Management strategies have been discussed previously in the section on abdominal aortic reconstruction.

Left Heart Bypass

Maintaining lower body perfusion with the use of retrograde distal aortic perfusion reduces ischemic injury and improves outcome, provided the pressure is high enough to perfuse the organs. The simplest method of providing distal aortic perfusion is a passive conduit or shunt. The heparin-bonded Gott shunt was developed to avoid the need for systemic heparinization and is used to divert flow passively from the left ventricle or proximal descending thoracic aorta to the distal aorta. Some centers place a temporary axillary-to-femoral artery graft to function as a shunt during aortic cross-clamping. Partial bypass, also referred to as left heart bypass or left atrial-to-femoral bypass, is the most commonly used distal aortic perfusion technique (Fig. 56.8). This technique allows adjustment of blood flow and usually draws blood from the left atrium and returns blood to the left femoral artery. A centrifugal pump is used (Biomedicus, Eden Prairie, MN), and full-dose systemic heparin is not needed because the circuit is coated with heparin. The typical heparin dose for partial bypass is 100 units/kg. With this technique, an oxygenator is unnecessary because only the left side of the heart is bypassed. Insertion of a heat exchanger into the circuit allows cooling and warming, which is beneficial but not essential. Variations of left heart bypass include cannulating the aortic arch or proximal descending thoracic aorta instead of the left atrium. With this circuit, the left ventricle is relieved of the increased afterload during

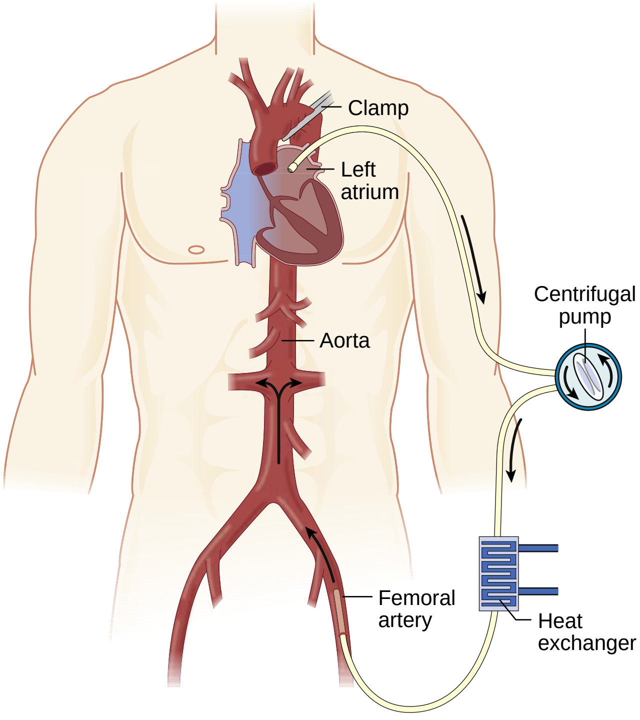


Fig. 56.8 Diagram of left atrial-femoral bypass. The left atrium and the left femoral artery are cannulated, and a centrifugal pump is used with heparin-coated tubing. A heat exchanger may be added into the circuit for cooling and rewarming.

aortic cross-clamping. With left atrial cannulation, the left ventricle is relieved of preload and cardiac output is reduced. Either way, proximal hypertension is controlled, the work of the ventricle is decreased, and perfusion is provided to the distal aorta. When hypothermia (30°C) is combined with atrial cannulation, approximately 15% of patients experience new atrial fibrillation. Although most patients revert to sinus rhythm on rewarming, direct cardioversion may be required.

During left heart bypass, it is essential that arterial blood pressure be monitored above and below the aortic cross-clamps. Careful control of intravascular volume, bypass pump flow, and vasoactive drugs is required to achieve the target blood pressures. Management of left heart bypass requires continuous communication and cooperation between the surgeon, anesthesiologist, and perfusionist. We typically set the initial pump flow to approximately 50% of the patient's cardiac output with application of the proximal aortic clamp. Flow is then adjusted to maintain target proximal and distal pressures. Administration of vasodilators is very infrequently required at this stage. With no vital organ ischemia, the surgeon can complete the proximal anastomoses in an unhurried fashion. With sequential aortic clamping, intercostal arteries can be reimplanted with minimal adjustments of pump flow. Pump flow is eventually reduced significantly during reimplantation of the visceral and renal arteries. At this point, distal perfusion is only to the lower extremities. Moderate hypothermia (32°C) during bypass is used to protect the vital organs during obligate periods of ischemia. After completion of the distal anastomoses, pump flow is increased, and the patient is actively warmed to 37°C.

Deep Hypothermic Circulatory Arrest

Complex aneurysms involving the aortic arch often require elective cardiopulmonary bypass with an interval of deep hypothermic (15°C) circulatory arrest (DHCA) because cerebral blood flow is transiently interrupted during surgery (see also Chapter 54). Bypass can be accomplished by cannulation of the femoral artery and the femoral vein (i.e., femoral-femoral bypass). During the interval of DHCA, some centers also use anterograde (i.e., innominate artery) or retrograde (i.e., internal jugular vein) selective cerebral perfusion with cold oxygenated blood to extend the safe maximum duration of circulatory arrest. Without this technique, 45 to 60 minutes is thought to be the safe limit of DHCA, but 90 minutes has been reported with selective cerebral perfusion. DHCA also may be necessary whenever the location, extent, or severity of aortic disease precludes placement of a proximal aortic clamp during thoracic or thoracoabdominal aortic repair. This is often the case in patients with previous aortic arch repair, in which adhesions and scarring make application of the proximal aortic cross-clamp difficult or impossible during TAA repair. DHCA eliminates the need for proximal aortic clamping and allows a bloodless field for the proximal aortic anastomosis. Some centers advocate the routine use of DHCA during complex aortic reconstruction because deep hypothermia may provide better end-organ and spinal cord function. This potential benefit must be carefully weighed against the risks associated with prolonged cardiopulmonary bypass and circulatory arrest. After completion of the proximal anastomosis and intercostal artery-to-graft anastomoses under DHCA, the aortic graft is cannulated and bypass flow is reestablished to the upper part of the body. During a period of hypothermic low bypass flow, the distal anastomoses are completed and then rewarming is initiated.

Anesthetic Technique

No single anesthetic technique is best for TAA repair. Usually, balanced anesthesia is provided with a combination of an opioid, a low-dose potent volatile anesthetic, a benzodiazepine, and a muscle relaxant. A total IV technique may be optimal if transcranial MEP monitoring is used. Induction of general anesthesia should be slow and controlled. Hypertension should be avoided because acute stress on the aneurysm can cause rupture. The heart rate should be maintained at or below baseline because myocardial ischemia is often related to the heart rate. Extubation should always take place in the ICU and only after a significant period of hemodynamic and metabolic stability. The postoperative analgesic regimen should focus on pain control and stable hemodynamics.

Spinal Cord Ischemia and Protection

Paraplegia is a devastating complication of aortic surgery. The incidence of paraplegia is reported to be 0.5% to 1.5% for coarctation repair, 0% to 10% for thoracic aneurysm repair, 10% to 20% for thoracoabdominal repair, and as high as 40% for extensive dissecting TAA repair. The spinal cord receives its blood supply from two posterior arteries (≈25%) and one anterior spinal artery (≈75%) (Fig. 56.9). The posterior spinal arteries, which supply the sensory tracts in the spinal cord, receive flow from the posterior and inferior cerebellar arteries, the vertebral arteries, and

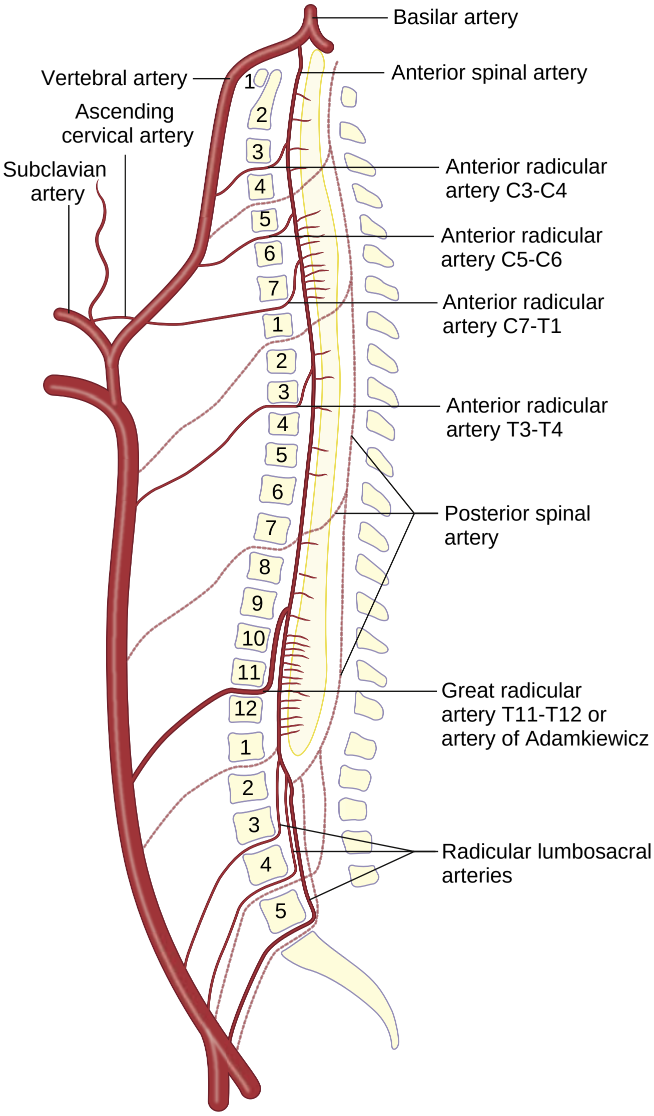

Basilar artery
Vertebral artery
Ascending cervical artery
Subclavian artery
Anterior spinal artery
Anterior radicular artery C3-C4
Anterior radicular artery C5-C6
Anterior radicular artery C7-T1
Anterior radicular artery T3-T4
Posterior spinal artery
Great radicular artery T11-T12 or artery of Adamkiewicz
Radicular lumbosacral arteries
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
1
2
3
4
5

Fig. 56.9 Diagram of the blood supply to the spinal cord showing the anterior and posterior radiculomedullary branches seen in a lateral view. The primary blood supply to the thoracolumbar portion of the spinal cord is derived from the artery of Adamkiewicz; its origin varies but usually branches off the aorta in the T9 to T12 region.

the posterior radicular arteries. The anterior spinal artery, which supplies the motor tracts in the spinal cord, is formed by two branches of the intracranial portion of the vertebral arteries. The upper cervical segment of the spinal cord receives most of its blood flow from the vertebral arteries. The thoracic portion of the anterior spinal artery is supplied by the anterior radicular arteries (one or two cervical, two or three thoracic, and one or two lumbar). The largest of the radicular arteries is called the great radicular artery (GRA) or the artery of Adamkiewicz (AKA). The AKA is the major blood supply to the lower two thirds of the spinal cord. The segmental supplier of the AKA is variable (T5-L5) but is located between T9 and T12 in approximately 75% of cases. The variation in origin of the AKA explains why even infrarenal aortic aneurysm repair is associated with a 0.25% incidence of paraplegia. The specific impact of extensive segmental artery sacrifice on spinal cord perfusion during TAA repair is poorly understood.

Various methods can facilitate preventing ischemic injury to the spinal cord. Distal aortic perfusion with extracorporeal support reduces the incidence of paraplegia. Any of the various methods of distal bypass are likely to be beneficial when the anticipated cross-clamp time is longer than 30 minutes, but they are probably not beneficial when cross-clamp time is less than 20 minutes. CSF drainage is frequently used to improve spinal cord perfusion during TAA repair and is often used in combination with distal aortic perfusion. Spinal cord perfusion pressure is defined as distal mean aortic pressure minus CSF pressure or central venous pressure, whichever is greatest. Autoregulation of spinal cord blood flow is similar to cerebral autoregulation, and blood flow is relatively constant over the range of 50 to 125 mm Hg. During hypoxia or hypercapnia, autoregulation is lost, and flow becomes linearly related to perfusion pressure. Thus, significant flow may remain even at very low perfusion pressure. Drainage of CSF is important because CSF pressure often increases (by 10 to 15 mm Hg) with cross-clamping of the descending thoracic aorta. The increase in CSF pressure reduces spinal cord perfusion pressure and increases the likelihood of ischemic spinal cord injury.

Despite evidence from animal studies that CSF drainage protects the spinal cord, clinical use of this technique is controversial. One randomized trial reported a reduced incidence of paraplegia, but another reported no benefit. Most of the evidence in support of CSF drainage comes from nonrandomized historical cohort studies in which the technique is used in combination with other adjuncts, such as intrathecal papaverine and hypothermic partial bypass. Coselli and colleagues[79] offered the strongest evidence supporting the efficacy of CSF drainage. They conducted a prospective, randomized clinical trial to evaluate the impact of CSF drainage on the incidence of spinal cord injury after Crawford type I and II TAA repair. CSF drainage resulted in an 80% reduction in the relative risk for a postoperative deficit. Nine patients in the control group (13%) had paraplegia or paraparesis versus only two patients in the CSF drainage group (2.6%). Left heart bypass, moderate heparinization, permissive mild hypothermia, and reimplantation of patent intercostal and lumbar arteries were performed in both treatment groups. The target CSF pressure was 10 mm Hg. CSF drainage also reverses delayed-onset neurologic deficit after open and endovascular TAA repair.[80]

Although CSF drainage is widely used during TAA repair, it has risks. Potential complications include headache, meningitis, chronic CSF leakage, spinal or epidural hematoma, and subdural hematoma. The possibility of intraspinal pathologic processes should be considered in any patient with a postoperative lower extremity neurologic deficit. A retrospective review of 230 patients who underwent TAA repair with CSF drainage reported eight subdural hematomas (3.5%).[81] High-volume CSF drainage was identified as a risk factor for its occurrence. Six patients had subdural hematomas detected during hospitalization, with an associated mortality of 67%. Two patients were seen in a delayed fashion, and both required an epidural blood patch to control chronic CSF leakage.

Hypothermia is probably the most reliable method of neuroprotection from ischemic injury. By reducing O2 requirements by approximately 5% for each degree centigrade, a two-fold prolongation of tolerated cross-clamp time is achieved by cooling even to mild hypothermia (34°C). Because the reduction in metabolic rate is linearly related to temperature, moderate or profound hypothermia provides even greater protection. Both systemic and regional spinal cord cooling could be beneficial. Systemic hypothermia can be achieved with either full cardiopulmonary bypass (with or without DHCA) or partial bypass. Cooling to 30°C to 32°C with left atrial-to-femoral bypass in conjunction with CSF drainage was associated with no permanent neurologic sequelae in a series of 20 patients despite a relatively long average cross-clamp time (≈70 minutes).[82] Regional cooling of the spinal cord by cold perfusion of the AKA with blood or crystalloid provides significant protection during spinal ischemia in animal models. Regional cooling is beneficial in humans who received epidural infusions of 4°C saline. Even if active cooling is not used, it is advantageous to allow patients to passively cool to 33°C to 34°C during TAA repair. With passive cooling, the challenge is rewarming after the surgical repair. This is most easily accomplished with the use of a forced-air blanket over the upper part of the body. The lower body region should not be actively warmed because warming ischemic tissue increases metabolic requirements, acidosis, and ischemic injury.

Many drugs have been studied in an attempt to reduce the incidence of ischemic spinal cord injury. Barbiturates provide significant protection. Corticosteroids provide protection in dogs but were beneficial in humans only when they were combined with CSF drainage. Calcium channel blockers were not consistently shown to be protective against SCI. *N*- methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonists have been investigated because ischemic injury appears to be related to increased levels of excitatory amino acids (particularly glutamate), which allow increased permeability to Ca2+ ions and high intracellular Ca2+ concentrations. Dextrorphan (a noncompetitive NMDA receptor antagonist) showed benefit during SCI in animals. Magnesium, another NMDA receptor antagonist, improves recovery from SCI in rat and dog models when administered intrathecally. Naloxone is protective in patients with traumatic spinal cord injuries and in a rabbit model of spinal ischemia. Other than the use of corticosteroids and naloxone at a few centers, most of these agents are considered investigational. Preoperative spinal cord angiography has been used in patients with TAA. The rationale for this highly invasive angiographic procedure is that precise identification of intercostal arteries giving rise to the AKA will allow focused reimplantation of these vessels during surgical repair and help prevent spinal cord injury. Selective intercostal angiography identifies the AKA when an intercostal branch is found making a cephalad hairpin turn to enter the spinal canal and supply a midline longitudinal artery (i.e., the anterior spinal artery) (Fig. 56.10). The AKA can be identified in 43% to 86% of patients studied with traditional angiography. Higher detection rates for AKA localization have been reported with computed tomographic angiography (CTA) and magnetic resonance angiography (MRA), with the latter achieving rates of nearly 100%.[83]

The importance of reimplanting the intercostal arteries identified as supplying the AKA is not universally accepted. Even in patients with an identified and reimplanted AKA, spinal cord injury is not always prevented. Some investigators have concluded that preoperative localization of the AKA has little impact on neurologic outcome after TAA repair. A report[84] found no improvement in overall neurologic outcome with preoperative spinal cord angiography, but it offered important insight regarding the type of aneurysm, identification of the AKA, and neurologic outcome. In patients undergoing TAA repair for extensive degenerative aneurysms, spinal cord injury occurred in 0 of 45 patients versus 10 (12%) of 81 patients with and without an identified AKA, respectively. In contrast, identification of the AKA was not helpful in the case of chronic expanding aortic dissection, with 3 (15%) of 20 patients versus 3 (6%) of 49 patients suffering spinal cord injury with and without an identified AKA, respectively. The investigators hypothesized that mural thrombus in degenerative aneurysms results in the occlusion of many intercostal arteries and favors the development of extensive paravertebral collateral channels (see Fig. 56.10). Identification of an AKA allows focused reimplantation with uniform success. In

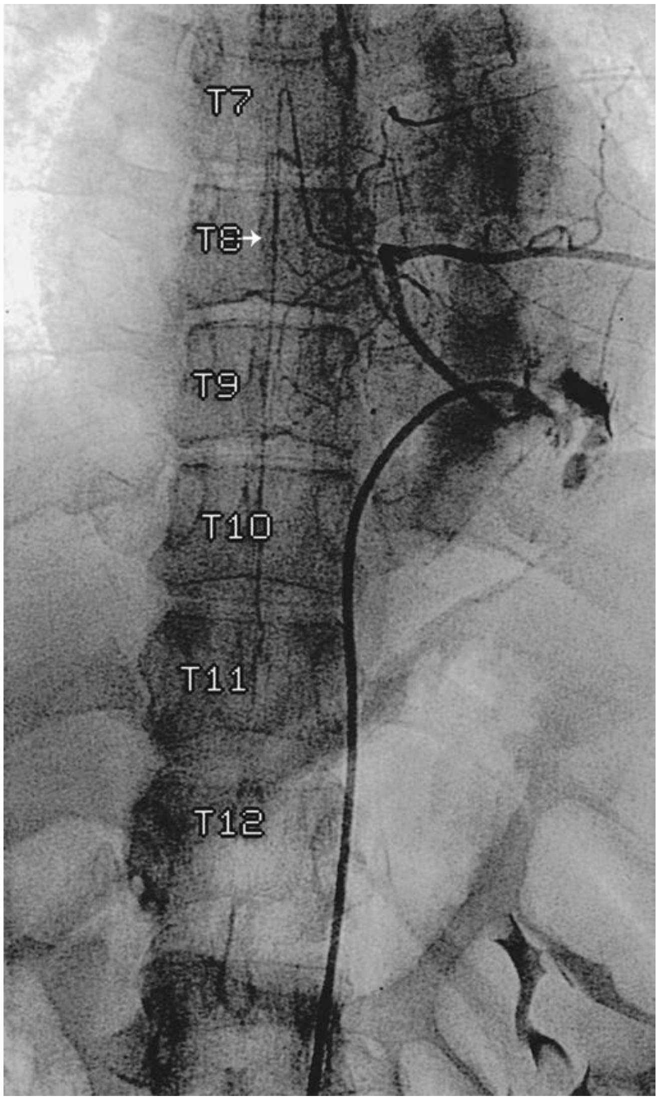


Fig. 56.10 Spinal cord angiogram of an extensive degenerative thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm. Selective injection of the intercostal artery at T8 *(arrow)* demonstrates the great radicular artery and the extensive paravertebral collateralization.

patients with chronic dissection, most intercostal arteries are patent, collateralization is minimal, and reimplantation of one or two intercostal arteries may be insufficient to supply blood flow to the spinal cord. This collateral blood supply concept is further supported by clinical studies demonstrating that clamping the segmental supplier to the AKA during TAA repair does not produce critical SCI in the majority of patients.[83] Sufficient collateral blood supply, independent of the AKA, must therefore exist to maintain spinal cord integrity.

Delayed-onset neurologic deficits are common after TAA repair.[85] In a large series of 2368 TAA repairs, 93 (3.9%) patients had postoperative paraplegia or paraparesis, 34 (37%) of whom initially had intact spinal cord function but a deficit developed later.[86] Preoperative renal dysfunction, acute dissection, and extent type II TAA are significant predictors of delayed neurologic deficit. Postoperative hypotension and CSF drain malfunction may play an important role in the development of these deficits. Neurologic function can frequently be recovered by maintaining an optimal arterial blood pressure and CSF drainage.

Renal Ischemia and Protection

Renal failure after TAA repair results from preexisting renal dysfunction, ischemia during cross-clamping, thrombotic or embolic interruption of renal blood flow, and hypovolemia and hypotension. Approximately 6% of patients require postoperative dialysis, even in centers with the most clinical experience. The associated mortality can be high. The primary predictor of postoperative renal failure is preoperative renal dysfunction. The duration of cross-clamp time is very important with the clamp-and-sew technique. Retrograde distal aortic perfusion techniques are widely used to preserve renal function during the cross-clamp period. Adequate bypass flow and arterial blood pressure are essential for maintaining renal function. Systemic and regional hypothermia, by reducing O2 requirements, protects the kidneys during ischemia. Some centers advocate the use of DHCA in the treatment of distal TAAs (i.e., extent type III and IV) to preserve renal function.

The role of pharmacologic protection is somewhat controversial. Mannitol 12.5 to 25 g/70 kg is often given before cross-clamping. Mannitol improves renal cortical blood flow and the glomerular filtration rate in animal models of ischemia. Endothelial cell swelling is decreased, and an osmotic diuresis occurs. Evidence demonstrates free radical scavenging with mannitol and subsequent protection from ischemia in animals. Loop diuretics are sometimes given, but these drugs have been less effective than mannitol in experimental models. In clinical studies, the prophylactic use of loop diuretics has not been shown to improve outcome or reduce the need for dialysis for patients with acute renal failure. Dopamine given in low doses (1 to 3 μg/kg/min) dilates renal blood vessels and increases renal blood flow and urine output. Despite these beneficial effects, whether dopamine provides renal protection during ischemia is not clear. Fenoldopam mesylate, a selective dopamine type 1 agonist that preferentially dilates the renal and splanchnic vascular beds, has shown some promise as a neuroprotective drug; however, there is no evidence to support its routine use.

At the present time, optimal renal protection during TAA surgery should rely on hypothermia, mannitol, and prevention of hypotension and hypoperfusion of the kidneys.

Coagulation and Metabolic Management

Coagulopathy is a frequent complication during TAA repair. A dilutional coagulopathy in which platelets become deficient after approximately one blood volume of replacement develops during massive transfusion (see also Chapters 49 and 50). At between one and two blood volumes of replacement, coagulation factors are diluted to levels low enough to increase bleeding. Other contributing factors are residual heparin; ischemia of the liver, in which most coagulations factors are produced; and persistent hypothermia after weaning from bypass. With the early use of fresh frozen plasma and platelets, severe coagulopathy often can be avoided. The prothrombin time, partial thromboplastin time, fibrinogen level, and platelet count should be measured frequently. Point of care thromboelastography (TEG or ROTEM) can be used as well. Cryoprecipitate may be necessary to correct coagulopathy, especially when the prothrombin time and partial thromboplastin time are prolonged and hypervolemia prevents the administration of significant volumes of fresh frozen plasma. When coagulopathy persists despite these efforts, å-aminocaproic acid or tranexamic acid are beneficial as antifibrinolytic therapy, and desmopressin can be given to increase circulating levels of von Willebrand factor and factor VIII. Normothermia should be achieved by complete rewarming before separation from bypass, by increasing ambient temperature after separation from bypass, and by forced-air warming over the upper body skin surface.

Analysis of arterial blood gases and electrolyte levels should be performed frequently. Hyperkalemia should be treated aggressively, especially in oliguric or anuric patients. Calcium chloride, sodium bicarbonate, insulin, and glucose are the primary acute treatments of hyperkalemia.

Endovascular Aortic Repair Surgery

HISTORY OF ENDOVASCULAR AORTIC REPAIR

The first EVAR of the aorta was performed and reported by the Ukrainian surgeon Dr. Nicholas Volodos and his colleagues. On March 24, 1987, they performed the world's first human endovascular repair of a posttraumatic pseudoaneurysm of the descending thoracic aorta and the patient survived 18 years after the stent graft insertion without any evidence of stent-related complications. However, the case was performed behind the iron curtain, which prevented the news from spreading globally and their work was first published in Russian in 1988.[87]

On September 7, 1990, the Argentinian surgeon Juan Parodi, the Argentinian radiologist Julio Palmaz, and their colleagues performed the first successful EVAR in the western world. After many years of experimenting with stents on dogs with minimal funding, Parodi finally got permission from his institution to perform cases on humans on the condition that these patients had to have been rejected for intervention previously by at least two

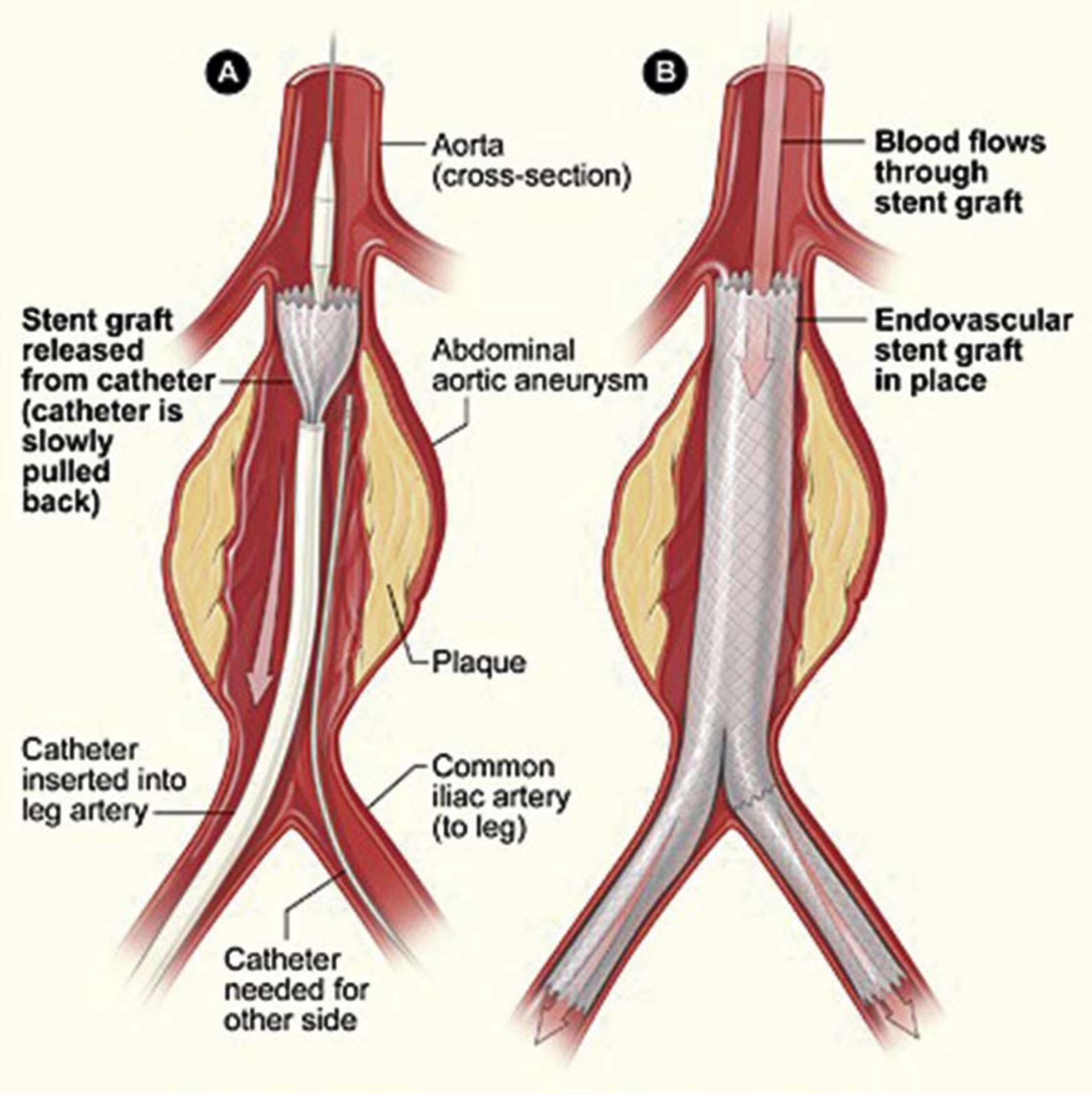

A
B
Aorta (cross-section)
Stent graft released from catheter (catheter is slowly pulled back)
Abdominal aortic aneurysm
Plaque
Catheter inserted into leg artery
Common iliac artery (to leg)
Catheter needed for other side
Blood flows through stent graft
Endovascular stent graft in place

Fig. 56.11 Endovascular aneurysm repair, abdominal aortic aneurysm. (A) A catheter is inserted into an artery in the groin (upper thigh). The catheter is threaded to the abdominal aorta, and the stent graft is released from the catheter. (B) The stent graft allows blood to flow through the aneurysm. (Retrieved from: https://surgery.ucsf.edu/conditions--procedures/endovascular-aneurysm-repair.aspx.)

centers. In 1990, he received a phone call from the Argentinian president asking him to use his device on his cousin, who had an aortic aneurysm and severe COPD. Parodi went ahead with the operation and it became his first successful EVAR. Three months later, the patient developed a distal endoleak and he was treated by an aorto-uni-iliac endograft, occlusion of the contralateral common iliac, and a femorofemoral bypass. The patient lived for 9 years and died due to pancreatic cancer.[88]

For all types of aortic diseases, endovascular technique is being utilized as the most feasible treatment option and a perfect alternative to treat AAA with the aid of endoluminal devices (Fig. 56.11).[89] Endovascular grafting is being used in diverse types of traumatic injuries, ruptures, aortic dissection, and in the diseases of thoracoabdominal and thoracic aorta. The EVAR is considered as one of the main treatment choices for patients who are affected with AAA because it is a less invasive treatment option, associated with reduced perioperative mortality and morbidity, and requires a short stay at the hospital.[90]

ADVANCEMENTS IN STENT-GRAFT DEVICES

The endovascular technique started in the 1960s on an experimental basis and has progressed through a number of developmental eras that have resulted in EVAR as the most common technique for repair of AAAs. More than 2 decades ago, Parodi and fellow colleagues described the first endovascular repair of an AAA.[91] At that time, endografts for AAAs were being used on patients who had severe surgical risks for an open AAA repair. After analysis and detailed comparison of the developments and advancements in EVAR over the previous two decades, the researchers were able to show considerable success in the procedures, outcomes, and efficiency. These grafts are made up of modular bifurcated devices composed of synthetic fabric which is deployed in the human body through a catheter. After the successful treatments in endovascular repair of the descending aorta, the stents received undeniable success and accolades in cases of the infrarenal aorta. Dake and colleagues, in 1994, provided the first report of using these stent devices for patients with descending thoracic aortic aneurysms.[92] They conducted tests on 13 patients by using self-expanding stent-grafts and reported 100% success, thereby gaining approval of using these stent-grafts by the FDA after a decade in 2005. Since then, the FDA approved many other stent-graft devices for an array of aortic diseases such as traumatic transections, ruptures, penetrating ulcers, dissections, and aneurysms. In 2012, the FDA approved fenestrated stent-grafts for correcting pararenal and juxtarenal aortic aneurysms through endovascular mechanisms.[93] In these devices, the graft fabric openings or scallops are easily aligned with the arteries splitting off the aorta, which significantly paves the way to exclude the aneurysm yet maintain the end-organ perfusion. These fenestrated grafts are referred to as FEVAR, or fenestrated EVAR, whereas the original EVAR name is commonly used to refer to the treatment of infrarenal aneurysms by bifurcated grafts.

It is also worth noting that off-the-shelf stent-grafts are ready-to-go types of stent-grafts used to treat those patients who fall prey to complex AAAs in the acute setting. These standard off-the-shelf fenestrated stent-grafts were studied by the researchers, who found no reported cases of perioperative death, rupture, aneurysm dilation, and stent migration.[94] However, there is still a dearth of significant clinical evidence for the potential benefits of off-the-shelf fenestrated and branched stent-grafts; hence, more research is suggested to support the view that these stents have the true potential of lessening the requirement for perioperative customization of graft for AAA patients. The main difference between the fenestrated grafts (FEVAR) and multibranched grafts (mBEVAR) is that the latter has axially oriented cuffs that serve as routes to cannulate and stent the target mesenteric or renal vessels. This gives surgeons less need for absolute precision to align the scallops of the FEVAR right at the origin of the vessels. It also gives them a small margin of moving safely with the device up or down the aorta. This comes at the expense that the BEVARs tend to be longer devices and end up covering a significant portion of the descending thoracic aorta; hence, the risk of spinal cord injury exists, and spinal cord protection strategies should be considered.[95]

The endovascular approach is the best alternative, as it is devoid of open incisions, considerable fluid shifts and blood loss, wide dissections, and long aortic cross-clamp times as in open repairs. Careful attention must be given in choosing the optimal treatment strategy for patients with AAAs. The endovascular technique involves the placement of the endovascular stent graft based at the level of the disease and the size of the vessel. The femoral arteries are accessed either by cutdowns or percutaneous punctures. In general, smaller devices are available commercially that are used percutaneously for EVARs, FEVARs and BEVARs. The decision to do a cutdown versus a percutaneous access depends on the size of the device used, the size of the femoral arteries, preexisting femoral or iliac diseases or surgeries, and the surgeon's experience. If the patients have critically diseased iliac or femoral arteries, then they may need a concomitant, local endarterectomy or balloon angioplasty. Additionally, during the endovascular AAA, around 20% patients are recommended to undergo adjunctive retroperitoneal procedures where the common iliac artery is exposed by a retroperitoneal approach to place a synthetic iliac conduit. The same iliac conduit is used to endoluminally place the delivery system into the aorta. Beyond any reasonable doubt, these adjunctive retroperitoneal procedures allow a significant number of patients to experience EVAR, though these procedures are not free from longer hospital stays, lengthy procedure time, and extensive blood loss because of their hybrid nature.[96]

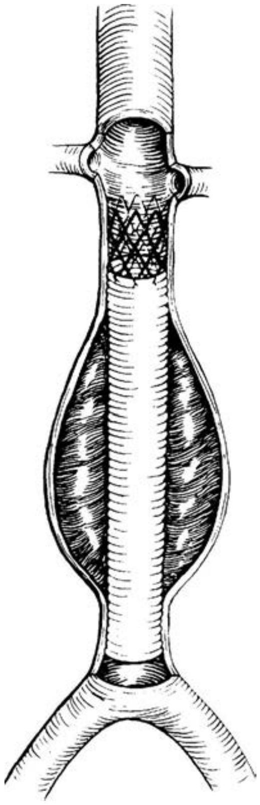


Fig. 56.12 Graft-stent combination with cephalic stent. (From Yao JST, Eskandari MK. Transfemoral intraluminal graft implantation for abdominal aortic aneurysms: two decades later. *Ann Vasc Surg*. 2012;26[7]:895–905.)

Understanding the surgical approach and vascular access is important to tailor the anesthesia plan. Most EVARs today are done via percutaneous access of the femoral arteries, which makes monitored anesthesia care (MAC) with local infiltration to the access site a viable safe alternative (Figs. 56.12 to 56.14). On the other hand, multibranched grafts are much bigger devices and the procedure takes much longer, as it often involves cannulation of the visceral branches. Cannulation of caudally oriented vessels, as the celiac axis and the superior mesenteric arteries, is easier if performed via a left axillary artery access. However, today there are deflectable, steerable guiding sheaths that allow the surgeon to cannulate the caudally oriented vessels from the same femoral access used for insertion of the aortic component, without the need for an additional arterial cutdown in the left arm.

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT

To sketch the anesthetic management options associated with EVAR, it is worth mentioning that in the past, the long

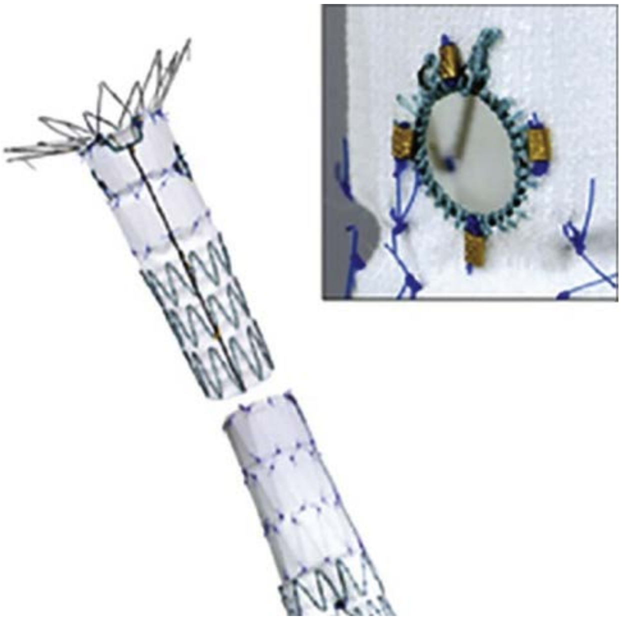


Fig. 56.13 Customized fenestrated stent-graft. (Modified from Kothandan H, Chieh GLH, Khan SA, et al. Anesthetic considerations for endovascular abdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *Ann Cardiac Anaesthesia.* 2016;19[1]:132.)

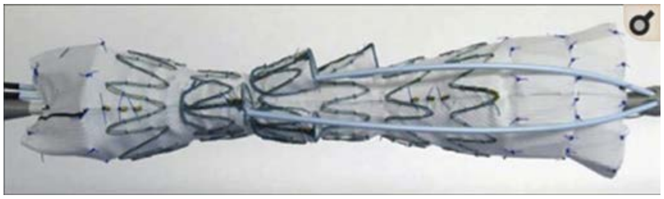


Fig. 56.14 Customized branched stent-graft. (From Kothandan H, Chieh GLH, Khan SA, et al. Anesthetic considerations for endovascular abdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *Ann Cardiac Anaesthesia.* 2016;19[1]:132.)

surgical procedures used general anesthesia. But with the passage of time, surgical procedure times were reduced, and procedures started changing due to the inclusion of newer generation devices. The local and regional anesthetic techniques were employed with IV sedation. Despite the significant use of local, regional, and general anesthesia, conflicting reports raised their voices concerning anesthetic management. According to a report, the regional or local anesthesia might decrease the hospital stay time, ICU admission, and reduce early complications.[97] Anesthesiologists must consider things like a patient's functional status, co-morbidities, aneurysm complexity, and surgical urgency. According to Kothandan and associates, when it comes to examining a unique risk stratification model in endovascular surgery scenarios, there is no single useful model.[97a] Few anesthesiologists take leverage of the *risk scores* in this context, such as revised *cardiac risk index* or the modified *customized probability index* when they are engaged in endovascular surgery scenarios.[98,99]

Spinal Cord Blood Supply

It is critically important to get an overview of the spinal cord blood supply since it has a complex anatomy, but the latest imaging technology has expanded the very small and complex vessels to a significant degree. Hence, it is now easier to determine the SC vascular pattern as compared to the past, as explained above in the open thoracoabdominal repair section. To better understand the blood supply to the spinal cord, it is important to adapt the collateral network concept. The concept can be summarized as follows:

- There is an axial network of arteries that supply the spinal cord and run in the paravertebral tissue.
- Input to this axial network comes from segmental arteries, subclavian arteries, and hypogastric arteries.
- Blood supply to the cord can increase from one source when another is compromised. An example of this steal phenomenon is the back bleeding from intercostals into an open aortic sac after aortic cross-clamping.[100]

This extensive spinal cord arterial system thus consists of an extrinsic and an intrinsic vascular system. The extrinsic network consists of segmental vessels arising from the intercostal and lumbar arteries, subclavian arteries, and the hypogastric arteries. The intrinsic network which receives supply from the extrinsic network is formed by the two posterior spinal arteries supplying the posterior region of the cord and a single anterior spinal artery supplying the anterior region of the cord (Fig. 56.15). The posterior spinal cord is relatively protected from ischemia because the collateral blood flow from the two posterior spinal arteries compared to a single anterior spinal artery make the anterior portion of the cord more susceptible to ischemia. The anterior spinal artery originates from the terminal branches of both vertebral arteries and courses along the anterior longitudinal fissure of the spinal cord receiving reinforcing blood supply from the radicular or segmental medullary branches, the branch of the posterior intercostals, or the lumbar arteries. The largest of the anterior segmental branches is the AKA, which supplies a large portion of the caudal two thirds of the anterior spinal artery. Because it is the only major artery supplying this zone, it is susceptible to watershed ischemia. The AKA originates from a left posterior intercostal artery off the descending aorta usually between T9 and T12 but has originated in some instances from lower level up to L5. A unique identifying feature of the AKA is the "hairpin configuration" on imaging that can be explained by the differential growth of the spinal cord and vertebral column during embryologic development.

Anterior spinal cord syndrome happens due to infarction of the portion of the spinal cord supplied by the anterior spinal artery. This may happen due to disruption of the AKA or the anterior spinal artery itself at the thoracoabdominal levels. Etiologies may vary between aortic dissection, emboli, covering of large segments of the thoracoabdominal aorta by endovascular stents, and surgical dissection during repair of thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm (TAAA). The clinical presentation of the syndrome will depend on the spinal cord tracts and the level of cord injury. Classically, the anteromedial portion of the cord which contains the corticospinal and the corticobulbar tracts receives blood supply only from the anterior spinal artery, leading to motor paralysis below the level of injury if this supply is disrupted. The anterolateral aspect of the cord contains the

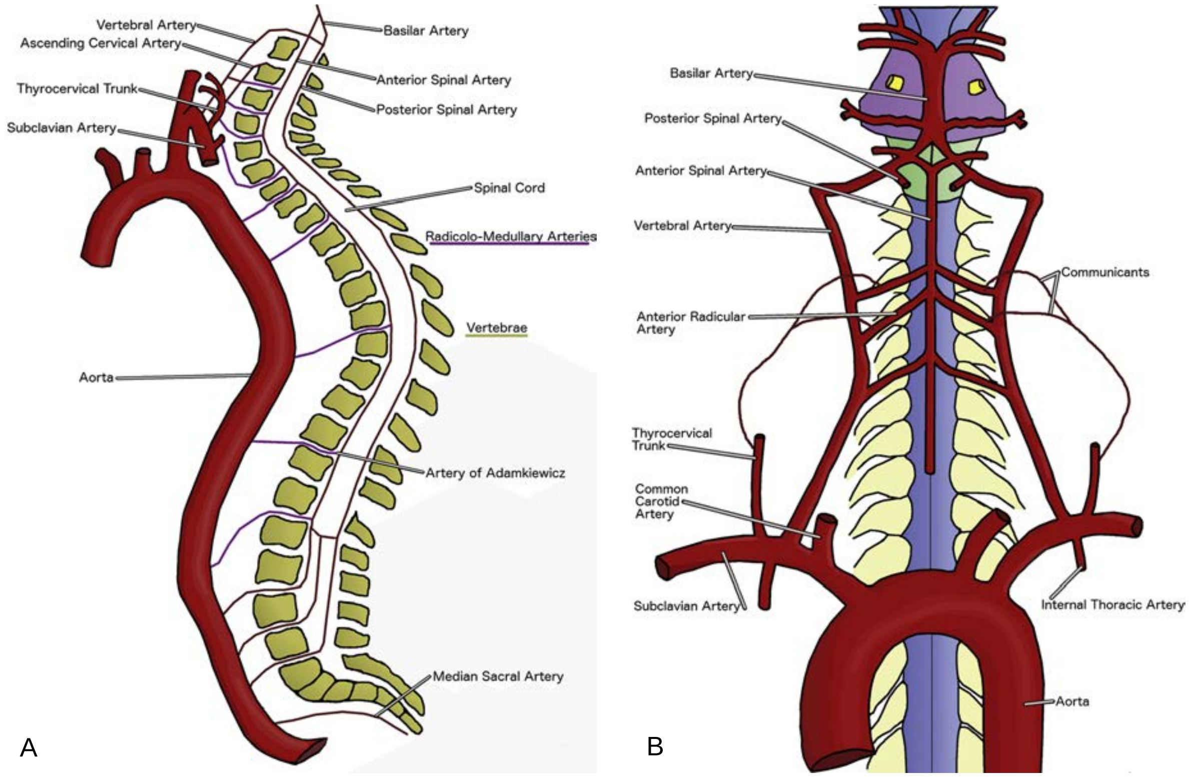


Fig. 56.15 An overview of blood supply to the spinal cord and the cervical spinal cord and the origin of the anterior spinal artery. (A) An overview of blood supply to the spinal cord. The spinal cord predominantly receives blood from three arteries originating around the cervical-cranial junction. These arteries run longitudinally along the spinal cord, terminating at the caudal end. These three arteries, the anterior spinal artery, and paired posterior spinal arteries, receive their blood supply mainly from the vertebral arteries, as well as the ascending cervical arteries, branches of the thyrocervical trunk. The thyrocervical trunk additionally supplies the cervical spinal cord via numerous anterior and posterior radiculomedullary arteries. These arteries do not anastomose with the spinal arteries *(anterior and posterior)*; rather, they directly supply the spinal cord at the level they enter the vertebral canal. As the spinal cord extends caudally, blood supply becomes scarce. Anterior and posterior radiculomedullary branches from the thoracic and abdominal aorta continue to supply the spinal cord directly, but the spinal arteries do not receive any new anastomoses until the artery of Adamkiewicz at the level of the lower thoracic or lumbar vertebrae. The lumbar and sacral spinal cord additionally receives blood from the median sacral artery anteriorly. Magenta lines represent radiculomedullary arteries and yellow boxes represent vertebrae. (B) The cervical spinal cord and origin of the anterior spinal artery. The anterior spinal artery originates from the vertebral arteries around the level of the cervical-cranial junction. Additionally, the anterior spinal artery receives blood from the anterior radicular arteries (branches of the vertebral arteries) and the ascending cervical arteries (branches from the thyrocervical trunk). Following these original tributaries, the anterior spinal artery does not receive blood from any other anastomosis until the lower thoracic and lumbar areas via the Artery of Adamkiewicz (not shown). The anterior spinal artery supplies the bulk of oxygenated blood to the anterior spinal cord. (From Hoehmann CL, Hitscherich K, Cuoco JA. The artery of Adamkiewicz: vascular anatomy, clinical significance and surgical considerations. *J Cardiovasc Res*. 2016;5:6.)

spinothalamic and the spinocerebellar tracts, a watershed area that receives blood supply from both anterior and posterior spinal arteries, but it can still be infarcted in anterior spinal cord syndrome, affecting pain and temperature sensation. The dorsal columns responsible for vibratory sensation and proprioception remain intact, as they are usually supplied by the posterior spinal arteries. Patients with anterior spinal cord syndrome could also present with autonomic dysfunction as bowel and bladder incontinence, orthostatic hypotension, and sexual dysfunction.[101]

Anesthesia Roadmap for EVARs

Anesthesia administration mainly focuses on

- Hemodynamic stability of the patient
- The preservation of perfusion to the key organs such as splanchnic vessels, kidney, spinal cord, heart, and brain
- Early identification and management of blood loss and maintaining intravascular volume
- Maintaining the normal core body temperature (perioperative normothermia)

Karthikesalingam and associates argue that there is very little evidence indicating the best anesthetic technique in the case of standard EVAR, and even more limited evidence in the case of complex EVAR,[102] because most of the literature relies on the retrospective and descriptive studies. Therefore, the selection of feasible technique should be based on several factors that include aneurysm complexity, patient's premorbid state, vascular team experience, choice of anesthesiologist, and the patient. Fleisher and associates favor the opinion that there is not a particular mode of anesthesia administration on cardiac disease patients in the ACC/AHA guidelines, because there is no sufficient evidence available in this regard.[18] It is not very common that the surgery turns into open repair scenario (the rates are less than 2%), yet the anesthesiologist should always be ready for such intraoperative rupture with massive blood loss by having adequate vascular access.[104] The following checklist provides an anesthesia roadmap that the clinician can refer to when considering how to proceed with endovascular aortic procedures.

1. Choice of Anesthesia
2. Radiation Safety
3. Renal Protection Vascular Access and
4. Blood Loss
5. Temperature Control
6. Spinal Cord Protection

CHOICE OF ANESTHESIA

In 2015 Broos and associates studied the anesthesia choices, such as general, regional, or local, by reviewing the outcomes of EVAR repairs. They concluded that the choice of anesthesia was independent of perioperative morbidity and mortality.[105] At the same time, the local or regional anesthesia has an upper edge over general anesthesia in terms of postoperative hospital stay, ICU stay, and shorter procedure times. Edwards and associates examined the results of 6009 elective EVAR procedures against the anesthetic procedures such as local/ MAC, regional, and general anesthesia.[106] They concluded that general anesthesia was strongly linked with pulmonary morbidity and increased hospital stays after the EVARs when compared with local/ MAC and spinal cord anesthesia. Similarly, Karthikesalingam and associates conducted a systematic review and meta-analysis of 10 studies comprising of 13,459 patients who had EVAR surgeries under the administration of local or general anesthesia.[102] They also reported that the group associated with local anesthesia had less postoperative complications and shorter postoperative hospital stays and procedure times when compared to the group associated with general anesthesia. Despite those retrospective studies and systemic reviews, current literature still lacks evidence based on randomized prospective data. Also, the continuous change is the commercially available devices and the increase in surgical experience with endovascular repairs, both of which lead to a composite decrease in operative times, today much less than when the initial endovascular aortic trials were performed.

The point is that there is no substantial evidence which proves that one anesthetic technique has an upper hand over another, and similarly, EVAR success does not point toward using any specific type of anesthesia, either. Generally speaking, simple EVARs performed through percutaneous punctures of the groin can be done under local anesthesia and MAC, neuraxial anesthesia, or general anesthesia provided that there is no other contraindication for the choice of anesthesia. More complex endovascular repairs, like FEVARs or BEVARs, that require multiple arterial cutdowns or combined groin and arm access will require general anesthesia.

Radiation Safety

Endovascular procedures are gaining much more popularity on the score that they exhibit lower access site-related blood loss, but at the same time, the patients become vulnerable to radiation exposure risk as well.[107] In this regard, the key principle of "As low as reasonably achieved" (ALARA) remains the bedrock foundation to limit the staff and patient's exposure to radiation accordingly.[108-110] In this regard, the clinician can take leverage from real-time radiation monitoring procedures so that he is aware of the situation and can adjust the radiation dose.[111]

Renal Protection

Contrast-induced nephropathy (CIN) is renal function impairment associated with a baseline increase in serum creatinine concentration of 25% or more or an absolute increase of 0.3 to 0.5mg/dL within 2 to 3 days of administration of IV contrast.[112]

The recently published PRESERVE Trial, which was a 2-by-2 factorial design, double blinded, placebo and comparator drug controlled randomized study, was conducted to answer the question of whether the outcomes changed after angiography with sodium bicarbonate and acetylcysteine in patients at high risk for CIN. The study concluded that there was no benefit for intravenous sodium bicarbonate over intravenous sodium chloride, nor for acetylcysteine over placebo in prevention of death, need for dialysis, persistent decline in kidney function at 90 days, or for the prevention contrast-induced acute kidney injury.[113]

The two most important factors that contribute to CIN are the contrast load and the preexisting kidney disease. Limiting the contrast load, and adequate hydration to decrease the viscosity of the iodine-based dyes, thus decreases the oxidative stress exerted on the proximal convoluted tubules.

Vascular Access and Blood Loss

The surgeons normally use either axillary or left brachial access for the insertion of snorkels or visceral stents of the FEVARs. Cheng underlines that there are specific challenges in anesthetic management scenarios such as prevention of paraplegia and stroke and blood pressure control.[114] Apart from this, the surgeons might need to perform bilateral femoral cutdowns as well as left axillary access. This would leave one limited option (i.e., right arm for intraaortic balloon pump [IABP] access). A central venous access is not a must but would be used when complex branched grafts are used with multiple comorbidities and limited peripheral venous access. Lengthy procedures like branched grafts are performed under anticoagulation with heparin. This creates a potential of continuous slow blood loss from the multiple arterial cutdown sites that could be overlooked in the dark hybrid rooms. It is not very common to experience sudden hemodynamic instability in patients unless there is a ruptured aneurysm or an aortic occlusion balloon is being used.

Temperature Control

The patient is vulnerable to perioperative hypothermia with adverse outcomes due to many untoward physiologic effects. Hence, maintaining normothermia is highly recommended and needed before the skin incision process. This could be accomplished by enhancing the operating room's ambient temperature, by using warming IV fluids, and by using radiolucent underbody warmers. Hypothermia could delay tracheal extubation, which is sometimes preferred to be as early as possible to perform a neurological exam if there are risks of strokes or spinal cord injury.

Spinal Cord Protection

SCI remains one of the devastating possible complications of thoracic and thoracoabdominal aortic repair.[115,116]

There could be many reasons for the occurrence of SCI such as occlusion risk of stent grafts associated with the AKA, considered the main collateral artery, or due to damage of middle sacral arteries, inferior mesenteric arteries, or internal iliac arteries. Risk factors for spinal cord injury include emergency surgery, aortic dissection, extensive aortic disease, aortic rupture, prior abdominal surgery, hypogastric artery occlusion, and history of renal dysfunction. Therefore, many strategies are utilized such as arterial pressure augmentation, CSF drainage, and lowering the CVP.[117] The 2014 European guidelines on the management of aortic disease stated that CSF drainage can be beneficial in high-risk patients (class IIa, level of evidence C).[118] Similarly, the ACCF/AHA guidelines for the thoracic aortic disease recommended CSF drainage in TEVAR patients who are at high risk for spinal cord injury (class I, level of evidence B).[119] Spinal drains may be placed preinduction of general anesthesia or postinduction if the patient cannot tolerate the procedure. For patients receiving anticoagulant or antiplatelet therapy, the American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine (ASRA) Guidelines should be followed, and the perioperative management of those medications should be arranged with the perioperative team.[120]

To optimize spinal cord perfusion, CSF pressure is usually monitored and CSF periodically drained. Most institutions have their protocols for management of spinal drains and CSF drainage. Most local guidelines and protocols advocate for CSF pressure of 10 to 15 mmHg. Some institutions drain CSF periodically during the intraoperative and postoperative periods while others drain according to CSF pressure or if there are any signs of SCI. Care should be taken to avoid over-draining CSF. Excessive rapid CSF drainage, particularly during the intraoperative period of heparinization or postoperative coagulopathy, could lead to intracranial hypotension and increase the risk of intracranial hemorrhage.

If bloody CSF is encountered during the placement, discussion with the surgeon and the patient if the placement was attempted preinduction, and rescheduling an elective case should be considered. Some institutions encourage routine fluoroscopic-guided spinal drain insertion to decrease the number of passes. Ultrasound-guided placement could be considered.

Other measures to decrease the risk of SCI is the maintenance of flow through the left subclavian artery and the internal iliac arteries. Subclavian artery flow can be decreased if a TEVAR graft covers the origin of the left subclavian. Flow can be increased by a partial arch debranching through a left carotid to a left subclavian bypass. In the case of internal iliac arteries, minimizing the occlusion by large introducer sheaths will improve the spinal collateral flow.[121]

POTENTIAL COMPLICATIONS

Early and Late Complications

The early complications are those that occur from day 2 to day 30 after the surgery. These types of complications include postimplantation syndrome (PIS), paraplegia, stroke, acute renal failure, lower extremity and pelvic ischemia, aneurysm rupture, and others. The late complications that occur 31 days after surgery are associated with endoleak, but they also include the aneurysm rupture, its elongation, degenerated proximal neck, device migration, limb occlusion, and graft infection.

Endoleaks

EVARs are vulnerable to a condition where the aneurysm sac experiences arterial blood flow, despite the exclusion by the stent graft, and is thereby unable to maintain or accomplish full exclusion from the blood flow (Figs. 56.16 and 56.17). Chen and Stavropoulos explain the type 1 endoleak where the stent-graft fails to accomplish a circumferential seal at the distal (IB) or the proximal (IA) positions, thereby demanding immediate treatment due to aneurysm sac systemic pressurization.[122] If not treated promptly, it can result in either expansion of the aneurysm or even rupture. An increased occurrence of IA needs early endovascular intervention and can occur with hostile proximal aortic neck anatomy. There are certain technologies which can detect these endoleaks, such as cone-beam computed tomography. Endoleaks are normally treated by balloon angioplasty of the proximal attachment site so that the desired seal is obtained through remodeling of the stent-graft. The endoleak can also be bridged by covered extension of the native endograft.[123] Embolization is another treatment option specifically when the space between the renal arteries and the endograft is not adequate. Fenestrated or branch graft extensions are also an alternative for more complex proximal endoleaks.

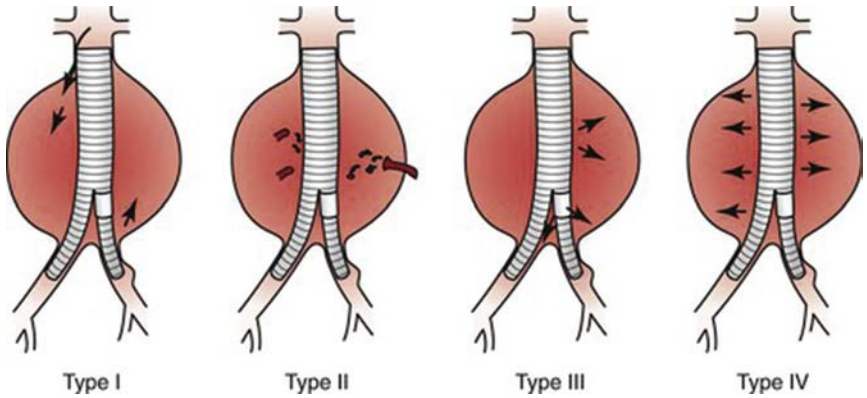


Fig. 56.16 Endoleak types. (From White GH, May J, Waugh RC, et al. Type III and type IV endoleak: toward a complete definition of blood flow in the sac after endoluminal AAA repair. *J Endovasc Ther*. 1998;5:305–309.)

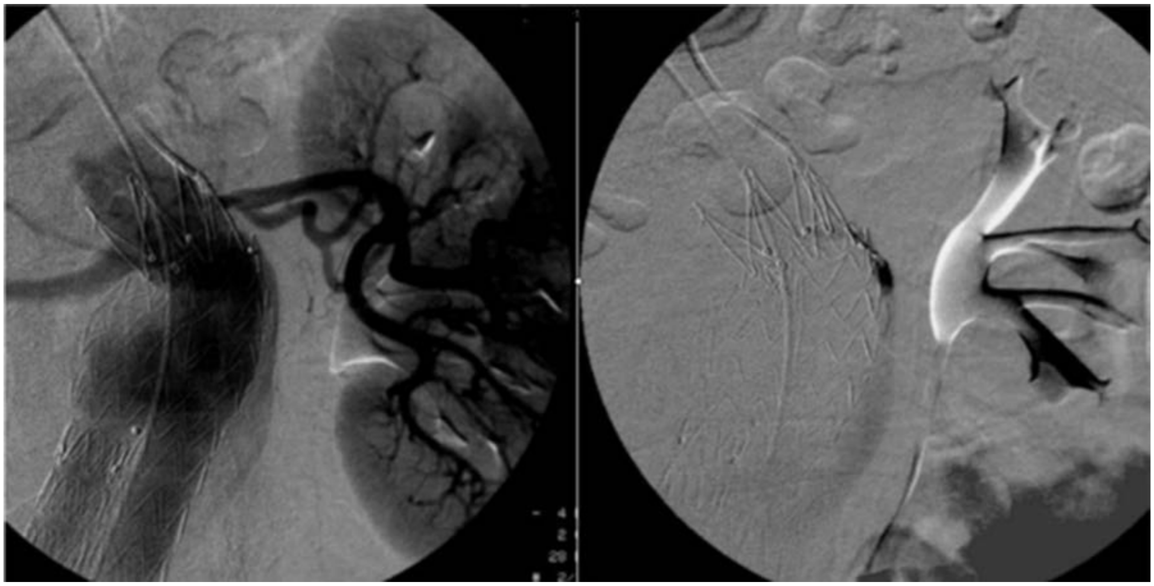


Fig. 56.17 Computed tomography scan performed 2 days after endovascular aneurysm repair revealing a progressively enlarging type 1A endoleak. (From Tureli D, Baltacioglu F. Type I endoleak management after endovascular repair of infrarenal abdominal aortic aneurysm. *Vasc Dis Manag.* 2014;11:E91–E97.)

Type II endoleak occurs when the aneurysm sac undergoes reverse filling from the branch vessels through either lumbar or inferior mesenteric arteries.[124,125] This can result in various anomalies such as aneurysm rupture, sac enlargement, and enhanced intrasac pressures.[126] Type II endoleaks can be treated by transarterial embolization through the iliac arteries or retrograde embolization through the superior mesenteric or inferior mesenteric arteries. They can also be treated by translumbar computed tomography angiogram (CTA)-guided embolization.[127] A transcaval approach can be used if the type II endoleak is close to the IVC. A transjugular sheath is advanced through the IVC and a needle is used to access the aneurysm sac to embolize it. Potential risks of such procedure include retroperitoneal bleeding, pulmonary embolization from non-targeted embolization, and aortocaval fistulas.[128]

Type III endoleaks trigger when the stent-graft undergoes a structural failure, thereby causing the blood flow to move into the aneurysm sac. These endoleaks occur either due to device failure such as detachment of modular graft components, a junctional leak, or due to erosion of fabric. They also require immediate intervention and treatment to avoid the risk of rapid expansion and rupture of aneurysm. These endoleaks are treated by inserting a new fabricated stent graft over the faulty position with angioplasty so that the desired seal is accomplished. The type IV endoleak is associated with graft porosity while Type V endoleak shows the aneurysm sac enlargement which is devoid of any demonstrable trace in the imaging procedures.

Open surgical treatment remains an option if endovascular treatment of endoleaks fails or is not possible. Surgical treatment could range from ligation of offending arteries feeding an endoleak to graft excision and open aneurysm repair with exogenous graft. Careful preoperative planning between the anesthesia and surgical teams requires all to be ready for the possibilities of rupture of the sac intraoperatively or conversion into an open surgery if endovascular treatment fails.

Postimplantation Syndrome

PIS is a poorly understood phenomenon that could occur after endovascular aortic procedures and varies widely in incidence and clinical presentation. Possible explanations could be a sort of systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) in response to the instrumentation of the vascular endothelium or to the stent graft material. Clinical presentation could include a combination of fever, leukocytosis, thrombocytopenia, and coagulopathy. Treatment should be supportive treatment, especially with antipyretics, platelets, or fresh frozen plasma transfusions to treat the coagulopathy.[129]

Hybrid Arch Repairs

Since the introduction of thoracic endovascular aortic repair (TEVAR) in the early 1990s,[130] the less invasive endovascular approach to descending and thoracoabdominal aneurysms has been advanced with the commercial availability of different types of thoracic stent grafts. Related to the morbid invasiveness and complexity of open arch surgical techniques, hybrid aortic arch repairs have been developed incorporating the use of TEVAR with a conventional elephant trunk repair, or combined with an open debranching of the cerebral vessels, frequently in combination with extraanatomical bypasses.[131,132] This has simplified aortic arch reconstruction and made aortic arch repair feasible in high-risk individuals with comorbid conditions. Aortic arch pathology is also amenable to TEVAR but often requires a concurrent or staged open debranching procedure such as carotid-carotid or carotid-subclavian bypass. Debranching permits stent deployment across the origins of the arch vessels while maintaining perfusion to the head and upper extremities.[133]

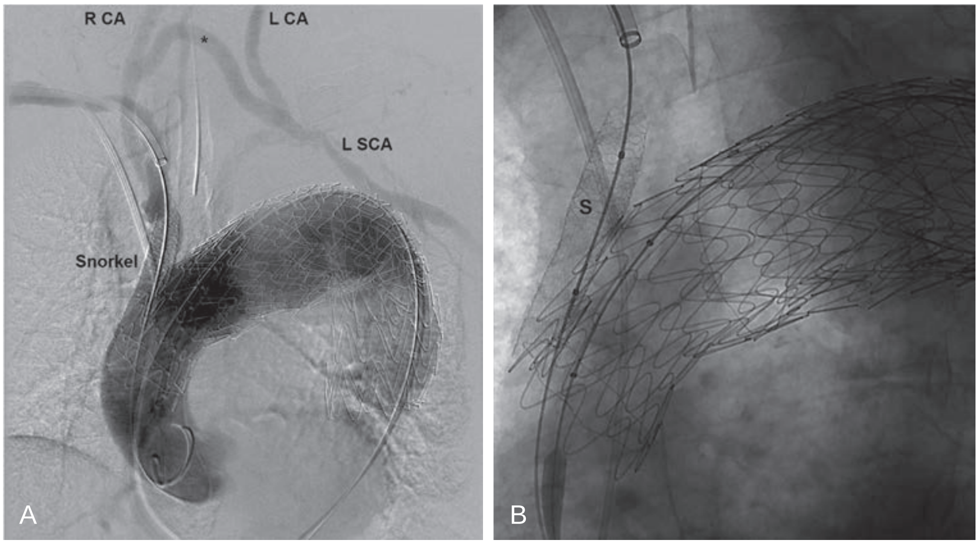


Fig. 56.18 Intraoperative digital subtraction angiography showing completed thoracic endovascular aortic repair with arch debranching after stent deployment with rapid ventricular pacing (RVP). (A) Overview of arch revascularization showing arch stent graft, innominate artery snorkel stent, and carotid-carotid-subclavian bypass (denoted by asterisk). Right common carotid artery *(R CA)*, left common carotid artery *(L CA)*, and left subclavian artery *(L SCA)* are labeled. The temporary pacer wire used to deliver RVP is visible entering the image from the top left. (B) Close-up of snorkel stent *(S)* extending from the ascending aortic arch into the innominate artery. The snorkel stent maintains flow to the carotid and subclavian arteries and allows deployment of a stent graft with proximal landing zone zero. (From Bokoch MP, Hiramoto JS, Lobo EP, et al. Rapid ventricular pacing for landing zone precision during thoracic endovascular aortic arch repair: a case series. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31[6]:2141–2146.)

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT OF HYBRID ARCH REPAIRS

Anesthetic management of TEVAR must facilitate precise deployment of stents at short proximal landing zones near the arch vessels.[134] Deployment is complicated by the hydrodynamics of aortic blood flow that force the stent distally (windsock effect). Depending on the proximity of the planned stent graft to the left ventricular outflow tract, transient hypotension (systolic blood pressure of 60 mmHg) may be highly beneficial during deployment to limit stent migration. Various drugs have been used for this purpose,[135] but rapid ventricular pacing (RVP) is usually the preferred technique (Fig. 56.18).[136] RVP is reported to produce more profound hypotension more quickly, and with shorter duration as compared to sodium nitroprusside.[137,138] While adenosine has been used for transient asystole in the setting of TEVAR and intracranial procedures, an unpredictable duration of asystole and wide individual variation in dose requirement (0.3 to 41 mg/kg) have been reported. Unexpected return of left ventricular contractions can complicate stent deployment at a critical moment. Unlike pharmacologic techniques, the onset and duration of RVP can be controlled precisely. The bulk of published data on RVP arises from the transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVR) literature, in which RVP is utilized during balloon valvuloplasty and valve deployment. Small studies have shown efficacy and safety of RVP for TEVAR, but deaths have been reported (Fig. 56.19).[139]

Fig. 56.20 illustrates the hybrid aortic arch repair types I, II, and III.

Hybrid approaches for the treatment of aortic arch aneurysmal pathology are being performed with increasing frequency. This reflects the increasing comfort level of the surgeons with endovascular technology, and the improving technology of endovascular platforms to successfully land stent grafts in the proximal thoracic aorta. As the patient population with thoracic aortic disease seeking intervention get older, embracing and honing these skills will be crucial. In addition to the associated operative mortality of complex operations such as aortic arch hybrid procedures, the Achilles heel of this intervention remains neurologic complications. Several groups have shown that arch hybrid procedures can be performed with acceptable mortality, with very minimal postoperative and long-term endoleak rates. Neurologic complications, including stroke and SCI, remain significant causes of morbidity and associated mortality.[140]

Carotid Endarterectomy

The strong association between stroke and carotid artery disease is well known. The principal cause of carotid artery disease is atherosclerosis, which most commonly involves the bifurcation of the common carotid artery with frequent extension into both the internal and external carotid arteries. The clinical manifestations of carotid artery disease represent a spectrum of conditions, with fatal or debilitating stroke secondary to cerebral infarction at one end of the spectrum and ranging successively through non-debilitating stroke, transient ischemic attack, and amaurosis fugax (transient attack of monocular blindness) to an asymptomatic bruit. Cerebrovascular sequelae of carotid atherosclerosis may result either from embolization of thrombus or atheromatous debris or from a reduction in flow (hypoperfusion) secondary to stenosis. The latter probably accounts for less than 10% of the cerebrovascular sequelae of carotid atherosclerosis. Although much is known about the genesis and evolution of atherosclerosis, significantly less is known about the circumstances that lead to plaque instability and rupture. Regardless of the mechanism, the degree of

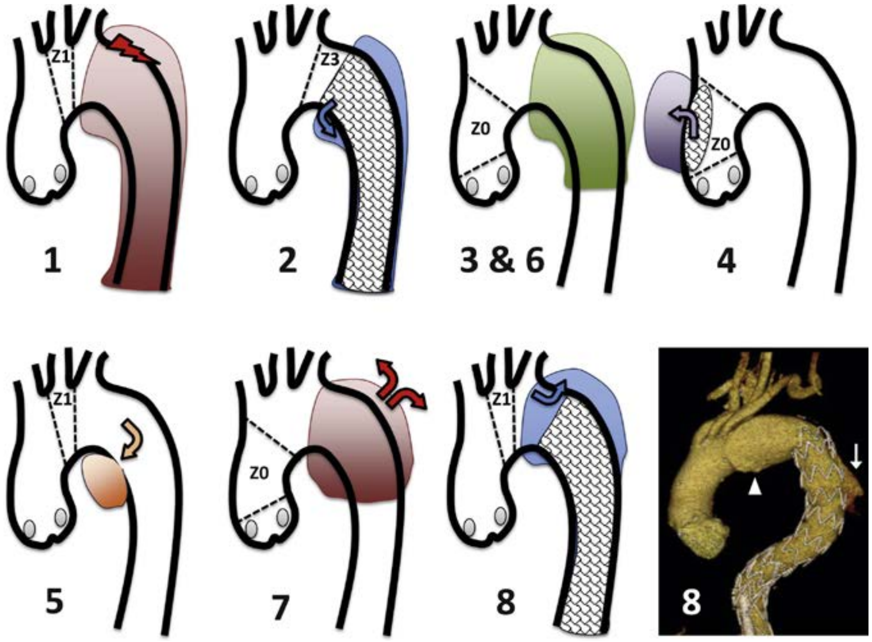


Fig. 56.19 Schematic of aortic arch pathology in patients undergoing thoracic endovascular aortic repair (TEVAR) with rapid ventricular pacing (RVP) in this study. (Patient #1) Aneurysm with chronic type-B dissection, (#2) aneurysm enlarging due to endoleak after prior TEVAR, (#3 and #6) isolated arch aneurysm, (#4) ascending aortic pseudoaneurysm due to leaking patch at prior aortic cannulation site from coronary artery bypass grafting, (#5) penetrating atherosclerotic ulcer of the aortic arch, (#7) ruptured aortic arch aneurysm, and (#8) enlarging aortic arch aneurysm and endoleak after prior TEVAR. Dashed lines indicate landing zone (Z) for proximal margin of stent deployed under RVP. Arrows indicate leak or extravasation of blood. Lightning bolt indicates dissection. *(Bottom right)* Preoperative three-dimensional reconstructed computed tomography angiogram for patient #8 showing aneurysmal dilation *(arrowhead)* and endoleak *(arrow)*. (From Bokoch MP, Hiramoto JS, Lobo EP, et al. Rapid ventricular pacing for landing zone precision during thoracic endovascular aortic arch repair: a case series. *J cardiothoracic Vasc Anesthesia*. 2017;31[6]:2141–2146.)

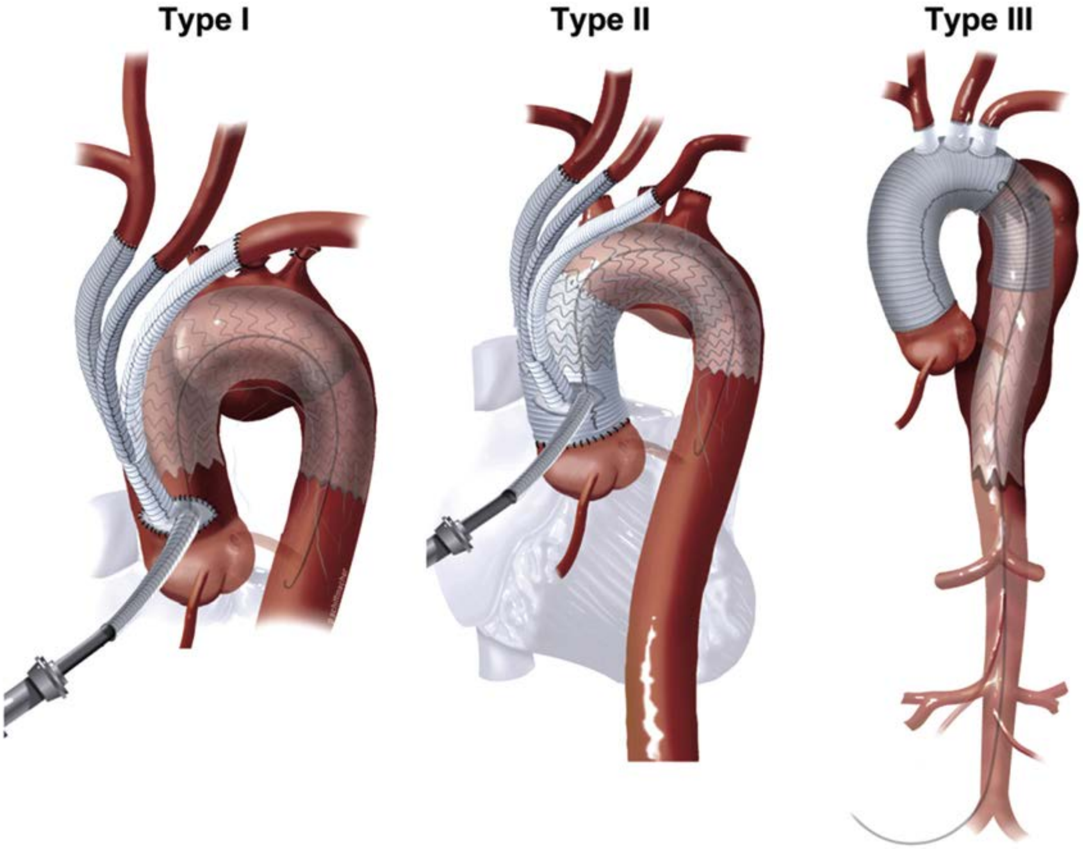


Fig. 56.20 Hybrid aortic arch repair types I, II, and III. (From Vallabhajosyula P, Szeto W, Desai N, et al. Type I and type II hybrid aortic arch replacement: postoperative and mid-term outcome analysis. *Ann Cardiothoracic Surg*. 2013;2[3]:280.)

cerebral injury depends on such factors as plaque morphology, characteristics of the embolus, duration of hypoperfusion, cerebrovascular vasoreactivity, integrity of the circle of Willis, and cerebral collateral circulation. A multi-society guideline is available for the management of carotid artery disease.[141]

Stroke is a major public health burden worldwide. It is the fifth leading cause of death and the leading cause of serious, long-term disability in the United States. Stroke is also a major contributor to health care costs. The direct and indirect costs of stroke in the United States in 2008 are estimated at $65.5 billion.[142] Approximately 780,000 people experience a new (≈600,000) or recurrent (≈180,000) stroke each year in the United States.[142] Annually, more than 95,000 hospitalizations and 165,000 deaths occur from stroke. Well-defined risk factors exist in patients with stroke, the most important of which is hypertension. Approximately 83% of strokes are ischemic (i.e., cerebral thrombosis or embolism), and 7.6% of ischemic strokes result in death within 30 days of initial evaluation.[143] Extracranial atherosclerotic disease accounts for up to 20% of all ischemic strokes. Less than 20% of strokes are preceded by a transient ischemic attack. Despite a well-documented decline in stroke mortality, the annual incidence rate of stroke may be increasing. This increase is probably due to growth in high-risk populations. The incidence of perioperative stroke in unselected patients, patients with asymptomatic carotid bruit, and patients with at least 50% carotid stenosis undergoing general anesthesia and surgery is approximately 0.1%, 1.0%, and 3.6%, respectively.

Although treatment options to reverse the effect of acute ischemic stroke are limited, outcomes may be improved with appropriate therapy. One approved therapy is IV recombinant tissue plasminogen activator (rtPA). Given the narrow 3- to 4.5-hour treatment window from the onset of symptoms, prompt evaluation and diagnosis of ischemic stroke are critical. The addition of endovascular treatment options has improved outcomes. Three randomized controlled trials published in 2015 demonstrated a clear benefit of the addition of clot retrieval compared to standard therapy with thrombolysis. The 2015 American Heart Association/American Stroke Association guidelines now recommend endovascular treatment in acute ischemic stroke if the patient meets criteria (large vessel anterior circulation occlusion, independent at baseline, treatment within 24 hours.)[144]

INDICATIONS

Endarterectomy of the carotid bifurcation has been used to reduce symptoms and prevent stroke for more than 50 years. Although the efficacy of carotid endarterectomy for prevention of ipsilateral stroke in patients with and without symptoms has been demonstrated in large-scale randomized clinical trials,[145,146] multiple factors including perioperative risk, comorbidities, and life expectancy must be considered in the overall assessment. In centers of excellence, it is a low-risk procedure with excellent long-term durability. Carotid endarterectomy is the most common peripheral vascular surgical procedure performed in the United States, with an estimated 130,000 procedures performed annually. The rate and number of carotid endarterectomies have fluctuated significantly since the early 1970s. With marked growth in the specialty of vascular surgery and an expanding list of surgical indications, the number of carotid endarterectomies performed in nonfederal hospitals increased from 15,000 in 1971 to 107,000 in 1985 and then declined substantially over the next 5 to 6 years. The decline was probably due to publications questioning the indications for the procedures and isolated reports citing excessively frequent rates of operative morbidity and mortality.

In 1992, a marked increase in the number of carotid endarterectomies occurred after the results of two large-scale, prospective randomized trials were published. The North American Symptomatic Carotid Endarterectomy Trial (NASCET) and the European Carotid Surgery Trial both reported definitive results for symptomatic patients with high-grade carotid stenosis (70% to 99%).[145,147] In NASCET, follow-up at 2 years showed a stroke rate for surgical patients of 9% versus 26% for medical patients. This benefit of carotid endarterectomy has persisted at 8 years of follow-up.[148] In the European Carotid Surgery Trial, the long-term stroke rate was 2.8% for surgical patients, excluding a perioperative stroke and death rate of 7.5%, and 16.8% for medically managed patients.

The efficacy of carotid endarterectomy in asymptomatic patients with carotid stenosis has been evaluated in five randomized trials.[146,149-152] The Carotid Artery Surgery Asymptomatic Narrowing Operation Versus Aspirin trial, the first to publish its results, concluded that carotid endarterectomy was not indicated for asymptomatic patients with 50% to 90% carotid stenosis.[149] Unfortunately, this study was seriously flawed and the results questioned. The Mayo Asymptomatic Carotid Endarterectomy Study was terminated early because of a significantly increased number of MIs and transient cerebral ischemic events in the surgical group.[150] Most of these events were not related to the surgery itself but rather to the absence of aspirin in the surgical group. The Department of Veterans Affairs trial was designed to compare the effects of carotid endarterectomy plus aspirin versus medical treatment (i.e., aspirin) in asymptomatic male patients with 50% or greater carotid stenosis.[151] This trial demonstrated a significant reduction in ipsilateral neurologic events in the surgical group (8%) versus the medical group (20.6%). However, the combined incidence of stroke and death was not different between study groups. The Asymptomatic Carotid Atherosclerosis Study (ACAS) demonstrated that patients with asymptomatic carotid stenosis (≥60%) who were treated with carotid endarterectomy and aspirin have a reduced 5-year risk for ipsilateral stroke compared with patients treated with aspirin alone (5.1% vs. 11.0%).[146] These results reflect only a 5.9% absolute risk reduction in 5 years, which is just above 1% per year. Of note, improvement in outcome for patients randomized to undergo endarterectomy in this trial did not reach significance until 3 years after surgery. The European Asymptomatic Carotid Surgery Trial, the largest trial to date, largely replicated the results of ACAS, but in a somewhat more pragmatic setting.[152] This trial demonstrated that patients with asymptomatic carotid stenosis (≈70%) on ultrasound who were treated by immediate carotid endarterectomy plus medical treatment have a reduced 5-year risk for stroke compared with patients treated with medical therapy alone (6.4% vs. 11.8%). Of note, half of this 5-year benefit involved disabling or fatal strokes.

Although landmark randomized clinical trials have defined individuals who are likely to benefit from carotid endarterectomy (and set the standard for developing evidence-based practice guidelines throughout the world), it has been suggested that the significant increase in the number of carotid endarterectomies performed over the last decade may be due in part to the extrapolation of trial results to patients and settings not directly supported by the trials. For example, both NASCET and ACAS restricted enrollment to patients younger than 80 years of age, and both trials carefully selected institutions and surgeons to optimize the results of surgery. Additionally, subgroup analysis of ACAS could not demonstrate a significant benefit for women.[146] With the advent of a second interventional treatment modality, percutaneous carotid angioplasty and stenting (discussed later), and the evolution of intensive medical therapy, this issue has become more complex.

PERIOPERATIVE MORBIDITY AND MORTALITY

Although the randomized trials just noted have demonstrated a protective effect of carotid endarterectomy on ipsilateral stroke, the critical determinants of benefit for any given patient must include the overall perioperative event rate and expected long-term survival. Thus, the perioperative stroke and death rate for carotid endarterectomy needs to be very low to maintain the beneficial effects of surgery over medical therapy alone. Further, to compensate for the perioperative risk associated with surgery, the patient must have a reasonable life expectancy (12 to 18 months). The 30-day stroke and death rate of 2.3% for asymptomatic patients in ACAS (1987 to 1993) and 5.0% for symptomatic patients in NASCET (1988 to 1991) are often cited as benchmarks. More recent reports suggest a considerably less frequent event rate. For example, a prospective database study of 13,316 carotid endarterectomies performed in 2007 and 2008 reported a 30-day stroke and death rate of 1.3% in asymptomatic patients and 2.9% in symptomatic patients.[153] The 30-day mortality was significantly more frequent in patients who developed a stroke than in those who did not (12.9% vs. 0.6%). Patients with high-risk anatomy, such as restenosis and contralateral carotid arterial occlusion, have the highest risk for perioperative stroke and death. Neurologic deficits occur more commonly in patients with poorly controlled preoperative hypertension and in those with hypertension or hypotension postoperatively. The incidence of perioperative MI in patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy ranges from 0% to 5%. Recent reports suggest the incidence of MI is relatively low. The General Anesthesia versus Local Anesthesia for Carotid Surgery (GALA) trial (discussed later) results reported only 13 patients of 3526 (0.37%) had a perioperative MI.[154] The four fatal perioperative MIs accounted for only 8.9% of the total 30-day mortality. Although the role of carotid endarterectomy in patients older than 80 years of age remains a concern, recent reports suggest that carotid endarterectomy can be performed safely in the very elderly and those deemed high risk, with combined stroke or death rates being comparable to those found in randomized trials (NASCET and ACAS).

PREOPERATIVE ASSESSMENT

The optimal preoperative assessment for patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy continues to be debated (see also Chapter 31). Patients with recently symptomatic carotid disease present a particular challenge because strong evidence exists to support surgical intervention within 2 weeks after manifestation of symptoms, thus limiting the time available for evaluation and optimization of relevant comorbidities as well as the initiation of new medications.[155] The medical management of patients with asymptomatic carotid disease should be optimized and includes β-blockers, statins, and antiplatelet agents. Poorly controlled hypertension should be addressed with the patient's internist. The gradual decreasing of the arterial blood pressure over several weeks before surgery will restore intravascular volume, reset cerebral autoregulation to a more normal range, and improve perioperative management. Poorly controlled diabetes also warrants preoperative optimization, which may improve perioperative outcome.[156]

CAD is common in patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy and is a leading cause of both early and late mortality. Hertzer and co-workers[157] performed coronary angiograms in 506 patients scheduled for carotid endarterectomy and found significant (>70%) stenosis in one or more coronary artery, CAD in 83% of patients suspected of having CAD, and CAD in 40% thought to have no CAD. Despite the known frequent incidence of CAD in patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy, preoperative studies for the evaluation of myocardial function or ischemic potential are rarely undertaken. Exceptions to this practice are patients with unstable angina, recent MI with evidence of ongoing ischemia, decompensated congestive heart failure, and significant valvular disease. In general, specialized cardiac testing would be unlikely to result in cancellation of the procedure or alter perioperative management. Further, the relatively infrequent overall rates of perioperative nonfatal and fatal MI after carotid endarterectomy make aggressive strategies leading to prophylactic coronary revascularization less appealing.[154] A recent clinical trial reported on the safety and efficacy of coronary angiography and revascularization in preventing postoperative cardiac ischemic events after carotid endarterectomy. In a randomized fashion, 426 patients with no history of CAD were randomized to either coronary angiography before carotid endarterectomy (216 patients) or carotid endarterectomy without coronary angiography (210 patients). In the angiography group, 68 patients had a significant stenosis of the coronary arteries and underwent revascularization with PCI (66 patients) or CABG (2 patients). PCI was performed 1 to 8 days before surgery and always consisted of angioplasty and stenting. No patients in the angiography group had a postoperative cardiac ischemic event or complication related to PCI, whereas nine patients in the group without angiography had an ischemic event (one fatal MI and eight ischemic events treated medically). Although all PCI patients received dual-antiplatelet therapy, no major bleeding or neck hematomas were observed. Long-term follow-up was not reported.

Patients with combined carotid stenosis and CAD requiring coronary revascularization represent somewhat of a management dilemma because it is often unclear which disease should be treated first.[158] The severity of carotid and coronary disease must be evaluated in terms of clinical symptoms and anatomic lesions, and a decision must be made to perform a combined, staged (carotid endarterectomy first), or reverse-staged (CABG first) procedure. Carotid revascularization is recommended before CABG (staged procedure) in patients with symptomatic carotid disease and bilateral severe asymptomatic carotid stenosis. The optimal management of severe unilateral asymptomatic carotid stenosis in patients undergoing CABG is unclear. The only randomized clinical trial to date randomized 185 patients with severe unilateral asymptomatic carotid stenosis undergoing CABG to a staged or combined procedure (94 patients) or a reverse-staged procedure (90 patients).[159] Although the perioperative mortality rates were equivalent (~1.0%), the 90-day stroke and death rates were significantly lower in the staged and combined group (1.0% vs. 8.8%). Given the overall paucity of high-quality evidence, management of an individual patient should be guided by careful assessment of the relative severity of the coronary and carotid disease with particular emphasis on both surgeon-specific and institution-specific results in these patient populations. Carotid artery angioplasty and stenting is widely being applied as an alternative revascularization modality before staged CABG. More recently, a combined procedure (carotid angioplasty/stenting and CABG) has been introduced. In a small feasibility and safety study (90 patients), carotid artery angioplasty and stenting under local anesthesia followed immediately by CABG reported a 30-day stroke and death rate of 2.2%.[160]

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT

Anesthetic management goals for carotid endarterectomy include protection of the heart and brain from ischemic injury, control of the heart rate and arterial blood pressure, and ablation of the surgical pain and stress responses. These goals must be achieved with another important goal in mind—to have an awake patient at the end of surgery for the purpose of neurologic examination.

The preoperative visit is particularly important in patients undergoing carotid surgery. During this visit, a series of arterial blood pressure and heart rate measurements are obtained from which acceptable ranges for perioperative management can be determined. Patients are instructed to continue all long-term cardiac medications up to and including the morning of surgery. Aspirin therapy should be continued throughout the perioperative period. As noted earlier, discontinuation of aspirin therapy may be related to an increased rate of MI and transient ischemic events in patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy. When patients arrive at the hospital on the day of surgery, they are queried regarding any new cardiovascular or cerebrovascular symptoms. Long-term cardiovascular medications not taken at home should be administered in the preoperative holding area whenever possible. Patient reassurance is particularly important at this time because anxiety is associated with increases in heart rate, systemic vascular resistance, and myocardial O_2 consumption, which in this patient population could precipitate myocardial ischemia.

ECG monitoring should include continuous leads II and V_5 for detection of rhythm disturbances and ST-segment changes. An intraarterial catheter for beat-to-beat blood pressure monitoring should be considered routine. Noninvasive arterial blood pressure measurement in the contralateral arm is recommended. Central venous and pulmonary artery catheters are rarely indicated for carotid surgery. The rare patient with uncompensated heart failure or recent MI with ongoing ischemia requiring emergent surgery is a possible exception. If such monitors are used, the subclavian or femoral insertion sites are most practical because inadvertent carotid puncture could compromise blood flow as a result of hematoma. Oftentimes, the most common reason for central access is difficult or inadequate peripheral access. IV access for fluid and drug administration can be accomplished with two secure, medium-bore (16-gauge) peripheral IV catheters. Because both arms will be tucked to the patient's sides, the IV catheters must run well after patient positioning.

General Anesthesia

Any of the drugs commonly used to induce anesthesia, maintenance anesthetics, and nondepolarizing muscle relaxants can be used safely during carotid endarterectomy, given that stable hemodynamics are maintained and the patient is awake at the end of the procedure. A conventional technique is as follows. Sedative premedication (e.g., midazolam) has the potential to compromise early neurologic assessment and is universally avoided. After placement of routine monitors and administration of O_2 by facemask, small doses of opioid (e.g., fentanyl 0.5 to 1 μg/kg) are administered during arterial line placement. Induction of anesthesia is accomplished with incremental dosages of Propofol supplemented with additional opioid (total fentanyl dose 2 to 4 μg/kg). Etomidate also may be used and is preferred in patients with limited cardiac reserve. Neuromuscular relaxation with a short-acting to intermediate-acting nondepolarizing muscle relaxant such as rocuronium facilitates tracheal intubation. Esmolol is particularly effective in blunting the increases in heart rate and blood pressure responses during laryngoscopy and endotracheal intubation and is used liberally during the induction period. Arterial blood pressure responses during and after endotracheal intubation are unpredictable in this patient population, and the clinician must be prepared for immediate treatment of extremes in blood pressure. This can be achieved with the use of short-acting drugs, such as phenylephrine 50 to 100 μg for hypotension and sodium nitroprusside 5 to 25 μg or clevidipine 100 to 250 μg for hypertension. Patients with poorly controlled hypertension (diastolic blood pressure >100 mm Hg) require special care. These patients are often intravascularly volume depleted and may have significant hypotension with induction of anesthesia. Administration of fluids intravenously, careful titration of anesthetics, and immediate treatment of hypotension are especially important.

Anesthesia is maintained with inhaled volatile anesthetics. Sevoflurane or desflurane may be preferred because of more rapid emergence. Studies using EEG and regional cerebral blood flow (rCBF) measurements suggest that the critical rCBF (the rCBF below which EEG changes of cerebral ischemia occur) is lower for isoflurane. Sevoflurane's critical rCBF in patients undergoing endarterectomy is similar to that determined with isoflurane.[161,162] This use of 50%

N_2O in O_2 was previously favored; however, its use has been associated with increased post-operative nausea and vomiting. Maintenance anesthesia can also be achieved with a combination of inhaled volatile anesthetic in combination with propofol, remifentanil, or dexmedetomidine. If neuromonitoring is utilized, it would require inhaled volatile concentrations less than 0.5 minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) with supplementation of intravenous medications. Otherwise, clinical studies show no differences between volatiles and total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA).[163] With general anesthesia, a superficial plexus block is not required but can be considered as an adjunct.

Despite only modest surgical stimulation, hemodynamic fluctuations are common during carotid endarterectomy. Arterial blood pressure and heart rate are controlled within predetermined and individualized ranges during the surgical procedure with short-acting drugs whenever possible (phenylephrine, esmolol, nitroglycerin, sodium nitroprusside, nicardipine, clevidipine). Arterial blood pressure should be maintained in the high-normal range throughout the procedure and particularly during the period of carotid clamping to increase collateral flow and prevent cerebral ischemia. In patients with contralateral internal carotid artery occlusion or severe stenosis, induced hypertension to approximately 10% to 20% above baseline is advocated during the period of carotid clamping when neurophysiologic monitoring is not used. Arterial blood pressure preservation or augmentation can be accomplished by maintaining light levels of general anesthesia or by administering sympathomimetic drugs such as phenylephrine, ephedrine, or norepinephrine. Some caution must be exercised when using vasopressors to augment blood pressure during carotid endarterectomy because the increases in blood pressure and heart rate may increase myocardial ischemia[164] or infarction. The restrictive use of vasopressors for specific instances of cerebral ischemia has been advocated.[165] In one report, induced hypertension during the period of carotid occlusion was not associated with myocardial ischemia.[166]

Surgical manipulation of the carotid sinus with activation of the baroreceptor reflexes can cause abrupt bradycardia and hypotension. Cessation of surgical manipulation promptly restores the hemodynamics, and infiltration of the carotid bifurcation with 1% lidocaine usually prevents further episodes. Infiltration may, however, increase the incidence of both intraoperative and postoperative hypertension.[167]

On application of the surgical dressings, drugs used to reverse neuromuscular blockade (i.e., neostigmine or sugammadex) are administered and O_2 is increased to 100%. Ventilation is gently assisted until the patient exhibits spontaneously eye opening or movement. With rare exceptions, all tracheas are extubated after neurologic integrity is established. Neurologic deficits on emergence require immediate discussion with the surgeon about the need for angiography, reoperation, or both. The period of emergence and extubation may be associated with marked hypertension and tachycardia, which may require aggressive pharmacologic intervention. Tight hemodynamic control during this period is likely to be more demanding than during induction. Greater hemodynamic stability and decreased pharmacologic intervention during emergence have been reported in patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy with propofol versus isoflurane. In addition, a significantly less frequent incidence of myocardial ischemia on emergence was found in the propofol group than in the isoflurane group (1 of 14 vs. 6 of 13). Of particular note, all patients with myocardial ischemia on emergence had systolic blood pressure higher than 200 mm Hg.

Regional and Local Anesthesia

Regional and local anesthetic techniques for carotid endarterectomy have been in use for more than 50 years, and many centers consider them to be the techniques of choice. Regional anesthesia is accomplished by blocking the C2 to C4 dermatomes by use of a superficial, intermediate, deep, or combined cervical plexus block (see also Chapter 46). Adequate anesthesia can be obtained with an isolated superficial or intermediate cervical plexus block, likely as a result of spread of local anesthetic to the cervical nerve roots.[168] Local infiltration of the incisional site and surgical field can also provide the necessary sensory blockade. A recent systematic review including over 10,000 cervical plexus blocks for carotid endarterectomy found that the deep (or combined) block was associated with a higher serious complication rate related to the injecting needle compared with a superficial (or intermediate) block (0.25% vs. 0%).[169] The conversion rate to general anesthesia was also higher with the deep block (2.1% vs. 0.4%). No difference was found in the incidence of serious systemic complications between the blocks. Although the incidence of serious complications from a cervical plexus block is infrequent, near-toxic levels of local anesthetic occurs in almost half of patients after superficial and deep cervical plexus block.[170] Although no major complications related to local anesthetic toxicity occurred, some caution should be exercised when requesting the surgeon to supplement with additional local anesthetic.

Regional and local anesthesia allows continuous neurologic assessment of the awake patient, which is widely considered to be the most sensitive method for detecting inadequate cerebral perfusion and function. Awake monitoring reduces the need for shunting and avoids the expense associated with indirect monitors of cerebral perfusion. Other advantages that have been reported include greater stability of blood pressure and decreased vasopressor requirements, reduced operative site bleeding, and reduced hospital costs. Potential disadvantages of local or regional anesthesia include an inability to use pharmacologic cerebral protection with anesthetics, patient panic or loss of cooperation, seizure or loss of consciousness with carotid clamping, and inadequate access to the airway should conversion to general anesthesia be necessary. The reported incidence of intraoperative neurologic changes during carotid endarterectomy under local or regional anesthesia varies widely (2.4% to 24%). Rates of conversion from regional anesthesia to general anesthesia of approximately 2% to 6% have been reported. Phrenic nerve paresis is common after cervical plexus block and is of little clinical consequence except in patients with severe COPD or contralateral diaphragmatic dysfunction.

Regional and local anesthesia requires significant patient cooperation throughout the procedure and is best maintained with constant communication and gentle handling of tissues. Supplemental infiltration of local anesthetic by the surgeon, especially at the lower border and ramus of the mandible, is frequently helpful. Sedation, if used at all, must be kept to a minimum to allow continuous neurologic assessment. The surgical drapes are "tented" over the head and face area to minimize claustrophobic anxiety. Levels of consciousness, speech, and contralateral handgrip are assessed throughout the procedure. If both arms are tucked to the patient's sides, handgrip can be assessed with the use of a squeaky toy. Blood pressure is augmented with phenylephrine when patients exhibit neurologic changes during carotid artery test clamping or after shunt placement. A 2- to 3-minute test clamp in awake patients allows prompt identification of those who would benefit from shunt placement. Patient acceptance of regional anesthesia is frequent and common, as evidenced by a 92% preference for repeat cervical plexus block for future carotid endarterectomy. Regional anesthesia should be avoided under the following circumstances: strong preference for general anesthesia expressed by the patient (i.e., claustrophobia), language barriers that make communication difficult, and difficult vascular anatomy. Difficult anatomy is usually manifested by a patient with a short neck and a high (more cephalad) bifurcation and may require vigorous submandibular surgical retraction.

Regional Versus General Anesthesia

For decades, the impact of anesthetic technique on outcome for carotid endarterectomy has been debated and studied. Until recently, nonrandomized studies dominated and largely supported that regional anesthesia was associated with significant reductions in the risk for perioperative death, stroke, MI, and pulmonary complications.[171] The lack of randomized data was addressed with the landmark GALA trial.[154] This multicenter, randomized controlled trial included 3526 patients with symptomatic or asymptomatic internal carotid stenosis from 95 medical centers in 24 countries. Patients were randomly assigned to carotid endarterectomy under general anesthesia (1753 patients) or local anesthesia (1773 patients) between 1999 and 2007. The primary outcome was a composite of perioperative death, MI, and stroke (including retinal infarction). The main finding was that anesthetic technique was not associated with a significant difference in the composite end point (4.8% for general vs. 4.5% for local). Anesthetic technique was not associated with a significant difference in secondary outcomes, including duration of surgery, duration of ICU stay, length of hospital stay, or quality of life at 1 month after surgery. Other outcomes, including cranial nerve injury (10.5% vs. 12.0%), wound hematoma (8.3% vs. 8.5%), wound hematoma requiring reoperation (2.6% vs. 2.3%), and chest infection (2.0% vs. 1.9%) were similar between patients receiving general anesthesia and local anesthesia, respectively. Of note, 4.4% of patients under local anesthesia (93% received a cervical plexus block) had complications that lead to cancellation of surgery or conversion to general anesthesia. Important limitations of the GALA trial include lack of standardization, absence of blinding, and possible investigator bias. Using patient-level data from the GALA trial, a recent report found that local anesthesia had a cost-effectiveness benefit over general anesthesia.[172]

Although randomized clinical trials such as GALA are considered to be the gold standard in clinical research, the conclusions are not always generalizable and therefore may not reflect actual practice in treating unselected patients. A recent report from a large international vascular registry, including 20,141 carotid endarterectomies performed in 10 countries between 2003 and 2007, found that anesthetic technique had no effect on perioperative mortality (0.5% overall) or stroke rate (1.5% overall).[173] These real-world results complement the data from the GALA trial. Thus, using major perioperative complications as a guide, there is no reason to routinely prefer one anesthetic technique over the other for carotid endarterectomy. The ultimate decision to use general anesthesia or regional anesthesia should be based on surgeon and the anesthesiologist experience and patient preference.

Carbon Dioxide and Glucose Management

Cerebrovascular CO_2 reactivity is part of the complex autoregulatory system to control cerebral blood flow. Normal cerebral autoregulation responds to acute changes in $PaCO_2$ by decreasing cerebral blood flow (i.e., vasoconstriction) with hypocapnia and increasing cerebral blood flow (i.e., vasodilatation) with hypercapnia. In patients with carotid artery stenosis or occlusion, ipsilateral cerebral blood flow may be impaired because of poor intracerebral collateral blood flow. In the setting of poor collateralization and resultant cerebral hypoperfusion, cerebral resistance vessels in the hypoperfused territories will dilate to maintain cerebral blood flow. These chronically dilated resistance vessels may demonstrate a diminished or absent (i.e., vasomotor paralysis) cerebral blood flow response to CO_2. Impaired cerebrovascular reactivity to hypercapnia may play a role in the development of stroke ipsilateral to carotid stenosis or occlusion. Although one might expect that impaired CO_2 reactivity would increase the risk for cerebral ischemia after carotid artery clamping, the results of intraoperative cerebral monitoring suggest that no such relationship exists. Impaired cerebrovascular reactivity to CO_2 will significantly improve after carotid endarterectomy.

Control of ventilation and end-tidal CO_2 ($ETCO_2$) during general anesthesia is a matter of some controversy. Hypercapnia may cause a "steal" phenomenon (i.e., shunting of blood away from hypoperfused territories with dilated vasculature) and is generally avoided. Hypocapnia, with its associated cerebral vasoconstriction, has been advocated to promote a reversal of this steal phenomenon. However, little clinical evidence exists for this "reverse" steal effect. Additionally, experimental data do not support the use of hypocapnia as a therapeutic maneuver to produce a favorable redistribution of blood flow during focal cerebral ischemia. Indeed, in this animal model of focal cerebral ischemia, hypocapnia ($PaCO_2$ of 23 mm Hg) actually increased the size of the region at risk for ischemia. It is therefore common practice to maintain normocapnia or mild hypocapnia during carotid endarterectomy.

Evidence demonstrates increased ischemic injury to neural tissue when ischemia occurs in the presence of hyperglycemia. Data from The Johns Hopkins Hospital found that operative-day glucose greater than 200 mg/dL at the time of carotid endarterectomy was associated with an increased risk for perioperative stroke or transient ischemic attack, MI, and death.[156] Thus, until additional data become available, it may be beneficial to maintain a blood glucose level below 200 mg/dL in patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy. If hyperglycemia is treated with insulin preoperatively or intraoperatively, the blood glucose level should be carefully monitored, especially during general anesthesia, to avoid the dangers of hypoglycemia.

NEUROLOGIC MONITORING AND CEREBRAL PERFUSION

Intraoperative monitoring for cerebral ischemia or hypoperfusion and, more recently, for cerebral emboli during carotid endarterectomy is controversial (see also Chapter 39). Monitoring techniques include internal carotid artery stump pressure determinations, rCBF measurements, EEG monitoring, SSEP monitoring, transcranial Doppler ultrasonography (TCD), and cerebral oximetry monitoring. The rationale for the use of such monitoring is based on the need to prevent intraoperative strokes. The primary clinical utility of cerebral monitoring is to identify patients who may benefit from shunting during the period of arterial clamping. Secondarily, cerebral monitoring is used to identify patients who may benefit from blood pressure augmentation or change in surgical technique. Despite a tremendous amount of investigative effort, only limited data support the assumption that cerebral monitoring actually improves patient outcome after carotid endarterectomy. To further complicate the issue, several large series have reported excellent results from carotid endarterectomy with routine shunting, routine no shunting, and selective shunting using one or more of the methods discussed later. In a review, the mean reported stroke rate with routine shunting was 1.4% and for routine no shunting was 2%.[174] The mean perioperative stroke rates for selective shunting were 1.6% using stump pressure, 1.6% using EEG, 1.8% using SSEP, and 4.8% using TCD.[174]

Carotid Artery Stump Pressure

The internal carotid artery stump pressure represents the back-pressure resulting from collateral flow through the circle of Willis via the contralateral carotid artery and the vertebrobasilar system. The advantages of monitoring carotid stump pressure are that it is inexpensive, relatively easy to obtain, and continuously available during carotid clamping (dynamic stump pressure). Despite these advantages, few centers use stump pressure monitoring. A recent single center report of 1135 consecutive carotid endarterectomies under general anesthesia used a stump pressure of below 45 mm Hg as a guide for selective shunting.[175] The 30-day stroke rate was 3% for patients selectively shunted (21%), 0.5% for patients not shunted (79%), and 1% overall. The overall 30-day mortality was 0.5%. Of note, no patient had a stroke caused by global intraoperative cerebral hypoperfusion. A recent prospective randomized trial comparing routine shunting versus selective shunting based on stump pressure below 40 mm Hg in 200 patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy under general anesthesia found both methods were associated with an infrequent perioperative stroke rate (0% vs. 2%).[176] The two strokes in the selective shunting cohort were related to carotid artery thrombosis. No patients died perioperatively. Although an old method, stump pressure monitoring appears to have survived the test of time.

Regional Cerebral Blood Flow

rCBF measurements during carotid endarterectomy are obtained by IV or ipsilateral carotid artery injection of radioactive xenon and analysis of decay curves obtained from detectors placed over the area of the ipsilateral cortex supplied by the middle cerebral artery. Measurements are typically obtained before, during, and immediately after carotid clamping. This technology, combined with the EEG monitoring, has provided important insight into the relationship between rCBF and EEG evidence of cerebral ischemia and the critical rCBF associated with various anesthetics.[177,178] The critical rCBF varies depending on the volatile anesthetic used. In patients receiving N_2O plus a volatile anesthetic, rCBF is approximately 20, 15, 10, and 10 mL/100 g of brain tissue per minute for halothane, enflurane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane, respectively.[161,177,178] The expense and the expertise required to make and interpret these blood flow measurements have limited the use of this technology to only a few centers.

Electroencephalography

Many centers advocate intraoperative use of EEG monitoring for the detection of cerebral ischemia and subsequent selective shunting (see also Chapter 39). The full 16-channel strip-chart EEG and the processed (compressed spectral array) EEG monitor are used for this purpose. Although the processed EEG monitor is more easily interpreted, it is less sensitive than the raw EEG monitor. Significant ischemic EEG changes occur in 7.5% to 20% of monitored patients during carotid clamping under general anesthesia. Significant EEG changes occur more frequently in patients with contralateral carotid disease than in those without (14.3% vs. 5.1%). The presence of a contralateral carotid occlusion may increase the rate of significant ischemic EEG changes to nearly 50% during carotid clamping. Because contralateral occlusion is highly predictive of ischemic EEG changes with carotid clamping, it has been recommended that EEG monitoring be eliminated in this circumstance. Ischemic EEG changes may also be seen with shunt malfunction, hypotension, or cerebral emboli.

When the electroencephalogram is used for cerebral ischemia monitoring during carotid endarterectomy, a stable physiologic and anesthetic milieu is mandatory. Isoflurane, desflurane, and sevoflurane produce similar ECG changes at equipotent levels and, when used at 0.5 MAC, allow for reliable ECG cerebral ischemia monitoring.

The clinical usefulness of intraoperative EEG monitoring for ischemia during carotid endarterectomy is limited by several factors. First, it may not detect subcortical or small cortical infarcts. Second, false-negative results (i.e., neurologic deficit with no ischemic EEG changes intraoperatively) are common. Patients with preexisting stroke or reversible neurologic deficits may have a particularly high incidence of such results. Third, EEG monitoring is not specific for ischemia and may be affected by changes in temperature, blood pressure, and anesthesia depth. Fourth, false-positive results (i.e., no perioperative neurologic deficit with significant ischemic EEG changes intraoperatively) occur because not all cerebral ischemia uniformly proceeds to infarction. Finally, intraoperative EEG monitoring is inherently limited because most intraoperative strokes are thought to be thromboembolic and most perioperative strokes occur postoperatively. At present, no consistent data demonstrate that EEG monitoring is clearly superior to other methods of intraoperative cerebral monitoring or that the use of EEG monitoring improves outcome.

Somatosensory Evoked Potentials

SSEP monitoring is based on the response of the sensory cortex to electrical impulses from peripheral sensory nerve stimulation. The sensory cortex, being primarily supplied by the middle cerebral artery, is at risk during carotid artery clamping. SSEP monitoring, unlike EEG monitoring, can detect subcortical sensory pathway ischemia. Characteristic SSEP tracings (i.e., decrease in amplitude, increase in latency, or both) occur with decreased rCBF and are abolished in primates when flow decreases to less than 12 mL/100 g of brain tissue per minute. No specific reduction in amplitude or increase in latency has been established as a physiologic marker of impaired rCBF under operative conditions in humans. Anesthetics, hypothermia, and blood pressure may affect SSEPs significantly, and false-negative results have been reported. The validity of SSEPs as an intraoperative monitor of cerebral ischemia during carotid endarterectomy has not been definitively established.

Transcranial Doppler Ultrasonography

TCD allows continuous measurement of mean blood flow velocity and detection of microembolic events in the middle cerebral artery (see also Chapter 39). These parameters have important clinical implications because most perioperative neurologic deficits are thought to be thromboembolic in origin. With TCD, intraoperative embolization has been detected in more than 90% of patients undergoing carotid endarterectomy. Most intraoperative emboli are characteristic of air and are not associated with adverse neurologic outcomes. TCD may provide useful information regarding shunt function, malfunction, and the incidence of emboli during shunt insertion. Embolization during carotid artery dissection may indicate plaque instability and the need for early carotid artery clamping. Embolization during dissection and wound closure is associated with operative stroke. One center has reported that combined TCD monitoring and completion angiography resulted in a reduction in the intraoperative stroke rate from 4% to 0%. Early postoperative embolization has been detected in more than 70% of patients after carotid endarterectomy and is exclusively particulate in nature. Most TCD-detected emboli occur in the first 2 to 3 hours after surgery. Persistent particulate embolization in the early postoperative period has been shown to predict thrombosis and the development of a major neurologic deficit. Frequent early postoperative TCD embolic signals have been demonstrated to be highly predictive of early postoperative ipsilateral focal cerebral ischemia. Intervention with dextran has been shown to reduce and ultimately stop sustained embolization after carotid endarterectomy. Perioperative microembolization is more common in women and patients with symptomatic carotid disease. TCD monitoring has been reported to detect early asymptomatic carotid artery occlusion and hyperperfusion syndrome after carotid endarterectomy. Although TCD monitoring holds some promise, conclusive evidence demonstrating improved outcome has not been reported. Additionally, the high rate of technical failures significantly limits the clinical utility of this monitoring modality.[179]

Cerebral Oxygenation

Direct monitoring of cerebral oxygenation can be obtained with jugular bulb venous monitoring. Such monitoring allows determination of the arterial-jugular venous O_2 content difference and jugular venous O_2 saturation and therefore provides information on global cerebral O_2 metabolism. Jugular venous samples are obtained from a catheter inserted into the jugular bulb ipsilateral to the surgical site. Continuous fiberoptic jugular venous oximetry catheters are available as well. Significant technical and methodologic shortcomings have limited the clinical application of this monitoring during carotid endarterectomy.

Near-infrared spectrophotometry is a noninvasive technique that allows continuous monitoring of regional cerebral O_2 saturation through the scalp and skull. Similar to pulse oximetry, cerebral oximetry is based on the different absorption characteristics of the near-infrared spectrum of oxygenated and deoxygenated hemoglobin. However, unlike pulse oximeters, cerebral oximeters measure the O_2 saturation of hemoglobin in the entire tissue bed (i.e., brain tissue and arterial and venous blood), which is predominately venous blood, and therefore approximates venous blood O_2 saturation. A commercially available cerebral oximetry sensor is applied to the forehead skin ipsilateral to the surgical site, and regional cerebral O_2 saturation from a small sample of the frontal cortex below the sensor is provided. To date, wide patient-to-patient variability in baseline cerebral O_2 saturation and the lack of a clinical threshold of a decrease in cerebral O_2 saturation predictive of the need for shunt placement have impeded the widespread use of this novel monitoring modality.

POSTOPERATIVE CONSIDERATIONS

Most neurologic complications (transient and permanent) after carotid endarterectomy are explained by intraoperative embolization, hypoperfusion during carotid clamping, and postoperative embolization or thrombosis from the endarterectomy site. It is generally accepted that most neurologic complications are related to surgical technique. Thromboembolic (rather than hemodynamic) factors appear to be the major mechanism of perioperative neurologic complications and most occur in the postoperative period. Neurologic complications attributable to carotid artery thrombosis may occur with an incidence as frequent as 3.3% and are associated with a high rate of major stroke or death despite immediate operative intervention. Other important, but less common neurologic complications include intracerebral hemorrhage and cerebral hyperperfusion. The reported incidence of intracerebral hemorrhage after carotid endarterectomy ranges from 0.4% to 2.0%. Most intracerebral hemorrhages occur 1 to 5 days after the operation and are associated with significant morbidity and mortality.

Hypertension is common in the postoperative period after carotid endarterectomy. Not surprisingly, patients with poorly controlled preoperative hypertension often have severe hypertension postoperatively. The causes are not well understood, but surgical denervation of the carotid sinus baroreceptors is probably contributory. Regional anesthesia is associated with less hypertension. Other causes of postoperative hypertension, such as hypoxemia, hypercapnia, bladder distention, and pain, should be excluded or treated. Because neurologic and cardiac complications may be associated with postoperative hypertension, blood pressure should be aggressively controlled to near preoperative values after surgery. Short-acting drugs are the safest and most effective. Patients with persistent hypertension can be converted to longer-acting IV or oral agents before discharge from the ICU.

Postoperative cerebral hyperperfusion syndrome is an abrupt increase in blood flow with loss of autoregulation in the surgically reperfused brain and is manifested as headache, seizure, focal neurologic signs, brain edema, and possibly intracerebral hemorrhage. Unfortunately, little is actually known about the cause and management of this syndrome. Typically, this syndrome does not occur until several days after carotid endarterectomy. Patients with severe postoperative hypertension and severe preoperative internal carotid artery stenosis are believed to be at increased risk for this syndrome. However, more recent data do not corroborate this common belief and suggest that recent contralateral carotid endarterectomy may be predictive of cerebral hyperperfusion.[180]

Postoperative hypotension occurs almost as frequently as hypertension after carotid endarterectomy. Carotid sinus baroreceptor hypersensitivity or reactivation probably plays an important role. Postoperative hypotension may be more common after regional anesthesia. To avoid cerebral and myocardial ischemia, hypotension should be corrected promptly. Cardiac output is frequently normal or elevated and systemic vascular resistance reduced in hypotensive patients after carotid endarterectomy. Intensive surveillance for evidence of myocardial and cerebral ischemia and judicious use of fluids and vasopressors are recommended for postoperative hypotension. In most cases, the hypotension resolves over a period of 12 to 24 hours.

Cranial and cervical nerve dysfunction after carotid endarterectomy is well documented in the literature. Although most injuries are transient, permanent injuries can lead to significant disability. Patients should be examined for injury to the recurrent laryngeal, superior laryngeal, hypoglossal, and marginal mandibular nerves shortly after extubation. Unilateral recurrent laryngeal nerve injury may result in ipsilateral true vocal cord paralysis in the paramedian position. Although most patients have hoarseness and an impaired cough mechanism, the injury is usually well tolerated. However, bilateral recurrent laryngeal nerve injury and resultant bilateral vocal cord paralysis can result in life-threatening upper airway obstruction. This situation must be anticipated in patients who have previously undergone contralateral carotid endarterectomy or neck surgery.

Carotid body denervation may occur after carotid endarterectomy as a result of surgical manipulation. Unilateral loss of carotid body function may result in an impaired ventilatory response to mild hypoxemia and is rarely of clinical significance. Bilateral carotid endarterectomy is associated with loss of the normal ventilatory and arterial pressure responses to acute hypoxia and an increased resting partial pressure of arterial CO_2. In this situation, the central chemoreceptors are the primary sensors for maintaining ventilation, and serious respiratory depression may result from opioid administration. Fortunately, most patients require little more than acetaminophen or ketorolac for postoperative pain.

Wound hematoma probably occurs more frequently than reported in the literature. In the NASCET,[145] 5.5% of patients had wound hematomas. Most cases are the result of venous oozing and require little more than external compression for 5 to 10 minutes. Expanding hematomas require prompt evaluation at the bedside and immediate evacuation if airway compromise is evident. Aggressive postoperative blood pressure control may help reduce the incidence of hematoma.

Although some clinicians believe that intensive care monitoring is not routinely required after carotid surgery, a significant number of patients do require intensive monitoring and active intervention. I think all patients should be monitored in an intensive care setting for at least 8 hours after carotid endarterectomy, because most events requiring intervention occur within this timeframe.[181,182]

Endovascular Treatment of Carotid Disease: Carotid Artery Stenting

Endovascular treatment of carotid disease is an innovation in evolution for stroke prevention and currently involves percutaneous transluminal angioplasty and stenting. Significant procedural advancements include the use of dual antiplatelet therapy, self-expanding stents, and emboli protection devices. Over the last decade, major randomized clinical trials comparing carotid endarterectomy with carotid artery stenting have been published. A recent systematic review of randomized trials (16 trials involving 7572 patients) found that endovascular treatment (including balloon angioplasty or stenting) was associated with an increased risk for periprocedural stroke or death compared with endarterectomy.[183] Of note, the increase in risk appeared to be limited to patients 70 years of age and older. Endovascular treatment was associated with lower risks for MI, cranial nerve palsy, and access site hematomas. The rate of ipsilateral stroke after the periprocedural period was not different between treatment groups. Among patients unfit for surgery, the rate of death or stroke did not differ between endovascular treatment and medical care. Updated guidelines provide specific recommendations for revascularization of symptomatic and asymptomatic patients.[149]

The carotid artery stenting procedure consists of the following steps: femoral access, aortic arch angiogram, selective cannulation of the common carotid artery origin and angiogram, guidewire advancement into the external carotid artery, carotid sheath placement and advancement into the common carotid artery, placement of embolic protection device, balloon angioplasty of lesion, advancement of stent delivery catheter across dilated lesion, deployment of self-expanding stent, balloon dilation of stent, completion angiogram, and access site management. The femoral artery approach is considered standard, but brachial artery and high radial artery access have been reported with high procedural success. Embolic protection devices are considered mandatory and include distal protection in the form of a filter or occlusion balloon and proximal protection in the form of flow interruption or flow reversal. Cardiologists and radiologists currently perform a large percentage of these procedures in specialized endovascular suites.

Most carotid artery stenting procedures are performed under local anesthesia with light or no sedation to facilitate patient cooperation and continuous neurologic assessment. In addition to routine monitors, an arterial line is placed for continuous blood pressure monitoring. Some degree of hemodynamic instability is common in patients during and after carotid artery stenting. Bradycardia and hypotension occur much more frequently after carotid artery stenting with balloon angioplasty than without angioplasty.[184] A recent, large retrospective study reported asystole in 4.9% of patients after carotid stenting.[185] Asystole was more likely to occur in patients undergoing a right-sided procedure, in those with significant contralateral stenosis, and in those with a reduced left ventricular ejection fraction. The administration of prophylactic atropine before balloon inflation decreases the incidence of intraoperative bradycardia and cardiac morbidity in primary carotid stenting patients.[186]

Lower Extremity Revascularization

PERIPHERAL ARTERY DISEASE

The peripheral artery disease (PAD) or atherosclerotic occlusive disease of lower extremities is one of the resources-consuming diseases in the United States health care system.[187] The key risk associated with PAD is the amputation of lower extremity, and this disease also accounts for atherosclerosis in the renovascular, cerebrovascular, cardiovascular beds. These are the reasons the PAD patient is vulnerable to stroke, myocardial infraction (MI), and even death.[188] Studies also show that diabetic patients are at high risk of developing significant long-term disability.[189] Owing to these facts, Hirsch et al. highlighted that the PAD patients undergo expensive treatment due to a broad range of therapeutic procedures and diagnostic tests involved.[190]

PERIOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF ANTIPLATELETS AND ANTICOAGULANT IN PAD PATIENTS

The long-term management of PAD patients includes an increasing use of effective antiplatelet and anticoagulant medications wherein managing these medications during the perioperative period becomes challenging due to the various risks and benefits.[191] The increased risk of bleeding is one of the major concerns associated with perioperative management and if the antiplatelet therapy is paused, the patients are at higher risk of thrombotic complications due to the surgery-related prothrombotic effects.[192]

Single Antiplatelet Therapy in Symptomatic Peripheral Artery Disease

According to Trialists Collaboration, the PAD patients showed 23% reduction in critical vascular events when they performed 42 randomized clinical trials and conducted a meta-analysis of 9214 patients who were prescribed single antiplatelet therapy (SAPT).[193] Another important study conducted by Mahmoud and associates includes an investigation regarding the efficacy of aspirin in both asymptomatic and symptomatic patients with peripheral vascular disease and they concluded that neither the worse bleeding outcomes nor the improved cardiovascular results were strictly associated with the use of aspirin.[194] They concluded that there is a great need to conduct large-scale randomized trials to confirm the efficacy of aspirin in these conditions.

Dual Antiplatelet Therapy in Symptomatic Peripheral Artery Disease

Field and Benavenate highlighted the Clopidogrel for High Atherothrombotic Risk and Ischemic Stabilization Management and Avoidance (CHARISMA) study wherein they compared the aspirin alone with aspirin plus clopidogrel with (75 to 162 mg/d) and (75 mg/d) in 15,603 patients who were affected with asymptomatic multiple vascular risk factors and with symptomatic vascular disease.[195] The results revealed no noticeable difference in both patients' groups, and as a matter of fact, an increased bleeding risk was shown in the patients.

Another study, the PEGASUS-TIMI 54 trial, "Prevention of Cardiovascular Events in Patients with Prior Heart Attack Using Ticagrelor Compared to Placebo on a Background of Aspirin-Thrombolysis in Myocardial Infarction" was conducted by Bonaca and associates, in which they studied the use of ticagrelor (a reversible P2Y12 inhibitor) in the patients with prior history of heart attack and the findings suggested that ticagrelor significantly reduced the risk of cardiovascular death, myocardial infarction, and strokes at the expense of an increased risk of major bleeding.[196]

The Rivaroxaban for the Prevention of Major Cardiovascular Events in Coronary or Peripheral Artery Disease (COM-PASS) trial randomly assigned 27,395 participants with stable atherosclerotic vascular disease to receive rivaroxaban (a direct factor Xa inhibitor) (2.5 mg twice a day) plus aspirin (100 mg daily), rivaroxaban alone (5 mg twice a day), or aspirin alone (100 mg daily).[197] The primary outcome was a composite of cardiovascular death, stroke, or myocardial infarction. The trial was stopped because of an overwhelming efficacy. Total mortality, CAD mortality, and cardiovascular mortality were lowered by 20%. The COM-PASS trial provided a strong evidence for an alternative to clopidogrel when it comes to patients who are pharmacogenetically resistant to it (slow responders) due to genetic variations in the CYP2C19 enzyme responsible for its activation in the liver. It is assumed that 30% of patients may be pharmacogenetically resistant to clopidogrel.

OPEN BYPASS SURGERIES AND ANESTHESIA MANAGEMENT

Generally, the open bypass surgery and the endovascular revascularization are the two options to operate on PAD patients,[198] particularly when the patient doesn't show improvement after medical therapy and also those patients who are affected with critical limb ischemia.[199,200] In this regard, due to the presence of significant comorbidities in these patients, the patients are at risk for major perioperative complications. While general anesthesia is usually used for open peripheral revascularization surgeries, regional and neuraxial anesthesia could also be employed.[201] They could add the advantage of postoperative pain control and improved perioperative hemodynamic stability. The ASRA guidelines for antithrombotic should be considered before performing neuraxial or regional anesthesia, especially because moderate doses of heparin are used in distal bypass surgeries during arterial clamping.[155]

ENDOVASCULAR TREATMENT OF PERIPHERAL ARTERIAL DISEASE

General anesthesia, neuraxial anesthesia, or MAC can be used for peripheral arterial stenting procedures since they are usually done through percutaneous punctures. We often use MAC unless there are other indications for different techniques. Like any other percutaneous intervention, the same indications and contraindications apply such as patient consent to awake or conscious sedation, patient's ability to lie flat for femoral access, and lying still for the duration of the procedure. What is different in those cases is that the percutaneous access could be affected by the disease process, for example, common femoral stenosis, which may need an open cutdown or even a combined common femoral endarterectomy before stenting the distal arteries. If this is the cases the choices for anesthesia will be limited to either general anesthesia or neuraxial anesthesia. Again, ASRA guidelines should be respected if neuraxial anesthesia is considered.[155] It should be noted that several research studies underline the fact that there is no noticeable difference among patients who receive either general anesthesia or neuraxial block in terms of cardiac outcomes.[8,9]

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and the authors of this chapter would like to thank Dr. Edward J. Norris for contributing a chapter on this topic to the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Mangano DT. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:153–184.
2. Feringa HH, et al. *Coron Artery Dis*. 2007;18:571–576.
3. Kelly R, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2002;39:219–224.
4. McFalls EO, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:2795–2804.
5. Ouyang P, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1989;64:1113–1116.
6. Raby KE, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1990;66:1309–1313.
7. Mangano DT, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;323:1781–1788.
8. Bode RH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:3–13.
9. Christopherson R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:422–434.
10. Fleisher LA, et al. *Am Heart J*. 1991;122:980–986.
11. Pasternack PF, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1989;10:617–625.
12. Krupski WC, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1992;15:354–363.
13. Baron JF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:611–618.
14. Norris EJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1054–1067.
15. Fleron MH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:2–12. 12818934.
16. Mangano DT, et al. *JAMA*. 1992;268:233–239.
17. Hertzer NR, et al. *Cleve Clin J Med*. 1987;54:15–23.
18. Fleisher LA, et al. *Circulation*. 2007;116:e418–e499.
19. Fleisher LA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2009;54:e13–e118.
20. Fleisher LA, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;130:e278.
21. Kertai MD, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2005;165:898–904.
22. Bertges DJ, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2010;52:674–683.
23. McFalls HB, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2007;46:694–700.
24. Hertzer NR, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1984;199:223–233.
25. Poldermans D, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;49:1763–1769.
26. Eagle KA, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1989;110:859–866.
27. Eagle KA, et al. *Circulation*. 1997;96:1882–1887.
28. Hassan SA, et al. *Am J Med*. 2001;110:260–266.
29. Naghavi M, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;108:1664–1672.
30. Duvall WL, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2012;80:768–776.
31. Bapoje SR, et al. *Chest*. 2007;132:1637–1645.
32. Compton CN, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2005;42:650–653.
33. Go AS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:1296–1305.
34. Pasqualini L, et al. *J Intern Med*. 2007;262:668–677.
35. Elsayed EF, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167:1130–1136.
36. Lee TH, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;100:1043–1049.
37. Welten GM, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2007;154:954–961.
38. Welten GM, et al. *Kidney Int*. 2007;72:1527–1534.
39. Schouten O, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2006;44:419–424.
40. Erasmus Medical Center: Follow-up Investigation committee: Report on the 2012 follow-up investigation of possible breaches of academic integrity. https://www.erasmusmc.nl/nl-nl?lang=en.
41. Siller-Matula JM, et al. *Eur Heart J Acute Cardiovasc Care*. 2015. Published online before print May 5, 2015.
42. Schulz-Schüpke S, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2015;36:1252–1263.
43. Palmerini T, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2015;65:1092–1102.
44. Mehran R, et al. *Lancet*. 2013;382:1714–1722.
45. Levine GN, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2016;68:1082–1115.
46. Schermerhorn ML, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256:651–658.
47. Bobadilla JL, et al. *Adv Surg*. 2012;46:101–109.
48. Lederle FA, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;287:2968–2972.
49. Filardo G, et al. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. 2012;3:CD001835.
50. Rughani G, et al. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. 2012;9.
51. Lloyd WE, et al. *CardiovascSurg*. 1996;4:724–726.
52. Hertzer NR, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2002;35:1145–1154.
53. Wahlgren CM, et al. *Ann Vasc Surg*. 2007;21:687–694.
54. Gelman S. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1026–1057.
55. Kouchoukos NT, et al. *Surgery*. 1979;85:25–30.
56. Roizen MF, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1984;1:300–305.
57. Gelman S, Mushlin PS. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:434–439.
58. Gelman S. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:735–748.
59. Stokland O, et al. *Am J Phys-Hrt Circ Phys*. 1980;238:H423–H429.
60. Mutch WA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:320–324.
61. Gelman S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;2:219–224.
62. Eide TO, et al. *Euro Surg Res*. 2005;6:330–334.
63. Schouten O, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2006;97:1383–1385.
64. Ali ZA, et al. *Circulation*. 2007;116:I–98.
65. Shah MR, et al. *JAMA*. 2005;294:1664–1670.
66. Bernard GR, et al. *JAMA*. 2000;283:2568–2572.
67. Sandham JD, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2003;348:5–14.
68. Her C, et al. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1990;4:552–557.
69. Davies MJ, et al. *Anaesth Int Care*. 1993;21:790–794.
70. Bois S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:1233–1239.
71. Park WY, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2001;234:560.
72. Breslow MJ, et al. *JAMA*. 1989;261:3577–3581.
73. Garnett RL, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:769–777.
74. Dodds TM, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1997;11:129–136.
75. Boylan JF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89:585–593.
76. Crawford E, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1986;3:389–404.
77. Rigberg DA, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2006;43:217–222.
78. Jacobs MJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;74:S1864–S1866.
79. Coselli JS, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2002;35:631–639.
80. Fedorow CA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:46–58.
81. Dardik A, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2002;36:47–50.
82. Frank SM, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1994;19:687–697.
83. Nijenhuis RJ, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2007;45:677–685.
84. Williams G, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2004;39:314–321.
85. Achouh PE, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;84:782–788.
86. Wong DR, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:1345–1355.
87. Karpovich IP, et al. *Grudnaia khirurgiia (Moscow, Russia)*. 1988;6:84–86.
88. Parodi JC, et al. *Ann Vasc Surg*. 1991;5:491–499.
89. Schermerhorn ML, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2008;358:464–474.
90. Steuer J, et al. *Euro Hrt J*. 2015;37:145–151.
91. Tadros RO, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2014;59:1518–1527.
92. Dake MD, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 1994;331:1729–1734.
93. Buck DB, et al. *Nat Rev Cardio*. 2014;11:112.
94. Chuter TAM, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;54:660–668.
95. Chuter TAM, et al. *J Endovasc Ther*. 2003;10:940–945.
96. Kothandan H, et al. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2016;19:132.
97. Lee W, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2003;38:459–463.
98. Ruppert V, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2006;44:16–21.

99. Lee TH, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;100:1043–1049.
100. Kertai MD, et al. *Arch Int Med*. 2005;165:898–904.
101. Hoehmann CL, et al. *J Cardiovasc Res*. 2016;5.
102. Griepp RB, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83:S865–S869.
103. Karthikesalingam A, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2012;56:510–519.
104. Fleisher LA, et al. *Circulation*. 2007;116:1971–1996.
105. Blankensteijn JD, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2005;352:2398–2405.
106. Broos P, et al. *J Endovasc Ther*. 2015;22:770–777.
107. Edwards MS, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;54:1273–1282.
108. Center S. *J Imag Interv Radiol*. 2016;2:21.
109. Ketteler ER, Brown KR. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;53(suppl):35S–38S.
110. Durán A, et al. *Cath Cardiovasc Int*. 2013;82:29–42.
111. Fazel R, et al. *Circulation*. CIR-0000000000000048;2014.
112. Christopoulos G, et al. *Circulation:Cardiovasc Int*. 2014;114:CIRCINTERVENTIONS.
113. McDonald JS, et al. *Radiology*. 2013;267:119–128.
114. Weisbord SD, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2018;378:603–614.
115. Cheng SWK. *BJA*. 2016;117:ii3–ii12.
116. Bajwa AM, et al. *Euro J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2008;35:46–48.
117. Lioupis C, et al. *Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2010;44:56–60.
118. Cheung AT, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;80:1280–1289.
119. Erbel R, et al. *Russian J Cardio*. 2015;123:7–72.
120. Hiratzka LF, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2010;55:1509–1544.
121. Horlocker TT, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43:263–309.
122. Maurel B, Haulon S. *Euro J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2016;51:316.
123. Chen J, Stavropoulos SW. *Sem Interv Rad*. 2015;32:259.
124. Thomas BG, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2010;51:1373–1380.
125. Dangas G, et al. *JACC*. 2012;5:1071–1080.
126. Sidloff DA, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2013;100:1262–1270.
127. Jones JE, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2007;46:1–8.
128. Bryce Y, et al. *Cardiovasc Diag Ther*. 2018;8:S131.
129. Mansueto G, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2007;45:1120–1127.
130. Bischoff MS, et al. *Gefässchirurgie*. 2013;18:381–387.
131. Dake MD, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 1994;331:1729–1734.
132. Fann JI, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1995;60:1102–1105.
133. Xydas S, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2010;139:717–722.
134. Bicknell C, Powell JT. *Heart*. 2015;101:586–591.
135. Vallabhajosyula P, et al. *Ann Cardiothorac Surg*. 2013;2:378.
136. Bernard EO, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2000;31:790–793.
137. Tagarakis GL, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28:843–847.
138. Nienaber CA, et al. *J Endovasc Ther*. 2007;14:506–512.
139. Chen J, et al. *Clin Interven Aging*. 2014;9:73.
140. Bokoch MP, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:2141–2146.
141. Vallabhajosyula P, et al. *Ann Cardiothorac Surg*. 2013;2:280.
142. Brott TG, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2011;57:1002–1044.
143. Rosamond W, et al. *Circulation*. 2008;117:e25–e146.
144. Rosamond WD, et al. *Stroke*. 1999;30:736–743.
145. Powers WJ, et al. *Stroke*. 2015;46.
146. North American Symptomatic Carotid Endarterectomy Trial Collaborators. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325:445–453.
147. Executive committee for the asymptomatic carotid atherosclerosis study. *JAMA*. 1995;273:1421–1428.
148. European carotid surgery trialists' collaborative group. *Lancet*. 1991;337:1235–1243.
149. Barnett HJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;339:1415–1425.
150. CASANOVA Study Group. *Stroke*. 1991;22:1229–1235.
151. Mayo Asymptomatic Carotid Endarterectomy Study Group. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1992;67:513–518.
152. Hobson 2nd RW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328:221–227.
153. Halliday A, et al. *Lancet*. 2004;363:1491–1502.
154. Gupta PK, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2011;167:182–191.
155. Lewis SC, et al. *Lancet*. 2008;372:2132–2142.
156. Rothwell PM, et al. *Lancet*. 2004;363:915–924.
157. McGirt MJ, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2006;58:1066–1073.
158. Hertzer NR, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 1985;145:849–852.
159. Brown KR. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 2003;44:395–399.
160. Illuminati G, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;54:993–999.
161. Velissaris D, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;53:1237–1241.
162. Grady RE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:892–897.
163. Umbrain V, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:1052–1057.
164. Jellish WS, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2003;15:176–184.
165. Smith JS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:846–853.
166. Modica PA, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1992;30:842–846.
167. Mutch WA, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42:577–587.
168. Fardo DJ, et al. *Am Surg*. 1999;65:648–651.
169. Pandit JJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:733–735.
170. Pandit JJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:159–169.
171. Tissot S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:1377–1379.
172. Rerkasem K, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2008:CD000126.
173. Gomes M, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2010;97:1218–1225.
174. Menyhei G, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2011;41:735–740.
175. Aburahma AF, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;54:1502–1510.
176. Jacob T, et al. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 2007;48:677–681.
177. Aburahma AF, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2010;51:1133–1138.
178. Michenfelder JD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:336–340.
179. Messick Jr JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:344–349.
180. Moritz S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:563–569.
181. Ascher E, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2003;37:769–777.
182. Lipsett PA, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 1994;20:403–409.
183. Sheehan MK, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2001;34:13–16.
184. Bonati LH, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;9:CD000515.
185. Bussiere M, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2009;110:905–912.
186. Satya K, et al. *J Endovasc Ther*. 2011;18:513–517.
187. Cayne NS, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2005;41:956–961.
188. Conte MS, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2015;61:2S–41S.
189. Diabetes care. *J Vasc Surg*. 2004;6:1356–1357.
190. Marso SP, Hiatt WR. *J Am Coll Cardio*. 2006;47:921–929.
191. Hirsch AT, et al. *Vasc Med*. 2008;13:209–215.
192. Yeung LY, et al. *Trauma Surg Acu Care Open*. 2016;1:e000022.
193. Zimarino M, et al. *Drugs*. 2005;65:725–732.
194. Trialists'collaboration. *BMJ*. 2002;324:71–86.
195. Mahmoud A, et al. *PloS One*. 2017;12:e0175283.
196. Field TS, Benavente OR. *Curr Neurolog Neurosci Rep*. 2011;11:6–14.
197. Bonaca MP, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2015;372:1791–1800.
198. Bosch J, et al. *Can J Cardiol*. 2017;33:1027–1035.
199. Chang CH, et al. *Sci Rep*. 2016;6:37177.
200. Rooke T, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2011;58:2020–2045.
201. Tsai TT, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2016;63:1663.
202. Bouman E, et al. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 2014;55:207–216.

References

1. Mangano DT. Perioperative cardiac morbidity. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:153–184. 2404426.
2. Feringa HH, Karagiannis SE, Vidakovic R, et al. The prevalence and prognosis of unrecognized myocardial infarction and silent myocardial ischemia in patients undergoing major vascular surgery. *Coron Artery Dis*. 2007;18:571–576. 17925612.
3. Kelly R, Staines A, MacWalter R, et al. The prevalence of treatable left ventricular systolic dysfunction in patients who present with noncardiac vascular episodes: a case-control study. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2002;39:219–224. 11788210.
4. McFalls EO, Ward HB, Moritz TE, et al. Coronary-artery revascularization before elective major vascular surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:2795–2804. 15625331.
5. Ouyang P, Gerstenblith G, Furman WR, et al. Frequency and significance of early postoperative silent myocardial ischemia in patients having peripheral vascular surgery. *Am J Cardiol*. 1989;64:1113–1116. 2816764.
6. Raby KE, Goldman L, Cook EF, et al. Long-term prognosis of myocardial ischemia detected by Holter monitoring in peripheral vascular disease. *Am J Cardiol*. 1990;66:1309–1313. 2244559.
7. Mangano DT, Browner WS, Hollenberg M, et al. Association of perioperative myocardial ischemia with cardiac morbidity and mortality in men undergoing noncardiac surgery. The study of perioperative ischemia research group. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;323:1781–1788. 2247116.
8. Bode Jr RH, Lewis KP, Zarich SW, et al. Cardiac outcome after peripheral vascular surgery: comparison of general and regional anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:3–13. 8572352.
9. Christopherson R, Beattie C, Frank SM, et al. Perioperative morbidity in patients randomized to epidural or general anesthesia for lower extremity vascular surgery. Perioperative Ischemia Randomized Anesthesia Trial Study Group. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:422–434. 8363066.
10. Fleisher LA, Rosenbaum SH, Nelson AH, et al. The predictive value of preoperative silent ischemia for postoperative ischemic cardiac events in vascular and nonvascular surgery patients. *Am Heart J*. 1991;122:980–986. 1927885.
11. Pasternack PF, Grossi EA, Baumann FG, et al. The value of silent myocardial ischemia monitoring in the prediction of perioperative myocardial infarction in patients undergoing peripheral vascular surgery. *J Vasc Surg*. 1989;10:617–625. 2585650.
12. Krupski WC, Layug EL, Reilly LM, et al. Comparison of cardiac morbidity between aortic and infrainguinal operations. Study of Perioperative Ischemia (SPI) research group. *J Vasc Surg*. 1992;15:354–363; discussion 64-65 1735896.
13. Baron JF, Bertrand M, Barre E, et al. Combined epidural and general anesthesia versus general anesthesia for abdominal aortic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:611–618. 1928770.
14. Norris EJ, Beattie C, Perler BA, et al. Double-masked randomized trial comparing alternate combinations of intraoperative anesthesia and postoperative analgesia in abdominal aortic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1054–1067. 11684971.
15. Fleron MH, Weiskopf RB, Bertrand M, et al. A comparison of intrathecal opioid and intravenous analgesia for the incidence of cardiovascular, respiratory, and renal complications after abdominal aortic surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:2–12. 12818934.
16. Mangano DT, Browner WS, Hollenberg M, et al. Long-term cardiac prognosis following noncardiac surgery. The study of perioperative ischemia research group. *JAMA*. 1992;268:233–239. 1608143.
17. Hertzer NR, Young JR, Beven EG, et al. Late results of coronary bypass in patients with peripheral vascular disease. II. Five-year survival according to sex, hypertension, and diabetes. *Cleve Clin J Med*. 1987;54:15–23. 3494549.
18. Fleisher LA, Beckman JA, Brown KA, et al. ACC/AHA 2007 guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and care for noncardiac surgery: a report of the american college of cardiology/american heart association task force on practice guidelines (writing committee to revise the 2002 guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation for noncardiac surgery): developed in collaboration with the american society of echocardiography, american society of nuclear cardiology, heart rhythm society, society of cardiovascular anesthesiologists, society for cardiovascular angiography and interventions, society for vascular medicine and biology, and society for vascular surgery. *Circulation*. 2007;116:e418–e499. 17901357.
19. Fleisher LA, Beckman JA, Brown KA, et al. 2009 ACCF/AHA focused update on perioperative beta blockade incorporated into the ACC/AHA 2007 guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and care for noncardiac surgery. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2009;54:e13–e118. 19926002.
20. Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a report of the american college of cardiology/american heart association task force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;130:e278.
21. Kertai MD, Boersma E, Klein J, et al. Optimizing the prediction of perioperative mortality in vascular surgery by using a customized probability model. *Arch Intern Med*. 2005;165:898–904. 15851641.
22. Bertges DJ, Goodney PP, Zhao Y, et al. The vascular study group of New England cardiac risk index (VSG-CRI) predicts cardiac complications more accurately than the revised cardiac risk index in vascular surgery patients. *J Vasc Surg*. 2010;52:674–683.83 e1-83 e3. 20570467.
23. McFalls EO, Ward HB, Moritz TE, et al. Clinical factors associated with long-term mortality following vascular surgery: outcomes from the Coronary Artery Revascularization Prophylaxis (CARP) Trial. *J Vasc Surg*. 2007;46:694–700. 17903649.
24. Hertzer NR, Beven EG, Young JR, et al. Coronary artery disease in peripheral vascular patients: A classification of 1000 coronary angiograms and results of surgical management. *Ann Surg*. 1984;199:223–233. 6696538.
25. Poldermans D, Schouten O, Vidakovic R, et al. A clinical randomized trial to evaluate the safety of a noninvasive approach in high-risk patients undergoing major vascular surgery: the DECREASE-V Pilot Study. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;49:1763–1769. 17466225.
26. Eagle KA, Coley CM, Newell JB, et al. Combining clinical and thallium data optimizes preoperative assessment of cardiac risk before major vascular surgery. *Ann Intern Med*. 1989;110:859–866. 2655519.
27. Eagle KA, Rihal CS, Mickel MC, et al. Cardiac risk of noncardiac surgery: influence of coronary disease and type of surgery in 3368 operations. CASS investigators and university of michigan heart care program. coronary artery surgery study. *Circulation*. 1997;96:1882–1887. 9323076.
28. Hassan SA, Hlatky MA, Boothroyd DB, et al. Outcomes of noncardiac surgery after coronary bypass surgery or coronary angioplasty in the Bypass Angioplasty Revascularization Investigation (BARI). *Am J Med*. 2001;110:260–266. 11239843.
29. Naghavi M, Libby P, Falk E, et al. From vulnerable plaque to vulnerable patient: a call for new definitions and risk assessment strategies. I. *Circulation*. 2003;108:1664–1672.
30. Duvall WL, Sealove B, Pungoti C, et al. Angiographic investigation of the pathophysiology of perioperative myocardial infarction. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2012;80:768–776. 22419582.
31. Bapoje SR, Whitaker JF, Schulz T, et al. Preoperative evaluation of the patient with pulmonary disease. *Chest*. 2007;132:1637–1645. 17998364.
32. Compton CN, Dillavou ED, Sheehan MK, et al. Is abdominal aortic aneurysm repair appropriate in oxygen-dependent chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients? *J Vasc Surg*. 2005;42:650–653. 16242549.
33. Go AS, Chertow GM, Fan D, et al. Chronic kidney disease and the risks of death, cardiovascular events, and hospitalization. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:1296–1305. 15385656.
34. Pasqualini L, Schillaci G, Pirro M, et al. Renal dysfunction predicts long-term mortality in patients with lower extremity arterial disease. *J Intern Med*. 2007;262:668–677. 17908164.
35. Elsayed EF, Tighiouart H, Griffith J, et al. Cardiovascular disease and subsequent kidney disease. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167:1130–1136. 17563020.
36. Lee TH, Marcantonio ER, Mangione CM, et al. Derivation and prospective validation of a simple index for prediction of cardiac risk of major noncardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 1999;100:1043–1049. 10477528.
37. G.M. Welten, M. Chonchol, S.E. Hoeks, et al. Statin therapy is associated with improved outcomes in vascular surgery patients with renal impairment. *Am Heart J*. 2007;154:954–961. 17967603.
38. Welten GM, Chonchol M, Hoeks SE, et al. Beta-blockers improve outcomes in kidney disease patients having noncardiac vascular surgery. *Kidney Int*. 2007;72:1527–1534. 17882146.

39. Schouten O, Bax JJ, Dunkelgrun M, et al. Statins for the prevention of perioperative cardiovascular complications in vascular surgery. *J Vasc Surg*. 2006;44:419–424. 16890882.
40. Erasmus Medical Center: Follow-up Investigation committee: Report on the 2012 follow-up investigation of possible breaches of academic integrity. https://www.erasmusmc.nl/nl-nl?lang=en.
41. Siller-Matula JM, Petre A, Delle-Karth G, et al. Impact of preoperative use of P2Y12 receptor inhibitors on clinical outcomes in cardiac and non-cardiac surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Heart J Acute Cardiovasc Care*. 2015. Published online before print May 5, 2015; pii: 2048872615585516.
42. Schulz-Schüpke S, Byrne RA, Ten Berg JM, et al. ISAR-SAFE: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of 6 vs. 12 months of clopidogrel therapy after drug-eluting stenting. *Eur Heart J*. 2015;36:1252–1263.
43. Palmerini T, Sangiorgi D, Valgimigli M, et al. Short- versus long-term dual antiplatelet therapy after drug-eluting stent implantation: an individual patient data pairwise and network meta-analysis. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2015;65:1092–1102.
44. Mehran R, Baber U, Steg PG, et al. Cessation of dual antiplatelet treatment and cardiac events after percutaneous coronary intervention (PARIS): 2 year results from a prospective observational study. *Lancet*. 2013;382:1714–1722.
45. Levine GN, Bates ER, Bittl JA, et al. 2016 ACC/AHA guideline focused update on duration of dual antiplatelet therapy in patients with coronary artery disease: a report of the american college of cardiology/american heart association task force on clinical practice guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2016;68:1082–1115.
46. Schermerhorn, Marc L., Rodney P. Bensley, Kristina A. Giles, Rob Hurks, A. James O'Malley, Philip Cotterill, Elliot Chaikof, and Bruce E. Landon. Changes in abdominal aortic aneurysm rupture and short term mortality 1995–2008. Annals of surgery 256, no. 4 (2012): 651-658
47. Bobadilla Joseph L, Craig Kent K. Screening for abdominal aortic aneurysms. *Advances in surgery*. 2012;46:101–109.
48. Lederle Frank A, Johnson Gary R, Wilson Samuel E, et al. Rupture rate of large abdominal aortic aneurysms in patients refusing or unfit for elective repair. *Jama*. 2002;287(22):2968–2972.
49. Filardo Giovanni, Powell Janet T, Ashley-Marie Martinez Melissa, Ballard David J. Surgery for small asymptomatic abdominal aortic aneurysms. *The Cochrane database of systematic reviews*. 2012;3:CD001835.
50. Rughani Guy, Robertson Lindsay, Clarke Mike. Medical treatment for small abdominal aortic aneurysms. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. 2012;9.
51. Lloyd WE, Paty RSK, Darling III RC, et al. Results of 1000 consecutive elective abdominal aortic aneurysm repairs. *Cardiovascular Surgery*. 1996;4(6):724–726.
52. Hertzer Norman R, Mascha Edward J, Karafa Mathew T, O'Hara Patrick J, Krajewski Leonard P, Beven Edwin G. Open infrarenal abdominal aortic aneurysm repair: the Cleveland Clinic experience from 1989 to 1998. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2002;35(6):1145–1154.
53. Wahlgren Carl-Magnus, Piano Giancarlo, Desai Tina, Shaalan Wael, Bassiouny Hisham. Transperitoneal versus retroperitoneal suprarenal cross-clamping for repair of abdominal aortic aneurysm with a hostile infrarenal aortic neck. *Annals of vascular surgery*. 2007;21(6):687–694.
54. Gelman Simon. The pathophysiology of aortic cross-clamping and unclamping. *Anesthesiology: The Journal of the American Society of Anesthesiologists*. 1995;82(4):1026–1057.
55. Kouchoukos Nicholas T, Lell William A, Karp Robert B, Samuelson Paul N. Hemodynamic effects of aortic clamping and decompression with a temporary shunt for resection of the descending thoracic aorta. *Surgery*. 1979;85(1):25–30.
56. Roizen Michael F, Beaupre Paul N, Alpert Ricki A, et al. Monitoring with two-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography: comparison of myocardial function in patients undergoing supraceliac, suprarenal-infraceliac, or infrarenal aortic occlusion. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 1984;1(2):300–305.
57. Gelman Simon, Mushlin Phillip S. Catecholamine-induced changes in the splanchnic circulation affecting systemic hemodynamics. *Anesthesiology: The Journal of the American Society of Anesthesiologists*. 2004;100(2):434–439.
58. Gelman Simon. Venous function and central venous pressurea physiologic story. *Anesthesiology: The Journal of the American Society of Anesthesiologists*. 2008;108(4):735–748.
59. Stokland O, Miller MM, Ilebekk A, Kiil F. Mechanism of hemodynamic responses to occlusion of the descending thoracic aorta. *American Journal of Physiology-Heart and Circulatory Physiology*. 1980;238(4):H423–H429.
60. Mutch WA, Thomson IR, Teskey JM, Thiessen D, Rosenbloom M. Phlebotomy reverses the hemodynamic consequences of thoracic aortic cross-clamping: relationships between central venous pressure and cerebrospinal fluid pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74(2):320–324.
61. Gelman Simon, Khazaeli MB, Orr Roger, Henderson Todd. Blood volume redistribution during cross-clamping of the descending aorta. *Anesthesia and analgesia78*. 1994;2:219–224.
62. Eide TO, Aasland J, Romundstad P, et al. Changes in hemodynamics and acid-base balance during cross-clamping of the descending thoracic Aorta. *European surgical research*. 2005;37(6):330–334.
63. Schouten Olaf, Kok Niels FM, Boersma Eric, et al. Effects of statins on renal function after aortic cross clamping during major vascular surgery. *The American journal of cardiology*. 2006;97(9):1383–1385.
64. Ali Ziad A, Callaghan Chris J, Lim Eric, et al. Remote ischemic preconditioning reduces myocardial and renal injury after elective abdominal aortic aneurysm repair: a randomized controlled trial. *Circulation*. 2007;116(suppl 11):I–98.
65. Shah Monica R, Vic Hasselblad, Lynne W. Stevenson, et al. Impact of the pulmonary artery catheter in critically ill patients: meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *JAMA*. 2005;294(13):1664–1670.
66. Bernard Gordon R, George Sopko, Frank Cerra, et al. Pulmonary artery catheterization and clinical outcomes: national heart, lung, and blood institute and food and drug administration workshop report. *JAMA*. 2000;283(19):2568–2572.
67. Sandham James Dean, Hull Russell Douglas, Brant Rollin Frederick, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of the use of pulmonary-artery catheters in high-risk surgical patients. *New England Journal of Medicine348*. 2003;1:5–14.
68. Her Charles, Kizelshteyn Grigory, Walker Valerie, Hayes Deborah, Lees David Eric. Combined epidural and general anesthesia for abdominal aortic surgery. *Journal of cardiothoracic anesthesia*. 1990;4(5):552–557.
69. Davies MJ, Silbert BS, Mooney PJ, Dysart RH, Meads AC. Combined epidural and general anaesthesia versus general anaesthesia for abdominal aortic surgery: a prospective randomised trial. *Anaesthesia and intensive care*. 1993;21(6):790–794.
70. Bois Sylvie, Couture Pierre, Boudreault Daniel, et al. Epidural analgesia and intravenous patient-controlled analgesia result in similar rates of postoperative myocardial ischemia after aortic surgery. *Anesthesia & Analgesia*. 1997;85(6):1233–1239.
71. Park Woo Young, Thompson Jon S, Lee Kelvin K. Effect of epidural anesthesia and analgesia on perioperative outcome: a randomized, controlled Veterans Affairs cooperative study. *Annals of surgery*. 2001;234(4):560.
72. Breslow Michael J, Jordan Desmond A, Christopherson Rose, et al. Epidural morphine decreases postoperative hypertension by attenuating sympathetic nervous system hyperactivity. *Jama*. 1989;261(24):3577–3581.
73. Garnett RL, MacIntyre A, Lindsay P, et al. Perioperative ischaemia in aortic surgery: combined epidural/general anaesthesia and epidural analgesia vs general anaesthesia andiv analgesia. *Canadian journal of anaesthesia*. 1996;43(8):769–777.
74. Dodds Thomas M, Keith Burns A, Deroo Daniel B, et al. Effects of anesthetic technique on myocardial wall motion abnormalities during abdominal aortic surgery. *Journal of cardiothoracic and vascular anesthesia*. 1997;11(2):129–136.
75. Boylan John F, Katz Joel, Kavanagh Brian P, et al. Epidural bupivacaine-morphine analgesia versus patient-controlled analgesia following abdominal aortic surgeryanalgesic, respiratory, and myocardial effects. *Anesthesiology: The Journal of the American Society of Anesthesiologists*. 1998;89(3):585–593.
76. Crawford E Stanley, Crawford John L, Safi Hazim J, et al. Thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysms: preoperative and intraoperative factors determining immediate and long-term results of operations in 605 patients. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 1986;3(3):389–404.
77. Rigberg David A, McGory Marcia L, Zingmond David S, et al. Thirty-day mortality statistics underestimate the risk of repair of thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysms: a statewide experience. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2006;43(2):217–222.

78. Jacobs Michael J, Elenbaas Ted W, Schurink Geert WH, Mess Werner H, Mochtar Bas. Assessment of spinal cord integrity during thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *The Annals of thoracic surgery*. 2002;74(5):S1864–S1866.
79. Coselli Joseph S, LeMaire Scott A, Köksoy Cüneyt, Schmittling Zachary C, Curling Patrick E. Cerebrospinal fluid drainage reduces paraplegia after thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm repair: results of a randomized clinical trial. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2002;35(4):631–639.
80. Fedorow Christine A, Moon Michael C, Mutch W Alan, Grocott Hilary P. Lumbar cerebrospinal fluid drainage for thoracoabdominal aortic surgery: rationale and practical considerations for management. *Anesthesia & Analgesia*. 2010;111(1):46–58.
81. Dardik Alan, Perler Bruce A, Roseborough Glen S, Melville Williams G. Subdural hematoma after thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm repair: an underreported complication of spinal fluid drainage? *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2002;36(1):47–50.
82. Frank Steven M, Parker Stephen D, Rock Peter, et al. Moderate hypothermia, with partial bypass and segmental sequential repair for thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 1994;19(4):687–697.
83. Nijenhuis Robbert J, Jacobs Michael J, Jaspers Karolien, et al. Comparison of magnetic resonance with computed tomography angiography for preoperative localization of the Adamkiewicz artery in thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm patients. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2007;45(4):677–685.
84. Williams G Melville, Roseborough Glen S, Webb Thomas H, Perler Bruce A, Krosnick Teresa. Preoperative selective intercostal angiography in patients undergoing thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2004;39(2):314–321.
85. Achouh Paul E, Estrera Anthony L, Miller III Charles C, et al. Role of somatosensory evoked potentials in predicting outcome during thoracoabdominal aortic repair. *The Annals of thoracic surgery*. 2007;84(3):782–788.
86. Wong Daniel R, Coselli Joseph S, Amerman Karen, et al. Delayed spinal cord deficits after thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *The Annals of thoracic surgery*. 2007;83(4):1345–1355.
87. Karpovich IP, Shekhanin VE, Troian VI, Iakovenko LF. A case of distant transfemoral endoprosthesis of the thoracic artery using a self-fixing synthetic prosthesis in traumatic aneurysm. *Grudnaia khirurgiia (Moscow, Russia)*. 1988;6:84–86.
88. Parodi Juan C, Palmaz JC, Barone HD. Transfemoral intraluminal graft implantation for abdominal aortic aneurysms. *Annals of vascular surgery*. 1991;5(6):491–499.
89. Schermerhorn Marc L, O'Malley A James, Jhaveri Ami, Cotterill Philip, Frank Pomposelli, Landon Bruce E. Endovascular vs. open repair of abdominal aortic aneurysms in the Medicare population. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2008;358(5):464–474.
90. Steuer Johnny, Lachat Mario, Veith Frank J, Anders Wanhainen. Endovascular grafts for abdominal aortic aneurysm. *European heart journal*. 2015;37(2):145–151.
91. Tadros Rami O, Faries Peter L, Ellozy Sharif H, et al. The impact of stent graft evolution on the results of endovascular abdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2014;59(6):1518–1527.
92. Dake Michael D, Craig Miller D, Semba Charles P, Scott Mitchell R, Walker Philip J, Liddell Robert P. Transluminal placement of endovascular stent-grafts for the treatment of descending thoracic aortic aneurysms. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 1994;331(26):1729–1734.
93. Buck Dominique B, Van Herwaarden Joost A, Schermerhorn Marc L, Moll Frans L. Endovascular treatment of abdominal aortic aneurysms. *Nature Reviews Cardiology*. 2014;11(2):112.
94. Chuter Timothy AM, Hiramoto Jade S, Park Ki-Hyuk, Reilly Linda M. The transition from custom-made to standardized multibranched thoracoabdominal aortic stent grafts. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2011;54(3):660–668.
95. Chuter Timothy AM, Buck David G, Schneider Darren B, Reilly Linda M, Messina Louis M. Development of a branched stent-graft for endovascular repair of aortic arch aneurysms. *Journal of Endovascular Therapy*. 2003;10(5):940–945.
96. Lee W Anthony, Berceli Scott A, Huber Thomas S, Ozaki C Keith, Flynn Timothy C, Seeger James M. Morbidity with retroperitoneal procedures during endovascular abdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2003;38(3):459–463.
97. Ruppert Volker, Leurs Lina J, Steckmeier Bernd, Buth Jacob, Umscheid Thomas. Influence of anesthesia type on outcome after endovascular aortic aneurysm repair: an analysis based on EUROSTAR data. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2006;44(1):16–21.

97a. Kothandan Harikrishnan, Haw Chieh Geoffrey Liew, Khan Shariq Ali, Karthekeyan Ranjith Baskar, Sharad Shah Shitalkumar. Anesthetic considerations for endovascular abdominal aortic aneurysm repair. *Annals of cardiac anaesthesia*. 2016;19(1):132.

98. Lee Thomas H, Marcantonio Edward R, Mangione Carol M, et al. Derivation and prospective validation of a simple index for prediction of cardiac risk of major noncardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 1999;100(10):1043–1049.
99. Kertai Miklos D, Boersma Eric, Klein Jan, van Urk Hero, Poldermans Don. Optimizing the prediction of perioperative mortality in vascular surgery by using a customized probability model. *Archives of internal medicine*. 2005;165(8):898–904.
100. Griepp Randall B, Griepp Eva B. Spinal cord perfusion and protection during descending thoracic and thoracoabdominal aortic surgery: the collateral network concept. *The Annals of thoracic surgery*. 2007;83(2):S865–S869.
101. Hoehmann CL, Hitscherich K, Cuoco JA. The artery of Adamkiewicz: vascular anatomy, clinical significance and surgical considerations. *J Cardiovasc Res*. 2016;5(6). https://www.scitechnol.com/peer-review/the-artery-of-adamkiewicz-vascular-anatomy-clinical-significance-and-surgical-considerations-1blq.php?article_id=5506.
102. Karthikesalingam Alan, Thrumurthy Sri G, Young Emily L, Hinchliffe Rob J, Holt Peter JE, Thompson Matt M. Locoregional anesthesia for endovascular aneurysm repair. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2012;56(2):510–519.
103. Fleisher Lee A, Beckman Joshua A, Brown Kenneth A, et al. ACC/AHA 2007 guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and care for noncardiac surgery: executive summary: a report of the american college of cardiology/american heart association task force on practice guidelines (writing committee to revise the 2002 guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation for noncardiac surgery). *Circulation*. 2007;116(17):1971–1996.
104. Blankensteijn Jan D, de Jong Sjors ECA, Prinssen Monique, et al. Two-year outcomes after conventional or endovascular repair of abdominal aortic aneurysms. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2005;352(23):2398–2405.
105. Broos Pieter PHL, Stokmans Rutger A, Cuypers Philippe WM, RHM van Sambeek Marc, Joep AW Teijink. Effects of anesthesia type on perioperative outcome after endovascular aneurysm repair. *Journal of Endovascular Therapy*. 2015;22(5):770–777.
106. Edwards Matthew S, Andrews Jeanette S, Edwards Angela F, et al. Results of endovascular aortic aneurysm repair with general, regional, and local/monitored anesthesia care in the American College of Anesthesiologists National Surgical Quality Improvement Program database. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2011;54(5):1273–1282.
107. Center, Cardiovascular Sulpizio. The evidence supporting radiation safety methods-working towards zero operator exposure. *Journal of Imaging and Interventional Radiology*. 2016;2(1):21.
108. Ketteler Erika R, Brown Kellie R. *Radiation Exposure in Endovascular Procedures*; 2011:35S–38S.
109. Durán Ariel, Hian Sim Kui, Miller Donald L, Heron John Le, Padovani Renato, Vano Eliseo. Recommendations for occupational radiation protection in interventional cardiology. *Catheterization and cardiovascular interventions*. 2013;82(1):29–42.
110. Fazel Reza, Gerber Thomas C, Balter Stephen, et al. Approaches to enhancing radiation safety in cardiovascular imaging: a scientific statement from the american heart association. *Circulation*. 2014. CIR-0000000000000048.
111. Christopoulos Georgios, Papayannis Aristotelis C, Alomar Mohammed, et al. Effect of a real-time radiation monitoring device on operator radiation exposure during cardiac catheterization: the radiation reduction during cardiac catheterization using real-time monitoring study. *Circulation: Cardiovascular Interventions*. 2014. CIRCINTERVENTIONS-114.
112. McDonald Jennifer S, McDonald Robert J, Comin Jules, et al. Frequency of acute kidney injury following intravenous contrast medium administration: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Radiology*. 2013;267(1):119–128.
113. Weisbord Steven D, Gallagher Martin, Jneid Hani, et al. Outcomes after angiography with sodium bicarbonate and acetylcysteine. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2018;378(7):603–614.

114. Cheng SWK. Novel endovascular procedures and new developments in aortic surgery. *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2016;117(suppl 2):ii3–ii12.
115. Bajwa A, Davis M, Moawad M, Taylor PR. Paraplegia following elective endovascular repair of abdominal aortic aneurysm: reversal with cerebrospinal fluid drainage. *European Journal of Vascular and Endovascular Surgery*. 2008;35(1):46–48.
116. Lioupis Christos, Tyrrell Mark, Valenti Domenico. A report of spinal cord ischemia following endovascular aneurysm repair of an aneurysm with a large thrombus burden and complex iliac anatomy. *Vascular and endovascular surgery*. 2010;44(1):56–60.
117. Cheung Albert T, Pochettino Alberto, McGarvey Michael L, et al. Strategies to manage paraplegia risk after endovascular stent repair of descending thoracic aortic aneurysms. *The Annals of thoracic surgery*. 2005;80(4):1280–1289.
118. Erbel Raimund, Aboyans Victor, Boileau Catherine, et al. 2014 ESC guidelines on the diagnosis and treatment of aortic diseases. *Russian Journal of Cardiology*. 2015;123(7):7–72.
119. Hiratzka, Loren F., G. L. Bakris, and J. A. Beckman. "2010 ACCF/AHA/AATS/ACR/ASA/SCA/SCAI/SIR/STS/SVM Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Patients With Thoracic Aortic Disease: Executive Summary. J Am Coll Cardiol 2010; 55 (14): 1509-1544. http://dx. doi. org/10.1016/j. jacc. 2010.02. 010." Journal of the American College of Cardiology 62, no. 11 (2013).
120. Horlocker Terese T, Vandermeulen Erik, Kopp Sandra L, Gogarten Wiebke, Leffert Lisa R, Benzon Honorio T. Regional anesthesia in the patient receiving antithrombotic or thrombolytic therapy: american society of regional anesthesia and pain medicine evidence-based guidelines. *Regional anesthesia and pain medicine*. 2018;43(3):263–309.
121. Maurel B, Haulon S. Re:'The impact of early pelvic and lower limb reperfusion and attentive peri-operative management on the incidence of spinal cord ischemia during thoraco-abdominal aortic aneurysm endovascular repair'. *European Journal of Vascular and Endovascular Surgery*. 2016;51(2):316.
122. Chen James, William Stavropoulos S. Management of endoleaks. In: *Seminars in Interventional Radiology*. vol. 32. Thieme Medical Publishers; 2015:259.
123. Thomas Bradley G, Sanchez Luis A, Geraghty Patrick J, Rubin Brian G, Money Samuel R, Sicard Gregorio A. A comparative analysis of the outcomes of aortic cuffs and converters for endovascular graft migration. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2010;51(6):1373–1380.
124. Dangas George, O'Connor David, Firwana Belal, et al. Open versus endovascular stent graft repair of abdominal aortic aneurysms: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. *JACC: Cardiovascular Interventions*. 2012;5(10):1071–1080.
125. Sidloff DA, Stather PW, Choke E, Bown MJ, Sayers RD. Type II endoleak after endovascular aneurysm repair. *British Journal of Surgery*. 2013;100(10):1262–1270.
126. Jones John E, Atkins Marvin D, Brewster David C, et al. Persistent type 2 endoleak after endovascular repair of abdominal aortic aneurysm is associated with adverse late outcomes. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2007;46(1):1–8.
127. Bryce Yolanda, Schiro Brian, Cooper Kyle, et al. Type II endoleaks: diagnosis and treatment algorithm. *Cardiovascular diagnosis and therapy*. 2018;8(suppl 1):S131.
128. Mansueto G, et al. Treatment of type II endoleak with a transcatheter transcaval approach: results at 1-year follow-up. *J Vasc Surg*. 2007;45:1120–1127.
129. Bischoff MS, Hafner S, Able T, Peters AS, Hyhlik-Dürr A, Böckler D. Inzidenz und therapie des postimplantationssyndroms nach endovaskulärer ausschaltung infrarenaler aortenaneurysmenincidence and treatment of postimplantation syndrome after endovascular repair of infrarenal aortic aneurisms. *Gefässchirurgie*. 2013;18(5):381–387.
130. Dake Michael D, Craig Miller D, Semba Charles P, Scott Mitchell R, Walker Philip J, Liddell Robert P. Transluminal placement of endovascular stent-grafts for the treatment of descending thoracic aortic aneurysms. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 1994;331(26):1729–1734.
131. Fann James I, Dake Michael D, Semba Charles P, Liddell Robert P, Pfeffer Thomas A, Craig Miller D. Endovascular stent-grafting after arch aneurysm repair using the "elephant trunk". *The Annals of thoracic surgery*. 1995;60(4):1102–1105.
132. Xydas Steve, Wei Benjamin, Takayama Hiroo, et al. Use of carotid–subclavian arterial bypass and thoracic endovascular aortic repair to minimize cerebral ischemia in total aortic arch reconstruction. *The Journal of thoracic and cardiovascular surgery*. 2010;139(3):717–722.
133. Bicknell Colin, Powell Janet T. Aortic disease: thoracic endovascular aortic repair. *Heart*. 2015;101(8):586–591.
134. Vallabhajosyula Prashanth, Szeto Wilson Y, Desai Nimesh, Komlo Caroline, Bavaria Joseph E. Type II arch hybrid debranching procedure. *Annals of cardiothoracic surgery*. 2013;2(3):378.
135. Bernard Emanuel O, Schmid Edith R, Lachat Mario L, Germann Reinhard C. Nitroglycerin to control blood pressure during endovascular stent-grafting of descending thoracic aortic aneurysms. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2000;31(4):790–793.
136. Tagarakis Georgios L, Whitlock Richard P, Gutsche Jacob T, et al. New frontiers in aortic therapy: focus on deliberate hypotension during thoracic aortic endovascular interventions. *Journal of cardiothoracic and vascular anesthesia*. 2014;28(3):843–847.
137. Nienaber Christoph A, Kische Stephan, Rehders Tim C, et al. Rapid pacing for better placing: comparison of techniques for precise deployment of endografts in the thoracic aorta. *Journal of Endovascular Therapy*. 2007;14(4):506–512.
138. Chen Jun, Huang Wenhui, Luo Songyuan, Yang Dahao, Xu Zhengrong, Luo Jianfang. Application of rapid artificial cardiac pacing in thoracic endovascular aortic repair in aged patients. *Clinical interventions in aging*. 2014;9:73.
139. Bokoch Michael P, Hiramoto Jade S, Lobo Errol P, Ahmed Shalabi. Rapid ventricular pacing for landing zone precision during thoracic endovascular aortic arch repair: a case series. *Journal of cardiothoracic and vascular anesthesia*. 2017;31(6):2141–2146.
140. Vallabhajosyula Prashanth, Wilson Szeto, Desai Nimesh, Joseph E, Bavaria. Type I and type II hybrid aortic arch replacement: postoperative and mid-term outcome analysis. *Annals of cardiothoracic surgery*. 2013;2(3):280.
141. Brott TG, Halperin JL, Abbara S, et al. 2011 ASA/ACCF/AHA/AANN/AANS/ACR/ASNR/CNS/SAIP/SCAI/SIR/SNIS/SVM/SVS Guideline on the management of patients with extracranial carotid and vertebral artery disease: executive summary—a report of the american college of cardiology foundation/american heart association task force on practice guidelines, and the american stroke association, american association of neuroscience nurses, american association of neurological surgeons, american college of radiology, american society of neuroradiology, congress of neurological surgeons, society of atherosclerosis imaging and prevention, society for cardiovascular angiography and interventions, society of interventional radiology, society of neurointerventional surgery, society for vascular medicine, and society for vascular surgery developed in collaboration with the american academy of neurology and society of cardiovascular computed tomography. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2011;57:1002–1044. 21288680.
142. Rosamond W, Flegal K, Furie K, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics: 2008 update—a report from the american heart association statistics committee and stroke statistics subcommittee. *Circulation*. 2008;117:e25–e146. 18086926.
143. Rosamond WD, Folsom AR, Chambless LE, et al. Stroke incidence and survival among middle-aged adults: 9-year follow-up of the Atherosclerosis Risk in Communities (ARIC) cohort. *Stroke*. 1999;30:736–743. 10187871.
144. Powers WJ, et al. 2015 AHA/ASA focused update of 2013 guidelines for management of patients with AIS requiring endovascular treatment. *Stroke*. 2015:46.
145. North American Symptomatic Carotid Endarterectomy Trial Collaborators. Beneficial effect of carotid endarterectomy in symptomatic patients with high-grade carotid stenosis. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325:445–453. 1852179.
146. Executive committee for the asymptomatic carotid atherosclerosis study. Endarterectomy for asymptomatic carotid artery stenosis. *JAMA*. 1995;273:1421–1428. 7723155.
147. European carotid surgery trialists' collaborative group. MRC European Carotid Surgery Trial: interim results for symptomatic patients with severe (70-99%) or with mild (0-29%) carotid stenosis. *Lancet*. 1991;337:1235–1243. 1674060.
148. Barnett HJ, Taylor DW, Eliasziw M, et al. Benefit of carotid endarterectomy in patients with symptomatic moderate or severe stenosis. north american symptomatic carotid endarterectomy trial Collaborators. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;339:1415–1425. 9811916.
149. CASANOVA Study Group. Carotid surgery versus medical therapy in asymptomatic carotid stenosis. *Stroke*. 1991;22:1229–1235. 1926232.

150. Mayo Asymptomatic Carotid Endarterectomy Study Group. Results of a randomized controlled trial of carotid endarterectomy for asymptomatic carotid stenosis. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1992;67:513–518. 1434877.
151. Hobson 2nd RW, Weiss DG, Fields WS, et al. Efficacy of carotid endarterectomy for asymptomatic carotid stenosis. The Veterans Affairs Cooperative Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328:221–227. 8418401.
152. Halliday A, Mansfield, Marro J, et al. Prevention of disabling and fatal strokes by successful carotid endarterectomy in patients without recent neurological symptoms: randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2004;363:1491–1502. 15135594.
153. Gupta PK, Pipinos II , Miller WJ, et al. A population-based study of risk factors for stroke after carotid endarterectomy using the ACS NSQIP database. *J Surg Res*. 2011;167:182–191. 21109261.
154. Lewis SC, Warlow CP, Bodenham AR, et al. General anaesthesia versus local anaesthesia for carotid surgery (GALA): a multicentre, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2008;372:2132–2142. 19041130.
155. Rothwell PM, Eliasziw M, Gutnikov SA, et al. Endarterectomy for symptomatic carotid stenosis in relation to clinical subgroups and timing of surgery. *Lancet*. 2004;363:915–924. 15043958.
156. McGirt MJ, Woodworth GF, Brooke BS, et al. Hyperglycemia independently increases the risk of perioperative stroke, myocardial infarction, and death after carotid endarterectomy. *Neurosurgery*. 2006;58:1066–1073. discussion 73 16723885.
157. Hertzer NR, Young JR, Beven EG, et al. Coronary angiography in 506 patients with extracranial cerebrovascular disease. *Arch Intern Med*. 1985;145:849–852. 3994461.
158. Brown KR. Treatment of concomitant carotid and coronary artery disease. Decision-making regarding surgical options. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 2003;44:395–399. 12832992.
159. Illuminati G, Ricco JB, Calio F, et al. Short-term results of a randomized trial examining timing of carotid endarterectomy in patients with severe asymptomatic unilateral carotid stenosis undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;54:993–999. discussion 8-9 21703806.
160. Velissaris, Kiskinis D, Anastasiadis K. Synchronous carotid artery stenting and open heart surgery. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;53:1237–1241. 21247729.
161. Grady RE, Weglinski MR, Sharbrough FW, et al. Correlation of regional cerebral blood flow with ischemic electroencephalographic changes during sevoflurane-nitrous oxide anesthesia for carotid endarterectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:892–897. 9579496.
162. Umbrain V, Keeris J, D'Haese J, et al. Isoflurane, desflurane and sevoflurane for carotid endarterectomy. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55:1052–1057. 11069330.
163. Jellish WS, Sheikh T, Baker WH, et al. Hemodynamic stability, myocardial ischemia, and perioperative outcome after carotid surgery with remifentanil/propofol or isoflurane/fentanyl anesthesia. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2003;15:176–184. 12826964.
164. Smith JS, Roizen MF, Cahalan MK, et al. Does anesthetic technique make a difference? Augmentation of systolic blood pressure during carotid endarterectomy: effects of phenylephrine versus light anesthesia and of isoflurane versus halothane on the incidence of myocardial ischemia. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:846–853. 3195756.
165. Modica PA, Tempelhoff R, Rich KM, et al. Computerized electroencephalographic monitoring and selective shunting: influence on intraoperative administration of phenylephrine and myocardial infarction after general anesthesia for carotid endarterectomy. *Neurosurgery*. 1992;30:842–846. 1614584.
166. Mutch WA, White IW, Donen N, et al. Haemodynamic instability and myocardial ischaemia during carotid endarterectomy: a comparison of propofol and isoflurane. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42:577–587. 7553993.
167. Fardo DJ, Hankins WT, Houskamp W, et al. The hemodynamic effects of local anesthetic injection into the carotid body during carotid endarterectomy. *Am Surg*. 1999;65:648–651. discussion 51-52 10399974.
168. Pandit JJ, Dutta D, Morris JF. Spread of injectate with superficial cervical plexus block in humans: an anatomical study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:733–735. 14570798.
169. Pandit JJ, Satya-Krishna R, Gration P. Superficial or deep cervical plexus block for carotid endarterectomy: a systematic review of complications. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:159–169. 17576970.
170. Tissot S, Frering B, Gagnieu MC, et al. Plasma concentrations of lidocaine and bupivacaine after cervical plexus block for carotid surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:1377–1379. 9174324.
171. Rerkasem K, Rothwell PM. Local versus general anaesthesia for carotid endarterectomy. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2008:CD000126.
172. Gomes M, Soares MO, Dumville JC, et al. Cost-effectiveness analysis of general anaesthesia versus local anaesthesia for carotid surgery (GALA Trial). *Br J Surg*. 2010;97:1218–1225. 20602498.
173. Menyhei G, Bjorck M, Beiles B, et al. Outcome following carotid endarterectomy: lessons learned from a large international vascular registry. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2011;41:735–740. 21450496.
174. Aburahma AF, Mousa AY, Stone PA. Shunting during carotid endarterectomy. *J Vasc Surg*. 2011;54:1502–1510. 21906905.
175. Jacob T, Hingorani A, Ascher E. Carotid Artery Stump Pressure (CASP) in 1135 consecutive endarterectomies under general anesthesia: an old method that survived the test of times. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 2007;48:677–681. 17947923.
176. Aburahma AF, Stone PA, Hass SM, et al. Prospective randomized trial of routine versus selective shunting in carotid endarterectomy based on stump pressure. *J Vasc Surg*. 2010;51:1133–1138. 20347544.
177. Michenfelder JD, Sundt TM, Fode N, et al. Isoflurane when compared to enflurane and halothane decreases the frequency of cerebral ischemia during carotid endarterectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:336–340. 3631608.
178. Messick Jr JM, Casement B, Sharbrough FW, et al. Correlation of regional cerebral blood flow (rCBF) with EEG changes during isoflurane anesthesia for carotid endarterectomy: critical rCBF. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:344–349. 3826693.
179. Moritz S, Kasprzak P, Arlt M, et al. Accuracy of cerebral monitoring in detecting cerebral ischemia during carotid endarterectomy: a comparison of transcranial Doppler sonography, near-infrared spectroscopy, stump pressure, and somatosensory evoked potentials. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:563–569. 17893451.
180. Ascher E, Markevich N, Schutzer RW, et al. Cerebral hyperperfusion syndrome after carotid endarterectomy: predictive factors and hemodynamic changes. *J Vasc Surg*. 2003;37:769–777. 12663976.
181. Lipsett PA, Tierney S, Gordon TA, et al. Carotid endarterectomy: is intensive care unit care necessary?. *J Vasc Surg*. 1994;20:403–409. discussion 9-10 8084033.
182. Sheehan MK, Baker WH, Littooy FN, et al. Timing of postcarotid complications: a guide to safe discharge planning. *J Vasc Surg*. 2001;34:13–16. 11436068.
183. Bonati LH, Lyrer P, Ederle J, et al. Percutaneous transluminal balloon angioplasty and stenting for carotid artery stenosis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;9. CD000515.
184. Bussiere M, Lownie SP, Lee D, et al. Hemodynamic instability during carotid artery stenting: the relative contribution of stent deployment versus balloon dilation. *J Neurosurg*. 2009;110:905–912. 19231933.
185. Satya K, Dougherty K, Lee VV, et al. Determinants and outcomes of asystole during carotid artery stenting. *J Endovasc Ther*. 2011;18:513–517. 21861740.
186. Cayne NS, Faries PL, Trocciola SM, et al. Carotid angioplasty and stent-induced bradycardia and hypotension: impact of prophylactic atropine administration and prior carotid endarterectomy. *J Vasc Surg*. 2005;41:956–961. 15944593.
187. Conte Michael S, Pomposelli Frank B, Clair Daniel G, et al. Society for Vascular Surgery practice guidelines for atherosclerotic occlusive disease of the lower extremities: management of asymptomatic disease and claudication. *Journal of vascular surgery*. 2015;61(3):2S–41S.
188. Care, Diabetes. Peripheral arterial disease in people with diabetes: American Diabetes Association Consensus Statement. *Journal of Vascular Surgery*. 2004;6(39):1356–1357.
189. Marso Steven P, Hiatt William R. Peripheral arterial disease in patients with diabetes. *Journal of the American College of cardiology*. 2006;47(5):921–929.
190. Hirsch Alan T, Hartman Lacey, Town Robert J, Virnig Beth A. National health care costs of peripheral arterial disease in the Medicare population. *Vascular Medicine*. 2008;13(3):209–215.
191. Yeung Louise YY, Sarani Babak, Weinberg Jordan A, McBeth Paul B, May Addison K. Surgeon's guide to anticoagulant and antiplatelet medications part two: antiplatelet agents and perioperative management of long-term anticoagulation. *Trauma surgery & acute care open*. 2016;1(1):e000022.
192. Zimarino Marco, Renda Giulia, De Caterina Raffaele. Optimal duration of antiplatelet therapy in recipients of coronary drug-eluting stents. *Drugs*. 2005;65(6):725–732.

193. Trialists'Collaboration, Antithrombotic. Collaborative meta-analysis of randomised trials of antiplatelet therapy for prevention of death, myocardial infarction, and stroke in high risk patients. *Bmj*. 2002;324(7329):71–86.
194. Mahmoud Ahmed N, Elgendy Akram Y, Rambarat Cecil, Mahtta Dhruv, Elgendy Islam Y, Bavry Anthony A. Efficacy and safety of aspirin in patients with peripheral vascular disease: An updated systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *PloS one*. 2017;12(4):e0175283.
195. Field Thalia S, Benavente Oscar R. Current status of antiplatelet agents to prevent stroke. *Current neurology and neuroscience reports*. 2011;11(1):6–14.
196. Bonaca Marc P, Bhatt Deepak L, Cohen Marc, et al. Long-term use of ticagrelor in patients with prior myocardial infarction. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2015;372(19):1791–1800.
197. Bosch J, Eikelboom JW, Connolly SJ, et al. Rationale, design and baseline characteristics of participants in the cardiovascular outcomes for people using anticoagulation strategies (COMPASS) trial. *Can J Cardiol*. 2017;33:1027–1035. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cjca.2017.06.001.
198. Chang Chia-Hsuin, Lin Jou-Wei, Hsu Jiun, Wu Li-Chiu, Lai Mei-Shu. Stent revascularization versus bypass surgery for peripheral artery disease in type 2 diabetic patients–an instrumental variable analysis. *Scientific reports*. 2016;6:37177.
199. Rooke Thom W, Hirsch Alan T, Misra Sanjay, et al. 2011 ACCF/AHA focused update of the guideline for the management of patients with peripheral artery disease (updating the 2005 guideline): a report of the american college of cardiology foundation/american heart association task force on practice guidelines. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*. 2011;58(19):2020–2045.
200. Tsai TT, Rehring TF, Rogers RK. The contemporary safety and effectiveness of lower extremity bypass surgery and peripheral endovascular interventions in the treatment of symptomatic peripheral arterial disease. *Journal of Vascular Surgery*. 2016;63(6):1663.
201. Bouman E, Dortangs E, Buhre W, Gramke HF. Current techniques and strategies for anesthesia in patients undergoing peripheral bypass surgery. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 2014;55(2 suppl 1):207–216.

57

Anesthesia for Neurologic Surgery and Neurointerventions

BRIAN P. LEMKUIL, JOHN C. DRUMMOND, PIYUSH M. PATEL, and
ARTHUR LAM

KEY POINTS

- For the purposes of planning a strategy for controlling intracranial pressure (ICP), the four subcompartments of the intracranial space should be considered: cells, interstitial and intracellular fluid, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), and blood.
- The clinician should make a preoperative assessment of the probable intracranial compliance reserve as the basis for selection of appropriate anesthetic drugs and techniques.
- The venous side of the cerebral circulation is a largely passive compartment that is often the cause of increased ICP, or "tightness," of the surgical field.
- Cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP) should be supported at or near normal waking levels in patients with recent cerebral injuries (e.g., traumatic brain injury [TBI], subarachnoid hemorrhage [SAH], and spinal cord injury [SCI]) because of low resting cerebral blood flow and impaired autoregulation.
- When neurosurgical procedures are performed in the sitting position, blood pressure should be corrected to the level of the external auditory meatus and mean arterial pressure (MAP) should be maintained at 60 mm Hg in normotensive adults.
- Monitoring for venous air embolism (VAE) in at-risk situations includes the precordial Doppler and end-tidal carbon dioxide analysis.
- Despite encouraging preclinical data, therapeutic mild hypothermia cannot be advocated in the care of head-injured patients in the intensive care unit (ICU) or during the operative management of patients with intracranial aneurysms because of negative human trial results for those patient groups.
- The most important consideration in the anesthetic management of patients undergoing clipping or coiling after acute SAH is the prevention of paroxysmal hypertension with its attendant risk of aneurysm rerupture. Nonetheless, adequate perfusion pressure is needed if temporary clips are used during management of a cerebral aneurysm.
- Although induced hypotension is rarely used electively in aneurysm surgery, the clinician must be ready to reduce blood pressure immediately and accurately in the event of aneurysm rupture.
- Tracheal intubation of a head-injured patient with an undefined cervical spine injury can be accomplished using rapid sequence induction with manual in-line stabilization (the occiput held rigidly to the backboard), with only a very small risk of injury to the spinal cord.
- CPP (CPP = MAP - ICP) should be supported to a target range of 60 to 70 mm Hg in the first 48 to 72 hours after TBI in adults.
- Hypocapnia has the potential to cause cerebral ischemia, particularly in a recently injured brain and in a brain beneath retractors; it should be used only when absolutely necessary for the control of critically increased or uncertain ICP.

This chapter provides guidelines for the management of common situations in neurosurgical anesthesia. Issues that arise in connection with a wide variety of neurosurgical procedures—those constituting a checklist that the practitioner should review before undertaking anesthesia for any neurosurgical procedure—are reviewed first, followed by procedure-specific discussions. This chapter assumes familiarity with the cerebral physiology and effects of anesthetics as described in Chapter 11, and with neurologic monitoring as described in Chapter 39. Carotid endarterectomy (CEA) and carotid angioplasty and stenting are discussed in Chapter 56.

Recurrent Issues in Neuroanesthesia

Several basic elements of neurosurgical and neuroanesthetic management are recurrent and, in the absence of an established understanding between surgeon and anesthesiologist, should be discussed and agreed upon at the outset of every neurosurgical procedure (Box 57.1). The list varies by procedure and may include the intended surgical position and requisite positioning aids; intentions with respect to the use of steroids, osmotic agents/diuretics, anticonvulsants, and antibiotics; the surgeon's perception of the "tightness" of the intracranial space and the remaining intracranial compliance reserve; appropriate objectives for the management of blood pressure, carbon dioxide tension, and body temperature; anticipated blood loss; the intended use of neurophysiologic monitoring (which may impose constraints on the use of anesthetics or muscle relaxants, or both); and, sometimes, the perceived risk of air embolism. The considerations driving the decisions made about these issues are presented in this section. One additional recurrent issue, brain protection, is discussed briefly in the section on aneurysms and arteriovenous malformations (AVMs) and in detail in Chapter 11.

BOX 57.1 **Recurrent Issues in Neuroanesthesia**

- Control of intracranial pressure/brain relaxation
- Management of $PaCO_2$
- Management of arterial blood pressure
- Use of steroids
- Use of osmotherapy
- Use of diuretics
- Use of anticonvulsants
- Patient positioning
- Pneumocephalus
- Venous air embolism
- Monitoring
- Intravenous fluid management
- Hypothermia
- Glucose management
- Emergence from anesthesia

CONTROL OF INTRACRANIAL PRESSURE AND BRAIN RELAXATION

The necessity of preventing increases in intracranial pressure (ICP) or reducing ICP that is already increased is recurrent in neuroanesthesia. When the cranium is closed, the objectives are to maintain adequate cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP) (CPP = mean arterial pressure [MAP] − ICP) and prevent the herniation of brain tissue between intracranial compartments or through the foramen magnum (Fig. 57.1).[1] When the cranium is open, the issue may be to provide relaxation of the intracranial contents to facilitate surgical access or, in extreme circumstances, reverse ongoing brain herniation through the craniotomy site. The principles that apply are similar whether the cranium is open or closed.

The various clinical indicators of increased ICP include headache (particularly headache that awakens the patient at night), nausea and vomiting, blurred vision, somnolence, and papilledema. Computed tomography (CT) findings suggestive of either increased ICP or reduced intracranial compliance reserve include midline shift, obliteration of the basal cisterns, loss of sulci, ventricular effacement (or enlarged ventricles in the event of hydrocephalus or ventricular trapping), and edema. Edema appears on a CT scan as a region of hypodensity. The basal cisterns appear on CT as a dark (hypodense fluid) halo around the upper end of the brainstem (Fig. 57.2). They include the interpeduncular cistern, which lies between the two cerebral peduncles, the quadrigeminal cistern, which overlies the four colliculi, and the ambient cisterns, which lie lateral to the cerebral peduncles.

Fig. 57.3 presents the volume-pressure relationship of the intracranial space. The plateau phase occurring at low volumes reveals that the intracranial space is not completely closed, which confers some compensatory latitude. Compensation is accomplished principally by the translocation of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and venous blood to the spinal CSF space and the extracranial veins, respectively.

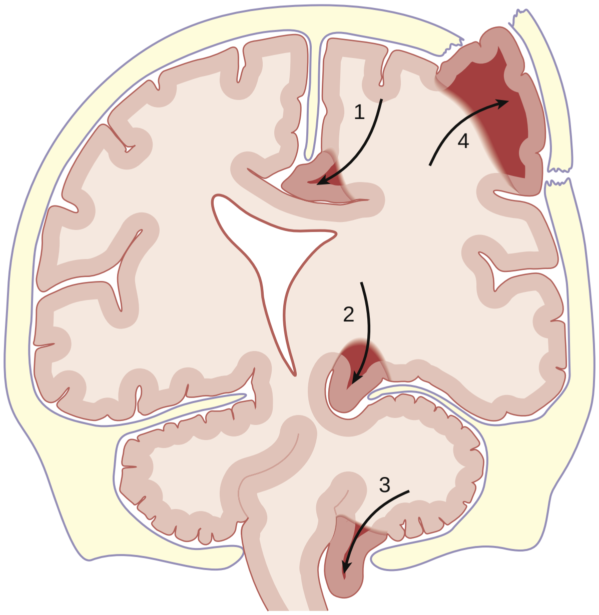


Fig. 57.1 Schematic representation of various herniation pathways. *(1)* Sub-falcine, *(2)* uncal (transtentorial), *(3)* cerebellar, and *(4)* transcalvarial. (From Fishman RA. Brain edema. *N Engl J Med.* 1975;293:706–711.)

Ultimately, when the compensatory potential is exhausted, even tiny incremental increases in volume can substantially increase ICP. These increases have the potential to result in either herniation of brain tissue from one compartment to another (or into the surgical field) (see Fig. 57.1), with resultant mechanical injury to brain tissue, or in reduction of perfusion pressure, leading to ischemic injury.

Several variables can interact to cause or aggravate intracranial hypertension (Fig. 57.4). For clinicians faced with the problem of managing increased ICP, the objective is, broadly speaking, to reduce the volume of the intracranial contents. For mnemonic purposes, the clinician can divide the intracranial space into four subcompartments (Table 57.1): cells (including neurons, glia, tumors, and extravasated collections of blood), fluid (intracellular and interstitial), CSF, and blood.

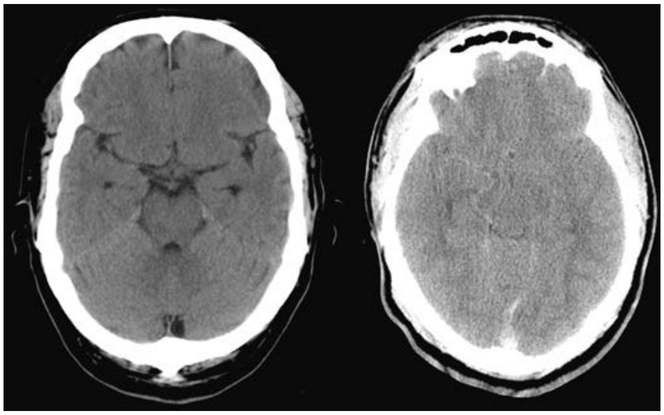


Fig. 57.2 Computed tomography scan depicting normal *(left)* and compressed *(right)* basal cisterns. The basal, or perimesencephalic, cerebrospinal fluid space consists of the interpeduncular cistern (anterior), the ambient cisterns (lateral), and the quadrigeminal cisterns (posterior). In the right panel, the cisterns have been obliterated in a patient with diffuse cerebral swelling (caused by sagittal sinus thrombosis). (Courtesy Ivan Petrovitch, MD.)

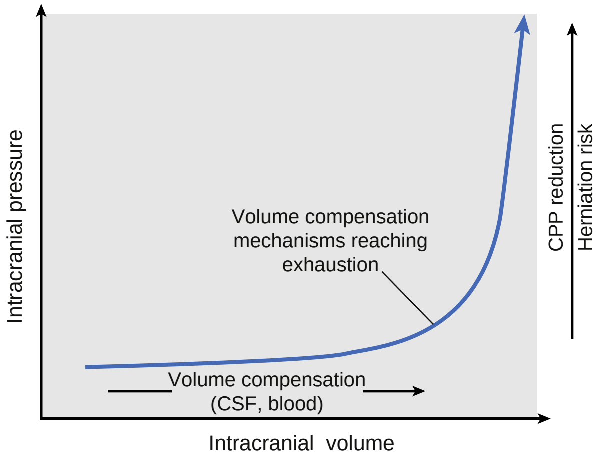


Fig. 57.3 The intracranial volume-pressure relationship. The horizontal portion of the curve indicates that there is initially some latitude for compensation in the face of an expanding intracranial lesion. That compensation is accomplished largely by displacement of cerebrospinal fluid *(CSF)* and venous blood from intracranial to extracranial spaces. Once the compensatory latitudes are exhausted, small-volume increments result in large increases in intracranial pressure with the associated hazards of herniation or of decreased cerebral perfusion pressure *(CPP)*, resulting in ischemia.

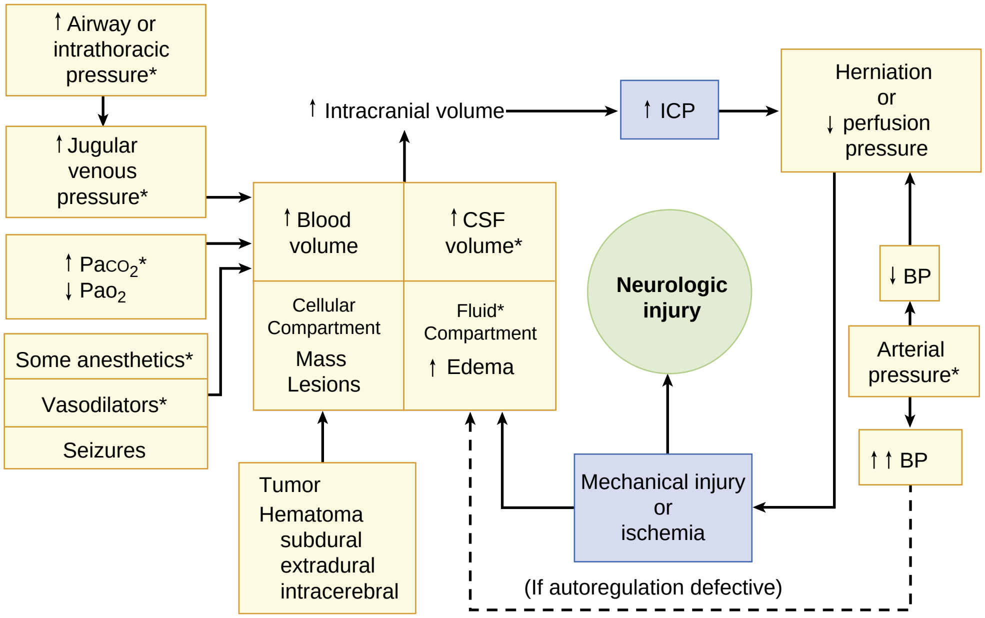

↑ Airway or intrathoracic pressure*
↑ Jugular venous pressure*
↑ $Paco_2$*
↓ Pao_2
Some anesthetics*
Vasodilators*
Seizures
↑ Intracranial volume
↑ ICP
Herniation or ↓ perfusion pressure
↑ Blood volume
↑ CSF volume*
Cellular Compartment
Mass Lesions
Fluid* Compartment
↑ Edema
Neurologic injury
↓ BP
Arterial pressure*
↑↑ BP
Tumor
Hematoma
subdural
extradural
intracerebral
Mechanical injury or ischemia
(If autoregulation defective)

Fig. 57.4 The pathophysiology of intracranial hypertension. The figure depicts the manner in which increases in the volumes of any or all of the four intracranial compartments, blood, cerebrospinal fluid *(CSF)*, fluid (interstitial or intracellular), and cells, result in intracranial pressure *(ICP)* increases and eventual neurologic damage. The elements that are most readily under the control of the anesthesiologist are indicated with asterisks *(*)*. (Control of CSF volume requires the presence of a ventriculostomy catheter.) *BP*, Blood pressure; *$PaCO_2$*, partial pressure of carbon dioxide in the arterial blood; *PaO_2*, partial pressure of oxygen in the arterial blood.

1. *The cellular compartment.* This compartment is largely the province of the surgeon. However, it may be the anesthesiologist's responsibility to pose a well-placed diagnostic question. When the brain is bulging into the surgical field at the conclusion of evacuation of an extra-axial hematoma, the clinician should ask whether a subdural or extradural hematoma is present on the contralateral side that warrants either immediate burr holes or immediate postprocedure radiologic evaluation.
2. *The CSF compartment.* There is no pharmacologic manipulation of the CSF space with a time course and magnitude that is relevant to the neurosurgical operating room. The only practical means of manipulating the size of this compartment is by drainage. A tight surgical field can sometimes be improved by passage of a brain needle by the surgeon into a lateral ventricle to drain CSF. Lumbar CSF drainage can be used to improve surgical exposure in situations with no substantial hazard of uncal or transforamenal magnum herniation.

3. *The fluid compartment.* This compartment can be addressed with steroids and osmotic/diuretic agents. The use of these agents is discussed later.
4. *The blood compartment.* This compartment receives the anesthesiologist's greatest attention because it is the most amenable to rapid alteration. The blood compartment should be viewed as having two separate components: venous and arterial.

With respect to the blood compartment, the venous side of the circulation should initially be considered. It is largely a passive compartment and is often overlooked. Despite this passivity, engorgement of this compartment is a common cause of increased ICP or poor conditions in the surgical field (Fig. 57.5). A head-up posture to ensure good venous drainage is the standard in neurosurgical anesthesia and critical care. Obstruction of cerebral venous drainage by extremes of head position or circumferential pressure (cervical collars, endotracheal tube ties) should be avoided. Anything that causes increased intrathoracic pressure can also result in obstruction of cerebral venous drainage. Relevant phenomena include kinking or partial obstruction of endotracheal tubes, tension pneumothorax, coughing or straining against the endotracheal tube, or gas trapping as a result of bronchospasm. Neuromuscular blockade is usually induced during craniotomies unless a contraindication is present. Such a blockade would prevent a sudden cough that can cause a dramatic herniation of cerebral structures through the craniotomy.

Thereafter, the arterial side of the circulation should be considered. Attention to the effect of anesthetic drugs and techniques on cerebral blood flow (CBF) (see Chapter 11) is an established part of neuroanesthesia because, in general, increases in CBF are associated with increases in cerebral blood volume (CBV).[2-4] The notable exception to this rule occurs in the context of cerebral ischemia caused by hypotension or vessel occlusion, at which times CBV may increase as the cerebral vasculature dilates in response to a sudden reduction in CBF. However, the relationship generally applies, and attention to the control of CBF is relevant in situations in which intracranial volume compensation mechanisms are exhausted or ICP is already increased. The general approach is to select anesthetics and to control physiologic variables in a manner that avoids unnecessary increases in CBF. The variables that influence CBF are listed in Box 57.2 and are discussed in Chapter 11.

TABLE 57.1 Intracranial Compartments and Techniques for Manipulation of Their Volume

Compartment	Volume Control Methods
1. Cells (including neurons, glia, tumors, and extravasated blood)	Surgical removal
2. Fluid (intracellular and extracellular)	Diuretics osmotic/diuretic agents Steroids (principally tumors)
3. Cerebral spinal fluid	Drainage
4. Blood	
Arterial side	Decrease cerebral blood flow
Venous side	Improve cerebral venous drainage

BOX 57.2 Factors that Influence Cerebral Blood Flow

See effects of anesthetics on cerebral blood flow and cerebral metabolic rate in Chapter 11 for detailed discussion.

- PaO_2
- $PaCO_2$
- Cerebral metabolic rate
  - Arousal/pain
  - Seizures
  - Temperature
  - Anesthetics
- Blood pressure/status of autoregulation
- Vasoactive agents
  - Anesthetics
  - Pressors
  - Inotropes
  - Vasodilators
- Blood viscosity
- Neurogenic pathways (intra- and extra-axial)

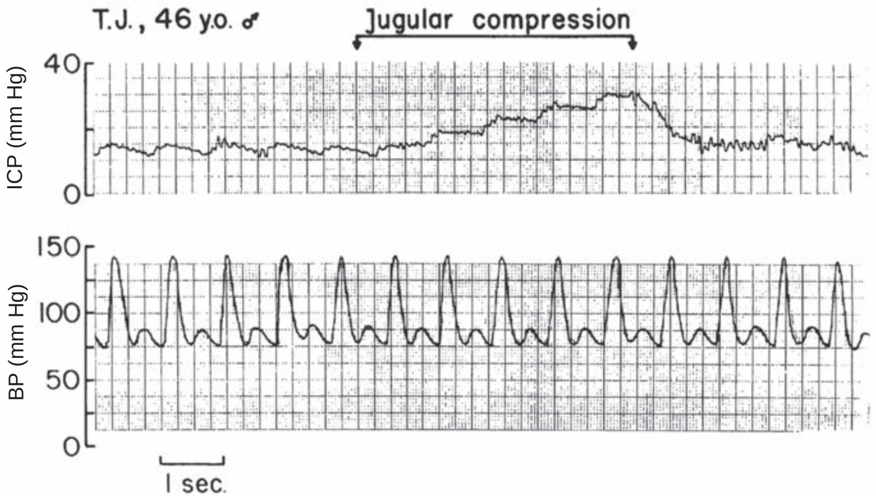


Fig. 57.5 The effect of cerebral venous outflow obstruction on intracranial pressure *(ICP)* in a patient with an intracerebral hematoma. Bilateral jugular compression was applied briefly to verify the function of a newly placed ventriculostomy. The ICP response illustrates the importance of maintaining unobstructed cerebral venous drainage.

SELECTION OF ANESTHETICS

The question of which anesthetics are appropriate, especially in the context of unstable ICP, arises frequently. Chapter 11 provides relevant information in detail, and only broad generalizations are described here.

In general, intravenous anesthetic, analgesic, and sedative drugs are associated with parallel reductions in CBF and cerebral metabolic rate (CMR) and consequently will not have adverse effects on ICP. Ketamine, given in large doses to patients with a generally normal level of consciousness before anesthesia, is the exception. Autoregulation and carbon dioxide (CO_2) responsiveness are generally preserved during the administration of intravenous anesthetics (see Chapter 11).

By contrast, all the volatile anesthetics can be, depending on physiologic and pharmacologic circumstances, dose-dependent cerebral vasodilators. The order of vasodilating potency is approximately halothane → enflurane → desflurane → isoflurane → sevoflurane. As noted in Chapter 11, the CBF differences among desflurane, isoflurane, and sevoflurane are unlikely to be clinically significant. The net CBF effect of a volatile anesthetic depends on the interaction of several factors: the concentration of the anesthetic, the extent of previous CMR depression, simultaneous blood pressure changes acting in conjunction with previous or anesthetic-induced autoregulation abnormalities, and simultaneous changes in partial pressure of carbon dioxide in the arterial blood ($PaCO_2$) acting in conjunction with any disease-related impairment in CO_2 responsiveness.

Nitrous oxide (N_2O) can also be a cerebral vasodilator. The CBF effect of N_2O is greatest when it is administered as a sole anesthetic; least when it is administered against a background of narcotics, propofol, or benzodiazepines; and intermediate when it is administered in conjunction with volatile anesthetics (see Chapter 11).

Despite the vasodilatory potential of both N_2O and volatile anesthetics, experience dictates that both, with the latter in concentrations less than the minimum alveolar concentration (MAC), can be used in most elective and many emergent neurosurgical procedures when administered as part of a balanced anesthetic technique in combination with opioids. However, there are exceptions. Because both N_2O and volatile anesthetics can be vasodilators in some circumstances, when the compensatory latitude of the intracranial space has been exhausted and physiology is abnormal, omitting them on a just-in-case basis may be prudent. In a somnolent, vomiting patient with papilledema, a large tumor mass, and compressed basal cisterns; or in a traumatic brain injury (TBI) victim with an expanding mass lesion or obliterated cisterns and sulci on CT, a predominantly intravenous technique should be used until the cranium and dura are open. Thereafter, the effect of the anesthetic technique can be assessed by direct observation of the surgical field. Although inhaled anesthetics are entirely acceptable components of most anesthetics for neurosurgery, in circumstances in which ICP is persistently increased or the surgical field is persistently "tight," N_2O and volatile anesthetics[5,6] should be replaced by intravenous anesthetics.

Neuromuscular blockers that can release histamine (e.g., atracurium) should be given in small, divided doses. Although succinylcholine can increase ICP, the increases are small and transient. Moreover, the increases can be blocked by a preceding dose of nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs and, in at least some instances, are not evident in patients with common emergency neurosurgical conditions (TBI, SAH).[7,8] Succinylcholine in conjunction with proper management of the airway and MAP can be used when rapid endotracheal intubation is needed.

From the material just presented and from the discussion of cerebral physiology in Chapter 11, a systematic clinical approach should follow easily. A schema for approaching the problem of an acute increase in ICP or acute deterioration in conditions in the surgical field is presented in Box 57.3.

If the problem has not resolved satisfactorily after following the approach in Box 57.3, Box 57.4 presents options for resolution. CSF drainage was discussed earlier. Additional hyperosmolar solutions are frequently used (see the subsequent section Osmotherapy and Diuretics). Barbiturates have long been the most widely used drugs for inducing reduction in CMR, with the objective of causing a coupled

BOX 57.3 High Intracranial Pressure ("Tight Brain") Checklist

1. Are the relevant pressures controlled?
    a. Jugular venous pressure
        i. Extreme head rotation or neck flexion?
        ii. Direct jugular compression?
        iii. Head-up posture?
    b. Airway pressure
        i. Airway obstruction?
        ii. Bronchospasm?
        iii. Straining, coughing; adequately relaxed?
        iv. Pneumothorax?
        v. Excessive PEEP or APR ventilation?
    c. Partial pressure of CO_2 and O_2 ($PaCO_2$, PaO_2)
    d. Arterial pressure
2. Is the metabolic rate controlled?
    a. Pain/arousal?
    b. Seizures?
    c. Febrile?
3. Are any potential vasodilators in use?
    a. N_2O, volatile agents, nitroprusside, calcium channel blockers?
4. Are there any unrecognized mass lesions?
    a. Hematoma
    b. Air ± N_2O
    c. CSF (clamped ventricular drain)

APR, Airway pressure release; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid; *PEEP,* positive end-expiratory pressure.

BOX 57.4 Methods for Rapid Reduction of Intracranial Pressure and Brain Volume (After Review of the Checklist in Box 57.3)

- Further reduction of $PaCO_2$ (to not <23-25 mm Hg)
- CSF drainage (ventriculostomy, brain needle)
- Diuresis (usually mannitol)
- CMR suppression (barbiturates, propofol)
- MAP reduction (if dysautoregulation)
- Surgical control (i.e., lobectomy or removal of bone flap)

CMR, Cerebral metabolic rate; *MAP,* mean arterial pressure.

reduction in CBF and CBV. Propofol has gained popularity for this application. However, although the use of barbiturates is supported by ICU experience demonstrating efficacy in ICP control[9] (if not outcome), little such evidence has been accumulated for propofol. Furthermore, a frequently fatal syndrome of metabolic acidosis and rhabdomyolysis has been recognized in patients who have received prolonged propofol infusions in the ICU setting.[10-12]

MANAGEMENT OF PaCO2

The anesthesiologist and the surgeon should agree on the objectives with respect to $Pa\text{CO}_2$. Induction of hypocapnia was once a routine part of the management of intracranial neurosurgical procedures. The rationale is principally that the concomitant reduction in CBF (see Chapter 11, Fig. 11.9) and CBV will result in a reduction in ICP, or "brain relaxation." The rationale is valid.[13] However, two considerations should influence the clinician's use of hyperventilation. First, the vasoconstrictive effect of hypocapnia can cause ischemia in certain situations. Second, the CBF-lowering and ICP-lowering effect is not sustained for prolonged time periods.[14]

Hypocapnia-Induced Cerebral Ischemia

A normal brain is unlikely to be damaged by the typical clinical use of hyperventilation. However, this may not be the case in certain pathologic conditions.

Normal Brain. Available data[15-19] indicate that in normal subjects, ischemia will not occur at a $PaCO_2$ greater than 20 mm Hg. However, in one investigation,[18] electroencephalogram (EEG) abnormalities and paresthesia occurred in volunteers hyperventilating to $PaCO_2$ values less than 20 mm Hg, and these effects were reversed by hyperbaric oxygenation, suggesting that they may truly have been caused by ischemia. Accordingly, given that a $PaCO_2$ of less than 20 to 25 mm Hg offers very little additional benefit in terms of improvement in intracranial compliance, acute reduction of $PaCO_2$ should be no more than 22 to 25 mm Hg in previously normocapnic persons.

Injured Brain. Preventing herniation, maintaining ICP less than 20 mm Hg, minimizing retractor pressure, and facilitating surgical access remain priorities that may justify hypocapnia. Yet hyperventilation is potentially deleterious and should not be overused. Hyperventilation can result in ischemia,[20,21] especially when baseline CBF is low, as is commonly the case in the first 24 hours after injury.[22-24] An increased frequency of brain regions with very low CBF has been demonstrated in head-injured patients who were acutely hyperventilated.[20,21,25] In addition, low levels of jugular venous oxygen saturation ($SjvO_2$) can be increased by reducing the degree of hyperventilation.[26-28]

The deleterious effect of hyperventilation is difficult to prove. Muizelaar and colleagues[29] performed a study that included a near normocapnic group in which $PaCO_2$ was maintained at approximately 35 mm Hg, and a hypocapnic group in which $PaCO_2$ was maintained in the vicinity of 25 mm Hg. Outcomes at 3 and 6 months after injury were not different. However, in a subset of patients with the best initial motor scores, outcome was better in the normocapnic group. These patients with good motor scores probably represented a subgroup in which the severity of injury was such that, although they needed tracheal intubation, hyperventilation was not necessarily required for control of ICP and who therefore had little to gain from hyperventilation. Thus, prophylactic hyperventilation seemed inadvisable. That conclusion has been extrapolated far beyond the circumstances of relatively mild TBI.

Hyperventilation should not be an automatic component of every neuroanesthetic. There should be an indication for its institution (usually increased or uncertain ICP or the need to improve conditions in the surgical field, or both). Hyperventilation has the potential to cause an adverse effect and should be withdrawn as the indication for it subsides. The concern regarding the hazards of hypocapnia, which evolved in the context of TBI, has influenced all of neurosurgery. In particular, it is now widely avoided in the management of SAH because of the low CBF state that is known to occur.[30,31] In addition, brain tissue beneath retractors can have a similarly reduced CBF.[32,33] However, hyperventilation, used as briefly as possible, is still very much a component of rescue therapy, when herniation is imminent or in progress, or when conditions in the surgical field are too difficult to allow surgery to proceed.

Duration of Hypocapnia-Induced Reduction in Cerebral Blood Flow

The effect of hypocapnia on CBF is not sustained. Fig. 57.6 is a nonquantitative representation of changes in CBF and CSF pH occurring in association with a sustained period of hyperventilation. With the onset of hyperventilation, the pH of both CSF and the brain's extracellular fluid space increases, and CBF decreases abruptly. However, the cerebral alkalosis is not sustained. By alterations in function of the enzyme carbonic anhydrase, the concentration of bicarbonate in CSF and the brain's extracellular fluid space is reduced, and with a time course of 8 to 12 hours, the pH of these compartments returns to normal. Simultaneously,

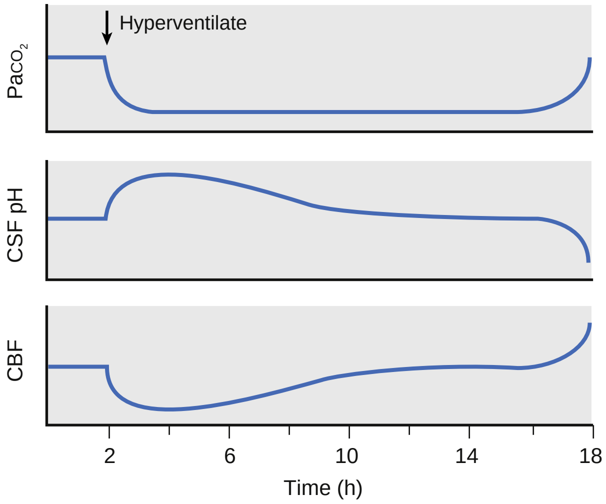


Fig. 57.6 Partial pressure of carbon dioxide in the arterial blood *($PaCO_2$)*, cerebral blood flow *(CBF)*, and cerebrospinal fluid *(CSF)* pH changes with prolonged hyperventilation. Although the decreased arterial $PaCO_2$ (and the systemic alkalosis) persists for the duration of the period of hyperventilation, the pH of the brain and CBF return toward normal over 8 to 12 hours.

CBF returns toward normal levels.[34,35] The implications are twofold. First, patients should be hyperventilated for only as long as a reduction in brain volume is required. Prolonged, unnecessary hyperventilation can lead to a circumstance wherein subsequent events call for additional maneuvers to reduce the volume of the intracranial contents, and then incremental hyperventilation is not efficacious. If, after adaptation, $PaCO_2$ is already in the 23 to 25 mm Hg range, additional hyperventilation may risk pulmonary barotrauma. Second, in a patient who has been hyperventilated for a sustained period (e.g., 2 days in an ICU setting), restoration of $PaCO_2$ from values in the vicinity of 25 mm Hg to typical normal values (e.g., 40 mm Hg) should ideally be accomplished slowly. A sudden increase in $PaCO_2$ from 25 to 40 mm Hg in a patient who has been chronically hyperventilated will have the same physiologic effect that a rapid change from 40 to 55 mm Hg would have in a previously normocapnic patient.

If hypocapnia has been required as an adjunct to brain relaxation during craniotomy, $PaCO_2$ should also be allowed to increase once the retractors are removed (if dural closure requirements permit) to minimize the residual intracranial pneumatocele (see the section on Pneumocephalus).

MANAGEMENT OF ARTERIAL BLOOD PRESSURE

Acceptable arterial blood pressure limits should similarly be agreed on at the beginning of a neurosurgical procedure. One of the prominent themes of contemporary neurosurgery is that CPP should be maintained at normal or even high-normal levels after acute central nervous system insults and during most intracranial neurosurgical procedures. This concept has evolved from the growing appreciation that CBF is frequently very low in some brain regions after acute neurologic insults, in particular TBI and SAH. Two additional factors should be considered. The first is that the autoregulatory response to decreasing blood pressure may not be intact throughout the brain. Fig. 57.7 depicts the ischemic hazard that attends the circumstance of a low resting CBF and absent autoregulation even at blood pressure levels considered safe when autoregulation is intact. In addition, maintenance of arterial pressure is also relevant to brain compressed under retractors [32] because the effective perfusion pressure is lowered by increased local tissue pressure.

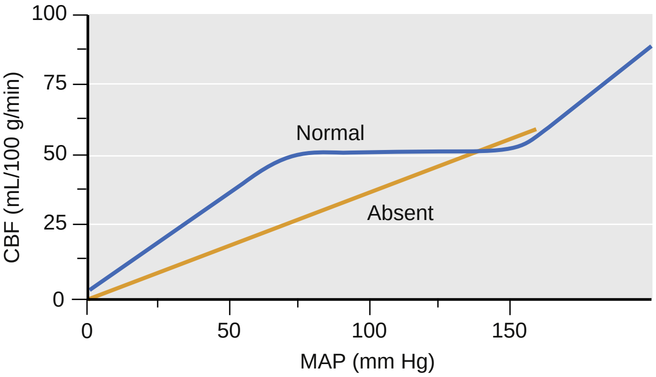


Fig. 57.7 Normal and absent autoregulation curves. The "absent" curve indicates a pressure-passive condition in which cerebral blood flow *(CBF)* varies in proportion to cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP). This curve is drawn to indicate subnormal CBF values during normotension, as have been shown to occur immediately after head injury[26] and subarachnoid hemorrhage.[30] The potential for modest hypotension to cause ischemia is apparent. *MAP,* Mean arterial pressure.

Although the only supportive data are anecdotal, we believe that an aggressive attitude toward arterial blood pressure support should also be given to patients who have sustained a recent spinal cord injury (SCI). This also applies to a spinal cord that is under compression, at risk for compression or vascular compromise because of a disease process (most commonly cervical spinal stenosis with or without ossification of the posterior longitudinal ligament) or an intended surgical procedure, and to those patients undergoing surgery involving retraction of the spinal cord. We believe that arterial blood pressure during anesthesia in these patients should be maintained as closely as possible to, and certainly within, 10% of average awake values.

STEROIDS

The administration of steroids for the purpose of reducing or limiting the formation of edema has a well-established place in neurosurgery. The efficacy of steroids in reducing edema associated with tumors[36-39] and radiation-induced necrosis is well confirmed, but not the edema associated with any other intracranial pathology. Although the time course of this effect is relatively rapid, it is too slow for the management of acute intraoperative events. However, administration beginning 48 hours before an elective surgical procedure has the potential to reduce edema formation and improve the clinical condition by the time of craniotomy.[45] Although clinical improvement occurs within 24 hours,[40] a reduction in ICP may not occur for 48 to 72 hours after the initiation of therapy.[49] Steroids somehow improve the viscoelastic properties of the intracranial space before a reduction in edema occurs, although the mechanism remains undefined.[41] The practice of administering steroids to patients with TBI has been abandoned as a result of controlled trials that demonstrated either no benefit or deleterious effects.[42]

OSMOTHERAPY AND DIURETICS

Hyperosmolar agents and diuretics are used widely in neurosurgery and neurocritical care to reduce the volume of the brain's intracellular and extracellular fluid compartments. Both osmotic and loop diuretics have been used. Although loop diuretics can be effective,[43] hyperosmolar agents are more widely used.

Mannitol

Mannitol is used most commonly intraoperatively because of its long history of rapid and effective reduction of brain volume. The doses vary from 0.25 g/kg to 100 g, with 1.0 g/kg the most common dose. A systematic study in TBI demonstrated that an equivalent initial ICP-reducing effect can be achieved with 0.25 g/kg, although the duration of effect is reduced compared to larger doses.[44] More recent studies reported better surgical brain relaxation scores with higher doses (1-1.5 g/kg) of mannitol compared to a dose of 0.25 g/kg.[45] Mannitol should be administered by infusion (e.g., over 10-15 minutes). Sudden exposure of the cerebral circulation to extreme hyperosmolarity can have a vasodilatory effect, which can produce brain engorgement and increased ICP, both of which do not occur with slower administration.

Mannitol enters the brain and, over a reasonably short time course, appears in the CSF space.[46] The possibility that the mannitol that gains access to the parenchyma aggravates swelling has resulted in varying degrees of reluctance among clinicians to administer mannitol.[47] Most clinicians nonetheless find it to be a mainstay of ICP management. There is the concern that it will only be effective when some degree of blood-brain barrier (BBB) integrity is preserved in a significant portion of the brain. Clinicians respond to this concern by making empiric use of this agent; that is, if it is effective in reducing ICP or improving conditions in the surgical field, repeated doses are administered. The use of hyperosmolar agents is theoretically limited by an upper acceptable osmolarity limit of approximately 320 mOsm/L (although the data supporting the validity of that limit are soft[48]). However, in life-threatening situations, the use is frequently empiric, and incremental doses (e.g., 12.5 g of mannitol) are administered until a clinical response is no longer observed.

Hypertonic Saline

In the critical care environment, the use of hypertonic saline (HTS) in place of mannitol is increasing.[49] Although the initial ICP effects of equiosmolar doses of mannitol and HTS are very similar,[50-53] HTS may have some advantages in the ICU, where repeated administration makes the adverse effects (e.g., diuresis, renal injury) more likely to have clinical significance. In addition, there are anecdotal reports of HTS being effective in patients who were refractory to mannitol.[54,55] Although there is enthusiasm for HTS,[54,56,57] supporting data are limited.[58,59] Furthermore, because of the variations in HTS concentrations (3%, 7.5%, 15%, 23.4%) and osmolar loads in the various studies, it is difficult to make specific recommendations.

Diuretic Combinations

The combination of a loop diuretic (usually furosemide) and an osmotic diuretic is sometimes used. The superficial rationale is that mannitol establishes an osmotic gradient that draws fluid out of brain parenchyma and that the furosemide, by hastening excretion of water from the intravascular space, facilitates the maintenance of that gradient. A second mechanism may add additional justification for the practice of combining the two diuretics. Neurons and glia have homeostatic mechanisms to ensure regulation of cell volume. Neurons and glia that shrink in response to an increased osmolarity in the external environment recover their volume rapidly as a consequence of the accumulation of so-called *idiogenic osmoles*, which serve to minimize the gradient between the internal and external environments. One of those idiogenic osmoles is chloride. Loop diuretics inhibit the chloride channel through which this ion must pass and thereby retard the normal volume-restoring mechanism.[60,61] These diuretic combinations may cause hypovolemia and electrolyte disturbances.

The normal volume regulatory mechanisms of neurons and glia may also be relevant to the phenomenon of rebound swelling. Rebound is commonly attributed to the prior use of mannitol and assumed to be a function of the accumulation of mannitol in cerebral tissue. Although possible, the rebound may in fact be hypertonic rebound rather than mannitol rebound. After a sustained period of hyperosmolarity of any etiology, rebound swelling of neurons and glia (which have accumulated idiogenic osmoles) may occur in the event that systemic osmolarity decreases rapidly toward normal levels. Rebound cerebral swelling can certainly occur after an episode of extreme increase in blood glucose concentration. The use of HTS rather than mannitol will not obviate this phenomenon.

ANTICONVULSANTS

The general principle is that any acute irritation of the cortical surface has the potential to result in seizures. This includes acute neurologic events such as TBI and SAH.[62,63] Cortical incisions and brain surface irritation by retractors may similarly be potential foci. Given the relatively benign nature of contemporary anticonvulsants (e.g., levetiracetam), routine administration to patients undergoing most supratentorial craniotomies seems appropriate in the absence of a contraindication. There is no necessity for rapid administration because the intention is to prevent seizures during the postoperative period.

POSITIONING

The intended surgical position and the necessary positioning aids should be agreed upon at the outset. The commonly used positions and positioning aids and supports are listed in Box 57.5 (see Chapter 34).

General Considerations

The prolonged duration of many neurosurgical procedures should be taken into account in all positions. Pressure points should be identified and padded carefully. Pressure and traction on nerves must be avoided. Given the high risk of thromboembolic complications in neurosurgical patients, precautions including graduated compression stockings and sequential compression devices are warranted.[64] For

BOX 57.5 Common Neurosurgical Positions and Positioning Aids

Positions

- Supine
- Lateral (park bench)
- Semi-lateral (Jannetta)
- Prone
- Sitting

Positioning Aids/Supports

- Pin ("Mayfield") head holder
- Radiolucent pin head holder
- Horseshoe head rest
- Foam head support (e.g., Voss, O.S.I., Prone-View)
- Vacuum mattress ("bean bag")
- Wilson-type frame
- Andrews ("hinder binder")-type frame
- Relton-Hall (four-poster) frame

cranial procedures, some component of head-up posturing (e.g., 15-20 degrees) is used to ensure optimal venous drainage. The conspicuous exception occurs with evacuation of a chronic subdural hemorrhage, after which patients are usually nursed flat to discourage reaccumulation of fluid. Patients are occasionally also maintained flat after CSF shunting to avoid overly rapid collapse of the ventricles.

Supine

The supine position is used with the head neutral or rotated for frontal, temporal, or parietal access. Extremes of head rotation can obstruct the jugular venous drainage, and a shoulder roll can attenuate this problem. The head is usually in a neutral position for bifrontal craniotomies and transsphenoidal approaches to the pituitary. The head-up posture is best accomplished by adjusting the operating table to a chaise longue (lawn chair) position (hip flexion, pillows under the knees, slight reverse Trendelenburg). This orientation, in addition to promoting cerebral venous drainage, decreases back strain.

Semilateral

The semilateral position, also known as the Jannetta position, named after the neurosurgeon who popularized its use for microvascular decompression of the fifth cranial nerve, is used for retromastoid access. It is achieved by lateral tilting of the table 10 to 20 degrees combined with a generous shoulder roll. Again, extreme head rotation, sufficient to cause compression of the contralateral jugular vein by the chin, should be avoided.

Lateral

The lateral position can be used for access to the posterior parietal and occipital lobes and the lateral posterior fossa including tumors at the cerebellopontine angle and aneurysms of the vertebral and basilar arteries. An axillary roll is important for preventing brachial plexus injury.

Prone

The prone position is used for spinal cord, occipital lobe, craniosynostosis, and posterior fossa procedures. For cervical spine and posterior fossa procedures, the final position commonly entails neck flexion, reverse Trendelenburg, and elevation of the legs. This orientation serves to bring the surgical field to a horizontal position. There should be a plan for detaching and reattaching monitors in an orderly manner to prevent an excessive monitoring window. Awake tracheal intubation and prone positioning may be warranted in patients with an unstable cervical spine in whom an unchanged neurologic status should be confirmed before induction of anesthesia in the final surgical position. This approach is also sometimes performed in obese patients.

The head can be secured in a pin head holder (applied before the turn) or positioned on a disposable foam head rest or, less frequently, a horseshoe head rest. A complication of the prone position, which requires constant attention, is retinal ischemia and blindness caused by orbital compression causing central retinal vessel occlusion. It must be intermittently confirmed (e.g., every 15 minutes) and after any surgery-related head or neck movement that pressure has not come to bear on the eye. However, not all postoperative vision loss (POVL) is a result of direct orbital compression. Ischemic optic neuropathy actually appears to be a more frequent cause of POVL than pressure-causing occlusion of central retinal vessels. The cause-and-effect relationships associated with ischemic optic neuropathy are uncertain, but low arterial pressure, low hematocrit level, lengthy surgical procedures, and large intravascular volume fluid administration are statistically associated with the phenomenon.[65]

Direct pressure can also result in various degrees of pressure necrosis of the forehead, maxillae, and chin, especially with prolonged spinal procedures. Pressure should be distributed as evenly as possible over facial structures. Other pressure points to check include the axillae, breasts, iliac crests, femoral canals, genitalia, knees, and heels. Traction on the brachial plexus must be avoided and can usually be accomplished by not exceeding a “90-90” position (arms abducted not >90 degrees; elbows extended not >90 degrees) with care taken to ensure that the elbow is anterior to the shoulder to prevent wrapping of the brachial plexus around the head of the humerus. An antisialagogue (e.g., glycopyrrolate) and an adhesive (e.g., benzoin) may help reduce loosening of the tape used to secure the endotracheal tube.

An objective during prone positioning, especially for lumbar spine surgery, is the avoidance of compression of the inferior vena cava. Impairment of vena cava return diverts blood to the epidural plexus and increases the potential for bleeding during spinal surgery. Minimizing vena cava pressure is an objective of all spinal surgery frames and is accomplished effectively by the Wilson, Andrews, and Jackson variants. However, this does introduce a risk of air embolism,[66,67] although severe clinical occurrences have been very infrequent.[68]

Attention should be paid to preventing injury to the tongue in the prone position. With both cervical and posterior fossa procedures, it is frequently necessary to flex the neck substantially to facilitate surgical access. This reduces the anterior-posterior dimension of the oropharynx, and compression ischemia of the base of the tongue (as well as the soft palate and posterior wall of the pharynx) can occur in the presence of foreign bodies (endotracheal tube, esophageal stethoscope, oral airway). The consequence can be macroglossia, caused by accumulation of edema after reperfusion of the ischemic tissue causing airway obstruction of rapid onset after extubation[69] (discussed later). Accordingly, placing unnecessary adjuncts in the oral cavity and pharynx should be avoided. Omitting the oral airway entirely is unwise because the tongue may then protrude between and be trapped by the teeth as progressive swelling of facial structures occurs during a prolonged prone procedure. A rolled gauze bite block prevents this problem without adding bulk to the oropharynx.

Sitting

There have been several reviews of numerous experiences with the sitting position.[70-74] All concluded that the sitting position can be used with acceptable rates of morbidity and mortality. However, these reports were prepared by groups that perform 50 to 100 or more of these procedures per year, and the hazards of the sitting position may be more frequent for teams who have fewer occasions to use it. The sitting position can be avoided by using one of its alternatives (prone, semilateral, lateral). However, this position will continue to be used because even surgeons who are inclined to use alternative positions may opt for it when access to midline structures (e.g., the quadrigeminal plate, the floor of the fourth ventricle, the pontomedullary junction, and the vermis) is required. Nonetheless, alternative positions for posterior fossa surgery are available and should be considered when contraindications to the sitting position exist.

Achieving the Sitting Position. The properly positioned patient is more commonly in a modified recumbent position as shown in Fig. 57.8 rather than truly sitting. The legs should be kept as high as possible (usually with pillows under the knees) to promote venous return. The head holder should be attached to the back portion of the table (see Fig. 57.8*A*) rather than to the portions under thighs or legs[75] (see Fig. 57.8*B*). This permits lowering of the head and closed chest compressions, if necessary, without the necessity of first taking the patient out of the head holder.

When procedures are performed in the sitting position, the clinician should think in terms of measuring and maintaining perfusion pressure at the level of the surgical field. This is best accomplished by referencing transducers to the level of the external auditory canal. If a manual blood pressure cuff on the arm is used, a correction* to allow for the hydrostatic difference between the arm and the operative field should be applied.

A series of hazards are associated with the sitting position. Circulatory instability, macroglossia, and quadriplegia are discussed in this section. Pneumocephalus is discussed in its own section. Venous air embolism (VAE) and paradoxical air embolism (PAE) are discussed in the section Venous Air Embolism. Several of these hazards are also relevant when cervical spine and posterior fossa procedures are performed in non-sitting positions but occur with greater frequency in the sitting position.

Cardiovascular Effects of the Sitting Position. Hypotension should be avoided. Prepositioning hydration, compressive stockings, and slow, incremental adjustment of table position are appropriate. Intravenous vasopressor administration may be required in some patients. However, in most healthy patients the hemodynamic changes are of a nonthreatening magnitude. In a study of healthy anesthetized adults aged 22 to 64 years old, relatively modest changes were observed.[76] MAP was relatively unaffected, whereas wedge pressure, stroke volume, and cardiac index decreased—the latter by approximately 15%—although there was some variation with the anesthetics used. The combination of an unchanged MAP (which in general requires the use of a light, high sympathetic tone anesthetic) and a reduced cardiac index implies that systemic vascular resistance (SVR) increased. Their calculations and the observations of other investigators [77] reveal significant increases in SVR. For patients in whom an abrupt increase in SVR may be poorly tolerated, the sitting position may represent a physiologic threat and alternative positions should be considered.

During procedures performed in the sitting position, MAP should be transduced at or corrected to head level to provide a meaningful index of CPP. Specifically, CPP (MAP – estimated ICP) should be maintained at a minimum value of 60 mm Hg in healthy patients in whom it is reasonable to assume a normal cerebral vasculature. The safe lower limit should be raised for elderly patients, for those with hypertension or known cerebral vascular disease, or for those with degenerative disease of the cervical spine or cervical spinal stenosis who may be at risk for decreased spinal cord perfusion, and in the event that substantial or sustained retractor pressure must be applied to brain or spinal cord tissue.

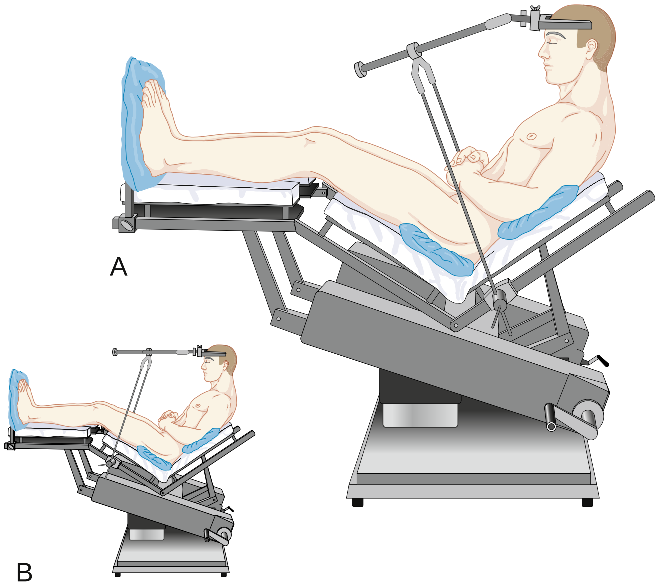


Fig. 57.8 The sitting position. (A) The head-holder support is correctly positioned so that the head can be lowered without the necessity to first detach the head holder. (B) This configuration, with the support attached to the thigh portion of the table, should be avoided. (From Martin JT. *Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1988, with permission.)

Macroglossia. There have been sporadic reports of upper airway obstruction after posterior fossa procedures in which swelling of pharyngeal structures, including the soft palate, posterior pharyngeal wall, and base of the tongue, has been observed.[39,69,78] These episodes have been attributed to edema formation at the time of reperfusion after trauma or prolonged ischemia, occurring as the result of foreign bodies (usually oral airways) causing pressure on these structures in the circumstances of lengthy procedures with sustained neck flexion (which is usually required to improve access to posterior structures). It is customary to maintain at least two fingerbreadths between the chin/mandible and the sternum/clavicle to prevent excessive reduction of the anterior-posterior diameter of the oropharynx. Consideration of the macroglossia phenomenon may also be relevant as clinicians contemplate the use of transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) in the neurosurgery suite. The centers that routinely use TEE in neurosurgery mostly use pediatric diameter probes to avoid trauma to pharyngeal and perilaryngeal structures.

Quadriplegia. The sitting position has been implicated as a cause of rare instances of unexplained postoperative quadriplegia. It has been hypothesized[79] that neck flexion, a common concomitant of the seated position, may result in stretching or compression of the cervical spinal cord. This possibility may represent a relative contraindication to the use of this position in patients with significant degenerative disease of the cervical spine, especially when there is evidence of associated cerebral vascular disease. The arterial blood pressure management implications are mentioned in the preceding section on cardiovascular effects. It may also represent a justification for evoked response monitoring during the positioning phase of a sitting procedure for patients perceived to be at high risk (also see Chapter 39).

---

* A column of blood 32 cm high exerts a pressure of 25 mm Hg.

PNEUMOCEPHALUS

The issue of pneumocephalus arises most often in connection with posterior fossa craniotomies performed with a head-up posture.[80,81] During these procedures, air may enter the supratentorial space, much as air enters an inverted pop bottle. Depending on the relationship of the brainstem and temporal lobes to the incisura, the pressure in the air collection may or may not be able to equilibrate with atmospheric pressure. This phenomenon has relevance to the use of N_2O because any N_2O that enters a trapped gas space augments the volume of that space. In those (probably uncommon) intraoperative circumstances where there is, in fact, a completely closed intracranial gas space, the use of N_2O may result in an effect comparable with that of an expanding mass lesion. We do not view N_2O as absolutely contraindicated because, before dural closure, intracranial gas is probably only rarely trapped. Nonetheless, attention to this possibility is important when one is presented with the problem of an increasingly tight brain during a posterior fossa craniotomy.[82,83]

During a posterior fossa procedure done in a head-up posture, when surgical closure has reached a stage such that the intracranial space has been completely sealed from the atmosphere, N_2O should be omitted because of the possibility of contributing to a tension pneumocephalus. Note that the use of N_2O up to the point of dural closure may actually represent a clinical advantage,[84] as in rabbits the gas pocket has been shown to shrink more rapidly because of the presence of N_2O (because N_2O diffuses much more quickly than nitrogen). Tension pneumocephalus is often naively viewed as exclusively a function of the use of N_2O. However, tension pneumocephalus can most certainly occur as a complication of intracranial neurosurgery entirely *unrelated* to the use of N_2O.[85] It is one of the causes of delayed awakening or nonawakening after both posterior fossa and supratentorial procedures (Fig. 57.9).[85,86] It occurs because air enters the cranium when the patient is in a head-up position at a time when the volume of the intracranial contents has been reduced because of some combination of hypocapnia, good venous drainage, osmotic diuresis, and CSF loss from the operative field. When the cranium is closed and the patient is returned to the near supine position, CSF, venous blood, and extracellular fluid return or reaccumulate and the air pocket becomes an unyielding mass lesion (because of the very slow diffusion of nitrogen). It may cause delayed recovery of consciousness or severe headache. Among supratentorial craniotomies, the largest residual air spaces occur after frontal skull base procedures in which energetic brain relaxation measures are used to facilitate subfrontal access (see Fig. 57.9). At the end of these procedures, typically done in a supine/brow-up position, the intracranial dead space cannot be filled with normal saline as is commonly done with smaller craniotomy defects, and there may be a large residual pneumatocele. We doubt that the possible occurrence of this phenomenon represents a contraindication to N_2O. However, withdrawal of N_2O may be appropriate at the time of scalp closure. The diagnosis of pneumocephalus is established by a brow-up lateral radiography or, more commonly, a CT scan. The treatment is a twist-drill hole followed by needle puncture of the dura.

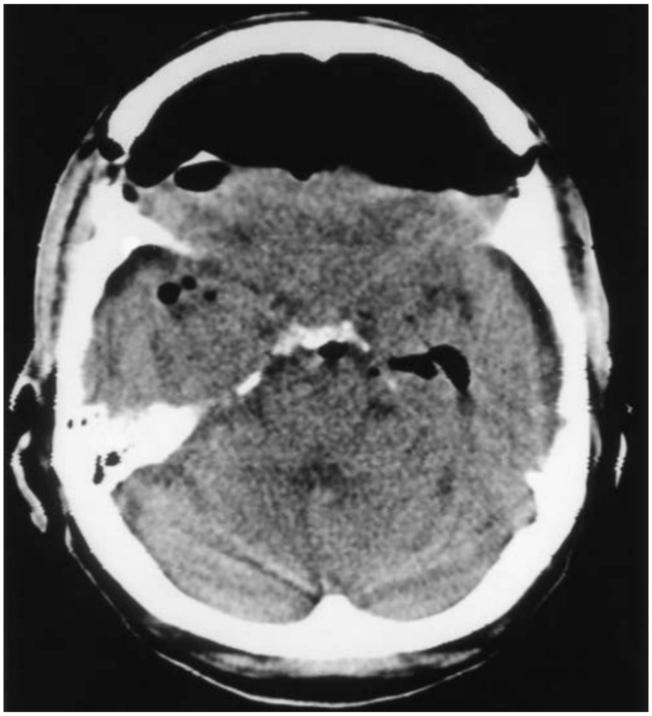


Fig. 57.9 Postoperative computed tomographic scan demonstrating a large pneumocephalus after a subfrontal approach to a suprasellar glioma. Immediately postoperatively, the patient was confused and agitated, and he complained of a severe headache.

Residual intracranial air should be considered at the time of repeat anesthesia, both neurosurgical and nonneurosurgical. Air frequently remains evident on CT scan for more than 7 days after a craniotomy.[87] Pneumocephalus can also develop de novo in the postoperative period in patients who have a residual dural defect and a communication between the nasal sinuses and the intracranial space.[88]

VENOUS AIR EMBOLISM

The incidence of VAE varies according to the procedure, the intraoperative position, and the detection method used. During posterior fossa procedures performed in the sitting position, VAE is detectable by precordial Doppler in approximately 40% of patients and by TEE in as many as 76%.[89-92] The incidence of VAE during posterior fossa procedures performed in nonsitting positions is much less (12% using precordial Doppler in the report of Black and colleagues [72]), and it is probable but unproven that the average volume of air entrained per event is also smaller. The incidence of VAE is apparently lower with cervical laminectomy (25% using TEE in the sitting position versus 76% for posterior fossa procedures[91]). Although VAE is principally a hazard of posterior fossa and upper cervical spine procedures, especially when they are performed in the sitting position, it can occur with supratentorial procedures. The most common situations involve tumors, most often parasagittal or falcine meningiomas, that encroach on the posterior half of the sagittal sinus (Fig. 57.10) and craniosynostosis procedures, typically performed in children.[93,94] Pin sites can also serve as VAE access sites. Accordingly, pin head holders should be removed after the patient has been taken out of significant degrees of the head-up positioning. Spontaneous ventilation (with the attendant intermittent negative intrathoracic pressure) will increase the risk of air entrainment. A 6% incidence of Doppler-detectable VAE was reported in a series of deep-brain stimulator placement procedures performed in spontaneously breathing patients.[95]

The common sources of critical VAE are the major cerebral venous sinuses, in particular the transverse, the sigmoid, and the posterior half of the sagittal sinus, all of which may be noncollapsible because of their dural attachments. Air entry may also occur via emissary veins, particularly from suboccipital musculature, via the diploic space of the skull (which can be violated by both the craniotomy and pin fixation) and the cervical epidural veins. It is believed (but not confirmed by systematic study) that the VAE risk associated with cervical laminectomy is more likely when the exposure requires dissection of suboccipital muscle with the potential to open emissary veins to the atmosphere at their point of entry into occipital bone. There is also anecdotal evidence[96] that air under pressure in the ventricles or subdural space can occasionally enter the venous system, perhaps along the normal egress route of the CSF.

Detection of Venous Air Embolism

The monitors used for the detection of VAE should provide (1) a high level of sensitivity, (2) a high level of specificity, (3) a rapid response, (4) a quantitative measure of the VAE event, and (5) an indication of the course of recovery from the VAE event. The combination of a precordial Doppler and expired CO_2 monitoring meets these criteria and is the current practice in many institutions. Doppler placement in a left or right parasternal location between the second and third or third and fourth ribs has a very high detection rate for gas embolization,[97] and when good heart tones are heard, maneuvers to confirm adequate placement appear to be unnecessary. The TEE is more sensitive than the precordial Doppler (Fig. 57.11) to VAE[98] and offers the advantage of also identifying right-to-left shunting of air. However, its safety during prolonged use (especially with pronounced neck flexion) is not well established. Expired nitrogen analysis is theoretically attractive. However, the expired nitrogen concentrations involved in anything less than catastrophic VAE are very small and push the available instrumentation to the limits of its sensitivity.[99]

Fig. 57.12 presents the physiologic and monitor response to an air embolic event, and Box 57.6 offers an appropriate management response to such an event.

Which Patients Should Have a Right Heart Catheter?

All patients who undergo sitting posterior fossa procedures should have a right heart catheter placed. Although life-threatening VAE is relatively uncommon, a catheter permits immediate evacuation of an air-filled heart. With the nonsitting positions, it is frequently appropriate, after a documented discussion with the surgeon, to omit the right heart catheter. The perceived risks of VAE associated with the intended procedure and the patient's physiologic reserve are the variables that contribute to the decision. Microvascular decompression of the fifth or seventh cranial nerves are examples of procedures for which the right heart catheter is usually omitted. The essentially horizontal semilateral position and the very limited retromastoid craniectomy that is required have resulted (at our institution) in a

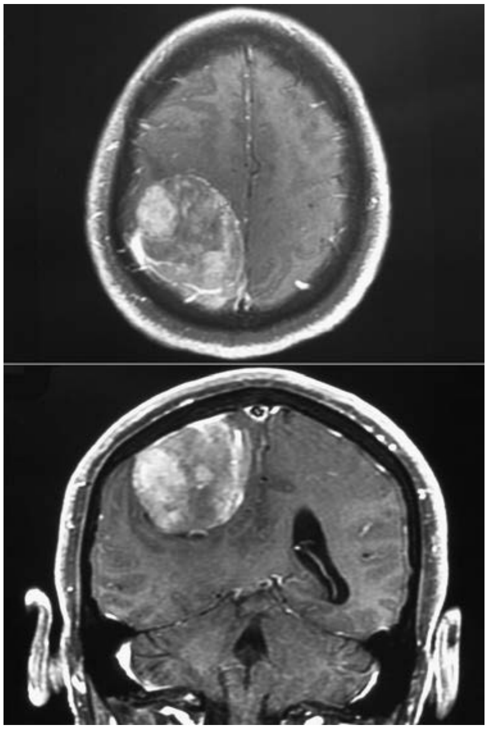


Fig. 57.10 Axial *(top)* and coronal *(bottom)* magnetic resonance images of a parasagittal meningioma. Resection of meningiomas arising from the dural reflection overlying the sagittal sinus or from the dura of the adjacent convexity or falx often entails a risk of venous air embolism because of the proximity of the sagittal sinus (the triangular structure at the superior end of the interhemispheric fissure in the bottom panel).

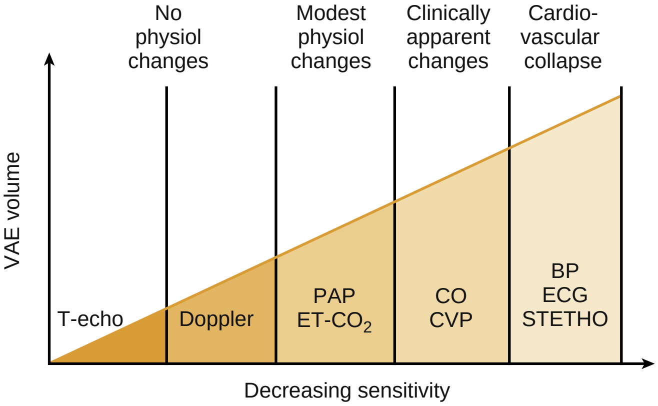


Fig. 57.11 The relative sensitivity of various monitoring techniques to the occurrence of venous air embolism. *BP*, Blood pressure; *CO*, cardiac output; *CVP*, central venous pressure; *ECG*, electrocardiogram; *ET-CO₂*, end-tidal carbon dioxide; *PAP*, pulmonary artery pressure; *Stetho*, esophageal stethoscope; *T-echo*, transesophageal echo; *VAE*, venous air embolism.

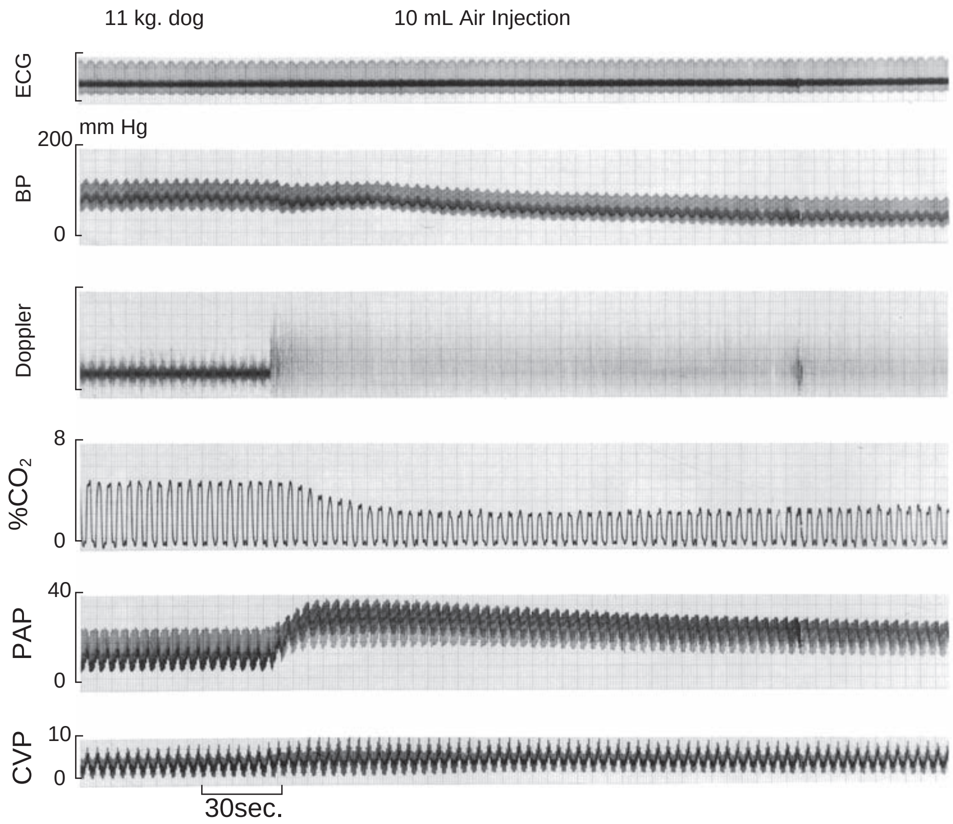


Fig. 57.12 The responses of the electrocardiogram *(ECG)*, arterial pressure, pulmonary artery pressure *(PAP)*, pan-tidal CO_2 concentration, a precordial Doppler and central venous pressure *(CVP)* to the intravenous administration of 10 mL of air over 30 seconds to an 11-kg dog. *BP*, Blood pressure.

BOX 57.6 Management of an Acute Air Embolic Event

1. Prevent further air entry
   - Notify surgeon (flood or pack surgical field)
   - Jugular compression
   - Lower the head
2. Treat the intravascular air
   - Aspirate right heart catheter
   - Discontinue N_2O
   - FiO_2: 1.0
   - Pressors, inotropes
   - Chest compression

very low incidence of Doppler-detectable VAE. One should know the local surgical practices, particularly with respect to the degree of head-up posture, before deciding to omit a right atrial catheter. With regard to the Jannetta procedure, the necessary retromastoid craniectomy is performed in the angle between the transverse and sigmoid sinuses, and venous sinusoids and emissary veins in the suboccipital bone are common. If this procedure is performed with any degree of head-up posturing, the risk of VAE may still be substantial.

Which Vein Should Be Used for Right Heart Access?

Although some surgeons may ask that neck veins not be used, a skillfully placed jugular catheter is usually acceptable. In a very limited number of patients, high ICP may make the head-down posture undesirable. In others, unfavorable anatomy with an increased likelihood of a difficult cannulation and hematoma formation may also encourage the use of alternate access sites.

Positioning the Right Heart Catheter

The investigation by Bunegin and colleagues suggested that a multiorificed catheter should be located with the tip 2 cm below the superior vena caval-atrial junction and a single-orificed catheter with the tip 3 cm above the superior vena caval-atrial junction.[100] Although these small distinctions in location may be relevant for optimal recovery of small volumes of air when cardiac output is well maintained, for the recovery of massive volumes of air in the face of cardiovascular collapse, anywhere in the right atrium should suffice. Confirmation of right heart placement can be accomplished by (1) radiography, (2) intravascular electrocardiography (ECG),[101] or (3) TEE.[102] Although there is no literature to support the practice, with catheter access via the right internal jugular vein, a measured placement to the level of the second or third right intercostal space should suffice when the catheter passes readily. The intravascular electrocardiography technique makes use of the fact that an ECG “electrode” placed in the middle of the right atrium will initially “see” an increasing positivity as the developing P-wave vector approaches it (Fig. 57.13), and then an increasing negativity as the wave of atrial depolarization passes and moves away from it. The resultant biphasic P wave is characteristic of an intraatrial electrode position. The technique

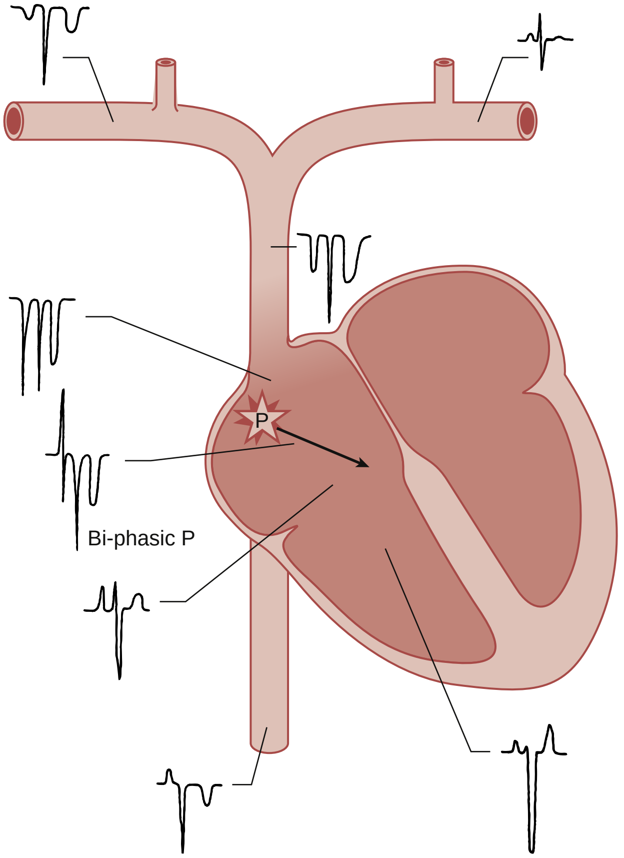


Fig. 57.13 Electrocardiogram (ECG) configurations observed at various locations when a central venous catheter is used as an intravascular ECG electrode. The configurations in the figure will be observed when Lead II is monitored and the positive electrode (the leg electrode) is connected to the catheter. *P* indicates the sinoatrial node. The *black arrow* indicates the P-wave vector. Note the equi-biphasic P wave when the catheter tip is in the mid-right atrial position.[101]

requires that the central venous pressure (CVP) catheter become an exploring ECG electrode. This is accomplished by filling the catheter with an electrolyte solution (bicarbonate is best) and attaching an ECG lead (the leg lead if lead II is selected) to the hub of the CVP catheter. Commercial CVP kits with an ECG adapter are available. The ECG configurations that will be observed at various intravascular locations are shown in Fig. 57.13. To minimize the microshock hazard, a battery-operated ECG unit is preferable, and any unnecessary electrical apparatus should be detached from the patient during catheter placement.

Paradoxical Air Embolism

The possibility of the passage of air across the interatrial septum via a patent foramen ovale (PFO), which is known to be present in approximately 25% of adults, is a concern.[103] The risk is major cerebral and coronary morbidity. However, the precise definition of the morbidity that can actually be attributed to PAE is not clear. Although the minimal pressure required to open a probe PFO is not known with certainty, the necessary gradient may be as much as 5 mm Hg. In a clinical investigation, Mammoto and colleagues observed that PAE occurred only in the context of major air embolic events, suggesting that significant increases in right heart pressures are an important predisposing factor of the occurrence of PAE.[104] Several clinical investigations have examined factors that influence the right atrial pressure (RAP) to left atrial pressure (LAP) gradient. The use of positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) increases the incidence of a positive RAP to pulmonary wedge pressure gradient[105] and generous fluid administration (e.g., 2800 mL/patient vs. 1220 mL/control patient[106]) reduces it. As a result, the use of PEEP, which was once advocated as a means of preventing air entrainment, was abandoned. Subsequently, the practice of more generous fluid administration for patients undergoing posterior fossa procedures evolved. However, even when mean LAP exceeds mean RAP, PAE can still occur because transient reversal of the interatrial pressure gradient can occur during each cardiac cycle.[107]

Some centers have advocated performing bubble studies preoperatively with echocardiography[92] or transcranial Doppler (TCD),[108] or intraoperatively using TEE prior to positioning[109] to identify patients with a PFO with a view to using alternatives to the sitting position in this subpopulation.[91,110] Some centers thereafter advocate the use of TEE to identify paradoxical embolization intraoperatively.[91,111] However, none of these practices has become a community-wide standard of care. Furthermore, because the morbid events attributable to PAE have been relatively infrequent, surgeons who are convinced that the sitting position is optimal for a given procedure[74] are loath to be dissuaded from using it on the basis of what may seem like the very minor possibility of an injury to the patient occurring by this mechanism.

Transpulmonary Passage of Air

Air can sometimes traverse the pulmonary vascular bed to reach the systemic circulation.[112-114] Transpulmonary passage is more likely to occur when large volumes of air are presented to the pulmonary vascular filter.[115,116] In addition, pulmonary vasodilators, including volatile anesthetics, may decrease the threshold for transpulmonary passage.[115-117] The magnitude of differences among anesthetics does not appear to mandate any related “tailoring” of anesthetic techniques. However, N_2O should be discontinued promptly after even apparently minor VAE events because of the possibility that air may reach the left-sided circulation either via a PFO or the pulmonary vascular bed.

Box 57.6 presents an approach for responding to an acute VAE event. It includes raising venous pressure by direct compression of the jugular veins. PEEP and the Valsalva maneuver were once advocated. However, both PEEP [105] and the release of a Valsalva maneuver increase the risk of PAE, and the relative superiority of jugular venous compression in raising cerebral venous pressures has been confirmed.[118,119] Furthermore, the impairment of systemic venous return caused by the sudden application of substantial PEEP may be undesirable in the face of the cardiovascular dysfunction already caused by the VAE event.

It has been recommended that a patient who has sustained a hemodynamically significant VAE should be placed in a lateral position with the right side up. The rationale is that air will remain in the right atrium, where it will not contribute to an air lock in the right ventricle and where it will remain amenable to recovery via a right atrial catheter. The first difficulty is that this repositioning is all but impossible with a patient in a pin head holder. In addition, the only systematic attempt to examine the efficacy of this maneuver, albeit performed in dogs, failed to identify any hemodynamic benefit. [120]

Nitrous Oxide

Nitrous oxide diffuses into air bubbles trapped in the vascular tree and, accordingly, N_2O should be eliminated after a clinical VAE event to avoid aggravating the cardiovascular impact. As noted earlier, the PAE phenomenon adds an additional reason for eliminating N_2O *after* the occurrence of VAE. When major VAE occurs, no matter how the RAP-LAP gradient was manipulated before the event, RAP increases abruptly with respect to LAP,[121] and major VAE results in an acutely increased risk of PAE in patients with a PFO.[104] Should N_2O be used in patients at risk for VAE? Some clinicians may decide to simply avoid it. However, N_2O can be used with the knowledge that it neither increases the incidence of VAE[122] nor aggravates the hemodynamic response to VAE provided that it is eliminated when VAE occurs.[123]

MONITORING

Neurologic monitoring techniques are discussed in Chapter 39. Invasive monitoring is frequently appropriate in neurosurgery. Some of the numerous indications for an arterial catheter are listed in Box 57.7.

Patients with increased ICP may be intolerant of the vascular engorgement associated with sudden hypertension occurring as a consequence of light anesthesia. Surgical relief of increased ICP may be associated with sudden hypotension as brainstem compression is relieved. Beat-by-beat arterial pressure monitoring also serves as an important depth of anesthesia monitor and as an early neurologic injury warning system. Much of the brain is insensate. As a consequence, the intradural portion of many neurosurgical procedures is not very stimulating and, to achieve circulatory stability, relatively light anesthesia is often necessary. There should be constant attention to the possibility of sudden arousal (most often associated with cranial nerve traction or irritation). This is especially important when paralysis is precluded by the use of motor-evoked potential monitoring or electromyographic recording from facial muscles to monitor cranial nerve integrity. Blood pressure responses may reveal imminent arousal; they may also serve to warn a surgeon of excessive or unrecognized irritation, traction, or compression of neurologic tissue. These occur most often with posterior fossa procedures involving brainstem or cranial nerves, and abrupt changes should be reported to the surgeon immediately.

The use of right heart catheters for air retrieval is discussed in the section VAE. In the absence of VAE risk and in the presence of good peripheral venous access, we rarely place right heart catheters for neurosurgical procedures. Antecedent cardiac disease may justify a pulmonary arterial catheter. The use of the precordial Doppler is also described in the section VAE.

BOX 57.7 **Relative Indications for Intraarterial Pressure Monitoring**

- Elevated intracranial pressure
- Ischemia or incipient ischemia of neural tissue
  - Recent subarachnoid hemorrhage
  - Recent head injury
  - Recent spinal cord injury
  - Intended or possible temporary vessel occlusion
- Circulatory instability
  - Trauma
  - Spinal cord injury (spinal shock)
  - Sitting position
  - Possible barbiturate coma
- Possibility of induced hypotension
- Possibility of induced hypertension
- Anticipated or potential major blood loss
  - Aneurysm clipping
  - Arteriovenous malformations
  - Vascular tumors
  - Tumors involving or adjacent to major venous sinuses
  - Craniofacial reconstruction
  - Extensive craniosynostosis procedures
- Anticipated light anesthesia without paralysis
- Brainstem manipulation, compression, dissection
- Anticipated CN manipulation (especially CN V)
- Advantageous for postoperative intensive care
  - Hypervolemic therapy
  - Head injury
  - Diabetes insipidus
- Incidental cardiac disease

CN, Cranial nerve.

INTRAVENOUS FLUID MANAGEMENT

The general principles of fluid management for neurosurgical anesthesia are (1) maintain normovolemia and (2) avoid reduction of serum osmolarity. The first principle is a derivative of the concept presented in the section Management of Arterial Blood Pressure, which is that it is generally ideal to maintain a normal MAP in patients undergoing most neurosurgical procedures and neurosurgical critical care. Maintaining normovolemia is simply one element of maintaining a normal MAP. The second principle is a derivative of the observation that lowering serum osmolarity results in edema of both normal and abnormal brain.[124,125] Administering fluids that provide free water (i.e., fluids that do not have sufficient nonglucose solutes to render them iso-osmolar with respect to blood) lowers serum osmolarity if the amount of free water administered is in excess of that required to maintain ongoing free water loss. Normal saline and balanced salt solutions are the fluids most often used intraoperatively. At 308 mOsm/L, normal saline is slightly hyperosmolar with respect to plasma (295 mOsm/L). It has the disadvantage that large volumes can cause hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis.[126] The physiologic significance of this acidosis, which involves the extracellular but not the intracellular fluid space, is unclear. At a minimum, it has the potential to confuse the diagnostic picture when acidosis is present. Comparisons between normal saline and balanced crystalloid solutions in the setting of cardiac surgery[127] and critically ill intensive care patients[128] did not reveal any adverse events (acute kidney injury, mortality, length of hospital stay) attributable to administration of normal saline. Nonetheless, to avoid hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis, many clinicians use lactated Ringer solution.

Although lactated Ringer solution (273 mOsm/L) is in theory not ideal for replacement of blood and third-space loss or insensible losses, it serves as an entirely reasonable compromise for meeting both needs simultaneously and is very suitable in most instances. It is a hypoosmolar fluid, and in a healthy experimental animal, it is possible to reduce serum osmolarity and produce cerebral edema with a large volume of lactated Ringer solution.[125] In the setting of large-volume fluid administration (e.g., significant blood loss, multiple trauma), it is the authors' practice to alternate, liter by liter, lactated Ringer solution and normal saline. Alternatively, Plasma-Lyte (Baxter International Inc.; Deerfield, IL), a buffered crystalloid solution (pH 7.4) with physiochemical properties similar to plasma, may be considered, if available.[129] Plasma-Lyte is considered isotonic with a calculated *in vivo* osmolality range of approximately 270 to 294 mOsmol/kg (depending on the manufacturing country). Although there may be advantages to the use of a physiologically balanced solution such as Plasma-Lyte, there remains insufficient clinical evidence to advocate for one fluid over another at the present time.

The crystalloid versus colloid discussion is a recurrent one. It arises most commonly in the context of the patient with TBI. Although views differ, there has in fact been only a single demonstration that the reduction of colloid oncotic pressure (COP) in the absence of a change of osmolarity can actually contribute to an augmentation of cerebral edema in the setting of experimental head injury.[130] The transcapillary membrane pressure gradients that can be produced by reduction of COP are in fact very small by comparison of those created by changes in serum osmolarity. Nonetheless, it appears that those small gradients, probably in the setting of an experimental BBB injury of intermediate severity, have the potential to augment edema. A fluid administration pattern should be selected that, in addition to maintaining normal serum osmolarity, prevents substantial reductions in COP. For most elective craniotomies, which entail only modest fluid administration, this does not require the administration of colloid solutions. However, in situations requiring substantial volume administration (e.g., multiple trauma, aneurysm rupture, cerebral venous sinus laceration, filling pressure support during barbiturate coma), a combination of isotonic crystalloid and colloid may be appropriate.

Which Colloid Solutions Should Be Used?

Colloid administration has created increasing concern about not only its efficacy but also its safety. Based on empirical local experience, we view albumin to be a reasonable choice. However, there are conflicting opinions and cross-currents in the literature. An analysis of the subset of patients in the SAFE (Saline vs. Albumin Fluid Evaluation) trial with severe TBI (Glasgow Coma Scale [GCS] score 3-8) revealed increased mortality among those who received albumin.[131] However, there are several reasons to be suspicious of that conclusion. First, SAFE trial patients were not originally randomized on the basis of TBI characteristics and, by chance, there were imbalances in TBI-related characteristics that appear to have placed the albumin group at greater risk.[132] Second, the 4% albumin solution used was hypoosmolar (274 mOsm/L) and might have been expected to aggravate edema.[133] Furthermore, there is no compelling physiologic explanation for an albumin-specific hazard. The formation of cerebral edema that is more difficult to clear is an inevitable suspicion.[134] However, if valid, that should be a class effect relevant to all colloids (including fresh frozen plasma and starches) rather than being albumin specific. Furthermore, albumin has been used in TBI by others with no evidence of adverse effects.[135,136] In contrast to alleged adverse effects in the context of TBI, there are potential beneficial effects in SAH.[137,138] The ALIAS phase III clinical trial evaluated the use of albumin in acute stroke patients. Although albumin administration was associated with increased rate of symptomatic intracranial hemorrhage (ICH) and congestive heart failure (CHF), no negative impact was detected in the primary outcome measure—the rate of favorable neurologic outcome at 90 days.[139] At best, the existing literature may justify consideration of limiting albumin volumes in patients with severe head injury. The indications and concerns for colloids, and especially albumin administration, have been recently expressed (see Chapter 47).

The various starch-containing solutions should be used cautiously in neurosurgery because, in addition to a dilutional reduction of coagulation factors, they interfere directly with both platelets and the factor VIII complex.[140] The coagulation effects are proportional to the average molecular weight and the hydroxyethyl group substitution ratio of the starch preparation. There have been several reported instances of bleeding in neurosurgical patients that were attributed to hydroxylethyl starch administration. However, all of those have involved circumstances in which the manufacturer's recommended dosage limit was exceeded[141] or in which the starch was administered up to the recommended limit on successive days, probably resulting in an accumulation effect.[142] The latitudes are wider with the subsequent availability of small molecule/lower substitution ratio preparations. These preparations have a record of safety when used in the operating room in general [143] and have been administered uneventfully to patients with severe TBI.[144] The decision about whether to use these products is frequently a matter of local practice. Although hydroxylethyl starch solutions can be used in neuroanesthesia, clinicians should respect the manufacturers' recommended dose restrictions and should use additional restraint in situations where there are other reasons for impairment of the coagulation mechanism. Recent concern about adverse effects on renal function in patients who have received starches in critical care situations have made some reluctant to use these compounds in any setting. The dextran-containing solutions are generally avoided because of their effects on platelet function.

There is longstanding interest in the use of hypertonic fluids for the resuscitation of polytrauma victims in general, and of patients with TBI in particular. However, there has yet to be a scientifically convincing demonstration of outcome improvement associated with hypertonic solution administration.[145]

GLUCOSE MANAGEMENT

There is a widespread notion that increased plasma glucose aggravates a cerebral ischemic insult. This may be true for an acute ischemic event in a previously normal brain, but that should not be extrapolated to the idea that all "neuro patients" should be submitted to very tight glycemic control. The potential benefits of a lower plasma glucose concentration in the event of an acute ischemic episode (which have not been well confirmed in humans) should be outweighed by the very clear demonstrations that the injured brain (e.g., TBI, SAH) becomes "hypoglycemic" and suffers metabolic distress at plasma glucose levels that are satisfactory for a normal brain.[146-149] This may be because injury can produce a state of hyperglycolysis.[147,150] Although severe hyperglycemia should be treated to reduce infection rates, patients with acute injuries (e.g., TBI, SAH) should not be submitted to very tight control. As one reviewer said, "extra sweetness [is] required" [151] by the injured brain. The authors' intraoperative intervention threshold is 250 mg/dL (14 mmol/L), the objective being to reduce plasma glucose to less than 200 mg/dL (11 mmol/L). One published guideline recommends an ICU objective of less than 180 mg/dL (10 mmol/L) in patients with cerebral injuries but cautions that plasma glucose not be allowed to decrease to less than 100 mg/dL (5 mmol/L).[152] The NICE-Sugar study's control group range of 144 to 180 mg/dL (7.8-10 mmol/L) [153] is probably also a reasonable target. However, control should only be undertaken when processes to prevent hypoglycemia are firmly in place, and the lower the targets, the more comprehensive the hypoglycemia prevention processes must be.

HYPOTHERMIA

The effects of hypothermia on cerebral physiology and its potential cerebral protective mechanisms are presented in Chapter 11. There have been numerous laboratory demonstrations on the efficacy of mild hypothermia (32°C-34°C) in reducing the neurologic injury occurring after standardized cerebral and spinal cord ischemic insults. On that basis, the use of induced hypothermia in the management of cerebral vascular procedures, in particular aneurysms and sometimes AVMs, became widespread. However, an international multicenter trial of mild hypothermia in 1001 relatively good-grade patients undergoing aneurysm surgery revealed no improvement in neurologic outcome.[154] Thus, the routine use of intraoperative hypothermia has inevitably diminished.

Because ischemia is recognized to make a post-insult contribution to neuronal injury after TBI,[26,155] hypothermia was also studied in laboratory models of TBI.[156] Hypothermia was effective and resulted in a prospective multicenter trial in which hypothermia (33°C) was induced within 8 hours of injury and was maintained for 48 hours. No outcome benefit was evident.[157] Post hoc subgroup analysis indicated that patients younger than 45 years old who arrived at the tertiary care facility with a temperature less than 35°C who were randomly assigned to the cooling limb of the trial did have an improved outcome. A second trial in which more rapid induction of hypothermia was accomplished (35°C by 2.6 hours, 33°C by 4.4 hours) was undertaken. However, the results were similarly negative.[158] Hypothermia has also been evaluated as a neuroprotective strategy in pediatric TBI. The largest randomized controlled trial (RCT) failed to demonstrate improved outcome at 6 months and in fact, demonstrated a trend toward worse outcomes in the hypothermia group.[159]

Based on a lack of demonstrated efficacy in humans, routine use of hypothermia in neurosurgery cannot be advocated in a standard textbook. The decision to use it, usually in the context of aneurysm surgery, is local. The authors continue to use mild hypothermia selectively, most commonly in patients perceived to be at an especially high risk of intraoperative ischemia. If hypothermia is used, cardiac dysrhythmia and coagulation dysfunction can occur if body temperatures become too low. Patients should be rewarmed adequately before emergence to avoid shivering, hypertension, or delayed awakening.

By contrast with clinical neurosurgery, the use of hypothermia after cardiac arrest is now practiced widely. Two multicenter trials demonstrated improved neurologic outcome among survivors of witnessed cardiac arrest cooled to 32 to 34°C within 4 hours and maintained at that temperature for 12 to 24 hours.[160,161] A subsequent randomized trial reported similar outcomes in patients treated with targeted temperature management at either 33°C or 36°C.[162] Widespread clinical application of targeted temperature management has been advocated by an international task force and other groups.[163,164]

Although mild hypothermia is perceived to convey the hazard of coagulation dysfunction and dysrhythmia, neither has been evident in elective neurosurgery in the temperature ranges typically used (32°C-34°C). The issue of where body temperature should be recorded to best reflect brain temperature has been addressed.[165] It appears that esophageal, tympanic membrane, pulmonary arterial, and jugular bulb temperature are all very similar and provide a reasonable reflection of deep brain temperature, whereas bladder temperature does not. During craniotomies, superficial layers of cortex may be substantially cooler than deep brain and central temperatures.

EMERGENCE FROM ANESTHESIA

Most practitioners of neuroanesthesia feel that there is a premium on a smooth emergence—that is, one free of coughing, straining, and arterial hypertension. The avoidance of arterial hypertension is desired because arterial hypertension can contribute to intracranial bleeding and increased edema formation.[166-171] In the face of poor cerebral autoregulation, hypertension also has the potential, through vascular engorgement, to contribute to an increase in ICP. Much of the concern with coughing and straining has a similar basis. The sudden increases in intrathoracic pressure are transmitted to both arteries and veins, producing transient increases in both cerebral arterial and venous pressure, with the same potential consequences: edema formation, bleeding, and elevation of ICP. Coughing is a specific concern with certain individual procedures. In the circumstances of transsphenoidal pituitary surgery in which a surgeon has opened, and subsequently taken pains to close, the arachnoid membrane to prevent CSF leakage, there is a belief that coughing has the potential to disrupt this closure because of the sudden and substantial increases in CSF pressure. Opening a pathway from the intracranial space to the nasal cavity conveys a substantial risk of postoperative meningitis. In other procedures, notably those that have violated the floor of the anterior fossa, air can be driven into the cranium and, in the event of a flap-valve mechanism, cause a tension pneumocephalus. This latter event can only happen when coughing occurs after the endotracheal tube has been removed.

There is a paucity of systematically obtained clinical data to give a perspective to the actual magnitude of the risks associated with emergences that are not considered smooth. Two retrospective studies have revealed that increased postoperative arterial blood pressure was associated with intracerebral bleeding after craniotomy.[170,171] However, whether hypertension occurring at emergence causes postoperative intracerebral bleeding is not clear. Also, the relationship between hypertensive transients at emergence and edema formation is unconfirmed. In anesthetized animals, sudden and very substantial increases in arterial pressure can result in a breach of the BBB with extravasation of tracers.[167] However, there are no data to confirm that the pressure transients associated with the typical coughing episode or common emergence are in fact associated with increased edema formation. Nonetheless, it seems reasonable to take measures, to the extent that these measures do not themselves add potential patient morbidity, to prevent these occurrences.

A common method for the management of systemic hypertension during the last stages of a craniotomy is the expectant and/or reactive administration of lidocaine and vasoactive agents, most commonly labetalol and esmolol.[172] Other drugs, including hydralazine, enalapril, diltiazem, nicardipine, and clevidipine have been used to good effect. Administration of dexmedetomidine during the procedure or just prior to its conclusion also reduces the hypertensive response to emergence[173] and hypertension in the postanesthesia care unit.[174]

There are also many approaches to the prevention of coughing and straining. The authors encourage trainees to include in their anesthetic technique as much narcotic as is consistent with spontaneous ventilation at the conclusion of the procedure, as opioids are antitussive and depress airway reflexes. Patients may also emerge more rapidly and smoothly when the last inhaled anesthetic to be withdrawn is nitrous oxide. This can be supplemented, if necessary, with propofol by either bolus increments or infusion at rates in the range of 12.5 to 25 μg/kg/min.

An additional principle relevant to the emergence from neurosurgical procedures is that emergence should be timed to coincide not with the final suture but rather with the conclusion of the application of the head dressing. Many a good anesthetic for neurosurgery has been spoiled by severe coughing and straining that occurs in association with endotracheal tube motion during the application of the head dressing. Another nuance of our practice has been to withhold administration of neuromuscular antagonists as long as possible in the later stages of the procedure. The administration of lidocaine is another apparently effective technique for reducing airway responsiveness and the likelihood of coughing/straining as the depth of anesthesia is reduced in anticipation of emergence. We commonly administer 1.5 mg/kg of intravenous lidocaine just before the head movement associated with applying the dressing.

Because of the premium placed on minimizing coughing and straining and hypertension, there may be a temptation to extubate from the trachea before complete recovery of consciousness. This may be acceptable in some circumstances. However, it should be undertaken with caution when the circumstances of the surgical procedure make it possible that neurologic events have occurred that will delay recovery of consciousness, or when there may be cranial nerve dysfunction. In these circumstances, it would, in general, be best to wait until the likelihood of the patient's recovery of consciousness is confirmed or until patient cooperation and airway reflexes are likely to have recovered.

BOX 57.8 **Specific Procedures**

- Supratentorial tumors
- Aneurysms and arteriovenous malformations
- Traumatic brain injury
- Posterior fossa procedures
- Transsphenoidal surgery
- Awake craniotomy/seizure surgery
- Stereotactic procedures
- Neuroendoscopic procedures
- Neuroradiologic procedures
- Cerebrospinal fluid shunting procedures
- Pediatric neurosurgery
- Spinal surgery

Specific Procedures

Many of the considerations relevant to individual neurosurgical procedures are generic ones that have already been presented in the preceding section on Recurrent Issues in Neuroanesthesia. The descriptions that follow will highlight only procedure-specific issues (Box 57.8).

SUPRATENTORIAL TUMORS

Craniotomies for excision or biopsy, or both, of supratentorial tumors are among the most common neurosurgical procedures. Gliomas and meningiomas are among the most frequent tumors. The relevant preoperative considerations include the patient's ICP status, and the location and size of the tumor. Location and size of the tumor give the anesthesiologist an indication of the surgical position, the potential for blood loss, and will sometimes reveal a risk of air embolism. VAE is infrequent for the majority of supratentorial tumors. However, lesions (usually convexity meningiomas) that encroach upon the sagittal sinus may convey a substantial risk of VAE. Full VAE precautions, including a right atrial catheter, are usually reserved for only the supratentorial tumors that lie near the posterior half of the superior sagittal sinus.

Excision of craniopharyngiomas and pituitary tumors with suprasellar extension may entail dissection in and around the hypothalamus (see Fig. 57.18). Irritation of the hypothalamus can elicit sympathetic responses including hypertension. Damage to the hypothalamus can result in a spectrum of physiologic disturbances, notably water balance. Diabetes insipidus is the most likely, although the cerebral salt-wasting syndrome can infrequently occur. The various disturbances of water balance typically have a delayed onset, beginning 12 to 48 hours postoperatively, rather than in the operating room. Postoperative temperature homeostasis may also be disturbed.

Patients who undergo a craniotomy involving a subfrontal approach sometimes manifest a disturbance of consciousness in the immediate postoperative period. Retraction and irritation of the inferior surfaces of the frontal lobes can result in a patient who exhibits either delayed emergence or some degree of disinhibition, or both. The phenomenon is more likely to be evident when there has been bilateral frontal lobe retraction. The anesthetic implication is that the clinician should be more inclined to confirm return of consciousness before extubating the patient rather than to extubate expectantly. A further implication taken by these authors (though not confirmed by any systematic study) is that a less liberal use of intravenous anesthetic drugs (e.g., fentanyl, propofol infusion) may be appropriate when there is to be bilateral subfrontal retraction. This is based on the rationale that low residual concentrations of these anesthetics that are compatible with reasonable recovery of consciousness in most patients may be less well tolerated in this population. Subfrontal approaches are most commonly used in patients with olfactory groove meningiomas and patients with suprasellar tumors including craniopharyngiomas and pituitary tumors with suprasellar extension.

Preoperative Preparation

Patients with a significant tumor-related mass effect, especially if there is tumor-related edema, should receive preoperative steroids. A 48-hour course is ideal (see the previous discussion of steroids), although 24 hours is sufficient for a clinical effect to be evident. Dexamethasone is the most commonly used agent. A regimen such as 10 mg intravenously or orally followed by 10 mg every 6 hours is typical. Because of the concern about producing CO_2 retention in patients whose intracranial compliance is already abnormal, sedative premedication outside of the operating room is usually avoided.

Monitoring

Institutional practices vary; however, we almost invariably place arterial catheters for craniotomies under general anesthesia (GA). Preinduction placement may be appropriate in patients with severe mass effect and little residual compensatory latitude. At a minimum, we achieve intra-arterial monitoring before pin placement. It is the period of induction and pinning during which hypertension, with its attendant risks in a patient with impaired compliance and autoregulation, is most likely to occur. Arterial lines also facilitate careful management of blood pressure during emergence. Procedures with a substantial blood loss potential (e.g., tumors encroaching on the sagittal sinus, large vascular tumors) may also justify central venous catheters when peripheral venous access is limited. If not already present for other indications, ICP monitoring is rarely warranted for induction, given our understanding of the potential impact of anesthetics and associated procedures. Once the cranium is open, observation of conditions in the surgical field provides equivalent information.

Management of Anesthesia

The principles governing the choice of anesthetic drugs are presented in the previous section, Control of Intracranial Pressure and Brain Relaxation.

ANEURYSMS AND ARTERIOVENOUS MALFORMATIONS

Contemporary management and current recommendations regarding ruptured intracranial aneurysms call for intervention as early as feasible to reduce the rate of rebleeding.[175] That intervention may entail either operative clipping or an endovascular approach.[175] The latter is discussed in the subsequent section Neurointerventional Procedures.

Early intervention was originally undertaken only in patients in the better neurologic grades—that is, grades I-III and perhaps IV of the World Federation of Neurosurgeons classification (Table 57.2) or grades I-III of the Hunt-Hess classification (Table 57.3)—but is now recommended for the majority of patients.[175] If early intervention is not feasible and a surgical approach is intended, surgery may be delayed for 10 to 14 days to be safely beyond the period of maximal vasospasm risk (i.e., days 4-10 post-SAH).

The rationale for early intervention is several-fold. The sooner the aneurysm is clipped or obliterated, the less the likelihood of rebleeding (and rebleeding is the principal cause of death for patients hospitalized after SAH [176]). Second, the management of the ischemia caused by vasospasm involves fluid resuscitation and induced hypertension. Early occlusion of the aneurysm eliminates the risk of rebleeding associated with this therapy. Prior surgical practices

TABLE 57.2 World Federation of Neurosurgeons Subarachnoid Hemorrhage Scale

WFNS Grade	GCS Score	Motor Deficit
I	15	Absent
II	14-13	Absent
III	14-13	Present
IV	12-7	Present or absent
V	6-3	Present or absent

GCS, Glasgow Coma Scale; *WFNS*, World Federation of Neurosurgeons.

TABLE 57.3 Hunt-Hess Classification of Neurologic Status After Subarachnoid Hemorrhage

Category	Criteria*
Grade I	Asymptomatic, or minimal headache and slight nuchal rigidity
Grade II	Moderate to severe headache, nuchal rigidity, no deficit other than cranial nerve palsy
Grade III	Drowsiness, confusion, or mild focal deficit
Grade IV	Stupor, moderate to severe hemiparesis, possibly early decerebrate rigidity and vegetative disturbances
Grade V	Deep coma, decerebrate rigidity, moribund appearance

*Serious systemic disease, such as hypertension, diabetes, severe arteriosclerosis, chronic pulmonary disease, and severe vasospasm seen on arteriography, results in placement of the patient in the next less favorable category.

entailed maintaining the patient on bed rest until approximately day 14, when the period of spasm risk had passed. Early aneurysm clipping reduces the period of hospitalization and reduces the incidence of the medical complications (i.e., deep vein thrombosis, atelectasis, pneumonia) associated with a lengthy period of enforced bed rest.

Early intervention makes the surgeon's task more difficult. The brain in the early post-SAH period is likely to be more edematous than after a 2-week delay. Furthermore, some degree of hydrocephalus is very common after blood contaminates the subarachnoid space. In fact, about 9% to 19% of aneurysmal SAH victims eventually require permanent CSF diversion.[175,177-180] Early intervention may also enhance the risk of intraoperative aneurysmal rupture because of the lesser period of time for a clot to organize over the site of the initial bleed. All this places a substantial premium on techniques designed to reduce the volume of the intracranial contents (see Control of Intracranial Pressure and Brain Relaxation earlier in this chapter) to facilitate exposure and minimize retraction pressures.

Preoperative Evaluation

Many patients scheduled for intracranial aneurysm clipping will come directly from the ICU, and elements of their critical care management may influence their immediate preoperative status.

Intravenous Fluid Management. Some patients develop the syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) after SAH and are appropriately managed with fluid restriction. However, hyponatremia after SAH is more likely to be the result of the cerebral salt-wasting syndrome that probably occurs as a result of the release of a natriuretic peptide by the brain.[181,182] Cerebral salt-wasting syndrome is characterized by the triad of hyponatremia, volume contraction, and high urine sodium concentrations (>50 mmol/L), and its occurrence is correlated with the occurrence of symptomatic vasospasm.[183] The distinction between cerebral salt-wasting syndrome and SIADH is important. SIADH, which is characterized by normovolemia or mild hypervolemia, is treated by volume restriction. Cerebral salt-wasting syndrome is associated with a contracted intravascular volume. Fluid restriction and further volume contraction may be especially deleterious in the post-SAH patient and should be avoided.[184-186] Although the clinical distinction between these two causes of hyponatremia (SIADH and cerebral salt-wasting syndrome) may be difficult, management of both is relatively simple: administration of isotonic and/or hypertonic fluids using intravascular normovolemia and normonatremia as the end point.

Vasospasm. The anesthesiologist should determine whether vasospasm has occurred and what, if any, therapies for it have been undertaken. Vasospasm is thought to be caused by the breakdown products of the hemoglobin that have accumulated around the vessels of the circle of Willis after SAH. A specific mechanism/mediator has not been identified. Calcium channels are thought to be involved, and there is also suspicion that the nitric oxide and endothelin systems may be contributory.[186,187]

When there is a clinical suspicion of vasospasm (typically because of a change in sensorium or new neurologic deficit), surgery is usually deferred and TCD, angiography, or other imaging is performed. Symptomatic vasospasm has historically been treated with "Triple H" therapy (hypervolemia, hypertension, and hemodilution). Current management has shifted toward fluid resuscitation to euvolemia (rather than hypervolemia),[175,188] hypertension, and sometimes balloon angioplasty or intraarterial vasodilators.[189]

For patients proceeding to surgery, hypotension should be avoided[175] and CPP should usually be maintained intraoperatively at values near the waking normal range. The association of hypotension with poor outcome,[190] and the potential for hypotension to cause or aggravate cerebral ischemia in patients with some degree of vasospasm, is well recognized.[191-193] This concern should extend even to patients classified as World Federation of Neurosurgeons grade I who may have regions of cerebral ischemia[30] that are subclinical when the patient is normotensive.

In the ICU, the regimens used to treat vasospasm usually involve some combination of fluid resuscitation and blood pressure augmentation. The science behind hypervolemic-hypertensive therapy is soft and the efficacy of neither Triple H therapy nor volume expansion in isolation has been proved by prospective study.[188,194-196] The relative importance of the rheologic and blood pressure effects is undefined, although there is evidence for the relevance of blood pressure elevation in isolation.[187,196-199] Phenylephrine and dopamine are the most commonly used pressors; exact pressor choice should be primarily governed by systemic cardiovascular considerations. The end point for pressor administration varies. Most commonly, the objective is an increase in MAP of approximately 20 to 30 mm Hg above baseline systolic pressure. However, it has been reported that augmentation of cardiac output with dobutamine, without simultaneous MAP increase, augments CBF in ischemic territories.[196] It is also believed that a hematocrit in the low 30s is optimal for cerebral perfusion, but this is not a therapeutic target that is directly manipulated.

Calcium-Channel Blockers. Calcium-channel blockers are an established part of the management of SAH. Administration of nimodipine decreases the incidence of morbidity caused by cerebral ischemia after SAH,[200] although it was not associated with any reduction in the incidence of vasospasm as detected by angiography.[201] Patients presenting to the operating room after SAH should already be receiving nimodipine. Because nimodipine must be administered orally in North America, nicardipine has been evaluated as an intravenous alternative. The multicenter nicardipine trial[202,203] revealed a reduced incidence of symptomatic vasospasm but no improvement in outcome. As a consequence, nimodipine remains the standard. Calcium-channel blockers (i.e., verapamil, nicardipine, nimodipine[204-207]) are also used intraarterially as a primary treatment for medically-refractory vasospasm. Milrinone and papaverine are similarly administered.[206,208]

Other Pharmacologic Therapies. Several other agents/drug classes have been considered for the prevention of vasospasm and delayed ischemic deficits. None of them is approaching the status of standard therapy. A study of the endothelin antagonist clazosentan revealed improved mortality without improvement in the outcome of survivors. After several small trials suggested a beneficial effect of magnesium, a larger randomized, placebo-controlled trial reported no improvement in outcome among patients in whom magnesium was initiated within 4 days of SAH.[209] Several small trials have examined the post-SAH administration of statins. Meta-analysis revealed only nonsignificant trends toward reduced incidence of delayed cerebral ischemia and death.[210] A subsequent large RCT (STASH) failed to demonstrate either short-term or long-term outcome benefits related to statin administration.[211] The phosphodiesterase inhibitor cilostazol (a platelet inhibitor as well as vasodilator) was reported to reduce symptomatic vasospasm,[212,213] new cerebral infarctions,[213] and improve outcome[212] following SAH. Although promising, a larger study to confirm the safety and efficacy of cilostazol is anticipated.

Antifibrinolytics. Antifibrinolytics have been administered in an attempt to reduce the incidence of rebleeding. Although they accomplish this end, long courses do so at the cost of an increased incidence of ischemic symptoms and hydrocephalus, with an overall adverse effect on outcome. However, early, brief courses of antifibrinolytics that are continued until the aneurysm is secured may have a net favorable effect on outcome.[175]

Subarachnoid Hemorrhage-Associated Myocardial Dysfunction. SAH can result in a largely reversible myocardial "stunning" injury. The severity of the dysfunction correlates best with the severity of the neurologic injury [214] and is sometimes sufficient to require pressor support.[215] The mechanism is uncertain but is thought to be catecholamine mediated.[216] Troponin elevation occurs commonly, though typically reaching levels less than the diagnostic threshold for myocardial infarction.[217] Peak troponin levels correlate with the severity of both neurologic injury and echocardiographic myocardial dysfunction.[215,218]

ECG abnormalities are common after SAH. In addition to the classic canyon T waves (Fig. 57.14), nonspecific T-wave changes, Q-T prolongation, ST-segment depression, and U waves have been described. There is typically no relationship between the ECG changes and echocardiographic myocardial dysfunction.[217] ECG abnormalities do not herald evolving or impending cardiac disease.[219] Accordingly, when ventricular function is adequate and ECG patterns other than those that are typical of myocardial ischemia are observed, no specific interventions or modifications of patient management are warranted, other than attention to the possibility of dysrhythmias. In particular, an increased Q-T interval (>550 ms) occurs frequently after SAH, especially in patients with more severe SAH,[218] and has been associated with an increased incidence of malignant ventricular rhythms including torsades de pointes.[220]

Anesthetic Technique

Important considerations include the following:

1. Absolute avoidance of acute hypertension with its attendant risk of rerupture.
2. Achievement of intraoperative brain relaxation to facilitate surgical access to the aneurysm.
3. Maintenance of a high-normal MAP to prevent critical reduction of CBF in recently insulted and now marginally perfused areas of brain, or in regions critically dependent on collateral pathways.
4. Preparedness to perform precise manipulations of MAP as the surgeon attempts to clip the aneurysm or to control bleeding from a ruptured aneurysm or during periods of temporary vascular occlusion.

Monitoring

An arterial line is invariably appropriate. A central venous catheter may be appropriate if peripheral access is inadequate.

Anesthetic Selection. Any technique that permits proper control of MAP is acceptable. However, in the face of increased ICP or a tight surgical field, an inhaled anesthetic technique may be less suitable. The prevention of paroxysmal hypertension is the only absolute requirement in patients undergoing aneurysm clipping. The poorly organized clot over the aneurysms of patients undergoing early post-SAH clipping makes them particularly prone to rebleeding. A rebleed at induction is frequently fatal.[176] The escaping arterial blood is more likely to penetrate brain substance because it cannot dissect through the CSF space (filled with clot), and the ICP increase is extreme because of the poor compliance of the intracranial space (swollen brain, hydrocephalus).

Induced Hypotension. The routine use of induced hypotension has essentially vanished (see previous section Management of Arterial Blood Pressure). Nonetheless, the anesthesiologist should be prepared to reduce blood pressure immediately and precisely if called upon to do so. Preparation of an appropriate hypotensive agent must occur before the episode of bleeding. There are theoretical pros and cons for various hypotensive agents. However, the choice should ultimately be made based on which regimen, in the hands of the individual practitioner, results in the most precise control of MAP. There are rare occasions when the anesthesiologist is asked to control MAP in the range of 40 to 50 mm Hg in the face of active arterial bleeding. This can be extremely difficult in a patient who is hypovolemic at the beginning of the bleeding episode. It is our practice to maintain normovolemia.

Induced Hypertension. Relative hypertension may be requested during periods of temporary arterial occlusion (see the later section Temporary Clipping) to augment collateral CBF. In addition, after clipping of the aneurysm, some surgeons will puncture the dome of the aneurysm to confirm adequate clip placement and may request transient elevation of the systolic pressure to 150 mm Hg. Phenylephrine is suitable in either instance.

Hypocapnia. Hypocapnia has traditionally been used as an adjunct to brain relaxation. However, the practice has been questioned on the basis of the concern that it will aggravate ischemia (see the earlier section Management of $PaCO_2$). It is now generally avoided unless ICP/brain relaxation circumstances demand it.

Lumbar Cerebrospinal Fluid Drainage. CSF drainage has been used to facilitate exposure. However, its use

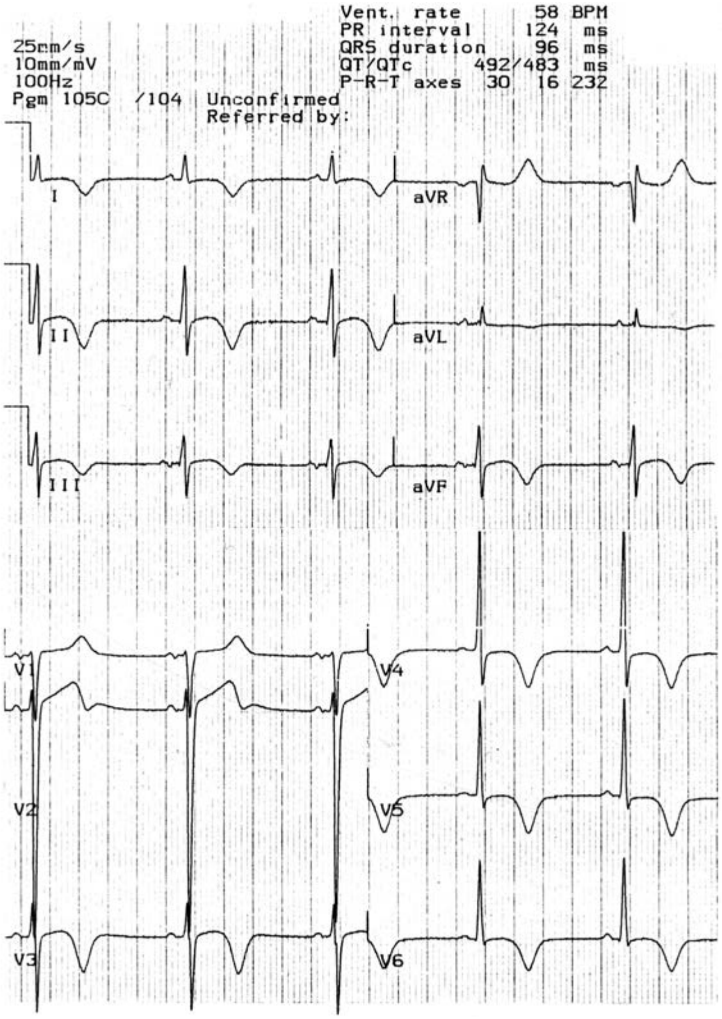


Fig. 57.14 Electrocardiogram abnormalities associated with subarachnoid hemorrhage. The canyon T waves that may be seen after subarachnoid hemorrhage are evident.

appears to be diminishing because surgeons have appreciated that the same brain-relaxing effect can be achieved by release of CSF from the basal cisterns. If a lumbar CSF drain is placed, it is appropriate to avoid excessive loss of CSF. A sudden reduction in the transmural pressure gradient across the dome of the aneurysm (by sudden reduction of ICP consequent upon substantial CSF drainage) should be avoided because of the theoretical concern that this decompression might encourage rebleeding. Having verified the patency of the drainage system, it is usual to leave it closed until the surgeon is opening the dura. The drain is then opened and allowed to drain freely to floor level. Drainage should be discontinued promptly after final withdrawal of the retractors to allow CSF to reaccumulate and to thereby reduce the size of the potential pneumocephalus.

Some surgeons use mannitol relatively aggressively (e.g., 2 g/kg). In part, it is used to facilitate exposure and reduce retractor pressures, but there is evidence that it may have additional benefits. Specifically, there are data derived in both animals and man indicating that mannitol may have a CBF-enhancing effect in regions of moderate CBF reduction.[221-224] The mechanism is not defined. Reduction of interstitial tissue pressure around capillaries and/or an alteration of blood rheology have been proposed as contributors. Typically, mannitol administered in a dose of 1 g/kg just before dural opening provides satisfactory brain relaxation.[45] Surgeons who believe in its CBF-enhancing effect may request a second 1 g/kg approximately 15 minutes before an anticipated temporary occlusion.

Temporary Clipping. Many surgeons limit inflow to an aneurysm during application of the permanent clip by placing a temporary clip proximally on the feeding vessel. It is occasionally necessary to trap the aneurysm (i.e., to temporarily occlude the vessel on both sides of the aneurysm) to complete the dissection of the neck and apply the clip. This is more common with larger aneurysms. With giant aneurysms in the vicinity of the carotid siphon, the inferior occlusion may be performed at the level of the internal carotid artery via a separate incision in the neck. A clinical survey of the neurologic outcome after temporary occlusion in normothermic, normotensive adults revealed that occlusions of fewer than 14 minutes were invariably tolerated. The likelihood of an ischemic injury increased with longer occlusions and reached 100% with occlusions in excess of 31 minutes.[225] In another institution, the threshold for ischemic injury was 20 minutes of occlusion.[226] An informal 7-minute rule is sometimes applied to individual periods of temporary occlusion. Typically, MAP should be sustained at high-normal levels during periods of occlusion to facilitate collateral CBF.

Brain Protection. Maintenance of MAP to ensure collateral flow and perfusion under retractors, efficient brain relaxation to facilitate surgical access and reduce retractor pressures, limitation of the duration of episodes of temporary occlusion, and perhaps mild hypothermia are the important brain protection techniques. Specific anesthetic drugs have been promoted as brain protectants, but evidence is limited (see the discussion in Chapter 11). There have been no convincing laboratory demonstrations that propofol provides any greater tolerance to a standardized ischemic insult than does anesthesia with a volatile anesthetic. Attempts to demonstrate protection by etomidate in an animal model of focal ischemia actually demonstrated an adverse effect of etomidate.[227] Furthermore, a clinical investigation during aneurysm clipping revealed decreases in brain tissue PO_2 in association with administration of etomidate, which contrasted with the brain PO_2 increases that occurred with the introduction of desflurane. During subsequent temporary vessel occlusion, tissue pH decreased alarmingly in patients receiving etomidate and was unchanged with desflurane.[228] Etomidate probably should not be used because of a lack of sufficient data regarding its efficacy. With respect to the volatile anesthetics, attempts in the laboratory to confirm the once proclaimed protective efficacy of isoflurane have demonstrated that there are no differences among the various volatile anesthetics in terms of their influence on outcome after focal or global ischemia in the laboratory.[227,229-231] Nor has there been any demonstration of greater protective efficacy with concentrations of volatile anesthetics sufficient to cause EEG suppression as opposed to more modest (e.g., 1.0 MAC) levels.[231,232] Nonetheless, these animal investigations suggest that a standardized experimental ischemic insult is better tolerated, relative to the awake state, by animals receiving a volatile anesthetic.[230,231,233] In addition, data derived in animals also suggest that there may also be a relative protective advantage to an anesthetic that includes a volatile anesthetic compared with a strict N_2O-narcotic technique. The magnitude of the differences among anesthetics and the absence of proof of relevance in patients precludes advocacy of a particular anesthetic regimen in a standard text. The important anesthetic objectives are precise hemodynamic control and timely wake-up, and those two constraints should dictate the choice of the anesthetic regimen for most aneurysm procedures. Among anesthetics, it is only the barbiturates for which additional protective efficacy has been demonstrated convincingly. Because of their potentially adverse effects on hemodynamics and wake-up, they are not ideal for routine use. They should probably be reserved for situations in which a prolonged vessel occlusion is unavoidable, and in that circumstance, it would be ideal that the ischemic hazard be first confirmed by observation of the EEG response to a temporary occlusion.[234]

The patient with, or at substantial risk for, vasospasm probably benefits from a minimum hemoglobin greater than that which is commonly accepted in stable ICU patients (i.e., >7 g/dL). The best available information suggests a minimal hemoglobin value of 9 g/dL.[199,235]

Hypothermia. As noted in the previous section Hypothermia, a prospective trial of mild hypothermia in patients undergoing aneurysm surgery revealed no improvement in neurologic outcome.[154] Nonetheless, some neurosurgical teams that were already using mild hypothermia (32°C-34°C) are continuing its use for procedures in which temporary vessel occlusion may occur. The institutions that use the lower temperatures are those in which the team is willing to accept a delay in emergence from anesthesia to achieve sufficient rewarming to avoid the extreme hypertension that can occur when a patient is awakened at low body temperatures.

Neurophysiologic Monitoring. Evoked responses and EEG have been used for monitoring.[234,236] EEG monitoring can be used as a guide to management during the period of flow interruption or to guide the administration of CMR-reducing anesthetic agents given before occlusion. At some institutions, the surgeon places an electrode strip over the region of cortex at risk during the intended occlusion. However, the more commonly used skin surface frontal-mastoid derivation is probably sufficient to reveal a major ischemic event. In most circumstances, if occlusion is deemed necessary, a temporary occlusion is performed, and the EEG is observed. If the EEG shows significant slowing, the common practice is to raise the MAP and proceed with as brief as possible a period of occlusion or intermittent episodes of temporary occlusion. If the necessity for a sustained period of occlusion seems likely, it may be appropriate to administer barbiturates (discussed earlier) to produce burst suppression. These events are very infrequent (see also Chapter 39).

Intraoperative Angiography. Intraoperative angiography is an increasingly common component of the management of intracranial aneurysm surgery. It does not have substantial implications for the anesthesiologist except with respect to placement of the radiographic equipment.

Special Considerations for Specific Aneurysms

The most common procedures are performed for aneurysms arising in or close to the circle of Willis. The vessels of origin may be the anterior communicating artery; the middle cerebral artery; the anterior cerebral artery; the ophthalmic artery; the tip of the basilar artery; the posterior communicating artery; and, less frequently, the posterior cerebral artery. These procedures are relatively similar for the anesthesiologist and typically require a supine position with the head turned slightly away from the operative side.

Ophthalmic Artery Aneurysms. Access to the origin of the ophthalmic artery, which is the first intradural branch of the carotid artery, is made difficult by the anterior clinoid process and the optic nerve. As a result, these aneurysms frequently require temporary vascular occlusion. The surgeon commonly first exposes the carotid artery in the neck. When the surgeon reaches the stage of seeking definitive access to the neck of the aneurysm, he or she will occlude first the carotid artery in the neck and then the intracranial portion of the carotid artery immediately proximal to the origin of the posterior communicating artery. A catheter is placed in the excluded segment and put to suction. Blood loss, which is usually minimal, should be monitored.

Vertebrobasilar Aneurysms. These procedures are typically performed in the lateral position. The exposure may involve a combined middle and posterior fossa approach, with some attendant, although minor, risk of VAE. Cortical or skin surface EEG monitoring is of less relevance with vertebrobasilar aneurysms. Auditory, somatosensory, and motor-evoked responses have been used to monitor for vascular compromise.[237-239] As with any other procedure involving the potential for mechanical or vascular injury to the brainstem, cardiovascular responses should be monitored and sudden changes in response to surgical manipulation should prompt immediate notification to the surgeon.[240,241]

Vein of Galen Aneurysms. Vein of Galen aneurysms are congenital dural arteriovenous fistulas, usually treated in the neonate using endovascular methods, and share considerations relevant to AVMs. These include anticipation of the possibility of the cerebral dysautoregulation phenomenon and are considered subsequently.

Arteriovenous Malformations

For the majority of intracranial AVMs, the general considerations are similar to those appropriate to aneurysm surgery: avoidance of acute hypertension and the capability to accurately manipulate arterial blood pressure in the event of bleeding. A problem specific to AVMs is the phenomenon of perfusion pressure breakthrough, or cerebral dysautoregulation.[242,243] It is characterized by an often sudden engorgement and swelling of the brain, sometimes with a relentless cauliflower-like protrusion from the cranium. It tends to occur in the advanced stages of lengthy procedures on large AVMs, or it may be the cause of otherwise unexplained postoperative swelling and hemorrhage. The phenomenon is not entirely understood. An AVM provides a high-volume, low-resistance pathway that chronically diverts blood from adjacent and therefore marginally perfused vascular territories. Perhaps these tissues have long been maximally vasodilated and are incapable of vasoconstricting when exposed to a higher-pressure head after acute obliteration of the AVM. Although this explanation superficially fits the clinical occurrence, experimental data are not entirely consistent with this mechanism.[242-245] At least some component of the hyperemia is not passive, and neurogenic or paracrine mechanisms may be involved.

Anesthetic Technique. The management constraints are essentially the same as those relevant to aneurysm surgery, although the risk of intraoperative rupture is much less. Institutional practices will vary. We do not use induced hypotension unless it is necessitated by bleeding. We reason that the effects on the surrounding brain of devascularizing the AVM would be best appreciated if the devascularization occurs at normal pressures. If refractory brain swelling occurs, tight blood pressure control is essential, and reducing MAP may be of use to control swelling. The latter is based on the notion that CBF through the involved area is pressure-passive and will decrease as MAP is reduced. With severe episodes of swelling, we have used (in addition to hypotension, which we use cautiously because of the associated ischemia risk) hypocapnia, hypothermia, and barbiturates. The latter three techniques probably serve to reduce the bulk of only normal brain tissue, hypocapnia via a direct effect on CBF and barbiturates and hypothermia via the coupled effects of reduction of CMR on CBF. Induced hypothermia is also an adjunct to minimizing the barbiturate doses. In all of neurosurgery, we seek to prevent postoperative hypertension; however, in AVM surgery this should be accomplished with the greatest care because of the concern that the dysautoregulating brain adjacent to the resected AVM will develop edema or hemorrhage if hypertension occurs.

HEAD INJURY

Intubating the Trachea of a Head-Injured Patient

Patients with GCS scores of 7 to 8 (Table 57.4) or less require tracheal intubation and controlled ventilation for ICP or airway control, or both. Patients with less severe TBI may also require intubation because of trauma-related cardiopulmonary dysfunction or, when uncooperative, to facilitate diagnostic procedures. The anesthesiologist, in choosing the intubation technique, may encounter a number of conflicting constraints (Box 57.9). These include: (1) elevated ICP; (2) a full stomach; (3) uncertain cervical spine status; (4) uncertain airway status (e.g., presence of blood, possible laryngotracheal injury, possible skull base fracture); (5) an uncertain volume status; (6) an uncooperative or combative patient; and (7) hypoxemia. The best

TABLE 57.4 The Glasgow Coma Scale

Eyes opening	
Never	1
To speech	2
To pain	3
Spontaneously	4
Best verbal responses	
None	1
Garbled or incomprehensible sounds	2
Inappropriate words	3
Confused but conversant	4
Oriented	5
Best motor responses	
None	1
Extension (decerebrate rigidity)	2
Abnormal flexion (decorticate rigidity)	3
Withdrawal	4
Localizes pain	5
Obeys commands	6
Score	3-15

BOX 57.9 Factors That May Be Relevant During Intubation of the Head-Injured Patient

- Full stomach
- Uncertain cervical spine stability
- Uncertain airway
  - Blood
  - Airway injury (larynx, cricoarytenoid cartilage)
  - Skull-base fracture
- Uncertain volume status
- Uncooperative/combative
- Hypoxemia
- Increased intracranial pressure

approach is determined by the relative weight of these various factors along with the degree of urgency. The anesthesiologist must not be distracted by placing an excessive initial emphasis on ICP. The anesthesiologist needs to keep sight of the ABCs of resuscitation: securing the airway, guaranteeing gas exchange, and stabilizing the circulation are higher initial priorities than ICP. Do not risk losing the airway or causing severe hypotension for the sake of preventing coughing on the tube or brief hypertension with intubation.

The Cervical Spine

The possibility of causing or aggravating an injury to the cervical spine is a relevant concern. Approximately 2% of blunt trauma victims who reach a hospital, and 8% to 10% of TBI victims with GCS scores less than 8, have a fracture of the cervical spine.[246,247] Those incidences suggest that a hypnotic-relaxant-direct laryngoscopy approach for all patients with a closed head injury might convey a measurable risk of injuring the cervical cord. Nonetheless, although the literature contains contradictions, several published series have concluded that rapid-sequence induction does not convey significant risk of neurologic injury.[248-251] However, it is possible that the incidence of intubation-related neurologic injury is underreported. An informal survey[252] indicated that there have been more such events than one can infer from the published literature.[253,254] Nonetheless, the majority of patients with TBI requiring airway control are intubated using a hypnotic-relaxant-laryngoscopy sequence. In our opinion, the possibility of devastating spinal cord injury may be higher with injuries in the atlanto-occipital region, which are also difficult to identify radiologically, and that the anesthesiologist should identify circumstances in which time latitudes allow more detailed examination or radiologic evaluation. When there is any uncertainty regarding the airway or the cervical spine, direct laryngoscopy (with vigorous atlanto-occipital extension) should probably be avoided when the exigencies of the situation do not require an immediate rapid-sequence induction. The nasal route can be considered if the clinical context warrants it, bearing in mind that risk of infection may be increased with skull base fracture and CSF leak. The anesthesiologist should use discretion (e.g., in the presence of an obvious facial injury, the nasal route should be avoided) and be sensitive to unusual resistance in passing the endotracheal tube.

When a hypnotic-relaxant sequence is used (and the exigencies of airway control will frequently demand it), the standard approach includes the use of cricoid pressure and in-line axial stabilization. In-line traction was once favored but has been supplanted by stabilization because of the perceived risk of overdistraction and cord injury in the event of gross instability. The largest of the clinical series that concluded that oral intubation with anesthesia and relaxation is reasonable[248] used in-line stabilization with the patient's occiput held firmly on the backboard, limiting the amount of "sniff" that was feasible (Fig. 57.15). There is no question that in-line stabilization, properly performed, makes laryngoscopy somewhat more difficult; however, it serves to decrease the amount of atlanto-occipital extension necessary to achieve visualization of the glottis.[255] This is probably because performing the laryngoscopy against the assistant's counterpressure results in greater compression of the soft tissue structures of the tongue and floor of the mouth. Some recommend leaving the back half of the cervical collar in place during laryngoscopy (see Fig. 57.15) because it functions as a strut between the shoulder and the occiput and serves to further limit atlanto-occipital extension.

In a resuscitation situation, before initiating a hypnotic-relaxant sequence, the anesthesiologist should confirm the availability of cricothyrotomy equipment and of someone to make immediate, skilled use of it if necessary. The recently injured brain is very intolerant of hypoxia and hypotension.[256] It is inevitable that there is sometimes failed tracheal intubation. In the extensive experience of the Cowley Shock-Trauma Center in Baltimore, the cricothyrotomy/tracheostomy rate is 0.3%.[257] As is the case in many other situations, the laryngeal mask may be a very useful device for temporizing in the face of a failed intubation and may also provide access for intubation as an alternative to cricothyrotomy.

As noted in Chapter 11, although succinylcholine can cause ICP increases, these increments are small and probably do not occur in patients with serious cerebral injuries.[8]

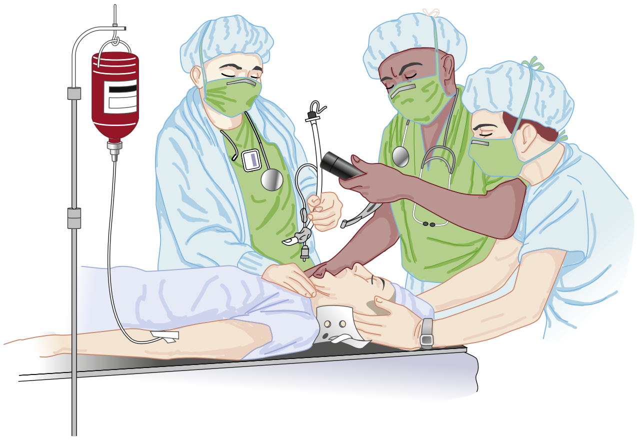


Fig. 57.15 Intubating the acute trauma patient with an uncertain cervical spine. A hypnotic and a relaxant have been administered. One assistant maintains in-line axial stabilization with the occiput held firmly to the backboard; a second applies cricoid pressure. The posterior portion of the cervical collar remains in place to limit atlanto-axial extension. (Reproduced with permission from Stene JD. Anesthesia for the critically ill trauma patient. In: Siegel JH, ed. *Trauma: Emergency Surgery and Critical Care*, Melbourne: Churchill Livingstone; 1987:843–862.)

Accordingly, succinylcholine should not be viewed as contraindicated in the TBI victim. If there is an urgent need to secure the airway (to guarantee oxygenation and control CO_2 tension), and if succinylcholine is in other respects the appropriate drug to achieve that end, it should be used. The necessity to use succinylcholine in these circumstances, however, has diminished with the availability of both rocuronium and the reversal agent sugammadex.

What should the anesthesiologist do with the patient whose cervical spine has not been cleared? That situation should arise with decreasing frequency. The once standard plain radiographs (with their inherent difficulties and substantial false-negative rates) have been supplanted by CT scanners that allow rapid, thin-slice evaluation, with sagittal reconstruction. A large meta-analysis concluded that "modern multislice helical CT alone is sufficient to rule out traumatic, unstable cervical spine injuries."[258] However, some remain concerned that CT may fail to identify ligamentous injuries that would be evident on magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).[259] With respect to a conscious patient who has not yet undergone complete radiologic evaluation, several clinical surveys have confirmed that patients who are alert, not intoxicated, and free of significant distracting injuries invariably have pain, midline tenderness, limitation of voluntary movement, or neurologic signs[260-262] if they have a cervical spine fracture. Despite the frequency with which an anesthesiologist may encounter patients still wearing their cervical collars because their necks have not yet been cleared, no special precautions appear warranted in the asymptomatic, alert patient.

Anesthetic Technique

Choice of Anesthetic Drugs. Craniotomies are most commonly performed for the evacuation of subdural, epidural, or intracerebral hematomas. The anesthetic approach is similar for all three techniques. The guiding principles have been discussed in the section Control of Intracranial Pressure and Brain Relaxation. In general, anesthetics that are known to be cerebral vasoconstrictors are preferable to those that have the potential to dilate the cerebral circulation. All the intravenous anesthetics, except perhaps ketamine, cause some cerebral vasoconstriction and are reasonable choices, provided they are consistent with hemodynamic stability. All the inhaled anesthetics (N_2O and all the volatile anesthetics) have some cerebral vasodilatory effect. Although their administration frequently is consistent with acceptable ICP levels and appropriate conditions in the surgical field, when the ICP is out of control (or unknown), or the surgical field is tight, omitting the inhaled anesthetics in favor of intravenous agents is appropriate. For patients who are likely to remain intubated postoperatively, an anesthetic based primarily on a narcotic, such as fentanyl, and a muscle relaxant usually serves well. Any muscle relaxant is acceptable with the proviso that those that can release histamine (now rarely used) should be titrated in small increments. When immediate tracheal extubation is a possibility (e.g., the patient with an acute epidural hematoma who had a lucid interval before witnessed deterioration), the technique should be modified after the opening of the cranium. Introduction of inhaled anesthetics or the use of shorter-acting intravenous drugs can be undertaken as guided by observation of the surgical field. If N_2O is contemplated at any time, the anesthesiologist must remember the possibility, in the setting of missile injury or compound skull fracture, of intracranial air.

Monitoring. The anesthesiologist should appreciate that the priority is to open the cranium as rapidly as possible.[263] After achieving intravenous access, the risks and benefits of delaying craniotomy for line placement should be considered carefully. An arterial line, often placed after induction in urgent situations, is appropriate for essentially all acute trauma craniotomies. Peripheral venous access is sufficient in the majority of situations. Sudden hypotension after dural opening with high ICP can occur as brainstem compression is relieved.[264] Appropriate intravascular volume resuscitation should mitigate this occurrence. Infrequently, the management of a depressed skull fracture over the sagittal sinus justifies a precordial Doppler and, subject to the surgeon's assessment of VAE risk, a right heart catheter.

Arterial Blood Pressure Management. The concept that the injured brain is extremely vulnerable to what would otherwise be a minor insult (e.g., modest hypotension, moderate hypoxia) has been well confirmed in the laboratory.[265] Although clinically the cause-effect relationships are not absolutely confirmed, several surveys demonstrate the association of otherwise minor degrees of hypotension and hypoxia with poor outcome in both adult[256,266-271] and pediatric patients with TBI.[272] This vulnerability to hypotension probably arises because many patients have brain regions with precariously low CBF in the first 2 to 3 days after TBI[23,26,273-275] and autoregulation is frequently defective.[276-278] The characteristic behavior of CBF after TBI is an initially low CBF followed by a gradual increase over 48 to 72 hours to normal, or sometimes even slightly hyperemic, levels.[23,26,273,274,276,279,280] There is considerable evidence that low post-insult CBF values correlate with a poor eventual outcome,[26,270,275,281-283] and a large percentage of patients who die after TBI have pathologic changes consistent with ischemia.[155] These observations have resulted in a general emphasis among neurosurgeons, neurointensivists, and anesthesiologists on aggressive support of arterial blood pressure in the patient with TBI.

What constitutes an appropriate arterial blood pressure? Systematic studies have revealed that indices of the adequacy of cerebral perfusion derived from $SjvO_2$ and TCD data begin to deteriorate below a mean CPP of 70 mm Hg,[270,284,285] and many centers adopted 70 mm Hg as the CPP target. A clinical investigation comparing the ICU management of patients with TBI at CPPs of 70 and 50 mm Hg demonstrated that, although indices of cerebral well-being were improved by the former, there was no outcome advantage, apparently because of the cardiopulmonary morbidity associated with achieving a sustained CPP of 70 mm Hg.[286] As a result, many authorities have adopted 60 mm Hg as the minimal CPP management objective.[279,287-290] The Brain Trauma Foundation has most recently recommended a CPP target range of 60 to 70 mm Hg in adults.[62] Age-related CPP targets of 40 to 50 mm Hg have been recommended for children.[291]

Maintenance of CPP at 60 to 70 mm Hg in the first 2 to 3 days after TBI is probably reasonable. However, clinicians may encounter other views, including the argument that a one-size-fits-all approach inevitably denies the heterogeneity of pathophysiology among patients with TBI. It is certainly true that not all patients with TBI have low CBF and not all have absent autoregulation. Although an initially low postinjury CBF is probably the most common clinical occurrence, hyperemia does occur.[22,24,280,292,293] It tends to occur in patients with mass lesions rather than contusions, although even those patients have an immediate postinjury period of low CBF, with delayed hyperemia peaking at 24 hours or later.[22,280,282,293,294] Hyperemia may also be more common in children.[295] There is evidence that not all patients with TBI benefit from increases in CPP. Patients with TBI and impaired autoregulation, low baseline flows, increased ICP, and low initial GCS score are most likely to benefit.[296-299] Accordingly, targeted therapy has been advocated.[300-306] However, techniques to discriminate the various flow states (serial CBF measurement, TCD, $SjvO_2$) are not universally available. Some institutions, which have the necessary data analysis capacity, take another approach to targeted therapy. They identify a nominal optimal CPP by examining the changes in ICP that occur in response to variations in MAP. The range of MAPs in which the smallest ΔICP/ΔMAP occurs is taken to be the range within which autoregulation functions most efficiently and is the target range for that individual patient.[301,302] This approach is not feasible in most ICUs. As a result, and despite the theoretic attractiveness of targeted therapy, the CPP target of 60 to 70 mm Hg as an objective is more common.

There are at least two alternative approaches to blood pressure management in patients with TBI (Fig. 57.16). The Lund concept is based on the premises that arterial blood pressure causes hydrostatically driven edema accumulation, and that edema formation can be further aggravated by crystalloid administration and subnormal COP.[307-309] As originally described, the Lund approach in part entailed relative dehydration (furosemide, crystalloid restriction), albumin administration to maintain a normal COP, and the administration of metoprolol and clonidine to lower blood pressure to a CPP target of 50 to 55 mm Hg. At its inception, the approach was controversial because it ran counter to the perceptions of many clinicians of the importance of maintaining a CPP of 70 mm Hg and because of the later demonstration that a negative fluid balance in patients with TBI is deleterious.[271] Over time (and in parallel with a relaxation of the higher CPP targets by others),[279,287,288] the Lund proponents have modified their approach. Normovolemia is now the clinical objective, and CPP is 60 to 70 mm Hg in most patients. The latter has made the approach somewhat less controversial. However, CPP may be reduced to 50 to 60 mm Hg when ICP is not well controlled,[135] and that element remains controversial.[310] Although the proponents of the Lund approach assert improvements in outcome, those reports invariably entail either no control group or comparisons with nonconcurrent controls.[136,311-313] The approach has not been adopted in North America.

The second approach, promoted by neurosurgeons at the University of Alabama at Birmingham (sometimes called the "Rosner concept" after its chief proponent), is that induced hypertension can be used as an adjunct to ICP control.[26,314,315] The underlying concept is that autoregulation is at least partially preserved after TBI and that an increased MAP results in autoregulation-mediated vasoconstriction with a concomitant reduction in CBV and, therefore, ICP. These investigators reported a very satisfactory local experience,[315] but others have reported that induced hypertension was either ineffective or deleterious as a means of reducing increased ICP.[13,316] The Rosner approach now appears to have few advocates.

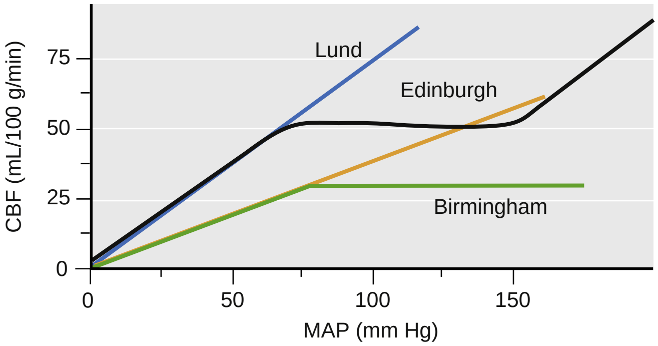


Fig. 57.16 The relationship of cerebral blood flow *(CBF)* to blood pressure after head injury. There are three cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP) management strategies (see text) driven by differing beliefs about common pathophysiologic derangements. The most commonly held strategy is Edinburgh (so named for the institution of the original proponents); it emphasizes low post-injury CBF, impaired autoregulation, and the necessity to support CPP (mean arterial pressure [*MAP*]—intracranial pressure [ICP]) to 60 to 70 mm Hg. The Lund concept emphasizes the contribution of hyperemia to the occurrence of elevated ICP. That approach uses antihypertensive agents to reduce blood pressure while maintaining CPP >50 mm Hg.[307] That CPP target has increased, in the most recent iteration, to 60 to 70 mm Hg, with allowance for occasional reduction to 50 mm Hg.[309] An approach emanating from the University of Alabama, identified as *Birmingham*, entails pharmacologically induced hypertension. That approach is based on the belief that autoregulation is largely intact and that hypertension will result in cerebral vasoconstriction with concomitantly reduced cerebral blood volume and ICP.[314,315]

What should the anesthesiologist managing the patient with TBI do in the face of these various approaches? Perfusion pressure support of varying degrees is a theme that is common to of all of them, and the careful support of CPP at or just above the 60 mm Hg range is probably the most reasonable general approach. When establishing normovolemia alone does not accomplish that objective, phenylephrine, norepinephrine, and dopamine have all been used. With that CPP recommendation offered, it must be acknowledged that convictions vary, and anesthesiologists should come to an understanding with the local traumatologists and neurosurgeons as to CPP targets.

Hyperventilation. The use of hypocapnia has been reviewed in detail in the section Management of $PaCO_2$. The effectiveness of acute hypocapnia in reducing ICP is well confirmed.[13] But there is substantial evidence that hyperventilation is potentially deleterious[20,21,26,29,317,318] and should not be overused. That evidence suggests that hyperventilation and the concomitant vasoconstriction can result in ischemia,[20,21,25,27,317] especially when baseline CBF is low,[27] as is likely to be the case in the first 48 to 72 hours after head injury.[23,24,26,273] The expert panel convened by the Brain Trauma Foundation specified that "prolonged prophylactic hyperventilation with $PaCO_2$ of 25 mm Hg or less is not recommended."[62] Although they did not officially carry forward the recommendations from the third edition, they did restate the following recommendations to convey the concern for vasoconstriction-mediated ischemia: (1) "hyperventilation is recommended as a temporizing measure for the reduction of elevated ICP"; (2) "hyperventilation should be avoided during the first 24 hours after injury when CBF is often critically reduced"; and (3) "if hyperventilation is used, $SjvO_2$ or brain tissue PO_2 measurements are recommended to monitor oxygen delivery."[62] The totality of available information argues that hyperventilation should be used selectively rather than routinely in the management of patients with TBI. Maintaining ICP less than 20 mm Hg, preventing or reversing herniation, minimizing retractor pressure, and facilitating surgical access are still important objectives in the management of the patient with TBI, and to the extent that these objectives cannot be accomplished by other means, hyperventilation may still be appropriate. Once again, the anesthesiologist should agree on management variables with the surgical team at the outset of all procedures.

Intravenous Fluid Management. Intravenous fluid management of the patient with TBI was addressed earlier in the section Intravenous Fluid Management. The important principles are that fluids should be chosen invariably to prevent reduction of serum osmolarity and should probably be chosen to prevent profound reduction of COP—that is, in the circumstances of a large-volume resuscitation (arbitrarily, greater than half of the circulating volume), using a mix of colloids and crystalloids is probably appropriate. The clinical objective should be the maintenance of intravascular normovolemia, in part as an adjunct to MAP and CPP support. A chronic negative fluid balance, as can occur with the combination of modest fluid restriction and liberal use of osmotic diuretics, has been shown to be deleterious and should be avoided.[271] The severely injured brain can liberate sufficient thromboplastin into the circulation to result in a consumptive coagulopathy.[319-321] Appropriate laboratory tests and replacement should be performed. The clinician may also find a serum osmolarity determination early in the course of anesthetic management useful in appreciating the cumulative effects of prior administration of mannitol or HTS. The use of hypertonic solutions and the relevant attributes of colloid solutions were discussed in the section Intravenous Fluid Management. Because of the ischemia that can be a component of TBI, the minimal acceptable hemoglobin level should probably be more than that accepted in stable critical care patients (i.e., 7 g/dL). There is relatively little information to provide guidance. However, one investigation, which presented observations of brain tissue PO_2 ($PbtO_2$), suggested 9 g/dL as a hazard threshold in patients with TBI.[235]

Monitoring

Jugular Venous Oxygen Saturation. $SjvO_2$ monitoring has been used to guide the management of patients with TBI.[20,21,27,28,270,285,286,317,322,323] The underlying concept is that a marginal or inadequate CBF results in an increasing oxygen extraction, a widening arteriovenous content difference, and reduction of $SjvO_2$. Normal subjects have $SjvO_2$ values between 60% and 75%. A $SjvO_2$ less than 50% for 5 minutes is commonly accepted as constituting jugular desaturation. There have been numerous reports of low $SjvO_2$ values improving with interventions including reducing hyperventilation, increasing MAP, or inducing hypervolemia. $SjvO_2$ measurement assesses global oxygen extraction. It might be expected to have limited sensitivity to focal events, and instances in which focal inadequacy of perfusion was not reflected by low $SjvO_2$ have been reported.[20,21,24,317] An additional limitation inherent to the unilateral placement of the catheter is the observation[324] that there is an average side-to-side difference between simultaneous jugular bulb saturations of 5.3 ± 5% and that side-to-side differences in hemoglobin saturation of up to 15% are common.[324]

Despite the reported successes with $SjvO_2$ monitoring,[28,325,326] we do not believe that the method is sufficiently well defined to justify advocating widespread intraoperative application. In the ICU, it appears to be potentially useful as a trend monitor that may serve to identify the level of CPP or hyperventilation below which cerebral perfusion begins to be compromised, with the proviso that there is a significant potential for false-negative results.[20,21,24,317] The technique also has a potential use beyond warning of inadequate perfusion. High $SjvO_2$ values may serve to identify the patient with elevated ICP in whom hyperemia is an important contributing factor and in whom aggressive attempts to decrease CBF (i.e., hyperventilation, barbiturates) may be beneficial.

Brain Tissue PO_2. $PbtO_2$ has been used to guide the management of both TBI and SAH, and there have been limited reports of improvement in outcomes.[316,318-331] A $PbtO_2$ equal to or greater than 20 to 25 mm Hg is viewed as normal, and values equal to or less than 10 to 15 mm Hg are assumed to convey a substantial risk of hypoxic injury. One investigation reported that 29% of patients with TBI with GCS scores of 8 or less have brain regions with $PbtO_2$ less than 10 mm Hg, despite meeting CPP and ICP targets of 60 mm Hg or less than 25 mm Hg, respectively.[289] This would seem to encourage the use of these monitors. However, $PbtO_2$ monitors suffer from the inverse of the problem that prevails with $SjvO_2$ monitoring: they provide very focal information about the oxygenation status of only small regions of brain surrounding the tip. If they are placed remotely from focal injuries to provide a global measure of oxygenation, they may not see adverse events in at-risk but salvageable perilesional tissue.[332] They may similarly fail to be a useful therapeutic guide if they are within irredeemably injured brain. The use of $PbtO_2$ monitoring is neither standardized nor widespread.

Intracranial Pressure Monitoring for Nonneurologic Surgery in the Brain-Injured Patient. The relevant variables when nonneurologic surgery is considered for the brain-injured patients include:

1. *The level of consciousness.* If there has been a loss of consciousness at any time (or amnesia for the event in the absence of witnesses) or if the GCS score is less than 15, a CT scan should be obtained. If the CT scan reveals compressed basal cisterns (indicative of an exhaustion of supratentorial compensatory latitudes), midline shift, or effaced ventricles, and probably any intracranial lesion (e.g., contusion, small subdural), an ICP monitor should be considered for surgery, with GA performed within 48

hours after TBI. Excessive comfort should not be taken from a good GCS score. Patients with good scores can talk and deteriorate or talk and die after a TBI associated with loss of consciousness. Delayed deterioration has been observed as much as 4 days after the initial injury.[333,334] Patients with lesions, usually contusions, in the frontal and frontotemporal region, and especially those with medial temporal lesions, are most at risk for this phenomenon. Modest expansion of lesions in this location (i.e., close to the uncus and the incisura where herniation occurs) can result in herniation even at relatively low ICPs (e.g., ≈20 mm Hg). At our institution, neurosurgeons would recommend avoiding an anesthetic in these patients and would certainly advise ICP monitoring if lengthy GA were unavoidable.

2 *Time since injury.* The longer the patient has had to declare his or her clinical course, the less pressing is the need for ICP monitoring. Delayed deterioration has been observed after as much as 48 hours,[333] and 4.5 days in separate investigations,[334] and a patient with a demonstrable CT lesion and a GCS score less than 15 is a candidate for a monitor during this time frame.
3. *Nature and duration of the intended procedure.* The risks of an untoward ICP event are inevitably greater in a 6-hour spine instrumentation in the prone position than in a 20-minute debridement and suturing of an arm laceration.

Hypothermia

There is clearly an ischemic component to the pathophysiology of TBI, and mild induced hypothermia has been shown to be highly protective in experimental cerebral ischemia. On that basis, the study of hypothermia after experimental TBI was undertaken, and improvements in outcome were demonstrated.[156] Several local, prospective trials of hypothermia after TBI were performed.[335-338] Because those trials appeared to indicate good patient tolerance of sustained mild hypothermia (32°C-34°C) and improvement in ICP and outcome, a multicenter trial was performed. That trial, which required induction of hypothermia within 8 hours of injury, revealed no overall benefit.[157] Because of concern that 8 hours was not sufficiently rapid, a second trial, which achieved the target temperature in 2.5 hours, was performed. It too was negative for benefits.[158] A recent European multicenter trial (EUROTHERM) evaluated hypothermia plus standard care versus standard care alone and failed to demonstrate an outcome benefit of hypothermia.[339] (Also see the section Hypothermia.) As a result, there is no established role for hypothermia in TBI management as of this writing.

POSTERIOR FOSSA PROCEDURES

TABLE 57.5 Considerations Relevant to Posterior Fossa Procedures and the Location of the Related Discussion in This Chapter

Consideration	Chapter Section, Subsection
Hemodynamic effects of the sitting position	Positioning, Sitting
Venous air embolism	Venous Air Embolism
Paradoxical air embolism	Venous Air Embolism
Hemodynamic effects of brainstem and cranial nerve manipulation	Posterior Fossa Procedures
Macroglossia	Positioning, Sitting
Pneumocephalus	Pneumocephalus
Quadriplegia	Positioning, Sitting

Most of the topics relevant to posterior fossa procedures (Table 57.5) have been discussed in the section Recurrent Issues in Neuroanesthesia. These include the sitting position and its cardiovascular effects and complications (quadriplegia, macroglossia), pneumocephalus, and VAE and PAE. The use of the sitting position to facilitate surgery in the posterior fossa increases the likelihood of all these phenomena, though they are relevant to nonsitting positions as well. This section reviews the cardiovascular events associated with direct stimulation of the brainstem and their possible implications for postoperative management.

Brainstem Stimulation

Irritation of the lower portion of the pons and the upper medulla (Fig. 57.17) and of the extra-axial portion of the fifth cranial nerve can result in a number of cardiovascular responses. The former two areas are most often stimulated during procedures on the floor of the fourth ventricle and the last during surgery at or near the cerebellopontine angle (e.g., acoustic neuromas, microvascular decompression of fifth [tic douloureux], seventh [hemifacial spasm], or ninth [glossopharyngeal neuralgia] cranial nerves). The responses may include bradycardia and hypotension, tachycardia and hypertension, or bradycardia and hypertension, and ventricular dysrhythmias.[340] Meticulous attention to the ECG and a directly transduced arterial pressure during manipulation in this region are necessary to provide the surgeon with immediate warning of the risk of damage to the adjacent cranial nerve nuclei and respiratory centers. Pharmacologic treatment of the dysrhythmias that occur may serve to attenuate the very warning signs that should be sought.

Irritation and injury of posterior fossa structures that may have occurred during surgery should be considered in planning extubation and postoperative care. In particular, procedures involving dissection on the floor of the fourth ventricle entail the possibility of injury to cranial nerve nuclei or postoperative swelling in that region, or both. Cranial nerve dysfunction, particularly of nerves IX, X, and XII, can result in loss of control and patency of the upper airway, and swelling of the brainstem can result in impairment of both cranial nerve function and respiratory drive. The posterior fossa is a relatively small space, and its compensatory latitudes are even more limited than those of the supratentorial space. Relatively little swelling can result in disorders of consciousness, respiratory drive, and cardiomotor function. There should be an interaction between the anesthesiologist and the surgeon in deciding whether extubation is appropriate and where postoperative observation should occur (i.e., ICU or non-ICU).

Spontaneous ventilation was once advocated for procedures that entailed a risk of damage to the respiratory centers.[341] Spontaneous ventilation is now rarely used because

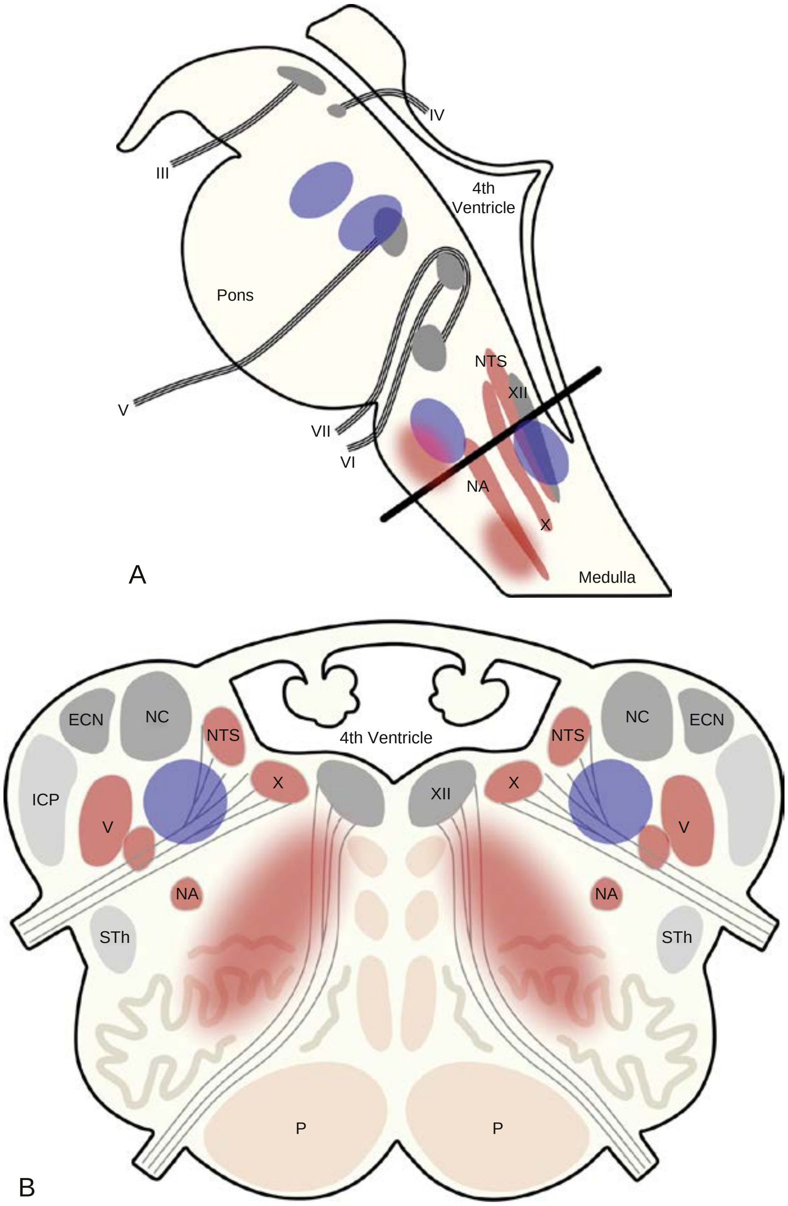


Fig. 57.17 Vasomotor and respiratory centers. Sagittal (A) and axial (B) illustrations of vasomotor centers *(red)* and respiratory centers *(blue)* located near the floor of the 4th ventricle. Minor brainstem manipulation resulting in stimulation of structures in red can lead to significant cardiovascular responses including hypertension, hypotension, bradycardia, and tachycardia. *ECN*, External cuneate nucleus; *ICP*, inferior cerebellar peduncle; *NA*, nucleus ambiguous; *NC*, nucleus cuneatus; *NTS*, nucleus tractus solitarius; *P*, pyramid; *STh*, spinal thalamic tract; *V*, spinal nucleus and tract of trigeminal nerve; *X*, dorsal motor nucleus of vagal nerve; *XII*, hypoglossal nerve nucleus.

the proximity of the cardiovascular and respiratory centers should permit cardiovascular signs to serve as an indicator of impending injury to the latter. Furthermore, electrophysiologic monitoring as a means of detecting brainstem injury has largely supplanted the role of spontaneous ventilation.[341]

Various electrophysiologic monitoring techniques may be used during posterior fossa surgery. These include somatosensory evoked and motor evoked potentials (SSEPs, MEPs), brainstem auditory evoked responses, and electromyographic (EMG) monitoring of lower cranial nerves. MEPs and EMG monitoring require that the patient not be paralyzed or have a constant state of incomplete paralysis. SSEPs and MEPs impose some constraints with respect to the selection of anesthetics. These are discussed in Chapter 39.

Balloon Compression of the Trigeminal Ganglion

This is another situation in which a dysrhythmia may occur. The procedure attempts to produce a neuropraxia of the fifth cranial nerve by the rapid inflation of a Fogarty-type balloon within Meckel's cave.[342,343] The balloon is introduced percutaneously through the cheek and beneath the maxilla. The procedure is best accomplished with a general anesthetic because both the entry of the needle into Meckel's cave and the balloon compression (lasting several minutes) are intensely stimulating. A relatively profound, although transient, bradycardia occurs and is sought as confirmation

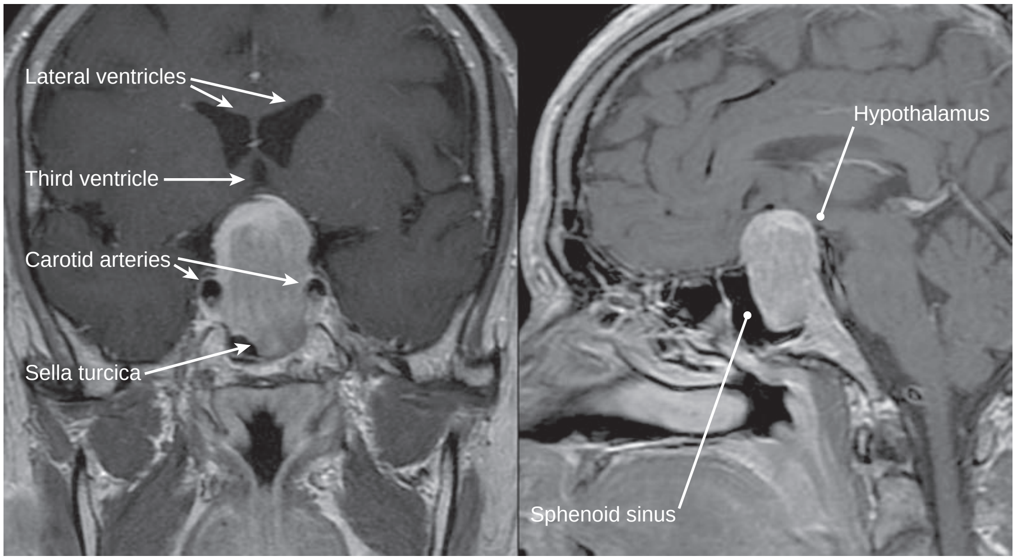


Fig. 57.18 Pituitary tumor with suprasellar extension. The *left panel* shows the proximity of the tumor to the carotid arteries (which lie within the cavernous sinuses) and the potential for distortion of the ventricular system. The optic chiasm (not seen) lies above the sella in the path of the upwardly expanding tumor. The *right panel* shows that tumors that lie above the sella (including craniopharyngiomas, which arise in this location) abut and can invade the hypothalamus. The more radio-dense *(whiter)* cap over the superior and anatomic right lateral aspects of the tumor mass is a normal pituitary gland.

of adequate compression. External pacemaker pads have been advocated but in our experience are unnecessary.

TRANSSPHENOIDAL SURGERY

The transsphenoidal approach to the sella turcica is used for the excision of tumors that lie within the sella or its environs (Fig. 57.18). Most of these lesions are tumors arising from the pituitary gland, and the most common of these are prolactin-secreting microadenomas and nonsecreting macroadenomas. Patients with the former are usually women who present with secondary amenorrhea or galactorrhea, or both. The nonsecreting adenomas tend to manifest with mass effects (headache, visual disturbance, hypopituitarism) and are typically larger at the time of diagnosis. Patients may also present with hypopituitary states as a result of dysfunction of the normal gland caused by compression by the tumor mass. There are three other less common pituitary tumors: growth hormone-secreting lesions, which result in acromegaly; adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)-secreting tumors, which cause Cushing disease; and a very rare thyroid-stimulating hormone-secreting lesion, which results in hyperthyroidism. A detailed review of the perioperative management of this group of patients is available.[344]

Preoperative Evaluation

The important preoperative considerations relate to the patient's endocrine and visual status. In general, as a pituitary lesion expands and compresses the pituitary tissue, normal glandular function is compromised. Hormonal function is lost in the following sequence: first, gonadotrophins; second, growth hormone; third, ACTH; and fourth and last, thyroid-stimulating hormone. A decrease in ACTH secretion results in a hypoadrenal state. Attention to this is critical because an Addisonian crisis can ensue, especially under the stress of surgery. Profound hypocortisolism, with associated hyponatremia, should be corrected preoperatively. Deficiency in thyroid function is uncommon. However, if significant hypothyroidism is present, it should be corrected preoperatively because hypothyroid patients have a diminished tolerance to the cardiovascular depressant effects of anesthetics. Attention to other manifestations of pituitary hypersecretion is also important. Hypertension, diabetes, obstructive sleep apnea (OSA), and central obesity are common concomitants of ACTH-secreting adenomas (Cushing disease). Patients with advanced acromegaly can develop an enlarged tongue and a narrowed glottis, and the airway should be evaluated accordingly. The dermis is thickened, and vascular cannulation can be more difficult. Hypertension, OSA, and a cardiomyopathy may also occur.

Monitoring

Many practitioners place an arterial catheter, and this facilitates monitoring of blood pressure as the nasal mucosa is injected with epinephrine-containing local anesthetic solutions. Access for blood sampling is also a useful adjunct to postoperative care if diabetes insipidus develops. Blood loss is usually modest. However, the cavernous sinuses, through which the carotid arteries pass (see Fig. 57.18), form the lateral boundary of the sella and may be entered during the resection of large tumors. Entry into these structures can lead to catastrophic blood loss. In addition, in some patients there is an extensive venous sinus connecting the two cavernous sinuses that may cover the entire dural lining of the sella, rendering a transsphenoidal approach hazardous. It has, on occasion, actually precluded this approach to the pituitary gland.

Anesthetic Technique

The latitudes are broad with respect to choice of agent, although tumors with suprasellar extension (see Fig. 57.18) can occasionally cause hydrocephalus and add increased ICP constraints to the anesthetic technique. The procedure is performed in the supine position, usually with some degree of head-up posture to avoid venous engorgement. A pharyngeal pack prevents the accumulation of blood in the stomach (which causes vomiting) or in the glottis (which contributes to coughing at extubation). A right-angle endotracheal (RAE)-type endotracheal tube secured to the lower jaw at the corner of the mouth opposite the surgeon's dominant hand (e.g., the left corner of mouth for a right-handed surgeon) is suitable. A small esophageal stethoscope and temperature probe can lie with the endotracheal tube.

The procedure is commonly performed with a C-arm image intensifier (lateral views), and the head and arms are relatively inaccessible once the patient is draped. It is appropriate to establish the nerve stimulator at a lower extremity site. The surgical approach is via the nasal cavity, usually through an incision made under the upper lip or via the nares. During the approach, the mucosal surfaces within the nose are infiltrated with a local anesthetic and epinephrine solution, and the patient should be observed for the occurrence of dysrhythmias.

Surgical preferences for CO_2 management vary. In some instances, hypocapnia is requested to reduce brain volume and minimize the degree to which the arachnoid bulges into the sella. One of the important surgical considerations is the avoidance, when possible, of opening the arachnoid membrane leading to leakage of CSF. Postoperative CSF leaks can be persistent and are associated with a considerable risk of meningitis. By contrast, when there is suprasellar extension of a tumor, a normal CO_2 level helps deliver the lesion into the sella for excision.[345] As an alternative method to accomplish this, some surgeons have resorted to boluses of saline into the lumbar CSF space.[346]

A smooth emergence (see the section Emergence from Anesthesia) from anesthesia is desirable, especially if the CSF space has been opened (and resealed with fibrin glue or by packing the sphenoid sinus with fat or muscle). Repeated intense Valsalva maneuvers, as with coughing or vomiting, may contribute to the reopening of a CSF leak and worsen the risk of subsequent meningitis. The airway should be cleared of debris including formed clots. In situations in which there is concern that a persistent CSF leak may occur, the surgeon may place a lumbar CSF drain to maintain CSF decompression in the early postoperative period.

Diabetes Insipidus

The antidiuretic hormone (ADH) is synthesized in the supraoptic nuclei of the hypothalamus and is transported down the supraoptic-hypophyseal tract to the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland. This portion of the pituitary gland is frequently spared during transsphenoidal tumor excisions. Even when it is excised, water homeostasis commonly normalizes, presumably because the ADH is released from the cut end of the tract. When the pituitary stalk is transected, and sometimes even when the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland is left intact, transient diabetes insipidus may occur. Diabetes insipidus very rarely arises intraoperatively; it usually occurs 12 to 48 hours postoperatively. The clinical picture is one of polyuria in association with a rising serum osmolality. The diagnosis is made by comparison of the osmolality of urine and serum. Hypoosmolar urine in the face of an elevated and rising serum osmolality strongly supports the diagnosis. In the presence of bona fide diabetes insipidus, urine-specific gravity is low (i.e., ≤1.002), though this analysis is now rarely performed.

When the diagnosis of diabetes insipidus is established, the following fluid management regimen is appropriate: hourly maintenance of fluids plus two thirds of the previous hour's urine output. (An acceptable alternative is the previous hour's urine output - 50 mL + maintenance.) The choice of fluid is dictated by the patient's electrolyte levels. In general, the patient is losing fluid that is hypoosmolar and relatively low in sodium. Half-normal saline and 5% dextrose in water are commonly used as replacement fluids. Beware of hyperglycemia when large volumes of 5% dextrose in water are used. If the hourly requirement exceeds 350 to 400 mL, desmopressin acetate is often administered.

AWAKE CRANIOTOMY AND SEIZURE SURGERY

Awake craniotomies are performed when tumors or epileptic foci lie close to cortical areas required for either speech or motor function, or to mesial-temporal structures critical to short-term memory. Many patients have so-called temporal lobe epilepsy. There is commonly a structural lesion visible on MRI. Sometimes there is a history of remote trauma.

Presurgical Evaluation

Before the resection, most patients have undergone a Wada test, video-telemetry, or both.[347] More recently, functional testing using MRI or positron emission tomography, or both, has also been introduced to the presurgical evaluation. The Wada test involves selectively anesthetizing the cerebral hemispheres, usually by injection of amobarbital sodium into the carotid artery to localize the hemisphere that controls speech or to confirm that there is bilateral representation for short-term memory, or both. Speech is an issue when the posterolateral portions of the temporal lobe are involved, and memory is the concern when the involvement is mesial.

Anesthesia for Electroencephalogram Electrode Placement

Video-telemetry is performed to permit localization of the seizure focus that is responsible for the clinically problematic events. This usually requires prior placement of either subdural strip electrodes (via burr holes) or a subdural electrode grid (requiring a craniotomy). Electrodes are sometimes placed deep into the parenchyma, usually within the temporal lobe (placed stereotactically via burr holes), or they are positioned to look at the inferior surfaces of the temporal lobe. The latter is commonly accomplished with so-called foramen ovale electrodes. These electrodes are placed using a needle similar to an epidural needle. The point of entry is approximately 2 cm lateral to the angle of the mouth. The needle is passed through soft tissue, under the temporal process of the zygomatic bone and medial to the ramus of the mandible, up to the base of the skull in the vicinity of the foramen ovale. Typically, this procedure is performed with monitored anesthesia care (MAC) only, although small doses of anesthetics, most often propofol, are usually required at the time of stimulation by the needle of the periosteum at the base of the skull. After placement of the relevant electrodes, the patient's seizure medication is discontinued, and the patient remains in an observation unit with EEG and behavior recorded continuously. In this manner, the EEG events associated with the clinically significant seizure events and their anatomic origin can be identified.

Preanesthetic Evaluation and Preparation

At the preoperative interview, the patient should be educated about the nature and duration of the procedure and the limitations on patient movement. A description of both the aura and the seizures to facilitate recognition of impending events should be obtained, and it should be ascertained whether the patient is subject to having grand mal convulsions. If intraoperative electrocorticography to identify seizure foci is intended, it is common to discontinue or reduce by half the anticonvulsants according to the perceived risk of uncontrolled seizures. Premedicants with an anticonvulsant effect (e.g., benzodiazepines) should not be used because they may interfere with intraoperative EEG localization.

Anesthetic Technique

The objectives of the anesthetic technique are as follows:

1. To minimize patient discomfort associated with the potentially painful portions of the procedure and with the prolonged restriction of movement.
2. To ensure patient responsiveness and compliance during the phases of the procedure that require assessment of speech, memory, or motor/sensory responses to cortical stimulation.
3. To select anesthetic techniques that produce minimal inhibition of spontaneous seizure activity.

There are probably many ways of providing sedation that are consistent with the objectives just cited. The techniques used range from minimal sedation approaches, through deep sedation during which intermittent unresponsiveness is achieved with spontaneous ventilation and an unprotected airway, to asleep-awake-asleep techniques with intermittent airway management with a laryngeal mask airway (LMA) or endotracheal tube, sometimes with positive-pressure ventilation. From the outset, the anesthesiologist should appreciate that the essential element of an anesthetic for an awake craniotomy is the local anesthetic technique. Sedation cannot compensate for inadequate anesthesia of the scalp, as is accomplished by nerve blocks (Fig. 57.19), and pin site infiltration. Although the anesthesiologist can contribute enormously to the patient's comfort and tolerance of the painful components of the procedure and the prolonged immobilization, the anesthesiologist must not get trapped into thinking that it is his or her responsibility to provide a general anesthetic equivalent in a spontaneously breathing patient with an unprotected and all but inaccessible airway.

For sedation, there are many options. Many clinicians (including the authors) use principally propofol,[348,349] sometimes supplemented with infusion of remifentanil (e.g., 0.02-0.05 μg/kg/min) or dexmedetomidine (e.g., 0.2 μg/kg/h). Other combinations, including propofol with either fentanyl or remifentanil and dexmedetomidine with or without remifentanil, are reasonable.[350-352] Great care should be taken in administering additional sedative drugs, especially narcotics whose respiratory depressant effects will be synergistic with propofol. This is especially relevant in the presence of pin fixation, which severely restricts the anesthesiologist's capacity to intervene quickly in the event of excessive respiratory depression or loss of patency of the airway. Propofol should be discontinued at least 15 minutes before EEG recording. Despite prompt awakening, propofol leaves a residual EEG footprint characterized by high-frequency, high-amplitude β activity that can obscure the abnormal activity that is being sought in the cortical surface EEG.[348] The use of dexmedetomidine, which in addition to sedation and anxiolysis provides some analgesia with minimal respiratory depression, is increasing.[352-356] Satisfactory conditions for functional testing, including brain stimulation for speech mapping and electrocorticography, have been reported with dexmedetomidine infusions ongoing at rates between 0.1 and 0.5 μg/kg/h during the testing.[352,354,357,358] The occurrence of delays in achieving satisfactory patient responsiveness has also been reported,[355,359] and using only relatively modest infusion rates (i.e., 0.1-0.2 μg/kg/h) during neurocognitive testing appears advisable.[357] Administration of antiemetics (ondansetron or dexamethasone, or both) should probably be routine, especially if narcotics are administered.

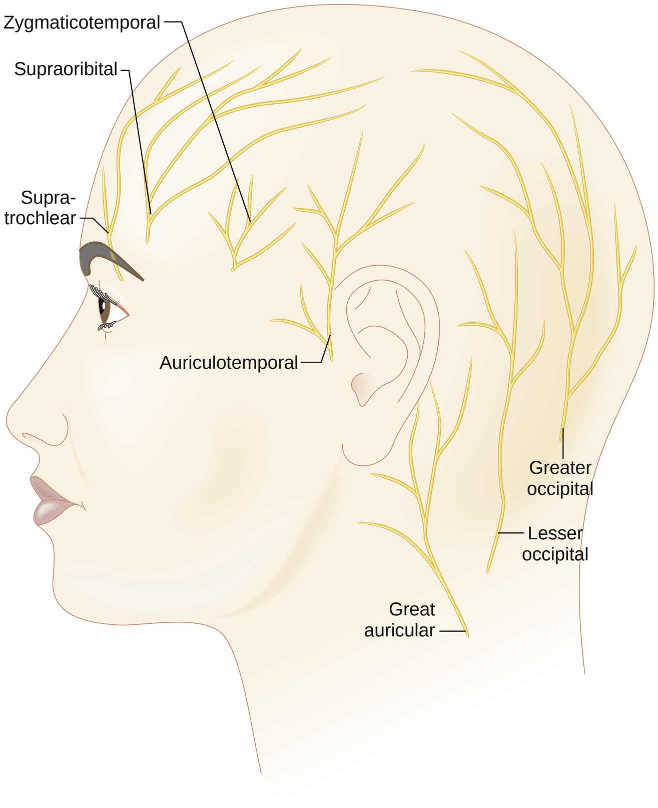


Fig. 57.19 The cutaneous nerves of the scalp.

Various groups have reported the use of the LMA with either spontaneous or controlled ventilation during the craniotomy, with cessation of sedative administration and LMA removal once the brain surface is exposed.[353-355,357,360,361] It is obvious that many approaches can be effective, but it should be noted, for the most part, that the LMA techniques have been used in patients who were *not* in pin fixation of the head. An awake-asleep-awake technique using insertion, removal, and replacement of an endotracheal tube has been reported, but a customized tube that allows installation of local anesthetic in the glottis and trachea was used.[362]

Routine, noninvasive monitors are almost always sufficient. Reliable capnography, to provide breath-by-breath confirmation of airway patency and respiratory drive, is essential if deep sedation is intended for any portion of the procedure. These procedures are often lengthy. Attention to the details of patient comfort (temperature management, padding of pressure areas) improve patient tolerance.

The uncomfortable phases of the procedure are pin head holder placement (not all groups use a pin head holder) and the craniotomy. Many patients also find manipulation of the dura, in particular, traction on subtemporal dura, painful. The actual manipulation of supratentorial brain parenchyma is painless. The volume of local anesthetic used to infiltrate pin sites and perform the scalp nerve blocks can be substantial. It is appropriate for the anesthesiologist to keep track of, and provide advice about, the doses of local anesthetics used.

The anesthesiologist should participate actively at the time of head positioning. The more neck flexion and atlanto-occipital extension that can be achieved before the final lockdown of the head holder, the wider the latitudes will be for sedating the patient, while maintaining spontaneous ventilation and a patent airway. During positioning of the patient, there should also be attention to the need to maintain visual access to the face. A clear line of sight to the face is necessary to present the patient with images to name as part of speech testing and to identify the occurrence of facial motor responses during mapping of the motor strip.

In general, after the dural opening is complete, for seizure-related resections, cortical surface EEG recording is performed to locate the seizure focus. If no seizure activity is observed, provocative maneuvers may be requested.[363] Methohexital in a dose of approximately 0.3 mg/kg is generally safe and effective. Etomidate, approximately 0.05 to 0.1 mg/kg, has also been used. Localization of seizure focus can also be accomplished during light GA (e.g., N_2O /fentanyl/ low-dose isoflurane). During GA, alfentanil, in a bolus dose of 30 to 50 µg/kg[364,365]; etomidate in doses of 0.2 to 0.3 mg/kg[366,367]; and remifentanil, as a bolus of 2.5 µg/kg[368] have been reported to be effective in activating seizure foci. Hyperventilation may also help activate seizure foci.[369]

After localization by EEG (or initially in nonseizure-related resections), functional testing is performed by electrical stimulation of the cortical surface with observation for motor, sensory, or speech interruption effects. During cortical stimulation, the anesthesiologist should be prepared to treat grand mal convulsions. Seizures usually stop with cessation of stimulus or with irrigation of the cortex with cold saline. When they are not self-limited, pharmacologic intervention (e.g., with propofol in increments of 0.5-1.0 mg/kg) may be warranted. However, propofol should be withheld briefly until it is clear that the seizure is not going to terminate spontaneously because it may interfere with subsequent EEG localization for some time.[348]

STEREOTACTIC PROCEDURES

Stereotactically guided procedures are performed for numerous indications including biopsy of small, deep-seated lesions and placement of deep brain stimulation electrodes.

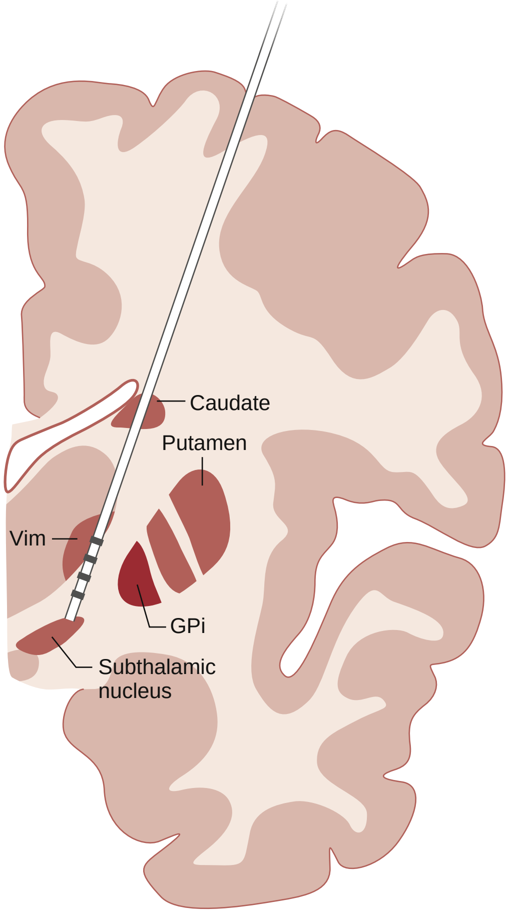


Fig. 57.20 Deep-brain stimulation electrode target sites. The most commonly targeted nuclei for the treatment of movement disorders are the subthalamic nucleus, the ventral intermediate nucleus of thalamus *(Vim)*, and the internal segment of globus pallidus *(GPi)*.

The latter are placed most commonly for the treatment of movement disorders (Parkinson disease, essential tremor, and dystonias)[370] and sometimes for a variety of other conditions (Tourette disorder, obsessive-compulsive disorder, and depression). Procedures related to movement disorders most often target the subthalamic nucleus, the internal segment of the globus pallidus, or the ventral intermediate nucleus of the thalamus (Fig. 57.20).[370] The mechanism of the beneficial effect of deep brain stimulation is not well understood. A prominent theory is that the abnormal motor patterns are caused by synchronized oscillations in neural circuits involving several basal ganglia nuclei, as well as the cortex, and that high-frequency stimulation of any of several points along the pathway can interfere with the oscillation.[371]

Preoperative evaluation should include ensuring that the coagulation system is intact and that the patient is not taking platelet-inhibiting agents (including herbal medications). There should be careful explanation of the procedure, its likely duration, and the necessary restraints on patient movement.

Several constraints will confront the anesthesiologist including:

1. *Airway access*. Commonly, the stereotactic frame, of which there are many variations, is placed using local anesthetic and the patient undergoes an imaging study

before being brought to the operating room. In some instances, the frame will prevent mask application and ventilation, laryngoscopy, and neck extension. If a general anesthetic is to be used, an awake intubation occasionally may be required. The frame is often anchored to the operating room table. If sedation is to be used, the anesthesiologist should have certain knowledge of how to remove the device rapidly in an urgent situation (including knowledge of the whereabouts of the requisite key or spanner device).

2. *The effect of anesthetics on microelectrode recordings and symptoms.* Localization of deep brain stimulation electrodes typically involves the combination of stereotaxis with fine tuning by identification of the electrophysiologic footprint specific to the targeted nucleus (e.g., the subthalamic nucleus, globus pallidus interna). The sedative agents used must not interfere with that signature. The nature and duration of the effects of anesthetics (which probably vary from nucleus to nucleus) have not been systematically defined. Some surgeons and electrophysiologists may request, on a just-in-case basis, that no sedative agent whatsoever be given. That is likely to be unnecessarily restrictive. Comprehensive reviews are available.[372-374] In short, benzodiazepines probably have the greatest potential to interfere and are best avoided. Propofol has been reported to cause severe dyskinesia in patients with movement disorders,[375] but has nonetheless been used quite frequently. At a minimum, a substantial interval between propofol administration and recording should be planned. Dexmedetomidine in low doses has been used quite widely without reports of interference with signals.[376] Remifentanil, in part because of its rapid clearance, is probably also a reasonable choice, although it too has been reported to suppress Parkinsonian tremor.[377] The cessation of the patient's symptoms upon stimulation, without the occurrence of unacceptable side effects, is also an important end point for determining the adequacy of deep brain stimulation position and stimulus parameters. The symptoms must not be suppressed by the sedative agents. This can occur with propofol.[378] Satisfactory electrophysiologic recordings and preservation of the tremor have been reported in Parkinsonian patients who received dexmedetomidine in a dose sufficient to maintain a lethargic response to normal speech.[352,376,379] An additional issue that arises in some patients with movement disorders is the problem of obtaining high-quality radiologic images in the presence of a persistent tremor. Sedation immediately preceding the stereotactic placement may be inevitable. Propofol has been used, but the window between propofol administration and subsequent recording should be as long as possible.
3. *Intracerebral hematoma and prevention of hypertension.* Intracerebral hematoma is a serious, potential intraoperative complication of stereotactic procedures. Prevention and prompt treatment of hypertension are among the anesthesiologist's important objectives. The concern is that, in the face of multiple needle passes through the brain, hypertension will precipitate development of an intracerebral hematoma. In the event of a substantial hematoma, an urgent craniotomy may be required, and the anesthesiologist should be prepared from the outset for this eventuality.

As noted in the section VAE, because of spontaneous ventilation, there is some hazard of VAE during deep brain stimulation placement.[95]

NEUROENDOSCOPIC PROCEDURES

Excision of some intraventricular lesions (e.g., colloid cysts, fenestration of the lamina terminalis or the floor of the third ventricle for treatment of hydrocephalus) can be accomplished endoscopically. Access is usually achieved through burr holes placed over the frontal or occipital horns of the lateral ventricle. The important anesthetic consideration relates to the irrigation fluid (which should be warmed) used to maintain clear visualization, in a manner analogous to orthopedic arthroscopy procedures. Obstruction to the effluent limb produces rapid increases in ICP that are commonly associated with sudden changes in vital signs. An increase in blood pressure and decrease in heart rate (a Cushing-type response) is classic, but the heart rate component is less reliable. Cardiovascular changes may also, but less predictably, represent mechanical irritation of intracranial (e.g., hypothalamic) structures. The surgeon should be notified immediately of any sudden hemodynamic changes. The decision of whether intraarterial monitoring is warranted should be made with the surgeon.

NEUROINTERVENTIONAL PROCEDURES

A wide variety of interventional procedures are performed for the evaluation and treatment of intracranial and extracranial disease. These include: stent-assisted revascularization for atherosclerotic disease; thrombectomy in the setting of acute thromboembolic disease; aneurysm, AVM, tumor, and arteriovenous fistula embolization; and treatment of cerebral vasospasm.[380]

Much of the management of neurointerventional anesthesia has been discussed previously in the section Recurrent Issues in Neuroanesthesia. Critical components of interventional neuroanesthesia include patient immobility, rapid anesthetic emergence to facilitate neurologic examination, strict hemodynamic manipulation to prevent hyperperfusion and hypoperfusion, and thoughtful $PaCO_2$ management. Additionally, the anesthesiologist may need to manage (and potentially reverse) anticoagulation. Inherent to neurointerventional procedures is a requisite knowledge of vascular anatomy and appreciation of the underlying pathology. Close communication with the interventionalist throughout the procedure is paramount. Cerebral vascular anatomy, including anatomic vascular distribution is reviewed in Fig. 57.21.

ANESTHETIC TECHNIQUE

GA is widely employed for a variety of reasons: (1) to ensure the immobility that is essential to the technical elements of the procedure; (2) to ensure patient comfort during particularly stimulating procedures; or (3) to control medical comorbidities or neurologic condition of the patient. Protection of the airway and control of ventilation ($PaCO_2$ manipulation, apnea) may also factor into a decision to employ GA. The potential disadvantages of GA include hemodynamic instability during intubation, extubation, or both;

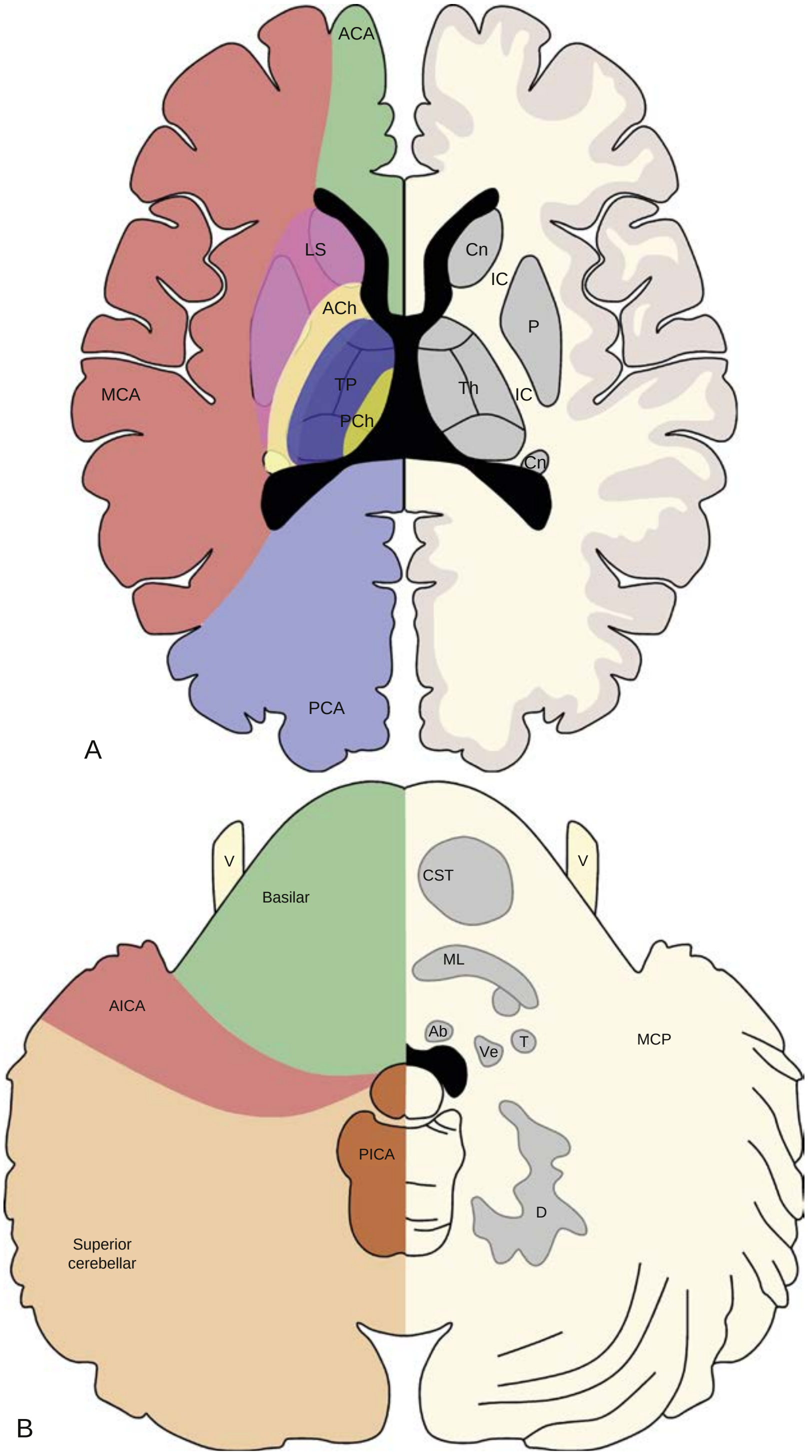


Fig. 57.21 Anatomic cerebral vascular distribution. *Ab*, Abducens nucleus; *ACA*, anterior cerebral artery; *ACh*, anterior choroidal artery; *AICA,* anterior inferior cerebellar artery; *CST*, corticospinal tract; *Cn*, caudate nucleus; *D*, dentate nucleus; *IC*, internal capsule; *LS*, lenticulostriate arteries; *MCA*, middle cerebral artery; *MCP*, middle cerebral peduncle; *ML*, medial lemniscus; *P*, putamen; *PCA*, posterior cerebral artery; *PCh*, posterior choroidal artery; *PICA,* posterior inferior cerebellar artery; *T*, trigeminal nucleus; *Th*, thalamus; *TP*, thalamic perforators; *V*, trigeminal nerve; *Ve*, vestibular nucleus.

anesthetic-induced hypotension causing cerebral hypoperfusion; inability to directly monitor the patient's neurologic status; complications related to coughing and straining during extubation; and delayed emergence or impaired postprocedure neurologic exam due to residual anesthetic drugs.

If GA is employed, there is little evidence to favor specific anesthetic agents over others provided basic neuroanesthetic goals are achieved (strict hemodynamic control, rapid emergence with minimal residual anesthetic effect on neurologic exam, and smooth emergence/extubation). Some advocate the avoidance of N_2O due to the potential of air bubble introduction into the arterial system during the procedure. Although N_2O could expand such bubbles and potentially increase ischemic risk, local experience of the authors suggests that N_2O is safe provided the interventional technique is meticulous.

MAC with intravenous sedative drugs has been advocated in the interventional radiology suite for various reasons (i.e., better maintenance of CPP, avoidance of hemodynamic lability at induction/emergence, preservation of neurologic exam, expedience). Although these reasons make intuitive sense, it remains unclear whether the anesthetic type truly provides a clear advantage in many of these areas.

ACUTE THROMBECTOMY

The frequency with which anesthesia personnel are enlisted to participate in the care of acute stroke patients having emergent thrombectomy is likely to increase because of the publication of recent studies demonstrating outcome improvement in select patients who undergo thrombectomy as long as 24 hours after the onset of stroke symptoms.[381,382] There has been some debate in recent years regarding the best anesthetic type (GA vs. MAC) for this procedure. Many retrospective studies found an association between GA and worse neurologic outcome following acute thrombectomy procedures.[383] Inherent in these studies was an obvious selection bias; airway control is generally sought for patients who have significant neurologic deficits and altered level of consciousness that precludes patient cooperation. Subsequent RCTs[384,385] and a recent meta-analysis[386] did not demonstrate an outcome benefit of MAC in this patient population. Although MAC has the potential to hasten vascular access time (imaging to groin puncture time),[383] recent studies have failed to demonstrate an advantage in time to revascularization.[383-385] Presumably this is because the small time delay attributed to endotracheal intubation was offset by reduced patient mobility and improved operative conditions. It should be noted that both MAC and GA can cause significant reduction in blood pressure and thereby increase risk of infarct to the ischemic penumbra; however, close attention to, and aggressive treatment of, hypotension by the anesthesiologist appears to negate the potential increased risk of GA-induced hypotension. In select patients (cooperative), MAC may allow for neurologic examination throughout the procedure, which may also serve to provide a therapeutic endpoint during thrombectomy procedures. At the present time, there is insufficient evidence to routinely recommend one anesthetic technique over another. Rather, the technique employed should be based upon a rapid clinical assessment of the patient, comfort level of the anesthesiologist with various techniques, and local practice. When GA is selected, attention must be given to avoid undue delay in endovascular treatment and to the maintenance of cerebral perfusion near awake levels. It is probably also reasonable to maintain normocapnia and to avoid profound hyperoxia.

Tumors and Arteriovenous Malformations

Hyperventilation may be appropriate in an attempt to divert flow away from normal brain and toward a lesion that is intended to receive the occlusive device or material. When the interventionalist is attempting to place glue in high-flow lesions (e.g., AVMs, fistulas), the anesthesiologist may be asked to reduce systemic blood pressure to prevent glue passage into the draining veins or systemic venous system. The choice of hypotensive agent depends on the anesthesiologist's experience and systemic cardiovascular considerations. Adenosine, which produces temporary flow cessation, is almost certainly the most effective means of accomplishing this objective.[387]

Intracranial Aneurysms

The International Subarachnoid Aneurysm Trial and subsequent meta-analysis have confirmed the broad applicability of endovascular treatment of aneurysms,[388,389] and the majority of aneurysms are currently managed by those approaches. Nonetheless, a substantial number of patients continue to undergo operative clipping,[390] primarily those with wide-necked aneurysms, diseased or occluded proximal vessels, and otherwise complex anatomy.

Many aneurysm-related procedures, in particular those involving the treatment of vasospasm by selective intraarterial administration of vasodilators (papaverine, calcium-channel blockers) or more commonly by balloon dilatation, can be accomplished without the involvement of an anesthesiologist. The duration of a procedure, individual patient factors, and sometimes the necessity for precise physiologic control may result in requests for MAC or GA. Absolute immobility is commonly needed by the interventionalist and is often the basis for a request for GA. In addition, anesthesiologists may become involved during the resuscitation stage in the event of vascular rupture or of the migration of an intravascular device to an incorrect location. In the event of rupture, the interventionist may request blood pressure reduction while the coil packing of the aneurysm is completed hastily. In addition, immediate reversal of heparinization is required. When detachable devices, such as coils and balloons (the latter now used infrequently), are misplaced and ischemia ensues, fluid loading and pressor administration may be requested to improve collateral CBF while the device is retrieved. A dedicated arterial line is usually warranted. This may or may not be available via a port in the interventionist's vascular access sheath. When these complications do occur, close communication with the interventionalist is essential to ensure appropriate response from the anesthesia team.

Stent-Assisted Revascularization or Stent-Assisted Aneurysm Coil Embolization

Endovascular stent placement typically requires preparation with dual antiplatelet therapy for 5 to 7 days. Aspirin and clopidogrel inhibition assays may be performed on the day of the procedure to confirm patient compliance and physiologic drug response.[391] Efficacious dual antiplatelet preparation to prevent early in-stent thrombosis may be particularly critical with the use of flow diverting stents (e.g., pipeline embolization device) that possess a larger total metal surface area. Carotid artery stent (CAS) placement may be performed as an alternative to CEA, particularly if the vascular anatomy is unfavorable for CEA or significant concern for coronary artery disease exists. Hypotension and/or bradycardia should be anticipated at the time of stent deployment[392] and temporary vasopressor support and/or pharmacologic treatment of bradycardia may be required.

CEREBROSPINAL FLUID SHUNTING PROCEDURES

CSF shunts are inserted for the relief of a variety of hydrocephalic states and pseudotumor cerebri. Hydrocephalus can be communicating or noncommunicating. In a noncommunicating hydrocephalus, CSF egress from the ventricular system is obstructed. This can occur as a result of blood or infection in the ventricular system or tumors in or adjacent to the ventricular system. In communicating hydrocephalus, the CSF escapes from the ventricular system but is not absorbed by the arachnoid villi. This occurs most commonly secondary to infection or blood in the CSF space. Some degree of communicating hydrocephalus is particularly common after SAH.

Placement of a ventriculoperitoneal shunt is the most common procedure. Usually a catheter is inserted via a burr hole into the frontal horn of the lateral ventricle on the nondominant (usually the right) side. A reservoir is placed subcutaneously adjacent to the burr hole and the drainage limb passes via a subcutaneous tunnel to a point near the epigastrium, where it is inserted into the peritoneal space via a very small laparotomy. A moderate degree of muscle relaxation may be helpful. A distended stomach can result in an inadvertent gastrostomy. Sometimes, most commonly in pediatric patients, there may be an obstruction at more than one level in the ventricular system and a so-called double-barreled shunt becomes appropriate. In this instance, there are two proximal ends, usually one in a lateral ventricle and one in the fourth ventricle. This latter procedure is usually performed in the prone position, whereas the majority of ventriculoperitoneal shunts are done supine.

Occasionally, when there is a communicating hydrocephalus, a lumboperitoneal shunt is inserted. The patient is placed in a lateral position and a catheter is put in the lumbar CSF space via a Tuohy-type needle. The catheter is tunneled subcutaneously around to the anterior abdominal wall and inserted into the peritoneal space via a small laparotomy.

Anesthetic Management

Invasive monitoring is generally not required. The anesthetic technique should be chosen to avoid further increases in ICP. Moderate hyperventilation ($PaCO_2$ 25-30 mm Hg) is customary. Because these procedures are not performed in the context of acute injury states, there is less concern about adverse effects of hypocapnia. The target $PaCO_2$ should be agreed upon at the outset with the surgeon. The procedure is usually performed in the supine position. Blood pressure may decrease abruptly when the ventricle is first cannulated (as brainstem pressure is relieved). Infrequently, brief pressor support is required. Burrowing the subcutaneous tunnel can produce a sudden painful stimulus. There is only minor postoperative discomfort. Unlike the majority of neurosurgical patients, shunt patients are often nursed flat after their procedures in an attempt to prevent an excessively rapid collapse of the ventricular system. Empirically, there is a small incidence of subdural hematoma after shunting, and the tearing of bridging veins at the time of rapid brain shrinkage is a suspected cause.

Pediatric Ventriculoperitoneal Shunts

Shunts are probably more commonly performed in children than in adults. Common indications are hydrocephalus occurring in association with meningomyelocele, neonatal intraventricular hemorrhage, and posterior fossa tumors. Although one can never be casual about the management of these patients, open fontanelles seem to provide some margin for error in younger patients and, in addition, palpation of the fontanelles provides on-line trend monitoring of ICP. Despite its theoretic considerations, inhaled inductions using volatile anesthetics are empirically well tolerated, even in children with closed fontanelles. We avoid the inhaled induction technique in a child who was already stuporous. When an intravenous line is available, a propofol-relaxant induction sequence is preferable. For children in whom cannulation of a peripheral vein cannot be accomplished readily, an inhaled induction with sevoflurane is a common approach, with initiation of controlled ventilation, by bag and mask, as rapidly as possible. After establishing controlled ventilation, an ideal course at this point is to establish an intravenous line and administer a muscle relaxant and perhaps an induction agent, and then intubate the trachea in these optimal circumstances. For children older than 6 months of age who are not stuporous at the outset, we commonly titrate in fentanyl in the belief that this procedure is not entirely pain-free postoperatively, and that a smoother emergence can be accomplished with a narcotic background.

PEDIATRIC NEUROSURGERY

Table 57.6 identifies common pediatric procedures and their anesthetic considerations. The most frequent procedures are probably the placement and revision of CSF shunts (discussed in the preceding section). The majority of pediatric tumors occur in the posterior fossa. Most are near the midline and many are associated with hydrocephalus. For pediatric posterior fossa procedures, VAE risk, monitoring, and treatment are similar for adults and children and have been previously discussed. A Doppler probe and right heart catheters are frequently placed when procedures are done in the sitting position. Craniosynostosis procedures have the potential for substantial blood loss that is roughly proportional to the number of sutures involved. There is a significant VAE risk that justifies the use of a precordial Doppler.[93] Children with neuraxial tumors can present for emergent palliative radiotherapy and may have acutely increased ICP or impending herniation. Intractable pain combined with analgesic tolerance, steroid use causing centripetal obesity, and the side effects of other chemotherapeutic agents may be complicating factors.

SPINAL SURGERY

Table 57.7 summarizes the many issues that may arise in the context of spinal cord or spinal column procedures undertaken by neurosurgeons.

Surgery on the spinal column is reviewed in detail in Chapter 66. The relevant electrophysiologic monitoring techniques are described in Chapter 39. Prone positioning has previously been discussed.

TABLE 57.6 Pediatric Neurosurgical Disorders and Their Anesthetic Considerations

Age Group	Lesion	Pathogenesis	Anesthetic Considerations
Neonates	Intraventricular hemorrhage	Subependymal vascular rupture	Associated problems of prematurity
	Depressed skull fracture	Forceps injury	Associated cerebral edema
	Meningocele	Out-pouching of meninges through skull defect	Large size creates airway management difficulty
			Prone or lateral position Repair may increase ICP Variable blood loss
	Encephalocele	Out-pouching of meninges and brain through skull	As above
	Meningomyelocele	Protrusion of meninges and nerve roots through spina bifida	Prone or lateral position Respiratory restriction after covering large defects
Infants	Hydrocephalus	Varied	Increased ICP
	Arnold-Chiari malformation	Posterior fossa contents compressed in foramen magnum	Brainstem compression with neck flexion ± Hydrocephalus/Increased ICP; ± Meningomyelocele; Postoperative respiratory depression
	Craniosynostosis	Premature fusion of cranial sutures	Open or endoscopic procedure Substantial blood loss Air embolism Supine or prone
	Craniofacial dysostosis	Developmental abnormality	Lengthy procedures Substantial blood loss Brain retraction Air embolism Endotracheal tube damage
	Vascular malformations	Varied	Congestive heart failure Large blood loss Induced hypotension
	Subdural hematoma	Trauma	Associated injuries
Older pediatrics	Posterior fossa tumors	Ependymoma	Hydrocephalus
		Astrocytoma	Increased ICP
		Medulloblastoma	Prone or sitting position
		Teratoma	Air embolism
		Brainstem glioma	Brainstem compression Postoperative cranial nerve dysfunction or brainstem swelling or compression

ICP, Intracranial pressure.

The physiology of the spinal cord is, in general, similar to that of the brain: CO_2 responsiveness, BBB, autoregulation, high metabolic rate and blood flow (though somewhat less than the brain), and substantial ischemic vulnerability of gray matter. However, measures to reduce spinal cord swelling, analogous to ICP reduction maneuvers, are rarely used. The anesthesiologist should be attentive to situations in which there is significant compression of the spinal cord. This arises most often in the setting of cervical spinal stenosis and should be assumed to be present with fracture dislocation of the spinal column. For these patients, we place arterial catheters and support blood pressure carefully. We believe that in these settings, and in patients with recent spinal cord injury (<7 days), blood pressure should be maintained at a MAP of 85 to 90 mm Hg or waking baseline level, whichever is higher. Blood pressure support is less important when the issue is nerve root rather than spinal cord compression. The presence of spinal stenosis and chronic cord compression is frequently, but not invariably, associated with lower extremity hyperreflexia and ankle clonus. Awake intubation may be warranted when there is instability of the cervical spinal column and in some instances of severe cervical spinal stenosis in which it is perceived that minor degrees of flexion or extension, or both, might critically aggravate spinal cord compression. Preintubation discussion and agreement with the surgeon is appropriate.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

TABLE 57.7 Anesthetic Considerations and Position Requirements Associated With Various Spinal Surgical Procedures

Spinal Segment and Surgical Condition	Problems and Considerations	Positions Used and Comments
Cervical region: Spinal stenosis, trauma, rheumatoid arthritis, degenerative disk disease	Maintain neutral neck position to avoid cord compression	Supine/anterior approach for most discectomies Posterior approach (prone or sitting) for laminectomy and pedicle screws
	Maintain perfusion pressure near waking normal levels	If existing cord compression, recent cord injury, or if cord retraction is required
	Hypotension (spinal shock)	Occurs with complete cervical cord injury
	Postoperative respiratory insufficiency	Occurs with cervical cord injury
	Air embolism	With sitting laminectomies
Anterior cervical discectomy	Retractor compression of airway Postoperative swelling/airway compression Postoperative cranial nerve dysfunction	Supine Traction may be required for graft insertion endotracheal tube cuff deflation/reinflation after retractor placement
Cervical instability	Awake intubation Awake positioning Manual in-line stabilization for intubation (if awake intubation is not feasible)	Prone or supine
Thoracolumbar region: degenerative disease, spinal stenosis, trauma	Major position change Awake intubation and position	Prone, lateral, or knee-chest If unstable, post trauma and/or major position change required
	Blood loss	Especially with redos, instrumentations, and spinal stenosis; risk of occult aorto- iliac or major venous injury
	Air embolism Postoperative vision loss	Infrequent Etiology unclear; associated with long prone procedures, low hematocrit, large estimated blood loss, and hypotension; patient variables may contribute (see Chapter 34)
Vertebral metastasis	Large blood loss	Prone or anterolateral/retroperitoneal Lung separation for lesions above L1
Spinal cord tumors	Maintain perfusion pressure during retraction	Prone
Procedures with major neurologic risk	Wake-up test (now rare) Somatosensory evoked responses Motor evoked responses Pedicle screw electromyogram	Rehearse with patient Anesthetic agent restrictions Anesthetic/relaxant restrictions Relaxant restriction

References

1. Fishman RA. *N Engl J Med*. 1975;293:706.
2. Grubb RL, et al. *Stroke*. 1974;5:630.
3. Archer DP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:642.
4. Greenberg JH, et al. *Circ Res*. 1978;43:324.
5. Grosslight K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:533.
6. Petersen KD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:329.
7. Stirt JA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:50.
8. Kovarik DW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:469.
9. Eisenberg HA, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;69:15.
10. Cremer OL, et al. *Lancet*. 2001;357:117.
11. Cannon ML, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2001;95:1053.
12. Otterspoor LC, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2008;21:544.
13. Oertel M, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;97:1045.
14. Steiner LA, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30:2180.
15. Grote J, et al. *Pflugers Arch*. 1981;391:195.
16. Alexander SC, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1968;24:66.
17. Hansen NB, et al. *Ped Res*. 1986;20:147.
18. Cohen PJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1966;27:211.
19. Bruce DA. *Clin Perinatol*. 1984;11:673.
20. Coles JP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:1950.
21. Coles JP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:568.
22. Martin NA, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1997;87:9.
23. van Santbrink H, et al. *Acta Neurochir*. 2002;144:1141.
24. Coles JP, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2004;24:202.
25. Cold GE. *Acta Neurochir*. 1989;96:100.
26. Bouma GJ, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1991;75:685.
27. Gopinath SP, et al. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1994;57:717.
28. Matta BF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:745.
29. Muizelaar JP, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1991;75:731.
30. Ishii R. *J Neurosurg*. 1979;50:587.
31. Engquist H, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2018;30:49.
32. Andrews RJ, Muto RP. *Neurol Res*. 1992;14:19.
33. Xu W, et al. *Acta Neurochir*. 2002;144:679.
34. Raichle ME, et al. *Arch Neurol*. 1970;23:394.
35. Muizelaar JP, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;69:923.
36. Miller JD, et al. *Neurosurg*. 1977;1:114.
37. Yeung WTI, et al. *J Neurooncol*. 1994;18:53.
38. Wilkinson ID, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2006;58:640; discussion 640.
39. Bebawy JF. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2012;24:173.
40. Miller JD, Leech P. *J Neurosurg*. 1975;42:274.
41. Bell BA, et al. *Lancet*. 1987;1:66.
42. Edwards P, et al. *Lancet*. 1957;365:2005.
43. Cottrell JE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;47:28.
44. Marshall LF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1978;48:169.
45. Seo H, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2017;126:1839–1846.
46. Rudehill A, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1993;5:4.
47. Kaufmann AM, Cardoso ER. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;77:584.
48. Diringer MN, Zazulia AR. *Neurocrit Care*. 2004;1:219.
49. Hays AN, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;14:222.

50. Qureshi AI, Suarez JI. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28:3301.
51. Doyle JA, et al. *J Trauma*. 2001;50:367.
52. Francony G, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:795.
53. Sakellaridis N, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2011;114:545.
54. Khanna S, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28:1144.
55. Horn P, et al. *Neurol Res*. 1999;21:758.
56. Ogden AT, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2005;57:207; discussion 207.
57. Marko NF. *Crit Care*. 2012;16:113.
58. Mortazavi MM, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2012;116:210.
59. Berger-Pelletier E, *CJEM*. 2016;18:243.
60. Staub F, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 1994;11:679.
61. Ringel F, et al. *J Neurochem*. 2000;75:125.
62. Carney N, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2017;80:6.
63. Lin C-L, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;99:978.
64. Prell J, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2018:1.
65. Postoperative Visual Loss Study Group. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:15.
66. Albin MS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:346.
67. Sutherland RW, Winter RJ. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41:1073.
68. Brown J, et al. *Resusciation*. 2001;50:233.
69. Ha JF, et al. *A A Pract*. 2018;10:204.
70. Standefer M, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1984;14:649.
71. Matjasko J, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1985;17:695.
72. Black S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:49.
73. Duke DA, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1998;42:1286.
74. Harrison EA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:12.
75. Martin JT. *Positioning In Anesthesia And Surgery*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1988.
76. Marshall WK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62:648.
77. Dalrymple DG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51:1079.
78. Pivalizza EG, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1998;10:34.
79. Wilder BL. *Neurosurgery*. 1982;11:530.
80. Toung TJK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:65.
81. Morales F, et al. *Neurocirugia (Astur)*. 2003;14:5.
82. Drummond JC. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:609.
83. Goodie D, Traill R. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:193.
84. Skahen S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:192.
85. Prabhakar H, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2003;15:278.
86. Toung TT, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1983;12:164.
87. Reasoner DK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1008.
88. Satyarthee GD, Mahapatra AK. *J Clin Neuro Sci*. 2003;10:495.
89. Michenfelder JD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;36:164.
90. Marshall WK, Bedford RF. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;52:131.
91. Papadopoulos G, et al. *Acta Neurochir*. 1994;126:140.
92. Schwarz G, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1994;6:83.
93. Faberowski LW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:20.
94. Tobias JD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:340.
95. Johnson M, et al. *ASA Meeting Abstracts A469*. 2012.
96. Matjasko J. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1996;8:1.
97. Schubert A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1543.
98. Mirski MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:164.
99. Drummond JC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 61985;4:688
100. Bunegin L, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 1981;55:343.
101. Martin JT. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49:793.
102. Roth S, Aronson S. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:1359.
103. Hagen PT, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1984;59:17.
104. Mammoto T, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42:643.
105. Perkins NAK, Bedford RF. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:429.
106. Colohan ART, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1985;62:839.
107. Black S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:235.
108. Engelhardt M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:467.
109. Kwapisz MM, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2004;16:277.
110. Leonard IE, Cunningham AJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:1.
111. Black S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:436.
112. Bedell EA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:947.
113. Tommasino C, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesth*. 1996;8:30.
114. Ljubkovic M, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2012;112:91.
115. Butler BD, Hills BA. *J Appl Physiol*. 1979;47:537.
116. Katz J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61:200.
117. Yahagi N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:720.
118. Grady MS, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1986;65:199.
119. Toung TJK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:53.
120. Geissler HJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:710.
121. Mehta M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1984;28:226.
122. Losasso TJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:21.
123. Losasso TJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:148.
124. Weed LH, McKibben PS. *Am J Physiol*. 1919;48:512.
125. Tommasino C, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1988;16:862.
126. Kellum JA. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:259.
127. McIlroy D, *Intensive Care Med*. 2017;43:795–806.
128. Semler MW, *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:829.
129. Weinberg L, et al. *World J Crit Care Med*. 2016;5:235.
130. Drummond JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:993.
131. Myburgh J, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357:874.
132. Drummond JC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:426; author reply. 427.
133. Van Aken HK, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25:563.
134. Drummond JC. *Anesthesiol*. 2010;112:1079.
135. Grande PO. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2011;23:358.
136. Rodling Wahlstrom M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53:18.
137. Suarez JI, et al. *Acta Neurochir Suppl*. 2015;120:287–290.
138. Suarez JI, et al. *Stroke*. 2012;43:683.
139. Hill MD, et al. *Stroke*. 2011;42:1621.
140. Kozek-Langenecker SA. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:654.
141. Cully MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:706.
142. Trumble ER, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1995;82:44.
143. Van Der Linden P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;116:35.
144. Neff TA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1453; table of contents.
145. Bulger EM, Hoyt DB. *Adv Surg*. 2012;46:73.
146. Oddo M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:3233.
147. Zetterling M, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2011;115:66.
148. Magnoni S, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:1785.
149. Vespa P, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:1923.
150. Bergsneider M, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1997;86:241.
151. Shutter L. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:1995.
152. Jacobi J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:3251.
153. Finfer S, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:1283.
154. Todd MM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:135.
155. Graham DI, et al. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1989;52:346.
156. Clifton GL, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1991;11:114.
157. Clifton GL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:556.
158. Clifton GL, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2010;10:131.
159. Hutchison JS, et al. *N Eng J Med*. 2008;358:2447.
160. Bernard SA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346:557.
161. Hypothermia-after-cardiac-arrest-study-group. *Engl J Med*. 2002; 346:549.
162. Nielsen N, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369:2197.
163. Nolan JP, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;108:118.
164. Donnino MW, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2016;98:97.
165. Crowder CM, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1996;85:98.
166. Johansson B, et al. *Acta Neuropathol (Berl)*. 1970;16:117.
167. Forster A, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 1978;49:26.
168. Hatashita S, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1986;64:643.
169. Mayhan WG. *Am J Physiol*. 1990;258:H1735.
170. Kalfas IH, Little JR. *Neurosurg*. 1988;23:343.
171. Jian M, Han R. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2012;24:459.
172. Grillo P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1145.
173. Tanskanen PE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:658.
174. Bekker A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1340.
175. Connolly Jr ES, et al. *Stroke*. 2012;43:1711.
176. Broderick JP, et al. *Stroke*. 1994;25:1342.
177. O'Kelly CJ, *J Neurosurg*. 2009;111:1029.
178. Kwon JH, *J Korean Neurosurg Soc*. 2008;43:177.
179. Adams H, et al. *Stroke*. 2016;47:2488.
180. Tso MK, et al. *World Neurosurg*. 2016;86:226.
181. Tisdall M, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2006;18:57.
182. Berendes E, et al. *Lancet*. 1997;349:245.
183. Igarashi T, et al. *Neurol Res*. 2007;29:835.
184. Wijdicks EFM, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 1985;18:211.
185. Okuchi K, et al. *Acta Neurochir*. 1996;138:951.
186. Rahman M, Friedman WA. *Neurosurgery*. 2009;65:925; discussion. 935.
187. Deshaies EM, et al. *Neurol Res*. 2009;31:644.
188. Kiser TH. *Hospital Pharmacy*. 2014;49:923.
189. Haque R, et al. *Neurol Res*. 2009;31:638.
190. Rasulo FA, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2012;24:3.
191. Chang HS, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2000;92:971.
192. Foroohar M, et al. *Surg Neurol*. 2000;54:304.
193. Schmidt JM, et al. *Stroke*. 2011;42:1351.

194. Treggiari MM, et Al. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;98:978.
195. Rinkel GJ, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2000;2:CD000483.
196. Kim DH, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2003;53:1044.
197. Muizelaar JP, Becker DP. *Surg Neurol*. 1986;25:317.
198. Raabe A, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;103:974.
199. Dhar R, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2012;116:648.
200. Pickard JD, et al. *Br Med J*. 1989;298:636.
201. Petruk KC, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;68:505.
202. Haley EC, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1993;78:537.
203. Haley EC, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1993;78:548.
204. Stuart RM, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2011;68:337; discussion. 345.
205. Linfante I, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2008;63:1080; discussion. 1086.
206. Kerz T, et al. *Br J Neurosurg*. 2012;26:517.
207. Feng L, et al. *AJNR Am J Neuroradiol*. 2002;23:1284.
208. Fraticelli AT, et al. *Stroke*. 2008;39(3):893.
209. Dorhout Mees SM, et al. *Lancet*. 2012;380(9836):44.
210. Vergouwen MD, et al. *Stroke*. 2010;41:e47.
211. Kirkpatrick PJ, *Lancet Neurol*. 2014;13:666.
212. Matsuda N, et al. *Cerebrovasc Dis*. 2016;42:97.
213. Senbokuya N, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2013;118:121.
214. Macrea LM, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2005;65:139.
215. Naidech AM, et al. *Circulation*. 2005;112:2851.
216. Lee VH, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2006;5:243.
217. Bulsara KR, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;98:524.
218. Hravnak M, et al. *Stroke*. 2009;40:3478.
219. Brouwers PJAM, et al. *Stroke*. 1989;20:1162.
220. Lanzino G, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesth*. 1994;6:156.
221. Meyer FB, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1987;66:109.
222. Jafar JJ, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1986;64:754.
223. Bouma GJ, Muizelaar JP. *J Neurosurg*. 1990;73:368.
224. Ogilvy CS, et al. *Neurosurg*. 1996;38:1202.
225. Samson D, et al. *Neurosurg*. 1994;34:22.
226. Ogilvy CS, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1996;84:785.
227. Drummond JC, et al. *Neurosurg*. 1995;37:742.
228. Hoffman WE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1188.
229. Ridenour TR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:807.
230. Warner DS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:985.
231. Engelhard K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:415.
232. Baughman VL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:192.
233. Soonthon-Brant V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:49.
234. Young WL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:794.
235. Oddo M, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38:1497.
236. Symon L, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1984;60:269.
237. Little JR, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1987;20:421.
238. Quinones-Hinojosa A, *Neurosurg*. 2004;54:916; discussion 924.
239. Bacigaluppi S, *World Neurosurg*. 2012;78:276.
240. Manninen PH. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1995;7:63.
241. Mack WJ, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2007;60:815; discussion. 815.
242. Young WL, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1996;38:1085.
243. Zacharia BE, et al. *Neurosurg Clin N Am*. 2012;23:147.
244. Young WL, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1993;32:491.
245. Meyer B, et al. *Stroke*. 1999;30:2623.
246. Morris CG, McCoy E. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59:464.
247. Crosby ET. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1293.
248. Stene JD. Anesthesia for the critically ill trauma patient. In: Siegel JH, ed. *Trauma: Emergency Surgery And Critical Care*. Melbourne: Churchill Livingstone; 1987:843.
249. Talucci RC, et al. *Am Surgeon*. 1988;54:185.
250. Suderman VS, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38:785.
251. Shatney CH, et al. *Am J Surg*. 1995;170:676.
252. Criswell JC, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49:900.
253. Hastings RH, Kelley SD. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:580.
254. Muckart DJJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:418.
255. Hastings RH, Wood PR. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:825.
256. Chesnut RM, et al. *J Trauma*. 1993;34:216.
257. Stephens CT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:866.
258. Panczykowski DM, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2011;115:541.
259. Stassen NA, et al. *J Trauma*. 2006;60:171.
260. Bachulis BL, et al. *Am J Surg*. 1987;153:473.
261. Fischer RP. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1984;13:905.
262. Stiell IG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:2510.
263. Seelig JM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1981;304:1511.
264. Miller P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:869.
265. DeWitt DS, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;76:812.
266. Pietropaoli JA, et al. *J Trauma*. 1992;33:403.
267. Stocchetti N, et al. *J Trauma*. 1996;40:764.
268. McHugh GS, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:287.
269. Henzler D, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:1027.
270. Jones PA, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1994;6:1.
271. Clifton GL, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:739.
272. Samant UB, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2008;25:495.
273. Bouma GJ, *J Neurosurg*. 1992;77:360.
274. Diringer MN, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;96:103.
275. Tazarourte K, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:422.
276. Hlatky R, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2002;97:1054.
277. Schmidt EA, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;99:991.
278. Schramm P, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2011;23:41.
279. Bruzzone P, et al. *Acta Neurochir*. 1998;71:111.
280. Steiger HJ, et al. *Stroke*. 1996;27:2048.
281. Schroder ML, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 1996;13:17.
282. Marion DW, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1991;74:407.
283. Soustiel JF, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2005;22:955.
284. Chan K-H, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;77:55.
285. Chan KH, et al. *Neurosurg*. 1993;32:547.
286. Robertson CS, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:2086.
287. Marshall LF. *Neurosurg*. 2000;47:546.
288. Robertson CS. *Anesthesiol*. 2001;95:1513.
289. Stiefel MF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2006;105:568.
290. Schirmer-Mikalsen K, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;57:46.
291. Kochanek PM, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;1(suppl 13):S1–S2.
292. Romner B, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1996;85:90.
293. Kelly DF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1996;85:762.
294. Kelly DF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1997;86:633.
295. Muizelaar JP, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1989;71:63.
296. Coles JP, et al. *Brain*. 2004;127:2479.
297. Cremer OL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1211; table of contents.
298. Hlatky R, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2005;57:917; discussion, 917.
299. Lin JW, et al. *Acta Neurochir Suppl*. 2008;101:131.
300. Warner DS, Borel CO. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1208.
301. Howells T, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;102:311.
302. Zweifel C, et al. *Neurosurg Focus*. 2008;25:E2.
303. Trivedi M, Coles JP. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2009;24:96.
304. Johnson U, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2011;68:714; discussion. 721.
305. Aries MJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:2456.
306. Caricato A, Pitoni S. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:2526.
307. Asgeirsson B, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1994;20:260.
308. Asgeirsson B, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:103.
309. Grande PO, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46:929.
310. Sharma D, Vavilala MS. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2011;23:363.
311. Naredi S, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1998;24:446.
312. Eker C, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1881.
313. Naredi S, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:402.
314. Rosner MJ, Daughton S. *J Trauma*. 1990;30:933.
315. Rosner MJ, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1995;83:949.
316. Czosnyka M, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2001;95:756.
317. Imberti R, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;96:97.
318. Stocchetti N, et al. *Chest*. 2005;127:1812.
319. Nekludov M, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:174.
320. Talving P, et al. *J Trauma*. 2011;71:1205.
321. Laroche M, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2012;70:1334.
322. White H, Baker A. *Can J Anesth*. 2002;49:623.
323. Clayton TJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:761.
324. Stocchetti N, et al. *Neurosurg*. 1994;34:38.
325. Schneider GH, et al. *Acta Neurochirurgica*. 1995;134:71.
326. Gopinath SP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:1014.
327. Stiefel MF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;103:805.
328. Nortje J, Gupta AK. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:95.
329. Narotam PK, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2009;111:672.
330. Spiotta AM, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2010;113:571.
331. Bohman LE, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;14:361.
332. Ponce LL, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2012;70:1492; discussion, 1502.
333. Marshall LF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1983;59:285.
334. Peterson EC, Chesnut RM. *J Trauma*. 2011;71:1588.
335. Shiozaki T, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1993;79:363.
336. Marion DW, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1993;79:354.
337. Clifton GL, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 1993;10:263.
338. Metz C, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1996;85:533.
339. Andrews PJ, et al. *Trials*. 2011;12:8.
340. Drummond JC, Todd MM. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:232.
341. Manninen PH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:681.

342. Lobato RD, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1990;72:546.
343. Skirving DJ, Dan NG. *J Neurosurg*. 2001;94:913.
344. Nemergut EC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1170.
345. Korula G, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2001;13:255.
346. Nath G, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1995;7:1.
347. Chui J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(4):881.
348. Drummond JC, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 1992;76:652.
349. Herrick IA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:1280.
350. Manninen PH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:237.
351. Keifer JC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:502; table of contents.
352. Rozet I. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2008;21:537.
353. Mack PF, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2004;16:20.
354. Ard J, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2003;15:263.
355. Bekker AY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:1251.
356. Frost EA, Booij LH. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2007;20:331.
357. Souter MJ, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2007;19:38.
358. Talke P, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2007;19:195.
359. Bustillo MA, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2002;14:209.
360. Sarang A, Dinsmore J. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:161.
361. Deras P, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2012;71:764.
362. Huncke K, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1998;42:1312. discussion, 1316.
363. Cascino GD. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol Suppl*. 1998;48:70.
364. Cascino GD, et al. *J Clin Neurophysiology*. 1993;10:520.
365. McGuire G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:651.
366. Ebrahim ZY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:1004.
367. Gancher S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:616.
368. Wass CT, et al. Epilepsia. 2001;42:1340
369. Kjaer TW, et al. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 2012;121:413.
370. Lyons MK. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2011;86:662.
371. Hammond C, et al. *Trends Neurosci*. 2007;30:357.
372. Poon CC, Irwin MG. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:152.
373. Venkatraghavan L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:1138.
374. Erickson KM, Cole DJ. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30:241.
375. Deogaonkar A, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 2006;104:1337.
376. Rozet I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:1224.
377. Bohmdorfer W, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2003;52:795.
378. Anderson BJ, et al. *Br J Neurosurg*. 1994;8:387.
379. Elias WJ, et al. *Mov Disord*. 2008;23:1317.
380. Lee CZ, Young WL. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30:127.
381. Nogueira RG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:11.
382. Albers GW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:708.
383. Brinjikji W, et al. *Stroke*. 2017;48:2784.
384. Schonenberger S, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;316:1986.
385. Lowhagen Henden P, et al. *Stroke*. 2017;48:1601.
386. Ilyas A, et al. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;112:e355.
387. Hashimoto T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:998.
388. Molyneux A, et al. *Lancet*. 2002;360:1267.
389. Li H, et al. *Stroke*. 2013;44:29.
390. Lanzino G, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2006;104:344.
391. Faught RW, et al. *J Neurointerv Surg*. 2014;6:774.
392. Lin PH, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2007;46:846; discussion 853.

References

1. Fishman RA. Brain edema. *N Engl J Med*. 1975;293:706–711.
2. Grubb Jr RL, Raichle ME, JO Eichling, Ter-Pogossian MM. The effects of changes in PaCO2 on cerebral blood volume, blood flow, and vascular mean transit time. *Stroke*. 1974;5:630–639.
3. Archer DP, Labrecque P, Tyler JL, Meyer E, Trop D. Cerebral blood volume is increased in dogs during administration of nitrous oxide or isoflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:642–648.
4. Greenberg JH, Alavi A, Reivich M, Kuhl D, Uzzell B. Local cerebral blood volume response to carbon dioxide in man. *Circ Res*. 1978;43:324–331.
5. Grosslight K, Foster R, Colohan AR, Bedford RF. Isoflurane for neuroanesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:533–535.
6. Petersen KD, Landsfeldt U, Cold GE, et al. Intracranial pressure and cerebral hemodynamic in patients with cerebral tumors. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:329–336.
7. Stirt JA, Grosslight KR, Bedford RF, Vollmer D. Defasciculation with metocurine prevents succinylcholine-induced increases in intracranial pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:50–53.
8. Kovarik WD, Mayberg TS, Lam AM, Mathisen TL, Winn HR. Succinylcholine does not change intracranial pressure, cerebral blood flow velocity, or the electroencephalogram in patients with neurologic injury. *Anesthesia & Analgesia*. 1994;78:469–473.
9. Eisenberg HM, Frankowski RF, Contant CF, Marshall LF, Walker MD. High-dose barbiturate control of elevated intracranial pressure in patients with severe head injury. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;69:15–23.
10. Cremer OL, Moons KGM, Bouman EAC, Kruijswijk JE, de Smet AMGA, Kalkman CJ. Long-term propofol infusion and cardiac failure in adult head-injured patients. *Lancet*. 2001;357:117–118.
11. Cannon ML, Glazier SS, Bauman LA. Metabolic acidosis, rhabdomyolysis, and cardiovascular collapse after prolonged propofol infusion. *J Neurosurg*. 2001;95:1053–1056.
12. Otterspoor LC, Kalkman CJ, Cremer OL. Update on the propofol infusion syndrome in ICU management of patients with head injury. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2008;21:544–551.
13. Oertel M, Kelly DF, Lee JH, et al. Efficacy of hyperventilation, blood pressure elevation, and metabolic suppression therapy in controlling intracranial pressure after head injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;97:1045–1053.
14. Steiner LA, Balestreri M, Johnston AJ, et al. Sustained moderate reductions in arterial CO2 after brain trauma time-course of cerebral blood flow velocity and intracranial pressure. *Inten Care Med*. 2004;30:2180–2187.
15. Grote J, Zimmer K, Schubert R. Effects of severe arterial hypocapnia on regional blood flow regulation, tissue PO2 and metabolism in the brain cortex of cats. *Pflugers Arch*. 1981;391:195–199.
16. Alexander SC, Smith TC, Strobel G, Stephen GW, Wollman H. Cerebral carbohydrate metabolism of man during respiratory and etabolic alkalosis. *J Appl Physiol*. 1968;24:66–72.
17. Hansen NB, Nowicki PT, Miller RR, Malone T, Bickers RG, Menke JA. Alterations in cerebral blood flow and oxygen consumption during prolonged hypocarbia. *Ped Res*. 1986;20:147–150.
18. Cohen PJ, Reivich M, Greenbaum L. The electroencephalogram of awake man during hyperventilation: effects of oxygen at three atmospheres (absolute) pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 1966;27:211–212.
19. Bruce DA. Effects of hyperventilation on cerebral blood flow and metabolism. *Clin Perinatol*. 1984;11:673–680.
20. Coles JP, Minhas PS, Fryer TD, et al. Effect of hyperventilation on cerebral blood flow in traumatic head injury: clinical relevance and monitoring correlates*. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:1950–1959.
21. Coles JP, Fryer TD, Coleman MR, et al. Hyperventilation following head injury: effect on ischemic burden and cerebral oxidative metabolism*. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:568–578.
22. Martin NA, Patwardhan RV, Alexander MJ, et al. Characterization of cerebral hemodynamic phases following severe head trauma: hypoperfusion, hyperemia, and vasospasm. *J Neurosurg*. 1997;87:9–19.
23. van Santbrink H, Schouten JW, Steyerberg EW, Avezaat CJJ, Maas aIR. Serial transcranial Doppler measurements in traumatic brain injury with special focus on the early posttraumatic period. *Acta Neurochirurgica*. 2002;144:1141–1149.
24. Coles JP, Fryer TD, Smielewski P, et al. Incidence and mechanisms of cerebral ischemia in early clinical head injury. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2004;24:202–211.
25. Cold GE. Does acute hyperventilation provoke cerebral oligaemia in comatose patients after acute head injury? *Acta Neurochir*. 1989;96:100–106.
26. Bouma GJ, Muizelaar JP, Choi SC, Newlon PG, Young HF. Cerebral circulation and metabolism after severe traumatic brain injury: the elusive role of ischemia. *J Neurosurg*. 1991;75:685–693.
27. Gopinath SP, Robertson CS, Contant CF, et al. Jugular venous desaturation and outcome after head injury. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1994;57:717–723.
28. Matta BF, Lam AM, Mayberg TS, Shapira Y, Winn HR. A critique of the intraoperative use of jugular venous bulb catheters during neurosurgical procedures. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:745–750.
29. Muizelaar JP, Marmarou A, Ward JD, et al. Adverse effects of prolonged hyperventilation in patients with severe head injury: a randomized clinical trial. *J Neurosurg*. 1991;75:731–739.
30. Ishii R. Regional cerebral blood flow in patients with ruptured intracranial aneurysms. *J Neurosurg*. 1979;50:587–594.
31. Engquist H, Lewen A, Howells T, et al. Hemodynamic disturbances in the early phase after subarachnoid hemorrhage: regional cerebral blood flow studied by bedside xenon-enhanced CT. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2018;30:49–58.
32. Andrews RJ, Muto RP. Retraction brain ischaemia: cerebral blood flow, evoked potentials, hypotension and hyperventilation in a new animal model. *Neurological Res*. 1992;14:12–18.
33. Xu W, Mellergard P, Ungerstedt U, Nordstrom CH. Local changes in cerebral energy metabolism due to brain retraction during routine neurosurgical procedures. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 2002;144:679–683.
34. Raichle ME, Posner JB, Plum F. Cerebral blood flow during. *Archiv Neurol*. 1970;23:394–403.
35. Muizelaar JP, van der Poel HG, Li Z, Kontos HA, Levasseur JE. Pial arteriolar vessel diameter and CO2 reactivity during prolonged hyperventilation in the rabbit. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;69:923–927.
36. Miller JD, Sakalas R, Ward JD, et al. Methylprednisolone treatment in patients with brain tumors. *Neurosurg*. 1977;1:114–117.
37. Yeung WTI, Lee TY, Del Maestro RF, Kozak R, Bennett J, Brown T. Effect of steroids on iopamidol blood-brain transfer constant and plasma volume in brain tumors measured with X-ray computed tomography. *J Neuro-Oncol.* 1994;18:53–60.
38. Wilkinson ID, Jellineck DA, Levy D, et al. Dexamethasone and enhancing solitary cerebral mass lesions: alterations in perfusion and blood-tumor barrier kinetics shown by magnetic resonance imaging. *Neurosurgery*. 2006;58:640–646.
39. Bebawy JF. Perioperative steroids for peritumoral intracranial edema. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2012;24:173–177.
40. Miller JD, Leech P. Effects of mannitol and steroid therapy on intracranial volume-pressure relationships in patients. *J Neurosurg*. 1975;42:274–281.
41. Bell BA, Smith MA, Kean DM, et al. Brain water measured by magnetic resonance imaging. Correlation with direct estimation and changes after mannitol and dexamethasone. *Lancet*. 1987;1:66–69.
42. Edwards P, Arango M, Balica L, et al. Final results of MRC CRASH, a randomised placebo-controlled trial of intravenous corticosteroid in adults with head injury-outcomes at 6 months. *Lancet*. 2005;365:1957–1959.
43. Cottrell JE, Robustelli A, Post K, Turndorf H. Furosemide- and mannitol-induced changes in intracranial pressure and serum osmolality and electrolytes. *Anesthesiology*. 1977;47:28–30.
44. Marshall LF, Smith RW, Rauscher LA, Shapiro HM. Mannitol dose requirements in brain-injured patients. *J Neurosurg*. 1978;48:169–172.
45. Seo H, Kim E, Jung H, et al. A prospective randomized trial of the optimal dose of mannitol for intraoperative brain relaxation in patients undergoing craniotomy for supratentorial brain tumor resection. *J Neurosurg*. 2017;126:1839–1846.
46. Rudehill A, Gordon E, Ohman G, Lindqvist C, Andersson P. Pharmacokinetics and effects of mannitol on hemodynamics, blood and cerebrospinal fluid electrolytes, and osmolality during intracranial surgery. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1993;5:4–12.
47. Kaufmann AM, Cardoso ER. Aggravation of vasogenic cerebral edema by multiple-dose mannitol. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;77:584–589.
48. Diringer MN, Zazulia AR. Osmotic therapy: fact and fiction. *Neurocritical Care*. 2004;1:219–234.

49. Hays AN, Lazaridis C, Neyens R, Nicholas J, Gay S, Chalela JA. Osmotherapy: use among neurointensivists. *Neurocritical Care*. 2010;14:222–228.
50. Qureshi AI, Suarez JI. Use of hypertonic saline solutions in treatment of cerebral edema and intracranial hypertension. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28:3301–3313.
51. Doyle JA, Davis DP, Hoyt David B. The use of hypertonic saline in the treatment of traumatic brain injury. *J Trauma*. 2001;50:367–383.
52. Francony G, Fauvage B, Falcon D, et al. Equimolar doses of mannitol and hypertonic saline in the treatment of increased intracranial pressure*. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:795–800.
53. Sakellaridis N, Pavlou E, Karatzas S, et al. Comparison of mannitol and hypertonic saline in the treatment of severe brain injuries. *J Neurosurg*. 2011;114:545–548.
54. Khanna S, Davis D, Peterson B, et al. Use of hypertonic saline in the treatment of severe refractory posttraumatic intracranial hypertension in pediatric traumatic brain injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28:1144–1151.
55. Horn P, Munch E, Vajkoczy P, et al. Hypertonic saline solution for control of elevated intracranial pressure in patients with exhausted response to mannitol and barbiturates. *Neurol Res*. 1999;21:758–764.
56. Ogden AT, Mayer SA, Connolly ES. Hyperosmolar agents in neurosurgical practice: the evolving role of hypertonic saline. *Neurosurgery*. 2005;57:207–215.
57. Marko NF. Hypertonic saline, not mannitol, should be considered gold-standard medical therapy for intracranial hypertension. *Crit Care*. 2012;16:113.
58. Mortazavi MM, Romeo AK, Deep A, et al. Hypertonic saline for treating raised intracranial pressure: literature review with meta-analysis. *J Neurosurg*. 2012;116:210–221.
59. Berger-Pelletier E, Emond M, Lauzier F, Shields JF, Turgeon AF. Hypertonic saline in severe traumatic brain injury: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials - ERRATUM. *CJEM*. 2016;18:243.
60. Staub F, Stoffel M, Berger S, Eriskat J, Baethmann A. Treatment of vasogenic brain edema with the novel Cl- transport inhibitor torasemide. *J Neurotrauma*. 1994;11:679–690.
61. Ringel F, Chang RCC, Staub F, Baethmann A, Plesnila N. Contribution of anion transporters to the acidosis-induced swelling and intracellular acidification of glial cells. *J Neurochem*. 2001;75:125–132.
62. Carney N, Totten AM, O'Reilly C, et al. Guidelines for the management of severe traumatic brain injury. *Neurosurgery*. 2017;80:6–15.
63. Lin C-L, Dumont AS, Lieu A-S, et al. Characterization of perioperative seizures and epilepsy following aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;99:978–985.
64. Prell J, Schenk G, Taute BM, et al. Reduced risk of venous thromboembolism with the use of intermittent pneumatic compression after craniotomy: a randomized controlled prospective study. *J Neurosurg*. 2018:1–7.
65. Postoperative Visual Loss Study G. Risk factors associated with ischemic optic neuropathy after spinal fusion surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:15–24.
66. Albin MS, Ritter RR, Pruett CE, Kalff K. Venous air embolism during lumbar laminectomy in the prone position: report of three cases. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:346–349.
67. Sutherland RW, Winter RJ. Two cases of fatal air embolism in children undergoing scoliosis surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41:1073–1076.
68. Brown J, Rogers J, Soar J. Cardiac arrest during surgery and ventilation in the prone position: a case report and systematic review. *Resuscitation*. 2001;50:233–238.
69. Ha JF, Vitale LN, Pfarr MA, Kawai Y, Zopf DA. Massive macroglossia after posterior cranial fossa surgery: a case report. *A A Pract*. 2018;10:204–208.
70. Standefer M, Bay JW, Trusso R. The sitting position in neurosurgery: a retrospective analysis of 488 cases. *Neurosurg*. 1984;14:649–658.
71. Matjasko J, Petrozza P, Cohen M, Steinberg P. Anesthesia and surgery in the seated position: analysis of 554 cases. *Neurosurgery*. 1985;17:695–702.
72. Black S, Ockert DB, Oliver WC, Cucchiara RF. Outcome following posterior fossa craniectomy in patients in the sitting or horizontal positions. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:49–56.
73. Duke DA, Lynch JJ, Harner SG, Faust RJ, Ebersold MJ. Venous air embolism in sitting and supine patients undergoing vestibular schwannoma resection. *Neurosurgery*. 1998;42:1282–1286.
74. Harrison EA, Mackersie A, McEwan A, Facer E. The sitting position for neurosurgery in children: a review of 16 years' experience. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:12–17.
75. Martin JT. *Positioning in Anesthesia and Surgery*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1987.
76. Marshall WK, Bedford RF, Miller ED. Cardiovascular responses in the seated position—impact of four anesthetic techniques. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62:648–653.
77. Dalrymple DG, Macgowan SW, Macleod GF. Cardiorespiratory effects of the sitting position in neurosurgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51:1079–1082.
78. Pivalizza EG, Katz J, Singh S, Liu W, McGraw-Wall BL. Massive macroglossia after posterior fossa surgery in the prone position. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1998;10:34–36.
79. Wilder BL. Hypothesis: the etiology of midcervical quadriplegia after operation with the patient in the sitting position. *Neurosurgery*. 1982;11:530–531.
80. Toung TJK, McPherson RW, Ahn H, Donham RT, Alano J, Long D. Pneumocephalus. *Anesth Analg*. 1986;65:65–70.
81. Morales F, Maillo A, Hernandez J, et al. [Evaluation of microsurgical treatment in a series of 121 intracranial aneurysms]. *Neurocirugia (Astur)*. 2003;14:5–15.
82. Drummond JC. Tension pneumocephalus and intermittent drainage of ventricular CSF. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:609.
83. Goodie D, Traill R. Intraoperative subdural tension pneumocephalus arising after opening of the dura. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:193–194.
84. Skahen S, Shapiro HM, Drummond JC, Todd MM, Zelman V. Nitrous oxide withdrawal reduces intracranial pressure in the presence of pneumocephalus. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:192–195.
85. Prabhakar H, Bithal PK, Garg A. Tension pneumocephalus after craniotomy in supine position. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2003;15:278–281.
86. Toung T, Donham RT, Lehner A, Alano J, Campbell J. Tension pneumocephalus after posterior fossa craniotomy: report of four additional cases and review of postoperative pneumocephalus. *Neurosurgery*. 1983;12:164–168.
87. Reasoner DK, Todd MM, Scamman FL, Warner DS. The incidence of pneumocephalus after supratentorial craniotomy. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1008–1012.
88. Satyarthee GD, Mahapatra AK. Tension pneumocephalus following transsphenoid surgery for pituitary adenoma—report of two cases. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2003;10:495–497.
89. Michenfelder JD, Miller RH, Gronert GA. Evaluation of an ultrasonic device (Doppler) for the diagnosis of venous air embolism. *Anesthesiol*. 1972;36:164–167.
90. Marshall K, Bedford RF. Use of a pulmonary-artery catheter for detection and treatment of venous air embolism. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;52:135–141.
91. Papadopoulos G, Kuhly P, Brock M, Rudolph KH, Link J, Eyrich K. Venous and paradoxical air embolism in the sitting position. A prospective study with transoesophageal echocardiography. *Acta Neurochirurg*. 1994;126:140–143.
92. Schwarz G, Fuchs G, Weihs W, et al. Sitting position for neurosurgery: experience with preoperative contrast echocardiography in 301 patients. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1994;6:83–88.
93. Faberowski LW, Black S, Mickle JP. Incidence of venous air embolism during craniectomy for craniosynostosis repair. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:20.
94. Tobias JD, Johnson JO, Jimenez DF, Barone CM, McBride DS. Venous air embolism during endoscopic strip craniectomy for repair of craniosynostosis in infants. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:340–342.
95. Johnson M, et al. Venous air embolism during awake craniotomy for deep brain stimulation electrode implantation. *ASA Meeting Abstracts*. 2012:A469.
96. Matjasko J. Lessons learned. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1996;8:1–2.
97. Schubert A, Deogaonkar A, Drummond JC. Precordial Doppler probe placement for optimal detection of venous air embolism during craniotomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1543–1547.
98. Mirski MA, Lele AV, Fitzsimmons L, Toung TJK. Diagnosis and treatment of vascular air embolism. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:164–177.

99. Drummond JC, Prutow RJ, Scheller MS. A comparison of the sensitivity of pulmonary artery pressure, end-tidal carbon dioxide, and end-tidal nitrogen in the detection of venous air embolism in the dog. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:688–692.
100. Bunegin L, Albin MS, Helsel PE, Hoffman A, Hung T-K. Positioning the right atrial catheter. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55:343–348.
101. Martin JT. Neuroanesthetic adjuncts for patients in the sitting position. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49:793–808.
102. Roth S, Aronson S. Placement of a right atrial air aspiration catheter guided by transesophageal echocardiography. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:1359–1361.
103. Hagen PT, Scholz DG, Edwards WD. Incidence and size of patent foramen ovale during the first 10 decades of life: an autopsy study of 965 normal hearts. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings*. 1984;59:17–20.
104. Mammoto T, Hayashi Y, Ohnishi Y, Kuro M. Incidence of venous and paradoxical air embolism in neurosurgical patients in the sitting position: detection by transesophageal echocardiography. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42:643–647.
105. Perkins NAK, Bedford RF. Hemodynamic consequences of PEEP in seated neurological patients-implications for paradoxical air embolism. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:429–432.
106. Colohan ART, Perkins NAK, Bedford RF, Jane JA. Intravenous fluid loading as prophylaxis for paradoxical air embolism. *J Neurosurg*. 1985;62:839–842.
107. Black S, Cucchiara RF, Nishimura RA, Michenfelder JD. Parameters affecting occurrence of paradoxical air embolism. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:235–241.
108. Engelhardt M, Folkers W, Brenke C, et al. Neurosurgical operations with the patient in sitting position: analysis of risk factors using transcranial Doppler sonography. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:467–472.
109. Kwapisz MM, Deinsberger W, Muller M, et al. Transesophageal echocardiography as a guide for patient positioning before neurosurgical procedures in semi-sitting position. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2004;16:277–281.
110. Leonard IE, Cunningham AJ. The sitting position in neurosurgery--not yet obsolete!. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:1–3.
111. Black S, Muzzi DA, Nishimura RA, Cucchiara RF. Preoperative and intraoperative echocardiography to detect right-to-left shunt in patients undergoing neurosurgical procedures in the sitting position. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:436–438.
112. Bedell EA, Berge KH, Losasso TJ. Paradoxic air embolism during venous air embolism: transesophageal echocardiographic evidence of transpulmonary air passage. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:947–950.
113. Tommasino C, Rizzardi R, Beretta L, Venturino M, Piccoli S. Cerebral ischemia after venous air embolism in the absence of intracardiac defects. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1996;8:30–34.
114. Ljubkovic M, Zanchi J, Breskovic T, Marinovic J, Lojpur M, Dujic Z. Determinants of arterial gas embolism after scuba diving. *J App Physiol*. 2012;112:91–95.
115. Butler BD, Hills BA. The lung as a filter for microbubbles. *J App Physiol*. 1979;47:537–543.
116. Katz J, Leiman BC, Butler BD. Effects of inhalation anaesthetics on filtration of venous gas emboli by the pulmonary vasculature. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61:200–205.
117. Yahagi N, Furuya H, Sai Y, Amakata Y. Effect of halothane, fentanyl, ketamine on the threshold for transpulmonary passage of venous air emboli in dogs. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:720–723.
118. Grady MS, Bedford RF, Park TS. Changes in superior sagittal sinus pressure in children with head elevation, jugular venous compression, and PEEP. *J Neurosurg*. 1986;65:199–202.
119. Toung TJK, Miyabe M, McShane AJ, Rogers MC, Traystman RJ. Effect of PEEP and jugular venous compression on canine cerebral blood flow and oxygen consumption in the head elevated position. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:53–58.
120. Geissler HJ, Allen SJ, Mehlhorn U, Davis KL, Morris WP, Butler BD. Effect of body repositioning after venous air embolism. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:710–717.
121. Mehta M, Sokoll MD, Gergis SD. Effects of venous air embolism on the cardiovascular system and acid base balance in the presence and absence of nitrous oxide. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1984;28:226–231.
122. Losasso TJ, Muzzi DA, Dietz NM, Cucchiara RF. Fifty percent nitrous oxide does not increase the risk of venous air embolism in neurosurgical patients operated upon in the sitting position. *Anesthesiol*. 1992;77:21–30.
123. Losasso TJ, Black S, Muzzi DA, Michenfelder JD, Cucchiara RF. Detection and hemodynamic consequences of venous air embolism. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:148–152.
124. Weed LH, McKibben PS. Pressure changes in the cerebro-spinal fluid following intravenous injection of solutions of various concentrations. *Am J Physiol-Legacy Content*. 1919;48:512–530.
125. Tommasino C, Moore S, Todd MM. Cerebral effects of isovolemic hemodilution with crystalloid or colloid solutions. *Crit Care Med*. 1988;16:862–868.
126. Kellum JA. Saline-induced hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:259–261.
127. McIlroy D, Murphy D, Kasza J, Bhatia D, Wutzlhofer L, Marasco S. Effects of restricting perioperative use of intravenous chloride on kidney injury in patients undergoing cardiac surgery: the LICRA pragmatic controlled clinical trial. *Intensive Care Med*. 2017;43:795–806.
128. Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in critically ill adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:829–839.
129. Weinberg L, Collins N, Mourik VK, Tan C, Bellomo R. Plasma-Lyte 148: a clinical review. *World J Crit Care Med*. 2016;5:235.
130. Drummond JC, Patel PM, Cole DJ, Kelly PJ. The effect of the reduction of colloid reduction of oncotic pressure, with and without reduction of osmolality, on post-traumatic cerebral edema. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:993–1002.
131. Myburgh J, et al. Saline or albumin for fluid resuscitation in patients with traumatic brain injury. *N Eng J Med*. 2007;357:874–884.
132. Drummond JC, Patel PM, Lemkuil B. Proscribing the use of albumin in the head-injured patient is not warranted. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:426–427.
133. Van Aken HK, Kampmeier TG, Ertmer C, Westphal M. Fluid resuscitation in patients with traumatic brain injury. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25:563–565.
134. Drummond JC. Colloid osmotic pressure and the formation of posttraumatic cerebral edema. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:1079–1081.
135. Grande P-O. The lund concept for the treatment of patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2011;23:358–362.
136. Rodling Wahlstrom M, Olivecrona M, Nystrom F, Koskinen LO, Naredi S. Fluid therapy and the use of albumin in the treatment of severe traumatic brain injury. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;53:18–25.
137. Suarez JI, Martin RH, Calvillo E, Bershad EM, Venkatasubba Rao CP. Effect of human albumin on TCD vasospasm, DCI, and cerebral infarction in subarachnoid hemorrhage: the ALISAH study. *Acta Neurochir Suppl*. 2015;120:287–290.
138. Suarez JI, Martin RH, Calvillo E, et al. The albumin in subarachnoid hemorrhage (alisah) multicenter pilot clinical trial: safety and neurologic outcomes. *Stroke*. 2012;43:683–690.
139. Hill MD, Martin RH, Palesch YY, et al. Albumin administration in acute ischemic stroke: safety analysis of the alias part 2 multicenter trial. *PLoS One*. 2015;10:e0131390.
140. Kozek-Langenecker SA. Effects of hydroxyethyl starch solutions on hemostasis. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:654–660.
141. Cully MD, Larson CP, Silverberg GD. Hetastarch coagulopathy in a neurosurgical patient. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:706.
142. Trumble ER, Muizelaar JP, Myseros JS, Choi SC, Warren BB. Coagulopathy with the use of hetastarch in the treatment of vasospasm. *J Neurosurg*. 1995;82:44–47.
143. Van Der Linden P, James M, Mythen M, Weiskopf RB. Safety of modern starches used during surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:35–48.
144. Neff TA, Doelberg M, Jungheinrich C, Sauerland A, Spahn DR, Stocker R. Repetitive large-dose infusion of the novel hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.4 In patients with severe head injury. *Anesth Analg*. 2003:1453–1459.
145. Bulger EM, Hoyt DB. Hypertonic resuscitation after severe injury. *Adv Surg*. 2012;46:73–85.
146. Oddo M, Schmidt JM, Carrera E, et al. Impact of tight glycemic control on cerebral glucose metabolism after severe brain injury: a microdialysis study. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:3233–3238.
147. Zetterling M, Hillered L, Enblad P, et al. Relation between brain interstitial and systemic glucose concentrations after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg*. 2011;115:66–74.
148. Magnoni S, Tedesco C, Carbonara M, Pluderi M, Colombo A, Stocchetti N. Relationship between systemic glucose and cerebral glucose is preserved in patients with severe traumatic brain injury, but glucose delivery to the brain may become limited when oxidative metabolism is impaired. *Criti Care Med*. 2012;40:1785–1791.

149. Vespa P, McArthur DL, Stein N, et al. Tight glycemic control increases metabolic distress in traumatic brain injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:1923–1929.
150. Bergsneider M, Hovda DA, Shalmon E, et al. Cerebral hyperglycolysis following severe traumatic brain injury in humans: a positron emission tomography study. *J Neurosurg*. 1997;86:241–251.
151. Shutter L. Glucose control in traumatic brain injury. *Criti Care Med*. 2012;40:1995–1996.
152. Jacobi J, Bircher N, Krinsley J, et al. Guidelines for the use of an insulin infusion for the management of hyperglycemia in critically ill patients. *Criti Care Med*. 2012;40:3251–3276.
153. Finfer S, et al. Intensive versus conventional glucose control in critically ill patients. *N Eng J Med*. 2009;360:1283–1297.
154. Todd MM, Hindman BJ, Clarke WR, Torner JC. Mild intraoperative hypothermia during surgery for intracranial aneurysm. *N Eng J Med*. 2005;352:135–145.
155. Graham DI, Ford I, Adams JH, et al. Ischaemic brain damage is still common in fatal non-missile head injury. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1989;52:346–350.
156. Clifton GL, Jiang JY, Lyeth BG, Jenkins LW, Hamm RJ, Hayes RL. Marked protection by moderate hypothermia after experimental traumatic brain injury. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 1991;11:114–121.
157. Clifton GL, Miller ER, Choi SC, et al. Lack of effect of induction of hypothermia after acute brain injury. *N Eng J Med*. 2001;344:556–563.
158. Clifton GL, Valadka A, Zygun D, et al. Very early hypothermia induction in patients with severe brain injury (the National Acute Brain Injury Study: Hypothermia II): a randomised trial. *Lancet Neurol*. 2011;10:131–139.
159. Hutchison JS, Ward RE, Lacroix J, et al. Hypothermia therapy after traumatic brain injury in children. *N Eng J Med*. 2008;358:2447–2456.
160. Bernard SA, Gray TW, Buist MD, et al. Treatment of comatose survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest with induced hypothermia. *N Eng J Med*. 2002;346:557–563.
161. Hypothermia-after-cardiac-arrest-study-group. Mild therapeutic hypothermia to improve the neurologic outcome after cardiac arrest. *N Eng J Med*. 2002;346:549–556.
162. Nielsen N, Wetterslev J, Cronberg T, et al. Targeted temperature management at 33 degrees C versus 36 degrees C after cardiac arrest. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369:2197–2206.
163. Nolan JP. Therapeutic Hypothermia After Cardiac Arrest: an advisory statement by the Advanced Life Support Task Force of the International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation. *Circulation*. 2003;108:118–121.
164. Donnino MW, Andersen LW, Berg KM, et al. Temperature management after cardiac arrest: an advisory statement by the advanced life support task force of the international liaison committee on resuscitation and the American Heart Association emergency cardiovascular care committee and the council on cardiopulmonary, critical care, perioperative and resuscitation. *Resuscitation*. 2016;98:97–104.
165. Crowder CM, Tempelhoff R, Theard MAl, Cheng MA, Todorov A, Dacey RG. Jugular bulb temperature: comparison with brain surface and core temperatures in neurosurgical patients during mild hypothermia. *J Neurosurg*. 1996;85:98–103.
166. Johansson B, Li C-L, Olsson Y, Klatzo I. The effect of acute arterial hypertension on the blood-brain barrier to protein tracers. *Acta Neuropathol*. 1970;16:117–124.
167. Forster A, Van Horn K, Marshall LF, Shapiro HM. Anesthetic effects on blood-brain barrier function during acute arterial hypertension. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;49:26–30.
168. Hatashita S, Hoff JT, Ishii S. Focal brain edema associated with acute arterial hypertension. *J Neurosurg*. 1986;64:643–649.
169. Mayhan WG. Disruption of blood-brain barrier during acute hypertension in adult and aged rats. *Am J Physiol-Heart Circul Physiol*. 1990;258:H1735–H1738.
170. Kalfas IH, Little JR. Postoperative hemorrhage: a survey of 4992 intracranial procedures. *Neurosurgery*. 1988;23:343–347.
171. Jian M, Han R. Incidence and risk factors for postcraniotomy intracranial hematoma. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2012;24:459.
172. Grillo P, Bruder N, Auquier P, Pellissier D, Gouin Fo. Esmolol blunts the cerebral blood flow velocity increase during emergence from anesthesia in neurosurgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2003:1145–1149.
173. Tanskanen PE, Kytta JV, Randell TT, Aantaa RE. Dexmedetomidine as an anaesthetic adjuvant in patients undergoing intracranial tumour surgery: a double-blind, randomized and placebo-controlled study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:658–665.
174. Bekker A, Sturaitis M, Bloom M, et al. The effect of dexmedetomidine on perioperative hemodynamics in patients undergoing craniotomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1340–1347.
175. Connolly Jr ES, Rabinstein AA, Carhuapoma JR, et al. Guidelines for the management of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. *Stroke*. 2012;43:1711–1737.
176. Broderick JP, Brott TG, Duldner JE, Tomsick T, Leach A. Initial and recurrent bleeding are the major causes of death following subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Stroke*. 1994;25:1342–1347.
177. O'Kelly CJ, Kulkarni AV, Austin PC, Urbach D, Wallace MC. Shunt-dependent hydrocephalus after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: incidence, predictors, and revision rates. Clinical article. *J Neurosurg*. 2009;111:1029–1035.
178. Kwon JH, Sung SK, Song YJ, Choi HJ, Huh JT, Kim HD. Predisposing factors related to shunt-dependent chronic hydrocephalus after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Korean Neurosurg Soc*. 2008;43:177–181.
179. Adams H, Ban VS, Leinonen V, et al. Risk of shunting after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a collaborative study and initiation of a consortium. *Stroke*. 2016;47:2488–2496.
180. Tso MK, Ibrahim GM, Macdonald RL. Predictors of shunt-dependent hydrocephalus following aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *World Neurosurg*. 2016;86:226–232.
181. Tisdall M, Crocker M, Watkiss J, Smith M. Disturbances of sodium in critically ill adult neurologic patients. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2006;18:57–63.
182. Berendes E, Walter M, Cullen P, et al. Secretion of brain natriuretic peptide in patients with aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage. *Lancet*. 1997;349:245–249.
183. Igarashi T, Moro N, Katayama Y, Mori T, Kojima J, Kawamata T. Prediction of symptomatic cerebral vasospasm in patients with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: relationship to cerebral salt wasting syndrome. *Neurol Res*. 2007;29:835–841.
184. Wijdicks EFM, Vermeulen M, ten Haaf JA, Hijidra A, Bakker WH, van Gijn J. Volume depletion and natriuresis in patients with a ruptured intracranial aneurysm. *Ann Neuro*. 1985;18:211–216.
185. Okuchi K, Fujioka M, Fujikawa A, et al. Rapid natriuresis and preventive hypervolaemia for symptomatic vasospasm after subarachnoid haemorrhage. *Acta Neuroch*. 1996;138:951–957.
186. Rahman M, Friedman WA. Hyponatremia in neurosurgical patients. *Neurosurg*. 2009;65:925–936.
187. Deshaies EM, Boulos AS, Popp AJ. Peri-operative medical management of cerebral vasospasm. *Neurolog Res*. 2009;31:644–650.
188. Kiser TH. Cerebral vasospasm in critically iii patients with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: does the evidence support the ever-growing list of potential pharmacotherapy interventions? *Hospital Pharmacy*. 2014;49:923–941.
189. Haque R, Kellner CP, Komotar RJ, et al. Mechanical treatment of vasospasm. *Neurolog Res*. 2009;31:638–643.
190. Rasulo FA, Girardini A, Lavinio A, et al. Are optimal cerebral perfusion pressure and cerebrovascular autoregulation related to long-term outcome in patients with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage? *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2012;24:3–8.
191. Chang HS, Hongo K, Nakagawa H. Adverse effects of limited hypotensive anesthesia on the outcome of patients with subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg*. 2000;92:971–975.
192. Foroohar M, Macdonald RL, Roth S, Stoodley M, Weir B. Intraoperative variables and early outcome after aneurysm surgery. *Surg Neurol*. 2000;54:304–315.
193. Schmidt JM, Ko SB, Helbok R, et al. Cerebral perfusion pressure thresholds for brain tissue hypoxia and metabolic crisis after poor-grade subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Stroke*. 2011;42:1351–1356.
194. Treggiari MM, Walder B, Suter PM, Romand J-A. Systematic review of the prevention of delayed ischemic neurological deficits with hypertension, hypervolemia, and hemodilution therapy following subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;98:978–984.
195. Rinkel GJ, Feigin VL, Algra A, Gijn J. Circulatory volume expansion therapy for aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2000;2:CD000483.

196. Kim DH, Joseph M, Ziadi S, Nates J, Dannenbaum M, Malkoff M. Increases in cardiac output can reverse flow deficits from vasospasm independent of blood pressure: a study using xenon computed tomographic measurement of cerebral blood flow. *Neurosurgery*. 2003;53:1044–1052.
197. Muizelaar JP, Becker DP. Induced hypertension for the treatment of cerebral ischemia after subarachnoid hemorrhage. Direct effect on cerebral blood flow. *Surg Neurol*. 1986;25:317–325.
198. Raabe A, Beck Jg, Keller M, Vatter H, Zimmermann M, Seifert V. Relative importance of hypertension compared with hypervolemia for increasing cerebral oxygenation in patients with cerebral vasospasm after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;103:974–981.
199. Dhar R, Scalfani MT, Zazulia AR, Videen TO, Derdeyn CP, Diringer MN. Comparison of induced hypertension, fluid bolus, and blood transfusion to augment cerebral oxygen delivery after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg*. 2012;116:648–656.
200. Pickard JD, Murray GD, Illingworth R, et al. Effect of oral nimodipine on cerebral infarction and outcome after subarachnoid haemorrhage: British aneurysm nimodipine trial. *BMJ*. 1989;298:636–642.
201. Petruk KC, West M, Mohr G, et al. Nimodipine treatment in poor-grade aneurysm patients. Results of a multicenter double-blind placebo-controlled trial. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;68:505–517.
202. Haley EC, Kassell NF, Torner JC. A randomized controlled trial of high-dose intravenous nicardipine in aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg*. 1993;78:537–547.
203. Haley EC, Kassell NF, Torner JC. A randomized trial of nicardipine in subarachnoid hemorrhage: angiographic and transcranial Doppler ultrasound results. *J Neurosurg*. 1993;78:548–553.
204. Stuart RM, Helbok R, Kurtz P, et al. High-dose intra-arterial verapamil for the treatment of cerebral vasospasm after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurosurg*. 2011;68:337–345.
205. Linfante I, Delgado-Mederos R, Andreone V, Gounis M, Hendricks L, Wakhloo AK. Angiographic and hemodynamic effect of high concentration of intra-arterial nicardipine in cerebral vasospasm. *Neurosurgery*. 2008;63:1080–1087.
206. Kerz T, Boor S, Beyer C, Welschehold S, Schuessler A, Oertel J. Effect of intraarterial papaverine or nimodipine on vessel diameter in patients with cerebral vasospasm after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Br J Neurosurg*. 2012;26:517–524.
207. Feng L, Fitzsimmons BF, Young WL, et al. Intraarterially administered verapamil as adjunct therapy for cerebral vasospasm: safety and 2-year experience. *AJNR Am J Neuroradiol*. 2002;23:1284–1290.
208. Fraticelli AT, Cholley BP, Losser MR, Saint Maurice JP, Payen D. Milrinone for the treatment of cerebral vasospasm after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Stroke*. 2008;39:893–898.
209. Dorhout Mees SM, Algra A, Vandertop WP, et al. Magnesium for aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage (MASH-2): a randomised placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2012;380:44–49.
210. Vergouwen MDI, de Haan RJ, Vermeulen M, Roos YBWEM. Effect of statin treatment on vasospasm, delayed cerebral ischemia, and functional outcome in patients with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a systematic review and meta-analysis update. *Stroke*. 2009;41:e47–e52.
211. Kirkpatrick PJ, Turner CL, Smith C, Hutchinson PJ, Murray GD. Simvastatin in aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage (STASH): a multicentre randomised phase 3 trial. *Lancet Neurol*. 2014;13:666–675.
212. Matsuda N, Naraoka M, Ohkuma H, et al. Effect of cilostazol on cerebral vasospasm and outcome in patients with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Cerebrovas Dis*. 2016;42:97–105.
213. Senbokuya N, Kinouchi H, Kanemaru K, et al. Effects of cilostazol on cerebral vasospasm after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a multicenter prospective, randomized, open-label blinded end point trial. *J Neurosurg*. 2013;118:121–130.
214. Macrea LM, Tramer MR, Walder B. Spontaneous subarachnoid hemorrhage and serious cardiopulmonary dysfunction—systematic review. *Resuscitation*. 2005;65:139–148.
215. Naidech AM. Cardiac troponin elevation, cardiovascular morbidity, outcome after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Circulation*. 2005;112:2851–2856.
216. Lee VH, Oh JK, Mulvagh SL, Wijdicks EFM. Mechanisms in neurogenic stress cardiomyopathy after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurocritical Care*. 2006;5:243–249.
217. Bulsara KR, McGirt MJ, Liao L, et al. Use of the peak troponin value to differentiate myocardial infarction from reversible neurogenic left ventricular dysfunction associated with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;98:524–528.
218. Hravnak M, Frangiskakis JM, Crago EA, et al. Elevated cardiac troponin i and relationship to persistence of electrocardiographic and echocardiographic abnormalities after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Stroke*. 2009;40:3478–3484.
219. Brouwers PJ, Wijdicks EF, Hasan D, et al. Serial electrocardiographic recording in aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Stroke*. 1989;20:1162–1167.
220. Lanzino G, Kongable G, Kassell NF. Electrocardiographic abnormalities after nontraumatic subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1994;6:156–162.
221. Meyer FB, Anderson RE, Sundt TM, Yaksh TL. Treatment of experimental focal cerebral ischemia with mannitol. *J Neurosurg*. 1987;66:109–115.
222. Jafar JJ, Johns LM, Mullan SF. The effect of mannitol on cerebral blood flow. *J Neurosurg*. 1986;64:754–759.
223. Bouma GJ, Muizelaar JP. Relationship between cardiac output and cerebral blood flow in patients with intact and with impaired autoregulation. *J Neurosurg*. 1990;73:368–374.
224. Ogilvy CS, Chu D, Kaplan S. Mild hypothermia, hypertension, and mannitol are protective against infarction during experimental intracranial temporary vessel occlusion. *Neurosurgery*. 1996;38:1202–1210.
225. Samson D, Batjer HH, Bowman G, et al. A clinical study of the parameters and effects of temporary arterial occlusion in the management of intracranial aneurysms. *Neurosurgery*. 1994;34:22–29.
226. Ogilvy CS, Carter BS, Kaplan S, Rich C, Crowell RM. Temporary vessel occlusion for aneurysm surgery: risk factors for stroke in patients protected by induced hypothermia and hypertension and intravenous mannitol administration. *J Neurosurg*. 1996;84:785–791.
227. Drummond JC, Cole DJ, Patel PM, Reynolds LW. Focal cerebral ischemia during anesthesia with etomidate, isoflurane, or thiopental. *Neurosurg*. 1995;37:742–749.
228. Hoffman WE, Charbel FT, Edelman G, Misra M, Ausman JI. Comparison of the effect of etomidate and desflurane on brain tissue gases and ph during prolonged middle cerebral artery occlusion. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1188–1194.
229. Ridenour TR, Warner DS, Todd MM, Gionet TX. Comparative effects of propofol and halothane on outcome from temporary middle cerebral artery occlusion in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:807–812.
230. Warner DS, McFarlane C, Todd MM, Ludwig P, McAllister AM. Sevoflurane and halothane reduce focal ischemic brain damage in the rat. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:985–992.
231. Engelhard K, Werner C, Reeker W, et al. Desflurane and isoflurane improve neurological outcome after incomplete cerebral ischaemia in rats. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:415–421.
232. Baughman VL, Hoffman WE, Miletich DJ, Albrecht RF, Thomas C. Neurologic outcome in rats following incomplete cerebral ischemia during halothane, isoflurane, or N2O. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:192–198.
233. Soonthon-Brant V, Patel PM, Drummond JC, Cole DJ, Kelly PJ, Watson M. Fentanyl does not increase brain injury after focal cerebral ischemia in rats. *Anesth Anala*. 1999;88:49–55.
234. Young WL, Solomon RA, Pedley TA, et al. Direct cortical eeg monitoring during temporary vascular occlusion for cerebral aneurysm surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:794–799.
235. Oddo M, Levine JM, Kumar M, et al. Anemia and brain oxygen after severe traumatic brain injury. *Intensive Care Medicine*. 2012;38:1497–1504.
236. Symon L, Wang AD, Costa e Silva IE, Gentili F. Perioperative use of somatosensory evoked responses in aneurysm surgery. *J Neurosurg*. 1984;60:269–275.
237. Little JR, Lesser RP, Luders H. Electrophysiological monitoring during basilar aneurysm operation. *Neurosurgery*. 1987;20:421–427.
238. Quinones-Hinojosa A, Alam M, Lyon R, Yingling CD, Lawton MT. Transcranial motor evoked potentials during basilar artery aneurysm surgery: technique application for 30 consecutive patients. *Neurosurg*. 2004;54:916–924; discussion 924.
239. Bacigaluppi S, Fontanella M, Manninen P, Ducati A, Tredici G, Gentili F. Monitoring techniques for prevention of procedure-related ischemic damage in aneurysm surgery. *World Neurosurg*. 2012;78:276–288.

240. Manninen PH. Spontaneous ventilation is a useful monitor of brain stem function during posterior fossa surgery. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1995;7:63–65.
241. Mack WJ, Ducruet AF, Angevine PD, et al. Deep hypothermic circulatory arrest for complex cerebral aneurysms: lessons learned. *Neurosurgery*. 2007;60:815–827.
242. Young WL, Kader A, Ornstein E, et al. Cerebral hyperemia after arteriovenous malformation resection is related to "breakthrough" complications but not to feeding artery pressure. The Columbia University Arteriovenous Malformation Study Project. *Neurosurgery*. 1996;38:1085–1093; discussion 1093–1095.
243. Zacharia BE, Bruce S, Appelboom G, Connolly ES. Occlusive hyperemia versus normal perfusion pressure breakthrough after treatment of cranial arteriovenous malformations. *Neurosurg Clin N Am*. 2012;23:147–151.
244. Young WL, Kader A, Prohovnik I, et al. Pressure autoregulation is intact after arteriovenous malformation resection. *Neurosurgery*. 1993;32:491–497.
245. Meyer B, Schaller C, Frenkel C, Ebeling B, Schramm J. Distributions of local oxygen saturation and its response to changes of mean arterial blood pressure in the cerebral cortex adjacent to arteriovenous malformations. *Stroke*. 1999;30:2623–2630.
246. Morris CG, McCoy E. Clearing the cervical spine in unconscious polytrauma victims, balancing risks and effective screening. *Anaesthe*. 2004;59:464–482.
247. Crosby ET. Airway management in adults after cervical spine trauma. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1293–1318.
248. Stene JD. Anesthesia for the critically ill trauma patient. In: Siegel JH, ed. *Trauma: Emergency Surgery and Critical Care*. Melbourne: Churchill Livingstone; 1987:843.
249. Talucci RC, Shaikh KA, Schwab CW. Rapid sequence induction with oral endotracheal intubation in the multiply injured patient. *Am Surg*. 1988;54:185–187.
250. Suderman VS, Crosby ET, Lui A. Elective oral tracheal intubation in cervical spine-injured adults. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38:785–789.
251. Shatney CH, Brunner RD, Nguyen TQ. The safety of orotracheal intubation in patients with unstable cervical spine fracture or high spinal cord injury. *Am J Surg*. 1995;170:676–680.
252. Criswell JC, Parr MJA, Nolan JP. Emergency airway management in patients with cervical spine injuries. *Anaesth*. 1994;49:900–903.
253. Hastings RH, Kelley SD. Neurologic deterioration associated with airway management in a cervical spine-injured patient. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:580–583.
254. Muckart DJJ, Bhagwanjee S, van der Merwe R. Spinal cord injury as a result of endotracheal intubation in patients with undiagnosed cervical spine fractures. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:418–420.
255. Hastings RH, Wood PR. Head extension and laryngeal view during laryngoscopy with cervical spine stabilization maneuvers. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:825–831.
256. Chesnut RM, Marshall LF, Klauber MR, et al. The role of secondary brain injury in determining outcome from severe head injury. *J Traum*. 1993;34:216–222.
257. Stephens CT, Kahntroff S, Dutton RP. The success of emergency endotracheal intubation in trauma patients: a 10-year experience at a major adult trauma referral center. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:866–872.
258. Panczykowski DM, Tomycz ND, Okonkwo DO. Comparative effectiveness of using computed tomography alone to exclude cervical spine injuries in obtunded or intubated patients: meta-analysis of 14,327 patients with blunt trauma. *J Neurosurg*. 2011;115:541–549. *Neuroradiologie Scan*. 2012;2:24–25.
259. Stassen NA, Williams VA, Gestring ML, Cheng JD, Bankey PE. Magnetic resonance imaging in combination with helical computed tomography provides a safe and efficient method of cervical spine clearance in the obtunded trauma patient. *J Trauma*. 2006;60:171–177.
260. Bachulis BL, Long WB, Hynes GD, Johnson MC. Clinical indications for cervical spine radiographs in the traumatized patient. *Am J Surg*. 1987;153:473–477.
261. Fischer RP. Cervical radiographic evaluation of alert patients following blunt trauma. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1984;13:905–907.
262. Stiell IG, Clement CM, McKnight RD, et al. The Canadian c-spine rule versus the nexus low-risk criteria in patients with trauma. *N Eng J Med*. 2003;349:2510–2518.
263. Seelig JM, Becker DP, Miller JD, Greenberg RP, Ward JD, Choi SC. Traumatic acute subdural hematoma. *N Eng J Med*. 1981;304:1511–1518.
264. Miller P, Mack CD, Sammer M, et al. The incidence and risk factors for hypotension during emergent decompressive craniotomy in children with traumatic brain injury. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:869–875.
265. DeWitt DS, Prough DS, Taylor CL, Whitley JM. Reduced cerebral blood flow, oxygen delivery, and electroencephalographic activity after traumatic brain injury and mild hemorrhage in cats. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;76:812–821.
266. Pietropaoli JA, Rogers FB, Shackford SR, Wald SL, Schmoker JD, Zhuang J. The deleterious effects of intraoperative hypotension on outcome in patients with severe head injuries. *J Trauma*. 1992;33:403–407.
267. Stocchetti N, Furlan A, Volta F. Hypoxemia and arterial hypotension at the accident scene in head injury. *J Trauma*. 1996;40:764–767.
268. McHugh GS, Engel DC, Butcher I, et al. Prognostic value of secondary insults in traumatic brain injury: results from the impact study. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:287–293.
269. Henzler D, Cooper DJ, Tremayne AB, Rossaint R, Higgins A. Early modifiable factors associated with fatal outcome in patients with severe traumatic brain injury: a case control study. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:1027–1031.
270. Jones PA, Andrews PJD, Midgley S, et al. Measuring the burden of secondary insults in head-injured patients during intensive care. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1994;6:1–14.
271. Clifton GL, Miller ER, Choi SC, Levin HS. Fluid thresholds and outcome from severe brain injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:739–745.
272. Samant UB, Mack CD, Koepsell T, Rivara FP, Vavilala MS. Time of hypotension and discharge outcome in children with severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurotrauma*. 2008;25:495–502.
273. Bouma GJ, Muizelaar JP, Stringer WA, Choi SC, Fatouros P, Young HF. Ultra-early evaluation of regional cerebral blood flow in severely head-injured patients using xenon-enhanced computerized tomography. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;77:360–368.
274. Diringer MN, Videen TO, Yundt K, et al. Regional cerebrovascular and metabolic effects of hyperventilation after severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;96:103–108.
275. Tazarourte K, Atchabahian A, Tourtier JP, et al. Pre-hospital transcranial Doppler in severe traumatic brain injury: a pilot study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:422–428.
276. Hlatky R, Furuya Y, Valadka AB, et al. Dynamic autoregulatory response after severe head injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;97:1054–1061.
277. Schmidt EA, Czosnyka M, Steiner LA, et al. Asymmetry of pressure autoregulation after traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;99:991–998.
278. Schramm P, Klein KU, Pape M, et al. Serial measurement of static and dynamic cerebrovascular autoregulation after brain injury. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2011;23:41–44.
279. Bruzzone P, Dionigi R, Bellinzona G, Imberti R, Stocchetti N. Effects of cerebral perfusion pressure on brain tissue PO2 in patients with severe head injury. *Intracranial Pressure and Neuromonitoring in Brain Injury*. 1998:111–113.
280. Steiger HJ, Ciessinna E, Seiler RW. Identification of posttraumatic ischemia and hyperperfusion by determination of the effect of induced arterial hypertension on carbon dioxide reactivity. *Stroke*. 1996;27:2048–2051.
281. Schroder ML, Muizelaar JP, Kuta AJ, Choi SC. Thresholds for cerebral ischemia after severe head injury: relationship with late CT findings and outcome. *J Neurotrauma*. 1996;13:17–23.
282. Marion DW, Darby J, Yonas H. Acute regional cerebral blood flow changes caused by severe head injuries. *J Neurosurg*. 1991;74:407–414.
283. Soustiel JF, Glenn TC, Shik V, Boscardin J, Mahamid E, Zaaroor M. Monitoring of cerebral blood flow and metabolism in traumatic brain injury. *J Neurotrauma*. 2005;22:955–965.
284. Chan K-H, Miller JD, Dearden NM, Andrews PJD, Midgley S. The effect of changes in cerebral perfusion pressure upon middle cerebral artery blood flow velocity and jugular bulb venous oxygen saturation after severe brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;77:55–61.
285. Chan K-H, Dearden NM, Miller JD, Andrews PJD, Midgley S. Multimodality monitoring as a guide to treatment of intracranial hypertension after severe brain injury. *Neurosurgery*. 1993;32:547–553.

286. Robertson CS, Valadka AB, Hannay HJ, et al. Prevention of secondary ischemic insults after severe head injury. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:2086–2095.
287. Marshall LF. Head injury: recent past, present, and future. *Neurosurgery*. 2000;47:546–561.
288. Robertson CS. Management of cerebral perfusion pressure after traumatic brain injury. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1513–1517.
289. Stiefel MF, Udoetuk JD, Spiotta AM, et al. Conventional neurocritical care and cerebral oxygenation after traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2006;105:568–575.
290. Schirmer-Mikalsen K, Moen KG, Skandsen T, Vik A, Klepstad P. Intensive care and traumatic brain injury after the introduction of a treatment protocol: a prospective study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;57:46–55.
291. Kochanek PM, Carney N, Adelson PD, et al. Guidelines for the acute medical management of severe traumatic brain injury in infants, children, and adolescents—second edition. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;13(suppl 1):S1–82.
292. Romner B, Bellner J, Kongstad P, et al. Elevated transcranial Doppler flow velocities after severe head injury: cerebral vasospasm or hyperemia? *J Neurosurg*. 1996;85:90–97.
293. Kelly DF, Kordestani RK, Martin NA, et al. Hyperemia following traumatic brain injury: relationship to intracranial hypertension and outcome. *J Neurosurg*. 1996;85:762–771.
294. Kelly DF, Martin NA, Kordestani R, et al. Cerebral blood flow as a predictor of outcome following traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 1997;86:633–641.
295. Muizelaar JP, Marmarou A, DeSalles AAF, et al. Cerebral blood flow and metabolism in severely head-injured children. *J Neurosurg*. 1989;71:63–71.
296. Coles JP, Steiner LA, Johnston AJ, et al. Does induced hypertension reduce cerebral ischaemia within the traumatized human brain? *Brain*. 2004;127:2479–2490.
297. Cremer OL, van Dijk GW, Amelink GJ, de Smet AMGA, Moons KGM, Kalkman CJ. Cerebral hemodynamic responses to blood pressure manipulation in severely head-injured patients in the presence or absence of intracranial hypertension. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1211–1217.
298. Hlatky R, Valadka AB, Robertson CS. Intracranial pressure response to induced hypertension: role of dynamic pressure autoregulation. *Neurosurgery*. 2005;57:917–923.
299. Lin JW, Tsai JT, Lin CM, et al. Evaluation of optimal cerebral perfusion pressure in severe traumatic brain injury. *Acta Neurochir Suppl*. 2008;101:131–136.
300. Warner DS, Borel CO. Treatment of traumatic brain injury: one size does not fit all. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1208–1210.
301. Howells T, Elf K, Jones PA, et al. Pressure reactivity as a guide in the treatment of cerebral perfusion pressure in patients with brain trauma. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;102:311–317.
302. Zweifel C, Lavinio A, Steiner LA, et al. Continuous monitoring of cerebrovascular pressure reactivity in patients with head injury. *Neurosurg Focus*. 2008;25:E2.
303. Trivedi M, Coles JP. Blood pressure management in acute head injury. *J Intens Care Med*. 2008;24:96–107.
304. Johnson U, Nilsson P, Ronne-Engstrom E, Howells T, Enblad P. Favorable outcome in traumatic brain injury patients with impaired cerebral pressure autoregulation when treated at low cerebral perfusion pressure levels. *Neurosurgery*. 2011;68:714–722.
305. Aries MJH, Czosnyka M, Budohoski KP, et al. Continuous determination of optimal cerebral perfusion pressure in traumatic brain injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:2456–2463.
306. Caricato A, Pitoni S. Is it time for an autoregulation-oriented therapy in head-injured patients? *Criti Care Med*. 2012;40:2526–2527.
307. Asgeirsson B, Grande PO, Nordstrom CH. A new therapy of post-trauma brain oedema based on haemodynamic principles for brain volume regulation. *Intensive Care Med*. 1994;20:260–267.
308. Asgeirsson B, Grande PO, Nordstrom CH. The Lund concept of post-traumatic brain oedema therapy. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:103–106.
309. Grande PO, Asgeirsson B, Nordstrom CH. Volume-targeted therapy of increased intracranial pressure: the Lund concept unifies surgical and non-surgical treatments. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46:929–941.
310. Sharma D, Vavilala MS. Lund concept for the management of traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2011;23:363–367.
311. Naredi S, Eden E, Zall S, Stephensen H, Rydenhag B. A standardized neurosurgical/neurointensive therapy directed toward vasogenic edema after severe traumatic brain injury: clinical results. *Intensive Care Med*. 1998;24:446–451.
312. Eker C, Asgeirsson B, Grande P-O, Schalen W, Nordstrom C-H. Improved outcome after severe head injury with a new therapy based on principles for brain volume regulation and preserved microcirculation. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26:1881–1886.
313. Naredi S, Olivecrona M, Lindgren C, Ostlund AL, Grande PO, Koskinen LOD. An outcome study of severe traumatic head injury using the "Lund therapy" with low-dose prostacyclin. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:402–406.
314. Rosner MJ, Daughton S. Cerebral perfusion pressure management in head injury. *J Trauma*. 1990;30:933–941.
315. Rosner MJ, Rosner SD, Johnson AH. Cerebral perfusion pressure: management protocol and clinical results. *J Neurosurg*. 1995;83:949–962.
316. Czosnyka M, Smielewski P, Piechnik S, Steiner LA, Pickard JD. Cerebral autoregulation following head injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2001;95:756–763.
317. Imberti R, Bellinzona G, Langer M. Cerebral tissue PO2 and SjvO2 changes during moderate hyperventilation in patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2002;96:97–102.
318. Stocchetti N, Maas AIR, Chieregato A, van der Plas AA. Hyperventilation in head injury. *Chest*. 2005;127:1812–1827.
319. Nekludov M, Antovic J, Bredbacka S, et al. Coagulation abnormalities associated with severe isolated traumatic brain injury: cerebral arterio-venous differences in coagulation and inflammatory markers. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:174–180.
320. Talving P, Lustenberger T, Lam L, et al. Coagulopathy after isolated severe traumatic brain injury in children. *J Trauma*. 2011;71:1205–1210.
321. Laroche M, Kutcher ME, Huang MC, Cohen MJ, Manley GT. Coagulopathy after traumatic brain injury. *Neurosurgery*. 2012;70:1334–1345.
322. White H, Baker A. Continuous jugular venous oximetry in the neurointensive care unit-a brief review. *Can J Anesth/J can d'anesth*. 2002;49:623–629.
323. Clayton TJ, Nelson RJ, Manara AR. Reduction in mortality from severe head injury following introduction of a protocol for intensive care management. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:761–767.
324. Stocchetti N, Paparella A, Bridelli F, Bacchi M, Piazza P, Zuccoli P. Cerebral venous oxygen saturation studied with bilateral samples in the internal jugular veins. *Neurosurgery*. 1994;34:38–44.
325. Schneider GH, Helden AV, Lanksch WR, Unterberg A. Continuous monitoring of jugular bulb oxygen saturation in comatose patients? Therapeutic implications. *Acta Neurochirurg*. 1995;134:71–75.
326. Gopinath S, Cormio M, Ziegler J, Raty S, Valadka A, Robertson C. Intraoperative jugular desaturation during surgery for traumatic intracranial hematomas. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:1014–1021.
327. Stiefel MF, Spiotta A, Gracias VH, et al. Reduced mortality rate in patients with severe traumatic brain injury treated with brain tissue oxygen monitoring. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;103:805–811.
328. Nortje J, Gupta AK. The role of tissue oxygen monitoring in patients with acute brain injury. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:95–106.
329. Narotam PK, Morrison JF, Nathoo N. Brain tissue oxygen monitoring in traumatic brain injury and major trauma: outcome analysis of a brain tissue oxygen-directed therapy. *J Neurosurg*. 2009;111:672–682.
330. Spiotta AM, Stiefel MF, Gracias VH, et al. Brain tissue oxygen-directed management and outcome in patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2010;113:571–580.
331. Bohman L-E, Heuer GG, Macyszyn L, et al. Medical management of compromised brain oxygen in patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;14:361–369.
332. Ponce LL, Pillai S, Cruz J, et al. Position of probe determines prognostic information of brain tissue PO2 in severe traumatic brain injury. *Neurosurgery*. 2012;70:1492–1503.
333. Marshall LF, Toole BM, Bowers SA. The National Traumatic Coma Data Bank. *J Neurosurg*. 1983;59:285–288.
334. Peterson EC, Chesnut RM. Talk and die revisited: bifrontal contusions and late deterioration. *J Trauma*. 2011;71:1588–1592.
335. Shiozaki T, Sugimoto H, Taneda M, et al. Effect of mild hypothermia on uncontrollable intracranial hypertension after severe head injury. *J Neurosurg*. 1993;79:363–368.

336. Marion DW, Obrist WD, Earlier PM, Penrod LE, Darby JM. The use of moderate therapeutic hypothermia for patients with severe head injuries: a preliminary report. *J Neurosurg*. 1993;79:354–362.
337. Clifton GL, Allen S, Barrodale P, et al. A phase II study of moderate hypothermia in severe brain injury. *J Neurotrauma*. 1993;10:263–271.
338. Metz C, Holzschuh M, Bein T, et al. Moderate hypothermia in patients with severe head injury: cerebral and extracerebral effects. *J Neurosurg*. 1996;85:533–541.
339. Andrews PJD, Sinclair HL, Rodriguez A, et al. Hypothermia for intracranial hypertension after traumatic brain injury. *N Eng J Med*. 2015;373:2403–2412.
340. Drummond JC, Todd MM. Acute sinus arrhythmia during surgery in the fourth ventricle. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:232–235.
341. Manninen PH, Cuillerier DJ, Nantau WE, Gelb AW. Monitoring of brainstem function during vertebral basilar aneurysm surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:681–685.
342. Lobato RD, Rivas JJ, Sarabia R, Lamas E. Percutaneous microcompression of the gasserian ganglion for trigeminal neuralgia. *J Neurosurg*. 1990;72:546–553.
343. Skirving DJ, Dan NG. A 20-year review of percutaneous balloon compression of the trigeminal ganglion. *J Neurosurg*. 2001;94:913–917.
344. Nemergut EC, Dumont AS, Barry UT, Laws ER. Perioperative management of patients undergoing transsphenoidal pituitary surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1170–1181.
345. Korula G, George SP, Rajshekhar V, Haran RP, Jeyaseelan L. Effect of controlled hypercapnia on cerebrospinal fluid pressure and operating conditions during transsphenoidal operations for pituitary macroadenoma. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2001;13:255–259.
346. Nath G, Korula G, Chandy MJ. Effect of intrathecal saline injection and valsalva maneuver on cerebral perfusion pressure during transsphenoidal surgery for pituitary macroadenoma. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1995;7:1–6.
347. Chui J, Venkatraghavan L, Manninen P. Presurgical evaluation of patients with epilepsy: the role of the anesthesiologist. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:881–888.
348. Drummond JC, Iragui-Madoz VJ, Alksne JF, Kalkman CJ. Masking of epileptiform activity by propofol during seizure surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:652–654.
349. Herrick IA, Craen RA, Gelb AW, et al. Propofol sedation during awake craniotomy for seizures. *Anesthe Analg*. 1997;84:1285–1291.
350. Manninen PH, Balki M, Lukitto K, Bernstein M. Patient satisfaction with awake craniotomy for tumor surgery: a comparison of remifentanil and fentanyl in conjunction with propofol. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:237–242.
351. Keifer JC, Dentchev D, Little K, Warner DS, Friedman AH, Borel CO. A retrospective analysis of a remifentanil/propofol general anesthetic for craniotomy before awake functional brain mapping. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:502–508.
352. Rozet I. Anesthesia for functional neurosurgery: the role of dexmedetomidine. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2008;21:537–543.
353. Mack PF, Perrine K, Kobylarz E, Schwartz TH, Lien CA. Dexmedetomidine and neurocognitive testing in awake craniotomy. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2004;16:20–25.
354. Ard J, Doyle W, Bekker A. Awake craniotomy with dexmedetomidine in pediatric patients. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2003;15:263–266.
355. Bekker AY, Kaufman B, Samir H, Doyle W. The use of dexmedetomidine infusion for awake craniotomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2001:1251–1253.
356. Frost EAM, Booij LHDJ. Anesthesia in the patient for awake craniotomy. *Curr Opini Anaesthesiol*. 2007;20:331–335.
357. Souter MJ, Rozet I, Ojemann JG, et al. Dexmedetomidine sedation during awake craniotomy for seizure resection: effects on electrocorticography. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2007;19:38–44.
358. Talke P, Stapelfeldt C, Garcia P. Dexmedetomidine does not reduce epileptiform discharges in adults with epilepsy. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2007;19:195–199.
359. Bustillo MA, Lazar RM, Finck AD, et al. Dexmedetomidine may impair cognitive testing during endovascular embolization of cerebral arteriovenous malformations: a retrospective case report series. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2002;14:209–212.
360. Sarang A, Dinsmore J. Anaesthesia for awake craniotomy—evolution of a technique that facilitates awake neurological testing. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90:161–165.
361. Deras P, Moulinie G, Maldonado IL, Moritz-Gasser S, Duffau H, Bertram L. Intermittent general anesthesia with controlled ventilation for asleep-awake-asleep brain surgery. *Neurosurgery*. 2012;71:764–772.
362. Huncke K, Van de Wiele B, Fried I, Rubinstein EH. The asleep-awake-asleep anesthetic technique for intraoperative language mapping. *Neurosurgery*. 1998;42:1312–1316.
363. Cascino GD. Pharmacological activation. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol Suppl*. 1998;48:70–76.
364. Cascino GD, So EL, Sharbrough FW, et al. Alfentanil-induced epileptiform activity in patients with partial epilepsy. *J Clini Neurophysiol*. 1993;10:520–525.
365. McGuire G, El-Beheiry H, Manninen P, Lozano A, Wennberg R. Activation of electrocorticographic activity with remifentanil and alfentanil during neurosurgical excision of epileptogenic focus. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91:651–655.
366. Ebrahim ZY, DeBoer GE, Luders H, Hahn JF, Lesser RP. Effect of etomidate on the electroencephalogram of patients with epilepsy. *Anesthe Analg*. 1986;65:1004–1006.
367. Gancher S, Laxer KD, Krieger W. Activation of epileptogenic activity by etomidate. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:616–617.
368. Wass CT, Grady RE, Fessler AJ, et al. The effects of remifentanil on epileptiform discharges during intraoperative electrocorticography in patients undergoing epilepsy surgery. *Epilepsia*. 2001;42:1340–1344.
369. Kjaer TW, Madsen FF, Moltke FB, Uldall P, Hogenhaven H. Intraoperative hyperventilation vs remifentanil during electrocorticography for epilepsy surgery - a case report. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 2010;121:413–417.
370. Lyons MK. Deep brain stimulation: current and future clinical applications. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings*. 2011;86:662–672.
371. Hammond C, Bergman H, Brown P. Pathological synchronization in Parkinson's disease: networks, models and treatments. *Trends Neurosci*. 2007;30:357–364.
372. Poon CCM, Irwin MG. Anaesthesia for deep brain stimulation and in patients with implanted neurostimulator devices. *Br J Anaesthe*. 2009;103:152–165.
373. Venkatraghavan L, Luciano M, Manninen P. Anesthetic management of patients undergoing deep brain stimulator insertion. *Anesthe Analg*. 2010;1.
374. Erickson KM, Cole DJ. Anesthetic considerations for awake craniotomy for epilepsy and functional neurosurgery. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30:241–268.
375. Deogaonkar A, Deogaonkar M, Lee JYK, Ebrahim Z, Schubert A. Propofol-induced dyskinesias controlled with dexmedetomidine during deep brain stimulation surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1337–1339.
376. Rozet I, Muangman S, Vavilala MS, et al. Clinical experience with dexmedetomidine for implantation of deep brain stimulators in Parkinson's disease. *Anesthe Analg*. 2006;103:1224–1228.
377. Bohmdorfer W, Schwarzinger P, Binder S, Sporn P. Temporary suppression of tremor by remifentanil in a patient with Parkinson's disease during cataract extraction under local anesthesia. *Anaesthesist*. 2003;52:795–797.
378. Anderson BJ, Marks PV, Futter ME. Propofol-contrasting effects in movement disorders. *Br J Neurosurg*. 1994;8:387–388.
379. Elias WJ, Durieux ME, Huss D, Frysinger RC. Dexmedetomidine and arousal affect subthalamic neurons. *Mov Disord*. 2008;23:1317–1320.
380. Lee CZ, Young WL. Anesthesia for endovascular neurosurgery and interventional neuroradiology. *Anesthesiol Clini*. 2012;30:127–147.
381. Nogueira RG, Jadhav AP, Haussen DC, et al. Thrombectomy 6 to 24 hours after stroke with a mismatch between deficit and infarct. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:11–21.
382. Albers GW, Marks MP, Kemp S, et al. Thrombectomy for stroke at 6 to 16 hours with selection by perfusion imaging. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:708–718.
383. Brinjikji W, Pasternak J, Murad MH, et al. Anesthesia-related outcomes for endovascular stroke revascularization: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Stroke*. 2017;48:2784–2791.
384. Schonenberger S, Uhlmann L, Hacke W, et al. Effect of conscious sedation vs general anesthesia on early neurological improvement among patients with ischemic stroke undergoing endovascular thrombectomy: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2016;316:1986–1996.
385. Lowhagen Henden P, Rentzos A, et al. General anesthesia versus conscious sedation for endovascular treatment of acute ischemic stroke: the an stroke trial (anesthesia during stroke). *Stroke*. 2017;48:1601–1607.

386. Ilyas A, Chen CJ, Ding D, et al. Endovascular mechanical thrombectomy for acute ischemic stroke under general anesthesia versus conscious sedation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;112:e355–e367.
387. Hashimoto T, Young WL, Aagaard BD, Joshi S, Ostapkovich ND, Pile-Spellman J. Adenosine-induced ventricular asystole to induce transient profound systemic hypotension in patients undergoing endovascular therapy. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:998–1001.
388. Molyneux A. International Subarachnoid Aneurysm Trial (ISAT) of neurosurgical clipping versus endovascular coiling in 2143 patients with ruptured intracranial aneurysms: a randomised trial. *Lancet*. 2002;360:1267–1274.
389. Li H, Pan R, Wang H, et al. Clipping versus coiling for ruptured intracranial aneurysms: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Stroke*. 2012;44:29–37.
390. Lanzino G, Fraser K, Kanaan Y, Wagenbach A. Treatment of ruptured intracranial aneurysms since the international subarachnoid aneurysm trial: practice utilizing clip ligation and coil embolization as individual or complementary therapies. *J Neurosurg*. 2006;104:344–349.
391. Faught RW, Satti SR, Hurst RW, Pukenas BA, Smith MJ. Heterogeneous practice patterns regarding antiplatelet medications for neuroendovascular stenting in the USA: a multicenter survey. *J Neurointerv Surg*. 2014;6:774–779.
392. Lin PH, Zhou W, Kougias P, El Sayed HF, Barshes NR, Huynh TT. Factors associated with hypotension and bradycardia after carotid angioplasty and stenting. *J Vasc Surg*. 2007;46:846–853; discussion 853–854.

58 Anesthesia for Bariatric Surgery

GAURAV MALHOTRA and DAVID M. ECKMANN

KEY POINTS

- In the United States more than two out of three people are overweight or obese. Worldwide, more people are obese than are malnourished. Obesity is becoming the largest single preventable cause of death and represents major morbidity and mortality.
- Metabolic syndrome includes abdominal obesity, decreased high-density lipoprotein, insulin resistance, glucose intolerance, and hypertension, and is present in approximately 34% of the adult population in the United States alone.
- The single greatest risk factor for sleep apnea is obesity, with the majority of obese patients having increased oral and pharyngeal tissue. This makes ventilation, intubation, and extubation more challenging.
- Choices for medical management of obesity are limited and efficacious achievement with just medical management is uncommon. Changes in behaviors are important for success.
- Surgery for obesity is recommended at a body mass index (BMI) of 40 kg/m^2 or BMI over 30 kg/m^2 with comorbidities expected to respond to weight loss, secondary to surgical therapy, like hypertension, diabetes, and hypercholesterolemia. In clinical trials, long-term survival is better in the surgically treated group over the medically managed.
- Preoperative evaluation should focus on cardiopulmonary issues and securing an airway, along with other concerns such as diabetes, hypertension, and obstructive sleep apnea.
- Anesthetic drugs should be tailored based on lipid solubility and awareness of lingering respiratory depression effects.
- Patient preparation and positioning are keys to successful airway management. Preoperative pressure support ventilation should be used adjunctively if possible.
- Intraoperative ventilation is assisted by complete paralysis, moderate positive end-expiratory pressure, tidal volumes based on ideal body weight, and recruitment maneuvers as needed.
- Common serious postoperative complications are deep vein thrombosis and staple line issues.
- Obese patients presenting for nonweight-loss surgery benefit from anesthetic approaches similar to that used for bariatric surgery.

Obesity as a Disease

Obesity is firmly established as one of the great epidemics of the 21st century.[1] Worldwide, obesity was considered a rarity until the middle of the previous century,[2] but now there are 1.9 billion overweight adults and over 650 million obese people globally including a significant proportion of the adult population in the United States.[3-5] Obesity is a problem that is affecting the younger population as well since over 340 million children and adolescents aged 5 to 19 were overweight or obese in 2016.[6] Current estimates are that more than 2 out of 3 of the U.S. adult population are overweight or obese. Of these one in three adults has obesity and 1 in 13 has extreme obesity with a body mass index (BMI) greater than 40.[7] Among children and adolescents ages 2 to 19, about 1 in 6 are obese, and about 1 in 17 are considered to have extreme obesity.[8] Obesity and its associated health concerns are now major causes of morbidity and mortality resulting in an enormous impact on healthcare spending. Over 300,000 deaths per annum in the United States and about $270 billion[6] in annual healthcare spending are attributable to obesity, placing it second only to smoking as a preventable cause of death.[9]

Obesity can be defined as a disease since it is a physiologic dysfunction of the human organism with environmental, genetic, and endocrinologic etiologies.[9] Obesity most frequently develops when food caloric intake exceeds energy expenditure over a sustained period of time. Factors influencing obesity involve either energy intake or energy expenditure, and are influenced by genetic, behavioral, cultural, and socioeconomic factors.[10] For example, there are syndromes that are associated with obesity, including leptin deficiency, Prader-Willi syndrome, and Lawrence-Moon-Biedl syndrome.[4] Metabolic factors can influence energy regulation, including hormones, peptides, nutrients, uncoupling proteins, and neural regulatory substances emanating from gut, liver, brain, and fat cells, but most of these are not well understood.

The BMI is the most widely applied classification tool used to assess individual weight status.[11] The BMI is specifically defined as the patient's weight, measured in kilograms, divided by the square of the patient's height, measured

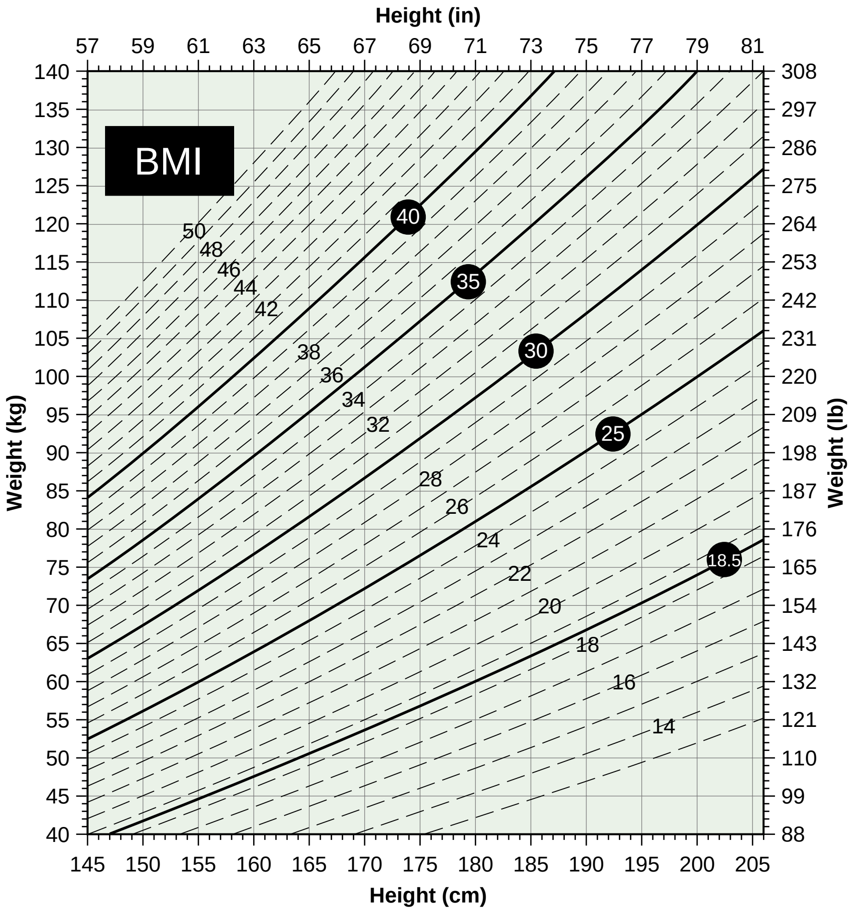


Fig. 58.1 A family of iso-body mass index *(BMI)* curves for BMI ranging from 13 to 50 and mapped on axes for height (in both centimeters and inches) and weight (in both kilograms and pounds).

in meters, yielding a measurement bearing units of kilograms per square meter (kg/m^2). Fig. 58.1 shows a family of iso-BMI curves for BMI ranging from 13 to 50 kg/m^2 and mapped on axes for height (in both inches and centimeters) and weight (in both pounds and kilograms). Most electronic medical record systems are programmed to indicate patient BMI when height and weight inputs are provided. The National Institutes of Health maintains an online BMI calculator and also provides links for downloadable smartphone BMI applications at https://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/educational/lose_wt/BMI/bmicalc.htm. Using this system, patients are classified according to BMI and the associated risk of developing health problems is shown in Table 58.1. Patients are considered to be overweight if they have a BMI between 25 and 29.9 kg/m^2, and they are classified as obese with a BMI between 30 and 49.9 kg/m^2. The obese classification is further subdivided into Class 1 (BMI range 30-34.9 kg/m^2), Class 2 (35-39.9 kg/m^2) and Class 3 (40-49.9 kg/m^2). Patients with a BMI of 50 kg/m^2 or greater are classified as superobese. As BMI increases beyond normal weight, the risk of developing serious health problems rises greatly and can be correlated with the individual's waist circumference (Table 58.2). Malnourishment and malnutrition are commonly offered as explanations for the fact that underweight patients are also at increased risk for developing illnesses.

TABLE 58.1 Levels of Risk Associated With Increasing Body Mass Index

Classification	BMI (kg/m^2)	Risk of Developing Health Problems
Underweight	<18.5	Increased
Normal weight	18.5-24.9	Least
Overweight	25.0-29.9	Increased
Obese		
Class 1	30.0-34.9	High
Class 2	35.0-39.9	Very high
Class 3	40.0-49.9	Extremely high
Superobese	≥50	Exceedingly high

BMI, Body mass index.

There are specific diseases commonly associated with obesity, and obesity is often accompanied by multiple, and not single, comorbid states.[7] These frequently include insulin resistance, type 2 diabetes mellitus, obstructive sleep apnea (OSA), asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, hypoventilation, cardiovascular disease, hypertension, certain malignancies, and osteoarthritis.[1,12-22] Virtually every

TABLE 58.2 Waist Circumference and Risk

Waist	BMI (KG/M^2)		
Circumference	**Normal Weight**	**Overweight**	**Obese Class 1**
<102 cm (♂) <88 cm (♀)	Least risk	Increased risk	High risk
≥102 cm (♂) ≥88 cm (♀)	High risk	Very high risk	Increased risk

TABLE 58.3 Health Risks Associated With Increasing Body Mass Index

Metabolic syndrome	30% of middle-aged people in developed countries have features of metabolic syndrome
Type 2 diabetes	90% of type 2 diabetics have a BMI of >23 kg/m^2
HTN	5× risk in obesity 66% of HTN is linked to excess weight 85% of HTN is associated with a BMI >25 kg/m^2
CAD	3.6× risk of CAD for each unit change in BMI
CAD and stroke	Dyslipidemia progressively develops as BMI increases from 21 kg/m^2 with rise in small particle low-density lipoprotein 70% of obese women with HTN have left ventricular hypertrophy Obesity is a contributing factor to cardiac failure in >10% of patients Overweight/obesity plus hypertension is associated with increased risk of ischemic stroke
Respiratory effects (e.g., obstructive sleep apnea)	Neck circumference of >43 cm in men and >40.5 cm in women is associated with obstructive sleep apnea, daytime somnolence, and development of pulmonary hypertension
Cancers	20% of all cancer deaths among nonsmokers are related to obesity (30% of endometrial cancers)
Reproductive function	6% of primary infertility in women is attributable to obesity Impotency and infertility are frequently associated with obesity in men
OA	Frequent association in the elderly with increasing body weight—risk of disability attributable to OA equal to heart disease and greater to any other medical disorder of the elderly
Liver and gall bladder disease	Overweight and obesity associated with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and NASH. 40% of NASH patients are obese; 20% have dyslipidemia 3× risk of gall bladder disease in women with a BMI of >32 kg/m^2 7× risk if BMI of >45 kg/m^2

BMI, Body mass index; *CAD,* coronary artery disease; *HTN,* hypertension; *NASH,* nonalcoholic steatohepatitis; *OA,* osteoarthritis;

organ system can be included in the extended list of health risks associated with having an abnormally elevated BMI. A listing of the most common specific disease states along with their obesity-associated risk is detailed in Table 58.3. As a result, obesity is also associated with early death.[11,23]

BOX 58.1 Features Associated With Metabolic Syndrome

Abdominal obesity
Atherogenic dyslipidemia (↑ TGs, ↓ HDL-C, ↑ ApoB, ↑ small LDL particles)
Elevated blood pressure
Insulin resistance ± glucose intolerance
Proinflammatory state (↑ hsCRP)
Prothrombotic state (↑ PAI-1, ↓ FIB)
Other (endothelial dysfunction, microalbuminuria, polycystic ovary syndrome, hypoandrogenism, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease, hyperuricemia)

ApoB, Apolipoprotein-B; *FIB*, fibrinogen; *HDL-C*, high-density lipoprotein cholesterol; *hsCRP*, high-sensitivity C-reactive protein; *LDL*, low-density lipoprotein; *PAI-1*, plasminogen activator inhibitor; *TG's*, triglycerides.

Of all the health risks included in Table 58.3, metabolic syndrome and OSA merit additional attention as they pose special concerns for the anesthetic care of obese patients.

METABOLIC SYNDROME

The clustering of a group of defined metabolic and physical abnormalities is now referred to as the metabolic syndrome.[24] Patients with metabolic syndrome commonly have abdominal obesity, reduced levels of high-density lipoprotein (HDL), hyperinsulinemia, glucose intolerance, hypertension, and other characteristic features[15] as listed in Box 58.1. Specific criteria for diagnosing metabolic syndrome are included in Table 58.4. The diagnosis requires that at least three of the following be present: abdominal obesity, elevated fasting glucose, hypertension, low HDLs, and hypertriglyceridemia.[25] Weight gain with visceral obesity is a major predictor of the metabolic syndrome. The clinical approach uses waist circumference, rather than BMI, to define the adipose mass component contributing to the metabolic syndrome since BMI has been shown to be a relatively insensitive indicator of the risk for obesity-associated metabolic and cardiovascular diseases. Waist circumference, but not BMI, reflects abdominal subcutaneous adipose tissue as well as abdominal visceral adipose tissue and is therefore a better index of central, or truncal, fat mass.

In the United States, approximately 34% of the adult population have metabolic syndrome.[26] Of these, more than 83% meet the criterion of abdominal obesity. The incidence of metabolic syndrome increases with age, with more than 40% of the U.S. population affected by the age of 60 years.[24] Men are affected more commonly than women, and Hispanics and South Asians appear to be particularly susceptible. Its frequency is lower in African American men than in Caucasians. Metabolic syndrome may result from use of some commonly prescribed drugs, including corticosteroid, antidepressant, and antipsychotic agents. Protease inhibitors used to treat human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection can induce metabolic syndrome secondary to insulin resistance.

Patients with metabolic syndrome have an increased risk for cardiovascular disease events and are at increased risk for all-cause mortality. Metabolic syndrome increases

TABLE 58.4 Clinical Criteria for Diagnosing Metabolic Syndrome

Central obesity	Waist circumference >102 cm in men Waist circumference >88 cm in women
Plus any two of the following:	
Criteria	**Defining Value**
Triglycerides	150 mg/dL (1.7 mmol/L), or Specific treatment for this lipid abnormality
High-density lipoprotein cholesterol	<40 mg/dL (1.03 mmol/L) in men, or <50 mg/dL (1.29 mmol/L) in women, or Specific treatment for this lipid abnormality
Blood pressure	Systolic blood pressure >130 mm Hg, or Diastolic blood pressure >85 mm Hg, or Treatment of previously diagnosed hypertension
Fasting glucose	110 mg/dL (5.6 mmol/L), or Previously diagnosed type 2 diabetes

the risk of type 2 diabetes, which itself is an important risk factor for atherosclerotic disease and may be considered as a coronary heart disease equivalent.[17,24] Metabolic syndrome is also associated with a variety of other conditions, such as polycystic ovary syndrome, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, gallstones, sleep disturbances, sexual impotence, and numerous forms of cancer including breast, endometrial, pancreatic, colon, and liver cancer, as detailed in Table 58.3.[27] In multiple trials involving nearly 1900 patients, morbidly obese individuals had much greater weight loss following bariatric surgery than after nonsurgical therapy, with amelioration of most of the diseases associated with morbid obesity in a year's time.[28] Metabolic syndrome is resolved by bariatric surgery in over 95% of patients who achieve the expected weight loss,[29] making it clear that bariatric surgery is a metabolic intervention and not simply a weight management procedure.[30]

Inflammatory processes appear to play an important role in the metabolic syndrome.[20] Adipose tissue has two major functions: storage and release of energy-rich fatty acids and secretion of proteins required for endocrine and autocrine regulation of energy metabolism. Adipocytes exert their metabolic effects by release of free fatty acids, whose release is enhanced by the presence of catecholamines, release of glucocorticoids, increased beta-receptor agonist activity, and reduction of lipid storage mediated by insulin. Visceral adipose tissue has been identified as an important source of proinflammatory cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) and interleukin-6 (IL-6), as well as antiinflammatory cytokines such as adiponectin. Increased levels of proinflammatory cytokines likely contribute to the etiology of insulin resistance primarily by obstructing insulin signaling and contributing to downregulation of peroxisomal proliferator-activated receptor-γ, which are fundamentally important regulators of adipocyte differentiation and control. Additionally, insulin resistance may promote inflammation through diminution of insulin's antiinflammatory effects. Lastly, oxidative stress is increased with obesity, primarily as a result of excessive intake of macronutrients and a concomitant increase in metabolic rate. These factors may also contribute to the inflammatory response noted with obesity.[20]

Native immune responses act aberrantly in obese individuals. Natural killer (NK) cell cytotoxic activity is depressed with obesity, as are plasma levels of cytokines such as IL-12, IL-18, and interferon-γ known to regulate NK cell function.[31] Other cytokines (primarily IL-6 and TNF-α) and adipokines (leptin, adiponectin, adipose-derived resistin) are two additional major groups of inflammatory proteins produced and released by adipose and adipose-associated tissue.[20] Both serum and adipose tissue obtained from obese subjects consistently have elevated levels of IL-6 and TNF-α, and circulating levels of IL-6 are consistently increased in individuals having either type 2 diabetes or impaired glucose tolerance. Proteins such as leptin and adiponectin, which are produced primarily by adipocytes, are classified as adipokines. Although leptin is primarily involved in appetite control, its immunologic effects include protection of T lymphocytes from apoptosis and regulation of T-cell activation and proliferation. Reduced leptin levels may increase appetite and slow metabolism, but may also increase susceptibility to the toxicity of proinflammatory stimuli, such as endotoxin and TNF-α. Elevated leptin levels are proinflammatory, and this likely plays an important role in the progression of heart disease and diabetes, especially in obese patients. Serum levels of adiponectin correlate with insulin sensitivity and do not rise in obesity. Significantly reduced adiponectin levels are found in patients having type 2 diabetes. Adiponectin reduces both TNF-α production and activity. It also inhibits IL-6 production. Resistin, an adipokine that induces insulin resistance, is induced by endotoxin and cytokines. Resistin acts at the cellular level to upregulate production of proinflammatory cytokines, most likely through the nuclear factor κB (NFκB) pathway. Resistin appears to present a molecular link among metabolic signaling, inflammatory processes, and the development of cardiovascular disease. Resistin levels have been associated with inflammatory markers apparently independent of BMI in humans.[20]

An understanding of the role of NFκB in insulin resistance is required to fully appreciate the links between obesity and inflammation. Both free fatty acids and TNF-α act via intracellular inflammatory cascade pathways to arrest insulin signaling. This process is mediated by activation of transcription factors present within the cell cytoplasm. Following their translocation to the nucleus, they eventually bind to transcription factors regulating the inflammatory process. The cytoplasm also contains NFκB, another transcription factor whose activation is implicated in a number of diseases, including diabetes. NFκB is also induced by hypoxia, and it increases production of proinflammatory cytokines TNF-α and IL-6, both of which are frequently increased in patients with OSA syndrome.[20] Therefore inflammation provides the common linkage underlying the association between obesity, metabolic syndrome, and OSA.[32]

OBSTRUCTIVE SLEEP APNEA—HYPOPNEA SYNDROME

OSA is a condition characterized by recurrent episodes of partial or complete upper airway collapse occurring during sleep.[33] An obstructive apneic event is defined universally as the complete cessation of airflow during breathing lasting 10 seconds or longer despite maintenance of neuromuscular ventilatory effort. The definition of an obstructive hypopneic event however may vary depending on the criteria being used for scoring. The Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) defines a hypopneic event as the partial reduction of airflow of 30% or more lasting at least 10 seconds, accompanied by a decrease of at least 4% in the oxygen saturation (SpO_2) as opposed to the American Academy of Sleep Medicine (AASM), which accepts a 3% drop in SpO_2 or a terminal cortical arousal. Additionally, the AASM recommends scoring a third type of respiratory event in which flow limitation is detected and is associated with a cortical arousal. These events are designated respiratory effort related arousals (RERAs).

The diagnosis of OSA can only be made in patients who undergo polysomnography, or a home sleep study.[33] Results of polysomnography are reported as the apnea-hypopnea index (AHI), which is derived from the total number of apneas and hypopneas divided by the total sleep time or the respiratory disturbance index (RDI) which includes RERA. A normal lower limit for AHI has not yet been defined in an epidemiologic study of healthy subjects. Most sleep centers commonly use an AHI between 5 and 10 events per hour as a normal limit. The severity of obstructive sleep apnea/hypopnea syndrome (OSAHS) is arbitrarily defined, but recommendations for disease classification are as follows[33]:

Mild Disease: AHI of 5 to 15 events per hour
Moderate Disease: AHI of 15 to 30 events per hour
Severe Disease: AHI of greater than 30 events per hour

Due to the risks of developing systemic and pulmonary hypertension, left ventricular hypertrophy, cardiac arrhythmias, cognitive impairment, persistent daytime somnolence, and other factors, treatment is recommended for patients with either moderate or severe disease. Treatment partly depends on the severity of the sleep-disordered breathing, but the consensus view is that patients with moderate or severe disease should be treated with continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) during sleep. Other conservative treatment measures may include weight loss, avoidance of alcohol prior to bedtime, and sleeping on one's side.

Numerous studies have confirmed that obesity is the greatest risk factor for OSAHS, with about 70% of patients (up to 80% of males and up to 50% of females) with OSAHS being obese. Severe sleep apnea disease is more common in men until women reach the age of menopause, and a strong negative correlation between the AHI and minimum SpO_2 has been observed. Importantly, the diagnosis of OSAHS may be missed until the patient presents for surgery. In one study of 170 patients presenting for surgery, only 15% had already been diagnosed with sleep apnea, but on preoperative testing, 76% were found to have OSAHS.[34] A STOP-Bang questionnaire (Box 58.2) can be used to screen patients for OSA, with a score of 5 to 8 identifying patients at risk for moderate to severe disease.[35] We believe it is important for obese patients presenting for bariatric surgery to undergo preoperative polysomnography testing for OSAHS. Preoperative diagnosis and appropriate interventional management can have the following benefits: less postoperative sleep deprivation, improved response to analgesic and anesthetic drugs, and normalization of cardiovascular disturbances.[36]

BOX 58.2 **STOP-Bang Questionnaire**

1. Snoring: Do you snore loudly (loud enough to be heard through closed doors)?
2. Tired: Do you often feel tired, fatigued, or sleepy during daytime?
3. Observed: Has anyone observed you stop breathing during your sleep?
4. Blood pressure: Do you have or are you being treated for high blood pressure?
5. BMI: BMI more than 35 kg/m^2?
6. Age: Age over 50 years old?
7. Neck circumference: Neck circumference >40 cm?
8. Gender: Male?

High risk of OSA: Yes to ≥3 questions.
Low risk of OSA: Yes to <3 questions.
BMI, Body mass index; *OSA*, obstructive sleep apnea.

Anatomically, obese patients with OSAHS typically have increased amounts of adipose tissue deposited into oral and pharyngeal tissues including the uvula, tonsils, tonsillar pillars, tongue, aryepiglottic folds, and lateral pharyngeal walls. An inverse relationship exists between the degree of obesity and pharyngeal area. Deposition of fat in the lateral walls decreases the size of the airway and changes the shape of the oropharynx into an ellipse with a short transverse and long anteroposterior axis.[37-39] This configuration can contribute to both the development and severity of airway obstruction and can also increase the expectation that it will be more difficult to maintain airway patency during mask ventilation and to perform direct laryngoscopy for endotracheal intubation with general anesthesia.[40-41] Neuromuscular blockade should be fully reversed prior to extubation, and low tidal volumes or lung protective ventilation should be employed.

Additionally, airway obstruction following extubation is likely to be complicated by the use of opiate and sedative drugs needed for postoperative pain management because these drugs tend to decrease pharyngeal dilator tone and increase the likelihood of upper airway collapse.[40]

OSA also plays an important role in inflammation and the metabolic syndrome.[20,32] The hypopneic and apneic events that occur in OSAHS are part of the cycle of events that involves both arousal from sleep and oxyhemoglobin desaturation. Sympathetic nervous system activation results as patients with untreated OSA undergo cyclic episodes of hypoxia and reoxygenation. This process leads to elevation of proinflammatory cytokines and may also induce oxidative stress of vascular endothelium, thus inducing an even more heightened state of systemic inflammation in obese patients with OSA.[32] Levels of many different inflammatory mediators, including IL-6, high-sensitivity C-reactive protein (hs-CRP), leptin, TNF-α, IL-1, reactive oxygen species, and adhesion molecules, such as intracellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) and vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 (VCAM-1), are increased in patients with OSAHS.[20] Thus obesity, the metabolic syndrome, and

OSAHS are interrelated diseases that significantly alter a patient's inflammatory disease profile and increase multiple health risks, particularly those of cardiovascular and airway origin. Importantly, surgical intervention to cause weight loss has been shown not only to improve obesity-related respiratory disease,[14] but it also can lead to significant and sustained increases in plasma adiponectin levels while decreasing both IL-6 and hs-CRP levels[42] as well as improve NK cell function and increase IL-12, IL-18, and interleukin-γ plasma levels.[31]

Nonsurgical Management of Obesity

The primary goals of nonsurgical management of obesity involve weight loss, the treatment of abnormalities associated with metabolic syndrome, and prevention of type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular disease-related events. Treatment of metabolic syndrome needs to follow an aggressive, multifaceted approach to address multiple underlying metabolic abnormalities and coexistent risk factors simultaneously.[24] An appropriate initial treatment of obesity and metabolic syndrome is therapeutic lifestyle change. This includes dietary modification, weight loss, physical activity, and discontinuation of smoking. The treatment aim is improvement in health, and is the primary reason for advocating weight loss. Modification of energy homeostasis is not easily achieved because a strong brain-gastrointestinal axis drives both food intake and satiety. This axis has hormonal components involving endogenous production of ghrelin, an orexigenic peptide that is produced by the foregut of the stomach and that stimulates appetite.[43] Therefore it is important to monitor the effects of treatment on risk factors and comorbidities at the systems, organ, cell, and molecular levels. Treatment success should be reflected in the decreasing need to treat other coexisting diseases.

The goal for weight loss in therapeutic lifestyle change is not the achievement of normal or ideal body weight (IBW). Even a modest weight loss, in the range of 5% to 10% from the presentation weight, can result in significant initial improvement in the comorbidities of diabetes, dyslipidemia, and hypertension by lowering total cholesterol and triglyceride levels, raising HDL-cholesterol, lowering arterial blood pressure, and lowering blood glucose values while reducing insulin resistance.[24,44] Obesity guidelines stress the need for weight reduction using behavioral change to reduce caloric intake and increase physical activity. A decrease in caloric intake is the most important component in achieving weight loss and increased physical activity is critical in maintaining the lost weight.[45] Reduced-energy diets are more effective and healthier for achieving long-term weight loss. Long-term maintenance of any weight loss achieved is best accomplished with the inclusion of regular exercise as a staple of the weight-reduction regimen. Regular physical exercise improves several risk factors associated with obesity and metabolic syndrome.[46] The standard exercise recommendation is a daily minimum of 30 minutes of moderate-intensity physical activity that is practical to perform. Larger weight loss goals are more appropriate for the more profoundly obese individuals who are contemplating surgical interventions. Even with surgery, ideal weight is hardly ever achieved, and after a number of years at a plateau, weight gain often recurs. In some patients, especially in the presence of severe comorbidities, simple prevention of additional weight gain may be the most reasonable goal.

Beyond the beneficial effects of therapeutic lifestyle change, specific intervention may be required to treat the dyslipidemia and hypertension associated with obesity and metabolic syndrome.[47] Most commonly, patients with metabolic syndrome have elevated triglyceride levels and low HDL cholesterol levels. Many patients receive statin therapy as the treatment of choice when low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol levels are excessive. Statins reduce cardiovascular disease risk in patients with type 2 diabetes and metabolic syndrome. Ezetimibe, which selectively inhibits intestinal cholesterol absorption, can be combined with statin therapy to further reduce LDL cholesterol by 15% to 20%. Fibrates effectively decrease triglyceride levels while increasing HDL cholesterol. Fibrates lower LDL cholesterol levels mildly, but when combined with statin therapy, fibrates may increase the risk of myopathy. Omega-3 fatty acids decrease triglyceride levels and improve insulin resistance in patients with metabolic syndrome. They are often used in combination therapy with other classes of the hypolipidemic drugs. Nicotinic acid is highly effective in raising HDL cholesterol levels in patients with metabolic syndrome. Nicotinic acid decreases the concentration of small, dense LDL particles and also lowers serum levels of lipoprotein (a).[47]

Dietary salt restriction and therapeutic lifestyle change are the primary means to address hypertension in obesity and metabolic syndrome. According to the 2017 guidelines published by the American College of Cardiology and American Heart Association (ACC/AHA),[48] patients having arterial blood pressure higher than 130/80 mm Hg may require antihypertensive drug therapy. There is no specific antihypertensive drug that is recommended as a first-line treatment in these patients, and generally the goal of antihypertensive therapy requires that polypharmacy be employed. A considerable element of the risk reduction resulting from antihypertensive therapy is decreasing arterial blood pressure.

The treatment of insulin resistance and hyperglycemia in metabolic syndrome, type 2 diabetes, and obesity is usually achieved with oral hypoglycemic drugs.[47] A number of different drug groups (and drugs within each group) that work through various mechanisms of action are available to treat hyperglycemia. These include α-glucosidase inhibitors, sulfonylureas, meglitinides, D-phenylalanine derivatives, biguanides, and thiazolidinediones.[47] Anesthetic implications include the need to assess and treat abnormal blood glucose levels in the perioperative period while being especially careful in the use of insulin in patients who are both insulin resistant and temporarily unable to continue on oral medication. At present, the optimal anesthetic management of patients who are taking metformin is not clear. There is a serious potential for postoperative lactic acidosis that can develop in patients using this drug. This possibility has led some physicians to routinely cancel or delay surgical procedures if metformin has been ingested within 48 hours of the scheduled surgery. Other physicians, however, have their patients continue taking metformin, both before and after surgery, without interruption if possible. Recent evidence indicates that patients taking metformin have a reduced risk for complications. It appears that metformin may be safely used in the perioperative period.[49]

Patients with metabolic syndrome and obesity may also be prescribed antiplatelet therapy. The AHA recommends that low-dose aspirin be used as a form of primary prevention in patients with metabolic syndrome whose 10-year risk for cardiovascular disease is 10% or greater as determined by Framingham risk scoring.

BEHAVIORAL INTERVENTIONS AND MODIFICATION

Behavioral interventions and behavioral modification are essential for obese patients to change their learned habits related to eating and physical activity in order to produce weight loss and long-term weight reduction.[47] This applies both for nonsurgical and surgical approaches to weight loss. The key features of typical behavioral programs include self-monitoring, goal setting, nutrition and exercise education, stimulus control, problem solving, cognitive restructuring, and relapse prevention. Patients often benefit from referral to multidisciplinary weight loss programs that incorporate diet, physical activity, and behavioral interventions to achieve their weight loss goals because these combined interventions provide the best weight loss and weight maintenance results without pharmacologic or surgical intervention. However, it is essential to identify and treat patients with eating disorders or major psychiatric disorders who require specialized psychiatric and psychological treatment to achieve meaningful weight loss.

PHARMACOTHERAPY FOR WEIGHT LOSS

Recommendations for pharmacotherapy as a treatment of obesity, first and foremost, stress lifestyle and behavioral modifications as the initial approaches to initiate weight loss.[27] Patients who do not reach their established reasonable weight loss goals by a combination of diet and exercise may be directed to pharmacotherapy to increase weight loss. There are weight loss drugs that have been approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and are currently prescribed for long-term use. These are typically used adjunctively with diet and exercise for patients having a BMI of 30 or greater (≥27 for patients with obesity-related risk factors or comorbid diseases). In current practice, there are only two categories of weight loss drugs: appetite suppressants and lipase inhibitors. Three drugs are currently available for the specific indication of weight loss: phentermine, lorcaserin,[50] and orlistat.[47] Phentermine, an adrenergic reuptake inhibitor, augments adrenergic signaling within the central nervous system and peripheral tissues. Phentermine decreases appetite and food intake and increases resting metabolic rate to promote weight loss. Its side effects include tachycardia and hypertension. Lorcaserin is a selective 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor agonist that reduces food intake through the activation of pro-opiomelanocortin. Due to its selectiveness for the 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor, lorcaserin has a better safety profile than the previous serotonin agonists for weight loss that have since been removed from the U.S. market due to increased risk of stroke and acute coronary syndrome. Lorcaserin should not be used in patients on selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) or monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) due to the risk of serotonin syndrome, which can be life threatening. Orlistat, a lipase inhibitor, reversibly binds to lipase and prevents both absorption and digestion of certain dietary fats. Because orlistat also interferes with the absorption of fat-soluble vitamins, patients using this drug need to supplement fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K. It has significant gastrointestinal side effects including diarrhea, steatorrhea, flatulence, fecal incontinence, and oily rectal discharge.

ALTERNATIVE PHARMACOLOGIC OPTIONS

Allison and colleagues [51] reviewed the literature on dietary and herbal medications for weight loss. These agents are marketed as "food supplements," thereby escaping the purview of the FDA. Even though these supplements cannot legally claim to treat a disease, they can claim to reduce the risk of a disease. According to the review, claims for weight loss have been made for multiple products such as chitosan, chromium picolinate, conjugated linoleic acid, ephedra alkaloids (ma huang),[52] and *Garcinia cambogia*. [51] Most of the reports involving these compounds are from poor quality studies without any randomization, control groups, or blinding, thereby placing in question both efficacy and safety of these compounds. The only studies involving herbals that have consistently demonstrated weight loss involve combinations of ephedrine and caffeine.[53-54] Pharmacologically, this is expected because ephedrine, an adrenergic agonist, is known to be an appetite suppressant and a thermogenic agent. For this reason, *ma huang*, a natural source of the ephedra alkaloid, is added to most, if not all, dietary supplements marketed for weight loss. The success of ephedrine as a weight loss agent in combination with caffeine and or aspirin is well established. Unfortunately, multiple cases of cardiac and neurological issues, including hypertension, stroke, seizure, and even death have been reported,[55] possibly related to the inconsistent doses in the preparations and the lack of medical supervision in people consuming these products for weight loss. Consequently, the National Institutes of Health has banned these products from any recommended weight loss regimen.

IMPLANTED ELECTRICAL STIMULATORS

Implantable gastric stimulators are subcutaneously placed devices that resemble cardiac pacemakers and stimulate along the lesser curvature of the stomach. These gastric stimulators have been tried since the early 2000s and have been found to cause modest weight loss with few side effects.[56-57] Numerous clinical trials conducted in the United States and Europe have shown some promising results. Most studies demonstrated weight loss during the first 12 months; however only a few studies had a follow-up period of longer than 1 year.[58] One study documented a 25% excess weight loss, improved response to oral glucose tolerance test, decreases in arterial blood pressure, and an improvement in symptoms of gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD), along with an increased parasympathetic drive. No serious side effects were noted in the first 65 patients reported on in this study[56] or in the 20 patients followed in another.[57] Ghrelin levels may play a role in the success of these devices.

Surgical Management of Obesity

Adult obesity is clearly rooted in childhood obesity. Unfortunately, pediatric obesity is the most common childhood nutritional disorder in the United States. This is one of the tragedies of the current obesity epidemic: the significant and increasing prevalence of obesity in the young. It has attained a level of controversy that has involved the placement of vending machines in schools and the availability of sweetened snacks and soft drinks in public places as public policy is developed to help control the epidemic of pediatric obesity. The diagnosis of pediatric obesity is commonly defined using criteria developed by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) using BMI-, age-, and sex-specific clinical growth charts.[59] These percentile curves apply to the ages of 2 to 20 years, and because BMI exhibits nonlinear variation during growth, percentile ranges are utilized. The CDC defines children possessing BMIs in the 5th to 85th percentiles as having "healthy weight." Children whose BMI is in the 85th to 95th percentile are "at risk for overweight," while those having a BMI above the 95th percentile are classified as "overweight." These classifications were previously regarded as "overweight" and "obese," respectively. This switch in terminology continues to be a source of confusion. Exceeding the 99th percentile is referred to as extreme pediatric obesity.

The National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey 2011–14 data show that the prevalence of obesity in children for age 2 to 5, 6 to 11, and 12 to 19 years are 9.4%, 17.4%, and 20.6%, respectively.[60] There does not appear to be an influence of gender on the prevalence of obese children above the age of 6 years. While the prevalence of obesity among children of ages 6 to 11 and 12 to 19 has steadily increased since 1988, there has been a slight recent decline in obesity among ages 2 to 5 years. A number of developing countries have childhood prevalence rates higher than that of the United States,[61] indicating that adolescent obesity is becoming pervasive.

Treatment of pediatric obesity is based on the balance of caloric intake and expenditure. These lifestyle changes are most successful with family intervention and support. The three pillars of success in this treatment are: better eating habits, increased physical activity, and decreased sedentary activity.[62] Success involves more than education of child and family; it incorporates goal setting, self-monitoring, incentives, and stimulus control. Lifestyle interventions remain the treatment of choice in pediatric obesity, but concomitant pharmacotherapy may be beneficial in some patients. Orlistat, which is covered elsewhere in this chapter, should be considered as second-line therapy for pediatric obesity.[63]

Although in 2000, less than 1% of all bariatric surgery patients in the United States were younger than 20 years of age,[64] the total number continues to increase. More adolescents are presenting for weight loss surgery, after failing to reduce weight and/or comorbidities in medically supervised and pharmacologically assisted weight loss programs. Even though many adult bariatric surgery programs are well qualified to provide safe and effective perioperative care for these patients, they may not be as well equipped to handle the unique metabolic and psychological needs of teenagers. Because of the shorter duration of obesity and fewer age-related comorbidities, adolescent patients have shorter length of stay and lower immediate postoperative mortality when compared to adults.[64]

Consent is an important issue in this population. Is parental consent to a semi-elective, relatively high-risk procedure appropriate? Does the child really understand the concept of high risk of death in the month after surgery? These and other such questions of ethics in medicine need to be addressed, but are beyond the scope of this chapter.

The rapid increase in the prevalence of both morbid obesity and superobesity, together with the increased risk of early demise within the obese population, has significantly increased the number of bariatric surgical procedures performed annually. The term bariatric surgery refers to surgical alteration of the small intestine or stomach with a view toward producing weight loss. It is estimated that over 216,000 bariatric surgeries are being performed annually in the United States. Care of obese patients is not limited to obesity surgery, however, as these patients present for all types of operations. Nonetheless, the benefits of surgical treatment of obesity now appear to have clear endocrinologic and cardiovascular value for reversing pathophysiologic effects of metabolic syndrome, type 2 diabetes, and other comorbidities of obesity, in addition to providing a mechanical means of enhancing weight loss.[65-71] Several alternative procedures in bariatric surgery have evolved from early procedures based on creating malabsorptive gut pathways to newer procedures aimed at altering hormonal regulation of caloric intake drive and satiety.[72] Primarily the available options can be separated into one of two groups: (1) operative procedures and (2) minimally invasive procedures that combine gastric restriction with induction of nutrient malabsorption.

OPERATIVE PROCEDURES

Surgery for obesity is one of the fastest growing surgeries performed worldwide.[73] The operative group can be divided into gastric restrictive procedures and procedures that combine gastric restriction with induction of nutrient malabsorption.[74-83] These procedures can be performed using an open, laparoscopic, or robot-assisted approach. In general, minimally invasive (laparoscopic, robotic) approaches are preferred over an open procedure as they have a lower complication rate, hospital stay, and morbidity.[84] The rate of open bariatric procedures has continued to decrease steadily to the extent that nearly 90% of surgical bariatric cases are now performed laparoscopically.[85]

RESTRICTIVE PROCEDURES

The surgical goal of restrictive operative procedures is to reduce and limit the patient's food intake capacity.[80] This is most commonly achieved by reducing the stomach's reservoir capacity. The vertical band gastroplasty was a widely practiced restrictive procedure in the previous three decades, but it was replaced by the minimally invasive laparoscopic gastric band procedure (LGB), which was very popular. However, in recent years, the percentage of bariatric procedures represented by LGB surgery performed has also decreased from 35% in 2011 to approximately 3% in 2016.[86] This decline in LGB operations is probably secondary to only modest amount of weight loss and high rates of band revisions and adjustments required. Recently, the sleeve gastrectomy (SG) has become

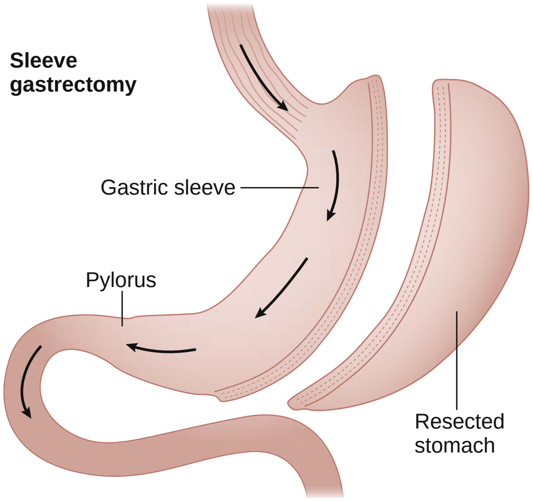


Fig. 58.2 Sleeve gastrectomy: a tubular stomach is created as the fundus and greater curvature of the stomach are removed around a 32F to 40F bougie.

the most commonly performed surgery for obesity. As illustrated in Fig. 58.2, in SG surgery, a tubular stomach is created around a 32 to 40 French bougie by removing the greater curvature of the stomach. The SG has been shown to be safe and effective, with a mean excess weight loss of approximately 65%.[87] The weight loss noted after a SG is not only due to the restrictive stomach, but also due to the decrease in hormonal level of ghrelin that regulates appetite and food intake.[88]

MALABSORPTIVE PROCEDURES

The surgical goal of malabsorptive procedures is to cause weight loss both by gastric restriction and nutrient malabsorption. Historically, early surgical procedures involved creation of a long jejunoileal bypass. Patients achieved significant weight reduction but this was commonly accompanied by an unacceptable incidence of serious vitamin and protein malabsorption, osteoporosis, and hepatic failure.

Today, gastric bypass (GBP), which is illustrated in Fig. 58.3, and biliary pancreatic diversion (BPD) are the two most commonly performed malabsorptive operations, and both have achieved success in safety and efficacy.[80] GBP is more commonly performed than BPD, and it is considered the safer of the two malabsorption procedures. GBP surgery involves the creation of a small gastric pouch by stapling or banding the stomach. This results in an element of gastric restriction. GBP also involves the creation of a Roux-en-Y anastomosis, in which the small gastric pouch is directly connected to the middle portion of the jejunum.[89] The OrVil device, shown along with nontapered and tapered bougies in Fig. 58.4, may be used by the surgeon to assist with creation of the anastomosis. The orogastric portion of the OrVil device is passed through the oropharynx and then pulled through by the surgeon via a gastrostomy, until the anvil portion of the OrVil device reaches the stomach. It is then attached to a stapler to create the anastomosis. The path for food through the gastrointestinal tract subsequently bypasses the gastric remnant and the upper portion of the duodenum. This procedure can be performed with a laparotomy incision or by using laparoscopic techniques.[90-91]

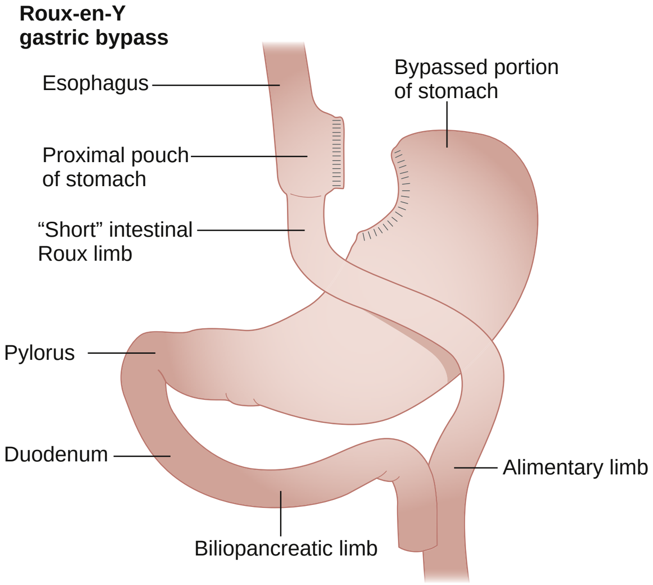


Fig. 58.3 Roux-en-Y gastric bypass: part of the stomach is detached from the rest, creating a small pouch. The pouch is connected to a lower part of the small intestine by a piece of small intestine, resembling a Y. As a result, parts of the stomach and small intestine are bypassed. However, digestive juices (bile acids and pancreatic enzymes) can still mix with the food, enabling the body to absorb vitamins and minerals and reducing the risk of nutritional deficiencies.

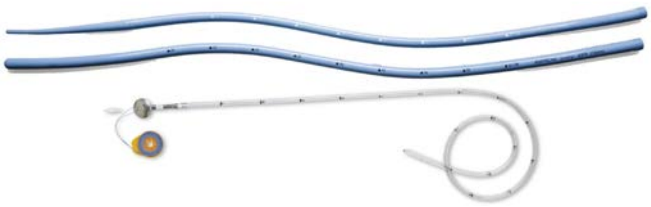


Fig. 58.4 32F tapered bougie *(top)*, 40F nontapered bougie *(middle)*, and OrVil device *(bottom)* commonly used during bariatric surgery.

Although this is considered to be a safe operation, the associated perioperative mortality is higher than that of restrictive procedures.[77] Additionally, there are some important long-term complications such as vitamin B_{12} deficiency, anemia, incisional hernia, cholelithiasis, and staple line failure that occur with significant frequency. Often a cholecystectomy is performed concurrently to prevent future cholelithiasis.[92] BPD is also a form of Roux-en-Y GBP reconstructive alimentary anatomy in which the bypassed intestinal segment includes the portion of duodenum at the point of entry of biliary and pancreatic secretions. This allows the bypassed intestine to be exposed to bile and pancreatic juice. The antrum is removed to avoid peptic ulceration, and food intake is only affected to a limited degree. The essential element of this operation is division of the small intestine about midlength, with the distal end of the alimentary limb being anastomosed to a generous gastric remnant. The more proximal biliopancreatic limb is anastomosed to the alimentary limb about 50 cm from the ileocecal valve. Following either the GBP or BPD form of operation, patients require life-long follow-up and may need micronutrient replacement long term.

MINIMALLY INVASIVE PROCEDURES

There have recently been a few devices approved in the United States for weight loss. One such device is the intragastric balloon that acts in a restrictive manner.[93] The intragastric balloon is placed in the patient's stomach endoscopically and is filled with saline to provide a sensation of fullness and satiety. The device can be kept in the patient's stomach for a maximum of 6 months and has been shown to decrease weight by an average of 6.8%. Most common complications of the intragastric balloon are related to gastrointestinal symptoms such as nausea, vomiting, halitosis, GERD, and abdominal discomfort; however serious complications such as balloon rupture, migration, and intestinal obstruction are possible.[94]

Another device that has been approved for use in the United States is an endoscopically placed percutaneous gastrostomy tube to facilitate stomach emptying. The device can be used for draining ingested foods and in preliminary studies has been shown to decrease total body weight (TBW) by approximately 12%.[95] The most common side effects were abdominal discomfort and peristomal irritation; however serious complications such as abdominal pain requiring hospitalization and peritonitis were noted infrequently.

HEALTH BENEFITS OF BARIATRIC SURGERY

The two most significant outcome measures of bariatric surgical success are weight loss and resolution of comorbidities. Major effects of bariatric operations have been nicely summarized in extensive meta-analyses[67,96-97] as well as in a major literature review.[98] Patients undergoing bariatric surgery with either SG or GBP have lost 52% to 68% of their excess weight.[99-100] This magnitude of weight loss is far greater than what is commonly achievable by nonsurgical methods, and it is considerably closer to patients' desired and expected weight loss. Long-term maintenance of weight loss of this magnitude can also be maintained for well over a decade.

Improvement in obesity-related and metabolic syndrome-related comorbidities have also been evaluated.[67,97-98,101] One clinical study demonstrated that at 1 year, type 2 diabetes remission rate with bariatric surgery was approximately 40% compared to 12% with medical treatment.[102] Another study showed remission rate at 2 years of approximately 85% compared to 0% with medical treatment.[103] This benefit seems to persist long-term as well, as at 6 years 62% of surgical patients experienced remission in their type 2 diabetes.[104] Resolution of diabetes following surgery is inversely related to the preoperative duration of the disease and occurs more in those patients having diabetes controlled using oral hypoglycemic agents. This clearly distinguishes surgical treatment of obesity as an important endocrinologic intervention, especially since the modest improvement in diabetes management that is produced by nonsurgical weight loss is accompanied by relapsing disease by nearly 100% of patients within 5 years.

Surgical effects on hypertension and hyperlipidemia are similarly impressive. A study of almost 1900 patients demonstrated that at a 6.5 year follow-up, 32% of surgically treated patients had remission of their hypertension versus 12.5% in medically managed patients.[105] A significant decrease in triglyceride levels, approximately 30% to 40% postbariatric surgery versus 8% from medical therapy; and increase in HDL cholesterol levels, 30% postsurgery versus 7% from medical therapy, have also been noted at 5 years.[106] Resolution of OSAHS seems to be independent of the specific bariatric surgical procedure employed, with resolution occurring overall in 85.7% of patients.[107] Postsurgical improvement in other comorbidities has also been demonstrated, with improvement in fatty infiltration of the liver, GERD symptoms, in respiratory function and asthmatic symptoms, reversal of the cardiomyopathy of obesity, and improvements in joint pain and mobility all having been reported.[71,108-112] The reduction in obesity-related comorbidities has been shown to endure with 5-year follow-up.[113] Although bariatric surgery has been shown to provide greater weight loss when compared with nonsurgical lifestyle interventions, comorbidities do resolve and risk factors do improve similarly with successful conservative treatments.[101]

Anesthetic Management of the Bariatric Surgical Patient

Patients undergoing bariatric surgery are receiving what is now the best long-term treatment for morbid obesity. However, their presurgical state is an agglomeration of abnormal physiologic conditions involving multiple organ systems. For that reason, there are considerable risks of mortality and morbidity associated with all types of bariatric surgery. Preoperative risk stratification can be used to identify patients at highest risk for significant morbid or fatal events when having bariatric surgery[114]; however detailed planning of the anesthesia care for the perioperative, intraoperative, and postoperative phases must be pursued for purposes of patient safety.

PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION

The preoperative assessment for anesthesia should include consideration of hypertension, diabetes, heart failure, and obesity hypoventilation syndrome. Results of the sleep study that the patient underwent are important. An AHI score greater than 30, implying severe sleep apnea, is a warning sign and a predictor for rapid and severe desaturation at induction. CPAP levels greater than 10 imply a patient with the potential for difficult mask ventilation.

Another useful piece of information in the preoperative evaluation is gleaned by examining the history of prior surgeries, their anesthetic challenges (i.e., ease or difficulty in securing the airway, intravenous access), need for intensive care unit admission, surgical outcomes, and the weight of the patient at that time. This information may either help ease some concerns or allow for better preparation for the upcoming anesthetic care. Recommended preoperative laboratory evaluations include fasting blood glucose, lipid profile, and serum chemistries (evaluating renal and hepatic function), complete blood count, ferritin, vitamin B_{12}, thyrotropin, and 25-hydroxyvitamin D.

If appropriately evaluated, ideally prepared, and optimally managed perioperatively, even patients with well-known coronary artery disease (CAD) have comparable morbidity and mortality as those without CAD.[115] The effect of OSA on perioperative risk remains controversial,[116] but most patients are screened for OSA using overnight oximetry or polysomnography, or both, if appropriate. If identified with OSA and recommended for CPAP, then patients are encouraged to initiate therapy at home and it should be continued throughout the perioperative period.

Liver function abnormalities are common in this patient population, especially nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, with the extent of disease a determining factor for perioperative risk and postoperative outcomes. Cirrhotic liver disease with portal hypertension may be considered a contraindication to bariatric surgery.[116] Gastrointestinal symptoms of dyspepsia may indicate the presence of *Helicobacter pylori*, which requires treatment by standard medical regimen.

The factors that may be considered contraindications for bariatric surgery include unstable CAD, uncontrolled severe OSA, uncontrolled psychiatric disorder, intellectual disability (IQ <60), inability to understand the surgery, perceived inability to adhere to postoperative restrictions, continued drug abuse, and malignancy with a poor 5-year survival prognosis. In most situations preoperative management of the medical morbidities can help optimize risk and convert high-risk patients to ones of acceptable risk.

The anesthetic care of patients with OSA is complicated by the side effects of anesthetic drugs on an already compromised respiratory system. The commonly presented comorbidities in this patient population only accentuate the problem.[117] The change in perioperative risk based on the anesthetic agent utilized is only deduced from anecdotal reports of different cases. There is a paucity of trials to definitively determine an optimal anesthetic regimen. Nevertheless, the American Society of Anesthesiologists and the Society for Anesthesia and Sleep Medicine have both published statements based on existing literature and consensus of expert opinion addressing the perioperative identification and management of patients who carry a formal diagnosis of OSA as well as for those who are at risk for sleep apnea but remain undiagnosed. Additional questions commonly arise and cannot yet be answered on the basis of high-grade scientific evidence: is it safe to perform procedures in patients with sleep apnea and treat them as outpatients or day surgery patients? What procedures pose sufficient risk to the patient to recommend an overnight hospital stay? Does narcotic use impact this decision? Would the increased role of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) change these recommendations? Factors such as neck size and open versus laparoscopic surgery are being studied as to their impact on outcomes. Further research on these and other patient safety related questions is continuing.

INTRAOPERATIVE CARE

Obese patients present special intraoperative challenges for the anesthesiologist in airway management, positioning, monitoring, choice of anesthetic technique and anesthetic drugs, pain control, and fluid management. Many of these issues are equally important in their postoperative care. The most significant and best studied are airway management, including endotracheal intubation, pulmonary physiology, and techniques of maintaining adequate blood oxygenation and lung volume. Specific interventions, techniques, and approaches employed by the anesthesia care team providing anesthesia for obese patients are important determinants of outcomes.

Patient Positioning

Even though there are no evidence-based studies that demonstrate that obese patients have more frequent complications from positioning, it seems fairly intuitive that morbidly obese patients do require extra care in positioning (see also Chapter 34). Even in the supine position, rhabdomyolysis from pressure on gluteal muscles leading to renal failure[118] and death[119] have been reported. For obese patients placed in the prone position, cushioning gel pads or other weight-bearing rolls may have excessive weight placed on them. Pressure points must be checked carefully, and even though pressure sites may be carefully padded, skin breakdown can still occur. This may cause tissue necrosis and infections, especially in lengthy surgery.[120] It is difficult to protect the dependent hip from pressure effects with patients placed in lateral decubitus position. Obese patients have excess axillary tissue that may make it impossible or unnecessary to place a traditional axillary roll in this position. In the lithotomy position the challenge may be in supporting the weight of the patient's legs using regular, and not oversized, stirrups. To minimize the risk of tissue compression injury or development of compartment syndrome, the duration during which legs are held in stirrups should be held as short as possible.[121]

Airway Management

No positioning issue is more important than that regarding positioning of the obese individual for laryngoscopy and endotracheal intubation. These are often considered to be much more difficult to perform in obese patients than patients having a normal BMI. Difficulty with laryngoscopy and intubation is usually thought to result from the obese patient having a short, thick neck, large tongue, and significant redundant pharyngeal soft tissue. However, the correlation between morbid obesity and difficult laryngoscopy and intubation is not universally observed in clinical practice. This is likely to result from a simple, but important approach to clinical care, with careful attention being paid to patient positioning prior to induction of general anesthesia. Appropriate positioning plays an important role in providing optimal conditions for successful placement of the endotracheal tube under direct vision.

A number of studies have been conducted to determine the incidence of difficult laryngoscopy or intubation in the obese population, with mixed findings. One study found an association between oropharyngeal Mallampati classification and BMI as predictors of difficult laryngoscopy.[122] During laryngoscopy, the patients' heads were placed in optimum sniffing position, regardless of BMI. In a study conducted exclusively with obese patients, BMI was not found to be associated with intubation difficulties.[41] A high Mallampati score was identified as a predictor of "potential intubation problems," but intubation by direct laryngoscopy was successful in 99 of 100 patients studied. All patients were positioned with pillows or towels under their shoulders, with the head elevated and neck extended.

Another group studied both lean and obese patients and found a Mallampati score of III or IV to be the only independent risk factor for difficult intubation in the obese study group.[123] The authors demonstrated that the Mallampati score had low specificity and low positive predictive values (62% and 29%, respectively) for difficult intubation. They concluded that intubation was more difficult in the obese patients. During intubation, patients were placed in a semirecumbent position (30-degree elevation) with the head in the sniffing position. In another study ultrasound was used to quantify the amount of soft tissue between the skin and the anterior aspect of the trachea at the level of vocal cords.[124] The authors also assessed the airway by measurement of thyromental distance, mouth opening, degree of neck mobility, Mallampati score, neck circumference, and presence of OSA. Only an abundance of pretracheal soft tissue measured ultrasonically and neck circumferences were found to be positive predictors of difficult intubation with laryngoscopy performed with patients in the sniffing position. A meta-analysis of 35 studies was conducted to determine the diagnostic accuracy of preinduction tests for predicting difficult intubation in patients having no airway pathology.[125] The incidence of difficult intubation in obese patients was three times the incidence compared to the nonobese population. This may have resulted from suboptimal patient positioning, which was not clearly described in any of the preceding studies, including ramped positioning or elevating the upper body and head of morbidly obese patients to align the ear with the sternum horizontally, as has been shown to improve laryngoscopic view.[126] In this study, morbidly obese patients were assigned either to be in sniffing position or ramped position for airway management. The study demonstrated a statistically significant difference in laryngeal view, with ramped position providing the superior view. In one study, morbidly obese patients in a ramped position with a Mallampati score of III or IV and male gender were shown to predict possible difficult intubation, while no relationship was noted between difficult direct laryngoscopy and the presence of OSA, patient neck circumference, or BMI.[127]

Based on the evidence from randomized controlled trials and other literature on airway management of obese patients, patients should be readily intubated by direct laryngoscopy if placed carefully in ramped position. This can be achieved using commercially available positioning devices[128] or by building a ramp from blankets or sheets to achieve the desired placement of the patient's head relative to the thorax.[129] Obese patients must be examined for the common objective signs of potential difficult intubation, which include small mouth opening, large protuberant teeth, limited neck mobility, and retrognathia. Alternative airway management techniques include the use of a video laryngoscope for intubating obese patients.[130] Compared to direct laryngoscopy, the use of video laryngoscopy in patients undergoing bariatric surgery has shown to provide a better glottic view and decreased time required to successfully intubate the trachea.[131] Performance of an awake, topicalized direct laryngoscopy with modest sedation can also be utilized to assess laryngoscopic view in deciding whether to proceed with induction of general anesthesia or awake, sedated fiberoptic intubation. Of course, the equipment for emergency airway management including laryngeal masks and a fiberoptic bronchoscope should be immediately available.

Another area that requires specific attention during the perioperative period is the obese patient's pulmonary physiology. It is especially important to appreciate techniques to maintain oxygenation and lung volume in caring for the obese patient. First, obese patients have multiple pulmonary abnormalities, including decreased vital capacity, inspiratory capacity, expiratory reserve volume, and functional residual capacity. Second, closing capacity in obese individuals is close to or may fall within tidal breathing, particularly in the supine or recumbent position. Moreover, both lung and respiratory system compliance are low with obesity because patients breathe at lung volumes that are abnormally low.[132] As a result of the underlying physiology, the obese patient is likely to undergo rapid oxygen desaturation, particularly during periods of apnea such as occurs during induction of general anesthesia. However, the presence of OSA by itself does not independently increase the risk of the patient desaturating during induction of general anesthesia as long as appropriate precautions are instituted.[133] However, after induction and intubation have occurred, patients may continue to derecruit gas exchange units throughout the anesthetic course.[134] A variety of maneuvers have been studied to preserve oxygenation and maintain lung volume specifically in the obese population.

In one study of the rate of development of hypoxemia in patients during apnea, patients received 100% oxygen by facemask to achieve denitrogenation before induction of general anesthesia.[134] The apneic period was continued after induction until the SpO_2 fell to 90%. Obese patients reached the end point in less than 3 minutes, whereas it took 6 minutes in patients having a normal BMI. Efforts to prevent atelectasis formation and desaturation during induction of general anesthesia in obese individuals include application of CPAP during preoxygenation,[135-137] and mask application of positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP), and mechanical ventilation following induction.[137] Use of 10 cm H_2O CPAP during preoxygenation in the supine position resulted in a higher partial pressure of oxygen (PaO_2) after intubation and decreased the amount of atelectasis that developed.[81] The combination of CPAP during preoxygenation and PEEP/mechanical ventilation after induction significantly increased the nonhypoxemic apnea duration from 2 minutes, found in controls not receiving CPAP or PEEP, to 3 minutes. Use of 7.5 cm H_2O CPAP during 3 minutes of preoxygenation while supine, however, did not change the time required for obese patients to desaturate to an SpO_2 of 90%.[136] Preoxygenation using 25-degree head-up (back inclined) as opposed to supine positioning without positive airway pressure did increase the elapsed time needed for anesthetized, apneic, obese individuals to desaturate to an SpO_2 of 92%.[138] The patients in head-up position had a significantly higher PaO_2 after preoxygenation, just prior to induction. The obesity-associated gas exchange defect depended on the waist-to-hip ratio, an index of the distribution of adipose tissue surrounding the thorax.[139] This study further demonstrated that morbidly obese men are more likely to have poorer pulmonary gas exchange than morbidly obese women. In a study conducted to assess the relationship between patient positioning and development of hypoxemia in obese patients during apnea after anesthetic induction and intubation, patients were ventilated with a 50% oxygen/50% air mixture for 5 minutes before the ventilator circuit was disconnected.[140] Apnea was continued until the SpO_2 fell to 92%, at which time ventilation was resumed. Patients in the supine position reached the end point in 2 minutes, but it took 30 seconds longer if supine position with the back elevated 30-degrees was used and 1 minute longer if 30-degree reverse Trendelenburg position was used. Use of 30-degree reverse Trendelenburg position in obese patients undergoing bariatric surgery was also shown to reduce the alveolar-to-arterial oxygen difference, as well as increase total ventilatory compliance and reduce peak and plateau airway pressures when compared to supine position.[141] Vital capacity has also been shown to decrease to a greater extent under general anesthesia in obese patients compared to normal weight patients.[142]

A variety of intraoperative maneuvers to maintain lung volume and oxygenation have also been studied. Increasing tidal volume incrementally from 13 to 22 mL/kg in obese patients ventilated under general anesthesia did not improve the gas exchange defect but did increase airway pressures.[143] Use of 10 cm H_2O PEEP has been demonstrated to have a greater effect in obese patients compared to normal subjects on improving ventilatory mechanics, increasing PaO_2, and decreasing alveolar-to-arterial oxygen difference during general anesthesia with neuromuscular blockade.[144] In addition to PEEP alone, use of a recruitment maneuver such as sustained lung inflation to 55 cm H_2O for 10 seconds followed by application of PEEP has been demonstrated to prevent atelectasis from developing and to improve oxygenation, whereas neither PEEP nor a recruitment maneuver alone achieved the same degree of maintenance of pulmonary function.[145]

Pneumoperitoneum during laparoscopic procedures increases pulmonary resistance and decreases dynamic lung compliance.[146] During pneumoperitoneum, alterations in body position, tidal volume, and respiratory rate had no effect on the alveolar-to-arterial oxygen difference in obese patients.[147] During pneumoperitoneum for laparoscopic bariatric surgery, alveolar recruitment by repeated sustained lung inflation to 50 cm H_2O followed by mechanical ventilation with 12 cm H_2O PEEP has been shown to increase PaO_2 intraoperatively, however at the expense of causing hypotension that required vasopressor use.[148] In an attempt to optimize PEEP in obese patients undergoing laparoscopic surgery, a normal functional residual capacity was maintained with 15 ± 1 cm H_2O PEEP. Infusion of intravascular volume expanders was required to prevent PEEP-induced hemodynamic compromise.[149]

In summary, a back-up position with the use of PEEP during preoxygenation at induction of anesthesia and intraoperatively has been shown to decrease the A-a gradient in an obese patient.[150] Furthermore, the application of noninvasive modes of ventilation including pressure support and bilevel delivered by mask for preoxygenation, induction, and maintenance of anesthesia to maintain oxygenation and ventilatory mechanics in obese patients has been shown to be beneficial. Ideal patient positioning, use of PEEP, and special modes of ventilation just prior to emergence and extubation may help maintain pulmonary function and gas exchange postextubation. Currently there are no published guidelines to address the issues of maintenance of oxygenation and ventilatory mechanics in obese patients undergoing general anesthesia. Considering both the airway management issues detailed previously as well as the oxygenation, lung volume, and ventilatory mechanics issues described above for obese individuals, anesthesia care providers should position patients to achieve the combined goals of providing a superior laryngoscopic view for ease of endotracheal intubation while establishing optimal conditions for oxygenation and preservation of pulmonary mechanical function.

It is the practice at our institution that obese patients are initially placed in a ramped position and then into reverse Trendelenburg, if needed, to achieve a 25- to 30-degree incline of the thorax prior to preoxygenation. Patients are then preoxygenated for 3 to 5 minutes using 100% oxygen delivered under positive pressure. For those patients receiving CPAP at home for OSA, we use CPAP or pressure support ventilation by facemask at a pressure level identical to the patient's home CPAP setting. Otherwise, CPAP of 8 to 10 cm H_2O is appropriate. Following induction, it is reasonable to maintain 8 to 10 cm H_2O PEEP intraoperatively, but care must be taken to treat any hypotension that may occur. Finally, if the patient's position must be changed intraoperatively, one must return the patient to head-up position prior to emergence and extubation.

In preparation for emergence from anesthesia, neuromuscular blockade must be fully reversed before the patient is extubated. Given the advent of a pressure support ventilation mode on many newer models of anesthesia machines, the bariatric patient can be maintained on pressure support during emergence once spontaneous ventilation has resumed. When adequate muscle strength has returned, as demonstrated by sustained tetanus using the nerve stimulator and performance of a 5-second head lift, the awake patient who is following commands can be extubated. Pressure support or CPAP can be delivered immediately by mask applied to the face as is done during preoxygenation prior to induction of anesthesia. The use of PEEP and noninvasive modes of ventilation just after emergence and extubation has been shown to improve pulmonary function in patients up to 24 hours later.[151] We utilize CPAP during recovery, especially in those patients already prescribed CPAP for their OSA. The basic premise that must be respected with regard to airway management and its integral relationship to pulmonary function is that morbid obesity incurs significant derangements of lung function and pulmonary mechanics. These factors must be managed carefully in order to minimize intraoperative and postoperative pulmonary complications.[152,153]

Anesthetic Drugs and Dosing

Anesthetic drugs such as opioids, propofol, and benzodiazepines are all well known to have exaggerated responses in patients with OSA. They may decrease pharyngeal musculature tone, which is essential in maintaining airway patency.[40,154] In the setting of OSA, volatile agents are known to diminish ventilatory response to carbon dioxide, especially in children with tonsillar hypertrophy. Another pediatric study showed that spontaneously breathing intubated children with a history of OSA have depressed ventilation and half have apnea with 0.5 μg/kg of intravenous fentanyl. Although these data are from the pediatric literature, it would be prudent to apply the same principles in obese adult patients until proven otherwise. It therefore becomes attractive to use short-acting drugs and nondepressors of ventilation like the α_2-agonist dexmedetomidine. This should, at least in theory, speed up the return to baseline respiratory function.[120]

Commonly used anesthetic drugs can be dosed on TBW or IBW based on lipid solubility. In the past, IBW was interpreted to mean fat-free weight, implying that it could be used as a substitute for lean body weight or more correctly, lean body mass (LBM), usually approximated as 120% of IBW. LBM is a good weight approximation to use when dosing hydrophilic medications. As expected, volume of distribution (V_D) is changed in obese patients with regard to lipophilic drugs. This is especially true of benzodiazepines and barbiturates, among the commonly used anesthetic drugs. Two exceptions to this rule are procainamide[155] and remifentanil,[156] which even though highly lipophilic, have no relationship between properties of the drug and their V_D.[157] Consequently, commonly used anesthetic drug dosing is based on IBW for propofol, vecuronium, rocuronium, sugammadex, and remifentanil. In contrast, midazolam, succinylcholine, cisatracurium, fentanyl, and sufentanil should be dosed on the basis of TBW. Another caveat to this recommendation is that maintenance doses of propofol should be based on TBW and conversely for sufentanil on IBW.[157] This implies that one can use, based on patient weight, larger amounts of benzodiazepines, fentanyl, or sufentanil, although these are best titrated to desired clinical effect. Conversely, based on real body weight, smaller amounts of propofol are needed to anesthetize the patient.

With vecuronium or rocuronium, the initial dose should be based on IBW with additional doses based on the closely followed state of neuromuscular blockade. Complete blockade in the morbidly obese patient is necessary not just for the surgeon's convenience, but also to facilitate mechanical ventilation. The drug chosen is not as important as the depth of the state of paralysis. The pharmacokinetic profile of sugammadex is similar to that of rocuronium, and its dosing should be based on IBW.[158]

Volatile anesthetics are chosen based on physical characteristics of tissue solubility which are expressed as blood-gas partition coefficients and fat-blood partition coefficients. There is some evidence to suggest that desflurane may be the anesthetic of choice based on consistent and rapid recovery profile versus sevoflurane and propofol.[159,160] Some studies suggest that the differences in immediate recovery between sevoflurane and desflurane are not clinically significant.[161]

Even though nitrous oxide provides some analgesic effect and is rapidly eliminated, we prefer to avoid it based on the high oxygen demands in the obese. Its entry into air spaces in short intraabdominal surgeries may not be a significant factor, but in bariatric surgery, especially when done laparoscopically or robotically, any increase in bowel gas volume could make a challenging surgical procedure even more difficult for the surgeon.

Induction of Anesthesia

There has been considerable debate regarding obesity, the risk of aspiration of gastric contents, and the need to provide aspiration prophylaxis.[162] Abdominal bloating or fullness and female sex are associated with delayed gastric emptying of solids and liquids in diabetic patients.[163] Although many obese patients have type 2 diabetes, separate studies of gastroesophageal reflux during anesthesia have not demonstrated body habitus to be a predictor of reflux rates.[164] Gastric fluid volume and pH have been shown to be the same in obese patients who are fasting or who have oral intake of up to 300 mL of clear liquid 2 hours prior to being anesthetized.[165] Obesity itself does not increase aspiration risk. However, acid aspiration prophylaxis including H_2–receptor agonists or proton pump inhibitors must be considered in patients having identifiable aspiration risks. Rapid sequence induction or awake fiberoptic intubation may also be considered in such patients.[40]

Based on experience from obstetric practice, there is a body of evidence to show that regional anesthesia, especially epidural and spinal, are safe and feasible in patients with large body habitus.[120] However, regional anesthesia is technically more difficult due to the physical challenge of placing the catheters and the tendency of these catheters to migrate out of the epidural space. Special equipment, including longer needles or special ultrasound probes, may be needed for the correct placement of catheters in these patients. Care should be exercised in dosing these catheters because of the increased cephalad spread of the drug and the block due to the smaller epidural space compared to normal-weight patients.[166,167] The degree of respiratory compromise suffered by obese patients will also be of a larger magnitude than normal-weight patients with a high regional block.

There is little evidence to suggest that epidural pain management improves overall outcomes. Since the trend of laparoscopic surgery is increasing compared to open laparotomies, this becomes less of an issue. In the morbidly obese patient who is having an open laparotomy, use of a thoracic epidural catheter to control pain has the most important benefit of reducing the attenuation of vital capacity postoperatively.[168]

Obesity per se does not require invasive monitoring, so GBP surgery can be performed safely with routine monitoring. The indications for invasive monitoring stem from the comorbidities present in these patients. Since these tend to run together in the patients needing surgery, the incidence of invasive monitoring in these patients thereby increases.[169] Morbidly obese patients having serious comorbidities such as obesity-hypoventilation syndrome, who present with pulmonary hypertension and cor pulmonale, may require a pulmonary artery catheter or intraoperative evaluation utilizing transesophageal echocardiography. The rationale for central venous access may stem from difficulties in peripheral access rather than any other indication. Many patients receive an inferior vena cava filter prophylactically due to the high risk of deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism associated with obesity and bariatric surgery.[170] It is recommended that a central line inserted at the time of surgery should be placed under ultrasound guidance to decrease complications as well as to increase ease of placement. Similarly, difficulty in noninvasive blood pressure measurements, secondary to body habitus–related difficulty in appropriate cuff placement, may be an indication for arterial catheter placement. Obtaining arterial blood gases may help to guide intraoperative ventilation and extubation.

Postoperative pain management in weight loss surgery patients can involve intravenous analgesia employing patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) or thoracic epidural analgesia. There is no clear data proving the superiority of one technique over the other; therefore in many instances, surgical technique, open versus laparoscopic, may help guide that decision. In our practice, we tend to reserve epidural anesthesia for patients undergoing open GBP. Even with these drawbacks, we have approximately an 80% success rate with superobese patients. It may be prudent to test the effectiveness of the epidural prior to induction of anesthesia. An opioid-based PCA with local anesthetic wound infiltration and adjunct non-narcotics is a reasonable alternative approach for most patients. Injection of local anesthetic in the incision site prior to making the incision may result in preemptive analgesia. Adjunct analgesia with non-narcotic medications such as oral and intravenous acetaminophen, NSAIDs, low dose ketamine, and dexmedetomidine, will decrease opioid requirements and thereby opioid-induced side effects as well.

Intraoperatively, utilizing the appropriate operating room table for the patient's weight is critical since the consequences of having a table not rated to the patient's weight can have serious consequences for both patient and the operating room personnel. It may be useful to keep the patient strapped throughout the period of sedation and sleep. Along with a safety strap, it might also be useful to apply a bean bag under the patient to keep the patient from sliding off the operating room table. Thermal management in the operating room is best accomplished by forced-air warmers. Arm boards may need extra padding to keep the patient from having the arm and shoulder out of an anatomical position. If the arms are to be tucked by the side of the patient, then wide, well padded sleds may be useful.

Fluid requirements for the obese patient are larger than predicted for those of normal BMI and even during a relatively short, 2- to 3-hour case these patients may need 3 to 4 L of crystalloid fluid to prevent acute tubular necrosis (ATN) in the kidneys. Hypovolemia, which can cause a protracted prerenal state and contribute to the development of ATN, can be prevented by appropriate hydration. Retrospective data from the University of Pittsburgh Medical Center suggests that primary acute renal failure after weight loss surgery occurs in approximately 2% of patients. Other predisposing factors include BMI greater than 50 kg/m^2, prolonged surgical time, prior history of renal disease, and intraoperative hypotension.[171]

POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

In our practice, we prefer to have the postbariatric surgery patients stay at the same location consistently. This allows skilled nursing and ancillary care to be provided to patients on a consistent basis. These patients are kept on their CPAP or bilevel positive airway pressure machines as much as possible with monitoring of end-tidal carbon dioxide and SpO_2 by pulse oximetry recommended. Monitoring capnometry in the postoperative period is critical for assessing a morbidly obese patient's respiratory function since the administration of supplemental oxygen may delay the diagnosis of hypoventilation. At the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania, patients identified as having difficult airways are distinguished with armbands, and with visible signs on their beds, their hospital charts, and on the electronic medical records for the remainder of their hospital stay. Additionally, a note by the attending anesthesiologist explaining the difficulty in intubation as well as the means utilized to secure the airway in the operating room is available in the room. In case of an unexpected emergency intubation, for whatever reason, we feel that this extra information is extremely useful to the resuscitation team.

Postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV) is a common reason for delayed discharge from the postanesthesia care unit (PACU). Intraabdominal surgery is a known risk factor for PONV.[172] Patients undergoing bariatric surgery have significant manipulation of their stomach, which may increase their risk of PONV. It is recommended to include a multimodal approach to PONV prophylaxis, including ondansetron, dexamethasone, and placement of a scopolamine patch when not contraindicated in order to minimize patient dissatisfaction and serious complications such as aspiration or wound and anastomotic dehiscence.

Enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) protocols are being used widely in surgical patients to decrease morbidity and decrease in-hospital stay. One study looking at patients undergoing an SG demonstrated a median hospital stay of 1 day in the ERAS group compared to 2 days in the control group, without any difference in postoperative complications or readmissions.[173] The ERAS protocol included standardized preoperative patient education, shortened preoperative fasting, multimodal analgesia and antiemetic therapy, avoidance of fluid overload, early ambulation and feeding, and incentive spirometry.

MANAGEMENT OF COMPLICATIONS

Bariatric surgery is considered to be very safe, but not without potential complications, which are increasingly predictable.[174] In-hospital mortality rates for patients undergoing laparoscopic and open bariatric surgery are 0.17% and 0.79%, respectively.[175] Mortality is associated with a need for reoperation during the same hospitalization,[176] with intestinal leakage being a serious complication accounting for a large number of patient deaths.[177] Risk factors also include older age, excessive obesity, poor functional status, and comorbid conditions of congestive heart failure or renal failure.

Morbidity occurring during the immediate postoperative in-hospital period typically falls into one of four categories; wound, gastrointestinal, pulmonary, and cardiovascular complications. The complication rates are significantly lower in each category for patients undergoing laparoscopic rather than open procedures. The American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Program database showed that patients who had an open GBP compared with a laparoscopic GBP had a morbidity rate of 7.4% versus 3.4%, return visits to the operating room rate of 4.9% versus 3.6%, and median postoperative length of stay of 3 versus 2 days, respectively. Box 58.3 provides a categorical listing of complications of bariatric surgery.

The most common complications requiring reoperation include postoperative intraabdominal bleeding, anastomotic leakage, suture line dehiscence, small bowel obstruction, and deep wound infection,[177-182] all of which may

BOX 58.3 Complications of Bariatric Surgery

Early	Bleeding
	Infection
	Dehydration
	Peritonitis
	Leak from anastomotic site
	Bowel obstruction
	Perforation
	Pneumonia
	DVT/PE
	Death
Late	Anorexia
	Cholelithiasis/cholecystitis
	Pouch dilation or stricture
	Gastroesophageal reflux disease/dysphagia
	Herniation at surgical site
	Small bowel obstruction
	Marginal ulcers
	Pancreatitis
	Nutritional issues
	Fat-soluble vitamin deficiencies, especially vitamin B_{12}

require a general anesthetic for laparotomy. Despite deep vein thrombosis prophylaxis therapy in the perioperative period, patients can also present postoperatively with deep vein thrombosis or pulmonary embolism and require an anesthetic for placement of an inferior vena cava filter device. As mentioned earlier, prophylactic filters are often placed prior to bariatric surgery.[170] The risk of venous thromboembolism is higher in open bariatric procedures, men, and patients with preexisting lower extremity edema and pulmonary hypertension.[183]

In all cases requiring reoperation shortly after the original bariatric procedure it is prudent to review the anesthesia record. Specific attention should be paid to the documentation of patient position and technique employed for airway management in the prior anesthetic. Patients may be hypovolemic from blood loss, inadequate hydration, vasodilatation, and insensible fluid losses associated with fever and infection. It is especially important to consider additional or new risks of aspiration of gastric contents. This may be due to the presence of a postoperative ileus, small bowel obstruction, and surgical creation of a Roux-en-Y GBP limb that excludes the pylorus as an element of protection from reflux of intestinal contents. Decompression of the gastric pouch in patients going for surgery to relieve a small bowel obstruction can be achieved with careful introduction of a nasogastric or orogastric tube just prior to induction of general anesthesia. Although this may increase the risk of violating a fresh, competent anastomotic suture line, communication between anesthesiologist and surgeon can be pursued to determine the risks and benefits of performing this maneuver. During the ensuing laparotomy, any perforation of a fresh suture line resulting from the attempt to decompress the gastrointestinal tract can be repaired immediately and the nasogastric or orogastric tube can subsequently be left in place for continued postoperative drainage.

Depending on the extent of reoperation, requirement for volume resuscitation, blood transfusion, degree of peritonitis with anastomotic leak, presence of sepsis, or other significant continued risks to health, patients undergoing reoperation may require prolonged postoperative ventilation. Requirements for postoperative pain management may also be considerably different than those associated with the initial bariatric procedure. In patients who are sufficiently hemodynamically stable immediately prior to reoperation, an epidural catheter can be placed prior to induction for pain management as part of the postoperative care. This is especially valuable in obese patients undergoing laparotomy, as is described elsewhere in this chapter.

There are also a number of potential major complications requiring surgical intervention weeks, months, or even years after a bariatric surgical operation has been performed. Patients may develop anastomotic strictures or ulcers, ventral hernias, gastrogastric fistulae, and severe reflux disorders requiring additional surgery.[92] Small bowel obstruction may appear weeks after surgery.[181] Patients may desire cosmetic operations to remove excess skin or liposuction procedures to sculpt dysmorphic body areas following significant weight loss. Patients may also require adjustment of a gastric band or pursue band removal. The anesthetic considerations for such patients should include a review of the prior anesthetic record to glean information regarding airway and pain management. The degree of weight loss achieved and the resolution of comorbidities including diabetes, hypertension, and OSA may significantly alter the approach used in the bariatric operation.

A fraction of patients develop significant neurologic complications following GBP surgery.[184-186] These are known to include polyneuropathy, polyradiculoneuropathy, myelopathy, encephalopathy, and optic neuropathy. Myelopathy occurs most frequently but does not present until about 10 years after surgery.[184] These patients have demonstrable nutritional deficiencies, but except for the vitamin B_{12} and copper deficiencies found in patients with myelopathy, no specific nutritional profile has been found to correlate with neurological complications. Although neurologic symptoms accompanying weight loss surgery are not likely to result in additional surgery, they represent new or additional comorbidities that should be fully considered by the anesthesiologist caring for patients having previously undergone bariatric surgery.

The nutritional and metabolic complications of bariatric surgery also include protein and protein-calorie malnutrition. Patients may have excessive weight loss occurring either too rapidly or beyond the predetermined goals, steatorrhea or severe diarrhea, hypoalbuminemia, marasmus, edema, and hyperphagia.[92,187-189] In cases of severe malnutrition, patients may require enteral or parenteral nutrition therapy. Surgical revision may be required to correct excessive weight loss and hypoalbuminemia. Under such circumstances, an anesthetic regimen accounting for decreased drug binding effects of a low serum albumin must be considered.

Considerations for Management of the Obese Patient Presenting for Nonbariatric Surgery

Few studies have evaluated the importance of morbidity when performing common nonbariatric surgical procedures on the obese patient. A study by Dindo and coworkers[190] of 6336 patients did not find any difference in the incidence or severity of complications after elective general surgery, except surgical site infections. Other studies have assessed the effect of obesity on wound infections and have shown that they are increased.[191-192] Multiple studies have demonstrated that obese patients are at higher risk after gynecological, orthopedic, cardiovascular, urological, and transplantation surgery, while other studies have not shown there to be obesity-related risk differences.[193-194]

From the data of Dindo and associates[190] regarding complications and the type of surgical procedure, operative severity and open surgery were independent risk factors for postoperative complications. They found no differences in the type of postoperative complications in obese and nonobese groups. This study provides data to decrease the prejudice that patients with obesity are implied to have a higher incidence of postoperative complications. This preconception may pertain more to the perception of the medical team as a result of technical difficulties on the anesthetic and surgical end. Surgeries may last longer, about 25% more time for laparoscopic than for open cholecystectomy in the morbidly obese. Significantly, the wound infection rate was much better after laparoscopic than after open surgery, which supports the practice of performing laparoscopic surgery in obese patients rather than the alternative.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Kaidar-Person O, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(11):1792–1797.
2. Haslam D. *Obes Rev*. 2007;8(suppl 1):31–36.
3. Baskin ML, et al. *Obes Rev*. 2005;6(1):5–7.
4. Hensrud DD, Klein S. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2006;81(suppl 10):S5–10.
5. Canoy D, Buchan I. *Obes Rev*. 2007;8(suppl 1):1–11.
6. Obesity and Overweight Fact Sheet. www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs311/en.
7. Fryar CD, Carroll MD, Ogden CL. *Prevalence of overweight, obesity, and extreme obesity among adults aged 20 and over: United States, 1960–1962 Through 2011–2014*. National Center for Health Statistics Data; 2016.
8. Ogden CL, et al. *JAMA*. 1988-1994 Through 2013-2014. 2016; 315(21):2292–2299.
9. Conway B, et al. *Obes Rev*. 2004;5(3):145–151.
10. Zabena C, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2009;19(1):87–95.
11. Katzmarzyk PT, et al. *Obes Rev*. 2003;4(4):257–290.
12. Kopelman P. *Obes Rev*. 2007;8(suppl 1):13–17.
13. Nguyen NT, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(5):351–355.
14. Zammit C, et al. *Int. J. Gen. Med*. 2010;3:335–343.
15. Apovian CM, et al. *Circulation*. 2012;125(9):1178–1182.
16. Wearing SC, et al. *Obes Rev*. 2006;7(3):239–250.
17. Scopinaro N, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2007;17(2):185–192.
18. Guidone C, et al. *Diabetes*. 2006;55(7):2025–2031.
19. Pinkney J, et al. *Obes Rev*. 2004;5(1):69–78.
20. Alam I, et al. *Obes Rev*. 2007;8(2):119–127.
21. Machado M, et al. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care*. 2006;9(5):637–642.
22. Valera-Mora ME, et al. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2005;81(6):1292–1297.
23. Poirier P, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;123:1683–1701.
24. Liberopoulos EN, et al. *Obes Rev*. 2005;6(4):283–296.
25. Levin PD, et al. *Med Clin North Am*. 2009;93(5):1049–1063.
26. Ervin RB, et al. *Natl Vital Stat Rep*. 2009;(13):1–7.
27. O'Neill S, et al. *Obes Rev*. 2015;16(1):1–12.
28. Buchwald H, et al. *JAMA*. 2004;292(14):1724–1737.
29. Frezza EE, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(3):379–385.
30. Buchwald H, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2009;19(12):1605–1611.
31. Moulin CM, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(1):112–118.
32. Selmi C, et al. *Exp Biol Med*. 2007;232(11):1409–1413.
33. Patil SP, et al. *Chest*. 2007;132(1):325–337.
34. O'Keefe T, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2004;14:23–26.
35. Chung F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(5):768–775.
36. Tung A, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2001;14:671–678.
37. Biro P, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7(5):417–421.
38. Pierce RJ, et al. *Clin Exp Pharmacol P*. 1999;26(1):1–10.
39. Mayer P, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 1996;9(9):1801–1809.
40. Benumof JL, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2002;20(4):789–811.
41. Brodsky JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(3):732–736.
42. Gomez-Illan F, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2012;22:950–955.
43. Roth CL, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2009;(1):29–35.
44. National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP). *Circulation*. 2002;106(25):3143–3421.
45. Kushner RF, et al. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 2014;56(4):465–472.
46. Grundy SM, et al. *Circulation*. 2004;109(3):433–438.
47. Low AK, et al. *Am J Med Sci*. 2006;331(4):175–182.
48. Whelton PK, et al. *Hypertension (Dallas, Tex. : 1979)*. 2017.
49. Martinez EA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(1):4–6.
50. Bray GA, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol*. 2014;28(4): 665–684.
51. Allison DB, et al. *Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr*. 2001;41(1):1–28.
52. Boozer CN, et al. *Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord*. 2001;25(3):316–324.
53. Boozer CN, et al. *Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord*. 2002;26(5):593–604.
54. Astrup A, et al. *Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord*. 1992;16(4):269–277.
55. Haller CA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;343(25):1833–1838.
56. Cigaina V. *Obes Surg*. 2004;14(suppl 1):S14–S22.
57. Favretti F, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2004;14(5):666–670.
58. Cha R, et al. *World J Gastrointest Endosc*. 2014;6(9):419–431.
59. Dietz WH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(20):2100–2109.
60. Fryar CD, Carroll MD, Ogden CL. *Prevalence of Overweight and Obesity Among Children and Adolescents Aged 2–19 Years: United States, 1963–1965 Through 2013–2014. Surveys, D. o. H. a. N. E., Ed*; 2016.
61. de Onis M, et al. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2000;72(4):1032–1039.
62. Kirk S, et al. *J Am Diet Assoc*. 2005;105(suppl 5):44–51.
63. Boland CL, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2015;49(2):220–232.
64. Tsai WS, et al. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med*. 2007;161(3):217–221.
65. Christou NV, et al. *Ann of Surg*. 2004;240(3):416–423.
66. Pereira JA, et al. *Obes Res*. 2003;11(12):1495–1501.
67. Buchwald H, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2005;200(4):593–604.
68. Shaffer EA, et al. *J Clin Gastroenterol*. 2006;40(3 suppl 1):S44–S50.
69. Encinosa WE, et al. *Med Care*. 2006;44(8):706–712.
70. Flum DR, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2004;199(4):543–551.
71. Lynch RJ, et al. *J Clin Gastroenterol*. 2006;40(8):659–668.
72. Akkary E, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2012;22(5):827–831.
73. Buchwald H, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2013;23(4):427–436.
74. Salameh JR, et al. *Am J Med Sci*. 2006;331(4):194–200.
75. Poulose BK, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2005;201(1):77–84.
76. Santry HP, et al. *Ann of Surg*. 2007;245(1):59–67.
77. Weber M, et al. *Ann of Surg*. 2004;240(6):975–982.
78. Deitel M, et al. *J Am Coll Nutr*. 2002;21(5):365–371.
79. Galvani C, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2006;20(6):934–941.
80. Kendrick ML, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2006;81(suppl 10):S18–S24.
81. Deitel M. *Obes Rev*. 2007;17(6):707–710.
82. Eisenberg D, et al. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2006;12(20):3196–3203.
83. Montgomery K, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2007;17:711–716.
84. Weller WE, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2008;248(1):10–15.
85. Nguyen NT, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2011;213(2):261–266.
86. Estimate of Bariatric Surgery Numbers, 2011-2016. https://asmbs.org/resources/estimate-of-bariatric-surgery-numbers.
87. van Rutte PW, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2014;101(6):661–668.
88. Ramon JM, et al. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2012;16(6):1116–1122.
89. Schauer PR, et al. *Ann of Surg*. 2000;232(4):515–529.
90. Gentileschi P, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2002;16(5):736–744.
91. Huang CK, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(3):391–396.
92. Malinowski SS. *Am J Med Sci*. 2006;331(4):219–225.
93. Mathus-Vliegen EM, et al. *Gastrointest endosc*. 2005;61(1):19–27.
94. Gaur S, et al. *Gastrointest endosc*. 2015;81(6):1330–1336.
95. Thompson CC, et al. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2017;112(3):447–457.
96. Garb J, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2009;19(10):1447–1455.
97. Buchwald H. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2002;194(3):367–375.
98. Franco JV, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(9):1458–1468.
99. Salminen P, et al. *JAMA*. 2018;319(3):241–254.
100. Peterli R, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2013;258(5):690–694. discussion 695.
101. Martins C, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(7):841–849.
102. Schauer PR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366(17):1567–1576.

103. Mingrone G, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366(17):1577–1585.
104. Adams TD, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;308(11):1122–1131.
105. Jakobsen GS, et al. *JAMA*. 2018;319(3):291–301.
106. Schauer PR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(7):641–651.
107. Sarkhosh K, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2013;23(3):414–423.
108. Kushner RF, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2006;81(suppl 10):S46–S51.
109. Ikonomidis I, et al. *J Hypertens*. 2007;25(2):439–447.
110. Dixon JB, et al. *Obes Res*. 2002;10(9):903–910.
111. Bouldin MJ, et al. *Am J Med Sci*. 2006;331(4):183–193.
112. Champault A, et al. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech*. 2006;16(3):131–136.
113. Bolen SD, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2012;22(5):749–763.
114. Thomas H, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2012;22:1135–1140.
115. Lopez-Jimenez F, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2005;80(9):1157–1162.
116. Collazo-Clavell ML, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2006;81(suppl 10): S11–S17.
117. Hillman DR, et al. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2004;8(6):459–471.
118. Bostanjian D, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2003;13(2):302–305.
119. Collier B, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2003;13(6):941–943.
120. Passannante AN, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2005;23(3):479–491.
121. Mathews PV, et al. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2001;15(8):580–583.
122. Voyagis GS, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1998;15(3):330–334.
123. Juvin P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(2):595–600.
124. Ezri T, et al. *Anaesth*. 2003;58(11):1111–1114.
125. Shiga T, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 2005;103(2):429–437.
126. Collins JS, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2004;14(9):1171–1175.
127. Neligan PJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(4):1182–1186.
128. Cattano D, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2010;20(10):1436–1441.
129. Kristensen MS. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27(11):923–927.
130. Schumann R. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;25(1): 83–93.
131. Yumul R, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;31:71–77.
132. Behazin N, et al. *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2010;108(1):212–218.
133. Eikermann M, et al. *Open Respir Med J*. 2010;4:58–62.
134. Jense HG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(1):89–93.
135. Coussa M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(5):1491–1495.
136. Cressey DM, et al. *Anaesth*. 2001;56(7):680–684.
137. Gander S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):580–584.
138. Dixon BJ, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 2005;102(6):1110–1115.
139. Zavorsky GS, et al. *Chest*. 2007;131(2):362–367.
140. Boyce JR, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2003;13(1):4–9.
141. Perilli V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(6):1520–1525.
142. Ungern-Sternberg BS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(2):202–207.
143. Bardoczky GI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(2):385–388.
144. Pelosi P, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 1999;91(5):1221–1231.
145. Reinius H, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 2009;111(5):979–987.
146. El Dawlatly AA, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2004;14(2):212–215.
147. Sprung J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(1):268–274.
148. Whalen FX, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(1):298–305.
149. Erlandsson K, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50(7):833–839.
150. Harbut P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58(6):675–680.
151. Neligan PJ, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 2009;110(4):878–884.
152. Pelosi P, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;24:211–225.
153. Candiotti K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(suppl 1):i23–i30.
154. Dhonneur G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):762–767.
155. Christoff PB, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 1983;17(7):516–522.
156. Egan TD, et al. *Anesthesiol*. 1998;89(3):562–573.
157. Ogunnaike BO, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(6):1793–1805.
158. Carron M, et al. *Anaesth*. 2012;67(3):298–299.
159. Juvin P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(3):714–719.
160. De Baerdemaeker L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91(5):638–650.
161. De Baerdemaeker L, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2006;16(6):728–733.
162. Kalinowski CP, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2004;18(4):719–737.
163. Jones KL, et al. *Diabetes Care*. 2001;24(7):1264–1269.
164. Illing L, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39(5 Pt 1):466–470.
165. Maltby JR, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51(2):111–115.
166. Hodgkinson R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(2):89–92.
167. Hodgkinson R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60(6):421–424.
168. Ungern-Sternberg BS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94(1):121–127.
169. Capella J, et al. *Obes Surg*. 1996;6(1):50–53.
170. Vaziri K, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(10):1580–1584.
171. Ricciardi R, et al. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech*. 2006;16(5):317–320.
172. Gan TJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(6):1884–1898.
173. Lemanu DP, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2013;100(4):482–489.
174. Turner PL, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(5):655–662.
175. Lancaster RT, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2008;22(12):2554–2563.
176. Poulose BK, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2005;127(1):1–7.
177. Fernandez AZ, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2004;18(2):193–197.
178. Podnos YD, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138(9):957–961.
179. Derzie AJ, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2000;191(3):238–243.
180. Gonzalez R, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2007;204(1):47–55.
181. Hwang RF, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2004;18(11):1631–1635.
182. Livingston EH, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2006;203(5):625–633.
183. Winegar DA, et al. *Surg Obes Relat Dis*. 2011;7(2):181–188.
184. Juhasz-Pocsine K, et al. *Neurol*. 2007;68(21):1843–1850.
185. Singh S, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2005;80(1):136–137.
186. Thaisetthawatkul P, et al. *Neurol*. 2004;63(8):1462–1470.
187. Parkes E. *Am J Med Sci*. 2006;331(4):207–213.
188. Poitou BC, et al. *Diabetes Metab*. 2007;33(1):13–24.
189. Xanthakos SA, et al. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care*. 2006;9(4):489–496.
190. Dindo D, et al. *Lancet*. 2003;361(9374):2032–2035.
191. Jin R, et al. *Circulation*. 2005;111(25):3359–3365.
192. Shapiro M, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;307(27):1661–1666.
193. Brandt M, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2001;19(5):662–666.
194. Engelman DT, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1999;118(5):866–873.

References

1. Kaidar-Person O, Bar-Sela G, Person B. The two major epidemics of the twenty-first century: obesity and cancer. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(11):1792–1797.
2. Haslam D. Obesity: a medical history. *Obes Rev*. 2007;8(suppl 1):31–36.
3. Baskin ML, Ard J, Franklin F, Allison DB. Prevalence of obesity in the United States. *Obes Rev*. 2005;6(1):5–7.
4. Hensrud DD, Klein S. Extreme obesity: a new medical crisis in the United States. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2006;81(suppl 10):S5–10.
5. Canoy D, Buchan I. Challenges in obesity epidemiology. *Obes Rev*. 2007;8(suppl 1):1–11.
6. Obesity and Overweight Fact Sheet. www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs311/en.
7. Fryar CD, Carroll MD, Ogden CL. Prevalence of overweight, obesity, and extreme obesity among adults aged 20 and over: United States, 1960–1962 Through 2011–2014. National Center for Health Statistics Data; 2016.
8. Ogden CL, Carroll MD, Lawman HG, et al. Trends in obesity prevalence among children and adolescents in the United States, 1988-1994 through 2013-2014. *JAMA*. 2016;315(21):2292–2299.
9. Conway B, Rene A. Obesity as a disease: no lightweight matter. *Obes Rev*. 2004;5(3):145–151.
10. Zabena C, Gonzalez-Sanchez JL, Martinez-Larrad MT, et al. The FTO obesity gene. Genotyping and gene expression analysis in morbidly obese patients. *Obes Surg*. 2009;19(1):87–95.
11. Katzmarzyk PT, Janssen I, Ardern CI. Physical inactivity, excess adiposity and premature mortality. *Obes Rev*. 2003;4(4):257–290.
12. Kopelman P. Health risks associated with overweight and obesity. *Obes Rev*. 2007;8(suppl 1):13–17.
13. Nguyen NT, Nguyen XM, Lane J, Wang P. Relationship between obesity and diabetes in a US adult population: findings from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 1999-2006. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(5):351–355.
14. Zammit C, Liddicoat H, Moonsie I, Makker H. Obesity and respiratory diseases. *Int. J. Gen. Med*. 2010;3:335–343.
15. Apovian CM, Gokce N. Obesity and cardiovascular disease. *Circulation*. 2012;125(9):1178–1182.
16. Wearing SC, Hennig EM, Byrne NM, Steele JR, Hills AP. Musculoskeletal disorders associated with obesity: a biomechanical perspective. *Obes Rev*. 2006;7(3):239–250.
17. Scopinaro N, Papadia F, Marinari G, Camerini G, Adami G. Long-term control of type 2 diabetes mellitus and the other major components of the metabolic syndrome after biliopancreatic diversion in patients with BMI < 35 kg/m^2. *Obes Surg*. 2007;17(2):185–192.
18. Guidone C, Manco M, Valera-Mora E, et al. Mechanisms of recovery from type 2 diabetes after malabsorptive bariatric surgery. *Diabetes*. 2006;55(7):2025–2031.
19. Pinkney J, Kerrigan D. Current status of bariatric surgery in the treatment of type 2 diabetes. *Obes Rev*. 2004;5(1):69–78.
20. Alam I, Lewis K, Stephens JW, Baxter JN. Obesity, metabolic syndrome and sleep apnoea: all pro-inflammatory states. *Obes Rev*. 2007;8(2):119–127.
21. Machado M, Cortez-Pinto H. Non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and metabolic syndrome. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care*. 2006;9(5):637–642.
22. Valera-Mora ME, Simeoni B, Gagliardi L, et al. Predictors of weight loss and reversal of comorbidities in malabsorptive bariatric surgery. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2005;81(6):1292–1297.
23. Poirier P, Cornier AM, Mazzone T, et al. Bariatric surgery and cardiovascular risk frActors. A scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2011;123:1683–1701.
24. Liberopoulos EN, Mikhailidis DP, Elisaf MS. Diagnosis and management of the metabolic syndrome in obesity. *Obes Rev*. 2005;6(4):283–296.
25. Levin PD, Weissman C. Obesity, metabolic syndrome, and the surgical patient. *Med Clin North Am*. 2009;93(5):1049–1063.
26. Ervin RB. Prevalence of metabolic syndrome among adults 20 years of age and over, by sex, age, race and ethnicity, and body mass index: United States, 2003-2006. *Natl Vital Stat Rep*. 2009;(13):1–7.
27. O'Neill S, O'Driscoll L. Metabolic syndrome: a closer look at the growing epidemic and its associated pathologies. *Obes Rev*. 2015;16(1):1–12.
28. Buchwald H, Avidor Y, Braunwald E, et al. Bariatric surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2004;292(14):1724–1737.
29. Frezza EE, Wachtel M. Metabolic syndrome: a new multidisciplinary service line. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(3):379–385.
30. Buchwald H, Oien DM. Metabolic/bariatric surgery worldwide 2008. *Obes Surg*. 2009;19(12):1605–1611.
31. Moulin CM, Marguti I, Peron JP, Halpern A, Rizzo LV. Bariatric surgery reverses natural killer (NK) cell activity and NK-related cytokine synthesis impairment induced by morbid obesity. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(1):112–118.
32. Selmi C, Montano N, Furlan R, Keen CL, Gershwin ME. Inflammation and oxidative stress in obstructive sleep apnea syndrome. *Exp Biol Med*. 2007;232(11):1409–1413.
33. Patil SP, Schneider H, Schwartz AR, Smith PL. Adult obstructive sleep apnea - pathophysiology and diagnosis. *Chest*. 2007;132(1):325–337.
34. O'Keefe T, Patterson EJ. Evidence supporting routine polysomnography before bariatric surgery. *Obes Surg*. 2004;14:23–26.
35. Chung F, Subramanyam R, Liao P, Sasaki E, Shapiro C, Sun Y. High STOP-Bang score indicates a high probability of obstructive sleep apnoea. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(5):768–775.
36. Tung A, Rock P. Perioperative concerns in sleep apnea. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2001;14:671–678.
37. Biro P, Kaplan V, Bloch KE. Anesthetic management of a patient with obstructive sleep apnea syndrome and difficult airway access. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7(5):417–421.
38. Pierce RJ, Worsnop CJ. Upper airway function and dysfunction in respiration. *Clin Exp Pharmacol P*. 1999;26(1):1–10.
39. Mayer P, Pepin JL, Bettega G, et al. Relationship between body mass index, age and upper airway measurements in snorers and sleep apnoea patients. *Eur Respir J*. 1996;9(9):1801–1809.
40. Benumof JL. Obstructive sleep apnea in the adult obese patient: implications for airway management. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2002;20(4):789–811.
41. Brodsky JB, Lemmens HJM, Brock-Utne JG, Vierra M, Saidman LJ. Morbid obesity and tracheal intubation. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(3):732–736.
42. Gomez-Illan F, Ortega-Gonzalves M, Soler-Orea I, et al. Obesity and inflammation: change in cdiponectin, C-reactive protein, tumour necrosis factor-Alpha and Interleukin-6 after bariatric surgery. *Obes Surg*. 2012;22:950–955.
43. Roth CL, Reinehr T, Schernthaner GH, Kopp HP, Kriwanek S, Schernthaner G. Ghrelin and obestatin levels in severely obese women before and after weight loss after Roux-en-Y gastric bypass surgery. *Obes Surg*. 2009;(1):29–35.
44. National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP). Third report of the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) expert panel on detection, evaluation, and treatment of high blood cholesterol in adults (Adult Treatment Panel III) final report. *Circulation*. 2002;106(25):3143–3421.
45. Kushner RF. Weight loss strategies for treatment of obesity. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 2014;56(4):465–472.
46. Grundy SM, Brewer HB, Cleeman JI, Smith SC, Lenfant C, Participants ftC. Definition of metabolic syndrome. *Circulation*. 2004;109(3):433–438.
47. Low AK, Bouldin MJ, Sumrall CD, Loustalot FV, Land KK. A clinician's approach to medical management of obesity. *Am J Med Sci*. 2006;331(4):175–182.
48. Whelton PK, Carey RM, Aronow WS, et al. 2017 ACC/AHA/AAPA/ABC/ACPM/AGS/APhA/ASH/ASPC/NMA/PCNA Guideline for the prevention, detection, evaluation, and management of high blood pressure in adults: executive summary: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on clinical practice guidelines. *Hypertension*. 2017.
49. Martinez EA, Williams KA, Pronovost PJ. Thinking like a pancreas: perioperative glycemic control. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(1):4–6.
50. Bray GA. Medical treatment of obesity: the past, the present and the future. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol*. 2014;28(4):665–684.
51. Allison DB, Fontaine KR, Heshka S, Mentore JL, Heymsfield SB. Alternative treatments for weight loss: a critical review. *Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr*. 2001;41(1):1–28.
52. Boozer CN, Nasser JA, Heymsfield SB, Wang V, Chen G, Solomon JL. An herbal supplement containing ma huang-guarana for weight loss: a randomized, double-blind trial. *Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord*. 2001;25(3):316–324.
53. Boozer CN, Daly PA, Homel P, et al. Herbal ephedra/caffeine for weight loss: a 6-month randomized safety and efficacy trial. *Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord*. 2002;26(5):593–604.

54. Astrup A, Breum L, Toubro S, Hein P, Quaade F. The effect and safety of an ephedrine/caffeine compound compared to ephedrine, caffeine and placebo in obese subjects on an energy restricted diet. A double blind trial. *Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord*. 1992;16(4):269–277.
55. Haller CA, Benowitz NL. Adverse cardiovascular and central nervous system events associated with dietary supplements containing ephedra alkaloids. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;343(25):1833–1838.
56. Cigaina V. Long-term follow-up of gastric stimulation for obesity: the Mestre 8-year experience. *Obes Surg*. 2004;14(suppl 1):S14–S22.
57. Favretti F, De Luca M, Segato G, et al. Treatment of morbid obesity with the Transcend Implantable Gastric Stimulator (IGS): a prospective survey. *Obes Surg*. 2004;14(5):666–670.
58. Cha R, Marescaux J, Diana M. Updates on gastric electrical stimulation to treat obesity: systematic review and future perspectives. *World J Gastrointest Endosc*. 2014;6(9):419–431.
59. Dietz WH, Robinson TN. Overweight children and adolescents. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(20):2100–2109.
60. Fryar CD, Carroll MD, Ogden CL. Prevalence of overweight and obesity among children and adolescents aged 2–19 years: United States, 1963–1965 through 2013–2014. Surveys, D. o. H. a. N. E., Ed; 2016.
61. de Onis M, Blossner M. Prevalence and trends of overweight among preschool children in developing countries. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2000;72(4):1032–1039.
62. Kirk S, Scott BJ, Daniels SR. Pediatric obesity epidemic: treatment options. *J Am Diet Assoc*. 2005;105(suppl 5):44–51.
63. Boland CL, Harris JB, Harris KB. Pharmacological management of obesity in pediatric patients. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2015;49(2):220–232.
64. Tsai WS, Inge TH, Burd RS. Bariatric surgery in adolescents: recent national trends in use and in-hospital outcome. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med*. 2007;161(3):217–221.
65. Christou NV, Sampalis JS, Liberman M, et al. Surgery decreases long-term mortality, morbidity, and health care use in morbidly obese patients. *Ann of Surg*. 2004;240(3):416–423.
66. Pereira JA, Lazarin MA, Pareja JC, de Souza A, Muscelli E. Insulin resistance in nondiabetic morbidly obese patients: effect of bariatric surgery. *Obes Res*. 2003;11(12):1495–1501.
67. Buchwald H, Conference C. Bariatric surgery for morbid obesity: health implications for patients, health professionals, and third-party payers. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2005;200(4):593–604.
68. Shaffer EA. Bariatric surgery: a promising solution for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis in the very obese. *J Clin Gastroenterol*. 2006;40(3 suppl 1):S44–S50.
69. Encinosa WE, Bernard DM, Chen CC, Steiner CA. Healthcare utilization and outcomes after bariatric surgery. *Med Care*. 2006;44(8):706–712.
70. Flum DR, Dellinger EP. Impact of gastric bypass operation on survival: a population-based analysis. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2004;199(4):543–551.
71. Lynch RJ, Eisenberg D, Bell RL. Metabolic consequences of bariatric surgery. *J Clin Gastroenterol*. 2006;40(8):659–668.
72. Akkary E. Bariatric surgery evolution from the malabsorptive to the hormonal era. *Obes Surg*. 2012;22(5):827–831.
73. Buchwald H, Oien DM. Metabolic/bariatric surgery worldwide 2011. *Obes Surg*. 2013;23(4):427–436.
74. Salameh JR. Bariatric surgery: past and present. *Am J Med Sci*. 2006;331(4):194–200.
75. Poulose BK, Holzman MD, Zhu Y, et al. National variations in morbid obesity and bariatric surgery use. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2005;201(1):77–84.
76. Santry HP, Lauderdale DS, Cagney KA, Rathouz PJ, Alverdy JC, Chin MH. Predictors of patient selection in bariatric surgery. *Ann of Surg*. 2007;245(1):59–67.
77. Weber M, Muller MK, Bucher T, et al. Laparoscopic gastric bypass is superior to laparoscopic gastric banding for treatment of morbid obesity. *Ann of Surg*. 2004;240(6):975–982.
78. Deitel M, Shikora SA. The development of the surgical treatment of morbid obesity. *J Am Coll Nutr*. 2002;21(5):365–371.
79. Galvani C, Gorodner M, Moser F, et al. Laparoscopic adjustable gastric band versus laparoscopic Roux-en-Y gastric bypass: ends justify the means? *Surg Endosc*. 2006;20(6):934–941.
80. Kendrick ML, Dakin GF. Surgical approaches to obesity. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2006;81(suppl 10):S18–S24.
81. Deitel M. A synopsis of the development of bariatric operations. *Obes Rev*. 2007;17(6):707–710.
82. Eisenberg D, Duffy AJ, Bell RL. Update on obesity surgery. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2006;12(20):3196–3203.
83. Montgomery K, Watkins B, Ahroni J, et al. Outpatient laparoscopic adjustable gastric banding in super-obese patients. *Obes Surg*. 2007;17:711–716.
84. Weller WE, Rosati C. Comparing outcomes of laparoscopic versus open bariatric surgery. *Ann Surg*. 2008;248(1):10–15.
85. Nguyen NT, Masoomi H, Magno CP, Nguyen XM, Laugenour K, Lane J. Trends in use of bariatric surgery, 2003-2008. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2011;213(2):261–266.
86. Estimate of Bariatric Surgery Numbers, 2011-2016. https://asmbs.org/resources/estimate-of-bariatric-surgery-numbers.
87. van Rutte PW, Smulders JF, de Zoete JP, Nienhuijs SW. Outcome of sleeve gastrectomy as a primary bariatric procedure. *Br J Surg*. 2014;101(6):661–668.
88. Ramon JM, Salvans S, Crous X, et al. Effect of Roux-en-Y gastric bypass vs sleeve gastrectomy on glucose and gut hormones: a prospective randomised trial. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2012;16(6):1116–1122.
89. Schauer PR, Ikramuddin S, Gourash W, Ramanathan R, Luketich J. Outcomes after laparoscopic Roux-en-Y gastric bypass for morbid obesity. *Ann of Surg*. 2000;232(4):515–529.
90. Gentileschi P, Kini S, Catarci M, Gagner M. Evidence-based medicine: open and laparoscopic bariatric surgery. *Surg Endosc*. 2002;16(5):736–744.
91. Huang CK, Tsai JC, Lo CH, et al. Preliminary surgical results of single-incision transumbilical laparoscopic bariatric surgery. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(3):391–396.
92. Malinowski SS. Nutritional and metabolic complications of bariatric surgery. *Am J Med Sci*. 2006;331(4):219–225.
93. Mathus-Vliegen EM, Tytgat GN. Intragastric balloon for treatment-resistant obesity: safety, tolerance, and efficacy of 1-year balloon treatment followed by a 1-year balloon-free follow-up. *Gastrointest endosc*. 2005;61(1):19–27.
94. Gaur S, Levy S, Mathus-Vliegen L, Chuttani R. Balancing risk and reward: a critical review of the intragastric balloon for weight loss. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2015;81(6):1330–1336.
95. Thompson CC, Abu Dayyeh BK, Kushner R, et al. Percutaneous gastrostomy device for the treatment of class ii and class iii obesity: results of a randomized controlled trial. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2017;112(3):447–457.
96. Garb J, Welch G, Zagarins S, Kuhn J, Romanelli J. Bariatric surgery for the treatment of morbid obesity: a meta-analysis of weight loss outcomes for laparoscopic adjustable gastric banding and laparoscopic gastric bypass. *Obes Surg*. 2009;19(10):1447–1455.
97. Buchwald H. Overview of bariatric surgery. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2002;194(3):367–375.
98. Franco JV, Ruiz PA, Palermo M, Gagner M. A review of studies comparing three laparoscopic procedures in bariatric surgery: sleeve gastrectomy, Roux-en-Y gastric bypass and adjustable gastric banding. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(9):1458–1468.
99. Salminen P, Helmio M, Ovaska J, et al. Effect of laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy vs laparoscopic Roux-en-Y gastric bypass on weight loss at 5 years among patients with morbid obesity: the SLEEVEPASS randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2018;319(3):241–254.
100. Peterli R, Borbely Y, Kern B, et al. Early results of the Swiss Multicentre Bypass or Sleeve Study (SM-BOSS): a prospective randomized trial comparing laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy and Roux-en-Y gastric bypass. *Ann Surg*. 2013;258(5):690–694. discussion 695.
101. Martins C, Strommen M, Stavne OA, Nossum R, Marvik R, Kulseng B. Bariatric surgery versus lifestyle interventions for morbid obesity--changes in body weight, risk factors and comorbidities at 1 year. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(7):841–849.
102. Schauer PR, Kashyap SR, Wolski K, et al. Bariatric surgery versus intensive medical therapy in obese patients with diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366(17):1567–1576.
103. Mingrone G, Panunzi S, De Gaetano A, et al. Bariatric surgery versus conventional medical therapy for type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366(17):1577–1585.
104. Adams TD, Davidson LE, Litwin SE, et al. Health benefits of gastric bypass surgery after 6 years. *JAMA*. 2012;308(11):1122–1131.
105. Jakobsen GS, Smastuen MC, Sandbu R, et al. Association of bariatric surgery vs medical obesity treatment with long-term medical complications and obesity-related comorbidities. *JAMA*. 2018;319(3):291–301.

106. Schauer PR, Bhatt DL, Kirwan JP, et al. Bariatric surgery versus intensive medical therapy for diabetes - 5-Year Outcomes. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(7):641–651.
107. Sarkhosh K, Switzer NJ, El-Hadi M, Birch DW, Shi X, Karmali S. The impact of bariatric surgery on obstructive sleep apnea: a systematic review. *Obes Surg*. 2013;23(3):414–423.
108. Kushner RF, Noble CA. Long-term outcome of bariatric surgery: an interim analysis. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2006;81(suppl 10):S46–S51.
109. Ikonomidis I, Mazarakis A, Papadopoulos C, et al. Weight loss after bariatric surgery improves aortic elastic properties and left ventricular function in individuals with morbid obesity: a 3-year follow-up study. *J Hypertens*. 2007;25(2):439–447.
110. Dixon JB, O'Brien PE. Lipid profile in the severely obese: changes with weight loss after lap-band surgery. *Obes Res*. 2002;10(9):903–910.
111. Bouldin MJ, Ross LA, Sumrall CD, Loustalot FV, Low AK, Land KK. The effect of obesity surgery on obesity comorbidity. *Am J Med Sci*. 2006;331(4):183–193.
112. Champault A, Duwat O, Polliand C, Rizk N, Champault GG. Quality of life after laparoscopic gastric banding: prospective study (152 cases) with a follow-up of 2 years. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech*. 2006;16(3):131–136.
113. Bolen SD, Chang HY, Weiner JP, et al. Clinical outcomes after bariatric surgery: a five-year matched cohort analysis in seven US states. *Obes Surg*. 2012;22(5):749–763.
114. Thomas H, Agrawal S. Systematic review of obesity mortality risk score-preoperative risk stratification in bariatric surgery. *Obes Surg*. 2012;22:1135–1140.
115. Lopez-Jimenez F, Bhatia S, Collazo-Clavell ML, Sarr MG, Somers VK. Safety and efficacy of bariatric surgery in patients with coronary artery disease. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2005;80(9):1157–1162.
116. Collazo-Clavell ML, Clark MM, McAlpine DE, Jensen MD. Assessment and preparation of patients for bariatric surgery. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2006;81(suppl 10):S11–S17.
117. Hillman DR, Loadsman JA, Platt PR, Eastwood PR. Obstructive sleep apnoea and anaesthesia. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2004;8(6):459–471.
118. Bostanjian D, Anthone G, Hamoui N, Crookes P. Rhabdomyolysis of gluteal muscles leading to renal failure: a potentially fatal complication of surgery in the morbidly obese. *Obes Surg*. 2003;13(2):302–305.
119. Collier B, Goreja M, Duke B. Postoperative rhabdomyolysis with bariatric surgery. *Obes Surg*. 2003;13(6):941–943.
120. Passannante AN, Rock P. Anesthetic management of patients with obesity and sleep apnea. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2005;23(3):479–491.
121. Mathews PV, Perry JJ, Murray PC. Compartment syndrome of the well leg as a result of the hemilithotomy position: a report of two cases and review of literature. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2001;15(8):580–583.
122. Voyagis GS, Kyriakis KP, Dimitriou V, Vrettou I. Value of oropharyngeal Mallampati classification in predicting difficult laryngoscopy among obese patients. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1998;15(3):330–334.
123. Juvin P, Lavaut E, Dupont H, et al. Difficult tracheal intubation is more common in obese than in lean patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(2):595–600.
124. Ezri T, Gewurtz G, Sessler DI, et al. Prediction of difficult laryngoscopy in obese patients by ultrasound quantification of anterior neck soft tissue. *Anaesth*. 2003;58(11):1111–1114.
125. Shiga T, Wajima Z, Inoue T, Sakamoto A. Predicting difficult intubation in apparently normal patients - a meta-analysis of bedside screening test performance. *Anesthesiol*. 2005;103(2):429–437.
126. Collins JS, Lemmens HJM, Brodsky JB, Brock-Utne JG, Levitan RM. Laryngoscopy and morbid obesity: a comparison of the "sniff" and "ramped" positions. *Obes Surg*. 2004;14(9):1171–1175.
127. Neligan PJ, Porter S, Max B, Malhotra G, Greenblatt EP, Ochroch EA. Obstructive sleep apnea is not a risk factor for difficult intubation in morbidly obese patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(4):1182–1186.
128. Cattano D, Melnikov V, Khalil Y, Sridhar S, Hagberg CA. An evaluation of the rapid airway management positioner in obese patients undergoing gastric bypass or laparoscopic gastric banding surgery. *Obes Surg*. 2010;20(10):1436–1441.
129. Kristensen MS. Airway management and morbid obesity. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27(11):923–927.
130. Schumann R. Anaesthesia for bariatric surgery. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;25(1):83–93.
131. Yumul R, Elvir-Lazo OL, White PF, et al. Comparison of three video laryngoscopy devices to direct laryngoscopy for intubating obese patients: a randomized controlled trial. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;31:71–77.
132. Behazin N, Jones SB, Cohen RI, Loring SH. Respiratory restriction and elevated pleural and esophageal pressures in morbid obesity. *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2010;108(1):212–218.
133. Eikermann M, Serrano-Garzon J, Kwo J, Sundrup-Grosse M, Schmidt U, Bigatello L. Do patients with obstructive sleep apnea have an increased risk of desaturation during induction of anesthesia for weight loss surgery? *Open Respir Med J*. 2010;4:58–62.
134. Jense HG, Dubin SA, Silverstein PI, O'Leary-Escolas U. Effect of obesity on safe duration of apnea in anesthetized humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(1):89–93.
135. Coussa M, Proietti S, Schnyder P, et al. Prevention of atelectasis formation during the induction of general anesthesia in morbidly obese patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(5):1491–1495.
136. Cressey DM, Berthoud MC, Reilly CS. Effectiveness of continuous positive airway pressure to enhance pre-oxygenation in morbidly obese women. *Anaesth*. 2001;56(7):680–684.
137. Gander S, Frascarolo P, Suter M, Spahn DR, Magnusson L. Positive end-expiratory pressure during induction of general anesthesia increases duration of nonhypoxic apnea in morbidly obese patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):580–584.
138. Dixon BJ, Dixon JB, Carden JR, et al. Preoxygenation is more effective in the 25 degrees head-up position than in the supine position in severely obese patients: a randomized controlled study. *Anesthesiol*. 2005;102(6):1110–1115.
139. Zavorsky GS, Murias JM, Kim dJ, Gow J, Sylvestre JL, Christou NV. Waist-to-hip ratio is associated with pulmonary gas exchange in the morbidly obese. *Chest*. 2007;131(2):362–367.
140. Boyce JR, Ness T, Castroman P, Gleysteen JJ. A preliminary study of the optimal anesthesia positioning for the morbidly obese patient. *Obes Surg*. 2003;13(1):4–9.
141. Perilli V, Sollazzi L, Bozza P, et al. The effects of the reverse trendelenburg position on respiratory mechanics and blood gases in morbidly obese patients during bariatric surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(6):1520–1525.
142. Ungern-Sternberg BS, Regli A, Schneider MC, Kunz F, Reber A. Effect of obesity and site of surgery on perioperative lung volumes. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(2):202–207.
143. Bardoczky GI, Yernault JC, Houben JJ, d'Hollander AA. Large tidal volume ventilation does not improve oxygenation in morbidly obese patients during anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(2):385–388.
144. Pelosi P, Ravagnan I, Giurati G, et al. Positive end-expiratory pressure improves respiratory function in obese but not in normal subjects during anesthesia and paralysis. *Anesthesiol*. 1999;91(5):1221–1231.
145. Reinius H, Jonsson L, Gustafsson S, et al. Prevention of atelectasis in morbidly obese patients during general anesthesia and paralysis: a computerized tomography study. *Anesthesiol*. 2009;111(5):979–987.
146. El Dawlatly AA, Al Dohayan A, Abdel-Meguid ME, El Bakry A, Manaa EM. The effects of pneumoperitoneum on respiratory mechanics during general anesthesia for bariatric surgery. *Obes Surg*. 2004;14(2):212–215.
147. Sprung J, Whalley DG, Falcone T, Wilks W, Navratil JE, Bourke DL. The effects of tidal volume and respiratory rate on oxygenation and respiratory mechanics during laparoscopy in morbidly obese patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(1):268–274.
148. Whalen FX, Gajic O, Thompson GB, et al. The effects of the alveolar recruitment maneuver and positive end-expiratory pressure on arterial oxygenation during laparoscopic bariatric surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(1):298–305.
149. Erlandsson K, Odenstedt H, Lundin S, Stenqvist O. Positive end-expiratory pressure optimization using electric impedance tomography in morbidly obese patients during laparoscopic gastric bypass surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50(7):833–839.
150. Harbut P, Gozdzik W, Stjernfalt E, Marsk R, Hesselvik JF. Continuous positive airway pressure/pressure support pre-oxygenation of morbidly obese patients. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58(6):675–680.
151. Neligan PJ, Malhotra G, Fraser M, et al. Continuous positive airway pressure via the Boussignac system immediately after extubation improves lung function in morbidly obese patients with obstructive sleep apnea undergoing laparoscopic bariatric surgery. *Anesthesiol*. 2009;110(4):878–884.
152. Pelosi P, Gregoretti C. Perioperative management of obese patients. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;24:211–225.
153. Candiotti K, Sharma S, Shankar R. Obesity, obstructive sleep apnoea, and diabetes mellitus: anaesthetic implications. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(suppl 1):i23–i30.

154. Dhonneur G, Combes X, Leroux B, Duvaldestin P. Postoperative obstructive apnea. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):762–767.
155. Christoff PB, Conti DR, Naylor C, Jusko WJ. Procainamide disposition in obesity. *Ann Pharmacother*. 1983;17(7):516–522.
156. Egan TD, Huizinga B, Gupta SK, et al. Remifentanil pharmacokinetics in obese versus lean patients. *Anesthesiol*. 1998;89(3):562–573.
157. Ogunnaike BO, Jones SB, Jones DB, Provost D, Whitten CW. Anesthetic considerations for bariatric surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(6):1793–1805.
158. Carron M, Freo U, Parotto E, Ori C. The correct dosing regimen for sugammadex in morbidly obese patients. *Anaesth*. 2012;67(3):298–299.
159. Juvin P, Vadam C, Malek L, Dupont H, Marmuse JP, Desmonts JM. Postoperative recovery after desflurane, propofol, or isoflurane anesthesia among morbidly obese patients: a prospective, randomized study. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(3):714–719.
160. De Baerdemaeker L, Struys M, Jacobs S, et al. Optimization of desflurane administration in morbidly obese patients: a comparison with sevoflurane using an "inhalation bolus" technique. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91(5):638–650.
161. De Baerdemaeker L, Jacobs S, Den Blauwen N, et al. Postoperative results after desflurane or sevoflurane combined with remifentanil in morbidly obese patients. *Obes Surg*. 2006;16(6):728–733.
162. Kalinowski CP, Kirsch JR. Strategies for prophylaxis and treatment for aspiration. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2004;18(4):719–737.
163. Jones KL, Russo A, Stevens JE, Wishart JM, Berry MK, Horowitz M. Predictors of delayed gastric emptying in diabetes. *Diabetes Care*. 2001;24(7):1264–1269.
164. Illing L, Duncan PG, Yip R. Gastroesophageal reflux during anaesthesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39(5 Pt 1):466–470.
165. Maltby JR, Pytka S, Watson NC, Cowan RA, Fick GH. Drinking 300 mL of clear fluid two hours before surgery has no effect on gastric fluid volume and pH in fasting and non-fasting obese patients. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51(2):111–115.
166. Hodgkinson R, Husain FJ. Obesity and the cephalad spread of analgesia following epidural administration of bupivacaine for cesarean section. *Anesth Analg*. 1980;59(2):89–92.
167. Hodgkinson R, Husain FJ. Obesity, gravity, and spread of epidural anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60(6):421–424.
168. Ungern-Sternberg BS, Regli A, Reber A, Schneider MC. Effect of obesity and thoracic epidural analgesia on perioperative spirometry. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94(1):121–127.
169. Capella J, Capella R. Is routine invasive monitoring indicated in surgery for the morbidly obese? *Obes Surg*. 1996;6(1):50–53.
170. Vaziri K, Watson JD, Harper AP, et al. Prophylactic inferior vena cava filters in high-risk bariatric surgery. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(10):1580–1584.
171. Ricciardi R, Town RJ, Kellogg TA, Ikramuddin S, Baxter NN. Outcomes after open versus laparoscopic gastric bypass. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech*. 2006;16(5):317–320.
172. Gan TJ. Risk factors for postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(6):1884–1898.
173. Lemanu DP, Singh PP, Berridge K, et al. Randomized clinical trial of enhanced recovery versus standard care after laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy. *Br J Surg*. 2013;100(4):482–489.
174. Turner PL, Saager L, Dalton J, et al. A nomogram for predicting surgical complications in bariatric surgery patients. *Obes Surg*. 2011;21(5):655–662.
175. Lancaster RT, Hutter MM. Bands and bypasses: 30-day morbidity and mortality of bariatric surgical procedures as assessed by prospective, multi-center, risk-adjusted ACS-NSQIP data. *Surg Endosc*. 2008;22(12):2554–2563.
176. Poulose BK, Griffin MR, Moore DE, et al. Risk factors for post-operative mortality in bariatric surgery. *J Surg Res*. 2005;127(1):1–7.
177. Fernandez AZ, DeMaria EJ, Tichansky DS, et al. Experience with over 3,000 open and laparoscopic bariatric procedures: multivariate analysis of factors related to leak and resultant mortality. *Surg Endosc*. 2004;18(2):193–197.
178. Podnos YD, Jimenez JC, Wilson SE, Stevens CM, Nguyen NT. Complications after laparoscopic gastric bypass: a review of 3464 cases. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138(9):957–961.
179. Derzie AJ, Silvestri F, Liriano E, Benotti P. Wound closure technique and acute wound complications in gastric surgery for morbid obesity: a prospective randomized trial. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2000;191(3):238–243.
180. Gonzalez R, Sarr MG, Smith CD, et al. Diagnosis and contemporary management of anastomotic leaks after gastric bypass for obesity. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2007;204(1):47–55.
181. Hwang RF, Swartz DE, Felix EL. Causes of small bowel obstruction after laparoscopic gastric bypass. *Surg Endosc*. 2004;18(11):1631–1635.
182. Livingston EH, Arterburn D, Schifftner TL, Henderson WG, DePalma RG. National Surgical Quality Improvement Program analysis of bariatric operations: modifiable risk factors contribute to bariatric surgical adverse outcomes. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2006;203(5):625–633.
183. Winegar DA, Sherif B, Pate V, DeMaria EJ. Venous thromboembolism after bariatric surgery performed by Bariatric Surgery Center of Excellence Participants: analysis of the Bariatric Outcomes Longitudinal Database. *Surg Obes Relat Dis*. 2011;7(2):181–188.
184. Juhasz-Pocsine K, Rudnicki SA, Archer RL, Harik SI. Neurologic complications of gastric bypass surgery for morbid obesity. *Neurol*. 2007;68(21):1843–1850.
185. Singh S, Nautiyal A. Neurologic complications of bariatric surgery. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2005;80(1):136–137.
186. Thaisetthawatkul P, Collazo-Clavell ML, Sarr MG, Norell JE, Dyck PJ. A controlled study of peripheral neuropathy after bariatric surgery. *Neurol*. 2004;63(8):1462–1470.
187. Parkes E. Nutritional management of patients after bariatric surgery. *Am J Med Sci*. 2006;331(4):207–213.
188. Poitou BC, Ciangura C, Coupaye M, Czernichow S, Bouillot JL, Basdevant A. Nutritional deficiency after gastric bypass: diagnosis, prevention and treatment. *Diabetes Metab*. 2007;33(1):13–24.
189. Xanthakos SA, Inge TH. Nutritional consequences of bariatric surgery. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care*. 2006;9(4):489–496.
190. Dindo D, Muller MK, Weber M, Clavien PA. Obesity in general elective surgery. *Lancet*. 2003;361(9374):2032–2035.
191. Jin R, Grunkemeier GL, Furnary AP, Handy JR. Is obesity a risk factor for mortality in coronary artery bypass surgery? *Circulation*. 2005;111(25):3359–3365.
192. Shapiro M, Munoz A, Tager IB, Schoenbaum SC, Polk BF. Risk factors for infection at the operative site after abdominal or vaginal hysterectomy. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;307(27):1661–1666.
193. Brandt M, Harder K, Walluscheck KP, et al. Severe obesity does not adversely affect perioperative mortality and morbidity in coronary artery bypass surgery. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2001;19(5):662–666.
194. Engelman DT, Adams DH, Byrne JG, et al. Impact of body mass index and albumin on morbidity and mortality after cardiac surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1999;118(5):866–873.

59

Anesthesia and the Renal and Genitourinary Systems

VINOD MALHOTRA, ANUJ MALHOTRA, ANUP PAMNANI, and
DANIEL GAINSBURG

KEY POINTS

- Innervation of the intraabdominal components of the genitourinary system—the kidney and the ureter—is primarily thoracolumbar (T8-L2). The nerve supply of the pelvic organs—the bladder, prostate, seminal vesicles, and urethra—is primarily lumbosacral with some lower thoracic input.
- The spinal level of pain conduction for the external genitourinary organs is S2-4, except for the testes (T10-L1).
- The kidneys receive 15% to 25% of the total cardiac output, with most of this blood directed to the renal cortex. Renal medullary papillae are more vulnerable to ischemic insults. Kidneys successfully autoregulate their blood flow between 60 and 160 mm Hg mean arterial pressures.
- The glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is the best measure of glomerular function. Creatinine clearance is a good measure of the GFR; urine output is not.
- Hypervolemia, acidemia, hyperkalemia, cardiorespiratory dysfunction, anemia, and bleeding disturbances are manifestations of chronic renal failure.
- Serum creatinine, most commonly used as a marker of renal function, has several limitations. Newer biomarkers, such as serum cystatin C, are better and earlier measures of acute kidney injury and the risk of end-stage renal disease, as well as related mortality.
- Although renal transplantation reverses most of the abnormalities in end-stage renal disease, dialysis improves only some and introduces additional complications of its own.
- Newer techniques, such as laser prostatectomy, are making transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) syndrome a rare event. TURP syndrome is a constellation of symptoms caused by the absorption of hypotonic bladder irrigants. Cardiovascular and neurologic changes are due to hypoosmolality, hyponatremia, hyperglycinemia, hyperammonemia, and hypervolemia.
- Regional anesthesia offers several advantages over general anesthesia for standard, but not laser, TURP. Yet, 30-day mortality rates remain unchanged at 0.2% to 0.8%.
- Laparoscopic surgery in urology frequently requires insufflation of carbon dioxide into the retroperitoneal space. In lengthy procedures, pneumomediastinum and subcutaneous emphysema of the head and neck may occur.
- Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (ESWL) historically caused significant physiologic changes related to immersion in a water bath, but newer generations have eliminated the water bath and hence those risks. Shock waves can cause clinically insignificant dysrhythmias. Pregnancy and untreated bleeding disorders are contraindications to ESWL.
- Regarding renal tumors, 5% to 10% extend into the renal vein, inferior vena cava, and right atrium. Complications ranging from circulatory failure to embolization of tumor during surgery may occur. Cardiopulmonary bypass may be necessary for surgery.
- Radical prostatectomy may cause significant blood loss, and intraoperative venous air emboli can occur. Regional anesthesia with spontaneous ventilation is associated with less blood loss than general anesthesia and intermittent positive pressure ventilation. Other advantages of epidural anesthesia include a decreased incidence of deep vein thrombosis and the initiation of preemptive analgesia. Whether outcomes are dependent on the choice of anesthesia is not clear.
- Robotic radical prostatectomy is associated with reduced blood loss and postoperative pain compared with open radical prostatectomy. Anesthetic concerns are related to steep head-down tilt and pneumoperitoneum and include hypercarbia, hypoxemia, increased intraocular and intracranial pressures, decreased perfusion pressure to lower extremities, and positional injuries.
- Anesthetic concerns of robotic-assisted surgery include the length of surgical time, intravenous fluid management, pneumoperitoneum, and positioning. The most frequent reported complications are peripheral neuropathies, corneal abrasions, vascular complications (including compartment syndrome, rhabdomyolysis, and thromboembolic disease), and the effects of edema.
- Postoperative urinary retention should be considered as a source of postoperative pain after urologic surgery. Prompt diagnosis, either clinically or with ultrasound, and bladder catheterization if indicated (postvoid residual >600 mL) is effective and can prevent sequelae.

Patients requiring anesthesia for renal and genitourinary surgery are frequently at the extremes of age. In addition to the physiologic changes of aging in older patients, concomitant cardiovascular and respiratory comorbidity is common. A medical history, physical examination, and appropriate laboratory tests are necessary to evaluate concomitant disease. In pediatric urologic patients, a careful history should exclude other nonurologic congenital lesions.

Urologic procedures are performed mostly on the kidneys, adrenals, ureters, urinary bladder, prostate, urethra, penis, scrotum, testis, and spermatic cord. Because their sensory nerve supply is primarily thoracolumbar and sacral outflow (Table 59.1), these structures are well adapted for regional anesthesia.

Innervation of the Genitourinary System

The parts of the genitourinary system that are in the abdomen receive their nerve supply from the autonomic nervous system by means of sympathetic and parasympathetic pathways. The pelvic urinary organs and genitalia are supplied by somatic and autonomic nerves. Table 59.1 summarizes the pain conduction pathways and spinal levels of the genitourinary system.

KIDNEY AND ABDOMINAL URETER

Sympathetic nerves to the kidney originate as preganglionic fibers from the eighth thoracic through the first lumbar segments and converge at the celiac plexus and aorticorenal ganglia (Fig. 59.1). Postganglionic fibers to the kidney arise mainly from the celiac and aorticorenal ganglia. Some sympathetic fibers may reach the kidney via the splanchnic nerves. Parasympathetic input is from the vagus nerve.[1] Sympathetic fibers to the ureter originate from the tenth thoracic through the second lumbar segments and synapse with postganglionic fibers in the aorticorenal and superior and inferior hypogastric plexuses. Parasympathetic input is from the second through fourth sacral spinal segments.[1] Nociceptive fibers travel along the sympathetics to the same spinal segments. Pain from the kidney and ureter is referred mainly to the somatic distribution of the tenth thoracic through the second lumbar segments—the lower part of the back, flank, ilioinguinal region, and scrotum or labia. Effective neural block of these segments is necessary to provide adequate analgesia or anesthesia.

BLADDER AND URETHRA

Sympathetic nerves to the bladder and urethra originate from the eleventh thoracic to the second lumbar segments, travel through the superior hypogastric plexus, and supply the bladder through the right and the left hypogastric nerves.[2] Parasympathetic nerves arise from the second through the fourth sacral segments and form the pelvic parasympathetic plexus, which is joined by the hypogastric plexus. Vesical branches proceed toward the bladder base, where they provide the nerve supply to the bladder and proximal part of the urethra (Fig. 59.2). Parasympathetic fibers are the main motor supply to the bladder (with the exception of the trigone) and far outnumber sympathetic fibers in the bladder.[2]

TABLE 59.1 Pain Conduction Pathways and Spinal Segment Projection of Pain of the Genitourinary System

Organ	Sympathetics, Spinal Segments	Parasympathetics	Spinal Levels of Pain Conduction
Kidney	T8-L1	CN X (vagus)	T10-L1
Ureter	T10-L2	S2-4	T10-L2
Bladder	T11-L2	S2-4	T11-L2 (dome), S2-4 (neck)
Prostate	T11-L2	S2-4	T11-L2, S2-4
Penis	L1 and L2	S2-4	S2-4
Scrotum	NS	NS	S2-4
Testes	T10-L2	NS	T10-L1

NS, Not significant for nociceptive function.

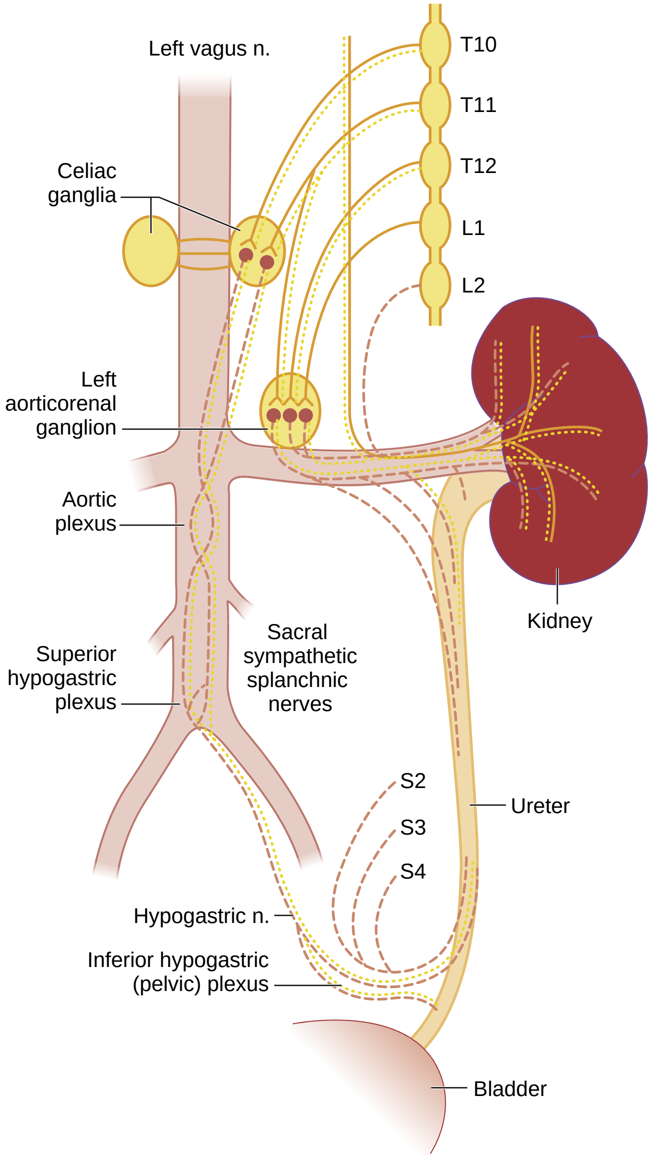

Left vagus n.
T10
T11
T12
L1
L2
Celiac ganglia
Left aorticorenal ganglion
Aortic plexus
Kidney
Superior hypogastric plexus
Sacral sympathetic splanchnic nerves
S2
S3
S4
Ureter
Hypogastric n.
Inferior hypogastric (pelvic) plexus
Bladder

Fig. 59.1 Autonomic and sensory innervation of the kidney and ureters. *Solid line* indicates preganglionic fibers; *dashed line* indicates postganglionic fibers; and *dotted line* indicates sensory fibers. (From Gee WF, Ansell JF. Pelvic and perineal pain of urologic origin. In: Bonica JJ, ed. *The Management of Pain*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger; 1990:1368–1378.)

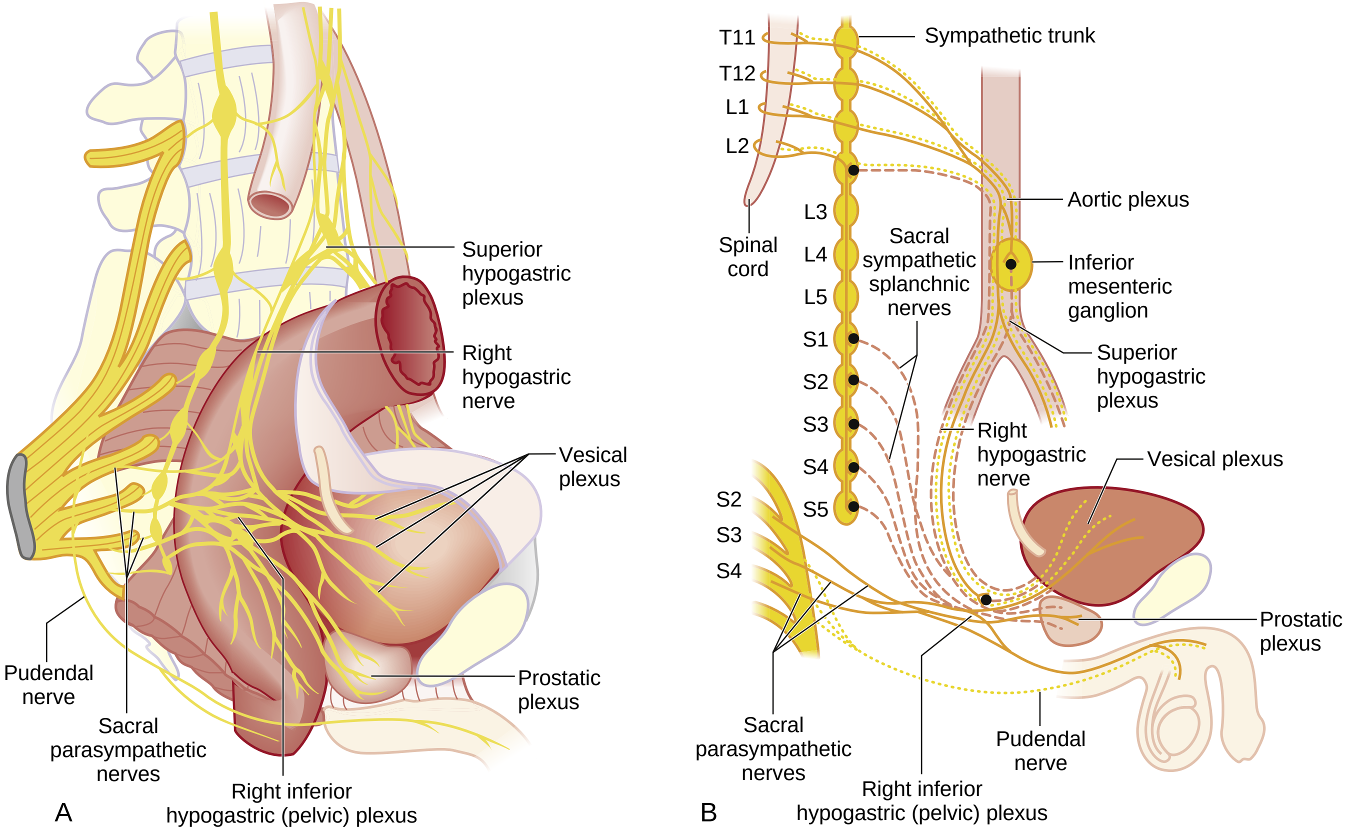

Superior
hypogastric
plexus
Right
hypogastric
nerve
Vesical
plexus
Prostatic
plexus
Pudendal
nerve
Sacral
parasympathetic
nerves
Right inferior
hypogastric (pelvic) plexus
A
T11
T12
L1
L2
Sympathetic trunk
Spinal
cord
L3
L4
L5
S1
S2
S3
S4
S5
Sacral
sympathetic
splanchnic
nerves
Aortic plexus
Inferior
mesenteric
ganglion
Superior
hypogastric
plexus
Right
hypogastric
nerve
Vesical plexus
S2
S3
S4
Prostatic
plexus
Sacral
parasympathetic
nerves
Pudendal
nerve
Right inferior
hypogastric (pelvic) plexus
B

Fig. 59.2 (A) Nerve supply of the urinary bladder and prostate showing the relationship of the various nerve structures to the large intestine and their distribution in the bladder and prostate. (B) Schematic illustration showing the segmental nerve supply to the bladder, penis, and scrotum. *Solid lines* indicate preganglionic fibers; *dashed lines* indicate postganglionic fibers; and *dotted lines* indicate sensory fibers. (From Gee WF, Ansell JF. Pelvic and perineal pain of urologic origin. In: Bonica JJ, ed. *The Management of Pain*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger; 1990:1368–1378.)

The afferents carrying sensations of stretch and fullness of the bladder are parasympathetic, whereas pain, touch, and temperature sensations are carried by sympathetic nerves. Sympathetic fibers are predominantly α-adrenergic in the bladder base and urethra, and β-adrenergic in the bladder dome and lateral wall. Knowledge of these aspects of neuroanatomy is important to appreciate the pharmacologic effects on the urologic system of neural ablation or regional block and drugs with adrenergic or cholinergic effects.[2]

PROSTATE AND PROSTATIC URETHRA

The prostate and the prostatic urethra receive sympathetic and parasympathetic supply from the prostatic plexus arising from the pelvic parasympathetic plexus, which is joined by the hypogastric plexus. The spinal origin of the nerve supply is primarily lumbosacral (see Fig. 59.2).[2]

PENIS AND SCROTUM

The autonomic supply to the penile urethra and the cavernous tissue comes from the prostatic plexus. Somatic fibers from the pudendal nerve (S2-4) supply the external sphincter. The dorsal nerve of the penis, the first branch of the pudendal nerve, is its main sensory supply. The scrotum is innervated anteriorly by the ilioinguinal and genitofemoral nerves (L1 and L2) and posteriorly by perineal branches of the pudendal nerve (S2 and S4).[2]

TESTES

The testes descend from their intraabdominal location to the scrotum during fetal development. Because they share their embryologic origin with the kidney, their nerve supply is similar to that of the kidney and upper part of the ureter and extends up to the T10 spinal segment.[2]

Renal Blood Flow

The kidneys receive approximately 15% to 25% of total cardiac output, or 1 to 1.25 L/min of blood, through the renal arteries, depending on the state of the body. Most of the blood is received by the renal cortex, with only 5% of cardiac output flowing through the renal medulla, which makes the renal papillae vulnerable to ischemic insults. Renal blood flow is regulated by various mechanisms that control the activity of vascular smooth muscle and alter vascular resistance. Sympathetic tone of renal vessels increases during exercise to shunt renal blood flow to exercising skeletal muscle; similarly, renal blood vessels relax during the resting condition of the body. Sympathetic stimulation resulting from surgery can increase vascular resistance and reduce renal blood flow, whereas anesthetics may reduce renal blood flow by decreasing cardiac output.

Glomerular capillaries separate afferent arterioles from efferent arterioles. Glomerular capillaries are high-pressure systems, whereas peritubular capillaries are low-pressure systems. Consequently, the glomerular capillaries are a

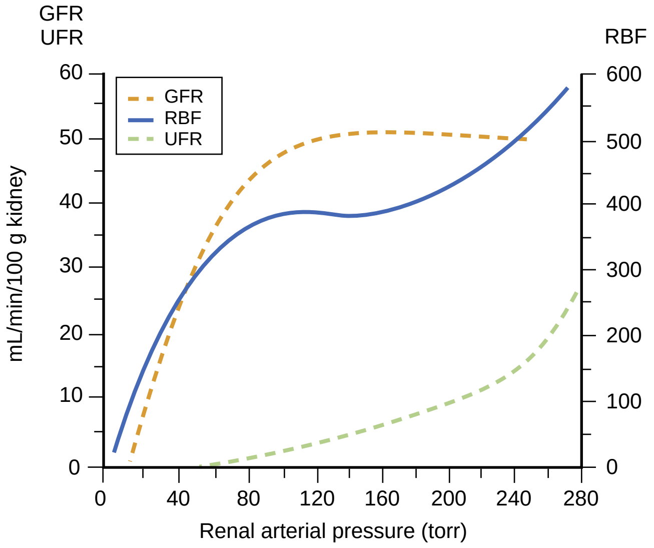


Fig. 59.3 Autoregulation of renal blood flow *(RBF)* and the glomerular filtration rate *(GFR)*. The relationships between RBF, GFR, and urine flow rate *(UFR)* and mean renal arterial pressure in dogs are shown as renal arterial pressure is varied from 20 to 280 mm Hg. Autoregulation of RBF and GFR is observed between approximately 80 and 180 mm Hg. (Redrawn from Hemmings HC. Anesthetics, adjuvants and drugs and the kidney. In: Malhotra V, ed. *Anesthesia for Renal and Genitourinary Surgery*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1996;18.)

fluid-filtering system, whereas the peritubular capillaries are a fluid-absorbing system. The vasa recta, a specialized portion of peritubular capillaries formed from efferent arterioles, are important in the formation of concentrated urine by a countercurrent mechanism. An intrinsic mechanism that causes vasodilation and vasoconstriction of renal afferent arterioles regulates the autoregulation of renal blood flow. A decrease in mean arterial pressure also decreases renal blood flow and eventually affects the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) when the pressure decreases to less than 60 mm Hg. A persistently low mean arterial pressure greater than 60 mm Hg affects renal blood flow but does not affect the GFR because of the intrinsic mechanism of autoregulation (Fig. 59.3). Autoregulation maintains mean arterial pressure between 60 and 160 mm Hg in intact and denervated kidneys.[3]

Although knowledge of neuroanatomy and renal blood flow is essential to provide adequate anesthesia, a thorough understanding of renal physiology and pharmacology is equally important. Genitourinary surgical patients frequently have mechanical or functional renal disease. Anesthetics and surgery can significantly alter renal function. Conversely, renal dysfunction significantly affects the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of anesthetics and adjuvant drugs. Evaluation of a patient with renal disease is discussed later.

Anesthesia for Patients With Renal Disease

EVALUATION OF RENAL FUNCTION

Renal disease can be discovered incidentally during a routine medical evaluation, or patients may exhibit evidence of renal dysfunction, such as hypertension, edema, nausea, and hematuria. The initial approach in both situations should be to assess the cause and severity of renal abnormalities. In all cases, this evaluation includes (1) an estimation of disease duration, (2) a careful urinalysis, and (3) an assessment of the GFR. The history and physical examination, although equally important, are variable among renal syndromes; specific symptoms and signs are discussed in sections on each disease entity. Further diagnostic categorization is based on anatomic distribution: prerenal disease, postrenal disease, and intrinsic renal disease. Intrinsic renal disease can be divided further into glomerular, tubular, interstitial, and vascular abnormalities. Laboratory tests useful in evaluating renal function are described next (Table 59.2).

TABLE 59.2 Commonly Ordered Renal Function Tests

Test Name	Reference Range	Units
Urea nitrogen	5-25	mg/dL
Creatinine	0.5-1.5	mg/dL
Sodium	133-147	mmol/L
Potassium	3.2-5.2	mmol/L
Chloride	94-110	mmol/L
CO_2	22-32	mmol/L
Uric acid	2.5-7.5	mg/dL
Calcium	8.5-10.5	mg/dL
Phosphorus	2.2-4.2	mg/dL
Urinalysis, routine		
Color	Straw-amber	
Appearance	Clear-hazy	
Protein	0	mg/dL
Blood	Negative	
Glucose	0	mg/dL
Ketones	0	mg/dL
pH	4.5-8.0	
Specific gravity	1.002-1.030	
Bilirubin	Negative	
Urinalysis, microscopic		
Red blood cells	0-3	per high-power field
White blood cells	0-5	per high-power field
Casts	0-2	per low-power field

From Miller ED Jr. Understanding renal function and its preoperative evaluation. In: Malhotra V, ed. *Anesthesia for Renal and Genitourinary Surgery*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1996:9.

GLOMERULAR FUNCTION

Glomerular Filtration Rate

The GFR is the best measure of glomerular function. Normal GFR is approximately 125 mL/min. However, manifestations of reduced GFR are not seen until the GFR has decreased to 50% of normal. When GFR decreases to 30% of normal, a stage of moderate renal insufficiency ensues.

TABLE 59.3 Clinical Abnormalities in Chronic Renal Failure and Their Response to Dialysis and Erythropoietin Treatment

Improved by Dialysis	Improved by Adding Erythropoietin	Variable Response	Not Improved	Develop After Dialysis Therapy
Volume expansion and contraction	Fatigue	Secondary hyperparathyroidism	Increased lipoprotein level	Adynamic osteomalacia
Hypernatremia and hyponatremia	Impaired mentation	Hyperuricemia	Decreased high-density lipoprotein level	β_2-Microglobulinemia
Hyperkalemia and hypokalemia	Lethargy	Hypertriglyceridemia	Impaired growth and development	Muscle cramps
Metabolic acidosis	Pallor	Protein-calorie malnutrition	Infertility and sexual dysfunction	Dialysis dysequilibrium syndrome
Hyperphosphatemia	Anemia	Headache	Amenorrhea	Hypotension and arrhythmias
Hypocalcemia	Bleeding diathesis	Peripheral neuropathy	Sleep disorders	Hepatitis
Vitamin D–deficient osteomalacia		Restless legs syndrome	Pruritus	Idiopathic ascites
Carbohydrate intolerance		Paralysis	Lymphocytopenia	Peritonitis
Hypothermia		Seizures	Splenomegaly and hypersplenism	Leukopenia
Asterixis		Myopathy		Hypocomplementemia
Muscular irritability		Arterial hypertension		
Myoclonus		Cardiomyopathy		
Coma		Accelerated atherosclerosis		
Congestive heart failure or pulmonary edema		Vascular calcification		
Pericarditis		Hyperpigmentation		
Uremic lung		Peptic ulcer		
Ecchymoses		Gastrointestinal bleeding		
Uremic frost		Increased susceptibility to infection		
Anorexia				
Nausea and vomiting				
Uremic fetor				
Gastroenteritis				

Patients remain asymptomatic with only biochemical evidence of a decline in GFR (i.e., an increase in serum concentrations of urea and creatinine). Further workup usually reveals other abnormalities, such as nocturia, anemia, loss of energy, decreasing appetite, and abnormalities in calcium and phosphorus metabolism.

As the GFR decreases further, a stage of severe renal insufficiency begins. This stage is characterized by profound clinical manifestations of uremia and biochemical abnormalities, such as acidemia; volume overload; and neurologic, cardiac, and respiratory manifestations. At the stages of mild and moderate renal insufficiency, intercurrent clinical stress may compromise renal function further and induce signs and symptoms of overt uremia. When the GFR is 5% to 10% of normal, it is called end-stage renal disease (ESRD), and continued survival without renal replacement therapy becomes impossible (Table 59.3).

Blood Urea Nitrogen

The blood urea nitrogen (BUN) concentration is not a direct correlate of reduced GFR. BUN is influenced by nonrenal variables, such as exercise, bleeding, steroids, and massive tissue breakdown. The more important factor is that BUN is not elevated in kidney disease until the GFR is reduced to almost 75% of normal.[1]

Creatinine and Creatinine Clearance

Measurements of creatinine provide valuable information regarding general kidney function. Creatinine in serum results from turnover of muscle tissue and depends on daily dietary intake of protein. Normal values are 0.5 to 1.5 mg/100 mL; values of 0.5 to 1 mg/100 mL are present during pregnancy. Creatinine is freely filtered at the glomerulus, and apart from an almost negligible increase in content because of secretion in the distal nephron, it is neither reabsorbed nor secreted. Serum creatinine measurements reflect glomerular function (Fig. 59.4),[4] and creatinine clearance is a specific measure of GFR. Creatinine clearance can be calculated by the following formula derived by Cockcroft-Gault that accounts for age-related decreases in GFR, body weight, and sex:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Creatinine clearance (mL/min)} = \\ &\quad[(140 - \text{Age}) \times \text{Lean body weight (kg)}]\,/ \\ &\quad[\text{Plasma creatinine (mg/dL)} \times 72]\end{aligned}$$

This value should be multiplied by 0.85 for women because a lower fraction of body weight is composed of muscle.

Because there is such a wide range in normal values, a 50% increase in serum creatinine concentration, indicative of a 50% reduction in GFR, may go undetected unless baseline values are known. In addition, excretion of drugs dependent on glomerular filtration may be significantly decreased despite what might seem to be only slightly elevated serum creatinine values (1.5-2.5 mg/100 mL). The serum creatinine concentration and clearance are better indicators of general kidney function and GFR than are similar measurements of urea nitrogen (Box 59.1). However, there are disease states in which even the serum creatinine can be affected independent of the GFR (Table 59.4). The main limitation of current GFR estimates is the greater inaccuracy in populations without known chronic kidney disease than in those with the disease. Nonetheless, current GFR estimates facilitate detection, evaluation, and management of the disease, and they should result in improved patient care and better clinical outcomes.[5]

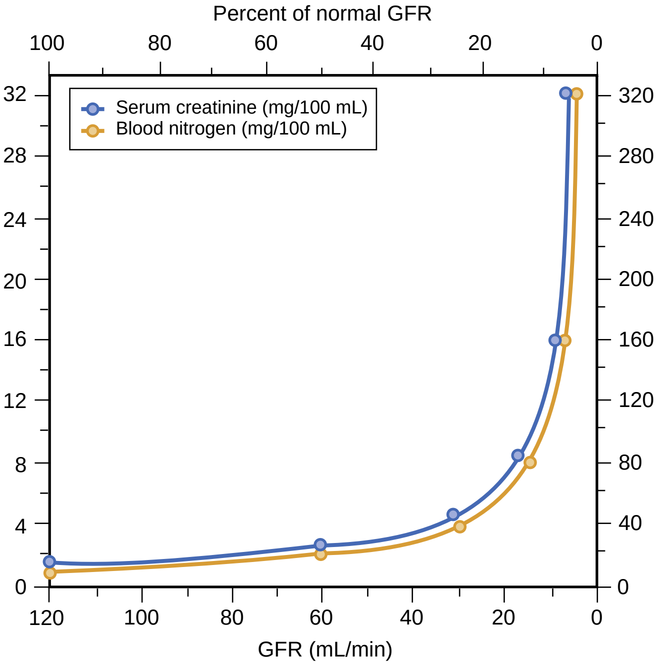


Fig. 59.4 **Theoretic relationship between blood urea nitrogen and creatinine versus glomerular filtration rate *(GFR)*.** (Redrawn from Kassirer JP. Clinical evaluation of kidney function-glomerular function. *N Engl J Med*. 1971;285:385.)

BOX 59.1 Conditions Affecting Blood Urea Nitrogen Independently of Glomerular Filtration Rate

Increased Blood Urea Nitrogen

- Reduced effective circulating blood volume (prerenal azotemia)
- Catabolic states (gastrointestinal bleeding, corticosteroid use)
- High-protein diets
- Tetracycline

Decreased Blood Urea Nitrogen

- Liver disease
- Malnutrition
- Sickle cell anemia
- Syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone

TUBULAR FUNCTION

Concentration

Urinary specific gravity is an index of the kidney's concentrating ability, specifically renal tubular function. Determination of urinary osmolality (i.e., measurement of the number of moles of solute [osmoles] per kilogram of solvent) is a similar, more specific test. Excretion of concentrated urine (specific gravity, 1.030; 1050 mOsm/kg) is indicative of excellent tubular function, whereas a urinary osmolality fixed at that of plasma (specific gravity 1.010; 290 mOsm/kg) indicates renal disease. The urinary dilution mechanism persists after concentrating defects are present, so a urinary osmolality of 50 to 100 mOsm/kg still may be consistent with advanced renal disease.

TABLE 59.4 Conditions Affecting Serum Creatinine Independently of Glomerular Filtration Rate

Condition	Mechanism
CONDITIONS CAUSING ELEVATION	
Ketoacidosis	Noncreatinine chromogen
Cephalothin, cefoxitin	Noncreatinine chromogen
Flucytosine	Noncreatinine chromogen
Other drugs—aspirin, cimetidine, probenecid, trimethoprim	Inhibition of tubular creatinine secretion
CONDITIONS CAUSING DECREASE	
Advanced age	Physiologic decrease in muscle mass
Cachexia	Pathologic decrease in muscle mass
Liver disease	Decreased hepatic creatine synthesis and cachexia

Protein

Patients without renal disease can excrete 150 mg of protein per day; greater amounts may be present after strenuous exercise or after standing for several hours. Massive proteinuria (i.e., >750 mg/day) is always abnormal and usually indicates severe glomerular damage.

Glucose

Glucose is freely filtered at the glomerulus and is subsequently reabsorbed in the proximal tubule. Glycosuria signifies that the ability of the renal tubules to reabsorb glucose has been exceeded by an abnormally heavy glucose load and is usually indicative of diabetes mellitus. Glycosuria also may be present in hospitalized patients without diabetes who are receiving intravenous glucose infusions.

ADDITIONAL DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Urinalysis and Appearance

Gross and microscopic observations of urine and its sediment, along with determination of urinary pH, specific gravity, protein content, and glucose content, are two of the most readily available, inexpensive, and informative laboratory tests. The gross appearance of urine may indicate the presence of bleeding or infection in the genitourinary tract. Microscopic examination of urinary sediment may reveal casts, bacteria, and various cell forms, supplying diagnostic information in patients with renal disease.

Urine and Serum Electrolytes With Blood Gases

Sodium, potassium, chloride, and bicarbonate concentrations should be determined if impairment in renal function is suspected. However, the results of these tests usually remain normal until frank renal failure is present and hyperkalemia does not occur until patients are uremic. Measuring urinary sodium or chloride excretion is especially useful when attempting to differentiate between causes of hyponatremia, as seen in volume contraction (whether a decrease in total circulatory volume or a decrease in effective arterial blood volume), versus conditions associated with increased salt loss, such as the syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, salt-losing nephropathy, or adrenal insufficiency.[6] If significant renal disease is present, patients consuming a diet high in animal protein may develop metabolic acidosis.

Novel Biomarkers of Renal Function. Although serum creatinine is most commonly used as a marker of GFR and hence renal function, it has some limitations in that it is influenced by nonrenal factors such as age, gender, muscle mass and metabolism, diet, and hydration. Furthermore, creatinine levels may take several hours or days to reach a steady state to accurately reflect the GFR as indicator of renal function in acute kidney injury (AKI). Several new markers of renal function have been identified. Serum cystatin C, a ubiquitous protein that is exclusively excreted by glomerular filtration, is less influenced by variations in muscle mass and nutrition than is creatinine. It may better predict risk of death and ESRD across diverse populations.[7]

Other novel biomarkers such as *N*-acetyl-β-D-glucosaminidase, kidney injury molecule-1, interleukin-18, uromodulin, and microRNA are also showing promise at early detection of kidney injury. These biomarkers may have a future role in reducing morbidity and mortality associated with kidney injury in the perioperative setting.[8]

Electrocardiogram. The electrocardiogram reflects the toxic effects of potassium excess more closely than determination of the serum potassium concentration.

Imaging Studies

Renal Ultrasound. Ultrasound is the most frequently used diagnostic examination for the evaluation of the kidneys and urinary tract. It is noninvasive, uses no ionizing radiation, and requires minimal patient preparation. It is the first-line examination in patients with renal dysfunction for assessing kidney size and the presence or absence of hydronephrosis and obstruction. It can be used to assess the vasculature of native and transplanted kidneys. Ultrasound is also used to evaluate renal structure and to characterize renal masses.[9]

Computed Tomography Scan of Kidneys. A stone protocol computed tomography (CT) scan of the kidneys, ureter, and bladder has become the study of choice for the detection of kidney stones because of its ability to detect stones of all kinds, including uric acid stones and nonobstructing stones in the ureter. Even in areas in which ultrasound is the first-line imaging modality, CT offers a complementary and sometimes superior means of imaging. Masses in the kidney can be evaluated using either contrast-enhanced CT or renal ultrasound.[9]

Computed Tomography Angiography. CT angiography is used for the evaluation of renal artery stenosis and is emerging rapidly as a useful diagnostic tool. Although it is comparable with magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) as a noninvasive study, it requires the use of iodinated contrast material, which may cause contrast media–induced nephropathy.[9]

Magnetic Resonance Imaging With Magnetic Resonance Angiography. Magnetic resonance imaging allows for detailed tissue characterization of the kidney and surrounding structures. It is a good alternative to contrast-enhanced CT, especially in patients who cannot tolerate iodinated contrast material and in patients for whom reduction of radiation exposure is desired, such as pregnant women and children. Gadolinium, a paramagnetic intravenous contrast agent, is used routinely in MRA because it improves lesion detection and diagnostic accuracy. It is generally well tolerated with a good safety profile. However, nephrogenic systemic fibrosis, a rare, multiorgan, fibrosing condition for which there is no known effective treatment, has been recognized to occur in patients with moderate to severe renal disease.[9]

IMPORTANT PATHOPHYSIOLOGIC MANIFESTATIONS OF CHRONIC RENAL FAILURE

Hypervolemia

Total body contents of sodium and water are increased in chronic renal failure (CRF),[6] although this increase might not be clinically apparent until the GFR is reduced to very low levels. Weight gain is usually associated with volume expansion and is offset by the concomitant loss of lean body mass. The combination of loop diuretics with metolazone, which acts by inhibiting the Na-Cl cotransporter of the distal convoluted tubule, can overcome diuretic resistance.

Acidemia

Although urine can be acidified normally in most patients with CRF, these patients have a reduced ability to produce ammonia. In the early stages, the accompanying organic anions are excreted in urine, and the metabolic acidosis is of the non–anion gap variety. With advanced renal failure, a fairly large “anion gap” can develop (to approximately 20 mmol/L), however, with a reciprocal decrease in plasma bicarbonate ion (HCO_3) concentration. This acidemia is usually corrected by hemodialysis. Although acidemia is well compensated in moderate CRF, patients can become acidemic and hyperkalemic[10] in the postoperative period (Table 59.5).

Hyperkalemia

The approximate daily filtered load of potassium (K^+) is 700 mmol. Most of this filtered load is reabsorbed in tubule segments, and most of the K^+ excreted in the final urine reflects events governing K^+ handling at the level of the cortical collecting tubule and beyond. K^+ excretion in the gastrointestinal tract is augmented in patients with CRF. However, hyperkalemia may be precipitated in numerous clinical situations, including protein catabolism, hemolysis, hemorrhage, transfusion of stored red blood cells, metabolic acidosis, and exposure to various medications that inhibit K^+ entry into cells or K^+ secretion in the distal nephron.

Cardiac and Pulmonary Manifestations

Hypertension is a common complication of CRF and ESRD. Because hypervolemia is the major cause of hypertension in uremia, normotension is usually restored by the use of diuretics in predialysis patients or by dialysis in ESRD patients. However, despite therapy, patients remain hypertensive due to activation of the renin-angiotensin system and autonomic factor. Patients generally have left

TABLE 59.5 Metabolic Acidosis in Chronic Renal Failure

	$PaCO_2$ (mm Hg)	pH	HCO_3^-(mEq/L)	K^+ (mEq/L)
Preoperative	32	7.32	17	5
Intraoperative	40	7.25	18	5.3
Postoperative	44	7.21	19	5.6
	48	7.18	19	5.9

The patient is a 36-year-old man with severe diabetic nephropathy and end-stage renal failure undergoing cadaver renal transplantation. Preoperatively, the patient has a chronic metabolic acidosis (HCO^{3-}, 17 mEq/L) with partial respiratory compensation ($PaCO_2$, 32 mm Hg; pH 7.32). Potassium is high normal at 5 mEq/L. Intraoperatively, he is given "standard" mechanical minute ventilation, and with "normal" $PaCO_2$ (40 mm Hg), the metabolic acidosis is unmasked (pH 7.25), and potassium increases to 5.3 mEq/L. His trachea is extubated at the end of the procedure, but graft function is sluggish, and the metabolic acidosis remains unchanged. With residual opioid-induced narcosis, moderate CO_2 retention occurs ($PaCO_2$, 44 mm Hg and 48 mm Hg), pH decreases further to 7.18, and a dangerous degree of hyperkalemia develops (K^+, 5.9 mEq/L).

TABLE 59.6 Management Guidelines for Correction of Anemia of Chronic Renal Disease

ERYTHROPOIETIN	
Starting dosage	50-150 U/kg per week IV or SC (once, twice, or three times per week)
Target hemoglobin	11-12 g/dL
Optimal rate of correction	Increase hemoglobin by 1-2 g/dL over 4 wk
DARBEPOETIN ALFA	
Starting dosage	0.45 mg/kg administered as single IV or SC injection once weekly
	0.75 mg/kg administered as a single IV or SC injection once every 2 wk
Target hemoglobin	12 g/dL
Optimal rate of correction	Increase hemoglobin by 1-2 g/dL over 4-wk period
IRON	
Monitor iron stores by TSat and serum ferritin	
If patient is iron-deficient (TSat <20%; serum ferritin <100 g/L), administer iron, 50-100 mg IV twice per week for 5 wk; if iron indices are still low, repeat the same course	
If iron indices are normal but hemoglobin is still inadequate, administer IV iron as outlined above; monitor hemoglobin, TSat, and ferritin.	
Withhold iron therapy when TSat >50% or ferritin >800 ng/mL (>800 g/L)	

IV, Intravenous; *SC*, subcutaneous; *TSat*, percent transferrin saturation.

ventricular hypertrophy and accelerated atherosclerosis (disordered glucose and fat metabolism). Pericarditis can be observed in patients with inadequate dialysis unlike patients with CRF who undergo regular dialysis.

Pulmonary edema and restrictive pulmonary dysfunction are a common feature of patients in renal failure. Hypervolemia, heart failure, decreased serum oncotic pressure, and increased pulmonary capillary permeability contribute to the development of pulmonary edema. Diuretic therapy or dialysis can be effectively used to treat pulmonary congestion and edema due to excess intravascular volume.[11]

Hematologic Manifestations

CRF usually causes a normochromic, normocytic anemia. Anemia is generally observed when the GFR decreases to less than 30 mL/min and is due to insufficient production of erythropoietin by the diseased kidneys. Other factors are iron deficiency, either related to or independent of blood loss from repeated laboratory testing, blood retention in the dialyzer, or gastrointestinal bleeding.[12] Treatment of anemia with iron, darbepoetin alfa, and human recombinant erythropoietin (Table 59.6) restores a normal hematocrit and avoids repetitive red blood cell transfusions, reduces the requirement for hospitalization, and decreases cardiovascular mortality by approximately 30%.[13]

Prolongation of the bleeding time because of decreased activity of platelet factor 3, abnormal platelet aggregation and adhesiveness, and impaired prothrombin consumption contributes to the clotting defects. The abnormality in platelet factor 3 correlates can be corrected with dialysis, although prolongation of the bleeding time can be observed in well-dialyzed patients. Abnormal bleeding times and coagulopathy in patients with renal failure may be managed with desmopressin, cryoprecipitate, conjugated estrogens, blood transfusions, and erythropoietin use.[9]

EFFECTS OF DRUGS IN PATIENTS WITH REDUCED RENAL FUNCTION

Most anesthetic drugs are weak electrolytes and are lipid soluble in the un-ionized state; they are extensively reabsorbed by renal tubular cells. Termination of their action does not depend on renal excretion; redistribution and metabolism produce this effect. After biotransformation, these drugs are excreted in urine as water-soluble, polar forms of the parent compound. They are usually pharmacologically inactive, and their retention is harmless. Drugs with prominent central and peripheral nervous system activity in this category include most narcotics, barbiturates, phenothiazines, butyrophenone derivatives, benzodiazepines, ketamine, and local anesthetics. However, several drugs are lipid insoluble or are highly ionized in the physiologic pH range and are eliminated unchanged in urine. Their duration of action may be extended in patients with impaired renal function. Drugs in this category include muscle relaxants, cholinesterase inhibitors, thiazide diuretics, digoxin, and many antibiotics (Table 59.7).[14]

Opioids

Renal failure has implications of major clinical importance with respect to the metabolism and excretion of morphine

TABLE 59.7 Drugs Used or Encountered in Anesthesia Practice that Significantly Depend on Renal Elimination

Completely Dependent	Partially Dependent
Digoxin, inotropes (used frequently; monitoring of blood levels indicated in chronic renal failure)	Intravenous anesthetics—barbiturates
Others—aminoglycosides, vancomycin, cephalosporins, and penicillins	Muscle relaxants—pancuronium
	Anticholinergics—atropine, glycopyrrolate
	Cholinesterase inhibitors—neostigmine, edrophonium
	Others—milrinone, hydralazine, cycloserine, sulfonamides, and chlorpropamide

and meperidine. For the fentanyl congeners, the clinical importance of renal failure is less marked.[15]

Morphine is an opioid with active metabolites that depend on renal clearance mechanisms for elimination. Morphine is principally metabolized by conjugation in the liver, and the water-soluble glucuronides (morphine-3-glucuronide and morphine-6-glucuronide) are excreted via the kidney. The kidney also plays a role in the conjugation of morphine, accounting for nearly 40% of its metabolism.[16] Patients with renal failure can develop high levels of morphine-6-glucuronide and life-threatening respiratory depression. In view of these changes induced by renal failure, alternatives to morphine should be considered in patients with severely altered renal clearance mechanisms.[15]

The clinical pharmacology of meperidine is also significantly altered by renal failure. Normeperidine, the chief metabolite, has analgesic and central nervous system (CNS) excitatory effects. Because the active metabolites are subject to renal excretion, this potential CNS toxicity secondary to normeperidine accumulation is especially a concern in patients in renal failure.[17]

The clinical pharmacology of the fentanyl congeners is not grossly altered by renal failure, although a decrease in plasma protein binding potentially can alter the free fraction of the fentanyl class of opioids.[15] As with fentanyl, sufentanil pharmacokinetics are not altered in any consistent fashion by renal disease, although greater variability exists in the clearance and elimination half-life of sufentanil when patients have impaired renal function.[18] An increased clinical effect is likely with alfentanil in renal failure because of a decreased initial volume of distribution and an increased free fraction of alfentanil.[19] However, no delay in recovery after alfentanil administration should be expected. Neither the pharmacokinetics nor the pharmacodynamics of remifentanil are altered by impaired renal function.[20]

Hydromorphone, as the parent drug, does not substantially accumulate in hemodialysis patients. Conversely, an active metabolite, hydromorphone-3-glucuronide, quickly accumulates between dialysis treatments but seems to be effectively removed during hemodialysis.[21] With careful monitoring, hydromorphone can be used safely in patients who require dialysis. However, it should be used with caution in patients with a GFR less than 30 mL/min and who have yet to start dialysis or who have withdrawn from dialysis.

Inhaled Anesthetics

All inhaled anesthetics are biotransformed to some extent, with the nonvolatile products of metabolism eliminated almost entirely by the kidney.[22] Reversal of the CNS effects of inhaled anesthetics depends on pulmonary excretion; therefore impaired kidney function would not alter the response to these anesthetics. From the viewpoint of selecting an anesthetic that would not be harmful to patients with mild or moderate impairment of renal function, all of the modern potent inhaled vapor anesthetics are acceptable. Fluoride levels after isoflurane increase by only 3 to 5 μM[23] and by only 1 to 2 μM after halothane[24]; therefore these anesthetics have no nephrotoxic potential.

Desflurane and sevoflurane, two newer inhaled anesthetics, are remarkably different from each other with respect to their molecular stability and biotransformation. Desflurane is highly stable and resists degradation by soda lime[25] and the liver. The mean inorganic fluoride concentration after 1 minimum alveolar concentration (MAC)-hour exposure to desflurane was less than 1 μM.[26] The safety of desflurane in renal failure patients has been confirmed. In addition, more sensitive indices of renal function—urine retinol-binding protein and β-*N*-acetylglucosaminidase—showed no evidence of renal damage. Prolonged exposure to desflurane (7 MAC-hours) has been associated with normal renal function.[27]

Sevoflurane is not very stable. Soda lime causes it to decompose,[28] and it is biotransformed by the liver. Plasma inorganic fluoride concentrations approaching nephrotoxic levels (50 μmol/L)[29] have been reported after prolonged inhalation of sevoflurane. However, no evidence of gross changes in renal function has been found in humans.[30] Data also suggest that sevoflurane can safely be delivered at fresh gas flows as low as 1 L/min without significant production of a breakdown product named compound A (fluoromethyl-2,2-difluoro-1-[trifluoromethyl] vinyl ether), which is considered potentially nephrotoxic.[31]

Inhaled anesthetics cause a transient reversible depression in renal function. GFR, renal blood flow, urine output, and urinary excretion of sodium are decreased (Table 59.8). Probable mechanisms include loss of renal autoregulation, activation of neurohumoral factors (e.g., antidiuretic hormone, vasopressin, renin), and neuroendocrine responses. Although most inhaled anesthetics have been shown to reduce GFR and urinary excretion of sodium, studies examining their effects on renal blood flow have yielded conflicting results, which can be explained by differences in experimental methodology. Data suggest that renal blood flow is maintained with halothane, isoflurane, and desflurane[32,33] but that it is decreased with sevoflurane.[34]

Intravenous Anesthetics

Reversal of CNS effects after the administration of ultrashort-acting barbiturates such as thiopental and methohexital occurs as a result of redistribution, and hepatic metabolism is the sole route of elimination of these drugs. Thiopental is 75% to 85% bound to albumin,[35] the concentration of which may be markedly reduced in uremia.

TABLE 59.8 Effects of Various Anesthetics on Renal Function

	RBF	GFR	Urine Output	Urine Solutes
General anesthesia	↓	↓	↓	↓
Intravenous anesthetics				
Thiopental	↔	↓	↓	↓
Midazolam	↔	↔	↓	↔
Fentanyl (high dose)	↔	↔	↔	↔
Inhaled anesthetics				
Halothane	↔	↓	↓	↓
Isoflurane, Enflurane	↔↓	↓↓	↓↓	↓↓
PEEP Isoflurane	↓↔	↓↓	↓↓	o↓
Regional anesthesia PEEP	↓	↓	↓	o
Epidural (with epinephrine) Regional anesthesia	↓	↓	↓	o
Epidural (without epinephrine) Epidural (with epinephrine)	↔↓	↔↓	↔↓	oo
Spinal epidural (without epinephrine)	↔↔	↔↔	↔↔	oo
Spinal	↔	↔	↔	o

GFR, Glomerular filtration rate; *PEEP*, positive end-expiratory pressure; *RBF*, renal blood flow; ↔, no significant change; *o,* significant data; ↓, decrease.

Although conflicting reports of anesthetic effects on RBF have been reported because of different investigative methods, the current literature seems to support these data.

From Hemmings HC Jr. Anesthetics, adjuvant drugs and the kidney. In: Malhotra V, ed. *Anesthesia for Renal and Genitourinary Surgery*, New York: McGraw-Hill: 1996;20.

Because it is a highly bound drug, reduced binding permits a greater proportion of an administered dose of thiopental to reach receptor sites. In addition, thiopental is a weak acid, with its pK_a in the physiologic range; acidosis results in more un-ionized, nonbound, active thiopental. In combination, these changes produce an increase in the free fraction of thiopental from 15% in normal patients to 28% in patients with CRF. With thiopental metabolism essentially unchanged in renal disease, the dose to produce and maintain anesthesia should be reduced.[36] The same considerations are true for methohexital, although metabolism plays a slightly greater part in the termination of its therapeutic effect.[37]

Propofol does not adversely affect renal function as reflected by measurements of creatinine concentration. Prolonged infusions of propofol may result in the excretion of green urine because of the presence of phenolic metabolites in the urine. This discoloration does not affect renal function. Urate excretion is increased after the administration of propofol and is usually manifested as cloudy urine when urate crystallizes under conditions of low pH and temperature.[38]

There are no reports of the disposition of narcotics and tranquilizers when used in large dosage for anesthesia in uremic patients. These drugs are extensively metabolized before excretion; therefore they should not have a particularly prolonged effect. The benzodiazepines, especially diazepam,[14] have a long half-life and tend to accumulate. Because of the greater ease of reversibility of the potent inhaled anesthetics versus intravenous drugs, inhaled anesthetics may offer some advantages for the induction of general anesthesia in uremic patients.

Muscle Relaxants and Their Antagonists

Succinylcholine has been used without difficulty in patients with decreased or absent renal function. Its metabolism is catalyzed by pseudocholinesterase to yield the nontoxic end products succinic acid and choline. The metabolic precursor of these two compounds, succinylmonocholine, is excreted by the kidneys. Large doses of succinylcholine, which might result from prolonged infusion, should be avoided in patients with renal failure. Although pseudocholinesterase levels are reduced in uremia,[39] these reductions are insufficient and cause a prolonged block. Hemodialysis has been reported to have no effect on cholinesterase levels.[40]

Administration of succinylcholine causes a rapid, transient increase of 0.5 mEq/L in the serum potassium concentration. In traumatized, burned, or neurologically injured patients, the increase may be 5 to 7 mEq/L, probably as a consequence of denervation supersensitivity of the muscle membrane to succinylcholine and to acetylcholine,[41] which can result in cardiovascular collapse. Likewise, an exaggerated increase in serum potassium could be particularly dangerous in uremic patients with hyperkalemia; therefore the use of succinylcholine is inadvisable, unless the patient has undergone dialysis within 24 hours before surgery. If the patient has recently undergone dialysis or has normal serum potassium, the use of succinylcholine is safe in the absence of other contraindications to the medication.

The disposition of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants has been well studied. Renal failure influences the pharmacology of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants by producing either decreased elimination of the drug or its metabolites by the kidney or decreased activity of enzymes that metabolize the drug, such as in the case of mivacurium (Table 59.9).

TABLE 59.9 Pharmacokinetics Data for Nondepolarizing Muscle Relaxants in Normal and Anephric Patients

Drug	Patients Studied	Elimination Half-Life (h)	Clearance (mL/kg/min)	Volume of Distribution (L/kg)
Vecuronium	Normal	0.9	5.3	0.20
	Anephric	1.4	3.1	0.24
Atracurium	Normal	0.3	6.1	0.18
	Anephric	0.4	6.7	0.22
Pancuronium	Normal	1.7	1	0.14
	Anephric	8.2	0.3	0.14
Rocuronium	Normal	0.71	2.9	0.207
	Anephric	0.97	2.9	0.264
Cisatracurium	Normal	—	5.2	0.031
	Anephric	—	—	—
Mivacurium	Normal	0.03	106	0.278
	Anephric	0.06	80	0.478

Consequently, the duration of action of muscle relaxants may be prolonged in patients with renal failure.

Approximately 40% to 50% of a long-acting nondepolarizing muscle relaxant, pancuronium, is excreted in urine. A portion of this excretion occurs after biotransformation to the less active metabolite 3-hydroxypancuronium.[42] Pancuronium has a prolonged terminal elimination half-life in patients with reduced renal function (see Table 59.9)[43]; therefore it should be administered cautiously, particularly when several doses are required.

Two nondepolarizing muscle relaxants, atracurium and vecuronium, were introduced into clinical practice during the early 1980s. Atracurium is degraded by enzymatic ester hydrolysis and nonenzymatic alkaline degradation (Hofmann elimination) to inactive products that are not dependent on renal excretion for termination of action.[44] Predictably, their terminal elimination half-life and indices of neuromuscular blockade (onset, duration, and recovery) are the same in patients with normal and absent renal function.[45]

Approximately 30% of a dose of vecuronium is eliminated by the kidneys. Lynam and colleagues[46] found that the duration of neuromuscular blockade after the administration of vecuronium was longer in patients with renal failure than in patients with normal renal function (99 vs. 54 minutes) because of a longer elimination half-life (83 vs. 52 minutes) and lower plasma clearance (3.1 mL/kg/min vs. 5.3 mL/kg/min). In a related area, an interaction between the solvent of cyclosporine (Kolliphor EL) with atracurium and vecuronium has been reported, with the action of these muscle relaxants potentiated in cats,[47] but it is unknown whether such potentiation also occurs in human renal transplant recipients.

Cisatracurium is the single cis isomer of atracurium. Organ-independent mechanisms (Hofmann elimination) account for 77% of the total clearance of cisatracurium. Because renal excretion accounts for only 16% of the elimination of cisatracurium, renal failure should have little effect on its duration of action.[45]

The short-acting drug mivacurium is metabolized by plasma pseudocholinesterase. Its effect has been shown to be lengthened by 10 to 15 minutes in patients with ESRD, most likely because of a decrease in plasma cholinesterase activity in these patients associated with uremia or hemodialysis[48,49] and there is a decrease in the mivacurium requirement by infusion in anephric patients.[49]

Rocuronium is an aminosteroid nondepolarizing muscle relaxant. The elimination half-life of rocuronium is increased in renal failure because of an increase in the volume of distribution with no change in clearance. This explanation might account for a longer duration of action in anephric patients, although its clinical significance is uncertain.[50]

Pharmacokinetics data for the cholinesterase inhibitors neostigmine, pyridostigmine, and edrophonium for normal, anephric, and renal transplant patients are presented in Table 59.10; there are no major differences among the three drugs.[51-53] Renal excretion is of major importance for the elimination of all three reversal drugs, with approximately 50% of neostigmine and 70% of pyridostigmine and edrophonium excreted in urine. Excretion of all the cholinesterase inhibitors is delayed in patients with impaired renal function to the same or perhaps to a slightly greater extent than is elimination of muscle relaxants. Reappearance of neuromuscular blockade after pharmacologic reversal of neuromuscular blockade in a patient with renal failure is, in most cases, due to some other cause. Table 59.10 contains data indicating that the pharmacokinetics of all the cholinesterase inhibitors is similar in healthy patients and in patients with well-functioning newly transplanted kidneys.

Sugammadex, a newer reversal drug, is a cyclodextrin molecule that inactivates aminosteroidal neuromuscular blockers, such as vecuronium and rocuronium, by selectively binding to them. The resultant sugammadex-neuromuscular blocker complex is excreted by the kidney. In patients with severe renal impairment, these cyclodextrin complexes can accumulate. Although sugammadex can effectively reverse neuromuscular blockade in these patients, the effect of prolonged exposure to sugammadex is unclear. There are insufficient data at this time to recommend the routine administration to patients with severe renal impairment.[54] There are also data to suggest that

TABLE 59.10 Pharmacokinetics Data for Cholinesterase Inhibitors in Normal, Anephric, and Renal Transplant Patients

Drug	Patients Studied	Elimination Half-Life (h)	Clearance (mL/kg/min)	Volume of Distribution (L/kg)
Neostigmine	Normal	1.3	8.4	0.7
	Anephric	3*	3.9*	0.8
	Renal transplant	1.7	9.4	1.1
Pyridostigmine	Normal	1.9	8.6	1.1
	Anephric	6.3*	2.1*	1
	Renal transplant	1.4	10.8	1
Edrophonium	Normal	1.9	8.2	0.9
	Anephric	3.6*	2.7*	0.7
	Renal transplant	1.4	9.9	0.9

*$P < .05$ vs. normal.

sugammadex complexes can be effectively dialyzed using high-flux hemodialysis.[55]

Vasopressors and Antihypertensive Drugs

Patients with severe renal disease are frequently given antihypertensive and other cardiovascular medications. More than 90% of the thiazides[56] and 70% of furosemide[57] are excreted by the kidneys, and they have prolonged durations of action in patients with abnormal or absent renal function. Propranolol is almost completely metabolized in the liver,[58] and esmolol is biodegraded by esterases in the cytosol of red blood cells[59]; therefore their effects are not prolonged in patients with abnormal or absent renal function. The calcium channel–blocking agents nifedipine, verapamil, and diltiazem are extensively metabolized in the liver to pharmacologically inert products; they can be administered in usual doses to patients with renal insufficiency.[60] Nitroglycerin can be useful because it is metabolized rapidly, with less than 1% excreted unchanged in urine.[61]

Sodium nitroprusside has had a resurgence in use since its initial introduction as a hypotensive drug in the 1920s. Cyanide is an intermediate in the metabolism of sodium nitroprusside, with thiocyanate being the final metabolic product. Although cyanide toxicity as a complication of sodium nitroprusside therapy is well described, it is less well appreciated that thiocyanate is also potentially toxic. The half-life of thiocyanate is normally more than 4 days, and it is prolonged in patients with renal failure. Hypoxia, nausea, tinnitus, muscle spasm, disorientation, and psychosis have been reported when thiocyanate levels are more than 10 mg/100 mL.[62] Sodium nitroprusside is less desirable for prolonged administration than either trimethaphan or nitroglycerin.

Hydralazine is slower acting than the other three drugs discussed previously. Its action is terminated by hydroxylation and subsequent glucuronidation in the liver, with approximately 15% excreted unchanged in urine.[63] The elimination half-life of hydralazine is prolonged in patients with uremia; therefore caution is required when it is administered.[64] After a single intravenous dose of 0.5 mg/kg of labetalol, the volume of distribution, clearance, and elimination half-life were similar in patients with ESRD and in healthy volunteers.[65]

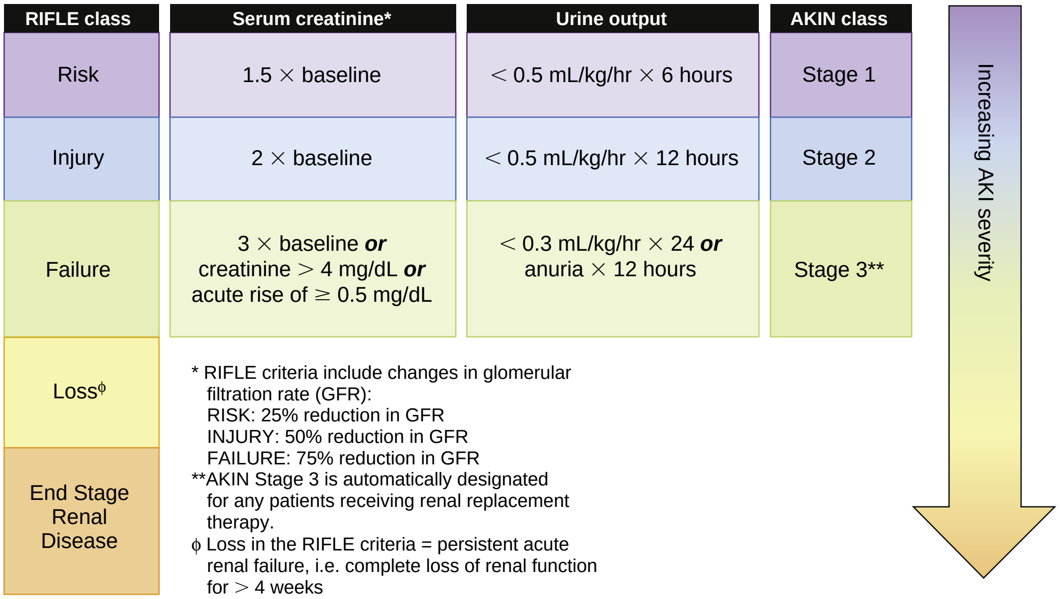
If administration of a vasopressor is necessary, a direct α-adrenergic–stimulating drug such as phenylephrine would be effective. This type of vasopressor causes the greatest interference with renal circulation. Although β-adrenergic–stimulating drugs such as isoproterenol maintain heart and brain perfusion without renal vasoconstriction, they also increase myocardial irritability. When possible, it is best to substitute simple measures such as blood volume expansion for drug therapy. If these measures are inadequate, β-adrenergic–stimulating drugs or dopamine should be used.

ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY AND HEMODIALYSIS

Although often considered a discrete syndrome, AKI represents a diverse array of pathophysiologic processes of varied severity and cause. These include decreases in GFR as the result of disruption of normal renal perfusion without causing parenchymal injury; partial or complete obstruction to urinary flow; and a spectrum of processes with characteristic patterns of glomerular, interstitial, tubular, or vascular parenchymal injury. AKI-precipitating events are quite often multifactorial and occur in a heterogeneous patient population.[66] Authors have used terms such as renal insufficiency, renal dysfunction, acute renal failure, and renal failure requiring dialysis somewhat interchangeably. Parameters used to define these terms include (Fig. 59.5) absolute and percentage changes in creatinine values, absolute and percentage changes in estimated GFRs, and reduction in output.[67] The incidence of AKI depends on the type of surgery and preexisting kidney function (Box 59.2 and Table 59.11).

In cardiac surgery, incidence is between 7.7% and 11.4%[68] when defined broadly, whereas frequency of AKI requiring dialysis is generally lower, ranging between less than 1% and 5%. In gastric bypass surgery, the incidence is 8.5%,[69] and after aortic aneurysm surgery, it is approximately 15% to 16%.[70] Similarly, liver transplant is also associated with a high frequency of AKI. It is reported that 48% to 94%[71] of patients suffer from acute worsening renal function after liver transplantation.

In noncardiac surgery, several independent risk factors for AKI have been identified by Kheterpal and coworkers[72]:



RIFLE class	Serum creatinine*	Urine output	AKIN class
Risk	1.5 × baseline	< 0.5 mL/kg/hr × 6 hours	Stage 1
Injury	2 × baseline	< 0.5 mL/kg/hr × 12 hours	Stage 2
Failure	3 × baseline ***or*** creatinine > 4 mg/dL ***or*** acute rise of ≥ 0.5 mg/dL	< 0.3 mL/kg/hr × 24 ***or*** anuria × 12 hours	Stage 3**
Loss$^{\phi}$			
End Stage Renal Disease			

Increasing AKI severity

* RIFLE criteria include changes in glomerular filtration rate (GFR):
RISK: 25% reduction in GFR
INJURY: 50% reduction in GFR
FAILURE: 75% reduction in GFR

**AKIN Stage 3 is automatically designated for any patients receiving renal replacement therapy.

ϕ Loss in the RIFLE criteria = persistent acute renal failure, i.e. complete loss of renal function for > 4 weeks

Fig. 59.5 Parameters used to define acute kidney injury *(AKI)*. (From Mehta RL, Kellum JA, Shah SV, et al. Acute Kidney Injury Network: report of an initiative to improve outcomes in kidney injury. *Crit Care*. 2007;11:R31.)

BOX 59.2 Risk Factors for Development of Postoperative Acute Kidney Injury

Preoperative Factors

- Preoperative renal dysfunction
- Increasing age
- Heart disease (ischemic or congestive)
- Smoking
- Diabetes mellitus
- American Society of Anesthesiologists Physical Status classification 4 or 5

Intraoperative Factors

- Emergency surgery or intraperitoneal, intrathoracic, suprainguinal vascular surgeries
- Erythrocyte transfusion
- Inotrope use
- Aortic cross-clamp time
- Cardiopulmonary bypass: furosemide use, urine output, need for a new pump run

Postoperative Factors

- Erythrocyte transfusion
- Vasoconstrictor use
- Diuretic use
- Antiarrhythmic drug use

Data from Abelha FJ, Botelho M, Fernandes V, et al. Determinants of postoperative acute kidney injury. *Crit Care*. 2009;13:R19; Parolari A, Pesce LL, Pacini D, et al. Risk factors for perioperative acute kidney injury after adult cardiac surgery: role of perioperative management. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;93:584–591.

age, emergent surgery, liver disease, body mass index, high-risk surgery, peripheral vascular disease, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (requiring chronic bronchodilator therapy). Based on incremental score, the frequency of renal failure increased, ranging between 0.3% and 4.5%, respectively.

PERIOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY

Although many factors have been shown to contribute to AKI in surgical patients, there are few interventions to prevent AKI and no obvious cure for perioperative renal injury. A complete review of such interventions is beyond the scope of this chapter; however, some deserve mention.

Dialysis

Dialysis may not decrease perioperative AKI; however, it can treat the associated acidosis, hyperkalemia, and hypervolemia. For certain surgeries, such as aortic, dialysis actually reduces 30-day mortality rates in patients who develop loss of renal function. As many as 75% of these survivors regain kidney function and become independent of dialysis.[73]

Nondialytic Management

Optimal therapy for renal dysfunction has not been established, and it is not clear whether interventions such as ACE-I therapy or diuretic therapy prevent decline in kidney function around the time of surgery.[68]

Normal hemodynamic variables probably should be preserved during the operative period in an attempt to prevent AKI. In addition, scavengers of oxygen free radicals such as mannitol and *N*-acetylcysteine have been given to prevent ischemia-reperfusion injury. However, studies implementing these strategies have failed to show benefit in reduction of AKI in cardiac surgery patients. For years, mannitol was administered before aortic clamping, especially prior to the application of a suprarenal cross-clamp during abdominal aortic aneurysm. Clinical trials thus far have failed to demonstrate that this approach reduces the incidence of renal failure in this population of patients.[74]

Both dopamine and atrial natriuretic peptide initially showed promise in the prevention of AKI because of their vasoactive effects leading to increased renal blood flow.

TABLE 59.11 Common Causes of Postoperative Decreased Urine Output and Acute Kidney Injury

	SITE OF DEFECT		
	Prerenal	**Renal**	**Postrenal**
Differential Diagnoses	Hypotension Absolute Relative	Acute tubular necrosis Ischemia-reperfusion Radiocontrast	Urinary catheter obstruction Catheter kinking Debris
	Hypovolemia	Acute interstitial nephritis	Prostatic hypertrophy
	Absolute Relative (e.g., IAH)		Bladder spasm Urinary retention

From Chenitz KB, Lane-Fall MB. Postoperative oliguria. *Anesth Clin*. 2012;513–526.

Studies have shown neither dopamine[75] nor atrial natriuretic peptide[76] to be associated with improved mortality. Use of fenoldopam, a selective renal dopamine receptor agonist, has been shown to reduce postoperative AKI; however, it has not been associated with a reduction in the need for renal replacement therapy or hospital mortality.[77]

Renal and Genitourinary Procedures

TRANSURETHRAL RESECTION OF THE PROSTATE

Transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) is associated with a particular set of concerns with anesthetic implications. These issues must be considered when choosing an anesthetic technique, along with the usual considerations, such as the general health of the patient, the length of the procedure, and patient and surgeon preferences.

Pathophysiology of Prostate Hyperplasia

The prostatic gland is often described as a walnut-sized organ at the base of the bladder. There are three major areas—the fibromuscular stroma that surrounds the gland and two glandular zones termed central and peripheral. There is also a smaller, approximately 5% of the normal prostate, glandular region that surrounds the prostatic urethra designated as the transition zone; which is the primary site of benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH). Nodular expansion of this area causes compression of the urethra along with the associated partial bladder outlet obstruction in men.[78] The prostate is rich in blood supply with vessels penetrating the prostatic capsule and branching within the gland. There are also large venous sinuses adjacent to the capsule.[79] The prevalence of BPH increases precipitously from the fourth decade of life, peaking at 88% of men in their 80s.[80]

Surgical Procedures

TURP has long been considered the “gold standard” for the surgical treatment of BPH. Over the past several decades, the number of monopolar TURP (M-TURP) procedures performed annually in the United States has steadily declined secondary to advances in medical management, α-blockers, and 5-α reductase inhibitors; the introduction of newer surgical treatment modalities, bipolar TURP (B-TURP), laser TURP (L-TURP), microwave ablation, and aquablation; and the development of patient care guidelines.[81-84]

The TURP procedure is performed by inserting a resectoscope through the urethra and resecting or vaporizing prostatic tissue in an orderly fashion. This can be accomplished using one of several techniques: M-TURP or B-TURP using an electrically powered cutting-coagulating metal loop, Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate (HoLEP), bipolar plasma vaporization, or laser-vaporization.[82,85-87] A recently introduced novel technique is aquablation, a minimally invasive water ablation technique combining image guidance and robotics with a high-velocity saline stream for targeted and heat-free removal of prostatic tissue.[83] During resection, care must be taken not to violate the prostatic capsule. If the capsule is violated, large amounts of irrigation fluid may be absorbed into the circulation via the periprostatic or retroperitoneal spaces. If perforation is suspected, the procedure should be quickly terminated and hemostasis should be established.[88]

Bleeding during M-TURP is common but is usually easily controlled. Arterial bleeding is controlled by electrocoagulation; however, when large venous sinuses are opened, hemostasis becomes difficult. If bleeding becomes uncontrollable, the procedure should be terminated as quickly as possible, and a Foley catheter should be passed into the bladder and traction applied. Excessive bleeding requiring transfusion occurs in approximately 2.5% of M-TURP procedures.[89]

Irrigation Solutions

Ideally, an irrigation solution for use during TURP should be isotonic, nonhemolytic, electrically inert, transparent, nonmetabolized, nontoxic, rapidly excreted, easily sterilized, and inexpensive.[90,91] Such a solution does not exist. Initially, the solution of choice for M-TURP was distilled water because it is electrically inert, transparent, and inexpensive, but it is extremely hypotonic. When absorbed into the circulation, it causes massive hemolysis, hyponatremia, renal failure, and CNS symptoms.[92] Solutions of normal saline or Ringer lactate are isosmotic and are tolerated if absorbed into the circulation but are highly ionized and would cause dispersion of the high-frequency current from the M-TURP resecting loop. These issues led to the use of nearly isotonic irrigation solutions, such as glycine, Cytal (a combination of 2.7% sorbitol and 0.54% mannitol), sorbital, mannitol, glucose, and urea (Table 59.12). These solutions allow for electrocautery and are moderately hypotonic to maintain transparency.[93,94]

Although these irrigation solutions cause no significant hemolysis, excessive absorption can lead to several

TABLE 59.12 Osmolality of Irrigation Solutions Used for Transurethral Resection of the Prostate

Solution	Osmolality (mOsm/kg)
Glycine, 1.2%	175
Glycine, 1.5%	220
Cytal (see text)	178
Sorbital, 3.5%	165
Mannitol, 5%	275
Glucose, 2.5%	139
Urea, 1%	167
Distilled water	0

perioperative complications, such as circulatory overload, pulmonary edema, and hyponatremia. In addition, the solutes can have adverse effects: glycine can cause cardiac, neurologic, and retinal effects; mannitol rapidly expands the blood volume and can cause pulmonary edema in cardiac compromised patients; sorbital is metabolized to fructose and lactate, and may cause hyperglycemia and/or lactic acidosis; and glucose can cause severe hyperglycemia in diabetic patients.

Replacement of distilled water with nearly isosmotic solutions has eliminated hemolysis and its sequelae as a complication of M-TURP. The incidence of severe CNS symptoms associated with severe hyponatremia, such as seizures and coma, has been reduced. However, the other major complication associated with the absorption of large volumes of irrigation solutions, overhydration, still is present. The use of normal saline as the bladder irrigation solution with the newer surgical techniques has eliminated the risks of dilutional hyponatremia and TURP syndrome.

Anesthetic Considerations for Transurethral Resection of the Prostate

Spinal anesthesia is considered the anesthetic technique of choice when traditional M-TURP is performed.[95] Spinal anesthesia provides adequate anesthesia for the patient with relaxation of the pelvic floor and perineum for the surgeon. Cardiac morbidity and mortality after M-TURP were similar for general or regional[96]; however, spinal anesthesia has the advantage of allowing the patient to remain awake and enables the anesthesiologist to recognize the early signs and symptoms (e.g., mental status changes) of TURP syndrome or the extravasation of irrigating solution. Restlessness and confusion are early signs of hyponatremia and/or serum hypoosmolality and generally not signs of inadequate anesthesia. The continued administration of sedatives or the induction of general anesthesia might mask severe complications of TURP syndrome and even lead to death.[97]

A sensory level of T10 provides satisfactory regional anesthesia for TURP by achieving an anesthetic block level that interrupts sensory transmission from the prostate and bladder neck; in addition, this sensory level eliminates the uncomfortable sensation of bladder distention. Higher sensory levels might mask the symptoms (abdominal or shoulder pain and/or nausea and vomiting) of accidental perforation of the bladder or prostatic capsule in the awake patient.[94]

Spinal anesthesia has a few advantages over epidural anesthesia for TURP. It is considered to be technically easier to perform in elderly patients. The incomplete block of the sacral nerves, which provide sensory innervation to the prostate, bladder neck, and penis, occasionally occurs with epidural anesthesia and is usually avoided with spinal anesthesia. However, if a regional technique cannot be performed because of technical difficulty, concerns of sacral nerve coverage, coagulation status, and/or patient refusal, then general anesthesia will be required.

Controversy exists on whether regional or general anesthetic techniques influence blood loss during TURP. Some studies have reported decreased bleeding under regional anesthesia,[98-100] whereas others found no significant difference between the techniques.[101-104] Taking into consideration the studies that observed decreased bleeding with regional anesthesia, the authors have postulated that regional anesthesia reduces blood loss not only by decreasing systemic blood loss but also by decreasing central and peripheral venous pressures. However, spinal anesthesia, by reducing central venous pressure (CVP), may allow for greater absorption of irrigating solution compared to general anesthesia.[105] Additional factors that influence blood loss during TURP are the vascularity and size of the gland, the duration of the procedure, the number of sinuses opened during resection, and the presence of infection and prostatic inflammation from repeated or recent catheterizations.[89,95]

Anesthetic considerations for TURP should also include positioning. TURP is usually performed in the lithotomy position with a slight Trendelenburg tilt. This positioning results in changes in pulmonary blood volume; a decrease in pulmonary compliance; a cephalad shift of the diaphragm; and a decrease in lung volumes such as residual volume, functional residual volume, tidal volume, and vital capacity. Cardiac preload may also increase. Nerve injuries to the common peroneal, sciatic, and femoral nerves may occur.[106]

Morbidity and Mortality After Transurethral Resection of the Prostate

Patients presenting for TURP are often elderly and tend to have coexisting diseases. With a reported 30-day mortality rate associated with M-TURP to be between 0.2% and 0.8%, the common causes of death include pulmonary edema, renal failure, and myocardial infarction.[95,107] Mortality rates are similar in patients receiving regional anesthesia or general anesthesia.[108] In one study the postoperative morbidity rate was noted to be 18%, with increased postoperative morbidity seen in patients with acute urinary retention, gland size greater than 45 g, resection exceeding 90 minutes, and age older than 80 years.[95]

The most concerning complication of M-TURP is TURP syndrome. This syndrome has a multifactorial pathophysiologic presentation and is essentially an iatrogenic form of water intoxication caused by a combination of excessive absorption of irrigating solution and the resulting hyponatremia.[109] Large studies have reported an incidence rate of mild to moderate TURP syndrome of between 0.78% and 1.4%.[110,111] However, a mortality rate as high as 25% has been reported for severe TURP syndrome (serum sodium concentration <120 mEq/L).[112]

Another concern, because many of the patients for TURP are elderly, is the incidence of postoperative cognitive dysfunction. In a small prospective study comparing spinal anesthesia with intravenous sedation to general anesthesia in elderly TURP patients, significant reduction in cognitive function was noted in both groups after 6 hours, with no difference in perioperative mental function between the groups at any time or even after 30 days.[113]

COMPLICATIONS OF TRANSURETHRAL RESECTION OF THE PROSTATE

Absorption of Irrigating Solution

In almost every TURP procedure, irrigating solution is absorbed through opened prostatic venous sinuses. Several factors govern the amount and rate of absorption: (1) the height of the irrigating solution above the surgical table, which affects hydrostatic pressure; (2) the amount of distension of the bladder; (3) the extent of opened venous sinuses; and (4) the length of surgical resection time.[114] On average, 10 to 30 mL of fluid is absorbed per minute of resection time, with the possibility of 6 to 8 L absorbed in procedures lasting up to 2 hours. Whether patients experience complications as a consequence of absorption of irrigating solution depends on the amount and type of fluid absorbed.[115,116]

Excessive Circulatory Volume, Hyponatremia, and Hypoosmolarity

The rapid volume expansion that occurs with excessive absorption of irrigation fluid leads to circulatory overload. Initially, hypertension and bradycardia may be observed, and in patients with compromised cardiac function, this could progress to pulmonary edema and eventually cardiac arrest.[117] After the initial hypertensive stage, a period of prolonged hypotension may follow. One suggested mechanism is the combination of hypertension and hyponatremia, which causes a net water flux along osmotic and hydrostatic pressure gradients out of the intravascular space into the pulmonary interstitium, causing pulmonary edema and hypovolemic shock.[118-120] In addition, the release of endotoxins into the circulation with the associated metabolic acidosis also causes hypotension.[121,122] Whether symptoms of circulatory overload occur in a given patient depends on the patient's cardiovascular status, the amount and rapidity of absorption of irrigating fluid, and the extent of surgical blood loss.[116]

The severity of symptoms of hyponatremia correlate with the rate by which serum sodium concentration falls. Acute changes in serum sodium levels are more concerning than chronic hyponatremia.[123] In addition, it is often impossible to separate symptoms of cardiovascular compromise caused by hyponatremia from those secondary to circulatory overload. CNS symptoms and cardiovascular effects are observed with acute decreases in serum sodium levels to less than 120 mEq/L. At first, one may observe restlessness and confusion, and with continuing decreases in serum sodium levels this may progress to loss of consciousness and seizures (<110 mEq/L). Hypotension, pulmonary edema, and congestive heart failure may also occur at serum sodium levels of less than 120 mEq/L, along with electrocardiogram changes (widened QRS complexes, ventricular ectopy, and ST segment increases) observed at levels less than 115 mEq/L. Eventually at levels near 100 mEq/L, respiratory and cardiac arrest may occur.[124]

The classic CNS signs of TURP syndrome are thought to be not caused by hyponatremia itself but are due to the acute serum hypoosmolality that allows the shift of intravascular fluid into the brain and consequent cerebral edema. With the advent of modern nonelectrolyte irrigating solutions, the incidence of severe CNS complications has been reduced; however, CNS disturbances can still occur secondary to severe hyponatremia.[115,116]

Glycine Toxicity

Glycine is a nonessential amino acid and when absorbed in significant amounts may cause neurologic and cardiac effects. Glycine has been implicated as the probable cause of transient blindness in TURP patients. Centrally acting mechanisms, such as cerebral edema, may also cause visual impairment, but normal pupillary light reflexes are retained. In TURP patients with transient blindness, the pupils are sluggish or nonreactive, suggesting a retinal effect. Glycine is an inhibitory neurotransmitter of the retina, and in one investigation, prolongation of visual evoked potentials along with deterioration of vision was observed after absorption of a few hundred milliliters of 1.5% glycine irrigation.[125] Glycine has also been shown to have subacute effects on the myocardium with the appearance of T-wave depressions or inversions on electrocardiography; and CK-MB isoenzymes may be elevated in some patients, without meeting criteria for myocardial infarction, for up 24 hours after surgery.[126]

Ammonia Toxicity

Because glycine is metabolized in the liver into ammonia, absorption of glycine may result in CNS toxicity.[127] The early signs of ammonia toxicity, nausea and vomiting, usually occur within 1 hour after surgery. CNS signs and symptoms are observed when serum concentrations of ammonia are greater than 100 μmol/L.[128] With higher levels, patients may lapse into a coma lasting from 10 to 12 hours and awaken after levels decrease to less than 150 μmol/L.[94]

Bladder Perforation

Inadvertent perforation of the bladder during TURP is another common complication, with a reported incidence of approximately 1% and with most perforations occurring retroperitoneally.[129] The usual cause is surgical instrumentation or overextension of the bladder with irrigating solution. An early sign of perforation, often overlooked, is a decrease in the return of irrigating solution. Eventually, a significant volume of fluid accumulates in the abdomen causing distension; conscious patients with a regional anesthetic may complain of abdominal pain and/or experience nausea and vomiting. With intraperitoneal perforations, symptoms are similar and develop sooner, and a patient may complain of severe shoulder pain secondary to diaphragmatic irritation. Intraperitoneal perforations are treated with either open surgical repair or percutaneous drainage of the abdomen.[130]

Transient Bacteremia and Septicemia

The prostate harbors a variety of bacteria, which can be a source of perioperative bacteremia via opened prostatic venous

TABLE 59.13 Signs and Symptoms of Transurethral Resection of the Prostate Syndrome

Cardiovascular and Respiratory	Central Nervous System	Metabolic	Other
Hypertension	Agitation/confusion	Hyponatremia	Hypoosmolality
Bradyarrhythmias, tachyarrhythmias	Seizures	Hyperglycinemia	Hemolysis
Congestive heart failure	Coma	Hyperammonemia	Acute renal failure
Pulmonary edema and hypoxemia	Visual disturbances (blindness)		
Myocardial infarction			
Hypotension			

sinuses. The presence of an indwelling catheter will further increase this risk. Therefore the prophylactic administration of antibiotics in patients is recommended for TURP procedures. The bacteremia is usually transient, symptomless, and easily treated with common antibiotic combinations; however, 6% to 7% of these patients may develop septicemia.[95]

Hypothermia

Using room temperature irrigating solutions may cause shivering and hypothermia in patients undergoing TURP procedures. This may be especially noticeable in older populations who have a reduced thermoregulatory capacity.[131] Warming the irrigation solutions will decrease heat loss and shivering. Concerns that these warmed solutions may cause increased bleeding secondary to vasodilation has not been shown to be clinically significant.[132,133]

Bleeding and Coagulopathy

Estimates of blood loss during TURP are frequently inaccurate secondary to the mixing of blood with large volumes of irrigating solution. Blood loss during M-TURP has been estimated to range from 2 to 4 mL/min of resection time or 20 to 50 mL/g of resected prostatic tissue[89]; however, these guidelines are rough estimates, and the careful monitoring of the patient's vital signs and serial hematocrits should be used to assess blood loss and the need for transfusion.

Abnormal bleeding after TURP occurs in less than 1% of cases. Possible causes include dilution of platelets (dilutional thrombocytopenia) and coagulation factors secondary to the absorption of large volumes of irrigating solutions, as well as systemic coagulopathy. In these patients, systemic coagulopathy is caused by either primary fibrinolysis or disseminated intravascular coagulopathy. In primary fibrinolysis, the prostate releases a plasminogen activator that converts plasminogen into plasmin, which then increases bleeding via fibrinolysis. If primary fibrinolysis is suspected, treatment is with epsilon aminocaproic acid given intravenously in a dose of 4 to 5 g during the first hour, followed by an infusion of 1 g/h. Some clinicians believe that the systemic absorption of resected prostatic tissue, which is rich in thromboplastin, will trigger the onset of disseminated intravascular coagulopathy.[89] Treatment is supportive with administration of intravenous fluid and blood products as required.

Treatment of Transurethral Resection of Prostate Syndrome

TURP syndrome may occur as early as a few minutes after the start of the procedure and as late as several hours after completion. A high index of awareness of the signs and symptoms (Table 59.13) must be present among the surgical team. Initially, based on the patient's symptomatology, supplemental oxygenation, ventilation, and cardiovascular support should be provided; concomitantly, other treatable conditions such as hypercarbia, hypoglycemia and diabetic coma, or drug interactions should be considered.[90] If TURP syndrome is suspected, blood samples should be drawn for analysis of electrolytes, glucose, and arterial blood gases and a 12-lead electrocardiogram should be obtained. Furthermore, the surgeon should terminate the procedure as rapidly as possible.[94]

Treatment of hyponatremia and volume overload is guided by the severity of the patient's symptoms. If the serum sodium level is greater than 120 mEq/L and the patient's symptoms are mild, then fluid restriction and the administration of a loop diuretic, usually furosemide, will usually return the serum sodium to normal levels.

In severe cases of TURP syndrome accompanied by a serum sodium less than 120 mEq/L, treatment with intravenous hypertonic saline (3% sodium chloride) should be considered. Cerebral edema and central pontine myelinolysis have been associated with rapid correction of hyponatremia with hypertonic saline.[134,135]

Laser Resection, Plasma Vaporization, Microwave Ablation, and Aquablation of the Prostate

In an effort to reduce perioperative morbidity, the urologic community has developed surgical alternatives to the classic TURP and M-TURP. The main advantage of these newer technologies is the use of physiologic saline instead of hypoosmolar irrigating solutions, such as glycine, which avoids the potential of dilutional hyponatremia and the development of TURP syndrome.[136] However, the possibility of volume overload is still present. Other advantages observed with these recent surgical modalities are a reduction of intraoperative and postoperative bleeding, less absorption of irrigation fluid, and decreased hospital length of stay. Although spinal anesthesia is the preferred anesthetic for TURP and M-TURP because it allows one to monitor mental status, these newer techniques enable the anesthesiologist to tailor the anesthetic management based upon the patient's medical condition and preference. In addition, patients may be taking anticoagulation medications or have coagulation disorders that may preclude the use of spinal anesthesia or undergoing the classic or M-TURP procedure.[137-139]

Laser resection of the prostate (L-TURP) has become an increasingly common choice for the treatment of BPH. L-TURP delivers light energy that, depending upon the temperature the prostatic tissue is heated to, will determine whether the tissue is coagulated or vaporized.[82] HoLEP has been suggested as the new gold standard for surgical treatment of BPH.[85,140]

Holmium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet laser is a solid-state, high-powered, pulsed laser that emits light at a wavelength of 2140 nm with precise cutting capabilities. Prostatic tissue is vaporized, and the resulting heat dissipation coagulates small to medium blood vessels. This technique allows the retrograde resection of entire prostatic lobes from the capsule, which are then pushed into the bladder and removed with a soft-tissue morcellator. HoLEP can be used safely on patients with larger prostatic glands, greater than 70 to 100 g, with similar outcomes as patients undergoing open prostatectomy.[141] When compared with traditional M-TURP, HoLEP is associated with lower transfusion rates, catheterization time, and shorter hospital stays.[142-145]

Another advancement in laser therapy for BPH is the development of the photoselective vaporization of prostate (PVP) technique. The initial 80-watt KTP (potassium-titanyl-phosphate) laser is a high-powered neodymium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet laser that passes a beam through a KTP crystal, which halves the wavelength to 532 nm and doubles the frequency of light. The 532-nm wavelength is selectively absorbed by hemoglobin and blood-rich tissue, poorly absorbed by water, and vaporizes prostatic tissue with minimal dissipation of energy to surrounding tissues. Higher-powered, 120- and 180-watt systems have been introduced that use a lithium triborate crystal that allow for faster vaporization and coagulation of prostatic tissue.[82,146]

This yields an almost bloodless field, faster hemostatic closure of the venous sinuses, and reduced absorption of irrigation fluid. Several studies have shown that PVP is safe and effective in patients at high risk of discontinuing their anticoagulation therapy for the procedure.[147-149] Potential complications of PVP include capsular perforation, dysuria, and infection (secondary to necrotic tissue that occurs with coagulation). When compared with M-TURP, reoperation rates were higher for PVP for residual adenoma but decreased with the 180-watt powered systems.[82] This laser modality allows the anesthesiologist to choose an anesthetic technique, including intravenous sedation, based on the patient's medical condition and preference.[150]

A recent nonlaser advance in the surgical treatment of BPH is the bipolar plasma vaporization of prostate technique. The design of this bipolar system incorporates both the active and return poles on the same electrode; as a consequence, in contrast to a monopolar system, energy does not transverse the patient's body toward a return electrode pad, but instead it remains at the site of prostate vaporization. The plasma vaporization system produces a plasma corona on the surface of a spherical shaped (described as mushroom- or button-like) tipped bipolar electrode. This electrode generates a thin layer of highly ionized particles as it glides over the prostatic tissue without making direct tissue contact, produces minimal heat, and concomitantly vaporizes and coagulates the tissue. The plasma field vaporizes a limited layer of prostate cells with significantly reduced bleeding.[87]

Transurethral microwave thermotherapy (TUMT) of the prostate is considered an effective alternative to M-TURP that has fewer major complications and can be performed as a minimally invasive office-based procedure under local or sacral block. TUMT heats prostatic tissue via a specialized catheter to a temperature between 45°C and 65°C. Although TUMT is less effective than M-TURP in reducing urinary flow long term, it is an alternative consideration for elderly or high-risk patients.[86,151]

The newest modality to surgically treat BPH is aquablation, a minimally invasive high-velocity saline ablation technique combining ultrasonic image guidance and robotics for the targeted and heat-free removal of prostatic tissue under general anesthesia. Using the ultrasonic image, the area of the prostate to be resected is mapped and the system generates and adjusts the level of saline pressure for the controlled ablation of the prostate tissue. Directed cautery of the resected area for hemostasis is then performed using either monopolar or bipolar techniques. In initial small studies of this technique, perioperative changes in serum sodium or hematocrit were not significant. Because the resection time is approximately 5 minutes and overall procedure time is 45 minutes, compared with other techniques with longer operative times, this technique may have an improved safety profile. Surgical mapping enables preservation of the bladder neck and tissue surrounding the verumontanum and therefore preservation of normal sexual function. Further clinical studies are needed to validate this new technology.[83,152]

URETEROSCOPIC LITHOTRIPSY AND PERCUTANEOUS NEPHROLITHOTRIPSY

Nephrolithiasis is a common and costly disease with a reported prevalence of 8.8% in the United States.[153] Although the majority of patients with renal system stones are conservatively managed, those with more complex calculi will require surgical treatment. The most commonly used surgical modalities are ureteroscopy (URS) and percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PCNL). The choice of treatment is guided by the size and location of the stone within the renal system. URS is recommended in symptomatic patients with smaller non–lower pole renal stones and/or middle or distal ureteral calculi. It has a greater stone-free rate after a single procedure when compared with extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (ESWL). In symptomatic (flank pain) patients with a renal stone burden greater than 20 mm or with lower renal pole calculi greater than 10 mm, PCNL should be the treatment of choice. PCNL with higher stone burdens and lower renal pole stones has a higher stone-free rate but carries greater morbidity.[154]

The advent of small-diameter, flexible ureteroscopes and the miniaturization of electrohydraulic lithotripsy (EHL) probes, especially laser fibers, have changed the anesthetic concerns associated with this procedure. Initially, URS was performed with larger, rigid instruments requiring ureteral dilation necessitating the patient to undergo a general or regional anesthetic for these procedures. The presumed advantage of these techniques is that they would prevent patient movement, therefore decreasing the risk of ureteral trauma. Although the use of a general or regional anesthetic is still common, studies have shown that URS can be safely and efficiently performed under local or intravenous sedation.[155-157]

EHL uses a flexible probe inserted through the ureteroscope to deliver a high-voltage spark between two electrodes generating a spherical hydraulic shock wave and the formation of a cavitation bubble near the stone to be fragmented. EHL can be performed in a normal saline solution, therefore avoiding the risks of irrigating the urinary track with a hypotonic solution. The major concern of EHL is its ability to damage the ureteral mucosa that could lead to the possibility of ureteral perforation. Laser lithotripsy uses a holmium:YAG flexible laser fiber through the ureteroscope to vaporize the stone via a photothermal mechanism. The holmium laser technique is safer and more efficient than EHL because it can be used in closer proximity to the ureteral wall without causing mucosal harm. In addition, it produces significantly smaller stone fragments.[155]

PCNL is the preferred modality for the treatment of large (>20 mm) or complex stones. Contraindications to PCNL include patients with uncorrected coagulopathy and active, untreated urinary tract infections. With the fragmentation of stones, bacteria and bacterial endotoxins may be released, which place the patient at risk for septic complications. To reduce this risk, broad-spectrum antibiotics should be given perioperatively to these patients. Renal access is obtained under fluoroscopic or ultrasonic guidance with the placement of a sheath through which a rigid or flexible nephroscope is inserted. Stone removal then may be achieved by a variety of endoscopic techniques. Commonly PCNL is performed in the prone position under general anesthesia, although regional anesthesia and local anesthesia with sedation have been successfully used.[155] Supine positioning may be used, but results in a smaller surgical field, collapse of the renal collecting system, and increased difficulty in upper pole calyceal puncture.[158] Besides the typical anesthetic concerns, including those related to prone positioning, PCNL has certain additional risks. Pleural injuries, including pneumothorax and hydrothorax; hypothermia secondary to the large amounts of fluid administered to the patient during nephroscopy; and acute anemia from bleeding or dilution may occur. Careful monitoring of the patient's pulmonary status (airway pressures, end-tidal CO_2, and O_2 saturation), hemodynamics, and temperature may alert one to these potential complications.[155]

EXTRACORPOREAL SHOCK WAVE LITHOTRIPSY

ESWL is an alternative treatment for the disintegration of renal stones in the non–lower pole of the kidney and the upper part of the ureter. Although ESWL was considered the treatment of choice for these types of stones, it has been surpassed in the United States by URS.[159] In symptomatic patients with stone burdens smaller than 20 mm, ESWL is still an effective treatment; however, when compared with URS, it is associated with a higher likelihood of repeat procedures. Therefore, to optimize stone-free rates, successful treatment with ESWL depends upon several factors: obesity, skin-to-stone distance, collecting system anatomy, stone composition, and stone density/attenuation.[154] The original first-generation lithotripter (Dornier HM-3) required immersion of the patient into a water bath, which could result in significant effects in the cardiovascular and respiratory systems (Box 59.3). Newer generations of lithotripters use less power and have eliminated the water bath; therefore the efficiency of stone fragmentation is decreased, resulting in higher retreatment rates.[160]

BOX 59.3 Changes on Immersion During Lithotripsy

Cardiovascular	Increased	Central blood volume
	Increased	Central venous pressure
	Increased	Pulmonary artery pressure
Respiratory	Increased	Pulmonary blood flow
	Decreased	Vital capacity
	Decreased	Functional residual capacity
	Decreased	Tidal volume
	Increased	Respiratory rate

Lithotripters generate repetitive high-energy shock waves through the water density of the patient's tissues, which are focused on the stone, causing it to fragment. The original first-generation lithotripter utilized an electrohydraulic shock wave generated by an electrode (or spark plug) placed in a water bath. This spark caused an explosive vaporization of water resulting in the rapid expansion and collapse of gas bubbles that generate a pressure wave, which is then focused using a metal ellipsoid onto the stone. Newer generations use piezoelectric crystals or electromagnetic generators to produce these shock waves along with water-filled cones or cushions, or silicone membranes and/or gel, for air-free coupling of the generated shock wave to the patient.[161]

Biomechanical Effects of Shock Wave Therapy

For ESWL shock waves to be effective, there should be no movement of stones during treatment. Otherwise treatment time will be prolonged, while shock wave generation is suspended, until the stone returns or is retargeted to the treatment focal zone; or if shocks are continued, adjoining tissues may become injured from the energy of the shock waves. Using controlled ventilation during a general anesthetic may cause stone excursion to surpass 60 mm. Spontaneous ventilation has been observed to displace stones over 12 mm, whereas in patients with adequate sedation, stone excursion is limited to approximately 5 mm.[161]

For effective stone disintegration, shock waves should reach the stone unimpeded. The flank area should be kept free of any medium that would provide an interface for the dissipation of shock wave energy. Nephrostomy dressings should be removed, and the nephrostomy catheter should be taped clear of the blast path. Although shock waves pass through most tissues relatively unimpeded, they do cause tissue injury, the extent of which depends on the tissue exposed and the shock wave energy at the tissue level. Skin bruising and flank ecchymoses can occur at the entry site. Painful hematoma in the flank muscles may also occur. Hematuria is almost always present at the end of the procedure and results from shock wave–induced endothelial injury to the kidney and ureter. Adequate hydration is necessary to prevent clot retention.

Shock wave–induced cardiac dysrhythmias were previously reported in 10% to 14% of patients undergoing immersion lithotripsy.[163,164] Depending on the technology of the newer generations of lithotripters, some authors have observed dysrhythmias in 20% to 59% of patients with piezoelectric source of shock waves versus 1.4% to 9% using electromagnetic lithotripters. These dysrhythmic episodes do not seem to be of any clinical significance.[162] Some of these dysrhythmias may be due to mechanical stress on the conduction system exerted by the shock waves. The intricate grounding system of the lithotripter ensures that any current-induced dysrhythmias are unlikely. Artifacts on the electrocardiogram also are common. Artifacts and dysrhythmias usually disappear when the lithotripsy is stopped.

Anesthetic Choices for Lithotripsy

Historically, anesthetic regimens used successfully for immersion lithotripsy included general anesthesia, epidural anesthesia, spinal anesthesia, flank infiltration with or without intercostal blocks, and analgesia-sedation, including patient-controlled analgesia.[165-172] With the newer generations of lithotripters, most analgesia-sedation combinations are adequate. Even patient-controlled analgesia with alfentanil and a combination of propofol and alfentanil has been used.[173,174] Many centers routinely use general anesthesia with short-acting inhaled or intravenous anesthetics and use laryngeal mask airway for ventilation.

Newer Generations of Lithotripters

Newer generations of lithotripters have no water bath, use fluoroscopy and/or ultrasonography to visualize and target the stone, and tend to use multifunctional tables that allow other procedures, such as cystoscopy and stent placement, to be accomplished without moving the patient off the table. The shock waves are tightly focused; therefore, they cause less pain at the entry site, and intravenous analgesia-sedation is the mainstay of anesthesia with these newer lithotripters. Other incidental interventions, such as cystoscopy, stone manipulation, or stent placement, may alter anesthetic requirements. Because these newer lithotripters have a much smaller focal zone for the shock waves, it is essential that adequate analgesia and sedation be provided so that stone excursion with respiration is limited to the focal zone.

Contraindications

Pregnancy, active urinary tract infection, and untreated bleeding disorders are the major contraindications to lithotripsy. Women of childbearing age must have a pregnancy test that is documented to be negative before lithotripsy. Standard tests of coagulation, such as the platelet count, prothrombin time, and partial thromboplastin time, should be obtained as indicated by medical history. Pacemakers, automatic implanted cardioverter-defibrillators (AICDs), abdominal aortic aneurysm, orthopedic prostheses, and obesity are no longer considered contraindications.

Patients with pacemakers can be treated safely if the pacemaker is pectorally placed and the following precautions are observed.[175-177] Pacemaker programmability should be established before the treatment, and the pacemaker should be switched to a nondemand mode in case the shock waves interfere with pacemaker function. Alternative means of pacing should be available. Although most pacemakers located pectorally are at a safe distance from the blast path, some may be damaged. Weber and coworkers[175] examined 43 different pacemakers and found that three were affected. Dual-chamber pacemakers tend to be more sensitive to interference. Treatment should be started at a low energy level and gradually increased while observing pacemaker function.

Manufacturers of AICDs and lithotripters have considered an AICD a contraindication for lithotripsy; however, patients with AICDs have been treated successfully with lithotripsy.[176] AICD devices should be shut off immediately before lithotripsy, with an alternative means of defibrillating available, and then reactivated immediately after treatment.[178]

Patients with small aortic aneurysms have been treated safely, provided that the stone is not close to the aneurysm. Orthopedic prostheses, such as hip prostheses and even Harrington rods, are not a problem if they are not in the blast path, which is usually the case. Positioning of obese patients may be problematic at times. Not only do extremely obese patients present anesthetic challenges related to obesity, but also focusing of the stone may be extremely difficult in the very obese. It is prudent for focusing of the stone to be attempted before administering any anesthetic in this high-risk population.

Open Radical Surgery in Urology

Radical surgery is the excision of a tumor or diseased organ and possibly adjacent structures, along with their blood supply and lymphatic drainage. These procedures are generally performed for patients with malignant rather than benign disease and may be lengthy with sudden and significant blood loss. Although the trend over the past decades has been from open to laparoscopic or robotic-assisted approaches, there are still cases where major open urologic procedures are indicated.

Radical Nephrectomy

The most common malignancy of the kidney is renal cell carcinoma, comprising 80% to 85% of all solid renal masses.[179] Because renal cell carcinoma is refractory to chemotherapy and radiation therapy, surgical resection or ablation can offer curative treatment of localized disease (Box 59.4). The procedure involves removal of the kidney, the ipsilateral adrenal gland, perinephric fat, and the surrounding fascia.

BOX 59.4 Anesthetic Implications of Radical Nephrectomy for Tumors

- 85%-90% are for renal cell cancer
- 5%-10% extension to the inferior vena cava and right atrium
- Large-bore intravenous access, A-line, internal jugular vein line (preferably on left side if inferior vena cava is involved)
- Paraneoplastic syndrome
- Hypercalcemia, eosinophilia; increased prolactin, erythropoietin, and glucocorticoids
- Occurs more frequently in men than women
- Chronic smoking history usually associated
- Coronary artery disease, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
- Renal failure

Recently, resection of the ipsilateral adrenal gland has been reserved for patients with large upper-pole lesions or when the adrenal gland is enlarged or appears abnormal.[180] Partial nephrectomy (nephron-sparing surgery) is considered for patients with a solitary functional kidney, small lesions, or bilateral tumors or for patients with increased risk because of other diseases, such as diabetes or hypertension.[181,182] Nephron-sparing surgery in the treatment of renal cell carcinoma has been shown to have an equal curative potential as radical nephrectomy.[183]

With radical nephrectomy, significant cardiorespiratory changes attendant to the flank position are a concern. Respiratory changes include decreases in thoracic compliance, tidal volume, vital capacity, and functional residual capacity. Dependent atelectasis is common and can lead to hypoxemia. Pneumothorax may occur and can have significant respiratory and hemodynamic consequences intraoperatively. It is common to see a decrease in blood pressure when the kidney rest is raised. This decrease is usually due to compression of the inferior vena cava. In addition, hepatic encroachment on the vena cava and mediastinal shift may reduce venous return and stroke volume further. Cervical plexus, brachial plexus, and common peroneal neuropathies can occur because of stretch or compression of nerves in the lateral position.

In 5% to 10% of patients with renal cell carcinoma, the tumor extends into the renal vein and the inferior vena cava and right atrium. Tumor extension into the inferior vena cava and atrium occurs more frequently with right-sided renal cell carcinoma. Several problems can occur in these patients, ranging from circulatory failure as a result of complete occlusion of the vena cava by tumor to acute pulmonary embolization of tumor fragments during surgery. To operate on these patients safely, the extent of the lesion must be defined preoperatively. Cardiopulmonary bypass may be required. CVP in such cases might not reflect intravascular volume accurately, because venous return through the inferior vena cava can be impaired by thrombus; hence intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography may be of value.[184] A decrease in venous return also predisposes the patient to hypotension during induction of anesthesia. Venous obstruction can lead to dilation of the epidural veins and the development of abdominal wall and retroperitoneal collaterals. The emphasis should center on appropriate preoperative preparation, which is possible only when the full extent of the lesion has been defined.[185]

Radical Cystectomy

Bladder cancer is the fourth most common cancer in men and twelfth in women in United States.[186] Radical cystectomy with regional pelvic lymph node dissection is the surgical treatment of choice for the management of nonmetastatic muscle-invasive bladder cancer and the highest-risk nonmuscle-invasive bladder cancer. Radical cystectomy with urinary diversion is considered one of the most complex urologic procedures and involves removal of the entire bladder, the distal ureters, and lymph nodes, as well as the prostate, and seminal vesicles in men or urethra, adjacent vagina, and uterus in women. For urinary diversion, either an orthotopic neobladder or ileal conduit are commonly created.[187] This procedure is associated with significant morbidity and prolonged hospital stays. One large study looking at a data registry in England of 2537 patients with an open radical cystectomy over a 2-year period (2014-2015) reported a median blood loss of 500 to 1000 mL with a transfusion rate of 21.8%.[188] In the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results-Medicare database of 5207 patients who underwent radical cystectomy between 1991 and 2009 mortality at 30 days in patients older than 65 years old was 5.2%.[189] Complications of this procedure include urinary extravasation, intestinal anastomotic leaks, postoperative ileus, postoperative infections, and venothromboembolism. Enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) protocols have shown improved emotional and physical recovery.[190] In addition, patients given alvimopan, a peripherally acting μ-opioid receptor antagonist, showed significantly quicker bowel recovery.[191]

As with any major operation with the potential for significant blood loss, adequate intravenous access and placement of an arterial line are essential. General endotracheal anesthesia is indicated with consideration of a general/epidural technique for postoperative analgesia and/or the use of ERAS protocols for these procedures. The volume of urinary output cannot be used as a measure of fluid status due to its absence; however, the operative team can observe whether urine flow is noted at the clipped ends of the ureters. Blood lactate levels can be monitored to determine adequate organ perfusion. Placement of a central venous line for resuscitative purposes might be considered when there is anticipation of major blood loss.[192] The implementation of ERAS protocols for open RC with urinary diversion has demonstrated expedited bowel function recovery and shortened hospital stays without an increase in hospital readmission rates.[193]

Radical Prostatectomy

Prostate cancer is the most commonly diagnosed cancer in men and the second leading cause of cancer death of men in the United States.[186] Localized prostate cancer is treated by either radiation therapy or radical prostatectomy (Box 59.5). Radical prostatectomy has become more commonly performed because of routine prostate-specific antigen

BOX 59.5 **Anesthetic Implications of Radical Prostatectomy**

- Disease of the elderly
- Coronary artery disease, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and renal dysfunction
- Significant blood loss
- Wide-bore intravenous access and invasive monitoring
- Acute normovolemic hemodilution versus autologous blood donation
- Hyperextended position
- Nerve injuries, soft tissue injury, joint dislocations
- Venous air embolism
- Anesthetic management
  - Benefits of regional anesthesia versus general anesthesia debated
  - Not known to influence mortality
  - Epidural anesthesia with spontaneous ventilation decreases blood loss
  - General or combined anesthesia with intermittent positive pressure ventilation increases blood loss

testing in men older than 50 years and popularization of the nerve-sparing surgery to reduce the risk of impotence. Although originally described in 1905 via the transperineal approach, the retropubic approach is currently more commonly performed. The prostate, the ejaculatory ducts, the seminal vesicles, and part of the bladder neck are removed along with the pelvic lymph nodes.

Traditionally, the procedure was performed by open laparotomy, but robotic-assisted surgery is replacing that technique with increasing frequency. A potential intraoperative problem with open radical prostatectomy is hemorrhage and rapid blood loss requiring blood transfusion; therefore large bore intravenous access is recommended. Autologous predonation, preoperative recombinant erythropoietin therapy, intraoperative isovolemic hemodilution, and blood cell salvage are commonly practiced to reduce the patient's exposure to allogeneic blood. Early postoperative complications, including deep vein thrombosis, pulmonary embolism, hematoma, seroma, and wound infection, occur in 0.5% to 2% of cases.[194] Late complications include incontinence, impotence, and bladder neck contracture.[195] Patients undergoing radical prostatectomy are placed supine in Trendelenburg position with the back extended, which places the pubis above the head. Air embolism from the prostatic fossa caused by a gravitational gradient between the prostatic veins and the heart has been reported.[196]

Comparison of Anesthetic Techniques for Radical Prostatectomy

Epidural anesthesia, spinal anesthesia, general anesthesia, and combined epidural and general anesthesia have been used for this surgery. For the epidural component of combined techniques, a thoracic or a lumbar approach to catheter placement has been used, and spontaneous ventilation or intermittent positive pressure ventilation (IPPV) has been used for the general anesthesia component. Many investigators have reported their findings in comparing the four anesthetic techniques for radical retropubic prostatectomy,[197-200] and certain trends emerge.

Intraoperative blood loss is significantly decreased if epidural anesthesia or a combined epidural and general anesthetic with spontaneous ventilation is used. In one study, blood loss in the general anesthesia and the combined anesthesia group with IPPV was significantly more than in the epidural anesthesia group, despite little difference in arterial pressure among the three groups.[197] It was postulated that the increased venous pressure as a result of IPPV was the most likely cause of increased bleeding in the general and the combined anesthesia groups during radical prostatectomy. Previous studies have shown that central and peripheral venous pressures are lower in patients during spontaneous ventilation under epidural anesthesia or combined epidural-general anesthesia than in patients receiving IPPV during general anesthesia.[201] Epidural anesthesia alone or in combination with a general anesthetic decreases the risk of thromboembolism,[202] decreases postoperative pain and analgesic requirements,[203] and speeds recovery of bowel function. The length of stay and the cost of hospitalization can be decreased with the judicial use of epidural anesthesia and adherence to established clinical pathways.[204,205] In one study, 80% of patients were satisfactorily discharged after 1 day and the mean length of stay was 1.34 days.[206]

Possible differences in patient outcome with general versus epidural anesthesia are not clear. Local practices are therefore based on the preferences of the urologist, anesthesiologist, and patient.

Robotic and Laparoscopic Surgery in Urology

The advantages of laparoscopic surgery over conventional open surgery, including decreased hospital stay, improved visualization, decreased blood loss, expedited recovery time, reduced postoperative pain, and improved cosmetic outcomes, have been well described. The introduction of robotic-assisted surgery offers further enhancements of control and mobility to the surgeon but with increased cost and controversy over whether there is a clear benefit regarding reduction in morbidity and mortality compared with laparoscopic techniques.[207] The use of robots in urologic surgery has been extended to radical prostatectomy, radical cystectomy, pyeloplasty, and renal and adrenal surgery in adults and children.

Anesthetic concerns of robotic-assisted surgery include the length of surgical time, intravenous fluid management, and positioning. The most frequent reported complications are peripheral neuropathies, corneal abrasions, vascular complications including compartment syndrome, rhabdomyolysis, thromboembolic disease, and the effects of edema.[208] In addition, significant anesthetic concerns for urologic minimally invasive surgeries surround the physiologic effects of pneumoperitoneum, the use of lateral decubitus, and steep head down tilt (SHDT) positions, as well as restricted access secondary to the robot and the robotic arms and extensions over the patient.

Although all the conventional complications and concerns associated with laparoscopy and robotic-assisted procedures are applicable to urologic procedures, two unique problems are identified. First, because the urogenital system is mainly retroperitoneal, the large retroperitoneal space and its communications with the thorax and subcutaneous tissue are exposed to the insufflated carbon dioxide. Significant subcutaneous emphysema can occur in these patients and may extend all the way up to the head and neck.[195] The upper airway is at risk for compromise in the most severe cases because of pharyngeal swelling secondary to submucosal carbon dioxide. This complication should be kept in mind before extubation of the trachea in these patients. Second, the procedures can be lengthy, allowing for sufficient absorption of carbon dioxide to result in acidemia and marked acidosis.[195] Because of significant increases in intraabdominal and intrathoracic pressure as a result of insufflated carbon dioxide, use of SHDT position in some cases, and the long duration of procedures, general anesthesia with controlled ventilation may be the method of choice. Despite adequate intravascular hydration, intraoperative oliguria may occur and can be followed by diuresis in the immediate postoperative period. Increased perirenal pressure exerted by the insufflated gas in the retroperitoneal space causes an increase in renal vascular resistance with direct compression of the renal parenchyma and renal vein. This causes a release of renin and aldosterone, along with antidiuretic hormone, which temporarily decreases renal blood flow, renal function, and urinary output.[209]

Ventilatory and respiratory concerns of pneumoperitoneum include decreased compliance, increased airway pressures,

BOX 59.6 **Pneumoperitoneum-Related Physiologic Changes**

Increased	Decreased
Systemic vascular resistance	Cardiac output
Blood pressure	Functional residual capacity
Peak airway pressure	Lung compliance
Ventilation-perfusion mismatch	Renal blood flow
Intracranial pressure	Glomerular filtration rate
	Splanchnic blood flow

and increased ventilation-perfusion mismatch. Application of positive end-expiratory pressure improves oxygenation in these patients.[210] Hypercapnia develops within 15 to 30 minutes of carbon dioxide insufflation with resultant hypercarbia, acidosis, tachycardia, dysrhythmias, and other deleterious hemodynamic and CNS effects.[211] Increase in mechanical ventilation can obviate these changes in most patients, and the majority of healthy patients tolerate the changes even though they are clinically significant. Extraperitoneal insufflation of carbon dioxide is associated with larger increases in arterial PCO_2 than in intraperitoneal insufflation.[212] Hemodynamic changes observed during initiation of pneumoperitoneum (Box 59.6) include increases in systemic vascular resistance and mean arterial pressure. These changes are caused by increased intraabdominal pressure compressing the aorta and increasing afterload.[213] Cardiac output has been observed to decrease with insufflation.[214,215] Variable changes in heart rate have been reported. Reflex bradycardia has been observed to occur with establishment of pneumoperitoneum probably related to peritoneal stretch and vagal stimulation.[216]

Robotic-Assisted Radical Prostatectomy

Robotic-assisted radical prostatectomy (RARP) has become the second most performed robotic-assisted surgical procedure worldwide.[217] Anesthetic concerns are primarily related to the use of pneumoperitoneum in the steep Trendelenburg position. For RARP the patient is placed in the dorsal lithotomy position, arms tucked at the side of the table, and drapes placed over the patient which limits the anesthesiologist's ability to access the patient. Pneumoperitoneum is initiated, and the patient is then placed in a 30- to 45-degree Trendelenburg position. With limited access to the patient after draping; intravascular lines, monitors, and patient protective devices need to be placed and secured beforehand. Once the robot is positioned over the patient with its arms attached (docked) to the ports; movement of the patient and/or cardiopulmonary resuscitative measures cannot be performed unless the robot is first undocked.[218] Patient movement during the surgery could result in visceral or vascular injury. Constant assessment of the degree of muscle relaxation intraoperatively is recommended. Because of the limited access and duration of the procedure, careful attention should also be given to pressure areas of the arms and legs to avoid ulnar neuropathy and lateral femoral cutaneous nerve injury.[214]

Physiologic changes resulting from SHDT position include hemodynamic effects such as decreased perfusion pressure of lower extremities, increased mean arterial pressure at the circle of Willis, increased central blood volume, decreased cardiac output, and a decreased perfusion of vital organs in a normovolemic patient. Increased myocardial oxygen consumption, ischemia, dysrhythmias, and decreased oxygen delivery are potential risks in patients with cardiac disease. Despite an observed twofold to threefold increase of right- and left-sided filling pressures in ASA I and II patients during RARP, Lestar and colleagues[219] observed no significant changes in cardiac performance. Respiratory effects of SHDT including decreased compliance, reduced vital capacity and functional residual capacity, 20% decrease in lung volumes, and ventilation-perfusion mismatch compound the effects of pneumoperitoneum. Pulmonary congestion and edema have been reported in susceptible patients. Facial, pharyngeal, and laryngeal edema may also occur with the SHDT position. Chemosis (conjunctival edema) is common in RARP but is usually self-limiting once the patient is taken out of the steep Trendelenburg position. If facial and/or conjunctival edema is noted at the end of the procedure, the anesthesiologist should have a high index of suspicion for the presence of laryngeal edema. A transient increase in serum creatinine secondary to pneumoperitoneum during robotic prostatectomy has been reported.[220] In the Trendelenburg position, patients with a history of reflux have an increased risk of regurgitation of gastric contents and aspiration.

Other significant effects of SHDT include increased intracranial pressure, increased intraocular pressure (IOP), venous air embolism, brachial plexopathy, arthralgias, compartment syndrome, and finger injuries. Perioperative assessment of the function of a patient with a ventriculoperitoneal shunt scheduled for any laparoscopic procedure is recommended.[221] Issues arising from increased intracranial pressure or consequences of a malfunctioning shunt with pneumoperitoneum in SHDT position need to be recognized. Kalmar and associates concluded patients overall clinically tolerated the influence of prolonged SHDT position with CO_2 pneumoperitoneum on cardiovascular, cerebrovascular (including cerebral perfusion pressure and oxygenation), and respiratory homeostasis during robotic prostatectomy.[222]

Significant increases in IOP have been reported in robotic prostatectomy with the steep Trendenburg position, but the clinical significance is unknown.[223] However, of concern are patients with primary open angle glaucoma who have decreased outflow through the trabecular network, which causes IOP. Two patients with severe glaucoma were advised against proceeding with a RARP in the steep Trendelenburg position and instead opted for open radical prostatectomies in the supine position.[224] However, another patient with severe glaucoma undergoing RARP was treated intraoperatively with acetazolamide and mannitol to manage the increase in IOP.[225] In addition, there are reports of at least six cases of postoperative visual loss secondary to ischemic optic neuropathy following radical prostatectomy: three open and three robot-assisted prostatectomies.[226] Limiting time in the steep Trendelenburg position and reducing the volume of intravenous fluids administered may decrease the risk of this devastating complication.[227]

With the exception of one study, the literature suggests that compared with retropubic radical prostatectomy, RARP is associated with a reduction in blood loss.[228] Mild to moderate pain is expected postoperatively, and low pain scores of 0 to 4 have been reported after retropubic radical prostatectomy and RARP using preemptive analgesia with ketorolac given intraoperatively combined with rescue opiate or nonopiate analgesia.[229] Most patients are discharged home the day after surgery.

Robotic-Assisted Radical Cystectomy With Diversion

The ensuing popularity of robotic-assisted urologic procedures over the past few decades also gave rise to the first robotic-assisted radical cystectomy (RARC) with extracorporeal or intracorporeal neobladder formation as first described in 2003.[230,231] Since 2003 the use of RARC has increased substantially in the United States and globally, but there is controversy regarding the safety, efficacy, and cost effectiveness of the robotic approach.[232] A meta-analysis of four randomized controlled trials comparing RARC with extracorporeal urinary diversion with open radical cystectomy concluded that blood loss and wound complications were significantly lower in the RARC group; however, operating time was significantly longer with use of the robot. However, there was no significant difference between RARC and open radical cystectomy in perioperative morbidity, length of stay, positive surgical margin, lymph node yield, and positive lymph node status.[233] In a multicenter, retrospective review comparing RARC with extracorporeal to intracorporeal urinary diversion, the 90-day overall complication rate was not significantly different, but the incidence of gastrointestinal and infectious complications was significantly lower in patients in the intracorporeal group.[234] The intracorporeal technique has several advantages in that the bowel stays inside the abdomen, no hypothermia or loss of fluids via osmosis occurs, and there is decreased bleeding, decreased need for ureteral dissection, and decreased traction on the bowel and ureters.[235] The implementation of ERAS protocols has been shown to reduce the length of stay of patients undergoing RARC with intracorporeal urinary diversion.[236,237] Although the robotic approach may minimize complications, oncologic outcome has not improved over the past three decades, and surgical technique is unlikely to improve survival outcomes.[238]

As in RARP, the anesthetic concerns of RARC include management of SHDT and pneumoperitoneum with the patient in the dorsal lithotomy position, along with limited access to the patient. Epidural analgesia is generally not necessary, because RARC patients have reduced postoperative pain and early mobilization is encouraged. Although the usual intraoperative concerns of preventing hypothermia, hypoxemia, and hypovolemia while avoiding overhydration are present, there is the additional goal of avoiding opioid-based analgesics and their effects on bowel recovery.[239] The implementation of ERAS protocols helps to achieve the goal of limiting the use of postoperative opioids. In one study performed at a medical center with extensive experience in urologic surgery, 100 patients who underwent RARC with urinary diversion experienced operative times ranging from 4 to 12.9 hours, depending on the type of urinary diversion performed, and with reported blood losses of up to 1400 mL.[237] As a consequence, because these surgeries may be lengthy with the possibility of substantial blood loss, adequate intravenous access along with insertion of an arterial pressure line is recommended. Arterial blood gases may be obtained at regular intervals to assess the presence of either respiratory and/or metabolic acidosis. With long insufflation times of CO_2, respiratory acidosis can occur and should be managed according to end-tidal carbon dioxide values in tandem with $PaCO_2$. In addition, metabolic acidosis may occur (secondary to fluid restrictions) before and during the procedure and hypothermia, as a result of heat loss due to lengthy operative times or the insufflation of cold CO_2 gas.[240]

LAPAROSCOPIC NEPHRECTOMY

Laparoscopic nephrectomy is commonly used for radical and living donor nephrectomy. For radical nephrectomy, studies suggest that there are no significant differences in oncologic outcomes between open and laparoscopic procedures, although the laparoscopic technique, as discussed earlier, has the advantages of decreased morbidity, blood loss, postoperative analgesic requirements, and hospital length of stay.[241,242] In a large retrospective study of 23,753 patients from 2003 to 2015 comparing perioperative outcomes of robotic-assisted to laparoscopic radical nephrectomies for patients with renal masses, there were no differences in the rates of major complications or blood transfusions. However, the use of robotic-assisted nephrectomy increased over the course of the study, from 1.5% to 27% of cases by 2015; and was associated with prolonged operating times and higher hospital costs when compared with laparoscopic surgery.[243]

Two laparoscopic approaches are commonly used for nephrectomies: transperitoneal or retroperitoneal. The primary advantage of the transperitoneal laparoscopic approach is the greater working space offered for large renal tumors (≥10 cm),[244] whereas the retroperitoneal approach avoids transabdominal fatty tissue and allows for limited dissection of the kidney with direct access to the renal hilium.[245] The lateral or semilateral decubitis position with some degree of flexion, along with use of a cushioned beanbag, pillows, and axillary roll, is usually used for these procedures. Besides the usual possible complications from laparoscopic surgery (e.g., positioning injuries, subcutaneous emphysema, and CO_2 emboli), the occurrence of rhabdomyolysis is a concern after laparoscopic nephrectomy. Risk factors include prolonged surgical time, high body mass index, volume depletion, and use of the lateral decubitis position. Limiting the amount of flexion has been recommended to decrease the incidence of this complication.[246] Anesthetic considerations, other than the previously discussed physiologic effects of pneumoperitoneum, include adequate intravenous access, whereas insertion of an arterial line, CVP catheter, and/or transesophageal echocardiography may be reserved for selected high-risk patients.

Robotic-Assisted Partial Nephrectomy

Partial nephrectomy is the standard for the treatment of small renal masses (<4 cm) for the reasons previously discussed (see Radical Nephrectomy).[247] Surgical excision of these tumors has progressed from open radical nephrectomy to laparoscopic partial nephrectomy (LPN) and robotic partial nephrectomy (RPN). RPN has become the preferred technique because the learning curve for RPN is estimated to be 25 cases when compared with more than 200 cases for LPN.[248] Both LPN and RPN require the temporary clamping of the renal hilum to improve surgical visibility and reduce blood loss; however, to prevent AKI the warm ischemia time related to clamping should not exceed 30 minutes.[249,250] In a meta-analysis of 23 studies including 2240 patients, RPN when compared with LPN was found to have a lower conversion rate to open or radical surgery, a better postoperative estimated GFR, shorter warm ischemia time, lower estimated blood loss, and shorter length of hospital stay.[251,252]

Anesthetic concerns for RPN, as in laparoscopic nephrectomy, involve proper positioning and the use of pneumoperitoneum. To allow for unhindered robotic arm movement, the patient is placed in the lateral decubitis position, brought toward the edge of the operating table, and flexed approximately 15 degrees at the kidney.[253] Of concern with partial nephrectomy, there is a decrease in the number of functioning nephrons causing hyperfiltration of the remaining glomeruli. This increase in load to the remaining glomeruli leads to an increase in intraglomerular pressure causing injury to the kidneys in the short and long term. A retrospective study of AKI after partial nephrectomy found that the higher the intraoperative fluid administration, the greater the drop in the GFR postoperatively. RPN was found to be more tolerant of fluid administration than open or LPN. The authors postulated that the precision of the robot allows minimal handling of the remainder of the renal tissue and this may confer protection. Therefore judicious fluid administration is recommended during partial nephrectomy.[254]

Urogenital Pain Syndromes and Treatment

Pain syndromes of the urogenital system can be divided into those occurring in the immediate postoperative period, acute or chronic nonmalignant pain, and cancer-related pain. Treatment includes medications, neuraxial and regional nerve blocks, and neuromodulation or surgery. Choice of modality in the perioperative period must balance analgesia with side effect profile, particularly as common urologic surgeries become less invasive and focus shifts to fast-track surgeries and ERAS protocols.

POSTOPERATIVE PAIN AND TREATMENT

Inflammatory Pain

Pain after urogenital surgery is similar to other postoperative pain, occurring as a direct result of surgical manipulation and trauma. Acute pain is most commonly inflammatory and related to incision, retraction, and suturing. Mediators of inflammation are local and systemic, including bradykinins, serotonin, prostaglandins, histamine, leukotrienes, and cytokines.[255] Pain is worst in the first few days following surgery and generally improves rapidly with tissue healing.

Neuropathic Pain

Neuropathic pain may also exist postoperatively, mediated via neurogenic inflammation[256] or due to temporary or sustained pressure, stretch, or direct ligation of nerves. This pain can be immediate or develop over weeks to months as severed nerve endings regrow or are trapped in scar tissue and form neuromas. Pain is described as burning, pins-and-needles, electric, and radiating in a dermatomal or peripheral nerve distribution.

Postoperative Urinary Retention

Particularly with regard to urologic surgery, postoperative urinary retention (POUR) should be considered as a source of postoperative pain. Evaluation may be difficult due to neuraxial or regional block, residual effects of general anesthesia, or the diffuse nature of visceral pain. Risk factors include male gender; duration of surgery; amount of intravenous fluid given; concurrent neurologic disease; perineal surgery; use of anticholinergics, β-blockers, or adrenergic agents; and neuraxial local anesthetic or opioids.[257] In addition, high clinical suspicion is merited if pain is accompanied by signs of disparate autonomic changes, such as bradycardia and hypotension. Left untreated, POUR can result in bladder distension and adverse effects on long-term urodynamics. Prompt diagnosis, either clinically or via ultrasound, and bladder catheterization if indicated (postvoid residual >600 mL) can prevent sequelae.

Enhanced Recovery After Surgery

Urologic procedures such as radical cystectomy or radical prostatectomy were traditionally large blood-loss procedures with prolonged recoveries and significant associated postoperative pain. As a result, most pain management algorithms included neuraxial and regional blocks and minimized use of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) to decrease bleeding risks. Indeed, various studies have demonstrated the successful use of epidural anesthesia[259] or rectal sheath catheters[260] in open radical cystectomy. However, with a move toward laparoscopic and robotic-assisted techniques, these procedures have become less invasive and the focus has shifted to early mobilization, recovery, and hospital discharge. These goals are often packaged as part of a perioperative ERAS protocol. From a pain management standpoint, the primary goal of management is use of multimodal analgesia to minimize opioid use and side effects, primarily ileus. Prior to ERAS implementation, postoperative ileus, or lack of gastrointestinal motility, was the most common cause for prolonged hospitalization and readmission, occurring in 12% to 25% of patients after radical cystectomy.[261]

To promote early mobilization, most protocols currently advocate the use of scheduled intravenous or orally administered acetaminophen or paracetamol and of NSAIDs for breakthrough pain, as well as the possible inclusion of gabapentinoids[262] and the use of single-shot neuraxial or regional techniques in place of epidural catheters.[263]

CHRONIC POSTSURGICAL PAIN

In most cases, postoperative pain resolves quickly, over days to weeks, and can be managed with oral opioid or nonopioid analgesics; however, for some patients, gastrointestinal, respiratory, or cognitive side effects may prohibit their effective use. Furthermore, a subset of patients develop chronic postsurgical pain (CPSP), defined by the International Association for the Study of Pain as postoperative pain lasting more than 2 months and not explained by preexisting pain or ongoing trauma.[264] Risk factors for CPSP are well described across many types of surgery and the incidence can be high, with 20% to 50% of patients reporting persistent chronic pain of any type and 2% to 10% reporting severe disabling pain that ranks from 5 to 10 on the pain intensity numeric rating scale.[265] The biggest predictor of CPSP is poorly controlled acute postoperative pain,[266] which has led to a focus on the immediate perioperative period.

Perioperative Management Considerations

Specific to renal compromise, meperidine and morphine should be avoided due to accumulation of renal-excreted metabolites including normeperidine and morphine-3-glucuronide, which lower the seizure threshold, and morphine-6-glucuronide, which maintains activity at the μ-opioid receptor and can accumulate to toxic levels if insufficient renal clearance. Opioids, particularly via the neuraxial route, can result in urinary retention. Gabapentinoids, if used, are renally excreted and must be dose adjusted based on creatinine clearance. The antiprostaglandin effect of NSAIDs can decrease renal blood flow or increase bleeding risk in susceptible patients.

ACUTE OR CHRONIC NONMALIGNANT PAIN

Benign Renal Masses

Flank pain is a common symptom in adults with angiomyolipomas, which consist of abnormal growth of blood vessels, smooth muscle, and fat. This benign neoplasm can create a mass effect that affects renal function, and acute worsening of pain should raise suspicion for rupture and hematoma formation. Angiomyolipomas can be associated with tuberous sclerosis but are more commonly found in otherwise healthy individuals. Treatment involves management of symptoms with acetaminophen and antineuropathic agents. Care should be taken with NSAID use, because renal function may be compromised.

Polycystic Kidney Disease

Polycystic kidney disease is most often inherited in an autosomal dominant manner and can lead to massive enlargement of the kidneys with compromised renal function. Renal pain is caused by distention of the cysts and stretching of Gerota fascia. Hemorrhage into the cysts, rupture of the cysts, or infection can produce acute exacerbation of pain. Percutaneous drainage of renal cysts may relieve these symptoms. Opioids can be appropriate in the acute phase.

NEPHROLITHIASIS

Obstruction of the urinary tract causes severe, spasmodic pain in the flank. Pain from the upper third of the ureter may be referred to the lower abdomen and back, pain from the middle third to the iliac fossa, and pain from the lower third to the suprapubic and groin area. Minimal fluid intake and a high concentration of stone-forming salts can predispose to nephrolithiasis. Renal colic, hematuria, and radioopaque stones (70%-75% of calculi) on radiography or noncontrast CT confirms the diagnosis.[267] Opioids and NSAIDs are appropriate for severe, acute symptoms. Despite widespread use, intravenous hydration has not demonstrated benefit.

INFECTIOUS RENAL DISEASE

Infectious renal diseases producing flank pain include pyelonephritis and perinephric abscess. Fever is an important associated finding that suggests the presence of infection. Because the kidneys are retroperitoneal organs, peritoneal signs are generally absent. Differential diagnosis must include inflammatory or infectious disease of surrounding organs, including lower lobe pneumonia, pancreatitis, appendicitis, and cholecystitis. Oral or parenteral opioids are usually effective for pain control in the acute setting. Systemic antibiotics are curative in most cases, although surgical intervention may be warranted and a focal nidus for infection (stone, urethral reflux, recurrent urinary tract infection) should be pursued.

INTERSTITIAL CYSTITIS

Interstitial cystitis is a chronic pain condition marked by suprapubic pain related to bladder filling and symptoms of increased frequency and urgency in the absence of infection or malignancy.[268] Pathologic features of interstitial cystitis that may be evident but are not necessary to make the diagnosis include Hunner ulcers (discrete, bleeding areas on the bladder wall) and glomerulations (petechial bleeding after distension). The proposed pathophysiology is thought to be a deficient glycosaminoglycan layer that allows increased permeability of the bladder wall, resulting in inflammation and pain. Options for pain control include pentosan polysulfate (intended to repair the glycosaminoglycan layer), antineuropathics, antihistamines, dimethyl sulfoxide instillation, and sacral nerve stimulators.

NEURALGIAS

Pseudorenal pain syndromes can be caused by entrapment of nerves colocalized with the urinary system in the lower abdomen and groin. Entrapment can occur as the result of trauma or surgical injury or can be idiopathic. Neuralgia of the genitofemoral nerve is common after hernia surgery given its close proximity and variable relation to the spermatic cord. Pain radiates to the inguinal ligament via the femoral branch and to the testicle via the genital branch. Injury to the iliohypogastric or ilioinguinal nerves can occur with lower abdominal incisions or trocar placement for laparoscopy, resulting in neuralgia radiating to the lower abdomen and groin. Pudendal neuralgia can occur with damage to the pudendal nerve along its intrapelvic or extrapelvic course and results in pain of the external genitalia and perineum. Pain sensation is generally neuropathic in these conditions, and dermatomal testing will often reveal sensory deficits. Nerve blocks can be performed under ultrasound guidance[269] to help establish the diagnosis, differentiate from urogenital pain, and for therapeutic benefit. Antineuropathic agents can also be of help should nerve injury be confirmed.

CHRONIC PROSTATITIS

Acute prostatitis is usually caused by a bacterial infection and responds to antibiotic therapy. Chronic prostatitis is often referred to as chronic pelvic pain syndrome or chronic abacterial prostatitis to reflect that there is little certainty that inflammation or infection of the prostate is responsible for symptoms.[270] Symptoms include genital/pelvic pain and sexual dysfunction, often accompanied by lower urinary tract symptoms. Moderate improvement has been noted with antibiotics, α-blockers, antiandrogens, NSAIDS, and pelvic floor physiotherapy.

PRIAPISM

Priapism is a prolonged erection more than 4 hours in duration and can be ischemic (venoocclusive) or nonischemic (arterial). The former represents an acute emergency, and prompt therapy should be instituted to control pain and prevent subsequent impotence from fibrosis of the corpora cavernosa. Treatment consists of a penile dorsal nerve block performed at the pubic symphysis with needle entry into the subpubic space, performed with local anesthetic without epinephrine, after which aspiration of blood or intercavernosal phenylephrine can be performed.[271] Nonischemic priapism is most commonly posttraumatic and results from creation of an arteriolar-sinusoidal fistula. This type of priapism is typically not as painful and responds to conservative management. Sickle cell priapism is treated with hydration, alkalinization, and blood transfusion to increase hemoglobin to more than 10 mg/dL.

CHRONIC PELVIC PAIN IN WOMEN

Chronic dysmenorrhea can be addressed with ovulation suppression or use of NSAIDs, which decrease uterine lining thickness and cramping via an antiprostaglandin effect.[272] Chronic pelvic pain may also be due to endometriosis, pelvic venous congestion, adhesions, or pelvic inflammatory disease—each of which is most responsive to correction of the underlying disorder for relief of pain. Vulvodynia is a chronic pain condition associated with sexual inactivity or dysfunction due to vulvar pain. Some success with tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs), sitz baths, local estrogen creams, and pudendal nerve blocks has been reported. Vaginismus is associated with increased tone of the muscles of the pelvic floor (pubococcygeus and levator ani) producing spasms and painful sexual dysfunction. Dyspareunia is defined as recurrent and persistent genital pain before or after intercourse not solely explained by infection, trauma, lubrication, or vaginismus. Psychological factors often play a major role and a thorough history should be obtained because there is often a concomitant history of sexual abuse. Treatment involves pelvic floor physiotherapy and desensitization techniques.

TESTICULAR PAIN

Testicular pain can be the result of trauma, torsion, or infection. Trauma or torsion necessitate immediate restoration of blood flow and emergent surgical exploration is the treatment of choice. Orchitis or epididymitis should be suspected based on a thorough history and if signs of localized or systemic infection accompany pain. Tumors of the testis are most often malignant; however, extratesticular tumors within the scrotum are usually benign. Testicular tumors usually present as a painless testicular mass. Pain is a late sign and is usually described as a dull ache or heaviness due to mass effect.

MEDICATIONS

As with most chronic pain, medication use and risk and benefit must be judiciously weighed. Low-risk, high-yield medications such as topical agents (lidocaine, capsaicin), acetaminophen, and NSAIDs are usually first line treatments, particularly if pain is episodic or infrequent. Antineuropathic agents (gabapentinoids, selective norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors, TCAs) can be useful for prophylaxis, and certain secondary effects can be useful for particular pain conditions (e.g., the anticholinergic effect of a TCA for bladder spasm). Opioids are usually indicated only for acute flares, such as passing of an obstructing stone, and there is little evidence to validate their long-term use.

NERVE BLOCKS AND NEUROMODULATION

When possible, nerves involved with transmission of pain should be identified and treated individually. Treatment can include diagnostic nerve blocks, selective nerve root blocks, therapeutic nerve blocks, pulsed radiofrequency neuromodulation of peripheral nerves, dorsal root ganglia stimulation, cryoablation, radiofrequency ablation, chemoneurolysis, and implantable peripheral field stimulation.[273] Identifying the nerve that is most likely to be injured is the first step in pursuing an interventional approach. Ultrasound guidance offers several advantages that make it highly suited for diagnosing and treating urogenital nerve pain. The machines are portable, there is no radiation exposure, and many of the commonly affected nerves are located superficially. An initial block of the affected nerve using a low volume of local anesthetic can be performed with confirmation of sensory block in the expected distribution. If this block relieves the patient's usual pain, then neuralgia in this distribution is the likely diagnosis.[269] Urogenital pain often occurs between the abdomen and thigh, and the nerves supplying the skin and structures in this area are referred to as "border nerves"—the ilioinguinal, iliohypogastric, genitofemoral, and lateral femoral cutaneous nerves arising from the T12-L3 anterior rami as they form the upper lumbar plexus—as well as the pudendal nerve arising from S2-4.

CANCER-RELATED PAIN

Pediatric Tumors

Wilms tumor (nephroblastoma) generally occurs unilaterally and is painless on initial presentation. It may be associated with congenital malformations such as Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome. Treatment consists of surgical resection most often supplemented by chemotherapy because the tumor is quite responsive to this modality. Perioperative pain may be addressed with epidural anesthesia, acetaminophen, and opioids. Chemotherapy-induced neuropathy, should it occur, can best be treated with antineuropathic agents.

Renal Cell Carcinoma

Renal cell carcinoma is described as having a classic triad of hematuria, flank pain, and renal mass; however, pain is often a late presentation and may indicate metastatic disease. In cases of metastasis, prognosis is often poor and pain widespread. Early consideration of an intrathecal catheter for continuous delivery of opioids, local anesthetic, or ziconitide can improve patient quality of life. Flank pain may be due to stretching of Gerota fascia, and metastasis is primarily local along the renal vein and inferior vena cava or into the intercostal nerves, which produces segmental neuralgia. In these cases, intercostal nerve blocks and neurolysis can be of use and accomplished under fluoroscopic or ultrasound guidance, most commonly with alcohol or phenol.

Bladder Cancer

The most common urothelial tumor is transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. Painless hematuria is the most common manifestation, although patients may complain of bladder irritability if there is involvement of the muscular layers. Surgical treatment includes fulguration, transurethral resection, or cystectomy. Pain control is best accomplished with NSAIDs, acetaminophen, opioids, and neuromodulatory agents.

Prostate Cancer

Adenocarcinoma of the prostate is the most common cancer in men and is usually painless, discovered incidentally through routine physical examination. Epidural analgesia can be of use for acute pain control if brachytherapy with seeding is part of treatment. Lumbar or sacral pain with prostatic cancer may be a sign of metastatic disease to bone, which may respond to palliative radiation.

Uterine and Cervical Cancer

Uterine cancer usually presents as irregular bleeding and is associated with increasing age, obesity, nonchildbearing, and hormone therapy. Pain is commonly a late finding, owing to mass effect or invasion into the myometrium. Cervical cancer is generally discovered early through routine vaginal Pap testing, and its incidence has decreased with use of childhood vaccination for specific human papillomavirus strains. However, when present, dyspareunia is a common finding.

Neurolysis

Sympathetic innervation of the uterus and cervix is via the inferior hypogastric plexus, lying within the presacral tissues medial to the foramina sacralia on either side of the rectum, ventral to the S2, S3, and S4 spinal segments. The plexus can be accessed via a transsacral approach,[274] and neurolysis can be performed, although particular care is warranted given close proximity to motor nerve roots.

The pelvic viscera in men (the urogenital organs, distal colon, and rectum) are supplied by afferent fibers from the distal lumbar sympathetic chain via the superior hypogastric plexus, a retroperitoneal structure situated along the anterior surface of the L5 and S1 vertebrae. Visceral innervation follows these fibers, and interruption of these pathways can be achieved with a superior hypogastric plexus block using fluoroscopic or CT guidance and instillation of phenol or ethanol for neurolysis.[275]

The ganglion impar is another promising target for neurolysis, supplying mixed somatic, autonomic, and visceral fibers to the distal urethra, vulva, perineum, and distal third of the vagina. It can be blocked along the anterior surface of the sacrococcygeal junction, most commonly under fluoroscopic guidance.

Alternatively, peripheral nerve ablation can be performed using a variety of techniques. Ablation should not be performed on any nerves with a significant motor component because weakness will occur. Fortunately, the “border nerves” are primarily sensory; however, neurolysis often creates an area of desensitized skin, which can be bothersome for certain patients and may progress to anesthesia dolorosa, a feared complication manifested by pain in the area despite numbness to stimulation. Nonetheless, these approaches may be of significant benefit in appropriate cases and after full discussion of risks and benefits with the patient. Ablation may be performed with injection of a chemical neurolytic, such as phenol or dehydrated alcohol. Radiofrequency ablation creates a thermal lesion at 80°C along the active needle tip. Cryoablation creates a supercooled −70°C “ice ball” around the neural sheath, which leads to decreased transmission via wallerian degeneration. Case reports and series have shown promising results with decreased pain and analgesic requirements.

Intrathecal Medications

If intractable pain persists despite optimized oral or intravenous therapy, a single shot or tunneled intrathecal catheter trial can be performed and an implantable drug delivery system should be considered. Continuous intrathecal infusions minimize fluctuation of drug levels in cerebrospinal fluid and allow for significant analgesia and use of spinal adjuncts (local anesthetic, ziconitide) in addition to opioids with significantly lessened dose-limiting side effects.

In summary, perioperative pain syndromes of the urogenital system and those related to pain from malignant or nonmalignant disease require prompt attention, a comprehensive assessment, and consideration of multimodal early intervention including treatment with nonopioid or opioid medications, neuraxial and regional nerve blocks, and neuromodulation or surgery when appropriate.[276–278]

Acknowledgment

The authors, editors, and publisher thank Drs. Vijeyandra Sudheendra and Jerome O’Hara for their contribution to the prior edition of this chapter. It has served as a foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Palmer DA, Moinzadeh A. Surgical, radiographic and endoscopic anatomy of the retroperitoneum, kidneys, and ureters. In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Partin AW, Peters CA, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. 11th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016:765–783.

2. Kavoussi PK. Surgical, radiographic and endoscopic anatomy of the male reproductive system. In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Novick AC, Partin AW, Peters CA, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. 11th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2016:498–515.
3. Hemmings HC. Anesthesia, adjuvant drugs and the kidney. In: Malhotra V, ed. *Anesthesia for Renal and Genitourinary Surgery*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1996:18.
4. Kassirer JP. *N Engl J Med*. 1971;285:385.
5. Stevens LA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:2473.
6. Landry DW, Bazari H. Approach to the patient with renal disease. In: Goldman L, Schafer AI, eds. *Goldman-Cecil Textbook of Medicine*. 25th ed. New York: Elsevier; 2016:728–736.
7. Shlipak MG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369:2457.
8. Mårtensson J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:843.
9. Duddalwar VA, Jadvar H, Palmer SL, Boswell WD. Diagnostic kidney imaging. In: Skorecki K, Chertow GM, Marsden PA, Yu AS, Taal MW, eds. *Brenner and Rector's the Kidney*. 10th ed. Philadephia: Elsevier; 2016:846–914.
10. Elkington JR, et al. *Am J Med*. 1960;29:554.
11. Stafford-Smith M, Sandler A, Privratsky JR, Kuhn C. The renal system and anesthesia for urologic surgery. In: Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, et al., eds. *Clinical Anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott; 2017:1400–1440.
12. Mann JF. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 1999;14:29.
13. Winearls CG. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 1998;13:3.
14. Prescot LF. *Br J Anaesth*. 1972;44:246.
15. Davies G, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1996;31:410.
16. Mazoit JX, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1990;48:613.
17. Schochet RB, Murray GB. *J Intensive Care Med*. 1988;3:246.
18. Davis PJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:268.
19. Chauvin M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:53.
20. Murphy EJ, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2005;33:311.
21. Koncicki HM, et al. *Semin Dial*. 2015;28:384.
22. Mazze RI. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;56:275.
23. Mazze RI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40:536.
24. Mazze RI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:161.
25. Eger EI. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:983.
26. Jones RM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:482.
27. Weiskopf RB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:570.
28. Hanaki C, et al. *Hiroshima J Med Sci*. 1987;36:61.
29. Kobayashe Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:A348.
30. Holaday DA, Smith FR. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:100.
31. Kobayashi S, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2003;15(1):33.
32. Priano LL. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:357.
33. Merin RG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:568.
34. Cook TL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43:70.
35. Ghoneim MM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;45:635.
36. Burch PG, Stanski DR. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1982;32:212.
37. Hudson RJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:215.
38. Masuda A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:144.
39. Thomas JL, Holmes JH. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49:323.
40. Ryan DW. *Br J Anaesth*. 1977;49:945.
41. Gronert GA, Theye RA. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43:89.
42. Stanski DR, Watkins WD. *Drugs Disposition in Anesthesia*. Orlando, FL: Grune & Stratton; 1982.
43. McLeod K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:341.
44. Hughes R, Chapple DJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:31.
45. Fisher DM. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:901.
46. Lynam DP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:227.
47. Gramstad L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:1149.
48. Cook DR, et al. *J Anaesth*. 1992;69:580.
49. Phillips BJ, Hunter JM. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:492.
50. Szenohradsky J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:899.
51. Cronnelly R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51:222.
52. Cronnelly R, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1980;28:78.
53. Morris RB, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:1311.
54. Panhuizen IF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114:777.
55. Cammu G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:382.
56. Beermann B, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1976;19:531.
57. Smith DE, et al. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1979;7:265.
58. Kornhauser DM, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1978;23:165.
59. Wiest D. Esmolol. *Clin Pharmacokinet* . 1995;28:190.
60. Henry PD. *Am J Cardiol*. 1980;46:1047.
61. Neurath GB, Dunger M. *Arzneimittelforschung*. 1977;27:416.
62. Smith RP. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med*. 1973;142:1041.
63. Talseth T. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1976;10:395.
64. Talseth T. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1976;10:311.
65. Luke DR, et al. *Ther Drug Monit*. 1992;14:203.
66. Sharfuddin AA, Weisbord SD, Palevsky PM. Acute kidney injury. In: Skorecki K, Chertow GM, Marsden PA, Yu AS, Taal MW, eds. *Brenner and Rector's the Kidney*. 10th ed. Philadephia: Elsevier; 2016:958–1011.
67. Josephs SA, Thakar CV. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;47:89.
68. Thakar CV, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2005;16:162.
69. Thakar CV, et al. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrolo*. 2007;2:426.
70. Barratt J, et al. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2000;20:163.
71. Yalavarthy R, et al. *Hemodial Int*. 2007;11(suppl 3):S7.
72. Kheterpal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:892.
73. Gordon AC, et al. *Br J Surg*. 1994;81:836.
74. Hersey P, Poullis M. *Interact Cardiovasc Thoracic Surg*. 2008;7:906.
75. Freidrich JO, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2005;142(7):510.
76. Nigwekar SU, et al. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2009;4(2):261.
77. Gillies MA, et al. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:449.
78. Aaron L, et al. *Urol Clin N Am*. 2016;43:279.
79. Azar I. Transurethral resection of prostate. In: Malhotra V, ed. *Anesthesia for Renal and Genitourinary Surgery*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1996:93.
80. Roehrborn CG. Benign prostatic hyperplasia: etiology, pathophysiology, epidemiology, and natural history. In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Partin AW, Peters CA, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. 11th ed. Philadelaphia: Elsevier; 2016:2425–2462.
81. Lepor H, et al. *Rev Urol*. 2011;13:20.
82. Welliver C, McVary KT. Prostatic hyperplasia. In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Partin AW, Peters CA, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. 11th ed. Philadelaphia: Elsevier; 2016:2504–2534.
83. Gilling P, et al. *BJU Int*. 2015;117:923.
84. McConnell JD, et al. Rockville: Agency for Health Care Policy and Research; 1994.
85. Michalak J, et al. *Am J Clin Urol*. 2015;3:36.
86. Hoffman RM, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;(Issue 9):CD004135. Art. No.
87. Bucuras V, Barden R, et al. *Ther Adv Urol*. 2011;3:257.
88. Weeliver C, McVary KT. Minimally invasive and endoscopic management of benign prostatic hyperplasia. In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Partin AW, Peters CA, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. 11th ed. Philadelaphia: Elsevier; 2016:2504–2534.
89. Hatch PD. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1987;15:203.
90. Jensen V. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38. 90–6.
91. Madsen PO, Madsen RE. *Invest Urol*. 1965;3:122.
92. Marx GF, Orkin LR. *Anesthesiology*. 1962;23:802.
93. Issa MM, et al. *Urology*. 2004;64:298.
94. Azar I. Transurethral prostatectomy syndrome and other complications of urological procedures. In: McLeskey CH, ed. *Geriatric Anesthesia*. 1st ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1997:595–607.
95. Mebust WK, et al. *J Urol*. 1989;141. 243.
96. Edwards ND, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:368.
97. Aasheim GM. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1973;20:274.
98. Abrams PH, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1982;37:71.
99. Mackenzie AR. *Scott Med J*. 1990;35:14.
100. Madsen RE, Madsen PO. *Anesth Analg*. 1967;46:330.
101. McGowan SW, Smith GFN. *Anaesthesia*. 1980;35:847.
102. Nielsen KK, et al. *Int Urol Nephrol*. 1987;19. 287.
103. Fraser I, et al. *Br J Urol*. 1984;56:399.
104. Slade N, et al. *Br J Urol*. 1964;36:399.
105. Gehring H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1999;43:458.
106. Malhotra V. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2000;18:883.
107. Melchior J, et al. *J Urol*. 1974;112:634.
108. Cullen DJ. *Ann Surg*. 1994;220:3.
109. Hawary A, et al. *J Endourol*. 2009;23:2013.
110. Zepnick H, et al. *(Ger) Akuelle Urol*. 2009;39:369.
111. Reich O, et al. *J Urol*. 2008;180:246.
112. Hahn RG. *Br J Urol*. 1997;79:669.
113. Chung FF, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36:382.
114. Rao PN. *Br J Urol*. 1987;60:93.
115. Hahn RG. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1998;23:115.
116. Gravenstein D. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:438.
117. Hahn RG. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35:557.
118. Harrison RH, et al. *J Urol*. 1956;75:95.
119. Hahn RG. *Br J Urol*. 1989;64:500.
120. Ceccarelli FE, Mantell LK. *J Urol*. 1961;85:75.
121. Sohn MH, et al. *Br J Urol*. 1993;72:605.
122. Hahn RG. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1992;9:1.

123. Osborn DE, et al. *Br Med J*. 1980;281:1549.
124. Henderson DJ, Middleton RG. *Urology*. 1980;15:267.
125. Hahn RG, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:214.
126. Hahn RG, Essen P. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1994;38:550.
127. Roesch RP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:577.
128. Hoekstra PT, et al. *J Urol*. 1983;130:704.
129. Holtgrewe HL, Valk WL. *J Urol*. 1962;87:450.
130. Herkommer K, et al. *J Urol*. 2012;187:1566.
131. Stafford-Smith M, Sandler A, Privratsky JR, Kuhn C. The renal system and anesthesia for urologic surgery. In: Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, et al., eds. *Clinical anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott; 2017:1400–1440.
132. Allen TD. *J Urol*. 1973;110:433.
133. Heathcote PS, Dyer PM. *Br J Urol*. 1986;58:669.
134. Gravenstein D. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:438.
135. Malhotra V. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2000;18:883.
136. Issa MM. *J Endourol*. 2008;22(8):1587.
137. Delongchamps NB, et al. *Can J Urol*. 2011;18:6007.
138. Hanson RA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:475.
139. Ruszat R, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2007;51:1031.
140. Elzayat EA, et al. *Urology*. 2005;66(suppl 5A):108.
141. Kelly DC, Das A. *Can J Urol*. 2012;19:6131.
142. Gupta N. *BJU Int*. 2006;97:85.
143. Kuntz RM, et al. *J Urol*. 2004;172:1012.
144. Montorsi F, et al. *J Urol*. 2004;172:1926.
145. Tan A, et al. *J Urol*. 2003;170:1270.
146. Muir G, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2008;7(suppl):370.
147. Sandhu JS, et al. *J Endourol*. 2005;19:1196.
148. Chung DE, et al. *J Urol*. 2011;186:977.
149. Lee DJ, et al. *Urology*. 2016;91:167.
150. Sandhu JS, et al. *J Urol*. 2004;64:1155.
151. Djavan B, et al. *Curr Opin Urol*. 2012;22(1):16. Review.
152. Gilling P, et al. *J Urol*. 2017;197:1565.
153. Scales CD, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2012;62:160.
154. Assimos D, et al. *J Urol*. 2016;196:1161.
155. Matlaga BR, Krambeck AE, Lingeman JE. Surgical management of upper urinary tract calculi. In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Partin AW, Peters CA, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. 11th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016:1260–1290.
156. Cybulski PA, et al. *Urol Clin North Am*. 2004;31:43.
157. Park HK, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2004;45:670.
158. Rosette J, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2008;54:1262.
159. Oberlin DT, et al. *J Urol*. 2015;193:880.
160. Bierkens AF, et al. *J Urol*. 1992;148:1052.
161. Lucas SD, Zheng G, Gravenstein D. Extracorporeal shock wave therapy and percutaneous nephrolithotripsy. In: Gainsburg DM, Bryson EO, Frost EAM, eds. *Anesthesia for Urologic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2014:75–91.
162. Zanetti G, et al. *J Endourol*. 1999;13:409.
163. Carlson CA, Gravenstein JS, Gravenstein N. Ventricular tachycardia during extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy for renal stone disease. In: Gravenstein JS, Peter K, eds. *Renal Stone Disease*. Boston: Butterworth; 1986:119. Technical and Clinical Aspects.
164. Walts LF, Atlee JL. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:521.
165. Malhotra V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:85.
166. Abbott MA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1985;40:1065.
167. Monk TG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:1023.
168. Monk TG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:616.
169. Gissen D, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1988;3:40.
170. Coloma M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:92.
171. Basar H, et al. *J Endourol*. 2003;17:3.
172. Richardson MG, Dooley JW. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1214.
173. Coleman SA, Davies JB. *Pain*. 1993;52:372.
174. Tailly GG, et al. *J Endourol*. 2001;15:465.
175. Weber W, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:S251.
176. Cooper D, et al. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1988;11:1607.
177. Vassolas G, et al. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1993;16:1245.
178. Chung MK, et al. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1999;22:738.
179. Belibi FA, Edelstein CL. *Clin Med Rev Oncol*. 2010;2:4.
180. Shalev M, et al. *J Urol*. 1995;152:1415.
181. Uzzo R, Novick A. *J Urol*. 2001;166:6.
182. Ghavamian R, Zincke H. *Curr Urol Rep*. 2001;2:34.
183. Nguyen C, et al. *Urol Clin N Am*. 2008;35:645.
184. O'Hara JF, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1999;13:69.
185. Shah N. Radical cystectomy, radical nephrectomy and retroperitoneal lymph node dissection. In: Malhotra V, ed. *Anesthesia for Renal and Genitourinary Surgery*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1996:197.
186. Siegel RL, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2018;68:7.
187. Witjes JA, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2017;71:462.
188. Jefferies ER, et al. *BJU Int*. 2018.
189. Schiffmann J, et al. *Eur J Surg Oncol*. 2014;40:1738.
190. Karl A, et al. *J Urol*. 2014;191:335.
191. Lee CT, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2014;66:265.
192. Berrigan MJ, Sherman ML. Open urologic procedures: radical cystectomy with diversion, radical prostatectomy, and radical nephrectomy anesthetic considerations. In: Gainsburg DM, Bryson EO, Frost EAM, eds. *Anesthesia for Urologic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2014:197–214.
193. Daneshmand S, et al. *J Urol*. 2014;192:50.
194. Monk TG. Cancer of the prostate and radical prostatectomy. In: Malhotra V, ed. *Anesthesia for Renal and Genitourinary Surgery*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1996:177.
195. Catalona WJ. *Cancer*. 1995;75:1903.
196. Albin MS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:151.
197. Malhotra V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(3A):973.
198. Malhotra V, Stout R. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1994;38(Nov suppl):76.
199. Shir Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:49.
200. Heller AR, et al. *Anaesthetist*. 2000;49:949.
201. Modig J, Karlstrom G. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1987;4:345.
202. Rodgers A, et al. *BMJ*. 2000;321:1493.
203. Gottschalk A, et al. *JAMA*. 1998;279:1076.
204. Worwag E, Chodak GW. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:62.
205. Kirsh EJ, et al. *Urology*. 1998;56:101.
206. Hara I, et al. *J Urol*. 2003;169:2045.
207. Wright JD. *JAMA*. 2017;318:1545.
208. Maerz DA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118:492.
209. Vasdev N, et al. *Rev Urol*. 2014;16:1.
210. Meininger D, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:778.
211. Meininger D, et al. *World J Surg*. 2002;26:1423.
212. Meininger D, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2004;18:829.
213. O'Malley C, Cunningham AJ. *Anesthesiol Clin N Am*. 2001;1:1.
214. Danic MJ, et al. *J Robotic Surg*. 2007;1:119.
215. Falabella A, et al. *Int J Med Robotics Comput Assist Surg*. 2007;3:312.
216. Gainsburg DM, et al. *JSLS*. 2010;14:1.
217. *Intuitive Surgical, Inc*. Sunnyvale, Ca, USA: Annual Report; 2016.
218. Baltayian S. *J Robotic Surg*. 2008;2:59.
219. Lestar M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(5):1069.
220. Cho JE, et al. *Urology*. 2009;73:1056.
221. Ravaoherisoa J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:434.
222. Kalmar AF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(4):433.
223. Awad H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(2):473.
224. Awad H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:954.
225. Lee M, et al. *AA Case Rep*. 2016;6:19.
226. Lee L. *ASA Newsl*. 2011;75(2):26.
227. Kan KM, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2015;81:557.
228. Farnham SB, et al. *Urology*. 2006;67:360.
229. Webster T, et al. *J Urol*. 2005;174:912.
230. Menon M, et al. *BJU Int*. 2003;92:232.
231. Beecken W-D, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2003;44(3):337.
232. Hu JC, et al. *Eur. Urol*. 2016;70:195.
233. Tan WS, et al. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0166221.
234. Ahmed K, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2014;65:340.
235. Tyritzia SI, Wiklund NP. *Int J Urol*. 2018;25(3):187.
236. Collins JW, et al. *Scand J Urol*. 2016;50(1):39.
237. Dason D, Goh AC. *Curr Urol Rep*. 2018;19(5):28.
238. Zehnder P, et al. *BJU Int*. 2013;112:E51.
239. Collins JW, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2016;70:649.
240. Oksar M, et al. *Braz J Anesthesiol*. 2014;64:109.
241. Dunn MD, et al. *J Urol*. 2000;164(4):1153.
242. Permpongkoso lS, et al. *J Urol174*. 2005;(4 pt 1):1222.
243. Jeong IG, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;318(16):1561.
244. Verhoest G, et al. *Clin Genitourin Cancer*. 2016;14(4). e335–40.
245. Naghiyev R, et al. *Turk J Urol*. 2017;43(3):319.
246. Irvine J, et al. *Nephrology*. 2006;11(4):282.
247. MacLennan S, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2012;61:972.
248. Pierorazio PM, et al. *Urology*. 2011;78:813.
249. Porpiglia F, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2007;52(4):1170.
250. Desai MM, et al. *BJU Int*. 2005;95(3):377.
251. Choi JE, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2015;67:891.
252. Porpiglia F, et al. *Urology*. 2016;89:45.
253. Chang C, et al. *J Endourol*. 2014;28(6):631.
254. Rajan S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116:70.
255. Beilin B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:151.

256. De Kock M. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:461.
257. Baldini G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(5):1139.
258. Deleted in proofs.
259. Maffezzini M, et al. *Surg Oncol*. 2008;17:41.
260. Daneshmand S, et al. *J Urol*. 2014;192:50.
261. Chang SS, et al. *J Urol*. 2002;167(1):208.
262. Azhar RA, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2016;70(1):176–187.
263. Collins JW, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2016;70(4):649.
264. Macrae WA, Davies HTO. Chronic postsurgical pain. In: Crombie IK, Linton S, Croft P, Von Korff M, LeResche L, eds. *Epidemiology of Pain*. Seattle: IASP Press; 1999:125–142.
265. Schug SA, et al. *IASP Pain Clinical Updates*. 2011;19(1):1.
266. Kehlet H, et al. Persistent postsurgical pain: risk factors and prevention. *Lancet*. 2006;367:1618.
267. Carter MR, Green BR. *Emerg Med Pract*. 2011;13(7):1.
268. Le BV, Schaeffer AJ. *Urol Clin North Am*. 2009;36(4):527. vii.
269. Peng PWH, Tumber PS. *Pain Physician*. 2008;11(2):215.
270. Potts JM, Payne CK. *Pain*. 2012;153(4):755.
271. Tay YK, et al. *BJU Int*. 2012;109(suppl 3):15.
272. Marjoribanks J, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010;(1):CD001751.
273. Malhotra A. In: Jacob Brian P, Chen David C, Ramshaw Bruce, Towfigh Shirin, eds. *Management of Groin Pain: Interventional and Pharmacologic Approaches. The SAGES Manual of Groin Pain*. New York, NY: Springer; 2016.
274. Mohamed SA-E, et al. *Pain Res Manag*. 2013;18(5):249.
275. Patt RB, Plancarte RS. Superior hypogastric plexus block. In: Waldman SD, ed. *Interventional Pain Management*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2001:528.
276. Malhotra V, Malhotra A. In: Fleischer Lee A, Roizen Michael F, eds. *Nephrectomy/Radical Nephrectomy. Essence of Anesthesia Practice*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders; 2010:502.
277. Malhotra A, Malhotra V, Rawal N. In: Yao Fun-Sun F, Fontes Manuel L, Malhotra Vinod, eds. *Perioperative Pain Management. Yao & Artusio's Anesthesiology: Problem-Oriented Patient Management*. 8th Ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2016:51.
278. Malhotra A, Malhotra V, Yao F. In: Yao Fun-Sun F, Fontes Manuel L, Malhotra Vinod, eds. *Transurethral Resection of the Prostate. Yao & Artusio's Anesthesiology*. 8th Ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2016:24.

References

1. Palmer DA, Moinzadeh A. Surgical, radiographic and endoscopic anatomy of the retroperitoneum, kidneys, and ureters. In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Partin AW, Peters CA, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. 11th ed. Philadelaphia: Elsevier; 2016:765–783.
2. Kavoussi PK. Surgical, radiographic and endoscopic anatomy of the male reproductive system. In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Novick AC, Partin AW, Peters CA, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. 11th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2016:498–515.
3. Hemmings HC. Anesthesia, adjuvant drugs and the kidney. In: Malhotra V, ed. *Anesthesia for Renal and Genitourinary Surgery*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1996:18.
4. Kassirer JP. Clinical evaluation of kidney function-glomerular function. *N Engl J Med*. 1971;285:385.
5. Stevens LA, Coresh J, Greene T, Levey AS. Assessing kidney function--measured and estimated glomerular filtration rate. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:2473–2483.
6. Landry DW, Bazari H. Approach to the patient with renal disease. In: Goldman L, Schafer AI, eds. *Goldman-Cecil Textbook of Medicine*. 25th ed. New York: Elsevier; 2016:728–736.
7. Shlipak MG, Coresh J, Gansevoort RT. Cystatin C versus creatinine for kidney function-based risk. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369:2457–2459.
8. Mårtensson J, Martling CR, Bell M. Novel biomarkers of acute kidney injury and failure: clinical applicability. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:843–850.
9. Duddalwar VA, Jadvar H, Palmer SL, Boswell WD. Diagnostic kidney imaging. In: Skorecki K, Chertow GM, Marsden PA, Yu AS, Taal MW, eds. *Brenner and Rector's the Kidney*. 10th ed. Philadephia: Elsevier; 2016:846–914.
10. Elkington JR, Huth EJ, Webster GD, et al. The renal excretion of hydrogen ion in renal tubular acidosis, I: quantitative assessment of the response to ammonium chloride as an acid load. *Am J Med*. 1960;29:554.
11. Stafford-Smith M, Sandler A, Privratsky JR, Kuhn C. The renal system and anesthesia for urologic surgery. In: Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, et al., eds. *Clinical Anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott; 2017:1400–1440.
12. Mann JF. What are the short-term and long-term consequences of anaemia in CRF patients? *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 1999;14:29–36.
13. Winearls CG. Recombinant human erythropoietin: 10 years of clinical experience. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 1998;13:3–8.
14. Prescot LF. Mechanisms of renal excretion of drugs (with special reference to drugs used by anesthesiologists). *Br J Anaesth*. 1972;44:246.
15. Davies G, Kingswood C, Street M. Pharmacokinetics of opioids in renal dysfunction. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1996;31:410–422.
16. Mazoit JX, Sandouk P, Scherrmann JM, Roche A. Extrahepatic metabolism of morphine occurs in humans. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1990;48:613–618.
17. Schochet RB, Murray GB. Neuropsychiatric toxicity of meperidine. *J Intensive Care Med*. 1988;3:246.
18. Davis PJ, Stiller RL, Cook DR. Pharmacokinetics of sufentanil in adolescent patients with chronic renal failure. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:268–271.
19. Chauvin M, Lebrault C, Levron JC, Duvaldestin P. Pharmacokinetics of alfentanil in chronic renal failure. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:53–56.
20. Murphy EJ. Acute pain management pharmacology for the patient with concurrent renal or hepatic disease. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2005;33:311–322.
21. Koncicki HM, Brennan F, Vinen K, Davison SN. An approach to pain management in end stage renal disease: considerations for general management and intradialytic symptoms. *Semin Dial*. 2015;28:384–391.
22. Mazze RI. Metabolism of the inhaled anaesthetics: implications of enzyme induction. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;56:275.
23. Mazze RI, Cousins MJ, Barr GA. Renal effects and metabolism of isoflurane in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40:536.
24. Mazze RI, Sievenpiper TS, Stevenson J. Renal effects of enflurane and halothane in patients with abnormal renal function. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;60:161.
25. Eger EI. Stability of I-653 in soda-lime. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:983.
26. Jones RM, Koblin DD, Cashman JN, et al. Biotransformation and hepato-renal function in volunteers after exposure to desflurane (I-653). *Br J Anaesth*. 1990;64:482.
27. Weiskopf RB, Eger EI, Ionescu P, et al. Desflurane does not produce hepatic or renal injury in human volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:570.
28. Hanaki C, Fujii K, Mono M, Tashima T. Decomposition of sevoflurane by soda-lime. *Hiroshima J Med Sci*. 1987;36:61.
29. Kobayashe Y, Ochiai R, Takeda J, et al. Serum and urinary inorganic fluride levels after prolonged inhalation of sevoflurane in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:A348.
30. Holaday DA, Smith FR. Clinical characteristics and biotransformation of sevoflurane in healthy human volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:100.
31. Kobayashi S, Bito H, Obata Y, Katoh T, Sato S. Compound A concentration in the circle absorber system during low-flow sevoflurane anesthesia: comparison of Drägersorb Free, Amsorb, and Sodasorb II. *J Clin Anesth*. 2003;15(1):33–37.
32. Priano LL. Effect of halothane on renal hemodynamics during normovolemia and hemorrhagic hypovolemia. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;63:357.
33. Merin RG, Bernard JM, Doursout MR. Comparison of the effects of isoflurane and desflurane on cardiovascular dynamics and regional blood flow in the chronically instrumented dog. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:568.
34. Cook TL, Beppu WJ, Hitt BA, et al. Renal effects and metabolism of sevoflurane in Fischer 344 rats. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43:70.
35. Ghoneim MM, Pandya HB, Kelley SE, et al. Binding of thiopental to plasma proteins: effects on distribution in the brain and heart. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;45:635.
36. Burch PG, Stanski DR. Decreased protein binding and thiopental kinetics. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1982;32:212.
37. Hudson RJ, Stanski DR, Burch PG. Pharmacokinetics of methohexital and thiopental in surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59:215.
38. Masuda A, Asahi T, Sakamaki M, et al. Uric acid excretion increases during propofol anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:144–148.
39. Thomas JL, Holmes JH. Effect of hemodialysis on plasma cholinesterase. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49:323.
40. Ryan DW. Preoperative serum cholinesterase concentration in chronic renal failure. *Br J Anaesth*. 1977;49:945.
41. Gronert GA, Theye RA. Pathophysiology of hyperkalemia induced by succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43:89.
42. Stanski DR, Watkins WD. *Drugs Disposition in Anesthesia*. Orlando, FL: Grune & Stratton; 1982.
43. McLeod K, Watson MJ, Rawlins MD. Pharmacokinetics of pancuronium in patients with normal and impaired renal function. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:341.
44. Hughes R, Chapple DJ. The pharmacology of atracurium: a new competitive neuromuscular blocking agent. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:31.
45. Fisher DM. (Almost) everything you learned about pharmacokinetics was (somewhat) wrong. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:901–903.
46. Lynam DP, Cronnelly R, Castagnoli KP, et al. The pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics of vecuronium in patients anesthetized with isoflurane with normal renal function or with renal failure. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;69:227.
47. Gramstad L, Gjerlow JA, Hysing ES, Rugstad HE. Interaction of cyclosporin and its solvent, Cremophor, with atracurium and vecuronium: studies in the cat. *Br J Anaesth*. 1986;58:1149.
48. Cook DR, Freeman JA, Lai AA, et al. Pharmacokinetics of mivacurium in normal patients and in those with hepatic or renal failure. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:580.
49. Phillips BJ, Hunter JM. Use of mivacurium chloride by constant infusion in the anephric patient. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69:492.
50. Szenohradsky J, Fisher DM, Segredo V, et al. Pharmacokinetics of rocuronium bromide (ORG 9426) in patients with normal renal function or patients undergoing cadaver renal transplantation. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:899.
51. Cronnelly R, Stanski DR, Miller RD, et al. Renal function and the pharmacokinetics of neostigmine in anesthetized man. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;51:222.
52. Cronnelly R, Stanski DR, Miller RD, et al. Pyridostigmine kinetics with and without renal function. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1980;28:78.
53. Morris RB, Cronnelly R, Miller RD, et al. Pharmacokinetics of edrophonium in anephric and renal transplant patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 1981;53:1311.
54. Panhuizen IF, Gold SJ, Buerkle C, et al. Efficacy, safety and pharmacokinetics of sugammadex 4 mg kg-1 for reversal of deep neuromuscular blockade in patients with severe renal impairment. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114:777–784.

55. Cammu G, Van Vlem B, van den Heuvel M, et al. Dialysability of sugammadex and its complex with rocuronium in intensive care patients with severe renal impairment. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:382–390.
56. Beermann B, Groschineky-Grind M, Rosen A. Absorption, metabolism and excretion of hydrochlorothiazide. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1976;19:531.
57. Smith DE, Brater DC, Lin ET, et al. Attenuation of furosemide diuretic effect by indomethacin: pharmacokinetics evaluation. *J Pharmacokinet Biopharm*. 1979;7:265.
58. Kornhauser DM, Wood AJJ, Vesta RE, et al. Biological determinants of propranolol disposition in man. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1978;23:165.
59. Wiest D. Esmolol. A review of its therapeutic efficacy and pharmacokinetic characteristics. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1995; 28:190-202.
60. Henry PD. Comparative pharmacology of calcium antagonists: nifedipine, verapamil and diltiazem. *Am J Cardiol*. 1980;46:1047.
61. Neurath GB, Dunger M. Blood levels of the metabolites of glyceryl trinitrate and pentaerythritol tetranitrate after administration of a two-step preparation. *Arzneimittelforschung*. 1977;27:416.
62. Smith RP. Cyanate and thiocyanate: acute toxicity. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med*. 1973;142:1041.
63. Talseth T. Studies on hydralazine, III: bioavailability of hydralazine in man. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1976;10:395.
64. Talseth T. Studies on hydralazine, II: elimination rate and steady state concentration in patients with impaired renal function. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 1976;10:311–317.
65. Luke DR, Awni WM, Halstemson CE, et al. Bioavailabilty of labetalol in patients with end-stage renal disease. *Ther Drug Monit*. 1992;14:203–208.
66. Sharfuddin AA, Weisbord SD, Palevsky PM. Acute kidney injury. In: Skorecki K, Chertow GM, Marsden PA, Yu AS, Taal MW, eds. *Brenner and Rector's the Kidney*. 10th ed. Philadephia: Elsevier; 2016:958–1011.
67. Josephs SA, Thakar CV. Perioperative risk assessment, prevention, and treatment of acute kidney injury. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;47:89.
68. Thakar CV, Arrigain S, Worley S, et al. A clinical score to predict acute renal failure after cardiac surgery. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2005:162–168.
69. Thakar CV, Kharat V, Blanck S, et al. Acute kidney injury after gastric bypass surgery. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2007;2:426–430.
70. Barratt J, Parajasingam R, Sayers RD, et al. Risks and outcomes of acute renal failure following surgical repair of ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysms. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 2000;20:163–168.
71. Yalavarthy R, Edelstein CL, Teitelbaum I. Acute renal failure and chronic kidney disease following renal transplantation. *Hemodial Int*. 2007;11(suppl 3):S7–S12.
72. Kheterpal S, Tremper KK, Englesbe MJ, et al. Predictors of postoperative acute renal failure after noncardiac surgery in patients with previously normal renal function. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:892–902.
73. Gordon AC, Pryn S, Collin J, et al. Outcome in patients who require renal support after surgery for ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm. *Br J Surg*. 1994;81:836–838.
74. Hersey P, Poullis M. Does the administration of mannitol prevent renal failure in open abdominal aortic aneurysm surgery? *Interact Cardiovasc Thoracic Surg*. 2008;7:906–909.
75. Freidrich JO, Adhikari N, Herridge MS, et al. Meta-analysis: low dose dopamine increases urine output but does not prevent renal dysfunction or death. *Ann Intern Med*. 2005;142:510–524.
76. Nigwekar SU, Navaneethan SD, Parikh CR, et al. Atrial natriuretic peptide for management of kidney injury: a systematic review and meta analysis. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2009;4:261–272.
77. Gillies MA, Kakar V, Parker RJ, et al. Fenoldopam to prevent acute kidney injury after major surgery-a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:449.
78. Aaron L, Franco OE, Hayward SW. Review of prostate anatomy and embryology and the etiology of benign prostatic hyperplasia. *Urol Clin N Am*. 2016;43:279–288.
79. Azar I. Transurethral resection of prostate. In: Malhotra V, ed. *Anesthesia for Renal and Genitourinary Surgery*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1996:93–109.
80. Roehrborn CG. Benign prostatic hyperplasia: etiology, pathophysiology, epidemiology, and natural history. In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Partin AW, Peters CA, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. 11th ed. Philadelaphia: Elsevier; 2016:2425–2462.
81. Lepor H. Medical treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. *Rev Urol*. 2011;13:20–33.
82. Welliver C, McVary KT. Prostatic hyperplasia. In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Partin AW, Peters CA, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. 11th ed. Philadelaphia: Elsevier; 2016:2504–2534.
83. Gilling P, Reuther R, Kahokehr A, Fraundorfer M. Aquablation – image-guided robot-assisted waterjet ablation of the prostate: initial clinical experience. *BJU Int*. 2015;117:923–929.
84. McConnell JD, Barry MD, Bruskewitz RC, et al. *Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia: Diagnosis and Treatment, Clinical Practice Guideline*. Rockville: Agency for Health Care Policy and Research; 1994:94–0582. Publication No.
85. Michalak J, Tzou D, Funk J. HoLEP: the gold standard for the surgical management of BPH in the 21st century. *Am J Clin Urol*. 2015;3:36–42.
86. Hoffman RM, Monga M, Elliott SP, et al. Microwave thermotherapy for benign prostatic hyperplasia. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. 2012;(9):CD004135.
87. Bucuras V, Barden R. Bipolar vaporization of the prostate: is it ready for the primetime? *Ther Adv Urol*. 2011;3:257–261.
88. Weeliver C, McVary KT. Minimally invasive and endoscopic management of benign prostatic hyperplasia. In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Partin AW, Peters CA, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. 11th ed. Philadelaphia: Elsevier; 2016:2504–2534.
89. Hatch PD. Surgical and anaesthetic considerations in transurethral resection of the prostate. *Anesth Intensive Care*. 1987;15:203–211.
90. Jensen V. The TURP syndrome. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38:90–96.
91. Madsen PO, Madsen RE. Clinical and experimental evaluation of different irrigating fluids for transurethral surgery. *Invest Urol*. 1965;3:122–129.
92. Marx GF, Orkin LR. Complications associated with transurethral surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1962;23:802–813.
93. Issa MM, Young MR, Bullock AR, et al. Dilutional hyponatremia of TURP syndrome: a historical event in the 21st century. *Urology*. 2004;64:298–301.
94. Azar I. Transurethral prostatectomy syndrome and other complications of urological procedures. In: McLeskey CH, ed. *Geriatric Anesthesia*. 1st ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1997:595–607.
95. Mebust WK, Holtgrewe HL, Cockett ATK, et al. Transurethral prostatectomy: immediate and postoperative complications – cooperative study of 13 participating institutions evaluating 3885 patients. *J Urol*. 1989;141:243–247.
96. Edwards ND, Callaghan LC, White T, Reilly CS. Perioperative myocardial ischaemia in patients undergoing transurethral surgery: a pilot study comparing general with spinal anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:368–372.
97. Aasheim GM. Hyponatremia during transurethral surgery. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1973;20:274–280.
98. Abrams PH, Shah PJR, Bryning K, et al. Blood loss during transurethral resection of the prostate. *Anaesthesia*. 1982;37:71–73.
99. Mackenzie AR. Influence of anesthesia on blood loss in transurethral prostatectomy. *Scott Med J*. 1990;35:99:14–16.
100. Madsen RE, Madsen PO. Influence of anesthesia form on blood loss in transurethral prostatectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 1967;46:330–332.
101. McGowan SW, Smith GFN. Anaesthesia for transurethral prostatectomy. *Anaesthesia*. 1980;35:847–853.
102. Nielsen KK, Andersen K, Asbjorn J, et al. Blood loss in transurethral prostatectomy: epidural versus general anesthesia. *Int Urol Nephrol*. 1987;19:287–292.
103. Fraser I, Scott M, Campbell I, et al. Routine cross-matching is not necessary for a transurethral resection of the prostate. *Br J Urol*. 1984;56:399–405.
104. Slade N, Andrews GL, Tovey GH, et al. Blood loss in prostatic surgery. *Br J Urol*. 1964;36:399–405.
105. Gehring H, Nahm W. Baerwald J, et al: Irrigation fluid absorption during transurethral resection of the prostate: spinal vs. general anesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1999;43:458–463.
106. Malhotra V. Transurethral resection of the prostate. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2000;18:883–897.
107. Melchior J, Valk WL, Foret JD, et al. Transurethral prostatectomy: computerized analysis of 2223 consecutive cases. *J Urol*. 1974;112:634–642.
108. Cullen DJ, Apolone G, Greenfield S, et al. ASA physical status and age predict morbidity after three surgical procedures. *Ann Surg*. 1994;220:3.

109. Hawary A, Mukhtar K, Sinclair A, Pearce I. Transurethral resection of the prostate syndrome: almost gone but not forgotten. *J Endourol*. 2009;23:2013–2020.
110. Zepnick H, Steinbach F, Schuster F. Value of transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) for treatment of symptomatic benign prostatic obstruction (BFO): an analysis of efficiency and complications in 1015 cases. *(Ger) Akuelle Urol*. 2009;39:369–372.
111. Reich O, Gratzke C, Bachmann A, et al. Morbidity, mortality and early outcome of transurethral resection of the prostate: a prospective multicenter evaluation of 10,654 patients. *J Urol*. 2008;180:246–249.
112. Hahn RG. Irrigating fluids in endoscopic surgery. *Br J Urol*. 1997;79:669–680.
113. Chung FF, Chung A, Meier RH, et al. Comparison of perioperative mental function after general anaesthesia and spinal anaesthesia with intravenous sedation. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36:382–387.
114. Rao PN. Fluid absorption during urological endoscopy. *Br J Urol*. 1987;60:93–99.
115. Hahn RG. The transurethral resection syndrome—not yet a finished story. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1998;23:115–118.
116. Gravenstein D. Transurethral resection of prostate (TURP) syndrome: a review of pathophysiology and management. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:438–446.
117. Hahn RG. The transurethral resection syndrome. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35:557–567.
118. Harrison RH, Boren JS, Robison JR. Dilutional hyponatremic shock: another concept of the transurethral prostatic resection reaction. *J Urol*. 1956;75:95–110.
119. Hahn RG. Acid phosphatase levels in serum during transurethral prostatectomy. *Br J Urol*. 1989;64:500–503.
120. Ceccarelli FE, Mantell LK. Studies on fluid and electrolyte alterations during transurethral prostatectomy. *J Urol*. 1961;85:75–82.
121. Sohn MH, Vogt C, Heinen G, et al. Fluid absorption and circulating endotoxins during transurethral resection of the prostate. *Br J Urol*. 1993;72:605–610.
122. Hahn RG. Acid–base status following glycine absorption in transurethral surgery. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1992;9:1–5.
123. Osborn DE, Rao PN, Green MJ, et al. Fluid absorption during transurethral resection. *Br Med J*. 1980;281:1549–1550.
124. Henderson DJ, Middleton RG. Coma from hyponatremia following transurethral resection of the prostate. *Urology*. 1980;15:267–271.
125. Hahn RG, Andersson T, Sikk M. Eye symptoms, visual evoked potentials and EEG during intravenous infusion of glycine. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1995;39:214–219.
126. Hahn RG, Essen P. ECG and cardiac enzymes after glycine absorption in transurethral prostatic resection. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1994;38:550–556.
127. Roesch RP, Stoelting RK, Lingemam JE, et al. Ammonia toxicity resulting from glycine absorption during a transurethral resection of prostate. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:577–579.
128. Hoekstra PT, Kahnoski R, McCamish MA, et al. Transurethral prostatic resection syndrome – a new perspective: encephalopathy with associated hyperammonemia. *J Urol*. 1983;130:704–707.
129. Holtgrewe HL, Valk WL. Factors influencing the mortality and morbidity of transurethral prostatectomy: a study of 2015 cases. *J Urol*. 1962;87:450–459.
130. Herkommer K, Hofer C, Gschwend JE, Kron M, Treiber U. Gender and body mass index as risk factors for bladder perforation during primary transurethral resection of bladder tumors. *J Urol*. 2012;187:1566–1570.
131. Stafford-Smith M, Sandler A, Privratsky JR, Kuhn C. The renal system and anesthesia for urologic surgery. In: Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK, et al., eds. *Clinical Anesthesia*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott; 2017:1400–1440.
132. Allen TD. Body temperature changes during prostatic resection as related to the temperature of the irrigating solution. *J Urol*. 1973;110:433–435.
133. Heathcote PS, Dyer PM. The effect of warm irrigation on blood loss during transurethral prostatectomy under spinal anesthesia. *Br J Urol*. 1986;58:669–691.
134. Gravenstein D. Transurethral resection of prostate (TURP) syndrome: a review of pathophysiology and management. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:438–446.
135. Malhotra V. Transurethral resection of the prostate. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2000;18:883–897.
136. Issa MM. Technological advances in transurethral resection of the prostate: bipolar versus monopolar TURP. *J Endourol*. 2008;22(8):1587–1595.
137. Delongchamps NB, Robert G, de la Taille A, et al. Surgical management of BPH in patients on oral anticoagulation: transurethral bipolar plasma vaporization in saline versus transurethral monopolar resection of prostate. *Can J Urol*. 2011;18:6007–6012.
138. Hanson RA, Zornow NH, Conlin MJ, Brambrink AM. Laser resection of the prostate: implications for anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105: 475–479.
139. Ruszat R, Wyler S, Forster T, et al. Safety and effectiveness of photoselective vaporization of the prostate (PVP) in patients on ongoing oral anticoagulation. *Eur Urol*. 2007;51:1031–1041.
140. Elzayat EA, Habib EI, Elhilahi MM. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate: a size-independent new "gold standard." *Urology*. 2005;66(suppl 5A):108–113.
141. Kelly DC, Das A. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate technique for benign prostatic hyperplasia. *Can J Urol*. 2012;19:6131–6134.
142. Gupta N. Comparison of standard transurethral resection, transurethral vapour resection and holmium laser enucleation of the prostate for managing benign prostatic hyperplasia of >40g. *BJU Int*. 2006;97:85–89.
143. Kuntz RM, Ahyai S, Lehrich K, Fayad A. Transurethral holmium laser enucleation of the prostate versus transurethral electrocautery resection of the prostate: a randomized prospective trial in 200 patients. *J Urol*. 2004;172:1012–1016.
144. Montorsi F, Naspro R, Salonia A, et al. Holmium laser enucleation versus transurethral resection of the prostate: results from a 2-center, prospective, randomized trial in patients with obstructive benign prostatic hyperplasia. *J Urol*. 2004;172:1926–1929.
145. Tan A, Gilling P, Kennett K, et al. A randomized trial comparing holmium laser enucleation of the prostate with transurethral resection of the prostate for the treatment of bladder outlet obstruction secondary to benign prostatic hyperplasia in large glands (40 to 200 grams). *J Urol*. 2003;170:1270–1274.
146. Muir G, Sancha FG, Bachmann A, et al. Techniques and training with Greenlight HPS 120-W laser therapy of the prostate: position paper. *Eur Urol*. 2008;7(suppl):370–377.
147. Sandhu JS, Ng CK, Gonzalez RR, et al. Photoselective laser vaporization prostatectomy in men receiving anticoagulants. *J Endourol*. 2005;19:1196–1198.
148. Chung DE, Wysock JS, Lee RK, et al. Outcomes and complications after 532 nm laser prostatectomy in anticoagulated patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia. *J Urol*. 2011;186:977–981.
149. Lee DJ, Rieken M, Halpern J. Laser vaporization of the prostate with the 180-W XPS-Greenlight laser in patients with ongoing platelet aggregation and oral anticoagulation. *Urology*. 2016;91:167–173.
150. Sandhu JS, Ng C, Vanderbrink BA, et al. High-power potassium-titanyl-phosphate photoselective laser vaporization of prostate for treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia in men with large prostates. *J Urol*. 2004;64:1155–1159.
151. Djavan B, Kazzazi A, Bostanci Y. Revival of thermotherapy for benign prostatic hyperplasia. *Curr Opin Urol*. 2012;22(1):16–21.
152. Gilling P, Anderson P, Tan A. Aquablation of the prostate for symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia: 1-year results. *J Urol*. 2017;197:1565–1572.
153. Scales CD, Smith AC, Hanley JM, et al. Prevalence of kidney stones in the United States. *Eur Urol*. 2012;62:160–165.
154. Assimos D, Krambeck A, Miller NL, et al. Surgical management of stones: American Urological Association/Endourological Society Guideline, Part II. *J Urol*. 2016;196:1161–1169.
155. Matlaga BR, Krambeck AE, Lingeman JE. Surgical management of upper urinary tract calculi. In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Partin AW, Peters CA, eds. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. 11th ed. Philadelaphia: Elsevier; 2016:1260–1290.
156. Cybulski PA, Joo H, D'A Honey RJ. Ureteroscopy: anesthetic considerations. *Urol Clin North Am*. 2004;31:43–47.
157. Park HK, Paick SH, Oh SJ, et al. Ureteroscopic lithotripsy under local anes- thesia: analysis of the effectiveness and patient tolerability. *Eur Urol*. 2004;45:670–673.
158. Rosette J, Tsakiris P, Ferrandino MN, Elsakka AM, Rioja J, Preminger GM. Beyond prone position in percutaneous nephrolithotomy: a comprehensive review. *Eur Urol*. 2008;54:1262–1269.

159. Oberlin DT, Flum AS, Bachrach L, et al. Contemporary surgical trends in the management of upper tract calculi. *J Urol*. 2015;193:880–884.
160. Bierkens AF, Hendrikx AJM, de Kort VJW, et al. Efficacy of second generation lithotriptors: a multicenter comparative study of 2,206 extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy treatments with the Siemens Lithostar, Dornier HM4, Wolf Piezolith 2300, Direx Tripter X-1 and Breakstone lithotripters. *J Urol*. 1992;148:1052–1056.
161. Lucas SD, Zheng G, Gravenstein D. Extracorporeal shock wave therapy and percutaneous nephrolithotripsy. In: Gainsburg DM, Bryson EO, Frost EAM, eds. *Anesthesia for Urologic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2014:75–91.
162. Zanetti G, Ostini F, Montanari E, et al. Cardiac dysrhythmias induced by extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy. *J Endourol*. 1999;13:409–412.
163. Carlson CA, Gravenstein JS, Gravenstein N. Ventricular tachycardia during extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy for renal stone disease. In: Gravenstein JS, Peter K, eds. *Renal Stone Disease*. Boston: Butterworth; 1986:119. Technical and Clinical Aspects.
164. Walts LF, Atlee JL. Supraventricular tachycardia associated with extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:521–523.
165. Malhotra V, Long CW, Meister MJ. Intercostal blocks with local in ltration anesthesia for extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:85–88.
166. Abbott MA, Samuel JR, Webb DR. Anaesthesia for extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. *Anaesthesia*. 1985;40:1065–1072.
167. Monk TG, Rater JM, White PF. Comparison of alfentanil and ketamine infusions in combination with midazolam for outpatient lithotripsy. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74:1023–1028.
168. Monk TG, Boure B, White PF, et al. Comparison of intravenous sedative-analgesic techniques for outpatient immersion lithotripsy. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:616–621.
169. Gissen D, Naroll M, Katz RL. Epidural fentanyl for extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. *Reg Anesth*. 1988;3:40.
170. Coloma M, Chiu JW, White PF, et al. Fast-tracking after immersion lithotripsy: general anesthesia versus monitored anesthesia care. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:92–96.
171. Basar H, Yilmaz E, Ozcan S, et al. Four analgesic techniques for shockwave lithotripsy: eutectic mixture local anesthetic is a good alternative. *J Endourol*. 2003;17:3–6.
172. Richardson MG, Dooley JW. The effects of general versus epidural anesthesia for outpatient extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:1214–1218.
173. Coleman SA, Davies JB. Alfentanil for extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. *Pain*. 1993;52:372–373.
174. Tailly GG, Marcelo JB, Schneider IA, et al. Patient-controlled analgesia during SWL treatments. *J Endourol*. 2001;15:465–471.
175. Weber W, Back P, Wildgans H, et al. Anesthetic considerations in patients with cardiac pacemakers undergoing extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:S251.
176. Cooper D, Wilkoff B, Masterson M, et al. Effects of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy on cardiac pacemakers and its safety in patients with implanted cardiac pacemakers. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1988;11:1607–1616.
177. Vassolas G, Roth RA, Venditti FJ Jr. Effect of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy on implantable cardioverter defibrillators. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1993;16:1245–1248.
178. Chung MK, Streem SB, Ching E, et al. Effects of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy on tiered implantable cardioverter debrillators. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 1999;22:738–742.
179. Belibi FA, Edelstein CL. Metastatic renal cancer: what role for everolimus? *Clin Med Rev Oncol*. 2010;2:4.
180. Shalev M, Cipolla B, Guille F, et al. Is ipsilateral adrenalectomy a necessary component of radical nephrectomy? *J Urol*. 1995;152:1415.
181. Uzzo R, Novick A. Nephron sparing surgery for renal tumors: indications, techniques and outcomes. *J Urol*. 2001;166:6–18.
182. Ghavamian R, Zincke H. Nephron sparing surgery. *Curr Urol Rep*. 2001;2:34–39.
183. Nguyen C, Campbell S, Novick A. Choice of operation for clinically localized renal tumor. *Urol Clin N Am*. 2008;35:645–655.
184. O'Hara JF, Sprung J, Whalley D, et al. Transesophageal echocardiography in monitoring of intrapulmonary embolism during inferior vena cava tumor resection. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1999;13:69–71.
185. Shah N. Radical cystectomy, radical nephrectomy and retroperitoneal lymph node dissection. In: Malhotra V, ed. *Anesthesia for Renal and Genitourinary Surgery*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1996:197–226.
186. Siegel RL, Miller KD, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2018. *J Clin Oncol*. 2018;68:7–30.
187. Witjes JA, Lebret T, Comperat E, et al. Updated 2016 EAU guidelines on muscle-invasive and metastatic bladder cancer. *Eur Urol*. 2017;71:462–475.
188. Jefferies ER, Cresswell J, McGrath JS, et al. Open radical cystectomy in England: the current standard of care – an analysis of the British Association of Urological Surgeons (BAUS) cystectomy audit and Hospital Episodes Statistics (HES) data. *BJU Int*. 2018.
189. Schiffmann J, Gandaglia G, Larcher A, et al. Contemporary 90-day mortality rates after radical cystectomy in the elderly. *Eur J Surg Oncol*. 2014;40:1738–1745.
190. Karl A, Buchner A, Becker A, et al. A new concept for early recovery after surgery for patients undergoing radical cystectomy for bladder cancer: results of a prospective randomized study. *J Urol*. 2014;191:335–340.
191. Lee CT, Chang SS, Kamat AM, et al. Alvimopan accelerates gastro intestinal recovery after radical cystectomy: a multicenter randomized placebo-controlled trial. *Eur Urol*. 2014;66:265–272.
192. Berrigan MJ, Sherman ML. Open urologic procedures: radical cystectomy with diversion, radical prostatectomy, and radical nephrectomy anesthetic considerations. In: Gainsburg DM, Bryson EO, Frost EAM, eds. *Anesthesia for Urologic Surgery*. New York: Springer; 2014:197–214.
193. Daneshmand S, Ahmadi H, Schuckman AK, et al. Enhanced recovery protocol after radical cystectomy foe bladder cancer. *J Urol*. 2014;192:50–56.
194. Monk TG. Cancer of the prostate and radical prostatectomy. In: Malhotra V, ed. *Anesthesia for Renal and Genitourinary Surgery*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1996:177–195.
195. Catalona WJ. Surgical management of prostate cancer: contemporary results with anatomic surgical prostatectomy. *Cancer*. 1995;75:1903.
196. Albin MS, Ritter RR, Reinhart R, et al. Venous air embolism during radical retropubic prostatectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:151–153.
197. Malhotra V, Stout R, Girardi SC. A comparison of epidural anesthesia, general anesthesia and combined epidural-general anesthesia for radical prostatectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(3A):973.
198. Malhotra V, Stout R. Epidural vs. general anesthesia for radical prostatectomy. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1994;38(suppl):76.
199. Shir Y, Raja SN, Frank SM, et al. The effect of epidural versus general anesthesia on postoperative pain and analgesic requirements in patients undergoing radical prostatectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:49–56.
200. Heller AR, Litz RJ, Djonlagic I, et al. Combined anesthesia with catheter: a retrospective analysis of the perioperative course in patients undergoing radical prostatectomy. *Anaesthetist*. 2000;49:949–959.
201. Modig J, Karlstrom G. Intra and post-operative blood loss and haemodynamics in total hip replacement when performed under lumbar versus general anaesthesia. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1987;4:345–355.
202. Rodgers A, Walker N, Schub S, et al. Reduction of postoperative mortality and morbidity with epidural or spinal anaesthesia: results from overview of randomized trials. *BMJ*. 2000;321:1493.
203. Gottschalk A, Smith DS, Jobes DR, et al. Preemptive epidural analgesia and recovery from radical prostatectomy. *JAMA*. 1998;279:1076–1082.
204. Worwag E, Chodak GW. Overnight hospitalization after radical prostatectomy: the impact of two clinical pathways on patient satisfaction, length of hospitalization, and morbidity. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:62–67.
205. Kirsh EJ, Worwag E, Sinner M, Chodak GW. Using the outcome data and patient satisfaction surveys to develop policies regarding minimum length of hospitalization after radical prostatectomy. *Urology*. 1998;56:101–106.
206. Hara I, Kawabata G, Miyake H, et al. Comparison of quality of life following laparoscopic and open prostatectomy for prostate cancer. *J Urol*. 2003;169:2045–2048.
207. Wright JD. Robotic-assisted surgery balancing evidence and implementation. *JAMA*. 2017;318:1545–1547.
208. Maerz DA, Beck LN, Sim AJ, Gainsburg DM. Complications of robotic-assisted laparoscopic surgery distant from the surgical site. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118:492–503.

209. Vasdev N, Poon AS, Gowrie-Mohan S, et al. The physiologic and anesthetic considerations in elderly patients undergoing robotic renal surgery. *Rev Urol*. 2014;16:1–9.
210. Meininger D, Byhahn C, Mierdi S, et al. Positive end-expiratory pressure improves arterial oxygenation during prolonged pneumoperitoneum. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:778–783.
211. Meininger D, Byhahn C, Bueck M, et al. Effects of prolonged pneumoperitoneum on hemodynamics and acid-base balance during totally endoscopic robot-assisted radical prostatectomies. *World J Surg*. 2002;26:1423–1427.
212. Meininger D, Byhahn C, Wolfram M, et al. Prolonged intraperitoneal vs extraperitoneal insufflation of carbon dioxide in patients undergoing totally endoscopic robot-assisted radical prostatectomy. *Surg Endosc*. 2004;18:829–833.
213. O'Malley C, Cunningham AJ. Physiologic changes during laparoscopy. *Anesthesiol Clin N Am*. 2001;1:1–18.
214. Danic MJ, Chow M, Gayload A, Bhandari A, et al. Anesthesia consideration for robotic-assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy: a review of 1500 cases. *J Robotic Surg*. 2007;1:119–123.
215. Falabella A, Moore-Jeffries E, Sullivan MJ, et al. Cardiac function during steep Trendelenburg position and CO2 pneumoperitoneum for robotic-assisted prostatectomy: a transoesophageal Doppler probe study. *Int J Med Robotics Comput Assist Surg*. 2007;3:312–315.
216. Gainsburg DM, Wax D, Reich DL, Carlucci JR, Samadi DB. Intraoperative management of robotic- assisted versus open radical prostatectomy. *JSLS*. 2010;14:1–5.
217. *Intuitive Surgical, Inc*. Sunnyvale, Ca, USA: Annual Report; 2016.
218. Baltayian S. A brief review: anesthesia for robotic surgery. *J Robotic Surg*. 2008;2:59–66.
219. Lestar M, Gunnarsson L, Lagerstrand L, et al. Hemodynamic perturbations during robot-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy in 45° Trendelenburg position. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(5):1069–1075.
220. Cho JE, Shim JK, Chang JH, et al. Effect of nicardipine on renal function after robot-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy. *Urology*. 2009;73:1056–1060.
221. Ravaoherisoa J, Meyer P, Afriat R, et al. Laparoscopic surgery in a patient with ventriculoperitoneal shunt: monitoring of shunt function with transcranial Doppler. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:434–437.
222. Kalmar AF, Foubert L, Hendrickx JF, et al. Influence of steep Trendelenburg position and CO(2) pneumoperitoneum on cardiovascular, cerebrovascular, and respiratory homeostasis during robotic prostatectomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(4):433–439.
223. Awad H, Santilli S, Ohr M, et al. The effects of steep Trendelenburg positioning on intraocular pressure during robotic radical prostatectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(2):473–478.
224. Awad H, Malik OS, Cloud AR, Weber PA. Robotic surgeries in patients with advanced glaucoma. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:954.
225. Lee M, Dallas R, Daniel D, Cotter F. Intraoperative management of increased intraocular pressure in a patient with glaucoma undergoing robotic prostatectomy in the Trendelenburg position. *AA Case Rep*. 2016;6:19–21.
226. Lee L. Visual loss, venous congestion and robotic prostatectomies. *ASA Newsl*. 2011;75(2):26–27.
227. Kan KM, Brown SE, Gainsburg DM. Ocular complications in robotic-assisted prostatectomy: a review of pathophysiology and prevention. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2015;81:557–566.
228. Farnham SB, Webster TM, Herrell SD, et al. Intraoperative blood loss and transfusion requirements for robotic assisted radical prostatectomy vs. radical retropubic prostatectomy. *Urology*. 2006;67:360–363.
229. Webster T, Herrell S, Chang S, et al. Robotic assisted laparoscopic retropubic radical prostatectomy: a prospective assessment of post-operative pain. *J Urol*. 2005;174:912–914.
230. Menon M, Hemal AK, Tewari A, et al. Nerve-sparing robot-assisted radical cystoprostatectomy and urinary diversion. *BJU Int*. 2003;92:232–236.
231. Beecken W-D, Wolfram M, Engl T, et al. Robotic-assisted laparoscopic radical cystectomy and intra-abdominal formation of an orthotopic ileal neobladder. *Eur Urol*. 2003;44(3):337–339.
232. Hu JC, Chughtai B, O'Malley P, et al. Perioperative outcomes, health care costs, and survival after robotic-assisted versus open radical cystectomy: a National Comparative Effectiveness Study. *Eur Urol*. 2016;70:195–202.
233. Tan WS, Khetrapal P, Tan WP, Rodney S, Chau M, Kelly JD. Robotic assisted radical cystectomy with extracorporeal urinary diversion does not show a benefit over open radical cystectomy: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0166221.
234. Ahmed K, Khan SA, Hayn MH, et al. Analysis of intracorporeal compared with extracorporeal urinary diversion after robot-assisted radical cystectomy: results from the international robotic cystectomy consortium. *Eur Urol*. 2014;65:340–347.
235. Tyritzia SI, Wiklund NP. Is the open cystectomy era over? An update on the available evidence. *Int J Urol*. 2018;25(3):187–195.
236. Collins JW, Adding C, Hosseini A, et al. Introducing an enhanced recovery programme to an established totally intracorporeal robot-assisted radical cystectomy service. *Scand J Urol*. 2016;50(1):39–46.
237. Dason D, Goh AC. Updates on robotic intracorpeal urinary diversions. *Curr Urol Rep*. 2018;19(5):28.
238. Zehnder P, Studer UE, Skinner EC, et al. Unaltered oncological outcomes of radical cystectomy with extended lymphadenectomy over three decades. *BJU Int*. 2013;112:E51–E58.
239. Collins JW, Patel H, Addind C, et al. Enhanced recovery after robot-assisted radical cystectomy: EAU Robotic Urology Section Scientific Working Group Consensus View. *Eur Urol*. 2016;70:649–660.
240. Oksar M, Akbulut Z, Ocal H, et al. Anesthetic considerations for robotic cystectomy: a prospective study. *Braz J Anesthesiol*. 2014;64: 109–115.
241. Dunn MD, Portis AJ, ShalhavAL, et al. Laparoscopic versus open radical nephrectomy: a 9-year experience. *J Urol*. 2000;164(4):1153–1159.
242. Permpongkoso lS, Chan DY, Link RE, et al. Long- term survival analysis after laparoscopic radical nephrectomy. *J Urol174*. 2005;(4 pt 1):1222–1225.
243. Jeong IG, Khandwala YS, Kim JH, et al. Association of robotic-assisted vs laparoscopic radical nephrectomy with perioperative outcomes and health care costs, 2003 to 2015. *JAMA*. 2017;318(16):1561–1568.
244. Verhoest G, Couapel JP, Oger E, et al. Safety and feasibility of laparoscopic nephrectomy for big tumors (≥ 10 cm): a retrospective multicentric study. *Clin Genitourin Cancer*. 2016; 14(4): e335–e340.
245. Naghiyev R, Imamverdiyev S, Efendiyev E, Sanli O. Laparoscopic transperitoneal and retroperitoneal simple nephrectomy: the impact of etiological factors of the results of surgical treatment. *Turk J Urol*. 2017;43(3):319–324.
246. Irvine J, Aho T, Davidson P, Searle M. Rhabdomyolysis following laparoscopic radical nephrectomy: a case to heighten awareness. *Nephrology*. 2006;11(4):282–284.
247. MacLennan S, Imamura M, Lapitan MC, et al. Systematic review of oncological outcomes following surgical management of localised renal cancer. *Eur Urol*. 2012;61:972–993.
248. Pierorazio PM, Patel HD, Feng T, et al. Robotic-assisted versus traditional laparoscopic partial nephrectomy: comparison of outcomes and evaluation of learning curve. *Urology*. 2011;78:813–819.
249. Porpiglia F, Renard J, Billia M, et al. Is renal warm ischemia over 30 minutes during laparoscopic partial nephrectomy possible? One-year results of a prospective study. *Eur Urol*. 2007;52(4):1170–1178.
250. Desai MM, Gill IS, Ramani AP, et al. The impact of warm ischaemia on renal function after laparoscopic partial nephrectomy. *BJU Int*. 2005;95(3):377–383.
251. Choi JE, You JH, Kim DK, et al. Comparison of perioperative outcomes between robotic and laparoscopic partial nephrectomy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Urol*. 2015;67:891–901.
252. Porpiglia F, Mari A, Bertolo R, et al. Partial nephrectomy in clinical T1b renal tumors: multicenter comparative study of open, laparoscopic and robot-assisted approach (the RECORd Project). *Urology*. 2016;89:45–53.
253. Chang C, Steinberg Z, Shah A, Gundeti MS. Patient positioning and port placement for robot-assisted surgery. *J Endourol*. 2014;28(6):631–638.
254. Rajan S, Babazade R, Govindarajan SR, et al. Perioperative factors associated with acute kidney injury after partial nephrectomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116:70–76.
255. Beilin B, Bessler H, Mayburd E, et al. Effects of preemptive analgesia on pain and cytokine production in the postoperative period. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:151–155.

256. De Kock M. Expanding our horizons: transition of acute postoperative pain to persistent pain and establishment of chronic postsurgical pain services. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:461–463.
257. Baldini G, Bagry H, Aprikian A, Carli F. Postoperative urinary retention: anesthetic and perioperative considerations. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(5):1139–1157.
258. Deleted in proofs.
259. Maffezzini M, Campodonico F, Canepa G, Gerbi G, Parodi D. Current perioperative management of radical cystectomy with intestinal urinary reconstruction for muscle-invasive bladder cancer and reduction of the incidence of postoperative ileus. *Surg Oncol*. 2008;17:41–48.
260. Daneshmand S, Ahmadi H, Schuckman AK, et al. Enhanced recovery protocol after radical cystectomy for bladder cancer. *J Urol*. 2014;192:50–55.
261. Chang SS, Baumgartner RG, Wells N, et al. Causes of increased hospital stay after radical cystectomy in a clinical pathway setting. *J Urol*. 2002;167(1):208–211.
262. Azhar RA, Bochner B, Catto J, et al. Enhanced recovery after urological surgery: a contemporary systematic review of outcomes, key elements, and research needs. *Eur Urol*. 2016;70(1):176–187.
263. Collins JW, Patel H, Adding C, Annerstedt M. Enhanced recovery after robot-assisted radical cystectomy: eau robotic urology section scientific working group consensus view. *Eur Urol*. 2016;70(4):649–660.
264. Macrae WA, Davies HTO. Chronic postsurgical pain. In: Crombie IK, Linton S, Croft P, Von Korff M, LeResche L, eds. *Epidemiology of Pain*. Seattle: IASP Press; 1999:125–142.
265. Schug SA, Pogatzki-Zahn EM. Chronic pain after surgery or injury. *IASP Pain Clinical Updates*. 2011;19(1):1–5.
266. Kehlet H, Jensen TS, Woolf CJ. Persistent postsurgical pain: risk factors and prevention. *Lancet*. 2006;367:1618–1625.
267. Carter MR, Green BR. Renal calculi: emergency department diagnosis and treatment. *Emerg Med Pract*. 2011;13(7):1–17.
268. Le BV, Schaeffer AJ. Genitourinary pain syndromes, prostatitis, and lower urinary tract symptoms. *Urol Clin North Am*. 2009;36(4):527–536, vii.
269. Peng PWH, Tumber PS. Ultrasound-guided interventional procedures for patients with chronic pelvic pain - a description of techniques and review of literature. *Pain Physician*. 2008;11(2):215–224.
270. Potts JM, Payne CK. Urologic chronic pelvic pain. *Pain*. 2012;153(4):755–758.
271. Tay YK, Spernat D, Rzetelski-West K, Appu S, Love C. Acute management of priapism in men. *BJU Int*. 2012;109(suppl 3):15–21.
272. Marjoribanks J, Proctor M, Farquhar C, Derks RS. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for dysmenorrhoea. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010;1:CD001751.
273. Malhotra A. In: Jacob Brian P, Chen David C, Ramshaw Bruce, Towfigh Shirin, eds. *Management of Groin Pain: Interventional and Pharmacologic Approaches. The SAGES Manual of Groin Pain*. New York, NY: Springer; 2016.
274. Mohamed SA-E, Ahmed DG, Mohamad MF. Chemical neurolysis of the inferior hypogastric plexus for the treatment of cancer-related pelvic and perineal pain. *Pain Res Manag*. 2013;18(5):249–252.
275. Patt RB, Plancarte RS. Superior hypogastric plexus block. In: Waldman SD, ed. *Interventional Pain Management*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2001:528.
276. Malhotra V, Malhotra A. In: Fleischer Lee A, Roizen Michael F, eds. *Nephrectomy/Radical Nephrectomy. Essence of Anesthesia Practice*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders; 2010:502.
277. Malhotra A, Malhotra V, Rawal N. In: Yao Fun-Sun F, Fontes Manuel L, Malhotra V, eds. *Perioperative Pain Management. Yao & Artusio's Anesthesiology: Problem-Oriented Patient Management*. 8th Ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2016:51.
278. Malhotra A, Malhotra V, Yao F. In: Yao Fun-Sun F, Fontes Manuel L, Malhotra V, eds. *Transurethral Resection of the Prostate. Yao & Artusio's Anesthesiology*. 8th Ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2016:24.

60

Anesthesia for Abdominal Organ Transplantation

CHRISTOPHER L. WRAY, JOHN R. KLINCK, and
RANDOLPH H. STEADMAN

KEY POINTS

- Survival after abdominal organ transplantation continues to improve.
- The imbalance between organ supply and demand is increasing as new indications emerge and transplantation is offered to growing numbers of older candidates.
- To increase the supply of organs, living donors and extended criteria deceased donors are being used more frequently.
- Evolving organ preservation techniques employing graft perfusion offer the promise of improved outcomes with marginal organs, potentially enlarging the organ supply.
- Knowledge of the pathophysiologic changes associated with end-stage disease is required to provide optimal care for patients undergoing transplant surgery.
- The kidney is the most frequently transplanted organ.
- Kidney transplant recipients are older and are more likely to have chronic illnesses than in the past.
- The perioperative and long-term risk of cardiovascular disease is increased in patients with end-stage renal disease.
- Maintenance of renal perfusion pressure in the perioperative period is critical for kidney graft function.
- Liver transplant recipients are older in age and have more comorbidities than in the past.
- The Model for End-stage Liver Disease (MELD) score prioritizes candidates for organ allocation in the United States.
- The pathophysiologic changes associated with liver disease affect nearly every organ system.
- Intraoperative care of liver transplantation recipients requires preparation for massive transfusion, management of coagulation abnormalities, and hemodynamic instability.
- Pancreatic transplantation is definitive treatment for diabetes mellitus.
- Pancreatic transplants are performed simultaneously with kidney transplantation (SPK), after kidney transplantation (PAK), or alone (PTA).
- Patients under 50 years with diabetes and end-stage renal disease benefit from SPK; however, more patients over age 50 and those with type 2 diabetes are now undergoing pancreas transplantation.
- In pancreatic transplant recipients, frequent monitoring of blood glucose concentrations is required during the perioperative period.
- Diabetic patients are at significant risk for cardiovascular disease.

Solid organ transplantation continues to grow worldwide. The success of transplantation over the past decades corresponds to improved survival for recipients. Increasingly, indications for transplantation have broadened. Patients with conditions previously considered contraindications, such as advanced age and some types of cardiopulmonary disease, are no longer precluded from transplantation.

Based on global data, 126,670 organs were transplanted in 2015, with a steady increase in yearly transplant activity over the past 5 years (Fig. 60.1).[1] In the United States there were 33,610 organ transplants performed in 2016; transplant volumes have increased annually in the United States as well.[2] In the United States and worldwide, the kidney is the most transplanted organ followed by the liver (Figs. 60.2 and 60.3).

Despite an encouraging trend in transplant volume, the number of patients who could benefit from transplantation far exceeds those who receive an organ. The imbalance between graft supply and demand is the major factor limiting organ transplantation in all countries. Solutions to organ shortage include living donor transplantation, which is used more commonly for kidney than liver transplantation. Other strategies include the use of extended criteria donors, including grafts from marginal donors declared brain dead (donation after brain death) and from donors dying from cardiac arrest (donation after cardiac death). These are discussed in detail elsewhere.

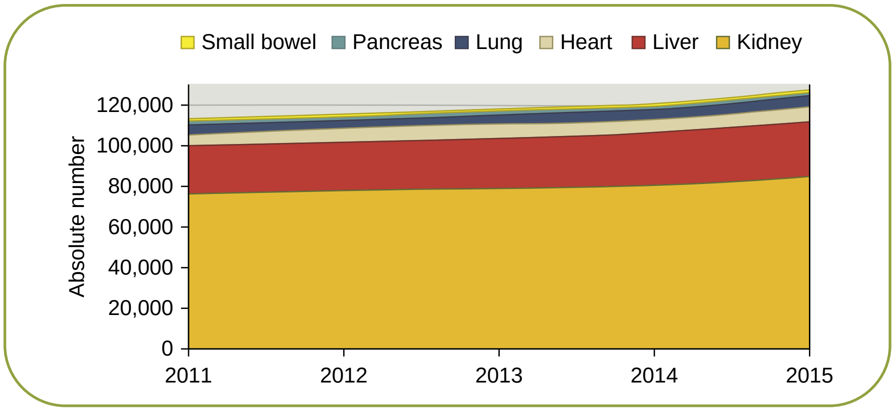


Fig. 60.1 Global transplant activity by organ, 2011–2015. (From http://www.transplant-observatory.org/organ-donation-transplantation-activities-2015-report-2/. Accessed June 25, 2018.)

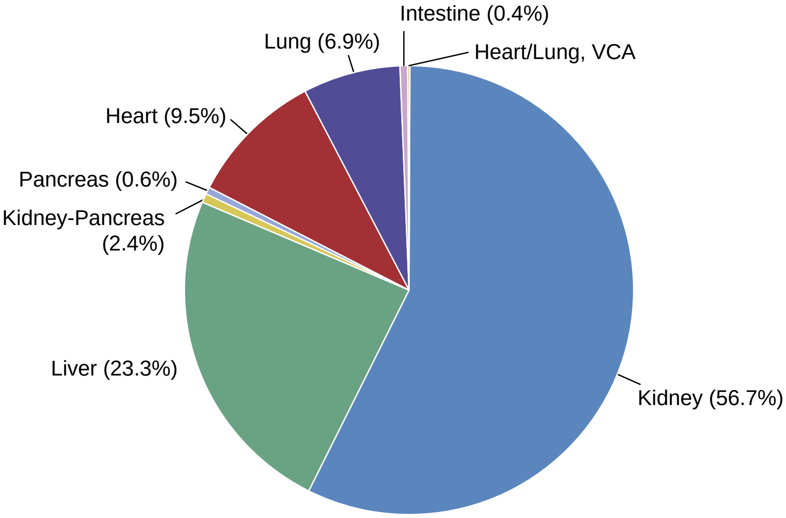


Fig. 60.2 U.S. transplants by organ, 2016. (From https://unos.org/about/annual-report/2016-annual-report/. Accessed June 25, 2018.)

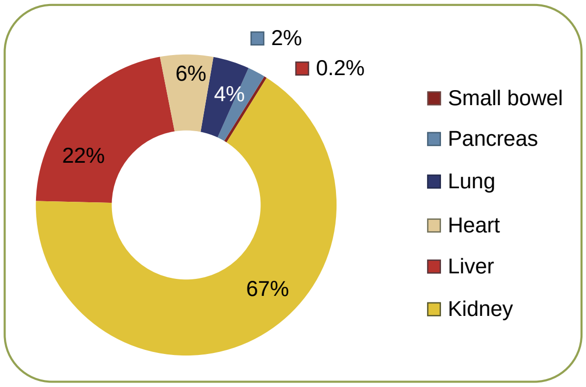


Fig. 60.3 Global transplants by organ, 2015. (From http://www.transplant-observatory.org/organ-donation-transplantation-activities-2015-report-2/. Accessed June 25, 2018.)

The evaluation of patients for transplantation varies among transplant centers, but the goals are similar. These include ascertaining that: (1) transplantation is indicated for the management of the prospective recipient, (2) comorbidities do not preclude transplantation, and (3) emotional and social resources permit a major surgery and its associated rehabilitation, including compliance with long-term immunosuppression therapy. The center's transplant selection committee typically consists of physicians (nephrologist and hepatologist for kidney and liver transplantation, respectively), transplant surgeon, psychiatrist, dietitian, social worker, and additional consultants as indicated. Anesthesiologists consult on high-risk candidates as agreed by local protocol. These include those with significant cardiovascular or respiratory comorbidities, poor nutritional or functional status, multiorgan failure, limited vascular access, or known anesthetic risks.

Reasons to deny transplantation vary among transplant centers, although in liver transplantation American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases guidelines and international consensus would mandate predicted 5-year survival greater than 40% to 60%. Critically ill patients receiving life support, vasopressors, or dialysis have decreased posttransplant survival.[3] Additional comorbidities can exacerbate the risk to a level that may be unacceptable to some centers. These may include significant coronary artery disease (CAD), moderate or severe pulmonary hypertension, metastatic disease, uncontrolled intracranial hypertension, and untreated sepsis. Psychosocial contraindications include

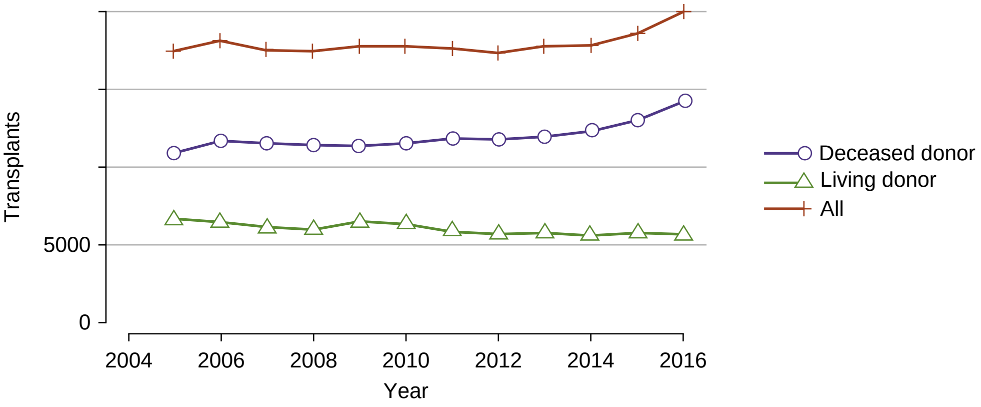


Fig. 60.4 U.S. kidney transplantation trends, 2004–2016. (From Hart A, Smith JM, Skeans MA, et al. OPTN/SRTR 2016 Annual Data Report: Kidney. *Am J Transplant.* 2018;Suppl 1:18–113.)

alcohol or recreational drug use, and the lack of social support, which might preclude compliance with immunosuppression regimens, follow-up care, or both. Age alone is generally not a contraindication unless associated with a low actuarial life expectancy (median survival), such as in the case of liver transplant, under 5 years posttransplant. More often a combination of age and comorbidities will exclude transplant in the older patient.

The success of organ transplantation relies heavily on a highly specialized team approach that includes the organ procurement organization, transplant coordinators, nurses, physicians, and allied healthcare providers. With the exception of kidney transplantation, most abdominal organ transplants are performed at tertiary medical centers with extensive resources available to support the program. Many of these centers have specialized anesthesia teams, particularly for liver and multivisceral transplantation.

This chapter reviews the anesthetic considerations for kidney, liver, pancreas, and intestinal transplantation in adults. The overall care of pediatric patients is described elsewhere in this text, as is the management of heart and lung transplantation.

Kidney Transplantation

Early attempts at human kidney transplantation date to the 1930s, however long-term success was not demonstrated until the 1950s. Kidney transplantation remained an experimental treatment for renal failure with isolated cases from various centers demonstrating varying success until breakthroughs in tissue typing and immunosuppression led to improved graft survival.

Today, kidney transplantation is the most common organ transplant surgery performed. Kidney transplant rates continue to rise on an international scale with growth of kidney transplant programs throughout Europe, North America, and Asia, as well as in many developing countries. Worldwide, there are substantial differences in the distribution of living versus cadaveric donor organs determined by cultural barriers to deceased donation or lack of organ procurement facilities. Many countries in Africa and Asia rely exclusively on living donation, whereas some countries in Europe perform mainly cadaveric renal transplants.[4] However, many developing countries have implemented national deceased donor kidney transplant distribution systems that have steadily increased access to transplantation.[5,6] Despite this effort, obstacles remain for renal transplant programs in many developing countries including patient access to care, costs, infrastructure, and cultural barriers.[7] Regardless of location, the lack of donors in the setting of increasing rates of end-stage renal disease (ESRD) affects all countries equally.

The demographics of kidney transplant patients in the United States have changed over the past 2 decades for many reasons, including an aging population and higher prevalence of diabetes and hypertension. Diabetes and hypertension are the two most common etiologies of ESRD in adults in the United States. Although it is not known how many patients with chronic kidney disease (CKD) progress to ESRD, the prevalence of ESRD in the United States has continued to increase. There were 703,243 documented cases of ESRD in the United States at the end of 2015, a 3.4% increase from the prior year.[8] ESRD also continued to increase on an international level; all countries that reported data in 2015 showed increased prevalence from the year before.[9] Although the prevalence of ESRD in the United States has continued to increase, this observation may reflect longer survival of patients with the diagnosis of ESRD. Encouragingly, 30% of all ESRD cases reported in the United States at the end of 2015 had a functioning kidney transplant.[8]

In the United States, the national kidney transplant waitlist steadily increased up to the year 2014, reflecting an increased incidence of CKD in older populations due to hypertension and diabetes. However, in 2016, the waitlist for kidney transplant decreased for the second year in a row; 30,869 patients were added to the United States waitlist while 33,291 patients were removed.[10] In concordance, the total number of kidney transplants performed in the United States increased in 2016 for the second year in a row as well; a total of 19,060 were performed. This increase in kidney transplant activity was directly due to an increase in deceased donor transplants, as living donor transplants remained stable (Fig. 60.4).[10] A new kidney allocation system implemented in the United States at the end of 2014 was likely responsible for this observed increase in deceased donor kidney transplants. This system was designed to

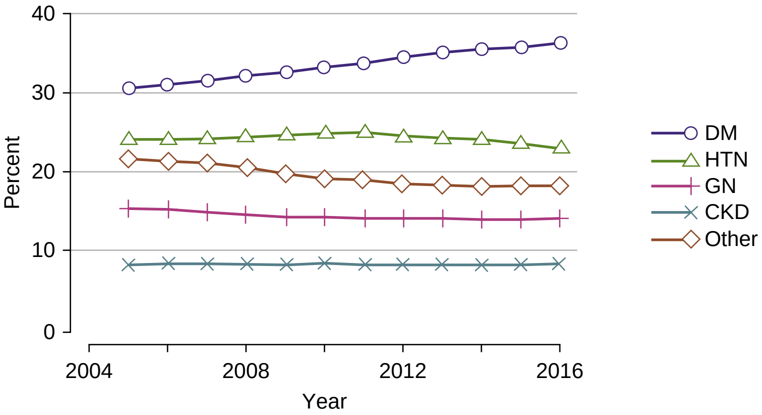


Fig. 60.5 Distribution of adults awaiting kidney transplant in U.S. 2004–2016 by diagnosis. *CKD,* Cystic kidney disease; *DM,* diabetes; *GN,* glomerulonephritis; *HTN,* hypertension. (From Hart A, Smith JM, Skeans MA, et al. OPTN/SRTR 2015 Annual Data Report: Kidney. *Am J Transplant*. 2018;Suppl 1:18–113.)

improve transplant equity by increasing access to deceased donor kidney transplants for a number of candidate subgroups including racial/ethnic minorities, B blood type candidates, highly sensitized candidates, and those with a history of prolonged dialysis prior to listing.[11] Analysis of the results of this new allocation policy demonstrated a 7% increase in kidney transplants performed in the first 18 months after implementation with observed increases in transplant rates in many of the prioritized subgroups.[12] Despite these recent successes, more patients were removed from the transplant list in 2016 than in previous years because of being too ill for transplant.[10] This trend reflects a kidney transplant population that is older and more likely to suffer from chronic diseases, which also has significant implications regarding perioperative risk during kidney transplant. Nevertheless, continued improvements in both short- and long-term living and deceased donor graft outcomes were reported in 2016.[10] One-year deceased donor graft survival rates remain over 90% in the United States, Europe, Canada, and Australia/New Zealand. Five-year deceased donor survival rates are slightly better in Europe, Canada, and Australia/New Zealand compared to the United States for reasons that are not completely defined.[13]

Despite an observed graft survival advantage for living kidney transplants over deceased donor transplants, the rates of living donor transplants have remained static over the past 10 years in the United States at approximately 5000 per year for reasons that are not fully understood.[10,13] Paired donation, consisting of two incompatible donor-recipient pairs exchanging kidneys to create two compatible pairs, is a strategy to increase access to living donors. Paired donation has increased in both the United States and internationally. With the development of donor chain transplants and establishment of organized allocation systems for paired donation, these techniques are expected to increase the future rate of living donor kidney transplants.[14]

INDICATIONS FOR KIDNEY TRANSPLANTATION

Kidney transplantation is indicated in patients with ESRD caused by any one of a variety of underlying conditions. Glomerular disease, congenital diseases, and polycystic kidney disease are common indications in younger patients. Nephropathies associated with hypertension and diabetes are the most common indications for kidney transplantation in the United States. Diabetes is the leading cause of ESRD in the United States, representing 36% of all waitlisted candidates in 2016 (Fig. 60.5).[10] Renal graft failure is an increasingly common indication for transplantation as well. In 2015, 16% of all waitlisted candidates in the United States were awaiting retransplantation and higher percentages have been reported in other countries.[15,16]

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF END-STAGE RENAL DISEASE

ESRD refers to the final progression of CKD, when renal function is irreversibly impaired and the development of uremia is imminent. Essential functions of the kidney include regulation of the ionic composition of the plasma, maintenance of fluid volumes, elimination of nitrogenous wastes and drugs, synthesis of erythropoietin, and adjustment of plasma pH. Significant declines in glomerular filtration rate (GFR) and urine production occur when these critical functions are damaged, resulting in the clinical manifestations of uremia. After the development of ESRD, renal replacement therapy is required. ESRD has an effect on nearly every organ system, and it has a major impact on patient mortality despite chronic therapy including hemodialysis.

ESRD results in abnormalities of fluid balance and electrolytes. With the onset of uremia and oliguria, expansion of the extracellular fluid volume ensues, presenting with edema, hypertension, and signs and symptoms of volume overload. Disorders of sodium, calcium, magnesium, and phosphate can result in chronic changes in bone metabolism, hyperparathyroidism, and vascular calcifications. The development of hyperkalemia, with its effects on the myocardium, is the most critical electrolyte abnormality. Failure of the renal elimination of organic acids results in the development of an anion-gap metabolic acidosis.

ESRD has a significant effect on the cardiovascular system. Cardiovascular disease is the most common cause of morbidity and mortality in patients with ESRD, accounting for 35% to 40% of all deaths in patients receiving hemodialysis.[17] As GFR decreases, the risk of cardiac mortality increases.[18] ESRD increases the development of atherosclerosis and is a major risk factor for the development of ischemic vascular disease, which can affect the coronary, cerebrovascular, and peripheral vascular systems. The likelihood of CAD, which can present as angina, myocardial infarction, arrhythmia, or sudden cardiac death, may be even greater in patients with hypertension and diabetes. Hypertension may be the etiology of ESRD in nearly 30% of patients, or conversely, hypertension may result from hyperreninemia, hypervolemia, and renal vasculature changes associated with ESRD. Concentric left ventricular hypertrophy and diastolic dysfunction occur in the early stages of CKD, and are the two most common echocardiographic abnormalities in patients with ESRD.[19] Patients with ESRD are at particular risk for diastolic congestive heart failure, especially in the setting of excessive intravascular volume. Heart failure owing to dilated cardiomyopathy with decreased systolic function can occur in patients with ESRD as well. The cardiorenal syndrome is defined by an interconnection between the renal and cardiac systems, where the decline of one organ influences the decline of the other. There is evidence that correction of renal function by renal transplantation can improve systolic dysfunction and reverse left ventricular dilation and hypertrophy.[20,21] A variety of arrhythmias can occur in ESRD because of progression of cardiac disease, myocardial ischemia, or electrolyte disturbances. Atrial fibrillation occurs in up to 27% of patients on hemodialysis and is associated with an increased risk of stroke, heart failure, and hemodynamic disturbance. Stroke is of significant concern in ESRD patients with atrial fibrillation, as patients with ESRD have nearly a 50% increased risk of stroke compared to the general population.[22] Clinical dilemmas are common regarding anticoagulation in patients with atrial fibrillation and ESRD. Pericardial disease is common in patients with uremia, manifesting as pericarditis or pericardial effusion.

Characteristic hematologic and hemostatic abnormalities occur with ESRD. Normochromic, normocytic anemia secondary to lack of erythropoietin is common and may be exacerbated by iron deficiency, chronic inflammation, and bone marrow fibrosis. Anemia decreases quality of life in ESRD and is associated with adverse cardiac outcomes. Erythropoiesis-stimulating drugs and iron are commonly prescribed for the treatment of uremic anemia, and hemoglobin levels of 11 to 12 gm/dL are typically achieved.[23] ESRD is associated with abnormal hemostasis because of a broad spectrum of platelet function abnormalities including decreases in platelet activity, aggregation, and adhesiveness. Production of von Willebrand factor and factor VIII is decreased. Historically, renal failure patients were considered to be at an increased risk for bleeding. However, ESRD is also associated with a hypercoagulable state owing to a variety of complex hemostatic changes including increased fibrinogen levels, reduced antithrombin levels, acquired thrombophilic factors, and endothelial alterations. Clinically, the risk of venous thromboembolism appears to increase as renal function decreases; manifestations may include deep venous thrombosis/pulmonary embolism and thrombosis of arteriovenous fistulas and vascular access catheters.[24] Many of the hematologic changes of hypercoagulability have been shown to resolve in patients with ESRD after kidney transplantation.[25]

Gastrointestinal signs and symptoms of ESRD include nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain. Patients with ESRD may have delayed gastric emptying, regardless of the timing of their last oral intake. Dyspepsia occurs in 50% to 70% of patients on hemodialysis; ESRD patients with symptomatic dyspepsia have been shown to have particularly prolonged gastric emptying times.[26] The presence of diabetes and obesity may further impair gastric emptying.

Central nervous system and neuromuscular abnormalities can occur in ESRD secondary to retained nitrogenous molecules. These abnormalities range from mild changes in memory or attention to signs and symptoms of neuromuscular irritability. Severe neurologic manifestations of uremia with asterixis, seizures, and decreased mental status are rare with regular dialysis. Peripheral neuropathy is the most common neurologic manifestation of ESRD and is documented in up to 90% of dialysis patients. Autonomic dysfunction is also common, documented in up to 50% of dialysis patients. Autonomic neuropathy is implicated in ESRD patients with orthostatic hypotension, cardiac arrhythmias, and gastric dysmotility. Kidney transplantation is the most effective treatment for the neurologic manifestations of ESRD.[27]

ANESTHESIA FOR KIDNEY TRANSPLANTATION: PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION

Before kidney transplantation, patients typically undergo a prolonged pretransplant evaluation by a multidisciplinary transplant committee to determine their fitness for transplantation and to assess for the likelihood of long-term survival following transplantation. In general, the preoperative evaluation of patients for kidney transplant should focus on the multiorgan manifestations of ESRD, with the goals of risk stratification and optimization of the medical status of the patient before transplant. Cadaveric kidney transplantation is an urgent procedure, because harvested organs tolerate a finite duration of cold ischemia of approximately 24 hours. Living donor kidney transplants are scheduled well in advance, allowing for a thorough preoperative assessment before surgery.

As discussed previously, the current demographic of kidney transplant patients has a frequent association with cardiac disease, which has a major effect on posttransplant outcome. As a result, preoperative cardiac evaluation is of critical importance in this patient group. Compared with the routine preoperative evaluation of surgery patients without cardiac disease, the renal transplant patient should be assessed to consider both short- and long-term cardiac outcomes. The goal of the preoperative cardiac evaluation is ultimately to decrease the morbidity and mortality associated with cardiovascular disease in kidney transplant candidates. Although decisions regarding candidacy in high-risk patients are usually made well before surgery, the anesthesiologist should be involved in the routine cardiac risk assessment of the kidney transplant patient before surgery. The major focus of the preoperative cardiovascular assessment in kidney transplant patients is to identify occult ischemic heart disease.

The 2014 American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association (ACC/AHA) Guideline on Perioperative Cardiovascular Evaluation and Management of Patients Undergoing Noncardiac Surgery recommends a preoperative algorithm designed to assist in the risk stratification of surgical patients. The stepwise algorithm includes identification of known CAD or CAD risk factors, estimation of the perioperative risk for major adverse cardiac events based on combined clinical and surgical risk factors, and determination of functional capacity. The decision to proceed with surgery or to undergo further noninvasive ischemia testing is contingent on functional capacity, scored by metabolic equivalent tasks (METS). No further testing is recommended when functional status is considered moderate or good (more than 4-10 METS) or excellent (more than 10 METS). If functional status is less than 4 METS or cannot be assessed, further ischemia testing may be considered.[28] The utility of published guidelines to detect patients with ischemic heart disease has been called into question in the kidney transplant population and, in contrast to the 2014 more general guidelines, in 2012, the AHA and the American College of Cardiology Foundation issued a scientific statement stating that the cardiac evaluation and management among kidney and liver transplantation patients should form the basis of the long-term evaluation of the transplant patient.[29] Silent myocardial ischemia may occur more frequently in patients with ESRD than in the general population, making the detection of unstable coronary syndromes more difficult. One study reported that chest pain presenting at the time of acute myocardial infarction was less common in patients with ESRD requiring dialysis compared with patients not using dialysis (44% vs. 68%).[30] Decreased functional status might not be a specific or sensitive indicator of cardiovascular risk in kidney transplant candidates, and many ESRD patients are unable to exercise secondary to deconditioning. One study of kidney transplant candidates examined the effectiveness of various guidelines to detect asymptomatic CAD. The authors determined that if the 2014 ACC/AHA guidelines had been strictly applied to this group of patients, only a small proportion of the candidates with documented myocardial ischemia on noninvasive testing would have been detected.[31] Finally, renal insufficiency is itself a CAD risk factor. The unique characteristics of ESRD patients, along with discrepancies among published guidelines, has called into question the applicability of available recommendations regarding cardiac testing in the kidney transplant population.[29]

Noninvasive testing methods for CAD have been well studied in the kidney transplant population, although most investigations consisted of small study populations. In studies that compared either dobutamine stress echocardiography (DSE) or myocardial perfusion imaging with angiography in patients with renal failure, both methods demonstrated decreased accuracy compared to their accuracy in nonrenal failure patients.[29,32] The response to coronary vasodilators appears to be decreased in ESRD patients with diabetes; this may contribute to false negative myocardial perfusion testing results.[33] Chronotropic incompetence may diminish the maximum heart rate response to dobutamine in patients with ESRD and left ventricular hypertrophy may limit detection of reversible wall motion abnormalities during echocardiographic stress testing.[34] Although noninvasive testing appears to be less reliable in kidney transplant patients compared to the general population, ischemia detected on noninvasive testing correlates with adverse cardiac events and mortality in patients with ESRD and in kidney transplant patients.[35,36] One meta-analysis that analyzed studies using either DSE or myocardial perfusion studies in patients with ESRD demonstrated that patients with inducible ischemia or fixed defects had a significantly increased risk of cardiac death compared with patients with normal tests.[37]

Although many guidelines and consensus-based recommendations regarding preoperative cardiac risk assessment in kidney transplant candidates have been published, there is no validated standardized approach.[29,38] A stepwise process including a comprehensive cardiovascular history and evaluation of signs and symptoms of advanced cardiac disease, assessment of functional status, and identification of risk factors should be reviewed.

A baseline electrocardiogram (ECG) is an appropriate initial screening test in most kidney transplant patients, especially in patients older than 40 years. ECG abnormalities associated with cardiac disease are common in patients with ESRD. A preoperative ECG should be obtained in patients with known CAD, peripheral vascular disease, and cardiac symptoms.[29] Noninvasive testing may be considered in asymptomatic patients with multiple risk factors for CAD. The most recent consensus document published in 2012 by the ACC/AHA provides recommendations for preoperative cardiac testing in kidney transplant candidates.[29] Noninvasive ischemia testing should be considered in candidates with three or more of the following risk factors: known cardiovascular disease, diabetes, dialysis for more than 1 year, age over 60 years, tobacco use, left ventricular hypertrophy, dyslipidemia, and hypertension. The authors also recommend that the decision to proceed with noninvasive testing based on the presence of the above risk factors should be made regardless of functional status in kidney transplant candidates.[29]

Preoperative assessment of left and right ventricular function by echocardiography is an appropriate test in most kidney transplant candidates.[29] The likelihood of structural cardiac abnormalities and the potential for left ventricular dysfunction in ESRD is significant, and transthoracic echocardiography provides detailed information regarding resting cardiac function and structure with minimal testing risk.

An increased prevalence of occult pulmonary hypertension, up to 40% reported in one series, occurs in patients receiving dialysis. The mechanism involves both uremia-induced pulmonary vasoconstriction and increased cardiac output secondary to an arteriovenous fistula. Pulmonary hypertension may be reversible after kidney transplantation. The identification of pulmonary hypertension is important because its presence in patients with ESRD is associated with decreased survival.[39] Right heart catheterization may be indicated in patients with evidence of significant pulmonary hypertension by echocardiography.

Patients with cardiac conditions may remain on transplant lists for many years before undergoing transplantation. During this time, cardiac disease can progress. Although routine periodic noninvasive screening in asymptomatic patients awaiting transplant is not warranted, patients with known cardiac disease should undergo regular repeat cardiac assessments although the frequency of assessments has not been defined.[29]

Cardiovascular medications should be reviewed during the preoperative evaluation in kidney transplant candidates, and the patient advised on which medications should be taken before surgery. Most patients with ESRD receive multiple medications for the chronic treatment of hypertension; however, the ideal combination of drugs is not clear. Strategies for the perioperative administration of antihypertensive blood pressure medications are important; however, the urgency of deceased-donor kidney transplantation often allows only the immediate preoperative administration of antihypertensive medications. The risks and benefits of initiating or maintaining perioperative medical therapy in surgical patients have been extensively reviewed in the most recent ACC/AHA guideline; β-blockers, statins, α-2 agonists, calcium channel blockers, and angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors were included.[28] There is limited information regarding perioperative antihypertensive therapy and its impact on survival in kidney transplant patients. In general, it is reasonable to apply current ACC/AHA recommendations regarding perioperative antihypertensive therapy in kidney transplant candidates.

As mentioned previously, there is an increasingly high prevalence of diabetes in the kidney transplant population. Perioperative hyperglycemia is associated with adverse outcomes in both diabetic and nondiabetic populations.[40] Perioperative glycemic therapy should be initiated in patients with diabetes who are undergoing kidney transplant, yet a benefit from strict blood glucose control in the kidney transplant population has not been demonstrated. Studies demonstrating the risks of hypoglycemic episodes in protocols employing “tight” glucose control in surgical and intensive care unit (ICU) patients suggest that conventional glycemic targets may be safer during the perioperative period.[41,42] Most medical society organizational guidelines recommend targeting blood glucose levels between 110 to 160 mg/dL and initiating insulin therapy for blood glucose levels over 180 mg/dL during the perioperative period.[40]

Day of Surgery

Prior to surgery, patients receiving hemodialysis should be maintained on their regular dialysis schedules. If possible, dialysis should be performed immediately prior to surgery. Preoperative laboratory assessment of electrolytes, complete blood count, and platelet count is necessary in all kidney transplant patients on the day of surgery. Documentation of an increased potassium level, especially with ECG changes consistent with hyperkalemia, should prompt consideration for the delay of surgery and for immediate dialysis to correct potassium levels. Preoperative vital signs should be closely assessed, especially heart rate and arterial blood pressure trends in hospitalized patients. Preoperative intravascular volume status should be assessed. Comparing the patient’s current weight to their known euvolemic weight, or “dry weight,” may be helpful. Orthostatic assessments and the presence of resting hypotension and increased heart rate may identify significant hypovolemia. Patients who have preoperative body weights heavier than their euvolemic weight may have an excessive intravascular volume and may be at risk for congestive heart failure during the perioperative period. A thorough cardiopulmonary examination is indicated in all patients, and findings of significant excessive intravascular volume may be an indication for immediate preoperative dialysis. On the day of surgery blood glucose levels should be measured; insulin therapy may be initiated in patients before surgery for significant hyperglycemia, with appropriate serial blood glucose measurements during the perioperative period. As in all types of surgery, orally administered antihyperglycemic medications should be withheld in patients with non–insulin-dependent diabetes. A type and screen or crossmatch for packed red blood cells should be obtained. Although major blood loss during routine kidney transplantation is not common, the surgery involves major vascular structures and catastrophic rapid bleeding can occur. Finally, in patients with known cardiac disease or in those with changes in cardiac symptoms, bedside ultrasound examination of cardiac structures may be indicated, particularly to assess for changes in ventricular function, valvular pathology, or pericardial disease.

ANESTHESIA FOR KIDNEY TRANSPLANT: INTRAOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

General anesthesia with endotracheal intubation is the preferred anesthetic method for kidney transplantation in most institutions. The goals of anesthesia are to facilitate an adequate depth of anesthesia while maintaining hemodynamic stability and to provide appropriate muscle relaxation to facilitate surgical conditions. As mentioned previously, patients with ESRD are considered at risk for aspiration of gastric contents secondary to the presence of uremic gastropathy and other conditions, such as obesity and diabetes. An oral nonparticulate antacid and intravenous administration of an H-2 blocker may be considered before induction of anesthesia. A rapid-sequence induction of anesthesia is the preferred method of induction for general anesthesia. Succinylcholine can be used safely in standard doses in patients with ESRD when potassium levels are within normal limits (usually < 5.5 mEq/L). Potassium transiently increases 0.5 to 1.0 mEq/L for 10 to 15 minutes before returning to baseline levels in patients with ESRD and those with normal renal function.[43] A modified rapid-sequence induction using rocuronium 0.8 to 1.2 mg/kg intravenously may be a substitute for succinylcholine when hyperkalemia or other contraindications to succinylcholine exist. Rocuronium should be used in ESRD with caution as the duration of action is prolonged. A meta-analysis of 26 studies that compared the intubating conditions produced by succinylcholine and rocuronium found that intubation conditions were clinically similar when propofol was used as the induction anesthetic.[44] The hemodynamic response to laryngoscopy may be accelerated in patients with ESRD with underlying chronic hypertension. Tachycardia and hypertension can be attenuated with supplemental short-acting agents or opioids titrated to effect. Following the stress of tracheal intubation, kidney transplant patients may develop hypotension before surgical incision, especially in patients who have been rendered hypovolemic from recent dialysis or in patients receiving renin-angiotensin blocking drugs.

Intraoperative monitoring may be limited to standard noninvasive monitors in younger, healthier transplant recipients and in select living donor recipients. Intraarterial blood pressure monitoring can be beneficial, especially in patients with uncontrolled hypertension, CAD, or heart failure. A radial arterial catheter, if used, is placed contralateral to a preexisting arteriovenous fistula and the femoral artery is typically avoided. Femoral access on the side selected for implantation is contraindicated due to the risk of hematoma or thrombosis adversely affecting the implanted graft. It is important to assess the risk versus benefit of arterial access in ESRD patients, as upper extremity arterial lines may jeopardize future arteriovenous access for dialysis. Pulmonary artery (PA) catheter or transesophageal echocardiographic monitoring may be considered in patients with advanced CAD, left or right ventricular dysfunction, and pulmonary hypertension but is rarely indicated otherwise. Central venous pressure monitoring may be employed in some centers; however, central venous pressure is not a reliable monitor of fluid status or responsiveness.[45] The insertion of a central line provides reliable venous access for intravascular fluid resuscitation and transfusion, easy blood sampling, and access for administration of immunosuppression drugs and vasoactive infusions. In patients without a preexisting arteriovenous fistula or dialysis catheter, a central line allows urgent postoperative dialysis, if required. Many centers find central line insertion unnecessary; the risks and benefits of central line placement should be considered. Large-bore venous access is necessary for appropriate intravascular volume administration. Intravenous access can be challenging in some kidney transplant patients, as intravenous sites may be limited by the presence of an upper extremity arteriovenous fistula. Conversely, central venous access may be difficult to accomplish in patients with ESRD who have undergone multiple previous central venous dialysis catheter placements, especially if central venous thrombosis has been documented.

Maintenance of anesthesia is typically performed using a combination of intravenous and inhaled anesthetics. Volatile inhaled anesthetics are titrated to the level of surgical stimulation. Desflurane and isoflurane are not associated with nephrotoxicity. Although sevoflurane has potential nephrotoxic effects from the metabolites compound A and fluoride ion, detrimental effects on renal function have not been demonstrated in patients with renal insufficiency.[46,47] Although large prospective studies are lacking in kidney transplant patients, the use of sevoflurane during kidney transplantation appears to be a reasonable anesthetic choice.

Analgesia during the intraoperative period can be provided with the synthetic opioids fentanyl, sufentanil, alfentanil, and remifentanil because their pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics are not affected by renal insufficiency. Morphine, oxycodone, and meperidine should be used sparingly in patients with renal failure because these drugs have active metabolites that accumulate in these patients.

Appropriate neuromuscular blockade during kidney transplantation may facilitate optimal surgical conditions; however, recovery from neuromuscular blockade may be variable in patients with ESRD regardless of the drug used.[48] Vecuronium and rocuronium have prolonged durations of action in renal failure patients, because their clearances rely both on renal and hepatic metabolism. Cisatracurium is likely the muscle relaxant of choice in patients with ESRD, because it undergoes organ-independent clearance. Pancuronium is primarily eliminated by the kidneys, and probably should be avoided in patients with renal failure. For patients with ESRD who are undergoing kidney transplantation, judicious use of neuromuscular blocking drugs is a necessity. Titration to surgical conditions and close monitoring of the level of neuromuscular blockade are crucial.

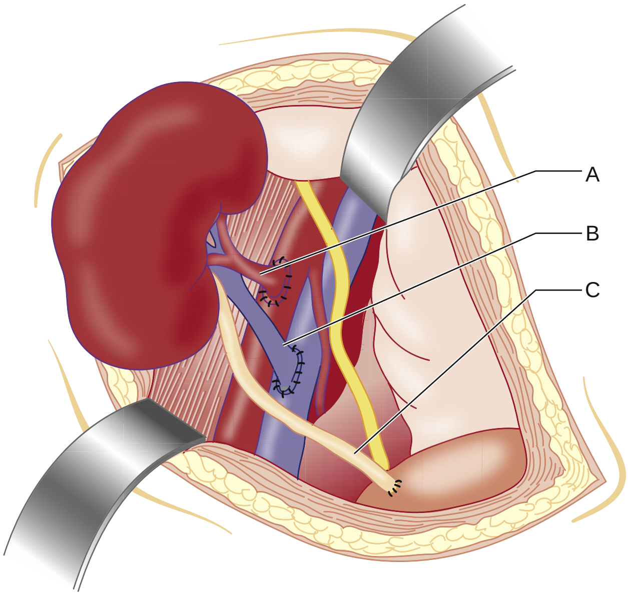


Fig. 60.6 Renal transplantation. *A,* Renal artery anastomosis performed end-to-side to the external iliac artery. *B,* Renal vein anastomosis performed end-to-side to the external iliac vein. *C,* Ureteral anastomosis to the bladder mucosa. (From Hardy JD. *Hardy's Textbook of Surgery*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1988.)

The surgical procedure involves placement of the renal allograft in the left or right extraperitoneal fossa, although the right side is usually preferred (Fig. 60.6). A vertical curvilinear incision 20 to 25 cm long is typically made, extending from the pubis symphysis to above the anterior superior iliac spine. The abdominal musculature is divided, and the peritoneum is entered and retracted. During the initial incision and dissection, surgical stimulation is increased and hemodynamic responses may be exaggerated in some patients. Adequate analgesia, depth of anesthesia, and muscle relaxation should be appropriately titrated to effect. The external iliac vein and artery are identified and mobilized. Occasionally, different vascular structures are chosen for the renal anastomoses. Heparin may be administered before clamping of the vessels. The external iliac vein is clamped first, and the renal vein anastomosis is performed. Next, the external iliac artery is clamped and the renal artery anastomosis is performed. During the anastomoses of the renal vessels, expansion of intravascular volume with balanced salt solutions should be initiated. Furosemide and mannitol are administered before reperfusion to stimulate diuresis. Mannitol, along with adequate intravascular volume resuscitation, decreases the likelihood of acute tubular necrosis in renal transplantation.[49] Adequate intravascular volume expansion with crystalloid or colloids increases renal blood flow, which improves immediate graft function.[48] At the time of removal of the vascular clamps, additional intravascular volume expansion may be required to stabilize hemodynamics. On rare occasions, removal of vascular clamps may be associated with acute bleeding requiring further resuscitation and transfusion. Hypotension following reperfusion will result in hypoperfusion of the graft. Hypotension may precipitate renal injury owing to ischemia and can contribute to vascular thrombosis of the graft. Appropriate decreases in the depth of volatile anesthetic and volume expansion will maintain adequate renal perfusion pressures in most patients. In the event of hypotension, adrenergic vasopressors are typically avoided because of renal vasoconstrictive effects. Hypotension unresponsive to volume expansion may require interventions to increase cardiac output, especially in high-risk patients. Invasive hemodynamic monitoring is invaluable in this situation. Inotropic agents may be necessary to maintain renal perfusion pressure; there is no consensus regarding which agent is preferred in kidney transplant patients. After completion of the vascular anastomoses, the donor graft ureter is implanted into the recipient bladder. The bladder is filled with antibiotic saline irrigation solution by way of a three-way Foley catheter, allowing for implantation of the donor ureter. A temporary ureteral stent may be placed as well. After completion of the bladder anastomosis, the wound is closed in layers. Neuromuscular blockade should be maintained until the fascial layer has been closed to prevent straining or coughing that could potentially disrupt the graft position or vascular connections. During emergence, exaggerated hemodynamic responses are common, especially in patients with poorly controlled hypertension. Appropriate titration of short-acting drugs to attenuate these responses upon emergence is helpful, especially in patients at risk for CAD. Careful neuromuscular blockade monitoring and appropriate administration of reversal agents are central to avoiding postoperative pulmonary complications. Sugammadex, a binding agent specific for rocuronium, forms an inactive complex that is primarily cleared by the kidneys. Clearance of this complex is reduced in ESRD patients, although removal of this complex using dialysis has been demonstrated.[50] Sugammadex has been shown to be clinically effective in ESRD patients, however its safety has not yet been demonstrated in kidney transplant populations.[51] ESRD patients may demonstrate delayed emergence from anesthesia and have exaggerated responses to opioids and sedative-hypnotics. Extubation of the trachea should occur after the patient demonstrates the ability to protect the airway, because kidney transplant patients are still considered a risk for aspiration of gastric contents at the completion of surgery.

ANESTHESIA FOR KIDNEY TRANSPLANT: POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

After extubation of the trachea, the kidney transplant recipient requires careful monitoring in the postanesthesia care unit. Close monitoring of urine output in the initial postoperative period is important. Acute decreases in urine output should initiate a rapid evaluation of the etiology and appropriate treatment. A prerenal etiology should be treated with aggressive intravascular volume resuscitation. In some patients, additional invasive hemodynamic monitoring may be required. Postrenal etiologies owing to technical problems with the ureteral anastomosis may require early surgical re-exploration. Postoperative surgical complications include vascular thromboses, wound hematomas, and infection. Nonsurgical cardiovascular, pulmonary, and gastrointestinal postoperative complications are not unusual after kidney transplant; one institution reported a 90-day severe postoperative complication rate of 15%.[52] High-risk patients with advanced cardiac and pulmonary disease may require further postoperative monitoring in the intensive care setting. In general, postoperative intensive care admissions for kidney transplant recipients are much less common than for liver and kidney-pancreas transplant recipients. One single-center study found a 6% rate of ICU admission following kidney transplant. The mortality rate in kidney transplant patients that required intensive care admission was higher than in nontransplant ICU patients.[53]

Postoperative pain control is usually provided with synthetic opioid analgesics without active metabolites. Pain after kidney transplant is highly variable; in some patients, pain may be severe and challenging to treat effectively. Renal failure alters the pharmacology of most opioid medications; dose reductions are generally required in renal failure patients. In addition, chronic underlying pain conditions and opioid dependence may impact postoperative pain following kidney transplant; chronic pain conditions occur in 40% to 60% of dialysis patients.[54] Patient-controlled opioid analgesia is commonly initiated in the postanesthesia care unit and continued for 24 to 48 hours. Regional anesthesia for kidney transplantation is controversial. One report demonstrated effective postoperative analgesia in kidney transplant recipients with epidural analgesia, however concerns for uremic coagulopathy and hypotension have limited its widespread use in kidney transplant patients.[55] Although transversus abdominis plane block has been advocated for postoperative analgesia in kidney transplant patients, results from randomized controlled trials have been inconsistent.[56-58]

ORGAN MATCHING AND ALLOCATION

Organ matching for kidney transplantation involves several steps to determine compatibility between donor and recipient. Initially, matching of the major ABO blood group is determined for all donors and recipients. Before the transplant surgery, a crossmatch is performed by mixing recipient blood with donor blood cells. This crossmatch is performed to identify any recipient antibodies that are reactive against donor antigens. Histocompatibility matching is an important part of the matching process, in which the human lymphocyte antigen (HLA) profile of the recipient is determined and compared with the HLA profile of the donor. Organ rejection by the recipient's immune system is mediated by the recognition of mismatched (non-self) HLAs located on the surface of donor cells. Many standard HLAs are compared between potential donors and recipients before transplantation. In general, graft survival rates are worse with HLA-mismatched grafts. Although better immunosuppression has improved the overall survival rates for kidney transplants during the past 3 decades, the graft loss rate for HLA-mismatched kidneys has remained higher than HLA-matched grafts.[59] For all potential recipients awaiting a deceased donor, their HLA profile is compared to the donor profile, and an appropriate donor-recipient pairing is made based on the best match. For living donors, HLA matching is performed well in advance of the surgery. The U.S. kidney allocation system implemented in 2014 prioritizes deceased donor transplantation for highly sensitized candidates, a group of candidates that have previously endured prolonged waitlist times before receiving organ offers. One-year analysis of the new kidney allocation system demonstrated a fourfold increase in the transplant rate for highly sensitized candidates with an overall 6-month graft survival rate that matched the years prior.[11]

ANESTHESIA FOR PATIENTS AFTER KIDNEY TRANSPLANTATION

After successful kidney transplantation, most patients are classified as having National Kidney Foundation stage 2 or 3 CKD with usual GFRs more than 30 mL/min. GFR typically deteriorates by 1.4 to 2.4 mL/min/year in renal transplant recipients.[60] Posttransplant mortality increases as renal graft function deteriorates. Renal function is followed closely within the first few years after transplant to assess for rejection, which is identified by worsening organ function. In post–kidney transplant patients undergoing nontransplant surgery, renal function should be assessed before surgery. Most patients will be under the care of a nephrologist within the first years of a kidney transplant; assessment of the patient's medical records or renal function tests should be obtained preoperatively. Rejection should be ruled out before nontransplant surgery, as surgery during an episode of rejection can increase morbidity.[61]

Although successful kidney transplantation decreases overall cardiovascular risk in ESRD patients, cardiovascular disease is more prevalent in kidney transplant recipients compared to the general population and remains the most common cause of death in kidney transplant patients.[62] As described previously, cardiovascular disease is involved in the pathogenesis of renal failure and is a consequence of kidney disease as well. Ischemic heart disease, cerebrovascular disease, and peripheral vascular disease significantly affect the survival of kidney transplant patients. Progression of preexisting CAD can occur in the posttransplant patient, as immunosuppression contributes to the development of de novo hyperlipidemia, hypertension, and diabetes. The incidences of hypertension (92%), hyperlipidemia (66%), diabetes (41%), and obesity (38%) are increased in kidney transplant recipients.[63] Known CAD in kidney transplant recipients has been documented in 10 centers worldwide and 20% of selected populations, but the prevalence of CAD likely increases in the years following transplant.[63,64] Because long-term studies on cardiac outcomes following nontransplant surgery in kidney transplant recipients are lacking, there are no specific recommendations for cardiovascular evaluations in kidney transplant recipients. For previous kidney transplant patients undergoing nontransplant surgery, the ACC/AHA guideline for perioperative cardiovascular evaluation for noncardiac surgery should be used to guide preoperative cardiovascular testing.[28]

Other disease processes related to kidney disease and immunosuppression should be sought. Kidney transplant patients are at increased risk for posttransplant malignancies, anemia, and osteodystrophy. Infection is a constant concern in kidney transplant recipients, because they are at risk for both opportunistic and community-acquired infections. Cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection is the most common infection in kidney transplant patients, and it is rarely acquired by transfusion. CMV-negative blood should be used when transfusions are required in patients who are CMV negative.

Anesthesia for nontransplant surgery can be accomplished safely with general, regional, and local sedation techniques. Most anesthetic drugs are safe in posttransplant patients, assuming the presence of adequate hepatic and renal function.[61] Although preoperative creatinine may be near normal in kidney transplant recipients, GFR in these patients is usually reduced, resulting in prolongation of the activity of drugs cleared by the kidneys. Obviously, drugs that cause nephrotoxicity should be avoided.

Pancreas Transplantation

Surgical treatment for diabetes includes pancreas transplant alone (PTA) and, in patients with diabetes and ESRD, pancreas after kidney transplant (PAK) and simultaneous pancreas-kidney transplant (SPK). Usually, a whole pancreas is transplanted from deceased donors. Less commonly, the distal pancreas is transplanted from a living donor. Islet cell transplant from a cadaveric donor is a new, nonsurgical option offering less effective glycemic control. This involves infusion of β cells into the portal vein, typically done under sedation in an imaging unit.[65]

The first successful pancreas transplant was performed in 1966. Due to improvements in surgical technique, donor-recipient matching, graft surveillance, and immunosuppression, pancreas transplant graft survival has improved and now matches graft survival rates of kidney and liver transplant.[66] In 2016, the United States reported rates of 90-day graft survival were 92% for PAK, 91% for PTA, and 92% for SPK, all improved from 10 years prior.[67] Worldwide, pancreas transplant rates increased during the 1990s as outcomes improved. Despite these improvements, the rates of pancreas transplants in the United States peaked in the early 2000s and declined steadily thereafter.[66] However, in 2016 there was a total of 1013 pancreas transplants in the United States, the majority SPKs. This represented a 7% increase in total pancreas transplants from the year prior, the first yearly increase in more than 10 years. This increase was likely a result of changes made to the U.S. pancreas allocation system that were implemented in 2014.[67] These changes included creation of a distinct SPK waitlist separate from the kidney waitlist, allowing the pancreas candidate access to the kidney from the same pancreas donor. Additionally, all pancreas transplant candidates are placed on a single waitlist and given equal priority to pancreas donors, regardless of the type of pancreas transplant they are to receive.[66] Despite this increase in total transplants, the U.S. pancreas transplant waitlist continues to increase with 957 new candidates added in 2016.[67]

INDICATIONS FOR PANCREAS AND KIDNEY-PANCREAS TRANSPLANTATION

Pancreas transplantation provides patients with insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus a permanent source of endogenous insulin, thus restoring normoglycemia. SPK and PAK transplants are indicated in patients with diabetes and ESRD who are deemed appropriate candidates for kidney transplantation or who have already undergone kidney transplantation. PTA is indicated in patients with diabetes without indications for kidney transplantation and who have a history of severe frequent metabolic complications, including hypoglycemia unawareness, or who have a history of problems maintaining insulin therapy that result in intractable diabetic complications.[65,68] Most patients who undergo pancreas transplant have type 1 diabetes mellitus. Rare indications for pancreas transplant include select cases of type 2 diabetes mellitus, chronic pancreatitis that has developed endocrine deficiency, cystic fibrosis with endocrine deficiency, and prior total pancreatectomy.

Previously pancreas transplant was reserved for younger patients, traditionally under age 40. For patients with diabetes and ESRD, older data found that SPK patients younger than 50 years had better reported survival rates than older patients.[69] Recently, pancreas transplant has been considered for candidates over age 50, corresponding with population trends toward more aging diabetic patients. Recent single-center studies have demonstrated similar results in pancreas transplant recipients over age 50 compared to younger patients.[70,71] These results suggest a future role for pancreas transplant expanded to older populations, a trend that has been observed in other solid organ transplant populations.[66] Regardless of patient age, survival benefits in SPK are likely due to long-term decrease in CAD complications.[72]

For patients with normal renal function who undergo PTA, long-term survival is the same as in patients receiving chronic insulin therapy.[73] Pancreas transplant appears to have a favorable effect on the progression of retinopathy as well. The progression of retinopathy is decreased or reversed in a significant percentage of PTA patients compared to diabetic patients treated with conventional insulin therapy.[74]

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF PANCREATIC INSUFFICIENCY

Type 1 diabetes mellitus occurs secondary to destruction of pancreatic islet cells resulting in a permanent functional loss of the endogenous production of insulin, necessitating life-long exogenous insulin therapy. The underlying cause of type 1 diabetes mellitus remains unknown. Type 2 diabetes mellitus results from peripheral resistance to the effects of insulin. Both diseases produce chronic increases of blood glucose concentrations resulting in the multiorgan manifestations of diabetes.

The chronic complications of diabetes that have the greatest effect on patient morbidity and survival are those that affect the cardiovascular system. CAD, cerebrovascular disease, and peripheral vascular disease occur in patients with diabetes owing to acceleration of atherosclerosis. Both macrovascular and microvascular disease occurs. Patients with diabetes develop CAD earlier, are more likely to have atypical symptoms, and have a higher mortality rate from myocardial infarction than nondiabetics.[75] Peripheral and autonomic neuropathies develop in diabetes, resulting in gastroparesis, lower extremity paresthesia, ulcerations, orthostatic hypotension, and labile heart rate and arterial blood pressure. Patients with diabetes have a high cumulative prevalence of blindness (16%), renal failure (22%), lower extremity amputation (12%), myocardial infarction (21%), and stroke (10%).[76]

Acute complications of type 1 diabetes mellitus typically involve conditions associated with severe hyperglycemia, such as diabetic ketoacidosis and hyperglycemic hyperosmolar nonketotic coma. Hypoglycemia is a direct result of exogenous insulin administration. Patients with type 1 diabetes are prone to large fluctuations in blood glucose levels. Hypoglycemic episodes contribute to acute morbidity and mortality in diabetic patients. Hypoglycemia unawareness in particular can have a marked impact on quality of life and is a frequent indication for pancreas transplant.

ANESTHESIA FOR PANCREAS TRANSPLANTATION: PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION

The preoperative evaluation for the patient undergoing pancreas transplantation involves an assessment of all of the potential acute and chronic complications of type 1 diabetes. Pancreas transplant centers pursue a comprehensive, multidisciplinary evaluation and selection process before listing candidates. The evaluation should address the organ systems most affected by long-standing diabetes, including the cardiovascular, renal, and neurologic systems. Assessment for the presence and severity of CAD should be undertaken in all candidates, including noninvasive ischemia testing, evaluation of ventricular function, and coronary angiography in select patients. Previously, patients considered for pancreas transplantation were younger than 50 years and had a lower risk for the cardiac and vascular sequelae of diabetes. Older patients are now considered for pancreas transplantation, but have a significantly higher risk for CAD and vascular disease.[77] Strategies to reduce cardiac complications, such as maintenance of β-adrenergic blockade and continuation of drugs that decrease blood lipid concentrations during the perioperative period, should be applied when appropriate.[28]

In most cases, pancreas transplantation involves a deceased-donor organ with a 24-hour maximum cold ischemia time; therefore, pancreas transplantation is considered an urgent procedure. Preoperative evaluation by the anesthesiologist should focus on any acute changes in the patient's medical status, especially those involving acute diabetic complications such as ketoacidosis and hypoglycemia. Blood glucose measurements should be assessed closely before surgery and recent insulin administration should be noted. Most patients will have a preoperative variable-rate intravenous infusion of insulin with maintenance glucose during a period of fasting. Evaluation of renal function in all candidates is important before surgery. Most patients with diabetes listed for pancreas transplant have ESRD as well and will undergo SPK. A full evaluation of electrolytes, including creatinine and potassium, should be obtained before surgery. Serial trends in heart rates and arterial blood pressures in hospitalized patients should be assessed, as most patients will have a history of hypertension requiring multiple medications, especially patients with renal failure. Preoperative assessment of intravascular volume status is especially important in patients with ESRD on hemodialysis. Finally, a directed physical examination focusing on the airway and cardiopulmonary system should be performed. The incidence of difficult tracheal intubations in patients with long-standing diabetes was thought to be more frequent because of anatomic changes of the upper airway; however recent data does not demonstrate this.[78,79] Nevertheless, attention to anatomic signs of a potentially difficult airway is important in patients with diabetes, especially those with cervical arthritis and significant obesity.

ANESTHESIA FOR PANCREAS TRANSPLANTATION: INTRAOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

General anesthesia with endotracheal intubation is performed for all types of pancreas transplantation except islet cell transplant, which is usually done under sedation in an interventional radiology setting. The surgical procedure is typically prolonged, and an adequate depth of anesthesia and muscle relaxation is required for optimal surgical conditions. Diabetic patients and those with ESRD have a high likelihood of gastropathy and may have an increased risk for aspiration of gastric contents. Administration of an oral nonparticulate antacid preoperatively should be considered. A rapid-sequence induction of anesthesia is the safest approach to securing the airway. Patients with diabetes, ESRD, cardiovascular disease, and autonomic neuropathy may be prone to wide fluctuations in heart rate and arterial blood pressure during induction and intubation. Vital signs should be closely monitored and maintenance of hemodynamic stability should be a primary anesthetic goal, especially during and immediately following anesthetic induction. Invasive monitoring is standard for pancreas transplantation. Arterial monitoring allows for beat-to-beat arterial blood pressure measurements, as well as access for analysis of arterial blood gases and blood glucose monitoring. Central venous access may be indicated for central administration of vasoactive infusions and immunosuppression drugs. Large-bore venous access is essential, and a temporary dialysis catheter may be useful for both resuscitation and postoperative dialysis if preexisting dialysis access is absent.

Central venous pressure monitoring is used in some centers; however, the usefulness of this practice has been questioned, as central venous pressure might not be a reliable indicator of intravascular fluid responsiveness.[45] Arterial line placement before induction of anesthesia may be considered, especially in patients with severe hypertension or CAD. Anesthesia is typically maintained with a balanced technique using volatile anesthetics, opioids, and muscle relaxants. In patients with renal failure, medications should be chosen that are not dependent on the kidneys for elimination. All the caveats for the anesthetic management of patients undergoing kidney transplantation should be applied for patients undergoing SPK.

A midline surgical incision is made for both pancreas and kidney-pancreas transplant surgeries. Extensive retraction necessitates adequate muscle relaxation. Prolonged exposure of the abdominal viscera results in significant third-space losses; adequate volume expansion with crystalloid or colloids is often required. The pancreas graft is usually placed in the iliac fossa. The arterial vascular supply to the pancreas graft is usually provided by an anastomosis to the iliac artery. Usually the venous outflow from the pancreas is delivered to the iliac vein, which is associated with a lower rate of venous thrombosis. Alternatively, venous outflow may be directed to the native portal vein, which is the physiologically normal pattern of pancreatic venous efflux. There appears to be no significant advantage to portal venous drainage over systemic venous drainage for pancreas transplantation.[72]

Pancreatic exocrine drainage can be delivered to either the bladder or the intestine (Fig. 60.7). Although enteric pancreatic drainage is physiologically normal, this method is associated with surgical complications that can result in graft dysfunction, thrombosis, and early rejection. Exocrine drainage to the bladder allows for measurement of urinary amylase levels, which can be used to diagnose early rejection episodes before blood glucose levels are affected. Exocrine bladder drainage is associated with urologic complications and metabolic acidosis. Currently, most pancreas transplants utilize enteric drainage as there is no difference in graft or patient survival compared to bladder drainage.[80]

Prior to completion of the vascular anastomoses during pancreas transplantation, blood glucose levels should be assessed at least hourly as levels frequently fluctuate in brittle diabetic patients. Blood glucose should be maintained at less than 200 mg/dL, using intravenous insulin and dextrose infusions if necessary. Sliding scale insulin infusion protocols may be applied. Dextrose prevents the development of ketoacidosis during the early stages of the procedure. However, some centers stop insulin infusion when the pancreas comes out of ice, re-starting after reperfusion only if hyperglycemia is observed. Before unclamping of the vascular anastomoses, adequate volume resuscitation should be initiated. Adequate cardiac preload and normal arterial blood pressures should be the hemodynamic goals before unclamping.

After unclamping of the vascular connections, heavy bleeding can occur. This is typically from retroperitoneal and mesocolonic collaterals that are missed during cold dissection on the back table. Maintenance of adequate graft perfusion pressure is critical. Hypotension should be corrected rapidly, and intravascular volume status should be optimized. If hypotension occurs because of myocardial dysfunction, intracardiac pressure monitoring or transesophageal echocardiography can assist in the diagnosis and may help to guide therapy. Blood transfusions, colloids, and vasoactive medications may be required for the treatment of hypotension after reperfusion of the pancreatic graft. Therapy should also be guided by frequent arterial blood gas analyses with assessment of electrolytes and hemoglobin.

One of the most important intraoperative care points for pancreas transplantation is the management of blood glucose following pancreas reperfusion. After unclamping, the pancreas may release insulin into the circulation within several minutes. Blood glucose should be measured

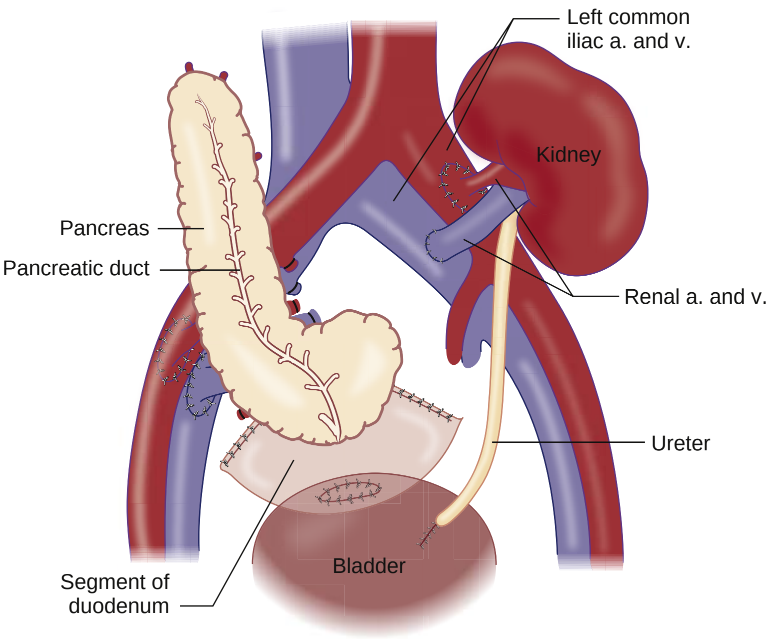


Fig. 60.7 Pancreas transplantation. Bladder drainage is through a pancreatic duodenocystostomy. A renal transplant is shown with the common iliac vessels used for vascular anastomoses. (Modified from Moody FG, ed. *Surgical Treatment of Digestive Diseases*. 2nd ed. St Louis: Mosby–Yearbook; 1990.)

approximately every 30 minutes for the remainder of the procedure. After successful transplantation, insulin requirements rapidly decline, and patients may be at risk for hypoglycemia. Delayed graft function can be identified by the presence of hyperglycemia. In this event, insulin infusion should be titrated to maintain blood glucose levels less than 200 mg/dL.[76]

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT OF PANCREAS TRANSPLANTATION: POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

After the completion of surgery, full reversal of neuromuscular blockade, hemodynamic stability, normothermia, and the ability of the patient to protect the airway will facilitate tracheal extubation. Pancreas transplant patients should be monitored closely in the postanesthesia care unit and ICU. Regular blood glucose measurements should be continued in the postoperative period to avoid hypoglycemia. Electrolytes, complete blood count, and analysis of arterial blood gas should be obtained immediately postoperatively, because acid-base disturbances, anemia, and electrolyte imbalances are common. Euvolemia should be maintained. Depending on the patient's age and underlying risk for CAD, serial troponins and ECG may be assessed for the presence of myocardial ischemia or infarction, because cardiac symptoms may be lacking in this population. Postoperative pain can be severe, given the extensive surgical wound and duration of surgery. Postoperative pain usually is managed with opioids in the perioperative period with transition to patient-controlled analgesia in the early postoperative period. Epidural analgesia may be appropriate for pancreas transplant recipients, although the risks of hypotension, dilutional coagulopathy, and spinal cord hypoperfusion in patients who may have severe microvascular disease have not been quantified. For SPK, the usual postoperative strategies for kidney transplant patients including close monitoring of urine output should be applied.

Surgical complications occur in 7% to 9% of all pancreas transplants and usually require reoperation. Technical complications are associated with the potential for graft loss and patient morbidity.[81] Unlike kidney transplantation, technical complications are the most common cause of pancreas transplant graft failure in the first year after surgery. Graft thrombosis is the most important early complication and requires emergent surgical exploration. Intraabdominal bleeding can occur secondary to coagulopathy induced by anticoagulation for the treatment of graft thrombosis. Late complications include bladder or enteric leaks, intraabdominal sepsis, and rejection. Rejection is the most common cause of long-term graft loss after 1 year and occurs in 15% to 21% of pancreas transplant recipients within 1 year of surgery.[82]

ORGAN MATCHING AND ALLOCATION

The organ matching process for pancreas transplantation is similar to that for kidney transplant organ matching. Blood group and HLA matching are initially performed to match the donor and recipient, followed by a crossmatch at the time of surgery. Most organs allocated for pancreas transplantation are for diabetic recipients younger than 40 years. However, over the past decade, the average transplant recipient's age has increased because of the allocation of more organs for patients with type 2 diabetes.[77] In 2016, the number of pancreas transplants performed in patients over age 50 increased to 240 from 185 the year prior, corresponding with an increase in type 2 diabetics undergoing pancreas transplants.[67]

ANESTHESIA FOR PATIENTS AFTER PANCREAS TRANSPLANTATION

After successful pancreas transplantation, long-term normoglycemia is expected. For patients with a history of previous pancreas transplant presenting for surgery, a comprehensive posttransplant history of any episodes of surgical complications and episodes of rejection should be obtained. Blood glucose concentrations should be measured on the day of surgery. A detailed history and review of medical records focusing on CAD, renal disease, and vascular disease is critical. Although the end-organ progression of diabetes is favorably impacted by pancreas transplant, pancreas transplant patients have a high prevalence of these conditions compared to the general population. Disease progression can occur despite successful pancreas transplantation. Therefore, the preoperative cardiac evaluation for the post-pancreas transplant patient undergoing surgery should be guided by ACC/AHA Guideline.[28]

Liver Transplantation

In 1963, shortly after the effectiveness of azathioprine and prednisone was established for renal transplantation, Dr. Thomas Starzl performed the first human liver transplant.[83] The recipient, a 3-year-old child with biliary atresia, died in the operating room from massive hemorrhage caused by venous collaterals and uncontrollable coagulopathy. Four years later, Starzl performed the first successful transplant in an 18-month-old infant with hepatocellular carcinoma. The advent of cyclosporine in 1979, followed by the 1983 pronouncement of the National Institutes of Health Consensus Conference that liver transplantation was no longer experimental, ushered in the era of liver transplantation. Over the ensuing decades, liver transplantation centers were established around the world, and the field matured following continued improvements in surgical technique, immunosuppression, and the management of coagulopathy and infections.

The number of disciplines that have contributed to the advances in liver transplantation illustrates the team approach involved in the care of the liver transplant recipient. Hepatologists, surgeons, nephrologists, specialists in critical care medicine and infectious disease, anesthesiologists, pediatricians, radiologists, and pathologists have important roles. Key team members extend beyond physicians and include transplant coordinators, nurses, blood bank personnel, and procurement organizations.

Liver transplantation is unique among abdominal organ transplants in that a dedicated team is typically involved because of the unique challenges encountered during liver transplant surgery. The United Network of Organ Sharing (UNOS), which manages the U.S. organ transplant system under contract with the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, recognizes the important role of anesthesiologists in the perioperative care of liver transplant candidates. In 2011, UNOS instituted a requirement that U.S. liver transplant programs designate a Director of Liver Transplant Anesthesia who meets qualifications based on experience and training. These qualifications parallel similar requirements for the transplant surgeon and physician (hepatologist). In addition, UNOS delineated the clinical responsibilities of the Director of Liver Transplant Anesthesia, which include preoperative assessment of transplant candidates, participation in candidate selection, intraoperative management, postoperative visits, and participation in mortality and morbidity conferences.[84] Lastly, the director is expected to maintain current knowledge in the field of transplant anesthesia by participating in continuing medical education activities related to transplantation.

INDICATIONS FOR LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

Liver transplantation is the only definitive treatment for decompensated cirrhosis secondary to hepatitis C virus (HCV) and alcoholic liver disease, unresectable primary hepatic malignancies, acute liver failure (ALF), and metabolic disease including non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). Of these indications, the category other, which includes patients with NAFLD, accounted for nearly a third (31%) of adult liver transplants performed in the United States in 2016, followed by alcoholic liver disease (24%), HCV (18%), hepatocellular carcinoma (14%), cholestatic disease (9%), and ALF (3%) (Fig. 60.8).

Chronic liver disease and cirrhosis is the fourth leading cause of death in the United States for individuals aged 45 to 64 years, accounting for 4.2% of deaths in this age group. It is surpassed only by cancer, heart disease, and accidents (unintentional injury). Among all age groups, liver disease accounted for more than 29,000 deaths in 2015, making it the 12th leading cause of death.[85]

TRENDS IN LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

The number of adult liver transplants in the United States increased to over 7800 in 2016, a 10% increase from the prior year and a doubling since 1998. European transplant centers perform a similar number of transplants per year (approximately 7000 in 2013) for similar indications.[86] The increase in transplants is attributable to an increased number of deceased donors. In 2016, graft survival continued to improve, with a 1-year failure rate of 10%. Five-year patient survival reported in 2016 was 86% in the United States, which represents an improvement from 74% reported in 2015.[87,88]

Advances in the treatment of chronic liver disease, particularly antiviral therapy, led to a declining number of transplants for hepatitis C, which as of 2016 was no longer the most common indication for liver transplantation.[87] Over the past decade, the proportion of transplants performed for obesity-related fatty liver (NAFLD) is increasing. With the sharp reduction in transplants for HCV, NAFLD has overtaken HCV as the most frequent indication for transplantation. However, despite these advances, when life-threatening complications of liver failure such as encephalopathy, ascites, gastrointestinal bleeding, or uremia develop, survival is significantly improved by liver transplantation (90% 1-year survival) compared with

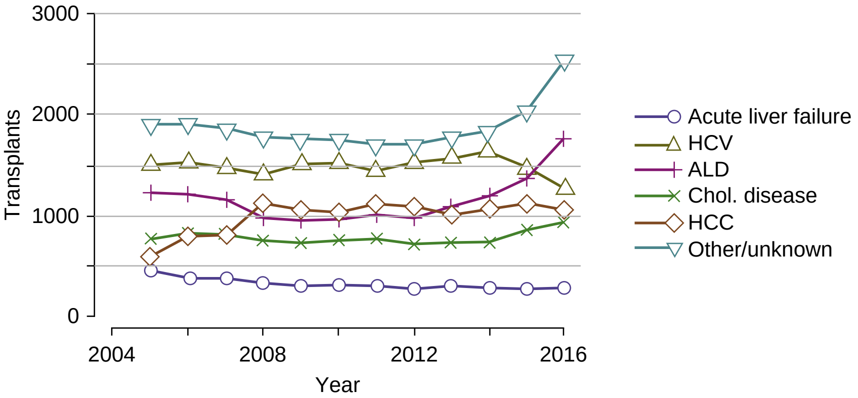


Fig. 60.8 U.S. total liver transplants by diagnosis, 2004–2016. *ALD,* Alcoholic liver disease; *Chol disease,* cholestatic disease; *HCC,* hepatocellular carcinoma; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus. (From Kim WR, Lake JR, Smith JM, et al. OPTN/SRTR 2016 Annual Data Report: Liver. *Am J Transplant*. 2018;18:172–253.)

TABLE 60.1 Prognosis: Complications of Cirrhosis

Event	Survival
Variceal bleeding	65%-70% at 1 year*
Ascites	48%-60% at 1 year†
Hepatorenal syndrome	50% at 3 months‡
Encephalopathy (grade 2/3)	40%-50% at 1 year§

Survival after complications is poor compared with 90% patient survival at 1 year after liver transplantation.

*Thomopoulos K, Theocharis G, Mimidis K, et al. Improved survival of patients presenting with acute variceal bleeding. Prognostic indicators of short- and long-term mortality. *Dig Liver Dis*. 2006;38:899–904.

†Fernández J, Navasa M, Planas R, et al. Primary prophylaxis of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis delays hepatorenal syndrome and improves survival in cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology*. 2007;133:818–824.

‡Alessandria C, Ozdogan O, Guevara M, et al. MELD score and clinical type predict prognosis in hepatorenal syndrome: relevance to liver transplantation. *Hepatology*. 2005;41:1282–1289.

§Stewart C, Malinchoc M, Kim W, et al. Hepatic encephalopathy as a predictor of survival in patients with end-stage liver disease. *Liver Transplant*. 2007;13:1366–1371.

medical therapy (Table 60.1). Referral for liver transplantation is appropriate in the presence of an index complication of cirrhosis.

During the past decade, the number of patients (adult and pediatric) living with a functioning liver transplant more than doubled, from 30,000 in 2001 to nearly 80,000 in 2015.[88,89]

The median time to transplant in the United States for the period ending in 2015 was 11.3 months, the shortest waiting time in recent history.[87]

Over the past decade, the proportion of recipients aged 65 years or older continued to increase. This age group received over 20% of liver transplants performed in the United States in 2015.[87]

Despite an increase in organs available, the number of waitlisted candidates has exceeded 13,000 for each of the last 3 years. Waitlist mortality remains a concern with 10% to 12% mortality over the same period.[87] Responses to these concerns have resulted in the use of expanded-criteria donors, including grafts donated after cardiac death, which increased from less than 2% of liver transplants in 2001 to 6% in 2011, where it remained in 2015.[87] Living donation has decreased over the past 10 years, particularly for adult recipients. In 2001, more than 400 living donor grafts were transplanted into adult recipients. In 2015, fewer than 300 adults received living donor grafts. This change highlights the concern over postoperative complications in living donors, particularly those providing a larger liver mass, as is the case with right lobe donation. Two living donor deaths were reported in 2010, further illustrating the risk to living donors.

The number of pediatric liver transplants in the United States has been stable at 500 to 600 per year over the past several years (2002-2015). During the same period, approximately 10% to 15% of pediatric recipients in the United States received grafts from living donors, down from 20% to 25% in the prior decade.[89] The most common indication for transplant in pediatric recipients is cholestatic disease (43%), followed by metabolic disease (15%), ALF (4%), and hepatoblastoma (2%).[87] The European Liver Transplant Registry reports similar numbers of pediatric recipients, approximately 10% of the total number of liver recipients.[90]

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY AND EVALUATION FOR LISTING

Cirrhosis is the end product of chronic parenchymal inflammation and necrosis, which results in fibrosis and disruption of hepatic architecture. Resistance to blood flow leads to portal hypertension and the formation of vascular shunts between portal and systemic veins.[91] When the pressure gradient between the portal and hepatic veins exceeds 10 to 12 mm Hg, portal hypertension is severe, and complications such as ascites, esophageal variceal bleeding, encephalopathy, and hepatorenal syndrome (HRS) occur. Decompensated cirrhosis affects nearly every other organ system.[92] The preoperative assessment of liver transplant candidates requires a knowledge of the pathophysiologic changes associated with decompensated cirrhosis.

Cardiovascular Complications

Hyperdynamic circulation—characterized by a high cardiac output, low arterial blood pressure, and low systemic vascular resistance—is the hallmark of end-stage liver disease. Patients appear well perfused despite systolic arterial pressures less than 100 mm Hg. Pulmonary arterial pressures may be mildly elevated because of increased flow;

however, the pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) is usually within the normal range. These patients have an elevated intravascular volume that is sequestered into a dilated splanchnic vascular bed. The effective circulating volume is typically reduced.

Hyperdynamic circulation is the result of portal hypertension-induced production of vasodilators such as natriuretic peptides, vasoactive intestinal peptide, endotoxin, glucagon, and particularly nitric oxide.[93] Elevated production of nitric oxide has been observed to precede the formation of the hyperdynamic circulation in cirrhosis. The overproduction of vasodilators is responsible for reduced circulatory responsiveness to sympathetic stimulation.[94] Clinically, this frequently results in a need for increased doses of vasopressors.

In addition, patients with cirrhosis can have other cardiac functional abnormalities that are not immediately apparent in the baseline state. These abnormalities define a condition termed *cirrhotic cardiomyopathy* and include systolic and diastolic dysfunction, cardiac resistance to β-adrenergic stimulation, and electrophysiologic abnormalities. Systolic incompetence is revealed by physiologic or pharmacologic stress and is manifested by an inability to increase cardiac output in response to exercise, and an inability to increase ejection fraction despite an increase in end-diastolic volume. The severity of cardiac dysfunction seems to be correlated directly with the severity of liver disease.[95] Diastolic dysfunction has been described in patients with cirrhosis as well, on the basis of diagnostic echocardiographic findings of abnormalities in transmitral flow during diastole. These abnormalities consist of a decrement or reversal of the E/A wave ratio and prolongation of E wave deceleration time, reflecting ventricular resistance to diastolic filling. Diastolic dysfunction manifests as sensitivity to changes in cardiac filling and results in vulnerability to heart failure.

Autonomic dysfunction is present in a significant proportion of cirrhotic patients. It presents as chronotropic and hemodynamic incompetence in response to hemodynamic challenges. Prolonged QTc interval is also observed in patients with cirrhosis, and care should be taken when treating these patients with drugs known to prolong the QT interval.[96]

Risk factors for CAD in patients with cirrhosis are similar to those of other patient populations: hypertension, dyslipidemia, age, gender, and obesity. However, NAFLD has been recognized as an increasingly important cause for transplantation and carries with it the risks of obesity, diabetes, and chronic inflammatory state. The optimal test for identifying cirrhotic patients with significant CAD is unclear. Because many of these patients cannot exercise, pharmacologic stress testing is most commonly used. Unfortunately, studies investigating the predictive value of noninvasive functional testing, particularly DSE, have generally shown poor sensitivity and varying negative predictive value (75%-89%).[97] Thus, among liver transplantation candidates, consideration should be given to proceeding with coronary angiography if the patient is judged to have a high likelihood of CAD.[98] For less complex surgeries, however, this may not be warranted. There is evidence that patients with treated CAD have posttransplant survival similar to patients without angiographic evidence of CAD.[99]

Pulmonary Complications

As many as 50% to 70% of patients with chronic liver disease complain of shortness of breath.[100] The differential diagnosis includes ventilation-perfusion abnormalities associated with underlying obstructive airways disease, fluid retention, pleural effusion, and decreased lung capacities secondary to large volume ascites. α-1 antitrypsin deficiency has both lung and liver manifestations, as does cystic fibrosis. In addition, there are two types of vascular abnormalities unique to the setting of portal hypertension, and they have significant morbidity and mortality. These abnormalities, hepatopulmonary syndrome (HPS) and portopulmonary hypertension (PPHTN), are unique entities that have discrete implications on liver transplant candidacy.

HPS is present in up to 20% of patients who present for liver transplantation.[101] The diagnostic criteria for HPS include portal hypertension, PaO_2 less than 70 mm Hg on room air (or alveolar-arterial oxygen gradient greater than 15 mm Hg), and evidence of intrapulmonary vascular dilation (IPVD).[102,103] Demonstration of IPVD can be made by contrast-enhanced echocardiography or by perfusion lung scanning using technetium-labeled macroaggregated albumin. In the absence of HPS, microbubbles and albumin macroaggregates injected into the venous circulation are trapped by the pulmonary capillary bed. The delayed (more than three cardiac cycles) appearance of microbubbles in the left atrium (on echocardiography) or increased (>5%) extrapulmonary uptake of technetium-labeled macroaggregated albumin suggests the presence of IPVD, which results in a massive increase in pulmonary capillary diameter, from between 8 to 15 μm and 50 to 500 μm. This increase, together with the usually hyperdynamic circulation of the cirrhotic patient, allows insufficient time for oxygen diffusion through the entire stream of capillary blood. As a result, the central stream of poorly oxygenated blood is functionally shunted. This lesion is typically correctable with the administration of oxygen. Because IPVDs predominate in the bases of the lungs, standing worsens hypoxemia compared with the supine position (orthodeoxia).

The natural history of HPS is usually one of progressive hypoxemia. Liver transplantation can be expected to correct hypoxemia in greater than 85% of patients, although it may take up to 1 year to do so.[104] In patients with HPS, survival with transplantation is considerably more frequent than without transplantation. Previously, $PaO_2 \leq 50$ mm Hg was considered a predictor of increased mortality with or without transplantation. However, in the largest single-center series of liver transplantation for HPS, the overall 5-year survival was 76%, comparable to transplantation in patients without HPS.[105] These findings suggest that timely transplantation in patients with HPS results in positive outcomes. Accordingly, allocation exception points have been assigned to patients with HPS and room air $PaO_2 < 60$ mm Hg.[106]

PPHTN is defined as pulmonary hypertension in the presence of portal hypertension in a patient without other predisposing factors. The European Respiratory Society Task Force on Hepatopulmonary Disease diagnostic criteria are: (1) clinical evidence of portal hypertension with or without hepatic disease; (2) mean PA pressure of 25 mm Hg at rest or 30 mm Hg during exercise; (3) mean PA occlusion pressure less than 15 mm Hg or transpulmonary gradient

TABLE 60.2 Right Heart Catheterization Data From Four Representative Patients With Cirrhosis and Similar Elevations in Mean Pulmonary Artery Pressure

Patient	Mean PA Pressure (mm Hg)	Pulmonary Capillary Wedge Pressure (mm Hg)	Cardiac Output (L/m)	Pulmonary Vascular Resistance (dyn s cm^{-5})	Diagnosis
1	35	15	5	320	Primary pulmonary hypertension
2	35	15	10	160	Hyperdynamic circulation
3	35	25	5	160	Fluid overload
4	35	25	10	80	Fluid overload in a patient w/hyperdynamic circulation

Note that only the first patient has primary pulmonary hypertension, as evidenced by elevated pulmonary vascular resistance.
PA, Pulmonary artery.

(mean PA pressure minus wedge pressure) greater than 12 mm Hg; and (4) PVR greater than 240 dyn·s·cm^{-5} or 3 Wood Units.[107]

The requirement for calculation of the PVR is a reflection of the fact that many patients with cirrhosis have mildly elevated mean pulmonary arterial pressure based simply on an elevated cardiac output (Table 60.2). Mild, moderate, and severe PPHTN are defined by mean PA pressure less than 35 mm Hg, 35 to 50 mm Hg, and greater than 50 mm Hg, respectively.

The prevalence of PPHTN is 2% in a population of patients with known portal hypertension,[108] as compared with 0.13% in an unselected population.[109] The prevalence is 4% to 6% among liver transplant candidates.[110] The occurrence of PPHTN is unrelated to the severity of the underlying liver disease. Similar to HPS, the symptoms of PPHTN are nonspecific, commonly consisting of dyspnea, generalized weakness, and decreased exercise tolerance.

The single best screening study for PPHTN is two-dimensional transthoracic echocardiography, which estimates right ventricular systolic pressure using the velocity of the tricuspid regurgitant jet. In the absence of pulmonary valvular stenosis, right ventricular systolic pressure is a good estimate of pulmonary arterial systolic pressure. Transthoracic echocardiography screening has a sensitivity of 97% and a specificity of 77% in diagnosing moderate to severe PPHTN in patients undergoing pretransplantation workup.[111] Right-sided cardiac catheterization is necessary, however, to confirm elevated pressures and to measure PVR.

Moderate and severe PPHTN are associated with increased mortality during liver transplantation. In a multicenter study of 36 patients with PPHTN who underwent liver transplantation, more than one-third of the patients died during the hospitalization (within 3 weeks of surgery). Nonsurvivors (12 of 13 patients) had mean PA pressures greater than 35 mm Hg.[112] In addition to elevated mortality, the effect of successful liver transplantation on the natural course of PPHTN is unpredictable. Some patients experience a resolution with transplant, some continue to require medical therapy, and in some cases PPHTN worsens. This suggests that patients with moderate or severe PPHTN should undergo treatment for PPHTN before liver transplantation.

Vasodilator therapy consists of prostanoids (epoprostenol), phosphodiesterase inhibitors (sildenafil), and endothelin antagonists (bosentan). Calcium channel blockers, often used in noncirrhotic patients with pulmonary hypertension, are contraindicated in patients with cirrhosis because the associated mesenteric vasodilation worsens portal hypertension. Patients who respond to treatment sufficiently to reduce their mean PA pressure below 35 mm Hg and PVR below 400 dyn·s·cm^{-5} should be considered suitable transplant candidates.[112,113]

Renal Dysfunction

Renal dysfunction in patients with cirrhosis is the result of renal hypoperfusion and avid retention of sodium. HRS is a prerenal abnormality caused by circulatory derangements of advanced cirrhosis. It is considered a functional disorder, based on successful transplantation of kidneys from patients with HRS.[114] Renal function is an important risk factor for mortality, a fact that is emphasized by its presence as one of only three variables used in calculating the Model for End-Stage Liver Disease (MELD) score.

In addition to HRS, patients with cirrhosis are also at risk for other causes of renal dysfunction, such as parenchymal renal disease, sepsis, nephrotoxicity, and hypovolemia. HRS is a diagnosis of exclusion, and other treatable causes must be ruled out. HRS accounts for only about one-fourth of the cases of acute kidney injury in hospitalized cirrhotic patients.[115] In patients with cirrhosis and ascites, the incidence of HRS is nearly 40% at 5 years.[116]

HRS is caused by the local production of vasodilators, particularly nitric oxide, in patients with portal hypertension. Splanchnic vasodilation leads to a decrease in the effective circulating blood volume and a decrease in arterial blood pressure, which activates the sympathetic, renin-angiotensin-aldosterone, and vasopressin systems. The net result is a severe reduction in renal perfusion and glomerular filtration.

Type I HRS is characterized by rapidly progressive renal failure and a doubling of serum creatinine over 2 weeks after a precipitating cause such as spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, sepsis, gastrointestinal bleeding, or surgical stress. Patients with type I HRS have a median survival of 2 to 4 weeks without therapy.[117,118] Patients with type II HRS have a median survival of about 6 months.[119]

Although renal vasoconstriction is the proximate cause of HRS, therapy aimed at directly increasing renal perfusion by the use of prostaglandins, dopamine agonists, or endothelin antagonists has not proven to be successful. Vasoconstrictor therapy targeting the underlying splanchnic vasodilation is more effective.[120]

These therapies include arginine vasopressin, somatostatin, and α-agonists such as norepinephrine and midodrine, combined with volume expansion. Terlipressin, the most studied vasopressor for HRS, is in phase 3 trials in the United States.[121-123]

Placement of a transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS) lowers portal pressures and can decompress the splanchnic circulation. Pilot studies have shown that a TIPS is capable of reversing both types of HRS, but because of extensive exclusionary criteria in trials and the risk of worsening hepatic encephalopathy (HE), a TIPS might not be suitable for all patients with HRS.[124]

Liver transplantation is the definitive therapy for HRS. For patients with HRS who are transplant candidates, renal replacement therapy is the typical bridge to transplantation. Although renal recovery is anticipated, 35% of patients with pretransplant HRS will continue to require support in the immediate postoperative period, compared with 5% of patients without pretransplant HRS.[125] During the First International Liver Transplantation Society Expert Panel Consensus on Renal Insufficiency in Liver Transplantation, it was recommended that patients who received dialysis at least twice weekly for more than 6 weeks before liver transplantation be considered for combined liver-kidney transplantation.[126]

Hepatic Encephalopathy

HE is a serious, albeit reversible neuropsychiatric complication that is a feature of both chronic and acute liver disease. Manifestations range from subtle, subclinical abnormalities to overt neurologic and behavioral derangements that are readily apparent at the bedside.

HE has been attributed to hyperammonemia, but the severity of HE does not necessarily correlate with ammonia levels. A number of other factors and mechanisms also contribute to HE, including other gut-derived neurotoxins, γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) and other endogenous GABA-receptor agonists, oxidative stress, inflammatory mediators, hyponatremia, and abnormal serotonin and histamine neurotransmission.[127,128]

The initial step in evaluating the patient with liver disease who presents with encephalopathy is to rule out causes other than HE. The differential diagnosis includes other metabolic causes such as uremia, sepsis, glucose and electrolyte abnormalities, and endocrinopathies. Structural and vascular central nervous system lesions or infections should also be considered. Because cirrhotic patients are exquisitely sensitive to sedative medications and have impaired hepatic (and often renal) metabolism, a careful search for possible drug-related encephalopathy should be undertaken. Once other potential causes have been eliminated, the next step should be a systematic search for an underlying cause or precipitating factor, such as infections (e.g., spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, sepsis) or gastrointestinal bleeding.

Therapy to reduce ammonia levels consists of the nonabsorbable disaccharide lactulose and nonabsorbable antibiotics such as neomycin, metronidazole, and rifaximin. Nonabsorbable antibiotics appear to be equally effective to nonabsorbable disaccharides but concerns about toxicity associated with long-term administration limit their use.

Ascites

Ascites is the most common complication of cirrhosis leading to hospitalization.[129] Patients who have ascites should be referred for liver transplantation evaluation in the absence of contraindications. Nonhepatic causes account for 15% of ascites and include malignancy, cardiac failure, renal disease, pancreatitis, and tuberculosis. Paracentesis is an important aid in diagnosis.[130] A serum-ascites albumin gradient greater than 1.1 mg/dL indicates portal hypertension with 97% accuracy.[131] Rapid correction of hyponatremia is undesirable because patients with cirrhosis are at risk for central pontine myelinolysis, a potentially devastating neurologic complication. Observations in liver transplant recipients suggest limiting correction to less than 16 mEq/L during the intraoperative period.[130]

Once ascites becomes refractory to maximum standard medical therapy, therapeutic options are limited and include serial paracentesis, liver transplantation, TIPS placement, and peritoneovenous shunt.

Risk factors for development of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis include a prior episode of this acute infection, gastrointestinal bleeding, and an ascites albumin level of less than 1.5 g/dL. Long-term antibiotic prophylaxis with norfloxacin or trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole is recommended for patients who have survived an episode of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis.[129]

Varices

Cirrhosis increases portal pressure as a result of chronic inflammation. Fibrosis and regenerative nodules cause resistance to splanchnic flow and lead to formation of portosystemic collaterals. Progression of portal hypertension leads to increased local production of nitric oxide and exacerbates splanchnic vasodilation. Rupture of the high-pressure collaterals that are formed is a highly lethal and feared complication of portal hypertension.

Portal hypertension is diagnosed by measurement of the wedged hepatic venous pressure (WHVP). Although this is not a direct measure of portal pressure, WHVP has been demonstrated to correlate well with portal pressure.[132] This measurement is taken by advancing a catheter into a hepatic vein to the wedge position. To correct for the contribution of increased intraabdominal pressure from ascites, a free hepatic venous pressure or an inferior vena cava (IVC) pressure should be subtracted from the measured WHVP to give the hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG). A normal HVPG is 3 to 5 mm Hg. Patients with varices have HVPGs of 10 to 12 mm Hg or greater.

Esophagogastroduodenoscopy is the gold-standard procedure for diagnosing varices. Risk for variceal bleeding correlates with size of varices, presence of red wale marks, and variceal pressure (i.e., HVPG). Therapeutic decisions are based on these observations and measurements. Nonselective β-adrenergic blockers reduce portal pressure by two mechanisms: a decrease in cardiac output (β_1) and splanchnic vasoconstriction (β_2). For patients who cannot tolerate β-adrenergic blockers or in whom they are contraindicated, another option for primary prophylaxis of variceal bleeding is endoscopic ligation. The TIPS procedure had been considered a backup procedure for variceal bleeding, but recently has been advocated for early treatment in select patients.[133] However, TIPS is associated with a higher incidence of encephalopathy; despite this, TIPS may decrease mortality in select patients.[133]

Acute variceal bleeding should be managed with a combination of intravascular volume resuscitation, correction of severe coagulopathy, pharmacologic manipulation of portal pressure, and endoscopic variceal ligation. Aggressive intravascular volume replacement can lead to resistant or recurrent bleeding because bleeding is a pressure-related phenomenon.[134,135] Elective intubation of the trachea for airway protection is often warranted. Medications to reduce portal pressure include vasopressin and somatostatin. Although β-adrenergic blockers can reduce portal pressures, their effect on systemic pressures makes them undesirable in this setting. Early endoscopic variceal ligation in combination with pharmacotherapy is the preferred treatment for acute variceal bleeding. Balloon tamponade can be effective for resistant variceal bleeding, but is associated with significant complications, including esophageal rupture and aspiration. It is recommended as a bridge to more definitive therapy such as surgical shunt, TIPS, or liver transplantation.

Hemostasis

Hemostasis is a dynamic process that is the product of interaction between coagulation, platelets, and fibrinolysis, resulting in the formation and revision of clot. Liver disease affects all of these components, both quantitatively and qualitatively. The liver is the site of synthesis for all procoagulant and anticoagulant factors, with the exception of tissue thromboplastin (III), calcium (IV), and von Willebrand factor (VIII). It is also the site for clearance of activated factors.

Patients with cirrhosis are customarily considered to have a bleeding diathesis based on abnormal results in conventional tests of coagulation, such as prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT). However, such tests reflect the activity of only a portion of the procoagulant factors, and do not consider the concomitant decrease in anticoagulant factors, which are not assessed. It is the balance of procoagulant and anticoagulant forces, not the isolated measurement of either portion of the coagulation system, that indicates the effective generation of thrombin. Not surprisingly, PT and PTT abnormalities correlate poorly with bleeding complications following invasive procedures, such as liver biopsy.[136] There is evidence that decreased levels of protein C in cirrhotic patients balance the decreased levels of procoagulants, which can leave thrombin generation in vivo unaltered.[137]

If procoagulants predominate because of disproportionate reductions of anticoagulants (protein S and C, antithrombin III), accompanied by an increase in procoagulants (FVIII), a hypercoagulable state results.[138,139] This possibility is supported by studies reporting venous thromboembolism associated with cirrhotic and noncirrhotic liver disease.[140,141]

Thrombocytopenia is a well-known feature of cirrhosis. The primary cause is splenic sequestration in the setting of portal hypertension. Elevated levels of von Willebrand factor compensate for decreased platelets counts, augmenting the platelet–endothelial cell interaction on vessel walls.

The fibrinolytic system in cirrhotic patients has many abnormalities, which may account for accelerated fibrinolysis. The liver is the site of tissue plasminogen activator clearance, and elevated tissue plasminogen activator levels have been noted in patients with cirrhosis.[142] The liver is also the site of synthesis for plasmin inhibitors, such as plasmin activator inhibitor-1 and thrombin-activatable fibrinolysis inhibitor. A balance of factors that promote and inhibit fibrinolysis is desired. Commonly used studies for assessing the presence and severity of accelerated fibrinolysis include euglobulin clot lysis time and thromboelastography (TEG).

Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) is primarily a thrombotic diathesis, followed by widespread secondary fibrinolysis. As factors are consumed, DIC becomes a bleeding diathesis of factor and platelet deficiency. Whether or not DIC is a feature of stable chronic liver disease is controversial. Standard laboratory tests cannot distinguish between consumption and decreased synthesis, and so have little utility. Instead, assays to assess for excessive thrombin production are used. These assays include the cleaved by-products of coagulation factor activation such as prothrombin fragment F1+2, fibrinopeptide A, and thrombin-antithrombin complexes. These assays suggest that overt DIC is not a feature of stable chronic liver disease[143]; however, accelerated intravascular coagulation and fibrinolysis has been described, which is a low-grade consumptive process.[144] Patients who exhibit accelerated intravascular coagulation and fibrinolysis are at increased risk of DIC in the presence of a known stimulus, such as sepsis or spontaneous bacterial peritonitis.

OBESITY AND SARCOPENIA

Liver disease is associated with altered protein, carbohydrate, and lipid metabolism. Protein calorie malnutrition is present in over 50% of decompensated cirrhotics.[145] A standardized battery of questions and physical exam findings can be used to evaluate nutritional status. Among the available tools is the Subjective Global Assessment and Royal Free Hospital Global Assessment,[146,147] which uses a composite of several variables. Muscle wasting and fat depletion are highly correlated with scores based upon these tools. Triceps skinfold thickness, a marker of fat reserve, is associated with malnutrition. A value of less than the fifth percentile is diagnostic of severe malnutrition.[148] In addition, computed tomography has been evaluated as an assessment method for sarcopenia (muscle loss), which correlates with pretransplant mortality.[149]

NAFLD refers to the presence of hepatic steatosis in the absence of known causes for hepatic fat deposition. It is subdivided into nonalcoholic fatty liver (NAFL) and nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH); the latter is distinguished from the former by the presence of inflammation identical to that of alcoholic steatohepatitis. Factors associated with disease progression include body mass index, diabetes, and increasing age. As the most common indication for liver transplantation is now NAFLD, the body mass index of transplant recipients has risen in parallel.[87]

SURGICAL PROCEDURE

Preoperative Considerations

In 2015, the median time to transplant in the United States was 11 months (interquartile range, <1 month to <1 year).[87] As a result, a transplant candidate can be months removed from their initial evaluation when a suitable donor graft is identified. Therefore, the prospective recipient's evaluation should be reviewed while arrangements are made for donation. Candidates undergo an extensive preoperative assessment by multiple teams that typically include the surgical team, hepatologists, cardiologists, pulmonologists, psychiatrists, and social workers. In the event of unique comorbidities, additional consultants are involved as needed. Of particular interest to the anesthesiologist are interim changes in health status, hospitalizations (the possibility of infection should be considered with new-onset encephalopathy, variceal bleed, ascites, or hemodynamic deterioration), details of the initial and any subsequent cardiopulmonary evaluation (assess for the presence of coronary disease, heart failure, pulmonary hypertension, or arrhythmia), and renal status (acute kidney injury).

Unlike chronic liver disease, ALF is associated with increased intracranial pressure (ICP); preoperative evaluation and treatment focuses on the prevention of irreversible neurological injury. See section on "Acute Liver Failure" later.

Futility. The allocation policy in the United States, adopted by many programs worldwide, uses MELD scores to prioritize allocation of grafts to the sickest patients. Modifications to this MELD score have been proposed in efforts to improve the score's predictive ability.[150,151] This policy, however, is in tension with saving as many patients as possible, since outcomes in high-MELD patients are, in general, inferior. Attempts to define futility have led to multiple definitions, such as 90-day mortality[152] and less than 50% survival at 5 years. However, these definitions are subjective, as they require projections based upon age, coexisting disease, and physical frailty, factors not captured by the MELD score. A recent review provides an in-depth discussion of futility.[153] The concept of futility is likely to evolve, and hopefully 1 day provide objective criteria that can be reliably implemented.

Patients predicted to have decreased survival 1 year after transplant represent a high-risk group and include patients undergoing retransplantation or those supported by mechanical ventilation, infusions of vasopressors, and renal replacement therapy.[3] Patients dependent on renal replacement therapy will benefit from preoperative dialysis; patients with oliguria, hyperkalemia, or acidemia, may benefit from intraoperative renal replacement therapy.[154,155] Intraoperative renal replacement is not without risk; intraoperative fluctuations in clotting was associated with filter circuit clotting in 40% of patients in one series.[154] In our experience, circuit clots may suggest a hypercoagulable state associated with cardiac thromboembolic events.

A protocol should be in place to notify the blood bank of the pending transplant, which results in the setup of red blood cells and plasma in a volume according to institutional protocol. If any delay is anticipated in the availability of blood products, for instance in the event of antibodies, the blood bank personnel should notify the transplant coordinator and anesthesiologist. In the presence of red cell antibodies, our institutional policy is to set up compatible red cells for the start and completion of the transplant, and to use compatibility-unknown red cells in the event of large transfusion requirements.

The surgical procedure is divided into three distinct stages. During the preanhepatic or dissection stage, the liver is mobilized and vascular structures (suprahepatic and infrahepatic vena cava, portal vein, and hepatic artery) are identified. The anhepatic phase begins with clamping of these vessels and hepatectomy of the native liver and continues during the implantation of graft. Reperfusion, usually via the portal vein, starts the neohepatic phase, which continues through completion of the remaining vascular anastomosis (usually the hepatic artery), anastomosis of the bile duct, hemostasis, and abdominal closure.

Intraoperative Management

The intraoperative course of liver transplantation may be complex and prolonged; anesthesia teams are crucial to the success of programs. Intraoperative personnel and monitoring vary among liver transplant services based on institutional practice, caseload, and resources. Most centers allocate two anesthesia providers for liver transplants; however, the qualifications of these providers vary. A typical arrangement in an academic setting consists of an attending anesthesiologist experienced in liver transplantation and a senior resident. In private practice settings the second provider may be a second anesthesiologist, a certified nurse anesthetist, a licensed healthcare provider such as a perfusionist, or some combination of these. In general, most centers employ dedicated liver transplant anesthesia groups. Members of these groups are highly trained and experienced in the management of liver transplantation and often focus research and academic efforts toward liver transplant anesthesia. Liver transplant anesthesia fellowships dedicated to training physicians for careers in liver transplant anesthesia have been established in many centers. There is evidence that the experience of the anesthesia provider affects outcome; one series demonstrated that postoperative mortality was increased when the anesthesiologist had performed fewer than six liver transplant anesthetics.[156]

Anesthesia typically begins with a rapid-sequence induction. Liver transplant patients are considered at high risk for aspiration of gastric contents because of the emergent nature of the surgery, preoperative administration of oral immunosuppressants/bowel decontamination antibiotics, and the presence of ascites. An arterial catheter is placed either before induction of anesthesia or immediately thereafter, depending on the hemodynamic stability of the patient prior to induction. Some centers routinely place femoral arterial lines because of the concern that radial arterial monitoring may underestimate central arterial pressure during episodes of intense vasodilation or in patients receiving high-dose vasopressors. However, there are no clear data in liver transplant patients to definitively recommend the use of central arterial pressure monitoring over radial monitoring.[157] Large-bore intravenous access is necessary as rapid blood loss, large fluid shifts, and hemodynamic instability are frequent. Most centers place large single- or double-lumen introducers centrally, or in the event of significant concern for blood loss (as is the case for retransplantation or in patients with extensive prior abdominal surgery) two introducers may be placed in a central vein. Sites designated for venovenous bypass (VVB) are avoided, if possible. There are differences between institutions regarding the routine use of PA catheters. In patients with a history of PPHTN or in those with echocardiographic evidence of elevated PA pressures, PA catheter placement may be necessary to calculate PVR prior to incision; the results may impact the patient's candidacy for transplant.[158] In the patient with elevated PA pressures or borderline PVR, a PA catheter may help guide therapy during the perioperative period. However, if the recipient has had a recent negative evaluation for pulmonary arterial hypertension, a PA catheter may not be deemed necessary by some practitioners. Transesophageal echocardiography is increasingly used during liver transplant as it provides continuous cardiac imaging and may facilitate the rapid diagnosis of critical events such as ventricular failure, myocardial ischemia or infarction, pericardial tamponade, and intracardiac thrombosis. A recent survey demonstrated that transesophageal echocardiography is utilized widely in U.S. liver transplant centers.[159] Transesophageal echocardiography appears to be associated with a low likelihood of hemorrhagic complications, even in the presence of esophageal varices.[160] Some liver transplant centers avoid PA catheter insertion in the event that transesophageal echocardiography is used. New technologies, including arterial pressure waveform analysis and three-dimensional echocardiography, do not correlate with thermodilution-derived parameters and are not currently advocated for routine use intraoperatively.[161,162]

A rapid infusion system capable of high transfusion flow rates (>500 mL/min) is typically used. Such systems incorporate a reservoir, pump, filters, heat exchanger, and safety features designed to avoid and monitor for the presence of blood or air embolism, hypothermia, and line occlusion. Rapid infusion systems are important for volume replacement, transfusion management, and maintenance of normothermia.

The effects of the anesthetic technique on patient outcome are unknown. At many centers a balanced anesthetic is used; this typically consists of a volatile anesthetic in low to moderate concentrations (0.5-1.0 minimum alveolar concentration [MAC]) to ensure unconsciousness, whereas a synthetic opioid, often fentanyl, is chosen to blunt the sympathetic response to stimulation and to provide a smooth transition for postoperative analgesia. In recipients with fulminant hepatic failure and cerebral edema, volatile anesthetics are avoided or used cautiously in low concentrations, in many cases with ICP monitoring (see later). In either case, periods of hypotension during the surgery may require temporary decreases of volatile anesthetic concentrations. Midazolam, with minimal hemodynamic effects, can be used for its amnestic effects during these hypotensive periods. Historically, the volatile anesthetic of choice has been isoflurane, which preserves splanchnic blood flow better than previously used volatile drugs.[163] Studies in healthy humans have demonstrated the vasodilatory effects of isoflurane on the hepatic circulation.[164] This beneficial effect on hepatic oxygen supply may be advantageous to the newly reperfused graft. The effects of desflurane on hepatic blood flow have been evaluated with conflicting results. In animals, desflurane decreased total hepatic blood flow in a dose-dependent fashion at concentrations up to 1.0 MAC; however, in a human study that excluded patients with liver disease, liver blood flow was slightly more rapid with desflurane than with isoflurane, although this effect was not statistically significant.[165] Another study compared the effects of sevoflurane and desflurane on hepatic blood flow and hepatocellular integrity in older patients.[166] Both anesthetics resulted in decreases in gastric mucosal pH and increases in cytosolic liver enzymes. The authors conclude that hepatocyte function is well preserved, although their results suggest that splanchnic perfusion and oxygen delivery to the liver are transiently decreased. Whether the increased metabolism of sevoflurane (100-fold that of desflurane) is detrimental to the liver is unknown, but it seems unlikely that the metabolites of sevoflurane cause liver damage.[167] Compound A, a breakdown product of sevoflurane found to be nephrotoxic in animals, has not been shown to cause renal toxicities in humans, even during low-flow sevoflurane administration.[168]

Cisatracurium is an attractive choice for neuromuscular blockade in patients undergoing liver transplantation because of its organ-independent elimination and diminished histamine release.[169] In patients with end-stage liver disease, the volume of distribution of cisatracurium is larger than that in healthy control patients. Hepatic clearance is also increased in patients with liver disease; this results in similar elimination half times and similar duration of action. Other reports have suggested the use of rocuronium during liver transplantation, because the duration of the neuromuscular block appears to be a useful predictor of primary allograft function. All patients whose recovery time was longer than 150 minutes experienced primary graft dysfunction.[170]

Preanhepatic Stage

The preanhepatic stage begins with surgical incision and ends with vascular exclusion and hepatectomy of the native liver. Using conventional caval interposition technique, vascular exclusion of the liver is accomplished by cross-clamping the portal vein, the suprahepatic IVC, the infrahepatic IVC, and the hepatic artery (Fig. 60.9). If a piggyback technique is used, the native retrohepatic vena cava is preserved (Fig. 60.10).

The preanhepatic phase involves dissection and mobilization of the liver and identification of the porta hepatis. With abdominal incision and drainage of ascites, hypovolemia can occur. This should be treated in an anticipatory fashion with colloid-containing fluid to minimize changes in preload. In addition, the dissection phase may be complicated by significant bleeding necessitating massive transfusion and management of hemostasis (see later). Bleeding during this phase of surgery is related to the degree of preexisting coagulopathy, the presence and severity of portal hypertension, and the duration and complexity of the surgical procedure, which is adversely affected by prior abdominal surgery and adhesions.[171,172] The use of vasoactive infusions to maintain end-organ perfusion pressure is common, especially in critically ill patients with underlying cirrhotic cardiomyopathy. Occasionally during the preanhepatic stage, patients may exhibit hostile abdominal anatomy that impedes hepatic resection or may develop severe cardiovascular and metabolic instability that render them inoperable; discussion between the anesthesia and surgical teams to determine if the transplant should be aborted is crucial to prevent futile care in these situations.

In addition to massive transfusion and coagulopathy, the preanhepatic stage may be associated with significant metabolic and acid-base disturbances that require close monitoring and active management. Abnormalities of sodium are not unusual in liver transplant patients; hyponatremia should not be corrected rapidly. A perioperative increase of 21 to 32 mEq/L in the serum sodium level was associated with central pontine myelinolysis in one report, whereas an increase of less than 16 mEq/L was not.[130,173] Citrate intoxication (ionized hypocalcemia resulting from the infusion of citrate-rich blood products in the absence of hepatic function) is avoided by the administration of calcium chloride. Ionized hypomagnesemia also results from citrate infusion, but values of ionized magnesium gradually return to normal after graft reperfusion.[174] The clinical significance of this remains speculative, but cardiovascular function may be affected. Aggressive treatment of hypokalemia is best avoided, particularly in preparation for reperfusion and the associated increase in serum potassium. Hyperkalemia should be avoided by the administration of diuretics and insulin accompanied by glucose or, in the event these are ineffective, by intraoperative dialysis. In the absence of insulin administration, supplemental glucose is usually not required except in pediatric patients or those with severe disease, such as fulminant hepatic failure. Hyperglycemia should be avoided, because glucose levels greater than 180 mg/dL are associated with an increase in surgical site infections in liver transplant recipients.[175] Blood gases, electrolytes, glucose, ionized calcium, and hemoglobin levels should be assessed regularly, and as frequently as hourly in the event of massive blood loss or preexisting abnormalities. Point-of-care testing facilitates rapid turnaround times for laboratory values. Coagulation studies are typically assessed at the beginning of the surgery, after correction of specific deficiencies, after reperfusion, and in the presence of microvascular bleeding.

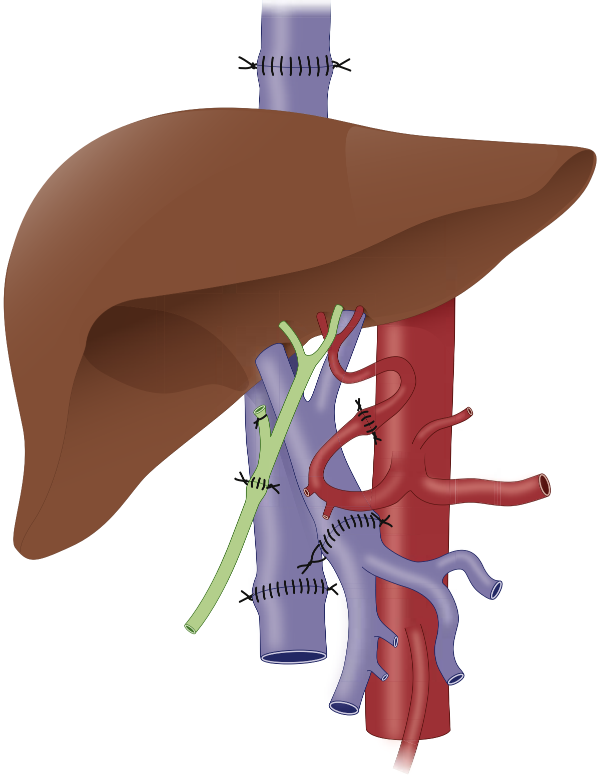


Fig. 60.9 Liver transplantation. Classic caval interposition technique illustrating anastomoses of the suprahepatic and infrahepatic inferior vena cava, the portal vein, the hepatic artery, and the bile duct. (From Molmenti E, Klintmalm G. *Atlas of Liver Transplantation*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2002.)

The maintenance of urine output is desirable; however, the use of low-dose dopamine for this reason is unproven.[176,177] Hypothermia should be avoided. Core temperature control can be aided with heated VVB during the anhepatic phase. Regardless of whether bypass is used, forced-air warming blankets should be positioned beneath the patient and over the lower and upper body.

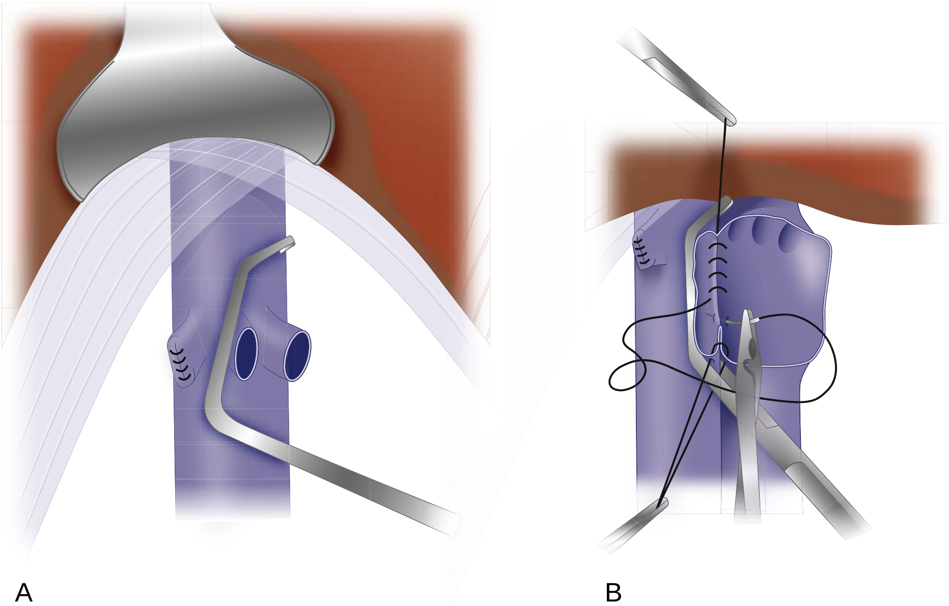


Fig. 60.10 Liver transplantation. (A) Piggyback technique illustrating partial vena caval clamping and an oversewn native right hepatic vein. (B) Preservation of the native retrohepatic vena cava and hepatic venous cuff anastomosis. (From Molmenti E, Klintmalm G. *Atlas of Liver Transplantation*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2002.)

Anhepatic Stage

The anhepatic stage begins with the occlusion of vascular inflow to the liver, and it ends with graft reperfusion. Cross-clamping of the suprahepatic and infrahepatic IVC decreases venous return by as much as 50%. VVB diverts IVC and portal venous flow to the superior vena cava via the axillary vein, attenuates the decrease in preload, improves renal perfusion pressure, lessens splanchnic congestion, and can delay the development of metabolic acidosis.[178] However, the use of VVB is not without risk. Air embolism, thromboembolism, and inadvertent decannulation can be fatal or result in significant morbidity.[179] VVB is not uniformly used at all centers. A meta-analysis of three trials failed to reveal any difference in the incidence of renal failure or blood transfusion requirements between patients randomized to VVB compared with patients in whom the technique was not used.[180] The use of the "piggyback" technique, with IVC preservation, decreases the need for VVB.[181]

Hepatectomy is followed by hemostasis and vascular anastomoses of the suprahepatic and infrahepatic IVC and the portal vein. Despite the absence of hepatic clotting factor production during the anhepatic stage, blood loss is usually limited by vascular clamping of the inflow vessels to the liver. However, fibrinolysis may begin during this stage because of an absence of liver-produced plasminogen activator inhibitor, which results in the unopposed action of tissue plasminogen activator. The use of antifibrinolytics varies among centers (discussed later).

Neohepatic Stage

Reperfusion of the graft through the portal vein begins the neohepatic stage. Reperfusion is associated with abrupt increases in potassium and hydrogen ion concentrations, an increase in preload, and a decrease in systemic vascular resistance and blood pressure. Hypothermia, monitored through a centrally placed catheter, is a marker for the presence of graft outflow into the central circulation. Life-threatening hyperkalemia, clinically detectable by changes in the EKG, requires prompt treatment. Calcium chloride and sodium bicarbonate are the drugs of choice for the acute treatment of hyperkalemia. If time permits, albuterol and insulin are also effective. Intraoperative dialysis should be considered early in the procedure for patients with oliguria and elevated potassium levels.

The hallmark of the postreperfusion syndrome (PRS) is systemic hypotension and pulmonary hypertension occurring within the first 5 minutes after reperfusion of the graft. Approximately one in three patients undergoing orthotopic liver transplantation (OLT) have profound hypotension after reperfusion. The cause is uncertain, but a number of factors have been implicated, such as hyperkalemia, acidosis, hypothermia, emboli (air or thrombotic), and vasoactive substances. Risk factors for hyperkalemia in the early postreperfusion period are elevated preanhepatic potassium levels and the use of donated-after-cardiac-death donor organs.[182] One study identified suboptimal grafts (higher degree of steatosis) and graft cold ischemia time as risk factors for PRS.[183] In this study all cases of PRS, defined as mean blood pressure less than 60 mm Hg, occurred in suboptimal donors with graft cold ischemia times longer than 6 hours. The PRS group had higher postreperfusion K^+ levels and lower postreperfusion temperature than in the group without PRS.

In addition, other critical events such as severe, acute bleeding resulting in hemodynamic compromise and necessitating massive transfusion can occur at any point during the surgery. Arrhythmias and intracardiac thromboembolism can also occur at any time intraoperatively, but are more likely after reperfusion.[184,185]

Hepatic arterial anastomosis and biliary reconstruction are generally performed after venous reperfusion, although in pediatric patients the arterial anastomosis may be completed before reperfusion. Signs of graft function that might be observed in the operating room and early postoperative period include decreased calcium requirements, improvement in acidosis, increased urine output, a rise in core temperature, and bile output from the graft.[186]

Management of Transfusion, Hemostasis, and Coagulation

As previously described, end-stage liver disease produces a complex disorder of coagulation that affects both procoagulant and anticoagulant systems, resulting in a fragile state that can lead to either bleeding or thrombosis depending on the clinical conditions of the patient. During liver transplantation, the preexisting coagulopathy of end-stage liver disease may be further impacted by massive transfusion, dilutional coagulopathy, the loss of hepatic synthetic function, a heparin-like coagulopathy following graft reperfusion, and fibrinolysis.[187] The management of coagulopathy and transfusion is crucial in the care of liver transplant patients.

Starting in the preanhepatic phase, drainage of ascites and surgical blood loss necessitate volume resuscitation. In the presence of coagulopathy, fresh frozen plasma may be indicated soon after incision, although some authors have challenged the need for fresh frozen plasma during OLT.[188,189] Prothrombin complex concentrates (PCCs), which contain vitamin K–dependent factors, may be considered as an alternative to plasma transfusion to avoid the risk of transfusion-related acute lung injury and transfusion-associated circulatory overload.[190,191] Several PCCs, containing therapeutic levels of factor II, VII, IX, and X in addition to varying amounts of protein C and S, are available for clinical use.[192] The primary concern related to PCC administration is thromboembolic complications, which vary according to the patient's underlying disease, dosing, and the constituents in each of the commercially available PCC products.[193] Although the reported risk of thrombosis was low (1.4%) in a large study that investigated PCC for the reversal of warfarin in non-liver transplant populations, there are no published randomized controlled trials that have assessed the safety of PCC in liver transplant patients.[194] Another product, recombinant activated factor VII (rFVIIa), was evaluated during liver transplantation and was found to improve coagulation study results, but did not result in a decrease in transfusion requirements.[195,196] rFVIIa has been linked to an increased risk of arterial, but not venous, thromboembolic events.[197] Fibrinogen levels may decrease during liver transplant due to massive bleeding, dilution, and consumptive processes. Fibrinogen-rich components such as cryoprecipitate and fibrinogen concentrates may be indicated for coagulopathic bleeding with documented hypofibrinogenemia. Cryoprecipitate is available in North America and the United Kingdom, while fibrinogen concentrates are employed in Europe.[192] Thrombocytopenia is common in the liver transplant patient, however prophylactic platelet transfusion during liver transplant appears to have limited efficacy for improving coagulation parameters in liver transplant patients.[192] In addition, adverse effects from intraoperative platelet transfusions have been demonstrated in liver transplant patients, including increased rates of acute lung injury as well as increased 1-year graft failure and mortality.[198,199] In general, administration of blood products and/or factor concentrates in liver transplant patients should be for clinically significant bleeding; prophylactic administration is not recommended.[200]

TEG or standard laboratory tests (PT, fibrinogen, and platelet count) are used to guide the correction of coagulopathy.[190,201] Viscoelastic-guided coagulation management has been extensively studied in cardiac surgery patients and has been shown to decrease blood transfusions.[202] Although viscoelastic-guided protocols have been described in liver transplant cohorts, there is less evidence to show that they significantly impact transfusion requirements. In one single-center study of liver transplant patients, a viscoelastic-guided protocol was employed for intraoperative hemostatic management that included the use of PCC and fibrinogen concentrate. The median red blood cell transfusion requirement was low (two units); 29% of patients received platelets and 15% received plasma.[203] However, another single-center comparative study in liver transplant patients showed that a viscoelastic-guided algorithm did not decrease blood transfusions compared to a standard transfusion protocol.[204] Considerable institutional variation exists in transfusion practices for OLT, as do variations in patient acuity as evidenced by MELD scores. Intraoperative blood transfusion has been shown to be a predictor for posttransplant survival in single-center studies, although the reported transfusion thresholds that affected outcome vary.[205-207] Transfusion requirements for liver transplant patients appear to be multifactorial; many donor, recipient, and procedural factors have been shown to impact intraoperative transfusion.[200] Fibrinolysis may contribute to bleeding necessitating targeted therapy during liver transplant. Fibrinolysis is most severe after reperfusion and is caused by abrupt increases in tissue plasminogen activator from graft endothelial cell release. Antifibrinolytic drugs and cryoprecipitate may be required. Since the removal of aprotinin from the world market in 2008, the lysine analogues epsilon-aminocaproic acid and tranexamic acid are typically employed for the treatment of coagulopathic bleeding due to fibrinolysis, although optimal dosages in liver transplant patients have not been determined.[200] Antifibrinolytic therapies have been studied in liver transplant patients to assess their impact on blood transfusion. Three recent studies demonstrated that prophylactic administration of lysine analogues decreased transfusion requirements, although one study showed that antifibrinolytic therapy was associated with a higher risk of deep venous thromboses.[208-210] Although there is no clear evidence that antifibrinolytic therapy produces a hypercoagulable state during liver transplant, major thrombotic complications have been well reported in liver transplant patients.[200] In general, antifibrinolytic therapy should be employed in the setting of significant bleeding with suspected or documented hyperfibrinolysis.[200]

Postoperative Care

The goals of the immediate postoperative period are to ensure a smooth transition from anesthesia and surgery (maintain hemodynamic stability, metabolic homeostasis, adequate analgesia), monitor graft function (transaminase levels, PT, bilirubin levels, bile and urine output, acid-base status), and maintain surveillance for known complications (bleeding, bile leaks, vascular thrombosis, primary nonfunction). The use of steroids leads to hyperglycemia, which can require insulin infusion.

The lack of bile output, accompanied by hemodynamic instability, suggests primary nonfunction of the graft, which may require urgent retransplantation. Conversely, a functioning liver graft facilitates early neurologic recovery, cardiovascular stability, and improved renal function, signs that can occur within hours of the completion of surgery.

Hepatic artery thrombosis can lead to graft necrosis, necessitating retransplantation. Within the first 2 to 3 postoperative days, markedly abnormal transaminase levels are common because of graft ischemia or injury during procurement, preservation, and reperfusion. After this period, hepatic enzyme and bilirubin levels that do not trend downward suggest the possibility of hepatic artery thrombosis, which should lead to prompt evaluation with Doppler ultrasonography.

Postoperative pain control is generally achieved with opioids, including patient-controlled analgesia. Analgesic requirements may be decreased compared with other major abdominal surgery.[211,212] Epidural analgesia is contraindicated because of coagulopathy, which usually preexists, or develops during the perioperative period.

The timing of tracheal extubation and termination of postoperative mechanical ventilation is not clear.[213,214] Early extubation of the trachea, including endotracheal tube removal in the operating room, is feasible in select patients. However, the benefits of immediate extubation appear limited to the potential of decreased resource utilization, which might not be fully realized in centers that direct posttransplant patients to ICUs regardless of their need for ventilatory support. As a result, many centers prefer to see clear signs of graft function before extubation.

ACUTE LIVER FAILURE

ALF (previously termed *fulminant hepatic failure*) is defined as the appearance of encephalopathy together with coagulopathy (international normalized ratio [INR] ≥ 1.5) in a patient without previous liver disease who has an illness of less than 26 weeks in duration. ALF is a rare entity with an estimated incidence of approximately 2000 cases per year in the United States and a reported incidence of 1 to 8 per million population in the United Kingdom.[215] Drug-related toxicity, primarily acetaminophen, accounts for the majority of the cases of ALF in the United States and Europe while viral infections are the most common etiologies in many Asian and developing countries.[216] Other causes include idiopathic, autoimmune, and ischemic. Etiology has a significant bearing on outcome; patients with acetaminophen toxicity, ischemic injury, or hepatitis A have the most favorable prognosis, whereas those with non-acetaminophen drug-induced liver injury, acute hepatitis B, Wilson disease, or autoimmune hepatitis have poor prognoses in the absence of transplantation.[217] Outcomes in patients with ALF have significantly improved over the past 40 years due to both transplantation and advances in medical management; over 70% of ALF patients now survive their illness.[218,219] Overall, ALF is a rare indication for liver transplant. In a study of ALF patients listed for transplant in the United States over a 13-year period, only 64% of patients underwent liver transplant. Of those that did not undergo transplant, more than half survived with medical management.[219] In the United States there has been a slight decrease in both waitlist registrations and transplant rates for adult patients with ALF over the last 12 years.[87] In Europe, approximately 7% of liver transplants were performed yearly for ALF.[220] One-year liver transplant survival rates for patients with ALF are between 74% to 84%; both early and late outcomes are generally inferior compared to chronic liver failure patients.[221] There are also significant differences in liver transplant outcomes based on etiology of ALF; outcomes are better in patients with acetaminophen toxicity and acute viral hepatitis compared to other indications.[215] The severity of preexisting multiorgan failure including neurologic involvement in critically ill patients with ALF likely impacts posttransplant outcomes.

Evidence of portal hypertension and cirrhosis is absent in ALF because of the rapid progression of disease. Acute decompensation of chronic liver disease, termed acute-on-chronic liver disease, is a separate condition with different etiologies, therapy, and prognostic indicators. Although various etiologies of ALF exist, there are manifestations that are common to all patients with massive hepatic necrosis. The most serious, and lethal, is acute cerebral edema and intracranial hypertension. Effects on other organ systems include coagulopathy, circulatory dysfunction and hypotension, acute kidney injury, and metabolic derangements.

General measures to reduce cerebral edema include maintaining the patient in a 30-degree, head-up position, and making sure the head is in neutral position so as not to impede venous return. Supportive care includes maintenance of normovolemia, vasopressor therapy for blood pressure support, prevention of sepsis, and intubation for airway protection and control of ventilation. Sedation and muscle relaxants should be considered to minimize increases in ICP from coughing, bucking, and shivering. Mannitol can be used to induce an osmotic diuresis but may have limited utility in the patient with compromised renal function. Early use of renal replacement therapy may be indicated for control of ammonia levels and to optimize electrolyte and acid-base status. Hypertonic saline, ideally targeting a serum sodium of 145 to 155 mEq/L, may be indicated. Current recommendations are to maintain normocarbia and to reserve hyperventilation for response to acute increases in ICP. Barbiturates can be used to decrease cerebral metabolism; however, their use may be limited by hypotension.

Monitoring techniques for cerebral edema and intracranial hypertension are controversial. Serial head computed tomography images are not sensitive indicators of intracranial hypertension. Computed tomography can, however, provide information on structural abnormalities such as intracranial hemorrhage. Although many centers place an ICP monitor to guide therapy in patients with stage III-IV coma, there are no randomized controlled studies to support this practice. Furthermore, ICP monitor placement is not a benign procedure, frequently entailing aggressive correction of coagulopathy and transport to and from the operating room for a critically ill, fragile patient. Nonetheless, ICP monitors are invaluable for guiding acute therapy, and for helping to determine who might no longer be a viable candidate for transplantation. In addition to measuring ICP, these monitors allow calculation of cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP = mean arterial pressure [MAP] − intracranial pressure [ICP]), which should be kept between 50 and 80 mm Hg. An effective protocol for managing intracranial hypertension in patients with stage III or IV encephalopathy has been described and resulted in a 95% response to treatment in episodes of ICP greater than 20 mm Hg. Furthermore, in this prospective series, ICP was monitored in all patients, and no patients died of isolated cerebral edema. The authors used a protocol that included rFVIIa to correct coagulopathy before ICP placement. Significant bleeding complications from ICP monitoring were not encountered.[222]

The decision regarding which patients should receive a transplant, based on who might recover spontaneously or who is unlikely to benefit from transplantation, is one of the most difficult decisions encountered during the management of patients with liver disease. The two most widely used prognostic models are the Clichy or Paul Brousse Hospital criteria and the King's College Hospital criteria. The Clichy criteria recommend transplantation for patients in stage III or IV coma, based on age and factor V levels.[223] There is no distinction made for etiology of ALF, which is considered a weakness of these criteria. The King's College Hospital criteria are superior for predicting outcomes in patients with ALF based on acetaminophen toxicity. However, the negative predictive value is less than 50% in patients who have not used acetaminophen.[224] Thus, patients who fail to fulfill these criteria include a number of patients who will die without proper consideration for transplantation. Recently, dynamic models have been used to predict outcomes in acute ALF patients.[225]

In patients with ALF who are undergoing an invasive procedure, correction of thrombocytopenia to 50,000 platelets/mm^3 or greater and INR to 1.5 or less is suggested.[217,226] Prophylactic therapy may be initiated for severe abnormalities (e.g., platelet count ≤ 10,000/mm^3, INR > 7, and fibrinogen < 100 mg/dL).[217] Viscoelastic testing may be useful for guiding therapy. Use of rFVIIa is reserved for rapid correction in patients who cannot tolerate a large volume of plasma. This agent may carry a thrombotic risk and is contraindicated in hypercoagulable states. The prophylactic use of rFVIIa is generally not recommended unless an invasive procedure is planned.[227] PCC may also have a role in this setting.

Hypotensive patients with ALF should undergo intravascular volume status and cardiac function assessment before consideration of inotropes or vasopressors. MAP should be raised to provide adequate CPP. Vasopressors can be used to treat either systemic hypotension or to maintain an adequate CPP. Based on recommendations for septic patients, norepinephrine should be used. The use of vasopressin is

TABLE 60.3 Pugh's Modification of the Child-Turcotte Classification

	POINTS		
Variable	**1**	**2**	**3**
Encephalopathy	None	1-2	3-4
Ascites	Absent	Slight	Moderate
Prothrombin time (sec prolonged)	<4	4-6	>6
Albumin (g/dL)	>3.5	2.8-3.5	<2.8
Bilirubin (mg/dL)	<2	2-3	>3

Child-Pugh class A, 5-6; class B, 7-9; class C, 10-15.

Modified from Wiesner RH, McDiarmid SV, Kamath PS, et al. MELD and PELD: application of survival models to liver allocation. *Liver Transpl*. 20017;7(7):567–580.

controversial because there is evidence that its use is associated with increases in ICP.[228] However, another study in which terlipressin was used did not reveal similar increases in ICP.[229]

LIVING DONOR LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

See Chapter 61 (Anesthesia for Organ Procurement).

PEDIATRIC LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

See Chapter 77 (Pediatric Anesthesia) and Chapter 78 (Anesthesia for Pediatric Cardiac Surgery).

ORGAN MATCHING AND ALLOCATION

The primary criteria used to match donor liver grafts with recipients are ABO blood type and graft size. ABO-incompatible liver transplantation (ILT) is generally limited to emergent situations, and as many as half of the adult recipients in early reports required retransplantation. Subsequent reports have identified patient populations with more favorable outcomes after ILT. Recipients with blood type O and pediatric patients tolerate ILT better than others.[230] Nonetheless, ILT remains a technique reserved for emergent situations.

In the United States, a national registry maintained by UNOS allocates organs to transplant candidates. In Europe, there are a number of regional or national organ allocation bodies that distribute organs within their respective country or region based on different allocation criteria. UNOS considers only disease severity, and no longer uses waiting time, when allocating deceased-donor liver grafts. Older systems used the Child-Turcotte-Pugh (CTP) score to determine disease severity (Table 60.3). Beginning in 2002, the MELD score replaced the CTP score. The MELD score is a mathematical formula that incorporates the serum bilirubin, creatinine level, and INR. It is considered more objective because there is no reliance on subjective physical examination to determine the presence and severity of findings, such as ascites or encephalopathy. The MELD score is a continuous scale, rather than categorical (found in the CTP score), which provides more discriminatory ability since disparate risks are not grouped within a single category. In addition, the inclusion of the creatinine level (not found in the CTP score) reflects the prognostic importance of renal dysfunction on advanced liver disease. The MELD score is an excellent predictor of 90-day pretransplant (waitlist) mortality (Fig. 60.11).

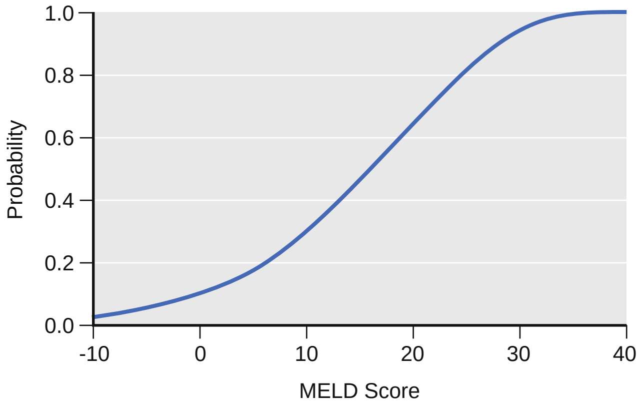


Fig. 60.11 **Relationship between Model for End-Stage Liver Disease *(MELD)* score and 3-month mortality in hospitalized (pretransplant) patients with cirrhosis.** (From Wiesner RH, McDiarmid SV, Kamath PS, et al. MELD and PELD: application of survival models to liver allocation. *Liver Transplant*. 2001;7:567–580.)

The MELD allocation system is regarded as a major advance in liver organ allocation. However, adjustments to the MELD system based on updated information and addition of MELD exception points for specific subsets of patients have been implemented to optimize allocation. For instance, based on observations that hyponatremia is a predictor for mortality in patients with cirrhosis, sodium was added to the calculation for organ allocation (MELD-Na score) in 2016.[231] Hepatocellular carcinoma can progress to inoperable status before manifesting changes in the MELD score, which disadvantages patients with HCC. As a result, UNOS policy grants exception points to patients with HCC to allocate organs equitably to patients with this condition; this exception policy has undergone multiple changes since 2002.[232] Other patient subsets including those with PPHTN, HPS, amyloid, and hilar cholangiocarcinoma also receive MELD exception points. Regional disparities in candidate access to transplantation have been addressed with the Regional Share 35/National Share 15 policy.[233] Candidates with MELD scores less than 15 have better survival without transplantation.[234] However, when the qualities of the donor graft are taken into account using the donor risk index, candidates with MELD scores of 12 to 14 benefit from liver transplant in the event that a favorable (low donor risk index) graft is transplanted.[235]

ANESTHESIA FOR PATIENTS AFTER LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

There are nearly 8000 patients living with liver transplant grafts in the United States; these patients may present for all types of nontransplant surgeries.[87] Liver transplant recipients with functioning grafts typically metabolize drugs in a normal fashion, but graft function must be assessed rather than assumed. The PT (or INR) is an excellent marker of synthetic function. In patients with grafts with impaired synthetic function, clotting abnormalities can be corrected with vitamin K or fresh frozen plasma; ascites managed with diuretics, albumin administration, or paracentesis; and the risk of encephalopathy minimized with lactulose administration and careful use of sedatives.

Careful adherence to sterile technique is required to prevent infectious complications in this immunosuppressed population. A stress dose of corticosteroids is required for patients receiving chronic supplementation. Renal function should be assessed and managed carefully to avoid an exacerbation of immunosuppressant-associated renal impairment. Hypertension is a common finding in patients whose condition is managed with calcineurin inhibitors such as cyclosporine. Drugs known to decrease hepatic blood flow, such as propranolol, should be avoided. Regional anesthesia is an option in patients with acceptable clotting status.

INTESTINAL, LIVER-INTESTINAL, AND MULTIVISCERAL TRANSPLANT

Background

Intestinal, liver-intestinal, and multivisceral transplants have been performed since the mid-1980s, but results were poor until the introduction of tacrolimus and antilymphocyte monoclonal antibodies in the 1990s, which allowed adequate control of rejection. Over the past 2 decades, further refinements in immunosuppression, donor-recipient matching, surgical technique, and perioperative care have steadily improved outcomes. These procedures now have an established role in the treatment of intestinal failure from a wide range of causes. The Intestinal Transplant Registry collected international data from 82 programs transplanting 2699 patients between 1985 and 2013 and reported pooled patient survival of 76%, 56%, and 43% at 1, 5, and 10 years, respectively.[236] Results are continuing to improve, but survival and cost-effectiveness still lag behind those achieved with other organ transplants.[237-239] Intestinal transplantation requires a highly specialized multidisciplinary team who must also provide long-term posttransplant care. Small numbers favor management in regional or national units in which experience is concentrated.

Definitions of intestinal transplant procedures are debated but the most widely used are as follows: Small intestine transplant: intestine without the liver or stomach; liver-intestine transplant: small intestine and liver but no stomach; modified multivisceral transplant: stomach and intestine without liver; multivisceral transplant: intestine plus liver and stomach. The pancreas is often included in a composite graft, usually for technical simplicity but sometimes also to treat pancreatic insufficiency. A segment of colon may also be included.

Indications for intestinal transplant in children include short bowel syndrome from gastroschisis, necrotizing enterocolitis and volvulus, and microvillous inclusion disease. Adults are offered transplantation for thrombotic and traumatic intestinal infarction, desmoid tumor, Crohn-related short bowel syndrome and gut motility disorders. In most of these conditions transplantation has been offered because of life-threatening complications of parenteral nutrition, including progressive cholestasis and liver failure, venous thrombosis leading to loss of two central sites for vascular access, and recurrent catheter-related sepsis. In others, transplant is indicated because of a high risk of death related to the underlying condition, as in congenital mucosal disorders, desmoid tumor, and ultrashort bowel syndrome. In some patients, transplant is considered in the context of frequent debilitating hospitalizations, often for dehydration from stomal losses. While improvements in PN lipid formulations in recent years have significantly reduced PN-associated liver disease, potential new indications have emerged.[239] These include portomesenteric thrombosis in patients with end-stage liver disease, chronic abdominal fistula and sepsis, and patients' unwillingness to accept lifelong PN. Outcome data on these has yet to be reported.

Surgical Procedures

Organs transplanted depend on the indication, recipient liver function, and surgical conditions following previous procedures. Isolated small bowel or small bowel-stomach-duodenum transplant is usual in short bowel syndrome, motility disorders, and desmoid tumor. In this procedure, a donor-to-recipient superior mesenteric artery (SMA) anastomosis supplies arterial inflow; the donor portal vein to recipient IVC or portal vein provides venous outflow (Fig. 60.12).

Liver-intestine transplant, with or without stomach, duodenum, and pancreas, is indicated when PN-related liver disease is significant. Inclusion of pancreas avoids the risk of hilar injury associated with its removal on the back-table and reduces the risk of kinking of adjacent vessels (superior mesenteric vessels, portal vein, middle colonic artery) in the implanted graft. It also avoids the need for Roux loop biliary drainage and is beneficial if the recipient is diabetic. Inflow is typically via aorta-to-SMA anastomosis or conduit, and outflow via donor hepatic veins to IVC or side-to-side anastomosis of donor to recipient retrohepatic IVC (piggyback technique). Pretransplant renal dysfunction from obstructive uropathy, renal vein thrombosis, or recurrent severe dehydration may require implantation of a kidney graft as part of the same procedure.

Once the graft complex is reperfused, a proximal intestinal, gastric, or gastroesophageal anastomosis, is performed for upper gut continuity. This may be followed by end-to-side anastomosis of recipient colon to donor ileum to complete lower gut continuity. The distal end of the transplanted small intestine is then brought out as a temporary stoma. Alternatively, to preserve the recipient ileocecal valve, the donor ileum can be anastomosed to the recipient's distal ileum, which is then used to form the ileostomy. The ileostomy ensures that the graft is not distended postoperatively and allows endoscopic monitoring for rejection. Preservation of the colon is not essential but improves fluid and electrolyte absorption and is naturally preferred by the patient. After completion of the bowel anastomoses, the abdominal wall is closed. This may be difficult, sometimes requiring delayed primary closure, use of reinforcing mesh, a muscle flap, or even grafting of the donor abdominal wall.

Preoperative Assessment

Multivisceral transplant, and to a lesser extent non-liver intestinal transplant, is usually associated with major

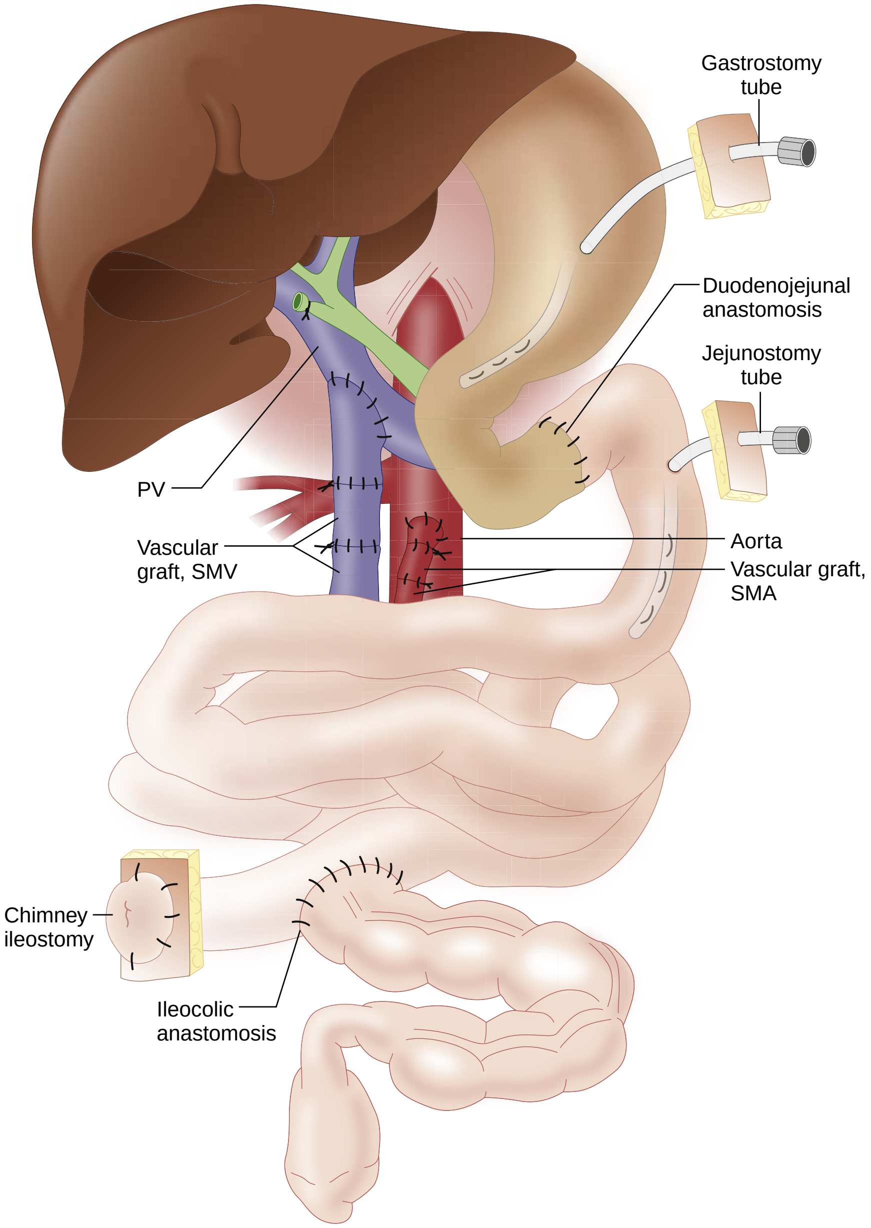


Fig. 60.12 Intestinal transplantation. The implanted donor intestine is illustrated. *PV*, Portal vein; *SMA,* superior mesenteric artery; *SMV,* superior mesenteric vein. (Modified from Abu-Elmagd K, Fung J, Bueno J, et al. Logistics and technique for procurement of intestinal, pancreatic and hepatic graft from the same donor. *Ann Surg.* 2002;232:680–687.)

operative hemorrhage, hemodynamic instability, electrolyte imbalance, and metabolic acidosis. Adequate nutritional reserve and cardiorespiratory fitness are paramount. Preoperative assessment mirrors that for liver transplant (described earlier) with additional caveats as follows.

Central venous access is often compromised by previous catheter-related infection or thrombosis. Partial or complete obstruction of the innominate veins or superior vena cava is sometimes encountered, even presenting as facial swelling with fluid overload or with exercise, which may contraindicate any graft incorporating a liver. All central vessels must be assessed for patency by ultrasound and, if any doubt, by magnetic resonance angiography. Access above the diaphragm is critical in patients receiving a liver because of the surgical requirement for partial or complete occlusion of the IVC intraoperatively. This is not essential in intestine-only recipients, but patency of both femoral veins must be confirmed. Access should be planned before wait listing, including provision for involvement of an interventional radiologist if necessary.

Coagulation assessment should include rotational TEG and thrombophilia screen. Most multivisceral candidates are prothrombotic on viscoelastic testing, even in the presence of liver dysfunction, and confirmation of this can influence intraoperative management. Chronic abdominal pain associated with opiate use is also present in many intestinal transplant candidates, and specialist pain service assessment and advice are important, since postoperative and longer-term follow-up are often needed.

In candidates with liver disease, PPHTN and HPS should be excluded as routinely done in prospective liver recipients. Given the greater physiological and metabolic demands of a multivisceral procedure compared to liver transplant alone, both of these conditions may contraindicate multivisceral transplant. Important comorbidities include sarcopenia, ischemic heart disease, and diabetes, especially in candidates over 60 years old, and may also indicate prohibitive risk.

Intraoperative Management

To date, literature on the perioperative anesthetic management of intestinal and multivisceral transplant recipients is largely anecdotal. Anesthetic technique, vascular access, and monitoring modalities are mainly as described in the setting of liver transplantation, although the pathophysiological changes of end-stage liver disease are only present in liver-intestine and multivisceral candidates. A description of the differences between liver-intestine and liver-only transplantation follows.[240-242]

Some liver-intestine procedures take 24 hours or longer. Most require the presence of two highly experienced anesthesiologists and specialist ancillary staff, including nurses or technicians to help manage hemofiltration, VVB, cell salvage, rapid infusion devices, and point-of-care testing.

Most recipients have had extensive previous abdominal surgery, so they will have varying degrees of peritoneal sclerosis. Those with portomesenteric venous thrombosis or PN-associated liver disease may also have severe portal hypertension. Dissection and removal of recipient viscera can therefore be prolonged and associated with severe surgical bleeding. In some cases of full multivisceral transplant, on-table angiography and SMA/celiac embolization are performed immediately before surgery to reduce operative hemorrhage. In others, blood loss may be reduced by avoiding left upper quadrant dissection and splenectomy, providing there is enough space for the graft. In all cases, loss of multiple blood volumes should be anticipated. An agreed upon massive transfusion protocol with the hospital blood bank is essential.

Difficult dissection also increases the risk of long ischemia times and harm to the graft. The need to minimize ischemic time requires close coordination between donor and recipient teams, and the recipient anesthetic is started as soon as the organs are judged to be usable, sometimes even before donor explant.

In some transplant centers, in adult patients for liver-intestine transplant with portal hypertension and expected major blood loss, VVB is used from early in the dissection phase to decompress the portal circulation and support cardiac output. This depends on adequate access for femoral and/or portal outflow and internal jugular vein, SCV, or brachial inflow. A heat exchanger is incorporated in the bypass circuit to maintain normothermia during a long period of partial extracorporeal circulation. Since acidosis and hyperkalemia are also common complications in these massively transfused patients, some centers employ preemptive intraoperative hemofiltration, requiring placement of a dual-lumen dialysis catheter in another central vein, ideally separate from any multi-lumen catheter used for vasoactive drugs. Separate cannulae for rapid infusion of blood products and (in adults) a PA catheter are also needed, and one or both may be placed alongside bypass return cannulae and a quadruple-lumen catheter in the right internal jugular vein. Ultrasound guidance during cannulation is indispensable. If right internal jugular vein cannulation is known to be not possible, alternative sites should be planned at the time of assessment. These may involve interventional radiology or surgical access at other supradiaphragmatic sites.

Monitoring for liver-intestine transplant mirrors that in liver transplantation. An added advantage of transesophageal monitoring is the immediate detection of air and thrombus in the heart, both of which are hazards of VVB. The risk of spontaneous thromboembolism, potentially life-threatening, also appears be higher than in liver-alone implantation, given the hypercoagulability often seen on baseline thromboelastogram and unpredictable changes in coagulation during rapid administration of large volumes of blood products. Cell salvage may be used during dissection, but only as long as bowel or bowel fistulae are not breached and the surgical field remains uncontaminated. In practice, this is often brief. However, when hemofiltration is not used, the cell saver may be used to wash bank blood before infusion, reducing the risk of hyperkalemia.

Coagulation is managed as in liver transplantation, guided by the appearance of the surgical field and by TEG. Tranexamic acid is avoided if there is a clinical history of thrombosis or hypercoagulability on TEG. However, if major bleeding supervenes with a clinical coagulopathy and fibrinolysis on TEG, tranexamic acid can be considered. Open communication with a specialist in transfusion medicine is essential. This will help maintain a supportive relationship between blood bank and the transplant team despite exceptional demands on this service, and also facilitates timely use of prothrombin and fibrinogen concentrates when requested.

Reperfusion of an intestine-only graft is typically uneventful, but inclusion of liver in a composite graft usually produces hyperkalemia and at least transient hypotension, since reperfusion involves a large mass of tissue and occurs via hepatic arterial and portal venous routes in close succession. Management is as for liver transplant, with cautious administration of volume and vasopressor as required to maintain MAP. A marked fall in temperature is also seen. Although this is temporary if VVB with a heat exchanger is in use, it can otherwise be slow to correct, especially if continuous venovenous hemodiafiltration is running. Although the latter may be helpful in the prevention of hyperkalemia and severe acidosis, its benefits are unproven. Its use is often interrupted by clot formation in the filter or warming unit, and some consider it a significant distraction in an already complicated environment.

Postoperative Care

Postoperative management involves a variable period of continued mechanical ventilation, and maintenance of intravascular volume, which is diminished by tissue translocation that can persist for 1 to 3 days. Perioperative administration of prophylactic antimicrobials and intensive multi-agent induction of immunosuppression are also essential, as is monitoring of graft perfusion by Doppler ultrasound and stoma endoscopy. Abdominal wall (rectus sheath and subcostal transversus abdominis plane blockade) infusions aid analgesia after extubation, but patient-controlled analgesia is often used at high doses and an ongoing opiate requirement is common. Opiate use often continues beyond discharge despite specialist pain service input and may require long-term psychological support. Postoperative surgical complications are frequent but graft loss is now rare.

Conclusion

Numbers treated in this challenging field are fortunately small, but 20 years of experience is yielding better results, and better outcomes are bringing more and earlier referrals. Further progress will depend on concentrating experience in national or regional centers, and close collaboration among these centers in defining indications and refining clinical care.

POSTABDOMINAL TRANSPLANTATION COMPLICATIONS

Surgical Complications

Early postoperative surgical complications include postoperative bleeding, drainage leaks (bile, urine, pancreatic secretions), and vascular thrombosis. The risk of bleeding and thrombosis is lessened when a balance is maintained between procoagulants and anticoagulants (proteins S and C, antithrombin). Because standard laboratory tests monitor only coagulation, this balance may be difficult to assess in the absence of viscoelastic tests, which evaluate whole blood clotting.

Complications vary based on donor graft qualities and recipient characteristics. For instance, hepatic artery thrombosis is more common in pediatric recipients because of the small caliber of the vessel, and bile leaks are more common after liver transplantation using grafts from cardiac death donors.[243]

Infection

After the immediate postoperative period, infection is the primary cause of death. Immunosuppressive medications, used to prevent rejection, are largely responsible for this risk. Bacterial infections predominate during the early postoperative period. Surgical site infections, intraabdominal abscesses, and infected hematomas are common. In this immunosuppressed population, multidrug-resistant organisms are common. In liver transplant recipients, bacterial translocation or bile leaks can result in peritonitis, cholangitis, and perihepatic abscesses. In one study of liver transplant recipients, 47% of ICU patients had bloodstream infections, 35% had intraabdominal abscesses, and 17% had ventilator-associated pneumonia.[244] Prompt diagnosis and treatment with minimally invasive drainage techniques should be considered over early laparotomy. When this approach fails, laparotomy is indicated.

Prolonged endotracheal intubation and indwelling central venous and urinary catheters are a common source of infection. These devices should be removed as early as possible in the postoperative period. In the meantime, strict aseptic technique is required when accessing indwelling catheters and tubes.

Comorbidities, such as diabetes and renal dysfunction, can increase the risk of infection. Viral and fungal infections are more likely after the first postoperative week. Risk factors for fungal infection in liver transplant patients include preexisting viral hepatitis, diabetes mellitus, multiple organ system failure, prolonged parenteral nutrition, long-term mechanical ventilation, and increased antibiotic use.[245] Common sites of fungal infection include oral, esophageal, pulmonary, and intracerebral. Invasive fungal infections, despite prolonged treatment with amphotericin or itraconazole, are associated with a poor prognosis.

Immunosuppression

Acute cellular rejection (ACR) is an important cause of graft dysfunction within the first year of transplant. ACR rates have decreased with improvements in immunosuppression; ACR occurs in 15% to 25% of liver transplant patients and in less than 10% of kidney recipients.[10,246] Generally, ACR responds well to therapy, however, chronic rejection is a significant cause of graft loss for all organs. The goals of immunosuppression are to prevent graft loss and to avoid the adverse consequences of antirejection regimens.[247] Immunosuppression for solid organ transplant is divided into initial (induction) and maintenance phases. Calcineurin inhibitors cyclosporine and tacrolimus (formerly FK506) are the foundation for the majority of induction and maintenance regimens. Both agents inhibit transcription of interleukin (IL)-2 and other cytokines, primarily in helper T lymphocytes. Both manifest renal toxicity, which is caused by afferent arteriolar vasoconstriction and a reduction in GFR. The resulting azotemia is reversible with a reduction of dosage. Hypertension is due to vasoconstriction and sodium retention, and typically appears within the first weeks of treatment. Neurologic toxicity includes tremors, headaches, seizures, and even focal neurologic abnormalities. Mycophenolate mofetil therapy is a beneficial adjunct by allowing a reduction in the doses of calcineurin inhibitors.

In addition to tacrolimus, the most widely used drug, there are many other drugs available.[248] Sirolimus, an inhibitor of the protein mTOR, is used for calcineurin-sparing effects and in patients transplanted for hepatocellular carcinoma to reduce recurrence.[249] Basiliximab, a monoclonal antibody to CD25, has been used as an alternative to steroids for the induction of immunosuppression in liver transplantation.[250]

New immunosuppressive drugs are typically introduced for use in renal transplantation before they are applied in liver transplantation. Of note, recipients of liver grafts require less immunosuppression than do recipients of other organs, and liver grafts confer protection on other organs transplanted from the same donor. This effect is an example of the privileged immune status of the liver.[247]

The diagnosis of rejection requires a biopsy. The threshold for performing a biopsy should be low, albeit with an awareness that other conditions can mimic the histologic changes seen with rejection. For instance, diffuse lymphocytic infiltration of the kidney can be seen with rejection or lymphoproliferative disorder, and recurrent hepatitis C in the liver can resemble rejection.

Malignancy

Immunosuppressant drugs increase the susceptibility of transplant recipients to malignancy.[251] This effect is primarily related to the level of immunosuppression, but production of transforming growth factor-β may also be responsible. The spectrum of malignancy is wide ranging and includes cancers seen with HIV-infection, a condition also associated with immunosuppression. Lymphoma regression occurs if the immunosuppressive agent is discontinued early.

In a retrospective study of more than 250,000 solid organ transplant recipients, Hodgkin lymphoma risk factors included male sex, young age, and Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) seronegativity at the time of transplant.[252] In a study of 175,000 solid organ recipients (primarily kidney and liver recipients), malignancy was identified in more than 10,000 patients, a standardized incidence ratio (SIR) of greater than 2 compared with the general population.[253] The cancer sites with the highest relative risk included Kaposi sarcoma (SIR = 61), lip (SIR = 17), skin, nonmelanoma (SIR = 14), liver (SIR = 12), vulva (SIR = 8), and non-Hodgkin lymphoma (SIR = 8).

Posttransplant lymphoproliferative disorder (PTLD) is associated with a proliferation of B cells after transplantation in response to infection with EBV. Clinical presentation varies from a mononucleosis-like syndrome to malignant lymphoma. Pediatric patients are at increased risk due to a lower likelihood of prior exposure to EBV. Diagnosis is made by biopsy of the affected area, which can include the graft. Treatment consists of a reduction of immunosuppression levels and antiviral therapy against EBV, primarily ganciclovir. Individuals at high risk, such as patients who are seronegative for EBV or who receive a graft from a seropositive donor, should be maintained on antiviral prophylaxis.

The mean latency period for all cancers is 3 to 5 years after transplant, although specific malignancies exhibited unique time intervals. Cancer sites vary depending on the organ transplanted; for example, renal transplant recipients have a 100-fold greater than expected risk of developing carcinoma in the native kidney.[254] The reasons are unclear, but prolonged dialysis before transplantation may be a risk factor.[255] The use of specific immunosuppressive drugs also affects the relative risk of various cancers. For example, OKT3, which contains antibodies directed against T lymphocytes, is associated with an increased incidence of PTLD. Antibodies directed against B lymphocytes (rituximab) can reduce the incidence of PTLD. Sirolimus is not associated with cancer risk, and in fact may have antitumor effects.

Long-Term Survival

Long-term survival is affected by common diseases such as hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and diabetes mellitus.[256] The leading long-term causes of death after liver transplant are hepatic processes (disease recurrence or organ rejection), malignancy, and cardiovascular disease.[257]

Conclusions

Abdominal organ transplantation has matured over the past 50 years. From its beginning as an experimental procedure, it has become the best hope for survival in the case of liver transplantation, and the best option for an independent life without morbidity in the case of renal and pancreatic transplantation. Challenges for the future include a solution to the organ shortage, methods to minimize the likelihood of disease recurrence, and pharmacologic advances aimed at limiting the side effects of immunosuppression.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Organ Donation and Transplantation Activities, 2015 Report. GODT. http://www.transplant-observatory.org/organ-donation-transplantation-activities-2015-report-2/. Accessed March 26, 2018.
2. UNOS. | 2016 annual report. https://unos.org/about/annual-report/2016-annual-report/. Accessed March 26, 2018.
3. Desai NM, et al. *Transplantation*. 2004;77:99.
4. Persy VP, et al. *Nephron Clin Pract*. 2010;115:c122.
5. Abraham G, et al. *World J Transplant*. 2016;6(2):331.
6. White SL, et al. *Bull World Health Organ*. 2014;92(11):826–835.
7. Muralidharan A, White S. *Transplantation*. 2015;99(3):476.
8. United States Renal Data System. *2017 USRDS Annual Data Report: Epidemiology of Kidney Disease in the United States*. Bethesda, MD: National Institutes of Health, National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases; 2017:247–276. https://www.usrds.org/2017/view/Default.aspx
9. United States Renal Data System. *2017 USRDS Annual Data Report: Epidemiology of Kidney Disease in the United States*. Bethesda, MD: National Institutes of Health, National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases; 2017:461–499. https://www.usrds.org/2017/view/Default.aspx
10. Hart A, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2018;17:21.
11. Stewart DE, Klassen DK. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2017;12(12):2063–2065.
12. Stewart DE. The new kidney allocation system (KAS): The first 18 months. United Network for Organ Sharing. www.transplantpro.org/wp-content/uploads/sites/3/KAS-18-month-report-Aug-2016.pdf. Accessed February 22, 2018.
13. Wang JH, et al. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2016;23(5):281.
14. Maggiore U, et al. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2015;30(2):217–222.
15. United States Renal Data System. *2017 USRDS Annual Data Report: Epidemiology of Kidney Disease in the United States*. Bethesda, MD: National Institutes of Health, National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases; 2017:351–382. https://www.usrds.org/2017/view/Default.aspx
16. Lea-Henry T, Chacko B. *Nephrology*. 2018;23(1):12–19.
17. Badve SV, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2011;58(11):1152.
18. Matsushita K, van der Velde M, et al. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2010;375(9731):2073–2081.
19. Pecoits-Filho R, et al. *Semin Dial*. 2012;25(1):35.
20. Hawwa N, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2015;66(16):1779–1787.
21. Zolty R, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2008;8(11):2219.
22. Gill S, et al. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2017.
23. Locatelli F, Del Vecchio L. *Expert Opin Pharmacother*. 2012;13(4):495.
24. Lutz J, et al. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2014;29(1):29–40.
25. Cho J, et al. *Clin Transplant*. 2017;31(9):e13051.
26. Salles LD Junior, et al. *BMC Nephrol*. 2013;14(1).
27. Arnold R, et al. *JRSM Cardiovasc Dis*. 2016;5:204800401667768 .
28. Fleisher LA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;64(22):e77–e137.
29. Lentine KL, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;60(5):434.
30. Herzog CA, et al. *Circulation*. 2007;116(13):1465.
31. Friedman SE, et al. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2011;6(5):1185.
32. Wang LW, et al. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2011;57(3):476–487.
33. Ragosta M, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2004;147(6):1017–1023.
34. Parnham SFC, et al. *Front Cardiovasc Med*. 2014;1.
35. Wong CF, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2008;40(5):1324–1328.
36. Tita C, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2008;21(4):321–326.
37. Rabbat CG, et al. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2003;14(2):431.
38. Abbud-Filho M, et al. *Transplantation*. 2007;83(suppl 8):S1.
39. Yigla M, et al. *Semin Dial*. 2006;19(5):353.
40. Duggan EW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(3):547–560.
41. Gandhi GY, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2008;83(4):418–430.
42. Investigators N-SS. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360(13):1283–1297.
43. Thapa S, Brull SJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(1):237–241.
44. Brysbaert M, New B. *Behav Res Methods*. 2009;41(4):977–990.
45. Marik PE, et al. *Chest*. 2008;134(1):172–178.

46. Conzen PF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(3):578–584.
47. Higuchi H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45(10):1226–1229.
48. Lemmens HJ. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2004;22(4):651.
49. van Valenberg PL, et al. *Transplantation*. 1987;44(6):784.
50. Cammu G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(3):382–390.
51. Staals LM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(1):31–39.
52. Levine MA, et al. *Can Urol Assoc J Assoc Urol Can*. 2017;11(12):388–393.
53. Klouche K, et al. *Transplantation*. 2009;87(6):889.
54. Pham PC, et al. *Clin Kidney J*. 2017;10(5):688–697.
55. Akpek E, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 1999;31(8):3149.
56. Gulyam Kuruba SM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(11):1222–1226.
57. Freir NM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(4):953–957.
58. Mukhtar K, Khattak I. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(5):663.
59. Zachary AA, Leffell MS. *Front Immunol*. 2016;7.
60. Djamali A, et al. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2006;1(4):623.
61. Kostopanagiotou G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):613.
62. Stoumpos S, et al. *Transpl Int Off J Eur Soc Organ Transplant*. 2015;28(1):10–21.
63. Carpenter MA, et al. *Clin Transplant*. 2012;26(4):E438–E446.
64. Pilmore HL, et al. *Transplantation*. 2011;91(5):542–551.
65. Dholakia S, et al. *J R Soc Med*. 2016;109(4):141–146.
66. Redfield RR, et al. *Curr Opin Organ Transplant*. 2015;20(1):94–102.
67. Kandaswamy R, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2018;18:114–171.
68. Robertson RP, et al. *Diabetes Care*. 2003;26(suppl 1):S120.
69. Ojo AO, et al. *Transplantation*. 2001;71(1):82.
70. Shah AP, et al. *Clin Transplant*. 2013;27(1):E49–E55.
71. Schenker P, et al. *Transpl Int Off J Eur Soc Organ Transplant*. 2011;24(2):136–142.
72. Dhanireddy KK. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am*. 2012;41(1):133.
57. Gruessner RW, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2004;4(12):2018.
73. Giannarelli R, et al. *Diabetologia*. 2006;49(12):2977.
74. Giannarelli R, et al. *Diabetologia*. 2006;49(12):2977–2982.
75. Nathan DM. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328(23):1676.
76. Larson-Wadd K, Belani KG. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2004;22(4):663.
77. Gruessner AC, Sutherland DE. *Clin Transplant*. 2008;45.
78. Warner ME, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(3):516.
79. Halpern H, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2004;36(10):3105.
80. Senaratne NVS, Norris JM. *Int J Surg*. 2015;22:149–152.
81. Gruessner AC, Sutherland DE. *Clin Transplant*. 2005;19(4):433.
82. Redfield RR, et al. *Curr Transplant Rep*. 2015;2(2):169–175.
83. Starzl T. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1963;117:659.
84. *UNOS Attachment I to Appendix B of UNOS Bylaws*. Designated Transplant Program Criteria; 2011. www.unos.org/docs/Appendix_B_AttachI_XIII.pdf. Accessed December 2012.
85. Heron M. *Natl Vital Stat Rep Cent Dis Control Prev Natl Cent Health Stat Natl Vital Stat Syst*. 2017;66(5):1–76.
86. European Liver Transplant Registry - ELTR. http://www.eltr.org/. Accessed March 27, 2018.
87. Kim WR, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2018;18:172–253.
88. Kim WR, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2017;17:174–251.
89. OPTN/SRTR 2011 Annual Report of the U.S. Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network and the Scientific Registry of Transplant Recipients: Transplant Data 1998-2011. http://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov/data/annualreport.asp. Published December 19, 2012. Accessed December 28, 2012.
90. Recipient data - European Liver Transplant Registry - ELTR. http://www.eltr.org/Recipient-data.html. Accessed March 27, 2018.
91. Pinzani M, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol*. 2011;25(2):281–290.
92. Ripoll C, et al. *Gastroenterology*. 2007;133(2):481.
93. Moller S, Henriksen JH. *Gut*. 2008;57(2):268.
94. Schepke M, et al. *Hepatology*. 2001;34(5):884.
95. Wong F, et al. *Gut*. 2001;49(2):268.
96. Puthumana L, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2001;35(6):733.
97. Raval Z, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2011;58(3):223.
98. Ehtisham J, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2010;16(5):550.
99. Wray C, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2013;13:184.
100. Palma DT, Fallon MB. *J Hepatol*. 2006;45(4):617.
101. Schenk P, et al. *Gut*. 2002;51(6):853.
102. Rodriguez-Roisin R, Krowka MJ. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(22):2378.
103. Steadman R, Ramsay MAE. Portopulmonary hypertension and hepatopulmonary syndrome. In: Busuttil RW, Klintmalm GB, eds. *Transplantation of the Liver*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Saunders; 2015:215–535.
104. Arguedas MR, et al. *Hepatology*. 2003;37(1):192.
105. Gupta S, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2010;10(2):354.
106. Fallon MB, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2006;12(12 suppl 3):S105.
107. Rodriguez-Roisin R, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 2004;24(5):861.
108. Hadengue A, et al. *Gastroenterology*. 1991;100(2):520.
109. McDonnell PJ, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1983;127(4):437.
110. Kawut SM, et al. *Hepatology*. 2008;48(1):196.
111. Kim WR, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2000;6(4):453.
112. Krowka MJ, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2004;10(2):174.
113. Ramsay M. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23(2):145.
114. Koppel MH, et al. *New Engl J Med*. 1969;280(25):1367.
115. Garcia-Tsao G, et al. *Hepatology*. 2008;48(6):2064.
116. Gines A, et al. *Gastroenterology*. 1993;105(1):229.
117. Salerno F, et al. *Gut*. 2007;56(9):1310.
118. Moreau R. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2002;17(7):739.
119. Ginès P, et al. *Lancet*. 2003;362(9398):1819.
120. Ginès P, et al. *Hepatology*. 2004;40(1):16.
121. Kiser TH, et al. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2009;29(10):1196.
122. Sola E, Gines P. *J Hepatol*. 2010;53(6):1135.
123. Lucassin (terlipressin) FDA Approval Status. Drugs.com. https://www.drugs.com/history/lucassin.html. Accessed March 27, 2018.
124. Guevara M, et al. *Hepatology*. 1998;28(2):416.
125. Gonwa TA, et al. *Transplantation*. 1991;51(2):428.
126. Charlton MR, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2009;15(11):S1.
127. Bass NM, et al. *New Engl J Med*. 2010;362(12):1071.
128. Munoz SJ. *Med Clin North Am*. 2008;92(4):795. viii.
129. Runyon BA. *Hepatology*. 2009;49(6):2087.
130. Wszolek ZK, et al. *Transplantation*. 1989;48(6):1006.
131. Runyon BA, et al. *Ann Int Med*. 1992;117(3):215.
132. Perello A, et al. *Hepatology*. 1999;30(6):1393.
133. García-Pagán JC, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362(25):2370–2379.
134. Castaneda B, et al. *Hepatology*. 2001;33(4):821.
135. Garcia-Tsao G, et al. *Hepatology*. 2007;46(3):922.
136. Segal JB, Dzik WH. *Transfusion*. 2005;45(9):1413.
137. Tripodi A, et al. *Hepatology*. 2006;44(2):440.
138. Lisman T, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2010;52(3):355.
139. Tripodi A. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2009;13(1):55.
140. Dabbagh O, et al. *Chest*. 2010;137(5):1145.
141. Sogaard KK, et al. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2009;104(1):96.
142. Puoti C, et al. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2009;24(12):1847.
143. Ben-Ari Z, et al. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 1999;94(10):2977.
144. Joist JH. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 1999;94(10):2801.
145. Cheung K, et al. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2012;10(2):117–125.
146. Figueiredo FAF, et al. *J Gastroenterol*. 2006;41(5):476–482.
147. Morgan MY, et al. *Hepatology*. 2006;44(4):823–835.
148. Frisancho AR. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 1981;34(11):2540–2545.
149. van Vugt JLA, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2016;16(8):2277–2292.
150. Halldorson JB, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2009;9(2):318–326.
151. Schilsky ML, Moini M. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2016;22(10):2922.
152. Petrowsky H, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259(6):1186–1194.
153. Linecker M, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2018;68(4):798–813.
154. Townsend DR, et al. *Liver Transplant*. 2009;15(1):73.
155. Douthitt L, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2012;44(5):1314.
156. Hofer I, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2015;21(1):89–95.
157. Rudnick MR. *World J Hepatol*. 2015;7(10):1302.
158. Krowka MJ, et al. *Transplantation*. 2016;100(7):1440–1452.
159. Soong W, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(3):635–639.
160. Burger-Klepp U, et al. *Transplantation*. 2012;94(2):192.
161. Tsai YF, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2012;44(2):433.
162. Biancofiore G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(3):515.
163. O'Riordan J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(1):95.
164. Gatecel C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(3):740.
165. Armbruster K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(2):271.
166. Suttner SW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(1):206.
167. Frink Jr EJ. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(suppl 6):S46.
168. Kharasch ED, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(6):1511.
169. De Wolf AM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76(5):624.
170. Marcel RJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(4):870.
171. Haagsma EB, et al. *Liver*. 1985;5(3):123–128.
172. Bechstein WO, Neuhaus P. *Liver Transplant Surg Off Publ Am Assoc Study Liver Dis Int Liver Transplant Soc*. 1997;3(6):653–655.
173. Lee EM, et al. *Eur Neurol*. 2009;62(6):362.
174. Scott VL, et al. *Liver Transpl Surg*. 1996;2(5):343.
175. Park C, et al. *Transplantation*. 2009;87(7):1031.
176. Bellomo R, et al. *Lancet*. 2000;356(9248):2139.
177. Holmes CL, Walley KR. *Chest*. 2003;123(4):1266.

178. Rossi G, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 1998;30:1871.
179. Prager MC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(1):198.
180. Gurusamy KS, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;(3):CD007712.
181. Tzakis A, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1989;210(5):649.
182. Xia VW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(3):780.
183. Chui AK, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2000;32(7):2116.
184. Xia VW, et al. *Liver Transplant*. 2010;16(12):1421.
185. Warnaar N, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2008;6(2):297.
186. Steadman RH. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2004;22(4):687.
187. Forkin KT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(1):46–61.
188. Massicotte L, et al. *Transplantation*. 2012;93:1276.
189. Dupont J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(4):681–686.
190. Gorlinger K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:222.
191. Morrison GA, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26(4):654.
192. Chow JH, et al. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017:1089253217 73968.
193. Sorensen B, et al. *Crit Care*. 2011;15(1):201.
194. Dentali F, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 2011;106(09):429–438.
195. Lodge JP, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2005;11(8):973.
196. Planinsic RM, et al. *Liver Transplant*. 2005;11(8):895.
197. Levi M, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(19):1791.
198. Pereboom ITA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(4):1083–1091.
199. Chin JL, et al. *Clin Appl Thromb*. 2016;22(4):351–360.
200. Bezinover D, et al. *Transplantation*. 2018;102(4):578–592.
201. Kang Y. *Liver Transplant Surg Off Publ Am Assoc Study Liver Dis Int Liver Transplant Soc*. 1997;3(6):655–659.
202. Deppe A-C, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2016;203(2):424–433.
203. Kirchner C, et al. *Transfusion (Paris)*. 2014;54(10pt2):2760–2768.
204. Roullet S, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2015;21(2):169–179.
205. de Boer MT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(1):32–44.
206. Esmat Gamil M, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2012;44(9):2857–2860.
207. Rana A, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;216(5):902–907.
208. Badenoch A, et al. *Transplantation*. 2017;101(7):1658–1665.
209. Kong HY, et al. *World J Surg*. 2014;38(1):177–185.
210. Mangus RS, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2014;46(5):1393–1399.
211. Moretti EW, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14(6):416.
212. Eisenach JC, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1989;64(3):356.
213. Mandell MS, Hang Y. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;21(5):752.
214. Steadman RH. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;21(5):756.
215. Donnelly MC, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2016;22(4):527–535.
216. Bernal W, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2015;62(1):S112–S120.
217. Polson J, Lee WM. *Hepatology*. 2005;41(5):1179.
218. Bernal W, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2013;59(1):74–80.
219. Reddy KR, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2016;22(4):505–515.
220. Germani G, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2012;57(2):288–296.
221. Mendizabal M. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2016;22(4):1523.
222. Raschke RA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36(8):2244.
223. Bismuth H, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1995;222(2):109.
224. Riordan SM, Williams R. *Semin Liver Dis*. 2003;23(3):203.
225. Kumar R, et al. *J Clin Exp Hepatol*. 2012;2(1):S24.
226. Stravitz RT, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(11):2498.
227. Patton H, et al. *Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2012;8(3):161–212.
228. Shawcross DL, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2004;40(2):247.
229. Eefsen M, et al. *J Hepatol*. 2007;47(3):381.
230. Stewart ZA, et al. *Liver Transplant*. 2009;15(8):883.
231. Elwir S, Lake J. *Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2016;12(3):166–170.
232. Parikh ND, Singal AG. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2016;7(5):97–100.
233. Edwards EB, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2016;22(4):399–409.
234. Merion RM, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2005;5(2):307.
235. Schaubel DE, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2008;8(2):419.
236. Grant D, et al. *Am J Transplant Off J Am Soc Transplant Am Soc Transpl Surg*. 2015;15(1):210–219.
237. Bharadwaj S, et al. *Gastroenterol Rep*. 2017.
238. Lauro A, et al. *J Visc Surg*. 2017;154(2):105–114.
239. Hawksworth JS, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2018.
240. Nguyen-Buckley C, Wong M. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2017;35(3):509–521.
241. Fukazawa Pretto, Nishida. Anaesthetic management of adult intestinal and multivisceral transplant. In: *Oxford Textbook of Transplant Anaesthesia and Critical Care*. Oxford University Press; 2015.
242. Jorge Ekwenna. Paediatric intestinal and multivisceral transplantation: indications, selection, and perioperative management. In: *Oxford Textbook of Transplant Anaesthesia and Critical Care*. Oxford University Press; 2015.
243. Maheshwari A, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(12):1645–1653.
244. Karapanagiotou A, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2012;44(9):2748.
245. Yang CH, et al. *Ann Transplant*. 2012;17(4):59.
246. Choudhary NS, et al. *J Clin Exp Hepatol*. 2017;7(4):358–366.
247. Rosen HR. *Gastroenterology*. 2008;134(6):1789.
248. Geissler EK, Schlitt HJ. *Gut*. 2009;58(3):452.
249. Mehrabi A, et al. *Clin Transplant*. 2006;20(suppl 17):30.
250. Lupo L, et al. *Transplantation*. 2008;86(7):925.
251. Gutierrez-Dalmau A, Campistol JM. *Drugs*. 2007;67(8):1167.
252. Quinlan SC, et al. *Transplantation*. 2010;90(9):1011.
253. Engels EA, et al. *JAMA*. 2011;306(17):1891.
254. Doublet JD, et al. *J Urol*. 1997;158(1):42.
255. Denton MD, et al. *Kidney Int*. 2002;61(6):2201.
256. Sethi A, Stravitz RT. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther*. 2007;25(3):229.
257. Watt KDS, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2010;10(6):1420–1427.

References

1. Organ Donation and Transplantation Activities, 2015 Report. GODT. http://www.transplant-observatory.org/organ-donation-transplantation-activities-2015-report-2/. Accessed March 26, 2018.
2. UNOS. | 2016 annual report. https://unos.org/about/annual-report/2016-annual-report/. Accessed March 26, 2018.
3. Desai NM, Mange KC, Crawford MD, et al. Predicting outcome after liver transplantation: utility of the model for end-stage liver disease and a newly derived discrimination function1. *Transplantation*. 2004;77(1):99–106. https://doi.org/10.1097/01.TP.0000101009.91516.FC.
4. Persy VP, Remuzzi G, Perico N, et al. Prevention and transplantation in chronic kidney disease: what is achievable in emerging countries? Meeting report: Bamako meeting December 4-6, 2008. *Nephron Clin Pract*. 2010;115(2):c122–132. https://doi.org/10.1159/000312875.
5. Abraham G, Vijayan M, Gopalakrishnan N, et al. State of deceased donor transplantation in India: a model for developing countries around the world. *World J Transplant*. 2016;6(2):331. https://doi.org/10.5500/wjt.v6.i2.331.
6. White SL, Hirth R, Mahíllo B, et al. The global diffusion of organ transplantation: trends, drivers and policy implications. *Bull World Health Organ*. 2014;92(11):826–835. https://doi.org/10.2471/BLT.14.137653.
7. Muralidharan A, White S. The need for kidney transplantation in low- and middle-income countries in 2012: an epidemiological perspective. *Transplantation*. 2015;99(3):476–481. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0000000000000657.
8. United States Renal Data System. *2017 USRDS Annual Data Report: Epidemiology of Kidney Disease in the United States*. Bethesda, MD: National Institutes of Health, National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases; 2017:247–276. https://www.usrds.org/2017/view/Default.aspx. Accessed February 21, 2018.
9. United States Renal Data System. *2017 USRDS Annual Data Report: Epidemiology of Kidney Disease in the United States*. Bethesda, MD: National Institutes of Health, National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases; 2017:461–499. https://www.usrds.org/2017/view/Default.aspx. Accessed February 21, 2018.
10. Hart A, Smith JM, Skeans MA, et al. OPTN/SRTR 2015 annual data report: kidney. *Am J Transplant*. 2018;17:21–116. https://doi.org/10.1111/ajt.14124.
11. Stewart DE, Klassen DK. Early experience with the new kidney allocation system: a perspective from UNOS. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2017;12(12):2063–2065. https://doi.org/10.2215/CJN.06380617.
12. Stewart DE. The new kidney allocation system (KAS): The first 18 months. United Network for Organ Sharing. www.transplantpro.org/wp-content/uploads/sites/3/KAS-18-month-report-Aug-2016.pdf. Accessed February 22, 2018.
13. Wang JH, Skeans MA, Israni AK. Current status of kidney transplant outcomes: dying to survive. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2016;23(5):281–286. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.ackd.2016.07.001.
14. Maggiore U, Oberbauer R, Pascual J, et al. Strategies to increase the donor pool and access to kidney transplantation: an international perspective. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2015;30(2):217–222. https://doi.org/10.1093/ndt/gfu212.
15. United States Renal Data System. *2017 USRDS Annual Data Report: Epidemiology of Kidney Disease in the United States*. Bethesda, MD: National Institutes of Health, National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases; 2017:351–382. https://www.usrds.org/2017/view/Default.aspx. Accessed February 21, 2018.
16. Lea-Henry T, Chacko B. Management considerations in the failing renal allograft. *Nephrology*. 2018;23(1):12–19. https://doi.org/10.1111/nep.13165.
17. Badve SV, Roberts MA, Hawley CM, et al. Effects of beta-adrenergic antagonists in patients with chronic kidney disease. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2011;58(11):1152–1161. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2011.04.041.
18. Matsushita K, van der Velde M, et al. Association of estimated glomerular filtration rate and albuminuria with all-cause and cardiovascular mortality in general population cohorts: a collaborative meta-analysis. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2010;375(9731):2073–2081. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(10)60674-5.
19. Pecoits-Filho R, Bucharles S, Barberato SH. Diastolic heart failure in dialysis patients: mechanisms, diagnostic approach, and treatment: cardiomyopathy in dialysis patients. *Semin Dial*. 2012;25(1):35–41. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1525-139X.2011.01011.x.
20. Hawwa N, Shrestha K, Hammadah M, Yeo PSD, Fatica R, Tang WHW. Reverse remodeling and prognosis following kidney transplantation in contemporary patients with cardiac dysfunction. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2015;66(16):1779–1787. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2015.08.023.
21. Zolty R, Hynes PJ, Vittorio TJ. Severe left ventricular systolic dysfunction may reverse with renal transplantation: uremic cardiomyopathy and cardiorenal syndrome. *Am J Transplant Off J Am Soc Transplant Am Soc Transpl Surg*. 2008;8(11):2219–2224. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2008.02407.x.
22. Gill S, Jun M, Ravani P. Atrial fibrillation and chronic kidney disease: struggling through thick and thin: table 1. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1093/ndt/gfw378.
23. Locatelli F, Vecchio LD. An expert opinion on the current treatment of anemia in patients with kidney disease. *Expert Opin Pharmacother*. 2012;13(4):495–503. https://doi.org/10.1517/14656566.2012.658369.
24. Lutz J, Menke J, Sollinger D, Schinzel H, Thürmel K. Haemostasis in chronic kidney disease. *Nephrol Dial Transplant*. 2014;29(1):29–40. https://doi.org/10.1093/ndt/gft209.
25. Cho J, Jun KW, Kim MH, Hwang JK, Moon IS, Kim JI. Coagulation profile in patients with chronic kidney disease before and after kidney transplantation: a retrospective cohort study. *Clin Transplant*. 2017;31(9):e13051. https://doi.org/10.1111/ctr.13051.
26. Salles LD Junior, Santos PR, dos Santos AA, de Souza MHLP. Dyspepsia and gastric emptying in end-stage renal disease patients on hemodialysis. *BMC Nephrol*. 2013;14(1). https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2369-14-275.
27. Arnold R, Issar T, Krishnan AV, Pussell BA. Neurological complications in chronic kidney disease. *JRSM Cardiovasc Dis*. 2016;5:204800401667768.https://doi.org/10.1177/2048004016677687.
28. Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA Guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;64(22):e77–e137. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2014.07.944.
29. Lentine KL, Costa SP, Weir MR, et al. Cardiac disease evaluation and management among kidney and liver transplantation candidates. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;60(5):434–480. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2012.05.008.
30. Herzog CA, Littrell K, Arko C, Frederick PD, Blaney M. Clinical characteristics of dialysis patients with acute myocardial infarction in the united states: a collaborative project of the United States renal data system and the national registry of myocardial infarction. *Circulation*. 2007;116(13):1465–1472. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.107.696765.
31. Friedman SE, Palac RT, Zlotnick DM, Chobanian MC, Costa SP. A call to action: variability in guidelines for cardiac evaluation before renal transplantation. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2011;6(5):1185–1191. https://doi.org/10.2215/CJN.09391010.
32. Wang LW, Fahim MA, Hayen A, et al. Cardiac testing for coronary artery disease in potential kidney transplant recipients: a systematic review of test accuracy studies. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2011;57(3):476–487. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.ajkd.2010.11.018.
33. Ragosta M, Samady H, Isaacs RB, Gimple LW, Sarembock IJ, Powers ER. Coronary flow reserve abnormalities in patients with diabetes mellitus who have end-stage renal disease and normal epicardial coronary arteries. *Am Heart J*. 2004;147(6):1017–1023. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ahj.2003.07.029.
34. Parnham SFC, Gleadle JM, De Pasquale CG, Selvanayagam JB. Myocardial ischemia assessment in chronic kidney disease: challenges and pitfalls. *Front Cardiovasc Med*. 2014;1. https://doi.org/10.3389/fcvm.2014.00013.
35. Wong CF, Little MA, Vinjamuri S, Hammad A, Harper JM. Technetium myocardial perfusion scanning in prerenal transplant evaluation in the United Kingdom. *Transplant Proc*. 2008;40(5):1324–1328. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.transproceed.2008.03.143.
36. Tita C, Karthikeyan V, Stroe A, Jacobsen G, Ananthasubramaniam K. Stress echocardiography for risk stratification in patients with end-stage renal disease undergoing renal transplantation. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2008;21(4):321–326. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.echo.2007.06.004.

37. Rabbat CG. Prognostic value of myocardial perfusion studies in patients with end-stage renal disease assessed for kidney or kidney-pancreas transplantation: a meta-analysis. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2003;14(2):431–439. https://doi.org/10.1097/01.ASN.0000047560.51444.3A.
38. Abbud-Filho M, Adams PL, Alberú J, et al. A report of the lisbon conference on the care of the kidney transplant recipient. *Transplantation*. 2007;83(suppl):S1–S22. https://doi.org/10.1097/01.tp.0000260765.41275.e2.
39. Yigla M, Abassi Z, Reisner SA, Nakhoul F. Pulmonary hypertension in hemodialysis patients: an unrecognized threat. *Semin Dial*. 2006;19(5):353–357. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1525-139X.2006.00186.x.
40. Duggan EW, Carlson K, Umpierrez GE. Perioperative hyperglycemia management: an update. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(3):547–560. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0000000000001515.
41. Gandhi GY, Murad MH, Flynn DN, et al. Effect of perioperative insulin infusion on surgical morbidity and mortality: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2008;83(4):418–430. https://doi.org/10.4065/83.4.418.
42. Investigators N-SS. Intensive versus conventional glucose control in critically ill patients. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360(13):1283–1297.
43. Thapa S, Brull SJ. Succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia in patients with renal failure: an old question revisited. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(1):237–241.
44. Brysbaert M, New B. Moving beyond Kučera and Francis: a critical evaluation of current word frequency norms and the introduction of a new and improved word frequency measure for American english. *Behav Res Methods*. 2009;41(4):977–990.
45. Marik PE, Baram M, Vahid B. Does central venous pressure predict fluid responsiveness? A systematic review of the literature and the tale of seven mares. *Chest*. 2008;134(1):172–178. https://doi.org/10.1378/chest.07-2331.
46. Conzen PF, Kharasch ED, Czerner SFA, et al. Low-flow sevoflurane compared with low-flow isoflurane anesthesia in patients with stable renal insufficiency. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(3):578–584.
47. Higuchi H, Adachi Y, Wada H, Kanno M, Satoh T. Comparison of plasma alpha glutathione S-transferase concentrations during and after low-flow sevoflurane or isoflurane anaesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45(10):1226–1229.
48. Lemmens HJM. Kidney transplantation: recent developments and recommendations for anesthetic management. *Anesthesiol Clin N Am*. 2004;22(4):651–662. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.atc.2004.05.007.
49. van Valenberg PL, Hoitsma AJ, Tiggeler RG, Berden JH, van Lier HJ, Koene RA. Mannitol as an indispensable constituent of an intraoperative hydration protocol for the prevention of acute renal failure after renal cadaveric transplantation. *Transplantation*. 1987;44(6):784–788.
50. Cammu G, Van Vlem B, van den Heuvel M, et al. Dialysability of sugammadex and its complex with rocuronium in intensive care patients with severe renal impairment. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(3):382–390. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aes207.
51. Staals LM, Snoeck MMJ, Driessen JJ, et al. Reduced clearance of rocuronium and sugammadex in patients with severe to end-stage renal failure: a pharmacokinetic study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(1):31–39. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aep340.
52. Levine MA, Schuler T, Gourishankar S. Complications in the 90-day postoperative period following kidney transplant and the relationship of the Charlson Comorbidity Index. *Can Urol Assoc J Assoc Urol Can*. 2017;11(12):388–393. https://doi.org/10.5489/cuaj.4378.
53. Klouche K, Amigues L, Massanet P, et al. Outcome of renal transplant recipients admitted to an intensive care unit: a 10-year cohort study. *Transplantation*. 2009;87(6):889–895. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0b013e31819a688a.
54. Pham PC, Khaing K, Sievers TM, et al. 2017 update on pain management in patients with chronic kidney disease. *Clin Kidney J*. 2017;10(5):688–697. https://doi.org/10.1093/ckj/sfx080.
55. Akpek E, Kayhan Z, Kaya H, Candan S, Haberal M. Epidural anesthesia for renal transplantation: a preliminary report. *Transplant Proc*. 1999;31(8):3149–3150.
56. Gulyam Kuruba SM, Mukhtar K, Singh SK. A randomised controlled trial of ultrasound-guided transversus abdominis plane block for renal transplantation. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(11):1222–1226. https://doi.org/10.1111/anae.12704
57. Freir NM, Murphy C, Mugawar M, Linnane A, Cunningham AJ. Transversus abdominis plane block for analgesia in renal transplantation: a randomized controlled trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(4):953–957. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0b013e3182642117
58. Mukhtar K, Khattak I. Transversus abdominis plane block for renal transplant recipients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(5):663–664. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aeq077.
59. Zachary AA, Leffell MS. HLA mismatching strategies for solid organ transplantation – a balancing act. *Front Immunol*. 2016;7. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2016.00575.
60. Djamali A. Medical care of kidney transplant recipients after the first posttransplant year. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2006;1(4):623–640. https://doi.org/10.2215/CJN.01371005.
61. Kostopanagiotou G, Smyrniotis V, Arkadopoulos N, Theodoraki K, Papadimitriou L, Papadimitriou J. Anesthetic and perioperative management of adult transplant recipients in nontransplant surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):613–622.
62. Stoumpos S, Jardine AG, Mark PB. Cardiovascular morbidity and mortality after kidney transplantation. *Transpl Int Off J Eur Soc Organ Transplant*. 2015;28(1):10–21. https://doi.org/10.1111/tri.12413.
63. Carpenter MA, Weir MR, Adey DB, House AA, Bostom AG, Kusek JW. Inadequacy of cardiovascular risk factor management in chronic kidney transplantation - evidence from the FAVORIT study. *Clin Transplant*. 2012;26(4):E438–E446. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399-0012.2012.01676.x.
64. Pilmore HL, Skeans MA, Snyder JJ, Israni AK, Kasiske BL. Cardiovascular disease medications after renal transplantation: results from the patient outcomes in renal transplantation study. *Transplantation*. 2011;91(5):542–551. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0b013e31820437bd.
65. Dholakia S, Oskrochi Y, Easton G, Papalois V. Advances in pancreas transplantation. *J R Soc Med*. 2016;109(4):141–146. https://doi.org/10.1177/0141076816636369.
66. Redfield RR, Scalea JR, Odorico JS. Simultaneous pancreas and kidney transplantation: current trends and future directions. *Curr Opin Organ Transplant*. 2015;20(1):94–102. https://doi.org/10.1097/MOT.0000000000000146.
67. Kandaswamy R, Stock PG, Gustafson SK, et al. OPTN/SRTR 2016 Annual Data Report: Pancreas. *Am J Transplant*. 2018;18:114–171. https://doi.org/10.1111/ajt.14558.
68. Robertson RP, Davis C, Larsen J, Stratta R, Sutherland DER. Pancreas transplantation for patients with type 1 diabetes. *Diabetes Care*. 2003;26(suppl 1):S120.
69. Ojo AO, Meier-Kriesche HU, Hanson JA, et al. The impact of simultaneous pancreas-kidney transplantation on long-term patient survival. *Transplantation*. 2001;71(1):82–90.
70. Shah AP, Mangus RS, Powelson JA, et al. Impact of recipient age on whole organ pancreas transplantation. *Clin Transplant*. 2013;27(1):E49–E55. https://doi.org/10.1111/ctr.12047.
71. Schenker P, Vonend O, Krüger B, et al. Long-term results of pancreas transplantation in patients older than 50 years. *Transpl Int Off J Eur Soc Organ Transplant*. 2011;24(2):136–142. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1432-2277.2010.01172.x.
72. Dhanireddy KK. Pancreas transplantation. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am*. 2012;41(1):133–142. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gtc.2011.12.002.
73. Gruessner RWG, Sutherland DER, Gruessner AC. Mortality assessment for pancreas transplants. *Am J Transplant Off J Am Soc Transplant Am Soc Transpl Surg*. 2004;4(12):2018–2026. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2004.00667.x.
74. Giannarelli R, Coppelli A, Sartini MS, et al. Pancreas transplant alone has beneficial effects on retinopathy in type 1 diabetic patients. *Diabetologia*. 2006;49(12):2977–2982. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-006-0463-5.
75. Nathan DM. Long-term complications of diabetes mellitus. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;328(23):1676–1685. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199306103282306.
76. Larson-Wadd K, Belani KG. Pancreas and islet cell transplantation. *Anesthesiol Clin N Am*. 2004;22(4):663–674. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.atc.2004.06.010.
77. Gruessner AC, Sutherland DER. Pancreas transplant outcomes for United States (US) cases as reported to the United Network for Organ Sharing (UNOS) and the International Pancreas Transplant Registry (IPTR). *Clin Transpl*. 2008:45–56.

78. Warner ME, Contreras MG, Warner MA, Schroeder DR, Munn SR, Maxson PM. Diabetes mellitus and difficult laryngoscopy in renal and pancreatic transplant patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(3):516–519.
79. Halpern H, Miyoshi E, Kataoka LM, et al. Anesthesia for pancreas transplantation alone or simultaneous with kidney. *Transplant Proc*. 2004;36(10):3105–3106. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.transproceed.2004.11.097.
80. Senaratne NVS, Norris JM. Bladder vs enteric drainage following pancreatic transplantation: How best to support graft survival? A best evidence topic. *Int J Surg*. 2015;22:149–152. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijsu.2015.08.072.
81. Gruessner AC, Sutherland DER. Pancreas transplant outcomes for United States (US) and non-US cases as reported to the United Network for Organ Sharing (UNOS) and the International Pancreas Transplant Registry (IPTR) as of June 2004. *Clin Transplant*. 2005;19(4):433–455. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399-0012.2005.00378.x.
82. Redfield RR, Kaufman DB, Odorico JS. Diagnosis and treatment of pancreas rejection. *Curr Transplant Rep*. 2015;2(2):169–175. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40472-015-0061-x.
83. Starzl TE, Marchioro TL, Vonkaulla KN, Hermann G, Brittain RS, Waddell WR. Homotransplantation of the liver in humans. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1963;117:659–676.
84. *UNOS Attachment I to Appendix B of UNOS Bylaws*. Designated Transplant Program Criteria; 2011. http://www.unos.org/docs/Appendix_B_AttachI_XIII.pdf.
85. Heron M. Deaths: leading causes for 2015. *Natl Vital Stat Rep Cent Dis Control Prev Natl Cent Health Stat Natl Vital Stat Syst*. 2017;66(5):1–76.
86. European Liver Transplant Registry - ELTR. http://www.eltr.org/. Accessed March 27, 2018.
87. Kim WR, Lake JR, Smith JM, et al. OPTN/SRTR 2016 Annual Data Report: Liver. *Am J Transplant*. 2018;18:172–253. https://doi.org/10.1111/ajt.14559.
88. Kim WR, Lake JR, Smith JM, et al. OPTN/SRTR 2015 Annual Data Report: Liver. *Am J Transplant*. 2017;17:174–251. https://doi.org/10.1111/ajt.14126.
89. OPTN/SRTR 2011 Annual Report of the U.S. Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network and the Scientific Registry of Transplant Recipients: Transplant Data 1998-2011. http://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov/data/annualreport.asp. Published December 19, 2012. Accessed December 28, 2012.
90. Recipient data - European Liver Transplant Registry - ELTR. http://www.eltr.org/Recipient-data.html. Accessed March 27, 2018.
91. Pinzani M, Rosselli M, Zuckermann M. Liver cirrhosis. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol*. 2011;25(2):281–290. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bpg.2011.02.009.
92. Ripoll C, Groszmann R, Garcia–Tsao G, et al. Hepatic venous pressure gradient predicts clinical decompensation in patients with compensated cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology*. 2007;133(2):481–488. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2007.05.024.
93. Moller S, Henriksen JH. Cardiovascular complications of cirrhosis. *Gut*. 2008;57(2):268–278. https://doi.org/10.1136/gut.2006.112177.
94. Schepke M. Contractile hyporesponsiveness of hepatic arteries in humans with cirrhosis: evidence for a receptor-specific mechanism. *Hepatology*. 2001;34(5):884–888. https://doi.org/10.1053/jhep.2001.28794.
95. Wong F, Girgrah N, Graba J, Allidina Y, Liu P, Blendis L. The cardiac response to exercise in cirrhosis. *Gut*. 2001;49(2):268–275.
96. Puthumana L, Chaudhry V, Thuluvath PJ. Prolonged QTc interval and its relationship to autonomic cardiovascular reflexes in patients with cirrhosis. *J Hepatol*. 2001;35(6):733–738.
97. Raval Z, Harinstein ME, Skaro AI, et al. Cardiovascular risk assessment of the liver transplant candidate. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2011;58(3):223–231. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2011.03.026.
98. Ehtisham J, Altieri M, Salamé E, Saloux E, Ollivier I, Hamon M. Coronary artery disease in orthotopic liver transplantation: pre-transplant assessment and management. *Liver Transpl*. 2010. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.22035.
99. Wray C, Scovotti JC, Tobis J, et al. Liver transplantation outcome in patients with angiographically proven coronary artery disease: a multi-institutional study: post-LT survival after coronary angiography. *Am J Transplant*. 2013;13(1):184–191. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2012.04293.x.
100. Palma DT, Fallon MB. The hepatopulmonary syndrome. *J Hepatol*. 2006;45(4):617–625. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2006.07.002.
101. Schenk P, Fuhrmann V, Madl C, et al. Hepatopulmonary syndrome: prevalence and predictive value of various cut offs for arterial oxygenation and their clinical consequences. *Gut*. 2002;51(6):853–859.
102. Rodríguez-Roisin R, Krowka MJ. Hepatopulmonary syndrome—a liver-induced lung vascular disorder. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(22):2378–2387.
103. Steadman R, Ramsay MAE. Portopulmonary hypertension and hepatopulmonary syndrome. In: Busuttil RW, Klintmalm GB, eds. *Transplantation of the Liver*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Saunders; 2015:215–535.
104. Arguedas M. Prospective evaluation of outcomes and predictors of mortality in patients with hepatopulmonary syndrome undergoing liver transplantation. *Hepatology*. 2003;37(1):192–197. https://doi.org/10.1053/jhep.2003.50023.
105. Gupta S, Castel H, Rao RV, et al. Improved survival after liver transplantation in patients with hepatopulmonary syndrome. *Am J Transplant*. 2010;10(2):354–363. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2009.02822.x.
106. Fallon MB, Mulligan DC, Gish RG, Krowka MJ. Model for end-stage liver disease (MELD) exception for hepatopulmonary syndrome. *Liver Transpl*. 2006;12(S3):S105–S107. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.20971.
107. Rodriguez-Roisin R. Pulmonary-hepatic vascular disorders (PHD). *Eur Respir J*. 2004;24(5):861–880. https://doi.org/10.1183/09031936.04.00010904.
108. Hadengue A, Benhayoun MK, Lebrec D, Benhamou JP. Pulmonary hypertension complicating portal hypertension: prevalence and relation to splanchnic hemodynamics. *Gastroenterology*. 1991;100(2):520–528.
109. McDonnell PJ, Toye PA, Hutchins GM. Primary pulmonary hypertension and cirrhosis: are they related? *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1983;127(4):437–441. https://doi.org/10.1164/arrd.1983.127.4.437.
110. Kawut SM, Krowka MJ, Trotter JF, et al. Clinical risk factors for portopulmonary hypertension. *Hepatology*. 2008;48(1):196–203. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.22275.
111. Kim W. Accuracy of doppler echocardiography in the assessment of pulmonary hypertension in liver transplant candidates. *Liver Transpl*. 2000;6(4):453–458. https://doi.org/10.1053/jlts.2000.7573.
112. Krowka MJ, Mandell MS, Ramsay MAE, et al. Hepatopulmonary syndrome and portopulmonary hypertension: a report of the multicenter liver transplant database. *Liver Transpl*. 2004;10(2):174–182. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.20016.
113. Ramsay M. Portopulmonary hypertension and right heart failure in patients with cirrhosis. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23(2):145–150. https://doi.org/10.1097/ACO.0b013e32833725c4.
114. Koppel MH, Coburn JW, Mims MM, Goldstein H, Boyle JD, Rubini ME. Transplantation of cadaveric kidneys from patients with hepatorenal syndrome. Evidence for the functional nature of renal failure in advanced liver disease. *N Engl J Med*. 1969;280(25):1367–1371. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM196906192802501.
115. Garcia-Tsao G, Parikh CR, Viola A. Acute kidney injury in cirrhosis. *Hepatology*. 2008;48(6):2064–2077. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.22605.
116. Ginès A, Escorsell A, Ginès P, et al. Incidence, predictive factors, and prognosis of the hepatorenal syndrome in cirrhosis with ascites. *Gastroenterology*. 1993;105(1):229–236.
117. Salerno F, Gerbes A, Gines P, Wong F, Arroyo V. Diagnosis, prevention and treatment of hepatorenal syndrome in cirrhosis. *Postgrad Med J*. 2008;84(998):662–670. https://doi.org/10.1136/gut.2006.107789.
118. Moreau R. Hepatorenal syndrome in patients with cirrhosis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2002;17(7):739–747.
119. Ginès P, Guevara M, Arroyo V, Rodés J. Hepatorenal syndrome. *Lancet*. 2003;362(9398):1819–1827.
120. Ginès P, Guevara MDM, Perez-Villa F. Management of hepatorenal syndrome: another piece of the puzzle. *Hepatology*. 2004;40(1):16–18. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.20313.
121. Kiser TH, MacLaren R, Fish DN. Treatment of hepatorenal syndrome. *Pharmacother J Hum Pharmacol Drug Ther*. 2009;29(10):1196–1211.

122. Solà E, Ginès P. Renal and circulatory dysfunction in cirrhosis: current management and future perspectives. *J Hepatol*. 2010;53(6):1135–1145. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2010.08.001.
123. Lucassin (terlipressin) FDA Approval Status. Drugs.com. https://www.drugs.com/history/lucassin.html. Accessed March 27, 2018.
124. Guevara M, Ginès P, Bandi JC, et al. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt in hepatorenal syndrome: effects on renal function and vasoactive systems. *Hepatology*. 1998;28(2):416–422.
125. Gonwa TA, Morris CA, Goldstein RM, Husberg BS, Klintmalm GB. Long-term survival and renal function following liver transplantation in patients with and without hepatorenal syndrome--experience in 300 patients. *Transplantation*. 1991;51(2):428–430.
126. Charlton MR, Wall WJ, Ojo AO, et al. Report of the first international liver transplantation society expert panel consensus conference on renal insufficiency in liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl*. 2009;15(11):S1–S34. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.21877.
127. Bass NM, Mullen KD, Sanyal A, et al. Rifaximin treatment in hepatic encephalopathy. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362(12):1071–1081.
128. Munoz SJ. Hepatic encephalopathy. *Med Clin North Am*. 2008;92(4):795–812. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mcna.2008.03.009. viii.
129. Runyon BA. Management of adult patients with ascites due to cirrhosis: an update. *Hepatology*. 2009;49(6):2087–2107. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.22853.
130. Wszolek ZK, McComb RD, Pfeiffer RF, et al. Pontine and extrapontine myelinolysis following liver transplantation. Relationship to serum sodium. *Transplantation*. 1989;48(6):1006–1012.
131. Runyon BA, Montano AA, Akriviadis EA, Antillon MR, Irving MA, McHutchison JG. The serum-ascites albumin gradient is superior to the exudate-transudate concept in the differential diagnosis of ascites. *Ann Intern Med*. 1992;117(3):215–220.
132. Perelló A, Escorsell A, Bru C, et al. Wedged hepatic venous pressure adequately reflects portal pressure in hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis. *Hepatol Baltim Md*. 1999;30(6):1393–1397. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.510300628.
133. García-Pagán JC, Caca K, Bureau C, et al. Early use of TIPS in patients with cirrhosis and variceal bleeding. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362(25):2370–2379.
134. Castañeda B. Effects of blood volume restitution following a portal hypertensive–related bleeding in anesthetized cirrhotic rats. *Hepatology*. 2001;33(4):821–825. https://doi.org/10.1053/jhep.2001.23437.
135. Garcia-Tsao G, Sanyal AJ, Grace ND, Carey W. Practice guidelines committee of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases, the Practice Parameters Committee of the American College of Gastroenterology. Prevention and management of gastroesophageal varices and variceal hemorrhage in cirrhosis. *Hepatology*. 2007;46(3):922–938. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.21907.
136. Segal JB, Dzik WH. Paucity of studies to support that abnormal coagulation test results predict bleeding in the setting of invasive procedures: an evidence-based review. *Transfusion (Paris)*. 2005;45(9):1413–1425. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1537-2995.2005.00546.x.
137. Tripodi A, Primignani M, Chantarangkul V, et al. Thrombin generation in patients with cirrhosis: the role of platelets. *Hepatology*. 2006;44(2):440–445. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.21266.
138. Lisman T, Bakhtiari K, Pereboom IT, Hendriks HG, Meijers JC, Porte RJ. Normal to increased thrombin generation in patients undergoing liver transplantation despite prolonged conventional coagulation tests. *J Hepatol*. 2010;52(3):355–361.
139. Tripodi A. Tests of coagulation in liver disease. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2009;13(1):55–61. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cld.2008.09.002.
140. Dabbagh O, Oza A, Prakash S, Sunna R, Saettele TM. Coagulopathy does not protect against venous thromboembolism in hospitalized patients with chronic liver disease. *Chest*. 2010;137(5):1145–1149. https://doi.org/10.1378/chest.09-2177.
141. Søgaard KK, Horváth-Puhó E, Grønbæk H, Jepsen P, Vilstrup H, Sørensen HT. Risk of venous thromboembolism in patients with liver disease: a nationwide population-based case–control study. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2009;104(1):96–101. https://doi.org/10.1038/ajg.2008.34.
142. Puoti C, Bellis L, Guarisco R, et al. Quantitation of tissue polypeptide antigen (TPA) in hepatic and systemic circulation in patients with chronic liver diseases. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2009;24(12):1847–1851. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.05916.x.
143. Ben-Ari Z, Osman E, Hutton RA, Burroughs AK. Disseminated intravascular coagulation in liver cirrhosis: fact or fiction? *Am J Gastroenterol*. 1999;94(10):2977–2982.
144. Joist JH. AICF and DIC in liver cirrhosis: expressions of a hypercoagulable state. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 1999;94(10):2801–2803. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1572-0241.1999.02801.x.
145. Cheung K, Lee SS, Raman M. Prevalence and mechanisms of malnutrition in patients with advanced liver disease, and nutrition management strategies. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2012;10(2):117–125. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cgh.2011.08.016.
146. Figueiredo FAF, Perez RM, Freitas MM, Kondo M. Comparison of three methods of nutritional assessment in liver cirrhosis: subjective global assessment, traditional nutritional parameters, and body composition analysis. *J Gastroenterol*. 2006;41(5):476–482. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00535-006-1794-1.
147. Morgan MY, Madden AM, Soulsby CT, Morris RW. Derivation and validation of a new global method for assessing nutritional status in patients with cirrhosis. *Hepatology*. 2006;44(4):823–835. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.21358.
148. Frisancho AR. New norms of upper limb fat and muscle areas for assessment of nutritional status. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 1981;34(11):2540–2545. https://doi.org/10.1093/ajcn/34.11.2540.
149. van Vugt JLA, Levolger S, de Bruin RWF, van Rosmalen J, Metselaar HJ, IJzermans JNM. Systematic review and meta-analysis of the impact of computed tomography-assessed skeletal muscle mass on outcome in patients awaiting or undergoing liver transplantation. *Am J Transplant*. 2016;16(8):2277–2292. https://doi.org/10.1111/ajt.13732.
150. Halldorson JB, Bakthavatsalam R, Fix O, Reyes JD, Perkins JD. D-MELD, a simple predictor of post liver transplant mortality for optimization of donor/recipient matching. *Am J Transplant*. 2009;9(2):318–326. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2008.02491.x.
151. Schilsky ML, Moini M. Advances in liver transplantation allocation systems. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2016;22(10):2922. https://doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i10.2922.
152. Petrowsky H, Rana A, Kaldas FM, et al. Liver transplantation in highest acuity recipients: identifying factors to avoid futility. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259(6):1186–1194. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0000000000000265.
153. Linecker M, Krones T, Berg T, et al. Potentially inappropriate liver transplantation in the era of the "sickest first" policy – a search for the upper limits. *J Hepatol*. 2018;68(4):798–813. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2017.11.008.
154. Townsend DR, Bagshaw SM, Jacka MJ, Bigam D, Cave D, Gibney RTN. Intraoperative renal support during liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl*. 2009;15(1):73–78. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.21650.
155. Douthitt L, Bezinover D, Uemura T, et al. Perioperative use of continuous renal replacement therapy for orthotopic liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc*. 2012;44(5):1314–1317. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.transproceed.2012.01.142.
156. Hofer I, Spivack J, Yaport M, et al. Association between anesthesiologist experience and mortality after orthotopic liver transplantation: anesthesiologists experience and outcomes in liver transplant. *Liver Transpl*. 2015;21(1):89–95. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.24014.
157. Rudnick MR. Hemodynamic monitoring during liver transplantation: a state of the art review. *World J Hepatol*. 2015;7(10):1302. https://doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v7.i10.1302.
158. Krowka MJ, Fallon MB, Kawut SM, et al. International Liver Transplant Society practice guidelines: diagnosis and management of hepatopulmonary syndrome and portopulmonary hypertension. *Transplantation*. 2016;100(7):1440–1452. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0000000000001229.
159. Soong W, Sherwani SS, Ault ML, Baudo AM, Herborn JC, De Wolf AM. United States practice patterns in the use of transesophageal echocardiography during adult liver transplantation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(3):635–639. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.jvca.2013.10.011.
160. Burger-Klepp U, Karatosic R, Thum M, et al. Transesophageal echocardiography during orthotopic liver transplantation in patients with esophagoastric varices. *Transplant J*. 2012;94(2):192–196. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0b013e31825475c2.
161. Tsai Y-F, Su B-C, Lin C-C, Liu F-C, Lee W-C, Yu H-P. Cardiac output derived from arterial pressure waveform analysis: validation of the third-generation software in patients undergoing orthotopic liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc*. 2012;44(2):433–437. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.transproceed.2011.12.045.

162. Biancofiore G, Critchley LAH, Lee A, et al. Evaluation of a new software version of the Flotrac/Vigileo (version 3.02) and a comparison with previous data in cirrhotic patients undergoing liver transplant surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;1. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0b013e31822401b2.
163. O'Riordan JA. Pheochromocytomas and anesthesia. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1997;35(4):99–127.
164. Gatecel C, Losser M-R, Payen D. The postoperative effects of halothane versus isoflurane on hepatic artery and portal vein blood flow in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 2003:740–745. https://doi.org/10.1213/01.ANE.0000047888.55004.4B.
165. Armbruster K, Nöldge-Schomburg GF, Dressler IM, Fittkau AJ, Haberstroh J, Geiger K. The effects of desflurane on splanchnic hemodynamics and oxygenation in the anesthetized pig. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(2):271–277.
166. Suttner SW, Schmidt CC, Boldt J, Hüttner I, Kumle B, Piper SN. Low-flow desflurane and sevoflurane anesthesia minimally affect hepatic integrity and function in elderly patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(1):206–212.
167. Frink EJ. The hepatic effects of sevoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81(suppl 6):S46–50.
168. Kharasch ED, Frink EJ, Artru A, Michalowski P, Rooke GA, Nogami W. Long-duration low-flow sevoflurane and isoflurane effects on postoperative renal and hepatic function. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(6):1511–1520. table of contents.
169. De Wolf AM, Freeman JA, Scott VL, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of cisatracurium in patients with end-stage liver disease undergoing liver transplantation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76(5):624–628.
170. Marcel RJ, Ramsay MA, Hein HA, et al. Duration of rocuronium-induced neuromuscular block during liver transplantation: a predictor of primary allograft function. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(4):870–874.
171. Haagsma EB, Gips CH, Wesenhagen H, Van Imhoff GW, Krom RA. Liver disease and its effect on haemostasis during liver transplantation. *Liver*. 1985;5(3):123–128.
172. Bechstein WO, Neuhaus P. A surgeon's perspective on the management of coagulation disorders before liver transplantation. *Liver Transplant Surg Off Publ Am Assoc Study Liver Dis Int Liver Transplant Soc*. 1997;3(6):653–655.
173. Lee EM, Kang JK, Yun S-C, et al. Risk factors for central pontine and extrapontine myelinolysis following orthotopic liver transplantation. *Eur Neurol*. 2009;62(6):362–368. https://doi.org/10.1159/000242426.
174. Scott VL, De Wolf AM, Kang Y, et al. Ionized hypomagnesemia in patients undergoing orthotopic liver transplantation: a complication of citrate intoxication. *Liver Transplant Surg Off Publ Am Assoc Study Liver Dis Int Liver Transplant Soc*. 1996;2(5):343–347.
175. Park C, Hsu C, Neelakanta G, et al. Severe intraoperative hyperglycemia is independently associated with surgical site infection after liver transplantation. *Transplantation*. 2009;87(7):1031–1036. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0b013e31819cc3e6.
176. Bellomo R, Chapman M, Finfer S, Hickling K, Myburgh J. Low-dose dopamine in patients with early renal dysfunction: a placebo-controlled randomised trial. Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society (ANZICS) Clinical Trials Group. *Lancet Lond Engl*. 2000;356(9248):2139–2143.
177. Holmes CL, Walley KR. Bad medicine: low-dose dopamine in the ICU. *Chest*. 2003;123(4):1266–1275.
178. Rossi G, Langer M, Maggi U, et al. Veno-venous bypass versus no bypass in orthotopic liver transplantation: hemodynamic, metabolic, and renal data. *Transplant Proc*. 1998;30(5):1871–1873.
179. Prager MC, Gregory GA, Ascher NL, Roberts JP. Massive venous air embolism during orthotopic liver transplantation. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(1):198–200.
180. Gurusamy KS, Koti R, Pamecha V, Davidson BR. Veno-venous bypass versus none for liver transplantation. Cochrane Hepato-Biliary Group, ed. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD007712.pub2.
181. Tzakis A, Todo S, Starzl TE. Orthotopic liver transplantation with preservation of the inferior vena cava. *Ann Surg*. 1989;210(5):649–652.
182. Xia VW, Ghobrial RM, Du B, et al. Predictors of hyperkalemia in the prereperfusion, early postreperfusion, and late postreperfusion periods during adult liver transplantation. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(3):780–785. https://doi.org/10.1213/01.ane.0000271914.54261.17.
183. Chui AKK, Shi L, Tanaka K, et al. Postreperfusion syndrome in orthotopic liver transplantation. In: *Transplantation Proceedings*. Vol. 32. Elsevier; 2000:2116–2117.
184. Xia VW, Ho JK, Nourmand H, Wray C, Busuttil RW, Steadman RH. Incidental intracardiac thromboemboli during liver transplantation: incidence, risk factors, and management. *Liver Transpl*. 2010;16(12):1421–1427. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.22182.
185. Warnaar N, Molenaar IQ, Colquhoun SD, et al. Intraoperative pulmonary embolism and intracardiac thrombosis complicating liver transplantation: a systematic review. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2008;6(2):297–302.
186. Steadman RH. Anesthesia for liver transplant surgery. *Anesthesiol Clin N Am*. 2004;22(4):687–711. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.atc.2004.06.009.
187. Forkin KT, Colquhoun DA, Nemergut EC, Huffmyer JL. The coagulation profile of end-stage liver disease and considerations for intraoperative management. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(1):46–61. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000002394.
188. Massicotte L, Denault AY, Beaulieu D, et al. Transfusion rate for 500 consecutive liver transplantations: experience of one liver transplantation center. *Transplant J*. 2012;93(12):1276–1281. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0b013e318250fc25.
189. Dupont J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(4):681.
190. Görlinger K, Dirkmann D, Solomon C, Hanke AA. Fast interpretation of thromboelastometry in non-cardiac surgery: reliability in patients with hypo-, normo-, and hypercoagulability. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(2):222–230. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aes374.
191. Morrison GA, Chalmers RTA, Solomon C, Nimmo AF. Fibrinogen concentrate therapy guided by thromboelastometry as an alternative to fresh frozen plasma in major vascular surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26(4):654–659. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.jvca.2011.07.008.
192. Chow JH, Lee K, Abuelkasem E, Udekwu OR, Tanaka KA. Coagulation management during liver transplantation: use of fibrinogen concentrate, recombinant activated factor VII, prothrombin complex concentrate, and antifibrinolytics. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1177/1089253217739689. 108925321773968.
193. Sørensen B, Spahn DR, Innerhofer P, Spannagl M, Rossaint R. Clinical review: prothrombin complex concentrates-evaluation of safety and thrombogenicity. *Crit Care*. 2011;15(1):201.
194. Dentali F, Marchesi C, Pierfranceschi M, et al. Safety of prothrombin complex concentrates for rapid anticoagulation reversal of vitamin K antagonists: a meta-analysis. *Thromb Haemost*. 2011;106(09):429–438. https://doi.org/10.1160/TH11-01-0052.
195. Lodge JPA, Jonas S, Jones RM, et al. Efficacy and safety of repeated perioperative doses of recombinant factor VIIa in liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl*. 2005;11(8):973–979. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.20470.
196. Planinsic RM, van der Meer J, Testa G, et al. Safety and efficacy of a single bolus administration of recombinant factor VIIa in liver transplantation due to chronic liver disease. *Liver Transpl*. 2005;11(8):895–900. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.20458.
197. Levi M, Levy JH, Andersen HF, Truloff D. Safety of recombinant activated factor VII in randomized clinical trials. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(19):1791–1800.
198. Pereboom ITA, de Boer MT, Haagsma EB, Hendriks HGD, Lisman T, Porte RJ. Platelet transfusion during liver transplantation is associated with increased postoperative mortality due to acute lung injury. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(4):1083–1091. https://doi.org/10.1213/ane.0b013e3181948a59.
199. Chin JL, Hisamuddin SH, O'Sullivan A, Chan G, McCormick PA. Thrombocytopenia, platelet transfusion, and outcome following liver transplantation. *Clin Appl Thromb*. 2016;22(4):351–360. https://doi.org/10.1177/1076029614559771.
200. Bezinover D, Dirkmann D, Findlay J, et al. Perioperative coagulation management in liver transplant recipients. *Transplantation*. 2018;102(4):578–592. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0000000000002092.
201. Kang Y. Transfusion based on clinical coagulation monitoring does reduce hemorrhage during liver transplantation. *Liver Transplant Surg Off Publ Am Assoc Study Liver Dis Int Liver Transplant Soc*. 1997;3(6):655–659.
202. Deppe A-C, Weber C, Zimmermann J, et al. Point-of-care thromboelastography/thromboelastometry-based coagulation management in cardiac surgery: a meta-analysis of 8332 patients. *J Surg Res*. 2016;203(2):424–433. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jss.2016.03.008.

203. Kirchner C, Dirkmann D, Treckmann JW, et al. Coagulation management with factor concentrates in liver transplantation: a single-center experience: Factor concentrates in liver transplant. *Transfusion (Paris)*. 2014;54(10pt2):2760–2768. https://doi.org/10.1111/trf.12707.
204. Roullet S, Freyburger G, Cruc M, et al. Management of bleeding and transfusion during liver transplantation before and after the introduction of a rotational thromboelastometry-based algorithm: Rotem-based algorithm in liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl*. 2015;21(2):169–179. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.24030.
205. de Boer MT, Christensen MC, Asmussen M, et al. The impact of intraoperative transfusion of platelets and red blood cells on survival after liver transplantation. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(1):32–44. https://doi.org/10.1213/01.ane.0000289638.26666.
206. Esmat Gamil M, Pirenne J, Van Malenstein H, et al. Risk factors for bleeding and clinical implications in patients undergoing liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc*. 2012;44(9):2857–2860. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.transproceed.2012.09.085.
207. Rana A, Petrowsky H, Hong JC, et al. Blood transfusion requirement during liver transplantation is an important risk factor for mortality. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;216(5):902–907. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2012.12.047.
208. Badenoch A, Sharma A, Gower S, et al. The effectiveness and safety of tranexamic acid in orthotopic liver transplantation clinical practice: a propensity score matched cohort study. *Transplantation*. 2017;101(7):1658–1665. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0000000000001682.
209. Kong HY, Wen XH, Huang SQ, Zhu SM. Epsilon-aminocaproic acid improves postrecirculation hemodynamics by reducing intraliver activated protein C consumption in orthotopic liver transplantation. *World J Surg*. 2014;38(1):177–185. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00268-013-2282-4.
210. Mangus RS, Kinsella SB, Fridell JA, et al. Aminocaproic acid (amicar) as an alternative to aprotinin (trasylol) in liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc*. 2014;46(5):1393–1399. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.transproceed.2014.04.006.
211. Moretti EW, Robertson KM, Tuttle-Newhall JE, Clavien P-A, Gan T-J. Orthotopic liver transplant patients require less postoperative morphine than do patients undergoing hepatic resection. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14(6):416–420.
212. Eisenach JC, Plevak DJ, Van Dyke RA, et al. Comparison of analgesic requirements after liver transplantation and cholecystectomy. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1989;64(3):356–359.
213. Mandell MS, Hang Y. Pro: early extubation after liver transplantation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;21(5):752–755. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.jvca.2007.07.009.
214. Steadman RH. Con: immediate extubation for liver transplantation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;21(5):756–757. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.jvca.2007.07.003.
215. Donnelly MC, Hayes PC, Simpson KJ. The changing face of liver transplantation for acute liver failure: assessment of current status and implications for future practice: changing face of LT for ALF. *Liver Transpl*. 2016;22(4):527–535. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.24403.
216. Bernal W, Lee WM, Wendon J, Larsen FS, Williams R. Acute liver failure: a curable disease by 2024? *J Hepatol*. 2015;62(1):S112–S120. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2014.12.016.
217. Polson J, Lee WM. AASLD position paper: the management of acute liver failure. *Hepatology*. 2005;41(5):1179–1197. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.20703.
218. Bernal W, Hyyrylainen A, Gera A, et al. Lessons from look-back in acute liver failure? A single centre experience of 3300 patients. *J Hepatol*. 2013;59(1):74–80. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2013.02.010.
219. Reddy KR, Ellerbe C, Schilsky M, et al. Determinants of outcome among patients with acute liver failure listed for liver transplantation in the United States: acute liver failure liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl*. 2016;22(4):505–515. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.24347.
220. Germani G, Theocharidou E, Adam R, et al. Liver transplantation for acute liver failure in Europe: outcomes over 20years from the ELTR database. *J Hepatol*. 2012;57(2):288–296. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2012.03.01.7.
221. Mendizabal M. Liver transplantation in acute liver failure: a challenging scenario. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2016;22(4):1523. https://doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i4.1523.
222. Raschke RA, Curry SC, Rempe S, et al. Results of a protocol for the management of patients with fulminant liver failure. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36(8):2244–2248. https://doi.org/10.1097/CCM.0b013e31818029a3.
223. Bismuth H, Samuel D, Castaing D, et al. Orthotopic liver transplantation in fulminant and subfulminant hepatitis. The Paul Brousse experience. *Ann Surg*. 1995;222(2):109.
224. Riordan SM, Williams R. Mechanisms of hepatocyte injury, multiorgan failure, and prognostic criteria in acute liver failure. In: *Seminars in Liver Disease*. Vol. 23. New York Thieme Medical Publishers, Inc.; 2003:203–216.
225. Deleted in proofs
226. Stravitz RT, Kramer AH, Davern T, et al. Intensive care of patients with acute liver failure: recommendations of the US Acute Liver Failure Study Group. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(11):2498–2508.
227. Patton H, Misel M, Gish RG. Acute liver failure in adults: an evidence-based management protocol for clinicians. *Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2012;8(3):161–212.
228. Shawcross DL, Davies NA, Williams R, Jalan R. Systemic inflammatory response exacerbates the neuropsychological effects of induced hyperammonemia in cirrhosis. *J Hepatol*. 2004;40(2):247–254. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2003.10.016.
229. Eefsen M, Dethloff T, Frederiksen H-J, Hauerberg J, Hansen BA, Larsen FS. Comparison of terlipressin and noradrenalin on cerebral perfusion, intracranial pressure and cerebral extracellular concentrations of lactate and pyruvate in patients with acute liver failure in need of inotropic support. *J Hepatol*. 2007;47(3):381–386. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2007.04.015.
230. Stewart ZA, Locke JE, Montgomery RA, Singer AL, Cameron AM, Segev DL. ABO-incompatible deceased donor liver transplantation in the United States: a national registry analysis. *Liver Transpl*. 2009;15(8):883–893. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.21723.
231. Elwir S, Lake J. Current status of liver allocation in the United States. *Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2016;12(3):166–170.
232. Parikh ND, Singal AG. Model for end-stage liver disease exception points for treatment-responsive hepatocellular carcinoma: MELD Exception Points for Treatment-Responsive HCC. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2016;7(5):97–100. https://doi.org/10.1002/cld.545.
233. Edwards EB, Harper AM, Hirose R, Mulligan DC. The impact of broader regional sharing of livers: 2-year results of “Share 35”: results of share 35. *Liver Transpl*. 2016;22(4):399–409. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.24418.
234. Merion RM, Schaubel DE, Dykstra DM, Freeman RB, Port FK, Wolfe RA. The survival benefit of liver transplantation. *Am J Transplant*. 2005;5(2):307–313. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2004.00703.x.
235. Schaubel DE, Sima CS, Goodrich NP, Feng S, Merion RM. The survival benefit of deceased donor liver transplantation as a function of candidate disease severity and donor quality. *Am J Transplant*. 2008;8(2):419–425. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2007.02086.x.
236. Grant D, Abu-Elmagd K, Mazariegos G, et al. Intestinal transplant registry report: global activity and trends. *Am J Transplant Off J Am Soc Transplant Am Soc Transpl Surg*. 2015;15(1):210–219. https://doi.org/10.1111/ajt.12979.
237. Bharadwaj S, Tandon P, Gohel TD, et al. Current status of intestinal and multivisceral transplantation. *Gastroenterol Rep*. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1093/gastro/gow045.
238. Lauro A, Panaro F, Iyer KR. An overview of EU and USA intestinal transplant current activity. *J Visc Surg*. 2017;154(2):105–114. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jviscsurg.2017.01.007.
239. Hawksworth JS, Desai CS, Khan KM, et al. Visceral transplantation in patients with intestine-failure associated liver disease: evolving indications, graft selection, and outcomes. *Am J Transplant*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1111/ajt.14715.
240. Nguyen-Buckley C, Wong M. Anesthesia for intestinal transplantation. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2017;35(3):509–521. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.anclin.2017.04.007.
241. Fukazawa Pretto, Nishida. Anaesthetic management of adult intestinal and multivisceral transplant. In: *Oxford Textbook of Transplant Anaesthesia and Critical Care*. Oxford University Press; 2015.
242. Jorge Ekwenna. Paediatric intestinal and multivisceral transplantation: indications, selection, and perioperative management. In: *Oxford Textbook of Transplant Anaesthesia and Critical Care*. Oxford University Press; 2015.

243. Maheshwari A, Maley W, Li Z, Thuluvath PJ. Biliary complications and outcomes of liver transplantation from donors after cardiac death. *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(12):1645–1653. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.21212.

244. Karapanagiotou A, Kydona C, Papadopoulos S, et al. Infections after orthotopic liver transplantation in the intensive care unit. *Transplant Proc*. 2012;44(9):2748–2750. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.transproceed.2012.09.004.

245. Yang C-H, He X-S, Chen J, et al. Fungal infection in patients after liver transplantation in years 2003 to 2012. *Ann Transplant*. 2012;17(4):59–63.

246. Choudhary NS, Saigal S, Bansal RK, Saraf N, Gautam D, Soin AS. Acute and chronic rejection after liver transplantation: what a clinician needs to know. *J Clin Exp Hepatol*. 2017;7(4):358–366. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jceh.2017.10.003.

247. Rosen HR. Transplantation immunology: what the clinician needs to know for immunotherapy. *Gastroenterology*. 2008;134(6):1789–1801. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2008.02.062.

248. Geissler EK, Schlitt HJ. Immunosuppression for liver transplantation. *Gut*. 2009;58(3):452–463. https://doi.org/10.1136/gut.2008.163527.

249. Mehrabi A, Fonouni H, Kashfi A, et al. The role and value of sirolimus administration in kidney and liver transplantation. *Clin Transplant*. 2006;20(suppl 17):30–43. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399-0012.2006.00598.x.

250. Lupo L, Panzera P, Tandoi F, et al. Basiliximab versus steroids in double therapy immunosuppression in liver transplantation: a prospective randomized clinical trial. *Transplantation*. 2008;86(7):925–931. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0b013e318186b8a3.

251. Gutierrez-Dalmau A, Campistol JM. Immunosuppressive therapy and malignancy in organ transplant recipients: a systematic review. *Drugs*. 2007;67(8):1167–1198.

252. Quinlan SC, Landgren O, Morton LM, Engels EA. Hodgkin lymphoma among US solid organ transplant recipients. *Transplantation*. 2010;90(9):1011–1015. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0b013e3181f5c3a6.

253. Engels EA, Pfeiffer RM, Fraumeni JF, et al. Spectrum of cancer risk among US solid organ transplant recipients. *Jama*. 2011;306(17):1891–1901.

254. Doublet JD, Peraldi MN, Gattegno B, Thibault P, Sraer JD. Renal cell carcinoma of native kidneys: prospective study of 129 renal transplant patients. *J Urol*. 1997;158(1):42–44. https://doi.org/10.1097/00005392-199707000-00012.

255. Denton MD, Magee CC, Ovuworie C, et al. Prevalence of renal cell carcinoma in patients with ESRD pre-transplantation: a pathologic analysis. *Kidney Int*. 2002;61(6):2201–2209. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1523-1755.2002.00374.x.

256. Sethi A, Stravitz RT. Review article: medical management of the liver transplant recipient - a primer for non-transplant doctors: review: medical management of liver transplant recipients. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther*. 2007;25(3):229–245. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.03166.x.

257. Watt KDS, Pedersen RA, Kremers WK, Heimbach JK, Charlton MR. Evolution of causes and risk factors for mortality post-liver transplant: results of the NIDDK Long-term follow-up study: long-term mortality post-liver transplant. *Am J Transplant*. 2010;10(6):1420–1427. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2010.03126.x.

61 Anesthesia for Organ Procurement

VICTOR W. XIA and RANDOLPH H. STEADMAN

KEY POINTS

- The shortage of organs available for transplantation is a worldwide problem.
- The discrepancy between the number of patients waiting for organ transplantation and the available organs remains significant, but has narrowed since 2013.
- Most organs in the United States are donated after neurologic death, with a small portion donated after circulatory death and from living organ donors.
- Neurologic-death donors have physiologic alterations that must be actively managed to ensure that the organs are suitable for transplantation.
- Determining neurologic death and circulatory death should follow national guidelines and local institutional protocols.
- The anesthesiologist must have an awareness of the ethical and legal issues related to the declaration of death that precedes organ donation.
- Expansion of the donor pool through the inclusion of extended criteria, such as high-risk donors, addresses the organ shortage and decreases waiting-list mortality.
- The use of extended criteria high-risk organs significantly impacts recipient outcomes and presents challenges to perioperative management.
- Ischemia-reperfusion injury in organ transplantation is unavoidable; however, management strategies can lessen the likelihood of postoperative graft failure.
- Goal-directed donor management can improve the number of organs transplanted per donor.
- Living organ donor kidney transplantation remains an important donor source in the United States, whereas the use of living donors for liver transplantation varies by country.
- New technologies, including machine perfusion after procurement, are promising as a means to mitigate the effects of prolonged preservation time, to increase the donor pool, and to improve transplant recipient outcomes.

Introduction

Organ transplantation requires the donation and successful procurement of a human organ. The success of organ transplantation relies on a functioning donor graft. The majority of organs used for transplantation in the United States are from donors after the declaration of neurologic death (donation after neurologic death, DND). Organs from donation after circulatory (cardiac) death (DCD) and living organ donation are in the minority, however, they remain an important source of donors.[1] Organs procured from these sources have different characteristics and present varying challenges in management. For instance, DND donors often have significant physiologic alterations and hemodynamic instability that is associated with neurologic death. These alterations and instability, if not treated, will lead to organ deterioration and may prevent the organ from being suitable for transplantation. In contrast, DCD donors have an obligatory period of hypotension of varying duration before cardiac arrest. The resulting compromise in perfusion can exacerbate reperfusion injury and lead to an increased incidence of posttransplant biliary dysfunction.

The shortage of organs is a worldwide problem and is the most important obstacle in organ transplantation. The gap between the number of patients waiting for transplant and the available organs has widened (Fig. 61.1). In 2015, more than 119,000 transplant candidates were wait-listed in the United States through the United Network for Organ Sharing. Of these, 33,000 candidates underwent transplant surgery.[2] The majority of candidates were awaiting kidney grafts, with a smaller number awaiting liver, heart, and lung grafts. Many strategies were implemented to decrease the gap between the demand and supply, including public awareness campaigns and updates to the organ allocation system. Organ donation rates and the number of organs transplanted per donor vary substantially across geographic regions. Per 100 eligible deaths in the United States in 2016, the organ donation rate was 72.3, ranging from 52.9 to a high of 93.3 (Israni OPTN 2016 Annual Data Report).[3] To increase the number of organs for transplant, many programs have expanded the donor pool by using extended criteria donors (ECDs). Not surprisingly, the number of organs transplanted per donor varies according to donor category: ECD, DCD, or standard criteria donor (SCD). The number of organs transplanted from DCD donors is similar to ECDs, primarily attributable to the ability of the kidney to tolerate the longer periods of ischemia associated with organ procurement after DCD. The use of

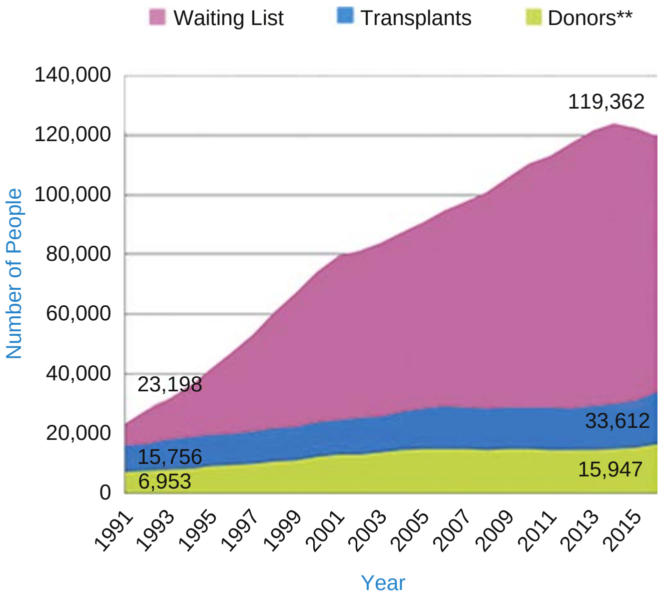


Fig. 61.1 The gap in the United States between the number of donors, patients transplanted, and patients on the waitlist by year, 1991 to 2015. The gap has declined since 2013. **Donors can be deceased and living. http://www.organdonor.gov/statistics-stories/statistics.html.

living-related and living-unrelated donors is widespread in countries with moral or legal objections to neurologic death and is an important worldwide donor source. Many policies have been proposed to promote the best practices in organ donation.[3,4] There are several areas that have the potential to expand the donor pool, which include deaths that are not referred to the organ sharing agencies and organs that have been procured, but unused for transplant.

Organ transplantation is a complex process that requires close coordination among many specialized teams. Procurement organizations, transplant coordinators, social workers, nurses, surgeons, internists, intensivists, and anesthesiologists are involved in the process. To maximize the number of organs transplanted and to preserve the best possible function of donated organs, anesthesiologists need to understand the pathophysiologic derangements associated with donation and ischemia-reperfusion injury. In addition, anesthesiologists must be aware of the ethical and legal issues related to the declaration of death and organ donation.

Management of Organ Donors After Declaration of Neurologic Death

DND (also called after declaration of brain death) provides the majority of donated organs in the United States.[3] Organ procurement from DND donors can only occur after the declaration of death. The concept of neurologic death emerged in the 1950s. In 1968, a Harvard Ad Hoc Committee on Irreversible Coma established a set of criteria that has been widely used for the determination of neurologic death.[5] In the United States, the Uniform Determination of Death Act was approved in 1981 by the National Conference of Commissioners on Uniform State Laws, in cooperation with the American Medical Association, the American Bar Association, and the President's Commission for the Study of Ethical Problems in Medicine and Biomedical and Behavioral Research. Although the criteria for the declaration of neurologic death were based on ethical principles established several decades ago, the criteria remain valid today.[6]

Although the concept of neurologic death has been widely accepted in Western cultures, minor variations in definition and implementation exist in different countries. Despite these differences, the clinical criteria are similar.[7] A larger difference exists among different cultures in accepting and implementing the neurologic death criteria. In fact, neurologic death has not reached a legal status in some countries, such as China.

TABLE 61.1 Pathophysiologic Changes Associated With Neurologic Death

Signs and Symptoms	Pathophysiologic Changes	Incidence (%)
Hypertension	Catecholamine storm	80-90
Hypotension	Vasoplegia, hypovolemia, reduced coronary blood flow, myocardial dysfunction	80-90
Bradycardia and other arrhythmias	Catecholamine storm, myocardial damage, reduced coronary blood flow	25-30
Pulmonary edema	Acute blood volume diversion, capillary damage	10-20
Diabetes insipidus	Posterior pituitary damage	45-80
Disseminated intravascular coagulation	Tissue factor release, coagulopathy	30-55
Hypothermia	Hypothalamic damage, reduced metabolic rate, vasodilation, and heat loss	Varied
Hyperglycemia	Decreased insulin concentration, increased insulin resistance	Common

PATHOPHYSIOLOGIC CHANGES WITH NEUROLOGIC DEATH

A variety of pathophysiologic changes are associated with neurologic death. The pathophysiologic mechanisms of neurologic death have profound effects at the molecular, cellular, and tissue levels. The clinical presentations associated with neurologic death may be complex and vary from patient to patient. They can be further complicated by prior pathologic abnormalities, disease, and therapy. The typical pathophysiologic changes associated with neurologic death are further described in Table 61.1.

CARDIOVASCULAR RESPONSES TO NEUROLOGIC DEATH

The cardiovascular system is closely regulated by the central neural system. Cardiovascular responses to neurologic death usually consist of two phases. The first phase is characterized by sympathetic discharge (catecholamine storm), which causes intense vasoconstriction or elevated systemic vascular resistance (hypertensive crisis), tachycardia, and a redistribution of blood volume with visceral ischemia. Acute myocardial injury can occur in neurologic-dead donors without a history of coronary artery disease.[8] Echocardiographic evidence of myocardial dysfunction is observed in 40% of neurologic-dead donors under consideration for heart donation.[9] At times, parasympathetic activation can result in bradycardia. After the sympathetic discharge of the first phase, the loss of sympathetic tone, decreased cardiac output, blunted hemostatic responses, and severe peripheral vasodilatation (vasoplegia) characterize the second phase. In addition to neurohormonal disturbances, other contributing factors include blood loss, intravascular depletion attributable to capillary leakage, osmotic therapy for rising intracranial pressure (ICP), and diabetes insipidus.

The first phase is correlated with ischemia in various parts of the brain and is attributable to an increase of ICP, and the second phase is caused by cerebral herniation and spinal cord ischemia. Although the first hypertensive phase generally represents a transient period in the progression to neurologic death, the second hypotensive phase is profound and sustained. Failure to correct these cardiovascular derangements results in poor organ perfusion and inadequate tissue oxygenation, which will threaten the viability of the donated organs.

RESPIRATORY RESPONSES TO NEUROLOGIC DEATH

An increase in systemic vascular resistance after neurologic death results in blood shifting from the systemic circulation to the more compliant pulmonary circulation. The resulting increase in hydrostatic pressure in the pulmonary circulation causes pulmonary capillary leakage and pulmonary edema. Sympathetic activity triggers a sterile systemic inflammatory response, initiating infiltration of neutrophils and increasing pulmonary endothelial permeability, which further contributes to lung injury. Proinflammatory cytokines are released at the alveoli and are associated with early graft failure and mortality after lung transplantation. The inflammatory response in neurologic-dead donors is associated with the deterioration in cardiac function and a shift to anaerobic metabolism. Hormonal instability can reduce alveolar fluid clearance, resulting in significant accumulation of extravascular lung water. If ventilation is not supported, then respiratory arrhythmia progresses to apnea and cardiac arrest.[10,11]

ENDOCRINE, METABOLIC, AND STRESS RESPONSES TO NEUROLOGIC DEATH

Neurologic death is frequently associated with pituitary failure and disturbances of cortisol, thyroid hormones, antidiuretic hormone, and insulin. Posterior pituitary function in neurologic-dead donors is frequently lost. The development of central diabetes insipidus results in severe fluid and electrolyte derangements and can be observed in up to 90% of neurologic-dead donors.[10] Anterior pituitary function in neurologic death can also be affected, resulting in a deficiency in triiodothyronine (T_3) and thyroxine (T_4), adrenocorticotropic hormone, thyroid-stimulating hormone, and human growth hormone. Thyroid hormonal deficiency may be similar to the euthyroid sick syndrome commonly observed in the non-neurologic injured patient with multisystem organ failure. Hyperglycemia is commonly encountered in neurologic-dead donors because of decreased insulin concentrations and increased insulin resistance. Hypothalamic function and control of body temperature are lost. Although hyperpyrexia may initially occur, hypothermia follows, which is caused by a reduction in metabolic rate and muscle activity, in combination with peripheral vasodilation. Disseminated intravascular coagulation is present in up to one-third of isolated patients with head injuries and is believed to be caused by the release of tissue thromboplastin from brain tissue.[11]

Donation After Circulatory (Cardiac) Death

Before the acceptance of neurologic death, all organs procured were from donors who suffered a cardiac demise (DCD, previously known as donation from a non–heart-beating donor). After the establishment of the Harvard criteria for neurologic death, DND quickly became the principal source of organ donation. However, an interest in the use of DCD organs has been renewed in recent years, driven by the persistent shortage of DND donors and the lack of acceptance of neurologic death in some countries. Policies and protocols developed by healthcare organizations now encourage DCD organs, and their use is increasing in the United States and other countries. In the United States, the number of DCD donors continues to increase, and accounted for over 17% of donors in 2016 (Fig. 61.2).[3] During the same period, the number of living donors dropped slightly from 7000 to 6600. Kidney grafts accounted for over 95% of the organs transplanted from living donors during this period. The American Society of Anesthesiologists established a Sample Policy for Organ Donation after Circulatory Death, with the recommendation that its members actively participate in the development of institutional DCD protocols.

DCD donors are divided into five categories: I, patients who are dead on arrival at the hospital; II, unsuccessfully resuscitated patients; III, patients in whom cardiac arrest is imminent; IV, cardiac arrest in neurologic-dead donors; V, unexpected arrest in the intensive care unit (ICU). Categories III and IV are considered as controlled DCDs, whereas the remaining categories are considered uncontrolled DCDs. Controlled DCD implies that life-support withdrawal can be planned and the transplant team is awaiting the cardiac arrest and is ready for rapid organ recovery. In contrast, uncontrolled DCD implies the patient has experienced an unanticipated cardiac arrest, and organ donation is considered only after an unsuccessful resuscitation. Warm ischemia time is significantly longer in uncontrolled DCDs. Currently, most DCD donors for organ transplantation are controlled DCD donors. Successful use of the uncontrolled DCD grafts has been reported in several studies.[12]

DCD donors usually suffer from irreversible brain or spinal injury but do not meet the neurologic death criteria. The prognosis for a meaningful quality of life is poor. Withdrawal of therapy must be based on a clinical decision of

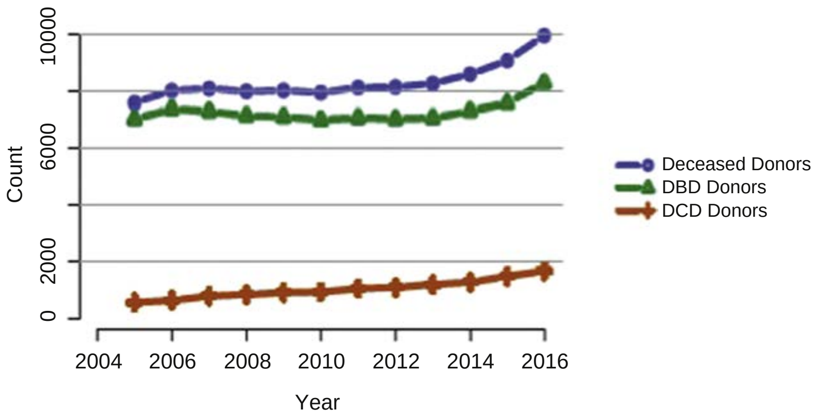


Fig. 61.2 Total number of organ donors in the United States by year, 2005 to 2016. *DBD*, Donation after brain death; *DCD*, donation after cardiac death. (Redrawn from Israni AK, Zaun D, Rosendale JD, et al. OPTN / SRTR 2016 Annual Data Report: Deceased organ donation. *Am J Transplant.* 2018;18:434–463.)

futility and conform to the wishes of the patient and family. The consideration of the withdrawal of life-sustaining therapies must be independent from any discussion related to transplantation. The transplantation team cannot be involved in this decision. Drugs can be used to relieve pain and anxiety and to provide comfort for the patient during withdrawal. Therapies designed to improve graft quality, but without benefit to the patient, are controversial; however, therapies with minimal impact on the patient that improve organ survival are allowed in some protocols.

Declaration of circulatory death should follow procedures proposed by national organizations and policies adopted by the local institution.[13,14] After a decision has been made to withdraw support, the trachea is extubated and life support is stopped. A physician who is not involved with organ transplantation declares cessation of cardiac function. Declaration of circulatory death is not different from clinical practice, which requires a clinical examination to confirm pulselessness or the absence of an arterial waveform. The duration between cessation of cardiovascular activities and the declaration of circulatory death is usually 2 to 5 minutes to ensure irreversibility. Organ procurement starts after death is declared.

Although organs procured from DCD donors are not exposed to the physiologic derangements of neurologic death, they are at greater risk for ischemia-reperfusion injury than organs from DND donors. This results from hypoxemia and ischemia in a warm environment, which is unique during DCD procurement. The time elapsed from extubation to circulatory death is an important factor for determining the suitability of organ donation. If spontaneous breathing and/or heart function continues for a prolonged period after life support withdrawal, then the organs may not be suitable for transplantation, particularly in donors with comorbidities. To assist physicians in predicting how long a patient will sustain life after the withdrawal of life support, a 6-variable score was developed by the University of Wisconsin (UW) (Table 61.2). A low score (8-12) means that breathing and/or cardiac function will continue for some time. A high score (19-24) means that apnea and cardiac arrest are imminent.[15]

TABLE 61.2 University of Wisconsin Criteria for Donation After Circulatory Death: An Evaluation Tool

Variables	Points
SPONTANEOUS RESPIRATION AFTER 10 MIN	
Respiratory rate > 12 breaths/min	1
Respiratory rate < 12 breaths/min	3
Tidal volume > 200 mL	1
Tidal volume < 200 mL	3
Negative inspiratory force > 20 cm H_2O	1
Negative inspiratory force < 20 cm H_2O	3
No spontaneous respiration	9
BODY MASS INDEX (KG/M^2)	
<25	1
25-29	2
≥30	3
VASOPRESSORS	
None	1
1 pressor	2
≥2 pressors	3
PATIENT AGE (YEARS)	
0-30	1
31-50	2
>50	3
INTUBATION	
Endotracheal tube	3
Tracheostomy	1
OXYGENATION AFTER 10 MIN	
O_2 saturation > 90%	1
O_2 saturation 80%-90%	2
O_2 saturation < 80%	3

University of Wisconsin score: 8-12, high probability; 13-18, moderate probability; and 19-24, low probability for continuing to breathe after extubation.
(From Lewis J, Peltier J, Nelson H, et al. Development of the University of Wisconsin Donation After Circulatory Death Evaluation Tool. *Prog Transplant.* 2003;13:265–273.)

The two separate definitions and procedures used for DND and DCD have led to a new debate about the definition and determination of death. A uniform concept of death, which combines all previous criteria for death, is emerging. A growing consensus is that all criteria used to diagnose human death rely on the demonstration of the irreversible loss of the capacity to breath, combined with the irreversible loss of the capacity for consciousness. The irreversible loss of these two functions equates to human death.[16]

Category III (impending cardiac arrest) DCD is the ideal source for organ transplant. Kidneys from DCD donors are frequently used. Several studies have shown that, despite a higher incidence of delayed graft function (DGF), kidneys from DCD donors have comparable short- and long-term graft survival.[12] Livers from DCD donors have a higher likelihood of postoperative biliary complications such as diffuse ischemic cholangiopathy with intrahepatic biliary stricture and may also have a higher incidence of primary graft nonfunction and DGF compared to grafts from DND donors.[17] Ischemic cholangiopathy occurs more frequently if the donor is older, is overweight, and has a prolonged ischemic period. Heart and lungs are susceptible to ischemia and only a few cases of the successful use of such grafts from DCD donors have been reported.[15]

Extended Criteria Donor

Traditionally, DND organ donors are young and otherwise healthy until stricken by an isolated cerebral event or head injury (SCDs). As the numbers of patients waiting for transplant increase, many centers have extended donor criteria to minimize waiting-list mortality. Many terms, including suboptimal donor, marginal donor, inferior donor, nonstandard donor, and high-risk donor, have been used.[18] The criteria that make up the ECD group are more elusive and evolving. Donor characteristics of ECDs vary from organ to organ but generally include advanced age, prolonged cold ischemia time, inferior organ function, and other comorbidities.[18,19] However, donor risk is a relative term and should be described as a continuum, not a dichotomy of SCD and ECD. Therefore, donor risk index (DRI) has been developed for donors.

The kidney DRI has been developed using 10 donor characteristics (Box 61.1).[20] The kidney DRI can be converted into the kidney donor profile index (scale 1%-100%). A higher kidney donor profile index indicates a higher graft failure rate. The DRI has been defined for liver grafts. DRI is a quantitative assessment of the risk of graft failure associated with the donor. Liver DRI is calculated from eight donor characteristics (Box 61.2).[21] Despite an increased risk of graft failure, moderate-to-high acuity transplant candidates who receive a high DRI graft have a survival benefit compared with those remaining on the wait list.[22] Calculation of the DRI can help physicians make a decision to accept or reject a donor offer; however, the calculation requires a projected cold ischemia time.

The use of ECD or high-risk DRI grafts has implications on intraoperative management. In a study of liver transplantation, several donor characteristics are associated with a high incidence of intraoperative hyperkalemia in adults: DCD grafts, prolonged ischemia time, and prolonged donor hospital stay before procurements.[23] ECD liver grafts are also associated with postreperfusion syndrome, intraoperative bleeding, and postoperative reoperation.[24]

Management of Organ Donors Before Procurement

As previously discussed, various physiologic derangements are common in DND donors. If not treated, these derangements can lead to graft deterioration, resulting in organs unsuitable for transplantation. A discussion of treatment strategies follows.

BOX 61.1 Kidney Donor Profile Index

The following donor characteristics are used to calculate the kidney donor profile index
Age
Height
Weight
Ethnicity
History of hypertension
History of diabetes
Cause of death
Serum creatinine
Hepatitis C Virus status
Donation after circulatory death status

From https://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov/resources/allocation-calculators/kdpi-calculator.

BOX 61.2 Liver Donor Risk Index

Age (four categories): >40, >50, >60, >70 years
Cause of death (two categories): cerebrovascular accident (lower risk) versus other
Race: African American (higher risk) versus other
Donation after circulatory death: yes or no
Partial or split graft: yes or no
Height: increasing risk as height decreases below 170 cm
Regional or national share: yes or no
Cold ischemia time

CARDIOVASCULAR MANAGEMENT

Although both hypertension and hypotension are associated with neurologic death and can result in poor perfusion to the organs, hypotension is more profound and difficult to treat. Maintaining adequate intravascular volume is probably the most effective therapy for vasoplegia. No evidence demonstrates that a specific crystalloid solution is superior to another. Adequate resuscitation, as evidenced by a mean arterial pressure of 60 to 100 mm Hg, may decrease cytokine levels and increase the number of organs available for transplantation.[25] Large doses of starch-based colloids should be avoided because they may be associated with DGF.[26]

When hemodynamic stabilization is not achieved with fluid resuscitation, vasoactive drugs should be considered. Dopamine is most commonly used in this setting. If a large dose of dopamine is required, then a second vasoactive agent can be added. Dopamine and other catecholamines have beneficial antiinflammatory and immunomodulatory effects. Vasopressin is recommended as the initial therapy of choice for potential heart donors by the American College of Cardiology.[27] Vasopressin reduces catecholamine requirements and is an effective treatment for diabetes insipidus.

For a potential heart donor, cardiac function should be assessed, with early interventions to improve the donor procurement rate. Echocardiography is useful since it can identify both functional and structural abnormalities. Functional abnormalities identified in the early stage can be managed before heart transplantation, whereas structural abnormalities may preclude transplantation. Coronary angiography is useful in older donors with suspected or known coronary artery disease. Myocardial damage caused by catecholamine storm may be prevented or attenuated by controlling cardiovascular responses, which may increase the number of heart transplants.[11] However, large doses of norepinephrine are associated with increased cardiac graft dysfunction and increased recipient mortality.[28]

Excessive intravascular fluid therapy may have detrimental effects and should be avoided in lung donors. Fluid restriction increases the number of lung grafts available for transplantation.[10] Because this practice creates a conflict of interest on the basis of which organs will be procured, particularly between the lungs and kidneys, fluid management should be balanced to optimize overall donation potential.[10] The goal is to maintain a euvolemic state and to maintain arterial blood pressure and cardiac output with the least amount of vasoactive support possible. Invasive hemodynamic monitoring may be used to guide intravascular fluid therapy.

PULMONARY MANAGEMENT

The lungs are vulnerable to injury and, consequently, are one of the most difficult organs to preserve. Only 15% to 25% of donated lungs are used in transplantation. Current pulmonary management for potential lung donors favors small tidal volume ventilation. The focus of pulmonary management is to recruit and retain lung units while limiting tidal volume and inspiratory pressure. This strategy is extrapolated from studies in acute respiratory distress syndrome. Specific approaches to ventilator management for the donor are variable, but a common approach is a low tidal volume (6-8 mL/kg), low fraction of inspired oxygen concentration (FiO_2), and relatively high positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP).[29] Pulmonary recruitment maneuvers, using pressure-controlled ventilation and high PEEP (15 cm water), followed by a return to conventional volume-controlled ventilation with a lower PEEP, are recommended by others. The administration of aerosolized terbutaline increases alveolar fluid clearance via β-adrenergic stimulation.[30] As previously discussed, a large amount of intravascular fluid and/or large-dose vasopressors are associated with impaired graft function in potential lung donors.[10]

Adequate gas exchange and good oxygenation are the most important indicators of the functional quality of the lung. However, an initial PaO_2/FiO_2 ratio less than 300 mm Hg should not be used as grounds for exclusion. Reversible processes such as secretions, pulmonary edema, and atelectasis can affect the PaO_2/FiO_2 ratio. Bronchoscopy is generally performed to remove mucous plugs that are present.

TEMPERATURE

Since hypothalamic function and regulation of body temperature are lost, DND donors usually have initial hyperpyrexia followed by hypothermia. Donor hypothermia is also contributed by reduced metabolic rate and peripheral vasodilatation. Normothermia has been traditionally recommended before and during procurement by using active warming devices. A recent report from a prospective trial challenges this traditional temperature management before procurement. In this trial, organ donors were randomized into two targeted temperature groups: mild hypothermia (34°C-35°C) or normothermia (36.5°C-37.5°C). The hypothermia group is associated with a significantly lower rate of DGF after kidney transplantation.[31] In a retrospective study, mild hypothermia is confirmed to reduce DGF, but not graft survival in kidney transplantation.[32]

HORMONES, STEROIDS, ELECTROLYTES, AND GLYCEMIC CONTROL

Hormonal deficiency is common in neurologic-dead donors and hormonal replacement is beneficial.[8,10] Exogenous replacement of antidiuretic hormone in neurologic-dead donors improves graft function in kidney, liver, and cardiac recipients.[10] Thyroid hormone replacement improves the number of organs transplanted per donor and cardiac recipient survival.[25,33] However, most studies showing advantages to hormone supplement are retrospective; adequately powered randomized trials are lacking.

The systemic inflammatory response associated with neurologic death leads to pulmonary infiltration of neutrophils and the elevation of interleukins. The systemic inflammatory response of the donor is associated with graft failure and recipient mortality. Methylprednisolone administration can moderate the inflammatory response and may improve oxygenation, reduce lung water, and increase lung yield. Methylprednisolone administration can also decrease inflammation in the liver, heart, and kidney.

Intravascular volume replacement is essential in the donor management. An isotonic crystalloid (lactated Ringer solution or 0.9% saline) is the preferred choice. However, 0.9% saline may not be the best choice due to the development of hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis. Colloid solutions are appropriate for rapid intravascular volume expansion. Routine use of hydroxyethyl starch is not recommended since it is associated with potential acute kidney injury, and coagulopathy. After administering initial fluid to correct hypovolemia, hypernatremia should be treated by giving a hypotonic solution.[10] Studies have demonstrated that donor hypernatremia (>155 mmol/L) is associated with poor post–liver transplant outcomes.[34] Analysis of heart donors in Europe showed increased recipient mortality when donor sodium was less than 130 or greater than 170 mmol/L.[35] Correction of severe hypernatremia before organ procurement appears to attenuate post–transplant liver dysfunction.[10] Hyperglycemia in the donor is common and exacerbated by steroid therapy. Poor glucose control adversely affects donor renal function.[36] Insulin management should target a glucose level between 120 and 180 mg/dL. Routine use of IV fluid containing dextrose is not recommended.[33]

DONOR MANAGEMENT GOALS

Current recommendations stress the use of standardized donor management with specific preprocurement goals. The objective of donor management goals (DMGs) is to maintain cardiovascular, pulmonary, renal, and endocrine homeostasis. The primary hemodynamic goal is to maximize perfusion for organ preservation by ensuring adequate intravascular volume and cardiac output.[33] Table 61.3 summarizes common goals reported by various

TABLE 61.3 Donor Management Goals, as Reported by Various Authors

Preset Clinical End Points	Six DMGs[*]	Eight DMGs[†]	Ten DMGs[‡]
Mean arterial pressure (mm Hg)	≥60	60–120	60–100
Central venous pressure (mm Hg)	≤10 (or serum osmolality 285-295 mmol/L)	4–12	4–10
Final sodium (mmol/L)	≤155	≤155	135–160
Pressors	≤1 (1 plus vasopressin to treat DI is acceptable)	≤1 or low dose	≤1 and low dose
PaO_2 (mm Hg) or PaO_2/FiO_2 ratio	$PaO_2 \geq 300$ while on 100% oxygen (or $PaCO_2/FiO_2$ ratio > 3)	Final $PaO_2 > 100$	PaO_2/FiO_2 ratio: >300 on PEEP = 5 cm H_2O
Arterial blood gas: pH	7.25–7.50	7.30–7.50	7.30–7.45
Glucose (mg/dL)		≤150	<150
Urine output (mL/kg/h) in 4 h before procurement		0.5–3.0	1–3
Ejection fraction of left ventricle			>50%
Hemoglobin (mg/dL)			>10

DI, Diabetes insipidus; *FiO_2,* fraction of inspired oxygen concentration; *$PaCO_2$,* partial arterial pressure of carbon dioxide; *PaO_2,* partial arterial pressure of oxygen; *PEEP,* positive end-expiratory pressure.

[*] Hagan ME, McClean D, Falcone CA, et al. Attaining specific donor management goals increases number of organs transplanted per donor: a quality improvement project. *Prog Transplant*. 2009;19(3):227–231.

[†] Franklin GA, Santos AP, Smith JW, et al. Optimization of donor management goals yields increased organ use. *Am Surg*. 2010;76(6):587–594.

[‡] Malinoski DJ, Daly MC, Patel MS, et al. Achieving donor management goals before deceased donor procurement is associated with more organs transplanted per donor. *J Trauma*. 2011;71(4):990–995, discussion: 996.

studies and recommended by some committees. Studies have shown that compliance with predetermined goals significantly improves the number of organs procured and transplanted.[25,37] Early achievement of DMGs is important. Donors with four or more organs transplanted per donor have significantly more individual DMGs met at the time of consent. Efforts should focus on early management in patients with catastrophic neurologic injury until the intent to donate is known.[38] One study showed that only 15% of donors met DMGs at the time of consent, although the rate was higher immediately before organ procurement.

Management of Donors After Circulatory Death

The majority of DCD donors are patients awaiting cardiac arrest in the ICU (category III). To minimize warm ischemia time, life support is usually withdrawn in the surgical unit. However, the family's desire to be present has led some institutions to withdraw life support in other nearby locations. The procurement team should not take part in patient management before a determination of irreversible death, which includes the period during which withdrawal of support and declaration of death occur. The administration of pharmacologic drugs for the purpose of maximizing donation potential, particularly therapies capable of hastening death, is controversial. However, narcotics and benzodiazepines are commonly continued and can be titrated to blunt sympathetic responses. Premortem administration of heparin can facilitate organ procurement but, because of the bleeding risk, is omitted in some institutional policies. Most protocols require specific consent for premortem donor therapy.

Invasive premortem techniques for reducing warm ischemia time have been described. These include cannulation of the femoral artery and vein before the withdrawal of life support, which allows rapid infusion of cold preservation solution after the declaration of death. These cannulas can also be used for extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) after death. However, the postmortem use of ECMO to restore the blood flow to vital organs generates vigorous debate, which highlights the ongoing ethical questions in donor management—the need to protect the best interest of the dying patient, while facilitating his or her wish to donate.[39]

Management of Organ Donor During Procurement Surgery

Anesthesia care for organ procurement is required only in the case of neurologic-dead donors. The majority of organ procurement occurs at community hospitals, not tertiary medical centers. As a result, the logistics of organ procurement, the social circumstances, and the unusual sequence of intraoperative events may seem intimidating to the anesthesiologist.

Surgical techniques may vary, depending on whether single or multiple organs are procured. Generally, wide exposure of the surgical field is established via a midline laparotomy extended by sternotomy. A cannula is placed in the aorta to flush the organs with the cold preservation solution. Ice is applied to the surgical field to further protect the organs. The organs are removed with their vascular structures after isolation in an order according to their susceptibility to ischemia, with the heart first and the kidney last.

Most donors arrive in the surgical unit with an endotracheal tube in place, and supported by the intravenous administration of vasoactive drugs. During procurement surgery, patients can have movements resulting from spinal reflexes; therefore, neuromuscular blockers are desirable. Spontaneous spinal reflex or surgical stimulation can cause catecholamine release and hypertension. Hypertension can be managed by a number of drugs including vasodilators, opioids, and anesthetics; however, volatile anesthetics are commonly preferred. As previously mentioned, volatile anesthetics may provide additional benefits that include ischemic preconditioning and the reduction of ischemia-reperfusion injury.[40]

The intravascular administration of fluids and vasoactive drugs can treat blood loss and cardiovascular instability caused by surgical manipulation. Maintaining hemodynamic stability allows surgeons to procure the organs without further damage to the organs. Vasodilators such as phentolamine or alprostadil (for lung recovery) may be administered during cross-clamping with the goal of decreasing systemic vascular resistance and allowing an even distribution of the preservation solution. Clinically significant bradycardia in neurologic-dead donors does not respond to atropine; therefore, a direct-acting chronotrope such as isoproterenol should be readily available. Heparin is usually administered before cross-clamping the aorta. If recovery of the heart or lung is anticipated, then pulmonary artery catheters and/or CVP catheters need to be withdrawn before cross-clamping. If lung recovery is anticipated, then the lungs are ventilated well beyond cross-clamping. Communication between the surgical team and the anesthesiologist is crucial to ensure optimal organ quality. As soon as the organs are perfused with the cold solution, mechanical ventilation and anesthesia care can be stopped.

Management of Living Organ Donors

Living donor organ transplantation has been successfully used as an alternative to deceased donor transplantation. In the United States the number of living donor organ transplants has remained flat since 2011.[3] In some Asian countries such as Japan and Korea, living donor transplantation is a standard procedure since DND is unusual because of cultural beliefs in these countries. Living donor organ transplantation has some advantages. The procedure can be scheduled as elective surgery at the same facility, which allows donor and recipient surgeries to be coordinated and the cold ischemia time to be minimized. Additionally, the graft is not exposed to the physiologic alterations associated with DND or DCD donors. Living donors direct their donation to a specific recipient; therefore, the timing of the transplant can be optimized for the recipient, and prolonged waiting times associated with deceased donor transplantation are typically avoided. As a result, the recipient is generally in better overall condition. Although living organ transplantation has its advantages, it exposes healthy donors to medical risks. Additional concerns are potential decreased quality of life and an adverse financial impact after donation. The ethical aspect of living organ donation, particularly liver donation, continues to be vigorously scrutinized.[41,42]

Living donation should be preceded by a thorough medical, psychologic, and social evaluation that confirms the absence of contraindications and the lack of coercion. The informed consent includes full disclosure of possible complications and is facilitated by a patient advocate in many institutions with no relationship to the recipient. In the past, donors were typically related to the prospective recipient. Now, living unrelated donors make up a greater proportion of living kidney transplant in the United States.[1] Paired or chain donation allows two or more recipients with incompatible living donors to exchange donors, improving the graft match for both recipients. Similar to the expansion of deceased donor criteria, living donor criteria have been extended to include donors of advanced age and those with obesity.[43] Living multi-organ donation from a single donor, either simultaneously or sequentially, although rare, has been reported. Careful selection of such donors, disclosure of risks, and close follow-up are needed.[44]

LIVING KIDNEY DONOR

Because the kidney is a paired organ, it is a natural choice for living donation. The first successful kidney transplant was a living organ transplant performed between identical twins in 1954. Now, living donors account for approximately 29% of kidney transplants in the United States.[1,45] Living donor kidney transplantation provides the optimized timing for transplant and can avoid pretransplant dialysis, which is associated with improved survival.[46] In addition, living donor grafts provide better function and last longer than grafts from deceased donors.[47] A wide range of medical and nonmedical factors need to be considered to ensure donor safety. To ensure a sufficient reserve after donation, many transplant centers use a glomerular filtration rate (GFR) greater than 80 $mL/min/1.73\ m^2$ as a cutoff for donation. GFR is typically estimated by the measurement of urine creatinine clearance. If the estimated GFR is marginal, then radioactive and nonradioactive tracers can provide additional information.[48] Some centers allow a lower GFR.[49]

Traditionally, living kidney donor surgery was performed via open nephrectomy via a subcostal lateral incision. Now, it is commonly performed via laparoscopy. With this approach, donors experience less postoperative pain, a faster recovery, and a shorter hospital stay.[49] Either the left or the right kidney can be used for transplant; however, the left kidney is usually preferred because of the easier surgical exposure and longer vascular supply. The right kidney has a short vein, and its artery courses posterior to the inferior vena cava.

The patient is placed in a lateral position with the table flexed and the kidney rest elevated. The surgical procedure begins with mobilization of the kidney with subsequent identification and dissection of the ureter, renal vein, and artery, and separation of the adrenal vein. When the right donor nephrectomy is performed, additional steps include duodenal mobilization and separation of the kidney from the liver. After mobilization of the kidney and clamping of the vascular structures, the kidney is retrieved through a small incision by either a hand-assisted or non–hand-assisted technique. Donor nephrectomy can be performed via a transabdominal route but is increasingly accomplished via a retroperitoneal approach using minimally invasive techniques. The advantage of a retroperitoneal approach is less manipulation of intraabdominal viscera. Single-incision donor nephrectomy has been described using uniquely designed devices. Recently, robotic-assisted laparoscopic living donor nephrectomy has been reported.[49,50] This technique may further decrease the trauma and discomfort to the donor.

Anesthetic management of elective laparoscopic donor surgery on a healthy patient is similar to that used for elective laparoscopic nephrectomy. Standard noninvasive monitors are usually sufficient. One or two large-bore peripheral intravenous lines are usually placed. Transfusion of red blood cells is rare; however, type and screen, or type and cross for 1 to 2 units of blood, is routine practice in some centers in case of injury to major vessels. General anesthesia is required for laparoscopic nephrectomy and general anesthesia combined with epidural anesthesia is often used if open nephrectomy is planned.

Although laparoscopic nephrectomy on a healthy patient may be routine, some concerns in addition to potential blood loss exist. High intraabdominal pressure reduces venous return and has been associated with postoperative renal dysfunction. Lower insufflation pressure may prevent compression of the renal veins and parenchyma.[51] Adequate intravascular fluid administration appears to be the best strategy to preserve kidney function. Some advocate liberal fluid administration (10-20 mL/kg/h), although laparoscopic nephrectomy is typically associated with minimal blood loss. Others use urinary output as an indicator for fluid management. To ensure that the urinary output is greater than 2 mL/kg/h, fluid is usually given in excess of the physiologic need throughout the procedure. The surgeon may request the administration of furosemide and/or mannitol during the surgery for the purpose of increasing urine output. The preferred type of fluid for intravascular volume expansion during donor nephrectomy is not known. In the absence of evidence, most centers use an isotonic crystalloid solution. Nitrous oxide is best avoided because of a concern over bowel distention and poor surgical exposure. Intravenous heparin (3000-5000 international units [IU]) is often administered immediately before the renal vessels are clamped. Protocols may vary among institutions, and close communication with the transplant surgeon is essential. If hypotension occurs after adequate fluid replacement, then dopamine and ephedrine are preferable to direct-acting vasopressors to minimize vasoconstriction in the graft. After the kidney is retrieved, anesthesiologists should be prepared for a quick closure and ensure that neuromuscular blockade is reversed.

Mild or moderate pain after laparoscopic nephrectomy originates from the port insertion, the abdominal incision, pelvic organ manipulation, diaphragmatic irritation, and/or ureteral colic. Postoperative pain can be easily managed in most patients with supplemental intravenous opioids in the early postoperative period and later with oral opioids and acetaminophen. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs should be used with caution because of their potential prostaglandin-mediated adverse renal effects. Pain after open nephrectomy with subcostal lateral incision is severe and can last several days, which can limit the patient's efforts to breathe, cough, and move, leading to atelectasis and postoperative infection. Postoperative epidural analgesia should be considered for pain relief in these patients.

Post-donation complications reported to the Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network within 6 weeks of surgery include the need for blood transfusion (0.4%), readmission (2.1%), interventional procedures (0.9%), and reoperation (0.5%).[45] A study of more than 80,000 living kidney donors showed a 90-day mortality of 3.1 per 10,000 donors (0.03%) and remains unchanged in the last 15 years.[52] Pulmonary embolism occurred in 0.1% of donors and is the main cause of mortality.[45] Kidney donors are at moderate risk for developing venous thromboembolism; therefore, intermittent pneumatic compression devices and prophylactic heparinization are recommended until ambulation. A decrease of approximately 30% in GFR can be expected after donation, and most donors will maintain a GFR greater than 60 mL/minute at 3 months.[49] Donor nephrectomy does not appear to increase long-term mortality or end-stage renal disease. Within the donor population, the likelihood of postdonation chronic kidney disease, hypertension, and diabetes is relatively higher among certain subgroups, such as African-American and obese donors, but the impact of unilateral nephrectomy on the lifetime risks of adverse events in these subgroups is unknown because the risks without nephrectomy have not been defined.[45] It should be noted that all studies on post-donation complications are retrospective without long-term follow-ups and matched controls.

LIVING LIVER DONOR

Living donor liver transplantation (LDLT) was first introduced in 1988 for pediatric recipients[53] and later expanded to adult recipients. Although LDLT is commonly performed in some Asian countries, it only consists of a small portion (<5%) of overall liver transplants performed in the United States.[3] The primary concern, that of harm to a healthy, altruistic donor, is greater in LDLT, compared with kidney donation.

The liver's remarkable reserve, coupled with its unique capacity to regenerate, forms the basis for LDLT. After resection of as much as two-thirds of the liver, the donor's liver regains its original size in 2 to 3 weeks.[54] A portion of the adult liver (typically the left lobe or left lateral segment) transplanted to a pediatric recipient will grow with the recipient. Most LDLTs are electively performed in patients with chronic liver disease. Emergent LDLT is uncommon but is occasionally performed for acute liver failure. LDLT performed in patients with very advanced disease generates considerable debate.

The determination of donor liver volume and anticipated graft size is unique to LDLT. Formulas using demographics, including body weight, height, age, and sex, have been developed. Methods using radiologic or ultrasonic measurements also have been proposed.[55] Accurate estimation of donor liver volume and intended liver graft volume is critical to avoid small-for-size syndrome in the recipient and to preserve adequate remnant liver volume in the donor.[56] For pediatric LDLTs, the left lateral segment (segments II and III) or a total left hepatic lobectomy (segments II, III, and IV) is generally enough to provide sufficient liver mass (Fig. 61.3). From a surgical point of view,

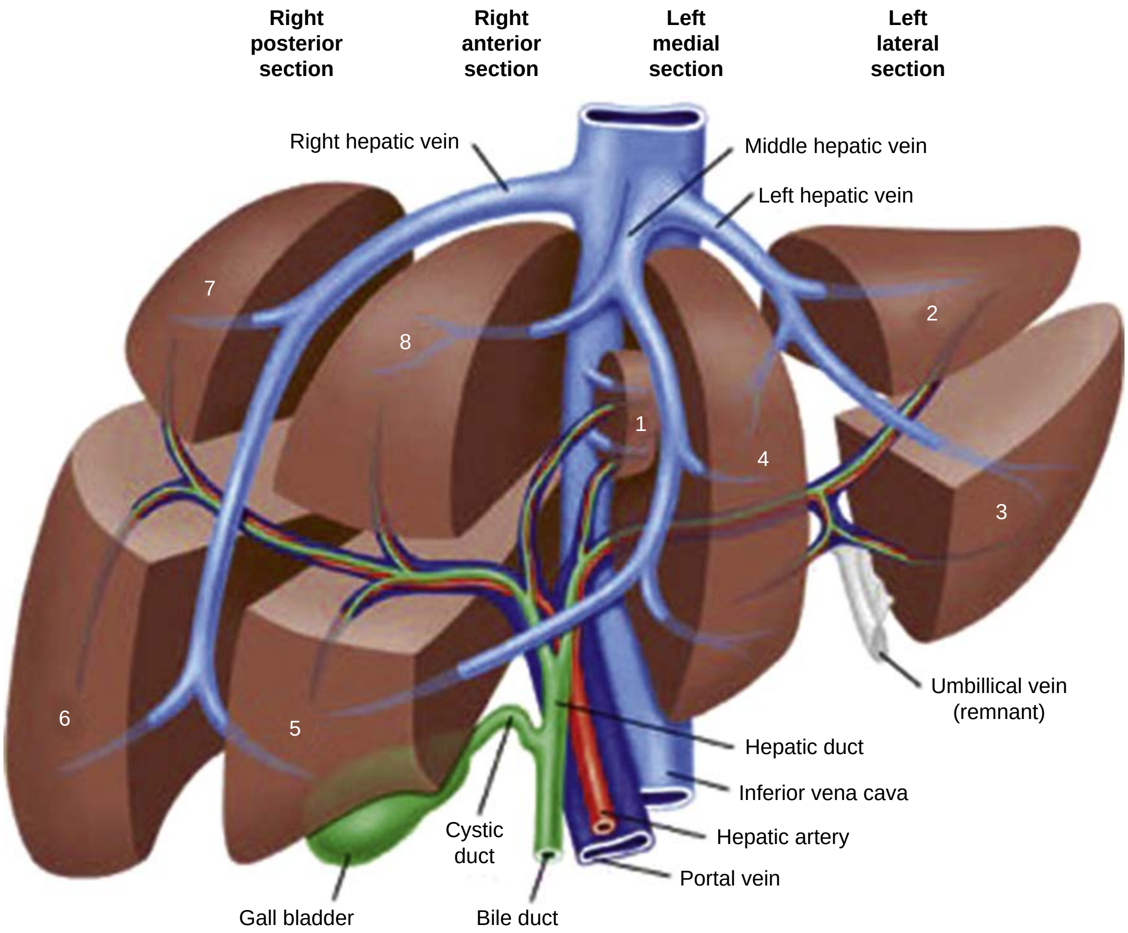


Fig. 61.3 Segmental liver anatomy illustrates the segments resected during various partial hepatectomies. (Redrawn from Steadman RH, Braunfeld M, Park H. Liver and gastrointestinal physiology. In: Hemmings HC, Egan T, eds. *Pharmacology and Physiology in Anesthesia: Foundations and Clinical Applications*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2013:475–486.)

a left hepatectomy is less complex, and the duration of surgery is shorter. Since the first report in 2002, more living donor left lobectomies are performed using laparoscopy.[57] For adult-to-adult LDLT, right hepatic lobectomy is usually required. The surgical technique for right hepatectomy involves separation of the right hepatic lobes (segments V, VI, VII, and VIII) from the left. Compared with left hepatectomy, right hepatectomy is technically more challenging and associated with more perioperative risk. Right hepatectomy results in a graft weighing 500 to 1000 g, which leaves the donor with approximately one-third of the original liver mass. If one donor cannot provide sufficient liver mass, then a technique using two donors to one recipient has been reported.[58] For a small recipient, the left lobe of a large donor organ may suffice.

Anesthetic management starts with a preoperative discussion with the donor patient and family that addresses the risks and concerns associated with the procedure. Most transplant programs provide extensive educational materials, discussion, and support, beginning well before the day of surgery. General anesthesia with neuromuscular blockade is required for living liver donation surgery. The patient is placed in a supine position and intraoperatively uses the reverse Trendelenburg position to facilitate the exposure of the liver. Two large-bore intravenous catheters are placed. Standard noninvasive monitors and arterial blood pressure monitoring are typically used. A nasogastric tube is placed for decompression of the stomach and surgical exposure.

An L-shaped or standard bilateral subcostal incision with a midline extension is frequently used in living donor surgery. During mobilization of the liver and its vasculature, manipulation of the liver occasionally results in decreased venous return to the heart with episodes of hypotension. The return of the liver to its orthotopic position will relieve the venous obstruction; alternatively, administering short-acting vasoactive agents and/or a fluid bolus will generally treat the problem. Most blood loss occurs during transection of the liver parenchyma. With surgical devices specifically designed for hepatectomy, blood loss during living donor hepatectomy is significantly reduced. After the vasculature of the donor lobe is clamped and divided, the graft is removed, and the vasculature and bile duct are oversewn. The abdomen is closed after hemostasis is achieved.

Blood loss during hepatectomy is a major concern and is associated with adverse outcomes. Placement of the CVP catheter and the use of low CVP (<5 cm H_2O) technique are advocated in some centers to reduce blood loss and transfusion requirements.[59] Low CVP reduces blood loss by increasing venous drainage from the hepatic sinusoids and decreasing blood backflow.[59] In addition, low CVP may reduce graft edema and improve postoperative graft function.[51] Low CVP is most often achieved by intravascular fluid restriction and sometimes by drugs, including diuretics and vasodilators.[59] Others consider the placement of a CVP catheter and low CVP technique unnecessary during hepatic resection surgery because of the inability to demonstrate a relationship between CVP and blood loss.[60] Other factors, including steatosis, body weight, and sex, may be more important than CVP in influencing blood loss during living donor hepatectomy.[61] Potential drawbacks of the low CVP technique are the risk of CVP catheter placement and difficulty reversing hemodynamic disturbances in the event of massive bleeding. Others point out that the use of low CVP originates from early experience with hepatectomy several decades ago, when blood loss was significant. With improved surgical techniques and equipment, blood loss during hepatectomy has been dramatically reduced, making CVP placement and monitoring unnecessary.[60,61] At the authors' institution, CVP placement is rarely used. Peripheral venous pressure measurements in the arm may be measured as an alternative to conventional CVP measurements.[62]

Several other blood-saving strategies have been used in living donor hepatectomy. These include cell salvage techniques and preoperative donation of 1 to 2 units of autologous blood, which reduces the chance of allogeneic blood transfusion. Intraoperative isovolemic hemodilution with retrieval of 1 to 2 units of blood in the surgical unit can minimize the likelihood of blood transfusion.[63] The application of one or more of the blood-saving strategies previously listed is usually sufficient in the vast majority of patients.[60] After the graft is removed, excessive intravascular volume should be avoided because it may impede venous return and result in congestion of the remnant liver.[51]

Most living liver donors can be extubated at the end of the procedure in the surgical unit and transferred to the postoperative care unit. Discontinuation of mechanical ventilation reduces intrathoracic pressure, which reduces congestion in the remnant liver. Admission to the ICU is generally unnecessary but preferred in some institutions. Caution is required with the use of intravenous analgesics and opioids in the immediate postoperative period. The remnant liver is assumed to have some degree of insufficiency, although this assumption has not been thoroughly investigated.[51] Optimal perfusion of the remnant liver is achieved by the maintenance of adequate cardiac output and an avoidance of hypovolemia, anemia, and hypothermia-induced coagulopathy.[51]

The use of epidural anesthesia for postoperative pain control in living donor surgery remains controversial. Similar to other upper abdominal surgery, postoperative epidural analgesia provides excellent pain control with less sedation, compared with intravenous patient-controlled analgesia.[64] By facilitating pulmonary toilet, epidural analgesia reduces the risk of respiratory infections. Despite these advantages, preoperative placement of a thoracic epidural catheter is routinely performed in some transplant centers and is entirely avoided in others. The difference of practice originates from the development of postoperative coagulopathy in patients after donor hepatectomy. Postoperatively, thrombocytopenia occurs while the prothrombin and activated partial thrombin times are prolonged. These changes peak on postoperative day 2 to 3, followed by a steady trend toward normalization in the following days.[65] Thus, concern over the potential development of an epidural hematoma is the basis for avoiding epidural catheter placement. Several studies examining the use of the epidural catheter in this population report no adverse effects. In a study of 755 donors who received an epidural catheter for postoperative pain management, no complications associated with the epidural catheter were reported.[66] Another study including 242 living liver donors also showed that epidural analgesia seems to be a safe option when carefully used.[65] Another piece of evidence supporting epidural placement is that hypercoagulability, not hypocoagulability measured by thromboelastography, can develop in the majority of patients after hepatectomy.[67,68] Despite the low overall incidence of epidural hematoma, these studies are criticized for a lack of power to assess the risk of this rare event. If the epidural catheter is placed, then the catheter should not be removed until satisfactory coagulation parameters have been retained, which usually takes 3 to 5 days.[51] If the epidural catheter is not placed, then patient-controlled analgesia is used. The choice of pain-control strategy is influenced by the patient's expectations, surgical preferences, institutional consensus, postoperative monitoring capabilities, and nursing staff familiarity with the various techniques.

Worldwide, a number of LDLT-related donor complications, including mortality, have been reported.[69,70] A multicenter observational study of 760 adult-to-adult LDLTs with up to 12 years of follow-up revealed that 40% of donors had complications (Table 61.4).[69] A total of 19% of donors had more than one complication. Although most of the complications were not associated with residual disability, some were severe. Infection is the most common complication and biliary complications such as bile leaks or stricture can be difficult to treat and can lead to prolonged hospital stays with the possibility of further surgery. Higher preoperative creatinine levels, intraoperative hypotension, and intraoperative transfusion are associated with donor complications. Increased institutional experience is not associated with decreased complications.[69] Another recent study involving 5202 living donor hepatectomies found that 12% of donors developed at least one complication, of which 3.8% were major events, which doubled after right hepatectomy.[71]

LIVING LUNG DONOR

Living lung transplantation is an alternative to deceased lung transplantation. Typically, two donors are used for one recipient in living lung transplantation, although the use of a single living donor has been reported.[72] If two donors are involved, then careful coordination and timing of the anesthetic induction of the two donors and recipient are required. The right lower lobe of one donor and the left lower lobe of the second donor are implanted in the recipient in place of the whole right and left lungs. Donor lobectomy requires sufficient bronchial, arterial, and vein cuffs to permit successful anastomoses. A bronchial air leak can result in a prolonged need for chest tube drainage, which lengthens hospital stay.

After the induction of general anesthesia, a single-lumen endotracheal tube is usually placed initially to facilitate fiberoptic bronchoscopic examination before incision. Once

TABLE 61.4 Type and Frequency of Complications of Living Liver Donors of 760 Donor Procedures, ~40% (296 Donors) Suffered 557 Complications; 20 Procedures Were Aborted)

Complications	Frequency (% of 760 procedures)
Infections	13.2
Pleural effusion	11.0
Bile leak or biloma	8.1
Incisional hernia	6.6
Psychologic difficulty	5.6
Neuropraxia	3.4
Ascites	2.8
Unplanned reexploration	2.7
Pulmonary edema	2.1
Bowel obstruction	1.6
Intraabdominal abscesses	1.2
Pulmonary embolism	1.0
Pneumothorax	0.8
Deep vein thrombosis	0.8
Biliary stricture	0.7
Portal vein thrombosis	0.5
Inferior vena cava thrombosis	0.4

Modified from Abecassis MM, Fisher RA, Olthoff KM, et al. Complications of living donor hepatic lobectomy—a comprehensive report. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12:1208–1217.

a decision is made to proceed, a left-sided double-lumen endotracheal tube later replaces the single-lumen endotracheal tube. Standard noninvasive monitors, intraarterial blood pressure monitoring, and capnography may be sufficient. After placing the donor in the lateral decubitus position and rechecking the double-lumen tube position by fiberoptic bronchoscope, a thoracotomy is performed. Intraoperative cardiorespiratory and metabolic homeostasis minimizes the risk of postoperative complications. Prostaglandin E_1 is usually intravenously administered to dilate the pulmonary vessels with titration according to systemic blood pressure (hypotension needs to be avoided). After mobilization is complete, the lung is reinflated for 5 to 10 minutes, followed by the administration of heparin and a steroid. Transection of the lung is performed after the lung is recollapsed.

Thoracic epidural analgesia is a useful adjunct for perioperative care. The epidural catheter may be placed hours before surgery.[51] Although this approach may be questionable in patients undergoing heparinization, the superiority of postoperative analgesia and the avoidance of atelectasis and infection appear to justify the risk of donor epidural catheterization.[73]

ISCHEMIA-REPERFUSION INJURY

Ischemia-reperfusion injury of transplanted grafts is unavoidable if blood supply is interrupted. An interruption of the blood supply during the ischemic period results in metabolic and pathophysiologic changes. Restoration of blood flow and reoxygenation can also cause tissue injury, as well as profound immune and inflammatory responses.[74]

Ischemia-reperfusion injury results from a wide range of pathologic processes. During ischemia, a lack of oxygen supply leads to a depletion of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) and glycogen. Without ATP, sodium-potassium (Na-K) pumps cannot maintain ion gradients across the cellular membrane. As a result, extracellular sodium ions move into cells, causing swelling. Vascular permeability is increased since intracellular cyclic adenosine monophosphate levels and adenylate cyclase activity is decreased.[74,75] The restoration of the blood supply causes a series of pathophysiologic changes that lead to tissue injury. Reperfusion-related injuries include necrosis, apoptosis (programmed death), and autophagy-associated cell death. Reperfusion also activates autoimmune responses including natural antibody recognition of neoantigens, activation of the complement system, activation of innate and adaptive immune responses, and cell migration to the affected area.

Organ Preservation and Management After Procurement

After procurement, preservation of organs in a cold (4°C) solution until reperfusion remains a mainstream management after procurement. Although static cold preservation slows the metabolic rate, energy consumption is not completely stopped. Accumulation of metabolites and intracellular calcium limit the maximum time for static cold storage.[76] Various cold-storage solutions are used worldwide with the UW solution one of the most widely used. The UW solution contains high potassium and adenosine to supply ATP during cold storage. Histidine-tryptophan-ketoglutarate (HTK) solution, originally developed for cardioplegia and subsequently applied to organ preservation in Europe, has gained popularity.[77] The potential for hyperkalemia during organ reperfusion (particularly with the liver) increases when the UW solution is used, compared with the HTK solution. However, the graft is typically flushed with colloid before reperfusion, regardless of the solution used, which decreases the likelihood of severe hyperkalemia. Recent data suggest that the HTK solution may be associated with poor graft function in abdominal organ transplantation.[78,79] Organ-specific solutions, such as Perfadex solution (manufactured by Vitrolife in Göteborg, Sweden) for the lung and Celsior solution (manufactured by Genzyme in Cambridge, MA) for the heart, are available. Although ischemia time should be kept minimal, a longer storage time allows transportation of the graft to the highest acuity patient for a long distance. Generally accepted cold ischemia times during static cold preservation are 24 hours for the kidney, 12 hours for the liver, 6 hours for the heart, and 4 hours for the lung.

In addition to static cold preservation, machine perfusion can be used to preserve procured organs. The driving force for recent renewed interest in machine perfusion is to expand the donor pool.[79] The potential advantage for machine perfusion techniques include a longer storage time, ability to assess the viability of organ, and potential therapeutic interventions during preservation. Temperature during

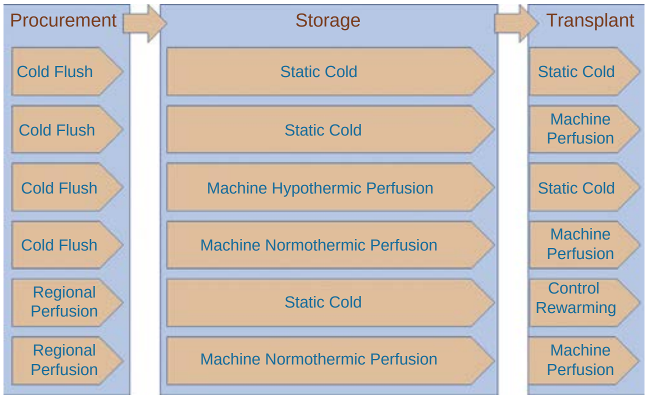


Fig. 61.4 Various techniques and combination of techniques can be used to improve donor function and recipient outcome during procurement, preservation, and transplant.

machine perfusion can be hypothermic (4°C-10°C), subnormothermic (12°C-30°C), and normothermic (35°C-37°C). Different temperatures have different advantages and disadvantages.[76] When normothermia is used, oxygen needs to be added. Combination of different techniques and temperatures may be used in different situations (Fig. 61.4).[79] Clinical trials and metaanalysis suggest machine perfusion improves short-term outcomes including a reduction in DGF and primary nonfunction. These effects are more obvious in high-risk donors.[76,80-82] Changes of biomarkers in perfusate reflect damage of preserved organs and may be used to predict posttransplant outcome. Tests using metabolomics, proteomics, and genomics approaches may provide useful information in the future.[83] Several pharmacologic and biologic agents have been tested in animal models and preclinical trials; some, including recombinant agents that block leukocyte adhesion, have shown promise.[84,85] Preconditioning with volatile anesthetics has been shown to protect tissue from ischemia-reperfusion injury in animal models.[86] In human trials, volatile anesthetics have some beneficial effects in the setting of myocardial infarction, minimizing ischemia-reperfusion injury, although the data remain inconclusive.[87]

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Hart A, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2018;17:21.
2. National Data - OPTN. https://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov/data/view-data-reports/national-data/#. Accessed March 28, 2018.
3. Israni AK, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2018;18:434.
4. Price DP. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(suppl 1):i68.
5. *JAMA*. 1968;205(6):337–340.
6. Wijdicks EF, et al. *Neurology*. 2010;74(23):1911.
7. Smith M. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(suppl 1):i6.
8. Ranasinghe AM, Bonser RS. *Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2011;25(5):799.
9. Venkateswaran RV, et al. *Transplantation*. 2010;89(7):894–901.
10. Dare AJ, et al. *Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep*. 2012;12(4):456.
11. McKeown DW, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(suppl 1):i96.
12. Hoogland ER, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2011;11(7):1427.
13. Dhanani S, et al. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2012;27(4):238.
14. Bernat JL, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2006;6(2):281.
15. Fanelli V, Mascia L. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23(3):406.
16. Gardiner D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(suppl 1):i14.
17. Hong JC, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2011;146(9):1017.
18. Cameron A, Busuttil RW. *Liver Transpl*. 2005;11(suppl 2):S2–5.
19. Fernández-Lorente L, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12(10):2781–2788.
20. KDPI Calculator - OPTN. https://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov/resources/allocation-calculators/kdpi-calculator/. Accessed April 1, 2018.
21. Feng S, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2006;6(4):783.
22. Schaubel DE, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2008;8(2):419.
23. Xia VW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(3):780.
24. Park C, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2010;42(5):1738.
25. Malinoski DJ, et al. *J Trauma*. 2011;71(4):990. discussion, p 996.
26. Cittanova ML, et al. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9042):1620.
27. Hunt SA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24(9):1599.
28. Mukadam ME, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2005;130(3):926.
29. Mascia L, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;304(23):2620.
30. Ware LB, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;93(5):1869.
31. Niemann CU, et al. *New Eng J Med*. 2015;373(5):405–414.
32. Schnuelle P, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2018;18(3):704–714.
33. Kotloff RM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(6):1291–1325.
34. Totsuka E, et al. *Liver Transpl Surg*. 1999;5(5):421.
35. Hoefer D, et al. *Transpl Int*. 2010;23(6):589.
36. Blasi-Ibanez A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(2):333.
37. Hagan ME, et al. *Prog Transplant*. 2009;19(3):227.
38. Malinoski DJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012.
39. Abt PL, Feng S. *Am J Transplant*. 2016;16(9):2508–2509.
40. De Hert SG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(6):1584.
41. Bachir NM. *Larson AM: Am J Med Sci*. 2012;343(6):462.
42. Quintini C, et al. *Transpl Int*. 2012.
43. O'Brien B, et al. *Transplantation*. 2012;93(11):1158.
44. Henderson ML, et al. *Transplantation*. 2018.
45. Lentine KL, Patel A. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2012;19(4):220.
46. Mandelbrot DA, Pavlakis M. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2012;19(4):212–219.
47. Wolfe RA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;341(23):1725.
48. Bertolatus JA, Goddard L. *Transplantation*. 2001;71(2):256.
49. Rocca JP, et al. *Mt Sinai J Med*. 2012;79(3):330.
50. Pietrabissa A, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2010;10(12):2708.
51. Feltracco P, Ori C. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2010;76(7):525.
52. Segev DL, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;303(10):959.
53. Raia S, et al. *Lancet*. 1989;2(8661):497.
54. Marcos A, et al. *Transplantation*. 2000;69(7):1375.
55. Lee SG. *Br Med Bull*. 2010;94:33.
56. Tongyoo A, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12(5):1229.
57. Cherqui D, et al. *Lancet*. 2002;359(9304):392.
58. Lee S, et al. *Surgery*. 2001;129(5):647.
59. Ryu HG, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2010;10(4):877.
60. Niemann CU, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(2):266.
61. Kim YK, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(5):601.
62. Hoftman N, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2006;18(4):251.
63. Balci ST, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2008;40(1):224.
64. Clarke H, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2011;17(3):315.
65. Choi SJ, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(1):62.
66. Adachi T. *J Anesth*. 2003;17(2):116.
67. Cerutti E, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2004;10(2):289.
68. Mallett SV, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(6):657–668.
69. Abecassis MM, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12(5):1208.
70. Iida T, et al. *Transplantation*. 2010;89(10):1276.
71. Rössler F, et al. *Annals of Surgery*. 2016;264(3):492–500.
72. Date H, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;144(3):710.
73. De Cosmo G, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2009;75(6):393.
74. Eltzschig HK, Eckle T. *Nat Med*. 2011;17(11):1391–1401.
75. Zhai Y, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2011;11(8):1563–1569.
76. Selten J, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol*. 2017;31(2):171–179.
77. Fridell JA, et al. *Clin Transplant*. 2009;23(3):305–312.
78. Stewart ZA, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2009;9(5):1048–1054.
79. Stewart ZA, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2009;9(2):286–293.
80. Henry SD, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12(9):2477–2486.
81. Tso PL, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12(5):1091–1098.
82. Hameed AM, et al. *Medicine*. 2016;95(40):e5083.
83. Jochmans I, et al. *Curr Opin Organ Trans*. 2017;22(3):260–266.
84. Busuttil RW, et al. *Am J Transplant*. 2011;11(4):786–797.
85. Abu-Amara M, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;4:CD008154.
86. Jin L-M, et al. *Pathobiology*. 2010;77(3):136–146.
87. Gerczuk PZ, Kloner RA. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;59(11):969.

References

1. Hart A, Smith JM, Skeans MA, et al. OPTN/SRTR 2015 Annual data report: kidney. *American Journal of Transplantation*. 2018;17:21–116. https://doi.org/10.1111/ajt.14124.
2. National Data - OPTN. https://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov/data/view-data-reports/national-data/#. Accessed March 28, 2018.
3. Israni AK, Zaun D, Rosendale JD, Schaffhausen C, Snyder JJ, Kasiske BL. OPTN/SRTR 2016 Annual data report: deceased organ donation. *American Journal of Transplantation*. 2018;18:434–463. https://doi.org/10.1111/ajt.14563.
4. Price DPT. Legal framework governing deceased organ donation in the UK. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(suppl 1):i68–72. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aer356.
5. A definition of irreversible coma. Report of the Ad Hoc committee of the harvard medical school to examine the definition of brain death. *JAMA*. 1968;205(6):337–340.
6. Wijdicks EFM, Varelas PN, Gronseth GS, Greer DM. Evidence-based guideline update: determining brain death in adults: report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. *Neurology*. 2010;74(23):1911–1918. https://doi.org/10.1212/WNL.0b013e3181e242a8.
7. Smith M. Brain death: time for an international consensus. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(suppl 1): i6-9. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aer355.
8. Ranasinghe AM, Bonser RS. Endocrine changes in brain death and transplantation. *Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2011;25(5):799–812. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.beem.2011.03.003.
9. Venkateswaran RV, Townend JN, Wilson IC, Mascaro JG, Bonser RS, Steeds RP. Echocardiography in the potential heart donor. *Transplantation*. 2010;89(7):894–901. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0b013e3181cfe8e9.
10. Dare AJ, Bartlett AS, Fraser JF. Critical care of the potential organ donor. *Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep*. 2012;12(4):456–465. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11910-012-0272-9.
11. McKeown DW, Bonser RS, Kellum JA. Management of the heartbeating brain-dead organ donor. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(suppl 1):i96–107. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aer351.
12. Hoogland ERP, Snoeijs MGJ, Winkens B, Christaans MHL, van Heurn LWE. Kidney transplantation from donors after cardiac death: uncontrolled versus controlled donation. *Am J Transplant*. 2011;11(7):1427–1434. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2011.03562.x.
13. Dhanani S, Hornby L, Ward R, Shemie S. Variability in the determination of death after cardiac arrest: a review of guidelines and statements. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2012;27(4):238–252. https://doi.org/10.1177/0885066610396993.
14. Bernat JL, D'Alessandro AM, Port FK, et al. Report of a national conference on donation after cardiac death. *Am J Transplant*. 2006;6(2):281–291. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2005.01194.x.
15. Fanelli V, Mascia L. Anesthetic optimization for nonheartbeating donors. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23(3):406–410. https://doi.org/10.1097/ACO.0b013e3283395352.
16. Gardiner D, Shemie S, Manara A, Opdam H. International perspective on the diagnosis of death. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(suppl 1):i14–28. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aer397.
17. Hong JC, Yersiz H, Kositamongkol P, et al. Liver transplantation using organ donation after cardiac death: a clinical predictive index for graft failure-free survival. *Arch Surg*. 2011;146(9):1017–1023. https://doi.org/10.1001/archsurg.2011.240.
18. Cameron A, Busuttil RW. AASLD/ILTS transplant course: is there an extended donor suitable for everyone? *Liver Transpl*. 2005;11(suppl 2):S2–5. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.20596.
19. Fernández-Lorente L, Riera L, Bestard O, et al. Long-term results of biopsy-guided selection and allocation of kidneys from older donors in older recipients. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12(10):2781–2788. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2012.04153.x.
20. KDPI Calculator - OPTN. https://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov/resources/allocation-calculators/kdpi-calculator/. Accessed April 1, 2018.
21. Feng S, Goodrich NP, Bragg-Gresham JL, et al. Characteristics associated with liver graft failure: the concept of a donor risk index. *Am J Transplant*. 2006;6(4):783–790. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2006.01242.x.
22. Schaubel DE, Sima CS, Goodrich NP, Feng S, Merion RM. The survival benefit of deceased donor liver transplantation as a function of candidate disease severity and donor quality: the survival benefit of deceased donor liver transplantation. *American Journal of Transplantation*. 2008;8(2):419–425. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2007.02086.x.
23. Xia VW, Ghobrial RM, Du B, et al. Predictors of hyperkalemia in the prereperfusion, early postreperfusion, and late postreperfusion periods during adult liver transplantation. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(3):780–785. https://doi.org/10.1213/01.ane.0000271914.54261.17.
24. Park C, Huh M, Steadman RH, et al. Extended criteria donor and severe intraoperative glucose variability: association with reoperation for hemorrhage in liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc*. 2010;42(5):1738–1743. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.transproceed.2009.12.066.
25. Malinoski DJ, Daly MC, Patel MS, Oley-Graybill C, Foster CE, Salim A. Achieving donor management goals before deceased donor procurement is associated with more organs transplanted per donor. *The Journal of Trauma: Injury, Infection, and Critical Care*. 2011;71(4):990–996. https://doi.org/10.1097/TA.0b013e31822779e5.
26. Cittanova ML, Leblanc I, Legendre C, Mouquet C, Riou B, Coriat P. Effect of hydroxyethylstarch in brain-dead kidney donors on renal function in kidney-transplant recipients. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9042):1620–1622.
27. Hunt SA, Baldwin J, Baumgartner W, et al. Cardiovascular management of a potential heart donor: a statement from the Transplantation Committee of the American College of Cardiology. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24(9):1599–1601.
28. Mukadam ME, Harrington DK, Wilson IC, et al. Does donor catecholamine administration affect early lung function after transplantation? *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2005;130(3):926–927. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jtcvs.2005.02.007.
29. Mascia L, Pasero D, Slutsky AS, et al. Effect of a lung protective strategy for organ donors on eligibility and availability of lungs for transplantation: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2010;304(23):2620–2627. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2010.1796.
30. Ware LB, Fang X, Wang Y, Sakuma T, Hall TS, Matthay MA. Selected contribution: mechanisms that may stimulate the resolution of alveolar edema in the transplanted human lung. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;93(5):1869–1874. https://doi.org/10.1152/japplphysiol.00252.2002.
31. Niemann CU, Feiner J, Swain S, et al. Therapeutic hypothermia in deceased organ donors and kidney-graft function. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2015;373(5):405–414. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1501969.
32. Schnuelle P, Mundt HM, Drüschler F, et al. Impact of spontaneous donor hypothermia on graft outcomes after kidney transplantation. *American Journal of Transplantation*. 2018;18(3):704–714. https://doi.org/10.1111/ajt.14541.
33. Kotloff RM, Blosser S, Fulda GJ, et al. Management of the potential organ donor in the ICU: Society of Critical Care Medicine/American College of Chest Physicians/Association of Organ Procurement Organizations consensus statement. *Critical Care Medicine*. 2015;43(6):1291–1325. https://doi.org/10.1097/CCM.0000000000000958.
34. Totsuka E, Dodson F, Urakami A, et al. Influence of high donor serum sodium levels on early postoperative graft function in human liver transplantation: effect of correction of donor hypernatremia. *Liver Transpl Surg*. 1999;5(5):421–428. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.500050510.
35. Hoefer D, Ruttmann-Ulmer E, Smits JM, Devries E, Antretter H, Laufer G. Donor hypo- and hypernatremia are predictors for increased 1-year mortality after cardiac transplantation. *Transpl Int*. 2010;23(6):589–593. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1432-2277.2009.01024.x.
36. Blasi-Ibanez A, Hirose R, Feiner J, et al. Predictors associated with terminal renal function in deceased organ donors in the intensive care unit. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(2):333–341. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0b013e318194ca8a.
37. Hagan ME, McClean D, Falcone CA, Arrington J, Matthews D, Summe C. Attaining specific donor management goals increases number of organs transplanted per donor: a quality improvement project. *Prog Transplant*. 2009;19(3):227–231.
38. Malinoski DJ, Patel MS, Daly MC, Oley-Graybill C, Salim A. UNOS Region 5 DMG workgroup. The impact of meeting donor management goals on the number of organs transplanted per donor: results from the United Network for Organ Sharing Region 5 prospective donor management goals study. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40(10):2773–2780. https://doi.org/10.1097/CCM.0b013e31825b252a.
39. Abt PL, Feng S. Organ donor research: it is time for much needed clarity. *Am J Transplant*. 2016;16(9):2508–2509. https://doi.org/10.1111/ajt.13939.
40. De Hert SG, Turani F, Mathur S, Stowe DF. Cardioprotection with volatile anesthetics: mechanisms and clinical implications. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(6):1584–1593. https://doi.org/10.1213/01.ANE.0000153483.61170.0C.

41. Bachir NM, Larson AM. Adult liver transplantation in the United States. *Am J Med Sci*. 2012;343(6):462–469. https://doi.org/10.1097/MAJ.0b013e3182308b66.
42. Quintini C, Hashimoto K, Uso TD, Miller C. Is there an advantage of living over deceased donation in liver transplantation? *Transpl Int*. 2013;26(1):11–19. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1432-2277.2012.01550.x.
43. O'Brien B, Mastoridis S, Sabharwal A, Hakim N, Taube D, Papalois V. Expanding the donor pool: living donor nephrectomy in the elderly and the overweight. *Transplantation*. 2012;93(11):1158–1165. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0b013e31824ef1ae.
44. Henderson ML, DiBrito SR, Thomas AG, et al. Landscape of living multi-organ donation in the united states: a registry-based cohort study. *Transplantation*; 2018. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0000000000002082.
45. Lentine KL, Patel A. Risks and outcomes of living donation. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2012;19(4):220–228. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.ackd.2011.09.005.
46. Mandelbrot DA, Pavlakis M. Living donor practices in the United States. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2012;19(4):212–219. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.ackd.2012.04.010.
47. Wolfe RA, Ashby VB, Milford EL, et al. Comparison of mortality in all patients on dialysis, patients on dialysis awaiting transplantation, and recipients of a first cadaveric transplant. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;341(23):1725–1730. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199912023412303.
48. Bertolatus JA, Goddard L. Evaluation of renal function in potential living kidney donors. *Transplantation*. 2001;71(2):256–260.
49. Rocca JP, Davis E, Edye M. Live-donor nephrectomy. *Mt Sinai J Med*. 2012;79(3):330–341. https://doi.org/10.1002/msj.21317.
50. Pietrabissa A, Abelli M, Spinillo A, et al. Robotic-assisted laparoscopic donor nephrectomy with transvaginal extraction of the kidney. *Am J Transplant*. 2010;10(12):2708–2711. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2010.03305.x.
51. Feltracco P, Ori C. Anesthetic management of living transplantation. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2010;76(7):525–533.
52. Segev DL, Muzaale AD, Caffo BS, et al. Perioperative mortality and long-term survival following live kidney donation. *JAMA*. 2010;303(10):959–966. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2010.237.
53. Raia S, Nery JR, Mies S. Liver transplantation from live donors. *Lancet*. 1989;2(8661):497.
54. Marcos A, Fisher RA, Ham JM, et al. Selection and outcome of living donors for adult to adult right lobe transplantation. *Transplantation*. 2000;69(11):2410–2415.
55. Lee S-G. Living-donor liver transplantation in adults. *Br Med Bull*. 2010;94:33–48. https://doi.org/10.1093/bmb/ldq003.
56. Tongyoo A, Pomfret EA, Pomposelli JJ. Accurate estimation of living donor right hemi-liver volume from portal vein diameter measurement and standard liver volume calculation. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12(5):1229–1239. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2011.03909.x.
57. Cherqui D, Soubrane O, Husson E, et al. Laparoscopic living donor hepatectomy for liver transplantation in children. *Lancet*. 2002;359(9304):392–396. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(02)07598-0.
58. Lee S, Hwang S, Park K, et al. An adult-to-adult living donor liver transplant using dual left lobe grafts. *Surgery*. 2001;129(5):647–650. https://doi.org/10.1067/msy.2001.114218.
59. Ryu H-G, Nahm FS, Sohn H-M, Jeong E-J, Jung C-W. Low central venous pressure with milrinone during living donor hepatectomy. *Am J Transplant*. 2010;10(4):877–882. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2010.03051.x.
60. Niemann CU, Feiner J, Behrends M, Eilers H, Ascher NL, Roberts JP. Central venous pressure monitoring during living right donor hepatectomy. *Liver Transplantation*. 2007;13(2):266–271. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.21051.
61. Kim YK, Chin JH, Kang SJ, et al. Association between central venous pressure and blood loss during hepatic resection in 984 living donors. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(5):601–606. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399-6576.2009.01920.x.
62. Hoftman N, Braunfeld M, Hoftman G, Mahajan A. Peripheral venous pressure as a predictor of central venous pressure during orthotopic liver transplantation. *J Clin Anesth*. 2006;18(4):251–255. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclinane.2005.09.031.
63. Balci ST, Pirat A, Torgay A, Cinar O, Sevmis S, Arslan G. Effect of restrictive fluid management and acute normovolemic intraoperative hemodilution on transfusion requirements during living donor hepatectomy. *Transplant Proc*. 2008;40(1):224–227. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.transproceed.2007.12.011.
64. Clarke H, Chandy T, Srinivas C, et al. Epidural analgesia provides better pain management after live liver donation: a retrospective study. *Liver Transpl*. 2011;17(3):315–323. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.22221.
65. Choi SJ, Gwak MS, Ko JS, et al. The changes in coagulation profile and epidural catheter safety for living liver donors: a report on 6 years of our experience. *Liver Transpl*. 2007;13(1):62–70. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.20933.
66. Adachi T. Anesthetic principles in living-donor liver transplantation at Kyoto University Hospital: experiences of 760 cases. *J Anesth*. 2003;17(2):116–124.
67. Cerutti E, Stratta C, Romagnoli R, et al. Thromboelastogram monitoring in the perioperative period of hepatectomy for adult living liver donation. *Liver Transpl*. 2004;10(2):289–294. https://doi.org/10.1002/lt.20078.
68. Mallett SV, Sugavanam A, Krzanicki DA, et al. Alterations in coagulation following major liver resection. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(6):657–668. https://doi.org/10.1111/anae.13459.
69. Abecassis MM, Fisher RA, Olthoff KM, et al. Complications of living donor hepatic lobectomy—a comprehensive report. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12(5):1208–1217. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2011.03972.x.
70. Iida T, Ogura Y, Oike F, et al. Surgery-related morbidity in living donors for liver transplantation. *Transplantation*. 2010;89(10):1276–1282. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0b013e3181d66c55.
71. Rössler F, Sapisochin G, Song G, et al. Defining benchmarks for major liver surgery: a multicenter analysis of 5202 living liver donors. *Annals of Surgery*. 2016;264(3):492–500. https://doi.org/10.1097/SLA.0000000000001849.
72. Date H, Shiraishi T, Sugimoto S, et al. Outcome of living-donor lobar lung transplantation using a single donor. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;144(3):710–715. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jtcvs.2012.05.054.
73. De Cosmo G, Aceto P, Gualtieri E, Congedo E. Analgesia in thoracic surgery: review. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2009;75(6):393–400.
74. Eltzschig HK, Eckle T. Ischemia and reperfusion—from mechanism to translation. *Nat Med*. 2011;17(11):1391–1401. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.2507.
75. Zhai Y, Busuttil RW, Kupiec-Weglinski JW. Liver ischemia and reperfusion injury: new insights into mechanisms of innate-adaptive immune-mediated tissue inflammation. *Am J Transplant*. 2011;11(8):1563–1569. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2011.03579.x.
76. Selten J, Schlegel A, de Jonge J, Dutkowski P. Hypo- and normothermic perfusion of the liver: which way to go? *Best Practice & Research Clinical Gastroenterology*. 2017;31(2):171–179. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bpg.2017.04.001.
77. Fridell JA, Mangus RS, Tector AJ. Clinical experience with histidine-tryptophan-ketoglutarate solution in abdominal organ preservation: a review of recent literature. *Clin Transplant*. 2009;23(3):305–312. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399-0012.2008.00952.x.
78. Stewart ZA, Lonze BE, Warren DS, et al. Histidine-tryptophan-ketoglutarate (HTK) is associated with reduced graft survival of deceased donor kidney transplants. *Am J Transplant*. 2009;9(5):1048–1054. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2008.02545.x.
79. Stewart ZA, Cameron AM, Singer AL, Montgomery RA, Segev DL. Histidine-Tryptophan-Ketoglutarate (HTK) is associated with reduced graft survival in deceased donor livers, especially those donated after cardiac death. *Am J Transplant*. 2009;9(2):286–293. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2008.02478.x.
80. Henry SD, Nachber E, Tulipan J, et al. Hypothermic machine preservation reduces molecular markers of ischemia/reperfusion injury in human liver transplantation. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12(9):2477–2486. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2012.04086.x.
81. Tso PL, Dar WA, Henry ML. With respect to elderly patients: finding kidneys in the context of new allocation concepts. *Am J Transplant*. 2012;12(5):1091–1098. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2011.03956.x.
82. Hameed AM, Pleass HC, Wong G, Hawthorne WJ. Maximizing kidneys for transplantation using machine perfusion: from the past to the future. *Medicine*. 2016;95(40):e5083. https://doi.org/10.1097/MD.0000000000005083.

83. Jochmans I, Nicholson ML, Hosgood SA. Kidney perfusion: some like it hot others prefer to keep it cool. *Current Opinion in Organ Transplantation*. 2017;22(3):260–266. https://doi.org/10.1097/MOT.0000000000000405.
84. Busuttil RW, Lipshutz GS, Kupiec-Weglinski JW, et al. rPSGL-Ig for improvement of early liver allograft function: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, single-center phase II study. *Am J Transplant*. 2011;11(4):786–797. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-6143.2011.03441.x.
85. Abu-Amara M, Gurusamy KS, Glantzounis G, Fuller B, Davidson BR. Pharmacological interventions for ischaemia reperfusion injury in liver resection surgery performed under vascular control. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;4:CD008154. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD008154.
86. Jin L-M, Liu Y-X, Zhou L, et al. Ischemic preconditioning attenuates morphological and biochemical changes in hepatic ischemia/reperfusion in rats. *Pathobiology*. 2010;77(3):136–146. https://doi.org/10.1159/000292647.
87. Gerczuk PZ, Kloner RA. An update on cardioprotection: a review of the latest adjunctive therapies to limit myocardial infarction size in clinical trials. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;59(11):969–978. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2011.07.054.

62

Anesthesia for Obstetrics

EMILY E. SHARPE and KATHERINE W. ARENDT

KEY POINTS

- The normal physiologic changes of pregnancy begin in the first trimester, affect all organ systems, and alter pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic responses to many drugs commonly used in anesthesia.
- Maternal-fetal exchange of most drugs and other substances occurs primarily by diffusion. The rate of diffusion and peak levels in the fetus depend on maternal-to-fetal concentration gradients, maternal protein binding, molecular weight of the substance, lipid solubility, and the degree of ionization of that substance.
- All women in labor are considered to have a full stomach and an increased risk for pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents during induction of anesthesia and aspiration prophylaxis should be considered before all surgical procedures during pregnancy.
- Uterine blood flow increases progressively during pregnancy from approximately 100 mL/min in the nonpregnant state to between 700 and 900 mL/min (~10% of cardiac output) at term gestation. Consequently, hemorrhage during pregnancy carries significant morbidity and is a leading cause of maternal death worldwide. Early recognition with timely intervention, optimal team performance, and appropriate blood product transfusions are essential to patient outcomes.
- Uterine and placental blood flow depend on maternal cardiac output and are directly related to uterine perfusion pressure and inversely related to uterine vascular resistance. Decreased perfusion pressure can result from maternal hypotension secondary to hypovolemia, aortocaval compression, sympathetic blockade, and decreased systemic resistance from either general or neuraxial anesthesia. Prophylactic or therapeutic phenylephrine in boluses or as an infusion reduces the incidence and severity of hypotension from spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery. In comparison to ephedrine, phenylephrine results in less fetal acidosis.
- During pregnancy, the maternal oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve shifts to the right with pregnancy while the fetal oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve lies to the left. This facilitates oxygen transfer from maternal to fetal hemoglobin. Fetal O_2 saturation does not exceed 60% even with 100% O_2 delivery to the mother. Maternal $PaCO_2$ decreases from 40 mm Hg to approximately 30 mm Hg during the first trimester. This reduction facilitates carbon dioxide transfer across the placenta, which is primarily limited by blood flow and not diffusion.
- Labor is a continuous process separated into first, second, and third stages. The first stage of labor includes the change of the uterine cervix from a thick closed tube to an opening of approximately 10 cm through which the fetus can be expelled. This stage is further divided into latent and active phases.
- Neuraxial analgesia is the most reliable and effective method of reducing pain during labor. Adequate analgesia is achieved with blockade of T10 to L1 during the first stage of labor and requires extension to include S2 to S4 during the second stage of labor.
- Neuraxial analgesia in comparison to unmedicated birth or intravenous opioid analgesia may prolong the second stage of labor but does not increase the risk for cesarean delivery. Epidural analgesia inserted *early* compared to *late* in labor does not increase the risk for cesarean delivery or prolong the first stage of labor.
- Remifentanil patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) may offer superior pain relief and less fetal effects than other intravenous opioid analgesics but its analgesic effects are inferior to epidural labor analgesia and it requires careful maternal oxygenation and ventilation monitoring.
- Hypertensive disorders of pregnancy complicate 5% to 10% of worldwide pregnancies and can cause maternal and fetal mortality. Patients with preeclampsia are at increased risk for cerebral hemorrhage, pulmonary edema, and coagulopathy. Systolic and diastolic blood pressure higher than 160/110 mm Hg should be treated to prevent intracerebral hemorrhage.
- Sepsis is a leading cause of maternal morbidity and mortality in the UK and United States. Early identification and treatment has been shown to improve outcomes.

Physiologic Changes During Pregnancy and Delivery

During pregnancy and the peripartum period, substantial changes in maternal anatomy and physiology occur secondary to (1) changes in hormone activity, (2) mechanical effects of an enlarging uterus, and (3) increased maternal metabolic demands and biochemical alterations induced by the fetoplacental unit. These changes have a significant impact on anesthetic pharmacology and physiology resulting in unique anesthesia management requirements during pregnancy. Pregnant women with comorbid conditions require even greater anesthetic modifications.

CARDIOVASCULAR CHANGES

Changes in the cardiovascular system occur throughout gestation and include (1) anatomic changes, (2) an increase in intravascular volumes, (3) an increase in cardiac output, (4) a decrease in vascular resistance, and (5) the presence of supine hypotension. Table 62.1 and the following sections detail these changes.

Physical Examination and Cardiac Studies

The cardiovascular changes of a normal pregnancy are significant. In cardiac auscultation an accentuated first heart sound (S_1) can be heard, with an increased splitting noted from dissociated closure of the tricuspid and mitral valves. A third heart sound (S_3) is often heard in the final trimester, and a fourth heart sound (S_4) can also be heard in some pregnant patients as a result of increased volume and turbulent flow. Neither the S_3 nor S_4 heart sounds have clinical significance. In addition, a benign grade 2/6 systolic ejection murmur is typically heard over the left sternal border and is secondary to mild regurgitation at the tricuspid valve from the annular dilation associated with the increased cardiac volume. Table 62.1 details the effects of pregnancy on the electrocardiogram and echocardiography. The elevation of the diaphragm by the growing uterus shifts the heart anteriorly and to the left. Left axis deviation as well as left ventricular hypertrophy are common findings in normal pregnancy. Women who present with chest pain, syncope, high-grade flow murmurs, arrhythmias, or heart failure symptoms such as hypoxia or clinically significant shortness of breath should undergo appropriate diagnostic investigation and referral.

Intravascular Volume

Maternal intravascular fluid volume begins to increase in the first trimester secondary to changes in the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system promoting sodium absorption and water retention. These changes are likely induced by rising progesterone from the gestational sac. Plasma protein concentrations accordingly decrease with a 25% decrease in albumin and 10% decrease in total protein at term compared with nonpregnant levels.[1] Consequently, colloid osmotic pressure decreases from 27 to 22 mm Hg over the time of gestation.[2] At term, the plasma volume is 50% to 55% above the nonpregnant level. It is thought that the increase in blood volume prepares the parturient for delivery blood loss. Blood volume returns to prepregnancy values approximately 6 to 9 weeks postpartum.

TABLE 62.1 Changes in the Cardiovascular System During Pregnancy

Cardiovascular Parameter	Value at Term Compared With Nonpregnant Value
Intravascular fluid volume	Increased 35%-45%
Plasma volume	Increased 45%-55%
Erythrocyte volume	Increased 20%-30%
Cardiac output	Increased 40%-50%
Stroke volume	Increased 25%-30%
Heart rate	Increased 15%-25%
Vascular Pressures and Resistances	
Systemic vascular resistance	Decreased 20%
Pulmonary vascular resistance	Decreased 35%
Central venous pressure	No change
Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure	No change
Femoral venous pressure	Increased 15%
Clinical Studies	
Electrocardiography	Heart rate dependent decrease in PR and QT intervals Small QRS axis shift to right (first TM) or left (third TM) ST depression (1 mm) in left precordial and limb leads Isoelectric T-waves in left precordial and limb leads Small Q-wave and inverted T-wave in lead III
Echocardiography	Heart is displaced anteriorly and leftward Right-sided chambers increase in size by 20% Left-sided chambers increase in size by 10%-12% Left ventricular eccentric hypertrophy Ejection fraction increases Mitral, tricuspid, and pulmonic valve annuli increase Aortic annulus not dilated Tricuspid and pulmonic valve regurgitation common Occasional mitral regurgitation (27%) Small insignificant pericardial effusions may be present

TM, Trimester.

Data from references Bucklin BA, Fuller AJ. Physiologic Changes of Pregnancy. In: Sures MS, Segal BS, Preston RL, Fernando R, Mason CL, eds. *Shnider and Levinson's Anesthesia for Obstetrics*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins 2013; Kron J, Conti JB. Arrhythmias in the pregnant patient: current concepts in evaluation and management. *J Interv Card Electrophysiol*. 2007;19:95–107 ; and Conklin KA. Maternal physiologic adaptations during gestation, labor, and puerperium. *Semin Anesth*. 1991;10:221–234.

Cardiac Output

By the end of the first trimester, maternal cardiac output typically increases approximately 35% to 40% above prepregnancy values and continues to increase 40% to 50% by the end of the second trimester.[3-5] Cardiac output remains stable throughout the third trimester. This increased cardiac output is secondary to increases in both stroke volume (25%-30%) and heart rate (15%-25%).[6,7] Labor further increases cardiac output, which fluctuates with each uterine contraction. Increases above prelabor values of 10% to 25% occur during the first stage and 40% in the second stage. The largest increase in cardiac output occurs immediately after delivery, when cardiac output can increase by 80% to 100% more than prelabor values.[8] This abrupt increase is secondary to the autotransfusion of uteroplacental blood as the evacuated uterus contracts, reduced maternal vascular capacitance from loss of the intervillous space, and diminished lower extremity venous pressure from release of the aortocaval compression. This large fluctuation in cardiac output presents a unique postpartum risk for patients with cardiac disease, especially those whose heart cannot accommodate an increase in cardiac output such as those with fixed valvular stenosis or pulmonary vascular hypertension. Cardiac output returns toward prelabor values within 24 hours postpartum depending on the mode of delivery and degree of blood loss.[9] Cardiac output decreases substantially toward prepregnant values by 2 weeks postpartum, with complete return to nonpregnant levels between 12 and 24 weeks after delivery.[10]

Systemic Vascular Resistance

Although cardiac output and plasma volume increase, systemic blood pressure decreases in an uncomplicated pregnancy secondary to a reduction in systemic vascular resistance. Systemic vascular resistance decreases as a result of the vasodilatory effects of progesterone and prostaglandins as well as the low resistance of the uteroplacental vascular bed.[11] Although affected by positioning and parity, systolic, diastolic, and mean blood pressure may all decrease 5% to 20% by 20 weeks gestational age and then gradually increase toward nonpregnant values by term.[12-14] Diastolic arterial blood pressure decreases more than systolic arterial blood pressure resulting in a slight increase in pulse pressure. Central venous and pulmonary capillary wedge pressures do not change during pregnancy,[6] despite the increased plasma volume, because venous capacitance increases.

Aortocaval Compression

Aortocaval compression by the gravid uterus as a result of supine positioning is associated with a decrease in systemic blood pressure. Although the inferior vena cava is compressed in nearly all term parturients,[15] supine hypotension syndrome (also known as aortocaval compression syndrome) is experienced by only 8% to 10% of women.[16] Supine hypotension syndrome is defined as a decrease in mean arterial pressure of more than 15 mm Hg with an increase in heart rate of more than 20 beats/min and is often associated with diaphoresis, nausea, vomiting, and changes in mentation. At term, the inferior vena cava can be almost completely occluded in the supine position with the return of blood from the lower extremities through the epidural, azygos, and vertebral veins that become engorged (Fig. 62.1*A*). Also, significant aortoiliac artery compression occurs in 15% to 20% of pregnant women. Inferior vena caval compression in the supine position causes a decrease in both stroke volume and cardiac output of 10% to 20% in comparison to the upright position (see Fig. 62.1*B*), and may exacerbate venous stasis in the legs and thereby result in ankle edema, varices, and increased risk for lower extremity deep venous thrombosis.

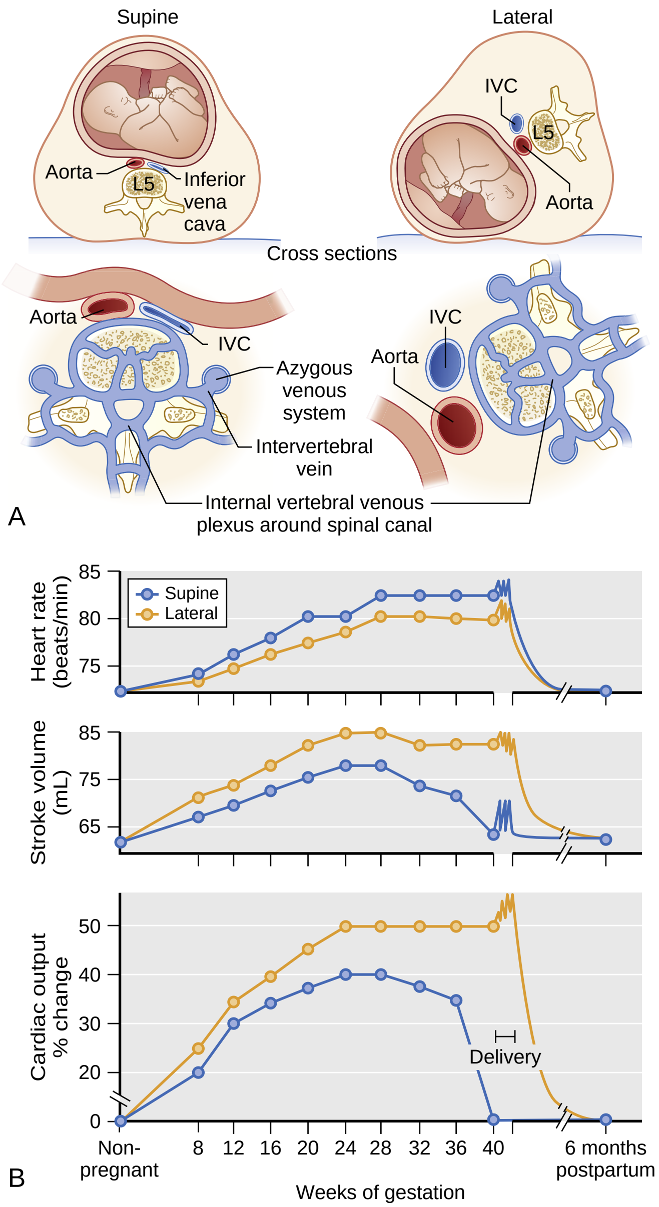


Fig. 62.1 Aortocaval compression. (A) Cross-sectional views of aortocaval compression from the gravid uterus in the supine position with loss of compression in the lateral position. (B) Alterations in heart rate, stroke volume, and cardiac output for both supine and lateral positioning with increasing gestation of pregnancy. *IVC,* Inferior vena cava. (Reprinted with permission from Bonica JJ, ed. *Obstetric Analgesia and Anesthesia*. Amsterdam: World Federation of Societies of Anaesthesiologists; 1980.)

Most pregnant women have compensatory adaptations that reduce supine hypotension symptoms despite aortocaval compression. One compensatory response is a reflexive increase in peripheral sympathetic nervous system activity. This increase in sympathetic activity results in increased systemic vascular resistance and permits arterial blood pressure to be maintained despite the reduced cardiac output. Consequently, the reduced sympathetic tone from neuraxial or general anesthetic techniques impairs the compensatory increase in vascular resistance and exacerbates the impact of hypotension from supine positioning.

Therefore in general, supine positioning is avoided during use of neuraxial techniques for labor analgesia and cesarean deliveries. Reducing the compression of the inferior vena cava and abdominal aorta with left tilt may mitigate the degree of hypotension and help maintain uterine and fetal blood flow. This is accomplished by positioning the patient laterally or by elevating the right hip 10 to 15 cm (with a historical goal of 15 degree left-tilt) with a blanket, wedge, or table tilt.

The practice of left uterine displacement has been challenged recently. In a magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) study of healthy pregnant volunteers, the volume of the inferior vena cava did not differ significantly between the supine position and the 15 degree left-tilt position but when the patients were tilted to the 30 degree left-tilt position, the inferior vena cava volume did increase.[15] Additionally, healthy women undergoing elective cesarean delivery under spinal anesthesia and a phenylephrine infusion were randomized to supine or 15 degree left-tilt position and no difference was found on neonatal acid-base status; however, the supine patients had lower cardiac output and required more phenylephrine.[17] Further studies are needed to investigate who benefits from left uterine displacement and the amount required to achieve the greatest benefit without hindering the surgical procedure. In the meantime, left uterine displacement should continue to be utilized during induction of neuraxial analgesia/anesthesia and during episodes of maternal hypotension or fetal compromise.

RESPIRATORY SYSTEM CHANGES

Pregnancy results in significant alterations in (1) the upper airway, (2) lung volumes and ventilation, and (3) O_2 consumption and metabolic rate (Table 62.2).

TABLE 62.2 Changes in the Respiratory System at Term

Pulmonary Parameter	Value Near Term Compared With Nonpregnant Value
Minute ventilation	Increased 45%-50%
Respiratory rate Tidal volume	Increased 0%-15% Increased 40%-45%
LUNG VOLUMES	
Inspiratory reserve volume	Increased 0%-5%
Tidal volume	Increased 40%-45%
Expiratory reserve volume	Decreased 20%-25%
Residual volume	Decreased 15%-20%
LUNG CAPACITIES	
Vital capacity	No change
Inspiratory capacity	Increased 5%-15%
Functional residual capacity	Decreased 20%
Total lung capacity	Decreased 0%-5%
OXYGEN CONSUMPTION	
Term	Increased 20%-35%
Labor (first stage)	Increased 40% above prelabor value
Labor (second stage)	Increased 75% above prelabor value
RESPIRATORY MEASURES	
FEV_1	No change
FEV_1/FVC	No change
Closing capacity	No change

Data from Conklin KA. Maternal physiologic adaptations during gestation, labor, and puerperium. *Semin Anesth*. 1991;10:221–234.

The Upper Airway

Capillary engorgement with increased tissue friability and edema of the mucosal lining of the oropharynx, larynx, and trachea begins early in the first trimester. As a result, an increased risk for bleeding exists during manipulation of the upper airway, in addition to an increased risk of difficult mask ventilation and intubation of the trachea. Suctioning of the airway and placement of devices should be performed gently to prevent bleeding and nasal instrumentation should be avoided. Furthermore, there is increased risk for airway obstruction during mask ventilation and both laryngoscopy and tracheal intubation are more difficult. Also, after extubation, the airway may be compromised as a result of edema, with subsequent risk for airway obstruction in the immediate recovery period.

Consequently, attempts at laryngoscopy should be minimized and experts recommend a cuffed endotracheal tube with a smaller diameter (6.0-7.0 mm internal diameter)[18,19] should be placed to minimize the chances of difficult placement secondary to airway edema. Airway edema can be more severe in patients with coexisting preeclampsia, in upper respiratory tract infections, and after active pushing as a result of associated increased venous pressure.[20] In addition, pregnancy-associated weight gain and increase in breast tissue, particularly in women of short stature or with coexisting obesity, can make insertion of a laryngoscope difficult. A patient's position should always be optimized and back-up airway instrumentation available before attempts are made at intubation of the trachea. The Obstetric Anaesthetists' Association and Difficult Airway Society guidelines for the management of difficult and failed intubation in obstetrics recommends a videolaryngoscope should be immediately available for all obstetric general anesthetics.[21]

Ventilation and Oxygenation

The increased O_2 demand and carbon dioxide production of the growing placenta and fetus cause minute ventilation to be elevated 45% to 50% more than nonpregnant values in the first trimester and for the remainder of the pregnancy. This larger minute ventilation is attained primarily as a result of a larger tidal volume and a slight increase in respiratory frequency. Maternal $PaCO_2$ decreases from 40 mm Hg to approximately 30 mm Hg during the first trimester as a reflection of the increased minute ventilation. Arterial pH, however, remains only mildly alkalotic (typically 7.42-7.44) because of metabolic compensation with increased renal excretion of bicarbonate ions (HCO_3^- is typically 20 or 21 mEq/L at term). Early in gestation, maternal room air PaO_2 is more than 100 mm Hg because of the presence

TABLE 62.3 Arterial Blood Gas Measurements in Pregnancy

Blood Gas Values	Pregnant	Nonpregnant
PaCO2	30	40
PaO2	103	100
HCO3	20	24
pH	7.44	7.4
P50	30	27

of hyperventilation and the associated decrease in alveolar CO_2. Later, PaO_2 becomes normal or even slightly decreased in the supine position, most likely reflecting small airway closure with normal tidal volume ventilation and intrapulmonary shunt. Arterial oxygenation can be significantly improved by moving the patient from the supine to the lateral position. With pregnancy, the maternal oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve shifts to the right, with the P50 (partial pressure of O_2 at which hemoglobin is 50% saturated with oxygen) increasing from 27 to approximately 30 mm Hg at term.[22] The higher P50 in the mother and lower P50 in the fetus means that the fetal blood has higher affinity for O_2 and offloading of O_2 across the placenta is facilitated. A comparison of arterial blood gas measurements in pregnant versus nonpregnant patients is summarized in Table 62.3.

At term, O_2 consumption is increased by 20% to 35%. During the first stage of labor, O_2 consumption increases above prelabor values by 40% and during the second stage it is increased by 75%. The pain of labor can result in severe hyperventilation causing $PaCO_2$ to occasionally decrease below 20 mm Hg.

Lung Volumes

During pregnancy, tidal volume increases 20% during the first trimester and increases up to 45% above nonpregnant values at term. The expanding uterus forces the diaphragm cephalad and creates a 20% decrease in functional residual capacity (FRC) by term (see Table 62.2).[23] This reduction is comprised of nearly equal reductions in both the expiratory reserve volume (ERV) and residual volume (RV). However, closing capacity (CC) remains unchanged and creates a reduced FRC/CC ratio. This results in more rapid small airway closure with reduced lung volumes, and in the supine position FRC can be less than CC for many small airways, giving rise to atelectasis. Vital capacity does not change with pregnancy. The combination of increased minute ventilation and decreased FRC results in a more rapid rate at which changes in the alveolar concentration of inhaled anesthetics can be achieved. Spirometric measurements of bronchial flow are unchanged in pregnancy.

During induction of general anesthesia, desaturation and subsequent hypoxemia occur more rapidly than in a nonpregnant patient because of decreased O_2 reserve (secondary to decreased FRC) combined with increased O_2 uptake (resulting from increased metabolic rate). Preoxygenation before general anesthesia is critical for patient safety to mitigate these physiologic changes and increase apnea time. Preoxygenation with inhalation of 100% O_2 with a goal of end-tidal oxygen fraction greater than 0.9 is recommended (can usually be obtained with 2-3 minutes of preoxygenation before induction of anesthesia) (see Chapter 44). Although the use of high-flow humidified nasal oxygen has been shown to be as effective as conventional preoxygenation in nonpregnant patients, it has not been shown to achieve acceptable preoxygenation levels in term pregnant women.[24] The increased airway edema makes both ventilation and tracheal intubation more difficult and further increases the potential for complications and morbidity of general anesthesia in pregnancy.

GASTROINTESTINAL CHANGES

After midgestation, the induction of general anesthesia places pregnant women at increased risk for regurgitation, aspiration of gastric contents, and development of acid pneumonitis. The stomach and pylorus are moved cephalad by the gravid uterus, which repositions the intraabdominal portion of the esophagus intrathoracically and decreases the competence of the lower esophageal sphincter muscle. Higher progesterone and estrogen levels of pregnancy further reduce lower esophageal sphincter tone. Gastrin, secreted by the placenta, increases gastric hydrogen ion secretion and lowers the gastric pH in pregnant women. These changes in combination with the increased gastric pressure from the enlarged uterus increase the risk for acid reflux in pregnancy. Maternal gastric reflux with subsequent esophagitis (heartburn) is common in pregnant women and increases with increased gestational age.[25] Gastric emptying is not prolonged in pregnancy.[26] Conversely, gastric emptying is decreased with the onset of labor, pain, anxiety, or administration of opioids. Increased gastric contents can further increase the risk for aspiration. Epidural analgesia using local anesthetics alone does not further delay gastric emptying; however, epidural boluses of fentanyl can cause gastric emptying delay.[27]

All women in labor are considered to have a full stomach and an increased risk for pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents during induction of anesthesia. To reduce this risk, a nonparticulate antacid, a rapid sequence induction of anesthesia technique including cricoid pressure, and endotracheal intubation are considered routine parts of general anesthesia in a pregnant woman past midgestation.

HEPATIC AND BILIARY CHANGES

Blood flow to the liver does not change significantly with pregnancy. The markers of liver function, including aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), and bilirubin, increase to the upper limits of normal with pregnancy. Alkaline phosphatase levels more than double secondary to placental production. Plasma protein concentrations are reduced during pregnancy, and the decreased serum albumin levels can result in elevated free blood levels of highly protein-bound drugs. Plasma cholinesterase (pseudocholinesterase) activity is decreased approximately 25% to 30% from the 10th week of gestation up to 6 weeks postpartum.[28-30] Although neuromuscular transmission should be analyzed before extubation, the clinical consequence of the reduced cholinesterase activity is unlikely to be associated with marked prolongation of the neuromuscular block resulting from succinylcholine.

The risk for gallbladder disease is increased during pregnancy with incomplete gallbladder emptying and changes in bile composition. Acute cholecystitis is the second most common cause of acute abdomen in pregnancy and occurs between 1 in 1600 to 1 in 10,000 pregnancies.[31]

RENAL CHANGES

Renal blood flow and the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) increase during pregnancy. Renal blood flow rises 60% to 80% by midpregnancy and in the third trimester is 50% greater than nonpregnant values. GFR is increased 50% above baseline by the third month of pregnancy and remains elevated until 3 months postpartum.[32] Therefore the clearance of creatinine, urea, and uric acid are increased in pregnancy, and the upper laboratory limits for blood urea nitrogen and serum creatinine concentrations are decreased approximately 50% in pregnant women. Levels of urine protein and glucose are commonly increased as a result of decreased renal tubular resorption capacity. The upper limits of normal in pregnancy in a 24-hour urine collection are 300 mg protein.

HEMATOLOGIC CHANGES

As previously discussed, blood volume increases during pregnancy. At term, the plasma volume has increased approximately 50% above prepregnancy values and the red cell volume has increased only approximately 25%. The greater increase in plasma volume creates a physiologic anemia of pregnancy with a hemoglobin value normally around 11.6 g/dL. Hemoglobin values less than this at any time during pregnancy are concerning for anemia. Overall oxygen delivery is not reduced by the normal physiologic anemia of pregnancy because of the subsequent increase in cardiac output. The additional intravascular fluid volume of approximately 1000 to 1500 mL at term helps compensate for the estimated blood loss of 300 to 500 mL typically associated with vaginal delivery and the estimated blood loss of 800 to 1000 mL that accompanies a standard cesarean delivery. After delivery, contraction of the evacuated uterus creates an autotransfusion of blood often in excess of 500 mL that offsets the blood loss from delivery.

Leukocytosis is common in pregnancy and is unrelated to infection. Leukocytosis is defined as a white blood cell (WBC) count greater than 10,000 WBCs/mm^3 of blood. In pregnancy, the normal range can extend to 13,000 WBCs/mm^3. WBC count may rise in labor with the degree of increase related to the duration of elapsed labor.[33] The WBC count may decrease over the first week postpartum but may take weeks or months to return to nonpregnant values.[34]

Coagulation

Pregnancy is characterized by a hypercoagulable state with a marked increase in factor I (fibrinogen) and factor VII and lesser increases in other coagulation factors (Table 62.4). Factors XI and XIII are decreased, and factors II and V typically remain unchanged. Antithrombin III and protein S are decreased during pregnancy and protein C levels remain unchanged.[35] These changes result in an approximately 20% decrease in prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT) in normal pregnancy. Platelet count may remain normal or slightly decreased (10%) at term as a result of dilution. However, 8% of otherwise healthy women have a platelet count less than 150,000/mm^3.[36] In the absence of other hematologic abnormalities, the cause is usually gestational thrombocytopenia, from which the platelet count does not usually decrease to less than 70,000/mm^3. This syndrome is not associated with abnormal bleeding. Gestational thrombocytopenia is due to a combination of hemodilution and more rapid platelet turnover and is a diagnosis of exclusion. Other more consequential diagnoses such as idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura and hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme, and low platelet count (HELLP) syndrome must be excluded (see section on maternal comorbidities, coagulopathies).

TABLE 62.4 Changes in Coagulation System at Term

PRO-COAGULANT FACTORS	
Increased	I, VII, VIII, IX, X, XII von Willebrand factor
Decreased	XI, XIII
Unchanged	II, V
ANTI-COAGULANT FACTORS	
Increased	None
Decreased	Antithrombin III, Protein S
Unchanged	Protein C
Platelets	Decreased 0%-10%

Thromboelastography (TEG) is a hemostatic assay that measures the kinetics of clot formation and breakdown. It can provide information about clotting variables, including platelet function as well as the function of other coagulation factors (see also Chapter 50). At term gestation, TEG analysis reflects a hypercoagulable state with decreased time to start of clot formation (R), decreased time to specified clot strength (K), increased rate of clot formation (α), and increased clot strength (MA).[37] Although the timing and degree of change in TEG analysis varies with each parameter, many of the changes begin to occur within the first trimester.[38]

NEUROLOGIC CHANGES

Pregnant patients are considered more sensitive to both inhaled and local anesthetics. They have a reduced minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) for inhaled anesthetics. The MAC of a volatile anesthetic is reduced by 40% in animals[39,40] and 28% in humans during the first trimester of pregnancy.[41] However, it appears the decrease in MAC (i.e., immobility in response to volatile anesthetics among 50% of patients) occurs at the level of the spinal cord based on an electroencephalographic study suggesting that anesthetic effects of sevoflurane on the brain are similar in the pregnant and nonpregnant state.[42] The underlying mechanism of reduced MAC in pregnancy remains unclear; it is likely multifactorial, and many postulate progesterone may have a role.

Pregnant women are more sensitive to local anesthetics and neuraxial anesthetic requirements are decreased by 40% by term. At term, the epidural veins are distended and the volume of epidural fat increases, which decreases the size of the epidural space and volume of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) in the subarachnoid space. Although the decreased volume of these spaces facilitates the spread of local anesthetics, the local anesthetic dose requirement is decreased for neuraxial block as early as the first trimester, before significant aortocaval compression or other mechanical- or pressure-related changes occur.[43] Consequently, the increased nerve sensitivity and decrease in local anesthetic dose requirements are likely biochemical in origin.

Uteroplacental Physiology

The placenta is a remarkable organ that undergoes vast changes from a fertilized ovum's initial implantation into the uterine wall until birth. The placenta is composed of both maternal and fetal tissues and is the interface of maternal and fetal circulation systems. It provides a substrate for physiologic exchange between the two systems. The placenta is made up of a basal and a chorionic plate that are separated by the intervillous space. Maternal blood is delivered to the placenta by the uterine arteries and enters the intervillous space via the spiral arteries. It travels toward the chorionic plate, passing fetal villi where exchange takes place, and then drains back to veins in the basal plate and then ultimately away from the uterus via the uterine veins. The fetal blood arrives at the placenta via two umbilical arteries that form umbilical capillaries that cross the chorionic villi. After placental exchange, oxygen-rich, nutrient-rich, and waste-free blood is returned from the placenta to the fetus through a single umbilical vein.

UTERINE BLOOD FLOW

An understanding of uteroplacental blood flow is critical for appropriate clinical care. Uterine blood flow increases progressively during pregnancy from about 100 mL/min in the nonpregnant state to 700 to 900 mL/min (~10% of cardiac output) at term gestation.[44,45] Approximately 80% of the uterine blood flow perfuses the intervillous space (placenta) and the remainder perfuses the myometrium. Uterine blood flow has minimal autoregulation, and the vasculature remains essentially fully dilated during pregnancy. Uterine and placental blood flow depend upon maternal cardiac output and are directly related to uterine perfusion pressure and inversely related to uterine vascular resistance. Decreased perfusion pressure can result from maternal hypotension secondary to multiple causes including hypovolemia from blood loss or dehydration, decreased systemic resistance from general or neuraxial anesthesia, or aortocaval compression. Increased uterine venous pressure from aortocaval compression, frequent or prolonged uterine contractions, or prolonged abdominal musculature contraction with bearing down (Valsalva) during second-stage pushing can decrease uterine perfusion. Additionally, extreme hypocapnia ($PaCO_2 < 20$ mm Hg) occasionally associated with hyperventilation secondary to severe labor pain can reduce uterine blood flow with resultant fetal hypoxemia and acidosis. Neuraxial blockade does not alter uterine blood flow as long as maternal hypotension is avoided but decreases in maternal blood pressure during neuraxial or general anesthesia should be immediately corrected.

Endogenous maternal catecholamines and exogenous vasopressors may cause increasing uterine arterial resistance and decreasing uterine blood flow depending on the class and amount given. In a pregnant ewe model, use of α-adrenergic vasopressors—methoxamine and metaraminol—increased uterine vascular resistance and decreased uterine blood flow, whereas administration of ephedrine did not reduce uterine blood flow despite drug-induced increases in maternal arterial blood pressure.[46] As a result, ephedrine was previously considered the vasopressor of choice for the treatment of hypotension caused by the administration of neuraxial anesthesia to pregnant women. In complete contrast, more recent human trials demonstrate the use of phenylephrine (α-adrenergic agonist) for prophylaxis or treatment of neuraxial-induced hypotension is not only effective in preventing hypotension, but also is associated with less fetal acidosis and base deficit than the use of ephedrine.[47-50] Other methods to reduce maternal hypotension with induction of regional or general anesthesia are discussed in the section on anesthesia for cesarean delivery.

PLACENTAL EXCHANGE

Oxygen Transfer

The delivery of O_2 from the mother to the fetus depends on a variety of factors, including the ratio of maternal to fetal placental blood flow, the O_2 partial pressure gradient between the two circulations, the diffusion capacity of the placenta, the respective maternal and fetal hemoglobin concentrations and O_2 affinities, and the acid-base status of the fetal and maternal blood (Bohr effect). O_2 delivery to the fetus is facilitated primarily because the fetal oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve is to the left (greater O_2 affinity) of the maternal oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve (decreased O_2 affinity). Fetal hemoglobin has a higher O_2 affinity and lower partial pressure at which it is 50% saturated (P50: 18 mm Hg) compared to maternal hemoglobin (P50: 27 mm Hg). Fetal PaO_2 is normally 40 mm Hg and never more than 60 mm Hg, even if the mother is breathing 100% O_2.[51] Animal studies note that in the face of decreased O_2 delivery, fetal O_2 consumption can be maintained with increased O_2 extraction until the maternal O_2 delivery is approximately 50% of its normal state.[52,53] CO_2 easily crosses the placenta and its transfer from the fetus to the mother is limited by blood flow and not diffusion.

Drug Transfer

Maternal-fetal exchange across the placenta occurs by one of four mechanisms: passive diffusion, facilitated diffusion, transporter-mediated mechanisms, and vesicular transport.[54] Most drugs have molecular weights less than 1000 Daltons and, therefore, cross the placenta by diffusion if the drug is not ionized. The rate of diffusion and peak levels in the fetus depend on maternal-to-fetal concentration gradients, maternal protein binding, molecular weight, lipid solubility, and the degree of drug ionization. The maternal blood concentration of a drug is typically the primary determinant of how much drug will ultimately reach the fetus. Nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs are ionized, have a high molecular weight, and poor lipid solubility resulting in minimal placental transfer. Succinylcholine has a low molecular weight but is highly ionized and therefore does not readily cross the placenta unless given in large nonclinical doses. Thus during administration of a general anesthetic for cesarean delivery, the fetus or neonate is not paralyzed. Both heparin and glycopyrrolate have minimal placental transfer because they are highly charged. In contrast, placental transfer of volatile anesthetics, benzodiazepines, local anesthetics, and opioids is facilitated by the relatively low molecular weights of these drugs. Dexmedetomidine may cross the placental barrier but is stored within the placenta and transfer to the fetus is reduced.[55] As a general consideration, drugs that readily cross the blood-brain barrier also readily cross the placenta. Therefore most centrally acting general anesthetics cross the placenta and affect the fetus. There is a paucity of evidence on the placental transfer of newer drugs such as liposomal bupivacaine and sugammadex at this time.

Fetal blood is more acidic than maternal blood, and the lower pH creates an environment in which weakly basic drugs, such as local anesthetics and opioids, cross the placenta as nonionized molecules and become ionized in the fetal circulation. Because this newly ionized molecule has more resistance to diffusion back across the placenta, the drug may accumulate in the fetal circulation and reach levels higher than the maternal blood. This process is referred to as “ion trapping.” During fetal distress (fetal acidemia), higher concentrations of these weakly basic drugs can be trapped.[56] High concentrations of local anesthetics in the fetal circulation decrease neonatal neuromuscular tone. Extremely high levels, such as those associated with unintended maternal intravascular local anesthetic injection, result in a variety of fetal effects, including bradycardia, ventricular arrhythmias, acidosis, and severe cardiac depression. Placental transfer and fetal uptake of specific analgesic and anesthetic drugs are detailed later in the sections that discuss methods of labor analgesia and anesthesia for cesarean delivery.

FETAL CIRCULATION AND PHYSIOLOGY

Fetal blood volume increases throughout gestation. Approximately onethird of the fetal-placental blood volume is contained within the placenta.[57] During the second and third trimester, the fetal blood volume is estimated to be approximately 120 to 160 mL/kg of fetal body weight.[58] Thus the total blood volume of a term normal fetus is approximately 0.5 L. Although fetal liver function is not yet mature, coagulation factors are synthesized independent of the maternal circulation. The serum concentrations of these factors increase with gestational age and do not cross the placenta. However, fetal clot formation in response to tissue injury is decreased in comparison to that in adults.

The anatomy of the fetal circulation helps decrease fetal exposure to potentially high concentrations of drugs in umbilical venous blood. Approximately 75% of umbilical venous blood initially passes through the fetal liver, which may result in significant drug metabolism before the drug reaches the fetal heart and brain (first-pass metabolism). Fetal and neonatal enzymatic drug metabolism activities are lower than those of adults, but most drugs can be metabolized. In addition, drugs entering the fetal inferior vena cava via the ductus venosus, thus bypassing the portal circulation and the liver, are initially diluted by drug-free blood returning from the fetal lower extremities and pelvic viscera. These anatomic characteristics of the fetal circulation add to the complexity of maternal-fetal pharmacokinetics.

Labor Progress

Labor begins with the onset of repetitive uterine contractions that result in the dilation of the cervix, thus permitting passage of the fetus from the uterus through the birth canal. In reality, however, preparation for labor may begin several hours or days before active labor with an inflammatory process mediated by cellular infiltration and release of local cytokines that result in softening of the cervix. The signals that orchestrate the onset of spontaneous labor are not precisely known. However, “labor” is the onset of organized, regular uterine contractions that result in progressive cervical dilation and effacement. When spontaneous labor does not occur at an appropriate time, labor may be induced for fetal or maternal indications with various pharmacologic and physical methods.[59]

Labor is a continuous process separated into first, second, and third stages. The first stage of labor begins with regular, painful uterine contractions and includes the change of the uterine cervix from a thick, closed tube to an opening of approximately 10 cm through which the fetus can be expelled. This stage is further divided into a latent phase and an active phase. The second stage of labor begins when the cervix is fully dilated and ends with the birth of the newborn. The third stage of labor is the delivery of the placenta. The time course of the first stage of labor was first studied by Emanuel Friedman who described a sigmoidal relationship between cervical dilation and time (Fig. 62.2*A*). The sigmoidal nature of the relationship has since been challenged in that little evidence exists for a deceleration phase as the cervix approaches complete dilation (10 cm). However, the separation of the first stage of labor into an early slow phase termed *latent labor* and a more rapid phase of active labor has stood the test of time and advances in modeling techniques.[60,61] To account for the contemporary obstetric population including an older maternal age and increased maternal and fetal body sizes, a new labor curve has been proposed after analysis of 62,415 parturients.[62,63] The main difference of the newly proposed curve is when latent labor is considered to transition to active labor. Traditionally, this transition point was 4-cm dilation. However, the new curve proposes active labor beginning at 6-cm dilation in both multiparous and nulliparous parturients (Fig. 62.2*B*).

Labor may be referred to as “abnormal” on the basis of having abnormally slow latent labor, arrest in the active phase, or arrest of descent (failure of stage 2). Dystocia, or abnormal labor, may be a result of inadequate uterine contractions, mismatch of fetal and pelvic size, or abnormal fetal position. The diagnosis of dystocia is based on deviation from normal values derived from populations; however, significant variability exists among individual laboring women. Various demographic and genetic factors contribute to the variability in labor progress.[60,61,64-67] Multiparity is associated with

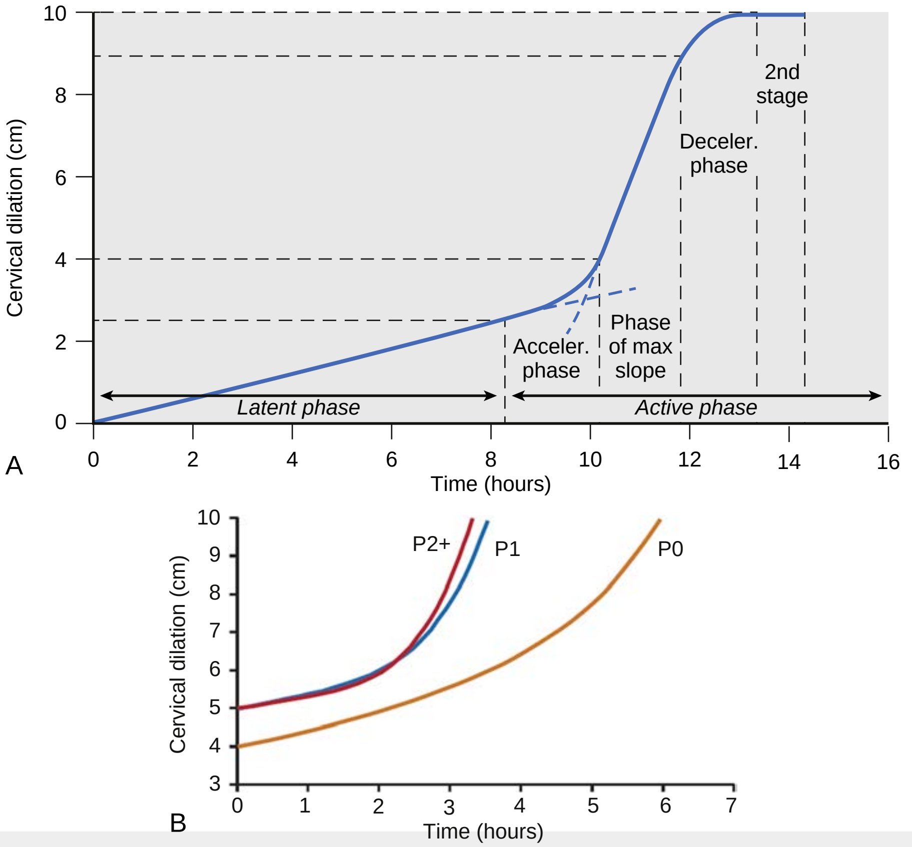


Fig. 62.2 Cervical dilation. (A) Friedman's original sigmoid model of the progress of cervical dilation over time based on an analysis of 500 nulliparas at term. (B) The modern labor curve, which eliminates the deceleration *(Deceler)* phase and changes the threshold for the active phase from 4 to 6 cm. *Acceler,* Acceleration; *P0*, nulliparous women; *P1*, women of parity 1; *P2+*, women of parity 2 or higher. (B) (Legend from Zhang, Fig. 2)Average labor curves by parity in singleton term pregnancies with spontaneous onset of labor, vaginal delivery, and normal neonatal outcomes. (Reproduced with permission from [A] Friedman E. Primigravid labor: a graphicostatistical analysis. *Obstet Gynecol.* 1955;6:567–589; and [B] Zhang J, Landy HJ, Brand DW, et al. Contemporary patterns of spontaneous labor with normal neonatal outcomes. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;116:1281–1287. doi: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e318fdef6e.)

faster labor. Greater maternal weight, older age, and larger fetal size have been associated with slower labor.[60,65,68] Evidence also indicates a hereditary role in labor progress from epidemiologic studies.[69] Specifically, β_2-adrenergic and oxytocin receptor polymorphisms have been implicated in mediating variability in labor progress.[64-66] An abnormally poor response to intrinsic or extrinsic oxytocin may result in abnormal contractility, as would an abnormally strong response to β_2-adrenergic agonists (either exogenous or endogenous) which inhibit contractility.

LABOR AND FETAL MONITORING

Intrapartum fetal monitoring was created to evaluate fetal well-being and detect fetal distress earlier in labor to allow intervention prior to permanent fetal injury. Electronic fetal monitoring (EFM) combines interpretation of fetal heart rate (FHR) monitoring and uterine contraction monitoring. FHR monitoring was developed in the 1960s and its use has been increasing since.[70] There is high interobserver and intraobserver variability of FHR tracing interpretation.[71,72] A meta-analysis comparing EFM to intermittent FHR auscultation noted the use of EFM reduced the risk for neonatal seizures (relative risk [RR]: 0.50), but not the risks for perinatal mortality or cerebral palsy.[73] The use of this monitoring has been shown to increase the rate of both operative and cesarean deliveries.[73,74]

The nomenclature, interpretation, and management principles for FHR monitoring were updated in 2009 by the American Congress of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG).[74] These current guidelines are detailed later, and related terminology is presented in Box 62.1. An understanding of the specific uterine contraction and FHR monitoring terminology as well as the clinical implications is critical for optimal communication during emergent situations among anesthesiologists, obstetricians, midwives, and labor nurses.

CONTRACTION MONITORING

Uterine contractions can be monitored externally with a tocodynamometer or internally with an intrauterine pressure transducer. External monitors only allow determination of contraction frequency, whereas internal monitors also allow quantitative measurement of intrauterine pressure. The Montevideo unit is traditionally used by obstetricians to assess the adequacy of uterine contractions. The Montevideo unit is defined as the intensity of contractions

BOX 62.1 **Fetal Heart Rate Monitoring Pattern Definitions**

Baseline

- The mean FHR rounded to increments of 5 bpm during a 10-min segment, excluding:
    - Periodic or episodic changes
    - Periods of marked FHR variability
    - Segments of baseline that differ by more than 25 bpm
- The baseline must be for a minimum of 2 min in any 10-min segment, or the baseline for that period is indeterminate. In this case, one may refer to the prior 10-min window for determination of baseline.
- Normal FHR baseline: Rate is 110-160 bpm.
- Tachycardia: FHR baseline is greater than 160 bpm.
- Bradycardia: FHR baseline is less than 110 bpm.

Baseline Variability

- Fluctuations occur in the baseline FHR that are irregular in amplitude and frequency.
- Variability is visually quantitated as the amplitude of peak-to-trough in beats per minute.
    - Absent: Amplitude range is undetectable.
    - Minimal: Amplitude range is detectable but 5 bpm or fewer.
    - Moderate (normal): Amplitude range is 6-25 bpm.
    - Marked: Amplitude range is greater than 25 bpm.

Acceleration

- A visually apparent abrupt increase (onset to peak in <30 s) occurs in the FHR.
- At 32 weeks' gestation and beyond, an acceleration has a peak of 15 or more bpm above baseline, with a duration of 15 s or more but less than 2 min from onset to return.
- Before 32 weeks' gestation, an acceleration has a peak of 10 or more bpm above baseline, with a duration of 10 s or more but less than 2 min from onset to return.
- Prolonged acceleration lasts 2 min or more but less than 10 min.
- If an acceleration lasts 10 min or longer, it is a baseline change.

Sinusoidal Pattern

- Visually apparent, smooth, sine wave–like, undulating pattern occurring in FHR baseline, with a cycle frequency of 3-5 cycles/min that persists for 20 min or longer.

bpm, Beats per minute; *FHR,* fetal heart rate.

Data from Macones GA, Hankins GD, Spong CY, et al. The 2008 National Institute of Child Health and Human Development workshop report on electronic fetal monitoring: update on definitions, interpretation, and research guidelines. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2008;112:661–666.

(in millimeters of mercury, as measured with an intrauterine pressure catheter) multiplied by the number of contractions that occur in 10 minutes.

Uterine contractions are quantified over a 10-minute window that is averaged over a 30-minute window with guidelines provided by the ACOG.[74] Normal contractions are defined as five or fewer contractions in 10 minutes, averaged over a 30-minute window. Tachysystole is defined as uterine activity greater than five contractions in 10 minutes, averaged over a 30-minute window. Tachysystole applies to both spontaneous and augmented labor and should always be qualified as to the presence or absence of associated FHR decelerations. Treatment of tachysystole during labor may differ depending on the clinical situation but may include sublingual or intravenous nitroglycerin[75] to briefly relax the uterus, as well as the use of β_2-adrenergic drugs such as terbutaline.

FETAL HEART RATE TRACING

FHR monitoring is most commonly accomplished with a surface Doppler ultrasound transducer (external monitoring), but it may be necessary to apply a fetal scalp electrode to obtain accurate continuous FHR monitoring (internal monitoring). For internal monitoring, a peak or threshold voltage of the fetal R wave from the scalp electrode is used to measure FHR. Of note, a fetal scalp electrode can be placed only if the cervix is minimally dilated and the membranes are ruptured. The FHR pattern changes in response to fetal asphyxia from activation of peripheral and central chemoreceptors and baroreceptors.[76] It also shows changes as a result of various fetal brain metabolic changes that occur with asphyxia.[76] These changes in the FHR produce specific patterns and characteristics that provide an evaluation of the fetal state.

The FHR tracing is used as a nonspecific reflection of fetal acidosis. It should be interpreted over a time course in relation to the clinical context and other known maternal and fetal comorbidities, because multiple factors other than fetal acidosis can influence the FHR tracing. Box 62.1 defines FHR baseline, variability, and accelerations. A normal baseline FHR ranges from 110 to 160 bpm. FHR variability are fluctuations in the baseline FHR that are irregular in frequency and amplitude. Normal FHR variability predicts early neonatal health and a fetal central nervous system that is normally interacting with the fetal heart. Accelerations are abrupt changes in the FHR above baseline and are defined by gestational age of the fetus.

Fig. 62.3 details FHR tracing deceleration characteristics. Late decelerations are a result of uteroplacental insufficiency causing relative fetal brain hypoxia during a contraction. The resulting sympathetic outflow elevates the fetal blood pressure and activates the fetal baroreceptors and an associated slowing in the FHR. A second type of late deceleration is from myocardial depression in the presence of increasing hypoxia.[77] Therefore late decelerations are considered worrisome. On the other hand, early decelerations are considered benign and tend to mirror the uterine contraction and are believed to be in response to vagal stimuli, which are often the result of fetal head compression. Variable decelerations are associated with umbilical cord compression. A sinusoidal FHR pattern is associated with fetal anemia and is considered ominous.[78] In general, minimal-to-undetectable FHR variability in the presence of variable or late decelerations is associated with fetal acidosis.[79] Prolonged decelerations (<70 beats/min for >60 seconds) are associated with fetal acidemia and are extremely ominous, particularly with the absence of variability.[80]

FETAL HEART RATE CATEGORIES

A three-tiered FHR category classification system is currently recommended for fetal assessment with the specific criteria for each category outlined in Box 62.2.[74,78] This

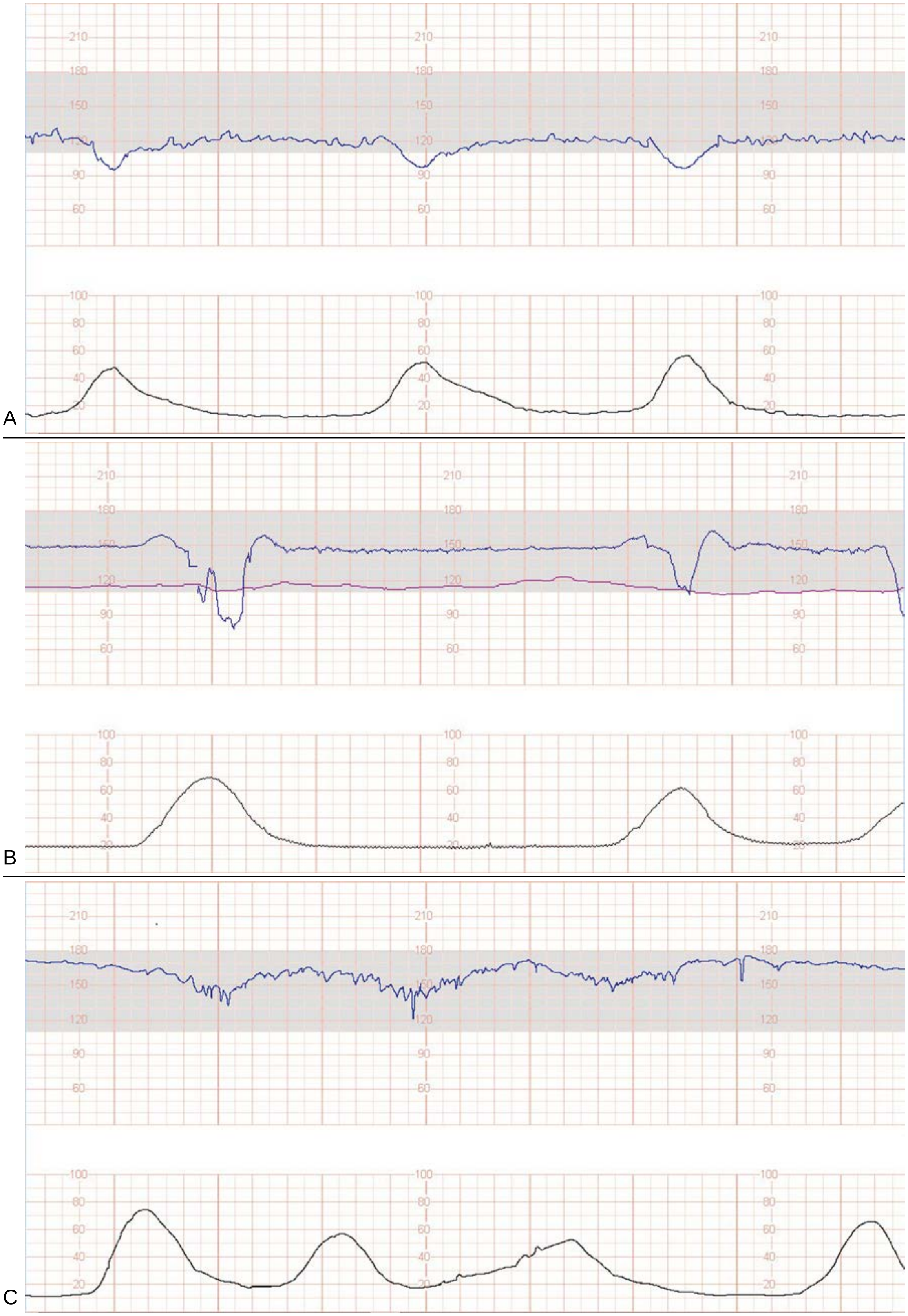


Fig. 62.3 Fetal heart rate deceleration. (A) Early deceleration: visually apparent, usually symmetric gradual decrease and return of the fetal heart rate (FHR) with the nadir of the deceleration occurring at the same time as the peak of the contraction. (B) Variable decelerations: visually apparent, abrupt decrease in FHR ≥15 seconds and <2 minutes. The relationship of the onset of the deceleration compared to the contraction is variable as is the depth and duration. (C) Late FHR decelerations: visually apparent, usually symmetric gradual decrease and return of the FHR during which the nadir of the deceleration occurs after the peak of the contraction.

BOX 62.2 Three-Tier Fetal Heart Rate Interpretation System

Category I

Category I FHR tracings include all of the following:
- Baseline rate of 110-160 beats/min
- Moderate baseline FHR variability
- Late or variable decelerations are absent
- Accelerations and early decelerations may be present or absent

Category II

Category II FHR tracings include all FHR tracings not categorized as Category I or III. Category II FHR tracings may include any of the following:
- Baseline rate:
  - Bradycardia not accompanied by absent baseline variability
  - Tachycardia
- Baseline FHR variability
  - Minimal baseline variability
  - Absent baseline variability with no recurrent decelerations
  - Marked baseline variability
- Accelerations
  - Absence of induced accelerations after fetal stimulation
- Periodic or episodic decelerations
  - Recurrent variable decelerations accompanied by minimal or moderate baseline variability
  - Prolonged deceleration ≥2 min but <10 min
  - Recurrent late decelerations with moderate baseline variability
  - Variable decelerations with slow return to baseline, "overshoots," or "shoulders"

Category III

Category III FHR tracings include either:
- Absent baseline FHR variability plus any of the following:
  - Recurrent late decelerations
  - Recurrent variable decelerations
  - Bradycardia
- Sinusoidal pattern

FHR, Fetal heart rate.

Data from Macones GA, Hankins GD, Spong CY, et al. The 2008 National Institute of Child Health and Human Development workshop report on electronic fetal monitoring: update on definitions, interpretation, and research guidelines. *Obstet Gynecol.* 2008;112:661–666.

system evaluates the fetus for the given moment of the assessment. The fetal condition may move back and forth among the categories over time. Specific terminology used for categorization is defined in Box 62.1.

Category I FHR tracings are considered normal and are predictive of a normal fetal acid-base state at the time of observation, and no specific management is required.

Category II FHR tracings are considered indeterminate and include all tracings not in categories I or III. Category II tracings are not predictive of abnormal fetal acid-base status and require continued monitoring and reevaluation with consideration for the entire clinical picture. In some cases, additional tests may be obtained or intrauterine resuscitative measures taken to improve the fetal condition.

Category III FHR tracings are considered abnormal and are associated with an abnormal fetal acid-base state at the time of observation. These tracings require prompt patient evaluation and efforts to improve the fetal condition. These interventions may include intrauterine resuscitation with change in maternal position, discontinuation of labor augmentation, treatment of maternal hypotension with fluids and/or vasopressor administration, use of supplemental O_2, and/or administration of a tocolytic agent such as terbutaline. If the FHR tracing does not improve, expeditious delivery should occur which may involve an assisted vaginal (forceps or vacuum) delivery or a cesarean delivery.

Labor Analgesia

Childbirth is a pinnacle event in a family's life that is surrounded by many beliefs and traditions, some of which are founded in science and others more historical, cultural, personal, or even spiritual. In this context, several nonpharmacologic techniques have been used to relieve the pain of childbirth throughout history, including acupuncture,[81] massage,[82,83] and hypnosis.[84] Drugs were not used in Western medicine to relieve pain in childbirth until the mid-1800s, most famously when the English Queen Victoria chose to inhale chloroform for analgesia during the birth of Prince Leopold.[85]

For most women, labor is intensely painful. However, the time course of pain intensity is highly variable, dynamic, and unpredictable. Some women will experience severe pain only just before and during the second stage of labor, whereas others will report severe pain from their first contraction. Rarely do women experience a pain-free labor and give birth unexpectedly under inopportune conditions.[86] The source of these differences in labor pain is not completely known but may be in part genetic. In one study, Asian women reported more pain in labor than women of other ethnic backgrounds.[60] This association was also found with a single nucleotide polymorphism in the β_2-adrenergic gene.[65] Other factors may include parity; maternal pelvic size and shape; fetal size and presentation; maternal anxiety, pain tolerance, and other psychological variables; the presence of maternal social and psychological support during labor; induction of labor; and whether contractions are augmented.

NONPHARMACOLOGIC LABOR PAIN MANAGEMENT

Many patients prefer to use nonpharmacologic methods of pain management during all or part of labor. Acupuncture can be effective in treating postoperative pain after cesarean delivery,[87] but it is not as effective for analgesia during labor. A systematic review and meta-analysis of acupuncture for pain relief in labor involving 10 randomized controlled trials (n = 2038) found that acupuncture was not superior to sham acupuncture (superficial needling lateral to an actual acupuncture point) at 1 and 2 hours.[88] Unfortunately, most of the trials were not properly blinded, increasing the likelihood of bias.

Several trials have found a reduction in pain and anxiety during the first stage of labor with the use of massage. A Cochrane review on massage in labor identified seven randomized trials of massage, six of which were judged to have low or unclear risk for bias.[83] During the first stage of labor, pain was reduced in the massage group by −0.98 (confidence interval [CI], 1.17-0.47) on a 10-point pain scale. No difference was found in the use of pharmacologic pain relief between groups or in pain reported during the second and third stages of labor. Of note, one study of 60 women found that massage decreased anxiety.[89]

Hypnosis has been used both as a relaxation technique and for management of pain during labor. When hypnosis was compared with standard care, no evidence was found that pain was less with the use of hypnosis, nor was evidence found for a difference in satisfaction with pain relief.[83] A Cochrane review of 9 trials randomizing 2954 women found women in the hypnosis group were less likely to use pharmacologic pain relief compared to those in the control groups. There were no clear differences for satisfaction, spontaneous vaginal birth, and postpartum depression between the two groups.[90]

Other nonpharmacologic techniques include the breathing techniques described by Lamaze, the LeBoyer technique, the Bradley method, transcutaneous nerve stimulation, hydrotherapy, presence of a support person, intradermal water injections, and biofeedback. A retrospective national survey of women's childbearing experiences in the United States found that although neuraxial methods of pain relief were considered the most helpful and effective, nonpharmacologic methods of hydrotherapy and massage were rated more or equally helpful in relieving pain compared with the use of intravenous opioids.[91] Although many nonpharmacologic techniques seem to reduce the perception of labor pain, most published studies lack the rigorous scientific methodology for useful comparison of these techniques to pharmacologic methods.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR PHARMACOLOGIC TREATMENT OF PAIN IN LABOR

Preprocedural assessment by an anesthesia provider should be performed for any candidate for neuraxial labor analgesia. Clinical assessment should be considered for all patients admitted to a labor and delivery floor not only to discuss labor analgesia options prior to excruciating pain, but also to assess the patient for comorbid conditions that could complicate labor, obstetric procedures, or anesthesia. The obstetric anesthesia team should be prepared to care for all admitted patients in the event of an obstetric emergency. In otherwise healthy women, laboratory testing is not required during a routine preprocedural obstetric assessment.[92]

Although any laboring woman has the potential to require cesarean delivery, labor takes many hours and requires adequate nutrition and hydration. While balancing these two considerations, the ASA has recommended that moderate amounts of clear liquids be allowed during the administration of neuraxial analgesia and throughout labor. A period of abstention from solids before the placement of neuraxial analgesia is not required. However, the ASA does recommend the ingestion of solid foods be avoided in laboring patients.[92]

SYSTEMIC MEDICATIONS

Opioids can be used for labor analgesia. They are inexpensive, widely available, and can be administered intramuscularly without the need for intravenous access. Although there are differences among opioids, they all cross the placenta and can have fetal effects including dose-related respiratory depression and decreased FHR variability.

Although meperidine was once the most commonly used long-acting opioid in obstetric practice,[93] it is the most likely to result in side effects. Meperidine is typically administered intravenously in doses of up to 50 mg or intramuscularly in doses ranging from 50 to 100 mg. Maternal half-life of meperidine is 2.5 to 3 hours whereas the half-life for its active metabolite normeperidine is 13 to 23 hours. The half-life of both is up to three times longer in the fetus and newborn. Normeperidine can accumulate with repeated doses and can be neurotoxic. With increased dosing and shorter intervals between doses and delivery, risk to the newborn is increased, including lower Apgar scores and prolonged time to sustained neonatal respiration.[94]

Morphine is rarely used for labor pain. Like meperidine it has an active metabolite (morphine-6-glucuronide) with a half-life that is longer in neonates than in adults, and it produces significant maternal sedation. Obstetricians may use intramuscular morphine for analgesia, sedation, and rest. This produces analgesia with an onset of 10 to 20 minutes and is used most commonly in latent labor. Maternal side effects may include respiratory depression and histamine release resulting in pruritus and rash.

Mixed agonist-antagonist opioid analgesics such as nalbuphine and butorphanol are utilized to treat labor pain. Nalbuphine has similar analgesic potency as morphine. It is given either intravenously, intramuscularly, or by subcutaneous injection at doses of 10 to 20 mg every 4 to 6 hours. Butorphanol is five times as potent as morphine and 40 times more potent than meperidine. A dose of 1 to 2 mg intravenously or intramuscularly is commonly used for labor analgesia. Both medications are often well tolerated by the parturient.

Fentanyl and, more recently, remifentanil have become popular systemic opioid analgesics over the past two decades. Fentanyl is a synthetic opioid that is highly lipid-soluble and has a short duration and no active metabolites. When given in small IV doses of 50 to 100 μg/h, no significant differences are seen in neonatal Apgar scores and respiratory effort compared with those in newborns of mothers not receiving fentanyl.[95] Fentanyl is also commonly used in patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) during labor. Common doses utilized for fentanyl PCA include a bolus dose of 10 to 25 μg with a lockout interval of 5 to 12 minutes. High doses of systemic fentanyl, especially immediately prior to birth, could result in neonatal depression.

Remifentanil PCA may offer superior pain relief and lesser fetal effects than other intravenous opioid analgesics but its analgesic effects are inferior to epidural labor analgesia and it requires careful maternal oxygenation and ventilation monitoring. The metabolism of remifentanil depends completely on tissue and plasma esterases, which are fully mature in the fetus. Further, it is more rapidly metabolized in the placenta (by placental esterases) than in the maternal plasma and thus the fetal-to-maternal ratio is small. In the pregnant ewe model, the maternal-to-fetal ratio of remifentanil is approximately tenfold,[96] and the ratio was similar in human studies.[97] Because of these characteristics, more remifentanil can be administered to the mother at times close to delivery than would be considered safe for longer-acting opioids that rely on slower metabolism by the liver. Remifentanil is more effective than long-acting opioids[93]; however, the improvement in pain relief may be because comparatively larger doses of remifentanil were given.[98]

Although remifentanil may be superior to longer acting systemic opioids, it is inferior to epidural labor analgesia. A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials comparing remifentanil PCA and epidural analgesia found that parturients with remifentanil PCA had higher pain scores at one hour than those who received epidural analgesia.[99] The incidence of pruritus, nausea, and vomiting were not statistically different between the two groups; however, the confidence intervals were wide. A subsequent meta-analysis confirmed that women were less satisfied when receiving remifentanil PCA compared to women in the epidural group but more satisfied than women receiving other parenteral opioids.[100] The major risk of remifentanil in labor is maternal respiratory depression. Careful surveillance is required to ensure adequate oxygenation and ventilation throughout treatment and for this reason, some practices choose not to offer remifentanil PCA labor analgesia.

INHALED ANALGESIA

While volatile anesthetics are no longer used for labor analgesia, nitrous oxide (N_2O) is commonly used worldwide. Typically, it is blended with O_2 in a 50:50 ratio for patient-inhaled self-administration just before and during contractions. A systematic review evaluating N_2O for labor analgesia found that epidural analgesia provided more effective pain relief than N_2O but most studies were of poor quality.[101,102] Some studies have demonstrated moderate analgesia in response to inhaled N_2O (pain scores of 8 in 10 reduced to 6 in 10),[103] whereas others have shown no difference in visual analogue pain scores.[104] Paradoxically, in this negative study, many women wished to continue using nitrous labor analgesia after the study period. Overall, although patients are *less likely* to report excellent pain control with N_2O, they were *as likely* to express satisfaction with their anesthesia care.[102] Therefore although it is less efficacious than neuraxial analgesia, it provides an alternative to patients who desire a less invasive analgesic approach as well as those who have a contraindication for neuraxial analgesia. Without the coadministration of opioids, the use of 50% N_2O in O_2 is safe and does not result in hypoxia or unconsciousness.[105]

NEURAXIAL ANALGESIA

Neuraxial analgesia is the most reliable and effective method of reducing pain during labor.[91] A large meta-analysis found epidural analgesia offered better pain relief compared with placebo (median pain scale reduction 3.4 in 10, 95% CI, 1.3-5.4) and reduced the need for additional pain medication.[106] Analgesia is given most commonly by epidural, spinal, combined spinal-epidural (CSE), or dural puncture epidural (DPE). These techniques provide superior analgesia to alternative approaches and are safe.

Neuraxial Analgesia and Progress of Labor

Considerable controversy has been generated regarding the effects of neuraxial analgesia on the progress of labor. Observational studies have suggested that epidural analgesia is associated with slower labor progress as well as higher cesarean delivery rates.[65,107] Confounding variables are likely responsible for this association. For example, patients who have dysfunctional labor (which are at higher risk to proceed to cesarean delivery) would have more exposure to severe pain, would be more likely to request epidural analgesia, and more likely to request it earlier. Before-and-after studies and multiple prospective, randomized controlled trials have found no association between epidural labor analgesia and cesarean delivery. In fact, a 2011 Cochrane review of 38 studies involving 9658 women comparing epidural versus nonepidural analgesia in labor found no difference in the risk for cesarean delivery.[101] Large prospective studies in which patients were randomly assigned to early or late neuraxial anesthesia have invariably concluded that earlier neuraxial labor analgesia does not affect the length of the first stage of labor or increase the risk for cesarean delivery.[108-112] In contrast, several prospective trials and a meta-analysis suggest that neuraxial anesthesia may cause a modest prolongation of the second stage of labor by approximately 15 minutes.[106,113,114] Increase in the duration of the second stage may occur because dense motor blockade could impede coordinated pushing. Local anesthetic dosing is sometimes reduced in the second stage if the blockade is too dense to allow for coordinated expulsion efforts. However, a recent double-blind trial randomized 400 women with an epidural to either saline or local anesthetic at the onset of the second stage of labor and found no difference in length.[115]

Epidural labor analgesia may offer maternal benefits during the second stage. When labor is comfortable, tolerance for a longer second stage may allow uterine contractions to lower the fetal station before active pushing efforts begin, a technique sometimes called “laboring down.”[116] A large randomized clinical trial of term nulliparous women receiving neuraxial analgesia found no difference in the rate of spontaneous vaginal delivery if they delayed pushing or immediately started pushing at the onset of the second stage.[117] This technique may allow women a less strenuous delivery and can be employed for women with significant comorbid cardiac or vascular conditions to limit the hemodynamic effects of repetitive Valsalva maneuvers. Further, epidural labor analgesia may protect the perineum from injury during delivery by allowing a more controlled expulsion of the fetus that allows for stretching (instead of tearing) of tissues.[118]

Timing of Placement

The optimal timing for the placement of a neuraxial anesthetic has been extensively studied. In 2011, a meta-analysis including prospective, randomized trials was conducted to test if the placement of neuraxial analgesia during the early first stage of labor was associated with a prolonged first stage of labor.[119] Six studies of 15,399 parturients compared placement of neuraxial analgesia at 3-cm cervical dilation or less to placement in active labor.

No increase in the incidence of cesarean delivery was found in the early epidural group nor was the first stage of labor prolonged. Thus if a parturient chooses neuraxial analgesia, there is no point during the first stage of labor that is "too early" to initiate epidural analgesia. Current ASA guidelines note that maternal request for labor pain relief is sufficient justification for epidural initiation and the timing should not depend on an arbitrary cervical dilation.[92]

Epidural Analgesia

Lumbar epidural analgesia offers a safe and effective method of pain relief during labor and is the mainstay of labor analgesia. Epidural analgesia is most commonly initiated after placement of a catheter into the epidural space between L2-3 and L4-5 (see Chapter 45). The analgesia technique is versatile and the block may be made denser and prolonged if operative delivery is required. Typically, a combination of low-dose local anesthetic and opioid are administered to provide continuous sensory block during labor. Benefits of epidural analgesia include decreased maternal catecholamines, effective pain relief, increased patient satisfaction, and the ability to quickly achieve surgical anesthesia for an emergency cesarean delivery.

Prevention of accidental intravascular or intrathecal local anesthetic administration is paramount in the safety of epidural techniques. Initial dosing of local anesthetic through the needle within the epidural space is not recommended because of potential unintended intravascular or intrathecal placement that would result in local anesthetic systemic toxicity or total spinal. Further, most anesthesia providers "test dose" the epidural catheter after placement to assess for intravascular or intrathecal placement.[120] A test dose may consist of a small dose of local anesthetic that would induce an altered sensorium (dizziness, buzzing in the ears, or numbness in the lips) if injected intravascularly but would not cause harm. Likewise, if this small dose were injected into the intrathecal space, it would cause numbness and motor block in the lower extremities but not a high spinal block. Some clinicians favor inclusion of a small dose of epinephrine in the test dose so that if the placement were intravascular, a slight tachycardic and/or hypertensive response would ensue. Overall, even with test dosing, unidentified intravascular or intrathecal catheter placement is possible. This risk can be mitigated by dosing slowly, aspirating the catheter intermittently throughout the injection process, watching for CSF or blood return in the aspirated catheter, and vigilance for rapid and unexpected changes in vital signs, central nervous system (CNS) symptoms, or motor block throughout the dosing process.

Spinal Analgesia

Intrathecal analgesia for labor can be administered as a single dose or as a continuous infusion. A single injection of opioid combined with a small dose of local anesthetic in the subarachnoid space is quick to perform, provides rapid analgesia, and dissipates when no longer needed. A single spinal injection for labor analgesia can be utilized in a parturient who is unable to hold still to facilitate placement of an epidural but is usually reserved for when the duration of labor can be reasonably estimated, such as in multiparous parturients with advanced dilation or in the second stage of labor. Continuous spinal analgesia with a spinal catheter can be considered in the case of accidental dural puncture or in the high-risk parturient. The high incidence of postdural puncture headache (PDPH) precludes the elective placement of spinal catheters through epidural needles in most patients. A catheter-over-needle system provides the option for a 23-gauge intrathecal catheter placed over a 27-gauge pencil-point spinal needle. Although theoretically this should decrease the rate of PDPH, a recent series of five cases reported two cases of PDPH.[121] When utilized, continuous spinal analgesia provides excellent analgesia and can be quickly converted to surgical anesthesia if necessary.

Combined Spinal-Epidural Analgesia

The CSE has become increasingly popular in obstetric anesthesia practice. It provides effective, rapid onset of analgesia with minimal motor blockade. It is most commonly placed utilizing the "needle-through-needle" technique, which involves identification of the epidural space through a loss-of-resistance technique followed by insertion of a long, pencil-point spinal needle (25-27 gauge) into the intrathecal space. After free-flow of CSF is confirmed, an opioid, local anesthetic, or both, is injected. The spinal needle is removed and a catheter is threaded into the epidural space. A large systematic review of 27 trials involving 3275 women found CSE had a faster onset of analgesia and was less likely to need additional epidural boluses. There was no difference between CSE and traditional epidural in terms of incidence of PDPH or rate of cesarean delivery.[122] In one large retrospective review, the incidences of overall failure, inadequate analgesia, and catheter placement were lower in parturients receiving CSE compared to epidural.[123] Disadvantages of CSE include the inability to assess the effectiveness of the epidural catheter until the spinal medication has subsided; however, one study not only found that CSE had lower epidural catheter failures (6.6% vs. 1.6%; $P = .001$) but more failed catheters with CSE (48.4%) than with an epidural (30.6%) were recognized within 30 minutes of placement ($P = .009$).[124]

Dural Puncture Epidural

An emerging technique in labor analgesia is the DPE. After the epidural space is located with the epidural needle, a pencil-point spinal needle is inserted utilizing the "needle-through-needle" technique and the dura is punctured. A 25- or 26-gauge spinal needle is usually used because a DPE placed by a 27-gauge needle was shown to offer no benefit in a single study.[125] No medication is directly introduced into the intrathecal space but the dural puncture may facilitate the intrathecal migration of medication administered into the epidural space. DPE has been associated with a decreased median time to adequate analgesia after block placement.[126] One study found improved block quality (measured by the number of physician administered *top-up* boluses) and a lesser incidence of asymmetric block in the DPE compared to the epidural group,[127] while another study did not observe this difference.[126] More studies are needed to fully understand the role of the DPE in the neuraxial labor analgesia armamentarium.

Neuraxial Analgesic Medications

Any preservative-free local anesthetic can be used in an epidural catheter. A perfect labor analgesic recipe provides excellent analgesia without motor blockade or other maternal or fetal effects. Low concentrations of local anesthetics (alone or in combination with opioids) are used to maximize sensory blockade and minimize motor blockade and maternal hypotension from sympathetic blockade. Most commonly, bupivacaine (0.0625%-0.125%) and ropivacaine (0.0625%-0.2%) are used because the ratio of sensory to motor blockade is greater than that for lidocaine or 2-chloroprocaine. Ropivacaine and levobupivacaine were synthesized to reduce cardiotoxicity that occurs with inadvertent intravascular bolus doses of bupivacaine. However, with the dilute concentrations of local anesthetic currently used for labor analgesia, cardiotoxicity is uncommon.

The addition of fentanyl to bupivacaine has been shown to reduce local anesthetic requirements while still providing similar pain relief.[128,129] Therefore lipid-soluble opioids, fentanyl 1 to 3 μg/mL, or sufentanil 0.1 to 0.5 μg/mL, are typically added to local anesthetic labor epidural mixtures to reduce total local anesthetic administration and thereby reduce motor blockade while preserving analgesia and enhancing maternal satisfaction.[130] Of note, opioid-only epidural regimens do not provide adequate analgesia without unacceptable side effects. The most troublesome complication that limits the dose of epidural fentanyl and sufentanil is pruritus.

The search for the perfect labor epidural drug combination has led to the use of other adjuvant drugs that can reduce the dose of required local anesthetic. Most of these drugs act through activation of adrenergic receptors. Epinephrine is a nonselective adrenergic agonist activating α_1-, α_2-, β_1-, and β_2-adrenergic receptors. Activation of α_1-receptors in the epidural vasculature causes vasoconstriction that delays the vascular uptake of local anesthetic and opioid.[131] Additional analgesia is likely provided by epinephrine through activation of α_2-adrenergic receptors.[132] The dose of epidural epinephrine in labor epidural mixtures is typically dilute (1:400,000-1:800,000) secondary to concerns for uterine artery vasoconstriction by the systemic effects of higher doses. Intrathecal or epidural neostigmine produces analgesia by increasing acetylcholine stimulation of spinal muscarinic and nicotinic receptors.[133-135] Intrathecal neostigmine, however, caused an unacceptable incidence of nausea and vomiting and continued clinical development was abandoned.[133] However, epidural neostigmine has been shown to reduce local anesthetic requirements without nausea and vomiting. A randomized controlled trial compared bupivacaine use in laboring patients when neostigmine versus fentanyl was added and found no difference in bupivacaine requirements.[136]

Clonidine is a relatively selective α_2-adrenergic antagonist that when added to dilute local anesthetic solution provides adjuvant analgesia.[137,138] Although clearly effective for labor analgesia, within the United States epidural clonidine carries a US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) warning that states it is "not recommended for obstetrical, postpartum, or perioperative pain management as the risk of hemodynamic instability (e.g., hypotension, bradycardia) may be unacceptable in this population." Monitoring recommendations related to this statement declare that in "a rare obstetrical, postpartum, or perioperative patient, potential benefits may outweigh possible risks." Dexmedetomidine is a highly selective α_2-adrenergic receptor agonist that is not approved for neuraxial use in the United States.[139] However, when used in combination with epidural bupivacaine or ropivacaine it has been found to be an efficacious adjunct for labor analgesia.[140,141]

Administration Techniques

Epidural analgesia can be administered by continuous infusion, patient-controlled epidural analgesia (PCEA), or programmed intermittent epidural bolus (PIEB). The continuous infusion is commonly utilized because it allows the maintenance of a steady anesthesia level without frequent, time-consuming manual boluses by the anesthesia provider. PCEA allows the patient to self-deliver a dose through the epidural catheter with the use of a pump that limits the maximum drug dose per hour to prevent toxicity. PCEA can be used alone or in combination with a continuous infusion or PIEB. PCEA results in reduced local anesthetic use and decreased motor blockade.[142] PIEB utilizes a pump that gives automated boluses at a fast rate at set intervals instead of a slow continuous infusion. Theoretically, the PIEB function allows for greater, more uniform spread of the epidural infusion thus reducing unilateral blocks, areas of block sparing, and total amounts of local anesthetic required for analgesia. Early studies indicate that this pump function may, in fact, offer such benefits.[143-145]

Contraindications of Neuraxial Anesthesia

Contraindications to the placement of a neuraxial procedure include patient refusal, coagulopathy, infection at the site of needle insertion, uncorrected hypovolemic shock, increased intracranial pressure from mass effect, and inadequate resources or expertise. Relative contraindications may include systemic infection, preexisting neurologic disease, severe cardiac valvular stenosis, and pharmacologic anticoagulation. The decision to place neuraxial anesthesia should be individualized for the patient and the risks and benefits should be considered.

OTHER REGIONAL NERVE BLOCKS

Local anesthetic nerve blocks have been used for many years to relieve labor pain, mostly by obstetricians.[146] For a paracervical block, local anesthetic is injected lateral to the cervix at 4 o'clock and 10 o'clock, taking care to avoid vascular structures. It controls pain of the first stage of labor only and is more effective than placebo or intramuscular meperidine.[147] No difference was found in pain relief comparing paracervical block to PCA with intravenous fentanyl.[148] Paracervical block can be complicated by injection of local anesthetic into the presenting fetal head, which can have devastating consequences. More commonly, side effects of transient fetal bradycardia and maternal local anesthetic toxicity have been reported.[149-151] Therefore for the delivery of a viable fetus, obstetricians in the United States avoid this procedure. The technique of paracervical block is still used in intrauterine fetal demise labor analgesia, dilation and curettage, and dilation and evacuation procedures. It has become safer with more superficial injection ensured by a needle guide and more dilute solutions of local anesthetic.

The pudendal nerve is derived from sacral nerve roots (S2-S4) and can be blocked with local anesthetic using a transvaginal or transperitoneal approach to treat pain during the second stage of labor and for episiotomy repair. Although a pudendal nerve block provides some relief during second stage, it is not as effective as a subarachnoid block with fentanyl and bupivacaine.[152] A pudendal block can impede the urge to push during the second stage of labor.[153] Other complications include a high rate of block failure; systemic local anesthetic toxicity; ischiorectal or vaginal hematoma; and, rarely, fetal injection of local anesthetic.

Anesthesia Considerations for Operative Delivery

Low-dose epidural analgesia can be inadequate for assisted vaginal delivery with forceps or vacuum. In this setting, a higher concentration local anesthetic can be administered through an indwelling epidural catheter. Supplementation of an indwelling epidural catheter with 5 to 10 mL of 1% to 2% lidocaine or 2% to 3% 2-chloroprocaine is usually adequate, depending on whether vacuum or forceps are being used. Pudendal nerve block also can be considered for operative delivery. Consideration could be given to a CSE approach instead of a single injection "second stage spinal" in the event that the operative vaginal delivery fails and cesarean delivery is subsequently required.

Anesthesia for Cesarean Delivery

MATERNAL RISKS AND CONSIDERATIONS

Cesarean delivery rates in the United States increased by 50% between 1998 and 2016, rising from 22% to 32% of all births.[154,155] Common indications for cesarean delivery include fetal malpresentation, nonreassuring fetal status, labor dystocia, and prior cesarean delivery. Although maternal mortality substantially decreased during the first half of the twentieth century, the maternal mortality ratio has not declined in over 25 years and appears to have recently been increasing in the United States.[156] Of interest, the incidence of maternal mortality is 10 times higher in women who underwent cesarean delivery versus vaginal delivery, based on a retrospective study of 1.5 million deliveries between 2000 and 2006.[157]

Pregnant women who undergo general anesthesia for cesarean delivery are at increased risk of pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents, failed intubation of the trachea, or inadequate postoperative ventilation compared with those under neuraxial blockade, particularly in emergent situations. However, it appears that the risks associated with general anesthesia have decreased significantly over time to the point where it is difficult to say that avoiding general anesthesia prevents maternal mortality. Data in the United States from 1979 to 1990 noted a risk ratio of 16.7 for mortality with general anesthesia for cesarean delivery compared with neuraxial blockade,[158] whereas between 1997 to 2002, the risk ratio was not significantly greater with general versus neuraxial anesthesia (RR 1.7; CI, 0.6-4.6, $P = .2$).[159] This reduction in the risk ratio may be because of advanced airway techniques (e.g., supraglottic airways and video laryngoscopy) and safer airway practices (e.g., difficult airway algorithms).

Use of neuraxial anesthesia for cesarean delivery minimizes exposure of the neonate to maternal anesthetic medications, avoids airway manipulation, improves postoperative pain, and allows the mother to see the child almost immediately after birth. All pregnant women should undergo a preoperative evaluation, regardless of planned delivery mode or type of anesthetic technique, with appropriate risk and benefit counseling. The current status of the fetus and obstetric management plan also should be taken into consideration when formulating the anesthetic plan. In addition, appropriate equipment and medications should always remain readily available to safely provide general anesthesia for an emergent or unanticipated situation.

Although the rates of significant maternal aspiration of gastric contents with induction of general anesthesia are difficult to determine, the mortality from such an event is estimated at 5% to 15% based on retrospective data.[160,161] ASA guidelines recommend aspiration prophylaxis with the administration of nonparticulate antacids, H_2 receptor antagonists, and/or metoclopramide before obstetric surgical procedures.[92] The decision to use general anesthesia or neuraxial block for cesarean delivery is determined by a variety of factors that include the fetal condition and urgency of delivery, maternal comorbidities, presence of a previously placed epidural for labor analgesia, surgical considerations, and maternal wishes. At present, most cesarean deliveries in developed countries are performed with neuraxial techniques.

SPINAL ANESTHESIA

If an epidural catheter is not already placed, spinal anesthesia is typically used for nonemergent cesarean deliveries. Compared with an epidural, a single injection spinal is often faster and technically easier to perform, allows adequate operating conditions in a shorter time, provides a denser block, is more cost effective, and is less likely to fail (failure rate <1%).[162,163] Spinal anesthesia is most often administered through a small (24 gauge or smaller), pencil-point needle. On occasion, a continuous spinal catheter may be used for anesthesia for cesarean delivery. As previously discussed, a spinal catheter may be placed in the case of an inadvertent dural puncture but can be placed intentionally for cesarean delivery in high-risk obstetric patients.

The chance of significant maternal hypotension is greater with spinal anesthesia than with epidural anesthesia. Left uterine displacement with appropriate administration of fluids and use of vasopressor medications can minimize the associated hypotension. Intravenous administration of crystalloid or colloid can reduce the degree of hypotension after spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery.[164] A Cochrane review assessed 11 trials with 698 women comparing colloid versus crystalloid and found significantly fewer women became hypotensive after colloids (RR 0.68; 95% CI, 0.52-0.89).[165] However, concern exists regarding the safety of synthetic colloids as part of intraoperative and critical care resuscitation. Of note, fluid co-loading is thought to have limited efficacy in consistently preventing postspinal hypotension and is typically utilized in combination with a vasopressor.

Historically, ephedrine was considered the vasopressor of choice to manage hypotension caused by neuraxial anesthesia in pregnancy; however, prophylactic or therapeutic phenylephrine in boluses or as an infusion is not only effective in reducing hypotension but also has less transfer to the fetus and results in less fetal acidosis than ephedrine.[62,90,166] Phenylephrine is now considered the vasopressor of choice for the treatment of spinal hypotension, and there is accumulating evidence that administration by prophylactic infusion is most effective in preventing hypotension. A systematic review found prophylactic phenylephrine infusions compared to placebo significantly reduced the risk of hypotension (RR 0.36; 95% CI, 0.18-0.73) and nausea and vomiting (RR 0.39; 95% CI, 0.17-0.91).[167] Phenylephrine is an α-adrenergic receptor agonist and is often associated with reflexive slowing of maternal heart rate and a decrease in cardiac output. There is increasing interest in norepinephrine as an alternative vasopressor for treating spinal hypotension. Compared to phenylephrine, norepinephrine had similar efficacy for maintaining arterial blood pressure during spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery and was associated with a greater heart rate and cardiac output.[168] Further work needs to be done to assess the safety and efficacy of norepinephrine as the vasopressor of choice to prevent and treat postspinal hypotension.

Although various local anesthetics can be used for spinal blockade, hyperbaric bupivacaine 10 to 12 mg is frequently used to achieve an adequate (T4) level block. Neither patient height nor weight affect block extension,[169] although dosing may require adjustment at extremes of the height spectrum. Lipid soluble opioids (such as fentanyl or sufentanil) may be added to enhance neuraxial blockade by reducing local anesthetic dose and decreasing stimulation from surgical traction of the viscera. Epinephrine (0.1-0.2 mg), may be added to improve the quality and duration of the block.[170] Clonidine can also prolong the duration of the block and improve intraoperative analgesia but can increase sedation and is considered off-label for this use.[171] Preservative-free morphine 0.1 to 0.2 mg or hydromorphone 0.75 mg is frequently administered with the spinal to reduce postoperative pain for 18 to 24 hours after the anesthetic has dissipated.[172,173]

EPIDURAL ANESTHESIA

If an epidural catheter has already been inserted for labor analgesia, it provides an excellent method to provide surgical anesthesia for cesarean delivery. A catheter-based technique allows for the ability to titrate the local anesthetic to the proper block height and provide additional local anesthetic administration during the case. For patients who do not already have a catheter in place, this technique may be chosen if the procedure is anticipated to take additional time, or if maternal comorbidities would favor a more gradual, controlled onset of epidural anesthesia. Achieving surgical block conditions takes longer with an epidural than spinal technique but can be rapid enough for use in many urgent situations if already in place and used for maternal analgesia.

Although use of a rapid-onset local anesthetic such as 3% 2-chloroprocaine to attain a T4 level in a newly placed catheter may take 10 minutes,[174] extension of a T10 *analgesic* level to a *surgical anesthetic* T4 level can be obtained in approximately 5 minutes using 3% 2-chloroprocaine or alkalinized 2% lidocaine.[175] Bupivacaine 0.5% may be used if rapid onset is not needed, but is often avoided because of the increased risk of local anesthetic systemic toxicity. Typical epidural local anesthetic volumes required for cesarean delivery range between 10 and 20 mL, depending on whether the epidural is already in use. The administration of epidural local anesthetic should occur in divided doses to ensure that the catheter has not migrated into the intravascular or intrathecal space. Block quality can be improved with addition of epinephrine 1:200,000, fentanyl 50 to 100 μg, or sufentanil 10 to 20 μg. Epidural clonidine 50 to 100 μg can be useful in patients with preexisting chronic pain or severe hypertension if the benefit is judged to outweigh the risk for hypotension, bradycardia, and sedation. Epidural morphine 2 to 5 mg is frequently administered to improve postoperative pain.[176]

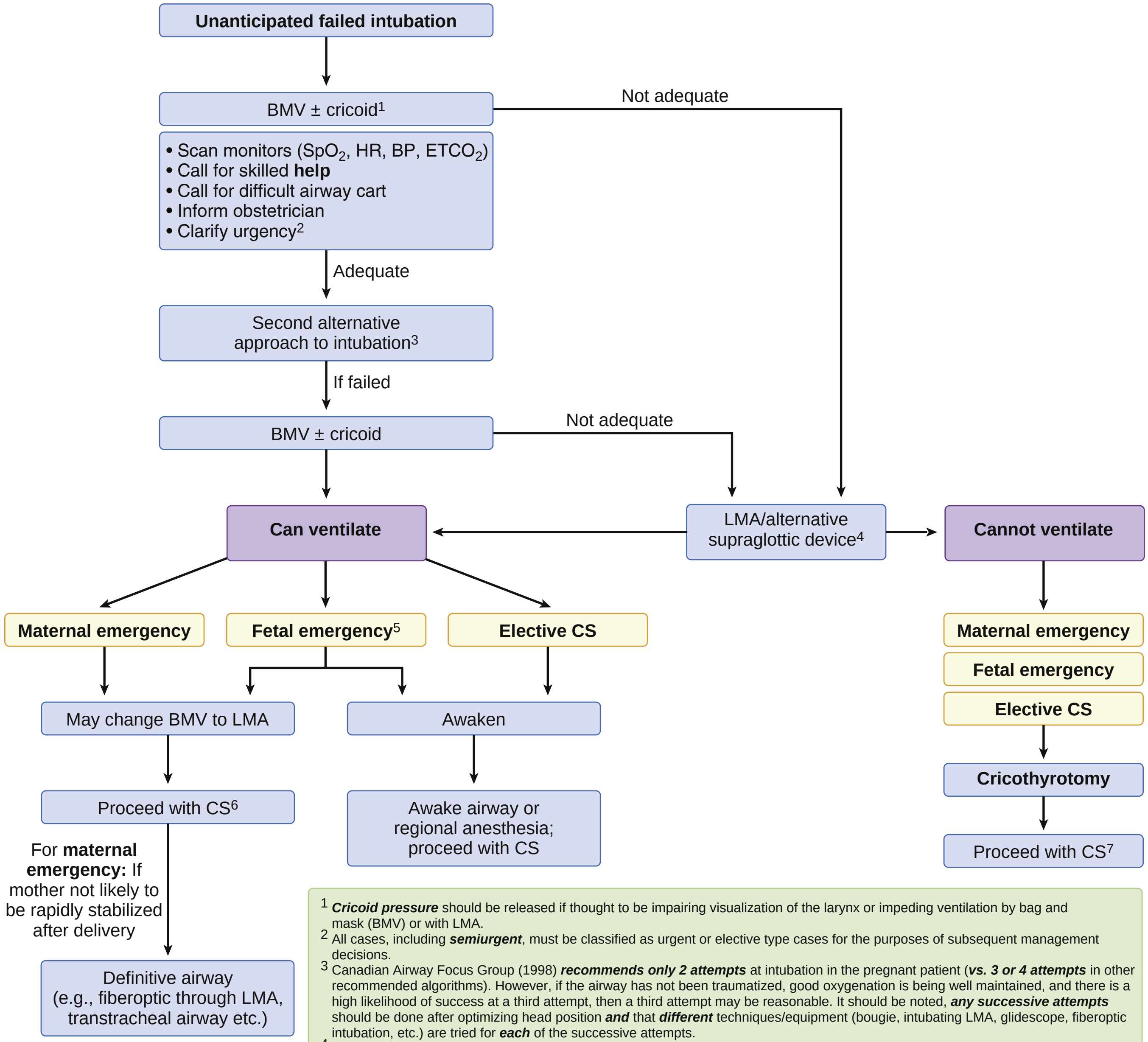
COMBINED SPINAL-EPIDURAL ANESTHESIA

Use of a CSE for cesarean delivery may be optimal in some situations as it combines the benefits of the spinal and epidural techniques. This technique allows for the rapid onset of a dense reliable block while allowing the block time or height to be extended with use of the epidural catheter. A low-dose sequential CSE, a technique where a small intrathecal dose of local anesthetic is given followed by administration of epidural medications, can be used in patients with cardiac disease or patients with short stature.[177] Possible disadvantages of a CSE for surgical anesthesia include the presence of an untested catheter and the possibility of a misplaced or nonfunctioning epidural. More details regarding the CSE neuraxial block are discussed in the previous section on labor analgesia.

GENERAL ANESTHESIA

Although neuraxial anesthesia is typically preferred, in certain emergent situations (e.g., fetal bradycardia, maternal hemorrhage or coagulopathy, uterine rupture, maternal trauma) general anesthesia may be needed for cesarean delivery because of its rapid onset. In addition, it allows for a controlled airway, controlled ventilation, and in some scenarios such as massive hemorrhage, improved hemodynamic control and perhaps decreased maternal psychological stress in comparison to neuraxial anesthesia.

Appropriate equipment preparation, knowledge of patient comorbidities, airway examination, and familiarity with the difficult airway algorithm are necessary preparation for delivering a safe general anesthetic. The ASA difficult airway algorithm[178] has been modified slightly by some authors for use in the setting of cesarean delivery, and a previously published example is provided in Fig. 62.4. Clear, concise communication among all members of the perioperative team is especially critical in urgent or emergent situations to maximize patient safety and minimize procedural complications. Open lines of communication are


Unanticipated failed intubation
BMV ± cricoid1
Not adequate
• Scan monitors (SpO2, HR, BP, ETCO2)
• Call for skilled help
• Call for difficult airway cart
• Inform obstetrician
• Clarify urgency2
Adequate
Second alternative approach to intubation3
If failed
BMV ± cricoid
Not adequate
Can ventilate
LMA/alternative supraglottic device4
Cannot ventilate
Maternal emergency
Fetal emergency5
Elective CS
May change BMV to LMA
Awaken
Proceed with CS6
Awake airway or regional anesthesia; proceed with CS
For maternal emergency: If mother not likely to be rapidly stabilized after delivery
Definitive airway (e.g., fiberoptic through LMA, transtracheal airway etc.)
Maternal emergency
Fetal emergency
Elective CS
Cricothyrotomy
Proceed with CS7

[1] ***Cricoid pressure*** should be released if thought to be impairing visualization of the larynx or impeding ventilation by bag and mask (BMV) or with LMA.

[2] All cases, including ***semiurgent***, must be classified as urgent or elective type cases for the purposes of subsequent management decisions.

[3] Canadian Airway Focus Group (1998) ***recommends only 2 attempts*** at intubation in the pregnant patient (***vs. 3 or 4 attempts*** in other recommended algorithms). However, if the airway has not been traumatized, good oxygenation is being well maintained, and there is a high likelihood of success at a third attempt, then a third attempt may be reasonable. It should be noted, ***any successive attempts*** should be done after optimizing head position ***and*** that ***different*** techniques/equipment (bougie, intubating LMA, glidescope, fiberoptic intubation, etc.) are tried for ***each*** of the successive attempts.

[4] ***If initial BMV is inadequate but ventilation by LMA (classic or proseal) or alternative supraglottic device is adequate,*** might consider proceeding with CS directly if absolute emergency ***or*** only make second or third attempt at intubation ***if*** mother is at higher risk for aspiration and/or slow difficult CS is anticipated.

[5] In the event of a ***fetal emergency only*** and a situation in which mother can be ventilated, there are ***two options:*** one may proceed with unprotected airway for sake of fetus or if mother is at higher risk than usual for aspiration, desaturation, or subsequent failure to ventilate or loss of airway (recent large meal, morbidly obese, airway significantly traumatized in failed intubation attempts, etc.), one may choose to awaken the mother and proceed to regional anesthesia or awake airway. This latter course of action may clearly put the fetus at great risk but follows the principle of "Mother comes first."

[6] ***Anesthesia management details*** should be at the ***discretion*** of the anesthesiologist, bearing in mind his or her own practice and preference and any patient or obstetric issues unique to each case: (1) additional doses of succinylcholine or return to spontaneous ventilation, (2) choice of maintenance anesthetic agents, and (3) elective change to LMA or other supraglottic devices even if BMV remains easy and effective.

[7] ***In the three cannot-ventilate situations,*** maternal and fetal ***emergencies*** should proceed to CS immediately after ***transtracheal airway***. Arguably in ***elective*** CS, the fetus will be stressed by now and hence CS should also be seriously considered at this point.

Fig. 62.4 Algorithm for management of unanticipated difficult airway in obstetric patients. *BMV,* Bag-mask ventilation; *BP,* blood pressure; *CS,* cesarean section; *ETCO$_2$,* end-tidal carbon dioxide; *HR,* heart rate; *LMA,* laryngeal mask airway; *SpO$_2$,* oxygen saturation. (Redrawn from Balki M, Cooke M, Dunington S, et al. Unanticipated difficult airway in obstetric patients: development of a new algorithm for formative assessment in high-fidelity simulation. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:883–897, with permission.)

essential around the time of induction of anesthesia, airway management, and surgical incision.

A rapid-sequence induction commences with preoxygenation, followed by the application of cricoid pressure and the administration of an intravenous induction drug (typically propofol) and a neuromuscular-blocking drug (typically succinylcholine or rocuronium). If endotracheal intubation fails, consider placement of a supraglottic airway device, such as a laryngeal mask airway (LMA), or ventilation with mask and cricoid pressure.[92] The LMA has a high success rate for placement in obstetric patients; however, it does not protect against aspiration of gastric contents and should be used primarily for rescue of a failed intubation. Of note, the LMA has been used without observed aspiration or presence of hypoxia in a prospective study of over 1000 lean, low-risk patients undergoing elective cesarean delivery.[179,180]

Complications as a result of general anesthesia for cesarean delivery can be more common than general anesthesia for other procedures. For example, although the overall risk of intraoperative awareness is estimated to be 1:19,000 general anesthetics, the awareness risk for cesarean delivery is estimated at 1:670 (1:380-1:1300).[181] Anesthesia-related mortality from airway difficulties may occur during emergence and in the recovery period,[182] as well as during induction. Improper monitoring, provider inexperience, emergent situations, and patient obesity all increase patient risk.[183] Emergent cesarean delivery requiring general anesthesia is an uncommon but predictable emergency that can be practiced by teams using simulation to improve performance.

Induction of Anesthesia: Intravenously Administered Drugs

Premedication with lidocaine or fentanyl is typically avoided in cesarean delivery to limit fetal exposure. In scenarios in which hemodynamic stability is prioritized, such as preeclampsia or heart disease, remifentanil 1 to 2 μg/kg or fast-acting antihypertensives such as esmolol or labetalol can be used.

Propofol is most commonly used for induction of general anesthesia for cesarean delivery and is able to induce unconsciousness in approximately 45 seconds. Sodium thiopental 4 to 6 mg/kg intravenously is still used in many countries for induction of anesthesia. Propofol can result in significant hypotension and has an umbilical artery (UA) to umbilical vein (UV) ratio of 0.7.[184] Propofol administration does not affect neonatal Apgar scores with typical intravenous induction doses (2-2.5 mg/kg), but repeated or larger cumulative doses (9 mg/kg) are associated with significant newborn depression.[185]

Etomidate is quick acting and its rapid hydrolysis results in a relatively short duration of action. Unlike propofol and thiopental, etomidate has minimal direct effects on maternal hemodynamics and significant hypertension can occur when etomidate is used without adjuvant premedication in the healthy parturient. Etomidate has higher rates of nausea and vomiting and can increase risk for seizures in patients with decreased seizure threshold. At typical induction doses (0.3 mg/kg), decreased neonatal cortisol production for less than 6 hours was noted with unclear clinical significance.[186]

Ketamine inhibits the *N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptor and has analgesic, amnestic, and hypnotic properties with minimal respiratory depression effects. At typical induction doses (1-1.5 mg/kg), ketamine causes central stimulation of the sympathetic nervous system and inhibits the reuptake of norepinephrine. This helps maintain arterial pressure, heart rate, and cardiac output but could result in hypertension in the preeclamptic patient. It is an ideal choice for a pregnant woman in hemodynamic compromise resulting from bleeding. No neonatal depression is observed with standard induction dosing.[187] Larger doses can increase uterine tone, reduce uterine arterial perfusion, and lower maternal seizure threshold. In certain situations, ketamine may be used in smaller intravenous doses (<0.25 mg/kg) as a profound analgesic, but often causes unwanted hallucinations, which can be reduced with coadministration of benzodiazepines. Care should be taken if used for analgesia and conscious sedation so that repeated dosing does not result in loss of consciousness with an unprotected airway increasing the risk for pulmonary aspiration.

Muscle Relaxants

Uterine muscle tone is not affected by skeletal muscle relaxants, and in standard doses all classes of muscle relaxants are poorly transferred to the fetus. Succinylcholine 1 to 1.5 mg/kg intravenously has rapid onset (30-45 seconds) and short duration of action. After administration, it is hydrolyzed in the plasma by pseudocholinesterase and only small amounts cross to the fetus because it is highly ionized and poorly lipid soluble. It is undetectable in umbilical cord samples unless larger maternal doses are administered (2-3 mg/kg), and exceedingly high maternal doses (10 mg/kg) are needed to inadvertently create neonatal neuromuscular blockade.[188] After succinylcholine administration, maternal muscle strength should always be monitored because prolonged weakness can occur if the hydrolytic enzyme has a reduced plasma concentration or an atypical form (such as in pseudocholinesterase deficiency) or if muscle weakness is exacerbated by prior administration of magnesium sulfate.

Rocuronium may be considered as an alternative to succinylcholine for muscle relaxation. It allows adequate relaxation for endotracheal intubation in less than 60 seconds at intravenous doses of 0.9 to 1.2 mg/kg.[189,190] This is an attractive alternative to succinylcholine because even after an intravenous intubating dose of 0.9 to 1.2 mg/kg body weight, the neuromuscular blocking effect can rapidly be reversed by a large intravenous dose of sugammadex (12-16 mg/kg body weight), which makes the total duration of action shorter than after an equipotent dose of succinylcholine. Like succinylcholine, nondepolarizing muscle relaxants do not cross to the fetal circulation in amounts that would cause neonatal weakness.[191] However, if large doses of nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers are given over long periods, neonatal neuromuscular weakness can occur. Although cholinesterase inhibitors may be administered to the neonate, treatment is primarily respiratory support until the drug is eliminated. Neonatal elimination of muscle relaxants may take significantly longer than adult elimination.

In the case of administration of magnesium sulfate, a distinct potentiation of the effect of any nondepolarizing agents occurs, with subsequently prolonged recovery time. The choice and dosing of neuromuscular blocking drugs should therefore take into account the interaction with magnesium sulfate and the potential risk for muscle weakness resulting from residual neuromuscular block in the recovery room or postanesthesia care unit. As a consequence, neuromuscular monitoring based on an objective monitoring technique should be used to assess neuromuscular function in these patients.

Maintenance of General Anesthesia

After induction, general anesthesia is most frequently maintained with a volatile anesthetic agent with or without N_2O. Volatile anesthetics help reduce the incidence of maternal recall. Although the MAC to prevent movement in response to a painful stimulus is reduced in pregnancy, electroencephalographic evidence suggests that anesthetic effects of a halogenated agent on the brain are similar in the pregnant and nonpregnant state.[42] Volatile anesthetics are highly lipid soluble, have a low molecular weight, and are readily transferred to the fetus. Fetal concentrations depend on both the maternal plasma concentrations and duration of the anesthetic before delivery. After delivery, opioids, propofol, benzodiazepines, N_2O, or a combination are administered and the halogenated anesthetic is typically reduced to 0.5 MAC. These additional intravenous drugs are administered only after the cord is clamped to prevent any transfer to the neonate and associated respiratory depression. Use of only volatile anesthetics at higher concentrations is associated with increased blood loss secondary to uterine atony because all volatile anesthetics negatively impact uterine muscle contraction.[192]

General anesthesia for cesarean delivery is frequently used in cases of fetal distress because it is rapid and reliable. Clearly, a fetus depressed before delivery often becomes a depressed neonate. A Cochrane systematic review of uncomplicated cesarean deliveries comparing regional and general anesthesia concluded that “No significant difference was seen in terms of neonatal Apgar scores of six or less and of four or less at one and five minutes,” and the need for neonatal resuscitation with oxygen was not different between the two groups.[193] The review noted neither method of anesthesia was superior for neonatal outcome.

If large concentrations of volatile anesthetics are administered for a prolonged time, neonatal flaccidity, cardiorespiratory depression, and decreased tone may be anticipated. If neonatal depression is due to volatile anesthetics, the infant should respond to assisted ventilation to facilitate exhalation of the anesthetics. Consequently, physicians able to assist with neonatal ventilation should be present at all cesarean deliveries performed under general anesthesia. In addition, communication to all perioperative physicians is critical if extended anesthetic time is anticipated before delivery. A prolonged time under general anesthesia prior to delivery can be anticipated by obstetricians in some patients such as those with significant scar tissue from prior surgeries or extreme obesity. Neonates may experience greater benefit from regional anesthesia in these scenarios.

Postcesarean Pain Control and Recovery

Pain after cesarean delivery is variable in intensity among patients. Excellent pain control after cesarean delivery can lead to improved maternal functional ability, enhanced recovery, decreased persistent opioid use, decreased incidence of chronic pain, and improved maternal-infant bonding.[194,195] Postoperative pain control can be achieved with multimodal therapy. A typical strategy consists of neuraxial opioids, scheduled nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, scheduled acetaminophen, and limited systemic opioids. Neuraxial opioids are considered the “gold standard” for effective postoperative pain control and have been shown to be superior to systemic opioids[196] and transversus abdominis plane (TAP) block.[197] Pruritus, nausea and vomiting, and respiratory depression are opioid-related side effects.

Alternative modes of analgesia are available and can be utilized if neuraxial opioids are contraindicated or general anesthesia is utilized. Peripheral nerve blocks include TAP, quadratus lumborum, and ilioinguinal-iliohypogastric blocks (see Chapter 46). A meta-analysis demonstrated TAP blocks significantly reduced postoperative pain intensity and decreased opioid consumption in women who did not receive intrathecal morphine.[197] Quadratus lumborum blocks are gaining popularity in cesarean deliveries and may have advantages over TAP blocks. A randomized controlled trial comparing quadratus lumborum with TAP blocks found a reduction in morphine use in the quadratus lumborum group.[198] Continuous wound infiltration with local anesthetics may also be beneficial for patients having general anesthesia.[199]

Complications of Regional Anesthesia

In addition to the neuraxial drug–related complications noted previously, administration of neuraxial anesthesia can result in complications including PDPH, epidural or spinal hematoma, neurologic injury, or total spinal anesthesia (see also Chapter 45).

POSTDURAL PUNCTURE HEADACHE

The earliest experiments with spinal cocaine resulted in severe PDPH. Leakage of spinal fluid is thought to result in vascular hyperemia, migraine physiology, and traction on pain-sensitive fibers. The headache associated with PDPH is postural in that it is worsened by standing and relieved by lying down. The incidence, severity, and duration of PDPH are related to the size of the needle and the shape of the tip. Spinal needles used for CSE technique range from 25 to 29 gauge and result in an incidence of PDPH of less than 1%.[200,201] Epidural catheters are most commonly placed through a 17- or 18-gauge blunt-tipped needle. The incidence of unintentional dural puncture during labor epidural placement is 1% to 1.5%.[202,203] The incidence of headache after an unintentional dural puncture with an epidural needle is reported at 30% to 80%.[200]

In the setting of an unintended dural puncture with an epidural needle, an intrathecal catheter may be threaded, or the epidural needle may be removed and replaced at a different interspace. If an intrathecal catheter is placed, unintentional injection of an epidural anesthetic dose must be carefully avoided. Placement of the intrathecal catheter can provide labor analgesia and alleviates the need for multiple repeat epidural attempts with the potential of a second accidental dural puncture.[204]

When diagnosing a PDPH, it is important to consider other causes of headache in the postpartum period. Assessing the patient for fever and nuchal rigidity is important because postdural-puncture meningitis can initially present with a headache. Early treatment of meningitis is important to prevent morbidity and mortality. Likewise, assessing the patient for hypertension is important to detect postpartum preeclampsia, which can present with a headache and requires rapid treatment to prevent maternal stroke. A thorough neurologic exam should also be performed because cerebral venous thrombosis, cranial subdural hematoma, and ischemic or hemorrhagic stroke can present as a postpartum headache. Benign headaches from tension, dehydration, sleep deprivation, caffeine withdrawal, or migraine should be considered prior to treating a PDPH.

PDPH is often initially treated conservatively. Given the similarity of symptoms to those of migraine headache, PDPHs have been treated with drugs that are useful in migraine with variable success. Caffeine can be minimally effective to treat the pain of a PDPH in the short-term likely because of its vasoconstrictive effects.[205]

If the symptoms are severe enough to limit a patient's activity then an epidural blood patch (EBP) should be considered. If there is evidence of cranial nerve involvement such as diplopia, then an EBP should be performed immediately. Note that the symptom of muffled hearing is common with PDPH and thought not to be a result of cranial nerve involvement, but instead, a decrease in middle ear pressure because the middle ear fluid is connected to the cranial CSF via the cochlear aqueduct. In one retrospective review of an EBP database, all parturients with PDPH experience relief after the EBP but 16.8% required two and 1.5% required three EBPs.[203] Controversy exists over the optimum volume of blood to be injected during an EBP but studies support an attempt to administer 20 mL of autologous blood during the procedure.[203,206]

EPIDURAL HEMATOMA

The epidural space is highly vascular, and vessels can be punctured during neuraxial needle placement or catheter threading. However, with normal platelets and coagulation factors, epidural hematoma is extremely uncommon. The Serious Complication Repository (SCORE) Project reported the incidence of epidural hematoma to be 1 in 251,463 (95% CI, 1:46,090-1:10,142,861)[207] and another large study found no cases of hematoma out of 79,837 obstetric epidural placements with an estimated upper limit of 1 in 4.6×10^{-5}.[208] Although rare, back pain and persistent motor blockade are potential signs of epidural hematoma and should be thoroughly evaluated. Patients should be followed postpartum until complete resolution of the epidural blockade. Patients are at increased risk for developing a hematoma in the setting of coagulopathy and anticoagulation use. Following the guidelines of the American Society of Regional Anesthesia (ASRA) with consideration for the Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology (SOAP) Consensus Statement (Fig. 62.5) regarding anticoagulation therapy and neuraxial anesthesia in the obstetric patient is recommended.[209,210] If an epidural hematoma is suspected, imaging should occur immediately with the goal of prompt epidural hematoma evacuation to avoid permanent neurologic injury.

NEUROLOGIC INJURY

Direct spinal cord damage from an epidural or spinal needle placed for labor is exceedingly rare because obstetric neuraxial anesthesia procedures are typically performed below the level of the conus medullaris. It has, however, been described with spinal anesthesia attempts performed at unintentionally high levels resulting in spinal cord syrinx formation with injection. In a series of seven such cases, all of the patients who experienced this complication described pain on injection.[211] Therefore if a patient complains of pain on injection of neuraxial medication, the proceduralist should stop injecting *immediately*.

Overall, damage attributed to direct neurologic injury has been estimated at 0.6 in 100,000 with epidural and 3 in 100,000 with spinal analgesia.[212-214] Data from the SCORE project show an incidence of serious neurologic injury in the postpartum period to be 1 in 11,389 (95% CI, 1:7828-1:17,281) but only 1:35,923 (95% CI, 1:17,805-1:91,244) are thought to be related to anesthesia.[207]

Evaluating postpartum lumbosacral neuropathies is a common part of an obstetric anesthesia practice. A large prospective study showed that 0.92% of women experienced postpartum lumbosacral or lower extremity nerve injury, the incidence of which was associated with nulliparity and prolonged second stage of labor, but not epidural analgesia use.[215] Femoral and lateral femoral cutaneous neuropathies were the most common, likely from women in extreme hip flexion in the semi-Fowler position. Encouraging women to straighten their legs between pushes can restore blood flow to the nerves of the lumbar plexus. Most of these peripheral neuropathies heal with time but outpatient follow up with a neurologist to follow the course and rule out other causes should be considered.

LOCAL ANESTHETIC SYSTEMIC TOXICITY

The accidental injection of intravascular local anesthetic could result in the development of local anesthetic systemic toxicity (LAST). The development of LAST is rare in obstetrics secondary to the dilute local anesthetic solutions utilized for epidural analgesia and the use of lidocaine and 2-chloroprocaine for operative delivery. The SCORE project reported one maternal cardiac arrest from LAST after a TAP block.[207] LAST as a result of TAP blocks in obstetrics has been reported multiple times and the use of no greater than 0.25% concentration of bupivacaine, adding 1:200,000 epinephrine, administering no greater than a 20 mL volume on each side, placement under ultrasound to be sure the injection is not intraperitoneal, and careful, slow, injection with intermittent aspiration is recommended.[216] The treatment of LAST includes the administration of lipid emulsion in addition to basic and advanced cardiac life support.[217]

TOTAL SPINAL BLOCK

A total spinal block is a rare and life-threatening complication that occurs after excessive cephalic spread of local anesthetic in the CSF resulting in severe respiratory and cardiac compromise. It can occur after a single spinal injection or as a result of inadvertent intrathecal spread of epidural

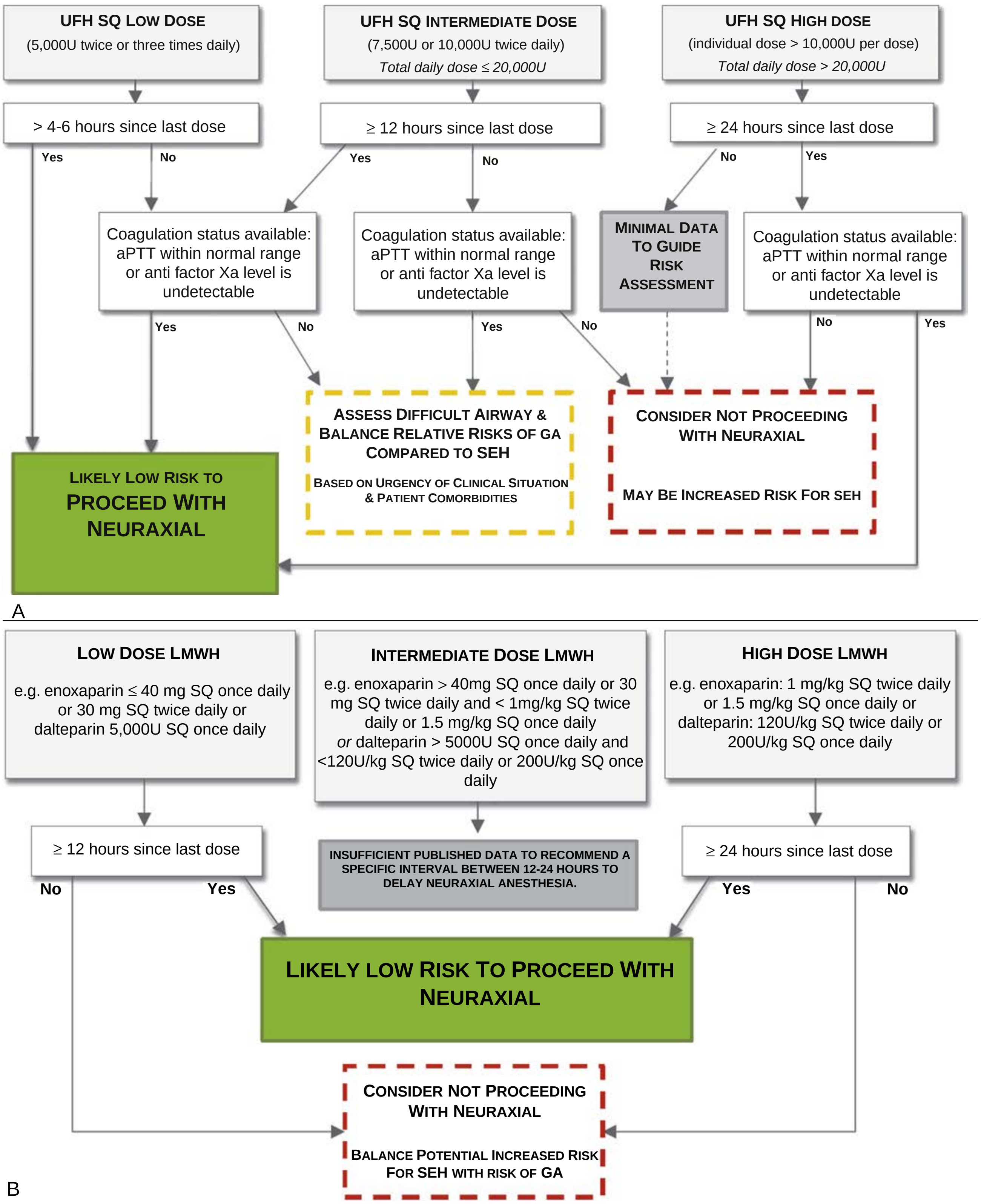

UFH SQ LOW DOSE
(5,000U twice or three times daily)
UFH SQ INTERMEDIATE DOSE
(7,500U or 10,000U twice daily)
Total daily dose ≤ 20,000U
UFH SQ HIGH DOSE
(individual dose > 10,000U per dose)
Total daily dose > 20,000U
> 4-6 hours since last dose
≥ 12 hours since last dose
≥ 24 hours since last dose
Yes
No
Yes
No
No
Yes
Coagulation status available: aPTT within normal range or anti factor Xa level is undetectable
Coagulation status available: aPTT within normal range or anti factor Xa level is undetectable
MINIMAL DATA TO GUIDE RISK ASSESSMENT
Coagulation status available: aPTT within normal range or anti factor Xa level is undetectable
Yes
No
Yes
No
No
Yes
ASSESS DIFFICULT AIRWAY & BALANCE RELATIVE RISKS OF GA COMPARED TO SEH
BASED ON URGENCY OF CLINICAL SITUATION & PATIENT COMORBIDITIES
CONSIDER NOT PROCEEDING WITH NEURAXIAL
MAY BE INCREASED RISK FOR SEH
LIKELY LOW RISK TO PROCEED WITH NEURAXIAL
A
LOW DOSE LMWH
e.g. enoxaparin ≤ 40 mg SQ once daily or 30 mg SQ twice daily or dalteparin 5,000U SQ once daily
INTERMEDIATE DOSE LMWH
e.g. enoxaparin > 40mg SQ once daily or 30 mg SQ twice daily and < 1mg/kg SQ twice daily or 1.5 mg/kg SQ once daily or dalteparin > 5000U SQ once daily and <120U/kg SQ twice daily or 200U/kg SQ once daily
HIGH DOSE LMWH
e.g. enoxaparin: 1 mg/kg SQ twice daily or 1.5 mg/kg SQ once daily or dalteparin: 120U/kg SQ twice daily or 200U/kg SQ once daily
≥ 12 hours since last dose
INSUFFICIENT PUBLISHED DATA TO RECOMMEND A SPECIFIC INTERVAL BETWEEN 12-24 HOURS TO DELAY NEURAXIAL ANESTHESIA.
≥ 24 hours since last dose
No
Yes
Yes
No
LIKELY LOW RISK TO PROCEED WITH NEURAXIAL
CONSIDER NOT PROCEEDING WITH NEURAXIAL
BALANCE POTENTIAL INCREASED RISK FOR SEH WITH RISK OF GA
B

Fig. 62.5 (A) Decision aid for urgent or emergent neuraxial procedures in the obstetric patient receiving unfractionated heparin. (B) Decision aid for urgent or emergent neuraxial procedures in the obstetric patient receiving LMWH. *aPTT,* activated partial thromboplastin time; *GA,* general anesthesia; *LMWH,* low-molecular-weight heparin; *SEH,* spinal epidural hematoma; *SQ,* subcutaneous; *UFH,* unfractionated heparin. (Reproduced with permission from Leffert L, Butwick A, Carvalho B, et al. The Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology Consensus Statement on the Anesthetic Management of Pregnant and Postpartum Women Receiving Thromboprophylaxis or Higher Dose Anticoagulants. *Anesth Analg.* 2018;126:928–944.)

medication. Risk factors associated with high neuraxial blockade include obesity, spinal technique after failed epidural anesthesia, short stature, epidural after an accidental dural puncture, and spinal deformity.[207]

OTHER COMPLICATIONS

When strict aseptic technique is used, infection is uncommon with spinal and epidural anesthesia.[218,219] Nonetheless, postdural puncture meningitis and epidural abscess has been described[220] and the ASA and ASRA recommend the following aseptic techniques during placement of neuraxial needles and catheter: removal of jewelry, hand washing, wearing of caps, wearing of masks covering both mouth and nose, use of sterile gloves, use of an antiseptic solution (e.g., chlorhexidine with alcohol), and sterile draping of the patient.[221,222]

Postpartum back pain is common after childbirth regardless of whether neuraxial analgesia has been used. However, no evidence indicates that back pain is more common when neuraxial analgesia is used for labor. Several trials have identified an association between increased maternal temperature and epidural use as a secondary outcome.[223] Attribution of causality is difficult in this setting and the etiology is not well understood but likely involves noninfectious inflammation.[223,224]

Maternal Comorbidities

HYPERTENSIVE DISORDERS

Hypertensive disorders of pregnancy are among the most common causes of maternal morbidity and are associated with more frequent rates of maternal and fetal mortality.[225] Hypertensive disorders of pregnancy complicate 5% to 10% of pregnancies worldwide and preeclampsia is diagnosed in 3% of pregnancies.[225] The World Health Organization (WHO) has identified hypertension as the second most common cause of maternal death, accounting for 14% of mortality associated with pregnancy.[226] Chronic hypertension may precede pregnancy and may or may not be complicated by superimposed preeclampsia.

Although some variations exist in hypertensive definitions worldwide, the following are used in the United States by the ACOG based on a working group in 2013.[227] Gestational hypertension is defined as the onset of hypertension (systolic blood pressure [SBP] >140 mm Hg or diastolic blood pressure [DBP] >90 mm Hg) after 20 weeks' gestation in a previously normotensive parturient without proteinuria. Preeclampsia is defined as hypertension (SBP >140 mm Hg or DBP >90 mm Hg) after 20 weeks' gestation associated with proteinuria. Preeclampsia is diagnosed when urine protein excretion is greater than 300 mg in a 24 hour period or, alternatively, there is a protein/creatinine ratio of at least 0.3. In 2013, massive proteinuria (>5 g in 24 hours) and fetal growth restriction were eliminated as considerations of severe preeclampsia. In addition, the term *mild preeclampsia* is no longer used. Now only *preeclampsia* or *preeclampsia with severe features* are defined. Severe features of preeclampsia include an SBP of 160 mm Hg or greater or DBP of 110 mm Hg or greater on two separate occasions at least 4 hours apart while on bed rest; thrombocytopenia (platelet count less than 100,000/μL); impaired liver function with twice normal concentrations of liver enzymes; right upper quadrant pain; progressive renal insufficiency with serum creatinine greater than 1.1 mg/dL or a doubling of serum creatinine without other known renal disease; pulmonary edema; and new onset cerebral or visual abnormalities. In the absence of proteinuria, preeclampsia can be diagnosed with new onset hypertension (as previously defined) and the presence of a severe feature.[227]

The combination of hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme, and low platelet count (HELLP) is considered preeclampsia with HELLP syndrome. Eclampsia is preeclampsia complicated by seizure activity. The incidence of preeclampsia has increased likely as a result of increases in maternal age and obesity, whereas the risk for eclampsia has decreased because of improved prenatal care and the use of prophylactic intravenous magnesium.[225,228] The cause of preeclampsia is not known, but it is generally thought that placental insufficiency through a cascade of antiangiogenic factors (e.g., s-Flt) eventually leads to maternal generalized endothelial dysfunction. The cause of the placental insufficiency is likely variable and could include maternal or paternal genetics and/or environmental factors. Patients with preeclampsia have an elevated risk for cerebral hemorrhage, pulmonary edema, and coagulopathy. Current guidelines recommend treating SBP more than 160 mm Hg for prevention of intracerebral hemorrhage.[227] Initial treatment typically includes intravenous labetalol, hydralazine, and/or oral nifedipine.[229] Other considerations are increased airway edema with associated difficulty of intubation and increased rates of postpartum atony related to the use of magnesium sulfate. Methylergonovine (Methergine) should be used cautiously in patients with preeclampsia because it may lead to hypertensive crisis. Women with preeclampsia can be sensitive to both endogenous and exogenous catecholamines. Therefore careful administration of adrenergic agents is recommended.

Women with a diagnosis of preeclampsia should have their platelet count checked before initiation of regional anesthesia or removal of an epidural catheter. Coagulopathy is a contraindication to regional anesthesia. Although the risk for spinal hematoma is lower in pregnant women than in the elderly,[213] one study found 68% of patients who had spinal hematomas after neuraxial blockade had preexisting coagulopathy.[230] Lastly, despite the concerns for hypotension, spinal anesthesia is safe to administer in preeclamptic patients.[231,332]

COAGULOPATHIES

Thrombocytopenia complicates 10% of pregnancies as a result of several etiologic factors.[233,234] Thrombocytopenia may be preexisting or can develop as a result of the pregnancy. As discussed earlier, thrombocytopenia that develops after 20 weeks' gestation may be a sign of preeclampsia with HELLP syndrome. However, most thrombocytopenia that develops in pregnancy is benign, gestational thrombocytopenia. The platelet count is expected to decrease by approximately 10% in a normal pregnancy.[235]

Autoimmune thrombocytopenia, antiphospholipid syndrome, and liver disease are less common.[234] Glucocorticoids and IV immunoglobulin can be used to elevate platelet counts in certain types of severe disease but require several days to be effective.[236] No platelet count is universally accepted as safe for epidural placement. Most anesthesiologists agree that placement of an epidural in the setting of a platelet count greater than 100,000/mm^3 is safe and recent literature suggests lower thresholds may be safe. A retrospective observational study of cases from 14 diverse institutions combined with a systematic review evaluated 1524 parturients with a platelet count of less than 100,000/mm^3 and found the upper bound of the 95% CI for the risk of epidural hematoma for a platelet count of 0 to 49,000/mm^3 is 11%, 50,000 to 69,000/mm^3 is 3%, and 70,000 to 100,000/mm^3 is 0.2%.[237] Of note, no cases of epidural hematomas requiring surgical decompression were identified in this cohort.

Women with von Willebrand disease are at increased risk for bleeding intrapartum and postpartum.[238] Prophylactic treatment is recommended for women with von Willebrand factor (vWF) less than 50 international units/dL. Because of the multiple types and subtypes of von Willebrand disease that have different responses to therapy, it is imperative that hematologic studies be part of the management to help guide the most appropriate therapy. In type I von Willebrand disease, a partial reduction in the quantity of vWF is seen. Women with type I von Willebrand disease usually do not need prophylactic treatment because their vWF typically rises in the third trimester of pregnancy to greater than 50 international units/dL. Desmopressin can be used in women with type 1 von Willebrand disease to release vWF. Type 2 von Willebrand disease is characterized by a defect in the function of vWF, and facilitation of release is not helpful. Parturients with type 3 von Willebrand disease almost always require replacement of vWF before delivery, because they have almost no intrinsic vWF. Although concern should be elevated for epidural hematoma, women with normal factor levels can have regional anesthesia in the setting of a normal platelet count.[239]

Deep venous thrombosis (DVT) and pulmonary embolism are more common in pregnancy as a result of hormonal changes. Significant risk factors are factor V Leiden, prothrombin G20210A, protein S, protein C and antithrombin deficiency, and antiphospholipid antibodies.[240] Patients diagnosed with DVT or pulmonary embolism in pregnancy will need prolonged anticoagulation and will require delivery planning with a brief anticoagulation hiatus for regional anesthesia and delivery. Factor V Leiden is an abnormal variant of factor V that acts as a cofactor that allows activation of thrombin by factor Xa. The factor V Leiden variant cannot be easily degraded by activated protein C and thus leads to hypercoagulability. Patients with a factor V Leiden abnormality may be maintained on anticoagulants for prophylaxis or treatment of DVT and appropriate cessation of anticoagulants must occur prior to placement of neuraxial blockade.[210,241]

OBESITY

Maternal obesity (prepregnancy body mass index ≥30 kg/m^2) and metabolic syndrome cause gestational diabetes, newborn hyperglycemia, larger babies, prolonged labor, and cesarean delivery.[68,242] Cesarean delivery for obese women holds greater risk of mortality.[243,244] Sleep apnea is more common in obese parturients and is a risk factor for hypoventilation after treatment with systemic opioids and difficult tracheal intubation when general anesthesia is required. Morbidly obese parturients are at increased risk of longer first stage of labor and operative delivery.[245] Epidural anesthesia placement in obese parturients is more difficult and takes longer and they are more likely to require a repeat procedure due to inadequate pain control or failure to achieve bilateral sensory blockade.[245,246] An early anesthesia consultation is advised for morbidly obese women regardless of planned delivery mode.

CARDIAC DISEASE

The leading cause of maternal mortality in the United States is cardiac disease.[156] In planning an anesthetic for a delivery in a woman with congenital or acquired heart disease, the anesthesia provider must take into consideration the patient's cardiac lesion or disease state; the normal physiologic changes of pregnancy, labor, and delivery; and the hemodynamic changes of the anesthetic itself. During pregnancy, labor, and delivery, regurgitant valvular lesions are generally tolerated better than stenotic valvular lesions.[247] Pulmonary hypertension, severe left ventricular outflow tract obstruction, moderate to severe mitral stenosis, and cyanotic congenital heart disease all carry significant risk for maternal morbidity and mortality. Multiple risk factors have been identified as increasing a woman's likelihood of major morbidity and mortality including prior stroke, low ejection fraction, aortopathy, and heart failure symptoms. The American Heart Association, the American College of Cardiology, and the European Society of Cardiology have classified certain conditions or cardiac lesions as high maternal or fetal risk.[248-251] In comparison to other risk stratification systems,[251,252] the modified WHO risk stratification system appears to perform best in predicting maternal morbidity or mortality during pregnancy and delivery.[253] Such risk stratification informs the obstetric and anesthesia team as to what resources a parturient with heart disease may require, and thereby whether they need to transfer to a tertiary care facility for delivery.

Increased monitoring including 5-lead ECG or intra-arterial blood pressure monitoring may be necessary for labor, especially in women who have a history of tachyarrhythmia or are hemodynamically tenuous. Epidural labor analgesia is recommended for women with heart disease to decrease catecholamine release and eliminate the increased cardiac output and tachycardia attributable to labor pain. The afterload reduction that occurs with epidural analgesia should be followed closely and may need to be countered with a carefully titrated α-adrenergic agonist to prevent tachycardia and ischemia. When cesarean delivery is indicated, it is important to tailor the anesthetic technique to each individual patient. Regional anesthesia is not necessarily contraindicated and should be considered for most patients.

ANTICOAGULATION

Anticoagulation is often required for women with artificial heart valves, certain types of congenital heart disease, pulmonary hypertension, and cardiomyopathy. It is necessary to carefully time stopping anticoagulation to allow for epidural placement and birth while restarting before a clot can form. For this reason, women are usually maintained on heparin at the end of pregnancy, pending delivery, because of its quick offset. If IV unfractionated heparin was used, it should be stopped 4 to 6 hours before the procedure and normal coagulation status (PTT or activated clotting time [ACT]) documented before neuraxial instrumentation or removal of an epidural catheter.[209,210] If a parturient is maintained on subcutaneous unfractionated heparin, the time interval required to stop prior to a neuraxial procedure corresponds to the dose and activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) that can be measured (see Fig. 62.5*A*). If conversion to intravenous heparin cannot take place before labor, warfarin should be stopped and neuraxial analgesia deferred until the PT is within normal limits and the INR is documented at less than 1.5. Low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH) has been used frequently for prophylaxis of DVT in pregnancy. Unlike unfractionated heparin, the anticoagulant effects of LMWH cannot be reliably measured, and it is not reversible with protamine. It is recommended to wait a prespecified time interval prior to performing a neuraxial procedure, rather than ordering laboratory testing. The decision to place or remove a neuraxial block in a patient on LMWH should correspond to the individual dose and total daily dose (see Fig. 62.5*B*).[210] Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs do not in themselves increase risk for spinal hematoma, but can increase risk in combination with other anticoagulants.[209] If labor begins before neuraxial analgesia can safely be given, intravenous remifentanil and N_2O are alternatives in some settings.[254,255]

PULMONARY DISEASE

As previously detailed in the section on pulmonary changes, adaptations in the respiratory system are required to meet the metabolic demands of the mother and fetus with increases in minute ventilation, decreased O_2 reserve, and increased airway edema most notable.

Asthma is characterized by reversible airway obstruction, airway hyperresponsiveness, and airway inflammation. It is the most common respiratory disease in pregnancy with considerable maternal morbidity. A prospective trial of 1739 pregnant asthmatic patients found those with mild asthma had an exacerbation rate of 12.6% and a hospitalization rate of 2.3%, those with moderate asthma had an exacerbation rate of 25.7% and a hospitalization rate of 6.8%, and those with severe asthma had an exacerbation rate of 51.9% and a hospitalization rate of 26.9%.[256] Bronchodilators and antiinflammatory drugs are generally safe for the fetus and should be used in pregnancy to control asthma. A meta-analysis found that maternal asthma was associated with increased risk of maternal and placental complications including cesarean delivery, gestational diabetes, abruption, and hemorrhage.[257]

Community-acquired pneumonia is the most common nonobstetric infectious complication that results in maternal death.[258] During the 2009 H1N1 influenza epidemic, pregnant women were disproportionately affected. Pregnant women were at increased risk for hospitalization, ICU admission, and death.[259] Preterm delivery is a significant complication of pneumonia even in the setting of antibiotic therapy. Aspiration of gastric contents is also more common during endotracheal intubation in pregnant than in nonpregnant patients because of laxity of the gastroesophageal junction combined with anatomic changes from the expanding uterus.[260] Strict fasting recommendations, rapid-sequence tracheal intubation, and antacids are used before general anesthesia in pregnancy.

Cystic fibrosis is a common autosomal-dominant disorder in women of northern European origin. With improved medical care, women with cystic fibrosis are living to reproductive years and beyond. Pregnancy is uncommon in women with cystic fibrosis (216 pregnancies in 24,000 women), but when it occurs, careful multidisciplinary care is required.[261] The disease is caused by a mutation in the cystic fibrous membrane conductance regulator in epithelial cells, which causes abnormalities in the lungs, pancreas, intestines, and hepatobiliary systems. The major issues in pregnancy are restrictive lung disease and diabetes.

NEUROLOGIC DISORDERS

Multiple sclerosis is a neuroinflammatory disorder that disproportionately affects young women. Pregnancy is associated with a decrease in the incidence of relapse, although the rate of relapse during the first 3 months postpartum is increased in comparison with the year before pregnancy.[262] Multiple sclerosis is a disease of demyelination, and thus theoretic concern exists that local anesthetic toxicity may be enhanced. Cases of worsening symptoms after regional anesthesia have been reported; however, it is hard to impute causality in a relapsing and remitting disease. Nevertheless, the lowest effective concentration possible should be given and vasoconstrictive agents should be avoided. Some recommend epidural instead of intrathecal local anesthetic administration when possible.[263]

Neurofibromatosis is an autosomal-dominant disorder that occurs in 1 in 3000 individuals, with variable manifestations. It is characterized by café-au-lait lesions on the skin, cutaneous neurofibromas, Lisch nodules of the iris, bone abnormalities, and tumors of the spinal cord and cranial nerves.[261] Neurofibromas often grow in pregnancy. Disagreement exists as to whether neuraxial anesthesia is contraindicated in women with neurofibromatosis because of the incidence of vascular spinal tumors. Epidural hematoma has been reported in a woman with neurofibromatosis in the setting of a spinal tumor.[264] The hormonal changes of pregnancy may cause tumor growth, and a knowledge of lesion location and current clinical symptoms is needed to avoid instrumentation of tumors and safely deliver neuraxial anesthesia.[265]

OPIOID DEPENDENCE

Opioid use is increasing in the United States and opioid abuse is now epidemic. Opioids are commonly prescribed to women during pregnancy and one study found 14% of American women were prescribed opioids at least once during pregnancy.[266] Of concern, opioid abuse or dependence during pregnancy is associated with obstetrical morbidity and mortality including abruption, increased hospital length of stay, oligohydramnios, and maternal death.[267] In addition, extended opioid use or dependence can result in neonatal abstinence syndrome (NAS) in the neonate, which often requires medication and extended hospital stay. NAS is characterized by hyperirritability of the central nervous system and dysfunction of the autonomic nervous system, gastrointestinal system, and respiratory system. Methadone is often utilized for treatment of opioid dependence during pregnancy but is associated with NAS. Buprenorphine is increasingly utilized in pregnancy and although it is associated with NAS, the symptoms may be milder in buprenorphine-exposed neonates.[268] Peripartum pain management can be challenging in patients with opioid dependence and multimodal therapy is recommended for both vaginal and cesarean delivery.

Anesthesia for Malpresentation and External Cephalic Version

Breech presentation occurs when the fetal buttocks or lower extremities are the presenting part in the pelvis and is the most common abnormal presentation in pregnancy. Approximately onequarter of pregnancies are in a breech presentation before 28 weeks but most change to vertex by 34 weeks' gestation. Approximately 3% to 4% of fetuses are breech presentation at term.[269] Breech presentations can sometimes be converted to vertex by an external cephalic version. Neuraxial anesthesia is associated with a higher success rate for external cephalic version.[270] Anesthetic rather than analgesic concentrations allow for relaxation of abdominal wall musculature, which may help the obstetrician[271]; however, a recent randomized, double-blind trial found escalating doses of bupivacaine (2.5, 5, 7.5, and 10 mg) did not change the success rate of external cephalic version.[272] External cephalic version has an overall success rate (all gestational ages) of approximately 60%, with risks for abruption, fetal bradycardia, rupture of membranes, and need for emergent delivery. For these reasons, an anesthesia provider should be immediately available when external cephalic version is performed in the event an emergent delivery is needed.

Higher order multiple births are frequently delivered by cesarean delivery because of the likelihood of cord entanglement and possibility of head entrapment. Twin pregnancy can be delivered vaginally but may present difficulties at delivery. If the second twin is not in the vertex position, an epidural can provide abdominal muscle relaxation and analgesia to allow for version or manual extraction.[273-275] In addition, it provides analgesia and perineal relaxation for instrumented delivery if needed, and the ability for conversion to cesarean delivery if the second twin becomes distressed or is unable to be delivered vaginally. The same considerations apply for external cephalic version of a singleton breech presentation.

Obstetric Emergencies

A variety of emergent conditions may manifest during the care of obstetric patients. These urgent situations frequently involve maternal hemorrhage, fetal distress, or both. To optimize the clinical outcome, prior preparation and excellent communication among all members of the peripartum care team are essential.

MATERNAL MORTALITY

An estimated 303,000 maternal deaths occurred worldwide in 2015.[276] Developing regions account for approximately 99% of the global maternal deaths. Accurate measurement of maternal mortality is challenging and many deaths go uncounted. Hemorrhage, hypertensive disorders of pregnancy, and sepsis are the leading causes of maternal deaths worldwide.[226] Although globally the maternal mortality ratio is declining, it is increasing in the United States[156,226] for reasons that have not been completely understood. However, it is likely the incidence of maternal death is increasing as a result of an increase in maternal age, obesity, births by cesarean delivery, and prepregnancy comorbid conditions.

A study examined pregnancy-related deaths from 2006 to 2010 in the United States using data from the Pregnancy Mortality Surveillance System and found the number one cause of death to be cardiovascular conditions (14.6%). Other causes of pregnancy-related death included infection (13.6%), noncardiovascular medical conditions (12.7%), cardiomyopathy (11.8%), hemorrhage (11.4%), thrombotic pulmonary or other embolism (9.6%), and hypertensive disorders of pregnancy (9.4%). Of concern, non-Hispanic black women have the highest risk of dying from pregnancy complications.[156] This study also found deaths due to cardiovascular conditions and infection have increased while deaths from hemorrhage, hypertensive diseases of pregnancy, embolism, and anesthetic complications declined compared to previous time periods examined.[156]

The UK Confidential Enquiry into Maternal Deaths and Morbidity found from 2014 to 2016, Asian women had a twofold and black women had a fivefold difference in maternal mortality compared to white women.[277] During this time period, the leading causes of direct maternal deaths included thromboembolisms, obstetric hemorrhage, and suicide. The majority (57%) of maternal deaths in the UK are related to indirect causes with cardiac disease being the largest single contributor. Sepsis is also a leading cause of maternal morbidity and mortality in the UK and United States.

To improve maternal patient safety, organizations and patient safety bundles have been created to prevent morbidity and mortality associated with postpartum hemorrhage, maternal venous thromboembolism, and severe hypertension in pregnancy.[278] When a comprehensive obstetric hemorrhage patient safety bundle was implemented, women with hemorrhage experienced a 20.8% reduction in severe maternal morbidity compared to a 1.2% reduction ($P < .0001$) in hospitals without bundle implementation.[279] As peripartum physicians, anesthesiologists can contribute to improved outcomes by implementing these patient safety bundle elements.

OBSTETRIC HEMORRHAGE

Hemorrhage during pregnancy carries significant morbidity and is a leading cause of maternal death worldwide.[226,280] In addition, the need for blood transfusion is the most common indicator of severe maternal morbidity based on 2008 to 2009 US peripartum hospitalization data.[281] Most of these hemorrhage-related deaths are preventable, and appropriate training, simulation, team communication, and education are all essential elements needed to improve patient outcome.[282,283] Common difficulties with hemorrhage management include inaccurate determination of blood loss, unrecognized hemorrhage risk factors, delayed intervention, and improper or inadequate transfusion of blood products. Various causes of peripartum hemorrhage and management of obstetric hemorrhage are discussed in greater detail in the following section.

Placenta Previa and Accreta

Placenta previa is diagnosed when the placenta is located low in the uterus and in front of the presenting fetus, either covering or encroaching on the cervical os. The incidence is approximately 0.5% of all pregnancies. Associated risk factors include advanced maternal age, assisted pregnancy, multiparity, prior placenta previa, and uterine scarring from infection or prior surgery. Placenta previa normally manifests as painless vaginal bleeding, with the first occurrence being self-limited. The diagnosis is confirmed or determined by ultrasonography. Cesarean delivery is required with placenta previa unless the placenta significantly changes position during gestation away from the cervical os before the time of delivery.

The term *placenta accreta* is often used to include the three subtypes of accreta vera, increta, and percreta. Placenta accreta vera is an abnormal adherence to the myometrium with an absent decidual line of separation. Placenta increta is abnormal implantation and growth of the placenta into the myometrium, and placenta percreta is growth of the placenta through the uterine wall with placental implantation onto surrounding tissue that might include bladder, bowel, ovaries, or other organs surrounding the uterus. Presence of accreta occurs in approximately 0.04% of pregnancies in developed countries; however, the rate is increasing and appears to affect from 0.17 to 0.34% of deliveries.[284,285] In a multi-institutional cohort study, the sensitivity for detecting placenta accreta using ultrasound or magnetic resonance imaging was 93% and 80% with specificities of 71% and 65%, respectively.[286] Rates of accreta are significantly affected by the presence of placenta previa and the number of prior hysterotomies. In patients with a known placenta previa, the rates of accreta are 3%, 11%, 40%, and more than 60% with zero, one, two, and three or more prior uterine incisions, respectively.[287] Unfortunately, the diagnosis of accreta is not certain until the time of hysterotomy, and in patients with significant risk factors, massive hemorrhage could occur, regardless of imaging study result.[92,283] If the diagnosis of placenta accreta or percreta is made before delivery, preoperative interventions such as bilateral common iliac artery balloon catheter insertion or selective embolization of uterine vessels near the time of delivery could be considered, but efficacy remains unclear.[288-290]

Vasa Previa

Vasa previa is a rare condition in which velamentous insertion of umbilical vessels occurs so that these fetal vessels traverse the fetal membranes and are positioned over the cervical os.[291,292] The incidence is between 0.04% and 0.02% of pregnancies and carries significant fetal morbidity and mortality if not diagnosed antenatally. In a study of 155 women, neonatal survival was 97% with antenatal diagnosis and only 44% without diagnosis before delivery.[293] If undiagnosed, vaginal bleeding may be noted at the time of membrane rupture and represents fetal blood loss rather than maternal. Previously undiagnosed vasa previa represents an obstetric emergency requiring immediate cesarean delivery, typically done under general anesthesia because of its rapidity. In cases in which the diagnosis is known antenatally, cesarean delivery is performed before labor. The optimal gestational age for delivery is not definitively established, but delivery by cesarean at approximately 36 weeks of gestation is suggested with consideration for administration of steroids for fetal lung maturity and consideration of maternal hospitalization between 28 and 32 weeks' gestation in the case of the need for urgent preterm delivery.[291,292]

Placental Abruption

Placental abruption is defined as partial or complete separation of the placenta from the uterine wall after 20 weeks' gestation but before delivery. The incidence is approximately 1% of pregnancies, and risk factors include advanced maternal age, chorioamnionitis, cocaine use, excessive alcohol use, hypertension, premature rupture of membranes, history of abruption, smoking, and trauma. Abruption often manifests with vaginal bleeding and uterine tenderness with examination. However, a significant volume of blood can be trapped behind the placenta and remain in the uterus. As for any situation with massive bleeding in pregnancy, coagulopathy resulting from massive blood loss can frequently occur. Patients with placental abruption (versus those without) were 54 times more likely to have a coagulopathy and 11 times more likely to have a fetal demise.[294] Appropriate laboratory panels should be obtained and preparation for massive transfusion and administration of additional coagulation factors initiated, taking into account the need for close collaboration with transfusion medicine or blood bank expertise (see later discussion of management of massive obstetric hemorrhage).

Uterine Rupture

Uterine rupture can be a life-threatening emergency for both the mother and the fetus. The occurrence rate for women undergoing a trial of labor after cesarean delivery ranges between 0.4% and 1% and includes a range of pathologic processes from cases of scar dehiscence to complete uterine wall rupture.[295] Other risk factors for uterine rupture include fetal malposition, instrumented delivery, macrosomia, excessive oxytocin administration, rapid delivery, trauma, and tumor. Typical clinical presentation includes fetal bradycardia, cessation of uterine contractions, abdominal pain, vaginal bleeding, and loss of station. A nonreassuring FHR tracing is the most reliable and sensitive clinical sign, and breakthrough pain may be present in only a minority of patients and unrelated to epidural use.[296-298] If trial of labor after cesarean delivery is the planned method of delivery, the American College of Gynecology recommends that an obstetrician, anesthesiologist, and nursing staff be immediately available to the laboring patient so that an emergent cesarean delivery and possible hemorrhage management can be started immediately if a rupture occurs.[299]

Uterine Atony

Postpartum uterine atony is the most common cause of severe postpartum hemorrhage. The associated hemorrhage is the leading cause of maternal death worldwide and is increasing in incidence.[226,300,301] Risk factors include chorioamnionitis; oxytocin use during labor, high parity, macrosomia, multiple births, prolonged labor, retained products of conception, and use of volatile anesthetics, magnesium sulfate, or terbutaline. After bimanual massage, oxytocin should be administered as the initial treatment and prophylactic drug for uterine atony. Specific dosing of oxytocin varies across institutions and countries.[302] Although the WHO recommends 20 international units of oxytocin administered in 1 L of crystalloid after uncomplicated cesarean delivery, less is likely needed in most situations.[303] There are advocates for more controlled modes of oxytocin administration including small doses immediately after delivery (3 international units administered over 30 seconds) and the use of an infusion pump. Although a dilute oxytocin solution administered over a long time has minimal hemodynamic effects and is typically well tolerated, larger doses and bolus infusion can result in significant hypotension, tachycardia, nausea, and headache. If oxytocin is not sufficient in controlling postpartum hemorrhage, methylergonovine 0.2 mg intramuscularly, carboprost (which is prostaglandin $F_2\alpha$ [$PGF_2\alpha$]) 0.25 mg intramuscularly, or misoprostol (which is a prostaglandin E_1 analog [PGE_1]) 600 to 800 µg orally, sublingually, vaginally, or rectally should be considered. These drugs can have a variety of side effects.[304] Side effects of methylergonovine, an ergot derivative, include nausea, hypertension (systemic and pulmonary), and coronary artery spasm, and it is relatively contraindicated in patients with preeclampsia and those with cardiac disease. $PGF_2\alpha$ is associated with pulmonary hypertension, bronchospasm, desaturation, nausea, and tachycardia, and is contraindicated in patients with asthma. PGE_1 does not have significant cardiovascular effects but may result in mild hyperthermia. If postpartum hemorrhage is not controlled with drugs, invasive and surgical techniques described in the following section should be considered.

Management of Massive Obstetric Hemorrhage

Successful management of a massive obstetric hemorrhage requires excellent communication and coordination of all perioperative disciplines, including anesthesiologists, obstetricians, labor and operating room nurses, neonatologists, interventional radiologists, gynecologic surgeons, and blood bank staff. Early diagnosis of hemorrhage and timely intervention are key to minimizing patient morbidity and mortality. Although few studies regarding hemorrhage in obstetrics exist, many studies have been published from the military and trauma hospitals regarding transfusion ratios and transfusion triggers. The development of a massive transfusion protocol has been beneficial in massive obstetric hemorrhage. Specific ratios of fresh frozen plasma (FFP) to packed red blood cells (PRBCs) for management of massive obstetric hemorrhage originate from nonobstetric settings and have been questioned by experts in obstetric hemorrhage in recent years.[305,306] Although frequent laboratory studies with use of point-of-care testing if available is optimal, transfusion of blood products should initially be guided by the clinical situation and patient assessment rather than waiting for laboratory values to return. Cryoprecipitate or fibrinogen concentrate should be considered if decreased fibrinogen is present or likely. TEG and rotational thromboelastometry (ROTEM) can be used as tools for both diagnosis and treatment of hemorrhage-related coagulopathy. Recombinant activated factor VII is not universally recommended as multiple adverse events have been reported to the FDA with the off-label use of treating massive hemorrhage with factor VIIa.[307-309]

Tranexamic acid is an antifibrinolytic that is used in trauma, cardiac surgery, and multiple surgical populations to decrease blood loss. It is a lysine analogue that binds to receptors on plasminogen and plasmin, which results in inhibition of plasmin-mediated fibrin degradation. A large randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial randomized 20,060 women to receive either tranexamic acid or placebo at the time postpartum hemorrhage was diagnosed. The authors found a reduction in death due to bleeding in women with postpartum hemorrhage if given within 3 hours (RR 0.69; 95% CI, 0.52-0.91; $P = .008$).[310] There was no difference between the two groups in terms of thromboembolic event or other side effects. In its most recent practice bulletin on postpartum hemorrhage, ACOG recommends that tranexamic acid should be considered when initial medical therapy for postpartum hemorrhage fails.[311] Tranexamic acid can cross the placenta and into breastmilk and it is recommended to wait until the cord is clamped to administer the drug. Evidence about the effectiveness of *prophylactic* administration of tranexamic acid to prevent postpartum hemorrhage is still lacking. A multicenter, double-blind, randomized, controlled trial randomized 4079 women to receive prophylactic tranexamic acid or placebo, in addition to oxytocin, after a vaginal delivery and found the use of tranexamic acid did not reduce risk of postpartum hemorrhage compared to placebo.[312,313] Tranexamic acid is contraindicated in patients with active venous thromboembolism, significant renal disease, and subarachnoid hemorrhage.

Cell salvage has been used successfully in numerous published cases of obstetric hemorrhage despite the theoretic concern of amniotic fluid embolism.[314,315] The use of a salvage device with a leukocyte reduction filter has been demonstrated to remove tissue factor, α-fetoprotein, fetal squamous cells, bacteria, and other undesirable contaminants.[316,317] Cell salvage can be especially helpful if the supply of autologous blood is limited for a patient or in the event a patient refuses blood products. Even when these scenarios do not exist, cell salvage has been shown to be cost-effective in cases of massive obstetric hemorrhage.[317] In parturients who are Rh negative, anti-D immunoglobulin should be used as soon as possible in coordination with Kleihauer-Betke testing to prevent alloimmunization because variable amounts of fetal RBCs will be transfused to the mother with use of cell salvage.

When standard resuscitation methods are not adequate to control the obstetric hemorrhage, the peripartum obstetric team should consider use of invasive options, including uterine balloon tamponade, compression sutures, ligation of uterine vessels, and use of interventional radiology for arterial embolization if the patient is stable for transport. Based on a systematic review of the literature, no single invasive option is significantly better than another, and all have success rates of approximately 85% to 90%.[318] If these options fail or are not feasible, a hysterectomy should be performed.

AMNIOTIC FLUID EMBOLISM

The incidence of amniotic fluid embolism (AFE) is difficult to estimate because the diagnosis is difficult to establish. The incidence varies between 1.7 and 7.7 per 100,000 deliveries.[319-321] Signs and symptoms of AFE include hypotension, respiratory distress, hypoxia, disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), altered mental status, and hemodynamic collapse. This constellation of clinical features must be differentiated from other more common conditions that mimic AFE (i.e., venous air embolism, pulmonary embolism, cardiac dysfunction, massive hemorrhage, and pulmonary aspiration). The mechanism of AFE remains unclear, but it is no longer believed to be embolic, but rather an anaphylactoid reaction.[319,322] Previously, AFE was diagnosed based on the presence of fetal squamous cells in the maternal pulmonary circulation at autopsy, but the presence of these cells is frequently noted in the pulmonary circulation of healthy pregnant women around the time of labor and delivery. Consequently, determining the occurrence of an AFE is a clinical diagnosis of exclusion and no diagnostic laboratory test for AFE currently exists, even postmortem. Early recognition and aggressive resuscitation may improve outcomes in both the mother and fetus. The priorities of resuscitation include oxygenation, hemodynamic support, and correction of coagulopathy.[323]

SHOULDER DYSTOCIA

Shoulder dystocia occurs when after the delivery of the head, the shoulders cannot be delivered secondary to impaction on the maternal pelvis. This is an obstetric emergency. It is associated with prolonged gestation, labor induction, obesity, high fetal weight, prolonged dilation from 8 to 10 cm, and epidural analgesia.[324,325] Prolonged gestation and slow difficult delivery make epidural analgesia more desirable, so the association between epidural analgesia and shoulder dystocia is not causal. However, epidural analgesia provides superior conditions for rescue of the infant in the case of shoulder dystocia. Recommended procedures for the management of shoulder dystocia include the McRoberts maneuver, in which the mother's legs are flexed and pushed tightly to her abdomen with application of suprapubic pressure.[326] The muscle relaxation and pain relief offered by epidural analgesia facilitate this process. However, the Gaskin maneuver requires placing the mother on her hands and knees, which may not be possible to sustain with the use of higher dose epidural local anesthetic because of inadequate motor strength. If these maneuvers are unsuccessful, pushing the fetus back into the pelvis and emergent cesarean delivery may be required. Deliveries with shoulder dystocia have an increased risk for postpartum hemorrhage and fourth-degree lacerations.[327]

OTHER OBSTETRIC EMERGENCIES

Certain urgent situations may occur around the time of labor and delivery that require tailored anesthetic care to optimize both the maternal and fetal outcome. Cord prolapse through the cervical os can result in abrupt fetal bradycardia. Rates of umbilical cord prolapse range between 0.1% and 0.6%.[328] The risk is significantly increased with the presence of transverse lie, breech presentation, multiple gestations, and an abnormally long umbilical cord. In addition, cord prolapse may occur around the time the membranes are ruptured if an abnormal fetal presentation is present or the mother has polyhydramnios. Diagnosis is confirmed with visualization or palpation of the cord in the vaginal canal below the presenting fetal part. Intervention typically consists of elevating the compressing fetal part back into the pelvis off of the cord until an urgent cesarean delivery can be performed. Use of an in situ epidural catheter or spinal technique can be considered as long as the FHR tracing is reassuring, but general anesthesia is frequently used in the event of fetal compromise.

Uterine inversion occurs in approximately 0.04% of deliveries[329] and is usually associated with hypotension, pain, and severe postpartum hemorrhage. Risk factors include excessive cord traction before placental separation, uterine atony, location of the placenta at the fundus, and the presence of placenta accreta. Treatment goals include relaxation of the uterus to aid replacement back through the cervix, maternal fluid resuscitation, and increased uterine tone after replacement to reduce postpartum hemorrhage. Initially, all uterotonic drugs should be immediately discontinued. Uterine relaxation can be quickly and reliably achieved using either intravenous nitroglycerin or volatile anesthetics.[330-332] The mother's hemodynamic condition may guide the choice of therapy. If the initial uterine intervention and replacement is not successful with nitroglycerin because of lack of relaxation, maternal pain, hemodynamic instability, or other logistics, transfer to the operating room should occur. A rapid sequence intubation with standard obstetric precautions followed by volatile anesthetic administration will allow needed uterine relaxation, pain control, and procedural conditions for uterine replacement. Only on rare occasions are vaginal maneuvers unsuccessful and laparotomy required. After uterine replacement, the uterine cavity should be explored for perforation, laceration, or retained products. After the uterus has been replaced, uterotonic drugs can be started.

Lacerations of the vagina, cervix, and perineum are the most common injuries associated with vaginal birth. Significant bleeding can be concealed in hematomas, and maternal hypotension and tachycardia may be the first signs of the injury. Retroperitoneal hematomas are rare but can represent substantial life-threatening blood loss that requires exploratory surgery. Anesthetic management to allow surgical repair or exploration depends on the hemodynamic state of the mother and can include use of local anesthetic at the site, neuraxial blockade, or—in severe hemodynamic compromise—use of general anesthesia. Equally important is the hemodynamic assessment and initiation of resuscitation efforts for the mother. Even small unrecognized lacerations can result in significant blood loss.

ADVANCED CARDIAC LIFE SUPPORT IN PREGNANCY

Cardiac arrest in pregnancy involves the simultaneous care of two patients, the mother and fetus. The protocol for advanced cardiac life support (ACLS) in pregnancy is similar to that recommended for other adult cardiac arrest situations; however, compression of the maternal great vessels by the pregnant uterus greatly impedes the success of external cardiac massage. First responders should utilize strategies to oxygenate the patient while laryngoscopy should be performed by providers with advanced airway management experience. Although pregnant women are at increased risk of aspiration, oxygenation and ventilation should remain primary objectives and take precedence over aspiration prevention strategies. Intravenous access should be placed above the diaphragm and the patient should be supine with manual displacement of the uterus. If there is no return of spontaneous circulation after 4 minutes of resuscitative efforts, consider performing immediate cesarean delivery at the site of cardiac arrest with an aim for delivery within 5 minutes of maternal cardiac arrest.[19] Although potentially beneficial for the fetus if viable, hysterotomy and delivery improves ACLS effectiveness.[333] If the maternal cardiac arrest may have been caused by local anesthetic toxicity, lipid rescue should be initiated.[334]

BOX 62.3 **Anesthetic Considerations for Nonobstetric Surgery in the Pregnant Patient**

- Postpone elective surgeries until after delivery.
- Regional anesthesia should be utilized when possible.
- Consider aspiration prophylaxis.
- Left uterine displacement to relieve aortocaval compression after 20 weeks' gestational age
- Consider intraoperative fetal monitoring.
- Regional anesthesia
  - Reduced local anesthetic requirements in pregnancy
- General anesthesia
  - Maximize preoxygenation
  - Rapid sequence induction
  - Avoid hypoxia and hypotension
  - Goal $ETCO_2$ 28-32 mm Hg. Avoid hyperventilation as hypocarbia can decrease placental blood flow secondary to uterine vasoconstriction.
  - Extubate when awake
- Fetal heart rate and uterine tone should be monitored postoperatively.
- Provide appropriate postoperative analgesia.

$ETCO_2$, End-tidal carbon dioxide.

Nonobstetric Surgery During Pregnancy

PERIOPERATIVE CONSIDERATIONS

Although elective surgery is not performed during pregnancy, ACOG recommends that pregnant women should not be denied a medically indicated procedure. Between 0.75% and 2% of pregnant women will require nonobstetric surgery. The most common indications for surgery include acute appendicitis and cholecystitis, maternal trauma, and cancer.[335] Box 62.3 provides a summary of the anesthetic considerations for the pregnant patient.

ANESTHETIC TOXICITY

All general anesthetic drugs cross the placenta; however, when standard dosing is used, current anesthetic drugs have not been shown to be teratogenic in humans. Although no clear evidence exists for toxicity of specific anesthetic drugs in humans, data in rodents and primates suggest that exposure to general anesthetic drugs, including volatile anesthetics, propofol, and ketamine, induce inappropriate neuronal apoptosis that is associated with long-lasting behavioral abnormalities.[336-338] These preclinical results are concerning, but whether these drugs cause toxicity in humans is not known. The critical period of rapid synaptic development is extended in humans from the prenatal period through 2 years of postnatal life.[339] Analyses of existing human data have found conflicting evidence and the results of these studies are difficult to interpret because the reason for anesthesia cannot be separated from the impact of anesthesia (see Chapter 77). Studies reveal no association between surgery and major birth defects, but there may be a small increase in the risk for preterm delivery or miscarriage, especially with abdominal surgeries.[340-342] In general, the second trimester is preferred for surgical intervention because this is a period after organogenesis but the risk for preterm labor is less than in the third trimester. In 2016, the FDA issued a warning that repeated or lengthy use of general anesthetic drugs during surgery in children less than 3 years of age or in pregnant women in the third trimester may affect the development of children's brains. There is concern that the warning could delay necessary surgeries or procedures and result in adverse outcomes for these patients especially as there is lack of data regarding adverse consequences of human fetal exposure to anesthesia.[343]

Monitoring for contractions is recommended, and in some situations suppression with tocolysis may be appropriate. Because the long-term impact of general anesthesia on the fetus is unknown, regional anesthesia is favored when possible for the surgical procedure but should not be undertaken unless both the anesthesiologist and surgeon are experienced in using the technique for a given procedure, and the mother is comfortable being awake.

PERIOPERATIVE FETAL HEART RATE MONITORING

Fetal well-being should be monitored in the perioperative period. ACOG recommends in a previable pregnancy, fetal heart rate measurement by Doppler before and after the procedure. In a viable fetus, minimum recommendations include electronic FHR monitoring and contraction monitoring before and after the procedure. Continuous intraoperative fetal monitoring is often used and FHR variability is a reliable sign of fetal well-being. Under general anesthesia, loss of FHR variability is expected while fetal bradycardia is more concerning and can be affected by hypothermia, maternal acidosis, or the maternal administration of drugs such as particular β-blockers that can cross the placenta and reduce FHR. The type of fetal monitoring is a decision that should be made in consultation with an obstetrician and should be based on an assessment of the individual patient and gestational age, procedure, and facilities available.[344]

ANESTHETIC MANAGEMENT

To minimize fetal exposure to anesthesia, regional anesthesia is preferred when possible to general anesthesia for nonobstetric surgery in pregnancy. Preoxygenation followed by a rapid sequence induction and endotracheal tube placement are recommended for general anesthesia. Starting in the second trimester, the increase in peripheral blood flow induced by pregnancy results in airway edema and friability. Pregnant women are at increased risk of difficult intubation and advanced airway equipment should be readily available prior to intubation. Equally important to anesthetic technique is avoidance of decreased uterine blood flow and oxygen delivery to the fetus as uterine blood flow is not autoregulated. Considerations similar to those discussed in the section on anesthesia for cesarean delivery should be undertaken for any nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy. The anesthetic plan should optimize both the maternal and fetal condition. Perioperative team planning should include consultation with an obstetrician regarding plans for unexpected events, including need for emergent cesarean delivery.

POSTOPERATIVE PAIN CONTROL

Maternal pain control after nonobstetric surgery is important to maternal well-being and could theoretically decrease the risk of preterm labor, especially after abdominal surgery. Multimodal analgesia is recommended. When intraoperative regional anesthesia with an epidural is used, it often can be continued for postoperative analgesia. Postoperative systemic opioids, including those used in patient-controlled analgesia, cross the placenta and may reduce FHR variability. If the fetus is born prematurely shortly after exposure to maternal systemic opioids, respiratory support may be necessary. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, though useful adjuvant analgesics outside of pregnancy, are typically avoided in pregnancy. They are associated with an increased risk for miscarriage and fetal malformation when used early in pregnancy and premature closure of the ductus arteriosus and oligohydramnios when used after 30 weeks' gestation.[345] Acetaminophen, oral or intravenous, is generally accepted as safe in pregnancy.

After surgery, both the FHR and uterine activity should be monitored. Preterm labor can be managed with appropriate tocolytic drugs. Distracting pain and postoperative pain relief medications may make it difficult for the patient to note early contractions and patient perception should not be considered a substitute for standard fetal and contraction monitoring postoperatively. In addition, thromboprophylaxis should be instituted unless surgically contraindicated.

SPECIFIC SURGICAL TECHNIQUES

Laparoscopy

Surgery for appendicitis and cholecystitis are common in pregnancy. These surgeries are typically performed with a laparoscopic technique outside of pregnancy and are increasingly more common in pregnancy because of reduced morbidity for the mother and potentially a decreased incidence of preterm labor as a result of reduced manipulation of the uterus.[346] A recent meta-analysis of 20 studies involving 6210 pregnant women found open appendectomy may have a slightly less frequent rate of fetal mortality and prolonged gestation compared with laparoscopic appendectomy, although hospital length of stay and overall complications were more frequent.[347] However, a study of over 2 million pregnancies in Sweden comparing laparoscopies and laparotomies found no difference in fetal outcome between the two techniques.[348] Left uterine displacement should be maintained after the second trimester to facilitate uterine perfusion. With increased abdominal pressure from insufflation, maternal cardiac output and uteroplacental perfusion may decrease. Thus the smallest possible intraabdominal pressure should be used.

According to the guidelines issued by the Society of American Gastrointestinal Endoscopic Surgeons regarding laparoscopic surgery during pregnancy,[349] whenever possible, surgery should be deferred to the second trimester and indications for the use of laparoscopic techniques are the same as in nonpregnant patients. Normocapnia should be maintained, and fetal and uterine status should be monitored. During laparoscopic surgery, gradients between end-tidal CO_2 and arterial CO_2 are typically less than 3 mm Hg, and although some anesthesia providers feel that arterial blood gas monitoring is not needed unless otherwise indicated,[350] many may choose to follow $PaCO_2$ to be sure to avoid hypercapnia or hypocapnia. An open technique is preferred to enter the abdomen. Aortocaval compression should be avoided. Finally, low pneumoperitoneal pressure (15 mm Hg) should be used. A systematic review of laparoscopic surgery for appendicitis during pregnancy noted that trimester timing did not influence the complication rate, the need for conversion to open was less than 1%, and there was a lower rate of preterm delivery with laparoscopic in contrast to the open approach.[351]

Trauma

The most common nonobstetric cause of maternal death in the United States is trauma. Initial primary and secondary survey should be directed toward maternal well-being, with consideration of the physiologic changes induced by pregnancy. Gestational age is an important variable in trauma evaluation. During the first trimester, the fetus is protected by the bony pelvis and damage is unlikely in the absence of severe hypoperfusion. However, as pregnancy progresses, the uterus is not only exposed but also causes pressure on the maternal inferior vena cava and aorta, potentially compromising perfusion and resuscitation. After 20 weeks' gestation, left uterine displacement should be implemented as the initial step. Blunt trauma carries a risk for intrauterine fetal demise, fetal injury, placental abruption, and uterine rupture. These dangers should be evaluated with fetal heart monitoring, ultrasonography, computed tomography, or exploratory laparotomy when indicated.[352] The consequences for ACLS are discussed earlier in the chapter.

Cardiac Surgery

The hemodynamic changes of pregnancy can exacerbate the symptoms of some preexisting heart diseases. The increase in intravascular volume and cardiac output can result in heart failure and arrhythmias in patients with moderate to severe mitral or aortic valvular stenosis. These patients may require a cardiac intervention during pregnancy. Percutaneous balloon valvuloplasty may obviate open cardiac intervention in pregnancy and has been associated with reduced fetal and neonatal mortality.[353,354] Cardiopulmonary bypass increases risk to the fetus as a result of nonpulsatile perfusion, low perfusion pressures, emboli to the uteroplacental unit, and maternal release of catecholamines.[355] Higher pump flows (>2.5 L/min/m^2) and perfusion pressures (>70 mm Hg) are recommended to support uteroplacental blood flow.[356,357] Normothermic bypass and pulsatile flow may better preserve uteroplacental perfusion and improve fetal survival. Hypothermic (versus normothermic) bypass has been associated with greater fetal loss. Hypocapnia should be avoided because it causes uteroplacental vasoconstriction and decreased oxygen delivery to the fetus. Likewise, hypercapnia causes fetal acidosis.

Neurosurgery

Intracranial hemorrhage secondary to aneurysm rupture or arteriovenous malformation can be a neurosurgical emergency made more complex by pregnancy. The risk for intracranial hemorrhage is increased by hypertensive diseases of pregnancy. In patients who are not pregnant, usual anesthetic treatment might include controlled hypotension, hyperventilation, and osmotic diuresis. Such techniques need to be conducted with particular care in pregnancy. Reduction of mean arterial pressure below 70 mm Hg may significantly reduce uteroplacental perfusion and use of fetal monitoring should be considered as a guide to fetal well-being. Extreme hyperventilation can cause uterine artery vasoconstriction and reduce uterine perfusion. Hyperventilation also shifts the maternal oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve to the left, which decreases oxygen delivery to the fetus. Osmotic diuresis, used to reduce brain edema, could theoretically decrease amniotic fluid volume and cause negative fluid shifts in the fetus. In animal studies, mannitol may accumulate in the fetus, leading to hyperosmolarity, reduced renal blood flow, and increased plasma sodium concentration.[358] A case report of a single dose of mannitol used for awake craniotomy in a pregnant patient revealed a reduction of intrauterine volume with subsequent volume recovery after 48 hours and no fetal adverse effects.[359] Loop diuretics are an alternative to osmotic diuretics but should be used with care and monitoring of amniotic fluid volume.

Acknowledgment

The editors and the publisher would like to thank Drs. Pamela Flood and Mark D. Rollins for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this book. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Coryell MN, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1950;29:1559.
2. Wu PY, et al. *J Perinat Med*. 1983;11:193.
3. Katz R, et al. *Circulation*. 1978;58(3 Pt 1):434.
4. Ueland K, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1969;104(6):856.
5. Robson SC, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1989;256(4 Pt 2):H1060.
6. Clark SL, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1989;161(6 Pt 1):1439.
7. Conklin KA. *Semin Anesth*. 1991;10(4):221.
8. Hunter S, Robson SC. *Br Heart J*. 1992;68(6):540.
9. Robson SC, et al. *BMJ(Clinical research ed)*. 1987;295(6607):1169.
10. Robson SC, et al. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol*. 1987;94(11):1028.
11. Poppas A, et al. *Circulation*. 1997;95(10):2407.
12. Iwasaki R, et al. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 2002;81:918.
13. Wilson M, et al. *Am J Med*. 1980;68(1):97.
14. Mabie WC, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1994;170(3):849.
15. Higuchi H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(2):286.
16. Kinsella SM, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1994;83(5 Pt 1):774.
17. Lee AJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(2):241.
18. Jeejeebhoy FM, et al. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18):1747.
19. Lipman S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(5):1003.
20. Munnur U, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(suppl 10):S259.
21. Mushambi MC, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(11):1286.
22. Kambam JR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(4):426.
23. Crapo RO. *Clin Obstet Gynecol*. 1996;39(1):3.
24. Tan PCF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2019;122(1):86.
25. Marrero JM, et al. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol*. 1992;99:731.
26. Wong CA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:751.
27. Ewah B, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 1993;2:125.
28. Shnider SM. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:335.
29. Weissman DB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62:444.
30. Leighton BL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:202.
31. Dietrich 3rd CS, et al. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2008;88:403. vii.
32. Dafnis E, Sabatini S. *Am J Med Sci*. 1992;303(3):184.
33. Acker DB, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1985;153(7):737.
34. Taylor DJ, et al. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol*. 1981;88(6):601.
35. Kjellberg U, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 1999;81(4):527.
36. Tygart SG, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1986;154:883.
37. Othman M, et al. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2010;36:738.
38. Karlsson O, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:890.
39. Palahniuk RJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41:82.
40. Datta S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68:46.
41. Gin T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:829.
42. Ueyama H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:577.
43. Fagraeus L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:184.
44. Thaler I, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1990;162(1):121.
45. Konje JC, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2001;185(3):608.
46. Ralston DH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40:354.
47. Allen TK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1221.
48. Lee A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:920.
49. Ngan Kee WD, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:469.
50. Ngan Kee WD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:506.
51. Haydon ML, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2006;195:735.
52. Richardson BS. *Clin Perinatol*. 1989;16:595.
53. Edelstone DI. *Semin Perinatol*. 1984;8:184.
54. Myllynen P, et al. *Placenta*. 2005;26(5):361.
55. Ala-Kokko TI, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41(2):313.
56. Biehl D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;48:409.
57. Yao AC, et al. *Lancet*. 1969;2:871.
58. Morris JA, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1974;118:927.

59. Ramirez MM. *Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am*. 2011;38:215.
60. Debiec J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1093.
61. Laughon SK, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2012;419:206.
62. Obstetric care consensus no. 1: safe prevention of the primary cesarean delivery. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2014;123(3):693–711.
63. Zhang J, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;116(6):1281.
64. Miller RS, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;137:205.
65. Reitman E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:927.
66. Terkawi AS, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2012;207:184.
67. Zhang J, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;326:203.
68. Vahratian A, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2004;104(5 Pt 1):943.
69. Algovik M, et al. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 2004;83:832.
70. Martin JA, et al. *Natl Vital Stat Rep*. 2003;52(1).
71. Nielsen PV, et al. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 1987;66:421.
72. Beaulieu MD, et al. *Can Med Assoc J*. 1982;127:214.
73. Alfirevic Z, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;3:CD006066.
74. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2009;114:192.
75. Mercier FJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:1117.
76. Jensen A, et al. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol*. 1999;84(155).
77. Parer JT, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2007;26:197.
78. Macones GA, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2008;112(3):661.
79. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106:1453.
80. Parer JT, et al. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2006;19:289.
81. Xu J, et al. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2012;24:65.
82. Jones L, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;3:CD009234.
83. Smith CA, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;2:CD009290.
84. Stefanidou M, et al. *J Hist Neurosci*. 2007;16:351.
85. Ramsay MA. *Proc (Bayl Univ Med Cent)*. 2006;19:24.
86. Gaskin IM. *Midwifery Today Int Midwife*. 2003;66:38.
87. Wu HC, et al. *Chin Med J (Engl)*. 2009;122:1743.
88. Cho SH, et al. *BJOG*. 2010;117:907.
89. Chang MY, et al. *J Adv Nurs*. 2002;38:68.
90. Madden K, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;(5):CD009356.
91. Declercq ER, et al. *J Perinat Educ*. 2007;16:15.
92. Practice guidelines for obstetric anesthesia: an updated Report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Obstetric Anesthesia and the Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(2):270.
93. Olofsson C, et al. *Baillieres Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 1998;12:409.
94. Nissen E, et al. *Acta Paediatr*. 1997;86:201.
95. Rayburn W, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1989;161:202.
96. Coonen JB, et al. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2010;161:1472.
97. Kan RE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1467.
98. Leong WL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:818.
99. Liu ZQ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(3):598.
100. Jelting Y, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72(8):1016.
101. Likis FE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(1):153.
102. Richardson MG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(2):548.
103. Westling F, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36:175.
104. Carstoniu J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:30.
105. Yentis MY, Cohen SE. Inhalational analgesia and anesthesia for labor and vaginal delivery. In: Hughes SC, Levinson G, Rosen MA, eds. *Shnider and Levinson's Anesthesia for Obstetrics*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2002:189.
106. Anim-Somuah M, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;12:CD000331.
107. Thorp JA, et al. *Am J Perinatol*. 1991;8:402.
108. Wong CA, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2009;113:1066.
109. Wong CA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:655.
110. Sharma SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:546.
111. Wong CA. *Semin Perinatol*. 2012;36:353.
112. Wang F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:871.
113. Halpern SH, Leighton BL. Epidural analgesia and the progress of labor. In: Halpern SH, Douglas MJ, eds. *Evidence-Based Obstetric Anesthesia*. Malden, Mass: BMJ Books, Blackwell; 2005:10.
114. Sharma SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:142; discussion, p 6A.
115. Shen X, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;130(5):1097.
116. Gillesby E, et al. *J Obstet Gynecol Neonatal Nurs*. 2010;39:635.
117. Cahill AG, et al. *JAMA*. 2018;320(14):1444.
118. Jango H, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2014;210(1):59 e51.
119. Wassen MM, et al. *BJOG*. 2011;118:655.
120. Gaiser RR. *J Clin Anesth*. 2003;15:474.
121. McKenzie CP, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(3):405–410.
122. Simmons SW, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;10:CD003401.
123. Pan PH, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2004;13(4):227.
124. Booth JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(3):516.
125. Thomas JA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(5):1046.
126. Wilson SH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(2):545.
127. Chau A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(2):560.
128. Gambling DR, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1988;35(3 Pt 1):249.
129. Chestnut DH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68(5):754.
130. Collis RE, et al. *Lancet*. 1995;345:1413.
131. Niemi G, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42:897.
132. Meert TF, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 1989;40:247.
133. Eisenach JC. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:293.
134. Owen MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:361.
135. Nelson KE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1293.
136. Booth JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(1):50.
137. O'Meara ME, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:651.
138. Eisenach JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:51.
139. Sabbe MB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1057.
140. Selim MF, et al. *J Prenat Med*. 2012;6:47.
141. Zhao Y, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2017;33(4):319.
142. van der Vyver M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(3):459.
143. McKenzie CP, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2016;26:32.
144. Wong CA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(3):904.
145. Lim Y, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2005;14(4):305.
146. Novikova N, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;4:CD009200.
147. Jensen F, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1984;64:724.
148. Nikkola EM, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2000;16:597.
149. Philipson EH. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 1984;63:187.
150. Morishima HO, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1981;140:775.
151. Guillozet N. *Pediatrics*. 1975;55:533.
152. Pace MC, et al. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2004;1034:356.
153. Langhoff-Roos J, et al. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 1985;64:269.
154. MacDorman MF, et al. *Clin Perinatol*. 2008;35:293.
155. Martin JA, et al: Births: Final data for 2016. In: Statistics NCfH, ed. *National Vital Statistics Reports*. Vol. 67. Hyattsville, MD2018.
156. Creanga AA, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;125(1):5.
157. Clark SL, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2008;199:36; discussion, p 91.
158. Hawkins JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:277.
159. Hawkins JL, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;117:69.
160. Janda M, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;20:409.
161. Kalinowski CP, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2004;18:719.
162. Fettes PD, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:739.
163. Riley ET, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:709.
164. Cyna AM, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;4:CD002251.
165. Chooi C, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;8:CD002251.
166. Smiley RM. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:470.
167. Heesen M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(2):143.
168. Ngan Kee WD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(4):736.
169. Norris MC. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:555.
170. Katz D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
171. Crespo S, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2017;32:64.
172. Palmer CM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(2):437.
173. Sviggum HP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(3):690.
174. Bjornestad E, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50:358.
175. Gaiser RR, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 1998;7:27.
176. Palmer CM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(4):887.
177. Hamlyn EL, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2005;14(4):355.
178. American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on management of the difficult airway. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1269.
179. Bailey SG, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2005;14:270.
180. Han TH, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48:1117.
181. Pandit JJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(4):549.
182. Mhyre JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(6):1096.
183. Mhyre JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1096.
184. Dailland P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:827.
185. Gregory MA, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:514.
186. Crozier TA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70:47.
187. Little B, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1972;113:247.
188. Kvisselgaard N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1961;22:7.
189. Abouleish E, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:336.
190. Magorian T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:913.
191. Kivalo I, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1972;44:557.
192. Lertakyamanee J, et al. *J Med Assoc Thai*. 1999;82:672.
193. Afolabi BB, Lesi FE. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;10:CD004350.
194. Eisenach JC, et al. *Pain*. 2008;140(1):87.

195. Bateman BT, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;215(3):353.e351.
196. Bonnet MP, et al. *Eur J Pain (London, England)*. 2010;14(9):894–e891.
197. Mishriky BM, et al. *Can J Anaesth = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 2012;59(8):766–778.
198. Blanco R, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(6):757.
199. Bamigboye AA, Hofmeyr GJ. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;(3): CD006954.
200. Van de Velde M, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2008;17:329.
201. Ross BK, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1992;17:29.
202. Choi PT, et al. *Can J Anaesth = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 2003;50(5):460.
203. Booth JL, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2017;29:10.
204. Russell IF. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2012;21(7).
205. Basurto Ona X, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;(7):CD007887.
206. Paech MJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(1):126.
207. D'Angelo R, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(6):1505.
208. Bateman BT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:1380.
209. Horlocker TT, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(3):263.
210. Leffert L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(3):928.
211. Reynolds F. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56(3):238.
212. Reynolds F. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2008;26:23.
213. Moen V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:950.
214. Cook TM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:179.
215. Wong CA, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2003;101(2):279.
216. Griffiths JD, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(6):996.
217. Neal JM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(2):113.
218. McKenzie AG, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:497.
219. Green LK, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2010;19:38.
220. Bacterial meningitis after intrapartum spinal anesthesia - New York and Ohio, 2008-2009. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. 2010;59(3):65.
221. Hebl JR. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(4):311.
222. Practice Advisory for the Prevention, Diagnosis, and Management of Infectious Complications Associated with Neuraxial Techniques: An Updated Report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Infectious Complications Associated with Neuraxial Techniques and the American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(4):585.
223. Goetzl L, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2007;109:687.
224. Unal ER, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;223:204.
225. Hutcheon JA, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 2011;25:391.
226. Say L, et al. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2014;2(6):e323.
227. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Task force on hypertension in pregnancy. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;122:1122.
228. Sibai BM. *Clin Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;48:478.
229. Committee Opinion No. 692. Emergent therapy for acute-onset, severe hypertension during pregnancy and the postpartum period. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;129(4):e90.
230. Vandermeulen EP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:1165.
231. Hood DD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1276.
232. Walace DH, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1995;86:193.
233. Kadir RA, et al. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2011;37:640.
234. Bockenstedt PL. *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am*. 2011;25:293.
235. Matthews JH, et al. *Acta Haematol*. 1990;84:24.
236. George JN, et al. *Blood*. 1996;88:3.
237. Lee LO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(6):1053.
238. Chi C, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 2012;26:103.
239. Chi C, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 2009;101:1104.
240. Tufano A, et al. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2011;37:908.
241. Kujovich JL. *Genet Med*. 2011;13:1.
242. Vahratian A, et al. *Ann Epidemiol*. 2005;15:467.
243. Davies GA, et al. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can*. 2010;32:165.
244. Roofthooft E. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:341.
245. Tonidandel A, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2014;23(4):357.
246. Chanimov M, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22:614.
247. Lupton M, et al. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2002;14:137.
248. Regitz-Zagrosek V, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2011;32(24):3147.
249. Canobbio MM, et al. *Circulation*. 2017;135(8):e50.
250. Nishimura RA, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;129(23):e521.
251. Siu SC, et al. *Circulation*. 2001;104(5):515.
252. Drenthen W, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2010;31(17):2124.
253. Lu CW, et al. *Circ J: Official Journal of the Japanese Circulation Society*. 2015;79(7):1609.
254. Ismail MT, et al. *Arch Gynecol Obstet*. 2012;286:1375–1381.
255. Volmanen P, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:235.
256. Schatz M, et al. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2003;112(2):283.
257. Wang G, et al. The journal of maternal-fetal & neonatal medicine : the official journal of the European Association of Perinatal Medicine, the Federation of Asia and Oceania Perinatal Societies. *International Society of Perinatal Obstet*. 2014;27(9):934.
258. Brito V, et al. *Clin Chest Med*. 2011;32:121. ix.
259. Mosby LG, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;205(1):10.
260. Husemeyer RP, et al. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol*. 1980;87:565.
261. Chetty SP, et al. *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 2011;66:765.
262. Vukusic S, et al. *Brain: A Journal of Neurology*. 2004;127(Pt 6):1353.
263. Bader AM, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1988;1(1):21.
264. Youngs P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:745; author reply, p 745.
265. Spiegel JE, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2005;14:336.
266. Bateman BT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(5):1216.
267. Maeda A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(6):1158.
268. Jones HE, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(24):2320.
269. Hickok DE, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1992;166(3):851.
270. Magro-Malosso ER, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;215(3):276.
271. Sullivan JT, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2009;18(4):328.
272. Chalifoux LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(4):625.
273. Goetzinger KR, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;118:1137.
274. Yoshida M, et al. *J Perinatol*. 2010;30:580.
275. Lavoie A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57:408.
276. Alkema L, et al. *Lancet (London, England)*. 2016;387(10017):462.
277. Knight MBK, et al., ed. *Saving Lives, Improving Mothers' Care - Lessons learned to inform future maternity care from the UK and Ireland Confidential Enquiries into Maternal Deaths and Morbidity 2014-16*. 2018.
278. Scavone BM, Main EK. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(1):14.
279. Main EK, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;216(3):298.e291.
280. Mhyre JM. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25:277.
281. Callaghan WM, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2012;120:1029.
282. Berg CJ, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106:1228.
283. Snegovskikh D, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:274.
284. Thurn L, et al. *BJOG*. 2016;123(8):1348.
285. Fitzpatrick K, et al. *BJOG*. 2014;121(1):62.
286. Dwyer BK, et al. *J Ultrasound Med*. 2008;27:1275.
287. Silver RM, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2006;107:1226.
288. Salazar GM, et al. *Tech Vasc Interv Radiol*. 2009;12:139.
289. Mok M, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2008;17:255.
290. Angstmann T, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;38:202.
291. Gagnon R, et al. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2010;108:85.
292. Oyelese Y, Smulian JC. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2006;107:927.
293. Oyelese Y, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2004;103(5 Pt 1):937.
294. Saftlas AF, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1991;78(6):1081.
295. Kaczmarczyk M, et al. *BJOG*. 2007;114:1208.
296. Johnson C, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1990;15:304.
297. Molloy BG, et al. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)*. 1987;294:1645.
298. Farmer RM, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1991;165(4 Pt 1):996.
299. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;116(2 Pt 1):450.
300. Knight M, et al. *BMC Pregnancy Childbirth*. 2009;9:55.
301. Hogberg U. *Scand J Public Health*. 2005;33:409.
302. Dyer RA, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:255.
303. Butwick AJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:338.
304. Vercauteren M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53:701.
305. Collis RE, Collins PW. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(suppl 1):78–86. e27.
306. Ducloy-Bouthors AS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(5):1140.
307. O'Connell KA, et al. *JAMA*. 2006;295:293.
308. Franchini M, et al. *Clin Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;53:219.
309. Ahonen J. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25:309.
310. Effect of early tranexamic acid administration on mortality, hysterectomy, and other morbidities in women with post-partum haemorrhage (WOMAN): an international, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet (London, England)*. 2017;389(10084):2105.
311. Practice Bulletin No. 183. Postpartum Hemorrhage. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;130(4):e168.
312. Sentilhes L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;379(8):731.
313. Sentilhes L, et al. *BMC pregnancy and childbirth*. 2015;15:135.
314. Goodnough LT. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2005;23:241.
315. Grainger H, et al. *J Perioper Pract*. 2011;21:264.
316. Waters JH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1531.
317. Lim G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(2):328.
318. Doumouchtsis SK, et al. *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 2007;62:540.

319. Moore J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(suppl 10):S279.
320. Fitzpatrick KE, et al. *BJOG*. 2016;123(1):100.
321. Abenhaim HA, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2008;199(1):49–e41.
322. Tuffnell DJ. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2003;15:119.
323. Dean LS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(1):186.
324. Hopwood Jr . *HG: Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1982;144:162.
325. Mollberg M, et al. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 2005;84:654.
326. Kish K, Collea J. Malpresentation & cord prolapse. In: Nathan L, ed. *Current Obstetric & Gynecologic Diagnosis & Treatment*. New York: Lange/McGraw-Hill; 2003:382.
327. Sokol RJ, et al. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2003;80:87.
328. Lin MG. *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 2006;61:269.
329. Watson P, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1980;55:12.
330. Catanzarite VA, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1986;68(suppl 3):7S.
331. Smith GN, et al. *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 1998;53:559.
332. Hong RW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:511.
333. Morris S, et al. *BMJ*. 2003;327:1277.
334. Bern S, et al. *Curr Pharm Biotechnol*. 2011;12:313.
335. Goodman S. *Semin Perinatol*. 2002;26:136.
336. Rizzi S, et al. *Brain Pathol*. 2008;18:198.
337. Palanisamy A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:521.
338. Slikker Jr W, et al. *Toxicol Sci*. 2007;98:145.
339. Casey BJ, et al. *Curr Opin Neurobiol*. 2005;15:239.
340. Mazze RI, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1989;161:1178.
341. Shnider SM, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1965;92:891.
342. Czeizel AE, et al. *Arch Gynecol Obstet*. 1998;261:193.
343. Andropoulos DB, Greene MF. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(10):905.
344. Committee Opinion No. 696. Nonobstetric Surgery During Pregnancy. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;129(4):777.
345. Antonucci R, et al. *Curr Drug Metab*. 2012;13:474.
346. Reynolds JD, et al. *Curr Surg*. 2003;60:164.
347. Prodromidou A, et al. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol*. 2018;225:40.
348. Reedy MB, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1997;177:673.
349. Soper NJ. *Surg Endosc*. 2011;25:3477.
350. Bhavani-Shankar K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:370.
351. Walsh CA, et al. *Int J Surg*. 2008;6:339.
352. Mirza FG, et al. *Am J Perinatol*. 2010;27:579.
353. de Souza JA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2001;37:900.
354. Onderoglu L, et al. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 1995;49:181.
355. Kuczkowski KM. *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 2004;59:52.
356. John AS, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2011;91:1191.
357. Arnoni RT, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;76:1605.
358. Lumbers ER, et al. *J Physiol*. 1983;343:439.
359. Handlogten KS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(5):1099.

References

1. Coryell MN, Beach EF, Robinson AR, et al. Metabolism of women during the reproductive cycle. XVII. Changes in electrophoretic patterns of plasma proteins throughout the cycle and following delivery. *J Clin Invest*. 1950;29:1559–1567.
2. Wu PY, Udani V, Chan L, et al. Colloid osmotic pressure: variations in normal pregnancy. *J Perinat Med*. 1983;11:193–199.
3. Katz R, Karliner JS, Resnik R. Effects of a natural volume overload state (pregnancy) on left ventricular performance in normal human subjects. *Circulation*. 1978;58(3 Pt 1):434–441.
4. Ueland K, Novy MJ, Peterson EN, Metcalfe J. Maternal cardiovascular dynamics. IV. The influence of gestational age on the maternal cardiovascular response to posture and exercise. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1969;104(6):856–864.
5. Robson SC, Hunter S, Boys RJ, Dunlop W. Serial study of factors influencing changes in cardiac output during human pregnancy. *Am J Physiol*. 1989;256(4 Pt 2):H1060–1065.
6. Clark SL, Cotton DB, Lee W, et al. Central hemodynamic assessment of normal term pregnancy. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1989;161(6 Pt 1):1439–1442.
7. Conklin KA. Maternal physiological adaptations during gestation, labor, and the puerperium. *Semin Anesth*. 1991;10(4):221–234.
8. Hunter S, Robson SC. Adaptation of the maternal heart in pregnancy. *Br Heart J*. 1992;68(6):540–543.
9. Robson SC, Dunlop W, Boys RJ, Hunter S. Cardiac output during labour. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)*. 1987;295(6607):1169–1172.
10. Robson SC, Hunter S, Moore M, Dunlop W. Haemodynamic changes during the puerperium: a Doppler and M-mode echocardiographic study. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol*. 1987;94(11):1028–1039.
11. Poppas A, Shroff SG, Korcarz CE, et al. Serial assessment of the cardiovascular system in normal pregnancy. Role of arterial compliance and pulsatile arterial load. *Circulation*. 1997;95(10):2407–2415.
12. Iwasaki R, Ohkuchi A, Furata I, et al. Relationship between blood pressure level in early pregnancy and subsequent changes in blood pressure during pregnancy. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 2002;81:918–925.
13. Wilson M, Morganti AA, Zervoudakis I, et al. Blood pressure, the renin-aldosterone system and sex steroids throughout normal pregnancy. *Am J Med*. 1980;68(1):97–104.
14. Mabie WC, DiSessa TG, Crocker LG, Sibai BM, Arheart KL. A longitudinal study of cardiac output in normal human pregnancy. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1994;170(3):849–856.
15. Higuchi H, Takagi S, Zhang K, Furui I, Ozaki M. Effect of lateral tilt angle on the volume of the abdominal aorta and inferior vena cava in pregnant and nonpregnant women determined by magnetic resonance imaging. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(2):286–293.
16. Kinsella SM, Lohmann G. Supine hypotensive syndrome. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1994;83(5 Pt 1):774–788.
17. Lee AJ, Landau R, Mattingly JL, et al. Left lateral table tilt for elective cesarean delivery under spinal anesthesia has no effect on neonatal acid-base status: a randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(2):241–249.
18. Jeejeebhoy FM, Zelop CM, Lipman S, et al. Cardiac arrest in pregnancy: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18):1747–1773.
19. Lipman S, Cohen S, Einav S, et al. The Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology consensus statement on the management of cardiac arrest in pregnancy. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(5):1003–1016.
20. Munnur U, de Boisblanc B, Suresh MS. Airway problems in pregnancy. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(suppl 10):S259–S268.
21. Mushambi MC, Kinsella SM, Popat M, et al. Obstetric Anaesthetists' Association and Difficult Airway Society guidelines for the management of difficult and failed tracheal intubation in obstetrics. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(11):1286–1306.
22. Kambam JR, Handte RE, Brown WU, Smith BE. Effect of normal and preeclamptic pregnancies on the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(4):426–427.
23. Crapo RO. Normal cardiopulmonary physiology during pregnancy. *Clin Obstet Gynecol*. 1996;39(1):3–16.
24. Tan PCF, Millay OJ, Leeton L, Dennis AT. High-flow humidified nasal preoxygenation in pregnant women: a prospective observational study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2019;122(1):86–91.
25. Marrero JM, Goggin PM, de Caestecker JS, et al. Determinants of pregnancy heartburn. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol*. 1992;99:731–734.
26. Wong CA, McCarthy RJ, Fitzgerald PC, et al. Gastric emptying of water in obese pregnant women at term. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:751–755.
27. Ewah B, Yau K, King M, et al. Effect of epidural opioids on gastric emptying in labour. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 1993;2:125–128.
28. Shnider SM. Serum cholinesterase activity during pregnancy, labor and the puerperium. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:335–339.
29. Weissman DB, Ehrenwerth J. Prolonged neuromuscular blockade in a parturient associated with succinylcholine. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62:444–446.
30. Leighton BL, Cheek TG, Gross JB, et al. Succinylcholine pharmacodynamics in peripartum patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;64:202–205.
31. Dietrich 3rd CS, Hill CC, Hueman M. Surgical diseases presenting in pregnancy. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2008;88:403–419, vii-viii.
32. Dafnis E, Sabatini S. The effect of pregnancy on renal function: physiology and pathophysiology. *Am J Med Sci*. 1992;303(3):184–205.
33. Acker DB, Johnson MP, Sachs BP, Friedman EA. The leukocyte count in labor. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1985;153(7):737–739.
34. Taylor DJ, Phillips P, Lind T. Puerperal haematological indices. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol*. 1981;88(6):601–606.
35. Kjellberg U, Andersson NE, Rosen S, Tengborn L, Hellgren M. APC resistance and other haemostatic variables during pregnancy and puerperium. *Thromb Haemost*. 1999;81(4):527–531.
36. Tygart SG, McRovan DK, Spinnato JA, et al. Longitudinal study of platelet indices during normal pregnancy. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1986;154:883–887.
37. Othman M, Falcon BJ, Kadir R. Global hemostasis in pregnancy: are we using thromboelastography to its full potential? *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2010;36:738–746.
38. Karlsson O, Sporrong T, Hillarp A, et al. Prospective longitudinal study of thromboelastography and standard hemostatic laboratory tests in healthy women during normal pregnancy. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:890–898.
39. Palahniuk RJ, Shnider SM, Eger 2nd EI. Pregnancy decreases the requirement for inhaled anesthetic agents. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41:82–83.
40. Datta S, Migliozzi RP, Flanagan HL, et al. Chronically administered progesterone decreases halothane requirements in rabbits. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68:46–50.
41. Gin T, Chan MT. Decreased minimum alveolar concentration of isoflurane in pregnant humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:829–832.
42. Ueyama H, Hagihira H, Takashina M, et al. Pregnancy does not enhance volatile anesthetic sensitivity on the brain: an electroencephalographic analysis study. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:577–584.
43. Fagraeus L, Urban BJ, Bromage PR. Spread of epidural analgesia in early pregnancy. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58:184–187.
44. Thaler I, Manor D, Itskovitz J, et al. Changes in uterine blood flow during human pregnancy. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1990;162(1):121–125.
45. Konje JC, Kaufmann P, Bell SC, Taylor DJ. A longitudinal study of quantitative uterine blood flow with the use of color power angiography in appropriate for gestational age pregnancies. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2001;185(3):608–613.
46. Ralston DH, Shnider SM, DeLorimier AA. Effects of equipotent ephedrine, metaraminol, mephentermine, and methoxamine on uterine blood flow in the pregnant ewe. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40:354–370.
47. Allen TK, George RB, White WD, et al. A double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of four fixed rate infusion regimens of phenylephrine for hemodynamic support during spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1221–1229.
48. Lee A, Ngan Kee WD, Gin T. A quantitative, systematic review of randomized controlled trials of ephedrine versus phenylephrine for the management of hypotension during spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:920–926.
49. Ngan Kee WD, Khaw KS, Ng FF. Comparison of phenylephrine infusion regimens for maintaining maternal blood pressure during spinal anaesthesia for caesarean section. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:469–474.
50. Ngan Kee WD, Khaw KS, Tan PE, et al. Placental transfer and fetal metabolic effects of phenylephrine and ephedrine during spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:506–512.

51. Haydon ML, Gorenberg DM, Nageotte MP, et al. The effect of maternal oxygen administration on fetal pulse oximetry during labor in fetuses with nonreassuring fetal heart rate patterns. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2006;195:735–738.
52. Richardson BS. Fetal adaptive responses to asphyxia. *Clin Perinatol*. 1989;16:595–611.
53. Edelstone DI. Fetal compensatory responses to reduced oxygen delivery. *Semin Perinatol*. 1984;8:184–191.
54. Myllynen P, Pasanen M, Pelkonen O. Human placenta: a human organ for developmental toxicology research and biomonitoring. *Placenta*. 2005;26(5):361–371.
55. Ala-Kokko TI, Pienimaki P, Lampela E, Hollmen AI, Pelkonen O, Vahakangas K. Transfer of clonidine and dexmedetomidine across the isolated perfused human placenta. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41(2):313–319.
56. Biehl D, Snider SM, Levinson G, et al. Placental transfer of lidocaine: effects of fetal acidosis. *Anesthesiology*. 1978;48:409–412.
57. Yao AC, Moinian M, Lind J. Distribution of blood between infant and placenta after birth. *Lancet*. 1969;2:871–873.
58. Morris JA, Hustead RF, Robinson RG, et al. Measurement of fetoplacental blood volume in the human previable fetus. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1974;118:927–934.
59. Ramirez MM. Labor induction: a review of current methods. *Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am*. 2011;38:215–225. ix.
60. Debiec J, Conell-Price J, Evansmith J, et al. Mathematical modeling of the pain and progress of the first stage of nulliparous labor. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1093–1110.
61. Laughon SK, Branch DW, Beaver J, et al. Changes in labor patterns over 50 years. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2012;206:419.e1–e9.
62. Obstetric care consensus no. 1: safe prevention of the primary cesarean delivery. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2014;123(3):693–711.
63. Zhang J, Landy HJ, Branch DW, et al. Contemporary patterns of spontaneous labor with normal neonatal outcomes. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;116(6):1281–1287.
64. Miller RS, Smiley RM, Daniel D, et al. Beta-2 adrenoceptor genotype and progress in term and late preterm active labor. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;205:e1–e7. 137.
65. Reitman E, Conell-Price J, Evansmith J, et al. Beta2-adrenergic receptor genotype and other variables that contribute to labor pain and progress. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:927–939.
66. Terkawi AS, Jackson WM, Thiel MP, et al. Oxytocin and catechol-O-methyltransferase receptor genotype predict the length of the first stage of labor. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2012;184:e1–e8. 207.
67. Zhang J, Troendle J, Reddy UM, et al. Contemporary cesarean delivery practice in the United States. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;203:e1–e10. 326.
68. Vahratian A, Zhang J, Troendle J, et al. Maternal prepregnancy overweight and obesity and the pattern of labor progression in term nulliparous women. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2004;104(5 Pt 1):943–951.
69. Algovik M, Nilsson E, Cnattingius S, et al. Genetic influence on dystocia. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 2004;83:832–837.
70. Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Sutton PD, et al. Births: final data for 2002. *Natl Vital Stat Rep*. 2003;52:1–113.
71. Nielsen PV, Stigsby B, Nickelsen C, et al. Intra- and inter-observer variability in the assessment of intrapartum cardiotocograms. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 1987;66:421–424.
72. Beaulieu MD, Fabia J, Leduc B, et al. The reproducibility of intrapartum cardiotocogram assessments. *Can Med Assoc J*. 1982;127:214–216.
73. Alfirevic Z, Devane D, Gyte GM. Continuous cardiotocography (CTG) as a form of electronic fetal monitoring (EFM) for fetal assessment during labour. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;3:CD006066.
74. Americcan College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: ACOG Practice Bulletin No. 106: intrapartum fetal heart rate monitoring: nomenclature, interpretation, and general management principles. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2009;114:192–202.
75. Mercier FJ, Dounas M, Boouziz H, et al. Intravenous nitroglycerin to relieve intrapartum fetal distress related to uterine hyperactivity: a prospective observational study. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:1117–1120.
76. Jensen A, Garnier Y, Berger R. Dynamics of fetal circulatory responses to hypoxia and asphyxia. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol*. 1999;84:155–172.
77. Parer JT, Ikeda T. A framework for standardized management of intrapartum fetal heart rate patterns, *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2007; 197:26.e1–e6.
78. Macones GA, Hankins GD, Spong CY, Hauth J, Moore T. The 2008 National Institute of Child Health and Human Development workshop report on electronic fetal monitoring: update on definitions, interpretation, and research guidelines. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2008;112(3):661–666.
79. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: ACOG Practice Bulletin. Clinical Management Guidelines for Obstetrician-Gynecologists, no. 70, December 2005 (replaces practice bulletin no. 62, May 2005). Intrapartum fetal heart rate monitoring. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106:1453–1460.
80. Parer JT, King T, Flanders S, et al. Fetal acidemia and electronic fetal heart rate patterns: is there evidence of an association? *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2006;19:289–294.
81. Xu J, MacKenzie IZ. The current use of acupuncture during pregnancy and childbirth. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2012;24:65–71.
82. Jones L, Othman M, Dowswell T, et al. Pain management for women in labour: an overview of systematic reviews. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;3:CD009234.
83. Smith CA, Levett KM, Collins CT, et al. Massage, reflexology and other manual methods for pain management in labour. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;2:CD009290.
84. Stefanidou M, Solá C, Kouvelas E, et al. Cajal's brief experimentation with hypnotic suggestion. *J Hist Neurosci*. 2007;16:351–361.
85. Ramsay MA. John Snow MD: anaesthetist to the Queen of England and pioneer epidemiologist. *Proc (Bayl Univ Med Cent)*. 2006;19:24–28.
86. Gaskin IM. Some thoughts on unassisted childbirth. *Midwifery Today Int Midwife*. 2003;66:38–40.
87. Wu HC, Liu YC, Ou KL, et al. Effects of acupuncture on post-cesarean section pain. *Chin Med J (Engl)*. 2009;122:1743–1748.
88. Cho SH, Lee H, Ernst E. Acupuncture for pain relief in labour: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *BJOG*. 2010;117:907–920.
89. Chang MY, Wang SY, Chen CH. Effects of massage on pain and anxiety during labour: a randomized controlled trial in Taiwan. *J Adv Nurs*. 2002;38:68–73.
90. Madden K, Middleton P, Cyna AM, Matthewson M, Jones L. Hypnosis for pain management during labour and childbirth. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;(5):CD009356.
91. Declercq ER, Sakala C, Corry MP, et al. Listening to Mothers II: report of the second national U.S. survey of women's childbearing experiences: conducted January-February 2006 for childbirth connection by Harris Interactive(R) in partnership with Lamaze International. *J Perinat Educ*. 2007;16:15–17.
92. Practice guidelines for obstetric anesthesia: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Obstetric Anesthesia and the Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(2):270–300.
93. Olofsson C, Irestedt L. Traditional analgesic agents: are parenteral narcotics passe and do inhalational agents still have a place in labour? *Baillieres Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 1998;12:409–421.
94. Nissen E, Widstrom AM, Lilja G. Effects of routinely given pethidine during labour on infants' developing breastfeeding behaviour: effects of dose-delivery time interval and various concentrations of pethidine/norpethidine in cord plasma. *Acta Paediatr*. 1997;86:201–208.
95. Rayburn W, Rathke A, Leushcen P, et al. Fentanyl citrate analgesia during labor. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1989;161:202–206.
96. Coonen JB, Marcus MAE, Joosten EAJ, et al. Transplacental transfer of remifentanil in the pregnant ewe. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2010;161:1472–1476.
97. Kan RE, Hughes SC, Rosen MA, et al. Intravenous remifentanil: placental transfer, maternal and neonatal effects. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1467–1474.
98. Leong WL, Sng BL, Sia AT. A comparison between remifentanil and meperidine for labor analgesia: a systematic review. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:818–825.
99. Liu ZQ, Chen XB, Li HB, Qiu MT, Duan T. A comparison of remifentanil parturient-controlled intravenous analgesia with epidural analgesia: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(3):598–603.
100. Jelting Y, Weibel S, Afshari A, et al. Patient-controlled analgesia with remifentanil vs. alternative parenteral methods for pain management in labour: a Cochrane systematic review. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72(8):1016–1028.
101. Likis FE, Andrews JC, Collins MR, et al. Nitrous oxide for the management of labor pain: a systematic review. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(1):153–167.
102. Richardson MG, Lopez BM, Baysinger CL, Shotwell MS, Chestnut DH. Nitrous oxide during labor: maternal satisfaction does

not depend exclusively on analgesic effectiveness. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(2):548–553.

103. Westling F, Milsom I, Zetterström H, et al. Effects of nitrous oxide/oxygen inhalation on the maternal circulation during vaginal delivery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36:175–181.
104. Carstoniu J, Lewtam S, Norman P, et al. Nitrous oxide in early labor: safety and analgesic efficacy assessed by a double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:30–35.
105. Yentis MY, Cohen SE. Inhalational analgesia and anesthesia for labor and vaginal delivery. In: Hughes SC, et al., ed. *Shnider and Levinson's Anesthesia for Obstetrics*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2002:189–197.
106. Anim-Somuah M, Smyth RM, Jones L. Epidural versus non-epidural or no analgesia in labour. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;12:CD000331.
107. Thorp JA, Eckert LO, Ang MS, et al. Epidural analgesia and cesarean section for dystocia: risk factors in nulliparas. *Am J Perinatol*. 1991;8:402–410.
108. Wong CA, McCarthy RJ, Sullivan JT, et al. Early compared with late neuraxial analgesia in nulliparous labor induction: a randomized controlled trial. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2009;113:1066–1074.
109. Wong CA, Scavone BM, Peaceman AM, et al. The risk of cesarean delivery with neuraxial analgesia given early versus late in labor. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:655–665.
110. Sharma SK, Alexander JM, Messick G, et al. Cesarean delivery: a randomized trial of epidural analgesia versus intravenous meperidine analgesia during labor in nulliparous women. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:546–551.
111. Wong CA. The influence of analgesia on labor: is it related to primary cesarean rates? *Semin Perinatol*. 2012;36:353–356.
112. Wang F, Shen X, Guo X, et al. Epidural analgesia in the latent phase of labor and the risk of cesarean delivery: a five-year randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:871–880.
113. Halpern SH, Leighton BL. Epidural analgesia and the progress of labor. In: Halpern SH, Douglas MJ, eds. *Evidence-Based Obstetric Anesthesia*. Malden, Mass: BMJ Books, Blackwell; 2005:10–22.
114. Sharma SK, McIntire DD, Wiley J, et al. Labor analgesia and cesarean delivery: an individual patient meta-analysis of nulliparous women. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:142–148; discussion 6A.
115. Shen X, Li Y, Xu S, et al. Epidural analgesia during the second stage of labor: a randomized controlled trial. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;130(5):1097–1103.
116. Gillesby E, Burns S, Dempsey A, et al. Comparison of delayed versus immediate pushing during second stage of labor for nulliparous women with epidural anesthesia. *J Obstet Gynecol Neonatal Nurs*. 2010;39:635–644.
117. Cahill AG, Srinivas SK, Tita ATN, et al. Effect of immediate vs delayed pushing on rates of spontaneous vaginal delivery among nulliparous women receiving neuraxial analgesia: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2018;320(14):1444–1454.
118. Jango H, Langhoff-Roos J, Rosthoj S, Sakse A. Modifiable risk factors of obstetric anal sphincter injury in primiparous women: a population-based cohort study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2014;210(1):59 e51–56.
119. Wassen MM, Zuijlen J, Roumen FJ, et al. Early versus late epidural analgesia and risk of instrumental delivery in nulliparous women: a systematic review. *BJOG*. 2011;118:655–661.
120. Gaiser RR. The epidural test dose in obstetric anesthesia: it is not obsolete. *J Clin Anesth*. 2003;15:474–477.
121. McKenzie CP, Carvalho B, Riley ET. The Wiley spinal catheter-over-needle system for continuous spinal anesthesia: a case series of 5 cesarean deliveries complicated by paresthesias and headaches. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(3):405–410.
122. Simmons SW, Taghizadeh N, Dennis AT, Hughes D, Cyna AM. Combined spinal-epidural versus epidural analgesia in labour. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;10:CD003401.
123. Pan PH, Bogard TD, Owen MD. Incidence and characteristics of failures in obstetric neuraxial analgesia and anesthesia: a retrospective analysis of 19,259 deliveries. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2004;13(4):227–233.
124. Booth JM, Pan JC, Ross VH, Russell GB, Harris LC, Pan PH. Combined spinal epidural technique for labor analgesia does not delay recognition of epidural catheter failures: a single-center retrospective cohort survival analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(3):516–524.
125. Thomas JA, Pan PH, Harris LC, Owen MD, D'Angelo R. Dural puncture with a 27-gauge Whitacre needle as part of a combined spinal-epidural technique does not improve labor epidural catheter function. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(5):1046–1051.
126. Wilson SH, Wolf BJ, Bingham K, et al. Labor analgesia onset with dural puncture epidural versus traditional epidural using a 26-gauge whitacre needle and 0.125% bupivacaine bolus: a randomized clinical trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(2):545–551.
127. Chau A, Bibbo C, Huang CC, et al. Dural puncture epidural technique improves labor analgesia quality with fewer side effects compared with epidural and combined spinal epidural techniques: a randomized clinical trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(2):560–569.
128. Gambling DR, Yu P, Cole C, et al. A comparative study of patient controlled epidural analgesia (PCEA) and continuous infusion epidural analgesia (CIEA) during labour. *Can J Anaesth*. 1988;35(3 Pt 1):249–254.
129. Chestnut DH, Owen CL, Bates JN, Ostman LG, Choi WW, Geiger MW. Continuous infusion epidural analgesia during labor: a randomized, double-blind comparison of 0.0625% bupivacaine/0.0002% fentanyl versus 0.125% bupivacaine. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68(5):754–759.
130. Collis RE, Davies DW, Aveling W. Randomised comparison of combined spinal-epidural and standard epidural analgesia in labour. *Lancet*. 1995;345:1413–1416.
131. Niemi G, Breivik H. Adrenaline markedly improves thoracic epidural analgesia produced by a low-dose infusion of bupivacaine, fentanyl and adrenaline after major surgery: a randomised, double-blind, cross-over study with and without adrenaline. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42:897–909.
132. Meert TF, Noorduin H, Van Craenendonck H, et al. Effects of adrenaline, an alpha 2-adrenoceptor agonist, the volume of injection, and the global pain state of the animal on the activity of epidural sufentanil. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 1989;40:247–261.
133. Eisenach JC. Epidural neostigmine: will it replace lipid soluble opioids for postoperative and labor analgesia? *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:293–295.
134. Owen MD, Ozsaraç O, et al. Low-dose clonidine and neostigmine prolong the duration of intrathecal bupivacaine-fentanyl for labor analgesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:361–366.
135. Nelson KE, D'Angelo R, Foss ML, et al. Intrathecal neostigmine and sufentanil for early labor analgesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:1293–1298.
136. Booth JL, Ross VH, Nelson KE, Harris L, Eisenach JC, Pan PH. Epidural neostigmine versus fentanyl to decrease bupivacaine use in patient-controlled epidural analgesia during labor: a randomized, double-blind, controlled study. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(1):50–57.
137. O'Meara ME, Gin T. Comparison of 0.125% bupivacaine with 0.125% bupivacaine and clonidine as extradural analgesia in the first stage of labour. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;71:651–656.
138. Eisenach JC, Castro MI, Dewan DM, et al. Epidural clonidine analgesia in obstetrics: sheep studies. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:51–56.
139. Sabbe MB, Penning JP, Ozaki GT, et al. Spinal and systemic action of the alpha 2 receptor agonist dexmedetomidine in dogs: antinociception and carbon dioxide response. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1057–1072.
140. Selim MF, Elnabtity AM, Hasan AM. Comparative evaluation of epidural bupivacaine-dexmedetomidine and bupivacaine-fentanyl on Doppler velocimetry of uterine and umbilical arteries during labor. *J Prenat Med*. 2012;6:47–54.
141. Zhao Y, Xin Y, Liu Y, Yi X, Liu Y. Effect of epidural dexmedetomidine combined with ropivacaine in labor analgesia: a randomized double-blinded controlled study. *Clin J Pain*. 2017;33(4):319–324.
142. van der Vyver M, Halpern S, Joseph G. Patient-controlled epidural analgesia versus continuous infusion for labour analgesia: a meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(3):459–465.
143. McKenzie CP, Cobb B, Riley ET, Carvalho B. Programmed intermittent epidural boluses for maintenance of labor analgesia: an impact study. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2016;26:32–38.
144. Wong CA, Ratliff JT, Sullivan JT, Scavone BM, Toledo P, McCarthy RJ. A randomized comparison of programmed intermittent epidural bolus with continuous epidural infusion for labor analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(3):904–909.
145. Lim Y, Sia AT, Ocampo C. Automated regular boluses for epidural analgesia: a comparison with continuous infusion. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2005;14(4):305–309.
146. Novikova N, Cluver C. Local anaesthetic nerve block for pain management in labour. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;4:CD009200.

147. Jensen F, Qvist I, Brocks V, et al. Submucous paracervical blockade compared with intramuscular meperidine as analgesia during labor: a double-blind study. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1984;64:724–727.
148. Nikkola EM, Jahnukainen TJ, Ekblad UU, et al. Neonatal monitoring after maternal fentanyl analgesia in labor. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2000;16:597–608.
149. Philipson EH. Obstetrical paracervical block with chloroprocaine. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 1984;63:187.
150. Morishima HO, Covino BG, Yeh MN, et al. Bradycardia in the fetal baboon following paracervical block anesthesia. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1981;140:775–780.
151. Guillozet N. The risks of paracervical anesthesia: intoxication and neurological injury of the newborn. *Pediatrics*. 1975;55:533–536.
152. Pace MC, Aurilio C, Bulletti C, et al. Subarachnoid analgesia in advanced labor: a comparison of subarachnoid analgesia and pudendal block in advanced labor: analgesic quality and obstetric outcome. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 2004;1034:356–363.
153. Langhoff-Roos J, Lindmark G. Analgesia and maternal side effects of pudendal block at delivery: a comparison of three local anesthetics. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 1985;64:269–272.
154. MacDorman MF, Menacker F, Declercq E. Cesarean birth in the United States: epidemiology, trends, and outcomes. *Clin Perinatol*. 2008;35:293–307. v.
155. Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJK, Driscoll AK, P. D. Births: Final data for 2016. In: Statistics NCfH, ed. *National Vital Statistics Reports*. Vol. 67. Hyattsville, MD2018.
156. Creanga AA, Berg CJ, Syverson C, Seed K, Bruce FC, Callaghan WM. Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2006-2010. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;125(1):5–12.
157. Clark SL, Belfort MA, Dildy GA, et al. Maternal death in the 21st century: causes, prevention, and relationship to cesarean delivery. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2008;199(36):e1–e5; discussion 91-92, e7-e11.
158. Hawkins JL, Koonin LM, Palmer SK, et al. Anesthesia-related deaths during obstetric delivery in the United States, 1979-1990. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:277–284.
159. Hawkins JL, Chang J, Palmer SK, et al. Anesthesia-related maternal mortality in the United States: 1979-2002. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;117:69–74.
160. Janda M, Scheeren TW, Noldge-Schomburg GF. Management of pulmonary aspiration. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;20:409–427.
161. Kalinowski CP, Kirsch JR. Strategies for prophylaxis and treatment for aspiration. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2004;18:719–737.
162. Fettes PD, Jansson JR, Wildsmith JA. Failed spinal anaesthesia: mechanisms, management, and prevention. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:739–748.
163. Riley ET, Cohen SE, Macario A, et al. Spinal versus epidural anesthesia for cesarean section: a comparison of time efficiency, costs, charges, and complications. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:709–712.
164. Cyna AM, Andrew M, Emmett RS, et al. Techniques for preventing hypotension during spinal anaesthesia for caesarean section. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;4:CD002251.
165. Chooi C, Cox JJ, Lumb RS, et al. Techniques for preventing hypotension during spinal anaesthesia for caesarean section. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;8:CD002251.
166. Smiley RM. Burden of proof. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:470–472.
167. Heesen M, Kolhr S, Rossaint R, Straube S. Prophylactic phenylephrine for caesarean section under spinal anaesthesia: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(2):143–165.
168. Ngan Kee WD, Lee SW, Ng FF, Tan PE, Khaw KS. Randomized double-blinded comparison of norepinephrine and phenylephrine for maintenance of blood pressure during spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(4):736–745.
169. Norris MC. Height, weight, and the spread of subarachnoid hyperbaric bupivacaine in the term parturient. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:555–558.
170. Katz D, Hamburger J, Gutman D, et al. The effect of adding subarachnoid epinephrine to hyperbaric bupivacaine and morphine for repeat cesarean delivery: a double-blind prospective randomized control trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
171. Crespo S, Dangelser G, Haller G. Intrathecal clonidine as an adjuvant for neuraxial anaesthesia during caesarean delivery: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised trials. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2017;32:64–76.
172. Palmer CM, Emerson S, Volgoropolous D, Alves D. Dose-response relationship of intrathecal morphine for postcesarean analgesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(2):437–444.
173. Sviggum HP, Arendt KW, Jacob AK, et al. Intrathecal hydromorphone and morphine for postcesarean delivery analgesia: determination of the ED90 using a sequential allocation biased-coin method. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(3):690–697.
174. Bjornestad E, Iversen OL, Raeder J. Similar onset time of 2-chloroprocaine and lidocaine + epinephrine for epidural anesthesia for elective cesarean section. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50:358–363.
175. Gaiser RR, Cheek TG, Adams HK, et al. Epidural lidocaine for cesarean delivery of the distressed fetus. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 1998;7:27–31.
176. Palmer CM, Nogami WM, Van Maren G, Alves DM. Postcesarean epidural morphine: a dose-response study. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(4):887–891.
177. Hamlyn EL, Douglass CA, Plaat F, Crowhurst JA, Stocks GM. Low-dose sequential combined spinal-epidural: an anaesthetic technique for caesarean section in patients with significant cardiac disease. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2005;14(4):355–361.
178. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Management of the Difficult Airway. Practice guidelines for management of the difficult airway: an updated report. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1269–1277.
179. Bailey SG, Kitching AJ. The laryngeal mask airway in failed obstetric tracheal intubation. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2005;14:270–271.
180. Han TH, Brimacombe J, Lee EJ, et al. The laryngeal mask airway is effective (and probably safe) in selected healthy parturients for elective cesarean section: a prospective study of 1067 cases. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48:1117–1121.
181. Pandit JJ, Andrade J, Bogod DG, et al. 5th National Audit Project (NAP5) on accidental awareness during general anaesthesia: summary of main findings and risk factors. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(4):549–559.
182. Mhyre JM, Riesner MN, Polley LS, Naughton NN. A series of anesthesia-related maternal deaths in Michigan, 1985-2003. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(6):1096–1104.
183. Mhyre JM, Riesner MN, Polley LS, et al. A series of anesthesia-related maternal deaths in Michigan, 1985-2003. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1096–1104.
184. Dailland P, Cockshott ID, Lirzin JD, et al. Intravenous propofol during cesarean section: placental transfer, concentrations in breast milk, and neonatal effects: a preliminary study. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:827–834.
185. Gregory MA, Gin T, Yau G, et al. Propofol infusion anaesthesia for caesarean section. *Can J Anaesth*. 1990;37:514–520.
186. Crozier TA, Flamm C, Speer CP, et al. Effects of etomidate on the adrenocortical and metabolic adaptation of the neonate. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70:47–53.
187. Little B, Chang T, Churcot T, et al. Study of ketamine as an obstetric anesthetic agent. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1972;113:247–260.
188. Kvisselgaard N, Moya F. Investigation of placental thresholds to succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*. 1961;22:7–10.
189. Abouleish E, Abboud T, Lechevalier T, et al. Rocuronium (Org 9426) for caesarean section. *Br J Anaesth*. 1994;73:336–341.
190. Magorian T, Flannery KB, Miller RD. Comparison of rocuronium, succinylcholine, and vecuronium for rapid-sequence induction of anesthesia in adult patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:913–918.
191. Kivalo I, Saarikoski S. Placental transmission and foetal uptake of 14 C-dimethyltubocurarine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1972;44:557–561.
192. Lertakyamanee J, Chinachoti T, Tritrakam T, et al. Comparison of general and regional anesthesia for cesarean section: success rate, blood loss and satisfaction from a randomized trial. *J Med Assoc Thai*. 1999;82:672–680.
193. Afolabi BB, Lesi FE. Regional versus general anaesthesia for caesarean section. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;10:CD004350.
194. Eisenach JC, Pan PH, Smiley R, Lavand'homme P, Landau R, Houle TT. Severity of acute pain after childbirth, but not type of delivery, predicts persistent pain and postpartum depression. *Pain*. 2008;140(1):87–94.
195. Bateman BT, Franklin JM, Bykov K, et al. Persistent opioid use following cesarean delivery: patterns and predictors among opioid-naive women. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;215(3):353.e351–353.e318.

196. Bonnet MP, Mignon A, Mazoit JX, Ozier Y, Marret E. Analgesic efficacy and adverse effects of epidural morphine compared to parenteral opioids after elective caesarean section: a systematic review. *European Journal of Pain (London, England)*. 2010;14(9):894.e891–e899.
197. Mishriky BM, George RB, Habib AS. Transversus abdominis plane block for analgesia after cesarean delivery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Can J Anaesth = Journal canadien d'anesthesie.* 2012;59(8):766–778.
198. Blanco R, Ansari T, Riad W, Shetty N. Quadratus lumborum block versus transversus abdominis plane block for postoperative pain after cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(6):757–762.
199. Bamigboye AA, Hofmeyr GJ. Local anaesthetic wound infiltration and abdominal nerves block during caesarean section for postoperative pain relief. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;(3):CD006954.
200. Van de Velde M, Schepers R, Berends N, et al. Ten years of experience with accidental dural puncture and post-dural puncture headache in a tertiary obstetric anaesthesia department. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2008;17:329–335.
201. Ross BK, Chadwick HS, Mancuso JJ, et al. Sprotte needle for obstetric anesthesia: decreased incidence of post dural puncture headache. *Reg Anesth*. 1992;17:29–33.
202. Choi PT, Galinski SE, Takeuchi L, Lucas S, Tamayo C, Jadad AR. PDPH is a common complication of neuraxial blockade in parturients: a meta-analysis of obstetrical studies. *Can J Anaesth = Journal canadien d'anesthesie.* 2003;50(5):460–469.
203. Booth JL, Pan PH, Thomas JA, Harris LC, D'Angelo R. A retrospective review of an epidural blood patch database: the incidence of epidural blood patch associated with obstetric neuraxial anesthetic techniques and the effect of blood volume on efficacy. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2017;29:10–17.
204. Russell IF. A prospective controlled study of continuous spinal analgesia versus repeat epidural analgesia after accidental dural puncture in labour. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2012;21:7–16.
205. Basurto Ona X, Osorio D, Bonfill Cosp X. Drug therapy for treating post-dural puncture headache. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;(7):CD007887.
206. Paech MJ, Doherty DA, Christmas T, Wong CA. The volume of blood for epidural blood patch in obstetrics: a randomized, blinded clinical trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(1):126–133.
207. D'Angelo R, Smiley RM, Riley ET, Segal S. Serious complications related to obstetric anesthesia: the serious complication repository project of the Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(6):1505–1512.
208. Bateman BT, Myhre JM, Leffert J, et al. The risk and outcomes of epidural hematomas after perioperative and obstetric epidural catheterization: a report from the Multicenter Perioperative Outcomes Group Research Consortium. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:1380–1385.
209. Horlocker TT, Vandermeuelen E, Kopp SL, Gogarten W, Leffert LR, Benzon HT. Regional anesthesia in the patient receiving antithrombotic or thrombolytic therapy: American Society of Regional Anes-Thesia and Pain Medicine evidence-based guidelines (fourth edition). *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(3):263–309.
210. Leffert L, Butwick A, Carvalho B, et al. The Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology consensus statement on the anesthetic management of pregnant and postpartum women receiving thromboprophylaxis or higher dose anticoagulants. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126(3):928–944.
211. Reynolds F. Damage to the conus medullaris following spinal anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56(3):238–247.
212. Reynolds F. Neurological infections after neuraxial anesthesia. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2008;26:23–52. v.
213. Moen V, Dahlgren N, Irestedt L. Severe neurological complications after central neuraxial blockades in Sweden 1990-1999. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:950–959.
214. Cook TM, Counsell D, Wildsmith JA. Major complications of central neuraxial block: report on the Third National Audit Project of the Royal College of Anaesthetists. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:179–190.
215. Wong CA, Scavone BM, Dugan S, et al. Incidence of postpartum lumbosacral spine and lower extremity nerve injuries. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2003;101(2):279–288.
216. Griffiths JD, Le NV, Grant S, Bjorksten A, Hebbard P, Royse C. Symptomatic local anaesthetic toxicity and plasma ropivacaine concentrations after transversus abdominis plane block for caesarean section. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(6):996–1000.
217. Neal JM, Barrington MJ, Fettiplace MR, et al. The Third American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine practice advisory on local anesthetic systemic toxicity: executive summary 2017. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(2):113–123.
218. McKenzie AG, Darragh K. A national survey of prevention of infection in obstetric central neuraxial blockade in the UK. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:497–502.
219. Green LK, Paech MJ. Obstetric epidural catheter-related infections at a major teaching hospital: a retrospective case series. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2010;19:38–43.
220. Bacterial meningitis after intrapartum spinal anesthesia - New York and Ohio, 2008-2009. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. 2010;59(3):65–69.
221. Hebl JR. The importance and implications of aseptic techniques during regional anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(4):311–323.
222. Practice Advisory for the Prevention, Diagnosis, and Management of Infectious Complications Associated with Neuraxial Techniques: An Updated Report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Infectious Complications Associated with Neuraxial Techniques and the American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(4):585–601.
223. Goetzl L, Rivers J, Zighelboim I, et al. Intrapartum epidural analgesia and maternal temperature regulation. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2007;109:687–690.
224. Unal ER, Cierny JT, Roedner C, et al. Maternal inflammation in spontaneous term labor. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;223:e1–e5. 204.
225. Hutcheon JA, Lisonkova S, Joseph KS. Epidemiology of pre-eclampsia and the other hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 2011;25:391–403.
226. Say L, Chou D, Gemmill A, et al. Global causes of maternal death: a WHO systematic analysis. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2014;2(6):e323–333.
227. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Task Force on Hypertension in Pregnancy. Hypertension in pregnancy. Report of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' Task Force on Hypertension in Pregnancy. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;122:1122–1131.
228. Sibai BM. Magnesium sulfate prophylaxis in preeclampsia: evidence from randomized trials. *Clin Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;48:478–488.
229. Committee Opinion No. 692. Emergent therapy for acute-onset, severe hypertension during pregnancy and the postpartum period. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;129(4):e90–e95.
230. Vandermeulen EP, Van Aken H, Vermylen J. Anticoagulants and spinal-epidural anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:1165–1177.
231. Hood DD, Curry R. Spinal versus epidural anesthesia for cesarean section in severely preeclamptic patients: a retrospective survey. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1276–1282.
232. Wallace DH, Leveno KJ, Cunningham FG, et al. Randomized comparison of general and regional anesthesia for cesarean delivery in pregnancies complicated by severe preeclampsia. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1995;86:193–199.
233. Kadir RA, McLintock C. Thrombocytopenia and disorders of platelet function in pregnancy. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2011;37:640–652.
234. Bockenstedt PL. Thrombocytopenia in pregnancy. *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am*. 2011;25:293–310. vii-viii.
235. Matthews JH, Benjamin S, Gill DS, et al. Pregnancy-associated thrombocytopenia: definition, incidence and natural history. *Acta Haematol*. 1990;84:24–29.
236. George JN, Woolf SH, Raskob GE, et al. Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura: a practice guideline developed by explicit methods for the American Society of Hematology. *Blood*. 1996;88:3–40.
237. Lee LO, Bateman BT, Kheterpal S, et al. Risk of epidural hematoma after neuraxial techniques in thrombocytopenic parturients: a report from the multicenter perioperative outcomes group. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(6):1053–1063.
238. Chi C, Kadir RA. Inherited bleeding disorders in pregnancy. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 2012;26:103–117.
239. Chi C, Lee CA, England A, et al. Obstetric analgesia and anaesthesia in women with inherited bleeding disorders. *Thromb Haemost*. 2009;101:1104–1111.
240. Tufano A, Di Capua M, Coppola A, et al. The challenge of diagnosing pulmonary embolism in children, pregnant women, and elderly

patients: a descriptive review of the literature. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2011;37:908–917.

241. Kujovich JL. Factor V Leiden thrombophilia. *Genet Med*. 2011;13:1–16.
242. Vahratian A, Siega-Riz AM, Savitz DA, et al. Maternal pre-pregnancy overweight and obesity and the risk of cesarean delivery in nulliparous women. *Ann Epidemiol*. 2005;15:467–474.
243. Davies GA, Maxwell C, McLeod L, et al. Obesity in pregnancy. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can*. 2010;32:165–173.
244. Roofthooft E. Anesthesia for the morbidly obese parturient. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:341–346.
245. Tonidandel A, Booth J, D'Angelo R, Harris L, Tonidandel S. Anesthetic and obstetric outcomes in morbidly obese parturients: a 20-year follow-up retrospective cohort study. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2014;23(4):357–364.
246. Chanimov M, Evron S, Haitov Z, et al. Accidental venous and dural puncture during epidural analgesia in obese parturients (BMI > 40 kg/m2): three different body positions during insertion. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22:614–618.
247. Lupton M, Oting-Ntim E, Avida G, et al. Cardiac disease in pregnancy. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2002;14:137–143.
248. Regitz-Zagrosek V, Blomstrom Lundqvist C, Borghi C, et al. ESC Guidelines on the management of cardiovascular diseases during pregnancy: the Task Force on the Management of Cardiovascular Diseases during Pregnancy of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). *Eur Heart J*. 2011;32(24):3147–3197.
249. Canobbio MM, Warnes CA, Aboulhosn J, et al. Management of pregnancy in patients with complex congenital heart disease: a scientific statement for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2017;135(8):e50–e87.
250. Nishimura RA, Otto CM, Bonow RO, et al. 2014 AHA/ACC Guideline for the Management of Patients With Valvular Heart Disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;129(23):e521–e643.
251. Siu SC, Sermer M, Colman JM, et al. Prospective multicenter study of pregnancy outcomes in women with heart disease. *Circulation*. 2001;104(5):515–521.
252. Drenthen W, Boersma E, Balci A, et al. Predictors of pregnancy complications in women with congenital heart disease. *Eur Heart J*. 2010;31(17):2124–2132.
253. Lu CW, Shih JC, Chen SY, et al. Comparison of 3 risk estimation methods for predicting cardiac outcomes in pregnant women with congenital heart disease. *Circ J: official journal of the Japanese Circulation Society*. 2015;79(7):1609–1617.
254. Ismail MT, Hassanin MZ. Neuraxial analgesia versus intravenous remifentanil for pain relief in early labor in nulliparous women. *Arch Gynecol Obstet*. 2012;286:1375–1381.
255. Volmanen P, Palomaki O, Ahonen J. Alternatives to neuraxial analgesia for labor. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:235–241.
256. Schatz M, Dombrowski MP, Wise R, et al. Asthma morbidity during pregnancy can be predicted by severity classification. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2003;112(2):283–288.
257. Wang G, Murphy VE, Namazy J, et al. The risk of maternal and placental complications in pregnant women with asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. The Journal of Maternal-fetal & Neonatal Medicine : the official journal of the European Association of Perinatal Medicine, the Federation of Asia and Oceania Perinatal Societies. *International Society of Perinatal Obstet*. 2014;27(9):934–942.
258. Brito V, Niederman MS. Pneumonia complicating pregnancy. *Clin Chest Med*. 2011;32:121–132. ix.
259. Mosby LG, Rasmussen SA, Jamieson DJ. 2009 pandemic influenza A (H1N1) in pregnancy: a systematic review of the literature. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;205(1):10–18.
260. Husemeyer RP, Davenport HT. Prophylaxis for Mendelson's syndrome before elective caesarean section: a comparison of cimetidine and magnesium trisilicate mixture regimens. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol*. 1980;87:565–570.
261. Chetty SP, Shaffer BL, Norton ME. Management of pregnancy in women with genetic disorders. II. Inborn errors of metabolism, cystic fibrosis, neurofibromatosis type 1, and Turner syndrome in pregnancy. *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 2011;66:765–776.
262. Vukusic S, Hutchinson M, Hours M, et al. Pregnancy and multiple sclerosis (the PRIMS study): clinical predictors of post-partum relapse. *Brain: A Journal of Neurology*. 2004;127(Pt 6):1353–1360.
263. Bader AM, Hunt CO, Datta S, Naulty JS, Ostheimer GW. Anesthesia for the obstetric patient with multiple sclerosis. *J Clin Anesth*. 1988;1(1):21–24.
264. Youngs P, Human M. Epidural haematoma in a parturient with neurofibromatosis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:745; author reply, p 745.
265. Spiegel JE, Hapgood A, Hess PE. Epidural anesthesia in a parturient with neurofibromatosis type 2 undergoing cesarean section. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2005;14:336–339.
266. Bateman BT, Hernandez-Diaz S, Rathmell JP, et al. Patterns of opioid utilization in pregnancy in a large cohort of commercial insurance beneficiaries in the United States. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(5):1216–1224.
267. Maeda A, Bateman BT, Clancy CR, Creanga AA, Leffert LR. Opioid abuse and dependence during pregnancy: temporal trends and obstetrical outcomes. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(6):1158–1165.
268. Jones HE, Kaltenbach K, Heil SH, et al. Neonatal abstinence syndrome after methadone or buprenorphine exposure. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(24):2320–2331.
269. Hickok DE, Gordon DC, Milberg JA, Williams MA, Daling JR. The frequency of breech presentation by gestational age at birth: a large population-based study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1992;166(3):851–852.
270. Magro-Malosso ER, Saccone G, Di Tommaso M, Mele M, Berghella V. Neuraxial analgesia to increase the success rate of external cephalic version: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;215(3):276–286.
271. Sullivan JT, Grobman WA, Bauchat JR, et al. A randomized controlled trial of the effect of combined spinal-epidural analgesia on the success of external cephalic version for breech presentation. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2009;18(4):328–334.
272. Chalifoux LA, Bauchat JR, Higgins N, et al. Effect of intrathecal bupivacaine dose on the success of external cephalic version for breech presentation: a prospective, randomized, blinded clinical trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(4):625–632.
273. Goetzinger KR, Harper LM, Tuuli MG, et al. Effect of regional anesthesia on the success rate of external cephalic version: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;118:1137–1144.
274. Yoshida M, Kawakami Y, et al. Effectiveness of epidural anesthesia for external cephalic version (ECV). *J Perinatol*. 2010;30:580–583.
275. Lavoie A, Guay J. Anesthetic dose neuraxial blockade increases the success rate of external fetal version: a meta-analysis. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57:408–414.
276. Alkema L, Chou D, Hogan D, et al. Global, regional, and national levels and trends in maternal mortality between 1990 and 2015, with scenario-based projections to 2030: a systematic analysis by the UN Maternal Mortality Estimation Inter-Agency Group. *Lancet (London, England)*. 2016;387(10017):462–474.
277. Knight MBK, Tuffnell D, Jayakody H, et al. eds. *Saving Lives, Improving Mothers' Care - Lessons learned to inform future maternity care from the UK and Ireland Confidential Enquiries into Maternal Deaths and Morbidity 2014-16*. 2018.
278. Scavone BM, Main EK. The National Partnership for Maternal Safety: a call to action for anesthesiologists. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(1):14–16.
279. Main EK, Cape V, Abreo A, et al. Reduction of severe maternal morbidity from hemorrhage using a state perinatal quality collaborative. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;216(3):298.e291–298.e211.
280. Mhyre JM. Maternal mortality. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25:277–285.
281. Callaghan WM, Creanga AA, Kuklina EV. Severe maternal morbidity among delivery and postpartum hospitalizations in the United States. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2012;120:1029–1036.
282. Berg CJ, Harper MA, Atkinson SM, et al. Preventability of pregnancy-related deaths: results of a state-wide review. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106:1228–1234.
283. Snegovskikh D, Clebone A, Norwitz E. Anesthetic management of patients with placenta accreta and resuscitation strategies for associated massive hemorrhage. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:274–281.
284. Thurn L, Lindqvist P, Jakobsson M, et al. Abnormally invasive placenta—prevalence, risk factors and antenatal suspicion: results from a large population-based pregnancy cohort study in the Nordic countries. *BJOG*. 2016;123(8):1348–1355.
285. Fitzpatrick K, Sellers S, Spark P, Kurinczuk J, Brocklehurst P, Knight M. The management and outcomes of placenta accreta, increta,

and percreta in the UK: a population-based descriptive study. *BJOG*. 2014;121(1):62–71.

286. Dwyer BK, Belogolovkin V, Tran L, et al. Prenatal diagnosis of placenta accreta: sonography or magnetic resonance imaging? *J Ultrasound Med*. 2008;27:1275–1281.
287. Silver RM, Landon MB, Rouse DJ, et al. Maternal morbidity associated with multiple repeat cesarean deliveries. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2006;107:1226–1232.
288. Salazar GM, Petrozza JC, Walker TG. Transcatheter endovascular techniques for management of obstetrical and gynecologic emergencies. *Tech Vasc Interv Radiol*. 2009;12:139–147.
289. Mok M, Heidemann B, Dundas K, et al. Interventional radiology in women with suspected placenta accreta undergoing caesarean section. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2008;17:255–261.
290. Angstmann T, Gard G, Harrington T, et al. Surgical management of placenta accreta: a cohort series and suggested approach. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;38:202.e1–e9.
291. Gagnon R, Morin L, Bly S, et al. SOGC clinical practice guideline: guidelines for the management of vasa previa. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2010;108:85–89.
292. Oyelese Y, Smulian JC. Placenta previa, placenta accreta, and vasa previa. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2006;107:927–941.
293. Oyelese Y, Catanzarite V, Prefumo F, et al. Vasa previa: the impact of prenatal diagnosis on outcomes. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2004;103(5 Pt 1):937–942.
294. Saftlas AF, Olson DR, Atrash HK, Rochat R, Rowley D. National trends in the incidence of abruptio placentae, 1979-1987. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1991;78(6):1081–1086.
295. Kaczmarczyk M, Sparén P, Terry P, et al. Risk factors for uterine rupture and neonatal consequences of uterine rupture: a population-based study of successive pregnancies in Sweden. *BJOG*. 2007;114:1208–1214.
296. Johnson C, Oriol N. The role of epidural anesthesia in trial of labor. *Reg Anesth*. 1990;15:304–308.
297. Molloy BG, Sheil O, Duignan NM. Delivery after caesarean section: review of 2176 consecutive cases. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)*. 1987;294:1645–1647.
298. Farmer RM, Kirschbaum T, Potter D, et al. Uterine rupture during trial of labor after previous cesarean section. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1991;165(4 Pt 1):996–1001.
299. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Vaginal birth after previous cesarean delivery. Pract bull no. 115. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;116(2 Pt 1):450–463.
300. Knight M, Callaghan WM, Berg C, et al. Trends in postpartum hemorrhage in high resource countries: a review and recommendations from the International Postpartum Hemorrhage Collaborative Group. *BMC Pregnancy Childbirth*. 2009;9:55.
301. Hogberg U. The World Health Report 2005: "make every mother and child count"—including Africans. *Scand J Public Health*. 2005;33:409–411.
302. Dyer RA, Butwick AJ, Carvalho B. Oxytocin for labour and caesarean delivery: implications for the anaesthesiologist. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:255–261.
303. Butwick AJ, Coleman L, Cohen SE, et al. Minimum effective bolus dose of oxytocin during elective caesarean delivery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:338–343.
304. Vercauteren M, Palit S, Soetens F, et al. Anaesthesiological considerations on tocolytic and uterotonic therapy in obstetrics. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53:701–709.
305. Collis RE, Collins PW. Haemostatic management of obstetric haemorrhage. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70 suppl 1:78-86.e27–e78.
306. Ducloy-Bouthors AS, Susen S, Wong CA, Butwick A, Vallet B, Lockhart E. Medical advances in the treatment of postpartum hemorrhage. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(5):1140–1147.
307. O'Connell KA, Wood JJ, Wise RP, et al. Thromboembolic adverse events after use of recombinant human coagulation factor VIIa. *JAMA*. 2006;295:293–298.
308. Franchini M, Franchi M, Begamini V, et al. The use of recombinant activated FVII in postpartum hemorrhage. *Clin Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;53:219–227.
309. Ahonen J. The role of recombinant activated factor VII in obstetric hemorrhage. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25:309–314.
310. Effect of early tranexamic acid administration on mortality, hysterectomy, and other morbidities in women with post-partum haemorrhage (WOMAN): an international, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet (London, England)*. 2017;389(10084):2105–2116.
311. Practice Bulletin No. 183. Postpartum hemorrhage. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;130(4):e168–e186.
312. Sentilhes L, Winer N, Azria E, et al. Tranexamic acid for the prevention of blood loss after vaginal delivery. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;379(8):731–742.
313. Sentilhes L, Daniel V, Darsonval A, et al. Study protocol. TRAAP - TRAnexamic Acid for Preventing postpartum hemorrhage after vaginal delivery: a multicenter randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *BMC Pregnancy and Childbirth*. 2015;15:135.
314. Goodnough LT. Risks of blood transfusion. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2005;23:241–252, v.
315. Grainger H, Catling S. Intraoperative cell salvage in obstetrics. *J Perioper Pract*. 2011;21:264–270.
316. Waters JH, Biscotti C, Potter PS, et al. Amniotic fluid removal during cell salvage in the cesarean section patient. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:1531–1536.
317. Lim G, Melnyk V, Facco FL, Waters JH, Smith KJ. Cost-effectiveness analysis of intraoperative cell salvage for obstetric hemorrhage. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(2):328–337.
318. Doumouchtsis SK, Papageorghiou AT, Arulkumaran S. Systematic review of conservative management of postpartum hemorrhage: what to do when medical treatment fails. *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 2007;62:540–547.
319. Moore J, Baldisseri MR. Amniotic fluid embolism. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(suppl 10):S279–S285.
320. Fitzpatrick KE, Tuffnell D, Kurinczuk JJ, Knight M. Incidence, risk factors, management and outcomes of amniotic-fluid embolism: a population-based cohort and nested case-control study. *BJOG*. 2016;123(1):100–109.
321. Abenhaim HA, Azoulay L, Kramer MS, Leduc L. Incidence and risk factors of amniotic fluid embolisms: a population-based study on 3 million births in the United States. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2008;199(1): 49.e41–e48.
322. Tuffnell DJ. Amniotic fluid embolism. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2003;15:119–122.
323. Dean LS, Rogers 3rd RP, Harley RA, Hood DD. Case scenario: amniotic fluid embolism. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(1):186–192.
324. Hopwood Jr HG. Shoulder dystocia: fifteen years' experience in a community hospital. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1982;144:162166.
325. Mollberg M, Hagberg H, Bager B, et al. High birthweight and shoulder dystocia: the strongest risk factors for obstetrical brachial plexus palsy in a Swedish population-based study. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 2005;84:654–659.
326. Kish K, Collea J, Malpresentation. Prolapse Cord. In: Nathan L, ed. *Current Obstetric & Gynecologic Diagnosis & Treatment*. New York: Lange/McGraw-Hill; 2003:382.
327. Sokol RJ, Blackwell SC. ACOG practice bulletin: shoulder dystocia, no. 40, November 2002. (replaces practice pattern no. 7, October 1997). *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2003;80:87–92.
328. Lin MG. Umbilical cord prolapse. *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 2006;61:227–269.
329. Watson P, Besch N, Bowes Jr WA. Management of acute and subacute puerperal inversion of the uterus. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1980;55:12–16.
330. Catanzarite VA, Moffitt KD, Baker ML, et al. New approaches to the management of acute puerperal uterine inversion. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1986;68(suppl 3):7S–10S.
331. Smith GN, Brien JF. Use of nitroglycerin for uterine relaxation. *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 1998;53:559–565.
332. Hong RW, Greenfield ML, Polley LS. Nitroglycerin for uterine inversion in the absence of placental fragments. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103:511–512.
333. Morris S, Stacey M. Resuscitation in pregnancy. *BMJ*. 2003;327:1277–1279.
334. Bern S, Apka BS, Kuo I, et al. Lipid resuscitation: a life-saving antidote for local anesthetic toxicity. *Curr Pharm Biotechnol*. 2011;12:313–319.
335. Goodman S. Anesthesia for nonobstetric surgery in the pregnant patient. *Semin Perinatol*. 2002;26:136–145.
336. Rizzi S, Carter LB, Ori C, et al. Clinical anesthesia causes permanent damage to the fetal guinea pig brain. *Brain Pathol*. 2008;18:198–210.
337. Palanisamy A, Baxter MG, Keel PK, et al. Rats exposed to isoflurane in utero during early gestation are behaviorally abnormal as adults. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:521–528.

338. Slikker Jr W, Zou X, Hotchkiss CE, et al. Ketamine-induced neuronal cell death in the perinatal rhesus monkey. *Toxicol Sci*. 2007;98:145–158.
339. Casey BJ, Galvan A, Hare TA. Changes in cerebral functional organization during cognitive development. *Curr Opin Neurobiol*. 2005;15:239–244.
340. Mazze RI, Kallen B. Reproductive outcome after anesthesia and operation during pregnancy: a registry study of 5405 cases. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1989;161:1178–1185.
341. Shnider SM, Webster GM. Maternal and fetal hazards of surgery during pregnancy. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1965;92:891–900.
342. Czeizel AE, Pataki T, Rockenbauer M. Reproductive outcome after exposure to surgery under anesthesia during pregnancy. *Arch Gynecol Obstet*. 1998;261:193–199.
343. Andropoulos DB, Greene MF. Anesthesia and developing brains - implications of the FDA warning. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(10):905–907.
344. Committee Opinion No. 696. Nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;129(4):777–778.
345. Antonucci R, Zaffanello M, Puxxedu E, et al. Use of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs in pregnancy: impact on the fetus and newborn. *Curr Drug Metab*. 2012;13:474–490.
346. Reynolds JD, Booth JV, de la Fuente S, et al. A review of laparoscopy for non-obstetric-related surgery during pregnancy. *Curr Surg*. 2003;60:164–173.
347. Prodromidou A, Machairas N, Kostakis ID, et al. Outcomes after open and laparoscopic appendectomy during pregnancy: a meta-analysis. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol*. 2018;225:40–50.
348. Reedy MB, Kallen B, Kuehl TJ. Laparoscopy during pregnancy: a study of five fetal outcome parameters with use of the Swedish Health Registry. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1997;177:673–679.
349. Soper NJ. SAGES guidelines for diagnosis, treatment, and use of laparoscopy for surgical problems during pregnancy. *Surg Endosc*. 2011;25:3477–3478.
350. Bhavani-Shankar K, Steinbrook RA, Brooks DC, et al. Arterial to end-tidal carbon dioxide pressure difference during laparoscopic surgery in pregnancy. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:370–373.
351. Walsh CA, Tang T, Walsh SR. Laparoscopic versus open appendicectomy in pregnancy: a systematic review. *Int J Surg*. 2008;6. 339–34.
352. Mirza FG, Devine PC, Gaddipati S. Trauma in pregnancy: a systematic approach. *Am J Perinatol*. 2010;27:579–586.
353. de Souza JA, Martinez Jr EE, Ambrose JA, et al. Percutaneous balloon mitral valvuloplasty in comparison with open mitral valve commissurotomy for mitral stenosis during pregnancy. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2001;37:900–903.
354. Onderoglu L, Tuncer ZC, Oto A, et al. Balloon valvuloplasty during pregnancy. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 1995;49:181–183.
355. Kuczkowski KM. Nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy: what are the risks of anesthesia? *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 2004;59:52–56.
356. John AS, Gurley F, Schaff HV, et al. Cardiopulmonary bypass during pregnancy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2011;91:1191–1196.
357. Arnoni RT, Arnoni AS, Bonini RC, et al. Risk factors associated with cardiac surgery during pregnancy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;76:1605–1608.
358. Lumbers ER, Stevens AD. Changes in fetal renal function in response to infusions of a hyperosmotic solution of mannitol to the ewe. *J Physiol*. 1983;343:439–446.
359. Handlogten KS, Sharpe EE, Brost BC, Parney IF, Pasternak JJ. Dexmedetomidine and mannitol for awake craniotomy in a pregnant patient. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(5):1099–1103.

63

Anesthesia for Fetal Surgery and Other Fetal Therapies

MARLA B. FERSCHL and MARK D. ROLLINS

KEY POINTS

- Most fetal anomalies are not appropriate for in utero treatment. A condition appropriate for fetal treatment should cause ongoing irreversible harm to the fetus that is mitigable by early treatment before the fetus can tolerate ex utero neonatal intervention.
- A multidisciplinary approach with open communication is essential to the success of each fetal intervention.
- Maternal safety and the principle of "do no harm" should be foremost in determining the most appropriate therapeutic option. A thorough maternal and fetal evaluation and frank discussion of risks and benefits by all team members with the mother is required to determine an appropriate care plan.
- Although open fetal surgery typically requires general anesthesia, most minimally invasive percutaneous techniques can be performed using local anesthesia infiltration or neuraxial anesthesia techniques.
- Randomized controlled clinical trials show improved outcomes with fetoscopic laser photocoagulation of placental vessels to treat twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome and intrauterine open fetal surgery to treat myelomeningocele.
- In addition to anesthetic considerations associated with nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy, fetal surgery requires planning for fetal anesthesia and analgesia, fetal monitoring, uterine relaxation, preparation for emergent events (e.g., fetal bradycardia, maternal hemorrhage), and postoperative tocolysis.
- Membrane separation, preterm premature rupture of membranes, and preterm labor remain the most common causes of morbidity and suboptimal outcome with fetal surgical interventions.
- Further research into optimal anesthetic techniques for various fetal interventions is essential to improve patient outcomes and advance the field of fetal surgery.

Only recently have medical professionals focused on the human fetus as a patient who is able to undergo surgery or medical intervention. This development has been primarily driven by systematic improvements in prenatal diagnosis, imaging technology, and surgical equipment. Although many fetal surgical procedures are available only at highly specialized institutions, some prenatal interventions are considered conventional therapy and have become more widespread. This chapter reviews the unique pathophysiological processes of various fetal and placental conditions amenable to intervention, current outcome data, specific procedural considerations, and perioperative anesthesia management.

Most fetal abnormalities are not appropriate for antenatal intervention and are more amenable to treatment after delivery. However, some anatomic malformations may result in irreversible end-organ damage and would benefit from intervention before birth. This has led to the theory that surgical or procedural correction in utero could allow normal fetal development and might mitigate much of the detrimental pathologic processes observed.[1] Other defects, such as congenital airway obstruction, can be managed intrapartum by keeping the uteroplacental unit intact while the defect is repaired or airway secured, without the urgency that would be associated with attempting similar procedures immediately after birth.

Prerequisite guidelines for performing fetal surgery were initially developed in 1982 at a multidisciplinary meeting with participants from 13 medical centers representing five countries.[2] Over time these criteria have evolved and include: (1) the fetal lesion is accurately diagnosed; (2) the progression and severity of the anomaly is predictable and well understood; (3) other severe associated anomalies that would contraindicate fetal intervention are excluded; (4) the fetal abnormality would lead to fetal demise, irreversible organ damage, or severe postnatal morbidity if left untreated before birth, and intervening before birth would benefit the neonatal outcome; (5) the maternal risk is acceptably low; (6) animal models have demonstrated feasibility of the surgical technique; (7) fetal interventions are performed at specialized multidisciplinary institutions using protocols approved by the center's ethics committees with maternal informed consent; and (8) the patient has access to highly specialized multidisciplinary care including bioethical and psychological counseling.[1-3]

TABLE 63.1 Fetal Conditions Currently Considered for Intervention

Fetal Condition	Therapy Rational	Type	Intervention
Fetal anemia or thrombocytopenia	Prevention of heart failure and fetal hydrops	FIGS-IT	Intrauterine transfusion
Aortic stenosis, intact atrial septum, or pulmonary atresia	Prevention of fetal hydrops, myocardial dysfunction, and hypoplastic left (and right) heart	FIGS-IT	Percutaneous fetal valvuloplasty or septoplasty
Lower urinary tract obstruction	Bladder decompression with reduction in renal dysfunction, pulmonary hypoplasia, oligohydramnios, and limb malformation	FIGS-IT or fetoscopy	Percutaneous vesicoamniotic shunting or fetoscopic posterior urethral valve laser ablation
Twin reversed arterial perfusion	Prevention of high-output cardiac failure in the normal twin by stopping flow to acardiac twin	FIGS-IT or fetoscopy	Image-guided radiofrequency ablation or fetoscopic coagulation of acardiac twin umbilical cord. Percutaneous coiling or ligation of umbilical cord is also used.
Twin-twin transfusion syndrome	Reduction of twin-twin blood flow and prevention of cardiac failure	Fetoscopy	Fetoscopic laser photocoagulation of placental vessels and amnioreduction
Amniotic band syndrome	Prevention of limb loss	Fetoscopy	Fetoscopic band ablation
Congenital diaphragmatic hernia	Prevention of pulmonary hypoplasia	Fetoscopy	Fetoscopic tracheal occlusion
Myelomeningocele	Reduction in hydrocephalus and hindbrain herniation, with reduced spinal cord damage and improved neurologic function	Open or Fetoscopy	Closure of fetal defect through hysterotomy
Sacrococcygeal teratoma	Prevention of high-output cardiac failure, hydrops, and polyhydramnios	FIGS-IT or open	Ablation of tumor vasculature or open fetal tumor debulking
Congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation	Reversal of pulmonary hypoplasia and cardiac failure	FIGS-IT or open	Thoracoamniotic shunting or open surgical resection
Fetal airway compression	Secured open airway and/or circulatory support to prevent respiratory compromise at birth	Open intrapartum	Ex-utero intrapartum therapy (EXIT) that allows fetal stabilization while on uteroplacental circulation

FIGS-IT, Fetal image-guided surgery for intervention or therapy.
Modified from Partridge EA, Flake AW. Maternal-fetal surgery for structural malformations. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 2012;26:669–682; and Hoagland MA, Chatterjee D. Anesthesia for fetal surgery. *Paediatr Aneasth*. 2017;27:346–357.

All interventions should be preceded by a thorough multidisciplinary team deliberation of the clinical case. Discussions should focus on a comprehensive risk–benefit analysis, and the family should be provided appropriate counseling that includes options for elective termination or continuation of the pregnancy without fetal therapy. Potential risks to the mother should be part of the informed consent, and a detailed maternal preoperative evaluation should be performed to ensure maternal risks are minimal.[4]

The advancement of fetal surgery has benefited from a multidisciplinary approach and establishment of the International Fetal Medicine and Surgery Society to disseminate techniques and outcome data through an international registry.[5] Medical centers offering fetal treatment rely on surgeons and anesthesiologists devoted to the care and counseling of these complex maternal and fetal patients, as well as the expertise of radiologists, perinatologists, geneticists, neonatologists, psychologists, social workers, and numerous support staff. A bioethics committee derived from both the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the American Academy of Pediatrics has provided guidelines for fetal treatment centers and recommends a comprehensive informed consent and counseling process, maternal-fetal research oversight, use of a multidisciplinary approach, and participation in a collaborative data-sharing fetal therapy network.[6]

Fetal surgery is broadly categorized into three types of interventions: minimally invasive procedures, open procedures, and intrapartum procedures. A summary of conditions considered for fetal intervention with corresponding rationale and recommended treatment is shown in Table 63.1.

Minimally invasive fetal procedures include (1) percutaneous interventions guided by ultrasound, also known as fetal image-guided surgery for intervention or therapy, and (2) fetal endoscopic surgery using small endoscopic instruments inserted percutaneously guided by direct fetoscopic camera view and simultaneous real-time ultrasound imaging. With these minimally invasive approaches, the risks for preterm labor and delivery are reduced compared with those in open procedures that include a hysterotomy. Unlike in open fetal procedures, the mother can safely undergo a vaginal delivery for this and future pregnancies. However, the risk for preterm premature rupture of membrane (PROM) remains significant.[7]

Open fetal procedures involve a maternal laparotomy, a hysterotomy, and the need for intraoperative uterine relaxation. These procedures incur significantly more risk to both the fetus and mother than minimally invasive procedures. These increased risks include preterm PROM, oligohydramnios, preterm labor and delivery, uterine rupture, and fetal mortality.[8,9] Additional maternal and fetal risks include not only the anesthetic risks noted for nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy (see also Chapter 62), but also pulmonary edema, hemorrhage, membrane separation, and chorioamnionitis.[4,8] Cesarean delivery is required after an open fetal procedure and for all future pregnancies owing to the increased risk for uterine dehiscence or rupture at the site of the hysterotomy.

For fetuses with known airway compromise or obstruction, an ex utero intrapartum therapy (EXIT) procedure[10] allows continued fetal support by the intact uteroplacental unit (placental bypass) while the fetal airway is secured or other procedures completed without the concern for postnatal respiratory compromise, hypoxia, and asphyxia. The EXIT procedure has become a widely practiced fetal intervention for a growing list of indications. Congenital high airway obstruction due to laryngeal stenosis, laryngeal web, cystic hygroma, lymphangioma, or cervical teratoma is the most common anatomical indication for an EXIT procedure.[11] Congenital pulmonary lesions and sacral teratomas have also been resected during the EXIT procedure, with resulting normal umbilical cord carbon dioxide and pH values at birth, even when surgical time has exceeded 2.5 hours.[12] Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) can be initiated during an EXIT procedure for a fetus with significant cardiopulmonary disease.[13]

Much of the success of fetal therapy in the past three decades can be attributed to advances in both ultrasonography and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), which have substantially improved the accuracy of prenatal diagnosis and expanded our understanding of the pathophysiologic factors of various untreated fetal abnormalities. Significant advancements in ultrasonographic transducer hardware and digital signal processing have resulted in better image resolution with more accurate differentiation of abnormal fetal anatomy, wider fields of view, and improvement in the dynamic range for both near-field and far-field signal-to-noise ratio. Use of this improved ultrasonographic imaging as a real-time guide has enabled practitioners to develop and perform various diagnostic tests and fetal therapies more precisely and safely. Examples of fetal ultrasound-guided diagnostic procedures include first-trimester chorionic villus sampling, embryofetoscopy, amniocentesis, umbilical cord sampling, and fetal biopsies.[14] These diagnostic advances allow more accurate prenatal consultation, the ability to intervene at an earlier gestational age (GA), and usually enough time to change the location of antepartum care and the delivery plan if needed. Live ultrasound is typically used to guide all minimally invasive fetal procedures and is also critical to initial portions of open fetal procedures and fetal monitoring.

MRI has undergone technologic improvements that have reduced image acquisition time, decreased motion artifacts, and enhanced image resolution to a point at which fetal MRI is frequently used in conjunction with ultrasound to better detect and evaluate anatomic pathologic processes. Fetal MRI can aid in diagnosis as a complementary technique to ultrasound as it provides a larger field of view that is not obscured by fetal bone artifact, but it is expensive and not available in all centers.[15,16]

In addition to advances in imaging technology, decades of procedural innovations and research have provided the basis for the in utero fetal interventions used clinically today. Initial pioneers in the field of fetal therapy include Sir (Albert) William Liley. In the early 1960s, Liley was the first to successfully treat erythroblastosis fetalis with an intraperitoneal blood transfusion that allowed the transfused red cells to be absorbed into the fetal circulation through the subdiaphragmatic lymphatics and thoracic duct.[17,18] Unfortunately, initial attempts to perform fetal blood transfusion through direct cannulation of the umbilical vessels were unsuccessful until 1981, when a reliable technique that employed fetoscopy was described.[19,20] With improved imaging resolution, the standard technique quickly became direct needle access of the umbilical vessels using ultrasound guidance. In the early 1970s, Liggins administered corticosteroids to the fetus via the maternal circulation to increase surfactant production in preterm fetuses at risk for respiratory distress syndrome.[21] Fetal surgery began in the early 1980s after rigorous research efforts and technical advancements in sheep[22-24] and monkey models.[25] Harrison and colleagues performed the first successful human fetal surgery by creating a vesicostomy in a fetus with a congenital lower urinary tract obstruction (LUTO) resulting in bilateral hydronephrosis.[26] Working with Harrison in the early 1980s, Rosen refined fetal anesthetic techniques in monkeys to improve intraoperative uterine relaxation[25] and clinical outcome before employing them for the first human fetal surgeries. Since the early 1980s, great advances have been made in the development of minimally invasive percutaneous surgical techniques, fetoscopy, and procedural aspects of open fetal surgery with hysterotomy. Fetal therapy has also advanced in its outcome evaluation from published case reports and series to prospective randomized controlled trials.

Fetal surgery is a reasonable therapeutic intervention for certain correctable fetal anomalies with predictable, life-threatening, or serious developmental consequences. With all types of fetal intervention, meticulous planning and a multidisciplinary team approach are critical to a successful outcome. The following sections provide a review and summary of the congenital lesion, outcome data, procedural considerations, and perioperative anesthesia considerations for the various conditions currently amenable to fetal intervention.

Indications, Procedures, and Outcomes

ANEMIA AND INTRAUTERINE TRANSFUSION

The incidence of fetal anemia secondary to rhesus D (RhD) sensitization has decreased since the introduction of RhD immunoglobulin prophylaxis in the late 1960s, to rates of approximately 1 in 1000 pregnancies.[18] However, other red blood cell (RBC) antigens, parvovirus B19 infection, maternal-fetal hemorrhage, and homozygous thalassemia also cause fetal anemia and combine to reach a rate of approximately 6 cases in 1000 live births.[18,27] Although spectral analysis examining bilirubin levels in serial amniotic fluid samples was originally used to detect fetal anemia and determine the timing of therapy, most treatment centers currently rely on noninvasive Doppler studies of the middle cerebral artery (MCA).[27] An increased peak MCA blood flow velocity more than 1.5 multiples of the median is an accurate threshold in detecting moderate-to-severe fetal anemia requiring intervention.[28] The value of this peak velocity threshold may be increased with each serial

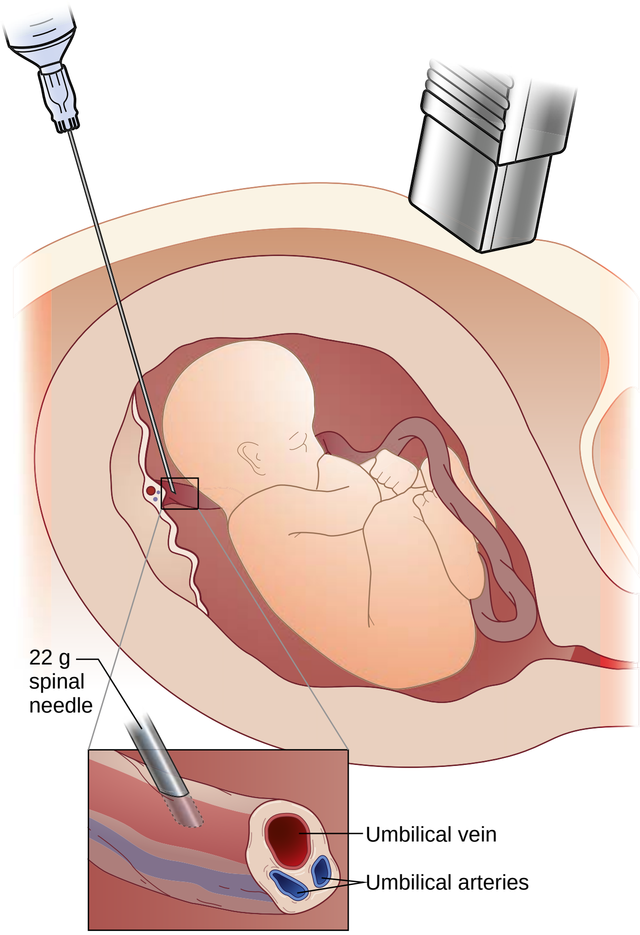


Fig. 63.1 Diagram of cordocentesis procedure used in intrauterine transfusion. Inset window shows tip of 22-gauge spinal needle entering the umbilical vein. (Redrawn from Ralston SJ, Craigo SD. Ultrasound-guided procedures for prenatal diagnosis and therapy. *Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am*. 2004;31:101–123.)

transfusion treatment to decrease the false positive rate. Fetal blood sampling from the umbilical vein just before starting the intrauterine transfusion (IUT) is the gold standard for determining the degree of fetal anemia. IUT is not used before 18 weeks' GA because umbilical vein access is not reliable. For cases requiring earlier intervention, fetal intraperitoneal transfusion of red cells may initially be the intervention of choice.[29]

IUTs are typically performed using local anesthesia and require minimal maternal sedation and analgesia. However, the anesthesiologist should be prepared for an emergent cesarean delivery at any time during the procedure if the fetus is at a viable GA. Using ultrasound image guidance, a 20- or 22-gauge needle is used to access the umbilical vein. The access point is typically near the placental cord insertion to provide stability (Fig. 63.1). Puncture of an umbilical artery rather than the umbilical vein is associated with prolonged bleeding and fetal bradycardia secondary to spasm.[18] Occasionally a free loop of the umbilical cord or intrahepatic portion of the umbilical vein may be used. The umbilical cord has no known pain receptors, but needle access of the intrahepatic portion of the umbilical vein stimulates pain receptors with passage of the needle into the fetus. Fentanyl attenuates the fetal stress response from intrahepatic fetal needle placement.[30] In one study, fetal stress hormone changes with IUT were unrelated to site of needle placement;[31] however, these results are difficult to interpret because hormone levels may be affected by changes due to the underlying fetal anemia and hemodynamic alterations associated with intravascular volume expansion. Given this uncertainty, fentanyl (10-20 µg/kg) is administered intramuscularly to the fetus before use of an intrahepatic approach. There is some evidence to suggest that fetal anesthesia does not alter MCA peak systolic velocity flow patterns following transfusion.[32]

An intramuscular muscle relaxant (e.g., rocuronium 2.5 mg/kg) can be administered to the fetus to decrease the likelihood of fetal movement that could dislodge the needle or sheer the umbilical vein.[33] If a muscle relaxant is administered directly into the umbilical vein the dose of muscle relaxant can be reduced (e.g., rocuronium 1.0 mg/kg). The volume of type O, rhesus (Rh)-negative, irradiated, viral screened, packed RBCs transfused is estimated from the GA, estimated fetal weight, donor unit hemoglobin (Hb), and pretransfusion Hb.[34] The rate of transfusion is typically 5 to 10 mL/min with a target hematocrit of 45% to 55%. Steady intravascular location of the needle tip can be assessed with Doppler imaging throughout the transfusion injection. Periodic sampling is used to guide the final transfusion volume. After IUT therapy, fetal Hb levels decrease approximately 0.3 g/dL/day[35] and multiple repeat IUTs are typically required at 1- to 3-week intervals, depending on the rate of Hb decline.

Perinatal fetal loss rate is approximately 2% per IUT, and transient fetal bradycardia (8%) is a common complication.[27,36] Other complications including emergency cesarean delivery, intrauterine infection, preterm PROM, and preterm delivery occur in approximately 3% of IUT procedures.[37] Although survival rates are significantly less for hydropic fetuses, recent published overall survival rates with IUT typically exceed 95%.[27,37] A long-term outcome study of 291 children (median age of 8.2 years with a range of 2-17 years of age) who underwent IUT during gestation for hemolytic disease found a 4.8% rate of neurodevelopmental impairment, including cerebral palsy (2.1%), severe developmental delay (3.1%), and bilateral deafness (1.0%).[38] Severe fetal hydrops was independently associated with neurodevelopmental impairment.

CONGENITAL HEART DEFECTS

Congenital heart anomalies occur with a frequency of approximately 1/100 live births (see also Chapter 78).[39] Ventricular septal defects are the most common cardiac anomaly.[40] The majority of cardiac heart defects are not amenable to fetal intervention. Ultrasound imaging allows diagnosis of cardiac defects as early as 12 to 16 weeks gestation, but is generally performed at 18 to 22 weeks gestation, when obstetric ultrasound assessments are used to screen for other fetal abnormalities.[41]

The majority of fetal surgical cardiac interventions focus on opening a stenotic valve or enlarging a restricted opening. These include (1) aortic balloon valvuloplasty for treatment of critical aortic stenosis and evolving hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS), (2) atrial septostomy for highly restrictive or intact atrial septum seen in HLHS,

(3) pulmonic valvuloplasty for pulmonary atresia or intact ventricular septum and hypoplastic right ventricles, and (4) pericardiocentesis to treat congenital cardiac tumors or aneurysms.[41-43a] In utero intervention attempts to halt or reverse the morbid effects of the cardiac lesion before irreversible consequences occur. Early childhood mortality from severe cardiac defects, such as HLHS, remains in the range of 25% to 35%.[44,45] Survivors have significant associated abnormalities in neurologic development.[46,47]

The most commonly performed procedure is an aortic valvuloplasty for aortic stenosis with evolving HLHS. Significant aortic stenosis maintains fetal circulation primarily through the low-resistance foramen ovale and diminishes left ventricular development. Selection guidelines for fetal aortic valvuloplasty focus on the presence of significant aortic stenosis, evolving HLHS, and the potential for a technically successful procedure and biventricular postnatal outcome.[48,49] For this procedure,[50] the fetus is ideally positioned with the left chest anterior, and ultrasound is used to guide the percutaneous passage of an 18- or 19-gauge needle cannula through the uterus, through the fetal chest, and into the apex of the left ventricle (Fig. 63.2*A*). Maternal local anesthesia infiltration or neuraxial block is typically used for these procedures, and fetal resuscitation drugs must be readily available. In some cases, general anesthesia may be preferred for uterine relaxation to facilitate an external version to change fetal position and improve cannula trajectory. Before cannula insertion, intramuscular fentanyl and a paralytic agent are administered to the fetus with ultrasound guidance, as detailed in the section on "Fetal Anesthesia, Analgesia, and Pain Perception."[51]

The cannula tip is ideally positioned in the left ventricle, directly in front of the opening of the stenotic aortic valve and aligned with the left ventricular outflow tract. A coronary balloon catheter with guidewire is passed through the cannula into the stenotic valve and positioned in the aortic annulus, where it is inflated and deflated multiple times (see Fig. 63.2*B*). In certain cases, a small laparotomy is used to facilitate improved cannula alignment with the cardiac lesion. Technical success for fetal aortic valvuloplasty is approximately 75% using an angioplasty balloon over a guidewire.[51a] Technical success creates improved left ventricular function, improved aortic and mitral valve development, and birth of a live neonate in 90% of interventions.[52,53] Fetal complication rates from centers in Linz, Austria ($n = 24$) and Boston ($n = 70$) for fetal aortic valvuloplasty include: fetal bradycardia (17% and 38%, respectively), pericardial effusion (13% and 14%, respectively), ventricular thrombosis (21% and 15%, respectively), and fetal death (13% and 8%, respectively).[48,54,55] A recent systematic review noted complication rates following fetal aortic valvuloplasty of preterm delivery (16%), neonatal death (16%), bradycardia (52%), and hemopericardium (20%).[43] Approximately 40% of technically successful cases result in aortic regurgitation and minimal subsequent left ventricular growth. Biventricular circulation is present at birth in approximately half of the successful cases.[43a]

In addition to treatment of aortic stenosis, other cardiac anomalies have been treated in utero. Similar surgical techniques are used for atrial septoplasty and pulmonary valvuloplasty.[42] Outcomes from a small series of fetal atrial septostomies are promising; however, the defect created

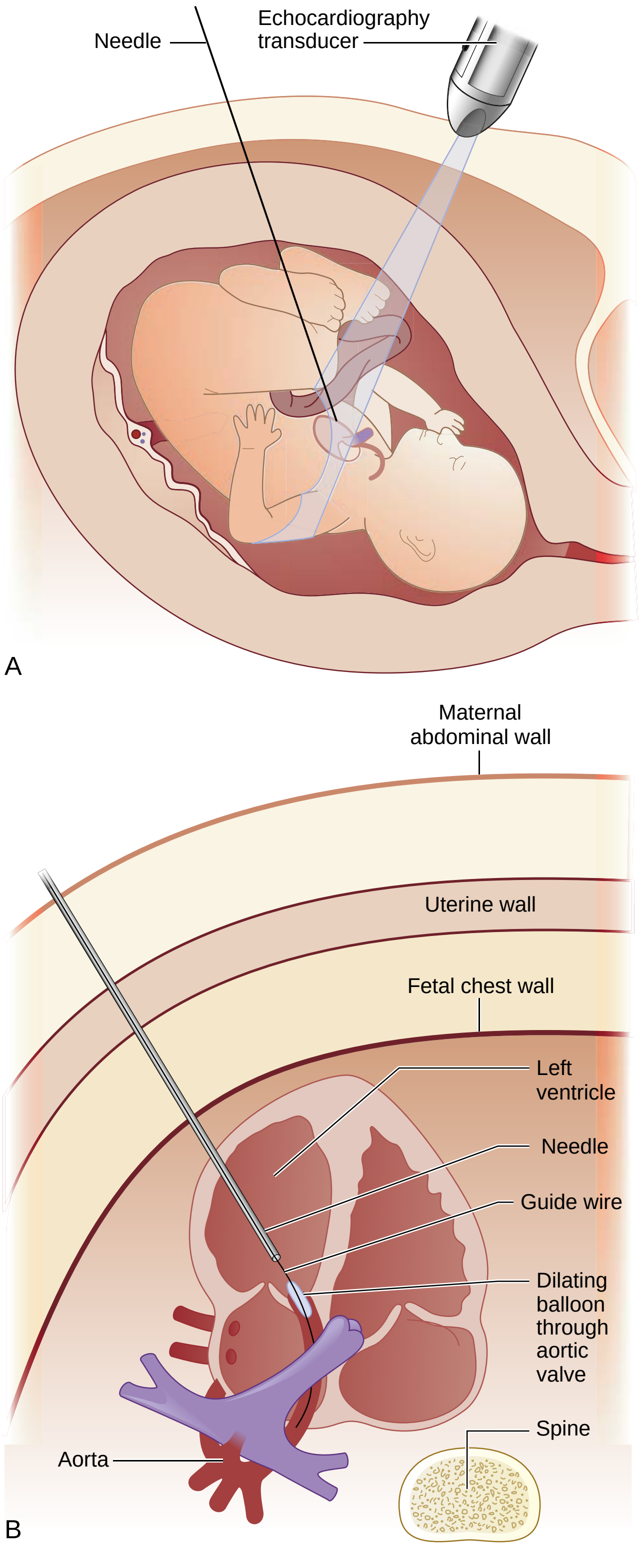


Fig. 63.2 (A) Depiction of ideal fetal position and insertion needle orientation. The fetal left chest is anterior, and the pathway from maternal abdomen entry point to the apex of the left ventricle is unobstructed. (B) This linear cannula course continues from left ventricle apex to the aortic valve. (Redrawn from Tworetzky W, Wilkins-Haug L, Jennings RW, et al. Balloon dilation of severe aortic stenosis in the fetus: potential for prevention of hypoplastic left heart syndrome—candidate selection, technique, and results of successful intervention. *Circulation.* 2004;110:2125–2131; with permission from Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

by the balloon dilation tends to close over time unless a stent is placed (which can be difficult and deployment has been successful in only 44%-62% of the time in a small case series).[56] Pulmonary valvuloplasty for pulmonary atresia and prevention of hypoplastic right ventricle was technically successful in 7 of 11 procedures, but long-term outcome data are unavailable.[42,57,58] In utero placement of cardiac pacing has been investigated to treat fetal cardiac arrhythmias unresponsive to conventional management with transplacentally administered antiarrhythmic drugs.[59,60] Unfortunately, these initial attempts have been frequently unsuccessful.

OBSTRUCTIVE UROPATHY

Fetal LUTO affects 2 in 10,000 live births.[61] These obstructions can be bilateral or unilateral and occur at the ureteropelvic junction, at the ureterovesical junction, or at the level of the urethra. If the obstruction is urethral or bilateral, significant developmental consequences occur (Box 63.1). Rates of perinatal mortality in these cases are as high as 90%, and survivors have more than 50% renal impairment.[62,63]

Posterior urethral valves are the most common cause of congenital bilateral hydronephrosis in male fetuses. Urethral obstruction is the most common cause in females, with other possible causes including ectopic ureter, ureterocele, megacystis megaureter, multicystic kidney, or other complex pathologic processes.[63,64] Ultrasound investigations of oligohydramnios resulting from decreased fetal urine output easily detect these uropathies with high sensitivity and specificity. Fetal MRI should be considered in cases of severe oligohydramnios as an additional imaging technique to determine the presence of associated fetal anomalies.[65] Grading systems based on ultrasound imaging of renal diameter to determine the severity of hydronephrosis and assessment of urinary tract dilation are used to determine risk stratification and treatment options.[66] Recently, a classification system for LUTO has been proposed that is based on amniotic fluid index, renal imaging, and fetal urine chemistry.[67] The associated morbidity predicted for each type of uropathy depends on obstruction location, duration, gender, and GA at onset.[68] Preterm delivery allows neonatal urinary tract decompression, but morbidity from pulmonary immaturity prevents early intervention and limits the efficacy of this approach.

Poor prognosis is associated with earlier presentation during gestation, more severe oligohydramnios, associated structural abnormalities, and increased concentrations of fetal urine electrolytes, osmolality, protein, and β_2-microglobulin.[68,69] Each case should be thoroughly investigated to determine whether other anomalies are present and if the fetus is a suitable candidate for intervention. If LUTO is corrected postnatally, 25% to 30% of surviving neonates will require dialysis by age 5.[70]

Placement of an in utero fetal vesicoamniotic shunting (VAS) for in utero treatment of LUTO allows decompression of the fetal bladder and urinary tract into the amniotic cavity. VAS prevents urine accumulation, allows normal bladder emptying and development, improves dysplastic renal histologic conditions, increases amniotic fluid volume, improves lung development, and prevents bladder wall fibrosis in animal models.[71-73] Determination of which human fetuses would benefit from in utero treatment of LUTO remains uncertain.[70,74] Human VAS placement started in the 1980s in an effort to improve renal development and reduce the pulmonary hypoplasia associated with oligohydramnios. These valveless, double-coiled shunts are inserted percutaneously with ultrasonographic guidance and local anesthesia. One coil remains in the urinary bladder and the other in the amniotic cavity. Prior infusion of fluid into the amniotic cavity can aid in proper shunt placement. Complications associated with these shunts include difficult placement, subsequent occlusion, and position migration (malfunction occurs in up to 60% of cases).[75] Fetal and maternal complications include fetal trauma, iatrogenic abdominal wall injury, gastroschisis, amnioperitoneal leaking, preterm PROM, preterm labor and delivery, and infection.[61] Neonatal survival rates after fetal VAS vary in the literature from 40% to 90%, with approximately 50% of survivors having normal renal function.[70,76-78] A meta-analysis of LUTO treatment studies through 2015 noted a perinatal survival advantage with in utero VAS placement compared to standard care (57% vs. 39%), but ultimately there was no difference in renal function or 2-year survival.[70] A multicenter, randomized controlled trial (the Percutaneous Shunting in Lower Urinary Tract Obstruction [PLUTO] trial) compared the perinatal mortality and renal function of fetuses with LUTO treated by either VAS or conservative noninterventional care. The trial was unable to recruit sufficient cases, with only 31 out of 150 desired patients recruited over a 4-year period. Analysis of this smaller enrollment noted a mortality benefit in the fetal treatment group at 28 days, 1 year, and 2 years of age; however substantial morbidity occurred in both groups, leading to only two children with normal renal function at 2 years of age.[79]

Fetal cystoscopy is a recent intervention that allows prenatal visualization of the fetal urethra and ablation of the urethral obstruction. Cystoscopy facilitates diagnosis between LUTO resulting from urethral atresia and posterior urethral valves. This is an important distinction, as urethral atresia is nearly universally lethal and does not improve with VAS placement, while posterior urethral valves are amenable to fetal intervention. Ablation of

BOX 63.1 Developmental Consequences of Fetal Urethral Obstruction

Oligohydramnios

- Potter facies (prominent infraorbital folds)
- Hypoplastic lungs
- Flexion contracture

Hydronephrosis

- Type 4 cystic dysplasia
- Renal failure

Hydroureter and Megacystis

- Abdominal muscle deficiency
- Prune belly

Data from Harrison MR, Filly RA, Parer JT, et al. Management of the fetus with a urinary tract malformation. *JAMA*. 1981;246:635–639.

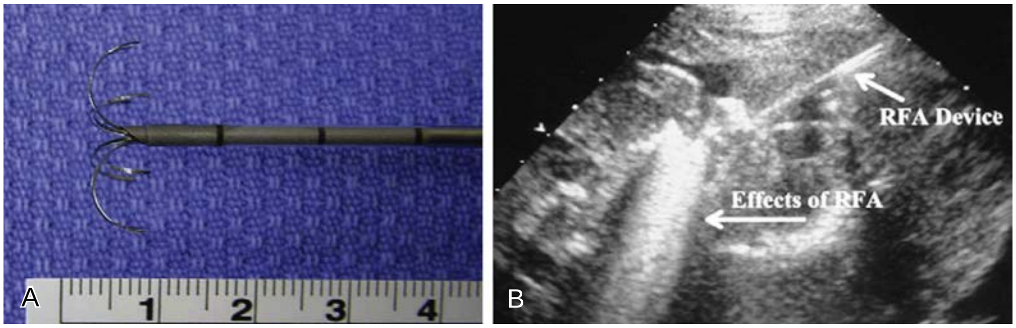


Fig. 63.3 (A) Photograph of a radiofrequency ablation *(RFA)* device with tines deployed. Scale below device in centimeters. (B) Intraoperative ultrasound image shows adequate position of the RFA device (tines deployed), with evidence of effects on the fetal tissues (regional increased echogenicity) as energy is applied. (Figures reproduced with permission from Hopkins LM, Feldstein VA. The use of ultrasound in fetal surgery. *Clin Perinatol.* 2009;36:255–272.)

posterior urethral valves may increase survival compared with expectant management. A case series[80] and retrospective case control study[81] demonstrated that fetoscopic laser ablation for posterior urethral valves can achieve bladder decompression and amniotic fluid normalization. In addition, fetal cystoscopy may improve 6-month survival in severe LUTO compared to no fetal intervention and result in improved renal function at birth when compared to treatment with VAS.[81] Future prospective trials are necessary to validate these initial retrospective results.

Selective fetal intervention with shunting or cystoscopy for LUTO restores amniotic fluid volume, prevents pulmonary hypoplasia, and improves perinatal mortality. However, the effects on medium-term and long-term renal function, neurologic function, bladder function, and other morbidities remain unclear and additional clinical research is needed.[74,82]

Twin Reversed Arterial Perfusion Sequence

Twin reversed arterial perfusion (TRAP) sequence is an abnormality of monozygotic twins that affects approximately 1 in 35,000 pregnancies, 1 in 100 monozygotic twin gestations, and 1 in 30 triplet gestations.[83] In this condition, one of the monozygotic twins has an absent or nonfunctioning heart and no connection to the placenta. The nonviable twin is perfused with retrograde blood flow from the other twin through vascular anastomoses. Blood returns to the normal twin by anastomoses that bypass the placenta. The inadequate perfusion of the recipient twin (primarily occurring retrograde through the umbilical artery) results in a lethal set of anomalies that include acardia and acephalus. Because the normal or “pump” twin generates blood flow for both itself and the nonviable twin, it is at risk for high-output congestive heart failure, hydrops fetalis, and preterm birth secondary to the increased uterine volume from polyhydramnios and increased size of the hydropic nonviable twin.[84,85] If untreated, TRAP sequence is associated with a 35% to 55% risk for intrauterine death of the normal pump twin, with survivors having an average GA of only 29 weeks.[86,87] Diagnosis is confirmed by reverse flow to the nonviable twin via the umbilical artery on ultrasound. The objective of fetal therapy is to disrupt the vascular communication between the two twins in an effort to prevent further cardiac failure in the pump twin. Successful treatment of TRAP sequence results in cessation of flow in the recipient twin’s umbilical artery and the death of the nonviable fetus.

Several in utero approaches can accomplish these goals. Ultrasound-guided umbilical cord coagulation using laser, radiofrequency, or bipolar techniques, fetoscopic laser coagulation of placental anastomoses, and percutaneous intrafetal laser or radiofrequency ablation of the acardiac twin’s umbilical cord base appear to be the most viable therapeutic options (Fig. 63.3).[88-90] Additional interventions include selective delivery of the nonviable fetus by hysterotomy, umbilical cord ligation, cord transection, and cord coagulation using coils or other thrombogenic material. Ablative techniques are likely superior to cord ligation or occlusion techniques.[88,91] A multicenter retrospective review of 98 TRAP sequence cases treated with radiofrequency ablation noted survival rates of 80% and a median GA at delivery of 37 weeks.[89] Although it is difficult to determine the optimal timing and treatment option, the therapeutic benefit of ablative intervention as early as 12 weeks GA has been demonstrated, as significant cardiac failure and death may occur in up to a third of pump twins if therapy is delayed until after 16 weeks gestation.[88,91,92] The most common complications following TRAP treatment include preterm PROM, preterm delivery, and intrauterine fetal demise.

Minimally invasive procedures to treat TRAP typically only require infiltration of local anesthesia at the percutaneous insertion site of the fetoscope or ablative device, although neuraxial anesthesia can also be used. Ultrasound guidance and assessment is critical for all of these therapies, and procedure success is confirmed by absence of flow to the nonviable acardiac twin at the end of the procedure and again approximately 12 to 24 hours later.

TWIN-TO-TWIN TRANSFUSION SYNDROME

Monochorionic twins share the same placenta and typically have intertwin vascular connections that create shared blood flow between the two fetuses. A significant number of these chorionic vascular anastomoses can result in unequal placental blood flow between the two monochorionic twins that can lead to twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome (TTTS). The occurrence of TTTS is approximately 1 to 3/10,000 births.[93] Monochorionic twinning occurs in approximately 20% to 25% of twin pregnancies, with TTTS complicating about 10% of these monochorionic gestations.[93-95] TTTS

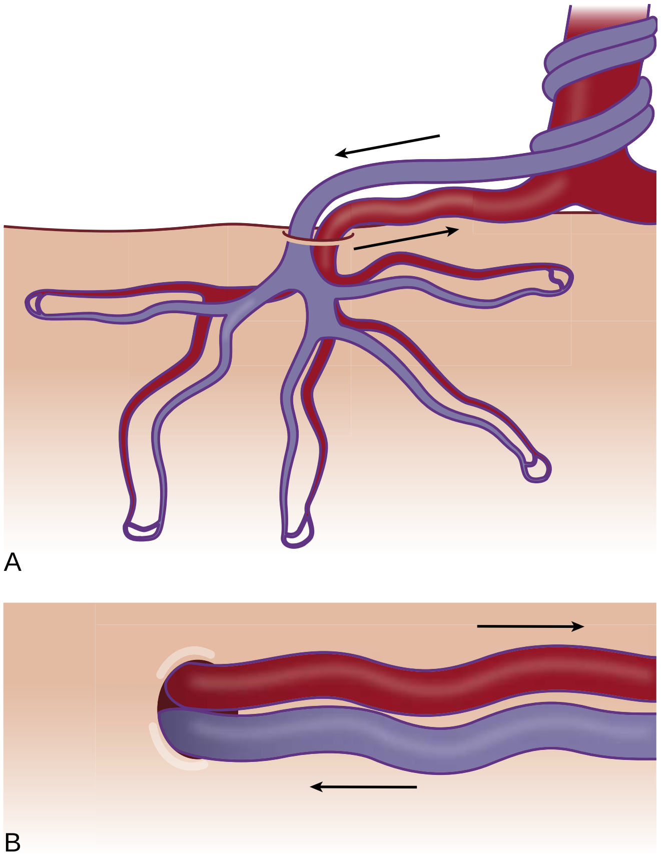


Fig. 63.4 (A) Normal placenta angioarchitecture (cotyledon). (B) Superficial view of bidirectional flow into and out of a cotyledon. (Redrawn from Rand L, Lee H. Complicated monochorionic twin pregnancies: updates in fetal diagnosis and treatment. *Clin Perinatol.* 2009;36:417–430.)

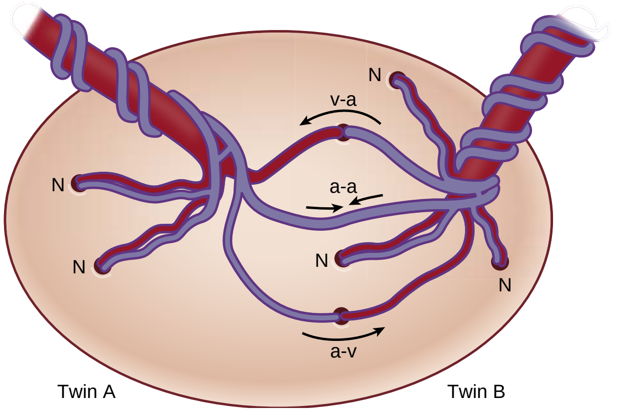


Fig. 63.5 Depiction of various types of vascular anastomoses present in monochorionic placentas. *a-a,* Arterioarterial anastomosis; *a-v,* arteriovenous anastomosis; *N,* normal angioarchitecture (cotyledon); *v-a,* venoarterial anastomosis. (Modified with permission from Simpson LL. Twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *Am J Obstet Gynecol.* 2013;208:3–18.)

usually manifests after the first trimester and is typically recognized at midgestation.[94,96]

Normally, umbilical arteries carry deoxygenated blood to the surface of the placenta, where gases and nutrients are exchanged with the maternal circulation. The returning venous blood flow is "paired" with the arterial flow, and the two components lie next to each other (Fig. 63.4). This fetal-placental vascular configuration (cotyledon) represents normal anatomy. A variety of abnormal unidirectional and imbalanced vascular connections are present in TTTS (Fig. 63.5). In TTTS, a branch of an umbilical artery descends into the placenta and cotyledon, but instead of connecting with a paired vein, it connects with a vein that brings blood to the other twin, and this results in an arteriovenous anastomosis between the two fetuses.[94,96] Although some intertwin arteriovenous vascular architecture is found in 90% to 95% of all monochorionic twins, the shared blood flow is balanced by the presence of arterioarterial and venovenous bidirectional connections, which are found in 85% to 90% and 15% to 20% of monochorionic twin placentas, respectively.[94,97,98] The presence of arterioarterial connections is viewed as protective by allowing the overall resistance and blood flow to equalize between the twins and is associated with a significant reduction in TTTS.[99]

The complex pathophysiology of TTTS is dynamic and secondary to a variety of humoral, biochemical, hemodynamic, and functional changes in the two fetuses.[94] The increased blood flow to the recipient twin leads to polycythemia, polyuria, and polyhydramnios and can cause hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, hydrops fetalis, and fetal death. The donor twin (often described as the "stuck" or "pump" twin) is typically hypovolemic, growth-restricted, confined against the endometrium in an oligohydramniotic sac. This twin is primarily at risk for renal failure, cardiac failure, and hydrops fetalis secondary to the high cardiac output state.

The diagnosis of TTTS requires (1) a monochorionic diamniotic pregnancy and (2) a significant discrepancy in amniotic fluid volumes with ultrasound measurements of the maximal vertical pocket (MVP) of less than 2 cm in the oligohydramniotic twin and the MVP greater than 8 cm in the polyhydramniotic twin.[94,100] Twin size discordance and the presence of intrauterine growth restriction are often present in TTTS, but are not considered necessary to confirm the diagnosis. Although a variety of staging systems exist for determining the severity of TTTS, the most commonly used is the Quintero staging system (Table 63.2), which is based on ultrasound findings.[101,102] The progression of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy in the fetal recipient is detailed in a scoring system presented by Rychik and colleagues utilizing fetal echocardiography[103,104] that provides a more detailed assessment of TTTS severity when combined with the Quintero staging system.[95]

Fetuses with TTTS are at risk for preterm PROM, preterm delivery, and neurologic injury with white-matter lesions and long-term disability.[105] Neurodevelopmental impairment is associated with a low GA at birth.[106-108] Although outcome data stratified for the advanced stages of TTTS are limited, a higher mortality rate is likely associated with more advanced progression of disease.[100,109] TTTS treatment at stage I has an 85% survival rate, while higher-staged TTTS can increase to greater than 80% mortality if untreated.[93,110]

Several therapeutic management techniques have been developed to treat TTTS. Amnioreduction can help control polyhydramnios and thereby reduce the risk for both preterm labor and maternal respiratory distress. Also, placental blood flow may improve by decreasing amniotic hydrostatic

TABLE 63.2 Stages of Twin-Twin Transfusion Syndrome

Stage	Ultrasound Findings
I	Amniotic Fluid: Oligohydramnios in donor twin sac with MVP < 2 cm and polyhydramnios in recipient twin sac with MVP > 8 cm
II	Fetal Bladder: Stage I criteria AND no visualization of donor twin bladder with over 1 h of ultrasound observation
III	Doppler Flow: Stage II criteria AND (1) absent or reversed umbilical artery end-diastolic flow, (2) reversed ductus venosus a-wave flow, OR (3) pulsatile flow in the umbilical vein
IV	Fetal Hydrops: Either stage I or stage II criteria AND fetal hydrops in either twin
V	Fetal Demise: Fetal demise in either or both twins as assessed by absent fetal cardiac activity

MVP, Maximal vertical pocket.
Staging data based on criteria from Quintero RA, Morales WJ, Allen MH, et al. Staging of twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *J Perinatol*. 1999;19:550–555.

pressure on the placental vasculature. Serial amnioreductions have been used to treat TTTS for more than 25 years by improving placental perfusion and decreasing the rate of preterm deliveries.[111] A retrospective review of 223 twin sets with TTTS found that use of amnioreduction resulted in an overall birth survival rate of 78%, with survival rates of 65% for recipient twins and 55% for donor twins at 1 month of age.[112] Another review of 112 TTTS cases reported a 61% perinatal survival rate with use of amnioreduction.[113]

Use of an ultrasound-guided needle to create a surgical septostomy was hypothesized to improve TTTS outcome by equalizing the amniotic pressure between the two fetal sacs. In a prospective randomized trial comparing serial amnioreduction to septostomy, no survival difference was found between the techniques.[114] Septostomy is rarely used now for TTTS treatment because it offers no outcome advantage, and the creation of a single amniotic sac can increase the risk for umbilical cord entanglement. Selective feticide with the goal of improving the chance for survival of the other twin is accomplished using techniques described previously in the section on TRAP sequence. This option is typically used only for the most severe cases of TTTS.

Selective fetoscopic laser photocoagulation (SFLP) of the vascular anastomoses between the two twins is the best therapeutic approach for treating TTTS (stages II-IV) between 18 and 26 weeks gestation.[94,95,115] By detailed fetal ultrasound examination, the location of the placenta, cord insertions, and fetal orientation and anatomy are confirmed before the start of the procedure. Local anesthesia infiltration with monitored anesthesia care is a common anesthetic technique, though neuraxial anesthesia can also be used. Using ultrasound guidance, a 3-mm trocar or cannula is inserted percutaneously over a wire into the recipient twin's amniotic sac and directed perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the donor twin.[115] The fetoscope is inserted into the trocar sheath and the laser fiber bundle passed into the fetoscope guide. Vessels that cross the membrane dividing the amniotic sacs are visualized and Doppler imaging can be used to confirm flow magnitude and direction. The abnormal connecting vessels are selectively laser coagulated, with an effort to spare the normal cotyledons.[7,96] Ideally this delineates two separate placental regions with each supplying an individual fetus. After laser ablation, amnioreduction is also performed in an effort to decrease the risk for preterm labor. Nonselective laser ablation of crossing vessels is typically avoided because it is associated with more frequent rates of intrauterine fetal demise and is likely to unnecessarily ablate some normal placental vessels.[101,115] Ablation of all abnormal connecting vasculature is not necessary for the procedure to be successful.[116] Some practitioners advocate use of a sequential technique when coagulating the various types of abnormal anastomoses in an effort to create a net flux of blood from the recipient to the donor and thereby reduce the chance for hemodynamic compromise and hypotension during the procedure in the donor twin.[117] Initially, superficial arteriovenous anastomoses that contain a donor artery are ablated, then arteriovenous anastomoses with a recipient artery, then the arterioarterial anastomoses, and finally ablation is performed at the venovenous anastomoses. A prospective multicenter trial comparing use of sequential SFLP to nonsequenced SFLP found that use of sequential SFLP significantly improved the 30-day survival of both twins and decreased fetal demise.[118,119] However, use of this sequential technique is associated with longer operative times and increased case difficulty, particularly with a placenta located on the anterior uterine wall. A recent modification of SFLP called the "Solomon technique" was created to reduce recurrent TTTS.[120] In the Solomon technique, the entire vascular equator is coagulated following the coagulation of visible vessels, in order to reduce residual anastomoses. A randomized controlled trial comparing SFLP to the Solomon technique trial noted that the Solomon technique reduces the risk of recurrence of TTTS or twin-anemia polycythemia sequence following initial treatment, but no difference in 2-year survival without neurodevelopmental disability was found.[121,122]

A 2004 randomized multicenter trial compared SFLP therapy to amnioreduction for treatment of severe TTTS diagnosed between 15 and 26 weeks gestation.[123] Rates of at least one twin survival were more frequent in the laser treatment group at both 28 days (76% vs. 56%, $P < .01$) and 6 months of life (76% vs. 51%, $P < .01$). In addition, neurologic outcomes were better in the laser treatment group. A large subgroup of survivors from this trial was followed prospectively for 6 years. No additional change in either survival rate or long-term neurologic outcome was found in comparison to the original 6-month data.[124] This conclusion was echoed in a 2014 Cochrane review of laser treatment for TTTS.[110] More recent work has suggested that early intervention in stage I TTTS may be beneficial compared to expectant management.[125]

Although recent SFLP treatment studies of TTTS studies suggests a greater than 60% dual survival rate and near 90% survival of at least one twin,[126] long-term neurologic outcome in TTTS survivors who underwent SFLP remains unclear, with rates of major neurologic abnormalities in survivors ranging from 3% to 25%.[124,127] A recent review of 9 studies examining neurodevelopmental outcomes at 24 months in patients who underwent laser therapy found a mean rate of neurological injury of 14%. The mean rate of cognitive impairment was 8%, 11% for motor delay, 17%

for communication delay, and 6% for cerebral palsy.[105] Neonatal cerebral lesions correlate with neurodevelopmental impairment at 2 years of age.[128]

The most common complication of SFLP is preterm PROM with subsequent preterm labor and delivery. Preterm PROM rates vary widely across studies, but have been reported to occur in 12% to 30% of SFLP cases for TTTS with a rate of preterm labor and delivery before 32 weeks gestation of approximately 30%.[94,95] Other possible complications include placental abruption, need for a second SFLP procedure, placement of the trocar through the placenta, hemorrhage, chorioamnionitis, and possible membrane perforation resulting in limb entrapment and ischemia.[94,95]

In conclusion, treatment of TTTS with SFLP results in better outcomes compared to amnioreduction alone.[126] Additional research is needed to determine optimal timing, further technique refinement, and long-term neurologic outcome for the treatment of TTTS with SFLP.

AMNIOTIC BAND SYNDROME

Amniotic band syndrome (ABS) includes a wide variety of fetal anomalies associated with fibrous bands that entangle or constrict various parts of the fetus or umbilical cord in utero (Fig. 63.6). The resulting malformations include limb and digit amputations, craniofacial abnormalities, visceral defects, and body wall defects. The incidence is approximately 1 in 3000 to 1 in 15,000 live births.[129] The primary cause and pathogenesis of ABS remains unknown, but these defects appear secondary to either a vascular insult or other cause of abnormal perfusion to the affected area.[130] Theories behind the cause of ABS include a primary defect in embryonic development, an early amniotic membrane rupture resulting in the creation of amniochorionic bands, or a vascular disruption early in pregnancy.[131]

Diagnosis is determined by findings on ultrasound imaging consistent with characteristic fetal anomalies of the involved anatomy. Visualization of the bands themselves is not a necessary component of the diagnosis.[132] Fetal MRI can aid in diagnosis as a complementary technique to ultrasound, but the efficacy of its use is currently limited to case reports and a small case series.[133] The progression of morbid conditions from each case of ABS is difficult to predict. In cases of limb entrapment, increasing band constriction decreases both venous and arterial flow. This decreased perfusion leads to limb edema and can eventually result in amputation distal to the constriction. In an otherwise normal fetus, use of fetoscopic-guided sectioning of the band with a laser can restore distal blood flow and may improve functional outcome in some cases.[131] Efficacy of the technique is based on review of a small number of cases in the literature, which range from 50% to 80% of limb form and function preservation provided that some arterial flow to the affected limb is present pre-intervention.[134,135] Single limb involvement is also associated with a more favorable surgical outcome compared to fetuses with multiple limb involvement.[135] Interestingly, the rate of PROM in these procedures is higher than other fetoscopic procedures.[129,131] ABS can also be an iatrogenic complication following minimally invasive fetal procedures in monochorionic diamniotic twins, and should be evaluated for especially if known chorioamnion separation or septostomy occurs.[136]

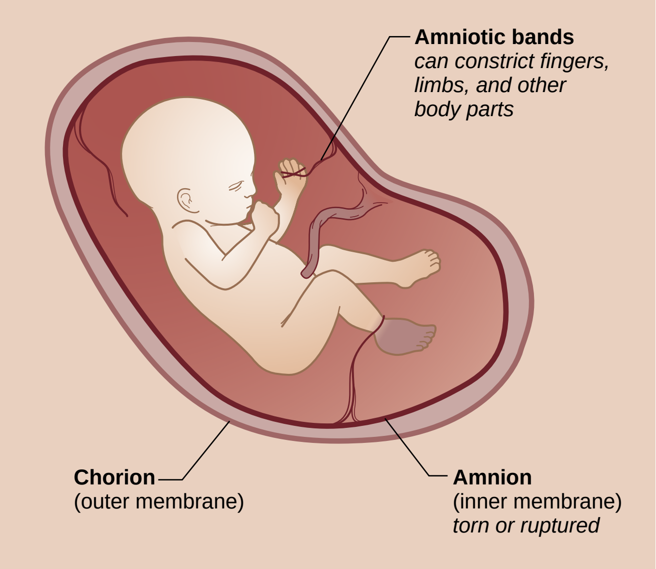


Fig. 63.6 Depiction of amniotic band syndrome. The amnion membrane can become wrapped around various fetal parts (e.g., digits, limbs, neck) and result in amputations or deformities. (Redrawn from Graves CE, Harrison MR, Padilla BE. Minimally invasive fetal surgery. *Clin Perinatol.* 2017;44(4):729–751.)

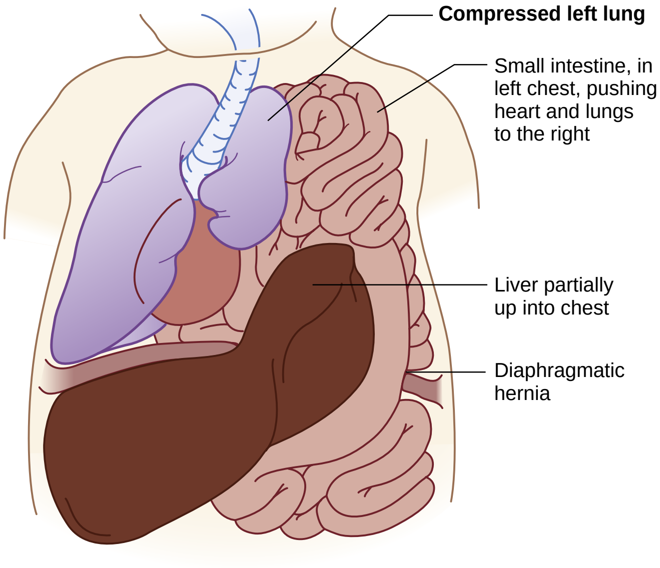

Compressed left lung
Small intestine, in left chest, pushing heart and lungs to the right
Liver partially up into chest
Diaphragmatic hernia

Fig. 63.7 Depiction of congenital diaphragmatic hernia. A defect in the fetal diaphragm allows abdominal contents (e.g., intestines, liver) to enter the thoracic cavity, compress the heart, and prevent lung growth and maturation. (Redrawn from Graves CE, Harrison MR, Padilla BE. Minimally invasive fetal surgery. *Clin Perinatol.* 2017;44(4):729–751.)

CONGENITAL DIAPHRAGMATIC HERNIA

Approximately 1 in 2500 newborn infants has a congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH).[137] During early gestation, abdominal contents herniate into the thoracic cavity and compress the fetal lungs (Fig. 63.7). This results in significant neonatal morbidity and mortality from pulmonary hypoplasia, respiratory insufficiency, and pulmonary hypertension. CDH survival rates when ECMO is not required have improved to greater than 70% over the past 25 years at tertiary care centers.[138,139] These highly specialized centers offer care that includes early intubation, surfactant administration, ventilation techniques to minimize lung trauma, surgical closure of the defect, and ECMO therapy. Mortality rates vary greatly with the severity of pulmonary hypertension and respiratory dysfunction.[140,141] If ECMO is required, survival rates vary between 50% and 80%.[139] Fetal intervention for CDH aims to improve fetal lung development and prevent the morbidity of pulmonary hypoplasia.

In utero repair of diaphragmatic hernia in lamb models reversed both the parenchymal hypoplasia and pulmonary vascular changes associated with CDH.[23] Initial human in utero intervention focused on open repair of the fetal diaphragm with limited success.[142,143] However, these initial interventions advanced fetal surgery techniques and paved the way for a minimally invasive approach to CDH intervention.

Initial open intervention experience found that a fetal abdominal patch was necessary to accommodate the added abdominal viscera without increasing intraabdominal pressure and compromise of ductus venosus blood flow. These early open interventions also determined that in utero reduction of the herniated liver compromised umbilical circulation and significantly increased fetal mortality. Additionally, the advantage of opening the uterus with a stapling device to ensure effective hemostasis was demonstrated. However, adequate control of postoperative uterine tone remained a substantial problem. In a prospective clinical trial sponsored by the National Institutes of Health, in utero CDH treatment using an open technique for fetuses without herniation of the liver into the thorax did not improve neonatal survival compared with standard postnatal treatment.[144]

After these efforts, tracheal occlusion was advanced as a less-invasive strategy for treating fetal CDH and improving lung development. Fetal lungs secrete over 100 mL/kg/day of fluid that exits the trachea and mouth into the amniotic cavity. In fetal lamb models, tracheal occlusion restricts the normal outflow of the fetal lung fluid and provides an increase in pulmonary hydrostatic pressure. This increased pressure pushes the viscera out of the thorax, promotes expansion of the hypoplastic lung, and thereby improves lung growth and development.[145,146] Fetal reversible tracheal occlusion[147-149] has replaced primary repair in utero for the treatment of CDH. Initially, a tracheal foam plug was inserted in the fetal airway during open surgery, but it failed to provide adequate occlusion.[150] Later, metallic hemoclips were placed around the trachea after meticulous neck dissection.[150] Unfortunately, survival with this initial open tracheal occlusion procedure was poor (15%) and lower than survival in CDH fetuses receiving postnatal standard treatment (38%).[151]

Subsequently, minimally invasive fetal endoscopic surgical techniques replaced the open technique for placement of the clips. These procedures are performed with local or neuraxial maternal anesthesia and the administration of fetal anesthesia by intramuscular injection. A variety of occlusive devices, including cuffs, plugs, valves, and balloons, were attempted at various medical centers.[152] Currently, percutaneous endoscopic endotracheal intubation is used to place a small detachable occlusive balloon in the fetal trachea.[149] With initial procedures the balloon was left in place until delivery (see discussion on EXIT procedures), but currently, it is deflated and removed before term with a second fetal endoscopy.[153] The balloon removal may improve type II pneumocyte function, increase surfactant production, and allow a vaginal delivery when appropriate.[152]

TABLE 63.3 Postnatal Survival in Fetuses With Left-Sided Congenital Diaphragmatic Hernia and Intrathoracic Liver Herniation Based on Fetal Lung to Head Ratio

	POSTNATAL MANAGEMENT		FETOSCOPIC TRACHEAL OCCLUSION	
LHR (mm)	**Fetuses *n***	**Survival *n* (%)**	**Fetuses *n***	**Survival *n* (%)**
0.4-0.5	2	0	6	1 (16.7)
0.6-0.7	6	0	13	8 (61.5)
0.8-0.9	19	3 (15.8)	9	7 (77.8)
1.0-1.1	23	14 (60.8)		
1.2-1.3	19	13 (68.4)		
1.4-1.5	11	8 (72.7)		
≥1.6	6	5 (83.3)		
Total	86	43 (50)	28	16 (57.1)

LHR, Lung area-to-head circumference ratio.

Modified from Jani JC, Nicolaides KH, Gratacos E, et al. Fetal lung-to-head ratio in the prediction of survival in severe left-sided diaphragmatic hernia treated by fetal endoscopic tracheal occlusion (FETO). *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2006;195:1646–1650.

Use of ultrasound imaging to determine the ratio of fetal lung area to head circumference (LHR) and the presence of thoracic liver herniation ("liver up" vs. "liver down") are historically the most reliable prognostic indicators of fetal CDH outcome.[152,154,155] Evaluation of survival in fetuses with left-sided CDH and intrathoracic liver herniation managed postnatally noted no survival with an LHR of 0.7 or less and a survival rate of 72.7% or greater with an LHR of 1.4 or greater (Table 63.3).[154] The LHR increases exponentially with GA and is less useful after 28 weeks gestation.[156] The Antenatal CDH Registry Group normalized the LHR to GA by creating an observed to expected LHR (o/e LHR)[157] that correlates well with survival rate (Fig. 63.8).[158,159] More recently, fetal MRI measurement of observed to expected total fetal lung volume (o/e TFLV) correlates well with neonatal survival in fetuses with isolated CDH as an assessment of pulmonary hypoplasia.[160,161] In addition to presence of liver herniation, use of a 25% threshold with o/e LHR and o/e TFLV appear to perform the best as predictors of survival with CDH.[159]

A prospective randomized trial (1999-2001) evaluated fetal endoscopic tracheal occlusion (FETO) for prenatal treatment of CDH using both clip and balloon occlusion techniques.[162] Inclusion criteria included a 22- to 28-week GA, left-sided thoracic liver herniation, and an LHR of less than 1.4. The trial was closed early, and no benefit in survival or reduction in 90-day morbidity was found with prenatal treatment (n = 11) compared with control (n = 13) (survival rates of 73% vs. 77%). Additionally, rates of PROM and preterm delivery were more frequent in the fetal intervention group, with 100% of the fetoscopic intervention group having PROM.[162] The inclusion of fetuses with an LHR of up to 1.4 may have decreased the ability to determine a significant difference, because many of these fetuses were likely to survive with standard postnatal tertiary medical care (see Table 63.3).

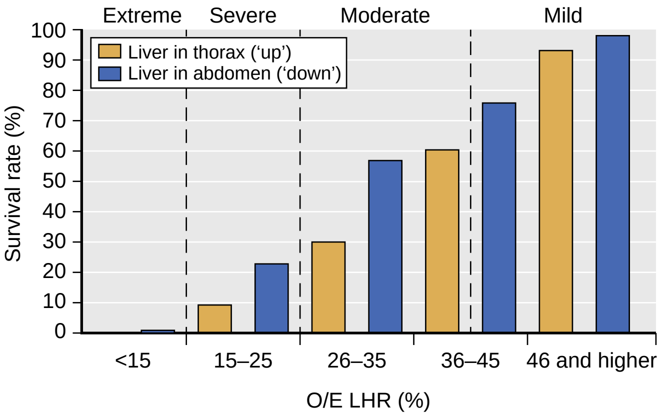


Fig. 63.8 Survival rates of fetuses with isolated left-sided congenital diaphragmatic hernia, depending on measurement of the observed to expected lung area to head circumference ratio *(O/E LHR)* and position of the liver. (Redrawn from Deprest JA, Nicolaides K, Gratacos E. Fetal surgery for congenital diaphragmatic hernia is back from never gone. *Fetal Diagn Ther.* 2011;29:6–17.)

Three European medical centers and the FETO task force began a collaboration for treatment of severe cases of CDH with a high risk for mortality (LHR < 1.0 and liver herniation into the hemithorax).[157,163] Because of concern for tracheal damage by very early tracheal balloon placement,[164] the tracheal balloon was placed at 26 to 28 weeks gestation and removed around 34 weeks gestation. Data from FETO task force cases through 2008 ($n = 210$, mean GA of placement at 27 weeks, LHR < 1.0, and primarily left-sided CDH) were compared with historic postnatal treatment controls (1995-2004). Use of prenatal reversible tracheal occlusion significantly improved the survival rate (47% vs. 20% in historic controls), and delivery occurred at a median GA of 35 weeks.[163] In addition, mean operating time was minimal (<10 minutes) and more than 95% of procedures were successful on the first attempt. Some of the survival benefit with in utero treatment may represent selection bias as well as improvement in both technique and neonatal care over time.

A 2016 metaanalysis of all studies comparing survival outcome between FETO and a contemporary control group found fetal intervention improved survival in patients with isolated CDH and a LHR ≤ 1.0. Fifty-one of 110 fetuses (46.3%) who had undergone FETO survived to discharge, compared with 6 of 101 (5.9%) in the control group.[165] Another recent study suggests that patients undergoing FETO for severe isolated CDH have morbidity outcomes similar to those fetuses with moderate lung hypoplasia.[166] Although FETO improves lung growth, and decreases need for ECMO, left heart hypoplasia may persist until after the postnatal CDH repair.[167]

A multicenter randomized Tracheal Occlusion to Accelerate Lung growth trial is ongoing (http://www.totaltrial.eu).[168] It compares postnatal management to both late (30-32 weeks gestation) FETO intervention for moderate lung hypoplasia and earlier FETO intervention (27-30 weeks gestation) for severe lung hypoplasia. This trial uses o/e LHR criteria, and balloon occlusion removal is planned for 34 weeks gestation, with postnatal management standardized by a consensus protocol. Long-term outcome data on pulmonary and neurologic development are needed to better determine if and when FETO should be offered for individual cases of severe CDH. New data suggest that prenatal administration of sildenafil may further reduce neonatal pulmonary hypertension, with or without invasive fetal surgery.[149]

MYELOMENINGOCELE

Spina bifida includes all defects with incomplete neural tube closure. Myelomeningocele (MMC) is the most common type of spina bifida and results in exposure of the meninges and spinal cord through a congenital defect in the vertebrae and overlying tissues. MMC occurs during the third and fourth weeks of gestation with incomplete embryonic neural plate development. Folate supplementation in the maternal diet has decreased the rate of MMC by nearly 50%, but the benefit reached a plateau without eliminating the disorder and MMC remains at a rate of approximately 1 in 3000 live births.[169,170] Improved prenatal screening with α-fetoprotein measurement and ultrasonography allows the possibility of pregnancy termination, and it is estimated that 25% to 40% of MMC pregnancies are terminated. MMC can result in lifelong morbidity and disability, including loss of motor and sensory function based on lesion level, bowel and bladder dysfunction, sexual dysfunction, hydrocephalus, Arnold-Chiari type II malformation, tethered cord, and impaired cognition.[169,171] If uncorrected in utero, surgical closure of the spinal defect must be performed within a few days after birth. Children with lumbosacral MMC defects often require ventriculoperitoneal shunting for hydrocephalus.[172] Even with successful shunting, complications of central hypoventilation, vocal cord dysfunction, and swallowing difficulties can persist because of an associated Arnold-Chiari malformation.[173] The mean intelligence quotient in patients with MMC who underwent ventriculoperitoneal shunting is 80 (low normal)[174] and decreased compared to those who do not require a shunt.[175] Neonates with spina bifida have a 14% mortality rate by 5 years of age and a 35% mortality rate in those with known brainstem dysfunction and Arnold Chiari type II malformation.[169]

The cause of MMC remains unknown. The abnormalities and deficits of MMC are hypothesized to be the result of two separate mechanisms. The primary cause is anatomic malformation with abnormal development of the spinal cord and associated tissues. Secondary damage is likely created by exposure of these open neural elements to the amniotic fluid and direct trauma. Consequently, the ability to close the defect in utero and isolate the neural tissue from contact with the intrauterine environment has the potential to improve outcome in contrast to delaying closure until after birth.

This hypothesis has been supported by animal models that found improved neonatal neurologic function with fetal closure of the defect in utero.[176-179] Ultrasound assessment demonstrates that central and peripheral neurologic injury is progressive during gestation.[180,181] Motor deficits and cognitive dysfunction are correlated with lesion level and higher levels are associated with a greater degree of morbidity.[177] Improved motor function has been observed at 2 years of age in children with MMC who underwent cesarean delivery before labor onset compared to those delivered vaginally or by cesarean delivery after onset of labor.[169,182] Therefore, women with fetuses with MMC and planned postnatal repair typically undergo cesarean delivery before onset of labor or rupture of membranes in an effort to minimize any additional injury to the open neural elements.

The rationale for fetal intervention for MMC is to improve functionality and quality of life. Prenatal repair for MMC is most commonly performed with an open fetal surgery technique requiring both maternal laparotomy and hysterotomy, although a few centers have started performing the repair with an endoscopic fetal technique. Considerations for anesthesiologists involved in open MMC repair (see section on "Management of Open Procedure") include participating in comprehensive, multidisciplinary, preoperative maternal evaluation and counseling; preparing for potential intraoperative hemorrhage; planning an anesthetic that provides profound uterine relaxation; administering analgesia and muscle relaxant directly to the fetus; monitoring the need for potential fetal resuscitation or urgent delivery; and managing maternal analgesia and postoperative uterine and fetal monitoring.[183]

MMC in utero surgery typically occurs between 19 and 26 weeks gestation. Initial human studies found that in utero repair reversed the hindbrain herniation of the Arnold-Chiari II malformation and decreased the requirement for ventriculoperitoneal shunt placement before 1 year of age.[184] In addition, a 1999 series of 10 fetuses undergoing in utero MMC closure at 22 to 25 weeks gestation found improved lower extremity function among 6 out of 9 fetuses compared with expected function based on the level of lesion, with one fetal death at 25 weeks gestation from preterm delivery and associated respiratory insufficiency.[185] A randomized, prospective clinical trial completed between 2003 and 2010 at three U.S. medical centers examined the risks, benefits, and outcomes of open in utero repair for MMC compared with standard postnatal repair among 183 patients.[186] Open fetal repair reduced the need for ventriculoperitoneal shunting, decreased hindbrain herniation, and improved lower extremity motor function at 30 months of age. However, prenatal repair significantly increased the risk for various fetal and maternal complications,[8,186] including spontaneous membrane rupture, partial or complete uterine dehiscence, and preterm birth with increased risk for respiratory distress syndrome (Table 63.4). Two perinatal deaths occurred in each group. A 30-month follow-up study demonstrated that patients undergoing fetal surgery were more likely to have a level of function 2 or more levels better than expected (26.4% vs. 11.4%), to be able to walk independently (44.8% vs. 23.9%, $P = .004$), to perform better on the Bayley Mental Development Index, and to have improved Peabody Developmental Motor Scale.[187,188] Long-term outcomes from this trial are still ongoing, but a pretrial cohort of 54 patients undergoing fetal MMC repair reported improved functional and behavioral outcomes at age 10 years, especially among children who did not require ventriculoperitoneal shunting.[189]

Results of this trial should not be generalized to patients outside the inclusion criteria of the study and should be considered only at medical centers that can develop a practice with significant volume and depth of resources.[190] It is recommended that this procedure be offered only at medical facilities with the expertise, multidisciplinary teams, services, and facilities to provide the intensive care required for these patients, while maintaining rigorous patient selection.[191]

TABLE 63.4 Maternal Complications for Management of Myelomeningocele Study Trial Patients

	Prenatal ($n = 91$)	Postnatal ($n = 92$)	P
MATERNAL OUTCOMES			
Chorioamniotic membrane separation	30 (33%)	0	<.0001
Pulmonary edema	5 (6%)	0	.03
Oligohydramnios	19 (20%)	3 (3%)	<.001
Placental abruption	6 (7%)	0	.01
Spontaneous rupture of membranes	40 (44%)	7 (8%)	<.0001
Spontaneous labor	39 (43%)	13 (14%)	<.0001
Maternal blood transfusion at delivery	8 (9%)	1 (1%)	.02
Hysterotomy site thin, or partial or complete dehiscence noted at delivery	31 (35%)	N/A	N/A
Mean gestational age at birth (weeks)	34.0 ± 3.0	37.3 ± 1.1	<.0001

The table lists maternal complications that were significantly different ($P < .05$) between the prenatal and postnatal repair groups in the Management of Myelomeningocele Study (MOMS) following complete cohort analysis of 183 patients. Other outcomes were evaluated, but only those that were different between the two groups are included. Data for each group are shown as both an absolute number and as a percentage.

Modified from Johnson MP, Bennett KA, Rand L, et al. The Management of Myelomeningocele Study: obstetrical outcomes and risk factors for obstetrical complications following prenatal surgery. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;215:778.e1–e9.

With improvement in surgical technique, and feasibility demonstrated in animal studies,[192] endoscopic MMC repair is increasingly practiced. In theory, a minimally invasive approach may reduce maternal complications and obviate the need for maternal cesarean delivery.[193] A phase I clinical trial of percutaneous endoscopic repair ($n = 10$) using a biocellular patch over the defect followed by skin closure revealed improved hindbrain herniation and motor function, however preterm delivery was significant with the mean gestational birth age being 32 weeks.[194] In addition, 2 of 10 procedures were aborted due to loss of uterine access, preterm PROM occurred in all 10 cases, and 1 fetus and 1 neonate died. Outcomes have improved with evolution of the fetoscopic repair technique to include a maternal laparotomy and exteriorization of the uterus prior to insertion of the fetoscope ports.[193,195] After port placement, a portion of amniotic fluid is withdrawn and carbon dioxide is insufflated. A retrospective cohort trial of 28 patients undergoing fetoscopic MMC repair (22 fetoscopic, 4 conversion to hysterotomy, 2 abandoned) noted a mean delivery at 39 weeks gestation with a standardized surgical approach ($n = 10$) using a two-port technique and a preterm PROM rate between 10% and 30%.[193] Of the 22 patients who underwent a fetoscopic repair, 50% delivered vaginally. Recently a method using partial amniotic carbon dioxide insufflation without pre-removal of amniotic fluid has been described and successfully used in MMC repair.[196]

A 2017 metaanalysis of 11 studies examining fetal MMC repair found no difference in mortality or need for ventriculoperitoneal shunt among fetal patients treated with an open or endoscopic technique.[9] Patients treated with a percutaneous fetoscopic technique had a higher PROM rate (91% vs. 36%), a higher risk of preterm delivery (96% vs. 81%), and a higher rate of cerebral spinal fluid leakage from the MMC repair site (30% vs. 7%). Fetal repair via a fetoscopic approach following maternal laparotomy had a lower rate of premature birth. Uterine dehiscence was higher in the open surgical group (11% vs. 0%). The authors concluded that a fetoscopic technique is a promising, though not yet perfected, technique for fetal MMC repair.[9] Minimally invasive endoscopic repair of MMC should still be considered an experimental treatment given the steep learning curve and lack of long-term outcome data.[7]

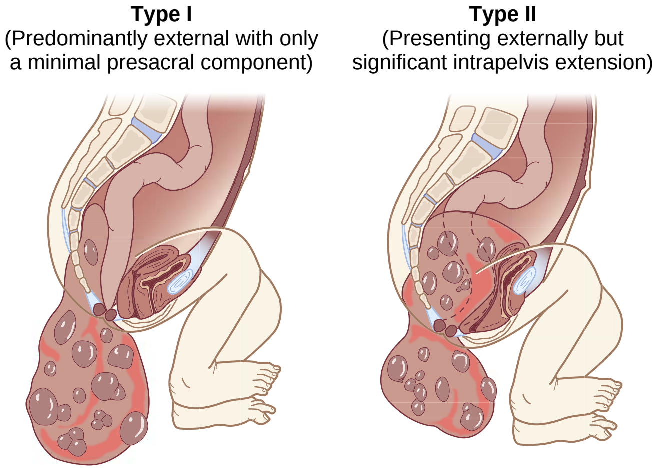
SACROCOCCYGEAL TERATOMA

The incidence of sacrococcygeal teratoma (SCT) is approximately 1 in 15,000 to 40,000 live births.[197] These teratomas are typically diagnosed by ultrasound in the second trimester of pregnancy and may grow rapidly (>150 cm^3/week), with some reaching sizes of 1000 cm^3 or more.[198] The larger tumors create a significant arteriovenous shunt and low resistance state and lead to the development of high-output cardiac failure, polyhydramnios, placentomegaly, and hydrops fetalis.[199] In addition, rapidly growing tumors may rupture and hemorrhage. Perinatal mortality varies greatly in different published series, ranging from 16% to 63%.[200] In addition, fetuses with SCT are at risk for preterm birth, intrapartum dystocia, tumor rupture with hemorrhage, and urinary obstruction. Cesarean delivery is frequently required.

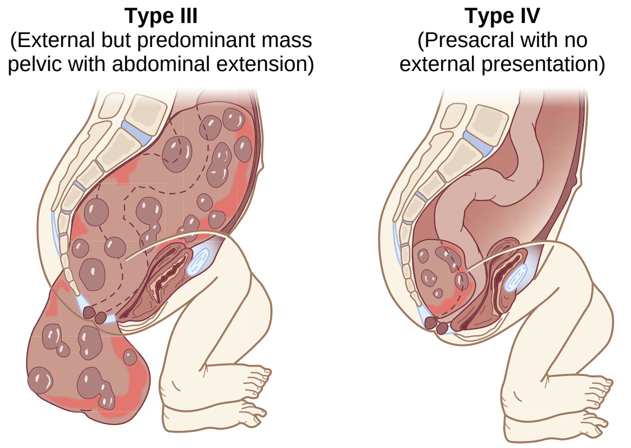
Tumor staging is based on criteria from the American Academy of Pediatrics Surgical Section as detailed by Altman (Fig. 63.9).[201] Based on the external location, stage I tumors are suitable for fetal intervention whereas stage IV tumors are entirely internal and not considered appropriate for fetal resection.[198] Fetal MRI can assist in tumor size, location, and staging. A tumor volume to fetal weight ratio greater than 0.1 cm^3/g prior to 24 weeks gestation is predictive of poor fetal outcome.[202]

Fetuses diagnosed with SCT before 30 weeks gestation or with rapidly growing tumors have a poor prognosis (<7% survival), but may benefit from in utero intervention.[203] Radiofrequency ablation, embolization, thermocoagulation of the tumor or vascular supply, and cyst drainage have been employed to treat SCT in utero and prevent hydrops fetalis, but the benefit remains unclear.[127,203]

A review of minimally invasive fetal intervention for SCT in 34 patients from 1980 to 2013 demonstrated an overall survival rate of 44% with mean delivery at 29.7 ± 4.0 weeks.[199] Preexisting hydrops led to a worse outcome, with only 30% survival (6/20) in this cohort. A subsequent review of 33 patients examined the effectiveness of different techniques, comparing interstitial tumor ablation (n = 22) to targeting the feeding vessels of the tumor (n = 11).[127] Fetuses undergoing vascular ablation seemed to have a survival advantage over the interstitial ablation group (63.6% vs. 40.9%), which the authors suggested may be because interstitial ablation often led to tumor necrosis and subsequent hemorrhage.


Type I
(Predominantly external with only a minimal presacral component)

Type II
(Presenting externally but significant intrapelvis extension)


Type III
(External but predominant mass pelvic with abdominal extension)

Type IV
(Presacral with no external presentation)

Fig. 63.9 Sacrococcygeal tumors are classified according to their location. Type I tumors are predominantly external (sacrococcygeal) with minimal presacral component; type II tumors present externally but have a significant intrapelvic extension; type III tumors are present externally but the predominant mass is pelvic and extends into the abdomen; type IV tumors are presacral with no external presentation. (Redrawn from Altman RP, Randolph JG, Lilly JR. Sacrococcygeal teratoma: American Academy of Pediatrics Surgical Section Survey-1973. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1974;9:389–398.)

SCTs have been resected in utero (Fig. 63.10) with successful outcomes, but the optimal timing and criteria for fetal intervention is uncertain.[12,198,199,204] Fetal teratoma resection has a high risk for fetal hemorrhage; consequently, intraoperative placement of a venous catheter in a fetal hand, leg, or umbilical cord vein is important for the ability to transfuse compatible blood and crystalloid or rapidly administer resuscitation drugs.

In certain cases, fetal SCT may lead to maternal mirror syndrome, in which maternal physiology mimics the abnormal circulatory physiology of the hydropic fetus.[205] The mother develops hypertension with increased peripheral and pulmonary edema from a hyperdynamic state. Mirror syndrome is a form of severe preeclampsia that may develop in association with fetal hydrops and in most cases necessitates delivery,[206] although platelet levels and liver enzymes typically remain in normal ranges. Maternal mirror syndrome does not normally resolve immediately with correction of the fetal pathophysiology and can result in life-threatening maternal complications.[205,207]

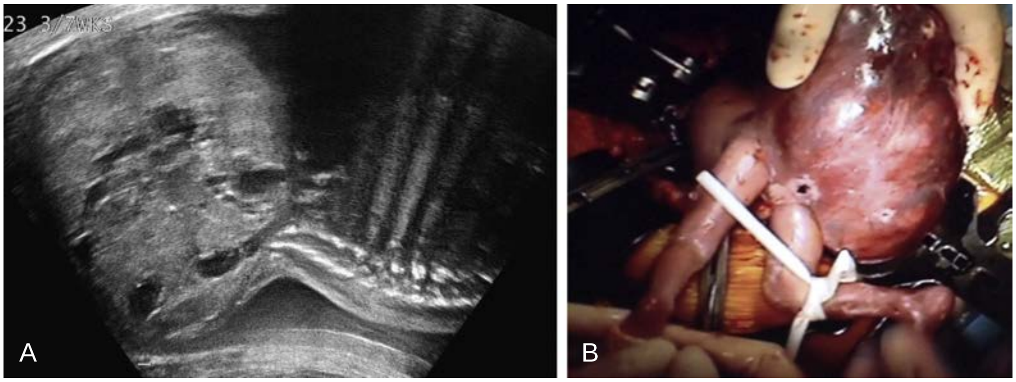


Fig. 63.10 (A) Ultrasound image of fetus with sacrococcygeal teratoma (SCT). Note sacral origin of mass. (B) Fetus with SCT undergoing in utero mass resection. Note tourniquet on left leg placed momentarily before intravenous catheter placement in saphenous vein. (Courtesy Dr. Anita Moon-Grady, Department of Pediatrics, University of California, San Francisco, CA.)

TABLE 63.5 Pathological Classifications and Features of Congenital Pulmonary Airway Malformations

Stocker Classification	Type 0	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 4
Location	Tracheobronchial	Bronchial/bronchiolar	Bronchiolar	Bronchiolar/alveolar	Distal acinar
Frequency	1%-3%	>65%	10%-15%	5%-8%	10%-15%
Maximal cyst size (cm)	0.5	10.0	2.5	1.5	7
Muscular wall thickness of cysts (μm)	100-500	100-300	50-100	0-50	25-100
Mucous cells	Present	Present in 33% of cases	Absent	Absent	Absent
Cartilage	Present	Present in 5-10% of cases	Absent	Absent	Rare
Skeletal muscle	Absent	Absent	Present in 5% of cases	Absent	Absent
Lobar involvement	All lobes	One lobe in 95% of cases	Usually one lobe	Entire lobe or lung	Usually one lobe
Malignancy risk	No	Bronchioloalveolar carcinoma	No	No	Pleuropulmonary blastoma
Langston classification	Acinar dysplasia	Large-cyst	Small-cyst	Hyperplasia solid/adenomatoid	
Original CCAM typing		Type I	Type II	Type III	

CCAM, Congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation.

Modified from tables in David M, Lamas-Pinheiro P, Henriques-Coelho T. Prenatal and postnatal management of congenital pulmonary airway malformation. *Neonatology* 2016;110:101–115; and Fowler DJ, Gould SJ. The pathology of congenital lung lesions. *Semin Pediat Surg*. 2015;24:176–182.

CONGENITAL PULMONARY LESIONS

Congenital pulmonary airway malformations (CPAMs), historically known as congenital cystic adenomatoid malformations, are typically benign nonfunctioning pulmonary tumors composed of cystic and solid components normally contained within a single lung lobe.[208] These fetal lesions complicate approximately 1 in 25,000 to 35,000 live births.[209] Other possible fetal abnormalities that require differentiation include bronchopulmonary sequestration, bronchogenic cysts, congenital lobar emphysema, neurogenic cysts, peripheral bronchial atresia, and CDH.[210] CPAM includes five subtypes (Table 63.5) that are based on the presumed tumor development site.[211] Prenatal ultrasonography categorizes lesions as macrocystic (cysts > 5 mm in diameter) or microcystic (cysts < 5 mm in diameter), with microcystic lesions having a more solid or echogenic image.[212] Typically, small lesions regress in the third trimester and can be surgically resected after birth or managed conservatively without surgical intervention.[213] Large lesions can compress the great vessels, create pulmonary hypoplasia, and cause cardiac compression and mediastinal shift that often results in hydrops fetalis. Prognosis depends primarily on size and growth characteristics of the CPAM rather than lesion type.[214] To normalize tumor volume to fetal size, ultrasound measurement of CPAM volume to fetal head circumference ratio (CVR) was evaluated as a predictor of hydrops fetalis and other postnatal outcomes.[214-216] CVR is calculated from the volume of an ellipse using the formula (length × height × width × 0.52)(cm^3)/fetal head circumference (cm).[217] Based on retrospective data from 71 fetuses, a CVR less than 0.56 predicts no adverse postnatal outcome (100% negative predictive value), whereas a CVR greater than 0.56 had a positive predictive value for adverse postnatal outcome of 33%.[215] In addition, a CVR greater than 1.6 is associated with greater risk for hydrops fetalis.[214-216] A recent retrospective analysis of a series of 24 fetuses with a CVR greater than 1.6 found that an abnormal echocardiogram with hydrops was a significant predictor of mortality and need for fetal intervention.[218]

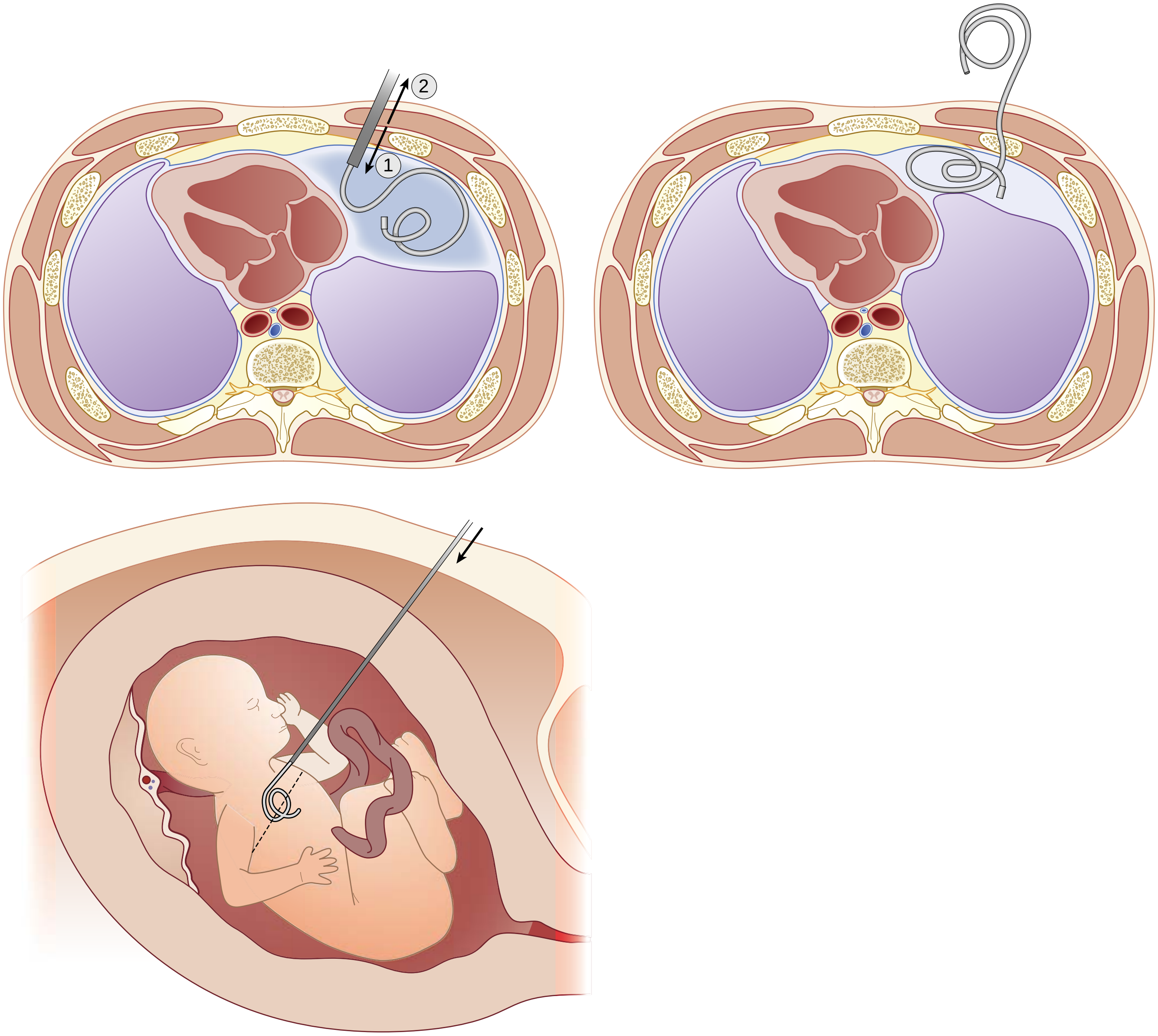


Fig. 63.11 Thoracic shunt insertion (*top left* and *right*) and deployment *(bottom left)*. (From van Mieghem T, Baud D, Devlieger R, et al. Minimally invasive fetal therapy. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol.* 2012;26:711–725.)

Some lesions regress and leave minimal impact, whereas others grow in size. Patients with CPAM tumors associated with hydrops fetalis have a survival rate of less than 5% without intervention, and early delivery or fetal treatment is indicated in these cases.[219,220] Administration of maternal betamethasone may improve survival in patients with high-risk CPAM.[220,221] Large macrocystic lesions or large pleural effusions can be decompressed in utero by placement of shunt catheters between the cysts and the amniotic cavity (Fig. 63.11). Use of fetal analgesics and muscle relaxants delivered intramuscularly with ultrasound guidance may decrease the fetal stress response and prevent fetal movement during critical portions of the procedure. Shunt placement can prevent or reverse hydrops formation, with definitive resection deferred until after birth.[222] In a retrospective analysis of 75 fetuses undergoing shunt placement for pleural effusion or a macrocystic lung lesion,[223] shunt placement resulted in a decrease in macrocystic lung lesion volume by 55 ± 21% and complete or partial resolution of the pleural effusion in 29% and 71% of fetuses respectively. Hydrops resolved in 83% of fetuses following intervention. Overall neonatal survival was 68%, and correlated with hydrops resolution, GA at birth, a unilateral pleural effusion, and percent reduction in lesion size.[223] Another retrospective study noted a 59% survival rate for fetuses with hydrothorax treated with thoracoamniotic shunts, though repeat procedures were often necessary.[224] In some CPAM lesions, shunts are ineffective because cysts are not in communication with each other, shunts malfunction, or they become displaced. In addition, shunt placement can cause fetal hemorrhage, preterm PROM, or chorioamnionitis.[210] Thoracoamniotic shunt placement has also successfully decompressed large congenital pleural effusions caused by fetal chylothorax that otherwise would result in hydrops fetalis, pulmonary compression, and fetal or neonatal death.[225,226]

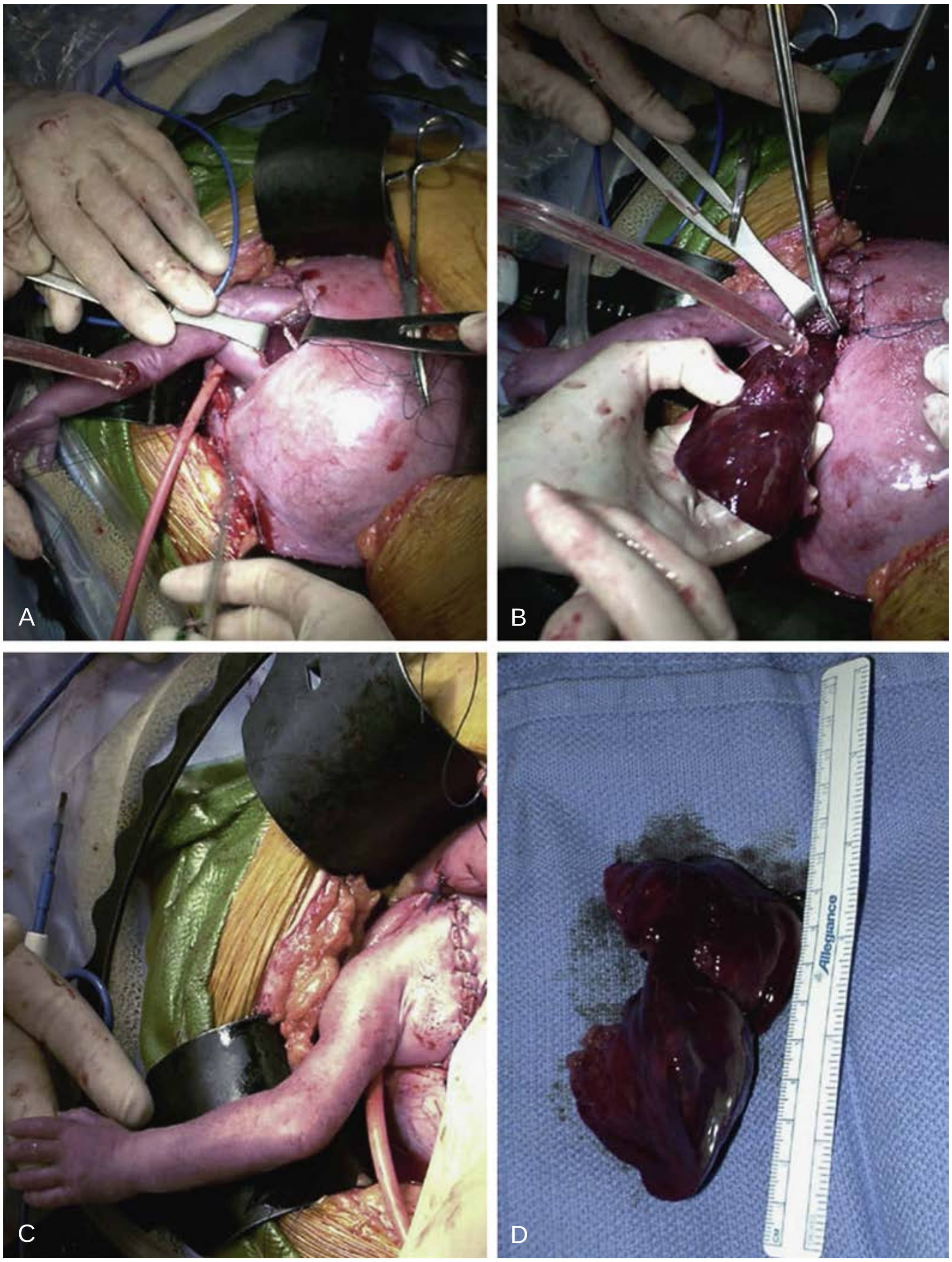


Fig. 63.12 (A) Open resection of fetal congenital pulmonary airway malformation (CPAM) with fetal thoracotomy shown. (B) Resected CPAM mass. (C) Primary closure of fetal thoracotomy. (D) Pathologic specimen of resected CPAM mass. (Courtesy Dr. Anita Moon-Grady, University of California, San Francisco Fetal Treatment Center, San Francisco, CA.)

Some solid or mixed solid/cystic CPAMs inappropriate for shunting can be resected with open fetal lobectomy (Fig. 63.12). Similar to open SCT resection, potential exists for significant fetal hemorrhage and need for in utero fetal resuscitation. Open resection of CPAM lesions associated with hydrops fetalis has resulted in a 30-day postnatal survival rate of 50% to 60%, with tumor resection allowing for compensatory lung growth and resolution of hydrops fetalis.[227]

In some instances, use of an EXIT procedure with fetal thoracotomy, mass resection, and a secured airway before delivery has been a successful approach for tumors with persistent mediastinal compression.[228,229] In a series of nine fetuses with large lung masses (CVR 1.9-3.6 at term) who underwent an EXIT-to-resection procedure, all procedures were successful, with no significant operative complications.[228]

Preoperative Assessment and Counseling

Many considerations for perioperative management of women undergoing maternal-fetal surgery are analogous to those for nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy. Maternal safety is the primary focus when determining a plan that will optimize fetal outcome. All members of the multidisciplinary team should be actively involved in maternal counseling, patient assessment, and perioperative planning. Optimum functioning of a fetal treatment program requires effective communication among the members of a multidisciplinary team, including surgeons, ultrasonographers, maternal fetal medicine physicians, anesthesiologists, nurses, genetic counselors, and social workers. Regularly scheduled multidisciplinary care meetings help ensure coordination of a complete and appropriate perioperative plan, ensure availability of the necessary equipment and personnel at the time of the procedure, and maximize the chance for optimal outcomes for both the mother and fetus. Participation of the anesthesiologist is critical for preoperative maternal assessment to determine whether maternal risk is acceptably low for potential fetal benefit. An understanding of the physiologic changes of pregnancy (for details, see Chapter 62) and their effects on anesthetic management is necessary for appropriate perioperative planning and risk assessment.

Maternal counseling regarding risks and benefits of the procedure should be thorough, unbiased, and convey the most recent outcome and complication data about the planned intervention. For nonurgent procedures, counseling is typically a multi-day process. The team must review the specific condition's natural history, diagnostic limitations, and whether associated anomalies are detected.[230] Discussions should focus on specific implications to the mother, the pregnancy, the fetus, postnatal care, future pregnancies, intermediate and long-term outcomes, and possible adverse outcomes.[6] Patient discussions also should include alternative options such as nonintervention or pregnancy termination if applicable. To provide uniform counseling, all providers should advise the patient regarding information specific to their discipline, but be aware of the general risks and benefits of the fetal process and the proposed procedure (see prior section on "Indications, Procedures, and Outcomes"). Distinctions should be made between interventions that are evidence based, and those that are innovative or experimental. Mothers should be informed about the planned timing and method of delivery, future reproductive implications, and the risk for uterine rupture and need for cesarean delivery with this and all future pregnancies if a hysterotomy is planned. Fertility does not appear to be affected by open fetal surgery, but the risk for uterine rupture or dehiscence before delivery is significant and comparable or even greater than that associated with a prior cesarean delivery performed with a classic incision.[231]

In some situations, consultation with a palliative care provider, clergy, or ethicist may be helpful. In addition, the sequence of events should be outlined in detail so that all questions can be answered. In most circumstances, it is important that the partner or other supporting individuals be included in the counseling process to ensure they have an understanding of the rationale behind the treatment decisions. However, the wishes of the mother assume ultimate priority during pregnancy. Thorough counseling regarding fetuses with pediatric surgical disorders reduces parental anxiety.[232,233] Most mothers prefer specific realistic information provided in an empathetic manner, no matter how dire, and want to be allowed to hope for the best possible outcome.[234] If the fetus is of viable GA, additional counseling is required about the mother's wishes for possible emergent delivery and neonatal resuscitation in the event of unplanned fetal distress unresponsive to in utero treatment. Finally, the fetal intervention should not proceed until the patient has had adequate time to carefully consider all the information and given informed consent.

Intraoperative Management and Considerations

Unlike most surgical procedures performed during pregnancy in which the fetus is merely a bystander (e.g., maternal appendectomy), fetal surgery involves two surgical patients. Consequently, in addition to maternal considerations for anesthetic administration during pregnancy, it is essential to understand the impact of surgery and anesthetic administration on fetal physiology, methods for fetal analgesia and anesthesia, techniques for fetal monitoring, intraoperative anesthetic management, and postoperative care for both mother and fetus.

FETAL PHYSIOLOGY AND MONITORING

During fetal surgery, procedural and pharmacologic interventions can adversely affect fetal physiology by altering uteroplacental or fetoplacental circulation and gas exchange. Appropriate fetal monitoring facilitates early intervention. In addition to the physiologic effects of medications administered to the mother or fetus, a detailed knowledge of both maternal physiology of pregnancy, and fetal cardiovascular, neurologic, and placental physiology provides the basis for optimal fetal care. Uteroplacental and fetoplacental physiology, including uterine perfusion, placental gas exchange, and drug transfer are detailed in Chapter 62, which also discusses the effects of maternal positioning, maternal neuraxial anesthesia, and administration of general anesthesia on the uteroplacental unit.

Fetal cardiac output depends primarily on heart rate.[235] Compared to a neonate, the contractility of the fetal myocardium is decreased secondary to decreased myofibrillar density and it is intolerant of hypocalcemia because of an immature calcium regulatory system.[236] Fetal myocardium is also less compliant than adult myocardium, near the peak of the Frank–Starling ventricular function curve, and fluid-filled lungs also inhibit additional ventricular filling.[236,237] Consequently, modest changes in preload have minimal effect on cardiac output. The normal fetal cardiac output (sum of right and left ventricular output) is in the range of 425 to 550 mL/min/kg throughout gestation.[235]

Fetal blood volume increases during gestation, and approximately twothirds of the fetal-placental blood volume resides within the placenta and the placenta receives about 40% of the fetal cardiac output.[238,239] During the second trimester, fetal blood volume is estimated to be approximately 110 to 160 mL/kg of fetal body weight.[240] After midgestation, fetal blood volume can be estimated based on GA using the equation, estimated fetal blood volume (mL) = 11.2 × GA – 209.4.[241] In the developing fetus, hemoglobin F is the

TABLE 63.6 Coagulation Screening Tests in Fetuses and Full-Term Newborns

	GESTATIONAL AGE (WEEKS)			
Test*	19-23	24-29	30-38	Newborns
PT (s)	32.5 (19-45)	32.2 (19-44)	22.6 (16-30)	16.7 (12-24)
PT (INR)	6.4 (1.7-11.1)	6.2 (2.1-10.6)	3.0 (1.5-5.0)	1.7 (0.9-2.7)
aPTT (s)	169 (83-250)	154.0 (87-210)	104.8 (76-128)	44.3 (35-52)
TCT (s)	34.2 (24-44)	26.2 (24-28)	21.4 (17-23)	20.4 (15-25)

*Normal values for coagulation tests determined from umbilical cord sampling. Values are the mean, followed in parentheses by the lower and upper boundaries, including 95% of the population studied.

aPTT, Activated partial prothrombin time; *INR,* International normalized ratio; *PT,* Prothrombin time; *s,* Seconds; *TCT,* Thrombin clotting time.

Modified from Reverdiau-Moalic P, Delahousse B, Body G, et al. Evolution of blood coagulation activators and inhibitors in the healthy human fetus. *Blood*. 1996;88:900–906.

primary oxygen carrier. Beginning at 32 weeks' gestation there is a gradual shift toward adult hemoglobin synthesis.[242] Mean fetal Hb levels increase linearly from 11 g/dL at 17 weeks gestation to 18 g/dL in a term neonate.[243,244]

Fetal lung epithelium produces more than 100 mL/kg/day of fluid that fills the lungs and facilitates appropriate pulmonary growth and development. Excess lung fluid exits the trachea and is either swallowed or flows into the amniotic fluid. Although fetal hepatic enzymes are less functional than those of adults, most drugs still undergo metabolism and the umbilical circulation provides initial hepatic metabolism (first-pass metabolism) before medications reach the fetal brain or heart. Although fetal liver function is immature, coagulation factors are synthesized independent of the maternal circulation and do not cross the placenta. The serum concentrations of these factors increase with GA (Table 63.6),[245] but fetal clot formation in response to tissue injury is decreased in contrast to that in adults throughout gestation and the first 6 months of life.[246] Platelets first appear at 5 weeks gestation and increase in number with time, reaching a mean of 150×10^9/L by the end of the first trimester of pregnancy and values reaching normal adult range by 22 weeks gestation.[247]

During open procedures, the fetal circulation and flow distribution can be severely impaired by fetal manipulation or direct compression of the umbilical cord, inferior vena cava, or mediastinum. Increased uterine activity, maternal hypotension, and significant maternal hypocarbia can all decrease uteroplacental perfusion. Fetal heart rate (FHR) monitoring is important during both minimally invasive and open procedures. During IUT, the transfusion needle can lacerate umbilical vessels with unanticipated fetal movement, and use of laser therapy for TTTS can disrupt surface placental vessels critical to fetal blood flow. During labor, FHR monitoring with external Doppler or a fetal scalp electrode is commonly employed to assess fetal well-being, but during fetal procedures, echocardiography, pulse oximetry, and ultrasound imaging of umbilical artery flow are the primary methods for fetal assessment. After exposure of the fetal head during an EXIT procedure, placement of an Hb saturation monitor and insertion of a fetal scalp electrode have both been used successfully for FHR monitoring.[11,248] It remains unclear whether fetal oximetry or heart rate monitoring is more sensitive to decreased umbilical-fetal blood flow. In a fetal lamb model examining the effects of umbilical cord compression, Hb desaturation was detected by fetal pulse oximetry before the onset of bradycardia.[249] However, FHR deceleration has been shown to precede fetal Hb desaturation with use of fetal pulse oximetry monitoring during labor.[250]

Intraoperative ultrasonography allows imaging of FHR, cardiac contractility, and cardiac filling, as well as Doppler assessment of flow in the ductus arteriosus and umbilical artery flow. Both absent and reversed umbilical artery diastolic flow are associated with increased perinatal morbidity and mortality.[251] In many cases, ultrasonography assessment of fetal well-being can be only intermittent. This is because ultrasonography may be periodically required to guide the intervention or the probe placement can interfere with the surgical procedure.

When intraoperative monitoring detects depression of fetal hemodynamics, steps should promptly be undertaken to improve uterine perfusion, ensure the uteroplacental interface is intact, and relieve any compression of the umbilical cord or placenta. These steps may include administration of medications to increase maternal blood pressure, cardiac output, and uterine relaxation. In some cases, administration of resuscitation medications directly to the fetus may be needed, or if previously determined to be viable ex utero fetal resuscitation may be necessary.

In utero, the fetus is unable to thermoregulate and depends on maternal body temperature secondary to placental circulation and surrounding amniotic fluid. Induction of general anesthesia, surgical exposure, and hysterotomy can reduce fetal temperature dramatically both directly and secondarily if maternal core temperature drops significantly. Fetal sheep studies demonstrate the fetus is unable to generate heat through thermogenesis[252] and decreases in sheep fetal temperature can lead to tachycardia and hypertension in utero. In contrast, human reports associate maternal/fetal hypothermia with fetal bradycardia.[253,254] Consequently, maintenance of maternal euthermia with use of forced air warming likely improves fetal well-being during minimally invasive procedures. During open fetal surgery, use of warmed fluid for intrauterine irrigation and monitoring of both maternal core and amniotic fluid temperatures are also important.

FETAL ANESTHESIA, ANALGESIA, AND PAIN PERCEPTION

The capability of the fetus to perceive pain remains controversial. The fetus exhibits pituitary-adrenal, sympathoadrenal, and circulatory stress responses to noxious stimuli as early as 16 to 18 weeks gestation.[255-258] Although invasive fetal procedures elicit a stress response,[30,259,260] this response is mediated at the level of the spinal cord, brainstem, and/or basal ganglia and does not necessarily correlate with conscious cortical perception of pain.[261] Administration of opioids in preterm neonates blunts hormonal responses to surgery, including changes in plasma adrenaline, noradrenaline, glucagon, aldosterone, corticosterone, glucose, and lactate.[262] Providing adequate anesthesia and analgesia is associated with both attenuation of the deleterious effects and improved outcomes.[259] Stress responses secondary to invasive fetal procedures are blunted with opioid administration,[30] but reduction of plasma stress hormone levels is not necessarily evidence of adequate analgesia.[261]

Pressure, temperature, and vibration sensory nerve terminals develop in human skin between 6 and 10 weeks gestation.[263] Skin nerve terminals required for peripheral sensory nociception likely develop between 10 and 17 weeks gestation.[264] Noxious stimuli follow a reflex arc of afferent fibers that synapse on spinal cord interneurons, which then synapse with motor neurons. A fetus can reflexively withdraw from a noxious stimulus by 19 weeks GA without input from the cerebral cortex.[265,266]

The perception of pain requires not only intact neural pathways from the periphery to the primary sensory cortex, but also higher cortical structures.[266] Thalamocortical circuits, thalamic pain fibers likely reach the somatosensory cortex at 24 to 30 weeks gestation.[258,266] Thalamic projections reach the visual subplate at 20 to 22 weeks,[267] the visual cortex at 23 to 27 weeks,[268] and the auditory cortical plate at about 26 to 28 weeks gestation.[269] However, fetuses are unlikely to experience pain before 24 weeks gestation because the cortex requires additional growth, remodeling, and development to establish the extensive neural network of pathways to other central nervous system structures.

This timeline is supported by electroencephalographic (EEG) studies. Cortical EEG activity is present only 2% of the time in fetuses at 24 weeks gestation and increases to being present 80% of the time with EEG patterns becoming more distinct by 34 weeks gestation.[270]

Both the long-term impact of untreated fetal stress and the timing of fetal pain perception remain unknown. Given this uncertainty and the more than 35-year history of safe anesthetic administration in neonates and fetuses undergoing invasive procedures,[271-273] analgesia should be provided during fetal surgery.[258,274] In addition to blunting pain, administration of fetal analgesia helps to prevent fetal movement and inhibit the circulatory stress response.

Opioid analgesics can be transferred to the fetus by maternal administration or direct fetal intramuscular or intravenous umbilical cord administration using ultrasound guidance. For most invasive procedures causing noxious fetal stimulation, fetal intramuscular administration of fentanyl 10 to 20 μg/kg (or other opioid in equivalent dosing) is used to provide analgesia immediately before the intervention.[30,183,258] This can be achieved percutaneously using ultrasound guidance or under direct vision when a hysterotomy is performed. Some physicians administer prophylactic intramuscular atropine 20 μg/kg with opioids to minimize the risk for fetal bradycardia.[275,276] Fetal movement can be prevented by intramuscular or umbilical vessel administration of a muscle relaxant such as rocuronium (intramuscular 2.5 mg/kg or intravenous 1.0 mg/kg) or vecuronium (intramuscular 0.25 mg/kg or intravenous 0.1 mg/kg) using ultrasound guidance.[183,258] The onset of fetal paralysis varies with the specific drug and dose, but typically occurs in 2 to 5 minutes, with an approximate duration of 1 to 2 hours.[277] In many instances, opioid, anticholinergic, and muscle relaxant are combined in a single injection. Maternal administration and placental transfer of intravenous remifentanil provides adequate fetal immobility during fetoscopic interventions that involve only the umbilical cord or placenta.[278]

For open fetal procedures, placental transfer of maternally administered general anesthesia with volatile anesthetics provides fetal anesthesia. These anesthetics readily transfer across the placenta, with fetal concentration and the fetal-to-maternal (F/M) ratio depending on both the maternal inspired anesthetic concentration and the duration of maternal anesthetic administration. In human studies of anesthetic levels at the time of cesarean delivery (~10-minute duration of general anesthesia), isoflurane has an F/M ratio of approximately 0.7.[279] Although placental transfer of desflurane and sevoflurane may be similar, published human F/M data are not currently available in the literature. Nitrous oxide has an F/M ratio of 0.83 after only 3 minutes of administration.[280]

High levels of volatile anesthetic can depress fetal myocardium and lead to increasing fetal acidosis.[281] In animal models, volatile anesthetic concentrations often employed for uterine relaxation (>2 minimum alveolar concentration [MAC]) lead to significant reductions in maternal cardiac output with associated decrease in uterine perfusion up to 30%.[282] A retrospective analysis of echocardiographic data from clinical cases of open fetal surgery and EXIT procedures reveals a moderate-to-severe left ventricular systolic fetal cardiac dysfunction with use of high concentrations of desflurane.[283] In addition, case reports have described epileptiform EEG activity and generalized tonic-clonic seizures in both adults and children exposed to high levels of sevoflurane.[284] Seizure activity has also been attributed to high-dose sevoflurane during an open fetal procedure.[285] Therefore, high concentrations of volatile anesthetic administration, while useful for maternal uterine relaxation, may not be the optimal anesthetic for the fetus despite years of successful use. Consequently, a reduced level of volatile anesthetic (1.0-1.5 MAC) is combined with remifentanil and propofol infusions for open fetal surgery at some institutions.[283,286] Remifentanil has significant placental transfer and prevents fetal movement during TTTS laser photocoagulation therapy.[278,287] Some prefer to administer maternal remifentanil and nitroglycerin as part of the anesthetic for open fetal or EXIT procedures to decrease the amount of volatile anesthetic.[275,278,288] Currently, no evidence indicates that any one anesthetic method provides an improved fetal or maternal outcome as long as appropriate uterine quiescence is maintained.

Anesthetic neurotoxicity of the developing brain is a concern for all providers administering anesthetic agents for fetal procedures. In animal models, anesthetics affect neonatal brain development and create histologic changes, as well as learning and memory deficits.[289,290] Recent nonhuman primate studies found repeated exposures to clinically-relevant concentrations of sevoflurane during infancy resulted in neurocognitive impairment and behavioral changes at 1 to 2 years of age.[291,292] However, specific long-term effects of anesthetics on human brain function in neonates or fetuses are currently inconclusive. Two prospective trials examining the effect of a short anesthetic exposure have suggested no long-term neurodevelopmental consequences.[293-295] In 2016, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration advisory committee issued a warning that "repeated or lengthy use of general anesthetic and sedation drugs during surgeries or procedures in children younger than 3 years or in pregnant women during their third trimester may affect the development of children's brains."[296]

Limited data about anesthetic exposure in the fetal population exists. One study looked retrospectively at the use of general anesthesia for cesarean section and the incidence of learning disabilities at age 5 and found no correlation.[297] To date, no studies have examined the neurocognitive consequences of midgestation fetal anesthesia. No general anesthetic agent is known to be superior to another, and whether exposure to general anesthetics during gestation compared to the neonatal period is more beneficial or harmful is unknown. In an effort to systematically collect current data, an international registry has been established for the purpose of assessing the long-term neurodevelopmental outcomes of fetal surgery patients (Clinical Trials.gov identifier NCT02591745).[298] In addition, whether in utero exposure to anesthetic drugs compared with postnatal exposure has any effect on neurocognitive outcome is not known and makes data collection and analysis challenging, as many patients undergoing fetal procedures are re-exposed to general anesthesia during infancy and childhood.[299]

MANAGEMENT OF MINIMALLY INVASIVE PROCEDURES

The same considerations that apply to nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy should be followed for fetal procedures. For most fetal image-guided surgery procedures (see Table 63.1), use of monitored anesthetic care with local anesthesia infiltration into the superficial tissues and abdominal wall provides an adequate level of maternal comfort. Administration of additional opioid, benzodiazepine, or other anesthetic agent can be used for maternal analgesia and anxiolysis. Use of supplemental anesthetic drugs will also decrease the likelihood of fetal movement via placental transfer. Local anesthetic infiltration can also be used for fetoscopic procedures, which typically employ endoscope trocars that are only 2 to 5 mm in diameter.[300] Neuraxial techniques can be beneficial and preferable when multiple insertion sites are required; maternal immobility must be ensured; a mini-laparotomy must be performed; or concern exists about adequate patient comfort or cooperation during the procedure. General anesthesia is rarely necessary for percutaneous procedures unless placental location and fetal orientation present potential technical difficulty or uterine exteriorization is needed, as is the case with fetoscopic MMC repair.[301]

Although maternal intravenous fluid administration should be guided by standard intraoperative requirements, use of significant amounts of pressurized uterine crystalloid irrigation into the amniotic cavity during fetoscopic surgery should be avoided because it has resulted in maternal pulmonary edema.[302]

In cases of IUT, cord blood sampling, or thoracic shunt placement, fetal movement may displace the needle or catheter and result in trauma, bleeding, or compromise of the umbilical circulation. In one study of fetoscopic surgery, maternal administration of remifentanil (0.1 μg/kg/min) reduced fetal movement and improved operating conditions compared with maternal administration of diazepam.[278] Although maternally administered opioids and benzodiazepines can reduce fetal motion,[123] they do not guarantee immobility for procedures directly involving the fetus. Fetal immobility can be safely achieved with direct fetal intramuscular or umbilical venous administration of muscle relaxant. For invasive fetal procedures that involve potentially noxious stimulation to the fetus, such as shunt placement, endoscopic MMC repair, or fetal cardiac interventions, an opioid should be administered to the fetus (e.g., intramuscular fentanyl 10-20 μg/kg). When general anesthesia is employed, placental transfer of a volatile anesthetic provides significant fetal anesthesia and decreases fetal movement, but supplemental opioids should also be administered if fetal analgesia is required.

Weight-based unit doses of atropine (20 μg/kg) and epinephrine (10 μg/kg) should be immediately available in individually labeled syringes for direct fetal administration by the surgeon under ultrasonography guidance. These medications require sterile transfer to the surgical field preoperatively, meticulous labeling, and accurate dosing before commencement of the procedure. The surgeon can administer the indicated medication by a variety of routes (intramuscular, intravenous, or intracardiac) depending on the procedure and urgency of the situation. If gestational development is compatible with extrauterine life, the obstetric team should be prepared to perform an emergency cesarean delivery if fetal bradycardia persists despite efforts to resuscitate in utero. The anesthesiologist should be prepared to emergently provide maternal general anesthesia and assist with neonatal resuscitation.

MANAGEMENT OF OPEN PROCEDURES

Although most women undergo cesarean delivery with neuraxial anesthesia, general anesthesia is primarily employed for fetal surgery requiring a hysterotomy. Unlike minimally invasive fetal procedures, open fetal surgery requires profound uterine relaxation and often entails additional fetal monitoring beyond intermittent ultrasonography. Open surgery involves more surgical stimulation, hemodynamic perturbation, and risk for fetal compromise and requires direct administration of drugs to the fetus. Compared to minimally invasive procedures, open fetal procedures present greater risk to the mother. The anesthesiologist and other team members should be prepared for significant maternal and fetal blood loss, the need for maternal and fetal resuscitation, and possible emergent delivery. A volatile anesthetic is commonly administered to provide maternal and fetal anesthesia, as well as uterine relaxation, which may require a concentration of more than 2 MAC.[303] In an effort to decrease the fetal cardiac dysfunction and abnormal umbilical artery flow associated with high levels of volatile anesthetics, more recent techniques combine 1

BOX 63.2 Perioperative Considerations for Open Fetal Surgery*

Preoperative

- Complete maternal history and physical examination
- Complete fetal workup to exclude other anomalies
- Imaging studies to determine fetal lesion and placental location and estimated weight
- Maternal counseling by multidisciplinary team and presurgical team meeting
- Planning for emergent delivery depending on viability
- High lumbar epidural placement for postoperative analgesia with test dose before use
- Prophylactic premedications: nonparticulate antacid (aspiration) and rectal indomethacin (tocolysis)
- Blood products typed and crossmatched for potential maternal and fetal transfusion; fetal blood should be type O-negative, leukocyte depleted, irradiated, cytomegalovirus negative, and crossmatched against the mother
- Transfer of weight-based fetal resuscitation drugs to scrub nurse in unit doses
- Sequential compression devices on lower extremities for thrombosis prophylaxis
- Initiation of forced air warmer to maintain maternal normothermia following induction

Intraoperative

- Left uterine displacement and standard monitors
- Fetal assessment prior to maternal induction
- Preoxygenation for 3 min before induction
- Rapid sequence induction and intubation
- Maintain maternal FiO_2 greater than 50% and end-tidal carbon dioxide 28-32 mm Hg
- Ultrasonography examination to determine fetal position and placental location
- Urinary catheter placed; additional large-bore intravenous access obtained; possible arterial line
- Prophylactic antibiotics administered
- Maternal blood pressure maintained with IV phenylephrine, ephedrine, and/or glycopyrrolate; typical goal is to maintain mean arterial pressure within 10% of preinduction baseline with appropriate heart rate
- After skin incision, increased concentrations of volatile anesthetic (2-3 MAC) started to obtain uterine relaxation; alternatively, volatile anesthetic (1.0-1.5 MAC) may be combined with IV propofol and remifentanil
- Consider increasing vapor or adding IV nitroglycerin if uterine tone remains increased
- Placement of fetal monitors if needed (e.g., fetal pulse oximeter, intrauterine temperature probe)
- IM fetal administration of opioid and neuromuscular blocking agent; an anticholinergic also may be administered with the opioid
- Placement of fetal IV access device if significant fetal blood loss anticipated
- External irrigation of fetus with warmed saline as needed
- Crystalloid restriction to less than 2 L to reduce risk for maternal pulmonary edema; consider colloid administration
- IV loading dose of magnesium sulfate once uterine closure begins
- Discontinue volatile agents once magnesium sulfate load is complete
- Activate epidural for postoperative analgesia
- Administer maternal anesthetics as needed
- Monitor maternal neuromuscular blockade carefully because of possible prolongation from magnesium sulfate
- Extubate trachea when patient is fully awake

Early Postoperative Considerations

- Complete postoperative debrief
- Continue tocolytic therapy
- Patient-controlled epidural analgesia
- Monitor uterine activity and fetal heart rate
- Ongoing periodic fetal evaluation

*This summary may need to be modified depending on the type of open fetal surgery and patient comorbidities.

FiO_2, Fraction of inspired oxygen; *IM,* Intramuscular; *IV,* Intravenous; *MAC,* Minimum alveolar concentration.

Modified from Ferschl M, Ball R, Lee H, et al. Anesthesia for in utero repair of myelomeningocele. *Anesthesiology.* 2013;118:1211–1223.

to 1.5 MAC of volatile anesthetic with infusions of remifentanil and propofol.[283,286,304] The perioperative considerations for open fetal surgery are detailed in Box 63.2.

Weight-based unit doses of medications for fetal analgesia and muscle relaxation as previously detailed in the section on “Fetal Anesthesia, Analgesia, and Pain Perception” should be available for administration by the surgical team. In addition, resuscitation medications (atropine 20 μg/kg, epinephrine 10 μg/kg, and crystalloid 10 mL/kg) should be prepared preoperatively in sterile weight-based unit doses for emergent treatment of intraoperative fetal hemodynamic compromise. Crossmatched blood should be available for maternal transfusion. For procedures with a high risk of fetal hemorrhage, appropriate blood for fetal transfusion (i.e., O-negative, cytomegalovirus-negative, irradiated, leukocyte-depleted, maternally crossmatched) should be readily available.

Uterine tocolytics (i.e., indomethacin) should be administered to the mother preoperatively. An epidural catheter is placed preoperatively for administration of postoperative analgesia. FHR is assessed and baseline cardiac echocardiography and ultrasound imaging of umbilical cord flow characteristics are performed before anesthetic induction and are intermittently reevaluated throughout the initial period of anesthetic administration to assess the effect of the maternal positioning, anesthetic administration, and any maternal hemodynamic changes on the fetus. Absent or reversed umbilical artery diastolic flow intraoperatively may be an early sign of fetal distress.[304] Additional monitoring sites include fetal cardiac systolic function and flow across the ductus arteriosus.[283,305,306] The gravid uterus is displaced leftward and general anesthesia is induced with a rapid sequence technique identical to patients undergoing nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy.

After anesthetic induction and before maternal skin incision, conventional concentrations of anesthetics are administered to the mother. Ventilation is controlled to maintain eucapnia (end-tidal carbon dioxide levels of 28-32 mm Hg). Fetal condition and fetal and placental locations are reassessed by ultrasound. If an intraarterial catheter is not placed, a maternal arm is positioned to remain accessible in case unexpected invasive pressure monitoring is required (e.g., maternal hemodynamic instability). A large-bore venous catheter is placed for treatment of unexpected significant hemorrhage. Intravenous fluids administered to the mother are minimized (<2 L) to decrease the risk for perioperative pulmonary edema associated with the use of tocolytics, such as magnesium sulfate or administration of large doses of nitroglycerine during fetal surgery.[307] Some fetal surgery teams are more restrictive with intraoperative fluid administration (<500 mL), but no clinical trials have demonstrated benefit of severe intravenous fluid restriction in this setting.

Typical maternal hemodynamic goals include maintaining systolic arterial blood pressure within 10% of baseline values and mean arterial pressure greater than 65 mm Hg with appropriate maternal heart rate. Phenylephrine administration can be used to treat maternal hypotension with minimal changes in the fetal acid-base status.[308] Bolus administration of ephedrine or glycopyrrolate can assist in maintaining maternal heart rate and cardiac output.[309] Administration of a nondepolarizing muscle relaxant is usually unnecessary but may be used to improve operative conditions. If it is used, appropriate neuromuscular monitoring should be employed to carefully assess neuromuscular function with appropriate reversal of blockade before tracheal extubation, particularly with administration of magnesium sulfate, which potentiates neuromuscular blockade.

Before skin incision, the inspired concentration of volatile anesthetic is increased, and before uterine incision, the volatile anesthetic end-tidal concentration is further increased (≥ 2 MAC) to provide profound uterine relaxation. If uterine relaxation is assessed to be inadequate by appearance of contractions or palpation, administration of additional volatile agent (up to 3 MAC) or intravenous nitroglycerin as an infusion or in small boluses (50-200 μg) is useful to decrease uterine tone.[183]

An alternative technique, as mentioned earlier, relies on supplemental intravenous anesthesia. Administration of intravenous propofol and/or remifentanil with volatile anesthetic at 1.5 MAC may prevent fetal ventricular dysfunction as well as improve maternal hemodynamics, uterine blood flow, and fetal acid-base status, while reducing fetal exposure to high levels of volatile agents and providing adequate uterine relaxation.[283,286] A sheep model of this anesthetic regimen notes significantly lower fetal plasma concentrations of propofol compared to maternal concentrations.[288] Remifentanil pharmacokinetics in midgestation during fetal surgery have been shown to be similar to the general population,[310] and remifentanil is known to readily cross from maternal to fetal circulation.[287]

For rare patients with contraindications to volatile anesthetics (e.g., malignant hyperthermia), a neuraxial technique in conjunction with intravenous administration of nitroglycerin in doses up to 20 μg/kg/min has been used successfully for an EXIT procedure.[288] This technique may increase the risk for maternal pulmonary edema secondary to the large doses of nitroglycerin and therefore should be reserved for cases with a particular need. Currently, no specific anesthetic technique demonstrates significant improvement in fetal outcome.

Periodic ultrasonography is used to assess FHR and fetal cardiac function. In some open fetal procedures, pulse oximetry or additional direct fetal monitoring can be employed after the hysterotomy is performed, as previously discussed in the section on fetal physiology and monitoring. Rarely, when uncertainty exists regarding fetal condition, umbilical cord blood gas measurements can be obtained. As described in the prior section on fetal anesthesia, analgesia, and pain perception, an opioid and a muscle relaxant can be administered to the fetus intramuscularly either before uterine incision with ultrasound guidance or under direct vision after uterine incision. Intramuscular atropine also can be administered concurrently to reduce opioid-induced fetal bradycardia.

After uterine exposure and ultrasound placental mapping, a small hysterotomy is created away from the placenta. A stapling device with absorbable lactomer staples is used to extend the incision. The staples prevent hemorrhage from the relaxed uterus and seal the amniotic membranes to the uterine endometrium. Uterine blood loss can be rapid and difficult to estimate. Vigilant observation of the surgical field, close communication with the surgeon, and careful maternal monitoring are essential to avoid occult hemorrhage. Lost amniotic fluid is replaced with warmed crystalloid to bathe the exposed fetus. Intrauterine temperature is closely monitored to prevent hypothermia and associated fetal circulatory compromise.[253,254]

For fetal mass resections or other open procedures with high risk for significant fetal blood loss, an intravenous catheter should be placed in a fetal limb for blood and fluid administration by the anesthesiologist. All blood or fluids transfused to the fetus should be warmed. In urgent situations, fluids can be transfused directly into the umbilical vein through catheter access obtained in the operative field if a fetal peripheral intravenous line is not available.

In the rare event of maternal hemodynamic collapse, if maternal resuscitation has been unsuccessful in restoring adequate maternal hemodynamics after 4 minutes, the fetus should be delivered emergently to relieve aortocaval compression, improve maternal resuscitation efforts, and increase the chance for maternal survival.[311] A neonatologist and neonatal resuscitation team should be readily available in case of emergency delivery. Newborn resuscitation should proceed according to the current recommended guidelines.[312]

After completion of the fetal procedure, an initial loading dose of intravenous magnesium sulfate (4-6 g) is typically administered over 20 minutes during uterine closure to prevent uterine contractions.[313] After the bolus, an intravenous infusion of magnesium sulfate (1-2 g/h) is initiated to maintain uterine quiescence into the postoperative period. The inspired concentration of volatile anesthetic is significantly decreased or discontinued after the magnesium sulfate bolus is complete. After an epidural test dose, epidural anesthesia is initiated. Maternal anesthesia is maintained with epidural anesthesia and supplemented by administration of intravenous opioid, inhaled anesthetics, and/or intravenous propofol. The mother's trachea is extubated after she awakens and after confirming adequate neuromuscular recovery and hemodynamic stability.

Postoperative Management and Considerations

In addition to postoperative concerns associated with a cesarean delivery (i.e., pain management, prevention of venous thromboembolism, monitoring for hemorrhage, avoiding wound infection), postoperative care of patients undergoing fetal surgery also focuses on tocolysis and fetal monitoring. For minimally invasive procedures such as cordocentesis or IUT, tocolysis is typically not required. For more invasive percutaneous procedures (e.g., shunt placement, fetoscopic techniques), preoperative prophylactic tocolytic agents such as indomethacin may be administered. Additional tocolytic drugs are rarely required in the postoperative period.

After open fetal surgery, patients frequently experience early uterine contractions and require continuous uterine monitoring for 2 or 3 days. Management of postoperative preterm labor after fetal surgery is a challenge and has led to significant fetal morbidity from preterm delivery. Magnesium sulfate infusions initiated intraoperatively are continued for approximately 24 hours or more postoperatively. Additional tocolytic agents (e.g., indomethacin, terbutaline, nifedipine) are often necessary. Administration of indomethacin requires periodic fetal echocardiography monitoring because premature closure of the ductus arteriosus is a known complication of therapy. In Europe, atosiban, an oxytocin receptor antagonist, has been shown to provide efficacious tocolysis following open fetal MMC repair with less maternal side effects.[314] Atosiban is currently not available for use in the United States.

The fetus is evaluated postoperatively by ultrasonography. Continuous FHR monitoring is used in the postoperative period. The duration of monitoring is based on GA and fetal condition. Potential fetal morbidities includes infection, heart failure, intracranial hemorrhage, oligohydramnios, and fetal demise. If maternal pulmonary edema is suspected, a chest radiograph should be obtained and critical care admission may be required.

For minimally invasive procedures, satisfactory postoperative analgesia is typically achieved by administration of oral opioid-based pain medications and acetaminophen. For open procedures, postoperative epidural analgesia can initially be provided for a day or two using a dilute solution of local anesthetic and opioid. Intravenous opioids administered with a patient-controlled device can be used in place of an epidural or after the epidural is discontinued. Use of opioids can decrease FHR variability[315] and create some difficulty in FHR tracing interpretation. Inadequate postoperative pain control can increase plasma oxytocin levels and increase the risk for preterm labor.[316]

After open fetal procedures, patients are at high risk for PROM, preterm labor, infection, and uterine rupture.[4] In addition to these risks, periodic assessment of fetal well-being, growth, and integrity of the pregnancy necessitate the mother remain near the fetal treatment institution for the first few weeks after the procedure. The possibility of preterm delivery may necessitate a course of steroids to improve fetal lung maturity. After open procedures, cesarean delivery is often planned for 37 weeks gestation but may be required earlier with the onset of preterm labor. The recent hysterotomy increases the chance for uterine rupture and associated need for emergent cesarean delivery.[317]

Management of Ex Utero Intrapartum Treatment Procedure

Although the initial purpose of the EXIT procedure was to provide a controlled and stable means to remove the tracheal occlusive device previously placed in the fetal airway for in utero treatment of CDH, the EXIT procedure has expanded into a technique used for a variety of other fetal disorders (Table 63.7).[10,12,275,286,318] The EXIT procedure allows the fetus to remain supported by the placental unit with adequate oxygenation and perfusion while airway, surgical repair, and resuscitation interventions are performed in a controlled manner. The procedure has been used successfully to treat fetuses requiring intrathoracic mass resection, as a bridge to ECMO, and in separation of conjoined twins.

TABLE 63.7 Indications for the Ex Utero Intrapartum Therapy Procedure

Procedure	Reason	Fetal Malformation
EXIT-to-Airway	Intrinsic compression	Congenital high airway obstruction syndrome Laryngeal atresia/stenosis Tracheal atresia/stenosis Laryngeal web/cyst
	Extrinsic compression	Cervical teratoma Cystic hygroma Epulis Goiter Hemangioma Lymphangioma Neuroblastoma
	Iatrogenic	Removal of tracheal occlusive device placed to treat CDH
	Craniofacial	Severe micrognathia Severe retrognathia
EXIT-to-Resection	Intrathoracic airway compromise or Mediastinal compression	Bronchogenic cysts Bronchopulmonary sequestration Congenital pulmonary airway malformation Mediastinal mass Thoracic tumor
EXIT-to-ECMO	Cardiopulmonary compromise	Aortic stenosis with intact/restrictive atrial septum CDH with severe pulmonary compromise Hypoplastic left heart syndrome with intact/restrictive atrial septum
EXIT-to-Separation	Prolonged surgical compromise	Conjoined twins

CDH, Congenital diaphragmatic hernia.

Modified from Hoagland MA, Chatterjee D. Anesthesia for fetal surgery. *Paediatr Aneasth*. 2017;27:346–357.

The primary goals of the EXIT procedure are to maintain a prolonged state of uterine relaxation, delay placental separation, and sustain placental-fetal perfusion. Similar to open fetal surgery, EXIT procedures are frequently performed under general anesthesia, employing high concentrations (≥2 MAC) of volatile anesthetic to ensure uterine relaxation. Neuraxial anesthesia in combination with remifentanil and nitroglycerin has been used successfully.[288,319-321] Multiple reviews of the anesthesia, surgical, and obstetric considerations for the EXIT procedure have been published.[10,11,275,286,322] The overall preoperative and intraoperative approach for anesthetic management is similar to that previously described for the preoperative and intraoperative portions of open fetal surgery (see Box 63.2).

The primary difference occurs after delivery of the fetus, when uterine relaxation is no longer required. Thus, after delivery of the neonate, anesthetic management becomes similar to management of a cesarean delivery under general anesthesia.

A detailed multidisciplinary meeting is extremely valuable before the start of the EXIT procedure. It is essential to ensure that all required supplies for fetal monitoring; airway management; maternal, fetal, and newborn resuscitation; and postdelivery care are obtained before entering the operating room. In many situations, the case may present urgently, and having a predetermined checklist and cart with needed EXIT supplies can be extremely useful. In addition to fetal ultrasonography, a pulse oximeter is frequently used to monitor the fetus and can assist with confirmation of a secured airway in addition to capnography. Similar to open fetal surgery, weight-based doses of atropine, epinephrine, and calcium are prepared for possible emergency fetal resuscitation. A sterile fetal ventilation circuit with an air/O_2 source and manometer is prepared in addition to multiple sizes of endotracheal tubes, and laryngoscopes, and blades for fetal tracheal intubation. Both rigid and flexible neonatal bronchoscopes are also useful. Sterile tourniquets, intravenous catheters, crystalloid, and blood (i.e., O-negative, CMV-negative, leukocyte depleted, maternally crossmatched) should be available for fetal venous access and volume replacement.

Anesthetic considerations for the mother are similar to those for open fetal surgery (see Box 63.2). They include possible placement of a preoperative epidural catheter for postoperative analgesia, large-bore intravenous access, invasive monitoring readily available or placement of an intraarterial catheter, uterotonic drugs after delivery of the placenta, and crossmatched maternal blood in the operating room. Anesthetic induction and tracheal intubation are similar to general anesthetic techniques employed for cesarean delivery. Maintenance of appropriate maternal hemodynamics is critical to ensure adequate fetal perfusion. Similar to techniques used for open fetal surgery, high concentrations of a volatile anesthetic (≥2 MAC) with or without intravenous administration of nitroglycerin bolus doses (100-250 μg) or as an infusion (1-10 μg/kg/min) may be required for adequate uterine relaxation. Fetal anesthesia from transplacental transfer of maternal volatile anesthetic can be supplemented with fetal intramuscular administration of an opioid (e.g., fentanyl 5-15 μg/kg or morphine 0.1 mg/kg) and a paralytic agent (rocuronium 2.5 mg/kg or vecuronium 0.3 mg/kg). Sometimes intramuscular atropine (20 μg/kg) is administered to prevent fetal bradycardia. The intramuscular fetal anesthetic drugs can be administered either before uterine incision using ultrasound guidance or under direct vision after performing the hysterotomy. There is significant variation in fetal serum fentanyl concentrations based on umbilical cord blood sampling during EXIT procedures.[323] It is likely that significant variability also may exist with fetal serum concentrations of muscle relaxants and other agents administered to the fetus, making their pharmacologic actions less predictable.

An alternative anesthetic approach uses maternal neuraxial anesthesia combined with intravenous administration of nitroglycerin in an effort to avoid many of the risks associated with administration of general anesthesia as previously described.[288,319-321] Significant doses of intravenous nitroglycerin (1-10 μg/kg/min) are often required to achieve uterine relaxation. Although nitroglycerin crosses the placenta, there are minimal fetal effects because a significant amount is metabolized at the placental interface.[288,320] Invasive monitoring with a maternal intraarterial catheter is recommended when prolonged use of nitroglycerin is planned, and the patient should be monitored for onset of pulmonary edema. Some practitioners have also added a remifentanil infusion (0.1-0.3 mcg/kg/min) to the anesthetic regimen. Intravenous remifentanil administered to the mother rapidly crosses the placenta,[287] and has been reported to provide adequate fetal immobilization.[319,321] No prospective clinical trials have been conducted to determine the best anesthetic technique for the EXIT procedure.

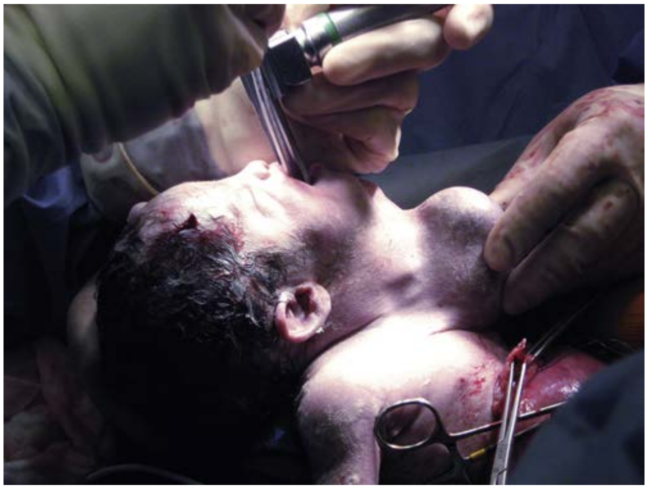


Fig. 63.13 During an ex utero intrapartum therapy procedure, the head and upper torso of a fetus with a neck mass are delivered and the airway secured using direct laryngoscopy. (Courtesy Dr. Anita Moon-Grady, University of California, San Francisco Fetal Treatment Center, San Francisco, CA.)

After assessment of appropriate uterine relaxation, the placental border is determined by ultrasonography. A small initial hysterotomy is extended outside the placental border with a stapling device to prevent excessive blood loss. If the EXIT procedure is performed to facilitate fetal intubation or neck mass resection, only the fetal head and shoulders are initially delivered (Fig. 63.13). For more extensive procedures requiring access to the thorax or other anatomic locations, the entire body may be delivered.

Before hysterotomy, the fetus is monitored with echocardiography and ultrasonographic evaluation of umbilical cord flow. After hysterotomy, a pulse oximeter probe is placed on the fetal hand and shielded from ambient light. Warmed crystalloid fluids are irrigated continuously in the uterine cavity to maintain fetal temperature and prevent placental separation or spasm of umbilical vessels. Care should also be taken to avoid inadvertent compression or unnecessary manipulation of the umbilical cord, which could lead to vascular reactivity and decreased flow.

Depending on the indication, the duration of an EXIT procedure ranges from a few minutes (e.g., intubation) to several hours (intrathoracic mass resection, neck mass resection with tracheostomy, or ECMO cannulation).

Anesthetic techniques have successfully provided safe maternal and fetal anesthesia with uterine relaxation and uteroplacental stability over several hours.[324] Before ventilation of the fetal lungs, fetal oxyhemoglobin saturation is typically 40% to 70%.[325] After initiating ventilation of the fetal lungs, oxyhemoglobin saturation should increase significantly to above 90%. When fetal lung ventilation fails to result in an appropriate increase in oxyhemoglobin saturation despite appropriate endotracheal intubation, this represents an indication for ECMO initiation before clamping the umbilical cord and fetal delivery.[326] Capnography is beneficial in confirming correct placement of the endotracheal tube. If needed, pulmonary surfactant may be administered once the endotracheal tube is placed. Transporting the neonate to the intensive care area for further care requires significant vigilance to ensure the critical, tentative airway remains secured.

Once the fetus is delivered, the inspired concentration of the volatile agent is significantly decreased and the nitroglycerin infusion is stopped to allow the uterus to contract and diminish the risk for maternal hemorrhage.[327,328] Use of a combination of volatile anesthetics (≤0.5 MAC), nitrous oxide, propofol, and/or an opioid can maintain adequate anesthesia while allowing uterine tone to improve. Oxytocin is routinely administered and additional uterotonic drugs are also provided when necessary, as detailed in Chapter 62. Once the patient is hemodynamically stable with appropriate uterine tone, epidural analgesia may be initiated. The trachea is extubated once the mother is fully awake.

Conclusions and Future Considerations

Establishment of organized, multidisciplinary, and comprehensive fetal intervention programs at a variety of academic centers is critical to improving patient outcomes with innovative surgical techniques, refining diagnostic and treatment strategies, and initiating clinical trials powered to address long-term neonatal outcomes and associated maternal and neonatal morbidity. Advancement of surgical techniques and prenatal diagnostic and management strategies is likely to decrease both maternal and fetal risk and allow safe intervention for additional congenital anomalies and treatment of less severe abnormalities. In addition, in utero stem cell and gene therapy research may lead to novel fetal treatments that allow normal development despite the presence of a congenital anomaly.[329-331] Improvements in managing preterm labor and delivery would greatly improve outcomes in fetal therapy. Preterm birth is associated with morbidities such as respiratory distress syndrome, necrotizing enterocolitis, and intraventricular hemorrhage that all have long-term impact on the child and carry substantial cost.[332] Artificial placental units employing extracorporeal support of the preterm neonate with continuous fluid exchange are novel therapies currently being tested in animals.[333]

Fetal surgery is a relatively new and rapidly evolving area of clinical medicine. In utero treatment raises complex and difficult ethical, social, and legal issues that go far beyond that of most adult or pediatric surgical interventions and include questions regarding maternal rights, access to care, and the option for pregnancy termination.[334,335] Evaluation of each new therapy or change in treatment strategy should be conducted in multicenter clinical trials only after appropriate translational research and animal studies are completed and demonstrate a potential benefit. This transition from innovative breakthrough, to randomized clinical trial, to standard care must be managed in a responsible and ethical framework.

In addition, in utero treatment outcomes from new institutions with minimal experience and intervention for patients outside the strict inclusion criteria of clinical trials are likely to result in less favorable results with increased morbidity compared with the outcomes demonstrated at more established fetal treatment centers participating in the clinical trials.[336] To address these concerns, a bioethics committee from the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the American Academy of Pediatrics provided recommendations for centers offering fetal therapy.[6] Their recommendations included a thorough informed consent process, appropriate institutional research safeguards, involvement of a multidisciplinary team, and the need for open collaborative research networks. Although this approach has high financial costs, thorough basic science and translational and clinical research in fetal therapy is essential to appropriately manage the unique risks and benefits of future innovations. Appropriate patient selection (both maternal and fetal) and timing of the intervention also need to be better established in many of the procedures.

The principal of *primum non nocere* argues that until a therapy is appropriately tested in animal models, it is unethical to pursue in human trials.[337] Advances in fetal surgery not only require determination of fetal benefit but also must be powered to appropriately evaluate additional fetal and maternal morbidity.[338] Only the results of animal research and descriptive summaries of clinical series currently guide the majority of clinical anesthetic care for fetal surgery. Further rigorous research is needed to determine optimal anesthetic techniques, ensure maternal and fetal cardiovascular stability, improve our understanding of anesthetic exposure and neurocognitive deficits, assess the impact of anesthetic management strategies on uterine tone and uteroplacental perfusion, and to improve our ability to determine the adequacy of fetal anesthesia to produce immobility and block the fetal stress response.[276,339]

Areas of clinical growth include programs for anesthesia training in fetal treatment and the development of standard guidelines for fetal anesthesia and perioperative care of these unique procedures. Fetal treatment is a relatively new, rapidly evolving field of clinical medicine that holds great promise for treating morbid conditions and improving quality of life over the entire lifetime of the patient. Equally significant are the research efforts, technologic advancements, and ethical standards that must be supported to achieve these goals.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Partridge EA, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 2012;26:669.
2. Harrison MR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;307:1651.
3. Sudhakaran N, et al. *Early Hum Dev*. 2012;88:15.
4. Al-Refai A, et al. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;29:80.
5. Kitagawa H, Pringle KC. *Pediatr Surg Int*. 2017;33:421–433.
6. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Committee on Ethics; American Academy of Pediatrics. *Committee on Bioethics: Pediatrics*. 2011;128:e473.

7. Graves CE, et al. *Clin Perinatol*. 2017;44:729–751.
8. Johnson MP, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;215:778.e1–778.e9.
9. Kabagambe SK, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2018;43:161–174.
10. Moldenhauer JS. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2013;22:44–49.
11. Butler CR, et al. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2017;25:119–126.
12. Hirose S, et al. *Clin Perinatol*. 2003;30:493.
13. Shieh HF, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2017;52:22–25.
14. Cass DL. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2011;16:130.
15. Robinson AJ, Ederies MA. *Pediatr Radiol*. 2018;48:471–485.
16. Platt LD, et al. *Prenat Diagn*. 2018;38:166–172.
17. Liley AW. *Br Med J*. 1963;2:1107.
18. Papantoniou N, et al. *J Perinat Med*. 2013;41:71.
19. Adamsons Jr K. *N Engl J Med*. 1966;275:204.
20. Rodeck CH, et al. *Lancet*. 1981;1:625.
21. Liggins GC, Howie RN. *Pediatrics*. 1972;50:515–525.
22. Harrison MR, et al. *Surgery*. 1980;88:260.
23. Harrison MR, et al. *Surgery*. 1980;88:174.
24. Harrison MR, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1981;16:934.
25. Harrison MR, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1982;17:115.
26. Harrison MR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;306:591.
27. Lindenburg IT, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2014;36:263–271.
28. Moise Jr KJ. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2008;198(161):e1.
29. Fox C, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2008;23:159.
30. Fisk NM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:828.
31. Adama van Scheltema PN, et al. *Prenat Diagn*. 2011;31:555.
32. Uquillas KR, et al. *Am J Perinatol*. 2018;35:682–687.
33. Mouw RJ, et al. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 1999;78:763.
34. Santiago MD, et al. *Blood Transfus*. 2010;8:271.
35. Nicolaides KH, et al. *Fetal Ther*. 1986;1:185.
36. Moise Jr. KJ. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2008;112:164.
37. Zwiers C, et al. *Expert Rev Hematol*. 2017;10:337–344.
38. Lindenburg IT, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2012;206:141 e1–8.
39. Triedman JK, Newburger JW. *Circulation*. 2016;133:2716–2733.
40. Puri K, et al. *Pediatr Rev*. 2017;38:471–486.
41. Donofrio MT, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;129:2183–2242.
42. Gellis L, Tworetzky W. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017;22:399–403.
43. Araujo EJ, et al. *J Evid Based Med*. 2016.
43a. Araujo Júnior E, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;48:426–433.
44. Alsoufi B, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2015;100:591–598.
45. Karamlou T, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2010;139:119–126. discussion 126-7.
46. Oberhuber RD, et al. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2017;38:1089–1096.
47. Khalil A, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2014;43:14–24.
48. McElhinney DB, et al. *Circulation*. 2009;120:1482.
49. Oepkes D, et al. *Prenat Diagn*. 2011;31:249–251.
50. Schidlow DN, et al. *Am J Perinatol*. 2014;31:629–636.
51. Ferschl MB, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30:1118–1128.
51a. Tworetzky W, et al. *Circulation*. 2004;110:2125–2131.
52. Marantz P, Grinenco S. *Curr Opin Cardiol*. 2015;30:89–94.
53. Freud LR, Tworetzky W. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2016;28:156–162.
54. Arzt W, et al. *Prenat Diagn*. 2011;31:695.
55. Arzt W, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;37:689.
56. Jaeggi E, et al. *Trends Cardiovasc Med*. 2016;26:639–646.
57. Bacha EA. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg Pediatr Card Surg Annu*. 2011;14:35–37.
58. Tworetzky W, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2009;124:e510.
59. Kohl T. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2012;42:14.
60. Stirnemann J, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2018.
61. Smith-Harrison LI, et al. *J Pediatr Urol*. 2015;11:341–347.
62. Ruano R. *Prenat Diagn*. 2011;31:667.
63. Johnson MP, Wilson RD. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017;22:391–398.
64. Hubert KC, et al. *Urol Clin North Am*. 2007;34:89.
65. Lyons K, et al. *Semin Ultrasound CT MR*. 2015;36:310–323.
66. Braga LH, et al. *J Urol*. 2017;197:831–837.
67. Ruano R, et al. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 2017;32:1871–1878.
68. Wu S, et al. *Clin Perinatol*. 2009;36:377.
69. Qureshi F, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 1996;11:306.
70. Nassr AA, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;49:696–703.
71. Sato Y, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2004;39:1849.
72. Kitagawa H, et al. *Pediatr Surg Int*. 2006;22:875.
73. Nagae H, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2006;41:2086.
74. Clayton DB, Brock JW. *Curr Urol Rep*. 2018;19:12.
75. Quintero RA, et al. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2010;23:806.
76. Biard JM, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106:503.
77. Freedman AL, et al. *Lancet*. 1999;354:374.
78. Morris RK, et al. *BJOG*. 2010;117:382.
79. Morris RK, et al. *Lancet*. 2013;382:1496–1506.
80. Martinez JM, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2015;37:267–273.
81. Ruano R, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;45:452–458.
82. Morris RK, et al. *Early Hum Dev*. 2011;87:607.
83. Jelin E, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2010;27:138.
84. Moldenhauer JS, Johnson MP. *Clin Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;58:632–642.
85. Kinsel-Ziter ML, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2009;34:550.
86. Moore TR, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1990;163:907.
87. Healey MG. *Teratology*. 1994;50:205.
88. Chaveeva P, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2014;35:267–279.
89. Lee H, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2013;33:224–229.
90. Sugibayashi R, et al. *Prenat Diagn*. 2016;36:437–443.
91. Berg C, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2014;43:60–64.
92. Lewi L, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;203:213.e1–e4.
93. Simpson LL. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;208:3.
94. Johnson A. *Clin Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;58:611–631.
95. Khalek N, et al. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2013;22:18–23.
96. Benoit RM, Baschat AA. *Am J Perinatol*. 2014;31:583–594.
97. De Paepe ME, et al. *Placenta*. 2010;31:269.
98. Nikkels PG, et al. *J Clin Pathol*. 2008;61:1247.
99. Denbow ML, et al. *Placenta*. 2004;25:664–670.
100. Simpson LL. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;208:3–18.
101. Quintero RA, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2003;188:1333–1340.
102. Quintero RA, et al. *J Perinatol*. 1999;19:550.
103. Rychik J, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2007;197(392):e1.
104. Manning N, Archer N. *Twin Res Hum Genet*. 2016;19:246–254.
105. Miralles-Gutierrez A, et al. *J Perinat Med*. 2018;46(9):991–997.
106. Sananes N, et al. *Prenat Diagn*. 2016;36:1139–1145.
107. van Klink JM, et al. *Early Hum Dev*. 2011;87:589.
108. Li X, et al. *BMC Pregnancy Childbirth*. 2011;11:32.
109. Rossi AC, et al. *Am J Perinatol*. 2013;30:5.
110. Roberts D, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014:CD002073.
111. Saunders NJ, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1992;166:820.
112. Mari G, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2001;185:708.
113. Dickinson JE, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2000;182:706.
114. Moise Jr. KJ, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;193:701.
115. Sago H, et al. *J Obstet Gynaecol Res*. 2018;44:831–839.
116. Lewi L, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2006;194:790.
117. Chmait RH, et al. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2010;23:10.
118. Akkermans J, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2015;37:251–258.
119. Chmait RH, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;204(393):e1.
120. Slaghekke F, Oepkes D. *Twin Res Hum Genet*. 2016;19:217–221.
121. van Klink JM, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;214:113 e1–7.
122. Slaghekke F, et al. *Lancet*. 2014;383:2144–2151.
123. Senat MV, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:136.
124. Salomon LJ, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;203(444):e1.
125. Emery SP, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;215:346.e1–346.e7.
126. Akkermans J, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2015;38:241–253.
127. Sananes N, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;47:712–719.
128. Chmait RH, et al. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017:1–5.
129. Husler MR, et al. *Prenat Diagn*. 2009;29:457.
130. Cignini P, et al. *J Prenat Med*. 2012;6:59.
131. Richter J, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2012;31:134.
132. Burton DJ, et al. *AJR Am J Roentgenol*. 1991;156:555.
133. Neuman J, et al. *Pediatr Radiol*. 2012;42:544.
134. Javadian P, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;42:449–455.
135. Derderian SC, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2014;49:359–362.
136. Ting YH, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2016;40:67–72.
137. Danzer E, et al. *Early Hum Dev*. 2011;87:625.
138. Burgos CM, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2017.
139. Dingeldein M. *Adv Pediatr*. 2018;65:241–247.
140. Barriere F, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2018;193:204–210.
141. Wynn J, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2013;163:114–119.e1.
142. Harrison MR, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1993;28:1411; discussion 1417.
143. Esteve C, et al. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 1992;11:193.
144. Harrison MR, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1997;32:1637.
145. Wilson JM, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1993;28:1433; discussion 1439.
146. Alcorn D, et al. *J Anat*. 1977;123:649.
147. Bealer JF, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1995;30:361; discussion 364.

148. Hedrick MH, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1994;29:612.
149. Russo FM, et al. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017;22:383–390.
150. Harrison MR, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1996;31:1339.
151. Harrison MR, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1998;33:1017; discussion 1022.
152. Shue EH, et al. *Clin Perinatol*. 2012;39:289.
153. Jimenez JA, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;217:78.e1–78.e11.
154. Jani JC, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2006;195:1646.
155. Metkus AP, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1996;31:148; discussion 151.
156. Peralta CF, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;26:718.
157. Jani J, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2007;30:67.
158. Deprest JA, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2011;29:6.
159. Oluyomi-Obi T, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2017;52:881–888.
160. Victoria T, et al. *Seminars in Pediatric Surgery*. 2013;22:30–36.
161. Mayer S, et al. *Prenatal Diagnosis*. 2011;31:1086–1096.
162. Harrison MR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1916;349:2003.
163. Jani JC, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2009;34:304.
164. Jani J, et al. *Prenat Diagn*. 2011;31:699.
165. Al-Maary J, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2016;264:929–933.
166. Done E, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;42:77–83.
167. Dhillon GS, et al. *Prenat Diagn*. 2018.
168. Dekoninck P, et al. *Early Hum Dev*. 2011;87:619.
169. Adzick SN, et al. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2013;22:10.
170. Peranteau WH, Adzick NS. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;28:111–118.
171. Blumenfeld YJ, Belfort MA. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2018;30:123–129.
172. Copp AJ, et al. *Nat Rev Dis Primers*. 2015;1:15007.
173. Shaer CM, et al. *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 2007;62:471.
174. Oakeshott P, et al. *Br J Gen Pract*. 2003;53:632.
175. Roach JW, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2011;469:1246–1252.
176. Julia V, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2006;41:1125.
177. Moldenhauer JS, Adzick NS. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017;22:360–366.
178. Sutton LN. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 2008;22:175.
179. Yoshizawa J, et al. *Pediatr Surg Int*. 2004;20:14.
180. Korenromp MJ, et al. *Lancet*. 1986;1:917.
181. Sival DA, et al. *Early Hum Dev*. 1997;50:27.
182. Luthy DA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324:662.
183. Ferschl M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1121.
184. Bruner JP. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2007;12:471.
185. Sutton LN. *JAMA*. 1999;282:1826.
186. Adzick NS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:993.
187. Farmer DL, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2018;218:256.e1-256.e13.
188. Kabagambe SK, et al. *Childs Nerv Syst*. 2017;33:1185–1190.
189. Danzer E, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;214:269.e1-269.e8.
190. Adzick NS. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2012;47:273.
191. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;121:218.
192. Peiro JL, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2013;27:3835–3840.
193. Belfort MA, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;129:734–743.
194. Pedreira DA, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;214:111.e1–111.e11.
195. Belfort MA, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;126:881–884.
196. Ziemann M, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2018;32:3138–3148.
197. Kremer MEB, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2018.
198. Wilson RD, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2009;25:15–20.
199. Van Mieghem T, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2014;43:611–619.
200. Usui N, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2012;47:441.
201. Altman RP, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1974;9:389.
202. Gebb JS, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2019;45(2):94–101.
203. Peiro JL, et al. *Pediatr Surg Int*. 2016;32:635–647.
204. Roybal JL, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2011;46:1325.
205. Braun T, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2010;27:191.
206. Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;212:127–139.
207. Hirata G, et al. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2016;29:2630–2634.
208. Khalek N, et al. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2013;22:24.
209. David M, et al. *Neonatology*. 2016;110:101–115.
210. Gajewska-Knapik K, Impey L. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2015;24:156–159.
211. Fowler DJ, Gould SJ. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2015;24:176–182.
212. Adzick NS. *Clin Perinatol*. 2009;36:363–376, x.
213. Parikh DH, Rasiah SV. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2015;24:160–167.
214. Ehrenberg-Buchner S, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;208:151.e1–151.e7.
215. Yong PJ, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2012;31:94.
216. Crombleholme TM, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2002;37:331.
217. Mann S, et al. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2007;12:477–481.
218. Cass DL, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2012;47:40.
219. Harrison MR, et al. *Lancet*. 1990;336:965.
220. Baird R, et al. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2014;23:270–277.
221. Derderian SC, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2015;50:515–518.
222. Wilson RD, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2004;19:413.
223. Peranteau WH, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2015;50:301–305.
224. Mallmann MR, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2017;41:58–65.
225. Rodeck CH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1988;319:1135.
226. Mon RA, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2018;221:121–127.
227. Grethel EJ, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2007;42:117.
228. Cass DL, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2013;48:138.
229. Wilson RD. *Prenat Diagn*. 2008;28:619–625.
230. Lakhoo K. *Early Hum Dev*. 2012;88:9.
231. Wilson RD, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;203(209):e1.
232. Cass DL. *Seminars in Fetal and Neonatal Medicine*. 2011;16:130–138.
233. Aite L, et al. *J Perinatol*. 2003;23:652.
234. Miquel-Verges F, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2009;124:e573.
235. Rychik J. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2004;25:201.
236. Morton SU, Brodsky D. *Clin Perinatol*. 2016;43:395–407.
237. Grant DA, et al. *J Physiol*. 2001;535:231.
238. Swanson JR, Sinkin RA. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2015;62:329–343.
239. Yao AC, et al. *Lancet*. 1969;2:871.
240. Morris JA, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1974;118:927.
241. Smith GC, et al. *BJOG*. 2002;109:721.
242. Sankaran VG, et al. *Br J Haematol*. 2010;149:181–194.
243. Colombatti R, et al. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2016;21:2–9.
244. Nicolaides KH, et al. *Lancet*. 1988;1:1073.
245. Reverdiau-Moalic P, et al. *Blood*. 1996;88:900.
246. Jaffray J, Young G. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2013;60:1407–1417.
247. Sola-Visner M. *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program*. 2012;2012:506–511.
248. Kaneko M, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2011;46:e37.
249. Luks FI, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1998;33:1297.
250. Izumi A, et al. *Gynecol Obstet Invest*. 1997;44:26.
251. Vasconcelos RP, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2010;28:160.
252. Gunn TR, et al. *J Dev Physiol*. 1986;8:55.
253. Mann DG, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2018;51:411–412.
254. Aboud E, et al. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 1999;66:163.
255. Teixeira J, et al. *Lancet*. 1996;347:624.
256. Gitau R, et al. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2001;86:104.
257. Brusseau R, Mizrahi-Arnaud A. *Clin Perinatol*. 2013;40:429–442.
258. Van de Velde M, De Buck F. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2012;31:201–209.
259. Anand KJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1987;317:1321.
260. Sekulic S, et al. *J Pain Res*. 2016;9:1031–1038.
261. Derbyshire SW. *Bioethics*. 1999;13:1.
262. Anand KJ, et al. *Lancet*. 1987;1:62.
263. Afif A, et al. *Brain Struct Funct*. 2007;212:335.
264. Terenghi G, et al. *J Comp Neurol*. 1993;328:595–603.
265. Konstantinidou AD, et al. *J Comp Neurol*. 1995;354:11–12.
266. Lee SJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2005;294:947.
267. Hevner RF. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol*. 2000;59:385.
268. Kostovic I, et al. *J Neurosci*. 1984;4:25.
269. Krmpotic-Nemanic J, et al. *Acta Anat (Basel)*. 1983;116:69.
270. Torres F, et al. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 1985;2:89.
271. Robinson S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60:331.
272. Rosen MA. *Yonsei Med J*. 2001;42:669.
273. Van de Velde M, et al. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2006;11:232.
274. Glover V, et al. *BMJ*. 1996;313:796.
275. Olutoye OO, et al. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2012;24:386.
276. Tran KM. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2010;15:40.
277. Leveque C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:642.
278. Van de Velde M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:251.
279. Dwyer R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:379.
280. Polvi HJ, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1996;87:1045.
281. Biehl DR, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1983;30:581.
282. Palahniuk RJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41:462.
283. Boat A, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20:748.
284. Constant I, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15:266.
285. Shavit CW, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118:634–635.
286. Hoagland MA, Chatterjee D. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27:346–357.
287. Kan RE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1467.
288. Rosen MA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:698–700.

289. Brambrink AM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:834.
290. Jevtovic-Todorovic V, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2003;23:876.
291. Raper J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:761–767.
292. Alvarado MC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:517–523.
293. Jevtovic-Todorovic V. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:455–457.
294. Sun LS, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;315:2312–2320.
295. Davidson AJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2016;387:239–250.
296. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *ASA Response to the FDA Med Watch Warning - December 16*, 2016; http://www.asahq.org/advocacy/fda-and-washington-alerts/washington-alerts/2016/12/asa-response-to-the-fda-med-watch?month=12&category=Washington%20Alert.
297. Sprung J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:302–310.
298. Olutoye OA, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2017.
299. Andropoulos DB. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2017.
300. Farrell J, et al. *J Obstet Gynecol Neonatal Nurs*. 2012;41:419.
301. Arens C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:219–222.
302. Hering R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:523.
303. Kafali H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:174.
304. Sinskey JL, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2017.
305. Howley L, et al. *Prenat Diagn*. 2015;35:564–570.
306. Rychik J, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2015;37:172–178.
307. DiFederico EM, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1998;179:925.
308. Ngan Kee WD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1295.
309. Habib AS. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:377.
310. Smith JA, et al. *Front Pharmacol*. 2017;8:11.
311. Jeejeebhoy FM, et al. *Circulation*. 2015;132:1747–1773.
312. Wyckoff MH, et al. *Circulation*. 2015;132:S543–S560.
313. Mizuki J, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1993;169:134.
314. Ochsenbein-Kolble N, et al. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2017.
315. Smith CV, et al. *J Matern Fetal Med*. 1996;5:89.
316. Santolaya-Forgas J, et al. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2006;19:231–238.
317. Zamora IJ, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2013;48:951–955.
318. Garcia PJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1446.
319. Fink RJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:851.
320. George RB, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2007;54:218.
321. Ngamprasertwong P, et al. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;50:26–40.
322. Hirose S, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2004;39:375–380; discussion 375-80.
323. Tran KM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:1265.
324. Rahbar R, et al. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2005;131:393.
325. Johnson N, et al. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol*. 1991;98:36.
326. Kunisaki SM, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2007;42:98; discussion 104.
327. Abraham RJ, et al. *J Obstet Gynaecol*. 2010;30:1–5.
328. Noah MM, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2002;186:773.
329. Santore MT, et al. *Clin Perinatol*. 2009;36:451.
330. Witt R, et al. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017;22:410–414.
331. Vanover M, et al. *Placenta*. 2017;59:107–112.
332. Meadow W, et al. *Acta Paediatr*. 2012;101:397.
333. Partridge EA, et al. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017;22:404–409.
334. Dickens BM, et al. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2011;115:80.
335. Antiel RM, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2017:140.
336. Danzer E, et al. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 2012;54:8.
337. Chervenak FA. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2018;23:64–67.
338. Moaddab A, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 2017;43:58–67.
339. Richardson MG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1016.

References

1. Partridge EA, Flake AW. Maternal-fetal surgery for structural malformations. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 2012;26:669–682.
2. Harrison MR, Filly RA, Golbus MS, et al. Fetal treatment 1982. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;307:1651–1652.
3. Sudhakaran N, Sothinathan U, Patel S. Best practice guidelines: fetal surgery. *Early Hum Dev*. 2012;88:15–19.
4. Al-Refai A, Ryan G, Van Mieghem T. Maternal risks of fetal therapy. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;29:80–84.
5. Kitagawa H, Pringle KC. Fetal surgery: a critical review. *Pediatr Surg Int*. 2017;33:421–433.
6. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Committee on Ethics; American Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Bioethics: Maternal-fetal intervention and fetal care centers. *Pediatrics*. 2011;128:e473–e478.
7. Graves CE, Harrison MR, Padilla BE. Minimally invasive fetal surgery. *Clin Perinatol*. 2017;44:729–751.
8. Johnson MP, Bennett KA, Rand L, et al. The Management of Myelomeningocele Study: obstetrical outcomes and risk factors for obstetrical complications following prenatal surgery. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;215:778.e1–778.e9.
9. Kabagambe SK, Jensen GW, Chen YJ, et al. Fetal surgery for myelomeningocele: a systematic review and meta-analysis of outcomes in fetoscopic versus open repair. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2018;43:161–174.
10. Moldenhauer JS. Ex utero intrapartum therapy. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2013;22:44–49.
11. Butler CR, Maughan EF, Pandya P, et al. Ex utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT) for upper airway obstruction. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2017;25:119–126.
12. Hirose S, Farmer DL. Fetal surgery for sacrococcygeal teratoma. *Clin Perinatol*. 2003;30:493–506.
13. Shieh HF, Wilson JM, Sheils CA, et al. Does the ex utero intrapartum treatment to extracorporeal membrane oxygenation procedure change morbidity outcomes for high-risk congenital diaphragmatic hernia survivors? *J Pediatr Surg*. 2017;52:22–25.
14. Cass DL. Impact of prenatal diagnosis and therapy on neonatal surgery. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2011;16:130–138.
15. Robinson AJ, Ederies MA. Fetal neuroimaging: an update on technical advances and clinical findings. *Pediatr Radiol*. 2018;48:471–485.
16. Platt LD, Barth RA, Pugash D. Current controversies in prenatal diagnosis 3: fetal MRI should be performed in all prenatally detected fetuses with a major structural abnormality. *Prenat Diagn*. 2018;38:166–172.
17. Liley AW. Intrauterine transfusion of foetus in haemolytic disease. *Br Med J*. 1963;2:1107–1109.
18. Papantoniou N, Sifaki S, Antsaklis A. Therapeutic management of fetal anemia: review of standard practice and alternative treatment options. *J Perinat Med*. 2013;41:71–82.
19. Adamsons Jr K. Fetal surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1966;275:204–206.
20. Rodeck CH, Kemp JR, Holman CA, et al. Direct intravascular fetal blood transfusion by fetoscopy in severe Rhesus isoimmunisation. *Lancet*. 1981;1:625–627.
21. Liggins GC, Howie RN. A controlled trial of antepartum glucocorticoid treatment for prevention of the respiratory distress syndrome in premature infants. *Pediatrics*. 1972;50:515–525.
22. Harrison MR, Jester JA, Ross NA. Correction of congenital diaphragmatic hernia in utero. I. The model: intrathoracic balloon produces fatal pulmonary hypoplasia. *Surgery*. 1980;88:174–182.
23. Harrison MR, Bressack MA, Churg AM, et al. Correction of congenital diaphragmatic hernia in utero. II. Simulated correction permits fetal lung growth with survival at birth. *Surgery*. 1980;88:260–268.
24. Harrison MR, Ross NA, de Lorimier AA. Correction of congenital diaphragmatic hernia in utero. III. Development of a successful surgical technique using abdominoplasty to avoid compromise of umbilical blood flow. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1981;16:934–942.
25. Harrison MR, Anderson J, Rosen MA, et al. Fetal surgery in the primate I. Anesthetic, surgical, and tocolytic management to maximize fetal—neonatal survival. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1982;17:115–122.
26. Harrison MR, Golbus MS, Filly RA, et al. Fetal surgery for congenital hydronephrosis. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;306:591–593.
27. Lindenburg IT, van Kamp IL, Oepkes D. Intrauterine blood transfusion: current indications and associated risks. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2014;36:263–271.
28. Moise Jr KJ. The usefulness of middle cerebral artery Doppler assessment in the treatment of the fetus at risk for anemia. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2008;198:161.e1–e4.
29. Fox C, Martin W, Somerset DA, et al. Early intraperitoneal transfusion and adjuvant maternal immunoglobulin therapy in the treatment of severe red cell alloimmunization prior to fetal intravascular transfusion. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2008;23:159–163.
30. Fisk NM, Gitau R, Teixeira JM, et al. Effect of direct fetal opioid analgesia on fetal hormonal and hemodynamic stress response to intrauterine needling. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:828–835.
31. Adama van Scheltema PN, Pasman SA, Wolterbeek R, et al. Fetal stress hormone changes during intrauterine transfusions. *Prenat Diagn*. 2011;31:555–559.
32. Uquillas KR, Aboudiab MS, Korst LM, et al. Middle cerebral artery doppler changes following fetal transfusion performed with and without fetal anesthesia. *Am J Perinatol*. 2018;35:682–687.
33. Mouw RJ, Klumper F, Hermans J, et al. Effect of atracurium or pancuronium on the anemic fetus during and directly after intravascular intrauterine transfusion. A double blind randomized study. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand*. 1999;78:763–767.
34. Santiago MD, Rezende CA, Cabral AC, et al. Determining the volume of blood required for the correction of foetal anaemia by intrauterine transfusion during pregnancies of Rh isoimmunised women. *Blood Transfus*. 2010;8:271–277.
35. Nicolaides KH, Soothill PW, Rodeck CH, et al. Rh disease: intravascular fetal blood transfusion by cordocentesis. *Fetal Ther*. 1986;1:185–192.
36. Moise Jr KJ. Management of rhesus alloimmunization in pregnancy. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2008;112:164–176.
37. Zwiers C, van Kamp I, Oepkes D, et al. Intrauterine transfusion and non-invasive treatment options for hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn - review on current management and outcome. *Expert Rev Hematol*. 2017;10:337–344.
38. Lindenburg IT, Smits-Wintjens VE, van Klink JM, et al. Long-term neurodevelopmental outcome after intrauterine transfusion for hemolytic disease of the fetus/newborn: the LOTUS study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2012;206:141.e1–e8.
39. Triedman JK, Newburger JW. Trends in congenital heart disease: the next decade. *Circulation*. 2016;133:2716–2733.
40. Puri K, Allen HD, Qureshi AM. Congenital heart disease. *Pediatr Rev*. 2017;38:471–486.
41. Donofrio MT, Moon-Grady AJ, Hornberger LK, et al. Diagnosis and treatment of fetal cardiac disease: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2014;129:2183–2242.
42. Gellis L, Tworetzky W. The boundaries of fetal cardiac intervention: expand or tighten? *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017;22:399–403.
43. Araujo EJ, Tonni G, Martins WP. Outcomes of infants followed-up at least 12 months after fetal open and endoscopic surgery for meningomyelocele: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Evid Based Med*. 2016.

43a. Araujo Júnior E, Tonni G, Chung M, et al. Perinatal outcomes and intrauterine complications following fetal intervention for congenital heart disease: systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;48(4):426–433.

44. Alsoufi B, Mori M, Gillespie S, et al. Impact of patient characteristics and anatomy on results of Norwood operation for hypoplastic left heart syndrome. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2015;100:591–598.
45. Karamlou T, Diggs BS, Ungerleider RM, et al. Evolution of treatment options and outcomes for hypoplastic left heart syndrome over an 18-year period. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2010;139:119–126; discussion 126-7.
46. Oberhuber RD, Huemer S, Mair R, et al. Cognitive development of school-age hypoplastic left heart syndrome survivors: a single center study. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2017;38:1089–1096.
47. Khalil A, Suff N, Thilaganathan B, et al. Brain abnormalities and neurodevelopmental delay in congenital heart disease: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2014;43:14–24.
48. McElhinney DB, Marshall AC, Wilkins-Haug LE, et al. Predictors of technical success and postnatal biventricular outcome after in utero aortic valvuloplasty for aortic stenosis with evolving hypoplastic left heart syndrome. *Circulation*. 2009;120:1482–1490.
49. Oepkes D, Moon-Grady AJ, Wilkins-Haug L, et al. 2010 Report from the ISPD Special Interest Group fetal therapy: fetal cardiac interventions. *Prenat Diagn*. 2011;31:249–251.

50. Schidlow DN, Tworetzky W, Wilkins-Haug LE. Percutaneous fetal cardiac interventions for structural heart disease. *Am J Perinatol*. 2014;31:629–636.
51. Ferschl MB, Moon-Grady AJ, Rollins MD, et al. CASE 8-2016 Percutaneous fetal cardiac intervention for severe aortic stenosis and evolving hypoplastic left-heart syndrome. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30:1118–1128.

51a. Tworetzky W, Wilkins-Haug L, Jennings RW, et al. Balloon dilation of severe aortic stenosis in the fetus: potential for prevention of hypoplastic left heart syndrome—candidate selection, technique, and results of successful intervention. *Circulation*. 2004;110: 2125–2131.

52. Marantz P, Grinenco S. Fetal intervention for critical aortic stenosis: advances, research and postnatal follow-up. *Curr Opin Cardiol*. 2015;30:89–94.
53. Freud LR, Tworetzky W. Fetal interventions for congenital heart disease. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2016;28:156–162.
54. Arzt W, Tulzer G. Fetal surgery for cardiac lesions. *Prenat Diagn*. 2011;31:695–698.
55. Arzt W, Wertaschnigg D, Veit I, et al. Intrauterine aortic valvuloplasty in fetuses with critical aortic stenosis: experience and results of 24 procedures. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;37: 689–695.
56. Jaeggi E, Renaud C, Ryan G, et al. Intrauterine therapy for structural congenital heart disease: contemporary results and Canadian experience. *Trends Cardiovasc Med*. 2016;26:639–646.
57. Bacha EA. Impact of fetal cardiac intervention on congenital heart surgery. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg Pediatr Card Surg Annu*. 2011;14:35–37.
58. Tworetzky W, McElhinney DB, Marx GR, et al. In utero valvuloplasty for pulmonary atresia with hypoplastic right ventricle: techniques and outcomes. *Pediatrics*. 2009;124:e510–e518.
59. Kohl T. Foetal cardiac interventions: overview and perspectives in 2012. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2012;42:14–16.
60. Stirnemann J, Maltret A, Haydar A, et al. Successful in utero transesophageal pacing for severe drug-resistant tachyarrhythmia. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2018.
61. Smith-Harrison LI, Hougen HY, Timberlake MD, et al. Current applications of in utero intervention for lower urinary tract obstruction. *J Pediatr Urol*. 2015;11:341–347.
62. Ruano R. Fetal surgery for severe lower urinary tract obstruction. *Prenat Diagn*. 2011;31:667–674.
63. Johnson MP, Wilson RD. Shunt-based interventions: why, how, and when to place a shunt. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017;22: 391–398.
64. Hubert KC, Palmer JS. Current diagnosis and management of fetal genitourinary abnormalities. *Urol Clin North Am*. 2007;34:89–101.
65. Lyons K, Cassady C, Mehollin-Ray A, et al. Current role of fetal magnetic resonance imaging in body anomalies. *Semin Ultrasound CT MR*. 2015;36:310–323.
66. Braga LH, McGrath M, Farrokhyar F, et al. Associations of initial Society for Fetal Urology grades and Urinary tract dilatation risk groups with clinical outcomes in patients with isolated prenatal hydronephrosis. *J Urol*. 2017;197:831–837.
67. Ruano R, Dunn T, Braun MC, et al. Lower urinary tract obstruction: fetal intervention based on prenatal staging. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 2017;32:1871–1878.
68. Wu S, Johnson MP. Fetal lower urinary tract obstruction. *Clin Perinatol*. 2009;36:377–390.
69. Qureshi F, Jacques SM, Seifman B, et al. In utero fetal urine analysis and renal histology correlate with the outcome in fetal obstructive uropathies. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 1996;11:306–312.
70. Nassr AA, Shazly SAM, Abdelmagied AM, et al. Effectiveness of vesicoamniotic shunt in fetuses with congenital lower urinary tract obstruction: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;49:696–703.
71. Sato Y, Kitagawa H, Pringle KC, et al. Effects of early vesicostomy in obstructive uropathy on bladder development. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2004;39:1849–1852.
72. Kitagawa H, Pringle KC, Koike J, et al. Early bladder wall changes after creation of obstructive uropathy in the fetal lamb. *Pediatr Surg Int*. 2006;22:875–879.
73. Nagae H, Kitagawa H, Pringle KC, et al. Pressure-limited vesicoamniotic shunt tube for fetal obstructive uropathy. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2006;41:2086–2089.
74. Clayton DB, Brock JW. Current state of fetal intervention for lower urinary tract obstruction. *Curr Urol Rep*. 2018;19:12.
75. Quintero RA, Gomez Castro LA, Bermudez C, et al. In utero management of fetal lower urinary tract obstruction with a novel shunt: a landmark development in fetal therapy. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2010;23:806–812.
76. Biard J-M, Johnson MP, Carr MC, et al. Long-term outcomes in children treated by prenatal vesicoamniotic shunting for lower urinary tract obstruction. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106:503–508.
77. Freedman AL, Johnson MP, Smith CA, et al. Long-term outcome in children after antenatal intervention for obstructive uropathies. *Lancet*. 1999;354:374–377.
78. Morris R, Malin G, Khan K, et al. Systematic review of the effectiveness of antenatal intervention for the treatment of congenital lower urinary tract obstruction: effectiveness of intervention for fetal bladder obstruction. *BJOG*. 2010;117:382–390.
79. Morris RK, Malin GL, Quinlan-Jones E, et al. Percutaneous vesicoamniotic shunting versus conservative management for fetal lower urinary tract obstruction (PLUTO): a randomised trial. *Lancet*. 2013;382:1496–1506.
80. Martinez JM, Masoller N, Devlieger R, et al. Laser ablation of posterior urethral valves by fetal cystoscopy. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2015;37:267–273.
81. Ruano R, Sananes N, Sangi-Haghpeykar H, et al. Fetal intervention for severe lower urinary tract obstruction: a multicenter case-control study comparing fetal cystoscopy with vesicoamniotic shunting. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;45:452–458.
82. Morris RK, Kilby MD. Long-term renal and neurodevelopmental outcome in infants with LUTO, with and without fetal intervention. *Early Hum Dev*. 2011;87:607–610.
83. Jelin E, Hirose S, Rand L, et al. Perinatal outcome of conservative management versus fetal intervention for twin reversed arterial perfusion sequence with a small acardiac twin. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2010;27:138–141.
84. Moldenhauer JS, Johnson MP. Diagnosis and management of complicated monochorionic twins. *Clin Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;58:632–642.
85. Kinsel-Ziter ML, Cnota JF, Crombleholme TM, et al. Twin-reversed arterial perfusion sequence: pre- and postoperative cardiovascular findings in the 'pump' twin. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2009;34:550–555.
86. Moore TR, Gale S, Benirschke K. Perinatal outcome of forty-nine pregnancies complicated by acardiac twinning. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1990;163:907–912.
87. Healey MG. Acardia: predictive risk factors for the co-twin's survival. *Teratology*. 1994;50:205–213.
88. Chaveeva P, Poon LC, Sotiriadis A, et al. Optimal method and timing of intrauterine intervention in twin reversed arterial perfusion sequence: case study and meta-analysis. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2014;35:267–279.
89. Lee H, Bebbington M, Crombleholme TM, et al. The North American Fetal Therapy Network Registry data on outcomes of radiofrequency ablation for twin-reversed arterial perfusion sequence. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2013;33:224–229.
90. Sugibayashi R, Ozawa K, Sumie M, et al. Forty cases of twin reversed arterial perfusion sequence treated with radio frequency ablation using the multistep coagulation method: a single-center experience. *Prenat Diagn*. 2016;36:437–443.
91. Berg C, Holst D, Mallmann MR, et al. Early vs late intervention in twin reversed arterial perfusion sequence. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2014;43:60–64.
92. Lewi L, Valencia C, Gonzalez E, et al. The outcome of twin reversed arterial perfusion sequence diagnosed in the first trimester. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;203:213 e1–4.
93. Simpson LL. Twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;208:3–18.
94. Johnson A. Diagnosis and management of twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *Clin Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;58:611–631.
95. Khalek N, Johnson MP, Bebbington MW. Fetoscopic laser therapy for twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2013;22:18–23.
96. Benoit RM, Baschat AA. Twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome: prenatal diagnosis and treatment. *Am J Perinatol*. 2014;31:583–594.
97. De Paepe ME, Shapiro S, Greco D, et al. Placental markers of twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome in diamniotic–monochorionic twins: a morphometric analysis of deep artery-to-vein anastomoses. *Placenta*. 2010;31:269–276.

98. Nikkels PGJ, Hack KEA, van Gemert MJC. Pathology of twin placentas with special attention to monochorionic twin placentas. *J Clin Pathol*. 2008;61:1247–1253.
99. Denbow ML, Taylor M, Cox P, et al. Derivation of rate of arterio-arterial anastomotic transfusion between monochorionic twin fetuses by Doppler waveform analysis. *Placenta*. 2004;25:664–670.
100. Simpson LL. Twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;208:3–18.
101. Quintero RA, Dickinson JE, Morales WJ, et al. Stage-based treatment of twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2003;188:1333–1340.
102. Quintero RA, Morales WJ, Allen MH, et al. Staging of twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *J Perinatol*. 1999;19:550–555.
103. Rychik J, Tian Z, Bebbington M, et al. The twin-twin transfusion syndrome: spectrum of cardiovascular abnormality and development of a cardiovascular score to assess severity of disease. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2007;197:392.e1–e8.
104. Manning N, Archer N. Cardiac manifestations of twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome. *Twin Res Hum Genet*. 2016;19:246–254.
105. Miralles-Gutierrez A, Narbona-Arias I, Gonzalez-Mesa E. Neurological complications after therapy for fetal-fetal transfusion syndrome: a systematic review of the outcomes at 24 months. *J Perinat Med*. 2018;46(9):991–997.
106. Sananes N, Gabriele V, Weingertner AS, et al. Evaluation of long-term neurodevelopment in twin-twin transfusion syndrome after laser therapy. *Prenat Diagn*. 2016;36:1139–1145.
107. van Klink JMM, Koopman HM, Oepkes D, et al. Long-term neurodevelopmental outcome after intrauterine transfusion for fetal anemia. *Early Hum Dev*. 2011;87:589–593.
108. Li X, Morokuma S, Fukushima K, et al. Prognosis and long-term neurodevelopmental outcome in conservatively treated twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome. *BMC Pregnancy and Childbirth*. 2011;11:32.
109. Rossi A, D'Addario V. Survival outcomes of twin-twin transfusion syndrome stage I: a systematic review of literature. *Am J Perinatol*. 2013;30:5–010.
110. Roberts D, Neilson JP, Kilby MD, et al. Interventions for the treatment of twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014:CD002073.
111. Saunders NJ, Snijders RJM, Nicolaides KH. Therapeutic amniocentesis in twin-twin transfusion syndrome appearing in the second trimester of pregnancy. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1992;166:820–824.
112. Mari G, Roberts A, Detti L, et al. Perinatal morbidity and mortality rates in severe twin-twin transfusion syndrome: results of the International Amnioreduction Registry. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2001;185:708–715.
113. Dickinson JE, Evans SF. Obstetric and perinatal outcomes from The Australian and New Zealand Twin-Twin Transfusion Syndrome Registry. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2000;182:706–712.
114. Moise KJ, Dorman K, Lamvu G, et al. A randomized trial of amnioreduction versus septostomy in the treatment of twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;193:701–707.
115. Sago H, Ishii K, Sugibayashi R, et al. Fetoscopic laser photocoagulation for twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *J Obstet Gynaecol Res*. 2018;44:831–839.
116. Lewi L, Jani J, Cannie M, et al. Intertwin anastomoses in monochorionic placentas after fetoscopic laser coagulation for twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome: is there more than meets the eye? *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2006;194:790–795.
117. Chmait RH, Khan A, Benirschke K, et al. Perinatal survival following preferential sequential selective laser surgery for twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2010;23:10–16.
118. Akkermans J, Peeters SH, Klumper FJ, et al. Is the sequential laser technique for twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome truly superior to the standard selective technique? A meta-analysis. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2015;37:251–258.
119. Chmait RH, Kontopoulos EV, Korst LM, et al. Stage-based outcomes of 682 consecutive cases of twin-twin transfusion syndrome treated with laser surgery: the US fetus experience. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2011;204:393 e1–6.
120. Slaghekke F, Oepkes D. Solomon technique versus selective coagulation for twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *Twin Res Hum Genet*. 2016;19:217–221.
121. van Klink JM, Slaghekke F, Balestriero MA, et al. Neurodevelopmental outcome at 2 years in twin-twin transfusion syndrome survivors randomized for the Solomon trial. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;214:113.e1–e7.
122. Slaghekke F, Lopriore E, Lewi L, et al. Fetoscopic laser coagulation of the vascular equator versus selective coagulation for twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome: an open-label randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2014;383:2144–2151.
123. Senat M-V, Deprest J, Boulvain M, et al. Endoscopic laser surgery versus serial amnioreduction for severe twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:136–144.
124. Salomon LJ, Ortqvist L, Aegerter P, et al. Long-term developmental follow-up of infants who participated in a randomized clinical trial of amniocentesis vs laser photocoagulation for the treatment of twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;203:444.e1–e7.
125. Emery SP, Hasley SK, Catov JM, et al. North American Fetal Therapy Network: intervention vs expectant management for stage I twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;215.346.e1–e7.
126. Akkermans J, Peeters SH, Klumper FJ, et al. Twenty-five years of fetoscopic laser coagulation in twin-twin transfusion syndrome: a systematic review. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2015;38:241–253.
127. Sananes N, Javadian P, Schwach Werneck Britto I, et al. Technical aspects and effectiveness of percutaneous fetal therapies for large sacrococcygeal teratomas: cohort study and literature review. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;47:712–719.
128. Chmait RH, Chon AH, Schrager SM, et al. Neonatal cerebral lesions predict 2-year neurodevelopmental impairment in children treated with laser surgery for twin-twin transfusion syndrome. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017:1–5.
129. Husler MR, Wilson RD, Horii SC, et al. When is fetoscopic release of amniotic bands indicated? Review of outcome of cases treated in utero and selection criteria for fetal surgery. *Prenat Diagn*. 2009;29:457–463.
130. Cignini P, Giorlandino C, Padula F, et al. Epidemiology and risk factors of amniotic band syndrome, or ADAM sequence. *J Prenat Med*. 2012;6:59–63.
131. Richter J, Wergeland H, DeKoninck P, et al. Fetoscopic release of an amniotic band with risk of amputation: case report and review of the literature. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2012;31:134–137.
132. Burton DJ, Filly RA. Sonographic diagnosis of the amniotic band syndrome. *American Journal of Roentgenology*. 1991;156:555–558.
133. Neuman J, Calvo-Garcia MA, Kline-Fath BM, et al. Prenatal imaging of amniotic band sequence: utility and role of fetal MRI as an adjunct to prenatal US. *Pediatric Radiology*. 2012;42:544–551.
134. Javadian P, Shamshirsaz AA, Haeri S, et al. Perinatal outcome after fetoscopic release of amniotic bands: a single-center experience and review of the literature. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;42:449–455.
135. Derderian SC, Iqbal CW, Goldstein R, et al. Fetoscopic approach to amniotic band syndrome. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2014;49:359–362.
136. Ting YH, Lao TT, Law KM, et al. Pseudoamniotic band syndrome after in utero intervention for twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome: case reports and literature review. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2016;40:67–72.
137. Danzer E, Hedrick HL. Neurodevelopmental and neurofunctional outcomes in children with congenital diaphragmatic hernia. *Early Hum Dev*. 2011;87:625–632.
138. Burgos CM, Frenckner B, Luco M, et al. Right versus left congenital diaphragmatic hernia - What's the difference? *J Pediatr Surg*. 2017.
139. Dingeldein M. Congenital diaphragmatic hernia: management & outcomes. *Adv Pediatr*. 2018;65:241–247.
140. Barriere F, Michel F, Loundou AD, et al. One-year outcome for congenital diaphragmatic hernia: results from the French National Register. *J Pediatr*. 2018;193:204–210.
141. Wynn J, Krishnan U, Aspelund G, et al. Outcomes of congenital diaphragmatic hernia in the modern era of management. *J Pediatr*. 2013;163:114–119.e1.
142. Harrison MR, Adzick NS, Flake AW, et al. Correction of congenital diaphragmatic hernia in utero: VI. Hard-earned lessons. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1993;28:1411–1417; discussion 1417-8.
143. Esteve C, Toubas F, Gaudiche O, et al. Bilan de cinq années de chirurgie expérimentale in utero pour la réparation des hernies diaphragmatiques. *Annales Françaises d'Anesthésie et de Réanimation*. 1992;11:193–200.
144. Harrison MR, Adzick NS, Bullard KM, et al. Correction of congenital diaphragmatic hernia in utero VII: a prospective trial. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1997;32:1637–1642.

145. Wilson JM, DiFiore JW, Peters CA. Experimental fetal tracheal ligation prevents the pulmonary hypoplasia associated with fetal nephrectomy: possible application for congenital diaphragmatic hernia. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1993;28:1433–1439; discussion 1439-40.
146. Alcorn D, Adamson TM, Lambert TF, et al. Morphological effects of chronic tracheal ligation and drainage in the fetal lamb lung. *J Anat*. 1977;123:649–660.
147. Bealer JF, Skarsgard ED, Hedrick MH, et al. The 'PLUG' odyssey: adventures in experimental fetal tracheal occlusion. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1995;30:361–364; discussion 364-5.
148. Hedrick MH, Estes JM, Sullivan KM, et al. Plug the lung until it grows (PLUG): a new method to treat congenital diaphragmatic hernia in utero. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1994;29:612–617.
149. Russo FM, De Coppi P, Allegaert K, et al. Current and future antenatal management of isolated congenital diaphragmatic hernia. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017;22:383–390.
150. Harrison MR, Adzick NS, Flake AW, et al. Correction of congenital diaphragmatic hernia in utero VIII: response of the hypoplastic lung to tracheal occlusion. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1996;31:1339–1348.
151. Harrison MR, Mychaliska GB, Albanese CT, et al. Correction of congenital diaphragmatic hernia in utero IX: fetuses with poor prognosis (liver herniation and low lung-to-head ratio) can be saved by fetoscopic temporary tracheal occlusion. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1998;33:1017–1022; discussion 1022-3.
152. Shue EH, Miniati D, Lee H. Advances in prenatal diagnosis and treatment of congenital diaphragmatic hernia. *Clin Perinatol*. 2012;39:289–300.
153. Jimenez JA, Eixarch E, DeKoninck P, et al. Balloon removal after fetoscopic endoluminal tracheal occlusion for congenital diaphragmatic hernia. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;217:78.e1–78.e11.
154. Jani JC, Nicolaides KH, Gratacós E, et al. Fetal lung-to-head ratio in the prediction of survival in severe left-sided diaphragmatic hernia treated by fetal endoscopic tracheal occlusion (FETO). *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2006;195:1646–1650.
155. Metkus AP, Filly RA, Stringer MD, et al. Sonographic predictors of survival in fetal diaphragmatic hernia. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1996;31:148–151; discussion 151-2.
156. Peralta CFA, Cavoretto P, Csapo B, et al. Assessment of lung area in normal fetuses at 12-32 weeks: lung area and LHR reference intervals. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;26:718–724.
157. Jani J, Nicolaides KH, Keller RL, et al. Observed to expected lung area to head circumference ratio in the prediction of survival in fetuses with isolated diaphragmatic hernia. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2007;30:67–71.
158. Deprest JA, Nicolaides K, Gratacos E. Fetal surgery for congenital diaphragmatic hernia is back from never gone. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2011;29:6–17.
159. Oluyomi-Obi T, Kuret V, Puligandla P, et al. Antenatal predictors of outcome in prenatally diagnosed congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH). *J Pediatr Surg*. 2017;52:881–888.
160. Victoria T, Danzer E, Scott Adzick N. Use of ultrasound and MRI for evaluation of lung volumes in fetuses with isolated left congenital diaphragmatic hernia. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2013;22:30–36.
161. Mayer S, Klaritsch P, Petersen S, et al. The correlation between lung volume and liver herniation measurements by fetal MRI in isolated congenital diaphragmatic hernia: a systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies: fetal MRI in CDH. *Prenat Diagn*. 2011;31:1086–1096.
162. Harrison MR, Keller RL, Hawgood SB, et al. A randomized trial of fetal endoscopic tracheal occlusion for severe fetal congenital diaphragmatic hernia. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:1916–1924.
163. Jani JC, Nicolaides KH, Gratacós E, et al. Severe diaphragmatic hernia treated by fetal endoscopic tracheal occlusion. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2009;34:304–310.
164. Jani J, Valencia C, Cannie M, et al. Tracheal diameter at birth in severe congenital diaphragmatic hernia treated by fetal endoscopic tracheal occlusion. *Prenat Diagn*. 2011;31:699–704.
165. Al-Maary J, Eastwood MP, Russo FM, et al. Fetal tracheal occlusion for severe pulmonary hypoplasia in isolated congenital diaphragmatic hernia: a systematic review and meta-analysis of survival. *Ann Surg*. 2016;264:929–933.
166. Done E, Gratacos E, Nicolaides KH, et al. Predictors of neonatal morbidity in fetuses with severe isolated congenital diaphragmatic hernia undergoing fetoscopic tracheal occlusion. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;42:77–83.
167. Dhillon GS, Maskatia SA, Loar RW, et al. The impact of fetal endoscopic tracheal occlusion in isolated left-sided congenital diaphragmatic hernia on left-sided cardiac dimensions. *Prenat Diagn*. 2018.
168. DeKoninck P, Gratacos E, Van Mieghem T, et al. Results of fetal endoscopic tracheal occlusion for congenital diaphragmatic hernia and the setup of the randomized controlled TOTAL trial. *Early Hum Dev*. 2011;87:619–624.
169. Adzick SN, Zhou CB. Fetal surgery for spina bifida: past, present, future. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2013;22:10–17.
170. Peranteau WH, Adzick NS. Prenatal surgery for myelomeningocele. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;28:111–118.
171. Blumenfeld YJ, Belfort MA. Updates in fetal spina bifida repair. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol*. 2018;30:123–129.
172. Copp AJ, Adzick NS, Chitty LS, et al. Spina bifida. *Nat Rev Dis Primers*. 2015;1:15007.
173. Shaer CM, Chescheir N, Schulkin J. Myelomeningocele: a review of the epidemiology, genetics, risk factors for conception, prenatal diagnosis, and prognosis for affected individuals. *Obstet Gynecol Surv*. 2007;62:471–479.
174. Oakeshott P, Hunt GM. Long-term outcome in open spina bifida. *Br J Gen Pract*. 2003;53:632–636.
175. Roach JW, Short BF, Saltzman HM. Adult consequences of spina bifida: a cohort study. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2011;469:1246–1252.
176. Julia V, Sancho MA, Albert A, et al. Prenatal covering of the spinal cord decreases neurologic sequelae in a myelomeningocele model. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2006;41:1125–1129.
177. Moldenhauer JS, Adzick NS. Fetal surgery for myelomeningocele: after the Management of Myelomeningocele Study (MOMS). *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017;22:360–366.
178. Sutton LN. Fetal surgery for neural tube defects. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 2008;22:175–188.
179. Yoshizawa J, Sbragia L, Paek BW, et al. Fetal surgery for repair of myelomeningocele allows normal development of anal sphincter muscles in sheep. *Pediatr Surg Int*. 2004;20:14–18.
180. Korenromp M, Van Gool J, Bruinese H, et al. Early fetal leg movements in myelomeningocele. *The Lancet*. 1986;327:917–918.
181. Sival DA, Begeer JH, Staal-Schreinemachers AL, et al. Perinatal motor behaviour and neurological outcome in spina bifida aperta. *Early Hum Dev*. 1997;50:27–37.
182. Luthy DA, Wardinsky T, Shurtleff DB, et al. Cesarean section before the onset of labor and subsequent motor function in infants with meningomyelocele diagnosed antenatally. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324:662–666.
183. Ferschl M, Ball R, Lee H, et al. Anesthesia for in utero repair of myelomeningocele. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1211–1223.
184. Bruner JP. Intrauterine surgery in myelomeningocele. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2007;12:471–476.
185. Sutton LN. Improvement in hindbrain herniation demonstrated by serial fetal magnetic resonance imaging following fetal surgery for myelomeningocele. *JAMA*. 1999;282:1826.
186. Adzick NS, Thom EA, Spong CY, et al. A randomized trial of prenatal versus postnatal repair of myelomeningocele. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:993–1004.
187. Farmer DL, Thom EA, Brock 3rd JW, et al. The Management of Myelomeningocele Study: full cohort 30-month pediatric outcomes. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2018;218.256.e1–256.e13.
188. Kabagambe SK, Chen YJ, Vanover MA, et al. New directions in fetal surgery for myelomeningocele. *Childs Nerv Syst*. 2017;33:1185–1190.
189. Danzer E, Thomas NH, Thomas A, et al. Long-term neurofunctional outcome, executive functioning, and behavioral adaptive skills following fetal myelomeningocele surgery. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;214:269.e1–269.e8.
190. Adzick NS. Fetal surgery for myelomeningocele: trials and tribulations. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2012;47:273–281.
191. ACOG Committee opinion no. 550: maternal-fetal surgery for myelomeningocele. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;121:218–219.
192. Peiro JL, Fontecha CG, Ruano R, et al. Single-Access Fetal Endoscopy (SAFE) for myelomeningocele in sheep model I: amniotic carbon dioxide gas approach. *Surg Endosc*. 2013;27:3835–3840.
193. Belfort MA, Whitehead WE, Shamshirsaz AA, et al. Fetoscopic open neural tube defect repair: development and refinement of a two-port, carbon dioxide insufflation technique. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;129:734–743.

194. Pedreira DA, Zanon N, Nishikuni K, et al. Endoscopic surgery for the antenatal treatment of myelomeningocele: the CECAM trial. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2016;214:111.e1–111.e11.
195. Belfort MA, Whitehead WE, Shamshirsaz AA, et al. Fetoscopic repair of meningomyelocele. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;126:881–884.
196. Ziemann M, Fimmers R, Khaleeva A, et al. Partial amniotic carbon dioxide insufflation (PACI) during minimally invasive fetoscopic interventions on fetuses with spina bifida aperta. *Surg Endosc*. 2018;32:3138–3148.
197. Kremer MEB, Althof JF, Derikx JPM, et al. The incidence of associated abnormalities in patients with sacrococcygeal teratoma. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2018.
198. Wilson RD, Hedrick H, Flake AW, et al. Sacrococcygeal teratomas: prenatal surveillance, growth and pregnancy outcome. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2009;25:15–20.
199. Van Mieghem T, Al-Ibrahim A, Deprest J, et al. Minimally invasive therapy for fetal sacrococcygeal teratoma: case series and systematic review of the literature. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2014;43:611–619.
200. Usui N, Kitano Y, Sago H, et al. Outcomes of prenatally diagnosed sacrococcygeal teratomas: the results of a Japanese nationwide survey. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2012;47:441–447.
201. Altman RP, Randolph JG, Lilly JR. Sacrococcygeal teratoma: American Academy of Pediatrics Surgical Section Survey-1973. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1974;9:389–398.
202. Gebb JS, Khalek N, Qumar H, et al. High tumor volume to fetal weight ratio is associated with worse fetal outcomes and increased maternal risk in fetuses with sacrococcygeal teratoma. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2019;45(2):94–101.
203. Peiro JL, Sbragia L, Scorletti F, et al. Management of fetal teratomas. *Pediatr Surg Int*. 2016;32:635–647.
204. Roybal JL, Moldenhauer JS, Khalek N, et al. Early delivery as an alternative management strategy for selected high-risk fetal sacrococcygeal teratomas. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2011;46:1325–1332.
205. Braun T, Brauer M, Fuchs I, et al. Mirror syndrome: a systematic review of fetal associated conditions, maternal presentation and perinatal outcome. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2010;27:191–203.
206. Society for Maternal-Fetal M, Norton ME, Chauhan SP, et al. Society for maternal-fetal medicine (SMFM) clinical guideline #7: nonimmune hydrops fetalis. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;212:127–139.
207. Hirata G, Aoki S, Sakamaki K, et al. Clinical characteristics of mirror syndrome: a comparison of 10 cases of mirror syndrome with non-mirror syndrome fetal hydrops cases. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2016;29:2630–2634.
208. Khalek N, Johnson MP. Management of prenatally diagnosed lung lesions. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2013;22:24–29.
209. David M, Lamas-Pinheiro R, Henriques-Coelho T. Prenatal and postnatal management of congenital pulmonary airway malformation. *Neonatology*. 2016;110:101–115.
210. Gajewska-Knapik K, Impey L. Congenital lung lesions: prenatal diagnosis and intervention. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2015;24:156–159.
211. Fowler DJ, Gould SJ. The pathology of congenital lung lesions. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2015;24:176–182.
212. Adzick NS. Management of fetal lung lesions. *Clin Perinatol*. 2009;36:363–376. x.
213. Parikh DH, Rasiah SV. Congenital lung lesions: postnatal management and outcome. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2015;24:160–167.
214. Ehrenberg-Buchner S, Stapf AM, Berman DR, et al. Fetal lung lesions: can we start to breathe easier? *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2013;208:151.e1–151.e7.
215. Yong PJ, Von Dadelszen P, Carpara D, et al. Prediction of pediatric outcome after prenatal diagnosis and expectant antenatal management of congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2012;31:94–102.
216. Crombleholme TM, Coleman B, Hedrick H, et al. Cystic adenomatoid malformation volume ratio predicts outcome in prenatally diagnosed cystic adenomatoid malformation of the lung. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2002;37:331–338.
217. Mann S, Wilson RD, Bebbington MW, et al. Antenatal diagnosis and management of congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2007;12:477–481.
218. Cass DL, Olutoye OO, Ayres NA, et al. Defining hydrops and indications for open fetal surgery for fetuses with lung masses and vascular tumors. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2012;47:40–45.
219. Harrison MR, Adzick NS, Jennings RW, et al. Antenatal intervention for congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation. *Lancet*. 1990;336:965–967.
220. Baird R, Puligandla PS, Laberge JM. Congenital lung malformations: informing best practice. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2014;23:270–277.
221. Derderian SC, Coleman AM, Jeanty C, et al. Favorable outcomes in high-risk congenital pulmonary airway malformations treated with multiple courses of maternal betamethasone. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2015;50:515–518.
222. Wilson RD, Baxter JK, Johnson MP, et al. Thoracoamniotic shunts: fetal treatment of pleural effusions and congenital cystic adenomatoid malformations. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2004;19:413–420.
223. Peranteau WH, Adzick NS, Boelig MM, et al. Thoracoamniotic shunts for the management of fetal lung lesions and pleural effusions: a single-institution review and predictors of survival in 75 cases. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2015;50:301–305.
224. Mallmann MR, Graham V, Rosing B, et al. Thoracoamniotic shunting for fetal hydrothorax: predictors of intrauterine course and postnatal outcome. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2017;41:58–65.
225. Rodeck CH, Fisk NM, Fraser DI, et al. Long-term in utero drainage of fetal hydrothorax. *N Engl J Med*. 1988;319:1135–1138.
226. Mon RA, Treadwell MC, Berman DR, et al. Outcomes of fetuses with primary hydrothorax that undergo prenatal intervention (prenatal intervention for hydrothorax). *J Surg Res*. 2018;221:121–127.
227. Grethel EJ, Wagner AJ, Clifton MS, et al. Fetal intervention for mass lesions and hydrops improves outcome: a 15-year experience. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2007;42:117–123.
228. Cass DL, Olutoye OO, Cassady CI, et al. EXIT-to-resection for fetuses with large lung masses and persistent mediastinal compression near birth. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2013;48:138–144.
229. Wilson RD. In utero therapy for fetal thoracic abnormalities. *Prenat Diagn*. 2008;28:619–625.
230. Lakhoo K. Fetal counselling for surgical conditions. *Early Hum Dev*. 2012;88:9–13.
231. Wilson RD, Lemerand K, Johnson MP, et al. Reproductive outcomes in subsequent pregnancies after a pregnancy complicated by open maternal-fetal surgery (1996–2007). *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;203:209.e1–209.e6.
232. Cass DL. Impact of prenatal diagnosis and therapy on neonatal surgery. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2011;16:130–138.
233. Aite L, Trucchi A, Nahom A, et al. Antenatal diagnosis of surgically correctable anomalies: effects of repeated consultations on parental anxiety. *J Perinatol*. 2003;23:652–654.
234. Miquel-Verges F, Woods SL, Aucott SW, et al. Prenatal consultation with a neonatologist for congenital anomalies: parental perceptions. *Pediatrics*. 2009;124:e573–e579.
235. Rychik J. Fetal cardiovascular physiology. *Pediatric Cardiology*. 2004;25:201.
236. Morton SU, Brodsky D. Fetal physiology and the transition to extrauterine life. *Clin Perinatol*. 2016;43:395–407.
237. Grant DA, Fauchere JC, Eede KJ, et al. Left ventricular stroke volume in the fetal sheep is limited by extracardiac constraint and arterial pressure. *J Physiol*. 2001;535:231–239.
238. Swanson JR, Sinkin RA. Transition from fetus to newborn. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2015;62:329–343.
239. Yao AC, Moinian M, Lind J. Distribution of blood between infant and placenta after birth. *Lancet*. 1969;2:871–873.
240. Morris JA, Hustead RF, Robinson RG, et al. Measurement of fetoplacental blood volume in the human previable fetus. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1974;118:927–934.
241. Smith GCS, Cameron AD. Estimating human fetal blood volume on the basis of gestational age and fetal abdominal circumference. *BJOG*. 2002;109:721–722.
242. Sankaran VG, Xu J, Orkin SH. Advances in the understanding of haemoglobin switching. *Br J Haematol*. 2010;149:181–194.
243. Colombatti R, Sainati L, Trevisanuto D. Anemia and transfusion in the neonate. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2016;21:2–9.
244. Nicolaides KH, Soothill PW, Clewell WH, et al. Fetal haemoglobin measurement in the assessment of red cell isoimmunisation. *Lancet*. 1988;1:1073–1075.
245. Reverdiau-Moalic P, Delahousse B, Body G, et al. Evolution of blood coagulation activators and inhibitors in the healthy human fetus. *Blood*. 1996;88:900–906.

246. Jaffray J, Young G. Developmental hemostasis: clinical implications from the fetus to the adolescent. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2013;60:1407–1417.

247. Sola-Visner M. Platelets in the neonatal period: developmental differences in platelet production, function, and hemostasis and the potential impact of therapies. *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program*. 2012;2012:506–511.

248. Kaneko M, Tokunaga S, Mukai M, et al. Application of a fetal scalp electrode for continuous fetal heart rate monitoring during an ex utero intrapartum treatment. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2011;46:e37–40.

249. Luks FI, Johnson BD, Papadakis K, et al. Predictive value of monitoring parameters in fetal surgery. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1998;33:1297–1301.

250. Izumi A, Minakami H, Sato I. Fetal heart rate decelerations precede a decrease in fetal oxygen content. *Gynecol Obstet Invest*. 1997;44:26–31.

251. Vasconcelos RP, Brazil Frota Aragão JR, Costa Carvalho FH, et al. Differences in neonatal outcome in fetuses with absent versus reverse end-diastolic flow in umbilical artery doppler. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2010;28:160–166.

252. Gunn TR, Butler J, Gluckman P. Metabolic and hormonal responses to cooling the fetal sheep in utero. *J Dev Physiol*. 1986;8:55–66.

253. Mann DG, Nassr AA, Whitehead WE, et al. Fetal bradycardia associated with maternal hypothermia after fetoscopic repair of neural tube defect. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol*. 2018;51:411–412.

254. Aboud E, Neales K. The effect of maternal hypothermia on the fetal heart rate. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 1999;66:163–164.

255. Teixeira J, Fogliani R, Giannakoulopoulos X, et al. Fetal haemodynamic stress response to invasive procedures. *Lancet*. 1996;347:624.

256. Gitau R, Fisk NM, Teixeira JM, et al. Fetal hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal stress responses to invasive procedures are independent of maternal responses. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2001;86:104–109.

257. Brusseau R, Mizrahi-Arnaud A. Fetal anesthesia and pain management for intrauterine therapy. *Clin Perinatol*. 2013;40:429–442.

258. Van de Velde M, De Buck F. Fetal and maternal analgesia/anesthesia for fetal procedures. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2012;31:201–209.

259. Anand KJ, Hickey PR. Pain and its effects in the human neonate and fetus. *N Engl J Med*. 1987;317:1321–1329.

260. Sekulic S, Gebauer-Bukurov K, Cvijanovic M, et al. Appearance of fetal pain could be associated with maturation of the mesodiencephalic structures. *J Pain Res*. 2016;9:1031–1038.

261. Derbyshire SWG. Locating the beginnings of pain. *Bioethics*. 1999;13:1–31.

262. Anand KJS, Sippell WG, Aynsley-Green A. Randomised trial of fentanyl anaesthesia in preterm babies undergoing surgery: effects on the stress response. *Lancet*. 1987;329:62–66.

263. Afif A, Bouvier R, Buenerd A, et al. Development of the human fetal insular cortex: study of the gyration from 13 to 28 gestational weeks. *Brain Struct Funct*. 2007;212:335–346.

264. Terenghi G, Sundaresan M, Moscoso G, et al. Neuropeptides and a neuronal marker in cutaneous innervation during human foetal development. *J Comp Neurol*. 1993;328:595–603.

265. Konstantinidou AD, Silos-Santiago I, Flaris N, et al. Development of the primary afferent projection in human spinal cord. *J Comp Neurol*. 1995;354:11–12.

266. Lee SJ, Ralston HJ, Drey EA, et al. Fetal pain: a systematic multidisciplinary review of the evidence. *JAMA*. 2005;294:947–954.

267. Hevner RF. Development of connections in the human visual system during fetal mid-gestation: a dil-tracing study. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol*. 2000;59:385–392.

268. Kostovic I, Rakic P. Development of prestriate visual projections in the monkey and human fetal cerebrum revealed by transient cholinesterase staining. *J Neurosci*. 1984;4:25–42.

269. Krmpotić-Nemanić J, Kostović I, Kelović Z, et al. Development of the human fetal auditory cortex: growth of afferent fibres. *Acta Anat (Basel)*. 1983;116:69–73.

270. Torres F, Anderson C. The normal EEG of the human newborn. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 1985;2:89–104.

271. Robinson S, Gregory GA. Fentanyl-air-oxygen anesthesia for ligation of patent ductus arteriosus in preterm infants. *Anesth Analg*. 1981;60. 331–334.

272. Rosen MA. Anesthesia for fetal procedures and surgery. *Yonsei Med J*. 2001;42:669.

273. Van de Velde M, Jani J, De Buck F, et al. Fetal pain perception and pain management. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2006;11:232–236.

274. Glover V, Fisk N. Do fetuses feel pain? We don't know; better to err on the safe side from mid-gestation. *BMJ*. 1996;313:796.

275. Olutoye OO, Olutoye OA. EXIT procedure for fetal neck masses. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2012;24:386–393.

276. Tran KM, Smiley R, Schwartz AJ. Anesthesia for fetal surgery: miles to go before we sleep. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:772–774.

277. Leveque C, Murat I, Toubas F, et al. Fetal neuromuscular blockade with vecuronium bromide: studies during intravascular intrauterine transfusion in isoimmunized pregnancies. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:642–644.

278. Van de Velde M, Van Schoubroeck D, Lewi LE, et al. Remifentanil for fetal immobilization and maternal sedation during fetoscopic surgery: a randomized, double-blind comparison with diazepam. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:251–258; table of contents.

279. Dwyer R, Fee JP, Moore J. Uptake of halothane and isoflurane by mother and baby during caesarean section. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:379–383.

280. Polvi H, Pirhonen J, Erkkola R. Nitrous oxide inhalation: effects on maternal and fetal circulations at term. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1996;87:1045–1048.

281. Biehl DR, Yarnell R, Wade JG, et al. The uptake of ISO-flurane by the foetal lamb in utero: effect on regional blood flow. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1983;30:581–586.

282. Palahniuk RJ, Shnider SM. Maternal and fetal cardiovascular and acid–base changes during halothane and isoflurane anesthesia in the pregnant ewe. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;41:462–471.

283. Boat A, Mahmoud M, Michelfelder EC, et al. Supplementing desflurane with intravenous anesthesia reduces fetal cardiac dysfunction during open fetal surgery. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20:748–756.

284. Constant I, Seeman R, Murat I. Sevoflurane and epileptiform EEG changes. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15:266–274.

285. Shavit CW, Rollins MD, Ferschl MB. Maternal convulsion during high-dose sevoflurane anaesthesia for open foetal surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118:634–635.

286. Hoagland MA, Chatterjee D. Anesthesia for fetal surgery. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27:346–357.

287. Kan RE, Hughes SC, Rosen MA, et al. Intravenous remifentanil: placental transfer, maternal and neonatal effects. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88:1467–1474.

288. Rosen MA, Andreae MH, Cameron AG. Nitroglycerin for fetal surgery: fetoscopy and ex utero intrapartum treatment procedure with malignant hyperthermia precautions. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:698–700.

289. Brambrink AM, Evers AS, Avidan MS, et al. Isoflurane-induced neuroapoptosis in the neonatal rhesus macaque brain. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:834–841.

290. Jevtovic-Todorovic V, Hartman RE, Izumi Y, et al. Early exposure to common anesthetic agents causes widespread neurodegeneration in the developing rat brain and persistent learning deficits. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2003;15:295–296.

291. Raper J, De Biasio JC, Murphy KL, et al. Persistent alteration in behavioural reactivity to a mild social stressor in rhesus monkeys repeatedly exposed to sevoflurane in infancy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:761–767.

292. Alvarado MC, Murphy KL, Baxter MG. Visual recognition memory is impaired in rhesus monkeys repeatedly exposed to sevoflurane in infancy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:517–523.

293. Jevtovic-Todorovic V. Anaesthesia-induced developmental neurotoxicity: reality or fiction? *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:455–457.

294. Sun LS, Li G, Miller TL, et al. Association between a single general anesthesia Exposure before age 36 Months and neurocognitive outcomes in later childhood. *JAMA*. 2016;315:2312–2320.

295. Davidson AJ, Disma N, de Graaff JC, et al. Neurodevelopmental outcome at 2 years of age after general anaesthesia and awake-regional anaesthesia in infancy (GAS): an international multicentre, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2016;387:239–250.

296. *American Society of Anesthesiologists. ASA Response to the FDA Med Watch Warning - December 16, 2016*. http://www.asahq.org/advocacy/fda-and-washington-alerts/washington-alerts/2016/12/asa-response-to-the-fda-med-watch?month=12&category=Washington%20Alert.

297. Sprung J, Flick RP, Wilder RT, et al. Anesthesia for cesarean delivery and learning disabilities in a population-based birth cohort. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:302–310.

298. Olutoye OA, Baker BW, Belfort MA, et al. Food and Drug Administration warning on anesthesia and brain development: implications for obstetric and fetal surgery. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2017.

299. Andropoulos DB. Effect of anesthesia on the developing brain: infant and fetus. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2017.

300. Farrell J, Howell LJ. An overview of surgical techniques, research trials, and future directions of fetal therapy. *J Obstet Gynecol Neonatal Nurs*. 2012;41:419–425.
301. Arens C, Koch C, Veit M, et al. Anesthetic management for percutaneous minimally invasive fetoscopic surgery of spina bifida aperta: a retrospective, descriptive report of clinical experience. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:219–222.
302. Hering R, Hoeft A, Putensen C, et al. Maternal haemodynamics and lung water content during percutaneous fetoscopic interventions under general anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:523–527.
303. Kafal H, Kaya T, Gürsoy S, et al. The role of K+ channels on the inhibitor effect of sevoflurane in pregnant rat myometrium. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:174–178.
304. Sinskey JL, Rollins MD, Whitlock E, et al. Incidence and management of umbilical artery flow abnormalities during open fetal surgery. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2017.
305. Howley L, Wood C, Patel SS, et al. Flow patterns in the ductus arteriosus during open fetal myelomeningocele repair. *Prenat Diagn*. 2015;35:564–570.
306. Rychik J, Cohen D, Tran KM, et al. The role of echocardiography in the intraoperative management of the fetus undergoing myelomeningocele repair. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2015;37:172–178.
307. DiFederico EM, Burlingame JM, Kilpatrick SJ, et al. Pulmonary edema in obstetric patients is rapidly resolved except in the presence of infection or of nitroglycerin tocolysis after open fetal surgery. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1998;179:925–933.
308. Ngan Kee WD, Lee A, Khaw KS, et al. A randomized double-blinded comparison of phenylephrine and ephedrine infusion combinations to maintain blood pressure during spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery: the effects on fetal acid-base status and hemodynamic control. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1295–1302.
309. Habib AS. A Review of the impact of phenylephrine administration on maternal hemodynamics and maternal and neonatal outcomes in women undergoing cesarean delivery under spinal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:377–390.
310. Smith JA, Donepudi RV, Argoti PS, et al. Exploring the pharmacokinetic profile of remifentanil in mid-trimester gestations undergoing fetal intervention procedures. *Front Pharmacol*. 2017;8:11.
311. Jeejeebhoy FM, Zelop CM, Lipman S, et al. Cardiac arrest in pregnancy: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2015;132:1747–1773.
312. Wyckoff MH, Aziz K, Escobedo MB, et al. Part 13: Neonatal resuscitation: 2015 American Heart Association guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*. 2015;132:S543–S560.
313. Mizuki J, Tasaka K, Masumoto N, et al. Magnesium sulfate inhibits oxytocin-induced calcium mobilization in human puerperal myometrial cells: possible involvement of intracellular free magnesium concentration. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1993;169:134–139.
314. Ochsenbein-Kolble N, Krahenmann F, Husler M, et al. Tocolysis for in utero surgery: atosiban performs distinctly better than magnesium sulfate. *Fetal Diagn Ther*. 2017.
315. Smith CV, Rayburn WF, Allen KV, et al. Influence of intravenous fentanyl on fetal biophysical parameters during labor. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 1996;5:89–92.
316. Santolaya-Forgas J, Romero R, Mehendale R. The effect of continuous morphine administration on maternal plasma oxytocin concentration and uterine contractions after open fetal surgery. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2006;19:231–238.
317. Zamora IJ, Ethun CG, Evans LM, et al. Maternal morbidity and reproductive outcomes related to fetal surgery. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2013;48:951–955.
318. Garcia PJ, Olutoye OO, Ivey RT, et al. Case scenario: anesthesia for maternal-fetal surgery: the Ex Utero Intrapartum Therapy (EXIT) procedure. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:1446–1452.
319. Fink RJ, Allen TK, Habib AS. Remifentanil for fetal immobilization and analgesia during the ex utero intrapartum treatment procedure under combined spinal-epidural anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:851–855.
320. George RB, Melnick AH, Rose EC, et al. Case series: combined spinal epidural anesthesia for cesarean delivery and ex utero intrapartum treatment procedure. *Can J Anaesth*. 2007;54:218–222.
321. Ngamprasertwong P, Vinks AA, Boat A. Update in fetal anesthesia for the ex utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT) procedure. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;50:26–40.
322. Hirose S, Farmer DL, Lee H, et al. The ex utero intrapartum treatment procedure: looking back at the EXIT. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2004;39:375–380. discussion 375-80.
323. Tran KM, Maxwell LG, Cohen DE, et al. Quantification of serum fentanyl concentrations from umbilical cord blood during Ex Utero Intrapartum Therapy. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:1265–1267.
324. Rahbar R, Vogel A, Myers LB, et al. Fetal surgery in otolaryngology: a new era in the diagnosis and management of fetal airway obstruction because of advances in prenatal imaging. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2005;131:393.
325. Johnson N, Johnson VA, Fisher J, et al. Fetal monitoring with pulse oximetry. *BJOG*. 1991;98:36–41.
326. Kunisaki SM, Fauza DO, Barnewolt CE, et al. Ex utero intrapartum treatment with placement on extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for fetal thoracic masses. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2007;42:420–425.
327. Abraham RJ, Sau A, Maxwell D, et al. A review of the EXIT (Ex utero Intrapartum Treatment) procedure. *J Obstet Gynaecol*. 2010;30:1–5.
328. Noah MMS, Norton ME, Sandberg P, et al. Short-term maternal outcomes that are associated with the EXIT procedure, as compared with cesarean delivery. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2002;186:773–777.
329. Santore MT, Roybal JL, Flake AW. Prenatal stem cell transplantation and gene therapy. *Clin Perinatol*. 2009;36:451–471. xi.
330. Witt R, MacKenzie TC, Peranteau WH. Fetal stem cell and gene therapy. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017;22:410–414.
331. Vanover M, Wang A, Farmer D. Potential clinical applications of placental stem cells for use in fetal therapy of birth defects. *Placenta*. 2017;59:107–112.
332. Meadow W, Cohen-Cutler S, Spelke B, et al. The prediction and cost of futility in the NICU. *Acta Paediatrica*. 2012;101:397–402.
333. Partridge EA, Davey MG, Hornick MA, et al. An EXTrauterine environment for neonatal development: EXTENDING fetal physiology beyond the womb. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2017;22:404–409.
334. Dickens BM, Cook RJ. Legal and ethical issues in fetal surgery. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2011;115:80–83.
335. Antiel RM, Flake AW, Collura CA, et al. Weighing the social and ethical considerations of maternal-fetal surgery. *Pediatrics*. 2017:140.
336. Danzer E, Johnson MP, Adzick NS. Fetal surgery for myelomeningocele: progress and perspectives: review. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 2012;54:8–14.
337. Chervenak FA, McCullough LB. The ethics of maternal-fetal surgery. *Semin Fetal Neonatal Med*. 2018;23:64–67.
338. Moaddab A, Nassr AA, Belfort MA, et al. Ethical issues in fetal therapy. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol*. 2017;43:58–67.
339. Richardson MG, Litman RS. In utero myelomeningocele repair: baby steps and giant leaps for fetal surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1016–1018.

64

Anesthesia for Orthopedic Surgery

CHRISTOPH H. KINDLER, OLEG V. EVGENOV, LANE C. CRAWFORD,
RAFAEL VAZQUEZ, JASON M. LEWIS, and ALA NOZARI

KEY POINTS

- Degenerative joint disease is the foremost medical condition leading to operations in the United States. With continued population growth and an increasing percentage of older people, a fivefold increase in the demand for hip and knee arthroplasty and spine procedures is projected by 2030.
- Many orthopedic operations including total joint arthroplasties and spine surgeries are classified as intermediate surgical risk, with 30-day cardiac death or myocardial infarction occurring with an incidence of 1% to 5%. Since preoperative cardiac risk evaluation is often inconclusive in high-risk patients with limited mobility, a higher level of monitoring and perioperative troponin measurements should be considered to assess for perioperative cardiac events.
- Comprehensive preoperative geriatric assessment is increasingly used in the perioperative care of older patients who may have multiple comorbid conditions and who have suffered fragility fractures. Prehabilitation programs can be useful in these patients to reduce frailty and improve surgical outcome.
- Fractures of the proximal femur following falls are common in older patients and are associated with high morbidity and mortality. Early surgery (<24 hours) has been associated with reduced pain and length of hospital stay. Patients with significant medical comorbidities that delay surgery for more than 4 days have a higher mortality.
- As compared to the lateral position, beach chair position offers superior surgical exposure and access for most shoulder surgeries, less distortion of muscle anatomy, and less tension on the brachial plexus. Cerebral perfusion pressure can decrease by 15% in sitting patients under general anesthesia, and in patients with cerebrovascular disease detrimental decrease in cerebral blood flow can occur if the systemic pressure is not carefully monitored and maintained. The role of the sitting position on postoperative neurologic outcome remains, however, controversial.
- The most common complications after total hip arthroplasty and total knee arthroplasty are cardiac events, pulmonary embolism, pneumonia and respiratory failure, and infections. Older patients with major comorbidities including cardiac disease, pulmonary disease, and diabetes should have a complete preoperative medical evaluation.
- Cemented fixation of the femoral prosthesis can be complicated by the bone-cement implantation syndrome, resulting in intraoperative hypotension, hypoxia, or even cardiac arrest. Invasive hemodynamic monitoring with an arterial catheter and possibly also a central venous catheter should be considered. Treatment with a potent inotropic agent such as epinephrine may be required. Pulsatile lavage of the femoral canal and drilling a vent hole in the femur before prosthesis insertion can also ameliorate the hemodynamic consequences of this devastating complication.
- Correction of spinal deformities can be associated with large intraoperative blood loss, and measures to minimize blood transfusion should be considered. Deliberate controlled hypotension has been employed but must be used with caution in older adults, those with cardiovascular disease, or those at risk for ischemic complications and postoperative vision loss. Antifibrinolytic agents may be considered to limit blood loss but should be avoided in patients with a history of thromboembolic events, coronary stents, or renal impairment.
- Intraoperative neurophysiologic monitoring is increasingly employed for spine surgeries and is currently recommended for procedures with increased risk for spinal cord injury including correction of spine deformities, resection of intramural tumors, unstable spine trauma, Chiari malformation, spinal cord vascular malformations, as well as those with risk for root damage and in patients with significant risk for compression neuropathies.
- Perioperative visual loss after spine surgery can be caused by anterior or posterior ischemic optic neuropathy, retinal ischemia, cortical blindness, or posterior reversible encephalopathy. Direct pressure on the eye should be avoided and patients should be positioned so that the head is level with or higher than the heart. The patient's head should be maintained in a neutral forward position without significant neck flexion, extension, lateral flexion, or rotation. Staged spine surgery procedures can reduce the risk of perioperative visual loss and should be considered in high-risk patients.

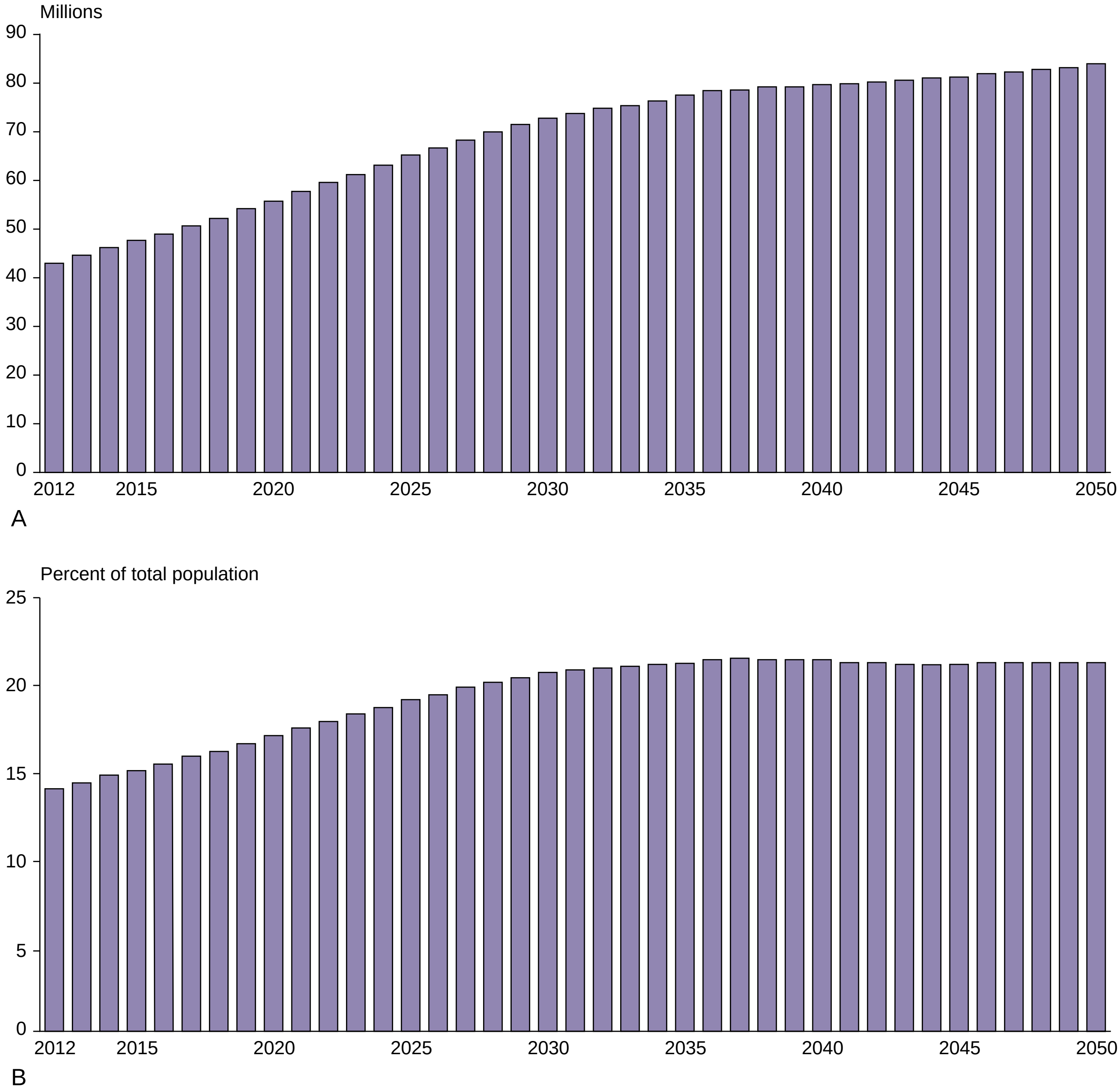


Fig. 64.1 Population aged ≥65 years for the United States 2012 to 2050 in millions (A) and percent of total population (B). (With permission from United States Census Bureau. Ortman JM, Velkoff VA, Hogan H. An aging nation: The older population in the United States; May 2014. https://www.census.gov/library/publications/2014/demo/p25-1140.html.)

Preoperative Evaluation

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND DEMOGRAPHICS OF ORTHOPEDIC SURGERY

Orthopedic operations represent the most frequently performed procedures in U.S. hospitals. Arthroplasty of the knee was the single operation performed most often during U.S. hospital stays in the year 2012, amounting to 700,100 operating room procedures (223 per 100,000 population). Hip replacement surgery with 468,000 operations (149 per 100,000 population) was the fourth most frequent operation and spinal fusion, with 450,900 operations (144 per 100,000 population), the fifth.[1]

These statistics highlight the magnitude of degenerative joint disease, or osteoarthritis (OA), as the foremost medical condition leading to operations in U.S. hospitals. OA is the most common form of arthritis, affecting over 54 million U.S. adults according to 2018 data (78 million U.S. adults are expected to be affected in the year 2045).[2] The lifetime risk of developing OA of the knee is about 46%, and that of the hip is 25% according to the Johnston County Osteoarthritis Project.[3,4]

With age as a prominent risk factor for developing osteoarthritis and with an increasing percentage of elderly people in general, termed population aging (we are expecting 83.7 million US citizens older than 65 years in 2050, almost double the 2012 estimate of 43.1 million for that age group) (Fig. 64.1A and B),[5] the demand for primary total knee arthroplasty is projected to increase by the year 2030 by approximately 5-fold, amounting to 3.4 million surgeries expected to be performed annually in the US (Fig. 64.2A and B).[6,7]

Given the increasing number of patients and volume-based need for orthopedic surgery, every anesthesiologist will sooner

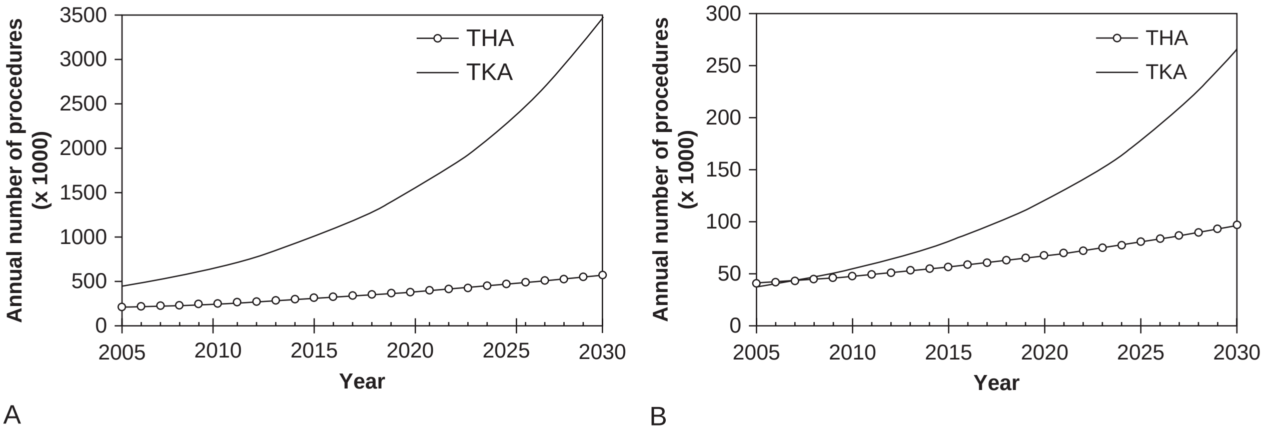


Fig. 64.2 The projected numbers of primary (A) and revision (B) total hip arthroplasties *(THA)* and total knee arthroplasties *(TKA)* in the United States **from 2005 to 2030.** (With permission from Kurtz S, Ong K, Lau E, et al. Projections of primary and revision hip and knee arthroplasty in the United States from 2005 to 2030. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2007;89(4):780–785.)

or later become an orthopedic anesthesiologist. Population aging with the corresponding low support ratio (defined by the number of workers divided by retirees) will also inevitably cause political and financial pressures on public healthcare systems.[8] In particular, financial pressures will certainly intensify and be passed on to orthopedic surgery and anesthesia with its age-related increase in frequency and volume.

It is not surprising that in 2013 the OA-attributable medical costs in the United States were estimated to be $140 billion, with the total medical expenditures and earning losses as high as $304 billion.[9] When conservative therapy including physical activity with muscle strengthening, flexibility and balance exercises, weight control, pain medications, and other personal coping strategies fail to control the symptoms of OA, joint replacement surgery is often the last option for patients suffering from OA to relieve pain and regain mobility.

Using the traditional accounting method, the total cost per hip replacement was recently estimated to be 22,000 to 27,000 USD,[10,11] and for the total cost per knee replacement, 29,500 USD.[11] It is, therefore, not surprising that OA is among the most expensive medical conditions to treat when joint replacement surgery is required. In fact, OA was, following septicemia, the second most expensive health condition treated at U.S. hospitals in 2013. In that year, OA accounted for $16.5 billion, or 4.3% of the combined costs of all U.S. hospitalizations. OA was also the most expensive condition for which privately insured patients were hospitalized, accounting for over $6.2 billion in hospital costs and amounting to 3.6% of the combined costs for all private hospitalizations.[12]

In the past, there was a natural reluctance to perform total joint arthroplasties on very old patients. Older studies reported not only limited evidence of favorable pain and functional outcome of these procedures in patients aged 80 years or older, but also higher rates of complications and mortality.[13-18] Some of these studies were undersized, only used a descriptive or retrospective design, and were also challenged by case-control or prospective community-based studies that failed to report higher complication rates in older age groups.[19-21] The main conclusion of these authors was that with increased life expectancy and elective surgery improving the quality of life, age alone is no longer a factor that affects the outcome of total joint arthroplasty and should, therefore, not be a limitation when deciding who should receive this surgery. Over the past 20 years, arthroplasties in octogenarians and even nonagenarians have become routine procedures in many orthopedic institutions. Nevertheless, a recent study including 7569 patients reported a greater risk of perioperative mortality (relative risk [RR] 3.69; confidence interval [CI], 1.37-9.93), pneumonia, and urinary tract infection in patients 80 years of age or older undergoing aseptic revision total hip arthroplasty (THA).[22] This same study also found general anesthesia compared with epidural, spinal, regional, or monitored anesthesia care to be an independent risk factor for serious adverse events in these patients (RR 1.90; 95% CI, 1.29-2.79).

Considering this enormous financial expenditure combined with the increased age and accompanying comorbidities of the orthopedic patients, anesthesiologists must be highly skilled and apply their utmost vigilance when planning the anesthetic course, including counseling the patient, identifying at-risk patients, and selecting appropriate perioperative anesthetic management and postoperative care.

CARDIOVASCULAR COMORBIDITIES

Coronary Artery Disease

With regard to cardiac risk, surgical interventions can be broadly divided into low-risk, intermediate-risk, and high-risk groups with estimated 30-day cardiac events (cardiac death and myocardial infarction) of less than 1%, 1% to 5%, and more than 5%, respectively.[23] The vast majority of orthopedic operations, such as total joint arthroplasties and spine surgery, are considered and classified as an intermediate surgical risk with 30-day cardiac death or myocardial infarction occurring in 1% to 5% of patients. In fact, most studies have reported a primarily perioperative, acute myocardial infarction rate after hip or knee arthroplasty of 0.3% to 1.8%.[24-26] A recent study defining the intrinsic cardiac risk of a single specified operation rather than groups of operations to improve upon current preoperative cardiac-risk assessment strategies also considered THA as an intermediate intrinsic cardiac risk with an odds ratio (OR) of 0.95 (95% CI, 0.83-1.08) relative to the statistically estimated average procedure.[27] Another interesting study, using

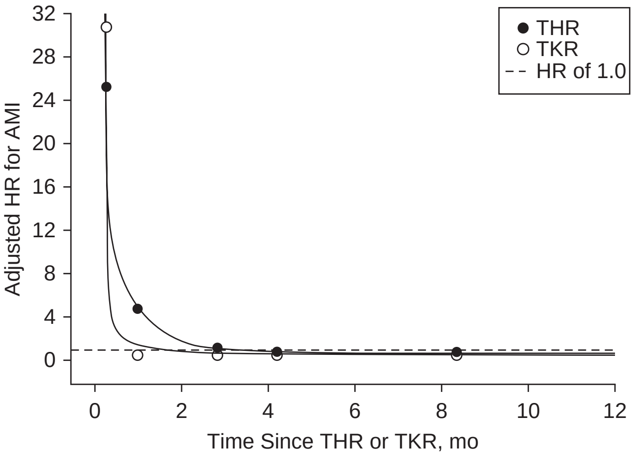


Fig. 64.3 Adjusted hazard ratios *(HR)* for acute myocardial infarction *(AMI)* in patients undergoing total hip replacement *(THR)* and total knee replacement *(TKR)* with respect to time since the operation (mo = months). (With permission from Lalmohamed A, Vestergaard P, Klop C, et al. Timing of acute myocardial infarction in patients undergoing total hip or knee replacement: a nationwide cohort study. *Arch Intern Med.* 2012;172(16):1229–1235.)

matched controls not undergoing surgery, demonstrated an increased risk of acute myocardial infarction during the first 2 weeks after total hip replacement (25-fold) and after total knee replacement (31-fold). The association of an increased cardiac risk and surgery was strongest in patients 80 years of age or older. Interestingly, the risk of acute myocardial infarction decreases significantly after 2 weeks, although it remains elevated during the first 6 weeks for total hip replacement patients (Fig. 64.3).[28]

Over the last 40 years, several indices and scores were developed to better determine perioperative cardiac risk.[29] The first was introduced in 1977 by Lee Goldman.[30] The most widely used of these risk indices today remains the Revised Cardiac Risk Index (RCRI).[31] More recently, a new perioperative risk index known as the Gupta score was proposed using a new model and an up-to-date and simplified approach, which is also available as a risk calculator on the Internet.[32] It was validated on a cohort of more than 400,000 patients of the National Surgical Quality Improvement Program database and uses the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) classification system, dependent functional status, age, abnormal creatinine, and type of surgery as main factors associated with cardiac risk after surgery. In this study, the adjusted OR for myocardial infarction or cardiac arrest was estimated to be 2.22 (95% CI, 1.55-3.17) for orthopedic surgery and 1.24 (95% CI, 0.38-4.00) for spine surgery, compared with an OR of 4.96 for aortic surgery. With a growing geriatric population and an increase in elective noncardiac surgeries in these patients, the necessity of having accurate estimations of the cardiac risk for geriatric patients becomes obvious. For this reason, the new geriatric-sensitive perioperative cardiac risk index (GSCRI), derived solely from geriatric data, was developed in 2017.[33] The GSCRI model contains a total of seven variables, where the main three statistically important variables associated with cardiac risk in the older adult were stroke history, ASA class, and surgical category. Compared to the Gupta score, the GSCRI model considers heart failure, stroke history, and diabetes mellitus status as additional variables. The GSCRI has been shown to be a significantly better predictor of cardiac risk in geriatric patients undergoing noncardiac surgery compared to the Gupta score and RCRI. In the GSCRI, the OR for myocardial infarction or cardiac arrest in orthopedic patients (OR, 2.99; 95% CI, 2.22-4.02) was higher than in the other two indices. The underestimated cardiac risk in geriatric patients resulting from these scores is likely due to estimates that were derived from a younger population.[33]

During the last few years, the focus of cardiac risk has somewhat changed, and perioperative myocardial injury (PMI) has gained increased importance as an additional risk factor for postoperative cardiac events.[34,35] High-sensitivity cardiac troponin assays have been introduced as an important biomarker in routine clinical care. Such novel biomarkers can detect patients at risk beyond established risk scores, and the measurement of these troponins allows for detection of acute cardiomyocyte injury during the perioperative period.[35] PMI is mainly defined by a perioperative increase of absolute or relative troponin values using delta or maximum postoperative values. Despite the current lack of a clear and uniform international definition for PMI, this entity has recently been identified as an important, yet often undetected, complication of noncardiac surgery that is strongly associated with 30-day mortality.[34,36,37] In the most recent study on PMI, Puelacher and coauthors defined PMI as an absolute increase in high-sensitivity cardiac troponin of 14 ng/L or greater from preoperative to postoperative measurements in high-risk patients 65 years or older or in patients 45 years or older with a history of preexisting coronary artery disease, peripheral artery disease, or stroke.[38] In their study population of over 2000 patients, they found an incidence of PMI in orthopedic patients undergoing an intermediate-risk surgical procedure (e.g., total hip or knee replacement) of 20% and for spinal surgery an incidence of PMI of 15% (Table 64.1). With PMI being associated with an overall substantial 30-day mortality as high as 9% and 1-year mortality as high as 22%, recommendations have already been published for screening high-risk patients for PMI.[39] The Canadian Cardiovascular Society Guidelines on perioperative cardiac risk assessment and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery already explicitly recommend obtaining daily troponin measurements for 48 to 72 hours after noncardiac surgery in high-risk patients.[40] These perioperative troponin measurements may be particularly useful in high-risk orthopedic patients, since the preoperative cardiac risk evaluation is often inconclusive due to the limited mobility in these patients.

Other Cardiac Comorbidities

Coronary artery disease is probably the single most important cardiac risk factor in orthopedic patients. However, other cardiac diseases such as valvular heart disease or pulmonary hypertension are also important to detect and assess during the preoperative evaluation. Pulmonary hypertension is particularly important in orthopedic patients. In light of the effect of a potentially increased intrathoracic pressure on right heart diastolic function during certain procedures and positioning, the increased risk of venous thromboembolism and the risk of pulmonary embolism of intramedullary contents including fat, bone debris, and cement possibly exacerbating and worsening preexisting right heart strain need to be considered.

TABLE 64.1 Incidence of Perioperative Myocardial Injury in Patients with Increased Cardiovascular Risk (Patients Aged ≥65 Years or Patients with Preexisting Coronary Artery Disease, Peripheral Artery Disease, or Stroke)

		ESC/ESA SURGICAL RISK		
	Incidence of PMI [95% CI]	**<1%**	**1-5%**	**>5%**
All surgical specialties	16% [14-17] (397/2546)	9% [9-13] (79/833)	17% [19-23] (248/1432)	25% [28-39] (70/281)
Orthopedic	16% [12-20] (50/315)	10% [6-18] (12/115)	20% [15-26] (36/183)	12% [2-36] (2/17)
Trauma	18% [15-22] (83/455)	12% [8-17] (22/188)	23% [19-29] (61/260)	0% [0-41] (0/7)
Spinal	15% [11-19] (55/372)	19% [6-44] (3/16)	15% [11-19] (52/356)	0% [0] (0/0)

CI, confidence interval; *ESA*, European Society of Anaesthesiology; *ESC*, European Society of Cardiology; *PMI*, perioperative myocardial injury.
From Puelacher C, Lurati Buse G, Seeberger D, et al. Perioperative myocardial injury after non-cardiac surgery. *Circulation.* 2018;137:1221–1232.

Pulmonary hypertension is hemodynamically defined as a resting mean pulmonary arterial pressure of 25 mm Hg or greater and is classified into five groups: (1) patients with primary pulmonary arterial hypertension, (2) patients with pulmonary hypertension due to left heart disease, (3) patients with pulmonary hypertension due to chronic lung disease and/or hypoxia, (4) patients with chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension, and (5) patients with unclear, mixed, or multifactorial reasons for pulmonary hypertension.[41] A number of retrospective studies reported the considerable risk of morbidity and mortality in patients with pulmonary hypertension undergoing noncardiac surgery with mortality ranging from 3.5% to 18%.[42,43] Major or emergency surgery, long procedure (more than 3 hours), high ASA class score, concomitant cardiovascular disease, poor exercise tolerance, higher preoperative pulmonary artery pressure, and the diagnosis of primary arterial hypertension have all been associated with adverse outcomes in these patients.[43,44] Ramakrishna and associates retrospectively identified 146 patients with pulmonary hypertension undergoing various noncardiac surgical interventions and reported a mortality rate of 7%. When the authors stratified risk by type of surgery, they found that 17% of patients undergoing low-risk surgical procedures experienced morbidity compared with 48% of those undergoing orthopedic surgery. This suggests that patients with pulmonary hypertension undergoing orthopedic surgery represent an especially vulnerable group.[45] Other authors examined 1359 patients with pulmonary hypertension undergoing THA and 2184 patients with pulmonary hypertension undergoing TKA. In-hospital mortality rates among patients with pulmonary hypertension increased by a factor of 3.72 (95% CI, 2.13-6.39) for the cohort undergoing hip arthroplasty compared with controls and by a factor of 4.55 (95% CI, 2.16-9.39) in patients undergoing TKA.[44] The highest rate of in-hospital mortality with 5% was reported in patients with primary pulmonary hypertension undergoing hip arthroplasty.

A thorough clinical examination of a patient with pulmonary hypertension should focus on the nature of symptom progression, exercise tolerance, signs of right ventricle failure, heart rate, blood pressure, electrocardiogram (ECG), chest radiography and biomarkers (B-type natriuretic peptide and high-sensitivity cardiac troponins). Further investigations may include arterial blood gases, echocardiography with estimation of pulmonary artery pressure, computed tomography (CT), coronary angiography, or even advanced and invasive hemodynamic measurements of pulmonary artery pressures and cardiac output depending on the severity of the disease.[42] Mortality of these surgical procedures can be reduced with careful planning, ideally in tertiary nationally designated pulmonary hypertension centers with close preoperative, intraoperative, and postoperative hemodynamic monitoring to prevent a pulmonary hypertension crisis.

Finally, it is important to also consider the noncardiac risks in the orthopedic population. At the moment, there is a lack of data on how noncardiac risk factors such as preoperative mental status, level of dependency, anemia, extreme low or high body weight, pulmonary risk factors, and immune status interact with the cardiovascular risk factors described earlier and how they impact the outcome of orthopedic surgery. There is a need for more general risk scores that can predict the outcome and mortality from noncardiac causes.[23] Therefore, in geriatric orthopedic patients it might be beneficial to obtain a more comprehensive estimation of a patient's functional reserves during the preoperative evaluation. This would also include noncardiac risk factors, rather than focusing on single-organ function and biomarkers alone. Too many healthcare systems are still organized around single-system illnesses. Today, frailty is increasingly recognized as an age-associated, multidimensional syndrome and a unique domain of health status that can be a valid marker of decreased reserves and of resulting perioperative vulnerability and unfavorable postoperative outcome in older patients.[46,47]

FRAILTY

It has long been known that older patients are at increased risk for postoperative complications, possibly due to reduced physiologic reserves to withstand an operation. Linda Fried was the first to use a validated scoring system to define this vulnerability (or frailty) in a more standardized manner and found that such preoperative characterization of frailty using five domains (weight loss, decreased grip strength, exhaustion, low physical activity, and slowed walking speed) could predict surgical outcomes such as postoperative complications, length of hospital stay, and discharge to a skilled- or assisted-living facility. Her frailty score also augmented other risk-assessment models such as the ASA score, the RCRI, or the Eagle's cardiac risk index.[46] Since the first description of this frailty concept in surgical patients, many additional frailty scores and scales including a vast diversity of variables have been proposed in the literature.

In orthopedic surgery, the Clinical Frailty Scale,[48] the FRAIL scale,[48] the modified Frailty Index (mFI),[49] the Groningen Frailty Indicator (GFI) questionnaire,[50] and the Frailty Phenotype and Frailty Index have all been used.[51] Flexman and associates showed in 52,671 patients that approximately 4% of the spine surgery population is frail and that the mFI independently predicted major postoperative complications (unadjusted odds ratio 1.58), prolonged length of stay (unadjusted odds ratio 1.89), discharge to a higher level of care (unadjusted odds ratio 2.29), and 30-day mortality (unadjusted odds ratio 2.05 for every 0.1 increase in frailty score) in patients undergoing surgery for degenerative spine disease.[49] In another study to assess feasibility and validity of the GFI questionnaire in patients undergoing total hip or knee arthroplasties, the authors reported that 33% of patients with hip OA and 24% of patients with knee OA were frail.[50] All studies examining frailty in elderly orthopedic patients reported a significant association with adverse postoperative outcomes such as surgical complications, hospital length of stay, discharge to post-acute institutional care, and readmission rate within 30 days.[48,51]

It has to be pointed out that frailty scales should be accompanied by a thorough clinical examination and comprehensive geriatric assessment including examining the burden of comorbidity, polypharmacy, physical function, psychological status, nutrition, risk of postoperative delirium, and social support to add further insights into the actual risk and the patient's real expectations.[52-54] Well-crafted comprehensive geriatric assessments can be a more powerful predictor of perioperative risk than the ASA score.[55] A study in older patients with a mean age of 78 years examining the prediction of postoperative morbidity and mortality using a comprehensive geriatric assessment reported a significantly higher risk for postoperative death or post-discharge institutionalization for orthopedic surgery compared with abdominal, thoracic, or other surgeries.[52] As such, the value of a comprehensive geriatric assessment has been particularly recognized as a promising system of care for complex older patients who have suffered fragility fractures.[56]

While frailty is increasingly acknowledged as a marker of functional decline, it remains a potentially modifiable risk factor. As such, preoperative rehabilitation programs have been introduced into clinical practice with the idea to reduce frailty and thereby improve surgical outcome. However, today the results of such prehabilitation programs remain controversial.[57-59]

NEUROLOGIC COMORBIDITIES

Stroke is a feared and devastating complication in the perioperative period and is associated with a high rate of morbidity and mortality.[60,61] Large studies have identified a rate of 0.2% for perioperative stroke following total joint arthroplasty, the incidence doubling to 0.4% in patients aged 75 years or older.[60,62] Mortazavi and associates reported advanced age, a history of cerebrovascular, coronary artery, atherosclerotic or cardiac valvular disease, atrial fibrillation or other intraoperative arrhythmias, urgent surgery, and general anesthesia as independent risk factors for stroke in patients undergoing total joint arthroplasties.[60] Compared with matched control subjects not undergoing surgery, Lalmohamed and associates reported a 4.7-fold increased risk of ischemic stroke and a 4.4-fold increased risk for hemorrhagic stroke during the first 2 weeks after THA. The risk remained significantly elevated for at least 6 weeks for ischemic stroke and 12 weeks for hemorrhagic stroke.[63] Since previous strokes represent a significant risk factor, a thorough evaluation of patients with neurologic diseases undergoing surgery can reduce perioperative morbidity and mortality.[64]

Postoperative delirium is recognized as the most common surgical complication in older adults, occurring in 5% to 50% of older patients after surgery. It is associated with major postoperative complications, including postoperative cognitive dysfunction and even death.[65] The main risk factors for postoperative delirium are well established and include among others age of 65 years or older chronic cognitive decline or dementia, poor vision or hearing, severe illness, and the presence of infection. In order to successfully prevent, predict, and manage postoperative delirium, different delirium risk scores were developed of which two were validated in orthopedic surgical patients.[66] Kalisvaart and associates implemented and validated a medical risk factor model in 603 hip surgery patients aged 70 years or older containing four factors: cognitive function at admission, visual impairment, acute physiologic and chronic health status, and blood urea nitrogen (BUN) to creatinine ratio.[67] One point was assigned for each of the four risk factors present, resulting in three groups: a low-, an intermediate-, and a high-risk group with incidences of delirium of 3.8%, 11.1%, and 37.1%, respectively. Cognitive impairment and age were the most important risk factors for delirium in this population of hip surgery patients. Postoperative delirium was four times as frequent in acute hip fracture patients as in elective hip replacement patients. Another study in elective hip or knee arthroplasty patients suggested the use of the Delirium Elderly At-Risk (DEAR) assessment, which incorporates the following risk factors: age, visual or hearing impairment, dependence in more than one activity of daily living, a low mini-mental state score on admission or a previous episode of postoperative delirium, and benzodiazepine or alcohol abuse.[68] A score of two or more using this tool was associated with a greatly increased risk of delirium. Logistic regression models showed the strongest associations of substance abuse and cognitive impairment with the development of postoperative delirium. In a prospective matched controlled cohort study, Kat and colleagues showed that the risk of dementia or mild cognitive impairment at 30 months follow-up is almost doubled in hip surgery patients aged 70 years or older with postoperative delirium compared with at-risk patients without delirium.[69] In addition, a recent study reported poor performance on a preoperative cognitive screening test in older patients undergoing hip or knee arthroplasties as a predictor of postoperative complications such as the development of postoperative delirium, a longer hospital stay, and a lower likelihood to return home in good health upon hospital discharge.[70] Postoperative delirium is also common after spine surgery in older adults and is also associated with increased length of stay, increased costs, and decreased odds of discharge to home.[71] All these studies clearly show the importance of incorporating the assessment of risk of delirium in the preoperative evaluation of elderly orthopedic patients.

THROMBOEMBOLIC DISEASE

Thromboembolic complications remain one of the leading causes of morbidity and mortality after orthopedic surgery. Antithrombotic guidelines are continuously updated and published by the American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP).[72] A systematic review and meta-analysis including 7 million pooled total joint arthroplasty patients found that cardiovascular disease, previous history of venous thromboembolism, neurologic disease, and ASA score were significant and independent risk factors for venous thromboembolism after joint arthroplasties.[73] Two large studies published after the last update of the ACCP guidelines suggested aspirin to be an effective, safe, convenient, and inexpensive alternative to low-molecular weight heparin or to rivaroxaban for extended thromboprophylaxis after joint arthroplasties.[74,75] In an evolving field with many new anticoagulation drugs available, accurate risk stratification would be helpful for physicians as well as patients. While the widely-used Caprini score risk assessment model for thromboembolic disease in the general surgical population failed to provide clinically useful risk stratification information in total joint arthroplasty patients,[76] a more individualized risk model improved the efficacy of preventing venous thromboembolism in these patients.[77] In spine surgery, venous thromboembolism prophylaxis remains even more controversial. An algorithmic approach to this problem was recently published to establish a more specific venous thromboembolism prophylaxis risk/benefit score for spinal surgery.[78]

With the increased use of percutaneous coronary interventions and other vascular stents, and the widespread use of oral anticoagulant drugs for atrial fibrillation or peripheral vascular disease, anesthesiologists are commonly involved in the perioperative management of patients with antiplatelet or anticoagulation therapy.[79] Moreover, a growing number of antiplatelet and anticoagulation therapies, including the non-vitamin K oral anticoagulants (novel or direct oral anticoagulants),[80-82] with unique pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic properties complicates the perioperative management of these patients. The timing of discontinuation and postoperative restart of antithrombotic or anticoagulant therapy must be carefully planned and should always be evaluated against the risks of bleeding and cardiac events. An interdisciplinary approach to the perioperative coagulation management involving the surgeons, anesthesiologists, cardiologists, and hematologists may sometimes be required. Patient-specific factors (e.g., age, renal function, vascular and cardiac comorbidities) as well as the surgical factors (urgency, type, risk of bleeding) must be carefully evaluated for individualized risk assessment.[79]

For this reason, we provide only a summary of current antiplatelet and anticoagulant drugs (Tables 64.2 and 64.3). In general, arthroplasties are considered as having a moderate risk of bleeding, whereas vertebrospinal surgery is associated with a high risk of bleeding.[81] In a brief and simplified summary for both types of operations, it is recommended that aspirin should be discontinued 5 days before surgery and until 7 days after surgery in patients with a low- to moderate cardiovascular risk (e.g., in patients taking aspirin as a primary prophylaxis). In patients with a high cardiovascular risk (e.g., patients with known coronary artery disease but an acute coronary syndrome >12 months preoperatively, drug-eluting stent >6 months, bare-metal stent >1 month, cardiac bypass surgery >6 weeks), aspirin can be continued during arthroplasty surgery. However, additional antiplatelet drugs should be discontinued according to their pharmacology and the renal function of the patient. For vertebrospinal surgery, it is advised that both drugs of a dual antiplatelet therapy are adequately stopped. Elective orthopedic surgery is not recommended without optimization in patients with a very high cardiovascular risk (acute coronary syndrome <12 months preoperatively, drug-eluting stent <6 months, bare-metal stent <1 month, cardiac bypass surgery <6 weeks, cerebrovascular accident <4 weeks); such surgery should be delayed when possible.[81,83-85]

TABLE 64.2 Summary of the Characteristics of Currently Available Antiplatelet Drugs

	Aspirin	Clopidogrel	Prasugrel	Ticagrelor	Cangrelor	Abciximab	Eptifibatide	Tirofiban
Route of administration	**Oral once daily**	**Oral once daily, (iv under investigation)**	**Oral once daily**	**Oral twice daily**	**iv**	**iv**	**iv**	**iv**
Bioavailability	68%	50%	80%	36%				
Plasma peak level	30-40 min	1 h	30 min	1.5 h	Seconds	Dose dependent	Dose dependent	Dose dependent
Time to plasma steady state		2-8 h	30 min-4 h	30 min-2 h	Seconds	Initial bolus and continuous application	Initial bolus and continuous application 4-6 h	Initial bolus and continuous application 10 min
Plasma half-life	15-30 min	8 h	7 h	7 h	2-5 min	10-15 min	2.5 h	2 h
Plasma protein-binding	Strong	Strong	Strong	Strong				
Time from last dose to offset	7-10 days	7-10 days	7-10 days	5 days	60 min	12 h	2-4 h	2-4 h
Reversibility of platelet inhibition	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Recommended period of discontinuation prior to surgical intervention	0-5 days	7 days	10 days	7 days	1-6 h	48 h	8 h	8 h

iv, intravenous.
From Koenig-Oberhuber V, Filipovic M. New antiplatelet drugs and new oral anticoagulants. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(suppl 2):ii74–ii84.

TABLE 64.3 Summary of the Characteristics of Currently Available Anticoagulant Drugs

	ORAL					PARENTERAL				
	Warfarin	**Dabigatran**	**Apixaban**	**Edoxaban**	**Rivaroxaban**	**UFH (sc/iv)**	**LMWH (sc)**	**Fondaparinux (sc)**	**Argatroban (iv)**	**Bivalirudin (iv)**
Mechanism of action	Vitamin K antagonist	Direct inhibition IIa	Direct inhibition Xa	Direct inhibition Xa	Direct inhibition Xa	Direct inhibition Xa=IIa	Direct inhibition Xa>IIa	Direct inhibition Xa	Direct inhibition IIa	Direct inhibition IIa
Bioavailability	80%	6%	66%	62%	80%	30%	90%	100%	100%	100%
Plasma half-life	20-60 h	12-14 h	8-15 h	10-14 h	7-10 h	1 h	4 h	17 h	50 min	24 min
Duration of action from last dose	48-96 h	48 h	24 h	24 h	24 h	Dose dependant (sc)	Dose dependant	48-96 h	2-4 h	1 h
Peak plasma level	Variable	2 h	2.5-4 h	1-2 h	1-3 h	4 h (sc)	3 h	2 h		0.25-2 h
Elimination	Metabolism	80% renal	25% renal	50% renal	50% renal, 50% hepatic	Reticuloendothelial system	Hepatic metabolism, renal excretion 10%	Renal	65% feces, 22% urine	20% renal
Drug interaction	CYP2C9, CYP3A4, CYP1A2	P-glycoprotein inhibitors	CYP3Y4, P-glycoprotein inhibitors	P-glycoprotein inhibitors	Strong CYP3A4 inhibitors or inducers and P-glycoprotein inhibitors					

iv, intravenous; *LMWH,* low molecular weight heparins; *sc,* subcutaneous; *UFH,* unfractionated heparin.
From Koenig-Oberhuber V, Filipovic M. New antiplatelet drugs and new oral anticoagulants. *Br J Anaesth.* 2016;117(suppl 2):ii74–ii84.

Downloaded for alex arman davidson (arman@amazingstudy.tk) at Florida International University from ClinicalKey.com by Elsevier on October 21, 2019. For personal use only. No other uses without permission. Copyright ©2019. Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

Similar to patients on antiplatelet therapy, the management of patients under direct oral anticoagulant drugs or vitamin K antagonists also requires consideration of the individual risk of thromboembolic events balanced against the bleeding risk of surgery. Appropriate use of direct oral anticoagulants is particularly important with respect to regional anesthesia in orthopedic patients.[86] The recommendations of the timing of the preoperative interruption of such treatment is somewhat different in Europe (Table 64.4A) and the United States (Table 64.4B).[80,82,87-89] More recently, the American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine (ASRA) in conjunction with the European Society of Anaesthesiology convened a Consensus Conference on Regional Anesthesia and Anticoagulation that updated the available data, representing the collective experience of recognized experts in the field of neuraxial anesthesia and anticoagulation.[89] These guidelines provide a comprehensive summary of evidence-based reviews, but emphasize that the decision to perform spinal or epidural anesthesia and the timing of catheter removal in a patient receiving antithrombotic therapy should be made on an individual basis, weighing the risks of spinal hematoma with the benefits of regional anesthesia for each individual.

TABLE 64.4A Timing of Preoperative Interruption of Direct Oral Anticoagulants in Europe

	eGFR (mL/min)	Bleeding Risk Low to Moderate (h)	Bleeding Risk High (h)
Dabigatran	≥50	≥24	48
	30-50	48	72
	<30	≥72	≥120
Factor Xa-inhibitors (rivaroxaban, apixaban, edoxaban)	≥30	≥24	48
	<30	≥72	≥72

eGFR, estimated glomerular filtration rate.

From Yurttas T, Wanner PM, Filipovic M. Perioperative management of antithrombotic therapies. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30(4):466–473.

TABLE 64.4B Timing of Preoperative Interruption of Direct Thrombin Inhibitor (Dabigatran) and Factor Xa Inhibitors (Rivaroxaban, Apixaban) in the United States

	DIRECT THROMBIN INHIBITOR		FACTOR XA INHIBITORS	
Creatinine Clearance (mL/min)	**Bleeding Risk Low**	**Bleeding Risk High**	**Bleeding Risk Low**	**Bleeding Risk High**
>80	≥1 day	≥2-3 days	≥1 day	≥2 days
50-80	≥1-2 days	≥3-4 days		≥2-3 days
30-49		≥4 days		≥3-4 days
15-29	N/A	N/A	≥36 h	≥4 days

N/A, Not applicable.

From Arnold MJ, Beer J. Preoperative evaluation: a time-saving algorithm. *J Fam Pract*. 2016;65(10):702–710.

PULMONARY, RENAL, HEMATOLOGIC, ENDOCRINE DISEASES, AND NUTRITIONAL STATUS

While cardiac diseases may be the most important considerations determining the overall outcome in high-risk orthopedic patients, other comorbidities such as pulmonary, renal, hematologic, endocrine, and nutritional diseases must also be examined during the preoperative evaluation of orthopedic patients. Although many studies examined postoperative pulmonary complications after noncardiothoracic surgery, they mainly focused on vascular, abdominal, or general surgical patients, and few studies focused on orthopedic surgery cases.[90] In one such orthopedic study, patients suffering from chronic obstructive pulmonary disease who underwent total hip replacement were found to have a longer hospital length of stay, were more likely to be discharged to an extended-care facility, and were at a significantly increased risk for any other complication such as mortality, myocardial infarction, pneumonia, and septic shock.[91] Another study in patients undergoing hip or knee replacements also reported a higher postoperative complication rate in patients with obstructive sleep apnea.[92] In addition, since spine surgery in the prone position is accompanied by a decreased respiratory compliance,[93,94] patients after major spine surgery are at increased risk of postoperative pulmonary complications. Therefore, a thorough pulmonary evaluation and physical examination, including a detailed history, and subsequent medical optimization are critical steps in the preoperative management of orthopedic patients.[95] In selected patients, additional investigations such as chest radiography, spirometry, and assessments of arterial blood gases, albumin levels (OR for pulmonary complications of 2.53 with an albumin level <3.5 g/dL), and BUN (OR 4.81 with a BUN level >7.5 mmol/L) should be considered.[96] In patients scheduled for major scoliosis operations, preoperative fluoroscopy or magnetic resonance imaging to evaluate diaphragm and chest wall movements and preoperative pulmonary function testing might be indicated.[97] The risk of postoperative pulmonary complications can also be estimated with easy-to-use risk scores.[98,99] A strong body of evidence suggests that lung expansion therapy, such as incentive spirometry or deep breathing exercises, can reduce postoperative pulmonary risk.

Today, with medical advancements leading to improved survival and function, an increasing number of patients with chronic kidney disease present for elective orthopedic surgery.[100] There is some discrepancy in the literature with respect to outcome of elective orthopedic surgery in patients with end-stage renal disease (ESRD). Two large retrospective studies failed to show an increased incidence of surgical site infections, thromboembolic events, and 90-day mortality in patients with ESRD undergoing hip replacement surgery.[101,102] Other investigators found higher rates of postoperative complications such as cardiovascular, pulmonary, infectious, and thromboembolic events as well as an increased readmission and mortality rate in patients with ESRD who underwent joint replacement surgery.[103,104] The main concerns for the anesthesiologist in these patients include timing of preoperative and postoperative dialysis to avoid hypervolemia, hyperkalemia, and acidosis; cardiovascular assessment and blood pressure control; electrolyte management, anemia, drug metabolism, and the balance between thromboembolic complications and higher bleeding risk, both of which can be increased in patients with ESRD. The pathophysiology of bone disease represents another important factor to consider preoperatively, since both low and high abnormal bone turnover contribute to the poor bone strength in these patients. Poor bone quality could lead to challenging surgical conditions requiring the use of locking plates or screws, cement fixation, and less rigorous postoperative ambulation, all of which potentially contribute to an increased rate of postoperative complications.[100]

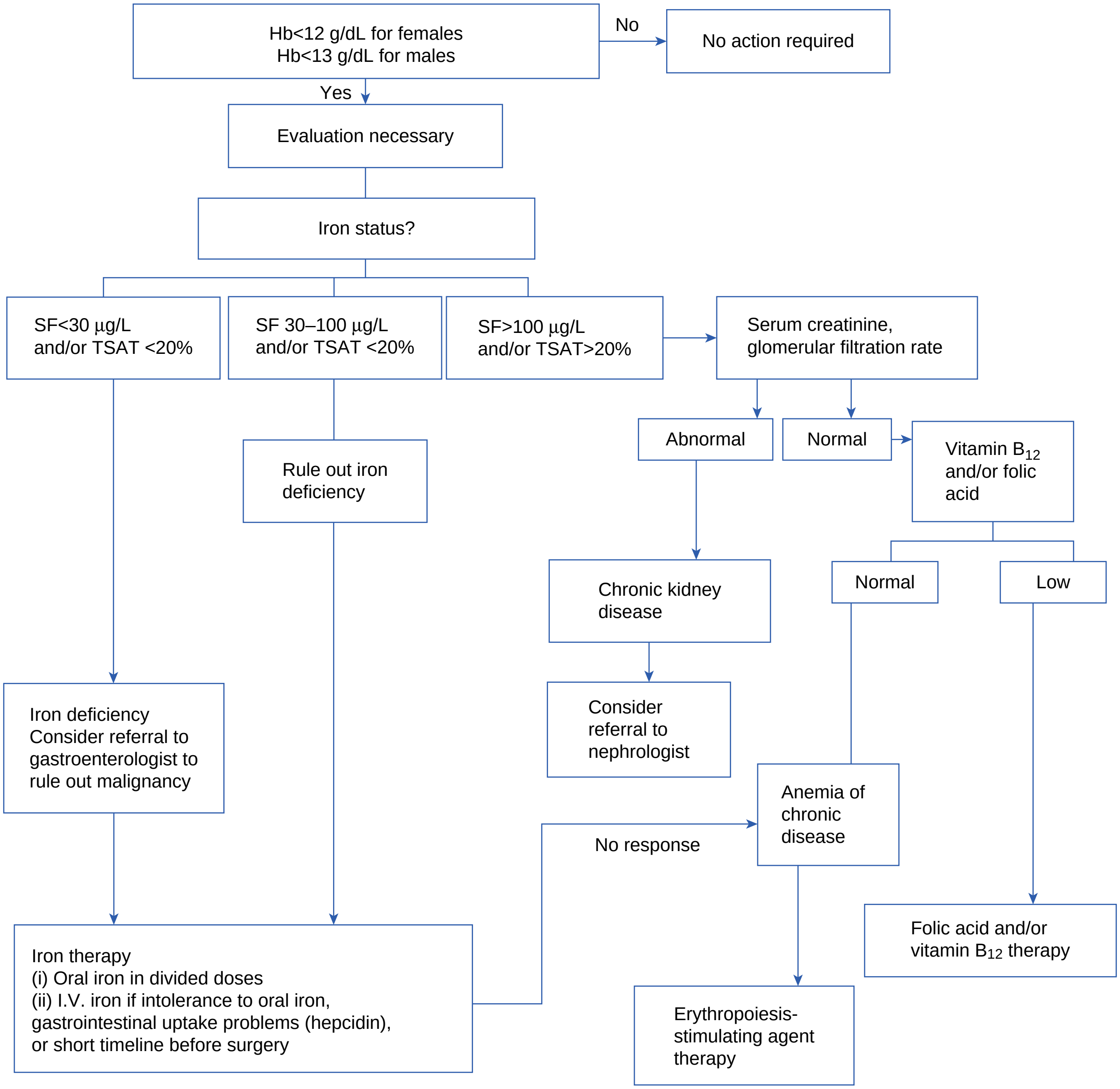

Hb<12 g/dL for females
Hb<13 g/dL for males
No
No action required
Yes
Evaluation necessary
Iron status?
SF<30 µg/L and/or TSAT <20%
SF 30–100 µg/L and/or TSAT <20%
SF>100 µg/L and/or TSAT>20%
Serum creatinine, glomerular filtration rate
Abnormal
Normal
Vitamin B12 and/or folic acid
Rule out iron deficiency
Chronic kidney disease
Normal
Low
Consider referral to nephrologist
Iron deficiency Consider referral to gastroenterologist to rule out malignancy
Anemia of chronic disease
No response
Folic acid and/or vitamin B12 therapy
Iron therapy
(i) Oral iron in divided doses
(ii) I.V. iron if intolerance to oral iron, gastrointestinal uptake problems (hepcidin), or short timeline before surgery
Erythropoiesis-stimulating agent therapy

Fig. 64.4 **Proposed algorithm for the detection, evaluation, and management of preoperative anemia.** *SF,* Serum ferritin; *TSAT, transferrin saturation.* (With permission from Goodnough LT, Maniatis A, Earnshaw P, et al. Detection, evaluation, and management of preoperative anaemia in the elective orthopaedic surgical patient: NATA guidelines. *Br J Anaesth.* 2011;106(1):13–22.)

The overall incidence of anemia in the general population increases with age and is estimated to be 10% to 11% in the older adult aged 65 years or older. Until recently, anemia in older adults was often viewed simply as an abnormal laboratory test value with limited consequences. But today, substantial evidence in the literature reveals that previously undiagnosed anemia is common in elective orthopedic patients, and importantly is associated with increased likelihood of blood transfusion and increased perioperative morbidity and mortality.[105] The preoperative evaluation of anemia should, therefore, include considerations to optimize the endogenous red blood cell mass through targeted stimulation of erythropoiesis and treatment of modifiable underlying disorders.[106] Efforts should be made to diagnose and start appropriate treatment of preoperative anemia and minimize perioperative blood loss. This can be achieved through vigilant adherence to protocols including the measurement of hemoglobin, serum ferritin, transferrin saturation, transferrin receptor index, reticulocyte hemoglobin, vitamin B_{12}, folic acid, serum creatinine, and glomerular filtration rate starting as early as 28 days before surgery (Fig. 64.4).[105,106] Implementation of such anemia prevention and management in elective orthopedic patients can improve patient safety and outcomes. The preoperative administration of iron carboxymaltose in anemic patients undergoing major orthopedic surgery resulted in a significant decrease in postoperative infectious complications from 12.0% to 7.9%. Moreover, hospital length of stay was shortened by 1 day.[107]

In addition to the well-recognized risks of antiplatelet and anticoagulant therapy discussed earlier, some orthopedic patients present with impaired primary hemostasis. Since the management of impaired primary hemostasis is no different in orthopedic surgery than in other surgical fields with

TABLE 64.5 Questionnaire for the Detection of an Increased Risk of Bleeding

1. Have you ever experienced strong nose bleeding without prior reason?
2. Did you ever have—without trauma—"blue spots" (hematomas) or "small bleedings" (on the torso or other unusual regions of the body)?
3. Have your gums ever bled for no apparent reason?
4. How often do you have bleedings or "blue spots" (hematomas): 1 to 2 times a week or more often?
5. Do you have the impression that you have prolonged bleedings after minor wounds (e.g., razor cuts)?
6. Did you have prolonged or severe bleedings after or during operations (e.g., tonsillectomy, appendectomy, or during labor)?
7. Did you ever have prolonged or severe bleedings after a tooth extraction?
8. Did you ever receive blood transfusions or other blood products during an operation? If so, please define the operation(s):
9. Is there a history of bleeding disorders in your family?
10. Do you take analgesic drugs or drugs against rheumatic disease? If so, please specify:
11. Do you take other drugs? If so, please specify:
12. Do you have the impression that you have prolonged menstruation (>7 days) and/or a high frequency of tampon change?

From Koscielny J, Ziemer S, Radtke H, et al. A practical concept for preoperative identification of patients with impaired primary hemostasis. *Clin Appl Thromb Hemost*. 2004;10(3):195–204.

associated bleeding risks, such as neurosurgery, we will only briefly summarize here some relevant ideas. Based on robust evidence in the literature, it is recommended that patients with an increased risk of bleeding complications are identified using a standardized questionnaire and, only if indicated, the measurement of platelet count, prothrombin time, activated partial thromboplastin time, PFA-100 platelet function analyzer test, and von Willebrand factor (Table 64.5).[108,109]

Finally, endocrine and nutritional aspects also have an impact on outcome in orthopedic surgery. For severely obese patients, spine surgery is associated with decreased quality of preoperative and intraoperative imaging, surgical limitations due to inadequate operative exposure, increased anesthetic risk such as esophageal reflux and ventilation-perfusion mismatches, and an increased risk of perioperative complications such as wound infection, increased blood loss, venous thrombosis, pneumonia, and nerve injuries as a result of positioning difficulties.[110,111] Conversely, malnutrition is also associated with increased pulmonary risk, increased risk of surgical site infection, and poor surgical outcomes both in spinal and arthroplastic surgery.[90,112,113] Screening for malnutrition in orthopedic surgery includes the measurement of body mass index, anthropometric measurements such as calf or arm muscle circumference, and triceps skinfold, and the determination of serologic laboratory values such as total lymphocyte count (<1500 cells/mm^3), serum albumin (<3.5 g/dL), prealbumin (<16 mg/dL), transferrin (<200 mg/dL), and zinc levels (<66-95 μg/dL).[112] Various scoring systems have been used to detect malnutrition in orthopedic surgery. The Mini Nutritional Assessment is a simple and effective tool for identifying patients at severe nutritional risk.[113,114] While routine enteral or parenteral nutrition does not reduce perioperative risks, patients with severe malnutrition should undergo nutritional assessment by a dietician prior to surgery. The risks and benefits of delaying elective surgery until the nutritional status has improved should be discussed with the patient. Similarly, delaying elective orthopedic surgery in patients with diabetes mellitus with an increased level of hemoglobin A_{1C} (>7%) until after a better glycemic control has been obtained may reduce risk of surgical wound infection and improve outcome.

COMPLICATIONS AND OUTCOME

A very interesting study in more than 100,000 patients identified the determinants of 30-day postoperative mortality and long-term survival after major surgery exemplified by eight common operations, one being total hip replacement.[115] These authors found in a sample size of 12,184 patients undergoing total hip replacement a 30-day mortality rate of 1% and a mortality rate at any time during an average follow-up time of 8 years of 20%, compared with a 30-day mortality rate of 3% and 36% during the 8-year follow up in the whole study population. After a 10-year follow up, the survival rate in the hip replacement surgery patients was still almost 75%. The main complications in hip replacement surgery were urinary tract infection, deep vein thrombosis (DVT), pneumonia, superficial wound infection, deep wound infection, prosthesis failure, pulmonary embolism, myocardial infarction, and peripheral nerve injury. With the presence of any of these complications, the 30-day mortality rate increased from 1% to 6.4%. The occurrence of a postoperative pneumonia increased the 30-day mortality rate to 16.4% and the 5-year mortality rate to 62.7%, and the occurrence of a perioperative myocardial infarction increased the 30-day mortality rate to 29.2% and the 5-year mortality rate to 52.1%.[115] Given these high numbers of adverse outcomes after the occurrence of complications in total joint arthroplasty patients, every effort must be made during the preoperative evaluation to detect patients at risk, to treat potential underlying conditions, and to optimize the health status of patients. Preoperative medical assessment is an important part of the surgical plan. Identifying and treating modifiable risk factors in the preoperative setting can decrease the risk of surgical complications. A standard protocol that involves a multidisciplinary approach to patients in the preoperative, operative, and postoperative periods may ultimately lead to better outcomes and reduced costs.[116]

Special Considerations for Conditions Leading to Orthopedic Surgery

OSTEOARTHRITIS

OA is a degenerative joint disease characterized by articular cartilage loss and osteophyte formation, most often in the hands, knees, hips, feet, and spine. Symptoms include joint pain, which is typically worse with activity, and decreased range of motion. OA is one of the most common causes of chronic pain and disability among older individuals and is the most common reason that patients present for total knee and hip replacement surgery (USBJI). After age, the most important risk factors for OA include obesity and joint trauma or malalignment.

Although OA has no systemic manifestations, medical comorbidities such as cardiac disease and diabetes are common in these patients, and the combination of OA with one of these chronic conditions is associated with a greater degree of physical activity limitation.[117] Preoperative evaluation should take this into account. Patients with chronic pain related to OA, especially those with chronic opioid use, may benefit from a multimodal perioperative analgesic regimen. Patients who frequently take nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) should be questioned about symptoms of peptic ulcer disease and gastroesophageal reflux. Extra care should be taken when positioning these patients for surgery, being mindful of painful, stiff joints, and existing orthopedic hardware. Severe OA of the cervical spine may affect airway management, whereas severe disease of the thoracic or lumbar spine may make neuraxial techniques more challenging.

RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is an autoimmune inflammatory disease that affects the joints and often other organ systems. It affects approximately 1% of the population in developed nations, is twice as common in women as in men, and most often presents between 60 and 80 years of age.[118] Most patients have detectable autoantibodies such as rheumatoid factor and anticitrullinated protein antibody. Articular manifestations include synovial inflammation and hypertrophy and destruction of cartilage and bone. This presents clinically as painful joint swelling, stiffness, and progressive deformity. In contrast to OA, the pain and stiffness of RA are typically worse after periods of rest and improve with activity. RA most commonly affects the small joints of the hands and feet in a symmetric fashion but may progress to involve larger joints and atypical joints such as the temporomandibular and cricoarytenoid joints. Cervical spine involvement occurs in up to 80% of RA patients. Because RA is a systemic disease, anesthetic considerations can be complex (Table 64.6).

Similar to patients with OA, patients with RA require careful attention to positioning for surgery, especially if cervical spine disease is suspected. Cervical instability is common in RA, affecting up to 61% of RA patients undergoing elective total joint replacement in one study.[119] Instability may result from atlantoaxial or subaxial subluxation, and places the patient at risk for spinal cord compression if the neck is malpositioned (Fig. 64.5). No guidelines exist for preoperative cervical spine evaluation in RA patients. Certainly, patients should be questioned about neck range of motion and any symptoms of pain or radiculopathy. However, significant cervical disease may exist in the absence of symptoms. Radiography of the cervical spine may be considered, and if obtained should include lateral views in flexion and extension, frontal view of the entire cervical spine, and frontal open-mouth odontoid view. If the distance between the posterior border of the odontoid process and the anterior aspect of the posterior arch of C1 is less than 14 mm, a degree of spinal cord compression is likely present (Fig. 64.6).[120]

TABLE 64.6 Anesthetic Considerations for Patients With Rheumatoid Arthritis

Airway	Limited TMJ movement Narrow glottis opening
Cervical spine	Atlantoaxial instability
Cardiac	Pericarditis Pericardial fluid with tamponade physiology
Eyes	Sjögren syndrome
Gastrointestinal	Gastric ulcers secondary to ASA or steroids
Pulmonary	Diffuse interstitial fibrosis
Renal	Renal insufficiency secondary to NSAIDs

ASA, acetylsalicylic acid; *NSAIDs*, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs; *TMJ*, temporomandibular joint

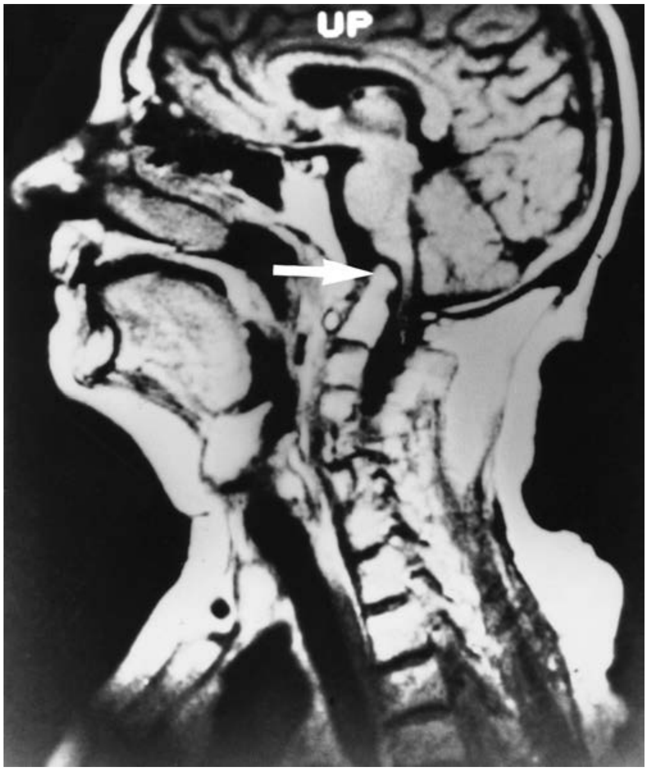


Fig. 64.5 Magnetic resonance image of a patient with advanced rheumatoid arthritis shows invagination of the odontoid process of C2 *(arrow)* through the foramen magnum, compressing the brainstem. Notice the degeneration of C4 and C5, a common problem in rheumatoid arthritis.

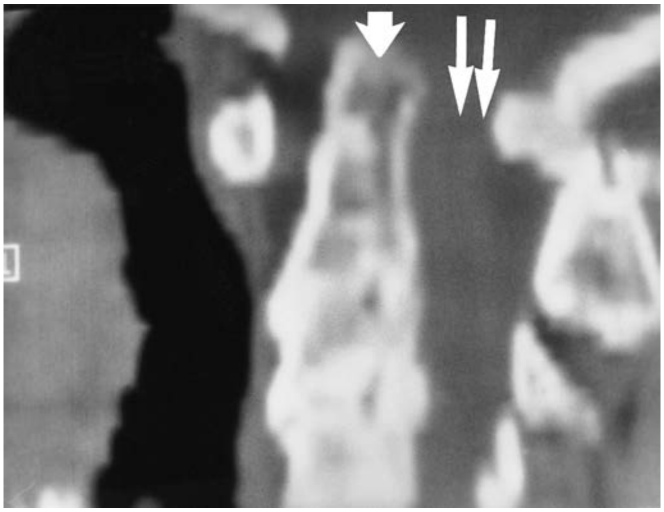


Fig. 64.6 Computed tomography scan of the neck shows moderate subluxation of C1 and C2. The odontoid *(single arrow)* tends to compress the spinal cord *(double arrow)* against the posterior arch of C1, especially during neck flexion.

If cervical instability is suspected, airway management should proceed cautiously with minimal manipulation of the neck. Even in the absence of cervical spine disease, patients with RA may present with challenging airways due to temporomandibular joint disease that limits mouth opening or cricoarytenoid joint stiffness that impedes passage of the endotracheal tube. Fiberoptic intubation or regional techniques with a natural airway may be attractive options for these patients.

Extraarticular manifestations of RA are common and are associated with increased morbidity and mortality, primarily related to cardiovascular disease.[121] The systemic inflammation caused by RA contributes to premature atherosclerosis. As a result, the risk of myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure, and stroke is twice as high in patients with RA compared to individuals without RA.[122] Pericarditis is the most common cardiac manifestation of RA but rarely results in clinically significant disease. Although RA has not been shown to be an independent risk factor for perioperative mortality or adverse cardiovascular events,[123] thorough preoperative cardiovascular risk assessment is warranted in these patients. Pulmonary involvement of RA is also relatively common in the form of pleural effusions and interstitial lung disease. Severity varies from subclinical to, rarely, severe. Preoperative chest radiography or pulmonary function tests may be informative when significant pulmonary disease is suspected. Other extraarticular manifestations of RA include subcutaneous rheumatoid nodules on bony prominences or extensor surfaces, small- to medium-vessel vasculitis, and hematologic abnormalities such as anemia and thrombocytosis.

Treatment for RA focuses on early initiation of disease-modifying antirheumatic drug (DMARD) therapy, with the goal of achieving clinical and radiographic disease remission. In addition to conventional DMARDs such as methotrexate, hydroxychloroquine, sulfasalazine, and leflunomide, many patients benefit from treatment with an ever-growing arsenal of biologic agents that use monoclonal antibodies or receptor proteins to inhibit inflammatory cytokines or cell lines. A notable risk with DMARDs is immunosuppression and possibly impaired wound healing. Current evidence supports continuation of methotrexate perioperatively but is inconclusive about the effect of other agents on perioperative infection and wound complication rates. A conservative approach is to hold biologic agents for at least one dosage cycle prior to surgery and resume once wound healing has progressed.[124] In each case, the benefit of improved immune function and wound healing must be balanced with the risk of disease flare, and it may be appropriate to continue DMARDs perioperatively for some patients. This plan should be developed with input from the patient's rheumatologist and surgeon. Patients taking corticosteroids for RA may require stress-dose steroids perioperatively. They should be questioned about symptoms of gastroesophageal reflux, as should patients who take NSAIDs chronically.

ANKYLOSING SPONDYLITIS

Ankylosing spondylitis is an autoimmune seronegative spondyloarthropathy that typically affects the spine and sacroiliac joints but may involve peripheral joints as well. It affects men disproportionately and most often presents between the ages of 20 to 30 years. Inflammation in affected joints leads to formation of fibrocartilage and ectopic bone, and ultimately fusion of the joint. The classic "bamboo spine" appearance seen radiographically in advanced disease is caused by ossification of the vertebral ligaments. This in combination with osteoporotic compression fractures can result in rigid kyphosis that may require surgical correction (Fig. 64.7).

Despite their rigidity, the spines of patients with advanced ankylosing spondylitis are also quite fragile. Vertebral fractures may occur spontaneously or with minimal trauma; the cervical spine is a common site.[125] Obviously, this has serious implications for intraoperative positioning and airway management. Neck range of motion and preexisting neurologic deficits should be thoroughly evaluated preoperatively, and adequate neck support must be provided at all times to avoid hyperextension. Cervical kyphosis may make direct laryngoscopy difficult or impossible, and temporomandibular joint disease may limit mouth opening. Awake fiberoptic intubation may be the safest option in patients with severe cervical disease, as it allows for spontaneous ventilation as well as neurologic monitoring throughout intubation. Video laryngoscopy has also been used successfully in ankylosing spondylitis patients.[126] The laryngeal mask airway (LMA) may be useful in cases where endotracheal intubation is not required, or as a bridge to intubation if an intubating LMA is used.[127]

The spinal pathology of ankylosing spondylitis may also result in difficulty with neuraxial techniques. Furthermore, the incidence of epidural hematoma after neuraxial anesthesia is higher in ankylosing spondylitis patients than in the general population. This may be related to an increased incidence of traumatic needle placement, the prevalence of NSAID use among ankylosing spondylitis patients, or narrowing of the

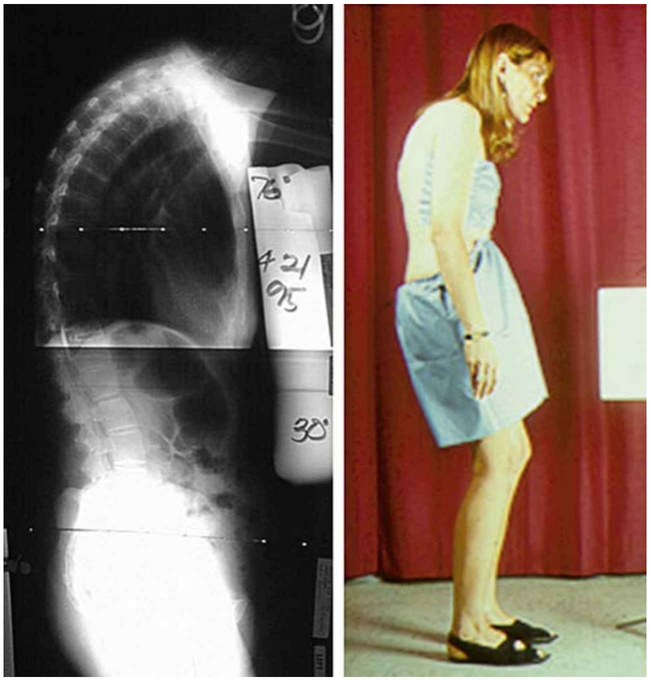


Fig. 64.7 **Patient with ankylosing spondylitis, exhibiting significant kyphosis of the spine.** Note significant kyphosis in the lateral radiograph.

epidural space that makes symptomatic spinal cord compression more likely when a hematoma occurs.[128] If neuraxial anesthesia is indicated, ultrasound or fluoroscopic guidance may facilitate placement. Subsequently, vigilance should be maintained for symptoms of epidural hematoma.

Extraarticular manifestations of ankylosing spondylitis occur more often in patients with severe disease. Inflammation and fibrosis of the ascending aorta and aortic root can lead to aortic insufficiency, and extension to the conduction system may result in heart block or supraventricular arrhythmias. The prevalence of aortic insufficiency and conduction abnormalities in ankylosing spondylitis patients increases with duration of disease, occurring in 3.5% and 2.7%, respectively, after 15 years and 10% and 8.5%, respectively, after 30 years.[129] As in RA, patients with ankylosing spondylitis also have an elevated risk of atherosclerosis.[130] Pulmonary manifestations of ankylosing spondylitis include restrictive lung disease due to kyphosis and chest wall rigidity. Pulmonary fibrosis may be seen in advanced disease. The duration and severity of disease should inform the extent of preoperative cardiopulmonary evaluation, which might include electrocardiography, echocardiography, and/or pulmonary function testing.

ACHONDROPLASIA

Achondroplasia is characterized by disproportionately short stature, lumbar lordosis, large head, midface hypoplasia, short hands, and normal cognitive development. Its incidence is estimated at 1 in 10,000 to 1 in 30,000. Although it is an autosomal-dominant condition, the majority of cases occur as a result of a de novo genetic mutation.[131] Patients with achondroplasia may present for orthopedic surgery as children or adults for correction of associated abnormalities such as tibial bowing and spinal stenosis.

The primary anesthetic challenge in patients with achondroplasia is airway management. Midface hypoplasia with a pharynx that is small in proportion to the tonsils, adenoids, and tongue makes these patients prone to upper airway obstruction and may hinder direct laryngoscopy. A flat nasal bridge and large mandible may make it difficult to obtain an adequate seal for mask ventilation. Hyperextension of the neck should be avoided due to the possibility of foramen magnum stenosis. Video laryngoscopy or fiberoptic intubation should be considered for these patients, and a range of endotracheal tube sizes should be on hand, as many patients require a size smaller than what would be expected based on age. Other anesthetic considerations in patients with achondroplasia include the possibility of difficult neuraxial anesthesia due to spinal deformity or stenosis, and cardiopulmonary sequelae such as restrictive lung disease, central and obstructive sleep apnea, and resultant pulmonary hypertension.[132] Preoperative echocardiogram to assess for pulmonary hypertension should be considered prior to major surgery.

Orthopedic Procedures in Children with Special Conditions

The anesthetic management of children undergoing orthopedic surgery is beyond the scope of this chapter. However, a number of musculoskeletal conditions will require multiple orthopedic surgeries during childhood and may pose special challenges to the anesthesiologist.

JUVENILE IDIOPATHIC ARTHRITIS

Juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA) is the most common rheumatic disease in children. It is characterized by chronic arthritis with onset before the age of 16 and encompasses five distinct subtypes as described below. JIA may be seropositive or seronegative, is twice as common in girls as in boys, and may persist into adulthood.[133]

1. Oligoarticular JIA: Involves fewer than 5 joints. Accounts for at least 50% of JIA. Often has an indolent presentation.
2. Polyarticular JIA: Involves 5 or more joints. Accounts for 25% to 40% of JIA. Usually requires DMARD therapy.
3. Psoriatic JIA: Arthritis with psoriasis.
4. Enthesitis-related JIA: Affects the spine, sacroiliac joints, and points of tendon attachment to bone.
5. Systemic-onset JIA: Presents with daily fever and rash.

As in adult arthritis, special care should be paid to joint range of motion and intraoperative positioning for patients with JIA. The cervical spine and temporomandibular joints may be affected in JIA, especially in the polyarticular subtype, and appropriate precautions should be taken when planning for airway management. In children, awake fiberoptic intubation may not be a feasible option. In this case, fiberoptic intubation may be performed asleep with spontaneous ventilation maintained throughout induction. Common extraarticular manifestations of JIA include growth abnormalities and uveitis. Pericarditis and pleural effusions sometimes occur in systemic-onset JIA. Medical therapies for JIA are similar to those for RA, including conventional DMARDs and biologics, which raise similar considerations for perioperative risks and management.

OSTEOGENESIS IMPERFECTA

Osteogenesis imperfecta encompasses a group of heritable bone dysplasias caused by mutations in collagen-related genes. It occurs with an incidence of 1 in 10,000 and is characterized by bone fragility resulting in deformity and susceptibility to fracture. Secondary features include short stature, blue or gray sclerae, conductive hearing loss, abnormal dentin resulting in weak and discolored teeth, foramen magnum stenosis, cardiac valvular abnormalities, and bleeding diathesis. Although the most severe subtype of osteogenesis imperfecta results in perinatal death, the life expectancy for patients with other subtypes extends well into adulthood.[134]

Patients with osteogenesis imperfecta may require a number of orthopedic surgeries such as fracture fixation, intramedullary rodding for correction of long-bone deformities, spinal fusion for scoliosis, and joint replacement. Anesthetic management may be challenging (Table 64.7). Utmost care must be taken to avoid iatrogenic fracture when positioning these patients for surgery. The area under the blood pressure cuff should be padded or an arterial line placed to minimize the risk of humeral fracture. Tourniquets must be managed

TABLE 64.7 Anesthetic Considerations for Patients With Osteogenesis Imperfecta

Airway	Risk for fractures of the mandible, maxillary surface, and cervical spine
Bleeding	Platelet abnormalities
Cardiac	Congenital and valvular heart disease Cystic degeneration of proximal aorta
Eyes	Exophthalmos Risks associated with prone positioning
Hyperthermia	Malignant hyperthermia, hydration, possible cooling
Positioning	Risk for fractures
Pulmonary	Kyphoscoliosis, restrictive lung disease
Regional anesthesia	Fractures, intraosseous injections

with similar care. Succinylcholine should be avoided in patients with osteogenesis imperfecta because of the risk of fracture upon fasciculation. Airway management must be performed gently with minimal manipulation of the head and neck to avoid cervical, facial, and dental fractures. Fiberoptic intubation may facilitate this. Neuraxial techniques may be considered in patients with normal platelet function but may be challenging due to scoliosis. Care must be taken to avoid needle trauma to bone and intraosseous injection.

Several extraskeletal manifestations of osteogenesis imperfecta are relevant to the anesthesiologist. The same collagen abnormalities that affect bone may also affect the cardiac valves and aorta, resulting in regurgitant lesions, aortic root dilation, and even aortic dissection. Restrictive or obstructive lung disease may be present as a result of kyphoscoliosis or chest wall deformity. In fact, pulmonary complications are the leading cause of death in osteogenesis imperfecta. Preoperative echocardiography or pulmonary function testing should be considered if a murmur or symptoms of cardiopulmonary disease are noted. Patients with osteogenesis imperfecta are at risk for increased surgical bleeding due to platelet dysfunction and vessel fragility. Patients should be evaluated for coagulopathy preoperatively, and if necessary, treated with desmopressin (DDAVP) or platelet transfusion.

A link between osteogenesis imperfecta and malignant hyperthermia (MH) has been suggested in the literature, but the evidence for this association is weak. Intraoperative hyperthermia and metabolic acidosis have been observed in patients with osteogenesis imperfecta, but in most cases, this was not associated with other signs of hypermetabolism and resolved with cooling measures alone. There is a lack of consensus on the use of MH-triggering agents in patients with osteogenesis imperfecta. The most conservative approach is to administer a nontriggering anesthetic, but in cases where this presents a significant challenge (as in an uncooperative child with difficult intravenous access), use of volatile anesthetics may be considered. In all cases, patients should be carefully monitored for hyperthermia and acidosis, and appropriate treatment modalities should be readily available.[135]

CEREBRAL PALSY

Cerebral palsy is the most prevalent cause of persistent motor impairment in children, affecting 1 to 2 of every 1000 live births in developed countries. It is caused by antenatal or perinatal injury to the developing brain and is characterized by nonprogressive abnormalities of movement and posture such as spasticity, ataxia, and dyskinesias. The motor deficit may be mild or severe, isolated, or accompanied by other abnormalities including cognitive impairment, speech disorders, and seizures. Patients with cerebral palsy often require multiple orthopedic surgeries such as soft tissue release and tendon lengthening for contractures, osteotomies for hip deformities, and spinal fusion for scoliosis.

Anesthetic management of patients with cerebral palsy requires consideration of the psychosocial as well as medical aspects of their condition.[136] Communication may be challenging due to cognitive delay, behavioral problems, or speech difficulties, necessitating special accommodations and involvement of parents or caretakers in perioperative interactions. It is important to remember that speech impairment does not necessarily imply cognitive impairment. In patients with seizures, antiepileptic drugs should be continued perioperatively and inquiry made as to the frequency and semiology of seizures. Gastroesophageal reflux is common in cerebral palsy and may be an indication for rapid sequence intubation. Bulbar dysfunction can further contribute to chronic aspiration and feeding difficulties that sometimes requires gastrostomy tube placement. Chronic aspiration, recurrent respiratory infections, and restrictive deficits due to kyphoscoliosis result in significant pulmonary morbidity in these patients. Airway management may be challenging due to cervical kyphosis or dystonia, temporomandibular joint dysfunction, or poor dentition. Patients with cerebral palsy have a lower minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) than normal controls and may be prone to intraoperative hypothermia due to hypothalamic dysfunction. An association between cerebral palsy and latex allergy has been noted, likely related to the multiple surgical procedures many of these patients undergo.[137]

SPINA BIFIDA

Spina bifida is a term that is broadly applied to a diverse group of congenital malformations of the spine and spinal cord. Embryologically, these conditions result from a failure of fusion of the neural tube. Discussion of spina bifida is complicated by a lack of consistency in terminology and classification, but malformations can be broadly divided into open defects with exposed neural tissue such as myelomeningocele and myeloschisis, and closed defects with a skin covering such as meningocele, tethered cord, and split cord. Open defects are usually associated with a neurologic deficit and are almost always repaired perinatally, or with the advent of fetal surgery, prenatally. Closed defects may have an associated deficit or may be asymptomatic and undiagnosed until adulthood. Cutaneous abnormalities such as a sacral dimple, hemangioma, or tuft of hair may raise suspicion for a closed defect, but these are not always present.[138]

Neurologic abnormalities associated with spina bifida include motor and sensory deficits below the level of the defect, Chiari II malformation, hydrocephalus, and neurogenic bladder. Patients with spina bifida may present for orthopedic surgery for correction of congenital or acquired limb deformities such as clubfoot or hip dislocation, spinal fusion for scoliosis, or release of contractures. Patients with tethered cord syndrome may present for cord release as children or adults. As in cerebral palsy, repeated surgical exposures in spina bifida patients result in an increased incidence of latex allergy.

The most significant anesthetic implications of spina bifida are related to neuraxial anesthesia. Whether or not the patient has undergone corrective spinal surgery, anatomic abnormalities in the spine can lead to an increased risk of inadvertent dural puncture, failed block, and neurologic injury. For example, the ligamentum flavum may be malformed or absent, precluding identification of the epidural space with loss-of-resistance technique. The epidural space may be abnormal or nonexistent in patients who have undergone prior surgical repair. Cord tethering can result in low termination of the spinal cord and posterior placement of neural elements within the spinal canal, increasing the risk of neurologic injury with spinal anesthesia or inadvertent dural puncture. Neuraxial techniques should be approached with extreme caution in patients with tethered cord syndrome, if at all.

If neuraxial anesthesia is indicated in a patient with spina bifida, it should only be attempted if there is a thorough understanding of the patient's spinal anatomy. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the spine should be obtained to allow for examination of bony and ligamentous defects, the level of termination of the spinal cord, and the presence of masses such as lipoma or syrinx. Needle placement through surgical scars should be avoided, and epidurals should be placed above the level of the spinal defect. Smaller than usual epidural boluses are recommended, as abnormal anatomy might result in more extensive spread. Failed or incomplete block may result in the need for rescue analgesia or conversion to general anesthesia.[139]

DUCHENNE MUSCULAR DYSTROPHY

Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD) is an X-linked recessive neuromuscular disorder that occurs in 16 per 100,000 live male births in the United States. Mutations in the dystrophin gene result in muscular degeneration that is progressive and ultimately fatal. Weakness usually begins in early childhood with loss of ambulation by age 8 to 12 years, respiratory insufficiency and cardiomyopathy by the early 20s, and death before age 30 due to pulmonary complications or heart failure. However, with advancements in care, the life expectancy for DMD is improving, and some patients may survive into their 30s or 40s. Glucocorticoids are the mainstay of treatment for DMD. Patients with DMD may present for orthopedic surgery to correct lower extremity deformity, scoliosis, or contractures. These patients are also prone to osteoporosis with increased risk of fractures that may require operative fixation.

Patients with DMD have an elevated risk of perioperative cardiac and respiratory decompensation and should undergo a thorough cardiopulmonary evaluation prior to surgery. Depending on the stage of their disease, this may include an electrocardiogram, echocardiogram, and pulmonary function testing. Extubation to noninvasive positive pressure ventilation is recommended for patients with a forced vital capacity (FVC) less than 50% predicted, and essential for those with an FVC less than 30% predicted. Aggressive postoperative pulmonary hygiene should be strongly encouraged.[140]

Use of succinylcholine is strictly contraindicated in patients with DMD because of the risk of acute rhabdomyolysis. Inhaled anesthetics are also best avoided, as they have been implicated in cases of perioperative metabolic reactions ranging from intraoperative hyperthermia and tachycardia to rhabdomyolysis to hyperkalemic arrest. The mechanism of these reactions is thought to be distinct from that of MH.[141] Patients with DMD have both a delayed onset time and prolonged recovery time with nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers, which places them at risk for residual neuromuscular blockade and recurarization. Quantitative monitoring of neuromuscular blockade is recommended to ensure full reversal. Cholinesterase inhibitors are safe and effective for reversal in these patients, and sugammadex has been used successfully as well.[142]

ARTHROGRYPOSIS MULTIPLEX CONGENITA

Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita is characterized by congenital nonprogressive contractures affecting at least two different areas of the body. It occurs with an incidence of about 1 in 4300 to 5100 live births. Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita is not a single disorder, as once thought, but actually encompasses hundreds of conditions with distinct etiologies, both genetic and environmental. A common theme in most of these is decreased fetal movement, which leads to abnormal joint development. Deformity may be limited to the limbs or associated with spine and craniofacial abnormalities. Neurologic dysfunction is present in some cases and portends a less favorable prognosis.[143]

Treatment of arthrogryposis multiplex congenita requires early orthopedic intervention with splinting and surgery to optimize a child's ability to ambulate and perform activities of daily living. The primary anesthetic challenge in arthrogryposis multiplex congenita is airway management, which may be complicated by craniofacial abnormalities such as small mouth opening, high arched palate, or micrognathia, as well as limited cervical range of motion. These patients are at risk of perioperative respiratory complications as a result of restrictive thoracic deformities and increased sensitivity to opioids and neuromuscular blockers. This makes regional and neuraxial anesthesia attractive options, but these techniques may be challenging due to limb contractures, scoliosis, or associated spina bifida.[144]

Two cases of suspected MH have been reported in patients with arthrogryposis multiplex congenita, as well as other cases of perioperative hyperthermia and hypermetabolism without skeletal muscle destruction. As such, succinylcholine should be avoided in these patients, and exposure to volatile anesthetics should be minimized.[135]

Perioperative Management of the Orthopedic Patient

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

In addition to the perioperative cardiovascular, pulmonary, renal, and hepatic considerations described earlier, orthopedic procedures are associated with unique risks and complications related to bone injury, immobilization, and the use of implants and cement material. Bone hemostasis can be difficult, and without antifibrinolytic agents, even primary hip and knee arthroplasties can be associated with considerable bleeding requiring transfusion of blood products. Extensive review of these considerations is beyond the scope of this chapter, but given the rising interest in the literature and its clinical importance, perioperative use of antifibrinolytic agents is summarized below, along with the clinical presentation and management of fat embolism and bone cement implantation syndrome.

Antifibrinolytic Drugs

Blood transfusions are associated with an increased risk of adverse events including mortality, prolonged length of hospitalization, and higher overall costs associated with surgery. Antifibrinolytic agents, such as tranexamic acid (TXA) and epsilon-aminocaproic acid (EACA), bind reversibly to plasminogen by its lysin-binding site, inhibiting its association with fibrin. They also inhibit the proteolytic activity of plasmin. Both TXA and EACA are effective in reducing perioperative blood loss and the need for transfusion and reoperation for bleeding.

Among orthopedic surgeries, the strongest evidence for the use of TXA and EACA is found in multilevel spine surgeries and arthroplasties. Several comprehensive meta-analyses have examined the use of systemic TXA in these procedures. Two meta-analyses studying the use of intravenous TXA in spine surgeries demonstrated significant reductions in intraoperative and postoperative blood loss and allogenic blood transfusion compared with placebo. However, initiation doses (10-20 mg/kg, 100 mg/kg, or 1-2 g) and maintenance doses (1 mg/kg/h, 10 mg/kg/h, and 100 mg/kg/h) were highly variable.[145,146] Similar results with regard to efficacy and safety have been shown with the use of intravenous TXA in TKA and THA. TXA has been shown to reduce total blood loss, postoperative bleeding, and the transfusion rate when given intraoperatively with an intravenous infusion compared to a postoperative administration. A common approach is to administer 10 to 15 mg/kg before the incision, followed by a 1 mg/kg/h infusion during the surgery.[147,148] A recent meta-analysis also demonstrated that TXA resulted in significant reductions in total blood loss and transfusion requirements following total shoulder arthroplasty.[149] The rate of thromboembolic events was not significantly greater when the above dose of TXA was administered in selective patients without contraindications.

Topical administration of TXA, although not a US Food and Drug Administration (FDA)-approved route of administration, has a theoretical safety benefit over intravenous administration. Topical TXA has shown superior efficacy to placebo and similar efficacy (measured as reductions in total blood loss and transfusion rates) to intravenous TXA in TKA and THA. No difference in the rate of thromboembolic events has been demonstrated when comparing topical TXA to placebo or intravenous TXA. The doses of topical TXA used in studies are highly variable and usually range from 1 to 3 g. Thus, a standard topical dose has not yet been established.[150-152]

EACA has also been shown to decrease total blood loss and need for transfusion among patients undergoing spine surgeries.[153] Among TKA and THA patients, however, EACA did not reduce the need for blood transfusion.[154,155] An increased risk of DVT and pulmonary embolism has not been reported following the use of EACA in THA,[154] though sufficient data in TKA or spine surgeries are not yet available. Loading doses (100-150 mg/kg or 5 g) with a continuous infusion ranging from 10 to 15 mg/kg/h during spine surgeries have been used.[153] For THA and TKA, weight-based (12.5-100 mg/kg) and fixed doses (5-10 g) of EACA have been utilized.[154]

Although no increase in the incidence of venous thromboembolism was observed in the above randomized clinical trials, it is important to note that high-risk patients were excluded and none of the studies was adequately powered to detect smaller but clinically relevant differences between treatment groups. Therefore, because of concerns of venous thromboembolism, antifibrinolytic agents are commonly avoided in patients who have any of the following conditions: a history of arterial or venous thromboembolic disease; a recent placement of a cardiac stent; a history of severe ischemic heart disease (NYHA Class III or IV) or myocardial infarction; and history of cerebrovascular accident, renal impairment, or pregnancy. Currently, there is limited data to support the use of EACA in spine surgeries, THA, or TKA, whereas evidence for TXA is more robust. In select patients who are at high risk for transfusion, intravenous or topical TXA should be considered.

Fat Embolism Syndrome

The subclinical form of fat embolism occurs in nearly all patients following long bone or pelvic fractures, as well as after hip or knee replacement surgeries. A clinically significant fat embolism syndrome (FES) is present in up to 30% of these patients.[156,157] An increase in intramedullary pressure and a disruption of the venous sinusoids within the long bones following a fracture or a surgical manipulation such as reaming can result in fat and bone marrow debris entering the venous circulation. The debris lodges in the lung microvasculature, leading to a mechanical obstruction of pulmonary circulation. Free fatty acids released following hydrolysis of fat globules trigger systemic inflammatory response and induce injury to the pulmonary endothelium with an increased capillary leak and increased platelet adhesion with clot formation in the microvasculature. In the presence of intracardiac (patent foramen ovale) or pulmonary shunts, fat particles may also enter the systemic circulation leading to cerebral and cutaneous manifestations.

Symptoms of FES include hypoxemia, respiratory alkalosis, mental status changes, petechial rash (in the conjunctiva, oral mucosa, and skin folds of the neck and axilla), thrombocytopenia, and fat microglobulinemia. The presentation of FES can be gradual, developing between 12 and 72 hours after trauma or surgery. Intraoperatively, FES can also present as a cardiovascular collapse following reaming of long bones, intramedullary insertion of cemented prosthesis, or tourniquet release. Chest radiographs usually show bilateral diffuse infiltrates, particularly in the upper and middle lobes of the lung. MRI of the brain of the patients with significant mental status changes can reveal multiple hyperintensive lesions. Arterial blood gas assessment is useful to determine the degree of hypoxemia.[156] The best preventive management strategy of FES is an early surgical reduction and immobilization of the fracture site. Therapy of FES includes early supportive care with supplemental oxygen and, if necessary, mechanical ventilation to correct hypoxemia, and careful fluid management to prevent worsening of capillary leak. There is currently no evidence supporting the use of steroids, heparin, or dextran in the management of FES.[157] The overall mortality remains high (up to 20%).

Bone-Cement Implantation Syndrome

During arthroplasties, the prosthesis can be attached to the medullary canal of long bones using methyl methacrylate cement or through bone ingrowth. Cemented fixation of the prosthesis can be complicated by bone-cement implantation syndrome (BCIS) that manifests by marked intraoperative hypotension, bronchoconstriction, hypoxia, cardiac arrhythmias, increased pulmonary vascular resistance, right ventricle failure, or even cardiac arrest.[158] Several mechanisms of BCIS have been proposed, including embolization of bone marrow debris to the pulmonary circulation during pressurization of the medullary canal, toxic effects of circulating methyl methacrylate monomer, and release of cytokines and cyclooxygenase products during reaming of the medullary canal, which can induce pulmonary vasoconstriction and formation of microthrombi. Embolization is believed to occur as a result of high intramedullary pressures during cementing. In cemented arthroplasties, intramedullary pressure can peak at 680 mm Hg, compared to less than 100 mm Hg in arthroplasties without the use of cement. The presence of bone marrow debris has, indeed, been documented in the right heart with intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) (Figs. 64.8 and 64.9).[159]

Risk factors for this complication include metastatic disease, a previously not instrumented femoral canal (it is thought that the inner surface of the femur becomes smooth and sclerotic once instrumented and cemented, and thus, offers a less permeable surface), a long-stem prosthesis, a THA for pathologic fractures, preexisting pulmonary hypertension and right ventricle failure, and a large quantity of cement used. The hemodynamic consequences of bone marrow embolization may be attenuated through a vigorous pulsatile lavage of the medullary canal and by drilling distal venting holes within the long bones before prosthesis insertion. However, the venting technique can result in significant cement extravasation. Use of noncemented prosthesis should thus be considered in high-risk patients.[160] These patients should be monitored with an arterial catheter and, possibly, also a central venous catheter. Management of BCIS is mainly supportive and includes adequate fluid resuscitation and ventilatory support. The hypotensive events following BCIS may require treatment with potent inotropic and vasopressor agents such as epinephrine.

ORTHOPEDIC TRAUMA

Pelvic Fractures

Pelvic fractures are among the most complicated orthopedic injuries and are associated with a high mortality rate (up to 32% in open fractures). They are typically a result of blunt force trauma, including motorcycle and motor vehicle accidents (60%-80%). The classification of pelvic trauma into minor, moderate, and severe is based on the pelvic ring injury's anatomic classification (Antero-Posterior Compression; Lateral Compression; Vertical Shear; Combined Mechanisms) and more importantly, the hemodynamic status.[161] Patients suffering from traumatic pelvic fractures often have other associated life-threatening injuries (to the head and neck, thoracoabdominal area, and extremities) that need to be taken into consideration during perioperative management.

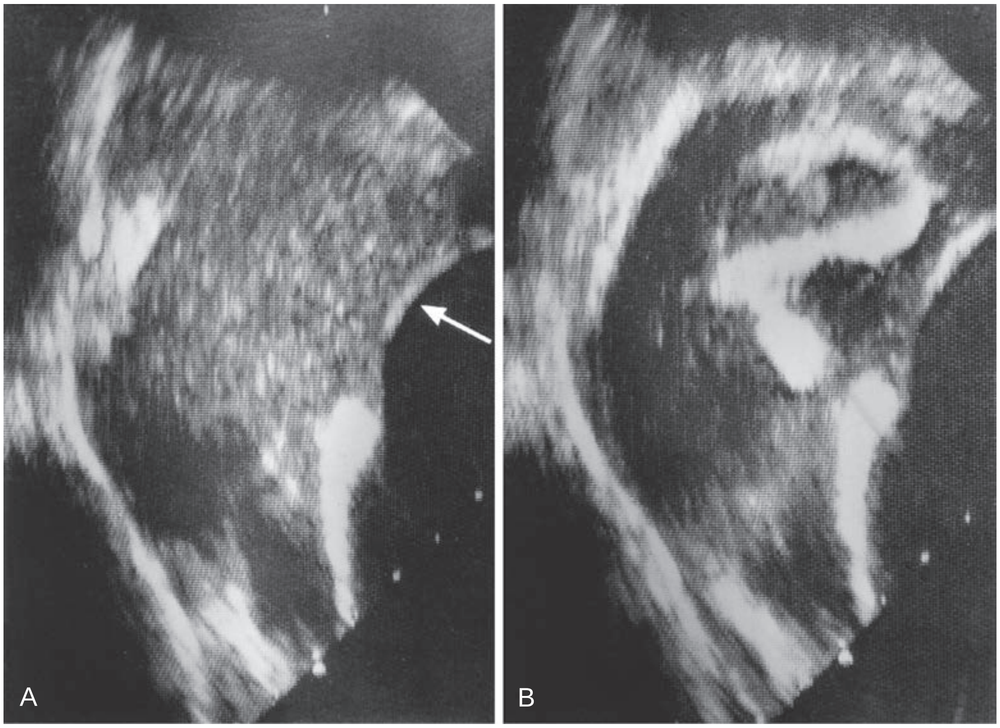


Fig. 64.8 Right atrium during echocardiography. (A) Multiple, small emboli *(arrow)* in the right atrium. (B) Large embolus (7 cm long), which is probably a cast of the femoral vein. (Modified from Christie J, Burnett R, Potts HR, et al. Echocardiography of transatrial embolism during cemented and uncemented hemiarthroplasty of the hip. *J Bone Joint Surg Br*. 1994;76:409–412.)

In addition, pelvic fractures can result in fatal retroperitoneal bleeding.[162] An accompanying blunt chest trauma can produce both cardiac contusion and aortic tear. Preoperative ECG and measurements of cardiac enzymes can help evaluate the extent of myocardial injury. Thorough preoperative neurologic assessment including mental status, motor, and sensory examination is indicated prior to inducing anesthesia. Injuries to the bladder and urethra are also common. Urologic evaluation may be needed before inserting an indwelling catheter. Insertion of chest tubes prior to surgery may also be needed if significant hemothorax or pneumothorax are present. These patients should be considered for a temporary inferior vena cava filter due to a high risk of DVT and pulmonary embolism.

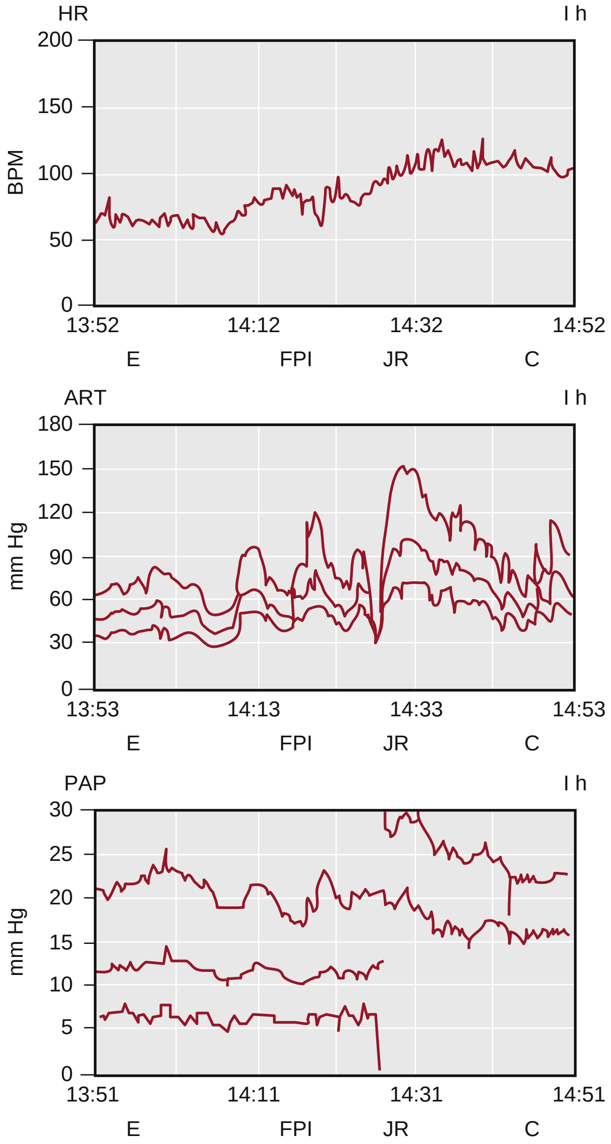


Fig. 64.9 Beats per minute *(BPM)*, intraoperative heart rate *(HR)*, systemic arterial blood pressure *(ART)*, and pulmonary arterial pressure *(PAP)* tracings of a patient undergoing revision total hip arthroplasty. *C,* wound closure; *E,* Induction of epidural anesthesia; *FPI,* insertion of a cemented femoral prosthesis; *JR,* reduction of prosthetic hip joint, producing hypotension with rebound from epinephrine injection. (From Urban MK, Sheppard R, Gordon MA, et al. Right ventricular function during revision total hip arthroplasty. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:1225–1229.)

A multidisciplinary approach that includes trauma and orthopedic surgeons, urologists, interventional radiologists, anesthesiologists, and intensive care unit (ICU) physicians is crucial during the immediate management of these patients and should focus on adequate volume resuscitation, achieving hemostasis, and mitigating tissue injuries.[161] As soon as possible after the primary evaluation and stabilization, a comprehensive radiologic workup should be performed. CT is the gold standard with a sensitivity and specificity for bone fractures close to 100%. Initial treatment of pelvic trauma generally involves damage-control resuscitation and application of noninvasive external pelvic compression to stabilize the pelvic ring and decrease the amount of pelvic hemorrhage. Patients with hemodynamic instability should be considered for pre-peritoneal pelvic packing, especially in hospitals with no angiography service. External pelvic fixation provides rigid temporary pelvic ring stability and serves as an adjunct to early bleeding control in hemodynamically unstable pelvic ring disruptions.[161,162] The optimal time for definitive surgical fixation of pelvic ring injuries is within the first week of trauma.

Anesthetic management of patients with pelvic trauma in the operating room can be very challenging. Because of the extent of the surgery, general endotracheal anesthesia with standard or rapid sequence induction based on clinical presentation is indicated. These patients often need an immediate and aggressive resuscitation and, frequently, angiography and embolization of the injured vasculature.[161,163] The primary goal of the rapid resuscitation is to restore blood volume and maintain perfusion to the vital organs, with continuous evaluation of the efficacy of the fluid replacement. Sensitive laboratory markers of tissue ischemia secondary to the acute traumatic hemorrhage include increased serum lactate and base deficit by arterial blood gas analysis.[161] It is important to restore hemoglobin to a level that provides adequate tissue oxygenation (usually considered more than 7-8 g/dL) prior to inducing anesthesia, and to have sufficient amount of blood products available because of the risk for significant intraoperative blood loss. Because of the large intraoperative blood loss and third-spacing of fluids, invasive hemodynamic monitoring, including an arterial line and central venous catheter, may be necessary. Intravenous access through several large-bore catheters is also critical. Intravenous fluids and blood products should be administered through a fluid warmer to prevent hypothermia. A rapid fluid infuser is commonly used. Cell-scavenging techniques are useful to reduce the requirement for donor packed red blood cells. Placement of an epidural catheter for postoperative pain control can be considered, provided that the patient is not coagulopathic and after the neurovascular integrity of the lower extremities has been confirmed. Patients may be admitted to the ICU postoperatively for monitoring, and are sometimes intubated, especially in the presence of evolving pulmonary injuries (fat embolism, aspiration, or lung contusion), or other complicating organ injuries.

Femur Fractures

Fractures of the proximal femur following mechanical falls are most common in elderly patients and are associated with high morbidity and mortality (1-year mortality of up to 30%).[164] In younger patients, femur fractures including fractures of the femoral shaft and distal femur are usually associated with trauma, such as following motorcycle and motor vehicle accidents. Perioperative complications are often related to preexisting cardiac and pulmonary conditions and include myocardial infarction and dysrhythmias, DVT, pulmonary embolism, and delirium. It has been shown that older patients admitted early into a dedicated orthogeriatric facility have a improved long-term mortality.[165]

Proximal femur fractures occur through the femoral neck, intertrochanteric, or subtrochanteric areas. Displaced femoral neck fractures are usually treated by prosthetic replacement, whereas intertrochanteric or subtrochanteric fractures can be treated with a sliding hip screw and side plate, cephalomedullary nail, or blade plate. Nondisplaced femoral neck fractures are usually managed by closed reduction and percutaneous pinning.[166] Surgical treatment of femoral shaft and distal femur fractures involves application of plates and screws along the femur for rigid internal fixation and intramedullary devices.

Pain and stress following hip fracture can often contribute to myocardial ischemia. Therefore, a thorough preoperative evaluation and preparation of these patients, as outlined earlier in this chapter, is crucial. Early surgery (<24 hours) has been associated with reduced pain and length of hospital stay but not improved function or mortality.[167] However, patients with significant medical comorbidities that delay surgery for more than 4 days have a nearly 2.5 times higher risk of death within 30 days after the surgery compared with patients who are initially considered fit for surgery.[164] Thus, early surgery for hip fractures combined with early mobilization and rehabilitation should be the goals for medically stable patients.

Given the existing evidence that regional anesthesia can be associated with lower morbidity (including reduced risk of DVT, pulmonary embolism and respiratory complications, and a decrease in intraoperative blood loss) and mortality,[168] it is reasonable to consider regional anesthesia in patients with hip fractures.[169] A carefully dosed spinal anesthetic with isobaric bupivacaine often provides stable anesthesia of sufficient duration for the surgical repair. Anesthesia from T12 to S2 is adequate. Use of anticoagulation for prevention of DVT and pulmonary embolism may limit the use of postoperative epidural analgesia. There is evidence that regional nerve blocks including fascia iliaca blocks can effectively reduce pain associated with hip fracture. There is also moderate evidence that nerve blocks may contribute to reduced rates of delirium, and potentially, reduced length of inpatient stay, morbidity, and mortality.[170]

Pulmonary embolization of bone marrow debris and bone cement leading to hypoxemia and right ventricle failure is a major determinant of mortality in these patients.[171] The presence of emboli detected by intraoperative TEE in the right heart and pulmonary artery appears to derive principally from the reaming of the femoral canal and the placement of the femoral stem, particularly during the placement of cemented prostheses (see earlier).[159] Although routine use of intraoperative TEE is not recommended, it may be considered in high-risk patients with femur fractures. Adequate intravenous access and cross-matched blood products should be available, because some of these procedures can involve a large blood loss. Placement of an arterial catheter allows timely and accurate blood pressure monitoring, and serial measurements of arterial blood gases and hemoglobin concentrations. The use of a central venous catheter may also be indicated in high-risk patients. Maintaining body temperature during surgery is particularly important in the older patient population. Medically unstable patients with significant comorbidities often require postoperative management in an ICU setting.

Tibia Fractures

Tibial plateau or proximal tibia fractures are most common in younger trauma patients, as well as elderly patients with degenerative arthritis of the knee. Open reduction internal fixation of tibial plateau fractures involves a reduction under direct visualization of the fracture fragments and application of plates and screws along the tibia for rigid internal fixation. An iliac crest bone graft may also be necessary. Compartment syndrome is one of the most frequent complications of this surgery (10%-20%). Tibial shaft fractures are commonly associated with trauma (95%) and are treated by intramedullary nailing of the tibia. Most nails are interlocked proximally and distally with screws. External fixation of tibia fractures involves placement of percutaneous pins that are clamped to an external frame. This procedure can be used for temporary stabilization of tibia fractures, especially in the setting of periarticular injuries. These fixators also may be useful for salvage of open and/or infected fractures that are unsuitable for internal fixation.[172] Tibia surgeries are frequently performed under general anesthesia, although spinal anesthesia could also be considered. Regional blocks can also be considered for postoperative pain control if compartment syndrome is not a major concern. In fact, evidence suggests that in most patients, regional techniques do not interfere with diagnosis of compartment syndrome.[173]

Upper Extremity Fractures

Trauma patients presenting for surgeries for upper extremity fractures are relatively young and often otherwise healthy. Most of these surgeries are performed on an elective basis with a standard preoperative evaluation. However, repairs of compound fractures and open fractures may necessitate emergency surgery. General or regional anesthesia or their combination can be used. A brachial plexus block via the supraclavicular, infraclavicular, or axillary approach is suitable for surgeries of the distal arm, whereas the interscalene approach is employed for more proximal humerus procedures. A peripheral nerve catheter may be considered for postoperative pain relief. Regional techniques can be safely applied when there is no concern for postoperative compartment syndrome.

Extremity Replantation

Functional recovery remains the overarching goal of extremity replantation. Traumatic amputation disproportionately affects males in a 4:1 ratio. Most upper extremity amputations occur at the level of the digits. Life-threatening injuries, if present, must be prioritized before consideration is given to replantation. The ultimate surgical plan is often deferred until after microscopic examination of the stump and amputated parts. Severe crush or burn injuries massive contamination, multiple injuries in the same digit, prolonged normothermic ischemia, and preservation of amputated parts in nonphysiologic solutions are relative contraindications to proceeding with replantation.

To minimize irreversible tissue injury, hypothermic preservation of the amputated part and measures to reduce the interval between amputation and replantation are routinely practiced. The goal for successful digit replantation is to be completed within 12 hours of warm or 24 hours of cold ischemia. The window is narrower for major upper extremity implantation (6 hours of warm and 12 hours of cold ischemia).[174] Extremity replantation is hence an emergent procedure and patients often present having full stomachs. Substance abuse is common in this population and acute intoxication may raise additional concerns, such as altered anesthetic requirement, diuresis, and hypovolemia or hypothermia. The patient may also present with acute blood loss anemia depending on the extent of the traumatic injury. Regional anesthesia is typically used either alone or in conjunction with general anesthesia to provide postoperative analgesia and most importantly, vasodilation to the vascular anastomosis. Indeed, brachial plexus nerve catheters have been shown to improve the blood flow to the implant through vasodilation.[174-176] As a surrogate marker of tissue perfusion, skin temperature is elevated in patients having brachial plexus blocks.[177] Furthermore, one study demonstrated a 0% reoperation rate for vascular insufficiency in patients having continuous supraclavicular blocks, versus 29% reoperation rate in patients managed with intravenous opioids alone.[178] The surgical team often performs the replantation in the following sequence: bone fixation, tendon repair, nerve repair, vascular anastomosis, and skin closure. Typical donor sites for skin grafts include stomach and thigh. Intravenous heparin and dextran are typically administered during the microvascular portion of the surgery to minimize the risk of thrombosis, which complicates 10% of cases. In theory, vasopressors should be avoided; however, there is little evidence to support this claim clinically. A tourniquet is routinely used to minimize blood loss, but a baseline complete blood count and a blood bank sample are prudent in the setting of any traumatic injury. Reperfusion intervals for tourniquet times of greater than 90 to 120 minutes should be considered. Lactic acidosis from a prolonged tourniquet time may be problematic in patients with underlying lung disease, and maintaining controlled ventilation is advisable in such patients in order to compensate the metabolic acidosis.

Surgical duration is variable. The clinician should meticulously position and monitor all pressure points, given probable length of procedure. Techniques to maintain perioperative normothermia, such as fluid warmers and heating blankets, are employed to prevent vasospasm. After the procedure, it can be helpful to admit the patient into a room with increased ambient temperature to promote vasodilation. In addition, anticoagulant therapy may need to be continued to prevent microthrombi. The peripheral catheters should be monitored regularly by a dedicated team and coagulation status should be checked prior to discontinuing the catheter. Patient controlled analgesia (PCA) is a useful alternative in the initial days following the procedure, but opioid utilization can be reduced by peripheral nerve block or catheter.

UPPER EXTREMITY SURGERIES

Hand Surgery

Hand surgeries are performed by several surgical specialties including general surgeons and orthopedic surgeons, as well as plastic and hand surgeons. These cases vary in complexity from a simple incision and drainage to complete neurovascular replantation of several digits and even the entire hand, as well as urgency from elective surgeries to emergent procedures such as replantation of ischemic digits. Hand procedures can vary widely in length from several minutes to several hours. Less complex procedures are performed at outpatient surgical centers, whereas complex procedures are reserved for tertiary care hospitals. Given the varying nature of hand surgeries, the anesthetic approaches to hand cases also vary from intravenous anesthesia or Bier block to regional anesthesia or general endotracheal anesthesia.

Intravenous regional anesthesia (or Bier block) is a simple technique that involves exsanguinating the arm by wrapping it with an elastic bandage (e.g., Esmarch bandage), inflating an upper arm tourniquet to between 50 and 100 mm Hg above the patient's systolic blood pressure (often to 250 mm Hg), and injecting a short-acting preservative-free local anesthetic (typically lidocaine) into a hand vein. A second tourniquet, distal to the first, may be inflated 15 minutes later with subsequent deflation of the first, to minimize tourniquet pain. The extremity veins distal to the tourniquet are filled with the anesthetic agent, which sets in after approximately 6 to 8 minutes. Complications occur when the tourniquet fails during initial anesthetic injection or if the tourniquet is deflated too early (<30 minutes), risking systemic local anesthesia toxicity. Adjuncts can be added to the local anesthetic injectate including ketorolac and clonidine to extend duration of analgesia, but their routine use is discouraged by most experts, because the potential benefits do not seem to outweigh the risk of increased complexity and side effects.

Regional anesthesia techniques for hand surgery include blocking the brachial plexus via an infraclavicular (ICB) or axillary approach. Two large series of infraclavicular blocks reported 90% to 94% success with only posterior cord stimulation using a nerve stimulator; other reports recommend a double stimulation technique for a better success rate. Ultrasound-guided ICB continues to gain popularity, as its first pass success is superior to the nerve stimulator technique. As with the nerve stimulator technique, injecting local anesthetic at the posterior cord increases the success rate.[179] Moreover, performing ICB with ultrasound guidance may shorten procedure time, avoid the need for multiple needle passes, and reduce complications of vascular puncture and pneumothorax.[180] For high-risk patients who are anticoagulated, an axillary block is a reasonable option, as the artery is easily compressible. With ultrasound guidance, selective nerve blockade can be achieved to minimize bleeding potential. For complex and emergent hand cases, general anesthesia is often chosen because of the prolonged duration of the procedure (see trauma section earlier).

Shoulder and Elbow Surgery

Over the past several decades, an increasing number of patients have undergone shoulder surgeries, as it has been shown that these procedures have a positive impact on the quality of life. Shoulder arthroplasty surgery can range from extensive open repairs, hours in duration, to simple shoulder arthroscopic procedures of short duration. Most of the surgeries are performed in the beach chair position, as this position offers superior surgical exposure and access, less distortion of muscle anatomy, and less tension on the brachial plexus than the lateral position. Therefore, anesthetic considerations are mostly tailored to counterbalance the physiologic derangements occurring in this position in anesthetized patients. Anesthetic techniques can range from general anesthesia to conscious sedation or monitored anesthesia care with regional block. For the most part, open procedures require muscle relaxation and therefore, general endotracheal anesthesia is often preferred. For arthroscopic procedures, muscle relaxation is not necessary, and these cases can be amenable for general anesthesia with a LMA or monitored anesthesia care with regional block. The anesthetic approach is largely influenced by the local practice culture. Surgeons may request controlled hypotension in arthroscopic cases, as visualization can be hindered by local bleeding. This can be problematic, especially in patients with chronic uncontrolled hypertension, as well as those with underlying cerebral vascular insufficiency. Cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP) is reported to decrease by 15% in sitting patients under general anesthesia. In patients with chronic hypertension, cerebral autoregulation is altered, and the curve is shifted to the right (Fig. 64.10). In patients with cerebrovascular disease, detrimental decrease in cerebral blood flow (CBF) can occur if the systemic pressure is kept below the minimal required CPP. Cerebral autoregulation is also influenced by ventilation via arterial PCO_2. Hypercapnia can result in cerebral vasodilation and increased CBF at a constant CPP. Conversely, hypocapnia causes a decrease in CBF due to cerebral vasoconstriction.[181] A randomized study suggested that cerebral oxygenation can indeed be improved with higher end tidal CO_2 during surgery in the beach chair position.[182] Therefore, permissive hypercapnia may be considered during shoulder surgery in the sitting position for patients with altered CBF. Additionally, the effects of vasopressors, such as phenylephrine, in the sitting position should be taken into account, as high doses of vasoconstrictors can affect CBF. In a study measuring cerebral oxygen saturation in the sitting position, desaturation occurred with the use of phenylephrine. The study concluded that cerebral oxygenation can be used to provide an endpoint for vasopressor therapy.[183] Another important anesthetic factor to consider when allowing hypotension in the beach chair is the distance discrepancy between the measurement of noninvasive blood pressure (NIBP) and the circle of Willis. In the supine position, the height of the NIBP at the arm and the circle of Willis are about the same. Therefore, the blood pressure reading closely approximates the CPP. However, in the sitting position, the blood pressure reading from the arm is different than the actual CPP at the circle of Willis. In general, for every 10 cm rise of an organ or tissue, there is 7.5 mm Hg drop in its mean arterial pressure. In the sitting position, the distance between the blood pressure cuff at the arm and Circle of Willis can approximate 20 cm. A technique to mitigate the distance is to decrease the angle of the sitting position. When inducing hypotension in the sitting position, all these factors have to be taken into account and discussed in a preoperative huddle with the surgeon. It is important to note that the role of the sitting position (beach chair) on postoperative neurological outcome remains controversial. According to the Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation Beach Chair Study, there were no differences in postoperative cognition or brain injury biomarkers when compared to the supine position.[184]

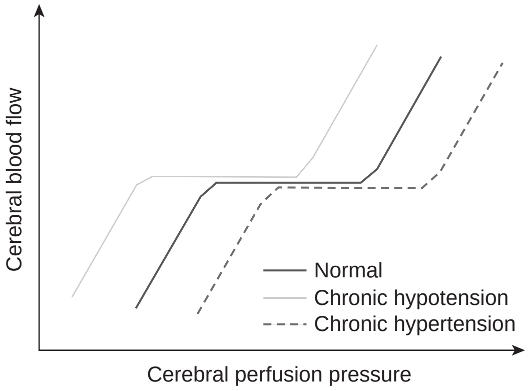


Fig. 64.10 Cerebral autoregulation curve.

Another serious complication that has been reported during shoulder surgery is excessive hypotensive and bradycardic events, some progressing to asystolic arrest, under monitored anesthesia care with regional anesthesia. There is some evidence that these events are the result of a cardiac inhibitory reflex, or the Bezold-Jarisch reflex, which occurs in response to diminished ventricular volume (venous pooling in the sitting position) in a hypercontractile ventricle. Prophylactic administration of β-blockers and intravenous fluids may reduce the incidence of these events.

Regional anesthesia, specifically interscalene block (ISB), continues to gain popularity for shoulder surgeries, as it can provide postoperative analgesia and decrease opioid consumption. For shoulder arthroscopies, single -shot ISB has been associated with less time spent in the postanesthesia care unit, better patient satisfaction, and fewer complications.[185] ISB can be utilized as the sole anesthetic for shoulder surgeries. However, this approach is not widely practiced.[186] One must be mindful of the impact ISB can have on pulmonary function secondary to ipsilateral phrenic nerve weakness. If prolonged analgesia is desired (>24 hours), placement of an interscalene catheter can be considered. Patients can be discharged with an infusion pump and can even self-discontinue the catheter at home.[187] Alternatives to ISB include selective suprascapular nerve (SSN) block, intraarticular analgesia, and oral analgesia. SSN block is performed with the patient sitting, and local anesthesia is injected at the suprascapular fossa, avoiding the vessels that travel with the nerve. This technique partially covers the shoulder but has no cutaneous coverage.[188] Ultrasound guidance can be used to block the nerve at the suprascapular fossa or at the suprascapular notch. An anterior ultrasound approach can be employed to trace the SSN from the interscalene groove at C5 down to below the omohyoid muscle. Injection at this site has been shown to result in less motor blockade than ISB and equivalent analgesia.[189] Intraarticular anesthesia is another alternative approach to postoperative pain control after shoulder surgery and involves injecting local anesthetic agents. This technique has been shown to significantly reduce post-surgical opioid consumption.[190] Recently, a long-acting formulation of bupivacaine, liposomal bupivacaine, was tested for perioperative peripheral nerve blockade. A small randomized prospective study compared locally infiltrated liposomal bupivacaine versus conventional ISB and found increased pain in the immediate postoperative period in patients receiving liposomal bupivacaine. However, opioid consumption was greater in the ISB group 13 to 16 hours after surgery. Beyond 24 hours, there was no difference in the two groups in terms of their pain scores, hospital length of stay, or number of complications. This study concluded that overall liposomal bupivacaine offered comparable analgesia to ISB, but could help reduce overall opioid consumption.[191] Larger studies are being conducted to further investigate the role of liposomal bupivacaine in shoulder surgery.

In contrast to shoulder surgery, elbow surgery does not require beach chair position, and the patient is usually in supine or lateral decubitus position. Common elbow surgeries include fixation of fractures as well as neurovascular repair. Most surgeries are performed under general anesthesia; however, monitored anesthesia care with regional block can be considered for selected patients and procedures and when there are no concerns for irreversible nerve injuries or compartment syndrome.

As with shoulder and hand surgeries, regional anesthesia can play a major role in postoperative analgesia after elbow surgery. The infraclavicular approach (ICB) to blocking the brachial plexus is common, but data suggest that a supraclavicular block may be just as effective.[192] Supraclavicular block spares the intercostobrachial nerve providing cutaneous innervation of the medial upper arm at the T2 dermatome. If a tourniquet is used, blocking the T2 can help decrease tourniquet pain.

LOWER EXTREMITY SURGERY

Knee and Hip Arthroscopy

Arthroscopic procedures for the knee, hip, and ankle are increasingly performed as ambulatory procedures. These cases can be challenging for the anesthesiologist who must decide on the appropriateness of the patient and procedure for outpatient surgery and an anesthetic that is adequate for the procedure, but also satisfy the patient's expectation of an uncomplicated postoperative recovery with minimal pain.

General anesthesia is safe and effective for arthroscopic surgery, but it has been associated with increased postoperative nausea and vomiting and pain. In a prospective study of 1088 patients for ambulatory surgery, Pavlin and coworkers reported that the most important factors in determining the time to discharge were pain, unresolved neuraxial blocks, nausea and vomiting, and urinary retention.[193] This study emphasizes the role of anesthesia in prolonging ambulatory surgical stay. A properly designed regional anesthetic approach may reduce the impact of some of these factors.

Arthroscopic knee surgery can be performed with a combination of extraarticular and intraarticular injections of local anesthetics. Short-duration local anesthetics may be combined with longer-acting local anesthetics (bupivacaine) and morphine to provide postoperative analgesia. Intraarticular morphine has not been shown to provide significant additional analgesia after arthroscopic knee surgery. For more involved arthroscopic procedures, such as an anterior cruciate ligament repair, surgical relaxation may be required. Spinal anesthesia provides excellent operating conditions for these procedures. Problems related to neuraxial anesthesia for ambulatory surgery include unpredictable onset and regression of the blockade, urinary retention, and transient neurologic symptoms (TNS). A dose of 45 mg of isobaric spinal mepivacaine has been reported to result in a mean motor block of 142 ± 37 minutes. Using 30 to 40 mg of spinal chloroprocaine, Yoos[194] reported 155 ± 34 minutes to ambulation in outpatient surgical patients. TNS include pain in the gluteal region that can radiate down both legs and appear within a few hours to 24 hours after an uneventful spinal anesthetic. The incidence of TNS is more frequent after outpatient surgery performed in the lithotomy position and in patients undergoing knee arthroscopy. The pain can vary from mild to severe and last 2 to 5 days. It is best treated with NSAIDs. TNS is more common after a spinal anesthetic with lidocaine (~14%) than with mepivacaine (6.5%) and bupivacaine (<1%). For ambulatory patients, the benefit of short-acting spinal anesthetic must be weighed against the risk for developing TNS. For postoperative analgesia after anterior cruciate ligament repairs, a femoral nerve block (FNB) with a long-acting local anesthetic is superior to intraarticular injections. Because the quadriceps muscle is blocked, however, it is important for the patient to be fitted with a knee brace before ambulation. Blocking the femoral nerve at the adductor canal (adductor canal block [ACB]) can also provide postoperative analgesia without interfering with early ambulation, as quadriceps strength is preserved when compared to FNB.[195] However, the analgesia does not cover the posterior aspect of the knee.

Hip arthroscopy has become a common outpatient procedure for the diagnosis and treatment of pathologic processes in the hip. The patient can be placed in either the supine or the lateral position (operative side up) with 50 to 75 lbs (22-34 kg) of traction applied to the operative limb to gain access to the joint with the arthroscope. In positioning the patient, the anesthesiologist must ensure that the perineal post is padded and not compressing the pudendal nerve and that excessive traction for prolonged periods is not applied. Because complete muscle relaxation is usually required for the procedure, the patient must have either a general anesthetic or a neuraxial block. A lumbar plexus block can be performed for postoperative analgesia.

Hip and Knee Arthroplasties

As was described earlier in this chapter, hip and knee joint replacement are among the most common surgeries in the United States. THA may be performed via an anterior or lateral approach. The anterior approach offers the advantage of exposure without violation of the muscles, but restricts full access to the femur, with the risk for lateral femoral cutaneous nerve injury. The lateral posterior approach provides excellent exposure to the femur and the acetabulum with minimal muscle damage but increases the risk for posterior dislocation. Most surgeons prefer the lateral posterior approach, which places the patient in the lateral decubitus position, surgical side up, for the operation. The anesthesiologist must be aware that this position may compromise oxygenation, particularly in obese and severely arthritic patients, as a result of ventilation-perfusion mismatch.

In addition, to prevent excessive pressure on the axillary artery and brachial plexus by the dependent shoulder, a soft roll or pad may be placed beneath the upper thorax.

The nerve supply to the hip joint includes the obturator, inferior gluteal, and superior gluteal nerves. Regional anesthesia for THA can be achieved with a spinal or epidural anesthetic. Although most studies suggest decreased postoperative respiratory complications, including venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism with regional versus general anesthesia, some controversy still remains. It is, nevertheless, important to note that regional anesthesia has been associated with a reduction in deep surgical site infection rates and hospital length of stay.[196]

Blood loss during THA can be significant, particularly for revision surgeries. Controlled hypotensive anesthesia may reduce intraoperative blood loss. The administration of TXA has also been shown to reduce blood loss during joint arthroplasty (see earlier). The femoral vein can be obstructed during dislocation of the hip and reaming and insertion of the femoral prosthesis, which can result in blood stasis and clot formation. With relocation of the hip and unkinking of the femoral vein, the embolic material can be released into the circulation. An unfractionated heparin bolus before the femoral work has been suggested to reduce the strong thrombotic stimulus and should be considered in selected patients.

Similar to THA, anesthetic options for TKA include general or neuraxial anesthesia. A less common approach is the combination of a femoral and sciatic block, but in patients with valgus deformities, this approach may prevent the early detection of sciatic and peroneal nerve palsies. A 2016 systematic review of the literature found that neuraxial anesthesia is as effective as general anesthesia without increased morbidity, and that limited quantitative evidence supports the notion that perioperative outcomes are improved with neuraxial anesthesia.[197] Another benefit of regional anesthesia is decreased postprocedural opioid consumption.

Patients who have undergone TKA have severe postoperative pain, and several studies have reported a reduction in postoperative complications and improved outcomes when this pain is managed with regional anesthesia. Single-injection FNBs in combination with intravenous and epidural PCA have been employed to manage postoperative pain and improve functional recovery. Infusion of local anesthetics through continuous femoral nerve catheters may also be used in place of patient-controlled epidural analgesia. Both FNB and epidural anesthesia have been associated with delayed ambulation post TKA. There have been recent efforts to fast track recovery for arthroplasty patients and aim for early mobility via early physical therapy. This has been shown to improve long-term functional status. As a result, there has been a shift away from FNBs and epidural anesthesia in favor of ACBs. A large meta-analysis suggested that patients who received ACB combined with periarticular local anesthesia injection could ambulate sooner than those with periarticular injection alone. No differences in postoperative analgesia or opioid consumption were noted.[198] Intraarticular multimodal injection of ropivacaine, ketorolac, clonidine, and epinephrine in combination with oral acetaminophen, celecoxib, and oxycodone was, nevertheless, shown to decrease opioid-analgesic requirements and increase patient satisfaction after TKA.[199-201]

A pneumatic tourniquet is routinely inflated over the thigh during TKA to reduce intraoperative blood loss and provide a bloodless field for cement fixation of the femoral and tibial components. Bleeding begins with the deflation of the tourniquet and can continue for the next 24 hours. Tourniquets are usually inflated to a pressure 50 to 100 mm Hg above the patient's systolic blood pressure for a maximum of 3 hours. Nerve injury after tourniquet inflation has been attributed to the combined effects of ischemia and mechanical trauma. When prolonged tourniquet inflations are required, deflating the tourniquet for 30 minutes of reperfusion may reduce neural ischemia.

Pain related to tourniquet inflation also may occur after 60 minutes, despite the presence of a regional anesthetic that is adequate for the surgery. It has been postulated that tourniquet pain is caused by the unblocking of unmyelinated C fibers during recession of a neuraxial block. The addition of opioids to spinal or epidural anesthesia may ameliorate tourniquet pain. After tourniquet release, mean arterial blood pressure decreases significantly, partly owing to the release of metabolites from the ischemic limb into the circulation and the decrease in peripheral vascular resistance. In patients with known preexisting sciatic neurapraxias, neuropathic pain, and vascular disease in the operative leg, the operation can be performed without a tourniquet.

Many patients have symptomatic arthritis of both knees and require bilateral TKA to achieve functional improvement in pain and lifestyle. However, controversy still exists as to whether both knees should be replaced sequentially in a single operation (simultaneous bilateral total knee arthroplasty [SBTKA]) or through a two-stage procedure. The advantages of SBTKA include exposure to the risks of one anesthetic course one postoperative course of pain, reduced rehabilitation and hospitalization, and an earlier return to baseline function. However, SBTKA has been associated with a higher incidence of serious perioperative complications such as myocardial infarction, fat embolization, and thromboembolic events.

Foot and Ankle Surgery

Similar to most hand surgeries, foot and ankle surgeries are classified as low-risk procedures. However, the low-risk nature of the procedures can pose a challenge for clinicians when caring for high-risk patients. The risks and benefits must be carefully considered when crafting an anesthetic plan, which can include general endotracheal anesthesia, general anesthesia with a LMA, neuraxial anesthesia with spinal or epidural, and regional anesthesia. Muscle relaxation is often not required. In caring for patients undergoing these procedures, length of procedure, patient position, and institutional preferences are considered when deciding on anesthetic approach and patient monitoring. Unlike hand cases, patient positioning can vary from supine, to lateral decubitus, to prone positioning. Most elective cases are done as outpatient surgery. Trauma cases can be long in duration, especially with complex fractures of the distal tibia. Infected toe and foot surgeries can be performed quickly, but patients may present with sepsis due to gangrenous tissue. It is not unusual to find that the patient who requires foot and ankle surgery is immunocompromised, diabetic, or has vascular insufficiency. Bleeding can occur, but generally it is not a main concern. Thigh or leg tourniquets are often used to limit blood loss.

Surgery of the foot and ankle is associated with high postoperative pain. Regional anesthesia can be beneficial and is commonly used as the primary anesthetic or for postoperative analgesia. These cases are ideal for regional anesthesia also because many patients are instructed to avoid bearing weight after surgery, and hence motor weakness is not a concern. Regional anesthesia that combines sciatic and FNBs is sufficient for all surgical proceures below the knee that do not require a thigh tourniquet. The femoral nerve innervates the medial leg to the medial malleolus, and the remainder of the leg below the knee, including the foot, is innervated by sciatic nerve via the common peroneal nerve and tibial nerve. The sciatic nerve is usually blocked high in the popliteal fossa to ensure anesthesia to the tibial and peroneal nerves. The nerve can be identified via a nerve-stimulating needle with foot inversion as the motor response. Increasingly, however, the sciatic block is performed with ultrasound guidance. For procedures that also involve the medial aspect of the leg, the femoral nerve can be blocked, commonly at the adductor canal, at the level of the knee via the medial femoral condyle, below the knee with local infiltration distal to the medial condyle of the tibia, or above the medial malleolus of foot. Each of these approaches has various degrees of success, with the highest success being the ACB.[202] The popliteal sciatic nerve block has been shown to reduce postoperative pain and opioid requirements after foot and ankle surgery when performed as a single preoperative injection or as a continuous catheter infusion. Studies suggest that for ultrasound-guided sciatic blocks, optimal onset and analgesia is achieved when the local anesthetic is injected distal to the sciatic bifurcation.[203,204] For sciatic catheters, optimal analgesia is achieved when the catheter is placed 5 cm proximal to the sciatic bifurcation.[205] Liposomal bupivacaine is being investigated as an alternative to regional anesthesia for local infiltration.[206]

A discussion with the surgeon about the risk for compartment syndrome should occur before administering long-acting sciatic nerve blocks. However, there is increasing evidence that regional anesthesia may not mask ischemic pain from compartment syndrome, and this question remains controversial.[173,207] Ankle block can be used for surgical procedures on the foot that do not require the use of a thigh or calf tourniquet, although an ankle-level Esmarch tourniquet may be used. It is commonly used for toe amputations and is also a highly effective technique for bunion surgery.[208]

Five terminal nerves are usually blocked to provide complete anesthesia to the foot: (1) posterior tibial nerve, which provides sensation to the plantar surface; (2) saphenous nerve, which innervates the medial malleolus; (3) deep peroneal nerve, which supplies the interspace between the great and second toes; (4) superficial saphenous nerve, which supplies the dorsum of the foot and the second through the fifth toes; and (5) sural nerve, which supplies the lateral foot and lateral fifth toe (Fig. 64.11). Mineo and Sharrock reported that ankle block performed at the midtarsal level with 30 mL of 0.75% bupivacaine provided a mean duration of 17 hours of analgesia with safe blood levels of local anesthetic.[209]

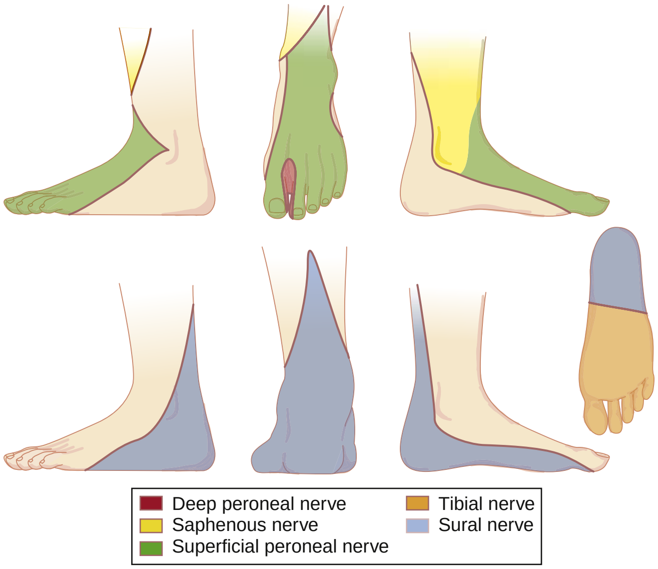


Fig. 64.11 Cutaneous distribution of anesthesia produced by an ankle block. (From Carron H, Korborn GA, Rowlingson JC. *Regional Anesthesia: Techniques and Clinical Applications*. New York: Grune & Stratton; 1984.)

Anesthesia for Spine Surgery

With the wide spectrum of spine disorders and an expanding array of treatment options, spinal surgeries have become increasingly prevalent over time. According to the Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project, spinal fusions and laminectomies were among the most common operations during inpatient stays in 2015, with an estimated rate of 147 and 136 per 100,000, respectively. In absolute numbers, it was estimated that an excess of 500,000 spinal fusions were performed in community hospitals alone in the United States.[210] Although only less than 10% of these surgeries are currently performed in an ambulatory setting, it is expected that with technical advances and enhanced perioperative care, an increasing number of these patients will qualify for outpatient surgery. Moreover, a growing number of patients with major comorbidities are being considered for complex spine surgeries such as scoliosis correction or spinal stabilization after trauma or neoplastic diseases. The underlying cardiovascular, respiratory, or neurologic disorders in combination with the physiologic stress from a large spinal procedure places the patient at a higher risk for perioperative complications. As described earlier in this chapter, preoperative optimization of the underlying diseases and careful perioperative care that involves the surgical, anesthesia, rehabilitation, and other medical teams can minimize the risk for these complications and improve the overall outcome.

PREOPERATIVE ASSESSMENT

The preoperative assessment for spinal surgeries should include a comprehensive evaluation of the neurologic function and possible symptoms or deficits associated with the underlying spinal disorder. The potential for difficulty in airway management should always be considered in patients with cervical and thoracic spine disease. Stability of the cervical spine and its range of motion should be assessed and documented, and the anatomic and functional relationship between the airway and the cervical column carefully considered. Video laryngoscopy or fiberoptic intubation may be needed and if awake intubation is considered, it is important to assess the patient's ability to cooperate. A multidisciplinary preoperative conference to review the suitability of each patient and discuss the medical, surgical, anesthesia, and rehabilitation implications of the procedure can improve the quality and safety in complex spine surgery.[211] In addition to a comprehensive review of the patient's preoperative cardiovascular, pulmonary, and neurologic comorbidities, basic hematologic, hepatic, and renal values, their preoperative optimization, perioperative pain control, and rehabilitation potentials also need to be considered.

SPINAL TRAUMA

Trauma victims with spinal cord injury (SCI) represent a group of patients with unique perioperative challenges. The incidence of nonfatal SCI is estimated to be 40 per 1 million population in the United States, or approximately 12,000 new cases each year.[212] Most injuries occur between the ages of 16 and 30. One retrospective analysis examined more than 500 patients with traumatic spinal fractures and found that 39% were caused by a high-energy fall and 26.5% by motor vehicle accidents.[213] The high-energy fall etiology resulted in injuries distributed throughout the spine, whereas motor vehicle accidents most frequently impacted the cervical and thoracic spine. Twenty-five percent of patients with spinal fracture had motor and/or sensory deficits, and the highest number of patients with complete motor and sensory neurologic deficits had sustained cervical fractures. Types of fractures were distributed as follows: compression fractures in 54.8% of patients, distraction fractures in 16.9%, and rotational fractures in 18.5%. Compression fractures occur when the vertebral body cannot handle a sudden force and fractures. This commonly occurs in the setting of osteoporosis and malignancy. A wedge fracture is a subtype, which often involves the anterior collapse of the vertebral body. Burst fractures occur as a result of severe trauma, such as a motor vehicle accident. Vertebrae are crushed by an extreme force and are impacted in multiple places. Flexion-distraction fractures typically involve the middle and posterior column of the spinal column. Flexion-dislocation fractures can include any of the aforementioned fracture types and occur when the vertebrae move significantly. Anterior, middle, and posterior columns are usually involved. This is an unstable fracture. With most SCIs caused by falls or motor vehicle collisions, it is not unusual that these patients also suffer injuries to the face and airway or present with traumatic brain injury, rib fractures and lung contusions, extremity or pelvic fractures, vascular injuries, or hepatic or splenic lacerations. The initial SCI may be caused by mechanical force from bony fragments from the vertebral body, facet or intervertebral joint dislocation, ligamentous tears or herniation of intervertebral discs, or arthropathies such as spondylosis or spondylolisthesis. Following the initial injury, systemic inflammation, ischemia or hypoxia, and excitotoxicity or lipid peroxidation and apoptosis of neurons can result in progression of the neurologic symptoms and worsening outcome. If facial or cervical spine injuries are present, airway management can be particularly challenging. Unstable cervical spine injury constitutes approximately 14% of SCI cases.[214] Techniques to minimize cervical movement should then be employed during management of the airway. Because of the urgent nature of airway interventions, many practitioners continue to use direct or indirect laryngoscopy with manual in-line stabilization (MILS), which applies opposite forces to the head and neck to limit the movement. The incidence of intubation-related neurologic impairment has been reported to be very low when MILS is applied during endotracheal intubation in patients with SCI.[215] However, MILS can worsen laryngeal visualization during direct laryngoscopy and increase the rate of tracheal intubation failure.[216] Rigid indirect video laryngoscopy is a reasonable alternative to conventional direct laryngoscopy and in skilled hands can minimize cervical motion during intubation, although studies have failed to confirm any clear advantages.[217] Obviously, fiberoptic intubation is often the safest approach in patients with cervical spine instability, but clinicians must also consider the patient's ability to cooperate during an awake fiberoptic intubation, as well as the risk of aspiration if deep sedation or general anesthesia is required. Neuromuscular blockade may be needed to facilitate intubation, but it is important to consider the risk of induced hyperkalemia associated with depolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents in these patients. Succinylcholine should be avoided after the initial 48 to 72 hours following an SCI.[218,219]

Another important challenge in patients with SCI is systemic hypotension, which can be caused by hemorrhage from associated injuries. In addition to hypovolemia, a common cause of hypotension in patients with high cervical SCI is neurogenic or spinal shock, which is characterized by bradycardia as well as vasodilation associated with the loss of central supraspinal sympathetic control.[220] If not appropriately managed, hypotension after SCI can compromise spinal cord perfusion and lead to secondary cord injury. The American Association of Neurological Surgeons (AANS) has, therefore, recommended that systemic arterial pressure be maintained at greater than 90 mm Hg for 5 to 7 days after SCI (class 3 evidence).[221] Although it remains controversial, data from a Cochrane review support a 48-hour course of high-dose steroids initiated within 8 hours of injury to those patients with incomplete neurologic deficits.[222]

COMMON SPINAL PROCEDURES

According to the Nationwide Inpatient Sample and the National Hospital Discharge Survey, discectomies, spinal decompression, instrumentation, and fusion are the most frequently performed spinal procedures in the United States. Anterior cervical discectomy is indicated in patients with spinal cord or nerve root compression from herniated disks or osteophytes. Patients often present with radiculopathy, myelopathy or, if they also suffer ligamentous laxity or disruption, cervical instability. A left-sided approach is usually preferred, as it minimizes the risk of recurrent laryngeal nerve injury. The disk is excised in a piecemeal fashion and bone graft placed in the intervertebral space with fusion performed to maintain stability, the disk height, and normal cervical lordosis. Posterior foraminotomy has the advantage that it does not require fusion and hence preserves the motion, but it is not effective for midline disk herniation and is more often associated with postoperative pain. Cervical canal stenosis or tumors may require decompressive laminectomy through a posterior approach. Obviously, the dura will need to be opened for resection of intradural masses, and it is then reasonable to avoid excessive reverse Trendelenburg, as it can increase the risk for pneumocephalus.[223] After the dura is closed, its integrity can be tested with a Valsalva maneuver.

Lumbar laminotomy and laminectomy are commonly employed for decompressing the neural elements of the lumbar spine. Posterior lumbar fusion is used for treatment of low-back pain associated with segmental or iatrogenic lumbar instability and spondylolisthesis and is commonly approached through a posterolateral fusion (PLF) or posterior lumbar interbody fusion (PLIF). PLF combines decompressive laminectomy and discectomy with PLF through decortication and bone grafting of the facet joints and transverse processes, whereas in PLIF the bone graft is packed into the disk space between the vertebral bodies after total discectomy and removal of the cartilaginous end plates. In both approaches, fusion is facilitated, and stability obtained through insertion of pedicle screws and a rod construct. Pedicle screw stabilization remains the preferred mode of instrumentation and provides rigid three-column fixation, but screw malposition can cause nerve-root injury. There are no major differences in clinical outcome or complication rates, but PLIF has been associated with better fusion rates and pain scores in the treatment of lumbar spondylolisthesis.[224] Minimally invasive surgery (MIS) techniques are increasingly employed and include direct or extreme lateral interbody fusion (DLIF or XLIF), where the spine is approached laterally through the retroperitoneal cavity, and transaxial lumbosacral fusion (Transl) through a 1 cm incision at the base of the sacrum. Blood loss is minimal with MIS, but occult injury to peritoneal contents have been reported.

Scoliosis can be classified as congenital, neuromuscular, or idiopathic. With an incidence of 4 per 1000, idiopathic scoliosis accounts for the majority (about 80%) of cases. A Cobb angle of 10 degrees is the minimum angulation to define scoliosis, while an angle of greater than 40 to 50 degrees is considered by most to be severe enough to require corrective surgery. Restrictive lung disease and increased alveolar-arterial oxygen difference may be present, as well as pulmonary hypertension as a result of compression of pulmonary vasculature and arterial hypoxia. Formal pulmonary function studies in these patients can guide decisions regarding the extent of surgery and requirement for postoperative ventilatory support. Transthoracic echocardiography can be helpful in assessing the severity of pulmonary hypertension and right ventricular hypertrophy. Correction of spinal deformities can be associated with large intraoperative blood loss, and measures to minimize blood transfusion should be considered. Deliberate controlled hypotension has been employed to limit blood loss but must be used with caution in the older adult, those with cardiovascular disease, or those at risk for ischemic complications[225] and postoperative vision loss. Antifibrinolytic agents are commonly administered to limit blood loss but may need to be avoided in some patients, such as those with a history of thromboembolic events, coronary stents, or renal impairment. TXA is more effective than aprotinin and EACA in reducing total blood loss, intraoperative blood loss, and blood transfusion.[226]

Scoliosis surgery has a variable but high rate of complications, with neurologic injury reported in 0.5% to 7.5% of cases.[227,228] Neurologic deficits can result from migration of bone graft into the spinal canal, penetration of instrumentation, and compression of the nerve roots. Intraoperative neurophysiologic monitoring (IONM) is a valuable technique that can be used in these patients for assessment of the integrity of neuronal structures. IONM is also of value during complex spine surgeries such as revision surgeries in patients with previous thoracolumbar fusion.

INTRAOPERATIVE NEUROPHYSIOLOGIC MONITORING

Somatosensory evoked potentials (SSEP) have been employed since the 1970s to assess the integrity of the larger fiber sensory system during scoliosis correction surgery. Nash and colleagues described a reversible loss of potentials with excessive elongation or derotation of the curve.[229] It was subsequently complemented with motor evoked potential (MEP) monitoring, as clinicians found that patients could become paraplegic despite unchanged intraoperative SSEPs, which monitor conduction of signals through the dorsal column but not the corticospinal tract.[230] MEPs are evoked through application of a train of high-voltage stimuli to electrodes on the surface of the head to activate motor pathways. Stimulation of the white matter produces an orthodromic nerve action potential that can be recorded as direct muscle responses (muscle MEPs) or at the spinal cord level using a flexible electrode once the laminectomy is completed and the dura opened. Direct stimulation of the corticospinal axons generates the D-waves, while stimulation of the axons of the cortico-cortical interneurons with excitatory projections to the corticospinal neurons produces indirect volleys that can be recorded as small deflections of higher threshold and longer latency (I waves).[231] Although D-wave monitoring is limited to the cervical and upper thoracic cord and requires an epidural recording electrode, it is helpful in addition to muscle MEP monitoring because it is resistant to anesthetic depression and neuromuscular blockade and has simple criteria for interpretation. A supplement to SSEP and MEP, triggered electromyography is an excellent technique for determining whether lumbar pedicle screws are properly placed. IONM has been increasingly employed for spine surgeries since its introduction in the 1970s, and is currently recommended for a number of procedures in addition to correction of spine deformities, including procedures with increased risk for SCI (e.g., resection of intramural tumors, unstable spine trauma, Chiari malformation, spinal cord vascular malformations) or risk for root damage (e.g., decompressive surgeries, tethered cord), as well as in patients with significant risk for compression neuropathies. These monitoring modalities are described in detail elsewhere (Chapter 39), but it is important to underscore the role of the anesthesiologist in providing optimal conditions for neuromonitoring, correct and timely detection of changes, and optimization of physiologic parameters to minimize risk for irreversible injuries.

In addition to the anesthetic agents, important physiologic factors such as hypotension, hypoxemia, hypothermia, and hypocarbia may lead to an attenuation of these potentials. In general, it is recommended to use total intravenous anesthesia during IONM, as volatile agents and nitrous oxide reduce the amplitude and increase the latency of the potentials in a dose-dependent manner. If volatile anesthetics are used, it is recommended to keep the concentration below half MAC and avoid any unnecessary or abrupt fluctuations. Opioids and benzodiazepines do not affect the potentials to the same extent, and ketamine or dexmedetomidine[232,233] have been suggested as reasonable complements to the anesthetic regimen. Assuming that the anesthetic effects on these modalities remain unchanged and the patient's physiologic parameters remain stable, an intraoperative loss of SSEPs or MEPs should warn the clinicians of impaired conduction through the dorsal columns or the corticospinal tracts; that is, structural damage has occurred. The damage from surgically-induced spinal cord compression, distraction, or derotation of the spinal column or spinal cord ischemia can be reversible if corrective actions are taken in a timely manner. Therefore, it is important that the surgical, neurophysiologic, and anesthesia teams work together to rapidly diagnose and correct these anatomic or physiologic disturbances. A predetermined checklist for response to IONM changes can guide the clinicians and facilitate rapid interventions aimed at diagnosing and correcting any surgical or physiologic insults. The anesthesiologist should immediately implement measures to optimize cord perfusion (optimize the hemodynamics and correct anemia, temperature and pH, and pCO_2 abnormalities) and be prepared for a possible wake-up test.[234] During a wake-up test, the plane of anesthesia is lightened, and the patient is instructed to make a specified motor response, usually in the lower limbs. If the patient is unable to move his or her legs, corrective measures will need to be instituted immediately. It is, nevertheless, also important to consider the limitations of the wake-up test, including the time needed to reverse any neuromuscular blockade and emerge from anesthesia, dependence on patient cooperation, and risk for complications such as inadvertent extubation, dislodgement of instrumentation, and air embolization during a deep inspiration.

PERIOPERATIVE VISUAL LOSS

An uncommon but devastating complication after spine surgery, perioperative visual loss can be caused by anterior or posterior ischemic optic neuropathy (ION, 89% of the cases), retinal ischemia, cortical blindness, or posterior reversible encephalopathy. In a case-control examination of 80 patients with ION compared with 315 matched control subjects, the ASA Task Force on Perioperative Visual Loss identified risk factors for ION after spinal fusion surgery to be male sex, obesity, Wilson frame use, longer procedural duration, greater estimated blood loss, and lower percent colloid administration.[235] The Task Force issued a detailed practice advisory to assist clinicians in the perioperative management of these patients and with the goal to reduce the frequency of perioperative visual loss.[236] Included are recommendations on perioperative blood pressure management, management of fluids, anemia, and vasopressors, as well as patient positioning and staging of surgical procedures. Of note, a lack of association between deliberate hypotension and perioperative visual loss is discussed by the Task Force, and clinicians are advised to approach this consideration on a case-by-case basis. Central venous pressure monitoring should be considered in high-risk patients and colloids should be used along with crystalloids to maintain intravascular volume in patients who have substantial blood loss. There is no documented lower limit of hemoglobin concentration, but hemoglobin or hematocrit values should be monitored periodically during surgery in high-risk patients with substantial blood loss. Similarly, the decision to use α-adrenergic agonists should be made on a case-by-case basis. Direct pressure on the eye should be avoided, and patients should be positioned so that the head is level with or higher than the heart when possible. Moreover, the high-risk patient's head should be maintained in a neutral forward position without significant neck flexion, extension, lateral flexion, or rotation when possible. Lastly, the use of staged spine surgery procedures reduces the risk of perioperative visual loss and should be considered in high-risk patients.

POSTOPERATIVE PAIN AFTER SPINAL SURGERY

Spinal procedures are associated with a high prevalence of moderate or severe postoperative pain (30%-64%).[237] Timely and effective pain control in this population is important for early ambulation and can facilitate improved functional outcome. The intensity of postoperative pain is directly proportional to the number of vertebrae involved in the surgery and originates from various nociceptors and mechanoreceptors that respond to mechanical irritation, compression, or postoperative inflammation in the vertebrae, intervertebral discs, ligaments, dura, nerve root sleeves, facet joint capsules, fascia, and muscles. It is hence essential that the perioperative team has a pain control plan in place in advance of the surgery, particularly for complex spine procedures involving multiple levels and extensive tissue dissection. The patient should be informed and instructed to set realistic expectations about the type and level of postoperative pain and how to respond when it occurs.

Intravenous opioid analgesics are the most common approach to the treatment of moderate to severe postoperative pain in this group of patients. Their widespread use is, nevertheless, limited by their many side effects, importantly respiratory depression and gastrointestinal side effects. Methadone is increasingly employed in this group of patients and is reported to improve postoperative pain control even when administered as a single bolus (0.2 mg/kg) before surgical incision.[238] A noncompetitive N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor antagonist, methadone is suggested to also reduce opioid tolerance in addition to providing analgesic effects. Ketamine can be used as an adjunct to perioperative opioids, and is demonstrated to reduce postoperative narcotic demand after spinal surgery.[239] NSAIDs have proven efficacy in ameliorating postoperative pain following spinal surgeries,[240] but their use has been limited because of concerns of their effects on bone metabolism and osteoblastic proliferation. Evidence suggests, nevertheless, that impaired bone healing may only be caused by higher doses and longer duration of NSAID administration, and smaller doses for the immediate postoperative period can be considered.[241] Corticosteroids are also occasionally administered, as they are shown to reduce opioid requirements after certain spine procedures, possibly through their antiinflammatory effects as well as the reduction in substance P release. Other options for treating the intensive postoperative pain after spinal surgery include the administration of intrathecal opioids, which has been shown to reduce the cumulative opioid demand. The use of intrathecal opioids is, nevertheless, limited by the associated risk of delayed respiratory depression, requiring close monitoring by skilled personnel. Intrathecal local anesthetic agents are usually not considered for these patients, as they affect the sensory and motor functions, masking any potential postoperative complications. In select patients, however, epidural administration of local anesthetics can provide effective analgesia without compromising the neurologic examination. The epidural catheter can be placed intraoperatively by surgeons under direct vision, and the infusion of local anesthetics can also be initiated after a reassuring neurologic exam has been obtained. Because of the inherent effects of neuraxial anesthesia on the neurologic examination, however, most clinicians choose alternative pain management strategies. More recently, α_2-adrenoreceptor antagonists including clonidine and dexmedetomidine have emerged as effective adjuncts to the aforementioned techniques, enhancing their analgesic properties. Dexmedetomidine is also reported to negate the opioid-induced hyperalgesia that may occur following intraoperative opioid treatment.[242]

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Dr. Michael K. Urban for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Fingar KR, et al. AHRQ; 2014:1–15.
2. Osteoarthritis (OA). https://www.cdc.gov/arthritis/basics/osteoarthritis.htm. Center for Disease Control and Prevention.
3. Jordan JM. *J Rheumatol*. 2007;34(1):172–180.
4. Jordan JM, et al. *J Rheumatol*. 2009;36(4):809–815.
5. Ortman JM, et al. *An aging nation: The Older Population in the United States*. United States Census Bureau; 2014. https://www.census.gov/library/publications/2014/demo/p25-1140.html.
6. Dreyer HC, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 2013;123(11):4654–4666.
7. Kurtz S, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2007;89(4):780–785.
8. World Population Prospects. *The 2017 Revision*. United Nations: Department of Economic and Social Affairs, Population Division; 2017. https://esa.un.org/unpd/wpp/Publications/Files/WPP2017_Volume-I_Comprehensive-Tables.pdf.
9. Murphy LB, et al. *Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken). 2017*. 2018;70(6):869–876. TG.
10. Delanois RE, et al. *J Arthroplasty*. 2018.
11. Palsis JA, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2018;100(4):326–333.
12. Torio CM, Moore BJ. *National Inpatient Hospital Costs: The Most Expensive Conditions by Payer Statistical Brief #204*. HCUP. Rockville (MD): Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (US); 2006; 2013–2016. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK368492/: Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project.
13. Adam RF, Noble J. *J Arthroplasty*. 1994;9(5):495–497.
14. Hosick WB, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1994;(299):77–80.
15. Newington DP, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Br*. 1990;72(3):450–452.
16. Petersen VS, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1989;37(3):219–222.
17. Pettine KA, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1991;(266):127–132.
18. Phillips TW, et al. *CMAJ*. 1987;137(6):497–500.
19. Brander VA, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1997;(345):67–78.
20. Jones CA, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2001;161(3):454–460.
21. Zicat B, et al. *J Arthroplasty*. 1993;8(4):395–400.
22. Bovonratwet P, et al. *Bone Joint J*. 2018;100-B(2):143–151.
23. Kristensen SD, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2014;31(10):517–573.
24. Gandhi R, et al. *J Arthroplasty*. 2006;21(6):874–877.
25. Mahomed NN, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2005;87(6):1222–1228.
26. Pulido L, et al. *J Arthroplasty*. 2008;23(6 suppl 1):139–145.
27. Liu JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(2):283–292.
28. Lalmohamed A, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2012;172(16):1229–1235.
29. Mureddu GF. *Monaldi Arch Chest Dis*. 2017;87(2):848.
30. Goldman L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1977;297(16):845–850.
31. Lee TH, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;100(10):1043–1049.
32. Gupta PK, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;124(4):381–387.
33. Alrezk R, et al. *J Am Heart Assoc*. 2017;6(11).
34. Devereaux PJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;317(16):1642–1651.
35. Devereaux PJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;307(21):2295–2304.
36. Ekeloef S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(5):559–568.
37. van Waes JA, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;127(23):2264–2271.
38. Puelacher C, et al. *Circulation*. 2018;137(12):1221–1232.
39. Kristensen SD, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2014;35(40):2781–2788.
40. Duceppe E, et al. *Can J Cardiol*. 2017;33(1):17–32.
41. Simonneau G, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;62(25 suppl):D34–41.
42. Price LC, et al. *Thorax*. 2017;72(11):1035–1045.
43. Steppan J, et al. *Cureus*. 2018;10(1):e2072.
44. Memtsoudis SG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(5):1110–1116.
45. Ramakrishna G, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2005;45(10):1691–1699.
46. Makary MA, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2010;210(6):901–908.
47. Walston J, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2006;54(6):991–1001.
48. Wang HT, et al. *BMC Musculoskelet Disord*. 2018;19(1):14.
49. Flexman AM, et al. *Spine J*. 2016;16(11):1315–1323.
50. Meessen JM, et al. *Rheumatol Int*. 2018;18(3):457–466.
51. Cooper Z, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2016;64(12):2464–2471.
52. Kim KI, et al. *Arch Gerontol Geriatr*. 2013;56(3):507–512.
53. Kim SW, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2014;149(7):633–640.
54. Pilotto A, et al. *J Am Med Dir Assoc*. 2017;18(2):192 e191–192 e111.
55. Zenilman ME. *JAMA Surg*. 2014;149(7):640–641.
56. Wilson H. *Open Orthop J*. 2017;11:1181–1189.
57. Luther A, et al. *World J Surg*. 2018;42(9):2781–2791.
58. Peer MA, et al. *J Rehabil Med*. 2017;49(4):304–315.
59. Wang L, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6:e009857.
60. Mortazavi SM, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2010;92(11):2095–2101.
61. Selim M. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(7):706–713.
62. Bateman BT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(2):231–238.
63. Lalmohamed A, et al. *Stroke*. 2012;43(12):3225–3229.
64. Lieb K, Selim M. *Semin Neurol*. 2008;28(5):603–610.
65. Inouye SK, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2015;220(2):136–148 e131.
66. Steiner LA. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(10):723–732.
67. Kalisvaart KJ, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2006;54(5):817–822.
68. Freter SH, et al. *Age Ageing*. 2005;34(2):169–171.
69. Kat MG, et al. *Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord*. 2008;26:261–268.
70. Culley DJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(5):765–774.
71. Brown CH, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2016;64(10):2101–2108.
72. Falck-Ytter Y, et al. *Chest*. 2012;141(2 suppl):e278S–e325S.
73. Zeng Y, et al. *J Arthroplasty*. 2014;29(12):2430–2438.
74. Anderson DR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(8):699–707.
75. Anderson DR, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2013;158(11):800–806.
76. Bateman DK, et al. *J Arthroplasty*. 2017;32(12):3735–3741.
77. Parvizi J, et al. *J Arthroplasty*. 2016;31(9 suppl):180–186.
78. Eskildsen SM, et al. *J Spinal Disord Tech*. 2015;28(8):275–281.
79. Mitchell AJ, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9(5):E461–E464.
80. Arnold MJ, Beer J. *J Fam Pract*. 2016;65(10):702–710.
81. Koenig-Oberhuber V, Filipovic M. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(suppl 2):ii74–ii84.
82. Yurttas T, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30(4):466–473.
83. Fleisher LA, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;130(24):e278–333.
84. Gurajala I, Gopinath R. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2016;19(1):122–131.
85. Holcomb CN, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;64(25):2730–2739.
86. Cappelleri G, Fanelli A. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;32:224–235.

87. Doherty JU, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69(7):871–898.
88. Faraoni D, et al. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:203.
89. Horlocker TT, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(3):263–309.
90. Lawrence VA, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;144(8):596–608.
91. Yakubek GA, et al. *J Arthroplasty*. 2018;33(6):1926–1929.
92. Gupta RM, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2001;76(9):897–905.
93. Jo YY, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2012;24(1):14–18.
94. Soh S, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2018;30(3):237–245.
95. Smetana GW. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;340(12):937–944.
96. Smetana GW, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;144(8):581–595.
97. Johnston CE. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2010;35(25):2239–2244.
98. Brueckmann B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(6):1276–1285.
99. Canet J, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2015;32(7):458–470.
100. Carlo JO, et al. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2015;23(2):107–118.
101. Abbott KC, et al. *J Nephrol*. 2003;16(1):34–39.
102. Miric A, et al. *J Arthroplasty*. 2014;29(6):1225–1230.
103. Ackland GL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(6):1375–1381.
104. Miric A, et al. *Acta Orthop*. 2014;85(1):71–78.
105. Goodnough LT, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(1):13–22.
106. Zacharowski K, Spahn DR. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2016;30(2):159–169.
107. Munoz M, et al. *Transfusion*. 2014;54(2):289–299.
108. Koscielny J, et al. *Clin Appl Thromb Hemost*. 2004;10(3):195–204.
109. Pfanner G, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2007;56(6):604–611.
110. Elgafy H, et al. *Am J Orthop*. 2012;41(3):E46–50.
111. Epstein NE. *Surg Neurol Int*. 2017;8:66.
112. Cross MB, et al. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2014;22(3):193–199.
113. Oresanya LB, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311(20):2110–2120.
114. Vellas B, et al. *J Nutr Health Aging*. 2006;10(6):456–463.
115. Khuri SF, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2005;242(3):326–341.
116. Halpin RJ, et al. *Spine (Phila Pa. 1976)*. 2010;35(25):2232–2238.
117. Barbour KE, et al. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. 2017;66(9):246–253.
118. Crowson CS, et al. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2011;63(3):633–639.
119. Collins DN, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1991;(272):127–135.
120. Joaquim AF, et al. *Neurosurg Focus*. 2015;38(4):E4.
121. Turesson C, et al. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*. 1999;38(7):668–674.
122. del Rincon ID, et al. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2001;44(12):2737–2745.
123. Yazdanyar A, et al. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2012;64(8):2429–2437.
124. Mushtaq S, et al. *Am J Ther*. 2011;18(5):426–434.
125. Jacobs WB, Fehlings MG. *Neurosurg Focus*. 2008;24(1):E12.
126. Lili X, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2014;26(1):27–31.
127. Lu PP, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48(10):1015–1019.
128. Wulf H. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43(12):1260–1271.
129. Graham DC, Smythe HA. *Bull Rheum Dis*. 1958;9(3):171–174.
130. Papagoras C, et al. *Clin Exp Rheumatol*. 2013;31(4):612–620.
131. Baujat G, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol*. 2008;22(1):3–18.
132. Dubiel L, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2014;23(3):274–278.
133. Petty RE, et al. *Textbook of Pediatric Rheumatologx*. 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2016.
134. Marini JC, et al. *Nat Rev Dis Primers*. 2017;3:17052.
135. Benca J, Hogan K. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(4):1049–1053.
136. Nolan J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55(1):32–41.
137. Delfico AJ, et al. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 1997;39(3):194–197.
138. McComb JG. *Childs Nerv Syst*. 2015;31(10):1641–1657.
139. Murphy CJ, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2015;24(3):252–263.
140. Birnkrant DJ, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2018;17(4):347–361.
141. Hayes J, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(2):100–106.
142. de Boer HD, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(12):1226–1228.
143. Ferguson J, Wainwright A. *Orthop Trauma*. 2013;27(3):171–180.
144. Ma L, Yu X. *Front Med*. 2017;11(1):48–52.
145. Cheriyan T, et al. *Spine J*. 2015;15(4):752–761.
146. Zhang F, et al. *BMC Musculoskelet Disord*. 2014;15:448.
147. Wei Z, Liu M. *Transfus Med*. 2015;25(3):151–162.
148. Wu Q, et al. *Eur J Orthop Surg Traumatol*. 2015;25(3):525–541.
149. Sun CX, et al. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2017;96(22):e7015.
150. Wang H, et al. *Knee*. 2014;21(6):987–993.
151. Shemshaki H, et al. *Arch Orthop Trauma Surg*. 2015;135(4):573–588.
152. Chen S, et al. *BMC Musculoskelet Disord*. 2016;17:81.
153. Gill JB, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2008;90(11):2399–2407.
154. Kagoma YK, et al. *Thromb Res*. 2009;123(5):687–696.
155. Henry DA, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;(1):CD001886.
156. Akhtar S. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27(3):533–550.
157. Shaikh N. *J Emerg Trauma Shock*. 2009;2(1):29–33.
158. Kotyra M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54(10):1210–1216.
159. Bisignani G, et al. *J Cardiovasc Med (Hagerstown)*. 2008;9(3):277–281.
160. Ereth MH, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1992;67(11):1066–1074.
161. Coccolini F, et al. *World J Emerg Surg*. 2017;12:5.
162. Skitch S, Engels PT. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2018;36(1):161–179.
163. Martin JG, et al. *Tech Vasc Interv Radiol*. 2017;20(4):237–242.
164. Moran CG, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2005;87(3):483–489.
165. Moyet J, et al. *Int Orthop*. 2018.
166. Bhandari M, Swiontkowski M. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377(21):2053–2062.
167. Orosz GM, et al. *JAMA*. 2004;291(14):1738–1743.
168. Rodgers A, et al. *BMJ*. 2000;321(7275):1493.
169. Mauermann WJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(4):1018–1025.
170. Scurrah A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(6):769–783.
171. Urban MK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82(6):1225–1229.
172. Mthethwa J, Chikate A. *Musculoskelet Surg*. 2018;102(2):119–127.
173. Walker BJ, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(4):393–397.
174. Maricevich M, et al. *Hand*. 2011;6(4):356–363.
175. Wolfe VM, Wang AA. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2015;23(6):373–381.
176. Niazi AU, et al. *Hand Surg*. 2013;18(3):325–330.
177. Berger A, et al. *Ann Plast Surg*. 1985;14(1):16–19.
178. Kurt E, et al. *Ann Plast Surg*. 2005;54(1):24–27.
179. Dingemans E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(5):1275–1280.
180. Brull R, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56(11):812–818.
181. Meng L, Gelb AW. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(1):196–205.
182. Murphy GS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(4):618–627.
183. Soeding PF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(2):229–234.
184. Laflam A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(1):176–185.
185. Hughes MS, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2013;95(14):1318–1324.
186. Ende D, et al. *Int Orthop*. 2016;40(10):2105–2113.
187. Fredrickson MJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(4):373–379.
188. Singelyn FJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(2):589–592.
189. Wiegel M, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(3):310–318.
190. Tetzlaff JE, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25(6):611–614.
191. Okoroha KR, et al. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg*. 2016;25(11):1742–1748.
192. Dhir S, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2018;48:67–72.
193. Pavlin DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(4):816–826.
194. Yoos JR, Kopacz DJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):553–558.
195. Abdallah FW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(5):1053–1064.
196. Helwani MA, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2015;97(3):186–193.
197. Johnson RL, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116(2):163–176.
198. Ma J, et al. *Medicine*. 2016;95(52):e5701.
199. Fang R, et al. *Orthopedics*. 2015;38(7):e573–581.
200. Busch CA, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2006;88(5):959–963.
201. Tsukada S, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2015;97(5):367–373.
202. Benzon HT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(3):633–638.
203. Prasad A, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35(3):267–271.
204. Buys MJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(2):635–637.
205. Monahan AM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(5):1689–1695.
206. Davidovitch R, et al. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2017;31(8):434–439.
207. Aguirre JA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(5):1198–1205.
208. Lopez AM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(5):554–557.
209. Mineo R, Sharrock NE. *Reg Anesth*. 1992;17(1):47–49.
210. McDermott KW, et al. *Overview of Operating Room Procedures During Inpatient Stays in U.S. Hospitals*. 2014. https://wwwhcup-usahrqgov.
211. Sethi R, et al. *J Neurosurg Spine*. 2017;26(6):744–750.
212. National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center. *Spinal Cord Injury Facts and Figures at a Glance*. 2018. wwwnscicsuabedu.
213. Leucht P, et al. *Injury*. 2009;40(2):166–172.
214. Ollerton JE, et al. *Emerg Med J*. 2006;23(1):3–11.
215. Manoach S, Paladino L. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2007;50(3):236–245.
216. Thiboutot F, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56(6):412–418.
217. Robitaille A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(3):935–941.
218. Hambly PR, Martin B. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(3):273–289.
219. Martyn JA, Richtsfeld M. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(1):158–169.
220. Wuermser LA, et al. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2007;88(3 suppl 1):S55–61.
221. Blood pressure management after acute spinal cord injury. *Neurosurgery*. 2002;50(3 suppl):S58–62.
222. Bracken MB. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;1:CD001046.
223. Pirris SM, Nottmeier EW. *Case Rep Neurol Med*. 2013;2013:792168.

224. Sakthivel RN, Balakrishnan V. *J Clin Exp Orthop*. 2017;3(2:36):1–5.
225. Dutton RP. *Eur Spine J*. 2004;13(suppl 1):S66–71.
226. Li G, et al. *Eur Spine J*. 2017;26(1):140–154.
227. Bartley CE, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2017;99(14):1206–1212.
228. Weiss HR, Goodall D. *Scoliosis*. 2008;3:9.
229. Nash Jr CL, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1977;(126):100–105.
230. Lesser RP, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 1986;19(1):22–25.
231. Rothwell JC, et al. *Exp Physiol*. 1991;76(2):159–200.
232. Yang LH, et al. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 1994;127(3-4):191–198.
233. Tobias JD, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(11):1082–1088.
234. Vauzelle C, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1973;(93):173–178.
235. Postoperative Visual Loss Study G. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(1):15–24.
236. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Visual L. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(2):274–285.
237. Sommer M, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2008;25(4):267–274.
238. Gottschalk A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(1):218–223.
239. Loftus RW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(3):639–646.
240. Reuben SS, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1997;22(4):343–346.
241. Reuben SS, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(5):506–512.
242. Hwang W, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2015;15:21.

References

1. Fingar KR, Stocks C, Weiss AJ, Steiner CA. *Most Frequent Operating Room Procedures Performed in U.S. Hospitals, 2003-2012. Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project HCUP*. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality AHRQ; 2014:1–15.
2. Osteoarthritis (OA). https://www.cdc.gov/arthritis/basics/osteoarthritis.htm. Center for Disease Control and Prevention.
3. Jordan JM, Helmick CG, Renner JB, et al. Prevalence of knee symptoms and radiographic and symptomatic knee osteoarthritis in African Americans and Caucasians: the Johnston County Osteoarthritis Project. *J Rheumatol*. 2007;34(1):172–180.
4. Jordan JM, Helmick CG, Renner JB, et al. Prevalence of hip symptoms and radiographic and symptomatic hip osteoarthritis in African Americans and Caucasians: the Johnston County Osteoarthritis Project. *J Rheumatol*. 2009;36(4):809–815.
5. Ortman JM, Velkoff VA, Hogan H. *An Aging Nation: The Older Population in the United States*. United States Census Bureau; 2014. https://www.census.gov/library/publications/2014/demo/p25-1140.html.
6. Dreyer HC, Strycker LA, Senesac HA, et al. Essential amino acid supplementation in patients following total knee arthroplasty. *J Clin Invest*. 2013;123(11):4654–4666.
7. Kurtz S, Ong K, Lau E, Mowat F, Halpern M. Projections of primary and revision hip and knee arthroplasty in the United States from 2005 to 2030. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2007;89(4):780–785.
8. World Population Prospects. *The 2017 Revision*. United Nations: Department of Economic and Social Affairs, Population Division; 2017. https://esa.un.org/unpd/wpp/Publications/Files/WPP2017_Volume-I_Comprehensive-Tables.pdf.
9. Murphy LB, Cisternas MG, Pasta DJ, Helmick CG, Yelin EH. Medical expenditures and earnings losses among US adults with arthritis in 2013. *Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken). 2017*. 2018;70(6):869–876.
10. Delanois RE, Gwam CU, Cherian JJ, et al. Global budget revenue on a single institution's costs and outcomes in patients undergoing total hip arthroplasty. *J Arthroplasty*. 2018.
11. Palsis JA, Brehmer TS, Pellegrini VD, Drew JM, Sachs BL. The cost of joint replacement: comparing two approaches to evaluating costs of total hip and knee arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2018;100(4):326–333.
12. Torio CM, Moore BJ. *National Inpatient Hospital Costs: The Most Expensive Conditions by Payer, 2013: Statistical Brief #204*. HCUP. Rockville (MD): Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (US); 2006-2016. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK368492/: Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project.
13. Adam RF, Noble J. Primary total knee arthroplasty in the elderly. *J Arthroplasty*. 1994;9(5):495–497.
14. Hosick WB, Lotke PA, Baldwin A. Total knee arthroplasty in patients 80 years of age and older. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1994;299:77–80.
15. Newington DP, Bannister GC, Fordyce M. Primary total hip replacement in patients over 80 years of age. *J Bone Joint Surg Br*. 1990;72(3):450–452.
16. Petersen VS, Solgaard S, Simonsen B. Total hip replacement in patients aged 80 years and older. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1989;37(3):219–222.
17. Pettine KA, Aamlid BC, Cabanela ME. Elective total hip arthroplasty in patients older than 80 years of age. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1991;(266):127–132.
18. Phillips TW, Grainger RW, Cameron HS, Bruce L. Risks and benefits of elective hip replacement in the octogenarian. *CMAJ*. 1987;137(6):497–500.
19. Brander VA, Malhotra S, Jet J, Heinemann AW, Stulberg SD. Outcome of hip and knee arthroplasty in persons aged 80 years and older. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1997;(345):67–78.
20. Jones CA, Voaklander DC, Johnston DW, Suarez-Almazor ME. The effect of age on pain, function, and quality of life after total hip and knee arthroplasty. *Arch Intern Med*. 2001;161(3):454–460.
21. Zicat B, Rorabeck CH, Bourne RB, Devane PA, Nott L. Total knee arthroplasty in the octogenarian. *J Arthroplasty*. 1993;8(4):395–400.
22. Bovonratwet P, Malpani R, Ottesen TD, et al. Aseptic revision total hip arthroplasty in the elderly :quantifying the risks for patients over 80 years old. *Bone Joint J*. 2018;100-B(2):143–151.
23. Kristensen SD, Knuuti J, Saraste A, et al. 2014 ESC/ESA Guidelines on non-cardiac surgery: cardiovascular assessment and management: The Joint Task Force on non-cardiac surgery: cardiovascular assessment and management of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and the European Society of Anaesthesiology (ESA). *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2014;31(10):517–573.
24. Gandhi R, Petruccelli D, Devereaux PJ, Adili A, Hubmann M, de Beer J. Incidence and timing of myocardial infarction after total joint arthroplasty. *J Arthroplasty*. 2006;21(6):874–877.
25. Mahomed NN, Barrett J, Katz JN, Baron JA, Wright J, Losina E. Epidemiology of total knee replacement in the United States Medicare population. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2005;87(6):1222–1228.
26. Pulido L, Parvizi J, Macgibeny M, et al. Hospital complications after total joint arthroplasty. *J Arthroplasty*. 2008;23(6 suppl 1):139–145.
27. Liu JB, Liu Y, Cohen ME, Ko CY, Sweitzer BJ. Defining the intrinsic cardiac risks of operations to improve preoperative cardiac risk assessments. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(2):283–292.
28. Lalmohamed A, Vestergaard P, Klop C, et al. Timing of acute myocardial infarction in patients undergoing total hip or knee replacement: a nationwide cohort study. *Arch Intern Med*. 2012;172(16):1229–1235.
29. Mureddu GF. Current multivariate risk scores in patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery. *Monaldi Arch Chest Dis*. 2017;87(2):848.
30. Goldman L, Caldera DL, Nussbaum SR, et al. Multifactorial index of cardiac risk in noncardiac surgical procedures. *N Engl J Med*. 1977;297(16):845–850.
31. Lee TH, Marcantonio ER, Mangione CM, et al. Derivation and prospective validation of a simple index for prediction of cardiac risk of major noncardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 1999;100(10):1043–1049.
32. Gupta PK, Gupta H, Sundaram A, et al. Development and validation of a risk calculator for prediction of cardiac risk after surgery. *Circulation*. 2011;124(4):381–387.
33. Alrezk R, Jackson N, Al Rezk M, et al. Derivation and validation of a geriatric-sensitive perioperative cardiac risk index. *J Am Heart Assoc*. 2017;6(11).
34. Devereaux PJ, Biccard BM, Sigamani A, et al. Association of postoperative high-sensitivity troponin levels with myocardial injury and 30-day mortality among patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2017;317(16):1642–1651.
35. Devereaux PJ, Chan MT, Alonso-Coello P, et al. Association between postoperative troponin levels and 30-day mortality among patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2012;307(21):2295–2304.
36. Ekeloef S, Alamili M, Devereaux PJ, Gogenur I. Troponin elevations after non-cardiac, non-vascular surgery are predictive of major adverse cardiac events and mortality: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(5):559–568.
37. van Waes JA, Nathoe HM, de Graaff JC, et al. Myocardial injury after noncardiac surgery and its association with short-term mortality. *Circulation*. 2013;127(23):2264–2271.
38. Puelacher C, Lurati Buse G, Seeberger D, et al. Perioperative myocardial injury after noncardiac surgery: incidence, mortality, and characterization. *Circulation*. 2018;137(12):1221–1232.
39. Kristensen SD, Knuuti J, Nicholls M. Cardiopulse articles. *Eur Heart J*. 2014;35(40):2781–2788.
40. Duceppe E, Parlow J, MacDonald P, et al. Canadian Cardiovascular Society Guidelines on perioperative cardiac risk assessment and management for patients who undergo noncardiac surgery. *Can J Cardiol*. 2017;33(1):17–32.
41. Simonneau G, Gatzoulis MA, Adatia I, et al. Updated clinical classification of pulmonary hypertension. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2013;62(25 suppl):D34–41.
42. Price LC, Dimopoulos K, Marino P, et al. The CRASH report: emergency management dilemmas facing acute physicians in patients with pulmonary arterial hypertension. *Thorax*. 2017;72(11):1035–1045.
43. Steppan J, Diaz-Rodriguez N, Barodka VM, et al. Focused review of perioperative care of patients with pulmonary hypertension and proposal of a perioperative pathway. *Cureus*. 2018;10(1):e2072.
44. Memtsoudis SG, Ma Y, Chiu YL, Walz JM, Voswinckel R, Mazumdar M. Perioperative mortality in patients with pulmonary hypertension undergoing major joint replacement. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(5):1110–1116.
45. Ramakrishna G, Sprung J, Ravi BS, Chandrasekaran K, McGoon MD. Impact of pulmonary hypertension on the outcomes of noncardiac surgery: predictors of perioperative morbidity and mortality. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2005;45(10):1691–1699.

46. Makary MA, Segev DL, Pronovost PJ, et al. Frailty as a predictor of surgical outcomes in older patients. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2010;210(6):901–908.
47. Walston J, Hadley EC, Ferrucci L, et al. Research agenda for frailty in older adults: toward a better understanding of physiology and etiology: summary from the American Geriatrics Society/National Institute on Aging Research Conference on Frailty in Older Adults. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2006;54(6):991–1001.
48. Wang HT, Fafard J, Ahern S, Vendittoli PA, Hebert P. Frailty as a predictor of hospital length of stay after elective total joint replacements in elderly patients. *BMC Musculoskelet Disord*. 2018;19(1):14.
49. Flexman AM, Charest-Morin R, Stobart L, Street J, Ryerson CJ. Frailty and postoperative outcomes in patients undergoing surgery for degenerative spine disease. *Spine J*. 2016;16(11):1315–1323.
50. Meessen JM, Leichtenberg CS, Tilbury C, et al. Frailty in end-stage hip or knee osteoarthritis: validation of the Groningen Frailty Indicator (GFI) questionnaire. *Rheumatol Int*. 2018;18(3):457–466.
51. Cooper Z, Rogers Jr SO, Ngo L, et al. Comparison of frailty measures as predictors of outcomes after orthopedic surgery. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2016;64(12):2464–2471.
52. Kim KI, Park KH, Koo KH, Han HS, Kim CH. Comprehensive geriatric assessment can predict postoperative morbidity and mortality in elderly patients undergoing elective surgery. *Arch Gerontol Geriatr*. 2013;56(3):507–512.
53. Kim SW, Han HS, Jung HW, et al. Multidimensional frailty score for the prediction of postoperative mortality risk. *JAMA Surg*. 2014;149(7):633–640.
54. Pilotto A, Cella A, Pilotto A, et al. Three decades of comprehensive geriatric assessment: evidence coming from different healthcare settings and specific clinical conditions. *J Am Med Dir Assoc*. 2017;18(2). 192 e191-192 e111.
55. Zenilman ME. More powerful than the American Society of Anesthesiology score. *JAMA Surg*. 2014;149(7):640–641.
56. Wilson H. Orthogeriatrics in hip fracture. *Open Orthop J*. 2017;11:1181–1189.
57. Luther A, Gabriel J, Watson RP, Francis NK. The impact of total body prehabilitation on post-operative outcomes after major abdominal surgery: a systematic review. *World J Surg*. 2018;42(9):2781–2791.
58. Peer MA, Rush R, Gallacher PD, Gleeson N. Pre-surgery exercise and post-operative physical function of people undergoing knee replacement surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Rehabil Med*. 2017;49(4):304–315.
59. Wang L, Lee M, Zhang Z, Moodie J, Cheng D, Martin J. Does preoperative rehabilitation for patients planning to undergo joint replacement surgery improve outcomes? A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6:e009857.
60. Mortazavi SM, Kakli H, Bican O, Moussouttas M, Parvizi J, Rothman RH. Perioperative stroke after total joint arthroplasty: prevalence, predictors, and outcome. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2010;92(11):2095–2101.
61. Selim M. Perioperative stroke. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(7):706–713.
62. Bateman BT, Schumacher HC, Wang S, Shaefi S, Berman MF. Perioperative acute ischemic stroke in noncardiac and nonvascular surgery: incidence, risk factors, and outcomes. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(2):231–238.
63. Lalmohamed A, Vestergaard P, Cooper C, et al. Timing of stroke in patients undergoing total hip replacement and matched controls: a nationwide cohort study. *Stroke*. 2012;43(12):3225–3229.
64. Lieb K, Selim M. Preoperative evaluation of patients with neurological disease. *Semin Neurol*. 2008;28(5):603–610.
65. Inouye SK, Robinson T, Blaum C, et al. Postoperative delirium in older adults: best practice statement from the American Geriatrics Society. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2015;220(2). 136-148 e131.
66. Steiner LA. Postoperative delirium. Part 2: detection, prevention and treatment. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(10):723–732.
67. Kalisvaart KJ, Vreeswijk R, de Jonghe JF, van der Ploeg T, van Gool WA, Eikelenboom P. Risk factors and prediction of postoperative delirium in elderly hip-surgery patients: implementation and validation of a medical risk factor model. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2006;54(5):817–822.
68. Freter SH, Dunbar MJ, MacLeod H, Morrison M, MacKnight C, Rockwood K. Predicting post-operative delirium in elective orthopaedic patients: the Delirium Elderly At-Risk (DEAR) instrument. *Age Ageing*. 2005;34(2):169–171.
69. Kat MG, Vreeswijk R, de Jonghe JF, et al. Long-term cognitive outcome of delirium in elderly hip surgery patients. A prospective matched controlled study over two and a half years. *Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord*. 2008;26:261–268.
70. Culley DJ, Flaherty D, Fahey MC, et al. Poor performance on a preoperative cognitive screening test predicts postoperative complications in older orthopedic surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(5):765–774.
71. Brown CH, LaFlam A, Max L, et al. Delirium after spine surgery in older adults: incidence, risk factors, and outcomes. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2016;64(10):2101–2108.
72. Falck-Ytter Y, Francis CW, Johanson NA, et al. Prevention of VTE in orthopedic surgery patients: antithrombotic therapy and prevention of thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. *Chest*. 2012;141(2 suppl):e278S–e325S.
73. Zeng Y, Shen B, Yang J, Zhou Z, Kang P, Pei F. Preoperative comorbidities as potential risk factors for venous thromboembolism after joint arthroplasty: a systematic review and meta-analysis of cohort and case-control studies. *J Arthroplasty*. 2014;29(12):2430–2438.
74. Anderson DR, Dunbar M, Murnaghan J, et al. Aspirin or rivaroxaban for VTE prophylaxis after hip or knee arthroplasty. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(8):699–707.
75. Anderson DR, Dunbar MJ, Bohm ER, et al. Aspirin versus low-molecular-weight heparin for extended venous thromboembolism prophylaxis after total hip arthroplasty: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 2013;158(11):800–806.
76. Bateman DK, Dow RW, Brzezinski A, Bar-Eli HY, Kayiaros ST. Correlation of the Caprini score and venous thromboembolism incidence following primary total joint arthroplasty-results of a single-institution protocol. *J Arthroplasty*. 2017;32(12):3735–3741.
77. Parvizi J, Huang R, Rezapoor M, Bagheri B, Maltenfort MG. Individualized risk model for venous thromboembolism after total joint arthroplasty. *J Arthroplasty*. 2016;31(9 suppl):180–186.
78. Eskildsen SM, Moll S, Lim MR. An algorithmic approach to venous thromboembolism prophylaxis in spine surgery. *J Spinal Disord Tech*. 2015;28(8):275–281.
79. Mitchell AJ, Gillies MA, Cruden NL. Non-cardiac surgery following drug-eluting coronary stent implantation-a question of timing? *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9(5):E461–E464.
80. Arnold MJ, Beer J. Preoperative evaluation: a time-saving algorithm. *J Fam Pract*. 2016;65(10):702–710.
81. Koenig-Oberhuber V, Filipovic M. New antiplatelet drugs and new oral anticoagulants. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(suppl 2):ii74–ii84.
82. Yurttas T, Wanner PM, Filipovic M. Perioperative management of antithrombotic therapies. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30(4):466–473.
83. Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;130(24):e278–e333.
84. Gurajala I, Gopinath R. Perioperative management of patient with intracoronary stent presenting for noncardiac surgery. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2016;19(1):122–131.
85. Holcomb CN, Graham LA, Richman JS, et al. The incremental risk of noncardiac surgery on adverse cardiac events following coronary stenting. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;64(25):2730–2739.
86. Cappelleri G, Fanelli A. Use of direct oral anticoagulants with regional anesthesia in orthopedic patients. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;32:224–235.
87. Doherty JU, Gluckman TJ, Hucker WJ, et al. 2017 ACC expert consensus decision pathway for periprocedural management of anticoagulation in patients with nonvalvular atrial fibrillation: a report of the American College of Cardiology clinical expert consensus document task force. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69(7):871–898.
88. Faraoni D, Levy JH, Albaladejo P, Samama CM. Groupe d'Interet en Hemostase P. Updates in the perioperative and emergency management of non-vitamin K antagonist oral anticoagulants. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:203.
89. Horlocker TT, Vandermeulen E, Kopp SL, Gogarten W, Leffert LR, Benzon HT. Regional anesthesia in the patient receiving antithrombotic or thrombolytic therapy: American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine evidence-based guidelines (fourth edition). *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(3):263–309.
90. Lawrence VA, Cornell JE, Smetana GW. Strategies to reduce postoperative pulmonary complications after noncardiothoracic surgery: systematic review for the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;144(8):596–608.
91. Yakubek GA, Curtis GL, Sodhi N, et al. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease is associated with short-term complications following total hip arthroplasty. *J Arthroplasty*. 2018;33(6):1926–1929.

92. Gupta RM, Parvizi J, Hanssen AD, Gay PC. Postoperative complications in patients with obstructive sleep apnea syndrome undergoing hip or knee replacement: a case-control study. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2001;76(9):897–905.
93. Jo YY, Kim JY, Kwak YL, Kim YB, Kwak HJ. The effect of pressure-controlled ventilation on pulmonary mechanics in the prone position during posterior lumbar spine surgery: a comparison with volume-controlled ventilation. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2012;24(1):14–18.
94. Soh S, Shim JK, Ha Y, Kim YS, Lee H, Kwak YL. Ventilation with high or low tidal volume with PEEP does not influence lung function after spinal surgery in prone position: a randomized controlled trial. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2018;30(3):237–245.
95. Smetana GW. Preoperative pulmonary evaluation. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;340(12):937–944.
96. Smetana GW, Lawrence VA, Cornell JE. Preoperative pulmonary risk stratification for noncardiothoracic surgery: systematic review for the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;144(8):581–595.
97. Johnston CE. Preoperative medical and surgical planning for early onset scoliosis. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2010;35(25):2239–2244.
98. Brueckmann B, Villa-Uribe JL, Bateman BT, et al. Development and validation of a score for prediction of postoperative respiratory complications. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(6):1276–1285.
99. Canet J, Sabate S, Mazo V, et al. Development and validation of a score to predict postoperative respiratory failure in a multicentre European cohort: a prospective, observational study. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2015;32(7):458–470.
100. Carlo JO, Phisitkul P, Phisitkul K, Reddy S, Amendola A. Perioperative implications of end-stage renal disease in orthopaedic surgery. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2015;23(2):107–118.
101. Abbott KC, Bucci JR, Agodoa LY. Total hip arthroplasty in chronic dialysis patients in the United States. *J Nephrol*. 2003;16(1):34–39.
102. Miric A, Inacio MC, Namba RS. The effect of chronic kidney disease on total hip arthroplasty. *J Arthroplasty*. 2014;29(6): 1225–1230.
103. Ackland GL, Moran N, Cone S, Grocott MP, Mythen MG. Chronic kidney disease and postoperative morbidity after elective orthopedic surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(6):1375–1381.
104. Miric A, Inacio MC, Namba RS. Can total knee arthroplasty be safely performed in patients with chronic renal disease? *Acta Orthop*. 2014;85(1):71–78.
105. Goodnough LT, Maniatis A, Earnshaw P, et al. Detection, evaluation, and management of preoperative anaemia in the elective orthopaedic surgical patient: NATA guidelines. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(1):13–22.
106. Zacharowski K, Spahn DR. Patient blood management equals patient safety. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2016;30(2):159–169.
107. Munoz M, Gomez-Ramirez S, Cuenca J, et al. Very-short-term perioperative intravenous iron administration and postoperative outcome in major orthopedic surgery: a pooled analysis of observational data from 2547 patients. *Transfusion*. 2014;54(2):289–299.
108. Koscielny J, Ziemer S, Radtke H, et al. A practical concept for preoperative identification of patients with impaired primary hemostasis. *Clin Appl Thromb Hemost*. 2004;10(3):195–204.
109. Pfanner G, Koscielny J, Pernerstorfer T, et al. Preoperative evaluation of the bleeding history. Recommendations of the Working Group on Perioperative Coagulation of the Austrian Society for Anaesthesia, Resuscitation and Intensive Care. *Anaesthesist*. 2007;56(6): 604–611.
110. Elgafy H, O'Brien P, Blessinger B, Hassan A. Challenges of spine surgery in obese patients. *Am J Orthop (Belle Mead NJ)*. 2012;41(3):E46–50.
111. Epstein NE. More risks and complications for elective spine surgery in morbidly obese patients. *Surg Neurol Int*. 2017;8:66.
112. Cross MB, Yi PH, Thomas CF, Garcia J, Della Valle CJ. Evaluation of malnutrition in orthopaedic surgery. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2014;22(3):193–199.
113. Oresanya LB, Lyons WL, Finlayson E. Preoperative assessment of the older patient: a narrative review. *JAMA*. 2014;311(20):2110–2120.
114. Vellas B, Villars H, Abellan G, et al. Overview of the MNA--Its history and challenges. *J Nutr Health Aging*. 2006;10(6):456–463. discussion 463-455.
115. Khuri SF, Henderson WG, DePalma RG, et al. Determinants of long-term survival after major surgery and the adverse effect of postoperative complications. *Ann Surg*. 2005;242(3):326–341; discussion 341-323.
116. Halpin RJ, Sugrue PA, Gould RW, et al. Standardizing care for high-risk patients in spine surgery: the Northwestern High-Risk Spine Protocol. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2010;35(25):2232–2238.
117. Barbour KE, Helmick CG, Boring M, Brady TJ. Vital signs: prevalence of doctor-diagnosed arthritis and arthritis-attributable activity limitation - United States, 2013-2015. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. 2017;66(9):246–253.
118. Crowson CS, Matteson EL, Myasoedova E, et al. The lifetime risk of adult-onset rheumatoid arthritis and other inflammatory autoimmune rheumatic diseases. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2011;63(3):633–639.
119. Collins DN, Barnes CL, FitzRandolph RL. Cervical spine instability in rheumatoid patients having total hip or knee arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1991;(272):127–135.
120. Joaquim AF, Ghizoni E, Tedeschi H, Appenzeller S, Riew KD. Radiological evaluation of cervical spine involvement in rheumatoid arthritis. *Neurosurg Focus*. 2015;38(4):E4.
121. Turesson C, Jacobsson L, Bergstrom U. Extra-articular rheumatoid arthritis: prevalence and mortality. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*. 1999;38(7):668–674.
122. del Rincon ID, Williams K, Stern MP, Freeman GL, Escalante A. High incidence of cardiovascular events in a rheumatoid arthritis cohort not explained by traditional cardiac risk factors. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2001;44(12):2737–2745.
123. Yazdanyar A, Wasko MC, Kraemer KL, Ward MM. Perioperative all-cause mortality and cardiovascular events in patients with rheumatoid arthritis: comparison with unaffected controls and persons with diabetes mellitus. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2012;64(8):2429–2437.
124. Mushtaq S, Goodman SM, Scanzello CR. Perioperative management of biologic agents used in treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. *Am J Ther*. 2011;18(5):426–434.
125. Jacobs WB, Fehlings MG. Ankylosing spondylitis and spinal cord injury: origin, incidence, management, and avoidance. *Neurosurg Focus*. 2008;24(1):E12.
126. Lili X, Zhiyong H, Jianjun S. A comparison of the GlideScope with the Macintosh laryngoscope for nasotracheal intubation in patients with ankylosing spondylitis. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2014;26(1):27–31.
127. Lu PP, Brimacombe J, Ho AC, Shyr MH, Liu HP. The intubating laryngeal mask airway in severe ankylosing spondylitis. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48(10):1015–1019.
128. Wulf H. Epidural anaesthesia and spinal haematoma. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43(12):1260–1271.
129. Graham DC, Smythe HA. The carditis and aortitis of ankylosing spondylitis. *Bull Rheum Dis*. 1958;9(3):171–174.
130. Papagoras C, Voulgari PV, Drosos AA. Atherosclerosis and cardiovascular disease in the spondyloarthritides, particularly ankylosing spondylitis and psoriatic arthritis. *Clin Exp Rheumatol*. 2013;31(4):612–620.
131. Baujat G, Legeai-Mallet L, Finidori G, Cormier-Daire V, Le Merrer M. Achondroplasia. *Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol*. 2008;22(1):3–18.
132. Dubiel L, Scott GA, Agaram R, McGrady E, Duncan A, Litchfield KN. Achondroplasia: anaesthetic challenges for caesarean section. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2014;23(3):274–278.
133. Petty RE, Laxer RM, Lindsley CB, Wedderburn L, Cassidy JT. *Textbook of Pediatric Rheumatology*. 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2016.
134. Marini JC, Forlino A, Bachinger HP, et al. Osteogenesis imperfecta. *Nat Rev Dis Primers*. 2017;3:17052.
135. Benca J, Hogan K. Malignant hyperthermia, coexisting disorders, and enzymopathies: risks and management options. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(4):1049–1053.
136. Nolan J, Chalkiadis GA, Low J, Olesch CA, Brown TC. Anaesthesia and pain management in cerebral palsy. *Anaesthesia*. 2000;55(1):32–41.
137. Delfico AJ, Dormans JP, Craythorne CB, Templeton JJ. Intraoperative anaphylaxis due to allergy to latex in children who have cerebral palsy: a report of six cases. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 1997;39(3):194–197.
138. McComb JG. A practical clinical classification of spinal neural tube defects. *Childs Nerv Syst*. 2015;31(10):1641–1657.
139. Murphy CJ, Stanley E, Kavanagh E, Lenane PE, McCaul CL. Spinal dysraphisms in the parturient: implications for perioperative anaesthetic care and labour analgesia. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2015;24(3):252–263.
140. Birnkrant DJ, Bushby K, Bann CM, et al. Diagnosis and management of Duchenne muscular dystrophy, part 2: respiratory, cardiac, bone health, and orthopaedic management. *Lancet Neurol*. 2018;17(4):347–361.

141. Hayes J, Veyckemans F, Bissonnette B. Duchenne muscular dystrophy: an old anesthesia problem revisited. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(2):100–106.
142. de Boer HD, van Esmond J, Booij LH, Driessen JJ. Reversal of rocuronium-induced profound neuromuscular block by sugammadex in Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(12):1226–1228.
143. Ferguson J, Wainwright A. Arthrogryposis. *Orthop Trauma*. 2013;27(3):171–180.
144. Ma L, Yu X. Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita: classification, diagnosis, perioperative care, and anesthesia. *Front Med*. 2017;11(1):48–52.
145. Cheriyan T, Maier 2nd SP, Bianco K, et al. Efficacy of tranexamic acid on surgical bleeding in spine surgery: a meta-analysis. *Spine J*. 2015;15(4):752–761.
146. Zhang F, Wang K, Li FN, et al. Effectiveness of tranexamic acid in reducing blood loss in spinal surgery: a meta-analysis. *BMC Musculoskelet Disord*. 2014;15:448.
147. Wei Z, Liu M. The effectiveness and safety of tranexamic acid in total hip or knee arthroplasty: a meta-analysis of 2720 cases. *Transfus Med*. 2015;25(3):151–162.
148. Wu Q, Zhang HA, Liu SL, Meng T, Zhou X, Wang P. Is tranexamic acid clinically effective and safe to prevent blood loss in total knee arthroplasty? A meta-analysis of 34 randomized controlled trials. *Eur J Orthop Surg Traumatol*. 2015;25(3):525–541.
149. Sun CX, Zhang L, Mi LD, Du GY, Sun XG, He SW. Efficiency and safety of tranexamic acid in reducing blood loss in total shoulder arthroplasty: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2017;96(22):e7015.
150. Wang H, Shen B, Zeng Y. Comparison of topical versus intravenous tranexamic acid in primary total knee arthroplasty: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled and prospective cohort trials. *Knee*. 2014;21(6):987–993.
151. Shemshaki H, Nourian SM, Nourian N, Dehghani M, Mokhtari M, Mazoochian F. One step closer to sparing total blood loss and transfusion rate in total knee arthroplasty: a meta-analysis of different methods of tranexamic acid administration. *Arch Orthop Trauma Surg*. 2015;135(4):573–588.
152. Chen S, Wu K, Kong G, Feng W, Deng Z, Wang H. The efficacy of topical tranexamic acid in total hip arthroplasty: a meta-analysis. *BMC Musculoskelet Disord*. 2016;17:81.
153. Gill JB, Chin Y, Levin A, Feng D. The use of antifibrinolytic agents in spine surgery. A meta-analysis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2008;90(11):2399–2407.
154. Kagoma YK, Crowther MA, Douketis J, Bhandari M, Eikelboom J, Lim W. Use of antifibrinolytic therapy to reduce transfusion in patients undergoing orthopedic surgery: a systematic review of randomized trials. *Thromb Res*. 2009;123(5):687–696.
155. Henry DA, Carless PA, Moxey AJ, et al. Anti-fibrinolytic use for minimising perioperative allogeneic blood transfusion. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;(1):CD001886.
156. Akhtar S. Fat embolism. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27(3):533–550.
157. Shaikh N. Emergency management of fat embolism syndrome. *J Emerg Trauma Shock*. 2009;2(1):29–33.
158. Kotyra M, Houltz E, Ricksten SE. Pulmonary haemodynamics and right ventricular function during cemented hemiarthroplasty for femoral neck fracture. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54(10):1210–1216.
159. Bisignani G, Bisignani M, Pasquale GS, Greco F. Intraoperative embolism and hip arthroplasty: intraoperative transesophageal echocardiographic study. *J Cardiovasc Med (Hagerstown)*. 2008;9(3):277–281.
160. Ereth MH, Weber JG, Abel MD, et al. Cemented versus noncemented total hip arthroplasty--embolism, hemodynamics, and intrapulmonary shunting. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1992;67(11):1066–1074.
161. Coccolini F, Stahel PF, Montori G, et al. Pelvic trauma: WSES classification and guidelines. *World J Emerg Surg*. 2017;12:5.
162. Skitch S, Engels PT. Acute management of the traumatically injured pelvis. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2018;36(1):161–179.
163. Martin JG, Kassin M, Park P, Ermentrout RM, Dariushnia S. Evaluation and treatment of blunt pelvic trauma. *Tech Vasc Interv Radiol*. 2017;20(4):237–242.
164. Moran CG, Wenn RT, Sikand M, Taylor AM. Early mortality after hip fracture: is delay before surgery important? *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2005;87(3):483–489.
165. Moyet J, Deschasse G, Marquant B, Mertl P, Bloch F. Which is the optimal orthogeriatric care model to prevent mortality of elderly subjects post hip fractures? A systematic review and meta-analysis based on current clinical practice. *Int Orthop*. 2018.
166. Bhandari M, Swiontkowski M. Management of acute hip fracture. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377(21):2053–2062.
167. Orosz GM, Magaziner J, Hannan EL, et al. Association of timing of surgery for hip fracture and patient outcomes. *JAMA*. 2004;291(14):1738–1743.
168. Rodgers A, Walker N, Schug S, et al. Reduction of postoperative mortality and morbidity with epidural or spinal anaesthesia: results from overview of randomised trials. *BMJ*. 2000;321(7275):1493.
169. Mauermann WJ, Shilling AM, Zuo Z. A comparison of neuraxial block versus general anesthesia for elective total hip replacement: a meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(4):1018–1025.
170. Scurrah A, Shiner CT, Stevens JA, Faux SG. Regional nerve blockade for early analgesic management of elderly patients with hip fracture - a narrative review. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(6):769–783.
171. Urban MK, Sheppard R, Gordon MA, Urquhart BL. Right ventricular function during revision total hip arthroplasty. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82(6):1225–1229.
172. Mthethwa J, Chikate A. A review of the management of tibial plateau fractures. *Musculoskelet Surg*. 2018;102(2):119–127.
173. Walker BJ, Noonan KJ, Bosenberg AT. Evolving compartment syndrome not masked by a continuous peripheral nerve block: evidence-based case management. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(4):393–397.
174. Maricevich M, Carlsen B, Mardini S, Moran S. Upper extremity and digital replantation. *Hand (N Y)*. 2011;6(4):356–363.
175. Wolfe VM, Wang AA. Replantation of the upper extremity: current concepts. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2015;23(6):373–381.
176. Niazi AU, El-Beheiry H, Ramlogan R, Graham B, von Schroeder HP, Tumber PS. Continuous infraclavicular brachial plexus blockade: effect on survival of replanted digits. *Hand Surg*. 2013;18(3):325–330.
177. Berger A, Tizian C, Zenz M. Continuous plexus blockade for improved circulation in microvascular surgery. *Ann Plast Surg*. 1985;14(1):16–19.
178. Kurt E, Ozturk S, Isik S, Zor F. Continuous brachial plexus blockade for digital replantations and toe-to-hand transfers. *Ann Plast Surg*. 2005;54(1):24–27.
179. Dingemans E, Williams SR, Arcand G, et al. Neurostimulation in ultrasound-guided infraclavicular block: a prospective randomized trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(5):1275–1280; tables of contents.
180. Brull R, Lupu M, Perlas A, Chan VW, McCartney CJ. Compared with dual nerve stimulation, ultrasound guidance shortens the time for infraclavicular block performance. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56(11):812–818.
181. Meng L, Gelb AW. Regulation of cerebral autoregulation by carbon dioxide. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(1):196–205.
182. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Avram MJ, et al. Effect of ventilation on cerebral oxygenation in patients undergoing surgery in the beach chair position: a randomized controlled trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(4):618–627.
183. Soeding PF, Hoy S, Hoy G, Evans M, Royse CF. Effect of phenylephrine on the haemodynamic state and cerebral oxygen saturation during anaesthesia in the upright position. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111(2):229–234.
184. Laflam A, Joshi B, Brady K, et al. Shoulder surgery in the beach chair position is associated with diminished cerebral autoregulation but no differences in postoperative cognition or brain injury biomarker levels compared with supine positioning: the Anesthesia Patient Safety Foundation beach chair study. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(1):176–185.
185. Hughes MS, Matava MJ, Wright RW, Brophy RH, Smith MV. Interscalene brachial plexus block for arthroscopic shoulder surgery: a systematic review. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2013;95(14):1318–1324.
186. Ende D, Gabriel RA, Vlassakov KV, Dutton RP, Urman RD. Epidemiologic data and trends concerning the use of regional anaesthesia for shoulder arthroscopy in the United States of America. *Int Orthop*. 2016;40(10):2105–2113.
187. Fredrickson MJ, Leightley P, Wong A, Chaddock M, Abeysekera A, Frampton C. An analysis of 1505 consecutive patients receiving continuous interscalene analgesia at home: a multicentre prospective safety study. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(4):373–379.
188. Singelyn FJ, Lhotel L, Fabre B. Pain relief after arthroscopic shoulder surgery: a comparison of intraarticular analgesia, suprascapular nerve block, and interscalene brachial plexus block. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(2):589–592.

189. Wiegel M, Moriggl B, Schwarzkopf P, Petroff D, Reske AW. Anterior suprascapular nerve block versus interscalene brachial plexus block for shoulder surgery in the outpatient setting: a randomized controlled patient- and assessor-blinded trial. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2017;42(3):310–318.
190. Tetzlaff JE, Brems J, Dilger J. Intraarticular morphine and bupivacaine reduces postoperative pain after rotator cuff repair. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25(6):611–614.
191. Okoroha KR, Lynch JR, Keller RA, et al. Liposomal bupivacaine versus interscalene nerve block for pain control after shoulder arthroplasty: a prospective randomized trial. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg*. 2016;25(11):1742–1748.
192. Dhir S, Brown B, Mack P, Bureau Y, Yu J, Ross D. Infraclavicular and supraclavicular approaches to brachial plexus for ambulatory elbow surgery: a randomized controlled observer-blinded trial. *J Clin Anesth*. 2018;48:67–72.
193. Pavlin DJ, Rapp SE, Polissar NL, Malmgren JA, Koerschgen M, Keyes H. Factors affecting discharge time in adult outpatients. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(4):816–826.
194. Yoos JR, Kopacz DJ. Spinal 2-chloroprocaine for surgery: an initial 10-month experience. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):553–558.
195. Abdallah FW, Whelan DB, Chan VW, et al. Adductor canal block provides noninferior analgesia and superior quadriceps strength compared with femoral nerve block in anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(5):1053–1064.
196. Helwani MA, Avidan MS, Ben Abdallah A, et al. Effects of regional versus general anesthesia on outcomes after total hip arthroplasty: a retrospective propensity-matched cohort study. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2015;97(3):186–193.
197. Johnson RL, Kopp SL, Burkle CM, et al. Neuraxial vs general anaesthesia for total hip and total knee arthroplasty: a systematic review of comparative-effectiveness research. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;116(2): 163–176.
198. Ma J, Gao F, Sun W, Guo W, Li Z, Wang W. Combined adductor canal block with periarticular infiltration versus periarticular infiltration for analgesia after total knee arthroplasty. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2016;95(52):e5701.
199. Fang R, Liu Z, Alijiang A, et al. Efficacy of intra-articular local anesthetics in total knee arthroplasty. *Orthopedics*. 2015;38(7): e573–581.
200. Busch CA, Shore BJ, Bhandari R, et al. Efficacy of periarticular multimodal drug injection in total knee arthroplasty. A randomized trial. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2006;88(5):959–963.
201. Tsukada S, Wakui M, Hoshino A. Pain control after simultaneous bilateral total knee arthroplasty: a randomized controlled trial comparing periarticular injection and epidural analgesia. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2015;97(5):367–373.
202. Benzon HT, Sharma S, Calimaran A. Comparison of the different approaches to saphenous nerve block. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(3):633–638.
203. Prasad A, Perlas A, Ramlogan R, Brull R, Chan V. Ultrasound-guided popliteal block distal to sciatic nerve bifurcation shortens onset time: a prospective randomized double-blind study. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35(3):267–271.
204. Buys MJ, Arndt CD, Vagh F, Hoard A, Gerstein N. Ultrasound-guided sciatic nerve block in the popliteal fossa using a lateral approach: onset time comparing separate tibial and common peroneal nerve injections versus injecting proximal to the bifurcation. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(2):635–637.
205. Monahan AM, Madison SJ, Loland VJ, et al. Continuous popliteal sciatic blocks: does varying perineural catheter location relative to the sciatic bifurcation influence block effects? A dual-center, randomized, subject-masked, controlled clinical trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(5):1689–1695.
206. Davidovitch R, Goch A, Driesman A, Konda S, Pean C, Egol K. The use of liposomal bupivacaine administered with standard bupivacaine in ankle fractures requiring open reduction internal fixation: a single-blinded randomized controlled trial. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2017;31(8):434–439.
207. Aguirre JA, Gresch D, Popovici A, Bernhard J, Borgeat A. Case scenario: compartment syndrome of the forearm in patient with an infraclavicular catheter: breakthrough pain as indicator. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118(5):1198–1205.
208. Lopez AM, Sala-Blanch X, Magaldi M, Poggio D, Asuncion J, Franco CD. Ultrasound-guided ankle block for forefoot surgery: the contribution of the saphenous nerve. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(5):554–557.
209. Mineo R, Sharrock NE. Venous levels of lidocaine and bupivacaine after midtarsal ankle block. *Reg Anesth*. 1992;17(1):47–49.
210. McDermott KW, Freeman WJ, Elixhauser A. *Overview of Operating Room Procedures During Inpatient Stays in U.S. Hospitals*. 2014. https://wwwhcup-usahrqgov.
211. Sethi R, Buchlak QD, Yanamadala V, et al. A systematic multidisciplinary initiative for reducing the risk of complications in adult scoliosis surgery. *J Neurosurg Spine*. 2017;26(6):744–750.
212. National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center. *Spinal Cord Injury Facts and Figures at a Glance*. 2018. wwwnscicsuabedu.
213. Leucht P, Fischer K, Muhr G, Mueller EJ. Epidemiology of traumatic spine fractures. *Injury*. 2009;40(2):166–172.
214. Ollerton JE, Parr MJ, Harrison K, Hanrahan B, Sugrue M. Potential cervical spine injury and difficult airway management for emergency intubation of trauma adults in the emergency department--a systematic review. *Emerg Med J*. 2006;23(1):3–11.
215. Manoach S, Paladino L. Manual in-line stabilization for acute airway management of suspected cervical spine injury: historical review and current questions. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2007;50(3):236–245.
216. Thiboutot F, Nicole PC, Trepanier CA, Turgeon AF, Lessard MR. Effect of manual in-line stabilization of the cervical spine in adults on the rate of difficult orotracheal intubation by direct laryngoscopy: a randomized controlled trial. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56(6): 412–418.
217. Robitaille A, Williams SR, Tremblay MH, Guilbert F, Theriault M, Drolet P. Cervical spine motion during tracheal intubation with manual in-line stabilization: direct laryngoscopy versus GlideScope videolaryngoscopy. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(3):935–941.
218. Hambly PR, Martin B. Anaesthesia for chronic spinal cord lesions. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(3):273–289.
219. Martyn JA, Richtsfeld M. Succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia in acquired pathologic states: etiologic factors and molecular mechanisms. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(1):158–169.
220. Wuermser LA, Ho CH, Chiodo AE, Priebe MM, Kirshblum SC, Scelza WM. Spinal cord injury medicine. 2. Acute care management of traumatic and nontraumatic injury. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2007;88(3 suppl 1):S55–61.
221. Blood pressure management after acute spinal cord injury. *Neurosurgery*. 2002;50(3 suppl):S58–62.
222. Bracken MB. Steroids for acute spinal cord injury. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;1:CD001046.
223. Pirris SM, Nottmeier EW. Symptomatic pneumocephalus associated with lumbar dural tear and reverse trendelenburg positioning: a case report and review of the literature. *Case Rep Neurol Med*. 2013;2013:792168.
224. Sakthivel RN, Balakrishnan V. Treatment of adult spondylolisthesis: PLIF versus PLF: comparitive Study of early functional outcome. *J Clin Exp Orthop*. 2017;3(2:36):1–5.
225. Dutton RP. Controlled hypotension for spinal surgery. *Eur Spine J*. 2004;13(suppl 1):S66–71.
226. Li G, Sun TW, Luo G, Zhang C. Efficacy of antifibrinolytic agents on surgical bleeding and transfusion requirements in spine surgery: a meta-analysis. *Eur Spine J*. 2017;26(1):140–154.
227. Bartley CE, Yaszay B, Bastrom TP, et al. Perioperative and delayed major complications following surgical treatment of adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2017;99(14): 1206–1212.
228. Weiss HR, Goodall D. Rate of complications in scoliosis surgery - a systematic review of the Pub Med literature. *Scoliosis*. 2008;3:9.
229. Nash Jr CL, Lorig RA, Schatzinger LA, Brown RH. Spinal cord monitoring during operative treatment of the spine. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1977;(126):100–105.
230. Lesser RP, Raudzens P, Luders H, et al. Postoperative neurological deficits may occur despite unchanged intraoperative somatosensory evoked potentials. *Ann Neurol*. 1986;19(1):22–25.
231. Rothwell JC, Thompson PD, Day BL, Boyd S, Marsden CD. Stimulation of the human motor cortex through the scalp. *Exp Physiol*. 1991;76(2):159–200.
232. Yang LH, Lin SM, Lee WY, Liu CC. Intraoperative transcranial electrical motor evoked potential monitoring during spinal surgery under intravenous ketamine or etomidate anaesthesia. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 1994;127(3-4):191–198.
233. Tobias JD, Goble TJ, Bates G, Anderson JT, Hoernschemeyer DG. Effects of dexmedetomidine on intraoperative motor and somatosensory evoked potential monitoring during spinal surgery in adolescents. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(11):1082–1088.

234. Vauzelle C, Stagnara P, Jouvinroux P. Functional monitoring of spinal cord activity during spinal surgery. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 1973;(93):173–178.
235. Postoperative Visual Loss Study G. Risk factors associated with ischemic optic neuropathy after spinal fusion surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(1):15–24.
236. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Visual L. Practice advisory for perioperative visual loss associated with spine surgery: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Visual Loss. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(2):274–285.
237. Sommer M, de Rijke JM, van Kleef M, et al. The prevalence of postoperative pain in a sample of 1490 surgical inpatients. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2008;25(4):267–274.
238. Gottschalk A, Durieux ME, Nemergut EC. Intraoperative methadone improves postoperative pain control in patients undergoing complex spine surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(1):218–223.
239. Loftus RW, Yeager MP, Clark JA, et al. Intraoperative ketamine reduces perioperative opiate consumption in opiate-dependent patients with chronic back pain undergoing back surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(3):639–646.
240. Reuben SS, Connelly NR, Steinberg R. Ketorolac as an adjunct to patient-controlled morphine in postoperative spine surgery patients. *Reg Anesth*. 1997;22(4):343–346.
241. Reuben SS, Ablett D, Kaye R. High dose nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs compromise spinal fusion. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(5):506–512.
242. Hwang W, Lee J, Park J, Joo J. Dexmedetomidine versus remifentanil in postoperative pain control after spinal surgery: a randomized controlled study. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2015;15:21.

65 Geriatric Anesthesia

MILES BERGER, LEAH ACKER, and STACIE DEINER

KEY POINTS

- The proportion of adults over age 70 has increased throughout the world with a corresponding increase in older surgical patients.
- Normal aging is associated with changes in physiology and an increase in many pathologic conditions.
- The number and impact of normal and pathologic conditions varies significantly across elderly individuals.
- Preoperative screening recommendations and guidelines for older patients can provide a useful starting point to evaluate and optimize care.
- Some important geriatric specific areas that are amenable to screening include: cognition, frailty, depression, and polypharmacy.
- Best intraoperative practices follow from an understanding of geriatric physiology and awareness of medications which are contraindicated in the older population.
- Postoperative care tailored to the needs of high-risk adults may benefit the highest risk patients such as palliative care consultation and delirium prevention units.

America is growing old. The number of Americans over age 70 has increased from approximately 15 million in 1975 to over 30 million in 2015, with a corresponding increase in both the percentage of Americans over age 70 and the median American population age (Fig. 65.1A-C). Similarly, worldwide, the number of people over age 70 has increased from approximately 130 million in 1975 to over 400 million in 2015, accompanied by similar increases in the percentage of people over age 70 and the median population age (see Fig 65.1B,C).

The age-related population shifts have translated to similar changes in the population of patients undergoing anesthesia and surgery. In the United States alone, more than 16 million patients over age 60 underwent surgery in 2006. These profound shifts in the American population and the American surgical population have significant implications for anesthesiologists. First, most (though not all) diseases increase in frequency with age. Second, there are age-dependent physiologic changes in virtually every human organ system. These age-dependent physiologic changes typically result in a decrease in the physiologic and functional reserve capacity of each organ system. However, there is considerable variability in the extent of age-dependent changes across organ systems in individual patients, and considerable variability across older patients in the extent of these age-related changes. Indeed, a general principle of geriatric medicine is that as the population ages, the variance of virtually every physiologic measurement increases. Thus while older patients as a whole present additional challenges for perioperative management as a result of increases in comorbid disease and decreases in physiologic reserve, it is important to avoid overapplying these generalizations to individual older patients.

One potential reason that these generalizations apply to varying degrees among older patients is that aging itself involves a plethora of biological pathways (Fig. 65.2) which proceed at varying rates across patients. For example, two 80-year-old patients may show very different telomere lengths, genetic mutation accumulation, and cumulative oxidative stress. Differences in these types of biologic pathways involved in aging have led many to refer separately to chronological age (reflecting the number of years of life) versus biologic age (reflecting the actual accumulation of changes in biologic processes involved in aging).

In this chapter, we discuss common age-dependent physiologic and pathophysiologic changes, and their implications for the preoperative assessment, intraoperative management, and postoperative care of older adults. The significant increases in the age of the American population suggest that the perioperative management of older adults will likely become an increasingly large focus for anesthesiologists. Further, the significant increases in biomedical research expenditures focused on aging and older adults provide reason to hope that this research will lead to improved postoperative outcomes for older adults in the future.

Organ-Specific Age-Related Physiologic and Pathologic Changes

Except for those who exclusively treat pediatric or obstetric patients, most anesthesiologists are geriatric anesthesiologists at least some of the time. Therefore understanding the numerous physiologic changes of aging is critical for caring for the elderly population. Here we discuss these changes by organ system.

CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

In the cardiovascular system, normal aging manifests as changes in vascular and sympathetic tone, the myocardium, the cardiac conduction system, the cardiac valves, and the baroreceptor system.

Vascular Changes With Age

With age, arterial stiffening results in increased afterload, which increases myocardial oxygen consumption and wall stress. Comorbid pathology such as atherosclerosis and decreased β-2 adrenergic vasodilation may compound this effect.

Partially because of age-related vascular changes, the incidence of venous thromboembolism (VTE) increases exponentially with age, affecting up to 600 people over the age of 80 years per 100,000 annually.[1] All three parts of Virchow's classic triad (venous stasis, hypercoagulability, and aberrant blood flow) affect older populations and contribute to this increased risk of VTE. For example, venous

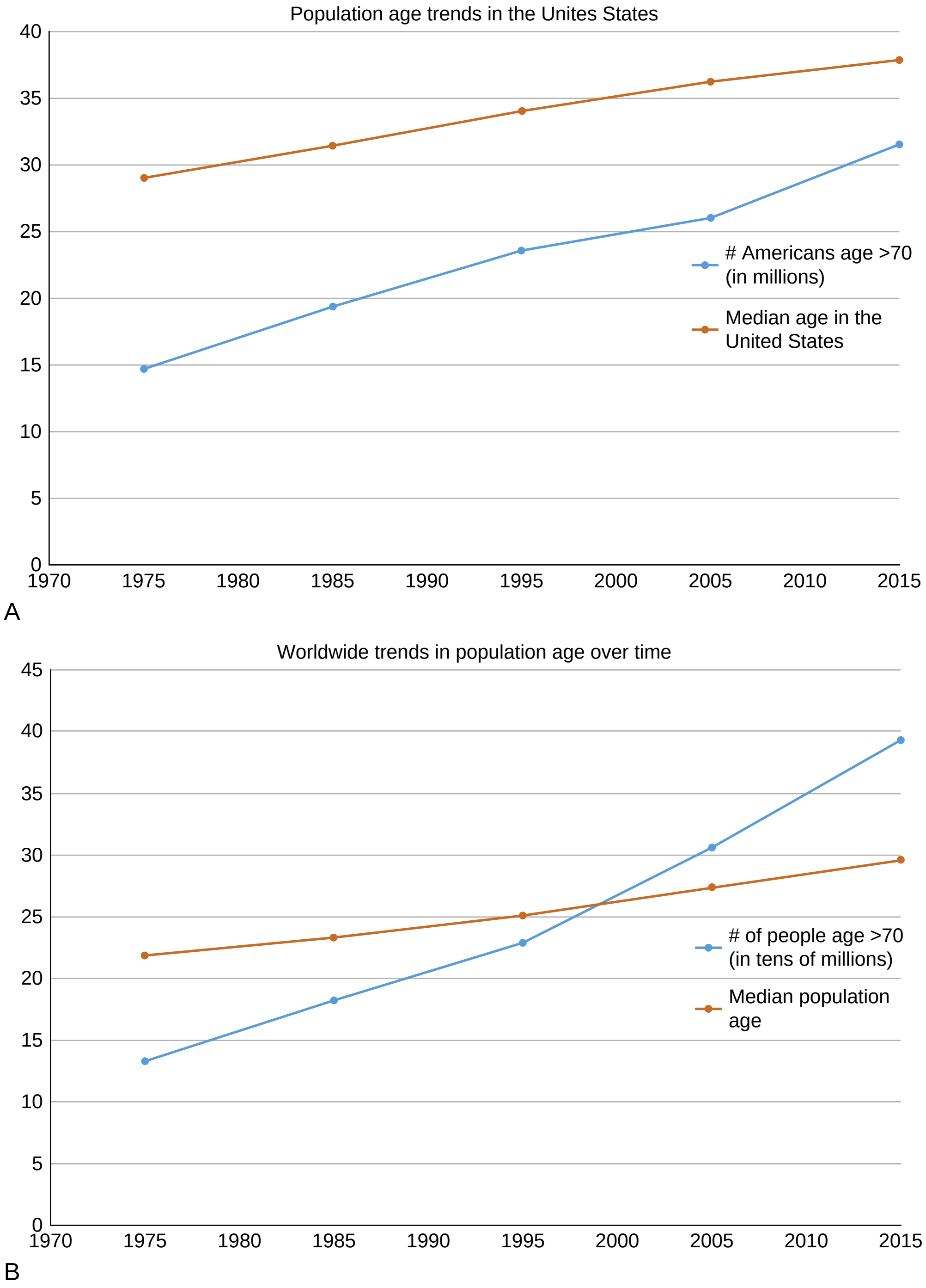


Fig. 65.1 (A) Population age trends in the United States. (B) Worldwide trends in population age over time. (C) Population percentage age >70 by decade.

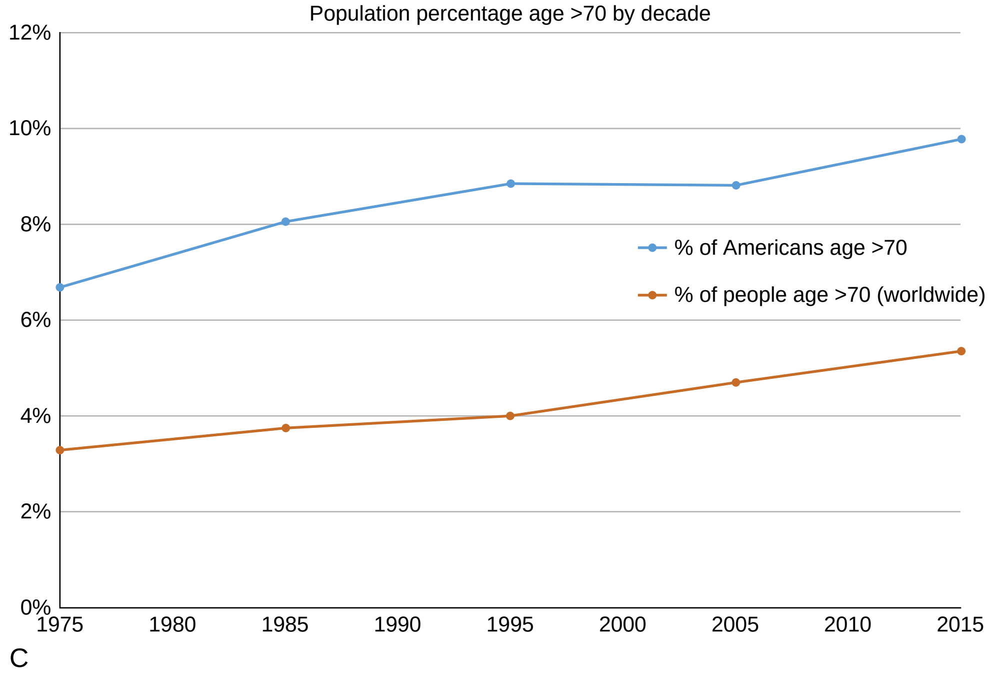


Fig. 65.1 cont'd

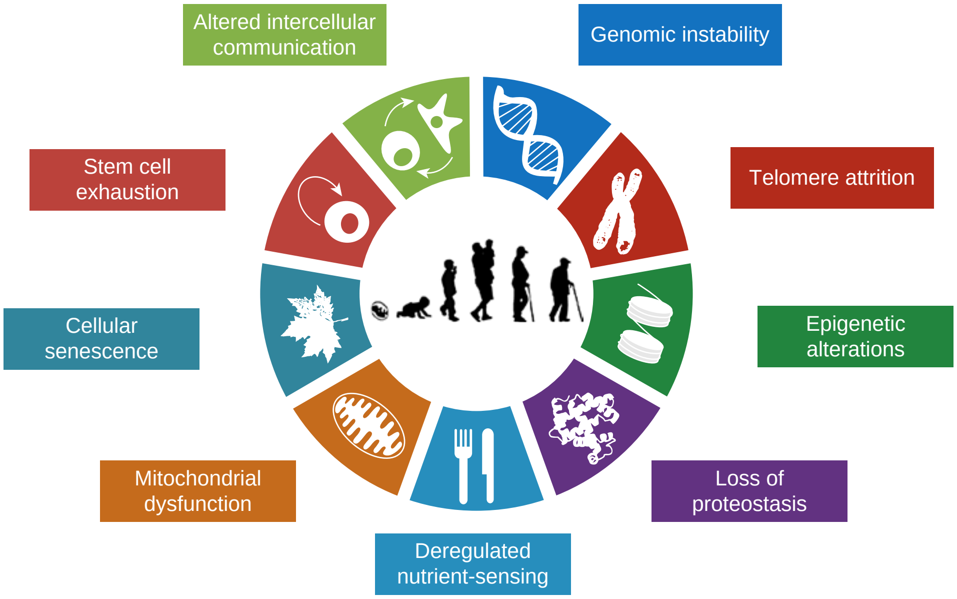

Altered intercellular communication
Genomic instability
Stem cell exhaustion
Telomere attrition
Cellular senescence
Epigenetic alterations
Mitochondrial dysfunction
Loss of proteostasis
Deregulated nutrient-sensing

Fig. 65.2 Molecular, cellular, and organ-level mechanisms of aging. (Redrawn from López-Otín C, Blasco MA, Partridge L, et al. The hallmarks of aging. *Cell*. 2013;153[6]:1194–1217.)

stasis may result from decreased vascular compliance, a low-flow state such as congestive heart failure, immobility, varicose veins, postmenopausal estrogen replacement therapy, and smoking.[2]

Myocardium

In the absence of pathology, systolic function typically remains well preserved throughout life; however, diastolic dysfunction becomes more common. Age-related myocyte death and reciprocal increases in myocyte size lead to myocardial thickening and decreased elasticity.[3] Chronic hypertension can further exacerbate cardiac hypertrophy. Ventricular thickening and stiffening, in turn, impair early diastolic filling, which falls to 50% of its peak by the age of 80 years.[4] In order to maintain cardiac output, geriatric patients are increasingly dependent on preload and atrial kick. Conversely, small decreases in circulating blood volume can lead to inadequate cardiac filling, which can significantly decrease cardiac output.

Cardiac output is also limited by a lower maximal heart rate relative to younger adults[3]; maximal heart rate can be estimated as: HR (bpm) = 220 − age (years). In the absence of arrhythmia, aging of the cardiac conduction system and autonomic system leads to decreased heart rate variability and an increased incidence of ectopic beats.[4] Arrhythmia can dramatically decrease cardiac output in older adults. Atrial fibrillation is the most common arrhythmia, affecting 1 in 10 patients 80 years of age or older.[5] Atrial fibrillation eliminates the atrial kick that decreases left ventricular filling and results in decreased cardiac output.

Cardiac Valves

Normal aging results in a thickened and calcified aortic valve. In addition, the pathologic condition of aortic stenosis is more common with aging and is present in 12.4% of those aged 75 years or older.[5] Patients with aortic stenosis depend on good diastolic volume and normal sinus rhythm to maintain myocardial perfusion. Further, patients with aortic stenosis have increased left ventricular diastolic pressure, which means that they are susceptible to decreased coronary perfusion pressure. To avoid myocardial ischemia in patients with aortic stenosis, it is important to avoid hypotension and tachycardia (which reduces the length of diastole and further impairs coronary perfusion). Even minor left ventricular dilation or a relatively small decrease in left ventricular systolic function can increase the likelihood of intraoperative decompensation.[6]

Sympathetic and Autonomic System

The ability of the sympathetic and autonomic systems to respond to physiologic derangement decreases with age. Decreased β-adrenergic sensitivity leads to a lower maximal heart rate, decreased cardiac output, and limited responsiveness to beta agonists (e.g., dobutamine).[4] Baroreceptor impairment increases the incidence of orthostatic hypotension.[2] For this reason, older patients may be more sensitive to prolonged fasting times and may benefit from drinking clear liquids up to 2 hours before surgery.

RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

As the respiratory system ages, the lungs become less compliant and the muscles involved in respiration weaken. Central responses to hypercapnia and hypoxia are blunted, which puts patients at increased risk for pharmacologic-induced respiratory depression. The incidence of both restrictive and obstructive lung disease and sleep apnea increase with age.

With the aging process, the diaphragm weakens and the chest wall stiffens because of calcification of intercostal cartilage. There are also arthritic changes in the costovertebral joints, weakening and atrophy of the intercostal muscles, and height loss due to osteoporosis and/or kyphosis.[3] Lung compliance increases as elastic recoil decreases despite increased elastin production. Therefore while total lung capacity remains unchanged, functional residual volume increases 5% to 10% per decade, leading to an overall decrease in vital capacity.[7] Aging is also associated with alveolar airspace increases similar to those seen in emphysema, decreased gas exchange, and increased ventilation-perfusion (V-Q) mismatch.[3,7] Mechanical changes include decreased vital capacity, decreased pulmonary reserve, increased work of breathing, and increased residual volume, all of which predispose older adults to atelectasis.[7] Closing capacity, the point at which small airways close, increases with age. Functional residual capacity (FRC) is reduced relative to closing capacity, which may result in atelectasis, pulmonary shunting, and hypoxemia. Certain common intraoperative conditions, such as increased intraabdominal pressure due to carbon dioxide insufflation or Trendelenburg positioning, reduce the FRC and lung compliance. Strategies to minimize atelectasis in the postoperative period include early mobilization/ambulation after surgery, chest physiotherapy, and incentive spirometry.[2]

Compared to younger patients, older patients also have weaker pharyngeal muscles, decreased clearance of secretions, decreased mucociliary transport, less efficient coughing, decreased esophageal motility, and less effective protective upper airway reflexes.[7] Together, these factors place the older population at increased risk for aspiration and postoperative pneumonia. Anesthesiologists can implement four specific strategies to reduce the risk of aspiration and other pulmonary complications. First, using neuraxial or regional anesthesia with minimal sedation in lieu of general anesthesia (when possible) can reduce the risk of aspiration by reducing anesthetic-induced interference with the cough reflex. Second, avoiding intermediate and long-acting neuromuscular blocking agents, and ensuring adequate reversal of neuromuscular blockade, can also help reduce aspiration and postoperative pneumonia risk.[2] Residual neuromuscular blockade is a particular concern in older patients with reduced pulmonary function.[7] Third, respiratory depressants such as opioids can lead to hypoventilation and respiratory acidosis, which further potentiates the effects of neuromuscular blocking agents.[7] When appropriate, opioid-sparing analgesic strategies can be helpful in older patients.[8] Fourth, neutralization of stomach acid with nonparticulate antacids (such as sodium citrate) can be helpful in preventing chemical pneumonitis and pulmonary injury in case aspiration does occur.

In addition to mechanical changes, older adults have an approximate 50% decrease in the respiratory response to hypoxia and hypercarbia, which is even more pronounced during sleep.[9] Some geriatric patients may not awaken from rapid eye movement sleep until oxygen saturation decreases significantly (e.g., to 70% or lower).[7] The most common sleep-related respiratory derangements in older adults is sleep apnea, which may affect 50% to 75% of patients over age 65.[7,10] Older patients tend to have decreased hypopharyngeal and genioglossal muscle tone, which predisposes them to upper airway obstruction, particularly during sleep.[7] Patients can be screened preoperatively for obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) using one of several screening questionnaires such as the STOP-Bang, Berlin, or American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) questionnaires.[11] Patients with OSA should be recognized as having a potentially difficult mask airway and postoperatively may benefit from continuous positive airway pressure[11] and opioid-sparing management.[12]

RENAL SYSTEM

After 50 years of age, average kidney weight decreases from approximately 250 g to 180 g, mostly as a result of cortical atrophy from glomerulosclerosis. Along with this loss of renal cortex, the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) decreases by about 1 mL/min/m^2 per year starting at 40 years of age.[3] Chronic diseases frequently found in the older population (e.g., hypertension, diabetes mellitus, and atherosclerosis) can exacerbate this normal age-related decline in renal function. Although elderly patients typically have normal serum creatinine levels, they also tend to have decreased lean muscle mass and lower creatinine overall. Therefore a "normal" serum creatinine in an older patient may belie a reduced glomerular filtration reserve and obscure the resulting renal sensitivity to ischemic and nephrotoxic injuries. Specifically, in the setting of reduced GFR, medications that are excreted through the kidney may accumulate if the dose is not appropriately adjusted.

In addition to reduced GFR, blunted responses to aldosterone, vasopressin, and renin also reduce the older patient's ability to adjust volume status and may result in electrolyte and acid-base derangements. In particular, older adults are susceptible to dysnatremias; hyponatremia affects 11% of the geriatric ambulatory community and 5.3% of hospitalized geriatric patients. Hypernatremia affects 1% of hospitalized patients age 60 and older.[13] Further, because older adults often have inappropriate sodium excretion, they are particularly prone to hypotension and acute kidney injury in the setting of hypovolemia.[13]

The incidence of urologic disease (i.e., bladder and prostate) also increases with age. The incidence of postoperative urinary retention increases in older men and women.[14] This is an important point to recognize because discomfort due to urinary retention can be a common cause of postoperative agitation. Urinary tract infections (UTI) also increase in incidence in older men and women.[2] Elderly women may have skin breakdown in the genital area because of vaginal atrophy from decreased estrogen,[15] which increases the risk of UTI.[16] In addition, the incidence of pelvic prolapse in women increases with age and also increases the risk of UTI.

GASTROINTESTINAL AND HEPATIC SYSTEMS

The size and function of the liver decrease with age, which affects hepatic drug metabolism. After age 50, the liver decreases from 2.5% of total body mass to 1.5% in part due to fewer hepatocytes and decreased blood flow.[3] Despite having fewer hepatocytes, healthy older adults typically have normal liver synthetic function, though they have reduced reserve under stress.[3] Similarly, hepatic blood flow decreases with age such that the average 65 year old has 40% less hepatic blood flow than the average 25 year old.[17] Older populations may more slowly metabolize drugs that are cleared by phase-1 pathways (e.g., oxidation, reduction, and hydrolysis through the cytochrome P450 system) because of decreased hepatic blood flow,[18] but phase II metabolism (e.g., acetylation and conjugation) does not seem to be affected by age.[17] Anesthesiologists should be aware that older adults are slower at clearing high extraction drugs whose clearance depends directly on hepatic blood flow (e.g., ketamine, flumazenil, morphine, fentanyl, sufentanil, and lidocaine).[17]

The incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting decreases with age, which is fortunate because many antiemetics act through anticholinergic and/or antihistaminergic mechanisms, which can cause altered mental status and delirium. The Beers criteria recommend against most of these medications as they increase the risk of delirium.[2] Specifically, the Beers criteria recommend avoiding prochlorperazine, promethazine, metoclopramide (except in the setting of gastroparesis), and corticosteroid prophylaxis.[2,19] The 5-HT3 receptor antagonists (e.g., ondansetron), are a better choice for older adults, although the 5-HT3 antagonists contribute to QTc interval prolongation.[2]

The incidence of some hepatic and gastrointestinal pathologies increases with age. For example, the incidence of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) increases with age, affecting nearly half of geriatric patients; however, in contrast to younger populations, it is unclear whether NAFLD is associated with metabolic syndrome, cardiovascular disease, or cirrhosis when it is first diagnosed at an advanced age.[20] That said, as the obese diabetic patients with NAFLD age and become geriatric patients, they have an increased risk of complications, such as severe hepatic fibrosis, hepatocellular carcinoma, and cryptogenic cirrhosis.[20] Whereas hepatic pathology certainly impacts anesthetic management, other common gastrointestinal disorders of older adults, such as diverticulosis and cholelithiasis, typically do not.

MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM

As with other organ systems, the aging musculoskeletal system undergoes changes relevant to anesthesiologists. Among the well-functioning older adult, lean muscle mass declines by roughly 1% annually while muscle strength declines by roughly 3% annually, meaning muscle function and quality decreases faster with age than muscle quantity does.[21] Maintaining strength in the perioperative period is critical in older people. Declining muscle strength is associated with increased mortality risk,[22] and older adults lose muscle mass much faster than their younger counterparts. For example, healthy older adults who were placed on bedrest for 10 days experienced greater loss of muscle mass than healthy younger adults who were placed on bed rest for 28 days.[23]

Decreased lean muscle mass can prove misleading among older patients, whose weight may remain stable, while their total body fat increases and their subcutaneous (insulating) fat reserves decrease. A 10-year longitudinal study of older adults showed a 23% per decade decline in subcutaneous fat with a concurrent average 11% per decade increase in total body fat.[24] Diminished subcutaneous fat thickness and age-related dysregulation of cutaneous circulation help to explain why older patients are much more prone to temperature dysregulation intraoperatively even though the basal core temperature of the elderly (aged 65-95) is only about 0.4°C (0.7°F) lower than that of other adults (aged 25-64).[25] Age-related dysregulation of the cutaneous microcirculation also contributes to impaired wound healing. Anesthesiologists can optimize surgical healing in this population by maintaining adequate hydration, normothermia, and good tissue oxygenation.[26]

Along with age-related changes in the muscles and skin, aging affects the skeletal system as well. Osteoarthritis affects about half of those aged 75 and older and can lead to limited joint mobility in older patients. Anesthesiologists should be aware of this and inquire about this with older patients to avoid exacerbating preexisting joint issues while positioning the patient in the operating room.[27]

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

Changes in the aging central nervous system can give rise to a host of age-related concerns, such as cognitive decline, memory loss, sleep derangements, dementia, movement disorders, depression, and an increased risk of delirium. Although the number of neurons in the brain does not decrease in normal aging, older brains have fewer dendrites and synapses, which contributes to decreased brain volume and to decreased neuronal connectivity, particularly in the hippocampus, frontal/prefrontal cortex, and the temporal lobe.[28] Specifically, magnetic resonance imaging studies have shown that cortical gray matter thins at a rate of 0.5% to 1% per year in the geriatric brain.[29] Further, age-related dysregulation of neuronal transmission, baseline neuronal firing, calcium metabolism, and gene expression diminishes both connectivity and plasticity.[30] Functionally, these physiologic changes contribute to normal, age-related cognitive decline in many domains such as executive function, cognitive processing speed, working and spatial memory, and maintenance of circadian rhythm. Of particular relevance to anesthesiologists, these age-dependent decreases in cognitive reserve may manifest as increased sensitivity to anesthetic medications, an increased risk of postoperative cognitive dysfunction and delirium, and a decrease in function.

Specifically, in dementia, the decline in memory and cognition becomes severe enough to interfere with daily activities whereas in mild cognitive impairment, cognitive decline is measurable and noticeable, but does not interfere with one's ability to perform daily activities. Frank neuron loss typically occurs in dementia, regardless of the dementia subtype. In Alzheimer disease, a complex interplay between abnormal tau and beta-amyloid proteins seems to precipitate global neuronal cell death while in vascular dementia, neuronal cells die because of hemodynamic compromise, leading to a step-wise decline in cognitive function. Finally, in Lewy body dementia abnormal α-synuclein deposits give rise to neuronal death. Overall, dementia increases dramatically in prevalence with advancing age in a step-wise manner (Fig. 65.3), affecting nearly two-thirds of patients over the age of 90 years.[31]

Dementia presents challenges for anesthesiologists, particularly regarding pain management. For example, patient-controlled analgesia may not be an option. Opioid administration is often difficult to titrate in these patients, and patients may not be able to cooperate with regional anesthesia. Further, patients with dementia may also develop concurrent delirium, which can be difficult to disambiguate from underlying dementia. Similarly, Parkinson disease presents a particular challenge for the anesthesiologist. Patients with Parkinson disease are more prone to developing immobility and thus deep venous thrombosis; dysphagia and respiratory dysfunction and thus aspiration and pneumonia; urinary retention and thus UTI; and psychiatric complications and thus delirium.[32] Drug interactions can be a particular concern in patients with Parkinson disease. For example, many antiemetic drugs such as metoclopramide and promethazine antagonize dopamine and may worsen extrapyramidal symptoms. Inhibitors of the enzyme monoamine oxidase (MAO)-B, which are frequently used in Parkinson disease, can predispose patients to serotonin syndrome, particularly if used in conjunction with certain opiates such as tramadol.[33] Propofol can induce dyskinesia in this population,[34] which can be managed with dexmedetomidine.[33]

Mood disorders, particularly depression, are often underrecognized in older adults. Minor depression affects approximately 7.7% of geriatric primary care patients, approximately 14.4% of geriatric patients in hospital settings, and nearly 20% of those with minor cognitive impairment.[35] Depression predisposes patients to postoperative cognitive dysfunction (POCD), in-hospital delirium, major adverse cardiac events, increased postoperative analgesic use, and suboptimal postoperative outcomes.[36-38] Discussion of mood symptoms prior to anesthesia can help to inform perioperative management and the use of antidepressant medications. Typically, antidepressants are continued during the perioperative period because of the risks of "discontinuation syndrome" and because of their benefits for pain management[39]; however, MAO inhibitors can lead to severe hypotension in the setting of sympathetic stimulation or in conjunction with sympathomimetic drugs. Even selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, the most commonly

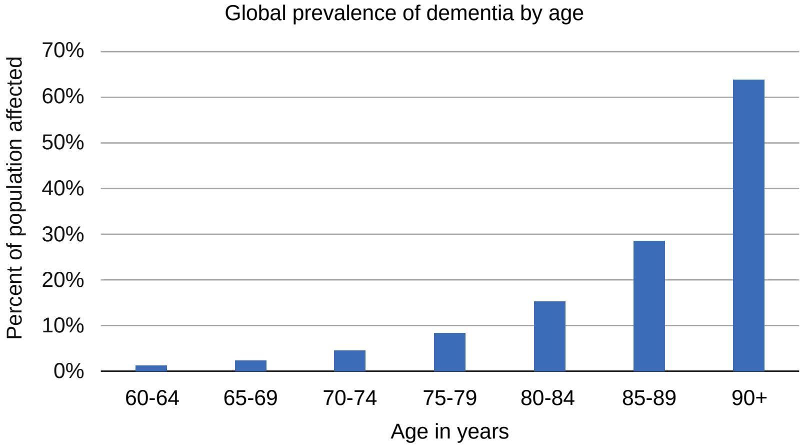


Fig. 65.3 Global prevalence of dementia by age. (Redrawn from Prince M, Bryce R, Albanese E, et al. The global prevalence of dementia: a systematic review and metaanalysis. *Alzheimers Dement.* 2013;9:63–75.)

used and "safest" antidepressants, have been associated with a higher risk of in-hospital mortality, bleeding, and readmission.[40]

Finally, delirium and POCD are two common postoperative complications in older patients. Each of these topics have dedicated chapters in this text, so they are only briefly reviewed here. Delirium, which affects about 10% of older postoperative patients overall and 60% to 80% of intensive care unit (ICU) patients, manifests as acute, fluctuating confusion with altered attention and awareness that cannot be better explained by preexisting or developing dementia. Common delirium screening tools include the Confusion Assessment Method (CAM) and the CAM-ICU for ventilated ICU patients. Few treatments for delirium have proven efficacious; however, management of underlying medical conditions (e.g., electrolyte imbalances, infections), modifying risk factors (e.g., reducing sleep deprivation, increasing mobility, giving patients their glasses and hearing aids, ensuring good hydration), and avoiding or limiting medications known to trigger delirium (e.g., benzodiazepines, dihydropyridines, antihistamines, opioids) may prove beneficial. In contrast to delirium, POCD is a syndrome defined by worsening performance on neuropsychologic tests postoperatively compared to a perioperative baseline.[41] Overall, this decline in cognitive performance across multiple domains presents days to weeks after surgery and is associated more strongly with age than any other risk factor.[42] By and large, POCD resolves within months of both cardiac and noncardiac surgery; however, individual patients may follow different trajectories with declines remaining up to 5 years or longer.[41]

Preoperative Assessment

Preoperative assessment of the geriatric surgical patient follows the general principles of good medical care while adding special attention to issues that may have greater incidence or impact in older adults. In 2014, the American College of Surgeons (ACS) convened an expert panel and published a consensus statement with evidence-based recommendations.[43] Good medical care–type recommendations include the use of the American College of Cardiology and American Heart Association algorithm for patients undergoing noncardiac surgery,[44] ordering appropriate laboratory tests based on comorbidity, and determination of the risk for postoperative pulmonary complications. Geriatric-specific evaluation includes assessment of the patient's cognitive ability, identifying the risk for postoperative delirium (covered in detail in Chapter 82), documentation of functional/frailty/fall-risk status, monitoring for polypharmacy, screening for depression and alcohol use, understanding patient's expectations, and advanced directives.

COGNITIVE ASSESSMENT AND DELIRIUM RISK

In the immediate perioperative period, occult preoperative cognitive impairment in older adults is common; the incidence is more than 20% of patients over 65 years of age presenting for presurgical testing with the highest prevalence in the oldest patients.[45] However, talking with patients and families about cognitive health before and after surgery is a new challenge for anesthesiologists. In 2016, the ASA launched the Brain Health Initiative, which is a "low barrier access program to minimize the impact of preexisting cognitive deficits, and optimize the cognitive recovery and perioperative experience for adults 65 and over…." The basic principles of the program include screening for preoperative cognitive impairment and that anesthesiologists lead discussions regarding the potential for postoperative delirium and cognitive dysfunction.

The cognitive assessment of patients prior to surgery can be challenging. In-depth neuropsychiatric testing is not practical for most pretesting centers since it often involves an hour or more of tests administered by a trained individual. More practical for the presurgical arena is the use of brief screening tools that are meant to identify patients who are likely to have cognitive impairment (Table 65.1). A recent large study suggests that cognitive screening in a pretesting clinic is practical and well accepted by patients and staff members.[45] An obvious but difficult question for anesthesiologists is how to proceed when a patient is identified as likely to have cognitive impairment. Informing patients and offering

TABLE 65.1 Brief Cognitive Screening Tools

Tool/Test	Advantage	Disadvantage	Sensitivity (%)*	Specificity (%)*	Time to Administer
Minicog[45,49,75-77]	Brief, minimal language, education, race bias	Use of different word lists may affect scoring	76-100 (54-100)	54-85.2 (43-88.4)	2-4 min
Montreal Cognitive Assessment (MoCA)[78-81]	Can identify mild cognitive impairment, available in multiple languages	Education bias, limited published data	n/a	n/a	10-15 min
Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE)[77,82,83]	Widely used and studied	Subject to age and cultural bias, ceiling effects	88.3 (81.3-92.9)	86.2 (81.8-89.7)	7-10 min
Clock-drawing Test[77,84]	Very brief	No standards for administration and scoring	67-97.9 (39-100)	69-94.2(54-97.1)	<2 min
Verbal Fluency Test[77,85]	Brief	Cut point not obvious	37-89.5 (19-100)	62-97 (48-99)	2-4 min
Cognitive Disorder Examination (CODEX)[86-88]	Brief	Less well-studied	81-93	81-85	≤3 min

*Sensitivity and specificity values are for the detection of cognitive impairment or dementia—see references for more detail.

them postsurgical follow-up with an expert in cognition is important. The same study showed that patients believe that screening before surgery is important and that they want to know their results. Baseline cognition is also important for delirium-risk stratification; patients with cognitive impairment are at higher risk and therefore may benefit the most from delirium prevention programs. Additionally patients, caregivers, and the perioperative team should have this information since these patients are more likely to require a higher level of care after surgery such as a skilled nursing facility.[46] The ACS guidelines strongly recommend performing cognitive assessment early in the patient evaluation because impairment suggests that medication information and functional status reporting may be unreliable, although in the latter there is some evidence to the contrary.[47]

Although preoperative cognitive impairment is a risk factor for the occurrence and severity of postoperative delirium, it is not the only risk factor.[48] There are several delirium-risk prediction indices and examples of two delirium prediction tools are listed in Table 65.2. Whereas each index is a bit different, most include age, cognitive status before surgery, then some index of medical illness, and the invasive nature of the surgery.[49-51]

FUNCTIONAL/FRAILTY SCREENING

Frailty is a common and morbid condition found with a higher prevalence in older adults before surgery (25%-56%)[52,53] than in community-dwelling elders (10%).[54] Frailty has been conceptualized in two major ways: one includes decreased reserve to physiologic stress and is characterized by decline across organ systems; and the other is an accumulation of deficits, that is, the accumulation of comorbid states that can result in overall physiologic vulnerability. Frailty has been shown to correlate with poor postoperative outcomes (death, complications) in a wide range of major surgeries.

Although frailty is a geriatric syndrome it does not need to be measured by a geriatrician. The classic frailty phenotype measured by Linda Fried[55] did require expertise; however, there are now several validated frailty screening tools.[56] It is not clear which of the screening tools best measures frailty and the answer may vary for different populations and settings.[53,57] For instance, a frailty screen that includes grip strength may not be best suited for a cervical spine population that often has cervical myelopathy. The preoperative testing facility may dictate the type of assessment possible; some preoperative clinic areas are not suitable for a 5-meter gait speed test. Table 65.3 has examples of frailty assessment tools.[58]

Frail and/or prefrailty has been shown to correlate strongly with complications and mortality in a wide range of surgeries. Ideally frailty can inform procedure selection, patient-doctor conversations, and discharge planning. Prehabilitation including nutritional support and exercise may be considered, although exact protocols have not been well vetted. Certainly, malnutrition is more common in preoperative older surgical patients and is associated with postoperative complications and increased length of stay.[59] Frailty is also a risk factor for delirium and frail patients may benefit from multidisciplinary interventions to support orientation, early mobilization, and maintenance of sleep-wake cycles. Preoperative identification of frailty for the surgical team has been shown to increase utilization of palliative care consults and improve patient outcomes.[60,61]

PALLIATIVE CARE

Palliative care focuses on relief of suffering and improvement of quality of life in patients with serious but not necessarily terminal illness. The use of palliative care expert consultants to support patients undergoing surgical intervention is relatively new.[62] Palliative care was recognized as a medical specialty in 2006 and certified its first physicians in 2008. In 2012 there were fewer than 100 surgeons and anesthesiologists certified in palliative care, and although the fellowship spots are increasing, there is a relative shortage.[62] This implies that most palliative care for surgical patients is provided by nonsurgical subspecialty providers. Research regarding the use of surgery

TABLE 65.2 Validated Risk Models for Prediction of Postoperative Delirium in Cardiac and Noncardiac Surgery Patients

Authors	Patients and Surgery	Risk Factors	Results
Rudolph and colleagues[96]	Cardiac surgery ($n = 122$ for derivation cohort, $n = 109$ for validation cohort)	▪ Previous stroke (1 point) ▪ Geriatric Depression Scale >4 (1 point) ▪ Abnormal albumin (1 point) ▪ MMSE 24-27 (1 point) or MMSE <24 (2 points)	In the validation cohort, the cumulative incidence of delirium for each point level was as follows: 0 points, 18%; 1 point, 43%; 2 points, 60%; and ≥3 points, 87%
Marcantonio and colleagues[50]	General, orthopedic, and gynecologic surgery ($n = 876$ for derivation cohort, $n = 465$ for validation cohort)	▪ Age >70 years ▪ Alcohol abuse ▪ Poor cognitive status* ▪ Poor functional status† ▪ Markedly abnormal sodium, potassium, or glucose‡ ▪ Noncardiac thoracic surgery ▪ Aortic aneurysm surgery	In the validation cohort, the cumulative incidence of delirium for each point level was as follows: 0 points, <1%; 1 point, 8%; 2 points, 19%; and ≥3 points, 45%

*Defined as telephone interview for cognitive status <30.
†Specific Activity Scale = IV.
‡Defined as sodium <130 or >150 mmol/L, potassium <3.0 or >6.0 mmol/L, and glucose <60 or >300 mg/dL.
MMSE, Mini-Mental State Examination.
(From Brown C IV, Deiner S. Perioperative cognitive protection. *Br J Anaesth.* 2016;117(S3):iii52–iii63.)

TABLE 65.3 Frailty Assessment Tools and Scoring Systems in Current Literature

Frailty Measure	Description	Clinical Outcome	Source
Frailty phenotype	Weight loss, grip strength, exhaustion, low physical activity, and 15 feet walking speed	30 days postoperative complications, institutionalization, and length of stay	Makary et al.[52] Revenig et al.[97]
Frailty index/deficit accumulation	30-70 measures of comorbidity, ADL, physical and neurological exam	Mortality and institutionalization	Mitnitski et al.[98] Rockwood et al.[99]
Modified frailty index	History of diabetes, COPD or pneumonia; congestive heart failure; myocardial infarction; angina/PCI; hypertension requiring medication; peripheral vascular disease; dementia; TIA or CVA; CVA with neurological deficit; ADL	30-day, 1-year, and 2-year mortality, 30-day major postoperative complications	Adams et al.[100] Farhat et al.[101] Karam et al.[102] Obeid et al.[103] Patel et al.[104] Tsiouris et al.[105] Velanovich et al.[106]
Gait speed	5-m gait ≥6 s	Mortality, major postoperative complications, institutionalization, and length of stay	Afilalo et al.[107]
Timed up and go	TUG ≤10 s; 11-14 s; ≥15 s	1-year mortality	Robinson et al.[108]
Falls	6-month hx of falls	30-day major postoperative complications, institutionalization, and 30-day readmission	Jones et al.[109]
Robinson	Katz Score, Mini cognition, Charlson Index, anemia <35%, albumin <3.4, hx of falls	30-day major postoperative complications, length of stay, 30-day readmission, 6-month postoperative mortality	Robinson et al.[110,111]

ADL, Activities of daily living; *Cog*, cognition; *COPD*, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; *CVA*, cerebrovascular accident; *PCI*, percutaneous coronary intervention; *TIA*, transient ischemic attack; *TUG*, Timed Up and Go.

(From Amrock LG, Deiner S. The implication of frailty on preoperative risk assessment. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2014;27[3]:330–335.)

and palliative care is relatively new; however one study found that frailty screening in an elderly veterans' hospital surgical cohort increased preoperative palliative care consultation and was associated with a 33% reduction in 180-day mortality.[61]

POLYPHARMACY

Preoperative assessment of medications is very important; studies suggest that the incidence of discrepancies between surgical and anesthesiology assessments are greater than 70%.[63] The advent of computerized medical records can be helpful or harmful as medications which are not deleted from the record may continue to appear as current. Therefore medical reconciliation at admission and discharge is required to assure up-to-date information. Best practice may include working with pharmacists to review patient medications for polypharmacy and potential drug interactions and contraindicated medications for older adults. These include the American Geriatric Society's Beers Criteria for Potentially Inappropriate Medication Use in Older Adults.[64] The list includes several medications commonly seen in anesthesia order sets: meperidine, scopolamine, benzodiazepines (Table 65.4).

DEPRESSION AND ALCOHOL SCREENING

Depression and alcohol abuse each have approximately a 10% incidence in older adults, and each are associated with a more difficult postoperative course. The former is associated with greater pain perception and increased need for postoperative analgesics, and the latter postoperative complications such as pneumonia and sepsis.[65] Depression can be assessed using tools such as the Patient Health Questionnaire -2[66] which asks:

"In the past 12 months have you ever had a time when you felt sad, blue, depressed or down for most of the time for at least 2 weeks?"

"In the past 12 months have you ever had a time lasting at least 2 weeks when you didn't care about the things you usually cared about or when you didn't enjoy the things that you usually enjoyed?"

"Yes" to either constitutes a positive screen which needs further evaluation.

The classic screening tool for alcohol use is the modified CAGE questionnaire which has been validated for use in older adults.[67,68] The questionnaire consists of four questions:

- Have you ever felt you needed to cut down on your drinking?
- Have people annoyed you by criticizing your drinking?
- Have you ever felt guilty about drinking?
- Have you ever felt you needed a drink first thing in the morning (Eye Opener) to steady your nerves or get rid of a hangover?

"Yes" to any question triggers consideration for perioperative prophylaxis for withdrawal syndromes, supplementation of folic acid and thiamine, and consideration of the need for a detoxification protocol supervised by an addiction specialist.[43]

CAPACITY/ADVANCED DIRECTIVES/ EXPECTATIONS/SUPPORT

Capacity

In working with older adults, it is important to understand whether they retain the capacity for medical decision making. Cognition may overlap with capacity but is not the same thing. Many patients with mild cognitive

TABLE 65.4 Common Medications in the Perioperative Period With Potential Neurological Side Effects That Are Also on the 2012 Beers Criteria List for Potentially Inappropriate Medication Use in Older Adults

Drug	Rationale
Diphenhydramine	Highly anticholinergic; may increase confusion
Hydroxyzine	Highly anticholinergic; may increase confusion
Scopolamine	Highly anticholinergic
Amitriptyline	Highly anticholinergic; sedating
Antipsychotics	Increased risk of stroke and mortality in persons with dementia
Benzodiazepines	Older adults have increased sensitivity and decreased metabolism; risk of cognitive impairment, delirium, and falls
Metoclopramide	Extrapyramidal side-effects; risk may be increased in older adults
Pethidine	Not effective analgesic; may cause neurotoxicity
Pentazocine	May cause central nervous system adverse events, including confusion and hallucinations
Neuromuscular blocking drugs	Poorly tolerated by older adults, with anticholinergic adverse effects

From Brown C IV, Deiner S. Perioperative cognitive protection. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117(S3):iii52–iii-63.

impairment may retain capacity. The legal definition of capacity includes[69]:

- Ability to communicate treatment choice.
- Comprehension of the information given by the physicians.
- Able to voice understanding of their medical condition, options for therapy, and outcomes.
- The ability to conduct a rational discussion regarding their treatment options.

Patients may retain capacity for some decisions and not others, or not have capacity for medical decision making entirely. In the case where an older patient does not have capacity for medical decision making it is important to understand whether there is someone who has power of attorney. Working with the power of attorney and with respect to the patient's wishes, the older adult can be included in the discussion as appropriate.

Shared Decision Making/Expectations

Advanced directives are documents that provide information on patient wishes for healthcare decisions in the event that they cannot participate in decision making (Fig. 65.4). Discussion of advanced directives is an important part of understanding and respecting patient's goals of care. The ASA guidelines state that Do-Not-Resuscitate orders should not be automatically suspended in the perioperative period. According to the patient's wishes they may choose to accept limited attempts at resuscitation in the case of certain procedures or in certain contexts (e.g., quickly and easily reversible adverse events such as a drop in blood pressure or need for transfusion). As administration of anesthesia may involve procedures that overlap with resuscitation, the nuances of which procedures are acceptable to the patient and/or surrogate should be reviewed before the procedure. The anesthesiologist should discuss and document any modification of the directive, such as the patient's wishes in the event of complications and plans for postoperative care. These should be communicated to the surgeon before the procedure; the case of conflict between providers may require institutional clarification.

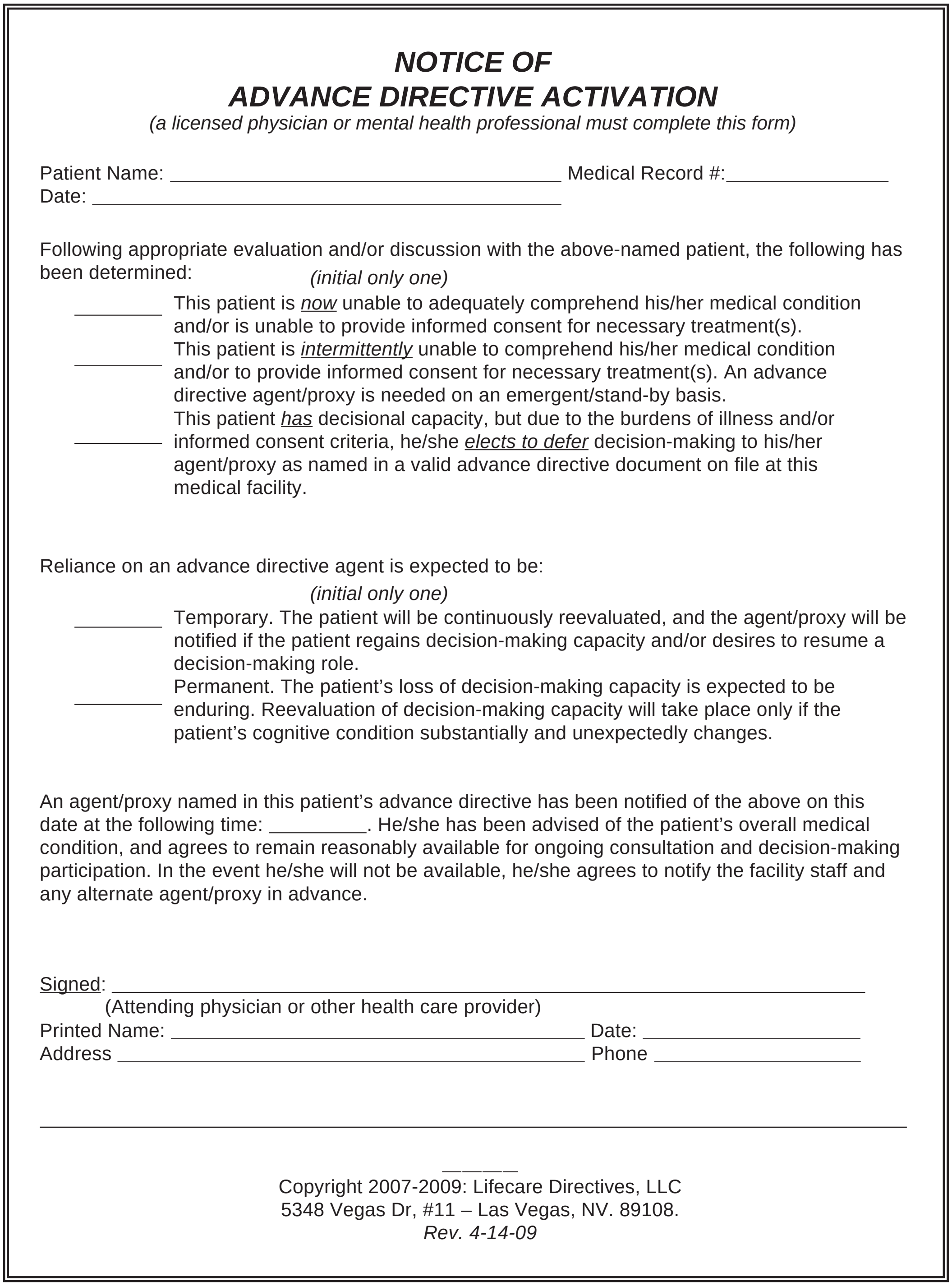
Intraoperative Management Considerations for Older Adults

Once preoperative assessment and preprocedure consent have been completed, the anesthesiologist's task is to design an intraoperative anesthetic plan for each individual older patient that provides adequate intraoperative and postoperative analgesia, effective sedation or amnesia, hemodynamic stability, and optimal operating conditions (i.e., surgical site immobility) for the surgical team. It is difficult to make general intraoperative recommendations for older adults, partly because of the wide heterogeneity in organ system reserve and overall functional status across older patients. The anesthetic plan for each individual older patient should be based on each patient's comorbid illnesses, organ system reserve, and overall functional status.

Nonetheless, a large body of research has examined specific anesthetic techniques in older adults, and several general recommendations can be made (Box 65.1). Likely due to decreased physiologic reserve, many older adults require more careful intraoperative management than younger, healthier patients with greater physiologic reserve. Thus drug administration, "anesthetic depth," and hemodynamic status should be titrated even more carefully in older adults than in other patient groups. Increased monitoring, such as electroencephalogram-based anesthetic titration, may be helpful in this regard. Overall, no specific anesthetic drug or technique (e.g., regional versus general anesthesia) has been consistently associated with an increased (or decreased) incidence of postoperative neurocognitive disorders, such as delirium or postoperative cognitive dysfunction in older patients.

Postoperative Concerns

Best practice guidelines from the ACS for the postoperative period include adequate pain control and a geriatric-focused prevention checklist that includes: delirium, pulmonary complications, falls, postoperative UTIs or urinary retention, pressure ulcer prevention, and care transitions. There are no specific recommendations for care of the older adult in the recovery room. However, the physiology of aging and common diseases suggests that these patients are at higher risk for desaturation (because of decreased closing capacity and a tendency toward atelectasis) and aspiration (for example, due to a less vigorous ability to cough). Maximizing the patient's ability to take deep breaths by elevating the



NOTICE OF
ADVANCE DIRECTIVE ACTIVATION

(a licensed physician or mental health professional must complete this form)

Patient Name: ____________________________________ Medical Record #:_______________
Date: ____

Following appropriate evaluation and/or discussion with the above-named patient, the following has been determined: *(initial only one)*

________ This patient is *now* unable to adequately comprehend his/her medical condition and/or is unable to provide informed consent for necessary treatment(s).

________ This patient is *intermittently* unable to comprehend his/her medical condition and/or to provide informed consent for necessary treatment(s). An advance directive agent/proxy is needed on an emergent/stand-by basis.

________ This patient *has* decisional capacity, but due to the burdens of illness and/or informed consent criteria, he/she *elects to defer* decision-making to his/her agent/proxy as named in a valid advance directive document on file at this medical facility.

Reliance on an advance directive agent is expected to be:

(initial only one)

________ Temporary. The patient will be continuously reevaluated, and the agent/proxy will be notified if the patient regains decision-making capacity and/or desires to resume a decision-making role.

________ Permanent. The patient's loss of decision-making capacity is expected to be enduring. Reevaluation of decision-making capacity will take place only if the patient's cognitive condition substantially and unexpectedly changes.

An agent/proxy named in this patient's advance directive has been notified of the above on this date at the following time: _________. He/she has been advised of the patient's overall medical condition, and agrees to remain reasonably available for ongoing consultation and decision-making participation. In the event he/she will not be available, he/she agrees to notify the facility staff and any alternate agent/proxy in advance.

Signed: ____
(Attending physician or other health care provider)
Printed Name: ____________________________________ Date: ____________________
Address ____ Phone ____________________

Copyright 2007-2009: Lifecare Directives, LLC
5348 Vegas Dr, #11 – Las Vegas, NV. 89108.
Rev. 4-14-09

Fig. 65.4 Example of a Notice of Advance Directive Activation Form. (Modified from http://www.lifecaredirectives.com/assets/Brochures/AD%20ACTIVATION%2009.pdf.)

head of the bed and providing adequate but not excessive pain management may combat these issues.

The issue of pain perception and tolerance has been a controversial area of study. A recent meta-analysis suggests that aging has no strong effect on pain tolerance although there may be some decreased sensitivity for low-intensity pain, most specifically to heat.[70] Therefore it is important to aggressively monitor and treat older adults for pain and regularly reassess their condition to avoid oversedation. In the case of patients with dementia, and/or nonverbal patients, it may be important to employ tools that can help identify pain behaviors, such as the Pain Assessment in Impaired Cognition tool. Measures for adequate pain control include the judicious use of multimodal therapy and regional anesthesia. Care must be taken to avoid use of Beers list medications, which include gabapentin and long-acting opioids.

Delirium prevention is covered in Chapters 23, 52, and 80. Some general strategies are listed in Table 65.5. In brief, multidisciplinary nonpharmacologic programs have been the most successful efforts to reduce delirium. The

BOX 65.1 **Delirium Prevention Strategies**

- Education targeted to healthcare professionals about delirium
- Multicomponent, multidisciplinary nonpharmacologic interventions that may include:
  - Daily physical activity
  - Cognitive reorientation
  - Bedside presence of a family member whenever possible
  - Sleep enhancement (e.g., nonpharmacologic sleep protocol and sleep hygiene)
  - Early mobility and/or physical rehabilitation
  - Adaptations for visual and hearing impairment
  - Nutrition and fluid repletion
  - Pain management
  - Appropriate medication usage
  - Adequate oxygenation
  - Prevention of constipation
  - Minimization of patient tethers whenever possible (e.g., Foley catheters, periodic removal of sequential compression devices, electrocardiogram cords)

program most commonly used is the Hospital Elder Life Program (HELP), which includes reorientation, mobilization, and promotion of regular sleep-wake cycles. HELP has been shown to reduce delirium, cognitive and functional decline, and to be cost effective.[71,72] Antipsychotic medication should only be used to treat agitated delirium in the patient who may be a danger to self or staff and never used as prophylaxis.[64] Benzodiazepines are contraindicated for this situation and may worsen a delirium episode.

Outcomes

As previous editions noted, the goal of surgery for the older adult includes preserving independence and function while treating the presenting condition. Large administrative datasets are just beginning to collect enough in-depth information to help practitioners understand outcomes in greater depth than 30-day mortality. The National Surgical Quality Improvement Database launched a

TABLE 65.5 Recommended Intraoperative Practices for Older Adults (By Systems)

	Practice Suggestion	**Rationale**
GENERAL PHARMACOLOGIC POINTS		
	Careful drug titration	Age-related changes in the volume of distribution for many drugs, albumin concentration, and other changes cause changes in the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of many anesthetic drugs[95]
NERVOUS SYSTEM		
	Consider using EEG-based anesthetic dosage titration	Reduces postoperative delirium rates[89-93]; may reduce postoperative cognitive dysfunction rates[89,91]
	Consider titrating intraoperative hemodynamics and transfusion management in response to cerebral oximetry	May reduce postoperative delirium rates[91,92]
	Reduce MAC fraction	MAC and MAC-awake decline by 6% per decade after age 30; increased MAC fraction is associated with increased rates of PONV, POCD, delirium[92,94]
	Reduce opioid administration	Opioid sensitivity increases with age; reducing opioid dosage may reduce postoperative respiratory depression
	Minimize dosage of neuromuscular blocking agents, and/or ensure that they are fully reversed (i.e., Train-of-four ratio >90%) prior to extubation	Reduces postoperative pulmonary complications
	Avoid use of drugs on Beers list (see Table 65.4)	Reduces rates of postoperative delirium, altered mental status
CARDIOVASCULAR		
	Avoid hypotension	Helps reduce rates of acute kidney injury; helps ensure adequate coronary perfusion
	Avoid hypertension	Helps reduce myocardial ischemia by avoiding excessive afterload and resultant increases in myocardial oxygen consumption (i.e., myocardial workload)
SKIN		
	Pad skin carefully	Helps avoid pressure ulcers
MUSCULOSKELETAL		
	Pad joints and exposed nerves (e.g., ulnar nerve)	Helps minimize the increased risk of intraoperative nerve injury, which is increased in elderly due to loss of soft tissue/padding

POCD, Postoperative cognitive decline; *PONV*, postoperative nausea and vomiting.

geriatric-specific data collection in January 2014. This enhanced collection included risk factors and outcomes in areas such as cognition, decision making, function, and mobility. An early report demonstrated that among general vascular and orthopedic surgery, functional decline occurred in 42.9% percent of patients.[73] Factors associated with an increased risk of functional decline included cognitive impairment, need for surrogate consent, use of mobility aids, and a history of falls.[74] While some of these factors are currently part of a preoperative evaluation, others (cognitive screening) are not often evaluated. More work is needed to employ geriatric screening and to understand how preexisting states impact postoperative outcomes. While many conditions may not be amenable to change, it is clear that understanding risk is an important part of informed consent, impacts surgical decision making, and postoperative support.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Frederick Sieber and Ronald Pauldine for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. White RH. *Circulation*. 2003;107(23 suppl 1):I–4.
2. Mohanty S, et al. A. ACS NSQIP, Editor. 2016: https://www.facs.org/quality-programs/acs-nsqip/geriatric-periop-guideline.
3. Aalami OO, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138(10):1068.
4. Lakatta EG, Levy D. *Circulation*. 2003;107(2):346.
5. Go AS, et al. *JAMA*. 2001;285(18):2370–2375.
6. Samarendra P, Mangione MP. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2015;65(3):295.
7. Sprung J, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53(12):1244.
8. Gupta DK. Avram MJ. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2012;91(2):339.
9. Peterson DD, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1981;124(4):387.
10. Senaratna CV, et al. *Sleep Med Rev*. 34:70.
11. Adesanya AO, et al. *Chest*. 2010;138(6):1489.
12. *Medicine, S.f.A.a.S. Recommendations for the Perioperative Evaluation and Management of Patients with Sleep Apnea*. 2017. Available from: http://sasmhq.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/01/SASM_Educational_v5.pdf.
13. Schlanger LE, et al. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2010;17(4):308.
14. Kowalik U, Plante MK. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2016;96(3):453.
15. Matthews N, et al. *Clin Dermatol*. 2018;36(2):208.
16. Goldstein I, et al. *Sex Med*. 2013;1(2):44.
17. Rivera MDR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(5):1176.
18. Mangoni AA, Jackson SH. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2004;57(1):6.
19. Gan TJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(1):85.
20. Vernon G, et al. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther*. 2011;34(3):274.
21. Goodpaster BH, et al. *J Gerontol*. 2006;61(10):1059.
22. Newman AB, et al. *J Gerontol*. 2006;61(1):72.
23. Kortebein P, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;297(16):1769.
24. Hughes VA, et al. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2004;80(2):475.
25. Blatteis CM. *Gerontology*. 2012;58(4):289.
26. Bentov I, Reed MJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(3):760.
27. Martin JT. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2000;18(1):105.
28. Dickstein DL, et al. *Aging Cell*. 2007;6(3):275.
29. Fjell Anders M, Walhovd Kristine B. *Rev Neurosci*. 2010:187.
30. Burke SN, Barnes CA. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2006;7:30.
31. Prince M, et al. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2013;9:63.
32. Katus L, Shtilbans A. *Am J Med*. 2014;127(4):275.
33. Roberts DP, Lewis SJG. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2018;48:34.
34. Krauss JK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(2):420.
35. Polyakova M, et al. *J Affect Disord*. 2014:28–38. 152.
36. Greene NH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(4):788.
37. Rutledge T, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2006;48(8):1527.
38. Blumenthal JA, et al. *The Lancet*. 2003;362(9384):604.
39. Kroenke K, et al. *JAMA*. 2009;301(20):2099.
40. Auerbach AD, et al. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2013;173(12):1075.
41. Berger M, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2015;33(3):517–550.
42. Rasmussen LS. Postoperative cognitive dysfunction: incidence and prevention. In: *Bailliere's Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2006:315+.
43. Mohanty S, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2016;222(5):930.
44. Fleisher LA, et al. *J Nucl Cardiol*. 2015;22(1):162.
45. Culley DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(1):186.
46. Ehlenbach CC, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2015;193(1):1.
47. Farias ST, et al. *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry*. 2005;20(9):827.
48. Racine AM, et al. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2018;14(5):590.
49. Dworkin A, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2016;64(11):e149.
50. Marcantonio ER, et al. *JAMA*. 1994;271(2):134.
51. Kim MY, et al. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2016;95(12):e3072.
52. Makary MA, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2010;210(6):901.
53. Robinson TN, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2015;221(6):1083.
54. Collard RM, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2012;60(8):1487.
55. Fried LP, et al. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2001;56(3):M146.
56. Amrock LG, Deiner S. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2014;52(4):26.
57. Morley JE, et al. *J Am Med Dir Assoc*. 2013;14(6):392.
58. Amrock LG, Deiner S. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2014;27(3):330.
59. Kaiser MJ, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2010;58(9):1734.
60. Hall DE, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2017;152(3):233.
61. Ernst KF, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2014;149(11):1121.
62. Dunn GP. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30(1):13.
63. Burda SA, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2005;14(6):414.
64. American Geriatrics Society Expert Panel on Postoperative Delirium in Older, A. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2015;63(1):142.
65. Nath B, et al. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2010;14(11):1732.
66. Thombs BD, et al. *Syst Rev*. 2014;3:124.
67. Hinkin CH, et al. *Am J Addict*. 2001;10(4):319.
68. Kuerbis A, et al. *Clin Geriatr Med*. 2014;30(3):629.
69. Appelbaum PS. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357(18):1834.
70. Lautenbacher S, et al. *Neurosci Biobehav Rev*. 2017;75:104.
71. Rubin FH, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2011;59(2):359.
72. Chen CC, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2017;152(9):827.
73. Neufeld KJ, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2016;64(4):705.
74. Berian JR, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2017;225(6):702.
75. Robinson TN, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2009;249(1):173.
76. Robinson TN, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2012;215(1):12; discussion 17.
77. Lin JS, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2013;159(9):601.
78. Aykut K, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2013;27(6):1267.
79. Nasreddine ZS, et al. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2005;53(4):695.
80. Partridge JS, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2014;60(4):1002.
81. Cordell CB, et al. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2013;9(2):141.
82. Kazmierski J, et al. *Gen Hosp Psychiatry*. 2006;28(6):536.
83. Veliz-Reissmuller G, et al. *Aging Clin Exp Res*. 2007;19(3):172.
84. Puustinen J, et al. *Geriatr Orthop Surg Rehabil*. 2016;7(4):183.
85. Long LS, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2015;62(6):603.
86. Belmin J, et al. *Presse Med*. 2007;36(9 Pt 1):1183.
87. Larner AJ. *Presse Med*. 2013;42(12):e425.
88. Meziere A, et al. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2013;32(9):e91.
89. Chan MT, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2013;25(1):33.
90. Radtke FM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(suppl 1):i98.
91. Ballard C, et al. *PLoS One*. 2012;7(6):e37410.
92. Berger M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018.
93. Sieber FE, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2010;85(1):18.
94. Ni K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017.
95. Lopez-Otin C, et al. *Cell*. 2013;153(6):1194.
96. Rudolph JL, et al. *Circulation*. 2009;119(2):229.
97. Revenig LM, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;217(4):665.
98. Mitnitski AB, et al. *ScientificWorldJournal*. 2001;1:323.
99. Rockwood K, et al. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2007;62(7):738.
100. Adams P, et al. *JAMA Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2013;139(8):783.
101. Farhat JS, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;72(6):1526; discussion 30.
102. Karam J, et al. *Ann Vasc Surg*. 2013;27(7):904.
103. Obeid NM, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;72(4):878.
104. Patel KV, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2013.
105. Tsiouris A, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2013;183(1):40.
106. Velanovich V, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2013;183(1):104.
107. Afilalo J, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2010;56(20):1668.
108. Robinson TN, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2013;258(4):582; discussion 8.
109. Jones TS, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2013;148(12):1132.
110. Robinson TN, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2013;206(4):544.
111. Robinson TN, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2009;250(3):449.

References

1. White RH. The epidemiology of venous thromboembolism. *Circulation*. 2003;107(23 suppl 1):I–4.
2. Mohanty S, Rosenthal R, Russell M, Newman M, Ko C, and Esnaola N. Optimal Perioperative Care of the Geriatric Patient: Best Practice Guidelines from ACS/NSQIP / American Geriatrics Society, A. ACS NSQIP, Editor. 2016: https://www.facs.org/quality-programs/acs-nsqip/geriatric-periop-guideline.
3. Aalami OO, et al. Physiological features of aging persons. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138(10):1068–1076.
4. Lakatta EaL, D. Arterial and cardiac aging: major shareholders in cardiovascular disease enterprises. Part II: the aging heart in health: links to heart disease. *Circulation*. 2003;107(2):346–354.
5. Go AS, et al. Prevalence of diagnosed atrial fibrillation in adults: National implications for rhythm management and stroke prevention: the anticoagulation and risk factors in atrial fibrillation (atria) study. *JAMA*. 2001;285(18):2370–2375.
6. Samarendra P, Mangione MP. Aortic stenosis and perioperative risk with noncardiac surgery. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2015;65(3):295–302.
7. Sprung J, Gajic O, Warner DO. Review article: age related alterations in respiratory function — anesthetic considerations. *Can J Anaesth*. 2006;53(12):1244.
8. Gupta DK, Avram MJ. Rational opioid dosing in the elderly: dose and dosing interval when initiating opioid therapy. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2012;91(2):339–343.
9. Peterson DD, et al. Effects of aging on ventilatory and occlusion pressure responses to hypoxia and hypercapnia. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1981;124(4):387–391.
10. Senaratna CV, et al. Prevalence of obstructive sleep apnea in the general population: a systematic review. *Sleep Med Rev*. 34:70–81.
11. Adesanya AO, et al. Perioperative management of obstructive sleep apnea. *Chest*. 2010;138(6):1489–1498.
12. Medicine, S.f.A.a.S. Recommendations for the Perioperative Evaluation and Management of Patients with Sleep Apne. 2017. Available from: http://sasmhq.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/01/SASM_Educational_v5.pdf.
13. Schlanger LE, Bailey JL, Sands JM. Electrolytes in the aging. *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis*. 2010;17(4):308–319.
14. Kowalik U, Plante MK. Urinary retention in surgical patients. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2016;96(3):453–467.
15. Matthews N, et al. Genital diseases in the mature woman. *Clin Dermatol*. 2018;36(2):208–221.
16. Goldstein I, et al. Multidisciplinary overview of vaginal atrophy and associated genitourinary symptoms in postmenopausal women. *Sex Med*. 2013;1(2):44–53.
17. Rivera MDR, Antognini Joseph F. Perioperative drug therapy in elderly patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(5):1176–1181.
18. Mangoni AA, Jackson SH. Age-related changes in pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics: basic principles and practical applications. *Br J Clin Pharmacol*. 2004;57(1):6–14.
19. Gan TJ, et al. Consensus guidelines for the management of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(1):85–113.
20. Vernon G, Baranova A, Younossi ZM. Systematic review: the epidemiology and natural history of non–alcoholic fatty liver disease and non–alcoholic steatohepatitis in adults. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther*. 2011;34(3):274–285.
21. Goodpaster BH, et al. The loss of skeletal muscle strength, mass, and quality in older adults: the health, aging and body composition study. *J Gerontol: Series A*. 2006;61(10):1059–1064.
22. Newman AB, et al. Strength, but not muscle mass, is associated with mortality in the health, aging and body composition study cohort. *J Gerontol: Series A*. 2006;61(1):72–77.
23. Kortebein P, et al. Effect of 10 days of bed rest on skeletal muscle in healthy older adults. *JAMA*. 2007;297(16):1769–1774.
24. Hughes VA, et al. Anthropometric assessment of 10-y changes in body composition in the elderly. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2004;80(2):475–482.
25. Blatteis CM. Age-dependent changes in temperature regulation—a mini review. *Gerontology*. 2012;58(4):289–295.
26. Bentov I, Reed MJ. Anesthesia, microcirculation and wound repair in aging. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(3):760–772.
27. Martin JT. Positioning aged patients. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2000;18(1):105–121.
28. Dickstein DL, et al. Changes in the structural complexity of the aged brain. *Aging Cell*. 2007;6(3):275–284.
29. Fjell Anders M, Walhovd Kristine B. Structural brain changes in aging: courses, causes and cognitive consequences. *Rev Neurosci*. 2010:187.
30. Burke SN, Barnes CA. Neural plasticity in the ageing brain. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2006;7:30.
31. Prince M, Bryce R, Albanese E, Wimo A, Ribeiro W, Ferri C. The global prevalence of dementia: a systematic review and metaanalysis. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2013;9:63–75.
32. Katus L, Shtilbans A. Perioperative management of patients with Parkinson's disease. *Am J Med*. 2014;127(4):275–280.
33. Roberts DP, Lewis SJG. Considerations for general anaesthesia in Parkinson's disease. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2018;48:34–41.
34. Krauss JK, Edward W, Giam Patrick, Jankovic Joseph. Propofol-induced dyskinesias in parkinson's disease. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(2).
35. Polyakova M, et al. Prevalence of minor depression in elderly persons with and without mild cognitive impairment: a systematic review. *J Affect Disord*. 2014;152–154:28–38.
36. Greene NH, Deborah K, Weldon B Craig, Smith Patrick J, McDonagh David L, Monk Terri G. Measures of executive function and depression identify patients at risk for postoperative delirium. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(4):788–795.
37. Rutledge T, et al. Depression in heart failure: a meta-analytic review of prevalence, intervention effects, and associations with clinical outcomes. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2006;48(8):1527–1537.
38. Blumenthal JA, et al. Depression as a risk factor for mortality after coronary artery bypass surgery. *Lancet*. 2003;362(9384):604–609.
39. Kroenke K, et al. Optimized antidepressant therapy and pain self-management in primary care patients with depression and musculoskeletal pain: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2009;301(20):2099–2110.
40. Auerbach AD, et al. Perioperative use of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and risks for adverse outcomes of surgery. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2013;173(12):1075–1081.
41. Berger M, et al. Postoperative cognitive dysfunction: minding the gaps in our knowledge of a common postoperative complication in the elderly. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2015;33(3):517–550.
42. Rasmussen LS. Postoperative cognitive dysfunction: incidence and prevention. *Bailliere's Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2006:315+.
43. Mohanty S, et al. Optimal perioperative management of the geriatric patient: a best practices guideline from the American College of Surgeons NSQIP and the American Geriatrics Society. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2016;222(5):930–947.
44. Fleisher LA, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: executive summary: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines. Developed in collaboration with the American College of Surgeons, American Society of Anesthesiologists, American Society of Echocardiography, American Society of Nuclear Cardiology, Heart Rhythm Society, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, and Society of Vascular Medicine Endorsed by the Society of Hospital Medicine. *J Nucl Cardiol*. 2015;22(1):162–215.
45. Culley DJ, et al. Preoperative cognitive stratification of older elective surgical patients: a cross-sectional study. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(1):186–192.
46. Ehlenbach CC, et al. Preoperative impairment is associated with a higher postdischarge level of care. *J Surg Res*. 2015;193(1):1–6.
47. Farias ST, Mungas D, Jagust W. Degree of discrepancy between self and other-reported everyday functioning by cognitive status: dementia, mild cognitive impairment, and healthy elders. *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry*. 2005;20(9):827–834.
48. Racine AM, et al. Clinical outcomes in older surgical patients with mild cognitive impairment. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2018;14(5):590–600.
49. Dworkin A, et al. A simple tool to predict development of delirium after elective surgery. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2016;64(11):e149–e153.
50. Marcantonio ER, et al. A clinical prediction rule for delirium after elective noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 1994;271(2):134–139.
51. Kim MY, et al. DELirium Prediction based on Hospital Information (Delphi) in general surgery patients. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2016;95(12):e3072.
52. Makary MA, et al. Frailty as a predictor of surgical outcomes in older patients. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2010;210(6):901–908.

53. Robinson TN, et al. Frailty for surgeons: review of a National Institute on Aging Conference on Frailty for specialists. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2015;221(6):1083–1092.
54. Collard RM, et al. Prevalence of frailty in community-dwelling older persons: a systematic review. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2012;60(8):1487–1492.
55. Fried LP, et al. Frailty in older adults: evidence for a phenotype. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2001;56(3):M146–M156.
56. Amrock LG, Deiner S. Perioperative frailty. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2014;52(4):26–41.
57. Morley JE, et al. Frailty consensus: a call to action. *J Am Med Dir Assoc*. 2013;14(6):392–397.
58. Amrock LG, Deiner S. The implication of frailty on preoperative risk assessment. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2014;27(3):330–335.
59. Kaiser MJ, et al. Frequency of malnutrition in older adults: a multinational perspective using the mini nutritional assessment. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2010;58(9):1734–1738.
60. Hall DE, et al. Association of a frailty screening initiative with postoperative survival at 30, 180, and 365 days. *JAMA Surg*. 2017;152(3):233–240.
61. Ernst KF, et al. Surgical palliative care consultations over time in relationship to systemwide frailty screening. *JAMA Surg*. 2014;149(11):1121–1126.
62. Dunn GP. Surgical palliative care: recent trends and developments. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30(1):13–28.
63. Burda SA, Hobson D, Pronovost PJ. What is the patient really taking? Discrepancies between surgery and anesthesiology preoperative medication histories. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2005;14(6):414–416.
64. American Geriatrics Society Expert Panel on Postoperative Delirium in Older, A. American Geriatrics Society abstracted clinical practice guideline for postoperative delirium in older adults. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2015;63(1):142–150.
65. Nath B, et al. Alcohol exposure as a risk factor for adverse outcomes in elective surgery. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2010;14(11):1732–1741.
66. Thombs BD, et al. The diagnostic accuracy of the Patient Health Questionnaire-2 (PHQ-2), Patient Health Questionnaire-8 (PHQ-8), and Patient Health Questionnaire-9 (PHQ-9) for detecting major depression: protocol for a systematic review and individual patient data meta-analyses. *Syst Rev*. 2014;3:124.
67. Hinkin CH, et al. Screening for drug and alcohol abuse among older adults using a modified version of the CAGE. *Am J Addict*. 2001;10(4):319–326.
68. Kuerbis A, et al. Substance abuse among older adults. *Clin Geriatr Med*. 2014;30(3):629–654.
69. Appelbaum PS. Clinical practice. Assessment of patients' competence to consent to treatment. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357(18):1834–1840.
70. Lautenbacher S, et al. Age changes in pain perception: a systematic-review and meta-analysis of age effects on pain and tolerance thresholds. *Neurosci Biobehav Rev*. 2017;75:104–113.
71. Rubin FH, et al. Sustainability and scalability of the hospital elder life program at a community hospital. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2011;59(2):359–365.
72. Chen CC, et al. Effect of a modified hospital elder life program on delirium and length of hospital stay in patients undergoing abdominal surgery: a cluster randomized clinical trial. *JAMA Surg*. 2017;152(9):827–834.
73. Neufeld KJ, et al. Antipsychotic medication for prevention and treatment of delirium in hospitalized adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2016;64(4):705–714.
74. Berian JR, et al. Optimizing surgical quality datasets to care for older adults: lessons from the American College of Surgeons NSQIP geriatric surgery pilot. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2017;225(6):702–712.e1.
75. Robinson TN, et al. Postoperative delirium in the elderly: risk factors and outcomes. *Ann Surg*. 2009;249(1):173–178.
76. Robinson TN, et al. Preoperative cognitive dysfunction is related to adverse postoperative outcomes in the elderly. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2012;215(1):12–17; discussion 17-8.
77. Lin JS, et al. Screening for cognitive impairment in older adults: a systematic review for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. *Ann Intern Med*. 2013;159(9):601–612.
78. Aykut K, et al. Preoperative mild cognitive dysfunction predicts pulmonary complications after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2013;27(6):1267–1270.
79. Nasreddine ZS, et al. The Montreal Cognitive Assessment, MoCA: a brief screening tool for mild cognitive impairment. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2005;53(4):695–699.
80. Partridge JS, et al. The prevalence and impact of undiagnosed cognitive impairment in older vascular surgical patients. *J Vasc Surg*. 2014;60(4):1002–10011 e3.
81. Cordell CB, et al. Alzheimer's Association recommendations for operationalizing the detection of cognitive impairment during the Medicare Annual Wellness Visit in a primary care setting. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2013;9(2):141–150.
82. Kazmierski J, et al. Preoperative predictors of delirium after cardiac surgery: a preliminary study. *Gen Hosp Psychiatry*. 2006;28(6):536–538.
83. Veliz-Reissmuller G, et al. Pre-operative mild cognitive dysfunction predicts risk for post-operative delirium after elective cardiac surgery. *Aging Clin Exp Res*. 2007;19(3):172–177.
84. Puustinen J, et al. The use of MoCA and other cognitive tests in evaluation of cognitive impairment in elderly patients undergoing arthroplasty. *Geriatr Orthop Surg Rehabil*. 2016;7(4):183–187.
85. Long LS, Wolpaw JT, Leung JM. Sensitivity and specificity of the animal fluency test for predicting postoperative delirium. *Can J Anaesth*. 2015;62(6):603–608.
86. Belmin J, et al. The cognitive disorders examination (Codex) is a reliable 3-minute test for detection of dementia in the elderly (validation study on 323 subjects). *Presse Med*. 2007;36(9 Pt 1):1183–1190.
87. Larner AJ. Codex (cognitive disorders examination) for the detection of dementia and mild cognitive impairment. *Presse Med*. 2013;42(12):e425–e428.
88. Meziere A, et al. Delirium in older people after proximal femoral fracture repair: role of a preoperative screening cognitive test. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2013;32(9):e91–e96.
89. Chan MT, et al. BIS-guided anesthesia decreases postoperative delirium and cognitive decline. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2013;25(1):33–42.
90. Radtke FM, et al. Monitoring depth of anaesthesia in a randomized trial decreases the rate of postoperative delirium but not postoperative cognitive dysfunction. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110(suppl 1):i98–i105.
91. Ballard C, et al. Optimised anaesthesia to reduce post operative cognitive decline (POCD) in older patients undergoing elective surgery, a randomised controlled trial. *PLoS One*. 2012;7(6):e37410.
92. Berger M, et al. Recommended best practices for postoperative brain health from the 2016 perioperative neurotoxicity working group summit. *Anesthesiology*. 2018.
93. Sieber FE, et al. Sedation depth during spinal anesthesia and the development of postoperative delirium in elderly patients undergoing hip fracture repair. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2010;85(1):18–26.
94. Ni K, et al. A paradox of age: older patients receive higher age adjusted MAC values, yet display higher average BIS values. *Anesthesiology*. 2017.
95. Lopez-Otin C, et al. The hallmarks of aging. *Cell*. 2013;153(6):1194–1217.
96. Rudolph JL, Jones RN, Levkoff SE, et al. Derivation and validation of a preoperative prediction rule for delirium after cardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 2009;119(2):229–236.
97. Revenig LM, Canter DJ, Taylor MD, et al. Too frail for surgery? Initial results of a large multidisciplinary prospective study examining preoperative variables predictive of poor surgical outcomes. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;217(4):665–670.
98. Mitnitski AB, Mogilner AJ, Rockwood K. Accumulation of deficits as a proxy measure of aging. *ScientificWorldJournal*. 2001;1:323–336.
99. Rockwood K, Andrew M, Mitnitski A. A comparison of two approaches to measuring frailty in elderly people. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2007;62(7):738–743.
100. Adams P, Ghanem T, Stachler R, et al. Frailty as a predictor of morbidity and mortality in in patient head and neck surgery. *JAMA Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2013;139(8):783–789.
101. Farhat JS, Velanovich V, Falvo AJ, et al. Are the frail destined to fail? Frailty index as predictor of surgical morbidity and mortality in the elderly. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;72(6):1526–1530; discussion 30-1.
102. Karam J, Tsiouris A, Shepard A, et al. Simplified frailty index to predict adverse outcomes and mortality in vascular surgery patients. *Ann Vasc Surg*. 2013;27(7):904–908.

103. Obeid NM, Azuh O, Reddy S, et al. Predictors of critical care-related complications in colectomy patients using the National Surgical Quality Improvement Program: exploring frailty and aggressive laparoscopic approaches. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;72(4):878–883.
104. Patel KV, Brennan KL, Brennan ML, et al. Association of a modified frailty index with mortality after femoral neck fracture in patients aged 60 years and older. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2013.
105. Tsiouris A, Hammoud ZT, Velanovich V, et al. A modified frailty index to assess morbidity and mortality after lobectomy. *J Surg Res*. 2013;183(1):40–46.
106. Velanovich V, Antoine H, Swartz A, et al. Accumulating deficits model of frailty and postoperative mortality and morbidity: its application to a national database. *J Surg Res*. 2013;183(1):104–110.
107. Afilalo J, Eisenberg MJ, Morin JF, et al. Gait speed as an incremental predictor of mortality and major morbidity in elderly patients undergoing cardiac surgery. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2010;56(20):1668–1676.
108. Robinson TN, Wu DS, Sauaia A, et al. Slower walking speed forecasts increased postoperative morbidity and 1-year mortality across surgical specialties. *Ann Surg*. 2013;258(4):582–588; discussion 8-90.
109. Jones TS, Dunn CL, Wu DS, et al. Relationship between asking an older adult about falls and surgical outcomes. *JAMA Surg*. 2013;148(12):1132–1138.
110. Robinson TN, Wu DS, Pointer L, et al. Simple frailty score predicts postoperative complications across surgical specialties. *Am J Surg*. 2013;206(4):544–550.
111. Robinson TN, Eiseman B, Wallace JI, et al. Redefining geriatric preoperative assessment using frailty, disability and co-morbidity. *Ann Surg*. 2009;250(3):449–455.

66

Anesthesia for Trauma

SAMUEL MICHAEL GALVAGNO JR., MARC P. STEURER, and
THOMAS E. GRISSOM

KEY POINTS

- Perioperative anesthesia care for patients who have undergone acute trauma depends on an understanding of trauma system design and surgical priorities.
- Successful emergency airway management is based on having a clear plan, such as the American Society of Anesthesiologists algorithm for difficult airways adapted for trauma. In general, rapid sequence induction of anesthesia and in-line cervical stabilization, followed by direct laryngoscopy or video laryngoscopy, is the safest and most effective approach. The use of cricoid pressure is controversial and is no longer a class I recommendation.
- Recognition of hemorrhagic shock is at the center of advanced trauma life support. Hemorrhagic shock indicates the need for rapid operative treatment, with the possibility of a damage control approach. Although establishing an adequate airway remains the initial priority, obvious hemorrhage should be concurrently addressed through immediate application of tourniquets or direct pressure.
- Resuscitation during acute hemorrhagic shock has undergone a significant change in emphasis. Current recommendations are to allow permissive hypotension during active bleeding by limitation of crystalloid infusion. Recognizing the impact of early coagulopathy in trauma, a "hemostatic" resuscitation should be employed, with an emphasis on maintenance of blood composition by early transfusion of red blood cells, plasma, and platelets, and viscoelastic monitoring when available.
- Management of patients with severe traumatic brain injury requires monitoring and maintenance of cerebral perfusion and oxygenation for successful operative and intensive care management.
- Operative timing for the surgical management of traumatic injuries, including orthopedic trauma, must be balanced between early definitive repairs and the potential for worsening overall physiologic stress.
- Trauma anesthesiology includes a substantial component of critical care practice (see also Chapter 83).

Introduction

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Death and disability caused by injuries remain a public health threat worldwide. For both children and adults younger than age 45, traumatic injuries remain the leading cause of death in the United States.[1,2] Moreover, injury-associated deaths have substantial economic consequences; the total estimated lifetime medical and work-lost costs associated with fatal injuries has been reported to be over $240 billion and is projected to increase.[1,3] Unintentional injuries (i.e., injuries due to motor vehicle accidents, falls) remain the top cause of death in adults younger than age 45, followed by suicide, and homicide.[2]

As with other endemic diseases, successful treatment of trauma extends well beyond the boundaries of an individual hospital. Community-based prevention has included efforts to incorporate airbags in motor vehicles, mandate the use of helmets on motorcycles, encourage citizens to wear seat belts, punish intoxicated drivers, and promote responsible handgun ownership. All these measures have had an impact on the demographics of injury in much the same manner that smoking cessation, dietary modification, and routine mammography have affected the incidence of heart disease and cancer. When prevention fails, outcomes after injury are heavily influenced by the community's commitment to an organized system of trauma care.

MODERN TRAUMA SYSTEMS AND REGIONALIZATION

Following the landmark National Academy of Sciences report "Accidental Death and Disability: The Neglected Disease of Modern Society" in 1966,[4] a framework for trauma systems was developed by the American College of Surgeons (ACS) Committee on Trauma.[5,6] Comprised of governmentally designated or internally validated trauma centers, trauma systems represent a coordinated, organized, and patient-centric approach to the care of the injured patient.[7] A distinction between trauma center designation and verification is made to identify the types of resources available and the number of patients treated annually. Trauma center designation is a process outlined and developed at a state or local level. Trauma center verification is an evaluation process done by the ACS to evaluate and improve trauma care; the verification process is voluntary and identifies the presence of resources considered essential for the optimal care of the injured patient.[8] Trauma center levels range from Level I (a comprehensive regional resource providing 24-hour in-house coverage, referral resource for communities in nearby regions, leadership in prevention, research, and more) to Level V (basic emergency department [ED] facilities to implement advanced trauma life support [ATLS], after-hours activation protocols, limited surgery and critical care). Level I and Level II centers represent tertiary care centers; the standards for the provision of clinical care to injured patients for Level I and Level II trauma centers are identical. A trauma system is an example of tiered regionalization because the most seriously injured patients in a geographical catchment area are cared for at designated tertiary care trauma centers.[7] Over the past three decades, many studies have demonstrated significantly improved mortality,[9-15] morbidity,[16,17] and cost savings[17,18] after establishment of regionalized trauma systems.

THE ROLE OF THE ANESTHESIOLOGIST

At all levels of trauma care, anesthesiologists are uniquely juxtaposed with the multidisciplinary trauma team, serving both an administrative role in preparing the operating room (OR) and allocating resources for resuscitation, while providing direct patient care through definitive airway management and advanced resuscitation where appropriate.[19] Anesthesiologists also play a significant role as intensivists and pain management experts. Trauma patients represent a significant proportion of all OR cases handled during night and weekend shifts.[20] Regrettably, very few anesthesiologists in the United States consider trauma their primary specialty. This is distinct from European practice, where anesthesiologists frequently are found working in the prehospital environment, as an ED director, or as leader of a trauma team. The United States model, in which all anesthesiologists treat trauma patients—but few do so exclusively—has led to a relative dearth of research, publication, and education in this field.[20,21] This situation is unfortunate because trauma is a rapidly evolving field of study that presents unique challenges to the clinician and one in which improvements in care can have a dramatic impact on society as a whole.

Anesthesia for trauma patients is different from routine OR practice. Most urgent cases occur during off-hours, when the most experienced OR and anesthesia personnel may not be available. In small hospitals and military and humanitarian practice, austere conditions may influence the resources available. Patient information may be limited, and allergies, genetic abnormalities, and previous surgeries may create sudden crises. Patients are frequently intoxicated, with full stomachs and the potential for cervical spine instability. Simple operations may become complicated, and specialty surgical and anesthesia equipment may be required on short notice. Patients often have multiple injuries requiring complex positioning, multiple procedures, and the need to consider priorities in management. Occult injuries, such as tension pneumothorax, can manifest at unexpected times. Fortunately, there does not appear to be a higher risk for medical liability associated with the provision of anesthesia for trauma versus nontrauma surgical anesthesia cases.[22] Successful perioperative care of these patients requires a good understanding of the basics, supplemented by preparation, flexibility, and the ability to react quickly to changing circumstances.

This chapter provides an overview of important areas of trauma care for the anesthesiologist beginning with a description of the initial approach to an injured patient, followed by discussions of emergency airway management, resuscitation, and care of patients with central nervous system (CNS) injuries. The needs of orthopedic and reconstructive surgery patients are outlined and the chapter concludes with a discussion of postoperative issues for the anesthesiologist managing the trauma patient.

Prioritizing Trauma Care

PREHOSPITAL TRIAGE

Prehospital triage of the seriously injured trauma patient begins in the field, and is fraught with difficulty. Estimations of blood loss are imprecise and classically taught shock classifications are commonly confounded by extremes of age and variations in physiological reserve.[23] In 2011, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention along with the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration collaborated with the ACS Committee on Trauma to revise previous field triage decision schemes in order to reduce over triage of patients with non–life-threatening injuries, and to help direct patients in most need of lifesaving interventions to appropriate trauma centers.[24] Current guidelines recommend a four-step assessment to assist prehospital providers with making decisions about which patients are most in need of transport to a trauma center (Box 66.1).

BOX 66.1 Four Steps for Assessing Need for Trauma Center Referral

Physiological Considerations

Systolic blood pressure <90 mm Hg
Glasgow Coma Scale ≤13
Respiratory rate <10 or >29 (or need for ventilatory support)

Anatomical Considerations

Any penetrating injury to the head, neck, torso, and extremities (proximal to the elbow or knee)
Chest wall instability/deformity
Amputation proximal to the wrist or ankle
Pelvic fracture
Open/depressed skull fracture
Paralysis

Mechanisms of Injury

Death of occupant in same vehicle
Fall from >20 feet
Extrication time >20 min

Special Patient or System Considerations

Age >55 years
Children
Patients on anticoagulants or with bleeding disorders
Burns (to be triaged to designated burn centers)
Pregnancy >20 weeks

Traditionally, mechanism of injury has been referred to as blunt versus penetrating trauma, with no further delineation as to how much energy was imparted, or information regarding anatomical and physiological insults. Some studies have suggested that mechanism of injury alone is a poor predictor for trauma center referral.[25,26] Others have demonstrated that distinct mechanisms, such as ejection from a vehicle or prolonged extrication time, clearly warrant trauma team activation.[27,28] In a study by Lerner and associates, the ACS Field Triage Decision scheme was examined, and interviews conducted with emergency medical technicians who transported patients to trauma centers based on mechanism alone.[29] Only three mechanisms of injury reliably predicted the need for referral to a trauma center when patients did not meet anatomical or physiological injury criteria: death of an occupant in the vehicle, fall greater than 20 feet, and extrication time greater than 20 minutes. Additional studies have justified mechanism of injury as a parameter that helps reduce inappropriate transport of patients with major trauma to nontrauma centers.[30,31] For more information on this subject see Chapter 67.

BLUNT VERSUS PENETRATING TRAUMA

Blunt and penetrating injuries are regularly disparate in presentation but may share similarities in terms of extent of injury.[19] Penetrating injuries are identified as ballistic and nonballistic. The point of injury in the patient with penetrating trauma may be utterly discernible—even to the inexpert provider—but the extent of tissue damage and depth of shock may be less detectible compared to the patient suffering from a blunt traumatic injury. Conversely, the patient with penetrating trauma will lose blood volume externally together with loss into body cavities, whereas the patient with blunt trauma may present in hemorrhagic shock with no obvious signs of hemorrhage. Multiple blunt traumatic insults, bleeding into compartments (e.g., unstable long-bone fractures), retroperitoneal hemorrhage (e.g., pelvic fractures, major vascular injury, solid organ damage), and bleeding into other body cavities may present as indolent hemorrhagic shock.[32]

ADVANCED TRAUMA LIFE SUPPORT

The performance of a thorough patient assessment, application of rapid diagnostic tests, and early activation of resources is vital for ensuring optimal outcomes in patients with severe traumatic injuries.[19] The ATLS course of the ACS is the most widely recognized training program for trauma physicians of all disciplines.[33] Although not comprehensive in subspecialty areas, the ATLS curriculum provides a framework and a common language for the care of injured patients. ATLS is based on a "primary survey" that includes simultaneous efforts to identify and treat life- and limb-threatening injuries, beginning with the most immediate. This focus on urgent problems first is captured by the "golden hour" catchphrase and is the most important lesson of ATLS. Resolution of urgent needs is followed by a meticulous secondary survey and further diagnostic studies designed to reduce the incidence of missed injuries. Knowing the basics of ATLS is essential for *any* physician who interacts with trauma patients. Fig. 66.1 is a simplified representation of the ATLS protocol.

ATLS emphasizes the "ABCDE" mnemonic: airway, breathing, circulation, disability, and exposure. Verification of an open airway and acceptable respiratory mechanics is of primary importance because hypoxia is the most immediate threat to life. Inability to oxygenate the patient will lead to permanent brain injury and death within 5 to 10 minutes. Trauma patients are at risk for airway obstruction and inadequate respiration for the reasons listed in Box 66.2. Endotracheal intubation, whether performed in the prehospital environment or in the ED,

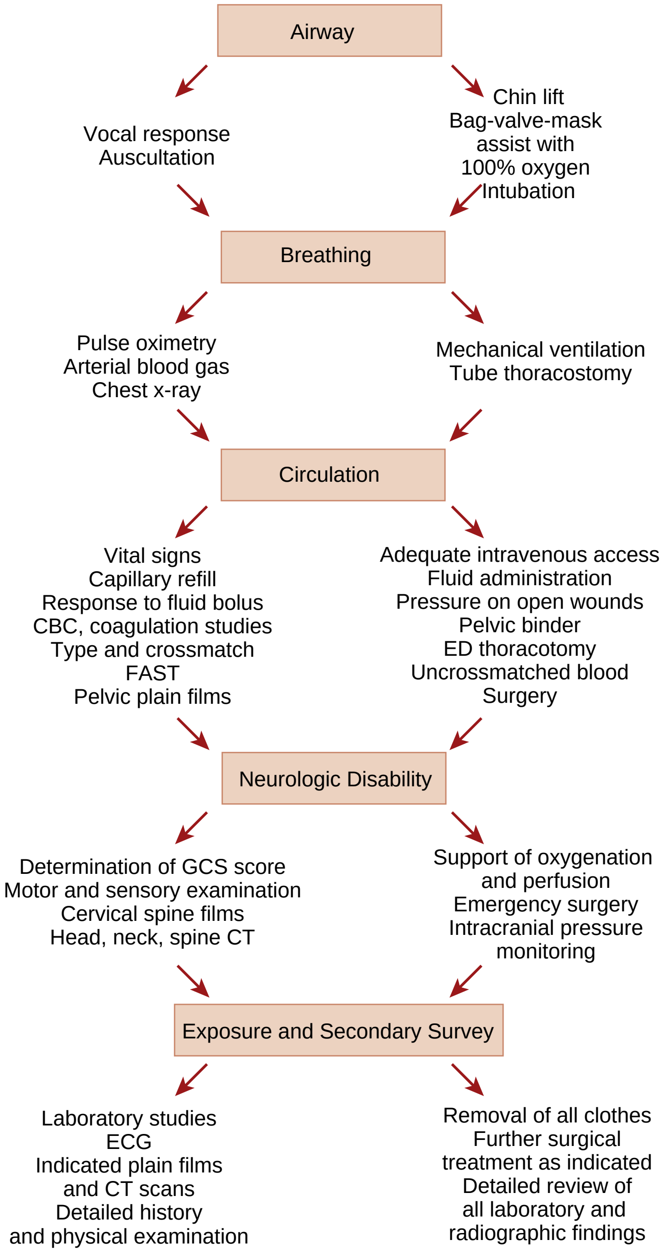

Airway
Vocal response
Auscultation
Chin lift
Bag-valve-mask
assist with
100% oxygen
Intubation
Breathing
Pulse oximetry
Arterial blood gas
Chest x-ray
Mechanical ventilation
Tube thoracostomy
Circulation
Vital signs
Capillary refill
Response to fluid bolus
CBC, coagulation studies
Type and crossmatch
FAST
Pelvic plain films
Adequate intravenous access
Fluid administration
Pressure on open wounds
Pelvic binder
ED thoracotomy
Uncrossmatched blood
Surgery
Neurologic Disability
Determination of GCS score
Motor and sensory examination
Cervical spine films
Head, neck, spine CT
Support of oxygenation
and perfusion
Emergency surgery
Intracranial pressure
monitoring
Exposure and Secondary Survey
Laboratory studies
ECG
Indicated plain films
and CT scans
Detailed history
and physical examination
Removal of all clothes
Further surgical
treatment as indicated
Detailed review of
all laboratory and
radiographic findings

Fig. 66.1 Simplified assessment and management of the trauma patient. *CBC,* Complete blood count; *CT,* computed tomography; *ECG,* electrocardiogram; *ED,* emergency department; *FAST,* focused assessment by sonography for trauma; *GCS,* Glasgow Coma Scale. (Modified from the Advanced Trauma Life Support curriculum of the American College of Surgeons.)

BOX 66.2 Causes of Obstructed Airway or Inadequate Ventilation in a Trauma Patient

Airway Obstruction

Direct injury to the face, mandible, or neck
Hemorrhage in the nasopharynx, sinuses, mouth, or upper airway
Diminished consciousness secondary to traumatic brain injury, intoxication, or analgesic medications
Aspiration of gastric contents, blood, or a foreign body (i.e., dentures, broken teeth, soft tissue)
Misapplication of oral airway or endotracheal tube (esophageal intubation)

Inadequate Ventilation

Diminished respiratory drive secondary to traumatic brain or high cervical spine injury, shock, intoxication, hypothermia, or oversedation
Direct injury to the trachea or bronchi
Pneumothorax or hemothorax
Chest wall injury
Aspiration
Pulmonary contusion
Cervical spine injury
Bronchospasm secondary to smoke or toxic gas inhalation

BOX 66.3 Signs and Symptoms of Shock

Pallor
Diaphoresis
Agitation or obtundation
Hypotension
Tachycardia
Prolonged capillary refill
Diminished urine output
Narrowed pulse pressure

TABLE 66.1 Diagnostic and Therapeutic Options for Management of Traumatic Hemorrhage

Site of Bleeding	Diagnostic Modalities	Treatment Options
Chest	Chest x-ray Thoracostomy tube output Chest CT	Observation Surgery
Abdomen	Physical examination Ultrasound (FAST) Abdominal CT Peritoneal lavage	Surgical ligation Angiography Observation
Retroperitoneum	CT Angiography	Angiography
Long bones	Physical examination Plain x-rays	Fracture fixation Surgical ligation
Outside the body	Physical examination	Direct pressure Surgical ligation

CT, Computed tomography; *FAST,* focused assessment by sonography for trauma.

must be confirmed immediately by capnometry. Esophageal intubation or endotracheal tube (ETT) dislodgement are common and devastating if not promptly corrected. Patients in cardiac arrest may have very low end-tidal carbon dioxide (CO_2) values; direct laryngoscopy should be performed if there is any question about the location of the ETT (see also Chapter 44).

If establishment of a secure airway and adequate ventilation requires a surgical procedure such as a tracheostomy, tube thoracostomy, or open thoracotomy, this procedure must precede all others. Indeed, these procedures are commonly performed in the ED, often before the arrival of an anesthesiologist. Subsequent surgery to convert a cricothyroidotomy to a tracheostomy or close an emergency thoracotomy may then follow in the OR.

Hemorrhage is the next most pressing concern since ongoing blood loss is inevitably fatal. The symptoms of shock are presented in Box 66.3. Shock is presumed to result from hemorrhage until proven otherwise. Assessment of the circulation consists of an early phase, during active hemorrhage, and a late phase, which begins when hemostasis is achieved and continues until normal physiology is restored. In the early phase, diagnostic efforts focus on the five sites of bleeding detailed in Table 66.1, the only areas in which exsanguinating hemorrhage can occur. Immediate actions to control hemorrhage can include application of pelvic binders for bleeding associated with pelvic fractures or tourniquet application for extremity injuries. Any surgical procedure to diagnose or control active hemorrhage is an emergency case that must be brought to the OR as soon as possible. This includes exploration of the neck or pericardium to rule out hemorrhage in sensitive compartments. In the OR, the trauma surgeon focuses on anatomic control of hemorrhage, whereas the anesthesiologist is responsible for restoring the patient's physiology. Goals for early and late resuscitation are discussed in more detail later.

After management of the circulation follows the assessment of the patient's neurologic status by calculation of the Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) score (Box 66.4)[34]; examination of the pupils for size, reactivity, and symmetry; and determination of sensation and motor function in each of the extremities. Significant abnormalities on the neurologic examination are an indication for immediate cranial computed tomography (CT) scan. Most trauma patients with a diminished GCS score will have nonoperative conditions, but for the few who require operative evacuation of an epidural or subdural hematoma, timeliness of treatment has a strong influence on outcome. Patients with unstable spinal canal injuries and incomplete neurologic deficits will also benefit from early surgical decompression and stabilization.

The final step in the primary survey is complete exposure of the patient and a head-to-toe search for visible injuries or deformities, including deformities of bones or joints, soft tissue bruising, and any breaks in the skin. The anesthesiologist can assist in this procedure by support of the head and neck, maintenance of the airway, and care in manipulating the spine.

After the primary survey, a more deliberate secondary examination is undertaken that includes a thorough history and physical examination, diagnostic studies, and subspecialty consultation. Any remaining injuries are diagnosed at this time and treatment plans established. Indications for urgent or emergency surgery may also arise during the secondary survey. The presence of a limb-threatening injury due to vascular compromise, compartment syndrome, or a severely comminuted fracture is one such indication. Although the ABCDE issues must be addressed first, a pulseless extremity, compartment syndrome, near-amputation, or massively fractured extremity must go to the OR as soon as the patient is otherwise stable.

BOX 66.4 Glasgow Coma Score

Eye-Opening Response

4 = Spontaneous
3 = To speech
2 = To pain
1 = None

Verbal Response

5 = Oriented to name
4 = Confused
3 = Inappropriate speech
2 = Incomprehensible sounds
1 = None

Motor Response

6 = Follows commands
5 = Localizes to painful stimuli
4 = Withdraws from painful stimuli
3 = Abnormal flexion (decorticate posturing)
2 = Abnormal extension (decerebrate posturing)
1 = None

The Glasgow Coma Score is the sum of the best scores in each of three categories.

INJURY PATTERNS PROMPTING URGENT OPERATIVE INTERVENTION

Fig. 66.2, an algorithm for prioritizing surgical management in trauma patients, is presented with the understanding that individual situations will vary according to available resources and the patient's response to therapy. A trauma patient will often arrive at the OR with the need for more than one surgical procedure by more than one surgical service. A trauma patient may have injuries requiring emergency surgery coexisting with injuries that can be repaired at any time. The anesthesiologist plays an important role in determining which procedures to perform, in which order, and which procedures should be postponed until the patient is more stable.

In selected cases with obvious, imminent exsanguination, patients should be directly admitted to the OR, bypassing the ED and radiology suite. Historically, it has been shown that up to a third of preventable trauma deaths may be caused by delays getting to the OR; in one registry study, mortality was increased by 1% for every 3 minutes of delay to laparotomy among hypotensive patients with abdominal injuries.[35-37] Steele and associates were among the first to describe a “direct to the OR” approach in San Diego, reporting data gathered over a 10-year period.[38] Patients with traumatic cardiac arrest, systolic blood pressure persistently lower than 100 mm Hg, amputation, or uncontrolled external hemorrhage were admitted directly to the OR for resuscitation, regardless of mechanism of injury. These triage criteria had poor sensitivity (24.1%) but high specificity (98%) in identifying patients truly in need of immediate surgery. Observed compared to predicted survival was significantly higher for the “direct to the OR”

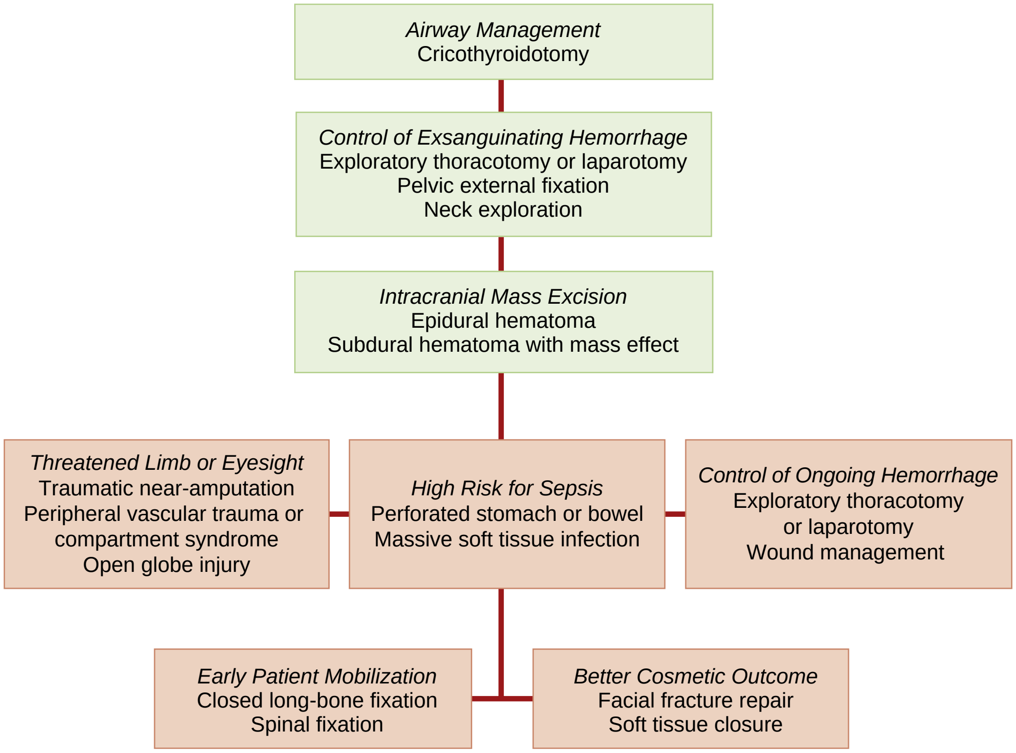

Airway Management
Cricothyroidotomy
Control of Exsanguinating Hemorrhage
Exploratory thoracotomy or laparotomy
Pelvic external fixation
Neck exploration
Intracranial Mass Excision
Epidural hematoma
Subdural hematoma with mass effect
Threatened Limb or Eyesight
Traumatic near-amputation
Peripheral vascular trauma or compartment syndrome
Open globe injury
High Risk for Sepsis
Perforated stomach or bowel
Massive soft tissue infection
Control of Ongoing Hemorrhage
Exploratory thoracotomy or laparotomy
Wound management
Early Patient Mobilization
Closed long-bone fixation
Spinal fixation
Better Cosmetic Outcome
Facial fracture repair
Soft tissue closure

Fig. 66.2 Surgical priorities in a trauma patient. (Reprinted with permission from Dutton RP, Scalea TM, Aarabi B. Prioritizing surgical needs in the patient with multiple injuries. *Probl Anesth*. 2001;13:311.)

approach in this observational study. Similarly, Martin and associates reviewed their 10-year data from 2000 to 2009 for direct OR admission of 1407 patients (5% of all admissions) based on an expanded set of criteria including specific mechanisms.[39] After excluding patients who died on arrival (8%), 3.6% died in the OR and overall observed (5%) mortality was significantly lower than predicted (10%). Emergent surgical procedures were started within 30 minutes of arrival in 77% of patients and within 60 minutes in 92%.

Anesthesia in War and Austere Conditions

"While it is evident that the general principles of anesthesia are not affected by the circumstances of war, it is equally evident that it is our duty to assiduously seek those means in anesthesia which are especially suited to the exigencies of battle."[40]

Although written in 1942, these words are still true today, and many of the principles developed from earlier wars still apply on the modern battlefield or in a large-scale disaster (see also Chapter 68). Recent conflicts and events have allowed anesthesiologists, nurse anesthetists, and other providers to help improve management of traumatically injured patients in the areas of anesthesia, resuscitation, and damage control surgery. Management of battlefield casualties typically follows the same flow as outlined earlier, but with special consideration in the areas of prehospital interventions, resuscitation, technologic and logistic support, patient movement, mass casualty management, and surgical interventions.[41] Pain management considerations may also be affected by the nature of the injuries and transport considerations.[42]

Modern advancements in battle armor, prehospital interventions, provision of forward surgical support, and resuscitative strategies have had an impact on survival from combat injuries.[43] During the most recent conflicts in Iraq and Afghanistan, the killed-in-action rate decreased to 13.9% from 20.2% in Vietnam and World War II.[44] This is mirrored by a similar reduction in the case fatality rate. Paradoxically, the ability to get many of the severely wounded patients to a hospital (e.g., rapidly by helicopter) has led to an increase in the "died-of-wounds" rate. Most likely this rate would be even higher if not for improvements in surgical management such as damage control techniques, improved intensive care unit (ICU) care, evolving resuscitation strategies, tactical combat casualty care initiatives, and institution of a theater-wide trauma system approach.[45] More recently, transition from a 2-hour to an aggressive 1-hour target for definitive care for combat casualties has also contributed to a reduction in case fatality and killed-in-action rates.[46]

One of the major advances in battlefield medical support has been the rapid movement of patients out of the theater of operations to more comprehensive medical facilities. Even in the late 1960s, wounded soldiers were evacuated out of Vietnam within 3 days of injury. In the most recent conflict, the time from injury in the Middle East until movement to more definitive medical care in Europe or North America is often within 24 to 48 hours.[47] This may include initial in-theater damage control surgery followed by one or two aeromedical evacuation missions lasting up to 12 hours with a critical care air transport team (CCATT). In preparation for such rapid movement, the anesthesiologist must ensure that perioperative interventions such as airway management, pain control, and adequacy of resuscitation are addressed before transfer. In addition, anesthesiologists are frequently assigned to a CCATT as the physician team member based on their overall skill set and ability to provide support en route to critically ill or injured patients. Beyond the support provided during wartime, the CCATT also has proved useful for the movement of critical patients during large-scale disasters such as occurred after Hurricane Katrina in 2005.[48]

Mass casualty situations are common in wartime conditions, although the role of the anesthesiologist will vary depending on the number of patients and requirements for urgent surgical interventions. Given the limited number of anesthesia providers in most combat-related scenarios, often they are not involved in the triage process. If available, however, anesthesia support can enhance emergency airway management, establishment of venous access, and supervision of resuscitative efforts. Only 10% to 20% of arriving casualties require immediate lifesaving interventions, although a much larger percentage will ultimately require surgical procedures.[49] A well-developed trauma system is persistently evolving, and management of mass casualty scenarios will become routine.[50]

Overall, anesthetic management of battlefield casualties is similar to that for patients in a civilian trauma setting; however, many factors must be considered in the perioperative plan for a combat casualty.[51] Environmental considerations such as extremes of temperature, availability of water, contamination with sand, lack of consistent electricity, and other aspects may have to be taken into consideration. Logistic support chains may be long and unable to provide sufficient supplies in the early phases of a conflict. Deployable equipment, such as drawover vaporizer systems or portable anesthesia systems, may be different from those used during peacetime, so predeployment training is vital (Fig. 66.3).[52] In addition, techniques such as total intravenous anesthesia and regional anesthesia or analgesia may be better options making familiarity with their management and associated equipment an imperative (see also Chapter 46).[53]

Optimal care of wartime casualties or victims of large disasters requires not only knowledge of a broad range of anesthetic principles and techniques but also the ability to be flexible in the face of a rapidly changing environment. With special training in airway management, provision of anesthesia and sedation, resuscitation, and pain management, anesthesiologists may find themselves involved in triage, emergency management, and perioperative and critical care.

Emergency Airway Management

The American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) algorithm for management of difficult airways (see also Fig. 44.1) modified for trauma is a useful starting point for the trauma anesthesiologist, whether in the ED or the OR (see also Chapter 44).[54] The concept of the algorithm is an important one. The anesthesiologist should have a plan for the initial approach to the airway and for coping with any difficulties that might develop. Fig. 66.4 is a typical algorithm for emergency

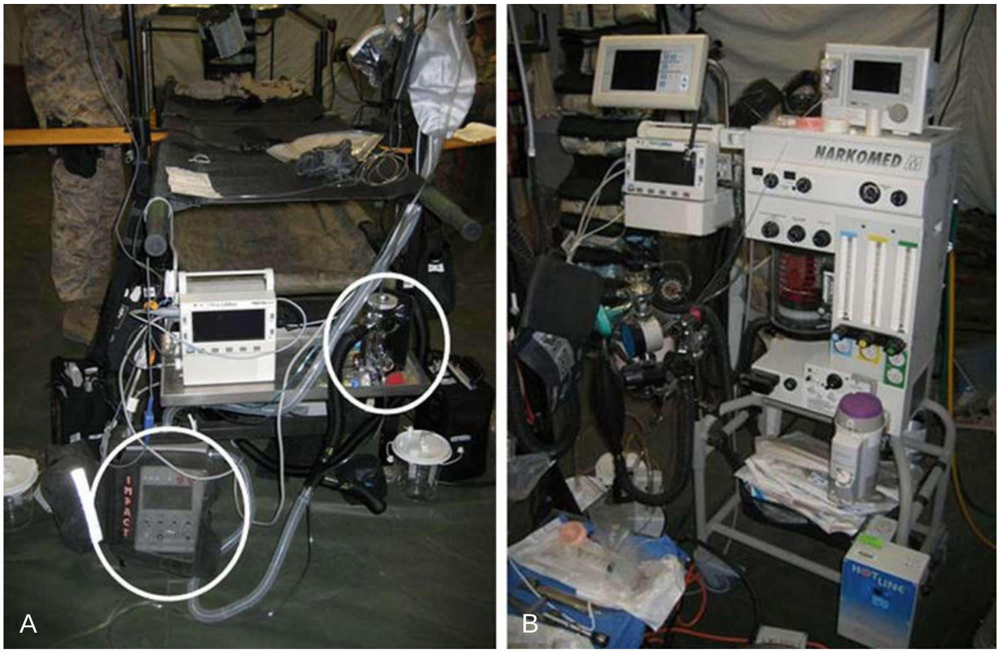


Fig. 66.3 Deployable military anesthesia equipment. (A) Drawover vaporizer and portable ventilator *(circled)* in field hospital. (B) Portable anesthesia machine. (Used with permission from CPT Bruce Baker, MD, USN.)

intubation of an unstable trauma patient. Note that it differs from the ASA algorithm in that reawakening the patient is seldom an option because the need for emergency airway control will presumably remain. Once the decision to obtain a definitive airway is made, efforts will continue until a cuffed tube is in position in the trachea, whether by conventional intubation or via a surgical approach. Failure to commit to a surgical airway soon enough results in bad outcomes more commonly than do complications of a procedure that might have been unnecessary.

INDICATIONS

The goal of emergency airway management is to ensure adequate oxygenation and ventilation while protecting the patient from the risks for aspiration. Endotracheal intubation is commonly required and is specifically indicated in the following conditions:

- Cardiac or respiratory arrest
- Respiratory insufficiency (see Box 66.2)
- Airway protection
- Need for deep sedation or analgesia, up to and including general anesthesia
- Ventilation management of patients with space-occupying intracranial lesions and evidence of increased intracranial pressure (ICP)
- Delivery of a 100% fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2) to patients with carbon monoxide poisoning
- Facilitation of the diagnostic workup in uncooperative or intoxicated patients

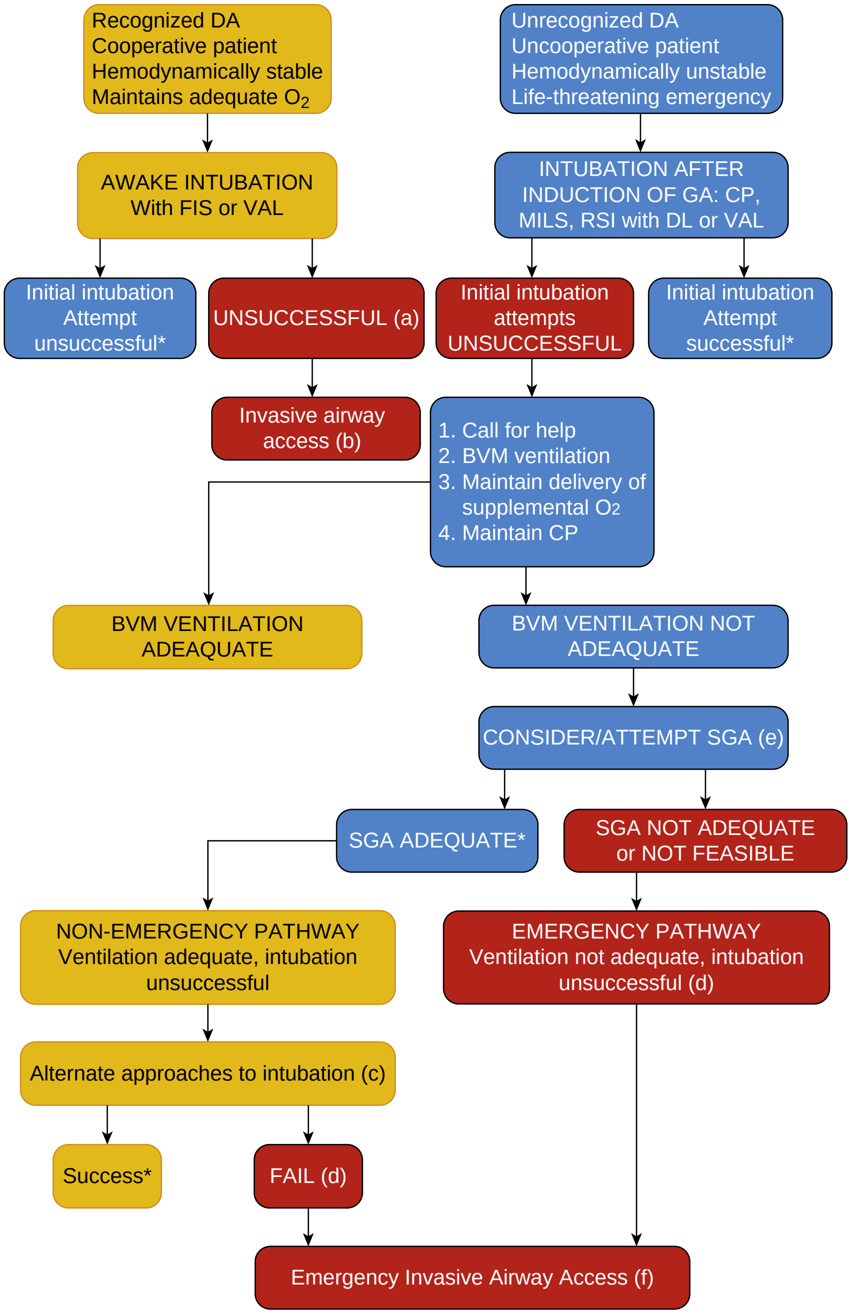
APPROACH TO ENDOTRACHEAL INTUBATION

In general, monitoring standards for airway management should be the same in the ED and OR, including an electrocardiogram (ECG), blood pressure, oximetry, and capnometry. Appropriate equipment, including an oxygen source, bag-valve-mask ventilating system, mechanical ventilator, suction, and a selection of laryngoscope blades (including video laryngoscope), ETTs, and devices for managing difficult tracheal intubations, should be available in any location where emergency intubation is likely, including the ED.

Endotracheal intubation is best accomplished in almost all cases with a modified rapid sequence approach by an experienced clinician. Although concern may exist that the use of neuromuscular blocking drugs and potent anesthetics outside the OR will be associated with a more frequent complication rate, in fact the opposite is more likely correct. Anesthesia and neuromuscular blockade allow the best tracheal intubating conditions on the first approach to the airway, which is advantageous in an uncooperative, hypoxic, or aspirating patient. Attempts to secure the airway in an awake or lightly sedated patient increase the risk for airway trauma, pain, aspiration, hypertension, laryngospasm, and combative behavior. Experienced providers, supported by appropriate monitoring and equipment, have achieved results of medication-assisted intubation outside the OR that are equivalent to those for emergency tracheal intubation within the OR.[55-57]

PROPHYLAXIS AGAINST PULMONARY ASPIRATION OF GASTRIC CONTENTS

A trauma patient should always be treated as having a full stomach and at risk for aspiration of gastric contents during induction of anesthesia (see also Chapter 44). Reasons include ingestion of food or liquids before the injury, swallowed blood from oral or nasal injuries, delayed gastric emptying associated with the stress of trauma, and administration of liquid contrast medium for abdominal CT scanning.


Recognized DA
Cooperative patient
Hemodynamically stable
Maintains adequate O2
Unrecognized DA
Uncooperative patient
Hemodynamically unstable
Life-threatening emergency
AWAKE INTUBATION With FIS or VAL
INTUBATION AFTER INDUCTION OF GA: CP, MILS, RSI with DL or VAL
Initial intubation Attempt unsuccessful*
UNSUCCESSFUL (a)
Initial intubation attempts UNSUCCESSFUL
Initial intubation Attempt successful*
Invasive airway access (b)
1. Call for help
2. BVM ventilation
3. Maintain delivery of supplemental O2
4. Maintain CP
BVM VENTILATION ADEQUATE
BVM VENTILATION NOT ADEQUATE
CONSIDER/ATTEMPT SGA (e)
SGA ADEQUATE*
SGA NOT ADEQUATE or NOT FEASIBLE
NON-EMERGENCY PATHWAY Ventilation adequate, intubation unsuccessful
EMERGENCY PATHWAY Ventilation not adequate, intubation unsuccessful (d)
Alternate approaches to intubation (c)
Success*
FAIL (d)
Emergency Invasive Airway Access (f)

* Confirm ventilation, tracheal intubation or SGA placement with standard confirmatory techniques (exhaled CO_2, misting of tube, auscultation of breath sounds, improving SpO_2). If perfusion (and exhaled CO_2) absent, use additional confirmation methods (e.g., repeat laryngoscopy, bronchoscopy, esophageal detector device, chest X-ray).

(a) Other options in ASA algorithm:
- Ventilation with a face mask or SGA might be difficult or impossible in a patient with maxillofacial trauma
- Local anesthesia infiltration or regional nerve blockade are of limited value in extensive trauma surgery.

(b) Invasive airway access includes surgical or percutaneous cricothyrotomy or tracheostomy, transtracheal jet ventilation and retrograde intubation.

(c) Alternative difficult intubation approaches include (but are not limited to): VAL, SGA (e.g., laryngeal mask airway [LMA] as an intubation conduit with or without flexible scope guidance), flexible scope intubation (FSI), intubating stylet or tube changer, and light wand. Blind intubation (oral or nasal) is discouraged in patients with maxillofacial trauma and laryngeal or tracheal injury.

(d) Aborting the case and awakening the patient to optimize and re-attempt intubation via a different airway technique (e.g., awake intubation) is impractical in most trauma cases due to the emergent condition of the patient.

(e) Emergency non-invasive airway ventilation consists of SGA.

(f) Surgical airway kit should be immediately available.

Fig. 66.4 Emergency airway management algorithm in trauma. Individual practitioners and trauma hospitals should determine their own algorithm, based on available skills and resources. *ASA,* American Society of Anesthesiologists; *BVM,* bag-valve-mask; *CP,* cricoid pressure; *DA,* difficult airway; *DL,* direct laryngoscopy; *FIS,* flexible intubation scope; *GA,* general anesthesia; *MILS,* manual in-line stabilization; *RSI,* rapid sequence intubation; *SGA,* supraglottic airway; *VAL,* video-assisted laryngoscopy. (Modified from Hagberg CA, Kaslow O. Difficult airway management algorithm in trauma updated by COTEP. *ASA Newsletter.* 2014;78:56–60.)

Cricoid pressure—the Sellick maneuver—has been recommended to be applied continuously during emergency airway management from the time the patient loses protective airway reflexes until ETT placement and cuff inflation are confirmed. The Sellick maneuver consists of elevating the patient's chin (without displacing the cervical spine) and then pushing the cricoid cartilage posteriorly to close the esophagus. However, cricoid pressure may worsen the laryngoscopic grade of view in up to 30% of patients[58] without providing effective prevention of aspiration of gastric contents.[59] In a prehospital study evaluating the impact of cricoid pressure on subsequent intubation success, discontinuing cricoid pressure usually facilitated intubation of the trachea without worsening the grade of laryngoscopic view.[60] Thus cricoid pressure should be released in the trauma patient if likely to facilitate intubation attempts. The lack of evidence supporting the use of cricoid pressure and its potential to make intubation more difficult led the American Heart Association to recommend discontinuation of its use during cardiac arrest situations.[61] Additionally, the Eastern Association for the Surgery of Trauma Practice Management Guidelines for emergency tracheal intubation have removed it as a class 1 recommendation.[62]

In the traditionally defined rapid sequence induction of anesthesia, any attempt at ventilation between administration of medication and intubation is avoided, presumably because positive-pressure ventilation may force gas into the patient's stomach, leading to regurgitation and aspiration. Sellick's original paper described ventilation during cricoid pressure in patients with full stomachs with the belief that cricoid pressure during mask ventilation would prevent gastric inflation.[63] Although this may be true, cricoid pressure reduces tidal volumes, increases peak inspiratory pressure, or prevents ventilation.[64] On the other hand, the increase in oxygen consumption in trauma patients necessitates preoxygenation whenever possible. If preoxygenation is not possible because of facial trauma, decreased respiratory effort, or agitation, rapid desaturation is a possibility. Positive-pressure ventilation during all phases of induction provides the largest possible oxygen reserve during emergency airway management and will help mitigate hypoxia if intubation proves difficult. In this situation, large tidal volumes and high peak inspiratory pressures should be avoided. Application of cricoid pressure during attempts at positive-pressure ventilation should be considered to reduce gastric inflation, but it may prevent effective ventilation in some patients necessitating discontinuation.

PROTECTION OF THE CERVICAL SPINE

Standard practice dictates that all victims of blunt trauma be assumed to have an unstable cervical spine until this condition is ruled out. The airway management of these patients receives much attention from anesthesiologists because direct laryngoscopy causes cervical motion, with the theoretical potential to exacerbate spinal cord injury (SCI). Stabilization of the cervical spine will generally occur in the prehospital environment, with the patient already having a rigid cervical collar in place. This collar may be kept in place for several days before the complete gamut of tests to rule out cervical spine instability have been completed (see later discussion). The presence of an "uncleared" cervical spine mandates the use of manual in-line stabilization without application of traction throughout any attempt at intubation.[33] This approach allows removal of the front of the cervical collar to facilitate wider mouth opening and jaw displacement; however, this may slightly lengthen the time to intubation and worsen laryngeal visualization during laryngoscopy compared to intubation attempts without manual in-line stablilization.[65] Manual in-line stabilization has been tested through considerable clinical experience and is the standard of care in the ATLS curriculum. Emergency awake fiberoptic intubation, though requiring less manipulation of the neck, is generally very difficult because of airway secretions and hemorrhage, rapid desaturation, and lack of patient cooperation; and is best reserved for cooperative patients with known cervical instability under controlled conditions. Indirect video laryngoscopy offers the potential to enjoy the best of both worlds: an anesthetized patient and decreased cervical motion.[66,67] In comparative studies of direct laryngoscopy, video laryngoscopy, fiberoptic intubation, blind nasal intubation, or cricothyrotomy—in patients with known cervical cord or spine injuries, or both—there is no difference in neurologic deterioration with technique used, and no clear evidence that direct laryngoscopy worsens outcome.[68]

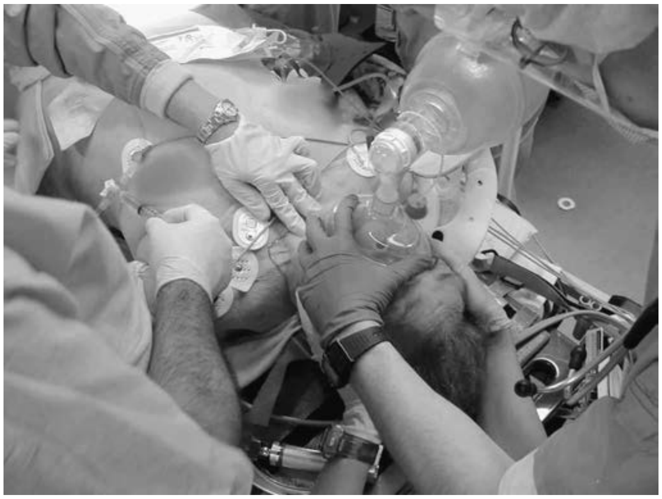


Fig. 66.5 Emergency intubation of a trauma patient immobilized on a long spine board. The front of the cervical collar is removed once in-line manual stabilization of the spine is established, allowing for cricoid pressure and greater excursion of the mandible. (Reprinted with permission from Dutton RP. Spinal cord injury. *Int Anesthesiol Clin.* 2002;40:111.)

PERSONNEL

Emergency endotracheal intubation requires more assistance than an intubation performed under controlled conditions (see also Chapter 6). Three providers are required to ventilate the patient and manage the airway, administer medications, and provide manual in-line stabilization (if indicated); a fourth provider may be needed to provide cricoid pressure if deemed appropriate. Fig. 66.5 is an illustration of this approach. Additional assistance may be required to restrain a patient who is combative because of intoxication or traumatic brain injury (TBI).

The immediate presence of a surgeon or other physician who can expeditiously perform a cricothyroidotomy is desirable. Even if a surgical airway is not required, additional experienced hands may prove useful during difficult intubations. The surgeon may also wish to inspect the upper airway during laryngoscopy or video laryngoscopy if trauma to the face or neck has occurred. Urgent tube thoracostomy may prove necessary in some trauma patients to treat a tension pneumothorax that develops with the onset of positive-pressure ventilation.

ANESTHETICS AND INDUCTION OF ANESTHESIA

Any intravenous anesthetic administered to a trauma patient in hemorrhagic shock may cause profound hypotension and even cardiac arrest because of inhibition of circulating catecholamines. Although propofol is the mainstay of intravenous induction in the OR, its use in trauma patients is problematic because of its vasodilatory and negative inotropic effects. Moreover, pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic studies in a swine hemorrhagic shock model suggest a significant reduction in propofol dosage of more than 80% to achieve the targeted effect site concentration.[69,70] Unfortunately, there is no corresponding clinical data on the impact of reduced propofol dosing in the setting of hemorrhagic shock on recall and awareness.

The most commonly used induction agent in the United States in the ED or trauma setting is etomidate.[71] Etomidate administered in a range of 0.2 to 0.3 mg/kg is associated with hemodynamic stability and has an onset/duration profile like that of succinylcholine. Its safety for use in rapid sequence induction in trauma patients has been challenged although these studies are largely retrospective with the potential for selection bias and other methodologic deficiencies.[72,73] Although etomidate is associated with transient adrenal cortical suppression after a single dose, this appears not to be clinically significant when a single dose is used for induction for intubation in both trauma and mixed surgical-medical patients undergoing rapid sequence induction.[74-76] Etomidate can cause myoclonic jerks during its onset, but use of a rapidly acting neuromuscular blocking agent, such as succinylcholine, mitigates this effect substantially.

Ketamine is also a frequently used induction agent for hypotensive trauma patients due to its centrally mediated increase in sympathetic tone and catecholamine release.[77] Its use in patients with concomitant TBI has been questioned based on older reports of associated ICP elevation.[78] More recent analysis, however, suggests that the preservation of cerebral perfusion by maintenance of mean arterial blood pressure in hemodynamically unstable patients is more important than any theoretical risk to the brain caused by ketamine's tendency to increase cerebral activity and ICP.[78,79] Some investigators have also raised concern that the psychotropic effects associated with ketamine may increase the risk of acute- and posttraumatic stress disorders in trauma patients,[80,81] although this was not found in a study examining its intraoperative use in burn patients.[82] Of more concern is the potential for barriers to its use based on institutional dispensing, tracking, and documentation procedures preventing timely access to ketamine. When barriers exist limiting its availability, ketamine may not be as readily available in the emergency setting compared to other induction agents. Due to its abuse potential, consideration has been made to reclassify ketamine as a Schedule 1 drug, potentially placing further barriers to its availability.[83] Overall, ketamine continues to be a very commonly used drug for rapid sequence induction in the trauma patient.[71]

Hypotension will likely develop in patients with hypovolemia with the administration of any anesthetic because of interruption of compensatory sympathetic outflow and the sudden change to positive-pressure ventilation. Previously healthy young patients can lose up to 40% of their blood volume before hypotension occurs, thereby leading to potentially catastrophic circulatory collapse with induction of anesthesia, regardless of the anesthetic chosen. The dose of anesthetic must be decreased in the presence of hemorrhage, including no anesthetic at all in patients with life-threatening hypovolemia. Rapid sequence induction of anesthesia and endotracheal intubation may proceed with muscle relaxants alone, although onset time may be prolonged in a patient with circulatory impairment. Subsequent patient recall of intubation and emergency procedures is highly variable and affected by the presence of coexisting TBI, intoxication, and the depth of hemorrhagic shock (see also Chapter 9). Decreased cerebral perfusion inhibits memory formation but cannot be reliably associated with any particular blood pressure or chemical marker. Administration of 0.2 mg of scopolamine (a tertiary ammonium vagolytic) may inhibit memory formation in the absence of anesthetic drugs in this situation, but it may interfere with subsequent neurologic examination because of its long half-life. Small doses of midazolam will reduce the incidence of patient awareness but also can contribute to hypotension. Although recall of ED and OR events is not unusual in this circumstance, anesthesia provider liability appears to be limited; an analysis of intraoperative awareness lawsuits in the ASA Closed Claims Database revealed no claims related to surgery in trauma patients.[84]

NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKING DRUGS

Succinylcholine remains the neuromuscular blocker with fastest onset—less than 1 minute—and shortest duration of action—5 to 10 minutes. These properties make it popular for rapid sequence induction of anesthesia. Although the use of succinylcholine may allow return of spontaneous respiration before the development of significant hypoxia in the "cannot intubate, cannot ventilate" situation, this is unlikely to be of benefit in an emergency intubation in a trauma patient. The anesthesiologist should not rely on return of spontaneous breathing in time to salvage a difficult airway management problem but should instead proceed with efforts to obtain a definitive airway, including cricothyroidotomy if other possibilities have been exhausted.

Administration of succinylcholine is associated with several adverse consequences. Increases in serum potassium of 0.5 to 1.0 mEq/L are expected, but in certain patients K^+ may increase by more than 5 mEq/L.[85] A hyperkalemic response is typically seen in burn victims and those with muscle pathology secondary to direct trauma, denervation (as with SCI), or immobilization. Hyperkalemia is not seen in the first 24 hours after these injuries, and succinylcholine may be used safely for acute airway management. Patients at risk are those with underlying pathologic processes before their traumatic event or those undergoing subsequent surgery in the weeks to months after injury.

Succinylcholine causes an increase in intraocular pressure and should be used cautiously in patients with ocular trauma.[86] Succinylcholine may also increase ICP,[87] making its use in patients with brain trauma controversial. In both these cases, however, hypoxia and hypercapnia may be as damaging as the transient increase in pressure caused by the drug. If the use of succinylcholine will lead to faster intubation, its benefits may outweigh its risks. The provider must weigh the use of succinylcholine in each individual situation based on acuity, anticipated speed with which intubation can be accomplished, and likelihood that hypoxia will develop.

Alternatives to succinylcholine include rocuronium 0.9 to 1.2 mg/kg and vecuronium 0.1 to 0.2 mg/kg. Rocuronium is preferred because it has a more rapid onset of action than that of vecuronium. With the availability of sugammadex, a rapid onset selective binding agent for rocuronium, rapid sequence induction and intubation with rocuronium followed by reversal with sugammadex allows for more rapid return of spontaneous ventilation than with succinylcholine.[88] Basically, the combination of rocuronium and sugammadex provides all the advantages of succinylcholine, but none of the complications.[89,90] Because these drugs have no significant cardiovascular toxicity, large doses can be administered to achieve rapid (1- to 2-minute) paralysis.

Specific situations will always exist in which maintaining spontaneous ventilation during intubation is the preferred way to proceed. If patients can maintain their airway temporarily but have clear indications for an artificial airway (e.g., penetrating trauma to the trachea), slow induction with ketamine or inhaled sevoflurane through cricoid pressure will enable placement of an ETT without compromising patient safety.

ADJUNCTS TO ENDOTRACHEAL INTUBATION

Equipment to facilitate difficult intubation should be readily available wherever emergency airway management is performed. The equipment available depends on the preferences of the anesthesiologist; the usefulness of most special equipment depends more on previous experience than on any intrinsic properties of the device. Certain items deserve mention, however, because they are frequently cited as aids to management of a difficult airway.

The gum elastic bougie, or intubating stylet, is an inexpensive and easily mastered adjunct for management of a difficult airway. The stylet is placed through the vocal cords via direct laryngoscopy, and the ETT is then advanced over the stylet into the trachea. Placement of the bougie is easier than direct placement of an ETT because of both its smaller diameter and the ability of an experienced operator to feel it enter the trachea even when the glottic opening cannot be visualized. The bougie is passed under the epiglottis and gently advanced; if resistance is met, the bougie is withdrawn, rotated slightly, and advanced again. In this fashion the anesthesiologist can blindly palpate the larynx until the bougie advances into the trachea. The bougie also can be used with direct and indirect video laryngoscopy systems and is especially useful in the ED when the sniffing position cannot be used because of uncertainty about the cervical spine.

Supraglottic airway (SGA) devices, such as the laryngeal mask airway (LMA) (LMA North America, San Diego, CA), are recommended in the ASA algorithm for management of a patient with a difficult airway. The LMA can be used as a guide for intubation when an unsuspected difficult intubation is encountered in a trauma patient; an ETT may be placed blindly through the lumen of the LMA and into the trachea, or a fiberoptic bronchoscope may be used to guide the tube through the LMA. The LMA is an appropriate rescue device for a difficult airway situation in trauma, provided no major anatomic injury or hemorrhage is present in the mouth and larynx. In our practice the LMA has most commonly been used as a bridge to emergency tracheostomy because it allows more controlled conditions than a cricothyroidotomy.

FACIAL AND PHARYNGEAL TRAUMA

Trauma to the face and upper airway poses difficulties for the anesthesiologist.[91] Serious skeletal derangements may be masked by apparently minor soft tissue damage. Failure to identify an injury to the face or neck can lead to acute airway obstruction secondary to swelling and hematoma. Laryngeal edema is also a risk in patients who have suffered chemical or thermal injury to the pharyngeal mucosa. Intraoral hemorrhage, pharyngeal erythema, and change in voice are all indications for early intubation.

In general, both maxillary and mandibular fractures will make ventilation by mask more difficult, whereas mandibular fractures will make endotracheal intubation easier. Palpation of the facial bones before manipulation of the airway will alert the anesthetist to these possibilities. Patients with injuries to the jaw and zygomatic arch often have trismus. Although the trismus will resolve with the administration of neuromuscular blocking agents, preinduction assessment of airway anatomy may be difficult. Bilateral mandibular fractures and pharyngeal hemorrhage may lead to upper airway obstruction, particularly in a supine patient, although intubation may be easier because of loss of skeletal resistance to direct laryngoscopy. A patient arriving at the ED in the sitting or prone position because of airway compromise is best left in that position until the moment of anesthetic induction and intubation.

THE FIELD PLACED AIRWAY

In many settings, prehospital providers work under protocols that allow for advanced airway management including intubation and placement of an SGA. It is recommended that the individuals responsible for airway management at the ED level be familiar with the protocols and devices available in their region to facilitate early assessment and airway exchange if indicated. All intubations done in the field should be immediately confirmed using capnometry. In the event of cardiac arrest and inability to confirm correct placement by observation of end-tidal CO_2, direct laryngoscopy or video laryngoscopy can be employed to visualize position of the ETT. When an SGA device is used in the prehospital setting, the positioning and ability to ventilate should be confirmed by capnometry, presence of breath sounds, and chest movement. If there is adequate ventilation, replacement of the SGA can be delayed during the initial evaluation.

Since the SGA is not considered a secured definitive airway, it should be changed out to a cuffed ETT as soon as practical. When faced with changing out an SGA, preparation is the key concept. Unfortunately, there is a paucity of literature discussing the technique of "changing out" an SGA with no single preferred method in the trauma patient. This procedure can be challenging with increased risk of losing the patient's airway. Prior to deciding which technique to use, it is extremely important to have a discussion with the prehospital care provider that managed the patient's airway in the field to determine the following information:

- What was the reason for placing an SGA?
- Were attempts at oral or nasal intubation made? How many?
- What laryngoscope/video laryngoscope was used?
- What anatomy was visualized during attempts?
- What, if any, medications were administered during the attempts?

The answers to these questions may suggest a difficult airway prompting more guarded management during the exchange process. The three options for exchange in the trauma setting are: (1) remove the SGA and replace under direct or video laryngoscopy, (2) use the SGA to place an ETT or exchange catheter, or (3) proceed to a surgical airway. The second option will largely be guided by the specific SGA, channel size, and available equipment.[92-94] Of note, there have been reports of pharyngeal, glottic, and lingual edema with the use of various SGA devices likely secondary to exaggerated anatomical distortion and indirect vascular compression.[93] It is unclear whether this is an anticipated finding in some patients with proper placement and inflation of the proximal oropharyngeal cuff or due to overinflation of the cuff. In the only published series of patients presenting with prehospital placement of the King LT (S)-D (King Systems; Noblesville, IN), 7 of 9 trauma patients ultimately underwent tracheostomy in the OR due to concerns for concomitant facial trauma, observed upper airway edema, or failed attempts at direct laryngoscopy.[93]

On occasion, prehospital personnel will perform a blind nasotracheal intubation in the spontaneously ventilating trauma patient. Successful exchange of this nasotracheal tube on arrival to the ED is consistently easier in comparison with the SGA. Nasotracheally placed tubes in the field are usually a result of the prehospital providers not being credentialed for drug-facilitated intubation. As a result, most of these patients have not had laryngoscopy performed and therefore are less likely to have airway edema from intubation attempts. Again, in this scenario, it is prudent to facilitate the intubation with muscle relaxation and adequate sedation/anesthesia prior to attempting laryngoscopy. A video laryngoscope is preferred as it allows for an expanded view of the glottis with visualization of the nasotracheal tube prior to removal of the nasal tube. Simple exchange under direct or video visualization with an oral ETT is usually all that is required. Once again, it cannot be overemphasized that a bougie be readily available in these situations for rapid placement into the glottis with various sized ETTs readily available. If one is unable to adequately visualize the glottis with laryngoscopy, it is recommended that the nasotracheal tube be left in place for a period to allow for either a controlled tracheostomy or swelling to improve and an exchange for an oral tube made later.

Resuscitation from Hemorrhagic Shock

Resuscitation refers to restoration of normal physiology after injury. Resuscitation from hemorrhagic shock refers specifically to restoration of normal circulating blood volume, normal vascular tone, and normal tissue perfusion. Resuscitation begins immediately after injury, via the patient's own compensatory mechanisms, and continues through the prehospital, ED, OR, and ICU phases of care.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF HEMORRHAGIC SHOCK

During massive hemorrhage an imbalance occurs between systemic oxygen delivery and oxygen consumption. Blood loss leads to hemodynamic instability, coagulopathy, decreased oxygen delivery, decreased tissue perfusion, and cellular hypoxia. The initial response to hemorrhage takes place on the macrocirculatory level and is mediated by the neuroendocrine system. Decreased arterial blood pressure leads to vasoconstriction and release of catecholamines to preserve blood flow to the heart, kidney, and brain, whereas other regional beds are constricted. Pain, hemorrhage, and cortical perception of traumatic injuries lead to the release of hormones and other inflammatory mediators, including renin, angiotensin, vasopressin, antidiuretic hormone, growth hormone, glucagon, cortisol, epinephrine, and norepinephrine.[95] This response sets the stage for the microcirculatory response that follows.

Individual ischemic cells respond to hemorrhage by taking up interstitial fluid, thus further depleting intravascular fluid.[96] Cellular edema may choke off adjacent capillaries and result in the no-reflow phenomenon, which prevents reversal of ischemia even in the presence of adequate macroperfusion.[97] Ischemic cells produce lactate and free radicals, which accumulate in the circulation if perfusion is diminished. These compounds cause direct damage to the cell and form the bulk of the toxic load that washes back to the central circulation when flow is reestablished. Ischemic cells also produce and release inflammatory factors—prostacyclin, thromboxane, prostaglandins, leukotrienes, endothelin, complement, interleukins, tumor necrosis factor, and others.[98] Fig. 66.6 shows the generalized inflammatory response to shock, with an emphasis on immune system amplification. This inflammatory response, once begun, becomes a disease process independent of its origin. Such alterations lay the foundations for subsequent development of multiple organ failure, a systemic inflammatory process that leads to dysfunction of different vital organs and accounts for high mortality rates.[99]

Specific organ systems respond to traumatic shock in specific ways. The CNS is the prime trigger of the neuroendocrine response to shock, which maintains perfusion to the heart, kidney, and brain at the expense of other tissues.[100] Regional glucose uptake in the brain changes during shock.[101] Reflexes and cortical electrical activity are both depressed during hypotension; these changes are reversible with mild hypoperfusion but become permanent with prolonged ischemia. Failure to recover preinjury neurologic function is a marker for a poor prognosis, even when normal vital signs are restored.[102]

The *kidney* and *adrenal glands* are prime responders to the neuroendocrine changes associated with shock and produce renin, angiotensin, aldosterone, cortisol, erythropoietin, and catecholamines.[103] The kidney maintains glomerular filtration in the face of hypotension by selective vasoconstriction and concentration of blood flow in the medulla and deep cortical area. Prolonged hypotension leads to decreased cellular energy and an inability to concentrate urine (renal cell hibernation), followed by patchy cell death, tubular epithelial necrosis, and renal failure.[104]

The *heart* is preserved from ischemia during shock because of maintenance of or even an increase in nutrient blood flow, and cardiac function is well preserved until the late stages. Lactate, free radicals, and other humoral factors released by ischemic cells all act as negative inotropes and, in a bleeding patient, may produce cardiac dysfunction as the terminal event in the shock spiral.[105] A patient with cardiac disease or direct cardiac trauma is at great risk for

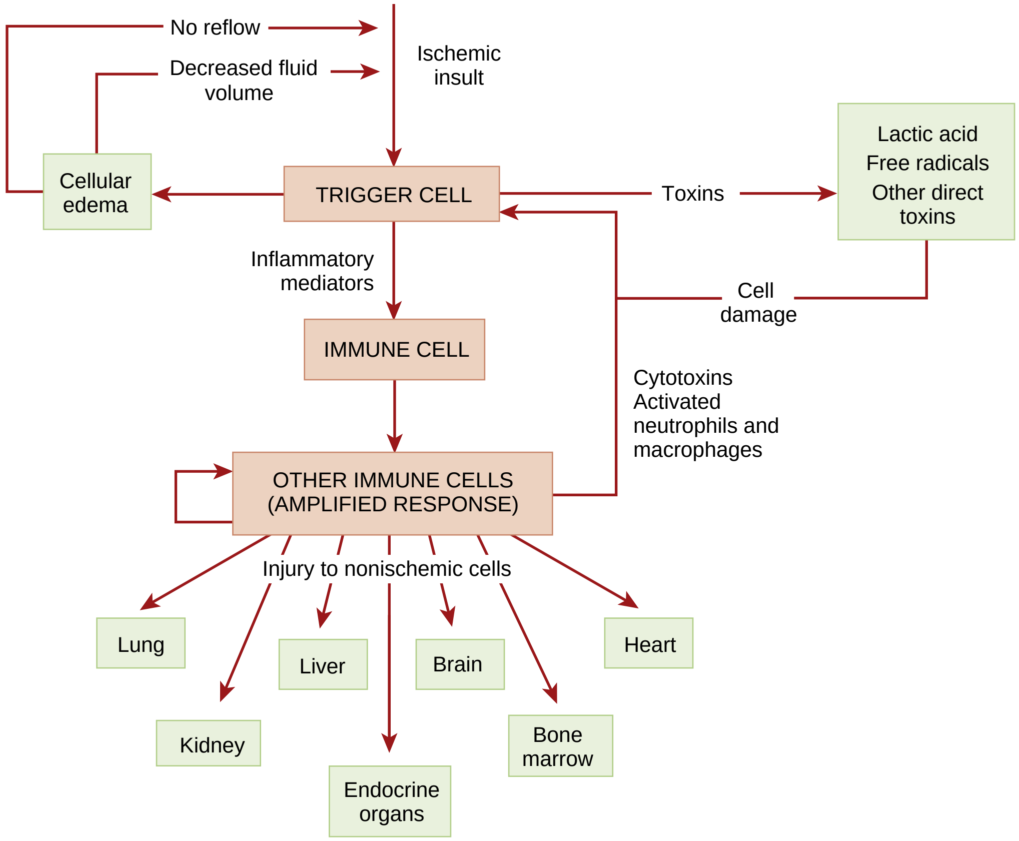


Fig. 66.6 The "shock cascade." Ischemia of any given region of the body will trigger an inflammatory response that will impact nonischemic organs even after adequate systemic perfusion has been restored. (Reprinted with permission from Dutton RP. Shock and trauma anesthesia. In: Grande CM, Smith CE, eds. *Anesthesiology Clinics of North America: Trauma*. Philadelphia, 1999, WB: Saunders; 83–95.)

decompensation because a fixed stroke volume inhibits the body's ability to increase blood flow in response to hypovolemia and anemia. Tachycardia is the patient's only option, with potentially disastrous consequences on the oxygen supply-demand balance in the heart. Therefore shock in older patients may be rapidly progressive and not respond predictably to fluid administration.[106]

The *lung* is the filter for the inflammatory by-products of the ischemic body. Immune complex and cellular factors accumulate in pulmonary capillaries and lead to neutrophil and platelet aggregation, increased capillary permeability, destruction of lung architecture, and acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS).[107,108] The lung is the sentinel organ for the development of multiple organ dysfunction (MOD) in a patient with traumatic shock.[109,110] Pure hemorrhage, in the absence of hypoperfusion, does not produce pulmonary dysfunction.[111] Traumatic shock is obviously more than just a hemodynamic disorder.

The *gut* is one of the earliest organs affected by hypoperfusion and may be one of the prime triggers of MOD. Intense vasoconstriction occurs early and frequently leads to a no-reflow phenomenon, even when the macrocirculation is restored.[112] Intestinal cell death causes a breakdown in the barrier function of the gut that results in increased translocation of bacteria to the liver and lung, thereby potentiating MOD and ARDS.[113]

The *liver* has a complex microcirculation and may experience reperfusion injury during recovery from shock.[114] Hepatic cells are also metabolically active and contribute to the ischemic inflammatory response and to irregularities in blood glucose.[115] Failure of synthetic function of the liver after shock is almost always lethal.

Skeletal muscle is not metabolically active during shock and tolerates ischemia better than do the other organs. The large mass of skeletal muscle, though, makes it important in the generation of lactic acid and free radicals from ischemic cells. Sustained ischemia of muscle cells leads to an increase in intracellular sodium and free water, with an aggravated depletion of fluid in the vascular and interstitial compartments.[116]

More recently, there appears to be a role for endothelial injury in the pathophysiology of hemorrhagic shock. The *endothelium* is one of the "largest" organs in the body with a surface area of up to 5000 m^2.[117] Under normal conditions the endothelium is anticoagulated by a number of natural anticoagulant systems including the negatively charged luminal surface layer, the glycocalyx, which is rich in heparinoids and interacts with antithrombin.[118] As noted earlier, increasing injury severity and shock lead to high catecholamine levels which can directly injure the endothelium.[119] This is evidenced by an increase in syndecan-1 levels, a marker of endothelial glycocalyx degradation.[120,121] The release of heparin-like substances in the glycocalyx may also contribute to endogenous heparinization and the coagulopathy of trauma (discussed in the next section).[122-124] The net effect of this endothelial injury results in glycocalyx shedding, breakdown of tight junctions with capillary leakage, and a pro-coagulant microvasculature that further reduces oxygen delivery due to increased tissue pressure and microvascular thrombosis.

ACUTE TRAUMATIC COAGULOPATHY

During resuscitation from hemorrhagic shock, attention must also be directed to avoidance or correction of coagulopathy. In patients with identical injury severity scores (ISS), the presence of coagulopathy is associated with at least a twofold to fourfold increase in mortality[125,126]; thus current resuscitation strategies focus on coagulopathy and shock during the initial and subsequent resuscitation. The presence of trauma-induced coagulopathy—defined as a "multifactorial, global failure of the coagulation system to sustain adequate hemostasis after major trauma"—has an endogenous component linked to hypoperfusion and tissue injury referred to as acute traumatic coagulopathy (ATC).[127] A proposed mechanism for the development of ATC is endothelial activation of protein C secondary to the traumatic inflammatory response described earlier.[128] Activated protein C (APC) is generated by thrombomodulin-thrombin complex production as a result of tissue hypoperfusion. APC inactivates factors Va and VIIIa, and in combination with the reduction in thrombin availability for fibrin formation, supports the development of ATC.[129] Additionally, degradation of the endothelial glycocalyx as a result of hypoperfusion may play a supporting role in ATC.[130]

By clinical definition, ATC starts with the early presence of reduced clot strength as demonstrated by viscoelastic monitoring and changes in laboratory-based coagulation testing associated with an increase in mortality and likelihood of receiving a massive transfusion.[131] Davenport and colleagues[131] proposed a clot amplitude threshold of less than 35 mm at 5 minutes using rotational thromboelastometry (ROTEM) (Tem Innovations, Munich, Germany) analysis, which predicted the subsequent need for a massive transfusion with a detection rate of 77% and false-positive rate of 13% (see also Chapter 50). Similar results have been obtained using RapidTEG (Haemonetics, Niles, IL) viscoelastic testing.[132] Laboratory-based coagulation testing is of limited utility in early detection of ATC because of time considerations. However, Frith and associates found patients with a prothrombin ratio of greater than 1.2 on admission to have larger transfusion requirements and increased mortality.[133] Regardless of the means used to detect coagulopathy in the severely traumatized patient undergoing resuscitation for hemorrhagic shock, the resuscitation itself should include consideration for early treatment of ATC.

In addition to the described cascade, hyperfibrinolysis occurs in some of the more severely injured patients and contributes to ATC.[134-136] The mechanism behind this early fibrinolysis is not clearly understood but may be related to hypoperfusion-induced APC formation resulting in the consumption of plasminogen activator inhibitor. The latter normally serves to downregulate tissue plasminogen activator, which promotes fibrin clot degradation. The reported incidence of hyperfibrinolysis varies significantly based on the methods and cutoffs used to diagnose fibrinolysis, but its presence is clearly associated with the increased mortality and transfusion requirements seen with ATC.

ASSESSMENT OF THE HEMOSTATIC SYSTEM

Given the importance of coagulopathy in the severely injured trauma patient, assessment of the hemostatic system is essential in the early phases of management. This is best accomplished by collecting and integrating information from the four pillars of perioperative coagulation monitoring: (1) medical history, (2) clinical presentation, (3) standard laboratory-based coagulation tests, and (4) viscoelastic monitoring.[137]

Obtaining a focused patient medical history is one of the key pieces for the evaluation of the individual bleeding risk. In some settings, standardized assessments and specific questionnaires can be deployed to raise sensitivity and specificity, resulting in superior detection of hemostasis issues compared to routine coagulation studies alone.[138] The assessment of the clinical phenotypes of bleeding is critical for the differential diagnosis and enables the clinician to differentiate and semi-quantify the underlying coagulation disorder in a very simple and quick fashion. The clinical assessment also helps to put in context abnormal coagulation studies, so that clinical interventions are not based on laboratory values alone. The clinical assessment aims to differentiate whether the cause of bleeding is "surgical" or "nonsurgical." The latter is characterized by a more diffuse pattern. Standard laboratory coagulation tests typically include prothrombin time, international normalized ratio, activated partial thromboplastin time, and platelet count. In some institutions, other laboratory values such as fibrinogen levels, factor XIII, and thrombin time may be part of a routine laboratory coagulation battery. Standard coagulation tests alone play a limited role in the initial diagnostic steps of patients with deranged hemostasis due to trauma. When used in isolation, the standard tests come with significant limitations regarding the detection of extent and origin of a given patient's coagulopathy. These tests allow only the determination of certain questions and are of restricted value. The key restrictions of standard coagulation tests are: delayed results in a dynamic situation, lack of validation, and inability to detect both hyperfibrinolysis and hypercoagulability. A recent meta-analysis concluded that standard plasma coagulation tests represent historically established parameters that are not fully supported by evidence for the management of perioperative coagulopathic bleeding.[139] This is where viscoelastic monitoring as the fourth pillar of perioperative coagulation assessment brings added value. Viscoelastic coagulation monitoring devices like RapidTEG and ROTEM assess the whole coagulation process from initial thrombin generation to maximum clot formation up to clot lysis.[140] In contrast to the standard laboratory coagulation tests, TEG and ROTEM have been better validated for the diagnosis of coagulopathy in trauma patients.[141,142] These tests can significantly improve the coagulation assessment and management of a given patient; and they may reduce unnecessary administration of procoagulant substances such as platelets, fresh frozen plasma (FFP), and coagulation factor concentrates. The rapid turnaround for results may further enable the anesthesiologist to distinguish between a surgical cause of bleeding and trauma-associated coagulopathy.

GENERAL APPROACH TO RESUSCITATION

Fluid administration is the cornerstone of resuscitation (see also Chapters 47 and 86). Intravascular volume is lost to hemorrhage, uptake by ischemic cells, and extravasation into the interstitial space. Administration of intravenous fluids will predictably increase cardiac output and arterial blood pressure in a hypovolemic trauma patient. The ATLS curriculum initially advocated rapid infusion of up to 2 L of warmed isotonic crystalloid solution in any hypotensive patient, with the goal of restoring normal arterial blood pressure. More recently, this has been revised to recognize the importance of a balanced resuscitation with elimination of the emphasis on a more aggressive approach. The current recommendation suggests initiation of resuscitation with 1 L of crystalloid and earlier use of blood and blood products for patients in shock.[33]

The change in ATLS recommendations recognizes that aggressive crystalloid fluid resuscitation during active hemorrhage may be counterproductive. Dilution of red cell mass reduces oxygen delivery and contributes to hypothermia and coagulopathy. Increased arterial blood pressure may lead to increased bleeding because of disruption of clots and reversal of compensatory vasoconstriction.[143] The result of aggressive fluid administration is often a transient increase in arterial blood pressure, followed by increased bleeding, another episode of hypotension, and the need for more volume administration. This vicious circle has been recognized since the First World War and remains a complication of resuscitation therapy today. The ATLS manual characterizes such patients as "transient responders" with active, ongoing hemorrhage.[33] Resuscitation of these patients should be considered in the following three phases (Table 66.2):

- Phase 1, Uncontrolled Hemorrhage: ongoing active bleeding with focus on damage control with pragmatic resuscitation;
- Phase 2, Controlled Hemorrhage: major bleeding sources under control with focus on goal-directed and tailored management of coagulopathy and resuscitation;
- Phase 3, Restoration of Physiology: hemorrhage has been fully controlled with focus on end-organ perfusion and optimization of physiologic state.

Managing late resuscitation (phase 3) is driven by endpoint targets and consists of giving enough fluid to optimize oxygen delivery. Early resuscitation (phase 1) is much more complex because the risks associated with aggressive intravascular volume replacement (Box 66.5), including the potential for exacerbating hemorrhage and prolonging the crisis, must be weighed against the risk for hypoperfusion and ischemia. These phases do not always have distinct transitions and tend to occur as gradual transitions from initial presentation to the OR and ultimately to the ICU.

Phase 1: Uncontrolled Hemorrhage

During the initial phase of management, the goal in trauma patients with massive hemorrhage requiring an emergent surgical procedure in the OR is to stop the bleeding as soon as possible. In this setting, there is little opportunity to perform additional studies, await test results, or evaluate for perioperative optimization. The role of the anesthesia team is to help achieve hemostasis as quickly as possible, while bridging the patient's physiologic status to allow for surgical stabilization. In phase 1, the general approach employs the concept of damage control resuscitation (DCR). DCR combines an empiric hemostatic resuscitation strategy in combination with permissive hypotension during surgical or angioembolization control of ongoing hemorrhage. In combination with surgical approaches incorporating damage control techniques, the initial goal of controlling

TABLE 66.2 Phases of Major Traumatic Resuscitation

	Phase 1	Phase 2	Phase 3
Clinical status	■ Life-threatening uncontrolled hemorrhage	■ Ongoing hemorrhage—not immediately life-threatening—partial surgical control	■ Hemorrhage controlled
Clinical priorities	■ STOP THE BLEEDING ■ Call for HELP ■ Control airway, FiO2 1.0 ■ Damage control resuscitation ▪ SBP <100 mm Hg ▪ MAP 50-60 mm Hg ▪ Consider modifications if TBI, carotid stenosis, CAD	■ TAILORED RESUSCITATION ■ Place supportive lines (arterial/CVC) ■ Prevent hypothermia ▪ Esophageal temperature probe ▪ Warmed fluids ▪ Warming blankets (upper/lower) ▪ Increase room temperature	■ RESTORE PHYSIOLOGY ■ Rapid intravascular filling ■ Stepwise deepening of anesthesia ▪ Fentanyl boluses ▪ Increased volatile anesthetics ■ Additional lines (urinary catheter, nasogastric tube) ■ Communicate with all team members and ICU
Blood products	■ Activate MTP ■ Consider emergency (uncrossmatched blood products ■ Early use ■ Empiric 1:1:1 ratio (PRBC:FFP:platelets)	■ Viscoelastic monitoring to guide coagulation products ■ Hb to guide red blood cell transfusion	■ Only as required on testing ■ Deactivate MTP when appropriate
Crystalloids/colloids	■ Cautious use	■ Use for hypovolemia with normal coagulation/Hb ■ User serial lactate/BD to guide fluid requirements	■ Attempt to normalize lactate/BD
Special points	■ Consider $CaCl_2$ 1 g for every three PRBC ■ Large bore IV access (>16 G) or CVC ■ Rapid infusing system ■ Avoid vasoconstrictors	■ Consider cell salvage if appropriate ■ Aim to repeat viscoelastic testing every 30 min ■ Consider TEE for difficult cases	■ Consider vasoactive infusions if appropriate/necessary

BD, Base deficit; *CAD*, coronary artery disease; *CVC*, central venous catheter; *FFP*, fresh frozen plasma; *FiO2*, fraction inspired oxygen; *Hb*, hemoglobin; *ICU*, intensive care unit; *IV*, intravenous; *MAP*, mean arterial pressure; *mm Hg*, millimeters of mercury; *MTP*, massive transfusion protocol; *PRBC*, packed red blood cells; *SBP*, systolic blood pressure; *TBI*, traumatic brain injury; *TEE*, transesophageal echocardiography

BOX 66.5 **Risks of Aggressive Volume Replacement during Early Resuscitation**

Increased blood pressure
Decreased blood viscosity
Decreased hematocrit
Decreased clotting factor concentration
Greater transfusion requirement
Disruption of electrolyte balance
Direct immune suppression
Premature reperfusion
Increased risk for hypothermia

Most complications of volume resuscitation arise from increased hemorrhage volume or excessive hemodilution.

hemorrhage, physiologic stabilization, and correction of coagulopathy allows for more definitive surgical interventions later.

Permissive Hypotension. In the setting of trauma, "permissive" rather than "deliberate" hypotension is controversial and has been the focus of numerous laboratory and clinical research efforts. Deliberate hypotensive management is an accepted standard of anesthetic care for elective surgical procedures such as total joint replacement, spinal fusion, radical neck dissection, reconstructive facial surgery, and major pelvic or abdominal procedures.[144] Tolerating some degree of hypotension in the trauma patient during or prior to control of hemorrhage has been more controversial.

In 1965, Shaftan and colleagues[145] published the results of a study of coagulation in dogs that demonstrated that the formation of a soft extraluminal clot limits bleeding after arterial trauma. This study compared the quantity of blood lost from a standardized arterial injury under a variety of conditions. The least blood loss occurred in hypotensive animals (whether hypotensive from hemorrhage or from administration of a vasodilator), followed by the control group and then vasoconstricted animals. The largest amount of blood was lost in animals that underwent vigorous reinfusion during the period of hemorrhage.

Laboratory data have shown the benefits of limiting intravascular fluid volumes and blood pressure in actively hemorrhaging animals.[146-149] In the most sophisticated models, direct assessment of cardiac output and regional perfusion showed no difference between moderate-volume or large-volume resuscitation in terms of cardiac output, arterial blood pressure, or regional perfusion of the heart, kidneys, and intestines. Burris and co-workers[150] studied both conventional resuscitation fluids and various combinations of hypertonic saline and dextran and found that rebleeding was correlated with higher mean arterial pressure (MAP) and that survival was best in groups resuscitated to lower than normal MAP. The optimum target blood pressure for resuscitation varied with the composition of the fluid used. A 1994 consensus panel on resuscitation from hemorrhagic shock noted that mammalian species are capable of sustaining MAP as low as 40 mm Hg for periods as long as 2 hours without deleterious effects. The panel concluded that spontaneous hemostasis and long-term survival were maximized by reduced administration of resuscitation fluids during the period of active bleeding to keep perfusion only just above the threshold for ischemia.[151]

Hypotensive resuscitation has increasingly been accepted as a component of early DCR to avoid excessive administration of fluid until control of active hemorrhage has been achieved. This strategy uses less fluids and blood products during the early stages of treatment for hemorrhagic shock compared with the standard of care.[152] Hypotensive resuscitation has also been shown to be feasible and safe during early resuscitation of trauma patients in the prehospital and hospital settings.[154-157] Early trials suggested outcomes were improved in patients with penetrating trauma[155,156] with no evidence for worsened outcomes in those with blunt trauma.[157]

Initial work by Bickell and colleagues in 1994 randomized victims of penetrating torso trauma to one of two treatment groups: standard of care (up to 2 L of crystalloid infused in the prehospital setting) or delayed resuscitation (no fluid until the patient reached the OR).[155] This well-managed 37-month study eventually included 598 patients. Average times of transport and care were 30 minutes from injury to the ED and then 50 minutes before reaching the OR; the fluid-restricted group received an average of about 0.8 L of fluid during this time. The immediate-resuscitation group received an average of 2.5 L of crystalloid and 130 mL of blood over this same period. Although substantially different during the period of study, blood pressure on arrival at the OR was similar in both groups, which the authors took as evidence that the unresuscitated group had achieved spontaneous hemostasis. Survival to hospital discharge in the delayed-resuscitation group was significantly improved over the immediate-resuscitation group (70% vs. 62% [$P < .04$]). No data were presented on the conduct of anesthesia after arrival at the OR, but before control of hemorrhage, or on the incidence of rebleeding after volume loading and induction of anesthesia in patients who had achieved hemostasis preoperatively.

A retrospective review of trauma admissions to the Los Angeles Medical Center published in 1996 supported these findings. Patients brought to the hospital by private conveyance fared substantially better than those delivered by paramedics, even with high levels of injury severity.[156] Further corroboration was provided by retrospective examination of outcomes in a population of hemorrhaging trauma patients who received fluids via a commercial rapid infusion system (RIS, Haemonetics, Niles, IL) during initial resuscitation.[158] The survival rate of this group was compared with that predicted by the institution's trauma registry. Patients who received fluid by the rapid infusion system, when compared with case-matched controls, had a survival rate of only 56.8% versus 71.2% for patients of similar age with similar injuries ($P < .001$).

This retrospective review was followed in 2002 by the second prospective trial of delayed resuscitation in trauma patients.[157] Patients with systolic blood pressure lower than 90 mm Hg and clinical evidence of blood loss were randomized to fluid resuscitation titrated to a systolic blood pressure of 100 mm Hg (normal group) or 70 mm Hg (study group) until the end of surgical interventions to control hemorrhage. The results of this study are summarized in Table 66.3. As in the Bickell study, hypotension allowed spontaneous resolution of hemorrhage and autoresuscitation; blood pressure would increase without exogenous fluid

TABLE 66.3 Results of a Randomized Trial of Deliberate Hypotensive Resuscitation

	Conventional	Hypotensive	Total
Patients enrolled	55	55	110
Male	46	41	87
Blunt trauma	22	31	53
Penetrating trauma	33	24	57
Injury severity score	19.65	23.62 (*P* = .11)	
Predicted survival	0.94	0.90 (*P* = .19)	
SBP during study period	114	100 (*P* < .001)	
Survived to discharge	51	51	
Died	4	4	

Probability of survival was calculated based on published historical data. *SBP*, Systolic blood pressure.

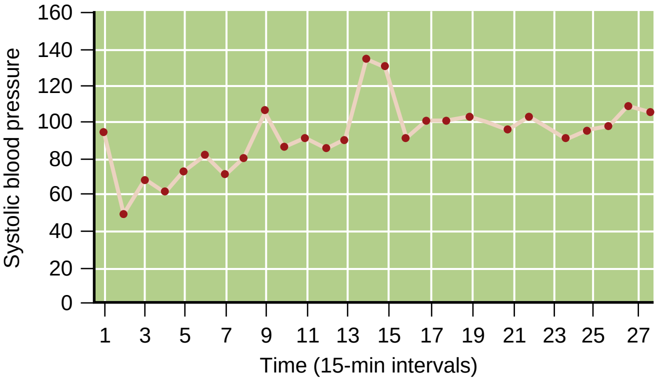


Fig. 66.7 Typical systolic blood pressure measurements of a patient undergoing damage control surgery for a grade V liver injury during deliberate hypotensive management. Oscillations of blood pressure are common during early resuscitation as a result of ongoing hemorrhage and bolus fluid administration. Once hemorrhage is controlled, blood pressure will stabilize.

administration once hemostasis was achieved. The typical patient began with a low initial pressure, followed by recovery to the vicinity of the target, overshoots and undershoots as bleeding and fluid administration continued, and an eventual rise above the target when the hemorrhage resolved, even in the absence of further fluid administration (Fig. 66.7). The 93% overall survival rate in this study was more frequent than predicted from historical data and substantially more frequent than seen in Bickell's group. This reflects the exclusion of patients who died in the prehospital phase or arrived at the trauma resuscitation unit in a moribund condition. It may also reflect improvements in overall care, an observation effect (i.e., patients in both groups received better care than did patients not in the study), or a bias in subject recruitment. Over the first 24 hours, lactate and base deficit cleared to normal in both groups and required similar amounts of fluid and blood products, thus suggesting that both groups were reaching an equivalent resuscitation endpoint. The authors concluded that administration of fluids to an actively hemorrhaging patient should be titrated to specific physiologic endpoints, with the anesthesiologist navigating a course between the Scylla of increased hemorrhage and the Charybdis of hypoperfusion.

TABLE 66.4 Differences in Presentation Between Surgical Patients Undergoing Elective Deliberate Hypotension and Emergency Trauma Cases

Aspect	Elective	Trauma
Intravascular volume	Euvolemic	Hypovolemic
Temperature	Normal	Likely hypothermic
Capillary beds	Dilated	Constricted
Level of general anesthesia	Deep	Usually light
Preexisting mental status	Normal	May be impaired
Coexisting injuries	None	May be significant
Comorbid conditions	Known and managed	Unknown

Each of these factors produces a real or perceived contraindication to the use of deliberate hypotensive technique in the trauma patient.

In a more recent study, Morrison and colleagues compared a hypotensive resuscitative strategy targeting a MAP of 50 mm Hg to one targeting a MAP of 65 mm Hg with conventional resuscitation for patients requiring emergent surgery.[152] In a preliminary report, they found that patients in the hypotensive resuscitation group had a lower, early postoperative mortality, a reduced incidence of coagulopathy, and lower mortality related to coagulopathy. Subsequently, this study was terminated early for futility and clinical equipoise with no significant survival advantage and similar rates of coagulopathy, renal failure, and infection between the low (50 mm Hg) and high (65 mm Hg) MAP target groups.[159] Of note, this study excluded blunt trauma patients included in the preliminary report.[152] Despite not identifying a difference in major outcomes, the authors did make several interesting observations. First, the need for vasopressors use in the first hour of surgery was greater in the high MAP group. Although this group also received more fluid, it was not statistically significant. Second, the intraoperative MAP was not significantly different between the low and high MAP groups (65.5 ± 11.6 mm Hg vs. 69.1 ± 13.8 mm Hg, *P* = .07, respectively). Taken in combination with available data and experience, the current consensus at major trauma centers is to allow for hypotensive resuscitation in the setting of DCR barring specific caveats discussed below. While the optimal arterial blood pressure remains controversial, a reasonable approach is to target a systolic pressure of less than 100 mm Hg with MAP between 50 to 60 mm Hg.[160]

As a component of intraoperative management, the effect of anesthetic drugs on the body's response to hemorrhage is an important difference between deliberate hypotension occurring in the elective operative setting and hemorrhagic shock occurring in the ED. Trauma patients who are hypertensive receive a minimum of anesthetics, even for induction of anesthesia, because of the obvious effect of these drugs on arterial blood pressure. A hypotensive trauma patient is thus in a state of profound vasoconstriction, as opposed to a patient undergoing elective intraoperative hypotension who is vasodilated by general anesthesia before any blood loss. Table 66.4 summarizes the physiologic contrasts between these two states. It should be noted that blood loss without shock does not produce systemic

BOX 66.6 Goals for Early Resuscitation

- Maintain systolic blood pressure of 80-100 mm Hg
- Maintain hematocrit of 25%-30%
- Maintain prothrombin time and partial thromboplastin time in normal ranges
- Maintain platelet count at greater than 50,000 per high-power field
- Maintain normal serum ionized calcium
- Maintain core temperature higher than 35°C
- Maintain function of pulse oximeter
- Prevent increase in serum lactate
- Prevent acidosis from worsening
- Achieve adequate anesthesia and analgesia

Fluid administration to limit hypoperfusion is balanced against an undesirable increase in blood pressure and thus bleeding.

complications such as ARDS in experimental models.[111] Based on this physiology, the recommended goals for early resuscitation are expressed in Box 66.6, and an algorithm for management is presented in Figure 66.2. The emphasis in this situation must be on rapid diagnosis and control of ongoing hemorrhage; vascular volume should be restored and anesthesia provided together by shifting the patient from a vasoconstricted to a vasodilated state while facilitating hemostasis by maintenance of a decreased arterial blood pressure.

Clinical trials of permissive hypotensive resuscitation have avoided the application of this technique to populations perceived to be at greater risk for ischemic complications,[155,157] including patients with known ischemic coronary disease, older patients, and those with injuries to the brain or spinal cord. The prohibition against hypotension in patients with TBI is especially well established because of the observed disparity in outcome between TBI patients who experience hypotension and those who do not.[161,162] Older trauma patients suffer worse outcomes from similar injuries than younger patients, presumably because of their reduced physiologic reserve.[163] Clinical care of these patients is focused on avoidance of ischemic stress and rapid correction of hypovolemia. It may well develop, however, that permissive hypotensive management to enable rapid control of hemorrhage is equally beneficial in vulnerable populations. No clinical trials to date have been conducted on this subject, but a laboratory study did find a benefit of permissive hypotension in animals with both TBI and hemorrhagic shock.[164] Absent convincing evidence in humans, permissive hypotension in older patients or patients with brain injury should generally be avoided.

Hemostatic Resuscitation. As discussed earlier, management of the early coagulopathy associated with trauma must be incorporated into the overall phase 1, Uncontrolled Hemorrhage DCR strategy—often referred to as a hemostatic resuscitation. Little utility is found in targeting endpoints of resuscitation in the face of ongoing hemorrhage. Life-threatening coagulopathy is one of the most serious complications of patients in profound shock from massive hemorrhage and is generally predictable at an early stage.[165]

Because of evidence that severely injured trauma patients are likely to develop an early and aggressive endogenous coagulopathy separate from later loss and dilution of clotting factors compounded from hypothermia and acidosis,[126,128,166] the practice of hemostatic resuscitation has become commonplace in the most severely injured patients with shock and ongoing hemorrhage. This entails the early and aggressive use of hemostatic products combined with red blood cells (RBCs) as the primary resuscitation fluids to avoid rapid deterioration into the "bloody vicious cycle" and the classic lethal triad of hypothermia, acidosis, and coagulopathy.[167] Two very distinct paradigms of hemostatic resuscitation have emerged: (1) the DCR model, which uses preemptive administration of empiric ratios of blood and hemostatic products to approximate whole blood, often according to an established institutional massive transfusion protocol (Fig. 66.8)[168-170]; and (2) goal-directed hemostatic resuscitation approaches (also often protocol based), which generally use point-of-care viscoelastic monitoring combined with the prompt administration of hemostatic concentrates.[171-173] The DCR model is typically employed during phase 1, Uncontrolled Hemorrhage, with a transition to more goal-directed hemostatic resuscitation during phase 2, Controlled Hemorrhage.

In addition to the use of permissive hypotension and limited crystalloid usage, DCR relies on the administration of empiric ratios of blood and hemostatic products to restore blood volume. In a retrospective review of combat casualties, Borgman and colleagues[174] found a mortality rate of 65% in patients receiving less than 1 unit plasma for every 4 units RBCs, but only 20% in those with a ratio of 1:2 or above. Evidence exists of a survivor bias because patients bleeding more rapidly were likely to die after receiving RBCs but before plasma could reach the bedside. Although the issue of a survivor bias does exist, this approach has been substantiated in published reviews.[174,175] Currently a ratio of 1:1:1 is most commonly adopted, although some experts believe that the amount of FFP can be reduced in most cases. In the only major, randomized trial comparing a 1:1:1 ratio with a 1:1:2 ratio of plasma, platelets, and RBCs, respectively, the transfusion of less plasma and platelets was not associated with a difference in mortality although the 1:1:1 group achieved hemostasis more rapidly and had fewer deaths due to exsanguination by 24 hours.[176]

In addition to the hypocoagulability associated with ATC, fibrinolysis is especially deleterious in severely injured trauma patients and carries an associated mortality well upward of 50%.[177,178] Many patients with primary fibrinolysis from severe hemorrhagic shock may never survive to reach the ICU. The Clinical Randomisation of an Antifibrolytic in Significant Haemorrhage 2 trial is the only class I evidence showing a 30-day survival benefit for a resuscitative therapy including tranexamic acid (TXA).[179] Subgroup analysis showed that the benefit was greatest when therapy was instituted within 1 hour of admission. A subsequent analysis, however, showed that mortality increased when therapy was instituted after 3 hours, suggesting that the risks of therapy outweighed the benefits in patients who survived beyond that timeframe.[180] Many resuscitative protocols for massive hemorrhage now include the early administration of TXA based on this and subsequent studies.[181]

Other potential drugs that may play a role in hemostatic resuscitation include recombinant activated human coagulation factor VII (rFVIIa), prothrombin complex

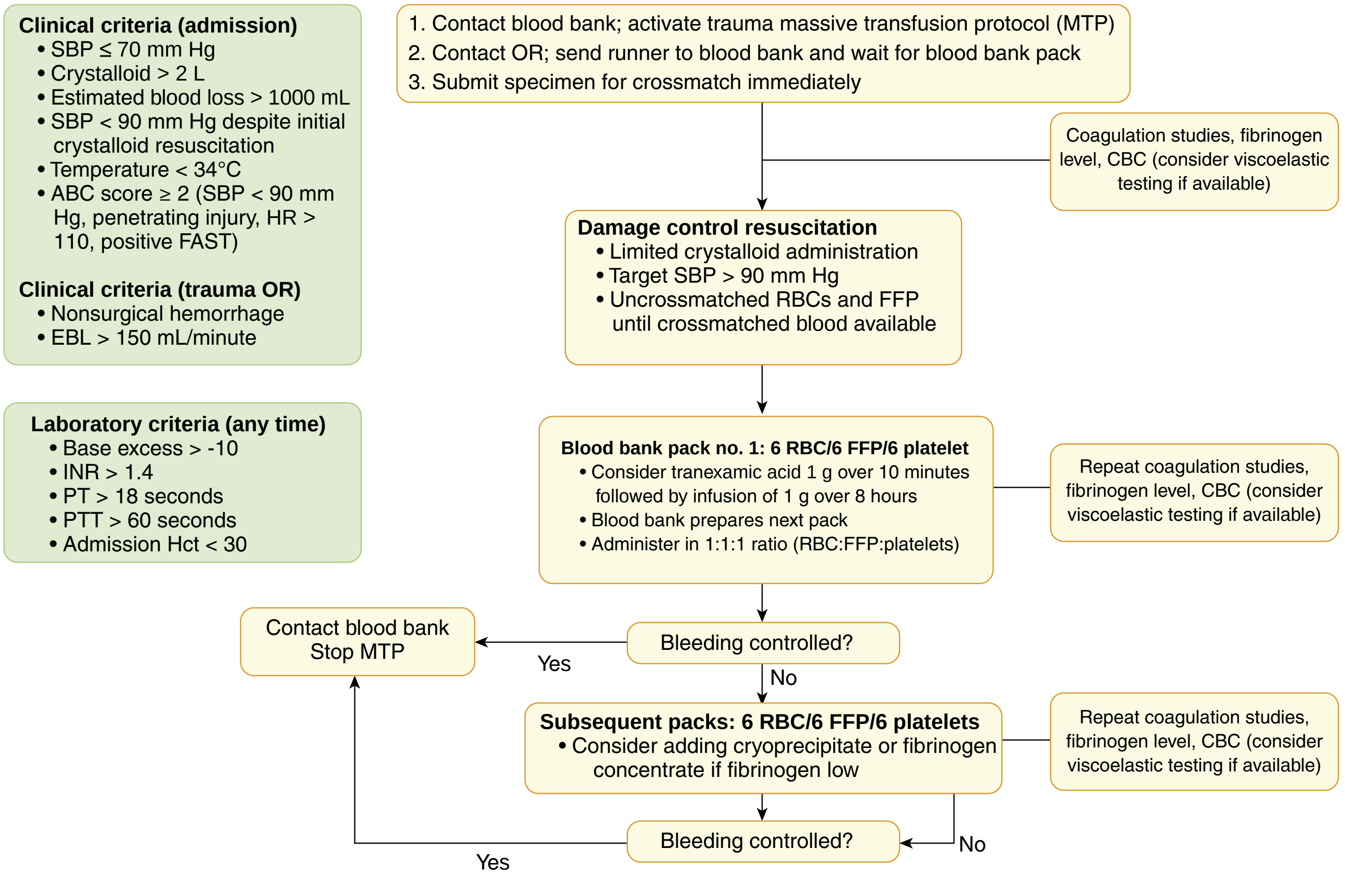

Clinical criteria (admission)
• SBP ≤ 70 mm Hg
• Crystalloid > 2 L
• Estimated blood loss > 1000 mL
• SBP < 90 mm Hg despite initial crystalloid resuscitation
• Temperature < 34°C
• ABC score ≥ 2 (SBP < 90 mm Hg, penetrating injury, HR > 110, positive FAST)
Clinical criteria (trauma OR)
• Nonsurgical hemorrhage
• EBL > 150 mL/minute
Laboratory criteria (any time)
• Base excess > -10
• INR > 1.4
• PT > 18 seconds
• PTT > 60 seconds
• Admission Hct < 30
1. Contact blood bank; activate trauma massive transfusion protocol (MTP)
2. Contact OR; send runner to blood bank and wait for blood bank pack
3. Submit specimen for crossmatch immediately
Coagulation studies, fibrinogen level, CBC (consider viscoelastic testing if available)
Damage control resuscitation
• Limited crystalloid administration
• Target SBP > 90 mm Hg
• Uncrossmatched RBCs and FFP until crossmatched blood available
Blood bank pack no. 1: 6 RBC/6 FFP/6 platelet
• Consider tranexamic acid 1 g over 10 minutes followed by infusion of 1 g over 8 hours
• Blood bank prepares next pack
• Administer in 1:1:1 ratio (RBC:FFP:platelets)
Repeat coagulation studies, fibrinogen level, CBC (consider viscoelastic testing if available)
Contact blood bank
Stop MTP
Yes
Bleeding controlled?
No
Subsequent packs: 6 RBC/6 FFP/6 platelets
• Consider adding cryoprecipitate or fibrinogen concentrate if fibrinogen low
Repeat coagulation studies, fibrinogen level, CBC (consider viscoelastic testing if available)
Bleeding controlled?
No
Yes

Fig. 66.8 Example of a massive transfusion protocol using specified ratios of blood products. *CBC,* Complete blood count; *EBL,* estimated blood loss; *FAST,* focused assessment with sonography for trauma; *FFP,* fresh frozen plasma; *Hct,* Hematocrit; *HR,* heart rate; *INR,* international normalized ratio; *OR,* operating room; *PT,* prothrombin time; *PTT,* partial thromboplastin time; *RBCs,* red blood cells; *SBP,* systolic blood pressure.

concentrates (PCCs), and fibrinogen concentrates. rFVIIa is licensed for the treatment of patients with hemophilia with active or anticipated hemorrhage and known antibodies to factor VIII. The observation of rapid hemostasis in this population led to the anecdotal use of rFVIIa in other congenital and acquired coagulopathies, including the dilutional coagulopathy of traumatic hemorrhage. Factor VIIa in pharmacologic doses works by triggering a burst of thrombin on the surface of platelets activated by exposed tissue factor, which produces rapid clot formation. Because tissue factor is required, coagulation is limited to the site of vascular injury, and inappropriate clotting of uninjured organs or vessels, though an acknowledged risk, occurs at only low frequency.[182] One small placebo-controlled trial of rFVIIa in hemorrhaging trauma patients has demonstrated decreased blood loss, decreased transfusion requirements, and improved outcome,[183] although a large, randomized trial failed to show a mortality benefit.[184] In combination with an increased risk for thromboembolic adverse events,[185] this lack of clear efficacy has contributed to decreased utilization of rFVIIa as an empiric therapy in the management of the bleeding trauma patient.

Experience with PCCs in clinical practice is limited. PCC has been used for many years for the treatment of congenital coagulation disorders and is recommended for reversing oral anticoagulation, particularly in the setting of traumatic intracranial hemorrhage. PCCs contain coagulation factors II, VII, IX, and X. Differences exist among products in the concentrations of these factors and other constituents, including heparin, protein C, and protein S, so results obtained with one product may not be obtained with a different formulation. Fibrinogen concentrates also may have a role in a hemostatic resuscitation for the patient with a coagulopathy with low levels of fibrinogen.[186-188]

Phase 2, Controlled Hemorrhage

Once major aspects of bleeding have been controlled, a more individualized, tailored approach to resuscitation can generally be employed by the anesthesia team. In phase 2, there should be increased utilization of point-of-care testing such as arterial blood gas and other laboratory test results, viscoelastic monitoring parameters, and physiologic data to drive decision-making. Assessment of oxygen delivery and adequacy of perfusion can start to incorporate some targeted resuscitation measures such as lactate and base deficit. Use of other monitoring modalities such as transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) or transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) may be useful in quantifying and guiding the need for further intravascular volume replacement.

While surgical bleeding may be corrected at this time, the depth and duration of shock in combination with multisystem trauma may still contribute to coagulopathy. This will require ongoing assessment such as serial evaluations with viscoelastic coagulation monitoring. Transition from empiric replacement of FFP and platelets toward a more

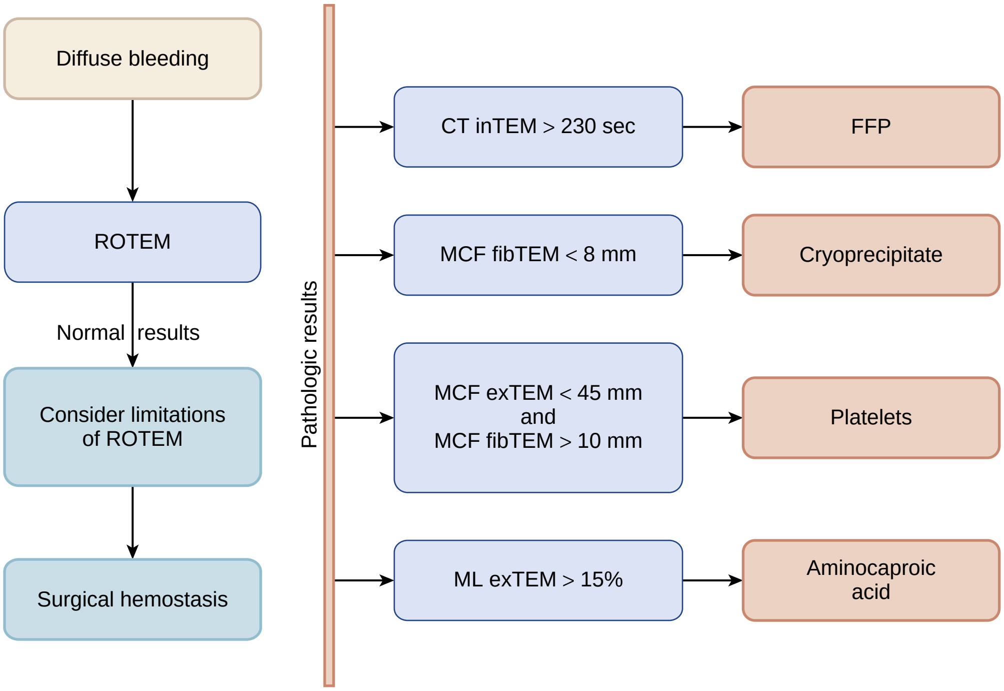


Fig. 66.9 Example of a rotation thromboelastometry *(ROTEM)* treatment algorithm for use in trauma. *CT,* Clotting time; *FFP,* fresh frozen plasma; *MCF,* maximum clot firmness; *ML,* maximum lysis. (Courtesy of San Francisco General Hospital and Trauma Center. (From Steurer M, Chang T, Lancman B. Anesthesia for trauma. In: Pardo M, Miller RD, eds. *Basics of Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018:724 [Chapter 42].)

tailored approach can be accomplished using an algorithm (Fig. 66.9) to guide specific product selection and limit exposure to unnecessary blood products.

Additionally, during this time, attention to other physiologic considerations can proceed. For example, hypothermia is commonly present on initial presentation. During phase 1, all attempts should be made to initiate active fluid and surface warming although it is difficult to fully correct during a massive resuscitation. During phase 2, additional measures can be instituted as the focus shifts from control of hemorrhage to stabilization of all physiologic processes.

Phase 3, Restoration of Physiology

Box 66.7 summarizes endpoints for late resuscitation, and Fig. 66.10 presents an algorithm for management. Intravenous fluid administration is an integral, mandatory component. The adequacy of resuscitation should not be judged by the presence of normal vital signs, but by restoration of organ and tissue perfusion. The role of the anesthesiologist-intensivist is to recognize the presence of ongoing shock after traumatic hemorrhage and to resuscitate the patient with the appropriate type and amount of fluids intravenously at the appropriate time.

Late resuscitation begins once bleeding is definitively controlled by surgery, angiography, or the passage of time. The goal at this time is to restore normal perfusion to all organ systems while continuing to support vital functions. Hypoperfusion caused by hemorrhagic shock triggers a predictable cascade of biochemical events that will cause physiologic derangements persisting long after adequate blood flow is restored. The extent of hypoperfusion—the depth and duration of shock—dictates the magnitude of subsequent organ system failure. Unfortunately, traditional vital sign markers such as arterial blood pressure, heart rate, and urine output are insensitive to the adequacy of resuscitation. Occult hypoperfusion syndrome is common in postoperative trauma patients, particularly young ones.[189] This syndrome is characterized by a normal blood pressure maintained by systemic vasoconstriction, decreased intravascular volume and cardiac output, and organ system ischemia. The patient will be at frequent risk for MOD if the hypoperfusion is not promptly corrected.

BOX 66.7 **Goals for Late Resuscitation**

Maintain systolic blood pressure higher than 110 mm Hg
Maintain hematocrit above individual transfusion threshold
Normalize coagulation status
Normalize electrolyte balance
Normalize body temperature
Restore normal urine output
Maximize cardiac output by invasive or noninvasive measurement
Reverse systemic acidosis
Document decrease in lactate to normal range

Fluid administration should be continued until adequate systemic perfusion is restored.

The search for the optimal endpoints of resuscitation has led to several different hemodynamic, acid-base, and regional perfusion targets. Table 66.5 summarizes modalities that are available to gauge the adequacy of resuscitation, along with the shortcomings of each technique. Although the flow of blood to tissue beds is a determinant of tissue perfusion, pressure should also be an important consideration. The left ventricular stroke work index is a variable that accounts for both flow and pressure. Furthermore,

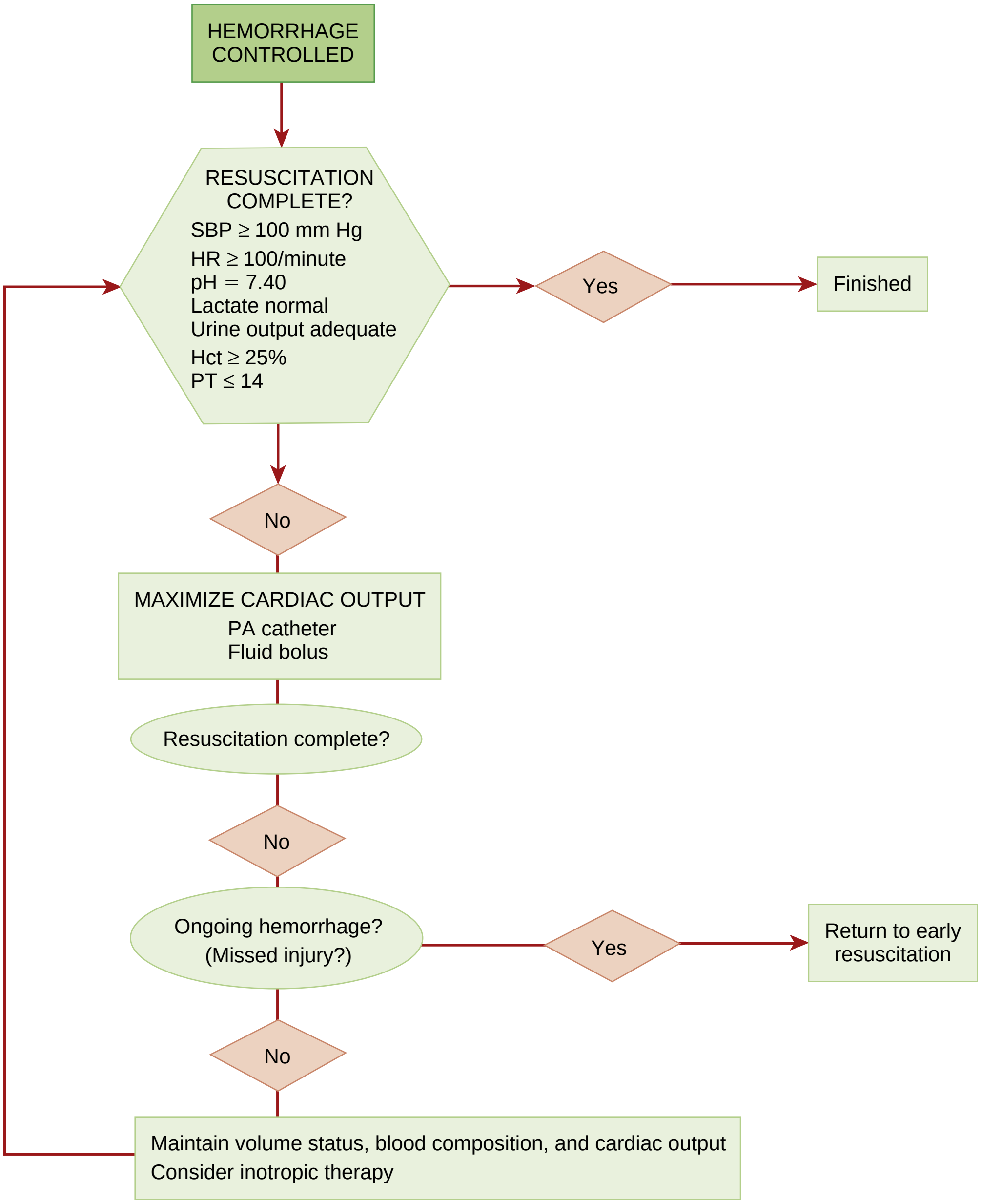

HEMORRHAGE CONTROLLED
RESUSCITATION COMPLETE?
SBP ≥ 100 mm Hg
HR ≥ 100/minute
pH = 7.40
Lactate normal
Urine output adequate
Hct ≥ 25%
PT ≤ 14
Yes
Finished
No
MAXIMIZE CARDIAC OUTPUT
PA catheter
Fluid bolus
Resuscitation complete?
No
Ongoing hemorrhage?
(Missed injury?)
Yes
Return to early resuscitation
No
Maintain volume status, blood composition, and cardiac output
Consider inotropic therapy

Fig. 66.10 Algorithm for management of late hemorrhagic shock. *Hct,* Hematocrit; *HR,* heart rate; *PA,* pulmonary artery; *PT,* prothrombin time; *SBP,* systolic blood pressure.

left ventricular power output has been used to quantify left ventricular performance. These indices were compared with purely flow-derived hemodynamic and oxygen transport variables as markers of perfusion and outcome in critically injured patients during resuscitation.[190] A consecutive series of 111 patients were monitored with a volumetric pulmonary artery catheter during the first 48 hours of resuscitation. The ability to clear lactate in less than 24 hours and survival were studied. Survivors exhibited significantly higher stroke work and left ventricular power output than did nonsurvivors. In addition to heart rate, these were the only variables that were significantly related to lactate clearance and survival. The higher stroke work and left ventricular power output in survivors were related to better ventricular-arterial coupling and therefore more efficient cardiac function.

Monitoring resuscitation with invasive monitors is gradually changing to noninvasive approaches that assess the return of adequate metabolism, respiration, and oxygen transport in peripheral tissue beds. One such technique is tissue oxygen monitoring (skin, subcutaneous tissue, or skeletal muscle). Skeletal muscle blood flow decreases early in the course of shock and is restored later during resuscitation, thus making the skeletal partial pressure of oxygen a sensitive indicator of decreased flow.[191,192] Stroke volume variation, the change in arterial pressure driven by the respiratory cycle, is emerging as another less invasive measure of fluid volume status; increased variation in arterial pressure during positive-pressure ventilation is a reliable predictor of decreased intravascular volume.[193] Inadequate tissue perfusion, as indicated by these specific monitors or by the traditional systemic markers of serum lactate, base deficit,

TABLE 66.5 Modalities for Assessment of Systemic Perfusion

Technique	Shortcomings
Vital signs	Will not indicate occult hypoperfusion
Urine output	May be confounded by intoxication, diuretic therapy, circadian variation, or renal injury
Systemic acid-base status	Confounded by respiratory status
Lactate clearance	Requires time to obtain laboratory result
Cardiac output	Requires placement of a pulmonary artery catheter, or use of noninvasive technology
Mixed-venous oxygenation	Difficult to obtain, but a very accurate marker
Gastric tonometry	Requires time to equilibrate, subject to artifact
Stroke volume variation	Requires an arterial line; may not be accurate in severe shock
Tissue oxygenation	Emerging technology, appears beneficial

and decreased pH, must be treated promptly once ongoing hemorrhage is controlled. The rate at which lactate returns to normal after shock is strongly correlated with outcome; failure to normalize within 24 hours is associated with a greater risk for MOD and eventual death.[189,194]

RESUSCITATION FLUIDS

Isotonic crystalloids (normal saline, lactated Ringer solution, Plasma-Lyte A) are the initial resuscitative fluids administered to any trauma patient (see also Chapter 47). They have the advantage of being inexpensive, readily available, nonallergenic, noninfectious, and efficacious in restoring total body fluid. They are easy to store and administer, they mix well with infused medications, and they can be rapidly warmed to body temperature. Disadvantages of crystalloids include their lack of oxygen-carrying capacity, their lack of coagulation capability, and their limited intravascular half-life. Of note, data have implicated specific crystalloid solutions as immunosuppressants and triggers of cellular apoptosis.[195] Unlike necrosis, apoptosis is highly regulated and involves gene modulation and complex pathways of signal transduction. It seems clear that apoptosis is an important element of reperfusion injury. In a rat model of controlled hemorrhage, animals receiving lactated Ringer solution showed an immediate increase in apoptosis in the liver and small intestine after resuscitation.[196] Neither whole blood nor hypertonic saline increased the amount of apoptosis.

Hypertonic saline solutions, with or without the addition of polymerized dextran (HS or HSD), have been extensively studied in resuscitation from hemorrhagic shock.[197] In theory, HS will draw fluid into the vascular space from the interstitium and thereby reverse some of the nonhemorrhagic fluid loss caused by shock and ischemia. A given amount of HS will thus have an enhanced ability to restore intravascular volume in contrast to an equivalent volume of an isotonic solution. This has made HS a popular choice for fluid resuscitation under austere conditions. HSD is licensed for prehospital use in some European countries and is used for resuscitation by units of the U.S. military. Multiple studies of otherwise lethal hemorrhage in animals have demonstrated improved survival after resuscitation with HSD versus either normal saline solution or the components of HSD alone. Studies of the efficacy of HSD in trauma patients have been inconclusive[198]; the most obvious benefit occurred in a subset of polytraumatized patients with both hemorrhage and TBI, in whom improved neurologic status was demonstrated in those who received HSD as a resuscitation fluid. Indeed, HS is commonly used as an osmotic agent in the management of TBI with increased ICP.[199]

Colloids, including starch solutions and albumin, have been advocated for rapid plasma intravascular volume expansion. Like crystalloids, colloids are readily available, easily stored and administered, and relatively inexpensive. As with hypertonic solutions, colloids will increase intravascular volume by drawing free water back into the vascular space. When intravenous access is limited, colloid resuscitation will restore intravascular volume more rapidly than crystalloid infusion will and at a lower volume of administered fluid. Colloids do not transport oxygen or facilitate clotting; their dilutional effect will be similar to that of crystalloids. Systematic reviews continue to show no benefit of colloids over crystalloids in the setting of trauma resuscitation,[200] although this topic continues to generate significant controversy and would benefit from several well-conducted, randomized trials.[201] Recent concerns, however, have been expressed about specific colloids such as 6% hetastarch and an adverse effect on renal function and mortality (see also Chapter 49).[202-204]

Many of the risks of aggressive intravascular fluid administration just summarized are related to dilution of the circulating blood volume. Recognition of this fact and continued improvement in the safety of donated blood led to increased use of blood products in the management of early hemorrhagic shock (see also Chapter 49). The risk for systemic ischemia is decreased by the maintenance of an adequate hematocrit, and the potential for dilutional coagulopathy can be decreased by the early administration of plasma. The composition of resuscitation fluids may be as important as the rate and timing of administration. A 4-year retrospective review of a cohort of critically injured patients who underwent emergency surgery examined the outcomes of short-term care based on the number of units of blood transfused.[205] One hundred forty-one patients received massive blood transfusions (≥20 units of RBCs) during preoperative and intraoperative resuscitation. The number of blood units did not differ between survivors (30%) and nonsurvivors (70%). Eleven variables were significantly different: aortic clamping for control of arterial blood pressure, use of inotropic drugs, time with a systolic blood pressure higher than 90 mm Hg, time in the OR, temperature less than 34°C, urine output, pH lower than 7.0, PaO_2/FiO_2 ratio less than 150, $PaCO_2$ more than 50 mm Hg, K^+ more than 6 mM/L, and calcium less than 2 mM/L. Of these, the presence of the first three variables in the face of transfusion of more than 30 units of packed RBCs was invariably fatal. Total blood loss and the amount of transfused blood were less critical than the depth and duration of shock. These concerns led to the concept of damage control surgery discussed earlier, which emphasizes rapid control of active hemorrhage.[206]

RBCs are the mainstay of treatment of hemorrhagic shock. With an average hematocrit of 50% to 60%, a unit of RBCs will predictably restore oxygen-carrying capacity and expand intravascular volume as well as any colloid solution. RBCs of blood type A, B, or AB carry major incompatibility antigens that may precipitate a lethal transfusion reaction if given to a patient with the opposite blood type. Because RBCs also carry dozens of minor antigens that can cause reactions in susceptible patients, crossmatching is desirable when time allows (typically 1 hour from the time a sample reaches the blood bank until the RBCs reach the patient). Type-specific blood requires less time for delivery from the blood bank (usually ~30 minutes) and may be an appropriate alternative in some situations. Type O blood—the universal donor type—can be given to patients of any blood type with little risk for a major reaction.[207] This is the preferred approach for patients who arrive at the ED in hemorrhagic shock. If O-positive blood is given to a Rhesus-negative woman who survives, prophylactic administration of anti-Rh_0 antibody is indicated.

Risks of RBC administration include transfusion reaction, transmission of infectious agents, and hypothermia (see also Chapter 49 for details). For example, RBCs are stored at 4°C and will decrease the patient's temperature rapidly if not infused through a warming system at the time of administration.

Plasma requires blood typing but not crossmatching; delay in availability of plasma is caused by the need to thaw frozen units before they can be administered. Busy trauma hospitals will often maintain a supply of prethawed plasma (thawed fresh plasma as opposed to FFP) that can be issued quickly in response to an emergency need; in smaller hospitals it is important to request plasma early in resuscitation if it is likely to be needed. Very busy centers are experimenting with keeping 2 to 4 units of prethawed type AB (universal donor) plasma available in the trauma resuscitation unit. Units are kept ready in this way for 2 days at a time; if not used on an emergency basis, the units are returned to the blood bank and released to the next patient needing plasma. Whether this approach improves outcomes has not yet been studied.

Platelet transfusion should normally be reserved for patients with clinical coagulopathy with a documented low serum level (>50,000 per high-power field). When the patient is in shock, however, and blood loss is likely to be substantial, platelets should be empirically administered in proportion to RBCs and plasma (1:1:1), as discussed earlier for DCR. Transfused platelets have a very short serum half-life and should be administered only to patients with active coagulopathic bleeding. Platelets should not be administered through filters, warmers, or rapid infusion systems because they will bond to the inner surfaces of these devices, thereby reducing the quantity of platelets actually reaching the circulation.

Rapid transfusion of banked blood carries the risk for inducing citrate intoxication in the recipient.[208] Harvested blood units are treated with citrate to bind free Ca^{2+} and thus inhibit the clotting cascade. Consecutive administration of multiple units of banked blood leads to a correspondingly large dose of citrate, which may overwhelm the body's ability to mobilize free Ca^{2+} and have a profound negative inotropic effect on the heart. Unrecognized hypocalcemia is a cause of hypotension in patients after massive transfusion and persists despite an adequate volume of resuscitation. Ionized Ca^{2+} levels should be measured at regular intervals in a hemorrhaging patient, and Ca^{2+} should be administered as needed (in a separate intravenous line from transfusion products) to maintain serum levels greater than 1.0 mmol/L.

RESUSCITATION EQUIPMENT

Intravascular fluid resuscitation of any kind is impossible in the absence of intravenous access. Immediate placement of at least two large-bore catheters (16 gauge or larger) is recommended during the primary assessment of any trauma patient.[33] Practitioners should have a low threshold for placement of a large-caliber central line in any patient in whom antecubital or other peripheral placement attempts have been unsuccessful. Potential sites for central line placement include the internal jugular, subclavian, and femoral veins, each of which has its own benefits and potential risks. The internal jugular approach, though familiar to most anesthesiologists, will require removal of the cervical collar and manipulation of the patient's neck and is not recommended in the acute setting unless other options have been exhausted. The femoral vein is easily and rapidly accessed and is an appropriate choice in patients without apparent pelvic or thigh trauma who require urgent drug or fluid administration. Caution should be used in patients with penetrating trauma to the abdomen because fluids infused via the femoral vein may contribute to hemorrhage from an injury to the inferior vena cava or iliac vein; these patients should have intravenous access placed above the diaphragm if possible. Femoral vein catheterization carries a high risk for the formation of deep venous thrombosis,[209] thus limiting use of this approach to the acute setting. Femoral lines should be removed as soon as possible after the patient's condition stabilizes. The subclavian vein is the most common site for early and ongoing central access in a trauma patient because the subclavian region is easily visible and seldom directly traumatized. This approach carries the highest risk for the development of pneumothorax, although many patients will already have indications for tube thoracostomy in one or both chest cavities; when possible, this is the preferred side for placement of a subclavian line. Placement of an arterial line facilitates frequent laboratory analysis and allows close monitoring of blood pressure; this should be undertaken as soon as possible but should not impede other diagnostic or therapeutic maneuvers.

The anesthesiologist should work to maintain thermal equilibrium in any trauma patient. Although deliberate hypothermia has been suggested as a management strategy for both hemorrhagic shock[210] and TBI,[211] insufficient evidence exists to support this approach. Hypothermia will potentiate dilutional coagulopathy and systemic acidosis while shivering and vasoconstriction in response to cold will demand an additional metabolic effort that may predispose the patient to myocardial ischemia. Hypothermia also greatly increases the subsequent risk for sepsis. Because many trauma patients arrive at the ED cold from exposure to the elements, early active warming measures are required. All IV fluids should be prewarmed or infused through a warming device. The patient should be kept covered with warmed blankets whenever possible, and the environment should be kept warm enough to make the patient comfortable. If hypothermia has already developed, the use of forced hot air warming is strongly indicated to restore normothermia. Even though all these measures are routine and obvious in the OR, the anesthesiologist can perform a valuable service by ensuring that they are available and applied in the ED, CT scanner, and angiography suite as well.

Commercial rapid-infusion devices are of great benefit in trauma care, particularly in the presence of hemorrhagic shock. These machines offer benefits when large quantities of fluid resuscitation are likely (Box 66.8). Early experience with these devices demonstrated higher patient temperature and reduced acidosis at the conclusion of the initial surgery,[212] although rapid infusers may contribute to over infusion of fluids, inappropriately increased arterial blood pressure, and contribute to rebleeding.[158] Application of the principles described earlier for permissive hypotension can prevent this complication; basal fluid administration should be kept low (200-500 mL/h), with fluid boluses given in response to measured systolic blood pressure less than 80 to 90 mm Hg. In practice, fluid boluses are given alternately with anesthetics, with the goal of reaching a normal depth of anesthesia without significantly increasing systolic arterial blood pressure until active bleeding is controlled.

Trauma to the Central Nervous System

CNS trauma accounts for almost half of all trauma deaths after trauma center admission and as indicated by postmortem examinations in population-based analyses (see also Chapter 57).[213,214] In the United States, 2.8 million TBI-related ED visits, hospitalizations, and deaths occurred in 2013.[215] Although not as prevalent, acute traumatic SCI also remains a significant problem.[216] As with hemorrhagic shock, CNS trauma consists of both the primary injury, in which tissue is disrupted by mechanical force, and a secondary response, in which the body's reaction to the injury plays an important role. Mitigation of secondary CNS injury depends on prompt diagnosis and early, goal-directed therapy. Although primary CNS injuries cannot be minimized other than with preventive strategies, secondary injury accounts for much of the death and disability that follows trauma.[217] The initial management of these patients can significantly affect outcome. Attention to the ABCDE approach is paramount to successful resuscitation, and the trauma anesthesiologist should be intimately involved in this process.

BOX 66.8 Benefits of a Fluid Infusion System in Resuscitation from Hemorrhagic Shock

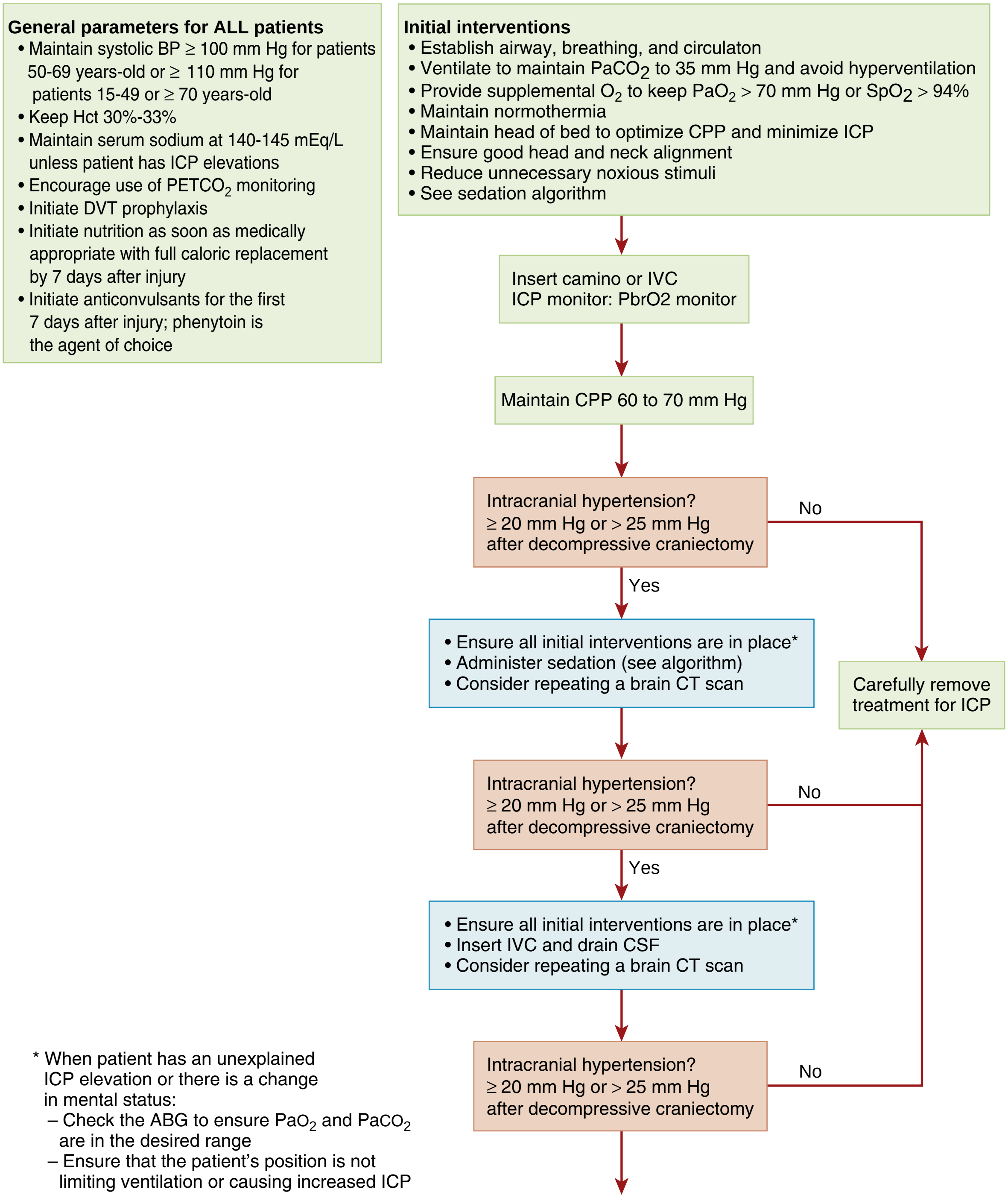
An active mechanical pump enables fluid administration rates up to 1500 mL/min
Compatible with crystalloid, colloid, packed red blood cells, washed salvaged blood, and plasma (*not* platelets)
Reservoir allows for mixing of products in preparation for rapid blood loss
Fluids infused at a controlled temperature (38°C-40°C)
Able to pump simultaneously through multiple intravenous lines
Fail-safe detection systems to prevent infusion of air
Accurate recording of fluid volume administered
Portable enough to travel with patient between units

Trauma produces shear forces that result in primary damage to neuronal cell bodies and axons, and to the vasculature. The pathophysiologic processes of secondary injury include metabolic failure, oxidative stress, and a cascade of biochemical and molecular events leading to both delayed necrotic and apoptotic cell death.[217] Secondary injury is often exacerbated by tissue hypoxia or ischemia and by inflammatory responses, and outcomes from TBI are influenced by a large number of interacting factors. Individual drugs such as free radical scavengers, antiinflammatory agents, and ion channel blockers have been effective in animals but have had little impact or yielded disappointing results in human trials. Long-term outcome cannot be predicted from TBI; thus full resuscitative efforts should be initiated and continued, even in the most severely injured. In a recent review of the Trauma Registry of the German Society for Trauma Patients looking at over 50,000 patients, outcome prediction was most accurate using the GCS motor score and pupil reactivity. In patients with bilateral fixed and dilated pupils, a good outcome was still seen in 8% of patients.[218]

Patients with mild TBI (GCS score of 13-15) who maintain a stable GCS score for 24 hours after injury are very unlikely to deteriorate further, although they are at risk for several postconcussive effects, including headache, memory loss, emotional lability (including aggressive behavior and violence), and sleep disturbance.[219] Moderate TBI (GCS score of 9-12) may be accompanied by intracranial lesions that require surgical evacuation, and early CT is strongly indicated. Early tracheal intubation, mechanical ventilation, and close observation may be required in the management of patients with moderate TBI because of combative or agitated behavior and the potentially catastrophic consequences of respiratory depression or pulmonary aspiration occurring during diagnostic evaluation. Extubation of the trachea can be undertaken if the patient is hemodynamically stable and appropriately responsive after the diagnostic workup. Treatment of secondary brain injury is accomplished by early correction and subsequent avoidance of hypoxia, prompt intravascular fluid resuscitation, and management of associated injuries. The timing of indicated noncranial surgery in these patients with moderate injury not requiring decompressive craniectomy is highly controversial because early surgery can increase the episodes of hypoxia and hypotension.[220]

Neurologic monitoring of patients with moderate TBI consists of serial assessment of consciousness and motor and sensory function (see also Chapter 39). Deterioration of the GCS score is an indication for urgent CT to establish the need for craniotomy or invasive monitoring of ICP. If frequent neurologic monitoring is not possible because of general anesthesia continuing longer than 2 hours, aggressive analgesia, or prophylaxis against delirium tremens, invasive ICP monitoring may be indicated.[162] Although mortality from moderate TBI is infrequent, many patients will have significant long-term morbidity.

Severe TBI is classified as a GCS score of 8 or less at the time of admission and carries a significant risk for mortality. Patients with severe TBI have mortality three times that of patients with other types of traumatic injury.[221] Early, rapid management focused on restoration of systemic homeostasis and perfusion-directed care of the injured brain will produce the best possible outcomes in this difficult population. Guidelines for all aspects of the management of patients with severe TBI have been published by the American Association of Neurological Surgeons and Brain Trauma Foundation, now in the fourth edition.[222] The clinical pathway in place at the R Adams Cowley Shock Trauma Center in Baltimore appears in Fig. 66.11.



General parameters for ALL patients

- Maintain systolic BP ≥ 100 mm Hg for patients 50-69 years-old or ≥ 110 mm Hg for patients 15-49 or ≥ 70 years-old
- Keep Hct 30%-33%
- Maintain serum sodium at 140-145 mEq/L unless patient has ICP elevations
- Encourage use of $PETCO_2$ monitoring
- Initiate DVT prophylaxis
- Initiate nutrition as soon as medically appropriate with full caloric replacement by 7 days after injury
- Initiate anticonvulsants for the first 7 days after injury; phenytoin is the agent of choice

Initial interventions

- Establish airway, breathing, and circulaton
- Ventilate to maintain $PaCO_2$ to 35 mm Hg and avoid hyperventilation
- Provide supplemental O_2 to keep $PaO_2 > 70$ mm Hg or $SpO_2 > 94\%$
- Maintain normothermia
- Maintain head of bed to optimize CPP and minimize ICP
- Ensure good head and neck alignment
- Reduce unnecessary noxious stimuli
- See sedation algorithm

Insert camino or IVC ICP monitor: PbrO2 monitor

Maintain CPP 60 to 70 mm Hg

Intracranial hypertension? ≥ 20 mm Hg or > 25 mm Hg after decompressive craniectomy

- Ensure all initial interventions are in place*
- Administer sedation (see algorithm)
- Consider repeating a brain CT scan

Intracranial hypertension? ≥ 20 mm Hg or > 25 mm Hg after decompressive craniectomy

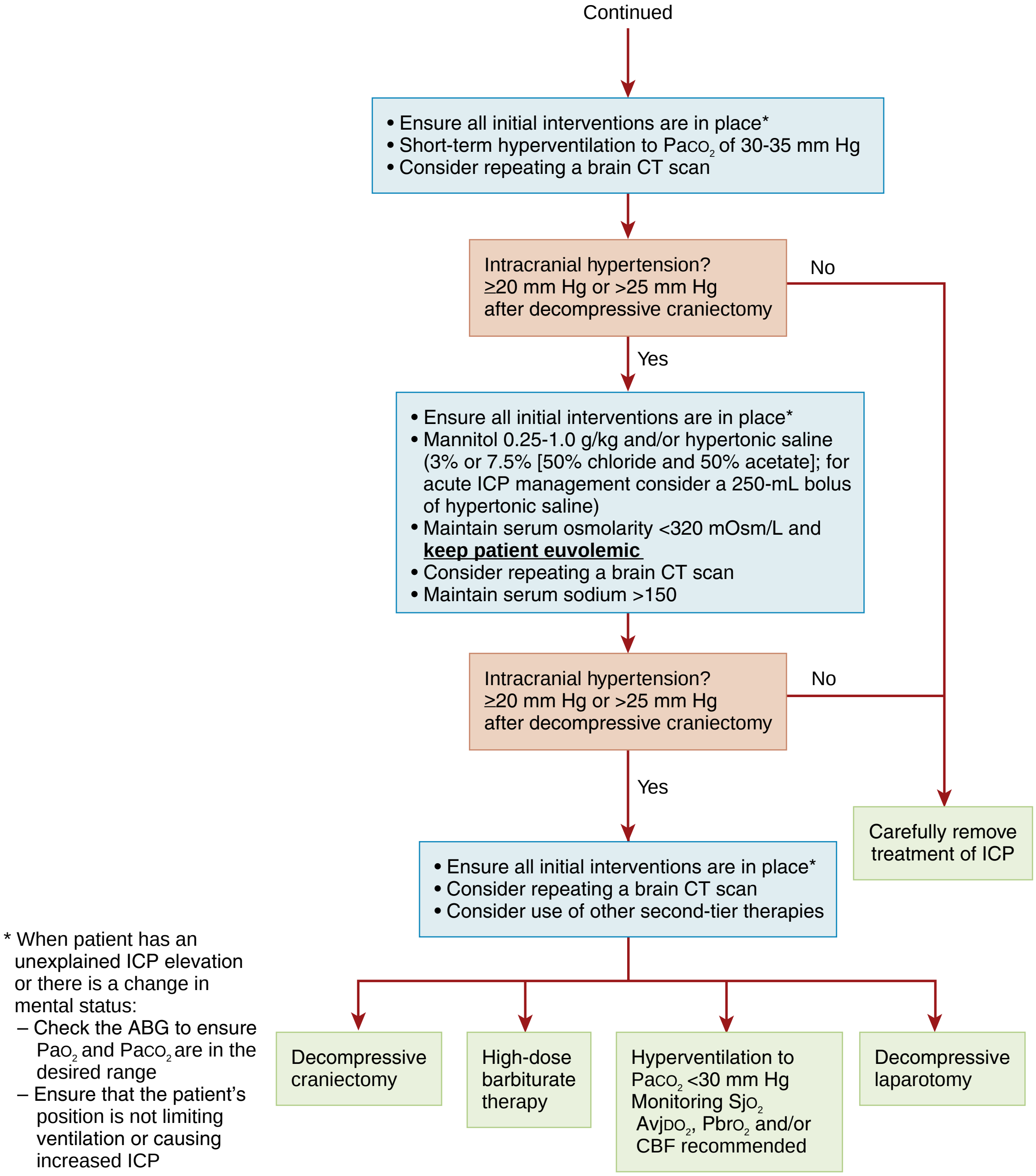
- Ensure all initial interventions are in place*
- Insert IVC and drain CSF
- Consider repeating a brain CT scan

Intracranial hypertension? ≥ 20 mm Hg or > 25 mm Hg after decompressive craniectomy

Carefully remove treatment for ICP

* When patient has an unexplained ICP elevation or there is a change in mental status:
– Check the ABG to ensure PaO_2 and $PaCO_2$ are in the desired range
– Ensure that the patient's position is not limiting ventilation or causing increased ICP

Fig. 66.11 Clinical pathway for management of severe traumatic brain injury. The goal of therapy is to maintain cerebral perfusion pressure 60 to 70 mm Hg by support of the circulation and control of intracranial pressure. Progressively more intensive therapies are added until this goal is achieved. *ABG,* Arterial blood gas; *BP,* blood pressure; *CBF,* cerebral blood flow; *CPP,* cerebral perfusion pressure; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid; *CT,* computed tomography; *DVT,* deep venous thrombosis; *Hct,* hematocrit; *ICP,* intracranial pressure; *IVC,* intraventricular catheter.


Continued
• Ensure all initial interventions are in place*
• Short-term hyperventilation to Paco$_2$ of 30-35 mm Hg
• Consider repeating a brain CT scan
Intracranial hypertension?
≥20 mm Hg or >25 mm Hg
after decompressive craniectomy
No
Yes
• Ensure all initial interventions are in place*
• Mannitol 0.25-1.0 g/kg and/or hypertonic saline (3% or 7.5% [50% chloride and 50% acetate]; for acute ICP management consider a 250-mL bolus of hypertonic saline)
• Maintain serum osmolarity <320 mOsm/L and keep patient euvolemic
• Consider repeating a brain CT scan
• Maintain serum sodium >150
Intracranial hypertension?
≥20 mm Hg or >25 mm Hg
after decompressive craniectomy
No
Yes
Carefully remove treatment of ICP
• Ensure all initial interventions are in place*
• Consider repeating a brain CT scan
• Consider use of other second-tier therapies
Decompressive craniectomy
High-dose barbiturate therapy
Hyperventilation to Paco$_2$ <30 mm Hg Monitoring Sjo$_2$ Avjdo$_2$, Pbro$_2$ and/or CBF recommended
Decompressive laparotomy

* When patient has an unexplained ICP elevation or there is a change in mental status:
  - Check the ABG to ensure Pao$_2$ and Paco$_2$ are in the desired range
  - Ensure that the patient's position is not limiting ventilation or causing increased ICP

Fig. 66.11, Cont'd

A single episode of hypoxemia ($PaO_2 < 60$ mm Hg) occurring in a patient with severe TBI can double the incidence of mortality.[223] Prehospital tracheal intubation, nonetheless, is controversial. Previously, intubation of the trachea before arriving at the hospital was advocated because providing a definitive airway allowed adequate oxygen to be delivered to the brain, benefiting the patients. Yet worsened neurologic outcomes have been described with attempts at prehospital tracheal intubation in adult trauma patients.[224,225] The first prospective trial of prehospital intubation, conducted in urban Australia, randomized patients with severe TBI—defined as evidence of head trauma and GCS of less than 9—to intubation by paramedics in the field or by physicians on the arrival to hospital.[226] Of 312 patients, the proportion with favorable outcome was 51% in the paramedic group, compared to 39% in the hospital tracheal intubation group ($P = .046$). Because no international standard or consensus exists, the patient should be transported as rapidly as possible to a facility capable of managing severe TBI or to the nearest facility capable of tracheal intubation of the patient and initiation of systemic resuscitation. The sine qua non is adequacy of systemic oxygenation, by whatever means this can best be accomplished.

The patient with TBI will frequently require perioperative monitoring to include ICP, brain temperature, arterial pressure, cerebral oxygenation, and other advanced monitoring techniques (see also Chapter 39). ICP may be monitored with an intraparenchymal probe or intraventricular catheter and should be maintained at less than 20 mm Hg. A variety of monitoring devices have been used to assess adequacy of cerebral oxygenation, including jugular venous oxygen saturation, positron emission tomography, near-infrared spectroscopy, and direct brain tissue oxygenation ($Pbto_2$) monitoring.[227] Brain tissue hypoxia may be corrected by increasing FiO_2, blood transfusion, inotropic support, or sedation, if increased ICP results in decreased cerebral blood flow.[228-231] Small studies suggest an improvement in Glasgow Outcome Score and mortality with brain oxygen–targeted strategies, but no overall consensus exists.

Finally, patients with severe TBI are also at risk for non-CNS organ failure. A retrospective review of patients with isolated TBI found a frequent incidence of subsequent organ failure: 89% developed dysfunction of at least one non-neurologic organ system. Takotsubo cardiomyopathy may develop in the setting of severe TBI and lead to severe myocardial dysfunction in the patient with brain injury.[232] The reasons for development include interplay between the neuroendocrine system and the injured brain. A catecholamine surge that occurs after TBI may manifest as subendocardial ischemia, leading to biventricular heart failure, even in young, previously healthy patients. This cycle may be exacerbated during OR procedures when vasoactive drugs might be administered. β-Adrenergic blockade may be protective in human studies in patients with brain injuries. Retrospective database reviews have indicated improved neurologic outcome and reduced morbidity and mortality in patients receiving peri-injury β-adrenergic blockade although the quality of evidence is not high.[233-236]

TRAUMATIC BRAIN INJURY AND CONCOMITANT TRAUMA

Patients with isolated head injuries can be managed with traditional ventilatory strategies, but those with chest trauma, aspiration, or massive resuscitation after shock are at high risk for the development of ARDS. The classic teaching of no or low-level positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) to prevent increased ICP is inappropriate because hypoxemia may not be corrected. With adequate intravascular volume resuscitation, PEEP does not increase ICP or decrease cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP)[237] and may actually decrease ICP as a result of improved cerebral oxygenation.[238] Patients who develop ARDS after TBI are at risk for cerebral hypoxia.[239] A double-hit model has been proposed as the cause of ARDS secondary to CNS trauma—severe TBI leads to a systemic inflammatory response, which then primes the lungs to be more susceptible to injurious ventilator strategies or other mediators of lung injury. ARDS and cardiac insufficiency after TBI may lead to compromised systemic oxygenation and therefore a decrease in cerebral oxygen delivery.[240] Hyperventilation therapy (e.g., at a $PaCO_2$ of 25 mm Hg), long a mainstay in the management of patients with TBI, is no longer recommended as a prophylactic treatment. A range of $PaCO_2$ between 30 and 35 mm Hg should be induced with hyperventilation to 30 mm Hg only for episodes of increased ICP that cannot be controlled with sedatives, drainage of cerebrospinal fluid, neuromuscular blockade, osmotic drugs, or barbiturate coma.[161] Hyperventilation during the first 24 hours is of concern because of the critical reductions in perfusion during this timeframe. However, these recommendations should be taken in context and modified in the face of unstable clinical circumstances such as an expanding mass lesion or signs of imminent herniation.[241]

The most challenging of all trauma patients are those with severe TBI and coexisting hemorrhagic shock. A single episode of hypotension, defined as systolic blood pressure lower than 90 mm Hg, is associated with an increase in morbidity and doubled mortality after severe TBI.[242] Hypotension together with hypoxia increases mortality 30-fold. Current recommendations are to maintain a patient with severe TBI in a euvolemic state. Therefore *fluid resuscitation is the mainstay of therapy,* followed by vasoactive infusions as needed. The ideal fluid has not been defined, but perhaps hypertonic saline solutions are optimal. Correction of anemia from acute blood loss is the priority; however, an optimal target hematocrit has not been defined. Animal models and healthy human subjects support maintaining a hemoglobin lower than 7 g/dL because impaired brain function may occur with lower values, yet a hemoglobin lower than 10 g/dL may be detrimental to recovery from TBI.[243] At this time it is not clear what optimal transfusion trigger should be used (see also Chapter 49). After the initial ABCDE management of a patient with severe TBI, a stepwise approach to maintenance of CPP is initiated, with a currently recommended goal range of 60 to 70 mm Hg, as discussed in Chapter 57.

Decompressive craniectomy is a surgical procedure used to control severely increased ICP and prevent herniation after stroke, and it is now used for the same indications after severe TBI.[244] Decompressive craniectomy is indicated for selected anatomic patterns of TBI, such as when CPP cannot be maintained despite vigorous application of the previously described therapies, including barbiturate coma. Relieving ICP by removal of a piece of cranium and use of a dural patch may improve mortality and morbidity in patients who might not otherwise survive.[245] Decompressive laparotomy may be indicated in patients with severe TBI if coexisting injuries or vigorous intravascular volume infusion have increased intraabdominal compartment pressure to greater than 20 mm Hg. Increased abdominal pressure worsens pulmonary mechanics, thus necessitating higher MAP to maintain arterial oxygen saturation. This increase in ventilating pressure will increase intrathoracic pressure and impair venous drainage from the head and consequently decrease CPP. The use of decompressive celiotomy as a therapy to reduce ICP has been described[246] for managing patients with severe TBI and a potential multiple compartment syndrome.[247] Fluid therapy, ARDS, or both may increase intraabdominal pressure and intrathoracic pressure, thereby increasing ICP. Further fluid administration to support cerebral perfusion or increasing ventilatory support to treat ARDS further exacerbates this problem. This can create a cycle that ultimately produces multiple compartment syndrome and necessitates opening of the abdomen, even in the absence of primary abdominal trauma. Isolated TBI can thus become a multisystem disease.

Like hyperventilation therapy, the use of hypothermia to treat severe TBI has changed. Early studies demonstrated that moderate, systemic hypothermia reduces both the rate of cerebral edema and mortality after cortical injury in laboratory animals.[248,249] Small clinical series in humans also suggested improved outcome in patients with TBI when hypothermia was maintained for 24 or 48 hours.[250,251] However, a multicenter, randomized trial of hypothermia (33°C) versus normothermia demonstrated no improvement in outcome in a population of patients with severe TBI.[252] Patients who were hypothermic on admission and then were randomized to the normothermia group had a worse outcome than those who were left hypothermic, thus leading to the recommendation that patients with severe TBI who are hypothermic on admission not undergo active rewarming. Current Brain Trauma Foundation guidelines do not recommend early, short-term, prophylactic hypothermia.[222]

MANAGEMENT OF INTRACRANIAL PRESSURE IN THE OPERATING ROOM

Although most interventions for management of a patient with severe TBI will occur in the ICU, urgent cranial or noncranial surgery can be indicated. The previously described therapies should be continued throughout the perioperative period, including positional therapy (when possible), aggressive hemodynamic monitoring and resuscitation, administration of osmotic agents (with attention to maintaining euvolemia), and deep levels of analgesia and sedation. Appropriate anesthetic choices include opioids and low concentrations of volatile anesthetics. Pharmacologic management of TBI is the mainstay of the anesthesiologist's role in the OR. Intraoperative management of elevated ICP may be accomplished with osmotic diuretics or hypertonic saline. No difference was noted in long-term outcomes between mannitol and hypertonic saline on outcomes at 6 months, although hypertonic saline may potentiate small short-term improvements in cerebral blood flow and CPP.[253,254] A meta-analysis of common drugs used in intraoperative management of patients with TBI, including propofol, barbiturates, opioids, benzodiazepines, and corticosteroids, showed corticosteroids to be the only drug associated with an increase in mortality. The other drugs had acute benefit in reductions in ICP and sedation, but no appreciable long-term benefit.[219,222]

SPINAL CORD INJURY

SCI after trauma affects some 13,000 Americans each year.[216] Blunt trauma accounts for most of SCI: 36% from motor vehicle collisions and 42% from falls with only 4% from firearms. Cervical spine injuries occur in 1.5% to 3% of all major trauma. Over 50% of SCIs involve the cervical spine, usually between the C4 and C7 levels. Complete quadriplegia occurs in 11% of SCI cases. It is important to realize that more than 40% of trauma patients who have SCI may also have other significant injuries, including TBI.

Most spinal injuries are in the lower cervical spine, just above the thorax, or in the upper lumbar region, just below the thorax. Blunt SCI is most common in the regions of the cord that are most flexible, especially at the junctions between flexible and inflexible segments. The vertebral column is divided longitudinally into three columns: anterior, middle, and posterior; injuries to any two of these three columns suggest biomechanical instability. These are the patients who will often require urgent surgical stabilization. Patients with unstable cervical spine injuries who meet criteria for emergency intubation should undergo rapid sequence induction (see section above on protection of the cervical spine). SCI at midthoracic levels is less common because of the rotational stabilization provided by the rib cage and intercostal musculature.

SCI is commonly accompanied by radiographically visible injury to the bony spine and concomitant disruption of the muscles, ligaments, and soft tissues that support it. However, clinically significant injury to the cervical spinal cord can occur in the absence of visible skeletal injury. This entity, known as SCI without radiographic abnormality (SCIWORA), is more common in children and is presumably the result of temporary hyperdistraction or torsion of the neck insufficient to disrupt the bony skeleton.[255]

Primary injury to the spinal cord sustained at the time of injury may be exacerbated by secondary factors (Fig. 66.12). The combination of biochemical changes, vascular disruption, and electrolyte abnormalities can lead to cellular changes and worsening of SCI lesions up to 3 days after injury.[256] SCI includes sensory deficits, motor deficits, and both. Incomplete deficits may be worse on one side than the other and may improve rapidly in the first minutes after injury. Complete deficits—representing total disruption of the spinal cord at one level—are much more ominous, with generally little improvement seen over time. Spine injuries above the level of T4 to T6 are accompanied by significant hypotension because of inappropriate vasodilatation, loss of cardiac inotropy, and bradycardia resulting from denervation of the cardiac accelerator fibers (neurogenic shock). (Note the distinction between *neurogenic shock* and the incorrect term *spinal shock*, which refers to a loss of reflexes.) Functioning of the lower cord will gradually return, along with restoration of normal vascular tone. Diagnosing cervical spine instability can be difficult. The Eastern Association for the Surgery of Trauma has published guidelines regarding which patients require cervical spine radiographs, which views and studies should be obtained, and how to determine the absence of significant ligamentous injury in an obtunded patient.[257] For the obtunded patient, a high-quality CT scan without evidence of cervical SCI is considered to be adequate for clearance although this is not universally accepted. Many institutions still require magnetic resonance imaging to rule out ligamentous injury in this patient population. The most commonly missed cervical fractures are at the C1 to C2 and C7 to T1 levels, usually the result of inadequate imaging.

Early intubation of the trachea is almost universally required for patients with cervical spine fracture and quadriplegia. Ventilatory support is almost always required for patients with a deficit above C4, because they will lack sufficient diaphragmatic function. Patients

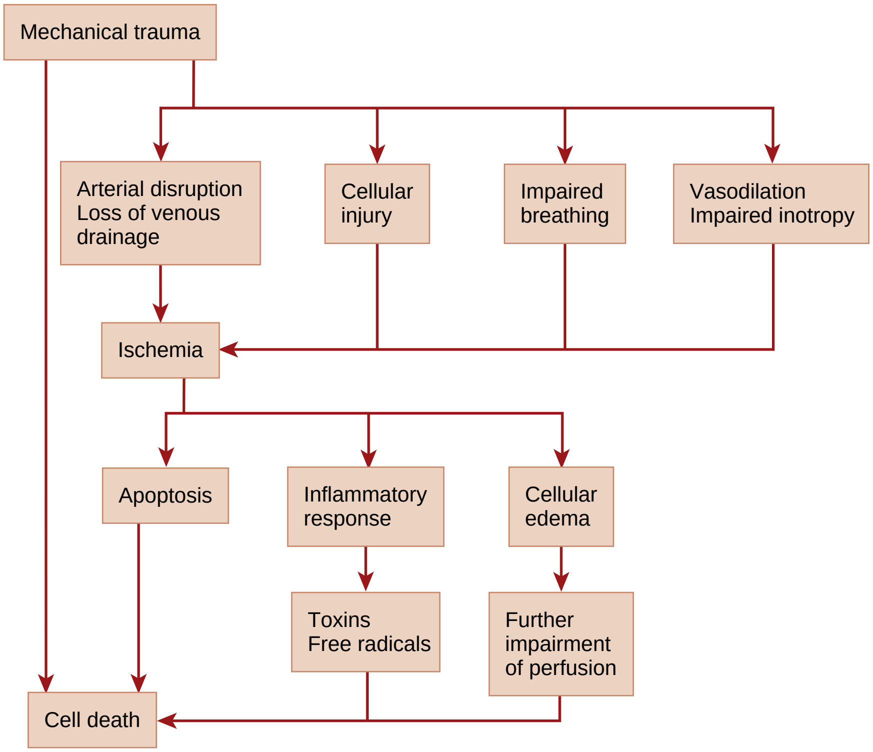


Fig. 66.12 Mechanisms of spinal cord injury. Mechanical trauma to the spinal cord is exacerbated by systemic hypoperfusion or hypoxia. (Reprinted with permission from Dutton RP. Spinal cord injury. *Int Anesthesiol Clin.* 2002;40:109.)

with levels from C6 to C7 may need support because of impairment in respiratory muscle function resulting from (1) loss of chest wall innervation, (2) paradoxical respiratory motion, (3) inability to clear secretions, and (4) decreased lung and chest wall compliance. Early tracheal intubation is recommended and, if elective, often can be accomplished by awake fiberoptic bronchoscopy or video laryngoscopy before hypoxia renders the patient anxious and uncooperative.[258,259] Also, two retrospective studies have evaluated the need for tracheal intubation in patients with cervical SCI. Como and colleagues[258] identified 119 patients, 45 of whom had complete SCI. All patients with injuries at C5 and above required intubation, and 71% of these progressed to tracheostomy. A second study of 178 patients with complete cervical SCI showed 70% of patients required tracheostomy, particularly those with an injury between C4 and C7.[259] Spontaneous ventilation and extubation of the trachea are possible after surgical stabilization and resolution of neurogenic shock, although pneumonia is a common and recurrent complication that frequently necessitates tracheostomy to facilitate pulmonary toilet.[260]

Although administration of a glucocorticoid steroid bolus in patients with blunt SCI and deficit was recommended, current guidelines suggest caution. Large-dose glucocorticoid therapy has resulted in a small, but statistically significant, improvement in neurologic level after SCI in two large multicenter trials: National Acute Spinal Cord Injury Study (NASCIS) II and III.[261,262] However, the NASCIS results have been challenged for several reasons.[263-265] The positive benefits seen with high-dose steroid administration were driven by results in a few subpopulations and were not present in a majority of patients. The improvement in spinal level seen after steroid administration has not been shown to lead to increased survival or improved quality of life, and the results have not been reproducible in other studies of acute SCI. Current recommendations by the American Association of Neurological Surgeons and the Congress of Neurological Surgeons state that there is no consistent or compelling medical evidence to justify the use of methylprednisolone for acute SCI.[266]

INTRAOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF SPINAL CORD INJURY

A patient about to undergo surgical reduction and fixation of a spinal column fracture presents challenges for the anesthesiologist. First and foremost is the need for intubation of the trachea in a patient with a known injury to the cervical spine. Direct laryngoscopy with in-line stabilization is appropriate in the emergency setting and in unconscious, combative, or hypoxemic patients when the status of the spine is not known.[267] Tracheal intubation can occur in the OR, in an awake, alert, and cooperative patient by several methods known to produce less displacement of the cervical spine, presumably with less risk for worsening an unstable SCI. A common technique in current clinical practice is awake fiberoptic intubation. Although the nasal route is associated with an easier path to intubation in most patients, it can lead to an increased risk for sinusitis in the ICU if the trachea is not extubated at the end of the procedure. Oral intubation may be more challenging technically but will be of greater value if the patient remains mechanically ventilated. Blind nasal intubation, transillumination with a lighted stylet, and use of an intubating LMA, videolaryngoscopy, or any of a variety of other instrument systems for indirect laryngoscopy are acceptable. Again, in comparative studies of direct laryngoscopy, videolaryngoscopy, fiberoptic examination, blind nasal intubation, or cricothyrotomy in patients with known cervical cord or spine injuries, no difference is seen in neurologic deterioration with technique used and no clear evidence exists that direct laryngoscopy worsens outcome. Clinicians are advised to use the equipment and techniques with which they are most familiar. The important concept is to successfully achieve tracheal intubation while minimizing motion of the cervical spine and preserving the ability to assess neurologic function after positioning.[68]

A patient with a partial deficit and visible spinal canal impingement on imaging studies is considered an emergency because of the potential for regaining neurologic function after decompression. Timing for surgery suggests that earlier decompression may improve outcomes in some patients, particularly those with cervical injuries, although the exact timing remains controversial.[268,269] Hemodynamic instability may complicate urgent and emergent spinal surgery. Hypotension from neurogenic shock is characterized by an inappropriate bradycardia resulting from loss of cardiac accelerator function and unopposed parasympathetic tone. However, this situation can be difficult to distinguish from hypotension resulting from acute hemorrhage, and a trial of fluid administration is still indicated, subject to the end points of resuscitation listed earlier. Once hemorrhage has been controlled or ruled out, patients who have maintenance of an increased MAP more than 85 mm Hg for 7 days after SCI may have improved functional recovery. This approach is highly controversial but remains a recommendation in treatment according to published guidelines.[270]

Orthopedic and Soft Tissue Trauma

Musculoskeletal injuries are the most frequent indication for operative management in most trauma centers (see also Chapter 64). Orthopedic trauma, like TBIs and SCIs, can be associated with long-term pain and disability. In addition to physical handicaps that these patients may endure, orthopedic injuries incurred in both civilian and military settings lead to long-term psychological trauma.[271-273] The length of many procedures, particularly in patients with multiple extremity injuries, necessitates attention to body positioning, maintenance of normothermia, fluid balance, and preservation of peripheral blood flow.

Timing of operative intervention in polytrauma patients with orthopedic injuries has been a topic of considerable academic and clinical discussion. Musculoskeletal injuries represent common injury patterns seen in patients with high-energy mechanisms of injury and are one of the more common reasons for operative intervention in the trauma population.[274,275] Historically, injuries to the extremities in multisystem trauma patients who were too critically injured for definitive operative intervention were managed with traction and prolonged immobilization. These patients experienced high rates of pulmonary failure and prolonged mechanical ventilation, developed sepsis frequently, and had high mortality rates.[276] Specifically, pulmonary complications have been a common occurrence in this population of trauma patients with nearly 30% of patients with multiple extremity injuries experiencing pulmonary morbidity. Therefore the goal of fracture management in the multisystem trauma patient revolves around restoring musculoskeletal anatomy that allows for mobilization, pulmonary toilet, and adequate pain control.

In the patient with isolated extremity or hip fracture without polytrauma, the evidence remains clear that early definitive fracture care improves outcomes. In hip fracture patients, current U.S.[277] and Canadian[278] guidelines recommend surgery within 48 hours. Within the United Kingdom, surgery within 36 hours is a quality-of-care indicator although adherence to these guidelines is incomplete.[279] These recommendations may require revision as more recent work has consistently demonstrated an increasing complication rate for surgical procedures performed over 24 hours after injury.[280-283] In the most recent study looking at the association between wait time and 30-day mortality, Pincus and associates examined the impact of wait time in hours on mortality and other complications including myocardial infarction, deep vein thrombosis, pulmonary embolism, and pneumonia.[284] Among adults requiring hip fracture surgery, a wait time of 24 hours appears to be a threshold defining higher risk. The study population, however, did not include many patients with significant trauma (<1% of patients had an ISS ≥16) or multiple fractures (4.9%) making it impossible to directly apply these results to the polytrauma patient. Similarly, fixation of femur fractures in patients with a lower ISS within 48 hours of injury is also associated with improved outcomes.[285]

SPECIFIC ORTHOPEDIC CONDITIONS

Hip fracture is a common, morbid, and costly event among older adults. Frequently, patients with isolated hip fracture present to the OR for urgent repair. Regional anesthesia is associated with decreased odds of inpatient mortality and pulmonary complications among patients with hip fracture in contrast to general anesthesia.[286] A retrospective cohort of 18,158 patients undergoing surgery for hip fracture in 126 hospitals showed that 5254 (29%) received regional anesthesia. Although unadjusted rates of mortality and cardiovascular complications did not differ by anesthesia type, regional anesthesia was associated with decreased adjusted odds of mortality (odds ratio: .710, 95% confidence interval [CI] .541, .932, $P = .014$) and pulmonary complications (odds ratio: .752, 95% CI .637, 0.887, $P < .0001$) relative to general anesthesia.[287]

Dislocation of the hip is common after high-energy trauma and is frequently accompanied by fracture of the acetabulum. Whereas the fracture itself can be safely managed on a delayed basis or nonoperatively, the dislocation is a medical emergency that must be promptly addressed if the patient is to have a good functional outcome. Failure to promptly diagnose and reduce a dislocated hip joint is a significant risk factor for avascular necrosis of the femoral head. Reduction typically requires a very deep level of sedation, which may be facilitated by nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade. For this reason, the anesthesiologist is commonly involved.[288] Although a dislocated hip can be reduced in a spontaneously breathing sedated patient, an acutely injured patient is at high risk for aspiration of gastric contents. Any patient who will be undergoing surgery soon (such as for an open long-bone fracture or exploratory laparotomy) can be tracheally intubated at the time of reduction and maintained with appropriate sedation and analgesia until reaching the OR. Other patients who may require intubation even for uncomplicated reductions include those who are inebriated or uncooperative, hemodynamically unstable, or suffering from pulmonary dysfunction. Additionally, successful postoperative fracture reduction is more difficult to achieve in morbidly obese patients than in those with normal body mass index.[289]

Unlike acetabular fractures, fracture of the pelvic ring requires immediate recognition and management by the trauma team. Hemorrhage, even exsanguination, is common after a major pelvic ring fracture and is a leading contributor to early death after motor vehicle collisions. Bleeding occurs from multiply disrupted venous beds in the posterior pelvic bowl; if the pelvis is unstable, no anatomic barrier exists to continued expansion of this retroperitoneal bleeding. Surgical exploration by way of the peritoneum is usually unrewarding because the bleeding vessels are not easily accessed.[290] In the past, therapy consisted of supportive volume resuscitation, external fixation of the unstable pelvis, and angiography. Despite this multidisciplinary approach, mortality remained frequent in these patients, partially because of the inability of angioembolization to control venous bleeding from the rich venous plexuses associated with the most severe fractures. The technique of preperitoneal packing has been adopted by many U.S. trauma centers. Preperitoneal packing via laparotomy is a rapid method for controlling pelvic fracture–related hemorrhage that can supplant the need for emergent angiography and reduces transfusion requirements and mortality.[291] Endotracheal intubation is usually undertaken on an emergency basis in a hypotensive patient, and the anesthesiologist may remain with the patient throughout the initial hours of stabilization to manage sedation, analgesia, transport, and ongoing resuscitation needs. In the absence of an orthopedic specialist, temporary stabilization and tamponade of some pelvic fractures can be accomplished with use of a specially made pelvic binder, the pelvic portion of military antishock trousers, or a bed sheet knotted tightly around the bony pelvis.[292] Mechanically unstable pelvic ring fractures are associated with increased fluid and blood resuscitation volumes, significantly more frequent presence of concomitant injuries, and increased ventilation and ICU stay, rate of MODS, sepsis, and rate of mortality.[293]

Patients with pelvic fractures can initially be divided into two groups: (1) stable pelvic fracture; or (2) displaced pelvic ring fractures with hemodynamic instability or high risk for deterioration. This second group has the highest risk for complications and mortality related to their injuries. The presence of associated injuries to the head, chest, and abdomen can lead to conflicting priorities in management of these patients. For example, a CT finding of a high-grade splenic injury in the setting of a severe pelvic injury and hemodynamic instability may require an exploratory laparotomy before addressing the pelvic injury. These patients may present for operative procedures with or without early interventions such as placement of a pelvic binder or resuscitative endovascular balloon occlusion of the aorta. As the unstable trauma patient is moved to the angiography suite or hybrid OR, resuscitation should continue to maintain an acceptable perfusion pressure; and survival is higher if this transition occurs within 3 hours of presentation.[294] Management of these interventions in the OR requires an understanding of the anatomy, physiology, and surgical considerations involved in their employment in the operative setting as discussed above.

Open fractures should be pulse-lavaged and debrided as soon as possible after injury to minimize the risk for infectious complications. If ongoing resuscitation or unstable TBI precludes the patient from early management in the OR, this procedure can be performed at the bedside. Despite the frequency of open fractures, their management remains one of the greatest and most debated orthopedic challenges. Timing of surgical fixation in open fractures is often surgeon-specific or center-specific, because little consensus exists among orthopedic surgeons as to optimal treatment.[295]

The advantages and disadvantages of regional and general anesthesia are summarized in Boxes 66.9 and 66.10. Regional anesthesia seems to decrease postoperative morbidity and mortality[287,296,297] (including cognitive measures of function), but clinically measurable benefits may not be seen in patients receiving combined general and regional techniques.[298-300] One other prevalent concern in the management of an orthopedic trauma patient is the concomitant use of regional anesthesia, analgesia, or both and prophylaxis for venous thromboembolism, as discussed in Chapter 64.

Intraoperative TEE has shown that most patients undergoing long-bone fracture manipulation experience microembolism of fat and marrow.[301] Most patients suffer no discernible clinical impact from this phenomenon, but some will experience a significant acute inflammatory response. After long bone fractures, some lung dysfunction occurs in almost all patients, ranging from minor laboratory abnormalities to full blown fat embolism syndrome (FES). A lack of universally

BOX 66.9 Advantages and Disadvantages of Regional Anesthesia for Trauma

Advantages

Allows continued assessment of mental status
Increased vascular flow
Avoidance of airway instrumentation
Improved postoperative mental status
Decreased blood loss
Decreased incidence of deep venous thrombosis
Improved postoperative analgesia
Better pulmonary toilet
Earlier mobilization
Lower incidence of long-term pain syndromes

Disadvantages

Peripheral nerve function difficult to assess
Patient refusal common
Requirement for sedation
Hemodynamic instability with placement
Longer time to achieve anesthesia
Not suitable for multiple body regions
May wear off before procedure(s) conclude(s)

BOX 66.10 Advantages and Disadvantages of General Anesthesia for Trauma Patients

Advantages

Speed of onset
Duration: can be maintained as long as needed
Allows multiple procedures for multiple injuries
Greater patient acceptance
Allows positive-pressure ventilation

Disadvantages

Impairment of global neurologic examination
Requirement for airway instrumentation
Hemodynamic management more complex

BOX 66.11 Risk Factors for the Development of Compartment Syndrome

Orthopedic

Fractures and operative repair

Vascular

Reperfusion injury
Hemorrhage with hematoma formation
Ischemia from arterial and venous injuries

Soft Tissue

Crush injury
Burns
Prolonged compression in immobile state

Iatrogenic

Casts and circular dressing
Use of pneumatic antishock garment
Intraosseous fluid replacement in infant or child
Pulsatile lavage with extravasation
Extravasation from venous or arterial puncture site

Miscellaneous

Snakebite
Acute exertion

accepted diagnostic criteria combined with concomitant pulmonary and cardiovascular dysfunction accounts for the varying incidence reported in the literature. Clinically significant FES occurs in 3% to 10% of patients but is likely underdiagnosed in patients with multiple injuries or a high ISS.[302] Patients with coexisting lung injury are at additional risk for FES. Signs include hypoxia, tachycardia, mental status changes, and, classically, a petechial rash on the axillae, upper arms and shoulders, chest, neck, and conjunctivae. FES should be considered whenever the alveolar-arterial oxygen gradient deteriorates in conjunction with decreased pulmonary compliance and CNS deterioration. Under general anesthesia, the CNS changes will not be apparent but may be manifested as failure to awaken after surgery. If central hemodynamic monitoring is available, pulmonary artery pressure is elevated, often accompanied by decreases in the cardiac index. Diagnosis in the OR is largely based on the clinical findings after ruling out other causes of hypoxemia. Fat globules in urine are nondiagnostic, but lung infiltrates seen on chest radiography confirm the presence of lung injury and the need for appropriate ventilatory management with oxygen, higher PEEP, and possible longer-term mechanical ventilatory support.[303,304] Treatment includes early recognition, administration of oxygen, and judicious fluid management.[305] A change in the orthopedic procedure may be indicated, such as converting intramedullary nailing of the femur to external fixation. In the patient with bilateral femur fractures, it has been proposed that 1 to 2 days be allowed to pass between successive nailing procedures.[306]

Acute compartment syndrome of the extremities is defined as a “condition in which increased pressure within a limited space compromises the circulation and function of the tissues within that space.”[307] The most common cause of compartment syndrome is edema secondary to muscle injury and associated hematoma formation. Although most commonly associated with traumatic injuries, compartment syndrome also can occur because of causes associated with trauma, including reperfusion injury, burns, drug overdose, and prolonged limb compression (Box 66.11). The most common fractures associated with the development of compartment syndrome are those of the tibial shaft (40%) and forearm (18%).[308,309] Forearm compartment syndrome requiring fasciotomy predominantly affects males and can occur after either a fracture or soft-tissue injury. A further 23% of cases are caused by soft-tissue injuries without fracture.[310] Although no randomized, prospective trials have been conducted, regional anesthesia does not blunt detection of compartment syndromes if there is not an associated dense motor block.[311]

Fasciotomy is usually indicated when compartment pressure approaches 20 to 30 mm Hg below diastolic pressure in any patient with a worsening clinical condition, a documented rising tissue pressure, major soft tissue injury, or a history of 4 to 6 hours of total ischemia of an extremity. Prophylactic fasciotomy may be indicated in patients with warm ischemic time more than 2 hours, ligation of the major veins in the popliteal region or distal part of the thigh, and crush injuries. Early or prophylactic fasciotomy decreases subsequent muscle loss.[312]

Crush syndrome is the general manifestation of crush injury caused by continuous prolonged pressure on one or more extremities[313] and is commonly found in patients who have been trapped in one position for an extended period. Muscle injury secondary to ischemia causes myoglobinuria, which can lead to acute renal failure and subsequent profound electrolyte disturbances. The most critical treatment consists of crystalloid fluid resuscitation; a total body fluid deficit of 15 L may occur in severe rhabdomyolysis.[314] Osmotic diuresis with mannitol and alkalization of urine with sodium bicarbonate to prevent precipitation of myoglobin in the renal tubules are controversial.[315] The preferred therapy for renal failure secondary to rhabdomyolysis at the shock trauma center is continuous renal replacement therapy and hemofiltration.[316] Most of these patients eventually have full recovery of native renal function.[317]

SOFT TISSUE TRAUMA

Assessment of soft tissue injury is critical in the management of a trauma patient. Muscular coverage is necessary for the viability of any orthopedic repair, but it may be jeopardized by avulsion at the time of injury, ischemia from elevated compartment pressure, and ongoing bacterial infection in open wounds. Acute surgical management of soft tissue injury is straightforward: all dead or devitalized tissue must be debrided, and the wound thoroughly irrigated to reduce the load of bacterial contaminants. When muscle or fascia involvement is significant, serial debridement at frequent intervals is necessary to establish a margin of completely viable tissue. Vacuum dressings for large soft tissue wounds are gaining in popularity because continuous negative pressure over the wound surface removes contaminants and encourages blood flow.[318] When serial debridement establishes viable tissue at all margins of the wound, arrangements for definitive closure can be made. Closure may be as simple as a split-thickness skin graft or as complex as free tissue transfer of muscle and fascia from an uninjured portion of the body, with attendant arterial and venous anastomoses.

A degloving injury results in significant soft tissue loss, usually in the extremities. Multiple plastic surgery and reconstructive procedures may be necessary. General anesthesia is usually required, although combining it with epidural or regional block analgesia may confer the benefits of both techniques. Close consultation with the surgical teams is suggested.

Superficial vacuum dressings can be changed at the bedside under light sedation, but patients with deep wound dressings may require general anesthesia. The need for repeated surgeries is an important consideration for the anesthetic technique. Anesthesia for free tissue transfer surgery requires meticulous attention to detail because these operations can be quite protracted. Every effort should be made to facilitate perfusion of the grafted vessels, including keeping the patient warm, euvolemic, and comfortable, and maintaining the hematocrit in the rheologically favorable range of 25% to 30%. The use of epidural anesthesia and analgesia is controversial, with some surgeons favoring it for its vasodilatory effects and others being concerned that it will induce a steal phenomenon that will actually limit flow in the denervated free tissue.[319] The use of vasopressors in microsurgery is generally avoided. Yet in one study, the vasopressor used did not cause more complications.[320]

Other Traumatic Injuries

HEAD AND NECK SURGERY

Except for emergency exploration of penetrating trauma to zone II of the neck (from the clavicles up to the angle of the mandible), most surgical repair of head and neck trauma will occur in the subacute phase, after complete resuscitation and secondary diagnostic studies. Anesthetic management of these patients is not substantially different from that for similar elective procedures, although coexisting injuries may influence patient positioning, airway management, and ventilator settings.[321,322] Surgery on the mandible and maxilla will be facilitated by nasotracheal intubation, but a secure airway should be not jeopardized by attempting to switch from an oral to a nasal tube in a patient in whom visualization of the larynx might be difficult because of traumatic swelling or body habitus. It is safer in these cases for the surgeon to either work around an oral tube secured behind the second molar (to allow dental occlusion) or place a tracheostomy if the need for intubation and mechanical ventilation is likely to be protracted. Surgery on the zygoma and the nasal, orbital, and ethmoid bones will be possible with an oral ETT. Securing the ETT to the molar with a fine-gauge wire will help stabilize it through the operation. All of these surgeries will lead to significant soft tissue swelling in the immediate postoperative period, often necessitating several days of continued intubation and sedation until sufficient venous drainage has occurred to allow safe extubation of the trachea. Though not by itself definitive, the presence of an air leak when the ETT cuff is deflated is suggestive that the airway will remain patent once the tube is removed.

CHEST INJURIES: PULMONARY

Injuries to the lung parenchyma that produce pneumothorax can be managed by tube thoracostomy to relieve tension, drain accumulated blood, and apply suction to the pleural space until the air leak spontaneously resolves. Bleeding from the low-pressure pulmonary circulation is usually self-limited. Thoracostomy is uncommon but becomes necessary when evidence exists of mediastinal injury, chest tube output exceeds 1500 mL in the first hours after injury, tracheal or bronchial injury and massive air leak are apparent, or the patient is hemodynamically unstable with evident thoracic pathology.[33] Blood collected from the pleural space is generally free of clotting factors and can be directly reinfused with any of several commercial systems[323]; however, concern has been expressed that this may be prothrombotic and potentially harmful.[324] Hemorrhage necessitating surgery may be from injured intercostal or internal mammary arteries or from the lung parenchyma. Staple resection of injured lung or even anatomic lobectomy is not uncommon, particularly after penetrating trauma.

Although double-lumen endotracheal intubation is desirable during urgent thoracotomy, this should not be the initial approach. Rapid sequence induction with a large-caliber (at least 8.0 mm in internal diameter) conventional ETT will allow diagnostic bronchoscopy if needed. The change to a double-lumen tube can then be made under controlled conditions in the presence of adequate oxygenation, anesthesia, and muscle relaxation. Tolerance of single-lung ventilation is variable in the trauma population and depends in large part on the absence of significant pathologic findings in the ventilated lung. Many patients with blunt thoracic injury have bilateral pulmonary contusions and will require increased FiO_2 and high levels of PEEP to maintain adequate oxygenation, even when both lungs are ventilated. Those with a high Thoracic Trauma Severity score in the setting of blunt trauma and pulmonary contusion are more likely to progress to ARDS potentially necessitating early, aggressive management of mechanical ventilation.[325]

Although chest trauma requiring pneumonectomy has historically resulted in mortality approaching 100%, a recent review of the National Trauma Data Bank found 261 cases of pneumonectomy following trauma (163 penetrating and 98 blunt) with an overall in-hospital mortality of 60%.[326] Intraoperative deaths are the result of uncontrollable hemorrhage, acute right ventricular failure, and air embolism. Patients who survive the initial procedure are at risk for early postoperative morbidity and mortality. Fluid management may be complicated by the need to weigh ongoing resuscitation against the treatment of right ventricular failure. Blunt thoracic trauma requiring pneumonectomy is often associated with abdominal and pelvic trauma. Volume replacement must be judicious, and the use of a pulmonary artery catheter (placed with care in a postpneumonectomy patient) or TEE may be beneficial. Echocardiography will also play an important role in assessing right ventricular function and pulmonary hypertension. Treatment of right ventricular failure after traumatic pneumonectomy is difficult.[327] During hypovolemic shock a disproportionate increase occurs in pulmonary vascular resistance with respect to systemic vascular resistance,[328] as well as frequent mortality with combined hemorrhagic shock and pneumonectomy.[329] With severe right heart dysfunction it is desirable to maintain a higher preload than normal. Several therapeutic approaches have been used to treat right ventricular failure, including close monitoring of pulmonary artery pressure, the use of diuretics for volume overload, and administration of pulmonary vasodilators. Because this injury is rare, and the number of patients reported in the literature is small, the best therapy is difficult to identify. A recent case report describes the use of nitric oxide to successfully treat pulmonary hypertension after posttraumatic pneumonectomy.[330] Extracorporeal support also has been used to sustain patients through the perioperative period, although the technical challenges are substantial and successful weaning may require days to weeks on bypass (see also Chapter 85).[331]

Tracheobronchial injury can result from either blunt force or penetrating trauma. Penetrating injuries are usually more promptly diagnosed and treated. Blunt trauma most commonly results in an injury to the tracheobronchial tree within 2.5 cm of the carina and may initially be unrecognized. The presence of subcutaneous emphysema, pneumomediastinum, pneumopericardium, or pneumoperitoneum, without apparent cause, should alert the practitioner to possible tracheobronchial injury.[332] Despite bronchoscopy and helical CT scanning, a small injury may never be delineated. If the resultant injury is an incomplete tear, it may heal with stenosis, subsequent atelectasis, pneumonia, pulmonary destruction, and sepsis. When surgery is required for a delayed, incomplete tracheobronchial injury, pulmonary resection may be required if significant tissue destruction has occurred, whereas complete transection may be amenable to reconstruction with preservation of pulmonary tissue. The level of injury dictates the surgical approach. Cervical injuries are approached through a transverse neck incision, left bronchial injuries via a left thoracotomy, and tracheal or right main bronchial injuries via a right thoracotomy. In the cervical region it is sometimes possible to access a longitudinal tear of the posterior membranous trachea by opening the anterior trachea and operating around the ETT.

CHEST INJURIES: TRAUMATIC AORTIC INJURY

Traumatic aortic injury (TAI) must be ruled out in any patient with a high-energy injury, such as occurs with a motor vehicle accident or a fall from a height. The incidence of TAI has decreased in recent years because of the increased presence of airbags in motor vehicles; most of the cases in the past decade have been caused by side-impact collisions.[333] Aortic injury occurs most commonly just distal to the left subclavian artery and is the result of sheer forces between the mobile heart and aortic arch and the immobile descending thoracic aorta. TAI is manifested as a continuum of injury from a small intimal flap to free transection contained by the surrounding mediastinum and pleura. The diagnosis is most commonly made by CT scan of the chest with intravenous contrast, which has a sensitivity comparable to aortography.[334] Surgical or endovascular repair is indicated for most patients with TAI because of the high risk for rupture in the hours and days after injury with endovascular repair being the preferred option in the absence of contraindication. Selective nonoperative management of high-risk patients with TAI has been described.[335,336] Treatment is similar to that in patients with uncomplicated type B aortic dissection and consists of β-adrenergic blockade to minimize the cardiac rate–pressure product.

CHEST INJURIES: RIB FRACTURES

Rib fractures are the most common injury resulting from blunt chest trauma. The fracture itself generally requires no specific treatment and will heal spontaneously over a period of several weeks. Therapy is directed at minimizing pulmonary complications secondary to these fractures, such as pain, splinting, atelectasis, hypoxemia, and pneumonia. Of particular concern are rib fractures in older adults (older than 55 years of age). Older patients with rib fractures have twice the mortality and thoracic morbidity of younger patients with similar injuries. Epidural anesthesia should be used liberally in patients with severe pain, older adults, and patients with preexisting compromised pulmonary function. Data support a 6% decrease in morbidity and mortality in older patients when epidural anesthesia is used[337]; however, a meta-analysis failed to identify a reduction in mortality.[338] Nonetheless, recent guidelines for pain management in the patient with blunt thoracic trauma recommend epidural analgesia over nonregional modalities of pain control.[339] Epidural analgesia may minimize or avoid complications of splinting and pain such as hypoxemia, hypoventilation, the need for tracheal intubation, and the possibility of pneumonia. Endotracheal intubation is reserved for patients who are unable to oxygenate or ventilate or who require protection of the airway.

Fracture of multiple neighboring ribs will result in the flail chest syndrome, characterized by paradoxical chest wall motion during spontaneous ventilation. Not all patients with a flail chest require positive-pressure ventilation, and endotracheal intubation should be reserved for those who meet the usual criteria. Patients who are not initially intubated should be observed closely in the ICU for signs of worsening respiratory function. Increasing cases have been reported of the use of noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation (NIPPV) for lung injury secondary to trauma.[340] For these patients who subsequently require intubation for a surgical procedure, the anesthesiologist will need to determine the safety of extubation postoperatively. NIPPV is associated with fewer cases of pneumonia, which may lead to fewer tracheostomies and decreased ICU length of stay.

A successful technique has been early extubation to a mask delivering continuous positive airway pressure or bilevel positive airway pressure.[341] Concomitant pulmonary injury, especially lung contusion, is commonly associated with flail chest. Pulmonary contusion will cause shunting, which will lead to hypoxemia. This syndrome may progress rapidly in the hours and days after injury. An initially clear chest radiograph does not exclude the possibility of a pulmonary contusion, and, again, close observation is warranted if signs of significant chest wall trauma are present. As with all patients after traumatic injury, a high degree of suspicion along with a continuous search for missed injuries is warranted. No specific therapy exists for a pulmonary contusion, and therapy is directed at the associated injuries or resultant hypoxemia. Early and aggressive implementation of a lung-protective strategy may have a role in patients with significant pulmonary contusion to minimize progression to ARDS.

CHEST INJURIES: CARDIAC INJURY

Blunt cardiac injury is a rare and poorly understood phenomenon that must be considered in any patient who has sustained a frontal impact to the chest. Bruising or edema of the myocardium is functionally indistinguishable from myocardial ischemia and may be causally related in that the pathophysiology of cardiac contusion may involve forcible dislodgement of unstable atherosclerotic plaque. If the patient is hemodynamically stable and the ECG does not demonstrate conduction disturbances or tachyarrhythmias, blunt cardiac injury can be safely excluded.[342] If either a new tachyarrhythmia or conduction disturbance subsequently develops or the patient has unexplained hypotension, other causes (hypovolemia, renal failure) should be ruled out first. If the workup is negative, TTE should be performed. Right ventricular dysfunction resulting in hypotension may be overlooked while more common causes of hypotension in the trauma patient are being evaluated. TEE is superior to TTE in obese patients or those with injuries to the chest wall that make it difficult to obtain adequate acoustic windows, but it will generally require intubation and deep sedation to perform. Once diagnosed, blunt cardiac injury should be managed as ischemic cardiac injury, with completion of resuscitation and then careful control of fluid volumes, administration of coronary vasodilators, and monitoring and symptomatic treatment of rhythm disturbances. Anticoagulation with aspirin or heparin should be approached on a case-by-case basis as determined by the patient's other injuries. Cardiology consultation is appropriate if the patient may benefit from coronary angiography followed by angioplasty or stenting of stenotic vessels.

Patients with penetrating cardiac trauma and blunt trauma causing rupture of one or more chambers (usually the atria) are often not seen by the trauma center because of a frequent rate of prehospital mortality.[343] Those who do not die immediately of free exsanguination into the thoracic cavity will have pericardial tamponade and can be extremely unstable in the first minutes after admission. This condition is diagnosed by clinical suspicion, focused assessment with sonography for trauma (FAST), and direct inspection during ED thoracotomy. Relief of the tamponade and clamp or suture control of the cardiac injury may allow restoration of spontaneous circulation and necessitate urgent transition to the OR for definitive hemostasis and chest closure. Cardiopulmonary bypass may be required for support during repair of cardiac injuries.

ABDOMINAL INJURY

The need for exploratory laparotomy, once the mainstay of the trauma surgeon, has declined because FAST and high-resolution CT have reduced the incidence of negative abdominal explorations, whereas angiographic embolization of hemorrhaging vessels in the liver and spleen has reduced the need for open procedures. Urgent celiotomy, when it does occur, will typically follow the principles of damage control, as described earlier.[344] The abdomen is opened and packed tightly in all four quadrants. Systematic exploration is undertaken in each quadrant in turn, with time taken only for control of hemorrhage and rapid staple closure of open gastrointestinal injuries. The abdomen is packed open at the end of the procedure, a sterile drape is used to cover exposed viscera, and the patient is moved to the ICU to complete resuscitation. Definitive treatment of nonlethal injuries and restoration of bowel continuity are deferred until a second operation 24 to 48 hours later.

Anesthetic management of emergency celiotomy should follow the principles of early resuscitation outlined earlier. Adequate intravenous access is required, as well as continuous arterial pressure monitoring. Use of cell salvage devices can reduce the patient's exposure to banked blood, although reinfusion is generally deferred if there has been significant contamination by bowel contents. A rapid infusion system is advantageous for preservation of intravascular volume and normothermia during periods of heavy bleeding. Subsequent abdominal surgeries will be needed in hemodynamically stable patients and should not present unusual anesthetic challenges. Subsequent reconstructive procedures can become technically difficult as scarring and adhesions develop; the anesthesiologist should be prepared for a long anesthetic procedure with the potential for significant hemodynamic compromise.

Selected Patient Populations

TRAUMA AND PREGNANCY

Trauma to pregnant patients is associated with a frequent risk for spontaneous abortion, preterm labor, or premature delivery, depending on the location and magnitude of the mother's injury.[345] Trauma is the leading nonobstetric cause of death in pregnant women with nearly double the mortality rate.[346] Early consultation with an obstetrician is desirable for any pregnant trauma patient, for both immediate management and long-term follow-up. The best treatment of the developing fetus consists of rapid and complete resuscitation of the mother. Trauma patients in the first trimester of gestation may not realize that they are pregnant; for this reason, human chorionic gonadotropin testing is part of the initial laboratory studies for any injured woman of childbearing age. Serious trauma occurring during the period of fetal organogenesis may induce birth defects or miscarriage because of the effects of medications, pelvic irradiation, or hemorrhage leading to placental ischemia. Indicated radiologic tests should not be deferred but shielding of the pelvis should be provided whenever possible.[347] Patients who do not spontaneously miscarry should be advised of the potential risks for birth defects and be referred for counseling if desired.[348] Dilatation plus curettage of the uterus is advisable after miscarriage to avoid toxicity arising from retained products of conception.[349]

Trauma occurring in the second or third trimester of pregnancy necessitates early ultrasonographic examination to determine fetal age, size, and viability. Monitoring of the fetal heart rate is indicated if the pregnancy is sufficiently advanced that the fetus would be viable if delivered. Preterm labor is very common in this population and should be treated with β-adrenergic agonist drugs or magnesium at the direction of the obstetrician. Delivery should be delayed if the fetus is not an unacceptable metabolic stress on the mother. Delivery by cesarean section is indicated if the mother is in extremis, if the uterus itself is hemorrhaging, or if the gravid uterus is impairing surgical control of abdominal or pelvic hemorrhage.[350] Placental abruption can occur in response to substance abuse or abdominal trauma and can precipitate life-threatening uterine hemorrhage. Emergency cesarean section is indicated in these cases. The Kleihauer-Betke blood test can be used to determine if fetal blood has leaked into the maternal circulation[350]; if positive, administration of anti-Rh_0 immune globulin is recommended for any Rh-negative mother carrying a Rh-positive fetus. By the third trimester the uterus is sufficiently enlarged to compress the inferior vena cava when the patient is positioned supine, thereby impairing venous return to the heart and contributing to hypotension. Left lateral uterine displacement is indicated to treat this problem. If the patient is immobilized on a long spine board because of concern for a thoracic or lumbar spinal fracture, the whole board can be tipped to the left. Because the gravid uterus displays abdominal contents upward, elevating the head of the bed may also be required to improve ventilation.

PEDIATRIC TRAUMA PATIENTS

While the overall proportion of pediatric trauma patients compromises a minority of trauma center admissions, traumatic injuries remain the leading cause of death for children aged 1 to 14 years of age.[2] Motor vehicle crashes, drowning, falls, and burns constitute most of the mechanisms for traumatic injury.[351] A disproportionate number of pediatric trauma patients (~80%) have an associated TBI; such injuries are responsible for more than half of all deaths.[351,352] The initial priorities of trauma assessment and management are the same for children and adults; nonetheless, several particularities must be considered, including differences in airway anatomy, the normal range of physiological variables, and other anatomical differences (see also Chapter 77).[33,352]

Successful management of the pediatric airway constitutes the foundation and initial step in pediatric trauma resuscitation because hypoxia and respiratory compromise are the most common causes of cardiac arrest.[352,353] Preceding airway management, a high degree of caution must be exercised to immobilize the cervical spine in patients with dangerous mechanisms that increase the risk of spinal injuries. Some of these mechanisms include: falls from height greater than one meter or five stairs, axial loading to the head, high-speed and/or rollover motor vehicle crashes, ejection from a motor vehicle, or accidents involving motorized recreational vehicles and bicycle collisions.[354] SCIWORA may be present in up to 35% of children with high-risk mechanisms, and this increased risk precludes clearance of the cervical spine in the same manner as adults.[354,355] Children have a high oxygen consumption rate and react to hypoxia with bradycardia, sometimes even with very brief periods of apnea.[356] The anesthesiologist should be prepared to encounter the following anatomical differences in pediatric patients when managing the airway: a large, protuberant occiput; a small oral cavity; a large tongue; presence of large adenoids and tonsils; and a short and anteriorly displaced larynx.[352,356] These anatomical features can predispose to obstruction, bleeding, and a difficult airway. Pediatric patients should always be considered to have a full stomach, and rapid sequence induction and intubation is the gold standard for airway management.[356] In cases where intubation and mask ventilation are impossible, surgical cricothyroidotomy is considered unsafe in children younger than 12 years of age due to the small size of the cricothyroid membrane and proximity to vocal cords.[33] Needle cricothyroidotomy is preferred as a temporizing solution until other preparations are made. Emergent venous access in children can be challenging; if unable to obtain peripheral access, intraosseous access is recommended.[33] Determination of weight is mandatory to dose medications appropriately and guide fluid and blood component resuscitation. If weight is unknown, a length-based resuscitation tape or specialty stretcher with an integrated scale may be used. Throughout the perioperative period, vigilance for hypothermia should be maintained. Owing to a large surface-to-weight ratio, immature thermoregulation mechanisms, and the effects of general anesthetics, pediatric trauma patients are prone to develop hypothermia.[357] Hypothermia can be particularly detrimental for pediatric trauma patients because up to a 10% decrease in clotting factor activity has been observed for every degree Celsius below normothermia.[357,358]

There are several unique aspects of pediatric trauma resuscitation that anesthesiologists should be familiar with. Due to differences in pediatric coagulation profiles (i.e., decreased levels of procoagulatory proteins and fewer coagulation inhibitors), thromboelastography has an unclear role for diagnosing and treating coagulation disorders.[357] There are no validated scoring systems to determine the need for massive transfusion in children, and a DCR strategy (i.e., transfusion-packed RBCs to FFP to platelets in a 1:1:1 ratio) has not been studied adequately in pediatric patients. Hypotensive resuscitation has not been studied in children and may be hazardous because baseline blood pressures in children closely approximate the lower limits of cerebral autoregulation.[357,359,360] The use of adjuncts such as TXA rFVIIa may have utility in limiting bleeding, but large studies in pediatric patients are presently lacking.[359,361]

OLDER TRAUMA PATIENTS

As the world population continues to increase in age, elderly trauma patients continue to become a growing part of the overall trauma population.[362] Overall mortality among elderly trauma patients is higher than among younger adults; injured patients over age 74 years are at considerably higher risk for mortality.[363] Elderly trauma patients frequently present with lower ISS, but more often sustain severe injuries to the head and lower extremities.[364]

When managing elderly patients with trauma, the effects of aging on physiological function and the impact of preexisting conditions and medications must be carefully considered. Equivalent traumatic injuries will have a markedly more serious outcome in the elderly than in younger victims (see also Chapter 65).[363,365] Elderly patients may be taking multiple medications such as anticoagulants and β-blockers, each of which may worsen traumatic shock by causing severe bleeding and blunting of compensatory responses, respectively. Elderly patients may not have teeth or dentures to help maintain airway patency; edentulous patients are often difficult to mask ventilate, and dentures may loosen and obstruct the airway. Many older adults have decreased chest wall and pulmonary compliance, diminished functional residual capacity, and decreased mucus clearance—all of which have been shown to contribute to a mortality that is double that found in younger patients.[366] In elderly patients with blunt thoracic trauma, each additional rib fracture increases mortality and the risk for pneumonia by over 20%. Intubation may be complicated by degenerative spine changes and kyphoscoliosis. The patient may have a pacemaker or automatic implantable cardioverter-defibrillator in place, as well as artificial cardiac valves or stents. Older adults have thinner skin and are more prone to hypothermia and early development of pressure ulcers. Great care must be taken during intraoperative positioning to avoid secondary pressure injuries. Potential causes of an altered mental status may include delirium, dementia, pain medication, sedatives, increased ICP, and decreased CPP, the latter two of which are most deadly.

A tailored evaluation and management of elderly trauma patients is a crucial factor for improving outcomes.[367] A higher hematocrit, achieved by tighter control of administered fluid, is generally recommended to maintain maximized tissue oxygen delivery. Posttraumatic myocardial dysfunction is a significant risk, particularly if the heart rate is elevated secondary to blood loss, pain, or anxiety. Complex operations or large blood loss should encourage the use of TEE, invasive arterial monitoring, and noninvasive monitors of cardiac output and volume status to guide fluid and inotropic therapy.[163] Older patients will have diminished requirements for postoperative analgesia and may respond to sedative medications with inappropriate agitation.

JEHOVAH'S WITNESS PATIENTS

A trauma patient who refuses blood products requires special management. Early identification and control of hemorrhage are obviously important (see also Chapter 49). Deliberate hypotension to limit bleeding may be helpful. Preoperative and intraoperative phlebotomy should be minimized. The use of salvaged red cells (from intraoperative collection or from a chest drainage system) should be discussed with the patient because some Jehovah's Witness patients will allow the use of salvaged blood provided that the entire system remains in continuity with the vasculature.[368] The use of albumin and other substances derived from circulating proteins should be addressed. Early hemodynamic monitoring is indicated to help determine the role of colloid therapy, vasopressors, and inotropes in maintaining tissue oxygen delivery at the highest possible level. Case reports have described the successful use of rFVIIa and hemoglobin-based oxygen carriers in Jehovah's Witness patients to rapidly correct bleeding and support oxygen delivery, but these agents are not approved for these uses and large case series are not available.[369] In the postacute phase, the use of erythropoietin to promote red cell growth may shorten the period of relative anemia although there is limited evidence.[370]

Postoperative Care

EMERGENCE AND TRACHEAL EXTUBATION

Initial surgery in a trauma patient is followed by a period of monitoring and ongoing treatment in which the anesthesiologist is closely involved, either in the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) or in the ICU (see also Chapter 80). The adequacy of posttraumatic resuscitation must be confirmed, as outlined earlier, and diagnostic studies of the secondary survey completed. Rapid termination of general anesthesia is highly desirable, particularly in patients with an altered level of consciousness or other evidence of TBI before surgery. Change in mental status from the preoperative baseline is an indication for repeat cranial CT and a search for possible metabolic or toxic derangements.

Although neurologic function should be assessed postoperatively, early extubation of a trauma patient should not be taken for granted. Many patients will require continued ventilator support because of CNS trauma, direct pulmonary or chest wall trauma, massive transfusion, upper airway edema, or ongoing intoxication. Box 66.12 lists the criteria for extubation after urgent or emergency trauma surgery. If any doubt exists about the patient's ability to meet these criteria, the patient should be transported to the PACU or ICU with the ETT in place. Appropriate analgesic medication should be administered, with sedation if necessary. Twelve to 24 hours of support allows confirmation of successful resuscitation and surgical repair, hemodynamic equilibration, titration of appropriate analgesia, and resolution of intoxication. Many patients can be tracheally extubated easily and safely at this time; those who cannot are at high risk for the development of MOD—heralded by the development of posttraumatic ARDS—and will usually require days to weeks of subsequent intensive care.

ACUTE PAIN MANAGEMENT

Trauma patients present significant pain management challenges to the clinician because of multiple sites of injury, protracted episodes of care, complicating psychological and

BOX 66.12 Criteria for Operating Room or Postanesthesia Care Unit Extubation of the Trachea in a Trauma Patient

Mental Status

Resolution of intoxication
Able to follow commands
Noncombative
Pain adequately controlled

Airway Anatomy and Reflexes

Appropriate cough and gag
Ability to protect airway from aspiration
No excessive airway edema or instability

Respiratory Mechanics

Adequate tidal volume and respiratory rate
Normal motor strength
Required fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2) less than 0.50

Systemic Stability

Adequately resuscitated (see earlier)
Small likelihood of urgent return to the operating room
Normothermic, without signs of sepsis

emotional issues, and prior or ongoing substance abuse (see also Chapter 81). As with pain management practice in other diseases, trauma patients are frequently undertreated, thus creating a significant source of dissatisfaction. Because trauma patients run the gamut of physiology from healthy young athletes to debilitated older adults, anesthesiologists providing pain management for trauma patients must be prepared for a wide range of needs.

Individual trauma patients will have widely varying requirements for pain medication, so induction of analgesia must be titrated carefully, ideally in a closely monitored environment such as the PACU. Administration of rapidly acting intravenous agents in small doses at frequent intervals until pain relief is achieved is recommended. This allows the practitioner to determine the patient's basal requirements before starting long-acting medications or patient-controlled analgesia. Hypotension in response to analgesics is most commonly indicative of hypovolemia and should prompt a search for occult hemorrhage while further resuscitation occurs.

The need for analgesic medication and the duration of requirement for analgesics will be minimized if a comprehensive emotional support system is available to the patient. Trauma, because of its unexpected nature, carries with it a strongly negative psychological overlay that can have a profound effect on how anatomically based pain is perceived by the brain[371] and on how the patient reacts. After an injury the patient may have legal, financial, and family-based concerns, without the ability to immediately address them. The availability of counselors—religious, financial, or legal—who can help the patient and family with these issues is of enormous benefit. The anesthesiologist can help by communicating to the patient a clear description of the injuries, the probable time required for recovery, and the plan for managing pain throughout the course. The anesthesiologist should refer the patient to counseling services as needed and should be alert to the potential for posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) in any traumatized patient.[372] Referral to an experienced psychiatrist or psychologist is appropriate if PTSD is hindering the patient's recovery.

The need for analgesic medication is also influenced by the schedule of physical therapy prescribed for the patient. In general, the more active a patient can be after traumatic injury, the lower the risk for pulmonary complications, venous thrombosis, and decubitus ulcers. Though painful in the short term, the sooner the patient is mobilized, the lower are the analgesic requirements in the long term. Early mobilization demonstrates to the patient the path to recovery and contributes to an improved emotional state. One of the goals of analgesia, therefore, is provision of adequate medication to facilitate physical therapy without so sedating the patient that participation is impossible.

Neuropathic pain arises when direct injury occurs to a major sensory nerve and is common after spinal cord trauma, traumatic amputations, and major crush injuries. Neuropathic pain is characterized by burning, intermittent electrical shocks, and dysesthesia in the affected dermatomal distribution. Neuropathic pain must be identified because it responds poorly to the analgesics used for somatic pain. This diagnosis should be considered whenever pain control is poor or the patient has a rising requirement for medications unexplained by anatomic injuries. First-line therapy for neuropathic pain has been revolutionized by the widespread use of gabapentin, an antiepileptic drug with very strong specificity for this problem.[373] Gabapentin therapy is typically initiated at a dose of 200 mg three times daily, with daily titration upward to a maximum of 2 to 3 g/day. If neuropathic pain persists, selective regional anesthesia or analgesia may be indicated in an effort to break the cycle of spinal cord receptor recruitment.[374]

Regional analgesia (see also Chapters 45 and 46) provided through an epidural or brachial catheter should be considered for any trauma patient with a potential to benefit from this approach because it will spare the use of systemic opioids and facilitate early mobilization.[375] Epidural analgesia produces high levels of patient satisfaction and improved pulmonary function after major thoracoabdominal and orthopedic surgery in elective populations[376]; this is very likely true for the trauma population as well. Regional techniques are less useful when the patient has multiple sites of injury or when fractures or open wounds make placement difficult. Although epidural placement in anesthetized patients is relatively contraindicated because of the potential for occult SCI, the risk-to-benefit ratio in many trauma patients favors placement during surgery, when general anesthesia facilitates appropriate positioning and patient cooperation.

Summary

Trauma touches all ages and classes of patients, from young and vigorous to older and frail. Because of its high prevalence, practicing anesthesiologists will encounter trauma patients throughout their careers. Increased public recognition of the consequences of injury has sparked interest in trauma research and education, with the result that diagnostic and therapeutic techniques have evolved rapidly in recent years. The anesthesiologist, as a perioperative physician, is in the ideal position to understand and apply these new techniques across the trauma continuum.

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and Dr. Thomas E. Grissom would like to thank Drs. Maureen McCunn and Richard P. Dutton for their contribution to this chapter in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. DiMaggio C, et al. *Injury*. 2016;47:1393.
2. CfDCa Prevention. 10 leading causes of death by age group. United States-2016; 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/injury/images/lc-charts/leading_causes_of_death_age_group_2016_1056w814h.gif.
3. Florence C, et al. *MMWR*. 2015;64:1078.
4. Committee NAoSUaNRCU, (US) oTNAoSUaNRC, Committee on Shock. Accidental Death and Disability: The Neglected Disease of Modern Society. In: (US) NAP, ed. Washington, DC: National Academies Press (US); 1966.
5. Committee on Trauma. *American College of Surgeons: Bul Am Coll Surg*. 1976;61:15.
6. Hoyt DB, et al. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2007;87:21.
7. Bailey J, et al. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2012;92:1009.
8. Committee on Trauma; American College of Surgeons. Chicago, IL: American College of Surgeons; 2014.
9. Hirshon JM, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2016;67:332.
10. Sampalis JS, et al. *J Trauma*. 1995;39:232.
11. Sampalis JS, et al. *J Trauma*. 1999;46:565.
12. MacKenzie EJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:366.
13. Mullins RJ, et al. *JAMA*. 1994;271:1919.
14. He JC, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2016;81:190.
15. Nathens AB, et al. *JAMA*. 2000;283:1990.
16. Smith Jr JS, et al. *J Trauma*. 1990;30:1533.
17. Lansink KW, et al. *World J Surg*. 2013;37:2353.
18. Zarzaur BL, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;72:78.
19. Galvagno SM, et al. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2016;6:50.
20. McCunn MD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:1668.
21. Kuza CM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
22. Olivar H, et al. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2012;115:1196.
23. Geeraedts Jr LM, et al. *Injury*. 2009;40:11.
24. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). *MMWR*. 2011;61(1).
25. Boyle M. *J Trauma Manag Outcomes*. 2007;1:4.
26. Kohn MA, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2004;11(1).
27. Boyle MJ, et al. *Injury*. 2008;39:986.
28. Gongora E, et al. *J Trauma*. 2001;51:854.
29. Lerner EB, et al. *Prehosp Emerg Care*. 2011;15:518.
30. Brown JB, et al. *J Trauma*. 2011;70:38.
31. Haider AH, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2009;153:138.
32. Baet Cotton, et al. *J Trauma*. 2010;69(suppl 1):S33.
33. ACoSCo Trauma. *ATLS® Student Manual*. 10th ed. Chicago, IL: American College of Surgeons; 2018.
34. Teasdale G, et al. *Lancet*. 1974;2:81.
35. Hoyt DB, et al. *J Trauma*. 1994;37:426.
36. Champion HR, et al. *J Trauma*. 1990;30:1356.
37. Clarke JR, et al. *J Trauma*. 2002;52:420.
38. Steele JT, et al. *Am J Surg*. 1997;174:683.
39. Martin M, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2012;204:187.
40. Bourne W. Anaesthesia in war circumstances. In: Winfield SP, ed. New York: F. Hubner & Co; 1942:278–283.
41. Bradley M, et al. *Curr Probl Surg*. 2017;54:315.
42. Plunkett A, et al. *Pain Manag*. 2012;2:231.
43. Penn-Barwell JG, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78:1014.
44. Holcomb JB, et al. *J Trauma*. 2006;60:397.
45. Butler FK, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;79:321.
46. Kotwal RS, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2016;151:15.
47. Galvagno SM, et al. *Mil Med*. 2014;179:612.
48. Hurd WW, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2006;77:631.
49. Beekley AC, et al. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2007;87:157.
50. Gross KR, et al. *Front Line Surgery: A Practical Approach*. Cham, Switzerland: Springer; 2017:761–774.
51. Wilson Jr JE, Barras WP. *US Army Med Dep J*. 2016;62(2-16).
52. Fritz LA, et al. *Mil Med*. 2003;168:304.
53. Baker BC, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2007;25:131.
54. Hagberg CA, et al. *ASA Newsletter*. 2014;78:56.
55. Rotondo MF, et al. *J Trauma*. 1993;34:242.
56. Stene JK, et al. *Trauma Anesthesia*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1991:64.
57. Talucci RC, et al. *Am Surg*. 1988;54:185.
58. Levitan RM, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2006;47:548.
59. Ellis DY, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2007;50:653.
60. Harris T, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2010;81:810.
61. Field JM, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;122:S640.
62. Mayglothling J, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;73:S333.
63. Sellick BA. *Lancet*. 1961;2:404.
64. Ellis DY, et al. *Annals of Emergency Medicine*. 2007;50:653.
65. Thiboutot F, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56:412.
66. Robitaille A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:935.
67. Aoi Y, et al. *J Trauma*. 2011;71:32.
68. Crosby ET. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1293.
69. Johnson KB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:647.
70. Johnson KB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:409.
71. Brown 3rd CA, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2015;65. 363, e361.
72. Hildreth AN, et al. *J Trauma*. 2008;65:573.
73. Warner KJ, et al. *The Journal of Trauma*. 2009;67:45.
74. Bard MR, et al. *Journal of Trauma*. 2006;61:1441.
75. Hinkewich C, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2014;61:650.
76. Jabre P, et al. *Lancet*. 2009;374:293.
77. Amornyotin S. *Int J Anesthesiol Res*. 2014;2:42.
78. Wang X, et al. *J Anesth*. 2014;28:821.
79. Himmelseher S, Durieux ME. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:524.
80. Schonenberg M, et al. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 2005;182:420.
81. Schonenberg M, et al. *J Psychopharmacol*. 2008;22:493.
82. McGhee LL, et al. *Mil Med*. 2014;179:41.
83. Dong TT, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:491.
84. Sharar SR. *ASA Newsletter*. 2002;66:9.
85. Gronert GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43:89.
86. Kelly RE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:948.
87. Kovarik WD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:469.
88. Sorensen MK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:682.
89. Tran DT, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;10:CD002788.
90. Patanwala AE, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2011;18:10.
91. Jain U, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:199.
92. Klein L, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2016;23:e2.
93. Subramanian A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2016;63:275.
94. Wong DT, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59:704.
95. Peitzman AB. *Pathophysiologic foundation of critical care*; 1993:161.
96. Shires GT, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1972;176:288.
97. Peitzman AB, et al. *Curr Probl Surg*. 1995;32:925.
98. Runciman WB, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1984;12:193.
99. Jarrar D, et al. *Int J Mol Med*. 1999;4:575.
100. Ba ZF, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28:2837.
101. *Bronshvag MM: Stroke*. 1980;11:50.
102. Peterson CG, et al. *Am J Surg*. 1963;106:233.
103. Collins JA. *Prog Clin Biol Res*. 1982;108:5.
104. Troyer DA. *J Lab Clin Med*. 1987;110:379.
105. Lefer AM, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1970;218:1423.
106. Dark PM, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2000;26:173.
107. Thorne J, et al. *J Trauma*. 1989;29:451.
108. Martin BA, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1981;50:1306.
109. Demling R, et al. *Curr Probl Surg*. 1993;30:345.
110. Horovitz JH, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1974;108:349.
111. Fulton RL, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1978;25:500.
112. Reilly PM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1993;21:S55.
113. Redan JA, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1990;211:663.
114. Chun K, et al. *Shock*. 1994;1:3.
115. Maitra SR, et al. *Circ Shock*. 1992;38:14.
116. Peitzman AB, et al. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1985;161:419.
117. Aird WC. *Endothelial Cells in Health and Diseases*. 2005:1.
118. Woodcock TE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:384.

119. Johansson PI, et al. *Medical Hypotheses*. 2010;75:564.
120. Haywood-Watson RJ, et al. *PLoS One*. 2011;6:e23530.
121. Kozar RA, et al. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2011;112:1289.
122. Ostrowski SR, Johansson PI. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;73:60.
123. Becker BF, et al. *Cardiovasc Res*. 2010;87:300.
124. Reitsma S, et al. *Pflugers Arch*. 2007;454:345.
125. Niles SE, et al. *J Trauma*. 2008;64:1459.
126. MacLeod JB, et al. *J Trauma*. 2003;55:39.
127. Davenport R. *Transfusion*. 2013;53:23S.
128. Cohen MJ, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;255:379.
129. Brohi K, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2007;13:680.
130. Johansson PI, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2011;254:194.
131. Davenport R, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39:2652.
132. Holcomb JB, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256:476.
133. Frith D, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2010;8:1919.
134. Schöchl H, et al. *J Trauma*. 2009;67:125.
135. Cotton BA, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;73:365.
136. Raza I, et al. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2013;11:307.
137. Steurer MP, et al. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2014;4:200.
138. Koscielny J, et al. *Clin Appl Thromb Hemost*. 2004;10:195.
139. Haas T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114:217.
140. Stensballe J, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2014;27:212.
141. Da Luz LT, et al. *Crit Care*. 2014;18:518.
142. Solomon C, et al. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*. 2016;76:503.
143. Stern SA, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1993;22:155.
144. Enderby GEH. *Hypotensive Anaesthesia*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 1985.
145. Shaftan GW, et al. *Surgery*. 1965;58:851.
146. Capone A, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1995;29:143.
147. Owens TM, et al. *J Trauma*. 1995;39:200.
148. Riddez L, et al. *J Trauma*. 1998;44:433.
149. Sakles JC, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1997;29:392.
150. Burris D, et al. *J Trauma*. 1999;46:216.
151. Shoemaker WC, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24:S12.
152. Morrison CA, et al. *J Trauma*. 2011;70:652.
153. Deleted in proofs.
154. Schreiber MA, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78:687.
155. Bickell WH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1994;331:1105.
156. Demetriades D, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1996;131:133.
157. Dutton RP, et al. *J Trauma*. 2002;52:1141.
158. Hambly PR, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1996;31:127.
159. Carrick MM, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2016.
160. Voiglio EJ, et al. *Damage Control Management in Polytrauma*. Cham, Switzerland: Springer; 2017:57–70.
161. Siegel JH, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1991;19:1252.
162. Brain TF, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:S1.
163. Scalea TM, et al. *J Trauma*. 1990;30:129.
164. Novak L, et al. *J Trauma*. 1999;47:834.
165. Cosgriff N, et al. *J Trauma*. 1997;42:857.
166. Engels PT, et al. *J Trauma*. 2011;71:S448.
167. Eddy VA, et al. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2000;80:845.
168. Beekley AC. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:S267.
169. Holcomb JB, et al. *J Trauma*. 2007;62:307.
170. Cotton BA, et al. *J Trauma*. 2009;66:41.
171. Fries D, et al. *Curr Opin in Anaesthes*. 2009;22:267.
172. Schochl H, et al. *Scand J Trauma, Res Emer Med*. 2012;20:15.
173. Kashuk JL, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2010;251:604.
174. Borgman MA, et al. *J Trauma*. 2007;63:805.
175. de Biasi AR, et al. *Transfusion*. 2011;51:1925.
176. Holcomb JB, et al. *JAMA*. 2015;313:471.
177. Kashuk JL, et al. *Annals of Surgery*. 2010;252:434.
178. Theusinger OM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1003.
179. CRASH-2 trial collaborators, et al. *Lancet*. 2010;376:23.
180. Collaborators C-T. *Lancet*. 2011;377:1096.
181. Morrison JJ, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2012;147:113.
182. Thomas GO, et al. *J Trauma*. 2007;62:564.
183. Boffard KD, et al. *J Trauma*. 2005;59:8.
184. Hauser CJ, et al. *J Trauma*. 2010;69:489.
185. Saracoglu A, et al. *Trends in Anaesth and Crit Care*; 2018.
186. Fries D. *Transfusion*. 2013;53:91S.
187. Curry N, et al. *Crit Care*. 2018;22:164.
188. Novak L, et al. *J Trauma*. 1999;47:834.
189. Blow O, et al. *J Trauma*. 1999;47:964.
190. Chang MC, et al. *J Trauma*. 1998;45:470.
191. McKinley BA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:1869.
192. McKinley BA, et al. *J Trauma*. 2000;48:637.
193. Michard F. *Anesth*. 2005;103:419.
194. Abramson D, et al. *J Trauma*. 1993;35:584.
195. Rhee P, et al. *J Trauma*. 1998;44:313.
196. Deb S, et al. *J Trauma*. 1999;46:582.
197. Dubick MA, Wade CE. *J Trauma*. 1994;36:323.
198. Mattox KL, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1991;213:482.
199. Doyle JA, et al. *J Trauma*. 2001;50:367.
200. Perel P, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;6:CD000567.
201. Ogilvie MP, et al. *J Trauma*. 2011;70:S19.
202. Lissauer ME, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2011;202:53.
203. Perner A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:124.
204. Myburgh JA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:1901.
205. Velmahos GC, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1998;133:947.
206. Rotondo MF, et al. *J Trauma*. 1993;35:375.
207. Dutton RP, et al. *J Trauma*. 2005;59:1445.
208. MacKay EJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:895.
209. McGee DC, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348:1123.
210. Wu X, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31:195.
211. Marion DW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;336:540.
212. Dunham CM, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1991;21:207.
213. Shackford SR, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1993;128:571.
214. Acosta JA, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1998;186:528.
215. Taylor CA, et al. *MMWR*. 2017;66:1.
216. Selvarajah S, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2014;31:228.
217. Hinson HE, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78:184.
218. Hoffmann M, et al. *Brit J Surg*. 2012;99:122.
219. DeKosky ST, et al. *Minnesota Med*. 2010;93:46.
220. Kalb DC, et al. *Surgery*. 1998;124:739.
221. Lefering R, et al. *J Trauma*. 2008;65:1036.
222. Carney N, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2017;80:6.
223. Chesnut RM, et al. *J Trauma*. 1993;34:216.
224. Davis DP, et al. *J Trauma*. 2005;58:933.
225. Bochicchio GV, et al. *J Trauma*. 2003;54:307.
226. Bernard SA, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2010;252:959.
227. McCarthy MC, et al. *Surgery*. 2009;146:585.
228. Stiefel MF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;103:805.
229. Bohman LE, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;14:361.
230. Martini RP, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2009;111:644.
231. Narotam PK, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2009;111:672.
232. Zygun DA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:654.
233. Bukur M, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2012;204:697.
234. Arbabi S, et al. *J Trauma*. 2007;62:56.
235. Schroeppel TJ, et al. *J Trauma*. 2010;69:776.
236. Cotton BA, et al. *J Trauma*. 2007;62:26.
237. McGuire G, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25:1059.
238. Huynh T, et al. *J Trauma*. 2002;53:488.
239. Oddo M, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2010;67:338.
240. Mascia L. *Neurocrit Care*. 2009;11:417.
241. Muizelaar JP, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1991;75:731.
242. Chesnut RM, et al. *J Trauma*. 1993;34:216.
243. Utter GH, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2011;28:155.
244. Aarabi B, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2006;104:469.
245. Soukiasian HJ, et al. *Am Surg*. 2002;68:1066.
246. Joseph DK, et al. *J Trauma*. 2004;57:687.
247. Scalea TM, et al. *J Trauma*. 2007;62:647.
248. Clasen RA, et al. *Arch Neurol*. 1968;19:472.
249. Rosomoff HL, et al. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1960;110:27.
250. Marion DW, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1993;79:354.
251. Clifton GL, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 1993;10:263.
252. Clifton GL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:556.
253. Cottenceau V, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2011;28. 2003.
254. Sakellaridis N, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2011;114:545.
224. Brain TF, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:S1.
255. Pang D, et al. *J Trauma*. 1989;29:654.
256. Tator CH, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1991;75:15.
257. Patel MB, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78:430.
258. Como JJ, et al. *J Trauma*. 2005;59:912.
259. Harrop JS, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2004;100:20.
260. Fassett DR, et al. *J Neurosurg Spine*. 2007;7:277.
261. Bracken MB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;322:1405.
262. Bracken MB, et al. *JAMA*. 1997;277:1597.
263. Hurlbert RJ. *J Neurosurg*. 2000;93:1.
264. Matsumoto T, et al. *Spine*. 2001;26:426.
265. Short DJ, et al. *Spinal Cord*. 2000;38:273.
266. Hurlbert RJ, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2013;72:93.
267. Scannell G, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1993;128:903.

268. Fehlings MG, et al. *PLoS One*. 2012;7:e32037.
269. Mattiassich G, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2017;34:3362.
270. Ryken TC, et al. *Neurosurg*. 2013;72:84.
271. Urquhart DM, et al. *ANZ J Surg*. 2006;76:600.
272. Castillo RC, et al. *Pain*. 2006;124:321.
273. Rispoli DM, et al. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2012;20:S84.
274. Bochicchio GV, et al. *Am Surg*. 2005;71:171.
275. Scalea TM. *J Trauma*. 2008;65:253.
276. Riska EB, et al. *Injury*. 1976;8:110.
277. Roberts KC, et al. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2015;23:131.
278. Lewis PM, et al. *Bone Joint J*. 2016;98-B:1573.
279. Ftouh S, et al. *BMJ*. 2011;342:d3304.
280. Ryan DJ, et al. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2015;29:343.
281. Fu MC, et al. *Bone Joint J*. 2017;99-B:1216.
282. Bretherton CP, et al. *Bone Joint J*. 2015;97-B:104.
283. Nyholm AM, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2015;97:1333.
284. Pincus D, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;318:1994.
285. Cantu RV, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2014;76:1433.
286. Parker MJ, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2000:CD000521.
287. Neuman MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:72.
288. Kellam JF. *Orthopaedic Knowledge Update: Trauma*. Rosemont, Ill: Orthopaedic Trauma Association, American of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 1996:281.
289. Porter SE, et al. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2011;25:371.
290. Routt CML. *Orthopaedic Knowledge Update: Trauma*. Rosemont, Ill: Orthopaedic Trauma Association, American of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 1996:241.
291. Cothren CC, et al. *J Trauma*. 2007;62:834.
292. Scalea TM, et al. *Trauma*. 4th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2000:807.
293. Burkhardt M, et al. *Crit Care*. 2012;16:R163.
294. Agolini SF, et al. *J Trauma*. 1997;43:395.
295. Mauffrey C, et al. *Orthopedics*. 2012;35:877.
296. Chelly JE, et al. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2003;17:362.
297. Egol KA, et al. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2012;26:545.
298. Strauss JE, et al. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2012;26:67.
299. Mason SE, et al. *J Alzheimers Dis*. 2010;22(suppl 3):67.
300. Wu CL, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29:257.
301. Koessler MJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:49.
302. Eriksson EA, et al. *J Trauma*. 2011;71:312.
303. Hutchins PM, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Br*. 1985;67:835.
304. Lindeque BG, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Br*. 1987;69:128.
304. Knudson MM, et al. 4th ed. *Trauma*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2000:879.
305. Habashi NM, et al. *Injury*. 2006;37(suppl 4):S68.
306. Dunn RH, et al. *Int Orthop*. 2017;41:1729.
307. Matsen FA, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 1980;62:286.
308. Rorabeck CH. *J Bone Joint Surg Br*. 1984;66:93.
309. McQueen MM, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Br*. 2000;82:200.
310. Duckworth AD, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2012;94:e63.
311. Mar GJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:3.
312. Kragh Jr JF, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2013;74:259.
313. Michaelson M. *World J Surg*. 1992;16:899.
314. Holt SG, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2001;27:803.
315. Chavez LO, et al. *Crit Care*. 2016;20:135.
316. McCunn M, et al. *Int J Artif Organs*. 2006;29:166.
317. Gettings LG, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1999;25:805.
318. Hunter S, et al. *Adv Skin Wound Care*. 2007;20:90.
319. Weber S, et al. *Anesth KAnalg*. 1988;67:703.
320. Chen C, et al. *Ann Plast Surg*. 2010;65:28.
321. Tong DC, et al. *Br J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2016;54:8.
322. Roepke C, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2016;67:578.
323. Salhanick M, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2011;202:817.
324. Harrison HB, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2014;208:1078.
325. Daurat A, et al. *Injury*. 2016;47:147.
326. Matsushima K, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2017;82:927.
327. Baumgartner F, et al. *Am Surg*. 1996;62:967.
328. Long DM, et al. *J Trauma*. 1968;8:715.
329. Cryer HG, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1990;212:197.
330. Nurozler F, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2001;71:364.
331. Ahmad SB, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2017;82:587.
332. Symbas PN, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1992;54:177.
333. Conroy C, et al. *J Trauma*. 2007;62:1462.
334. Fox N, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78:136.
335. Galli R, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1998;65:461.
336. Pate JW, et al. *World J.Surg*. 1999;23:59.
337. Shulman M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61:569.
338. Carrier FM, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56:230.
339. Galvagno Jr SM, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2016;81:936.
340. Antonelli M, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;339:429.
341. Beltrame F, et al. *Monaldi Arch. Chest Dis*. 1999;54:109.
342. Feliciano DV, et al. *Surg Clin North Am*. 1999;79:1417.
343. O'Connor J, et al. *J R Army Med Corps*. 2009;155:185.
344. Lamb CM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:242.
345. Jain V, et al. *JOb and Gyn Canada*. 2015;37:553.
346. Deshpande NA, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;217:590 e591-590 e599.
347. Wang PI, et al. *Am J Roentgenol*. 2012;198:778.
348. Palanisamy A. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2012;21:152.
349. Nanda K, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;3:CD003518.
350. Goodmanson NW, et al. *Surgery*. 2012;152:668.
351. Govind SK, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2018.
352. Schmitz B, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesth*. 2002;15:187.
353. Cottrell DJ, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesth*. 2001;14:233.
354. Cullen A, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24:711.
355. Vanderhave KL, et al. *J Amer Acad Ortho Surg*. 2011;19:319.
356. Ivashkov Y, et al. *Int J Crit Illn Inj Sci*. 2012;2:143.
357. Clebone A. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2018;31:201.
358. Watts DD, et al. *J Trauma*. 1998;44:846.
359. Gilley M, et al. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2018;30:1.
360. Michelet D, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25:681.
361. Urban D, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6:e012947.
362. Bonne S, et al. *Clin Geriatr Med*. 2013;29:137.
363. Hashmi A, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2014;76:894.
364. Brown CVR, et al. *Am Surg*. 2016;82:1055.
365. Joseph B, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2014;190:662.
366. Bulger EM, et al. *J Trauma*. 2000;48:1040.
367. Joyce MF, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2015;28:145.
368. Lawson T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:676.
369. Gannon CJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30:1893.
370. McConachie SM, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2018:1060028018766656.
371. Beecher HK. *JAMA*. 1956;161:1609.
372. Breslau N. *Can J Psychiatry*. 2002;47:923.
373. Backonja M, et al. *Clin Ther*. 2003;25:81.
374. Forouzanfar T, et al. *Eur J Pain*. 2002;6:105.
375. Samet RE, et al. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2018;8:94.
376. Holte K, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2002;68:157.

References

1. DiMaggio C, Ayoung-Chee P, Shinseki M, et al. Traumatic injury in the United States: in-patient epidemiology 2000-2011. *Injury*. 2016;47(7):1393–1403.
2. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). 10 leading causes of death by age group, United States-2016; 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/injury/images/lc-charts/leading_causes_of_death_age_group_2016_1056w814h.gif. Accessed 26 July, 2018.
3. Florence C, Haegerich T, Simon T, Zhou C, Luo F. Estimated lifetime medical and work-loss costs of emergency department-treated nonfatal injuries--United States, 2013. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. 2015;64(38):1078–1082.
4. Committee NAoSUaNRCU, (US) oTNAoSUaNRC, Committee on Shock. Accidental death and disability: the neglected disease of modern society. In: *(US) NAP*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press (US); 1966.
5. Committee on Trauma; American College of Surgeons. Optimal hospital resources for care of the seriously injured. *Bul Am Coll Surg*. 1976;61:15–22.
6. Hoyt DB, Coimbra R. Trauma systems. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2007;87:21–35.
7. Bailey J, Trexler S, Murdock A, Hoyt D. Verification and regionalization of trauma systems: the impact of these efforts on trauma care in the United States. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2012;92(4):1009–1024. ix-x.
8. Committee on Trauma; American College of Surgeons. *Resources for Optimal Care of the Injured Patient*. Chicago, IL: American College of Surgeons; 2014.
9. Hirshon JM, Galvagno Jr SM, Comer A, et al. Maryland's helicopter emergency medical services experience from 2001 to 2011: system improvements and patients' outcomes. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2016;67(3):332-340 e333.
10. Sampalis JSLA, Boukas S, Tamim H, et al. Trauma center designation: initial impact on trauma-related mortality. *J Trauma*. 1995;39(2):232–237.
11. Sampalis JSDR, Lavoie A, Fréchette P, et al. Trauma care regionalization: a process-outcome evaluation. *J Trauma*. 1999;46(4):565–579.
12. MacKenzie EJ, Rivara FP, Jurkovich GJ, et al. A national evaluation of the effect of trauma-center care on mortality. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2006;354(4):366–378.
13. Mullins RJ, Veum-Stone J, Helfand M, et al. Outcome of hospitalized injured patients after institution of a trauma system in an urban area. *JAMA*. 1994;271(24):1919–1924.
14. He JC, Kreiner LA, Sajankila N, Allen DL, Claridge JA. Performance of a regional trauma network: a state-wide analysis. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2016;81(1):190–195.
15. Nathens AB, Jurkovich GJ, Cummings P, Rivara FP, Maier RV. The effect of organized systems of trauma care on motor vehicle crash mortality. *JAMA*. 2000;283(15):1990–1994.
16. Smith JS Jr, Young WW, Macioce DP. Do trauma centers improve outcome over non-trauma centers: the evaluation of regional trauma care using discharge abstract data and patient management categories. *J Trauma*. 1990;30(12):1533–1538.
17. Lansink KW, Gunning AC, Spijkers AT, Leenen LP. Evaluation of trauma care in a mature level I trauma center in the Netherlands: outcomes in a Dutch mature level I trauma center. *World J Surg*. 2013;37(10):2353–2359.
18. Zarzaur BL, Croce MA, Fabian TC. Play or pay: a financial model for trauma care in a regional trauma system. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;72(1):78–83. discussion 83-75.
19. Galvagno SM, Sikorski RA, Stephens C, Grissom TE. Initial evaluation and triage of the injured patient: mechanisms of injury and triggers for operating room versus emergency department stabilization. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2016;6:50–58.
20. McCunn RP, Dagal A, Varon AJ, et al. Trauma, critical care, and emergency care anesthesiology: a new paradigm for the "acute care" anesthesiologist? *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(6):1668–1673.
21. Kuza CM, Vavilala MS, Speck RM, Dutton RP, McCunn M. Use of survey and delphi process to understand trauma anesthesia care practices. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
22. Olivar H, Sharar SR, Stephens LS, Posner KL, Domino KB. Similar liability for trauma and nontrauma surgical anesthesia: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2012;115(5):1196–1203.
23. Geeraedts Jr LM, Kaasjager HA, van Vugt AB, Frolke JP. Exsanguination in trauma: a review of diagnostics and treatment options. *Injury*. 2009;40(1):11–20.
24. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Guidelines for field triage of injured patients. Recommendations of the national expert panel on field triage, 2011. *MMWR*. 2011;61(1):1–20.
25. Boyle M. Is mechanism of injury alone in the prehospital setting a predictor of major trauma—a review of the literature. *J Trauma Manag Outcomes*. 2007;1:4.
26. Kohn MA, Hammel JM, Bretz SW, Stangby A. Trauma team activation criteria as predictors of patient disposition from the emergency department. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2004;11(1):1–9.
27. Boyle MJ, Smith EC, Archer F. Is mechanism of injury alone a useful predictor of major trauma? *Injury*. 2008;39(9):986–992.
28. Gongora E, Acosta JA, Wang DS, Brandenburg K, Jablonski K, Jordan MH. Analysis of motor vehicle ejection victims admitted to a level I trauma center. *J Trauma*. 2001;51(5):854–859.
29. Lerner EB, Shah MN, Cushman JT, et al. Does mechanism of injury predict trauma center need? *Prehosp Emerg Care*. 2011;15(4):518–525.
30. Brown JB, Stassen NA, Bankey PE, Sangosanya AT, Cheng JD, Gestring ML. Mechanism of injury and special consideration criteria still matter: an evaluation of the National Trauma Triage Protocol. *J Trauma*. 2011;70(1):38–44; discussion 44-35.
31. Haider AH, Chang DC, Haut ER, Cornwell 3rd EE, Efron DT. Mechanism of injury predicts patient mortality and impairment after blunt trauma. *J Surg Res*. 2009;153(1):138–142.
32. Cotton BA, Dossett LA, Haut ER, et al. Multicenter validation of a simplified score to predict massive transfusion in trauma. *J Trauma*. 2010;69(suppl 1):S33–39.
33. ACoSCo Trauma. *ATLS® Student Manual*. 10th ed. Chicago, IL: American College of Surgeons; 2018.
34. Teasdale G, Jennett B. Assessment of coma and impaired consciousness. A practical scale. *Lancet*. 1974;2(7872):81–84.
35. Hoyt DB, Bulger EM, Knudson MM, et al. Death in the operating room: an analysis of a multi-center experience. *J Trauma*. 1994;37(3):426–432.
36. Champion HR, Copes WS, Sacco WJ, et al. The major trauma outcome study: establishing national norms for trauma care. *J Trauma*. 1990;30(11):1356–1365.
37. Clarke JR, Trooskin SZ, Doshi PJ, Greenwald L, Mode CJ. Time to laparotomy for intra-abdominal bleeding from trauma does affect survival for delays up to 90 minutes. *J Trauma*. 2002;52(3):420–425.
38. Steele JT, Hoyt DB, Simons RK, Winchell RJ, Garcia J, Fortlage D. Is operating room resuscitation a way to save time? *Am J Surg*. 1997;174(6):683–687.
39. Martin M, Izenberg S, Cole F, Bergstrom S, Long W. A decade of experience with a selective policy for direct to operating room trauma resuscitations. *Am J Surg*. 2012;204(2):187–192.
40. Bourne W. Anaesthesia in war circumstances. In: Winfield SP, ed. New York: F. Hubner & Co; 1942:278–283.
41. Bradley M, Nealeigh M, Oh JS, Rothberg P, Elster EA, Rich NM. Combat casualty care and lessons learned from the past 100 years of war. *Curr Probl Surg*. 2017;54(6):315–351.
42. Plunkett A, Turabi A, Wilkinson I. Battlefield analgesia: a brief review of current trends and concepts in the treatment of pain in US military casualties from the conflicts in Iraq and Afghanistan. *Pain-Management*. 2012;2(3):231–238.
43. Penn-Barwell JG, Roberts SA, Midwinter MJ, Bishop JR. Improved survival in UK combat casualties from Iraq and Afghanistan: 2003-2012. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78(5):1014–1020.
44. Holcomb JB, Stansbury LG, Champion HR, Wade C, Bellamy RF. Understanding combat casualty care statistics. *Journal of Trauma*. 2006;60(2):397–401.
45. Butler FK, Smith DJ, Carmona RH. Implementing and preserving the advances in combat casualty care from Iraq and Afghanistan throughout the US Military. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;79(2):321–326.
46. Kotwal RS, Howard JT, Orman JA, et al. The effect of a golden hour policy on the morbidity and mortality of combat casualties. *JAMA Surg*. 2016;151(1):15–24.
47. Galvagno SM, Dubose JJ, Grissom TE, et al. The epidemiology of critical care air transport team operations in contemporary warfare. *Mil Med*. 2014;179(6):612–618.
48. Hurd WW, Montminy RJ, De Lorenzo RA, Burd LT, Goldman BS, Loftus TJ. Physician roles in aeromedical evacuation: current practices in USAF operations. *Aviation Space and Environmental Medicine*. 2006;77(6):631–638.

49. Beekley AC, Starnes BW, Sebesta JA. Lessons learned from modern military surgery. *Surgical Clinics of North America*. 2007;87(1):157–184. vii.
50. Gross KR, Eastridge B, Bailey JA, Knudson MM. Trauma system development and the joint trauma system. In: Martin MJ, Beekley AC, Eckert MJ, eds. *Front Line Surgery: A Practical Approach*. Cham, Switzerland: Springer; 2017:761–774.
51. Wilson Jr JE, Barras WP. Advances in anesthesia delivery in the deployed setting. *US Army Med Dep J*. 2016;(2-16):62–65.
52. Fritz LA, Kay JK, Garrett N. Description of the oxygen concentration delivered using different combinations of oxygen reservoir volumes and supplemental oxygen flow rates with the Ohmeda Universal Portable Anesthesia Complete draw-over vaporizer system. *Military medicine*. 2003;168(4):304–311.
53. Baker BC, Buckenmaier C, Narine N, Compeggie ME, Brand GJ, Mongan PD. Battlefield anesthesia: advances in patient care and pain management. *AnesthesiolClin*. 2007;25(1):131–145.
54. Hagberg CA, Kaslow O. Difficult airway management algorithm in trauma updated by COTEP. *ASA Newsletter*. 2014;78(9):56–60.
55. Rotondo MF, McGonigal MD, Schwab CW, Kauder DR, Hanson CW. Urgent paralysis and intubation of trauma patients: is it safe? *Journal of Trauma*. 1993;34(2):242–246.
56. Stene JK, Grande CM, Barton CR. Airway management for the trauma patient. In: Stene JK, Grande CM, eds. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1991:64–99.
57. Talucci RC, Shaikh KA, Schwab CW. Rapid sequence induction with oral endotracheal intubation in the multiply injured patient. *American Surgeon*. 1988;54(4):185–187.
58. Levitan RM, Kinkle WC, Levin WJ, Everett WW. Laryngeal view during laryngoscopy: a randomized trial comparing cricoid pressure, backward-upward-rightward pressure, and bimanual laryngoscopy. *Annals of Emergency Medicine*. 2006;47(6):548–555.
59. Ellis DY, Harris T, Zideman D. Cricoid pressure in emergency department rapid sequence tracheal intubations: a risk-benefit analysis. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2007;50(6):653–665.
60. Harris T, Ellis DY, Foster L, Lockey D. Cricoid pressure and laryngeal manipulation in 402 pre-hospital emergency anaesthetics: essential safety measure or a hinderance to rapid safe intubation? *Resuscitation*. 2010;81(7):810–816.
61. Field JM, Hazinski MF, Sayre MR, et al. Part 1: executive summary: 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*. 2010;122(18 suppl 3):S640–656.
62. Mayglothling J, Duane TM, Gibbs M, et al. Emergency intubation immediately following traumatic injury: an Eastern Association for the Surgery of Trauma practice management guideline. *JTraumaAcuteCareSurg*. 2012;73:S333–S340.
63. Sellick BA. Cricoid pressure to control regurgitation of stomach contents during induction of anaesthesia. *Lancet*. 1961;2:404–406.
64. Ellis DY, Harris T, Zideman D. Cricoid pressure in emergency department rapid sequence tracheal intubations: a risk-benefit analysis. *Annals of Emergency Medicine*. 2007;50(6):653–665.
65. Thiboutot F, Nicole PC, Trepanier CA, Turgeon AF, Lessard MR. Effect of manual in-line stabilization of the cervical spine in adults on the rate of difficult orotracheal intubation by direct laryngoscopy: a randomized controlled trial. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2009;56(6):412–418.
66. Robitaille A, Williams SR, Tremblay MH, Guilbert F, Theriault M, Drolet P. Cervical spine motion during tracheal intubation with manual in-line stabilization: direct laryngoscopy versus GlideScope videolaryngoscopy. *Anesthesia & Analgesia*. 2008;106(3):935–941.
67. Aoi Y, Inagawa G, Hashimoto K, et al. Airway scope laryngoscopy under manual inline stabilization and cervical collar immobilization: a crossover in vivo cinefluoroscopic study. *Journal of Trauma-Injury Infection & Critical Care*. 2011;71(1):32–36.
68. Crosby ET. Airway management in adults after cervical spine trauma. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(6):1293–1318.
69. Johnson KB, Egan TD, Kern SE, McJames SW, Cluff ML, Pace NL. Influence of hemorrhagic shock followed by crystalloid resuscitation on propofol: a pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(3):647–659.
70. Johnson KB, Egan TD, Kern SE, et al. The influence of hemorrhagic shock on propofol: a pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(2):409–420.
71. Brown 3rd CA, Bair AE, Pallin DJ, Walls RM, Investigators NI. Techniques, success, and adverse events of emergency department adult intubations. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2015;65(4). 363-370 e361.
72. Hildreth AN, Mejia VA, Maxwell RA, Smith PW, Dart BW, Barker DE. Adrenal suppression following a single dose of etomidate for rapid sequence induction: a prospective randomized study. *J Trauma*. 2008;65(3):573–579.
73. Warner KJ, Cuschieri J, Jurkovich GJ, Bulger EM. Single-dose etomidate for rapid sequence intubation may impact outcome after severe injury. *The Journal of trauma*. 2009;67(1):45–50.
74. Bard MR, Goettler CE, Toschlog EA, et al. Alcohol withdrawal syndrome: turning minor injuries into a major problem. *Journal of Trauma*. 2006;61(6):1441–1445.
75. Hinkewich C, Green R. The impact of etomidate on mortality in trauma patients. *Can J Anaesth*. 2014;61(7):650–655.
76. Jabre P, Combes X, Lapostolle F, et al. Etomidate versus ketamine for rapid sequence intubation in acutely ill patients: a multicentre randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2009;374(9686):293–300.
77. Amornyotin S. Ketamine: pharmacology revisited. *Int J Anesthesiol Res*. 2014;2:42–44.
78. Wang X, Ding X, Tong Y, et al. Ketamine does not increase intracranial pressure compared with opioids: meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Anesth*. 2014;28(6):821–827.
79. Himmelseher S, Durieux ME. Revising a dogma: ketamine for patients with neurological injury?. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(2):524–534. table of contents.
80. Schonenberg M, Reichwald U, Domes G, Badke A, Hautzinger M. Effects of peritraumatic ketamine medication on early and sustained posttraumatic stress symptoms in moderately injured accident victims. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 2005;182(3):420–425.
81. Schonenberg M, Reichwald U, Domes G, Badke A, Hautzinger M. Ketamine aggravates symptoms of acute stress disorder in a naturalistic sample of accident victims. *J Psychopharmacol*. 2008;22(5):493–497.
82. McGhee LL, Maani CV, Garza TH, Slater TM, Petz LN, Fowler M. The intraoperative administration of ketamine to burned U.S. service members does not increase the incidence of post-traumatic stress disorder. *Mil Med*. 2014;179(8 suppl):41–46.
83. Dong TT, Mellin-Olsen J, Gelb AW. Ketamine: a growing global health-care need. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(4):491–493.
84. Sharar SR. Does anesthetic care for trauma present increased risk for patient injury and professional liability? A closed claims analysis. *ASA Newsletter*. 2002;66:9–10.
85. Gronert GA, Theye RA. Pathophysiology of hyperkalemia induced by succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43(1):89–99.
86. Kelly RE, Dinner M, Turner LS, Haik B, Abramson DH, Daines P. Succinylcholine increases intraocular pressure in the human eye with the extraocular muscles detached. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79(5):948–952.
87. Kovarik WD, Mayberg TS, Lam AM, Mathisen TL, Winn HR. Succinylcholine does not change intracranial pressure, cerebral blood flow velocity, or the electroencephalogram in patients with neurologic injury. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1994;78(3):469–473.
88. Sorensen MK, Bretlau C, Gatke MR, Sorensen AM, Rasmussen LS. Rapid sequence induction and intubation with rocuronium-sugammadex compared with succinylcholine: a randomized trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(4):682–689.
89. Tran DT, Newton EK, Mount VA, Lee JS, Wells GA, Perry JJ. Rocuronium versus succinylcholine for rapid sequence induction intubation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;10:CD002788.
90. Patanwala AE, Stahle SA, Sakles JC, Erstad BL. Comparison of succinylcholine and rocuronium for first-attempt intubation success in the emergency department. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2011;18(1):10–14.
91. Jain U, McCunn M, Smith CE, Pittet JF. Management of the Traumatized Airway. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(1):199–206.
92. Klein L, Paetow G, Kornas R, Reardon R. Technique for exchanging the king laryngeal tube for an endotracheal tube. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2016;23(3):e2.
93. Subramanian A, Garcia-Marcinkiewicz AG, Brown DR, Brown MJ, Diedrich DA. Definitive airway management of patients presenting with a pre-hospital inserted King LT(S)-D laryngeal tube airway: a historical cohort study. *Can J Anaesth*. 2016;63(3):275–282.
94. Wong DT, Yang JJ, Mak HY, Jagannathan N. Use of intubation introducers through a supraglottic airway to facilitate tracheal intubation: a brief review. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59(7):704–715.

95. Peitzman AB. Hypovolemic shock. In: Pinsky MR, Dhainaut JFA, eds. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1993:161–169.
96. Shires GT, Cunningham JN, Backer CR, et al. Alterations in cellular membrane function during hemorrhagic shock in primates. *Annals of Surgery*. 1972;176(3):288–295.
97. Peitzman AB, Billiar TR, Harbrecht BG, Kelly E, Udekwu AO, Simmons RL. Hemorrhagic shock. *Current problems in surgery*. 1995;32(11):925–1002.
98. Runciman WB, Skowronski GA. Pathophysiology of haemorrhagic shock. *Anaesthesia and Intensive Care*. 1984;12:193–205. 0310-057; 3.
99. Jarrar D, Chaudry IH, Wang P. Organ dysfunction following hemorrhage and sepsis: mechanisms and therapeutic approaches (Review). *International journal of molecular medicine*. 1999;4(6):575–583.
100. Ba ZF, Wang P, Koo DJ, Cioffi WG, Bland KI, Chaudry IH. Alterations in tissue oxygen consumption and extraction after trauma and hemorrhagic shock. *Critical Care Medicine*. 2000;28(8):2837–2842.
101. Bronshvag MM. Cerebral pathophysiology in hemorrhagic shock. Nuclide scan data, fluorescence microscopy, and anatomic correlations. *Stroke*. 1980;11(1):50–59.
102. Peterson CG, Augen FP. Hemorrhagic shock and the nervous system. *American Journal of Surgery*. 1963;106:233–242.
103. Collins JA. The pathophysiology of hemorrhagic shock. *Progress in clinical and biological research*. 1982;108:5–29.
104. Troyer DA. Models of ischemic acute renal failure: do they reflect events in human renal failure? *The Journal of laboratory and clinical medicine*. 1987;110(4):379–380.
105. Lefer AM, Martin J. Origin of myocardial depressant factor in shock. *The American Journal of Physiology*. 1970;218(5):1423–1427.
106. Dark PM, Delooz HH, Hillier V, Hanson J, Little RA. Monitoring the circulatory responses of shocked patients during fluid resuscitation in the emergency department. *Intensive care medicine*. 2000;26(2):173–179.
107. Thorne J, Blomquist S, Elmer O, Grafstrom G, Martensson L. Polymorphonuclear leucocyte sequestration in the lungs and liver following soft-tissue trauma: an in vivo study. *Journal of Trauma*. 1989;29(4):451–456.
108. Martin BA, Dahlby R, Nicholls I, Hogg JC. Platelet sequestration in lung with hemorrhagic shock and reinfusion in dogs. *Journal of applied physiology: respiratory, environmental and exercise physiology*. 1981;50(6):1306–1312.
109. Demling R, LaLonde C, Saldinger P, Knox J. Multiple-organ dysfunction in the surgical patient: pathophysiology, prevention, and treatment. *Current problems in surgery*. 1993;30(4):345–414.
110. Horovitz JH, Carrico CJ, Shires GT. Pulmonary response to major injury. *Archives of Surgery*. 1974;108(3):349–355.
111. Fulton RL, Rayner AV, Jones C, Gray Jr LA. Analysis of factors leading to posttraumatic pulmonary insufficiency. *Annals of Thoracic Surgery*. 1978;25(6):500–509.
112. Reilly PM, Bulkley GB. Vasoactive mediators and splanchnic perfusion. *Critical Care Medicine*. 1993;21(2):S55–S68.
113. Redan JA, Rush BF, McCullough JN, et al. Organ distribution of radiolabeled enteric Escherichia coli during and after hemorrhagic shock. *Annals of Surgery*. 1990;211(6):663–666.
114. Chun K, Zhang J, Biewer J, Ferguson D, Clemens MG. Microcirculatory failure determines lethal hepatocyte injury in ischemic/reperfused rat livers. *Shock*. 1994;1(1):3–9.
115. Maitra SR, Geller ER, Pan W, Kennedy PR, Higgins LD. Altered cellular calcium regulation and hepatic glucose production during hemorrhagic shock. *Circulatory shock*. 1992;38(1):14–21.
116. Peitzman AB, Corbett WA, Shires III GT, Illner H, Shires GT, Inamdar R. Cellular function in liver and muscle during hemorrhagic shock in primates. *Surgery, Gynecology and Obstetrics*. 1985;161(5):419–424.
117. Aird WC. The endothelium as an organ. In: Aird WC, ed. *Endothelial Cells in Health and Diseases*. Boco Raton: CRC Press; 2005:1–37.
118. Woodcock TE, Woodcock TM. Revised Starling equation and the glycocalyx model of transvascular fluid exchange: an improved paradigm for prescribing intravenous fluid therapy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(3):384–394.
119. Johansson PI, Ostrowski SR. Acute coagulopathy of trauma: balancing progressive catecholamine induced endothelial activation and damage by fluid phase anticoagulation. *Medical hypotheses*. 2010;75(6):564–567.
120. Haywood-Watson RJ, Holcomb JB, Gonzalez EA, et al. Modulation of syndecan-1 shedding after hemorrhagic shock and resuscitation. *PLoS One*. 2011;6(8):e23530.
121. Kozar RA, Peng Z, Zhang R, et al. Plasma restoration of endothelial glycocalyx in a rodent model of hemorrhagic shock. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2011;112(6):1289–1295.
122. Ostrowski SR, Johansson PI. Endothelial glycocalyx degradation induces endogenous heparinization in patients with severe injury and early traumatic coagulopathy. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;73(1):60–66.
123. Becker BF, Chappell D, Bruegger D, Annecke T, Jacob M. Therapeutic strategies targeting the endothelial glycocalyx: acute deficits, but great potential. *Cardiovasc Res*. 2010;87(2):300–310.
124. Reitsma S, Slaaf DW, Vink H, van Zandvoort MA, oude Egbrink MG. The endothelial glycocalyx: composition, functions, and visualization. *Pflugers Arch*. 2007;454(3):345–359.
125. Niles SE, McLaughlin DF, Perkins JG, et al. Increased mortality associated with the early coagulopathy of trauma in combat casualties. *Journal of Trauma-Injury Infection & Critical Care*. 2008;64(6):1459–1463.
126. MacLeod JB, Lynn M, McKenney MG, Cohn SM, Murtha M. Early coagulopathy predicts mortality in trauma. *The Journal of trauma*. 2003;55(1):39–44.
127. Davenport R. Pathogenesis of acute traumatic coagulopathy. *Transfusion*. 2013;53(suppl S1):23S–27S.
128. Cohen MJ, Call M, Nelson M, et al. Critical role of activated protein C in early coagulopathy and later organ failure, infection and death in trauma patients. *Annals of Surgery*. 2012;255(2):379–385.
129. Brohi K, Cohen MJ, Davenport RA. Acute coagulopathy of trauma: mechanism, identification and effect. *Current opinion in critical care*. 2007;13(6):680–685.
130. Johansson PI, Stensballe J, Rasmussen LS, Ostrowski SR. A high admission syndecan-1 level, a marker of endothelial glycocalyx degradation, is associated with inflammation, protein C depletion, fibrinolysis, and increased mortality in trauma patients. *Annals of Surgery*. 2011;254(2):194–200.
131. Davenport R, Manson J, De'Ath H, et al. Functional definition and characterization of acute traumatic coagulopathy. *Critical Care Medicine*. 2011;39(12):2652–2658.
132. Holcomb JB, Minei KM, Scerbo ML, et al. Admission rapid thrombelastography can replace conventional coagulation tests in the emergency department: experience with 1974 consecutive trauma patients. *Annals of Surgery*. 2012;256(3):476–486.
133. Frith D, Goslings JC, Gaarder C, et al. Definition and drivers of acute traumatic coagulopathy: clinical and experimental investigations. *Journal of Thrombosis & Haemostasis*. 2010;8(9):1919–1925.
134. Schochl H, Frietsch T, Pavelka M, Jambor C. Hyperfibrinolysis after major trauma: differential diagnosis of lysis patterns and prognostic value of thrombelastometry. *The Journal of trauma*. 2009;67(1):125–131.
135. Cotton BA, Harvin JA, Kostousouv V, et al. Hyperfibrinolysis at admission is an uncommon but highly lethal event associated with shock and prehospital fluid administration. *The Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery*. 2012;73(2):365–370.
136. Raza I, Davenport R, Rourke C, et al. The incidence and magnitude of fibrinolytic activation in trauma patients. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2013;11(2):307–314.
137. Steurer MP, Ganter MT. Trauma and massive blood transfusions. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2014;4:200–208.
138. Koscielny J, Ziemer S, Radtke H, et al. A practical concept for preoperative identification of patients with impaired primary hemostasis. *Clin Appl Thromb Hemost*. 2004;10(3):195–204.
139. Haas T, Fries D, Tanaka KA, Asmis L, Curry NS, Schochl H. Usefulness of standard plasma coagulation tests in the management of perioperative coagulopathic bleeding: is there any evidence? *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114(2):217–224.
140. Stensballe J, Ostrowski SR, Johansson PI. Viscoelastic guidance of resuscitation. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2014;27(2):212–218.
141. Da Luz LT, Nascimento B, Shankarakutty AK, Rizoli S, Adhikari NK. Effect of thromboelastography (TEG(R)) and rotational thromboelastometry (ROTEM(R)) on diagnosis of coagulopathy, transfusion guidance and mortality in trauma: descriptive systematic review. *Crit Care*. 2014;18(5):518.
142. Solomon C, Asmis LM, Spahn DR. Is viscoelastic coagulation monitoring with ROTEM or TEG validated? *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*. 2016;76(6):503–507.

143. Stern SA, Dronen SC, Birrer P, Wang X. Effect of blood pressure on hemorrhage volume and survival in a near-fatal hemorrhage model incorporating a vascular injury. *Annals of Emergency Medicine*. 1993;22(2):155–163.
144. Enderby GEH. *Hypotensive Anaesthesia*. Edinburgh: Churhill Livingstone; 1985.
145. Shaftan GW, Chiu CJ, Dennis C, Harris B. Fundamentals of physiologic control of arterial hemorrhage. *Surgery*. 1965;58(5):851–856.
146. Capone A, Safar P, Stezoski SW, Peitzman A, Tisherman S. Uncontrolled hemorrhagic shock outcome model in rats. *Resuscitation*. 1995;29(2):143–152.
147. Owens TM, Watson WC, Prough DS, Uchida T, Kramer GC. Limiting initial resuscitation of uncontrolled hemorrhage reduces internal bleeding and subsequent volume requirements. *Journal of Trauma*. 1995;39(2):200–207.
148. Riddez L, Johnson L, Hahn RG. Central and regional hemodynamics during crystalloid fluid therapy after uncontrolled intra-abdominal bleeding. *Journal of Trauma*. 1998;44(3):433–439.
149. Sakles JC, Sena MJ, Knight DA, Davis JM. Effect of immediate fluid resuscitation on the rate, volume, and duration of pulmonary vascular hemorrhage in a sheep model of penetrating thoracic trauma. *Annals of Emergency Medicine*. 1997;29(3):392–399.
150. Burris D, Rhee P, Kaufmann C, et al. Controlled resuscitation for uncontrolled hemorrhagic shock. *Journal of Trauma*. 1999;46(2):216–223.
151. Shoemaker WC, Peitzman AB, Bellamy R, et al. Resuscitation from severe hemorrhage. *Critical Care Medicine*. 1996;24(2):S12–S23.
152. Morrison CA, Carrick MM, Norman MA, et al. Hypotensive resuscitation strategy reduces transfusion requirements and severe postoperative coagulopathy in trauma patients with hemorrhagic shock: preliminary results of a randomized controlled trial. *J Trauma*. 2011;70(3):652–663.
153. Deleted in proofs.
154. Schreiber MA, Meier EN, Tisherman SA, et al. A controlled resuscitation strategy is feasible and safe in hypotensive trauma patients: results of a prospective randomized pilot trial. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78(4):687–695; discussion 695-687.
155. Bickell WH, Wall Jr MJ, Pepe PE, et al. Immediate versus delayed fluid resuscitation for hypotensive patients with penetrating torso injuries. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 1994;331(17):1105–1109.
156. Demetriades D, Chan L, Cornwell E, et al. Paramedic vs private transportation of trauma patients. Effect on outcome. *Archives of Surgery*. 1996;131(2):133–138.
157. Dutton RP, Mackenzie CF, Scalea TM. Hypotensive resuscitation during active hemorrhage: impact on in-hospital mortality. *Journal of Trauma*. 2002;52(6):1141–1146.
158. Hambly PR, Dutton RP. Excess mortality associated with the use of a rapid infusion system at a level 1 trauma center. *Resuscitation*. 1996;31(2):127–133.
159. Carrick MM, Morrison CA, Tapia NM, et al. Intraoperative hypotensive resuscitation for patients undergoing laparotomy or thoracotomy for trauma: early termination of a randomized prospective clinical trial. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2016.
160. Voiglio EJ, Prunet B, Prat N, David JS. Damage control resuscitation. In: Pape HC, Peitzman A, Rotondo M, Giannoudis P, eds. *Damage Control Management in Polytrauma*. Cham, Switzerland: Springer; 2017:57–70.
161. Siegel JH, Gens DR, Mamantov T, Geisler FH, Goodarzi S, MacKenzie EJ. Effect of associated injuries and blood volume replacement on death, rehabilitation needs, and disability in blunt traumatic brain injury. *Critical Care Medicine*. 1991;19(10):1252–1265.
162. Brain TF, American Association of NS, Congress of NS. Guidelines for the management of severe head injury. *Journal of neurotrauma*. 2007;24(suppl 1):S1–S106.
163. Scalea TM, Simon HM, Duncan AO, et al. Geriatric blunt multiple trauma: improved survival with early invasive monitoring. *Journal of Trauma*. 1990;30(2):129–134.
164. Novak L, Shackford SR, Bourguignon P, et al. Comparison of standard and alternative prehospital resuscitation in uncontrolled hemorrhagic shock and head injury. *Journal of Trauma*. 1999;47(5):834–844.
165. Cosgriff N, Moore EE, Sauaia A, Kenny-Moynihan M, Burch JM, Galloway B. Predicting life-threatening coagulopathy in the massively transfused trauma patient: hypothermia and acidoses revisited. *The Journal of trauma*. 1997;42(5):857–861; discussion 861-852.
166. Engels PT, Rezende-Neto JB, Al Mahroos M, Scarpelini S, Rizoli SB, Tien HC. The natural history of trauma-related coagulopathy: implications for treatment. *The Journal of trauma*. 2011;71(5 suppl 1):S448–455.
167. Eddy VA, Morris Jr JA, Cullinane DC. Hypothermia, coagulopathy, and acidosis. *The Surgical clinics of North America*. 2000;80(3):845–854.
168. Beekley AC. Damage control resuscitation: a sensible approach to the exsanguinating surgical patient. *Critical Care Medicine*. 2008;36(7 suppl):S267–274.
169. Holcomb JB, Jenkins D, Rhee P, et al. Damage control resuscitation: directly addressing the early coagulopathy of trauma. *The Journal of trauma*. 2007;62(2):307–310.
170. Cotton BA, Au BK, Nunez TC, Gunter OL, Robertson AM, Young PP. Predefined massive transfusion protocols are associated with a reduction in organ failure and postinjury complications. *The Journal of trauma*. 2009;66(1):41–48; discussion 48-49.
171. Fries D, Innerhofer P, Schobersberger W. Time for changing coagulation management in trauma-related massive bleeding. *Current opinion in anaesthesiology*. 2009;22(2):267–274.
172. Schochl H, Maegele M, Solomon C, Gorlinger K, Voelckel W. Early and individualized goal-directed therapy for trauma-induced coagulopathy. *Scandinavian journal of trauma, resuscitation and emergency medicine*. 2012;20:15.
173. Kashuk JL, Moore EE, Sawyer M, et al. Postinjury coagulopathy management: goal directed resuscitation via POC thrombelastography. *Annals of Surgery*. 2010;251(4):604–614.
174. Borgman MA, Spinella PC, Perkins JG, et al. The ratio of blood products transfused affects mortality in patients receiving massive transfusions at a combat support hospital. *The Journal of trauma*. 2007;63(4):805–813.
175. de Biasi AR, Stansbury LG, Dutton RP, Stein DM, Scalea TM, Hess JR. Blood product use in trauma resuscitation: plasma deficit versus plasma ratio as predictors of mortality in trauma (CME). *Transfusion*. 2011;51(9):1925–1932.
176. Holcomb JB, Tilley BC, Baraniuk S, et al. Transfusion of plasma, platelets, and red blood cells in a 1:1:1 vs a 1:1:2 ratio and mortality in patients with severe trauma: the PROPPR randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2015;313(5):471–482.
177. Kashuk JL, Moore EE, Sawyer M, et al. Primary fibrinolysis is integral in the pathogenesis of the acute coagulopathy of trauma. *Annals of Surgery*. 2010;252(3):434–442.
178. Theusinger OM, Wanner GA, Emmert MY, et al. Hyperfibrinolysis diagnosed by rotational thromboelastometry (ROTEM) is associated with higher mortality in patients with severe trauma. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2011;113(5):1003–1012.
179. CRASH-2.Trial.Collaborators. Effects of tranexamic acid on death, vascular occlusive events, and blood transfusion in trauma patients with significant haemorrhage (CRASH-2): a randomised, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9734):23–32.
180. Collaborators C-T. The importance of early treatment with tranexamic acid in bleeding trauma patients: an exploratory analysis of the CRASH-2 randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2011;377(9771):1096–1101. 1101.e1091-1092.
181. Morrison JJ, Dubose JJ, Rasmussen TE, Midwinter MJ. Military Application of Tranexamic Acid in Trauma Emergency Resuscitation (MATTERs) Study. *Archives of surgery (Chicago, Ill: 1960)*. 2012;147(2):113–119.
182. Thomas GO, Dutton RP, Hemlock B, et al. Thromboembolic complications associated with factor VIIa administration. *Journal of Trauma*. 2007;62(3):564–569.
183. Boffard KD, Riou B, Warren B, et al. Recombinant factor VIIa as adjunctive therapy for bleeding control in severely injured trauma patients: two parallel randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind clinical trials. *The Journal of trauma*. 2005;59(1):8–15. discussion 15-18.
184. Hauser CJ, Boffard K, Dutton R, et al. Results of the CONTROL trial: efficacy and safety of recombinant activated Factor VII in the management of refractory traumatic hemorrhage. *The Journal of trauma*. 2010;69(3):489–500.
185. Saracoglu A, Cardoso T. Factor VII and thromboembolism. *Trends in Anaesthesia and Critical Care*. 2018.
186. Fries D. The early use of fibrinogen, prothrombin complex concentrate, and recombinant-activated factor VIIa in massive bleeding. *Transfusion*. 2013;53(suppl 1):91S–95S.

187. Curry N, Foley C, Wong H, et al. Early fibrinogen concentrate therapy for major haemorrhage in trauma (E-FIT 1): results from a UK multi-centre, randomised, double blind, placebo-controlled pilot trial. *Crit Care*. 2018;22(1):164.
188. Novak A, Stanworth SJ, Curry N. Do we still need cryoprecipitate? Cryoprecipitate and fibrinogen concentrate as treatments for major hemorrhage - how do they compare? *Expert Rev Hematol*. 2018;11(5):351–360.
189. Blow O, Magliore L, Claridge JA, Butler K, Young JS. The golden hour and the silver day: detection and correction of occult hypoperfusion within 24 hours improves outcome from major trauma. *The Journal of trauma*. 1999;47(5):964–969.
190. Chang MC, Mondy JS, Meredith JW, Holcroft JW. Redefining cardiovascular performance during resuscitation: ventricular stroke work, power, and the pressure-volume diagram. *The Journal of trauma*. 1998;45(3):470–478.
191. McKinley BA, Butler BD. Comparison of skeletal muscle PO2, PCO2, and pH with gastric tonometric P(CO2) and pH in hemorrhagic shock. *Critical Care Medicine*. 1999;27(9):1869–1877.
192. McKinley BA, Marvin RG, Cocanour CS, Moore FA. Tissue hemoglobin O2 saturation during resuscitation of traumatic shock monitored using near infrared spectrometry. *The Journal of trauma*. 2000;48(4):637–642.
193. Michard F. Changes in arterial pressure during mechanical ventilation. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(2):419–428.
194. Abramson D, Scalea TM, Hitchcock R, Trooskin SZ, Henry SM, Greenspan J. Lactate clearance and survival following injury. *The Journal of trauma*. 1993;35(4):584–588; discussion 588-589.
195. Rhee P, Burris D, Kaufmann C, et al. Lactated Ringer's solution resuscitation causes neutrophil activation after hemorrhagic shock. *Journal of Trauma*. 1998;44(2):313–319.
196. Deb S, Martin B, Sun L, et al. Resuscitation with lactated Ringer's solution in rats with hemorrhagic shock induces immediate apoptosis. *Journal of Trauma*. 1999;46(4):582–588.
197. Dubick MA, Wade CE. A review of the efficacy and safety of 7.5% NaCl/6% dextran 70 in experimental animals and in humans. *Journal of Trauma*. 1994;36(3):323–330.
198. Mattox KL, Maningas PA, Moore EE, et al. Prehospital hypertonic saline/dextran infusion for post-traumatic hypotension. The U.S.A. Multicenter Trial. *Annals of Surgery*. 1991;213(5):482–491.
199. Doyle JA, Davis DP, Hoyt DB. The use of hypertonic saline in the treatment of traumatic brain injury. *Journal of Trauma*. 2001;50(2):367–383.
200. Perel P, Roberts I. Colloids versus crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. 2012;6:CD000567.
201. Ogilvie MP, Ryan ML, Proctor KG. Hetastarch during initial resuscitation from trauma. *Journal of Trauma-Injury Infection & Critical Care*. 2011;70(5 suppl):S19–21.
202. Lissauer ME, Chi A, Kramer ME, Scalea TM, Johnson SB. Association of 6% hetastarch resuscitation with adverse outcomes in critically ill trauma patients. *American Journal of Surgery*. 2011;202(1):53–58.
203. Perner A, Haase N, Guttormsen AB, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.42 versus Ringer's acetate in severe sepsis. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367(2):124–134.
204. Myburgh JA, Finfer S, Bellomo R, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch or saline for fluid resuscitation in intensive care. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367(20):1901–1911.
205. Velmahos GC, Chan L, Chan M, et al. Is there a limit to massive blood transfusion after severe trauma? *Archives of Surgery*. 1998;133(9):947–952.
206. Rotondo MF, Schwab CW, McGonigal MD, et al. Damage control': an approach for improved survival in exsanguinating penetrating abdominal injury. *The Journal of trauma*. 1993;35(3):375–382. discussion 382-373.
207. Dutton RP, Shih D, Edelman BB, Hess J, Scalea TM. Safety of uncrossmatched type-O red cells for resuscitation from hemorrhagic shock. *Journal of Trauma*. 2005;59(6):1445–1449.
208. MacKay EJ, Stubna MD, Holena DN, et al. Abnormal calcium levels during trauma resuscitation are associated with increased mortality, increased blood product use, and greater hospital resource consumption: a pilot investigation. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(3):895–901.
209. McGee DC, Gould MK. Preventing complications of central venous catheterization. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2003;348(12):1123–1133.
210. Wu X, Stezoski J, Safar P, et al. Mild hypothermia during hemorrhagic shock in rats improves survival without significant effects on inflammatory responses. *Critical Care Medicine*. 2003;31(1):195–202.
211. Marion DW, Penrod LE, Kelsey SF, et al. Treatment of traumatic brain injury with moderate hypothermia. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 1997;336(8):540–546.
212. Dunham CM, Belzberg H, Lyles R, et al. The rapid infusion system: a superior method for the resuscitation of hypovolemic trauma patients. *Resuscitation*. 1991;21(2-3):207–227.
213. Shackford SR, Mackersie RC, Holbrook TL, et al. The epidemiology of traumatic death. A population-based analysis. *Archives of Surgery*. 1993;128(5):571–575.
214. Acosta JA, Yang JC, Winchell RJ, et al. Lethal injuries and time to death in a level I trauma center. *Journal of the American College of Surgeons*. 1998;186(5):528–533.
215. Taylor CA, Bell JM, Breiding MJ, Xu L. Traumatic brain injury-related emergency department visits, hospitalizations, and deaths-United States, 2007 and 2013. Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report. *MMWR*. 2017;66:1–16.
216. Selvarajah S, Hammond ER, Haider AH, et al. The burden of acute traumatic spinal cord injury among adults in the united states: an update. *J Neurotrauma*. 2014;31(3):228–238.
217. Hinson HE, Rowell S, Schreiber M. Clinical evidence of inflammation driving secondary brain injury: a systematic review. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78(1):184–191.
218. Hoffmann M, Lefering R, Rueger JM, et al. Pupil evaluation in addition to Glasgow Coma Scale components in prediction of traumatic brain injury and mortality. *The British journal of surgery*. 2012;99(suppl 1):122–130.
219. DeKosky ST, Ikonomovic MD, Gandy S. Traumatic brain injury: football, warfare, and long-term effects. *Minnesota medicine*. 2010;93(12):46–47.
220. Kalb DC, Ney AL, Rodriguez JL, et al. Assessment of the relationship between timing of fixation of the fracture and secondary brain injury in patients with multiple trauma. *Surgery*. 1998;124(4):739–744.
221. Lefering R, Paffrath T, Linker R, Bouillon B, Neugebauer EA. Deutsche Gesellschaft fur Unfallchirurgie/German Society for Trauma S. Head injury and outcome--what influence do concomitant injuries have?. *The Journal of trauma*. 2008;65(5):1036–1043. discussion 1043-1034.
222. Carney N, Totten AM, O'Reilly C, et al. Guidelines for the management of severe traumatic brain injury. *Neurosurgery*. 2017;80(1):6–15. 4th ed.
223. Chesnut RM, Marshall LF, Klauber MR, et al. The role of secondary brain injury in determining outcome from severe head injury. *Journal of Trauma*. 1993;34(2):216–222.
224. Davis DP, Peay J, Sise MJ, et al. The impact of prehospital endotracheal intubation on outcome in moderate to severe traumatic brain injury. *The Journal of trauma*. 2005;58(5):933–939.
225. Bochicchio GV, Ilahi O, Joshi M, Bochicchio K, Scalea TM. Endotracheal intubation in the field does not improve outcome in trauma patients who present without an acutely lethal traumatic brain injury. *Journal of Trauma*. 2003;54(2):307–311.
226. Bernard SA, Nguyen V, Cameron P, et al. Prehospital rapid sequence intubation improves functional outcome for patients with severe traumatic brain injury: a randomized controlled trial. *Annals of Surgery*. 2010;252(6):959–965.
227. McCarthy MC, Moncrief H, Sands JM, et al. Neurologic outcomes with cerebral oxygen monitoring in traumatic brain injury. *Surgery*. 2009;146(4):585–590; discussion 590-581.
228. Stiefel MF, Spiotta A, Gracias VH, et al. Reduced mortality rate in patients with severe traumatic brain injury treated with brain tissue oxygen monitoring. *Journal of neurosurgery*. 2005;103(5):805–811.
229. Bohman LE, Heuer GG, Macyszyn L, et al. Medical management of compromised brain oxygen in patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *Neurocritical care*. 2011;14(3):361–369.
230. Martini RP, Deem S, Yanez ND, et al. Management guided by brain tissue oxygen monitoring and outcome following severe traumatic brain injury. *Journal of neurosurgery*. 2009;111(4):644–649.
231. Narotam PK, Morrison JF, Nathoo N. Brain tissue oxygen monitoring in traumatic brain injury and major trauma: outcome analysis of a brain tissue oxygen-directed therapy. *Journal of neurosurgery*. 2009;111(4):672–682.

232. Zygun DA, Kortbeek JB, Fick GH, Laupland KB, Doig CJ. Non-neurologic organ dysfunction in severe traumatic brain injury. *Critical Care Medicine*. 2005;33(3):654–660.
233. Bukur M, Lustenberger T, Cotton B, et al. Beta-blocker exposure in the absence of significant head injuries is associated with reduced mortality in critically ill patients. *American Journal of Surgery*. 2012;204(5):697–703.
234. Arbabi S, Campion EM, Hemmila MR, et al. Beta-blocker use is associated with improved outcomes in adult trauma patients. *The Journal of trauma*. 2007;62(1):56–61; discussion 61-52.
235. Schroeppel TJ, Fischer PE, Zarzaur BL, et al. Beta-adrenergic blockade and traumatic brain injury: protective? *The Journal of trauma*. 2010;69(4):776–782.
236. Cotton BA, Snodgrass KB, Fleming SB, et al. Beta-blocker exposure is associated with improved survival after severe traumatic brain injury. *The Journal of trauma*. 2007;62(1):26–33. discussion 33-25.
237. McGuire G, Crossley D, Richards J, Wong D. Effects of varying levels of positive end-expiratory pressure on intracranial pressure and cerebral perfusion pressure. *Critical Care Medicine*. 1997;25(6):1059–1062.
238. Huynh T, Messer M, Sing RF, Miles W, Jacobs DG, Thomason MH. Positive end-expiratory pressure alters intracranial and cerebral perfusion pressure in severe traumatic brain injury. *Journal of Trauma*. 2002;53(3):488–492.
239. Oddo M, Nduom E, Frangos S, et al. Acute lung injury is an independent risk factor for brain hypoxia after severe traumatic brain injury. *Neurosurgery*. 2010;67(2):338–344.
240. Mascia L. Acute lung injury in patients with severe brain injury: a double hit model. *Neurocritical care*. 2009;11(3):417–426.
241. Muizelaar JP, Marmarou A, Ward JD, et al. Adverse effects of prolonged hyperventilation in patients with severe head injury: a randomized clinical trial. *Journal of neurosurgery*. 1991;75(5):731–739.
242. Chesnut RM, Marshall LF, Klauber MR, et al. The role of secondary brain injury in determining outcome from severe head injury. *The Journal of trauma*. 1993;34(2):216–222.
243. Utter GH, Shahlaie K, Zwienenberg-Lee M, Muizelaar JP. Anemia in the setting of traumatic brain injury: the arguments for and against liberal transfusion. *Journal of neurotrauma*. 2011;28(1):155–165.
244. Aarabi B, Hesdorffer DC, Ahn ES, Aresco C, Scalea TM, Eisenberg HM. Outcome following decompressive craniectomy for malignant swelling due to severe head injury. *Journal of neurosurgery*. 2006;104(4):469–479.
245. Soukiasian HJ, Hui T, Avital I, et al. Decompressive craniectomy in trauma patients with severe brain injury. *American Surgeon*. 2002;68(12):1066–1071.
246. Joseph DK, Dutton RP, Aarabi B, Scalea TM. Decompressive laparotomy to treat intractable intracranial hypertension after traumatic brain injury. *Journal of Trauma*. 2004;57(4):687–693.
247. Scalea TM, Bochicchio GV, Habashi N, et al. Increased intra-abdominal, intrathoracic, and intracranial pressure after severe brain injury: multiple compartment syndrome. *The Journal of trauma*. 2007;62(3):647–656; discussion 656.
248. Clasen RA, Pandolfi S, Russell J, Stuart D, Hass GM. Hypothermia and hypotension in experimental cerebral edema. *Archives of Neurology*. 1968;19(5):472–486.
249. Rosomoff HL, Shulman K, Raynor R, Grainger W. Experimental brain injury and delayed hypothermia. *Surgery, Gynecology and Obstetrics*. 1960;110:27–32.
250. Marion DW, Obrist WD, Carlier PM, Penrod LE, Darby JM. The use of moderate therapeutic hypothermia for patients with severe head injuries: a preliminary report. *Journal of neurosurgery*. 1993;79(3):354–362.
251. Clifton GL, Allen S, Barrodale P, et al. A phase II study of moderate hypothermia in severe brain injury. *Journal of neurotrauma*. 1993;10(3):263–271.
252. Clifton GL, Miller ER, Choi SC, et al. Lack of effect of induction of hypothermia after acute brain injury. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2001;344(8):556–563.
253. Cottenceau V, Masson F, Mahamid E, et al. Comparison of effects of equiosmolar doses of mannitol and hypertonic saline on cerebral blood flow and metabolism in traumatic brain injury. *Journal of neurotrauma*. 2011;28(10):2003–2012.
254. Sakellaridis N, Pavlou E, Karatzas S, et al. Comparison of mannitol and hypertonic saline in the treatment of severe brain injuries. *Journal of neurosurgery*. 2011;114(2):545–548.
255. Pang D, Pollack IF. Spinal cord injury without radiographic abnormality in children--the SCIWORA syndrome. *Journal of Trauma*. 1989;29(5):654–664.
256. Tator CH, Fehlings MG. Review of the secondary injury theory of acute spinal cord trauma with emphasis on vascular mechanisms. *Journal of neurosurgery*. 1991;75(1):15–26.
257. Patel MB, Humble SS, Cullinane DC, et al. Cervical spine collar clearance in the obtunded adult blunt trauma patient: a systematic review and practice management guideline from the Eastern Association for the Surgery of Trauma. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78(2):430–441.
258. Como JJ, Sutton ER, McCunn M, et al. Characterizing the need for mechanical ventilation following cervical spinal cord injury with neurologic deficit. *Journal of Trauma*. 2005;59(4):912–916.
259. Harrop JS, Sharan AD, Scheid Jr EH, Vaccaro AR, Przybylski GJ. Tracheostomy placement in patients with complete cervical spinal cord injuries: American Spinal Injury Association Grade A. *Journal of neurosurgery*. 2004;100(1):20–23.
260. Fassett DR, Harrop JS, Maltenfort M, et al. Mortality rates in geriatric patients with spinal cord injuries. *JNeurosurgSpine*. 2007;7(3):277–281.
261. Bracken MB, Shepard MJ, Holford TR, et al. Administration of methylprednisolone for 24 or 48 hours or tirilazad mesylate for 48 hours in the treatment of acute spinal cord injury. Results of the Third National Acute Spinal Cord Injury Randomized Controlled Trial. National Acute Spinal Cord Injury Study. *JAMA*. 1997;277(20):1597–1604.
262. Bracken MB, Shepard MJ, Collins WF, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of methylprednisolone or naloxone in the treatment of acute spinal-cord injury. Results of the Second National Acute Spinal Cord Injury Study. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 1990;322(20):1405–1411.
263. Hurlbert RJ. Methylprednisolone for acute spinal cord injury: an inappropriate standard of care. *Journal of neurosurgery*. 2000;93(1):1–7.
264. Matsumoto T, Tamaki T, Kawakami M, Yoshida M, Ando M, Yamada H. Early complications of high-dose methylprednisolone sodium succinate treatment in the follow-up of acute cervical spinal cord injury. *Spine*. 2001;26(4):426–430.
265. Short DJ, El Masry WS, Jones PW. High dose methylprednisolone in the management of acute spinal cord injury - a systematic review from a clinical perspective. *Spinal cord : the official journal of the International Medical Society of Paraplegia*. 2000;38(5):273–286.
266. Hurlbert RJ, Hadley MN, Walters BC, et al. Pharmacological therapy for acute spinal cord injury. *Neurosurgery*. 2013;72(suppl 2):93–105.
267. Scannell G, Waxman K, Tominaga G, Barker S, Annas C. Orotracheal intubation in trauma patients with cervical fractures. *Archives of Surgery*. 1993;128(8):903–905.
268. Fehlings MG, Vaccaro A, Wilson JR, et al. Early versus delayed decompression for traumatic cervical spinal cord injury: results of the Surgical Timing in Acute Spinal Cord Injury Study (STASCIS). *PLoS One*. 2012;7(2). e32037.
269. Mattiassich G, Gollwitzer M, Gaderer F, et al. Functional outcomes in individuals undergoing very early (< 5 h) and early (5-24 h) surgical decompression in traumatic cervical spinal cord injury: analysis of neurological improvement from the Austrian Spinal Cord Injury Study. *J Neurotrauma*. 2017;34(24):3362–3371.
270. Ryken TC, Hurlbert RJ, Hadley MN, et al. The acute cardiopulmonary management of patients with cervical spinal cord injuries. *Neurosurgery*. 2013;72(suppl 2):84–92.
271. Urquhart DM, Williamson OD, Gabbe BJ, et al. Outcomes of patients with orthopaedic trauma admitted to level 1 trauma centres. *ANZ Journal of Surgery*. 2006;76(7):600–606.
272. Castillo RC, MacKenzie EJ, Wegener ST, Bosse MJ, Group LS. Prevalence of chronic pain seven years following limb threatening lower extremity trauma. *Pain*. 2006;124(3):321–329.
273. Rispoli DM, MacKenzie EJ. Extremity War Injuries VIIOP. Orthopaedic outcomes: combat and civilian trauma care. *JAmAcadOrthopSurg*. 2012;20(suppl 1):S84–S87.
274. Bochicchio GV, Salzano L, Joshi M, Bochicchio K, Scalea TM. Admission preoperative glucose is predictive of morbidity and mortality in trauma patients who require immediate operative intervention. *Am Surg*. 2005;71(2):171–174.
275. Scalea TM. Optimal timing of fracture fixation: have we learned anything in the past 20 years? *J Trauma*. 2008;65(2):253–260.

276. Riska EB, von Bonsdorff H, Hakkinen S, Jaroma H, Kiviluoto O, Paavilainen T. Prevention of fat embolism by early internal fixation of fractures in patients with multiple injuries. *Injury*. 1976;8(2):110–116.
277. Roberts KC, Brox WT, Jevsevar DS, Sevarino K. Management of hip fractures in the elderly. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2015;23(2):131–137.
278. Lewis PM, Waddell JP. When is the ideal time to operate on a patient with a fracture of the hip? : a review of the available literature. *Bone Joint J*. 2016;98-B(12):1573–1581.
279. Ftouh S, Morga A, Swift C, Guideline Development G. Management of hip fracture in adults: summary of NICE guidance. *BMJ*. 2011;342:d3304.
280. Ryan DJ, Yoshihara H, Yoneoka D, Egol KA, Zuckerman JD. Delay in hip fracture surgery: an analysis of patient-specific and hospital-specific risk factors. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2015;29(8):343–348.
281. Fu MC, Boddapati V, Gausden EB, Samuel AM, Russell LA, Lane JM. Surgery for a fracture of the hip within 24 hours of admission is independently associated with reduced short-term post-operative complications. *Bone Joint J*. 2017;99-B(9):1216–1222.
282. Bretherton CP, Parker MJ. Early surgery for patients with a fracture of the hip decreases 30-day mortality. *Bone Joint J*. 2015;97-B(1):104–108.
283. Nyholm AM, Gromov K, Palm H, et al. Time to surgery is associated with thirty-day and ninety-day mortality after proximal femoral fracture: a retrospective observational study on prospectively collected data from the Danish Fracture Database Collaborators. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2015;97(16):1333–1339.
284. Pincus D, Ravi B, Wasserstein D, et al. Association between wait time and 30-day mortality in adults undergoing hip fracture surgery. *JAMA*. 2017;318(20):1994–2003.
285. Cantu RV, Graves SC, Spratt KF. In-hospital mortality from femoral shaft fracture depends on the initial delay to fracture fixation and Injury Severity Score: a retrospective cohort study from the NTDB 2002-2006. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2014;76(6):1433–1440.
286. Parker MJ, Urwin SC, Handoll HH, Griffiths R. General versus spinal/epidural anaesthesia for surgery for hip fractures in adults. *Cochrane database of systematic reviews (Online)*. 2000;(2):CD000521. 2.
287. Neuman MD, Silber JH, Elkassabany NM, Ludwig JM, Fleisher LA. Comparative effectiveness of regional versus general anesthesia for hip fracture surgery in adults. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(1):72–92.
288. Kellam JF. Hip dislocations and fractures of the femoral head. In: Levine AM, ed. Rosemont, IL: AAOS; 1996:281–286.
289. Porter SE, Graves ML, Maples RA, Woodall Jr J, Wallace JG, Russell GV. Acetabular fracture reductions in the obese patient. *Journal of orthopaedic trauma*. 2011;25(6):371–377.
290. Routt CML. Fixation of the pelvic ring disruption. In: Levine AM, ed. Rosemont, IL: AAOS; 1996:241–248.
291. Cothren CC, Osborn PM, Moore EE, Morgan SJ, Johnson JL, Smith WR. Preperitonal pelvic packing for hemodynamically unstable pelvic fractures: a paradigm shift. *The Journal of trauma*. 2007;62(4):834–839. discussion 839-842.
292. Scalea TM, Burgess AR. Pelvic fractures. In: Mattox KL, Feliciano DV, Moore EE, eds. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2000:807–846.
293. Burkhardt M, Nienaber U, Pizanis A, et al. Acute management and outcome of multiple trauma patients with pelvic disruptions. *Critical Care (London, England)*. 2012;16(4):R163.
294. Agolini SF, Shah K, Jaffe J, Newcomb K, Rhodes M, Reed JF, 3rd. Arterial embolization is a rapid and effective technique for controlling pelvic fracture hemorrhage. *J Trauma*. 1997;43(3):395–399.
295. Mauffrey C, Bailey JR, Bowles RJ, et al. Acute management of open fractures: proposal of a new multidisciplinary algorithm. *Orthopedics*. 2012;35(10):877–881.
296. Chelly JE, Casati A, Al-Samsam T, Coupe K, Criswell A, Tucker J. Continuous lumbar plexus block for acute postoperative pain management after open reduction and internal fixation of acetabular fractures. *Journal of orthopaedic trauma*. 2003;17(5):362–367.
297. Egol KA, Soojian MG, Walsh M, Katz J, Rosenberg AD, Paksima N. Regional anesthesia improves outcome after distal radius fracture fixation over general anesthesia. *Journal of orthopaedic trauma*. 2012;26(9):545–549.
298. Strauss JE, O'Toole RV, Pollak AN. Does supplemental epidural anesthesia improve outcomes of acetabular fracture surgery? *Journal of orthopaedic trauma*. 2012;26(2):67–72.
299. Mason SE, Noel-Storr A, Ritchie CW. The impact of general and regional anesthesia on the incidence of post-operative cognitive dysfunction and post-operative delirium: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *Journal of Alzheimer's disease : JAD*. 2010;22(suppl 3):67–79.
300. Wu CL, Hsu W, Richman JM, Raja SN. Postoperative cognitive function as an outcome of regional anesthesia and analgesia. *Regional anesthesia and pain medicine*. 2004;29(3):257–268.
301. Koessler MJ, Fabiani R, Hamer H, Pitto RP. The clinical relevance of embolic events detected by transesophageal echocardiography during cemented total hip arthroplasty: a randomized clinical trial. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2001;92(1):49–55.
302. Eriksson EA, Pellegrini DC, Vanderkolk WE, Minshall CT, Fakhry SM, Cohle SD. Incidence of pulmonary fat embolism at autopsy: an undiagnosed epidemic. *The Journal of trauma*. 2011;71(2):312–315.
303. Hutchins PM, Macnicol MF. Pulmonary insufficiency after long bone fractures. Absence of circulating fat or significant immunodepression. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery British*. 1985;67:835–839. 0301-620; 5.
304. Lindeque BG, Schoeman HS, Dommisse GF, Boeyens MC, Vlok AL. Fat embolism and the fat embolism syndrome. A double-blind therapeutic study. *Journal of Bone and Joint SurgeryBritish*. 1987;69:128–131. 0301-620; 1.
305. Habashi NM, Andrews PL, Scalea TM. Therapeutic aspects of fat embolism syndrome. *Injury*. 2006;37(suppl 4):S68–73.
306. Dunn RH, Jackson T, Burlew CC, et al. Fat emboli syndrome and the orthopaedic trauma surgeon: lessons learned and clinical recommendations. *Int Orthop*. 2017;41(9):1729–1734.
307. Matsen FA, Winquist RA, Krugmire RB. Diagnosis and management of compartmental syndromes. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1980;62:286–291.
308. Rorabeck CH. The treatment of compartment syndromes of the leg. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery British volume*. 1984;66:93–97. 0301-620; 1.
309. McQueen MM, Gaston P, Court-Brown CM. Acute compartment syndrome. Who is at risk?. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery British*. 2000;82:200–203. 0301-620; 2.
310. Duckworth AD, Mitchell SE, Molyneux SG, White TO, Court-Brown CM, McQueen MM. Acute compartment syndrome of the forearm. *The Journal of bone and joint surgeryAmerican*. 2012;94(10):e63.
311. Mar GJ, Barrington MJ, McGuirk BR. Acute compartment syndrome of the lower limb and the effect of postoperative analgesia on diagnosis. *British journal of anaesthesia*. 2009;102(1):3–11.
312. Kragh Jr JF, San Antonio J, Simmons JW, et al. Compartment syndrome performance improvement project is associated with increased combat casualty survival. *The journal of trauma and acute care surgery*. 2013;74(1):259–263.
313. Michaelson M. Crush injury and crush syndrome. *World journal of surgery*. 1992;16(5):899–903.
314. Holt SG, Moore KP. Pathogenesis and treatment of renal dysfunction in rhabdomyolysis. *Intensive care medicine*. 2001;27(5):803–811.
315. Chavez LO, Leon M, Einav S, Varon J. Beyond muscle destruction: a systematic review of rhabdomyolysis for clinical practice. *Crit Care*. 2016;20(1):135.
316. McCunn M, Reynolds HN, Reuter J, McQuillan K, McCourt T, Stein D. Continuous renal replacement therapy in patients following traumatic injury. *International Journal of Artificial Organs*. 2006;29(2):166–186.
317. Gettings LG, Reynolds HN, Scalea T. Outcome in post-traumatic acute renal failure when continuous renal replacement therapy is applied early vs. late. *Intensive care medicine*. 1999;25(8):805–813.
318. Hunter S, Langemo D, Hanson D, Anderson J, Thompson P. The use of negative pressure wound therapy. *Advances in Skin & Wound Care*. 2007;20:90–95.
319. Weber S, Bennett CR, Jones NF. Improvement in blood flow during lower extremity microsurgical free tissue transfer associated with epidural anesthesia. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1988;67(7):703–705.
320. Chen C, Nguyen MD, Bar-Meir E, et al. Effects of vasopressor administration on the outcomes of microsurgical breast reconstruction. *Annals of Plastic Surgery*. 2010;65(1):28–31.
321. Tong DC, Breeze J. Damage control surgery and combat-related maxillofacial and cervical injuries: a systematic review. *Br J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2016;54(1):8–12.
322. Roepke C, Benjamin E, Jhun P, Herbert M. Penetrating neck injury: what's in and what's out? *Ann Emerg Med*. 2016;67(5):578–580.
323. Salhanick M, Corneille M, Higgins R, et al. Autotransfusion of hemothorax blood in trauma patients: is it the same as fresh whole blood?. *American Journal of Surgery*. 2011;202(6):817–821. discussion 821-812.
324. Harrison HB, Smith WZ, Salhanick MA, et al. An experimental model of hemothorax autotransfusion: impact on coagulation. *Am J Surg*. 2014;208(6):1078–1082; discussion 1082.

325. Daurat A, Millet I, Roustan JP, et al. Thoracic trauma severity score on admission allows to determine the risk of delayed ARDS in trauma patients with pulmonary contusion. *Injury*. 2016;47(1):147–153.
326. Matsushima K, Aiolfi A, Park C, et al. Surgical outcomes after trauma pneumonectomy: revisited. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2017;82(5):927–932.
327. Baumgartner F, Omari B, Lee J, et al. Survival after trauma pneumonectomy: the pathophysiologic balance of shock resuscitation with right heart failure. *American Surgeon*. 1996;62(11):967–972.
328. Long DM, Kim SI, Shoemaker WC. Vascular responses in the lung following trauma and shock. *Journal of Trauma*. 1968;8(5):715–723.
329. Cryer HG, Mavroudis C, Yu J, et al. Shock, transfusion, and pneumonectomy. Death is due to right heart failure and increased pulmonary vascular resistance. *Annals of Surgery*. 1990;212(2):197–201.
330. Nurozler F, Argenziano M, Ginsburg ME. Nitric oxide usage after posttraumatic pneumonectomy. *Annals of Thoracic Surgery*. 2001;71(1):364–366.
331. Ahmad SB, Menaker J, Kufera J, O'Connor J, Scalea TM, Stein DM. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation after traumatic injury. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2017;82(3):587–591.
332. Symbas PN, Justicz AG, Ricketts RR. Rupture of the airways from blunt trauma: treatment of complex injuries. *Annals of Thoracic Surgery*. 1992;54(1):177–183.
333. Conroy C, Hoyt DB, Eastman AB, et al. Motor vehicle-related cardiac and aortic injuries differ from other thoracic injuries. *Journal of Trauma*. 2007;62(6):1462–1467.
334. Fox N, Schwartz D, Salazar JH, et al. Evaluation and management of blunt traumatic aortic injury: a practice management guideline from the Eastern Association for the Surgery of Trauma. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78(1):136–146.
335. Galli R, Pacini D, Di BR, et al. Surgical indications and timing of repair of traumatic ruptures of the thoracic aorta. *Annals of Thoracic Surgery*. 1998;65(2):461–464.
336. Pate JW, Gavant ML, Weiman DS, Fabian TC. Traumatic rupture of the aortic isthmus: program of selective management. *World journal of surgery*. 1999;23(1):59–63.
337. Shulman M, Sandler AN, Bradley JW, Young PS, Brebner J. Postthoracotomy pain and pulmonary function following epidural and systemic morphine. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61(5):569–575.
338. Carrier FM, Turgeon AF, Nicole PC, et al. Effect of epidural analgesia in patients with traumatic rib fractures: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2009;56(3):230–242.
339. Galvagno Jr SM, Smith CE, Varon AJ, et al. Pain management for blunt thoracic trauma: A joint practice management guideline from the Eastern Association for the Surgery of Trauma and Trauma Anesthesiology Society. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2016;81(5):936–951.
340. Antonelli M, Conti G, Rocco M, et al. A comparison of noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation and conventional mechanical ventilation in patients with acute respiratory failure. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 1998;339(7):429–435.
341. Beltrame F, Lucangelo U, Gregori D, Gregoretti C. Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation in trauma patients with acute respiratory failure. *Monaldi Archives for Chest Disease*. 1999;54(2):109–114.
342. Feliciano DV, Rozycki GS. Advances in the diagnosis and treatment of thoracic trauma. *Surgical Clinics of North America*. 1999;79(6):1417–1429.
343. O'Connor J, Ditillo M, Scalea T. Penetrating cardiac injury. *Journal of the Royal Army Medical Corps*. 2009;155(3):185–190.
344. Lamb CM, MacGoey P, Navarro AP, Brooks AJ. Damage control surgery in the era of damage control resuscitation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(2):242–249.
345. Jain V, Chari R, Maslovitz S, et al. Guidelines for the management of a pregnant trauma patient. *Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology Canada*. 2015;37(6):553–571.
346. Deshpande NA, Kucirka LM, Smith RN, Oxford CM. Pregnant trauma victims experience nearly 2-fold higher mortality compared to their nonpregnant counterparts. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;217(5). 590 e591-590 e599.
347. Wang PI, Chong ST, Kielar AZ, et al. Imaging of pregnant and lactating patients: part 1, evidence-based review and recommendations. *AJRAmerican journal of roentgenology*. 2012;198(4):778–784.
348. Palanisamy A. Maternal anesthesia and fetal neurodevelopment. *International journal of obstetric anesthesia*. 2012;21(2):152–162.
349. Nanda K, Lopez LM, Grimes DA, Peloggia A, Nanda G. Expectant care versus surgical treatment for miscarriage. *Cochrane database of systematic reviews (Online)*. 2012;3:CD003518.
350. Knudson MM, Rozycki GS, Strear CM. Reproductive system trauma. In: Mattox KL, Feliciano DV, Moore EE, eds. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2000:879-905.
351. Govind SK, Merritt NH. A 15 year cohort review of in-hospital pediatric trauma center mortality: a catalyst for injury prevention programming. *Am J Surg*. 2018.
352. Schmitz B, Albrecht S. Pediatric trauma anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesth*. 2002;15:187–191.
353. Cottrell DJ, Seidman PA. Complications of pediatric trauma: effects on pediatric trauma anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesth*. 2001;14:233–236.
354. Cullen A, Terris M, Ford R. Spinal clearance in unconscious children following traumatic brain injury. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(7):711–716.
355. Vanderhave KL, Ciravuri S, Caird MS, et al. Cervical spine trauma in children and adults: perioperative considerations. *J Amer Acad Ortho Surg*. 2011;19(6):319–327.
356. Ivashkov Y, Bhanaker SM. Perioperative management of pediatric trauma patients. *Int J Crit Illn Inj Sci*. 2012;2(3):143–148.
357. Clebone A. Pediatric trauma transfusion and cognitive aids. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2018;31:201–206.
358. Watts DD, Trask A, Soeken K, Perdue P, Dols S, Kaufmann C. Hypothermic coagulopathy in trauma: effect of varying levels of hypothermia on enzyme speed, platelet function, and fibrinolytic activity. *J Trauma*. 1998;44(5):846–854.
359. Gilley M, Beno S. Damage control resuscitation in pediatric trauma. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2018;30:1–6.
360. Michelet D, Arslan O, Hilly J, et al. Intraoperative changes in blood pressure associated with cerebral desaturation in infants. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(7):681–688.
361. Urban D, Dehaeck R, Lorenzetti D, et al. Safety and efficacy of tranexamic acid in bleeding paediatric trauma patients: a systematic review protocol. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6(9):e012947.
362. Bonne S, Schuerer DJ. Trauma in the older adult: epidemiology and evolving geriatric trauma principles. *Clin Geriatr Med*. 2013;29(1):137–150.
363. Hashmi A, Ibrahim-Zada I, Rhee P, et al. Predictors of mortality in geriatric trauma patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2014;76(3):894–901.
364. Brown CVR, Rix K, Klein AL, et al. A comprehensive investigation of comorbidities, mechanisms, injury patterns, and outcomes in geriatric blunt trauma patients. *Am Surg*. 2016;82(11):1055–1062.
365. Joseph B, Zangbar B, Pandit V, et al. Mortality after trauma laparotomy in geriatric patients. *J Surg Res*. 2014;190(2):662–666.
366. Bulger EM, Arneson MA, Mock CN, Jurkovich GJ. Rib fractures in the elderly. *J Trauma*. 2000;48(6):1040–1046; discussion 1046-1047.
367. Joyce MF, Gupta A, Azocar RJ. Acute trauma and multiple injuries in the elderly population. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2015;28(2):145–150.
368. Lawson T, Ralph C. Perioperative Jehovah's Witnesses: a review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(5):676–687.
369. Gannon CJ, Napolitano LM. Severe anemia after gastrointestinal hemorrhage in a Jehovah's Witness: new treatment strategies. *Critical Care Medicine*. 2002;30(8):1893–1895.
370. McConachie SM, Almadrahi Z, Wahby KA, Wilhelm SM. Pharmacotherapy in acutely anemic jehovah's witnesses: an evidence-based review. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2018. 1060028018766656.
371. Beecher HK. Relationship of significance of wound to pain experienced. *Journal of the American Medical Association*. 1956;161(17):1609–1613.
372. Breslau N. Epidemiologic studies of trauma, posttraumatic stress disorder, and other psychiatric disorders. *Canadian journal of psychiatry Revue canadienne de psychiatrie*. 2002;47(10):923–929.
373. Backonja M, Glanzman RL. Gabapentin dosing for neuropathic pain: evidence from randomized, placebo-controlled clinical trials. *Clinical therapeutics*. 2003;25(1):81–104.
374. Forouzanfar T, Koke AJ, van KM, Weber WE. Treatment of complex regional pain syndrome type I. *European journal of pain (London, England)*. 2002;6(2):105–122.
375. Samet RE, Slade IR. Regional anesthesia for the acute trauma patient. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2018;8(1):94–106.
376. Holte K, Kehlet H. Effect of postoperative epidural analgesia on surgical outcome. *Minerva anestesiologica*. 2002;68(4):157–161.

67

Prehospital Care for Medical Emergencies and Trauma

BENN MORRIE LANCMAN, SIMON ANDREW HENDEL, JEROME C. CROWLEY, and YVONNE Y. LAI

KEY POINTS

- After World War II, the subspecialty of prehospital emergency medicine evolved with leadership from doctors in anesthesiology. In many countries, prehospital emergency medicine is considered the fourth pillar along with anesthesiology, critical care, and pain therapy.
- Emergency medical service (EMS) systems differ among and within countries. When these differences were put together, two primary models evolved. In the United States, paramedics provide prehospital care for all patients (single-tiered system). In many European countries, EMS-physicians lead the prehospital care for patients requiring advanced life support (two-tiered system).
- The core approach of managing prehospital emergencies involves basic life support and advanced life support.
- Rapid, simultaneous assessment and triage form the cornerstone of prehospital care—the use of a primary survey and limited diagnostic adjuncts can ensure transport to the most appropriate care setting.
- In major trauma, prehospital care must limit the time spent on the scene, control hemorrhage, and expedite transport to a trauma center, ideally via a rescue helicopter. Although this approach has been used both in the military (e.g., Vietnam) and in civilian locations, it is not always possible. Prehospital intravenous fluid resuscitation for major trauma varies in approach. Patients with penetrating torso injuries and hemorrhagic shock may benefit from limited intravenous fluid resuscitation and permissive hypotension, in particular in urban settings. Prevention of the lethal triad of hypothermia, acidosis, and coagulopathy is of paramount importance.
- In acute coronary syndrome and stroke, achieving rapid reperfusion of the ischemic tissue is the priority. Because only specialized centers provide 24-hour cardiac catheter service or stroke teams, rapid transport to acute myocardial infarction or stroke centers is critical. In response to a myocardial infarction, morphine, oxygen, nitrates, and aspirin are the main components of prehospital therapy. Fibrinolysis for myocardial infarction has been used with significant success in the prehospital setting but requires very close supervision by EMS physicians.
- The future of EMS will likely see an increased use of telehealth, which can narrow the time gap between the hospital and the field. This will facilitate improved field and hospital diagnostics and treatments, and ensure more efficient handoffs when arriving at the receiving hospital.

Background

The heritage of the modern emergency medical service (EMS) can be traced to the late 1700s with the approach to triage and forward patient retrieval of Napoleon's chief surgeon, Dominique Jean Larrey. Later, in 1832, in London, transport carriages were introduced for cholera patients. The rationale for the introduction of such carriages was that the "curative process commences the instant the patient is put into the carriage."[1] Americans adopted this concept during the American Civil War, when General Jonathan Letterman, a Union military surgeon, created the first organized system in the United States to transport injured patients. Civilian EMS systems in the United States evolved subsequently—with the first one forming in Cincinnati in 1865.

It was nearly a century later in the 1960s when changes in medical technology and knowledge joined forces with political will to formalize the concept of prehospital care. In the early 1960s, two major clinical advances occurred—cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) for life support of the patient in cardiac arrest, and the development of portable external defibrillators. These two advancements provided the foundation of advanced cardiac life support (ACLS). This, in turn, led to the concept of trained community members to respond to emergencies to improve outcome.

In 1965, President Lyndon Johnson created the President's Committee for Traffic Safety, which published the report *Health, Medical Care, and Transportation of the Injured*. It identified motor vehicle crashes as a significant public health concern. The committee recommended a national program to reduce highway deaths and injuries.

Additionally, in 1966, a report was released by the National Academy of Sciences titled *Accidental Death and Disability: The Neglected Disease of Modern Society*. It emphasized the need to address the quality of prehospital emergency medical care as it recognized that ambulances were ill-equipped and inappropriately staffed.

These two documents paved the way for the Highway Safety Act of 1966, which was passed by Congress and ultimately led to the formation of the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) within the Department of Transportation. The NHTSA developed a national EMS curriculum which, in 1969, became the standard for emergency medical technician (EMT) training in the United States. In 1973, Congress further passed the EMS Systems Act, granting funds for the development of regional EMS systems. As a result, various states established a total of approximately 300 EMS regions with associated federal support. In the United States, the responsibility of EMS then shifted from federal to state level in 1981, which created heterogeneity in the system.

During the same period of time, EMS and prehospital medical systems were similarly evolving in most developed countries outside the United States. All had unique aspects and points of difference, mostly influenced by the local geography, political will, origin, and resources. The fundamental mission of EMS systems remained common—to deliver the best possible prehospital care to the right patients, in the right timeframe, and to transport them safely to a higher level of care.

Some systems evolved to be predominantly staffed by physicians, while others were staffed almost exclusively by paramedics with no to very minor physician involvement, and most fell somewhere between the two—with at least the capacity for a combined physician-paramedic crew.

BASIC VERSUS ADVANCED LIFE SUPPORT AND BEYOND

CPR was developed in 1960 when the American Heart Association started a program to train physicians in mouth-to-mouth resuscitation (expired air resuscitation) with associated external chest compressions. This led to the development of a tiered system: basic life support (BLS) and advanced life support (ALS) to denote the different skillsets of responders in an organized EMS.

First responders (such as police officers, firefighters, EMTs, and paramedics) are generally the first to arrive to an emergency and can provide medical assistance. A tiered system with different skillsets helps to make the scope of practice and role delineation clearer in the often chaotic prehospital environment.

BASIC LIFE SUPPORT

The adult BLS sequence is circulation-airway-breathing (C-A-B). The goal is to ensure continuous blood (and by proxy, oxygen) supply to major organs. Firefighters, lifeguards, and police officers are often BLS certified because they are often the first to a scene and the application of BLS does not require specialized medical knowledge, per se.

CPR and the use of an automated external defibrillator (AED) are considered BLS skills and the increasing availability of automated defibrillators makes it ever more likely that “unskilled” members of the community will be the first to deliver defibrillation in the event of an out-of-hospital cardiac arrest (OHCA). BLS also includes simple airway maneuvers such as chin lift, jaw thrust, and oxygen administration. For trauma care, basic skills include airway management such as simple airway maneuvers, oropharyngeal and nasopharyngeal airways, and bag-mask ventilation.

Besides CPR and automated external defibrillation, BLS also includes hemorrhage control, and fracture and cervical spine immobilization. In the trauma patient who has suffered a primary traumatic cardiac arrest, CPR is unlikely to be of benefit and may, in fact, detract from useful life saving interventions. This relative controversy will be discussed later in the chapter. The decision not to perform CPR in the resuscitation of the arrested trauma patient should be made by personnel specifically trained at least at the ALS level—and probably only in advanced prehospital systems that include suitably skilled physicians or intensive care paramedics.

ADVANCED LIFE SUPPORT, INTENSIVE CARE–LEVEL PREHOSPITAL CARE

The knowledge and skills necessary to successfully perform ALS are built upon the firm foundations of BLS. For example, even the most experienced prehospital or trauma practitioner relies upon basic airway maneuvers to maintain oxygenation when more sophisticated techniques have failed.

In the prehospital environment, ALS is most often provided by paramedics (advanced EMT practitioners). In many jurisdictions, however, there is a level of prehospital care above ALS, and, outside the United States, combined physician-paramedic crewed helicopter emergency medical services (HEMS) are common. In places where doctors are not part of a HEMS response, paramedics with advanced and intensive care skillsets are often used. This enables the resuscitation bay to essentially be taken to the patient, and, in addition, for advanced resuscitation to be maintained throughout transport. The rationale for these advanced prehospital teams is to maximize the opportunity, while minimizing the time delay for delivery of the advanced trauma care that severely ill or injured patients need.

The provision of advanced, hospital-level interventions (e.g., advanced airway management such as endotracheal intubation, thoracostomy, resuscitative thoracotomy, and commencement of blood product transfusion) remain areas of significant controversy when applied to the prehospital environment. The question of whether it is better to prioritize caring for the patient in the field (“stay and play”) or to prioritize expedited transport (“scoop and run”) is an old and polarizing one. In environments where transport times are prolonged due to expansive distances (such as Australia), delivering advanced interventions early can be lifesaving. On the other hand, prolonging scene times and delaying presentation to definitive trauma care in order to initiate treatment in the field is unlikely to be in the patient’s best interest in other settings. In all mature trauma systems (incorporating the prehospital and in-hospital phases of care), a balance will need to be struck between these two competing priorities.

The reality is that on a population-wide scale, it is rare for anyone to need the advanced services of an EMT, let alone an HEMS prehospital resuscitation team. It is difficult, therefore, to adequately power a study to show a difference between the various models of prehospital care, if such a difference exists. As such, individual prehospital and in-hospital trauma systems have adapted to fulfill the perceived requirements of their population and account for areas of operational limitation.

Training for ALS EMTs now requires a rigorous educational background, and includes skills in advanced and invasive monitoring, diagnostics, and management. Systems functioning at or above the ALS level provide a more comprehensive assessment and stabilization of the trauma patient. In the United States, providers certified at the paramedic level (EMT-P) can perform any of these interventions, whereas providers certified at the intermediate level (EMT-I) may perform a select subset of these skills. Other jurisdictions have comparable delineations of skillset.

Emergency Medical Technician and Paramedic-Based Emergency Medical Service Systems

Specially trained EMTs and paramedics form the bulk of the workforce of EMS systems in North America and in many other developed nations. Under U.S. law, physicians, functioning as EMS directors, are required to approve the medical operations of the EMS systems they oversee. This includes communication, clinical operations, and governance.

In the United States, there are three levels of EMTs based on their level of education and training: EMT-basic (EMT-B), EMT-intermediate (EMT-I), and EMT-paramedic (EMT-P). The primary focus of the EMT-B is to provide basic emergency medical care (using BLS skills) and transportation to a healthcare system. They typically staff nonemergency ambulances and may also respond to nonemergency calls. EMT-I practitioners, or advanced EMTs, provide basic and limited advanced emergency medical care and transportation. They are regulated differently and their skills range between BLS and ALS depending on state regulations. EMT-P is the highest skillset within EMTs in the United States. They undergo intensive 1- to 2-year training in advanced prehospital emergency care. They are ALS trained and can perform procedures such as endotracheal intubation, administration of drugs, and manual defibrillation.

In many other countries, paramedics are required to complete bachelor-level university degrees and are nationally or regionally registered by regulatory bodies—in a similar way that medical practitioners are licensed. In some regions, such as in most states of Australia and in many countries in Western Europe, intensive care paramedics have advanced skills in complex medical and trauma management as well as casualty access and rescue skills.

Primary Survey and Initial Assessment at the Scene

The primary survey is usually performed in the same ABCDE (airway-breathing-circulation, disability-exposure) mnemonic format that is widely known from ACLS. Since 2010, the American Heart Association has recommended changing their ABC approach (airway-breathing-compressions) to CAB (compressions-airway-breathing), emphasizing circulation prior to airway. This is particularly relevant for someone in cardiac arrest to bring focus to chest compressions. It is also relevant to the trauma patient suffering critical bleeding. If you can hear the bleeding, you should stop it first!

The approach, therefore, in the prehospital major trauma patient is C-ABCDE. Strategies for prehospital management of critical hemorrhage are discussed in more detail elsewhere in the chapter, but broadly, options include direct pressure, deep wound packing, use of novel hemostatics (there are several on the market), and tourniquets for extremity hemorrhage (the Combat Application Tourniquet [CAT] is the most widely used). Specific techniques can be used for major maxillofacial hemorrhage, which include nasal packing, or balloon tamponade devices (such as the Rapid Rhino), dental splints, and immobilization of the jaw with a hard, cervical spinal collar.

Novel approaches using resuscitative endovascular balloon occlusion of the aorta (REBOA) to manage critical bleeding in pelvic trauma in the absence of chest trauma are not yet widespread. Indeed, prehospital REBOA has been used successfully on only one documented occasion by London’s Air Ambulance. It remains an area of significant controversy and of limited evidence.

Once critical bleeding has been identified and temporarily controlled, moving through the remainder of the primary survey in a rapid yet methodical way is warranted. If there is airway (A) obstruction, the obstruction should be cleared and the airway secured if necessary. While it will often be appropriate to perform a rapid sequence intubation in the prehospital environment, it may not always be necessary or beneficial. A balance must be struck between delaying transfer, likely disposition once in hospital, distance to definitive care, and skillset available. Most prehospital services continue to secure the cervical spine with a hard collar for transport and this would be applied at this time.

Breathing (B) becomes the next priority; after the airway is cleared and possibly secured, a patient’s breathing is assessed by observing respiratory rate, pattern, and degree of chest rise and fall. Supplemental oxygen and assisted ventilation may be indicated. Immediately reversible causes of potentially fatal chest trauma, such as tension pneumothoraces, may also be identified and treated with minimal delay to patient transfer. In the case of tension pneumothoraces, many advanced prehospital services (especially those with medical-paramedic HEMS crews) have adopted a finger thoracostomy approach to chest decompression, rather than needle thoracostomy, to achieve a more definitive endpoint early and minimize the risk of reaccumulation of the pneumothorax in transit. Of course, this definitive care may not be available prehospital in all jurisdictions.

Circulation (C) is next assessed by palpating pulses, checking for heart rate, pulse quality and regularity, measuring blood pressure, and again assessing for sources of hemorrhage. As an approximation, a palpable carotid pulse corresponds to a systolic blood pressure of at least 70 mm Hg, and a palpable radial pulse to a systolic blood pressure of 80 to 90 mm Hg.

Also, as part of the primary survey, large-bore intravenous access is obtained. Early fluid management in the trauma patient has been a contentious issue in trauma management for many years. There has been much discussion in the scientific and prehospital literature in relation to the role of crystalloid fluid in the early resuscitation of the trauma patient. Over the past decade there has been a significant shift away from the aggressive use of crystalloid and a shift toward early administration of blood products in the prehospital environment. Some prehospital retrieval services carry red cells only, whereas some (particularly in the United Kingdom) also carry freeze-dried plasma products. In the trauma patient with no concomitant head injury, achieving a systolic blood pressure of 90 mm Hg is ideal (so-called "permissive hypotension"). The only caveat to this blood pressure target is in the head-injured patient. If head injury is present or suspected, then hypotension should be avoided. Indeed, available evidence suggests that in the presence of severe head injury, a single episode of systolic hypotension below 90 mm Hg may double mortality.

As part of the assessment of circulation, suspected long bone fractures can be immobilized with CT-6 (or equivalent) splints and the patient may be packaged in a vacuum mat for transport. If the prehospital team has the capability and expertise, an extended focused assessment with sonography in trauma (e-FAST) exam can be performed as part of the circulatory assessment. This may assist in identifying pneumothoraces before transport and may also reveal other major sources of bleeding that can be relayed to the receiving center.

Disability (D) is measured using the Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS). The GCS is made up of three parts: eyes, verbal response, and motor response. The best patient response is recorded. In the GCS, a maximum of 4 points are allocated for eye opening, 1 being unresponsive and 4 being eyes open; a maximum of 5 points are allocated to verbal response, with 1 being unresponsive and 5 being alert and oriented; and a maximum of 6 points are allocated to motor response, with 1 being unresponsive and 6 for the patient who obeys commands. The highest possible score is 15 and the lowest score possible is 3. As a general rule, patients with GCS score of 8 to 9 have alteration in their conscious state significant enough so as to no longer have the ability to protect their own airway. Assessment of exposure and environment (E) and measures to defend core body temperature completes the primary survey and patient packaging process.

It is important to note that the management of the trauma patient in the prehospital environment relies on concurrent activity within the team. The key to prehospital diagnosis and treatment is the initiation of important treatment as problems are identified, while minimizing unnecessary time spent at the scene. The focus of professional prehospital teams is avoiding the "therapeutic vacuum," or time where nothing useful is happening for the patient.

On arrival, and having assessed the scene, the prehospital care team must rapidly obtain a relevant and focused history of the patient and the events surrounding the incident. In the case of trauma, the ATMIST and AMPLE mnemonics provide a useful framework for gathering key initial information. ATMIST stands for age, time of incident, mechanism of injury, injuries sustained, vital signs (initial and subsequent), and treatment given so far. The AMPLE approach can then be applied to gather specific and relevant history. AMPLE stands for allergies, medications (regular and acute), past history, last meal (menses, tetanus injection) and the events surrounding the injury.

MONITORS

Standard monitors in the prehospital setting include pulse oximetry, noninvasive arterial blood pressure monitoring, electrocardiography (ECG), temperature, and capnography. Indeed, the standards of patient monitoring in the mature EMS or prehospital retrieval service are as high as in most critical care areas of a major hospital. The main difference, of course, is that the monitor display itself must be capable of withstanding the environmental rigors of the prehospital environment, be easily carried, and have a long battery life. There are many commercially available monitors (and ventilators, infusion pumps, and other equipment for that matter) that are approved for flight and designed to be robust across a range of transport platforms and environmental extremes.

POINT OF CARE ULTRASOUND

Portable and affordable ultrasound machines now make point-of-care (POC) ultrasound in the prehospital setting common. In Europe, the United Kingdom, and Australia, where physicians are active in the prehospital management of patients, this becomes even more practical to use. A Dutch observational study showed that 61% of ultrasound examinations impacted decisions in 88% of patients both in prehospital and once they reached definitive care.[2] POC ultrasound is not limited to cardiac arrest; as mentioned earlier, abdominal ultrasound has also been shown to impact treatment decisions and in experienced hands, does not significantly delay treatment.[3]

Out-of-Hospital Cardiac Arrest

Survival from sudden cardiac arrest is highly dependent on early CPR and early defibrillation. Communities have placed an increasing emphasis on bystander CPR, community accessible AEDs, and rapid response of EMS providers.[4]

When the EMS arrives on the scene, the "Universal Treatment Algorithm" is started.[5] Chest compressions continue until cardiac monitoring is placed and it is determined whether defibrillation is appropriate. Pharmacotherapy and airway management remain poorly defined. Optimal airway management in OHCA has not been established, and studies have shown that resuscitation with medications increases likelihood of the return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC) without improved outcome.[6]

The likelihood of ROSC will depend in large part on the etiology of the cardiac arrest as well as the presence of adequate bystander CPR. By far the most common cause of OHCA is from cardiac pathology.

ACUTE CORONARY SYNDROME

Over 5.5 million patients in the United States present to emergency departments with chest pain as their primary complaint. Almost 50% of these patients arrive by ambulance.[7] Any mature EMS system needs to be well equipped to manage this common and potentially life-threatening presentation. For a patient presenting with chest pain in the prehospital setting, three things need to happen: (1) diagnosis be made, (2) treatment commenced, and (3) triage to facility.

PREHOSPITAL DIAGNOSIS AND ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHY

The prehospital ECG is essential in the assessment and triage of patients with chest pain and making the diagnosis of ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction (STEMI). It has been shown through multiple studies that prehospital ECGs are not only technically feasible but they also decreased the time from presentation to reperfusion.[8] This finding has been replicated in rural settings.[9] A recent study looking at clinical outcomes with use of prehospital ECGs showed that the adjusted risk of mortality was lower in cases where ECGs were used.[10]

PREHOSPITAL TREATMENT AND FIBRINOLYSIS

Primary percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) is the treatment of choice for STEMI patients if this therapy can be performed within 90 minutes of onset or less. When a patient is unable to receive mechanical reperfusion within that time window (either because of geographic isolation or arrival at a non-PCI community hospital) then evidence supports the use of fibrinolysis followed by PCI within 24 hours.[11] It was subsequently demonstrated that a paramedic-based prehospital fibrinolysis program was practical and feasible in reducing time to treatment with favorable clinical outcomes.[12]

MECHANICAL CIRCULATORY SUPPORT

Prehospital Extracorporeal Cardiac Life Support

Recently extracorporeal cardiac life support (ECLS) has been introduced to the prehospital environment for treatment of OHCA patients in some very select settings. The use of mechanical ECLS in the prehospital setting remains controversial. Whether initiated in the field or in the emergency department, there is insufficient evidence to guide broad-based adoption of this practice. Multiple case reports have demonstrated some utility, but this therapy should not detract from high-quality ACLS.[13-15]

Respiratory Distress

Respiratory distress is a common complaint necessitating prehospital medical intervention.[16] Management requires rapid identification of emergent conditions and subsequent intervention to prevent further deterioration. Unfortunately, dyspnea, the perception of respiratory distress, can be influenced by a variety of factors and patient complaint alone is insufficient to identify the underlying cause or its severity. Early stabilization of respiratory function regardless of the underlying pathology is important to avoid significant morbidity and mortality. Even for anesthesiologists who are not participating in prehospital care, it is important to have a familiarity with these conditions as emergent or urgent surgical patients may present with dyspnea that is not fully evaluated and their initial management will fall on the anesthesia team in the perioperative period.

EVALUATION

Initial evaluation of the patient in respiratory distress is structured to identify patients at risk for rapid progression to respiratory failure and identify the need for invasive support. Respiratory rate is an easily obtainable vital sign, and a rate of more than 30 breaths per minute would be defined as abnormal. It is important to consider that other factors, such as anxiety and intoxications, can affect the respiratory rate. Other physical signs include stridor, upper airway obstruction, inability to speak in full sentences, and cyanosis. Pulse oximetry has emerged as a standard monitor for detecting hypoxemia, although it should be noted that a patient can have significant respiratory pathology while maintaining a clinically acceptable oxygen saturation.[16] Developing a differential of dyspnea can be challenging but may be simplified if the clinician considers the underlying organ system likely to be the culprit. Table 67.1 provides a comprehensive, but not exhaustive, list of causes of dyspnea that an anesthesiologist should be familiar with in the emergent and prehospital setting.

MANAGEMENT

Initial management of the patient with dyspnea in the field involves stabilization when possible and rapid transport to a facility that can provide definitive care. Interventions in the prehospital setting can range in complexity depending on the needs of the patient and the skillset of the providers. Common interventions include supplemental oxygen for the management of hypoxia, inhaled bronchodilators for wheeze, and bag-mask ventilation or intubation for fulminant respiratory failure. Prehospital care also will often include needle decompression for suspected tension pneumothorax (although increasingly finger thoracostomy is performed) and epinephrine administration for suspected anaphylaxis. Comprehensive management of these conditions is beyond the scope of this chapter; however some pearls related to respiratory distress are in Box 67.1.

Neurologic Injury and Head Injury

Diseases of the central nervous system pose a significant challenge to the prehospital provider. Many of the familiar techniques used by clinicians to gather important information are unavailable. An unconscious or post-ictal or post-seizure patient will not be able to provide useful clinical history and even gathering basic identifying information can be a challenge. These issues are magnified in the prehospital environment. This section will provide an overview of the major priorities and challenges that face the prehospital provider when confronted with a neurologic event in the field. For further clinical detail on the management of these conditions please refer to the Chapters 84 and 66.

TABLE 67.1 Etiologies of Dyspnea

Organ System	Conditions
Pulmonary	Airway obstruction Pulmonary embolus Noncardiogenic pulmonary edema Acute respiratory distress syndrome Pneumonia Anaphylaxis Obstructive sleep apnea Asthma Cor pulmonale/pulmonary hypertension Aspiration Pleural effusion Malignancy Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
Cardiac	Cardiogenic pulmonary edema Acute coronary syndrome Tamponade Pericarditis Congenital cardiac disease Valvular heart disease Cardiomyopathy
Neurologic	Cerebrovascular accident Intracranial hemorrhage Organophosphate poisoning Multiple sclerosis Guillain-Barré syndrome Tick paralysis Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis Polymyositis Porphyria
Trauma	Pneumothorax (tension vs. simple) Hemothorax Diaphragm injury Tamponade Rib fractures
Abdominal	Acidosis/shock from abdominal catastrophe Splinting from abdominal pain Pregnancy Ascites
Psychogenic	Panic attack Somatization disorders Hyperventilation syndrome
Metabolic/endocrine	Toxic ingestion Diabetic ketoacidosis Renal failure/metabolic acidosis Electrolyte abnormalities Fever Thyrotoxicosis
Infectious	Pneumonia Epiglottitis
Hematologic	Carbon monoxide poisoning Cyanide poisoning Anemia Sickle cell crisis (acute chest syndrome)

Adapted from Braithwaite S, Perina D. Dypsnea. In: Walls R, Hockberger R, Gausche-Hill M, eds. *Rosen's Emergency Medicine: Concepts and Clinical Practice*. 9th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.

TRAUMATIC BRAIN INJURY

Traumatic brain injury is a major cause of morbidity to patients who have been traumatically injured. From the moment of injury all care should be focused on maximizing the survival of remaining neuronal tissue. Specific parameters outlined in Chapter 66 are followed with particular emphasis on minimizing secondary injury.

BOX 67.1 **Pearls (Precepts, Dicta) for Respiratory Distress**

- Rule out life-threatening, rapidly progressive causes such as tension pneumothorax or acute coronary syndrome prior to initiating a more thorough workup for causes of shortness of breath
- A normal oxygen saturation does not mean a patient is without significant respiratory pathology
- The majority of patients with respiratory distress are related to pulmonary or cardiac causes; however, the astute clinician should always keep in mind additional causes in the appropriate clinical context
- Chronic conditions tend to be better tolerated than acute ones. For example, chronic mitral regurgitation is well tolerated until it becomes severe whereas acute mitral regurgitation is a medical emergency
- The acuity of onset of the condition is helpful for determining the cause. For example, a patient with a chronic neuromuscular disorder who presents with an acute worsening likely has an additional explanation for his or her shortness of breath
- There is no clinical finding that rules out pulmonary embolism and a low threshold for further workup should be maintained in the appropriate patient
- Unnecessary supplemental oxygen does not have a benefit and likely leads to preventable harms

SPINAL CORD INJURY

Patients with spinal cord injury (SCI) present unique challenges to the prehospital provider. Patients rarely injure themselves in locations where access and maintenance of spinal precautions is easy. Balancing the risk of worsening or causing injury must be weighed against the necessity of moving the patient to a suitable transport platform. It is important to note that transporting a patient as carefully as practical is very unlikely to generate enough force to cause an injury that is not already present.

With this in mind, the safest approach for handling potential SCI cases is to assume such an injury is present in any mechanism that could result in significant SCI, but also not to delay lifesaving treatment in preference of spinal precautions.

Spinal immobilization techniques have received increased scrutiny over the past decade. The hard-cervical collar is no longer considered the "magic bullet" of cervical spine immobilization. Hard spinal boards are also falling out of favor with many emergency services around the world. Regardless of the jurisdiction, if "hard" immobilization devices are used, there is a shift toward using them for as short a period of time as possible. Depending on the expected transport time from the scene there may be a role for early application of Philadelphia- or Aspen-style collars with transport in a vacuum mat. The main advantage of cervical spine collars is that they alert the receiving hospital that this patient might have c-spine injury and needs according attention. It is possible that this can be achieved with a soft collar, avoiding some of the risks of prolonged hard collar immobilization. This is particularly relevant for the older patient with fragile skin or for the patient requiring prolonged transfer.

ACUTE STROKE MANAGEMENT

Stroke is a much feared and potentially debilitating condition. While it can be more difficult to identify the location of a particular stroke without a detailed neurologic exam, the ability to provide targeted reperfusion therapy for large vessel stroke has seen a drastic change in the expected outcome for those patients. Much like percutaneous interventions for heart attacks, interventional neuroradiology is able to drastically change the clinical trajectory of a ”brain attack.” Minimizing the ischemic time for neuronal tissue becomes the priority. Thus, early diagnosis, activation of neuroradiology, and timely transport become essential to achieving optimal clinical outcomes. This has resulted in some jurisdictions deploying thrombolysis in the field. Recent major studies were halted early due to evidence of benefit for those patients who received thrombectomy. As such, transporting these patients to a center that can provide clot retrieval is important. To maximize the speed of diagnosis, mobile stroke units have been developed that contain a portable computed tomography scanner and capacity for “teleradiology” to make a radiologic diagnosis in the field. While these platforms have been launched with significant enthusiasm, they remain the exception across the developed world, and potentially of questionable cost-benefit.

SEIZURE

Seizure is a common presenting complaint and makes up approximately 1% of all emergency department admissions. First responders are therefore often required to provide emergency medical management and, where appropriate, supportive care during transport to hospital. The detailed management of status epilepticus is covered in Chapter 57, but patients with status epilepticus have improved outcomes when treatment is commenced in the field by EMS providers.

ALTERED MENTAL STATUS

Altered mental status covers a broad range of conditions affecting a patient’s cognition. In the prehospital environment, first responders may be required to assess, treat, and safely transport people with a range of underlying disorders. Patients may be drug affected, head injured, delirious, or suffering from a wide range of medical or neurosurgical disorders. Prehospital providers may need to treat patients with altered mental status in their own home, at a motor vehicle accident scene, or in any number of complex environments. As with any scene, providing a safe environment for the providers as well as for the patient is of utmost importance.

When the need arises, pharmacologic sedation may be utilized to facilitate safe transport to a healthcare facility. Providers are expected to assess and treat any easily reversible causes of altered mental status such as hypoglycemia or hypoxia, but many precipitants are outside the scope of a field diagnosis. Collateral history is increasingly important to determine the timeline for the changes in mental status and how far the patient’s current altered state has departed from normal.

Prehospital Trauma

Trauma remains a significant burden of disease globally and is the greatest cause of death for those under 40 years of age. As has been demonstrated in previous chapters in this text, early access to definitive care is the single greatest modifier in the survivability of a major traumatic event. Trauma patients’ need for advanced and specialized trauma care begins at the moment of injury, hence delays in transport or delivery of definitive care contribute to poor outcome. Accordingly, the prehospital management of trauma patients has the potential to start the process of recovery from the point of injury. It is essential that anesthesiologists working in receiving hospitals understand the capacity, unique challenges, and limitations of providing care in the prehospital environment so they can be prepared to continue with ongoing care. Understanding what can (and cannot) be done in the prehospital environment minimizes duplication and stagnation of care in-hospital, and is essential to avoiding the therapeutic vacuum.

TRIAGE

Triage is the process of prioritizing and allocating resources based on clinical need and urgency. Routinely, higher-level responses are dispatched to the most acutely sick or injured patients. First responder systems and processes differ within and among nations. Depending on the specific first responder system of the country, the first response providers could be any combination of road ambulance (staffed by paramedics/EMTs of variable skillsets or physicians), higher acuity “fast-cars” containing a physician or advanced practice EMTs (sometimes referred to as intensive care paramedics), or HEMS crews. The triage system in most developed EMS systems is activated via a standard phone number. This number varies from region to region and can be reached via landline or cellular networks (911 in the United States, 999 in the United Kingdom, 000 in Australia, and 112 from cellular telephones worldwide). Once activated, trained nonmedical dispatchers utilize a standardized script to determine urgency and location, and provide bystander advice and support. An appropriate emergency medical resource is tasked to respond. Alternatively, the system may be activated for a partner emergency service such as police or fire to respond to an incident, or all three emergency services may be required at an incident site.

SCENE SECURITY

For providers who predominantly practice in-hospital, it can be easy to take the relative luxuries of lighting, environmental control, and personal security for granted. For first responders and others who deliver trauma care in the prehospital environment, there are many hazards that need to be considered and addressed to ensure as safe an environment as possible—for themselves and their patient.

Some examples of hazards that need to be considered and/or addressed are included in Table 67.2.

The priority on arrival at the scene is to ensure safety for self, the crew, bystanders, and then the patient. It is also important to rapidly assess the number and nature of injured, so a further triage can occur. If the number or severity of injured exceeds the capacity of the on-scene crew, then additional resources should be requested. For the purposes of this chapter we will consider only one injured patient. For considerations in the mass casualty context, refer to Chapter 68.

TABLE 67.2 Environmental and Human Hazards

Environmental Hazards	Human Hazards
▪ Live power cables ▪ Fire ▪ Spilled chemicals/fuel ▪ Other vehicles/cars/traffic ▪ Enclosed spaces/inadequate ventilation ▪ Unsafe/stable buildings/trees ▪ Extreme weather (sun/rain/snow) ▪ Biological hazards	▪ Active shooters ▪ Distressed family/friends ▪ Intoxicated bystanders ▪ Panicked/distressed crowds ▪ Complex or insecure scenes (e.g., subsequent to terrorist attack, conflict zones)

PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SURVEYS

First responders have been trained to approach the primary survey with the same mindset and using the same principles of Advanced Trauma Life Support (ATLS). The focus of the prehospital primary survey is to perform a rapid initial assessment identifying, assessing, and treating life-threatening injuries. It differs from the in-hospital primary survey in that there is the inherent imperative to secure and package the patient for transport at the same time as assessing and treating. In some circles providers have looked to dichotomize the clinical approach in the field between the two extreme positions of "stay and play" and "scoop and run." In reality, neither approach presents a one-size-fits-all, and providers need to consider the individualized requirements of their patient based on injury, skillset, transfer time, resources, and environmental constraints—and then adapt the clinical approach to balance these priorities and optimize the patient's care.

STAY AND PLAY

The stay and play concept refers to the approach of maximizing the amount of definitive clinical treatment that occurs in the field before transport to the receiving hospital. By providing maximal appropriate treatment in the field, the intent is to minimize the clinical insult of the injury or illness. The rationale for stay and play is that if the patient needs advanced trauma care from the moment of injury, then that care should be delivered to them early on. In reality, it is not as simple as merely transporting a one-person trauma resuscitation bay to the patient. Treatments provided in the field can be more difficult to achieve. Despite ever-increasing standards of prehospital resuscitation and more easily available diagnostic equipment, reduced sterility and limited diagnostics and monitoring remain an issue for prehospital teams. As such, each treatment needs to be considered in relation to its potential benefits weighed against the possible harm in delayed primary transfer. In recognition of this tension, many high-performing teams have developed focused, standard operating procedures to maximize their chance of first attempt success and minimize the time taken to perform tasks. A commonly performed intervention is rapid sequence intubation. "Kit-dumps" (Fig. 67.1) are commonly used both as a cognitive aid and as a workspace tool to improve team performance in the field. The strongest clinical prehospital team is one that possesses complementary and overlapping skills. It remains an inescapable reality that teams that are jointly staffed in physician/advanced paramedic configuration tend to have a broader scope and extended range of practice.

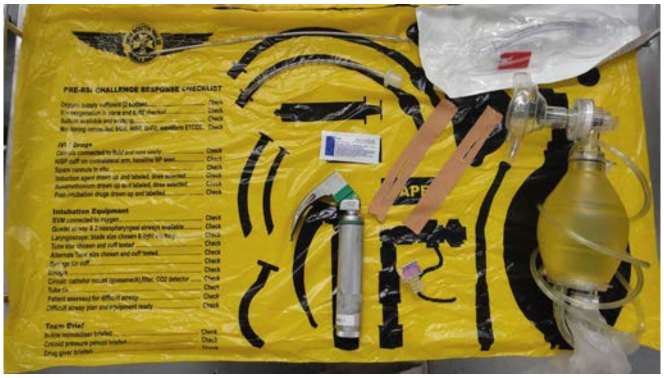


Fig. 67.1 "Kit-dumps" are commonly used both as a cognitive aid and as a workspace tool to improve team performance in the field. (Courtesy MedSTAR, Adelaide, South Australia.)

SCOOP AND RUN

The focus with the scoop and run approach is to minimize scene time and transport the patient to definitive care as soon as possible. Proponents of scoop and run argue that the time to definitive care is what makes the difference, hence the patient should be moved as quickly as possible to a trauma center—with only the barest of essential life-saving interventions performed at the scene. Depending on the expected transport time, this philosophy may be entirely appropriate for many trauma patients. Any interventions performed in this context would be for immediate lifesaving interventions only.

FURTHER CONSIDERATIONS

Prehospital providers are also expected to gather as much useful information from the scene as possible to guide ongoing care. Current medications, collateral medical history, and photos of the accident scene are all tasks that are expected to be undertaken whenever possible.

Transport destinations are often predetermined. Effort is made in most systems to deliver patients to the appropriate clinical location wherever possible. For example, a suspected myocardial infarction should be transported to a center where PCI is possible. Other acute subspecialty centers include stroke, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation, trauma, pediatrics, and burns. Factors such as patient preference and, in certain jurisdictions, level of insurance can also be considered where the clinical setting allows.

BALANCED RESUSCITATION

The early control of major hemorrhage has become the focus of any significant trauma resuscitation. As we gain greater understanding of the consequences of acute traumatic coagulopathy as well as the downstream impact of our clinical resuscitation, there has been a transition away from crystalloid-based fluid resuscitation toward "hemostatic" resuscitation fluids. Many ambulance services around the world now carry fractionated blood products—usually packed red blood cells, but an increasing number are carrying plasma. There is active research underway on the early administration of tranexamic acid (TXA) and the impact this may have on clinical outcomes after injury. The CRASH-2 trial demonstrated a mortality benefit when TXA was administered within 3 hours of injury. The hypothesis is that early application may result in greater benefits, although the trial was justifiably criticized for nonhomogeneity of trial sites. Challenges that still need to be addressed include issues such as blood crossmatching, fluid warming, stock control, and cost. There may also be a role for administration of clotting factor concentrates, but this has yet to translate into evidence.

HEMORRHAGE CONTROL

Together with the increased use of blood products in the field there has been a growing array of interventions available for stopping bleeding. The American College of Surgeons (ACS) has been coordinating a nationwide "Stop the Bleeding" campaign in the United States to improve the use and knowledge of hemorrhage control by bystanders. Techniques such as direct pressure, wound packing, and tourniquet application have been introduced to the bystander population.

ANTIFIBRINOLYTICS

The debate around the efficacy and safety of TXA use in the acute severe trauma patient continues. The results of the CRASH-2 trial have been adopted in many trauma systems. On the other hand, many remain unconvinced given the significant heterogeneity of trial sites in the study. The CRASH-2 trial did show a reduction in death from bleeding in trauma patients who received a 1-g intravenous dose of TXA within 3 hours of injury. This benefit did not extend if the first dose was given beyond 3 hours, where the trend was toward complications from thrombosis. There is also some concern that fibrinolysis is not occurring in all bleeding trauma patients and conceptually antifibrinolytic therapy may not be indicated. Additional trials such as the PATCH study are investigating whether targeted use of TXA conveys any survival benefit.

TOURNIQUETS

A CAT correctly placed can significantly reduce the volume of blood loss and arrest hemorrhage in time to transport a patient to definitive care.

RESUSCITATIVE ENDOVASCULAR BALLOON OCCLUSION OF THE AORTA

London's Air Ambulance (known more commonly as London HEMS) has pioneered the use of REBOA in the field for the management of patients with severe bleeding that previously would have been unlikely to survive to hospital. They have field-deployed REBOA multiple times with an overall positive result. The majority of the cases where REBOA had been used involved significant pelvic trauma. The evidence base for REBOA use is expanding. Yet, on the other hand, in a mature trauma system, patients eligible for REBOA may in fact receive definitive care in the operating room instead. The main question now is whether this type of highly specialized intervention is beneficial to implement in other contexts—or whether it truly has a mortality benefit. Perhaps there may come a time when REBOA, or something similar, will become the standard for hemorrhage control in the field.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS AND CHALLENGES

The burden of trauma is growing. With an aging population, more densely populated urban centers, heavier road use, and accelerating technological possibilities for care, the challenges (and opportunities) for first responders are immense. Below are some of the challenges and active areas for investigation currently being explored. As anesthesiologists we need to remain informed and open to the evolution of clinical fields that we partner with and work within.

TRAUMA TRIAGE

The time from incident or injury to the notification of emergency services can either be immediate or significantly delayed. Efforts have been made to automate part of the process. Many modern cars have crash detection and emergency notification built in. Companies such as OnStar provide timely notification to emergency services in the event of a vehicle crash. As more cars are fitted with detailed analytics, there is potential for emergency services to be notified directly when a vehicle is involved in an incident of sufficient force to result in injury.

Point-of-Care Diagnostics

As POC devices become smaller, more reliable, and more affordable there is potential for front-line medical providers to perform rapid assessments to further triage and prioritize patients and their medical needs. Ultrasound is the first device that is likely to be widely adopted at the front line—and already has been deployed in many prehospital services around the world. It is relatively cheap, portable, robust, and has a growing body of evidence to support its use.

The impact of POC diagnostics could be further enhanced with greater use of telemetry and telemedicine. The transmission of live feeds from emergency services to the receiving hospital could provide hospital staff with the information necessary to expedite appropriate care—for example surgical services. Combining field and telemedicine in this way has garnered significant interest from organizations that provide care in the most remote and austere of environments, such as mining companies and the military. The potential application of advanced telemedicine and real-time clinical support for a severely injured or unwell patient aboard a ship at sea is immediately obvious. The two-way nature of telemedicine would also enable hospital staff to support operators in the field, potentially reducing the need for every front-line provider to be an expert in interpretation. Although telemedicine will never replace technical skills, it may greatly enhance clinical decisions.

Overdose/Toxicology/ Environmental Exposure

In contrast to the relatively controlled confines of a modern hospital, prehospital providers are truly confronted with the unknown. In addition to the clinical presentation of the patient there are significant issues that need to be considered when ensuring no further harm occurs to either patients, bystanders, or first responders.

Environmental toxins, chemical exposures, armed patients, or nearby assailants are an unfortunate reality we need to confront. First and foremost, it is the responsibility for any prehospital provider to ensure they are safe. This may require that access to patients be delayed to allow time for police, fire, and/or utility providers to secure the scene. Many EMS units (particularly in the United States) have responded to this challenge with the development of specialized "tactical units." These providers are given additional training to allow them to operate in potentially hostile environments.

The remaining discussion will assume that scene safety has been achieved and that front-line providers have access to the patients.

EVALUATION

An anesthesiologist should have an appreciation of common environmental exposures and toxidromes that may be present, particularly because often these patients can have a concomitant surgical condition that will require management. Evaluation of the intoxicated patient is often challenging and limited to the clinical exam and history obtained from nearby persons. Empty pill containers and other environmental clues can be helpful, but may not be present.[17] If an environmental exposure is suspected, care should be taken to avoid exposure to the emergency response personnel and the patient's clothing should be placed in a secure enclave to prevent further exposure.[17] In the event of significant biologic/chemical/radiation exposure, expert consultation should be obtained to ensure safety of first responders and treating clinicians. While many laboratory tests exist to detect ingested substances, it is important that prehospital providers be familiar with common clinical toxidromes as these may be the only clue to the etiology of the overdose.

MANAGEMENT

As with most emergency management, initial treatment is directed toward stabilizing vital signs before progressing to specific management of any environmental or toxic exposures. Decontamination is also indicated in environmental exposures; this includes removing the patient from the exposure, removal of the patient's clothing, and surface decontamination when indicated.[17] Once these are stabilized further interventions can be attempted. In addition to vital signs, other rapid tests in the field include a 12-lead ECG and a blood glucose. Finally, with the current epidemic of opioid abuse, empiric administration of naloxone should be considered in the appropriate patients. If transportation to a hospital is likely to be delayed, then consultation with toxicology experts should be considered. Table 67.3 is a substantial list of different agents by presenting clinical finding. Table 67.4 lists common ECG findings of selected agents.

ENVIRONMENTAL EXPOSURES

Anesthesiologists should further be familiar with environmental exposures. These include hypothermic and hyperthermic injury. Frostbite refers to the phenomenon of tissue freezing leading to severe microvascular injury and eventual cell death. This can lead to significant morbidity including limb loss and substantial pain. Prehospital management is limited as one of the most devastating treatment failures of frostbitten extremities is freezing-rewarming-refreezing. Therefore, rewarming should not be attempted in the field if there is any chance of it being interrupted. Wet clothing should be removed and the affected area immobilized and protected from physical trauma if possible. If significant cold injury is present and re-warming is attempted, care must be taken as the sudden return of cold blood to the heart can precipitate ventricular dysrhythmias and subsequent cardiac arrest.[18]

Burn injuries are very common but fortunately the majority are only minor injuries. Detailed anesthetic considerations for management of the patient with burns are addressed elsewhere in this book (give chapter here). Specific prehospital management for severe burns focuses on stopping any ongoing burn injury, securing an airway where necessary, and providing adequate analgesia. Many jurisdictions will have a specialist burns center that EMS providers can transfer patients to for definitive care, weighed against the need for transport to the nearest hospital. Considerations for transport to a tertiary burn center are outlined in Fig. 67.2.

Horizons in Prehospital Care

The trend in prehospital care over the last several decades has been toward bringing high-quality care to the roadside. By reducing the therapeutic vacuum, patients receive lifesaving interventions at an earlier time in their disease process hopefully translating to reduced morbidity and mortality. The increasing use of real-time data, predictive analytics, and telemedicine will enable front-line providers to assist in earlier diagnostics and more tailored therapies, and enable hospital-based services to implement plans based on needs identified in the field. The capacity to save lives is going to continue to increase as prehospital and hospital-based providers work in concert for the benefit of their patients.

TABLE 67.3 Clinical Findings and Associated Agents

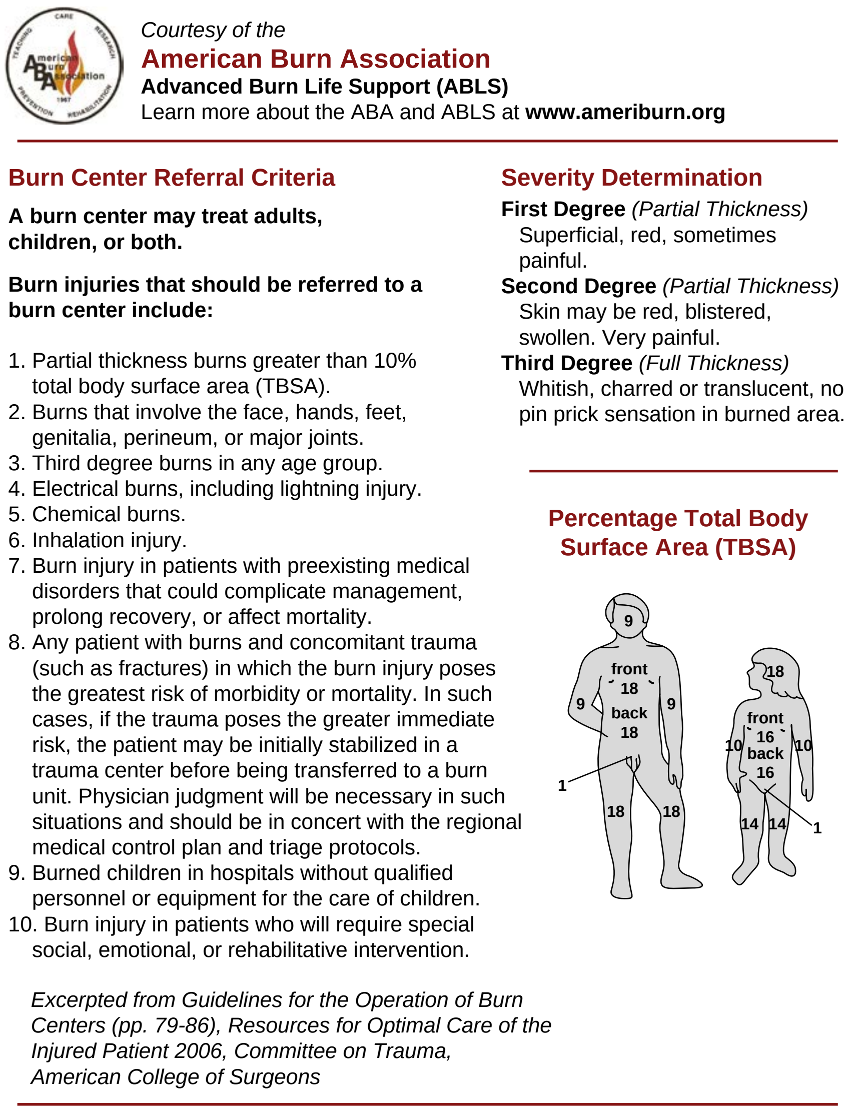
Clinical Finding	Agent
Miosis	Cholinergics, clonidine, carbamates, opioids (EXCEPT meperidine), organophosphates (pesticides), phenothiazines, pilocarpine
Mydriasis	Anticholinergics, sympathomimetics (albuterol), withdrawal from narcotics
Coma (important to rule out hypotension first)	Alcohols (ethanol, ethylene glycol), tricyclic antidepressants, thallium, toluene, heavy metals (lead), lithium, hypoglycemics (check blood glucose), arsenic, SSRI/SNRIs, antihistamines, opioids, benzodiazepines, barbiturates, carbon monoxide, cyanide, clonidine, insulin (check blood glucose), isoniazid, other sedative-hypnotics
Seizure (history of seizure disorder will increase likelihood)	Hypoglycemics/insulin (check blood glucose), organophosphates, sympathomimetics, salicylates, tricyclic antidepressants, bupropion, cocaine, camphor, chlorinated hydrocarbons, propranolol, phencyclidine, heavy metals (lead), lidocaine, lithium, withdrawal from anti-epileptics, methylxanthines (theophylline, caffeine), methanol, nicotine, amphetamines, ethanol withdrawal
Diaphoresis	Sympathomimetics (cocaine, amphetamines), organophosphates, salicylates, phencyclidine/ketamine
Dry skin	Antihistamines, anticholinergics
Blisters	Barbiturates, mustard gas, snake and spider envenomation
Flushed skin	Niacin, anticholinergics, carbon monoxide
Cyanosis (check oxygen saturation)	Nitrates, nitrites, ergotamine, aniline dyes, dapsone, phenazopyridine
Bradycardia	β blockade, opioids, anticholinesterases, anti-arrythmias (amiodarone, digoxin), calcium channel blockers, clonidine, cholinergics, alcohols
Tachycardia	Cocaine, amphetamines, anticholinergics, antihistamines, alcohol withdrawal, phencyclidine, ketamine, theophylline, caffeine, thyroid hormones, tricyclic antidepressants
Hypothermia	Opioids, carbon monoxide, insulin, hypoglycemics, sedatives, alcohols
Hyperthermia	Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (decreased reflexes, rigidity), serotonin syndrome (hyperreflexia, clonus), salicylates, sympathomimetics (cocaine, amphetamines), alcohol withdrawal, anticholinergics, antipsychotics, antidepressants, nicotine
Hypotension	Calcium channel blockers, clonidine, arsenic, cyanide, aminophylline, anti-hypertensives, antidepressants, sedatives, opioids
Hypertension	Thyroid supplements, cocaine, amphetamines, anticholinergics, nicotine, caffeine, sympathomimetics
Tachypnea	Salicylates, nerve agents, metabolic acidosis secondary to ingestion, pneumonitis from inhalation
Bradypnea	Sedatives, alcohols, opioids, marijuana

Adapted from Meehan TJ. Approach to the poisoned patient. In: Walls R, Hockberger R, Gausche-Hill M, eds. *Rosen's Emergency Medicine: Concepts and Clinical Practice*. 9th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.

TABLE 67.4 EKG Findings in Overdoses

Segment/Interval	Appearance	Agent
P wave	Absent	Digoxin, cholinergics
PR interval	Prolonged	Calcium channel blockers, β-blockers, magnesium
QRS interval	Prolonged	Type 1 anti-arrhythmics (lidocaine), antihistamines, cocaine, tricyclic antidepressants
ST segment	Scooped	Digoxin
QT interval	Prolonged	Many agents, methadone, antipsychotics most relevant.
T wave	Peaked	Acidosis leading to hyperkalemia
T wave	Flattened	Lithium
U wave	Present	Lithium, caffeine, theophylline, albuterol,

Adapted from Meehan TJ. Approach to the poisoned patient. In: Walls R, Hockberger R, Gausche-Hill M, eds. *Rosen's Emergency Medicine: Concepts and Clinical Practice*. 9th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.



Courtesy of the
American Burn Association
Advanced Burn Life Support (ABLS)
Learn more about the ABA and ABLS at **www.ameriburn.org**

Burn Center Referral Criteria

A burn center may treat adults, children, or both.

Burn injuries that should be referred to a burn center include:

1. Partial thickness burns greater than 10% total body surface area (TBSA).
2. Burns that involve the face, hands, feet, genitalia, perineum, or major joints.
3. Third degree burns in any age group.
4. Electrical burns, including lightning injury.
5. Chemical burns.
6. Inhalation injury.
7. Burn injury in patients with preexisting medical disorders that could complicate management, prolong recovery, or affect mortality.
8. Any patient with burns and concomitant trauma (such as fractures) in which the burn injury poses the greatest risk of morbidity or mortality. In such cases, if the trauma poses the greater immediate risk, the patient may be initially stabilized in a trauma center before being transferred to a burn unit. Physician judgment will be necessary in such situations and should be in concert with the regional medical control plan and triage protocols.
9. Burned children in hospitals without qualified personnel or equipment for the care of children.
10. Burn injury in patients who will require special social, emotional, or rehabilitative intervention.

Excerpted from Guidelines for the Operation of Burn Centers (pp. 79-86), Resources for Optimal Care of the Injured Patient 2006, Committee on Trauma, American College of Surgeons

Severity Determination

First Degree *(Partial Thickness)*
Superficial, red, sometimes painful.
Second Degree *(Partial Thickness)*
Skin may be red, blistered, swollen. Very painful.
Third Degree *(Full Thickness)*
Whitish, charred or translucent, no pin prick sensation in burned area.

Percentage Total Body Surface Area (TBSA)

Fig. 67.2 Indications for transfer to a tertiary burn center. (Courtesy American Burn Association. https://ameriburn.org/public-resources/burn-center-referral-criteria/.)

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Peter Nagele and Michael Hupfl for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Barkley K. *The Ambulance: The Story of Emergency Transportation of Sick and Wounded Through the Centuries*. New York: Exposition Press; 1978.
2. Ketelaars R, et al. *Prehosp Emerg Care*. 2018;22(4):406.
3. Ketelaars R, et al. *Eur J Emerg Med*. 2018.
4. Cummins RO, et al. *Circulation*. 1991;83:1832.
5. Kloeck W, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1997;34:109.
6. Olasveengen TM, et al. *Circulation*. 2018;118:S_1447.
7. Bhuiya FA, Pitts SR. *Emergency Department Visits for Chest Pain and Abdominal Pain: United States, 1999–2008*. NCHS Data Brief No. 43. 2010.
8. Sillesen M, et al. *J. Electrocardiol*. 2008;41:49.
9. Kahlon TS, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2017;89(2):245.
10. Rawshani N, et al. *Int J Cardiol*. 2017;248:77.
11. Armstrong PW, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2010;160(1):30–35.e1.
12. Welsh RC, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2006;152:1007.
13. Arlt M, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2011;82:1243.
14. Schempf B, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2018;36(6):1121.e1.
15. Lamhaut L, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2012;83:E177.
16. Johnson et al. *Expert Rev Respir Med*. 2014;8:151–161.
17. Thompson et al. *Dis Mon*. 2014;60:509–524.
18. McIntosh SE, et al. *Wilderness Environmental Med*. 2014;25:43.

References

1. Barkley K. *The Ambulance: The Story of Emergency Transportation of Sick and Wounded Through the Centuries*. New York: Exposition Press; 1978.
2. Ketelaars R, Beekers C, Van Geffen GJ, et al. Prehospital echocardiography during resuscitation impacts treatment in a physician-staffed helicopter emergency medical service: an observational study. *Prehosp Emerg Care*. 2018;22(4):406–413.
3. Ketelaars R, Holtslag JJM, Hoogerwerf N. Abdominal prehospital ultrasound impacts treatment decisions in a Dutch Helicopter Emergency Medical Service. *Eur J Emerg Med*. 2018.
4. Cummins RO, Ornato JP, Thies WH, et al. Improving survival from sudden cardiac arrest: the "chain of survival" concept. A statement for health professionals from the Advanced Cardiac Life Support Subcommittee and the Emergency Cardiac Care Committee. American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 1991;83:1832–1847.
5. Kloeck W, Cummins R, Chamberlain D, et al. The Universal ALS Algorithm: an advisory statement by the Advanced Life Support Working. Group of the International Liaison Committee On Resuscitation. *Resuscitation*. 1997;34:109–111.
6. Olasveengen TM, Sunde K, Thowsen J, et al. Prospective randomized controlled trial on the effects of intravenous drug administration on survival to hospital discharge after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Circulation*. 2018;118:S_1447.
7. Bhuiya FA, Pitts SR. *Emergency Department Visits for Chest Pain and Abdominal Pain: United States, 1999–2008.* NCHS Data Brief No. 43. 2010.
8. Sillesen M, Sejersten M, Strange S, et al. Referral of patients with ST-segment elevation acute myocardial infarction directly to the catheterization suite based on prehospital teletransmission of 12-lead electrocardiogram. *J Electrocardiol.* 2008;41:49–53.
9. Kahlon TS, Barn K, Akram MM, et al. Impact of pre-hospital electrocardiograms on time to treatment and one year outcome in a rural regional ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction network. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2017;89(2):245–251.
10. Rawshani N, Rawshani A, Gelang C, et al. Association between use of pre-hospital ECG and 30-day mortality: a large cohort study of patients experiencing chest pain. *Int J Cardiol*. 2017;248: 77–81.
11. Armstrong PW, Gershlick A, Goldstein P, et al. The Strategic Reperfusion Early After Myocardial Infarction (STREAM) study. *Am Heart J*. 2010;160(1):30–35.e1.
12. Welsh RC, Travers A, Senaratne M, et al. Feasibility and applicability of paramedic-based prehospital fibrinolysis in a large North American center. *Am Heart J*. 2006;152:1007.
13. Arlt M, et al. Out-of-hospital extracorporeal life support for cardiac arrest – a case report. *Resuscitation*. 2011;82:1243–1245.
14. Schempf B, Schibilsky D, Gaier G, et al. Out of hospital extracorporeal life support (ECLS) implantation in cardiogenic shock after cardiac arrest - a case report. *Am J Emerg Med.* 2018;36(6):1121.e1–1121.e3.
15. Lamhaut L, Jouffroy R, Kalpodjian A, et al. Successful treatment of refractory cardiac arrest by emergency physicians using pre-hospital ECLS. *Resuscitation*. 2012;83:e177–e178.
16. Johnson MJ, Currow DC, Booth S. Prevalence and assessment of breathlessness in the clinical setting. *Expert Rev Respir Med.* 2014;8:151–161.
17. Thompson TM, Theobald J, Lu J, et al. The general approach to the poisoned patient. *Dis Mon.* 2014;60:509–524.
18. McIntosh SE, Opacic M, Freer L, et al. Wilderness Medical Society practice guidelines for the prevention and treatment of frostbite: 2014 update. *Wilderness Environmental Med.* 2014;25:43–54.

68

Biological, Natural, and Human-Induced Disasters: The Role of the Anesthesiologist

DANIEL W. JOHNSON, WILLIAM P. MULVOY, and STEVEN J. LISCO

KEY POINTS

- Natural disasters such as earthquakes, hurricanes, floods, tsunamis, and tornadoes have the ability to cause massive interruptions in the normal provision of health care.
- Anesthesiologists possess a combination of knowledge and procedural skills that make them extremely valuable in the immediate and ongoing response to large-scale disasters; to do so, they and their colleagues must be willing to modify their traditional workflow in order to best meet the needs of victims while also serving the needs of other patients.
- Anesthesiologists who travel from resource-rich to resource-limited environments to provide rescue medical care must cope with a number of unanticipated challenges, including lack of familiarity with infectious diseases which have been eradicated from first-world nations, and the management of these diseases.
- Anesthesiologists who travel to disaster-ravaged areas are exposed to a variety of physical and mental stressors that can have an impact on them for months or years after an event.
- Because of the very high early mortality following some natural disasters such as tsunamis, local healthcare systems can be overwhelmed and many local healthcare workers are either lost or displaced. As a result, anesthesiologists who are able to travel to victim countries and provide temporary aid can provide much needed support for the community.
- Although hurricanes tend to have fewer immediate fatalities than earthquakes or tsunamis, their severity and the subsequent flooding can cripple the healthcare system and the physical plants, including clinical and educational facilities.
- When disasters induce shortages of medications, fluids, and supplies, as resulted from Hurricane Maria in 2017, global conservation of existing supplies and avoidance of waste are essential.
- Following a massive terrorism-induced disaster such as the September 11, 2001 attack on New York City, health systems were encouraged to develop more formal triage plans, with particular emphasis on clinical access centers in areas surrounding potential disaster sites.
- In addition to natural disasters, mass shootings are also challenging the healthcare systems. In the United States, 1123 people have been killed by mass shootings since 1966. Accordingly, all anesthesiologists and other providers must be prepared to provide care in the aftermath of these heinous events.
- As acts of terrorism have become more aggressive in recent decades, anesthesiologists may be more likely to provide care following a chemical, biological, radiological, or nuclear (CBRN) event. To do so, they must have an understanding of the implications of each of these disasters on the community and the providers, and be prepared to modify their practices to best meet the needs of patients and the community.
- One of the highest priorities for healthcare workers after a CBRN event is to take precautions against becoming the next victim. Personal protective equipment (PPE) is of the greatest importance in these situations.
- During an outbreak of a highly dangerous infectious disease, anesthesiologists must understand the mechanisms of transmitting the disease and its management; they are often able to serve as consultants in the design of optimal care pathways to minimize risk to patients and healthcare workers.

Introduction

Large-scale disasters force the human population to address complicated issues often never confronted before, in an attempt to address death and injuries and restore order. For decades, many countries have had in place national, regional, and hospital disaster management plans that focus on preparedness, immediate response, and recovery efforts. The objective of these plans is to minimize further injury or damage by optimizing the use of resources and personnel to respond to mass casualties resulting from both natural and human-induced disasters. Healthcare providers have a special role to play in all such events. Anesthesiologists, because of their unique combination of skills and knowledge, are an extremely valuable part of the overall effort to optimize the health and recovery of disaster victims. In-depth knowledge of pharmacology and physiology, expertise in resuscitation, experience in critical care medicine, and the ability to extinguish pain represent some of the critical knowledge and skills anesthesiologists are able to provide in response to these disasters.

In order to provide the support needed during and after these events, anesthesiologists must be prepared to modify their traditional role in patient care and apply their unique abilities to care for patients in a wide variety of scenarios. If, after a massive natural disaster, a given hospital system has adequate personnel to provide intraoperative anesthesia care, but inadequate physicians to triage and provide resuscitation in the Emergency Department (ED) or in the field, anesthesiologists should volunteer to provide care in these settings. Similarly, for those victims requiring surgical interventions, during the postoperative phase of care, most hospitals will not have sufficient critical care physicians to care for all of the critically injured patients. Anesthesiologists are uniquely suited to temporarily assume the role of intensivist, as they so often do in the operating room. Drawing from their training experiences as well as their backgrounds in intraoperative management of complex surgical patients, all anesthesiologists, whether formally trained in critical care medicine or not, should expect to play a key role in the management of patients in the intensive care unit (ICU) and other settings following a disaster.

To address some of the opportunities and challenges associated with management during and after disasters, this chapter is organized into four distinct sections. Whereas consistent themes exist among all of these realms, each section reveals unique roles for the anesthesiologist in addressing patient and community needs after each type of disaster. The four sections of the chapter are:

1. Natural Disasters
2. Acts of Terrorism
3. Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Warfare
4. Epidemic and Pandemic Infectious Outbreaks

Section 1: Natural Disasters

Natural disasters such as earthquakes, hurricanes, floods, tsunamis, and tornadoes can cause massive disruptions in communities, while also interfering with the normal provision of health care. Prehospital care can be completely disrupted due to damage to roads, and hospital care can be brought to a halt due to lack of water, oxygen, fuel, electricity, and other necessary utilities. Hospitals themselves can be damaged or destroyed by these types of events. Communication can be difficult or impossible following natural disasters due to a combination of damage to telecommunication systems and simultaneous usage overload as families and victims try to locate one another. In this section of the chapter, several historical examples of natural disasters will be examined in order to highlight the critical role of the anesthesiologist in the recovery from these devastating events.

EARTHQUAKES

Earthquakes are capable of inducing an incredible amount of damage in a very brief period of time. Resource-limited areas of the world, suffering from poor underlying infrastructure at baseline, are particularly vulnerable to severe damage following an earthquake. The magnitude 7.0 earthquake that struck Haiti on January 12, 2010 was one of the most devastating natural disasters in modern history, and was an example of how badly a nation's healthcare system can be damaged by this type of event. The death toll in Haiti is difficult to calculate accurately, but nearly all analyses place the number of lives lost at more than 130,000, with 1.5 million people immediately displaced following the earthquake.[1,2] More than 80% of Haitian schools and more than 50% of Haitian hospitals were destroyed.

Healthcare professionals from around the world recognized that a resource-limited nation such as Haiti would require an incredible amount of assistance to recover from the earthquake. Surgeons, anesthesiologists, and healthcare providers from the United States and other nations traveled to Haiti in order to provide initial trauma care, and subsequently to assist in backfilling the jobs of Haitian healthcare workers who were lost in the earthquake. Médecins Sans Frontières, or Doctors without Borders, stated in 2013 that its response to the Haitian earthquake was the largest relief operation in the history of the organization.

Hundreds of healthcare workers from around the world wanted to participate in the recovery effort from the earthquake, however a major limiting factor was the inability to access the sole airport in Haiti. The United States Air Force assumed leadership of the airport and provided air traffic control until Haitian authorities could recover adequately to resume control.[3] Additional immediate support came with the deployment of one of the two United States Navy Hospital ships, the USNS *Comfort*. The USNS *Comfort* and her sister ship, USNS *Mercy*, are enormous oil tankers that have been converted to hospital ships designed to deliver health care to U.S. military personnel during wartime. In reality, they are now more commonly deployed to provide humanitarian aid to disaster-ravaged areas of the world. In 2010, the USNS *Comfort* deployed to the coast of Haiti within 72 hours of the earthquake and subsequently embarked upon the largest disaster-relief operation in the history of these floating hospitals. More than 850 patients received care on the ship during the weeks following the earthquake, including 237 children and one premature newborn.[4] The most common condition treated on the ship was musculoskeletal extremity injury, composing about 40% of the overall reasons for admission.[5] The average length of stay was 8 days and surgery was performed 843 times on 454 patients over the course of 5 weeks. Fifty-eight of the operations were amputations.[6] Anesthesiologists from various U.S. hospitals provided care on the USNS *Comfort*, some as new volunteers and some with prior experience in military and disaster relief (Figs. 68.1 and 68.2).

U.S. NAVAL HOSPITAL SHIP
COMFORT

Fig. 68.1 USNS *Comfort* off the coast of Haiti in 2010. (Photo courtesy Dr. Paul G. Firth, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, MA.)

Fig. 68.2 Patient ward on board the USNS *Comfort* in Haiti in 2010. (Photo courtesy Dr. Paul G. Firth, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, MA.)

Fig. 68.3 University of Miami anesthesiologist working in a makeshift operating room on the island of Haiti following the 2010 earthquake. (Photo courtesy Dr. Ralf E. Gebhard, University of Miami Department of Anesthesiology, Miami, FL.)

Provision of medical and surgical care aboard the floating hospital was relatively “normal” when compared with the task of providing care on the island of Haiti itself. Nearly all medical facilities in Port Au Prince were either damaged or destroyed by the earthquake, forcing volunteer healthcare teams to work in makeshift clinics, hospitals, and tent facilities throughout the city. One of the largest such facilities was based out of the United Nations compound at the airport.[7] In the initial days after the earthquake, surgical care was very limited because of a lack of supplemental oxygen, unsterile conditions, and a lack of resources to provide anesthesia. Amputations were performed under local anesthesia until a team of anesthesiologists skilled in single-shot block techniques arrived.[7] Following their arrival, these anesthesiologists were able to facilitate the performance of 1000 operations, including major orthopedic surgery. They were also instrumental in the postoperative care and analgesia of the surgical patients (Fig. 68.3).

Anesthesiologists who travel from resource-rich to resource-limited environments to provide rescue medical care must contend with a lack of familiarity with infectious diseases that have been eradicated from first-world nations. During the Haitian earthquake recovery, this situation confronted anesthesiologists who encountered patients suffering from tetanus. Although not completely eradicated from the United States, few anesthesiologists have any experience caring for patients with tetanus. Caused by the anaerobic bacterium *Clostridium tetani*, tetanus causes severe neck rigidity, trismus, and chest wall immobility. All of these problems create difficulties for anesthesiologists in terms of airway management and maintenance of ventilation. The Haitian population is at an elevated risk to develop tetanus following contamination of wounds because of relatively lower rates of tetanus vaccination compared with other nations. Anesthesiologists who provided care for surgical patients on the USNS *Comfort* reported two cases of tetanus that had impact on their anesthetic care.[8] In one case, the patient was noted to have a small mouth opening as a result of trismus. Following induction of general anesthesia with inhaled sevoflurane, the patient’s total body rigidity was markedly improved. Unfortunately, after receiving multiple anesthetics with muscle relaxation, despite receiving appropriate care, the patient had persistent significant muscle weakness, retention of pulmonary secretions, and ultimately pneumonia resulting in his death. In another case, the patient received repeated general anesthetics, consisting of inhaled sevoflurane without neuromuscular blocking drugs. In this case, the patient fully recovered. The anesthesiologists involved in the care of these tetanus victims noted that though the mouth opening is limited, the nasal airway is unaffected by tetanus, so mask ventilation is possible despite the trismus. They also emphasized the importance of conserving medications such as neuromuscular blocking drugs when one is practicing medicine in a severely resource-limited environment so that the drugs are available for the patients most in need. By applying their expertise in pathophysiology and pharmacology, these anesthesiologists were able to safely and effectively deliver surgical anesthesia to high-risk patients without the use of neuromuscular blocking agents by taking advantage of the neuromuscular blocking properties of potent inhaled anesthetic agents.

The Haitian earthquake response highlighted another critical issue associated with all major disasters: the psychological impact on healthcare workers caring for victims. After returning to the United States following humanitarian missions to Haiti, several anesthesiologists wrote thoughtful essays on the care that they had provided.[9] Anesthesiologists who travel to disaster-ravaged areas are exposed to a variety of physical and mental stressors that can have an impact on them for months or years after the event. Prolonged work hours, inadequate rest, exposure to gruesome traumatic injuries, and witnessing the prolonged pain and suffering of children are some examples of what disaster responders endure. Despite these challenges, healthcare providers are expected to provide optimal medical care, while simultaneously providing psychological support to devastated family members. During the busy hours and days of the immediate response to a disaster, healthcare providers stay focused on the call of duty, which allows them to keep personal emotions at bay. As the critical needs resolve, anesthesiologists and other healthcare providers are forced to deal with the physical, mental, and emotional trauma that they themselves have sustained. One might wonder why healthcare providers would leave the safety of their home nation to purposely expose themselves to this kind of potential anguish. Consistent qualities appear to be present among responders to massive natural disasters: they understand that all human beings have dignity, they sympathize with people who are suffering, and they desire to be part of the healing process.

TORNADOES

While tornadoes tend to be shorter in duration than other natural disasters, they are able to create horrendous damage within seconds to minutes. One of the most destructive storms in American history was the tornado rated EF-5 on the Enhanced Fujita scale that ravaged Joplin, Missouri on May 22, 2011. During the ensuing power outage, some hospitals' backup generators failed, requiring anesthesia care and surgery to be performed by flashlight alone.[10] When hospitals are directly destroyed by natural disasters, as occurred at St. John's Mercy Medical Center in Joplin, one of the biggest challenges for the community is the need to restore the healthcare infrastructure, including access to the electronic health record. With proper disaster preparedness, including contingencies for complete losses of hospitals and clinics, normal patterns of care can be restored within a reasonable timeframe.[11]

Opportunistic infections are another common downstream effect from all natural disasters, including tornadoes. Following the 2011 tornado in Joplin, a cluster of patients suffering from necrotizing cutaneous mucormycosis was observed and required extensive treatment.[12] Anesthesia providers are critically important during "outbreaks" such as this since emergency surgeries to control rapidly expanding infectious diseases are critical to patient survival (Figs. 68.4 and 68.5).

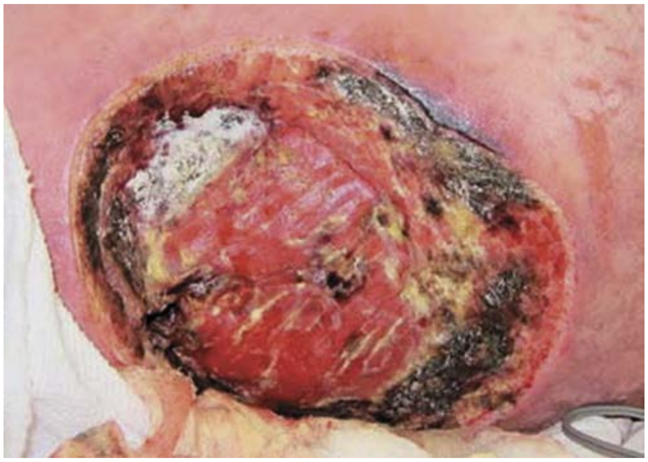


Fig. 68.4 Necrotizing cutaneous mucormycosis of the flank following the Joplin, MO tornado. (From Neblett Fanfair R, Benedict K, Bos J, et al. Necrotizing cutaneous mucormycosis after a tornado in Joplin, Missouri, in 2011. *N Engl J Med.* 2012;367[23]:2214–2215. Published by the Massachusetts Medical Society.)

TSUNAMI

A tsunami is a very large sea wave that results from a submarine earthquake, volcanic eruption, or other significant geologic movement. On December 26, 2004, a massive earthquake, magnitude 9.1 on the Richter Scale, occurred beneath the Indian Ocean and caused one of the deadliest natural disasters in recorded history. The tsunami that resulted from the earthquake created enormous waves that made their way to the shores of 14 countries, including: Indonesia, Sri Lanka, Malaysia, Bangladesh, India, Thailand, and Myanmar. Tsunamis produce a very high ratio of mortality to injury. These waves result from the influx of water on the shores of victim countries causing the immediate death of many people secondary to drowning or the direct impact of waves or debris. The aftermath of a tsunami tends to have three phases. During phase 1, a high number of people are instantly killed. During phase 2, in the hours and days following the initial impact, relief healthcare workers are able to provide life- and limb-saving care to victims of blunt trauma and water exposure.[13] During phase 3, recovery is impeded by a lack of healthcare personnel and a lack of infrastructure needed to provide longer term posttrauma care.

The 2004 tsunami killed more than 230,000 people, injured tens of thousands, and was estimated to have immediately displaced more than 5 million people. One factor in its extreme lethality was the fact that December is the peak tourist season for many of the beaches of Southeast Asia. As is the case with many tsunamis, there was essentially zero warning that deadly waves were about to make landfall. The Aceh province of the Indonesian island of Sumatra was by far the hardest hit area, with waves reaching greater than 25 m in height and with over 100,000 people killed. People on the beach at the time of the tsunami were killed directly, while people farther inland were killed as a result of drowning or impact with massive floating debris (Fig. 68.6).

While there is essentially no role for relief healthcare workers during phase 1 after a tsunami, healthcare workers from nearby regions can and should respond to care for patients during phase 2. Following the 2004

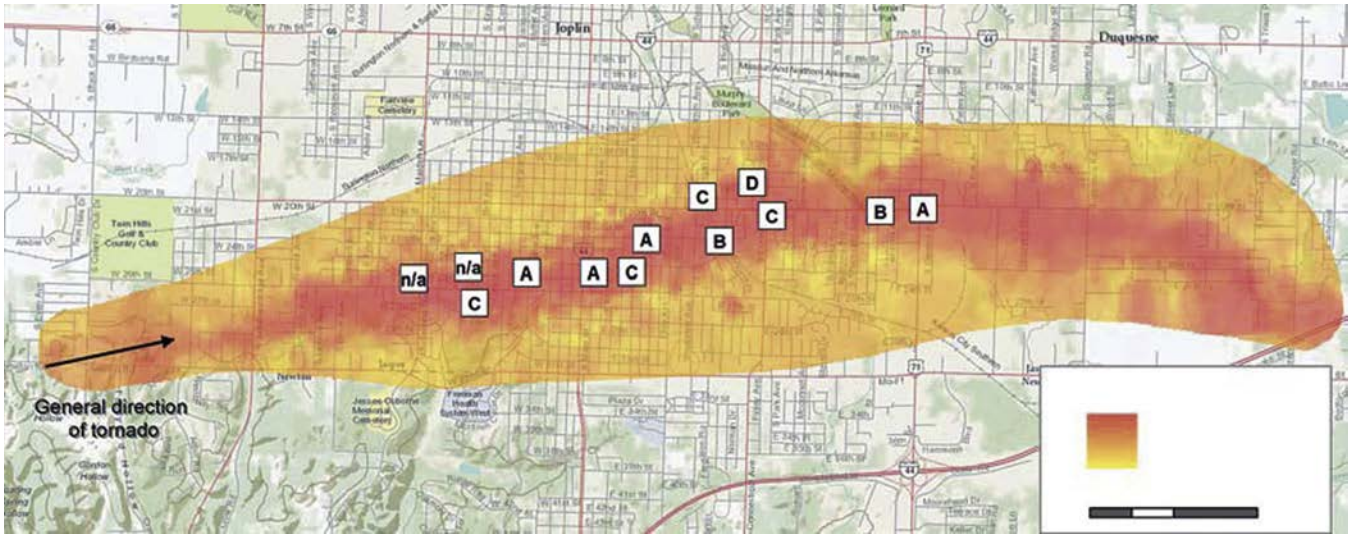


Fig. 68.5 Case locations of mucormycosis with relation to the Joplin tornado course. (Data are from the US Army Corps of Engineers and Esri. From Neblett Fanfair R, Benedict K, Bos J, et al. Necrotizing cutaneous mucormycosis after a tornado in Joplin, Missouri, in 2011. *N Engl J Med.* 2012;367[23]:2214–2215. Published by the Massachusetts Medical Society.)

Fig. 68.6 Debris in the streets of the Aceh province after the December 2004 tsunami. (Photo courtesy Dr. Michael G. Fitzsimons, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, MA.)

tsunami, a team of 17 surgeons, 6 anesthesiologists, and other healthcare workers traveled as part of the Thai Red Cross Society for humanitarian mission from Bangkok, Thailand to Phang-Nga, Thailand to provide care. The multidisciplinary team was led by one surgeon and one anesthesiologist. They arrived just 1 day after the tsunami. Over the course of 3 days, the team provided surgical care for 107 patients. The injury profile consisted predominantly of soft-tissue wounds and bone fractures. Halothane was the only inhalational anesthetic available, highlighting the need for anesthesiologists to be nimble in their ability to use older medications during disaster relief.

Most surgical procedures performed in Phang-Nga included general anesthesia following rapid sequence induction. Spinal anesthesia, regional anesthesia, and local anesthesia were also utilized for selected cases. The providers noted an increased incidence of intraoperative oxygen desaturation as compared with findings during other relief operations. The cause for the desaturation is thought to be related to aspiration of seawater and lung contusion secondary to direct impact of waves or debris. In addition to the challenges associated with performing procedures near sites of destruction, providing care can be challenging even if it is being provided remotely relative to the tsunami itself. One common problem is the lack of access to laboratory services. As in post-earthquake anesthetic care, the anesthesiologist may be required to rely on clinical judgment without additional laboratory data to guide decision making in the administration of fluids, electrolytes, antibiotics, and blood products after a tsunami or other natural disaster (Fig. 68.7).

In addition to the regional response, a massive international relief effort was launched in response to the tsunami. In January 2005, Operation Unified Assistance was started as part of the United States response to the catastrophe. Organized by Project HOPE and the U.S. Public Health Service, the USNS *Mercy* was sent from San Diego, California to the Aceh province in Sumatra, representing the first joint effort of military and civilian relief aboard a U.S. Navy ship.[14] U.S. responders to Indonesia were required to demonstrate up-to-date vaccination records for all typical immunizations, receive vaccines for typhoid and hepatitis A, and take prophylactic medication to protect from malaria. Additionally, negative airflow pods were present on the ship to allow for safe care of patients with active tuberculosis. Prior to arrival, all staff members were briefed on the differences in culture they would encounter, and the possible implications for providing care. More than 90% of Indonesian citizens are Muslim, and Islamic Law plays an important role in the day-to-day decision making, including consent for treatment, end-of-life procedures, and other issues for many of the families impacted by the tsunami.

Another serious outcome after a tsunami is often the loss of life of healthcare workers. An estimated 60% of all healthcare workers in the Aceh province died or were

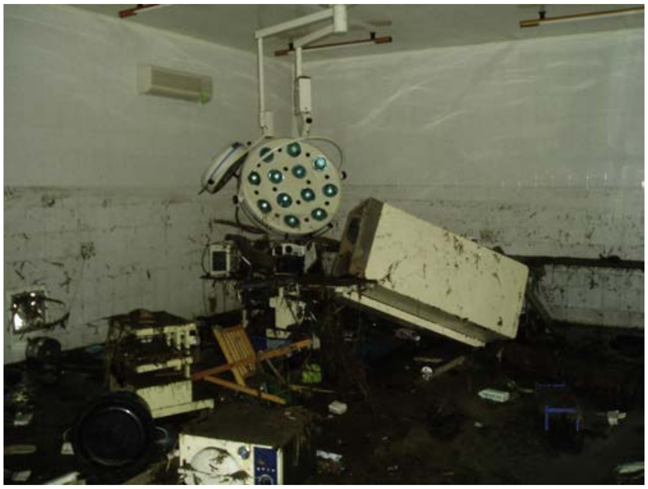


Fig. 68.7 Aceh, Indonesia operating room destroyed by December 2004 tsunami. (Photo courtesy Dr. Michael G. Fitzsimons, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, MA.)

missing following the tsunami. Thus, Operation Unified Assistance was prepared to backfill the roles of lost healthcare workers in addition to providing care directly related to the effects of the tsunami. While the USNS *Mercy* was designed for enormous overall capacity, for this operation its clinical footprint consisted of staffing for 3 operating rooms and 50 inpatient beds.

Operation Unified Assistance provided surgical care for 154 patients, but only 8.4% of these were in need of surgery as a direct result of the tsunami.[14] Because of the high mortality to injury ratio in a tsunami, the critical need in Aceh was to compensate for the loss of healthcare workers rather than require large numbers of providers to support patients needing surgical procedures. This differentiates the tsunami experience from the Haitian earthquake experience, with its higher relative incidence of survivable injuries.

For those patients requiring surgery, general anesthesia with inhaled agents supplemented by opioids and neuromuscular blocking drugs was the anesthetic technique of choice. Although access to equipment appropriate for regional anesthesia was limited, one of the primary reasons for this approach was related to the significant language barrier between patients and anesthesiologists. In addition, the clinicians felt postanesthesia recovery from general anesthesia would be easier and safer than for neuraxial or regional, considering all of the circumstances. Another commonly needed and often limited resource includes blood and blood products. In this situation, a total of 122 units of packed red blood cells, 13 units of plasma, and 4 units of cryoprecipitate were transfused during the relief operation.[14] While response to a tsunami has some similarities to the response to a large earthquake, the presence of a modern floating hospital allows the anesthesiologist to employ general anesthetic techniques much more readily than in a tent-based operating suite during inland recovery from an earthquake. At the conclusion of Operation Unified Assistance, a portable monitor and anesthetic medications were donated by the team to the local healthcare facility.

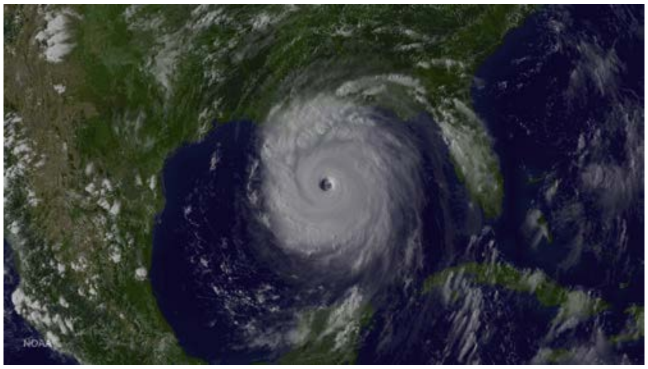


Fig. 68.8 Satellite photo of Hurricane Katrina over the Gulf of Mexico. (Used with permission from the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service. Available from www.nesdis.noaa.gov. Accessed October 26, 2018.)

HURRICANES

A hurricane is a tropical storm with maximum sustained winds of 74 mph (119 km/h) or higher. Hurricanes have the potential to disrupt the normal function of the healthcare system in a variety of ways. When hurricanes reach landfall, the high wind speeds and excessive rainfall make any outdoor movement unsafe, thus paralyzing emergency medical systems and preventing patients from seeking necessary care. With major hurricanes, extensive flooding is a common complication because of the large volumes of rainfall combined with seawater entrained onto land as part of the storm surge. These storms have fewer immediate fatalities than earthquakes or tsunamis, however the ability of hurricanes to cripple the provision of medical and surgical care has numerous downstream consequences. In this section, Hurricane Katrina will be examined as an example of the destructive forces of hurricanes in general.

In August 2005, Katrina started as a storm over the Bahamas, then gained strength over Florida before reaching the Gulf of Mexico. Over the Gulf of Mexico, Katrina reached Category 5 status with top wind speeds of 175 mph. At the time of landfall, the storm was a category 3 hurricane. It produced 8 to 14 inches of rain over southern Louisiana, Mississippi, and Alabama. At some sites on the Mississippi coast, the storm surge was 25 to 28 feet higher than normal tide level and destroyed the majority of structures in its path. In New Orleans, Louisiana, the storm surge sent water over the levees protecting the city, causing flooding in 80% of the city and the need for widespread evacuation. Hurricane Katrina remains the costliest storm in the history of United States at greater than $100 billion in losses, and it was the deadliest hurricane since 1928 (Fig. 68.8; Table 68.1).[15]

The flooding and subsequent displacement of thousands of New Orleans inhabitants following Hurricane Katrina highlight one of the key elements of major natural disasters. In addition to the impact of the hurricane on the healthcare delivery infrastructure, a storm of this magnitude is capable of completely disrupting medical education at the undergraduate and postgraduate levels. New Orleans is home to two major medical schools with

TABLE 68.1 Saffir-Simpson Hurricane Wind Scale

Category	Sustained Wind Speeds	Damage Potential
1	74-95 mph 119-153 km/h	**Very dangerous winds will produce some damage:** Well-constructed frame homes could have damage to roof, shingles, vinyl siding, and gutters. Large branches of trees will snap, and shallowly rooted trees may be toppled. Extensive damage to power lines and poles likely will result in power outages that could last a few to several days.
2	96-110 mph 154-177 km/h	**Extremely dangerous winds will cause extensive damage:** Well-constructed frame homes could sustain major roof and siding damage. Many shallowly rooted trees will be snapped or uprooted and block numerous roads. Near-total power loss is expected with outages that could last from several days to weeks.
3	111-129 mph 178-208 km/h	**Devastating damage will occur:** Well-built framed homes may incur major damage or removal of roof decking and gable ends. Many trees will be snapped or uprooted, blocking numerous roads. Electricity and water will be unavailable for several days to weeks after the storm passes.
4	130-156 mph 209-251 km/h	**Catastrophic damage will occur:** Well-built framed homes can sustain severe damage with loss of most of the roof structure and/or some exterior walls. Most trees will be snapped or uprooted, and power poles downed. Fallen trees and power poles will isolate residential areas. Power outages will last weeks to possibly months. Most of the area will be uninhabitable for weeks or months.
5	157 mph or higher 252 km/h or higher	**Catastrophic damage will occur:** A high percentage of framed homes will be destroyed, with total roof failure and wall collapse. Fallen trees and power poles will isolate residential areas. Power outages will last for weeks to possibly months. Most of the area will be uninhabitable for weeks or months.

Adapted from the National Hurricane Center of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Available from: www.nhc.noaa.gov accessed October 30, 2018.

accompanying academic and clinical enterprises. Immediately following Hurricane Katrina, the academic and clinical buildings at Tulane University School of Medicine and Louisiana State University (LSU) School of Medicine were both badly damaged by flood waters.[16] Tulane University collaborated with Baylor University College of Medicine in Houston, Texas to use facilities for its medical student programs. LSU utilized facilities on its flagship campus in Baton Rouge, Louisiana for preclinical classes. Housing for students was a challenge, and most Tulane students were hosted by members of the Houston community, while LSU students either found their own housing in Baton Rouge or stayed on a large ferry coordinated by the Federal Emergency Management Agency. Remarkably, both Tulane and LSU were able to resume medical education within 4 weeks of the hurricane.[16]

Relocating preclinical students proved to be easier than identifying suitable clinical education sites for third and fourth-year medical students. Both schools were forced to find new clinical sites within Louisiana and beyond. Compounding the challenge was the closure of the damaged Veterans Affairs Medical Center in New Orleans. This degree of disruption had an impact on the medical school admissions process for both schools, yet both schools were able to enroll incoming classes very much on par with prior years. With regard to the residency match process, Tulane did experience a slight increase in the number of unmatched medical school graduates, likely owing to the reduction in residency spots at Tulane after the hurricane.[16] Despite all of these formidable challenges, both Tulane and LSU were able to keep their entire medical school enterprises alive, though with some impact on faculty needs. Both institutions were able to improve several physical and academic aspects of their campuses in the years following Katrina. In a sense, these two universities have provided other academic centers with a road map for how to continue to thrive following the harrowing experience of an all-encompassing natural disaster. Their perseverance was essential to the future health care of patients in Louisiana and beyond.

While the medical schools' survival was a triumph, Hurricane Katrina and subsequently Hurricane Rita had a distinctly negative effect on the field of anesthesiology in Louisiana. The two largest teaching hospitals in New Orleans closed after Katrina, and the largest of these—Charity Hospital—never reopened. These closures and other factors led to a decline in the number of anesthesiologists, as documented by a 2006 statewide survey.[17] Statewide residency positions in anesthesiology fell from 24 graduates per year in 2004 to 13 graduates per year in 2007. Like many states, Louisiana is fairly dependent on new anesthesiology graduates remaining in the state to take the place of retiring physicians. Of the respondents, 37% of anesthesiologists reported that they had difficulty filling open positions within their group. In this setting, 92% reported that they had experienced an increase in the number of daily cases, and that obstetric cases for patients with no prenatal care had risen out of proportion to other cases. This phenomenon likely represents a glimpse into the impact of natural disasters on all medical specialties: the same stresses experienced by anesthesiology programs were felt by other residency programs, including the obstetrics and gynecology program. Compared with the complete annihilation of medical infrastructure caused by the earthquake in Haiti, the plight of post-Katrina New Orleans may seem insignificant. Still, the fact that a large city within the wealthiest nation on earth can have its medical infrastructure completely disrupted for months after a storm attests to the impact of large-scale natural disasters.

In September 2017, Hurricane Maria struck Puerto Rico and effectively interrupted the island's access to clean

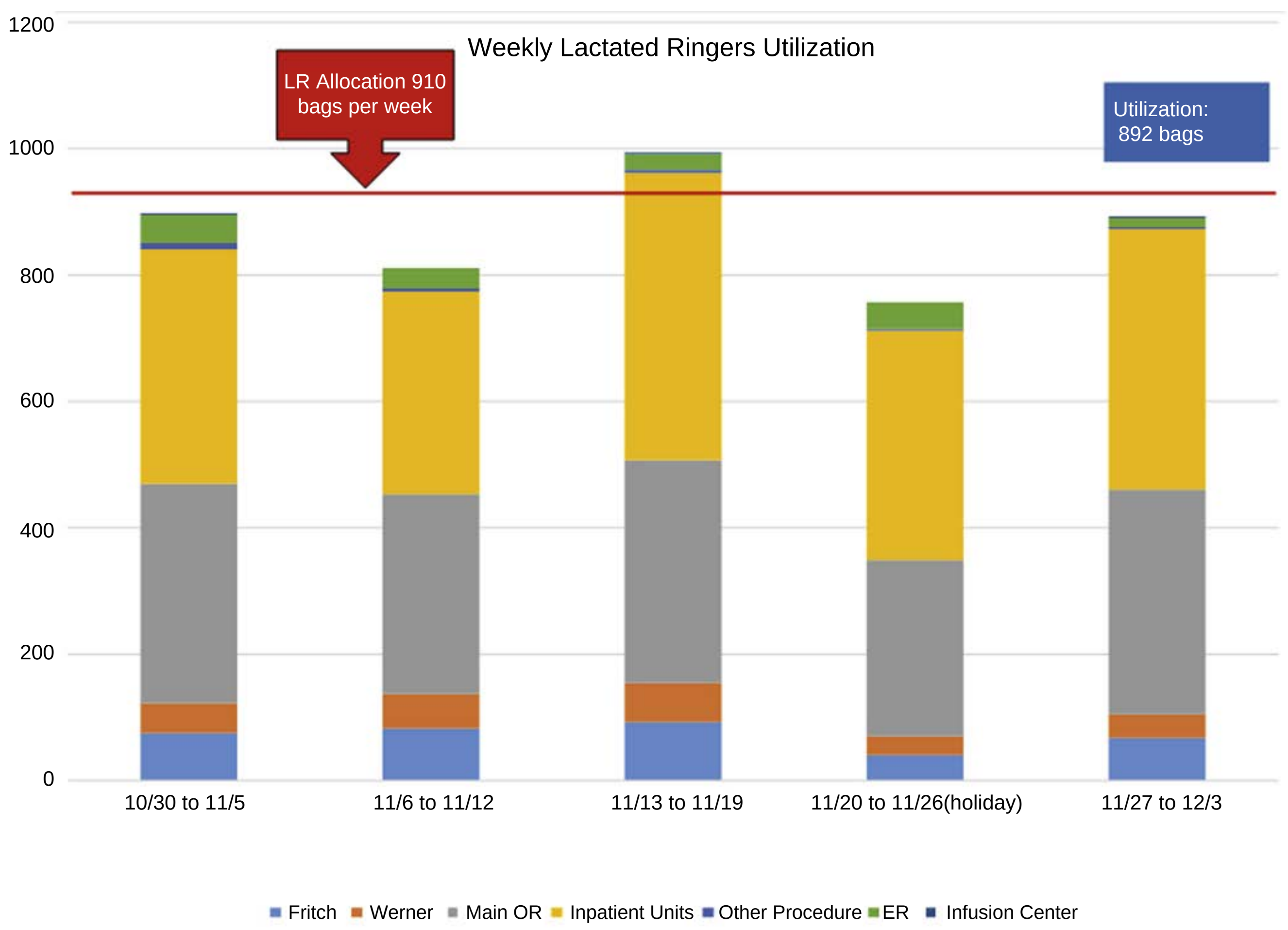


Fig. 68.9 UNMC tracking utilization of lactated Ringers during crystalloid shortage from Hurricane Maria.

water, electricity, telecommunications, and transportation. At the time Maria made landfall on Puerto Rico, it had slightly decreased in intensity from a Category 5 to a Category 4 hurricane, yet it damaged or destroyed nearly every structure in its path and the death toll is estimated by different agencies at between 1000 and 2800.[18,19] Drug and fluid shortages in the continental United States following Hurricane Maria exposed a major vulnerability of the overall healthcare system, and provided anesthesiologists with an opportunity to help lead the way out of a potential nationwide crisis.

Puerto Rico is a massive producer of pharmaceuticals and medical devices. Baxter, a large multinational company had factories in Puerto Rico, producing approximately 50% of all of the 0.9% normal saline bags used each day in U.S. hospitals.[20] The shutdown of these factories, and all other major pharmaceutical factories in Puerto Rico, resulted in an immediate shortage of fluids and medications throughout the United States. The initial response at many mainland hospitals was to identify alternative sources for products in other countries. This approach simply expanded the shortages of fluids and medications internationally.

The experience with shortages of supplies and materials made healthcare leaders recognize the interdependence of all health systems and the importance of conservation of existing supplies and avoidance of waste. In response to the shortages created by the events in Puerto Rico, anesthesiologists at many medical centers were asked to help create strategies to maximize the efficient use of fluids and medications. At the University of Nebraska Medical Center, anesthesiologists worked with other physicians, pharmacists, and leaders in nursing and administration to cocreate robust strategies to avoid critical shortages of necessary fluids and medications. Figs. 68.9 and 68.10 offer a glimpse at some of these strategies. Note that intravenous fluids administered in the operating rooms were required to be on an infusion pump, a major change from the typical "gravity drip" employed by anesthesia providers. The shortages forced healthcare workers across the nation to (1) think more critically about every milliliter of fluid they give to patients, and (2) use different fluids and medications than what they use during times of non-shortage. While the shortages induced by Hurricane Maria were problematic, their net effect has likely been toward positive changes within the U.S. healthcare system. In the aftermath, many have come to realize that our excessive reliance on one U.S. territory for fluids and pharmaceuticals is neither wise nor sustainable.

Section 2: Acts of Terrorism

SEPTEMBER 11, 2001 ATTACKS

On September 11, 2001, an organized team of terrorists commandeered three U.S. airliners with the intention of crashing them into prominent buildings in New York City and Washington, DC. Two of the aircraft were flown directly into the twin towers of the World Trade Center in New York, causing massive fires and eventually causing both of the 110-story buildings to collapse. Nearly 3000 people died as a result of the September 11th attacks, making it the deadliest act of terrorism in recorded history.

An anesthesiologist-intensivist from New York University, Dr. J. David Roccaforte, was on duty at Bellevue Hospital 2.5 miles away from the site of the attack. Dr. Roccaforte's paper describing the hours and days following the 9/11 attack remains essential reading for healthcare professionals in disaster preparedness.[21] In the paragraphs that follow, the key points from this important paper are summarized.

Hospital phone lines were nonfunctional in the hours following the attack, prompting a recommendation that hospitals be equipped with radio communication equipment and satellite-based communication devices. While cellular communication has clearly improved many-fold between 2001 and 2018, it is difficult to predict the performance of modern networks in a situation where millions of users are simultaneously trying to connect with other users. Based on an assumption that hundreds of victims would be arriving rapidly to the operating rooms and EDs, thousands of dollars worth of fluids, medications, and kits were opened and prepared, much of which went to waste. In retrospect, these resources should have been used only with confirmation of patient need. Considering the number of capable hospitals in New York outside of lower Manhattan, a pre-made plan to triage patients from Bellevue and other nearby hospitals out to other trauma centers would have been beneficial. A field hospital was set up in a warehouse near the World Trade Center, intended to be a site for emergency trauma surgery in the event that hospitals were overwhelmed. Unfortunately, the 100-bed field hospital lacked sufficient resources for the provision of anesthesia, and thus was not entirely usable.

Due to the lack of functional telecommunications, medical students were employed as runners and assigned to attending physicians. All workers were encouraged to wear a label on their shirt with name, specialty, and title, to expedite face-to-face communication. While the 9/11 attack did not induce a major failure of the physical plant at Bellevue, the need for hospital engineers was noted. In the event of a failure of electrical or oxygen supply, head engineers would be needed to restore normal state or provide a contingency plan. A traditional triage system using color-coding was used effectively for incoming patients: green signified non-urgent; yellow for potentially urgent; and red for immediate, life-threatening injuries. Any patient in the yellow category with potential need for airway management or sedation was assigned a senior anesthesiology resident or a critical care fellow. As the initial surge of patients slowed, the team at Bellevue wisely mandated a shift system, sending healthcare workers home to rest and avoid the certain burnout that results from ongoing 24/7 care following a major disaster.

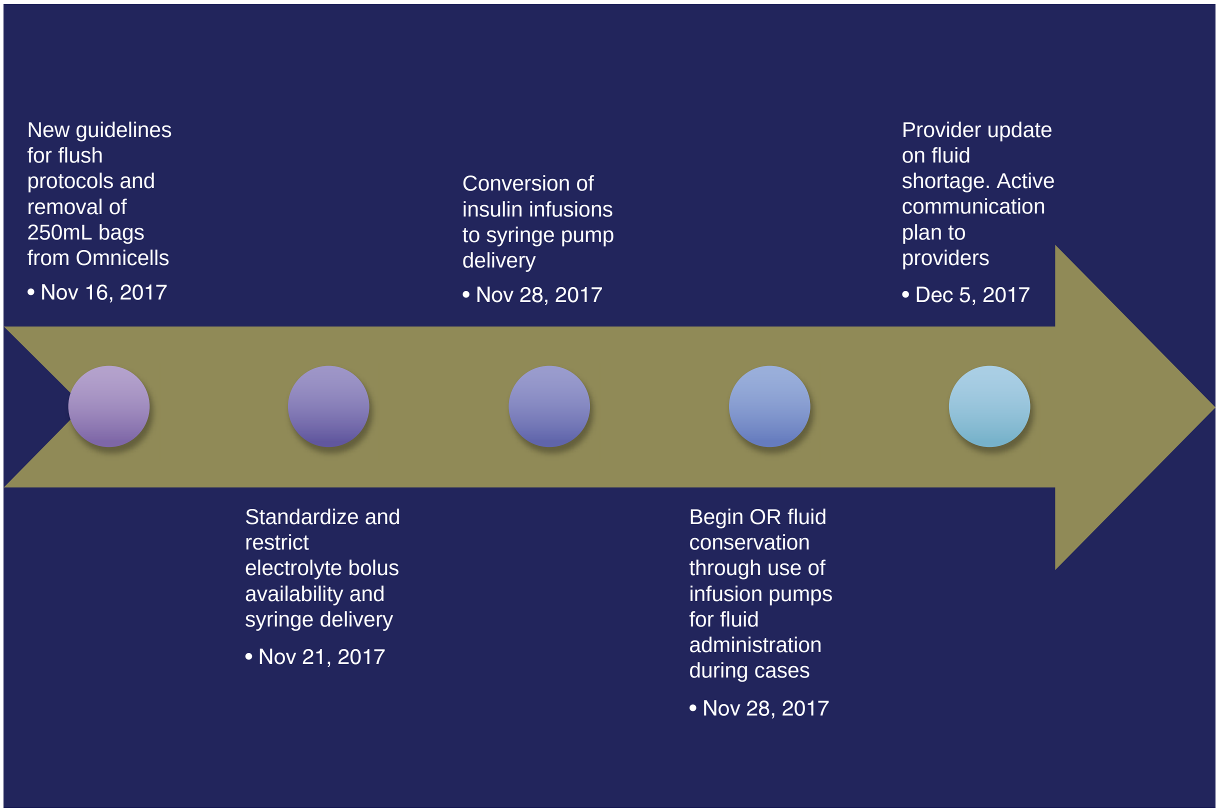

New guidelines for flush protocols and removal of 250mL bags from Omnicells
• Nov 16, 2017
Standardize and restrict electrolyte bolus availability and syringe delivery
• Nov 21, 2017
Conversion of insulin infusions to syringe pump delivery
• Nov 28, 2017
Begin OR fluid conservation through use of infusion pumps for fluid administration during cases
• Nov 28, 2017
Provider update on fluid shortage. Active communication plan to providers
• Dec 5, 2017

Fig. 68.10 Partial timeline of fluid conservation strategies at UNMC after Hurricane Maria.

MASS SHOOTINGS

In the United States, mass shootings continue to increase in frequency and severity. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has not been allowed to investigate gun violence as a matter of public health, which has hampered high quality research on this topic. Using a definition of a mass shooting where four or more people are killed by a lone shooter, from 1966 through November 2018 there have been 158 mass shootings in the United States.[22] No region appears to be safe from these events, as they have occurred in schools, churches, offices, and military bases in all parts of the country. The number of people killed in these mass shootings is 1135, with 186 of them being children or teenagers.[22] Accordingly, all anesthesiologists must be prepared to provide care in the aftermath of these heinous events.

The lethality of these attacks appears to be increasing with each passing year, in part because more and more of these shootings are carried out with military-style semiautomatic rifles as opposed to conventional guns. The AR-15 has emerged as the weapon of choice for the criminals who perpetrate these senseless acts. Following the Parkland, Florida, shooting where 17 people were killed by a former student at Marjory Stoneman Douglas High School in February 2018, a radiologist with many years of experience diagnosing gunshot wounds in a Level 1 trauma center penned an article about the drastically different injury pattern visualized with gunshot wounds from an AR-15 versus those from a typical handgun.[23] With a normal gunshot wound, the radiologist can trace a laceration through affected organs that is roughly the same width as the bullet itself. Following the Parkland shooting with an AR-15, radiologists and trauma surgeons observed that tissue had been destroyed in wide swaths near the pathway of bullets. Organs were found to be “smashed” and “shredded,” where traditionally they are found to be merely lacerated following handgun injuries. This extensive damage to surrounding structures occurs as a result of the much higher bullet velocities and thus higher energy levels transmitted by assault rifles as compared with typical handguns.

On October 1, 2017, the worst mass shooting in the history of the United States took place in Las Vegas, Nevada. A lone gunman armed with multiple rifles fired more than 1000 rounds into a large music festival crowd on the Las Vegas strip. His position on the 32nd floor of a nearby hotel and his modification of semiautomatic weapons into automatic weapons likely increased the terrible lethality of the attack. Fifty-eight people were killed and more than 400 were injured by gunfire that night.

In the hours immediately following the mass shooting in Las Vegas, dozens of anesthesiologists were called to respond and provide care for the victims. A friend and colleague, Dr. Devin Kearns, describes the harrowing night:

“I was at home on call for pediatric anesthesia for the Level 1 trauma center here in Las Vegas. Shortly after falling asleep I was awoken by the phone ringing and the familiar voice of my partner. However, this call was anything but routine as he proceeded to say there had been a mass shooting.

The next thing I remember was jumping out of bed while telling my wife there had been a shooting on the strip. As I drove to the hospital I was listening to the radio for updates, not knowing what to expect. Upon arrival I was asked to go to OR 2 and set up for a critically injured, hemodynamically unstable patient who would be arriving shortly. As I checked the machine and prepared medications the situation still seemed surreal. We see a lot of penetrating and non-penetrating trauma at our facility. It is simply part of what we do. But could anything have prepared me for a mass casualty shooting?

As I waited for this critical patient to arrive, the time continued to pass. About 5 or 10 minutes later I called the front desk for an update… the patient didn’t survive.

I then went to the preoperative area and as I entered I witnessed a scene I will never forget. It was a scene I had not prepared for, and a scene I never expected to witness on my soil as I am not a member of the military. I saw multiple fatally wounded patients with their loved one by their side hoping, praying, and longing for the moments prior to the terror and fear they experienced at this senseless act.

Additional victims were triaged as they arrived. We cared for many of them in the operating room and this continued for the days and weeks to follow. These victims were not merely wounded physically, but emotionally, and spiritually as well.”

Dr. Sher’s and Dr. Kearns’ personal accounts of caring for mass shooting victims serve as a reminder to all anesthesiologists. We all must be prepared to provide optimal care for shooting victims with injury patterns that once were limited to military settings. Given the devastating tissue injury induced by assault rifles such as the AR-15, special consideration should be given to obtaining additional vascular access before or during surgery, and to requesting additional blood products prior to losing the tamponade effect following the opening of the abdomen or the chest.

BOSTON MARATHON BOMBING

On April 15, 2013, two homemade bombs made of pressure cookers filled with pellets and nails were detonated 12 seconds apart near the finish line of the Boston Marathon. The unusual nature of the bombs in this incident caused an unusual injury pattern: 3 victims were killed by the blasts and 264 were injured, 66 of whom sustained lower extremity injuries.[24] The close proximity of multiple major trauma centers to the site of the bombing likely played a role in reducing the mortality rate of this event. Despite a collaborative effort among the Boston city trauma centers, EDs were overwhelmed when 78% of the patients treated at city trauma centers arrived within 90 minutes of the initial event. Of these high acuity patients, 45 were admitted directly to operating rooms, 11 to ICUs, and 12 required emergency airway management.[25] Of the 127 patients receiving care at Boston’s trauma centers, over 100 likely had some facet of their immediate care provided by an anesthesiologist. The unique perspective and skills of the anesthesiologists allowed them to provide a wide variety of clinical services within what, in fact, served as the epicenter of terrorism disaster management.

Unlike other terror attacks in the United States, the bombs discharged in Boston caused injuries similar to those observed in the Afghanistan and Iraq wars, caused by improvised explosive devices (IEDs). This injury pattern in wars has prompted a resurgence of interest in the use of tourniquets in the field to prevent exsanguination from major injuries of the extremities.

Of the 66 patients with extremity injuries, 29 of them had life-threatening bleeding at the point of injury.[24] Twenty-seven of these 29 had a tourniquet applied in an attempt to reduce bleeding. All of the 27 tourniquets were improvised, that is, they were not commercially produced tourniquets designed expressly for the purpose of arterial occlusion. The most common type used was rubber tubing wrapped around the extremity combined with a Kelly clamp. Sixty-three percent of the tourniquets were applied by non-emergency medical service (EMS) personnel, and several were not applied tightly enough to actually occlude arterial flow. Experts in battlefield trauma care have discussed the use of tourniquets after the Boston Marathon bombing and have suggested an educational campaign to teach the correct technique for application of purpose-driven tourniquets, and suggested that all EMS providers be provided with these devices. Anesthesia providers have extensive experience with the proper application of arterial tourniquets, as a result of their widespread use during orthopedic operations, so their role is critically important in reducing blood loss and saving lives. In the event of another mass casualty event resulting from IEDs, anesthesiologists, certified registered nurse anesthetists, anesthesia assistants, and anesthesiology residents should instruct healthcare workers and volunteer first aid workers on the application of tourniquets. In the probable absence of purpose-driven commercially produced devices, emergency medicine, trauma, and anesthesia providers should inspect applied tourniquets to ensure they are applied in a manner that will occlude arterial flow.

The two perpetrators of this vicious crime were eventually apprehended and taken to a hospital with severe injuries. One died from his injuries while the other survived. This scenario brings to light one of the challenges of working as an anesthesiologist following a terrorist attack: the physician must continue to provide the best care possible even when the patient has done tremendous harm to other human beings. In situations like this, the physician benefits from focusing on the anatomic and physiologic data at hand, while ignoring the surrounding emotional elements. All physicians must remember their oath to “do not harm,” under any circumstances.

Section 3: Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Warfare

In today’s global political environment the threat of a chemical, biological, radiological, or nuclear (CBRN) attack combined with massive casualties cannot be disregarded. Many people assume that sophisticated and organized individuals initiate these types of attacks; this is not generally the case. Breaking CBRN into two groups, we can see that chemical and biological are more common than radiological and nuclear incidents, which in recent history have been a direct result of natural disasters. Regardless, medical professionals must address, prepare for, and train for these types of disasters and attacks to better care for those negatively impacted. After reviewing the history of CBRN warfare, this section will analyze, define, demonstrate, and outline the U.S. military’s approach to CBRN protocols, procedures, and standard operating procedures (SOPs). Using the structure, function, and focus of the U.S. military’s approach to CBRN will help delineate the anesthesiologist’s role in the civilian sector to help improve patient care while minimizing collateral damage and casualties.

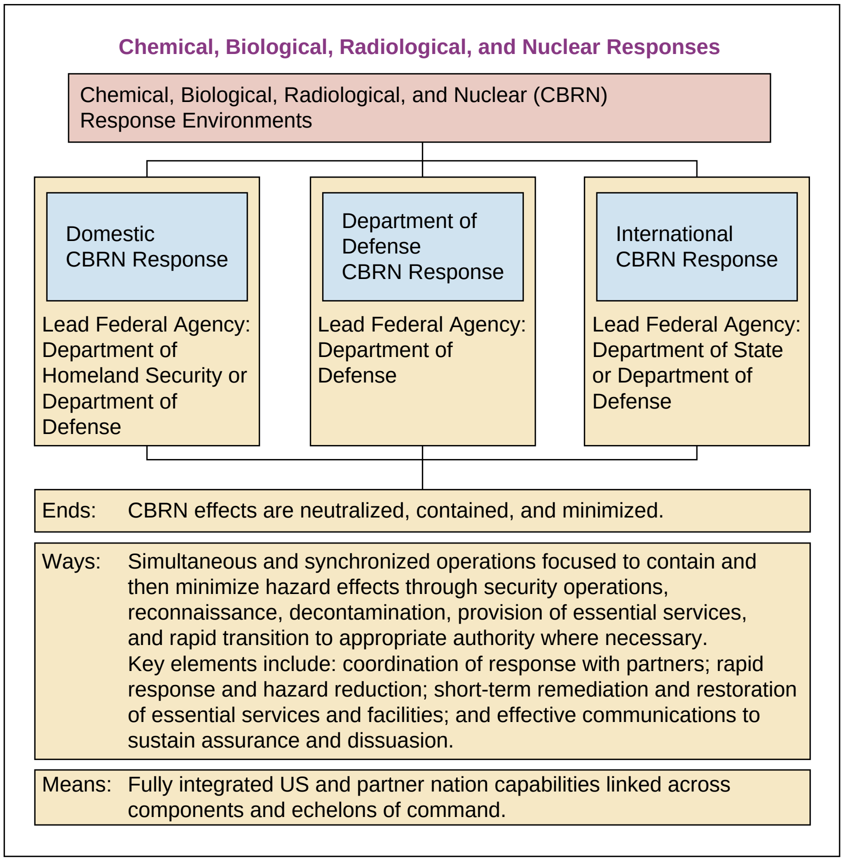
The U.S. military has established a hierarchy, structure, and SOPs for CBRN situations. As acts of terrorism have become more aggressive in recent decades, civilians may be more likely to see the effects and aftermath of a CBRN act of terrorism. Figs. 68.11 and 68.12 outline the Department of Defense (DOD) strategy and hierarchical structure for CBRN attacks on domestic soil, military installations, and abroad.[26] Attempting to adapt the military’s training protocols may help reduce unrest and exemplify the vital role of the consultant anesthesiologist during a CBRN attack.

An increased public awareness of possible CBRN attacks by terrorist groups started in the fall of 2001, when the biological agent, anthrax powder, was mailed to two U.S. senators at their congressional offices in Washington, DC. Civilian medical responders were forced to deal with and experience the toxic effects. As these CBRN terrorist threats have become more apparent toward the civilian populations, anesthesia providers have become more involved with on-site and prehospital medical management. Understanding the toxic effects and pathophysiologic effects of CBRN agents can help reduce the collateral damage to first responders. Anesthesia providers are essential in resuscitation efforts at the scene of an attack and with continued life support measures during sustained CBRN and terrorist attacks.

HISTORICAL ASPECT OF CHEMICAL, BIOLOGICAL, RADIOLOGICAL, AND NUCLEAR WARFARE

Chemical, biological, radiological and nuclear warfare is deeply embedded in the history of world conflicts. The search for tactical wartime and war-fighting advantages have been documented since ancient Babylon. Chemical weapons can be traced back to 10,000 BC when the San society of Southern Africa used natural poisons from snakes on the tips of their spears to hunt antelope. One of the first suspected uses of chemical agents in war can be found between the Persians and Romans in the year 256.[27] According to archeologic evidence, the Persian military exposed Roman soldiers to a noxious gas, killing them before ever having to face them in battle. During the conflict between the Romans and Persians, it was noted that the Persians used a suspected sulfurous gas in a tunnel, quickly killing 20 Roman soldiers by asphyxiation. This primitive form of combusting sulfur crystals in a confined space may have been the very first chemical or biological material employed as an offensive weapon during a conflict. This was centuries before the indoctrination of the Geneva Protocols in 1925, which outlawed the use of weaponized chemicals during wartime.

Biological weapons, and eventually nuclear weapons, have evolved with advancing technologies. In fact, World War I saw the overutilization of chemical agents as offensive weapons. These chemical agents included phosgene gas, chlorine gas, and mustard gas during the infamous trench


Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Responses
Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear (CBRN) Response Environments
Domestic CBRN Response
Lead Federal Agency: Department of Homeland Security or Department of Defense
Department of Defense CBRN Response
Lead Federal Agency: Department of Defense
International CBRN Response
Lead Federal Agency: Department of State or Department of Defense

Ends: CBRN effects are neutralized, contained, and minimized.

Ways: Simultaneous and synchronized operations focused to contain and then minimize hazard effects through security operations, reconnaissance, decontamination, provision of essential services, and rapid transition to appropriate authority where necessary.
Key elements include: coordination of response with partners; rapid response and hazard reduction; short-term remediation and restoration of essential services and facilities; and effective communications to sustain assurance and dissuasion.

Means: Fully integrated US and partner nation capabilities linked across components and echelons of command.

Fig. 68.11 U.S. Dept. of Defense CBRN Response table. (Adapted from Joint Publication 3-41, Chemical Biological, Radiological and Nuclear Response, September 9, 2016.)

warfare encounters between 1915 and 1918. Chemical weapons were very effective and the release of these gases during battle had substantial impact and accounted for a large number of casualties (Figs. 68.13 to 68.15). These heinous attacks against unprepared troops led to chemical and biological weapons being considered weapons of *mass destruction* by the British government, because they led to catastrophic and painful loss of life. During World War I, more technologically advanced chemical and biological weapons continued to be used, resulting in approximately 1.3 million casualties related to these explosive devices.[28] This is why many historians consider World War I as the “Chemist’s War.” The toxic effects of chemical weapons during World War I were compounded by the fact that many of these weapons were combined with ballistic explosive shells to increase lethality of the chemicals. The combination of toxin and ballistic injuries led to compounding casualties on and away from the battlefield, as a consequence of the crippling nature of the chemical weapons on those that survived the chemical attacks.

There have been historical attempts to prevent and outlaw these weapons of *mass destruction* due to a review of legal implications of chemical and biological weapons. It started in 1899 with the Hague Declaration Concerning Asphyxiating Gases and again in 1907 at the Hague Convention on Land Warfare, which actually outlawed the use of poison or poisoned agents during wartime.[29] In this regard, the actions and implementation of chemical and biological agents during World War I violated these regulations. However, the landmark international regulation of 1925 in Geneva outlined, outlawed, and made the use of chemical weapons a crime against humanity, which nearly led to a cessation of chemical and biological weapons development as history moved forward toward World War II.

Under very tight secrecy, a major discovery by the German scientist Gerhard Schrader in 1936 led to the invention of anticholinesterase nerve agents. These nerve agents were not utilized in World War II, but they became more of a threat afterwards. In 1945, the former Soviet Union captured a major nerve agent manufacturing plant, subsequently giving the Soviet Union not only nuclear capabilities but biochemical weapons for mass destruction.[30] The most unfortunate aspect of the Soviet seizure of this manufacturing plant was that the Soviet military leaders began to see chemical, biological, and nerve agents as normal armaments for war. This philosophy was contrary to the Geneva convention and the worldwide ban on chemical and biological weapons.

Several other countries have been implicated in secret development and advancement of chemical and biological weapons. Most notably, the Chinese and Japanese governments denied reports of developing weapons of mass destruction, but since 1930 they have been suspected of researching and manufacturing chemical and biological weapons.[31] Unfortunately, these biological agents were tested on prisoners and the general population without proper consent, which is considered a crime against humanity under the Geneva Conventions.[32] This secret

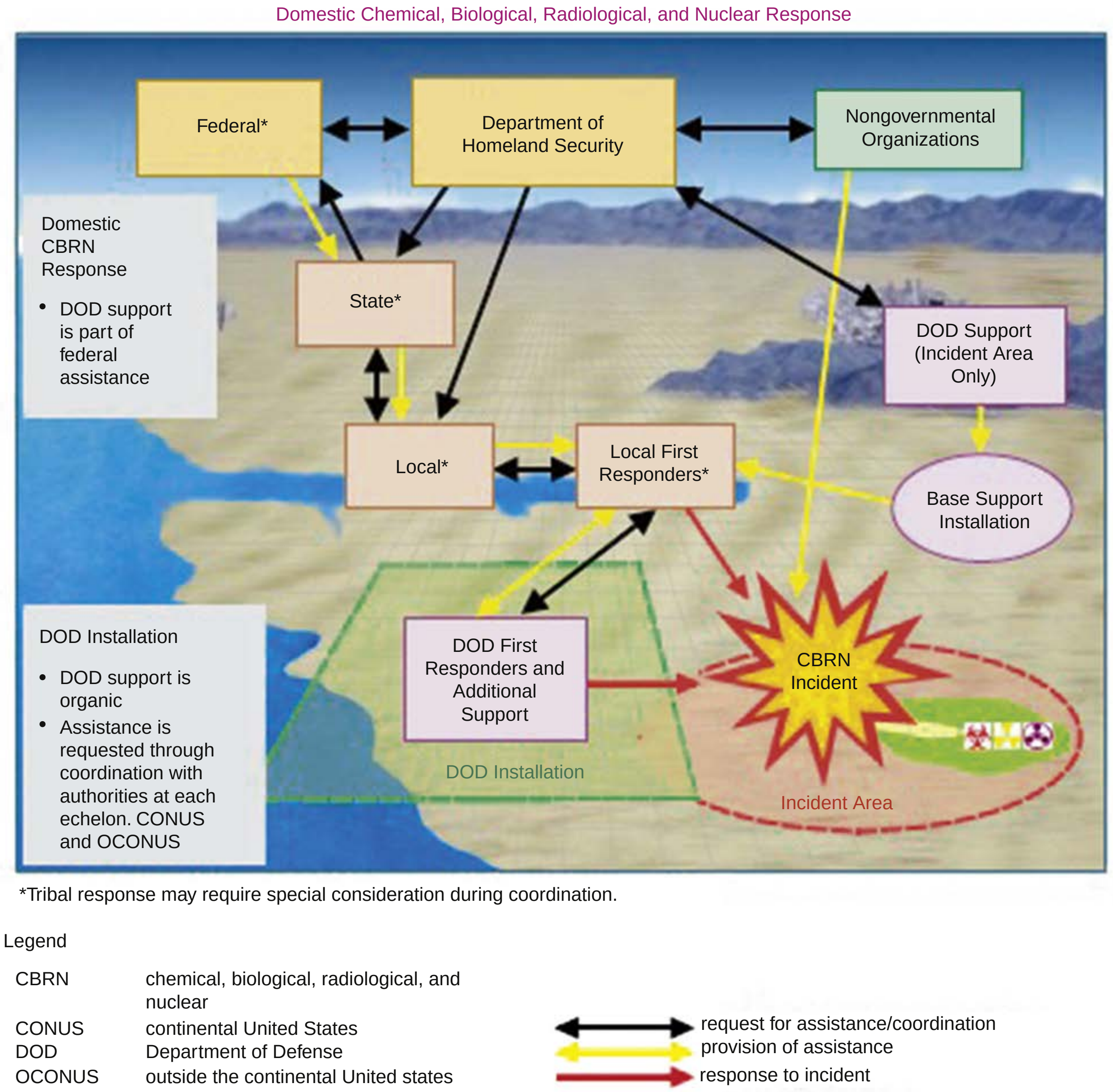

Domestic Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Response
Federal*
Department of Homeland Security
Nongovernmental Organizations
Domestic CBRN Response
• DOD support is part of federal assistance
State*
DOD Support (Incident Area Only)
Local*
Local First Responders*
Base Support Installation
DOD Installation
• DOD support is organic
• Assistance is requested through coordination with authorities at each echelon. CONUS and OCONUS
DOD First Responders and Additional Support
CBRN Incident
DOD Installation
Incident Area
*Tribal response may require special consideration during coordination.
Legend
CBRN chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear
CONUS continental United States
DOD Department of Defense
OCONUS outside the continental United states
request for assistance/coordination
provision of assistance
response to incident

Fig. 68.12 U.S. Dept. of Defense CBRN Response Graphic. (Adapted from Joint Publication 3-41, Chemical Biological, Radiological and Nuclear Response, September 9, 2016.)

testing went on for years without notice by other world powers. Even though this is a vile and awful act against the general population, substantial research data were collected. After the capture of one of the project leaders by the United States, considerable intelligence was passed to the federal government regarding this chemical and biological research. This formed the basis for the United States' offensive biological and chemical weapons research and development as a response to other countries stockpiling these weapons. However, the Biological Weapons Convention in 1972 put an effective stop to worldwide research and stockpiling of chemical, biological, and nerve agents for weaponization.[33]

Despite the 1972 Biological Weapons Convention putting an enormous price on continued chemical, biological, and nerve agent research, the Soviet Union continued to manufacture and stockpile weapons of mass destruction. The Soviet biological warfare program hit a peak in the mid-1970s, when they developed a whole new type of biological weapon and weapon systems. The former Soviet Union's government denied these programs existed and the fact that these weapons' systems had been deployed around the world as a first strike weapon.[34] Again, continued chemical and biological weapons research was considered an inhumane act of war, but during the cold war some research actually focused on antidote-based chemical regimens to aid and manage wounded combatants. Unfortunately, with the deployment of chemical, biological, and nerve agents as offensive weapons around the world, it also contributed to these weapons being transferred to terrorist groups because of decreased accountability for these weapons by the end of the Cold War.

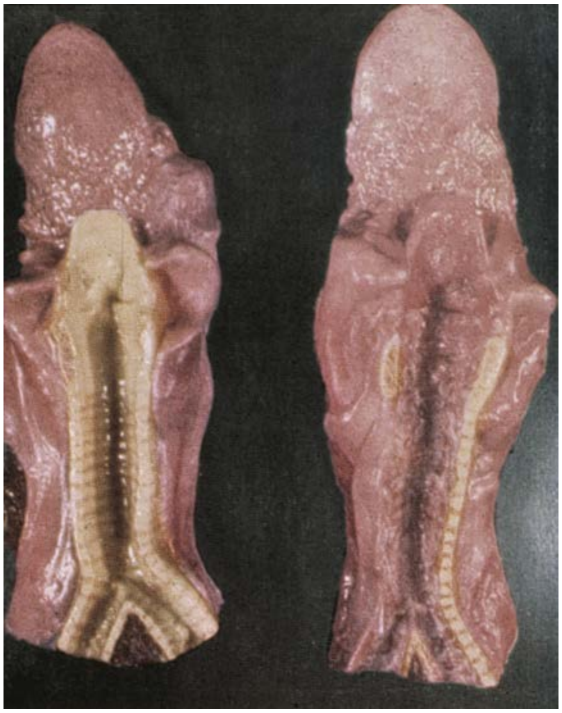


Fig. 68.13 Tracheal injury caused by mustard gas. (Courtesy Her Majesty's Stationery Office, London, United Kingdom.)

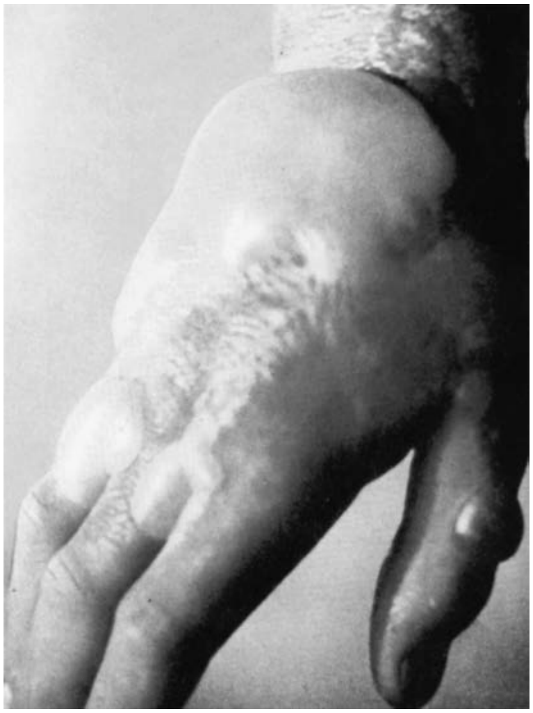


Fig. 68.15 Cutaneous vesication caused by mustard gas exposure. (Courtesy Her Majesty's Stationery Office, London, United Kingdom.)

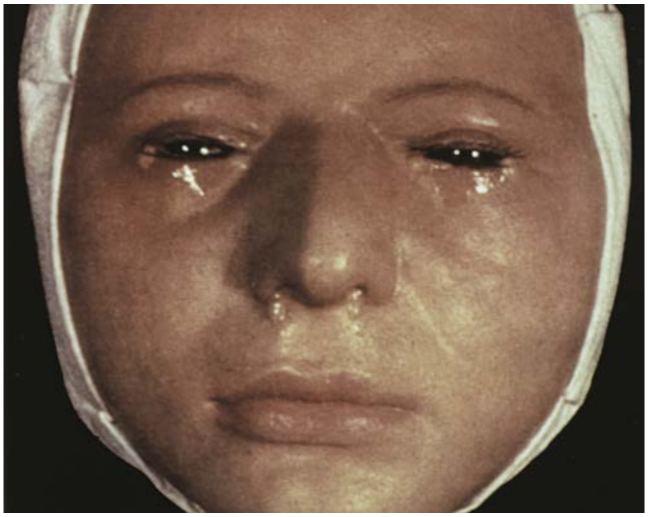


Fig. 68.14 Eye injury caused by mustard gas. (Courtesy Her Majesty's Stationery Office, London, United Kingdom.)

The 1980s saw a shift to chemical and biological weapons as a true first-line offensive weapon. At this point in history, chemical and biological injuries could be treated more effectively on the battlefield and by first responders on the civilian side. The research into antidotes for chemical, biological, and nerve agents had finally caught up to their weaponization. The United Nations had documented the combined uses of vesicants and nerve agents, such as mustard gas and tabun toxin to increase the lethality of chemical and biological weapons.[35,36] These agents were not as effective as expected, and they accounted for only about 27,000 Iranian casualties, or about 1% of the total casualties of the Iran-Iraq war. The noted reason for the ineffectiveness or decline in lethality of these chemical weapons can be accounted for by the research into antidotes and improved care on and around the battlefield. In contrast to the organized battlefield during the Iran-Iraq war, when this agent was released on a civilian population of Halabja in Iraqi Kurdistan, it accounted for more than 5000 deaths, or a large percentage of the Kurdish village population.[37] This contrast in lethality demonstrates the improvement to battlefield medicine as well as the effectiveness of the antidotes.

The last part of the 20th century saw several civilian attacks utilizing different combinations of chemical, biological, and/or nerve agents. In one of the most notorious nerve agent attacks in Tokyo, Japan, sarin gas was used in the subway system and was responsible for multiple fatalities and injuries. Unfortunately, during this mass casualty experience, civilian medical personnel lacked knowledge, training, and understanding of appropriate medical treatments and became casualties themselves.[38,32] The lack of training for civilian medical providers and emergency staff brought home important lessons for all, especially anesthesia providers. Box 68.1 outlines the lessons learned from this nerve agent attack.[32]

Despite the progressive weaponization of chemical, biological, and nerve agents over many decades, classifying them appropriately can be challenging. In the simplest terms, they can be classified as weapons of *mass destruction*, but the application of that term was short-lived because of the advancement of antidotes and improved medical treatment. By definition, weapons of mass destruction have to have a significant destructive impact on a society, such as the atomic bombs dropped on Hiroshima and Nagasaki, Japan. In regards to chemical, biological, and nerve agents, they are defined by their effects on the populations on which they have been released, and many of these devices lack the large explosive component as compared to nuclear weapons: true weapons of mass destruction.[31] In the 1950s, because of the Tizard report, chemical, biological, and nerve agents were to be included within the term "weapons of mass destruction." In this report, the term weapon of mass destruction referred solely to the massive loss of life the weapon was capable of creating. Overall, regardless of the mechanism and explosive power of the weapon employed, chemical, biological, nerve agents, and nuclear isotopes are all considered very lethal threats to society. This holds true regardless of whether they are classified as weapons of mass destruction. The massive release of chemical, biological, or nerve agents among a very large population is possible in theory, but this would require a delivery modality such as a missile, rocket, or violent explosive vehicle.[31]

BOX 68.1 **Tokyo Sarin Gas Lessons Learned for First Responders**

Lesson 1	Military-grade chemical, biological, and nerve agents can be easily employed by terrorist groups
Lesson 2	HAZMAT and incidence management training for chemical, biological, and nerve agent mass causalities was not sufficient
Lesson 3	Lack of situational (scene) control, protection, and personnel decontamination contributed to additional casualties and fatalities
Lesson 4	Lack of resuscitation efforts at the site of chemical and biological release contributed to further casualties
Lesson 5	This incident lead to a significant database for medical management of patients exposed to nerve agents

CHEMICAL, BIOLOGICAL, RADIOLOGICAL, OR NUCLEAR HAZARDS DEFINED

Chemical

Historically, chemical agents were purely a military issue, because there were only a small number of people with access or knowledge to chemical agents or weapons. However, over the past 20 years the types of chemical hazards have expanded significantly because of the advanced use of toxic chemicals required for industrial manufacturing. Chemical hazards are chemicals that can cause death or harm because of their toxic properties. The characteristics of the most commonly talked about chemical agents are discussed in Table 68.2.

Most chemical agents, whether industrialized or weaponized, have the ability to severely incapacitate a person or cause immediate or imminent death. Chemical agents begin their onset of physiologic symptoms when the body comes in contact with a concentration of agent that is more than one's body can tolerate. As an anesthesiologist, traumatologist, or first responder, one must be able to rapidly identify the difference between mild and severe symptoms of chemical agent exposure, which are outlined in Table 68.3. The main categories of chemical agents are outlined here:

1. Blistering agents (vesicants)—Generally affect the eyes and mucous membranes. In addition, they damage the respiratory epithelium. Airway management in these patients can be cumbersome for anesthesia providers because of sloughing off epithelium and necrotic tissue occluding the glottic view and anatomy.[40] Overall, the effect and toxicity depend on the type of agent, the concentration of the agent, the weather/weather patterns, and exposure time.
2. Blood agents (nerve agents)—Generally inhibit oxygen transfer from blood or hemoglobin to the cells of the body, or in another way causes tissue hypoxemia. Overall, the higher the concentration of blood agents, the more rapidly fatal these agents are. Most blood agents inhibit acetylcholinesterase activity, increasing the concentration of acetylcholine at the muscarinic and nicotinic receptors, causing cholinergic toxicity.[41] This excessive acetylcholine in the body can cause a myriad of symptoms, but for the anesthesiologist airway interventions can be hindered because of

TABLE 68.2 Most Commonly Discussed Chemical Weapon Agents

Name	Type	Properties	Mechanism of Action	Physiologic Symptoms	Onset of Action
Sarin gas	Nerve	Colorless, odorless, volatile	Anticholinesterase agent	Choking, miosis, headache, nausea, respiratory distress, convulsions, death	Minutes
VX (VR) gas	Nerve	Colorless, odorless, oily liquid	Anticholinesterase agent	Choking, miosis, headache, nausea, respiratory distress, convulsions, death	<30 min
Mustard gas	Blister	*Garlic odor*, oily liquid	Vesicant, bone marrow suppression, alkylating agent, damages deoxyribonucleic acid	Blisters skin, eyes, lungs	~4-6 h
Cyanide gas	Blood	*Almond odor*, volatile	Interferes with oxygen utilization at the cellular level	Hinders oxygen transfer, *respiratory paralysis*	Minutes

Adapted from the Multi-Service Doctrine for Chemical, Biological Radiological and Nuclear Operations (FM 3-11, MCWP 3-37.1, NWP 3-11, AFTTP 3-2.42).

significant airway occlusion from secretions and profound bronchospasm, which is why atropine should be administered prior to any airway intervention.[12,42,43] Higher concentrations of agent lead to more rapid physiologic decline proceeding to cardiopulmonary arrest.

3. Choking agents (pulmonary agents)—Generally cause a shift of fluid into the small airways at lower doses, while at higher doses all the major airways become irritated and dried out, causing choking, poor gas exchange, and ultimately, death. Rapid, shallow breathing, painful cough, and cyanotic skin are indicative of fluid filling the lungs and preventing oxygenation. Commonly, these patients will present with pulmonary physiology that mimics acute respiratory distress syndrome because of the fluid shifts, airway irritation, and inflammation.
4. Riot control agents—Generally cause lacrimation or vomiting. Unlike the choking agents, they are irritants that are used to cause a brief period of misery and harassment to subdue or incapacitate a threat or aggressive persons. Most of these agents inhibit multiple different enzymes and invariably increase bradykinin release.[16] Overall, these agents do not require significant medical attention except flushing of the eyes and removal from the environment.

Biological

Biological hazards are relatively easy to produce, especially since production facilities have very little environmental signature. Production of these microbes or organisms can pose a significant threat to human and animal welfare. Biological agents differ from chemical agents in that the agents are living organisms, viruses, toxins and/or microtoxins utilized to disable, disrupt, or kill other human beings or other organisms. While most biological agents are small, they have tremendous potential for lethality and application to a large-scale attack. Most biological agents are accessible throughout the world and are relatively inexpensive to produce compared to weaponization of chemical, radiological, or nuclear agents. Today's most commonly discussed biological agents are orders of magnitude stronger and more lethal than most chemical agents. These agents are outlined in Table 68.4. A common limitation of many biological agents is that they can be degraded by changes in the environmental conditions such as ultraviolet light, temperature, and humidity.

Many of the initial symptoms of biological warfare and a biological attack are vague and nonspecific. However, in the event there is high index of suspicion for a biological attack, steps must be taken to protect first responders and medical personnel. Physical protective barriers and personal protective equipment (PPE) are essential primary preventive measures. In addition, for other hazard responders and personnel there are vaccinations and immunizations for certain biological agents. By protecting our primary responders and healthcare providers during biological attacks, they are more apt and readily able to care for those directly and immediately in danger. PPE and these concepts will be explored in more detail in the Epidemic and Pandemic Infectious Outbreaks section.

TABLE 68.3 Typical Chemical Agent Exposure Symptoms

Mild Symptoms*	Severe Symptoms†
Runny nose	Sudden confusion
Sudden severe headache	Wheezing, labored breathing
Drooling	Miosis
Blurry vision	Painful tearing eyes
Chest pain	Sudden profound vomiting
Difficulty breathing	Severe muscle twitching/seizures
Sweating	Uncontrolled urination
Muscle twitching/cramps	Uncontrolled defecation
Stomach cramps	Profound respiratory difficulties
Nausea	

*Some symptoms of chemical agent intoxication can be confused with severe heat stroke.

†Adapted from the Multi-Service Doctrine for Chemical, Biological Radiological and Nuclear Operations (FM 3-11, MCWP 3-37.1, NWP 3-11, AFTTP 3-2.42).

Radiological and Nuclear Weapons and Effects

Radiological hazards include electromagnetic or particulate radiation capable of causing damage, injury, or destruction through ionizing effects of neutrons, γ rays, α particles, or β particles. Radiological damage can be dispersed in many ways, but ultimately causes destruction, damage, or injury to a large population of people, while exposing an even larger population to the lingering effects of ionizing radiation.

Nuclear weapons are a complete assembly of weapons capable of independently being armed, fired, fused, and detonated to release a large-scale nuclear explosion capable of significant destruction to the land, environment, people, and animals within a large area. The intensity of nuclear weapons is greater than that of chemical and biological weapons, and the deployment of a nuclear weapon will cause significantly more death and destruction from the point of detonation, outward. Short- and long-term devastation can be attributed to nuclear fallout, which is the residual radioactive material that is propelled into the atmosphere following a nuclear detonation. Thus, nuclear and radioactive material is literally falling from the sky and is moved miles and miles away by winds within the atmosphere.[44]

Unlike chemical attacks or biological attacks, nuclear/radiological attacks rarely induce the need for immediate airway intervention, even in the harshest of exposed patients. While nuclear warfare can devastate a large area, the immediate impact can be considered similar to a high-grade explosive device. The main difference between nuclear weapons and conventional explosives is that a nuclear weapon will do greater damage by orders of magnitude. Overall, acute management of the effects of high radiation doses is prudent. Most commonly, supportive care of the hematological, gastrointestinal, neurologic, cardiovascular, and integumentary systems are required. Following a major radiological or nuclear attack, patients with significant nausea and vomiting may require intubation for airway protection.

Mass Casualty Situations and Chemical, Biological, Radiological, or Nuclear Attacks

Overall, the structure, function, and focus of the U.S. military's approach to CBRN can be adapted to the civilian sector wherever feasible to help improve patient care while minimizing collateral damage. All CBRN incidents are emergency situations that require multi-system coordination and organization. Table 68.5 demonstrates the sources and types of CBRN hazards. There are three basic reasons why CBRN situations occur:

TABLE 68.4 Most Commonly Discussed Weaponized Biological Agents

Common Name	Agent	Physiological Effects	Onset
Anthrax	*Bacillus anthracis*	Fever, fatigue, severe respiratory impairment, high fever, and excessively rapid pulse rate. Pulmonary anthrax is fatal more than 90% of the time.	1-5 days
Plague	*Yersinia pestis*	Fever, headache, and rapid heart rate, followed by pneumonia and hemorrhage of the skin and mucous membranes. Untreated plague pneumonia fatalities approach 100%, but early treatment can reduce mortality to as low as 5%.	2-3 days
Tularemia	*Francisella tularensis*	Fever, chills, headache, and muscular pain. Untreated tularemia can result in 30%-60% mortality; treated, mortality rate is reduced to 1%.	3-5 days
Botulism	*Clostridium botulinum*	Extreme weakness, nausea, headaches, and intestinal pain leading to respiratory paralysis that may cause death.	2-26 h

Adapted from the Multi-Service Doctrine for Chemical, Biological Radiological and Nuclear Operations (FM 3-11, MCWP 3-37.1, NWP 3-11, AFTTP 3-2.42).

TABLE 68.5 Chemical Biological, Radiological, or Nuclear Threats and Hazards

Chemical	Biological	Radiological	Nuclear
WEAPONS OF MASS DESTRUCTION			
▪ Chemical weapons ▪ Chemical agents ▪ Nontraditional agents	▪ Biological weapons ▪ Biological agents ▪ Nontraditional agents	▪ Radiological dispersal devices ▪ Radiological exposure devices	▪ Nuclear weapons ▪ Improvised nuclear device (improvised explosive devices/IND)
TOXIC INDUSTRIAL MATERIALS			
Toxic Industrial Chemicals	Toxic Industrial Biologicals	Toxic Industrial Radiologicals	
Other Sources			

Adapted from the Multi-Service Doctrine for Chemical, Biological Radiological and Nuclear Operations (FM 3-11, MCWP 3-37.1, NWP 3-11, AFTTP 3-2.42).

1. Intentional—This is a deliberate action to induce harm in the form of toxic agents, release of radiological agents, or the detonation of explosive material in an attempt to cause terror for political, religious, or ideological purposes.
2. Accidental—A human error–induced release of toxic agents, release of radiological agents into the environment, or detonation of explosive material.
3. Natural—Caused directly by or in response to a natural disaster, which leads to the release of toxic agents, release of radiological agents into the environment, or detonation of explosive material.

Currently the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) has several suggested protocols for CBRN attacks, but to make these protocols most useful will require extensive and ongoing training. Disaster preparedness and coordination is not simply an ED problem to manage. For anesthesia providers, it is critically important to reinforce clinical skills and practices so that, in the event of a massive casualty event, during a natural disaster, or during a potential CBRN attack they are prepared to respond immediately and appropriately. Box 68.2 outlines the basic CBRN rules all providers should follow during a CBRN attack. Many providers do not have the adequate training to support a mass casualty situation and this leads to increased unrest and disorder. In civilian hospitals, training for CBRN as an

BOX 68.2 CBRN Basic Provider Rules and Guidelines for Safety

Rule 1	DO NOT become the casualty yourself
Rule 2	Always decontaminate the scene, situation, and patient prior to any movement to the Operating Room
Rule 3	Never assume ANY vaccine is 100% protective
Rule 4	"SAFE ZONES" should always protect themselves from contaminated "WALK-INS"
Rule 5	We all make mistakes, when in doubt call infectious disease, the CDC or WHO
Rule 6	Always decontaminate the casualties, then immediately begin ACLS, ATLS, and resuscitation measures to stabilize patients
Rule 7	Pay careful attention to sterile techniques, many patients will have compromised immune systems and/or already be neutropenic
Rule 8	Brain irradiation can cause all sorts of primary, secondary, and tertiary CNS symptoms
Rule 9	Ionizing radiation victims are less of a risk to providers compared to chemical/biological casualties

ACLS, Advanced cardiac life support; *ATLS*, advanced trauma life support; *CDC*, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; *WHO*, World Health Organization.

entire unit is extremely challenging, because it is almost impossible to shut down an entire hospital for a day or several hours to properly practice, train, and prepare. The U.S. military, their military hospitals, and healthcare personnel have required unit, battalion, and command training exercises on U.S. soil and abroad for CBRN attacks, which help maintain order, direction, and patient care during times of turmoil and civil unrest.

Incident Management During a Chemical, Biological, Radiological, or Nuclear Attack and Personal Protective Equipment

In the face of a mass casualty event from a CBRN attack, panic and chaos are to be expected. Successful response to a CBRN attack requires command and control personnel and the medical providers to prioritize the following: personnel safety, personnel protection, command establishment, and site-wide communication. Similar to the U.S. military, the civilian sector has command control entities in the form of local, state, and federal response systems. Once the command structure is established for the incident in question, the commander is directly responsible for directing and controlling all available resources.

The first rule for CBRN casualty treatment and maintenance states, "Do not become the casualty yourself". The incident commander or officer in charge is in charge of setting the protection level to ensure maximal barrier protection and adequate PPE for all providers and first responders. Unfortunately, the appropriate PPE level to use may not be immediately known, so it is advantageous to err on the side of a higher protection during immediate decontamination and stabilization efforts. The U.S. military has adapted their PPE levels from the U.S. Environmental Agency's *Hazardous waste operations and emergency response* protocols.[45] At any time during intubation, exposure to bodily fluids, and/or airborne infection the minimum protection level should be C. In addition to this protection level, in an unknown CBRN attack all medical examinations for severe casualties or those severely and negatively impacted by the CBRN attack should be done per Table 68.6.

Protection is the key feature of incident management, and anesthesia providers should be familiar with several levels of PPE suits and masks, and the techniques of decontamination in Table 68.7. Several levels of protection are used in the management of toxic releases, but the appropriate level for medical intervention is level C, which allows reasonable tactile dexterity and contact with the patient to provide essential life support and antidote therapy onsite.[46] Level C protection is equivalent to that used by the military to provide protection against the most toxic chemical warfare agents and virulent biological warfare organisms.[47]

TABLE 68.6 Initial Workup for Severely Injured Casualties During Chemical Biological, Radiological, or Nuclear Attack

Investigation	Lab Test/s
Urea and Electrolytes	▪ Arterial blood gas ▪ Glucose ▪ Lactate ▪ Calcium/phosphorus/magnesium
Full Blood Count	▪ Store sample for later analysis ▪ Consider coagulation/clotting studies
Urinalysis	▪ Store for later analysis
Electrocardiogram	
Chest Radiogram	

Store all blood samples in a safe containment area for personnel protection and for future analysis.

TABLE 68.7 Levels of Personal Protective Equipment in Chemical, Biological, Radiological, or Nuclear Incidents[45]

Level	Minimum Personal Protective Equipment Required
A	▪ Positive pressure SCBA ▪ Fully encapsulated chemical-resistant suit ▪ Double layer of chemical-resistant gloves ▪ Chemical-resistant boots ▪ Airtight seal between suit and gloves and boots
B	▪ Positive pressure SCBA ▪ Chemical-resistant, long-sleeved suit ▪ Double layer of chemical-resistant gloves ▪ Chemical-resistant boots
C	▪ Full-face air-purification device (respirator) ▪ Chemical-resistant suit ▪ Chemical-resistant outer gloves ▪ Chemical-resistant boots
D	▪ Equipment does not provide specific respiratory or skin protection and usually consists of regular work clothes

SCBA, Self-contained breathing apparatus.

Decontamination

In most situations the initial hazards are unknown, however protecting oneself is one of the major keys to on-scene and in-hospital care of the afflicted patients. Many hazards are short-lived or transient, but it should be assumed that the hazard released is persistent and transmissible through the on-scene decontamination zones. Immediately establishing the level of personal protection required for medical staff, paramedics, and ancillary search and research personnel by the on-scene commander is vital to preventing an increased number of casualties among medical and rescue personnel. To safely work on search and rescue and decontamination many on-scene commanders immediately place a level C minimum for PPE for medical staff and paramedics, and upgrade or downgrade based on situational changes onsite. Triage personnel and medical personnel are vital to providing immediate: (1) triage, (2) life-support measures (TOXALS—toxicology advanced life support), and (3) antidote and other pharmacologic support.

Early life-support measures in the decontamination zone are very important.[48,49] A unique perspective to CBRN on-scene decontamination and resuscitation was introduced in 1996, and was uniquely termed TOXALS (Toxicology Advanced Life Support) to be used in conjunction with advanced cardiac life support (ACLS), advanced trauma life support (ATLS), and basic life support (BLS) in the setting of chemical, biological, and/or radiological attacks. TOXALS protocol expands the on-scene and in-hospital resuscitation efforts of trained medical personnel. and incorporates principles of ACLS, ATLS, and BLS, which can be expanded to the pneumonic ABCDDEE: airway, breathing, circulation, disability, drugs, exposure, and environment.

Summary of Chemical, Biological, Radiological, or Nuclear Section

CBRN attacks and natural disasters have similar elements to medical care on the battlefield. Population control, situational control, and on-scene containment are essential to maintaining order and functionality of the civilian emergency disaster system. As anesthesiologists, the main responsibility is to be present for operating room needs, but their advanced medical knowledge, advanced pharmacology knowledge, and advanced trauma-stabilization training makes them ideal to aid and support emergency triage physicians. Not all patients during CBRN attacks or natural disasters immediately go to the operating room for stabilization. Many of the emergency responders and providers will need support either in triage, for ED consultations, pain management, or intensive care support for stabilization, pharmacology expertise, and/or procedural skills. For example, a small roving team consisting of an anesthesiologist, a critical care/ED nurse, and a respiratory therapist could manage a wide variety of critically injured patients following a CBRN massive casualty event.

An anesthesiologist's primary role is to stabilize and ensure safe operating conditions for casualties of any CBRN attack, terrorist attack, or natural disaster. However, this is not limited to preoperative assessment and intraoperative management of CBRN victims. During times of crisis, anesthesiologists cannot remain sequestered in the operating room awaiting the arrival of injured patients. They must be proactive within the hospital system or emergency response system, providing triage and management of patients prior to arrival at the operating room or the ICU.

Section 4: Epidemic and Pandemic Infectious Outbreaks

Until recently, the role of anesthesiologists in biological disasters, such as infectious epidemics and pandemics, had been discussed only in the most general terms. While the lifesaving application of positive pressure ventilation by Danish anesthesiologist Dr. Bjorn Ibsen probably saved hundreds if not thousands of lives during the Copenhagen polio epidemic of 1952, the role of North American anesthesiologists as critical members of the management team in biological disasters was not fully exploited until the severe adult respiratory syndrome (SARS) epidemic of 2003 and the West African Ebola epidemic of 2014.[50-52] During both of these worldwide healthcare crises, anesthesiologists not only played critical roles as caregivers, but risked personal safety when functioning in their role as specialists in airway management and intensive care. Knowledge of the disease, management options, and importantly, infection-control measures necessary to protect oneself, are all critical for anesthesiologists to contribute maximally and mitigate personal vulnerability during the next epidemic or pandemic.[53]

Health emergencies in the form of regional epidemics and global pandemics have the capacity to kill more than 10 million people across continents and around the world.[54] While this number sounds excessive and perhaps even alarmist, it is in fact a conservative estimate when compared to pandemics over past centuries. Smallpox is the deadliest pandemic in human history. In the 20th century alone, estimates of deaths due to smallpox exceeded 300 million people with 30% of all persons infected succumbing to the disease.[55] The causative agent, Variola virus, is thought to date back possibly as far as 3000 years to the time of the Egyptian Empire. Its global spread paralleled the advance of modern civilization, exploration, and expanding trade. Thanks to the success of worldwide vaccination, the last person to die of smallpox was in 1978 and on May 8, 1980 the 33rd World Health Assembly officially declared the world smallpox free.[56,57] Unfortunately, unlike viruses that have a human reservoir such as smallpox, polio, and measles, and hence are targets for eradication, the next pandemic is more likely to be the result of zoonotic transmission.[58]

PANDEMIC INFLUENZA A

Past influenza pandemics have occurred when genetic mutations in an enzootic cycle result in re-assortment of gene segments creating what is functionally a novel infectious agent with major changes in surface proteins, capable of sustained human-to-human transmission in a global population with little existing herd immunity.[59] Pathogenic influenza A viruses arising from this antigenic shift have been the source of influenza A pandemics for centuries. In fact, there have been no less than 10 pandemic influenza A events over the past 300 years.[60] In the preceding century alone, there were three episodes of pandemic flu. A recent analysis of the "Spanish Flu" H1N1 pandemic of 1918 to 1919 estimated that at least 50 to 100 million people died worldwide. Less severe, but also with considerable mortality (approximately 1 million globally; 100,000 in the United States), were the 1957, "Asian Flu" H2N2 and the 1968 "Hong Kong Flu" H3N2 (Fig. 68.16).[60,61] Such events underscore the pandemic threat posed by avian influenza viruses, emphasizing the need for advanced preparation necessary to augment both the clinical and research response to future global health emergencies. In fact, given the incidence and variety of influenza viruses circulating in zoonotic populations, a virus possessing the necessary properties to cause a pandemic can emerge any time.[62]

In 2009, the world experienced the first major influenza A event of the 21st century. This worldwide influenza outbreak has been described by the CDC as the 2009 H1N1 Pandemic. The virus contained a unique combination of influenza genes not previously identified in animals or people. The genes were most closely related to North American swine and Eurasian swine H1N1 influenza viruses. Because of this, initial reports referred to the virus as a swine influenza virus. However, it quickly became apparent that this new virus was circulating among humans and not among U.S. pig herds. In the United States, there were over 60 million cases over the course of a year from April 2009 to April 2010. Fortunately, loss of life attributable to this event was relatively limited with an estimated 12,500 lives lost in the United States and 284,000 globally.[63,64]

Central to disaster planning for pandemic flu is an understanding of the strategies to minimize transmission of influenza between patients and healthcare workers. Despite vast clinical experience, there is still debate over how influenza is transmitted. Possible modes of transmission included in past discussions are airborne, droplet, and contact transmission. Each requires a different infection control approach and almost certainly different PPE. Recent analysis of multiple human and animal studies concluded that natural influenza transmission in human beings occurs over short distances primarily via droplet and contact routes.[65] Transmission of influenza virus via large-particle droplets generated from the respiratory tract of infected individuals during coughing, sneezing, talking, or during procedures such as suctioning or bronchoscopy requires close contact between the infected source and the recipient (6 feet or less). Large droplets do not remain suspended in the air and hence special ventilation or airflow systems are not required since true aerosolization does not occur. Preferential airborne transmission has not been documented as a method of human-to-human influenza transmission.[66] However, many procedures such as intubation and bronchoscopy have the potential to be aerosol-generating. The current literature does not define conditions under which influenza could become opportunistically airborne. Given the paucity of data in this regard, it may be reasonable to employ airborne precautions and higher levels of PPE such as N95 masks when such events are medically necessary. This is important information for anesthesiologists caring for potential flu victims in the ICU or managing their airway in the emergency room, hospital ward, or operating room.

SEVERE ACUTE RESPIRATORY SYNDROME

Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) caused by a novel coronavirus, called SARS-associated coronavirus (SARS-CoV), was first reported in Guangdong Province in China in November 2002. The first case appears to be a businessman from the city of Foshan who subsequently died from the disease. However, it was 3 months later, when a physician from the same province became ill while staying in a hotel in Hong Kong, that SARS rose to international attention. Twelve guests staying at the same hotel subsequently became infected, including seven whose rooms were on the same floor as the physician. These hotel guests became the index patients transporting the virus around the globe as they traveled home by airplane. While SARS was first identified in Toronto, Canada, in March, 2003, because of the speed of international travel, in less than 4 months about 4000 cases and 550 deaths from SARS could be traced to the guests infected in Hong Kong. Ultimately, a total of 8096 people in 29 countries became infected with SARS-CoV, of which 774 of them died (Table 68.8).[67-69]

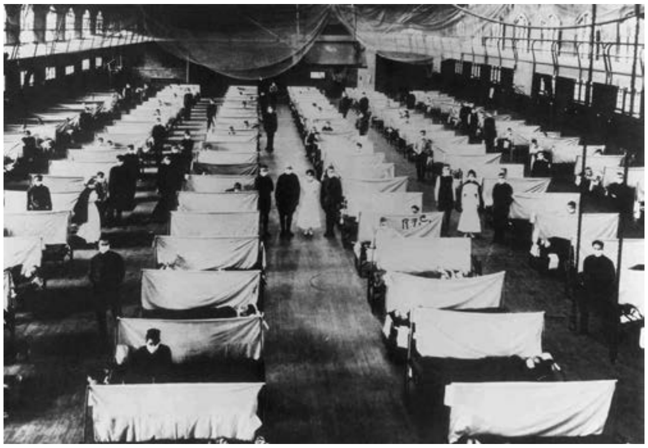


Fig. 68.16 Mass care of patients during 1918 flu pandemic. (From Clements BW, Casani J, eds. *Disasters and Public Health: Planning and Response, Second edition*. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann (Elsevier); 2016.)

Toronto was the epicenter of the disease in North America. The Ontario Ministry of Health reported 361 SARS cases, including 33 deaths (9%). Over half of those infected were healthcare workers including three anesthesiologists and one intensivist.[10,27,53,70] Overall case fatality was approximately 15%, but over 50% for patients over the age of 65.[9] On July 4, 2003, the World Health Organization (WHO) announced the global SARS outbreak was contained.[71]

SARS, like influenza, is of zoonotic origin. The virus is ubiquitous and has been isolated from swine, cattle, dogs, cats, and chickens. In 2002, SARS-CoV was isolated from Himalayan palm civets found in Chinese live animal markets where demand for freshly killed meat and poultry served as the source of SARS-CoV crossing species (Fig. 68.17).[72] This led to culling of the animals, although subsequent studies have not validated infection in either farm-raised or wild civets. More recent data suggest that bats are the more likely natural reservoirs of SARS-like coronavirus.[73]

Spread largely by droplets and direct contact, the virus demonstrates tropism to multiple organs and has been found not only in the lung, but the liver, kidney, sweat glands, parathyroid, pituitary, pancreas, adrenal glands, and the brain. As such, the disease is considered a true systemic illness with both pulmonary and extrapulmonary manifestations amplifying opportunity for healthcare worker exposure. This is important for anesthesiologists, intensivists, and other healthcare workers as viral shedding may occur not only in respiratory secretions but stool, urine, and even sweat.[72] Appropriate PPE providing protection beyond droplet and contact precautions is indicated when caring for SARS patients.

MIDDLE EAST RESPIRATORY SYNDROME

Like SARS, Middle East respiratory syndrome (MERS) is caused by a novel coronavirus, MERS-CoV. The first two cases of MERS-CoV infection as a cause of community-acquired pneumonia were first identified in Saudi Arabia and reported to the WHO in September 2012. As of September 2018, laboratory-confirmed cases of MERS number 2260 with 803 associated deaths (35.5%) in 27 countries across the globe.[74,75] The

TABLE 68.8 Mortality of Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome Based Upon Age

Age (Years)	Mortality
<24	<1%
24-44	6%
45-64	15%
>65	>50%

Modified from Peng PW, Wong DT, Bevan D, et al. Infection control and anesthesia: lessons learned from the Toronto SARS outbreak. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50(10):989–997.

majority of cases have been reported in Saudi Arabia, United Arab Emirates, and the Republic of Korea (South Korea), although over 80% of reported cases to date have been linked to exposure in Saudi Arabia (Fig. 68.18).[76]

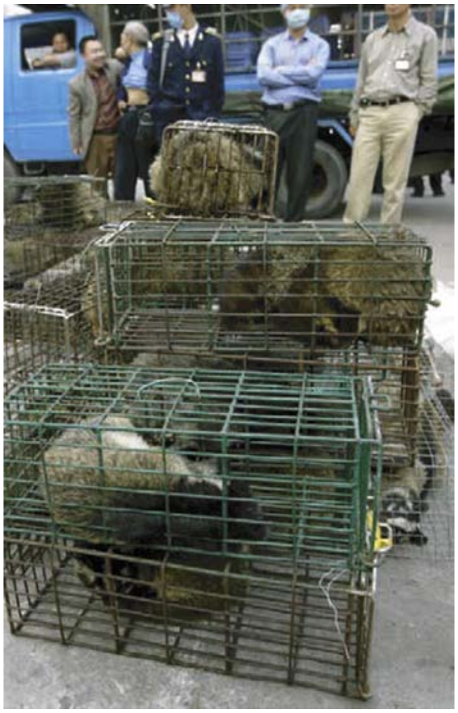


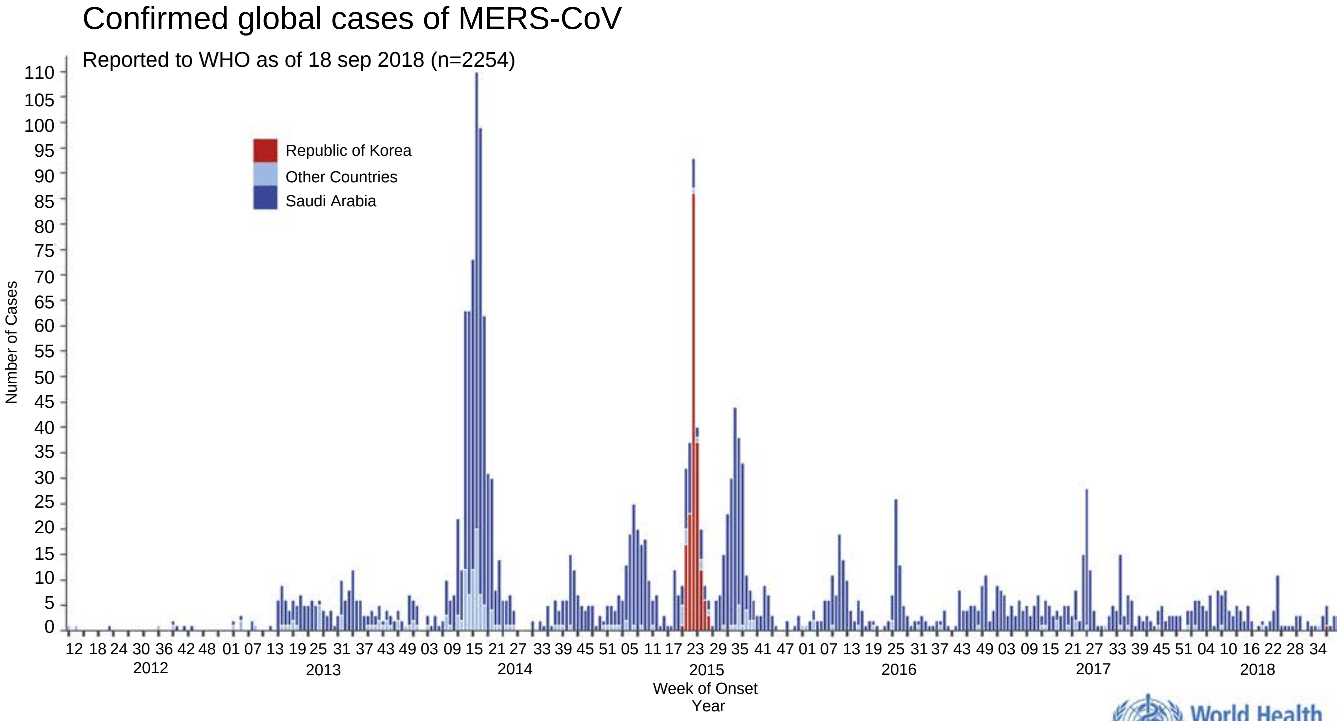
Fig. 68.17 Live animal markets are the interface where animal to human inter-species transmission of SARS-CoV occurred. Guangzhou government officers seize civets in Xinyuan wildlife market in Guangzhou to prevent the spread of SARS-CoV. (From Lau YL, Peiris JS. Pathogenesis of severe acute respiratory syndrome. *Curr Opin Immunol.* 2005;17[4]:404–410.)

MERS-CoV, like SARS-CoV, is a zoonotic virus. Dromedary camels appear to be the major reservoir host and animal source of MERS infection in humans through either direct or indirect contact. The specific method of transmission remains unclear, but poorly cooked camel meat and unpasteurized camel milk remain suspect, and consumption of raw or undercooked animal products carries a high risk of infection. Human-to-human contact in the non-healthcare setting appears rare with little to no sustained human-to-human transmission documented.[77]

Human-to-human transmission through close contact within the healthcare setting accounts for the majority of reported cases to date. Outside of Saudi Arabia, the largest outbreak so far occurred in South Korea in 2015.[77] In a hospital-associated cluster, a single infected person admitted to a hospital in South Korea led to 186 cases and 36 deaths across multiple healthcare facilities.[78,79] This particular case highlights the consequences of substandard infection control practices and inadequate use of PPE, as the virus does not pass easily person to person unless there is close contact.[76] Healthcare workers must remain alert for the continued threat of MERS as global travel continues to accelerate.

EBOLA VIRUS DISEASE

Ebola virus disease (EVD) is a zoonotic disease affecting people and non-human primates. The presumptive enzootic reservoir is believed to be African fruit bats, although this cause is still not definitive. Ebola is an RNA *Filovirus* and a member of the *Filoviridae* family. There are five species of Ebola virus, of which four are pathogenic to humans. The most common and possessing the highest case fatality rate (60%-90%) is the *Zaire ebolavirus*. *Sudan ebolavirus, Taï Forest ebolavirus, Bundibugyo ebolavirus* also are pathogenic to humans, but



Other countries: Algeria, Austria, Bahrain, China, Egypt, France, Germany, Greece, Iran, Italy, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Malaysia, Netherlands, Oman, Philippines, Qatar, Thailand, Tunisia, Turkey, United Arab Emirates, United Kingdom, United States of America, Yemen
Please note that the underlying data is subject to change as the investigations around cases are ongoing. Onset date estimated if not available.

Fig. 68.18 Global distribution of Middle East Respiratory Syndrome. (Data from World Health Organization. Available from http://www.who.int/emergencies/mers-cov/epi-18-september-2018.png?ua=1.)

at lower fatality rates. The *Reston ebolavirus* while known to cause disease in nonhuman primates and swine, has not been indicted as a cause of human disease.[80] Marburg virus, the first known *Filovirus* was first described in 1967. Both viruses are known to cause viral hemorrhagic fever in humans with high fatality rates. The higher fatality rate of EVD makes it an important biothreat pathogen and, given the severity of recent outbreaks, worthy of more detailed discussion.[81,82]

Historically, the virus has been isolated to rural regions of Sub-Saharan Central Africa. EVD outbreaks have occurred relatively frequently over the past 30 years since the first outbreak in 1976 alongside the Ebola river in the village of Yambuku, Zaire, in what is now the northern Democratic Republic of Congo and South Sudan.[83] Ultimately, two genetically distinct species of virus were isolated bearing the names of their respective geographic areas.[81] In 2014, the beginnings of what would become the largest outbreak of EVD on record took hold in West Africa. On March 21, 2014, the WHO was notified of a growing outbreak in southeastern Guinea. The disease spread quickly to its capital, Conakry, and then to the neighboring countries of Liberia and Sierra Leone.[82] West Africa had never experienced an EVD outbreak and given the socio-economic conditions of these nations, was poorly equipped to respond. By the time the outbreak was declared over in June of 2016, there were 28,610 cases and 11,308 deaths for a mortality rate of 39%. To put things in perspective, from 1976 to 2014 there were fewer than 2500 cases reported worldwide (Table 68.9).[84]

The Ebola virus is transmitted through contact with infected secretions. Ebola has been identified in blood, saliva, vomit, feces, urine, sweat, nasal secretions, semen, and genital secretions. There is no evidence of airborne spread. Ebola enters the host through mucosal surfaces or

TABLE 68.9 Number of Cases and Deaths During Ebola Outbreaks Worldwide 1976-2014

Country	Year	Town	No. of Cases	No. of Deaths	Species
Democratic Republic of the Congo	2014	Multiple	66	49	*Zaire ebolavirus*
Uganda	2012	Luwero District	6*	3*	*Sudan ebolavirus*
Democratic Republic of the Congo	2012	Isiro Health Zone	36*	13*	*Bundibugyo ebolavirus*
Uganda	2012	Kibaale District	11*	4*	*Sudan ebolavirus*
Uganda	2011	Luwero District	1	1	*Sudan ebolavirus*
Democratic Republic of the Congo	2008	Luebo	32	15	*Zaire ebolavirus*
Uganda	2007	Bundibugyo	149	37	*Bundibugyo ebolavirus*
Democratic Republic of the Congo	2007	Luebo	264	187	*Zaire ebolavirus*
South Sudan†	2004	Yambio	17	7	*Zaire ebolavirus*
Republic of the Congo	2003	Mbomo	35	29	*Zaire ebolavirus*
Republic of the Congo	2002	Mbomo	143	128	*Zaire ebolavirus*
Republic of the Congo	2001	Not specified	57	43	*Zaire ebolavirus*
Gabon	2001	Libreville	65	53	*Zaire ebolavirus*
Uganda	2000	Gulu	425	224	*Sudan ebolavirus*
South Africa	1996	Johannesburg	2	1	*Zaire ebolavirus*
Gabon	1996	Booue	60	45	*Zaire ebolavirus*
Gabon	1996	Mayibout	37	21	*Zaire ebolavirus*
Democratic Republic of the Congo§	1995	Kikwit	315	250	*Zaire ebolavirus*
Côte d’Ivoire	1994	Tai Forest	1	0	*Taï Forest ebolavirus*
Gabon	1994	Mekouka	52	31	*Zaire ebolavirus*
South Sudan†	1979	Nzara	34	22	*Sudan ebolavirus*
Democratic Republic of the Congo§	1977	Tandala	1	1	*Zaire ebolavirus*
South Sudan†	1976	Nzara	284	151	*Sudan ebolavirus*
Democratic Republic of the Congo§	1976	Yambuku	318	280	*Zaire ebolavirus*

*Numbers reflect laboratory-confirmed cases only.
†Formerly part of Sudan.
§Formerly Zaire.
Table excludes 2014-2016 epidemic and 2017-2018 outbreaks in Democratic Republic of Congo.
Ebola, Ebola virus disease.
Source: CDC. Outbreaks chronology: Ebola virus disease. Atlanta, GA: CDC; 2015. http://www.cdc.gov/vhf/ebola/outbreaks/history/chronology.html
From Bell BP, Damon, IK, Jernigan, DB, et al. Overview, control strategies, and lessons learned in the CDC response to the 2014-2016 Ebola Epidemic. *MMWR Suppl*. 2016;65(3):4–11.

TABLE 68.10 Most common clinical findings and interventions for 27 patients with Ebola virus disease during hospitalization in the United States or Europe.

Finding or Intervention	Percentage of Patients
Diarrhea	100
Fever	93
Vomiting	74
Supplemental oxygen requirement	70
Central venous catheter	67
Indwelling urinary catheter	63
SIRS	59
Hypoxemia	52
Oozing from IV sites	52
Rectal tube	44
Pulmonary edema	44
EKG abnormalities	41
Respiratory failure	33

Uyeki TM, Mehta AK, Davey RT, etal. Clinical management of Ebola virus disease in the United States and Europe. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;374[7]:636-646.

breaks in the skin.[82] This route of transmission reinforces the necessity of appropriate PPE use for all healthcare workers. Once in the body, the incubation period is anywhere from 2 to 21 days. The mean incubation period in the 2014 epidemic was noted to be 11.4 days and did not vary by country.[85] The most common symptoms reported between symptom onset and case detection included fever (87.1%), fatigue (76.4%), loss of appetite (64.5%), vomiting (67.6%), diarrhea (65.6%), headache (53.4%), and abdominal pain (44.3%). The most prominent feature in the 2014 outbreak was the progression of the gastrointestinal symptoms and resultant dehydration, severe electrolyte disorders, acute kidney injury, hypoperfusion, systemic inflammatory response syndrome, and shock (Table 68.10).[83,85] Capillary leak syndrome becomes profound in the late stages of the disease and rarely can be associated with respiratory distress. Preterminal events include decreased level of consciousness, which can progress to seizure and coma, disseminated intravascular coagulation, hepatic necrosis, renal failure, and gastrointestinal hemorrhage. Nonsurvivors succumb to multiorgan failure refractory to supportive care.[82,83,85,86]

During the West African Ebola outbreak, 11 people received treatment for EVD in the United States. A total of three patients brought from West Africa to the United States experienced multiorgan failure requiring mechanical ventilation and renal replacement therapy. One patient lived and two died. Care was provided in specialized biocontainment units (Fig. 68.19). Advanced life-sustaining therapy was managed at Emory University Hospital, Serious Communicable Disease Unit; at the University of Nebraska Medical Center—Nebraska Medicine, Nebraska Biocontainment Unit; and at Texas Health Presbyterian Hospital Dallas. All three patients were male and presented with severe gastrointestinal symptoms including severe diarrhea and multiorgan dysfunction notable for respiratory, cardiovascular, renal and hepatic insufficiency. Two patients were encephalopathic. All had extremely high viral loads. Of the two patients that died, the last 12 hours of life was characterized by refractory lactic acidosis and abdominal distension suggesting gastrointestinal perforation or ischemia.[51,87]

The 2014 West African Ebola outbreak is notable for the fact that approximately 27 patients with EVD have now been cared for in resource-rich settings. Signs and symptoms of EVD at the time of presentation to a hospital in the United States or Europe were similar to those presenting to Ebola treatment centers in West Africa. Mortality when care was provided in Europe or the United States was 18.5%. This is significantly better than mortality of patients in the more resource-challenged environment of the West African Ebola treatment units (37%-74%) and the historic mortality of 66%.[84,88] That said, EVD remains a fatal disease despite full access to advanced life support, modern diagnostic and laboratory support, and aggressive ICU care. Also notable is the fact that critically ill patients who have survived have presented early in the continuum of the disease. While no one can assume early support translates to better outcomes, the first-world experience with EVD suggests that early intervention may improve outcomes.[87]

PERSONAL PROTECTION

The logistics of caring for patients with disease due to highly contagious pathogens is complex and outside of the scope of this chapter as is a detailed discussion of PPE. That said, it is relevant to note some consistencies which are likely to reduce human-to-human transmission whether patient-to-patient or patient-to–healthcare worker. More important than the unique physical structure of the units located in the United States and Europe within which patients with highly communicable diseases receive care is the culture of safety and preparedness, including the critical importance of training healthcare workers to care not only for the patient, but for themselves as well.[89] As noted, the Ebola virus is a highly infectious pathogen. The infectious dose is fewer than 10 virus particles. Given that blood viral titers can exceed 10^8 virus particles per milliliter, it is not surprising that even highly trained healthcare workers have become infected.[88,90]

Those providers caring for patients on hospital wards, in the operating room, and in the ICU have the highest risk of contracting the disease themselves. This is reflected in the experience with the SARS-CoV, MERS-CoV, and, of course, the Ebola virus. In all situations, patients become infected and, in some cases, die as a result of lack of appropriate training and a lack of the critical knowledge specific to the pathophysiology of each disease as well as the logistics of caring for patients while protecting oneself.[89]

While adherence to standard infection control universal precautions is advisable when caring for all patients, anesthesia providers who have close contact to oral and respiratory secretions need to pay particular attention to elements of hospital protocols that apply to patients with respiratory infections or the risk thereof. In addition to precautions necessary to prevent contact routes of transmission vis-à-vis

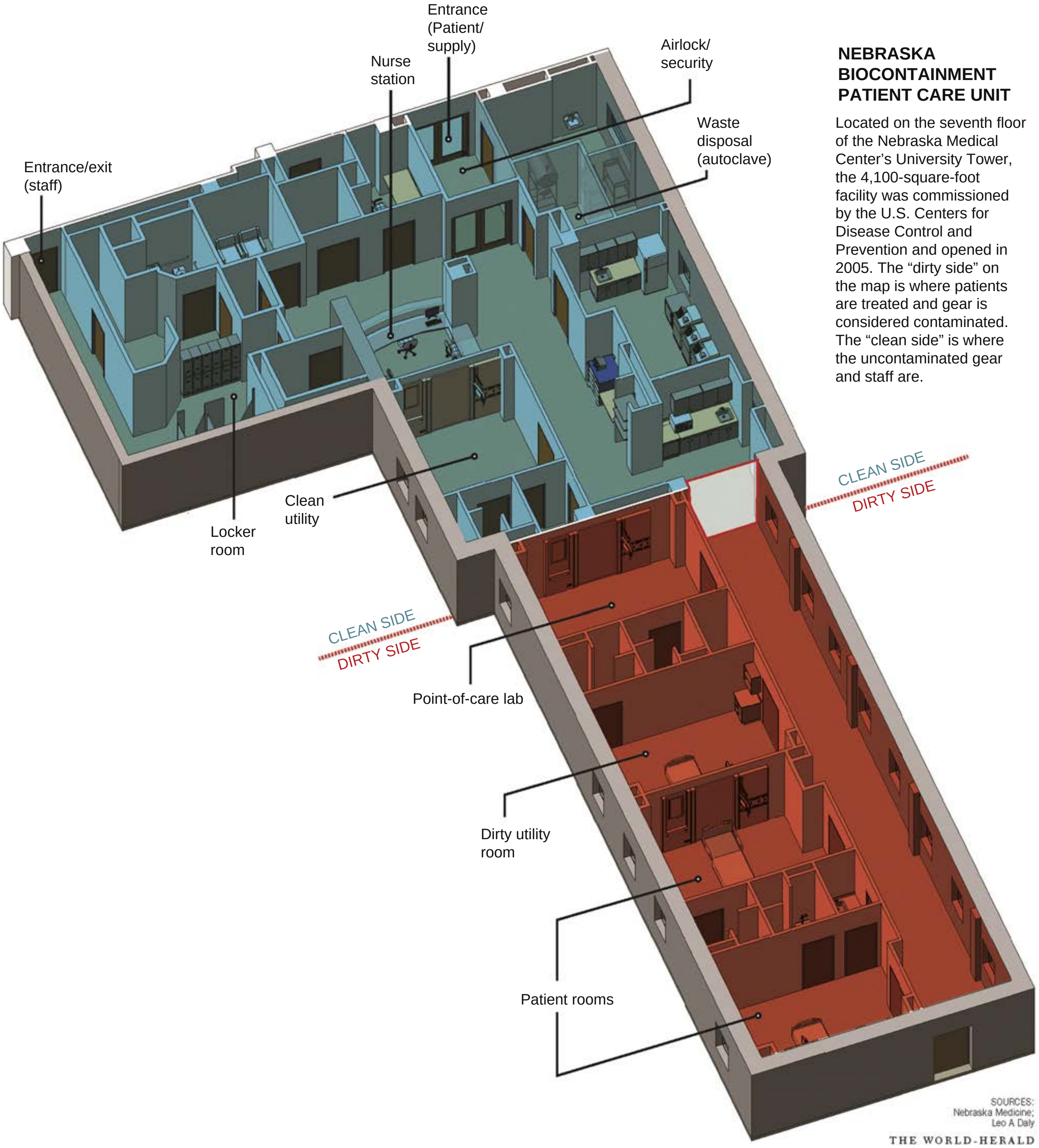

NEBRASKA BIOCONTAINMENT PATIENT CARE UNIT
Located on the seventh floor of the Nebraska Medical Center's University Tower, the 4,100-square-foot facility was commissioned by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and opened in 2005. The "dirty side" on the map is where patients are treated and gear is considered contaminated. The "clean side" is where the uncontaminated gear and staff are.
Entrance (Patient/ supply)
Nurse station
Airlock/ security
Waste disposal (autoclave)
Entrance/exit (staff)
CLEAN SIDE
DIRTY SIDE
Clean utility
Locker room
CLEAN SIDE
DIRTY SIDE
Point-of-care lab
Dirty utility room
Patient rooms
SOURCES: Nebraska Medicine; Leo A Daly
THE WORLD-HERALD

Fig. 68.19 Nebraska Biocontainment Unit, where three patients with Ebola virus disease received care from anesthesiologist-intensivists in 2014. (Courtesy Omaha World-Herald, Omaha, NB.)

hand hygiene, gloves, and gowns, droplet precautions should be in place for all patients with suspected or confirmed influenza, SARS, or MERS. At a minimum, providers should be wearing a facemask when entering the room of a patient with suspected influenza, including perioperative areas such as the preoperative holding area or postanesthesia care unit. When moving a suspected influenza patient on droplet precautions from one area of the hospital to another, having the patient wear a facemask during transport is prudent. This would of course include transport to and from the operating room if deemed medically safe and appropriate.[66]

Anesthesiologists routinely perform medical procedures that are aerosol-generating in patients with highly contagious pathogens such as discussed above. We should only perform procedures on patients with suspected or confirmed disease that are critical to optimizing care. As an example, for Ebola patients, centrally or peripherally inserted catheters should not be placed for hemodynamic monitoring, but rather only for critical vascular

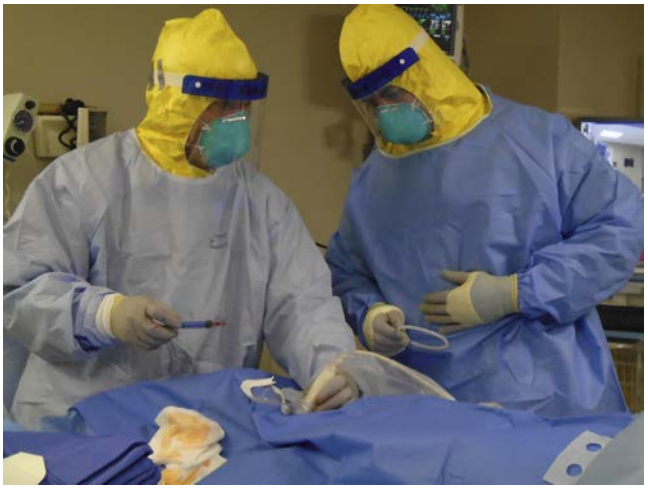


Fig. 68.20 Anesthesiologist placing ultrasound guided central venous line in the Nebraska Biocontainment Unit.

access from which to obtain blood samples without the need for repeated needlesticks and to administer fluids, electrolytes and vasoactive medications. Similarly, when considering respiratory support, early intubation may be preferable despite the inherent risk of aerosolization when compared to noninvasive positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV) and the risk of vomiting, hematemesis, and or aspiration. NIPPV may also result in aerosolization of fluids containing viruses putting caregivers at excess risk not only from Ebola, but also from other highly contagious diseases. Arterial lines should be placed in the upper extremity whenever possible and avoid placement in a femoral artery site due to the potential risk of fecal soiling of the line (Fig. 68.20).[51,80] If intubation is necessary, having a carefully predetermined plan for semi-elective non-emergent intubation is essential. Some of the issues to address to minimize complications associated with intubation include ensuring availability of all medications that may be required and access to all likely equipment that might be needed to secure the airway. In addition, depending on the level of biologic precaution necessary, providers must accommodate for the time necessary to don appropriate PPE prior to entering the patient-care environment.

Finally, all healthcare staff must be instructed to review and understand the guidelines for personal protection appropriate for each pathogen. Certainly, when caring for Ebola patients, the minimum level of PPE should include disposable water-resistant suit or coverall, including a hood; an N95 mask; a disposable full-face shield; two sets of gloves (appropriately sealed), and impermeable foot and leg coverings. It is highly recommended that the addition of a powered air purifying respirator be included when providers are doing any medical procedure with high risk of aerosolization.[51,82] Doffing of PPE is perhaps the highest-risk moment for unrecognized contamination with Ebola virus. For this reason, the entire doffing process should be strictly supervised by a doffing partner. The doffing partner should have no other role besides supervising the healthcare worker who is removing PPE (Fig. 68.21).

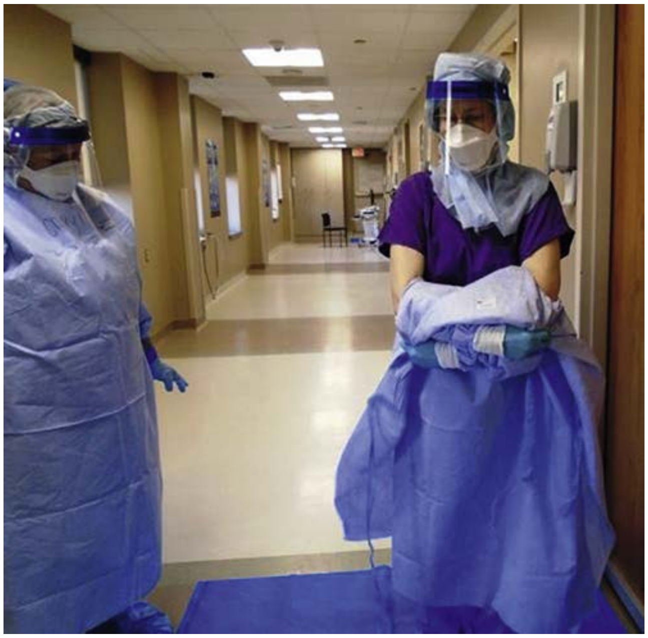


Fig. 68.21 Strict supervision of the personal protective equipment doffing process by a dedicated doffing partner in the Nebraska Biocontainment Unit.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Dr. David J. Baker for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the inspiration for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Polonsky J, et al. *PLoS Currents*. 2013;5.
2. Daniell J, et al. *Natural Hazards and Earth System Sciences Discussions*. 2013;1:1913–1942.
3. McCunn M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(6):1438–1444.
4. Walk RM, et al. *Disaster Med Public Health Prep*. 2012;6(4):370–377.
5. Sechriest VF, et al. *Am J Disaster Med*. 2012;7(4):281–294.
6. Walk R, et al. *Disaster Med Public Health Prep*. 2012;6(4):370–377.
7. Missair A, et al. *Prehosp Disaster Med*. 2010;25(6):487–493.
8. Firth PG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(3):545–547.
9. Firth PB. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362(14):e50.
10. Mathias JM. *OR Manager*. 2011;27(7):6–7.
11. Carlton PK. *Am J Disaster Med*. 2012;7(4):321.
12. Neblett Fanfair R, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367(23):2214–2215.
13. Charuluxananan S, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50:320–323.
14. Fitzsimons MG, et al. *Mil Med*. 2007;172:227–231.
15. Hurricanes in History: Katrina. National Hurricane Center web site.
16. Krane NK, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;298(9):1052–1055.
17. Hutson LR, et al. *The Ochsner Journal*. 2011;(11):29–33.
18. Santos-Lozada AR, Howard JT. *JAMA*. 2018;320(14):1491–1493.
19. Santos-Burgoa C, et al. *Lancet Planet Health*. 2018.
20. Sacks CA, et al. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2018;178(7):885–886.
21. Roccaforte JD. *Crit Care*. 2001;5(6):307–309.
22. Berkowitz B, Lu D, Alcantara C. *The terrible numbers that grow with each mass shooting*. Washington Post; 2018.
23. Sher H. *What I saw treating the victims from Parkland should change the debate on guns*. The Atlantic; 2018.
24. King DR, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 78(3):594-599.
25. Gates JD, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2014;260(6):960–966.
26. Multiservice Doctrine Chemical, Biological, Radiological and Nuclear Response – September 2016 – Joints Chiefs of Staff – JP 3-41.
27. James S. *AJA*. 2011;115(1):69–101.

28. Reddy C. *The Growing Menace of Chemical War*. Woods Hole Oceanographic Institute; 2007.
29. Graham J, Graham T. *Cornerstones of Security Arms Control Treaties in the Nuclear Era*. Seattle: University of Washington Press; 2011.
30. Hemsley J. *The Soviet biochemical threat to NATO*. Macmillan, London UK: Royal United Services Institute; 1987.
31. Haris R, Paxman J. *A Higher Form of Killing*. 2nd ed. London: Arrow Books; 1982.
32. Okumura T, Nomura T, Suzuki S, et al. The dark morning: the experiences and lessons learned from the Tokyo subway sarin attack. In: Marrs TC, Maynard RL, Sidell FR, eds. *Chemical Warfare Agents : Toxicology and Treatment*. 2nd ed. Chichester, UK: John Wiley and Sons; 2007:277–286.
33. Multiservice Doctrine for Chemical, Biological, Radiological and Nuclear Operations – July 2001 – HQ Department of the Army – FM 3-11, MCWP 3-37.1, NWP 3-11, AFTTP 3-2.42.
34. Alibek K. *Biohazard*. London: Arrow Book; 1999.
35. United Nations. *Report of the mission dispatched by the Secretary general to investigate allegations of the use of chemical weapons in the conflict between the islamic republics of Iran and Iraq. UN Document no. 18852*. New York: United Nations; 1987.
36. Hammick M: Int Defense Rev 1323, 1991.
37. Hiltermann Joost R. *A Poisonous Affair: America, Iraq, and the Gassing of Halabja*. Cambridge University Press; 2007:183.
38. Tu AT. Overview of the sarin terrorist incidents in Japan in 1994 and 1995. In: *Proceedings of the 6th BCW Protective Symposium, Stockholm, NDRE. FOR–R–98, 00949–862–6E, Umea, Sweden*. Defense Research Establishment; 1998.
39. Deleted in proofs.
40. White SM. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:306–324.
41. Nicholson-Roberts TC. *J R Army Med Corps*. 2010;156(suppl):327–334.
42. US Department of the Army, US Department of the Navy, US Department of the Air Force. *NATO Handbook on the Medical Aspects of NBC Defensive Operations*. AMedP-6© Vol III. Washington, DC: DA, USN, USAF; 2006. Chapter 2.
43. Eddleston M, et al. *Lancet*. 2008;371:597–607.
44. Triffet T, LaRiviere PD. ''*OPERATION REDWING - Project 2.63, Characterization of Fallout - Pacific Proving Grounds, May-July 1956*''. US Naval Radiological Defense Laboratory; 1961. Archived from the original on 2008-04-10.
45. U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Title 29, Labor, Subtitle B, Chapter XVII, Part 1910, Subpart H, Section 1910.120, Hazardous Waste Operations and Emergency Response.
46. Borak J, et al. *Hazardous Materials Exposure: Emergency Response and Patient Care*. Engelwood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall; 1991.
47. US Public Health Service. *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; Department of Health and Human Services, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. Guidance on Emergency Responder Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) for Response to CBRN Terrorism Incidents*. DHHS (NIOSH) Publication 2008.132; 2008.
48. Baker DJ. *Resuscitation*. 1999;42:125.
49. UK Ministry of Defence. *Clinical Guidelines for Operations*. London, England: MOD; 2011. Joint Doctrine Publication; 4-03.1.
50. Lassen HC. *Proc R Soc Med*. 1954;47(1):67–71.
51. Johnson DW. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(6):1157–1164.
52. Peng PW, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50(10):989–997.
53. Kamming D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(6):715–718.
54. Gates B. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372(15):1381–1384.
55. Flight C. *Smallpox: Eradicating the Scourge*. British History; 2017.
56. History of Smallpox | Smallpox | CDC; 2017.
57. Radetsky M. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 1999;18(2):85–93.
58. Belser JA, et al. *Virology*. 2018;524:45–55.
59. Webb SA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(3):442–446.
60. Osterholm MT. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(18):1839–1842.
61. Cox NJ, et al. *Vaccine*. 2003;21(16):1801–1803.
62. Webby RJ, Webster RG. *Science*. 2003;302(5650):1519–1522.
63. Past Pandemics | Pandemic Influenza (Flu) | CDC; 2018.
64. Dawood FS, et al. *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2012;12(9):687–695.
65. Brankston G, et al. *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2007;7(4):257–265.
66. Prevention Strategies for Seasonal Influenza in Healthcare Settings | Seasonal Influenza (Flu) | CDC; 2018.
67. CDC SARS. (10 Years After) | Disease of the Week| CDC; 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/dotw/sars/.
68. Meera Senthilingam C. *Global pandemics: 7 reasons they're inevitable*; 2017.
69. Wenzel RP, Edmond MB. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348(20):1947–1948.
70. Wallington T, et al. *Can Commun Dis Rep*. 2003;29(13):113–117.
71. CDC SARS Response Timeline | About | CDC. 2013-04-26.
72. Lau YL, Peiris JS. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2005;17(4):404–410.
73. Li W, et al. *Science*. 2005;310(5748):676–679.
74. Assiri A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(5):407–416.
75. World Health Organization. *Epidemic and pandemic-prone diseases: MERS situation update, September 2018*; 2018.
76. Arabi YM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(6):584–594.
77. WHO. *Middle East Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus (MERS-CoV)*; 2018.
78. Ki M. *Epidemiol Health*. 2015;37:e2015033.
79. Kim KM, et al. *Epidemiol Health*. 2015;37:e2015041.
80. Virus Ecology Graphic | Communication Resources | Ebola (Ebola Virus Disease)| CDC; 2016.
81. Feldmann H, Geisbert TW. *Lancet*. 2011;377(9768):849–862.
82. Funk DJ, Kumar A. *Can J Anaesth*. 2015;62(1):80–91.
83. Fowler RA, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;190(7):733–737.
84. Bell BP, et al. *MMWR Suppl*. 2016;65(3):4–11.
85. Team WHOER, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371(16):1481–1495.
86. Hunt Let al. *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2015;15(11):1292–1299.
87. Sueblinvong V, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(10):2066–2075.
88. Uyeki TM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;374(7):636–646.
89. Adams JJ, et al. *Simul Healthc*. 2016;11(2):72–74.
90. Iwen PC, et al. *Am J Clin Pathol*. 2015;143(1):4–5.

References

1. Polonsky J, Luquero F, Francois G, et al. Public health surveillance after the 2010 Haiti earthquake: the experience of Médecins Sans Frontières. *PLoS Curr*. 2013;5. https://doi.org/10.1371/currents.dis.6aec18e84816c055b8c2a06456811c7a.
2. Daniell JE, Khazai B, Wenzel F. Uncovering the 2010 Haiti earthquake death toll. *Natural Hazards and Earth System Sciences Discussions*. 2013;1:1913–1942.
3. McCunn M, Ashburn M, Floyd TF, et al. An organized, comprehensive, and security-enabled strategic response to the Haiti Earthquake: a description of pre-deployment readiness preparation and preliminary experience from an academic anesthesiology department with no preexisting international disaster response program. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(6):1438–1444.
4. Walk RM, Donahue TF, Stockinger Z, et al. Haitian earthquake relief: disaster response aboard the USNS Comfort. *Disaster Med Public Health Prep*. 2012;6(4):370–377.
5. Sechriest VF, Wing V, Walker GJ, et al. Healthcare delivery aboard US Navy hospital ships following earthquake disasters: implications for future disaster relief missions. *Am J Disaster Med*. 2012;7(4):281–294.
6. Walk R, Donahue T, Stockinger Z, et al. Haitian earthquake relief: disaster response aboard the USNS Comfort. *Disaster Med Public Health Prep*. 2012;6(4):370–377.
7. Missair A, Gebhard R, Pierre E, et al. Surgery under extreme conditions in the aftermath of the 2010 Haiti earthquake: the importance of regional anesthesia. *Prehosp Disaster Med*. 2010;25(6):487–493.
8. Firth PG, Solomon JB, Roberts LL, et al. Airway management of tetanus after the Haitian earthquake: new aspects of old observations. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(3):545–547.
9. Firth PB. Disaster-relief anesthesia – notes on coming home. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362(14):e50.
10. Mathias JM. Surgery by flashlight as Joplin team operates through tornado. *OR Manager*. 2011;27(7):6–7.
11. Carlton PK. Business continuity after catastrophic medical events: the Joplin medical business continuity report. *Am J Disaster Med*. 2012;7(4):321.
12. Neblett Fanfair R, Benedict K, Bos J, et al. Necrotizing cutaneous mucormycosis after a tornado in Joplin, Missouri, in 2011. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367(23):2214–2215.
13. Charuluxananan S, Bunburaphong P, Tuchinda L, et al. Anesthesia for Indian Ocean tsunami-affected patients at a southern Thailand provincial hospital. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50:320–323.
14. Fitzsimons MG, Sparks JW, Jones SF, et al. Anesthesia services during operation unified assistance, aboard the USNS Mercy, after the tsunami in southeast Asia. *Mil Med*. 2007;172:227–231.
15. Hurricanes in History: Katrina. National Hurricane Center web site. https://www.nhc.noaa.gov/outreach/history/#katrina Published 2009. Accessed October 26, 2018.
16. Krane NK, DiCarlo RP, Kahn MJ. Medical education in post-Katrina New Orleans, a story of survival and renewal. *JAMA*. 2007;298(9):1052–1055.
17. Hutson LR, Vega J, Schubert A. Impact of Hurricanes Katrina and Rita on the anesthesiology workforce. *Ochsner J*. 2011;(11):29–33.
18. Santos-Lozada AR, Howard JT. Use of death counts from vital statistics to calculate excess deaths in Puerto Rico following Hurricane Maria. *JAMA*. 2018;320(14):1491–1493.
19. Santos-Burgoa C, Sandberg J, Suarez E, et al. Differential and persistent risk of excess mortality from Hurricane Maria in Puerto Rico: a time-series analysis. *Lancet Planet Health*. 2018.
20. Sacks CA, Kesselheim AS, Fralick M. The shortage of normal saline in the wake of Hurricane Maria. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2018;178(7):885–886.
21. Roccaforte JD. The World Trade Center attack: observations from New York's Bellevue Hospital. *Crit Care*. 2001;5(6):307–309.
22. Berkowitz B, Lu D, Alcantara C. *The terrible numbers that grow with each mass shooting*. Washington Post; 2018. https://www.washingtonpost.com/graphics/2018/national/mass-shootings-in-america/?noredirect=on&utm_term=.287bb247b637. Accessed October 30, 2018.
23. Sher H. *What I saw treating the victims from Parkland should change the debate on guns*. The Atlantic; 2018. https://www.theatlantic.com/politics/archive/2018/2.
24. King DR, Larentzakis A, Ramly EP. Tourniquet use at the Boston Marathon bombing: lost in translation. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 78(3):594-599.
25. Gates JD, Arabian S, Biddinger P, et al. The initial response to the Boston marathon bombing: lessons learned to prepare for the next disaster. *Ann Surg*. 2014;260(6):960–966.
26. Multiservice Doctrine Chemical, Biological, Radiological and Nuclear Response – September 2016 – Joints Chiefs of Staff – JP 3-41.
27. James S. Stratagems, combat, and "chemical warfare" in the siege mines of Dura-Europos. *AJA*. 2011;115(1):69–101 (American journal of archaeology).
28. Reddy C. *The Growing Menace of Chemical War*. Woods Hole Oceanographic Institute; 2007.
29. Graham J, Graham T. *Cornerstones of Security Arms Control Treaties in the Nuclear Era*. Seattle: University of Washington Press; 2011.
30. Hemsley J. *The Soviet Biochemical Threat to NATO*. Macmillan, London UK: Royal United Services Institute; 1987.
31. Haris R, Paxman J. *A Higher Form of Killing*. 2nd ed. London: Arrow Books; 1982.
32. Okumura T, Nomura T, Suzuki S, et al. The dark morning: the experiences and lessons learned from the Tokyo subway sarin attack. In: Marrs TC, Maynard RL, Sidell FR, eds. *Chemical Warfare Agents : Toxicology and Treatment*. 2nd ed. Chichester, UK: John Wiley and Sons; 2007:277–286.
33. Multiservice Doctrine for Chemical, Biological, Radiological and Nuclear Operations – July 2001 – HQ Department of the Army – FM 3-11, MCWP 3-37.1, NWP 3-11, AFTTP 3-2.42.
34. Alibek K. *Biohazard*. London: Arrow Book; 1999.
35. United Nations. *Report of the mission dispatched by the Secretary general to investigate allegations of the use of chemical weapons in the conflict between the islamic republics of Iran and Iraq. UN Document no. 18852*. New York: United Nations; 1987.
36. Hammick M. All stick and no carrot. *Int Defense Rev* 1991;[provide volume number]:1323..
37. Hiltermann Joost R. *A Poisonous Affair: America, Iraq, and the Gassing of Halabja*. Cambridge University Press; 2007:183.
38. Tu AT. Overview of the sarin terrorist incidents in Japan in 1994 and 1995. In: *Proceedings of the 6th BCW Protective Symposium, Stockholm, NDRE. FOR–R–98, 00949–862–6E*. Umea, Sweden: Defense Research Establishment; 1998.
39. Deleted in proofs.
40. White SM. Chemical and biological weapons. Implications for anaesthesia and intensive care. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:306–324.
41. Nicholson-Roberts TC. Toxicology and military anesthesia. *J R Army Med Corps*. 2010;156(suppl):327–334.
42. US Department of the Army. US Department of the Navy, US Department of the Air Force. *NATO Handbook on the Medical Aspects of NBC Defensive Operations*. AMedP-6© Vol III. Washington, DC: DA, USN, USAF; 2006. Chap 2.
43. Eddleston M, Buckley NA, Eyer P, Dawson AH. Management of acute organophosphate pesticide poisoning. *Lancet*. 2008;371:597–607.
44. Triffet T, LaRiviere PD. (March 1961). "OPERATION REDWING - Project 2.63, Characterization of Fallout - Pacific Proving Grounds, May-July 1956". US Naval Radiological Defense Laboratory. Archived from the original on 2008-04-10
45. U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Title 29, Labor, Subtitle B, Chapter XVII, Part 1910, Subpart H, Section 1910.120, Hazardous Waste Operations and Emergency Response.
46. Borak J, et al. *Hazardous materials exposure: emergency response and patient care*. Engelwood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall; 1991.
47. US Public Health Service. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; Department of Health and Human Services, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. *Guidance on Emergency Responder Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) for Response to CBRN Terrorism Incidents*. DHHS (NIOSH) Publication 2008-132; 2008.
48. Baker DJ. Management of respiratory failure in toxic disasters. *Resuscitation*. 1999;42:125.
49. UK Ministry of Defence. *Clinical Guidelines for Operations*. London, England: MOD; 2011. Joint Doctrine Publication 4-03.1.
50. Lassen HC. The epidemic of poliomyelitis in Copenhagen, 1952. *Proc R Soc Med*. 1954;47(1):67–71.
51. Johnson DW, Sullivan JN, Piquette CA, et al. Lessons learned: critical care management of patients with Ebola in the United States. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(6):1157–1164.

52. Peng PW, Wong DT, Bevan D, Gardam M. Infection control and anesthesia: lessons learned from the Toronto SARS outbreak. *Can J Anaesth*. 2003;50(10):989–997.
53. Kamming D, Gardam M, Chung F. Anaesthesia and SARS. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;90(6):715–718.
54. Gates B. The next epidemic--lessons from Ebola. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372(15):1381–1384.
55. Flight C. *Smallpox: Eradicating the Scourge*. British History; 2017. http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/british/empire_seapower/smallpox_01.shtml.
56. History of Smallpox | Smallpox | CDC; 2017. https://www.cdc.gov/smallpox/history/history.html.
57. Radetsky M. Smallpox: a history of its rise and fall. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. 1999;18(2):85–93.
58. Belser JA, Maines TR, Tumpey TM. Importance of 1918 virus reconstruction to current assessments of pandemic risk. *Virology*. 2018;524:45–55.
59. Webb SA, Nichol AD. Bending the pandemic curve: improving decision-making with clinical research. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(3):442–446.
60. Osterholm MT. Preparing for the next pandemic. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(18):1839–1842.
61. Cox NJ, Tamblyn SE, Tam T. Influenza pandemic planning. *Vaccine*. 2003;21(16):1801–1803.
62. Webby RJ, Webster RG. Are we ready for pandemic influenza? *Science*. 2003;302(5650):1519–1522.
63. Past Pandemics | Pandemic Influenza (Flu) | CDC; 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/flu/pandemic-resources/basics/past-pandemics.html.
64. Dawood FS, Iuliano AD, Reed C, et al. Estimated global mortality associated with the first 12 months of 2009 pandemic influenza A H1N1 virus circulation: a modelling study. *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2012;12(9):687–695.
65. Brankston G, Gitterman L, Hirji Z, Lemieux C, Gardam M. Transmission of influenza A in human beings. *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2007;7(4):257–265.
66. Prevention Strategies for Seasonal Influenza in Healthcare Settings | Seasonal Influenza (Flu) | CDC; 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/flu/professionals/infectioncontrol/healthcaresettings.htm.
67. CDC SARS. (10 Years After) | Disease of the Week. CDC; 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/dotw/sars/.
68. Meera Senthilingam C. *Global pandemics: 7 reasons they're inevitable*; 2017. https://www.cnn.com/2017/04/03/health/pandemic-risk-virus-bacteria/index.html.
69. Wenzel RP, Edmond MB. Managing SARS amidst uncertainty. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348(20):1947–1948.
70. Wallington T, Berger L, Henry B, et al. Update: severe acute respiratory syndrome--Toronto, 2003. *Can Commun Dis Rep*. 2003;29(13):113–117.
71. CDC SARS Response Timeline | About | CDC. 2013-04-26; https://www.cdc.gov/about/history/sars/timeline.htm. Accessed October 30, 2018.
72. Lau YL, Peiris JS. Pathogenesis of severe acute respiratory syndrome. *Curr Opin Immunol*. 2005;17(4):404–410.
73. Li W, Shi Z, Yu M, et al. Bats are natural reservoirs of SARS-like coronaviruses. *Science*. 2005;310(5748):676–679.
74. Assiri A, McGeer A, Perl TM, et al. Hospital outbreak of Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(5):407–416.
75. World Health Organization. Epidemic and pandemic-prone diseases: MERS situation update, September 2018; 2018. http://www.emro.who.int/pandemic-epidemic-diseases/mers-cov/mers-situation-update-september-2018.html.
76. Arabi YM, Balkhy HH, Hayden FG, et al. Middle East Respiratory Syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(6):584–594.
77. WHO. Middle East Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus (MERS-CoV); 2018. http://www.who.int/en/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/middle-east-respiratory-syndrome-coronavirus-(mers-cov).
78. Ki M. 2015 MERS outbreak in Korea: hospital-to-hospital transmission. *Epidemiol Health*. 2015;37:e2015033.
79. Kim KM, Ki M, Cho SI, et al. Epidemiologic features of the first MERS outbreak in Korea: focus on Pyeongtaek St. Mary's Hospital. *Epidemiol Health*. 2015;37:e2015041.
80. Virus Ecology Graphic | Communication Resources | Ebola (Ebola Virus Disease)| CDC; 2016. https://www.cdc.gov/vhf/ebola/resources/virus-ecology.html.
81. Feldmann H, Geisbert TW. Ebola haemorrhagic fever. *Lancet*. 2011;377(9768):849–862.
82. Funk DJ, Kumar A. Ebola virus disease: an update for anesthesiologists and intensivists. *Can J Anaesth*. 2015;62(1):80–91.
83. Fowler RA, Fletcher T, Fischer WA, et al. Caring for critically ill patients with Ebola virus disease. Perspectives from West Africa. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;190(7):733–737.
84. Bell BP, Damon IK, Jernigan DB, et al. Overview, control strategies, and lessons learned in the CDC response to the 2014-2016 Ebola epidemic. *MMWR Suppl*. 2016;65(3):4–11.
85. Aylward B, Barboza P, et al. Ebola virus disease in West Africa--the first 9 months of the epidemic and forward projections. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371(16):1481–1495.
86. Hunt L, Gupta-Wright A, Simms V, et al. Clinical presentation, biochemical, and haematological parameters and their association with outcome in patients with Ebola virus disease: an observational cohort study. *Lancet Infect Dis*. 2015;15(11):1292–1299.
87. Sueblinvong V, Johnson DW, Weinstein GL, et al. Critical care for multiple organ failure secondary to ebola virus disease in the United States. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(10):2066–2075.
88. Uyeki TM, Mehta AK, Davey RT Jr, et al. Clinical management of ebola virus disease in the United States and Europe. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;374(7):636–646.
89. Adams JJ, Lisco SJ. Ebola: urgent need, rapid response. *Simul Healthc*. 2016;11(2):72–74.
90. Iwen PC, Smith PW, Hewlett AL, et al. Safety considerations in the laboratory testing of specimens suspected or known to contain Ebola virus. *Am J Clin Pathol*. 2015;143(1):4–5.

69

Anesthesia for Ophthalmic Surgery

ZHUANG T. FANG, ELAINE CHIEWLIN LIEW, and MARY A. KEYES

KEY POINTS

- Ophthalmic procedures are considered to be "low-risk." However, the patient population is higher risk because of the extremes of age involved and associated comorbidities.
- Some ophthalmic surgeries (cataract, glaucoma, simple vitrectomy) are short procedures, but high in volume. The demand for efficiency while maintaining patient safety is a challenge.
- The majority of ophthalmic procedures can be performed under topical anesthesia or orbital block in combination with monitored anesthesia care (MAC).
- A working knowledge of the anatomy and physiology of the eye is essential in providing safe anesthesia care. This includes the effect of anesthetic drugs and interventions on intraocular pressure and systemic effects of ophthalmologic medications.
- Orbital blocks, particularly retrobulbar blocks, can have severe complications, including retrobulbar hemorrhage, and retrograde spread of local anesthetic into the subarachnoid space causing brainstem anesthesia, loss of consciousness, and respiratory arrest.
- Routine preoperative laboratory testing is not necessary for cataract surgery and has not been shown to reduce adverse perioperative events.
- General anesthesia is required in 30% to 40% of ophthalmic surgeries. This includes pediatric ophthalmic surgery; complex procedures, some of which require muscle relaxation; and adults who cannot undergo MAC for a variety of reasons.
- Strabismus surgery is an independent risk factor for postoperative vomiting in pediatric patients.
- Succinylcholine can be used in unfasted patients who have an open-globe injury that requires emergent vision-saving surgery under general anesthesia.
- Prevention of prolonged postoperative anesthesia care unit stay and unanticipated hospital admission requires careful patient evaluation, optimization of underlying medical conditions, adequate pain control, prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting, and maintenance of hemodynamic stability.

Overview of Ophthalmic Anesthesia

Vision is one of the most important functions of the human body. Visual impairment and blindness limit a person's ability to function normally in daily living,[1-3] has a large economic impact in the United States, and results in significant loss of quality-adjusted life years.[4,5] Currently, about 4.2 million adults in the United States are visually impaired.[6] Early diagnosis and treatment, including surgery, can potentially reverse vision impairment, such as in cataract extraction, or delay and attenuate the pathophysiological process, as in glaucoma and diabetic retinopathy. Anesthesia providers specialized in ophthalmic anesthesia play an important role in helping patients undergo surgery comfortably and safely.[6]

Ophthalmic surgeries are the most common operations performed in the elderly.[7] They consist of a broad spectrum of procedures, ranging from cataract surgery with minimal sedation to more complex procedures such as orbital decompression, or combined corneal transplantation and retinal surgery that requires general anesthesia. The majority of ophthalmic surgeries are short in duration and primarily performed in ambulatory surgical centers. Patients who undergo ophthalmic surgery can be as young as preterm infants to nonagenarians. Ophthalmic procedures are generally considered low risk because they do not cause significant physiological perturbations, and do not involve a large volume of blood loss or significant postoperative pain.[8] However, ophthalmic surgery is often carried out in elderly patients who have a high prevalence of coexisting illnesses such as diabetes, hypertension, coronary artery disease, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Adequate preoperative evaluation and optimization are important in the prevention of same day cancellation and unplanned hospital admission.

Patient safety is paramount in ophthalmic anesthesia. In the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Closed Claims Project from 1980 to 2000, the identifiable causes of severe eye injury include intraoperative patient movement, either under general anesthesia or monitored anesthesia care (MAC), and needle trauma related to an orbital block with or without patient movement.[9,10] In an ASA closed claims analysis of injury and liability associated with MAC for ophthalmic and nonophthalmic surgeries, the major mechanisms of injury included inadequate oxygenation or ventilation, cardiovascular event, equipment failure, inadequate anesthesia leading to patient movement, and oversedation leading to death or permanent brain damage.[11] Presently, there is little data available regarding postoperative complications associated with ophthalmic anesthesia. A retrospective study of prolonged postanesthesia care unit (PACU) stay following ophthalmic surgery found the incidence was about 0.6%,[12] with the major factors being hypotension, bradycardia, postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV), and oversedation. A similar study found new onset cardiac dysrhythmia, pain, PONV, and pulmonary-related events (hypoxia and pulmonary aspiration) were the main reasons for unintended hospital admission with an incidence of 0.23%.[13] Overall, ophthalmic surgery is safe with a low incidence of anesthesia-related complications.

Fast-track surgery has been successfully implemented in ophthalmic surgery to facilitate early discharge home and to allow patients to resume normal activities of daily living.[14] Each patient's anesthetic plan should be personalized based on the type, duration, invasiveness of surgery, underlying comorbidities, degree of anxiety, expectation of anesthesia, and history of anesthetic complications with the goal of "fast-tracking" and minimizing potential adverse events postoperatively. Perioperative surgical home is a patient-centric, team-based model of care to improve population health, reduce costs, and satisfy patients.[15] It can improve outcome[16] and may be a useful model in ambulatory surgery settings, including ophthalmic surgery.

Patient satisfaction has become a standard indicator of value in health care, including anesthesia care.[17,18] For ophthalmic surgery, information, communication, pain control, comfort, and support are the most important predictors for patient satisfaction in the perioperative period.[19,20]

OCULAR ANATOMY

The eye is a delicate and complex organ that allows us to see images, color, and movement, and helps with depth perception and balance. The eye is a sphere measuring approximately 24 mm in diameter. It is situated in the pyramidal bony orbit. The wall of the globe has three layers: the sclera, the uveal tract, and the retina. Fig. 69.1 shows the individual components of the eye.

The sclera is the outermost layer. It is the tough, fibrous white of the eye, and it is continuous with the cornea anteriorly. The tissue where the cornea and sclera meet is the limbus, which contains stem cells responsible for regeneration of the epithelium. About 60% of the focus power of the eye is from the curvature of the cornea.

The middle layer, the uveal tract, has three structures: the choroid, the iris, and the ciliary body. The choroid is a layer of blood vessels located posteriorly. Bleeding in this layer is one cause of intraoperative expulsive hemorrhage. The pigmented iris controls light entry with muscle fibers that change the size of the pupil. Sympathetic stimulation dilates the pupil by causing iris dilator muscles to contract, whereas parasympathetic stimulation causes meiosis, or pupillary constriction by causing the iris sphincter muscles to contract. The ciliary body lies just behind the iris; it produces aqueous humor. Ciliary muscle fibers adjust the focus

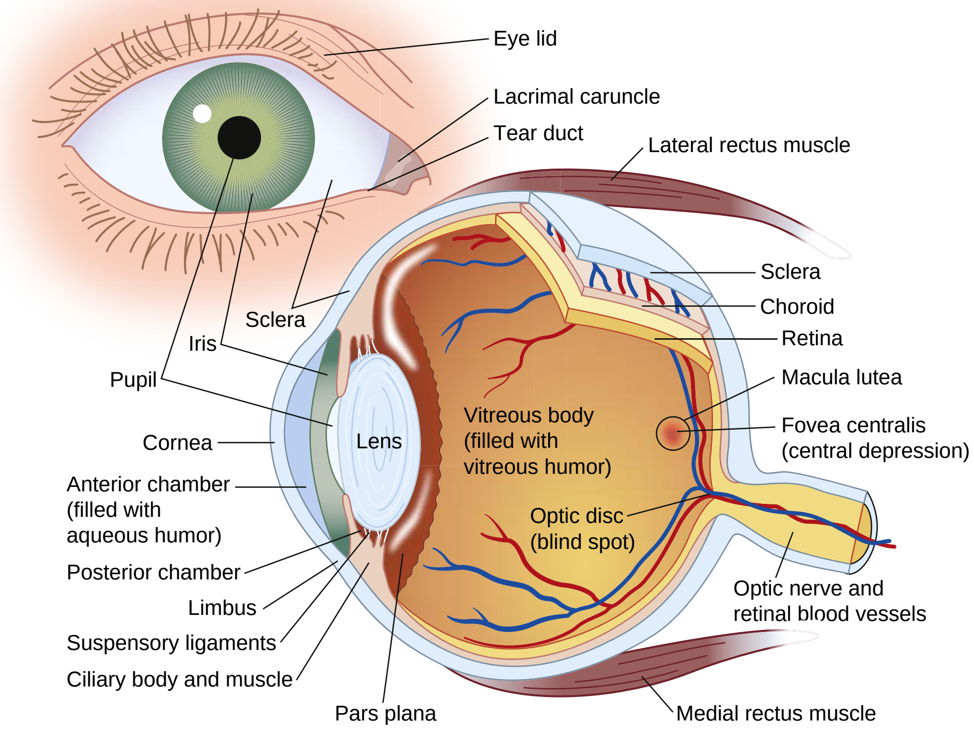

Eye lid
Lacrimal caruncle
Tear duct
Lateral rectus muscle
Sclera
Choroid
Retina
Macula lutea
Fovea centralis
(central depression)
Sclera
Iris
Pupil
Cornea
Lens
Vitreous body
(filled with
vitreous humor)
Anterior chamber
(filled with
aqueous humor)
Optic disc
(blind spot)
Posterior chamber
Limbus
Suspensory ligaments
Ciliary body and muscle
Pars plana
Optic nerve and
retinal blood vessels
Medial rectus muscle

Fig. 69.1 **Anatomy of the human eye.**

by releasing tension on the suspensory fibers, or zonules, of the lens. Opacification of the lens causes a cataract. Uveitis is an inflammatory condition of these structures (iris, choroid, and ciliary body).

The innermost eye layer is the retina, which is a membrane consisting of highly specialized nerve tissue continuous with the optic nerve. Light stimulates retinal photoreceptors to produce neural signals that the optic nerve carries to the brain. There are no capillaries in the retina; the choroid layer provides oxygen and nourishment to the retina. Retinal detachment from the choroid layer compromises the retinal blood supply and is a major cause of vision loss. The retinal layer ends approximately 4 mm behind the iris. The area between the limbus of the cornea and the retina is called the *pars plana*. Because there is no retinal layer there, it is a safe entrance site for vitrectomy procedures.

The center of the eye is filled with vitreous gel. This thick fluid has attachments to blood vessels and the optic nerve. Traction of the vitreous on the retina is a cause of retinal detachment. Scarring, bleeding, or opacification of the vitreous is treated by vitrectomy.

The extraocular muscles move the globe within the orbit. They arise from a fibrous ring near the apex of the orbit and insert on the sclera. The six extraocular muscles lie within a cone behind the eye surrounding the optic nerve, ophthalmic artery and vein, and ciliary ganglion.

The eyelids have an outer layer of skin, a muscle layer, a tarsal plate of cartilage, and a layer of conjunctiva. The conjunctiva is a mucous membrane that lines the inner eyelids and covers the globe up to the corneal-scleral junction.

The lacrimal gland sits in the superior temporal orbit. It releases tears across the surface of the globe. Tears drain via the puncta near the medial canthus of the eyelids. Tears flow through the canaliculi to the lacrimal sac and duct, to drain into the nasopharynx.

The ophthalmic artery provides most of the blood supply to the orbital structures. It is a branch of the internal carotid artery, close to the circle of Willis. The superior and inferior ophthalmic veins drain directly into the cavernous sinus.

Cranial nerves (CN) innervate the ocular structures. The optic nerve (CN II) carries the neural signals from the retina. The oculomotor (CN III), trochlear (CN IV), and abducens (CN VI) control the extraocular muscles. Touch and pain sensations are carried via the trigeminal nerve (CN V). Sensation to the lower lid is via the maxillary nerve (CN V_2). Sensation to the upper lid is via the frontal branch of the ophthalmic nerve (CN V_1). The nasociliary branch of the ophthalmic nerve sends sensory fibers to the medial canthus, lacrimal sac, and ciliary ganglion.

The ciliary ganglion provides sensory innervation to the cornea, iris, and ciliary body. Parasympathetic fibers originate from the oculomotor nerve (CN III) and synapse in the ciliary ganglion before supplying the iris sphincter muscle. Sympathetic fibers originate from the carotid plexus and travel through the ciliary ganglion to innervate the dilator muscle of the iris. Local anesthetic blockade of the ciliary ganglion produces a fixed, mid-dilated pupil.

The facial nerve (CN VII) exits the base of the skull from the stylomastoid foramen. It supplies motor innervation to the orbicularis muscle via the zygomatic branch. Local anesthetic block of the facial nerve can prevent lid squeezing.

OCULOCARDIAC REFLEX

The oculocardiac reflex was first described by Aschner and Dagnini in 1908. It is also known as the *trigeminovagal reflex*. Traction on the extraocular muscles or pressure on the globe causes bradycardia, atrioventricular block, ventricular ectopy, or asystole. In particular, it is seen with traction on the medial rectus muscle, but it can occur with stimulation of any of the orbital contents, including the periosteum. The response fatigues with repeated stimulation.

The afferent of the reflex limb arises from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve and continues to the Gasserian ganglion and the sensory nucleus of the trigeminal nerve near the fourth ventricle. Here, the afferent limb synapses with the motor nucleus of the vagus nerve. The efferent impulses travel to the heart via the vagus nerve leading to decreases in both heart rate and contractility of the heart.

The reflex may be seen more often with procedures performed with topical anesthesia, and it occurs commonly in pediatric patients undergoing strabismus surgery. Retrobulbar block is not uniformly effective at preventing the reflex. Orbital injections can also trigger the response. The response is exacerbated by hypercapnia or hypoxemia.[21,22] In the event of arrhythmia, the anesthesiologist should first ask the surgeon to stop manipulations. Any condition that may exaggerate the reflex such as hypoxia, hypercapnia, and an inadequate depth of anesthesia should be assessed and treated. If significant bradycardia persists or recurs, intravenous glycopyrrolate or atropine can be given. Rarely, epinepherine is given to treat severe bradycardia or asystole. Rarely, epinephrine is given to treat severe bradycardia or asystole.

INTRAOCULAR PRESSURE

Normal intraocular pressure (IOP) is 16 ± 5 mm Hg and a value in excess of 25 mm Hg is considered pathological. Normal IOP is necessary to maintain cornea curvature and a proper refracting index of the eye. The intraocular perfusion pressure, defined as the difference between the mean arterial pressure and the IOP, is part of the system regulating blood perfusion to the eye's internal structures. High IOP impairs the blood supply, leading to a loss of optic nerve function.

The globe is a relatively noncompliant compartment. The volume of the internal structures is fixed except for aqueous fluid and choroidal blood volume. The quantity of these two factors regulates IOP. 80% to 90% of aqueous formation occurs through active secretion by the ciliary body mediated by Na-K ATPase and carbonic anhydrase enzymes. The remainder is from passive filtration and ultrafiltration across the ciliary epithelium. It then enters the angle of the anterior chamber to flow through the trabecular meshwork into the Schlemm canal and the episcleral veins. IOP is primarily regulated by the resistance at the trabecular meshwork.[23]

Impairment of aqueous drainage at any point can elevate the IOP. Sclerosis of the trabecular meshwork is believed to cause the chronic pressure elevation in open-angle glaucoma. Closed-angle glaucoma occurs when there is an obstruction to aqueous drainage from closure of the anterior chamber angle. This happens from peripheral iris swelling or anterior displacement. Patients with a preexisting narrow angle may be predisposed to this condition. The acute increase in pressure causes severe pain and is an ophthalmologic emergency.

Anesthetic drugs and the conduct of anesthesia have important effects on IOP. All volatile anesthetic drugs cause a decrease in IOP.[24-26] Nitrous oxide (N_2O) has no effect on IOP. The commonly used intravenous induction anesthetics such as propofol, thiopental, and etomidate all reduce IOP, with propofol causing a moderate reduction in IOP even when used as low-dose intravenous sedation.[27] Ketamine does not increase IOP (see the section Anesthesia for Pediatric Ophthalmology). The mechanism by which anesthetic drugs reduce IOP is not fully elucidated but involves depression of central nervous system ocular centers, resulting in relaxation of extraocular muscle tone.[27] Short-acting opioids such as fentanyl, alfentanil, and remifentanil decrease IOP on induction of anesthesia.[28,29] Midazolam has little effect on IOP,[30] and sedation with midazolam has been used to facilitate the measurement of IOP in children.[31] Nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents (NMBAs) such as rocuronium, vecuronium, and atracurium have little effect on IOP. Succinylcholine increases IOP by about 8 to 10 mm Hg[32] due to a variety of postulated mechanisms including reduced aqueous humor outflow, increased choroidal blood volume, and increased central venous pressure.[33,34] IOP increases after reversal of nondepolarizing NMBA with neostigmine and atropine but remains unchanged with sugammadex.[35]

The most significant rise in IOP during general anesthesia occurs at laryngoscopy and emergence; the increase in IOP is even greater with repeat laryngoscopy.[36] Video-guided laryngoscopy causes a smaller increase in IOP than direct laryngoscopy.[37,38] Insertion of a laryngeal mask airway results in little or no increase in IOP.[39,40] Other anesthetic interventions that increase IOP include compression of the eyes by ventilation, hypoxia, hypercapnia, and hypertension.[34] Coughing, straining, or vomiting can increase IOP 30 to 40 mm Hg. A poorly placed anesthesia mask can put enough pressure on the eye to reduce blood flow to zero. Ocular blocks initially increase IOP by 5 to 10 mm Hg, but this falls to below baseline values within 5 minutes. Peribulbar blocks cause the greatest increase in IOP, likely due to the greater volume of local anesthetic that is injected.[41]

Physiological factors that increase IOP include being placed in supine, prone, or Trendelenburg positions. A normal blink increases the IOP by 10 mm Hg, while a forceful lid squeeze can increase IOP to more than 70 mm Hg.[42]

OPHTHALMIC DRUGS

Ophthalmic medications can be delivered by topical, ocular (intravitreal, subconjunctival, retrobulbar, and intracameral), and systemic methods. Topical eye drops may be absorbed systemically; significant routes of systemic absorption occur at conjunctival capillaries and nasal mucosa. Less significant absorption can occur through the lacrimal drainage system, pharynx, gastrointestinal tract, skin at the cheek and eyelids, and at the aqueous humor and inner ocular tissues.[43] When systemic therapy is required, the blood ocular barrier may inhibit passage of lipophilic drugs; however, this barrier may be impaired by ocular inflammation, intraocular surgery and trauma, or ocular diseases.[44] The population at risk of systemic side effects of eye drops are children and the elderly because of anatomical differences, risk of toxicity, the presence of concomitant diseases, and polypharmacy. Most drugs have negligible excretion into breastmilk, with the exception of Timolol eye drops, which can potentially cause adverse effects in the nursing infant.[45]

The total dose of a drug delivered by topical eye drop can be significant. Consider that one drop (typically 50 μL) of 10% phenylephrine contains 5 mg of drug, which is appreciably more than the intravenous dose of phenylephrine (0.05-0.1 mg). Adverse reactions such as hypertension, arrhythmias, and adverse cardiac events have been reported.[46]

Systemically administered drugs such as acetazolamide and mannitol can produce side effects such as fluid or electrolyte disturbance that can affect anesthetic management of these patients. Table 69.1 lists the systemic effects of ophthalmic medications.

OPHTHALMIC PROCEDURES

1. CATARACT EXTRACTION
   Cataracts are opacities of the crystalline lens of the eye. Cataract extraction is performed under topical or regional block. General anesthesia is rarely used.
   a. Phacoemulsification is the technique of choice for cataract surgery and refers to the use of ultrasonic vibration of fragments of the lens with simultaneous irrigation and aspiration. This technique allows for very small incisions. Femtosecond laser is a relatively new technique where laser energy is used for corneal incision, capsulotomy, and fragmenting the lens. Supplemental oxygen is contraindicated during its use because of fire risk.
   b. Extracapsular cataract extraction refers to the removal of the lens, while leaving the posterior lens capsule and zonules intact to allow implantation of intraocular lens.
   c. Intracapsular cataract extraction is the total removal of the opaque lens with the lens capsule, and it is rarely performed due to large incision and a relatively high rate of complications.
2 GLAUCOMA PROCEDURES
   d. Trabeculectomy is a glaucoma surgery that creates a transscleral fistula to allow aqueous humor to drain into the subconjunctival space. Mitomycin C or 5-flurouracil (5-FU) is usually used to prevent scarring of the flap.
   e. Baerveldt and Ahmed devices are drainage implantable devices that shunt aqueous humor under the conjunctiva.
   f. Minimally invasive glaucoma surgery (MIGS) includes procedures such as CyPass, iStents, and trabectome.
3. CORNEAL PROCEDURES
   a. Penetrating keratoplasty is a full thickness corneal transplant.

TABLE 69.1 Systemic Side Effects of Ophthalmic Drugs

Drug	Mechanism	Use	Side Effects
Acetylcholine	Cholinergic agonist	Meiosis	Bradycardia, bronchospasm, hypotension
Acetazolamide (PO, IV, IM)	Carbonic anhydrase inhibitor	Decrease IOP, Glaucoma	Confusion, drowsiness, hypokalemia, hyponatremia, metabolic acidosis, abnormal hepatic function tests, polyuria, renal failure
Anti-VEGF, e.g., ranibizumab, aflibercept	Inhibits vascular endothelial growth factor	Inhibits neovascularization	Conjunctival hemorrhage, eye pain, endophthalmitis, uveitis, stroke (in high-risk patients)
Atropine	Anticholinergic	Mydriasis	Dry mouth, dry skin, fever, agitation (central anticholinergic syndrome)
Cyclopentolate	Anticholinergic	Mydriasis, cycloplegia	Central anticholinergic syndrome (see atropine)
Echothiopate	Irreversible cholinesterase inhibitor	Glaucoma	Total body inhibition of plasma cholinesterase Prolongs effects of succinylcholine
Epinephrine	α-, β agonist	Mydriasis, decrease IOP	Hypertension, tachycardia, ventricular arrhythmias
Mannitol	Osmotic diuretic	Decrease IOP	Initial increase in circulating blood volume; congestive heart failure in patients with poor ventricular function
Phenylephrine	α Adrenergic agonist	Mydriasis, vasoconstriction	Hypertension
Pilocarpine	Cholinergic	Constrict pupil	Bradycardia, bronchospasm
Scopolamine	Anticholinergic	Mydriasis, cycloplegia	Central anticholinergic syndrome (see atropine)
Tamsulosin	α_1 antagonist	Benign prostatic hyperplasia	Floppy iris syndrome
Timolol	β_1 and β_2 antagonist	Glaucoma	Bradycardia, bronchospasm, exacerbate congestive heart failure

IM, Intramuscular; *IOP,* intraocular pressure; *IV,* intravenous; *PO,* per os, by mouth; *VEGF,* vascular endothelial growth factor.

b. Lamellar keratoplasty—In Descemet stripping endothelial keratoplasty (DSEK) and Descemet membrane endothelial keratoplasty (DMEK) procedures, only the diseased endothelium is removed and replaced with a corneal graft.

c. Pterygium excision—A pterygium is an abnormal growth of fleshy tissue on the conjunctiva. Excision is performed when it impinges on the cornea, affecting vision, or for cosmesis.

4. VITREORETINAL SURGERY

a. Vitrectomy is the surgical removal of the vitreous humor and its replacement with a physiologic solution. A posterior vitrectomy is indicated for the removal of foreign bodies such as “dropped lens” through the torn posterior capsule during cataract surgery, to repair retinal detachments, to remove membranes and media opacities, and to alleviate vitreous traction on the retina.

b. Scleral buckle is a procedure used for the treatment of retinal detachment. A silicone band is placed around the globe within the extraocular muscles under the conjunctiva to push the sclera toward the detached retina. It can be used as the sole treatment or in combination with vitrectomy to treat retinal detachment.

c. Radioactive plaque implantation is done for the treatment of choroidal melanoma. It is frequently combined with prophylactic vitrectomy with silicone oil injection to prevent retinal detachment from radiation.

5. OCULOPLASTIC SURGERY

a. Eyelid procedures. Eyelid procedures include the correction of ectropion (eyelid turning outward), entropion (eyelid turning inward), ptosis (drooping of the upper eyelid), and blepharoplasty (to remove redundant tissue of the eyelid).

b. Dacryocystorhinostomy refers to the surgical reopening of the obstructed channel between the lacrimal sac and the nasal cavity caused by a congenital defect or chronic infection.

c. Orbital surgery includes repair of blowout fractures, drainage of an orbital abscess, decompression for exophthalmos caused by hyperthyroidism, or tumor excision in the orbit or optic nerve.

d. Evisceration, enucleation, and exenteration. Evisceration refers to the removal of the contents of the eye. Enucleation refers to removal of the eye itself including the globe, but leaving orbital contents such as bone, extraocular muscles, and fat in place. Exenteration refers to the removal of the entire contents of the orbit including the lacrimal gland, optic nerve, and orbital bones.

e. Tarsorrhaphy is the partial or total suturing together of the eyelids.

Preoperative Evaluation

Exclusion criteria for ambulatory ophthalmic surgery under general anesthesia include noncompensated congenital cardiac and pulmonary disease, and some syndromes with multiple system involvement in pediatric patients. Severe cardiomyopathy, pulmonary hypertension, home-oxygen dependence, and super-morbid obesity (body mass index >50) are exclusion criteria in adult patients. Known difficult airway in either group may preclude outpatient surgery.

LABORATORY STUDIES

Previous investigations have shown that preoperative laboratory tests are typically normal before low-risk ambulatory surgery,[47,48] and the ASA recommends that routine preoperative laboratory testing before cataract surgery is not necessary in ASA physical status classification I and II patients.[49] Routine preoperative testing has not been shown to decrease cancellation rate and adverse events, or to improve outcomes.[50] While this is not extensively studied in other types of ophthalmic surgical procedures, a study examining preoperative medical testing for patients undergoing vitreoretinal surgery showed that preoperative testing did not influence rates of postoperative systemic complications.[51] Any laboratory testing, including an electrocardiography, should be based on the patients' history and physical findings rather than the indiscriminate ordering of a battery of tests.

CARDIOVASCULAR EVALUATION

The American Heart Association and American College of Cardiology have published guidelines for perioperative cardiovascular evaluation for noncardiac surgery.[52] Ophthalmic procedures, such as cataract extraction, are specifically identified as low-risk procedures. For these procedures, evaluation is focused on patients with major clinical predictors of risk.

ANTICOAGULATION

Many elderly patients undergoing eye surgery are on antiplatelet or warfarin therapy. Perioperative management of anticoagulants involves weighing the risks of thrombosis versus hemorrhagic complications. In a study of more than 19,000 cataract procedures, the incidence of hemorrhagic and thrombotic complications was low.[53] The risk of hemorrhagic complications depends on the degree of anticoagulation and the hemorrhagic potential of the surgical procedure. Serious hemorrhagic complications are most probable in orbital and oculoplastic surgery; of intermediate probability in vitreoretinal, glaucoma, and corneal transplant surgery; and least likely in cataract surgery.

It is safe to proceed with cataract surgery without stopping antiplatelet or warfarin therapy provided that the international normalized ratio level is within the therapeutic range.[54] Ocular blocks are rarely associated with severe hemorrhagic complications. For intermediate risk surgery such as oculoplastic and glaucoma surgery, warfarin and antiplatelet drugs may increase the risk of intraoperative or postoperative bleeding.[55,56] MIGS are associated with a 100% rate of hyphema, and the effects of anticoagulation therapy in patients undergoing these procedures is unclear.[57]

There is limited data on the risk of hemorrhagic complications during eye surgery in patients who are taking novel oral anticoagulants (NOACs). A recent systematic review and meta-analysis found that NOACs reduced the risk of intraocular bleeding by onefifth compared with warfarin.[58] However, another study comparing NOACs with antithrombotic drugs found no difference in the risk of substantial intraocular bleed, but the number of adverse events was scarce.[59] In the authors' institution, the ophthalmologist requests patients to stop NOAC therapy 2 days before intermediate-risk surgery.

If an interruption of anticoagulation treatment is needed, an individualized approach is recommended to minimize the risk of perioperative bleeding. Bridging therapy should be considered in patients with a high risk for thromboembolic events.

Orbital Blocks

Intraocular surgery can be performed under local, regional, or general anesthesia. Regional anesthesia is standard for most ophthalmic procedures such as cataract, glaucoma, cornea, and vitreoretinal surgeries.[60] Regional anesthesia provides akinesia (immobility) and anesthesia of the eye. The requirement for akinesia will vary by type of surgery and surgeon preference. Facial nerve block may be required to obtain akinesia of the orbicularis oculi muscle of the lid, as its motor innervation is located outside the cone.

Regional anesthesia techniques are generally reliable, safe, and provide good postoperative analgesia. Compared with general anesthesia, regional anesthesia is less likely to be associated with PONV. Patients are often able to bypass Phase 1 recovery with a quicker discharge home. Patients often view eye blocks with anxiety and apprehension, and may have fears of being aware and awake during their procedure. Some patients may not be able to cooperate, to lay flat, or lie still during surgery, and therefore may not be able to tolerate surgery under regional anesthesia alone.

RETROBULBAR BLOCK

Retrobulbar block has long been considered the gold standard of regional techniques for ophthalmic surgery until the 1990s with the introduction of peribulbar block and sub-Tenon block. Retrobulbar block is achieved by injecting local anesthetic inside the muscular cone (Fig. 69.2).

With the globe in primary gaze, a 3-cm, 23- to 27-gauge needle with its bevel opening faced toward the globe is placed at the junction of the inferior and lateral walls of the orbit just above the inferior orbital rim.[61] The needle is advanced parallel to the orbit floor (with a 10-degree elevation from the transverse plane) for approximately 15 mm until it is past the equator of the eye. The needle is turned medially and slight upward to aim toward an imaginary point behind the globe on the axis formed by the pupil and the macula where 2 to 5 mL of local anesthetic solution is injected. The needle tip approaches but does not pass the midsagittal plane of the globe. Some intorsion on downgaze is expected because the superior oblique muscle is outside the muscle cone and may not be blocked. Many modifications to the classical retrobulbar anesthetic injection have been described to minimize complications of the block. Traditionally, blunt-tipped needles were advocated because they were thought to protect against ocular trauma and because they allowed more accurate definition of tissue planes. However, studies have shown that blunt needles are as likely as sharp needles to cause globe penetration and optic nerve injury. Fine cutting needles produce minimal tissue distortion with little pain.[62] Compared with peribulbar block, retrobulbar block has a quicker onset and is associated with less chemosis.

Retrobulbar hemorrhage complicates about 1% of retrobulbar injections.[63] Venous hemorrhage spreads slowly and does not usually result in long-term visual problems. Arterial hemorrhage can produce rapid orbital swelling, marked proptosis with immobility of the globe, inability to close the lids, and massive blood staining of the lids and conjunctiva. Compressive hematoma can threaten retinal perfusion leading to severe visual loss. Ophthalmoscopic examination should be performed to evaluate for ischemic damage to the optic nerve or retina. IOP should be measured and a lateral canthotomy may need to be performed to decompress the orbit.

Intravascular injection can occur despite a negative aspiration test. The total dose of local anesthetic used is small, and systemic effects are unlikely, even if the total dose is given intravenously. Accidental intraarterial injection can cause central nervous system excitation and seizures. This occurs because of retrograde passage of local anesthetic solution from the ophthalmic artery to the internal carotid artery and delivery to the thalamus and other midbrain structures. Injection of local anesthetic or retrograde tracking of local anesthetic along the optic nerve sheath into the subdural or subarachnoid space causes partial or total progressive brainstem anesthesia. Wide ranging symptoms occur, from aphasia, confusion, and dysphagia to apnea, cardiac arrest, loss of consciousness, and seizures.[64,65] Management is supportive and should result in total recovery within several hours.

Optic nerve damage, or globe perforation with retinal detachment and vitreous hemorrhage, are devastating complications of retrobulbar block. Risk factors include physician inexperience and a highly myopic eye (axial length longer than 25 mm). This complication is associated with a poor prognosis, particularly in cases of delayed diagnosis.[66]

PERIBULBAR BLOCK

Peribulbar block was first reported in 1986.[67] The needle is introduced outside the cone, thus preventing retrobulbar hemorrhage and reducing the risk of optic nerve injury (see Fig. 69.2). Many modifications of this block exist; the classic technique involves two injections—one inferiorly and temporally and the second superiorly and nasally. Peribulbar anesthesia may also be administered with one injection; a 3 cm, 23-gauge Atkinson needle is placed at the junction of the middle and lateral thirds of the lower lid just above the inferior orbital rim. The needle should be directed vertically backward, parallel to the floor of the orbit. The needle insertion depth should be less than 25 mm. If contact is made with bone, the needle should be redirected slightly upward then 5 to 10 mL of local anesthetic is injected.[68] Studies support the use of peribulbar block in providing equivalent patient analgesia and operating conditions as retrobulbar block for a variety of ophthalmic procedures.[69,70]

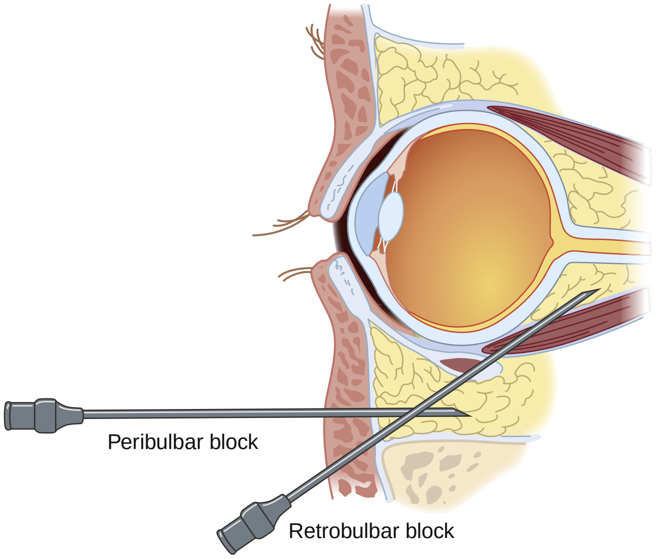


Fig. 69.2 Position of needles for retrobulbar and peribulbar blocks. (Redrawn from Spaeth GL. *Ophthalmic Surgery: Principles and Practice.* Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1982.)

SUB-TENON BLOCK

To avoid the complications of sharp needles, a technique was developed using a blunt cannula under the fascia of Tenon.[71] Various lengths of cannulas have been used. Using topical anesthesia with sedation, a speculum is placed to retract the lids. A 2- to 3-mm spot of cautery can be made 5 mm from the limbus in the inferonasal or inferolateral quadrant. A 2-mm incision is made in the conjunctiva with blunt dissection through the fascia. A blunt cannula is directed posteriorly, but not beyond the equator of the globe, with injection of 1 to 3 mL of local anesthetic. A small degree of conjunctival edema is often seen. Analgesia is usually excellent.

FACIAL NERVE BLOCK

A facial nerve block is performed to prevent squeezing of the eyelids, which interferes with surgery and increases IOP. Akinesia of the orbicularis muscle, which is supplied by the facial nerve, can be achieved by blocking the nerve at its terminal branches (Van Lint block) or proximal trunk (O'Brien or Nadbath-Rehman block).

1. Van Lint block: the needle is placed 1 cm lateral to the orbital rim, and 2 to 4 mL of anesthetic is injected along the superolateral and inferolateral orbital rims. The modified Van Lint block is a common variant achieved by inserting the needle 1 cm more lateral than the original insertion point to avoid lid edema. The disadvantages of this block include patient discomfort, proximity to the eye, and postoperative ecchymoses(Figure 69.3A).

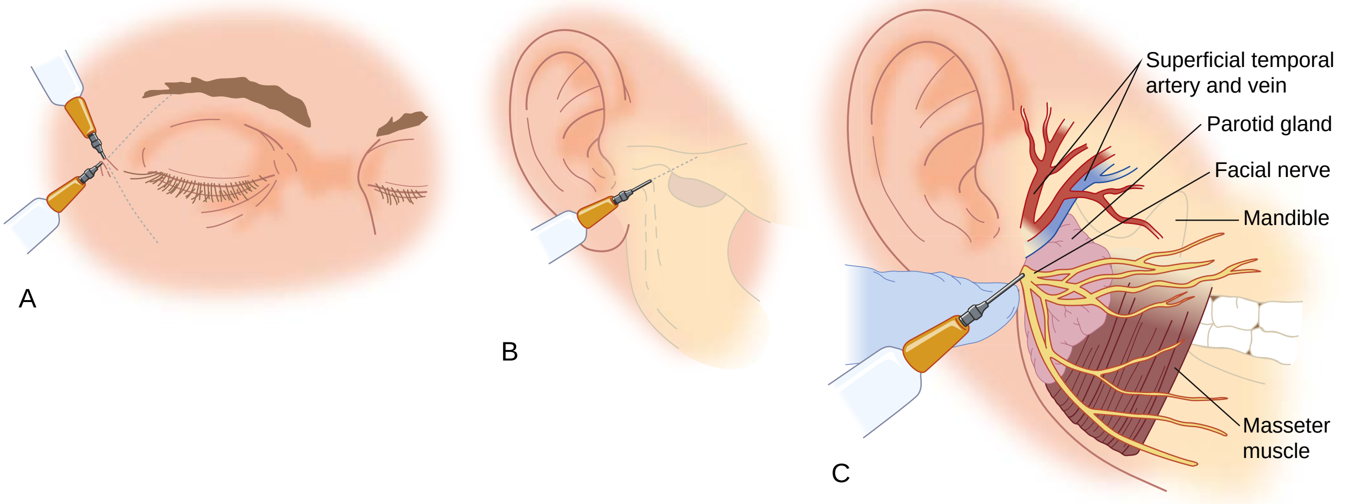


Fig. 69.3 Facial Nerve Blocks. (A) Van Lint; (B) O'Brien; (C) Nadbath-Rehman. (Redrawn from Spaeth GL. *Ophthalmic Surgery: Principles and Practice.* Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1982.)

2. O'Brien block: the mandibular condyle is palpated inferior to the posterior zygomatic process and anterior to the tragus of the ear as the patient opens and closes the jaw. The needle is inserted perpendicular to the skin approximately 1 cm to the periosteum. As the needle is withdrawn, 3 mL of anesthetic is injected (Figure 69.3B).
3. Nadbath-Rehman block: a 12-mm, 25-gauge needle is inserted perpendicular to the skin between the mastoid process and the posterior border of the mandible. The needle is advanced its full length, and after careful aspiration, 3 mL of anesthetic is injected as the needle is withdrawn. This blocks the entire trunk of the facial nerve. The patient should be told to expect a lower facial droop for several hours postoperatively. The major disadvantage to this block is the proximity of the injection to important structures, such as the carotid artery and the glossopharyngeal nerve (Figure 69.3C).

LOCAL ANESTHETIC SOLUTIONS FOR REGIONAL TECHNIQUES

For local anesthesia, we use a 1:1 ratio of bupivacaine 0.75% and lidocaine 2% without epinephrine. Hyaluronidase is added to speed tissue penetration. Hyaluronidase can also be important in preventing anesthetic-related damage to the extraocular muscles. A human recombinant brand (Hylenex) is commercially available.

Monitored Anesthesia Care

Approximately 60% to 70% of ophthalmic procedures can be accomplished by a combination of orbital blocks and MAC. In the last 2 decades, the dramatic improvement in surgical techniques in ophthalmic surgery has had significant impact on anesthesia management rendering many ophthalmic procedures less invasive and shorter in duration.

MAC with regional anesthesia provides many advantages over general anesthesia in lowering postoperative morbidity, mortality, and pulmonary complications.[72,73] There is better postoperative pain control,[74] a lower incidence of intraoperative hypotension, faster postoperative recovery,[75] less PONV, and less unplanned hospital admission.[76]

Other than cataract surgery, most ophthalmic procedures require orbital blocks that are quick to perform but painful for the patient. Intravenous sedation and analgesia is provided to prevent pain and anxiety.[77] Patient movement during orbital blocks, either from pain, anxiety, under sedation, or over sedation, has been linked to complications leading to blindness. Other unique intraoperative conditions make ophthalmic surgery challenging. Many elderly patients are anxious[20] and cognitively impaired,[78] making it difficult for them to lie flat and still during surgery. Covering the face with surgical drapes and rotation of the bed 90 or 180 degrees away from the anesthesia provider also increases difficulty by limiting access to the airway.

The technique for MAC is highly variable and depends on the training and experience of the anesthesia provider, the environment of practice, availability of drugs, and the surgeons' and patients' expectation for sedation. There is no universal regimen for MAC.[79]

Intravenous sedation is a continuum ranging from mild and moderate sedation to deep sedation that overlaps with general anesthesia.[80] The depth of sedation can quickly increase to a deeper level depending on age, weight, cardiac function, genetics, and general health. Some patients have a high tolerance to sedatives while others may be more sensitive. This variability presents a challenge for the fast-track practice of ophthalmic anesthesia. The newly published "Practice Guidelines for Moderate Procedural Sedation and Analgesia 2018"[81] provides evidence-based recommendations for MAC that are also applicable in ophthalmic anesthesia.

TABLE 69.2 Observer's Assessment of Alertness/Sedation Scale

Subscore	Responsiveness	Speech	Facial Expression	Eyes
5	Responds to name spoken in normal tone	Normal	Normal	Clear
4	Lethargic response to name spoken in normal tone	Mild slowing or thickening	Mild relaxation	Glazed mild ptosis
3	Responds only after name spoken loudly or repeatedly	Slurring or slowing	Marked relaxation	Glazed marked ptosis
2	Responds after mild prodding or shaking	Few recognized words		
1	Does not respond to mild prodding or shaking			

From Chernik DA, Gillings D, Laine H, et al. Validity and reliability of the Observer's Assessment of Alertness/Sedation Scale: study with intravenous midazolam. *J Clin Psychopharmacol*. 1990;10(4):244–251.

The challenge of MAC in ophthalmic surgery is to quickly and safely sedate a patient adequately for an ocular block, and still maintain operating room efficiency. Ideally, the metrics of intravenous sedation in ophthalmic surgery should be quantitatively measurable, including the time required to reach the targeted level of sedation and analgesia, and the efficacy of pain control while avoiding respiratory depression or apnea. It is not necessary to use loss of consciousness as an endpoint of sedation. To do so can lead to apnea, hypoxia, involuntary movement in reaction to pain, and hemodynamic instability. During orbital blocks and surgery, patients should be sedated to a moderate level such as subscore 3 of the Observer's Assessment of Alertness/Sedation Scale (Table 69.2). The objective is to have a patient who is comfortable, free of pain and anxiety, yet able to follow commands in order to prevent movement that can lead to ocular trauma. Treating complications that occur during orbital blocks and being prepared to convert to general anesthesia in the event that MAC is inadequate, or the airway compromised are important responsibilities of the anesthesia provider.

MONITORED ANESTHESIA CARE FOR CATARACT SURGERY UNDER TOPICAL ANESTHESIA

Topical anesthesia has become popular due to its ease of administration and avoidance of complications of orbital blocks. Topical anesthesia requires patient cooperation because of the lack of ocular akinesia. Patients undergoing cataract surgery with topical anesthesia may experience some discomfort and require intravenous analgesic medication in small doses.[82] Most patients undergoing cataract surgery want sedation, which can be given either intravenously or orally.[83] Local anesthetic eye drops, such as 0.5% tetracaine, 0.75% bupivacaine, and 2% lidocaine, are very effective in producing analgesia although their effects can dissipate with constant irrigation.

With use of femtosecond laser, it may take up to 5 minutes to appropriately dock and position the patient, however it takes only 30 seconds for laser delivery. Discomfort during the procedure is managed with topical anesthesia. Ideally, sedation should be avoided to allow patient cooperation. If necessary, a small dose of a sedative or analgesic can be given.

Midazolam is the primary sedative used for anxiolysis during cataract surgery with topical anesthesia. Its side effects of over sedation, paradoxical reaction, postoperative neurocognitive disorders, and memory deficit are concerning in the elderly patient. Low-dose propofol, short-acting narcotics, or both are reasonable alternatives. Over sedation during cataract surgery should be avoided to prevent sudden awakening under surgery that may lead to undesired movement secondary to disorientation. Dexmedetomidine used as a sole medication is not appropriate for use in cataract surgery due to its slow onset, inadequate analgesic effect, and long elimination half-life.[83-85] Ketamine alone is also not a good choice due to its dysphoric and hallucinogenic properties. Intraoperative handholding is helpful to provide reassurance and reduce anxiety.

MONITORED ANESTHESIA CARE FOR OPHTHALMIC SURGERY WITH AN ORBITAL BLOCK

Orbital blocks, such as retrobulbar, peribulbar, and sub-Tenon blocks, are commonly performed nerve blocks for ophthalmic procedures. Orbital blocks are performed by either the ophthalmologist or the anesthesia provider. In an ASA Closed Claim Project analysis of complications associated with eye and peripheral nerve blocks, the risk of adverse events was increased when anesthesia providers performed both the orbital block and MAC.[10]

Many sedatives and analgesics, either alone or in combination, are used during the performance of an orbital block.[81] The use of sedatives alone such as midazolam, propofol, sodium thiopental, and dexmedetomidine can provide an adequate level of sedation, but their lack of analgesic effect may lead to involuntary head movement. The sole use of narcotics such as alfentanil, fentanyl, remifentanil, and sufentanil can provide profound analgesia, but inadequate sedation and increased nausea and vomiting.[86]

Propofol is an excellent drug for providing titratable sedation. Its lack of analgesic effect makes it insufficient for orbital blocks as evidenced by a high rate of involuntary movement during injection.[87] When ketamine is combined with propofol, up to onethird of patients who receive the combination will have undesired movement during the block.

The combination of a short-acting opioid such as alfentanil or fentanyl, and propofol, or a triple combination of propofol-midazolam-alfentanil produces a profound synergism of hypnosis and analgesia.[88,89] When opioids are administered in combination with midazolam,[90-92] propofol,[93] sodium thiopental,[94] ketamine,[95] and dexmedetomidine,[96] their sedative effects improved significantly.[91,93]

The use of a mixture of propofol, alfentanil (500 μg/mL), and lidocaine 1% in a 6:2:2 ratio in volume[97] is a novel approach in "balanced anesthesia" during MAC. It contains both a sedative and an analgesic in a single syringe that is easy to titrate based on the patient's age and weight (or adjusted weight in the obese). The addition of lidocaine attenuates the pain from propofol. Within 30 to 90 seconds, most patients reach an OAA/S subscore 3 sedation-level and are ready for the ocular block. This mixture provides excellent analgesia and sedation, as well as hemodynamic stability, with minimal need for airway support. While infusing the mixture bolus, assessing the patient's response to questions allows for detection of the target sedation level. Significant sedation may continue after the block for several minutes, however, conversing with and instructing the patient to breathe deeply will prevent hypoventilation and desaturation.

An orbital block provides analgesia for 2 to 3 hours, which will be sufficient for the duration of most ophthalmic procedures. For more complex procedures such as enucleation, dacryocystorhinostomy, orbital decompression, scleral buckle, and radioactive plaque implantation, the analgesic effect of a retrobulbar block may not be adequate to block all sensation. The addition of intravenous sedation with propofol and narcotics is sufficient for most patients. Low-dose ketamine and dexmedetomidine can be added to the sedation regimen in patients who continue to experience discomfort.

Intranasal dexmedetomidine is well absorbed without the profound bradycardia or hypotension associated with intravenous administration. When given as an adjunct agent, the dose should be reduced, 0.5 to 0.7 μg/kg, administered intranasally as a drop from a tuberculin (TB) syringe. The elimination half-life of dexmedetomidine is about 2 to 3 hours and even longer in elderly patients.[98] Giving a single bolus toward the beginning of the procedure allows the drug to be eliminated during surgery and prevents adverse effects in the PACU. Intranasal dexmedetomidine can also be used in highly anxious patients who are undergoing complex procedures under MAC.

The following are key points of anesthetic management for ophthalmic procedures under MAC.

1. Cataract surgery can be performed under topical anesthesia or an orbital block. Most patients require mild sedation (anxiolysis) for surgery performed under topical anesthesia. Moderate sedation is required for the performance of an orbital block, after which, mild sedation is adequate.
2. Dacryocystorhinostomy: the success of the anesthetic management depends on an adequate initial dose of narcotics and propofol to prevent pain associated with the injection of local anesthetics near the tear duct and inside the nose. A continuous infusion of low-dose propofol and intermittent doses of narcotics, such as fentanyl, are usually necessary to provide adequate analgesia. The patient must be awake enough to protect their airway from aspiration of blood that enters the oropharynx from the nasolacrimal system. Adding intravenous low-dose ketamine or intranasal dexmedetomidine can provide additional analgesia if necessary. If the procedure is bilateral or a reoperation, general anesthesia is likely a better choice.
3. Orbitotomy: the procedure can be done under MAC if performed primarily for debulking of soft tissue without bony involvement.
4. Radioactive plaque implantation: the procedure requires incision of the scleral layer and suturing the plaque between the extraocular muscles. Significant manipulation during the procedure can cause discomfort. Even a well-executed retrobulbar block may not provide complete analgesia; a moderate to deep level of sedation is usually required. Many institutions perform this surgery under general anesthesia, but at the authors' institution, MAC is routinely used. Continuous analgesia with narcotics, and a moderately dosed propofol infusion is highly effective. Low-dose ketamine or dexmedetomidine may be added for those patients who require additional analgesia.
5. Cornea transplant: partial-thickness corneal transplant and penetrating keratoplasty can be carried out under retrobulbar block. Some surgeons also perform a facial nerve block to prevent eyelid squeezing. Intraoperatively, sedation with continuous infusion of propofol and titration of narcotics to achieve a moderate level of sedation is the goal. The patient must be awake enough that they will not move inadvertently especially during penetrating keratoplasty.
6. Enucleation: this procedure can be performed with MAC in appropriate patients. In addition to a retrobulbar block, infiltration of the orbital area with bupivacaine at the end of the procedure can be helpful for postoperative analgesia. The anesthetic management is similar to that of radioactive plaque implantation discussed earlier.
7. Ruptured globe: ruptured globe injury can be repaired under an orbital block and MAC depending on the degree of injury.[99] It is crucial to minimize elevation of IOP during the block and surgery.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS IN MONITORED ANESTHESIA CARE

1. Morbid obesity/obstructive sleep apnea (OSA). Morbid obesity has been identified as an independent predictor of sedation-related cardiopulmonary complications.[100] In addition to obesity-associated comorbidities, such as OSA, restrictive lung disease, diabetes mellitus, and coronary artery disease, obese patients are at increased risk of airway closure and hypoxia during sedation.[101] The pharmacokinetics of drugs are altered in the morbidly obese. Many drugs, including narcotics, should be dosed based on ideal body weight (IBW). When both propofol and alfentanil were given based on adjusted body weight, IBW + 30% of the difference between the patient's total body weight—IBW, the sedation level, analgesic effect, and incidence of airway events were comparable to normal weight patients.[97] Administration of 100% oxygen for several minutes, in addition to supplemental oxygen via nasal cannula before sedation, may alleviate hypoxemia during the orbital block.
2. Elderly patients have increased sensitivity to all sedatives and narcotics,[79,102] as well as increased risk of complications associated with MAC.[11] In addition to a reduction in drug dose requirement, the onset of action will be slower compared with younger patients.[79,97]

General Anesthesia

General anesthesia is indicated in approximately 30% of ophthalmic procedures, primarily for pediatric patients and in adults undergoing complex or invasive procedures whose anesthetic requirement cannot be met by orbital blocks and MAC. Adults with cognitive impairment, hearing loss, language barriers, claustrophobia, or who have a contraindication for an orbital block may require general anesthesia. The special considerations for general anesthesia in ophthalmic surgery should focus on the prevention of intraoperative patient movement that can lead to complications, such as coughing and bucking which can dramatically increase IOP, and the risk of periorbital hemorrhage after procedures such as orbital decompression or enucleation. PONV can cause elevation of IOP, prolonged PACU stay, and unanticipated hospital admission.

Fluid shifts are generally minimal in ophthalmic procedures. Significant blood loss is uncommon except for procedures such as orbital decompression, enucleation and evisceration, and lacrimal duct procedures. The main contributors to hemodynamic instability during general anesthesia in these patients are the patient's underlying comorbidity, such as advanced age, diabetes mellitus, and hypertension. Fluid deficits caused by fasting, autonomic dysfunction due to vascular disease, diabetes mellitus, and Parkinson disease, exaggerate the anesthetic effects on the cardiovascular system.

The laryngeal mask airway (LMA) is widely used in both adult and pediatric patients undergoing ophthalmic procedures that do not require paralysis. Those procedures include strabismus repair, scleral buckle, orbitotomy, enucleation, glaucoma, and cataract surgery in adults. The advantages of the LMA over an endotracheal tube include less hemodynamic changes upon insertion, minimal effect on IOP,[103,104] and the lack of requirement for muscle relaxants or intubating equipment.[105] A disadvantage of the LMA in ophthalmic surgery is that if there is difficulty with ventilation after the surgery is underway, the airway is difficult to access because it is close to the surgical field and often the patient's head is turned 90 degrees away from the anesthesia provider. If it becomes necessary to adjust the LMA or perform endotracheal intubation, the sterility of the surgical field can become compromised during those maneuvers.

Endotracheal intubation is required for penetrating keratoplasty, deep anterior lamellar keratoplasty, combined corneal transplantation and vitrectomy, and some vitreoretinal procedures, in order to provide muscle relaxation. Prevention of patient movement is critical during penetrating keratoplasty. In addition to ensuring an adequate depth of anesthesia, profound muscle relaxation must be ensured by the use of a nerve stimulator where 0/4 twitches and minimal posttetanic count are present while the diseased cornea has been removed and the eye is completely open. Movement at this time could result in extrusion of ocular contents or choroidal hemorrhage. Profound relaxation is required until the donor cornea is secured with eight sutures, when ocular contents are no longer open to the atmosphere. Sudden movement during vitreoretinal procedures where there are instruments inside the eye can also lead to injury that must be prevented. Profound levels of muscle relaxation can be reversed with sugammadex.

Intraoperative hypotension in elderly patients must be treated aggressively. Multiple studies have shown intraoperative hypotension (variously defined as systolic blood pressure <90 mm Hg or mean arterial pressure <50-55 mm Hg, depending on the study) to be associated with acute kidney injury, myocardial injury, stroke and mortality.[106-111] Intraoperative hypotension should be managed with a continuous infusion of phenylephrine instead of repeated phenylephrine boluses to maintain hemodynamic stability. In this situation, decreasing anesthetic depth to correct hypotension could potentially result in patient movement if there is inadequate muscle relaxation.

The prevention of coughing and bucking during emergence is another important goal in ophthalmic surgery because they both dramatically increase IOP,[34] and the incidence of hemorrhage in both intraocular and extraocular surgery. If there is no contraindication, a "deep" endotracheal extubation can be performed in patients who are breathing adequately at a deep level of anesthesia.[112,113] A number of other strategies are also useful in preventing coughing, such as the use of an LMA where appropriate. Total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA) with propofol is superior to sevoflurane, especially in smokers,[114] but it can delay emergence and PACU discharge. Propofol and sevoflurane are additive pharmacodynamically.[88] A combination of 0.5 minimum alveolar concentration of sevoflurane and infusion of propofol at 50 to 100 μg/kg/min is a reasonable approach to prevent coughing and postoperative delirium without delaying PACU discharge. In intubated patients, topical intratracheal lidocaine works slightly better than intravenous lidocaine. However, in cases lasting greater than 2 hours, the benefits of intratracheal lidocaine diminish.[115,116] If a "deep" endotracheal extubation is contraindicated, the patient should be suctioned while at a deep level of anesthesia, intravenous lidocaine given, and extubation performed as soon as safely possible.

Prevention of IOP fluctuation, especially in an open eye, glaucoma, and retinal detachment, can potentially reduce the risk of further eye injury. Video-guided laryngoscopy can significantly decrease the rise of IOP compared with direct laryngoscopy, as well as attenuate hemodynamic alterations.[37,117]

Prevention of PONV in ophthalmic surgery is important to improve patient satisfaction[118] and to prevent increases in IOP that are potentially harmful in relation to the procedure just performed. The treatment for the prevention of PONV should be determined by the Consensus Guidelines for the Management of PONV by Gan and colleagues.[119]

N_2O should be discontinued 15 to 20 minutes prior to the injection of sulphur hexafluoride (SF_6), or octafluoropropane (C_3F_8) used for retinal tamponade. N_2O is avoided for 3 weeks after injection of SF_6, or 8 weeks after C_3F_8 as it may increase the size of the gas bubble through diffusion. Patients are also advised to avoid air travel or high altitude because the reduced atmospheric pressure will lead to expansion of the intraocular gas bubble. Silicone oil is used for retinal tamponade in patients who need longer duration of tamponade, have difficulty in positioning, or cannot avoid air travel after surgery. Unlike gases, silicone oil is permanent and remains in the eye until surgically removed.[120]

Anesthesia for Pediatric Ophthalmology

Anesthesia for pediatric ophthalmology encompasses a diverse group of patients and procedures. Patients range from the premature infant with all the attendant comorbidities, to children with congenital syndromes, to healthy children and adolescents. Many ophthalmic procedures that are performed in adults under MAC require general anesthesia for a pediatric patient.

GLAUCOMA

Measurement of IOP and a thorough ocular examination in the awake child is often difficult due to lack of cooperation and therefore frequently requires general anesthesia. Anesthetic drugs and interventions, such as laryngoscopy, affect IOP. While accurate IOP measurement is important to the diagnosis and treatment of pediatric glaucoma, it is one of numerous diagnostic criteria. Examination of the optic nerve, pachymetry to measure corneal thickness, and gonioscopy of the iridocorneal angle are all important components of the examination. Trends in measurement of the IOP in the same patient over time, under the same conditions, are also useful in management.

An inhalation induction with sevoflurane is commonly performed in pediatric patients and is associated with a reduction in IOP within minutes. Premedication with oral midazolam facilitates a smooth induction, as agitation and crying will falsely elevate IOP. Oral midazolam appears to have no significant effect on IOP.[31] Oberacher and colleagues [31] studied the effect of oral midazolam in a group of young children and found no significant difference between the IOPs measured when awake versus sedated. Ketamine, which is thought to have minimal impact on IOP, has been used for sedation and IOP measurement in children. However, agitation and hallucinations during recovery have led to limited usefulness.

The ophthalmologist in coordination with the anesthesiologist is able to measure the IOP before a deep level of anesthesia is achieved. The ophthalmologist should be in the room with instruments ready prior to induction. The inhalational mask is positioned so that the ophthalmologist has unobstructed access to the eye. If necessary, the mask can be removed briefly to allow IOP measurement and then replaced. Unlike adults with glaucoma who are most often managed medically, pediatric patients are primarily treated with surgical interventions such as goniotomy, trabeculectomy, and pressure lowering devices.

About 10% of primary congenital glaucoma is inherited. Secondary glaucoma can be the result of a systemic condition such as neurofibromatosis, rubella, or Sturge-Weber syndrome (congenital capillary hemangiomatosis). However, most cases of pediatric glaucoma have no identifiable cause. These children require frequent examinations under anesthesia to monitor therapy. It is essential to establish a good rapport with the patient and family and to consider the use of premedication with midazolam and/or parental presence in order to achieve a smooth induction of anesthesia. An LMA is suitable for examinations under anesthesia, except for the very young infant where endotracheal intubation is preferred. If a surgical intervention is required, the LMA may be changed to an endotracheal tube at the discretion of the anesthesia provider.

STRABISMUS

Strabismus surgery is the most common type of ophthalmic surgery performed in children. It has historically been associated with an incidence of postoperative vomiting (POV) of more than 50% in numerous studies. Eberhart et al. identified strabismus surgery as an independent predictor for POV in children.[121] Additional independent predictors include age over 3 years, duration of surgery greater than 30 minutes, and a history of POV or PONV in the patient, sibling, or parent. When 2, 3, or 4 risk factors are present, the risk of POV is 30%, 55%, and 70%, respectively. With the development of risk scores and the Consensus Guidelines by Gan and colleagues[119] to predict and manage POV in children and PONV in adults, the incidence of these events has been dramatically reduced.

For children at high risk for POV (more than 2 risk factors), as those having strabismus surgery are, a combination of a 5-HT3 antagonist and a steroid should be administered prophylactically. Dexamethasone in a dose of 0.1 to 0.2 mg/kg at the beginning of the procedure, and ondansetron 0.1 mg/kg toward the end of the case is the recommended strategy. A propofol infusion at a subhypnotic dose in combination with other classes of antiemetics also reduces the incidence of POV.[122] Those children with all four risk factors should avoid receiving N_2O and inhalational anesthetics. TIVA with propofol should be considered in such cases. Droperidol is an effective antiemetic; however, the FDA "black box" warning has resulted in a dramatic decrease in its use.

The oculocardiac reflex is frequently elicited during strabismus repair by traction on the extraocular muscles (see the Oculocardiac Reflex section). When the response is profound, removal of the stimulus by the surgeon is the first step in resolution. The reflex usually accommodates over time and is rarely hemodynamically significant in healthy children. If, however, the bradycardia persists, it may be treated with an anticholinergic agent, either atropine or glycopyrrolate. A lesser known reflex, the oculorespiratory reflex leads to bradypnea and respiratory pauses.[123] The afferent limb is the same as for the oculocardiac reflex, the efferent limb has not been clearly established. It is not responsive to anticholinergics. The oculorespiratory reflex may be less appreciated because of the use of assisted modes of ventilation commonly used during strabismus surgery. Airway management is typically with an LMA unless a contraindication is present.

RETINOPATHY OF PREMATURITY

Retinopathy of prematurity (ROP) is a major cause of blindness and other visual disabilities in children throughout the world. Improved survival of extremely premature babies has led to an increased incidence. ROP was first linked with liberal oxygen use in premature infants in the 1940s. Setting target ranges of oxygen saturation in the 91% to 95% range has decreased the impact of oxygen as a risk factor.[124] Gestational age and low birth weight are major risk factors for the development of ROP. Other factors such as anemia, sepsis, and bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD) are also important predictors. Screening guidelines for ROP include a dilated fundus examination for all premature infants less than 30 weeks gestational age or 1500 grams at birth. Most of these initial screening exams are done in the neonatal intensive care unit without intervention from an anesthesia provider. Older infants may need to come to the operating room for surgery or laser treatments.

Care of the ex-premature infant is complex and starts with a thorough history with attention to gestational age, birth weight, neonatal intensive care unit (NICU) course, duration of intubation and ventilation, history of apnea and bradycardia, the presence BPD, and any congenital anomalies. Abnormalities of pulmonary function are common in children with BPD and many have increased airway reactivity.[125] This is an important consideration when any formerly premature child who has had BPD undergoes a surgical procedure. As with ROP, younger infants are surviving with BPD and the long-term sequelae are not completely known.

Although it has been more than 30 years since the initial recommendation for monitoring the formerly preterm infant following general or regional anesthesia, those recommendations are still current.[126] There is interinstitutional variation with the most conservative centers recommending monitoring for apnea and bradycardia for at least 12 hours until 60 weeks postconceptual age (PCA). Some infants who have had a complicated NICU course and continue to be oxygen dependent at home, have anemia, or continue to have episodes of apnea and bradycardia would not be suitable candidates to have surgery performed in an outpatient setting despite being greater than 60 weeks PCA.

General anesthesia is required for infants and children having laser treatments and other surgical interventions for ROP. The need for a motionless field is best ensured by endotracheal intubation and the use of muscle relaxants. Some infants may have been recently extubated, and it may be difficult to extubate at the end of the surgical procedure. They may experience periodic breathing upon emergence from anesthesia, in which case, the patient should be returned to the NICU and extubated when fully recovered.

Postoperative Considerations in Ophthalmic Surgery

It is commonly assumed that ophthalmic surgery is associated with little postoperative pain. While this may be true of cataract surgery,[127] significant postoperative pain is associated with posterior segment surgery, corneal surgery, ocular muscle surgery, and enucleations.[128] Yet, pain in ophthalmic surgery is often underrecognized, and postoperative pain management in complex ophthalmic surgery is frequently inadequate.[129] Postoperative pain after ophthalmic surgery is preferably treated with multimodal analgesia such as acetaminophen (oral or intravenous), nonsteroidal antiinflammatory medications, gabapentin, and regional block. Opioid use should be limited, as opioid prescription after short-stay surgery is a risk factor for chronic opioid use 1 year after discharge.[130]

Postoperative pain after cataract surgery is usually associated with ocular dryness, stinging, burning associated with topical medications, photophobia, or corneal abrasion as a result of the eyelid speculum being inserted or removed or corneal surface desiccation during surgery. Pain after cataract surgery is usually short-lived. Persistent pain may indicate complications such as choroidal effusion, suprachoroidal hemorrhage, and aqueous misdirection syndrome.[131] In the PACU, it is additionally important to consider elevated IOP as a potential cause of postoperative pain and PONV. Vasovagal syncope may also occur in the PACU especially in patients who have undergone strabismus surgery, and in those who have preexisting autonomic dysfunction. It is also seen in patients who sit up too quickly after being in a head-down position for an hour or two following insertion of a gas bubble during vitreoretinal surgery. Treatment is supportive and should include administration of oxygen, intravenous fluids, and anticholinergic drugs. The patient should be positioned supine with the head lower than the level of the heart.

Visual impairment is associated with an increased risk of falls, which is a leading cause of death and significant morbidity in the elderly.[132] Special care must be extended to minimize the risk of falls in elderly patients who have undergone ophthalmic surgery and have a patched eye; this is even more important in those with poor vision in the nonsurgical eye.

Ophthalmic Emergencies

Most urgent ophthalmic procedures do not need to be performed on an emergent basis. This is important because the anesthetic plan must consider the fasting status and general medical condition of the patient. In true eye emergencies, therapy should be started within minutes to hours of their recognition.

True emergencies such as ocular burns and central retinal artery occlusion require immediate intervention to prevent loss of sight. **Urgent situations** include open-globe injuries, endophthalmitis, acute narrow-angle glaucoma, acute retinal detachment, corneal foreign body, and lid laceration. Semiurgent conditions include ocular tumors, blowout fractures of the orbit, congenital cataract, and chronic retinal detachment. Treatment for these conditions should be started within days, but in some cases can be safely scheduled within weeks if necessary.

OPEN GLOBE AND FULL STOMACH

In a patient with a penetrating eye injury who requires emergent or urgent surgery, the anesthesia provider must protect the patient from pulmonary aspiration of stomach contents while protecting the eye from acute changes in IOP. Succinylcholine, used as part of a rapid-sequence induction of anesthesia to permit rapid intubation and airway protection, causes a modest increase in IOP of 8 to 10 mm Hg. There has been longstanding controversy surrounding the use of succinylcholine based primarily on anecdotal reports of vitreous loss during open eye surgery.[133] There have been a number of studies where no extrusion of ocular contents has occurred following succinylcholine use.[134-136]

There are also no claims for such injury since 2000 in the ASA Closed Claims Project that is designed to detect patterns of injury during anesthesia.[137] It should be stressed that during induction of anesthesia, there are many factors that may increase IOP such as crying, coughing, bucking, or straining particularly during suboptimal intubating conditions. All of these events increase IOP significantly more than succinylcholine. Based on the current evidence, succinylcholine may be used to facilitate endotracheal intubation in open eye injuries, despite its effect on IOP.

An alternative option for those at risk for aspiration is to use higher dose rocuronium (0.9-1.2 mg/kg) and to reverse neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex. Attempts to perform laryngoscopy and intubation before onset of complete neuromuscular blockade may result in straining or coughing that will dramatically increase IOP; therefore a peripheral nerve stimulator should be used to ensure adequate relaxation. This technique leaves the patient at risk for aspiration of gastric contents for a longer period of time (90-120 seconds) than if succinylcholine is used. A smooth emergence from anesthesia can be achieved by the well-timed use of narcotics to prevent strenuous coughing and bucking prior to extubation.

Additional factors implicated in increasing IOP are mask pressure, hypercarbia, hypoxia, and elevated arterial blood pressure. Regional anesthetic techniques with intravenous sedation can also be used in selected cases of open-globe injuries.[138]

Anesthesia-Related Eye Injuries

Eye injuries that occur during anesthesia for nonocular surgery are uncommon. Corneal abrasion is the most common eye injury,[9] and may be due to direct contact from the face mask, surgical drapes, or other foreign objects that come in contact with the eye. General anesthesia predisposes to corneal abrasion because it suppresses corneal reflexes, increases lagophthalmos (incomplete eyelid closure), and decreases tear production and stability.[139] Patients complain of a foreign body sensation—pain that is made worse by blinking, tearing, and photophobia. In some instances, the pain from corneal abrasion is far worse than the pain from the surgical site. Corneal abrasion can be prevented by lubricating the eyes with ophthalmic ointment, taping the eyes during surgery, and vigilantly monitoring patients to ensure that they do not rub their face or eyes during emergence from anesthesia. Treatment of corneal abrasion consists of antibiotic ointment to the affected eye and patching the eye for 48 to 72 hours.

Risk factors for postoperative ophthalmic complications include cardiopulmonary surgery, intraoperative hypotension, massive blood loss, anemia, and patients placed in prone or steep Trendelenburg positions. IOP can increase by an average of 13 mm Hg higher than preanesthesia induction values when a patient is placed in steep Trendelenburg position,[140] and remains significantly elevated while the patient remains in this position.[141] Mechanisms for increased IOP in the Trendelenburg position include (1) raised central venous pressure due to gravitational forces that leads to increased orbital venous pressure and IOP, and (2) pneumoperitoneum causing increased choroidal blood volume which, in turn, increases IOP.[141] Dexmedetomidine has been shown to be effective in lowering IOP[142] and its use has been shown to attenuate the increase in IOP during laparoscopic surgery in steep Trendelenburg position without decreasing ocular perfusion pressure.[143]

A devastating but rare complication of surgery is perioperative visual loss (POVL), which is most often associated with cardiac, spine, and head and neck operations. Causes of POVL are ischemic optic neuropathy (ION), central retinal artery occlusion (CRAO), and cortical vision loss. The pathology of POVL varies with its underlying etiology; ION affects the optic nerve, CRAO occurs at the optic disc in the retina, and cortical blindness results from ischemic or embolic damage to the visual cortex or the optic radiations. Patients usually experience painless visual loss or decreased acuity, an afferent pupillary defect, and no light perception. Prognosis for recovery of vision is poor.

ION is the most commonly reported condition associated with POVL. It can be further subdivided into anterior ischemic optic neuropathy (AION) and posterior ischemic neuropathy (PION). AION is associated with damage to the optic nerve head and is more commonly seen after cardiac surgery. Damage to the rest of the optic nerve results in PION, and it is more commonly reported after spinal surgery.[144] In the ASA POVL Registry, ION was associated with estimated blood loss of greater than 1000 mL and anesthetic duration of more than 6 hours.[145] Although the etiology of perioperative ION is unknown, a possible hypothesis is that prone surgery leads to increased venous pressure and interstitial tissue edema that compromises blood flow to the optic nerve. Prevention involves careful preoperative counseling and screening, considering surgical options that reduce the risk of stroke, and staging long spinal surgeries in high-risk patients. Patient positioning should avoid direct ocular pressure, with the head positioned so that it is higher than the heart to reduce orbital edema. Hypotension and severe anemia should be avoided.[146]

In CRAO, interruption of the arterial supply to the retina most commonly occurs from increased IOP due to external pressure during positioning. Other causes include retrobulbar hemorrhage, occlusive disease of the retinal vasculature, and central retinal vein thrombosis.[146] Therapeutic interventions include lowering IOP with acetazolamide or osmotic diuretic agents,[147] induced hypercarbia, topical hypothermia, locally applied thrombolytic agents, and hyperbaric oxygen therapy.[148]

In an ASA closed claims analysis of eye injuries during ophthalmic surgery associated with anesthesia in 1992, Gild et al. found that patient movement such as bucking or coughing was the most common single mechanism of injury. The majority of patient movement occurred during general anesthesia, and the outcome in all these cases was blindness.[9] The use of a peripheral nerve stimulator to monitor neuromuscular blockade during ophthalmic surgery should ensure that patients do not move during general anesthesia.

Acute glaucoma, manifested as dull periorbital pain, during the early postoperative period may occur due to the administration of mydriatic agents such as atropine, scopolamine, and ephedrine. Management consists of lowering IOP with acetazolamide or an osmotic diuretic and timely referral to an ophthalmologist.[149]

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher thank Dr. Marc Allan Feldman for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Glen FC, et al. *BMC Ophthalmol*. 2011;11(1):2.
2. Varma R, et al. *Ophthalmology*. 2006;113(10):1846–1853.
3. Brown G. *Trans Am Ophthalmol Soc*. 1999;129(6):833.
4. Frick KD. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 2007;125(4):544.
5. Broman AT, et al. *Investig Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2002;43(11):3393–3398.
6. National Eye Institute. Statistics and Data. https://nei.nih.gov/eyedata.
7. Schein OD, et al. 2012;19:257–264. https://doi.org/10.3109/09286586.2012.698692.
8. Breslin PP. *Int Ophthalmol Clin*. 13(2):215–226.
9. Gild WM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:204–208.
10. Lee LA, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(5):416–422.
11. Bhananker SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:228–234.
12. Steckelberg RS, et al. In: *ASA Abstract*. 2015:A4222. www.asaabstracts.com.
13. Neelakanta G, Fang ZF. In: *ASA Abstract*. ; 2016:A1023. www.asaabstracts.com.
14. Twersky RS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(5):1421–1426.
15. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Perioperative Surgical Home. http://www.asahq.org/psh.
16. Qiu C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(3):597–606.
17. Services C for M& M. Outpatient and Ambulatory Surgery CAHPS (OAS CAHPS).
18. Neuman MD. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(5):1019–1020.
19. Heidegger T, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;20(2):331–346.
20. Fung D, et al. 100:1644–1650.
21. Alexander JP. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 1947;30(4):489.
22. Moonie GT, et al. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1964;11(6):621–632.
23. Goel M, et al. *Ophthalmol J*. 2010;4:52.
24. Mirakhur RK, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34(4):282–285.
25. Park JT, et al. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2013;64(2):117–121.
26. Dominguez A, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26(9):801–803.
27. Neel S, et al. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1995;79(12):1093–1097.
28. Sator-Katzenschlager SM, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21:95–100.
29. Sweeney J, et al. *BJA Br J Anaesth*. 1989;63(6):688–691.
30. Carter K, et al. *J Glaucoma*. 1999;8(3):204–207.
31. Oberacher-Velten I, et al. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 2011;95(8):1102–1105.
32. Cook JH. *Anaesthesia*. 1981;36:359–365.
33. Adams AK, Barnett KC. *J Assoc Anaesth Gt Britain Irel*. 1966;21(2):202–210.
34. Kelly DJ, Farrell SM. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;1.
35. Yagan Ö, et al. *J Pak Med Assoc*. 2015;65(11):1219–1225.
36. Bithal PK, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21(6):496–503.
37. Karaman T, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;34:358–364.
38. Ahmad N, et al. *Saudi J Anaesth*. 2015;9(2):195–198.
39. Watcha MF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75(3):355–360.
40. Barclay K, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49:159–162.
41. Bowman R, et al. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1996;80(5):394–397.
42. Coleman DJ, et al. Direct-recorded intraocular pressure variations in a human subject. 10032:3–6.
43. Farkouh A, et al. *Clin Ophthalmol*. 2016;10:2433–2441.
44. Chen M, et al. *Tzu Chi Med J*. 2008;20(1):25–34.
45. Lustgarten JS, Podos SM. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1983;101(9):1381–1382.
46. Lai YK. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1989;73(6):468–469.
47. Booth A, Roland M. *Health Technol Assess (Rockv)*. 1997;1(12).
48. Smetana GW, Macpherson DS. *Med Clin North Am*. 2003;87(1):7–40.
49. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Choosing Wisely: Five things Physicians and Patients Should Question. http:// www.choosingwisely.org/societies/american-society-of-anesthesiologists. http://www.choosingwisely.org/wp-content/uploads/2015/02/ASA-Choosing-Wisely-List.pdf. Published 2013.
50. Keay L, Lindsley K, Tielsch J, et al. 2012;(3):3–5. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858. CD007293.pub3. Copyright.
51. Shalwala A, et al. *Retina*. 2015;35(2):319–325.
52. Fleisher LA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;64(22):e77–e137.
53. Katz J, et al. *Ophthalmology*. 2003;110(9):1784–1788.
54. Benzimra JD, et al. *Eye*. 2009;23(1):10–16.
55. Law SK, et al. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 2008;145(4).
56. Cobb CJ, et al. *Eye*. 2007;21(5):598–603.
57. Rahman SI, Turalba A. *Semin Ophthalmol*. 2018;33(1):108–111.
58. Sun MT, et al. *JAMA Ophthalmol*. 2017;135(8):864–870.
59. Caldeira D, Canastro M, Barra M, et al. *JAMA Ophthalmol*. 2015;133(7):834–839.
60. Ripart J, et al. 2001;94(1):56–62.
61. Hamilton RC. *J Cataract Refract Surg*. 1996;22(9):1147–1150.
62. Wong DHW. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40(7):635–657.
63. Feibel RM. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 1985;30(2):102–110.
64. Dahle JM, Iserson KV. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2007;25(1):105–106.
65. Chang J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61(6):789–790.
66. Nouvellon MSc, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(5):1236–1242.
67. Davis DB, Mandel MR. *J Cataract Refract Surg*. 1986;12(2):182–184.
68. Parness G, Underhill S. *Contin Educ Anaesthesia, Crit Care Pain*. 2003;5(3):93–97.
69. Riad W, Akbar F. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24(3):193–195.
70. Alhassan MB, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;2(7):1–31.
71. Stevens JD. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1992;76:670–674.
72. Qiu C, Chan P, Zohman G, et al. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2018;32(3):116–123.
73. Neuman MD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(1).
74. Kettner SC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(suppl. 1):i90–i95.
75. Sato M, et al. *J Anesth*. 2016;30(2):244–251.
76. Morales R, et al. *Ambul Surg*. 2002;9(4):197–205.
77. Roizen MF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:390–398.
78. Chung F, Mezei G. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(6):1352–1359.
79. Heuss LT, et al. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther*. 2003;17(12):1493–1501.
80. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Continuum of Depth of Sedation: Definition of General Anesthesia and Levels of Sedation/Analgesia.
81. Practice Guidelines for Moderate Procedural Sedation and Analgesia 2018. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(3):437–479.
82. Dole K, et al. *Indian J Ophthalmol*. 2014;62(9):927–930.
83. Friedman DS, et al. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 2004;88(3):333–335.
84. Candiotti KA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(1):47–56.
85. Jalowiecki P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(2):269–273.
86. Edmunds MR, et al. *Orbit*. 2012;31(1):53–58.
87. Frey K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(2):317–321.
88. Hendrickx JFA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(2):494–506.
89. Mertens MJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(4):795–805.
90. Dundee JW, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1986;41:159–161.
91. Gold MI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:51–57.
92. Avramov MN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:1283–1289.
93. Iselin-Chaves IA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(4):949–955.
94. Veselis RA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;87:749–764.
95. Edwards SR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(1):94–100.
96. Angst MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(3):744–752.
97. Fang ZT, Keyes MA. *J Clin Anesth*. 2006;18(2):114–117.
98. Iirola T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(3):460–468.
99. McClellan A, et al. *Ophrhalmol Retin*. 2017;1(3):188–191.
100. Wani S, et al. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2011;74(6):1238–1247.
101. Hillman DR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(1):63–71.
102. Lemmens HJ, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1990;19(5):416–422.
103. Lamb K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69(2):143–147.
104. Alipour M, et al. *J Ocul Pharmacol Ther*. 2014;30(8):665–669.
105. Cork RC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(4):719–727.
106. Sessler DI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:317–327.
107. Salmasi V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(1):47–65.
108. Walsh M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119(3):507–515.
109. Sun LY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(3):515–523.
110. Mashour GA. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:12891296.
111. Monk Terri G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;123(2):307–319.
112. Valley RD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(4):742–745.
113. Valley RD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(5):1320–1324.
114. Hans P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101(5):731–737.
115. Gonzalez RM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:792–795.
116. D'Aragon F, et al. *Can J Anesth*. 2013;60(4):370–376.
117. Ahmad N, et al. *Saudi J Anaesth*. 2015;9(2):195–198.
118. Stadler M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;98(1):46–52.
119. Gan TJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(1):85–113.
120. Vaziri K, et al. *Clin Ophthalmol*. 2016;10:471–476.

121. Eberhart LHJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(6):1630–1637.
122. Erdem AF, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(9):878–883.
123. Blanc VF, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1988;35(5):468–472.
124. Carlo WA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362(21):1959–1969.
125. Halvorsen T, et al. *Pediatr Allergy Immunol*. 2005;16(6):487–494.
126. Steward DJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56(4):304–306.
127. Koay P, et al. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1992;76(4):225–227.
128. Henzler D, et al. *E*. 2004;21(2):101–106.
129. Lesin M, et al. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 2015;60(3):196–203.
130. Hah JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(5):1733–1740.
131. Assam JH, et al. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 2018;63(1):75–85.
132. Kramarow E, et al. *Natl Cent Heal Stat Data Br*. 2015;(199):8.
133. Alexander JP. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1975;59:518.
134. Vachon CA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:220–223.
135. McGoldrick KE. *J Clin Anesth*. 1993;5:1–4.
136. Libonati M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(5):637–640.
137. Posner K (personal communication). Anesthesia Closed Claims Project.
138. Scott IU, et al. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 2002;134(5):707–711.
139. Cross DA, Krupin T. *Anesth Analg*. 1977;56(1):35–37.
140. Awad H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(2):473–478.
141. Hoshikawa Y, et al. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 2014;98(3):305–308.
142. Mowafi HA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(4):485–489.
143. Joo J, et al. *J Korean Med Sci*. 2016;31(6):989–996.
144. Chwalisz B, et al. *Semin Ophthalmol*. 2018;33(1):17–22.
145. Lee LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(4):652–659.
146. Kitaba A, et al. *J Anesth*. 2013;27:919–926.
147. Wray SH. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1993;56(3):234–240.
148. Feltgen N, et al. *Graefe's Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol*. 2006;244(8):950–956.
149. Nitta Y, et al. *Anesth Prog*. 2014;61(4):162–164.

References

1. Glen FC, Crabb DP, Garway-Heath DF. The direction of research into visual disability and quality of life in glaucoma. *BMC Ophthalmol*. 2011;11(1):2–7. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2415-11-19.
2. Varma R, Wu J, Chong K, Azen SP, Hays RD. Impact of severity and bilaterality of visual impairment on health-related quality of life. *Ophthalmology*. 2006;113(10):1846–1853. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ophtha.2006.04.028.
3. Brown G. Vision and quality-of-life. *Trans Am Ophthalmol Soc*. 1999;129(6):833.
4. Frick KD. Economic impact of visual impairment and blindness in the United States. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 2007;125(4):544. https://doi.org/10.1001/archopht.125.4.544.
5. Broman AT, Munoz B, Rodriguez J, et al. The impact of visual impairment and eye disease on vision-related quality of life in a Mexican-American population: Proyecto VER. *Investig Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2002;43(11):3393–3398.
6. National Eye Institute. Statistics and Data. https://nei.nih.gov/eyedata.
7. Schein OD, Cassard SD, Tielsch JM, Gower EW. Cataract surgery among medicare beneficiaries. 2012;19:257–264. https://doi.org/10.3109/09286586.2012.698692.
8. Breslin PP. Mortality in ophthalmic surgery. *Int Ophthalmol Clin*. 13(2):215–226.
9. Gild WM, Posner KL, Caplan RA, Cheney FW. Eye injuries associated with anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:204–208. https://doi.org/10.1167/8.5.1.
10. Lee LA, Posner KL, Cheney FW, Caplan RA, Domino KB. Complications associated with eye blocks and peripheral nerve blocks: an American Society of Anesthesiologists closed claims analysis. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33(5):416–422. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rapm.2008.01.016.
11. Bhananker SM, Posner KL, Cheney FW, Caplan RA, Lee LA, Domino KB. Injury and liability associated with monitored anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:228–234.
12. Steckelberg RS, Fang ZF, Keyes MA. Prolonged PACU stay following outpatient ophthalmologic surgery: a retrospective review. In: *ASA Abstract*. 2015:A4222. www.asaabstracts.com.
13. Neelakanta G, Fang ZF. Incidence and causes of unexpected admission following ambulatory eye surgery. In: *ASA Abstract*. 2016:A1023. www.asaabstracts.com.
14. Twersky RS, Sapozhnikova S, Toure B. Risk factors associated with fast-track ineligibility after monitored anesthesia care in ambulatory surgery patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(5):1421–1426. https://doi.org/10.1213/ane.0b013e31816a6600.
15. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Perioperative Surgical Home. http://www.asahq.org/psh.
16. Qiu C, Cannesson M, Morkos A, et al. Practice and outcomes of the perioperative surgical home in a California integrated delivery system. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(3):597–606. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000001370.
17. Services C for M& M. Outpatient and Ambulatory Surgery CAHPS (OAS CAHPS).
18. Neuman MD. Patient satisfaction and value in anesthesia care. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(5):1019–1020. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0b013e318216ea25.
19. Heidegger T, Saal D, Nuebling M. Patient satisfaction with anaesthesia care: what is patient satisfaction, how should it be measured, and what is the evidence for assuring high patient satisfaction? *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;20(2):331–346. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bpa.2005.10.010.
20. Fung D, Davies A, Cohen MM, Stewart S. What determines patient satisfaction with cataract care under topical local anesthesia and monitored sedation in a. 100:1644–1650. https://doi.org/10.1213/01.ANE.0000154206.81132.B9.
21. Alexander JP. Reflex disturbances of cardiac rhythm during ophthalmic surgery. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 1947;30(4):489.
22. Moonie GT, Rees DL, Elton D. The oculocardiac reflex during strabismus surgery*. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1964;11(6):621–632.
23. Goel M, Picciani RG, Lee RK, Bhattacharya SK. Aqueous humor dynamics: a review. *Ophthalmol J*. 2010;4:52. http://uq.summon.serialssolutions.com/2.0.0/link/0/eLvHCXMw3V1NS8QwEA3iQQQRv78ld6m0TTdNBQ-rKF4WBNfzkjYp7WKzS80e9t-bdN-J2d2H_gBR6aGgC88pk-jLzBiESPvrehk9IGaVWCitnnMnAFyL-MA54muTRX4HO5Tn90HTD_F_BD4-ltXmuxqGb1g4CO879Q1Fz3JwHT_jOxHbTMrdAF_6lAk2l1pUY9Hw7zR1yVXWnP.
24. Mirakhur RK, Elliott P, Shepherd WF, McGalliard JN. Comparison of the effects of isoflurane and halothane on intraocular pressure. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1990;34(4):282–285. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/59.4.437.
25. Park JT, Lim HK, Jang KY, Um DJ. The effects of desflurane and sevoflurane on the intraocular pressure associated with endotracheal intubation in pediatric ophthalmic surgery. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2013;64(2):117–121. https://doi.org/10.4097/kjae.2013.64.2.117.
26. Dominguez A, Garcia-Miguel FJ, Alsina E, Gilsanz F. Intraocular pressure measurement in children under general anesthesia with sevoflurane. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26(9):801–803.
27. Neel S, Deitch R, Moorthy SS, Dierdorf S, Yee R. Changes in intraocular pressure during low dose intravenous sedation with propofol before cataract surgery. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1995;79(12):1093–1097. http://www.pubmedcentral.nih.gov/articlerender.fcgi?artid=505347&tool=pmcentrez&rendertype=abstract.
28. Sator-Katzenschlager SM, Oehmke MJ, Deusch E, Dolezal S, Heinze G, Wedrich A. Effects of remifentanil and fentayl on intraocular pressure during the maintenance and recovery of anaesthesia in patients undergoing non-ophthalmic surgery. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21:95–100.
29. Sweeney J, Underhill S, Dowd T, Mostafa SM. Modification by fentanyl and alfentanil of the intraocular pressure response to suxamethonium and tracheal intubation. *BJA Br J Anaesth*. 1989;63(6):688–691. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/63.6.688.
30. Carter K, Faberowski LK, Sherwood MB, Berman LS, Sue M. A randomized trial of the effect of midazolam on intraocular pressure. *J Glaucoma*. 1999;8(3):204–207. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10376262.
31. Oberacher-Velten I, Prasser C, Rochon J, Ittner KP, Helbig H, Lorenz B. The effects of midazolam on intraocular pressure in children during examination under sedation. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 2011;95(8):1102–1105. https://doi.org/10.1136/bjo.2009.173641.
32. Cook JH. The effect of suxamethonium on intraocular pressure. *Anaesthesia*. 1981;36:359–365. http://www.scopus.com/inward/record.url?eid=2-s2.0-0015966080&partnerID=40&md5=4f334677efa96b578d8886a76566ba99.
33. Adams AK, Barnett KC. Anaesthesia and intraocular pressure. *J Assoc Anaesth Gt Britain Irel*. 1966;21(2):202–210. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2044.1966.tb02599.x.
34. Kelly DJ, Farrell SM. Physiology and role of intraocular pressure in contemporary anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;1. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000002544.
35. Yagan Ö, Karakahya RH, Tas N, Canakci E, Hanci V, Yurtlu BS. Intraocular pressure changes associated with tracheal extubation: comparison of sugammadex with conventional reversal of neuromuscular blockade. *J Pak Med Assoc*. 2015;65(11):1219–1225.
36. Bithal PK, Mohanty B, Reddy TS, Prabhakar H. Effect of repeat laryngoscopy on intraocular pressure. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21(6):496–503.
37. Karaman T, Dogru S, Karaman S, et al. Intraocular pressure changes: The McGrath video laryngoscope vs the Macintosh laryngoscope; a randomized trial. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;34:358–364. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclinane.2016.05.015.
38. Ahmad N, Zahoor A, Riad W, Al Motowa S. Influence of GlideScope assisted endotracheal intubation on intraocular pressure in ophthalmic patients. *Saudi J Anaesth*. 2015;9(2):195–198.
39. Watcha MF, White PF, Tychsen L, Stevens JL. Comparative effects of laryngeal mask airway and endotracheal tube insertion on intraocular pressure in children. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75(3):355–360.
40. Barclay K, Wall T, Wareham K, Asai T. Intra-ocular pressure changes in patients with glaucoma. Comparison between the laryngeal mask airway and tracheal tube. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49:159–162.
41. Bowman R, Liu C, Sarkies N. Intraocular pressure changes after peribulbar injections with and without ocular compression. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1996;80(5):394–397. https://doi.org/10.1136/bjo.80.5.394.
42. Coleman DJ, Trokel S, York N. Direct-recorded intraocular pressure variations in a human subject. 10032:3–6.
43. Farkouh A, Frigo P, Czejka M. Systemic side effects of eye drops: a pharmacokinetic perspective. *Clin Ophthalmol*. 2016;10:2433–2441. https://doi.org/10.2147/OPTH.S118409.

44. Chen M, Hou P, Tai T, Lin BJ. Blood-ocular barriers. *Tzu Chi Med J*. 2008;20(1):25–34.
45. Lustgarten JS, Podos SM. Topical timolol and the nursing mother. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1983;101(9):1381–1382. https://doi.org/10.1001/archopht.1983.01040020383008.
46. Lai YK. Adverse effect of intraoperative phenylephrine 10%: case report. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1989;73(6):468–469. https://doi.org/10.1136/bjo.73.6.468.
47. Booth A, Roland M. Routine preoperative testing : Standing Group on Health Technology. *Health Technol Assess (Rockv)*. 1997;1(12).
48. Smetana GW, Macpherson DS. The case against routine preoperative laboratory testing. *Med Clin North Am*. 2003;87(1):7–40. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0025-7125(02)00147-5.
49. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Choosing Wisely: Five things Physicians and Patients Should Question. http://www.choosingwisely.org/societies/american-society-of-anesthesiologists/. http://www.choosingwisely.org/wp-content/uploads/2015/02/ASA-Choosing-Wisely-List.pdf. Published 2013.
50. Keay L, Lindsley K, Tielsch J, et al. Routine preoperative medical testing for cataract surgery 2012;(3):3–5. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD007293.pub3. Copyright.
51. Shalwala A, Hwang RY, Tabing A, Sternberg P, Kim SJ. The value of preoperative medical testing for vitreoretinal surgery. *Retina*. 2015;35(2):319–325. https://doi.org/10.1097/IAE.0000000000000306.
52. Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;64(22):e77–e137. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2014.07.944.
53. Katz J, Feldman MA, Bass EB, et al. Risks and benefits of anticoagulant and antiplatelet medication use before cataract surgery. *Ophthalmology*. 2003;110(9):1784–1788. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0161-6420(03)00785-1.
54. Benzimra JD, Johnston RL, Jaycock P, et al. The Cataract National Dataset electronic multicentre audit of 55, 567 operations: antiplatelet and anticoagulant medications. *Eye*. 2009;23(1):10–16. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.eye.6703069.
55. Law SK, Song BJ, Yu F, Kurbanyan K, Yang TA, Caprioli J. Hemorrhagic complications from glaucoma surgery in patients on anticoagulation therapy or antiplatelet therapy. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 2008;145(4). https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajo.2007.12.007.
56. Cobb CJ, Chakrabarti S, Chadha V, Sanders R. The effect of aspirin and warfarin therapy in trabeculectomy. *Eye*. 2007;21(5):598–603. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.eye.6702277.
57. Rahman SI, Turalba A. Anticoagulation in glaucoma surgery. *Semin Ophthalmol*. 2018;33(1):108–111. https://doi.org/10.1080/08820538.2017.1353828.
58. Sun MT, Wood MK, Chan W, et al. Risk of intraocular bleeding with novel oral anticoagulants compared with warfarin a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA Ophthalmol*. 2017;135(8):864–870. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamaophthalmol.2017.2199.
59. Caldeira D, Canastro M, Barra M, et al. Risk of substantial intraocular bleeding with novel oral anticoagulants systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA Ophthalmol*. 2015;133(7):834–839. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamaophthalmol.2015.0985.
60. Ripart J, Lefrant JY, de La Coussaye JE, Dominique PP, Vivien B, Eledjan JJ. Peribulbar versus retrobulbar anesthesia for ophtalmic surgery. 2001;94(1):56–62.
61. Hamilton RC. Retrobulbar block revisited and revised. *J Cataract Refract Surg*. 1996;22(9):1147–1150. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0886-3350(96)80062-9.
62. Wong DHW. Regional anaesthesia for intraocular surgery. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40(7):635–657. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03009701.
63. Feibel RM. Current concepts in retrobulbar anesthesia. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 1985;30(2):102–110. https://doi.org/10.1016/0039-6257(85)90078-5.
64. Dahle JM, Iserson KV. ED treatment of brainstem anesthesia after retrobulbar block. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2007;25(1):105–106. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajem.2006.05.031.
65. Chang J, Gonzaalez-Abola E, Larson CE, Lobes L. Brain stem anesthesia following retrobulbar block. *Anesthesiology*. 1984;61(6):789–790.
66. Nouvellon MSc, Emmanuel MD, Cuvillon PhD, Philippe MD, Ripart PhD, Jacques MD. Regional anesthesia and eye surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(5):1236–1242. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0b013e3181f7a78e.
67. Davis DB, Mandel MR. Posterior peribulbar anesthesia: an alternative to retrobulbar anesthesia. *J Cataract Refract Surg*. 1986;12(2):182–184. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0886-3350(86)80040-2.
68. Parness G, Underhill S. Regional anaesthesia for intraocular surgery. *Contin Educ Anaesthesia, Crit Care Pain*. 2003;5(3):93–97.
69. Riad W, Akbar F. Ophthalmic regional blockade complication rate: a single center audit of 33,363 ophthalmic operations. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24(3):193–195. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclinane.2011.07.012.
70. Alhassan MB, Kyari F, Ejere HO. Peribulbar versus retrobulbar anaesthesia for cataract surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;2(7):CD004083. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD004083.pub3.
71. Stevens JD. A new local anaesthesia technique for cataract extraction by one quadrant sub-Tenon's infiltration. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1992;76:670–674. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1834-7819.1976.tb05107.x.
72. Qiu C, Chan P, Zohman G, et al. Impact of anesthesia on hospital mortality and morbidities in geriatric patients following emergency hip fracture surgery. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2018;32(3):116–123.
73. Neuman MD, Silber JH, Elkassabany NM. Comparative effectiveness of regional versus general anesthesia for hip fracture surgery in adults. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(1). https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0b013e3182545e7c.
74. Kettner SC, Willschke H, Marhofer P. Does regional anaesthesia really improve outcome? *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(suppl. 1):i90–i95. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aer340.
75. Sato M, Gotaro S, Fukuda K. Comparison of general anesthesia and monitored anesthesia care in patients undergoing breast cancer surgery using a combination of ultrasound-guided thoracic paravertebral block and local infiltration anesthesia: a retrospective study. *J Anesth*. 2016;30(2):244–251.
76. Morales R, Esteve N, Casas I, Blanco C. Why are ambulatory surgical patients admitted to hospital? Prospective study. *Ambul Surg*. 2002;9(4):197–205. http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=cin20&AN=106974341&site=ehost-live.
77. Roizen MF, Horrigan RW, Frazer BM. Anesthetic doses blocking adrenergic (stress) and cardiovascular responses to incision-MAC BAR. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;54:390–398.
78. Chung F, Mezei G. Factors contributing to a prolonged stay after ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(6):1352–1359. https://doi.org/10.1213/00000539-199912000-00004.
79. Heuss LT, Schnieper P, Drewe J, Pflimlin E, Beglinger C. Conscious sedation with propofol in elderly patients: a prospective evaluation. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther*. 2003;17(12):1493–1501. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.0269-2813.2003.01608.x.
80. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Continuum of Depth of Sedation: Definition of General Anesthesia and Levels of Sedation/Analgesia.
81. Practice Guidelines for Moderate Procedural Sedation and Analgesia 2018. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(3):437–479. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0000000000002043.
82. Dole K, Kulkarni S, Shisode KD, et al. Comparison of clinical outcomes, patient, and surgeon satisfaction following topical versus peribulbar anesthesia for phacoemulsification and intraocular lens implantation: a randomized, controlled trial. *Indian J Ophthalmol*. 2014;62(9):927–930.
83. Friedman DS, Reeves SW, Bass EB, Lubomski LH, Fleisher LA, Schein OD. Patient preferences for anaesthesia management during cataract surgery. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 2004;88(3):333–335. https://doi.org/10.1136/bjo.2003.028258.
84. Candiotti KA, Bergese SD, Bokesch PM, Feldman MA, Wisemandle W, Bekker AY. Monitored anesthesia care with dexmedetomidine: a prospective, randomized, double-blind, multicenter trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(1):47–56. https://doi.org/10.1213/ane.0b013e3181ae0856.
85. Jalowiecki P, Rudner R, Gonciarz M, Kawecki P, Petelenz M, Dziurdzik P. Sole use of dexmedetomidine has limited utility for conscious sedation during outpatient colonoscopy. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(2):269–273. https://doi.org/10.1097/00000542-200508000-00009.

86. Edmunds MR, Kyprianou I, Berry-Brincat A, et al. Alfentanil sedation for oculoplastic surgery: the patient experience. *Orbit*. 2012;31(1):53–58. https://doi.org/10.3109/01676830.2011.603457.
87. Frey K, Sukhani R, Pawlowski J, Pappas AL, Mikat-Stevens M, Slogoff S. Propofol versus propofol-ketamine sedation for retrobulbar nerve block: comparison of sedation quality, intraocular pressure changes, and recovery profiles. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(2):317–321. https://doi.org/10.1097/00000539-199908000-00013.
88. Hendrickx JFA, Eger EI, Sonner JM, Shafer SL. Is synergy the rule? A review of anesthetic interactions producing hypnosis and immobility. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(2):494–506. https://doi.org/10.1213/ane.0b013e31817b859e.
89. Mertens MJ, Olofsen E, Burm AGL, Bovill JG, Vuyk J. Mixed-effects modeling of the influence of alfentanil on propofol pharmacokinetics. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(4):795–805. https://doi.org/10.1097/00000542-200404000-00008.
90. Dundee JW, Halliday NJ, McMurray TJHK. Pretreatment with opioids. *Anaesthesia*. 1986;41:159–161. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365–2044.1986.tb13172.x.
91. Gold MI, Watkins D, Sung Y-F, et al. Remifentanil versus remifentanil/midazolam for ambulatory surgery during monitored anesthesia care. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:51–57. https://doi.org/10.1167/8.5.1.
92. Avramov MN, Smith I, White PF. Interactions between midazolam and remifentanil during monitored anesthesia care. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:1283–1289. https://doi.org/10.1167/8.5.1.
93. Iselin-Chaves IA, Flaishon R, Sebel PS, et al. The effect of the interaction of propofol and alfentanil on recall, loss of consciousness, and the bispectral index. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(4):949–955. https://doi.org/10.1097/00000539-199810000-00038.
94. Veselis RA, Reinsel RA, Feshchenko VA, Wronski M. The comparative amnestic effects of midazolam, propofol, thiopental, and fentanyl at equisedative concentrations. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;87:749–764. https://doi.org/10.1167/8.5.1.
95. Edwards SR, Minto CF, Mather LE. Concurrent ketamine and alfentanil administration: pharmacokinetic considerations. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(1):94–100. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/88.1.94.
96. Angst MS, Ramaswamy B, Davies MF, Maze M. Comparative analgesic and mental effects of increasing plasma concentrations of dexmedetomidine and alfentanil in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(3):744–752. https://doi.org/10.1097/00000542-200409000-00024.
97. Fang ZT, Keyes MA. A novel mixture of propofol, alfentanil, and lidocaine for regional block with monitored anesthesia care in ophthalmic surgery. *J Clin Anesth*. 2006;18(2):114–117. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclinane.2005.08.007.
98. Iirola T, Ihmsen H, Laitio R, et al. Population pharmacokinetics of dexmedetomidine during long-term sedation in intensive care patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(3):460–468. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aer441.
99. McClellan A, Daubert J, Relhan N, Tran K, Flynn HJ, Gayer S. Comparison of regional vs. general anesthesia for surgical repair of open-globe injuries at a university referral center. *Ophthalmol Retin*. 2017;1(3):188–191.
100. Wani S, Azar R, Hovis CE, et al. Obesity as a risk factor sedation-related complications during propofol-mediated sedation for advanced endoscopic procedures. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2011;74(6):1238–1247. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gie.2011.09.006. OBESITY.
101. Hillman DR, Walsh JH, Maddison KJ, et al. Evolution of changes in upper airway collapsibility during slow induction of anesthesia with propofol. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(1):63–71. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0b013e3181a7ec68.
102. Lemmens HJ, Burm AGL, Hennis PJ, Gladines MPPR, Bovill JG. Influence of age on the pharmacokinetics of alfentanil. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1990;19(5):416–422.
103. Lamb K, James MFM, Janicki PK. The laryngeal mask airway for intraocular surgery: effects on intraocular pressure and stress responses. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;69(2):143–147. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/69.2.143.
104. Alipour M, Derakhshan A, Pourmazar R, Abrishami M, Ghanbarabadi VG. Effects of propofol, etomidate, and thiopental on intraocular pressure and hemodynamic responses in phacoemulsification by insertion of laryngeal mask airway. *J Ocul Pharmacol Ther*. 2014;30(8):665–669. https://doi.org/10.1089/jop.2013.0165.
105. Cork RC, Depa RM, Standen JR. Prospective comparison of use of the laryngeal mask and endotracheal tube for ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(4):719–727.
106. Sessler DI, Meyhoff CS, Zimmerman NM, Mao G, Leslie K. Period-dependent associations between hypotension during and for four days after noncardiac surgery and a composite of myocardial infarction and death: a substudy of the POISE-2 trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:317–327.
107. Salmasi V, Maheshwari K, Dongsheng Y, et al. Thresholds and acute kidney and myocardial injury after noncardiac surgery a retrospective cohort analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(1):47–65.
108. Walsh M, Kurz A, Turan A, et al. Relationship between intraoperative mean. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119(3):507–515. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0b013e3182a10e26.
109. Sun LY, Wijeysundera DN, Tait GA, Beattie WS. Association of intraoperative hypotension with acute kidney injury after elective noncardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(3):515–523. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0000000000000765.
110. Mashour GA, Shanks AM, Kheterpal S. Perioperative stroke and associated mortality after noncardiac, nonneurologic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:12891296.
111. Terri G, Monk MD, Michael R, et al. Association between intraoperative hypotension and hypertension and 30-day postoperative mortality in noncardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;123(2):307–319. http://anesthesiology.pubs.asahq.org/article.aspx?articleID=2343033.
112. Valley RD, Ramza JT, Calhoun P, et al. Tracheal extubation of deeply anesthetized pediatric patients: a comparison of isoflurane and sevoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(4):742–745. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10195515.
113. Valley RD, Freid EB, Bailey AG, et al. Tracheal extubation of deeply anesthetized pediatric patients: a comparison of desflurane and sevoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(5):1320–1324. https://doi.org/10.1213/01.ANE.0000058844.77403.16.
114. Hans P, Marechal H, Bonhomme V. Effect of propofol and sevoflurane on coughing in smokers and non-smokers awakening from general anaesthesia at the end of a cervical spine surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101(5):731–737. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aen271.
115. Gonzalez RM, Bjerke RJ, Drobycki T, et al. Prevention of endotracheal tube-induced coughing during emergence from general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:792–795.
116. D'Aragon F, Beaudet N, Gagnon V, Martin R, Sansoucy Y. The effects of lidocaine spray and intracuff alkalinized lidocaine on the occurrence of cough at extubation: a double-blind randomized controlled trial. *Can J Anesth*. 2013;60(4):370–376. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12630-013-9896-8.
117. Ahmad N, Zahoor A, Riad W, Al Motowa S. Influence of GlideScope assisted endotracheal intubation on intraocular pressure in ophthalmic patients. *Saudi J Anaesth*. 2015;9(2):195–198.
118. Stadler M, Bardiau F, Seidel L, Albert A, Boogaerts JG. Difference in risk factors for postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;98(1):46–52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16717343.
119. Gan TJ, Diemunsch P, Habib AS, et al. Consensus guidelines for the management of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(1):85–113. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000000002.
120. Vaziri K, Schwartz SG, Kishor KS, Flynn HW. Tamponade in the surgical management of retinal detachment. *Clin Ophthalmol*. 2016;10:471–476. https://doi.org/10.2147/OPTH.S98529.
121. Eberhart LHJ, Geldner G, Kranke P, et al. The development and validation of a risk score to predict the probability of postoperative vomiting in pediatric patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(6):1630–1637. https://doi.org/10.1213/01.ANE.0000135639.57715.6C.
122. Erdem AF, Yoruk O, Alici HA, et al. Subhypnotic propofol infusion plus dexamethasone is more effective than dexamethasone alone for the prevention of vomiting in children after tonsillectomy. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(9):878–883. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1460-9592.2008.02675.x.
123. Blanc VF, Jacob JL, Milot J, Cyrenne L. The oculorespiratory reflex revisited. *Can J Anaesth*. 1988;35(5):468–472. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03026892.
124. Carlo WA, Finer NN, Walsh MC, Rich W. Target ranges of oxygen saturation in extremely preterm infants. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362(21):1959–1969. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1402121.

125. Halvorsen T, Skadberg BT, Eide GE, Røksund O, Aksnes L, Øymar K. Characteristics of asthma and airway hyper-responsiveness after premature birth. *Pediatr Allergy Immunol*. 2005;16(6):487–494. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399-3038.2005.00314.x.
126. Steward DJ. Preterm infants are more prone to complications following minor surgery than are term infants. *Anesthesiology*. 1982;56(4):304–306. https://doi.org/10.1167/8.5.1.
127. Koay P, Laing A, Adams K, Branney S, Black H. Ophthalmic pain following cataract surgery: a comparison between local and general anaesthesia. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1992;76(4):225–227.
128. Henzler D, Kramer R, Steinhorst UH, Piepenbrock S, Rossaint R, Kuhlen R. Factors independently associated with increased risk of pain development after ophthalmic surgery. *E*. 2004;21(2):101–106.
129. Lesin M, Domazet Bugarin J, Puljak L. Factors associated with postoperative pain and analgesic consumption in ophthalmic surgery: a systematic review. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 2015;60(3):196–203. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.survophthal.2014.10.003.
130. Hah JM, Bateman BT, Ratliff J, Curtin C, Sun E. Chronic opioid use after surgery: implications for perioperative management in the face of the opioid epidemic. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(5):1733–1740. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000002458.
131. Assam JH, Bernhisel A, Lin A. Intraoperative and postoperative pain in cataract surgery. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 2018;63(1):75–85. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.survophthal.2017.07.002.
132. Kramarow E, Chen LH, Hedegaard H, Warner M. Deaths from unintentional injury among adults aged 65 and over: United States, 2000–2013. *Natl Cent Heal Stat Data Br*. 2015;199:8. http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/databriefs/db199.htm.
133. Alexander JP. Reflex disturbances of cardiac rhythm during ophthalmic surgery. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 1975;59:518.
134. Vachon CA, Warner DO, Bacon DR. Succinylcholine and the open globe. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:220–223. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ohc.2006.02.015.
135. McGoldrick KE. The open globe: is an alternative to succinylcholine necessary ? *J Clin Anesth*. 1993;5:1–4.
136. Libonati M, Leahy J, Ellison N. The use of succinylcholine in open eye surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(5):637–640. https://doi.org/10.1167/8.5.1.
137. Posner K (personal communication). Anesthesia Closed Claims Project.
138. Scott IU, Mccabe CM, Flynn HW, et al. Local anesthesia with intravenous sedation for surgical repair of selected open globe injuries. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 2002;134(5):707–711. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0002-9394(02)01692-6.
139. Cross DA, Krupin T. Implications of the effects of general anesthesia on basal tear production. *Anesth Analg*. 1977;56(1):35–37. https://doi.org/10.1213/00000539-197701000-00011.
140. Awad H, Santilli S, Ohr M, et al. The effects of steep Trendelenburg positioning on intraocular pressure during robotic radical prostatectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(2):473–478. https://doi.org/10.1213/ane.0b013e3181a9098f.
141. Hoshikawa Y, Tsutsumi N, Ohkoshi K, et al. The effect of steep Trendelenburg positioning on intraocular pressure and visual function during robotic-assisted radical prostatectomy. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 2014;98(3):305–308. https://doi.org/10.1136/bjophthalmol-2013-303536.
142. Mowafi HA, Aldossary N, Ismail SA, Alqahtani J. Effect of dexmedetomidine premedication on the intraocular pressure changes after succinylcholine and intubation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(4):485–489. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aen020.
143. Joo J, Koh H, Lee K, Lee J. Effects of systemic administration of dexmedetomidine on intraocular pressure and ocular perfusion pressure during laparoscopic surgery in a steep Trendelenburg position: prospective, randomized, double-blinded study. *J Korean Med Sci*. 2016;31(6):989–996. https://doi.org/10.3346/jkms.2016.31.6.989.
144. Chwalisz B, Gilbert AL, Gittinger JW. Perioperative vision loss after non-ocular surgery. *Semin Ophthalmol*. 2018;33(1):17–22. https://doi.org/10.1080/08820538.2017.1353807.
145. Lee LA, Roth S, Posner KL, et al. The American Society of Anesthesiologists postoperative visual loss registry. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(4):652–659. https://doi.org/10.1097/00000542-200610000-00007.
146. Kitaba A, Martin DP, Gopalakrishnan S, Tobias JD. Perioperative visual loss after nonocular surgery. *J Anesth*. 2013;27:919–926. https://doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v5.i2.100.
147. Wray SH. The management of acute visual failure. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 1993;56(3):234–240. https://doi.org/10.1136/jnnp.56.3.234.
148. Feltgen N, Neubauer A, Jurklies B, et al. Multicenter study of the European Assessment Group for Lysis in the Eye (EAGLE) for the treatment of central retinal artery occlusion: design issues and implications. EAGLE study report no. 1. *Graefe's Arch Clin Exp Ophthalmol.* 2006;244(8):950–956. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00417-005-0140-2.
149. Nitta Y, Kamekura N, Takuma S, Fujisawa T. Acute angle-closure glaucoma after general anesthesia for bone grafting. *Anesth Prog*. 2014;61(4):162–164. https://doi.org/10.2344/0003-3006-61.4.162.

70

Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic and Head-Neck Surgery

ANIL PATEL

KEY POINTS

- Difficult airways are more frequently encountered in patients undergoing ear, nose, and throat (ENT) surgery, especially for cancer. Reviewing the results of a preoperative computed tomography (CT) scan or an endoscopic airway examination may help identify pathologic features likely to produce airflow obstruction or complicate tracheal intubation.
- Although the tracheas of ENT patients are often intubated using ordinary polyvinyl chloride endotracheal tubes (ETTs), microlaryngeal, laser-safe, and wire-reinforced tubes are frequently employed.
- Endotracheal intubation in an awake patient with a flexible bronchoscope is commonly used when intubation following the induction of general anesthesia would be imprudent.
- Fiberoptic endotracheal intubation is usually well tolerated, is gentle on the airway, and does not require force to obtain glottic exposure.
- When the airway disorder is so extensive that awake endotracheal intubation is impractical, tracheostomy performed using local anesthesia (with or without judicious intravenous sedation) is usually the best option. In extreme loss-of-airway emergencies, a cricothyrotomy may be preferable to a tracheostomy because cricothyrotomy takes much less time to complete.
- In some head and neck cases, such as in patients undergoing parotid surgery, the need for electrical testing of the facial nerve precludes the extended use of neuromuscular blocking drugs.
- In many patients with head and neck disorders, gentle emergence from anesthesia, free of coughing and straining, is vitally important to prevent emergence rebleeding as a result of venous engorgement.
- Bleeding following tonsillectomy usually occurs within the first 6 postoperative hours, but it can also occur several days later.
- Facial trauma can produce unremitting bleeding and the aspiration of teeth, blood, bone, and tissue fragments, as well as cervical spine injury. Airway trauma can result from blunt or penetrating injuries, burns, inhalational injury, and iatrogenic causes. In both situations, initial management is dictated by the degree of respiratory distress or potential airway compromise, the available equipment, and clinical preferences.
- Intubating the trachea of a patient with laryngeal trauma may result in further injury to the airway or even complete airway loss. If intubation is attempted, it is advised to use a fiberoptic bronchoscope with a small ETT. Positive-pressure ventilation may worsen any subcutaneous emphysema. In some cases, a tracheostomy may be the most prudent course.
- Causes of stridor include inhaled foreign bodies, bilateral vocal cord palsy, airway edema, angioedema, epiglottitis, traumatic injury, subglottic stenosis, and other pathologic entities. Regardless, the first issue in the setting of stridor is whether or not endotracheal intubation or a surgical approach to the airway is immediately necessary to rescue the patient from death or injury. Heliox administered with a nonrebreathing facemask or high-flow nasal oxygen can be helpful as a temporizing measure.
- The chosen anesthetic technique for endoscopic procedures varies with patient and lesion particulars, clinical preferences, and the selected surgical tools (laser, rigid bronchoscope). Total intravenous anesthesia is a popular choice for many of these cases.
- Lasers can be used to vaporize otolaryngologic lesions; however, special precautions are needed to prevent accidental thermal injury or an airway fire, a potentially deadly complication that may also occur during tracheotomy surgery. Oxygen must be kept to a minimum when a significant potential for an airway fire exists. Moreover, nitrous oxide should not be used during airway surgery because it supports combustion just as does oxygen.

On October 16, 1846, Dr. William Morton famously used ether delivered by inhalation to provide general anesthesia to Gilbert Abbott and allow surgeon Dr. John Warren to remove a tumor from Abbott's neck.[1,2] From this first public demonstration of ether anesthesia onward, the relationship between anesthesiology and ear, nose, and throat (ENT) surgery has been vital. Indeed, no other branch of surgery has as great a need for a mutual understanding between the surgeon and the anesthesiologist, with joint procedural planning and close cooperation being crucial. For example, many ENT surgical procedures require that the anesthesia provider share the airway with the surgeon; consequently, a good anesthesia provider must be unusually knowledgeable about ENT procedures and the possible effects on the patient.

Anesthesia for ENT surgery encompasses a vast range of procedures varying enormously in complexity, duration, and potential for complications.[3] On any given day, ENT anesthesiologists may be assigned to simple high-volume cases, such as myringotomies and tonsillectomies, or to all-day procedures in patients with cancer. They may also encounter patients with severely distorted airway anatomy, sometimes even causing airway obstruction, as well as procedures involving tracheal, glottic, or subglottic surgery that require sharing of the airway in conjunction with the use of special equipment such as surgical lasers. Nasal procedures usually require airway protection from blood and secretions, as well as gentle emergence from anesthesia. Intraoral ENT procedures, such as tonsillectomies, may employ instruments intended to keep the mouth open but that may also unintentionally obstruct the airway. Extreme lateral rotation of the head may be required for some ear procedures. These are just some of the special perils of providing anesthesia for ENT procedures.

Synopsis of Ear, Nose, and Throat Anatomy

Figs. 70.1 to 70.4 illustrate various aspects of ENT anatomy. The oropharynx extends from the uvula to the hyoid bone. The hypopharynx extends from the hyoid to the cricoid cartilage. The glottis includes both vocal cords, the anterior commissure, and the posterior intraarytenoid area. The subglottis extends 5 mm (anteriorly) to 10 mm (posteriorly) below the apex of the vocal cords (also known as vocal folds). The larynx, essential to respiration and speech, has a clinically important glottic closure reflex mediated through bilateral superior laryngeal nerves. This reflex serves to protect the airway against aspiration. For example, swallowing activates this protective reflex. On occasion this protective reflex can be problematic because when sustained spasm of the glottic muscles (a condition known as laryngospasm) occurs,[4-6] gas exchange cannot take place. Laryngospasm is associated with light anesthesia and is frequently triggered by blood or secretions irritating the vocal cords, as often occurs after septoplasty and rhinoplasty surgery. Because it can make ventilation impossible, laryngospasm may constitute a true anesthetic emergency (see later).

Branches of the right and left vagus nerves innervate the larynx. The right vagus nerve gives rise to the right recurrent laryngeal nerve, whereas the left vagus nerve gives rise to the left recurrent laryngeal nerve. The two recurrent laryngeal nerves provide motor innervation to all the intrinsic muscles of the larynx, except the cricothyroid and inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscles, which are innervated by the branches of the superior laryngeal nerves. The internal laryngeal nerve is the internal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve (see Fig. 70.3). It descends to the thyrohyoid membrane, pierces it along with the superior laryngeal artery, and provides sensory innervation to the larynx down to the vocal cords. Sensory innervation below the vocal cords and to the upper trachea is supplied by the recurrent laryngeal nerves (see Fig. 70.3).

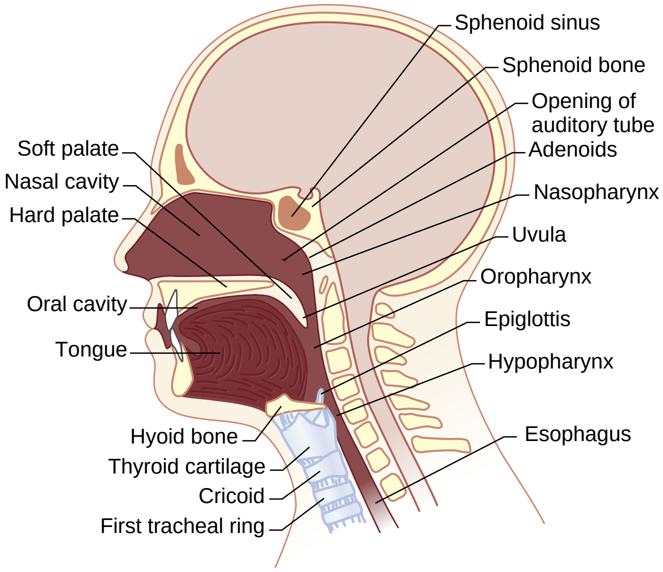


Fig. 70.1 Highlights of otolaryngologic anatomy. Note (1) the anterior position of the trachea relative to the esophagus; (2) the oropharynx, extending from the uvula to the hyoid bone; (3) the hypopharynx extending from the hyoid bone to the cricoid cartilage; (4) the cricoid ring, a structure that is pushed posteriorly during the Sellick maneuver component of rapid-sequence induction, done with the intention of occluding the esophagus to help prevent regurgitation of gastric contents; and (5) the location of the first tracheal ring, important as a surgical landmark because most tracheostomies are performed between the second and third tracheal rings. (From Feldman MA, Patel A. Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:2357–2388.)

Injury to the recurrent laryngeal nerves, which supply most of the laryngeal intrinsic muscles, is a feared but often preventable complication in thyroid surgery and a host of other procedures, including tracheal intubation.[7-12] If the damage is unilateral, the patient may present with hoarseness from unilateral loss of vocal cord abduction occurring in conjunction with intact cricothyroid-mediated adduction. This situation causes the affected vocal cord to assume a paramedian position. Bilateral nerve damage can result in dyspnea, stridor, and even full airway obstruction from bilateral vocal cord paramedian positioning. Such patients may require a tracheostomy. Intraoperative neuromonitoring is often used to reduce the chance of injury to the recurrent laryngeal nerves, especially in thyroid surgery.[13-15]

Preoperative Evaluation for Ear, Nose, and Throat Surgery

Although the preoperative evaluation of the surgical patient is discussed in detail in Chapter 31, a few issues are especially pertinent to ENT cases. Many ENT patients, especially

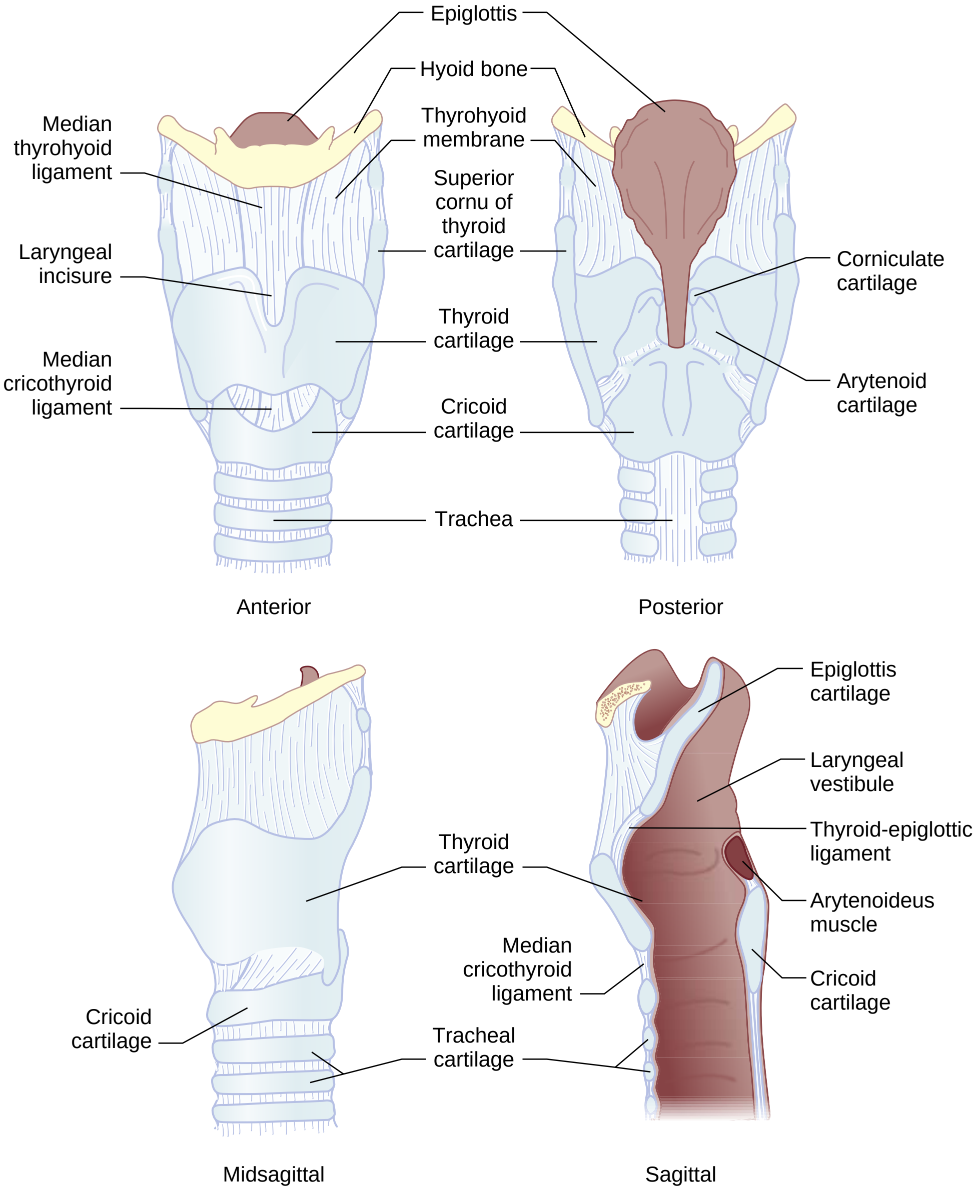

Epiglottis
Hyoid bone
Median thyrohyoid ligament
Thyrohyoid membrane
Superior cornu of thyroid cartilage
Laryngeal incisure
Corniculate cartilage
Thyroid cartilage
Median cricothyroid ligament
Arytenoid cartilage
Cricoid cartilage
Trachea
Anterior
Posterior
Epiglottis cartilage
Laryngeal vestibule
Thyroid-epiglottic ligament
Thyroid cartilage
Arytenoideus muscle
Median cricothyroid ligament
Cricoid cartilage
Cricoid cartilage
Tracheal cartilage
Midsagittal
Sagittal

Fig. 70.2 Anterior, posterior, midsagittal, and sagittal views of laryngeal anatomy. Note (1) how the cartilaginous tracheal rings are incomplete posteriorly to allow the trachea to collapse slightly to facilitate the passage of food down the esophagus (and to provide orientation during bronchoscopic procedures!); (2) the superior cornu of the thyroid cartilage, an important landmark in the superior laryngeal nerve block because this is close to where the internal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve penetrates the thyrohyoid membrane; and (3) the median cricothyroid ligament and (not labeled) the twin lateral cricothyroid ligaments, known collectively as the cricothyroid ligament and entered in both emergency cricothyrotomy procedures and with emergency transtracheal jet ventilation. (From Feldman MA, Patel A. Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:2357–2388.)

those with malignant head and neck diseases, have histories of prolonged tobacco and alcohol use, whereas many others suffer from obesity or obstructive sleep apnea (OSA). Patients with chronic airway obstruction may develop pulmonary hypertension, sometimes leading to right-sided heart failure (cor pulmonale). A history of hoarseness may signal recurrent laryngeal nerve injury or worse, whereas the presence of stridor is *always* a cause for immediate concern. In cases involving the airway, the anesthesiologist and surgeon frequently review available radiographic and video studies to establish an airway plan collaboratively. A history of head and neck radiation for malignancy treatment frequently makes intubation difficult because the structures may become tough and fibrotic ("like wood"), yet they are predisposed to bleeding with instrumentation. A history of snoring may signal that the patient has undiagnosed sleep apnea and is prone to airway obstruction.

ENT cases frequently involve geriatric patients, many of whom are at a high risk for postoperative delirium and cognitive dysfunction.[16-18] Although many ENT procedures involve infrequent risk, some of the large head and neck operation sare considered to have "intermediate" surgical risk. A preoperative resting 12-lead electrocardiogram (ECG) is recommended for patients with known coronary heart disease, peripheral arterial disease, or cerebrovascular disease who are undergoing such procedures. Additionally, patients with a history of heart failure, diabetes mellitus, or renal failure who are undergoing intermediate-risk operative procedures benefit from an ECG. Preoperative ECG testing is not indicated in asymptomatic persons undergoing infrequent-risk procedures.

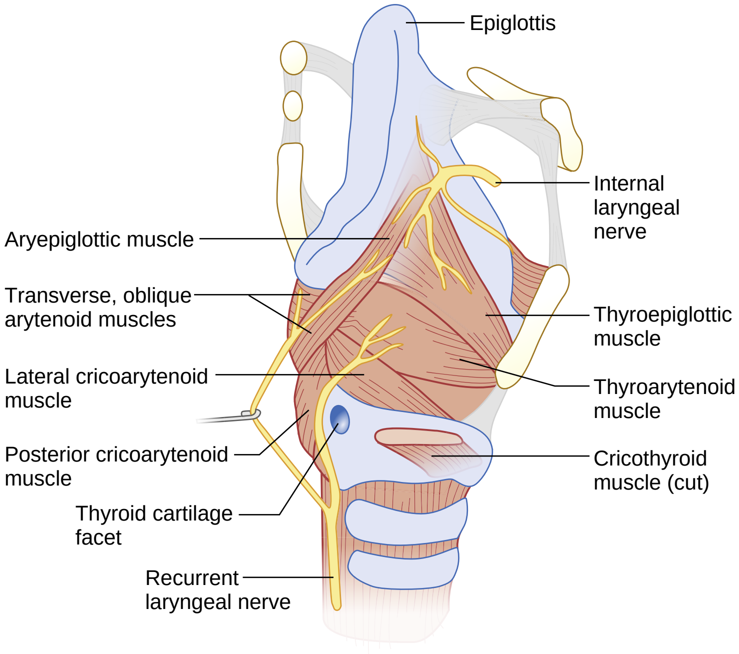

Epiglottis
Internal laryngeal nerve
Aryepiglottic muscle
Transverse, oblique arytenoid muscles
Thyroepiglottic muscle
Lateral cricoarytenoid muscle
Thyroarytenoid muscle
Posterior cricoarytenoid muscle
Cricothyroid muscle (cut)
Thyroid cartilage facet
Recurrent laryngeal nerve

Fig. 70.3 Laryngeal anatomy focusing primarily on the internal laryngeal nerve and the recurrent laryngeal nerve. The two recurrent laryngeal nerves provide motor innervation to all the intrinsic muscles of the larynx, except the cricothyroid and inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscles, which are innervated by the external branches of the two superior laryngeal nerves (external laryngeal nerve). Sensory innervation of the larynx down to the vocal cords is supplied by the internal laryngeal nerve branches of the superior laryngeal nerves (internal laryngeal nerve), these in turn being branches of the vagus. Sensory innervation below the vocal cords and to the upper trachea is supplied by the recurrent laryngeal nerves. (From Schuller DE, Schleuning AJ. *Otolaryngology: Head and Neck Surgery.* 8th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1994:252.)

A *preoperative endoscopic airway examination can be performed* in selected patients. This technique uses an ordinary flexible fiberscope usually used for awake endotracheal intubation to conduct a quick transnasal laryngoscopic examination using topical anesthesia. This examination allows the clinician to determine whether a problematic laryngeal disorder exists, such as supraglottic lesions that would not be apparent by ordinary means. The procedure requires minimal time and patient preparation, and it is well tolerated by patients. A review by Rosenblatt provides ample details.[19]

Airway Management in Otolaryngology

Both easy and difficult airways are frequently encountered in ENT anesthesia. The American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Difficult Airway Algorithm (or similar algorithm),[20-28] should ordinarily be a starting point for nearly all aspects of ENT airway management. To a large extent, the specific airway management techniques chosen depend on clinical circumstances, the airway management skills and preferences of the anesthesiologist and surgeon, and the available equipment.

The following general management options exist: (1) general endotracheal anesthesia; (2) general anesthesia using a supraglottic airway (SGA) device (e.g., laryngeal mask airway [LMA]); (3) general anesthesia using an ENT laryngoscope (to expose the airway) in conjunction with jet ventilation; (4) use of intermittent apnea; (5) general anesthesia using the patient's natural airway, with or without adjuncts such as jaw positioning devices or nasopharyngeal airways; and (6) local anesthesia in conjunction with intravenous sedation, with the patient breathing spontaneously. The first option is doubtless the most popular. However, the technique chosen and implemented depends on factors such as the perceived difficulty of intubating the trachea with ordinary methods. Evaluation of the airway in this particular respect is also discussed in Chapter 44.

The airway can become obstructed for many reasons. Examples include the following: aspirated foreign bodies; infections such as epiglottitis, diphtheria, or Ludwig angina; laryngospasm; tumors and hematomas impinging on the airway; trauma to the airway; OSA; tonsillar hypertrophy; and airway edema (e.g., from anaphylaxis, prolonged laryngoscopy, or smoke inhalation or burn injury). In most cases, airway management is determined after a discussion between the anesthesia and surgical teams.

Most patients undergoing ENT surgery have their airway managed by tracheal intubation. Although under ordinary circumstances tracheal intubation is straightforward, patients whose tracheas are expected to be difficult to intubate can be identified and usually managed with techniques such as videolaryngoscopy or fiberoptic intubation. A key decision in such cases is whether the tracheal intubation should be performed with the patient awake or following the induction of general anesthesia. Another important decision is what tools or interventions to employ in the event that difficulty with ventilation or intubation is encountered. In exceptional cases, a tracheostomy using local anesthesia must be performed.

Patients for ENT surgery are often managed using an ordinary polyvinyl chloride (PVC) endotracheal tube (ETT), but microlaryngeal tubes (MLTs), laser tubes, and wire-reinforced tubes are also frequently used. Reinforced tubes

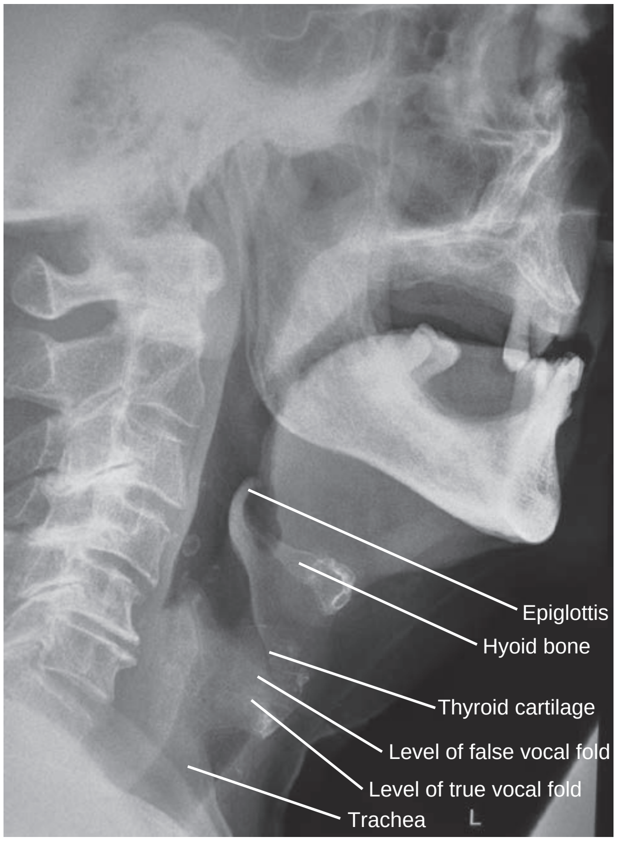


Fig. 70.4 Lateral radiograph demonstrating laryngeal anatomy. Notice (1) the normally wafer-thin epiglottis, which serves as a protective cover to the laryngeal inlet during swallowing and may become much larger and "thumb shaped" when edematous (e.g., as a result of pediatric epiglottitis); (2) the limited amount of prevertebral soft tissue in the oropharyngeal and hypopharyngeal regions; when edematous (e.g., as a result of a retropharyngeal abscess), this tissue may expand anteriorly to obstruct the airway; and (3) the hyoid bone, which aids in tongue movement and swallowing and which, if found fractured on autopsy, is suggestive of foul play by throttling or strangulation. (From Feldman MA, Patel A. Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:2357–2388.)

have the advantages that they are unlikely to kink and they fit especially well into tracheostomy stomas because of their excellent flexibility. Selection of laser-resistant ETTs should be made based on the material appropriate to the type of laser being used for the procedure. In addition, the tracheal cuff can be filled with saline dyed with methylene blue to allow immediate detection of laser injury to the cuff. Practical considerations in this setting start with the fact that the tube must be adequately secured using tape or other means; some maxillofacial surgeons suture the tube to the side of the mouth or even tie the tube to the teeth with wire. In addition, the ETT cuff pressures ordinarily must be kept less than 25 mm Hg to avoid ischemic damage to the tracheal mucosa. When nitrous oxide is used, cuff pressures gradually increase as nitrous oxide enters the cuff by diffusion. This is of particular concern in surgical procedures of long duration, such as free-flap surgery.

Before attempting tracheal intubation, its difficulty using direct laryngoscopy can often be predicted. The 11-point airway assessment tool included with the 2003 ASA Difficult Airway Algorithm is an excellent source of information and advice.[20] In addition, following the completion of tracheal intubation, the difficulty (if any) encountered should be summarized. The Intubation Difficulty Scale (IDS) introduced by Adnet and associates can be useful.[29-33] IDS is a numeric score indicating overall intubation difficulty based on seven descriptors associated with intubation difficulty: number of supplementary intubation attempts, number of supplementary operators, alternative techniques used, laryngoscopic grade, subjective lifting force, the use of external laryngeal manipulation, and the characteristics of the vocal cords.

Most endotracheal intubations are achieved using traditional Macintosh and Miller laryngoscopes, although several alternative laryngoscopes have been advocated. When the view at laryngoscopy is suboptimal, the use of introducers such as the Eschmann stylet (gum elastic bougie) can sometimes be very helpful.[34-39] It is used as follows: when a poor laryngoscopic view of the glottic structures is obtained, the introducer should be inserted into the patient's mouth and gently advanced through the glottic opening (in the case of a grade II view) or anteriorly under the epiglottis (in the case of a grade III view). Subtle clicks resulting from the introducer passing over the tracheal rings help confirm proper placement of the introducer. With the introducer held steady, one then "railroads" a tracheal tube over the introducer into the glottis.

Video laryngoscopes such as the GlideScope (Verathon, Bothell, WA), the McGrath (Covidien, Mansfield, MA) video laryngoscope, the Storz video laryngoscope (Karl Storz, Tuttlingen, Germany), and the Pentax AWS (Hoya Corporation, Tokyo) have become particularly valuable, especially in patients with an "anterior" larynx or in patients with cervical spine immobilization.[40-50]

As discussed in Chapter 44, awake endotracheal intubation involves ETT insertion in a conscious or lightly sedated patient. It is usually performed because endotracheal intubation during general anesthesia is judged to be too risky. Some concerns may reflect possible difficulties with ventilation or endotracheal intubation or possible aspiration of gastric contents. Although fiberoptic intubation using topical anesthesia is the most common approach to awake endotracheal intubation, other methods include awake blind nasal intubation using an Endotrol (or similar) ETT or the use of a Macintosh, Miller, GlideScope, or other laryngoscope with topical anesthesia. Certain airway blocks can be used in addition to topical anesthesia. These are discussed in Chapter 44.

The use of fiberoptic intubation for the airway management of patients undergoing otolaryngologic surgery is popular because this technique works well in the presence of many kinds of airway disease. Although fiberoptic intubation can often be safely performed during complete general anesthesia,[51] many clinicians opt to perform this technique using topical anesthesia with the patient only lightly sedated (awake fiberoptic intubation), depending on the skill level of the anesthesiologist, the cooperation of the patient, and the severity of the pathologic process. A central consideration behind the choice of "awake" versus "asleep" fiberoptic intubation is the safety margin an awake technique allows: if intubation is not successfully accomplished, the patient's ability to maintain his or her own airway remains intact. In addition, during awake intubation, airway reflexes are generally maintained sufficiently to guard against pulmonary aspiration, an important point in patients with a high risk of aspiration of gastric contents. Patients who have recently eaten and have undergone trauma are at especially high risk.

Awake endotracheal intubation is not synonymous with fiberoptic intubation. Awake intubation can be accomplished safely using many other airway devices. Other possible options for awake intubation include, but are not limited to, direct laryngoscopy with Macintosh and Miller laryngoscopes, blind nasal intubation, use of a GlideScope or other video laryngoscope, use of a lighted stylet, and so on.

Typically, in intubation of the trachea in an awake patient, the airway is initially anesthetized with gargled and atomized 4% lidocaine. Superior laryngeal and transtracheal blocks are occasionally also employed. In addition, judicious sedation is usually administered. Midazolam, fentanyl, remifentanil, ketamine, propofol, and clonidine have all been used in this setting. More recently, the use of dexmedetomidine, a selective α_2-agonist with sedative, analgesic, amnestic, and antisialagogue properties, has been reported. A key advantage of dexmedetomidine is that it maintains spontaneous respiration with minimal respiratory depression.[52-55] Patients being sedated with dexmedetomidine are generally easy to arouse. However, this advantage, along with that of maintaining spontaneous respiration, may not occur when very large doses are given.

Doyle described the successful use of the GlideScope in four cases of awake endotracheal intubation.[56] The potential advantages are as follows: first, the view is generally excellent. Second, the method is less affected by the presence of secretions or blood as compared with the use of fiberoptic intubation. Third, no special restrictions exist on the type of ETT that can be placed when using the GlideScope, but this is not the case for fiberoptic methods. Fourth, the GlideScope is much more rugged than a fiberoptic bronchoscope and is far less likely to be damaged with use. Advancing the ETT into the trachea over the fiberoptic bronchoscope often fails as a result of ETT impingement on the arytenoid cartilages; this is generally not a problem with the GlideScope.

In the end, however, the use of awake fiberoptic intubation in the setting of the patient with airway disease remains steadfastly popular because it is gentle to the airway, is generally well tolerated, and does not require the application of force to obtain glottic exposure.

Special mention needs to be made of the necessity of being fully prepared for dire ENT airway emergencies because these patients may require immediate surgical intervention. In addition to a conventional difficult airway cart, practitioners may wish to maintain a special ENT airway cart with equipment such as that listed in Box 70.1.[57] In addition to these items and unlisted items favored by individual practitioners, ENT surgeons want ready access to an emergency tracheotomy tray, as well as to some form of suspension laryngoscope or rigid bronchoscope. Special attention to the maintenance and cleaning of fiberoptic bronchoscopes is also important, given that they must always be easily accessible and reliable when needed. In the case of electronic fiberscopes incorporating a video display, it is particularly important to establish that illumination settings and white balancing have been correctly set before use.

BOX 70.1 **Possible Items for an Ear, Nose, and Throat Airway Emergencies Cart**

- Bag-valve-mask resuscitator (Ambu bag)
- Oropharyngeal and nasopharyngeal airways
- Supraglottic airway collection
- Endotracheal tubes, including microlaryngeal tubes and laser tubes
- Malleable stylets
- Topical anesthesia, with syringes, and atomizers
- Laryngoscope collection with extra bulbs and batteries
- Magill forceps (useful for nasal intubation)
- Boedeker forceps (for use with video laryngoscopes)*
- Airway introducer (gum elastic bougie)
- Tube exchange catheters
- Carbon dioxide detection system
- Video laryngoscope (e.g., GlideScope, McGrath, Pentax-AWS)
- Surgical airway kit (e.g., Melker cricothyrotomy kit)
- Emergency tracheotomy tray
- Fiberoptic bronchoscope

*The Boedeker (curved) intubation forceps is useful for removal of foreign bodies when a video laryngoscope is used.[57]

Airway Disorders in Otolaryngology

Otolaryngologic airway disorders can sometimes present the clinician with tremendous anesthetic and airway challenges. In many such cases, awake endotracheal intubation (e.g., by fiberoptic methods) is the method of choice. When awake intubation is impractical (e.g., overwhelming tumor invasion of the airway, inadequate equipment, limited experience), tracheostomy using local anesthesia (with minimal sedation, or no sedation in extreme cases) is sometimes preferred. In such cases, complete airway obstruction is the outcome most feared; this can occur when anesthetic drugs or neuromuscular blocking drugs decrease the tone of the airway musculature, thereby unfavorably changing the airway architecture.

Many ENT pathologic conditions can make airway management difficult. *Airway infections* can include upper airway abscesses, retropharyngeal abscesses, quinsy, Ludwig angina, and epiglottitis (supraglottitis). *Airway tumors* may be present as oral or tongue malignancies, as glottic, supraglottic, and infraglottic tumors, or as anterior mediastinal masses. *Other pathologic conditions* may also complicate airway management, such as congenital malformations (Pierre-Robin sequence, Goldenhar syndrome), periglottic edema (e.g., following rigid bronchoscopy), recurrent laryngeal nerve injury (e.g., following thyroid surgery), maxillofacial trauma, or OSA. Some of the more important of these conditions are discussed in the following paragraphs.

ANGIOEDEMA

Angioedema (former term: angioneurotic edema) is a rapid form of tissue swelling mediated by anomalous activation of the complement system with release of histamine and other inflammatory mediators.[58] It is usually the result of an allergic reaction. Hereditary angioedema is a variant family that arises from an autosomal dominant genetic mutation. Complete loss of the airway can occur in severe cases of either form. Just as with anaphylaxis, epinephrine may be lifesaving when the cause of angioedema is allergic, but treatment with epinephrine is not helpful in cases of hereditary angioedema.[59] Intubation of the trachea is often required in affected patients, usually during topical anesthesia with the patient awake or lightly sedated.

ACUTE EPIGLOTTITIS

Epiglottitis, an inflammatory disease of the epiglottis, arytenoids, and aryepiglottic folds, is among the most dreaded of airway-related infections, especially in the pediatric population.[60-64] In the past, victims were usually children 2 to 6 years of age, who were often infected with *Haemophilus influenzae*. Today, a vaccine against *H. influenzae* has reduced the frequency of this tragic affliction. The clinical presentation often includes a sore throat, dysphagia, muffled voice, and fever. Difficulty with swallowing leading to drooling from the mouth may occur. Victims may appear to be systemically ill ("toxic") and assume an open-mouth "tripod" position to ease breathing. Stridor, respiratory distress, and complete airway obstruction may occur. The chief differential diagnosis in children is laryngotracheobronchitis (croup).[65,66]

Examining the child's airway at the bedside may exacerbate the condition, and anything that could bring the child to cry (e.g., needles) should be avoided when possible. A common management approach involves careful inhaled induction of anesthesia using sevoflurane with the child sitting in the anesthesiologist's lap. Then oral intubation of the trachea can be performed using a smaller than usual tracheal tube. The child should receive "deep" anesthesia but should still be breathing spontaneously. Intravenous access and full monitoring should be established as anesthesia is deepened. If at laryngoscopy the airway cannot be identified, one trick is to have someone compress the child's chest, thus generating a small air bubble in the glottis that the person performing the anesthetic can aim for in the trachea. Failure to secure the airway in this manner may necessitate rescue through rigid bronchoscopy, by establishing a surgical airway, or by other means. In the past these children were often then managed by tracheostomy; however, contemporary management usually includes intensive care unit (ICU) admission, throat and blood cultures, conversion to nasotracheal intubation, and intravenous antibiotic therapy.

Epiglottitis can also occur in adults.[67] The first president of the United States, George Washington, is said to have died of it, although being repeatedly phlebotomized (as was the custom of the day) undoubtedly contributed to his demise. Here the situation is less ominous because the adult airway is larger. In cooperative adults, cautious oropharyngeal examination and fiberoptic nasopharyngoscopy help assess the degree of disease. The current consensus is that many adults can be adequately treated in an ICU with inhaled mist, antibiotics, and corticosteroids, and that tracheal intubation is necessary only if symptoms of respiratory distress develop. Should intubation be needed, awake fiberoptic laryngoscopy is probably the best way to secure the airway in cooperative adults, whereas the use of inhaled induction of anesthesia in adults with a compromised airway is now considered to be more perilous than was once thought.

RETROPHARYNGEAL ABSCESS

Retropharyngeal abscess formation may occur from bacterial infection of the retropharyngeal space following dental or tonsillar infections.[68-74] If the condition is untreated, the posterior pharyngeal wall may advance anteriorly into the oropharynx, with resulting dyspnea and airway obstruction. Other clinical findings may include difficulty in swallowing, trismus, and a fluctuant posterior pharyngeal mass. An abscess cavity may be evident on lateral neck radiographs, and anterior displacement of the esophagus and upper pharynx may be present. Airway management may be complicated by trismus or partial airway obstruction. Because abscess rupture can lead to tracheal soiling, contact with the posterior pharyngeal wall during laryngoscopy and intubation should be minimized. Incision and drainage are the mainstays of treatment. Tracheostomy is often, but not always, required.

LUDWIG ANGINA

Ludwig angina is a multispace infection of the floor of the mouth.[75-79] The infection usually starts with infected mandibular molars and spreads to submandibular, sublingual, submental, and buccal spaces. The tongue becomes elevated and displaced posteriorly, which may lead to loss of the airway, especially when the patient is in the supine position. As with retropharyngeal abscess, an additional concern is the potential for abscess rupture into the hypopharynx (with possible lung soiling) either spontaneously or with attempts at laryngoscopy and intubation. Airway management options depend on clinical severity, imaging findings (e.g., computed tomography [CT] or magnetic resonance imaging [MRI] findings), and surgical preferences, but elective tracheostomy before incision and drainage remains a classic, if dated, treatment modality.[79] Most experts advocate fiberoptic intubation when possible. In addition, because Ludwig angina is often associated with trismus, nasal fiberoptic intubation is frequently needed.

AIRWAY TUMORS, POLYPS, AND GRANULOMAS

Airway tumors can be benign or malignant (Figs. 70.5-70.7), but regardless of their pathologic characteristics, airway obstruction is always a potential concern.[80-83] Discussion with the surgical team concerning the size and location of the tumor, along with a review of any video-recorded nasopharyngeal video examinations, will help determine whether awake endotracheal intubation is needed. Polyps may also be found throughout the airway and can lead to partial or complete airway obstruction. Vocal cord polyps, cysts, and granulomas may result from traumatic intubation, vocal cord irritation from ETT movement, or other causes, especially in women.[84-90] Vocal cord cancer can also occur.[91] The potential also exists for exacerbation of asthma in patients with nasal polyps who receive aspirin, ketorolac (Toradol), and other nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) (the Samter triad).[92,93]

LARYNGEAL PAPILLOMATOSIS

Patients with laryngeal papillomatosis caused by human papillomavirus (HPV) infection may require frequent

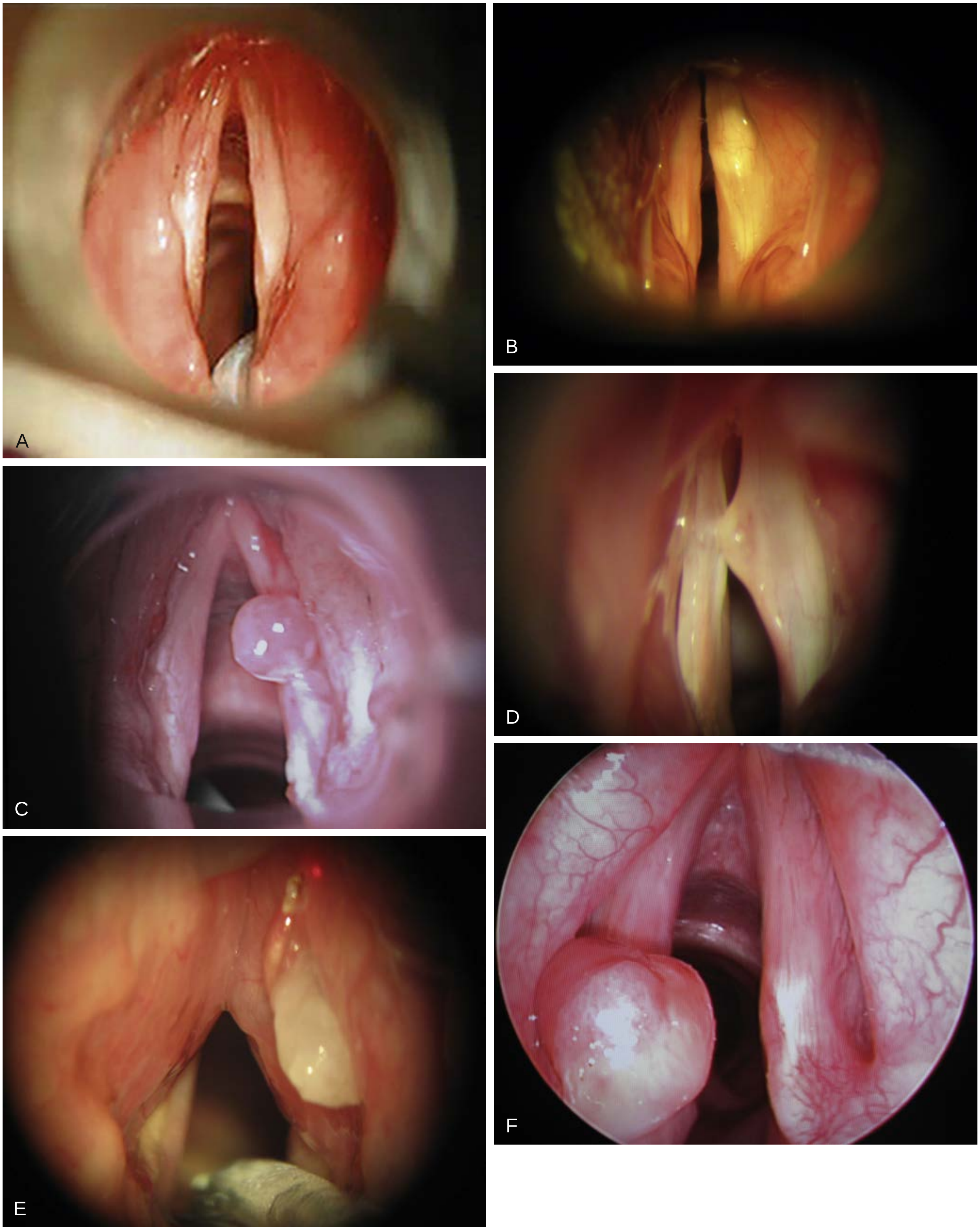


Fig. 70.5 Vocal cord lesions with little or no airway compromise. (A) Normal vocal cord. (B) Minor right vocal cord lesion. (C) Granuloma on the middle right vocal cord. (D) Kissing nodule on the right vocal cord. (E) Anterior webbing of the vocal cord. (F) Intubation granuloma. (From Feldman MA, Patel A. Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:2357–2388.)

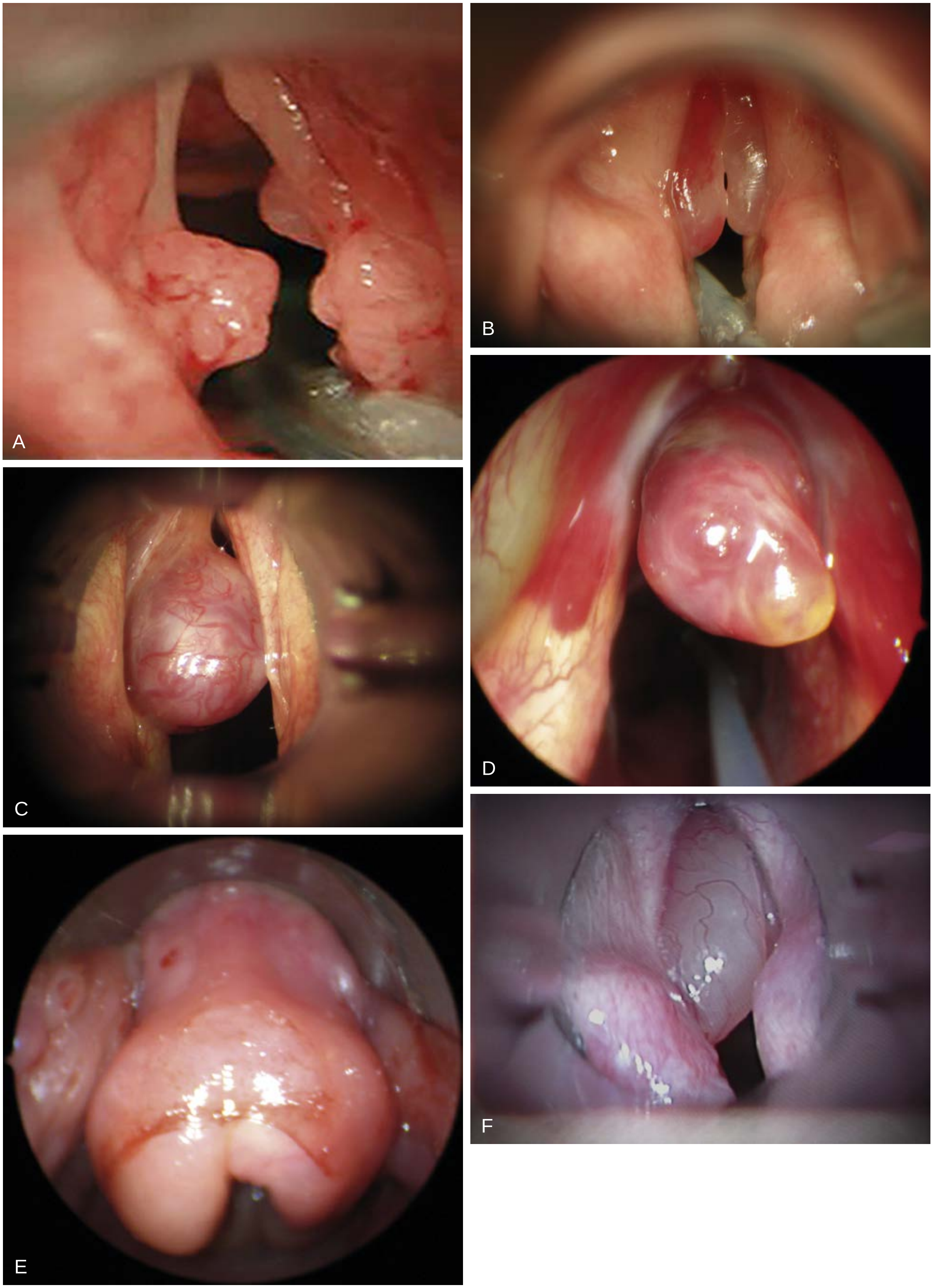


Fig. 70.6 Vocal cord lesions with significant airway compromise. (A) Papilloma of both vocal cords. (B) Bilateral Reinke edema. (C) Left vocal cord polyp. (D) Anterior glottic granuloma. (E) Epiglottic edema. (F) Vocal cord cyst. (From Feldman MA, Patel A. Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia.* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:2357–2388.)

application of laser treatment for attempted papilloma eradication.[94-99] In some cases the airway may be close to obstruction because of an overgrowth of lesions. During laser treatment, inspired oxygen concentration should be kept to a minimum, with the avoidance of nitrous oxide, to reduce the chance of an airway fire. After treatment, the airway is raw and edematous. Laryngotracheomalacia may occasionally be present, sometimes leading to complete upper airway collapse following extubation of the trachea.

Anesthesia for Panendoscopy

Panendoscopy, sometimes known as triple endoscopy, involves three diagnostic components: laryngoscopy, bronchoscopy, and esophagoscopy. Such procedures and others involving the larynx, pharynx, or trachea often require specialized ENT laryngoscopes, frequently in conjunction with a small-diameter ETT or a tube specifically designed for laser surgery. Panendoscopy is used in patients with head and neck cancer to search for vocal cord lesions, obtain tissue biopsies, monitor for tumor recurrence, and so on. In such cases, one should consider the following specific issues in discussion with the surgical team: what is the anticipated pathologic process, and how is it expected to affect intubation or ventilation? (In some cases the patient's disease may not allow the use of an ETT, so that jet ventilation or a rigid bronchoscope is needed.) What is the plan for airway management, and how does it affect the delivery of anesthesia? How does the presence of coexisting disease

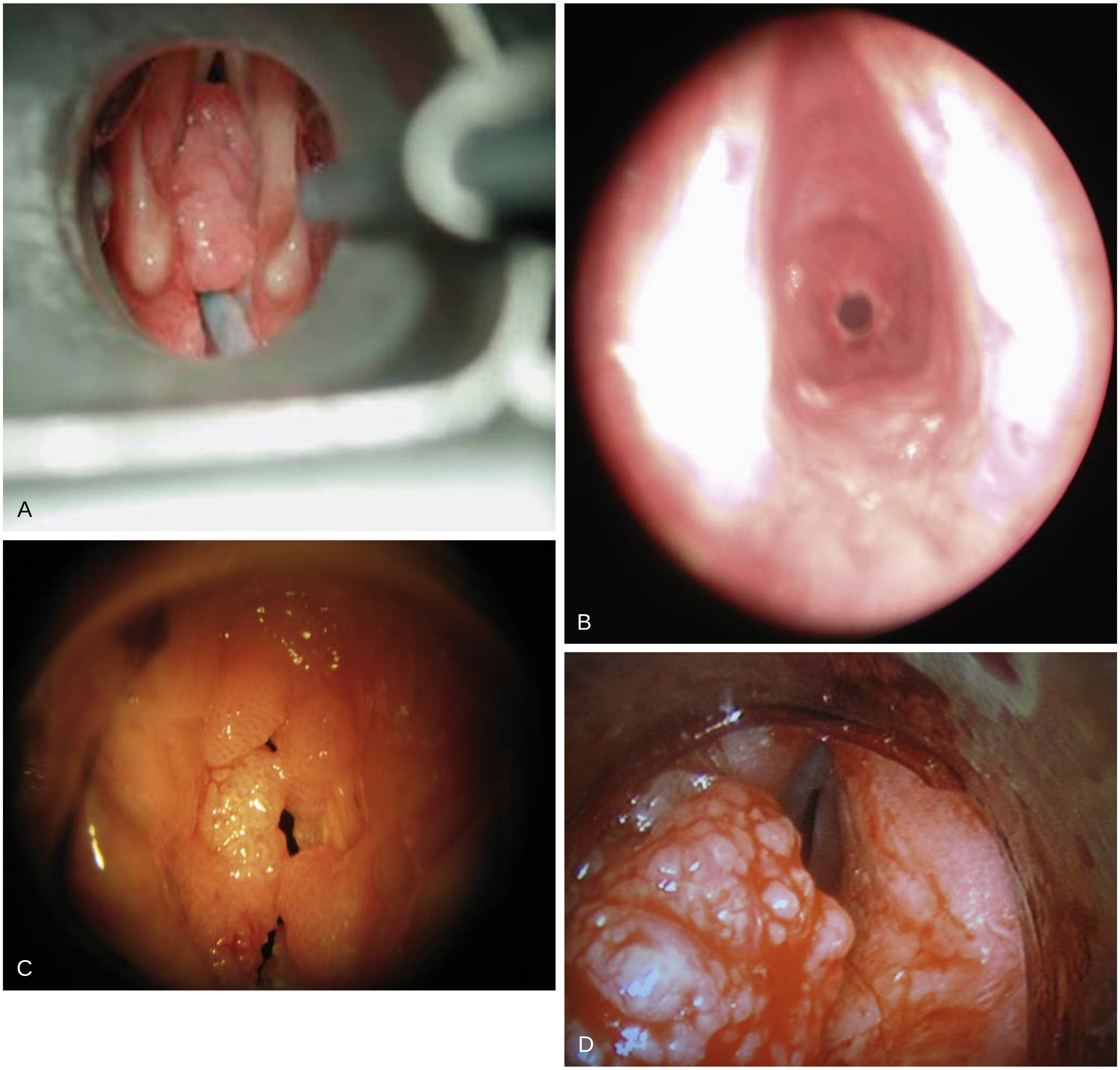


Fig. 70.7 Vocal cord lesions with severe airway compromise. (A) Papilloma of vocal cord. (B) Severe subglottic stenosis (2-mm airway). (C) Bilateral papilloma. (D) Extensive supraglottic carcinoma.

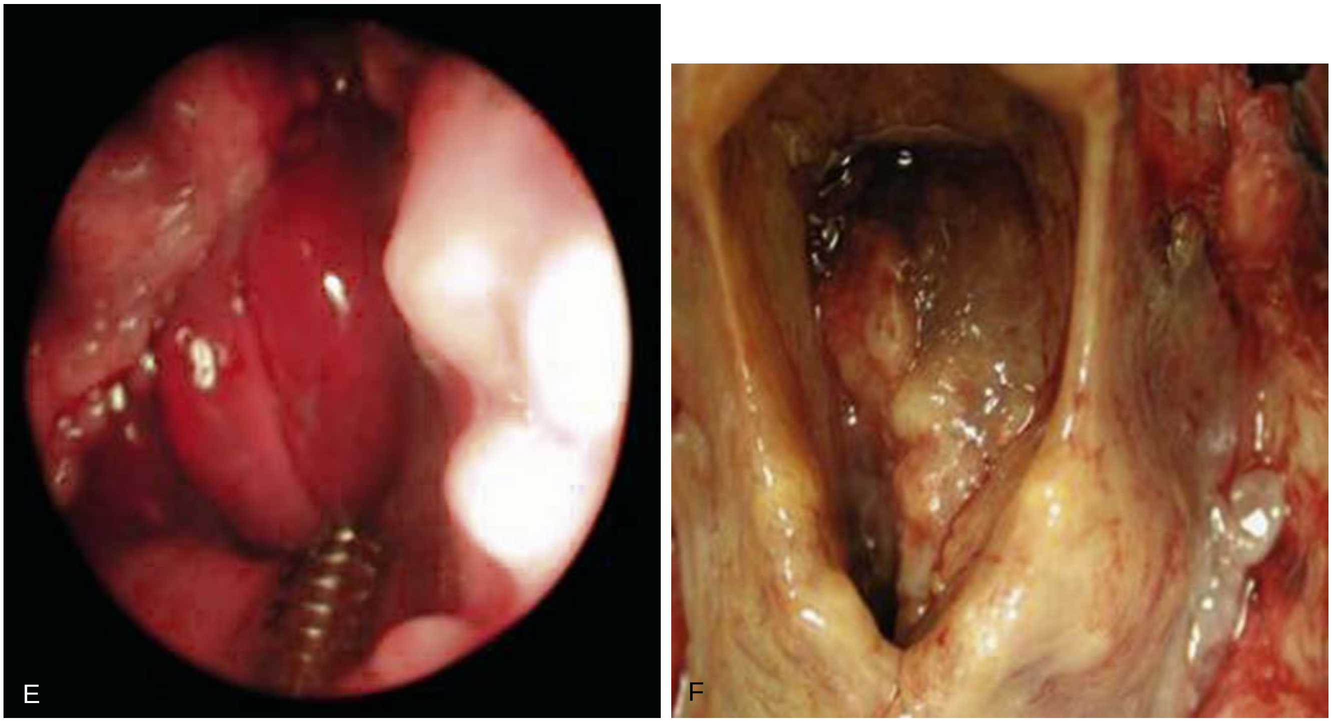


Fig. 70.7, cont'd (E) Acute epiglottitis. (F) Laryngeal carcinoma. (From Feldman MA, Patel A. Anesthesia for eye, ear, nose, and throat surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia.* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2010:2357–2388.)

(e.g., coronary artery disease, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, gastroesophageal reflux disease) affect management? What specialized equipment may be needed? (For example, when airway obstruction is present, the surgeon may employ dilatational balloons, lasers, or a microdébrider to open up the airway.)

Five airway options for panendoscopy exist: (1) use of an ETT, typically a narrow-bore MLT that provides the surgeon with a superior glottic view; (2) jet ventilation in conjunction with a rigid ENT laryngoscope, without the use of an ETT; (3) hybrid methods, such as the intermittent use of an SGA or an MLT tube in conjunction with a rigid laryngoscope, jet ventilation, or intermittent apnea; (4) tracheostomy using local anesthesia before inducing general anesthesia; and (5) elective placement of a specially designed transtracheal jet ventilation cannula (e.g., Ravussin jet ventilation catheter before induction[100]). The last two options are only occasionally used for patients with a suspected difficult airway; awake tracheal intubation is the most common approach in patients with a difficult airway. Moreover, when jet ventilation is used, total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA), for example with infusions of propofol and remifentanil, is needed. Finally, when panendoscopy is combined with laser surgery, a laser-safe ETT is often used.[101,102]

Panendoscopy is generally done while the patient is under general anesthesia with the patient's neck flexed and the head extended, usually employing a shoulder roll and a head ring (Jackson position). Typically, an anterior commissure laryngoscope is used and fixed into position by suspension (Fig. 70.8). This technique allows the surgeon's hands to be free and the operating microscope to be used. Other specialized ENT surgical laryngoscopes that are commonly used, often in conjunction with a microscope for laryngeal microsurgery, include the Dedo laryngoscope (Elmed, Addison, IL) and the Universal Modular Glottiscope (Endocraft, Providence, RI). Here, once the laryngoscope is correctly configured ("suspended"), the surgeon brings the operating microscope into the field and uses a variety of microlaryngeal instruments to treat the patient.

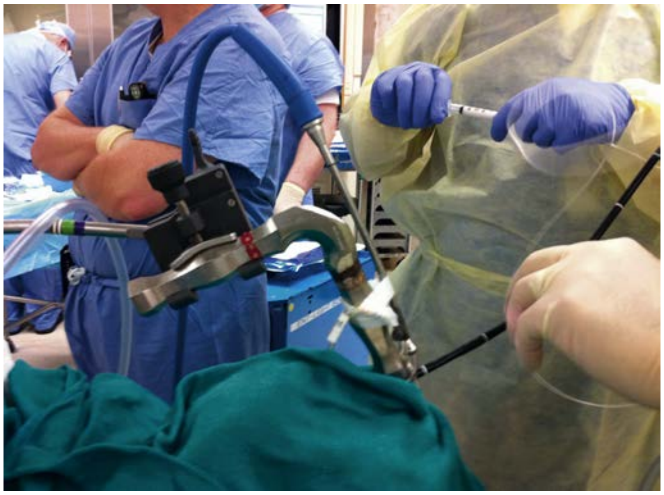


Fig. 70.8 Patient undergoing an ear, nose, and throat procedure using a suspended anterior commissure laryngoscope. A jet ventilation attachment is taped to the handle. A fiberoptic bronchoscope with a laser fiber is in use to deliver laser pulses to areas of pathologic tissue. (Image courtesy Dr. Basem Abdelmalak, Cleveland Clinic.)

A variety of anesthetic techniques can be used for panendoscopy procedures. The most common approach is to perform the procedure while the patient is under general anesthesia with muscle relaxation in conjunction with an MLT-type tracheal tube (Fig. 70.9). This technique is

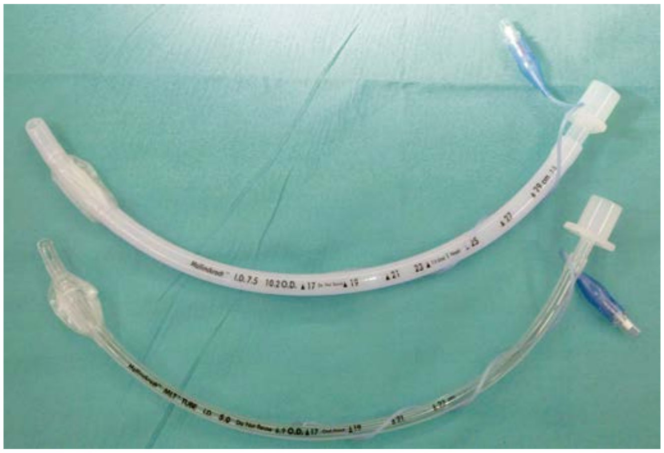


Fig. 70.9 Regular 7.5-mm inner diameter *(ID)* tracheal tube *(top)* in comparison with a 5.0-mm ID microlaryngeal *(MLT)*–type tracheal tube *(bottom)*. The MLT tube has a narrow lumen that provides the surgeon with improved glottic exposure at the cost of higher ventilation pressures.

familiar to anesthesiologists, provides both airway protection and control of ventilation, allows for reliable capnographic carbon dioxide (CO_2) measurements, and allows for the use of volatile anesthetics without operating room pollution. Disadvantages of the technique include higher than usual ventilation pressures as a consequence of the tube's narrow diameter, somewhat hindered surgical access, and concerns for tube ignition when a laser is in use.

Because a tracheal tube may impair access to some glottic structures, however, some cases are performed using intermittent apnea during general anesthesia and administration of neuromuscular blocking drugs. Disadvantages of this technique include the need for a TIVA technique, the need for repeated intubation-extubation cycles (potentially producing glottic trauma), fragmentation of the surgical work into brief apneic segments, and the repeated interruption of ventilation and oxygenation.

Next, panendoscopy is often performed using supraglottic jet ventilation.[103,104] This technique requires TIVA and entails some special issues because it involves the delivery of high-pressure oxygen pulses (typically 20-50 psi in adults, frequently delivered 1 second on/3 seconds off), usually through an adapter that attaches to the surgical laryngoscope. Additionally, subglottic methods (e.g., using a Hunsaker catheter[105,106]) and transtracheal methods of jet ventilation[107-110] have been described. Each pulse of oxygen entrains room air, thus increasing the gas volume delivered and diluting the oxygen concentration (Venturi effect). Disadvantages of jet ventilation include the need for TIVA, the potential for barotrauma (remember that a pressure of 50 psi is equivalent to 3515 cm H_2O), an inability to measure either end-tidal CO_2 ($ETCO_2$) or tidal volume easily, and the fact that the technique is often suboptimal in obese individuals. Finally, a variant of jet ventilation known as high-frequency jet ventilation is sometimes used in these cases,[111,112] often in conjunction with a special ventilator, an intratracheal catheter, and transcutaneous CO_2 monitoring.

Otolaryngologic Trauma

Although the topic of anesthesia care for the trauma patient is the subject of Chapter 66,[113] a few special points pertaining to patients who have undergone head and neck trauma should be emphasized. First, patients with head and neck trauma may have a concurrent brain injury or injury to the cervical spine. Until cleared of a possible cervical spine injury, patients should be placed in a rigid cervical collar. In addition, although placing the patient's head in the customary "sniffing" position can facilitate laryngoscopy, this technique is contraindicated in patients with a suspected cervical spine injury for fear of exacerbating any injury. Additionally, jaw thrust and chin lift maneuvers can be more difficult when a cervical collar is used or when comminuted mandibular fractures are present.

Second, facial injuries can produce extensive bleeding, as well as the aspiration of blood, bone, cartilage, teeth, and tissue fragments. Third, the airway may be compromised, especially when bilateral mandibular fractures are present. Airway trauma from blunt or penetrating injuries, burns, inhalational injury, or even iatrogenic causes may be present. Immediate airway management options include orotracheal intubation (awake versus rapid-sequence induction), a surgical airway carried out using local anesthesia, or even intubation through an open airway in cases of tracheal transection. Oropharyngeal airways may not be tolerated in patients with an intact gag reflex, and inserting a nasopharyngeal airway may exacerbate bleeding.

Although fiberoptic intubation would seem to offer many advantages in trauma cases, clinical experience suggests otherwise, at least in some cases, because navigating through a distorted airway filled with blood and foamy secretions challenges even the most experienced bronchoscopists. Special concerns exist when the trachea is intubated in a patient with laryngeal trauma because this may result in further injury or even complete airway loss (e.g., in the event of inadvertent ETT placement through a laryngeal fracture into the mediastinum). Clinical findings suggestive of laryngeal trauma include abrasions, discoloration, indentation, bleeding, or pain in the region of the larynx, as well as dyspnea, dysphagia, dysphonia, stridor, hemoptysis, subcutaneous emphysema, and hoarseness. Signs of pneumothorax may also be present, whereas fiberoptic endoscopic examination may reveal edema, the presence of bleeding or hematoma, or abnormal vocal cord function. If endotracheal intubation is attempted in this setting, a fiberoptic bronchoscope with a small-diameter ETT can be used carefully, bearing in mind the foregoing concerns about fiberoptic intubation in the trauma setting. Additionally, positive-pressure ventilation by mask or SGA in this setting may worsen any subcutaneous emphysema. A tracheostomy may be the most prudent course in some cases. Finally, the application of cricoid pressure in blunt laryngeal trauma may result in cricotracheal separation and so is contraindicated. In any event, in both facial trauma and airway trauma, initial management is dictated by the degree of respiratory distress or potential airway compromise, the available equipment, and clinical preferences.

Midfacial fractures deserve special mention. These fractures are defined by the Le Fort classification. A Le Fort I

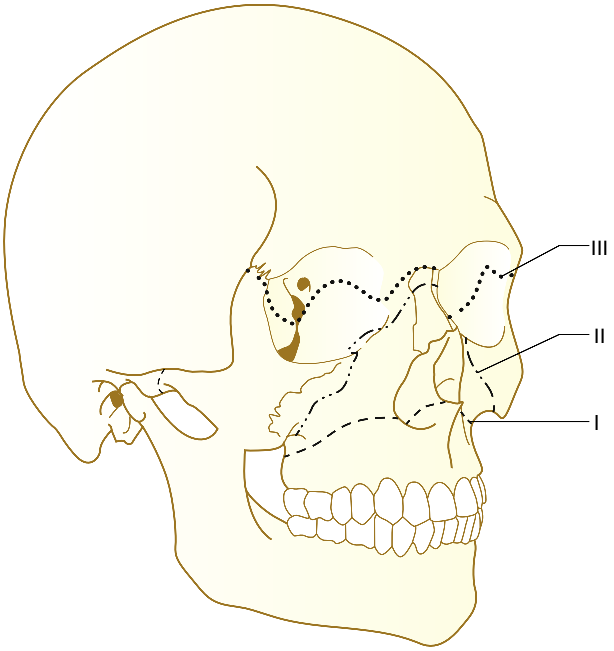


Fig. 70.10 Classification of midfacial fractures. Le Fort I: alveolar fracture. Le Fort II: zygomatic-maxillary complex fracture. Le Fort III: cranial facial dysostosis with separation of the midface from the skull. (From Schuller DE, Schleuning AJ. *Otolaryngology: Head and Neck Surgery.* 8th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1994:157.)

fracture is a horizontal fracture that involves the inferior nasal aperture, separating the maxillary alveolus from the rest of the midfacial skeleton. Le Fort II fractures are pyramidal nasomaxillary fractures that break from the upper craniofacial skeleton. Le Fort III fractures, less commonly encountered than the others, involve the separation of the facial skeleton from the skull base. These fractures are illustrated in Figure 70.10.

Nasal Surgery

Nasal surgery can involve external procedures, procedures within the nasal cavity, surgery involving the nasal bones, and nasal sinus surgery. Besides the usual concerns, preoperative assessment should focus on the suitability of topical nasal vasoconstrictor use, the possibility of undiagnosed OSA, and the potential presence of the Samter triad (nasal polyps, asthma, and a sensitivity to aspirin and NSAIDs that may produce deadly bronchospasm). Because postoperative bleeding is a common complication after nasal surgery, patients should not be taking NSAIDs and aspirin for 1 to 2 weeks preoperatively.

Preoperative planning begins by deciding whether the procedure is best performed with local (usually accompanied by intravenous sedation) or general anesthesia. Although local anesthesia may be suitable for simple procedures such as cauterization or straightforward polypectomy or turbinectomy surgery in adults, often general anesthesia is required. When general anesthesia is chosen, a choice must then be made among a simple facemask (as may be appropriate for pediatric myringotomy surgery), an SGA device (e.g., flexible LMA), and a tracheal tube (e.g., an unkinkable wire-reinforced design). This decision should be made jointly with the surgeon. Although the use of an SGA during ENT surgery has its enthusiasts, negative experiences, such as airway obstruction related to device malpositioning, have led many clinicians to prefer a tracheal tube in such cases.

Patients undergoing rhinoplasty are typically young, healthy individuals requiring reconstruction of the external nose for deformity treatment.[114,115] Septoplasty (correction of a deviated septum)[116-118] and surgery to remove nasal polyps[119,120] are often performed to improve nasal airflow and ventilation of the sinuses. Some malignant lesions require excision of the entire nose with follow-up staged reconstruction using a forehead flap. Open nasal fracture reduction procedures are usually performed after the initial swelling has resolved; if the injury is corrected too late, the bones can be difficult to align and can lead to significant surgical bleeding. General endotracheal anesthesia is usually carried out in such cases, often using a midline reinforced ETT taped to the chin. In closed nasal fracture reduction, the surgeon applies forceful pressure to realign the nasal bones, a procedure that usually takes only a few seconds but nevertheless is so intensely painful that the procedure is usually preceded by a single induction dose of propofol, followed by airway support as needed as a nasal cast is applied. However, when the reduction is expected to be bloody or otherwise complicated, the airway is usually protected with an ETT or an SGA device. In many of these procedures, nasal packs, stents, and/or casts are placed; nasal stents offer an advantage over packs in that one can breathe through them.

In many ENT cases, a "throat pack" made of a long piece of saline-soaked gauze is stuffed around the ETT to prevent blood and surgical debris from entering the pharynx and larynx. Typically, a few inches of gauze are kept outside the mouth as a reminder of its presence, because an inadvertently retained pack can lead to catastrophic airway obstruction after extubation.[121] In addition to suctioning, many clinicians follow throat pack removal with pre-extubation laryngoscopy and a neck flexion-extension maneuver to encourage any residual clot (the so-called "coroner's clot") to fall past the soft palate into a position where it can be removed under direct vision.

Gentle awakening in nasal surgery is important because coughing and bucking on emergence frequently produce undesirable bleeding. Techniques that are often helpful include the use of a remifentanil infusion and the application of lidocaine down the ETT with the cuff temporarily deflated while the patient is still under deep anesthesia. Oral and gastric suction before emergence will decrease the incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV). When nasal packing is used, patients should be advised before induction of anesthesia that, on emergence, they should breathe through the mouth. On awakening, applying pressure on the nose with a facemask should not be done for fear of ruining the surgeon's handiwork. In addition, all postoperative patients with nasal packs will have obstructed nasal passages unless nasopharyngeal airways are incorporated into the nasal pack, and patients with OSA are in particular need of careful postoperative respiratory monitoring. Finally, postoperative pain in these procedures usually does not require opiates, and the use of oral acetaminophen and an NSAID usually suffices.

In many of these procedures, a topical vasoconstrictor such as phenylephrine, oxymetazoline, or cocaine is used. Although these topical agents are important drugs that reduce bleeding and improve visualization during nasal and endoscopic procedures, they sometimes produce cardiovascular toxicity.[122] The cardiovascular effects of cocaine, usually administered as a 4% (40 mg/mL) topical solution, result from the drug's blocking the reuptake of norepinephrine at sympathetic nerve terminals. Consequently, cocaine would not be a first-choice vasoconstrictor in patients with coronary artery disease or hypertension, or in patients taking monoamine oxidase inhibitors.[123] When cocaine use is appropriate, the dose should not ordinarily exceed 1.5 mg/kg.

Phenylephrine is an α-adrenergic agonist topical vasoconstrictor either used alone or in combination with lidocaine. The initial dose should not exceed 500 μg (<20 μg/kg in children ≤25 kg). Because severe hypertension sometimes results following phenylephrine use, blood pressure monitoring is particularly important. Instances of unacceptable hypertension should be treated with direct vasodilators or α-receptor antagonists; the use of β-adrenergic and calcium channel blockers should be avoided because they may worsen cardiac output and produce pulmonary edema.[124]

Oxymetazoline, a selective α_1-agonist and partial α_2-agonist imidazoline-derivative, is perhaps the most popular topical vasoconstrictor in ENT surgery, primarily because of its excellent safety profile and availability as an over-the-counter product.[125-127] Three sprays of 0.05% solution are administered in each nostril. This drug should be avoided in patients taking monoamine oxidase inhibitors. However, despite its relative safety, complications have been reported.[128,129]

Tonsillectomy and Adenoidectomy

The adenoids are a mass of lymphoid tissue located posterior to the nasal cavity, in the roof of the nasopharynx. If this tissue becomes hyperplasic, nasopharyngeal obstruction and a number of related problems can occur such that the adenoids merit surgical removal (adenoidectomy). When removed, the tonsils are usually taken as well. Other indications for tonsillectomy include tonsillar hyperplasia, recurrent tonsillitis, and malignant disease.[130] An especially important consideration here is that chronic oropharyngeal airway obstruction as a consequence of tonsillar hypertrophy can lead to OSA and its attendant complications (daytime sombulence, cor pulmonale, pulmonary hypertension, right ventricular hypertrophy, cardiomegaly). In addition to the usual, preoperative assessment focuses on findings suggestive of OSA, possible cardiac comorbidities, and a history of recurrent upper respiratory tract infections. The presence of a fever or a productive cough may be grounds for postponement of the surgery or for postoperative care in setting of increased vigilance (e.g., ICU or step-down facility), especially in infants.

Induction of anesthesia in adults usually entails administering intravenous drugs, whereas inhaled inductions are popular with children, followed by placement of an intravenous catheter and administration of glycopyrrolate. Oral RAE (named after the inventors Ring, Adair, and Elwyn) tracheal tubes or wire-reinforced tubes, taped in the midline to the mandible, are often preferred by surgeons and are less likely to kink following retractor placement. When a tonsillar or parapharyngeal abscess is present, the patient may have a compromised airway complicated by trismus and pharyngeal edema. Although awake abscess decompression by needle aspiration before the induction of anesthesia is sometimes done, awake fiberoptic intubation is the usual approach in this setting.

At the end of the surgical procedure, the throat pack, if previously placed, should be removed, the oropharynx should then be suctioned, and an orogastric tube should be used to empty the stomach. Extubation is sometimes performed using deep anesthesia but more commonly is carried out when the patient has intact airway reflexes. Coughing on the tracheal tube on emergence may be attenuated by the administration of lidocaine, either given intravenously or placed down the tracheal tube with the cuff temporarily deflated. Emergence on a light remifentanil infusion can also be beneficial.

Posttonsillectomy hemorrhage is a dreaded surgical emergency, especially in children.[131-133] It usually occurs within the first six postoperative hours, but it can also occur several days later. When possible, the patient should receive appropriate intravenous fluids preoperatively (including blood products when necessary). The presence of hypovolemia may dictate a reduction in induction drug dosage or the use of etomidate. Because the stomach may contain a considerable amount of blood, a *rapid-sequence induction* with cricoid pressure is usually performed with a view to protect the airway from aspiration of gastric contents. Vigorous suctioning is also needed to remove the copious oropharyngeal blood likely to be found during laryngoscopy.

Endoscopic Sinus Surgery

Endoscopic sinus surgery has become a common ENT procedure. Indications are varied and include conditions such as nasal polyposis, recurrent or chronic sinusitis, epistaxis control, tumor excision, orbital decompression (e.g., for Graves ophthalmopathy), foreign body removal, treatment of sinus mucoceles, and more.[134-136]

Proper anesthetic management helps ensure a good outcome. Considerations in such cases include local versus general anesthesia, SGA device versus ETT, and inhaled anesthesia versus TIVA, and preferences of the surgeon and anesthesiologist as well as patient comorbidities are taken into account. The most important goals are a blood-free surgical field, patient immobility, stable cardiorespiratory conditions, and gentle emergence from anesthesia. Controlled hypotension is sometimes used to improve surgical conditions; when this approach is used, intraoperative β-adrenergic blockade is associated with better operating conditions than when vasodilation drugs are administered.

Despite minimal arterial blood pressure differences, propofol-remifentanil intravenous anesthesia may provide better surgical conditions as compared with a traditional balanced technique (e.g., using an isoflurane-opiate technique), possibly because of lower heart rates and cardiac output.[137] Use of an SGA device is preferred to an ETT because of better surgical conditions and smoother emergence. However, SGA devices are prone to malpositioning and provide less protection from gastric regurgitation as compared with an ETT.[138]

The procedure typically begins with decongestion of the nose and infiltration of 1% lidocaine with 1:100,000 epinephrine, often followed by the bilateral nasal placement of pledgets soaked in 4% cocaine. In most cases, an image-guided surgical system is used; this allows the surgeon to know exactly where he or she is operating by using a preoperative CT scan. This technology allows the surgeon to visualize four different views simultaneously: the coronal, sagittal, and axial CT scan images at the same time as the real-time endoscopic view. This system requires a special headset that may preclude the use of electroencephalographic (bispectral index) monitoring.

Given the close proximity of major blood vessels and nerves, the orbit, and the brain, complications are possible, especially when the surgical landmarks are obscured by blood. Some major complications include orbital hematoma formation, blindness from orbital trauma or damage to the optic nerve, formation of cerebrospinal fluid leak, carotid or ethmoid artery invasion, entry into the cranial cavity, severe hemorrhage, and death.

Finally, not all sinus surgery is endoscopic. For example, although now largely replaced by endoscopic methods, the once common Caldwell-Luc procedure involves fenestration of the anterior wall of the maxillary sinus with surgical drainage of this sinus into the nose through an antrostomy.

Thyroid and Parathyroid Surgery

The usual indications for thyroid surgery include thyroid cancer, symptomatic thyroid goiter, and failed medical management of hyperthyroidism; the surgical procedure is almost always elective.[139] The most common indication for parathyroid surgery is hypercalcemia from hyperparathyroidism secondary to a benign parathyroid adenoma. When the hypercalcemia is severe, preoperative treatment (e.g., fluids, furosemide, bisphosphonates) may be needed.

Hyperthyroid patients should be treated preoperatively to reduce the risk of thyroid storm (thyrotoxicosis). Thyrotoxic patients may experience sinus tachycardia, atrial fibrillation, myocardial ischemia, congestive heart failure, nervousness, tremulousness, insomnia, heat intolerance, weight loss, and other findings.[140,141]

Large goiters may result in deviation of the larynx, tracheal compression leading to considerable airway narrowing, Horner syndrome, or superior vena cava obstruction, especially with retrosternal extension.[142,143] Preoperative airway evaluation by endoscopic examination and by CT is often useful to determine the extent of the disease and the possibility that sternotomy will be needed.

General anesthesia with tracheal intubation and muscle relaxation is usually employed, although many surgeons routinely use a nerve integrity monitor (NIM) ETT for neuromonitoring,[144-146] in which case neuromuscular blocking drugs must be avoided in the postintubation period. Gentle emergence from anesthesia is necessary to avoid coughing on the ETT and the possibility of hematoma formation from venous engorgement. The use of a small-dose remifentanil infusion (0.01-0.05 μg/kg/min) in the extubation period is a popular means to diminish coughing on the ETT. Although deep extubation also reduces the incidence of bucking and straining, many clinicians avoid this technique wherever possible because of airway obstruction.

Possible complications of thyroid and parathyroid surgery include hematoma formation (possibly resulting in airway impairment), vocal cord dysfunction from recurrent laryngeal nerve injury, pneumothorax, and other conditions. In patients with compressive goiters, postthyroidectomy tracheomalacia may occur following goiter excision. In postoperative patients who have undergone parathyroid and total thyroidectomy, serial calcium levels are taken to detect inadvertent hypocalcemia.

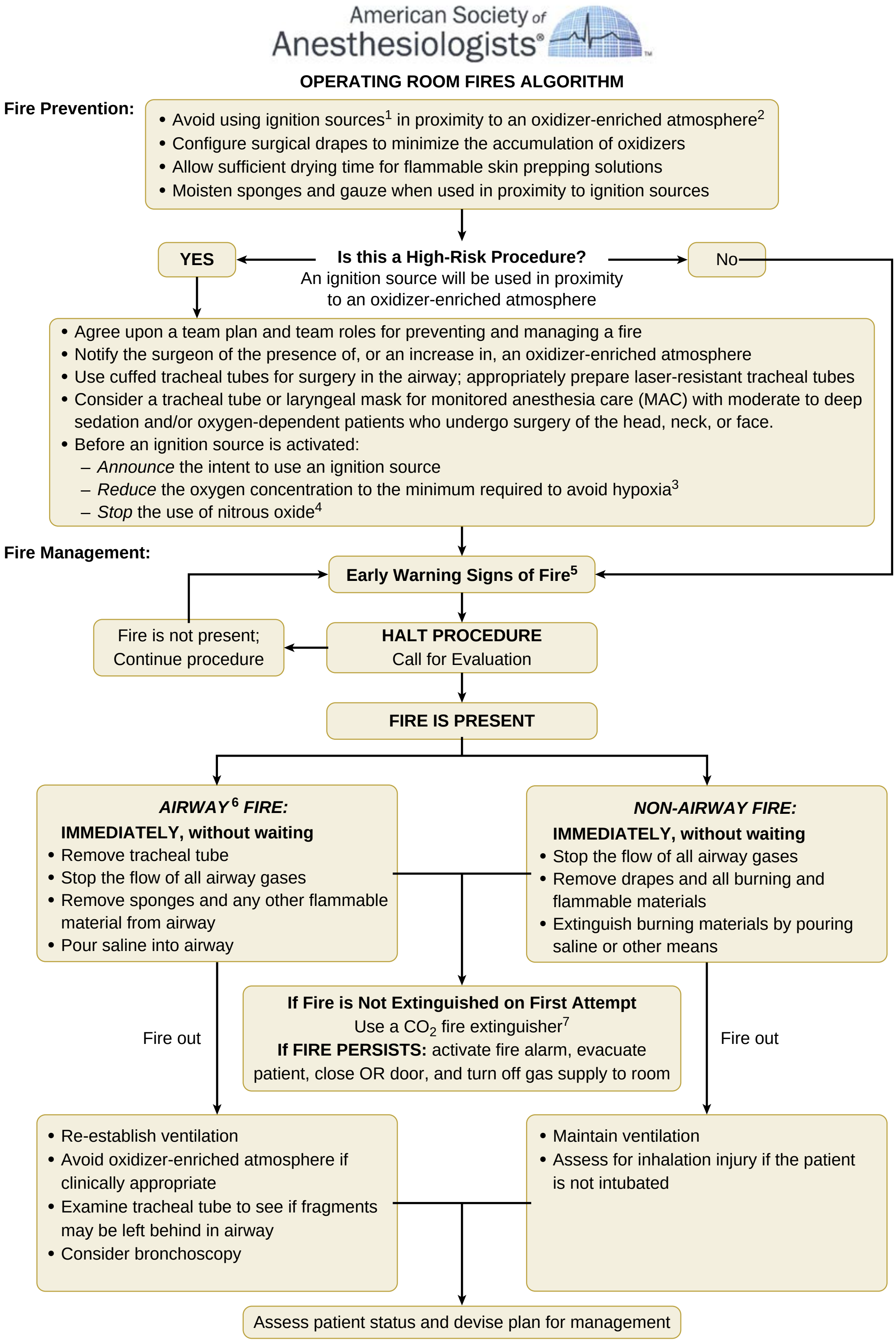
Airway Fires

An airway fire is a potentially deadly complication that may occur during tracheotomy surgery, during laser surgery to the airway, and elsewhere. For a fire to occur, the triad of fuel (e.g., ETT, drapes, sponges), oxygen, and an ignition source (e.g., laser or electrocautery) is needed. The ASA published an Operating Room Fires Algorithm (Fig. 70.11),[147] to which the reader is referred. An additional helpful resource is a checklist developed by Dr. B. Abdelmalak (Box 70.2). Prevailing conventional wisdom, at least until recently, holds that cases of airway fire call for immediate removal of the ETT. Although this is a reasonable rule of thumb, it should also be noted that in some patients removal of the ETT would result in irreversible loss of the airway. Clinicians in such a setting face a particularly difficult choice: leave the ETT in place and risk fire-related injury to the patient, or remove the ETT and risk deadly loss of the airway.

Ear Surgery

Ear operations range from simple, brief procedures such as myringotomy and tube placement to much more involved procedures such as skull-based surgery. These procedures are best divided into external ear procedures (e.g., removal of exostoses or foreign bodies), middle ear procedures (e.g., myringotomy, tympanoplasty, stapedectomy), mastoid operations (e.g., mastoidectomy), and inner ear procedures (e.g., cochlear implant placement). In such procedures, and especially with inner ear procedures, patients are particularly prone to PONV.

Although many simple procedures can be performed in well-selected individuals by using local anesthesia and intravenous sedation, more complex procedures, especially those requiring an operating microscope (for which immobility is essential), are usually best accomplished using general anesthesia with the presence of a secure airway. Regardless, in all such cases the anesthesiologist must consider issues such as the appropriate form of airway management, whether nitrous oxide is contraindicated, the possibility that postintubation muscle relaxants should be avoided to permit facial nerve monitoring, and the possible need for antiemetic prophylaxis. Most patients require a tracheal tube; the unkinkable,



American Society of Anesthesiologists®

OPERATING ROOM FIRES ALGORITHM

Fire Prevention:

- Avoid using ignition sources[1] in proximity to an oxidizer-enriched atmosphere[2]
- Configure surgical drapes to minimize the accumulation of oxidizers
- Allow sufficient drying time for flammable skin prepping solutions
- Moisten sponges and gauze when used in proximity to ignition sources

Is this a High-Risk Procedure?
An ignition source will be used in proximity to an oxidizer-enriched atmosphere

- Agree upon a team plan and team roles for preventing and managing a fire
- Notify the surgeon of the presence of, or an increase in, an oxidizer-enriched atmosphere
- Use cuffed tracheal tubes for surgery in the airway; appropriately prepare laser-resistant tracheal tubes
- Consider a tracheal tube or laryngeal mask for monitored anesthesia care (MAC) with moderate to deep sedation and/or oxygen-dependent patients who undergo surgery of the head, neck, or face.
- Before an ignition source is activated:
  - *Announce* the intent to use an ignition source
  - *Reduce* the oxygen concentration to the minimum required to avoid hypoxia[3]
  - *Stop* the use of nitrous oxide[4]

Fire Management:

Early Warning Signs of Fire[5]

HALT PROCEDURE
Call for Evaluation

Fire is not present;
Continue procedure

FIRE IS PRESENT

AIRWAY[6] FIRE:
IMMEDIATELY, without waiting
- Remove tracheal tube
- Stop the flow of all airway gases
- Remove sponges and any other flammable material from airway
- Pour saline into airway

NON-AIRWAY FIRE:
IMMEDIATELY, without waiting
- Stop the flow of all airway gases
- Remove drapes and all burning and flammable materials
- Extinguish burning materials by pouring saline or other means

If Fire is Not Extinguished on First Attempt
Use a CO_2 fire extinguisher[7]
If FIRE PERSISTS: activate fire alarm, evacuate patient, close OR door, and turn off gas supply to room

- Re-establish ventilation
- Avoid oxidizer-enriched atmosphere if clinically appropriate
- Examine tracheal tube to see if fragments may be left behind in airway
- Consider bronchoscopy

- Maintain ventilation
- Assess for inhalation injury if the patient is not intubated

Assess patient status and devise plan for management

Fig. 70.11 American Society of Anesthesiologists' Operating Room Fires (1) Ignition sources include but are not limited to electrosurgery or electrocautery units and lasers. (2) An oxidizer-enriched atmosphere occurs when there is any increase in oxygen concentration above room air level, and/or the presence of any concentration of nitrous oxide. (3) After minimizing delivered oxygen, wait a period of time (e.g., 1-3 min) before using an ignition source. For oxygen dependent patients, reduce supplemental oxygen delivery to the minimum required to avoid hypoxia. Monitor oxygenation with pulse oximetry, and if feasible, inspired, exhaled, and/or delivered oxygen concentration. (4) After stopping the delivery of nitrous oxide, wait a period of time (e.g., 1-3 min) before using an ignition source. (5) Unexpected flash, flame, smoke or heat, unusual sounds (e.g., a "pop," snap or "foomp") or odors, unexpected movement of drapes, discoloration of drapes or breathing circuit, unexpected patient movement or complaint. (6) In this algorithm, airway fire refers to a fire in the airway or breathing circuit. (7) A CO2 fire extinguisher may be used on the patient if necessary. Algorithm. *CO_2*, carbon dioxide; *OR*, operating room. (From American Society of Anesthesiologists. Practice advisory for the prevention and management of operating room fires. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:786–801. Copyright 2013, the American Society of Anesthesiologists, Inc. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins. Anesthesiology 2013; 118:00-00)

BOX 70.2 Management of Airway Fires

Prevention and Preparedness

1. Keep the O_2 concentration at approximately 30%, or less if possible. Use an O_2/air mixture. Avoid N_2O.
2. Use a "laser-safe" endotracheal tube.
3. Inflate the endotracheal tube cuff with dyed normal saline to provide an early indicator of cuff rupture.
4. Use a pre-prepared 50-mL syringe of saline to extinguish any fire, and flood the surgical field if a fire occurs.
5. Have an extra endotracheal tube available for reintubation in case a fire occurs.
6. Inform the surgical team working on the airway of any situation in which high concentrations of O_2 are being used.

In the Case of an Airway Fire

1. Stop lasering. Stop ventilation. Turn O_2 off (as well as N_2O if it was mistakenly in use).
2. Inform the surgical team, and assign someone to call the control desk for help.
3. Remove the burning endotracheal tube* and drop it in the bucket of water, if available.
4. Put out the fire with your improvised fire extinguisher.
5. The area should be flushed with saline.

When the Fire Is Extinguished

1. Ventilate the patient with 100% O_2 by facemask (or supraglottic airway if appropriate).
2. When the patient is stable, assess the extent of airway damage. Consider using a ventilating rigid bronchoscope; debris and foreign bodies should be removed.
3. Reintubate the patient if significant airway damage is found.
4. When appropriate, arrange for admission to an ICU.
5. Provide supportive therapy, including ventilation and antibiotics, and extubate when appropriate.
6. Tracheotomy may be needed.

ICU, Intensive care unit; *N_2O*, nitrous oxide; *O_2*, oxygen.
Courtesy Dr. B. Abdelmalak, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, Ohio.
*Removing the endotracheal tube may be inappropriate in some cases (see text).

wire-reinforced variety is commonly used to avoid airway trouble following head rotation. Alternatively, preformed tracheal tubes (e.g., RAE tubes) are commonly used.

Nitrous oxide is avoided in middle ear procedures because it diffuses from blood to the middle ear, thereby increasing middle ear pressure and potentially distending any carefully placed tympanic membrane grafts. However, many ENT surgeons now use "underlay" grafts, in which increased middle ear pressures can actually help hold the graft in place, as opposed to older "overlay" grafts, in which a high middle ear pressure would dislocate the graft.

Many middle ear operations are performed to ameliorate hearing loss from infection or inflammation. The most frequent of these procedures, myringotomy with tube placement, is most commonly performed in children by using simple sevoflurane mask anesthesia, in conjunction with acetaminophen or (less commonly) fentanyl to treat postoperative pain. The procedure can usually be safely accomplished without establishing intravenous access.[148]

Stapedectomy, typically performed to treat otosclerosis, is usually performed using general anesthesia and may involve the use of surgical lasers (hence a potential need for laser precautions), as well as facial nerve monitoring (hence a potential need for periods with minimal neuromuscular blockade). The use of a volatile anesthetic in combination with a remifentanil infusion helps provide mild hypotension (which reduces blood loss), as well as surgical immobility. Nitrous oxide can theoretically be used early in the procedure, but it must be avoided later on to avoid damaging possible "overlay" grafts to the tympanic membrane. However, most clinicians simply avoid nitrous oxide entirely, to reduce the incidence of PONV. Gentle emergence, often involving a remifentanil infusion, helps avoid coughing or "bucking" with the tracheal tube present, with possible displacement of the bone prosthesis. Not surprisingly, extubation of the trachea during deep anesthesia is sometimes performed. Ossiculoplasty procedures involve similar considerations.

Common inner ear procedures include surgery to the cochlea, endolymphatic sac, and labyrinth. Patients with pathologic processes in the labyrinth and endolymphatic sac, such as patients with Meniere disease, often suffer from vertigo and hearing loss and are especially prone to PONV. In cochlear implant surgery, mastoidectomy is performed to implant the signal coupler while the electrode array is implanted into the cochlea, a procedure often taking over 4 hours. Considerations similar to those for stapedectomy apply, including the potential need for nerve monitoring, the avoidance of PONV, and gentle emergence from anesthesia. Some surgeons also request a degree of hypotension as a means to reduce blood loss.

Untreated chronic otitis media often leads to mastoiditis, tympanic membrane perforation, and damage to the ossicular chain. Additionally, the formation of a cholesteatoma (an invasive growth of keratinizing squamous epithelium) may spread into the mastoid cavity, inner ear, and even the brain to cause additional damage. When antibiotic treatment fails, mastoidectomy (removing infected material, draining subperiosteal abscesses, and reestablishing middle ear ventilation) may be indicated. Because blood loss can be substantial, controlled hypotension is sometimes requested. The nerve identification and gentle emergence issues discussed earlier often apply as well. Nitrous oxide is often avoided, at least in the later stages, because of the tympanoplasty component of the procedure.

Surgical procedures of the outer ear may be used to correct congenital and acquired malformations. Although these patients often present no special challenges, beware of patients whose malformation is part of Goldenhar syndrome or Treacher Collins syndrome because these patients frequently offer airway challenges. General anesthesia is typically employed, and postoperative pain can be substantial when a rib graft is used.

Parotid and Other Salivary Gland Surgery

The salivary glands comprise a pair of parotid glands, two submandibular glands, two principal sublingual glands, and a number of minor salivary glands. As exocrine glands, their function is variously to produce saliva, digestive enzymes (amylase), and lubrication, as well as to provide a bacteriostatic function. Indications for submandibular gland surgery include tumors, chronic sialadenitis refractory to medical treatment, and removal of impacted stones. The most frequent parotid disease warranting surgery is a benign neoplasm, frequently a pleomorphic adenoma. Superficial parotidectomy (complete or limited) with facial nerve dissection is the most commonly performed procedure for these lesions, although a simpler enucleation procedure is sometimes also performed.[149-151] Identification of the facial nerve and its branches, often employing nerve stimulation methods, is central to the procedure. For this reason, the surgical team usually requests that muscle relaxants be avoided after endotracheal intubation has been achieved.

Besides the usual considerations applying to all surgical patients, preoperative evaluation of patients for salivary gland surgery should consider any previous head and neck surgery and any history of radiation therapy (which can make mask ventilation difficult). The physical examination should look for tumor displacement of the airway, as well as impaired temporomandibular joint (TMJ) mobility and other predictors of airway difficulties. Available head and neck CT scans or MRI studies should be reviewed with the surgical team, with a focus on airway issues.

During these procedures, complete immobility of the patient is important. Consequently, general anesthesia with endotracheal intubation is usually required, although cases of parotid surgery performed using local anesthesia have been reported.[152] Management of the airway with an LMA for parotid surgery has been described; however, the typical 2- to 4-hour duration of the operation and the need for an operative side-up head position lead most anesthesiologists to use a tracheal tube. Sufficient anesthetic depth and patient immobility are usually achieved using relatively large doses of opioid and inhaled anesthetics, with muscle relaxants avoided to allow facial nerve monitoring for both parotid and (less commonly) submandibular surgery. I frequently employ a single, small dose of rocuronium to facilitate endotracheal intubation, followed by sevoflurane anesthesia in conjunction with a remifentanil infusion (e.g., 0.1 μg/kg/min) to provide immobility. Finally, preservation of the facial nerve is of prime importance in these operations; consequently, the surgeon often must identify the facial nerve by using a nerve stimulator. This crucial step is not possible if neuromuscular blockade is present.

Sleep Apnea Surgery

OSA involves repetitive partial or complete upper airway obstruction because of collapse of the pharyngeal airway during sleep.[153-158] This condition typically occurs despite continued movement of the diaphragm and can lead to apneas (with complete obstruction), hypopneas (with partial obstruction), and respiratory effort–related arousals. The last of these can occur without desaturation, whereas hypoxia itself leads to arousal from sleep, with reopening of the airway and the intake of a breath. Severity is related to the number of these respiratory events per hour as determined by polysomnography. Patients in whom conservative treatment (e.g., weight loss, continuous positive airway pressure, bilevel positive airway pressure, oral appliances) fails may benefit from either surgical modification of the upper airway or, rarely, tracheostomy. Commonly performed procedures include uvulopalatopharyngoplasty, uvulopalatal flap surgery, tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy, genioglossus advancement, maxillomandibular advancement, and other procedures. Sometimes these procedures are performed in combination. Possible comorbidities such as obesity, metabolic syndrome, type 2 diabetes, coronary artery disease, or cor pulmonale should be identified. Patients with OSA can be difficult to intubate tracheally or ventilate by mask, and they are especially prone to postoperative hypoxia. In addition, they frequently have conditions such as macroglossia, redundant pharyngeal tissue, lingual tonsil hypertrophy, or an anterior larynx, all of which can make direct laryngoscopy difficult.

Clinical features that increase the likelihood that OSA is present include a body mass index greater than 30 kg/m^2, large neck circumference (>17 inches in men; >16 inches in women), a high Mallampati score (3 or 4), and the presence of features such as a large uvula, macroglossia, retrognathia, tonsillar hypertrophy, or a high arched palate. The airway features that predispose to OSA may also lead to a difficult airway. For example, difficult intubation is encountered five to eight times more often in patients with OSA compared with other patients. Additionally, snoring and OSA are independent risk factors for difficult ventilation by mask.

General endotracheal anesthesia is preferable for OSA surgery because of the risk of aspiration of blood from the surgical site and the risk of laryngospasm should blood or secretions make contact with the vocal cords.

Postoperative vigilance is paramount. One reason is that patients with OSA have an increase in postoperative obstructive episodes, peaking on postoperative day 3 and returning to preoperative levels after a week. Consequently, patients with OSA who are undergoing airway surgery are not outpatient candidates. Postoperative airway edema is another concern and constitutes another reason that it is wise to minimize respiratory depressants such as opioids and sedatives postoperatively. Dexamethasone is often given to reduce airway edema.

Zenker Diverticulum

Zenker diverticulum, first described in 1874, is a herniation or outpouching of pharyngeal mucosa through the posterior wall of the hypopharynx (often between the oblique and horizontal components of cricopharyngeus).[159,160] Typically seen in the sixth to ninth decades of life and occurring in approximately 1 in 800 upper gastrointestinal barium studies, patients may describe regurgitation of undigested food when supine and food caught in the throat (i.e., in the mucosal pouch), as well as coughing, dysphagia, and halitosis. Confirmation of the clinical diagnosis is usually by barium swallow and/or endoscopy.

Surgery can be either open or endoscopic. In the open (transcervical) approach, the diverticulum is exposed through a lateral neck incision and is then resected (diverticulectomy) or tacked superiorly to the prevertebral fascia (diverticulopexy). Cricopharyngeal myotomy may be added to help prevent recurrence. In the endoscopic approach, no skin incision is required; here the surgical procedure usually involves ablating the common wall between the pouch and the cervical esophagus by using an endoscopic stapler, surgical laser, or other means.

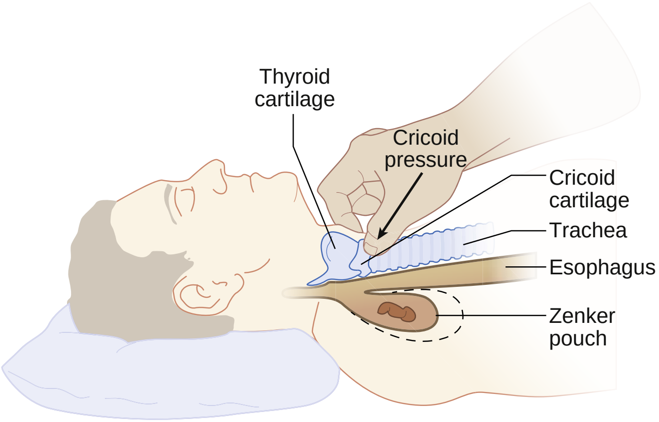


Fig. 70.12 Anatomic relationship of the diverticulum to the cricoid cartilage during application of cricoid pressure. (From Thiagarajah S, Lear E, Keh M. Anesthetic implications of Zenker diverticulum. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:109–111.)

Several anesthetic considerations apply. First, patients are frequently older, with applicable comorbidities, such as coronary artery disease. Second, the possibility that food caught in the pouch could end up in the airway is a concern. Additionally, oral medications such as antihypertensives administered the day of surgery may lodge in the pouch and be aspirated. Perhaps preoperative evacuation of the pouch can be performed by applying external pressure before anesthesia, but this is not commonly done because of concerns of causing iatrogenic pulmonary aspiration. More commonly, the patient is positioned with a 30-degree head-up tilt before the induction of anesthesia.

Although awake endotracheal intubation should provide excellent protection against the risk of aspiration of pouch contents, a theoretic concern exists that any coughing during the procedure, either from the use of transtracheal local anesthesia or from the instrumentation, could lead to regurgitation of pouch contents with possible aspiration. A more common technique is the use of rapid-sequence induction of anesthesia, usually with the modification that cricoid pressure is not used, for fear of discharging the pouch contents with the applied pressure. (Application of cricoid pressure is recommended only if the neck of the pouch is below the cricoid cartilage; see Fig. 70.12). Some experts have expressed the concern that using succinylcholine, especially if it is not preceded by a nondepolarizing muscle relaxant, could produce muscle fasciculations that could cause pouch compression. Even after endotracheal intubation, seepage of material around the ETT cuff can occur with surgical manipulation; some clinicians place a moist gauze throat pack to prevent aspiration of this material. Finally, the procedure is occasionally performed using regional anesthesia with deep and superficial cervical plexus blocks.

Care should be taken to avoid perforation of the diverticulum, such as with blind placement of a nasogastric tube or during difficult tracheal intubation. During the surgical procedure, retraction of the carotid sheath may stimulate baroreceptors and initiate arrhythmias, especially bradycardia, whereas significant blood loss and air embolism may occur if major vessels are accidently cut. A smooth awakening from anesthesia that is free from coughing and straining is important to avoid the risks of neck hematoma and the attendant possibility of a compromised airway.

Anesthesia for Surgical Airways: Cricothyrotomy and Tracheostomy

Two general approaches exist to create a surgical airway. In dire emergencies one may perform a cricothyrotomy,[161,162] by entering the airway through the cricothyroid membrane. This is done either by inserting a narrow-bore transtracheal ventilation catheter percutaneously through the cricothyroid membrane and employing emergency high-pressure jet ventilation or by inserting a wider-bore tube of sufficient diameter to allow low-pressure ventilation through a conventional resuscitator bag (e.g., “Ambu” bag). This second approach through the cricothyroid membrane can be achieved by using a vertical scalpel incision, identifying the cricothyroid membrane, cutting through the membrane with a horizontal stab incision, and placing (for example) a 6-mm inner-diameter tracheal tube. Alternately, one can use a commercial kit employing (for example) the Seldinger technique (e.g., Melker cricothyrotomy kit, Cook Medical, Bloomington, Ind.). An educational cricothyrotomy video is available at http://www.cookmedical.com/cc/educationMedia.do?mediaId=1522.

The second approach to achieving a surgical airway is a tracheostomy.[163,164] (Although the terms “tracheotomy” and “tracheostomy” are used interchangeably by clinicians, based on their Greek roots, the former term refers to cutting into the trachea, whereas the latter refers to the opening that has been created.) This approach is best suited for situations that are not high-level emergencies, takes rather longer to complete, and usually involves entering the airway between the second and third tracheal rings following a careful dissection of the neck tissues. Although it is very often performed using general anesthesia in an intubated ICU patient in whom ventilator weaning has failed, it is sometimes performed using local anesthesia, either employing no sedation (this is the usual case in stridulous patients, especially those requiring Heliox) or using a drug such as dexmedetomidine because of its lack of respiratory depression. In any event, the decision to perform a tracheostomy using local anesthesia is made jointly with the surgeon and depends on the extent of airway disease, the experience of the surgical team, and the degree to which the patient is able to tolerate lying supine with his or her head in extension. In some cases, the procedure must be performed with the patient in a semiupright sitting position.

In the case of patients whose tracheas are intubated, at one point in the procedure the anesthesia provider will be asked to withdraw the tracheal tube slowly to permit the airway to be entered without obstruction. Additionally, at this time the airway should be entered using a scalpel and not using cautery, to prevent an airway fire in an oxygen-rich environment.

A number of problems may arise in the postoperative period following a tracheotomy.[165-167] Bleeding, pneumothorax, subcutaneous or mediastinal emphysema, and hypoventilation or airway obstruction may occur immediately after the procedure, whereas possible late complications include tracheal stenosis, tracheoesophageal fistula formation, tracheomalacia, and even tracheal necrosis. Although posttracheotomy bleeding is usually inconsequential, bleeding into the airway may cause the patient to cough and buck forcefully. In addition, major bleeding from a large artery or vein (often the communicating branch of the superior thyroid artery) may necessitate immediate exploration of the surgical field, whereas bleeding from the innominate artery may occur from erosion by the distal end of the cannula. (One hint that the tracheostomy could be applying pressure to the innominate artery is the finding of pulsations in the tracheotomy cannula after initial insertion. Treatment includes inflating the tube cuff and pulling the tube assembly anteriorly to tamponade the bleeding. An oral tracheal tube should then be inserted for management in the operating room.)

Frequently, tracheotomy tubes must be changed, for instance because of a cuff leak or because of obstruction from the buildup of secretions. A central concern in this instance is that the replaced tube could enter a false passage rather than the trachea. (This in itself is unfavorable, but should the false passage be inadvertently ventilated, the resulting subcutaneous emphysema could eliminate the possibility of easily reestablishing the airway.) This potential problem eventually disappears as the tracheal stoma matures to form a well-defined and self-supporting orifice. However, this rigidity and tissue support are lacking in a fresh tracheostomy, so that following removal of the tracheostomy tube, the tissue may "collapse in" on itself to block the passage. Consequently, certain precautions when dealing with a fresh tracheostomy tube must be borne in mind. First, for the first week or so, tube changes should be performed in the operating room with a full set of tracheotomy instruments (e.g., cricoid hooks) and a means to intubate "from above" as a last resort if the airway is lost. Second, once the tracheotomy site has begun to mature, it is no longer necessary to carry out tube changes in the operating room, but a full set of instruments (especially cricoid hooks) should still be available. Additionally, changing the tube over a tube changer may also be useful, but some clinicians find that it may unnecessarily complicate matters. Third, before any tube change, the patient should breathe 100% oxygen. Finally, a fiberoptic bronchoscope may be potentially useful in confirming tracheal placement of a tracheostomy tube before attempting any positive-pressure ventilation that could lead to subcutaneous emphysema should the tube, in fact, be malpositioned.

Neck Dissection and Laryngectomy

Neck dissection is commonly performed in isolation or during laryngectomy to prevent or treat any local spread of head and neck malignancy.[168,169] The extent of a neck dissection operation is based on the extent to which the neck's six lymph node levels are involved, as well as on the extent to which additional structures (spinal accessory nerve, internal jugular vein, and sternocleidomastoid muscle) are removed. Depending on the degree to which the tumor can be removed and recurrence or spread can be prevented, as well as the extent that phonation and swallowing can be preserved, various surgical options are exercised. Limited disease is sometimes managed by radiation, by laser and microsurgery, or by partial laryngectomy, thus preserving organ function. In total laryngectomy, the larynx is removed in its entirety, with the airway ending in a stoma formed by bringing the cut end of the trachea to the neck surface (with the result that the trachea now becomes independent of the esophagus.) Often a perforation between the trachea and the esophagus (tracheoesophageal puncture) is made to allow eventual placement of a voice prosthesis.[170] In some cases the procedure is supplemented with microvascular free tissue transfer (free flap).

Anesthesia can be induced through a standard intravenous line, followed by large-bore intravenous and arterial lines placed after induction. A central line can usually be avoided, with systolic pressure variation of the arterial line tracing and other clinical findings to guide fluid replacement. Although nerve function monitoring is usually required during the neck dissection phase, neuromuscular blockade is acceptable at the beginning. When neuromuscular blockade is no longer desirable, opioid infusions (e.g., remifentanil) are often used to maintain adequate analgesia in conjunction with an inhaled anesthetic agent. Many clinicians prefer using a balanced technique in preference to deep inhalational anesthesia or TIVA (propofol with or without remifentanil) to avoid the troublesome hypotension. Excessive intravenous crystalloid administration should be avoided to prevent operative site edema.

In total laryngectomy cases, a tracheostomy is customarily performed near the beginning of the procedure by using a wire-reinforced ETT placed into the stoma. (Warning: accidental endobronchial intubation commonly occurs in this setting.) In some cases, the patient is turned 180 degrees from the anesthesia machine; care must be taken to ensure that nothing is disconnected in the process. Extubation in such cases is extraordinarily simple; the ETT should be removed from the stoma when extubation criteria are met. Should reintubation ever become necessary, one merely reintroduces the tracheal tube into the stoma. The patient is then simply brought to the postanesthesia care unit with an oxygen mask placed over the stoma, although when a free flap has been performed, the patient is often brought to the ICU intubated, ventilated, and sedated (depending on the surgeon's preferences and local protocols.)

Maxillary, Mandibular, and Temporomandibular Joint Surgery

Maxillectomy surgery may be limited (e.g., removal of one antral wall, such as in a medial maxillectomy), subtotal (e.g., removal of two walls of the antrum), or total (removal of the total maxilla).[171-173] Orbital exenteration sometimes accompanies the procedure should the intraorbital contents be violated by tumor. Indications for maxillectomy include the following: tumors of the maxillary sinus, palate, and other structures; some intractable fungal infections; and other conditions. The procedure is performed using general anesthesia with tracheal intubation and invasive monitoring appropriate to the patient's condition and the extent of the surgery. Although massive blood loss is unusual, precautions should be taken because hemorrhage may occur (e.g., with transection of the internal maxillary artery). Hypotensive anesthesia, when appropriate, can help reduce blood loss. Medial maxillectomy procedures conducted endoscopically do not require anything different from ordinary sinus surgery for anesthesia. When electromyography-based cranial nerve monitoring is employed, long-acting paralytic agents should be avoided.

Surgery of the mandible and TMJ may be carried out by maxillofacial surgeons, as well as by otolaryngologists and plastic surgeons.[174-176] Mandibular surgery can range from simple biopsies to all-day radical procedures involving microvascular osteocutaneous flaps. Awake nasal intubation may be required in some cases. Hypotensive anesthesia is often used for orthognathic procedures to minimize blood loss. In some cases the jaw is wired shut, and reintubation, should it be required postoperatively, can be a challenge.

TMJ dysfunction often manifests with pain and decreased mouth opening. Conditions such as osteoarthritis, synovitis, or fibrosis may be responsible. Most TMJ procedures are performed using general nasotracheal anesthesia. As with mandibular surgery, the presence of very limited mouth opening may dictate that the procedure be done with awake nasal intubation.

Ear, Nose, and Throat Laser Surgery

Lasers are commonly used in ENT surgery (Box 70.3 and Table 70.1).[177-180] The most widely used laser in ENT surgery is the CO_2 laser, which allows precise cutting with a particularly fine zone of coagulation that reduces bleeding. Tissue vaporization is particularly efficient with this laser because of the excellent absorption of the produced far-infrared photons (10,600-nm wavelength) by water present in tissue. This laser is used in the removal of laryngeal tumors and lingual tonsillar tissue, in the ablation of hemangiomas, and for the resection of some oropharyngeal malignant tumors.

Another popular laser in ENT surgery is the neodymium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet (Nd:YAG) laser, which emits photons with a wavelength of 1064 nm. These photons are poorly absorbed by water and thus tend to penetrate tissue more deeply than do those from a CO_2 laser. In addition, light from an Nd:YAG laser can be transmitted through flexible quartz fibers that can be used in conjunction with a flexible fiberoptic bronchoscope for use in treating tracheobronchial lesions.

Because surgical lasers involve high amounts of energy, they have the potential for unintended tissue damage, as well as for causing fires. Stray laser beams can ignite surgical drapes. To mitigate these risks, one should place warning signs outside the operating room, provide opaque coverings on any operating room windows, and issue protective goggles. The presence of high oxygen concentrations near the patient's face can facilitate ignition in this region, so delivering supplementary oxygen by facemask or nasal cannula requires special care. American National Standards Institute standard Z136.3 (Safe Use of Lasers in Health Care Facilities) provides additional information on this and related matters.

BOX 70.3 Some Otolaryngologic Clinical Situations in Which Laser Techniques Can Be Useful

Nose

- Turbinate reduction
- Septoplasty
- Removal of nasal obstructions, polyps, synechiae
- Treatment of rhinophyma
- Treatment of keloids and hypertrophic scars

Oropharynx and Pharynx

- Vaporization of papillomas, leukoplakias, and hemangiomas
- Tumor surgery (e.g., partial glossectomy)
- Laser-assisted uvulopalatoplasty
- Tonsillectomy

Larynx

- Removal of vocal cord polyps and granulomas
- Epiglottectomy
- Cordectomy
- Arytenoidectomy

Tracheobronchial Tree

- Treatment of tracheal stenosis
- Removal of nodules, polyps, tumors, and fibromas

Ear

- Surgery of the stapes
- Laser-assisted myringotomy
- Cholesteatoma

From Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.

TABLE 70.1 A Sampling of Various Kinds of Lasers Available for Clinical Use

Type	Gas or Solid	Wavelength* (nm)	Color	Fiberoptic Transmissible?
Helium/ neon	Gas	633	Red	Yes
Argon†	Gas	500	Blue-green	Yes
CO_2	Gas	10,600	Invisible (far infrared)	No
Ruby	Solid	695	Red	Yes
Nd:YAG	Solid	1064	Invisible (near infrared)	Yes
KTP	Solid	532	Green	Yes

KTP, Potassium titanyl phosphate; *Nd:YAG*, neodymium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet.

*Wavelengths are given in nanometers (nm). There are 10^9 nm to a meter.

†The argon laser produces blue-green coherent light at a number of wavelengths but most of the energy is at wavelengths 488 nm and 514 nm.

From Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.

One special concern is that regular ETTs can ignite from a laser beam. In the past, metallic tapes applied in a spiral manner were sometimes used. Today, however, several special-purpose ETTs are available for this purpose (Table 70.2).

TABLE 70.2 Some Types of Laser Endotracheal Tubes in Clinical Use

Name	Description	Intended Use
Laser-Flex	Airtight stainless steel corrugated spiral with a PVC Murphy eye tip and double cuffs. More information is available at http://www.cardinal.com/us/en/distributedproducts/ASP/43168-145.asp.	CO_2 or KTP lasers
Laser-Shield II	Silicone rubber tube wrapped with aluminum and wrapped over with Teflon. More information at http://assets.medtronic.com/ent/flipbook-us/files/assets/basic-html/index.html#190	CO_2 or KTP lasers
Lasertubus	Soft white rubber, reinforced with corrugated copper foil and an absorbent sponge; double cuffed. More information at http://www.myrusch.com/images/rusch/docs/A20C.pdf	CO_2 or KTP lasers
Sheridan Laser-Trach	Red rubber design with embossed copper foil and outer covering designed to reduce damage to mucosal surfaces and vocal cords. More information at http://www.teleflex.com/en/usa/productAreas/anesthesia/documents/Sheridan-ET-Tube-Guide.pdf	CO_2 or KTP lasers

CO_2, Carbon dioxide; *KTP*, potassium titanyl phosphate; *PVC*, polyvinyl chloride.

From Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.

The choice of anesthetic technique depends on the clinical circumstances. TIVA techniques for laser ENT surgery are particularly popular and are essential when patients are unintubated and jet ventilation is used. When patients are intubated, a potent inhalational agent such as sevoflurane is often used, although frequently an infusion of remifentanil is used as an anesthetic adjunct in such cases (typical rate: 0.05-0.1 µg/kg/min). (Remifentanil, with its vagomimetic effect, is especially useful to limit the heart rate in the face of intense sympathetic stimulation from the effects of the suspension laryngoscope.) Finally, to reduce the chance of a fire, while lasers are in use nitrous oxide should not be used, and the oxygen concentration should be limited to the lowest concentration necessary to maintain acceptable arterial oxygen saturation levels.

Airway management is often a challenge in laser surgery cases, and the surgeon and anesthesiologist must work together to devise a plan. One issue is whether general anesthesia should be preceded by awake intubation because the presence of airway disease may complicate both ventilation and intubation. Another issue is whether the procedure should be performed using general anesthesia with the patient breathing spontaneously, albeit with assistance, as is sometimes desirable when an anterior mediastinal mass is present. Muscle relaxation is often employed to help ensure an immobile surgical field. With the widespread availability of sugammadex, most clinicians are able to use rocuronium as a relaxant, followed by a "sugammadex rescue" should the airway become unmanageable following relaxant administration. Many clinicians, however, simply intubate the patient awake whenever issues of this kind arise.

In some cases, the entire surgical procedure is done without intubation. The advantages of this approach are a decreased risk of fire (no ETT to ignite) and improved access to airway structures. Disadvantages include the risk of aspiration with an unprotected airway and potential difficulties in ventilating the patient. Typically in such cases, an anterior commissure laryngoscope or similar device is used in conjunction with TIVA and jet ventilation. In other cases, the laryngoscope is used in conjunction with a small-diameter ETT (e.g., MLT size 5.0), and the procedure is performed while the patient has brief periods of apnea in conjunction with intermittent removal of the ETT to allow unimpaired access to the glottic structures.

Laser vaporization of tissue, especially from CO_2 lasers, often results in a plume of smoke that can be hazardous. The use of a smoke evacuator at the surgical site along with protective masks that filter out particulate material is often advised, especially when virus particles are present in the vaporized tissue.

Extubation of the trachea in these cases can be challenging. Some patients benefit from the administration of intravenous dexamethasone to reduce edema. Stridor is sometimes encountered after extubation; although this condition may require reintubation, one can sometimes avoid this by the use of inhaled racemic epinephrine or the use of Heliox, a mixture of helium (typically 70%) and oxygen. Extubation over a tube exchanger can be helpful when the need for reintubation is a concern and is expected to be challenging.

Even when the tracheas of patients are extubated conservatively following laser surgery, airway problems can arise later. In cases of immediate respiratory distress following laser procedures, consider the following possibilities: tissue edema (e.g., after Nd:YAG laser use), residual muscle relaxant or anesthetic effects, airway secretions, pneumothorax, bleeding, and pneumomediastinum.

Phonosurgery

Phonosurgery is surgery conducted to improve a patient's voice.[181-185] In many cases the patient's voice has been damaged as a result of unilateral vocal cord paralysis. One common operation used in this setting is medialization of the paralyzed vocal cord (laryngoplasty) so that the normal vocal cord can make contact with the paralyzed side. This procedure is done using local anesthesia with minimal sedation (e.g., 20 mg propofol administered just before the injection of the local anesthetic) because the patient needs to phonate on request. Continuous intraoperative imaging of the vocal cords, especially during phonation, is carried out to achieve the repair. An infusion of dexmedetomidine is sometimes used.

Head and Neck Flap Reconstructive Surgery

Tissue transfer in the form of pedicle flap or a microvascular free flap is commonly employed to reconstruct defects created following tumor surgery.[186-188] Potential advantages of such flaps include the avoidance of staged procedures, improved wound healing, superior cosmetic results, and improved tolerance for postoperative radiation therapy. For optimal anesthetic care, anesthesiologists must have a clear understanding of these procedures and their implications for anesthetic management.

A *pedicle flap* is one in which the flap vessels are transferred intact with the rotated flap. If the flap is moved from a distant "donor" site and the flap vessels are reanastomosed to the recipient site vessels, then the tissue is termed a *microvascular free flap.* Examples of myocutaneous pedicled flaps are the pectoralis major flap and the latissimus flap used (for instance) to cover the carotid artery after the point where it is sacrificed and reconstructed using a vein graft. In contrast to pedicle flaps, free flaps provide the surgeon with more options for donor sites. Frequently, separate surgical teams for the donor and recipient sites are employed. Surgery in relation to free flaps can be elective, or it may be performed on an emergency basis to rescue an ischemic flap. Elective procedures tend to be long-duration operations conducted using general anesthesia. An arterial cannula is generally used, although special care must be taken to ensure that the arterial cannula and any additional intravenous catheters are not inadvertently placed at a site where tissue harvesting is planned (e.g., radial forearm flap). Central lines are not usually placed, in part because information about volume status can usually be better achieved using less invasive means such as systolic blood pressure variability. Many of these procedures begin with a tracheostomy and end with the patient being cared for in an ICU while intubated and ventilated. Intraoperative and postoperative flap monitoring is achieved clinically (examination for color, turgor, edema, and capillary refill), as well as by using technical means of blood flow assessment, such as Doppler ultrasound.

Intravenous crystalloids and colloids are administered liberally but cautiously to prevent hypovolemia and hypotension that could lead to ischemic flap failure. Conversely, excessive fluid leads to detrimental edema formation within the flap. The use of vasopressors such as phenylephrine or norepinephrine is generally discouraged during free flap procedures because these drugs may contribute to graft ischemia as a result of vasoconstriction.

Stridor and Heliox

Stridor is noisy inspiration resulting from turbulent gas flow in the upper airway. Stridor should always command clinical attention because it is almost always the result of airway obstruction.[189-194] The first issue of clinical concern in the setting of stridor is whether intubation is immediately necessary. If intubation can be delayed for a period of time, a number of potential options can be considered, depending on the severity of the situation and other clinical details. These options include the following: expectant management with full monitoring, 100% oxygen by facemask, and positioning the head of the bed for optimum conditions (e.g., 45-90 degrees); use of nebulized racemic epinephrine (e.g., 0.5-0.75 mL 2.25% solution in 2.5 mL normal saline) and dexamethasone ([Decadron] 4-8 mg intravenously every 8-12 hours) when airway edema may be the cause of the stridor; and use of Heliox (70% helium, 30% oxygen). Dexamethasone can take several hours to take full effect, and nebulized cocaine in a dose not exceeding 3 mg/kg can be used instead of racemic epinephrine. Finally, whenever possible, immediate attempts should be made to establish the cause of the stridor (e.g., foreign body, vocal cord edema, arytenoid cartilage dislocation, tracheal compression by tumor).

Frequently, stridor occurring after extubation is the result of laryngeal edema, and it may be more problematic in children because of their small airway size. Be aware that as laryngeal edema progresses, diminished stridor may reflect impending total airway obstruction. The specific cause of laryngeal edema can often be established with fiberoptic nasopharyngeal examination, and causes are often classified as supraglottic or subglottic. Supraglottic edema most commonly follows surgical instrumentation, impaired venous drainage, eclampsia or preeclampsia, hematoma formation, or excessive fluid administration. Subglottic edema may result from traumatic intubation attempts, bucking on the ETT, prolonged intubation, tight-fitting tubes, or excessive cuff pressures.

The manner in which Heliox helps relieve airway obstruction is worthy of note. Some airway-obstructing conditions may be thought of as breathing through an orifice, involving flow through a tube whose length is smaller than its radius. Gas flow through an orifice is always somewhat

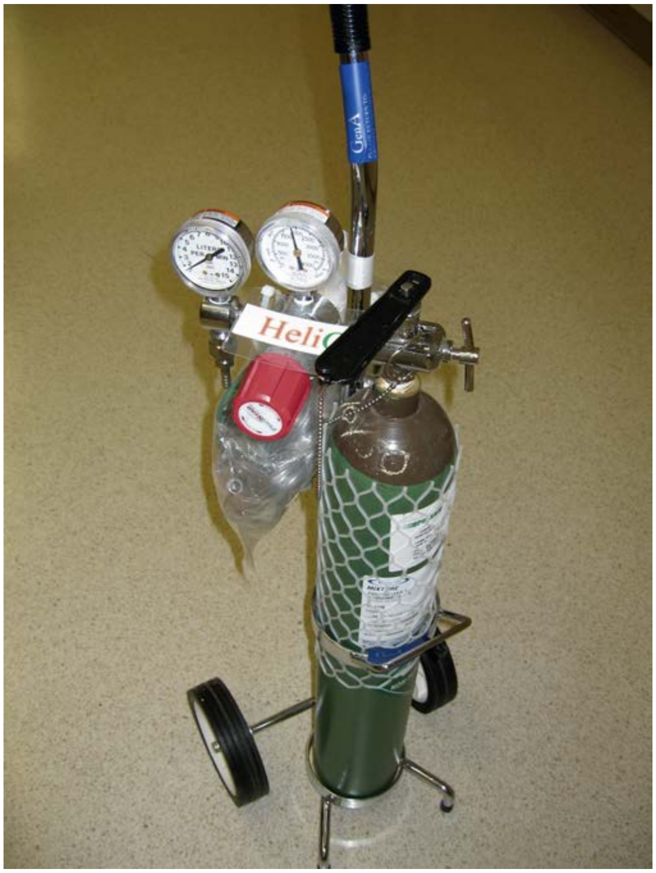


Fig. 70.13 An E-size tank of Heliox, with an attached nonrebreathing facemask in a plastic bag. In this case, the mixture is 70% helium and 30% oxygen, although other mixtures are available. This gas mixture is usually given using a nonrebreathing facemask with a gas flow of 10 L/min as a temporizing measure in stridulous individuals.

turbulent. Under such conditions, the approximate flow across the orifice varies inversely with the square root of the gas *density*. This is in contrast to laminar flow conditions, in which gas flow varies inversely with gas *viscosity*. Although the viscosity values for helium and oxygen are similar, their densities are very different. For example, the density for air and oxygen at 20°C is 1.293 and 1.429 g/L, respectively. However, the density of helium at that temperature is only 0.178 g/L. Clinically, Heliox is usually administered from an E-size cylinder through a nonrebreathing facemask starting at a flow of 10 L/min (Fig. 70.13). When the usual 30% oxygen concentration is too low, one trick is to titrate in additional oxygen by nasal cannula. In summary, a setup to administer Heliox should be readily available in every ENT operating room suite to assist in the treatment of stridor.

Anesthesia for Face Transplantation

Face transplantation remains a very rare procedure (Fig. 70.14).[195,196] The procedure can be total or partial. The recipient must be able to undergo a very prolonged anesthetic and be free of serious comorbidities. Each procedure is unique with respect to indications, as well as with respect to the nature and the extent of the graft. In the case of the donor, although anesthetic principles similar to conventional organ procurement apply, because of the surgical complexity and time involved, harvesting of the facial graft should ordinarily be performed before harvesting other organs. Although the donor usually has an ETT in place at the time of tissue procurement, a tracheostomy may be performed first to avoid interference with the surgical field. Recipient patients who do not have a tracheostomy may first require awake fiberoptic oral intubation, followed by a tracheostomy. A wire-reinforced ETT is often used. Large-bore catheters are placed to facilitate fluid resuscitation, whereas a central line may be useful to monitor central venous pressure. If a central line is used, however, it must not impinge on the surgical field. Blood and fluid management is no different from that during other long surgical procedures involving microvascular free flaps. As with microvascular surgery, pressors such as phenylephrine or norepinephrine, commonly used to treat hypotension, are discouraged because of the risk of compromising graft

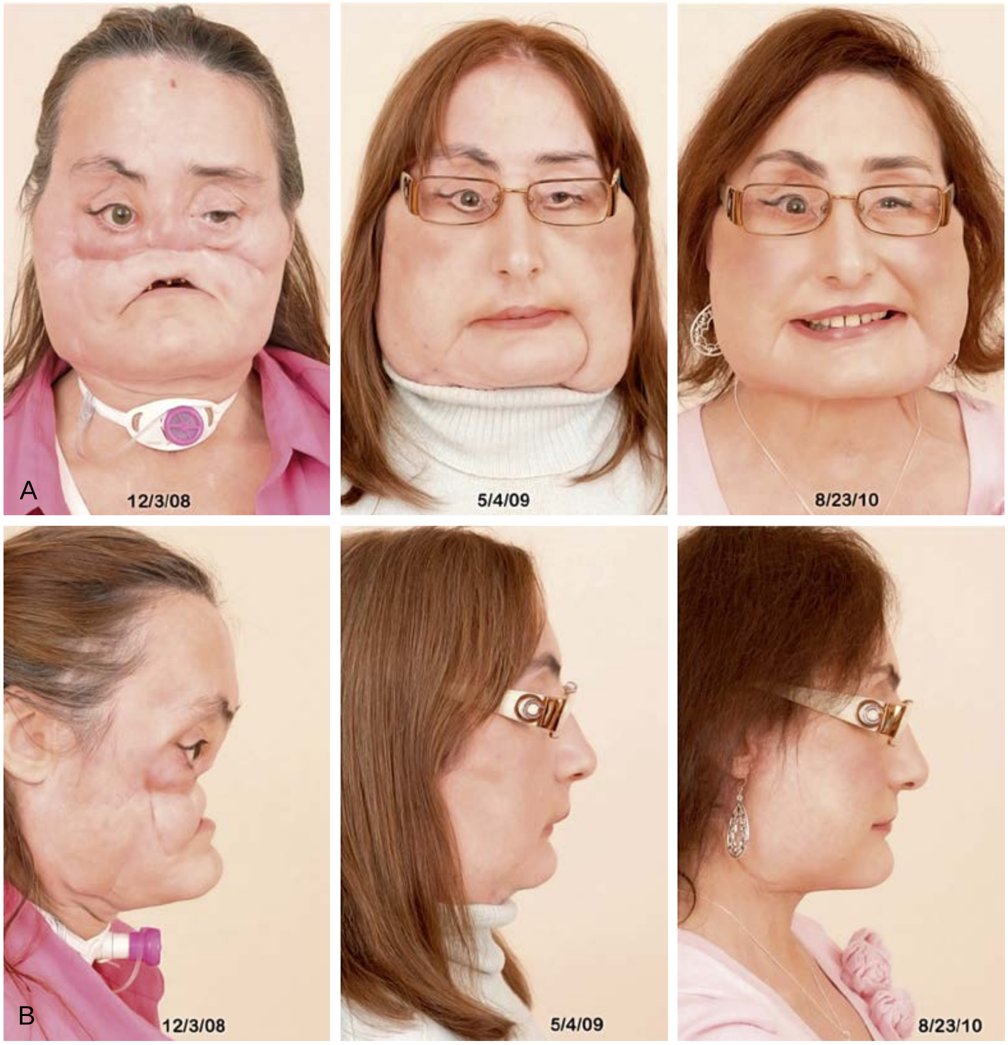


Fig. 70.14 Ms. Connie Culp before (A) and after (B) the two stages of her face transplant at Cleveland Clinic. Stage 1 was carried out in December 2008 (lead surgeon: Dr. Maria Siemionow). (Images courtesy the Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, Ohio.)

perfusion. Finally, there may be periods when muscle relaxation must be avoided to allow nerve identification using electrical stimulation.

Acknowledgment

This chapter is a consolidation of two chapters in the 8th edition, Chapter 85 Anesthesia for Ear, Nose, and Throat Surgery by D. John Doyle and Chapter 88 Anesthesia for Laser Surgery by Vicki E. Modest and Paul H. Alfille. Their chapters have served as the foundation for the current chapter. The editors and publisher would like to thank the authors for their contributions to the prior edition of this work.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Martin RF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:10.
2. Robinson DH, Toledo AH. *J Invest Surg*. 2012;25:141.
3. Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
4. Al-alami AA, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18:281.
5. Al-alami AA, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:388.
6. Salem MR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:441.
7. Apfelbaum RI, et al. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2000;25:2906.
8. Cavo Jr JW. *Laryngoscope*. 1985;95:1352.
9. Brandwein M, et al. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 1986;112:877.
10. Wason R, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2004;32:417.
11. Lim EK, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1987;15:342.
12. Tekin M, et al. *J Craniofac Surg*. 2012;23:135.
13. Chiang FY, et al. *World J Surg*. 2010;34:223.
14. Dralle H, et al. *World J Surg*. 2008;32:1358.
15. Chiang FY, et al. *Surgery*. 2008;143:743.
16. White PF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:1190.
17. Krenk L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:607.
18. Guenther U, Radtke FM. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:670.
19. Rosenblatt WH. Preoperative endoscopic airway examination (PEAE). In: Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
20. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Management of the Difficult Airway. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1269. [Erratum in Anesthesiology 101:565, 2004].
21. Saxena S. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1052.
22. Ezri T, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2003;15:418.
23. Combes X, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1146.
24. Sudrial J, et al. *Emerg Med Int*. 2010;826231:2010.
25. Heard AM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:601.
26. Rosenblatt WH. *J Clin Anesth*. 2004;16:312.
27. Crosby ET. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(suppl 2):112.
28. Frova G, Sorbello M. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2009;75:201.
29. Adnet F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1290.
30. Benumof JL. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1273.
31. Adnet F, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:327.
32. Lavi R, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21:264.
33. McElwain J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:1127.
34. Miller JA, et al. *West J Emerg Med*. 2010;11:16.
35. Harvey K, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:76.
36. Heegaard WG, et al. *Air Med J*. 2003;22:28.
37. Chung YT, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Taiwan*. 2004;42:141.
38. Sahin M, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59:963.
39. Eschertzhuber S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1253.
40. Healy DW, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2012;12:11.
41. Andersen LH, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:1090.
42. Gaszyński T, et al. *Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther*. 2014;46:14.
43. Griesdale DE, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59:41–52.
44. Kim HJ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:1165.
45. Jeon WJ, et al. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2011;61:19.
46. Huang J, Chase C. *J Clin Anesth*. 2011;23:427.
47. Corso RM, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29:495.
48. Viernes D, et al. *Anesthesiol Res Pract*. 2012;2012:820961.
49. Aziz MF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:904.
50. Noppens RR, et al. *Crit Care*. 2012;16:R103.
51. Abdelmalak BB, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:550.
52. Abdelmalak B, et al. *J Anesth*. 2010;24:607.
53. Carollo DS, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2008;21:457.
54. Arcangeli A, et al. *Curr Drug Targets*. 2009;10:687.
55. Shukry M, Miller JA. *Ther Clin Risk Manag*. 2010;6:111.
56. Doyle DJ. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51:520.
57. Boedeker BH, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24:25.
58. Greenberger PA. *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am*. 2006;26:753.
59. Krassilnikova SI, et al. *Recent Pat Inflamm Allergy Drug Discov*. 2008;2:166.
60. Shah RK, Stocks C. *Laryngoscope*. 2010;120:1256.
61. D'Agostino J. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2010;28:119.
62. Jenkins IA. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(suppl 1):118.
63. Guldfred LA, et al. *J Laryngol Otol*. 2008;122:818.
64. Glynn F, Fenton JE. *Curr Infect Dis Rep*. 2008;10:200.
65. Tibballs J, Watson T. *J Paediatr Child Health*. 2011;47:77.
66. Sobol SE, Zapata S. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am*. 2008;41:551. ix.
67. Ames WA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:795.
68. Reilly BK, Reilly JS. *Infect Disord Drug Targets*. 2012;12:291.
69. Haug RH, et al. *Br J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 1990;28:34.
70. Osborn TM, et al. *Oral Maxillofac Surg Clin North Am*. 2008;20:353.
71. Philpott CM, et al. *J Laryngol Otol*. 2004;118:919.
72. Hari MS, Nirvala KD. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58:714.
73. Stein S, Daud AS. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1999;16:133.
74. Gaglani MJ, Edwards MS. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1995;13:333.
75. Hasan W, et al. *Int J Otolaryngol*. 2011;231816:2011.
76. Greenberg SL, et al. *ANZ J Surg*. 2007;77:540.
77. Kulkarni AH, et al. *Cases J*. 2008;1:19.
78. Loughnan TE, Allen DE. *Anaesthesia*. 1985;40:295.
79. Allen D, et al. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 1985;43:436.
80. Shadmehr MB, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2011;39:749.
81. Hartl DM, et al. *Head Neck*. 2011;33:1638.
82. Rigby MH, Taylor SM. *J Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2011;40:113.
83. Lucioni M, et al. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 2011;268:1771.
84. Martins RH, et al. *J Voice*. 2011;25:98.
85. Kim HT, Auo HJ. *Acta Otolaryngol*. 2008;128:1043.
86. Dikkers FG, Nikkels PG. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol*. 1995;104:698.
87. Johns MM. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2003;11:456.
88. Martins RH, et al. *J Voice*. 2011;25:107.
89. Chowdhury FR, et al. *Ear Nose Throat J*. 2011;90:566.
90. Aksoy EA, et al. *Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol*. 2012;76:240.
91. Schultz P. *Eur Ann Otorhinolaryngol Head Neck Dis*. 2011;128:301.
92. Kamani T, Sama A. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2011;19:6.
93. Zeitz HJ. *Clin Chest Med*. 1988;9:567.
94. Li SQ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20:1084.
95. Bo L, et al. *Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol*. 2011;75:1442.
96. Burns JA, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 2007;117:1500.
97. Mikkelsen PG. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:645.
98. Theroux MC, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1998;8:357.
99. Depierraz B, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1994;41:1200.
100. Putti S, et al. *Br J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2009;47:627.
101. Lai HC, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Sin*. 2002;40:47.
102. Sesterhenn AM, et al. *Lasers Surg Med*. 2003;32:384.
103. Biro P. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2010;28:397.
104. Cook TM, Alexander R. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:266.
105. Hunsaker DH. *Laryngoscope*. 1994;104(suppl 65):1.
106. Davies JM, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56:284.
107. Gulleth Y, Spiro J. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2005;131:886.
108. Bourgain JL, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:870.
109. Ross-Anderson DJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:140.
110. Bould MD, Bearfield P. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:535.
111. Leiter R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:690.
112. Elkassabany N, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:433.
113. Eng RM, Kaplan MB. Anesthesia for ENT trauma. In: Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
114. Anwari JS, Bhatti J. *Saudi Med J*. 2005;26:494.
115. Wadhwa R, Kalra S. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2010;54:363.
116. Anderson PJ, Nizam M. *Rhinology*. 1998;36:204.
117. Dogan R, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:960.
118. Ashchi M, et al. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 1995;121:681.
119. Hsu J, Peters AT. *Am J Rhinol Allergy*. 2011;25:285.
120. Aouad RK. *Am J Rhinol Allergy*. 2011;25:291.

121. To EW, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:383.
122. Higgins TS, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 2011;121:422.
123. Latorre F, Klimek L. *Drug Saf*. 1999;20:9.
124. Macmillan M, Barker K. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2008;25:426.
125. Graf P. *Laryngoscope*. 1998;108:1255.
126. Aukema AA, Fokkens WJ. *Treat Respir Med*. 2004;3:97.
127. Johnson PE, et al. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2003;128:452.
128. Arendt KW, et al. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2011;20:246.
129. Loewen AH, et al. *CMAJ*. 2004;171:593.
130. Isaacson G. *Pediatrics*. 2012;130:324.
131. Statham MM, Myer 3rd CM. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2010;18:539.
132. Arweiler-Harbeck D, et al. *Laryngoscope120*. 1784:2010.
133. Windfuhr JP. *Laryngoscope*. 2008;118:1389.
134. Baker AR, Baker AB. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54:795.
135. Amorocho MR, Sordillo A. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2010;28:497.
136. Ankichetty SP, et al. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;27:328.
137. Eberhart LH, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 2003;113:1369.
138. Luba K, Cutter TW. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2010;28:295.
139. Russell T, Cooper RM. Anesthesia for thyroid and parathyroid surgery. In: Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
140. Nayak B, Burman K. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am*. 2006;35:663. vii.
141. Burch HB, Wartofsky L. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am*. 1993;22:263.
142. Kumar KV, et al. *Indian J Endocrinol Metab*. 2012;16:664.
143. Shaha A, et al. *Surgery*. 1987;102:1068.
144. Singer MC, et al. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2012;146:895.
145. Cernea CR, et al. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2012;20:125.
146. Dionigi G, et al. *World J Surg*. 2012;36:748.
147. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118.
148. Allen AH. *Ear Nose Throat J*. 2007;86(672):681.
149. Zbar AP, et al. *Ir Med J*. 1997;90:228.
150. Jones R. *Ann R Australas Coll Dent Surg*. 2000;15:357.
151. Witt RL. *Ear Nose Throat J*. 2005;84:308. 310.
152. Reece PH, et al. *J Laryngol Otol*. 2000;114:983.
153. Porhomayon J, et al. *Lung*. 2011;189:359.
154. Dhanda Patil R, Patil YJ. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2012;146:156.
155. Ankichetty S, et al. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;27:447.
156. Chung F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:768.
157. Vasu TS, et al. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2012;8:199.
158. Ankichetty S, Chung F. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:605.
159. Khanna A, et al. Anesthesia for Zenker's diverticulectomy. In: Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
160. Thiagarajah S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:109.
161. Salvino CK, et al. *J Trauma*. 1993;34:503.
162. Fortune JB, et al. *J Trauma*. 1997;42:832. discussion, p 837.
163. Engels PT, et al. *Can J Surg*. 2009;52:427.
164. Davidson SB, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;73(suppl 1):S83.
165. Haspel AC, et al. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2012;70:890.
166. Dulguerov P, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:1617.
167. Kim WH, Kim BH. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2012;62:488.
168. Healy W, Bradford CR. Neck dissection and laryngectomy. In: Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
169. Robbins KT, et al. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2008;134:536.
170. Eliachar I, et al. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 1994;110:242. discussion, p 245.
171. Weber RK, et al. *Am J Rhinol Allergy*. 2010;24:132.
172. Suzuki M, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 2011;121:2399.
173. Wang EW, et al. *Int Forum Allergy Rhinol*. 2011;1:493.
174. Westermark A. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2010;39:951.
175. Singh V, et al. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2011;40:260.
176. Bulgannawar BA, et al. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2011;69:1031.
177. Rampil IJ. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:424.
178. Sheinbein DS, Loeb RG. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2010;28:485.
179. Van Der Spek AFL, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;60:709.
180. Absten GT. *Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am*. 1991;18:407.
181. Geyer M, et al. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 2010;267:87.
182. Stajner-Katusić S, et al. *Clin Linguist Phon*. 2008;22:857.
183. Friedrich G, et al. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 2007;264:1191.
184. Dailey S. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am*. 2006;39:11.
185. Zeitels SM, Healy GB. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:882.
186. Pereira CM, et al. *Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2012;62:563.
187. Ross G, et al. *J Plast Reconstr Aesthet Surg*. 2012;265:1165.
188. Pohlenz P, et al. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2012;41:739.
189. Bharti N. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2012;40:354.
190. Kumar KV, et al. *Indian J Endocrinol Metab*. 2012;16:664.
191. Keeratichananont W, et al. *J Med Assoc Thai*. 2012;95:752.
192. Rodrigues AJ, et al. *J Bras Pneumol*. 2012;38:138.
193. Tan AH, et al. *Chest*. 2012;141:809.
194. Daniel M, Cheng A. *Int J Pediatr*. 2012;859104:2012.
195. Cywinski JB, et al. Anesthetic care for face transplantation. In: Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
196. Shanmugarajah K, et al. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2012;20:291.

References

1. Martin RF, Wasan AD, Desai SP. An appraisal of William Thomas Green Morton's life as a narcissistic personality. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:10–14.
2. Robinson DH, Toledo AH. Historical development of modern anesthesia. *J Invest Surg*. 2012;25:141–149.
3. Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
4. Al-alami AA, Ayoub CM, Baraka AS. Laryngospasm: review of different prevention and treatment modalities. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18:281–288.
5. Al-alami AA, Zestos MM, Baraka AS. Pediatric laryngospasm: prevention and treatment. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:388–395.
6. Salem MR, Crystal GJ, Nimmagadda U. Understanding the mechanics of laryngospasm is crucial for proper treatment. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:441–442.
7. Apfelbaum RI, Kriskovich MD, Haller JR. On the incidence, cause, and prevention of recurrent laryngeal nerve palsies during anterior cervical spine surgery. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2000;25:2906–2912.
8. Cavo Jr JW. True vocal cord paralysis following intubation. *Laryngoscope*. 1985;95:1352–1359.
9. Brandwein M, Abramson AL, Shikowitz MJ. Bilateral vocal cord paralysis following endotracheal intubation. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 1986;112:877–882.
10. Wason R, Gupta P, Gogia AR. Bilateral adductor vocal cord paresis following endotracheal intubation for general anaesthesia. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2004;32:417–418.
11. Lim EK, Chia KS, Ng BK. Recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy following endotracheal intubation. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1987;15:342–345.
12. Tekin M, Acar GO, Kaytaz A, et al. Bilateral vocal cord paralysis secondary to head and neck surgery. *J Craniofac Surg*. 2012;23:135–137.
13. Chiang FY, Lee KW, Chen HC, et al. Standardization of intraoperative neuromonitoring of recurrent laryngeal nerve in thyroid operation. *World J Surg*. 2010;34:223–229.
14. Dralle H, Sekulla C, Lorenz K, et al. Intraoperative monitoring of the recurrent laryngeal nerve in thyroid surgery. *World J Surg*. 2008;32:1358–1366.
15. Chiang FY, Lu IC, Kuo WR, et al. The mechanism of recurrent laryngeal nerve injury during thyroid surgery: the application of intraoperative neuromonitoring. *Surgery*. 2008;143:743–749.
16. White PF, White LM, Monk T, et al. Perioperative care for the older outpatient undergoing ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:1190–1215.
17. Krenk L, Rasmussen LS, Hansen TB, et al. Delirium after fast-track hip and knee arthroplasty. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:607–611.
18. Guenther U, Radtke FM. Delirium in the postanaesthesia period. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:670–675.
19. Rosenblatt WH. Preoperative endoscopic airway examination (PEAE). In: Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
20. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Management of the Difficult Airway: Practice guidelines for management of the difficult airway: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Management of the Difficult Airway. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1269–1277. [Erratum in *Anesthesiology* 101:565, 2004].
21. Saxena S. The ASA difficult airway algorithm: is it time to include video laryngoscopy and discourage blind and multiple intubation attempts in the nonemergency pathway? *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1052.
22. Ezri T, Szmuk P, Warters RD, et al. Difficult airway management practice patterns among anesthesiologists practicing in the United States: have we made any progress? *J Clin Anesth*. 2003;15:418–422.
23. Combes X, Le Roux B, Suen P, et al. Unanticipated difficult airway in anesthetized patients: prospective validation of a management algorithm. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:1146–1150.
24. Sudrial J, Birlouez C, Guillerm AL, et al. Difficult airway management algorithm in emergency medicine: do not struggle against the patient, just skip to next step. *Emerg Med Int*. 2010;2010:826231.
25. Heard AM, Green RJ, Eakins P. The formulation and introduction of a "can't intubate, can't ventilate" algorithm into clinical practice. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:601–608.
26. Rosenblatt WH. The airway approach algorithm: a decision tree for organizing preoperative airway information. *J Clin Anesth*. 2004;16:312–316.
27. Crosby ET. An evidence-based approach to airway management: is there a role for clinical practice guidelines? *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(suppl 2):112–118.
28. Frova G, Sorbello M. Algorithms for difficult airway management: a review. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2009;75:201–209.
29. Adnet F, Borron SW, Racine SX, et al. The intubation difficulty scale (IDS): proposal and evaluation of a new score characterizing the complexity of endotracheal intubation. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1290–1297.
30. Benumof JL. Intubation difficulty scale: anticipated best use. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1273–1274.
31. Adnet F, Racine SX, Borron SW, et al. A survey of tracheal intubation difficulty in the operating room: a prospective observational study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:327–332.
32. Lavi R, Segal D, Ziser A. Predicting difficult airways using the intubation difficulty scale: a study comparing obese and non-obese patients. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21:264–267.
33. McElwain J, Simpkin A, Newell J, Laffey JG. Determination of the utility of the intubation difficulty scale for use with indirect laryngoscopes. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:1127–1133.
34. Miller JA, Levsky ME, Givens ML, Miller MA. Eschmann introducer through laryngeal mask airway: a cadaveric trial of an alternate means of rescue intubation. *West J Emerg Med*. 2010;11:16–19.
35. Harvey K, Davies R, Evans A, et al. A comparison of the use of Trachlight and Eschmann multiple-use introducer in simulated difficult intubation. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:76–81.
36. Heegaard WG, Black C, Pasquerella C, Miner J. Use of the endotracheal tube introducer as an adjunct for oral tracheal intubation in the prehospital setting. *Air Med J*. 2003;22:28–31.
37. Chung YT, Wu HS, Lin YH, et al. Frequent use of alternative airway techniques makes difficult intubations less and easier. *Acta Anaesthesiol Taiwan*. 2004;42:141–145.
38. Sahin M, Anglade D, Buchberger M, et al. Case reports: iatrogenic bronchial rupture following the use of endotracheal tube introducers. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59:963–967.
39. Eschertzhuber S, Brimacombe J, Hohlrieder M, et al. Gum elastic bougie-guided insertion of the ProSeal laryngeal mask airway is superior to the digital and introducer tool techniques in patients with simulated difficult laryngoscopy using a rigid neck collar. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1253–1256.
40. Healy DW, Picton P, Morris M, Turner C. Comparison of the GlideScope, C-MAC, Storz DCI with the Macintosh laryngoscope during simulated difficult laryngoscopy: a manikin study. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2012;12:11.
41. Andersen LH, Rovsing L, Olsen KS. GlideScope videolaryngoscope vs. Macintosh direct laryngoscope for intubation of morbidly obese patients: a randomized trial. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:1090–1097.
42. Gaszyński T. Clinical experience with the C-MAC videolaryngoscope in morbidly obese patients. *Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther*. 2014;46:14–16.
43. Griesdale DE, Liu D, McKinney J, Choi PT. GlideScope® videolaryngoscopy versus direct laryngoscopy for endotracheal intubation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Can J Anaesth*. 2012;59:41–52.
44. Kim HJ, Kim JT, Kim HS, Kim CS. A comparison of GlideScope videolaryngoscopy with direct laryngoscopy for nasotracheal intubation in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:1165–1166.
45. Jeon WJ, Kim KH, Yeom JH, et al. A comparison of the Glidescope® to the McGrath® videolaryngoscope in patients. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2011;61:19–23.
46. Huang J, Chase C. The GlideScope in current clinical practice. *J Clin Anesth*. 2011;23:427.
47. Corso RM, Piraccini E, Agnoletti V, Gambale G. Comparison of video laryngoscopes with direct laryngoscopy for tracheal intubation: some clarification needed. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29:495–496.
48. Viernes D, Goldman AJ, Galgon RE, Joffe AM. Evaluation of the GlideScope Direct: a new video laryngoscope for teaching direct laryngoscopy. *Anesthesiol Res Pract*. 2012;2012:820961.
49. Aziz MF, Kim D, Mako J, et al. A retrospective study of the performance of video laryngoscopy in an obstetric unit. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:904–906.

50. Noppens RR, Geimer S, Eisel N, et al. T. Endotracheal intubation using the C-MAC® video laryngoscope or the Macintosh laryngoscope: a prospective, comparative study in the ICU. *Crit Care*. 2012;16:R103.
51. Abdelmalak BB, Bernstein E, Egan C, et al. GlideScope® vs flexible fibreoptic scope for elective intubation in obese patients. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:550–555.
52. Abdelmalak B, Marcanthony N, Abdelmalak J, et al. Dexmedetomidine for anesthetic management of anterior mediastinal mass. *J Anesth*. 2010;24:607–610.
53. Carollo DS, Nossaman BD, Ramadhyani U. Dexmedetomidine: a review of clinical applications. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2008;21:457–461.
54. Arcangeli A, D'Alò C, Gaspari R. Dexmedetomidine use in general anaesthesia. *Curr Drug Targets*. 2009;10:687–695.
55. Shukry M, Miller JA. Update on dexmedetomidine: use in nonintubated patients requiring sedation for surgical procedures. *Ther Clin Risk Manag*. 2010;6:111–121.
56. Doyle DJ. Awake intubation using the GlideScope video laryngoscope: initial experience in four cases. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51:520–521.
57. Boedeker BH, Bernhagen MA, Miller DJ, Doyle DJ. Comparison of the Magill forceps and the Boedeker (curved) intubation forceps for removal of a foreign body in a manikin. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24:25–27.
58. Greenberger PA. Anaphylactic and anaphylactoid causes of angioedema. *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am*. 2006;26:753–767.
59. Krassilnikova SI, Nikiforov YS, Craig TJ. Treatment of hereditary angioedema: current perspectives. *Recent Pat Inflamm Allergy Drug Discov*. 2008;2:166–174.
60. Shah RK, Stocks C. Epiglottitis in the United States: national trends, variances, prognosis, and management. *Laryngoscope*. 2010;120:1256–1262.
61. D'Agostino J. Pediatric airway nightmares. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2010;28:119–126.
62. Jenkins IA, Saunders M. Infections of the airway. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(suppl 1):118–130.
63. Guldfred LA, Lyhne D, Becker BC. Acute epiglottitis: epidemiology, clinical presentation, management and outcome. *J Laryngol Otol*. 2008;122:818–823.
64. Glynn F, Fenton JE. Diagnosis and management of supraglottitis (epiglottitis). *Curr Infect Dis Rep*. 2008;10:200–204.
65. Tibballs J, Watson T. Symptoms and signs differentiating croup and epiglottitis. *J Paediatr Child Health*. 2011;47:77–82.
66. Sobol SE, Zapata S. Epiglottitis and croup. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am*. 2008;41:551–566. ix.
67. Ames WA, Ward VM, Tranter RM, Street M. Adult epiglottitis: an under-recognized, life-threatening condition. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:795–797.
68. Reilly BK, Reilly JS. Retropharyngeal abscess: diagnosis and treatment update. *Infect Disord Drug Targets*. 2012;12:291–296.
69. Haug RH, Picard U, Indresano AT. Diagnosis and treatment of the retropharyngeal abscess in adults. *Br J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 1990;28:34–38.
70. Osborn TM, Assael LA, Bell RB. Deep space neck infection: principles of surgical management. *Oral Maxillofac Surg Clin North Am*. 2008;20:353–365.
71. Philpott CM, Selvadurai D, Banerjee AR. Paediatric retropharyngeal abscess. *J Laryngol Otol*. 2004;118:919–926.
72. Hari MS, Nirvala KD. Retropharyngeal abscess presenting with upper airway obstruction. *Anaesthesia*. 2003;58:714–715.
73. Stein S, Daud AS. Retropharyngeal abscess: an unusual complication of tracheal intubation. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1999;16:133–136.
74. Gaglani MJ, Edwards MS. Clinical indicators of childhood retropharyngeal abscess. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1995;13:333–336.
75. Hasan W, Leonard D, Russell J. Ludwig's angina: a controversial surgical emergency. How we do it. *Int J Otolaryngol*. 2011;2011:231816.
76. Greenberg SL, Huang J, Chang RS, Ananda SN. Surgical management of Ludwig's angina. *ANZ J Surg*. 2007;77:540–543.
77. Kulkarni AH, Pai SD, Bhattarai B, et al. Ludwig's angina and airway considerations: a case report. *Cases J*. 2008;1(19):2008.
78. Loughnan TE, Allen DE. Ludwig's angina: the anaesthetic management of nine cases. *Anaesthesia*. 1985;40:295–297.
79. Allen D, Loughnan TE, Ord RA. A re-evaluation of the role of tracheostomy in Ludwig's angina. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 1985;43:436–439.
80. Shadmehr MB, Farzanegan R, Graili P, et al. Primary major airway tumors: management and results. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2011;39:749–754.
81. Hartl DM, Ferlito A, Brasnu DF, et al. Evidence-based review of treatment options for patients with glottic cancer. *Head Neck*. 2011;33:1638–1648.
82. Rigby MH, Taylor SM. Review of transoral laser microsurgery for cancer of the upper aerodigestive tract. *J Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2011;40:113–121.
83. Lucioni M, Marioni G, Bertolin A, et al. Glottic laser surgery: outcomes according to 2007 ELS classification. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 2011;268:1771–1778.
84. Martins RH, Defaveri J, Domingues MA. Vocal polyps: clinical, morphological, and immunohistochemical aspects. *J Voice*. 2011;25:98–106.
85. Kim HT, Auo HJ. Office-based 585 nm pulsed dye laser treatment for vocal polyps. *Acta Otolaryngol*. 2008;128:1043–1047.
86. Dikkers FG, Nikkels PG. Benign lesions of the vocal folds: histopathology and phonotrauma. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol*. 1995;104:698–703.
87. Johns MM. Update on the etiology, diagnosis, and treatment of vocal fold nodules, polyps, and cysts. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2003;11:456–461.
88. Martins RH, Santana MF, Tavares EL. Vocal cysts: clinical, endoscopic, and surgical aspects. *J Voice*. 2011;25:107–110.
89. Chowdhury FR, Reddy N, Sataloff RT. Hemorrhage into a vocal fold cyst. *Ear Nose Throat J*. 2011;90:566–570.
90. Aksoy EA, Elsürer C, Serin GM, Unal OF. Evaluation of pediatric subglottic cysts. *Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol*. 2012;76:240–243.
91. Schultz P. Vocal fold cancer. *Eur Ann Otorhinolaryngol Head Neck Dis*. 2011;128:301–308.
92. Kamani T, Sama A. Management of nasal polyps in "aspirin sensitive asthma" triad. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2011;19:6–10.
93. Zeitz HJ. Bronchial asthma, nasal polyps, and aspirin sensitivity: Samter's syndrome. *Clin Chest Med*. 1988;9:567–576.
94. Li SQ, Chen JL, Fu HB, et al. Airway management in pediatric patients undergoing suspension laryngoscopic surgery for severe laryngeal obstruction caused by papillomatosis. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20:1084–1091.
95. Bo L, Wang B, Shu SY. Anesthesia management in pediatric patients with laryngeal papillomatosis undergoing suspension laryngoscopic surgery and a review of the literature. *Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol*. 2011;75:1442–1445.
96. Burns JA, Zeitels SM, Akst LM, et al. 532 nm pulsed potassium-titanyl-phosphate laser treatment of laryngeal papillomatosis under general anesthesia. *Laryngoscope*. 2007;117:1500–1504.
97. Mikkelsen PG. Laryngeal papillomatosis with airway obstruction in an infant. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:645–648.
98. Theroux MC, Grodecki V, Reilly JS, Kettrick RG. Juvenile laryngeal papillomatosis: scary anaesthetic!. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1998;8:357–361.
99. Depierraz B, Ravussin P, Brossard E, Monnier P. Percutaneous transtracheal jet ventilation for paediatric endoscopic laser treatment of laryngeal and subglottic lesions. *Can J Anaesth*. 1994;41:1200–1207.
100. Putti S, McGuire B, Laverick S. Postoperative management of the airway with a Ravussin cricothyroid cannula in head and neck surgery. *Br J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2009;47:627–628.
101. Lai HC, Juang SE, Liu TJ, Ho WM. Fires of endotracheal tubes of three different materials during carbon dioxide laser surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Sin*. 2002;40:47–51.
102. Sesterhenn AM, Dünne AA, Braulke D, et al. Value of endotracheal tube safety in laryngeal laser surgery. *Lasers Surg Med*. 2003;32:384–390.
103. Biro P. Jet ventilation for surgical interventions in the upper airway. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2010;28:397–409.
104. Cook TM, Alexander R. Major complications during anaesthesia for elective laryngeal surgery in the UK: a national survey of the use of high-pressure source ventilation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:266–272.
105. Hunsaker DH. Anesthesia for microlaryngeal surgery: the case for subglottic jet ventilation. *Laryngoscope*. 1994;104(suppl 65):1–30.

106. Davies JM, Hillel AD, Maronian NC, Posner KL. The Hunsaker Mon-Jet tube with jet ventilation is effective for microlaryngeal surgery. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56:284–290.
107. Gulleth Y, Spiro J. Percutaneous transtracheal jet ventilation in head and neck surgery. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2005;131: 886–890.
108. Bourgain JL, Desruennes E, Fischler M, Ravussin P. Transtracheal high frequency jet ventilation for endoscopic airway surgery: a multicentre study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:870–875.
109. Ross-Anderson DJ, Ferguson C, Patel A. Transtracheal jet ventilation in 50 patients with severe airway compromise and stridor. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:140–144.
110. Bould MD, Bearfield P. Techniques for emergency ventilation through a needle cricothyroidotomy. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:535–539.
111. Leiter R, Aliverti A, Priori R, et al. Comparison of superimposed high-frequency jet ventilation with conventional jet ventilation for laryngeal surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:690–697.
112. Elkassabany N, Garcia F, Tschabrunn C, et al. Anesthetic management of patients undergoing pulmonary vein isolation for treatment of atrial fibrillation using high-frequency jet ventilation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26:433–438.
113. Eng RM, Kaplan MB. Anesthesia for ENT trauma. In: Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
114. Anwari JS, Bhatti J. Use of laryngeal mask airway for the care of rhinoplasty. *Saudi Med J*. 2005;26:494–495.
115. Wadhwa R, Kalra S. Negative pressure pulmonary oedema after rhinoplasty. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2010;54:363–364.
116. Anderson PJ, Nizam M. Septorhinoplasty under general anaesthesia. *Rhinology*. 1998;36:204.
117. Dogan R, Erbek S, Gonencer HH, et al. Comparison of local anaesthesia with dexmedetomidine sedation and general anaesthesia during septoplasty. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:960–964.
118. Ashchi M, Wiedemann HP, James KB. Cardiac complication from use of cocaine and phenylephrine in nasal septoplasty. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 1995;121:681–684.
119. Hsu J, Peters AT. Pathophysiology of chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyp. *Am J Rhinol Allergy*. 2011;25:285–290.
120. Aouad RK, Chiu AG. State of the art treatment of nasal polyposis. *Am J Rhinol Allergy*. 2011;25:291–298.
121. To EW, Tsang WM, Yiu F, Chan M. A missing throat pack. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:383–384.
122. Higgins TS, Hwang PH, Kingdom TT, et al. Systematic review of topical vasoconstrictors in endoscopic sinus surgery. *Laryngoscope*. 2011;121:422–432.
123. Latorre F, Klimek L. Does cocaine still have a role in nasal surgery? *Drug Saf*. 1999;20:9–13.
124. Macmillan M, Barker K. Phenylephrine toxicity. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2008;25:426–427.
125. Graf P. Oxymetazoline nasal spray. *Laryngoscope*. 1998;108:1255.
126. Aukema AA, Fokkens WJ. Chronic rhinosinusitis: management for optimal outcomes. *Treat Respir Med*. 2004;3:97–105.
127. Johnson PE, Belafsky PC, Postma GN. Topical nasal anesthesia for transnasal fiberoptic laryngoscopy: a prospective, double-blind, cross-over study. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2003;128:452–454.
128. Arendt KW, Khan K, Curry TB, Tsen LC. Topical vasoconstrictor use for nasal intubation during pregnancy complicated by cardiomyopathy and preeclampsia. *Int J Obstet Anesth*. 2011;20:246–249.
129. Loewen AH, Hudon ME, Hill MD. Thunderclap headache and reversible segmental cerebral vasoconstriction associated with use of oxymetazoline nasal spray. *CMAJ*. 2004;171:593–594.
130. Isaacson G. Tonsillectomy care for the pediatrician. *Pediatrics*. 2012;130:324–334.
131. Statham MM, Myer 3rd CM. Complications of adenotonsillectomy. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2010;18:539–543.
132. Arweiler-Harbeck D, Oztürk E, Bankfalvi A, et al. Posttonsillectomy hemorrhage: blame on surgeons or genes? *Laryngoscope*. 2010;120:1784–1787.
133. Windfuhr JP, Schloendorff G, Baburi D, Kremer B. Life-threatening posttonsillectomy hemorrhage. *Laryngoscope*. 2008;118:1389–1394.
134. Baker AR, Baker AB. Anaesthesia for endoscopic sinus surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54:795–803.
135. Amorocho MR, Sordillo A. Anesthesia for functional endoscopic sinus surgery: a review. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2010;28:497–504.
136. Ankichetty SP, Ponniah M, Cherian V, et al. Comparison of total intravenous anesthesia using propofol and inhalational anesthesia using isoflurane for controlled hypotension in functional endoscopic sinus surgery. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;27:328–332.
137. Eberhart LH, Folz BJ, Wulf H, Geldner G. Intravenous anesthesia provides optimal surgical conditions during microscopic and endoscopic sinus surgery. *Laryngoscope*. 2003;113:1369–1373.
138. Luba K, Cutter TW. Supraglottic airway devices in the ambulatory setting. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2010;28:295–314.
139. Russell T, Cooper RM. Anesthesia for thyroid and parathyroid surgery. In: Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
140. Nayak B, Burman K. Thyrotoxicosis and thyroid storm. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am*. 2006;35:663–686. vii.
141. Burch HB, Wartofsky L. Life-threatening thyrotoxicosis: thyroid storm. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am*. 1993;22:263–277.
142. Kumar KV, Saini M, Kapoor U, Banga P. Massive multinodular goiter with stridor. *Indian J Endocrinol Metab*. 2012;16:664–665.
143. Shaha A, Alfonso A, Jaffe BM. Acute airway distress due to thyroid pathology. *Surgery*. 1987;102:1068–1074.
144. Singer MC, Rosenfeld RM, Sundaram K. Laryngeal nerve monitoring: current utilization among head and neck surgeons. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2012;146:895–899.
145. Cernea CR, Brandão LG, Brandão J. Neuromonitoring in thyroid surgery. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2012;20:125–129.
146. Dionigi G, Bacuzzi A, Boni L, et al. Visualization versus neuromonitoring of recurrent laryngeal nerves during thyroidectomy: what about the costs? *World J Surg*. 2012;36:748–754.
147. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Practice advisory for the prevention and management of operating room fires: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on operating room fires. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118.
148. Allen AH, Is IV access necessary for myringotomy with tubes? *Ear Nose Throat J*. 2007;86:672–674. 681.
149. Zbar AP, Hill AD, Shering SG, et al. A 25-year review of parotid surgery. *Ir Med J*. 1997;90:228–230.
150. Jones R. Surgical management of parotid disease. *Ann R Australas Coll Dent Surg*. 2000;15:357–362.
151. Witt RL. Minimally invasive surgery for parotid pleomorphic adenoma. *Ear Nose Throat J*. 2005;84(308):310–311.
152. Reece PH, Papesch ME, Tolley NS. Superficial parotidectomy under local anaesthesia. *J Laryngol Otol*. 2000;114:983–984.
153. Porhomayon J, El-Solh A, Chhangani S, Nader ND. The management of surgical patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Lung*. 2011;189:359–367.
154. Dhanda Patil R, Patil YJ. Perioperative management of obstructive sleep apnea: a survey of Veterans Affairs health care providers. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2012;146:156–161.
155. Ankichetty S, Wong J, Chung F. A systematic review of the effects of sedatives and anesthetics in patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2011;27:447–458.
156. Chung F, Subramanyam R, Liao P, et al. High STOP-Bang score indicates a high probability of obstructive sleep apnoea. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:768–775.
157. Vasu TS, Grewal R, Doghramji K. Obstructive sleep apnea syndrome and perioperative complications: a systematic review of the literature. *J Clin Sleep Med*. 2012;8:199–207.
158. Ankichetty S, Chung F. Considerations for patients with obstructive sleep apnea undergoing ambulatory surgery. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:605–611.
159. Khanna A, Wood B, Abdelmalak B. Anesthesia for Zenker's diverticulectomy. In: Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
160. Thiagarajah S, Lear E, Keh M. Anesthetic implications of Zenker's diverticulum. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:109–111.
161. Salvino CK, Dries D, Gamelli R, et al. Emergency cricothyroidotomy in trauma victims. *J Trauma*. 1993;34:503–505.
162. Fortune JB, Judkins DG, Scanzaroli D, et al. Efficacy of prehospital surgical cricothyrotomy in trauma patients. *J Trauma*. 1997;42:832–836. discussion, pp 837-838.
163. Engels PT, Bagshaw SM, Meier M, Brindley PG. Tracheostomy: from insertion to decannulation. *Can J Surg*. 2009;52:427–433.

164. Davidson SB, Blostein PA, Walsh J, et al. Percutaneous tracheostomy: a new approach to the emergency airway. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;73(suppl 1):S83–S88.
165. Haspel AC, Coviello VF, Stevens M. Retrospective study of tracheostomy indications and perioperative complications on oral and maxillofacial surgery service. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2012;70:890–895.
166. Dulguerov P, Gysin C, Perneger TV, Chevrolet JC. Percutaneous or surgical tracheostomy: a meta-analysis. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27:1617–1625.
167. Kim WH, Kim BH. Bilateral pneumothoraces, pneumomediastinum, pneumoperitoneum, pneumoretroperitoneum, and subcutaneous emphysema after percutaneous tracheostomy: a case report. *Korean J Anesthesiol*. 2012;62:488–492.
168. Healy W, Bradford CR. Neck dissection and laryngectomy. In: Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
169. Robbins KT, Shaha AR, Medina JE, et al. Consensus statement on the classification and terminology of neck dissection. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2008;134:536–538.
170. Eliachar I, Wood BG, Lavertu P, Tucker HM. Improved endoscopic technique for establishment of tracheo-esophageal puncture. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 1994;110:242–245. discussion, pp 245-246.
171. Weber RK, Werner JA, Hildenbrand T. Endonasal endoscopic medial maxillectomy with preservation of the inferior turbinate. *Am J Rhinol Allergy*. 2010;24:132–135.
172. Suzuki M, Nakamura Y, Nakayama M, et al. Modified transnasal endoscopic medial maxillectomy with medial shift of preserved inferior turbinate and nasolacrimal duct. *Laryngoscope*. 2011;121:2399–2401.
173. Wang EW, Gullung JL, Schlosser RJ. Modified endoscopic medial maxillectomy for recalcitrant chronic maxillary sinusitis. *Int Forum Allergy Rhinol*. 2011;1:493–497.
174. Westermark A. Total reconstruction of the temporomandibular joint: up to 8 years of follow-up of patients treated with Biomet(®) total joint prostheses. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2010;39:951–955.
175. Singh V, Verma A, Kumar I, Bhagol A. Reconstruction of ankylosed temporomandibular joint: sternoclavicular grafting as an approach to management. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2011;40:260–265.
176. Bulgannawar BA, Rai BD, Nair MA, Kalola R. Use of temporalis fascia as an interpositional arthroplasty in temporomandibular joint ankylosis: analysis of 8 cases. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2011;69:1031–1035.
177. Rampil IJ. Anesthetic considerations for laser surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:424–435.
178. Sheinbein DS, Loeb RG. Laser surgery and fire hazards in ear, nose, and throat surgeries. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2010;28:485–496.
179. Van Der Spek AFL, Spargo PM, Norton ML. The physics of lasers and implications for their use during airway surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;60:709–729.
180. Absten GT. Physics of light and lasers. *Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am*. 1991;18:407–427.
181. Geyer M, Ledda GP, Tan N, et al. Carbon dioxide laser-assisted phonosurgery for benign glottic lesions. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 2010;267:87–93.
182. Stajner-Katusić S, Horga D, Zrinski KV. A longitudinal study of voice before and after phonosurgery for removal of a polyp. *Clin Linguist Phon*. 2008:857–863. 10-11.
183. Friedrich G, Remacle M, Birchall M, et al. Defining phonosurgery: a proposal for classification and nomenclature by the Phonosurgery Committee of the European Laryngological Society (ELS). *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 2007;264:1191–1200.
184. Dailey S. Diagnostic and therapeutic pitfalls in phonosurgery. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am*. 2006;39:11–22.
185. Zeitels SM, Healy GB. Laryngology and phonosurgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;349:882–892.
186. Pereira CM, Figueiredo ME, Carvalho R, et al. Anesthesia and surgical microvascular flaps. *Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2012;62:563–579.
187. Ross G, Yla-Kotola TM, Goldstein D, et al. Second free flaps in head and neck reconstruction. *J Plast Reconstr Aesthet Surg*. 2012;65:1165–1168.
188. Pohlenz P, Klatt J, Schön G, et al. Microvascular free flaps in head and neck surgery: complications and outcome of 1000 flaps. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2012;41:739–743.
189. Bharti N. Dexmedetomidine for the treatment of severe postoperative functional stridor. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2012;40:354–355.
190. Kumar KV, Saini M, Kapoor U, Banga P. Massive multinodular goiter with stridor. *Indian J Endocrinol Metab*. 2012;16:664–665.
191. Keeratichananont W, Limthong T, Keeratichananont S. Cuff leak volume as a clinical predictor for identifying post-extubation stridor. *J Med Assoc Thai*. 2012;95:752–755.
192. Rodrigues AJ, Cardoso SR, Cereda DC, Gonçalves ME. Subglottic cyst: a rare cause of laryngeal stridor. *J Bras Pneumol*. 2012;38:138–139.
193. Tan AH, Low SY, Al Jajeh I. An elderly woman with stridor. *Chest*. 2012;141:809–813.
194. Daniel M, Cheng A. Neonatal stridor. *Int J Pediatr*. 2012;2012: 859104.
195. Cywinski JB, Edrich T, Doyle DJ. Anesthetic care for face transplantation. In: Abdelmalak B, Doyle DJ, eds. *Anesthesia for Otolaryngologic Surgery*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2012.
196. Shanmugarajah K, Hettiaratchy S, Butler PE. Facial transplantation. *Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2012;20:291–297.

71

Anesthesia for Robotic Surgery

DAN B. ELLIS and MEREDITH A. ALBRECHT

KEY POINTS:

- Robotic surgery has witnessed explosive growth. Currently (2018) more than 3 million procedures have been performed using the da Vinci system worldwide.[1]
- Robotic surgery is not true autonomous surgery but instead the robot is used as mechanical “helping hands” aiding skilled surgeons.
- By creating three-dimensional views, allowing increased movement of laparoscopic instruments within a patient’s body, and allowing precise movements, robotic surgery can enhance a surgeon’s ability to visualize pathologies and to perform complex procedures.
- Given the size of robotic equipment and the need for specific patient position during procedures, robotic surgery may present unique challenges for anesthesia providers.
- To facilitate surgical exposure, robotic surgery often requires insufflation of a body cavity with carbon dioxide. Insufflation and resorption of carbon dioxide can lead to a variety of physiologic changes.
- Robotic surgery has been successfully used to care for patients receiving urologic, gynecologic, colorectal, hepatobiliary, otolaryngologic, cardiac, and thoracic procedures.

What Is a Robot?

According to Merriam-Webster, a robot is “a machine that resembles a living creature in being capable of moving independently (as by walking or rolling on wheels) and performing complex actions (such as grasping and moving objects).” Developed in the 1980s by the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA), a robot is a remotely controlled device that allows tasks to be performed in spaces removed from human presence. Eventually, robots began to perform tasks aboard NASA spaceships. While the initial concept of robotic science was useful in space exploration, the U.S. government began looking for other applications of the technology.

The US Department of Defense (DOD) began working to apply the robots that were useful in space to the battlefield. Recognizing that an inordinate number of American soldiers died on the battlefield from hemorrhage or untreated surgical wounds, the DOD looked to use these technologies in surgical theaters. With the goal of having a surgeon remotely operate on patients in difficult-to-reach locations, the military invested in developing remotely controlled articulating arms that could perform surgical procedures.

At the same time, the world’s first laparoscopic cholecystectomy was performed in France. This procedure forever altered the course of traditional surgery, and the minimally invasive era of surgical procedures began.

Over the next decade, several companies developed a variety of medical robots and rapidly advanced the science. The first such device appeared in the early 1990s, when an instrument was created to pulverize bone and create space for hip prosthesis during orthopedic surgery.

As work progressed on creating devices to perform procedures, work also continued on allowing remote control of devices. In the mid-1990s, voice recognition software was used to control a laparoscope’s position and to aid in organ retraction during traditional laparoscopic surgery. This device, called Automated Endoscopic System for Optimal Positioning (AESOP), is still available today (Fig. 71.1). In many ways, this device was the precursor to the smart devices in our homes and on our persons.

Arguably the greatest advancement in robotic surgery occurred in 1991 when a master-slave version of a robot was developed. This device allowed a surgeon to sit apart from his/her patient and remotely control articulating arms. Two similar devices, the da Vinci Robotic Surgical System, and the ZEUS Surgical System, appeared on the market at similar times. The parent company of da Vinci, Intuitive Surgical, acquired the intellectual property rights to the ZEUS system and discontinued the product. As a result, only the da Vinci Robotic Surgical System is available for use today (Fig. 71.2).

Eventually, high-definition, three-dimensional cameras were added to robots, allowing surgeons to explore a patient’s anatomy and access traditionally difficult-to-reach surgical sites from a console located next to the operating table. While several robotic companies have developed products, at the moment, only two remain: AESOP and da Vinci.

The da Vinci robot has four components (Figs. 71.2 and 71.3):

1. Surgeon console (Figs. 71.4 to 71.6)
2. EndoWrist instruments (Figs. 71.7 and 71.8)
3. Optical vision cart
4. Patient cart with four movable arms (Fig. 71.9)

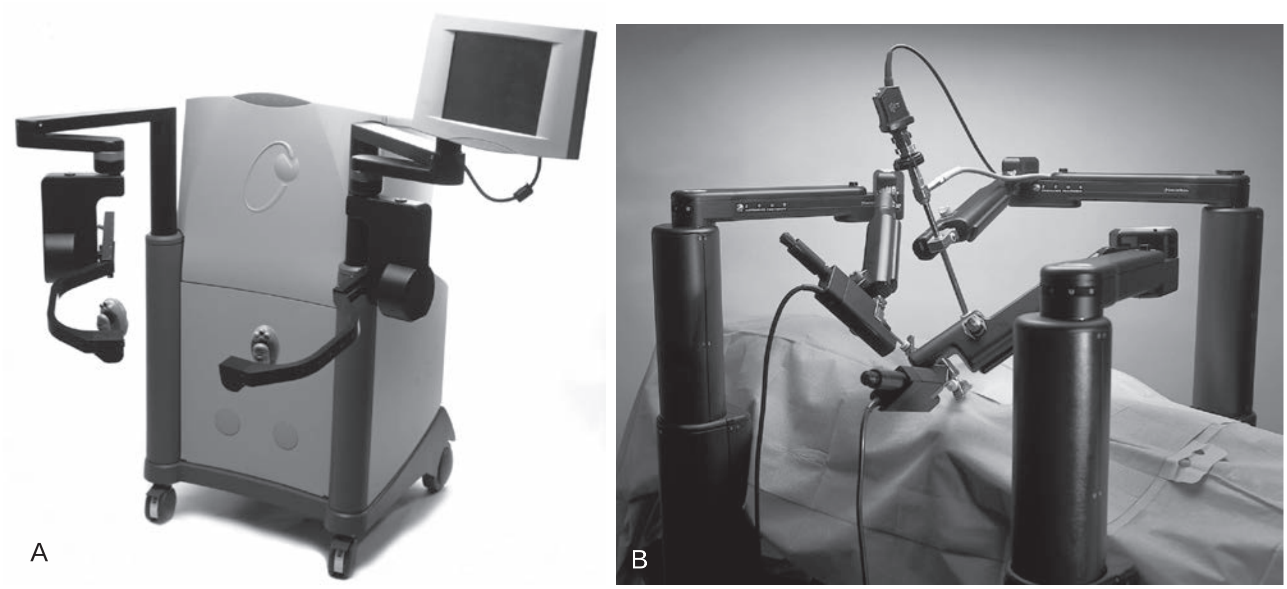


Fig. 71.1 (A) The console of the ZEUS robotic telemanipulation system consists of a video monitor and two instrument handles that translate the surgeon's hand motions into an electric signal that moves the robotic instruments. (B) Two table-mounted Automated Endoscopic System for Optimal Positioning (AESOP) arms hold instruments, and a third arm controls the camera. (Courtesy Computer Motion, Sunnyvale, CA, USA.)

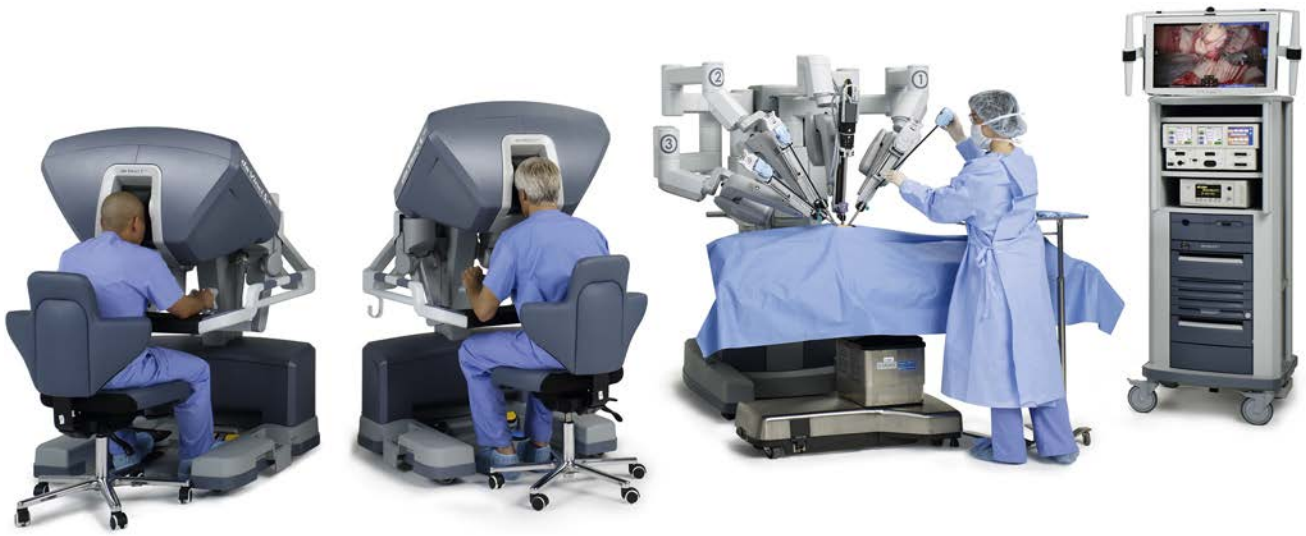


Fig. 71.2 The da Vinci Robotic Surgical System: two surgical consoles, patient-side cart with four mounted surgical arms, and an optical tower. (Courtesy Intuitive Surgical, Sunnyvale, CA, USA.)

The surgeon sits at the surgeon console (see Figs. 71.4 and 71.5) and remotely controls the EndoWrist instruments that are attached to the patient cart. Anesthesia personnel, surgical assistants, and circulating nursing staff may see the procedure in real time via the screen on the optical vision cart (see Fig. 71.2).

During an operation, the surgeon views two high-definition monitors that mimic a binocular or microscope. This two-monitor view creates three-dimensional images. The surgeon's arms rest on the master controls, and his/her fingers manipulate the levers that control EndoWrist articulation. Foot pedals control electrocautery, movement of the robotic camera, and disengagement of robotic instruments. To facilitate collaboration and training, the da Vinci machine will often have two consoles allowing two surgeons to participate in the patient's care.

Why Is the Robot Preferred?

The robot is preferred to open procedures because it allows a minimally invasive approach to surgical pathologies. Less tissue manipulation leads to fewer adhesions and potentially faster recovery from surgery. Fewer wound complications, including infections and incisional hernias, and shorter hospitalizations make robotic surgery attractive when compared to other minimally invasive or open techniques.[2] Further, the robotic approach to surgical procedures allows discrete movements that are helpful in microsurgical dissection and re-attachment of tissues. In comparison with human arms, robotic arms permit seven degrees of free movement. These movements can be categorized into: gross arm movement by the da Vinci robot, fine movements by the articulating arms,

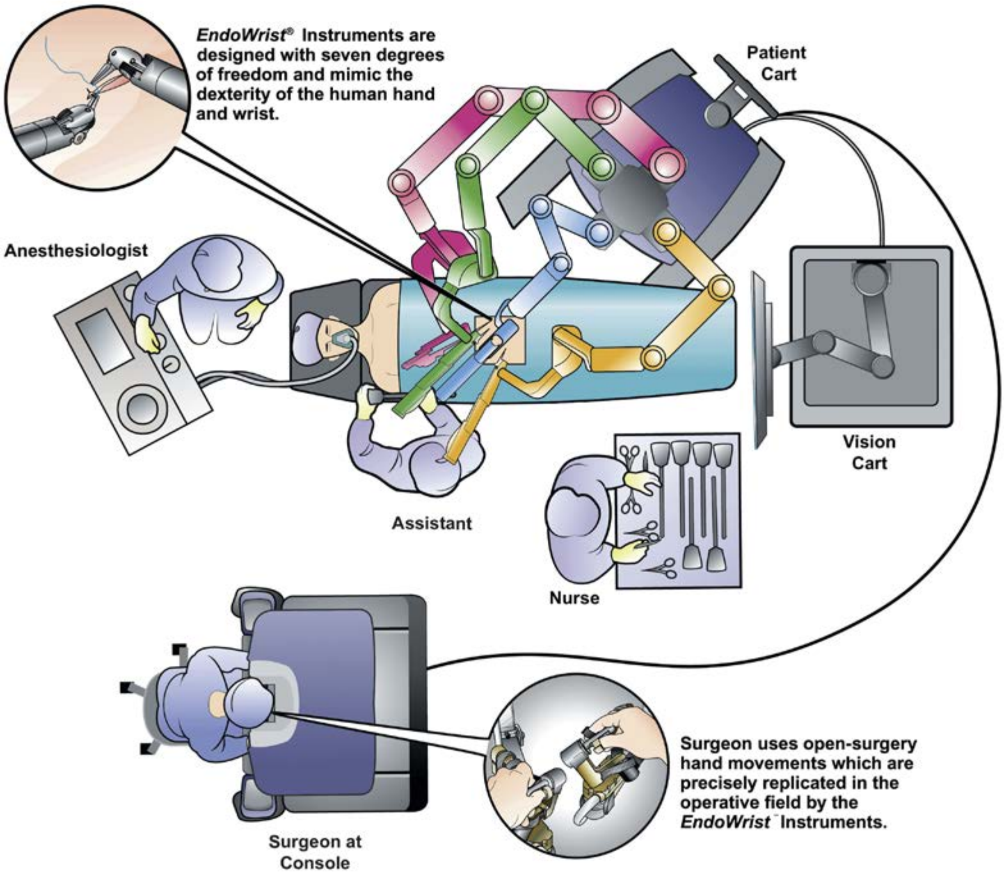

EndoWrist® Instruments are designed with seven degrees of freedom and mimic the dexterity of the human hand and wrist.
Patient Cart
Anesthesiologist
Vision Cart
Assistant
Nurse
Surgeon uses open-surgery hand movements which are precisely replicated in the operative field by the *EndoWrist*™ Instruments.
Surgeon at Console

Fig. 71.3 Operating room schematic of the use of a robotic surgical system in general surgery. (Courtesy Intuitive Surgical, Sunnyvale, CA, USA.)

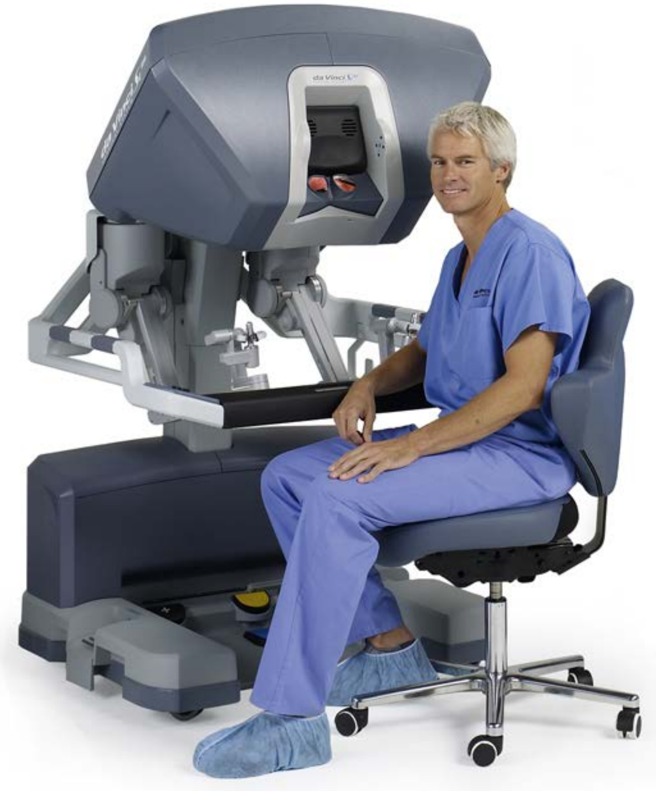


Fig. 71.4 The da Vinci Robotic Surgical System: the surgeon console. (Courtesy Intuitive Surgical, Sunnyvale, CA, USA.)

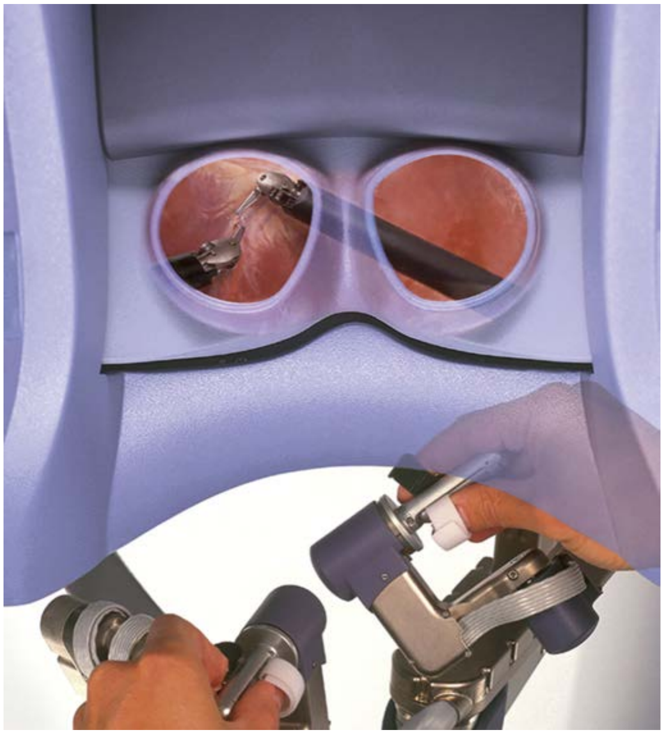


Fig. 71.5 The da Vinci Robotic Surgical System: stereo viewer that creates a virtual three-dimensional stereoscopic image. (Courtesy Intuitive Surgical, Sunnyvale, CA, USA.)

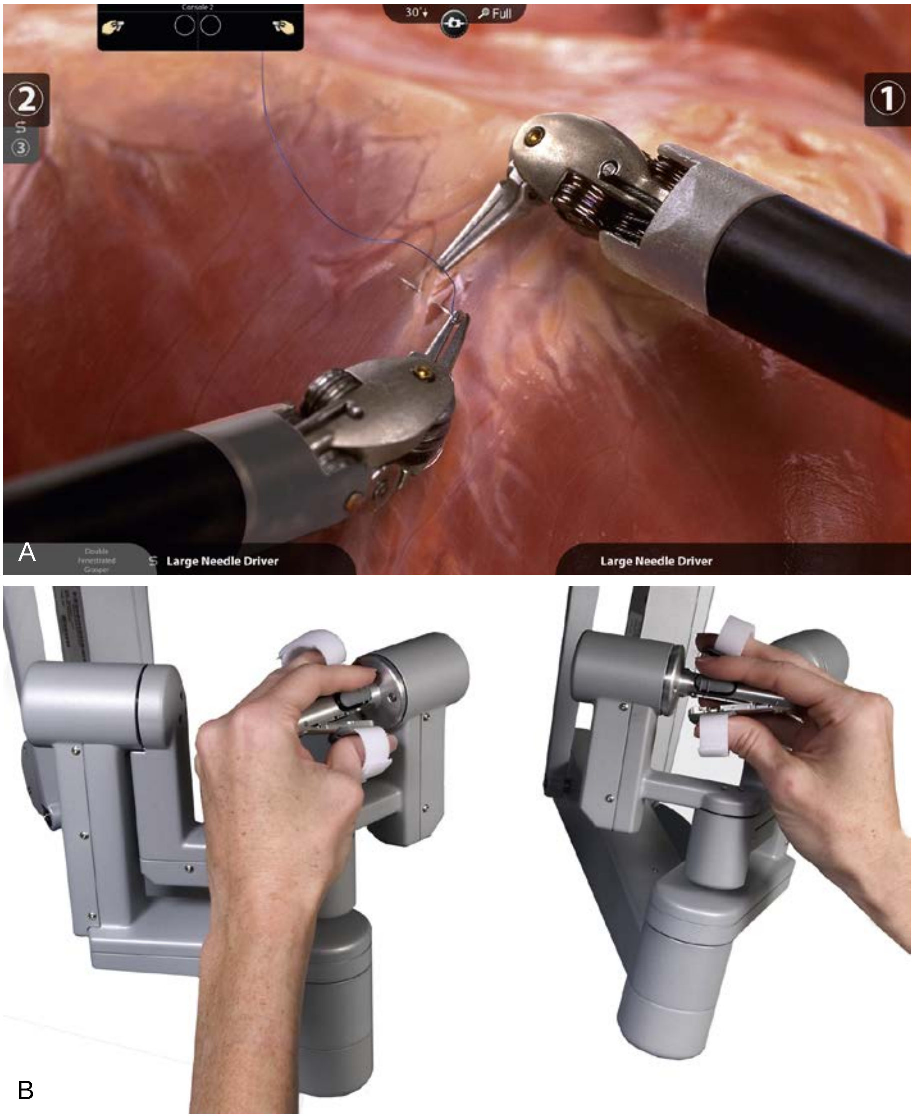


Fig. 71.6 The da Vinci Robotic Surgical System. (A) Virtual three-dimensional stereoscopic image of the surgical field. (B) Master controls that translate the surgeon's hand, wrist, and finger movement into real-time movements of surgical instruments inside the patient. (Courtesy Intuitive Surgical, Sunnyvale, CA, USA.)

and surgical actions performed by the articulating arms (Table 71.1, Figs. 71.7 and 71.8).

These articulating arms are not limited by constraints associated with human wrist joints. Additionally, the robot allows for larger, more coarse movements to be miniaturized in the operating field. For example, moving the controls by 5 mm may move the articulating arms by only 1 mm. This miniaturization permits more fine control. Furthermore, robotic software can reduce or eliminate hand tremors, thereby improving the safety and precision of surgery.

When Is the Robot Used?

The robot is used in hysterectomy, prostatectomy, nephrectomy, cardiac surgery, colectomy, general laparoscopic, thoracoscopic, and transoral otolaryngologic procedures. Although most procedures performed using the da Vinci robot are urologic (prostatectomy) and gynecologic (hysterectomy), a wide range of new applications are being discovered.

Essentially, robotic surgery is helpful whenever microsurgery is necessary and the target organ is difficult to reach. It is especially valuable if its usage converts what is traditionally an open procedure to a minimally invasive procedure.

Future Applications of Robotic Surgery

As imaging modalities and artificial intelligence are applied to robotic surgery, the field will evolve. It is probable that nonrigid, flexible articulating arms of progressively smaller size will ultimately replace the current, rigid articulating arms. "Snake-like" articulating arms will facilitate fewer and smaller incisions to be made in a patient and allow less invasive, perhaps even scar-free, surgery to be performed. Finally, as artificial intelligence evolves, it is possible that semi-autonomous robotic surgery will develop with computer algorithms guiding surgical instruments.

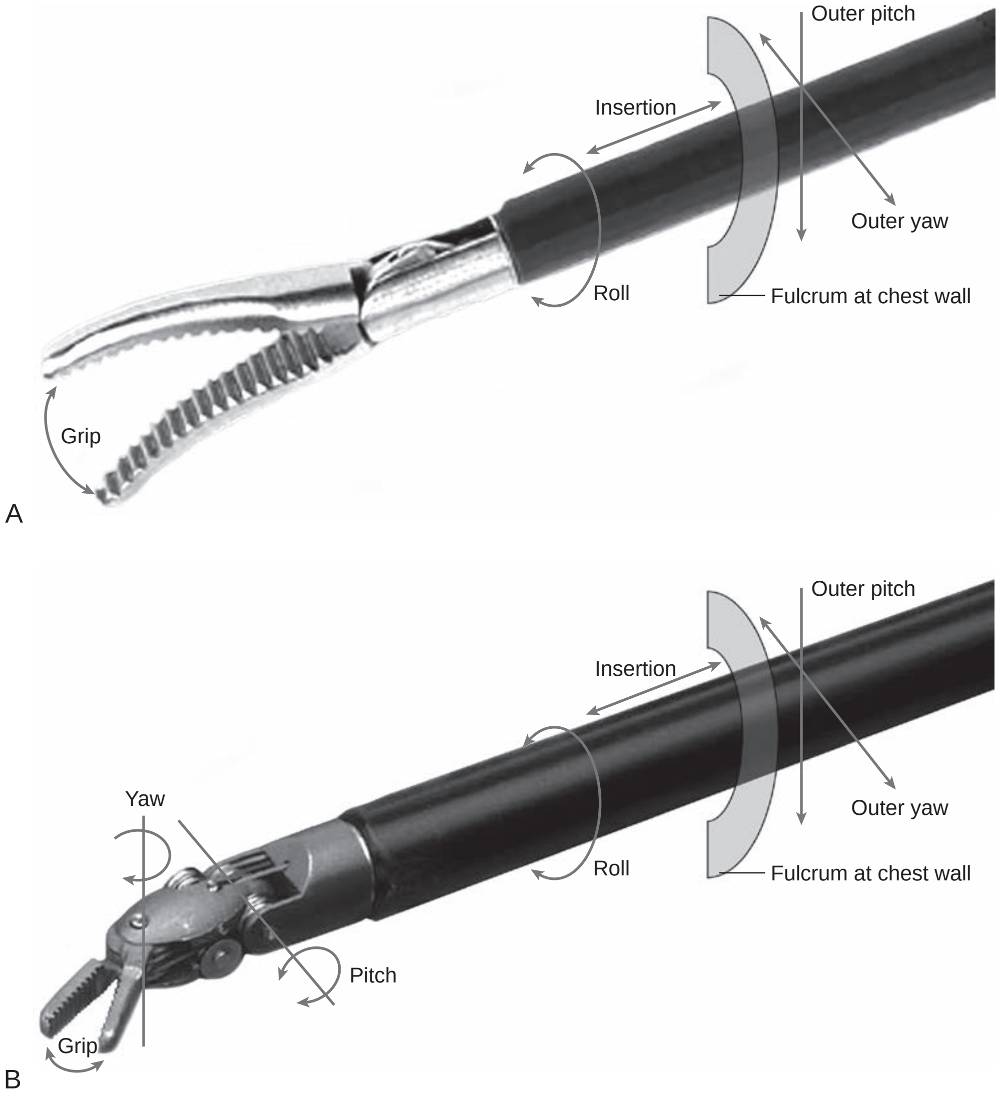


Fig. 71.7 Degrees of freedom (DOF) in motion. (A) Conventional laparoscopic instruments have only four DOF and grip. Insertion (i.e., movement in the *z*-axis), roll, and movement along the *x*- and *y*-axes outside the body relative to a fulcrum point constitute the four DOF. (B) Depiction of the EndoWrist instrument with two added intracorporeal joints, producing seven DOF. (Copyright 1999 Intuitive Surgical, Sunnyvale, CA, USA.)

ROBOTICALLY ASSISTED INTUBATION

There have been reports of successful robotic intubations. The Kepler Intubation System (KIS), developed by Thomas Hemmerling, has been shown to intubate mannequins successfully by an operator who has either a direct or indirect view of the patient. KIS is a low-cost system consisting of a joystick, a robot arm, the Pentax videolaryngoscope, and a software control. The intubations occurred within 40 to 60 seconds with a 100% success rate on the first attempt. This system also allowed for semiautomated (a computer system replayed prior operator driven movement sequences) intubations that occurred in less than 45 seconds and had a 100% success rate.[3] The system has also been used on 12 patients and was successful with a first-pass intubation in 11 of the 12 patients (1 was unable to be completed due to fogging of the equipment). The intubations were done in approximately 93 seconds.[4,5] It remains to be seen if a robot intubation system will have widespread use. However, it may have applications in settings where it would be difficult to transport a trained anesthesia provider to the location, such as deep space exploration.

ROBOTIC SURGERY PHYSIOLOGY

Robotic surgery causes a number of physiologic changes. Positioning, insufflation with carbon dioxide (CO_2) to allow visualization of the surgical field, and physiologic changes associated with increasing intracompartmental pressure (i.e., abdominal, thoracic, or oral) are all seen with robotic surgery. Therefore, it is imperative that anesthesia providers are aware of these perturbations so that appropriate compensatory plans may be created.

Insufflation With CO_2

Except for otolaryngological procedures, inert gas must be insufflated into a patient's body to visualize the surgical field. CO_2 is the inert gas of choice because it has a high diffusion coefficient and the risk of a gas emboli is minimized since CO_2 is easily excreted from the body through the respiratory

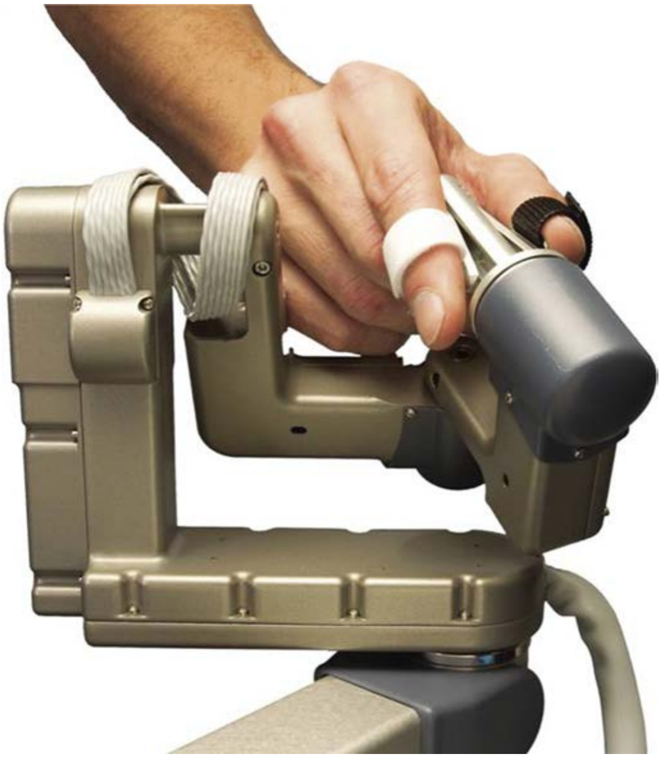


Fig. 71.8 The EndoWrist instrument of the da Vinci Robotic Surgical System mimics the natural kinematics of the surgeon's hand and wrist. This design allows more degrees of freedom. (Courtesy Intuitive Surgical, Sunnyvale, CA, USA.)

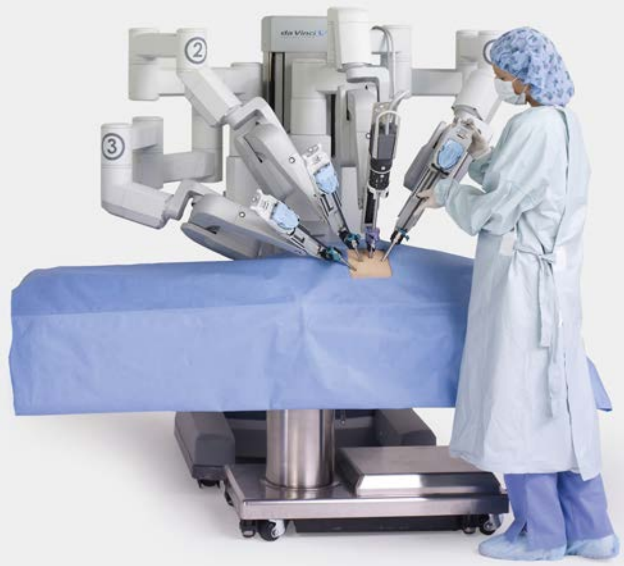


Fig. 71.9 **The da Vinci Robotic Surgical System: patient-side cart.** (Courtesy Intuitive Surgical, Sunnyvale, CA, USA.)

TABLE 71.1 Seven Degrees of Free Movement Permitted by Robotic Arms

Gross Arm Movements	Wrist Movements	Surgical Actions
In and out	Yaw (side-to-side and left-right)	Grasp or cut
Up and down	Pitch (up and down)	
Side-to-side	Rotation and roll	

system.[6] As CO_2 is insufflated into the abdomen, surgeons exercise caution to keep intraabdominal pressures below 20 cm of water. By minimizing intraperitoneal pressure, the vagal stimulation from elevated intraabdominal pressure is minimized. However, if the patient has a particularly pronounced resting vagal tone or a significant vagal response to peritoneal insufflation, pharmacologic intervention by the anesthesia provider or reduction of pneumoperitoneum may be necessary.

Insufflating the surgical site with CO_2 also may lead to sudden increases in CO_2 in the blood stream because it is absorbed from lymphatic and venous plexi.[7] As a result, increasing minute ventilation is necessary to maintain normocarbia and to keep the patient in homeostasis.

Another potential untoward effect of CO_2 insufflation is gas embolism.[7] Although rare, a gas embolus may have catastrophic effects on the cardiopulmonary system if the embolus becomes lodged in the pulmonary system. Additionally, if a patient has an atrioseptal or ventriculoseptal defect, he or she may develop a gas embolus in the cerebrovasculature with potentially devastating complications.

A more common and less devastating complication of gas insufflation and increased intraperitoneal pressure is atelectasis. This is exacerbated by the effects of insufflation on diaphragmatic excursion.[8] CO_2 insufflation may lead to pneumomediastinum or subcutaneous emphysema (incidence of 0.43%-2.3%). Although this finding typically has no clinical consequences, it may be associated with prolonged CO_2 excretion postoperatively causing hypercarbia and acidosis. Also, there have been reported cases of pneumothorax caused by extension of insufflated gas through diaphragmatic congenital channels into pleural cavities (incidence of 0.03%). An increased incidence is associated with an increased number and size of trocars, longer surgical time, higher gas flow rate, intensified gas pressure, loose trocars, and difficult trocar placement. Due to a number of factors, such as lack of external visualization and haptic feedback during robotic surgery, there is an increased incidence of gas extravasation.[9]

Pulmonary Vasoconstriction

Pulmonary vasoconstriction results from insufflation due to:

1. CO_2 absorption, and
2. physical compression of the lungs.

CO_2 absorption results in hypercarbia and acidosis. The pulmonary system's response to hypercarbia is vasoconstriction, in order to preserve gas exchange by preferentially shunting blood away from less ventilated portions of the lungs. Therefore, carbon dioxide insufflation has a vasoconstricting effect on the pulmonary vasculature.

In addition, during robotic surgery, pneumoperitoneum results in compression atelectasis as the intrathoracic pressure competes with elevated intraperitoneal pressures resulting in lung tissue compression. This process is worsened by Trendelenburg positioning. Nasogastric or orogastric tubes may facilitate gastric decompression and help reduce, albeit not eliminate, increased intraabdominal pressures. As functional residual capacity decreases, patients may experience increased lung collapse and atelectasis. This phenomenon combined with the vasoconstriction due to the CO_2 insufflation increases the ventilation/perfusion mismatch. This mismatch results in decreased oxygenation.

Atelectasis also leads to hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction (HPV). HPV is a compensatory mechanism that allows the body to preferentially divert blood from oxygen-poor regions of the lungs to oxygen-rich regions. and improves gas exchange by shunting blood to areas of the lung that are ventilating normally.[7] This effect appears to be caused by mitochondrial sensors inspiring voltage-gated calcium channels to increase the cytosolic calcium, thereby leading to vasoconstriction.

Insufflating the peritoneum also decreases respiratory compliance and elevates airway pressures. This process makes ventilation increasingly difficult and worsens the aforementioned hypercarbia.[10] To improve ventilation it has been recommended to switch mode from volume control ventilation to pressure control ventilation (PCV). However it has been shown in a randomized trial of patients for robot-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy that aside from lower peak airway pressures and improved compliance in the PCV mode, there was no benefit in other parameters, such as: central venous pressure, mean pulmonary arterial pressure, pulmonary capillary wedge pressure, cardiac index, arterial oxygen pressure, mean airway pressure, physiological dead space, and intrapulmonary shunt fraction.[11]

Elevated CO_2 levels also shift the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve to the right via the Haldane effect. This shift in the dissociation curve helps deliver oxygen to the tissues and results in slightly less ischemia than would be expected.[12-14] A potential explanation for this phenomenon is that carbon dioxide inspires the Haldane effect and HPV.

Cerebral Vascular Effects

Increased absorbed CO_2 from insufflation also leads to cerebrovascular dilation. Although CO_2 leads to blood being preferentially shunted away from the pulmonary vasculature, CO_2 in the cerebral circulation leads to cerebral vascular dilation. Anesthesiologists must be mindful of the potential increase in intracranial pressure (ICP) that may arise from elevated CO_2 levels.[15,16] Additionally, a number of robotic procedures require steep Trendelenburg positioning to allow surgical visualization of pelvic structures, which also results in increased ICP. Anesthesiologists must be cognizant of possible increased ICP especially in cases where patients need a ventriculoperitoneal shunt due to baseline increases in ICP.

Systemic Effects of Hypercapnia

Hypercapnia will lead to a respiratory acidosis as CO_2 is combined with water and is metabolized into bicarbonate and hydrogen ions. Since bicarbonate does not effectively buffer the acidosis induced from hypercarbia, a respiratory acidosis occurs.[17,18]

Hypercapnia will augment anesthetic effects. Acute hypercapnia will also result in depressed consciousness when $PaCO_2$ exceeds 80 mm Hg.[19] Increased CO_2 also decreases myocyte contractility and can potentially increase the myocardial susceptibility to arrhythmias.[20]

Patient Positioning. Patient positioning during robotic surgery can present a challenge. By definition, robotic surgery requires remote operation of laparoscopic equipment and surgical instrumentation. Therefore much of the normal feedback between surgeon and patient is altered, as surgeons are removed from their patients and replaced by bulky steel instrumentation. Therefore, patients are at much higher risk of iatrogenic injury than their nonrobotic peers. Also, this separation from the patient, and working from the inside of the surgeon console, makes communication between the operating room team and the surgeon difficult.

To minimize nerve injuries, careful attention must be paid to patient positioning. Given the size of the robot, a patient's arms are tucked at his or her sides and are often inaccessible during an operation. Once a robot has docked, access to the patient is hampered. Therefore, if an anesthesia provider is considering additional intravenous/arterial access, consider placing these lines after induction of the anesthesia and prior to docking of the robot. A best practice is to place at least two intravenous catheters in addition to an extra noninvasive blood pressure cuff with an extra connector and hose prior to docking of the robot. This allows more flexibility with intraoperative monitoring of the patient, even during periods of very minimal access.

Further, the type of surgical procedure creates unique positioning considerations. If surgeons are operating on pelvic organs, patients require steep Trendelenburg positioning. Alternatively, if patients are receiving abdominal wall surgery, then the supine positioning is often required.

If a patient is to be placed in steep Trendelenburg position, then the best practice is to tuck a patient's arms at his or her sides to minimize brachial plexopathy from hyperextension of the arms. In addition to minimizing the risk of brachial plexus injury, a patient's arms may be tucked at his or her sides to also allow the robot access to the patient. Foam padding and silicone pads are employed to protect vulnerable nerves. If the patient's arms are not tucked at his or her sides, then care must be paid to making sure brachial plexus injuries do not occur from hyperextension of the arms. Additional padding may be necessary to protect a patient's face, head, and neck from robotic arm movements, and vigilance by an anesthesia team is mandatory.

Given the need for patient immobility during a procedure, continuous neuromuscular blockade is paramount as patient movement resulting from intense surgical stimulation in the setting of inadequate anesthesia or insufficient neuromuscular blockade may lead to significant patient injury. To allow for titratable paralysis during robotic cases, many clinicians infuse neuromuscular blocking agents. As a result, continual monitoring of neuromuscular blockade is imperative. Many anesthesia providers place *multiple* intravenous lines so that boluses of medications and fluids may be given through one line while infusions of vasoactive or neuromuscular blocking agents may be given through another.

Please note that the robot arms and the patient's operating room table may not move together. Therefore, once the robot is docked and the robot arms are inside the patient, it is paramount to avoid dyssynchronous movement of the operating room table to avoid tearing injuries of tissue inside the patient.

Physiologic Changes Associated With Patient Positioning

CARDIOVASCULAR EFFECTS

Robotic urologic and gynecologic procedures require steep Trendelenburg positioning to facilitate surgical exposure. When patients are in a steep "head-down" position, blood is funneled from the lower extremities to the right atrium, thereby increasing pre-load. Studies demonstrate a variety of conclusions with respect to the effect of Trendelenburg position on cardiac index and output.[21-24] Patient comorbidities, anesthetized state, and preoperative medications may potentially alter the cardiac output changes induced by Trendelenburg positioning. In general, healthier patients with a robust cardiovascular systems are better able to adjust for hemodynamic changes and tend to have unaltered cardiac output. Also, increases in cardiac output are typically seen only when patients are euvolemic.[25,26]

INTRAOCULAR EFFECTS

Intraocular pressure increases with progressively steeper Trendelenburg positioning. Additionally, longer procedures tend to correlate with greater increases in intraocular pressure.[28-30] If patients suffer from intraocular pathology, that pathology may be exacerbated by longer surgeries and steep Trendelenburg positioning.

URINARY OUTPUT

Urinary output significantly decreases with pneumoperitoneum.[31] However, the decreased urinary output caused by pneumoperitoneum does not appear to negatively impact renal function over time. The decrease in urine output during insufflation does make fluid management more challenging.

After steep Trendelenburg, injuries seen more frequently with robotic surgeries than normal laparoscopic surgeries include urinary retention, infections of the urinary tract, and subcutaneous emphysema.[27]

Types of Robotic Surgery

A large variety of surgeries may be performed using a robot. The most common include urologic procedures such as prostatectomies, cystectomies, and nephrectomies. Also, common gynecologic procedures are hysterectomies, myomectomies, and oophorectomies. Hepatobiliary procedures, colectomies, cholecystectomies, and hernia repairs are also frequently performed.

UROLOGIC PROCEDURES

The first commonly performed robotic urologic procedure occurred in the 1980s with the development of the Unimate Puma robot by Unimation.[32] The Unimate Puma was a machine with six-axes of movement that allowed rapid transurethral resection of prostatic tissue (TURP). This increased efficiency and decreased operative time led to less absorption of irrigation fluid, which resulted in less risk of TURP syndrome.[26,33] As interest in robotic applications to urologic surgery grew, clinicians sought new applications for robotic surgery, including robotic prostatectomies, nephrectomies, and cystectomies, which were being performed by urologists.

Robotic-Assisted Retropubic Prostatectomies

Arguably the most commonly performed robotic urologic procedure is the robotic-assisted retropubic prostatectomy (RAPR). When compared to traditional open prostatectomies or laparoscopic prostatectomies, RAPR appears to have decreased transfusion rates, facilitated faster recovery of urinary continence, and decreased erectile dysfunction. Additionally, RAPR appears to be easier to learn than traditional laparoscopic prostatectomy techniques.

In many ways, the anesthetic plan for a RAPR is like the anesthetic plan for laparoscopic prostatectomy. A standard intravenous induction followed by tracheal intubation is required. Most clinicians advocate for two intravenous lines, as the patient's arms will be tucked at his sides after he is placed in the lithotomy position. A blood bank sample is necessary, as trocars may unexpectedly invade large blood vessels. Neuromuscular blockade is also of extreme importance, as movement by the patient while the robot is docked may lead to significant and serious complications.

As described above, most anesthesia providers recommend placing a second noninvasive blood pressure cuff with a connector and hose on the patient's other arm, in case of difficulty with blood pressure measurement intraoperatively.

To facilitate surgical exposure of deep pelvic organs, patients are often placed in steep Trendelenburg position. As described above, insufflation of the abdomen with steep Trendelenburg positioning leads to an increase in intracranial and intraocular pressures. Since the positioning can result in physical objects hitting the patient's face, it is important to have facial and ocular shields to prevent harm during the case. Several case reports of postoperative blindness and visual field defects have been reported.[34,35] Gastric contents may drain via gravity onto the eyes and potentially cause ocular damage. Therefore, many clinicians advocate decompressing the stomach with an orogastric tube. Although the exact mechanism of ocular damage is not completely understood, decompressing the stomach may help minimize the risk of a trocar advancing into the stomach in addition to protecting the patient's eyes. Increased ICP can lead to strokes or hemorrhages in vulnerable populations.

Fluid management is also very important during robot prostatectomies and requires a delicate balance. Too much fluid given prior to the reattachment of the bladder and the urethra is associated with an increased risk of postoperative anastomotic leak.[36] Since the head is the dependent structure during the case, too much fluid is also associated with glottic and periocular edema. However, using fluid management that is too restrictive can be associated with acute tubular necrosis and the possible risk of a compartment syndrome due to hypotension in the legs. The risk of compartment syndrome is probably less than 0.5% and is associated with longer cases, obesity, and poor positioning.[37]

Robotic-Assisted Radical Cystectomy

Cystectomies are traditionally a difficult operation, as fluid shifts, fluid management, and patient comorbidities present unique challenges. Perioperative management of these patients is sufficiently challenging that nearly 1 out of every 4 patients are readmitted to the hospital following radical cystectomy.[38,39] Unfortunately, readmitted patients often remain in the hospital for roughly a week.[39,40]

Since 2003, robotic-assisted radical cystectomies have been performed in operating rooms around the world.[41] While a number of randomized controlled trials exist, there is a heterogeneity in the data, and diverse conclusions have been drawn based on the patients' long-term results.[42-45] Overall, robotic-assisted radical cystectomy appears to have lower blood loss when compared to open cystectomies. However, this decreased blood loss appears to come at the cost of increased operative times. Of note, there does not appear to be a difference in length of hospital stay[46] or 2-week readmission rates.[47]

Anesthetic considerations for patients receiving robotic-assisted radical cystectomy mirror the considerations for patients receiving robotic-assisted radical prostatectomy. Steep Trendelenburg, increased ICP, and increased ocular pressure are possible. Additionally, the need for CO_2 insufflation is required for visualization.[48]

Robotic-Assisted Nephrectomy

During the past 10 years, radical nephrectomy has been performed to treat renal cancers and is often viewed as the standard of care for patients with T1 and T2 kidney tumors. This surgery, which may result in a cancer-free state, has been performed using an open or laparoscopic technique. In addition, over the last decade, surgeons have begun turning to robotic assistance to perform these surgeries.[49]

Robotic-assisted surgery, when compared to traditional laparoscopic surgery, may allow enhanced visualization of the surgical field and increased degrees of articulation of the surgical arms. Additionally, several meta-analyses demonstrate similar or slightly improved perioperative outcomes when laparoscopic procedures are compared to robotic procedures.[50,51]

Despite many literature reviews and meta-analyses that compare laparoscopic and robotic surgery, there are very few prospective studies comparing perioperative complications and surgical costs. However, there are documented increases in costs and operative times associated with robotic nephrectomies compared to a traditional laparoscopic approach.[49]

GYNECOLOGIC SURGERY

Since 1999, robotic surgery has been used in gynecologic procedures. Robotic procedures were initially used to perform fallopian tubal re-attachment following permanent sterilization, and are currently being used with hysterectomy, salpingo-oopherectomy, vesicovaginal fistula repair, sacrocolpexy, and ovarian cystectomy.[52]

Robotic-Assisted Hysterectomy

After the first gynecological robot-assisted surgery, robotic assistance was quickly applied to hysterectomies, the second most common surgical procedure performed in the United States.[53]

However, despite the large number of patients receiving robotic hysterectomies, it is unclear whether robotics is superior to traditional laparoscopic approaches.[54]

Robotic surgery for endometrial cancer resection does appear to require more surgical operating time, particularly as surgical teams work to become more comfortable with the procedure[55]; proficiency performing the surgery, as approximated by surgical time, appears to improve after 20 to 30 cases.[56] There has been increased concern about the utilization of the robot during endometrial cancer resection surgery since the outcomes appear similar to laparoscopic hysterectomy, but the cost and operative times are greater.[53,57] The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) continues to recommend vaginal hysterectomy as the preferred approach for benign disease, where feasible, due to its lower complication rate and faster recovery time. ACOG states that robotic surgery needs to be better studied to discover if a particular subgroup of patients would be best served by this approach.[53]

Providers have begun performing robotic procedures on morbidly obese patients given the physical surgical demands associated with traditional laparoscopy and the greatly increased morbidity associated with an open abdominal approach. In general, the perioperative outcomes appear to be similar.[58,59] However, the positioning of morbidly obese patients into steep Trendelenburg position can be very challenging. Steep Trendelenburg positioning combined with the pneumoperitoneum necessary to facilitate surgical exposure can create cardiovascular and ventilation challenges. While it is possible that this subgroup of patients (body mass index [BMI] > 40), who would otherwise require an open abdominal approach, could benefit from minimally invasive robot surgery, these cases involve a great number of anesthetic challenges.

Other Gynecological Surgeries

Due to the rather steep learning curve for sacrocolpopexy, robot assistance is believed to facilitate this technically difficult procedure. Randomized, controlled trials have shown similar outcomes with robotic versus laparoscopic surgeries. However, the robotic cases can have increased operative time, postoperative pain, and cost.[53] Myomectomies with robot assistance may allow for more minimally invasive surgeries that would otherwise occur due to fibroid location and high patient BMI.

Robot-assisted surgery for gynecological malignancies has been poorly studied with only retrospective comparisons available. Robot assistance was preferred versus an open approach due to decreased cost, length of stay, and complications. A recent meta-analysis focusing on endometrial cancer concluded that robot versus laparoscopy had a similar duration of surgery but shorter hospital stay, less blood loss, fewer conversions to laparotomy, and overall complications, but a higher cost.[60]

ACOG does not recommend the use of the robot for short-duration and low-complexity surgeries such as tubal ligation, simple ovarian cystectomy, ectopic pregnancy, or bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy.[53]

General Surgery

Colectomy. In 1997, general surgeons in Belgium applied robotic techniques to their patients when the first robotic-assisted laparoscopic cholecystectomy was performed.[52]

However, despite many peer-reviewed studies, a recent meta-analysis did not find significant differences between laparoscopic and robotic colectomy surgeries. This lack of difference is perhaps in large part because of the low number of patients in these studies. Additionally, significant heterogeneity existed in the studies, which might have obscured any results.[61]

In a quality improvement analysis, robotic colectomies were associated with statistically significant increases in operative costs when compared to traditional laparoscopic techniques and longer operative times.[62] However, this economic argument may be tempered by a potentially decreased length of stay, as evidenced by a retrospective review of a National Surgical Quality Improvement Program database of 17,000 colectomies.[24]

Cholecystectomy. Another application of robotic surgery is in robotic-assisted cholecystectomy. In this procedure, a single incision is performed, and robotic arms are introduced into the patient's body. This approach is a contrast to the traditional laparoscopic cholecystectomy that requires multiple incisions.[63]

Patients are gravitating towards single-port robotic cholecystectomy procedures for decreased surgical scarring. The daVinci robot has been successfully used in Europe since 2011 before being brought to the United States.[64] Traditional thinking viewed robotic-assisted cholecystectomy as excessively expensive and not warranting a shift away from laparoscopic cholecystectomy,[65] as a recent meta-analysis showed increased operative times for robotic versus laparoscopic cholecystectomy. However, much of this time occurs in the pre-incision phase of the operation.[63]

Additionally, robotic-assisted cholecystectomy is associated with a significantly higher risk of incisional hernia[64] as the incisional hernia rate is approximated to be between 7% and 20%.[66,67] This increased hernia rate may require additional operations and therefore will increase overall healthcare costs.

Hepatobiliary. The liver's unique location deep in the abdominal cavity and its abundant blood supply has slowed surgeons from aggressively adopting and implementing laparoscopic techniques.[68]

Hepatic surgery was first successfully described in 1954 by Claude Couinaud.[69] Since the initial description, laparoscopic approaches to liver surgery have become more common. Additionally, there does not appear to be a difference in tumor recurrence, tumor spread, or survival for patients who receive laparoscopic hepatectomies.[70] Furthermore, minimally invasive techniques appear to be correlated with decreased blood loss when compared to open procedures.[71]

However, the need for greater articulation of surgical instruments, increased mobility of laparoscopic arms, and enhanced surgical visualization has limited wider adoption of laparoscopic surgery, particularly when compared to open procedures.[72] To address these limitations, hepatobiliary surgeons have begun looking to the da Vinci robot. Experienced surgeons usually do not have difficulty transitioning from the traditional laparoscopic approach to robotic surgery.[73] Additionally, robotic surgery allows three-dimensional imaging of a surgical site.[74]

While robotic surgeries are associated with increased intraoperative costs, overall costs of these robotic procedures may be decreased as they generally are associated with shorter lengths of stay compared to open procedures.[75] Thus, robotic surgery in the management of patients requiring hepatobiliary surgery remains an evolving field.

Otolaryngology

There are over half a million cases of head-and-neck cancers in the world.[76]

As otolaryngologists modernize their approach to both benign and malignant pathologies, they have looked to robotic-assisted approaches to replace larger and more invasive neck dissections that were needed to remove oral cancers.

TONSILLECTOMY

Tonsillectomies are one of the most commonly performed procedures in the United States. Although the practice of routinely removing tonsils in childhood has been replaced by more conservative medical management, tonsillectomies are still performed for refractory tonsillitis. As a result, patient demographics are shifting, and patients are presenting later in life with comorbidities not often seen in childhood. Surgeons are looking to innovate and find modern approaches to removing tonsils and adenoid tissues. The robotic articulating arms allow a more minimally invasive approach to resecting the tissue.[77-79]

HEAD AND NECK DISSECTION

Robotic surgery was first applied to oral and maxillofacial surgery in 1994 by Kavanagh,[80] and has rapidly expanded. Now, robotic surgery incorporates the resection of lesions from the base of the tongue, pharynx, piriform sinus, and nasopharynx.[81] Adoption of this technology has even spread to encompass transaxillary thyroid and parathyroid resection as well as uvulopalatopharyngoplasty.[82]

Even though robotic technologies have existed for quite some time, head and neck surgeons in the United States did not immediately adopt them. In fact, for many years, robotic procedures were not approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). However, in 2009, the transoral approach to oropharyngeal cancers was approved by the FDA.[83,84] While this approach has not been commonly adopted, European studies have shown promise.[85]

CARDIAC (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 54 ANESTHESIA FOR CARDIAC SURGICAL PROCEDURES)

Robotic surgery has been performed in cardiac operating rooms for quite a few years. In 1997, internal mammary artery harvesting was first performed using an endoscope by Nataf et al.[86] The following year, Loulmet and colleagues[87] reported the first completely endoscopic coronary artery bypass surgery. Cardiothoracic applications of robotic-assisted surgery have expanded to include atrial septal defect closures,[88-90] mitral valve repairs,[91] patent ductus arteriosus ligations,[92] totally endoscopic coronary artery bypass grafting,[93,94] minimally invasive atrial fibrillation surgery,[95,96] and left ventricular pacemaker lead placement.[97] Although minimally invasive surgery may eventually make surgical sternotomy obsolete, surgeons still must be prepared to convert to an open sternotomy if the need arises.

Anesthesiologists must be familiar with cardiac and thoracic anesthesia when performing robotic-assisted cardiac procedures. The ability to perform one-lung ventilation and manage the associated physiologic changes are mandatory proficiencies, and the ventilation strategy is like that typically used during thoracic surgery. Poor pulmonary function test results or pulmonary hypertension may be contraindications to robotically assisted cardiac surgery since prolonged one-lung ventilation may not be tolerated. Additionally, many anesthesiologists turn to transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) to monitor cardiac physiology under anesthesia.

To allow surgical exposure for robotic cardiac surgery, several cannulae must be placed before cardiopulmonary bypass may be initiated. Femoral vessels are usually accessed. However, as iatrogenic dissection of the femoral arteries may occur, some hospitals require preoperative imaging to evaluate for atherosclerotic disease. Other centers use TEE to guide venous cannulation of the right atrium/inferior vena cava junction or superior vena cava (Fig. 71.10). These cannulae are often flushed with 5000 units of heparin, or infused with a heparin drip to maintain patency.

In addition to the cannulae required for cardiopulmonary bypass, an additional cannula is advanced into the pulmonary artery to vent the heart and to allow surgical visualization. Again, TEE can be helpful with placement of these venting cannulae.

Mitral Valve Replacement

In 1997, two different reports of robotic-assisted mitral valve replacement appeared in the literature. In November 2002, the FDA approved the use of robot-assisted surgery for this procedure. For the robotic mitral valve procedure to be successful, a patient must be anesthetized, and single-lung ventilation must be initiated. Patients are then positioned with their right shoulder elevated by 30 degrees while their pelvis remains supine. Keeping the pelvis in the supine position allows the femoral vessels to be more easily accessed.

After positioning, trocars are introduced into the fourth or fifth intercostal space by the surgical team and exposure is achieved before the robot is docked. It is imperative that the anesthesia team keeps the patient completely paralyzed from this point forward until the robot is undocked to minimize iatrogenic injury.

Cardiopulmonary bypass is subsequently initiated using femoral cannulae, and cardioplegia is introduced into the coronary vasculature. The ascending aorta is subsequently cross-clamped, and the mitral valve is replaced. Following replacement, the valve's function is evaluated using TEE.

The procedure concludes with the aortic cross-clamp removed, and the patient is weaned from cardiopulmonary bypass. The patient's double-lumen endotracheal tube is ultimately exchanged for a single-lumen endotracheal tube if the patient is to be intubated postoperatively. There are several reasons why a particular patient may not be a candidate for robotic mitral value surgery (Box 71.1).

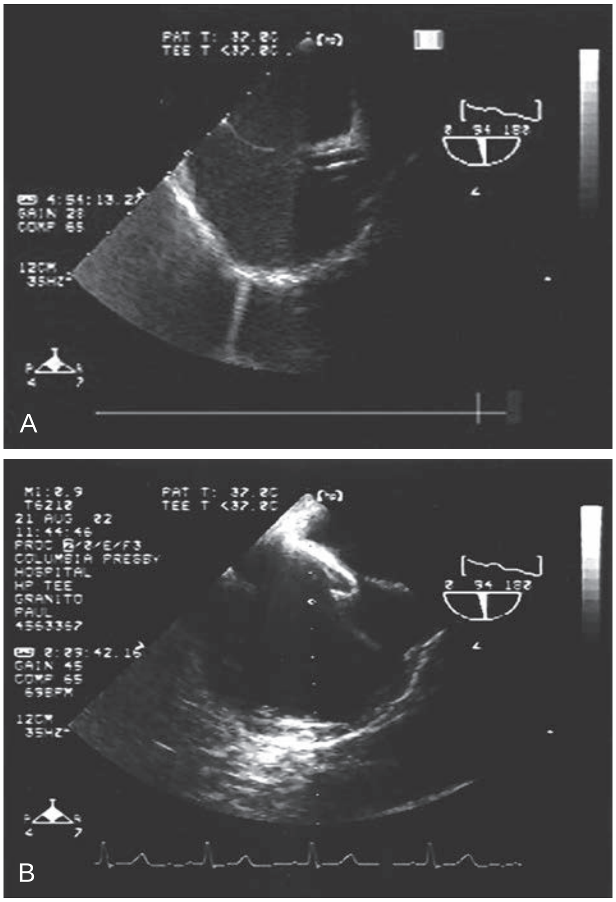


Fig. 71.10 (A) Ultrasound image of the superior vena cava cannula. (B) Ultrasound image, bicaval view, depicting the inferior vena cava containing a J guide wire. Both views are helpful in correctly placing cardiopulmonary bypass venous cannulae.

BOX 71.1 Exclusion Criteria for Robotically Assisted Mitral Valve Repairs

- Severely calcified mitral annulus
- Severe pulmonary hypertension
- Ischemic heart disease
- Surgery requiring multiple valve repairs
- Previous surgery to right hemithorax
- Severe aortic and peripheral atherosclerosis

Coronary Artery Bypass Grafting

Robotic-assisted coronary artery bypass graft surgery is a safe and effective procedure, which is gaining in popularity.[94] Potential exclusion criteria for robotic coronary artery bypass grafting are listed in Box 71.2.[96]

For coronary artery bypass graft procedures, patients are prepared and monitored for anesthesia in a manner similar to mitral valve surgery. Cardiac function and cannulae

BOX 71.2 **Exclusion Criteria for Robotically Assisted Endoscopic Coronary Artery Bypass Grafting**

- Contraindications to one-lung ventilation
- Ejection fraction <30% or decompensated heart failure (NYHA class III or IV)
- Moderate to severe aortic and mitral valve disease
- MI in preceding 30 days or MI requiring emergent CABG or postinfarction angina
- Calcified or intramyocardial LAD artery or diffuse LAD artery disease
- Large heart within left chest
- Morbid obesity (BMI > 35 kg/m^2)
- Severe peripheral vascular disease
- Severe noncardiac health issues
- Previous thoracic surgery, pleural adhesions, or radiation therapy of mediastinum or thorax

BMI, Body mass index; *CABG*, coronary artery bypass graft; *LAD*, left anterior descending; *MI*, myocardial infarction; *NYHA*, New York Heart Association.

placement are verified using TEE. In addition, anesthesiologists may consider pulmonary artery catheters when appropriate.

To harvest the internal mammary artery for the bypass grafts, single-lung ventilation is initiated using a double-lumen tube or a standard endotracheal tube with a bronchial blocker. Once single-lung ventilation commences, the patient is placed in a modified right lateral decubitus position, a 30-degree tilt to the right from the supine position. External defibrillation and pacing pads are then applied to the left posterior chest and anterolateral right chest. To improve surgical exposure to the left internal mammary artery, the left arm is raised. Conversely, to allow better exposure to the right internal mammary artery, the right arm is subsequently raised (Fig. 71.11). Very minimal CO_2 insufflation (usually 5-10 mm Hg) is needed to displace the mediastinal fat pad and allow surgical exposure. When single-lung ventilation is initiated and the left hemithorax is insufflated with CO_2, bilateral arteries are often able to be visualized.[98] When cardiopulmonary bypass is anticipated, the left femoral artery is cannulated with a 17- or 21-Fr remote access perfusion catheter (Fig. 71.12) with an aortic occlusion balloon. The remote access perfusion catheter

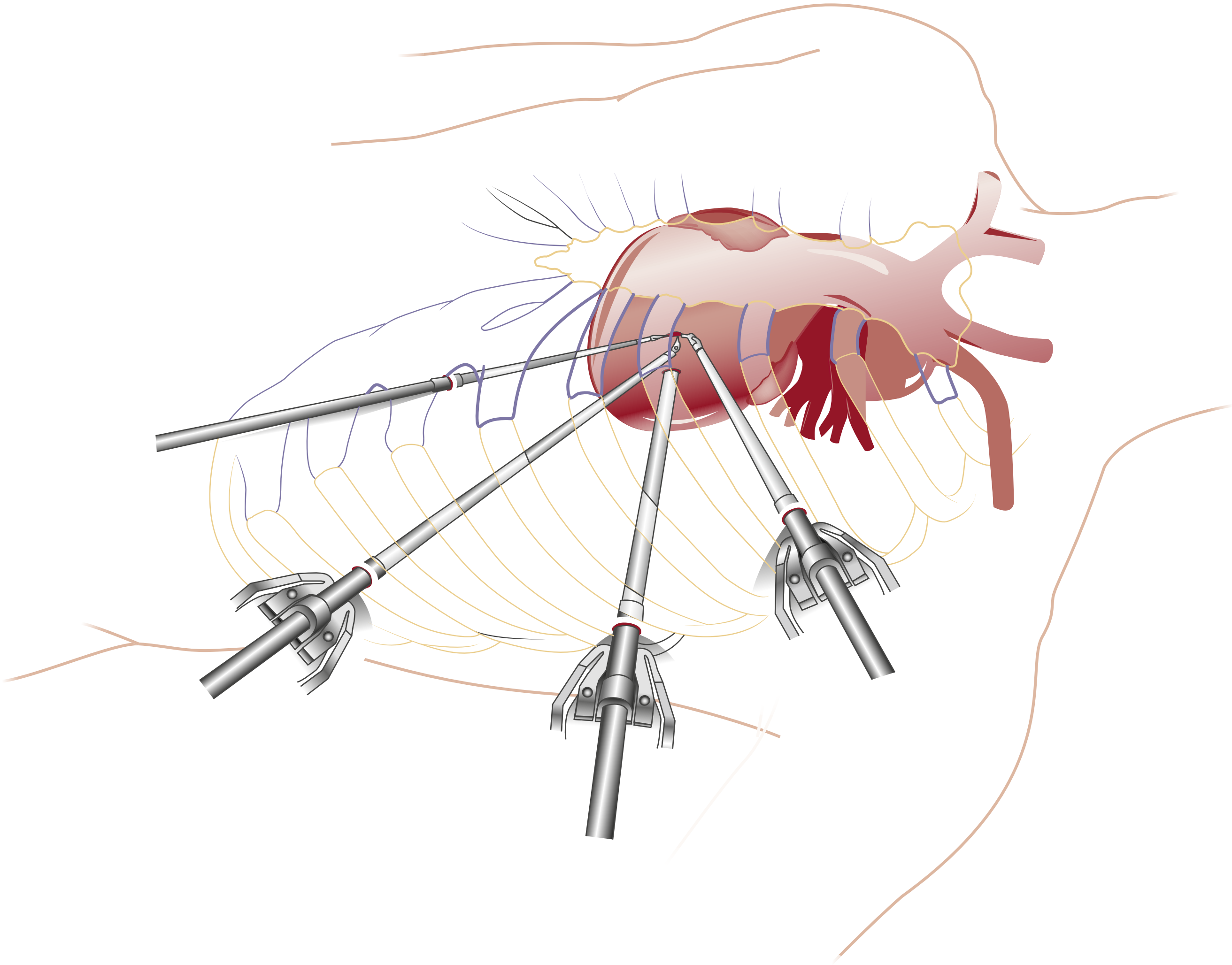


Fig. 71.11 Incision ports for coronary artery bypass grafting. Trocars are placed in the third, sixth, and eighth intercostal spaces. Similar port positions are used for bilateral internal mammary artery dissection.

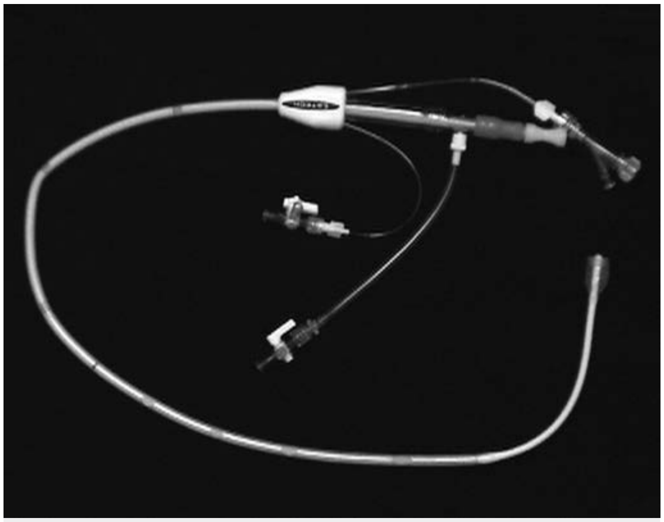


Fig. 71.12 Remote Access Perfusion (Estech Systems, Plano, TX, USA) catheter. The endovascular catheter has a cylindrical balloon for endovascular aortic clamping. The catheter provides anterograde perfusion of the aortic arch at a rate of 5 L/min.

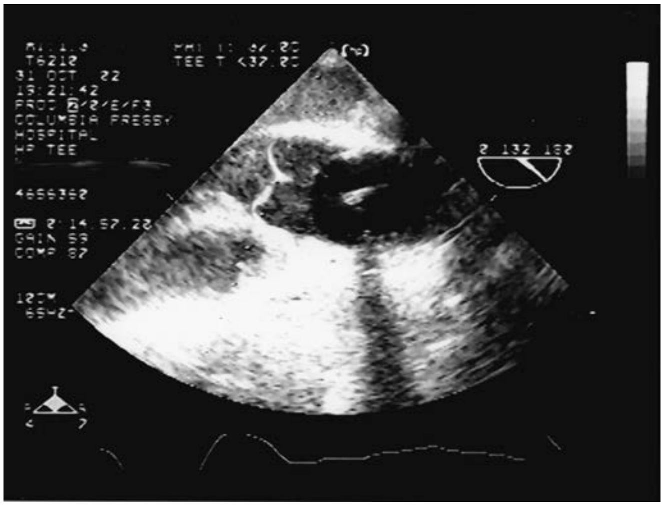


Fig. 71.13 Ultrasound image of Remote Access Perfusion (Estech Systems, Plano, TX, USA) catheter balloon in situ. Transesophageal echocardiography allows the anesthesiologist to keep track of the migration of the catheter balloon. The balloon should be positioned in the ascending aorta 2 to 4 cm distal to the aortic valve. Right radial pressure catheter signal damping can detect balloon malposition when occlusion of the innominate artery occurs.

allows anterograde flow of 4 or 5 L/min. The aortic cannula is subsequently positioned in the ascending aorta, roughly 2 cm above the aortic valve, using TEE (Fig. 71.13). The endovascular balloon is inflated with a volume equal to the diameter (in milliliters) of the sino-tubular junction of the aorta. A balloon pressure greater than 300 mm Hg usually provides complete occlusion of the aorta.[99] Residual flow around the balloon can be seen and monitored with color flow on TEE. The use of bilateral radial arterial lines is useful in detecting the migration of the occlusion balloon toward the innominate artery. Proximal migration of the balloon can be seen most easily with TEE, preventing balloon herniation through the aortic valve.

Single-lung ventilation is then initiated, and the right lung is collapsed. By insufflating the right hemithorax with CO_2, three 1-cm ports may be placed at the third, fourth, and fifth intercostal spaces on the anterior axillary line (see Fig. 71.11). The patient's pericardium is then dissected to expose the heart. Arrhythmias in the early postoperative period are common. Antiarrhythmics, such as amiodarone and β-adrenergic blockers, can be helpful.[100-102]

ROBOTIC-ASSISTED THORACOSCOPIC SURGERY (SEE ALSO CHAPTER 53 ANESTHESIA FOR THORACIC SURGERY)

Video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery (VATS) is a commonly performed procedure for cancerous tumor resection (wedge resections and lobectomies), esophagectomy, hiatal hernia, and lung volume reduction.[103-107] VATS is preferred to open procedures when possible to reduce length of stay, blood loss, pain, and morbidity as long as clinical outcomes are equivalent. However, as it is difficult to do complex surgeries (e.g., a pneumonectomy or a thymectomy) using minimally invasive techniques such as VATS, the hope is that a robotic approach (robotic-assisted thoracoscopic surgery [RATS]) will allow the application of minimally invasive techniques to these more complex surgeries and generate some of the same benefits as open procedures. While several centers are exploring RATS lobectomies, segmentecomies, and mediastinal mass resections, RATS pneumonectomies have been reported at only a couple of pioneering centers.[108] Robotic-assisted surgery usually increases the operative time and cost compared to its laparoscopic alternative.[109]

Robotic-assisted thoracoscopic surgery presents with similar challenges to robotic-assisted cardiac surgeries. Accommodating a more rigid chest wall and moving heart, lungs, and mediastinum can be challenging. In addition, initiating and maintaining prolonged one-lung ventilation and hemodynamic instability associated with CO_2 insufflation of the hemithorax presents unique concerns. Despite these challenges, the robot has been specifically used for thymectomies, mediastinal mass resections, fundoplications, esophageal surgery, and pulmonary lobectomies.[110-112]

Patient positioning is particularly important to expose largely inaccessible areas, as mediastinal structures are heavy, mobile, and change position in response to gravity (see Chapter 53). Supine or slight lateral decubitus position (raising one side 15-30 degrees) is most ideal for anterior mediastinum pathology. This position requires the elevated arm to be at the patient's side as far back as possible to allow the robot to dock successfully. However, hyperabduction of the elevated arm can cause a brachial plexus injury.[111] A full lateral decubitus position (90 degrees) may be optimal for hilar masses and lobectomies. Alternately, a prone or slightly modified prone position can create better exposure for posterior mediastinal masses.[113]

Since the patient will generally be rotated 90 degrees to allow the robot to dock, it is important to achieve lung isolation prior to rotation. Also, the anesthesia circuit, intravenous line, and arterial line tubing may require extensions. It is suggested that the circuit and lines be combined into one bundle to move them out of the way of surgical personnel and monitoring devices. It is also recommended to have two large-bore intravenous lines since the arms will be difficult to access once the robot is docked. The patient undergoing RATS should generally have an arterial line placed prior to the robot being docked to allow for close monitoring of blood pressure and $PaCO_2$. Intraoperative confirmation of lung isolation will be difficult, so a plan of how to access the airway with a fiberoptic bronchoscope should be established prior to initiating the robotic portion of the case. It is important to note that a failure of lung isolation will result in an inability to complete the surgery via RATS.[110]

CO_2 insufflation helps achieve adequate surgical exposure by mobilizing the mediastinum and simultaneously compressing the lung away from the operative site. Unfortunately, CO_2 insufflation can lead to hemodynamic instability and difficultly with hypercapnia during one-lung ventilation. It can also cause venous gas embolism, decreased venous return, and cardiac collapse if right heart failure develops.

The anesthesiologist must also be ready for potential conversion to open thoracotomy due to bleeding or an inability to obtain adequate surgical exposure.[111] In a recent meta-analysis, the incidence of conversion from RATS to open thoracotomy during pulmonary resections was 0% to 19%.[114,115] The learning curve for new surgeons is also quite steep during the first 20 cases. An increase in operative issues must be anticipated for surgeons learning to use the robot.[114,115]

Another possible pitfall of RATS is that damage to the pleura may allow CO_2 insufflation to spread to the ventilated lung causing difficult ventilation and possibly causing a tension pneumothorax or severe subcutaneous emphysema—both of which can produce hemodynamic compromise.[114]

Studies comparing outcome data from VATS versus RATS in more common procedures are increasing. As might be expected for any complex procedure, outcomes for RATS lobectomies are better at high-volume centers.[116] As shown in other surgical disciplines, longer duration RATS lobectomies have similar outcomes to VATS lobectomies. However, robotic surgery does have increased costs in comparison to laparoscopic alternatives.[117,118] In an investigation of open versus VATS versus RATS treatment of early-stage thymomas, the robotic approach was associated with a reduced length of stay and had a similar complication profile to VATS.[119] In the case of esophagectomies, RATS—while having a longer surgical duration than a minimally invasive approach—has a similar outcome profile.[120]

As robotic instead of open approaches are starting to be used on more complex surgeries, we expect to see an improvement in patient outcomes and possibly a reduction in costs.[108,121]

Summary

Anesthesia for robotic surgery is an exciting and dynamic field. As surgeons and patients look for new innovations and technologically rich approaches to healthcare, it is reasonable to expect that more operations will be performed using robotic techniques. However, there is a real need to investigate the outcomes and costs of a robotic approach versus a more traditional approach. More data are needed to identify the type of cases and patient populations that will improve patient outcomes and reduce costs via robotic surgery. Recognizing the unique physiologic changes and positioning challenges that accompany robotic surgeries will allow anesthesiologists to best care for their patients.

Acknowledgment

The authors would like to acknowledge Sumeet Goswami, Priya Kumar, and Berend Mets for contributions they made in prior versions of this chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. *Intuitive Surgical I. da Vinci Gynecology*. 2018. http://davincisurgery.com/da-vinci-gynecology/
2. Ashrafian H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(suppl 1):i72–i84.
3. Hemmerling TM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(3):590–594.
4. Hemmerling TM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(6):1011–1016.
5. Hemmerling TM, Terrasini N. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25(6):736–742.
6. Zorko N, et al. *J Int Med Res*. 2011;39(3):1084–1089.
7. Kaye AD, et al. *Ochsner J*. 2013;13(4):517–524.
8. Choi SJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61(5):439–443.
9. Ott DE. Subcutaneous emphysema--beyond the pneumoperitoneum. *JSLS*. 2014;18(1):1–7.
10. Andersson LE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(2):293–299.
11. Choi EM, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2011;23(3):183–188.
12. Dick CR, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1997;155(2):609–614.
13. Christiansen J, et al. *J Physiol*. 1914;48(4):244–271.
14. Strang CM, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2013;79(6):617–625.
15. Price HL. *Anesthesiology*. 1960;21:652–663.
16. Juan G, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1984;310(14):874–879.
17. Patel S, Sharma S. *Physiology, Acidosis, Respiratory. StatPearls. Treasure Island (FL)*. StatPearls Publishing LLC; 2018.
18. Hyneck ML. *Am J Hosp Pharm*. 1985;42(9):1992–2004.
19. Kazemi H. *Cerebrospinal Fluid and the Control of Ventilation*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven Publishers; 1997.
20. Gutt CN, et al. *Dig Surg*. 2004;21(2):95–105.
21. Geerts BF, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24(8):668–674.
22. Gok F, et al. *Int J Clin Exp Med*. 2015;8(10):19037–19043.
23. Martin JT. *AANA J*. 1995;63(1):29–36.
24. Miller PE, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2016;223(2):369–373.
25. Sonny A, et al. *J Anesth*. 2017;31(5):692–702.
26. Davies BL, et al. *Proc Inst Mech Eng H*. 1991;205(1):35–38.
27. Sheeder J, et al. *Gynecologic Oncology*. 2015;137:54.
28. Raz O, et al. *J Urol*. 2015;193(4):1213–1219.
29. Awad H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(2):473–478.
30. Hoshikawa Y, et al. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 2014;98(3):305–308.
31. Nguyen NT, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2002;195(4):476–483.
32. Moran ME. *J Robot Surg*. 2007;1(2):103–111.
33. Lane T. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 2018;100(suppl 6):5–7.
34. Taketani Y, et al. *PLoS One*. 2015;10(4):e0123361.
35. Olympio MA. *BJU Int*. 2013;112(8):1060–1061.
36. Piegeler T, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2014;14:61.
37. Pridgeon S, et al. *BJU Int*. 2013;112(4):485–488.
38. Stimson CJ, et al. *J Urol*. 2010;184(4):1296–1300.
39. Hu M, et al. *Cancer*. 2014;120(9):1409–1416.
40. Jacobs BL, et al. *J Urol*. 2013;189(1):59–65.
41. Menon M, et al. *BJU Int*. 2003;92(3):232–236.
42. Nix J, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2010;57(2):196–201.
43. Khan MS, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2016;69(4):613–621.

44. Bochner BH, et al. *Eur Urol*. 2015;67(6):1042–1050.
45. Parekh DJ, et al. *J Urol*. 2013;189(2):474–479.
46. Bjurlin MA, et al. *Urology*. 2017;103:117–123.
47. Borza T, et al. *Urology*. 2017;104:77–83.
48. Ozcan MF, et al. *Int Urol Nephrol*. 2017;49(1):55–60.
49. Jeong IG, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;318(16):1561–1568.
50. Pavan N, et al. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2017;24(8):2420–2428.
51. Leow JJ, et al. *J Urol*. 2016;196(5):1371–1377.
52. Himpens J, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 1998;12(8):1091.
53. Committee opinion no. 628: robotic surgery in gynecology. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;125(3):760–767.
54. Lim PC, et al. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2016;133(3):359–364.
55. Torng PL, et al. *Taiwan J Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;56(6):781–787.
56. Lin JF, et al. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2014;124(1):88–91.
57. Wright JD, et al. *JAMA*. 2013;309(7):689–698.
58. Nawfal AK, et al. *J Minim Invasive Gynecol*. 2011;18(3):328–332.
59. Pursell N, et al. *J Minim Invasive Gynecol*. 2017;24(7):S155.
60. Ind T, et al. *Int J Med Robot*. 2017;13(4).
61. Solaini L, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2018;32(3):1104–1110.
62. Dolejs SC, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2017;31(6):2387–2396.
63. Huang Y, et al. *Surgery*. 2017;161(3):628–636.
64. Hagen ME, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2018;32(3):1550–1555.
65. Breitenstein S, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2008;247(6):987–993.
66. Balachandran B, et al. *World J Surg*. 2017;41(5):1246–1253.
67. van der Linden YT, et al. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A*. 2016;26(11):857–861.
68. Cherqui D. *Br J Surg*. 2003;90(6):644–646.
69. Couinaud C. *Presse Med*. 1954;62(33):709–712.
70. Croome KP, Yamashita MH. *Arch Surg*. 2010;145(11):1109–1118.
71. Croner RS, et al. *Langenbecks Arch Surg*. 2016;401(5):707–714.
72. Goja S, et al. *Int J Surg Case Rep*. 2017;33:16–20.
73. Magistri P, et al. *J Surg Res*. 2017;217:92–99.
74. Felli E, et al. *Updates Surg*. 2015;67(1):27–32.
75. Beard RE, Tsung A. *Cancer Control*. 2017;24(3):1073274817729234.
76. Dias FL, et al. *Curr Opin Oncol*. 2017.
77. Sperry SM, et al. *ORL J Otorhinolaryngol Relat Spec*. 2014;76(6):342–352.
78. Weinstein GS, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 2012;122(8):1701–1707.
79. Holsinger FC. *Laryngoscope*. 2016;126(4):864–869.
80. Kavanagh KT. *Laryngoscope*. 1994;104(3 Pt 1):283–293.
81. Weinstein GS, et al. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2007;133(12):1220–1226.
82. De Ceulaer J, et al. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2012;41(11):1311–1324.
83. Bekeny JR, Ozer E. *World J Otorhinolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2016;2(2):130–135.
84. Moore EJ, et al. *Clin Anat*. 2012;25(1):135–141.
85. Lorincz BB, et al. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2015;22(suppl 3):S1028–1033.
86. Nataf P, et al. *J Card Surg*. 2000;15(4):278–282.
87. Loulmet D, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1999;118(1):4–10.
88. Argenziano M, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;108(suppl 1):Ii191–Ii194.
89. Bonaros N, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82(2):687–693.
90. Morgan JA, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;77(4):1328–1333.
91. Rodriguez E, et al. *Int J Med Robot*. 2006;2(3):211–215.
92. Suematsu Y, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;80(6):2309–2313.
93. Katz MR, et al. *Circulation*. 2006;114(suppl 1):I473–476.
94. Argenziano M, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81(5):1666–1674; discussion 1674-1665.
95. Kypson AP. *Cardiology*. 2007;107(3):147–158.
96. Gillinov AM. *J Interv Card Electrophysiol*. 2005;13(2):115–124.
97. DeRose JJ, Kypson AP. *Am J Surg*. 2004;188(suppl 4A):104s–111s.
98. Vassiliades TA. *Heart Surg Forum*. 2002;5(2):119–124.
99. Reichenspurner H, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;69(4):1176–1181; discussion 1181-1172.
100. Bakir I, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(1):331–340.
101. Gerosa G, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2004;26(2):450–452.
102. Thomas D, et al. *J Electrocardiol*. 2012;45(2):95–101.
103. Augustin F, et al. *Int J Med Robot*. 2006;2(3):262–270.
104. Bodner JC, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;80(4):1202–1206.
105. Kernstine KH, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2007;21(12):2285–2292.
106. Gharagozloo F, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85(6):1880–1885; discussion 1885-1886.
107. Gharagozloo F, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;88(2):380–384.
108. Louie BE. *Thorac Surg Clin*. 2014;24(2):169–175. vi.
109. Kernstine KH, Waters JK. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2018;155(2):787–788.
110. Steenwyk B, Lyerly R 3rd. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30(4):699–708.
111. Campos JH. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23(1):1–6.
112. Zhang Y, et al. *Ann Transl Med*. 2015;3(5):71.
113. Kernstine KH. *Am J Surg*. 2004;188(suppl 4A):89s–97s.
114. Campos J, Ueda K. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2014;80(1):83–88.
115. Cao C, et al. *Ann Cardiothorac Surg*. 2012;1(1):3–10.
116. Tchouta LN, et al. *Chest*. 2017;151(2):329–339.
117. Bao F, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 2016;8(7):1798–1803.
118. Louie BE, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2016;102(3):917–924.
119. Qian L, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9(7):1997–2005.
120. He H, et al. *J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2018;13(1):52.
121. Kuo SW, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9(9):3105–3113.

References

1. *Intuitive Surgical I. da Vinci Gynecology*. 2018. http://davincisurgery.com/da-vinci-gynecology/
2. Ashrafian H, Clancy O, Grover V, Darzi A. The evolution of robotic surgery: surgical and anaesthetic aspects. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(suppl 1):i72–i84.
3. Hemmerling TM, Wehbe M, Zaouter C, Taddei R, Morse J. The Kepler intubation system. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(3):590–594.
4. Hemmerling TM, Taddei R, Wehbe M, Zaouter C, Cyr S, Morse J. First robotic tracheal intubations in humans using the Kepler intubation system. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(6):1011–1016.
5. Hemmerling TM, Terrasini N. Robotic anesthesia: not the realm of science fiction any more. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25(6):736–742.
6. Zorko N, Mekis D, Kamenik M. The influence of the Trendelenburg position on haemodynamics: comparison of anaesthetized patients with ischaemic heart disease and healthy volunteers. *J Int Med Res*. 2011;39(3):1084–1089.
7. Kaye AD, Vadivelu N, Ahuja N, Mitra S, Silasi D, Urman RD. Anesthetic considerations in robotic-assisted gynecologic surgery. *Ochsner J*. 2013;13(4):517–524.
8. Choi SJ, Gwak MS, Ko JS, et al. The effects of the exaggerated lithotomy position for radical perineal prostatectomy on respiratory mechanics. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61(5):439–443.
9. Ott DE. Subcutaneous emphysema—beyond the pneumoperitoneum. *JSLS*. 2014;18(1):1–7.
10. Andersson LE, Baath M, Thorne A, Aspelin P, Odeberg-Wernerman S. Effect of carbon dioxide pneumoperitoneum on development of atelectasis during anesthesia, examined by spiral computed tomography. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(2):293–299.
11. Choi EM, Na S, Choi SH, An J, Rha KH, Oh YJ. Comparison of volume-controlled and pressure-controlled ventilation in steep Trendelenburg position for robot-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy. *J Clin Anesth*. 2011;23(3):183–188.
12. Dick CR, Liu Z, Sassoon CS, Berry RB, Mahutte CK. O2-induced change in ventilation and ventilatory drive in COPD. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1997;155(2):609–614.
13. Christiansen J, Douglas CG, Haldane JS. The absorption and dissociation of carbon dioxide by human blood. *J Physiol*. 1914;48(4):244–271.
14. Strang CM, Ebmeyer U, Maripuu E, Hachenberg T, Hedenstierna G. Improved ventilation-perfusion matching by abdominal insufflation (pneumoperitoneum) with CO2 but not with air. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2013;79(6):617–625.
15. Price HL. Effects of carbon dioxide on the cardiovascular system. *Anesthesiology*. 1960;21:652–663.
16. Juan G, Calverley P, Talamo C, Schnader J, Roussos C. Effect of carbon dioxide on diaphragmatic function in human beings. *N Engl J Med*. 1984;310(14):874–879.
17. Patel S, Sharma S. *Physiology, Acidosis, Respiratory. StatPearls. Treasure Island (FL)*. StatPearls Publishing LLC; 2018.
18. Hyneck ML. Simple acid-base disorders. *Am J Hosp Pharm*. 1985;42(9):1992–2004.
19. Kazemi H. *Cerebrospinal Fluid and the Control of Ventilation*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven Publishers; 1997.
20. Gutt CN, Oniu T, Mehrabi A, et al. Circulatory and respiratory complications of carbon dioxide insufflation. *Dig Surg*. 2004;21(2):95–105.
21. Geerts BF, van den Bergh L, Stijnen T, Aarts LP, Jansen JR. Comprehensive review: is it better to use the Trendelenburg position or passive leg raising for the initial treatment of hypovolemia? *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24(8):668–674.
22. Gok F, Sarkilar G, Kilicaslan A, Yosunkaya A, Uzun ST. Comparison of the effect of the Trendelenburg and passive leg raising positions on internal jugular vein size in critically ill patients. *Int J Clin Exp Med*. 2015;8(10):19037–19043.
23. Martin JT. The Trendelenburg position: a review of current slants about head down tilt. *AANA j*. 1995;63(1):29–36.
24. Miller PE, Dao H, Paluvoi N, et al. Comparison of 30-Day postoperative outcomes after laparoscopic vs robotic colectomy. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2016;223(2):369–373.
25. Sonny A, Sessler DI, You J, et al. The response to Trendelenburg position is minimally affected by underlying hemodynamic conditions in patients with aortic stenosis. *J Anesth*. 2017;31(5):692–702.
26. Davies BL, Hibberd RD, Ng WS, Timoney AG, Wickham JE. The development of a surgeon robot for prostatectomies. *Proc Inst Mech Eng H*. 1991;205(1):35–38.
27. Sheeder J, Arruda J, Guntupalli SR, Davidson SA, Behbakht K. Prolonged steep Trendelenburg positioning increases the risk of postoperative morbidity in patients undergoing robotic surgery for presumed gynecologic malignancy. *Gynecologic Oncology*. 2015;137:54.
28. Raz O, Boesel TW, Arianayagam M, et al. The effect of the modified Z Trendelenburg position on intraocular pressure during robotic assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy: a randomized, controlled study. *J Urol*. 2015;193(4):1213–1219.
29. Awad H, Santilli S, Ohr M, et al. The effects of steep Trendelenburg positioning on intraocular pressure during robotic radical prostatectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(2):473–478.
30. Hoshikawa Y, Tsutsumi N, Ohkoshi K, et al. The effect of steep Trendelenburg positioning on intraocular pressure and visual function during robotic-assisted radical prostatectomy. *Br J Ophthalmol*. 2014;98(3):305–308.
31. Nguyen NT, Perez RV, Fleming N, Rivers R, Wolfe BM. Effect of prolonged pneumoperitoneum on intraoperative urine output during laparoscopic gastric bypass. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2002;195(4):476–483.
32. Moran ME. Evolution of robotic arms. *J Robot Surg*. 2007;1(2):103–111.
33. Lane T. A short history of robotic surgery. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 2018;100(suppl 6):5–7.
34. Taketani Y, Mayama C, Suzuki N, et al. Transient but significant visual field defects after robot-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy in deep Trendelenburg position. *PLoS One*. 2015;10(4):e0123361.
35. Olympio MA. Postoperative visual loss after robotic pelvic surgery. *BJU Int*. 2013;112(8):1060–1061.
36. Piegeler T, Dreessen P, Graber SM, Haile SR, Schmid DM, Beck-Schimmer B. Impact of intraoperative fluid administration on outcome in patients undergoing robotic-assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy—a retrospective analysis. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2014;14:61.
37. Pridgeon S, Bishop CV, Adshead J. Lower limb compartment syndrome as a complication of robot-assisted radical prostatectomy: the UK experience. *BJU Int*. 2013;112(4):485–488.
38. Stimson CJ, Chang SS, Barocas DA, et al. Early and late perioperative outcomes following radical cystectomy: 90-day readmissions, morbidity and mortality in a contemporary series. *J Urol*. 2010;184(4):1296–1300.
39. Hu M, Jacobs BL, Montgomery JS, et al. Sharpening the focus on causes and timing of readmission after radical cystectomy for bladder cancer. *Cancer*. 2014;120(9):1409–1416.
40. Jacobs BL, Zhang Y, Tan HJ, Ye Z, Skolarus TA, Hollenbeck BK. Hospitalization trends after prostate and bladder surgery: implications of potential payment reforms. *J Urol*. 2013;189(1):59–65.
41. Menon M, Hemal AK, Tewari A, et al. Nerve-sparing robot-assisted radical cystoprostatectomy and urinary diversion. *BJU Int*. 2003;92(3):232–236.
42. Nix J, Smith A, Kurpad R, Nielsen ME, Wallen EM, Pruthi RS. Prospective randomized controlled trial of robotic versus open radical cystectomy for bladder cancer: perioperative and pathologic results. *Eur Urol*. 2010;57(2):196–201.
43. Khan MS, Gan C, Ahmed K, et al. A single-centre early phase randomised controlled three-arm trial of open, robotic, and laparoscopic radical cystectomy (CORAL). *Eur Urol*. 2016;69(4):613–621.
44. Bochner BH, Dalbagni G, Sjoberg DD, et al. Comparing open radical cystectomy and robot-assisted laparoscopic radical cystectomy: a randomized clinical trial. *Eur Urol*. 2015;67(6):1042–1050.
45. Parekh DJ, Messer J, Fitzgerald J, Ercole B, Svatek R. Perioperative outcomes and oncologic efficacy from a pilot prospective randomized clinical trial of open versus robotic assisted radical cystectomy. *J Urol*. 2013;189(2):474–479.
46. Bjurlin MA, Huang WC. Re: Pak et al.: utilization trends and short-term outcomes of robotic versus open radical cystectomy for bladder cancer. *Urology*. 2017;103:117–123.
47. Borza T, Jacobs BL, Montgomery JS, et al. No differences in population-based readmissions after open and robotic-assisted radical cystectomy: implications for post-discharge care. *Urology*. 2017;104:77–83.
48. Ozcan MF, Akbulut Z, Gurdal C, et al. Does steep Trendelenburg positioning effect the ocular hemodynamics and intraocular pressure in patients undergoing robotic cystectomy and robotic prostatectomy? *Int Urol Nephrol*. 2017;49(1):55–60.
49. Jeong IG, Khandwala YS, Kim JH, et al. Association of robotic-assisted vs laparoscopic radical nephrectomy with perioperative outcomes and health care costs, 2003 to 2015. *JAMA*. 2017;318(16):1561–1568.

50. Pavan N, Derweesh IH, Mir CM, et al. Outcomes of laparoscopic and robotic partial nephrectomy for large (>4 cm) kidney tumors: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2017;24(8):2420–2428.
51. Leow JJ, Heah NH, Chang SL, Chong YL, Png KS. Outcomes of robotic versus laparoscopic partial nephrectomy: an updated meta-analysis of 4,919 patients. *J Urol*. 2016;196(5):1371–1377.
52. Himpens J, Leman G, Cadiere GB. Telesurgical laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Surg Endosc*. 1998;12(8):1091.
53. Committee opinion no. 628: robotic surgery in gynecology. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;125(3):760–767.
54. Lim PC, Crane JT, English EJ, et al. Multicenter analysis comparing robotic, open, laparoscopic, and vaginal hysterectomies performed by high-volume surgeons for benign indications. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2016;133(3):359–364.
55. Torng PL, Pan SP, Hwang JS, Shih HJ, Chen CL. Learning curve in concurrent application of laparoscopic and robotic-assisted hysterectomy with lymphadenectomy in endometrial cancer. *Taiwan J Obstet Gynecol*. 2017;56(6):781–787.
56. Lin JF, Frey M, Huang JQ. Learning curve analysis of the first 100 robotic-assisted laparoscopic hysterectomies performed by a single surgeon. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2014;124(1):88–91.
57. Wright JD, Ananth CV, Lewin SN, et al. Robotically assisted vs laparoscopic hysterectomy among women with benign gynecologic disease. *JAMA*. 2013;309(7):689–698.
58. Nawfal AK, Orady M, Eisenstein D, Wegienka G. Effect of body mass index on robotic-assisted total laparoscopic hysterectomy. *J Minim Invasive Gynecol*. 2011;18(3):328–332.
59. Pursell N, El-Neemany D, Greenberg P, et al. Outcomes of robotic-assisted laparoscopic hysterectomy stratified by body mass index. *J Minim Invasive Gynecol*. 2017;24(7):S155.
60. Ind T, Laios A, Hacking M, Nobbenhuis M. A comparison of operative outcomes between standard and robotic laparoscopic surgery for endometrial cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Int J Med Robot*. 2017;13(4).
61. Solaini L, Bazzocchi F, Cavaliere D, Avanzolini A, Cucchetti A, Ercolani G. Robotic versus laparoscopic right colectomy: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis. *Surg Endosc*. 2018;32(3):1104–1110.
62. Dolejs SC, Waters JA, Ceppa EP, Zarzaur BL. Laparoscopic versus robotic colectomy: a national surgical quality improvement project analysis. *Surg Endosc*. 2017;31(6):2387–2396.
63. Huang Y, Chua TC, Maddern GJ, Samra JS. Robotic cholecystectomy versus conventional laparoscopic cholecystectomy: a meta-analysis. *Surgery*. 2017;161(3):628–636.
64. Hagen ME, Balaphas A, Podetta M, et al. Robotic single-site versus multiport laparoscopic cholecystectomy: a case-matched analysis of short- and long-term costs. *Surg Endosc*. 2018;32(3):1550–1555.
65. Breitenstein S, Nocito A, Puhan M, Held U, Weber M, Clavien PA. Robotic-assisted versus laparoscopic cholecystectomy: outcome and cost analyses of a case-matched control study. *Ann Surg*. 2008;247(6):987–993.
66. Balachandran B, Hufford TA, Mustafa T, Kochar K, Sulo S, Khorsand J. A comparative study of outcomes between single-site robotic and multi-port laparoscopic cholecystectomy: an experience from a tertiary care center. *World J Surg*. 2017;41(5):1246–1253.
67. van der Linden YT, Brenkman HJ, van der Horst S, van Grevenstein WM, van Hillegersberg R, Ruurda JP. Robotic single-port laparoscopic cholecystectomy is safe but faces technical challenges. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A*. 2016;26(11):857–861.
68. Cherqui D. Laparoscopic liver resection. *Br J Surg*. 2003;90(6):644–646.
69. Couinaud C. [Liver lobes and segments: notes on the anatomical architecture and surgery of the liver]. *Presse Med*. 1954;62(33):709–712.
70. Croome KP, Yamashita MH. Laparoscopic vs open hepatic resection for benign and malignant tumors: an updated meta-analysis. *Arch Surg*. 2010;145(11):1109–1118.
71. Croner RS, Perrakis A, Hohenberger W, Brunner M. Robotic liver surgery for minor hepatic resections: a comparison with laparoscopic and open standard procedures. *Langenbecks Arch Surg*. 2016;401(5):707–714.
72. Goja S, Singh MK, Soin AS. Robotics in hepatobiliary surgery-initial experience, first reported case series from India. *Int J Surg Case Rep*. 2017;33:16–20.
73. Magistri P, Tarantino G, Guidetti C, et al. Laparoscopic versus robotic surgery for hepatocellular carcinoma: the first 46 consecutive cases. *J Surg Res*. 2017;217:92–99.
74. Felli E, Santoro R, Colasanti M, Vennarecci G, Lepiane P, Ettorre GM. Robotic liver surgery: preliminary experience in a tertiary hepatobiliary unit. *Updates Surg*. 2015;67(1):27–32.
75. Beard RE, Tsung A. Minimally invasive approaches for surgical management of primary liver cancers. *Cancer Control*. 2017;24(3):1073274817729234.
76. Dias FL, Walder F, Leonhardt FD. The role of transoral robotic surgery in the management of oropharyngeal cancer. *Curr Opin Oncol*. 2017.
77. Sperry SM, O'Malley BW Jr, Weinstein GS. The University of Pennsylvania curriculum for training otorhinolaryngology residents in transoral robotic surgery. *ORL J Otorhinolaryngol Relat Spec*. 2014;76(6):342–352.
78. Weinstein GS, O'Malley BW, Magnuson JS, et al. Transoral robotic surgery: a multicenter study to assess feasibility, safety, and surgical margins. *Laryngoscope*. 2012;122(8):1701–1707.
79. Holsinger FC. A flexible, single-arm robotic surgical system for transoral resection of the tonsil and lateral pharyngeal wall: next-generation robotic head and neck surgery. *Laryngoscope*. 2016;126(4):864–869.
80. Kavanagh KT. Applications of image-directed robotics in otolaryngologic surgery. *Laryngoscope*. 1994;104(3 Pt 1):283–293.
81. Weinstein GS, O'Malley BW, Snyder W, Sherman E, Quon H. Transoral robotic surgery: radical tonsillectomy. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2007;133(12):1220–1226.
82. De Ceulaer J, De Clercq C, Swennen GR. Robotic surgery in oral and maxillofacial, craniofacial and head and neck surgery: a systematic review of the literature. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2012;41(11):1311–1324.
83. Bekeny JR, Ozer E. Transoral robotic surgery frontiers. *World J Otorhinolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2016;2(2):130–135.
84. Moore EJ, Janus J, Kasperbauer J. Transoral robotic surgery of the oropharynx: clinical and anatomic considerations. *Clin Anat*. 2012;25(1):135–141.
85. Lorincz BB, Mockelmann N, Busch CJ, et al. Two-year survival analysis of 50 consecutive head and neck cancer patients treated with transoral robotic surgery in a single European centre. *Ann Surg Oncol*. 2015;22(suppl 3):S1028–1033.
86. Nataf P, Al-Attar N, Ramadan R, et al. Thoracoscopic IMA takedown. *J Card Surg*. 2000;15(4):278–282.
87. Loulmet D, Carpentier A, d'Attellis N, et al. Endoscopic coronary artery bypass grafting with the aid of robotic assisted instruments. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1999;118(1):4–10.
88. Argenziano M, Oz MC, Kohmoto T, et al. Totally endoscopic atrial septal defect repair with robotic assistance. *Circulation*. 2003;108(suppl 1):II191–II194.
89. Bonaros N, Schachner T, Oehlinger A, et al. Robotically assisted totally endoscopic atrial septal defect repair: insights from operative times, learning curves, and clinical outcome. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82(2):687–693.
90. Morgan JA, Peacock JC, Kohmoto T, et al. Robotic techniques improve quality of life in patients undergoing atrial septal defect repair. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;77(4):1328–1333.
91. Rodriguez E, Kypson AP, Moten SC, Nifong LW, Chitwood WR. Robotic mitral surgery at East Carolina University: a 6 year experience. *Int J Med Robot*. 2006;2(3):211–215.
92. Suematsu Y, Mora BN, Mihaljevic T, del Nido PJ. Totally endoscopic robotic-assisted repair of patent ductus arteriosus and vascular ring in children. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;80(6):2309–2313.
93. Katz MR, Van Praet F, de Canniere D, et al. Integrated coronary revascularization: percutaneous coronary intervention plus robotic totally endoscopic coronary artery bypass. *Circulation*. 2006;114(suppl 1):I473–476.
94. Argenziano M, Katz M, Bonatti J, et al. Results of the prospective multicenter trial of robotically assisted totally endoscopic coronary artery bypass grafting. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;81(5):1666–1674; discussion 1674-1665.
95. Kypson AP. Recent trends in minimally invasive cardiac surgery. *Cardiology*. 2007;107(3):147–158.
96. Gillinov AM. Surgical ablation of atrial fibrillation. *J Interv Card Electrophysiol*. 2005;13(2):115–124.
97. DeRose JJ, Kypson AP. Robotic arrhythmia surgery and resynchronization. *Am J Surg*. 2004;188(suppl 4A):104s–111s.

98. Vassiliades TA. Technical aids to performing thoracoscopic robotically-assisted internal mammary artery harvesting. *Heart Surg Forum*. 2002;5(2):119–124.
99. Reichenspurner H, Boehm DH, Gulbins H, et al. Three-dimensional video and robot-assisted port-access mitral valve operation. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;69(4):1176–1181; discussion 1181-1172.
100. Bakir I, Casselman FP, Brugada P, et al. Current strategies in the surgical treatment of atrial fibrillation: review of the literature and Onze Lieve Vrouw Clinic's strategy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(1):331–340.
101. Gerosa G, Bianco R, Buja G, di Marco F. Totally endoscopic robotic-guided pulmonary veins ablation: an alternative method for the treatment of atrial fibrillation. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2004;26(2):450–452.
102. Thomas D, Scholz EP, Schweizer PA, Katus HA, Becker R. Initial experience with robotic navigation for catheter ablation of paroxysmal and persistent atrial fibrillation. *J Electrocardiol*. 2012;45(2):95–101.
103. Augustin F, Schmid T, Bodner J. The robotic approach for mediastinal lesions. *Int J Med Robot*. 2006;2(3):262–270.
104. Bodner JC, Zitt M, Ott H, et al. Robotic-assisted thoracoscopic surgery (RATS) for benign and malignant esophageal tumors. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;80(4):1202–1206.
105. Kernstine KH, DeArmond DT, Shamoun DM, Campos JH. The first series of completely robotic esophagectomies with three-field lymphadenectomy: initial experience. *Surg Endosc*. 2007;21(12):2285–2292.
106. Gharagozloo F, Margolis M, Tempesta B. Robot-assisted thoracoscopic lobectomy for early-stage lung cancer. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;85(6):1880–1885; discussion 1885-1886.
107. Gharagozloo F, Margolis M, Tempesta B, Strother E, Najam F. Robot-assisted lobectomy for early-stage lung cancer: report of 100 consecutive cases. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;88(2):380–384.
108. Louie BE. Robotic pneumonectomy. *Thorac Surg Clin*. 2014;24(2):169–175, vi.
109. Kernstine KH, Waters JK. To robot or not to robot: is that really the question? *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2018;155(2):787–788.
110. Steenwyk B, Lyerly R. Advancements in robotic-assisted thoracic surgery. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30(4):699–708.
111. Campos JH. An update on robotic thoracic surgery and anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23(1):1–6.
112. Zhang Y, Wang S, Sun Y. Anesthesia of robotic thoracic surgery. *Ann Transl Med*. 2015;3(5):71.
113. Kernstine KH. Robotics in thoracic surgery. *Am J Surg*. 2004;188(suppl 4A):89s–97s.
114. Campos J, Ueda K. Update on anesthetic complications of robotic thoracic surgery. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2014;80(1):83–88.
115. Cao C, Manganas C, Ang SC, Yan TD. A systematic review and meta-analysis on pulmonary resections by robotic video-assisted thoracic surgery. *Ann Cardiothorac Surg*. 2012;1(1):3–10.
116. Tchouta LN, Park HS, Boffa DJ, Blasberg JD, Detterbeck FC, Kim AW. Hospital volume and outcomes of robot-assisted lobectomies. *Chest*. 2017;151(2):329–339.
117. Bao F, Zhang C, Yang Y, He Z, Wang L, Hu J. Comparison of robotic and video-assisted thoracic surgery for lung cancer: a propensity-matched analysis. *J Thorac Dis*. 2016;8(7):1798–1803.
118. Louie BE, Wilson JL, Kim S, et al. Comparison of video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery and robotic approaches for clinical stage I and stage II non-small cell lung cancer using the Society of Thoracic Surgeons database. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2016;102(3):917–924.
119. Qian L, Chen X, Huang J, et al. A comparison of three approaches for the treatment of early-stage thymomas: robot-assisted thoracic surgery, video-assisted thoracic surgery, and median sternotomy. *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9(7):1997–2005.
120. He H, Wu Q, Wang Z, et al. Short-term outcomes of robot-assisted minimally invasive esophagectomy for esophageal cancer: a propensity score matched analysis. *J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2018;13(1):52.
121. Kuo SW, Huang PM, Lin MW, Chen KC, Lee JM. Robot-assisted thoracic surgery for complex procedures. *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9(9):3105–3113.

72

Ambulatory (Outpatient) Anesthesia

IAN SMITH, MARK A. SKUES, and BEVERLY K. PHILIP

KEY POINTS

- The use of ambulatory surgery continues to increase, mostly as a result of less invasive surgical techniques, improved patient selection and preparation, and an expansion of office-based practice.
- Few absolute contraindications exist to ambulatory surgery. Patients should not be excluded on the basis of arbitrary limits, such as age, body mass index, or American Society of Anesthesiologists physical status classification system.
- Effective preoperative assessment is required to evaluate and prepare patients and is essential for the delivery of safe, high-quality, and efficient ambulatory surgical care.
- Many anesthetics and techniques can be used for ambulatory surgery. Of prime importance, provider experience and careful attention to detail are required to deliver high-quality rapid recovery with minimal side effects.
- Spinal anesthesia may extend the range of patients and procedures suitable for ambulatory surgery, but it requires the use of small doses of bupivacaine combined with opioids or short-acting local anesthetics to avoid prolonged recovery.
- Sedative techniques can facilitate a wide variety of procedures performed in the hospital, office, or remote settings. However, sedation is no safer than general anesthesia and requires the same standards of personnel, monitoring, and perioperative care as for patients undergoing general or regional anesthesia.
- Multimodal analgesia, using combinations of local or regional anesthesia, acetaminophen, and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, provides effective relief of pain. The reduced need for opioids decreases the incidence and intensity of adverse effects.
- Antiemetic prophylaxis should be based on individual patient risk. Multimodal regimens are required for patients and procedures known to be associated with increased risk for perioperative nausea and vomiting.
- Patients should be discharged with written instructions concerning aftercare, return to normal activities, follow-up evaluation, and a contact telephone number. This advice must include early warning signs and the appropriate action to take.
- Ambulatory surgery remains very popular with patients with infrequent rates of adverse events and complications.

Introduction

Ambulatory surgery has its origins in Glasgow, Scotland, where, between 1898 and 1908, James Henderson Nicoll performed almost 9000 ambulatory surgical procedures on children, nearly half of whom were younger than 3 years of age.[1] Contrary to the prevailing philosophy, which advocated prolonged bed rest after surgery, Nicoll encouraged early mobilization and home follow-up by a visiting nurse to reduce high cross-infection rates and overcome bed shortages and financial constraints. A few years later, Ralph Milton Waters opened his Downtown Anesthesia Clinic in Sioux City, Iowa, allowing adult patients to return home within a few hours of difficult dental extractions, abscess drainage, or reduction of minor fractures.[2] Further progress was slow until the dangers of prolonged bed rest and the economic advantages of shorter stays began to be recognized toward the middle of the twentieth century. The first hospital-based ambulatory surgical units were opened in Grand Rapids, Michigan, in 1951, and in Los Angeles, California, in 1952, and somewhat later at London's Hammersmith Hospital in the United Kingdom in 1969.[3] At the same time, the first freestanding ambulatory surgery center opened in Phoenix, Arizona,[4] rapidly followed by many others across North America in the 1970s and 1980s.

The development of ambulatory anesthesia as a recognized subspecialty was enhanced by the formation of the Society for Ambulatory Anesthesia (SAMBA) in 1984[5] and the British Association of Day Surgery in 1989. These and nine other national societies came together in 1995 to form the International Association for Ambulatory Surgery (IAAS), an umbrella organization dedicated to the worldwide promotion of ambulatory surgery.

Ambulatory surgery has expanded far beyond the performance of simple procedures on healthy patients. Currently, a broad range of major procedures are performed on patients who frequently have complex preexisting medical conditions. The availability of improved anesthetic and analgesic drugs minimizes the anesthetic side effects and facilitates the recovery process, as do the increasing availability of minimally invasive surgical techniques. Equally important has been a philosophical change that challenged outdated and conservative practices, demanding unnecessary postoperative inpatient admission. Ambulatory surgery now accounts for approximately 80% of the elective surgeries in the United States.[6] Ambulatory surgery also constitutes a large proportion of elective surgical activity in the United Kingdom and increasingly in many other countries worldwide, although rates for individual procedures still vary.[7]

DEFINITIONS

Although ambulatory surgery is widely practiced, the precise definition can vary across countries and healthcare systems. For consistency, we have used the definition proposed by the cofounder of the IAAS: "A surgical day case is a patient who is admitted for investigation or operation on a planned non-resident basis and who none the less requires facilities for recovery. The procedure should not require an overnight stay in a hospital bed."[8] This definition requires the patient to be managed with the intention of same-day discharge from the outset, in addition to admission, operation, and discharge all occurring on the same calendar day. Including management intention in the definition ensures no incentive is provided to discharge a planned inpatient at short notice, who would be without all of the preparation and support required for optimal postoperative care.

Short-stay surgery embraces all of the principles of ambulatory surgery and includes a postoperative overnight hospital stay. Extended observation may be prudent for certain patients with significant comorbidities, lack of social support, or for those who have undergone a procedure that is either too extensive or performed too late in the day to be compatible with same-day discharge. We have included short-stay surgery in this chapter because the objectives of minimizing physiologic disturbance to improve the quality of recovery and reduce the length of stay are the same as those of ambulatory surgery and much of the perioperative management is similar.

Benefits of Ambulatory Surgery

In order for surgery to be performed on an ambulatory basis there must be reduced tissue trauma, enhanced recovery with minimal adverse events, and the provision of effective postoperative analgesia, appropriate information, and postoperative support. Patients appreciate the more efficient scheduling of surgery, and the comfort and convenience of recovering in the familiar home environment. There are also financial advantages associated with ambulatory surgery due to the elimination of costs associated with overnight admission. In both the United States and the United Kingdom, procedures that are compatible with ambulatory surgery receive the same payment (from insurance companies and regional budget holders, respectively), irrespective of the length of stay. Therefore, if a patient does stay overnight, the extra costs are borne by the facility. Since 2010 in the United Kingdom, a higher level of funding has been available for an increasing number of procedures when performed on an ambulatory basis,[9] in order to incentivize best practice and finance any necessary pathway redesign.

Facilities for Ambulatory Surgery

In the United States, the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) provides guidelines for ambulatory surgical facilities,[10] including statements pertaining to adherence to local regulations, staffing requirements, and minimum equipment standards. Quality standards are set and enforced by government regulation, licensing, or accreditation. In the United States and Canada, hospital-based ambulatory surgical facilities receive accreditation through The Joint Commission (TJC), Det Norske Veritas (DNV), and the Healthcare Facilities Accreditation Program. Ambulatory surgery centers and office-based surgery locations can receive accreditation through the Accreditation Association for Ambulatory Health Care, American Association for Accreditation of Ambulatory Surgery Facilities, or TJC. In the United States, the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS) has its own inspection program in addition to accepting accreditation decisions from the listed organizations.

A multitude of designs exist for ambulatory surgical facilities. Some have been purpose designed, and others have evolved by adapting existing facilities. The facilities delivering ambulatory care services also vary by country, but they can be broadly categorized into four models of care, each with its own advantages and disadvantages.[11]

HOSPITAL INTEGRATED

The simplest model of ambulatory surgery is one with shared inpatient surgical facilities, but with separate areas for preoperative preparation and recovery of ambulatory patients. This model of care is most often inefficient and brings the risk for ambulatory procedures being delayed or even canceled in favor of urgent or emergent inpatient procedures. However, by dedicating certain operating sessions to ambulatory surgery and using strict protocols, efficiency in one such unit has been described as almost equal to that of a self-contained unit.[12] The design is flexible, allowing the proportions of ambulatory and inpatient surgery to vary from day to day, and, as new procedures are transferred to ambulatory surgery, it does not require duplication of equipment and skills in a separate facility.

HOSPITAL SELF-CONTAINED

These self-contained units are functionally and structurally separate from inpatient facilities with their own reception, admission areas, operating rooms, recovery areas, and administrative facilities. This design promotes a patient-focused flow of care. It ensures functional separation from urgent and emergency work while maintaining the accessibility of resources available in the main hospital. In many ways it is an ideal model of care. However, the local capacity for ambulatory surgery may be reached, and duplication of operating room equipment and skills may then occur for those procedures still commonly performed on both an ambulatory and inpatient basis.

FREESTANDING

Freestanding ambulatory surgery centers ensure complete separation of perioperative care from inpatient and emergency work. This improves efficiency and allows complete focus on a workflow designed for ambulatory care. While rare perioperative complications may occur that require elevation of care or additional resources, appropriate patient selection and preparation minimize this risk. Some freestanding units have the capacity for overnight stays to provide additional nurse-monitored recovery. However, all freestanding units must have a detailed plan for the care of patients who need urgent or emergent transfer to a nearby hospital. Ambulatory surgery centers vary from highly specialized, single-surgery facilities performing ambulatory total joint replacements or bariatric procedures to those that can accommodate multiple specialties and support a variety of service lines.

OFFICE-BASED

Performing ambulatory surgery, diagnostic procedures, or both in a facility associated with a physician's office is a rapidly expanding model of care within the United States.[6] The main advantages are increased convenience for the patient and surgeon, and lower total procedure costs. Office-based services and facilities have historically been subject to less regulatory requirements when compared to those imposed on ambulatory surgery centers. Furthermore, they may have more significant limitations with respect to equipment, personnel, and environment along with reduced capability when managing perioperative complications. These limitations, however, are rapidly changing. In the United States, physician offices that provide services that include procedures involving moderate to deep sedation or general anesthesia may be subject to state regulatory requirements for accreditation and adherence to standards with respect to governance, facility environment of care, availability of equipment, credentialing of staff, and continued medical education for personnel. A more detailed discussion of office-based anesthesia can be found later in the chapter.

Patient Selection Criteria

SURGICAL FACTORS

The development of minimally invasive surgery, improvements in surgical technique and pain control, and the availability of shorter-acting anesthetics have dramatically increased the range of surgical procedures compatible with same-day discharge. While the duration of surgery has traditionally been a determinant of outcome, the extent of surgical trauma now appears to be the more significant determinant. There should be no expectation of significant blood loss, large perioperative fluid shifts, or the need for complex or specialized postoperative care. Surgical complications remain the single greatest cause of unanticipated hospital admission.[13,14] In the United States and the United Kingdom, an overnight stay for patients who have undergone an ambulatory surgery procedure in any venue receives no additional payment, so the extra costs are borne by the facility. The British Association of Day Surgery publishes a directory of over 200 different surgical procedures and suggests aspirational targets for the proportions of each that are suitable for either ambulatory or short-stay surgery.[15] A selection of these are shown in Table 72.1.

TABLE 72.1 A Selection of Surgical Procedures Which can be Performed on an Ambulatory Basis

Specialty	Examples of Surgical Procedures
Breast surgery	Excision/biopsy including wide local excision, sentinel node biopsy, simple mastectomy, microdochectomy, and other operations on nipple
General surgery	Perianal fistulae, pilonidal sinus, hemorrhoidectomy, open or laparoscopic hernia repair, laparoscopic cholecystectomy, adrenalectomy, splenectomy, fundoplication, gastric banding
Gynecology	Cervical surgery, laparoscopic tubal ligation, oophorectomy, hysterectomy, anterior and posterior repair
Head and neck	Dental procedures, excision of salivary glands, thyroidectomy, and parathyroidectomy
Ophthalmology	Cataract surgery, strabismus surgery, vitrectomy, nasolacrimal and all eyelid surgery
Orthopedics	Diagnostic and therapeutic arthroscopic surgery, anterior cruciate ligament repair, carpal tunnel release, bunion surgery, fracture reductions and removal of metalwork, lumbar microdiscectomy, minimally invasive hip surgery, unicompartmental knee surgery
Otolaryngology	Myringotomy and tympanoplasty, rhinoplasty, procedures on nasal septum and turbinates, polypectomy, adenotonsillectomy, laryngoscopy, and endoscopic sinus surgery
Urology	Endoscopic bladder and ureteric surgery, transurethral laser prostatectomy, circumcision, orchidectomy, laparoscopic nephrectomy, pyeloplasty, and prostatectomy
Vascular surgery	Varicose vein surgery, dialysis fistula creation, transluminal arterial surgery

Laparoscopic cholecystectomy is now a routine ambulatory surgical procedure in many countries, and increasingly same-day discharge is seen as safe and beneficial after a variety of advanced laparoscopic procedures, including fundoplication,[16] hysterectomy,[17] nephrectomy,[18] pyeloplasty,[19] radical prostatectomy,[20] and gastric banding.[21] Minimally invasive approaches have also facilitated same-day discharge following unicompartmental knee[22] and hip arthroplasty.[23,24] One series of 2000 patients undergoing laparoscopic Roux-en-Y gastric bypass for morbid obesity reported 84% being discharged within 23 hours with a readmission rate of less than 2%.[25]

Even specialties like neurosurgery, traditionally associated with complex inpatient care, have begun to embrace day surgery. Same-day discharge of selected patients undergoing awake craniotomy for supratentorial tumors was first described in 2001.[26] More recently, some patients requiring general anesthesia for tumor resection[27] and even aneurysm clipping[28] have been discharged on the day of surgery. Increasingly, a number of non-elective procedures, such as abscesses, incarcerated hernia repairs, and appendectomies, are being managed through day surgery pathways.[29] In parallel, several less invasive procedures, such as diagnostic or therapeutic hysteroscopy, are moving from ambulatory surgery into the procedure room, outpatient clinic, or office.[30]

While postoperative pain control in the home environment may present substantial challenges, perhaps the greatest barrier to the development of ambulatory surgery is conservatism, based on incorrect perceptions and concern about serious complications that might occur following discharge. For example, despite convincing data that most primary hemorrhages are evident within 6 to 8 hours of tonsillectomy,[31,32] an overnight stay is still routine in some countries while others discharge 80% of patients or more on the day of surgery.[7] Similarly, ambulatory thyroid surgery was first shown to be safe and effective in 1986,[33] yet its widespread adoption has been slow,[34] predominantly because of concerns about bleeding and airway compromise. Such complications are rare, especially when surgery is undertaken by specialists who perform a high volume of cases with assiduous hemostasis, allowing short times to discharge to be achieved.[35] Performing thyroidectomy under local anesthesia also appears to increase ambulatory surgery rates,[36] perhaps because of the careful surgical technique required. In the case of breast surgery, concerns about postoperative psychological support has delayed transfer of mastectomy and other cancer operations into ambulatory care in the United Kingdom, although it is now recognized that early discharge improves the psychological well-being of these patients by minimizing the time away from home.[37] Challenging conventional wisdom also may be beneficial; for example, discontinuing the routine use of drains after mastectomy or axillary node clearance does not increase morbidity, including from wound seroma, while facilitating same-day discharge.[38] Day surgery management of breast cancer is associated with fewer complications than inpatient care.[39]

MEDICAL FACTORS

In the past, ambulatory surgery has relied on relatively rigid patient selection criteria in the attempt to limit the occurrence of postoperative complications. In practice, however, most of these criteria predict the occurrence of treatable perioperative adverse events, but not the need for unanticipated admission or readmission.[40] Although an index combining age, length of surgery, and preexisting conditions, such as peripheral or cerebrovascular disease, can identify a group at higher risk for hospital admission, the specificity is poor and same-day discharge is still the most likely outcome.[41] Ambulatory surgery is very safe, with a perioperative mortality less than 1 in 11,000,[42] better than that in the general population. More recent studies have confirmed the continuing safety of ambulatory surgery, despite increasing surgical and patient complexity.[43-45]

Relatively few absolute contraindications now exist to ambulatory surgery. Patient suitability should be assessed on the basis of overall health, taking into account both the risks and benefits of early discharge, and certainly not determined by arbitrary limits, such as age, body mass index (BMI), or ASA physical status.[46] Chronic conditions should be relatively stable and must be optimally treated before any elective procedure, irrespective of the planned postoperative management. Many stable chronic diseases, such as diabetes, asthma, or epilepsy, are often better managed by the patients than by the perioperative team, and ambulatory surgery facilitates this by easing the disruption to their daily routine.[46] A distinction should be made between preexisting conditions that make a patient more difficult to manage on the day of surgery and those that increase the occurrence of late postoperative problems, which are a relative contraindication to ambulatory surgery.[47]

A good example is obesity, which is associated with numerous perioperative problems for the surgeon, anesthesiologist, and operating room personnel (see also Chapter 58). Safe care of the obese patient may require the availability of experienced staff and specialized equipment, such as longer instruments and wider operating trolleys but any risks are resolved soon after immediate recovery and are not prevented by postoperative overnight hospitalization. Obese patients benefit from ambulatory management with early mobilization, the use of short-acting drugs, and avoidance of opioid analgesia.[47] Obesity does not increase the rate of unanticipated admission, postoperative complications, readmission, or other unplanned contact with health professionals following discharge.[48] Even morbid obesity (BMI > 40 kg/m^2)[46] and super obesity (BMI > 50 kg/m^2)[49] are no longer considered absolute contraindications to same-day discharge. Obesity increases the likelihood of further comorbidities, but these should be evaluated individually.

Obstructive Sleep Apnea

Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) occurs in the general population but is much more common in obesity. Nonetheless, most cases can be managed safely and effectively on an ambulatory basis.[50] Perioperative problems such as difficult tracheal intubation and airway obstruction should be anticipated.[51] However, patients undergoing more invasive surgery, especially involving the chest or airway, or those requiring large doses of perioperative opioids, may be less suitable.[50] Frequently, OSA is suspected but has not yet been definitively diagnosed and treated. A simple questionnaire, supplemented with some basic measurements (e.g., STOP-Bang), can identify most patients at high risk for OSA,[52] but there is insufficient evidence to recommend delaying surgery until the diagnosis is confirmed.[53] In children, OSA is now one of the main indications for tonsillectomy and this has been seen as a relative contraindication to ambulatory surgery. However, one recent study has shown that same-day discharge is still safe in the absence of other comorbidities.[54]

Age

Medical and social problems increase with age and should be evaluated and managed individually rather than applying an arbitrary upper age limit for ambulatory surgery. The risk for death or readmission within 7 days of surgery in patients over 65 years of age are 41/100,000 and 2.53%, respectively.[55] Although somewhat more frequent than values from younger patients, the major risk factors appear to be very advanced age (older than 85 years of age), more invasive surgery, and recent inpatient hospital care.[55] The frequency of perioperative adverse cardiovascular events also increases with age. Overall, older patients had a twofold increase in the risk for intraoperative adverse cardiovascular events; however, this was seen not as a contraindication to ambulatory surgery but rather as indicating the need for more careful intraoperative management.[56] In contrast, the incidence of postoperative complications seems to be reduced in older patients.[56,57] In particular, older patients appear to experience far less postoperative pain, dizziness, nausea, and vomiting than younger patients,[56,58] and do not require a higher rate of unplanned admission or readmission. One study suggests a reduced incidence of postoperative cognitive dysfunction in older patients after ambulatory surgery compared to similar procedures performed on an inpatient basis,[59] presumably because of the use of short-acting anesthetic techniques and reduced separation from their familiar home environment. Reducing length of hospital stay after hip and knee surgery appears to confer similar benefits.[60]

At the other age extreme, the lower limit for ambulatory surgery may vary depending on the expertise and specialization of the individual facility. Premature babies have a higher risk for postoperative apnea, and hence ambulatory surgery may be inadvisable until they have reached an appropriate postconceptual age (PCA). Evaluation of several historic and retrospective studies suggests the risk for postoperative apnea is less than 5% once PCA exceeds 48 weeks, provided gestational age was at least 35 weeks, the infant was not anemic, and no apnea occurred in the recovery room.[61] However, because considerable variability exists in the incidence of apnea and the relatively small sample size of these studies, the PCA at which risk becomes acceptably low is controversial,[62] with a value of 60 weeks most commonly taken as the cutoff for ambulatory management.[63,64] Caffeine administration appears to markedly reduce the incidence of postoperative apnea in babies who were premature,[65] but this is not seen as a substitute for careful patient selection.[63] Spinal anesthesia may offer advantages to infants who were premature undergoing abdominal surgery in the first week of life, but it is distressing to the infant and has a high (28%) failure rate.[66] Compared with older studies involving more soluble anesthetics, sevoflurane and desflurane were associated with lower rates of postoperative apnea after hernia surgery in infants born at less than 37 weeks gestation and under 47 weeks PCA.[67] Although no airway interventions were required to manage apnea, episodes still occurred throughout the 12-hour postoperative observation period and were equally common with either anesthetic.[67]

Cardiovascular Disease

Hypertension is the most common cardiovascular disease and has been a frequent cause for delay and cancellation of ambulatory surgery. Although hypertension is an important risk factor for long-term health, a meta-analysis of nearly 13,000 patients showed that it increased the risk for perioperative complications by only 1.35 times,[68] an amount that may be clinically insignificant. In ambulatory surgery patients, hypertension resulted in an approximate 2.5-fold increase in the risk for perioperative cardiovascular events,[57] but these were relatively minor. Hypertension is not an independent risk factor for perioperative cardiovascular complications if the diastolic pressure is less than 110 mm Hg.[69] Higher arterial blood pressures may predispose to perioperative ischemia, arrhythmias, and cardiovascular lability, but no clear evidence indicates that deferring surgery reduces perioperative risk.[68] In the United Kingdom, patients with documented blood pressures below 160 mm Hg systolic and 100 mm Hg diastolic in the community can be accepted for elective surgery without further measurement.[70] In practice, poorly controlled hypertension is usually identified at the preoperative evaluation and can be treated before surgery is scheduled. Delaying surgery until hypertension is controlled is unlikely to be beneficial.[71]

Patients with known hypertension should continue to take their chronic medication, especially β-adrenergic blockers. β-Adrenergic blockers should not be abruptly stopped,[72] and it may be more likely that they will be unintentionally omitted if patients are advised to take all of their cardiac medications up to and including the day of surgery.[73] Controversy surrounds angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEIs) and angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs). It has been considered “reasonable”[74] to continue these, as any hypotension after induction of anesthesia is usually transient and responds to intravenously administered fluids and repeated vasopressor administration. However, evidence is accumulating of an increase in mortality, stroke, and myocardial injury if ACEIs and ARBs are continued,[75] and current practice is to hold these on the day of surgery.

Patients are generally unsuitable for ambulatory surgery if they have severe unstable angina that causes marked limitation of activity or pain at rest. In the absence of complications, such as arrhythmias or ventricular dysfunction, cardiac risk after myocardial infarction or revascularization procedures returns to baseline after 3 months.[76] Exercise tolerance is a major determinant of perioperative risk[76] and the inability to climb a flight of stairs (~4 metabolic equivalent tasks of activity) is highly predictive (89%) of a postoperative cardiopulmonary complication.[77]

Patients taking anticoagulants and antiplatelet drugs require careful evaluation to balance the risk for perioperative bleeding against the risk in withholding therapy. For minimally invasive procedures, the international normalized ratio can be briefly decreased to the low or subtherapeutic range, with the usual dose of oral anticoagulation resumed immediately after the procedure.[72,73] If the risk for bleeding or thromboembolism is high, low-molecular-weight heparin can be used as bridging therapy.[78] Patients are increasingly being managed with oral direct thrombin or factor Xa inhibitors (e.g., dabigatran, apixaban, rivaroxaban, and edoxaban). The effects of these agents are not reliably measured by commonly used coagulation tests, such as prothrombin time and activated partial thromboplastin time,[79] but their shortened half-lives may make bridging therapy unnecessary. Antiplatelet therapy should be continued for the recommended intervals in patients with bare metal and drug-eluting coronary artery stents, because premature discontinuation is associated with a 25% to 30% risk for stent occlusion, which in turn has a more than 60% risk for myocardial infarction and 20% to 45% risk for death.[80]

SOCIAL FACTORS

In general, if a patient's living arrangements were adequate before surgery, they should also be suitable after surgery. Some adaptations may be necessary if the patient's mobility is severely compromised by their procedure—for example, by the use of casts. Access to a telephone to summon assistance is a minimum requirement, but is rarely problematic with the ubiquitous availability of mobile telephones. Patients usually live within a reasonable traveling distance of the surgical unit, but this may be impractical in rural or sparsely populated areas. Journeys of hundreds or thousands of miles are not unheard of in parts of Scandinavia after ambulatory surgery.[47] For patients who live far away, consideration should be given to the provision of emergency care close to home and for the comfort of the patient during the journey. Patients who choose to travel long distances after ambulatory surgery usually are very satisfied with their care.[81] Hospital hotels, which provide nearby accommodation but little or no nursing care, are a higher-cost alternative for the patient and have largely been abandoned as an impractical option.

A universal safety feature is to require all patients having surgery under general anesthesia or sedation to be discharged with a responsible adult escort and the recommendation to have someone stay with them for the next 24 hours. If the 24-hour companion is mandated, patients often disregard postoperative instructions and send their escorts away if they feel well at home.[82] In the United States, it is standard practice to require that patients who have received other than unsupplemented local anesthesia be discharged with a responsible adult[10]; if not, surgery is postponed. A Canadian single-institution study reported discharging patients alone when their escort fails to arrive,[83] yet this practice did not appear to increase emergency room visits or readmission rates within 30 days. The Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland has suggested that an escort may be required in most (but not all) cases,[46] with exceptions when the surgery is relatively minor and anesthesia brief so the patient is not compromised by the sedative effects of anesthesia or analgesia by the time of discharge.[47] If patients are discharged alone, they should not drive themselves home[84]; several serious accidents have occurred, especially after the use of sedative doses of benzodiazepines.

Preoperative Assessment

THE ROLE OF PREOPERATIVE ASSESSMENT

An effective preoperative assessment process is essential for the delivery of safe, high-quality, and efficient ambulatory surgery.[85] Rather than trying to select specific, low-risk groups of patients, ambulatory surgery is increasingly seen as the default option for a wide range of surgical procedures, with inpatient care chosen only for those with insurmountable barriers to early discharge. Other than identifying this small group of patients, preoperative assessment is primarily required to evaluate and optimize patients and to provide appropriate information (Table 72.2). These assessment and optimization functions can be further distilled into two key questions: "Is there any benefit to this patient of being in hospital overnight after surgery?" and "Is there anything that needs to be done to enable this patient to be a day case?"[85]

TABLE 72.2 The Four Key Functions of a Preoperative Assessment and Preparation Service for Ambulatory Surgery

Function	Examples
1. Identify absolute contraindications to ambulatory surgery	Inability to identify a responsible carer other than for minor surgery with full and rapid recovery anticipated; severe uncorrectable cardiovascular disease
2. Identify need for optimization	Patient requires further investigation, therapeutic modification, or intervention to improve functional status; identify a friend, relative, or neighbor to act as carer
3. Highlight issues for anesthesiologist or other staff (which may alter management but which do not preclude ambulatory surgery)	Potentially difficult intubation necessitating advanced airway management skills; malignant hyperpyrexia susceptible patient requiring trigger-free anesthetic; latex allergy; obese patient requiring operating table/trolley with high weight limit and extra width
4. Provide patient information	Written information on preoperative preparation, medication management, preoperative fasting, etc.

MECHANISMS AND TIMING OF PREOPERATIVE ASSESSMENT

The timing of preoperative assessment is crucial, because it must be done early enough in the pathway to allow for any necessary investigations and optimization without delaying the planned procedure. This becomes increasingly difficult as the interval between the decision to operate and the date of surgery becomes shorter. Ideally, preoperative assessment should immediately follow the decision to operate, by providing a "one-stop shop." This type of service, in which preoperative assessment immediately follows the surgical consultation, is highly valued by patients,[86] although it can be difficult to manage because of variations in the demand for the service. An alternative is to use a basic screening tool to identify those patients who can proceed directly to surgery and those who require further investigation or management (Fig. 72.1).

A case can be made for all patients to be seen in a preoperative assessment clinic; however, in practice this places a major demand on resources and is also inconvenient for patients who may need to take additional time off work. Screening allows many patients to undergo assessment by telephone or questionnaire, with clinic attendance required only if unexpected problems are uncovered or if requested by the patient. When telephone assessment was chosen for all young healthy patients scheduled for minor breast surgery, only 2% of patients had problems identified that required further assessment in the ambulatory surgery center.[87] By using a computerized information-gathering and triage tool, combined with some basic information about

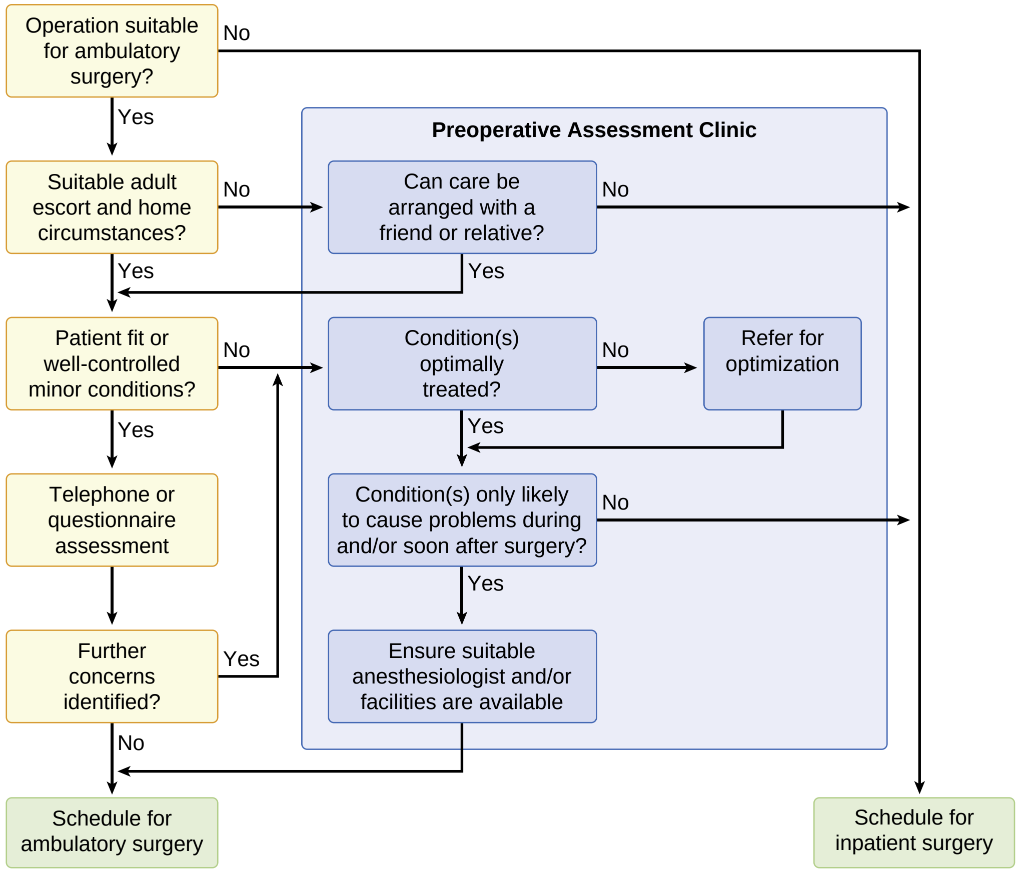

Operation suitable for ambulatory surgery?
No
Yes
Preoperative Assessment Clinic
Suitable adult escort and home circumstances?
No
Can care be arranged with a friend or relative?
No
Yes
Yes
Patient fit or well-controlled minor conditions?
No
Condition(s) optimally treated?
No
Refer for optimization
Yes
Yes
Telephone or questionnaire assessment
Condition(s) only likely to cause problems during and/or soon after surgery?
No
Yes
Further concerns identified?
Yes
Ensure suitable anesthesiologist and/or facilities are available
No
Schedule for ambulatory surgery
Schedule for inpatient surgery

Fig. 72.1 Flowchart illustrating the basic process for selecting patients for ambulatory surgery. The pathway incorporates a screening process for patients who may not require a full face-to-face assessment in the clinic. (Modified and adapted from Smith I, Hammond C. Day case surgery. In: Radford M, Williamson A, Evans C, eds. *Preoperative Assessment and Perioperative Management*. Keswick: M&K Books; 2011:267–280. With permission.)

the planned procedure, approximately onethird of ambulatory patients did not need to see an anesthesiologist before the day of surgery.[88] This approach eliminates the need for a face-to-face assessment before the day of surgery but does not eliminate an evaluation of the patient's medical information in advance of surgery. In contrast, advance face-to-face preoperative assessment is more advisable for older patients, in whom multiple comorbidities, polypharmacy, and social problems are all more likely.[89] Early discharge planning is also important for older patients, to address environmental issues that can be improved to support recovery.[90]

In the United Kingdom, preoperative assessment is usually performed by nurses working closely to protocols and supported by anesthesiologists who provide advice and personally assess the more complex patients.[91] In the United States, anesthesiologist-led, protocol-driven preoperative assessment is often used for healthy patients having minor procedures. However, these preoperative evaluation clinics are frequently used in US hospitals, not just for ambulatory patients with more complex medical or surgical issues but also for the majority of inpatient surgery cases that are admitted on the morning of surgery. More complex patients have their anesthesia preassessment performed by an anesthesiologist. A comprehensive preoperative history and physical evaluation by a physician extender is often also provided in the preoperative assessment clinic for the surgeon. Using a physician extender to assist in preoperative evaluation maintains patient safety and satisfaction, promotes flexibility with scheduling of providers, and increases staff satisfaction.[92] Appropriately trained nurses were just as effective as trainee medical staff in detecting information likely to influence subsequent patient management, but they ordered significantly fewer unnecessary tests.[93]

Patients generally rate their preoperative assessment clinic experience very favorably, with their greatest concerns relating to waiting times.[94] Scheduling appointments of approximately twice as long for patients of ASA physical status grades III and IV than for those of grades I and II has been shown to reduce backlogs and maximum waiting times for preoperative evaluation to an acceptable level of about 10 minutes.[95]

PREOPERATIVE INVESTIGATION

The history and physical examination remain key elements of preoperative risk assessment, despite the availability of more sophisticated technologies.[76] In fact, most useful information can be obtained from the history, supplemented by simple observation of the patient.[96] Basic physical examination, such as routine chest auscultation, is often considered unhelpful in adult ambulatory surgery patients,[85,97] because findings that are unaccompanied by symptoms or functional limitation do not alter management. Although aortic stenosis may remain asymptomatic until it is quite severe, chest auscultation may be unreliable in its detection. In one high-risk population, 31% of patients without a detectable murmur nevertheless had some degree of aortic stenosis that was moderate or severe in 10% of cases,[98] whereas 31% of patients with a suggestive murmur did not have aortic stenosis on echocardiography. Ten patients with severe aortic stenosis (valve area 1 cm^2 or less, gradient 35-58 mm Hg) tolerated an unmodified anesthesia regimen for electroconvulsive therapy on 144 occasions without problems,[99] suggesting that ambulatory surgical patients with undiagnosed aortic stenosis may not inevitably be at excessive risk, when combined with appropriate procedure selection.

It is recognized that routine laboratory investigations are unhelpful because they may generate false-positive results or do not alter subsequent management.[100] In addition, such tests increase costs, are unpleasant and time-consuming for patients, and may lead to repeat testing with even further expense and delays. Consequently, many authorities recommend selective testing, based on indications from the patient's clinical evaluation and demographics.[101,102]

Although comorbidities become more prevalent with age, additional preoperative testing for older patients may still be unnecessary. In patients 70 years of age or older, routine preoperative blood test results were not predictive of postoperative complications.[103] While preoperative electrocardiograms of patients over 50 years of age detected abnormalities, such as bundle branch blocks, predictive of postoperative myocardial infarction, the recordings did not provide additional predictive value to that obtained from the patient history.[104] The National Institute for Health and Care Excellence no longer advocates patient age be used as a criteria for routine preoperative testing and also recommends few, if any, tests for healthy patients undergoing minor or intermediate surgery.[102] One large pilot study demonstrated that the elimination of all preoperative testing resulted in no increase in adverse events in the perioperative period and did not alter the rate of unanticipated admission or readmission within 30 days compared to indicated testing.[105]

Patient Preparation

Preoperative assessment plays a fundamental role in preparing patients for their ambulatory surgery experience. This may include ensuring appropriate social support is in place, checking that preexisting conditions are optimally treated, and providing information.

PROVISION OF INFORMATION

Patients need to be informed about what will happen on the day of surgery, because a well-prepared patient is likely to be more relaxed and more satisfied with the service provided.[85] A well-informed patient is also more likely to comply with important instructions and protocols, such as fasting intervals and management of regular medications. Many patients are disproportionately worried about highly unlikely outcomes, such as death and awareness,[106] yet somewhat less concerned about more common consequences such as nausea, vomiting, and postoperative discomfort. The preoperative discussion should help to allay the anxiety associated with unlikely risks. It was found that a specially designed website with text, animation, and video significantly increased patients' knowledge about anesthesia when compared with a combination of verbal and written information.[107]

Patients should be given specific information, preferably supplemented in writing, about how to manage their usual medications in the preoperative period. Some drugs (e.g., warfarin) should be stopped several days before surgery[78] and some hypoglycemic agents omitted before surgery.[108,109] However, other important medications should not be omitted.[73,74,80]

Information about medications should include over-the-counter and herbal products, which are commonly used but often regarded by patients as harmless and safe.[110] Despite some serious consequences and interactions associated with herbal medications,[111] not all practices specifically ask and advise patients about these products on a routine basis. (see also Chapter 33).[112]

PREOPERATIVE FASTING

Almost universal agreement now exists that the safe fasting interval for clear liquids is no more than 2 hours, in contrast to 6 hours for light meals.[113,114] These fasting intervals result in safe gastric volumes even in obese adults,[115] children,[116] and patients with diabetes and gastrointestinal (GI) reflux.[114] Indeed, a 2-hour interval is probably conservative, given that the stomach empties clear fluids exponentially, with a half-time of approximately 10 minutes.[117]

Despite guidelines based on decades of research, implementation remains poor, with many patients fasting for excessive periods and experiencing significant discomfort.[118-120] Rather than focusing on a minimum fasting time, patients should be encouraged to keep drinking until the latest time necessary for safety to reduce preoperative dehydration and its associated consequences.[114] In practice, this may mean asking patients to have a drink just before they leave home or even providing a drink on arrival if surgery is still more than 2 hours away. Advising patients to drink on the morning of surgery also makes it easier for them to take their medications. Milk added to tea or coffee does not appear to delay gastric emptying[121-123] and, in the United Kingdom, may provide more palatable choices of preoperative beverage. The US practice is for clear fluids only. Recently, it has been shown that allowing patients unrestricted access to water right up until they were called to the operating room significantly reduced the incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV) without increasing the occurrence of clinically-significant pulmonary aspiration.[124] Practices such as chewing gum before surgery also may not be harmful. No consistent evidence exists of a clinically important increase in gastric volume associated with gum chewing in adults,[114,125] while in children it may promote gastric emptying and could also serve as a useful route for premedication.[126]

Besides feelings of thirst and hunger, excessive fasting also results in hypoglycemia in significant numbers of patients, with 14% of fasted healthy female ambulatory surgical patients having an admission blood glucose value of 45 mg/dL (2.5 mmol/L) or less.[127] Preoperative oral carbohydrates have been shown to improve subjective well-being, reduce thirst and hunger, and reduce postoperative insulin resistance, although convincing evidence of reduced length of stay is lacking,[114] at least for shorter procedures.[128]

PREMEDICATION

Premedication traditionally refers to the administration of medications to relieve anxiety before surgery. However, the term encompasses any medication given in the preoperative period and therefore includes prophylactic analgesia and antiemesis agents, as well as drugs used to promote gastric emptying or counteract acid secretions.

Management of Anxiety

The use of anxiolytic premedication is now uncommon in ambulatory anesthesia,[129,130] probably because of concerns that these medications will delay recovery. In fact, one meta-analysis found no evidence that anxiolytic premedication delayed the discharge of ambulatory patients, although impaired performance in some tests of psychomotor function was found and the authors questioned the relevance of some of the older studies to modern ambulatory practice now that short-acting anesthetics are the norm.[131]

Anxiety is nevertheless common in ambulatory surgery patients,[129] with up to twothirds showing symptoms. A preoperative consultation more than 2 weeks before surgery can reduce patient anxiety and improve satisfaction, especially if the anesthesiologist was perceived as empathic.[132] Patient satisfaction was further improved when their intraoperative care was provided by the same anesthesiologist who performed the preoperative consultation.[132]

Anxiolytic Premedication

Given that anxiety was commonly reported, doubtless some patients will benefit from anxiolytic premedication, but what is the optimal regimen? Oral midazolam provided more anxiolysis than temazepam but also produced more sedation and amnesia, resulted in more oversedated patients, and delayed recovery.[133] Oral alprazolam produced comparable anxiety reduction to midazolam without causing amnesia,[134] but it also caused greater impairment of psychomotor function in the early postoperative period. Neither anxiolytic premedication delayed clinical recovery, but this may be a relatively crude assessment tool, because recovery primarily depends on other factors. Intravenous midazolam given shortly before induction of anesthesia reduced both anxiety and postoperative nausea.[135] Such relatively late administration will not reduce anxiety while the patient waits preoperatively, but may be useful in a patient who needs to have an uncomfortable procedure before surgery, such as mammographic needle localization, in which satisfaction with both the procedure and subsequent breast biopsy was improved.[136]

Premedication is more commonly used in children. In one investigation, premedication with oral midazolam 0.2 mg/kg reduced emergence agitation associated with sevoflurane anesthesia without significant delay in recovery,[137] and doses up to 0.5 mg/kg did not delay recovery.[138] However, other patients have experienced delayed recovery at this dose[139,140] while not always having a reduction in anxiety.[140] The less stringent recovery endpoints needed for children compared with the independent functioning needed for adults should be kept in mind. Premedication with oral midazolam may itself provoke anxiety in children, but giving the child a small toy to play with first has been shown to be effective in reducing this anxiety.[141] Unfortunately, the effect of the toy as an alternative to midazolam was not evaluated. Play therapy and distraction can be more effective than midazolam in reducing anxiety in children, although this may require an elaborate approach.[142] A preoperative educational program portrayed as a “Saturday morning club” also reduced anxiety,[143] although the authors questioned whether the benefits achieved were worth the time and resources required. A simpler and highly effective approach is to allow children to watch age-appropriate video clips or movies during anesthetic induction with intravenous (South Korea) or inhaled (Canada) techniques.[144,145] A preoperative educational DVD also encouraged more positive parental involvement during the recovery period and reduced children’s postoperative pain.[146]

Because of variable efficacy and the potential for delayed recovery, alternatives to benzodiazepine premedication have been sought. In children, oral transmucosal fentanyl reduced preoperative anxiety and postoperative agitation, but a high incidence of predictable side effects, such as PONV and delayed discharge, limited its usefulness.[147] Selective α_2-adrenergic agonists have potentially useful sedative and analgesic effects, yet despite years of study they still have no clearly defined role in ambulatory surgery in which their advantages outweigh the risks for adverse events.[148] Clonidine is commonly used in pediatric practice, particularly to reduce agitation during emergence,[149] but the promising results of clinical trials do not always translate well into routine clinical practice and its effects on induction anxiety are less persuasive.[150]

Analgesic Premedication

Ambulatory patients are commonly premedicated with prophylactic oral analgesia in the expectation of achieving analgesic levels in the early postoperative period. Because the duration of action of acetaminophen (paracetamol) is relatively short (4-6 hours), it is unlikely to provide worthwhile postoperative analgesia, other than for an extremely short procedure. When patients received oral acetaminophen 1 g an hour before arthroscopic knee surgery, barely a third had plasma levels in the therapeutic analgesic range 30 minutes after arriving in recovery, whereas therapeutic levels were consistently achieved with intraoperative intravenous administration.[151]

The nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) are consistently more effective as analgesic premedicants. Some evidence indicates that NSAIDs have a small preemptive analgesic effect (i.e., they achieve a superior effect if given before rather than after surgery),[152,153] although one of the studies most strongly supporting this conclusion has been called into question.[154] Preoperative parecoxib followed by postoperative valdecoxib significantly reduced the opioid analgesic requirements and the incidence of opioid-related adverse effects after laparoscopic cholecystectomy.[155] As well as providing effective postoperative analgesia, etoricoxib premedication had an anesthetic-sparing effect during ambulatory ankle surgery.[156] Using a common dental model of postoperative pain, preoperative ibuprofen, diclofenac, and acetaminophen with codeine effectively controlled early postoperative pain.[157] Similarly, rofecoxib and ketorolac were equally effective in controlling postoperative pain after ambulatory surgery,[158] as were ibuprofen and ketorolac.[159] Sustained-release preparations of NSAIDs improve convenience by allowing earlier preoperative administration and a prolonged postoperative effect. Modified-release ibuprofen 1.6 g delayed the time until rescue analgesia was required after ambulatory third molar surgery in contrast to standard ibuprofen.[160] Several of these NSAIDs (and most cyclooxygenase-2 [COX-2] inhibitors are unavailable in the United States.

Selective COX-2 inhibitors are no more effective and offer few advantages over traditional NSAIDs in ambulatory surgery. Despite any inhibition of platelet function, the amount of blood loss seen during high-risk surgery, such as tonsillectomy, was not reduced in comparison with nonselective NSAIDs.[161,162] Nonetheless, COX-2 inhibitors are preferred by surgeons, so age-appropriate doses of oral celecoxib are used as premedication in the United States. Attempts to limit GI adverse effects, which are rare in acute use, has introduced other side effects and led to some drugs being withdrawn.[163] Selective COX-2 inhibitors may be better tolerated in patients with aspirin-sensitive asthma.[164]

Several other drugs have been evaluated for premedication. Controlled-release oxycodone did not improve pain scores or reduce opioid requirements within 24 hours of ambulatory gynecologic laparoscopic surgery.[165] In combination with ibuprofen, pregabalin 150 mg reduced median pain scores at rest and in motion after gynecologic laparoscopic surgery, but did not reduce postoperative analgesic requirements.[166] Perioperative administration of pregabalin 75 mg provided short-lived pain reduction after laparoscopic cholecystectomy, and a meta-analysis confirmed limited analgesic benefit, no reduction in opioid side effects, and increased sedation from its use.[167] Even less effective was pretreatment with magnesium sulfate 4 g, which had no impact on postoperative pain or analgesic consumption in patients undergoing ambulatory ilioinguinal hernia repair or varicose vein surgery.[168]

Prophylactic Antiemetics

Patients at moderate-to-frequent risk for PONV should receive prophylactic antiemetics. Preoperative steroids can provide both analgesic and antiemetic prophylaxis. Some investigators have given dexamethasone as premedication,[169,170] but it is more usually given after induction of anesthesia to reduce administration side effects.

Antacid and Gastrokinetic Premedication

The incidence of aspiration of gastric contents is infrequent in fasted elective surgical patients. Despite improvements in several surrogate measures, insufficient evidence exists of clinical benefit (i.e., a reduction in morbidity or mortality from aspiration) to recommend the routine use of antacids, metoclopramide, H_2-receptor antagonists, or proton pump inhibitors before elective ambulatory surgery.[113,114] Patients who are receiving these medications chronically should take them before surgery. Patients who regularly suffer from significant acid reflux in the fasted state will also benefit from the head-up tilt position during induction of anesthesia. This approach also may be useful in the supermorbidly obese patient undergoing bariatric surgery, in whom the use of prophylactic proton pump inhibitors and sodium citrate may be considered.[51]

Anesthetic Techniques

CHOICE OF TECHNIQUE

Ambulatory surgery requires the same basic standards as inpatient surgery in terms of facilities, staffing, and provision of equipment for delivery of anesthetic drugs, monitoring, and resuscitation. Quality, safety, efficiency, and the cost of drugs and equipment are all important considerations in choosing an anesthetic technique for ambulatory surgery. The choice of specific anesthetic drugs or techniques should enable appropriate and controllable intraoperative conditions followed by rapid recovery with minimal side effects and a prompt return to normal psychomotor activity. Achieving these aims also requires careful attention to the details of analgesia, antiemesis, and fluid management, and requires experienced staff to deliver a high-quality, efficient, and cost-effective service.

No single ideal anesthetic drug or technique for ambulatory surgery exists, and the choice depends on both surgical and patient factors. General anesthesia commonly remains the most popular technique with both patients and surgeons, in some cases despite clear benefits of local or regional anesthetic techniques.[171] Spinal anesthesia can be useful for lower extremity and perineal procedures, but must be modified for use in the ambulatory setting by the use of low-dose techniques[172,173] or short-acting drugs[174] to prevent delays in discharge because of residual motor or sympathetic block. Infiltration of local anesthesia, peripheral nerve blocks, or both facilitate the recovery process by reducing postoperative pain and minimizing the need for opioid analgesics after general anesthesia and should be used whenever possible. Many ambulatory procedures also can be performed using local anesthetic techniques, supplemented, if necessary, with sedatives or analgesic drugs, or both.

GENERAL ANESTHESIA

General anesthesia remains a popular choice with patients, surgeons, and anesthesia providers. Induction of general anesthesia is typically achieved with a rapid and short-acting intravenous anesthetic, although inhaled induction is often used in children and needle-phobic adults. Intravenous drugs are also popular for maintenance of anesthesia, especially where the availability of target-controlled infusion (TCI) systems simplifies delivery,[175] but the use of short-acting inhaled anesthetics, usually without nitrous oxide (N_2O), is more common due to greater ease of administration and lower risk of intraoperative awareness. No single anesthetic technique is clearly superior for ambulatory surgery. Other factors, such as the experience of the anesthesiologist, the use of adjuvant drugs, and the art of anesthesia, are still important to deliver the best quality care.[176]

INTRAVENOUS ANESTHESIA

Methohexital is of little more than historical interest while the long duration of thiopental means it has little or no role in ambulatory anesthesia. The same applies to benzodiazepines and ketamine when used at the doses needed to induce general anesthesia. Etomidate is associated with myoclonus, pain on injection, and a high incidence of PONV. Although reformulation of etomidate in a lipid solvent can reduce some of these disadvantages,[177] persisting concerns about suppression of adrenal steroidogenesis[178] have curtailed its use. The search for new and improved intravenous anesthetic drugs has seen several promising compounds evaluated,[179,180] but no really novel anesthetics have yet become available[181] and propofol remains the most practical intravenous anesthetic for ambulatory anesthesia.

Propofol

Propofol has many of the properties of an ideal anesthetic induction drug and is popular because it rapidly and smoothly induces anesthesia without airway irritation and results in a rapid recovery with an infrequent incidence of early PONV[182] and a clear head. Propofol has some disadvantages, however, including pain on injection, involuntary movements, transient apnea, and hypotension after induction of anesthesia. Numerous strategies have been proposed to reduce pain on injection, of which the use of a large antecubital vein or pretreatment with lidocaine in conjunction with venous occlusion are the most effective,[183] and superior to altering the formulation of propofol.[184]

Some of the adverse effects of propofol can be minimized by reducing the propofol dose by coinduction with adjuvant drugs, the most common being midazolam. Pretreatment with midazolam 0.1 mg/kg allowed anesthesia to be induced with a decreased propofol dose and also attenuated the resultant hemodynamic changes.[185] A substantial decrease in the propofol dose can be achieved even when midazolam is administered up to 10 minutes before induction of anesthesia, a technique that also can make the induction experience for the patient more pleasant.[186] However, this approach may delay recovery. Midazolam 0.03 mg/kg halved the required propofol dose but significantly impaired psychomotor recovery, even though awakening times were not delayed.[187] Coinduction with short-acting opioids, such as alfentanil, can improve the quality of induction and ease of laryngeal mask airway (LMA) insertion, but at the expense of an increased incidence of hypotension and prolonged apnea.[188] Similarly, fentanyl reduced propofol dose and improved conditions for LMA insertion, but also prolonged respiratory depression.[189] Furthermore, the use of 1 μg/kg[190] or fixed doses of 75 μg[191] to 100 μg[192] of perioperative fentanyl increase the incidence of PONV. Giving an initial bolus of 30 mg of propofol reduced the total propofol induction dose to a degree similar to that achieved by 2 mg of midazolam.[193] This technique, which has been termed propofol autocoinduction,[194] can reduce propofol dose and hypotension to a degree comparable to that with midazolam pretreatment but without delaying recovery. Following the concepts of opioid minimization and enhanced recovery after surgery, propofol coinduction can also be performed with intravenous lidocaine.

The pharmacokinetics of propofol allow it to be used as a variable rate infusion to maintain anesthesia, either in association with N_2O or combined with alfentanil or remifentanil as total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA). Recovery after anesthesia maintained with propofol is typically no faster compared to volatile anesthetics after an induction dose of propofol,[182] and initial awakening may be delayed compared to that with the shorter-acting inhaled anethetics.[195] These differences in emergence times are no more than 2 to 3 minutes[196] and so not of clinical significance. Recovery to home readiness may occur up to 15 minutes sooner after propofol than isoflurane but is no faster than sevoflurane or desflurane. There are conflicting reports on whether propofol may be more[197] or less[198] likely than inhaled anesthetics to impair cognitive dysfunction after ambulatory anesthesia in older patients. One consistent feature of propofol anesthesia is a less frequent incidence of early PONV in contrast to the use of inhaled anesthetics.[182,196,199] However, even this benefit has been described as of doubtful clinical relevance, except when the baseline incidence of PONV is very high.[199] The reduction in PONV achieved by TIVA, specifically the use of propofol and the omission of N_2O, was similar to that produced by the use of single-drug antiemetic prophylaxis.[200] Furthermore, any reduction in PONV appears to be confined to the early recovery phase as propofol use for ambulatory surgery does not alter the rate of unanticipated hospital admission and increases the incidence of nausea following discharge, probably because long-acting antiemetics (e.g., dexamethasone) had not been given.[201]

Outside of the United States, delivery of propofol is increasingly performed by TCI, which makes the delivery of propofol easier, with fewer interventions required by the anesthesiologist, in contrast to manual infusions.[202] However, it does not improve the quality of anesthesia, shorten recovery time, or reduce adverse events,[202,203] although the quality of trials performed to date is poor. A further issue is that TCI systems calculate the predicted plasma propofol concentration and considerable variation exists between this and the actual measured value.[203] Further sources of error are introduced when the effect site, rather than the plasma concentration, is targeted.[204] Currently two different pharmacokinetic models are in common use, both derived from healthy subjects. The choice of model may make relatively little difference in the young, fit patient, but performance differs considerably in older patients[204] and neither model is reliable in the morbidly obese.[204,205] Even newer pharmacokinetic models developed specifically with data from obese patients have a tendency to underestimate plasma propofol concentrations.[206]

INHALED ANESTHETICS

Volatile anesthetics remain the most popular choice for the maintenance of ambulatory anesthesia because of their ease of administration, controllability, and rapid emergence. Halothane and enflurane are now of historical interest only, and use of isoflurane has declined considerably as less-soluble, shorter-acting drugs have become available.

Sevoflurane

The low solubility and minimal airway irritation of sevoflurane make it a readily controllable, short-acting anesthetic for ambulatory surgery.[195] In contrast to isoflurane, sevoflurane resulted in significantly earlier awakening and orientation, caused less postoperative drowsiness, and facilitated earlier discharge by an average of 25 minutes.[196] Compared to propofol, orientation occurred earlier but the time to home readiness was similar.[196] The lack of airway irritation with sevoflurane means that rapid increases in inspired concentration are well tolerated,[207] facilitating control of anesthetic depth. This is in contrast to the cough reflex[208] and transient increases in heart rate and blood pressure, which sudden changes in isoflurane or desflurane concentration may provoke.[209]

Lack of airway irritation makes sevoflurane almost ideal for inhaled induction, which may be especially desirable in children and needle-phobic adults.[195] An 8% bolus induction of sevoflurane in adult patients can be faster than with propofol, with a similar rate of different side effects.[210] Sevoflurane induction also caused significantly less depression of mean arterial pressure than propofol in older patients and was equally as well accepted as an induction choice.[211] Using sevoflurane for volatile induction and maintenance of anesthesia (VIMA) has several benefits for ambulatory patients, but is associated with a greater incidence of PONV than when propofol is used for induction, maintenance, or both, of anesthesia.[195] This appears to be in part due to coadministered opioids, which are rarely needed with VIMA, because omitting the opioids minimizes the problem.[190,210,212] In children, the rapid emergence from sevoflurane (and desflurane) anesthesia is associated with a high incidence of emergence delirium, especially if inadequate measures are in place to control postoperative pain.[213] Numerous strategies have been evaluated to reduce emergence delirium. Midazolam premedication is ineffective, but supplemental use of fentanyl 1 μg/kg, propofol, ketamine, and α_2-adrenergic agonists all reduce agitation to some degree.[149] Although emergence delirium is undesirable, it is not associated with any long-term consequences and does not delay recovery room discharge.[214] There is insufficient evidence of adequate quality to show whether propofol TIVA reduces the risk of behavioral disturbances (or PONV) compared with inhaled anesthesia.[215]

Desflurane

With its low blood solubility, desflurane should be an ideal anesthetic for ambulatory anesthesia. However, meta-analysis of 25 randomized studies showed that patients receiving desflurane followed commands, had their trachea extubated, and were oriented only 1.0 to 1.2 minutes earlier than those receiving sevoflurane for up to 3.1 hours.[216] No differences were found in recovery room stay[217] or incidence of PONV.[216] Concerns about the more frequent incidence of airway irritation with desflurane may limit the rapidity with which anesthetic depth can be altered,[209] although relatively few problems were encountered in patients spontaneously breathing desflurane through an LMA when coadministered with fentanyl.[218,219] Although desflurane has lower fat solubility than sevoflurane, the rate of diffusion into the fat compartment is extremely slow with either inhaled anesthetic; therefore, lower fat solubility does not make the case for use of desflurane as the ideal agent for morbidly obese patients unless procedure length is very long. In practice, some studies of ambulatory surgery in the morbidly obese have found more rapid recovery after desflurane than sevoflurane,[220] whereas others found emergence and recovery to be similar with either drug.[221]

ANESTHETIC ADJUVANTS

Some adjuvant drugs are frequently administered to supplement the effects of general anesthesia and in an effort to reduce adverse effects.

Nitrous Oxide

Although N_2O is by far the oldest anesthetic drug still in use, its role is regularly questioned. N_2O is weakly emetogenic, yet its omission only significantly decreases vomiting when the baseline incidence is high and has no effect on nausea or the complete control of PONV.[222] Others have found the effects of omitting N_2O to be “modest.”[223] This may be because the alternatives, specifically a higher inhaled anesthetic concentration or the use of supplemental opioids, also induce PONV. The effect of N_2O on PONV appears to be time-dependent. There was no clinically significant effect from at least an hour’s exposure,[224] allowing N_2O to retain a place in modern ambulatory anesthesia where its use also improves the quality, speed, and safety of induction of anesthesia, facilitates faster recovery, and reduces overall costs.[225]

Opioid Analgesics

The indiscriminate use of opioid analgesics should be discouraged in ambulatory surgery to avoid PONV and unplanned admission.[226,227] Although long-lasting drugs such as morphine are especially detrimental, even the ultra–short-acting opioid remifentanil resulted in a 35% incidence of PONV when used with desflurane and multimodal prophylaxis, compared with only 4% when all opioids were avoided.[228] For minor to intermediate ambulatory surgery procedures, the routine administration of as little as 1 μg/kg of fentanyl serves only to increase the incidence of PONV,[229] and its omission does not worsen postoperative pain, provided prophylactic analgesia is ensured with local anesthetic infiltration and preoperative NSAIDs.[190] However, small doses of fentanyl may be useful to provide additional analgesia toward the end of more painful procedures.

Opioids are an essential component of TIVA, but the antiemetic effect of propofol minimizes the incidence of PONV in contrast to the use of the same opioid with inhaled anesthetics.[230] Compared to alfentanil, remifentanil provides more effective suppression of intraoperative responses without prolonging awakening.[231] However, there is increasing evidence emerging that remifentanil is associated with both acute opioid tolerance and opioid-induced hyperalgesia,[232,233] which can increase postoperative analgesic requirements. This hyperalgesia is partially reduced by NSAIDs[233] and by concurrent N_2O administration,[234] although remifentanil is usually used as an N_2O replacement.

Nonopioid Analgesia

For longer or more invasive procedures, intravenous acetaminophen given toward the end of surgery also can have a beneficial effect,[151,235] comparable to that of the opioid tramadol.[236] For shorter procedures, acetaminophen can be given orally before the anesthetic, at much lower cost.

Cardiovascular Drugs

Although intraoperative hemodynamic disturbances are usually managed by increasing the primary anesthetic concentration, administering an opioid analgesic, or both, it may be more appropriate to treat these responses with cardiovascular drugs. Using an infusion of esmolol as an alternative to alfentanil to control heart rate reduced emergence times after arthroscopy,[237] and substituting esmolol for remifentanil reduced nausea after gynecologic laparoscopy.[228] Using a combination of esmolol and nicardipine to blunt increases in heart rate and arterial blood pressure, respectively, prevented the need for increases in inspired anesthetic concentration and consequently shortened emergence and recovery times.[238] Ambulatory patients who received esmolol intraoperatively for hemodynamic control also had significantly smaller requirements for postoperative opioid analgesia.[238,239] Administration of a continuous infusion of esmolol during laparoscopic gynecologic surgery reduced sevoflurane consumption by 18%, shortened recovery room stay, reduced postoperative pain scores, and reduced fentanyl requirements.[240] In a similar study, an esmolol infusion decreased intraoperative remifentanil requirements and again resulted in lower postoperative pain scores and halved the dose of rescue fentanyl.[241] Labetalol may be a cost-effective alternative to esmolol for longer cases, especially in older patients in whom it is less likely to cause inadvertent hypotension.[242]

Neuromuscular Blocking Drugs

Neuromuscular blocking drugs (NMBDs) may be used in ambulatory anesthesia to facilitate endotracheal intubation or to provide profound surgical relaxation. Although several of the available compounds are suitable, muscle pain after administration of succinylcholine and concerns about residual neuromuscular block from intermediate-duration NMBDs after brief procedures have fueled the search for alternatives. The search for a nondepolarizing equivalent to succinylcholine has been unsuccessful to date. The most promising candidate, rapacuronium, was withdrawn from clinical use because of a frequent incidence of severe bronchospasm, although other factors such as inconvenient administration, declining use of endotracheal intubation, and high costs also contributed to its lack of commercial success.[243] The search for a rapid-onset, short-acting nondepolarizing NMBD continues with investigation of several fumarate compounds, of which gantacurium was found to have rapid onset and brief duration, but was also associated with histamine release.[244] Subsequent attention has moved toward designing a molecule of intermediate duration, but which can be rapidly reversed at any time by administering L-cysteine.[244]

An alternative to short-acting NMBDs is terminating the neuromuscular blockade with sugammadex, which can rapidly and completely reverse rocuronium (or vecuronium) independent of the degree of residual neuromuscular block.[245] Sugammadex is very expensive compared to neostigmine, although in the United States the cost of neostigmine has risen dramatically. Currently no reliable evaluations have been done on the cost-effectiveness of sugammadex in routine clinical practice. Although improved recovery times resulting from the elimination of residual neuromuscular block by sugammadex may potentially be cost-effective, this depends on the productivity of staff during the time saved and would probably require major changes to the workflow for actual benefits to be realized.[245]

Endotracheal intubation also can be achieved without the use of NMBDs, thereby avoiding all of their adverse effects. This practice is most common in children, for procedures in which airway protection, but not prolonged muscle relaxation, is required. The optimum technique depends on personal experience and preference, but most commonly involves deep sevoflurane anesthesia[246] or propofol supplemented by remifentanil or alfentanil.[247] For adults, a dose of remifentanil 3 μg/kg with propofol 2 mg/kg is recommended,[248] but satisfactory conditions can be obtained with remifentanil 2 μg/kg, thereby reducing the side effects of bradycardia and hypotension.

AIRWAY MANAGEMENT

Many ambulatory surgical patients can be managed with an LMA, which results in a significantly less frequent incidence of sore throat, hoarseness, coughing, and laryngospasm compared to inserting a tracheal tube.[249] The LMA can occasionally cause pressure trauma to a variety of cranial nerves, in particular the recurrent laryngeal nerve, whereas hoarseness and vocal cord injuries are common after the use of endotracheal intubation during short-term anesthesia.[250] The LMA is relatively easy to insert with patients in the prone position,[251] making it a simple way of managing procedures such as pilonidal sinus repair or surgery to the short saphenous vein.

Traditionally, endotracheal intubation has been advocated for laparoscopic procedures and surgery in obese patients, but further development of the LMA and more confidence in its use may be changing this. The ProSeal LMA (Teleflex, Morrisville, NC) has been modified to provide increased seal pressure, reduce gastric inflation, provide for gastric drainage, and, therefore, allow potentially better protection against aspiration of gastric contents while maintaining similar insertion characteristics.[252] At least one large consecutive series by an experienced user appears to support these benefits in routine clinical practice, without the constraints of a clinical trial.[253] During laparoscopic cholecystectomy, the ProSeal LMA provided adequate pulmonary ventilation without gastric distention in nonobese patients, although it was somewhat less effective than endotracheal intubation in the obese.[254] A recent review found that second-generation LMAs (with higher seal pressures and a drain channel) achieve adequate ventilation during laparoscopic cholecystectomy with a very low incidence of regurgitation and aspiration, but still cannot yet be regarded as completely safe.[255]

Provided safety can be ensured, avoiding endotracheal intubation by using the ProSeal LMA for laparoscopic surgery appears to offer considerable advantages, including considerably smoother emergence with significantly less coughing.[254,256] In laparoscopic gynecologic procedures, the ProSeal LMA was associated with lower pain scores at 2 and 6 hours, with reduced analgesic requirements and less nausea at the same times.[257] Similarly, in females undergoing gynecologic laparoscopic or breast surgery, it reduced the absolute risk for PONV by 40% and also reduced sore throats, analgesic requirements, and recovery room stay.[258] During laparoscopic gastric banding, the ProSeal LMA reduced the intraoperative stress response and also shortened recovery room stay and hospital discharge.[259]

Since the expiration of LMA patents, many manufacturers have introduced similar designs, often using different materials to produce a low-cost disposable product. Often little or no data are available on the effectiveness or safety of these generic products.[260] Furthermore, the success of the LMA led to the development of many new supraglottic airways of myriad designs. Some of these may offer advantages in ambulatory surgery,[261] although there is often little or no comparative data with the LMA. Anesthesiologists should therefore be wary of the claims made for new airway devices until they have been adequately evaluated.[262]

One supraglottic airway that has been extensively evaluated is the i-gel (Intersurgical, East Syracuse, New York), which has a contoured noninflating cuff and gastric drainage channel. The i-gel is faster to insert and results in less sore throat than the LMA with a seal pressure intermediate between first- and second-generation LMAs.[263]

REGIONAL ANESTHESIA

Spinal Anesthesia

The use of spinal anesthesia makes ambulatory surgery accessible to some patients for whom the risks of general anesthesia are excessive. It also increases patient choice, allows participation in intraoperative decision making (e.g., in sports injuries), and provides beneficial postoperative analgesia. Various ambulatory surgical procedures, such as transurethral prostatectomy, female incontinence surgery, and ankle and foot surgery, are well suited to spinal anesthesia.

The ready availability of fine-gauge, pencil-point spinal needles has reduced the incidence of significant postdural puncture headache to 0.5% to 1%.[264] The main challenge now is to prevent prolonged motor block or impairment of joint position sense from delaying discharge. Although lidocaine has an appropriate duration for ambulatory surgery, its use in spinal anesthesia has virtually ceased as a result of a high incidence of transient neurologic syndrome (TNS).[265] Until fairly recently, bupivacaine was the most obvious alternative, being devoid of TNS, but causing unacceptable delays in home discharge if used in standard doses.

For its acceptance in ambulatory surgery, bupivacaine spinal anesthesia needs to be “modified.”[266] Reducing the dose of bupivacaine shortens recovery, whereas the use of patient positioning or the addition of adjuvants, such as fentanyl, ensures adequate analgesia for surgery. These techniques can be summarized as selective spinal anesthesia (SSA), defined as “the practice of employing minimal doses of intrathecal agents so that only the nerve roots supplying a specific area and only the modalities that require to be anaesthetized are affected.”[267] SSA provides analgesia suitable for surgery, and light touch, temperature, proprioception, motor, and sympathetic function are all preserved.[267] This results in remarkable cardiovascular stability but can make the block difficult to test, and patient cooperation is important to the success of this technique.

A variety of SSA regimens have been described,[173] which typically permit discharge within a little over 3 hours after surgery.[268] The addition of fentanyl marginally delays recovery and is associated with pruritus[268] (although most cases do not require treatment), but also reduces postoperative pain and analgesic requirements.[269] For unilateral knee arthroscopy, 4 to 5 mg of hyperbaric bupivacaine appears to be sufficient without adjuvants, provided the patient is kept in the lateral position.[269] Clonidine has also been used to supplement low-dose spinal anesthesia, but it may prolong motor block, exacerbate hypotension, and delay voiding.[148]

Spinal anesthesia may contribute to postoperative urinary retention. This is uncommon in low-risk patients, but may be more likely in older patients, with certain procedures and when more than 7 mg of bupivacaine is used.[266] The risk for urinary retention is particularly high after inguinal hernia surgery,[270] but simple infiltration anesthesia is often sufficient for this procedure and may be a more appropriate choice.[171,271]

New Drugs for Ambulatory Spinal Anesthesia

With the increasing popularity of ambulatory spinal anesthesia, some older local anesthetics have been reevaluated and, in some countries, marketed for spinal use.[174] Of these, prilocaine and 2-chloroprocaine have been evaluated the most.[272,273] Hyperbaric prilocaine has a faster onset and shorter duration than the plain preparation,[272] with patients receiving 40 mg of 2% hyperbaric prilocaine being home ready in 208 ± 68 minutes.[274] This is comparable to discharge times reported with low-dose bupivacaine plus fentanyl,[268] although 13% of the patients receiving hyperbaric prilocaine required supplementation for inadequate analgesia toward the end of surgery, which was scheduled to last for less than an hour.[274] Doses of 40 to 60 mg achieve analgesia of about 90 minutes duration for lower abdominal or limb procedures, while 10 to 30 mg is adequate for perineal surgery of up to 40 minutes, with home discharge usually achievable within 4 hours.[272] The duration of 2-chloroprocaine is even shorter, with recovery being significantly faster than that of low-dose bupivacaine[275] or articaine[174] and comparable to that of lidocaine.[276] The addition of fentanyl appears to extend the block duration of both 2-chloroprocaine[273] and prilocaine[272] with little delay in recovery in either case. TNS is much less common than with lidocaine, but still occasionally reported after both prilocaine[277] and 2-chloroprocaine.[273]

Ambulatory spinal anesthesia that relies on short-acting local anesthetics should be compared with the cardiovascular stability of SSA. Prilocaine 20 mg combined with 20 µg fentanyl was associated with a lower incidence of clinically significant hypotension compared with bupivacaine 7.5 mg with fentanyl 20 µg.[278] However, the doses of bupivacaine and fentanyl used in both groups were somewhat higher than usual.

Epidural Anesthesia

Epidural analgesia is seldom used in adult ambulatory anesthesia. Although it allows the block duration to be extended by using a catheter technique, this is offset by the time required in establishing the block and less certainty of success, as well as the risk for inadvertent intravascular injection or dural puncture. In knee arthroscopy, recovery after 15 to 20 mL of epidural

TABLE 72.3 Some Common Upper and Lower Extremity Blocks Used for Adult Ambulatory Surgery

Type of Block	Type of Surgery	Bolus Dose (Perioperative)	Continuous Infusion	Patient-controlled regional analgesia (PCRA)
Interscalene block	Surgery around the shoulder	Bupivacaine/*levo*-bupivacaine 0.25-0.5%, 20-40 mL *or* Ropivacaine 0.5%, 20-40 mL	Ropivacaine 0.2% 5 mL/h	Ropivacaine 0.2% 5 mL/h
Supra- or infra-clavicular block	Surgery around elbow, wrist, and hand	Bupivacaine/*levo*-bupivacaine 0.25-0.5%, 20-40 mL *or* Ropivacaine 0.5%, 20-40 mL	Ropivacaine 0.2% 5 mL/h	Ropivacaine 0.2% 5 mL/h
Sciatic nerve block	Posterior cruciate ligament repair, foot and ankle surgery	Bupivacaine/*levo*-bupivacaine 0.25-0.5%, 20-40 mL *or* Ropivacaine 0.5%, 20-40 mL	Ropivacaine 0.2% 5 mL/h	Ropivacaine 0.2% 5 mL/h
Femoral nerve block	Knee arthroplasty, anterior cruciate ligament repair	Bupivacaine/*levo*-bupivacaine 0.25-0.5%, 20-40 mL *or* Ropivacaine 0.5%, 20-40 mL	Ropivacaine 0.1% 5 mL/h	Ropivacaine 0.1%, 10 mL with 60 min lock-out time
Paravertebral block (thoracic)	Breast surgery	Bupivacaine/*levo*-bupivacaine 0.25-0.5%, 20-40 mL *or* Ropivacaine 0.5%, 20-40 mL	Ropivacaine 0.2% 5 mL/h	Ropivacaine 0.2% 5 mL/h

Doses are approximations, with lower doses recommended when using ultrasound techniques. Depending on the type of surgery, multiple nerves may need to be blocked to get good postoperative pain relief. When using catheter techniques, disposable pumps with pre-filled local anesthetics may be given to the patient with suitable written and verbal instructions.

Reproduced from Gupta A, Smith I. Local and regional anaesthesia. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:93–108. With permission.

3% 2-chloroprocaine was more rapid than spinal procaine with 20 μg fentanyl[279] and also had a decreased incidence of pruritus. Recovery after epidural 3% 2-chloroprocaine required fewer top-up injections and permitted discharge an hour sooner after ambulatory knee arthroscopy than with 1.5% epidural lidocaine.[280] However, the use of epidural 2-chloroprocaine has a more frequent incidence of back pain.[281]

In children, caudal epidural analgesia—for example, using levobupivacaine 0.5 to 1 mL/kg of 0.25%—is popular for postoperative pain relief.[64] The technique is most useful for bilateral surgery or other situations in which the maximum safe dose would not permit an adequate volume for wound infiltration. After circumcision, caudal analgesia was no better than parenteral or systemic analgesia or dorsal nerve block in reducing analgesic requirements, nausea, or vomiting.[282] However, motor block and leg weakness were significantly more common in boys receiving a caudal block. The addition of clonidine[283] or dexmedetomidine[284] augments caudal analgesia, but concerns remain about the frequency of sedative and hemodynamic side effects and the risk for neurotoxicity.[148,283]

Intravenous Regional Anesthesia

Intravenous regional anesthesia (IVRA) (Bier block) is a simple, reliable method of analgesia most commonly used in the upper limb, but sometimes also used effectively in the lower extremity.[285] In the United Kingdom and Europe, prilocaine is the preferred local anesthetic because of its high therapeutic index.[286] Lidocaine has also been used for many years,[285] and appears to be a safe alternative.[287] Ropivacaine has also been extensively evaluated for IVRA. Compared to lidocaine, 0.2% to 0.375% ropivacaine resulted in prolonged and improved postoperative analgesia.[288-290] However, compared to prilocaine, ropivacaine's onset was slower, no useful prolongation of postoperative analgesia occurred, and ropivacaine plasma concentrations were more than double those of prilocaine, despite a 60% lower dose.[286]

IVRA was a cost-effective alternative to general anesthesia for outpatient hand surgery, being equally rapid to administer and with faster recovery and fewer postoperative complications.[291] However, analgesia was inadequate in approximately 11% of cases, which required supplemental local anesthesia, repeat of the block, and even conversion to general anesthesia. IVRA was also cost effective, and quicker to perform, compared to brachial plexus block, but with a 4.4% failure rate due to tourniquet pain.[292]

A variety of adjuvants have been used in IVRA to decrease tourniquet pain, improve block quality, and prolong analgesia after cuff deflation.[293] Opioids are relatively ineffective and cause nausea, vomiting, and dizziness after tourniquet deflation,[293] but several NSAIDs have been shown to be beneficial. Lornoxicam[294] decreased tourniquet pain and improved postoperative analgesia and tenoxicam improved postoperative pain,[293] but the effects of ketorolac are unclear after most of the evidence showing its efficacy in IVRA was withdrawn.[154] Dexamethasone improved both block quality and postoperative analgesia.[295] Similar results have been observed with the α_2-adrenoceptor agonist dexmedetomidine,[296,297] whereas clonidine delayed tourniquet pain without improving postoperative analgesia.[298]

Other Local and Regional Anesthetic Techniques

A wide range of other regional anesthetic techniques can be used to facilitate ambulatory surgery or provide postoperative analgesia (Table 72.3).[299] The applicability of these techniques depends on the nature of the planned procedure, the patient, the preferences of the surgeon and anesthesiologist, as well as the skill and experience of the anesthesiologist performing the block. Benefits include excellent postoperative analgesia and reduced PONV, but this must be offset against pain and discomfort while performing the block, the difficulty of transitioning to satisfactory analgesia when the block wears off, and the risk for perioperative nerve injuries. Regional anesthesia may be contraindicated in patients with bleeding problems or those taking anticoagulants, as well as in patients with local infections. Regional anesthesia has a high failure rate in inexperienced hands, especially in the morbidly obese patient, although ultrasound guidance appears to improve the success rate of many blocks and can reduce pain during block placement.[300] While there is no conclusive evidence that ultrasound guidance reduces the incidence of peripheral nerve injury, it does appear to reduce local anesthetic systemic toxicity and lowers the incidence of hemidiaphragmatic paresis and pneumothorax associated with certain blocks.[301]

Simpler locoregional techniques may be more appropriate for some procedures. Intraarticular local anesthesia produces a moderate and relatively brief reduction in postoperative pain after arthroscopic knee surgery, but this is still considered to be of clinical significance in ambulatory surgery.[302] In many cases, simple wound infiltration may be as effective as central and proximal peripheral blocks and allows patients to mobilize more quickly.[303] Concerns about the possible risk for infection, or systemic toxicity resulting from large volumes of local anesthetic, appear unfounded in clinical practice.[303]

Infiltration anesthesia offers advantages for many ambulatory procedures and is the method of choice for inguinal hernia repair.[171] Several large series have confirmed excellent results with this highly cost-effective technique, with 79% of patients requiring oral analgesia for 7 days or less after surgery[304] and 91% of patients returning to normal activities within 5 days.[305] Repair under local anesthesia is not an independent factor for hernia recurrence, although this is influenced by the type of hernia and the level of surgical experience.[306] Infiltration anesthesia resulted in fewer medical and urological complications after groin hernia repair than either general or regional anesthesia.[271] If spinal anesthesia is chosen for groin hernia repair, the anesthesiologist should be aware of the increased risk for urinary retention and other medical complications, especially in older patients.[271]

The concept of simple wound infiltration has been further developed into local infiltration analgesia (LIA), used for major orthopedic ambulatory surgery. This multimodal technique was developed for the control of pain after inpatient knee and hip surgery in Australia by Kerr and Kohan.[307] Their technique used a mixture of 300 mg ropivacaine with 30 mg ketorolac and 1.5 mg epinephrine diluted to 150 to 200 mL with saline, infiltrated into all the tissue planes of the surgical field over approximately an hour as the operation progressed. A catheter was placed into the wound to permit later repeat dosing. In the original series of 325 patients, mainly undergoing elective hip resurfacing but including some primary hip and knee replacements, pain was well controlled (numerical pain score 0-3) without morphine in twothirds of patients, most of whom could walk with assistance 5 to 6 hours after surgery; 71% were discharged, walking independently after a single night stay (Fig. 72.2).[307] These promising results have been confirmed in a blinded, randomized trial in patients undergoing unicompartmental knee arthroplasty, where a similar LIA regimen significantly reduced pain and opioid consumption and decreased the median length of stay by 2 days, with 68% of patients discharged after a 1-night stay.[308] A recent review suggests that LIA is beneficial after knee surgery, even when combined with multimodal systemic analgesia, but adds little additional analgesia after hip surgery when a multimodal regimen is also used.[309]

A limitation of infiltration anesthesia in general is the relatively short duration of pain relief it provides, even with long-acting drugs such as bupivacaine. The encapsulation of bupivacaine into a biodegradable carrier offers the prospect of extended-duration local anesthesia, which has demonstrated significant analgesic effects for at least 96 hours in pilot studies.[310] Several potential problems need to be solved before widespread application, however, including ensuring that the large doses of local anesthetic contained within the carrier are not rapidly released, leading to toxicity, or that the encapsulating materials do not break down into harmful products.[311] One extended-duration preparation of bupivacaine, Exparel, which uses an established liposomal-based drug delivery system (Lipo Foam, Contour^{MD}), is currently approved by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Early trial results report improved pain scores and reduced opioid analgesic consumption compared to plain bupivacaine during the first 24 to 48 hours or more after bunion surgery,[312] knee replacement,[313] and breast augmentation.[314] Myalgia was observed after administration of liposomal bupivacaine in six patients in one study,[314] but a 2-year follow up from the same group reported no long-term complications.[315] Several studies appear to support the efficacy and patient acceptability of liposomal bupivacaine after abdominal wall reconstruction, mastectomy, and mammoplasty, although the quality of comparative studies to date is poor.[316] However, systematic reviews suggest no improvement over conventional analgesia for shoulder arthroplasty[317] or bilateral knee surgery[318] and only marginal benefits of questionable clinical significance after unilateral knee surgery.[319] Catheter techniques also can extend the duration of effective local or regional analgesia, reducing pain scores, opioid-related side effects, and length of hospital stay, as well as improving patient satisfaction.[320]

Several naturally occurring alkaloid toxins, which may have the potential to provide longer lasting and safer local anesthesia, have been considered.[311] A preliminary study with neosaxitoxin, an extracellular sodium channel blocker, described superior analgesia compared to that with bupivacaine at 12 hours after laparoscopic cholecystectomy.[321] Subcutaneous injection of neosaxitoxin in combination with bupivacaine and epinephrine produced a five-fold increase in analgesic duration compared with bupivacaine alone, without an apparent increase in toxicity.[322]

SEDATION

Although some procedures may be performed with local or regional anesthesia alone, additional drugs are often required for anxiolysis, to provide additional analgesia and to attain suitable operating conditions by helping the patient lie still in an appropriate position. The level of sedation required varies with each therapeutic, diagnostic, or surgical procedure and must be individually adjusted to achieve a balance of patient comfort and safety.[323]

The ASA defines three levels of sedation according to the responsiveness of the patient.[324] With minimal sedation a degree of anxiolysis is reached, but the patient is normally responsive and has a clear airway. During moderate (conscious) sedation the patient is sleepier but responds purposefully to verbal or tactile stimuli. Spontaneous ventilation

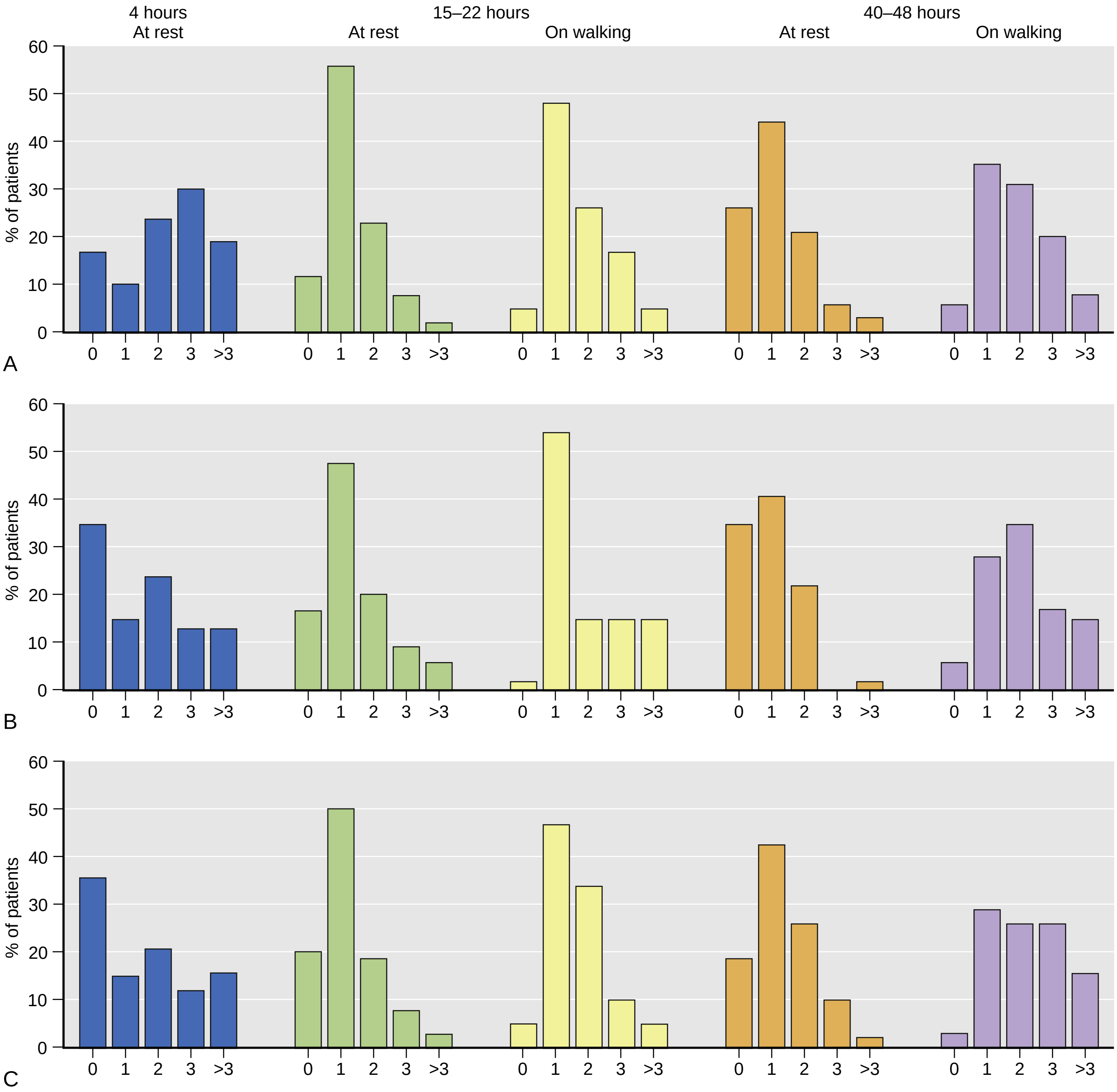


Fig. 72.2 **Numerical pain scores at various time points after hip resurfacing arthroplasty (A; *n* = 185), total hip replacement (B; *n* = 54), and total knee replacement (C; *n* = 86) in patients receiving local infiltration anesthesia.** (Data from Kerr DR, Kohan L. Local infiltration analgesia: a technique for the control of acute postoperative pain following knee and hip surgery: a case study of 325 patients. *Acta Orthop.* 2008;79[2]:174–183.)

is usually adequate and interventions are not required to maintain a patent airway. With deep sedation, the patient can respond purposefully only to repeated or painful stimuli and may require a degree of airway or ventilatory support. Far from being discrete, these sedative levels lie on a continuum (Fig. 72.3), which becomes general anesthesia when the patient loses consciousness and is unarousable even with painful stimuli.[324] Careful monitoring is essential, and the standard of care for patients receiving sedation should be the same as for patients undergoing general or regional anesthesia and includes all of the usual aspects of anesthesia care.[325] Unfortunately, a widely held belief among physicians and patients is that sedation is a safer form of care,[326] but an ASA closed claims database analysis revealed that the risks for death or permanent brain damage are similar to those of general anesthesia.[327] Predictably, the greatest risk for harm comes from respiratory depression by opioids and sedative-hypnotic drugs, and many cases could have been prevented by better monitoring and improved vigilance.[328]

The US term monitored anesthesia care (MAC) is sometimes erroneously used to describe sedation administered by an anesthesiologist. However, the ASA has a specific

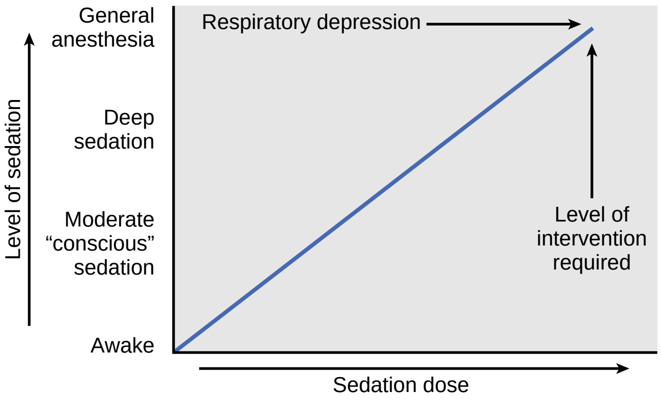


Fig. 72.3 The continuum of sedation and general anesthesia. (Reproduced from Ahuja M, Armstrong I. Sedation. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:109–132. With permission.)

definition of MAC, which is a billing term used to describe an anesthesia service that includes all perianesthesia aspects of care.[325] MAC may include varying levels of sedation, including conversion to general anesthesia, when necessary. However, "if the patient loses consciousness and the ability to respond purposefully, the anesthesia care is a general anesthetic, irrespective of whether airway instrumentation is required."[325]

Choice of Sedatives

The specific requirements for supplemental sedative and analgesic drugs depend on the procedure undertaken, the skill of the operator in using local anesthesia, and the experiences and expectations of the individual patient. The use of pharmacologic agents can be reduced by compassionate patient management at every stage, preoperative explanation, and the use of distractions, such as deep breathing, conversation, and listening to music.[326] Adjuvant drugs should be chosen to deliver those specific aspects that are required,[329] such as reduction of anxiety, sedation to relieve boredom or aid immobility, and analgesia for pain that is not amenable to further infiltration of local anesthetic.

Midazolam

Midazolam produces anxiolysis and dose-related hypnosis and is a popular component of sedation. It also produces marked antegrade amnesia. At times this may be beneficial, but it is not always welcomed by patients.[330] Midazolam is preferred to other benzodiazepines because it is water-soluble, does not cause venoirritation or pain on injection, is rapid-acting, and has a relatively short-elimination half-life of about 2 to 4 hours. As sole anesthetic, a single dose of 0.05 to 0.1 mg/kg allows reasonably predictable recovery after brief procedures, but individual responses are highly variable.[331] Recovery is also considerably slower if repeat or prolonged administration is required.

Propofol

Propofol is an excellent sedative-hypnotic because its pharmacokinetic properties result in a rapid recovery from the effects of a single bolus dose and a continuous infusion. Propofol is a relatively pure hypnotic, providing no analgesia and only moderate amnesia. Infusion rates of 25 to 75 μg/kg/min are typically used,[332] but the short duration of action facilitates titration to effect.

Because of the excellent conditions that can be achieved and the superiority of recovery compared with that of midazolam,[333] demand for propofol sedation is growing rapidly in areas such as endoscopy in which anesthesiologists have not traditionally been involved. Propofol can rapidly cause apnea, before loss of consciousness, even in sedative doses, and unintended transition to general anesthesia is a constant risk. The safety of nonanesthesiologist administration of propofol is therefore controversial. In the United Kingdom, the Royal College of Anaesthetists and the British Society of Gastroenterology jointly state that propofol sedation for complex upper GI endoscopic procedures should be administered only by an "appropriately trained anaesthetist."[334] In the United States, the FDA package insert states that propofol may be given "only by persons trained in the administration of general anesthesia," which the ASA supports.[335] However, the American Society for Gastrointestinal Endoscopy considers propofol use safe by anyone "proficient in the management of upper and lower airway complications, including manual techniques for reestablishing airway patency" and holding at least basic life support certification.[336]

Advocates of endoscopist-administered propofol claim a very low rate of airway complications (0.1%) and a mortality (4 in 646,080) less than that associated with endoscopist-administered midazolam-opioid sedation.[337] Their data also reveal a wide range for the frequency with which rescue airway support was required, suggesting considerable variation, either in technique or willingness to intervene to protect the airway.[337] When anesthesiologists administered propofol for patients undergoing endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP), deeper levels of sedation or general anesthesia were often intended and sedation-related adverse events were far more common (21%), especially in patients of higher ASA physical status classification, but were managed without adverse consequence or delay, and high levels of patient and operator satisfaction were achieved.[338] A more recent study of anesthesiologist-administered propofol sedation has revealed a very similar (23%) incidence of significant unplanned events.[339]

Potential New Sedatives

Fospropofol was a water-soluble phosphate ester prodrug of propofol, with a slower onset of action and longer duration. Although approved in the United States for sedation in adults in 2009, restriction of its use to anesthesiologists[340] and a lack of any clear advantage over propofol prevented its commercial success.

Remimazolam is a new ester-based benzodiazepine, designed to be rapidly broken down by ubiquitous tissue esterases into an inactive metabolite. Preliminary findings suggest a faster onset and shorter duration than midazolam after a single dose,[341] although not all procedures could be completed without "rescue" sedation. Remimazolam may have a role as a sedative for brief (<10 minute) procedures, but its behavior after repeated dosing and its consequent role as a sedative have yet to be evaluated.[341]

Analgesic Adjuvants

Opioids are useful for procedures in which pain cannot reliably be blocked with local anesthesia alone.[323] Compared to alfentanil in women undergoing breast biopsy, remifentanil resulted in lower pain scores during deep dissection and reduced the need for supplemental local anesthesia.[342] Remifentanil was a useful adjuvant to propofol sedation during transvaginal tape insertion[343] and in achieving optimal conditions for awake craniotomy,[344] surgery that is increasingly being performed as a day and short-stay procedure.[26] Remifentanil produced lower pain scores than fentanyl in patients receiving propofol sedation during hysteroscopy, but it did not improve recovery or patient satisfaction.[345] For hysteroscopic surgery, paracervical block supplemented by a remifentanil infusion permitted earlier mobilization and discharge compared to TIVA, and the sedation technique was also preferred by a higher proportion of patients. Remifentanil is usually delivered by infusion, but intermittent bolus doses may be more effective for some procedures.[346] Hyperalgesia after remifentanil administration remains a concern.

Both clonidine and dexmedetomidine have potentially useful analgesic, anxiolytic, and sedative properties. The slow onset and offset of clonidine and frequent reports of cardiovascular instability mean that neither drug has established a routine place in sedation,[148,347] although dexmedetomidine may be a useful analgesic adjuvant in awake craniotomy.[348] Ketamine improved analgesia when used to supplement propofol sedation, but an increase in PONV, psychomimetic side effects, and delayed discharge were observed at higher doses.[349]

Delivery of Sedation

Because of the varying needs to provide hypnosis, anxiolysis, analgesia, and amnesia, use of drug combinations is common during anesthesiologist-administered sedation. Preceding a propofol infusion with a 2 mg dose of midazolam improved anxiety, sedation, and amnesia for early intraoperative events with no detrimental effect on postoperative sedation, amnesia, or recovery times.[350] However, using drug combinations increases the risk for interactions, leading to adverse effects. At sedative doses, propofol and remifentanil each have only a modest effect on heart rate and arterial blood pressure, but their effect on respiration is strikingly synergistic, with the potential for severe respiratory depression.[351] Respiratory depression is also enhanced by the interaction of midazolam and remifentanil.[352] Antagonists of benzodiazepines and opioids may be useful in cases of unintended overdose, but should not be routinely relied on to reverse deep sedation because of their short duration of action, which may permit resedation before[353] or after discharge.[354] It is also possible to achieve high rates of patient satisfaction without procedural recall when using intermittent bolus doses of propofol alone for endoscopic procedures.[355]

As with TIVA, the stability and control of sedation regimens can be improved by using TCI systems.[356] Target concentrations of 0.5 to 2 μg/mL for propofol and 0.5 to 1 ng/mL for remifentanil are typical,[323,347] but should be titrated to individual effect. Effective sedation is usually judged by clinical endpoints or scores. Bispectral index (BIS) changes with increasing sedation, but is too variable[357] to be useful routinely and was not effective as an endpoint for midazolam sedation.[358] BIS monitoring did not improve the quality of sedation or reduce the propofol dose or rates of hypoxemic, bradycardic, or hypotensive complications during ERCP.[359] However, BIS-guided TCI propofol may be useful in the management of patients with intellectual disability,[360] in whom clinical signs may be less reliable. Allowing patients to adjust their own sedation level by patient-controlled sedation resulted in less propofol being used compared with a continuous infusion and was significantly more popular with patients.[361] However, this approach necessarily requires comparatively light levels of sedation and appears to be an undesirable option for a significant proportion of patients.[362]

Inhaled sedation by a low dose of sevoflurane is an alternative technique that provides good control of sedation and rapid recovery.[363,364] However, it can be complicated by a frequent incidence of perioperative excitement and an increased risk for transition to general anesthesia.[365]

Monitoring Depth of Anesthesia

Many devices are now available to monitor the hypnotic component of anesthesia as a supplement to our traditional reliance on autonomic signs. Most monitor electroencephalogram signals, recorded either spontaneously or evoked in response to a stimulus, which are then processed into a dimensionless number, usually ranging from 0 to 100. Precisely which variables are recorded and how they are processed can be proprietary information,[366] and the specific values corresponding to adequate anesthesia also vary among monitors.[367]

BIS was the first licensed monitor and is the most extensively studied, yet whether it can actually prevent awareness with recall remains controversial.[367] In ambulatory anesthesia, in which awareness is uncommon,[368] more interest has been shown on whether BIS and similar devices can reduce excessive anesthetic delivery, thereby improving the speed and quality of recovery and reducing costs. Two meta-analyses have shown that titrating anesthesia to achieve BIS values of 40 to 60 results in trivial (2-4 minutes) reductions in awakening times, shortens recovery room stay by just 4 to 8 minutes, and fails to facilitate earlier home discharge.[369,370] BIS titration also produced a very modest reduction in PONV (32% vs. 38%).[369] Despite reductions in anesthetic drug usage, the cost savings were substantially less than the disposable costs associated with BIS.[369] Monitoring with auditory evoked potentials achieved similar small reductions in drug usage and awakening times, comparable to those seen with BIS.[371,372] Discharge times were unchanged in one study[371] but were shortened by both BIS and auditory evoked potential monitoring in another study in a very similar population.[372] Spectral entropy monitoring also achieved only small reductions in drug use and recovery times, although the quality of evidence was rather poor.[373]

Although a lack of clear clinical or financial benefit exists from depth of anesthesia-guided drug titration, genuine concerns have been raised about using these monitors for purposes other than those for which they were designed. Although anesthesia is usually adequate at values below 60, BIS lacks a high level of discrimination and some patients may form memories at values as low as 40.[374] Thus, titrating anesthesia, even to BIS values of 40 to 50, to reduce costs and recovery times, may unintentionally increase the risk for awareness.[366]

Recovery from Ambulatory Anesthesia

Recovery is traditionally divided into three stages. Early, phase 1 recovery occurs in a postanesthesia care unit (PACU) and entails further awakening and management of pain and nausea, with monitoring of hemodynamic stability. Intermediate recovery continues in the phase 2 (step-down) recovery or in a separate ward area and ends when the patient achieves the criteria for home discharge (see later discussion). The phase 1 and phase 2 aspects of recovery may occur in separate locations or within the same room.

EARLY RECOVERY

The recovery room or PACU should be centrally placed to all operating rooms and requires the same standard of staffing and equipment as are provided for inpatients.[375] The PACU may be shared with inpatients in some facilities, but recovery times can be shortened dramatically if there is a separated phase 1 PACU dedicated to ambulatory patients.[11] In the United States, the ratio of nurses to patients is usually lower than in the inpatient PACU, for ambulatory typically 1:3, reflecting the lower acuity of postprocedural needs.[6] Patient care should be adequately transferred to the PACU nursing staff, relaying preoperative and intraoperative problems and postoperative instructions. The nature and frequency of monitoring in the PACU is determined by the nature of surgery and the state of recovery. Because ambulatory anesthetics are typically short-acting, supplemental oxygen (O_2) administration may be unnecessary in the PACU,[376] provided the patient's saturation level of O_2 in hemoglobin (SpO_2) remains above 92% on air.

In the United Kingdom, patients may be discharged from phase 1 to phase 2 of recovery when they are awake and oriented, normothermic, able to maintain their own airway and ventilation, and demonstrate cardiovascular stability. Wounds should be reasonably dry, and pain and PONV should be minimal and adequately treated. This assessment is usually made on clinical judgment.[375] In the United States, transfer from phase 1 to phase 2 is commonly based on predefined, physician-determined criteria. Typical ambulatory criteria include being awake with stable vital signs, minimal pain, minimal nausea, and the ability to sit with minimal dizziness.[377] If more standardized data are desired, a scoring system can be used. The most commonly used system is the modified Aldrete score,[378] which assigns points on the basis of activity, ventilation, blood pressure, consciousness, and oxygenation (Table 72.4). Length of PACU stay is one of the key endpoints, along with awakening, orientation, and extubation times used to evaluate early recovery in ambulatory anesthesia research.

TABLE 72.4 The Modified Aldrete Recovery Score

		Score
Activity:	Able to move 4 extremities voluntarily or on command	2
	Able to move 2 extremities voluntarily or on command	1
	Unable to move extremities voluntarily or on command	0
Respiration:	Able to breathe deeply and cough freely	2
	Dyspnea or limited breathing	1
	Apneic	0
Circulation:	BP ± 20% of preanesthetic level	2
	BP ± 20%-49% of preanesthetic level	1
	BP ± 50% of preanesthetic level	0
Consciousness:	Fully awake	2
	Arousable on calling	1
	Not responding	0
Oxygenation:	Able to maintain saturation >92% on room air	2
	Needs oxygen to maintain saturation >90%	1
	Saturation <90% even with oxygen	0

The total possible score is 10; patients scoring ≥ 9 are fit for discharge from phase 1 recovery. *BP*, Blood pressure.

Reproduced from Aldrete JA. The post-anesthesia recovery score revisited (letter). *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7:89–91. With permission.

SECOND-STAGE RECOVERY

Second-stage recovery prepares patients for leaving the ambulatory surgery unit and taking over their own care. Patients should sit upright on trolleys or reclining chairs as an aid to mobilization. After low-dose spinal anesthesia, mobilization is usually possible within an hour of the return of full motor function, or about 2.5 to 3 hours after the start of spinal anesthesia.[172,379]

FAST-TRACK RECOVERY

With the increased use of short-acting drugs and techniques, many patients will have already met the discharge criteria before, or by the time, they reach the PACU.[380] If this is the case, admission to the PACU will only generate unnecessary delay while further observations are performed. Instead, these patients may bypass phase 1 recovery and go directly to the phase 2 unit; this is known as fast-track recovery.

The modified Aldrete score can also be used to assess fast-track eligibility.[381] Because this score does not assess pain or PONV, which are traditionally treated in the PACU, White and Song[382] added two additional categories to derive their fast-track recovery score. Although using this score reduced the proportion of patients who met the fast-track criteria on PACU arrival, it also significantly reduced the number of patients who required parenteral analgesia or antiemetics in the step-down area.[382] Others have suggested a series of clinical criteria[383] that must all be achieved for patients to undergo fast-track recovery (Box 72.1). The criteria for transfer from phase 1 to phase 2 and the criteria for direct entry to phase 2 should be the same.

Fast-track recovery is the norm for patients who have had local anesthesia, but it is also appropriate for most patients receiving sedation[383,384] and low-dose spinal anesthesia in the United Kingdom.[172] Patients receiving general anesthesia also may be able to undergo fast-track recovery, which is appealing because improved recovery provides the patient with a higher-quality experience, enabling them to return toward normal in a more pleasant, comfortable, and facilitative environment. It also frees up the more intensive resources of phase 1 recovery for those patients who need them.

Accomplishing fast-track recovery is complex. In one facility, fast-track recovery was only achieved in just over 60% of those who met the PACU bypass criteria.[385] The use

BOX 72.1 Criteria* for Direct Admission to the Second-Stage Recovery Unit, Bypassing the Post-Anesthesia Care Unit

Patient should be awake, alert, oriented, responsive (or returns to baseline state)
Pain should be minimal (unlikely to require treatment with parenteral medications)
No active bleeding should occur (unlikely to require professional treatment)
Vital signs should be stable (unlikely to require pharmacologic intervention)
Nausea should be minimal
No vomiting should occur
If nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agent has been used, patient should now be able to perform a 5-second head lift, or train-of-four monitoring should indicate no fade
Oxygen saturation should be 94% or higher on room air (3 min or longer) or oxygen saturation should return to baseline on room air

*During the follow-up period, the patient should be evaluated in the operating room, immediately before discharge, using the above criteria regarding recovery from anesthesia. To bypass the post-anesthesia care unit, a patient must meet all of these criteria and, in the judgment of the anesthesiologist, be capable of transfer to the second-stage recovery unit.

Reproduced from Apfelbaum JL, Walawander CA, Grasela TH, et al. Eliminating intensive postoperative care in same-day surgery patients using short-acting anesthetics. *Anesthesiology. 2002;97(1):66–74. With permission.*

of depth of anesthesia monitoring has been claimed to facilitate fast-track recovery,[386] whereas others have not found it advantageous.[387] Accomplishing fast-track recovery requires not only anesthesia recovery readiness, but also the support of a facility-based process, including nursing and surgeon participation and environment support.

The economic case for fast-track recovery should be considered separately.[388] In some cases, fast-track recovery has shortened overall recovery stay, comparable to,[389] or even longer than,[383] the time that would have been spent in the PACU. However, nursing workload was not reduced,[389] while others have found no difference in overall recovery time.[385] Nurses in the step-down unit are not always readily available to receive patients and often report patients arriving cold or without all the fast-track criteria actually being met.[390] Although fast-track recovery appears financially beneficial, actual savings will be made only if the PACU is not needed at all or if staffing levels can be reduced, which is not supported by the evidence to date.[388] Nursing workload and costs may simply be shifted from one area to another, with no overall savings.[389] Fast-track recovery may still help to improve patient flow and may work best in small units that use staff flexibly between different areas.[388] But the most productive approach may be to enable the fastest possible path for all patients through their recovery to discharge home.

Postoperative Pain

The management of postoperative pain should begin well before the patient undergoes surgery. Patients need to have appropriate expectations about what they are likely to experience during their recovery.[391] At preoperative assessment, patients should be provided with information about the likely extent and duration of pain after surgery. They should also be advised about simple measures to reduce pain, including advice to rest in a comfortable position, raising swollen limbs, use of heat or cold packs, and the benefits of distraction. Prevention is the mainstay of pain management, yet studies have shown that pain management after ambulatory surgery is often inadequate.[392-394] Common causes are a lack of adherence to analgesic guidelines and a failure to provide multimodal analgesia.[394] Too often there is over-reliance on opioid analgesia, resulting in predictable adverse effects,[395] that are second only to inadequate pain relief in causing unnecessary hospital admission.[392]

MULTIMODAL ANALGESIA

Multimodal analgesia relies on the additive or synergistic combination of drugs acting at various points on the pain pathway.[396] Typical combinations include local anesthetic wound infiltration or regional techniques and routine NSAIDs, with small doses of opioids added as needed. Topical therapies may also be of some benefit, with both lidocaine and glyceryl trinitrate patches found to provide effective topical analgesia after a variety of ambulatory procedures.[397] Multimodal regimens have been shown to be effective after several ambulatory surgical procedures.[398,399] An opioid-sparing effect exists for several drug combinations,[400] but most evidence is limited to an opioid plus one other drug, with little evaluation of true multimodal analgesia or attempts to identify optimal combinations.[394] Analgesic efficacy appears to differ with the nature of surgery,[401] suggesting that multimodal analgesic regimens should be specifically tailored.[402] Nevertheless, reducing the opioid dose does decrease the incidence of PONV to a corresponding degree and may also reduce other opioid adverse effects, such as sedation, sleep disturbances, urinary retention, and respiratory depression.[395] As yet, no evidence indicates that multimodal analgesia improves long-term patient outcome[403] because of the small number of subjects studied and the infrequent incidence of adverse outcomes after ambulatory surgery.

RESCUE ANALGESIA

Despite prophylactic measures, some patients will experience pain on awakening after surgery. Milder cases may be amenable to treatment with additional oral analgesia, but more severe pain will usually require parenteral opioids. Long-acting parenteral opioids are rarely indicated. Fentanyl is commonly used for this purpose, and small boluses (20-25 μg) rapidly achieve analgesia. Compared to morphine, fentanyl results in more rapid control of pain and reduces the occurrence of PONV.[404] Rescue fentanyl also produced fewer adverse effects than oxycodone.[405] Administration of additional oral analgesia as soon as the pain is controlled will usually prevent a recurrence at a later stage of recovery. During the recovery period, pain should be assessed on a regular basis and treated according to protocols (Fig. 72.4).

PAIN MANAGEMENT AT HOME

In the United States, patients are often given prescriptions for postoperative analgesics, including weak opioids,

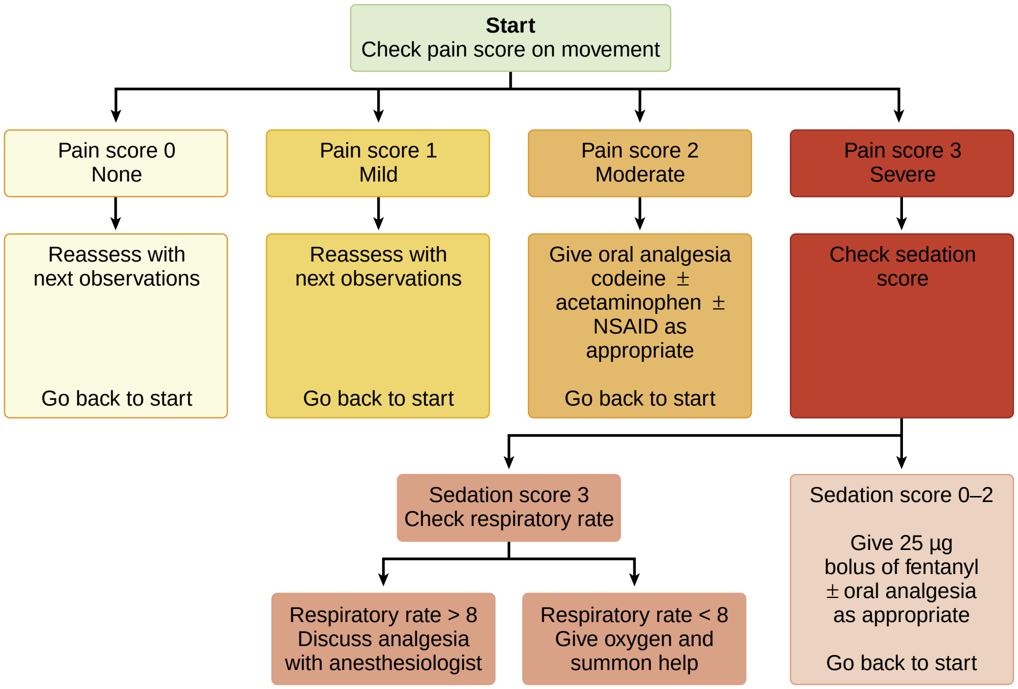

Start
Check pain score on movement
Pain score 0
None
Pain score 1
Mild
Pain score 2
Moderate
Pain score 3
Severe
Reassess with next observations
Go back to start
Reassess with next observations
Go back to start
Give oral analgesia codeine ± acetaminophen ± NSAID as appropriate
Go back to start
Check sedation score
Sedation score 3
Check respiratory rate
Sedation score 0–2
Give 25 µg bolus of fentanyl ± oral analgesia as appropriate
Go back to start
Respiratory rate > 8
Discuss analgesia with anesthesiologist
Respiratory rate < 8
Give oxygen and summon help

Fig. 72.4 Example of a pain management protocol for ambulatory surgery patients. *NSAID*, Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug. (Modified from Lipp A, Jackson I. Adult day surgery analgesia. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:133–145. With permission.)

preferably before surgery so the medications will be at home when the patient needs them. In the United Kingdom, patients may be given standardized take-home analgesic packs that can be dispensed from the ambulatory surgery unit, avoiding pharmacy delays. Typical take-home analgesia includes NSAIDs and acetaminophen combined with a weak opioid. Combinations of codeine-acetaminophen[406] and hydromorphone-acetaminophen[407] are effective after many ambulatory surgical procedures, although a proportion of patients are unable to metabolize codeine to its active form, rendering it ineffective.[408] Although a single preoperative dose of pregabalin produced modest improvements in pain after ambulatory surgery, continuing its use into the postoperative period added no further benefit.[167]

Managing Opioid Complications

Although multimodal techniques aim to minimize opioid use, strong opioids can be necessary as a rescue option after more invasive surgery. Analgesics such as morphine and oxycodone provide more intense and prolonged effects, but are associated with more intense and prolonged typical opioid side effects. Novel delivery techniques, such as iontophoretic[409] or nasal[410] fentanyl, or sublingual sufentanil,[411] may improve patient convenience but do nothing to reduce adverse effects. In addition to multimodal analgesia, attempts to limit these adverse effects have included the development of drugs such as tramadol, which combine opioid and nonopioid mechanisms of action. Tramadol is effective after ambulatory surgery,[412,413] but it is still associated with a frequent incidence of unwanted effects, including sedation, dizziness, and particularly PONV.[414] Tapentadol is licensed in both the United States and the United Kingdom. It has a dual action similar to that of tramadol, with comparable efficacy to oxycodone but fewer GI adverse effects, such as nausea, vomiting, and constipation.[415] Unlike tramadol, it does not require metabolic activation or suffer from isomer-dependent pharmacodynamics.[163]

Combining oral oxycodone with naloxone (Targinact) antagonizes the GI effects, in particular preventing opioid-induced constipation, but has little effect on analgesia because first-pass metabolism prevents much naloxone from reaching the central nervous system.[163] Alvimopan is another peripherally acting µ-opioid (MOP) receptor antagonist intended to reduce opioid-induced constipation. However, peripheral MOP receptors also may partially mediate opioid-associated PONV, delayed gastric emptying, and urinary retention,[163] offering the hope that opioid analgesia without serious adverse effects may yet be a possibility.

Local Anesthetic Administration at Home

Sending patients home with perineural, incisional, and intraarticular catheters is a new and evolving area of postoperative pain management.[416] Patient-controlled regional anesthesia (PCRA) with an elastomeric balloon pump has provided effective analgesia and reduced pain intensity during mobilization when ropivacaine is delivered into a perioperatively placed wound catheter after subacromial decompression.[417] Although patients were kept in hospital for study observations and assessments, based on pain scores, the authors concluded that all patients in the active group could have been discharged within 2 hours of surgery. Another small pilot study showed excellent analgesia with continuous interscalene block, continued at home, allowing same-day discharge after a variety of shoulder operations, including open rotator cuff repair, subacromial decompression, and joint replacement.[418]

Recently, several institutions have described cases of chondrolysis that appear to be related to the use of postoperative intraarticular local anesthetic pain pumps.[419] In a series of 375 patients from one individual orthopedic surgeon, chondrolysis was observed only in cases in which either bupivacaine or lidocaine had been infused into the joint during the postoperative period.[420] Most local anesthetics, including bupivacaine, lidocaine, and ropivacaine, are chondrotoxic to human articular cartilage in vitro, and the risk may be increased with longer exposure to higher concentrations of local anesthetic, such as with a pain pump, compared to that associated with a single injection.[421] Consequently, the use of local anesthetic infusions after shoulder surgery has declined or stopped in many institutions.

A variety of infusion pump designs are available for local anesthesia infusions or PCRA after discharge. Technical problems have been found with electronic pumps,[422] which seem to be unreliable for home use.[418] Patient satisfaction[422] has been reported with disposable elastomeric pumps, which are more reliable, although not all types function equally well and in vivo performance does not necessarily match results obtained in vitro.[423]

Postoperative Nausea and Vomiting

PONV occurs in as many as 30% of a general surgical inpatient population given no antiemetics.[424] Some patients undergoing day surgery have a much smaller risk for symptoms, cited as less than 5%[56,425] for very minor surgery, with reduced requirement for intraoperative and postoperative opioids. However, in the same studies, other ambulatory surgery patients had a predischarge incidence of PONV as high as 41%. When the potential occurrence of emetic sequelae after discharge is included in the estimation of overall risk, some authors cite an overall incidence of more than 40%, even after receiving an antiemetic.[426]

RISK ASSESSMENT AND STRATEGIES

Some have recommended that the management of PONV for ambulatory patients should involve universal multimodal pharmacologic prophylaxis to minimize the symptoms that might delay timely discharge or subsequent recurrence in the home environment.[427] However, current recommendations[428] advocate a more focused approach toward the use of preventive pharmacotherapy, having first minimized baseline risk resulting from the use of generic emetogenic stimuli, such as adequate hydration, the use of local-regional techniques, or if a general anesthetic is needed, reducing exposure to volatile anesthetics, N_2O, and opioid-based analgesia. Avoiding neostigmine was previously advocated, but may not be beneficial.[428] Individual patient factors should then be identified to stratify relative risk. The scoring system originally derived from a cohort of ear, nose, and throat patients by Apfel and colleagues in 1998[429] is popular because of its relative simplicity; yet debate continues regarding discriminating power[427] and its applicability to ambulatory surgery patients, because the predicted risk for PONV (Table 72.5) seems to be overestimated in this population, presumably as a result of the original scoring system having been developed for inpatients in Europe. This seems to be confirmed in a subsequent paper by the same author,[426] where PACU-only rates of nausea were 19.9%, vomiting 3.9%, and nausea and/or vomiting 20.7% across an ambulatory patient cohort with characteristics that would seem to predict greater risk from the original algorithm. In the same study, postdischarge rates of PONV until the second postoperative day were however higher: 36.6% nausea, 11.9% vomiting, 13.3% severe nausea, and 5.0% severe vomiting. From these data, the authors developed a predictive scoring algorithm for postdischarge nausea and vomiting (PDNV) (Table 72.6). Other scoring algorithms exist for prediction of risk for PONV in the ambulatory environment, but their relative complexity mandates the use of a calculator or computer.[425] A reevaluation of risk factors for PONV[430] reiterated the importance of those characteristics included in the original Apfel score,[424] but this algorithm included younger age and duration but not type of surgery. A simple policy whereby two antiemetic interventions were administered to all male patients and three to all females[431] resulted in better compliance and greater effectiveness than several previously published strategies,[432] although at the risk of exposing more patients to the potential harm of unnecessary antiemetics.

TABLE 72.5 Risk Factors for, and Predicted Rates of, Postoperative Nausea and Vomiting According to the Apfel Score

Risk factors	Scoring
Female	1 point
Non-smoker	1 point
History of previous PONV	1 point
Postoperative use of opioids	1 point
Maximum possible score	4 points
Number of Points	**Risk of PONV (%)**
0	10
1	21 (≈20)
2	39 (≈40)
3	61 (≈60)
4	79 (≈80)

PONV, Postoperative nausea and vomiting.
Data from Apfel CC, Laara E, Koivuranta M, et al. A simplified risk score for predicting postoperative nausea and vomiting: conclusions from cross-validations between two centers. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(3):693–700.

TABLE 72.6 Risk Factors for, and Predicted Rates of, Postdischarge Nausea and Vomiting

Risk Factors	Scoring
Female	1 point
Age < 50 years	1 point
History of previous PONV	1 point
Postoperative use of opioids	1 point
Nausea in PACU	1 point
Maximum possible score	5 points
Number of Points	**Risk of PONV (%)**
0	10.9 (≈10)
1	18.3 (≈20)
2	30.5 (≈30)
3	48.7 (≈50)
4	58.5 (≈60)
5	79.7 (≈80)

PACU, Post-anesthesia care unit; *PONV*, postdischarge nausea and vomiting.
Data from Apfel CC, Philip BK, Cakmakkaya OS, et al. Who is at risk for postdischarge nausea and vomiting after ambulatory surgery? *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(3):475–486.

Antiemetic treatment should therefore be tailored to assessment of likely risk for symptoms with the use of either unimodal or multimodal prophylaxis as indicated. The IMPACT study[200] demonstrated that ondansetron 4 mg, droperidol 1.25 mg, and dexamethasone 4 mg were equally effective in reducing the risk for PONV by an order of 25% and that using these two drugs together would be approximately additive (multimodal antiemetic prescription). Specifically, the prophylactic use of one of these drugs decreases the estimated risk for PONV from 60% to 44%; use of two drugs would further decrease the incidence from 44% to 33% and three drugs to 24%. The use of TIVA with propofol with the concomitant avoidance of N_2O had similar equivalence to the use of one antiemetic.[200] However, the antiemetic effectiveness of TIVA is time-limited and patients receiving TIVA appear to have a higher risk of late PONV, starting 2 to 6 hours after surgery.[200A] Simple measures, such as the routine administration of approximately 1 to 2 L of intravenous crystalloid fluids, reduce the incidence and severity of PONV, decrease dizziness and drowsiness,[433] and reduce postoperative pain in high-risk groups.[434] Allowing patients to drink clear liquids for as long as possible before surgery can also reduce PONV.[124]

ANTIEMETIC AGENTS

First-Generation Drugs

Metoclopramide is a dopaminergic (D_2) and serotonergic (5-HT_3, peripheral 5-HT_4 at higher doses) antagonist with gastric prokinetic properties that was first described in 1964. A meta-analysis of a standard clinical dose of 10 mg showed little evidence of pharmacologic benefit for PONV,[435] but after a number of studies by Fujii were withdrawn, reanalysis suggests that there may be some benefit.[436] However, current guidelines still do not list metoclopramide for first-line treatment.[428] Higher doses, such as 20 to 25 mg, are more effective[437] but are associated with more akathisia.

Droperidol is a butyrophenone with an antiemetic effect resulting from dopaminergic receptor (D_2) antagonism that received a black box warning for the FDA-approved dose of 2.5 mg[438] or greater because of potential QT interval prolongation. This and other side effects of droperidol, such as sedation and akathisia, were significant but at higher doses than are commonly used for PONV prophylaxis,[438] which are typically 1.25 mg or less. A recent meta-analysis[439] has confirmed the antiemetic action of low-dose droperidol. Droperidol use is less in the United States since the black box warning was added but primarily for medicolegal reasons rather than because of concerns with efficacy or side effects. It is also little used in the ambulatory environment in the United Kingdom due to perceptions of adverse extrapyramidal effects, particularly akathisia, even at 0.5-mg doses.[440,441] An Australian study evaluating the incidence of akathisia in 228 women undergoing ambulatory gynecologic laparoscopy reported a rate of 29% with administration of 10 μg/kg.[442]

Antagonists of the histamine H_1 receptor have a particular efficacy in the management of nausea and vomiting precipitated by vestibular pathways, with a documented benefit in the management of travel sickness and surgical procedures for strabismus or involving the middle ear. Dimenhydrinate (a combination of diphenhydramine and 8-chlorotheophylline that was added to reduce drowsiness) has an antiemetic effectiveness deemed similar to that of both droperidol and 5-HT_3 antagonists,[443] but potential adverse reactions from these antihistamines include marked sedation, dry mouth, urinary retention, and blurred vision as a result of associated muscarinic receptor antagonism. Meclizine, an H_1-receptor antagonist and anti–motion sickness medication, is minimally sedating, long-acting, and effective for treatment of PONV and for prevention of PDNV.[444] In the United States, it is inexpensive and available without prescription, making it an attractive postdischarge choice.

A transdermal scopolamine delivery system is also available. This patch was designed to deliver a total dose of 1 mg of scopolamine at a sustained, constant rate over a period of 3 days.[445] Numerous studies have shown transdermal scopolamine to be effective in reducing the incidence and severity of PONV and PDNV, with efficacy comparable to that of ondansetron or droperidol. It has a prolonged duration but the onset is delayed, becoming effective within 2 to 4 hours of applying the patch.[446] The slow onset can be overcome by applying the patch the night before surgery. Used in this way, the incidence of nausea and vomiting was reduced from 62.5% and 37.5% to 20.8% and 8.3%, respectively, compared to placebo after gynecologic laparoscopy.[447] In the United States, clinicians apply the patch preoperatively, knowing that onset of PDNV efficacy will be in the early recovery period for shorter surgery.[445] Adverse effects, particularly dry mouth but also somnolence, dizziness, and blurred vision, are relatively common but generally described as mild.[445,447]

Serotonin 5-HT3 Receptor Antagonists

The 5-HT_3 antagonists have played a substantial role in the management of PONV since their introduction in the 1980s, because of their relatively benign adverse reaction profile compared with those of the then available drugs. Their prophylactic use is more effective when given just before the end of surgery.[448] They are effective drugs for emetic rescue therapy, with ondansetron seeming to have a more preferential effect on vomiting (number needed to treat [NNT] = 4) rather than nausea (NNT = 7).[449] Although relatively well tolerated, their side-effect profile includes an increased risk for headache (number needed to harm [NNH] = 36) and elevated liver enzymes (NNH = 31).[449] All serotonin subtype 3 antagonists have also been associated with QT interval prolongation. More recently released serotonin 5-HT_3 receptor antagonists, such as dolasetron, granisetron, and palonosetron,[450] seem to exhibit similar characteristics with equal reduction of PONV rates in high-risk patients when used for prophylaxis, though the longer half-life of these drugs (8, 10, and 40 hours, respectively) may afford better protection against symptoms after discharge. In particular, palonosetron, by nature of its unique binding properties leading to internalization of the 5-HT_3 receptor[451] and a long half-life, may have a role in the management of postdischarge symptoms.[452] A large cost remains a significant barrier to use of the newer, nongeneric serotonin antagonists.

Steroids

Dexamethasone is an effective antiemetic at intravenous doses of 4 to 5 mg (depending on local formulation).[453]

This steroid may act centrally to either modulate the release of endorphins or inhibit prostaglandin synthesis. Given its delayed onset of action, dexamethasone should be administered as early as possible *after* induction of anesthesia.[454] Prophylactic dexamethasone is also effective in reducing postoperative pain and improving the quality of recovery,[169,170] although at somewhat higher doses (typically 8 mg) than those required for an antiemetic effect. The long-term side effect profile of this dose of dexamethasone has not yet been evaluated.

Neurokinin-1 Antagonists

The role of tachykinins in the emetic pathway was first elucidated by immunohistologic studies identifying substance P in the dorsal vagal complex of the ferret, an area of the brain deemed essential in the vomiting reflex.[455] Subsequent research identified the potential value of specific antagonists to the neurokinin-1 receptor, at which substance P and neurokinins A and B interact both centrally and peripherally in the gut to suppress vomiting. Aprepitant was the first commercially released drug of this class. A preoperative oral dose of 40 mg has efficacy similar to that of ondansetron for the reduction of nausea, with a potentially superior effect in the suppression of vomiting for 48 hours after administration.[456] An intravenous prodrug formulation, fosaprepitant, was more effective than ondansetron in preventing vomiting, but not nausea, and with no effect on complete response rates for PONV in small numbers of patients undergoing gynecological[457] or lower limb[458] surgery. A multicenter study evaluating the use of oral rolapitant,[459] a competitive NK-1 antagonist with an exceptionally long half-life of 180 hours, suggested similar effectiveness in comparison with placebo and ondansetron (administered at induction) with early control of symptoms, but use of rolapitant similarly seemed to confer prolonged protection from postoperative emetic symptoms. Rolapitant does not seem to have been further evaluated in PONV and cost remains a barrier for this class of drugs as well.

MANAGING PERSISTENT NAUSEA AND VOMITING

The presence of continuing symptoms after antiemetic rescue therapy requires further clinical review. Consideration should be given to alternative causes for these symptoms, particularly hydration status, covert hypovolemia, or early infection. Review of vital signs (temperature, pulse, and arterial blood pressure), allied with clinical examination to exclude an association with concomitant worsening of abdominal pain, potential septic foci, or urinary retention, is important to exclude more sinister causes, before consideration is given to symptomatic relief.

Administering 20 mL/kg of an isotonic electrolyte solution reduces the risk for nausea and dizziness after ambulatory surgery and volume repletion should be considered to attenuate continuing symptoms.[433,460] Ephedrine 0.5 mg/kg intramuscularly is effective for prophylaxis and treatment, with efficacy comparable to that of droperidol and sedation scores lower than placebo.[461] No value exists in prescribing a previously used antiemetic drug within 6 hours of previous administration,[428] but other second-line drugs may be considered should first-line management fail. These options include small-dose promethazine (6.25 mg); small-dose intravenous naloxone; propofol 20 mg; phenothiazines, including prochlorperazine, perphenazine, or a neurokinin antagonist. For patients who have not received prophylaxis, the 5-HT$_3$ antagonists are the preferred treatment of PONV and the class of drugs with best proven efficacy for treatment rather than prophylaxis.[428]

Special Areas

OFFICE-BASED PRACTICE

Office-based anesthesia is a form of ambulatory anesthesia that is rapidly expanding in North America and some parts of Europe. Arguably, the first ambulatory surgery center in the United States (the Downtown Anesthesia Clinic in Sioux City, Iowa) was an office-based practice.[2] Simple, minimally invasive surgical procedures have been performed in physicians' offices for many years, using either local anesthesia or sedation. There is now a growing involvement of anesthesiologists, especially as the complexity of office-based surgery increases.

Advantages of office-based surgery include improved convenience for the patient, but the primary driver has been more control over scheduling and the work environment for the surgeon. The potential exists for significant profit going directly to the surgeon, but in addition, the lower overhead costs in this setting result in significantly lower overall costs for the procedure. For example, the total cost of a laparoscopic inguinal hernia repair was three and a half times greater when performed in a hospital setting compared with an office facility.[462] The costs of open hernia repair[462] and various rhinology procedures[463] were approximately 2.5 times less when performed in the office. In the United States, office-based surgery covers a wide range of procedures.

However, legitimate concerns have been raised about the safety of office-based surgery. One comparative study showed a more than 10-fold increase in adverse incidents and deaths for procedures performed in a physician's office compared with an ambulatory surgical center.[464] These disasters are often the result of unqualified or untrained individuals administering sedation in unsuitable or unaccredited facilities.[464,465] Deep sedation appears to be a considerable risk factor. From the ASA closed claims database, 40% of the deaths resulting from MAC occurred during facial and eye surgery, which are commonly performed in the office setting.[327] Hypoxia and hypoventilation resulting from oversedation was the most common cause of death, with poor vigilance, inadequate monitoring, and delayed resuscitation contributing to the deaths, half of which were judged to be preventable.[327] The common perception that sedation is safer than general anesthesia is not supported by these data.

In the United States, the regulation of office facilities is the responsibility of individual states, with nearly 30 states having some degree of oversight as of 2014.[466] Regulation does appear to improve safety, because no deaths were reported in a series of more than 23,000 cases from a fully accredited office staffed by board-certified anesthesiologists and surgeons.[467] In addition, safety appears to be improving

BOX 72.2 A Summary of Office-Based Surgery Practice Guidelines Collated from US Regulatory Bodies

Employment of appropriately trained and credentialed anesthesia personnel
Availability of properly maintained anesthesia equipment appropriate to the anesthesia care being provided
As complete documentation of the care provided as that required at other surgical sites
Use of standard monitoring equipment according to the American Society of Anesthesiologists policies and guidelines
Provision of a postanesthesia care unit or recovery area that is staffed by appropriately trained nursing personnel and provision of specific discharge instructions
Availability of emergency equipment (e.g., airway equipment, cardiac resuscitation)
Establishment of a written plan for emergency transport of patients to a site that provides more comprehensive care should an untoward event or complication occur that requires more extensive monitoring or overnight admission of the patient
Maintenance and documentation of a quality assurance program
Establishment of a continuing education program for physicians and other facility personnel
Safety standards that cannot be jeopardized for patient convenience or cost savings

in parallel with greater regulation.[466] Guidance on office-based anesthesia is available from the ASA and SAMBA,[468] and comprehensive recommendations from other organizations and experts have been published. Typical recommendations for safe office-based anesthesia are summarized in Box 72.2. In essence, the office setting must adhere to the same standards of care required in a hospital-based or freestanding ambulatory surgery facility. Strong safety processes must be in place, because the isolated office-based environment means that outside help is not immediately available.

The selection of patients for office-based anesthesia should adhere to robust guidelines for safe anesthetic care. Because perioperative complications are harder to manage in an isolated environment, selection criteria may need to be more restrictive than those currently advocated for ambulatory surgery in the hospital setting.[46] The selection process must include a matrix of procedure invasiveness, patient complexity, and the capabilities and comfort levels of the facility and its personnel.[468] Preoperative preparation should be guided by the same clinical acumen and common sense that drives the decision-making process at freestanding surgery centers, with any coexisting diseases under good control. Anesthetic techniques suitable for office-based surgical procedures are similar to those used for hospital-based and freestanding ambulatory surgery procedures. MAC remains common, although clearly a great challenge exists in "the judicious and skillful use of MAC anesthesia to achieve adequate sedation and analgesia for increasingly invasive procedures."[469] Increasingly a move toward light general anesthesia is occurring—that is, using an LMA or facemask for airway management.[470,471] Propofol, sevoflurane, and desflurane are all suitable within the office setting, although an anesthesia machine is required to deliver volatile anesthetics. Standard equipment can be installed in frequently used offices, and portable equipment has been developed for less frequent use.[465] Fast-track recovery is the ideal with patients who are awake, alert, and able to transfer themselves from operating room table to a reclining chair, thus facilitating room turnover in approximately 10 minutes and home discharge within an hour of awakening.[465] It is important to minimize PDNV.[472] Recommendations have been made for other outcome measures that should routinely be audited after office-based anesthesia.[468,473] The American Medical Association and American College of Surgeons issued a set of Office-Based Surgery Core Principles to promote safety and quality of healthcare services for office procedures requiring sedation and anesthesia.[474]

In the United Kingdom, a similar practice of office-based anesthesia for dental procedures was in place for several decades. A series of anesthetic deaths in dental offices led to several reviews, culminating in recommendations that all anesthetics be administered by accredited anesthesiologists with specific training and experience in dental anesthesia, as well as recommendations regarding resuscitation equipment and the availability of drugs needed for emergency use.[475] Partly because of the high costs of equipment and maintenance, the net result was the movement of all anesthesia out of the dental office and back into the hospital environment.[476] Subsequently, office-based anesthesia has never developed in the United Kingdom. Minor surgery under local anesthesia is performed in some specially equipped primary care surgery centers, whereas the majority of procedures that are performed in offices in the United States are managed in hospital-affiliated day surgery units, procedure rooms, or surgical outpatient clinics in the United Kingdom.

ANESTHESIA IN REMOTE LOCATIONS

Many surgical conditions that formerly needed treatment in a hospital outpatient operating room are now being managed by interventional procedures done by nonsurgeon physicians in radiology, cardiology, and endoscopy (see also Chapter 73). In many cases, deep sedation or anesthesia is still required, meaning the anesthesiologist has to move into unfamiliar and often hazardous environments. The problems associated with these diverse locations are considered in detail in Chapter 73, but because many of the procedures are performed on an ambulatory basis or require anesthetic management according to all of the usual short-stay principles, a brief description is required here. The basic sedative and anesthetic techniques already described are suitable for most cases, but the conduct of anesthesia is likely to have to be modified according to the specific environment.

Administration of anesthesia or sedation at remote locations is associated with significant risk.[477] Some of these risks are specific to particular areas (Table 72.7) but commonly include an unfamiliar environment; small, cramped, or dark rooms; restricted patient access; inadequate or poorly trained support; restrictions on patient monitoring; and inadequate resources. An analysis of ASA closed claims arising from anesthesia care in remote locations revealed that adverse events had a higher probability of death than those arising in the operating room[478] and were primarily caused

TABLE 72.7 Some of the Hazards Associated With Anesthesia in Remote Environments

Area	Examples of specific hazards
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scanner	Noise. Strong magnetic fields; no ferromagnetic equipment within scanner. Peculiarities of MRI-compatible equipment. Remote monitoring may introduce delays (e.g., capnography). Risk of induced currents causing burns in coiled cables. Compliance and dead space within extra-long breathing circuits
X-ray and interventional radiology	Radiation exposure; mobility limited by lead gowns. Often low light levels. Restricted access and unexpected movement of x-ray equipment. Patients may have significant comorbidities. Allergic reactions to contrast media. Limited patient access in CT scanner
Endoscopy suite	Dark environment, limited access. Patients may have significant comorbidities. Risk of hemodynamic disturbance with bowel preparation or vagal stimulation. Shared airway in upper endoscopy. ERCP performed in prone position with added hazards of radiology
General issues	Unfamiliar environment. Old or unfamiliar equipment. Emergency drugs and equipment may be rarely used or checked. Lack of dedicated or trained assistance. Scavenging may be difficult or absent

CT, Computed tomography; *ERCP*, endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography.

by an adverse respiratory event (44%). MAC was the most common anesthetic technique, and respiratory depression secondary to oversedation accounted for over a third of the claims. Care that was substandard and preventable by better monitoring was implicated in the majority of claims associated with death.[478] In the United States, the CMS mandates that the chiefs of anesthesia services monitor and evaluate sedation practices throughout the hospital, and accrediting organizations, such as TJC and DNV, audit for compliance.

Home Readiness and Beyond

PATIENT INFORMATION

Before discharge, patients should receive postoperative instructions concerning aftercare, their transition to normal activities, and any requirements for follow-up. These instructions should be in writing[479] because retention of information is impaired during early recovery from anesthesia,[480] and ideally they should be repeated to the patient's escort. Besides general advice, discharge information should include the early warning signs for the main complications of the specific procedure the patient has undergone[479] and the action to take should these occur.

CRITERIA FOR DISCHARGE

BOX 72.3 **Criteria for Facility Discharge Used at the Brigham and Women's Hospital, United States**

Alert and oriented to time and place
Stable vital signs
Pain controlled by oral analgesia
Nausea or emesis mild, if present
No unexpected bleeding from operative site
Able to walk without dizziness
Patient has been given discharge instructions and prescriptions
Patient accepts readiness for discharge
Adult present to accompany patient home

Courtesy of B K Phillip.

Discharge of the patient after ambulatory surgery and anesthesia is a physician responsibility in the United States,[10] fulfilled by physician-written discharge criteria (Box 72.3). Typically, patients should be oriented and comfortable with cardiovascular stability (including when standing) and problem-free wounds. Alternatively, discharge criteria may be incorporated into a scoring system, such as the Post-Anesthetic Discharge Scoring System.[481] Voiding urine is no longer considered an essential prerequisite for discharge in those at low risk for urinary retention, even after spinal anesthesia.[482] For patients at higher risk, the bladder volume should be assessed by ultrasound scanning[483] and the patient managed accordingly (Fig. 72.5). Actual discharge is frequently nurse-managed,[479,484] provided patients have been managed according to an appropriate protocol and have met all the necessary discharge criteria.

No rationale exists for a minimum observation period after ambulatory surgery in most cases, although patients clearly must be observed for a sufficient period to ensure cardiovascular stability. One possible exception is tonsillectomy, in which a minimum observation period of 6 to 8 hours has been advocated to detect most primary hemorrhages.[31] However, even this has been challenged, with a 4-hour observation period[485,486] or less[487] regarded as safe.

AFTERCARE AND FOLLOW-UP

Appropriate aftercare is one of the main safety features of ambulatory surgery. Acute complications may be related to anesthesia or surgery, and patients should receive careful predischarge education about what may occur for both. All patients should be provided with a 24-hour telephone number for emergency contact. This is often the ambulatory surgery unit during the daytime, but it may be necessary to provide another number or better still to automatically transfer calls when the unit closes at night.[479] In the United States, patients are also routinely given their surgeon's office and answering service number to contact directly for surgical issues. Although the United Kingdom healthcare system includes primary care doctors, they have limited experience in potentially life-threatening early postoperative complications and should not be called first. If the patient's call to the facility or physician does raise concerns, it is important that the patient be brought back for early surgical review; going to the emergency department also can introduce unnecessary delay. Because the ambulatory patient is self-caring and likely to mobilize early, symptoms of surgical complications are noticed and reported sooner

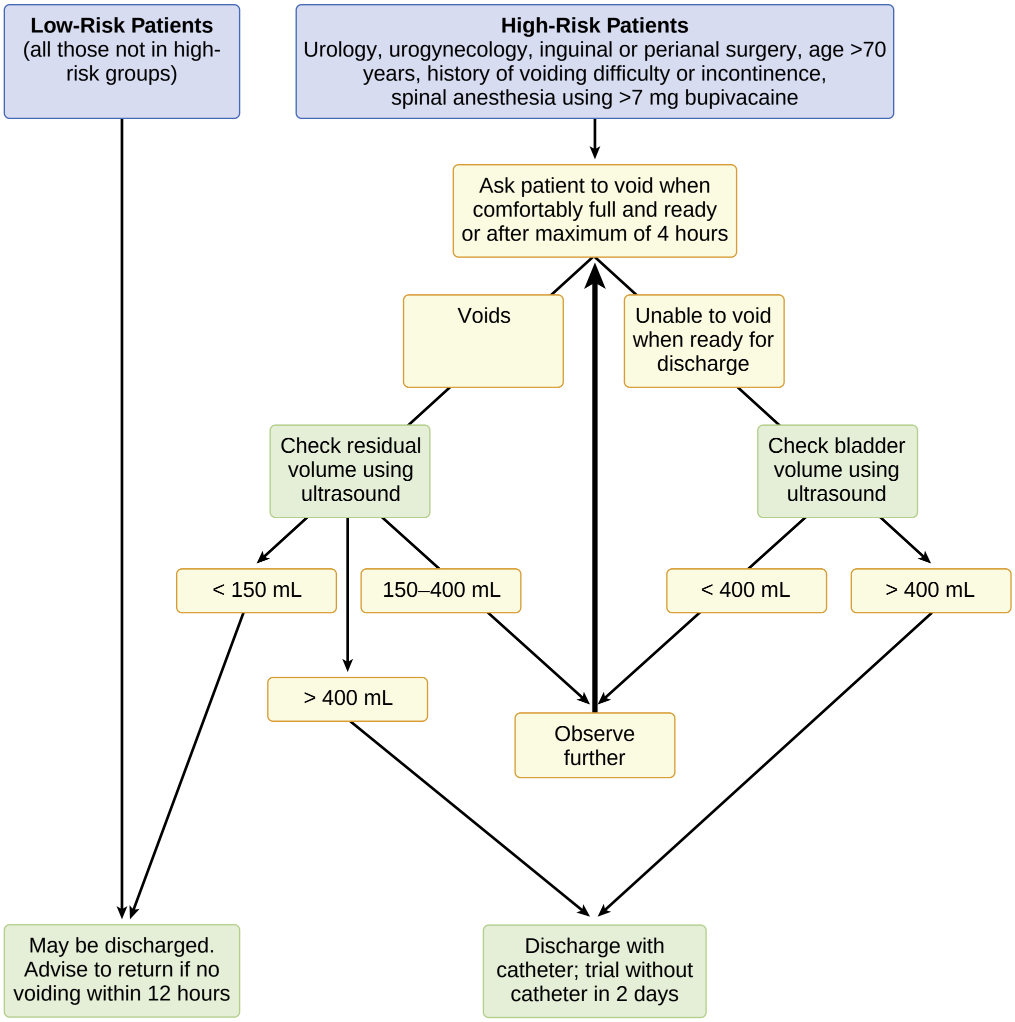

Low-Risk Patients
(all those not in high-risk groups)
High-Risk Patients
Urology, urogynecology, inguinal or perianal surgery, age >70 years, history of voiding difficulty or incontinence, spinal anesthesia using >7 mg bupivacaine
Ask patient to void when comfortably full and ready or after maximum of 4 hours
Voids
Unable to void when ready for discharge
Check residual volume using ultrasound
Check bladder volume using ultrasound
< 150 mL
150–400 mL
< 400 mL
> 400 mL
> 400 mL
Observe further
May be discharged. Advise to return if no voiding within 12 hours
Discharge with catheter; trial without catheter in 2 days

Fig. 72.5 Flowchart illustrating the management of patients who fail to void urine after ambulatory surgery. (Reproduced from British Association of Day Surgery. Spinal anaesthesia for day surgery patients. London [available from http://www.bads.co.uk]; 2010. With permission.)

than if the patient were recovering in the hospital environment, allowing earlier detection and increased safety. Daily assessment of various recovery parameters at home using a smartphone-based app was popular with patients and also appeared to improve quality of recovery, probably by providing additional reassurance.[488] The system could also be used to request contact from a nurse and was found to be more cost-effective than other forms of postdischarge contact,[489] although others found a simple telephone call, which would be cheaper still, was similarly effective.[490]

Follow-Up and Outcome Measures

The ASA has developed a set of outcome indicators specifically for ambulatory and office-based surgery and anesthesia.[491] These include outcome events of interest for days 1, 14, and 30 and ongoing continuous quality indicators. The IAAS[492] has developed a series of indicators (Table 72.8) useful in the evaluation of the overall success of organizational performance, and these mirror the advice from other national specialist societies.[46,493] Lemos and Barros[494] further defined the value of outcome reporting in a range of domains subdivided into clinical, organizational, social, and economic factors that allows the reporting of both individual and institutional performance (Table 72.9). Return-mail questionnaires can be used for patient follow-up after ambulatory surgery to help identify common sequelae that ambulatory patients should realistically expect to experience.[391] No matter how data are collected, it is important that information from quality indicators is fed back in an effective way to individual clinicians and clinical units to support continuous improvement.[495]

Adverse Effects After Ambulatory Surgery

Minor adverse events are common after ambulatory surgery and anesthesia (86%).[391] Drowsiness is the most common effect persisting after discharge (62%), and aches and sore throat are common in intubated patients (47% and 49%, respectively). Headache (25%) and dizziness (20%) also occur, but nausea and vomiting after discharge are less common (17% and 7%, respectively). Patients may take 2 to 3 days before they are able to resume their usual activities.[391] Information about these known side effects should be incorporated into the preoperative patient education and, in the United States, may be incorporated in a separate consent for anesthesia.

TABLE 72.8 Outcome Indicators for Ambulatory Surgery Suggested by the International Association for Ambulatory Surgery

Indicator	Reason
Failure to attend the ambulatory surgery center/unit	Acute medical condition Decision of the patient Organizational reasons Other reason (explain...)
Cancellation of the booked procedure after arrival at the ambulatory surgery center/unit	Pre-existing medical condition Acute medical condition Organizational reasons Other reason (explain...)
Unplanned return to the operating room on the same day	
Unplanned overnight admission	Surgical reasons Anesthetic or medical reasons Social or administrative reasons
Unplanned return of the patient to an ambulatory surgery unit or hospital	<24 h >24 h and < 28 days
Unplanned readmission of the patient to an ambulatory surgery unit or hospital	<24 h >24 h and < 28 days

TABLE 72.9 Outcome Measures in Ambulatory Surgery

Category	Specific Outcome Measures
Clinical	Perioperative cardiovascular and respiratory adverse events Minor postoperative morbidity: pain nausea and vomiting other: sore throat, headache, drowsiness Unplanned return to the operating room on the same day of surgery Unplanned overnight admission Unplanned return or admission to the day surgery unit or hospital: <24 h >24 h and < 28 days
Organizational	Proportion of elective surgery performed as day case Accessibility to ambulatory surgery programs: number of different procedures included Cancellation of booked procedures failure to arrive at the ambulatory surgery unit (ASU) Cancellation after arrival at the ASU
Social	Patient satisfaction Functional health status and quality of life
Economic	Efficiency rate of operating room utilization

ASU, Ambulatory surgery unit.

Reproduced from Lemos P, Barros F. Outcome measures. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:335–344. With permission.

Acute cardiovascular events (hypertension and hypotension, dysrhythmias, cardiac ischemia, and arrest) occur with an overall frequency of 2.9%, with greater risk in patients with preexisting cardiovascular morbidity; respiratory events (hypoxemia, laryngospasm, bronchospasm, aspiration, pulmonary edema, and pneumothorax) occurred in 0.1% of the study population, with increased risk in smokers, asthmatics, and the obese.[57] Unanticipated overnight admission has a worldwide reported incidence of between 1% and 6%. Caution is required in the use of this indicator as a standard to achieve, however, unless the reasons for the admission are documented. Although the indicator may provide evidence of inadequate preoperative assessment and patient optimization, differences in surgical case mix and complexity may explain any variation across institutions. Ultraconservative selection criteria could result in an extremely low overnight admission rate and inappropriately give the impression of a highly performing unit rather than one that was excessively cautious with patient selection. Cross comparison of this indicator with rates of ambulatory care as a proportion of all elective surgery, either by specialty or specific operation, could assist with interpretation.

Patient Satisfaction With Ambulatory Surgery

Patient satisfaction is a difficult metric to define, depending somewhat on the patient's expectation of care. Nevertheless, patient satisfaction is generally very high after ambulatory surgery. The patient experience was improved when facility staff was thought to be friendly and the surgeons discussed findings before discharge,[496] and these factors were perceived by postoperative ambulatory surgery patients as being more important than management of postoperative pain, starting the intravenous line smoothly, and avoidance of delays. Others have found that provision of accurate information about the expected perioperative process is important; other factors that lead to higher satisfaction are effective postoperative analgesia, minimal emetic sequelae, staff courtesy and privacy in the unit, short waiting times before surgery, no perception of being rushed, postoperative telephone contact, and naturally, good surgical outcome.[492]

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Nicoll JH. *Br Med J*. 1909;2:753.
2. Waters RM. *Am J Surg (Anesth Suppl)*. 1919;33:71.
3. Smith I, et al. An overview of ambulatory surgery. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Day Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011.
4. Reed WA, et al. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1976;14:113.
5. Philip BK. *Amb Surg*. 1993;1:77.
6. Twersky RS, Philip BK, eds. *Handbook of Ambulatory Anesthesia*. 2nd ed. New York: Springer; 2008.
7. Toftgaard C. *Amb Surg*. 2012;17:53.
8. Ogg TW. Preface. In: Lemos P, Jarrett P, Philip B, eds. *Day Surgery Development and Practice*. Porto, Portugal: International Association for Ambulatory Surgery; 2006:15.
9. NHS England. 2016/17 National Tariff Payment System; 2017.
10. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Guidelines for ambulatory anesthesia and surgery; 2013. Reaffirmed October 16, 2013.
11. Philip BK. Starting up a hospital-based ambulatory surgery program. In: *Successful Management of Ambulatory Surgery Programs*. Vol. II. Atlanta: American Health Consultants; 1985:167.
12. Fehrmann K, et al. *J One-day Surg*. 2009;19:39.
13. Junger A, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2001;18:314.
14. Tewfik MA, et al. *J Otolaryngol*. 2006;35:235.
15. British Association of Day Surgery. *BADS Directory of Procedures*. 5th ed. London. http://www.bads.co.uk.
16. Trondsen E, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2000;87:1708.
17. Thiel J, et al. *J Am Assoc Gynecol Laparosc*. 2003;10:481.
18. Ilie CP, et al. *J Endourol*. 2011;25:631.
19. Ilie CP, et al. *J Endourol*. 2011;25:797.
20. Abboudi H, Doyle P, Winkler M. Day case laparoscopic radical prostatectomy. *Archivio Italiano di Urologia e Andrologia*. 2017;89(3):182–185.

21. Watkins BM, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2005;15:1045.
22. Bradley B, et al. *Bone and Joint Journal*. 2017;99-B(6):788–792.
23. Berger RA, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2009;467:1424.
24. Larsen JR, Skovgaard B, Pryno T, et al. Feasibility of day-case total hip arthroplasty: a single-centre observational study. *Hip International*. 2017;27(1):60–65.
25. McCarty TM, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2005;242:494.
26. Blanshard HJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(1):89–94.
27. Au K, et al. *Journal of Neurosurgery*. 2016;125(5):1130–1135.
28. Goettel N, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesth*. 2014;26(1):60–64.
29. Hotchen AJ, et al. *Br J Hosp Med*. 2016;77(3):180–183.
30. Bettocchi S, et al. *Human Reprod*. 2002;17:2435.
31. Moralee SJ, et al. *J Laryngol Otol*. 1995;109:1166.
32. Bennett AMD, et al. *Clin Otolaryngol*. 2005;30:418.
33. Steckler RM. *Am J Surg*. 1986;152:417.
34. Rajeev P, Sadler GP. Thyroid and parathyroid surgery. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Day Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011:241.
35. Stavrakis AI, et al. *Surgery*. 2007;142:887.
36. Hisham AN. *J One-day Surg*. 2006;16:13.
37. Smith I, et al. Developing day surgery. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Day Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011:345.
38. Brown H. Breast surgery. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Day Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011:199.
39. Cordeiro E, et al. *Annals of Surgical Oncology*. 2016;23(8):2480–2486.
40. Lermitte J, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2005;18:598.
41. Fleisher LA, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2007;142:263.
42. Warner MA, et al. *JAMA*. 1993;270:1437.
43. Ansell GL, Montgomery JE. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(1):71–74.
44. Engbaek J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50:911.
45. Majholm B, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56:323.
46. Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland, British Association of Day Surgery, Verma R, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:417.
47. Smith I, Jakobsson J. Selection criteria. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Day Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011:41.
48. Davies KE, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:1112.
49. Joshi GP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1082–1091.
50. Ankichetty S, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2011;24:605.
51. Raeder J. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2007;20:508.
52. Chung F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:768.
53. Chung F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(2):452–473.
54. Youshani AS, et al. *Int J Pediatr Otorhin*. 2011;75:207.
55. Fleisher LA, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2004;139:67.
56. Chung F, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:309.
57. Chung F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:262.
58. Aldwinckle RJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59:57.
59. Canet J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:1204.
60. Rasmussen LS, Steinmetz J. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2015;28(6):631–635.
61. Coté CJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:809.
62. Fisher DM. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:807.
63. Bryson GL, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51:782.
64. Short J, Bew S. Paediatric day surgery. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Day Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011:161.
65. Henderson-Smart DJ, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2001;(4):CD000048.
66. Williams JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:366.
67. Sale SM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:774.
68. Howell SJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:570.
69. Eagle KA, et al. *Circulation*. 2002;105:1257.
70. Hartle A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(3):326–337.
71. Carlisle J. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(7):773–778.
72. Fleisher LA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;50:1707.
73. Smith I, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2010;23:687.
74. Fleisher LA, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;130(24):2215–2245.
75. Roshanov PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(1):16–27.
76. Chassot PG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:747.
77. Girish M, et al. *Chest*. 2001;120:1147.
78. Sweitzer BJ. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2008;21:711.
79. Daniels PR. *Br Med J*. 2015;351(8018):27–30.
80. Grines CL, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;49:734.
81. Fogg KJ, et al. *Amb Surg*. 1995;3:209.
82. Cheng CJC, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:805.
83. Chung F, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:1022.
84. Chung F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:817.
85. Carlisle JB, Stocker ME. Preoperative assessment. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford specialist handbook of day surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011:51.
86. Fraczyk L, et al. *J Clin Nurs*. 2010;19:2849.
87. Law TT, et al. *Hong Kong Med J*. 2009;15:179.
88. Parker BM, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2000;12:350.
89. Bettelli G. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2010;23:726.
90. Burden N. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2004;19:401.
91. British Association of Day Surgery. *Organisational issues in preoperative assessment for day surgery*. London.
92. Varughese AM, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16:723.
93. Kinley H, et al. *Br Med J*. 2002;325:1323.
94. Edward GM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:322.
95. Edward GM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:195.
96. Arvidsson S. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40(8 Part 2):962.
97. Smith I, et al. *Day Case Surgery (Oxford Specialist Handbook Series)*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012.
98. Loxdale SJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;67:51.
99. Mueller PS, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2007;82:1360.
100. Klein AA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65:974.
101. American Society of Anesthesiologists Committee on Standards and Practice Parameters, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):522–538.
102. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Routine preoperative tests for elective surgery. NICE guideline [NG45]. April 2016.
103. Dzankic S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:301.
104. van Klei WA, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2007;246:165.
105. Chung F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:467.
106. Matthey P, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48:333.
107. Edward GM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:319.
108. British Association of Day Surgery. *Managing patients with diabetes for day and short stay surgery*. 3rd ed. London. http://www.bads.co.uk. (Accessed 05.07.2014.)
109. Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(12):1427–1440.
110. Sehgal A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:947.
111. Lee A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:454.
112. Hogg LA, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:11.
113. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(3):376–393.
114. Smith I, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28:556.
115. Maltby JR, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51:111.
116. Cook-Sather SD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:727.
117. Søreide E, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:1041.
118. Engelhardt T, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:964.
119. Crenshaw JT. *Am J Nurs*. 2011;111:38.
120. Kyrtatos PG, et al. *J Periop Practice*. 2014;24(10):228–231.
121. Hillyard S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(1):66–71.
122. Okabe T, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114(1):77–82.
123. Larsen B, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33:1–6.
124. McCracken GC, Montgomery J. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35(5):337–342.
125. Ouanes J-PP, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2015;27(2):146–152.
126. Poulton TJ. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22:288.
127. Doze VA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:223.
128. Fawcett WJ, Ljungqvist O. *BJA Education*. 2017;17(9):312–316.
129. Carroll JK, et al. *Br J Nurs*. 2012;21:479.
130. Segerdahl M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52(117).
131. Walker KJ, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;4:CD002192.
132. Soltner C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:680.
133. Hargreaves J. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61:611.
134. De Witte JL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1601.
135. Bauer KP, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2004;16:177.
136. van Vlymen JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:740.
137. Ko YP, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Sinica*. 2001;39:169.
138. Horgesheimer JJ, et al. *Pediatr Dent*. 2001;23:491.
139. Viitanen H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:75.
140. Bevan JC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:50.
141. Golden L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:1070.
142. Vagnoli L, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20:937.

143. Rice M, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18:426.
144. Lee J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:1168.
145. Mifflin KA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:1162.
146. Chartrand J, et al. *J Adv Nurs*. 2017;73(3):599–611.
147. Binstock W, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14:759.
148. Smith I. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2011;24:644.
149. Dahmani S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:216.
150. Jöhr M. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28:325.
151. Brett CN, et al. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 2012;40:166.
152. Ong CKS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:757.
153. Ochroch EA, et al. *Drugs*. 2003;63:2709.
154. White PF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:1364.
155. Gan TJ, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48:1194.
156. Turan I, et al. *J Orthopaed Surg*. 2008;3:40.
157. Joshi A, et al. *Br J Oral Max Surg*. 2004;42:299.
158. Kaeding C, et al. *Am J Orthoped*. 2004;33:510.
159. Mixter 3rd CG, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1998;133:432.
160. Yong SL, et al. *Int J Surg*. 2010;8:283.
161. Pickering AE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:72.
162. Louizos AA, et al. *Ann Oto Rhinol Laryngol*. 2006;115:201.
163. Power I. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:19.
164. Kowalski ML, et al. *Treatments Resp Med*. 2006;5:399.
165. Jokela R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:255.
166. Jokela R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:834.
167. Peng PWH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:155.
168. Tramèr MR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1374.
169. De Oliveira Jr GS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107:362.
170. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:882.
171. Kehlet H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:143.
172. British Association of Day Surgery. *Spinal anaesthesia for day surgery patients.* London, http://www.bads.co.uk. (Accessed 05.07.2014.)
173. Korhonen A-M. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2006;19:612.
174. Förster JG, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2011;24:633.
175. Sahinovic MM, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2010;23:734.
176. Lloyd S. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care*. 2007;18:188.
177. Doenicke A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:933.
178. Bloomfield R, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:116.
179. Sneyd JR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:246.
180. Trudell JR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:270.
181. Vlassakov KV, Kissin I. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2016;37(5):344–352.
182. Smith I, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1005.
183. Jalota L, et al. *Br Med J*. 2011;342:d1110.
184. Mallick A, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24:403.
185. Win NN, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:561.
186. Ong LB, et al. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 2000;28:527.
187. Tighe KE, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52:1000.
188. Ang S, et al. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1999;27:175.
189. Goyagi T, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:771.
190. Smith I, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2008;25:790.
191. Rosenblum M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:255.
192. Sukhani R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:975.
193. Anderson L, Robb H. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53:1117.
194. Djaiani G, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1999;54:63.
195. Ghatge S, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:917.
196. Gupta A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:632.
197. Goswami U, et al. *Indian Journal of Anaesthesia*. 2015;59(3):150–155.
198. Geng YJ, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2017;38:165–171.
199. Tramèr M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:247.
200. Apfel CC, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:2441.
200A. Schaefer MS, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33:750–760.
201. Kumar G, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(10):1138–1150.
202. Leslie K, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2008;3:CD006059.
203. Chen G, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26:928.
204. Absalom AR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:26.
205. Coetzee JF. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26:359.
206. Cortinez LI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(2):302–310.
207. Ebert TJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:88.
208. Doi M, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:122.
209. Weiskopf RB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:1035.
210. Philip BK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:623.
211. Kirkbride DA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1185.
212. Karthikeyan S, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:1114.
213. Lerman J. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2007;20:221.
214. Picard V, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44:307.
215. Ortiz AC, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;(2):CD009015.
216. Macario A, et al. *Am J Health Syst Pharm*. 2005;62:63.
217. Tarazi EM, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1998;10:272.
218. Ashworth J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:312.
219. Saros GB, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50:549.
220. McKay RE, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:175.
221. De Baerdemaeker LEC, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2006;16:728.
222. Tramèr M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:186.
223. Fernandez-Guisasola J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(4):379–387.
224. Peyton PJ, Wu CY. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(5):1137–1145.
225. Billingham S, Smith I. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2014;4(4):275–283.
226. Jakobson J. *Anaesthesia for day case surgery*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2009.
227. Stocker ME, Philip BK. Adult general anaesthesia. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Day Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011:63.
228. Coloma M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:352.
229. Shakir AAK, et al. *J One-day Surg*. 1997;6:10.
230. Chung F, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44:790.
231. Philip BK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:515.
232. Kim SH, et al. *Frontiers in Pharmacology*. 2014;5:108.
233. Yu EHY, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(11):1347–1362.
234. Echevarria G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(6):959–965.
235. Göröcs TS, et al. *Int J Clin Pract*. 2009;63:112.
236. Uysal HY, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2011;23:53.
237. Smith I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:540.
238. White PF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1633.
239. Collard V, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1255.
240. Moon YE, et al. *J Int Med Res*. 2011;39:1861.
241. Hwang W-J, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2013;24.
242. Singh PP, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:559.
243. White PF. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88:163.
244. Heerdt PM, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2015;28(4):403–410.
245. Fuchs-Buder T, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2012;25:217.
246. Kimura T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:378.
247. Woods AW, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:150.
248. Stevens JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:45.
249. Yu SH, et al. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2010;68:2359.
250. Mendels EJ, et al. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2012;138:257.
251. Abrishami A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57:1014.
252. Cook TM, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:739.
253. Cook TM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:436.
254. Maltby JR, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:857.
255. Belena JM, et al. *World J Gastrointest Surg*. 2015;7(11):319–325.
256. Nicholson A, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;9:CD010105.
257. Hohlrieder M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62:913.
258. Hohlrieder M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:576.
259. Carron M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:309.
260. Cook TM. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:149.
261. Jolliffe L, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2008;21:719.
262. Hernandez MR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:349.
263. Watson BJ, et al. *J One-day Surg*. 2003;12:59.
264. Despond O, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45:1106.
265. Zaric D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1811.
266. Watson B, et al. Spinal anesthesia. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Day Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011:79.
267. Vaghadia H. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45(suppl 1):R64.
268. Ben-David B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:560.
269. Nair GS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102:307.
270. Linares Gil MJ, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2009;197:182.
271. Bay-Nielsen M, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52:169.
272. Manassero A, Fanelli A. *Local and Regional Anesthesia*. 2017;10:15–24.
273. Goldblum E, Atchabahian A. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2013;57(5):545–552.
274. Camponovo C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:568.
275. Lacasse M-A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58:384.
276. Vaghadia H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56:217.
277. Boublik J, et al. *Anaesthesia Critical Care and Pain Medicine*. 2016;35(6):417–421.
278. Black AS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:183.
279. Mulroy MF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:860.
280. Neal JM, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26:35.

281. Stevens RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:492.
282. Cyna AM, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2008;4:CD003005.
283. Ansermino M, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2003;13:561.
284. Saadawy I, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53:251.
285. Brown EM, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36:307.
286. Niemi TT, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:640.
287. Simon MA, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1998;15:32.
288. Atanassoff PG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:627.
289. Peng PWH, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27:595.
290. Asik I, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21:401.
291. Chilvers CR, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44:1152.
292. Chan VW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1181.
293. Choyce A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:32.
294. Sen S, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:408.
295. Bigat Z, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:605.
296. Esmaoglu A, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22:447.
297. Memis D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:835.
298. Alayurt S, et al. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 2004;32:22.
299. Gupta A, Smith I. Local and regional anaesthesia. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Day Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011:93.
300. Griffin J, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(suppl 1):1.
301. Neal JM. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35(suppl 2):S59.
302. Møiniche S, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1999;24:430.
303. Scott NB. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(suppl 1):67.
304. Kark AE, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1998;186:447.
305. Kingsnorth AN, et al. *Ann R Coll Surg Eng*. 2003;85:18.
306. Kehlet H, et al. *Hernia*. 2008;12:507.
307. Kerr DR, et al. *Acta Orthop*. 2008;79:174.
308. Essving P, et al. *Acta Orthop*. 2009;80:213.
309. Andersen LØ, Kehlet H. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(3):360–374.
310. Pedersen JL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:912.
311. Weiniger CF, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67:906.
312. Golf M, et al. *Adv Ther*. 2011;28:776.
313. Bramlett K, et al. *Knee*. 2012;19:530.
314. Smoot JD, et al. *Aesthet Surg J*. 2012;32:69.
315. Minkowitz HS, et al. *Aesthet Surg J*. 2012;32:186.
316. Vyas KS, et al. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2016;138(4):748e–756e.
317. Wang K, Zhang HX. *Int J Surg*. 2017;46:61–70.
318. Kuang MJ, et al. *J Arthroplasty*. 2017;32(4):1395–1402.
319. Singh PM, et al. *J Arthroplasty*. 2017;32(2):675–688.
320. Liu SS, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2006;203(6):914–932.
321. Rodriguez-Navarro AJ, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2011;36:103.
322. Lobo K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(4):873–885.
323. Raeder J. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:704.
324. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Continuum of depth of sedation: definition of general anesthesia and levels of sedation/analgesia. Last amended on October 15, 2014; 2014. Available from http://www.asahq.org/sitecore/shell/~/media/sites/asahq/files/public/resources/standards-guidelines/continuum-of-depth-of-sedation-definition-of-general-anesthesia-and-levels-of-sedation-analgesia.pdf.
325. American Society of Anesthesiologists. ASA position on monitored anesthesia care. Last amended on October 16, 2013; 2013. Available from http://www.asahq.org/sitecore/shell/~/media/sites/asahq/files/public/resources/standards-guidelines/position-on-monitored-anesthesia-care.pdf.
326. Ahuja M, Armstrong I. Sedation. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Day Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011:109.
327. Bhananker SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:228.
328. Hug Jr CC. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:221.
329. Smith I. *J Clin Anesth*. 1996;8:76S.
330. Philip BK. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:97.
331. Richards A, et al. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Path*. 1993;76:408.
332. Smith I, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79:313.
333. Heuss LT, Inauen W. *Digestion*. 2004;69(1):20–26.
334. Royal College of Anaesthetists and British Society of Gastroenterology Joint Working Party. *Guidance for the Use of Propofol Sedation for Adult Patients Undergoing Endoscopic Retrograde Cholangiopancreatography (Ercp) and Other Complex Upper Gi Endoscopic Procedures*; 2011.
335. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Statement on safe use of propofol. Amended October 21, 2009; 2014. Available from http://www.asahq.org/sitecore/shell/~/media/sites/asahq/files/public/resources/standards-guidelines/statement-on-safe-use-of-propofol.pdf.
336. Vargo JJ, et al. *Gastroint Endosc*. 2009;70:1053.
337. Rex DK, et al. *Gastroenterology*. 2009;137:1229.
338. Berzin TM, et al. *Gastroint Endosc*. 2011;73:710.
339. Leslie K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(1):90–99.
340. Pergolizzi Jr JV, et al. *Anesthesiol Res Pract*. 2011;2011:458920.
341. Borkett KM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(4):771–780.
342. Dilger JA, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51:20.
343. Winton AL, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:932.
344. Berkenstadt H, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesth*. 2001;13:246.
345. Ryu J-H, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2008;20:328.
346. Sá Rêgo MM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:518.
347. Höhener D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100:8.
348. Frost EAM, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2007;20:331.
349. Badrinath S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:858.
350. Taylor E, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1992;4:213.
351. Nieuwenhuijs DJF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:312.
352. Avramov M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:1283.
353. Philip BK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71:371.
354. Ghouri AF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:333.
355. Smith I, et al. *Frontline Gastro*. 2018;9:185–191.
356. Casati A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46:235.
357. Ibrahim AE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1151.
358. Cheung CW, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:1302.
359. von Delius S, et al. *Endoscopy*. 2012;44:258.
360. Sakaguchi M, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2011;23:636.
361. Osborne GA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49:287.
362. Heuss LT, et al. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2004;99(3):511–518.
363. Philip JH, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:608.
364. Hartmann T, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42(suppl 112):221.
365. Ibrahim AE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:87.
366. Kalkman CJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:784.
367. Monk TG, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2011;24:665.
368. Wennervirta J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:72.
369. Liu SS. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:311.
370. Punjasawadwong Y, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2007;(4):CD003843.
371. Recart A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1667.
372. White PF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100:811.
373. Chhabra A, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;3:CD010135.
374. Drummond JC. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:876.
375. British Association of Day Surgery. *Recovery for day surgery units*. London. http://daysurgeryuk.net/en/shop/handbooks/recovery-for-day-surgery-units. (Accessed 07.05.14.).
376. Gift AG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:368.
377. Philip BK. Anesthesiologist as manager in the U.S.A: the ambulatory surgery experience. In: Gullo A, ed. *Anaesthesia, Pain, Intensive Care and Emergency Medicine*. Milano: Springer-Verlag; 1996:1003.
378. Aldrete JA. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7:89.
379. Imarengiaye CO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:511.
380. Apfelbaum JL. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45(5 suppl 1):R91.
381. Song D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:267.
382. White PF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:1069.
383. Apfelbaum JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:66.
384. Li S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1225.
385. Coloma M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:112.
386. Song D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:1245.
387. Ahmad S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:849.
388. Millar J. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:756.
389. Song D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:768.
390. Duncan PG, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48:630.
391. Philip BK. *J Clin Anesth*. 1992;4:355.
392. Wu CL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:994.
393. Fahmy N, et al. *Br J Pain*. 2016;10(2):84–89.
394. Schug SA, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2009;22:738.
395. Kehlet H. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1083.
396. Kehlet H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77:1048.
397. McCleane G. *J One-day Surg*. 2008;18:4.
398. Michaloliakou C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:44.
399. Eriksson H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40:151.
400. White PF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1380.
401. Gray A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:710.
402. White PF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:220.
403. Liu SS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:689.
404. Claxton AR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:509.
405. Koch S, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52:845.
406. Chye EP, et al. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 1993;51:846.

407. White PF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85:37.
408. Williams DG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:839.
409. Mattia C, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27:433.
410. Hippard HK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:356.
411. van de Donk T, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(2):231–237.
412. Chauvin M. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20(suppl 28):3.
413. Scott LJ, et al. *Drugs*. 2000;60:139.
414. Rawal N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:347.
415. Etropolski M, et al. *Adv Ther*. 2011;28:401.
416. Axelsson K, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:993.
417. Axelsson K, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47(8):993–1000.
418. Russon K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:869.
419. Dragoo JL, et al. *Am J Sport Med*. 2008;36:1484.
420. Wiater BP, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2011;93:615.
421. Piper SL, et al. *Am J Sport Med*. 2011;39:2245.
422. Capdevila X, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:414.
423. Remerand F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:2079.
424. Apfel CC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:693.
425. Sinclair DR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:109.
426. Apfel CC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:475.
427. Eberhart LH, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(3):155–159.
428. Gan TJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1615.
429. Apfel CC, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42:495.
430. Apfel CC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:742.
431. Dewinter G, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(1):156–163.
432. Kappen TH. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(1):9–13.
433. Apfel CC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:893.
434. Maharaj CH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:675.
435. Henzi I, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;83:761.
436. De Oliveira Jr GS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:688.
437. Wallenborn J, et al. *Br Med J*. 2006;333:324.
438. Gan TJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:287.
439. Schaub I, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29:286.
440. Foster PN, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1996;51:491.
441. Jackson I. *J One-day Surg*. 1999;8:14.
442. Lim BSL, et al. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1999;27:371.
443. Kranke P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46:238.
444. Forrester CM, et al. *AANA J*. 2007;75:27.
445. Pergolizzi Jr JV, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24:334.
446. Kotelko DM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:675.
447. Einarsson JI, et al. *J Min Invas Gynecol*. 2008;15:26.
448. Tang J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:274.
449. Tramèr MR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:1277.
450. Ho K-Y, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2006;19:606.
451. Rojas C, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2010;626:193.
452. Apfel CC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108:371.
453. De Oliveira Jr GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(1):58–74.
454. Wang JJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:136.
455. Diemunsch P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:7.
456. Gan TJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1082.
457. Soga T, et al. *J Anesth*. 2015;29(5):696–701.
458. Kakuta N, et al. *J Anesth*. 2015;29(6):836–841.
459. Gan TJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:804.
460. Yogendran S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:682.
461. Rothenberg DM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:58.
462. Schultz LS. *Int Surg*. 1994;79:273.
463. Prickett KK, et al. *Int Forum Allergy Rhinol*. 2012;2:207.
464. Vila Jr H, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138:1991.
465. Vila Jr H, et al. Office-based anesthesia. In: Twersky RS, Philip BK, eds. *Handbook of Ambulatory Anesthesia*. 2nd ed. New York: Springer; 2008:283.
466. Shapiro FE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(2):276–285.
467. Hoefflin SM, et al. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2001;107:243.
468. Twersky RS, et al. In: *Office-based anesthesia*, ed. *Considerations in Setting Up and Maintaining a Safe Office Anesthesia Environment*. Chicago: American Society of Anesthesiologists, Society for Ambulatory Anesthesia; 2008.
469. Desai MS. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2008;21:699.
470. Tang J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:253.
471. Tang J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:95.
472. Kolodzie K, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2009;22:532.
473. Shnaider I, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2006;19:622.
474. American Medical Association, American College of Surgeons. *B Am Coll Surg*. 2004;89(4):32–34.
475. Poswillo DE. *General Anaesthesia, Sedation and Resuscitation in Dentistry. Report of an Expert Working Party*. London: Standing Dental Advisory Committee, Department of Health; 1990.
476. James DW. *Br Dent J*. 1991;171:345.
477. Robbertze R, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2006;19:436.
478. Metzner J, et al. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2009;22:502.
479. Hammond C. Nursing care for advanced day surgery. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Day Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011:309.
480. Blandford CM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:1088.
481. Chung F, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7:500.
482. Mulroy MF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:315.
483. Pavlin DJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:42.
484. British Association of Day Surgery. *Nurse led discharge*. London; 2009. (Available from http://www.bads.co.uk).
485. Gabalski EC, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 1996;106(77).
486. Ovesen T, et al. *Dan Med J*. 2012;59:A4382.
487. Kalantar N, et al. *Int J Pediatr Otorhin*. 2006;70:2103.
488. Jaensson M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(5):1030–1038.
489. Dahlberg K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(5):1039–1046.
490. Daniels SA, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2016;211(5):963–967.
491. American Society of Anesthesiologists Committee on Ambulatory Surgical Care and the Task Force on Office-Based Anesthesia. *Outcome indicators for office-based and ambulatory surgery*. Chicago: American Society of Anesthesiologists; 2003.
492. Lemos P, Regalado AM. Patient outcomes and clinical indicators for ambulatory surgery. In: Lemos P, Jarrett P, Philip B, eds. *Day Surgery, Development and Practice*. Porto, Portugal: International Association for Ambulatory Surgery; 2006:257.
493. Australian Council on Healthcare Standards. Equipment and clinical indicators: *Day Surgery*. 2012.
494. Lemos P, Barros F. Outcome measures. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Day Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2011:335.
495. Benn J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109:80.
496. Tarazi EM, et al. *Am J Anesthesiol*. 1998;25:154.

References

1. Nicoll JH. The surgery of infancy. *Br Med J*. 1909;2:753–754.
2. Waters RM. The downtown anesthesia clinic. *Am J Surg (Anesthesia supplement)*. 1919;33:71–73.
3. Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I. An overview of ambulatory surgery. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day case surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:1–11.
4. Reed WA, Ford JL. Development of an independent outpatient surgical center. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1976;14(2):113–130.
5. Philip BK. A history of the society for ambulatory anesthesia. *Amb Surg*. 1993;1(2):77–79.
6. Twersky RS, Philip BK, eds. *Handbook of Ambulatory Anesthesia*. 2nd ed. New York: Springer; 2008.
7. Toftgaard C. Day surgery activities 2009. International survey on ambulatory surgery conducted 2011. *Amb Surg*. 2012;17(3):53–63.
8. Ogg TW. Preface. In: Lemos P, Jarrett P, Philip B, eds. *Day surgery development and practice*. Porto: International Association for Ambulatory Surgery; 2006:15–19.
9. NHS England. 2016/17 National Tariff Payment System. 2017. Available from. https://http://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/509697/2016-17_National_Tariff_Payment_System.pdf.
10. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Guidelines for ambulatory anesthesia and surgery; 2013. Reaffirmed October 16, 2013. Available from http://www.asahq.org/sitecore/shell/~/media/sites/asahq/files/public/resources/standards-guidelines/guidelines-for-ambulatory-anesthesia-and-surgery.pdf.
11. Philip BK. Starting up a hospital-based ambulatory surgery program. *Successful Management of Ambulatory Surgery Programs*. Vol. II. Atlanta: American Health Consultants; 1985:167–184.
12. Fehrmann K, Matthews CM, Stocker ME. Day surgery in different guises: a comparison of outcomes. *J One-day Surg*. 2009;19(2):39–47.
13. Junger A, Klasen J, Benson M, et al. Factors determining length of stay of surgical day-case patients. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2001;18:314–321.
14. Tewfik MA, Frenkiel S, Gasparrini R, et al. Factors affecting unanticipated hospital admission following otolaryngologic day surgery. *J Otolaryngol*. 2006;35(4):235–241.
15. British Association of Day Surgery. *BADS Directory of Procedures*. 5th ed. London; 2016. Available from. http://www.bads.co.uk.
16. Trondsen E, Mjaland O, Raeder J, Buanes T. Day-case laparoscopic fundoplication for gastro-oesophageal reflux disease. *Br J Surg*. 2000;87:1708–1711.
17. Thiel J, Gamelin A. Outpatient total laparoscopic hysterectomy. *J Am Assoc Gynecol Laparosc*. 2003;10(4):481–483.
18. Ilie CP, Luscombe CJ, Smith I, et al. Day case laparoscopic nephrectomy. *J Endourol*. 2011;25(4):631–634.
19. Ilie CP, Luscombe CJ, Smith I, et al. Routine day case laparoscopic pyeloplasty — a paradigm shift? *J Endourol*. 2011;25(5):797–801.
20. Abboudi H, Doyle P, Winkler M. Day case laparoscopic radical prostatectomy. *Arch Ital Urol Androl*. 2017;89(3):182–185.
21. Watkins BM, Montgomery KF, Ahroni JH, et al. Adjustable gastric banding in an ambulatory surgery center. *Obes Surg*. 2005;15:1045–1049.
22. Bradley B, Middleton S, Davis N, et al. Discharge on the day of surgery following unicompartmental knee arthroplasty within the United Kingdom NHS. *Bone Joint J*. 2017;99-B(6):788–792.
23. Berger RA, Sanders SA, Thill ES, et al. Newer anesthesia and rehabilitation protocols enable outpatient hip replacement in selected patients. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2009;467(6):1424–1430.
24. Larsen JR, Skovgaard B, Pryno T, et al. Feasibility of day-case total hip arthroplasty: a single-centre observational study. *Hip International*. 2017;27(1):60–65.
25. McCarty TM, Arnold DT, Lamont JP, et al. Optimizing outcomes in bariatric surgery: outpatient laparoscopic gastric bypass. *Ann Surg*. 2005;242(4):494–498.
26. Blanshard HJ, Chung F, Manninen PH, et al. Awake craniotomy for removal of intracranial tumor: considerations for early discharge. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(1):89–94.
27. Au K, Bharadwaj S, Venkatraghavan L, Bernstein M. Outpatient brain tumor craniotomy under general anesthesia. *J Neurosurg*. 2016;125(5):1130–1135.
28. Goettel N, Chui J, Venkatraghavan L, et al. Day surgery craniotomy for unruptured cerebral aneurysms: a single center experience. *J Neurosurg Anesth*. 2014;26(1):60–64.
29. Hotchen AJ, Coleman G, O'Callaghan JM, McWhinnie D. Safe and sustainable increases in day case emergency surgery. *Br J Hosp Med*. 2016;77(3):180–183.
30. Bettocchi S, Ceci O, Di Venere R, et al. Advanced operative office hysteroscopy without anaesthesia: analysis of 501 cases treated with a 5 Fr. bipolar electrode. *Human Reprod*. 2002;17(9):2435–2438.
31. Moralee SJ, Murray JAM. Would day-case adult tonsillectomy be safe? *J Laryngol Otol*. 1995;109:1166–1167.
32. Bennett AMD, Clark AB, Bath AP, Montgomery PQ. Meta-analysis of the timing of haemorrhage after tonsillectomy: an important factor in determining the safety of performing tonsillectomy as a day case procedure. *Clin Otolaryngol*. 2005;30(5):418–423.
33. Steckler RM. Outpatient thyroidectomy: a feasibility study. *Am J Surg*. 1986;152(4):417–419.
34. Rajeev P, Sadler GP. Thyroid and parathyroid surgery. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:241–254.
35. Stavrakis AI, Ituarte PH, Ko CY, Yeh MW. Surgeon volume as a predictor of outcomes in inpatient and outpatient endocrine surgery. *Surgery*. 2007;142(6):887–899.
36. Hisham AN. Day care thyroid surgery: The way of the future. *J One-day Surg*. 2006;16(1):13–15.
37. Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I. Developing day surgery. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:345–354.
38. Brown H. Breast surgery. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day case surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:199–206.
39. Cordeiro E, Jackson T, Cil T. Same-day major breast cancer surgery is safe: an analysis of short-term outcomes using NSQIP data. *Annals of Surgical Oncology*. 2016;23(8):2480–2486.
40. Lermitte J, Chung F. Patient selection in ambulatory surgery. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2005;18:598–602.
41. Fleisher LA, Pasternak LR, Lyles A. A novel index of elevated risk of inpatient hospital admission immediately following outpatient surgery. *Arch Surg*. 2007;142:263–268.
42. Warner MA, Shields SE, Chute CG. Major morbidity and mortality within 1 month of ambulatory surgery and anesthesia. *JAMA*. 1993;270(12):1437–1441.
43. Ansell GL, Montgomery JE. Outcome of ASA III patients undergoing day case surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(1):71–74.
44. Engbaek J, Bartholdy J, Hjortsø NC. Return hospital visits and morbidity within 60 days after day surgery: a retrospective study of 18,736 day surgical procedures. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50(7):911–919.
45. Majholm B, Engbaek J, Bartholdy J, et al. Is day surgery safe? A Danish multicentre study of morbidity after 57,709 day surgery procedures. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56(3):323–331.
46. Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland, British Association of Day Surgery, Verma R, et al. Day case and short stay surgery: 2. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(5):417–434.
47. Smith I, Jakobsson J. Selection criteria. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day case surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:41–50.
48. Davies KE, Houghton K, Montgomery JE. Obesity and day-case surgery. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56(11):1112–1115.
49. Joshi GP, Ahmad S, Riad W, et al. Selection of obese patients undergoing ambulatory surgery: a systematic review of the literature. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;117(5):1082–1091.
50. Ankichetty S, Chung F. Considerations for patients with obstructive sleep apnea undergoing ambulatory surgery. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2011;24:605–611.
51. Raeder J. Bariatric procedures as day/short stay surgery: is it possible and reasonable? *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2007;20(6):508–512.
52. Chung F, Subramanyam R, Liao P, et al. High STOP-Bang score indicates a high probability of obstructive sleep apnoea. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(5):768–775.
53. Chung F, Memtsoudis SG, Ramachandran SK, et al. Society of Anesthesia and Sleep Medicine guidelines on preoperative screening and assessment of adult patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(2):452–473.
54. Youshani AS, Thomas L, Sharma RK. Day case tonsillectomy for the treatment of obstructive sleep apnoea syndrome in children: Alder Hey experience. *Int J Pediatr Otorhin*. 2011;75(2):207–210.

55. Fleisher LA, Pasternak LR, Herbert R, Anderson GF. Inpatient hospital admission and death after outpatient surgery in elderly patients: importance of patient and system characteristics and location of care. *Arch Surg*. 2004;139(1):67–72.
56. Chung F, Mezei G, Tong D. Adverse events in ambulatory surgery. A comparison between elderly and younger patients. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46(4):309–321.
57. Chung F, Mezei G, Tong D. Pre-existing medical conditions as predictors of adverse events in day-case surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83(2):262–270.
58. Aldwinckle RJ, Montgomery JE. Unplanned admission rates and post discharge complications in patients over the age of 70 following day case surgery. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59(1):57–59.
59. Canet J, Raeder J, Rasmussen LS, et al. Cognitive dysfunction after minor surgery in the elderly. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47(10):1204–1210.
60. Rasmussen LS, Steinmetz J. Ambulatory anaesthesia and cognitive dysfunction. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2015;28(6):631–635.
61. Coté CJ, Zaslavsky A, Downes JJ, et al. Postoperative apnea in former preterm infants after inguinal herniorrhaphy. A combined analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(4):809–822.
62. Fisher DM. When is the ex-premature infant no longer at risk for apnea? (Editorial). *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(4):807–808.
63. Bryson GL, Chung F, Cox RG, et al. Patient selection in ambulatory anesthesia — an evidence-based review: Part II. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51(8):782–794.
64. Short J, Bew S. Paediatric day surgery. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery (Oxford Specialist Handbooks)*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:161–197.
65. Henderson-Smart DJ, Steer P. Prophylactic caffeine to prevent postoperative apnea following general anesthesia in preterm infants. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2001;4:CD000048.
66. Williams JM, Stoddart PA, Williams SA, Wolf AR. Post-operative recovery after inguinal herniotomy in ex-premature infants: comparison between sevoflurane and spinal anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86(3):366–371.
67. Sale SM, Read JA, Stoddart PA, Wolf AR. Prospective comparison of sevoflurane and desflurane in formerly premature infants undergoing inguinal herniotomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96(6):774–778.
68. Howell SJ, Sear JW, Foëx P. Hypertension, hypertensive heart disease and perioperative cardiac risk. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(4):570–583.
69. Eagle KA, Berger PB, Calkins H, et al. ACC/AHA Guideline update for perioperative cardiovascular evaluation for noncardiac surgery — executive summary: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*. 2002;105:1257–1267.
70. Hartle A, McCormack T, Carlisle J, et al. The measurement of adult blood pressure and management of hypertension before elective surgery: joint guidelines from the Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland and the British Hypertension Society. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(3):326–337.
71. Carlisle J. Too much blood pressure? (Editorial). *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(7):773–778.
72. Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: executive summary: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;130(24):2215–2245.
73. Fleisher LA, Beckman JA, Brown KA, et al. ACC/AHA 2007 guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and care for noncardiac surgery: executive summary. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;50(17):1707–1732.
74. Smith I, Jackson I. Beta-blockers, calcium channel blockers, angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors and angiotensin receptor blockers: should they be stopped or not before ambulatory anaesthesia? *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2010;23:687–690.
75. Roshanov PS, Rochwerg B, Patel A, et al. Withholding versus continuing angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors or angiotensin II receptor blockers before noncardiac surgery: an analysis of the Vascular events In noncardiac Surgery patIents cOhort evaluatioN prospective cohort. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(1):16–27.
76. Chassot PG, Delabays A, Spahn DR. Preoperative evaluation of patients with, or at risk of, coronary artery disease undergoing noncardiac surgery (Review). *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(5):747–759.
77. Girish M, Trayner E, Damman O, et al. Symptom-limited stair climbing as a predictor of postoperative cardiopulmonary complications after high-risk surgery. *Chest*. 2001;120:1147–1151.
78. Sweitzer BJ. Preoperative screening, evaluation, and optimization of the patient's medical status before outpatient surgery. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2008;21(6):711–718.
79. Daniels PR. Peri-procedural management of patients taking oral anticoagulants. *Br Med J*. 2015;351(8018):27–30.
80. Grines CL, Bonow RO, Casey Jr DE, et al. Prevention of premature discontinuation of dual antiplatelet therapy in patients with coronary artery stents: a science advisory from the American Heart Association, American College of Cardiology, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, American College of Surgeons, and American Dental Association, with representation from the American College of Physicians. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;49(6):734–739.
81. Fogg KJ, Saunders PRI. Folly! The long distance day surgery patient. *Amb Surg*. 1995;3(4):209–210.
82. Cheng CJC, Smith I, Watson BJ. A multicentre telephone survey of compliance with post-operative instructions. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(8):805–811.
83. Chung F, Imasogie N, Ho J, et al. Frequency and implications of ambulatory surgery without a patient escort. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(10):1022–1026.
84. Chung F, Assmann N. Car accidents after ambulatory surgery in patients without an escort. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106(3):817–820.
85. Carlisle JB, Stocker ME. Preoperative assessment. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:51–62.
86. Fraczyk L, Godfrey H. Perceived levels of satisfaction with the preoperative assessment service experienced by patients undergoing general anaesthesia in a day surgery setting. *J Clin Nurs*. 2010;19(19–20):2849–2859.
87. Law TT, Suen DTK, Tam YF, et al. Telephone pre-anaesthesia assessment for ambulatory breast surgery. *Hong Kong Med J*. 2009;15(3):179–182.
88. Parker BM, Tetzlaff JE, Litaker DL, Maurer WG. Redefining the preoperative evaluation process and the role of the anesthesiologist. *J Clin Anesth*. 2000;12(5):350–356.
89. Bettelli G. Anaesthesia for the elderly outpatient: preoperative assessment and evaluation, anaesthetic technique and postoperative pain management. (Review). *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2010;23(6):726–731.
90. Burden N. Discharge planning for the elderly ambulatory surgical patient. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2004;19(6):401–405.
91. British Association of Day Surgery. *Organisational Issues in Pre Operative Assessment for Day Surgery*. London; 2010. Available from http://www.bads.co.uk.
92. Varughese AM, Byczkowski TL, Wittkugel EP, et al. Impact of a nurse practitioner-assisted preoperative assessment program on quality. *Paed Anaesth*. 2006;16(7):723–733.
93. Kinley H, Czoski-Murray C, George S, et al. Effectiveness of appropriately trained nurses in preoperative assessment: randomised controlled equivalence/non-inferiority trial. *Br Med J*. 2002;325(7376):1323.
94. Edward GM, de Haes JCJM, Oort FJ, et al. Setting priorities for improving the preoperative assessment clinic: the patients' and the professionals' perspective. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(3):322–326.
95. Edward GM, Das SF, Elkhuizen SG, et al. Simulation to analyse planning difficulties at the preoperative assessment clinic. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(2):195–202.
96. Arvidsson S. Preparation of adult patients for anaesthesia and surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40(8 Part 2):962–970.
97. Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery (Oxford Specialist Handbook Series)*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012.
98. Loxdale SJ, Sneyd JR, Donovan A, et al. The role of routine pre-operative bedside echocardiography in detecting aortic stenosis in patients with a hip fracture. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(1):51–54.
99. Mueller PS, Barnes RD, Varghese R, et al. The safety of electroconvulsive therapy in patients with severe aortic stenosis. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2007;82:1360–1363.
100. Klein AA, Arrowsmith JE. Should routine pre-operative testing be abandoned? (Editorial). *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(10):974–976.
101. American Society of Anesthesiologists Committee on Standards and Practice Parameters, Apfelbaum JL, Connis RT, et al. Practice advisory for preanesthesia evaluation: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on preanesthesia evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):522–538.

102. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Routine preoperative tests for elective surgery. NICE guideline [NG45]. 2016. April 2016, Available from http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng45/resources.
103. Dzankic S, Pastor D, Gonzalez C, Leung JM. The prevalence and predictive value of abnormal preoperative laboratory tests in elderly surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(2):301–308.
104. van Klei WA, Bryson GL, Yang H, et al. The value of routine preoperative electrocardiography in predicting myocardial infarction after noncardiac surgery. *Ann Surg*. 2007;246(2):165–170.
105. Chung F, Yuan H, Yin L, et al. Elimination of preoperative testing in ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(2):467–475.
106. Matthey P, Finucane BT, Finegan BA. The attitude of the general public towards preoperative assessment and risks associated with general anesthesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48(4):333–339.
107. Edward GM, Naald NVD, Oort FJ, et al. Information gain in patients using a multimedia website with tailored information on anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(3):319–324.
108. British Association of Day Surgery. *Managing Patients With Diabetes for Day and Short Stay Surgery*. 3rd ed. 2011. London; 2011. Available from. http://www.bads.co.uk.
109. Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland. Peri-operative management of the surgical patient with diabetes 2015. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(12):1427–1440.
110. Sehgal A, Hall JE. Herbal medicines--harmless or harmful? *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(10):947–948.
111. Lee A, Chui PT, Aun CST, et al. Incidence and risk of adverse perioperative events among surgical patients taking traditional Chinese herbal medicines. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105(3):454–461.
112. Hogg LA, Foo I. Management of patients taking herbal medicines in the perioperative period: a survey of practice and policies within anaesthetic departments in the United Kingdom. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27(1):11–15.
113. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Practice guidelines for preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration: application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(3): 376–393.
114. Smith I, Kranke P, Murat I, et al. Perioperative fasting in adults and children: guidelines from the european society of anaesthesiology. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28:556–569.
115. Maltby JR, Pytka S, Watson NC, et al. Drinking 300 mL of clear fluid two hours before surgery has no effect on gastric fluid volume and pH in fasting and non-fasting obese patients. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51(2):111–115.
116. Cook-Sather SD, Gallagher PR, Kruge LE, et al. Overweight/obesity and gastric fluid characteristics in pediatric day surgery: implications for fasting guidelines and pulmonary aspiration risk. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(3):727–736.
117. Søreide E, Eriksson LI, Hirlekar G, et al. Pre-operative fasting guidelines: an update. (Review). *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(8): 1041–1047.
118. Engelhardt T, Wilson G, Horne L, et al. Are you hungry? Are you thirsty?— fasting times in elective outpatient pediatric patients. *Paed Anaesth*. 2011;21(9):964–968.
119. Crenshaw JT. Preoperative fasting: will the evidence ever be put into practice? *Am J Nurs*. 2011;111(10):38–43.
120. Kyrtatos PG, Constandinou N, Loizides S, Mumtaz T. Improved patient education facilitates adherence to preoperative fasting guidelines. *J Periop Practice*. 2014;24(10):228–231.
121. Hillyard S, Cowman S, Ramasundaram R, et al. Does adding milk to tea delay gastric emptying? *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112(1):66–71.
122. Okabe T, Terashima H, Sakamoto A. Determinants of liquid gastric emptying: comparisons between milk and isocalorically adjusted clear fluids. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114(1):77–82.
123. Larsen B, Larsen LP P, Sivesgaard K, Juul S. Black or white coffee before anaesthesia? Gastric volume measured by MRI. A randomised crossover trial. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33:1–6.
124. McCracken GC, Montgomery J. Postoperative nausea and vomiting after unrestricted clear fluids before day surgery. A retrospective analysis. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2018;35(5):337–342.
125. Ouanes J-PP, Bicket MC, Togioka B, et al. The role of perioperative chewing gum on gastric fluid volume and gastric pH: a meta-analysis. *J Clin Anesth*. 2015;27(2):146–152.
126. Poulton TJ. Gum chewing during pre-anesthetic fasting. *Paed Anaesth*. 2012;22(3):288–296.
127. Doze VA, White PF. Effects of fluid therapy on serum glucose levels in fasted outpatients. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(2):223–226.
128. Fawcett WJ, Ljungqvist O. Starvation, carbohydrate loading, and outcome after major surgery (Review). *BJA Education*. 2017;17(9):312–316.
129. Carroll JK, Cullinan E, Clarke L, Davis NF. The role of anxiolytic premedication in reducing preoperative anxiety. *Br J Nurs*. 2012;21(8):479–483.
130. Segerdahl M, Warren-Stomberg M, Rawal N, et al. Clinical practice and routines for day surgery in Sweden: results from a nation-wide survey. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52(1):117–124.
131. Walker KJ, Smith AF. Premedication for anxiety in adult day surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2009;4:CD002192.
132. Soltner C, Giquello JA, Monrigal-Martin C, Beydon L. Continuous care and empathic anaesthesiologist attitude in the preoperative period: impact on patient anxiety and satisfaction. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(5):680–686.
133. Hargreaves J. Benzodiazepine premedication in minor day-case surgery: comparison of oral midazolam and temazepam with placebo. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61(5):611–616.
134. De Witte JL, Alegret C, Sessler DI, Cammu G. Preoperative alprazolam reduces anxiety in ambulatory surgery patients: a comparison with oral midazolam. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(6): 1601–1606.
135. Bauer KP, Dom PM, Ramirez AM, O'Flaherty JE. Preoperative intravenous midazolam: benefits beyond anxiolysis. *J Clin Anesth*. 2004;16(3):177–183.
136. van Vlymen JM, Sa Rego MM, White PF. Benzodiazepine premedication: can it improve outcome in patients undergoing breast biopsy procedures? *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(3):740–747.
137. Ko YP, Huang CJ, Hung YC, et al. Premedication with low-dose oral midazolam reduces the incidence and severity of emergence agitation in pediatric patients following sevoflurane anesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Sinica*. 2001;39(4):169–177.
138. Horgesheimer JJ, Pribble CG, Lugo RA. The effect of midazolam premedication on discharge time in pediatric patients undergoing general anesthesia for dental restorations. *Pediatr Dentistry*. 2001;23(6):491–494.
139. Viitanen H, Annila P, Viitanen M, Tarkkila P. Premedication with midazolam delays recovery after ambulatory sevoflurane anesthesia in children. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(1):75–79.
140. Bevan JC, Veall GR, Macnab AJ, et al. Midazolam premedication delays recovery after propofol without modifying involuntary movements. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(1):50–54.
141. Golden L, Pagala M, Sukhavasi S, et al. Giving toys to children reduces their anxiety about receiving premedication for surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(4):1070–1072.
142. Vagnoli L, Caprilli S, Messeri A. Parental presence, clowns or sedative premedication to treat preoperative anxiety in children: what could be the most promising option? *Paed Anaesth*. 2010;20(10): 937–943.
143. Rice M, Glasper A, Keeton D, Spargo P. The effect of a preoperative education programme on perioperative anxiety in children: an observational study. *Paed Anaesth*. 2008;18(5):426–430.
144. Lee J, Lee J, Lim H, et al. Cartoon distraction alleviates anxiety in children during induction of anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(5):1168–1173.
145. Mifflin KA, Hackmann T, Chorney JM. Streamed video clips to reduce anxiety in children during inhaled induction of anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(5):1162–1167.
146. Chartrand J, Tourigny J, MacCormick J. The effect of an educational pre-operative DVD on parents' and children's outcomes after a same-day surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *J Adv Nurs*. 2017;73(3):599–611.
147. Binstock W, Rubin R, Bachman C, et al. The effect of premedication with OTFC, with or without ondansetron, on postoperative agitation, and nausea and vomiting in pediatric ambulatory patients. *Paed Anaesth*. 2004;14(9):759–767.
148. Smith I. Alpha-2-agonists in day case anaesthesia. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2011;24:644–648.

149. Dahmani S, Stany I, Brasher C, et al. Pharmacological prevention of sevoflurane- and desflurane-related emergence agitation in children: a meta-analysis of published studies. (Review). *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(2):216–223.
150. Jöhr M. Clonidine in paediatric anaesthesia. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28:325–326.
151. Brett CN, Barnett SG, Pearson J. Postoperative plasma paracetamol levels following oral or intravenous paracetamol administration: a double-blind randomised controlled trial. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 2012;40(1):166–171.
152. Ong CKS, Lirk P, Seymour RA, Jenkins BJ. The efficacy of preemptive analgesia for acute postoperative pain management: a meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):757–773.
153. Ochroch EA, Mardini IA, Gottschalk A. What is the role of NSAIDs in pre-emptive analgesia? *Drugs*. 2003;63(24):2709–2723.
154. White PF, Kehlet H, Liu S. Perioperative analgesia: what do we still know? (Editorial). *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(4):1364–1367.
155. Gan TJ, Joshi GP, Zhao SZ, et al. Presurgical intravenous parecoxib sodium and follow-up oral valdecoxib for pain management after laparoscopic cholecystectomy surgery reduces opioid requirements and opioid-related adverse effects. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2004;48(9):1194–1207.
156. Turan I, Hein A, Jacobson E, Jakobsson JG. Sevoflurane requirement during elective ankle day surgery: the effects of etirocoxib premedication, a prospective randomised study. *J Orthopaed Surg*. 2008;3:40.
157. Joshi A, Parara E, Macfarlane TV. A double-blind randomised controlled clinical trial of the effect of preoperative ibuprofen, diclofenac, paracetamol with codeine and placebo tablets for relief of postoperative pain after removal of impacted third molars. *Brit J Oral Max Surg*. 2004;42(4):299–306.
158. Kaeding C, Pedroza A, Sharkey J. Comparison of efficacy of oral rofecoxib and ketorolac in controlling early postoperative outpatient orthopedic surgical pain. *Am J Orthoped*. 2004;33(10):510–513.
159. Mixter 3rd CG, Meeker LD, Gavin TJ. Preemptive pain control in patients having laparoscopic hernia repair: a comparison of ketorolac and ibuprofen. *Arch Surg*. 1998;133(4):432–437.
160. Yong SL, Coulthard P. Pain after surgery: can protective analgesia reduce pain? A randomised clinical trial. *Int J Surg*. 2010;8(4):283–289.
161. Pickering AE, Bridge HS, Nolan J, Stoddart PA. Double-blind, placebo-controlled analgesic study of ibuprofen or rofecoxib in combination with paracetamol for tonsillectomy in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(1):72–77.
162. Louizos AA, Pandazi AB, Koraka CP, et al. Preoperative administration of rofecoxib versus ketoprofen for pain relief after tonsillectomy. *Ann Oto Rhinol Laryngol*. 2006;115(3):201–204.
163. Power I. An update on analgesics. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(1):19–24.
164. Kowalski ML, Makowska J. Use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs in patients with aspirin hypersensitivity : safety of cyclo-oxygenase-2 inhibitors. *Treatments Resp Med*. 2006;5(6):399–406.
165. Jokela R, Ahonen J, Valjus M, et al. Premedication with controlled-release oxycodone does not improve management of postoperative pain after day-case gynaecological laparoscopic surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(2):255–260.
166. Jokela R, Ahonen J, Tallgren M, et al. Premedication with pregabalin 75 or 150 mg with ibuprofen to control pain after day-case gynaecological laparoscopic surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(6):834–840.
167. Peng PWH, Li C, Farcas E, et al. Use of low-dose pregabalin in patients undergoing laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(2):155–161.
168. Tramèr MR, Glynn CJ. An evaluation of a single dose of magnesium to supplement analgesia after ambulatory surgery: randomized controlled trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(6):1374–1379.
169. De Oliveira Jr GS, Ahmad S, Fitzgerald PC, et al. Dose ranging study on the effect of preoperative dexamethasone on postoperative quality of recovery and opioid consumption after ambulatory gynaecological surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(3):362–371.
170. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Greenberg SB, et al. Preoperative dexamethasone enhances quality of recovery after laparoscopic cholecystectomy: effect on in-hospital and postdischarge recovery outcomes. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(4):882–890.
171. Kehlet H. Bay Nielsen M: Anaesthetic practice for groin hernia repair — a nation-wide study in Denmark 1998–2003. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(2):143–146.
172. British Association of Day Surgery. *Spinal anaesthesia for day surgery patients*. London; 2010. Available from http://www.bads.co.uk.
173. Korhonen A-M. Use of spinal anaesthesia in day surgery. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2006;19(6):612–616.
174. Förster JG, Rosenberg PH. Revival of old local anesthetics for spinal anesthesia in ambulatory surgery. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2011;24(6):633–637.
175. Sahinovic MM, Absalom AR, Struys MMRF. Administration and monitoring of intravenous anesthetics. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2010;23(6):734–740.
176. Lloyd S. General anaesthesia for day surgery: preventing the problems. *Curr Anaesth Crit Care*. 2007;18:188–192.
177. Doenicke A, Roizen MF, Nebauer AE, et al. A comparison of two formulations for etomidate, 2-hydroxypropyl-ß-cyclodextrin (HPCD) and propylene glycol. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(5):933–939.
178. Bloomfield R, Noble DW. Etomidate and fatal outcome — even a single bolus dose may be detrimental for some patients (letter). *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97(1):116–117.
179. Sneyd JR, Rigby-Jones AE. New drugs and technologies, intravenous anaesthesia is on the move (again). *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(3):246–254.
180. Trudell JR, Bertaccini E, Maciver MB. Special article: teaching an old GABA receptor new tricks. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(2):270–273.
181. Vlassakov KV, Kissin I. Decline in the development of new anesthetics. *Trends Pharmacol Sci*. 2016;37(5):344–352.
182. Smith I, White PF, Nathanson M, Gouldson R. Propofol: an update on its clinical use. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(4):1005–1043.
183. Jalota L, Kalira V, George E, et al. Prevention of pain on injection of propofol: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br Med J*. 2011;342:d1110.
184. Mallick A, Elliot SC, Krishnan K, Vucevic M. Lidocaine is more efficient than the choice of propofol formulations to reduce incidence of pain on induction. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007;24(5):403–407.
185. Win NN, Kohase H, Yoshikawa F, et al. Haemodynamic changes and heart rate variability during midazolam-propofol co-induction. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(6):561–568.
186. Ong LB, Plummer JL, Waldow WC, Owen H. Timing of midazolam and propofol administration for co-induction of anaesthesia. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 2000;28(5):527–531.
187. Tighe KE, Warner JA. The effect of co-induction with midazolam upon recovery from propofol infusion anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52(10):1000–1004.
188. Ang S, Cheong KF, Ng TI. Alfentanil co-induction for laryngeal mask insertion. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1999;27(2):175–178.
189. Goyagi T, Tanaka M, Nishikawa T. Fentanyl decreases propofol requirement for laryngeal mask airway insertion. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47(6):771–774.
190. Smith I, Walley G, Bridgman S. Omitting fentanyl reduces nausea and vomiting, without increasing pain, after sevoflurane for day surgery. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2008;25(10):790–799.
191. Rosenblum M, Weller RS, Conard PL, et al. Ibuprofen provides longer lasting analgesia than fentanyl after laparoscopic surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73(3):255–259.
192. Sukhani R, Vazquez J, Pappas AL, et al. Recovery after propofol with and without intraoperative fentanyl in patients undergoing ambulatory gynecologic laparoscopy. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83(5):975–981.
193. Anderson L, Robb H. A comparison of midazolam co-induction with propofol predosing for induction of anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 1998;53(11):1117–1120.
194. Djaiani G, Ribes-Pastor MP. Propofol auto-co-induction as an alternative to midazolam co-induction for ambulatory surgery. *Anaesthesia*. 1999;54(1):63–67.
195. Ghatge S, Lee J, Smith I. Sevoflurane: an ideal agent for adult day-case anaesthesia? *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47(8):917–931.
196. Gupta A, Stierer T, Zuckerman R, et al. Comparison of recovery profile after ambulatory anesthesia with propofol, isoflurane, sevoflurane and desflurane: a systematic review. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(3):632–641.
197. Goswami U, Babbar S, Tiwari S. Comparative evaluation of the effects of propofol and sevoflurane on cognitive function and memory in patients undergoing laparoscopic cholecystectomy: a randomised prospective study. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2015;59(3):150–155.
198. Geng YJ, Wu QH, Zhang RQ. Effect of propofol, sevoflurane, and isoflurane on postoperative cognitive dysfunction following laparoscopic cholecystectomy in elderly patients: a randomized controlled trial. *J Clin Anesth*. 2017;38:165–171.

199. Tramèr M, Moore A, McQuay H. Propofol anaesthesia and postoperative nausea and vomiting: quantitative systemic review of randomized controlled studies. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(3):247–255.
200. Apfel CC, Korttila K, Abdalla M, et al. A factorial trial of six interventions for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *NEJM*. 2004;350:2441–2451.
200A. Schaefer MS, Kranke P, Weibel S, et al. Total intravenous anaesthesia versus single-drug pharmacological antiemetic prophylaxis in adults. A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33(10):750–760.
201. Kumar G, Stendall C, Mistry R, et al. A comparison of total intravenous anaesthesia using propofol with sevoflurane or desflurane in ambulatory surgery: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(10):1138–1150.
202. Leslie K, Clavisi O, Hargrove J. Target-controlled infusion versus manually-controlled infusion of propofol for general anaesthesia or sedation in adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2008;3:CD006059.
203. Chen G, Buell O, Gruenewald M, et al. A comparison between target-controlled and manually controlled propofol infusions in patients undergoing routine surgical procedures. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26(11):928–935.
204. Absalom AR, Mani V, De Smet T, Struys MMRF. Pharmacokinetic models for propofol — defining and illuminating the devil in the detail. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(1):26–37.
205. Coetzee JF. Total intravenous anaesthesia to obese patients: largely guesswork? *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26:359–361.
206. Cortinez LI, De la Fuente N, Eleveld DJ, et al. Performance of propofol target-controlled infusion models in the obese: pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(2):302–310.
207. Ebert TJ, Muzi M, Lopatka CW. Neurocirculatory responses to sevoflurane in humans. A comparison to desflurane. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(1):88–95.
208. Doi M, Ikeda K. Airway irritation produced by volatile anaesthetics during brief inhalation: comparison of halothane, enflurane, isoflurane and sevoflurane. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40(2):122–126.
209. Weiskopf RB, Moore MA, Eger II EI, et al. Rapid increase in desflurane concentration is associated with greater transient cardiovascular stimulation than with rapid increase in isoflurane concentration in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(5):1035–1045.
210. Philip BK, Lombard LL, Roaf ER, et al. Comparison of vital capacity induction with sevoflurane to intravenous induction with propofol for adult ambulatory anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):623–627.
211. Kirkbride DA, Parker JL, Williams GD, Buggy DJ. Induction of anesthesia in the elderly ambulatory patient: a double-blind comparison of propofol and sevoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(5):1185–1187.
212. Karthikeyan S, Balachandran S, Cort J, et al. Anaesthesia for cardioversion: a comparison of sevoflurane and propofol. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(11):1114–1119.
213. Lerman J. Inhalation agents in pediatric anaesthesia — an update. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2007;20(3):221–226.
214. Picard V, Dumont L, Pellegrini M. Quality of recovery in children: sevoflurane versus propofol. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44(3):307–310.
215. Ortiz AC, Atallah AN, Matos D, da Silva EM. Intravenous versus inhalational anaesthesia for paediatric outpatient surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;2:CD009015.
216. Macario A, Dexter F, Lubarsky D. Meta-analysis of trials comparing postoperative recovery after anesthesia with sevoflurane or desflurane. *Am J Health-Syst Pharm*. 2005;62(1):63–68.
217. Tarazi EM, Philip BK. A comparison of recovery after sevoflurane or desflurane in ambulatory anesthesia. *J Clin Anesth*. 1998;10:272–277.
218. Ashworth J, Smith I. Comparison of desflurane with isoflurane or propofol in spontaneously breathing ambulatory patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(2):312–318.
219. Saros GB, Doolke A, Anderson RE, Jakobsson JG. Desflurane vs. sevoflurane as the main inhaled anaesthetic for spontaneous breathing via a laryngeal mask for varicose vein day surgery: a prospective randomized study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50(5):549–552.
220. McKay RE, Malhotra A, Cakmakkaya OS, et al. Effect of increased body mass index and anaesthetic duration on recovery of protective airway reflexes after sevoflurane vs desflurane. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(2):175–182.
221. De Baerdemaeker LEC, Jacobs S, Den Blauwen NMM, et al. Postoperative results after desflurane or sevoflurane combined with remifentanil in morbidly obese patients. *Obes Surg*. 2006;16(6):728–733.
222. Tramèr M, Moore A, McQuay H. Omitting nitrous oxide in general anaesthesia: meta-analysis of intraoperative awareness and postoperative emesis in randomized controlled trials. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76(2):186–193.
223. Fernandez-Guisasola J, Gomez-Arnau JI, Cabrera Y, del Valle SG. Association between nitrous oxide and the incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting in adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(4):379–387.
224. Peyton PJ, Wu CY. Nitrous oxide–related postoperative nausea and vomiting depends on duration of exposure. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(5):1137–1145.
225. Billingham S, Smith I. Role of nitrous oxide in ambulatory anaesthesia. *Curr Anesthesiol Rep*. 2014;4(4):275–283.
226. Jakobsson J. *Anaesthesia for Day Case Surgery*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2009.
227. Stocker ME, Philip BK. Adult general anaesthesia. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:63–77.
228. Coloma M, Chiu JW, White PF, Armbruster SC. The use of esmolol as an alternative to remifentanil during fast-track outpatient gynecologic laparoscopic surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(2):352–357.
229. Shakir AAK, Ramachandra V, Hasan MA. Day surgery postoperative nausea and vomiting at home related to peroperative fentanyl. *J One-day Surg*. 1997;6(3):10–11.
230. Chung F, Mulier J-P, Scholz J, et al. A comparison of anaesthesia using remifentanil combined with either isoflurane, enflurane or propofol in patients undergoing gynaecological laparoscopy, varicose vein or arthroscopic surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44(7):790–798.
231. Philip BK, Scuderi PE, Chung F, et al. Remifentanil compared with alfentanil for ambulatory surgery using total intravenous anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(3):515–521.
232. Kim SH, Stoicea N, Soghomonyan S, Bergese SD. Intraoperative use of remifentanil and opioid induced hyperalgesia/acute opioid tolerance: systematic review. *Frontiers in Pharmacology*. 2014;5:108.
233. Yu EHY, Tran DHD, Lam SW, Irwin MG. Remifentanil tolerance and hyperalgesia: short-term gain, long-term pain? (Review). *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(11):1347–1362.
234. Echevarria G, Elgueta F, Fierro C, et al. Nitrous oxide (N_2O) reduces postoperative opioid-induced hyperalgesia after remifentanil-propofol anaesthesia in humans. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;107(6):959–965.
235. Göröcs TS, Lambert M, Rinne T, et al. Efficacy and tolerability of ready-to-use intravenous paracetamol solution as monotherapy or as an adjunct analgesic therapy for postoperative pain in patients undergoing elective ambulatory surgery: open, prospective study. *Int J Clin Pract*. 2009;63(1):112–120.
236. Uysal HY, Takmaz SA, Yaman F, et al. The efficacy of intravenous paracetamol versus tramadol for postoperative analgesia after adenotonsillectomy in children. *J Clin Anesth*. 2011;23(1):53–57.
237. Smith I, Van Hemelrijck J, White PF. Efficacy of esmolol versus alfentanil as a supplement to propofol-nitrous oxide anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73(5):540–546.
238. White PF, Wang B, Tang J, et al. The effect of intraoperative use of esmolol and nicardipine on recovery after ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(6):1633–1638.
239. Collard V, Mistraletti G, Taqi A, et al. Intraoperative esmolol infusion in the absence of opioids spares postoperative fentanyl in patients undergoing ambulatory laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(5):1255–1262.
240. Moon YE, Hwang WJ, Koh HJ, et al. The sparing effect of low-dose esmolol on sevoflurane during laparoscopic gynaecological surgery. *J Int Med Res*. 2011;39(5):1861–1869.
241. Hwang W-J, Moon Y-E, Cho S-J, Lee J. The effect of a continuous infusion of low-dose esmolol on the requirement for remifentanil during laparoscopic gynecologic surgery. *J Clin Anesth*. 2013;25(1):36–41.
242. Singh PP, Dimich I, Sampson I, Sonnenklar N. A comparison of esmolol and labetalol for the treatment of perioperative hypertension in geriatric ambulatory surgical patients. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39(6):559–562.

243. White PF. Rapacuronium: why did it fail as a replacement for succinylcholine? (Editorial). *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(2):163–165.
244. Heerdt PM, Sunaga H, Savarese JJ. Novel neuromuscular blocking drugs and antagonists (Review). *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2015;28(4):403–410.
245. Fuchs-Buder T, Meistelman C, Schreiber JU. Is sugammadex economically viable for routine use? *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2012;25(2):217–220.
246. Kimura T, Watanabe S, Asakura N, et al. Determination of end-tidal sevoflurane concentration for tracheal intubation and minimum alveolar anesthetic concentration in adults. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(2):378–381.
247. Woods AW, Allam S. Tracheal intubation without the use of neuromuscular blocking agents. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94(2):150–158.
248. Stevens JB, Wheatley L. Tracheal intubation in ambulatory surgery patients: using remifentanil and propofol without muscle relaxants. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(1):45–49.
249. Yu SH, Beirne OR. Laryngeal mask airways have a lower risk of airway complications compared with endotracheal intubation: a systematic review. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2010;68(10):2359–2376.
250. Mendels EJ, Brunings JW, Hamaekers AEW, et al. Adverse laryngeal effects following short-term general anesthesia: a systematic review. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2012;138(3):257–264.
251. Abrishami A, Zilberman P, Chung F. Brief review: airway rescue with insertion of laryngeal mask airway devices with patients in the prone position. *Can J Anaesth*. 2010;57(11):1014–1020.
252. Cook TM, Lee G, Nolan JP. The ProSeal laryngeal mask airway: a review of the literature. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(7):739–760.
253. Cook TM, Gibbison B. Analysis of 1000 consecutive uses of the ProSeal laryngeal mask airway by one anaesthetist at a district general hospital. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(3):436–439.
254. Maltby JR, Beriault MT, Watson NC, et al. The LMA-ProSeal is an effective alternative to tracheal intubation for laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49(8):857–862.
255. Belena JM, Ochoa EJ, Nunez M, et al. Role of laryngeal mask airway in laparoscopic cholecystectomy (Review). *World J Gastrointest Surg*. 2015;7(11):319–325.
256. Nicholson A, Cook TM, Smith AF, et al. Supraglottic airway devices versus tracheal intubation for airway management during general anaesthesia in obese patients. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;9:CD010105.
257. Hohlrieder M, Brimacombe J, Eschertzhuber S, et al. A study of airway management using the ProSeal LMA laryngeal mask airway compared with the tracheal tube on postoperative analgesia requirements following gynaecological laparoscopic surgery. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(9):913–918.
258. Hohlrieder M, Brimacombe J, von Goedecke A, Keller C. Postoperative nausea, vomiting, airway morbidity, and analgesic requirements are lower for the ProSeal laryngeal mask airway than the tracheal tube in females undergoing breast and gynaecological surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99(4):576–580.
259. Carron M, Veronese S, Gomiero W, et al. Hemodynamic and hormonal stress responses to endotracheal tube and ProSeal laryngeal mask airway™ for laparoscopic gastric banding. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(2):309–320.
260. Cook TM. The classic laryngeal mask airway: a tried and tested airway. What now? *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96(2):149–152.
261. Jolliffe L, Jackson I. Airway management in the outpatient setting: new devices and techniques. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2008;21(6):719–722.
262. Hernandez MR, Klock Jr PA, Ovassapian A. Evolution of the extraglottic airway: a review of its history, applications, and practical tips for success. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(2):349–368.
263. de Montblanc J, Ruscio L, Mazoit JX, Benhamou D. A systematic review and meta-analysis of the i-gel vs laryngeal mask airway in adults. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;69(10):1151–1162.
264. Despond O, Meuret P, Hemmings G. Postdural puncture headache after spinal anaesthesia in young orthopaedic outpatients using 27-g needles. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45(11):1106–1109.
265. Zaric D, Christiansen C, Pace NL, Punjasawadwong Y. Transient neurologic symptoms after spinal anesthesia with lidocaine versus other local anesthetics: a systematic review of randomized, controlled trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(6):1811–1816.
266. Watson B, Allen J. Spinal anesthesia. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:79–91.
267. Vaghadia H. Spinal anaesthesia for outpatients: controversies and new techniques. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45(1, Suppl):R64–R75.
268. Ben-David B, Solomon E, Levin H, et al. Intrathecal fentanyl with small–dose dilute bupivacaine: better anesthesia without prolonging recovery. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(3):560–565.
269. Nair GS, Abrishami A, Lermitte J, Chung F. Systematic review of spinal anaesthesia using bupivacaine for ambulatory knee arthroscopy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(3):307–315.
270. Linares Gil MJ, Esteve Gomez A, Blanco Vargas D, et al. Factors associated with delayed postsurgical voiding interval in ambulatory spinal anesthesia patients: a prospective cohort study in 3 types of surgery. *Am J Surg*. 2009;197(2):182–188.
271. Bay-Nielsen M, Kehlet H. Anaesthesia and post-operative morbidity after elective groin hernia repair: a nation-wide study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52(2):169–174.
272. Manassero A, Fanelli A. Prilocaine hydrochloride 2% hyperbaric solution for intrathecal injection: a clinical review. *Local Reg Anesth*. 2017;10:15–24.
273. Goldblum E, Atchabahian A. The use of 2-chloroprocaine for spinal anaesthesia (Review). *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2013;57(5):545–552.
274. Camponovo C, Fanelli A, Ghisi D, et al. A prospective, double-blinded, randomized, clinical trial comparing the efficacy of 40 mg and 60 mg hyperbaric 2% prilocaine versus 60 mg plain 2% prilocaine for intrathecal anesthesia in ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(2):568–572.
275. Lacasse M-A, Roy J-D, Forget J, et al. Comparison of bupivacaine and 2-chloroprocaine for spinal anesthesia for outpatient surgery: a double-blind randomized trial. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58(4):384–391.
276. Vaghadia H, Neilson G, Lennox PH. Selective spinal anesthesia for outpatient transurethral prostatectomy (TURP): randomized controlled comparison of chloroprocaine with lidocaine. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2012;56(2):217–223.
277. Boublik J, Gupta R, Bhar S, Atchabahian A. Prilocaine spinal anesthesia for ambulatory surgery: a review of the available studies. *Anaesth Crit Care Pain Med*. 2016;35(6):417–421.
278. Black AS, Newcombe GN, Plummer JL, et al. Spinal anaesthesia for ambulatory arthroscopic surgery of the knee: a comparison of low-dose prilocaine and fentanyl with bupivacaine and fentanyl. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(2):183–188.
279. Mulroy MF, Larkin KL, Hodgson PS, et al. A comparison of spinal, epidural, and general anesthesia for outpatient knee arthroscopy. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(4):860–864.
280. Neal JM, Deck JJ, Kopacz DJ, Lewis MA. Hospital discharge after ambulatory knee arthroscopy: a comparison of epidural 2-chloroprocaine versus lidocaine. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26(1):35–40.
281. Stevens RA, Urmey WF, Urquhart BL, Kao TC. Back pain after epidural anesthesia with chloroprocaine. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(3):492–497.
282. Cyna AM, Middleton P. Caudal epidural block versus other methods of postoperative pain relief for circumcision in boys. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2008;4:CD003005.
283. Ansermino M, Basu R, Vandebeek C, Montgomery C. Nonopioid additives to local anaesthetics for caudal blockade in children: a systematic review. (Review). *Paed Anaesth*. 2003;13(7):561–573.
284. Saadawy I, Boker A, Elshahawy MA, et al. Effect of dexmedetomidine on the characteristics of bupivacaine in a caudal block in pediatrics. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(2):251–256.
285. Brown EM, McGriff JT, Malinowski RW. Intravenous regional anaesthesia (Bier block): review of 20 years' experience. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36(3):307–310.
286. Niemi TT, Neuvonen PJ, Rosenberg PH. Comparison of ropivacaine 2 mg ml^{-1} and prilocaine 5 mg ml^{-1} for i.v. regional anaesthesia in outpatient surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96(5):640–644.
287. Simon MA, Gielen MJ, Vree TB, Booij LH. Disposition of lignocaine for intravenous regional anaesthesia during day-case surgery. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 1998;15(1):32–37.
288. Atanassoff PG, Ocampo CA, Bande MC, et al. Ropivacaine 0.2% and lidocaine 0.5% for intravenous regional anesthesia in outpatient surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(3):627–631.
289. Peng PWH, Coleman MM, McCartney CJL, et al. Comparison of anesthetic effect between 0.375% ropivacaine versus 0.5% lidocaine in forearm intravenous regional anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27(6):595–599.
290. Asik I, Kocum AI, Goktug A, et al. Comparison of ropivacaine 0.2% and 0.25% with lidocaine 0.5% for intravenous regional anesthesia. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21(6):401–407.

291. Chilvers CR, Kinahan A, Vaghadia H, Merrick PM. Pharmacoeconomics of intravenous regional anaesthesia vs general anaesthesia for outpatient hand surgery. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44(11): 1152–1156.
292. Chan VW, Peng PW, Kaszas Z, et al. A comparative study of general anesthesia, intravenous regional anesthesia, and axillary block for outpatient hand surgery: clinical outcome and cost analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(5):1181–1184.
293. Choyce A, Peng P. A systematic review of adjuncts for intravenous regional anesthesia for surgical procedures. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49(1):32–45.
294. Sen S, Ugur B, Aydin ON, et al. The analgesic effect of lornoxicam when added to lidocaine for intravenous regional anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97(3):408–413.
295. Bigat Z, Boztug N, Hadimioglu N, et al. Does dexamethasone improve the quality of intravenous regional anesthesia and analgesia? A randomized, controlled clinical study. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(2): 605–609.
296. Esmaoglu A, Mizrak A, Akin A, et al. Addition of dexmedetomidine to lidocaine for intravenous regional anaesthesia. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;22(6):447–451.
297. Memis D, Turan A, Karamanlioglu B, et al. Adding dexmedetomidine to lidocaine for intravenous regional anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(3):835–840.
298. Alayurt S, Memis D, Pamukcu Z. The addition of sufentanil, tramadol or clonidine to lignocaine for intravenous regional anaesthesia. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 2004;32:22–27.
299. Gupta A, Smith I. Local and regional anaesthesia. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day case surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:93–108.
300. Griffin J, Nicholls B. Ultrasound in regional anaesthesia (Review). *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(Suppl s1):1–12.
301. Neal JM. Ultrasound-guided regional anesthesia and patient safety: update of an evidence-based analysis. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(2):195–204.
302. Møiniche S, Mikkelsen S, Wetterslev J, Dahl JB. A systematic review of intra-articular local anesthesia for postoperative pain relief after arthroscopic knee surgery (Review). *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1999;24:430–437.
303. Scott NB. Wound infiltration for surgery. (Review). *Anaesthesia*. 2010;65(Suppl s1):67–75.
304. Kark AE, Kurzer MN, Belsham PA, Neumayer L. Three thousand one hundred seventy-five primary inguinal hernia repairs: advantages of ambulatory open mesh repair using local anesthesia. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1998;186:447–456.
305. Kingsnorth AN, Bowley DMG, Porter C. A prospective study of 1000 hernias: results of the Plymouth Hernia Service. *Ann R Coll Surg Eng*. 2003;85(1):18–22.
306. Kehlet H, Bay-Nielsen M. Local anaesthesia as a risk factor for recurrence after groin hernia repair. *Hernia*. 2008;12(5):507–509.
307. Kerr DR, Kohan L. Local infiltration analgesia: a technique for the control of acute postoperative pain following knee and hip surgery: a case study of 325 patients. *Acta Orthopaedica*. 2008;79(2): 174–183.
308. Essving P, Axelsson K, Kjellberg J, et al. Reduced hospital stay, morphine consumption, and pain intensity with local infiltration analgesia after unicompartmental knee arthroplasty. *Acta Orthopaedica*. 2009;80(2):213–219.
309. Andersen LØ, Kehlet H. Analgesic efficacy of local infiltration analgesia in hip and knee arthroplasty: a systematic review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(3):360–374.
310. Pedersen JL, Lilleso J, Hammer NA, et al. Bupivacaine in microcapsules prolongs analgesia after subcutaneous infiltration in humans: a dose-finding study. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(3):912–918.
311. Weiniger CF, Golovanevski L, Domb AJ, Ickowicz D. Extended release formulations for local anaesthetic agents. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(8):906–916.
312. Golf M, Daniels SE, Onel E. A phase 3, randomized, placebo-controlled trial of DepoFoam® bupivacaine (extended-release bupivacaine local analgesic) in bunionectomy. *Adv Ther*. 2011;28(9):776–788.
313. Bramlett K, Onel E, Viscusi ER, Jones K. A randomized, double-blind, dose-ranging study comparing wound infiltration of DepoFoam bupivacaine, an extended-release liposomal bupivacaine, to bupivacaine HCl for postsurgical analgesia in total knee arthroplasty. *Knee*. 2012;19(5):530–536.
314. Smoot JD, Bergese SD, Onel E, et al. The efficacy and safety of DepoFoam bupivacaine in patients undergoing bilateral, cosmetic, submuscular augmentation mammaplasty: a randomized, double-blind, active-control study. *Aesthet Surg J*. 2012;32(1):69–76.
315. Minkowitz HS, Onel E, Patronella CK, Smoot JD. A two-year observational study assessing the safety of DepoFoam bupivacaine after augmentation mammaplasty. *Aesthet Surg J*. 2012;32(2):186–193.
316. Vyas KS, Rajendran S, Morrison SD, et al. Systematic review of liposomal bupivacaine (Exparel) for postoperative analgesia. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2016;138(4):748e–756e.
317. Wang K, Zhang HX. Liposomal bupivacaine versus interscalene nerve block for pain control after total shoulder arthroplasty: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Int J Surg*. 2017;46(61–70).
318. Kuang MJ, Du Y, Ma JX, et al. The efficacy of liposomal bupivacaine using periarticular injection in total knee arthroplasty: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Arthroplasty*. 2017;32(4):1395–1402.
319. Singh PM, Borle A, Trikha A, et al. Role of periarticular liposomal bupivacaine infiltration in patients undergoing total knee arthroplasty—a meta-analysis of comparative trials. *J Arthroplasty*. 2017;32(2):675–688.
320. Liu SS, Richman JM, Thirlby RC, Wu CL. Efficacy of continuous wound catheters delivering local anesthetic for postoperative analgesia: a quantitative and qualitative systematic review of randomized controlled trials. (Review). *J Am Coll Surg*. 2006;203(6): 914–932.
321. Rodriguez-Navarro AJ, Berde CB, Wiedmaier G, et al. Comparison of neosaxitoxin versus bupivacaine via port infiltration for postoperative analgesia following laparoscopic cholecystectomy: a randomized, double-blind trial. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2011;36(2): 103–109.
322. Lobo K, Donado C, Cornelissen L, et al. A phase 1, dose-escalation, double-blind, block-randomized, controlled trial of safety and efficacy of neosaxitoxin alone and in combination with 0.2% bupivacaine, with and without epinephrine, for cutaneous anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(4):873–885.
323. Raeder J. Opioid or propofol: what kind of drug for what kind of sedation? Manual dosing or target-controlled infusion? *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(3):704–706.
324. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Continuum of depth of sedation: definition of general anesthesia and levels of sedation/analgesia; 2014. Last amended on October 15, 2014. Available from http://www.asahq.org/sitecore/shell/~/media/sites/asahq/files/public/resources/standards-guidelines/continuum-of-depth-of-sedation-definition-of-general-anesthesia-and-levels-of-sedation-analgesia.pdf.
325. American Society of Anesthesiologists. ASA position on monitored anesthesia care; 2013. Last amended on October 16, 2013. Available from http://www.asahq.org/sitecore/shell/~/media/sites/asahq/files/public/resources/standards-guidelines/position-on-monitored-anesthesia-care.pdf.
326. Ahuja M, Armstrong I. Sedation. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012: 109–132.
327. Bhananker SM, Posner KL, Cheney FW, et al. Injury and liability associated with monitored anesthesia care: a closed claims analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(2):228–234.
328. Hug Jr CC. MAC should stand for maximum anesthesia caution, not minimal anesthesiology care (editorial). *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(2):221–223.
329. Smith I. Monitored anesthesia care: how much sedation, how much analgesia? *J Clin Anesth*. 1996;8:76S–80S.
330. Philip BK. Hazards of amnesia after midazolam in ambulatory surgical patients (letter). *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(1):97–98.
331. Richards A, Griffiths M, Scully C. Wide variation in patient response to midazolam sedation for outpatient oral surgery. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Path*. 1993;76:408–411.
332. Smith I, Monk TG, White PF, Ding Y. Propofol infusion during regional anesthesia: sedative, amnestic and anxiolytic properties. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(2):313–319.
333. Heuss LT, Inauen W. The dawning of a new sedative: propofol in gastrointestinal endoscopy (Review). *Digestion*. 2004;69(1):20–26.
334. Royal College of Anaesthetists and British Society of Gastroenterology joint working party. *Guidance for the Use of Propofol Sedation for Adult Patients Undergoing Endoscopic Retrograde Cholangiopancreatography (Ercp) and Other Complex Upper Gi Endoscopic Procedures*; 2011.

335. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Statement on safe use of propofol; 2014 Amended October 21, 2009. Available from http://www.asahq.org/sitecore/shell/~/media/sites/asahq/files/public/resources/standards-guidelines/statement-on-safe-use-of-propofol.pdf.
336. Vargo JJ, Cohen LB, Rex DK, Kwo PY. Position statement: nonanesthesiologist administration of propofol for GI endoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2009;70(6):1053–1059.
337. Rex DK, Deenadayalu VP, Eid E, et al. Endoscopist-directed administration of propofol: a worldwide safety experience. (Review). *Gastroenterology*. 2009;137(4):1229–1237.
338. Berzin TM, Sanaka S, Barnett SR, et al. A prospective assessment of sedation-related adverse events and patient and endoscopist satisfaction in ERCP with anesthesiologist-administered sedation. *Gastrointest Endosc*. 2011;73(4):710–717.
339. Leslie K, Allen ML, Hessian EC, et al. Safety of sedation for gastrointestinal endoscopy in a group of university-affiliated hospitals: a prospective cohort study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(1):90–99.
340. Pergolizzi Jr JV, Gan TJ, Plavin S, et al. Perspectives on the role of fospropofol in the monitored anesthesia care setting. *Anesthesiol Res Pract*. 2011;2011:458920.
341. Borkett KM, Riff DS, Schwartz HI, et al. A Phase IIa, randomized, double-blind study of remimazolam (CNS 7056) versus midazolam for sedation in upper gastrointestinal endoscopy. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(4):771–780.
342. Dilger JA, Sprung J, Maurer W, Tetzlaff J. Remifentanil provides better analgesia than alfentanil during breast biopsy surgery under monitored anesthesia care. *Can J Anaesth*. 2004;51(1):20–24.
343. Winton AL, Eastwood J, Powell MC, Norris AM. An evaluation of conscious sedation using propofol and remifentanil for tension-free vaginal tape insertion. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63(9):932–937.
344. Berkenstadt H, Perel A, Hadani M, et al. Monitored anesthesia care using remifentanil and propofol for awake craniotomy. *J Neurosurg Anesth*. 2001;13(3):246–249.
345. Ryu J-H, Kim J-H, Park K-S, Do S-H. Remifentanil-propofol versus fentanyl-propofol for monitored anesthesia care during hysteroscopy. *J Clin Anesth*. 2008;20(5):328–332.
346. Sá Rêgo MM, Inagaki Y, White PF. Remifentanil administration during monitored anesthesia care: are intermittent boluses an effective alternative to a continuous infusion? *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(3):518–522.
347. Höhener D, Blumenthal S, Borgeat A. Sedation and regional anaesthesia in the adult patient. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;100(1):8–16.
348. Frost EAM, Booij LHDJ. Anesthesia in the patient for awake craniotomy. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2007;20(4):331–335.
349. Badrinath S, Avramov MN, Shadrick M, et al. The use of a ketamine-propofol combination during monitored anesthesia care. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(4):858–862.
350. Taylor E, Ghouri AF, White PF. Midazolam in combination with propofol for sedation during local anesthesia. *J Clin Anesth*. 1992;4(3):213–216.
351. Nieuwenhuijs DJF, Olofsen E, Romberg RR, et al. Response surface modeling of remifentanil-propofol interaction on cardiorespiratory control and bispectral index. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(2):312–322.
352. Avramov M, Smith I, White PF. Interactions between midazolam and remifentanil during monitored anesthesia care. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(6):1283–1289.
353. Philip BK, Simpson TH, Hauch MA, Mallampati SR. Flumazenil reverses sedation after midazolam-induced general anesthesia in ambulatory surgery patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;71(4):371–376.
354. Ghouri AF, Ramirez Ruiz MA, White PF. Effect of flumazenil on recovery after midazolam and propofol sedation. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(2):333–339.
355. Smith I, Durkin D, Lau KW, Hebbar S. Establishing an Anaesthetist-Delivered Propofol Sedation Service for Advanced Endoscopic Procedures: Implementing the RCA/BSG Guidelines. *Frontline Gastro*. 2018;9:185–191.
356. Casati A, Fanelli G, Casaletti E, et al. Clinical assessment of target-controlled infusion of propofol during monitored anesthesia care. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46(3):235–239.
357. Ibrahim AE, Taraday JK, Kharasch ED. Bispectral index monitoring during sedation with sevoflurane, midazolam, and propofol. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(5):1151–1159.
358. Cheung CW, Irwin MG, Chiu WK, Ying CLA. A study to assess the value of bispectral analysis in intravenous sedation with midazolam during third molar surgery under local anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63(12):1302–1308.
359. von Delius S, Salletmaier H, Meining A, et al. Bispectral index monitoring of midazolam and propofol sedation during endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography: a randomized clinical trial (the EndoBIS study). *Endoscopy*. 2012;44(3):258–264.
360. Sakaguchi M, Higuchi H, Maeda S, Miyawaki T. Dental sedation for patients with intellectual disability: a prospective study of manual control versus bispectral index-guided target-controlled infusion of propofol. *J Clin Anesth*. 2011;23(8):636–642.
361. Osborne GA, Rudkin GE, Jarvis DA, et al. Intra-operative patient-controlled sedation and patient attitude to control. A crossover comparison of patient preference for patient-controlled propofol and propofol by continuous infusion. *Anaesthesia*. 1994;49(4):287–292.
362. Heuss LT, Drewe J, Schnieper P, et al. Patient-controlled versus nurse-administered sedation with propofol during colonoscopy. A prospective randomized trial. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2004;99(3): 511–518.
363. Philip JH, Meyers TP, Philip BK. Inhalation sedation / analgesia with sevoflurane (letter). *J Clin Anesth*. 1997;9:608–609.
364. Hartmann T, Hoerauf K, Zavrski A, et al. Light to moderate sedation with sevoflurane during spinal anesthesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42(Suppl 112):221–222.
365. Ibrahim AE, Ghoneim MM, Kharasch ED, et al. Speed of recovery and side-effect profile of sevoflurane sedation compared with midazolam. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(1):87–94.
366. Kalkman CJ, Drummond JC. Monitors of depth of anesthesia, *Quo Vadis?* (Editorial). *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(4):784–787.
367. Monk TG, Weldon BC. Does depth of anesthesia monitoring improve postoperative outcomes? *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2011;24(6): 665–669.
368. Wennervirta J, Ranta SOV, Hynynen M. Awareness and recall in outpatient anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(1):72–77.
369. Liu SS. Effects of bispectral index monitoring on ambulatory anesthesia: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials and a cost analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(2):311–315.
370. Punjasawadwong Y, Phongchiewboon A, Bunchungmongkol N. Bispectral index for improving anaesthetic delivery and postoperative recovery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;6:CD003843.
371. Recart A, Gasanova I, White PF, et al. The effect of cerebral monitoring on recovery after general anesthesia: a comparison of the auditory evoked potential and bispectral index devices with standard clinical practice. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(6):1667–1674.
372. White PF, Ma H, Tang J, et al. Does the use of electroencephalographic bispectral index or auditory evoked potential index monitoring facilitate recovery after desflurane anesthesia in the ambulatory setting? *Anesthesiology*. 2004;100(4):811–817.
373. Chhabra A, Subramaniam R, Srivastava A, et al. Spectral entropy monitoring for adults and children undergoing general anaesthesia. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;3:CD010135.
374. Drummond JC. Monitoring depth of anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(3):876–882.
375. British Association of Day Surgery. *Recovery for day surgery units*. London; 2007. Available from http://www.bads.co.uk.
376. Gift AG, Stanik J, Karpenick J, et al. Oxygen saturation in postoperative patients at low risk for hypoxemia: is oxygen therapy needed? *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80(2):368–372.
377. Philip BK. Anesthesiologist as manager in the U.S.A: the ambulatory surgery experience. In: Gullo A, ed. *Anaesthesia, Pain, Intensive Care and Emergency Medicine*. Milano: Springer-Verlag; 1996: 1003–1011.
378. Aldrete JA. The post-anesthesia recovery score revisited (letter). *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7:89–91.
379. Imarengiaye CO, Song D, Prabhu AJ, Chung F. Spinal anesthesia: functional balance is impaired after clinical recovery. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(2):511–515.
380. Apfelbaum JL. Bypassing PACU, a cost effective measure. *Can J Anaesth*. 1998;45(1, Suppl):R91–92.
381. Song D, Joshi GP, White PF. Fast-track eligibility after ambulatory anesthesia: a comparison of desflurane, sevoflurane, and propofol. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(2):267–273.
382. White PF, Song D. New criteria for fast-tracking after outpatient anesthesia: a comparison with the modified Aldrete's scoring system. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(5):1069–1072.
383. Apfelbaum JL, Walawander CA, Grasela TH, et al. Eliminating intensive postoperative care in same-day surgery patients using short-acting anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(1):66–74.

384. Li S, Coloma M, White PF, et al. Comparison of the costs and recovery profiles of three anesthetic techniques for ambulatory anorectal surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(4):1225–1230.
385. Coloma M, Zhou T, White PF, et al. Fast-tracking after outpatient laparoscopy: reasons for failure after propofol, sevoflurane, and desflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(1):112–115.
386. Song D, van Vlymen J, White PF. Is the bispectral index useful in predicting fast-track eligibility after ambulatory anesthesia with propofol and desflurane? *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(6):1245–1248.
387. Ahmad S, Yilmaz M, RMarcus R-J, et al. Impact of bispectral index monitoring on fast tracking of gynecologic patients undergoing laparoscopic surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(4):849–852.
388. Millar J. Fast-tracking in day surgery. Is your journey to the recovery room really necessary? (Editorial). *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93(6):756–758.
389. Song D, Chung F, Ronayne M, et al. Fast-tracking (bypassing the PACU) does not reduce nursing workload after ambulatory surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93(6):768–774.
390. Duncan PG, Shandro J, Bachand R, Ainsworth L. A pilot study of recovery room bypass ("fast-track protocol") in a community hospital. *Can J Anaesth*. 2001;48(7):630–636.
391. Philip BK. Patient's assessment of ambulatory anesthesia and surgery. *J Clin Anesth*. 1992;4:355–358.
392. Wu CL, Berenholtz SM, Pronovost PJ, Fleisher LA. Systematic review and analysis of postdischarge symptoms after outpatient surgery (Review). *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(4):994–1003.
393. Fahmy N, Siah J, Umo-Etuk J. Patient compliance with postoperative analgesia after day case surgery: a multisite observational study of patients in North East London. *British Journal of Pain*. 2016;10(2):84–89.
394. Schug SA, Chong C. Pain management after ambulatory surgery. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2009;22(6):738–743.
395. Kehlet H. Postoperative opioid sparing to hasten recovery: what are the issues? (Editorial). *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(6):1083–1085.
396. Kehlet H, Dahl JB. The value of "multimodal" or "balanced analgesia" in postoperative pain treatment (Review). *Anesth Analg*. 1993;77(5):1048–1056.
397. McCleane G. Novel approaches to postoperative analgesia for day case surgery: a review. *J One-day Surg*. 2008;18(1):4–8.
398. Michaloliakou C, Chung F, Sharma S. Preoperative multimodal analgesia facilitates recovery after ambulatory laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82(1):44–51.
399. Eriksson H, Tenhunen A, Korttila K. Balanced analgesia improves recovery and outcome after outpatient tubal ligation. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1996;40(2):151–155.
400. White PF, Kehlet H, Neal JM, et al. The role of the anesthesiologist in fast-track surgery: from multimodal analgesia to perioperative medical care. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(6):1380–1396.
401. Gray A, Kehlet H, Bonnet F, Rawal N. Predicting postoperative analgesia outcomes: NNT league tables or procedure-specific evidence? *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94(6):710–714.
402. White PF, Kehlet H. Improving postoperative pain management: what are the unresolved issues? *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(1):220–225.
403. Liu SS, Wu CL. Effect of postoperative analgesia on major postoperative complications: a systematic update of the evidence. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(3):689–702.
404. Claxton AR, McGuire G, Chung F, Cruise C. Evaluation of morphine *versus* fentanyl for postoperative analgesia after ambulatory surgical procedures. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(3):509–514.
405. Koch S, Ahlburg P, Spangsberg N, et al. Oxycodone vs. fentanyl in the treatment of early post-operative pain after laparoscopic cholecystectomy: a randomised double-blind study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52(6):845–850.
406. Chye EP, Young IG, Osborne GA, Rudkin GE. Outcomes after same-day oral surgery: a review of 1,180 cases at a major teaching hospital. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 1993;51(8):846–849.
407. White PF, Joshi GP, Carpenter RL, Fragen RJ. A comparison of oral ketorolac and hydrocodone-acetaminophen for analgesia after ambulatory surgery: arthroscopy versus laparoscopic tubal ligation. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(1):37–43.
408. Williams DG, Patel A, Howard RF. Pharmacogenetics of codeine metabolism in an urban population of children and its implications for analgesic reliability. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(6):839–845.
409. Mattia C, Coluzzi F, Sonnino D, Anker-Moller E. Efficacy and safety of fentanyl HCl iontophoretic transdermal system compared with morphine intravenous patient-controlled analgesia for postoperative pain management for patient subgroups. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2010;27(5):433–440.
410. Hippard HK, Govindan K, Friedman EM, et al. Postoperative analgesic and behavioral effects of intranasal fentanyl, intravenous morphine, and intramuscular morphine in pediatric patients undergoing bilateral myringotomy and placement of ventilating tubes. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(2):356–363.
411. van de Donk T, Ward S, Langford R, Dahan A. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of sublingual sufentanil for postoperative pain management (Review). *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73(2):231–237.
412. Chauvin M. State of the art of pain treatment following ambulatory surgery. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2003;20(Suppl. 28):3–6.
413. Scott LJ, Perry CM. Tramadol: a review of its use in perioperative pain. *Drugs*. 2000;60(1):139–176.
414. Rawal N, Allvin R, Amilon A, et al. Postoperative analgesia at home after ambulatory hand surgery: a controlled comparison of tramadol, metamizol, and paracetamol. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(2):347–351.
415. Etropolski M, Kelly K, Okamoto A, Rauschkolb C. Comparable efficacy and superior gastrointestinal tolerability (nausea, vomiting, constipation) of tapentadol compared with oxycodone hydrochloride. *Adv Ther*. 2011;28(5):401–417.
416. Rawal N. Postoperative pain treatment for ambulatory surgery. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2007;21(1):129–148.
417. Axelsson K, Nordenson U, Johanzon E, et al. Patient-controlled regional analgesia (PCRA) with ropivacaine after arthroscopic subacromial decompression. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47(8):993–1000.
418. Russon K, Sardesai AM, Ridgway S, et al. Postoperative shoulder surgery initiative (POSSI): an interim report of major shoulder surgery as a day case procedure. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97(6):869–873.
419. Dragoo JL, Korotkova T, Kanwar R, Wood B. The effect of local anesthetics administered via pain pump on chondrocyte viability. *Am J Sport Med*. 2008;36(8):1484–1488.
420. Wiater BP, Neradilek MB, Polissar NL, Matsen 3rd FA. Risk factors for chondrolysis of the glenohumeral joint: a study of three hundred and seventy-five shoulder arthroscopic procedures in the practice of an individual community surgeon. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2011;93(7):615–625.
421. Piper SL, Kramer JD, Kim HT, Feeley BT. Effects of local anesthetics on articular cartilage. *Am J Sport Med*. 2011;39(10):2245–2253.
422. Capdevila X, Macaire P, Aknin P, et al. Patient-controlled perineural analgesia after ambulatory orthopedic surgery: a comparison of electronic versus elastomeric pumps. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(2):414–417.
423. Remerand F, Vuitton AS, Palud M, et al. Elastomeric pump reliability in postoperative regional anesthesia: a survey of 430 consecutive devices. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(6):2079–2084.
424. Apfel CC, Laara E, Koivuranta M, et al. A simplified risk score for predicting postoperative nausea and vomiting: conclusions from cross-validations between two centers. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(3):693–700.
425. Sinclair DR, Chung F, Mezei G. Can postoperative nausea and vomiting be predicted? *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(1):109–118.
426. Apfel CC, Philip BK, Cakmakkaya OS, et al. Who is at risk for postdischarge nausea and vomiting after ambulatory surgery? *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117(3):475–486.
427. Eberhart LH, Morin AM. Risk scores for predicting postoperative nausea and vomiting are clinically useful tools and should be used in every patient: con — 'life is really simple, but we insist on making it complicated' (Review). *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2011;28(3):155–159.
428. Gan TJ, Diemunsch P, Habib AS, et al. Consensus guidelines for the management of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(1):85–113.
429. Apfel CC, Greim CA, Haubitz I, et al. A risk score to predict the probability of postoperative vomiting in adults. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42(5):495–501.
430. Apfel CC, Heidrich FM, Jukar-Rao S, et al. Evidence-based analysis of risk factors for postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(5):742–753.
431. Dewinter G, Staelens W, Veef E, et al. Simplified algorithm for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting: a before-and-after study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(1):156–163.

432. Kappen TH. Risk-tailored prophylaxis for postoperative nausea and vomiting: has the big little problem gotten any smaller? (Editorial). *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(1):9–13.
433. Apfel CC, Meyer A, Orhan-Sungur M, et al. Supplemental intravenous crystalloids for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting: quantitative review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(6):893–902.
434. Maharaj CH, Kallam SR, Malik A, et al. Preoperative intravenous fluid therapy decreases postoperative nausea and pain in high risk patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):675–682.
435. Henzi I, Walder B, Tramèr MR. Metoclopramide in the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting: a quantitative systematic review of randomized, placebo-controlled studies. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83(5):761–771.
436. De Oliveira Jr GS, Castro-Alves LJ, Chang R, et al. Systemic metoclopramide to prevent postoperative nausea and vomiting: a meta-analysis without Fujii's studies. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(5):688–697.
437. Wallenborn J, Gelbrich G, Bulst D, et al. Prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting by metoclopramide combined with dexamethasone: randomised double blind multicentre trial. *Br Med J*. 2006;333(7563):324.
438. Gan TJ, White PF, Scuderi PE, et al. FDA "black box" warning regarding use of droperidol for postoperative nausea and vomiting: is it justified? *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(1):287.
439. Schaub I, Lysakowski C, Elia N, Tramer MR. Low-dose droperidol (≤1 mg or ≤15 μg kg-1) for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting in adults: quantitative systematic review of randomised controlled trials. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29(6):286–294.
440. Foster PN, Stickle BR, Laurence AS. Akathisia following low-dose droperidol for antiemesis in day-case patients. *Anaesthesia*. 1996;51(5):491–494.
441. Jackson I. Droperidol — contra-indicated in day surgery? *J One-day Surg*. 1999;8(4):14–15.
442. Lim BSL, Pavy TJG, Lumsden G. The antiemetic and dysphoric effects of droperidol in the day surgery patient. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1999;27(4):371–374.
443. Kranke P, Morin AM, Roewer N, Eberhart LHJ. Dimenhydrinate for prophylaxis of postoperative nausea and vomiting: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(3):238–244.
444. Forrester CM, Benfield Jr DA, Matern CE, et al. Meclizine in combination with ondansetron for prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting in a high-risk population. *AANA J*. 2007;75(1):27–33.
445. Pergolizzi Jr JV, Philip BK, Leslie JB, et al. Perspectives on transdermal scopolamine for the treatment of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *J Clin Anesth*. 2012;24(4):334–345.
446. Kotelko DM, Rottman RL, Wright WC, et al. Transdermal scopolamine decreases nausea and vomiting following cesarean section in patients receiving epidural morphine. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71(5):675–678.
447. Einarsson JI, Audbergsson BO, Thorsteinsson A. Scopolamine for prevention of postoperative nausea in gynecologic laparoscopy, a randomized trial. *J Min Invas Gynecol*. 2008;15(1):26–31.
448. Tang J, Wang B, White PF, et al. The effect of timing of ondansetron administration on its efficacy, cost-effectiveness, and cost-benefit as a prophylactic antiemetic in the ambulatory setting. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(2):274–282.
449. Tramèr MR, Reynolds JM, Moore RA, McQuay HJ. Efficacy, dose-response, and safety of ondansetron in prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. A quantitative systematic review of randomized placebo-controlled trials. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(6):1277–1289.
450. Ho K-Y, Gan TJ. Pharmacology, pharmacogenetics, and clinical efficacy of 5-hydroxytryptamine type 3 receptor antagonists for postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2006;19(6):606–611.
451. Rojas C, Thomas AG, Alt J, et al. Palonosetron triggers 5-HT(3) receptor internalization and causes prolonged inhibition of receptor function. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2010;626(2–3):193–199.
452. Apfel CC, Jukar-Rao S. Is palonosetron also effective for opioid-induced and post-discharge nausea and vomiting? *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;108(3):371–373.
453. De Oliveira Jr GS, Castro-Alves LJ, Ahmad S, et al. Dexamethasone to prevent postoperative nausea and vomiting: an updated meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(1):58–74.
454. Wang JJ, Ho ST, Tzeng JI, Tang CS. The effect of timing of dexamethasone administration on its efficacy as a prophylactic antiemetic for postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(1):136–139.
455. Diemunsch P, Joshi GP, Brichant J-F. Neurokinin-1 receptor antagonists in the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(1):7–13.
456. Gan TJ, Apfel CC, Kovac A, et al. A randomized, double-blind comparison of the NK1 antagonist, aprepitant, versus ondansetron for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(5):1082–1089.
457. Soga T, Kume K, Kakuta N, et al. Fosaprepitant versus ondansetron for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting in patients who undergo gynecologic abdominal surgery with patient-controlled epidural analgesia: a prospective, randomized, double-blind study. *J Anesth*. 2015;29(5):696–701.
458. Kakuta N, Kume K, Hamaguchi E, et al. The effects of intravenous fosaprepitant and ondansetron in the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting in patients who underwent lower limb surgery: a prospective, randomized, double-blind study. *J Anesth*. 2015;29(6):836–841.
459. Gan TJ, Gu J, Singla N, et al. Rolapitant for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting: a prospective, double-blinded, placebo-controlled randomized trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(4):804–812.
460. Yogendran S, Asokumar B, Cheng DCH, Chung F. A prospective randomized double-blind study of the effect of intravenous fluid therapy on adverse outcomes on outpatient surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80(4):682–686.
461. Rothenberg DM, Parnass SM, Litwack K, et al. Efficacy of ephedrine in the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(1):58–61.
462. Schultz LS. Cost analysis of office surgery clinic with comparison to hospital outpatient facilities for laparoscopic procedures. *Int Surg*. 1994;79(3):273–277.
463. Prickett KK, Wise SK, DelGaudio JM. Cost analysis of office-based and operating room procedures in rhinology. *Int Forum Allergy Rhinol*. 2012;2(3):207–211.
464. Vila Jr H, Soto R, Cantor AB, Mackey D. Comparative outcomes analysis of procedures performed in physician offices and ambulatory surgery centers. *Arch Surg*. 2003;138(9):991–995.
465. Vila Jr H, Desai MS, Miguel RV. Office-based anesthesia. In: Twersky RS, Philip BK, eds. *Handbook of Ambulatory Anesthesia*. 2nd ed. New York: Springer; 2008:283–324.
466. Shapiro FE, Punwani N, Rosenberg NM, et al. Office-based anesthesia: safety and outcomes (Review). *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(2):276–285.
467. Hoefflin SM, Bornstein JB, Gordon M. General anesthesia in an office-based plastic surgical facility: a report on more than 23,000 consecutive office-based procedures under general anesthesia with no significant anesthetic complications. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2001;107(1):243–251.
468. Twersky RS, Philip BK, Shapiro FE, eds. *Office-Based Anesthesia: Considerations in Setting Up and Maintaining a Safe Office Anesthesia Environment*. American Society of Anesthesiologists, Society for Ambulatory Anesthesia; 2008.
469. Desai MS. Office-based anesthesia: new frontiers, better outcomes, and emphasis on safety. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2008;21(6):699–703.
470. Tang J, Chen L, White PF, et al. Recovery profile, costs, and patient satisfaction with propofol and sevoflurane for fast-track office-based anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(1):253–261.
471. Tang J, White PF, Wender RH, et al. Fast-track office-based anesthesia: a comparison of propofol versus desflurane with antiemetic prophylaxis in spontaneously breathing patients. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(1):95–99.
472. Kolodzie K, Apfel CC. Nausea and vomiting after office-based anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2009;22(4):532–538.
473. Shnaider I, Chung F. Outcomes in day surgery (Review). *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2006;19(6):622–629.
474. American Medical Association, American College of Surgeons. Statement on patient safety principles for office-based surgery utilizing moderate sedation/analgesia, deep sedation/analgesia, or general anesthesia. *B Am Coll Surg*. 2004;89(4):32–34.

475. Poswillo DE. *General Anaesthesia, Sedation and Resuscitation in Dentistry*. Report of an expert working party. London: Standing Dental Advisory Committee, Department of Health; 1990.
476. James DW. General anaesthesia, sedation and resuscitation in dentistry. *Br Dent J*. 1991;171(11–12):345–347.
477. Robbertze R, Posner KL, Domino KB. Closed claims review of anesthesia for procedures outside the operating room. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2006;19(4):436–442.
478. Metzner J, Posner KL, Domino KB. The risk and safety of anesthesia at remote locations: the US closed claims analysis. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2009;22(4):502–508.
479. Hammond C. Nursing care for advanced day surgery. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:309–326.
480. Blandford CM, Gupta BC, Montgomery J, Stocker ME. Ability of patients to retain and recall new information in the post-anaesthetic recovery period: a prospective clinical study in day surgery. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(12):1088–1092.
481. Chung F, Chan VWS, Ong D. A post-anesthetic discharge scoring system for home readiness after ambulatory surgery. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7:500–506.
482. Mulroy MF, Salinas FV, Larkin KL, Polissar NL. Ambulatory surgery patients may be discharged before voiding after short-acting spinal and epidural anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(2):315–319.
483. Pavlin DJ, Pavlin EG, Fitzgibbon DR, et al. Management of bladder function after outpatient surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(1):42–50.
484. British Association of Day Surgery. *Nurse led discharge*. London; 2009. Available from http://www.bads.co.uk.
485. Gabalski EC, Mattucci KF, Moleski P. Ambulatory tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy. *Laryngoscope*. 1996;106(1):77–80.
486. Ovesen T, Kamarauskas G, Dahl M, Mainz J. Pain and bleeding are the main determinants of unscheduled contacts after outpatient tonsillectomy. *Dan Med J*. 2012;59(2):A4382.
487. Kalantar N, Takehana CS, Shapiro NL. Outcomes of reduced postoperative stay following outpatient pediatric tonsillectomy. *Int J Pediatr Otorhin*. 2006;70(12):2103–2107.
488. Jaensson M, Dahlberg K, Eriksson M, Nilsson U. Evaluation of postoperative recovery in day surgery patients using a mobile phone application: a multicentre randomized trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(5):1030–1038.
489. Dahlberg K, Philipsson A, Hagberg L, et al. Cost-effectiveness of a systematic e-assessed follow-up of postoperative recovery after day surgery: a multicentre randomized trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(5):1039–1046.
490. Daniels SA, Kelly A, Bachand D, et al. Call to care: the impact of 24-hour postdischarge telephone follow-up in the treatment of surgical day care patients. *Am J Surg*. 2016;211(5):963–967.
491. American Society of Anesthesiologists Committee on Ambulatory Surgical Care and the Task Force on Office-Based Anesthesia. *Outcome Indicators for Office-Based and Ambulatory Surgery*. 2003.
492. Lemos P, Regalado AM. Patient Outcomes and clinical indicators for ambulatory surgery. In: Lemos P, Jarrett P, Philip B, eds. *Day Surgery, Development and Practice*. Porto: International Association for Ambulatory Surgery; 2006:257–280.
493. Australian Council on Healthcare Standards. Equipment and clinical indicators. *Day Surgery*. 2012;2012.
494. Lemos P, Barros F. Outcome measures. In: Smith I, McWhinnie D, Jackson I, eds. *Day Case Surgery*. London: Oxford University Press; 2012:335–344.
495. Benn J, Arnold G, Wei I, et al. Using quality indicators in anaesthesia: feeding back data to improve care. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(1):80–91.
496. Tarazi EM, Philip BK. Friendliness of OR staff is top determinant of patient satisfaction with outpatient surgery. *Am J Anesthesiol*. 1998;25(4):154–157.

73

Non-Operating Room Anesthesia

MABEL CHUNG and RAFAEL VAZQUEZ

KEY POINTS

- The non-operating room arena represents an expansion of the traditional environment for anesthesia practice with significant implications for patients and providers. As technology advances and patient acuity increases, non-operating room anesthesia (NORA) cases have become more demanding in terms of both patient management and required resources and support services.
- Financial and operational constraints create additional challenges. Significant differences in practice result from the fact that NORA cases occur in places remote from the operating room (OR) and are performed frequently by medical proceduralists who are less familiar with the scope and clinical issues related to the practice of anesthesiology. In addition, anesthesiologists may be less familiar with the demands of providing an anesthetic in an environment outside of the OR and, in some cases, in which the proposed procedure and needed equipment restrict mobility and access to patients or where radiation exposure or other risks pose other challenges.
- This chapter serves as a general guide to the key principles of anesthetic management associated with procedures performed outside of the OR, and highlights some of the adaptations, both cultural and practical, that must be addressed in order to provide safe and optimal care that meets the need of the providers and patients.

Overview: Defining Non-Operating Room Anesthesia—What It Is and How We Got Here

Non-operating room anesthesia (NORA) refers to all procedures performed in locations other than the operating room (OR) and includes diverse environments and procedures, often associated with challenges not regularly confronted for procedures performed in the OR. Historically, cases managed outside of the OR were minor, infrequent, and involved relatively stable patients with limited comorbidities. They seldom required involvement of an anesthesia provider; more commonly sedation, if needed, was provided by a nurse supervised by the proceduralist. Over the past 2 to 3 decades, NORA cases have expanded considerably, now involving care provided by every medical specialty and, for many hospitals, accounting for increasing volume and revenue equivalent to that of the OR. Most important for the anesthesiologists is that the NORA cases are now often as demanding as the most advanced surgical OR procedures. They constitute a major expansion of our practice perimeter and require the same, if not more, planning and attention to operational efficiency as is required for cases performed in the OR.

In the United States, the number of NORA cases has continued to climb over the past decade. The percentage of cases increased from 28% to 36% from 2010 to 2014 alone.[1] This continued escalation of NORA procedures now requiring the care of an anesthesia provider is based on rapid technologic developments and innovations that have expanded the array of possible procedures ranging from simple same-day procedures to complex cardiac procedures that necessitate postprocedure monitoring and care in the intensive care unit. Anesthesiology support is also required because patients with underlying medical conditions and increasing age are now being offered procedures that were previously unavailable to them. As a result, an increasing number of patients undergoing NORA procedures are older and more likely to be classified as having American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) class III-V physical status as compared with patients undergoing procedures in the OR.[1] In fact, many NORA cases are performed on patients deemed "high risk for surgery," including patients who in the past would not have been considered candidates for any medical intervention. Although some of these "minimally invasive" procedures are considered to be lower risk for the patient, the anesthetic issues are often very complex with significant potential for physiologic changes that require intensive management.

The increase in procedures performed outside of the OR has been accompanied by increasing oversight related to the safety of anesthesia in remote locations. An analysis of the ASA Closed Claims database found that remote location claims demonstrated a higher proportion of claims for death compared with OR claims (54% vs. 29%) and involved older and sicker patients. Fifty percent of remote location claims involved monitored anesthesia care—a reflection of the importance of close monitoring and management of patients by a skilled anesthesia provider who is able to transition the management to include initiation of general anesthesia or other interventions to address complex clinical issues.

Predictably, respiratory events and inadequate oxygenation and ventilation were more common in these remote location claims than in OR claims.[2] These findings suggest that patients are at a higher risk of adverse events when undergoing anesthesia for procedures in remote locations. These data underscore the need for conscientious preparation and greater vigilance when caring for patients in these environments. The goal of anesthesia providers must be to mitigate systemic factors that contribute to the excess hazard in these environments.

The purpose of this chapter is twofold: first, to highlight the inherent, common, as well as the unique characteristics of NORA cases that impose unusual challenges for anesthesiologists providing care outside of the OR; and second, to describe the goals, methodologies, and pitfalls of interventions in these environments that might be unfamiliar to some anesthesiologists. This chapter does not reiterate basic principles of anesthesiology practice described elsewhere in the text, nor does it describe the technical details of novel procedures. Instead, it serves as a general guide to the NORA environment and procedures performed outside of the OR and delineates some of the critical issues faced by anesthesiologists. The intention is to promote awareness that encourages preemptive planning, and equips anesthesia providers with a vocabulary with which to establish effective dialogue to cultivate a collaborative practice with colleagues and to maximize the safety of patients.

NOVEL CHARACTERISTICS OF NORA CASES

NORA cases are characterized by three distinctive features: location, operator, and relative novelty. First, the procedure does not take place in a standard operating suite and is typically remote to the main OR section. Second, the operator performing the procedure is generally a medical interventionalist rather than a surgeon. Finally, the procedures and technologies used are constantly evolving. Innovative applications of these procedures and technologies pose a challenge for a number of reasons as well. With advances in technology and expertise of the operators performing procedures outside of the OR, the procedures can be performed on patients with complex comorbidities and often on patients who are not candidates for a traditional surgical procedure or for whom surgery is no longer the only therapeutic option. For example, carotid artery stenosis can be treated in the OR, the catheterization laboratory, or the interventional radiology (IR) suite. The ultimate choice of venue may be a function of acuity of presentation but often depends on the referral—who the patient sees first, and who is available. As important, for many patients undergoing a NORA procedure, the scheduling is urgent, emergent, or unknown to the anesthesia provider until immediately before the procedure is to be performed, preventing an adequate periprocedural evaluation. These ever-expanding clinical services requiring anesthesia services outside of the OR provide an opportunity for anesthesiologists to reevaluate and reaffirm the importance of a preoperative assessment, as well as periprocedural and postprocedural needs, for this diverse group of patients. As a result, the perimeter of our landscape has expanded beyond the familiar domain of the OR and requires collaboration with a broad array of medical practitioners including interventional cardiologists, interventional radiologists, gastroenterologists, radiation oncologists, and electrophysiologists. Given the physical, medical, political, and economic challenges that may arise and that are often unanticipated, the goal must be to adapt to the new environments. We must also strive to evolve our anesthesia practice to meet the demands of a changing patient population.

UNIQUE OBSTACLES: FROM PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT TO THE MEDICINE–ANESTHESIOLOGY CULTURE GAP

When anesthesiologists are faced with the need to provide services for non-surgeons in non-OR locations, issues such as scheduling inconsistencies, ad hoc requests, and resource limitations can be difficult to resolve, particularly if the usual scheduling process is not available. In addition, the increasing incidence of medically complex cases with patients needing urgent intervention, but lacking periprocedural evaluation, can create challenges. The two most common challenges are poor communication between providers exacerbated by the medicine–anesthesiology culture gap and, for many of the NORA procedures, inadequate physical space to accommodate the needs of a patient requiring anesthesia services.

Procedural suites are often remotely located. This increases the time lag between a request for assistance and the arrival of help, both with technological and medical problems. In addition, the lack of nearby supplies may exacerbate the timely resolution of common electrical and mechanical malfunctions or complicate the resolution of a medical emergency. This situation demands that care be taken before the start of the procedure to ensure that equipment is supplied and working and that backup options (emergency supplies, difficult airway equipment) are functioning and readily available.

In addition, non-OR procedure suites are frequently organized from the perspective of the proceduralist, and unfortunately, the needs of anesthesiologists are often overlooked. For example, procedure suites that use fluoroscopy for guidance are often configured so that the C-arm limits access to the patient's head and obstructs direct communication between the anesthesiologist and the proceduralist. Inadequate access to the patient may be exacerbated if the area around the head of the patient is crowded due to constraints of the room and equipment. Lack of visibility of procedural screens may also make it difficult to follow the progress of the intervention without compromising the attention to the patient. Perhaps most important, hemodynamic monitors may be difficult to visualize by the anesthesiologist or, for some procedures, may not function properly because of interference with mapping systems or other electronic interfaces. Lead protective screens may not be available, and when they are available and positioned to protect the anesthesiologist from radiation, pumps and intravenous lines may become inaccessible. Gas scavenging may be unavailable, and oxygen and suction outlets may be suboptimally placed. For these and other reasons, anesthesiologists should be mindful of how best to orient both the patient and providers spatially within a procedure room, particularly if the setup of the room is unfamiliar. Distraction of focus away from patient care due to an unfamiliar environment can be potentially disastrous in the face of a novel or complex procedure.

The ASA has formulated a statement regarding NORA locations that articulates minimum standards for all procedures performed in these areas,[3] but these standards are quite fundamental. Recognition of the constraints of the environment and anticipatory planning allow for the safe administration of anesthesia within this environment. The challenge is communicating the importance of these issues to the proceduralist and others involved in the care of the patient as well as hospital leadership to ensure that the needs of all parties are met. With newer procedures requiring anesthesia services in nontraditional environments, there may be a need to implement significant environmental changes to optimize the ability of anesthesiologists to deliver safe care.

Communication with the medical proceduralist is key to providing an optimal anesthetic; taking time to discuss the procedure and the patient allows for thoughtful consideration of anesthetic options in the context of both the principles of the procedure and the physiology of the patient. However, mismatches in culture can dominate interactions between medical practitioners and anesthesiologists and undermine communication. These conversations can be challenging since, unlike surgeons, medical providers may be unfamiliar with the skill sets of anesthesiologists and the needs for patient care or unaware of the intricacies associated with administering an anesthetic. For example, while surgeons are accustomed to sharing their procedures with other medical practitioners, proceduralists may be habituated to working alone and ordering sedation to be administered by a nurse. Medical interventionalists may also lack experience with relatively rare but serious complications that might arise during the procedure, such as loss of airway. In addition, proceduralists are frequently consultants who are enlisted by primary care providers to perform procedures, but who may not have received all relevant information that may be needed for a patient requiring anesthesia services. Even when all information is provided, specialization predisposes the proceduralists to concentrate on their point of expertise, so many of the concerns of the anesthesiologists are not taken into account.

Similar issues regarding the needs of the patient and the proceduralist may not be taken into account by the anesthesiologist who is unfamiliar with the procedure. In many cases, the anesthesiologist may have only a basic understanding about what is happening during the course of a noninvasive procedure and may not have asked enough questions about the plans, especially when they are new to a particular venue, the procedure is not observable, and fluoroscopy screens are out of the field of view or uninterpretable. Anesthesiologists may be unaware of pitfalls and likely complications of the procedure even though in the OR, they normally would not administer an anesthetic without understanding the idiosyncrasies of the surgery. These issues are important in planning for the anesthesia and procedure but are equally important during the procedure. Extra initiative is often required by the anesthesiologist since the proceduralist may not communicate the course of the procedure during the case. Other aspects of the procedure, such as how coughing on extubation might predispose patients who have had groin sheaths to serious hematomas, may not have been emphasized by the procedural team or likewise appreciated by anesthesiologists. Bridging the communication gap requires effort, but it is absolutely critical to optimizing outcomes.

When interventionalists undertake novel procedures using new technologies, the situation can become even more challenging. The course of the procedure may be unknown, the timing and sequence of events may be ill-defined, and the focus of the procedure may change midstream. At times, the proceduralist may be unsure of what is happening. In these situations, extensive preplanning, a commitment to communication, and the explication of goals for all involved in the care of the patient is crucial to the success of the procedure and, more importantly, the safety of the patient.

As medical procedures, particularly those performed outside of the OR environment, become even more technically demanding and patient clinical conditions more complex, the best possible patient management strategies will arise from collaboration and teamwork between medical proceduralists and anesthesiologists. This requires mutual respect, excellent communication, common vocabulary, shared experience, and overlapping competencies. In pursuit of this goal, we can build on the outstanding record of improved patient safety and outcomes that characterizes the history of anesthesiology.

FINANCIAL AND OPERATIONAL CONSTRAINTS

The impact of performing procedures in new environments has significant financial and operational implications that must be addressed. In the desire and enthusiasm to advance clinical care and extend care to settings outside of the operating room, medical, financial, and operational implications often become blurred. As a result, it is important to understand the difference between what does and what should drive the direction of new program development related to NORA procedures and for all parties to address the specific operational needs while taking into account the financial implications of transitioning care to these alternative settings.

EFFECTS OF PAYMENT SYSTEMS

A variety of payment methodologies are used to compensate providers and facilities for clinical services. While government payment methods remain important, private insurance has become the financial underpinning of the healthcare system in the United States—often allowing hospitals and providers to advance new technologies and innovative care that would otherwise be financially impossible. Private health insurance evolved as hospitals transitioned from repositories for the impoverished and dying into institutions where people actually recovered from illness. Hospitalization plans, initially developed by hospitals in the 1930s, were a way to supplement the economic resources needed for growth and expansion. At that time, hospitals often functioned as extensions of private offices and payment was, and continues to be, a fee-for-service system. As health care has become more expensive and the clinical options have expanded, both the public and private systems have had to adapt, becoming more complex and sophisticated—with the goal to minimize payment to those practices that have documented, evidence-based outcomes. These changes, and the goal to reduce costs of care, have both encouraged care outside of traditional and expensive environments, such as the OR, but also challenged providers to prove that the care remains safe and of high quality. These conflicting goals make expansion of care to non-OR locations challenging and, in some cases, undermine attempts to innovate.

Medical optimization and financial efficiency are predictably not the end products of fee-for-service payments. With increasing demand for clinical services, the need to reduce costs, hospital length of stay, and readmissions is critical. As the population ages, care is increasingly specialized and complex. The Medicare Payment Advisory Commission (MedPAC) reported that as of 2006, the average Medicare beneficiary saw five doctors per year and Medicare beneficiaries with three or more chronic conditions saw more than 10 physicians a year.[4] With advances in care, transitions of some procedures from the OR to new settings, and care provided by a "new" group of providers that previously did not perform procedures (cardiologists, neurologists, and others), more providers participate in the care of patients. The implications of these changes are numerous. For example, for patients whose care involved four or more doctors, MedPAC reported that 48% experienced medical errors, medication errors, or laboratory errors. As technology advances and the population ages, risks and benefits change and new genres of service emerge and expand. Imaging services, which have exploded across disciplines in the last decade, are now provided by radiologists, vascular surgeons, cardiologists, internists, anesthesiologists, and surgical subspecialists.[5] Traditional fee-for-service payment systems are not designed to ensure that the right treatment is performed on the right patient at the right time by the right physician in the right venue. The result is that groups of assorted medical proceduralists provide in-hospital care that is often fragmented, perpetuated by silos of specialized care despite the interdependent nature of specialty services. Coordination of care, particularly for the newer procedures requiring anesthesia services and performed outside of the OR, is needed but often not provided for a variety of reasons. Unfamiliarity with anesthesia services and requirements as well as lack of payment for coordination of care are primary reasons. This uncoordinated or fragmented care creates challenges for the patient and provider, often resulting in duplication of some service, variability of resource use, and inconsistent application of quality standards. Payment silos create misalignment of goals across specialties, creating competition rather than collaboration among disciplines and, in some cases, pitting the needs of one set of providers against another without intending to do so.

Another factor that contributes to the challenges associated with performing procedures requiring anesthesia care in NORA environments is the lag in payment for new technologies by Medicare and other payors. While delaying implementation of new procedures into the clinical environment until peer-reviewed evidence documents the value may be appropriate, particularly when new and/or proprietary, high-cost equipment is required, the lack of payment may actually contribute to higher costs of care or reduced quality.

Anesthesiologists are particularly vulnerable to inadequate or no compensation for some of the procedures performed outside of the OR. In some cases, the lack of payment is related to "historical controls"—healthier patients undergoing procedures outside of the OR with sedation provided by a nurse or proceduralist. The anesthesia service is only compensated when the patient meets criteria for "medical necessity"—and there may be inadequate documentation of the need for anesthesia care by the proceduralist. As important, for some patients there are associated services for which there may be no compensation. Routine preprocedure evaluation and postprocedure care are included in the anesthesia fee; other services often needed to optimize clinical management so the patient is able to undergo the procedure may not be compensated. Discussion of some of these issues related to payment for anesthesia services for the NORA procedures is ongoing at a national level.[6]

Some newer payment methods may help address the challenges of providing anesthesia services for procedures performed outside of the OR. Bundled payment methodologies, accountable care organizations, and the perioperative surgical home are three payment reforms intended to improve coordination and interdisciplinary collaboration. While these models of payment may effectively improve delivery of care in the most appropriate environment with improved outcomes, it remains to be seen how effective these undertakings will be in improving care. In any case, payment models remain a key determinant of behavior. It is incumbent on anesthesiologists to remain at the forefront of new developments as demand for anesthesia services in less traditional arenas broadens in an environment that diminishes control over the revenues we generate.

OPERATIONAL CONSTRAINTS

It is quite clear that despite a multitude of publications documenting significant OR inefficiency, institutional tradition, provider idiosyncrasy, and surgical convenience continue to compromise efficient OR scheduling practices and policies. Outside of the OR, these issues have even greater significance. Medical proceduralists and surgeons performing procedures in unfamiliar environments often do not understand the physical limitations that affect anesthesia care and the need for appropriate preprocedure evaluation and management, and in many cases are not aware of some of the underlying clinical conditions of the referred patient. To make matters worse, the specific procedure(s) to be performed on the patient may not be well-defined until the procedure begins while in other cases the procedure is "novel," often involving equipment and supplies unfamiliar to the proceduralist or assisting staff. All of these variables make scheduling non-OR cases extremely difficult.

With respect to scheduling and staffing non-OR cases, a number of issues must be considered, including:

1. Non-OR anesthetizing locations are often adapted to the specific procedure being undertaken and the needs of the medical proceduralist. Unlike ORs, they are noninterchangeable. They are often neither designed for nor take the needs of the anesthesia provider into account.
2. Most of the venues for these procedures are smaller and less flexible than traditional OR environments.

3. Block time may not be utilized to facilitate scheduling of NORA cases, making it difficult to utilize anesthesiology staff productively and increasing the likelihood of underutilized personnel and space.
4. Non-OR procedures may take place a long distance from the OR suite. Lack of storage space for anesthesia equipment may also impose longer turnover time and the need for additional anesthesia technical services.
5. Many non-OR procedure suites perform procedures on patients referred from outside providers or services that are booked through a central scheduling office. For most of these patients, the usual preprocedure evaluation process is not used to facilitate assessment and preparation of the patient. Periprocedural evaluations are often very cursory—if performed at all. This imposes an additional bottleneck for the anesthesiologist who may need to perform a preoperative evaluation immediately before the procedure and cancel or delay cases at the last minute.
6. Because many non-OR procedures are novel, it is difficult to estimate the length of time the procedure will take. Booking times may be unrealistic, and scheduling anesthesiology time may be difficult. Additionally, with new technology and noninvasive methods, it is very easy for the proceduralist to modify or extend the procedure after it is started.[7]

As noted, non-OR cases tend to be more variable, less predictable, and, therefore, more difficult to staff cost-effectively. Some of these difficulties are technical, but some are the result of cultural discontinuity and poor communication between anesthesiologists and proceduralists. To ensure effective management for these cases, a number of requirements should be met:

1. Prospectively establish a contract between the anesthesiology and procedural departments that encourages appropriate utilization of available time and minimization of differences between "staffed (contracted) time" and "productive time." In addition, in those environments where NORA cases cannot or are not scheduled efficiently, the department may need to define a "backstop" to compensate the anesthesia providers for "availability" time that is not associated with a specific case.
2. All non-OR cases should be scheduled and managed within the electronic database for OR cases, so that resource deployment can be planned and modified as needed.
3. Create a block schedule that takes into account all of the procedural areas and the most effective utilization of the space. The block time should account for the needs of all providers. For example, if cases in some areas tend to run late, anesthesia providers should be scheduled appropriately to reflect the actual times for the cases to be completed.
4. Implement real-time scheduling, including patient arrival times and other issues affecting utilization. Calculate earliest start times, optimal arrival times, and adjusted preoperative fasting (nothing by mouth [NPO]) guidelines for all patients. Avoid having patients sitting in preoperative holding areas for extended periods and account for postprocedure evaluation and monitoring needs wherever recovery of the patient is provided.
5. Improve specialized triage for scheduled outpatients in each procedural area to ensure that patients are appropriately evaluated and prepared for the anticipated procedure. The use of triage forms and staffing intake procedures, either locally within each environment or centrally, will minimize delays and cancellations. Ensure that the proceduralist is invested in the preprocedure process and supports the needs of the patient and anesthesia providers.
6. Oversight of periprocedural triage and postprocedure recovery areas should be provided by the anesthesia department to ensure that the appropriate preprocedure assessment has been completed and, when necessary, that additional preprocedure optimization is required. As part of the oversight process, tracking of unexpected admissions, prolonged recovery times, throughput, efficiency, length of stay, and medical outcomes should be performed and reviewed with all providers.

The scheduling of space, staff, and resources for NORA procedures should be standardized within the institution but can be performed in a number of ways. In general, the principles that apply in the OR should also be used for cases performed outside of the OR. These principles include reducing variability, scheduling to minimize variability as much as possible, and using actual institutional data to guide decision making whenever possible (i.e., real-time scheduling for blocks). In addition, the scheduling should take into account available time and actual productive time. Full schedules and adequate revenue collection should be incentivized; otherwise a subsidy of the anesthesia department is needed because the opportunity cost incurred is often significant. In situations where specific contracts for NORA cases are negotiated, the contracts should take into account full costs and not differentiate costs associated with specific procedures individually. Whenever possible, proceduralists should be involved in scheduling schemes so they are invested in the process. When the institution has specific, predefined areas in which these procedures will be performed, identifying a dedicated anesthesia team, as is done for selected OR service lines, should be considered. Identifying a dedicated team that understands the specific issues in each NORA environment and collaborates with the proceduralists, nurses, and others can greatly improve operational issues, patient and provider satisfaction, and clinical outcomes.

Transitional Priorities for Anesthesiologists Outside of the Operating Room

As more and more procedures are performed outside of the traditional OR environment, we can anticipate that there will be many new opportunities as well as obstacles to overcome. While many have already been articulated, new venues must take the same approach as has been taken so far to best meet patient and provider needs. Unusual procedural venues and practitioners who are unfamiliar with the scope and practice of anesthesiology challenge standard procedure. Adaptation requires that we confront, explain, reorient, and reinforce our traditional concepts of safe practice and standards of care. Anesthesiology as a specialty has improved OR safety enormously in the past 45 years, and as the scope of anesthesiology broadens, there is even more reason to redefine and remain steadfast in utilizing the same well-established standards of safe practice in new environments.

DEFINING INTERDISCIPLINARY SAFETY IN NON-OPERATING ROOM LOCATIONS: STANDARDIZATION, RELIABILITY, AND COMMUNICATION

The unparalleled record of OR safety established by surgeons and anesthesiologists has been dependent on implementation of standardized, routinized practice. Anesthesiologists depend on the predictable characteristics of ORs and surgical procedures to gauge the process of procedures and optimize anesthetic outcomes. While unplanned challenges arise even in the most standardized environment, a dedicated team with an understanding of the expected (and unexpected) events is best able to tailor care to meet the needs of the patient and providers. For non-OR cases, many of the standards are not predefined and the procedures often are not yet considered routine. In some cases, the technology is novel and, for some patients, preprocedure optimization is not ensured. For many procedures, anesthesia is required because of the inherent challenges and inability to predict clinical responses and needs. In each of these situations, communication at every step in the process is critical to optimizing patient care and outcomes. If communication is poor between proceduralist and anesthesiologist, the potential for error and a less-than-optimal outcome increases.

Frankel[8] and others have emphasized that environments that facilitate safety and reliability are characterized by the following:

1. Encouragement of continuous learning among all participants
2. A just and fair culture of accountability and responsibility
3. Support for teamwork
4. Data-based drive for safety and reliability
5. Effective communication and flow of information

Depending on the specific venue, routines can be defined for many NORA procedures—though for many NORA procedures, the routines may differ from those developed for specific OR procedures. Specialty-specific procedure units can accommodate each of the above with varying degrees of difficulty, depending on the medical, financial, and operational constraints and priorities in place. All of these elements are critical characteristics of a safe environment.

OTHER GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR NORA CARE

A number of other processes are relevant to the practice of anesthesiology in general with some specific examples of their importance for anesthesia provided in settings outside of the OR environment. They include continuous learning, accountability, teamwork, and communication, all of which are critical to improving systems to optimize care.

Continuous Learning

The concept of continuous learning as an element of process improvement was initiated for other industries[9] but also applies to anesthesia practice and patient care. The principles associated with continuous learning have relevance to the delivery of anesthesia in environments outside of the OR suite, in large part because NORA services continue to expand and evolve. Lessons learned from current practices can be applied to new models of care delivery, while also implementing and evaluating the use of new technologies to expand anesthesia services to new patient populations and new locations. As clinical opportunities evolve and modifications are made to the delivery of anesthesia care, the use of objective data (where available) will be an essential element of the continuous learning process. Inherent to the concept of continuous learning is the need to evaluate clinical practices with input from all participants, including the patient, and to consider needs from a multidimensional perspective.

Culture of Accountability and Responsibility

As is true for all clinical environments of care, the anesthesiologist and all other providers must assume responsibility and accountability for patient safety and quality of care. An ongoing evaluation as to what is working and what is not—and an understanding of the reasons for adverse outcomes—is critical to process improvement. In some cases, individual actions may be responsible for an unanticipated event, though for many (if not most) adverse events, both individual and systems issues contribute. To successfully analyze adverse events and the contributing factors, formal root cause analyses (RCAs) with participation of all parties is most effective in defining how to avoid similar events in the future. This type of analysis can be very helpful in assessing the quality of care for patients undergoing anesthesia outside of the relatively controlled OR environment. The RCA process should be collaborative and non-punitive. If the actions of an individual need to be addressed, this process should be done using human resources or medical staff processes outside of the RCA process. We can learn how to initiate these reviews from other industries. For example, the launching and recovery of US Navy aircraft is a well-known process in which this type of outcome-focused, non-punitive review takes place.[10]

Support for Teamwork Structure

Support for a teamwork structure is a crucial foundation of successful interdisciplinary work. It requires that jobs are clearly defined, that debriefing occurs constructively and within a reasonable time frame, and that outcomes are reviewed to continually refine and improve care and reduce the likelihood of repeating errors. Fundamental to this is an attitude of mutual respect for other team members; this is often the most difficult for physicians to generate, because they are educated and trained to be self-sufficient, independent, and non-delegating. “Virtuoso teams”[11] are characterized by smart people who are opinionated, strident, and challenged by an acute need to perform. They get the job done by confronting each other and arriving at a mutually acceptable solution. Leadership is clearly important in this endeavor; conflict resolution and negotiation are significant parts of the process.

Effective Communication and Flow of Information

As is true in any clinical environment, communication among providers is critical to the delivery of care. Effective communication is particularly relevant in the care of patients outside of the OR for a number of reasons, many of which have already been outlined. Novel interventions and technologies used by proceduralists create potential for misunderstanding or unintended consequences due to unfamiliarity with the supplies, equipment, or maintenance. As is true for procedures performed in the OR, time-outs that include identification of the patient, description of underlying medical conditions that might impact care, and other relevant issues are perhaps even more important for NORA cases. In some cases, the primary proceduralist may be unaware of underlying medical conditions or comorbidities that impact anesthesia care, selection of sedatives and analgesics, and monitoring needs. The issues of concern to the anesthesia provider must be discussed with the proceduralist and those that might impact how a procedure will be performed must be discussed with the anesthesia provider, nurses, and others. Even medically correct actions on the part of the anesthesiologist or proceduralist, if not communicated to the other party, could drastically alter outcome. If, for example, the anesthesiologist supports decreasing blood pressure but fails to tell the proceduralist about the hemodynamic instability, s/he might continue under the assumption that the patient is tolerating the procedure when in fact a search for a cause for the blood pressure fall, such as evaluation for possible retroperitoneal bleed, is more appropriate. To create the same degree of safety and reliability outside of the OR as exists in the OR, compromise and adjustment of cultural and medical assumptions is required by all parties. Without good communication this cannot occur.

NON-OPERATING ROOM ANESTHESIA LOCATIONS: SOME LOGISTICAL ISSUES

Sites of Care

Potential sites for procedures performed outside of the OR continue to expand. As new sites are proposed, they must be carefully and thoroughly evaluated to ensure that care can be provided safely with appropriate monitoring and all supplies, equipment, and support are available. The needs must take into account the patient population(s) that will be served, including consideration of the complexity of the intervention and common comorbidities.

For anesthesia care provided outside of the OR, appropriate emergency supplies and procedures should be clearly identified, including posting of phone numbers or other contact information for accessing emergency help. In addition to considering the specific space needs to facilitate completion of a procedure, appropriate space must be identified to provide pre- and postprocedure care. In addition, any patient receiving anesthesia for a procedure must be monitored in an appropriate location equipped for that purpose with skilled nursing staff and the availability of an anesthesia provider during the recovery period.[12] The same safety standards implemented for procedures performed in the OR must be assured for all NORA cases regardless of where they are provided.

Supplies and Equipment

No matter what type or level of anesthetic care is anticipated to be required to facilitate completion of a procedure, for the majority of locations and clinical situations an anesthesia machine should either be present or readily available in anticipation of the need to convert to general anesthesia and/or require mechanical ventilatory support. If the proposed location for a procedure cannot accommodate anesthesia equipment (for size, electrical, or other spatial reasons), an alternative location should be identified.

All anesthetizing locations should have appropriate monitoring equipment. While the monitoring needs may vary for each procedure, the usual monitoring equipment should be available, preferably the same equipment that is available in the ORs to ensure that all providers know how to use and troubleshoot the equipment. The ASA Standards for Basic Anesthesia Monitoring[13] may serve as a fundamental guide, but often specific procedures require more than basic monitoring. As sicker patients are increasingly cared for in NORA locations, monitoring needs must be considered to ensure that the patient receives appropriate care to address both procedural needs and any clinical issues that may arise as a result of underlying medical conditions. The appropriate monitors increase the likelihood of early detection and amelioration of problems and undesirable outcomes. The success in establishing and maintaining unparalleled safety records in the OR results largely from the consistent use of appropriate monitoring equipment. The same standards should apply in NORA settings.

MONITORING IN NON-OPERATING ROOM ANESTHESIA LOCATIONS

Physiologic monitoring is a critical feature of safe anesthesiology practice wherever the anesthetic is delivered (see also Chapters 36 and 41). Just as monitoring standards of care exist throughout the OR, they must be consistently in place in NORA locations as well. Some studies suggest that adverse events occurring outside of the OR may in fact be associated with more deleterious outcomes and serious injury than those in the OR because minimal monitoring standards are lacking.[14,15] Monitoring in NORA locations is often suboptimal because the need is not identified by anesthesiologists and, in some cases, the proceduralist is not well-educated about what may be required. Until recently, pulse oximetry was the primary monitoring used to assess adequacy of oxygenation *and* ventilation, despite the fact that pulse oximetry has significant limitations. Several publications indicate significant misunderstanding among non-anesthesiologists using pulse oximetry to monitor patients outside of the OR.[16] Anesthesiologists providing services outside of the OR should clarify the need for both pulse oximetry and monitors of ventilation. Several excellent articles and websites are available as resources.[17] Over the last 20 years, capnography has become the standard of care for monitoring not only for ventilation, but also for circulation and metabolism[18-20] by directly measuring expired carbon dioxide levels and indirectly measuring production of CO_2 at the tissue level and delivery of CO_2 to the lungs. Despite broad utility and clear clinical superiority, capnography is not always available in non-OR locations. The mandate for capnography may not be understood by either proceduralists or hospital administrative staff without significant education about its utility. Capnography equipment is bundled with other monitoring equipment on the anesthesia machine. Similar monitoring should be routinely available in NORA locations independent of the anesthesia machine which may not be required for every case.

PREPROCEDURAL EVALUATION FOR NON-OPERATING ROOM ANESTHESIA CASES

Preprocedural evaluation is an essential component of anesthesia practice, regardless of where the procedure is performed or who is performing it (see also Chapter 31). Increasingly, patients with serious comorbidities and/or significant compromise are scheduled to undergo procedures outside the OR. For many of these patients, preprocedure assessment identifies clinical issues that may be difficult to optimize prior to proceeding with the procedure. In some cases the procedure is an emergency or of such urgency that a delay to address underlying clinical issues is not possible. For all NORA cases, the ASA Guidelines for Preanesthesia Evaluation[21] of 2012, should guide management. They specifically define a preanesthesia evaluation which should, at a minimum, include the following:

1. A patient interview that includes a physical examination and a review of medical, surgical, anesthetic, and medication history
2. Diagnostic laboratory tests and other relevant diagnostic information
3. Assessment of ASA status
4. Formulation of potential anesthetic plans and presentation of these to the patient

Because several studies have dispelled the notion that there is a body of routine testing that reduces anesthetic risk,[22,23] anesthesiologists should obtain testing based on the patient's history, the procedure they are to undergo, and anesthesia requirements. Since many NORA cases are performed as urgent referrals to a proceduralist, patients may not have been evaluated by any provider prior to the procedure. As a result, accumulating the appropriate clinical information in a timely manner may be challenging, if possible at all. For patients known to have significant underlying medical conditions, the proceduralist should require that, if possible, the patient be evaluated in a preoperative evaluation clinic (if one is available). If not, the patient may require an extensive preprocedure assessment that could delay the procedure or necessitate rescheduling at a later time. Occasionally, periprocedural admission or consultation with a specialty service is required. Guidelines regarding preanesthetic evaluation can be found in Chapter 31 and many other texts[24]; in general, the same guidelines apply to procedures performed in the OR or non-OR locations.

OTHER CONSIDERATIONS

Additional issues must be considered for patients undergoing NORA procedures, particularly related to the management of underlying clinical conditions or periprocedure needs that might not be anticipated by other providers. These include the following limitations that should be considered before proceeding:

1. Many procedure suites have beds with lower weight limits and less mobility than OR beds.
2. Procedure suites for fluoroscopy have beds that cannot be placed in Trendelenburg or reverse Trendelenburg position.
3. Anticoagulation status is often an issue and guidelines may be extended for some procedures.
4. Renal status may impact the use of contrast.
5. During percutaneous procedures, bleeding may be occult, and the potential need for transfusion should be addressed preprocedurally.
6. Percutaneous procedures often require that the patient remain still. Patients with extreme anxiety, chronic pain, claustrophobia, mental disability, movement disorders, obesity, or obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) or those who are at the extremes of age may not tolerate lying on a table for long, even if the proposed procedure is not very stimulating. For these patients, deeper sedation or general anesthesia may be needed.

Current NPO guidelines for procedures are 6 hours for a light meal, 8 hours for a full meal, and 2 hours for clear liquids applied to patients without increased risk for aspiration (gastroesophageal reflux disease, gastric dysmotility, hiatal hernia, diabetes mellitus, bowel obstruction, or intraabdominal pathologic conditions).[25] This is often a source of disagreement between anesthesiologists and proceduralists, who may not realize the ramifications of a full stomach or may insist that contrast or barium be administered before the procedure. Timely preprocedure evaluation and enforcement of clear standards for NPO status can help prevent scheduling mishaps and unnecessary delays and cancelations. This may require education of the proceduralists and their staff.

Specific Procedure-Related Issues

GASTROINTESTINAL PROCEDURES IN THE ENDOSCOPY SUITE

Over the past 10 years, enormous growth in the number of gastrointestinal (GI) endoscopic procedures related to an aging patient population, increased awareness of cancer screening benefits, broad-based reimbursement for screening colonoscopies, and better technology is quite evident.[26] Increasingly complex procedures, higher-acuity patients, and increased case volume broaden the scope of challenges anesthesiologists face in caring for these patients. The choice of anesthetic approach requires a thorough understanding of both the procedure and the comorbidities of the patient. Similarly, preprocedure evaluation and postprocedure care, which carry financial and operational constraints, assume greater importance. Historically, most endoscopists managed healthy patients undergoing minor procedures with moderate sedation administered by nurses. However, moderate sedation is often inadequate in the context of sicker patients for simple procedures or healthy patients for complex procedures. Therefore, this chapter discusses the focus and methods of common GI procedures, reimbursement issues that may affect practice, the frequent comorbidities associated with patients undergoing those procedures, and anesthetic approaches suggested by anesthesiologists with expertise in the area.

A broad spectrum of GI procedures takes place in the endoscopy suite, ranging from routine screening colonoscopies to complex endoscopic pancreatic necrosectomies. Each of these requires specific levels of anesthesia depending on the invasiveness and stimulation imposed by the procedure as well as patient factors relating to their comorbidities. The most common procedures are esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD), sigmoidoscopy and colonoscopy, and endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP).

Reimbursement Constraints

Rapid increases in charges to Medicare and private insurance companies for anesthesiology support of colonoscopies provoked the attention of both Medicare and commercial payers. As a result, in 2008, a major insurance company amended its reimbursement policies[27] stating that they would no longer pay for anesthesiologists to administer propofol for screening colonoscopies in routine cases and that costs would be reimbursed only if the patients had documented comorbidities that would likely contraindicate moderate sedation. The carrier's actions were prompted by an acute rise in billing, significant regional differences in the use of propofol for routine colonoscopies, and the growth of independent colonoscopy centers that treated many patients per day facilitated by the use of propofol, which permitted very rapid turnover of cases. Despite the fact that the list of acceptable comorbidities included more than 200 diagnoses, nationwide protests from patients and physicians prompted the carrier to delay and then cancel implementation of this policy change. The finances of this situation continue to drive practice, and the debate continues. Anesthesiologists must continue to consider patient need and procedural requirements as the criteria by which anesthetic plans are formulated because the political and economic aspects of the debate will undoubtedly continue.

Esophagogastroduodenoscopy

EGD involves examination of the upper GI tract (esophagus, pylorus, and stomach) using a fiberoptic endoscope. The most difficult parts of the procedure for the patient include passing the scope into the esophagus (past the cricopharyngeus muscle) and through the pylorus. Any interventions that occur during the procedure (biopsy, resection, dilation) should be discussed with the endoscopist before the procedure because they constitute additional procedure time. Important and potentially stimulating therapeutic undertakings during endoscopy include hemostasis, biopsy, stenting, dilation, and mucosal or submucosal dissection.[28]

Most patients tolerate this procedure well with opioid or benzodiazepine sedation, but for those who are hemodynamically unstable, at risk for obstruction or aspiration, very anxious patients, or for children, general anesthesia may be the best alternative. Unfortunately, many patients presenting for EGD are in this high-risk category, including patients with severe GI reflux disease, morbid obesity, asthma, or OSA. In some cases, thorough topicalization is all that is needed, but in some patients, this is inadequate for the procedure or is difficult to achieve. ProSeal laryngeal mask airways (LMA), which have a built-in gastric drainage port, permit the passage of a pediatric endoscope, and this approach may be the best option for children and other patients[29] who require general anesthesia and are appropriate for LMA use. As with all procedures above the nipple line that use cautery, precautions must be taken to reduce the potential for airway fires.[30] This subject is discussed in Chapter 44. Rare, but serious complications include aspiration and gastroesophageal injury including perforation.

Sigmoidoscopy and Colonoscopy

Sigmoidoscopy and colonoscopy can be diagnostic and/or therapeutic and involve the examination of the lower GI tract, including either the sigmoid colon only or up to the distal ileum. This examination can be difficult for some, although most patients tolerate it with a combination of benzodiazepines and opioids. Interventions such as biopsies or polyp removal may require increased analgesia. Most anesthesiologists provide sedation with propofol; however, even in situations in which GI endoscopists are permitted to direct nurses to administer propofol, one study found that the mean bispectral index (BIS) score of patients was 59, indicating they were under general anesthesia.[31] Some gastroenterologists maintain that this depth of sedation or anesthesia allows for more thorough examination, but no data have indicated that a better examination is performed. Remifentanil has been compared with propofol in the context of sedation for colonoscopy. Although patients given remifentanil recovered earlier, they also had more nausea and respiratory depression than the propofol groups. When inhaled anesthetics such as sevoflurane and nitrous oxide were compared with total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA) using drugs such as propofol, fentanyl, and midazolam in patients undergoing colonoscopy, the TIVA group emerged faster but had longer-lasting psychomotor impairment than the inhalational group.[32-34]

As with upper endoscopy, specific interventions during sigmoidoscopy and colonoscopy constitute additional stimulation including introduction of the endoscope, colonic insufflation, advancement of the endoscope, and additional endoscopic intervention such as biopsy, polypectomy, stenting dilation, and mucosal resection.

The ability and need to titrate a drug quickly and appropriately drive the choice of anesthetic, and new studies looking at patient-controlled sedation pumps are under way. Studies of patient satisfaction and indicators of procedural success are ongoing, as are several trials of patient-administered sedation and other types of computerized pumps.

One potential complication is bowel perforation, which is heralded by ongoing abdominal pain; emergent surgical intervention is indicated in this situation. Bleeding is another complication that can occur during therapeutic lower GI procedures. A current blood bank sample is imperative as well as adequate intravenous access.

Endoscopic Retrograde Cholangiopancreatography

ERCP is a fluoroscopic examination of the biliary or pancreatic ducts accomplished through an endoscopically guided injection of contrast through the duodenal papilla. This type of procedure constitutes the up-and-coming interventional gastroenterology field. Patients are usually in the prone position. Many patients who require ERCP are compromised. Their diagnoses include cholangitis (with or without sepsis), pancreatitis, bile duct obstruction secondary to stones, or pancreatic or hepatocellular tumor masses. Potentially stimulating interventional maneuvers during ERCP include sphincterotomy, hemostasis, stent placement, stone extraction, pancreaticobiliary visualization, and laser lithotripsy.

These procedures can range from straightforward to highly complex interventions. Furthermore, gastric insufflation is required and most proceduralists prefer CO_2 instead of air. Consequently, prolonged procedures can lead to very high arterial CO_2 levels. Procedural failure rates are twice as high for sedation patients as they are for general anesthesia patients, and the complication rate for general anesthesia cases may be lower.[35,36] In addition, the patient's airway is effectively inaccessible to the anesthesiologist and ventilation can be challenging. For this reason, many anesthesiologists prefer general anesthesia for ERCP.

NATURAL ORIFICE TRANSLUMINAL ENDOSCOPIC SURGERY: THE NEXT FRONTIER?

Natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery (NOTES) represents an approach to abdominal and peritoneal procedures that integrates the perspectives of endoscopic medicine and minimally invasive surgery. The use of NOTES in humans is in the early phases, and several cases have been reported of transvaginal and transgastric cholecystectomy.[37,38] Thus far these cases have required a pneumoperitoneum and general anesthesia; however, as technology improves, these parameters may change and NOTES procedures may take their place among the numerous other interventions performed outside the OR.

An example of a NOTES used by GI endoscopists to treat esophageal achalasia is peroral endoscopic myotomy (POEM). Esophageal achalasia is characterized by poor peristalsis of the esophagus in combination with increased muscle tone and incomplete relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter (LES). Symptoms arising from impaired entry to the stomach include nausea and vomiting, dysphagia, and/or pain. The POEM procedure has been developed as a minimally invasive procedure to correct achalasia by endoscopically insufflating the esophagus with CO_2 and then making an incision into the mucosa from the mid-esophagus (through the gastroesophageal [GE] junction) to 2 to 3 cm into the proximal stomach. During insufflation, patients may have an increase in $ETCO_2$ that can be controlled using mechanical ventilation. Potential risks of insufflation range from subcutaneous emphysema to pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum, and pneumoperitoneum. This procedure commonly requires several hours and is best accomplished using general anesthesia with an endotracheal tube, which protects the patient from aspiration of gastric contents and allows the anesthesiologist to minimize the perils of CO_2 insufflation. As with all NORA procedures, vigilance, teamwork, and communication are vital to ensure not only the success of the procedure but the safety of the patient as well.

Interventional Pulmonary Procedures

Innovations in interventional pulmonology have expanded the pulmonary field tremendously. Bronchoscopic interventions have grown to encompass many traditional surgical procedures performed in the OR. Anesthesiology services are required for high-risk patients and given the nature of the procedures involving the airway, the potential for complications is high. Fluoroscopy plays a major role for these procedures. Discussion, communication, planning, and radiation safety are particularly critical in this environment.

COMMON BRONCHOSCOPIC PROCEDURES

Common bronchoscopic procedures include the following (see also Chapter 53):

1. Endobronchial stenting: placement of self-expanding metallic stents to treat stenosis
2. Endobronchial biopsy, laser treatment, and cauterization
3. Balloon dilation and cryotherapy

Technological advances in this field have given rise to new innovative procedures used in treating a broader patient population. Several interventions that represent amalgamations of preexisting technologies in the bronchoscopy suite are as follows:

1. Endobronchial ultrasound-guided transbronchial needle aspiration (EBUS-TBNA). This procedure is used to image the bronchial wall and adjacent structures. It allows ultrasonic visualization of mediastinal lymph nodes and other peribronchial lesions and therefore is a useful staging tool.
2. Electromagnetic navigation bronchoscopy (ENB). This technique permits biopsy of endobronchial tissue that is not visible using computer software that creates a virtual multiplanar lung reconstruction from computed tomography (CT) data. A sensor probe and electromagnetic location board guides the operator to the appropriate location during the bronchoscopy.
3. Fiducial marker implant. Markers are placed before stereotactic radiosurgery via bronchoscopy or ENB.[39]

Novel Anesthetic Concerns

The site of intervention creates several special anesthetic considerations. Preoperatively it is important to review common comorbidities, which in these patients include obstructive and restrictive lung disease, cardiac disease, malnutrition, chronic aspiration, and tobacco and alcohol use. Although simpler procedures may be completed with sedation, complex procedures may require general anesthesia. Because a rigid bronchoscope is used during some aspects of these interventions, intravenous anesthetics are preferred. Instrumentation of the airway and insertion of biopsy or therapeutic equipment will compromise delivery of inhaled anesthetics to the patient and potentially pollute the procedure room. Propofol and remifentanil infusions are well tolerated and can be titrated to effect. Dexmedetomidine may be used as well. Processed EEG monitoring may be helpful, though no data document the specific value of this type of monitoring for these procedures. Use of muscle relaxants is also preferred to prevent coughing and eliminate any chest wall rigidity. Muscle relaxation also facilitates introduction of bronchoscope. The use of steroids during and after treatment has not been demonstrated to be effective in reducing edema. For patients whose airway is not controlled during the procedure, aspiration is a potential risk. For this group of patients, administration of antiemetics and dexamethasone may be helpful.[40] High-frequency jet ventilation (HFJV) has been increasingly used to provide ventilation and as a strategy to provide a static field during therapeutic pulmonary interventions. Complications commonly encountered include airway obstruction, bronchospasm, bleeding, hypoxia, and airway fire (see also Chapter 70). Because potential complications are significant, patients should be observed in an appropriate unit postprocedure and, if needed, admitted to the hospital for overnight observation.

Anesthesiology for Image-Guided Interventions: Evolution of a New Interface

In the 1950s the field of radiology was redefined by Charles Dotter, the father of IR.[41] Through his pioneer work with the treatment of peripheral atherosclerotic lesions and angioplasty, the specialty grew from being diagnostic to one that now encompasses an ever-expanding menu of interventional undertakings, in keeping with technology development and patient needs. The scope of procedures performed in IR settings is as broad as the number of diagnoses known to the medical profession and is expanding. In fact, not all interventional radiation procedures are performed by radiologists. Some take place in specialty areas with other names, such as catheterization laboratories, neuroradiology suites, CT scanners, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and even in ORs. Some are performed by interventional cardiologists or surgeons. For that reason the discussion will address the purpose for which they are performed rather than categorizing them by the location in which they are performed or the specialty of the person performing the procedure. The common characteristics shared by most of these interventions are that there are no surgical incisions, there is some type of imaging involved (fluoroscopy, ultrasound, CT, positron emission tomography [PET], MRI), and access to the organ, tumor, or vascular structure in question is through a small hole by wires or catheters. Beyond that, the array of available technologies and possible interventions (both diagnostic and therapeutic) is astonishingly broad. The scope and intensity of procedures undertaken in interventional suites rivals that of surgeries performed in any OR, and often, patients undergoing non-OR procedures are sicker than those undergoing conventional surgeries. Unfortunately, they often lack preoperative evaluation and are not medically optimized. Frequently non-OR patients become candidates for noninvasive procedures precipitously because they are felt to be too sick or too high risk for the OR or because the need for intervention develops urgently or emergently.

It is important that anesthesiologists make the effort to understand the planned course of the procedure and the nature and acuity of the patient's comorbidities, which may not be apparent to the proceduralist. As in the OR, the challenge is to think preemptively about how the prospective procedure will affect the patient's physiologic status and design a successful anesthetic plan for the case. However, the additional caveat, as with all non-OR anesthetics, is that this may require learning about a procedure, technology, or modality that may be novel, unfamiliar, or in clinical trial. Also, it may fall to the anesthesiologist to introduce the potential ramifications of the patient's comorbidities and anesthetic risks to the proceduralist in a constructive manner. Many interventional specialists are consultants and are not involved in the primary care of the patients they are treating. They may be unaware of seemingly peripheral aspects of their patient's physical status that are in fact quite central to positive outcome. Creating a clear, collegial, and workable path of communication between medical proceduralist and anesthesia provider is paramount. The need for anesthesia support may reflect the needs of the patient and not the complexity of the procedure. The interventionalist may be highly focused and technically oriented and may not understand the concerns of an anesthesiologist. Our mutual tasks are to understand what needs to be accomplished and to bring our skills to bear in a manner that bridges the knowledge gap, creating an atmosphere of safe and reliable interdisciplinary collaboration that optimizes outcome.

Diagnostic and Therapeutic Interventions: New Challenges

The need for anesthesia during minimally invasive procedures continues to grow as the scope of image-guided interventions broadens. In addition, as the population ages and technologic advancement marches forward, image-guided procedures will continue to supplement and perhaps replace conventional surgeries, especially for patients whose comorbidities make traditional surgical approaches risky. Image-guided procedures, although noninvasive, can cause anxiety and postprocedural pain and carry the risk for potentially life-threatening complications. Anesthesiologists are called on to keep patients safe and comfortable and to facilitate optimal outcomes. Image-guided interventions may be diagnostic, therapeutic, or both. Many diagnostic procedures are short and tolerated well with nothing more than conscious sedation; however, for a compromised patient, even the most minor procedure can be problematic. Interventional procedure suites impose constraints not normally encountered in the OR. Additional considerations that emerge in these environments include unfavorable equipment layout, radiation exposure, occult bleeding risk, and contrast allergies.

These procedures have some special issues that need to be addressed by the anesthesia providers to optimize patient care and protect themselves.

EQUIPMENT LAYOUT

The layout in any radiology suite can be problematic for anesthesiologists because x-ray tubes and moving C-arms create a zone of inaccessibility around the patient's head and limit placement of the anesthesia machine. This necessitates the use of extensions on ventilator circuits and intravenous lines, increasing the potential for mishap. Infusion pumps, blood warmers, and other monitors must be placed far away from moving imaging equipment to prevent them from being knocked down or tangled during C-arm rotation and movement. In addition, imaging screens are often at right angles to the anesthesiologist, making it impossible to see what the interventionalist is doing or assess the progress of the case. Anticipating events is therefore difficult unless good communication occurs between the anesthesiology and radiology teams.

Radiation Exposure

Radiation exposure is a serious consideration for anesthesiologists, and steps must be taken to minimize it. Most exposure results from scatter of the x-ray beam. The specifics are not discussed in this chapter; however, excellent discussions and guidelines for optimization of radiation safety are readily available (see also Chapter 89).

Many anesthesiologists do not undergo consistent or repetitive training in radiation safety. All radiation exposure should follow the ALARA ("As Low As Reasonably Achievable") principle. The radiation beam attenuates based on the inverse square of the distance from the radiation source ($1/d^2$).[42] Shortened exposure time, increased distance from the source of radiation, and barriers to radiation (lead shielding and screens) are three ways in which to reduce exposure. It is important that anesthesia providers wear properly fitting lead shielding; ill-fitting lead shielding is suboptimal as lead shielding is maximally protective only if it fits properly. Protective equipment should include the use of thyroid shields and leaded glasses. Anesthesiologists should routinely use portable lead screens and wear radiation badges that are monitored on a monthly basis. Even so, several recent studies indicate that exposure of anesthesia personnel to radiation is quite high and that the exposure of the head and face of anesthesiologists can exceed three times the exposure of radiologists[43] because of their position in the room.

Related to the exposure problem is the need for the anesthesiologist to leave the room during specific imaging runs such a digital subtraction angiography (DSA), a novel aspect of NORA. This can be planned and executed so that it does not interfere with the anesthetic or compromise safety.

Contrast Material

Contrast material is commonly administered during interventions guided by imaging. Standard ionic, high-osmolality contrast agents are associated with dose- and concentration-dependent adverse reactions in 5% to 8% of patients. Idiosyncratic reactions are unrelated to dose or concentrations administered.[44] Reactions can be severe and include laryngeal edema, bronchospasm, pulmonary edema, hypotension, and respiratory arrest or seizures. Oxygen, epinephrine, and bronchodilators are the recommended rescue regimen. For pretreatment of patients with a history of contrast reaction, steroids and diphenhydramine are recommended. Numerous prophylactic protocols exist, but none have shown superiority.[45] The use of low-osmolality contrast reduces the risk for adverse reactions but does not eliminate the risk. Patients with renal insufficiency are at risk for contrast-induced nephropathy (CIN). Risk is further increased for patients with diabetes mellitus. Despite mixed evidence, these patients should undergo prophylactic protection strategies including a combination of periprocedural hydration.[46-48] Carbon dioxide can be used as an alternative if contrast is absolutely contraindicated. Contraindications to carbon dioxide include patients with patent foramen ovales (PFOs) or any right-to-left shunting.[49]

Bleeding

During most percutaneous interventions bleeding may be occult while in some it is the reason for the procedure (i.e., splenic embolization). This is a serious concern, especially for patients receiving anticoagulation (see also Chapter 50). Guidelines for optimizing coagulation parameters change frequently and are procedure dependent. For patients who do not undergo anticoagulation for other reasons, the international normalized ratio (INR) should be less than 1.5 and the platelet count more than 50,000. If possible, warfarin should be held for 5 to 7 days before the procedure, clopidogrel and aspirin for 5 days, and fractionated heparin for 12 to 24 hours. Heparin infusion should be stopped 4 to 6 hours before the procedure. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) should be held for 1 to 2 days, if possible.[50] As mentioned earlier, certain percutaneous procedures may proceed with anticoagulation on board (i.e., cerebral angiogram). It is not unreasonable to send a sample to the blood bank for any patient undergoing high-risk interventional procedures (e.g., transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts [TIPs]). Of course, it is critical to communicate clearly with the interventionalist prior to the planned intervention or when hemodynamic parameters change or the initiation of blood pressure support becomes necessary. Often the therapeutic modality can be used for diagnostic purposes.

VASCULAR INTERVENTIONAL PROCEDURES

Angiography, the general term for imaging of blood vessels, includes arteriography and venography (see also Chapter 56). This involves the acquisition of images during injection of contrast material. In many institutions, this technique has been replaced by CT angiography (CTA). DSA, a technique that imposes a contrast-injected image on top of a previously acquired non-contrast image, improves accuracy. Arteriography can be used to evaluate atherosclerotic and ischemic disease, define the arterial supply of tumors and vascular anomalies, and define traumatic injury. After diagnostic imaging, interventions using balloons, stents, balloon-mounted stents, or delivery catheters take place. Follow-up arteriography is used to evaluate the result. In some cases, arteriography serves as a precursor to later surgery.

Thrombolytic therapy can be delivered to veins, arteries, or conduits that are thrombosed. The earlier the intervention the more successful it is likely to be. Various agents are used, including recombinant tissue plasminogen activator (r-TPA), urokinase, and others.[50-52] Thrombolytic therapy is generally contraindicated in patients with ongoing bleeding, recent bleeding, pregnancy, known allergy to thrombolytic agents, suspected aortic dissection, or the presence of a nonviable extremity.

Embolization therapy is used in a wide range of conditions, including trauma, hemorrhage, vascular anomalies, fibroids, aneurysms, and tumors. The goal is to occlude arteries or veins either temporarily or permanently. This can be done mechanically with coils, balloons, or glue or with chemical agents that are temporary (Gelfoam) or permanent (alcohol). In these cases, arteriography first defines and localizes the lesion and the embolic agent is then delivered to the appropriate place with imaging guidance.

For all of these vascular interventions, the nature of the case, the comorbidities of the patient, and the intricacies of the procedure will determine the need for and extent of an anesthesiologist's involvement. Complications to anticipate include bleeding during thrombolysis, undesired embolization of nearby structures during embolization, and vessel disruption. Depending on where the target vessels are, potential complications should be appropriately anticipated in terms of planning for physiologic sequelae and the need for blood products.

Venography or imaging of the venous system is used in the context of stent placements, inferior vena cava (IVC) filter placement or removal, pulmonary arteriography, embolization of pulmonary arteriovenous malformations (AVMs), thrombolysis, and selective venous sampling. Central venous angioplasty is most frequently undertaken in patients who have indwelling devices. IVC filters are placed to minimize the risk for pulmonary embolus arising from the migration of deep vein thromboses from the lower extremities or pelvic veins. Indications for IVC placement include high risk for pulmonary embolism, failure of anticoagulation or contraindications for anticoagulation, and allergy to anticoagulants. Both removable and permanent filters are available and can be placed via transfemoral or transjugular approach. For the most part, these procedures require little or no sedation; however, patients who cannot lie flat or with extreme anxiety will need anesthesia support. Pulmonary arteriography is used less frequently than in the past because of the speed and reliability of pulmonary CTA; however, the procedure is useful to evaluate pulmonary hypertension.[52] This modality is also useful for diagnosis and treatment of pulmonary and bronchial AVMS and pseudoaneurysms.

Fistulograms, graftograms, and tunneled hemodialysis (HD) lines, grouped collectively as hemodialysis vascular access procedures, represent a unique type of vascular interventional case and a large percentage of IR caseload. Their uniqueness derives from the fact that the patient population is entirely comprised of those with end-stage renal disease (ESRD). These patients often require multiple interventions in the maintenance of their dialysis access lines. Vascular access dysfunction may be due to failure of maturation of an arteriovenous (AV) fistula, excessive bleeding or increased pressures during dialysis, or clotted vascular access. As a result, these patients require both diagnostic procedures such as fistulograms and therapeutic interventions such as balloon angioplasty and thrombectomy.[53] Anesthesia care is needed as ESRD is rarely an isolated medical condition and this patient population tends to have multiple complex medical comorbidities that are often not optimized. Patient evaluation is like any procedure requiring anesthesia care with special consideration placed on volume status, serum potassium level, and electrocardiograph (ECG) changes. Patients with dysfunctional access require special attention to these parameters, as dialysis runs are often suboptimal. Care must be taken to weigh the risks and benefits of proceeding with borderline high potassium levels versus postponing the case and asking for a temporary dialysis line to get potassium to reasonable levels. Sedation is adequate in most cases. However, angioplasty can cause extreme discomfort for some patients, especially in cases where access is distally located (radiocephalic fistulas). Regional anesthesia techniques can be tailored for these cases but care must be taken as these patients are often on chronic anticoagulation. For patients unable to lie flat, ramping can be useful. Most patients have a history of prior anesthetics and this can guide future anesthetic plans. Procedure duration can range from very short (<30 minutes) to very long (several hours or more) depending on whether there are multiple stenotic areas or whether thrombectomy needs to be performed. Thrombectomies present a special consideration as declotting procedures use r-tPA. Thrombus can be dislodged from the fistula/graft and travel into the circulation. Patients with severe pulmonary hypertension or right ventricle failure should be considered for open surgical thrombectomy.[54]

BILIARY AND HEPATIC INTERVENTIONS

Procedures to treat biliary or hepatic pathology are particularly challenging in that they are painful, intricate, and technically demanding. Patients are often extremely compromised. Hepatic and biliary procedures include transhepatic cholangiography, percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage, hepatic venography with hemodynamic measurement, liver biopsy and the creation of TIPS, and portal vein embolization (PVE). Patients scheduled for biliary procedures may present with jaundice, cholangitis, shock, bile duct leak, or other related abnormalities. Clearly, significant comorbidities accompany these disorders. Contraindications for these procedures include bleeding diathesis, inability to tolerate contrast, and the presence of large hepatic AVMs, significant ascites, and hydatid disease.

Biliary drainage is accomplished by placing the patient supine on the table and inserting a long needle obliquely into the hepatic parenchyma (the ninth intercostal space). Contrast is delivered with the goal of imaging the necessary structures. Cholecystostomy tube placement is performed to improve symptoms in patients with acute cholecystitis but who are not candidates for surgery. Here, the gallbladder is imaged with ultrasound, CT, or fluoroscopy; the gallbladder is accessed through a needle that traverses the liver; and a drainage catheter is placed. For these procedures, the choice of anesthetic depends entirely on the patient's body habitus, comorbidities, and pain tolerance. Obese patients are difficult to image, and optimization of needle position also can be difficult. Patients may present with a history of tolerance to opioids and with compromised metabolism, which requires careful choice of drugs. Regional anesthesia may be useful for procedural or postprocedural pain management.[55] Lying flat may be difficult for patients with pulmonary compromise or ascites.

Hepatic venography and hemodynamic assessment are performed to assess suspected venous anomalies (Budd-Chiari) and quantitation of portal hypertension. Liver biopsies can be performed during these procedures. Access for these procedures is usually transjugular and involves needle insertion followed by wire access and insertion of a long vascular sheath. Many patients find this extremely difficult to tolerate. Hepatic venography and pressure monitoring is done through an angled catheter before it is advanced to wedge in the hepatic vein. A calculation of corrected sinus pressure, the difference between free pressure and wedge pressure, defines the degree of portal hypertension.[56] The creation of a portosystemic shunt requires positioning of a needle advanced through the hepatic parenchyma and into the portal vein. The parenchymal tract is dilated with an angioplasty balloon and a stent is inserted. This is a painful and difficult procedure, vastly oversimplified for clarity. It may be quite lengthy and general anesthesia is advisable. Indications for the creation of TIPS include repeated esophageal variceal bleeding refractory to medical treatment and intractable ascites. It is often used as a bridge to liver transplant. Relative contraindications to this procedure include preexisting hepatic encephalopathy and ongoing alcohol abuse, which preclude liver transplantation. In elective situations, significant pulmonary hypertension, valvular heart disease, and congestive heart failure are contraindications to this procedure.[57] TIPS can be performed emergently in patients with end-stage liver disease as a way to treat ongoing bleeding. The risk for bleeding from TIPS is high and a blood bank sample should always be obtained. Adequate access and blood products, including fresh frozen plasma (FFP) should be secured. PVE is a relatively new technique designed to reduce blood flow in hepatic segments containing tumor while encouraging hypertrophy of remaining hepatic tissue. The goal is to improve survival among patients undergoing resection of hepatic neoplasms by increasing postsurgical hepatic tissue mass. Embolization is accomplished with portal vein angiography and coils. Postprocedure pain can be significant. Acute complications include bleeding, bile leak, pleural insults, and contrast reactions.

GASTROINTESTINAL AND GENITOURINARY INTERVENTIONS

Interventional radiologists perform direct-access GI procedures, the most common of which is the percutaneous gastrostomy tube (G-tube). Other variants include cecostomy and jejunostomy tubes. For G-tube placement, the stomach is distended with air via a nasogastric (NG) tube or a small French catheter and glucagon administered to decrease gastric emptying. Subsequent gastropexy is performed by some practitioners as a means of stabilizing the stomach; the stomach is entered with a needle and a wire and an appropriate tube is inserted and placed in the proper location. Acute complications include bleeding, violation of adjacent structures, and peritonitis. In many cases, these procedures can be tolerated with sedation except in situations where patients are at high risk for gastric aspiration (e.g., esophagectomy).

Genitourinary (GU) procedures in the radiology suite focus on obtaining direct access to the renal collecting system. Dilation and stenting can be performed, and suprapubic cystostomy is also a procedure commonly performed in radiology suites. Nephrostomy tube placement is performed to divert urine in the face of obstruction from stones, tumor, or other obstructive pathology. In general, the technique involves injecting contrast medium, identifying the renal pelvis, accessing it, and inserting a tube.[58] Prone positioning of the patient is preferred, which generates an attendant list of potential anesthesia concerns including airway issues, pain management, access, and more. In formulating the anesthesia plan, one must carefully weigh the risks and benefits of prone sedation versus general anesthesia. Factors to take into consideration include patient body habitus and hemodynamic condition, proceduralist skill, and duration of procedure (e.g., accessing a dilated renal pelvis in a thin patient may be quicker than in a morbidly obese patient).

PERCUTANEOUS INTERVENTIONS FOR ONCOLOGY

Interventional oncology is a rapidly expanding area and is revolutionizing oncologic care. These treatment modalities are gaining momentum over surgical interventions. Imaging guidance is achieved via CT, ultrasound, or fluoroscopy. Transarterial chemoembolization and percutaneous ablations (with microwave or to a lesser extent radiofrequency, laser, cryoablation, or alcohol) can be directed at tumors and image-guided insertion of radioactive materials can be performed. Commonly, hepatic, kidney, lung, and adrenal lesions are targeted. Complications are similar to those of other percutaneous interventions. Positioning depends on the site to be accessed. Anesthesia services are frequently used as these patients are truly high risk for surgical intervention. General anesthesia works best as the interventions may be intermittently painful, control of breathing may be optimal, and patient cooperation may not be compatible with the level of sedation required.[59] Postprocedure patients can experience pain, malaise, and nausea and vomiting, as part of a postembolization syndrome or postablation syndrome. High-dose steroids can be beneficial in prophylaxis and non-opioid analgesics can be beneficial in treating symptoms.[60,61]

Procedures Guided by Computed Tomography, Positron Emission Tomography, and Magnetic Resonance Imaging

COMPUTED TOMOGRAPHY

CT is now a commonly used guidance modality for a broad array of percutaneous interventions, and CT fluoroscopy, which combines the improved imaging capacity of CT with the real-time imaging of fluoroscopy, is also widely used. CT is used to guide both diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. Diagnostic undertakings include biopsies and drainage of fluid collections; therapeutic interventions include tumor ablation and injections for pain management. Procedures occurring in the CT suite encompass the usual constraints of radiation exposure on operators and anesthesiologists; patients are at risk for bleeding and contrast reaction. In addition, some special preprocedural considerations are important. Obese patients may not fit inside the scanner, and longer needles and drains may be needed. Positioning in the scanner may be difficult, and the usual airway considerations apply, especially because it is nearly impossible for the anesthesiologist to have continuous access to the head. For the most part, biopsies performed under CT guidance can be accomplished with sedation, but when the stimulation is intense, repeated breath-holds are required, or when the procedure is complex, general anesthesia may be needed. For patients with significant comorbidities (obesity, pulmonary or cardiac compromise, chronic pain, or history of difficult intubation), securing the airway before the procedure is prudent.

Computed Tomography–Guided Biopsies

CT guidance is useful for obtaining biopsy tissue for cytologic or histologic examination. Needles range from 25 to 18 gauge, and the patient is positioned to minimize the distance from skin to lesion and to maximize the safety of the approach. Liver biopsies are usually performed with the patient supine or slightly oblique, and retroperitoneal masses may require lateral decubitus or prone positioning. For the most part, it is helpful to the interventionalist if the level of sedation remains consistent throughout the procedure, so that large shifts in target location resulting from alterations in ventilation do not occur. However, levels of stimulation during these procedures can vary tremendously, presenting considerable challenge to the anesthesiologist if general anesthesia is not planned. Postprocedure bleeding can occur for these patients, especially those with bleeding diathesis (e.g., cirrhosis); thus, obtaining a blood bank sample is reasonable. Biopsies of carcinoid or adrenal tumors can be equally problematic, whether in the radiology suite percutaneously or in the OR. In both cases, stimulation of hormone release can precipitate severe hypotension or hypertension, which can be difficult to manage. If pheochromocytoma or carcinoid are suspected, pretreatment should be considered.

Computed Tomography–Guided Therapeutic Interventions

CT-guided therapeutic interventions include catheter drainage, ablation of tumors, and injections for pain management. Anesthetic planning for these procedures requires understanding of patient comorbidities and the techniques of the interventionalists. Excellent communication between anesthesiologist and interventionalist is needed for coordination of procedure and anesthetic because unanticipated patient movement or interventional shortfall can have drastic consequences for procedural outcome.

Catheter Drainage

CT-guided abscess drainage has become common. Options include the modified Seldinger and trocar techniques. Although local anesthesia may suffice for superficial collections, the insertion or dilation phase of the needle or trocar and the subsequent anticipated trajectory required for deeper fluid collections may be quite painful. Before the procedure, the proceduralist and anesthesiologist should discuss the intended approach, potential anesthetic choices, and backup planning for transitioning to a deeper plane of sedation or anesthesia. Preemptive planning can make the difference between a smooth procedure with a good outcome and a prolonged, difficult intervention. Anesthesiologists should be prepared to treat potential complications, which can occur as a result of injury of surrounding structures.

Computed Tomography–Guided Ablation

A variety of ablation techniques are now used to target malignant neoplasms. Percutaneous injection of alcohol (95%) or phenol (6%) is used to target tumors. Alcohol can be instilled using needles or catheters, but the injection is usually quite painful. Large volumes of alcohol or inadvertent injection into a vascular structure can cause tachycardia and respiratory depression. These techniques are older and not as frequently used. More popular ablation techniques involve the use of radiofrequency ablation, cryoablation, and microwaves. These procedures may be lengthy because they involve precise placement of applicators for the delivery of the ablation tool, whatever that may be. Reproducible breath-holds may be needed to facilitate placement. Radiofrequency ablation induces coagulative necrosis at temperatures above 50°C; the heating process can produce pain, whereas cryoablation is a less painful procedure.[62,63] As stated previously, postablation syndrome can occur and is characterized by fever, malaise, nausea, vomiting, and right upper quadrant pain. Dexamethasone may be helpful in prophylaxis. Regional techniques can be used for primary anesthetic and for postprocedural pain.[64]

Computed Tomography–Guided Injections for Pain Management

Procedures for pain management include phenol and alcohol injections into a plexus, ganglion, or nerve. Neurolysis is the intended outcome. Injection of steroids into joints for local pain management and mitigation of inflammatory processes is also performed. Many patients requiring these procedures are tolerant to pain medication. Body habitus may be an important factor in these patients as well, and depending on the source of pain, patients with cancer may be especially challenging in terms of attendant comorbidities. Most often these are palliative procedures. Discussion frequently revolves around addressing advanced directives prior to start of anesthesia.

POSITRON EMISSION TOMOGRAPHY AND POSITRON EMISSION TOMOGRAPHY COMPUTED TOMOGRAPHY

PET is an imaging technique used for diagnosis, staging, and follow-up of malignancies. Scanning is undertaken after injection of a radiolabeled glucose analogue fluorodeoxyglucose (18F-FDG), which is taken up by malignant cells preferentially and is not metabolized, thereby serving as a tumor marker. FDG-PET is used to distinguish benign from malignant lesions, identify metabolically active portions of necrotic tumors, and monitor responses to treatment. The combination of PET/CT provides both the metabolic information of PET and the anatomic precision of CT. PET/CT-guided intervention is an emerging modality.[65] For these procedures, patients are imaged beginning 60 minutes after injection. Imaging may require serial positioning, during which PET and CT images are acquired sequentially, so care must be taken to maintain consistent patient positioning throughout the image acquisition so that misregistration of image overlap does not occur. PET scanners include a long, mobile gantry that both limits access to the patient and requires that monitoring equipment be long enough to accommodate motion of the table.

Hence, PET/CT suites represent another potentially challenging anesthetizing location. Whenever possible, anesthesiologists should be involved in the planning of these suites because wall-mounted gases, suction, and installed monitoring equipment must be strategically placed. It is likely in the future that PET will be used to augment CT-guided interventions; therefore, planning a space that will allow inclusion of anesthesiology equipment will ensure uneventful interventions and optimal outcomes.

MAGNETIC RESONANCE–GUIDED INTERVENTIONS

MRI is an ionizing radiation-free technique that uses magnetic fields and radio waves to create images. The quality of soft tissue images generated by MRI surpasses that of ultrasound or CT. MRI is still largely a diagnostic tool but is emerging as an interventional modality as well. Because MRI can acquire multiplanar, temperature-sensitive, and contrast-enhanced images, complete visualization of interventional implements such as wires or needles is possible.[58] Image quality is proportional to magnet strength. Field strength, measured in Tesla units, ranges from low (0.1-0.5 T), medium (0.5-1.0 T), high (1.5-3.0 T), and ultrahigh (>3.0 T). Imaging sequences can be manipulated to highlight tissue characteristics based on water content, vascularity, and presence of hemosiderin. The superiority of MRI-generated soft tissue images facilitates biopsy and ablation of structures that evade CT or ultrasound.[59]

Physical Constraints of Magnetic Resonance Imaging Suites

All equipment used in the MRI suite must be MRI compatible meaning that the equipment will not cause harm to the patient, affect image quality, or be affected by the MRI scanner. Objects containing iron or stainless steel become mobile projectiles in an MRI suite because of the magnetic field regardless of their size. Therefore, special care must be taken to ensure that all equipment used in an MRI suite is unaffected by magnetic attractive forces, heating, or current induction. Similarly, patients themselves must be screened. Any implanted devices must be assessed for MRI compatibility. Patients with pacemakers, implantable cardioverter-defibrillators (ICDs) (see also Chapter 38), cochlear implants, pumps, nerve stimulators, or other metal objects such as aneurysm clips, metal fragments, or bullets, should not be scanned. These objects are subject to heating and movement. Increasingly, vascular clips, staples, orthopedic implants, heart valves, pacemakers, and other prostheses are non-ferromagnetic and scanning of patients with these implants is possible. Monitoring devices are increasingly available in MRI-compatible format, as are interventional equipment, surgical equipment, and anesthesia equipment.[66] Detailed information regarding MRI safety is available in Chapter 89 and elsewhere.

Claustrophobic or large patients may be unable to tolerate being inside of an MRI machine, making even diagnostic procedures difficult for them. Newer MRIs combine a wider bore with high-field systems, improving accessibility and making it easier for patients to tolerate procedures. Because interventional MRI requires constant movement in and out of the scanner, typical interventions take much longer than the same procedures done elsewhere. Emergencies must be planned for because the MRI interventional suite may be isolated, and conventional emergency equipment may not be MRI compatible. Even a standard laryngoscope can become a deadly missile in an MRI suite.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging–Guided Interventions

In cases in which CT is inadequate, MRI may be useful because of its multiplanar capability. MRI has been used to guide breast and prostate biopsies and biopsies of other tumors not well visualized by other means. For the most part, local anesthesia and sedation suffice for these procedures. Tumor ablation using cryoablative technology can be performed in the MRI suite. This procedure can be done with ultrasound or CT as well, and the choice of MRI as an imaging modality indicates the need for precise soft tissue imaging. MRI also provides better visualization of tissue during freezing and thawing than CT or ultrasound, and MRI-guided cryoablation is safe and effective for liver, kidney, breast, and prostate tumors and in the treatment of uterine fibroids.[67] For these cases, repeated breath-holds may be needed, and the procedures may be lengthy. Pain is not uncommon during freezing and heating of tissues; therefore, general anesthesia may be required.

Bleeding is the most common complication after some of these procedures (also see Chapter 50). Thrombocytopenia is a rare but serious complication of extensive liver ablation. Extensive ablations can also induce myoglobinemia or myoglobinuria. Cryoablation of adrenal lesions can induce hypertensive crises as normal adrenal tissue responds to thawing.[68] MRI can facilitate the use of focused high-intensity ultrasound therapy by providing more precise imaging. Clinical trials of this technique are in progress. Temperature-sensitive MRI images can assess dosage of ultrasound and gadolinium-enhanced MRI images can assess tissue response. MRI offers many potential advantages that may broaden the scope of current interventional procedures because of its capacity to provide improved imaging over that available with CT or ultrasound. The need to develop MRI-safe environments, equipment, and monitoring and to understand the limitations of sedation and need for anesthesia during long and uncomfortable procedures are the next steps in extending the usage of this modality.

Image-Guided Procedures for Specialty Areas: Neuroradiology and Interventional Cardiology

Neuroradiology and interventional cardiology are considered here as specialties because they each mirror areas that anesthesiologists have also chosen to designate as areas of specialization or fellowship training (neuroanesthesia and cardiac anesthesiology) (see also Chapter 57). The language of neurology, neuroradiology, cardiology, and interventional cardiology is part of the language of neuroanesthesia and cardiac anesthesia. Thus, a platform for clear communication exists and should be used to optimize procedural outcome. Of course, as mentioned earlier in this chapter, common vocabulary is necessary but not sufficient; mutual respect, a culture of safety and learning, and a functional teamwork structure are important elements of a successful unit.

Advances in neuroradiology and interventional cardiology have been incredibly rapid—technology has developed and target patient populations have broadened. In both these areas, percutaneous approaches to formerly surgical problems have multiplied, as has the potential for the involvement of anesthesiologists. In many ways, the development of new techniques represents a "disruptive technology"[69] within the field of medicine that promises to further blur distinctions between medical and surgical treatments. The unpredictable and demanding new landscape of novel interventional cases is the future of the practice and the success of these new, cutting-edge interventions relies on our adaptability.

Procedures in the Neuroradiology Suite

The field of interventional neuroradiology has grown broadly and rapidly as a result of technological advances in devices (catheters, coils, and stents), improved imaging techniques, and safer contrast media (see also Chapter 57). Cerebral angiography remains the gold standard for imaging the cerebral vasculature. Diagnostic cerebral angiography usually can be performed with conscious sedation while interventional procedures require a broad range of anesthesiology care due to the complexity of the techniques, need for a still patient, and long procedure duration. Certain procedures generate hemodynamic perturbations that require management by the anesthesiologist. On the other hand, some procedures (i.e., carotid stenting) can be done with the patient awake, to facilitate neurologic assessment. Anesthesia for each of these procedures must be considered in concert with patient comorbidities and status on a case-by-case basis. Although the technical details of neuroradiology procedures are beyond the scope of this chapter (see Chapter 57), the basic focus and required steps in commonly performed interventions are outlined here.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR ANESTHESIOLOGISTS IN THE INTERVENTIONAL SUITE

As with other areas outside of the OR, physical characteristics of the interventional suite affect the practice of anesthesia (see also Chapter 39). Equipment makes access to the patient's head difficult and radiation exposure must be considered as these procedures emit large amounts of radiation due to bi-plane imaging techniques. In addition, contrast reactions must be anticipated. Because of the intricacy of the procedures, uncooperative patients and those with impaired consciousness or movement disorders should be considered candidates for general anesthesia. If time permits, arterial lines are advisable; if not, the neurointerventionalist can upsize a femoral sheath to permit arterial monitoring. Other neuromonitoring technologies can be helpful as indirect measures of cerebral perfusion; electroencephalography and somatosensory, motor, and brainstem evoked potentials have all been studied in this regard. Many neuroanesthesiologists use opioids, avoiding inhalational agents because of their confounding effects on electroencephalography and evoked potentials. As in the OR and other non-OR sites, the anesthesiologist and proceduralist need to be aware of each other's plan, progress, and complications.

ENDOVASCULAR TREATMENT OF CEREBRAL ANEURYSMS

Endovascular treatment of cerebral aneurysms achieves percutaneous isolation of aneurysms from the circulation by placement of a soft platinum coil within the aneurysm (see also Chapter 57. Intraaneurysmal embolization may require the placement of several coils. Coiling procedures are least complex in aneurysms with a small, narrow neck. Coiling of wide-necked aneurysms requires the introduction of a stent with the coil subsequently introduced through the stent.[51] Stent implantation, which requires preprocedure and postprocedure anticoagulation, increases bleeding risk; therefore, stent-assisted coil embolization is limited to unruptured aneurysms. Endovascular treatment with coils demonstrated better outcomes than surgical clipping in patients who sustained a subarachnoid hemorrhage related to an aneurysm, but clipping improved resolution of cranial neuropathies.[70]

Complications include aneurysm rupture or thromboembolism. If rupture occurs, heparin should be reversed with protamine (1 mg/100 IU heparin) and the arterial blood pressure decreased by the anesthesiologist. The usual course of action is to continue the coiling as quickly as possible. Thromboembolic events, usually platelet related, occur in 3% of cases and cause permanent neurologic deficit in 1.7% to 5% of cases [71] (see also Chapter 50). If a thromboembolic event occurs, the proceduralist will make an attempt to dissolve or remove the clot with either a mechanical device or the intraarterial administration of a thrombolytic or antiplatelet agent.

Some aneurysms have no neck or are inaccessible. This is the case most commonly with cavernous, petrous, extracranial vertebral, internal carotid, or giant aneurysms of the subarachnoid space. Treatment of these aneurysms requires parent artery occlusion, which is possible only if good collateral flow exists. This requires a preliminary procedure known as a parent artery balloon test occlusion.[72] It involves first advancing a wire to the site of the proposed artery sacrifice. A neurologic examination is then performed, heparin is administered to prolong the activated clotting time, and a balloon is inflated to occlude the artery. Neurologic examination follows. In some institutions radionuclide enhanced cerebral vascular studies are undertaken. If the patient tolerates occlusion, coiling may proceed. If not, a surgical intracranial bypass may be required.

ENDOVASCULAR TREATMENT OF ARTERIOVENOUS MALFORMATIONS

AVMs in the brain are an area of direct connection between small arteries and the venous system without normally intervening capillaries. The usual presentation of this lesion is intracranial hemorrhage. Patients with AVM must be angiographically evaluated for the presence of associated aneurysms. This evaluation involves catheterization of selective feeder arteries to determine the precise source of the hemorrhage. Current therapy for cerebral AVM includes embolization, microsurgical resection, stereotactic radiosurgery, or combination treatment. Embolization preceding surgery can minimize bleeding and reduce AVM size. Small AVMs may be appropriate for endovascular treatment. Techniques for embolization of AVMs in the neuroradiology suite include the use of flow-directed microcatheters, solid occlusive devices, particulates, and liquid embolic agents. Complications include embolization of post-AVM vessels precipitating rupture, passage of embolic material into the pulmonary circulation, and microcatheter entrapment.[73]

Interventional Neuroradiology: Acute Stroke Treatments

Acute embolic stroke treatment has evolved significantly over the last 10 years. Intravenous r-tPA treatment has been supplemented with intraarterial thrombolysis as it allows extension of the treatment time window from 3 to 6 hours, delivers a higher concentration of lytic drug to the target vessel, yields higher recanalization rates, and can be combined with other interventional techniques.

Initially, a detailed cerebral angiogram is obtained and the level of occlusion is identified. A microcatheter is inserted over a microguidewire, contrast is injected, and the clot is localized. At this point, r-tPA is injected beyond the clot and the catheter is pulled back through the thrombus. If the occlusion persists, mechanical means of clot disruption or extraction are considered. This must be undertaken within 8 hours of the event. Several devices are available for retrieval or aspiration. Stent placement or angioplasty is also possible. A recent study of thrombectomy in patients treated within 8 hours demonstrated a recanalization rate of 57.3% of treatable vessels and 69.5% after adjunctive therapy. Thirty-nine percent of patients had favorable outcomes.[74] The therapeutic window available for interventions is 6 hours after the patient was last seen as normal for intraarterial thrombolysis and 8 hours for mechanical clot disruption. The recently published DAWN trial showed that the time window for endovascular thrombectomy may be extended to 24 hours with certain selection criteria.[75]

Patients presenting with acute stroke can range in presentation from relatively stable to severely compromised. Often the anesthesia team has little time to gather preoperative information. Evidence from studies suggests that anesthetic choice may have an impact on neurological outcomes. General anesthesia may provide comfort and an immobile patient; however, it can also prolong time to treatment and produce unfavorable hemodynamic perturbations. Monitored anesthesia care, on the other hand, allows for quicker intervention and fewer hemodynamic swings; however, patients may be uncooperative and at risk of aspiration as the airway is not protected. To date there are no randomized controlled trials, but retrospective studies suggest that sedation may offer improved neurological outcomes.[76] Anesthetic choice should first and foremost be guided by the patient's condition and tailored to each individual situation.

Invasive blood pressure monitoring is preferable and can be obtained after the procedure is started as long as it does not delay time to treatment. If intracranial pressure is an issue, a bolt or extraventricular drain may be necessary to measure intracranial pressure during the procedure.

Interventional Cardiology Procedures: General Considerations for the Electrophysiology and Catheterization Laboratories

For the past 20 years, medicine has witnessed a crescendo of new procedures in electrophysiology and interventional cardiology. In parallel, the need for anesthesiology involvement has increased. For instance, the electrophysiology laboratory now offers expanded treatment options for patients with late-stage heart failure and complex arrhythmias. Because many of these procedures are long and involved, most are performed with general anesthesia or a combination of sedation and general anesthesia. Similarly, percutaneous treatment of structural heart disease has become part of the repertoire of interventional cardiologists creating new and exciting opportunities for cardiac anesthesiologists. The opportunity to provide real-time echocardiographic guidance represents a new horizon for cardiac anesthesiologists who can now care for structural heart disease patients as co-proceduralists (further discussed in the addendum to this chapter).

Many patients in both the electrophysiology and catheterization laboratories have significant comorbidities. The proceduralists involved may be unaware of the ramifications for procedural success. In this new and challenging arena, collaboration and planning between interventionalist and anesthesiologist are required to ensure patient safety and optimize outcome. A clear understanding of the procedure to be performed, possible pitfalls, and unique patient characteristics is necessary for the formulation of a safe and effective plan. As always, a common knowledge base and vocabulary facilitate integration of care.

THE ELECTROPHYSIOLOGY LABORATORY ENVIRONMENT: UNIQUE CHALLENGES FOR ANESTHESIOLOGISTS

This section presents an overview of electrophysiology laboratory environments, the evolution and future pathways of current practices, cases performed in each venue, and current anesthetic approaches. Common electrophysiology laboratory procedures include the following (see also Chapter 38):

1. Electrophysiology studies
2. Atrial and ventricular ablation procedures
3. Implantation and removal of cardioverter-defibrillator and pacing devices

Invasive cardiology procedures performed in the cardiac catheterization laboratory include the following:

1. Diagnostic cardiac catheterizations and coronary interventions
2. Peripheral vascular diagnostic and therapeutic procedures
3. Implantation of intraaortic balloon pumps (IABPs) and percutaneous left ventricular assist devices
4. Amelioration of structural heart disease by the placement of intracardiac devices

These procedures potentially require the involvement of anesthesiologists if the patient has significant comorbidities. However, some ablations and electrophysiology studies and some device implants and removals can be performed with nurse-administered sedation. Some procedures are lengthy and technically demanding and require that the patient be still; in such situations, preservation of hemodynamic stability and need for a motionless field may indicate the need for a general anesthetic.

The electrophysiology and catheterization laboratory environments differ significantly from the OR. It is important for anesthesiologists to recognize the limitations of the venue and understand the flow of cases and responsibilities of ancillary personnel. Innovation and flexibility are necessary with respect to equipment availability and positioning, and the nature and tempo of the anesthesiology-cardiology interface.

Room Configuration and Equipment Layout

Electrophysiology and catheterization laboratories are built with separate control stations and procedure rooms. The control area is shielded from radiation and is the vantage point from which the progress of the procedure can be recorded. An operator may record procedural and patient monitoring data as well as video and audio information. The operator may also engage in digital record keeping. The ability to manipulate anesthetic equipment is typically not included in the array of controls in the station.

Within the procedure room itself, cardiologists, anesthesiologists, nurses, and radiology technicians contribute to the care of the patient during the procedure. It can be daunting to know who is who and who is responsible for what; thus, it is best to ask if unsure. In an emergency, understanding who is in charge of a life-saving therapy (i.e., the defibrillator) can eliminate confusion and save lives.

The procedure room includes fluoroscopy equipment (x-ray tube and C-arm), which usually surrounds the patient's head making access difficult. The procedure table is mobile and screens for viewing the procedure are typically at 90 degrees to the anesthesiologist. Sterile tables for the cardiologist, closets or portable storage units for various catheters and wires for the procedures, and blood analysis machines may take up a significant amount of space, which can make the inclusion of anesthesia equipment (machine, cart, pumps, monitors) challenging. Ceiling lead screens and procedure table lead skirts are typically not available to the anesthesiology team and thus protection from radiation often requires the use of portable lead screens wheeled between the anesthesia area and the fluoroscopy equipment.

The anesthesiologist should become familiar with the contents of each procedure room. Gas outlets and suction, monitors for vital signs, the cardioverter-defibrillator, emergency medications, and airway equipment are critical and may not be optimally or even obviously placed. Longer tubing or extensions may be needed for ventilator hoses, intravenous lines, and suction. Electrical outlets may not be sensibly located, requiring the use of extension cords. Other equipment frequently found in these rooms may include ventricular assist devices, IABP, device programmers, and echocardiography machines. Space can become an issue during complex cases when a plethora of equipment is needed.

The fluoroscopy table and fluoroscopy equipment are controlled by radiology technicians and cardiologists. These move during the procedure to facilitate imaging, sometimes with no warning. As with all NORA locations, the local availability of extra equipment and an emergency airway cart becomes essential when the anesthesia workroom is not nearby. With cardiac patients, time can be especially critical. An anesthesia cart stocked with intravenous lines, airway equipment, and essential medications is important in the electrophysiology and catheterization laboratories. All personnel in the laboratory should be informed about the location and names of emergency equipment, particularly when an anesthesiologist is working alone.

Anesthesiologists in the Electrophysiology Laboratory

Clinical electrophysiology has redefined itself over the past 20 years (see also Chapter 38). Advanced technology and increased demand have driven exponential growth in the number of electrophysiology procedures. Additionally, the scope of these procedures has also dramatically changed from simple diagnostic procedures to major life-saving therapeutic interventions. More than 14 million Americans are affected by arrhythmias and approximately 6 million are affected by heart failure,[77] many of whom require hospitalization and complex medical care. ICDs reduce mortality and morbidity in those with malignant tachyarrhythmias as well as in patients with a reduced ejection fraction,[78] and as a result, implantations and revisions of these devices have skyrocketed.[79]

The performance of many of these procedures frequently mandates the administration of general anesthesia because of procedure duration and patient comorbidities that increase the difficulty of tolerating a procedure with sedation alone. Optimal anesthetic planning requires the anesthesiologist to integrate patient comorbidities, the nature of the arrhythmia, and the tempo and framework of electrophysiology procedures. This section reviews the most commonly performed electrophysiology procedures.

DIAGNOSTIC ELECTROPHYSIOLOGY STUDIES

Abnormal heart rhythms occur from many etiologies and range from being asymptomatic to creating hemodynamic instability and cardiac compromise. In general, these rhythms result in uncoordinated or ill-timed contractions and can be too slow or too fast. Bradyarrhythmias arise from either abnormal impulse generation or abnormal impulse propagation, and the disease may occur at the level of the sinus node, the atrioventricular node, or the His-Purkinje system. Tachyarrhythmias that are regular with a normal QRS include supraventricular tachycardias (SVT) such as atrial flutter, atrioventricular nodal reentry tachycardia (AVNRT), atrioventricular reciprocating tachycardia (AVRT), and atrial tachycardia. Supraventricular tachyarrhythmias with a normal QRS that are irregular include atrial fibrillation and multifocal atrial tachycardia. Tachyarrhythmias with a wide QRS may still be reflective of a supraventricular tachyarrhythmia but with aberrancy due to a preexisting bundle branch block or may originate within the ventricle as a ventricular tachycardia (VT).[80,81]Arrhythmias can have many etiologies including overactive electrical foci or structural heart disease leading to scar-triggered electrical activity. Common electrophysiologic generators of arrhythmias include abnormal automaticity, anatomic reentry, and triggered activity.

These abnormalities can be identified with diagnostic electrophysiology studies, which are usually undertaken in conjunction with a therapeutic procedure to either treat a specific arrhythmia or place a device (see also Chapter 38). Diagnostic studies can determine the electrophysiologic etiology of specific symptoms or events. Intracardiac recordings are made from catheters placed via femoral venous access into the high right atrium, bundle of His, coronary sinus, and right ventricular apex or right ventricular outflow tract. Arrhythmias are induced by programmed stimulation.[82] For these studies, sedation with benzodiazepines and short-acting opioids is usually sufficient. Drugs that may affect inducibility of certain arrhythmias should be avoided.

CATHETER ABLATION

Treatment of certain arrhythmias may be accomplished using percutaneous catheter-based ablation techniques. Radiofrequency energy (thermal injury) and cryotherapy (cold-induced injury) are most commonly used for ablation; both energy sources can be painful when delivered to target tissues. Ablation techniques are used for arrhythmias that are refractory to pharmacologic therapy. These arrhythmias may include SVTs such as AVNRT, Wolf-Parkinson-White syndrome (antidromic AVRT), atrial flutter, and atrial fibrillation. With regard to atrial fibrillation: recent American College of Cardiology (ACC) and American Heart Association (AHA) Atrial Fibrillation Guidelines state that in patients with little or no left atrial enlargement, catheter ablation is a “reasonable alternative to pharmacologic therapy” to help prevent recurrence of atrial fibrillation.[83] Atrial fibrillation may be treated with pulmonary vein isolation or, if complicated by an uncontrollable rapid ventricular response, ablation of the atrioventricular node and placement of a permanent pacemaker. In select patients, VT can be treated with ablation as well, such as that arising from coronary artery disease or arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia.[84]

During ablation procedures, catheters are placed throughout the cardiac chambers and programmed stimulation is performed from different sites to induce tachyarrhythmias. Complex mapping techniques localize the source of the arrhythmia to identify the exact intracardiac location to which the energy must be applied. Because of the precision required for mapping and the application of energy, a still field is required. Many catheter ablation procedures, such as atrial flutter ablations, can be performed with sedation; sedation may, in fact, be preferred as arrhythmias can be suppressed with general anesthesia. However, procedures such as atrial fibrillation ablations can require 4 to 6 hours of procedure time followed by a 30-minute observation time after ablation with repeat stimulation (sometimes with the application of pharmacologic agents such as isoproterenol or adenosine) to ensure success of the procedure.[84] These longer procedures may be challenging to conduct with monitored anesthesia care as undersedation may result in back pain and patient movement, and oversedation may result in snoring or partial airway obstruction with resultant swinging of the intraatrial septum making transseptal catheter placement difficult; hence, general anesthesia may be required for optimal procedural conditions and patient comfort.

The quest for a near static field has led to the rising use of HFJV, particularly in atrial fibrillation ablations because sustained contact between the catheter and the area around the pulmonary veins is often required. HFJV aims to eliminate cardiac translation in the thoracic cavity due to tidal ventilation and reduce the potential for catheter instability[85]; this technique may decrease procedure time,[86] though patient and proceduralist characteristics such as ejection fraction and case volume performed by the electrophysiologist may be influential.[87] HFJV typically requires monitoring of arterial CO_2 either via arterial blood gas analysis or with intermittent traditional mechanical ventilation to obtain an end-tidal CO_2 measurement. Hypercarbia refractory to adjustments in jet ventilation settings may require a transition back to traditional ventilation. Due to the unpredictable delivery of volatile anesthetic with HFJV, total intravenous anesthetic techniques are typically necessary.

The anesthetic management of electrophysiologic ablation procedures involves several other concerns.[88,89] Paralysis should be avoided during ablation so that phrenic nerve stimulation and activity can be used as an alert to avoid its injury; remifentanil or sufentanil infusions can be administered in this setting. The esophageal temperature should be monitored for conductive heat transfer to the esophagus, which can result in esophageal injury; the correct position of the temperature probe can be verified easily with fluoroscopy. Radiofrequency (as opposed to cryotherapy) ablation may require irrigation, which can result in the administration of a substantial amount of fluid to the patient over the duration of the case; a careful tally and regular assessment of fluid balance may alert the anesthesiologist to the potential need for diuretic administration. Finally, cardiac tamponade may rarely occur as a result of ablation or wire perforation; this uncommon complication should be considered in the differential of hypotension of unknown origin or with narrowing of the pulse pressure. A diagnosis of tamponade can be confirmed with ultrasound (transesophageal, intracardiac, transthoracic) and requires reversal of heparin with protamine, placement of a pigtail catheter for drainage, and the potential involvement of a cardiothoracic surgeon.

Arterial line monitoring may be necessary for VT ablations due to the nature of the arrhythmia being induced. Arterial lines may not be required for other ablations (atrial fibrillation and other SVTs) unless desired for HFJV or for monitoring of patients with ventricular dysfunction, who may also require inotropic and vasoactive agents to maintain hemodynamic stability during arrhythmia induction. Close communication with the cardiologist is necessary in these situations. Frequently, electrical cardioversion is necessary during these cases.

ELECTROPHYSIOLOGIC DEVICES

Devices for the treatment or control of arrhythmias have diminished in size and increased in sophistication over the past 10 years (see also Chapter 38). More patients qualify for device implants, and hence the number of procedures for implantations, revisions, battery changes, and upgrades of devices has grown. The two most common types of devices are ICDs and pacemakers.

Implantable Cardioverter-Defibrillators

ICDs have been demonstrated to be efficacious and safe in a number of large, prospective multicenter randomized trials in patients with and without coronary artery disease. ICDs have been found to be particularly beneficial in patients with depressed left ventricular ejection fractions (35% or less).[90] The ACC, AHA, and the Heart Rhythm Society (HRS) guidelines detail the indications for ICD implantation and the conditions for which these devices prolong life and decrease the risk of sudden cardiac death.[91] With the advent of smaller biphasic, transvenous ICDs and experience gained over the years, it is now feasible for electrophysiologists to implant ICDs safely in the pectoral position in the electrophysiology laboratory. Local anesthesia combined with conscious sedation is frequently used for these procedures. Defibrillation threshold testing may be performed, and in these instances the role of the anesthesiologist may be crucial, particularly if patients have significant comorbidities. Testing the device requires deep sedation or general anesthesia and can be accomplished without an arterial line. External cardioverter-defibrillator pads are placed on the patient at the beginning of the procedure and serve as backup if the implanted device fails during the test. Defibrillation threshold testing is sometimes omitted due to elevated risk of the procedure in patients who may not have adequate physiologic reserve (such as those with untreated coronary artery disease). In addition, the newer ICDs may obviate the need for such maneuvers.

Subcutaneous ICDs (S-ICDs), which eliminate the need for transvenous leads, are also available for implantation. Although these devices detect and treat malignant VT and VF, they are incapable of providing anti-tachycardia pacing, advanced diagnostics, or radiofrequency interrogation with remote monitoring, and therefore are not appropriate for all patients. Implantation of these devices requires tunneling of a relatively large lead, which can be painful enough to require deep sedation or general anesthesia.[92]

Pacemakers

Pacemakers may have one lead (typically right ventricular), two leads (right atrial and right ventricular), or three leads (right atrial, right ventricular, and left ventricular via the coronary sinus) for the purpose of providing coordinated biventricular pacing for cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT). CRT with and without defibrillation systems is prescribed for both primary and secondary prevention of sudden cardiac death in patients with heart failure associated with both an ischemic and nonischemic etiology. The ACC/AHA/HRS guidelines gave CRT with or without an ICD a class I indication for those with a left ventricular ejection fraction 35% or less with a QRS duration 120 ms or greater and drug-refractory New York Heart Association functional class III or IV heart failure who are receiving optimal medical therapy.[91]

While single and dual lead pacemaker placements may be accomplished with conscious sedation and standard monitors, the anesthetic strategy for the implantation of biventricular ICDs requires greater thought. CRT implantation may be successfully accomplished with sedation but could require general anesthesia for a number of reasons. For example, the indications for CRT also function as significant patient comorbidities (e.g., ejection fraction less than 35% secondary to coronary artery disease or valvular heart disease that could be associated with pulmonary hypertension and right ventricular dysfunction), which may impact on the safety of performing sedation. These procedures may be complex and lengthy because of difficulty in positioning the left ventricular lead into the coronary sinus and great cardiac vein in the setting of distorted ventricular anatomy due to cardiac dilatation and advanced heart failure. In addition, valvular regurgitation can complicate lead positioning. Finally, lead dislodgement may occur immediately after lead placement, especially in patients with a large coronary sinus, further prolonging these procedures.

During any device placement, pneumothorax or coronary sinus perforation related to lead placement is possible. Coronary sinus perforation can immediately be recognized by contrast extravasation. Perforation of the coronary sinus or cardiac perforation related to right atrial or ventricular lead placement may cause cardiac tamponade, necessitating immediate pericardiocentesis. Paralytics should be avoided as well, so that lead placement resulting in diaphragmatic pacing can be immediately identified and avoided.

Anesthesiologists in the Catheterization Laboratory

Anesthesiology in the catheterization laboratory reflects the evolving range of therapies performed in this venue. Catheterization laboratories—initially the workplace of interventional radiologists (who were the "original" angiographers)—are now home to interventional cardiologists, vascular surgeons, and others who practice a broad range of therapies. All of these practitioners use fluoroscopy and a host of ever more sophisticated interventional technologies. Procedures can be peripheral or cardiac and range from the stenting of narrowed vessels to the implantation of prosthetic heart valves. Anesthesiology involvement ranges from providing monitored anesthesia care to providing a full cardiac anesthetic and performing transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) during the case.

PERCUTANEOUS CORONARY INTERVENTIONS

Percutaneous coronary interventional procedures for patients with both stable coronary artery disease and acute coronary syndromes have grown in the past 10 years. Percutaneous coronary interventions (PCIs) include coronary angioplasty (mostly performed immediately before coronary stenting) with both bare metal stents and drug-eluting stents, atherectomy procedures, and intracoronary thrombectomy procedures. PCI procedures are commonly performed in patients with 70% or greater intracoronary luminal atherosclerotic obstruction and myocardial ischemia in the context of stable coronary disease. The major benefit of PCI is to reduce or relieve symptoms of ischemic heart disease and increase aerobic capacity.[93] No significant difference in total mortality, nonfatal myocardial infarction, or other major cardiovascular events were demonstrated between patients randomized to aggressive medical therapy versus aggressive medical therapy plus PCI angioplasty with bare metal stenting.[94] But for patients who presented with acute coronary syndromes, PCI decreased mortality and recurrent myocardial infarction in contrast to medical treatment alone.[95]

PCIs can be performed with mild to moderate nurse-administered sedation under the direction of the cardiologist. Anesthesiologists are usually involved only when patients present with known severe comorbidities (e.g., oxygen-dependent COPD, opioid tolerance) or with the development of respiratory or hemodynamic compromise. If acute respiratory or hemodynamic decompensation occurs, anesthesiologists are often called emergently. In these circumstances, clear and direct communication with the cardiologist is required and management decisions usually need to be made expeditiously. Information such as medications given, intravenous access, and stage of the procedure must be communicated. As mentioned previously, access to the patient's head can be difficult due to x-ray equipment. If an airway needs to be established, it may be necessary to temporarily move the table and fluoroscopy equipment. Placement of an endotracheal tube is preferred to a LMA even in an elective situation because constant movement of the equipment can dislodge the LMA; however, an LMA can serve as a temporizing measure if placement of an endotracheal tube is difficult. During PCI, patients can be in a highly anticoagulated state, and a bleeding difficult airway is a nightmare in this context.

INTRAAORTIC BALLOON PUMPS AND PERCUTANEOUS VENTRICULAR ASSIST DEVICES

The IABP is a mechanical device inserted percutaneously into the aorta that increases myocardial oxygen delivery and cardiac output. The balloon, sitting approximately an inch distal to the subclavian artery, inflates and deflates in diastole and systole, respectively, thereby delivering counterpulsation. This increases coronary blood flow and myocardial oxygen delivery and decreases afterload resulting in a rise in cardiac output. The balloon pump is controlled by a programmed console, which inflates the balloon at time intervals linked to either an electrocardiogram trace or a pressure transducer at the distal tip of the catheter. The placement of an IABP is usually successful under conscious sedation unless the patient is compromised from a hemodynamic or respiratory standpoint, in which case the team may seek assistance from an anesthesiologist.

Percutaneous ventricular assist devices (PVADs) can provide cardiac output support during high-risk PCI or cardiogenic shock associated with myocardial infarction. Several types of PVADs are available. The TandemHeart device (CardiacAssist, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania) is a percutaneous left-atrial to femoral arterial bypass system consisting of a transseptal cannula, an arterial cannula, and an externally located centrifugal blood pump, which can deliver flow rates of up to 4 L/min.[96] An alternative percutaneous-based left ventricular assist device is the Impella (Abiomed, Danvers, Massachusetts), which comes in three sizes: 2.5, CP, or 5.0; cardiac outputs of either 2.5 L/min, 4.3 L/min, or 5.0 L/min can be achieved with these devices, respectively.[97] The Impella uses a cannula inserted retrograde via the femoral artery into the left ventricle across the aortic valve. These pumps do not require transseptal puncture, are smaller and easier to implant, and incorporate a microaxial pump into the catheter system thereby eliminating the need for extracorporeal blood. Anesthesiologists are often consulted for placement of these devices because the patients are unstable and/or present with a high likelihood of hemodynamic compromise. Depending on the procedure and state of the patient, either sedation or general anesthesia can be used. These devices achieve cardiac outputs that can completely replace left ventricular function; blood flow may not be pulsatile, so pulse oximetry and noninvasive blood pressure cuffs may not work properly. However, invasive monitoring is available via the arterial cannulation used during the procedure and arterial blood gas analysis can provide information on gas exchange. The choice of anesthetic, likely postprocedural care, and prognosis should be discussed with the cardiologist before the start of the case, if possible.

PERCUTANEOUS CLOSURE OF SEPTAL DEFECTS

The percutaneous closure of septal defects includes closure of PFOs and secundum atrial septal defects (ASDs). Initial studies assessing the efficacy of percutaneous closure of PFOs in patients who have suffered from a cryptogenic stroke showed no benefit.[98-100] However, these studies have recently been supplanted by several multicenter randomized controlled trials showing decreased rates of recurrent stroke, particularly in young patients with large shunts.[101-104] The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved use of the Amplatzer PFO Occluder (St. Jude Medical Inc., St. Paul, Minnesota)[105] based on the results of one of those studies, the RESPECT trial, which showed a 50% reduction in the rate of new strokes in patients using the occluder plus blood-thinning medications compared with blood-thinners alone.[103]

The Amplatzer Septal Occluder is used in clinical practice for closure of secundum ASDs. This occluder is a two-sided "clam shell" made up of two flat discs with a middle or "waist." The discs are made of nitinol (nickel and titanium) wire mesh and polyester fabric inserts, the latter of which create a nidus for tissue growth after placement.[106] The closure of PFOs tends to be simpler than the closure of ASDs. In patients with ASDs, it is important to clarify right ventricular function, pulmonary arterial pressures, and shunt fraction to formulate an optimal anesthetic plan. Success rates for PFO and ASD closure range from 79% to 100%.[107]

These occluder devices can also be used to close other types of defects such as paravalvular leaks and muscular or perimembranous ventricular septal defects (VSDs), either congenital or acquired. Reportedly, VSDs can be closed 96% of the time, with a 2% major complication rate with these devices.[108] In patients with traumatic (postmyocardial infarction) VSDs, hemodynamic instability is not unusual and complications are common during closure attempts. Tissue integrity is frequently compromised making placement of closure devices difficult. Visualization of the defect and guidance of device placement can also be challenging. Patients with postmyocardial infarction VSDs are more likely to have complications during closure of the defect.[109]

Complications of any device placement in the cardiac catheterization laboratory include air embolism, device embolization, malposition, thrombosis, arrhythmias, hypotension, valve dysfunction, cardiac perforation, and injury to non-target cardiac structures. It is critical that these complications be recognized and dealt with expeditiously. Rapid and effective communication is critical. Untoward events may be evident initially to anesthesiologists if they are guiding the procedure with TEE.

Echocardiography is often used during the placement of intracardiac septal occluder devices to help guide placement and confirm a successful result. TEE can be performed by cardiologists, anesthesiologists, or ultrasound technicians depending on institutional preference and availability of personnel, and if used, requires general anesthesia (see also Chapter 37). Although two-dimensional (2D) echocardiography is the most widely used imaging technique for preprocedural patient evaluation, multidetector row CT and cardiac MRI can also help to delineate structural intracardiac details. Intraprocedural three-dimensional (3D) TEE is also available.[110] Intracardiac echocardiography (ICE) can be used to guide the procedure, but this must be performed by the cardiologist because the controls are at the groin in the field. In cases in which TEE is not available or cannot be performed because of patient comorbidities, ICE is a reasonable alternative, in which case general anesthesia may not be needed.

PERIPHERAL ARTERIAL DISEASE

Peripheral arterial disease affects approximately 8 million Americans (see also Chapter 56). The prevalence of this disease increases with age and occurs more commonly in African Americans. Intermittent claudication and rest pain are the principal symptoms. Claudication occurs as a result of insufficient arterial blood flow and leg ischemia and is often described as pain, aching, or a sense of fatigue that is relieved at rest. Symptoms are most often experienced in the muscle bed supplied by the most proximal stenosis. Buttock, hip, or thigh claudication is related to obstruction of the aorta or iliac flow, calf claudication is commonly a result of either femoral or popliteal arterial stenosis, and ankle or pedal claudication is typically caused by either tibial or peroneal disease.[111]

According to ACC and AHA guidelines, percutaneous revascularization in patients with intermittent claudication should be considered when any one of the following circumstances is encountered:

1. Claudication symptoms significantly disable the patient.
2. The patient would benefit from an improvement in exercise.
3. Rehabilitation and pharmacologic therapy have not provided an adequate response.
4. A favorable risk-to-benefit ratio to performing the procedure exists.
5. The characteristics of the lesion permit appropriate intervention at low risk with a high likelihood of initial and long-term success, and/or the patient has limb-threatening ischemia, as manifested by rest pain, ischemic ulcers, or gangrene.[112]

The majority of cases are performed with sedation. The anesthesiologist may be critical to the interventional cardiologist during a peripheral vascular intervention because many of these patients are unable to lie still during the procedure because of rest pain symptoms and other related comorbidities. In addition, the procedure itself may create painful transient ischemia resulting in patient movement that may reduce the likelihood of success. Anesthesia care may also be required when the procedure is technically difficult and the patient is unable to cooperate or when vascular injury has occurred (i.e., formation of a hematoma).

PERCUTANEOUS VALVE REPAIR AND REPLACEMENT

Percutaneous technologies for the treatment of mitral regurgitation and aortic valve disease are presently available with ongoing development of devices and approaches. These procedures are a major addition to the repertoire of interventional cardiologists and represent an exciting new overlap of surgical and medical therapies for structural heart disease.

PERCUTANEOUS MITRAL VALVE REPAIR

Surgical repair is typically indicated for the treatment of symptomatic mitral regurgitation (with LVEF >30%) or asymptomatic mitral regurgitation with impaired left ventricular ejection fraction (EF 30% to ≤60%).[113] However, alternate techniques of percutaneous mitral valve repair are under investigation including leaflet repair, direct annuloplasty, and coronary sinus annuloplasty.[114]

Mitral regurgitation can be percutaneously repaired by placement of a MitraClip (Abbott Vascular, Abbott Park, Illinois), a clip-like device that creates an Alfieri edge-to-edge repair. After a transatrial septal puncture, the clip is positioned in the center of the mitral valve orifice. The clip is opened, passed into the left ventricular cavity, pulled back to contact the mitral valve leaflets, and then closed to create a double-orifice mitral valve.[114] Direct mitral valve annuloplasty such as with the Cardioband system (Valtech Cardio, Inc., Or-Yehuda, Israel) mimics a surgical annuloplasty but delivers the device transseptally and implants on the atrial side of the annulus using multiple anchor elements.[115,116] Devices that use the coronary sinus as a method of cinching the mitral annulus are investigational, and the safety and efficacy of this approach remains undetermined. General anesthesia, fluoroscopy, and TEE are used to help guide placement of these devices.[107]

Percutaneous Aortic Valve Replacement (Transcatheter Aortic Valve Replacement)

Percutaneous aortic valve replacement or transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVR) is a relatively new treatment in the U.S. for aortic stenosis. During the procedure, a replacement valve is crimped into a catheter and passed through the femoral artery to the aortic annulus. Rapid ventricular pacing is employed to minimize cardiac output while the prosthesis is deployed into the appropriate position after a balloon valvuloplasty. Transaortic and transapical insertions of transcatheter valves can also be performed by a multidisciplinary team in a hybrid OR setting. In the future, other variants of this procedure will likely evolve for placement of valves in other positions.

The concept of a transcatheter valve for percutaneous placement was initially presented in the early 1990s, and the first percutaneous heart valve for human use was developed by Cribrier and implanted in Europe in 2002.[117,118] Two devices currently exist for percutaneous implantation: the Edwards Lifesciences SAPIEN (Edwards Lifesciences, Irvine, CA) and the Medtronic CoreValve (Medtronic, Minneapolis, Minnesota). The Edwards SAPIEN valve received FDA approval in November 2011 and the CoreValve in January 2014.[119,120] The SAPIEN valve is a bovine pericardial prosthesis sutured into a balloon-expandable tubular metal stent, while the CoreValve is a porcine pericardial self-expanding valve prosthesis sutured into a nitinol stent.

The population of patients eligible for TAVR has expanded from patients who are not surgical candidates[126] to those who are high-risk surgical candidates,[121] and now encompass patients who are considered only intermediate-risk.[122] In high-risk patients with severe aortic stenosis, TAVR was found to be noninferior to surgical aortic valve replacement at 1 year in terms of survival. However, the transcatheter procedure was associated with a higher risk for stroke than the surgical replacement at 1 year and a higher risk for major vascular complications at 30 days. More patients undergoing TAVR demonstrated improved symptoms at 30 days, but no significant between-group difference was seen at 1 year.[121] In intermediate-risk patients, the rates of both death and disabling stroke at 2 years were comparable to those who underwent surgical aortic valve replacement; however, similar to the trial studying high-risk patients, the TAVR group had more major vascular complications and also showed improved symptoms compared with the surgery group at 30 days but not at other time points.[122] The use of TAVR for treatment of failing aortic bioprostheses (with valve-in-valve therapy) due to either stenosis or regurgitation has also been increasing. The rapid expansion of indications for TAVR has prompted a task force examining appropriate use criteria of this technology.[123]

CTs are typically obtained before the procedure to define valve size and anatomy. Patients are frequently elderly with severe valvular disease and attendant comorbidities; thus, planning for expected difficulties related to patient comorbidities and technical challenges is well worth the extra time. A team meeting before the procedure is worthwhile because elements of the patient's history often warrant interdisciplinary scrutiny and discussion.

Transfemoral TAVR can be performed in a cardiac catheterization laboratory or hybrid OR. At our institution, all percutaneous valve repairs are performed under general anesthesia with fluoroscopic and TEE guidance. As technology improves, the flow of cases will change. Presently, however, at our institution, the following list constitutes the framework for transfemoral cases:

Critical Procedural Steps During Transfemoral Transcatheter Valve Replacement

1. Place intravenous line and arterial line, induction.
2. Place PA line, larger access, cerebral SvO_2.
3. Conduct TEE, discussion of expected and unexpected findings with entire team.
4. Access femoral vasculature: arterial sheath, contralateral transfemoral aortic occlusion balloon, and place transvenous pacer.
5. Perform standard balloon aortic valvuloplasty: refine sizing and enlarge orifice.
6. Assess adequacy of rapid ventricular pacing.
7. Upsize sheath to (27 Fr) or appropriate introducer.
8. Advance transcatheter valve; assess position by fluoroscopy and echocardiography.
9. Deploy valve during rapid ventricular pacing.
10. Assess valve position and function.
11. Remove sheath and complete vascular closure.

Large peripheral intravenous lines should be placed for volume administration. Invasive arterial pressure monitoring is important because noninvasive blood pressure cuffs may not work when the patient is rapidly paced. Central access is useful for infusions and a Swan-Ganz catheter is recommended in compromised patients.

TEE plays a critical role in the management of patients undergoing TAVR (also see Chapter 37). Before any intervention, aortic stenosis with a trileaflet valve should be confirmed—TAVR cannot be performed with bicuspid valves. The degree of aortic insufficiency should be assessed before valvuloplasty, as the presence of preoperative mild to moderate aortic insufficiency may be protective in severe new-onset cases after balloon aortic valvuloplasty. Ejection fraction, degree of mitral and tricuspid regurgitation, presence of mitral annular calcification and mitral stenosis, estimated pulmonary artery pressures, and coronary artery takeoff location are also useful measurements. Accurate measurement of the aortic annulus aids in the choice of prosthetic valve size.

During the placement of the valve, real-time echocardiographic guidance, either 2D or 3D, can assess positioning of the prosthesis. Multiple attempts may be needed to ensure proper catheter and device placement with an acceptable result. Following valve deployment, rapid assessment of valve position, function, and perivalvular and central leaks is crucial; verification of the patency of the coronary ostia and absence of new ventricular wall motion abnormalities is critical as well. Communication and visual accessibility to all imaging during the procedure is vital to successful placement of the device. Patients may develop hemodynamic instability, myocardial ischemia, or significant arrhythmias during the case, so constant communication between anesthesiologist and cardiologist is critical. Planned extubation is reasonable assuming the patient's comorbidities and the course of the procedure warrant it.

Multiple aspects of this procedure may evolve in the future. For instance, the percutaneous femoral approach requires adequate endoluminal diameters, but as technology develops, smaller sheaths and more flexible valves will become available. Thus, in the future, tortuous iliac vessels or high athermanous burden may not preclude a femoral approach. In addition, the merits of intraprocedural TEE versus transthoracic echocardiography or fluoroscopy alone are under active debate.[124] Similarly, while general endotracheal anesthesia is preferred, institutions in the U.S. and Europe have reported successful outcomes with conscious sedation.[125]

Common Complications and Remedies

Vascular Avulsion, Perforation, or Dissection. A number of vascular problems can occur during insertion and removal of the introducer sheath. Vascular dissection or perforation, while rare, are known complications. Femoral vascular avulsion is possible on removal of the introducer sheath. Temporization of hemorrhage can be achieved with the distal aorta occlusion balloon residing in the contralateral femoral artery. This can prevent fatal hemorrhage in the event of a vascular catastrophe. If percutaneous access cannot be obtained, cut-downs or surgical access to the aortic bifurcation is possible. Vascular surgical repair is necessary in this situation.

Pacing Malfunction. Transvenous pacing is used to establish rapid ventricular pacing and a near-zero cardiac output state during ballooning of the aortic valve. If atrioventricular node dysfunction occurs after valvuloplasty or valve deployment, postdeployment pacing may be necessary. Poor communication during rapid ventricular pacing may be catastrophic. Loss of pacer capture during balloon valvuloplasty can place excessive traction on the native valve during balloon inflation, and unexpected ventricular ejection can embolize the valve from the annulus during deployment.

Valve Deployment. Patients respond idiosyncratically to balloon valvuloplasty; new-onset aortic insufficiency may require significant support and necessitate rapid valve introduction and deployment. Inotropic support may be necessary to maintain systemic blood pressure as balloons and crimped valves traverse the valve orifice. Invasive monitors typically reflect low cardiac outputs, falling cerebral SvO_2s, and high pulmonary artery pressures. The authors routinely have boluses of epinephrine, norepinephrine, and vasopressin available in a variety of concentrations.

Valves left prepared on the balloon but not deployed for significant amounts of time may open improperly, causing significant aortic insufficiency. Deployment of an additional device (valve-in-valve) may be necessary in this case.

Device Embolization. Embolization into the aorta can occur as a result of ejection because of inadequate pacer capture or inappropriately high deployment. Once a valve is in the aorta, it is irretrievable endovascularly. Valves lodged in the descending aorta have been reported and are tolerated; however, a second valve must still be deployed in the aortic position. Valve loss into the ventricle may occur if deployment is too low. This result requires surgery for retrieval and may be fatal if comorbidities are significant.

Coronary Occlusion. Coronary occlusion is a potential problem if calcium or native aortic valve tissue occludes a coronary ostium. Prior coronary artery bypass graft with patent grafts is partially protective. Coronary guidewires may be placed in patients who are at higher risk. Skilled intervention is required to reopen occluded coronary arteries. Clear interdisciplinary communication is essential in the management of regional wall motion abnormalities, ST-segment changes, or hemodynamic compromise.

Need for Cardiopulmonary Bypass. Cardiovascular collapse during transfemoral procedures may require cardiopulmonary support. Institutional variability exists regarding the type of support planned. Some institutions have a primed cardiopulmonary bypass pump in the room, even if the case is in a catheterization laboratory outside of the OR; others have percutaneous VAD support on standby.

Neurologic Events. Acute stroke is potentially detectable with unilateral changes in cerebral oximetry readings. The higher stroke rate of cohort A patients in the PARTNER trial was felt to be a result of both the introduction of a large balloon and valve apparatus across the aortic arch and ballooning of the calcified native valve. Anesthetics allowing for early neurologic assessment are preferred.

As patient acuity increases, safe and efficient care for the target population in the cardiac catheterization and electrophysiology laboratories is a concern for all anesthesiologists and cardiologists. Anesthesiologists are uniquely trained to care for this complicated patient population while permitting cardiologists to focus on the interventional procedure. Anesthesiologists, in collaboration with cardiologists, must establish guidelines for the interdisciplinary care of patients with complex issues. The goal is to enhance patient safety, procedural efficiency, and outcomes while advancing the frontiers of medical care in venues outside of the OR.

Interventional Echocardiography Anesthesiologists as Co-Proceduralists—The Road Ahead

As percutaneous interventions for structural heart disease increase in number and broaden in scope, the need for multidisciplinary input grows. Cardiac anesthesiologists traditionally perform TEE in the OR before and after cardiopulmonary bypass to diagnose structural problems and assess surgical repair. In the catheterization laboratory, growing usage of general anesthesia to support patients during complex procedures ideally positions cardiac anesthesiologists to perform this service in a new context.

Diagnostic echocardiography is important in the catheterization laboratory, as it is in the OR. However, the novel feature of TEE performed in the catheterization laboratory (interventional TEE) is the need for step-by-step guidance of intricate and highly technical intracardiac manipulations (see also Chapter 37).[126] Fluoroscopy—the traditional imaging modality for interventional cardiology procedures—entails significant radiation exposure, requires the use of intravenous contrast, and can be temporally and spatially imprecise. Interventional TEE provides precise adjunctive imaging for placement or removal of intracardiac devices, placement of transcatheter valves, and repairs of paravalvular leaks or other structural defects. In addition, cardiac anesthesiologists understand imaging in the context of anesthetic care and are capable of manipulating hemodynamics as observation of cardiac function requires. Functional interpretation of structural defects can be critical as repairs are made. In the catheterization laboratory or hybrid OR setting, cardiac anesthesiologists become co-proceduralists providing imaging, hemodynamic control, interpretation, and step-by-step guidance for interventionalists in the context of fixing abnormal cardiac anatomy. Real-time 3D guidance during catheter placement, ballooning, or device implantation is an important and new component of interventional cardiology. This is a time-sensitive, high-acuity undertaking. It is relatively new in intracardiac imaging and for cardiac anesthesiologists; it defines an exciting and important role that goes a step beyond the job of maintaining homeostasis during the stress of surgery.

Interventional TEE is performed during septal occlusion, paravalvular leak repair, and transcatheter valve replacement. As in the OR, comprehensive interventional TEE examination begins with assessment of cardiac structure and function in the context of the proposed procedure, including the primary defect and any associated pathology. Effective communication among team members is critical because the value of interventional 2D and 3D TEE is lost if mutual understanding is absent. To this end, information from fluoroscopic and echocardiographic images can augment each other when unusual anatomy or clinical circumstances are observed. Data from each imaging modality should be discussed if contradictory interpretations arise.

Interventional TEE includes both 2D and Doppler imaging complemented by 3D and real-time 3D assessments. It may be important to alternate between 2D and 3D imaging to clarify temporal and spatial details[127,128] so that accurate placement of wires and catheters can occur. Closure of paravalvular leaks or stenting of stenotic pulmonary veins, for example, may require both types of imaging. Real-time 3D imaging can clearly depict the proximity of equipment and devices to targeted defects by permitting rotation of acquisitions in all directions, thereby delineating structures in their native orientation. Although in the OR it is possible to correlate actual anatomy with TEE images while the chest is open and the patient is on bypass, this is not the case during percutaneous procedures. The accuracy of imaging and interpretation is therefore critical.

During TAVR, interventional echocardiography is important for optimization of valve placement and diagnosis of problems when they occur. After TAVR deployment, a comprehensive TEE is performed. Valve position and function is assessed, gradients are calculated, the absence of coronary ostial occlusion is confirmed, and the need for any remedial activity is discussed. This requires the input of proceduralists and cardiologists alike.

As technology evolves, percutaneous procedures for structural heart disease will become more sophisticated. As devices improve, the target populations will grow. Patients with congenital, acquired, and surgically created defects will become eligible for treatment by interventional cardiology procedures. Interventional TEE has emerged as the newest evolutionary phase of cardiac anesthesiology.[129] The development of collaborative relationships between interventional cardiologists and anesthesiologists provides the foundation for a robust, multidisciplinary interface, thus establishing a basis for advancement of clinical practice and a place for anesthesiologists at the forefront of medicine.

The Road Ahead: Toward a Comprehensive Strategy

As technology evolves, medical procedures performed in locations outside of the traditional OR environment will continue to increase and both the procedures and the patients who undergo the procedures will be more complex. As the population ages and medical therapies achieve increased effectiveness, more patients who in the past would not have been candidates for any intervention will be offered procedures that either prolong life or improve its quality. The current expansion of minimally invasive, nonsurgical approaches to disease will continue and, as a result of these changes, demand for anesthesiology services will escalate.

The experience with NORA procedures has taught us many lessons. Perhaps the most significant lessons include our understanding of the needs of the patients and proceduralists—and the expectation that the same standards of care will be required wherever anesthesia care is provided. As a result, anesthesiologists must be flexible, while also ensuring that the usual safeguards provided in the OR environment are extended to every other location in which we provide care. Inclusion of procedural areas within our practice requires a new model of service delivery. Over the past 30 years, anesthesiologists revolutionized safety, reliability, and the scope of perioperative practice. We must extend the same safety and quality to the care we provide in the non-OR locations. Seeing beyond the traditional role of anesthesiologists in the OR, we can create a niche as innovators of NORA in the same way that we have broadened our services by providing critical care coverage inside and outside the ICU and by widening the integration of care provided by acute and chronic pain management teams.

SOME ADDITIONAL CONSIDERATIONS

Operational Effectiveness

Operational effectiveness is a crucial component of providing clinical care in any setting. It is also required to ensure that each health system can successfully compete and remain financially solvent. For anesthesiologists providing care outside of the OR, we are critical participants in defining how care is provided and what resources are necessary to optimize care, while also being cognizant of the economics of our practices. We must provide more efficient and, in many cases, more flexible services in nontraditional settings as long as we remain attentive to patient needs and safety considerations. We also need to communicate when an anesthesia provider is required for some procedures, what equipment, supplies, and other needs must be met, and how to do so cost-effectively. To do so requires that we document our services and outcomes and evaluate alternative approaches to care in a thoughtful and evidence-based manner.

Costs, Uniqueness, and Value-Added

Anesthesiologists have the training and experience to deliver superior, integrated, and cost-effective services outside the OR. In an era of increasing medical specialization and fragmentation of care delivery, particularly in the context of accountable care organizations and bundled payments, these are the critical indices of success.

Proper variable cost accounting demonstrates that the cost of patient care involving an efficiently deployed anesthesiologist is less than the cost imposed on the whole system by those procedures that start without anesthesia personnel and end with an urgent, unanticipated call. The expense of (1) delaying a procedure, (2) stopping a procedure for inadequate or excessive sedation, (3) hospitalizing a patient, and (4) rescheduling or redoing procedures is forbidding. However, the costs are not always obvious because they are spread over multiple cost centers.

Strategic Positioning

For anesthesiologists, strategic positioning occurs when the needs of customers are satisfied with minimal cost to the anesthesiologists. The customers are not just patients—they are also medical proceduralists and third-party payers. If we can provide a safer and more comfortable, time-efficient, and cost-effective environment for proceduralists, the value of anesthesiologists will be clear. If we develop a bridge between medical and surgical treatment by facilitating hybrid procedures and interdisciplinary approaches, the overall value of our presence will be incontrovertible to proceduralists, patients, insurance companies, regulatory bodies, and government agencies.

Financial Silos and Teamwork

The increased requirements by third-party payers to provide value-based care requires that anesthesiologists work collaboratively with our colleagues to define new models of care and integrated care requires collaboration and interdisciplinary effort. As accountable care organizations and value-based care models expand, we will have to demonstrate the value the anesthesiologist provides for the NORA procedures to justify our "piece of the economic pie." Our success will depend on the strength of relationships we forge with health systems and our physician colleagues. Team building requires communication and coordination based on common experience and vocabulary. In many cases, this process will be most effective if we align anesthesiologists and other providers by service lines which collaboratively define standard approaches to care for specific patient populations. The integration of medical and surgical perspectives can facilitate innovative solutions, improve the delivery of cost-effective and efficient care, and avert mistakes outside of the OR.

Sustainable Strategy: Key Points

An effective strategy is one that maintains a dynamic and profitable market presence. Anesthesiologists have two related parallel sets of priorities: creating and maintaining a stable but flexible customer base, and achieving financial sustainability.

Operational effectiveness will ensure that appropriate resource allocation permits innovation. Enhanced core competencies resulting from expanded medical training and presence outside of the OR will provide a basis for the already needed enrichment of services. Team building will ensure that proceduralists understand the rationale for close cooperation and generate a foundation for better integrated finances. Reframing boundaries and elimination of silos will enhance integration, productivity, and the quality of care across the board. The overall strategy must be to make our specialty indispensable to customers and potential customers while enhancing the lives of patients by improving outcomes and stimulating progress.

Our expertise will generate consistent reimbursement if we have the data to demonstrate the benefit of that presence. Our participation in non-OR procedures can stimulate and advance medicine just as development of the OR environment advanced the practice of surgery. As technology continues to proliferate and diversify, the distinction between medical and surgical approaches to treatment becomes blurred. The pursuit of innovation has always been characteristic of anesthesiologists. We must continue this work in new venues and work to build bridges to continue to strengthen our specialty.

The need is urgent for anesthesiology to adopt a broader perspective. If this opportunity and its associated intellectual challenges are ignored, the status of anesthesia, a key medical subspecialty, may be threatened. If the challenge is accepted, the practice of anesthesiology will be on the front lines of changing and advancing medical science. An unprecedented crescendo of emerging technology and ongoing innovation continues to defy status quo approaches to NORA cases. Proceduralists, locations, and equipment will continue to evolve. Regardless of the venue or the technique, anesthesiologists remain a critical and constant guardian of the integrative medical perspective, patient safety, and efficient procedural processes. As we move beyond the OR, constant vigilance, dedicated teamwork, mutual respect, and effective communication will continue to be the fundamental keys to success.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher thank Dr. Wendy Gross, who was a contributing author to this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Nagrebetsky A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1261.
2. Metzner J, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:502.
3. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Statement on non-operating room anesthetizing locations. Last amended 2013. http://www.asahq.org.
4. Medicare Payment Advisory Commission. *Report to the Congress: increasing the value of Medicare*. Washington, DC: Medicare Advisory Committee; 2006:37.
5. Kane NM. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:7.
6. Medicare Payment Advisory Commission. *Report to the Congress: Medicare payment policy*. Washington DC: Medicare Payment Advisory Commission; 2006. http://www.medpac.gov. Accessed 25.8.2012.
7. Macario A. Management of staffing and case scheduling for anesthesia outside of the operating room. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside of the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011.
8. Frankel A. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;29:127.
9. Spear SJ. *Harv Bus Rev*. 2004;82(78):151.
10. U.S. Navy. http://www.public.navy.mil/navsafecen. Accessed 8.25.2012.
11. Fischer W, Boynton A. *Harv Bus Rev*. 2005;83:116.
12. Silverstein JH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:742.
13. American Society of Anesthesiologists. http://www.asa.org/Standards-Guidelines-and-Statements.aspx. Accessed 25.8.2012.
14. Robbertze R, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;19:436.
15. Galvagno S, Kodali B. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:141.
16. Elliott T, et al. *Aust Crit Care*. 2006;19:139.
17. Kodali B. Capnography. http://www.capnography.com. Accessed 26.8.2012.
18. Kodali B, Moseley H, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:617.
19. American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2005;112:IV5–IV57.
20. Galvano S, Kodali B. Patient monitoring. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011.
21. ASA Task force on preanesthesia evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:522.
22. Chung F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:467.
23. Schein OD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:168.
24. Sweitzer BJ. Preoperative patient evaluation for anesthesia care outside of the operating room. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011.
25. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task force on preoperative fasting. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:896.
26. Ladabaum U, Song K. *Gastroenterology*. 2005;129:1151.
27. Aetna Backs Off a Colonoscopy Change. http://www.nytimes.com/2008/2/28/business/28etna.html. Accessed 25.8.2012.
28. Gromski M, Matthes K. Gastrointestinal endoscopy procedures. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011.
29. Goulson D, Fragneto R. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:71.
30. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:786.
31. Chen SC, Rex DK. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2004;99:1081.
32. Moerman AT, et al. *Eur J Anesthesiol*. 2003;20:461.
33. Akcaboy ZN, et al. *Acta Anesthesiol Scan*. 2006;50:76.
34. Theodorou T, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2001;29:124.
35. Raymondos K, et al. *Endoscopy*. 2002;34:721.
36. Martindale SJ. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2006;34:475.
37. DeVilliers W. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:57.
38. Matthes K. Anesthetic implications of NOTES and SILS. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011.
39. Abdelmalak B. Anesthesia for interventional pulmonology. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011.
40. Apfel CC, et al. *New Engl J Med*. 2004;350:2441.
41. Friedman SG. *Radiology*. 1989;172:921.
42. McCollough CH, et al. *Radiographics*. 2006;26:503.
43. Anastasian ZH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:512.
44. Bush WH, Swanson DP. *Am J Radiol*. 1991;157:1153.
45. Tramèr MR, et al. *BMJ*. 2006;333:675.
46. Weisbord SD, et al. *NEJM*. 2018;378(7):603.
47. Nijssen EC, et al. *The Lancet*. 2017;389(10076):1312.
48. Merten GJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2004;291(19):2328.
49. Cho KJ. *Specialist Int*. 2015;31:67.
50. Malloy PC, et al. *J Vasc Interv Radiology*. 2009;20(suppl 7):S240.
51. Thiex R, Frerichs K. Interventional neuroradiology. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011.
52. The National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke r-TPA Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333:1581.
53. Lee T, et al. Standardized definitions for hemodialysis vascular access. *Semin Dial*. 2011;24(5):515–524.
54. Rajan DK, Baumann DS. Interventions in dialysis fistulas. In: Rajan DK, ed. *Essentials of Percutaneous Dialysis Interventions*. New York: Springer; 2011:281–322.
55. Culp Jr WC, Culp WC. *J Vasc Interv Radiol*. 2005;16(10):1397.
56. Scorza LB. Interventional radiology procedures. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: University Press; 2011.
57. Funaki B. *Semin Intervent Radiol*. 2008;25:168.
58. Galaski A, et al. *Can J Gastroenterol*. 2009;23:109.
59. Grieco A, et al. *Hepatogastroenterology*. 2003;50:207.
60. Yang H, et al. *J Vasc Interv Radiol*. 2017;28:1503.
61. Kim KR, Thomas S. *Semin Intervent Radiol*. 2014;31(2):138.
62. Kuang M, et al. *Radiology*. 2009;253:552.
63. Mueller PR, et al. *Radiology*. 2000;215:684.
64. Piccioni F, et al. *ClinAnesth*. 2014;26(4):271.
65. von Schulthess, et al. *Radiology*. 2006;238:405.
66. Patel B, et al. Magnetic resonance imaging and ultrasound-guided imaging procedures. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011.
67. Tatli S, et al. *Tech Vasc Interventional Rad*. 2007;10:159.
68. Schenker MP, et al. *Anesthesiology Clin*. 2009;27:87.
69. Bower J, Christensen C. Disruptive technologies: catching the wave. http://hbr.org/product/disruptive-technologies-catching-the-wave/an/95103-PDF-ENG. Accessed 26.8.2012.
70. Molyneux A, et al. *Lancet*. 2002;26:1267.
71. Brusman JL, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2008;62:1538.
72. Lesley WS, Rangaswamy R. *J Neurointervent Surg*. 2009;1:112.
73. Elsharawy MA, Moghazy KM. *Vascular*. 2007;15:134.
74. Smith WS, et al. *Stroke*. 2008;39:1205.
75. Nogueira RG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:11.
76. Brinjikji W, et al. *Stroke*. 2017;48(10):2784.
77. Mozaffarian D, et al. *Circulation*. 2016;133(4):e38.
78. Yancy CW, et al. *JACC*. 2013;62(16):e147.
79. Roger VL, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;123:e18.
80. Murgatroyd F, et al. *Handbook of Cardiac Electrophysiology: A Practical Guide to Invasive Ep Studies and Catheter Ablation*. London: Remedica Publishing; 2002.
81. Link MS. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367(15):1438.
82. Antiarrhythmic versus implantable defibrillators investigators. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337:1576.
83. American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2011;57:223.
84. Ganz L: Catheter ablation of cardiac arrhythmias: technical aspects. http://www.uptodate.com/contents/catheter-ablation-of-cardiac-arrhythmias-overview-and-technical-aspects. Accessed 29.8.12.
85. Raiten J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1110.
86. Goode JS, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2006;3:13.

87. Elkassabany N, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26(3):433.
88. Nicoara A, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(6):1589.
89. Anderson R, et al. *Anesthesiology Clin*. 2013;31(2):479.
90. Shook DC, Savage R. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:47.
91. American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines: Writing Committee to Revise the ACC/AHA/NASPE, American Association for Thoracic Surgery and Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2008;51:2085.
92. Weiss R, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;128:944.
93. Smith Jr SC, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2006;47:e1.
94. Boden WE, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356:1503.
95. Cannon C, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:1878.
96. Kar B, et al. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2006;33:111.
97. Siegenthaler MP, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:812.
98. Furlan AJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366:991.
99. Meier B, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:1083.
100. Carroll JD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:1092.
101. Søndergaard L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:1033.
102. Mas J-L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:1011.
103. Saver JL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:1022.
104. Roper AH. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:1093.
105. https://www.fda.gov/NewsEvents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/ucm527096.htm. Accessed 2/13/2018.
106. http://www.sjmprofessional.com/Products/Intl/structural-heart-therapy/amplatzer-septal-occluder.aspx. Accessed 27.8.12.
107. Shook DC, Gross W. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2007;20:352.
108. Butera G, et al. *Cardiol Young*. 2007;17:243.
109. Martinex MW, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2007;69:403.
110. Delgado V, et al. *Eur Heart J Suppl*. 2010;12(suppl E):E10.
111. Creager MA, Libby P. Peripheral arterial diseases. In: Libby P, Bobow R, Mann D, et al., eds. *Braunwald's Heart Disease: A Textbook of Cardiovascular Medicine*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2007:1491.
112. Hirsh AT, et al. *Circulation*. 2006;113:e463.
113. Nishimura RA, et al. *JACC*. 2014;63(22):e57.
114. Feldman T. *Int Cardiol*. 2007;20:488.
115. Maisano F, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2016;37(10):817.
116. Taramasso M, et al. *Multimed Man Cardiothorac Surg*. 2016.
117. Pavcnik D, et al. *Radiology*. 1992;183:151.
118. Cribrier A, et al. *Circulation*. 2002;106:3006.
119. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/ProductsandMedicalProcedures/DeviceApprovalsandClearances/Recently-ApprovedDevices/ucm280840.htm. Accessed 30.8.2012.
120. http://newsroom.medtronic.com/phoenix.zhtml?c=251324&p=irol-newsArticle&ID=1891769. Accessed Feb 13, 2018.
121. Smith CR, Leon MB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:2187.
122. Leon MB, et al. *NEJM*. 2016;374(17):1609.
123. Bonow RO, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018;31(2):117.
124. Kronzon I, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2015;8(3):361.
125. Hyman MC, et al. *Circulation*. 2017;136(22):2132.
126. Rubenson DJ. *Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2011;24:A24.
127. Perk G, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2009;22:865.
128. Levy MS, et al. *Circ Cardiovasc Interv*. 2010;23:394.
129. Gross WL, Shook DC. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2011;24:A22.

References

1. Nagrebetsky A, Gabriel RA, Dutton RP, et al. Growth of nonoperating room anesthesia care in the United States: a contemporary trends analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1261–1267.
2. Metzner J, Posner KL, Domino K. The risk and safety of anesthesia at remote locations: the US closed claims analysis. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol.* 209;22:502–508.
3. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Statement on non-operating room anesthetizing locations. Last amended 2013. http://www.asahq.org.
4. Medicare Payment Advisory Commission. *Report to the Congress, Increasing the Value of Medicare*. Washington, DC: Medicare Payment Advisory Commission; 2006:37.
5. Kane NM. Traditional fee-for service medicare systems and fragmented patient care: the backdrop for non-operating room procedures and anesthesia services in anesthesia outside the operating room. *Anesthesiology Clin*. 2009;27:7.
6. Medicare Payment Advisory Commission. *Report to the Congress: Medicare Payment Policy*. Washington, DC: Medicare Payment Advisory Commission; 2006. http://www.medpac.gov
7. Macario A. Management of staffing and case scheduling for anesthesia outside of the operating room. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011.
8. Frankel A. Patient safety: anesthesia in remote locations in anesthesia outside the operating room. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;29:7.
9. Spear SJ. Learning to lead at Toyota. *Harv Bus Rev*. 2004;82:78–86. 151.
10. U.S. Navy: safety review document. http://www.public.navy.mil/navsafecen. Accessed 25.8.2012.
11. Fischer W, Boynton A. Virtuoso teams. *Harv Bus Rev*. 2005;83:116–123. 193.
12. Silverstein JH, Apfelbaum JL, et al. Practice guidelines for postanesthetic care. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:742–756.
13. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Standards for basic anesthetic monitoring. http://www.asa.org/For-Members/Standards-Guidelines-and-Statements.aspx. Accessed 25.8.2012.
14. Robbertze R, Posner K, Domino K. Closed claims review of anesthesia for procedures outside the operating room. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;19:436–442.
15. Galvagno S, Kodali B. Critical monitoring issues outside the operating room. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:141–156.
16. Elliott T, Tate R, Page K. Do clinicians know how use pulse oximetry? a literature review and clinical implication. *Aust Crit Care*. 2006;19:139–144.
17. Kodali B. Capnography. http://www.capnography.com. Accessed 26.8.2012.
18. Kodali B, et al. Capnography and anesthesia. review article. *Can J Anaesth.* 992;39:617–632.
19. American Heart Association. 2005 AHA guidelines for CPR and emergency cardiovascular care. Part 7.1. Adjuncts for airway control and ventilation. *Circulation*. 2005;112:IV5–IV57.
20. Galvano S, Kodali B. Patient monitoring. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011:20–27.
21. American Society of Anesthesiologists. ASA Task Force on preanesthesia evaluation: an updated report by the ASA Taskforce on Preanesthesia Evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;(116):522–538.
22. Chung F, Yuan H, Yin L, et al. Elimination of preoperative testing in ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:467–475.
23. Schein OD, Katz J, Bass EB, et al. The value of routine preoperative medical testing before cataract surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:168–172.
24. Sweitzer BJ. Preoperative patient evaluation for anesthesia care outside of the operating room. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011:8–19.
25. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Preoperative Fasting. Practice guidelines for preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration: application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures: a report. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:896–905.
26. Ladabaum U, Song K. Projected national impact of colorectal cancer screening on clinical and economic outcomes and health services demand. *Gastroenterology*. 2005;129:1151–1162.
27. Aetna backs off a colonoscopy change. http://www.nytimes.com/2008/2/28/business/28etna.html. Accessed 25.8.2012.
28. Gromski M, Matthes K. Gastrointestinal endoscopy procedures. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011:151–166.
29. Goulson D, Fragneto R. Anesthesia for gastrointestinal procedures. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:71–85.
30. American Society of Anesthesiologists. Practice advisory for the prevention and management of operating room fires. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:786–801.
31. Chen SC, Rex DK. An initial investigation of bispectral monitoring as an adjunct to nurse-administered propofol sedation for colonoscopy. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2004;99:1081–1086.
32. Moerman AT, Foubert LA, Herregods LL, et al. Propofol vs remifentanil for monitored anesthesia care during colonoscopy. *Eur J Anesthesiol*. 2003;20:461–466.
33. Akcaboy ZN, Akcaboy EY, Albarack D, et al. Can remifentanil be a better choice than propofol for colonoscopy during monitored anesthesia care? *Acta Anesthesiol Scan*. 2006;50:41–76.
34. Theodorou T, Hales P, Gillespie P, et al. Total intravenous vs inhalational anesthesia for colonoscopy: a prospective study of clinical recovery and psychomotor function. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2001;29:124–136.
35. Raymondos K, Panning B, Bachem I, et al. Evaluation of ERCP under conscious sedation and general anesthesia. *Endoscopy*. 2002;34:721–726.
36. Martindale SJ. Anesthetic considerations during ERCP. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2006;34:475–480.
37. DeVilliers W. Anesthesiology and gastroenterology. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:57–70.
38. Matthes K. Anesthetic Implications of NOTES and SILS. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011:175–178.
39. Abdelmalak B. Anesthesia for interventional pulmonology. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011:167–174.
40. Apfel CC, Kortilla K, Abdallah M, et al. A factorial trial of six interventions for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *New Engl J Med*. 2004;350:2441–2551.
41. Friedman SG. Charles dotter: interventional radiologist. *Radiology*. 1989;172:921–924.
42. McCollough CH, Brusewitz MR, Kotler JM. CT dose reduction and dose management tools: overview of available options. *Radiographics*. 2006;26:503–512.
43. Anastasian ZH, Strozyk D, Meyers PM, et al. Radiation exposure of the anesthesiologist in the neurointerventional suite. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:512–520.
44. Bush WH, Swanson DP. Acute reactions to intravascular contrast media: types, risk factors, recognition and specific treatment. *Am J Radiol*. 1991;157:1153–1161.
45. Tramèr MR, et al. Pharmacological prevention of serious anaphylactic reactions due to iodinated contrast media: systematic review. *BMJ*. 2006;333:675.
46. Weisbord SD, et al. Outcomes after angiography with sodium bicarbonate and acetylcysteine. *NEJM*. 2018;378(7):603–614.
47. Nijssen EC, et al. Prophylactic hydration to protect renal function from intravascular iodinated contrast material in patients at high risk of contrast-induced nephropathy (AMACING): a prospective, randomised, phase 3, controlled, open-label, non-inferiority trial. *The Lancet*. 2017;389(10076):1312–1322.
48. Merten GJ, et al. Prevention of contrast-induced nephropathy with sodium bicarbonate: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2004;291(19):2328–2334.
49. Cho KJ. Carbon dioxide angiography. Scientific principles and practice. *Vasc Specialist Int*. 2015;31:67.
50. Malloy PC, Grassi SJ, Kundu S, et al. Consensus guidelines for periprocedural management of coagulation status and hemostasis risk in percutaneous image-guided interventions. *J Vasc Interv Radiol*. 2009;20(suppl 7):S240–S249.
51. Thiex R, Frerichs K. Interventional neuroradiology. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011:92–105.
52. The National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke r-TPA Study Group. TPA for acute ischemic stroke. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333:1581–1587.

53. Lee T, et al. Standardized definitions for hemodialysis vascular access. *Semin Dial*. 2011;24(5):515–524.
54. Rajan DK. Baumann DS. Interventions in dialysis fistulas. In: Rajan DK, ed. *Essentials of Percutaneous Dialysis Interventions*. New York: Springer; 2011:281–322.
55. Culp Jr WC, Culp WC. Thoracic paravertebral block for percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage. *J Vasc Interv Radiol*. 2005;16(10):1397–1400.
56. Scorza LB. Interventional radiology procedures. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New Yorks: Oxford University Press; 2011:106–125.
57. Funaki B. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt. *Semin Intervent Radiol*. 2008;25:168–174.
58. Galaski A, Peng W, Ellis M, et al. Gastrostomy tube placement by radiological versus endoscopic methods in an acute care setting: a retrospective review of frequency, indications, complications and outcomes. *Can J Gastroenterol*. 2009;23:109–114.
59. Grieco A, Marcoccia S, Miele L, et al. Transarterial chemoembolization (TACE) for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhotics: functional hepatic reserve and survival. *Hepatogastroenterology*. 2003;50. 207–122.
60. Yang H, et al. Dexamethasone prophylaxis to alleviate postembolization syndrome after transarterial chemoembolization for hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled study. *J Vasc Interv Radiol*. 2017;28:1503–1511.
61. Kim KR, Thomas S. Complications of image-guided thermal ablation of liver and kidney neoplasms. *Semin Intervent Radiol*. 2014;31(2):138–148.
62. Kuang M, Lu M, Xie XY, et al. Ethanol ablation of hepatocellular carcinoma up to 5 cm by using a multipronged injection needle with high-dose strategy. *Radiology*. 253:552–561.
63. Mueller PR, Biswall S, Halperin EF, et al. Interventional radiologic procedures: patient anxiety, perception of pain, understanding of procedure and satisfaction with medication: a prospective study. *Radiology*. 2000;215:684–688.
64. Piccioni F, et al. Thoracic paravertebral anesthesia for percutaneous radiofrequency ablation of hepatic tumors. *J Clin Anesth*. 2014;26(4):271–275.
65. von Schulthess GK, Steinert HC, Hany TE. Integrated PET/CT: current applications and future directions. *Radiology*. 2006;238:405–422.
66. Patel B, Shyn P, Tuncali K, et al. Magnetic resonance imaging and ultrasound-guided imaging procedures. In: Urman R, Gross WL, Philip B, eds. *Anesthesia Outside the Operating Room*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2011:82–91.
67. Tatli S, Morrison PR, Tuncali K, et al. Interventional MRI for oncologic applications. *Tech Vasc Interventional Rad*. 2007;10:159–170.
68. Schenker MP, Martin R, Shyn P. Interventional radiology and anesthesia. *Anesthesiology Clin*. 2009;27:87–94. f.
69. Bower J, Christensen C. Disruptive technologies: catching the wave. http://hbr.org/product/disruptive-technologies-catching-the-wave/an/95103-PDF-ENG. Accessed 26.8.2012.
70. Molyneux A, Kerr R, Stratton I, et al. International Subarachnoid Aneurysm Trial (ISAT) of non-surgical clipping venous endovascular coiling in 2143 patients with ruptured intracranial aneurysms: a randomized trial. *Lancet*. 2002;26:1267–1274.
71. Brusman JL, Niimi Y, Song JK, et al. Aneurysmal rupture during coiling: low incidence and good outcomes at a single large volume center. *Neurosurgery*. 2008;62:1538–1551.
72. Lesley WS, Rangaswamy R. Balloon test occlusion and endosurgical parent artery sacrifice for the evaluation and management of complex intracranial aneurysmal disease. *J Neurointervent Surg*. 2009;1:112–120.
73. Elsharawy MA, Moghazy KM. Surgical and endovascular management of arteriovenous malformation: case series from a single center. *Vascular*. 2007;15:134–140.
74. Smith WS, Sung G, Saver J, et al. Mechanical thrombectomy for acute ischemic stroke: final results if the Multi MERCI Trial. *Stroke*. 2008;39:1205–1212.
75. Nogueira RG, Jadhav AP, Haussen DC, et al. Thrombectomy 6 to 24 hours after stroke with a mismatch between deficit and infarct. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:11–21.
76. Brinjikji W, et al. Anesthesia-related outcomes for endovascular stroke revascularization: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Stroke*. 2017;48(10):2784–2791.
77. Mozaffarian D, Benjamin EJ, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics-2016 update: a report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2016;133(4):e38–e360.
78. Yancy CW, Jessup M, Bozkurt B, et al. 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of heart failure. *JACC*. 2013;62(16):e147–e239.
79. Roger VL, Go AS, Lloyd-Jones DM, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics 2011 update: a report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2011;123:e18–e209.
80. Murgatroyd F, Krahn A, Yee R, et al. *Handbook of Cardiac Electrophysiology: A Practical Guide to Invasive Ep Studies and Catheter Ablation*. London: Remedica; 2002.
81. Link MS. Evaluation and initial treatment of supraventricular tachycardia. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367(15):1438–1448.
82. Antiarrhythmic versus Implantable Defibrillators (AVID) Investigators: a comparison of antiarrhythmic-drug therapy with implantable defibrillators in patients resuscitated from near-fatal ventricular arrhythmias. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;27(337):1576–1583.
83. American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines: 2011 ACCF/AHA/HRS focused update on the management of patients with atrial fibrillation (Updating the 2006 Guideline). *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2011;57:223–242.
84. Ganz L. Catheter ablation of cardiac arrhythmias: technical aspects. http://www.uptodate.com/contents/catheter-ablation-of-cardiac-arrhythmias-overview-and-technical-aspects. Accessed 29.8.12.
85. Raiten J, Elkassabany N, Gao W, et al. Novel uses of high frequency ventilation outside the operating room. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1110–1113.
86. Goode JS, Taylor RL, Buffington CW, et al. High-frequency jet ventilation: utility in posterior left atrial catheter ablation. *Heart Rhythm*. 2006;3:13–19.
87. Elkassabany N, Garcia F, Tschabrunn C, et al. Anesthetic management of patients undergoing pulmonary vein isolation for treatment of atrial fibrillation using high-frequency jet ventilation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;26(3):433–438.
88. Nicoara A, Holmquist F, Raggains C, et al. Anesthesia for catheter ablation procedures. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2014;28(6):1589–1603.
89. Anderson R, Harukuni I, Sera V. Anesthetic considerations for electrophysiologic procedures. *Anesthesiology Clin*. 2013;31(2):479–489.
90. Shook DC, Savage R. Anesthesia in the cardiac catheterization laboratory and electrophysiology laboratory. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:47–56.
91. American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines: Writing Committee to Revise the ACC/AHA/NASPE, American Association for Thoracic Surgery and Society of Thoracic Surgeons; 2002 guideline update for implantation of cardiac pacemakers and antiarrhythmia devices). ACC/AHA/HRS 2008 guidelines for device-based therapy of cardiac rhythm abnormalities. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;51:2085.
92. Weiss R, Knight BP, Gold MR, et al. Safety and efficacy of a totally subcutaneous implantable-cardioverter defibrillator. *Circulation*. 2013;128:944–953.
93. Smith Jr SC, Feldman TE, Hirshfeld Jr JW, et al. ACC/AHA/SCAI 2005 guideline update for PCI. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2006;47:e1–e121.
94. Boden WE, O'Rourke RA, Teo KK. Optimal medical therapy with or without PCI for stable coronary artery disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356:1503–1516.
95. Cannon C, Weintraub WS, Denopolous, et al. Comparison of early invasive and conservative strategies in patients with unstable coronary syndromes treated with glycoprotein IIb/IIa inhibitor tirofiban. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:1878–1888.
96. Kar B, Adkins LE, Civitello AB. Clinical experience with the tandemheart percutaneous ventricular assist device. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2006;33:111–115.
97. Siegenthaler MP, Brehm K, Strecker T, et al. The Impella recover microaxial left ventricular assist device reduces mortality for postcardiotomy failure: a three-center experience. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:812–822.
98. Furlan AJ, Reisman M, Massaro J, et al. Closure or medical therapy for cryptogenic stroke with patent foramen ovale. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366:991–999.

99. Meier B, Kalesan B, Mattle HP, et al. Percutaneous closure of patent foramen ovale in cryptogenic embolism. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:1083–1091.
100. Carroll JD, Saver JL, Thaler DE, et al. Closure of patent foramen ovale versus medical therapy after cryptogenic stroke. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:1092–1100.
101. Søndergaard L, Kasner SE, Rhodes JF, et al. Patent foramen ovale closure or antiplatelet therapy for cryptogenic stroke. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:1033–1042.
102. Mas J-L, Derumeaux G, Guillon B, et al. Patent foramen ovale closure or anticoagulation vs. antiplatelets after stroke. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:1011–1021.
103. Saver JL, Carroll JD, Thaler DE, et al. Long-term outcomes of patent foramen ovale closure or medical therapy after stroke. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:1022–1032.
104. Roper AH. Tipping point for patent foramen ovale closure. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:1093–1095.
105. https://www.fda.gov/NewsEvents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/ucm527096.htm. Accessed 2/13/2018.
106. http://www.sjmprofessional.com/Products/Intl/structural-heart-therapy/amplatzer-septal-occluder.aspx. Accessed 27.8.12.
107. Shook DC, Gross W. Offsite anesthesia in the cardiac cath lab. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2007;20:352–358.
108. Butera G, Chessa M, Carminati M. Percutaneous closure of ventricular septal defects. *Cardiol Young*. 2007;17:243–253.
109. Martinex MW, Mookadam F, Sun Y, et al. Transcatheter closure of ischemic and post-traumatic ventricular ruptures. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2007;69:403–407.
110. Delgado V, Van der Kley F, Schalij M, et al. Optimal imaging for planning and guiding interventions in structural heart disease: a multi-modality imaging approach. *Eur Heart J Suppl*. 2010;12(suppl E):E10–E23.
111. Creager MA, Libby P. Peripheral arterial diseases. In: Libby P, Bobow R, Mann D, et al., eds. *Braunwald's Heart Disease: A Textbook of Cardiovascular Medicine*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2007:1491–1514.
112. Hirsh AT, Haskall J, Hertzer, et al. ACC/AHA 2005 guideline for the management of patients with peripheral arterial disease. ACC/AHA taskforce on practice guidelines. *Circulation*. 2006;113:e463.
113. Nishimura RA, Otto CM, Sorajja P, et al. 2014 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of patients with valvular heart disease. *JACC*. 2014;63(22):e57–185.
114. Feldman T. Percutaneous Mitral valve repair. *Int Cardiol*. 2007;20:488–494.
115. Maisano F, Taramasso M, Nickenig G. Cardioband, a transcatheter surgical-like direct mitral valve annuloplasty system: early results of the feasibility trial. *Eur Heart J*. 2016;37(10):817–825.
116. Taramasso M, Inderbitzin DT, Guidotti A, et al. Transcatheter direct mitral valve annuloplasty with the Cardioband system for the treatment of functional mitral regurgitation. *Multimed Man Cardiothorac Surg*. 2016.
117. Pavcnik D, Wright KC, Wallace S. Development and initial experimental evaluation of a prosthetic aortic valve for transcatheter placement: work in progress. *Radiology*. 1992;183:151–154.
118. Cribrier A, Elchanioff H, Bash, et al. Percutaneous transcatheter implantation of an aortic prosthesis for calcific aortic stenosis: first human case description. *Circulation*. 2002;106:3006–3008.
119. U.S. Food and Drug Administratione. http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/ProductsandMedicalProcedures/DeviceApprovalsandClearances/Recently-ApprovedDevices/ucm280840.htm. Accessed 30.8.2012.
120. http://newsroom.medtronic.com/phoenix.zhtml?c=251324&p=irol-newsArticle&ID=1891769. Accessed Feb 13, 2018.
121. Smith CR, Leon MB, Mack MJ, et al. Transcatheter versus surgical aortic-valve replacement in high-risk patients. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:2187–2198.
122. Leon MB, Smith CR, Mack MJ. Transcatheter or surgical aortic-valve replacement in intermediate-risk patients. *NEJM*. 2016;374(17):1609–1620.
123. Bonow RO, Brown AS, Gillam LD. ACC/AATS/AHA/ASE/EACTS/HVS/SCA/SCAI/ SCCT/SCMR/STS 2017 Appropriate Use Criteria for the Treatment of Patients With Severe Aortic Stenosis: a Report of the American College of Cardiology appropriate use criteria task force, American Association for Thoracic Surgery, American Heart Association, American Society of Echocardiography, European Association for Cardio-Thoracic Surgery, Heart Valve Society, Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, Society of Cardiovascular Computed Tomography, Society for Cardiovascular Magnetic Resonance, and Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2018;31(2):117–147.
124. Kronzon I, Jelnin V, Ruiz CE. Optimal imaging for guiding TAVR: transesophageal or transthoracic echocardiography, or just fluoroscopy? *JACC Cardiovasc Imaging*. 2015;8(3):361–370.
125. Hyman MC, Vemulapalli S, Szeto WY. Conscious sedation versus general anesthesia for transcatheter aortic valve replacement: insights from the National Cardiovascular Data Registry Society of Thoracic Surgeons/American College of Cardiology Registry. *Circulation*. 2017;136(22):2132–2140.
126. Rubenson D. The emergence of a sub-specialty: the interventional echocardiographer. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2011;24:A24.
127. Perk G, Lang RM, Garcia-Fernandez MA, et al. Use of real time three-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography in intracardiac catheter based interventions. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2009;22:865–882.
128. Levy MS, Todoran TM, Kinlay S, et al. Use of real-time 3D transesophageal echocardiography in percutaneous intervention of a flush-occluded pulmonary vein. *Circ Cardiovasc Interv*. 2010;23:394–395.
129. Gross WL, Shook DC. TEE and interventional cardiology. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2011;24:A22.

74

Clinical Care in Extreme Environments: Physiology at High Altitude and in Space

ANDREW F. CUMPSTEY, ALEXANDER I.R. JACKSON, and
MICHAEL P.W. GROCOTT

KEY POINTS

- High altitude or space environments present a number of extreme physiologic challenges that must be overcome in order to survive.
- Given sufficient time, humans can adapt to both hypobaric hypoxia and microgravity.
- Lack of adaptation can lead to environment-specific illnesses, such as acute mountain sickness, high-altitude pulmonary edema, decompression illness, or the acute worsening of comorbid conditions.
- These conditions can rapidly become fatal if not treated appropriately (e.g., with either descent to lower altitudes or returning to the Earth's surface).
- Providing critical care or anesthesia in such environments is further complicated by their extreme levels of remoteness.
- Exploratory missions to such environments depend on the development and vetting of robust and simple health care protocols.

Introduction to Altitude and Explanation of Hypobaric Hypoxia and Its Effect on Physiologic Performance

An estimated 140 million individuals live at altitudes over 2500 m,[1] whereas sojourns to altitude are undertaken by large numbers of individuals each year for leisure, work, and religious reasons.[2-4] It can be expected that a significant proportion of these individuals will require medical care, either directly related to altitude or for any other reason. As such, there is a clear need for medical practitioners to appreciate the specific environment, physiology, and pathologic conditions at altitude.

At high altitude, a number of environmental changes may be observed. These include decreased temperature, increased ultraviolet exposure and, particularly in mountainous environments, remoteness combined with challenging access and egress, and challenging weather patterns. Overall, the area of primary focus to the critical care and anesthetic practitioner is hypobaric hypoxia and the resultant physiologic changes associated with altitude exposure.

As altitude (i.e., vertical height above sea level) increases, the barometric pressure (P_B) decreases in a nonlinear manner (Fig. 74.1), resulting in a P_B at the summit of Mount Everest (8848 m) approximately one third that of sea level. The relative concentrations of gases, including oxygen, remain static but because of the falling P_B, the partial pressure of each gas decreases. The resultant hypoxia is of great clinical significance and results in many physiologic changes. These physiologic changes vary with the time course of exposure and a number of long-term adaptations in high-altitude populations have been observed.[5] This chapter considers the high-altitude environment directly, and the consequences of it on clinical practice; however, it should be noted that many consider the hypoxia encountered at altitude to be of translational value to hypoxia at sea level, for example, in critically unwell patients.

Physiologic Responses to Hypoxia/Acclimatization

CARDIOVASCULAR RESPONSES

Initial cardiovascular changes occur rapidly. Following the initial ascent, however, more gradual changes may be observed over a period of weeks (Fig. 74.2). On exposure to hypoxia at altitude, peripheral arterial chemoreceptors are stimulated, triggering increased sympathetic activation. The resultant increased heart rate (HR) leads to a rise in cardiac output.[6] A concurrent systemic vasodilation is seen

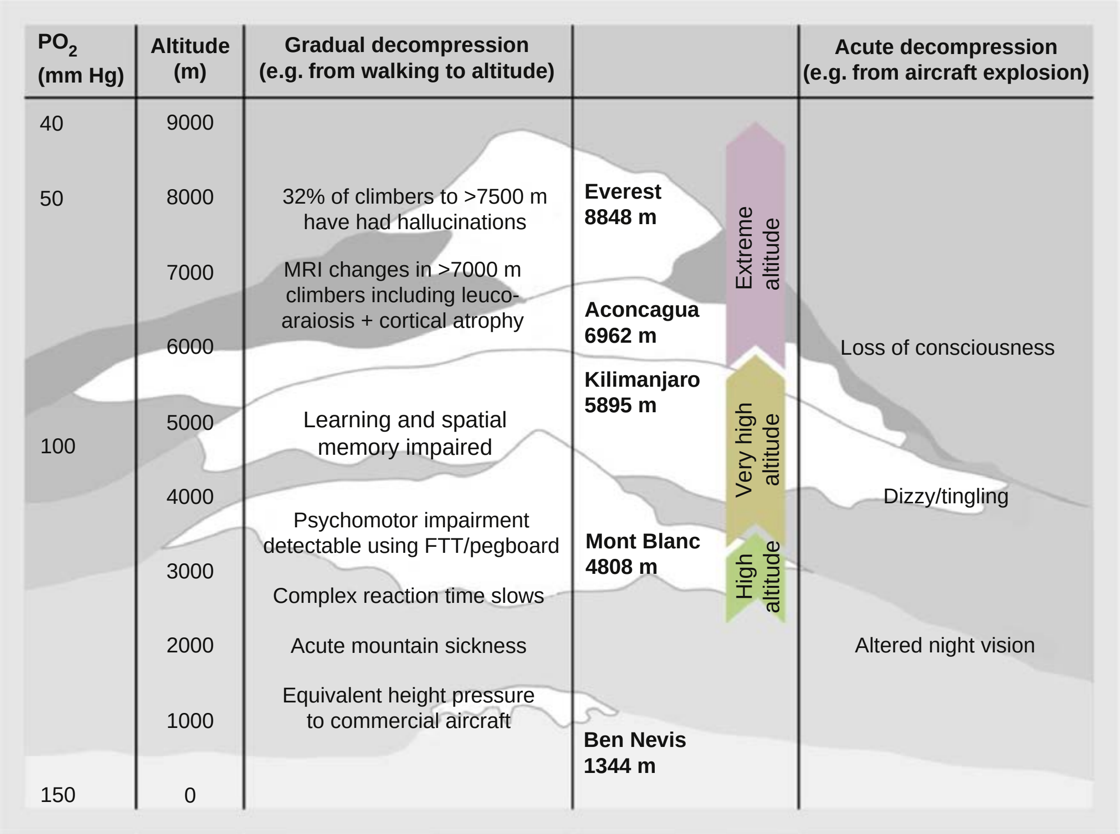

PO2 (mm Hg)
Altitude (m)
Gradual decompression (e.g. from walking to altitude)
Acute decompression (e.g. from aircraft explosion)
40
9000
50
8000
7000
6000
100
5000
4000
3000
2000
1000
150
0
32% of climbers to >7500 m have had hallucinations
MRI changes in >7000 m climbers including leuco-araiosis + cortical atrophy
Learning and spatial memory impaired
Psychomotor impairment detectable using FTT/pegboard
Complex reaction time slows
Acute mountain sickness
Equivalent height pressure to commercial aircraft
Everest 8848 m
Aconcagua 6962 m
Kilimanjaro 5895 m
Mont Blanc 4808 m
Ben Nevis 1344 m
Extreme altitude
Very high altitude
High altitude
Loss of consciousness
Dizzy/tingling
Altered night vision

Fig. 74.1 The symptoms and clinical effects associated with the nonlinear decrease in barometric pressure at increasing altitude. *MRI*, magnetic resonance imaging. (From Wilson MH, Newman S, Imray CH. The cerebral effects of ascent to high altitude. *Lancet Neurol*. 2009;8:175–191.)

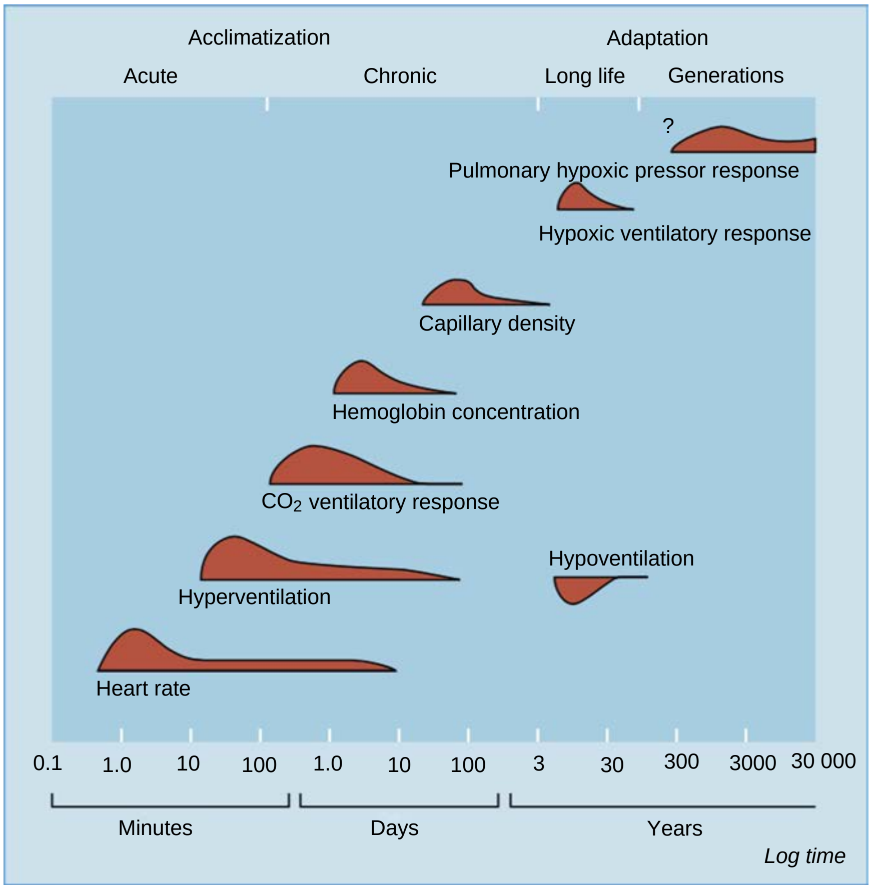


Fig. 74.2 The time course of acclimatization and adaptive responses to hypobaric hypoxia with the curve of each response representing the relative rate of change (note the log time scale). (From Peacock AJ. Oxygen at high altitude. *BMJ*. 1998;317:1063–1066.)

on ascent to altitude. This is antagonized by increased sympathetic tone and the overall effect is one of increased blood pressure (BP), although in the early hours of exposure vasodilation may predominate.[7] After several days, cardiac output returns to baseline but with a lower stroke volume (SV) and higher HR,[8] while BP continues to rise for several weeks.

This pattern of increased HR and reduced SV persists across exercise states at altitude.[9] In both athletes and nonathletes,[10] maximal oxygen consumption (VO_2 max) decreases with increasing altitude, estimated at approximately 1% per 100 m above 1500 m.[7]

Hematologically, a rise in hemoglobin (Hb) concentration is seen in response to altitude exposure. Over the initial days, this is related to a fall in plasma volume of approximately 20%,[11] followed by a rise in red cell production secondary to increased levels of erythropoietin (EPO; which begins to rise within hours of ascent).[12] This change in Hb concentration increases arterial oxygen content (CaO_2) and theoretically improves oxygen delivery (DO_2) to tissues.

However, this may be compromised because there is a marked increase in hematocrit and plasma viscosity. Viscosity has been observed to increase by 38% in healthy volunteers on ascent to 5800 m.[13] Changes in microcirculation, important for the final phase of DO_2, have been observed in vivo at altitude with a significant reduction in microcirculatory flow seen in healthy volunteers during altitude exposure, although this does not seem to be directly related to the increase in hematocrit and viscosity.[14] Subsequent studies have shown that this flow is significantly greater in the highly altitude-tolerant Sherpa population,[15] raising the possibility that such microcirculatory adaptation may play an important role in optimizing DO_2 and adaptation to high altitude.

RESPIRATORY RESPONSES

The falling P_B at altitude results in a decreased atmospheric partial pressure of oxygen (PO_2). This in turn results in reduced alveolar (PAO_2) and arterial (PaO_2) partial pressures of oxygen. However, the reduction in PAO_2 is accentuated because the saturated vapor pressure of water ($P_{SVP\ Water}$) is unchanged (6.3 kPa) at altitude. Examining the alveolar gas equation, we can see that a proportionally higher saturated water vapor at body temperature (P_{H_2O}) will result in a decreased PAO_2.

$$PAO_2 = FiO_2\ (P_B - P_{H_2O}) - (PaCO_2/R)$$

This decrease in PAO_2 leads to the hypoxic ventilatory response (HVR), which is the most important aspect of acclimatization to high altitude. Studies have found that successful climbers demonstrate an improved HVR.[16] The decrease in PaO_2 leads to hypoxic stimulation of peripheral arterial chemoreceptors,[17] which in normoxia are normally suppressed by central chemoreceptors responding to changes in carbon dioxide (CO_2). The peripheral arterial chemoreceptors trigger rapid increases in minute volume (V_E) over seconds to minutes. A resulting decrease in $PaCO_2$ also helps increase the PAO_2, as explained by the alveolar gas equation, which demonstrates that any fall in $PaCO_2$ will result in an increased PAO_2.

The resultant hypocapnia following HVR leads to a leftward shift in the oxygen dissociation curve (ODC). This shift improves oxygen uptake at the lungs, but the increase in affinity may have consequences for DO_2 at end organs.[18] A leftward shift and increased oxygen affinity of Hb are key components of the adaptive response in a number of animals who live in hypoxic conditions.[17] However, with altitude exposure in humans, this leftward shift is opposed by an increase in 2,3-diphosphoglycerate, over several days, causing a rightward shift. The final position of the curve varies depending on altitude exposure and level of acclimatization, but in sojourners it appears to equilibrate at almost sea level values, whereas certain groups of high-altitude natives are able to sustain a leftward shift through hyperventilation.[19,20]

As $PaCO_2$ decreases, a respiratory alkalosis develops in both arterial blood and cerebral spinal fluid (CSF). This alkalosis initially antagonizes HVR; however, after several hours and continuing for over 2 weeks, the body begins to correct the alkalosis through bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) excretion, as well as the increased concentrations of protein anions (such as phosphate and albumin). These processes allow the continued increase in V_E (and thus improved acclimatization) to progress throughout this period.[21,22]

The pulmonary circulation is also modulated at altitude. In response to the reduced PAO_2, hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction (HPV) occurs within minutes.[23] The mechanism is a contraction of pulmonary smooth muscle cells. This process is independent of any external regulation and has been demonstrated in the laboratory setting in pulmonary smooth muscle cells completely isolated from all other tissues.[24] The exact mechanism of oxygen sensing is a source of ongoing research, but it is known that the smooth muscle contraction itself, as in other tissues, relies upon a rise in intracellular Ca^{2+}. Although the contraction occurs in isolation, it is modulated by both the endothelium and systemic factors such as sympathetic activation. The process is biphasic in nature, with an initial contraction reaching its maximal effect between 2 and 15 minutes. A secondary phase occurs between 30 and 60 minutes, causing further vasoconstriction in sustained hypoxia. This secondary phase appears to be dependent on the presence of endothelial cells.[7,24]

In contrast to HPV in localized hypoxia (as seen in many pathologies found at sea level, such as pneumonia, atelectasis) where this response is beneficial for correcting ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) mismatch, the global alveolar hypoxia seen at high-altitude HPV can be significantly deleterious. Widespread vasoconstriction increases pulmonary vascular resistance 50% to 300%,[23] with a consequent precipitous pulmonary arterial pressure (PAP) increase that may be responsible for altitude-specific pathologies such as high-altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE) (see later in this chapter).[7] This rise in PAP is further exacerbated by physical exercise with chamber studies reporting a PAP of 54 mm Hg on maximal exercise at a P_B equivalent to 7620 m.[25]

RENAL AND ENDOCRINE CHANGES

Renal responses play a key role in altitude acclimatization and have long been observed. The hypoxic diuretic response (HDR) was first observed in 1944.[26] It is characterized by both natriuresis and diuresis and is seen in humans and many other mammals.[27,28]

The earliest phase of the HDR occurs within hours of ascent and is in fact a diuresis alone, with a static fractional sodium clearance. Hypoxia and hypocapnia appear to be the driving factors (although the exact mechanism remains uncertain)[29] and natriuresis soon follows. During the HDR, a total water loss of approximately 3 L is possible during initial exposure[30] and a decrease of approximately 40% plasma volume.[11]

A number of studies suggest that HDR undergoes humoral regulation.[31,32] The renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system is one of the major systems regulating fluid balance at sea level. Renin and aldosterone promote retention of both water and sodium. However, although renin activity and aldosterone levels are observed to decrease in response to altitude,[28,33,34] this response has not been consistently shown to be directly related to the level of natriuresis observed, suggesting there may be a mediation driven by chemoreceptor activation.[28] It is also of note that although the aldosterone exercise response (leading to an increase in plasma aldosterone) remains present at altitude, it appears to be reduced.[33] Indeed, further elements of the hormonal response also appear inconsistent. An increase in serum osmolality is reported with altitude ascent and although this may be expected to produce a concomitant increase in arginine vasopressin (AVP), such a response is often not observed, suggesting a change in AVP regulation at altitude in favor of a diuresis.[35-37]

The other side of the coin, from a fluid homeostasis perspective, is atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP). It is produced by cardiomyocytes in response to atrial distension and plays an important role in fluid balance; an increase in ANP will induce a natriuresis.[38] It has been observed to increase in response to both pure hypoxia and altitude ascent and may play an important role in the initial diuresis,[34,38,39] although any direct causal relationship between ANP levels and the observed diuresis/natriuresis have been questioned.[28]

Although controversy remains around the exact relationship between any hormonal changes and the observed diuresis/natriuresis, a number of studies have reported an association between a picture of increased fluid retention, or hormonal changes promoting fluid retention, and altitude pathologies such as acute mountain sickness (AMS) and HAPE.[34,40] This suggests that, regardless of the underlying regulation, diuresis remains an important part of successful acclimatization.

In addition to fluid balance, the renal system is also important in mitigating the pH changes generated by the HVR, as discussed previously. Urinary bicarbonate excretion increases over a period of hours to more than 2 weeks, in a process that appears to be unrelated to the natriuresis previously discussed.[41] This reduces blood pH, and may play a role in facilitating the ongoing increase in V_E and, therefore, acclimatization to altitude.

Additional endocrine changes may also be observed following altitude exposure. Cortisol, a stress hormone secreted by the adrenal glands, appears to increase at altitude,[33,42,43] although exceptions are found in the literature.[44] It may be that this variation is related to duration of exposure, exercise state, and other stress factors, such as coexisting pathology.[37]

As previously discussed, sympathetic activation forms an essential part of the response to acute altitude exposure, which drives many other physiologic changes. As expected, levels of norepinephrine and epinephrine increase,[42,45] as does nerve fiber activity.[46] However, after prolonged exposure and despite persistently elevated catecholamine levels, maximal HR and response to chronotropic drugs (e.g., isoprenaline) are both reduced, which suggests that a degree of desensitization is also occurring.[47]

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

Several central nervous system (CNS) changes are found at high altitude. Many of the most frequently observed were eloquently described by John West, one of the leading figures in respiratory and high-altitude physiology.

> *On ascending to altitude, unacclimatized lowlanders typically complain that they take longer to get to sleep, wake frequently, often have unpleasant dreams and do not feel refreshed in the morning. The resultant difficulties are not confined to the night because, as a result of poor sleep, people often feel somnolent and fatigued during the following day, their productivity is reduced and they are more liable to make errors.*[48]

This quote encapsulates two separate changes observed at altitude: sleep disturbance and cognitive changes.

Sleep disturbance is a frequently occurring symptom, with incidences of up to 65% reported on ascent.[49,50] Indeed, a network analysis of symptom scores in altitude sojourners identified the largest single cluster of symptoms to be one primarily characterized by sleep disturbance.[51] Subjectively, individuals report reduced general sleep quality, difficulty in falling asleep, frequent wakening, as well as temperature-related discomfort.[52]

At high altitude, the sleep architecture is altered. The duration of light sleep, and non-rapid eye movement (NREM) sleep stages I and II, is increased. Deep sleep and NREM stages III and IV are reduced dramatically,[53-55] whereas rapid eye movement (REM) sleep duration appears to be more variable in duration.[54] Frequent awakenings are also observed, which appear to be closely linked to another phenomenon seen during sleep at altitude: periodic breathing.[53,55,56]

Periodic breathing, as described by John Cheyne and William Stokes in the 19th century and named eponymously for them,[57,58] has long been observed at altitude. Reports date back as early as 1857 before it was first described fully by Angelo Mosso in 1894.[59,60] Characterized by periods of crescendo-decrescendo hyperpnea followed by apnea at altitude, periodic breathing is seen most commonly during NREM stages I and II and appears to be largely absent during REM sleep.[54] Periodic breathing may be responsible for the frequent awakenings seen at altitude that often occur at the transition from apnea to hyperpnea.[53]

This breathing pattern is caused largely by hypocapnia, which is itself a result of HVR. Although this hypocapnia during wakefulness does not adversely affect patterns of breathing during sleep, both the rate and depth of respiration can decline, culminating in apnea. During this apnea, the partial pressure of carbon dioxide (PCO_2) increases as PO_2 falls, ultimately leading to a return of ventilation with hyperpnea.[55] This theory is supported by the observation that those who demonstrated the most brisk HVR also experienced the highest rates of apnea,[61] along with the efficacy of supplemental oxygen to improve sleep quality.[62] Periodic breathing tends to increase with ascent[55] and may even occur during REM sleep at extremes of altitude.[63]With acclimatization, periodic breathing can be seen to decrease.[54]

The previous quote from John West also alludes to cognitive changes, which are frequently observed at altitude. Studies have demonstrated deficits across a wide range of domains under hypoxic conditions including arithmetic, memory, language, and motor skills.[64-67] In addition to direct cognitive impairment, there are adverse changes in mood state and even new onset anxiety disorders secondary to high altitude.[68,69] The exact etiology of these cognitive changes has not been fully elucidated, although fatigue does appear to be correlated with a number of cognitive domains, and as such, sleep disturbance may be contributory.[70]

GASTROINTESTINAL

On ascent to altitude, anorexia is frequently observed but not fully understood.[71,72] Leptin, a hormone with elevated levels that are associated with satiety, has been hypothesized as playing an important role but the literature is conflicting; elevated, reduced, and unchanged levels have all been reported.[42,44,73,74] Cholecystokinin, another satiety hormone, has been less widely studied but has been found to be elevated, particularly in those with marked anorexia at altitude.[75]

In concert with anorexia, weight loss of both fat and muscle occurs in response to prolonged exposure.[73,76,77] This may be related primarily to reduced intake,[78] although a modest increase in basal metabolic rate is observed, and may be partly attributable to sympathetic drive.[79]

Altitude Illness

Several distinct pathologies are observed in association with both acute and chronic altitude exposure. Although each is considered separately here, some share pathologic features. In addition, the hypoxic environment can also affect individuals with other ongoing health considerations, such as comorbidity or pregnancy.

ACUTE MOUNTAIN SICKNESS

AMS is the most common acute altitude pathology. It is a clinical syndrome of nonspecific symptoms, occurring on ascent to altitude (>2500 m). The onset is usually seen between 4 and 12 hours after ascent.[80-82]

The prevalence of AMS is closely linked to altitude attained—approximately 25% at moderate altitude (<3000 m)[50] and approximately 50% above 4000 m.[83] Other factors exerting a strong influence are rate of ascent, degree of acclimatization, and individual susceptibility.[84] It is relevant to note that physical fitness appears to confer no risk reduction.[85,86] Physical exertion at altitude may increase risk, although studies remain conflicted.[85,87,88]

The pathophysiology of AMS is not yet fully understood. A number of theories have been suggested and current opinion appears to favor CNS dysfunction as the primary cause.[80,81,89] Imaging studies in moderate-severe AMS have suggested some degree of cerebral edema,[89] and increased intracranial pressure (ICP) has also been observed.[80] In one remarkable study by Brian Cummins in 1985, three individuals, including Cummins himself, were fitted with invasive telemetric ICP monitoring. On ascent, two subjects remained well but one developed symptoms of AMS, including headache. This individual was also the only subject to demonstrate a raised ICP. The symptoms were seen on minimal exertion; turning his head increased ICP from 14 to 24 mm Hg, and a press up led to an ICP of 51 mm Hg.[90] This study has never been, and is unlikely to be, replicated but suggests elevated ICP may be pathologically significant and potentially related to reduced intracranial compliance.[81,89,90] Cerebral blood flow (CBF) is known to increase transiently on ascent[91] and, although wide interindividual variations have been observed, it may play a role. A unifying hypothesis has been proposed whereby hypoxia and hypoxemia result in increased CBF, which alongside changes in blood-brain barrier permeability, leads to brain swelling. Finally, in those with reduced intracranial compliance, this leads to AMS.[92] This hypothesis, however, remains speculative, with some believing venous outflow may be more significant than intracranial compliance.[80,93]

The diagnosis of AMS is clinical. The symptoms are variable in presentation but may include headache, nausea, anorexia, dizziness, sleep disturbance, and fatigue.[80,81] Headache is the most frequently observed indication and remains a mandatory symptom for diagnosis in a number of research tools.[82,94] Several scoring systems[51,82,94-96] of AMS exist for research purposes. A number of these have been applied to clinical practice, although they are not validated formally for this use. The most widely used, the Lake Louise Score,[82] is ubiquitous in the literature and consists of five simple, self-reported symptom-related questions. This scoring system was revised in 2018[94] with the removal of sleep disturbance after studies suggested that it is likely to be a separate phenomenon unrelated to AMS (Table 74.1).[51,97] Laboratory testing and clinical examination in AMS are both unremarkable.[81] Oxygen saturation (SpO_2) monitoring has been suggested as a useful tool but although SpO_2 is seen to fall with ascent, there appears to be no independent relationship with AMS.[98]

Optimal clinical management of AMS begins with prevention. The most significant measure should be a slow ascent, with a limit of 300 m gain in sleeping altitude per day at altitudes above 3000 m generally accepted as best practice,[80,89] although 600 m is proposed as an alternative.[80,81] The sleeping altitude is generally accepted to be the most important consideration and the mantra of "climb high, sleep low" can be found widely in the literature. Other nonpharmacologic measures suggested, with some evidence, include: preacclimatization, avoidance of exercise, adequate hydration, and oxygen supplementation.[81,89] Pharmacologic prophylaxis has been widely studied with acetazolamide the most recommended at an adult dose of 125 mg twice daily.[99] Higher doses of acetazolamide remain efficacious; however, they may be associated with more deleterious effects.[100] Dexamethasone (2 mg every 6 hours

TABLE 74.1 Lake Louise Consensus on Acute Mountain Sickness 2018

2018 Lake Louise Acute Mountain Sickness Score

Symptom	Description	Score
Headache		
	None at all	0
	A mild headache	1
	Moderate headache	2
	Severe headache, incapacitating	3
Gastrointestinal symptoms		
	Good appetite	0
	Poor appetite or nausea	1
	Moderate nausea or vomiting	2
	Severe nausea and vomiting, incapacitating	3
Fatigue and/or weakness		
	Not tired or weak	0
	Mild fatigue/weakness	1
	Moderate fatigue/weakness	2
	Severe fatigue/weakness, incapacitating	3
Dizziness/light-headedness		
	No dizziness/light-headedness	0
	Mild dizziness/light-headedness	1
	Moderate dizziness/light-headedness	2
	Severe dizziness/light-headedness, incapacitating	3
AMS Clinical Functional Score		
Overall, if you had AMS symptoms, how did they affect your activities?		
	Not at all	0
	Symptoms present, but did not force any change in activity or itinerary	1
	My symptoms forced me to stop the ascent or to go down on my own power	2
	Had to be evacuated to a lower altitude	3

From Baillie JK. Lake Louise Consensus on Acute Mountain Sickness 2018. In: altitude.org. Apr 2019 [cited 16 Apr 2019]. Available: http://www.altitude.org/lake_louise_AMS_score_2018.php

or 4 mg every 12 hours) has also been shown to be beneficial,[49,101] but remains a second-line chemoprophylaxis.[100] Individual risk is highly variable based on both personal (e.g., previous history of AMS or High-Altitude Cerebral Edema [HACE]) and environmental (e.g., rate of ascent, highest altitude attained) factors. Prescribing of prophylactic medications and indeed any recommendations regarding individuals should consider this personalized risk.

When treating AMS, because of the nonspecific nature of the symptoms, consideration must be given to other causes. There may be more severe altitude pathologies such as HACE, or common conditions related to the nature of much travel to altitude such as dehydration, exhaustion, hypothermia, hypoglycemia, or infection.[100] In cases where AMS is diagnosed, then the single most efficacious treatment is descent. This may present other dangers, given the terrain often found in the high altitude environment; however, in severe cases, descent until resolution of symptoms (which typically occurs after a descent of as little as 300 m) remains the gold standard treatment.[100] Measures aimed at correcting hypobaric hypoxia, such as supplemental oxygen and hyperbaric chambers, can offer possible alternatives to descent but in a remote high-altitude setting these treatments present marked logistical challenges, may only offer temporary benefit, and also carry their own risks.[100,102] Dexamethasone has been shown to be an effective treatment,[102-104] but it does not aid acclimatization and further ascent is not recommended until the patient is asymptomatic without dexamethasone.

HIGH-ALTITUDE CEREBRAL EDEMA

HACE is a severe, life-threatening pathology. It is rare, with a prevalence of 0.28% to 1%.[4,105] Because of its rarity, there is limited systematic evidence regarding risk factors.[81] However, (not yet conclusively proven) HACE is now considered to be a severe form of AMS and may share the same pathophysiology and risk factors.[89,93,106] It is important to note though that while AMS may rapidly progress to HACE if left untreated, HACE may also present suddenly without any preceding symptoms of AMS.

Both animal studies and postmortem examinations have demonstrated gross edema in HACE sufferers,[107,108] with magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) studies suggesting this is likely vasogenic in nature.[109] In contrast to AMS, in HACE there is evidence of microhemorrhage, primarily within the corpus callosum. The presence of microhemorrhage may indicate venous obstruction as a key pathologic process, which may differentiate AMS from HACE.[93]

HACE may be clinically differentiated from AMS by the presence of ataxia, confusion, psychiatric changes, or altered consciousness that may progress rapidly to coma and death.[81,89,93,110] Investigations offer limited benefit on acute presentation; however, lumbar puncture may reveal elevated ICP,[111] whereas MRI and computed tomography may reveal changes associated with edema.[109]

Prevention of HACE should be guided by the same principles as AMS, with slow ascent, preacclimatization, and pharmacologic strategies as previously described.[100] The diagnosis should consider other possible causes for the observed presentation, but it is important to remember the mantra that any illness at altitude should be treated as altitude-related until proven otherwise. When HACE is diagnosed, its severity should not be underestimated and prompt management is essential. Immediate actions include supplemental oxygen (aiming for an $SpO_2 > 90\%$), administration of dexamethasone (initial dose of 8 mg by mouth, or intravenous or intramuscular injections; and immediately followed by a dose of 4 mg every 6 hours) and, where logistically possible, descent.[81,100] If descent is not possible, and the airway is adequately protected, then a hyperbaric chamber is an acceptable temporary alternative.[81,93]

High-Altitude Pulmonary Edema

HAPE is a form of noncardiogenic pulmonary edema that occurs in unacclimatized individuals on ascent to altitude (>2500 m).[81] The condition was first described in South American lowlanders on ascent to altitude in 1955,[112] and subsequently in 1960 by two separate American physicians.[113,114]

The condition generally occurs within 2 to 5 days of ascent and is more common with greater altitude. It remains relatively uncommon under 3000 m and after more than 1 week at altitude.[115,116] As with many altitude pathologies, the rate of ascent, altitude, and individual susceptibility are the most significant risk factors for the development of HAPE.[7] There is evidence of other predisposing factors including: male sex,[117] preexisting respiratory infection,[118] and cold temperatures.[119] Cardiorespiratory diseases, including anatomical abnormalities affecting pulmonary blood flow, have also been shown to increase risk of HAPE and it should be noted that altitude dwellers may suffer from "re-entry" HAPE following a sojourn to lower altitudes.[115] The prevalence of HAPE varies greatly depending on the aforementioned risk factors. For example, in the general population prevalence of HAPE is estimated at less than 0.2% when climbing to 4500 m in 4 days. However, for a 1- to 2-day ascent to the same altitude, the prevalence rises dramatically to 6%. In those with a known susceptibility to HAPE, this could reach as high as 60%.[116]

The pathophysiology of HAPE is closely related to HPV and the increase in PAP. Pulmonary hypertension is seen on ascent to altitude prior to the development of HAPE.[120] Individuals who are susceptible to HAPE tend to have a brisk HPV response, and often a relatively blunted HVR which further drives HPV. This accentuated rise in PAP of approximately 60 mm Hg in untreated HAPE on ascent may also be partly related to decreased nitric oxide (NO) bioavailability.[121] The subsequent edema appears to be directly related to this increase in pressure, with bronchoalveolar lavage in early HAPE showing little inflammatory change, while pulmonary capillary pressure exceeds values shown in animal models to cause edema.[121]

Early clinical presentation is most commonly exertional dyspnea, often associated with a dry cough. This results in reduced exercise performance. Dyspnea is normally progressive, leading to dyspnea at rest, while the cough may become productive of pink frothy sputum—with hemoptysis of frank blood being rare.[115] Orthopnea is additionally seen as edema progresses. Symptoms of AMS may coexist, but around 50% of sufferers display none.[117] Examination findings typically include tachycardia and tachypnea. Cyanosis may be present and, although not universal, crepitations are invariably audible on auscultation of the lungs.[7] SpO_2 and blood gas analysis show more profound hypoxia than in healthy controls, while radiographic findings demonstrate patchy edema, generally starting peripherally.[122]

As with AMS, if appropriate steps are taken, the incidence of HAPE can be significantly reduced. Gradual ascent remains the single most effective means of reducing HAPE occurrence.[100] Individuals with a history of HAPE should take additional care and in such cases pharmacologic prophylaxis may be warranted. Nifedipine, a calcium channel blocker, has been shown through randomized control trial[120] and clinical experience[100] to be effective in high-risk individuals, delivering significantly lower PAP and improved prophylaxis of clinical HAPE over a placebo. Other medications, such as salmeterol[123] and tadalafil,[124] have shown promise in clinical trials but clinical experience remains limited. Further research is required, although salmeterol is considered as an adjuvant to nifedipine in high-risk cases.[100] Dexamethasone, which is used widely in AMS/HACE, is not as regularly utilized in HAPE. There is some data supporting its use,[124] but again further study is advised to confirm.[100]

As with AMS/HACE, descent remains the most effective treatment for HAPE. Improvements may be seen after only minimal descent, although descent of 1000 m or until symptoms resolve is advocated. The degree of exertion on descent should be minimized as much as possible to reduce further rise in PAP.[100] Supplemental oxygen and hyperbaric chambers are further measures to consider when descent is not possible. Nifedipine continues to have a role in treatment, with a single unblinded trial showing some clinical improvement[125] and extensive clinical experience supporting its role.[100] Phosphodiesterase inhibitors and dexamethasone may both confer some benefit and case reports of their use exist.[126,127] It is important to point out that unlike other forms of pulmonary edema, the use of diuretics is not advocated in HAPE, particularly as patients may have concurrent hypovolemia.[100] In the hospital setting it may be possible to manage HAPE without descent using supplemental oxygen and close observation. The use of continuous positive airway pressure has been advocated but remains unreported.[100]

CHRONIC MOUNTAIN SICKNESS

Chronic mountain sickness (CMS), also known as Monge disease, is a syndrome affecting lifelong altitude dwellers and native populations. First described by Carlos Monge in 1928 in Peru,[128] it is characterized by excessive erythrocytosis (EE), which may lead to pulmonary hypertension, cor pulmonale, and congestive cardiac failure.[129]

CMS prevalence varies widely among high-altitude populations around the world. Tibetans have a low prevalence with 1.2% reported, while with the Han Chinese in the same region the rate is 5.6%. The rates in South America are also generally higher with a prevalence of 4.5% in the general population,[130] and increasing up to 33.7% in miners 60 to 69 years of age.[131] These ethnic variations may be explained by significant differences in adaptation to high altitude. Tibetan natives have been dwelling at altitude for significantly longer than Andean natives and have adapted very differently. Andeans show lower HVR and stronger HPV than Tibetans and even in health show a preponderance for higher Hb than is observed in Tibetans.[5] Other than ethnic variation, there appears to be a direct correlation with altitude; a study in North India observed no cases of CMS below 3000 m, yet a prevalence of 13% above this elevation.[132]

The underlying cause of the EE is not yet fully understood. It is generally accepted that chronic hypoxia, potentially exacerbated by a loss of ventilatory acclimatization leading to central hypoventilation, results in an erythrocytosis. The EE may be mediated by EPO, which is produced in response to hypoxia; however, the correlation between EPO levels, SpO_2, and Hb is not consistent, suggesting that it is not the sole factor.[129] Recent gene studies have highlighted the potential role of SENP1, a gene involved in EPO regulation. Individuals with CMS SENP1 appear to show a higher transcriptional response to hypoxia[133-135] and the gene is the subject of ongoing research in this field.

Clinically, CMS may be identified by the excessive erythropoiesis (females Hb ≥19 g/dL; males Hb ≥21 g/dL) and severe hypoxemia.[136] Symptoms of this include headache, dyspnea, fatigue or sleep disturbance, and a burning sensation in the hands and feet. Meanwhile, signs include cyanosis (particularly marked in mucous membranes), finger clubbing, and dilatation of blood vessels. Further investigations may demonstrate pulmonary hypertension and cardiac failure. Of clinical relevance are family history, obesity, and sleep apnea, which are all risk factors for the development of CMS. The gold standard tool for diagnosis is the Qinghai score for CMS.[136] It is important to note that the diagnosis of CMS should only be made in the absence of other systemic disease that may explain hypoxemia, such as chronic airway diseases.

The optimal management of CMS is permanent relocation to a lower altitude; however, CMS will dissipate with the resumption of normoxia. When permanent relocation is not possible, sojourns to lower altitudes may help to stop Hb from hitting excessive levels.[129] Venesection, with or without isovolumetric hemodilution, is used widely in clinical practice.[129,136] However, supportive literature is of limited quality[137,138] and there are concerns about a rebound effect on Hb, although these are unproven.[129] In addition, recent evidence suggests that iron deficiency caused by venesection may worsen pulmonary hypertension and advocates the use of iron supplementation to ameliorate this effect.[139] Numerous pharmacologic compounds have been studied with limited success including: ACE inhibitors, ventilatory stimulants, and dopaminergic antagonists. Recently, more focus has been given to acetazolamide with positive results, suggesting it is safe, able to reduce erythrocytosis, and improve pulmonary circulation, although side effects associated with long-term use remain unknown.[140,141]

COMORBIDITY AT ALTITUDE

The acute altitude pathologies described previously have been largely studied in healthy populations and there is a limited body of evidence to characterize how existing disease may be affected by ascent to altitude.[142] At the same time, travel to remote, high-altitude destinations is becoming easier, and people are living longer with a higher burden of chronic disease[143]; as a consequence, the challenges of managing chronic disease at altitude are likely to become increasingly relevant.

It is recommended that individuals with significant preexisting disease should consult an experienced altitude physician and undergo a risk assessment before travel. The assessment should consider existing conditions as well as details of the proposed trip, including ascent profile and level of exertion.[144] The conditions most likely of concern at altitude are those affecting the cardiorespiratory system because these may cause additional difficulty in adapting to the hypoxic environment. Consideration should be given to two separate issues: whether chronic disease will predispose individuals to the development of acute altitude pathologies and whether altitude exposure will exacerbate chronic disease.[142]

Ischemic heart disease is a pathology that may be worsened by altitude exposure. Acute altitude exposure increases cardiac output, and thus myocardial oxygen demand, while in the presence of reduced arterial oxygen content.[145] Estimates of myocardial perfusion in healthy subjects suggest that there may be some reduction at altitude, which may be partly ameliorated by acetazolamide.[146] However, several studies have exposed patients with stable coronary artery disease (CAD), who are deemed to be low risk and who have exercised at altitude with no adverse effects.[147,148] A single study of eight patients with moderate-risk disease demonstrated that compensatory mechanisms of coronary circulation may be exhausted at even moderate altitude.[149] Current recommendations advise cautious ascent to a maximum of 4200 m by low-risk patients, who have had a minimum of 6 months postmyocardial infarction or revascularization before travel. These recommendations also advise moderate-risk patients not to ascend above 2500 m, with only light exercise undertaken, while those at highest risk should avoid altitude entirely. Consideration should be given to acetazolamide, as it may aid coronary perfusion, but this has not been verified in patients with CAD.[145]

Patients with heart failure may pose a significant challenge at altitude, particularly as the condition is often closely linked to other comorbidities. However, studies on patients with stable disease (New York Heart Association Class II-IV) have demonstrated moderate altitude may be tolerated without significant compromise, although those with the most severe disease were significantly limited in their exercise tolerance.[150,151] Medications used to manage heart failure should also be closely reviewed. Use of diuretics must be monitored, as fluid status is likely to alter at altitude and particular care should be paid to concomitant use of acetazolamide. Studies suggest that selective β1 receptor antagonists may improve exercise performance when compared to nonselective beta blockers and are advised where practical.[145,152] In summary, those with the most severe disease should abstain from travel to altitude whereas those with mild to moderate disease should proceed with caution.[145]

In the presence of the hypobaric hypoxia found at altitude, there is concern for exacerbation of respiratory disease. Counterintuitively, however, observational data suggest that asthma is less common, and less severe, in those living at altitude.[153,154] One likely reason for this is the reduced population of dust mites at altitude secondary to the cold, dry, and hypoxic conditions[155] that result in a significant improvement in many pathologic features of asthma.[156] However, such studies do not provide evidence regarding acute altitude exposure. There have been a number of observational studies exploring acute altitude exposure[157-160] with conflicting results for physiologic measurements (e.g., peak expiratory flow, forced expiratory volume in 1 second [FEV1]), but all have demonstrated safe travel for patients with mild asthma to altitudes of up to 6410 m. Caution is advised, however, as upper airway infections, particularly in remote environments, remain a risk for asthmatic patients.[161] Hence, while travel to altitude is safe for well-controlled asthmatics, adequate supplies of rescue inhalers and oral steroids are advised.[142] Measures may also be taken to limit cold, dry air exposure, which often exacerbates asthma.[157] These can be as simple as covering the nose and mouth during outdoor exposure.[142] Those with poorly controlled or severe asthma are at high risk because of the remoteness of the environment and variability of medical facilities, and travel should be avoided where possible in this group.[142]

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) poses a particular challenge at altitude. Studies of altitude dwellers with COPD demonstrate increased mortality and cor pulmonale.[162,163] A number of studies simulating altitude as a model for commercial air flight have shown marked hypoxemia in response to moderately simulated altitude.[164,165] A similar drop in PaO_2 was observed in mild to moderate COPD sufferers on ascent to 1920 m, with a mean PaO_2 fall from 8.8 kPa at sea level to 6.9 kPa.[166] However, no adverse clinical events were reported in these studies and, given the chronic nature of the hypoxia, there is likely to be some degree of preexisting adaptation.[142] Particular care must be taken in COPD patients with pulmonary hypertension. As previously discussed, the pathophysiology of HAPE indicates that preexisting pulmonary hypertension may increase susceptibility to HAPE.[142] When assessing risk of hypoxemia at altitude, the use of formulae derived to predict PaO_2 during flight may be helpful.[167] In general, there are limited data on the safety of travel to altitudes for patients with COPD, and no data for their travel above 3048 m. Patients with COPD, and in particular those with pulmonary hypertension, should seek medical advice prior to traveling to high altitude.

Special Situations at Altitude

CHILDREN

Children represent an understudied group at altitude. While many of them either live at or sojourn to higher elevations, comparatively few studies have examined this. Children born and living at altitude are at increased risk of hypoxemia either secondary to acute pathology or congenital abnormalities. However, the risk and responses to living at altitude vary greatly among different ethnic populations as a result of the variations in adaptation as previously discussed.[168]

Studies on acute exposure to altitude suggest that children show similar patterns of acclimatization as adults.[169,170] Altitude pathologies meanwhile present a significant problem in children. A study in Colorado at 2835 m estimated a 28% prevalence of AMS in children.[171] However, the diagnosis of AMS remains problematic in children, as many symptoms of AMS may be associated with any travel in children. The same holds true for more serious altitude pathologies of HAPE and HACE, which may be overlooked in children (especially of younger age). As a result, extreme caution and descent is advised when a child becomes unwell at altitudes above 2500 m.[172] Pharmacotherapy is less widely advocated in children, particularly for mild cases of AMS. In severe cases or where HAPE develops, there may be a place for weight-appropriate doses of acetazolamide or nifedipine.[173]

PREGNANCY

Maternal hypoxia may develop as a consequence of travel to high altitude (>1800 m) with obstetric guidelines identifying this as potentially hazardous for the fetus,[174,175] although evidence suggests a number of pregnant women will travel to altitude.[50,176] There are limited data available on this subject, with only a small number of studies exploring on sojourners to altitude.[176,177] There is evidence of an increased rate of neonatal intensive care admission and oxygen administration at birth in infants of altitude residents.[176] In addition, multiple population studies demonstrate a significant reduction in birth weight that is proportional to altitude gain above 2000 m. This is not due to increased prematurity but rather intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR).[178,179] The effect of altitude on birthweight in these populations varies among different populations. It is more pronounced in recently arrived populations, such as the Han Chinese and Europeans, and least pronounced in groups such as Tibetans, who have resided at altitude for much longer.[1] This suggests any results derived from sojourners or permanent residents are unlikely to be entirely transferable.

The limited number of physiologic studies on the fetal effects of maternal hypoxia suggest changes in the placental villous membrane facilitate increased gas exchange.[180] With these changes, the fetuses of women exposed to short administrations of 10% oxygen show no signs of distress with no significant change in fetal heart rate, HR variability, or Doppler velocimetry in the umbilical artery.[181] However, studies on altitude dwellers have demonstrated a reduction in the pregnancy-associated increase in uterine artery blood flow,[182] which may account for IUGR.

Additional research is required in this field and the paucity of evidence makes any firm recommendation challenging. There are clear physiologic sequelae for both mother and fetus in response to altitude, which in the chronically hypoxic mother appear deleterious. Consequently, any travel to altitude during pregnancy must be with caution, although conclusive data for sojourners are unavailable.

Anesthesia at Altitude

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

Most surgical facilities are not situated at extremes of altitude. However, a number of centers perform operations at high altitude,[183,184] while at any altitude there may be an emergent need for general anesthesia.[185] Practice under these conditions is guided largely by clinical experience, the setting, and select published case reports.

The anesthetic practitioner at altitude should be aware of the physiologic and pathologic changes, discussed previously, which may affect individuals. They should endeavor to assess on an individual basis how these changes can impact each patient. Consideration should be given to the altitude at which anesthesia is performed, the level of acclimatization of the individual, and any concomitant pathology. When logistically feasible, it may be advisable, particularly in unacclimatized individuals, to descend before administration of anesthesia.[186] At extremes of altitude, the risks associated with anesthesia are only outweighed by life- or limb-saving procedures.[185]

It is also important to establish the environment in which anesthetisa will take place. The operating environment in a hospital with formal operating theaters and associated equipment is very different to emergency surgery undertaken in a remote and rural setting, regardless of altitude.

Several aspects require particular consideration, the most obvious of which is the increased risk of perioperative hypoxia. Medications used during anesthesia, notably opiates, depress both the tachycardia and tachypnea associated with the physiologic response to altitude.[186] Slowed recovery from anesthesia has been reported,[187] as has increased sensitivity to anesthetic medications.[185] These factors combine to create a prolonged period where an individual may not be able to enact the full range of compensatory mechanisms to tolerate hypobaric hypoxia. Some of these consequences may be reversed by the administration of supplemental oxygen[187] and certainly oxygen therapy at altitude is advised when possible.[186] Care with analgesic agents in the postoperative period is necessary to ensure ventilation and oxygenation is not compromised; analgesia-induced respiratory depression was implicated in the death of a Sherpa who underwent a debridement at 4300 m.[188]

The second area of particular note in the perioperative period are reports of increased bleeding and challenging hemostasis during surgery at altitude.[183,187] This is attributed to increased venous pressure and increased capillary density[186] and, while not conclusively proven, still warrants consideration.

ANESTHETIC EQUIPMENT

The most routinely considered implication of high altitude on anesthetic equipment is in relation to anesthetic vaporizers. As variable bypass vaporizers rely on the saturated vapor pressure of anesthetic agents, the partial pressure of anesthetic gas delivered remains constant regardless of altitude, although the Fi_{AA} will rise. This should in theory mean the same clinical effect.[189] Chamber-based studies on vaporizers have confirmed a constant partial pressure delivery;[190] however, several caveats to this exist. First, desflurane vaporizers operate by using a measured flow principle.[189] Such vaporizers will deliver a constant Fi_{AA} and, therefore, in hypobaria will deliver a reduced partial pressure. Second, consideration must be given to the monitoring and targeted dose of anesthetic gas. The minimum alveolar concentration is often used to guide dosing of anesthetics but it is not appropriate for use at altitude. Instead, practitioners should consider their administration as a partial pressure rather than a fraction, or concentration, as it is the partial pressure that determines depth of anesthesia.[191] This is most apparent when considering nitrous oxide, which when delivered at a given concentration is less effective at altitude, proportional to the drop in partial pressure.[192]

This recommendation regarding the use of partial pressure should also be considered for all forms of gas monitoring. Modern anesthetic machines may interchangeably state partial pressure or concentrations for gas monitoring.[191] However, the analyzers themselves physically detect partial pressure, not concentration. The reported concentration is derived mathematically and, for example, an oxygen analyzer set to measure 21% in air at sea level will read 17.4% in air at 1500 m, unless recalibrated.[190] Once again, the physiologic significance is in the partial pressure of oxygen. Therefore, direct measurement of partial pressure allows greater understanding of the physiologic effect of the gas mixture being delivered to the anesthetized patient.[191]

Flowmeters are also affected at altitude. Flowmeters rely on the density of gas to measure flow. Studies examining the floating flowmeters showed that with reducing P_B, and therefore density of gas, these flowmeters were liable to be under-read.[190] The percentage of error observed was not constant but reached a peak error of 21%, making adjustments challenging. Studies have not been conducted to observe the impact of high altitude on flowmeters found in more modern anesthetic machines such as hot wire anemometers. Caution is advised when examining readings from flowmeters and where possible gas analyzers directly measuring partial pressure should be used to corroborate.

GENERAL ANESTHESIA

Several considerations for anesthesia at altitude have already been discussed, including perioperative hypoxia and the effects of anesthetic drugs on mechanisms of acclimatization. As such, when considering anesthetic agents, the maintenance of these mechanisms, including tachycardia and hyperpnea, may be desirable. This is particularly relevant in the austere environment where supplemental oxygen may not be available. In such environments, the use of ketamine has been advocated in both emergency[185] and elective[193-196] settings. These reports have varied in their approach, with some using entirely ketamine anesthesia, whereas others have supplemented with inhalational anesthesia or benzodiazepines. Without supplemental oxygen, some degree of desaturation may be observed in the spontaneously breathing patient, but this was felt acceptable and could be managed with monitoring and simple airway maneuvers.[194] However, total apnea may be seen with smaller doses of ketamine than would be expected at sea level, with a report of deep general anesthesia and apnea at a dose of only 0.5 mg/kg;[185] however, other studies have successfully used higher doses without any adverse outcome.[196] Further caution is advised when using ketamine, as it may increase pulmonary vasoconstriction, with a single study at 1600 m suggesting certain susceptible patients may develop increased pulmonary vascular resistance with ketamine use.[197] This may make it an undesirable agent for use in patients with active, or high risk of developing, HAPE.

Any anesthetic at altitude, particularly emergency remote surgery, remains comparatively high risk because there are limited data on which to base practice. There is some literature suggesting that ketamine may be used safely (either alone or in combination). Adequate monitoring, airway equipment, and appropriately trained practitioners are advised, alongside a careful risk-benefit analysis and consideration of alternative courses of action.

REGIONAL ANESTHESIA

Spinal anesthesia may be desirable at altitude, as it allows the individual to maintain his or her own ventilatory parameters and reduces much of the risk surrounding perioperative hypoxia. Reports of very high rates of postdural puncture headache (PDPH) do exist;[187] however, these predate the use of modern spinal needles with narrower gauges and pencil-point needles now routinely used in modern practice.[198] A single study examining spinal anesthesia at moderate altitude (1890 m) found that at altitude spinal blocks took longer to perform, and block duration was shorter than at sea level.[199] They also observed a higher rate of PDPH (7.14 vs. 2.85%; $P < .05$) at altitude. Despite these limitations, spinal anesthesia provided adequate analgesia for lower extremity surgery in all patients and no significant complications were reported. Based on this limited evidence, spinal anesthesia may be the first choice for such procedures at high altitude but further study is advised.

APPLICATION TO FLIGHT, INCLUDING AIR TRANSPORT OF CRITICALLY UNWELL PATIENTS

The contents of this chapter remain relevant when considering air travel. Cabin pressure in commercial air travel is regulated but studies have shown peak cabin altitudes do vary, with an average value of 1933 m and the highest recorded being 2606 m.[200] The physiologic changes are equivalent to those experienced by visitors to high altitude but with the caveat that ascent happens much more rapidly with less time to acclimatize. A small drop in SpO_2 may be observed, and symptoms of AMS have been reported. Despite this, air travel is generally physiologically well tolerated.[201] Greater concern may be associated with prolonged immobility and the risk of thromboembolic phenomena.[202] In contrast, patients with significant comorbidity may not tolerate air travel because of the rapid altitude gain and relative hypoxia. Extensive guidelines exist to guide the decision on flying with health conditions.[204] In the rare event of cabin decompression, risks are considerably higher. In addition to acute hypoxia, which at altitudes above 13,716 m may induce unconsciousness in as little as 15 to 20 seconds, there are dangers posed by sudden air movement, cold, and debris.[203]

The transfer of an unwell patient is a significant undertaking that relies on careful planning, adequate infrastructure and equipment, and a thorough understanding of the patient's physiology and pathology.[205] In addition to hypoxia, there should be an awareness for gas expansion within body cavities.[205,206] This expansion may affect pathologic processes, such as pneumocephalus, pneumothorax, or intestinal gas, which is particularly significant in cases such as volvulus. The presence of any of these pathologic processes is a relative contraindication for aeromedical evacuation,[205] but the decision must be ultimately be balanced against the need for ongoing treatment not available at the patient's location. Gas expansion also changes the volume of air within medical devices, such as endotracheal cuffs. Ascent to 2500 m from sea level increases the volume in an endotracheal cuff by approximately 35%,[207] which should be considered and accounted for both on ascent and descent. There are additional working challenges related to the enclosed space and moving of patients.[205,207] A large cohort (19,228) of aeromedical evacuations in Canada reports a critical event on 5.1% of evacuations at a rate of 1 per 12.6 hours of transport time.[208] Critical events were more likely to occur in older patients, those with greater hemodynamic instability, and those requiring assisted ventilation. The most common critical event was hemodynamic deterioration and the need for intubation was the most common major resuscitative procedure required. The mortality in the cohort remained very low at 0.1%.[208] These results demonstrate that with appropriately trained practitioners, aeromedical evacuation can be performed safely and with great benefit to patients.

Space Medicine

Atmospheric pressure decreases exponentially with increasing distance from the Earth's surface and becomes progressively hostile to human survival. At the cruising altitude of commercial airliners (approximately 39,000 feet), the atmospheric pressure outside the aircraft is only approximately 20% of the pressure at sea level. The International Aeronautics Federation defines the boundary of outer space, where the Earth's atmosphere stops and space starts, as an altitude of 100 km above the Earth's surface.[209] However, at any particular time, astronauts on board the International Space Station (ISS) are 350 to 450 km above the Earth's surface as they circle our planet at velocities of up to 17,500 mph. Yet, these extreme altitudes are still considered to be relatively low Earth orbits and future astronauts will travel much farther away from the protective environment of the Earth.[210]

INTRODUCTION TO SPACE EXPLORATION AND MEDICINE

On November 5, 2015, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) announced it was looking for astronauts for long-duration space flights, including extended missions on the ISS and possible journeys to Mars.[211] In recent times, both the United States and Russia have announced their intentions to construct a new spaceport on the moon and to use this lunar base as a stepping stone to send their own astronauts to Mars. Private billionaire entrepreneurs (such as Richard Branson and Elon Musk) have outlined similar visions and promised to revolutionize air travel by transporting passengers using rockets traveling through space instead of traditional airplanes traveling through the earth's atmosphere. An international "space race" is undoubtedly already well underway.

Technology, skills, and knowledge have all developed rapidly since humans first entered space in 1961 when Yuri Gagarin orbited the Earth for the first time during a flight lasting less than 2 hours in total.[212] Yet since then, only 12 men have ever walked on the moon and over four decades have passed since the last Apollo mission (Apollo 17) left Earth.[211] A future that includes successfully leaving low Earth orbit again and sending astronauts on more distant missions, as well as making spaceflight safe for commercial purposes, poses many challenges, including how best to identify and manage any potential health issues among future crewmembers and passengers.

RISK OF DISEASE AMONG ASTRONAUTS DURING SPACE TRAVEL

Although the absolute chance of a medical issue arising during spaceflight is low, the risk remains significant. Current conceptual plans for future missions to Mars from NASA predict crewed missions lasting up to 1100 days (approximately 3 years).[213] Given the rate of emergencies among the general population is around 0.06 events per year, a crew of 6 astronauts would expect to encounter at least one medical emergency during a 3-year space mission ($0.06 \times 6 \times 3 = 1.08$ events).[214]

Astronauts can be affected by illness or disease just as any other human. For example, concern about possible exposure to the German measles virus meant that NASA Astronaut Thomas K. Mattingly was famously removed from the crew of the ill-fated Apollo 13 mission just 72 hours prior to launch (Mattingly never actually developed measles and went on to successfully fly future missions including both Apollo 16 and STS4).[215] However, the unique environmental conditions associated with spaceflight can also modify an astronaut's susceptibility to such illnesses. Identifying these effects remains an active focus of research, such as the Longitudinal Study of Astronaut Health that NASA has been operating since 1992.[216] This cohort study is generating data about all-cause astronaut mortality and morbidity, such as the reassuring finding that cancer mortality among astronauts is not significantly increased (as might be expected from increased exposure to harmful doses of radiation, as later discussed), suggesting the many preventative measures employed to mitigate these risks during spaceflight appear to be effective.[216]

Similarly, the spaceflight environment can also cause a number of specific health concerns to astronauts that are not normally experienced by the general population and which can affect the physiologic and psychologic performance of crewmembers. One survey of astronauts returning from 79 U.S. space shuttle missions showed that as many as 94% of crewmembers took some form of medication at some stage during the flight and often to treat conditions not normally expected among similarly physically fit cohorts on Earth. These conditions included space motion sickness (SMS), sleeplessness, headache, or backache.[217,218]

The Environmental Challenges Posed by Spaceflight

EXTREME ACCELERATIONS/DECELERATIONS

Takeoff and landing (including re-entry to the Earth's atmosphere) are two of the most important and dangerous periods of any spaceflight. Every human fatality during spaceflight to date (Challenger, Columbia, Soyuz 1, and T11) has occurred during one of these critical periods.[210] Astronauts routinely experience extreme accelerative forces of around 4 to 5 G during takeoff and re-entry but these can be much higher; Yuri Gagarin remained conscious while experiencing forces of around 8 G during re-entry in his spacecraft Vostock 1 in 1961, and the Apollo astronauts typically experienced landing forces of around 17 G and tolerated them remarkably well.[211,212] Current ISS crews returning in Russian Mir spacecraft use seats with specially designed shock absorbers and liners to decrease these forces by 20% to 30% and bring them down below 22G.[211]

These accelerative and decelerative forces are more than capable of dislodging incorrectly stowed items of equipment (causing trauma from the impact of flying objects or hard landings a real hazard), and also generating extreme temperatures from friction with the surrounding air. During re-entry, the outside of the U.S. space shuttle reached temperatures in excess of 15,000°C. This was high enough to ionize air and remove electrons from the outermost atoms on the protective heat tiles around the Shuttle spacecraft surface, generating significant amounts of electromagnetic disturbance that prevented any radio contact with the onboard crew for 17 minutes. On February 1, 2013, damage to one of the heat tiles during takeoff led to a weakness in the Space Shuttle Columbia's critical heat-protective layer, leaving the vehicle unable to withstand these extreme temperatures on its return to Earth and causing the vehicle to burn up on re-entry, resulting in the loss of all seven crewmembers on board.[211]

RADIATION

Solar radiation exposure (i.e., galactic cosmic rays, high-energy photons, high-energy and charge (HZE) neutrons and nuclei, and solar particle events) has always posed a major health concern for astronauts. These risks of both acute (mission-critical) and chronic (post-mission) radiation-related exposure are only going to increase on longer-term exploratory missions deeper into space.[219] Crewmembers have not completely left the protection of the Earth's magnetic field (i.e., gone beyond the Van Allen belts) since the Apollo missions, but crewmembers on any future mission to either the moon or to Mars will be at risk of direct exposure to full solar radiation doses for the first time in over 40 years and currently no adequate shielding strategy has been fully developed and tested.[220] Chronic exposures of less than 1 sievert (Sv) per year are still thought to have long-term effects on tumor rates; acute exposures of 0.5 to 1.0 Sv could be sufficient to cause symptoms of acute radiation exposure. Some estimates predict exposure rates could almost nearly reach such levels during a 940-day Mars mission.[221] Other estimates have even projected radiation exposure levels during a simulated Mars mission, that would for the first time even exceed the strict occupational career limit NASA currently employs (i.e., upper confidence interval [CI] for risk of exposure-induced death [REID] of 3%), using the recommendations by the National Council on Radiation Protection.[222] During a 1-year deep-space mission at minimum average solar radiation levels, the total risk of exposure-induced cancer in a 45-year-old male who has never smoked is predicted to be approximately 2% (CI 0.53%-7.84%), with the risk anticipated to be highest for lung cancer followed by colorectal cancers.[219] However, our overall understanding of the long-term health risks from radiation exposure during spaceflight is still relatively limited and marked differences between current predictions and previously observed effects remain.[223] Besides malignancy, other chronic radiation exposure health risks have been noted among astronauts. For example, increased rates of cataract formation have been reported in those exposed to greater than 8 millisievert (mSv) of radiation after a 20-day space mission,[216,224] reduced fertility (and/or increased numbers of birth defects in animal studies),[211] and a slightly (but not statistically significant) increased risk of developing clinical thyroid disease.[216] Initially, the CNS was thought to be relatively resistant to the effects of radiation; however, widespread CNS changes have been reported including memory impairment, changing synapse plasticity, impaired executive function, and cognitive dysfunction.[225-229] Moreover, many of these effects may be even further compounded by the significant neuropsychologic challenges of spaceflight.

ISOLATION, CONFINEMENT, SLEEP DISTURBANCE, AND OTHER PSYCHOLOGICAL CHALLENGES

Traveling at over 17,000 km/h, the crew of the ISS travel completely around the Earth—what we usually define as a typical "day"—every 90 minutes. This means that in every 24-hour period, the ISS crew experience no fewer than 16 sunrises and 16 sunsets; in other words, crewmembers could easily see 365 sunrises (a whole year's worth) in just a 23-day space mission. The sleep-wake cycle is closely linked to biologic circadian rhythms regulated by the solar light,[230] but astronauts also face many other challenges to sleeping comfortably, such as constant noise, physical discomfort (astronauts usually sleep in sleeping bags fixed tightly to the walls of the space craft), and hypercapnia. Sleep deprivation and fatigue are common complaints among crewmembers, with studies suggesting that on average astronauts experienced just 5.96 hours (SD 0.56) sleep during space shuttle missions, 6.09 hours (SD 0.67) during ISS missions, and less than 6.5 hours during their 3-month pre-launch period.[231,232] Similar levels of sleep disturbance have been reported to impair cognitive performance and worsen long-term health outcomes.[231,233] The constant stresses posed by extreme isolation and prolonged periods of confinement can also increase sleep disturbances and affect individual and team behavioral performances.[234] Interestingly, though, these effects seem much more variable between different individuals and would also appear to be trainable. In the Mars 500 study, 6 males were confined for 520 days in a 550 m^3 chamber simulating a high-fidelity Mars mission. One crewmember reported depressive symptoms throughout 93% of the mission, whereas two other crewmembers had no symptoms of psychologic distress at any point in the study.[235] Similarly, after reviewing how their astronauts performed during missions on the ISS, all crewmembers participating in the study displayed unusually high levels of self-awareness and were generally positive about their time on the ISS, leading NASA to conclude that their training programs regarding interpersonal relationships, teamwork, and psychologic support were effective.[236]

DECOMPRESSION AND CHANGING OXYGEN CONCENTRATIONS

Foreign space objects pose a constant hazard to any manned space vehicle, as any penetrating impact could cause sudden depressurization of the internal cabin environment. NASA estimates that there are now more than 21,000 orbital debris objects (usually human made objects with no further usable purpose or the remains of such objects) in the Earth's atmosphere, and approximately 200 kg of meteorite material (rocky material passing through the Earth's atmosphere while orbiting the sun) is likely to be within 2000 km of the Earth surface at any particular time.[211] Sudden loss of the crew's artificial environment can cause acute hypoxia, decompression sickness (DCS), and ultimately death if the problem is not rapidly resolved or contained. According to the Federal Aviation Administration, the time of useful consciousness (i.e., the amount of time a person can effectively or adequately perform flight duties with an insufficient supply of oxygen) after rapid decompression at 50,000 feet is just 5 seconds.[237]

DCS (commonly known as "the bends") arises when gases usually dissolved are forced out of solution by sudden pressure changes to form generalized bubbles (a process called *ebullism*, body fluids boiling as a result of ambient pressure being less than the saturated vapor pressure of water). Soviet Cosmonaut Alexei Leonov reportedly gave himself DCS in 1965 as he finished making the world's first spacewalk—he needed to reduce the size of his malfunctioning spacesuit in order to fit back through the airlock door into his space craft![238] Space suit design has since improved massively but the dangers associated with performing extravehicular activities (EVAs) remain significant.

American and Russian spacesuits maintain an internal environment of 100% oxygen at either 30 or 40 kPa, respectively. It is a major engineering challenge to build flexible suits durable enough to withhold higher pressures against the vacuum of space.[239] Astronauts undergo pre-EVA procedures before leaving the main spacecraft to minimize the risk of developing DCS during a particular EVA, but despite being relatively time-consuming in spaceflight terms, these pre-EVA activities represent extremely rapid decompression times. Atmospheric pressures between 30 and 40 kPa are equivalent to standing on the summit of Mount Everest at 8848 m. While most climbers would typically take around 60 to 70 days to reach the summit of Mount Everest,[240] astronauts are decompressed to these values within minutes to hours, thus making supplemental oxygen essential to prevent any of the altitude illnesses described earlier in this chapter. However, oxygen represents a major fire hazard to any spacecraft and no manned space programs currently use spacecraft with elevated oxygen levels for this reason. Therefore, some form of decompression procedure currently remains essential prior to any EVA.[239] Although this may not be much of a concern to routine commercial passenger travel into space (passengers will not need to routinely exit their spacecraft), how best to manage these conflicting issues on longer missions to the moon or Mars remains unclear.

MICROGRAVITY

The human body has carefully evolved over millions of years to perform optimally in an environment with gravity. In fact, the effects of gravity on our environment are so ubiquitous that it is challenging to contemplate just how significant a role gravity plays on human health and performance. Without gravity, just attempting to function and interact appropriately with our surrounding environment becomes immensely difficult, and simple phenomena that we take for granted on earth no longer occur. Without gravity, there is also no convection, making temperature control difficult. As an example, burning flames are spherical and blue rather than yellow and pointy; there is no downward soot deposition or upward heat transfer and the flame burns as soon as it reaches any oxygen and in all directions. Without gravity, there is no effect of buoyancy—bubbles do not rise to the surface but remain suspended in fluids (Fig. 74.3). In other words, to remove any bubbles from fluid in a syringe requires the application of an external accelerative force. Weightlessness has an impact on almost every organ system in the body, posing a number of both acute and chronic health risks to astronauts. A future mission to Mars raises further challenges as astronauts will need to be able transition from weightlessness to functioning in a gravitational environment again within minutes after landing.[211]

Cardiovascular Physiology During Space Flight

The cardiovascular system is particularly susceptible to the effects of microgravity. Shortly after takeoff, an acute "fluid shift" quickly occurs as fluid usually held in the venous (high capacitance) side of the circulation starts to rapidly redistribute throughout other tissue beds (Fig. 74.4). This effect is most marked in the upper body with up to 2 L of the blood normally pooled in the venous system in the legs by gravity is released upward into the central circulatory system within minutes of launching.[241] Astronauts quickly develop facial edema and a so-called "chicken leg" syndrome as a result of this shift.[210]

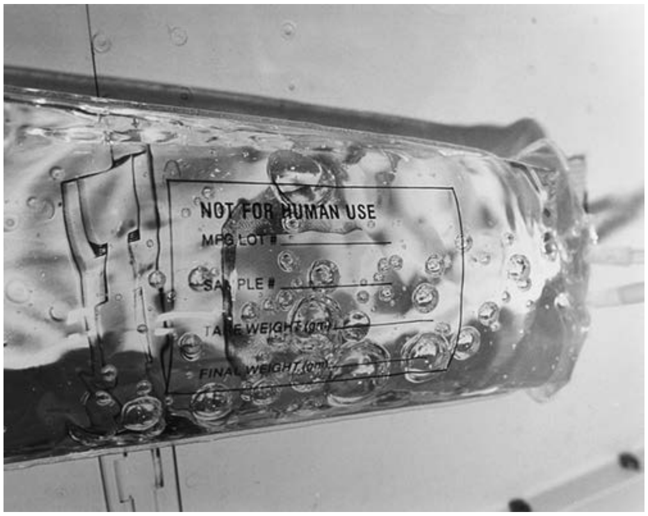


Fig. 74.3 A 1-L bag of 0.9% saline during an orbital flight with air bubbles clearly visible throughout the bag because of the lack of gravitational forces. (From Norfleet WT. Anesthetic concerns of spaceflight. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(5):1219–1219.)

Different studies suggest that cardiac output increases between 18% and 30% acutely in response to weightlessness and that this increase persists for at least 8 days.[242-244] This increase is driven predominantly by increases in stroke volume as overall HR appears to remain relatively unchanged.[243-245] Systemic vascular resistance (SVR) also decreases by 14% to 35%, leaving systolic BP relatively unchanged,[244,245] although some studies suggest that resting diastolic and mean arterial pressures might both decrease slightly in response to microgravity but still increase as normal in response to exercise.[243,245] These decreases may turn out to be even more pronounced, however, on longer-duration space missions.[245] Paradoxically, central venous pressure (CVP) acutely decreases after takeoff, possibly as a result of increased atrial distension.[246,247] One study of space shuttle astronauts suggested that baroreflex sensitivity at rest might actually increase briefly initially before returning to baseline levels a few days later,[248] but the baroreflex response seems to be chronically reduced after longer (e.g., 9 months) duration missions.[249]

As time in space increases, adaptation to microgravity slowly decreases SV (and cardiac output) again and allows ejection fraction to increase.[250,251] This is presumed to be driven by anatomical changes to cardiac tissue, as left ventricular mass and mean sphericity index may decrease by 8.0% and 9.6%, respectively, together with a drop in total body fluid.[252,253]

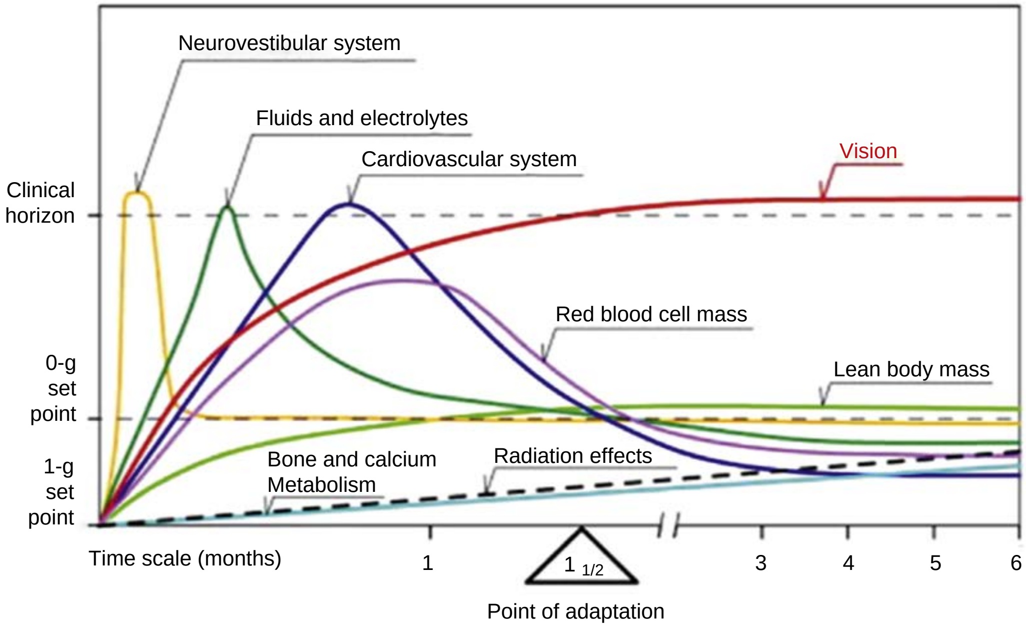


Fig. 74.4 **The time course of physiologic adaptation and acclimatization to microgravity.** (From Komorowski M, Fleming S, Kirkpatrick AW. Fundamentals of anesthesiology for spaceflight. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30(3):781–790.)

Plasma volume decreases of up to 15% have been reported in both bedrest and spaceflight studies,[254-256] accompanied by similar decreases in total red cell mass.[254,257] Whereas plasma volume decreases within 24 hours, red cell changes take a week to become apparent, suggesting different mechanisms behind each change, but the exact cause of the decrease in red blood cells (RBCs) remains unclear.[210,257] Elevated ferritin levels have been measured after space shuttle missions, but decreased reticulocyte counts suggest this process is because of reduced RBC production and not increased destruction/consumption.[257] But this could also be a result of changes in tissue oxygen levels, particularly in the kidney, as a result of fluid shifting from the lower limbs toward the central (and renal) tissue beds.[210]

Although these fluid changes reverse within 2 to 3 weeks after returning to Earth, initially hypovolemia and orthostatic intolerance still cause astronauts significant problems when they arrive back on Earth. Current protocols require astronauts to “fluid load” with salt water approximately 1 hour before landing, which significantly reduces these risks.[258]

Microgravity itself does not appear to affect cardiac electrophysiology directly. However, a large number of arrhythmias have been reported during spaceflight and particularly during EVAs, possibly due to the many fluid shifts described above and the changes in catecholamine levels and adrenergic receptor sensitivity.[210,259,260] Every one of the nine Skylab astronauts suffered some form of rhythm disturbance during their mission, NASA recorded multiple arrhythmias during its many space shuttle missions, and in 1987 one of the crewmembers on board the Russian MIR space station recorded a 14-beat run of ventricular tachycardia (VT).[210,211]

Pulmonary Physiology During Space Flight

Human lungs are normally exquisitely sensitive to gravity, which induces relevant gradients to both ventilation distribution and pulmonary blood flow. Consequently, it is not surprising that pulmonary function alters during spaceflight away from the Earth’s normal gravity environment.[242,261] However, adaptive changes remain remarkably short lived and, unusually, no pulmonary recovery or rehabilitation is commonly necessary when astronauts do return to Earth.[262] Whether this would also remain true after future space missions with durations longer than 6 months currently remains unproven.

More specifically, respiratory rate increases by around 9% in microgravity but tidal volume decreases by up to 15%, meaning that minute alveolar ventilation remains essentially unchanged overall.[210,242,263] Other respiratory measurements don’t alter significantly either with space flight. Measurements suggest that although vital capacity, forced vital capacity, and FEV1 may all decrease marginally (by around 2%-5%) within 24 hours of entering microgravity (Fig. 74.5), by the fourth day of spaceflight all have returned to pre-flight values.[211,264] Residual volume decreases by around 18% in space (approximately 320 mL) and consequently functional residual capacity also reduces by around 15% (approximately 500 mL) in microgravity, possibly because of cranial movement of the diaphragm, more uniform alveolar expansion, and increased intrathoracic blood flow.[263] However, although ventilation and blood flow are more uniform throughout the lung in microgravity, a small and clinically insignificant degree of ventilation perfusion mismatch still remains even in space.[211,265]

On average, ISS astronauts’ exercise capacity (as measured by $\dot{V}O_2$ peak) decreases in the initial stages of their space flight (by 17%) but then continues to gradually normalize again throughout the remainder of their mission. Although some astronauts were able to reach their pre-flight value, others were not, suggesting considerable interindividual variability in exercise-responses to spaceflight.[266] The fact that aerobic capacity increasingly recovers as flight durations lengthen suggests this is a successful response to exercise countermeasures employed during and throughout each ISS mission.[267] All astronauts undergo an individually tailored daily exercise regime whilst in space to counter any aerobic deconditioning, but this countermeasure program has continued to evolve over the years as both knowledge and the equipment available for use on the ISS has changed and improved. While the relative contribution of both treadmill running and cycle ergometry has steadily decreased over the last 10 years of ISS missions to just 30 minutes of each on average per day, the number of resistance exercises in these programs has gradually increased to around an hour a day.[268] HR only increases marginally on return to Earth after long duration space flights, suggesting that these programs can successfully maintain astronauts’ cardiovascular fitness to enable them to meet the demands of daily mission activities.[269] Another one of the main aims of this rigorous exercise regime is to counter the significant muscle atrophy and bone demineralization that occurs under conditions of microgravity (Fig. 74.6).

Musculoskeletal Physiology During Space Flight

Marked bone demineralization starts immediately after entering space and leaving Earth’s gravity. Urinary and

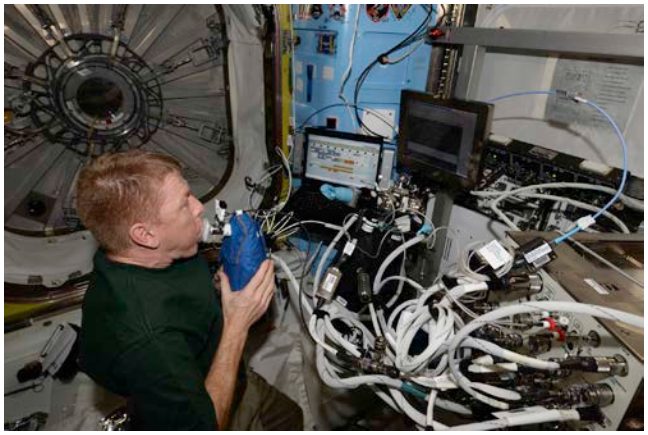


Fig. 74.5 British European Space Agency (ESA) Astronaut Tim Peake performs pulmonary function tests while on the International Space Station. (Image courtesy ESA.) (From European Space Agency. http://m.esa.int/spaceinimages/Images/2016/02/Taking_Tim_s_breath_away. Published 2016.)

Fig. 74.6 European Space Agency (ESA) Astronaut Samantha Cristoforetti exercising on the International Space Station. (Image courtesy ESA.) (From European Space Agency. http://m.esa.int/spaceinimages/Images/2015/09/Samantha_running_in_space. Published 2015.)

fecal calcium excretion increase by 60% to 70% in the first day of space flight, and continues throughout the mission's duration along with notable increases in urinary levels of bone resorption markers and decreases in blood levels of both parathyroid hormone and 1,25 dihydroxy vitamin D.[241] On Earth, the average loss of bone density as a result of aging is approximately 1% per year, whereas in space, bone density decreases an average 1% per month and the rate can be double in the pelvic bones.[210,211] Exercise countermeasure programs (particularly resistive exercise elements) can mitigate these effects and are improving each year, but they are not able to curtail these effects and the risks of fragility fractures and renal stones during space flight remain high among astronauts (and are major concerns for future Mars mission planners), as do long-term health risks such as osteoporosis.[210,270,271]

Similarly, studies of astronauts and cosmonauts on both U.S. space shuttle missions and the Russian Mir missions of 16 and 28 weeks' duration demonstrated significant decreases (5%-17%) in muscle volume in all muscle groups except the neck.[272] Muscle groups normally required to maintain an upright posture are usually most affected (i.e., antigravity muscles). For example, muscle volume loss in ISS crewmembers was greatest in the calves (10%-16% reduction) and in the thighs (4%-7% reduction), whereas no change was seen in upper limb muscle volume.[273] Vastus lateralis muscle biopsies taken from 8 astronauts on early space shuttle missions up to 11 days long confirmed that relative losses were greatest in type IIB and then type IIA (fast twitch) muscle fibers, with type I (slow twitch) fibers changing the least.[274] Functional muscle impairment also occurs alongside these structural muscle changes in response to microgravity, with increased muscle fatiguability and decreased muscle-fiber strength also seen most extensively in antigravity muscle groups.[273] It is notable that decreases in muscle function during space flight are out of proportion with the loss of muscle structure alone. Other factors, including neuronal muscle control, may also contribute.[275] A study by Antonutto found that maximal explosive power decreased between 45% and 65% in spaceflights of 1 to 3 months' duration, while muscle mass only decreased by 9% to 13% during the same period.[276] Electromyographic cycle period and burst durations were decreased in Rhesus monkeys after simulated spaceflight,[277] and significant amounts of dendritic remodeling have been noted in rats on board the ISS.[278]

Central Nervous System and Psychological Challenges During Space Flight

Astronauts commonly experience neurologic changes soon after they arrive in space and also rapidly after their return to Earth, with many of these deficits persisting for long periods after their return. For example, most crewmembers have had some form of locomotion dysfunction after transiting into or out of microgravity, such as ataxia or postural instability. Postural instability may be explained by a number of factors: differential muscle wasting affects postural tone; unloading of the spine means astronauts can gain 2 to 3 inches in height within 10 days of arriving in space, causing stretching of spinal nerve roots and altering the usual length-tension relationship of different muscle compartments (including antigravity muscles most affected by wasting in microgravity); and changes to vestibular feedback loops (the cerebellum and the vestibular system are usually finely tuned to the Earth's gravity) can also significantly impair normal postural reflexes.[275]

The vestibular system, composed of the semicircular canals and otoliths that sense distant angular and linear forces, respectively, is constantly updating the brain about the head's three-dimensional orientation and movement. However, this system has evolved and developed over thousands of years to be finely tuned to the Earth's gravitational field and not a microgravity environment, making vestibular problems in space extremely common.[275] Between 60% and 80% of all astronauts will experience "space motion sickness" within 48 hours of arriving in space, a condition characterized by symptoms of pallor, anorexia, nausea, sometimes vomiting, increased body warmth, and cold sweating.[279] It is usually a short-lived phenomenon, with most cases either resolving spontaneously or with minimal pharmacologic treatment within 48 to 72 hours, but occasionally symptoms can persist longer. Rarely has this condition led to crew members being incapacitated for an entire space shuttle mission.[241] It poses a real challenge to astronauts contemplating missions of long duration to either the moon or to Mars, where they may need to function normally in a new gravitational environment very shortly after landing in order to survive.

Terrestrial motion sickness commonly results from discrepancies between visual and vestibular perceptions of motion. Similarly, lack of any vestibular sense of "up or down" in the unique, weightless environment of space may also contribute to the development of space motion sickness.[241] Microgravity affects other sensory systems too. American and Russian astronauts have reported that foods taste and smell different in space with requests for spices to enhance many foods tasting more bland, as well as having less of a desire for coffee and sweets.[211] Similarly, astronauts are constantly affected by noise during spaceflight with life support systems operating constantly. While ear plugs can block out the noise (typically at levels of 70 to 100 dBA running constantly in very close proximity, 24 hours a day), they do not attenuate the vibrations caused by these machines. However, the headward fluid shifts associated with microgravity may also impair middle ear function and may attenuate the sense of vibration to some degree.[211] Microgravity also impairs proprioceptive sense of limb position and modifies tactile sensitivity with a significant degree of interindividual variability.[280]

The visual system is particularly affected by spaceflight. Anatomical and functional changes, including disc edema, cotton wool spots, choroidal folds, nerve fiber layer thickening, globe flattening, and consequent hyperopic shifts in vision have all been reported in seven astronauts examined after returning from long-duration spaceflights on the ISS.[281] In one of these astronauts, who had initially only experienced relatively mild changes after his 6-month flight (unilateral choroidal folds and a single cotton wool spot in the right eye), these changes continued to progress during a second 6-month mission and he developed disc edema and more widespread choroidal folds in the same eye.[282] Soon after returning from this second mission, globe flattening and moderate increases in optic nerve sheath diameters were noted bilaterally. Twenty-one months later, widespread choroidal folds remained in the right eye and spontaneous venous pulsations were also absent.[283] Choroidal folds in astronauts were thought to be caused by increased ICP during spaceflight (possibly secondary to higher rates of resistive exercise, higher atmospheric levels of CO_2 on board the spacecraft, or the cephalad fluid shifts associated with spaceflight), which are transmitted to the eye through increased levels of CSF transiting along the optic nerve sheath and putting more posterior pressure on both globes. In fact, this is "visual impairment intracranial pressure syndrome" as seen in spaceflight and it has similarities to some effects experienced by people visiting high-altitude regions.[284] However, the long-term asymmetry of these findings in this particular subject suggests that ICPs may not be elevated over prolonged periods in space. Instead, visual impairment during spaceflight may be caused by localized changes to CSF flow within the intraorbital portion of the subarachnoid space—in effect causing an optic nerve sheath "compartment syndrome."[285,286]

Unsurprisingly, the effects of these changes on vision during spaceflight are widespread, and particularly during longer duration missions. Almost 30% of astronauts reported deteriorations in both near and distant visual acuity during short spaceflight missions, with this number increasing to 60% on long-duration missions.[281] Older astronauts are more likely to notice changes as lens accommodation declines with age, and astronauts over the age of 40 are now routinely prescribed "Space Anticipation Glasses" to compensate for their new farsightedness in space. Anecdotal changes in visual fields and changes in intraocular pressure were also reported during the early years of the American space program and substantial amounts of evidence now show that transitioning to or from microgravity also impairs ocular movements and reflexes too.[211]

Fig. 74.7 A small winter-over crew at the European Space Agency's (ESA) remote Concordia station in Antarctica. This crew experienced complete isolation, 24-hour darkness, and extremely cold temperatures (down to −80°C) for many months of the year. (Image courtesy ESA.) (European Space Agency. http://m.esa.int/spaceinimages/Images/2016/07/Concordia_crew_2014-2015. Published 2016.)

In addition to coping with changes to their perception, astronauts also experience numerous psychologic challenges before, during, and after their mission. Astronaut selection is extremely competitive and the intensive international training schedule for crewmembers preparing for launch puts intense stresses on all members of the family unit even before the astronaut leaves Earth. Long periods of isolation have been shown to increase levels of stress as measured by activation of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis (resulting in increased levels of cortisol production) and a degree of sleep impairment.[287] The increased levels of insomnia astronauts experience is likely multifactorial and not simply explained by isolation alone. For example, low-earth orbit is associated with circadian desynchrony, increased levels of noise, hypoxia, hypercarbia, and extremes of temperatures. However, identifying how best to manage the psychologic stress caused by long-term isolation is critical to the success of any future long-term space missions. International space agencies now run a number of ground-based spaceflight research analog programs specifically to research this (and other) challenges to long-duration spaceflight. For example, the European Space Agency's ground-based research analog program is based at the Concordia station situated high on the Antarctic plateau, which is completely inaccessible for half of the year, completely isolating the dozen crewmembers who "winter-over" there annually (Fig. 74.7). Reports from the Mars 500 project, the first high-fidelity simulated mission to Mars isolating a multinational crew of 6 in a 550 m^3 chamber for 520 days, recently suggested that appropriate selection of crewmembers is key. Substantial interindividual differences were seen in behavioral responses: two crewmembers with the highest ratings of stress and exhaustion accounted for more than 85% of all of the perceived conflicts.[235]

The Effect of Spaceflight on Other Physiologic Systems (Including the Immune and Gastric Systems)

Infectious diseases have been a major concern since the earliest days of space travel. Astronauts were at increased risk of catching infectious disease in the 1960s and 1970s. During that time, approximately 50% of all Apollo astronauts reported suffering from bacterial or viral infections either during or soon after spaceflight.[241] Concerns about how microgravity affects the immune system's responsiveness, and the likelihood of crewmembers becoming increasingly immunocompromised during spaceflight, will continue to grow as we look toward longer-duration missions in the future.[288]

Studies have shown that even short-duration spaceflights impair immune responsiveness with significant increases in inflammatory cytokine production (e.g., IL-4, IL-10, IL-12, and tumor necrosis factor-α [TNFα]) during space shuttle missions, and reduced virus-specific T-cell functionality during spaceflight and soon after landing.[289] The reductions in T-cell function persisted in astronauts participating in ISS missions lasting up to 6 months in duration. Crewmembers on longer missions were more likely to show chronic and persistent reductions in interleukins and TNFα.[290] Impairments in cell-mediated immunity and associated reductions in delayed-type hypersensitivity responses have also been observed in crewmembers on board the Russian Space Station Mir.[291] Reactivation of latent virus activity is also seen in otherwise healthy astronauts; increased shedding of varicella-zoster virus, cytomegalovirus, and Epstein-Barr virus DNA have all been reported during spaceflight.[292-294] Interestingly, an episode of thoracic zoster, typically only seen in either elderly or immunosuppressed patients (e.g., following organ transplant/acquired immune deficiency syndrome), has been observed in an otherwise fit and healthy 47-year-old astronaut 2 days before launch, suggesting the chronic stress of astronauts' rigorous training program may affect their immune responsiveness even before they leave the Earth's atmosphere.[293] Spaceflight may also increase the virulence of infective organisms in animal models, which could compound the problems of immunosuppression developing in crewmembers during longer missions.[295] Ground-based analog research programs (e.g., the Mars 500 project) have suggested that the long-term confinement of space travel could reduce overall microbial diversity and lead to increased selection of opportunistically pathogenic microorganisms.[296] Microbiome changes were also observed during the Mars 500 study, although interestingly even prolonged periods of confinement were not able to compromise individual specificity of different microbiotic compositions.[297] Similarly, changes to the balance of gut bacterial compositions have been seen in astronauts in space but initial findings suggest that overall gut microbial diversity does not alter,[298] although the gastrointestinal system does undergo a number of other changes during spaceflight.

Assessment of nutritional status among astronauts shows that Mir crewmembers undergoing a 4-month mission could lose more than 10% of their pre-flight body mass, and often only manage to eat between 40% and 50% of their predicted energy requirements.[299] ISS crewmembers also lost weight during long missions (128-195 days in duration) and only consumed a mean of 80% of their recommended energy intake. In this study, hematocrit, serum iron, and transferrin levels all decreased, whereas ferritin levels increased even though other acute phase proteins remained unaltered.[300] Serum ferritin levels appear to increase early in spaceflight but transferrin levels do not reduce until later on in the mission, suggesting iron is being mobilized and moved into storage tissues.[301] Overall, gastric motility is significantly reduced for the first 72 hours of spaceflight, nausea and vomiting tends to increase in astronauts during the same time period, and increased levels of gastric acidity have also been reported.[210,214]

Potential Medical Scenarios During Manned Space Missions

Despite all the physiologic challenges with spaceflight, mortality rates among astronauts have continued to steadily decline over the last 30 years,[302] possibly due to improved screening, selection, and training of future astronauts. However, this could also represent a steady improvement in our understanding and ability to manage physiologic problems associated with spaceflight. Astronauts' risk of dying from cardiovascular disease and cancer are now greatly reduced, yet they continue to be at increased risk of accidental death when compared to the general population.[302] However, Apollo astronauts who flew to the moon (the only humans to have ever completely left the Earth's atmosphere) experienced four to five times higher cardiovascular mortality rates than all other astronauts, suggesting that longer distance missions (with increasing radiation exposures) will pose even greater health risks to future crewmembers flying to the moon or Mars.[303]

Throughout 70 years of manned spaceflight, most fatalities and near misses have occurred during takeoff or re-entry/landing. Although increased rates of "in-flight" emergencies must be expected on longer deep space missions, astronauts are relatively young, highly screened individuals with very few medical comorbidities. When "space tourism" becomes more commonplace and members of the paying general public start entering low-earth orbits, then the need to be able to manage chronic conditions in space will become more of a concern. Until that time though, medical emergencies in space are likely to either be acute medical events (e.g., sudden onset cardiac arrhythmia or traumatic injuries following a burn or explosion) or other conditions related to specific physiologic changes caused by spaceflight (e.g., space motion sickness/vision impairment intracranial pressure syndrome or radiation exposure).[210,214] Astronauts may experience different health care needs for many years after spaceflight too. For example, astronauts may have long-term or permanent visual changes as discussed earlier and astronauts are more likely to develop atrial fibrillation at younger ages than the general population, possibly because of transient changes in left atrial structure that can occur after as little as 6 months in space.[304]

Because of the extreme distances involved in deep space missions, any crew will have to be totally autonomous in a medical emergency. Although “telemedicine consultations” with an appropriate physician back on Earth might be possible for minor ailments, the transmission delays would render this useless if an acute event happened on the far side of the moon. Interestingly, when asked about future Mars missions, most American astronauts said they expected health problems to occur during any such mission and would want their crew to include an appropriately trained physician (with 4-6 years of experience including management of acute medicine, emergencies, and aerospace physiology).[305] Anesthesiologists and critical care physicians should be well placed to manage space medical issues, both because of their familiarity with acute emergencies of this nature and their excellent understanding of human physiology and pharmacology. The Exploration Medical Capability (ExMC) arm of NASA’s Human Research Program has developed a list of at least 17 conditions that may potentially require general anesthesia or critical care techniques to successfully treat during an exploratory deep space mission. These include traumatic head injuries that require burr hole excision; cellulitis/abscess requiring incision and draining; or reducing a shoulder or elbow dislocation (Table 74.2).[306] The European Space Agency estimates that there is approximately a 2.5% chance that a crew traveling to Mars may need to use general anesthesia to manage a medical emergency en route—a highly challenging (and potentially mission limiting) situation for a completely autonomous team to manage without an anesthetically trained physician on board.[306]

Thoughts and Considerations for Anesthetic Provision in Space

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

It is currently possible to evacuate a crewmember from the ISS and return them to Earth for treatment within 24 hours; however, this will not be possible on an exploratory mission deeper into space. No human has yet required general anesthesia to be performed in space and it is not ethical or appropriate to test protocols on healthy crewmembers in space, making it difficult to plan appropriate contingencies for future longer-duration missions.[307] However, Earth-based models and accounts about the provision of anesthesia in remote and isolated environments do exist, such as at high altitude.[185] Lessons can be extrapolated from these to plan for how best to deal with a medical situation that requires anesthesia during long-duration spaceflight. Common themes include a lack of space and medical equipment; limited skillsets and lack of support; little monitoring; need for flexibility and the ability to improvise appropriate solutions quickly; and increased levels of stress with potential negative impacts on performance.[307] However, with adequate training and planning to ensure appropriate redundancy in skills and equipment, providing basic but safe anesthetic care should theoretically be possible in a deep space environment in an emergency.[307]

TABLE 74.2 A List of Possible Medical and Surgical Conditions That Could Potentially Require Anesthetic Intervention During Deep-space Flight

Condition	Example of Surgical Anesthesia	Suggested Anesthesia
Abdominal injury	Splenectomy, bowel excision	GA ETI
Back injury, lumbar spine fracture, neck injury	Fracture reduction, halo traction application, osteosynthesis	GA ETI
Burns	Dressing, fasciotomy	GA SV
Cellulitis	Incision and drainage	GA SV
Chest injury/pneumothorax	Thoracotomy for hemostasis	GA ETI
Compartment syndrome	Decompressive laparotomy	GA ETI
Elbow dislocation	Reduction	GA SV
Gastrointestinal bleeding	Hemostasis, ulcer suture, bowel excision	GA ETI
Head injury	Burr hole decompression	GA ETI
Hemorrhoids	Excision	GA SV
Hip/lower extremity fracture	Reduction, osteosynthesis, external fixation	GA SV
Intraabdominal infection (diverticulitis, appendicitis, other)	Bowel excision, appendectomy	GA ETI
Nephrolithiasis	Percutaneous nephrostomy, cystoscopy	GA SV
Shoulder dislocation	Reduction	GA SV
Skin laceration	Suture, dressing	GA SV
Upper extremity fracture	Reduction, osteosynthesis	GA SV

GA ETI, General anesthesia with endotracheal intubation; *GA SV*, general anesthesia with spontaneous ventilation.

From Komorowski M, Watkins SD, Lebuffe G, Clark JB. Potential anesthesia protocols for space exploration missions. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2013;84(3):226–233.

PREOPERATIVE PERIOD

All astronauts undergo extensive selection and screening prior to leaving earth (Fig. 74.8). Most are extremely fit and healthy individuals who would initially appear to benefit little from most preoperative interventions. However, one important consideration might be preventative surgery prelaunch to prevent on-board emergencies later. It is not known whether the physiologic changes associated with spaceflight will alter the relative risks of developing acute appendicitis or cholecystitis in crewmembers undertaking deep space missions. Increased rates of appendicitis and atypical presentations are seen in Antarctica, possibly because of altered immunological responses, so a similar increase could be possible in space as well.[308] Similarly, whether space travel might affect rates of gallstone formation (e.g., through altered lipid/cholesterol metabolism and fluid shifts) also remains unknown, although interestingly

Fig. 74.8 European Space Agency (ESA) Astronaut Timothy Peake undergoes practical lessons in medical procedures and techniques at the European Astronaut Centre (EAC) before his mission on the International Space Station. (Image courtesy ESA.) (From Baumbach D. European Space Agency. http://www.esa.int/spaceinimages/Images/2010/02/Timothy_Peake_during_training_at_EAC_January_2010. Published 2010.)

it is becoming more commonplace for patients recognized as being at higher risk of gallstone disease progression (e.g., obese patients undergoing bariatric surgery) to be offered prophylactic cholecystectomy surgery. Whether or not the minimal risks of prophylactic surgery on Earth would outweigh the risks of an emergency occurring during a 900-day mission to Mars remains unclear.[308]

General Anesthesia in Space

In all probability, the skillset or experience of any crewmember performing anesthesia in space is likely to be limited. Consequently, it seems sensible to encourage simple, protocol-driven techniques that use minimal drugs and equipment for performing general anesthesia in space. Ketamine has been advocated as the induction agent of choice because of its ability to induce dissociative states of anesthesia and provide both analgesia, sedation, and hypnosis via multiple routes (intramuscularly, intravenously, orally, intranasally, intrarectally) while maintaining relative hemodynamic stability even in the relatively hypovolemic states that are likely to be encountered in space. Importantly, ketamine can also be stored in either crystal or powder forms for long periods and remains stable over a wide range of different temperatures. In addition, the relative contraindications to ketamine use (e.g., ischemic heart disease, valvular pathologies, epilepsy, severe arterial hypertension, or pulmonary hypertension) are not likely to be present in highly-selected astronauts.[306] Ketamine has been used to manage emergency situations in remote and resource-poor regions and maintains a reasonable safety profile.[185,196,309-311]

Tracheal intubation has been performed successfully in short flying simulations of microgravity environments, but any attempt at intubation in space is likely to be difficult for multiple reasons. All intubation techniques in microgravity will necessitate both the intubator and the patient being firmly secured, plus the patient is likely to have significant facial—and possibly airway—edema. Use of laryngeal mask airways (LMAs), cuffed oropharyngeal airways, and intubating LMAs have all been demonstrated successfully in a simulated microgravity environment using a waterbath.[312] However, none of these devices were universally inserted successfully; plus, gastroesophageal reflux is likely more common in space due to increased gastric acidity/decreased motility as described, which makes aspiration a considerable risk during general anesthesia using any supraglottic airway device.

To maximize chances of intubation success, Komorowski and colleagues advocate the use of neuromuscular blocking agents despite the small but potentially serious anaphylaxis risk, and astronauts could always be tested for a possible allergy before launch.[306] Depolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents should not be used during spaceflight because of the risk of cardiovascular collapse secondary to hyperkalemia. There is a possibility that increased acetylcholine receptor proliferation will occur in muscles that have atrophied under conditions of microgravity.[313] Nondepolarizing muscular blocking agents can be used safely without this risk but there are concerns about the dose; based on findings in similarly immobilized patients and patients with neuromuscular diseases, resistance to these agents is expected and requires increased doses.[314] However, this has never been tested or validated in astronauts in space and, unlike these cohorts, astronauts are continuously undergoing rigorous resistance exercise regimes during spaceflight to minimize muscle disuse. Rocuronium is likely to be the best choice of neuromuscular blocking agent for many reasons: chiefly, it has a rapid onset of action and a rapid sequence induction is likely to be preferred given the increased aspiration risk[306]; and it can now be rapidly reversed using sugammadex if needed (e.g., unexpected failed intubation, which is much more likely in space for all the reasons discussed earlier).[315,316]

Astronauts are likely to be both relatively anemic and hypovolemic, which increases the risk of cardiovascular collapse during any anesthetic induction in space. Available volume resuscitation products are likely to be limited and also need to be prepared and used extremely carefully. All blood products currently have too limited a shelf-life to be carried on all but the shortest space missions, and in microgravity fluids and gases do not separate out based on their different densities (normally on earth, less dense air will always rise to the top of the fluid bag). Consequently, in space a drug vial or fluid bag will contain a fluid more like foam. All intravenous fluid bags will need to be “degassed” before use and likely need to be mechanically pumped in some way as flow will not be aided by gravity.[313]

Strict environmental controls are likely to enforce totally intravenous methods of maintaining anesthesia (total intravenous anesthesia [TIVA]), as scavenging of volatile gases could be challenging (and traditional vaporizers would not work in microgravity). Relatively simple methods for ketamine-only TIVA have already been described elsewhere and would minimize the need for training in and transporting different agents.[306] It would also be essential to use the lowest safe inspired concentration of oxygen, as exhaling large concentrations of oxygen will dangerously increase the onboard fire risk. Other considerations include the need to take care with endotracheal cuff pressures in the microgravity environment.

Regional Anesthesia in Space

Regional anesthetic techniques and approaches could offer many advantages over the many risks associated with performing general anesthesia during spaceflight. In an emergency setting or situation with limited resources, it would be possible to perform almost any limb operation with the knowledge of just three regional blocking techniques. Together, a combined sciatic and femoral nerve block would give complete anesthesia of the leg, and an axillary brachial block would anesthetize the arm below the shoulder.[210]

Large systematic reviews have concluded that using ultrasound-guided techniques to deliver regional anesthesia improves both block safety and success rates.[317] Astronauts have already successfully performed ultrasound examinations on themselves accurately and safely on the ISS,[318] showing that they are capable of learning ultrasound techniques and this technology can be used safely in low earth orbit. However, an ultrasound-guided regional block has not yet been performed in space and similar challenges would have to be expected. As for the intubation, both the operator and the patient need to be secured in some way, and success rates could considerably decrease due to neuromuscular and proprioceptive changes associated with spaceflight. Plus, regional anesthetic approaches would not always be suitable for any condition and still require a considerable amount of specialist training to develop reasonable levels of competency, again potentially decreasing their suitability for use by medically inexperienced crewmembers on board an exploratory deep space mission.

The use of telemedicine technology has also been proposed to aid astronauts in space and could theoretically allow a ground-based operator to remotely perform regional anesthesia on board a distant spacecraft in the future. Remotely operated robotic surgery has already been tested in consideration for use in future space missions; for example, over 30 robotic telesurgical procedures have been performed remotely across Canada using internet links with latencies of approximately 140 ms.[319] However, a radiolink to a deep exploratory spacecraft orbiting Mars could expect to experience delays of nearer to 40 minutes because of the extreme distances involved![313]

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Moore LG. *High Alt Med Biol.* 2001;2(2):257–279.
2. Gonggalanzi, et al. *Arch Public Health.* 2016;74:23.
3. MacInnis MJ, et al. *PLoS One.* 2013;8(10):e75644.
4. Wu T-Y, et al. *High Alt Med Biol.* 2007;8(2):88–107.
5. Beall CM. *Integr Comp Biol.* 2006;46(1):18–24.
6. Douglas CG, Haldane JS. *J Physiol.* 1922;56(1-2):69–100.
7. Bärtsch P, Gibbs JSR. *Circulation.* 2007;116(19):2191–2202.
8. Hornbein TF, Schoene RB, Wolfel EE, Levine BD. The cardiovascular system at high altitude. In: Hornbein TF, Schoene RB, eds. *High Altitude: An Exploration of Human Adaptation.* New York: Marcel Dekker; 2001.
9. Sutton JR, et al. *J Appl Physiol.* 1988;64(4):1309–1321.
10. Ferretti G, et al. *J Physiol.* 1997;498(Pt 1):231–237.
11. Hornbein TF, Schoene RB, Grover RF, Bartsch P. Blood. In: Hornbein TF, Schoene RB, eds. *High Altitude: An Exploration of Human Adaptation.* New York: Marcel Dekker; 2001.
12. West JB, Schoene RB, Luks AM, Milledge JS. *High Altitude Medicine and Physiology.* 5thed.CRCPress;2012.https://www.amazon.co.uk/High-Altitude-Medicine-Physiology-5E/dp/144415432X.
13. Singh MV, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med.* 2003;74(5):533–536.
14. Martin DS, et al. *Eur J Appl Physiol.* 2009;106(3):473–478.
15. Gilbert-Kawai E, et al. *J Appl Physiol.* 2017;122(4):1011–1018.
16. Schoene RB. *J Appl Physiol.* 1982;53(4):886–890.
17. West JB. *Integr Comp Biol.* 2006;46(1):25–34.
18. Møller K. *J Physiol.* 2010;588(Pt 11):1811–1812.
19. Brown JPR, Grocott MPW. *Con Edu Anaest Crit Care Pain.* 2013;13(1):17–22.
20. Winslow RM. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol.* 2007;158(2-3):121–127.
21. Hoiland RL, et al. *Clin Auton Res. March.* 2018.
22. West JB, Luks A. *West's Respiratory Physiology: The Essentials.* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2015.
23. Moudgil R, et al. *J Appl Physiol.* 2005;98(1):390–403.
24. Lumb AB, Slinger P. *Anesthesiology.* 2015;122(4):932–946.
25. Groves BM, et al. *J Appl Physiol.* 1987;63(2):521–530.
26. Stämpfli R, Eberle A. *Helv Physiol Pharmacol Acta Suppl 1.* 1944; 3:221–232.
27. Colice G, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med.* 1991;62(6):551–554.
28. Swenson ER, et al. *J Appl Physiol.* 1995;78(2):377–383.
29. Hildebrandt W, et al. *J Appl Physiol.* 2000.
30. Jain SC, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med.* 1980;51(3):234–236.
31. Olsen NV, et al. *J Appl Physiol.* 1992;73(5):2036–2043.
32. Ramirez G, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med.* 1992;63(10):891–898.
33. Zaccaria M, et al. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.* 1998;83(2):570–574.
34. Bärtsch P, et al. *J Appl Physiol.* 1991;71(1):136–143.
35. Blume FD, et al. *JAMA.* 1984;252(4):524–526.
36. Maresh CM, et al. *Am J Physiol-Endocrinol Metab.* 2004;286(1):E20–E24.
37. Woods DR, et al. *J R Army Med Corps.* 2011;157(1):33–37.
38. Milledge JS, et al. *Clin Sci.* 1989;77(5):509–514.
39. Lawrence DL, et al. *Am J Physiol.* 1990;258(2 Pt 1):E243–E248.
40. Hackett PH, et al. *Horm Metab Res.* 1978;10(06):571.
41. Höhne C, et al. *J Appl Physiol.* 2002;92(5):2097–2104.
42. Barnholt KE, et al. *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab.* 2006;290(6): E1078–E1088.
43. Humpeler E, et al. *Eur J Appl Physiol Occup Physiol.* 1980;45(2-3):167–176.
44. Benso A, et al. *Eur J Endocrinol.* 2007;157(6):733–740.
45. Richalet J-P, et al. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol.* 2010;299(6):R1685–R1692.
46. Seals DR, et al. *J Appl Physiol.* 1991;71(3):1032–1040.
47. Antezana AM, et al. *J Appl Physiol.* 1994;76(3):1055–1059.
48. West JB. *High Alt Med Biol.* 2002;3(2):223–235.
49. Ellsworth AJ, et al. *Am J Med.* 1987;83(6):1024–1030.
50. Honigman B, et al. *Ann Intern Med.* 1993;118(8):587–592.
51. Hall DP, et al. *PLoS One.* 2014;9(1):e81229.
52. Szymczak RK, et al. *Wilderness Environ Med.* 2009;20(4):305–310.
53. Reite M, et al. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol.* 1975;38(5):463–471.
54. Weil JV. *High Alt Med Biol.* 2004;5(2):180–189.
55. Windsor JS, Rodway GW. *Curr Opin Pulm Med.* 2012;18(6):554–560.
56. Zieliński J, et al. *High Alt Med Biol.* 2000;1(4):331–336.
57. Cheyne J. *Dublin Hospital Reports.* 1818;(2):216–223.

58. Stokes W. *The diseases of the heart and aorta Dublin*. 1854:320–327.
59. Mosso A. *Life of Man in the High Alps*. TF Unwin; 1898.
60. Ward M. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 1973;52(5):330–334.
61. Lahiri S, et al. *Respir Physiol*. 1983;52(3):281–301.
62. Windsor JS, Rodway GW. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2006;7(4):307–311.
63. Wickramasinghe H, Anholm JD. *Sleep Breath*. 1999;3(3):89–102.
64. Wu X, et al. *Space Med Med Eng*. 1998;11(6):391–395.
65. Berry DT, et al. *J Clin Exp Neuropsychol*. 1989;11(2):241–251.
66. Hornbein TF, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;321(25):1714–1719.
67. Pelamatti G, et al. *Cortex*. 2003;39(1):97–103.
68. Nicolas M, et al. *Psychol Rep*. 2000;86(1):119–126.
69. Fagenholz PJ, et al. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2007;18(4):312–316.
70. Bolmont B, et al. *Physiol Behav*. 2000;71(5):469–476.
71. Westerterp-Plantenga MS, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1999;87(1):391–399.
72. Kalson NS, et al. *Eur J Clin Invest*. 2010;40(8):735–741.
73. Lippl FJ, et al. *Obesity*. 2010;18(4):675–681.
74. Vats P, et al. *Nutr Neurosci*. 2007;10(5-6):243–249.
75. Bailey DM, et al. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2000;1(1):9–23.
76. Rose MS, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1988;65(6):2545–2551.
77. Boyer SJ, Blume FD. *J Appl Physiol*. 1984;57(5):1580–1585.
78. Westerterp KR, Kayser B. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2006;18(1):1–3.
79. Hamad N, Travis SP. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2006;18(1):5–10.
80. Basnyat B, Murdoch DR. *Lancet*. 2003;361(9373):1967–1974.
81. Luks AM, et al. *Eur Respir Rev*. 2017;26(143).
82. Roach RC, Bartsch P, Hackett PH, Oelz O. The Lake Louise acute mountain sickness scoring system. In: Sutton JR, Houston CS, Coates G, eds. *Hypoxia and Molecular Medicine*. Burlington, VT: Queen City Printers; 1993:272–274.
83. Maggiorini M, et al. *BMJ*. 1990;301(6756):853–855.
84. Schneider M, et al. *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 2002;34(12):1886–1891.
85. Bircher HP, et al. *J Wilderness Med*. 1994;5(3):302–311.
86. Milledge JS, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 1991;4(8):1000–1003.
87. Roach RC, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000;88(2):581–585.
88. Schommer K, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2012;113(7):1068–1074.
89. Imray C, et al. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 2010;52(6):467–484.
90. Wilson MH, Milledge J. *Neurosurgery*. 2008;63(5):970–974. discussion 974-975.
91. Severinghaus JW, et al. *Circ Res*. 1966;19(2):274–282.
92. Roach RC, Hackett PH. *J Exp Biol*. 2001;204(Pt 18):3161–3170.
93. Wilson MH, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2009;8(2):175–191.
94. Roach RC, et al. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2018;19(1):4–6.
95. Sampson JB, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1983;54(12 Pt 1):1063–1073.
96. Van Roo JD, et al. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2011;22(1):7–14.
97. Macinnis MJ, et al. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2013;14(4):334–337.
98. Leichtfried V, et al. *Sleep Breath*. 2016;20(1):435–442.
99. Low EV, et al. *BMJ*. 2012;345:e6779.
100. Luks AM, et al. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2014;25(suppl 4):S4–S14.
101. Ellsworth AJ, et al. *West J Med*. 1991;154(3):289–293.
102. Keller HR, et al. *BMJ*. 1995;310(6989):1232–1235.
103. Levine BD. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;321(25):1707–1713.
104. Ferrazzini G, et al. *Br Med J*. 1987;294(6584):1380–1382.
105. Bartsch P, Roach RC. Acute mountain sickness and high-altitude pulmonary edema. In: Hornbein TF, Schoene RB, eds. *High Altitude: An Exploration in Human Adaptation*. Vol. 161. Lung Biology in Health and Disease. New York: Marcel Dekker; 2001:731-776.
106. Bailey DM, et al. *Cell Mol Life Sci*. 2009;66(22):3583–3594.
107. Dickinson J, et al. *Thorax*. 1983;38(9):646–656.
108. Krasney JA. *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 1994;26(2):195–208.
109. Hackett PH, et al. *JAMA*. 1998;280(22):1920–1925.
110. Hackett PH, Roach RC. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2004;5(2):136–146.
111. Singh I, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1969;280(4):175–184.
112. Morla LL. *Anales de La Facultad de Medicina*. Vol 38. Universidad Nacional Mayor de San Marcos; 1955:244–274.
113. Houston CS. *N Engl J Med*. 1960;263:478–480.
114. Hultgren H, Spickard W. *Stanford Med Bull*. 1960;18:76–95.
115. Stream JO, Grissom CK. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2008;19(4):293–303.
116. Bärtsch P, Swenson ER. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(24):2294–2302.
117. Hultgren HN, et al. *West J Med*. 1996;164(3):222–227.
118. Durmowicz AG, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1997;130(5):838–840.
119. Sophocles AM. *West J Med*. 1986;144(5):569–573.
120. Bärtsch P, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325(18):1284–1289.
121. Bärtsch P, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2005;98(3):1101–1110.
122. Vock P, et al. *Chest*. 1991;100(5):1306–1311.
123. Sartori C, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(21):1631–1636.
124. Maggiorini M, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;145(7):497–506.
125. Oelz O, et al. *Lancet*. 1989;2(8674):1241–1244.
126. Fagenholz PJ, et al. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2007;8(2):139–146.
127. Jones BE, et al. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2013;24(1):32–36.
128. Monge -MC. *Anales de la Facultad de Medicina*. 1928;14:1–314.
129. Villafuerte FC, Corante N. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2016;17(2):61–69.
130. De Ferrari A, et al. *Chest*. 2014;146(5):1327–1336.
131. León-Velarde F, et al. *J Wilderness Med*. 1993;4(2):183–188.
132. Sahota IS, Panwar NS. *Indian J Occup Environ Med*. 2013;17(3):94–100.
133. Cole AM, et al. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2014;15(4):497–499.
134. Hsieh MM, et al. *Exp Hematol*. 2016;44(6):483–490. e2.
135. Zhou D, et al. *Am J Hum Genet*. 2013;93(3):452–462.
136. León-Velarde F, et al. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2005;6(2):147–157.
137. Winslow RM, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1985;59(5):1495–1502.
138. Cruz JC, et al. *Respiration*. 1979;38(6):305–313.
139. Smith TG, et al. *JAMA*. 2009;302(13):1444–1450.
140. Richalet J-P, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2005;172(11):1427–1433.
141. Richalet J-P, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2008;177(12):1370–1376.
142. Luks AM, Swenson ER. *Eur Respir J*. 2007;29(4):770–792.
143. Lim SS, et al. *Lancet*. 2012;380(9859):2224–2260.
144. Hoigné P, Gibbs JSR. *Practitioner*. 2013;257(1760):27–30.
145. Parati G, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2018;39(17):1546–1554.
146. Salvi P, et al. *Hypertension*. 2013;61(4):793–799.
147. Schmid J-P, et al. *Heart*. 2006;92(7):921–925.
148. de Vries ST, et al. *Neth Heart J*. 2010;18(3):118–121.
149. Wyss CA, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;108(10):1202–1207.
150. Schmid J-P, et al. *Eur J Heart Fail*. 2015;17(2):182–186.
151. Agostoni P, et al. *Am J Med*. 2000;109(6):450–455.
152. Valentini M, et al. *Cardiovasc Ther*. 2012;30(4):240–248.
153. Gourgoulianis KI, et al. *Arch Med Res*. 2001;32(5):429–431.
154. Vargas MH, et al. *J Asthma*. 1999;36(6):511–517.
155. Spieksma FT, et al. *Br Med J*. 1971;1(5740):82–84.
156. Simon HU, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 1994;17(5):304–311.
157. Louie D, Paré PD. *Can Respir J*. 2004;11(3):197–199.
158. Huismans HK, et al. *J Asthma*. 2010;47(6):614–619.
159. Cogo A, et al. *Respiration*. 1997;64(6):444–449.
160. Allegra L, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 1995;8(11):1842–1846.
161. Cogo A, Fiorenzano G. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2009;10(2):117–121.
162. Coté TR, et al. *Chest*. 1993;103(4):1194–1197.
163. Moore LG, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1982;126(2):225–228.
164. Christensen CC, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 2000;15(4):635–639.
165. Berg BW, et al. *Chest*. 1992;101(3):638–641.
166. Graham WG, Houston CS. *JAMA*. 1978;240(14):1491–1494.
167. Dillard TA, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1989;111(5):362–367.
168. Niermeyer S, et al. *Arch Dis Child*. 2009;94(10):806–811.
169. Scrase E, et al. *Arch Dis Child*. 2009;94(8):621–626.
170. Garlick V, et al. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2017;29(4):503–509.
171. Theis MK, et al. *Am J Dis Child*. 1993;147(2):143–145.
172. Pollard AJ, et al. *BMJ*. 1998;316(7135):874–875.
173. Yaron M, Niermeyer S. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2008;9(4):265–269.
174. Committee on Obstetric Practice. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2002;77(1):79–81.
175. ACOG Committee Opinion No. 650. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;126(6):e135–e142.
176. Keyes LE, et al. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2016;27(2):227–235.
177. Artal R, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1995;172(4 Pt 1):1170–1178.
178. Jensen GM, Moore LG. *Am J Public Health*. 1997;87(6):1003–1007.
179. Mortola JP, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2000;136(3):324–329.
180. Reshetnikova OS, et al. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1994;171(6):1560–1565.
181. Polvi HJ, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1995;86(5):795–799.
182. Julian CG, et al. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2008;295(3):R906–R915.
183. Zhen H-N, et al. *Chin Med J*. 2015;128(7):993–994.
184. Kumar AS, et al. *Natl Med J India*. 2005;18(3):137–138.
185. Grocott MPW, Johannson L. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(9):959–962.
186. Roy PK. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2002;46(3):175.
187. Safar P, Tenicela R. *Anesthesiology*. 1964;25:515–531.
188. Nunn JF. Anaesthesia at altitude. In: Ward MP, Milledge JS, West JB, eds. *High Altitude Medicine and Physiology*. London: Chapman and Hall Medical; 1989:481–486.

189. Young J, Kapoor V. *Anaesthesia & Intensive Care Medicine*. 2010;11(4):140–143.
190. James MF, White JF. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63(12):1097–1105.
191. James MFM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(6):824–826.
192. James MFM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1982;37(3):285–288.
193. Maharjan SK. *Kathmandu Univ Med J*. 2004;2(2):89–95.
194. Pederson L, Benumof J. *Anaesthesia*. 1993;48(1):67–69.
195. Streatfeild KA, Gebremeskel A. *Ethiop Med J*. 1999;37(4):255–261.
196. Bishop RA, et al. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2000;1(2):111–114.
197. Wolfe RR, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1991;67(1):84–87.
198. Xu H, et al. *Medicine*. 2017;96(14):e6527.
199. Aksoy M, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2015;15:123.
200. Hampson NB, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2013;84(1):27–31.
201. Muhm JM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357(1):18–27.
202. Philbrick JT, et al. *J Gen Intern Med*. 2007;22(1):107–114.
203. Harding RM, Mills FJ. *Br Med J*. 1983;286(6375):1408–1410.
204. Thibeault C, et al. *Aerosp Med Hum Perform*. 2015;86(7):656.
205. Teichman PG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(3):262–270.
206. Donovan DJ, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2008;79(1):30–35.
207. Essebag V, et al. *Chest*. 2003;124(5):1937–1945.
208. Singh JM, et al. *CMAJ*. 2009;181(9):579–584.
209. Sanz Fernández de Córdoba S. 100km altitude boundary for astronautics. FAI.
210. Komorowski M, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30(3):781–790.
211. *Space Physiology and Medicine*. Vol. 4. 4th ed. Springer;2016.
212. European Space Agency. The flight of Vostok 1. European Space Agency. http://www.esa.int/About_Us/Welcome_to_ESA/ESA_history/50_years_of_humans_in_space/The_flight_of_Vostok_1.
213. Mahoney E. NASA Releases Plan Outlining Next Steps in the Journey to Mars. NASA. http://www.nasa.gov/press-release/nasa-releases-plan-outlining-next-steps-in-the-journey-to-mars. Published September 24, 2015.
214. Summers RL, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2005;46(2):177–184.
215. National Aeronautical and Space Administration, Mattingly II Thomas K. *Biography*. National Aeronautical and Space Administration. 1987. https://www.nasa.gov/sites/default/files/atoms/files/mattingly_thomas.pdf. Published 1987.
216. Institute of Medicine (US) Committee on the Longitudinal Study of Astronaut, Longnecker DE, Manning FJ, Worth MH. In: *Review of NASA's Longitudinal Study of Astronaut Health*. National Academies Press (US); 2004. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK215985/. Accessed April 27, 2018.
217. Putcha L, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1999;70(7):705–708.
218. Santy PA, Bungo MW. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2013;31(10):931–933.
219. Cucinotta FA, et al. *Life Sci Space Res (Amst)*. 2017;13:1–11.
220. Epelman S, Hamilton DR. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2006;77(2):130–139.
221. Hellweg CE, Baumstark-Khan C. *Naturwissenschaften*. 2007;94(7):517–526.
222. Friedberg W, et al. *Radioact Food Environ*. 2005;7(C):894–901.
223. Chancellor JC, et al. *NPJ Microgravity*. 2018;4:8.
224. Maalouf M, et al. *J Radiat Res*. 2011;52(2):126–146.
225. Britten RA, et al. *Radiat Res*. 2016;185(3):332–337.
226. Lonart G, et al. *Radiat Res*. 2012;178(4):289–294.
227. Parihar VK, et al. *Science Adv*. 2015;1(4).
228. Parihar VK, et al. *Sci Rep*. 2016;6.
229. Jandial R, et al. *Surg Neurol Int*. 2018;9.
230. LeGates TA, et al. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2014;15(7):443–454.
231. Basner M, Dinges DF. *Lancet Neurol*. 2014;13(9):860–862.
232. Barger LK, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2014;13(9):904–912.
233. Dongen V, et al. *Sleep*. 2003;26(2):117–126.
234. Pagel JI, Choukèr A. *J Appl Physiol*. 2016;120(12):1449–1457.
235. Basner M, et al. *PLoS One*. 2014;9(3).
236. Stuster JW. Behavioral Issues Associated with isolation and Confinement: Review and Analysis of Astronaut Journals (Journals) - 04.11.18. National Aeronautical and Space Administration. https://www.nasa.gov/mission_pages/station/research/experiments/991.html#overview. Published April 2016.
237. Federal Aviation Authority. AC 61-107A - Operations of Aircraft at Altitudes Above 25,000 Feet MSL and/or Mach Numbers (MMO) Greater than. 75. https://www.faa.gov/pilots/training/airman_education/media/AC%2061-107A.pdf.
238. The First Spacewalk. http://www.bbc.co.uk/news/special/2014/newsspec_9035/index.html.
239. Katuntsev VP. *Acta Astronaut*. 2010;66(1-2):96–101.
240. Grocott MPW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360(2):140–149.
241. Williams D, et al. *CMAJ*. 2009;180(13):1317–1323.
242. Prisk GK. *Clin Chest Med*. 2005;26(3):415–438.
243. Shykoff BE, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81(1):26–32.
244. Norsk P, et al. *Hypertension*. 2006;47(1):69–73.
245. Norsk P, et al. *J Physiol*. 2015;593(Pt 3):573–584.
246. Buckey JC, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81(1):19–25.
247. Videbaek R, Norsk P. *J Appl Physiol*. 1997;83(6):1862–1866.
248. Di Rienzo M, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2008;105(5):1569–1575.
249. Cooke WH, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000;89(3):1039–1045.
250. Bungo MW, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;62(1):278–283.
251. Martin DS, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2002;73(6):532–536.
252. Perhonen MA, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2001;91(2):645–653.
253. May C, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;63(suppl 12):A1096.
254. Leach CS, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81(1):105–116.
255. Watenpaugh DE. *J Exp Biol*. 2001;204(18):3209–3215.
256. Platts SH, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2009;80(suppl 5):A29–A36.
257. Alfrey CP, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81(1):98–104.
258. Bungo MW, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1985;56(10):985–990.
259. Waters WW, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;92(2):586–594.
260. Meck JV, et al. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2004;286(4):H1486–H1495.
261. West JB, et al. *JAMA*. 1997;277(24):1957–1961.
262. Prisk GK, et al. *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2008;103(6):617–623.
263. Elliott AR, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1994;77(4):2005–2014.
264. Elliott AR, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81(1):33–43.
265. Prisk GK, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2006;101(2):439–447.
266. Moore AD, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2014;117(3):231–238.
267. Moore AD, et al. *Aerosp Med Hum Perform*. 2015;86(suppl 12):A78–A86.
268. Petersen N, et al. *Extrem Physiol & Med*. 2016;5:9.
269. Fraser KS, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2012;83(6):577–584.
270. Whitson PA, et al. *Nephron*. 2001;89(3):264–270.
271. Smith SM, et al. *Bone*. 2015;81:712–720.
272. LeBlanc A, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000;89(6):2158–2164.
273. Gopalakrishnan R, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2010;81(2):91–102.
274. Edgerton VR, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1995;78(5):1733–1739.
275. Kalb R, Solomon D. *Arch Neurol*. 2007;64(4):485–490.
276. Antonutto G, et al. *J Gravit Physiol*. 1998;5(1):63–66.
277. Recktenwald MR, et al. *J Neurophysiol*. 1999;81(5):2451–2463.
278. Inglis FM, et al. *Neuron*. 2000;26(2):299–305.
279. Heer M, Paloski WH. *Auton Neurosci*. 2006;129(1-2):77–79.
280. Young LR, et al. *J Vestib Res*. 1993;3(3):231–239.
281. Mader TH, et al. *Ophthalmology*. 2011;118(10):2058–2069.
282. Mader TH, et al. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 2013;33(3):249–255.
283. Mader TH, et al. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 2015;35(2):226.
284. Wilson MH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(6):581–583.
285. Mader TH, et al. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2016;57(2):592.
286. Mader TH, et al. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 2017;37(2):133–139.
287. Gemignani A, et al. *Int J Psychophysiol*. 2014;93(2):211–219.
288. Borchers AT, et al. *Nutrition*. 2002;18(10):889–898.
289. Crucian B, et al. *J Clin Immunol*. 2013;33(2):456–465.
290. Crucian B, et al. *NPJ Microgravity*. 2015;1:15013.
291. Gmünder FK, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1994;65(5):419–423.
292. Mehta SK, et al. *J Infect Dis*. 2000;182(6):1761–1764.
293. Mehta SK, et al. *J Med Virol*. 2004;72(1):174–179.
294. Pierson DL, et al. *Brain Behav Immun*. 2005;19(3):235–242.
295. Wilson JW, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104(41):16299–16304.
296. Schwendner P, et al. *Microbiome*. 2017;5(1):129.
297. Turroni S, et al. *Microbiome*. 2017;5.
298. Fellman M. Change in astronaut's gut bacteria attributed to spaceflight - Northwestern Now. https://news.northwestern.edu/stories/2017/february/change-in-astronauts-gut-bacteria-attributed-to-spaceflight/ Published February 2017.
299. Smith SM, et al. *J Nutr*. 2001;131(7):2053–2061.
300. Smith SM, et al. *J Nutr*. 2005;135(3):437–443.
301. Zwart SR, et al. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2013;98(1):217–223.
302. Reynolds RJ, Day SM. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2010;81(11):1024–1027.
303. Delp MD, et al. *Sci Rep*. 2016;6:29901.
304. Khine HW, et al. *Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol*. 2018;11(5):e005959.
305. Saluja IS, et al. *Acta Astronaut*. 2008;63(5):586–593.

306. Komorowski M, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2013;84(3):226–233.
307. Komorowski M, et al. *NPJ Microgravity*. 2018;4(1):5.
308. Ball CG, et al. *Can J Surg*. 2012;55(2):125–131.
309. Ketcham DW. *Trop Doct*. 1990;20(4):163–166.
310. Bredmose PP, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(4):543–545.
311. Svenson JE, Abernathy MK. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2007;25(8):977–980.
312. Keller C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(5):1237–1241.
313. Norfleet WT. *Anesthesiol*. 2000;92(5):1219-1219.
314. Gronert GA. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(5):547–549.
315. Gijsenbergh F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(4):695–703.
316. Shields M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96(1):36–43.
317. Lewis SR, Price A, Walker KJ, McGrattan K, Smith AF. Ultrasound guidance for upper and lower limb blocks. In: *The Cochrane Library*. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2015. http://cochranelibrary-wiley.com/doi/10.1002/14651858.CD006459.pub3/full.
318. Zamboni P, et al. *Ultrasound Med Biol*. 2018;44(3):726–733.
319. Haidegger T, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2011;25(3):681–690.

References

1. Moore LG. Human genetic adaptation to high altitude. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2001;2(2):257–279. https://doi.org/10.1089/152702901750265341.
2. Gonggalanzi, Labasangzhu, Nafstad P, et al. Acute mountain sickness among tourists visiting the high-altitude city of Lhasa at 3658 m above sea level: a cross-sectional study. *Arch Public Health*. 2016;74:23. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13690-016-0134-z.
3. MacInnis MJ, Carter EA, Freeman MG, et al. A prospective epidemiological study of acute mountain sickness in Nepalese pilgrims ascending to high altitude (4380 m). *PLoS One*. 2013;8(10):e75644. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0075644.
4. Wu T-Y, Ding SQ, Liu JL, et al. Who should not go high: chronic disease and work at altitude during construction of the Qinghai-Tibet railroad. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2007;8(2):88–107. https://doi.org/10.1089/ham.2007.1015.
5. Beall CM. Andean, Tibetan, and Ethiopian patterns of adaptation to high-altitude hypoxia. *Integr Comp Biol*. 2006;46(1):18–24. https://doi.org/10.1093/icb/icj004.
6. Douglas CG, Haldane JS. The regulation of the general circulation rate in man. *J Physiol*. 1922;56(1-2):69–100. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16993556.
7. Bärtsch P, Gibbs JSR. Effect of altitude on the heart and the lungs. *Circulation*. 2007;116(19):2191–2202. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.106.650796.
8. Hornbein TF, Schoene RB, Wolfel EE, Levine BD. The cardiovascular system at high altitude. In: Hornbein TF, Schoene RB, eds. *High Altitude: An Exploration of Human Adaptation*. New York: Marcel Dekker; 2001.
9. Sutton JR, Reeves JT, Wagner PD, et al. Operation Everest II: oxygen transport during exercise at extreme simulated altitude. *J Appl Physiol*. 1988;64(4):1309–1321. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1988.64.4.1309.
10. Ferretti G, Moia C, Thomet JM, Kayser B. The decrease of maximal oxygen consumption during hypoxia in man: a mirror image of the oxygen equilibrium curve. *J Physiol*. 1997;498(Pt 1):231–237. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9023781.
11. Hornbein TF, Schoene RB, Grover RF, Bartsch P. Blood. In: Hornbein TF, Schoene RB, eds. *High Altitude: An Exploration of Human Adaptation*. New York: Marcel Dekker; 2001.
12. West JB, Schoene RB, Luks AM, Milledge JS. *High Altitude Medicine and Physiology*. 5th ed. CRC Press; 2012. https://www.amazon.co.uk/High-Altitude-Medicine-Physiology-5E/dp/144415432X.
13. Singh MV, Salhan AK, Rawal SB, et al. Blood gases, hematology, and renal blood flow during prolonged mountain sojourns at 3500 and 5800 m. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2003;74(5):533–536. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12751582.
14. Martin DS, Ince C, Goedhart P, Levett DZH, Grocott MPW. Caudwell xtreme Everest research group. Abnormal blood flow in the sublingual microcirculation at high altitude. *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2009;106(3):473–478. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00421-009-1023-8.
15. Gilbert-Kawai E, Coppel J, Court J, et al. Sublingual microcirculatory blood flow and vessel density in Sherpas at high altitude. *J Appl Physiol*. 2017;122(4):1011–1018. https://doi.org/10.1152/japplphysiol.00970.2016.
16. Schoene RB. Control of ventilation in climbers to extreme altitude. *J Appl Physiol*. 1982;53(4):886–890. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1982.53.4.886.
17. West JB. Human responses to extreme altitudes. *Integr Comp Biol*. 2006;46(1):25–34. https://doi.org/10.1093/icb/icj005.
18. Møller K. Every breath you take: acclimatisation at altitude. *J Physiol*. 2010;588(Pt 11):1811–1812. https://doi.org/10.1113/jphysiol.2010.188615.
19. Brown JPR, Grocott MPW. Humans at altitude: physiology and pathophysiology. *Con Ed. Anaest Cri. Pain*. 2013;13(1):17–22. https://doi.org/10.1093/bjaceaccp/mks047.
20. Winslow RM. The role of hemoglobin oxygen affinity in oxygen transport at high altitude. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2007;158(2-3):121–127. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.resp.2007.03.011.
21. Hoiland RL, Howe CA, Coombs GB, Ainslie PN. Ventilatory and cerebrovascular regulation and integration at high-altitude. *Clin Auton Res*. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10286-018-0522-2.
22. West JB, Luks A. *West's Respiratory Physiology: The Essentials*. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2015. https://market.android.com/details?id=book-Wtj_oQEACAAJ.
23. Moudgil R, Michelakis ED, Archer SL. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. *J Appl Physiol*. 2005;98(1):390–403. https://doi.org/10.1152/japplphysiol.00733.2004.
24. Lumb AB, Slinger P. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstrictionphysiology and anesthetic implications. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(4):932–946. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0000000000000569.
25. Groves BM, Reeves JT, Sutton JR, et al. Operation Everest II: elevated high-altitude pulmonary resistance unresponsive to oxygen. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;63(2):521–530. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1987.63.2.521.
26. Stämpfli R, Eberle A. Menge, spezifisches Gewicht und Leitfähigkeit des menschlichen Harns im Hochgebirge. *Helv Physiol Pharmacol Acta Suppl 1*. 1944;3:221–232.
27. Colice G, Yen S, Ramirez G, Dietz J, Ou LC. Acute hypoxia-induced diuresis in rats. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1991;62(6):551–554. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1830471.
28. Swenson ER, Duncan TB, Goldberg SV, Ramirez G, Ahmad S, Schoene RB. Diuretic effect of acute hypoxia in humans: relationship to hypoxic ventilatory responsiveness and renal hormones. *J Appl Physiol*. 1995;78(2):377–383. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1995.78.2.377.
29. Hildebrandt W, Ottenbacher A, Schuster M, Swenson ER, Bärtsch P. Diuretic effect of hypoxia, hypocapnia, and hyperpnea in humans: relation to hormones and O2 chemosensitivity. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.2000.88.2.599.
30. Jain SC, Bardhan J, Swamy YV, Krishna B, Nayar HS. Body fluid compartments in humans during acute high-altitude exposure. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1980;51(3):234–236. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7362570.
31. Olsen NV, Kanstrup IL, Richalet JP, Hansen JM, Plazen G, Galen FX. Effects of acute hypoxia on renal and endocrine function at rest and during graded exercise in hydrated subjects. *J Appl Physiol*. 1992;73(5):2036–2043. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1992.73.5.2036.
32. Ramirez G, Hammond M, Agosti SJ, Bittle PA, Dietz JR, Colice GL. Effects of hypoxemia at sea level and high altitude on sodium excretion and hormonal levels. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1992;63(10):891–898. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1417652.
33. Zaccaria M, Rocco S, Noventa D, Varnier M, Opocher G. Sodium regulating hormones at high altitude: basal and post-exercise levels. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 1998;83(2):570–574. https://doi.org/10.1210/jcem.83.2.4578.
34. Bärtsch P, Maggiorini M, Schobersberger W, et al. Enhanced exercise-induced rise of aldosterone and vasopressin preceding mountain sickness. *J Appl Physiol*. 1991;71(1):136–143. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1991.71.1.136.
35. Blume FD, Boyer SJ, Braverman LE, Cohen A, Dirkse J, Mordes JP. Impaired osmoregulation at high altitude. studies on Mt Everest. *JAMA*. 1984;252(4):524–526. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.1984.03350040054023.
36. Maresh CM, Kraemer WJ, Judelson DA, et al. Effects of high altitude and water deprivation on arginine vasopressin release in men. *American Journal of Physiology-Endocrinology and Metabolism*. 2004;286(1):E20–E24. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpendo.00332.2003.
37. Woods DR, Stacey M, Hill N, de Alwis N. Endocrine aspects of high altitude acclimatization and acute mountain sickness. *J R Army Med Corps*. 2011;157(1):33–37. https://doi.org/10.1136/jramc-157-01-06.
38. Milledge JS, Beeley JM, McArthur S, Morice AH. Atrial natriuretic peptide, altitude and acute mountain sickness. *Clin Sci*. 1989;77(5):509–514. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2531053.
39. Lawrence DL, Skatrud JB, Shenker Y. Effect of hypoxia on atrial natriuretic factor and aldosterone regulation in humans. *Am J Physiol*. 1990;258(2 Pt 1):E243–E248. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpendo.1990.258.2.E243.

40. Hackett PH, Forsling ML, Milledge J, Rennie D. Release of vasopressin in man at altitude. *Horm Metab Res*. 1978;10(06):571. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-0028-1095855.
41. Höhne C, Boemke W, Schleyer N, Francis RC, Krebs MO, Kaczmarczyk G. Low sodium intake does not impair renal compensation of hypoxia-induced respiratory alkalosis. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;92(5):2097–2104. https://doi.org/10.1152/japplphysiol.00719.2001.
42. Barnholt KE, Hoffman AR, Rock PB, et al. Endocrine responses to acute and chronic high-altitude exposure (4,300 meters): modulating effects of caloric restriction. *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab*. 2006;290(6):E1078–E1088. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpendo.00449.2005.
43. Humpeler E, Skrabal F, Bartsch G. Influence of exposure to moderate altitude on the plasma concentraton of cortisol, aldosterone, renin, testosterone, and gonadotropins. *Eur J Appl Physiol Occup Physiol*. 1980;45(2-3):167–176. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6780338.
44. Benso A, Broglio F, Aimaretti G, et al. Endocrine and metabolic responses to extreme altitude and physical exercise in climbers. *Eur J Endocrinol*. 2007;157(6):733–740. https://doi.org/10.1530/EJE-07-0355.
45. Richalet J-P, Letournel M, Souberbielle J-C. Effects of high-altitude hypoxia on the hormonal response to hypothalamic factors. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2010;299(6):R1685–R1692. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpregu.00484.2010.
46. Seals DR, Johnson DG, Fregosi RF. Hypoxia potentiates exercise-induced sympathetic neural activation in humans. *J Appl Physiol*. 1991;71(3):1032–1040. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1991.71.3.1032.
47. Antezana AM, Kacimi R, Le Trong JL, et al. Adrenergic status of humans during prolonged exposure to the altitude of 6,542 m. *J Appl Physiol*. 1994;76(3):1055–1059. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1994.76.3.1055.
48. West JB. Commuting to high altitude: value of oxygen enrichment of room air. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2002;3(2):223–235. https://doi.org/10.1089/15270290260131948.
49. Ellsworth AJ, Larson EB, Strickland D. A randomized trial of dexamethasone and acetazolamide for acute mountain sickness prophylaxis. *Am J Med*. 1987;83(6):1024–1030. https://doi.org/10.1016/0002-9343(87)90937-5.
50. Honigman B, Theis MK, Koziol-McLain J, et al. Acute mountain sickness in a general tourist population at moderate altitudes. *Ann Intern Med*. 1993;118(8):587–592. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8452324.
51. Hall DP, MacCormick IJC, Phythian-Adams AT, et al. Network analysis reveals distinct clinical syndromes underlying acute mountain sickness. *PLoS One*. 2014;9(1):e81229. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0081229.
52. Szymczak RK, Sitek EJ, Sławek JW, Basiński A, Siemiński M, Wieczorek D. Subjective sleep quality alterations at high altitude. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2009;20(4):305–310. https://doi.org/10.1580/1080-6032-020.004.0305.
53. Reite M, Jackson D, Cahoon RL, Weil JV. Sleep physiology at high altitude. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1975;38(5):463–471. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/50171.
54. Weil JV. Sleep at high altitude. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2004;5(2):180–189. https://doi.org/10.1089/1527029041352162.
55. Windsor JS, Rodway GW. Sleep disturbance at altitude. *Curr Opin Pulm Med*. 2012;18(6):554–560. https://doi.org/10.1097/MCP.0b013e328359129f.
56. Zieliński J, Koziej M, Mańkowski M, et al. The quality of sleep and periodic breathing in healthy subjects at an altitude of 3,200 m. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2000;1(4):331–336. https://doi.org/10.1089/15270290050502408.
57. Cheyne J. A case of apoplexy in which the fleshy part of the heart was converted into fat. *Dublin Hospital Reports*. 1818;(2):216–223.
58. Stokes W. Fatty degeneration of the heart. *The Diseases of the Heart and Aorta Dublin*. 1854:320–327.
59. Mosso A. *Life of Man in the High Alps*. TF Unwin; 1898.
60. Ward M. Periodic respiration. A short historical note. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 1973;52(5):330–334. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4268354.
61. Lahiri S, Maret K, Sherpa MG. Dependence of high altitude sleep apnea on ventilatory sensitivity to hypoxia. *Respir Physiol*. 1983;52(3):281–301. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6412339.
62. Windsor JS, Rodway GW. Supplemental oxygen and sleep at altitude. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2006;7(4):307–311. https://doi.org/10.1089/ham.2006.7.307.
63. Wickramasinghe H, Anholm JD. Sleep and breathing at high altitude. *Sleep Breath*. 1999;3(3):89–102. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11325-999-0089-1.
64. Wu X, Li X, Han L, Wang T, Wei Y. Effects of acute moderate hypoxia on human performance of arithmetic. *Space Med Med Eng*. 1998;11(6):391–395. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11543373.
65. Berry DT, McConnell JW, Phillips BA, Carswell CM, Lamb DG, Prine BC. Isocapnic hypoxemia and neuropsychological functioning. *J Clin Exp Neuropsychol*. 1989;11(2):241–251. https://doi.org/10.1080/01688638908400886.
66. Hornbein TF, Townes BD, Schoene RB, Sutton JR, Houston CS. The cost to the central nervous system of climbing to extremely high altitude. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;321(25):1714–1719. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM198912213212505.
67. Pelamatti G, Pascotto M, Semenza C. Verbal free recall in high altitude: proper names vs common names. *Cortex*. 2003;39(1):97–103. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12627756.
68. Nicolas M, Thullier-Lestienne F, Bouquet C, et al. A study of mood changes and personality during a 31-day period of chronic hypoxia in a hypobaric chamber (Everest-Comex 97). *Psychol Rep*. 2000;86(1):119–126. https://doi.org/10.2466/pr0.2000.86.1.119.
69. Fagenholz PJ, Murray AF, Gutman JA, Findley JK, Harris NS. New-onset anxiety disorders at high altitude. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2007;18(4):312–316. https://doi.org/10.1580/07-WEME-BR-102R1.1.
70. Bolmont B, Thullier F, Abraini JH. Relationships between mood states and performances in reaction time, psychomotor ability, and mental efficiency during a 31-day gradual decompression in a hypobaric chamber from sea level to 8848 m equivalent altitude. *Physiol Behav*. 2000;71(5):469–476. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11239664.
71. Westerterp-Plantenga MS, Westerterp KR, Rubbens M, Verwegen CR, Richelet JP, Gardette B. Appetite at "high altitude" [Operation Everest III (Comex-'97)]: a simulated ascent of Mount Everest. *J Appl Physiol*. 1999;87(1):391–399. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1999.87.1.391.
72. Kalson NS, Hext F, Davies AJ, et al. Do changes in gastrointestinal blood flow explain high-altitude anorexia? *Eur J Clin Invest*. 2010;40(8):735–741. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2362.2010.02324.x.
73. Lippl FJ, Neubauer S, Schipfer S, et al. Hypobaric hypoxia causes body weight reduction in obese subjects. *Obesity*. 2010;18(4):675–681. https://doi.org/10.1038/oby.2009.509.
74. Vats P, Singh VK, Singh SN, Singh SB. High altitude induced anorexia: effect of changes in leptin and oxidative stress levels. *Nutr Neurosci*. 2007;10(5-6):243–249. https://doi.org/10.1080/10284150701722299.
75. Bailey DM, Davies B, Milledge JS, et al. Elevated plasma cholecystokinin at high altitude: metabolic implications for the anorexia of acute mountain sickness. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2000;1(1):9–23. https://doi.org/10.1089/152702900320649.
76. Rose MS, Houston CS, Fulco CS, Coates G, Sutton JR, Cymerman A. Operation Everest II: nutrition and body composition. *J Appl Physiol*. 1988;65(6):2545–2551. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1988.65.6.2545.
77. Boyer SJ, Blume FD. Weight loss and changes in body composition at high altitude. *J Appl Physiol*. 1984;57(5):1580–1585. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1984.57.5.1580.
78. Westerterp KR, Kayser B. Body mass regulation at altitude. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2006;18(1):1–3. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16357611.
79. Hamad N, Travis SP. Weight loss at high altitude: pathophysiology and practical implications. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2006;18(1):5–10. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16357612.
80. Basnyat B, Murdoch DR. High-altitude illness. *Lancet*. 2003;361(9373):1967–1974. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(03)13591-X.
81. Luks AM, Swenson ER, Bärtsch P. Acute high-altitude sickness. *Eur Respir Rev*. 2017;26(143). https://doi.org/10.1183/16000617.0096-2016.

82. Roach RC, Bartsch P, Hackett PH, Oelz O. The Lake Louise acute mountain sickness scoring system. In: Sutton JR, Houston CS, Coates G, eds. *Hypoxia and Molecular Medicine*. Burlington, VT: Queen City Printers; 1993:272–274.
83. Maggiorini M, Bühler B, Walter M, Oelz O. Prevalence of acute mountain sickness in the Swiss Alps. *BMJ*. 1990;301(6756):853–855. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2282425.
84. Schneider M, Bernasch D, Weymann J, Holle R, Bartsch P. Acute mountain sickness: influence of susceptibility, preexposure, and ascent rate. A9 *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 2002;34(12):1886–1891. https://doi.org/10.1249/01.MSS.0000038894.84804.A9.
85. Bircher HP, Eichenberger U, Maggiorini M, Oelz O, Bärtsch P. Relationship of mountain sickness to physical fitness and exercise intensity during ascent. *J Wilderness Med*. 1994;5(3):302–311. https://doi.org/10.1580/0953-9859-5.3.302.
86. Milledge JS, Beeley JM, Broome J, Luff N, Pelling M, Smith D. Acute mountain sickness susceptibility, fitness and hypoxic ventilatory response. *Eur Respir J*. 1991;4(8):1000–1003. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1783072.
87. Roach RC, Maes D, Sandoval D, et al. Exercise exacerbates acute mountain sickness at simulated high altitude. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000;88(2):581–585. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.2000.88.2.581.
88. Schommer K, Hammer M, Hotz L, Menold E, Bärtsch P, Berger MM. Exercise intensity typical of mountain climbing does not exacerbate acute mountain sickness in normobaric hypoxia. *J Appl Physiol*. 2012;113(7):1068–1074. https://doi.org/10.1152/japplphysiol.00329.2012.
89. Imray C, Wright A, Subudhi A, Roach R. Acute mountain sickness: pathophysiology, prevention, and treatment. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis*. 2010;52(6):467–484. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pcad.2010.02.003.
90. Wilson MH, Milledge J. Direct measurement of intracranial pressure at high altitude and correlation of ventricular size with acute mountain sickness: Brian Cummins' results from the 1985 Kishtwar expedition. *Neurosurgery*. 2008;63(5):970–974. https://doi.org/10.1227/01.NEU.0000327885.15132.CA. discussion 974-975.
91. Severinghaus JW, Chiodi H, Eger EI, Brandstater B, Hornbein TF. Cerebral blood flow in man at high altitude. Role of cerebrospinal fluid pH in normalization of flow in chronic hypocapnia. *Circ Res*. 1966;19(2):274–282. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5914844.
92. Roach RC, Hackett PH. Frontiers of hypoxia research: acute mountain sickness. *J Exp Biol*. 2001;204(Pt 18):3161–3170. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11581330.
93. Wilson MH, Newman S, Imray CH. The cerebral effects of ascent to high altitudes. *Lancet Neurol*. 2009;8(2):175–191. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1474-4422(09)70014-6.
94. Roach RC, Hackett PH, Oelz O, et al. The 2018 Lake Louise acute mountain sickness score. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2018;19(1):4–6. https://doi.org/10.1089/ham.2017.0164.
95. Sampson JB, Cymerman A, Burse RL, Maher JT, Rock PB. Procedures for the measurement of acute mountain sickness. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1983;54(12 Pt 1):1063–1073. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6661120.
96. Van Roo JD, Lazio MP, Pesce C, Malik S, Courtney DM. Visual analog scale (VAS) for assessment of acute mountain sickness (AMS) on Aconcagua. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2011;22(1):7–14. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wem.2010.10.002.
97. Macinnis MJ, Lanting SC, Rupert JL, Koehle MS. Is poor sleep quality at high altitude separate from acute mountain sickness? Factor structure and internal consistency of the Lake Louise score questionnaire. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2013;14(4):334–337. https://doi.org/10.1089/ham.2013.1030.
98. Leichtfried V, Basic D, Burtscher M, Gothe RM, Siebert U, Schobersberger W. Diagnosis and prediction of the occurrence of acute mountain sickness measuring oxygen saturation--independent of absolute altitude? *Sleep Breath*. 2016;20(1):435–442. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11325-015-1195-x.
99. Low EV, Avery AJ, Gupta V, Schedlbauer A, Grocott MPW. Identifying the lowest effective dose of acetazolamide for the prophylaxis of acute mountain sickness: systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMJ*. 2012;345:e6779. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.e6779.
100. Luks AM, McIntosh SE, Grissom CK, et al. Wilderness Medical Society practice guidelines for the prevention and treatment of acute altitude illness: 2014 update. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2014;25(suppl 4):S4–S14. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wem.2014.06.017.
101. Ellsworth AJ, Meyer EF, Larson EB. Acetazolamide or dexamethasone use versus placebo to prevent acute mountain sickness on Mount Rainier. *West J Med*. 1991;154(3):289–293. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2028586.
102. Keller HR, Maggiorini M, Bärtsch P, Oelz O. Simulated descent v dexamethasone in treatment of acute mountain sickness: a randomised trial. *BMJ*. 1995;310(6989):1232–1235. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7767194.
103. Levine BD, Yoshimura K, Kobayashi T, Fukushima M, Shibamoto T, Ueda G. Dexamethasone in the treatment of acute mountain sickness. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;321(25):1707–1713. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM198912213212504.
104. Ferrazzini G, Maggiorini M, Kriemler S, Bärtsch P, Oelz O. Successful treatment of acute mountain sickness with dexamethasone. *Br Med J*. 1987;294(6584):1380–1382. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3109663.
105. Bartsch P, Roach RC. Acute mountain sickness and high-altitude pulmonary edema. In: Hornbein TF, Schoene RB, eds. *High Altitude: An Exploration in Human Adaptation*. Vol 161. Lung Biology in Health and Disease. New York: Marcel Dekker; 2001:731-776.
106. Bailey DM, Bärtsch P, Knauth M, Baumgartner RW. Emerging concepts in acute mountain sickness and high-altitude cerebral edema: from the molecular to the morphological. *Cell Mol Life Sci*. 2009;66(22):3583–3594. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00018-009-0145-9.
107. Dickinson J, Heath D, Gosney J, Williams D. Altitude-related deaths in seven trekkers in the Himalayas. *Thorax*. 1983;38(9):646–656. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6623417.
108. Krasney JA. A neurogenic basis for acute altitude illness. *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 1994;26(2):195–208. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8164537.
109. Hackett PH, Yarnell PR, Hill R, Reynard K, Heit J, McCormick J. High-altitude cerebral edema evaluated with magnetic resonance imaging: clinical correlation and pathophysiology. *JAMA*. 1998;280(22):1920–1925. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9851477.
110. Hackett PH, Roach RC. High altitude cerebral edema. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2004;5(2):136–146. https://doi.org/10.1089/1527029041352054.
111. Singh I, Khanna PK, Srivastava MC, Lal M, Roy SB, Subramanyam CS. Acute mountain sickness. *N Engl J Med*. 1969;280(4):175–184. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM196901232800402.
112. Morla LL. Soroche agudo: edema agudo del pulmón. In: *Anales de La Facultad de Medicina*. Vol 38. Universidad Nacional Mayor de San Marcos; 1955:244–274. https://dialnet.unirioja.es/descarga/articulo/6293556.pdf.
113. Houston CS. Acute pulmonary edema of high altitude. *N Engl J Med*. 1960;263:478–480. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM196009082631003.
114. Hultgren H, Spickard W. Medical experiences in Peru. *Stanford Med Bull*. 1960;18:76–95. https://www.scopus.com/record/display.uri?eid=2-s2.0-0001773249&origin=inward&txGid=c673a2adc8bed38dc48db16c94d06b86.
115. Stream JO, Grissom CK. Update on high-altitude pulmonary edema: pathogenesis, prevention, and treatment. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2008;19(4):293–303. https://doi.org/10.1580/07-WEME-REV-173.1.
116. Bärtsch P, Swenson ER. Clinical practice: acute high-altitude illnesses. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(24):2294–2302. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMcp1214870.
117. Hultgren HN, Honigman B, Theis K, Nicholas D. High-altitude pulmonary edema at a ski resort. *West J Med*. 1996;164(3):222–227. https://www.scopus.com/inward/record.uri?eid=2-s2.0-0029874208&partnerID=40&md5=89074bd8092863c06522f6c75e2a41cd.
118. Durmowicz AG, Noordeweir E, Nicholas R, Reeves JT. Inflammatory processes may predispose children to high-altitude pulmonary edema. *J Pediatr*. 1997;130(5):838–840. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-3476(97)80033-9.
119. Sophocles AM Jr. High-altitude pulmonary edema in Vail, Colorado, 1975-1982. *West J Med*. 1986;144(5):569–573. https://www.scopus.com/inward/record.uri?eid=2-s2.0-0022577389&partnerID=40&md5=4a3b002a7b9ea03102ad71f3c8d88ad4.
120. Bärtsch P, Maggiorini M, Ritter M, Noti C, Vock P, Oelz O. Prevention of high-altitude pulmonary edema by nifedipine. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325(18):1284–1289. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199110313251805.

121. Bärtsch P, Mairbäurl H, Maggiorini M, Swenson ER. Physiological aspects of high-altitude pulmonary edema. *J Appl Physiol*. 2005;98(3):1101–1110. https://doi.org/10.1152/japplphysiol.01167.2004.
122. Vock P, Brutsche MH, Nanzer A, Bärtsch P. Variable radiomorphologic data of high altitude pulmonary edema. Features from 60 patients. *Chest*. 1991;100(5):1306–1311. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1935286.
123. Sartori C, Allemann Y, Duplain H, et al. Salmeterol for the prevention of high-altitude pulmonary edema. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(21):1631–1636. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa013183.
124. Maggiorini M, Brunner-La Rocca H-P, Peth S, et al. Both tadalafil and dexamethasone may reduce the incidence of high-altitude pulmonary edema: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med*. 2006;145(7):497–506. https://doi.org/10.7326/0003-4819-145-7-200610030-00007.
125. Oelz O, Maggiorini M, Ritter M, et al. Nifedipine for high altitude pulmonary oedema. *Lancet*. 1989;2(8674):1241–1244. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(89)91851-5.
126. Fagenholz PJ, Gutman JA, Murray AF, Harris NS. Treatment of high altitude pulmonary edema at 4240 m in Nepal. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2007;8(2):139–146. https://doi.org/10.1089/ham.2007.3055.
127. Jones BE, Stokes S, McKenzie S, Nilles E, Stoddard GJ. Management of high altitude pulmonary edema in the Himalaya: a review of 56 cases presenting at Pheriche medical aid post (4240 m). *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2013;24(1):32–36. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wem.2012.07.004.
128. Monge MC. La enfermedad de los Andes (Síndromes eritrémicos). *Anales de la Facultad de Medicina*. 1928;14:1–314. https://doi.org/10.15381/anales.v14i0.9961.
129. Villafuerte FC, Corante N. Chronic mountain sickness: clinical aspects, etiology, management, and treatment. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2016;17(2):61–69. https://doi.org/10.1089/ham.2016.0031.
130. De Ferrari A, Miranda JJ, Gilman RH, et al. Prevalence, clinical profile, iron status, and subject-specific traits for excessive erythrocytosis in Andean adults living permanently at 3,825 meters above sea level. *Chest*. 2014;146(5):1327–1336. https://doi.org/10.1378/chest.14-0298.
131. León-Velarde F, Arregui A, Monge C, Ruiz y Ruiz H. Aging at high altitudes and the risk of chronic mountain sickness. *J Wilderness Med*. 1993;4(2):183–188. https://doi.org/10.1580/0953-9859-4.2.183.
132. Sahota IS, Panwar NS. Prevalence of chronic mountain sickness in high altitude districts of Himachal Pradesh. *Indian J Occup Environ Med*. 2013;17(3):94–100. https://doi.org/10.4103/0019-5278.130839.
133. Cole AM, Petousi N, Cavalleri GL, Robbins PA. Genetic variation in SENP1 and ANP32D as predictors of chronic mountain sickness. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2014;15(4):497–499. https://doi.org/10.1089/ham.2014.1036.
134. Hsieh MM, Callacondo D, Rojas-Camayo J, et al. SENP1, but not fetal hemoglobin, differentiates Andean highlanders with chronic mountain sickness from healthy individuals among Andean highlanders. *Exp Hematol*. 2016;44(6):483–490.e2. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.exphem.2016.02.010.
135. Zhou D, Udpa N, Ronen R, et al. Whole-genome sequencing uncovers the genetic basis of chronic mountain sickness in Andean highlanders. *Am J Hum Genet*. 2013;93(3):452–462. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajhg.2013.07.011.
136. León-Velarde F, Maggiorini M, Reeves JT, et al. Consensus statement on chronic and subacute high altitude diseases. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2005;6(2):147–157. https://doi.org/10.1089/ham.2005.6.147.
137. Winslow RM, Monge CC, Brown EG, et al. Effects of hemodilution on O2 transport in high-altitude polycythemia. *J Appl Physiol*. 1985;59(5):1495–1502. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1985.59.5.1495.
138. Cruz JC, Diaz C, Marticorena E, Hilario V. Phlebotomy improves pulmonary gas exchange in chronic mountain polycythemia. *Respiration*. 1979;38(6):305–313. https://doi.org/10.1159/000194097.
139. Smith TG, Talbot NP, Privat C, et al. Effects of iron supplementation and depletion on hypoxic pulmonary hypertension: two randomized controlled trials. *JAMA*. 2009;302(13):1444–1450. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2009.1404.
140. Richalet J-P, Rivera M, Bouchet P, et al. Acetazolamide: a treatment for chronic mountain sickness. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2005;172(11):1427–1433. https://doi.org/10.1164/rccm.200505-807OC.
141. Richalet J-P, Rivera-Ch M, Maignan M, et al. Acetazolamide for Monge's disease: efficiency and tolerance of 6-month treatment. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2008;177(12):1370–1376. https://doi.org/10.1164/rccm.200802-196OC.
142. Luks AM, Swenson ER. Travel to high altitude with pre-existing lung disease. *Eur Respir J*. 2007;29(4):770–792. https://doi.org/10.1183/09031936.00052606.
143. Lim SS, Vos T, Flaxman AD, et al. A comparative risk assessment of burden of disease and injury attributable to 67 risk factors and risk factor clusters in 21 regions, 1990-2010: a systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease study 2010. *Lancet*. 2012;380(9859):2224–2260. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(12)61766-8.
144. Hoigné P, Gibbs JSR. Can my patient with CVD travel to high altitude?. *Practitioner*. 2013;257(1760):27–30. 3. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23724749.
145. Parati G, Agostoni P, Basnyat B, et al. Clinical Recommendations for High Altitude Exposure of Individuals with Pre-Existing Cardiovascular Conditions: A Joint Statement by the European Society of Cardiology, the Council on Hypertension of the European Society of Cardiology, the European Society of Hypertension, the International Society of Mountain Medicine, the Italian Society of Hypertension and the Italian Society of Mountain Medicine. *Eur Heart J*. 2018;39(17):1546–1554. https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/ehx720.
146. Salvi P, Revera M, Faini A, et al. Changes in subendocardial viability ratio with acute high-altitude exposure and protective role of acetazolamide. *Hypertension*. 2013;61(4):793–799. https://doi.org/10.1161/HYPERTENSIONAHA.111.00707.
147. Schmid J-P, Noveanu M, Gaillet R, Hellige G, Wahl A, Saner H. Safety and exercise tolerance of acute high altitude exposure (3454 m) among patients with coronary artery disease. *Heart*. 2006;92(7):921–925. https://doi.org/10.1136/hrt.2005.072520.
148. de Vries ST, Komdeur P, Aalbersberg S, van Enst GC, Breeman A, van 't Hof AWJ. Effects of altitude on exercise level and heart rate in patients with coronary artery disease and healthy controls. *Neth Heart J*. 2010;18(3):118–121. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20390061.
149. Wyss CA, Koepfli P, Fretz G, Seebauer M, Schirlo C, Kaufmann PA. Influence of altitude exposure on coronary flow reserve. *Circulation*. 2003;108(10):1202–1207. https://doi.org/10.1161/01.CIR.0000087432.63671.2E.
150. Schmid J-P, Nobel D, Brugger N, et al. Short-term high altitude exposure at 3454 m is well tolerated in patients with stable heart failure. *Eur J Heart Fail*. 2015;17(2):182–186. https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/ejhf.227.
151. Agostoni P, Cattadori G, Guazzi M, et al. Effects of simulated altitude-induced hypoxia on exercise capacity in patients with chronic heart failure. *Am J Med*. 2000;109(6):450–455. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11042233.
152. Valentini M, Revera M, Bilo G, et al. Effects of beta-blockade on exercise performance at high altitude: a randomized, placebo-controlled trial comparing the efficacy of nebivolol versus carvedilol in healthy subjects. *Cardiovasc Ther*. 2012;30(4):240–248. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1755-5922.2011.00261.x.
153. Gourgoulianis KI, Brelas N, Hatziparasides G, Papayianni M, Molyvdas PA. The influence of altitude in bronchial asthma. *Arch Med Res*. 2001;32(5):429–431. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11578758.
154. Vargas MH, Sienra-Monge JJ, Díaz-Mejía G, DeLeón-González M. Asthma and geographical altitude: an inverse relationship in Mexico. *J Asthma*. 1999;36(6):511–517. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10498046.
155. Spieksma FT, Zuidema P, Leupen MJ. High altitude and house-dust mites. *Br Med J*. 1971;1(5740):82–84. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.1.5740.82.
156. Simon HU, Grotzer M, Nikolaizik WH, Blaser K, Schöni MH. High altitude climate therapy reduces peripheral blood T lymphocyte activation, eosinophilia, and bronchial obstruction in children with house-dust mite allergic asthma. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 1994;17(5):304–311. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8058424.

157. Louie D, Paré PD. Physiological changes at altitude in nonasthmatic and asthmatic subjects. *Can Respir J*. 2004;11(3):197–199. https://doi.org/10.1155/2004/734760.
158. Huismans HK, Douma WR, Kerstjens HAM, Renkema TEJ. Asthma in patients climbing to high and extreme altitudes in the Tibetan Everest region. *J Asthma*. 2010;47(6):614–619. https://doi.org/10.3109/02770900903573277.
159. Cogo A, Basnyat B, Legnani D, Allegra L. Bronchial asthma and airway hyperresponsiveness at high altitude. *Respiration*. 1997;64(6):444–449. https://doi.org/10.1159/000196721.
160. Allegra L, Cogo A, Legnani D, Diano PL, Fasano V, Negretto GG. High altitude exposure reduces bronchial responsiveness to hypo-osmolar aerosol in lowland asthmatics. *Eur Respir J*. 1995;8(11):1842–1846. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8620949.
161. Cogo A, Fiorenzano G. Bronchial asthma: advice for patients traveling to high altitude. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2009;10(2):117–121. https://doi.org/10.1089/ham.2009.1007.
162. Coté TR, Stroup DF, Dwyer DM, Horan JM, Peterson DE. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease mortality. A role for altitude. *Chest*. 1993;103(4):1194–1197. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8131464.
163. Moore LG, Rohr AL, Maisenbach JK, Reeves JT. Emphysema mortality is increased in Colorado residents at high altitude. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1982;126(2):225–228. https://doi.org/10.1164/arrd.1982.126.2.225.
164. Christensen CC, Ryg M, Refvem OK, Skjønsberg OH. Development of severe hypoxaemia in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients at 2,438 m (8,000 ft) altitude. *Eur Respir J*. 2000;15(4):635–639. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10780752.
165. Berg BW, Dillard TA, Rajagopal KR, Mehm WJ. Oxygen supplementation during air travel in patients with chronic obstructive lung disease. *Chest*. 1992;101(3):638–641. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1541125.
166. Graham WG, Houston CS. Short-term adaptation to moderate altitude. Patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *JAMA*. 1978;240(14):1491–1494. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/682352.
167. Dillard TA, Berg BW, Rajagopal KR, Dooley JW, Mehm WJ. Hypoxemia during air travel in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Ann Intern Med*. 1989;111(5):362–367. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2764404.
168. Niermeyer S, Andrade Mollinedo P, Huicho L. Child health and living at high altitude. *Arch Dis Child*. 2009;94(10):806–811. https://doi.org/10.1136/adc.2008.141838.
169. Scrase E, Laverty A, Gavlak JCD, et al. The Young Everest Study: effects of hypoxia at high altitude on cardiorespiratory function and general well-being in healthy children. *Arch Dis Child*. 2009;94(8):621–626. https://doi.org/10.1136/adc.2008.150516.
170. Garlick V, O'Connor A, Shubkin CD. High-altitude illness in the pediatric population: a review of the literature on prevention and treatment. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2017;29(4):503–509. https://doi.org/10.1097/MOP.0000000000000519.
171. Theis MK, Honigman B, Yip R, McBride D, Houston CS, Moore LG. Acute mountain sickness in children at 2835 meters. *Am J Dis Child*. 1993;147(2):143–145. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8427234.
172. Pollard AJ, Murdoch DR, Bärtsch P. Children in the mountains. *BMJ*. 1998;316(7135):874–875. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9552828.
173. Yaron M, Niermeyer S. Travel to high altitude with young children: an approach for clinicians. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2008;9(4):265–269. https://doi.org/10.1089/ham.2008.1066.
174. Committee on Obstetric Practice. ACOG committee opinion. Exercise during pregnancy and the postpartum period. Number 267, January 2002. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2002;77(1):79–81. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12053898.
175. ACOG Committee Opinion No. 650: physical activity and exercise during pregnancy and the postpartum period. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2015;126(6):e135–e142. https://doi.org/10.1097/AOG.0000000000001214.
176. Keyes LE, Hackett PH, Luks AM. Outdoor activity and high altitude exposure during pregnancy: a survey of 459 pregnancies. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2016;27(2):227–235. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wem.2016.02.010.
177. Artal R, Fortunato V, Welton A, et al. A comparison of cardiopulmonary adaptations to exercise in pregnancy at sea level and altitude. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1995;172(4 Pt 1):1170–1178. https://doi.org/10.1016/0002-9378(95)91475-7. discussion 1178-1180.
178. Jensen GM, Moore LG. The effect of high altitude and other risk factors on birthweight: independent or interactive effects? *Am J Public Health*. 1997;87(6):1003–1007. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9224184.
179. Mortola JP, Frappell PB, Aguero L, Armstrong K. Birth weight and altitude: a study in Peruvian communities. *J Pediatr*. 2000;136(3):324–329. https://doi.org/10.1067/mpd.2000.103507.
180. Reshetnikova OS, Burton GJ, Milovanov AP. Effects of hypobaric hypoxia on the fetoplacental unit: the morphometric diffusing capacity of the villous membrane at high altitude. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1994;171(6):1560–1565. https://doi.org/10.1016/0002-9378(94)90402-2.
181. Polvi HJ, Pirhonen JP, Erkkola RU. The hemodynamic effects of maternal hypo- and hyperoxygenation in healthy term pregnancies. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1995;86(5):795–799. https://doi.org/10.1016/0029-7844(95)00260-X.
182. Julian CG, Galan HL, Wilson MJ, et al. Lower uterine artery blood flow and higher endothelin relative to nitric oxide metabolite levels are associated with reductions in birth weight at high altitude. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2008;295(3):R906–R915. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpregu.00164.2008.
183. Zhen H-N, Zhao W, Zhu J-Y, et al. One craniotomy at the highest altitude in the world and follow-up study. *Chin Med J*. 2015;128(7):993–994. https://doi.org/10.4103/0366-6999.154335.
184. Kumar AS, Mishra S, Dorjey M, Morup T, Motup T, Ali R. Cardiac surgery at high altitude. *Natl Med J India*. 2005;18(3):137–138. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16130615.
185. Grocott MPW, Johannson L. Ketamine for emergency anaesthesia at very high altitude (4243 m above sea-level). *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(9):959–962. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2044.2007.05074.x.
186. Roy PK. Physiological adaptation and anaesthesia at high altitude. *Indian J Anaesth*. 2002;46(3):175. http://www.ijaweb.org/article.asp?issn=0019-5049;year=2002.
187. Safar P, Tenicela R. High altitude physiology in relation to anesthesia and inhalation therapy. *Anesthesiology*. 1964;25:515–531. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14192798.
188. Nunn JF. Anaesthesia at altitude. In: Ward MP, Milledge JS, West JB, eds. *High Altitude Medicine and Physiology*. London: Chapman and Hall Medical; 1989:481–486.
189. Young J, Kapoor V. Principles of anaesthetic vaporizers. *Anaesthesia & Intensive Care Medicine*. 2010;11(4):140–143. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mpaic.2010.01.001.
190. James MF, White JF. Anesthetic considerations at moderate altitude. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63(12):1097–1105. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6239572.
191. James MFM, Hofmeyr R, Grocott MPW. Losing concentration: time for a new MAPP? *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(6):824–826. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aev151.
192. James MFM, Manson EDM, Dennett JE. Nitrous oxide analgesia and altitude. *Anaesthesia*. 1982;37(3):285–288. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2044.1982.tb01100.x.
193. Maharjan SK. Anaesthesia for cleft lip surgery--challenge in rural Nepal. *Kathmandu Univ Med J*. 2004;2(2):89–95. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821372.
194. Pederson L, Benumof J. Incidence and magnitude of hypoxaemia with ketamine in a rural African hospital. *Anaesthesia*. 1993;48(1):67–69. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8434753.
195. Streatfeild KA, Gebremeskel A. Arterial oxygen saturation in Addis Ababa during diazepam-ketamine anaesthesia. *Ethiop Med J*. 1999;37(4):255–261. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11961876.
196. Bishop RA, Litch JA, Stanton JM. Ketamine anesthesia at high altitude. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2000;1(2):111–114. https://doi.org/10.1089/15270290050074251.
197. Wolfe RR, Loehr JP, Schaffer MS, Wiggins JW. Hemodynamic effects of ketamine, hypoxia and hyperoxia in children with surgically treated congenital heart disease residing greater than or equal to 1,200 meters above sea level. *Am J Cardiol*. 1991;67(1):84–87. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1986509.

198. Xu H, Liu Y, Song W, et al. Comparison of cutting and pencil-point spinal needle in spinal anesthesia regarding postdural puncture headache: a meta-analysis. *Medicine*. 2017;96(14):e6527. https://doi.org/10.1097/MD.0000000000006527.
199. Aksoy M, Ince I, Ahıskalıoglu A, Karaca O, Bayar F, Erdem AF. Spinal anaesthesia at low and moderately high altitudes: a comparison of anaesthetic parameters and hemodynamic changes. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2015;15:123. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12871-015-0104-y.
200. Hampson NB, Kregenow DA, Mahoney AM, et al. Altitude exposures during commercial flight: a reappraisal. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2013;84(1):27–31. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23304996.
201. Muhm JM, Rock PB, McMullin DL, et al. Effect of aircraft-cabin altitude on passenger discomfort. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357(1):18–27. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa062770.
202. Philbrick JT, Shumate R, Siadaty MS, Becker DM. Air travel and venous thromboembolism: a systematic review. *J Gen Intern Med*. 2007;22(1):107–114. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11606-006-0016-0.
203. Harding RM, Mills FJ. Aviation medicine. Problems of altitude I: hypoxia and hyperventilation. *Br Med J*. 1983;286(6375):1408–1410. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6404482.
204. Thibeault C, Evans AD, Dowdall NP. AsMA Medical Guidelines for Air Travel: fitness to fly and medical clearances. *Aerosp Med Hum Perform*. 2015;86(7):656. https://doi.org/10.3357/AMHP.4222.2015.
205. Teichman PG, Donchin Y, Kot RJ. International aeromedical evacuation. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(3):262–270. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMra063651.
206. Donovan DJ, Iskandar JI, Dunn CJ, King JA. Aeromedical evacuation of patients with pneumocephalus: outcomes in 21 cases. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2008;79(1):30–35. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18225775.
207. Essebag V, Halabi AR, Churchill-Smith M, Lutchmedial S. Air medical transport of cardiac patients*. *Chest*. 2003;124(5):1937–1945. https://doi.org/10.1378/chest.124.5.1937.
208. Singh JM, MacDonald RD, Bronskill SE, Schull MJ. Incidence and predictors of critical events during urgent air-medical transport. *CMAJ*. 2009;181(9):579–584. https://doi.org/10.1503/cmaj.080886.
209. Sanz Fernández de Córdoba S. 100km altitude boundary for astronautics. FAI.
210. Komorowski M, Fleming S, Kirkpatrick AW. Fundamentals of anesthesiology for spaceflight. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30(3):781–790. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.jvca.2016.01.007.
211. *Space Physiology and Medicine*. Vol. 4. 4th ed. Springer; 2016.
212. European Space Agency. The flight of Vostok 1. European Space Agency. http://www.esa.int/About_Us/Welcome_to_ESA/ESA_history/50_years_of_humans_in_space/The_flight_of_Vostok_1.
213. Mahoney E. NASA Releases Plan Outlining Next Steps in the Journey to Mars. NASA. http://www.nasa.gov/press-release/nasa-releases-plan-outlining-next-steps-in-the-journey-to-mars. Published September 24, 2015.
214. Summers RL, Johnston SL, Marshburn TH, Williams DR. Emergencies in space. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2005;46(2):177–184. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annemergmed.2005.02.010.
215. National Aeronautical and Space Administration, Mattingly II Thomas K. *Biography*. National Aeronautical and Space Administration; 1987. https://www.nasa.gov/sites/default/files/atoms/files/mattingly_thomas.pdf.
216. Institute of Medicine (US) Committee on the Longitudinal Study of Astronaut, Longnecker DE, Manning FJ, Worth MH. In: *Review of NASA's Longitudinal Study of Astronaut Health*. National Academies Press (US); 2004. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK215985/. Accessed April 27, 2018.
217. Putcha L, Berens KL, Marshburn TH, Ortega HJ, Billica RD. Pharmaceutical use by U.S. astronauts on space shuttle missions. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1999;70(7):705–708.
218. Santy PA, Bungo MW. Pharmacologic considerations for shuttle astronauts. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2013;31(10):931–933. https://doi.org/10.1002/j.1552-4604.1991.tb03652.x.
219. Cucinotta FA, To K, Cacao E. Predictions of space radiation fatality risk for exploration missions. *Life Sci Space Res(Amst)*. 2017;13:1–11. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.lssr.2017.01.005.
220. Epelman S, Hamilton DR. Medical mitigation strategies for acute radiation exposure during spaceflight. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2006;77(2):130–139.
221. Hellweg CE, Baumstark-Khan C. Getting ready for the manned mission to Mars: the astronauts' risk from space radiation. *Naturwissenschaften*. 2007;94(7):517–526. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00114-006-0204-0.
222. Friedberg W, Copeland K, Duke FE, O'Brien K, Darden J. Health aspects of radiation exposure on a simulated mission to Mars. *Radioact Food Environ*. 2005;7(C):894–901. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1569-4860(04)07112-8.
223. Chancellor JC, Blue RS, Cengel KA, et al. Limitations in predicting the space radiation health risk for exploration astronauts. *NPJ Microgravity*. 2018;4:8. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41526-018-0043-2.
224. Maalouf M, Durante M, Foray N. Biological effects of space radiation on human cells: history, advances and outcomes. *J Radiat Res*. 2011;52(2):126–146.
225. Britten RA, Jewell JS, Miller VD, Davis LK, Hadley MM, Wyrobek AJ. Impaired spatial memory performance in adult wistar rats exposed to low (5–20 cGy) doses of 1 GeV/n 56Fe particles. *Radiat Res*. 2016;185(3):332–337. https://doi.org/10.1667/RR14120.1.
226. Lonart G, Parris B, Johnson AM, et al. Executive function in rats is impaired by low (20 cGy) doses of 1 GeV/u (56)Fe particles. *Radiat Res*. 2012;178(4):289–294.
227. Parihar VK, Allen B, Tran KK, et al. What happens to your brain on the way to Mars. *Sci Adv*. 2015;1(4). https://doi.org/10.1126/sciadv.1400256.
228. Parihar VK, Allen BD, Caressi C, et al. Cosmic radiation exposure and persistent cognitive dysfunction. *Sci Rep*. 2016;6. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep34774.
229. Jandial R, Hoshide R, Waters JD, Limoli CL. Space–brain: the negative effects of space exposure on the central nervous system. *Surg Neurol Int*. 2018;9. https://doi.org/10.4103/sni.sni_250_17.
230. LeGates TA, Fernandez DC, Hattar S. Light as a central modulator of circadian rhythms, sleep and affect. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2014;15(7):443–454. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrn3743.
231. Basner M, Dinges DF. Lost in space: sleep. *Lancet Neurol*. 2014;13(9):860–862. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1474-4422(14)70176-0.
232. Barger LK, Flynn-Evans EE, Kubey A, et al. Prevalence of sleep deficiency and use of hypnotic drugs in astronauts before, during, and after spaceflight: an observational study. *Lancet Neurol*. 2014;13(9):904–912. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1474-4422(14)70122-X.
233. Dongen V, Maislin G, Mullington JM, Dinges DF. The cumulative cost of additional wakefulness: dose-response effects on neurobehavioral functions and sleep physiology from chronic sleep restriction and total sleep deprivation. *Sleep*. 2003;26(2):117–126. https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/26.2.117.
234. Pagel JI, Choukèr A. Effects of isolation and confinement on humans-implications for manned space explorations. *J Appl Physiol*. 2016;120(12):1449–1457. https://doi.org/10.1152/japplphysiol.00928.2015.
235. Basner M, Dinges DF, Mollicone DJ, et al. Psychological and behavioral changes during confinement in a 520-day simulated interplanetary mission to mars. *PLoS One*. 2014;9(3). https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0093298.
236. Stuster JW. Behavioral Issues Associated with isolation and Confinement: Review and Analysis of Astronaut Journals (Journals) - 04.11.18. National Aeronautical and Space Administration. https://www.nasa.gov/mission_pages/station/research/experiments/991.html#overview. Published April 2016.
237. Federal Aviation Authority. AC 61-107A - Operations of Aircraft at Altitudes Above 25,000 Feet MSL and/or Mach Numbers (MMO) Greater than. 75. https://www.faa.gov/pilots/training/airman_education/media/AC%2061-107A.pdf.
238. The First Spacewalk. http://www.bbc.co.uk/news/special/2014/newsspec_9035/index.html.
239. Katuntsev VP. Approaches to decompression safety support of EVA for orbital and interplanetary missions. *Acta Astronaut*. 2010;66(1-2):96–101. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.actaastro.2009.05.018.
240. Grocott MPW, Martin DS, Levett DZH, et al. Arterial blood gases and oxygen content in climbers on Mount Everest. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360(2):140–149. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0801581.
241. Williams D, Kuipers A, Mukai C, Thirsk R. Acclimation during space flight: effects on human physiology. *CMAJ*. 2009;180(13):1317–1323. https://doi.org/10.1503/cmaj.090628.

242. Prisk GK. The lung in space. *Clin Chest Med*. 2005;26(3):415–438. vi. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ccm.2005.05.008..
243. Shykoff BE, Farhi LE, Olszowka AJ, et al. Cardiovascular response to submaximal exercise in sustained microgravity. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81(1):26–32. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1996.81.1.26.
244. Norsk P, Damgaard M, Petersen L, et al. Vasorelaxation in space. *Hypertension*. 2006;47(1):69–73. https://doi.org/10.1161/01.HYP.0000194332.98674.57.
245. Norsk P, Asmar A, Damgaard M, Christensen NJ. Fluid shifts, vasodilatation and ambulatory blood pressure reduction during long duration spaceflight. *J Physiol*. 2015;593(Pt 3):573–584. https://doi.org/10.1113/jphysiol.2014.284869.
246. Buckey JC, Gaffney FA, Lane LD, et al. Central venous pressure in space. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81(1):19–25. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1996.81.1.19.
247. Videbaek R, Norsk P. Atrial distension in humans during microgravity induced by parabolic flights. *J Appl Physiol*. 1997;83(6):1862–1866. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1997.83.6.1862.
248. Di Rienzo M, Castiglioni P, Iellamo F, et al. Dynamic adaptation of cardiac baroreflex sensitivity to prolonged exposure to microgravity: data from a 16-day spaceflight. *J Appl Physiol*. 2008;105(5):1569–1575. https://doi.org/10.1152/japplphysiol.90625.2008.
249. Cooke WH, Ames JE, Crossman AA, et al. Nine months in space: effects on human autonomic cardiovascular regulation. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000;89(3):1039–1045. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.2000.89.3.1039.
250. Bungo MW, Goldwater DJ, Popp RL, Sandler H. Echocardiographic evaluation of space shuttle crewmembers. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;62(1):278–283. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1987.62.1.278.
251. Martin DS, South DA, Wood ML, Bungo MW, Meck JV. Comparison of echocardiographic changes after short- and long-duration spaceflight. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2002;73(6):532–536.
252. Perhonen MA, Franco F, Lane LD, et al. Cardiac atrophy after bed rest and spaceflight. *J Appl Physiol*. 2001;91(2):645–653. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.2001.91.2.645.
253. May C, Borowski A, Martin D, et al. Affect of microgravity on cardiac shape: comparison of pre- and in-flight data to mathematical modeling. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;63(suppl 12):A1096. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0735-1097(14)61096-2.
254. Leach CS, Alfrey CP, Suki WN, et al. Regulation of body fluid compartments during short-term spaceflight. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81(1):105–116. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1996.81.1.105.
255. Watenpaugh DE. Fluid volume control during short-term space flight and implications for human performance. *J Exp Biol*. 2001;204(18):3209–3215. http://jeb.biologists.org/content/204/18/3209. Accessed May 1, 2018.
256. Platts SH, Martin DS, Stenger MB, et al. Cardiovascular adaptations to long-duration head-down bed rest. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2009;80(5 Suppl):A29–A36. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19476167.
257. Alfrey CP, Udden MM, Leach-Huntoon C, Driscoll T, Pickett MH. Control of red blood cell mass in spaceflight. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81(1):98–104. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1996.81.1.98.
258. Bungo MW, Charles JB, Johnson PC. Cardiovascular deconditioning during space flight and the use of saline as a countermeasure to orthostatic intolerance. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1985;56(10):985–990.
259. Waters WW, Ziegler MG, Meck JV. Postspaceflight orthostatic hypotension occurs mostly in women and is predicted by low vascular resistance. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;92(2):586–594. https://doi.org/10.1152/japplphysiol.00544.2001.
260. Meck JV, Waters WW, Ziegler MG, et al. Mechanisms of postspaceflight orthostatic hypotension: low alpha1-adrenergic receptor responses before flight and central autonomic dysregulation postflight. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2004;286(4):H1486–H1495. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpheart.00740.2003.
261. West JB, Elliott AR, Guy HJ, Prisk GK. Pulmonary function in space. *JAMA*. 1997;277(24):1957–1961.
262. Prisk GK, Fine JM, Cooper TK, West JB. Lung function is unchanged in the 1 G environment following 6-months exposure to microgravity. *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2008;103(6):617–623. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00421-008-0754-2.
263. Elliott AR, Prisk GK, Guy HJ, West JB. Lung volumes during sustained microgravity on Spacelab SLS-1. *J Appl Physiol*. 1994;77(4):2005–2014. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1994.77.4.2005.
264. Elliott AR, Prisk GK, Guy HJ, Kosonen JM, West JB. Forced expirations and maximum expiratory flow-volume curves during sustained microgravity on SLS-1. *J Appl Physiol*. 1996;81(1):33–43. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1996.81.1.33.
265. Prisk GK, Fine JM, Cooper TK, West JB. Vital capacity, respiratory muscle strength, and pulmonary gas exchange during long-duration exposure to microgravity. *J Appl Physiol*. 2006;101(2):439–447. https://doi.org/10.1152/japplphysiol.01419.2005.
266. Moore AD, Downs ME, Lee SMC, Feiveson AH, Knudsen P, Ploutz-Snyder L. Peak exercise oxygen uptake during and following long-duration spaceflight. *J Appl Physiol*. 2014;117(3):231–238. https://doi.org/10.1152/japplphysiol.01251.2013.
267. Moore AD, Lynn PA, Feiveson AH. The first 10 years of aerobic exercise responses to long-duration ISS flights. *Aerosp Med Hum Perform*. 2015;86(suppl 12):A78–A86. https://doi.org/10.3357/AMHP.EC10.2015.
268. Petersen N, Jaekel P, Rosenberger A, et al. Exercise in space: the European Space Agency approach to in-flight exercise countermeasures for long-duration missions on ISS. *Extrem Physiol Med*. 2016;5:9. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13728-016-0050-4.
269. Fraser KS, Greaves DK, Shoemaker JK, Blaber AP, Hughson RL. Heart rate and daily physical activity with long-duration habitation of the International Space Station. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2012;83(6):577–584.
270. Whitson PA, Pietrzyk RA, Morukov BV, Sams CF. The risk of renal stone formation during and after long duration space flight. *Nephron*. 2001;89(3):264–270. https://doi.org/10.1159/000046083.
271. Smith SM, Heer M, Shackelford LC, et al. Bone metabolism and renal stone risk during International Space Station missions. *Bone*. 2015;81:712–720. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bone.2015.10.002.
272. LeBlanc A, Lin C, Shackelford L, et al. Muscle volume, MRI relaxation times (T2), and body composition after spaceflight. *J Appl Physiol*. 2000;89(6):2158–2164. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.2000.89.6.2158.
273. Gopalakrishnan R, Genc KO, Rice AJ, et al. Muscle volume, strength, endurance, and exercise loads during 6-month missions in space. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2010;81(2):91–102.
274. Edgerton VR, Zhou MY, Ohira Y, et al. Human fiber size and enzymatic properties after 5 and 11 days of spaceflight. *J Appl Physiol*. 1995;78(5):1733–1739. https://doi.org/10.1152/jappl.1995.78.5.1733.
275. Kalb R, Solomon D. Space exploration, Mars, and the nervous system. *Arch Neurol*. 2007;64(4):485–490. https://doi.org/10.1001/archneur.64.4.485.
276. Antonutto G, Bodem F, Zamparo P, Di PEP. Maximal power and EMG of lower limbs after 21 days spaceflight in one astronaut. *J Gravit Physiol*. 1998;5(1):63–66. http://europepmc.org/abstract/med/11542367
277. Recktenwald MR, Hodgson JA, Roy RR, et al. Effects of spaceflight on rhesus quadrupedal locomotion after return to 1g. *J Neurophysiol*. 1999;81(5):2451–2463. https://doi.org/10.1152/jn.1999.81.5.2451.
278. Inglis FM, Zuckerman KE, Kalb RG. Experience-dependent development of spinal motor neurons. *Neuron*. 2000;26(2):299–305. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0896-6273(00)81164-2.
279. Heer M, Paloski WH. Space motion sickness: incidence, etiology, and countermeasures. *Auton Neurosci*. 2006;129(1-2):77–79. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.autneu.2006.07.014.
280. Young LR, Oman CM, Merfeld D, et al. Spatial orientation and posture during and following weightlessness: human experiments on Spacelab Life Sciences 1. *J Vestib Res*. 1993;3(3):231–239.
281. Mader TH, Gibson CR, Pass AF, et al. Optic disc edema, globe flattening, choroidal folds, and hyperopic shifts observed in astronauts after long-duration space flight. *Ophthalmology*. 2011;118(10):2058–2069. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ophtha.2011.06.021.
282. Mader TH, Gibson CR, Pass AF, et al. Optic disc edema in an astronaut after repeat long-duration space flight. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 2013;33(3):249–255. https://doi.org/10.1097/WNO.0b013e31829b41a6.
283. Mader TH, Gibson CR, Lee AG, Patel NB, Hart SF, Pettit DR. Unilateral loss of spontaneous venous pulsations in an astronaut. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 2015;35(2):226. https://doi.org/10.1097/WNO.0000000000000207.

284. Wilson MH, Hargens AR, Imray CH. Effects of spaceflight on astronaut brain structure. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(6):581–583. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMc1716067.
285. Mader TH, Gibson CR, Lee AG. Choroidal folds in astronauts. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci*. 2016;57(2):592. https://doi.org/10.1167/iovs.15-18720.
286. Mader TH, Gibson CR, Otto CA, et al. Persistent asymmetric optic disc swelling after long-duration space flight: implications for pathogenesis. *J Neuroophthalmol*. 2017;37(2):133–139. https://doi.org/10.1097/WNO.0000000000000467.
287. Gemignani A, Piarulli A, Menicucci D, et al. How stressful are 105 days of isolation? Sleep EEG patterns and tonic cortisol in healthy volunteers simulating manned flight to Mars. *Int J Psychophysiol*. 2014;93(2):211–219. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijpsycho.2014.04.008.
288. Borchers AT, Keen CL, Gershwin ME. Microgravity and immune responsiveness: implications for space travel. *Nutrition*. 2002;18(10):889–898.
289. Crucian B, Stowe R, Mehta S, et al. Immune system dysregulation occurs during short duration spaceflight on board the space shuttle. *J Clin Immunol*. 2013;33(2):456–465. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10875-012-9824-7.
290. Crucian B, Stowe RP, Mehta S, Quiriarte H, Pierson D, Sams C. Alterations in adaptive immunity persist during long-duration spaceflight. *NPJ Microgravity*. 2015;1:15013. https://doi.org/10.1038/npjmgrav.2015.13.
291. Gmünder FK, Konstantinova I, Cogoli A, Lesnyak A, Bogomolov W, Grachov AW. Cellular immunity in cosmonauts during long duration spaceflight on board the orbital MIR station. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1994;65(5):419–423.
292. Mehta SK, Stowe RP, Feiveson AH, Tyring SK, Pierson DL. Reactivation and shedding of cytomegalovirus in astronauts during spaceflight. *J Infect Dis*. 2000;182(6):1761–1764. https://doi.org/10.1086/317624.
293. Mehta SK, Cohrs RJ, Forghani B, Zerbe G, Gilden DH, Pierson DL. Stress-induced subclinical reactivation of varicella zoster virus in astronauts. *J Med Virol*. 2004;72(1):174–179. https://doi.org/10.1002/jmv.10555.
294. Pierson DL, Stowe RP, Phillips TM, Lugg DJ, Mehta SK. Epstein-Barr virus shedding by astronauts during space flight. *Brain Behav Immun*. 2005;19(3):235–242. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbi.2004.08.001.
295. Wilson JW, Ott CM, Höner zu Bentrup K, et al. Space flight alters bacterial gene expression and virulence and reveals a role for global regulator Hfq. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2007;104(41):16299–16304. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0707155104.
296. Schwendner P, Mahnert A, Koskinen K, et al. Preparing for the crewed Mars journey: microbiota dynamics in the confined Mars500 habitat during simulated Mars flight and landing. *Microbiome*. 2017;5(1):129. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40168-017-0345-8.
297. Turroni S, Rampelli S, Biagi E, et al. Temporal dynamics of the gut microbiota in people sharing a confined environment, a 520-day ground-based space simulation, MARS500. *Microbiome*. 2017;5. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40168-017-0256-8.
298. Fellman M. Change in astronaut's gut bacteria attributed to spaceflight - Northwestern Now. https://news.northwestern.edu/stories/2017/february/change-in-astronauts-gut-bacteria-attributed-to-spaceflight/ Published February 2017.
299. Smith SM, Davis-Street JE, Rice BL, Nillen JL, Gillman PL, Block G. Nutritional status assessment in semiclosed environments: ground-based and space flight studies in humans. *J Nutr*. 2001;131(7):2053–2061. https://doi.org/10.1093/jn/131.7.2053.
300. Smith SM, Zwart SR, Block G, Rice BL, Davis-Street JE. The nutritional status of astronauts is altered after long-term space flight aboard the International Space Station. *J Nutr*. 2005;135(3):437–443. https://doi.org/10.1093/jn/135.3.437.
301. Zwart SR, Morgan JLL, Smith SM. Iron status and its relations with oxidative damage and bone loss during long-duration space flight on the International Space Station. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2013;98(1):217–223. https://doi.org/10.3945/ajcn.112.056465.
302. Reynolds RJ, Day SM. Mortality among U.S. astronauts: 1980-2009. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2010;81(11):1024–1027.
303. Delp MD, Charvat JM, Limoli CL, Globus RK, Ghosh P. Apollo lunar astronauts show higher cardiovascular disease mortality: possible deep space radiation effects on the vascular endothelium. *Sci Rep*. 2016;6:29901. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep29901.
304. Khine HW, Steding-Ehrenborg K, Hastings JL, et al. Effects of prolonged spaceflight on atrial size, atrial electrophysiology, and risk of atrial fibrillation. *Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol*. 2018;11(5):e005959.https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCEP.117.005959.
305. Saluja IS, Williams DR, Woodard D, et al. Survey of astronaut opinions on medical crewmembers for a mission to Mars. *Acta Astronaut*. 2008;63(5):586–593. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.actaastro.2008.05.002.
306. Komorowski M, Watkins SD, Lebuffe G, Clark JB. Potential anesthesia protocols for space exploration missions. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2013;84(3):226–233.
307. Komorowski M, Fleming S, Mawkin M, Hinkelbein J. Anaesthesia in austere environments: literature review and considerations for future space exploration missions. *NPJ Microgravity*. 2018;4(1):5. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41526-018-0039-y.
308. Ball CG, Kirkpatrick AW, Williams DR, et al. Prophylactic surgery prior to extended-duration space flight: is the benefit worth the risk? *Can J Surg*. 2012;55(2):125–131. https://doi.org/10.1503/cjs.024610.
309. Ketcham DW. Where there is no anaesthesiologist: the many uses of ketamine. *Trop Doct*. 1990;20(4):163–166. https://doi.org/10.1177/004947559002000407.
310. Bredmose PP, Grier G, Davies GE, Lockey DJ. Pre-hospital use of ketamine in paediatric trauma. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(4):543–545. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399-6576.2008.01852.x.
311. Svenson JE, Abernathy MK. Ketamine for prehospital use: new look at an old drug. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2007;25(8):977–980. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajem.2007.02.040.
312. Keller C, Brimacombe J, A F, et al. Airway management during spaceflight: a comparison of four airway devices in simulated microgravity. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(5):1237–1241. https://doi.org/10.1097/00000542-200005000-00010.
313. Norfleet WT. Anesthetic concerns of spaceflight. *Anesthesiol*. 2000;92(5):1219 http://anesthesiology.pubs.asahq.org/article.aspx?articleid=1945776. Accessed June 11, 2018.
314. Gronert GA. Disuse atrophy with resistance to pancuronium. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(5):547–549. http://europepmc.org/abstract/MED/7294410. Accessed June 11, 2018.
315. Gijsenbergh F, Ramael S, Houwing N, van Iersel T. First human exposure of Org 25969, a novel agent to reverse the action of rocuronium bromide. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(4):695–703.
316. Shields M, Giovannelli M, Mirakhur RK, Moppett I, Adams J, Hermens Y. Org 25969 (sugammadex), a selective relaxant binding agent for antagonism of prolonged rocuronium-induced neuromuscular block. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96(1):36–43. https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aei314.
317. Lewis SR, Price A, Walker KJ, McGrattan K, Smith AF. Ultrasound guidance for upper and lower limb blocks. In: *The Cochrane Library*. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2015. http://cochranelibrary-wiley.com/doi/10.1002/14651858.CD006459.pub3/full
318. Zamboni P, Sisini F, Menegatti E, et al. Ultrasound monitoring of jugular venous pulse during space missions: proof of concept. *Ultrasound Med Biol*. 2018;44(3):726–733. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ultrasmedbio.2017.11.001.
319. Haidegger T, Sándor J, Benyó Z. Surgery in space: the future of robotic telesurgery. *Surg Endosc*. 2011;25(3):681–690. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00464-010-1243-3.

75

Clinical Care in Extreme Environments: High Pressure, Immersion, Drowning, Hypo- and Hyperthermia

RICHARD E. MOON, ANNE D. CHERRY, and ENRICO M. CAMPORESI

KEY POINTS

- Immersion in water causes acute redistribution of blood from the extremities and splanchnic vessels to the heart and pulmonary vessels. This can precipitate pulmonary edema (immersion pulmonary edema [IPE], swimming-induced pulmonary edema [SIPE]) in some individuals, especially during heavy exercise or in the presence of myocardial dysfunction. SIPE usually responds to removal from the water and oxygen therapy.
- Prolonged immersion induces diuresis and plasma volume loss that can predispose to severe postural hypotension after extraction from the water.
- Care of a drowning victim includes resuscitation when necessary, oxygen, and supportive care. All victims of drowning who require any form of resuscitation should be transported to the hospital for evaluation and monitoring, even if they appear to be alert and demonstrate effective cardiorespiratory function at the scene.
- In victims of either hypothermia or hyperthermia optimal temperature measurement should be core (rectal or pre-ingested capsule).
- Extracorporeal life support (ECLS) for both circulatory support and controlled rewarming is usually recommended for core temperature less than 30°C.
- Suspected victims of heat exhaustion or heat stroke should be assessed with rectal temperature measurement. Victims of heat exhaustion (temperature normal or slightly above normal) can usually be treated with minimal external cooling. Heat stroke (core temperature 40°C-47°C) should be treated aggressively, ideally with immersion in ice water until core (rectal) of 39°C or less is reached.
- Hyperbaric oxygen exposure (breathing oxygen at increased ambient pressure, typically 2-3 atmospheres absolute [ATA]) causes an increase in arterial and tissue partial pressure of oxygen (PO_2) and no significant change in arterial pH or partial pressure of carbon dioxide in arterial blood (PCO_2).
- During hyperbaric oxygen therapy cardiac output and pulmonary vascular resistance are decreased; systemic vascular resistance is increased.
- Acute illnesses for which hyperbaric oxygen is indicated include carbon monoxide (CO) poisoning (based on randomized, controlled studies), gas bubble injury (gas embolism and decompression sickness [DCS]), and soft tissue necrotizing infections (the latter two based upon clinical experience and meta-analyses).
- The decision to use hyperbaric oxygen to treat a patient with arterial gas embolism (AGE) or DCS should be based on clinical criteria, including the presence of symptoms, abnormal physical examination, or a history of AGE within a few hours even in the absence of symptoms. Neither neurophysiologic testing nor radiographic imaging are useful except, rarely, to exclude other pathologies.
- The decision to use hyperbaric oxygen to treat a patient with CO poisoning should be based on clinical criteria, including a history of impaired consciousness or other neurologic manifestation, pregnancy, or severe exposure (e.g., peak carboxyhemoglobin [HbCO] more than 25%). The HbCO level correlates poorly with the severity of the illness and is generally useful only to make the diagnosis.
- Oxygen-induced seizures are rare and self-limited. Appropriate management includes discontinuation of inhaled oxygen. Chamber pressure should not be altered during the seizure, as decompression while a seizure is occurring can result in pulmonary barotrauma (pneumothorax or pneumomediastinum) and AGE.
- Recent animal and human data support the notion that pretreatment of patients with hyperbaric oxygen may ameliorate some of the adverse effects of cardiac surgery and invasive cardiac procedures.
- As ambient pressure is altered, anesthetic vaporizers (except for desflurane) deliver a variable concentration but fixed partial pressure of vapor. Therefore, there is no need to adjust vaporizer settings when delivering anesthesia in a hyperbaric chamber or at altitude. Desflurane vaporizers deliver a fixed concentration, requiring upward adjustment at altitude.

Introduction

Anesthesiologists and other intensivists are frequently required to evaluate and treat patients suffering consequences of exposure to high and low temperatures, high ambient pressures, gas embolism, decompression sickness (DCS), and drowning. Administration of oxygen (O_2) at increased ambient pressure (hyperbaric O_2, hyperbaric oxygen treatment [HBOT]) has been used since the early 20th century for selected conditions. It is an effective modality for treatment of gas bubble diseases and several other acute and chronic conditions. This chapter describes the physiology of immersion and its complications, hypo- and hyperthermia, and the use of HBOT for treatment and its indications for acute treatment.

Physiology of Immersion

ACUTE EFFECTS OF IMMERSION

The upright posture of humans results in gravitational effects on the venous blood pool, which tends to be distributed into the lower half of the body. Because water and blood have almost the same density, immersion in water causes immediate redistribution of blood from the legs and splanchnic bed into the heart and pulmonary circulation. This causes a reduction in lung volumes, a rise in central venous and pulmonary vascular pressures,[1,2] and an increase in ventricular and stroke volumes.[3] These effects are accentuated in cold versus warm water due to peripheral vasoconstriction.[4,5]

PROLONGED IMMERSION AND RESCUE

Because of atrial stretch, there is an increase in B-type natriuretic protein (BNP) secretion. In conjunction with the increase in cardiac output this induces a diuresis. Prolonged immersion, such as may occur during loss at sea, can result in severe hypovolemia due to lack of fluid intake and prolonged diuresis. Indeed, some marine accident survivors have died during extraction from the water in the vertical position.[6] It is therefore recommended that victims who have spent significant time in the water be kept in the horizontal position during rescue (Fig. 75.1).

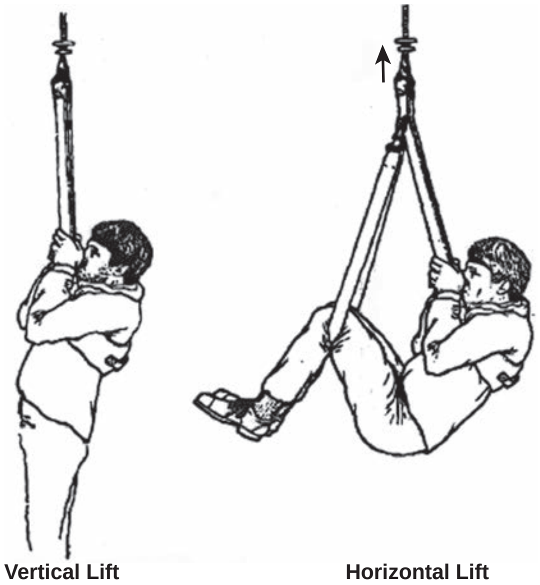


Fig. 75.1 Two methods of extracting a victim from the water. After immersion for 30 minutes in 15°C water, heart rate changes were measured during removal in two different positions. During vertical lift mean heart rate increased by 16% due to reflex response to hypotension versus only a small nonsignificant increase during horizontal lift. Extracting victims in the vertical position has resulted in death, presumably due to hypotension. (From Golden FS, Hervey GR, Tipton MJ. Circum-rescue collapse: collapse, sometimes fatal, associated with rescue of immersion victims. *J R Nav Med Serv*. 1991;77[3]:139–149. [Page 146, Fig. 3] with permission.)

IMMERSION PULMONARY EDEMA

Pulmonary vascular pressures that are elevated due to immersion are increased even further during exercise, particularly in cold water.[5] Drinking water prior to immersion can activate the osmopressor response[7,8] and further augment central translocation of venous blood. Blood centralization then raises pulmonary vascular pressures, which in susceptible individuals can be sufficiently elevated to induce acute pulmonary edema. This condition is referred to as immersion pulmonary edema (IPE) or swimming-induced pulmonary edema (SIPE). Individuals with cardiovascular pathology, such as hypertension, left ventricular hypertrophy, cardiac valve disease, and cardiomyopathy are particularly susceptible because of their preexisting elevation of left atrial pressure.[9] However, healthy individuals can also experience SIPE, particularly during heavy exercise in the water. SIPE has been reported during a long swim in approximately 1.5% of triathletes,[10] 3% to 5% of US Navy special forces trainees,[11] and up to 60% of Israel Defense Force recruits.[12] SIPE tends to recur in some individuals and has been linked to higher than normal pulmonary artery (PA) and PA wedge pressures.[13]

The condition usually resolves within a few hours after removal from the water (which immediately reduces intravascular pressure within the pulmonary vessels) and administration of first aid O_2. Nebulized β_2-adrenergic agents may be helpful to treat bronchospasm and accelerate water reabsorption from alveoli.[14] Although resolution within a few hours is the norm, SIPE-induced death has been reported.[15]

Drowning

DEFINITION

A definition of drowning was proposed and adopted in 2002 by the World Health Organization as follows: *Drowning is the process of experiencing respiratory impairment from submersion/immersion in liquid.*[16] This definition was modified slightly by a consensus of international investigators on guidelines for the uniform reporting of data from drowning studies (Utstein style),[17] which has subsequently been updated.[18] A recent publication has reviewed 14 drowning publications based on this reporting convention.[19]

Evolution of the drowning syndrome in a patient depends on the extent of aspiration of fluid into the airways, leading to hypoxemia and cardiac arrest, which can evolve to progressive and irreversible neurologic damage. Death at any time as a result of drowning is described as *fatal drowning*. When the process of drowning is interrupted, it is referred to as *nonfatal drowning*. Any submersion incident without respiratory impairment should be considered a *water rescue* and not a drowning. Other terms such as "near drowning" or "dry" or "wet drowning" or similar distinctions should not be used, in order to standardize appropriate reporting of outcomes.[20-23]

PREVALENCE

The number of accidental drownings in the world exceeds 500,000 persons per year,[24] causing over 370,000 deaths.[25] Undoubtedly these numbers are underestimates due to additional unaccounted cases such as the thousands of victims each year from floods, tsunamis, and asylum seekers seeking to flee by sea. Approximately 20% of people who die from drowning are children younger than 15 years of age. From 2005 to 2014, there was an average of nearly 3900 fatal unintentional drownings per year in the United States.[26] It is estimated that 4000 children receive emergency department care for nonfatal submersion injuries. At least 50% of drowning victims treated in hospital emergency departments require inpatient care. Nonfatal drowning can lead to severe brain damage and long-term disability.[26]

These statistics show that drowning is a significant public health issue, surpassing the number of annual traffic accident deaths. However, multiple agencies at a national level follow and attempt to regulate traffic, whereas drowning has not elicited appropriate attention.[27]

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

After submersion in water when a person cannot maintain a clear airway, water is voluntarily expelled from the nose and mouth and breath-holding is initiated. This usually cannot last more than one minute, because involuntarily inspiratory efforts produce swallowing attempts, water inhalation, and cough. Laryngospasm may occur for some time but will cease during progressive brain hypoxia.

Continued water aspiration leads to hypoxia, loss of consciousness, and deterioration of cardiac function. The hypoxic cardiac insult can rapidly progress through tachycardia, followed by bradycardia, pulseless electrical activity (PEA), and finally asystole. Irreversible damage to the heart and the brain usually occurs within a few minutes. In exceptional but rare circumstances, such as drowning in ice water, cardiac and brain cooling can provide extended hypothermic protection and afford possibility of reversible resuscitation after prolonged submersion times,[28] although systematic reviews have failed to find a correlation between water temperature and survival.[29,30] Drowning in cold water may also be accompanied by several unique aspects related to gasp response, autonomic effects, hemodynamic changes, and hypothermia (see later).[31]

Water aspiration induces pulmonary edema with impairment of pulmonary gas exchange, in part due to surfactant dilution and dysfunction.[32] Although conventional wisdom is that fresh and salt water drowning differ due to osmotically driven fluid exchange across the alveolar-capillary membrane with resulting changes in electrolyte concentrations, animal studies and clinical case reports have not supported differences in clinical course. A study of hemodynamics and pulmonary mechanics in anesthetized dogs using tracheal instillation of 20 mL/kg of fluid with various sodium chloride (NaCl) concentrations (sterile water, 0.225%, 0.45%, 0.9%, 2%, and 3% NaCl) and anoxic controls failed to find any differences among the groups.[33] This is supported by recent clinical series, where outcomes of drownings were similar in fresh and salt water.[34]

RESCUE AND RESUSCITATION

Enhanced local surveillance by lifeguards has been shown to be highly effective in early rescue and improved outcomes from drowning: the majority of rescued victims in areas of effective surveillance do not need medical attention and only 6% of all rescued persons require emergency medical admission and very few require cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR).[35,36]

Safe rescue techniques comprise reaching the victim with a pole, a rope, or other buoyant life-saving device, avoiding rescuer entanglement with the victim. American Heart Association resuscitation guidelines recommend that rescuers should remove drowning victims from the water by the fastest means available and should begin resuscitation as quickly as possible. Since cardiac arrest is caused by progressive hypoxia, any attempt to institute CPR must include ventilatory maneuvers to attempt to refill the alveoli with air or oxygen. For drowning victims who present in cardiac arrest, a shockable rhythm is predictive of survival, but one series reported that most drowning victims in arrest have asystole or PEA.[37]

Rescuers should provide CPR, particularly rescue breathing, as soon as an unresponsive submersion victim is removed from the water. Mouth-to-mouth ventilation in the water may be helpful when administered by a trained rescuer, but chest compressions are difficult to perform in water and are often ineffective. Maneuvers to relieve foreign-body airway obstruction are not recommended. It is reasonable for the lone healthcare provider to give 5 cycles (about 2 minutes) of CPR before leaving the victim to activate the emergency medical service (EMS) system. Victims with obvious clinical signs of injury, alcohol intoxication, or a history of diving into shallow water are at higher risk of spinal cord injury, and thus stabilization of the cervical and thoracic spine for such individuals may be considered, although spinal cord injury among drowning victims is uncommon. Often the victim has swallowed variable volumes of water and can vomit early during rescue-breathing; in patients with spontaneous circulation, the lateral position is therefore recommended to minimize the risk of aspiration.[38]

The clinical presentation of the drowning victim is variable and stratifying risk based on clinical presentation may be useful for initial triage (Table 75.1).[20] American Heart Association guidelines recommend that all victims of drowning who require any form of resuscitation (including rescue breathing alone) should be transported to the

TABLE 75.1 Drowning Severity Scale Described by Szpilman With Outcomes of 1831 Cases

Grad	Description	Hospitalization (%)	Mortality (%)
1	Normal pulmonary auscultation with coughing. Insufficient aspiration of water to cause alteration in alveolo-capillary gas exchange requiring medical intervention.	2.9	0.0
2	Abnormal pulmonary alveolo-capillary gas exchange; abnormal pulmonary auscultation with rales in some pulmonary fields.	14.8	4.0
3	Significant alveolo-capillary gas exchange alteration as well as a high degree of pulmonary arterial-venous shunt that generally requires early mechanical ventilation and PEEP. Pulmonary auscultation with rales in all pulmonary fields, in addition to presenting frequently with pinkish foam in the mouth and nose. No hypotension.	44.8	11.5
4	Same as Grade 3 with hypotension.	88.9*	19.4
5	Isolated respiratory arrest.	84.0*	33.3
6	Cardiopulmonary arrest.	12.4	43.5

*Hospitalization < 100% in this group due to several patients reported dead before reaching hospital.

PEEP, Positive end-expiratory pressure.

From Szpilman D. Near-drowning and drowning classification: a proposal to stratify mortality based on the analysis of 1,831 cases. *Chest.* 1997;112(3):660–665.

hospital for evaluation and monitoring, even if they appear to be alert and demonstrate effective cardiorespiratory function at the scene.[39]

HOSPITAL CARE

The sequence of resuscitation efforts after emergency department admission includes securing a definitive airway, improving oxygenation, reestablishing circulation, insertion of a gastric tube, and rewarming. Previous medical history should be addressed, since trauma, cardiac arrhythmias, or seizures may have precipitated the near-drowning episode. Toxicology evaluation for alcohol or drug intoxication may be helpful to establish causes of impaired consciousness and treatment.

If the patient is unstable, intensive care unit (ICU) admission may be required for observation and weaning from mechanical ventilation, which can usually be accomplished using traditional algorithms. Bronchodilator support may be useful to treat bronchoconstriction and accelerate water clearance from alveoli,[14] but glucocorticoids have not been shown to be effective.[40]

Bronchoscopy might be required for pulmonary toilet or aspiration of solid materials, and secondary pneumonia can occur.[41] It has been reported that aspiration of swimming pool water rarely results in pneumonia whereas it is more common in salt water aspiration and most common after polluted water aspiration; however other studies have found no relationship between the type of water and development of pneumonia.[41]

In a small number of patients admitted to the ICU, pulmonary function can deteriorate beyond the ability of conventional mechanical ventilation to maintain adequate gas exchange. In such cases, administration of surfactant substitutes and nitric oxide has been tried. Case series of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) have also been published.[40,42] Initiation of such measures is best determined on the basis of individual patient requirements. It has been recommended that ECMO should be considered earlier in the course of therapy (e.g., when arterial pH < 7.2, PCO_2 > 60 mm Hg, SaO_2 < 85%) before progressive respiratory failure leads to cardiovascular collapse.[42]

Circulation and Renal support

Inotropes may be required to maintain blood pressure. Renal insufficiency or failure has been described and documented in drowning cases,[43,44] with proposed causative mechanisms including rhabdomyolysis, systemic inflammatory response associated with multiorgan failure, and hypoxic renal injury,[44] although dialysis is rarely required.[44]

Neuroresuscitation

Neurologic outcome after effective CPR in drowning victims has been shown to be similar to all victims of cardiac arrest from all other causes; however, in the rare cases where hypothermia was established in the rescued drowning subject, survival after prolonged periods of submersion have been demonstrated.[28,31] Reports[45] have documented possible beneficial effects of induced hypothermia after resuscitation. It has been suggested that drowning victims with return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC) who remain comatose should NOT be actively rewarmed above 90° to 93°F/32° to 34°C, and victims with ROSC whose core temperature is 93°F/34°C or higher should be cooled to 90° to 93°F/32° 34°C as soon as possible[46]; however recommendations for optimal management of such patients await further studies.

OUTCOME OF DROWNING

If a person is rescued the outcome will depend on submersion duration, EMS response times, volume of water aspirated and its effects, the skill of the providers, and the availability of support systems.[30,46] Outcomes of 1831 cases of drowning are shown in Table 75.1.[20] In a series of 336 drowning-related cardiac arrests, EMS resuscitation was attempted on 154, of whom 27% survived to hospital arrival and 8% survived to hospital discharge. Only 6% were found in a shockable rhythm.[37]

PREVENTION

Increasing documentation and international interest from institutions supported by coastal and fluvial societies and advocacy groups have demonstrated the value of prevention in drowning.[47] Use of life vests in the water and

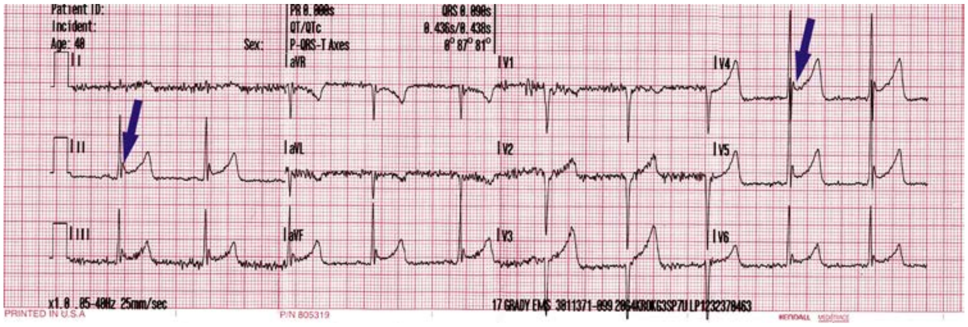


Fig. 75.2 Osborn waves in a hypothermic patient. ECG is from a 40-year-old male found sleeping on the street when ambient temperature was close to 4°C. Rectal temperature on arrival at the hospital was 30.4°C. The 12-lead ECG shows a secondary wave closely following the S-wave *(arrows)*, now referred to as an Osborn wave after the pediatrician/intensivist who first described the pattern as a harbinger of ventricular fibrillation during hypothermia.[53] *ECG,* Electrocardiogram.

instructions teaching swimming and/or floating,[38] as well as Dutch, Brazilian, South African, and Australian lifeguard experiences have shown that 85% of drowning cases can be prevented by public education, supervision, and public preparedness.[31] The recent multiple tragedies of refugees drowning at sea have re-sensitized medical groups to renew efforts to prevent drowning.[27]

Hypothermia

PHYSIOLOGY OF HYPOTHERMIA

Hypothermia is defined by a low core body temperature (generally less than 35°C, with more conservative perioperative thresholds of 36°C[48]). Thresholds for further categorical breakdown into mild, moderate, and severe hypothermia are not consistent within the literature, and vary depending on context (e.g., trauma, immersion/environmental, therapeutic indication). Extremes of age, sepsis, burns, trauma, some endocrine disturbances, intoxication, exertional fatigue, or malnutrition can place patients at higher risk for developing both hypothermia and complications thereof, with a high degree of variability even among healthy individuals.[49,50]

On a molecular and cellular level, decreased temperature decreases the speed of chemical and enzymatic reactions, influences intracellular signaling cascades, and alters cellular structure[51]; the overall metabolic rate is suppressed to varying degrees for different tissues. As such, cold exposure and hypothermia impact each tissue or organ system differently. The microvasculature of the skin and peripheral tissues manifests a rapid vasoconstrictive sympathetic response to either superficial cold exposure or decreased core body temperature. This response reduces skin blood flow and attenuates cutaneous heat flux, while shifting blood volume to the central compartment. The high surface to volume ratio of the extremities can result in profound decreases in peripheral tissue temperatures with maintenance of the core body temperature.

Superficial peripheral cooling impacts muscle and nerve function,[31] which can impair a victim's capability for self-rescue or preservation in the case of accidental hypothermia, and has implications for monitoring in clinical settings (see the section on "Clinical Considerations"). Muscle function declines due to impaired release and diffusion of calcium and acetylcholine, and changes in elastic components. Furthermore, as peripheral cooling progresses and the more superficial muscle fibers become impaired, fatigue occurs more quickly in muscle fibers left to bear the load. Peripheral cooling also impairs nerve conduction velocities and amplitudes, further impacting physical performance. As a final comment on peripheral cooling, accidental hypothermia or improper therapeutic cooling with ice packs or conductive cooling devices can lead to cold injury or frostbite of peripheral tissues (fingers, toes, nose, ears are most susceptible). Treatment is conservative in mild to moderate cases, through protection from mechanical injury, slow rewarming, and consideration of nerve blocks or improving oxygenation when possible. However, tissue salvage in severe injury may also require early therapy with thrombolytics or iloprost.[52]

The cardiovascular system is impacted in a number of ways. Peripheral sympathetic vasoconstriction leads to increased systemic vascular resistance and blood pressure, as well as increased central venous pressure due to redistribution of blood volume to the central compartment. Shivering increases metabolic requirements; in combination with increased sympathetic tone this leads to increased cardiac output, tachycardia, and a propensity for atrial arrhythmias in mild hypothermia. With more severe hypothermia (<32°C), cardiac conduction delays develop, including J waves (positive deflection at the QRS-ST junction) signaling abnormal early ventricular repolarization (Osborn waves, Fig. 75.2),[53] and decreased spontaneous polarization of pacemaker cells, resulting in bradycardia. The likelihood of cardiac arrest increases with cooling below 32°C, with very high risk at 28° to 24°C or below[54]; gentle handling and maintaining horizontal positioning in hypothermic patients can minimize the likelihood of arrhythmia or cardiovascular collapse.

Decreased cerebral metabolism in hypothermia[55] is useful as the basis of neuroprotection for a variety of therapeutic indications and in accidental hypothermia complicated by hypoxia (particularly if cooling occurs before the onset of hypoxia); however, neurologic and respiratory function also decline with increasing severity of hypothermia. Impaired judgment progresses to hallucinations, delirium, and decreased consciousness as body temperature falls; loss of consciousness is common below 28°C. Reflexes, pupillary reactivity, and electroencephalographic (EEG) activity decline and become absent with progressive hypothermia, precluding neurologic assessment. From a respiratory standpoint, neurologic impairment can necessitate intervention for airway protection, and with severe hypothermia respiration can even cease. Although decreased metabolic requirements afford some tolerance to hypoxia and decreased ventilation (tidal volume, respiratory rate, and compliance decrease), sensitivity to hypercapnia is diminished, leading to hypoventilation and acidosis, which can exacerbate electrolyte abnormalities and other physiologic changes.[54]

Renal and hepatic impairment have a variety of implications. Hepatic impairment decreases clearance of lactate and other metabolic byproducts and metabolism of some medications (see the section on "Clinical Considerations"). Renal blood flow is increased in mild hypothermia, due to increased blood volume in the central compartment. Increased renal blood flow in combination with decreased antidiuretic hormone activity results in diuresis. However, as hypothermia progresses, renal blood flow and glomerular filtration rate both decrease, although diuresis may persist due to inhibition of tubular water reabsorption.[54] Additionally, edema that develops in damaged peripheral tissues can exacerbate depletion of circulating blood volume. Respiratory, renal, and endocrine changes result in electrolyte imbalances in both mild and moderate/severe hypothermia. Hypokalemia and hyperglycemia can be present in mild hypothermia, whereas acidosis, increased sodium excretion, and hyperkalemia manifest with progressive cooling.[31] Hyperglycemia results from decreased insulin sensitivity and secretion, requiring intensive insulin therapy and frequent monitoring of blood glucose levels. Distal tubular transport of sodium is impaired, which also affects acid-base regulation.[31] Finally, the threshold for cardiac toxicity from hyperkalemia diminishes with progressive hypothermia.[56] Therapies and medications that increase serum potassium levels (blood transfusion, succinylcholine administration) should be carefully considered in these patients.

Because of increased gas solubility with decreased temperature, arterial partial pressure of oxygen (PaO_2) and arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide ($PaCO_2$) decrease and pH increases. Samples corrected to patient body temperature will appear to be alkalotic and hypercarbic, whereas samples left uncorrected at 37°C will correspond to normal reference ranges for these values in the absence of physiologic changes. As such, results should be interpreted in the context of whether temperature correction was or was not performed. As discussed in hypothermia, impaired ventilation and a higher ventilatory threshold for hypercapnia result in hypoventilation, which generally tracks with the reduction in metabolic rate. However, since pH increases and increased carbon dioxide (CO_2) solubility decreases $PaCO_2$ with decreasing temperature, cerebral blood flow is generally also decreased in proportion to reduced metabolic rate in hypothermia. Clinically, a strategy that has been investigated in hypothermic cardiac surgical patients is correction for known changes in $PaCO_2$ solubility (known as pH-stat blood gas management, as opposed to alpha-stat management where hypocarbia and alkalosis are permitted), with the theoretical advantage of increasing cerebral blood flow. Some benefit has been shown in pediatric, but not in adult populations, where there is concern for increased cerebral embolic risk.[57]

Hematologic changes observed in hypothermia are secondary to changes in blood volume, microvascular tone, and coagulation factor function. Contraction of the blood volume due to diuresis (possibly combined with dehydration due to environmental exposure or exertion) increases blood viscosity. In combination with increased viscosity, vasomotor abnormalities in the microcirculation lead to sludging, stasis, and hypoperfusion. Impaired circulation prevents tissue oxygenation, but also clearance of metabolic byproducts, which accumulate in peripheral tissues. Leukocyte and platelet counts fall with severe hypothermia and platelet activation and coagulation factor enzymatic function are highly sensitive to pH and temperature.[58] This can result in a coagulopathic state with progressive hypothermia, but may also be partially offset by simultaneous inhibition of anticoagulant factors, depending on relative concentrations.[59]

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS

In general, hypothermia may impair drug absorption in the bowel. Both core and peripheral cooling, even to a mild degree (~34°C), can have a clinically significant impact on the recovery from, or twitch response to, neuromuscular blockade. This is explained by both impaired neuromuscular function and pharmacokinetic changes (increased plasma concentration) with decreased temperature.[60] The minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) for volatile anesthetics decreases with hypothermia. With profound cooling (~20°C), anesthesia may no longer be needed to prevent movement,[61] although the precise temperature at which EEG silence is achieved is somewhat lower and demonstrates individual variability.[62] Plasma concentrations of some intravenous anesthetics increase because of reduced compartmental clearance; the clearance of CYP450-metabolized drugs (including propofol and ketamine) is also reduced in proportion to the decrease in body temperature.[54] As a result, reduced infusion rates will achieve similar levels of sedation.[63] In parallel, general anesthetic and some sedative medications have an impact on thermoregulation (both vasoconstriction and shivering thresholds are reduced by up to ~2° to 4°C or more), and can contribute to hypothermia.[63,64]

There are also considerations for monitoring hypothermic patients, the most obvious being the measurement of temperature itself. Even in thermoneutral conditions there is very high variability in skin temperature at different sites, an effect which is attenuated but persistent for common core temperature measurement locations (Fig. 75.3).[65] In hypothermia, changes in blood flow distribution exaggerate these temperature variations among site differences. Similarly, rewarming methods can have dynamic effects on temperatures in different tissue compartments (see Treatment of Hypothermia). Apart from the rational yet clinically variable application, the recommendation is "if one's interest lies with the temperature of a specific body tissue, then measure temperature from that site, or a valid surrogate."[65] The guiding principles for measurement of core body temperature are to measure temperature in a location

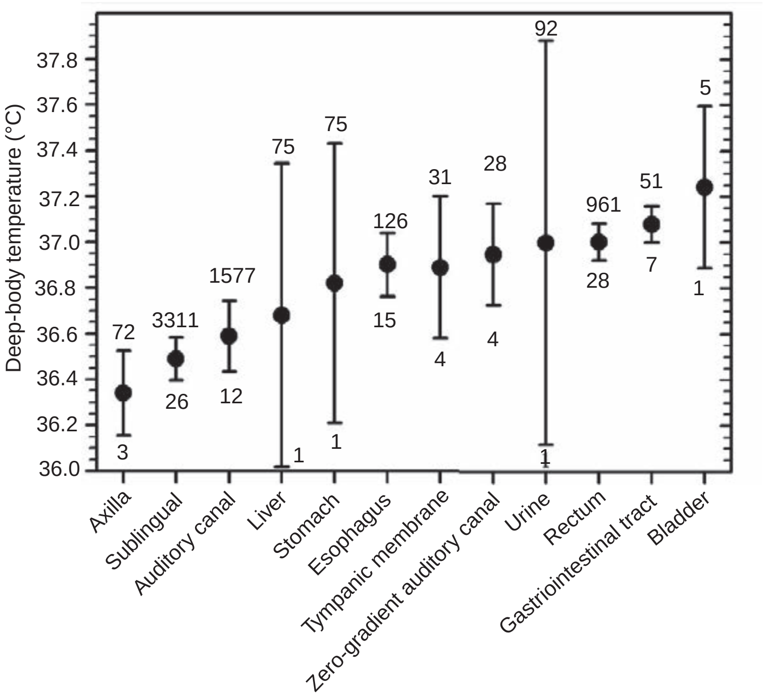


Fig. 75.3 Variations in resting, deep-body temperature in 12 measurement sites from published reports, with means and 95% confidence intervals for each total sample. Numbers above the confidence intervals are the total number of subjects; those below indicate the number of contributing investigations. (From Taylor NA, Tipton MJ, Kenny GP. Considerations for the measurement of core, skin and mean body temperatures. *J Therm Biol.* 2014;46:72–101. [Page 80, Fig. 6] with permission.)

(1) where there is good tissue perfusion, which promotes thermal equilibration with other body sites; (2) that is insulated from the external environment or peripheral tissues, which may be cooled to a greater degree than core tissues; and (3) that is as adjacent as possible to the organ of interest (i.e., the tympanic membrane or nasopharynx for the brain). Blood temperature can be an excellent surrogate for core temperature, with PA blood temperature often cited as a gold standard.[54] However, this invasive method may also suffer some inaccuracy in the setting of acute mixing of fluids administered via central venous catheters or adjacent placement of invasive warming devices. Esophageal temperature is often used to represent blood temperature due to its proximity to the central circulation.

The response time for pulse oximetry is limited or the signal may fail altogether in conditions of local hypoperfusion, as occurs with peripheral vasoconstriction in hypothermia. Although there have been advances in device algorithms, pulse oximetry often does not give a reliable reading from the digits in even mild hypothermia, with relatively preserved performance for ear or forehead sensors.[66] Similarly, concerns for exaggerated or prolonged neuromuscular blockade can be complicated by the fact that local or body cooling decreases nerve stimulation (mechanomyography) twitch tensions, even in the absence of paralytic medications.[60]

There are important differences between accidental hypothermia due to environmental exposure and induced hypothermia in controlled, clinical situations such as therapeutic hypothermia for neuroprotection or during cardiac surgery. The most obvious difference is that the mechanism of cooling may vary—environmental exposure results in cooling across the skin and body surface, through radiation, evaporation, convection, or conduction from cold air, water, or contact surface (with the exception of drowning, where aspiration and swallowing of cold fluid can impart some degree of "internal cooling"). In contrast, in addition to surface cooling, clinical hypothermia may be induced and maintained by more efficient, evenly distributed, and precisely controlled invasive methods, such as intravascular catheters, cold fluid infusion, or cardiopulmonary bypass. Second, clinical support throughout the period of cooling, hypothermia, and rewarming can mitigate some of the major physiologic perturbations that would otherwise limit hypothermia tolerance or resuscitation and allow cooling to temperatures not tolerated outside of the clinical setting. Death is not uncommon in accidental hypothermia with body temperatures of 24° to 28°C, and the lowest documented temperatures from which resuscitation has occurred for accidental hypothermia are ~13°C[31]; on the other hand, recovery from induced hypothermia to 10°C and lower has been reported.[67] Finally, accidental hypothermia is often complicated by immersion or drowning, prolonged fasting and/or hypovolemia, extreme exertion or exhaustion, trauma, or a variety of other clinically relevant conditions.

TREATMENT OF HYPOTHERMIA

Supportive care for the previously mentioned physiologic perturbations should be provided, and hypothermic patients should be protected from further heat loss with insulation and/or a vapor barrier, and they should be transferred to a controlled clinical setting when available. Intrinsic thermoregulatory responses should be addressed, including the vasoconstrictive sympathetic response in the skin and shivering in the muscles (primarily truncal muscles), which can both be stimulated by skin or core cooling. Shivering effectively provides heat at the expense of increased metabolic requirements that cannot be indefinitely maintained.[68] Similarly, after provision of caloric supplementation to support increased metabolic requirements, and taking steps to prevent a further drop in temperature, exercise is recommended to augment rewarming in the case of mild accidental hypothermia where neurologic function is intact.[69] Physiologically, shivering is blunted by exertional fatigue (termed thermoregulatory fatigue), hypoglycemia, and paradoxically, shivering is markedly attenuated and eventually stops as core temperatures continue to fall (<~31°C).[70] It may be undesirable in some clinical situations, and can be treated with a number of interventions, pharmacologic and otherwise.[64]

The vasoconstrictive sympathetic response protects from heat loss during cold exposure, but also impairs effectiveness of transcutaneous warming. On application of external heat, local vasodilation does occur despite continued core hypothermia.[71] Cutaneous warming can be applied using large heat packs (primarily in prehospital settings), or with forced air or circulating water devices when more advanced care is available. Radiant or resistive heating devices are less commonly used. Limitations to all of these methods include the potential for tissue damage from heat application (and therefore their maximum safe set temperature), and their reliance on effective peripheral circulation to distribute heat from the periphery to the core. Regarding the latter point, cutaneous warming is significantly more effective when applied to areas of skin with optimal blood flow; that is, in nondependent areas that are not compressed by body weight.

As mentioned, cutaneous warming demonstrates improved heat transfer efficiency with peripheral vasodilation. General anesthesia and some sedative medications can also affect peripheral vasodilation, which can exacerbate cooling in the context of exposure to cold environments, but in the context of cutaneous rewarming can similarly increase the effectiveness of warming, if vasodilation is not already maximal. On the other hand, vasodilation also makes simultaneous cooling across exposed skin possible, even with warming devices covering other locations. Efforts should be made to cover or warm as much exposed skin as possible in patients under anesthesia (and those sedated using vasodilating agents) to prevent this inefficiency.

Administered fluids should be warmed, which is of increasing importance with administration of large volumes such as in severe diuresis, dehydration, or traumatic blood loss. However, administration of warmed fluids rarely actively warms patients to any important extent because of the small amounts given relative to the heat distribution volume in most patients, and because it is unsafe to heat fluids much above normal body temperature. Similarly, airway heating and humidification can result in environmental heat loss. Provision of heated, humidified oxygen can prevent further heat loss, but its capacity for heat exchange is limited and it should only be used in conjunction with other warming methods.

A number of invasive warming methods have been used, including heat exchange through intravascular warming catheters; hemodialysis circuits; and peritoneal, gastric, bladder, or pleural lavage. Increasing invasiveness generally also predisposes to potential for complications; primarily it should be kept in mind that some of these methods can negatively impact the circulation (i.e., impaired preload, bleeding) and precipitate circulatory collapse in at-risk patients. In general, all of these rewarming methods rely on the circulation for heat equilibration, and prolonged CPR may be logistically difficult or have limited effectiveness. Therefore, in the case of arrested, severely compromised, or at-risk circulation, an increasing number of centers report and recommend the use of extracorporeal life support (ECLS) for both circulatory support and controlled rewarming in patients with profound hypothermia (typically core temperature < 30°C).[54] As expected, these methods are not without pitfalls, but they can make resuscitation possible in extreme cases.[72] Rewarming for these methods is relatively rapid, and is primarily limited by standard guidelines for (1) temperature gradients between blood return and patient blood of greater than 10°C, to avoid outgassing and generation of gaseous emboli when blood is returned to the patient; and (2) an upper threshold of 37°C for outlet blood temperature to avoid cerebral hyperthermia.[73]

Finally, it is worth reviewing issues that present in the setting of hypothermia that may complicate the rewarming process. The most important are the concepts of rescue arrest and afterdrop. Hypothermic patients are likely to be hypovolemic and to suffer from acidosis and electrolyte abnormalities, and are predisposed to significant cardiac arrhythmias. As such, changes in posture that impact preload, or significant vasodilation that may occur on initiation of cutaneous rewarming can contribute to cardiovascular collapse. Peripheral vasodilation or improvement in tissue hypoperfusion can also allow accumulated metabolic byproducts to enter the circulation and exacerbate acidosis. Afterdrop refers to the phenomenon of continued core cooling even after rewarming has been initiated, due to continued loss of heat from the core to the cool periphery. In general, as rewarming progresses, clinical and laboratory parameters must be followed closely to avoid overcorrection, particularly in the case of pH or temperature-dependent phenomenon such as insulin sensitivity.

HYPOTHERMIA OUTCOME

Outcome after treatment of hypothermia is highly dependent on whether there has been coincidental trauma, cardiac arrest, significant hypoxia, or advanced age, all of which adversely affect prognosis.[54] On the other hand, resuscitation from hypothermia with intact cardiac activity (core temperature typically > 28°C) has low mortality. Of a series of 1028 children admitted to hospital with accidental hypothermia, 91.5% survived.[74] In a study of 572 adults with accidental hypothermia (core temperature ≤ 32°C), 83% of patients younger than 75 survived to hospital discharge.[75]

Hyperthermia

PHYSIOLOGY OF HYPERTHERMIA

Optimal physiologic and biochemical homeostasis requires regulation of body temperature within a narrow range, typically 36.7°C to 37.5°C. Heat is generated by metabolism, which can vary several-fold from resting during sleep to heavy exercise. Internally generated heat is dissipated through the skin by conduction, radiation, convection, and evaporation of sweat. In an environment where ambient temperature is greater than skin temperature (typically around 33°C), heat is gained from the environment, allowing only sweating as a mechanism for maintenance of normal body temperature. Adaptation to hot environments (acclimatization) can occur over days or weeks. Mechanisms of acclimatization include increased blood volume and body water, lower body temperature, enhanced skin vasodilatation and sweating, and production of a more dilute sweat.[76]

When core temperature increases, the normal adaptive response is cutaneous vasodilatation and initiation of sweating. There is redistribution of cardiac output to the skin, with concomitant reduction in splanchnic and renal blood flow,[77] which can lead to gut, liver, and kidney ischemia. Dehydration and the resulting hypovolemia attenuate the increase in skin blood flow and accentuate splanchnic vasoconstriction. With continued hyperthermia, a nitric oxide-mediated mechanism causes vasodilatation in the splanchnic bed, which can precipitate hypotension and shock,[78] and possibly gastrointestinal ischemia-reperfusion injury.[79]

Heat-induced cell damage occurs at temperatures beyond a threshold that is species-specific. In humans, the critical temperature is between 41.6°C and 42°C sustained for 0.75 to 8 hours.[80] The major mechanism for body injury from high temperature is damage to macromolecules, including lipids, DNA, and proteins. Temperature increases can cause oxidative stress, protein unfolding, entanglement, and aggregation.[79,81] Uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation and a reduction in mitochondrial number lead to a decrease in adenosine triphosphate (ATP) levels. In parallel with physiologic adaptive mechanisms, there is a cellular stress response (CSR), which is triggered by accumulation of damaged macromolecules.[79,81] The CSR consists of altered gene expression that initiates the production of a series of heat shock proteins (HSPs) that falls into seven categories.[81] The major HSP group consists of what are referred to as ''molecular chaperones.'' These chaperone proteins recognize unfolded proteins and either refold them into their normal functional state or direct them into degradation pathways. Another group of HSPs is proteolytic, which clear irreversibly damaged proteins. A third group facilitates DNA and ribonucleic acid (RNA) damage. A fourth group consists of enzymes that facilitate re-establishment of metabolic pathways after heat stress. A fifth group includes regulatory proteins. The sixth category comprises proteins involved in sustaining cellular structures such as the cytoskeleton. The final category consists of proteins that facilitate transport, detoxification, and membrane-modulation.

CLINICAL SCENARIOS

Definitions. *Heat exhaustion* is a mild form of heat illness that is notable for inadequate cardiac output accompanied by elevated body temperature, dehydration, and hot, dry skin. Symptoms include fatigue, dizziness, nausea and vomiting, headache, and hypotension.[82] Heat exhaustion occurs in hot environments, often precipitated by exercise. It can also be precipitated by some medications such as diuretics and inadequate water intake, often in older adults.[82] Body temperature in heat exhaustion is usually between 37°C and 40°C.[83] *Heat injury* is more severe than heat exhaustion and after some hours may include some organ and tissue damage.[82] If patients with heat injury are not rapidly cooled the condition may worsen to *heat stroke*, which is life-threatening. Heat stroke is commonly classified as *exertional* or *classic*. Exertional heat stroke usually occurs in young healthy individuals who are exercising in hot environments, often presenting with collapse. Classic heat stroke usually occurs in very young or older individuals exposed to a hot environment without strenuous physical activity.[79,82]

Manifestations of heat stroke include hot dry skin, weakness, anorexia, dizziness, syncope, nausea and vomiting, headache, and confusion. Neurologic manifestations in heat stroke include mental status changes, delirium, coma, and convulsions, but there is often a lucid interval during which the patient may have normal mental status despite severe temperature elevation.

Body temperature in heat stroke is generally in the range of 40°C to 44°C, although temperatures extending from mild elevation to above normal to 47°C have been reported.[79] Differentiating heat stroke from exercise-related heat exhaustion requires assessment of body temperature. Sensors placed on or close to sites on the exterior of the body (e.g., axillary, oral, tympanic, and skin) are not valid during or after intense exercise in the heat. The only adequate measurement sites in this setting are from sensors in the rectum or via radio telemetry from pre-ingested thermistor capsules.[82,84,85]

Metabolic acidosis occurs in the majority of cases of severe heat stroke, especially in exertional heat stroke, often accompanied by respiratory alkalosis.[82,86,87] Rhabdomyolysis, hyperkalemia, and disseminated intravascular coagulation are common. Renal failure commonly occurs in exertional heat stroke, but not classic heat stroke. Hyperglycemia and hypophosphatemia are common in classic heat stroke, whereas biochemical features in exertional heat stroke include hyperphosphatemia, hypocalcemia, and hypoglycemia.

The differential diagnosis of heat stroke includes status epilepticus, stroke, and drug use (including recreational drugs, antidepressants, antihistamines, and antiparkinsonian drugs).[79] Another life-threatening condition that can be confused with heat stroke is exercise-associated hyponatremia (EAH). This condition, which occurs during prolonged exercise, has manifestations similar to heat shock: lightheadedness, nausea, headache, vomiting, altered mental status, and collapse but often without hyperthermia. When these signs and symptoms occur during prolonged exercise it is essential to exclude EAH as its treatment requires correction of serum sodium.[88] When hyperthermia occurs in the perioperative environment, possible diagnoses include malignant hyperthermia (MH), neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS), thyroid storm, and serotonin syndrome. Assessment of MH is described in Chapter 35. NMS is manifested by muscle rigidity, fever, mental disturbances such as delirium and abnormal metabolic changes in patients treated with classic triggering agents such as antipsychotic drugs (e.g., phenothiazines, butyrophenones, lithium), metoclopramide, antidepressants, and some anticonvulsants.[89] In addition to fever, manifestations of serotonin syndrome include clonus, agitation, tremor, muscle rigidity, and hyperreflexia in patients taking serotonergic medication.

TREATMENT OF HYPERTHERMIA

As in the treatment of hypothermia, supportive care to correct physiologic derangements and potential complications is as vital as rapid correction of the core temperature. Fluid management is a primary consideration in virtually any hyperthermic patient, with the degree of perturbation dependent on the heat source, duration of exposure, and amount of sweating. Electrolyte depletion from sweating may also be profound, and hypercalcemia, hyper- or hypokalemia, hypophosphatemia, or hyper/hypoglycemia may require correction in hyperthermic patients.[82]

The underlying cause of hyperthermia determines therapeutic options, and also impacts the effectiveness of selected cooling methods. Cooling in any hyperthermic patient should be expeditious to limit further organ damage, but ongoing excessive metabolic heat generation must also be addressed for cooling to be effective.

Fever induced by immunologic reaction may be responsive to antipyretics or antiinflammatory medications, and discontinuation of a fever-inducing medication or toxin is an obvious first step. Seizures or shivering can contribute significantly to hyperthermia, and a number of therapeutic options exist.[64] In these conditions, pharmacologic treatments may be combined with cooling, depending on the degree of hyperthermia. Treatment of MH is described in Chapter 35. NMS is treated by discontinuation of suspected triggering drugs and supportive care. Pharmacotherapy may include dantrolene, bromocriptine, and amantadine.[89] Treatment of serotonin syndrome also includes discontinuation of triggering agents, supportive care, and administration of a 5-HT$_{2A}$ antagonist such as cyproheptadine,[90] and possibly benzodiazepines. For heat stroke there is no recommended pharmacologic treatment (due to concerns for hepatic toxicity). Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) and aspirin are ineffective, and acetaminophen is contraindicated (see earlier).[79,82] Dantrolene is ineffective in heat stroke.[91]

Heat exhaustion usually responds to simple methods of cooling such as moving to an air-conditioned space, removal of excessive clothing, and application of cloths soaked in cool water. Hyperthermia in heat stroke is managed by institution of cooling as quickly as possible, combined with supportive treatment. The target to which cooling should be pursued is not well-supported by evidence, but many studies have used a target of less than 39°C rectal temperature.[92] Ice water immersion and evaporative cooling are among the most effective noninvasive cooling methods, but they are not always logistically feasible, including in clinical settings where there are concerns for infection or significantly compromised integrity of the skin (e.g., dressings, burns, line sites). Ice packs (with a skin barrier to avoid direct contact and risk of tissue injury) can be applied to central areas with good blood flow, such as the groin, axillae, neck, and torso. All of these methods require ongoing refreshment of the cold source to maintain an effective temperature gradient, and attention to the skin at the site of application to avoid cold injury to tissue is critical. Adhesive cold-water circulating devices are contained, provide continuous refreshment of the temperature gradient, and may be equipped with thresholds and alarms to provide some margin of safety from cold injury. But, as in the case of cutaneous warming, adhesive pads require large areas of intact skin with good blood flow for effective use. These transcutaneous cooling methods all depend on cutaneous vasodilation for effective heat transfer from the core. But with cutaneous cooling, local vasoconstriction and shivering can be induced if temperatures are sufficiently low. Inhibition of shivering or vasoconstrictive responses, as previously discussed, may be used to offset these effects.

Effective but increasingly invasive cooling methods include bladder, gastric, or colonic irrigation with cold saline, intravascular cooling catheters, and administration of cold intravenous fluids.[82,93] Immersion in ice water is safe and effective in young individuals suffering from exertional heat stroke; however, in classic heat stroke it is poorly tolerated and may be associated with increased morbidity and mortality.[79] As in the case of hypothermia treatment, the effectiveness of cold intravenous fluids is limited by concerns for overexpansion of intravascular volume, although the temperature gradient that can be achieved is larger than that for warmed fluids for treatment of hypothermia; cold fluids can be near 4°C, as opposed to warm fluids, which must be near 37°C to avoid local hyperthermia. For patients requiring ECLS (or ECMO), some degree of cooling can be achieved passively due to blood volume flowing through external circuit components. It is noteworthy that while it is common for extracorporeal support circuits to be equipped with heat exchangers to warm the blood, some lack the ability to provide monitored active cooling (as opposed to cardiopulmonary bypass circuits, in which cooling capability is a standard feature). If cooling is a therapeutic goal, this should be considered at the time of circuit choice if there are multiple options available.

After cooling and successful resolution of hyperthermia, clinicians must continue to be vigilant for (1) hypothermia due to aggressive cooling or a dysregulated thermoregulatory response; (2) recurrent hyperthermia; and (3) the development and secondary effects of organ injury that occurred when body temperature was elevated.[82] Short- and/or long-term lung, kidney, liver, cardiovascular, and neurologic injuries have all been described after heat stroke.

HYPERTHERMIA OUTCOME

After cooling, sequelae can include ongoing encephalopathy, seizures, liver failure, renal failure, and adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). Recurrent fever is common during recovery, does not respond to aspirin or NSAIDs, and may further exacerbate brain injury. Acetaminophen is sometimes prescribed but has been associated with liver failure and is contraindicated.[79,82]

Mortality in exertional heat stroke is reported as 3% to 5%.[79] As many as 60% of patients with classic heat stroke die before reaching the hospital, thus it is difficult to determine the true mortality. Of those who are admitted to an ICU, in-hospital mortality is 10% to 65%, however there is also 10% to 28% mortality at one and two years after treatment. Persistent neurologic manifestations including

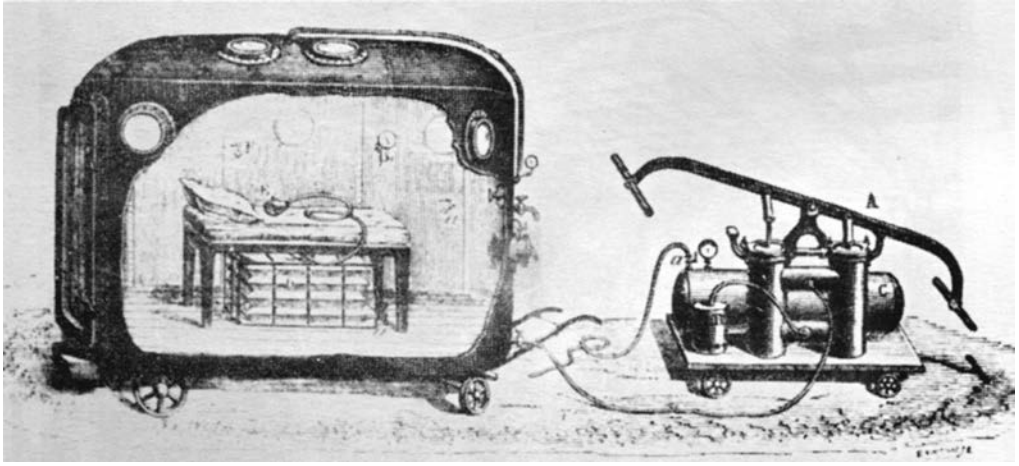


Fig. 75.4 Mobile hyperbaric operating room described by Fontaine in 1879–1895. Nitrous oxide storage tanks can be seen under the operating table. Compressed to 1.25 to 1.33 atmospheres absolute with air, a nitrous oxide-oxygen mixture was provided to the patient. Breathing air in this chamber would have provided an inspired partial pressure of oxygen (PO_2) equivalent to 26% to 28% O_2 at 1 ATA. (From Fontaine J-A: Emploi chirurgical de l'air comprimé. L'Union Médicale: journal des intérêts scientifiques et pratiques moraux et professionnels du corps médicale Paris. 28 [Ser 3]:445-448, 1879. Reprinted with permission of the New York Academy of Sciences.)

ataxia, dysarthria, and problems with coordination occur in a high percentage of patients and are associated with imaging abnormalities such as cerebellar atrophy.[79,82,87,94]

Effects of Increased Gas Pressure

HISTORY

Compressed air technology was developed in the 19th century, which led to men working in compressed air environments for bridge and tunnel construction. Surface-supplied compressed air, and later self-contained compressed air breathing apparatus (scuba), allowed divers involved in the collection of sponges, pearls, and ship salvage to spend significant periods of time breathing air under pressure. New occupational diseases due to in situ formation of bubbles from inert gas supersaturation and pulmonary barotrauma were described: respectively, DCS and arterial gas embolism (AGE). The technology was in an attempt to treat a variety of diseases without any plausible rationale. This included tuberculosis, heart failure, emphysema, bronchitis, asthma, croup, whooping cough, anemia, anorexia, dyspepsia, leucorrhea, menorrhagia, neuralgic pain, and depression. An exception was the use by Fontaine in 1879 of a mobile hyperbaric chamber for anesthesia and surgery.[95] Compressed to 1.25 to 1.33 atmospheres absolute (ATA), a nitrous oxide–O_2 mixture was provided to the patient (Fig. 75.4). Breathing air in Fontaine's chamber would have provided an inspired partial pressure of O_2 (PO_2) equivalent to 26% to 28% O_2 at 1 ATA. This was probably the first use of an elevated PO_2 during anesthesia and certainly the first administration of hyperbaric nitrous oxide.

Use of O_2 at high pressure for the treatment of DCS had been proposed[96] and later reported for the treatment of DCS,[97] but remained an isolated medical curiosity until the early 1960s. A few indications, such as support of oxygenation in hyaline membrane disease of the newborn[98] and during open heart surgery,[99,100] were not useful. For other indications, such as CO poisoning, AGE, and DCS, HBOT proved to be effective, as evidenced by substantial clinical experience and randomized controlled studies. Indications are reviewed regularly by the Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society (headquarters in Durham, NC). This medical organization publishes an extensive bibliography with a list of indications for hyperbaric oxygenation that is updated every 3 to 4 years.[101] Laboratory and clinical data support the use of HBOT for a select number of acute and chronic illnesses (Box 75.1), and anesthesiologists are often called on to provide care of patients in this unusual environment.

INCREASED BAROMETRIC PRESSURE EFFECTS

Some effects of altered ambient pressure are summarized in Fig. 75.5.

An increase in environmental pressure is accompanied by significant adiabatic heat production, whereas decompression generates cooling. This results in an increase in chamber temperature during compression, and cooling and precipitation of water droplets during decompression. These phenomena may limit the rate of compression in manned chambers in order to maintain temperature within a comfortable range.

During changes in ambient pressure, pockets of trapped gas will contract and expand on compression and decompression. Examples include gas in the middle ear and paranasal sinuses, intestinal gas, pneumothorax, and gas pockets within medical equipment, including monitoring and life-support systems. Changes in gas volume are inversely proportional to ambient pressure (Boyle's law):

$$PV = \text{constant}$$

such that at constant temperature, a doubling of environmental pressure (P) will cause the volume (V) of a gas-filled cavity to decrease by half. This effect also underlies one of the major beneficial effects of hyperbaric treatment of pathologic gas, as in AGE or DCS (see later).

A comparison of pressure units used clinically with those in common use in hyperbaric environments is shown in Table 75.2.

BOX 75.1 Selected Conditions for Which There Is Evidence of Hyperbaric Oxygen Treatment Effectiveness

Gas-bubble Disease

Air embolism*[180,187,302,303]
Decompression sickness*[180,187,304,305]

Poisoning

Carbon monoxide*[141,147-149,155,156,161,306]
Cyanide[141]
Carbon tetrachloride[307,308]
Hydrogen sulfide[141]

Infections

Clostridial myonecrosis*[205,207,208]
Other soft tissue necrotizing infections*[205,207,309-311]
Refractory chronic osteomyelitis*[101,198,312]
Intracranial abscess*[313,314]
Mucormycosis*[311,315,316]

Acute Ischemia

Crush injury*[317,318]
Compromised skin flaps*[319,320]
Central retinal artery occlusion, central retinal vein occlusion*[215,216,321,322]

Chronic Ischemia

Radiation necrosis (soft tissue, radiation cystitis, and osteoradionecrosis)*[101,323-325]
Ischemic ulcers, including diabetic ulcers*[101,111,326-330]

Acute Hypoxia

Exceptional blood loss anemia (when transfusion delayed or unavailable)*[101]
Support of oxygenation during therapeutic lung lavage*[209,210]

Thermal Injury

Burns*[331-335]

Envenomation

Brown recluse spider bite[336-338]

Miscellaneous

Idiopathic sudden sensorineural hearing loss*[217]

*Approved by the Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society as an appropriate indication for hyperbaric oxygen treatment.[101]

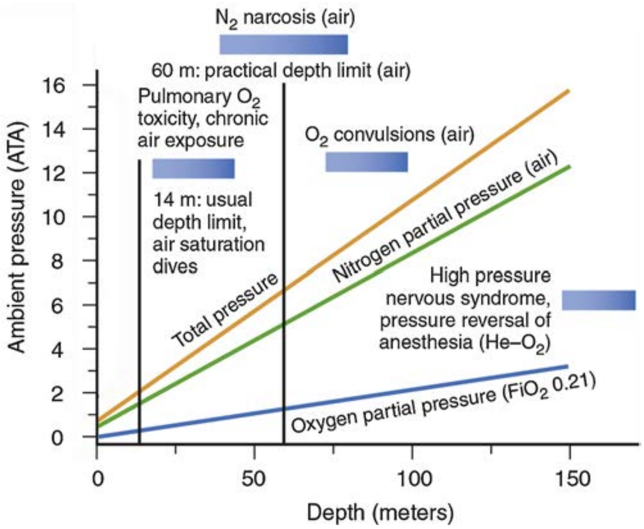


Fig. 75.5 Ambient pressure as a function of water depth. Ambient pressure increases linearly with depth, with pressure increasing by 1 ATM for each 10 m of depth. The oxygen partial pressure (PO_2) line is shown for a constant fraction of inspired oxygen concentration (FiO_2) of 21%. At increasing depth, inspired PO_2 eventually exceeds the pulmonary toxic limit (approximately 14 m in depth) and the central nervous system toxic limit (approximately 70 m in depth). The threshold for high-pressure nervous syndrome and pressure reversal of anesthesia (observed in nonnarcotic atmospheres, such as helium-oxygen) is 150 to 200 m depth. The shaded blue bars represent the depth or altitude ranges over which risk progresses from low *(light shading)* to high *(dark shading)*. *ATM,* Atmosphere; *He,* helium; *N$_2$,* nitrogen.

INCREASED PARTIAL PRESSURE OF OXYGEN

Breathing O_2 at increased ambient pressure will lead to elevation of alveolar O_2 tension (P_AO_2), which can be calculated according to the alveolar gas equation for O_2[102,103]:

$$P_AO_2 = F_IO_2(P_b - PH_2O) - P_ACO_2 \cdot \left(F_IO_2 + \frac{1 - F_IO_2}{R}\right)$$

where F_IO_2 is the fractional inspired O_2 concentration; PH_2O is saturated water vapor pressure at body temperature (typically 47 mm Hg); P_ACO_2 is alveolar partial pressure of CO_2 (PCO_2), assumed to equal arterial PCO_2 ($PaCO_2$); and R is respiratory exchange ratio (usually ≈0.8 at rest). Arterial PO_2 (PaO_2) at any given ambient pressure or FiO_2 can be estimated from arterial blood gases measured breathing air at atmospheric pressure by assuming that the arterial/alveolar (a/A) PO_2 ratio remains constant.[104,105]

TABLE 75.2 Units of Pressure

Atmospheres Absolute (ATA)	Absolute Pressure (mm Hg)	Gauge Pressure (mm Hg)	Feet of Sea Water (fsw)	Meters of Sea Water (msw)
1	760	0	0	0
2	1520	760	33	10
3	2280	1520	66	20
6	4560	3800	165	50

Whereas at 1 ATA the fraction of O_2 in arterial blood that is carried dissolved in the plasma is minimal, at an elevated PaO_2 in the range of 1000 to 2000 mm Hg, significant quantities of O_2 may exist in dissolved form (Table 75.3).

Increased PaO_2 has at least four pharmacologic effects:

1. Increased blood O_2 content
2. Vasoconstriction[106]
3. Antibacterial action, particularly against anaerobic bacteria[107]
4. Inhibition of endothelial neutrophil adhesion in injured tissue[108,109]

The increased arterial O_2 content underlies the rationale for administering HBOT for the treatment of ischemic conditions, for example, wounds that fail to heal due to insufficient blood supply. Elevated PaO_2 leads to an increase in tissue PO_2, which can be estimated using transcutaneous PO_2 electrodes.[110,111] The second effect, vasoconstriction, is an explanation for the effectiveness of HBOT in the treatment of traumatic edema (e.g., crush injury). The mechanism of HBOT-induced vasoconstriction appears to be inactivation of nitric oxide as a result of increased production of superoxide[112] and possibly decreased release of nitric oxide from circulating S-nitrosohemoglobin.[106,112,113]

These two effects, increased O_2 content and vasoconstriction, lead to hemodynamic changes,[106,114] shown in Table 75.3. There is also a slight increase in mean arterial pressure. Studies of HBOT effects on myocardial contractility using denervated hearts[115] or autonomically blocked animals[116] have indicated no intrinsic effect. In intact animals or humans, heart rate and cardiac output are decreased and systemic vascular resistance is increased.[106,114,117] In both anesthetized dogs and awake humans, pulmonary vascular resistance is decreased.[106,118] At 2 ATA, 100% O_2 in conscious dogs has no effect on coronary flow,[117] whereas at 3 ATA, both coronary flow and myocardial O_2 consumption are decreased.[116] Cerebral blood flow is decreased by O_2 administration over a range of pressures,[112,117] whereas at 2 ATA, hepatic, renal, and mesenteric flows are unchanged.[117] HBOT also has microcirculatory and cellular effects in various disease states (see later).

ELEVATION OF INERT GAS PARTIAL PRESSURE

Elevation of the partial pressure of the inert gas (usually nitrogen) present in a breathing mixture is associated with a narcotic effect, predictable by the Meyer-Overton hypothesis. Based on its solubility in olive-oil, nitrogen has 0.03 to 0.05 times the narcotic potency of nitrous oxide. At 3 to 4 ATA (breathing air), most people experience mild euphoria. At 6 ATA, there may be memory loss and poor judgment. At 10 ATA, some individuals lapse into unconsciousness. Nitrogen narcosis has been compared with alcoholic intoxication, with each increase in ambient pressure of 1.5 ATA breathing air resulting in an effect that is said to be similar to drinking one martini. Argon and to a lesser degree hydrogen are also narcotic, whereas helium has minimal if any narcotic effect. In animals exposed to high partial pressures of nitrogen, there is evidence of activation of $GABA_A$ receptors of dopaminergic neurons in the nigrostriatal pathway, leading to a decrease in dopamine release.[119]

ELEVATION OF ABSOLUTE PRESSURE

High-Pressure Nervous Syndrome

High pressure induces a constellation of symptoms consisting of tremor, ataxia, nausea, and vomiting that is known as the high-pressure nervous syndrome (HPNS).[120] It occurs at an ambient pressure greater than 15 to 20 ATA and was first described during the compression phase of deep dives with a helium-O_2 atmosphere. HPNS is attenuated by slow compression and addition of a narcotic gas (e.g., nitrogen) to the breathing mix.[121] Its pathogenesis may be related to an increase in striatal dopamine.[122]

Pressure Reversal of Anesthesia

Studies in animals have demonstrated that high pressure has the tendency to reverse general anesthesia. Elevations in ambient pressure in the absence of a narcotic inert breathing gas will tend to decrease the effectiveness of both inhaled and intravenous anesthetics. At 50 ATA, a 20% increase in the 50% effective dose (ED_{50}) occurs in mice with a variety of inhaled anesthetics. At 50 and 100 ATA, the effective dose of barbiturates increases by 30% to 60%.[123] The ED_{50} for diazepam in rats is markedly reduced at 90 ATA in a helium-O_2 atmosphere.[124] At 31 ATA, the effective concentration for half-maximal effect (EC_{50}) of propofol for loss of righting reflex in tadpoles is increased by 19%, and at 61 ATA, by 38%.[125] Using the same technique, the EC_{50} for dexmedetomidine at 31 ATA is nearly double the value at 1 ATA, and it is increased 2.5-fold at 61 ATA.[126] At 80 ATA, the MAC of desflurane as assessed by response to a noxious stimulus is increased by 19%.[127] The mechanisms of pressure reversal are not fully understood, but may be secondary to physical chemical effects of pressure on membranes[128] or may be related to alterations in neurotransmitter release.[122] However, within the range of pressures used for HBOT (up to 3 to 6 ATA), the effects of pressure on sedative or anesthetic drugs are not clinically significant.

EFFECTS OF HYPERBARIC EXPOSURE ON DRUG DISPOSITION

A few studies have examined the disposition of drugs and drug effects at increased environmental pressures. Studies in awake dogs at pressures up to 6 ATA and ambient PO_2 up to 2.8 ATA have shown that liver plasma flow decreased when either ambient pressure or PO_2 was increased. There was an apparent increase in plasma volume at 1.3 ATA and a return toward 1 ATA values at higher pressures. In the same studies plasma volume was inconsistently affected by ambient pressure, but reduced by increases in PO_2.[129]

There is no major pharmacokinetic or pharmacodynamic effect of hyperbaric exposure for most drugs up to 6 ATA. Pharmacokinetic studies of a few drugs have shown that up to 6 ATA pressure and 2.8 ATA PO_2, the pharmacokinetics of meperidine,[130] pentobarbital,[131] theophylline,[132] and salicylate[133] are unaffected.

Use of benzodiazepines, chlorpromazine, and lithium carbonate has been reported for the treatment of agitation, auditory and visual illusions, and paranoia in a previously normal subject participating in an experimental dive to 650 m (66 ATA).[134] The symptoms, poorly controlled with

TABLE 75.3 Mean Blood Acid-Base and Cardiovascular Responses to Hyperbaric Oxygenation in 14 Normal Subjects

		ARTERIAL						MIXED VENOUS									
Atmospheric Pressure (ATA)	**Inspired Gas**	**PO_2 (mm Hg)**	**pH**	**PCO_2 (mm Hg)**	**O_2 Saturation (%)**	**Dissolved O_2 (mL/dL)**	**Total O_2* (mL/dL)**	**PO_2 (mm Hg)**	**pH**	**PCO_2 (mm Hg)**	**HbO_2 Saturation (%)**	**Cardiac Output ($L.min^{-1}$)**	**Mean Arterial Pressure (mm Hg)**	**Mean Pulmonary Artery Pressure (mm Hg)**	**Pulmonary Artery Wedge Pressure (mm Hg)**	**Systemic Vascular Resistance (dyne. $sec.cm^{-5}$)**	**Pulmonary Vascular Resistance (dyne. $sec.cm^{-5}$)**
1	Air	94	7.40	37	95.7	0.3	18.4	43	7.39	42	75.5	6.5	86	13	9	1061	64
3	100% O_2	1542	7.42	36	99.1	4.6	22.7	399	7.37	43	97.7	5.8	95	12	9	1286	41

*Assuming Hb=13 g/dL.

ATA, Atmospheres absolute; *O_2,* oxygen; *PCO_2,* partial pressure of carbon dioxide; *PO_2,* partial pressure of oxygen

Data from McMahon TJ, Moon RE, Luschinger BP, Luschinger BP, et al. Nitric oxide in the human respiratory cycle. *Nat Med.* 2002;8:711–717.

Downloaded for Damon dr68 (damondr68@gmail.com) at Hacettepe University from ClinicalKey.com by Elsevier on October 21, 2019.
For personal use only. No other uses without permission. Copyright ©2019. Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

diazepam 120 mg/day and temazepam 60 mg/day, ultimately responded to chlorpromazine 300 mg/day. Lithium carbonate administered in conventional doses appeared to display normal pharmacokinetics. Although the effect of chlorpromazine appeared clinically to be appropriate, the authors were uncertain as to whether the failure of benzodiazepines to elicit a desired therapeutic response was due to the patient's condition or to a pressure-reversal phenomenon.

In summary, clinical experience and the published literature indicate that for a variety of drugs administered under hyperbaric conditions at the pressures used for clinical treatment (up to 6 ATA), conventional parenteral drug dosing schedules are safe.

Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy

RATIONALE FOR HYPERBARIC TREATMENT OF SELECTED ACUTE CLINICAL ENTITIES

Carbon Monoxide Poisoning

Hemoglobin (Hb) binds CO with an affinity much higher (by a factor of about 200) than that for O_2. This binding of CO with Hb to form carboxyhemoglobin (HbCO) has two major effects. First, the proportion of Hb that is occupied by CO molecules is unavailable for O_2 transport, resulting in a functional anemia. Second, the avidity with which the remaining Hb binds O_2 is increased (shift to the left of the Hb-O_2 dissociation curve).[135] The result of this is a decreased ability to unload O_2 from blood to tissue at the capillary level and therefore, a reduction in tissue PO_2. Previously it was believed that these effects were totally responsible for the toxicity of CO. However, evidence has since been presented to show that the binding of CO to intracellular pigments (e.g., cytochrome a, cytochrome a_3, myoglobin) and oxidative stress may contribute significantly to the toxicity of CO.[136-144] CO exposure also triggers intravascular platelet-neutrophil aggregation and neutrophil activation.[144] These mechanisms result in toxicity to multiple organ systems, including brain and heart.[141,145] Immune-mediated effects have also been described.[146]

Clinical effects include headache, nausea, vomiting, dizziness/ataxia, myocardial ischemia, loss of consciousness, and, during pregnancy, fetal distress. Persistent or delayed neurologic sequelae can occur, often after a clear window of lucidity.[147,148] Increased risk factors for persistent sequelae include older age (≥36 years) and longer CO exposure.[149]

The diagnosis of CO poisoning is made by a history of exposure (internal combustion engine exhaust, fire, improperly adjusted gas or oil heating, charcoal or gas grills, or exposure to paint stripper containing methylene chloride, which is metabolized by the liver to CO). Confirmation of the diagnosis is made by finding an elevated HbCO level in either arterial or venous blood. HbCO concentration is stable for several days in anticoagulated blood samples. Therefore, if HbCO determination is not available at a referring facility, the diagnosis can be confirmed using a blood sample obtained at the time of initial evaluation and transported with the patient. Fetal hemoglobin (HbF) can produce a falsely elevated reading for HbCO on certain four-wavelength laboratory co-oximeters.[150] In the first few weeks of life, blood from normal infants may therefore falsely indicate 7% to 8% HbCO.

Actual HbCO levels measured on arrival in the emergency room correlate poorly with clinical status and should not be used as the sole criterion to determine the need for treatment. Because of the lower intracellular PO_2, elimination of CO from intracellular binding sites occurs more slowly. Significant mental obtundation, vomiting, and headache may remain even in patients with a normal HbCO level.

Brain imaging may reveal a variety of abnormalities in patients with CO poisoning, including hypodensities in the globus pallidus and subcortical white matter, cerebral cortical lesions, cerebral edema, hippocampal lesions, and loss of gray matter/white matter differentiation, and white matter hyperintensities.[151-153] Except to exclude other pathologic processes, brain imaging is not useful for determining who should receive HBOT, but it may provide prognostic information. Lesions in both globus pallidus and white matter are associated with poor long-term outcome.[151,154]

O_2 is the primary treatment modality for CO poisoning. High PaO_2 hastens the removal of CO from blood, as indicated by a reduced half-life of HbCO. Fig. 75.6 shows the HbCO half-time in a series of CO-poisoned patients during normobaric O_2 administration; HBOT reduces the half-time even further, to around 20 minutes at 2.5 ATA.[155] Additionally, the increased dissolved O_2 in plasma may support tissue oxygenation pending removal of CO from Hb and other proteins important for O_2 transport. Mounting evidence indicates that for poisoning in which neurologic symptoms occur, HBOT may decrease both early and late morbidity.[156] Although the results of one randomized prospective trial of hyperbaric versus normobaric oxygen revealed no apparent benefit of HBOT,[157] in four other trials HBOT resulted in improved outcome compared with treatment at 1 ATA (Fig. 75.7).[147,148,158,159] HBOT has been observed to reduce mortality in CO poisoning.[160]

Commonly used guidelines for the application of HBOT in CO poisoning include the following:[161]

Neurologic impairment (including dizziness, loss of consciousness), even if the patient seems normal at the time of medical evaluation
Cardiac abnormalities (ischemia, arrhythmias, ventricular failure)
Metabolic acidosis (consider also concomitant cyanide poisoning)
HbCO level that has been greater than 25%

Fetuses are particularly susceptible to CO toxicity. Pregnant women who fulfill the criteria just listed or in whom there is fetal distress should be treated with HBOT. Case reports,[162-164] published series,[165,166] and a critical review[167] support the concept that inadequately treated CO poisoning is a serious risk to the mother and fetus, and the benefits of HBOT outweigh the theoretical risks to the fetus from HBOT. Potential adverse effects of currently implemented HBOT protocols have not been confirmed in clinical practice.

Gas Embolism and Decompression Sickness

Introduction of gas into the arterial circulation (AGE) has traditionally been associated with scuba divers and attributed to pulmonary barotrauma during ascent from a dive

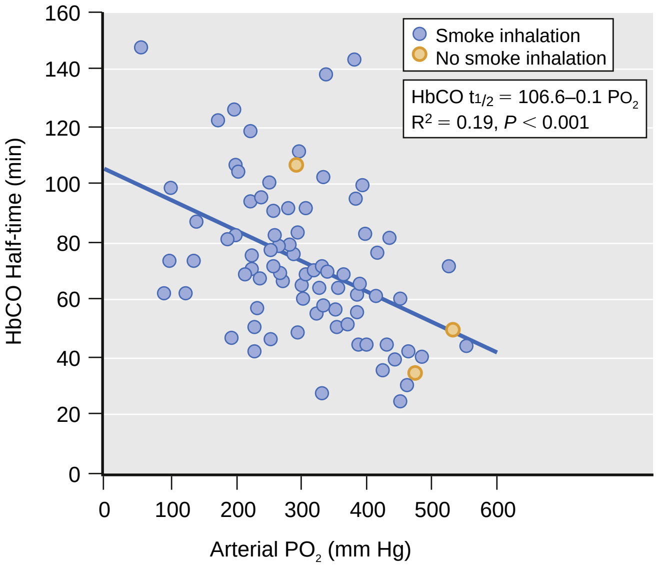


Fig. 75.6 Elimination half time of carboxyhemoglobin in 93 carbon monoxide-poisoned patients. Although there is scatter in the data, it is apparent that carbon monoxide dissociates from hemoglobin faster at higher partial pressure of oxygen *(PO_2)*. (Re-drawn from Weaver LK, Howe S, Hopkins R, Chan KJ. Carboxyhemoglobin half-life in carbon monoxide-poisoned patients treated with 100% oxygen at atmospheric pressure. *Chest.* 2000;117[3]:801–808.)

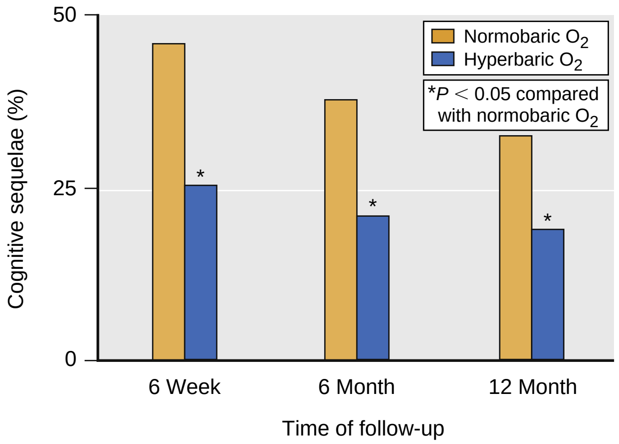


Fig. 75.7 Cognitive sequelae in a randomized prospective trial of hyperbaric oxygen (O_2) in carbon monoxide poisoning. Cognitive sequelae were defined as any T score for a neuropsychological subtest more than 2 standard deviations (SD) below the mean of demographically corrected standardized T scores, or if two or more T scores for subtests were more than 1 SD below the mean. If the patient reported difficulties with memory, attention, or concentration, then cognitive sequelae were defined as a T score on any neuropsychological subtest more than 1 SD below the mean of demographically corrected standardized T scores. (Drawn from data reported by Weaver LK, Hopkins RO, Chan KJ, et al. Hyperbaric oxygen for acute carbon monoxide poisoning. *N Engl J Med.* 2002;347[14]:1057–1067.)

while breathing compressed gas. However, it may also occur iatrogenically in several clinical circumstances, such as during cardiopulmonary bypass or as a result of inadvertent injection of air during a diagnostic arteriogram or hemodialysis. Additionally, large amounts of gas may enter the venous system, for example during neurosurgical procedures with the patient in the sitting position, accidental disconnection of hemodialysis access equipment, major back surgery, total hip replacement, cesarean section, laparoscopy, intrauterine laser surgery, arthroscopy (from air escaping from a faulty air-powered instrument), and hydrogen peroxide irrigation or oral ingestion (due to elaboration of gaseous oxygen from tissue and blood catalase). Venous gas embolism (VGE) can also occur when a central venous catheter is opened to air. Severe VGE has also occurred during orogenital sex after blowing air intravaginally.[168] VGE has been reported in patients with ARDS who are being ventilated with positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP).[169] VGE in sufficient quantity may overwhelm the ability of the pulmonary vasculature to filter the gas, allowing bubbles to pass into the arterial circulation. Even small amounts of venous gas (e.g., VGE caused by decompression from diving) have recently been implicated in neurologic syndromes in scuba divers because of transatrial passage through a patent foramen ovale.[170,171]

The effects of gas embolism can be partly due to vessel obstruction by bubbles, but bubble-endothelial interaction causes increased capillary permeability and extravasation of fluid,[172-174] resulting in hemoconcentration. Impaired endothelial function also occurs.[175] Another effect has been demonstrated in a model of AGE in anesthetized rabbits[176,177]: small doses of intracarotid air may pass through the cerebral microcirculation yet produce vasoplegia, delayed reduction of cerebral blood flow, and neurophysiologic impairment. This reduction in blood flow is abolished when there is neutropenia; thus it has been concluded that leukocytes are a major component of the pathophysiology.[178] This phenomenon of delayed reduction of cerebral blood flow may be responsible for the clinical observation of initial neurologic improvement after AGE, followed by delayed deterioration.[179]

A related syndrome that results from pathologic effects of tissue and blood gas bubbles is DCS, seen in aviators and compressed gas divers. The gas bubbles in these situations occur because of a decrease in ambient pressure at a rate sufficient to induce local inert gas supersaturation, resulting in formation of bubbles *in situ* from tissue stores. Manifestations of AGE classically consist of impaired consciousness, hemiparesis, or seizures, but may be of a less severe nature. DCS most commonly presents as any combination of joint pain, paresthesias, motor weakness, bladder or bowel sphincter dysfunction, vertigo, tinnitus, and hearing loss.[180,181]

Treatment principles for both forms of gas bubble disease, AGE and DCS, are the same in most instances. First aid includes therapy with O_2.[182] High PO_2 results in an increased rate of resolution of gas bubbles because of the resulting higher partial pressure gradient for diffusion of inert gas from the interior of the bubble into the surrounding tissue or blood. Fluid resuscitation will replenish intravascular volume, relieve hemoconcentration, and facilitate microcirculatory flow,[183] principles that have been confirmed by both animal[184] and human observations.[173] However, excessive fluid administration can worsen pulmonary gas exchange in cardiorespiratory DCS (pulmonary edema from VGE), and aggressive fluid therapy is not indicated for isolated AGE.[183] Although capillary leak resulting from cerebral AGE can raise intracranial pressure, studies in anesthetized pigs have shown that hyperventilation is ineffective in reversing its effects.[185]

HBOT is the definitive treatment for AGE and DCS.[180] The increased pressure causes a diminution in gas volume and thus further hastens resolution. The usefulness of HBOT for diving-related or aerospace-related gas embolism associated with rapid decompression is well documented.[186-188] HBOT may effect neurologic improvement even after many hours and sometimes days between the embolic event and treatment,[189-191] although some evidence suggests that severe abnormalities are less likely to resolve if not treated promptly.[192] Treatment of AGE is usually performed at ambient pressures from 2.8 to 6 ATA (see the section "Hyperbaric Treatment Schedules").

The decision to administer recompression treatment should be based entirely on clinical evaluation.[180] The only appropriate role for brain or spinal imaging (e.g., computed tomography [CT], magnetic resonance imaging [MRI]) is to exclude other pathologic processes such as hemorrhage, and only if there is a high degree of suspicion that bubbles are not the cause of a patient's symptoms. Some authors have suggested that patients with AGE should only be treated with HBOT if CT of the brain reveals air.[193] However, brain and spinal cord imaging of patients with AGE or DCS is insensitive,[191,192,194,195] and the abnormalities on either CT or MRI are usually not specific. Neither the presence nor absence of intravascular gas predicts response to hyperbaric treatment.[191,192] Nuclear imaging of the brain using single photon emission tomography (SPECT) or positron emission tomography (PET)[196] does not provide clinically useful information in the management of patients with bubble-induced neurologic injury. If either AGE or DCS is suspected, HBOT should be initiated as soon as possible unless there is high suspicion of another condition that may require different treatment.

Acute Infections

Anaerobic bacteria are especially sensitive to increased tissue PO_2. High O_2 tensions inhibit clostridial α-toxin production.[197] Other mechanisms include reversal of hypoxia-induced neutrophil function,[198-200] enhanced macrophage interleukin-10 expression,[201] and antiinflammatory effects.[202-204] Evidence in favor of the use of HBOT in clostridial and non-clostridial infections is provided by clinical series and database analyses.[205-208]

Support of Arterial Oxygenation in Therapeutic Lung Lavage

HBOT is a safe and effective method of supporting arterial oxygenation during therapeutic lung lavage, during which oxygenation has to be maintained by the contralateral (non-lavaged) lung.[209,210] In the authors' experience of over 100 procedures, using this technique to treat arterial oxygenation has been uniformly successful with no complications specific to HBOT. A reversible simulation of pulmonary gas exchange during the lavage procedure can be provided by temporarily ventilating the lung to be lavaged with 5% to 6% O_2/balance nitrogen, which reduces PAO_2 in that lung to approximately the level of mixed venous PO_2 and confining O_2 exchange to the contralateral lung. Hypoxemia within 5 minutes is predictive of hypoxemia during the actual lavage.

Maintenance of Oxygen Transport in Severe Anemia

The ability of HBOT to increase arterial O_2 content in plasma to clinically useful levels may allow support of tissue O_2 delivery even without Hb. HBOT can therefore be used for temporary support of severely anemic patients pending availability of definitive therapy in the form of cross-matched blood.

Crush Injury

HBOT increases tissue oxygen tensions, reduces edema, and, consequently, increases blood flow through injured soft tissue and may mitigate ischemia-reperfusion injury.[211-214]

Central Retinal Artery Occlusion and Central Retinal Vein Occlusion

Central retinal artery occlusion (CRAO) and central retinal vein occlusion (CRVO) are uncommon but devastating conditions resulting in sudden painless vision loss, which is usually permanent and with poor outlook for recovery of vision. Intermittent HBOT can maintain viability of the retina via diffusion of oxygen from the choroidal vessels pending recanalization of the occluded vessel. Urgent HBOT should be considered for patients presenting within 24 hours of symptom onset.[215,216]

Idiopathic Sudden Sensorineural Hearing Loss

Sudden sensorineural hearing loss is defined as hearing loss of at least 30 dB identified at 3 or more consecutive frequencies that occur over a period of less than 72 hours. The pathophysiology is unknown but local hypoxia has been speculated as a possible cause. Empirical HBOT has been shown to offer benefit, with greater success when it is administered soon after symptom onset.[217,218]

THERAPEUTIC SYSTEMS

The traditional method of administering hyperbaric therapy is with a multiplace chamber, which accommodates two or more persons (Fig. 75.8). Size may vary from a small, portable 2-person chamber used for transporting patients in the field to one 20 feet or more in diameter, in which up to 12 or more patients may be comfortably treated, in addition to tenders (attendants). Multiplace chambers are compressed with air while the patient breathes O_2 with a head tent (Fig. 75.9), face mask, or endotracheal tube. Because of immediate access to the patient by accompanying nursing personnel or physicians, monitoring and resuscitative procedures are straightforward. However, multiplace chambers take up a significant amount of space and are expensive.

Monoplace chambers are large enough to accommodate only one patient (Fig. 75.10), or a tender with a small child. The chamber wall in most types is manufactured of Plexiglas, facilitating close visual observation of the patient. The chamber is usually compressed with 100% O_2. The advantage of monoplace chambers is their relatively low cost and ease of installation. Chamber operation can often be implemented by connecting the O_2 inlet to the hospital supply. Operation is relatively simple, but the patient inside is not directly accessible. Monitoring is somewhat more remote, and emergency airway management is not possible.

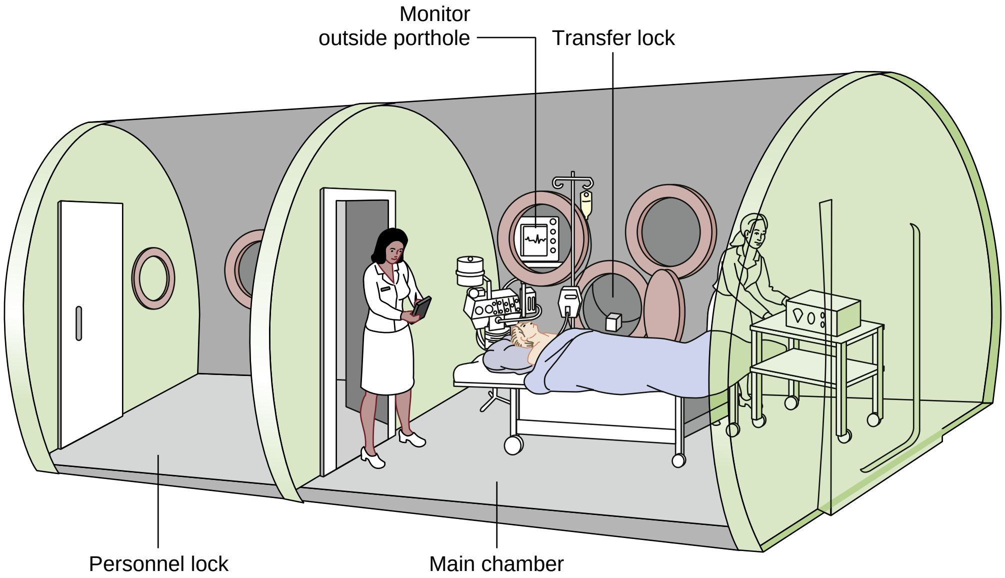


Fig. 75.8 Multiplace hyperbaric chamber large enough for one or more patients and tenders. The chamber atmosphere is compressed air. The patient receives 100% oxygen by mask, head tent, or endotracheal tube. Monitors are usually kept outside the chamber because of electrical safety considerations. Monitoring is possible through a porthole. A personnel lock and a transfer lock allow physicians, nurses, or other personnel, in addition to medications, food, and blood samples, to be moved into and out of the chamber without repeated compression and decompression of the patient.

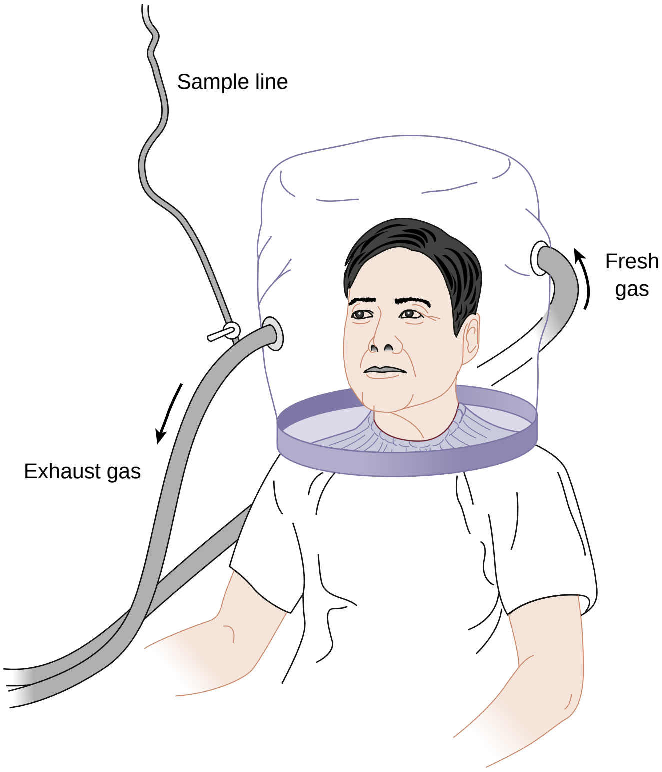


Fig. 75.9 Head tent circuit for use in a multiplace chamber. Fresh gas (100% O_2) flows at a constant rate (>30 L/min) through the head tent. Exhaust gas may be either vented outside the chamber or recirculated through a carbon dioxide scrubber. The sample line attached to the exhaust hose allows monitoring of the patient's breathing gas.

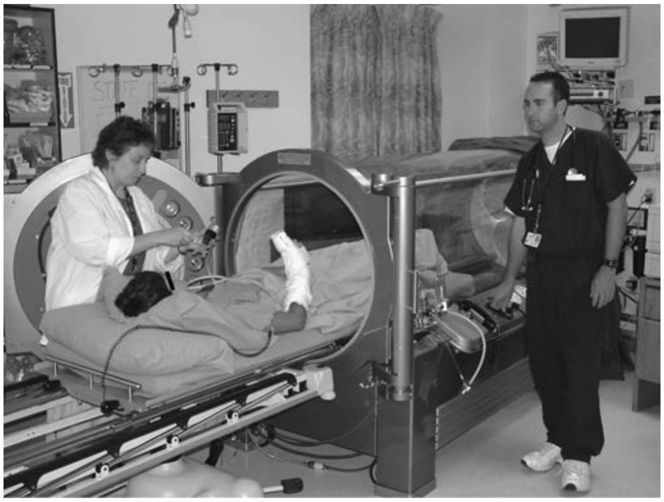


Fig. 75.10 Monoplace chamber. This type of chamber has room for one patient or a tender with a small child. The patient is moved into and out of the chamber on a wheeled gurney. The chamber atmosphere is usually 100% oxygen. The chamber is constructed of transparent Plexiglas to allow observation. Through-hull penetrators in the door on the left can be seen and allow monitoring, intravenous fluid administration, and control of a ventilator inside the chamber. (Photograph courtesy Dr. Lindell Weaver.)

Development of a pneumothorax during treatment, particularly a tension pneumothorax, can be fatal because pleural decompression with a needle or chest tube cannot be performed before decompression; however, this complication is extremely rare. A minor disadvantage of these chambers is that the ambient pressure limit is 3 ATA, and for practical reasons (psychological aversion to confinement) treatment times are limited. Moreover, intermittent periods of air breathing, to decrease the risk of O_2 toxicity during some types of treatment schedules (see later), requires installation of an additional gas delivery system. Nevertheless, monoplace technology now permits intravenous fluid administration from outside the chamber, invasive intravascular monitoring, mechanical ventilation, and utilization of pleural drainage systems incorporating regulated suction.[219,220]

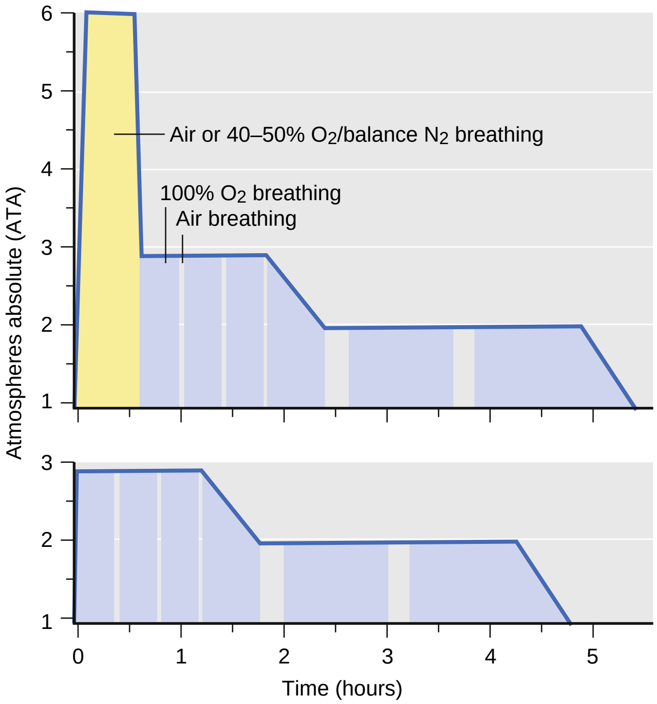


Fig. 75.11 US Navy treatment tables. (A) US Navy Table 6A. This schedule is occasionally used for the treatment of arterial gas embolism. During the 30-minute period at 6 atmospheres absolute, air or 40% to 50% oxygen (O_2) can be administered. (B) US Navy Table 6. This table was originally designed for the treatment of decompression sickness but is now the most commonly used table for gas embolism as well. The shaded areas represent 100% O_2 breathing; the white areas represent air breathing periods. Further details can be found in the US Navy Diving Manual. (From Navy Department. *US Navy Diving Manual. Revision 7. Vol : Diving Medicine and Recompression Chamber Operations. NAVSEA 0910-LP-115-1921.* Washington, DC: Naval Sea Systems Command; 2016.)

HYPERBARIC TREATMENT SCHEDULES

Ideally, a patient who has therapeutic indication for HBOT would be exposed for an unlimited time until the condition resolves. Unfortunately, several factors limit the dose and duration of HBOT:

O_2 toxicity
Decompression obligation for nursing staff (or other tenders) accompanying patient
Adequacy of monitoring
Patient isolation and boredom in a confined environment

Treatment schedules are compromises between O_2 partial pressure and exposure time on one hand and O_2 toxicity and other practical limiting factors on the other. The original schedules (or "tables") were developed by the various navies of the world to treat DCS and gas embolism in divers (Fig. 75.11).

U.S. Navy Table 6 (see Fig. 75.11) prescribes an initial exposure to 2.8 ATA (equivalent to 60 feet of sea water [fsw], or 18 m of sea water [msw]), followed by slow decompression to 1.9 ATA (30 fsw). Periods of O_2 breathing are interspersed with 5- or 15-minute periods of air breathing to decrease O_2 toxicity (see later). This schedule remains the mainstay of treatment for DCS in multiplace chambers throughout the world. Incomplete relief of signs or symptoms can be treated with repeated applications of U.S. Navy Table 6 or a shorter treatment on a once- or twice-daily basis.

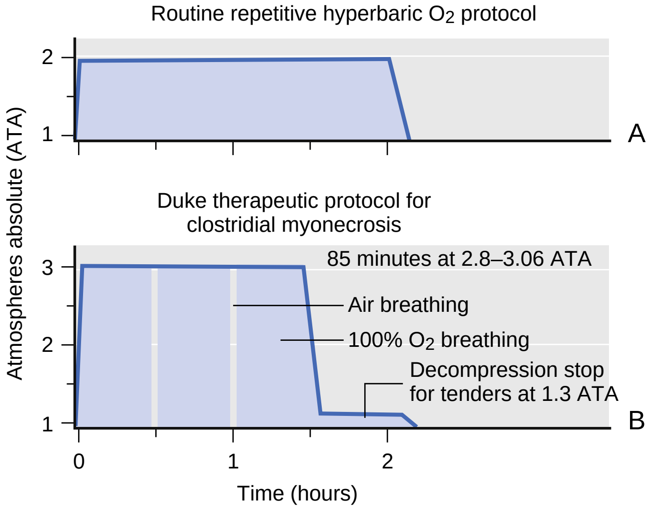


Fig. 75.12 Examples of clinical hyperbaric oxygen (O_2) treatment schedules. (A) The patient breathes 100% O_2 for 2 hours at an ambient pressure of 2 ATA. Generally, this schedule is used for repetitive treatment of chronic conditions (e.g., osteoradionecrosis). (B) Therapeutic schedule often used for treatment of clostridial myonecrosis. The patient and tender spend 85 minutes at 2.8 to 3.06 ATA (3 ATA shown). The patient breathes 100% O_2, except for two 5-minute air breaks to reduce pulmonary and central nervous system O_2 toxicity. A decompression stop is made at 1.3 ATA, according to the US Navy standard air decompression table. The stop is designed to facilitate safe decompression of the tender, who breathes air at 3 ATA. *ATA,* Atmosphere absolute.

"Saturation" treatment consists of an extended exposure to elevated pressure (e.g., 2.8 ATA) for an unspecified period of time (often 1 to 2 days) until manifestations have stabilized. Periodic O_2 breathing is given according to a recommended schedule as tolerated. Because saturation treatment results in a much larger degree of nitrogen uptake in both the patient and the tender, decompression must occur much more slowly, usually over 24 to 36 hours.[221] Although this therapy avoids the theoretical disadvantage of intermittent treatment—failure of resolution of gas bubbles—it is also considerably more labor intensive. Because hyperbaric chambers used for saturation treatments require additional hardware (e.g., CO_2 scrubbing capability) and personnel, their application outside military and commercial diving has been limited.

Examples of schedules used for treatment of patients with wound healing problems and with clostridial myonecrosis or other life-threatening anaerobic infections are shown in Fig. 75.12. The schedule for clostridial myonecrosis consists of 85 minutes at 3 ATA followed by a 33-minute decompression stop for the tenders at 1.3 ATA. This treatment schedule has been designed to maximize PaO_2 (and hence tissue bactericidal activity resulting from O_2) without an undue risk of hyperoxic seizures.

Treatment schedules for CO poisoning have varied. However, the proven efficacy of the schedule reported by Weaver (60 minutes at 3 ATA, 60 minutes at 2 ATA in addition to air breaks and compression-decompression time) supports the use of 3 ATA for at least the first treatment.[148]

Administration of HBOT to patients with chronic diseases (e.g., radionecrosis) is usually performed using shorter tables at lower ambient pressure, most commonly 1 to 2 hours at 2.0 to 2.5 ATA (see Fig. 75.9) once or twice daily. At this lower ambient pressure, the risk of O_2 toxicity is minimal and treatments are well tolerated by most patients.

SIDE EFFECTS OF HYPERBARIC OXYGEN THERAPY

Oxygen Toxicity

A wide body of evidence supports the notion that O_2 toxicity is caused by excessive production of oxygen free radicals (e.g., superoxide, hydroxyl radicals, and singlet oxygen). At high O_2 partial pressures, scavenging mechanisms can be overcome by increased rates of free radical production.[222] With the use of supplemental O_2 at 1 ATA, the manifestations of O_2 toxicity are almost exclusively confined to the lung; however, during hyperbaric O_2 exposure, other organs can be affected as well.

O_2 toxicity during HBOT can affect mainly the lung, the central nervous system (CNS), and the eye. Pulmonary toxicity in the conscious patient is heralded by symptoms of tracheobronchial irritation, namely, cough and burning chest pain. Prolonged exposure may result in a decrease in vital capacity, and if O_2 administration continues, ARDS. In the rare instances in which prolonged HBOT is indicated, the rate of development of pulmonary O_2 toxicity can be slowed by intermittent air-breathing periods (“air breaks”) (Fig. 75.13).

O_2 toxicity is related to the PO_2 of the inspired gas. At 1 ATA, 100% O_2 is as toxic as 16.7% O_2 at 6 ATA or 2% O_2 at 50 ATA. One method of quantification of O_2 exposure is the unit pulmonary toxic dose, or UPTD.[223] In this system, the number of UPTD units is calculated by the formula:

$$U = t \cdot \sqrt[m]{0.5/(P-0.5)}$$

where U is the unit; t is the exposure time in minutes; P is the inspired PO_2 in ATA; and m is a slope constant that has an empirical value of 1.2. After 1425 UPTD units of O_2 exposure, an average 10% decrease in vital capacity occurs. After 2190 UPTD units, an associated decrease of 20% occurs. Complete reversal of vital capacity decrements as large as 40% of control has been observed after extended O_2 exposure at 2 ATA.[223]

Reanalysis of a larger data set than the one used for the UPTD model, which included those data, resulted in a different prediction equation:

$$\%\Delta VC = -0.009 \cdot (P-0.38) \cdot t$$

where P and t are the same as for the previous equation (3).[224]

Using previously published data, Arieli and colleagues[225] developed the following equation:

$$\%\Delta VC = 0.0082 \cdot t^2 (PO_2/101.3)^{4.57}$$

where t is time in hours, and PO_2 is measured in kilopascals (kPa).

Although these algorithms may be useful as an approximate guide to safe O_2 exposures in populations, interindividual variability is such that they cannot be relied on to predict accurately the development of pulmonary O_2 toxicity for a specific patient.[226] Furthermore, O_2 toxicity can be modified by humidity,[227] circulating catecholamine and

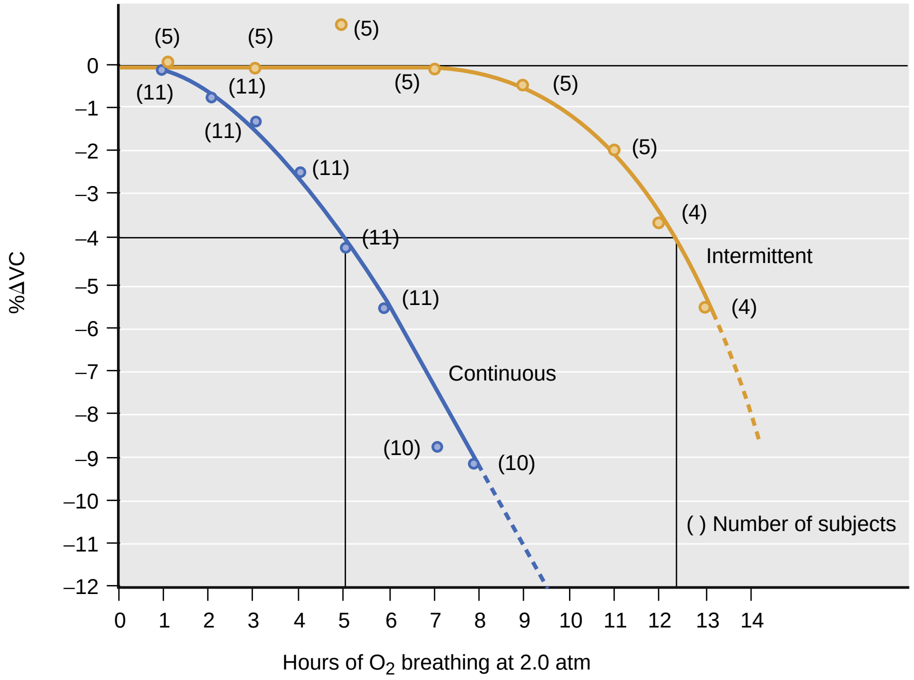


Fig. 75.13 Decrease in vital capacity *(VC)* as a function of time breathing 100% oxygen *(O_2)* at 2 ATA in humans. The figure illustrates the value of intermittent O_2 (20 minutes O_2, 5 minutes air) versus continuous O_2 administration in the prevention of pulmonary O_2 toxicity. The numbers in parentheses represent the number of subjects tested. (From Clark JM. Oxygen toxicity. In: Bennett PB, Elliott DH, eds. *The Physiology and Medicine of Diving.* Philadelphia, PA: WB Saunders; 1993:121–169. With permission.)

corticosteroid levels, leukocyte accumulation in the lungs (e.g., with pneumonia), and circulating endotoxin. A more useful guide to the development of pulmonary toxicity is the patient's symptoms, which include cough and inspiratory central burning chest pain. These symptoms do not occur during routine repetitive HBOT, but they may become evident during extensive O_2 periods at 2.8 ATA (e.g., when treating neurologic DCS). Asymptomatic persons usually have minimal or no change in vital capacity. Minor changes in forced expiratory volume in 1 second [FEV_1] reported during repetitive HBOT[228] are of uncertain clinical importance.

Some antineoplastic agents, such as bleomycin[229] and mitomycin C,[230,231] appear to predispose to fatal pulmonary O_2 toxicity (ARDS and respiratory failure) from what should otherwise have been well-tolerated doses of supplemental O_2. The risk of pulmonary O_2 toxicity from HBOT in patients with previous exposure to such agents is unknown, although we have treated several such individuals with a remote history of bleomycin treatment with repetitive doses of HBOT at 2 ATA for 2 hours (initially once daily, then increased to twice daily).[232] Occasional mild pulmonary O_2 toxicity symptoms such as retrosternal chest tightness did occur, but none of these patients experienced severe O_2 toxicity. Propensity to pulmonary O_2 toxicity engendered by these drugs appears to diminish a few weeks after their discontinuation.

CNS O_2 toxicity manifests as nausea, vomiting, numbness, twitching, dizziness, olfactory, acoustic, or gustatory sensations, and in its most severe form, as non-focal tonic-clonic seizures.[233,234] The probability of seizures increases with increasing PO_2 and time of exposure. In a study of 36 divers breathing 100% O_2 at 3.7 ATA, all experienced one or more of these symptoms within 100 minutes or less.[233,234] In clinical practice, convulsions in patients undergoing HBOT are rare at ambient PO_2 up to 2.5 ATA (typically 0.008% to 0.035% of treatments[235]), and they often have another predisposing factor (hypoglycemia). The probability of a convulsion is also greater when administered for acute indications such as CO poisoning.[236] Metabolic factors may reduce the seizure threshold, such as the administration of high-dose penicillin (e.g., for clostridial infection), sepsis, and hypoglycemia.

The treatment of hyperoxic seizures is immediate reduction of the inspired PO_2 until the seizure stops. Some physicians then routinely administer an anticonvulsant such as phenobarbital, phenytoin, or a benzodiazepine. It is recommended that the chamber should not be decompressed while the patient is actively convulsing because airway closure and failure to exhale during this period may cause pulmonary barotrauma. Hyperoxic seizures otherwise have no sequelae and rarely recur even if HBOT is continued. Thus, the occurrence of CNS O_2 toxicity should not preclude further HBOT. There is no evidence that hyperoxic seizures are more common in patients with preexisting seizure disorders.

An acute effect of HBOT on the eye is narrowing of the visual fields,[237] which is generally only observed at a PO_2 of 3 ATA or greater, and thus rarely, if ever, during routine HBOT. A subacute or chronic ocular effect is a change in the refractive index of the lens that results in myopia.[238,239] Such refractive index change occurs during the course of intermittent HBOT over several weeks and usually resolves in a similar period of time. However, some patients may be left with residual myopia, particularly older patients.[240]

Concern has been raised about the risk of retrolental fibroplasia in the unborn child of a woman who may require acute HBOT during pregnancy. Although many pregnant women have been treated with single exposures to HBOT (e.g., for CO poisoning), we are not aware of any subsequent occurrence of retrolental fibroplasia in the child. Pregnancy is not a contraindication to HBOT for appropriate acute indications (e.g., CO poisoning[163,165,167,241,242]), as the risk to the fetus of the underlying condition exceeds that of the treatment.

Inert Gas Uptake

Breathing air at high ambient pressure can result in nitrogen narcosis, a dose-dependent decrement in cerebral performance due to the anesthetic properties of nitrogen. This mostly occurs at ambient pressures exceeding 4 ATA, a treatment pressure that is used only for severe AGE or DCS. Nitrogen uptake can also theoretically result in DCS during or after decompression (see earlier). However, chamber decompression schedules are so conservative that this rarely occurs (most hyperbaric facilities use standard compressed air decompression tables such as those published by the US Navy).[221] Additional safety for the tender can be provided by 100% O_2 breathing for a period immediately before and during decompression. Rare episodes of DCS in hyperbaric tenders are usually of a minor nature, generally consisting of joint pain. Nitrogen narcosis and DCS could only occur in tenders in a multiplace hyperbaric chamber; patients breathe 100% O_2 and are therefore not susceptible.

Barotrauma

As the ambient pressure is altered, the pressure within gas-containing spaces in the body must equilibrate with the ambient pressure or undergo a change in volume. Volume change can easily occur in compliant compartments such as the gastrointestinal tract, but if the free flow of gas into and out of containing spaces surrounded by a rigid shell (e.g., the lung, paranasal sinuses, and middle ear) is obstructed, then tissue disruption and hemorrhage can occur. Indeed, the most common side effect of hyperbaric chamber use for patients is difficulty with middle ear pressure equilibration.[243,244] This causes pain, bleeding into the middle ear cavity ("squeeze"), and rarely, tympanic membrane rupture. Difficulty equilibrating middle ear pressure could also result in labyrinthine window (round or oval window) rupture, which has been reported in divers[245] but to the authors' knowledge not in patients undergoing HBOT. Patients who have previously had irradiation of the head and neck and acute respiratory tract infections are at particular risk. Squeeze may occasionally also affect the sinuses, resulting in acute pain. Despite the common occurrence of middle ear or sinus squeeze on compression, symptoms on decompression, as a result of the inability of gas to exit through the eustachian tubes or sinus ostia ("reverse squeeze"), are rare.

Pulmonary barotrauma is most likely during decompression. Areas of regional hypoventilation could lead to pulmonary over-pressurization and alveolar rupture, causing pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum, or AGE.[246,247] However, pulmonary barotrauma during HBOT is extremely rare, probably because of the slow decompression rates typically used. Although a pneumothorax should diminish in size and resorb more quickly after compression, continuing leakage of air from the lung could result in tension pneumothorax during decompression.[246]

Despite these potential adverse effects of HBOT, major complications are extremely rare.[248,249]

PRACTICAL ASPECTS OF HYPERBARIC THERAPY

Middle Ear Pressure Equilibration

In awake patients, equilibration may be accomplished using several techniques, such as performing intermittent Valsalva maneuvers, swallowing while the nose is pinched, thrusting the jaw forward, or simply by swallowing intermittently during compression. Equilibration may be facilitated by application of a topical nasal vasoconstrictor (e.g., oxymetazoline 0.05%) that shrinks the nasopharyngeal mucosa and increases the patency of the eustachian tube. For patients who cannot equalize despite these measures or for obtunded or intubated patients, myringotomy or tympanostomy tubes may be required.

Pulmonary Pressure Equilibration

Pneumothorax detected before HBOT is usually treated by insertion of a chest tube and water seal or Heimlich-type valve (in this instance, before monoplace chamber treatment, a chest tube should *always* be inserted). Caution must be exercised when using certain commercially available pleural suction regulators, which can exert high negative pleural pressures during chamber compression.[250] Such excessive suction can be relieved by an attendant inside a multiplace chamber by activating the manual pressure relief valve on the chest drainage unit. Patients with large bullous lesions in the lung are probably at increased risk of pulmonary barotrauma, and risk versus benefit of HBOT should be considered for such individuals before treatment.

Patient Monitoring

Despite the changes in the acoustic properties of compressed air, blood pressure measurement may be performed without difficulty with a standard sphygmomanometer and stethoscope. Aneroid pressure gauges are preferred to mercury to avoid contamination of the closed environment. Monitoring of the electrocardiogram (ECG) and of intravascular pressures requires that transducer cables be plumbed through the chamber wall to preamplifiers outside the chamber. Standard intensive care monitors can be used to provide simultaneous measurement of arterial and PA pressures and intermittent measurement of cardiac output by thermodilution. If pressure bags are used to drive continuous flow systems, they must be repressurized during compression and vented before or during decompression. Pulmonary artery catheter balloon ports should also be left open to the chamber during compression and decompression.

Defibrillation could generate a fire if sparking occurs or combustible materials are present in the vicinity of the paddles. Sparking and heat generation can be minimized by using a low-resistivity conductive gel between the electrodes and the skin[251] or preapplied conductive disposable pads.[252] To avoid pressure-related malfunction of the device, the defibrillator can remain outside the chamber and connected to the patient via through-hull high-voltage wiring. Despite the fear of causing fire, defibrillation has been carried out in multiplace chambers numerous times without arcing, fire, or explosion.[253,254] Defibrillation cannot be safely performed inside a monoplace chamber compressed with O_2.

Intravenous Fluid Administration

In multiplace chambers, the air volume within the drip chamber will shrink during the compression phase of the HBOT and expand during decompression (which could force air into the intravenous line). Most intravenous infusion pumps work well inside a hyperbaric chamber at pressure (although there are electrical safety issues—see later). Glass bottles are best excluded from the chamber because of the possibility of explosive rupture during decompression.

Administration of fluids to patients inside a pressurized monoplace chamber requires an infusion pump outside the chamber capable of handling the pressure differential (up to 3 ATA or 1500 mm Hg pressure gradient across the chamber wall). Check valves can prevent unintended backflow of blood from the patient in the event of disconnection of the pump. Rigid arterial pressure transducer tubing helps to prevent kinking while the patient is inside the chamber.

Blood Gas Assessment and Ventilator Management

Blood gas measurement on arterial samples obtained from a patient inside a hyperbaric chamber can be erroneous. There are two reasons. At 1 ATA, O_2 tensions that exceed the ambient pressure are supersaturated and thus O_2 will rapidly diffuse out of the blood, lowering its tension. An additional error (extrapolation error) results from the impossibility of accurate PO_2 electrode calibration at PO_2 values exceeding approximately 700 mm Hg. Blood gas tension measurement should therefore ideally be performed inside the hyperbaric chamber by using an appropriately calibrated analyzer. If such a capability is not available, rapid analysis at 1 ATA of decompressed samples can produce acceptably accurate values.[255]

Another approach is to estimate the hyperbaric PaO_2 based on measurements obtained at 1 ATA. Using a measured PaO_2 and a calculated alveolar PO_2 (P_AO_2) the ratio of the two (PaO_2/P_AO_2, or a/A ratio) is a constant.[104,105] On this basis, 1 ATA arterial blood gas values and the following equations can be used to predict PaO_2 at pressure.

The alveolar gas equation is required to calculate P_AO_2:

$$P_AO_2 = (Pb - P_{H_2O}) \cdot F_IO_2 - P_ACO_2 \cdot \left(F_IO_2 + \frac{1 - F_IO_2}{R} \right)$$

where Pb and PH_2O are, respectively, ambient and saturated water vapor pressures, and R is the respiratory exchange ratio. If $F_IO_2 = 0.2$, $R = 0.8$, and body temperature = 37°C, then this equation can be simplified to

$$PaO_2 = (Pb - 47) \cdot 0.2 - 1.2 \cdot PCO_2$$

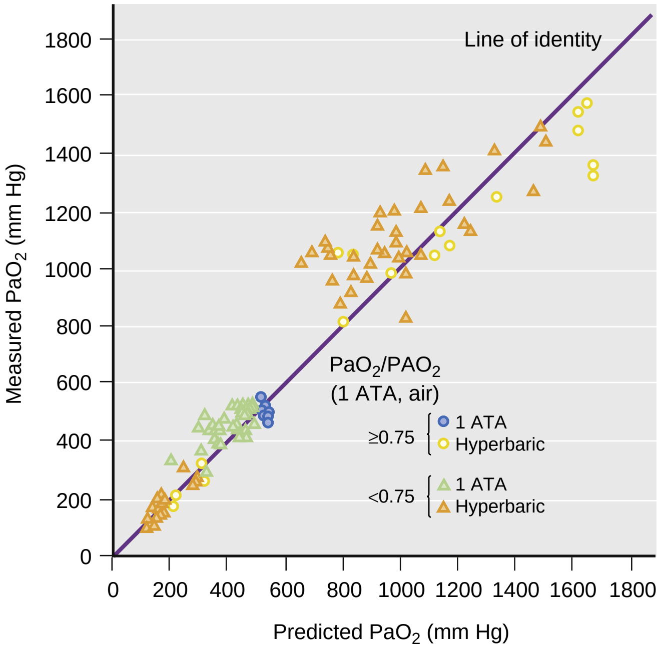


Fig. 75.14 Measured versus predicted arterial partial pressure of oxygen (PaO_2) at increased ambient pressure. Predicted PaO_2 is calculated from room air arterial blood gases, assuming that the arterial-alveolar PO_2 ratio (PaO_2/PAO_2, or a/A ratio) is a constant. Data are shown both for persons with normal lungs (a/A ratio ≥ 0.75) and for patients with gas exchange abnormalities (a/A ratio < 0.75). It is evident that PaO_2 predicted in this way is close to the actual measured PaO_2. (From Moon RE, Camporesi EM, Shelton DL. Prediction of arterial PO_2 during hyperbaric treatment. In: Bove AA, Bachrach AJ, Greenbaum LJ Jr., eds. *Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology IX. Proceedings of the Ninth International Symposium on Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology.* Bethesda, MD: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 1987:1127–1131.)

Having calculated PAO_2 and measured PaO_2, the a/A ratio can then be obtained at 1 ATA. The predicted PaO_2 at increased ambient pressure while breathing 100% O_2 may then be obtained from this next equation:

$$PaO_{2\,(\mathrm{pred})} = \mathrm{a/A} \cdot [(760 \cdot \mathrm{ATA} - 47) - PaCO_2]$$

where ATA is the chamber pressure in atmospheres absolute. Although as yet there are no dose-response curves for HBOT, a reasonable aim is to achieve PaO_2 greater than or equal to 1000 mm Hg for routine chronic therapy and to as high a level as possible for treatment of acute necrotizing infections (Fig. 75.14).

A better monitor of tissue oxygenation may be mixed venous PO_2 ($P\bar{v}O_2$), which, in the absence of left-to-right shunt, may be a reasonably accurate estimate of mean tissue PO_2.[256] Thus, a low value may indicate inadequate tissue oxygenation despite HBOT, as a result of insufficiently high cardiac output.

Normal values for pH and PCO_2 under resting clinical hyperbaric conditions are the same as they are at 1 ATA.[106] PCO_2 (and hence pH) do not change significantly in blood samples that are decompressed.

Mechanical ventilation in a hyperbaric environment presents a variety of challenges. The ideal requirements for ventilation include small size, no electrical requirement, absence of flammable lubricants, ability to operate on a volume-cycled basis over a wide range of tidal volumes and respiratory rates, minimal modification requirement for installation, and ability to provide PEEP, as well as to ventilate in intermittent mandatory ventilation and assist/control modes.[257] Additionally, the ideal gas source to actuate the ventilator should minimize the risk of combustion caused by buildup of static electricity.

As ambient pressure increases, gas density is proportionately raised, whereas relatively little change occurs in gas viscosity. Therefore, in regions of turbulent flow (i.e., in the large airways) airway resistance increases. Measurements of respiratory conductance (the reciprocal of resistance) during tidal breathing[258] indicate that it varies with gas density according to the following formula:

$$G = G_0 \rho^{\kappa}$$

where G is lung conductance at gas density ρ, G_0 is the conductance at gas density 1.1 g/L (1 ATA), and κ is a constant that was found to have a mean value of −0.39. At 6 ATA, this equation predicts that lung conductance would decrease by 50%, which is equivalent to a doubling of pulmonary resistance. In addition, the higher gas density results in a less efficient distribution of ventilation, manifested by an increase in physiologic dead space.[259] The effects of these two phenomena include higher airway pressures during mechanical ventilation and an increased ventilatory requirement. If ventilator settings are not adjusted to compensate for the higher dead space, a rise in $PaCO_2$ will occur.

Several types of ventilators have been used and tested in hyperbaric chambers. Pressure-cycled devices have been used with some success because their compactness admirably fulfills the requirement for small size. However, continual adjustment of rate and cycling pressure is necessary with changes in ambient pressure. Volume-cycled ventilators seem to work well, although at increased pressure some changes in rate may occur.

Two specific safety considerations exist. First, in any ventilator delivering enriched O_2, a possible fire hazard can occur from O_2 buildup within the ventilator case or leakage of O_2 into the chamber. This hazard can often be offset by minor alterations (e.g., for a pneumatic ventilator, using air instead of O_2 to drive the bellows).[257] The risk of ignition can be substantially mitigated by purging the device with an inert gas such as 100% nitrogen (see later). Air-filled endotracheal tube cuffs tend to lose volume during compression and reexpand during decompression. Appropriate cuff inflation volume can be maintained either by manually adjusting the air pressure within the cuff during compression and decompression or filling the cuff with water.

Other Medical Devices

Some electrical devices (e.g., pacemakers, automated internal cardioverter-defibrillators, intravenous infusion pumps) have been specifically tested at high ambient pressures; specific information can usually be obtained from the manufacturers. Ventricular assist devices may work satisfactorily, however the required rechargeable batteries (typically lithium) may be unsafe. To the authors' knowledge, at this time ECMO devices have not been tested or used during hyperbaric oxygen therapy.

Atmosphere Control

Chamber atmosphere safety includes management of levels of O_2, CO_2, and trace gases. In a multiplace chamber it is essential that the patient breathe as high a concentration of O_2 as possible (usually 98% or greater) while maintaining the chamber O_2 concentration close to 21% in order to minimize fire hazard. In some hyperbaric units, head tent O_2 concentration is routinely monitored. In others, the concentration is assumed to be high because of a high rate of O_2 flow through the head tent. Leakage of O_2 from head tents, masks, and ventilators tends to raise the chamber O_2 concentration. Typically, an upper limit of approximately 23% is used as a criterion for ventilating the chamber with air or small volumes of 100% nitrogen until the O_2 concentration decreases.

Significant elevations of inspired CO_2 concentration cause cerebral vasodilatation, increased cerebral blood flow and tissue PO_2, thus increasing the risk of CNS O_2 toxicity. Therefore, a typical standard for the upper limit for head tent CO_2 is 1% "surface equivalent" CO_2, equal to a partial pressure of 7.6 mm Hg. Using a nonscrubbing (open circuit) system, head tent O_2 flow rates of 40 to 60 L/min (measured at chamber pressure) are usually adequate to keep CO_2 levels at such a level. Chamber CO_2 is usually limited to less than 0.5% "surface equivalent" (3.8 mm Hg).

Trace gases that may enter the environment include CO and hydrocarbons from improperly functioning compressors or from automobile exhaust that may be near the compressor air intake. Volatile gases such as alcohol vapor from skin disinfectant solutions and mercury vapor from spillage of sphygmomanometer columns may also pollute the atmosphere. Trace gas concentrations that are innocuous at atmospheric pressure can be toxic under hyperbaric conditions because their pharmacologic or toxic effects are related to partial pressure. Mercury in any form should be excluded from hyperbaric chambers because spillage can cause acute toxicity in chamber occupants.

Considerations of battery use may have implications for chamber atmosphere control as well as fire hazards. All batteries release small quantities of hydrogen, although not usually in amounts that would be hazardous. Lithium-sulfur dioxide batteries carry a theoretic risk of sulfur dioxide discharge. Similarly, an objection exists to the use of mercury cells (now banned in the United States). Alkaline cells are considered safe, although temporary failure has been observed at extremely high ambient pressures (40-60 ATA).

Fire Hazards

Although fires in hyperbaric chambers are rare, they are usually lethal. The effects of fire at elevated ambient pressure are so devastating and so fast that fire extinguisher systems may not be effective.[260] The very real risk of fire in hyperbaric chambers has been illustrated by recent accidents in which chamber fires were started by a hand warmer, a sparking toy, and other sources of ignition carried into the chamber in the patient's clothing. Minimization of these risks involves the following:

Controlling chamber O_2 concentrations (irrelevant in a monoplace chamber)
Minimizing the use of combustible materials within the chamber
Eliminating sources of heat and spark
Having a chamber fire-extinguisher system

The geometric increase in burning rate with increases in O_2 concentrations mandates careful monitoring of chamber O_2, as already noted. At increased ambient pressure, burning occurs more rapidly, even when O_2 concentration is 21%. Cotton garments are recommended because of their reduced risk of static electricity. Elimination of hair grease and humidification of the O_2 within the head tent can reduce the risk of hair ignition. Hydrocarbon lubricants (e.g., for stretcher wheels) can spontaneously ignite on contact with aluminum in the presence of high O_2 tensions and should therefore be replaced with nonflammable fluorocarbon lubricants.

Sources of sparks from electrically powered equipment should be minimized. Cigarette lighters, matches, and other sources of ignition should be excluded from the chamber. Plugging and unplugging electrical cables during hyperbaric treatments is a source of sparking that can be eliminated by taping all electrical plugs onto receptacles before compression. In multiplace chambers, the flammability of electrically powered devices (e.g., intravenous controllers) can be reduced by purging with 100% nitrogen through ports drilled in the covering, at a rate sufficient to keep O_2 concentration at a level that does not support combustion (typically at a flow rate of two to three times the internal volume per minute). Electrical systems used in monoplace chambers must comply with specific codes, which stipulate the types of switches, grounding, and insulation that can be used.[219]

Volatile anesthetics can be combustible at 1 ATA in high concentrations. However, isoflurane and sevoflurane Dräger vaporizers have been tested up to 3 ATA using 100% O_2, with no evidence of spontaneous combustion at room temperature. Given the experience with halothane under hyperbaric conditions,[261] without any reported fires, and the resistance to combustion in 100% O_2 at 1 ATA, in the absence of a source of ignition it is unlikely that any of the modern fluorinated anesthetics pose a fire safety hazard in the hyperbaric environment.

Evaluation of a Patient for Safety of Hyperbaric Oxygen Treatment

In addition to ensuring that HBOT is indicated for the disease process in question, it is important to assess the patient in terms of general effectiveness and safety of HBOT. The following issues are pertinent:

Whether a sufficient elevation in PaO_2 can be obtained
Whether the patient can equilibrate middle ear pressure
Optimization of reversible obstructive lung disease and the presence of pulmonary bullae or blebs
Whether the patient is susceptible to claustrophobia

The calculation of predicted PaO_2 in the hyperbaric chamber was described previously. For example, a patient who has sufficient lung disease or injury such that PaO_2 during treatment would not exceed 1000 mm Hg would probably obtain marginal benefit from HBOT unless the reason for HBOT is gas bubble disease.

The ability to vent the middle ears may be assessed before treatment by observing directly the tympanic membrane with an otoscope while the patient holds his or her nose or performs a Valsalva maneuver. Movement of the eardrums indicates a patent eustachian tube and the ability to equilibrate middle ear pressure. If otic barotrauma is difficult to avoid (e.g., with mental obtundation or the presence of an endotracheal tube) or because of a condition that may render the patient susceptible to inner ear injury (e.g., stapedectomy), myringotomy or tube placement can be performed prior to HBOT. The presence of pulmonary bullae or blebs represents a relative contraindication to HBOT because of the possibility of barotrauma, although a large clinical experience suggests that the risk is extremely low.

For patients requiring more than 20 to 30 HBOT sessions, periodic checks of visual acuity may be useful to detect hyperbaric myopia.

Because most hyperbaric chamber systems are small and cramped, patients who cannot tolerate enclosed spaces may require anxiolytic therapy to facilitate toleration of the HBOT.

Delivery of Anesthesia at Increased Ambient Pressure

A review of the problems of anesthesia under HBOT was published as a report to a committee of the American Society of Anesthesiologists.[262] This report explored various issues, including the potential for nitrous oxide to be used as a sole anesthetic.

Anesthesia while breathing spontaneously in a 100% O_2 atmosphere at 3 ATA was reported in the 1950s for radiation therapy.[263] Patients were intubated after administration of pentobarbital 250 to 750 mg and meperidine 100 mg; some patients also received chlorpromazine 50 mg. Intubation was performed after succinylcholine and topical anesthesia of the airway. Patients breathed spontaneously.

Anesthesia may be required during the hyperbaric exposure. Ross and associates[264] discussed the challenges of anesthesia up to 35 ATA, to provide care for injured divers while in a saturation diving system (e.g., in North Sea oil fields). These investigators suggested using intravenous instead of inhaled general anesthesia because of the problems of pollution of the chamber environment. Regional anesthesia was recommended whenever possible. The authors noted that muscle relaxants should be titrated to effect because some degree of pressure reversal at around 10 ATA has been reported.

Since the 1960s anesthesia has been performed at increased ambient pressure using a variety of agents for carotid endarterectomy,[265] cesarean section,[266] therapeutic lung lavage for patients with alveolar proteinosis (Fig. 75.15),[209,210] emergency surgery in a saturation dive,[267] open heart surgery,[268] and enhancement of the effectiveness of irradiation of carcinoma.[269]

Inhaled Anesthesia. Inhaled anesthesia of any type can pollute the enclosed chamber atmosphere with anesthetic gases, which may exert pharmacologic effects on medical personnel inside the chamber, particularly at high ambient pressures. Russell and associates[270] reported nitrous oxide concentrations in chamber air of 2500 ppm; ventilation of the chamber with air at a high rate (3500 L/min of air) was required to reduce the concentration to 25 to 75 ppm.

NITROUS OXIDE. The increased ambient pressure in a hyperbaric chamber allows nitrous oxide to be used at partial pressures exceeding its MAC.[270-272] Although in both studies induction of anesthesia by nitrous oxide was rapid (<60 seconds), it was accompanied by tachypnea, tachycardia, hypertension, diaphoresis, muscle rigidity, catatonic jerking of the extremities, eye opening, and opisthotonus. After 2 to 4 hours of anesthesia, most subjects emerged rapidly from the anesthetic; however, the majority subsequently experienced nausea and vomiting, which was often severe.

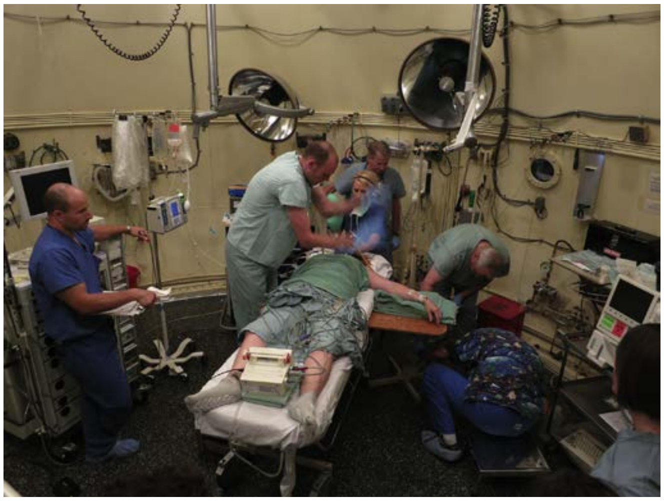


Fig. 75.15 General anesthesia administered in a multiplace hyperbaric chamber for support of arterial oxygenation during therapeutic lung lavage. Lung lavage is performed by flooding one lung with normal saline via a double-lumen endotracheal tube. Protein washout is performed by cyclic filling and emptying with 400 L to 500 mL saline volumes until the effluent clears.[341] After a period of 60 minutes the contralateral lung is lavaged using the same technique. Depicted is a patient under general anesthesia with propofol/opioid receiving manual chest percussion during the emptying phase. (From Duke University Medical Center.)

A potential problem associated with nitrous oxide anesthesia at high ambient pressures is the possibility that tissues could become supersaturated during decompression, thus allowing nitrous oxide bubbles to form during decompression. This complication was not observed by Russell and associates,[270] who used an empiric staged decompression schedule with a decompression stop for 30 minutes at 1.3 ATA while the patients breathed 100% O_2. Bubble formation can occur without decompression if the patient breathes one gas while surrounded by an atmosphere of another gas that is more diffusible. For example, breathing air while in a helium-O_2 environment at 5 to 7 ATA can lead to urticaria and vestibular dysfunction.[273] The reason is rapid diffusion of helium into tissues that causes local inert gas pressure to exceed ambient pressure (isobaric gas counterdiffusion). This phenomenon can occur even at normal atmospheric pressure if a person breathes nitrous oxide-O_2 while surrounded by helium.[274] Therefore, it is imperative that nitrous oxide never be administered in a helium-O_2 atmosphere.

Another risk of hyperbaric nitrous oxide is the dilutional effect of large volumes of dissolved gas entering the lungs during decompression, causing dilutional hypoxia. This situation can be prevented by administration of an O_2-enriched breathing mix for several minutes before decompression.

In patients who have recently engaged in scuba diving or have suffered DCS, nitrous oxide should be avoided, even

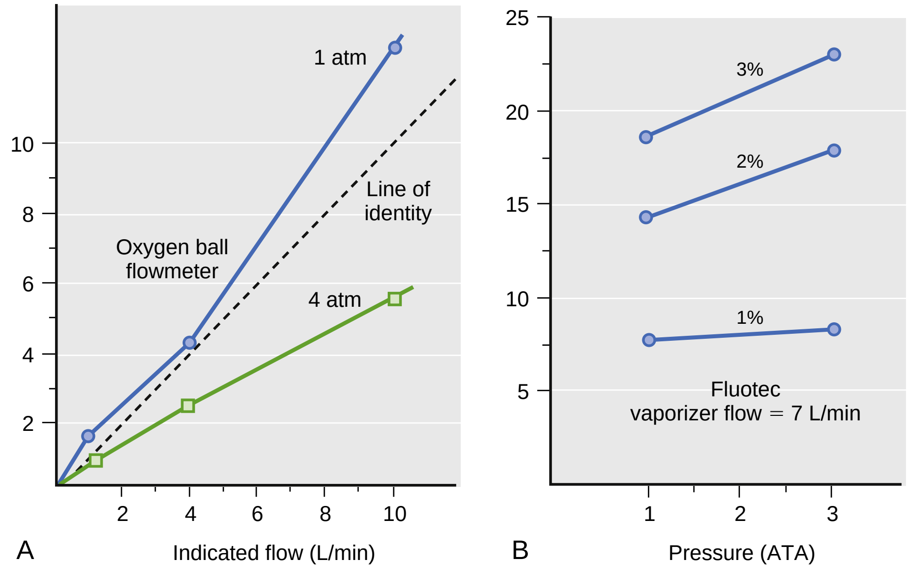


Fig. 75.16 Performance of an anesthetic vaporizer system at increased ambient pressure. (A) Flow characteristics of a rotameter system are shown. At 4 ATA, the actual delivered flow is less than 60% of the flow indicated by the rotameter. (B) Fluotec vaporizer output in partial pressure of halothane as a function of ambient pressure. Only small increases in delivered partial pressure are evident at 3 ATA, at the 2% and 3% settings. (From Committee on Hyperbaric Oxygenation. *Fundamentals of Hyperbaric Medicine. Publication No. 1298*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 1966.). *ATA,* Atmospheres absolute.

at 1 ATA, because its administration may result in tissue or blood bubble growth and recrudescence of pain or neurologic symptoms. Neurologic symptoms can occur after nitrous oxide anesthesia and apparent spontaneous resolution of DCS.[275]

HALOGENATED ANESTHETICS. The effect of a volatile anesthetic on a patient is proportional not to the alveolar concentration but to the partial pressure of the anesthetic. For example, the effect of 1% halothane at 1 ATA (with a partial pressure of 7.6 mm Hg) is equivalent to a 0.5% concentration at 2 ATA (with the same partial pressure). The anesthetic concentration of an anesthetic-specific calibrated vaporizer varies with ambient pressure, but in a manner such that delivered partial pressure remains constant (see Fig. 75.12). Because of the effect of increased gas density on this flow ratio, in practice the delivered partial pressure depends somewhat on ambient pressure. A slightly increased partial pressure of halothane delivered by a Fluotec vaporizer at 3 ATA has been observed (Fig. 75.16).[262] Our testing of a sevoflurane vaporizer revealed delivery of a constant partial pressure of anesthetic up to the maximum tested ambient pressure: 3 ATA.

Rotameter flowmeters calibrated at 1 ATA will indicate falsely high values at increased ambient pressure because of the increased gas density. McDowell[276] reported the following relationship for rotameter flow:

$$\mathrm{Flow}_{\mathrm{actual}} = \mathrm{Flow}_{\mathrm{read}} \cdot \sqrt{\frac{\rho_1}{\rho_P}}$$

where $\mathrm{Flow}_{\mathrm{actual}}$ and $\mathrm{Flow}_{\mathrm{read}}$ are the actual and scale reading flows, and ρ_1 and ρ_P are the gas densities at 1 ATA and P ATA, respectively. This inaccuracy in rotameter performance up to 4 ATA has been confirmed by others (see Fig. 75.16).[262]

Intravenous Anesthesia. Intravenous anesthetics behave similarly and are unlikely to be affected within the usual clinical range of ambient pressure (see Chapter 23). There is no evident alteration in the pharmacokinetics of either meperidine[130] or pentobarbital[131] at ambient pressures up to 6 ATA. For therapeutic lung lavage, we have provided general anesthesia at ambient pressures up to 3 ATA by using conventional doses of ketamine and benzodiazepines or propofol and narcotics with nondepolarizing muscle relaxants.

Regional Anesthesia. Regional anesthesia is likely to be both safe and effective in a hyperbaric environment by avoiding the requirement for mechanical ventilation. A bowel resection was performed at an ambient pressure of 6.75 ATA in a helium-O_2 environment by using local injection of lidocaine supplemented with parenteral meperidine.[267] Extreme care should be taken to ensure sterile technique because of the propensity for enhanced bacterial growth in the warm, humidified environment of a hyperbaric chamber, particularly during saturation chamber exposures.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS IN HYPERBARIC OXYGEN THERAPY

Preoperative Hyperbaric Oxygenation

Preconditioning is described as the application of an insult to activate endogenous protective mechanisms to lessen the morphologic and functional sequelae of a subsequent insult. Ischemic preconditioning is the application of a brief period of ischemia, which activates endogenous protective mechanisms to reduce the damage from subsequent ischemic insults. Ischemic preconditioning was first described in canine myocardium and subsequently was shown to also exist in the brain. Since then, intense research in the field of pharmacology has ensued to identify other agents that lead to preconditioning, such as volatile anesthetic agents, lipopolysaccharide exposure, heat, CNS seizures, hypoxia, and hyperoxia, and more recently hyperbaric hyperoxia.[277]

Several clinical trials have provided evidence that HBOT before cardiac or surgical procedures can improve outcome. Sharifi and associates described the use of HBOT to inhibit restenosis after percutaneous coronary intervention in acute myocardial infarction.[278] In 2005, Alex and associates observed that repetitive pretreatment with three sessions of HBOT at 2.4 ATA before on-pump coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) surgery reduced neuropsychometric dysfunction and modulated favorably the inflammatory response after cardiopulmonary bypass.[279] Yogaratnam and associates reported that preconditioning with a single session of HBOT at 2.5 ATA before on-pump CABG surgery improved left ventricular stroke work post-CABG surgery while reducing intraoperative blood loss, ICU length of stay, and postoperative complications.[280] Li and associates demonstrated in patients undergoing on-pump and off-pump CABG that HBOT preconditioning decreased the release of cerebral and myocardial biochemical markers. Patients in the on-pump group pretreated with hyperbaric oxygen had a reduced length of ICU stay and decreased use of inotropic drugs.[281]

The mechanism by which HBOT can be protective is not currently known but does not involve support of metabolism by increased tissue oxygen stores, since tissue and blood oxygenation are dissipated within minutes after hyperbaric exposure. The etiology of cerebral injuries is probably multifactorial, including cerebral microemboli, global cerebral hypoperfusion, inflammation, cerebral temperature modulation, and genetic susceptibility.[277,282] The mechanism of protection therefore may include HBOT-induced oxidative stress due to increased reactive oxygen species (ROS) generation, which could induce ischemic tolerance similar to ischemia-reperfusion. Alternatively, HBOT preconditioning may reduce ischemia-reperfusion damage by reducing tissue leucocyte recruitment and activation, reduction of tissue edema, protection from cellular necrosis, reduction of tissue apoptosis, and improving tissue outcome and preservation.[283-285] Another possible mechanism is upregulation of antioxidant enzymes such as superoxide dismutase,[286] and possibly also heme oxygenase-1, as shown in a model of liver ischemia.[287]

Published data are highly suggestive of a beneficial effect of HBOT when administered before or after selected procedures.[277,288] The role of HBOT in this setting will be determined by larger clinical trials.

Stroke

Several studies of middle cerebral artery occlusion in rats have demonstrated beneficial effects of hyperbaric oxygen.[289-293] In an unselected case series of patients with acute stroke treated within 5 hours of symptom onset, some patients improved with HBOT where arterial PO_2 was 1100 to 1300 mm Hg.[294] Since then there have been several clinical studies, with mixed results,[295] perhaps because of the failure to start HBOT in a timely fashion[296] or use of subtherapeutic PO_2. Interestingly, a recent double blind study reported improved outcome when HBOT was administered after the acute stroke, suggesting some effect on neuroplasticity.[297]

Acute Traumatic Brain Injury

Hyperoxia may have several protective mechanisms of action in severe traumatic brain injury (TBI), including improved oxidative metabolism and mitochondrial function, and reductions in intracranial hypertension, apoptosis, neuroinflammation, and free radical mediated damage. Support for efficacy of HBOT is provided by small clinical trials and mechanistic observations.[298-301] This has led to an NIH-supported multi-center trial of HBOT in acute TBI (Hyperbaric Oxygen Brain Injury Treatment Trial [HOBIT], ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT02407028).

Summary

Environmental exposures can cause specific types of clinical conditions that require targeted therapy. Experience with compressed air and diving has led to new treatments using hyperbaric oxygen. Increasingly widespread use of HBOT to treat critically ill patients has created a demand for individuals skilled in using this technology. Planning and design of monitoring capabilities will enable optimal control of hemodynamics and oxygenation. Patient safety in this environment can be achieved with careful attention to detail that includes patient selection and monitoring, and chamber procedures. Optimized treatment schedules will evolve from studies of mechanism of action and further clinical trials. Advances in prevention and treatment of O_2 toxicity may allow more prolonged therapy than can currently be safely administered, and a more aggressive approach to ischemic and infectious syndromes.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Lange L, et al. *Pflugers Arch*. 1974;352(3):219.
2. Echt M, et al. *Pflugers Arch*. 1974;352(3):211.
3. Smith DE, et al. *Echocardiography*. 1998;15(1):35.
4. Kurss DI, Lundgren CEG, Pasche AJ. Effect of water temperature on vital capacity in head-out immersion. In: Bachrach AJ, Matzen MM, eds. *Underwater Physiology VII. Proceedings of the 7th Symposium on Underwater Physiology*. Bethesda, MD: Undersea Medical Society; 1981:297–301.
5. Wester TE, et al. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2009;106(2):691.
6. Golden FS, et al. *J R Nav Med Serv*. 1991;77(3):139.
7. May M, Jordan J. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2011;300(1):R40.
8. Mai TH, et al. *Auton Neurosci*. 2017;203:58.
9. Peacher DF, et al. *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 2015;47(6):1128.
10. Miller 3rd CC, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2010;28(8):941.
11. Rodríguez J, Hammes J. *J Spec Oper Med*. 2006;6(3):22.
12. Shupak A, et al. *Respir Physiol*. 2000;121(1):25.
13. Moon RE, et al. *Circulation*. 2016;133(10):988.
14. Sakuma T, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1994;150(2):305.
15. Cochard G, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2005;32(1):39.
16. van Beeck EF, et al. *Bull World Health Organ*. 2005;83(11):853.
17. Idris AH, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;108(20):2565.
18. Idris AH, et al. *Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes*. 2017;10(7).
19. Venema AM, et al. *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med*. 2018;26(1):19.
20. Szpilman D. *Chest*. 1997;112(3):660.
21. Byard RW. *Forensic Sci Med Pathol*. 2017;13(4):529.
22. Tobin JM, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2017;118:e5.
23. Szpilman D, et al. *Cleve Clin J Med*. 2018;85(7):529.
24. Peden M, McGee K, Sharma K. *The Injury Chart Book: A Graphical Overview of the Global Burden of Injuries*. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2002.

25. World Health Organization. *Global Report on Drowning: Preventing a Leading Killer*. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization; 2014.
26. Centers for Disease Control. Unintentional Drowning. www.cdc.gov/homeandrecreationalsafety/water-safety/waterinjuries-factsheet.html. Accessed 11/15, 2018.
27. Editorial. *Lancet*. 2017;389(10082):1859.
28. Golden FS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79(2):214.
29. Quan L, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2014;85(6):790.
30. Quan L, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2016;104:63.
31. Bierens JJ, et al. *Physiology (Bethesda)*. 2016;31(2):147–166.
32. Szpilman D, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366(22):2102.
33. Orlowski JP, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1989;18(10):1044–1049.
34. Michelet P, et al. *Eur J Emerg Med*. 2018.
35. Borse NN, et al. *CDC Childhood Injury Report: Patterns of Unintentional Injuries among 0 -19 Year Olds in the United States, 2000-2006*. Atlanta, GA: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Injury Prevention and Control; 2008.
36. Cantu RM, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2018;36(3):446.
37. Dyson K, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2013;84(8):1114.
38. Manolios N, Mackie I. *Med J Aust*. 1988;148(4):165–167, 170–161.
39. Berg RA, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;122(18 suppl 3):S685–705.
40. Champigneulle B, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2015;88:126–131.
41. Cerland L, et al. *Int J Environ Res Public Health*. 2017;14(11).
42. Burke CR, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2016;104:19–23.
43. Alp A, et al. *Hemodial Int*. 2016;20(1):E1–E4.
44. Gorelik Y, et al. *Kidney Int Rep*. 2018;3(4):833–840.
45. Polderman KH. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30(4):556–575.
46. Parenteau M, et al. *Mil Med*. 2018;183(suppl_2):172–179.
47. Wu Y, et al. *Int J Environ Res Public Health*. 2017;14(8):E875.
48. Sessler DI. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(2):531–543.
49. Kelsey RM, et al. *Hypertension*. 2000;36(6):1013–1017.
50. Cheung SS, Daanen HA. *Microcirculation*. 2012;19(1):65–77.
51. Han HS, et al. *Current Neuropharmacology*. 2012;10(1):80–87.
52. Cauchy E, et al. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2016;27(1):92–99.
53. Osborn JJ. *Am J Physiol*. 1953;175(3):389–398.
54. Paal P, et al. *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med*. 2016;24(1):111.
55. McCullough JN, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1999;67(6):1895–1899; discussion 1919-1821.
56. Sprung J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36(8):825–830.
57. Mackensen GB, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2009;26(3):342–358.
58. Van Poucke S, et al. *Thrombosis journal*. 2014;12(1):31.
59. Levi M. *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2018;44(7):651–655.
60. Heier T, Caldwell JE. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(5):1070–1080.
61. Antognini JF. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(6):1152–1156.
62. Stecker MM, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2001;71(1):14–21.
63. Sessler DI. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(2):318–338.
64. Jain A, et al. *J Neurosci Nurs*. 2018;50(2):63–67.
65. Taylor NA, et al. *J Therm Biol*. 2014;46:72–101.
66. MacLeod DB, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60(1):65–71.
67. Barnard CN, Schrire V. *Thorax*. 1963;18(2):101–115.
68. Tikuisis P, et al. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1991;70(5):1996–2002.
69. Zafren K, et al. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2014;25(4):425–445.
70. Castellani JW, Young AJ. *Auton Neurosci*. 2016;196:63–74.
71. Clough D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(2):281–288.
72. Jarosz A, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30(6):1693–1697.
73. Engelman R, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29(4):1104–1113.
74. Totapally A, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2017;82(2):362–367.
75. Okada Y, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2018.
76. Taylor NA. *Compr Physiol*. 2014;4(1):325–365.
77. Rowell LB. *Circ Res*. 1983;52(4):367–379.
78. Kregel KC, et al. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1988;64(6):2582–2588.
79. Al Mahri S, Bouchama A. *Handb Clin Neurol*. 2018;157:531–545.
80. Bynum GD, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1978;235(5):R228–R236.
81. Richter K, et al. *Mol Cell*. 2010;40(2):253–266.
82. Leon LR, Bouchama A. *Compr Physiol*. 2015;5(2):611–647.
83. Kenny GP, et al. *Handb Clin Neurol*. 2018;157:505–529.
84. Casa DJ, et al. *Curr Sports Med Rep*. 2005;4(6):309–317.
85. Belval LN, et al. *Prehosp Emerg Care*. 2018;22(3):392–397.
86. Bouchama A, De Vol EB. *Intensive Care Med*. 2001;27(4):680–685.
87. Argaud L, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167(20):2177–2183.
88. Hew-Butler T, et al. *Clin J Sport Med*. 2015;25(4):303–320.
89. Oruch R, et al. *Neuropsychiatr Dis Treat*. 2017;13:161–175.
90. Boyer EW, Shannon M. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(11):1112–1120.
91. Bouchama A, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1991;19(2):176–180.
92. Bouchama A, et al. *Crit Care*. 2007;11(3):R54.
93. Bouchama A, Knochel JP. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(25):1978–1988.
94. Walter EJ, Carraretto M. *Crit Care*. 2016;20(1):199.
95. Fontaine J-A. *L'Union Med*. 1879;28(Ser 3):445.
96. Zuntz N. *Fortschr Med*. 1897;15:632.
97. Yarbrough OD, Behnke AR. *J Ind Hyg Toxicol*. 1939;21:213.
98. Cochran WD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1965;272:347.
99. Boerema I, et al. *Surgery*. 1962;52:796.
100. Bernhard WF, et al. *Circulation*. 1964;29(suppl):91.
101. Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. Durham, NC: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019.
102. Fenn WO, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1946;146:637–653.
103. Riley RL, Cournand A. *J Appl Physiol*. 1949;1(12):825–847.
104. Gilbert R, Keighley JF. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1974;109:142.
105. Moon RE, et al. Prediction of arterial PO2 during hyperbaric treatment. In: Bove AA, Bachrach AJ, Greenbaum Jr LJ, eds. *Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology IX. Proceedings of the Ninth International Symposium on Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology*. Bethesda, MD: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 1987:1127–1131.
106. McMahon TJ, et al. *Nat Med*. 2002;8:711.
107. Camporesi EM, Bosco G. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2014;41(3):247–252.
108. Buras JA, Reenstra WR. *Neurol Res*. 2007;29(2):127–131.
109. Francis A, et al. *Plast Reconstr Surg Glob Open*. 2017;5(9):e1497.
110. Mathieu D, et al. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1993;91:329.
111. Fife CE, et al. *Wound Repair Regen*. 2002;10:198.
112. Demchenko IT, et al. *Circ Res*. 2002;91:1031.
113. Stamler JS, et al. *Science*. 1997;276:2034.
114. Whalen R, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1965;15:638.
115. Ishikawa K, et al. *Jpn Circ J*. 1983;47:824.
116. Savitt MA, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1994;21:169.
117. Berry JM, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1998;69:761.
118. Abel FL, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2000;27:67.
119. Lavoute C, et al. *Brain Res*. 2007;1176:37.
120. Bennett PB, Towse EJ. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol*. 1971;31:383.
121. Bennett PB, et al. *Undersea Biomed Res*. 1981;8:85.
122. Rostain JC, Balon N. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2006;33:197.
123. Winter PM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;44:416.
124. Gran L, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1980;24:407.
125. Tonner PH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:926.
126. Tonner PH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:618.
127. Koblin DD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:419.
128. Heimburg T, Jackson AD. *Biophys J*. 2007;92:3159.
129. Gross DR, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1985;56:1203.
130. Kramer WG, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1983;54:410.
131. Kramer WG, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1983;54:1005.
132. Kramer WG, et al. *Res Commun Chem Pathol Pharmacol*. 1981;34:381.
133. Kramer WG, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1983;54:682.
134. Stoudemire A, et al. *Am J Psychiatry*. 1984;141:1251.
135. Hampson NB. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2018;45(2):165–171.
136. Piantadosi CA, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1988;65:878.
137. Thom S. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*. 1990;105:340.
138. Thom SR. *J Appl Physiol*. 1992;73:1584.
139. Thom SR. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*. 1993;123:248.
140. Thom SR. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*. 1993;123:234.
141. Piantadosi CA. *Respir Care Clin N Am*. 1999;5:183.
142. Thom SR, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 2001;281:H923.
143. Thom SR, et al. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*. 2006;213:152.
144. Thom SR, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2006;174:1239.
145. Kao LW, Nanagas KA. *Clin Lab Med*. 2006;26:99.
146. Thom SR, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101:13660.
147. Thom S, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1995;25:474.
148. Weaver LK, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347:1057.
149. Weaver LK, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2007;176:491.
150. Shepherd Ali G, et al. *Clin Chim Acta*. 2001;307:249.
151. Pracyk JB, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1995;22:1.
152. Gale SD, et al. *Brain Inj*. 1999;13:229.
153. Parkinson RB, et al. *Neurology*. 2002;58:1525.
154. Moon JM. *Clin Toxicol (Phila)*. 2018;56(3):161–169.
155. Pace N, et al. *Science*. 1950;111:652.
156. Hampson NB, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;186:1095.
157. Scheinkestel CD, et al. *Med J Aust*. 1999;170:203.
158. Ducassé JL, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1995;22(9).
159. Mathieu D, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1996;23(suppl):7.
160. Rose JJ. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(7):e649–e655.
161. Rose JJ, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;195(5):596–606.

162. Hollander DI, et al. *J Reprod Med*. 1987;32:615.
163. Van Hoesen KB, et al. *JAMA*. 1989;261:1039.
164. Brown DB, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1992;63:1011.
165. Elkharrat D, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1991;17:289.
166. Mathieu D, et al. Carbon monoxide poisoning: mechanism, clinical presentation and management. In: Oriani G, Marroni A, Wattel F, eds. *Handbook on Hyperbaric Medicine*. New York: Springer; 1996: 281.
167. Camporesi EM. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy for CO intoxication during pregnancy. In: Oriani G, Marroni A, Wattel F, eds. *Handbook on Hyperbaric Medicine*. New York: Springer; 1996:305.
168. Kaufman BS, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1987;15:703.
169. Morris WP, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1993;147:1034.
170. Wilmshurst PT, et al. *Lancet*. 1989;2:1302.
171. Gempp E. *Int J Cardiol*. 2017;248:155–158.
172. Cockett AT, et al. *Surg Forum*. 1963;14:7–8.
173. Brunner F, et al. *Lancet*. 1964;1:1071.
174. Boussuges A, et al. *Int J Sports Med*. 1996;17:351.
175. Nossum V, et al. *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2002;86:209.
176. Helps SC, et al. *Stroke*. 1990;21:94.
177. Helps SC, et al. *Stroke*. 1990;21:1340.
178. Helps SC, Gorman DF. *Stroke*. 1991;22:351.
179. Pearson RR, Goad RF. *Undersea Biomed Res*. 1982;9:283.
180. Vann RD, et al. *Lancet*. 2011;377(9760):153–164.
181. Xu W, et al. *PLoS ONE*. 2012;7(11):e50079.
182. Longphre JM, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2007;34:43.
183. Moon RE, ed. *Adjunctive Therapy for Decompression Illness*. Kensington, MD: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2003.
184. Merton DA, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1983;54:218.
185. van Hulst RA, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30:944.
186. Moon RE, Gorman DF. Treatment of the decompression disorders. In: Bennett PB, Elliott DH, eds. *The Physiology and Medicine of Diving*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1993:506.
187. Moon RE, Sheffield PJ. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1997;68:234.
188. Chin W, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2017;44(5):399–405.
189. Ziser A, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1999;117:818.
190. Wherrett CG, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:96.
191. Benson J, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2003;30:117.
192. Tekle WG, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2012;18:228.
193. Dexter F, Hindman BJ. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:1203.
194. Gempp E, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2008;79(12):1112–1116.
195. Chung JM, Ahn JY. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2017;44(1):57–62.
196. Lowe VJ, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1994;21:103.
197. Van Unnik AJM. *Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek*. 1965;31:181.
198. Mader JT, et al. *J Infect Dis*. 1980;142:915.
199. Allen DB, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1997;132:991.
200. Greif R, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:161.
201. Buras JA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:2624.
202. Luongo C, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1972;26:1998.
203. Rachmilewitz D, et al. *Gut*. 1998;43:512.
204. Cuzzocrea S, et al. *Shock*. 2000;13:197.
205. Clarke LA, Moon RE. *Respir Care Clin N Am*. 1999;5:203.
206. Bakker DJ. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2012;39(3):731–737.
207. Soh CR, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38:1143.
208. Bakker DJ, et al. Clostridial myonecrosis (gas gangrene). In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019.
209. Camporesi EM, Moon RE. Hyperbaric oxygen as an adjunct to therapeutic lung lavage in pulmonary alveolar proteinosis. In: Bove AA, Bachrach AJ, Greenbaum Jr LJ, eds. *Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology IX. Proceedings of the Ninth International Symposium on Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology*. Bethesda, MD: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 1987:955–960.
210. Jansen HM, et al. *Chest*. 1987;91:829.
211. Strauss MB, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 1983;65(5):656–662.
212. Nylander G, et al. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1985;76:596–603.
213. Garcia-Covarrubias L, et al. *Am Surg*. 2005;71(2):144–151.
214. Strauss MB. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2012;39(4):847–855.
215. Butler Jr FK, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2008;35(5):333–387.
216. Murphy-Lavoie H, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2012;39(5):943–953.
217. Murphy-Lavoie H, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2012;39(3): 777–792.
218. Rhee TM, et al. *JAMA Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*; 2018.
219. Weaver LK, Strauss MB, eds. *Monoplace Hyperbaric Chamber Safety Guidelines*. Kensington, MD: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 1997.
220. Weaver LK. *Respir Care Clin N Am*. 1999;5:51.
221. U.S. Navy Department: U.S. Navy diving manual, rev 6, *Diving medicine and recompression chamber operations*, vol 5. NAVSEA 0910-LP-106-0957, Washington, DC, 2008, Naval Sea Systems Command. 2008.
222. Yusa T, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;63:353.
223. Clark JM, Lambertsen CJ. *J Appl Physiol*. 1971;30:739.
224. Harabin AL, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;63:1130.
225. Arieli R, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2002;92:248.
226. Eckenhoff RG, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1987;58:658.
227. Miller JN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(suppl):A369.
228. Thorsen E, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 1998;12:1442.
229. Mathes DD. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:624.
230. Bilfinger TV, Hartman AR. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1991;102:935.
321. Thompson CC, et al. *South Med J*. 1992;85:1257.
232. Torp KD, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2012;39:873.
233. Donald KW. *Br Med J*. 1947;1:667.
234. Donald KW. *Br Med J*. 1947;1:712.
235. Hampson N, Atik D. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2003;30:147.
236. Hampson NB, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1996;23:215.
237. Behnke AR, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1936;114:436.
238. Anderson Jr B, Farmer Jr JC. *Trans Am Ophthalmol Soc*. 1978;76:116.
239. Evanger K, et al. *Acta Ophthalmol Scand*. 2004;82:449.
240. Anderson Jr B, Shelton DL. Axial length in hyperoxic myopia. In: Bove AA, Bachrach AJ, Greenbaum Jr LJ, eds. *Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology IX: Proceedings of the Ninth International Symposium on Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology*. Bethesda, MD: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 1987:607.
241. Koren C, et al. *Reprod Toxicol*. 1991;5:397.
242. Wattel F, et al. *Presse Med*. 1996;25:1425.
243. Plafki C, et al. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2000;71:119.
244. Hadanny A, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2016;43(2):113–122.
245. Heyboer 3rd M, et al. *Adv Wound Care (New Rochelle)*. 2017;6(6):210–224.
246. Heyboer 3rd M, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2014;41(5):393–397.
247. Klingmann C, et al. *Otol Neurotol*. 2007;28(4):447–454.
248. Unsworth IP. *Anaesthesia*. 1973;28:675.
249. Wolf HK, et al. *Am J Forensic Med Pathol*. 1990;11:149.
250. Walker KJ, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2006;34(1):61–67.
251. Hummel III RS, et al. *JAMA*. 1988;260:3021.
252. Martindale LG, et al. *J Hyperb Med*. 1987;2:15.
253. Moon RE, Hart BB. *Care Clin N Am*. 1999;5:21.
254. Van Meter K. *Respir Care Clin N Am*. 1999;5:137.
255. Weaver LK, Howe S. *Chest*. 1992;102:1175.
256. Tenney SM. *Respir Physiol*. 1974;20:283.
257. Moon RE, et al. *Chest*. 1986;89:846.
258. Anthonisen NR, et al. Mechanics of breathing with helium-oxygen and neon-oxygen breathing mixtures in deep saturation diving. In: Lambertsen CJ, ed. *Underwater Physiology IV: Proceedings of the Fourth Symposium on Underwater Physiology*. New York: Academic Press; 1971:339.
259. Mummery HJ, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 2003;94:507.
260. Sheffield PJ, Desautels DA. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1997;24:153–164.
261. Vermeulen-Cranch DM. *Proc R Soc Med*. 1965;58:319–324.
262. Severinghaus JW. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:812.
263. Churchill-Davidson I, et al. *Lancet*. 1955;268:1091–1095.
264. Ross JAS, et al. Some aspects of anaesthesia in high pressure environments. In: Smith G, ed. *Proceedings of the Sixth International Congress on Hyperbaric Medicine*. Aberdeen, Scotland: Aberdeen University Press; 1977:449.
265. Jacobson I, et al. *Lancet*. 1963;2:546.
266. Ledingham IM, et al. *Br Med J*. 1968;4:285.
267. Carter LH, Goldsmith GA: *Nutr Today* 1970.
268. Smith RM. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1965;117:768.
269. Holt JAG. *Br J Radiol*. 1975;48:819.
270. Russell JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:289.
271. Smith WDA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1974;46:3.
272. Hornbein TF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:553.
273. Blenkarn GD, et al. *Aerosp Med*. 1971;42:141.
274. Lambertsen CJ, Idicula J. *J Appl Physiol*. 1975;39:434.
275. Acott CJ, Gorman DF. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1992;20:249.
276. McDowell DG. *Anaesthesia*. 1964;19:321.
277. Hentia C, et al. *Brain Behav*. 2018;8(5):e00959.
278. Sharifi M, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2004;93:1533.
279. Alex J, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2005;130:1623.
280. Yogaratnam JZ, et al. *Cardiovasc Revasc Med*. 2010;11:8.

281. Li Y, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2011;25:908.
282. Yogaratnam JZ, et al. *Cardiovasc Revasc Med*. 2006;7:146.
283. Yang ZJ, et al. *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2001;85:96.
284. Bosco G, et al. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2007;34:70.
285. Losada DM, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 2014;46(1):56–62.
286. Li J, et al. *Brain Res*. 2008;1210:223.
287. Liu Y, et al. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2011;38:675.
288. Perdrizet GA. *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2016;876:223–231.
289. Veltkamp R, et al. *Brain Res*. 2000;853:68.
290. Miljkovic-Lolic M, et al. *Brain Res*. 2003;971:90.
291. Yin D, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2003;23:855.
292. Mu J, et al. *Neurobiol Dis*. 2013;51:133.
293. Guo ZN, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(6):e403–411.
294. Heyman A, et al. *Circulation*. 1966;33(5 suppl):1120.
295. Michalski D, et al. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 2011;123:85.
296. McCormick JG, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2011;38:321.
297. Efrati S, et al. *PLoS One*. 2013;8:e53716.
298. Rockswold SB, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2001;94(3):403–411.
299. Rockswold SB, et al. *Neurol Res*. 2007;29(2):162–172.
300. Rockswold SB, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2010;112(5):1080–1094.
301. Rockswold SB, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2013;118(6):1317–1328.
302. Moon RE. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2014;41(2):159–166.
303. Moon RE. Air or gas embolism. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019.
304. Moon RE. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2014;41(2):151–157.
305. Moon RE, Mitchell SJ. Decompression sickness. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019.
306. Weaver LK. Carbon monoxide poisoning. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019.
307. Truss CD, Killenberg PG. *Gastroenterology*. 1982;82:767.
308. Berk RF, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1984;74:1996.
309. Riseman JA, et al. *Surgery*. 1990;108:847.
310. Zamboni WA, Kindwall EP. *BMJ*. 1993;307:936.
311. Anderson CA, Jacoby I. Necrotizing soft tissue infections. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019.
312. Davis JC, et al. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 1986;68:1210.
313. Bartek Jr J, et al. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 2016;158(7):1259–1267.
314. Tomoye EO, Moon RE. Intracranial abscess. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019.
315. Price JC, Stevens DL. *Laryngoscope*. 1980;90:737.
316. Yohai RA, et al. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 1994;39:3.
317. Bouachour G, et al. *J Trauma*. 1996;41:333.
318. Strauss MB. The role of hyperbaric oxygen for acute traumatic ischemias. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019.
319. Zamboni WA, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1996;131:756.
320. Kleban SR, Baynosa RC. The effect of hyperbaric oxygen on compromised grafts and flaps. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019.
321. Elder MJ, et al. *Diving Hyperb Med*. 2017;47(4):233–238.
322. Bagli BS, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2018;45(4):421–425.
323. Clarke RE, et al. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys*. 2008;72:134.
324. Bennett MH, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;5:CD005005.
325. Hampson NB, et al. *Cancer*. 2012;118:3860.
326. Hammarlund C, Sundberg T. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1994;93:829.
327. Zamboni WA, et al. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1997;24:175.
328. Londahl M, et al. *Diabetes Care*. 2010;33:998.
329. Londahl M, et al. *Diabet Med*. 2011;28:186.
330. Brolmann FE, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2012;99:1172.
331. Hart GB, et al. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1974;139:693.
332. Niu AKC, et al. *J Hyperb Med*. 1987;2:75.
333. Cianci P, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1989;10:432.
334. Niezgoda JA, et al. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1997;99:1620.
335. Cianci P, et al. Adjunctive hyperbaric oxygen therapy in the treatment of thermal burns. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019.
336. Broughton 2nd G. *Mil Med*. 1996;161:627.
337. Maynor ML, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 1997;4:184.
338. Hadanny A, et al. *Adv Skin Wound Care*. 2016;29(12):560–566.
339. Weaver LK, et al. *Chest*. 2000;117:801.
340. Clark JM. Oxygen toxicity. In: Bennett PB, Elliott DH, eds. *The Physiology and Medicine of Diving*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1993:121.
341. Michaud G, et al. *Chest*. 2009;136(6):1678–1681.
342. Committee on Hyperbaric Oxygenation. *Fundamentals of Hyperbaric Medicine. Publication No. 1298*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 1966.

References

1. Lange L, Lange S, Echt M, Gauer OH. Heart volume in relation to body posture and immersion in a thermo-neutral bath. A roentgenometric study. *Pflugers Arch*. 1974;352(3):219–226.
2. Echt M, Lange L, Gauer OH. Changes of peripheral venous tone and central transmural venous pressure during immersion in a thermo-neutral bath. *Pflugers Arch*. 1974;352(3):211–217.
3. Smith DE, Kaye AD, Mubarek SK, et al. Cardiac effects of water immersion in healthy volunteers. *Echocardiography*. 1998;15(1):35–42.
4. Kurss DI, Lundgren CEG, Pasche AJ. Effect of water temperature on vital capacity in head-out immersion. In: Bachrach AJ, Matzen MM, eds. *Underwater Physiology VII. Proceedings of the 7th Symposium on Underwater Physiology*. Bethesda, MD: Undersea Medical Society; 1981:297–301.
5. Wester TE, Cherry AD, Pollock NW, et al. Effects of head and body cooling on hemodynamics during immersed prone exercise at 1 ATA. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2009;106(2):691–700.
6. Golden FS, Hervey GR, Tipton MJ. Circum-rescue collapse: collapse, sometimes fatal, associated with rescue of immersion victims. *J R Nav Med Serv*. 1991;77(3):139–149.
7. May M, Jordan J. The osmopressor response to water drinking. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol*. 2011;300(1):R40–46.
8. Mai TH, Garland EM, Diedrich A, Robertson D. Hepatic and renal mechanisms underlying the osmopressor response. *Auton Neurosci*. 2017;203:58–66.
9. Peacher DF, Martina SD, Otteni CE, Wester TE, Potter JF, Moon RE. Immersion pulmonary edema and comorbidities: case series and updated review. *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 2015;47(6):1128–1134.
10. Miller 3rd CC, Calder-Becker K, Modave F. Swimming-induced pulmonary edema in triathletes. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2010;28(8):941–946.
11. Rodríguez J, Hammes J. Differentiating causes of hypoxemia in special operations trainees. *J Spec Oper Med*. 2006;6(3):22–26.
12. Shupak A, Weiler-Ravell D, Adir Y, Daskalovic YI, Ramon Y, Kerem D. Pulmonary oedema induced by strenuous swimming: a field study. *Respir Physiol*. 2000;121(1):25–31.
13. Moon RE, Martina SD, Peacher DF, et al. Swimming-induced pulmonary edema: pathophysiology and risk reduction with sildenafil. *Circulation*. 2016;133(10):988–996.
14. Sakuma T, Okaniwa G, Nakada T, Nishimura T, Fujimura S, Matthay MA. Alveolar fluid clearance in the resected human lung. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1994;150(2):305–310.
15. Cochard G, Arvieux J, Lacour JM, Madouas G, Mongredien H, Arvieux CC. Pulmonary edema in scuba divers: recurrence and fatal outcome. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2005;32(1):39–44.
16. van Beeck EF, Branche CM, Szpilman D, Modell JH, Bierens JJ. A new definition of drowning: towards documentation and prevention of a global public health problem. *Bull World Health Organ*. 2005;83(11):853–856.
17. Idris AH, Berg RA, Bierens J, et al. Recommended guidelines for uniform reporting of data from drowning: the "Utstein style". *Circulation*. 2003;108(20):2565–2574.
18. Idris AH, Bierens J, Perkins GD, et al. 2015 revised Utstein-style recommended guidelines for uniform reporting of data from drowning-related resuscitation: an ILCOR advisory statement. *Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes*. 2017;10(7).
19. Venema AM, Absalom AR, Idris AH, Bierens J. Review of 14 drowning publications based on the Utstein style for drowning. *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med*. 2018;26(1):19.
20. Szpilman D. Near-drowning and drowning classification: a proposal to stratify mortality based on the analysis of 1,831 cases. *Chest*. 1997;112(3):660–665.
21. Byard RW. Drowning and near drowning - definitions and terminology. *Forensic Sci Med Pathol*. 2017;13(4):529–530.
22. Tobin JM, Rossano JW, Wernicki PG, Fielding R, Quan L, Markenson D. Dry drowning: a distinction without a difference. *Resuscitation*. 2017;118:e5–e6.
23. Szpilman D, Sempsrott J, Webber J, et al. Dry drowning and other myths. *Cleve Clin J Med*. 2018;85(7):529–535.
24. Peden M, McGee K, Sharma K. *The Injury Chart Book: a Graphical Overview of the Global Burden of Injuries*. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2002.
25. World Health Organization. *Global Report on Drowning: Preventing a Leading Killer*. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization; 2014.
26. Centers for Disease Control. Unintentional Drowning. www.cdc.gov/homeandrecreationalsafety/water-safety/waterinjuries-factsheet.html
27. Editorial. Drowning: a silent killer. *Lancet*. 2017;389(10082):1859.
28. Golden FS, Tipton MJ, Scott RC. Immersion, near-drowning and drowning. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;79(2):214–225.
29. Quan L, Mack CD, Schiff MA. Association of water temperature and submersion duration and drowning outcome. *Resuscitation*. 2014;85(6):790–794.
30. Quan L, Bierens JJ, Lis R, Rowhani-Rahbar A, Morley P, Perkins GD. Predicting outcome of drowning at the scene: a systematic review and meta-analyses. *Resuscitation*. 2016;104:63–75.
31. Bierens JJ, Lunetta P, Tipton M, Warner DS. Physiology of drowning: a review. *Physiology (Bethesda)*. 2016;31(2):147–166.
32. Szpilman D, Bierens JJ, Handley AJ, Orlowski JP. Drowning. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366(22):2102–2110.
33. Orlowski JP, Abulleil MM, Phillips JM. The hemodynamic and cardiovascular effects of near-drowning in hypotonic, isotonic, or hypertonic solutions. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1989;18(10):1044–1049.
34. Michelet P, Dusart M, Boiron L, et al. Drowning in fresh or salt water: respective influence on respiratory function in a matched cohort study. *Eur J Emerg Med*. 2018.
35. Borse NN, Gilchrist J, Dellinger AM, Rudd RA, Ballesteros MF, Sleet DA. *CDC Childhood Injury Report: Patterns of Unintentional Injuries among 0 -19 Year Olds in the United States, 2000-2006*. Atlanta, GA: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Injury Prevention and Control; 2008.
36. Cantu RM, Pruitt CM, Samuy N, Wu CL. Predictors of emergency department discharge following pediatric drowning. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2018;36(3):446–449.
37. Dyson K, Morgans A, Bray J, Matthews B, Smith K. Drowning related out-of-hospital cardiac arrests: characteristics and outcomes. *Resuscitation*. 2013;84(8):1114–1118.
38. Manolios N, Mackie I. Drowning and near-drowning on Australian beaches patrolled by life-savers: a 10-year study, 1973-1983. *Med J Aust*. 1988;148(4):165–167. 170-161.
39. Berg RA, Hemphill R, Abella BS, et al. Part 5: adult basic life support: 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2010;122(18 suppl 3):S685–705.
40. Champigneulle B, Bellenfant-Zegdi F, Follin A, et al. Extracorporeal life support (ECLS) for refractory cardiac arrest after drowning: an 11-year experience. *Resuscitation*. 2015;88:126–131.
41. Cerland L, Megarbane B, Kallel H, Brouste Y, Mehdaoui H, Resiere D. Incidence and Consequences of Near-Drowning-Related Pneumonia-A Descriptive Series from Martinique, French West Indies. *Int J Environ Res Public Health*. 2017;14(11).
42. Burke CR, Chan T, Brogan TV, et al. Extracorporeal life support for victims of drowning. *Resuscitation*. 2016;104:19–23.
43. Alp A, Akdam H, Meteoglu I, Unsal A, Akar H, Yenicerioglu Y. Acute kidney injury after near drowning: the way from the beach to hemodialysis. *Hemodial Int*. 2016;20(1):E1–E4.
44. Gorelik Y, Darawshi S, Yaseen H, Abassi Z, Heyman SN, Khamaisi M. Acute renal failure following near-drowning. *Kidney Int Rep*. 2018;3(4):833–840.
45. Polderman KH. Application of therapeutic hypothermia in the ICU: opportunities and pitfalls of a promising treatment modality. Part 1: indications and evidence. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30(4):556–575.
46. Parenteau M, Stockinger Z, Hughes S, et al. Drowning management. *Mil Med*. 2018;183(suppl_2):172–179.
47. Wu Y, Huang Y, Schwebel DC, Hu G. Unintentional child and adolescent drowning mortality from 2000 to 2013 in 21 countries: analysis of the WHO Mortality Database. *Int J Environ Res Public Health*. 2017;14(8):E875.
48. Sessler DI. Complications and treatment of mild hypothermia. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(2):531–543.
49. Kelsey RM, Patterson SM, Barnard M, Alpert BS. Consistency of hemodynamic responses to cold stress in adolescents. *Hypertension*. 2000;36(6):1013–1017.
50. Cheung SS, Daanen HA. Dynamic adaptation of the peripheral circulation to cold exposure. *Microcirculation*. 2012;19(1):65–77.

51. Han HS, Park J, Kim J-H, Suk K. Molecular and cellular pathways as a target of therapeutic hypothermia: pharmacological aspect. *Current Neuropharmacology*. 2012;10(1):80–87.
52. Cauchy E, Davis CB, Pasquier M, Meyer EF, Hackett PH. A new proposal for management of severe frostbite in the austere environment. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2016;27(1):92–99.
53. Osborn JJ. Experimental hypothermia; respiratory and blood pH changes in relation to cardiac function. *Am J Physiol*. 1953;175(3):389–398.
54. Paal P, Gordon L, Strapazzon G, et al. Accidental hypothermia-an update: the content of this review is endorsed by the International Commission for Mountain Emergency Medicine (ICAR MEDCOM). *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med*. 2016;24(1):111.
55. McCullough JN, Zhang N, Reich DL, et al. Cerebral metabolic suppression during hypothermic circulatory arrest in humans. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1999;67(6):1895–1899; discussion 1919-1821.
56. Sprung J, Cheng EY, Gamulin S, Kampine JP, Bosnjak ZJ. The effect of acute hypothermia and serum potassium concentration on potassium cardiotoxicity in anesthetized rats. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1992;36(8):825–830.
57. Mackensen GB, McDonagh DL, Warner DS. Perioperative hypothermia: use and therapeutic implications. *J Neurotrauma*. 2009;26(3):342–358.
58. Van Poucke S, Stevens K, Marcus AE, Lance M. Hypothermia: effects on platelet function and hemostasis. *Thromb J*. 2014;12(1):31.
59. Levi M. Hemostasis and thrombosis in extreme temperatures (hypo- and hyperthermia). *Semin Thromb Hemost*. 2018;44(7): 651–655.
60. Heier T, Caldwell JE. Impact of hypothermia on the response to neuromuscular blocking drugs. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(5):1070–1080.
61. Antognini JF. Hypothermia eliminates isoflurane requirements at 20 degrees C. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(6):1152–1156.
62. Stecker MM, Cheung AT, Pochettino A, et al. Deep hypothermic circulatory arrest: I. Effects of cooling on electroencephalogram and evoked potentials. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2001;71(1):14–21.
63. Sessler DI. Temperature monitoring and perioperative thermoregulation. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;109(2):318–338.
64. Jain A, Gray M, Slisz S, Haymore J, Badjatia N, Kulstad E. Shivering treatments for targeted temperature management: a review. *J Neurosci Nurs*. 2018;50(2):63–67.
65. Taylor NA, Tipton MJ, Kenny GP. Considerations for the measurement of core, skin and mean body temperatures. *J Therm Biol*. 2014;46:72–101.
66. MacLeod DB, Cortinez LI, Keifer JC, et al. The desaturation response time of finger pulse oximeters during mild hypothermia. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60(1):65–71.
67. Barnard CN, Schrire V. The surgical treatment of acquired aneurysm of the thoracic aorta. *Thorax*. 1963;18(2):101–115.
68. Tikuisis P, Bell DG, Jacobs I. Shivering onset, metabolic response, and convective heat transfer during cold air exposure. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1991;70(5):1996–2002.
69. Zafren K, Giesbrecht GG, Danzl DF, et al. Wilderness Medical Society practice guidelines for the out-of-hospital evaluation and treatment of accidental hypothermia. *Wilderness Environ Med*. 2014;25(4):425–445.
70. Castellani JW, Young AJ. Human physiological responses to cold exposure: acute responses and acclimatization to prolonged exposure. *Auton Neurosci*. 2016;196:63–74.
71. Clough D, Kurz A, Sessler DI, Christensen R, Xiong J. Thermoregulatory vasoconstriction does not impede core warming during cutaneous heating. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(2):281–288.
72. Jarosz A, Kosinski S, Darocha T, et al. Problems and pitfalls of qualification for extracorporeal rewarming in severe accidental hypothermia. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30(6):1693–1697.
73. Engelman R, Baker RA, Likosky DS, et al. The Society of Thoracic Surgeons, the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, and the American Society of ExtraCorporeal Technology: clinical practice guidelines for cardiopulmonary bypass--temperature management during cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29(4):1104–1113.
74. Totapally A, Leoncio M, Beltramo F, Meyer K, Raszynski A, Totapally BR. Epidemiology and outcomes of children with accidental hypothermia: a propensity-matched study. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2017;82(2):362–367.
75. Okada Y, Matsuyama T, Morita S, et al. Prognostic factors for patients with accidental hypothermia: a multi-institutional retrospective cohort study. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2018.
76. Taylor NA. Human heat adaptation. *Compr Physiol*. 2014;4(1):325–365.
77. Rowell LB. Cardiovascular aspects of human thermoregulation. *Circ Res*. 1983;52(4):367–379.
78. Kregel KC, Wall PT, Gisolfi CV. Peripheral vascular responses to hyperthermia in the rat. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1988;64(6):2582–2588.
79. Al Mahri S, Bouchama A. Heatstroke. *Handb Clin Neurol*. 2018;157:531–545.
80. Bynum GD, Pandolf KB, Schuette WH, et al. Induced hyperthermia in sedated humans and the concept of critical thermal maximum. *Am J Physiol*. 1978;235(5):R228–R236.
81. Richter K, Haslbeck M, Buchner J. The heat shock response: life on the verge of death. *Mol Cell*. 2010;40(2):253–266.
82. Leon LR, Bouchama A. Heat stroke. *Compr Physiol*. 2015;5(2):611–647.
83. Kenny GP, Wilson TE, Flouris AD, Fujii N. Heat exhaustion. *Handb Clin Neurol*. 2018;157:505–529.
84. Casa DJ, Armstrong LE, Ganio MS, Yeargin SW. Exertional heat stroke in competitive athletes. *Curr Sports Med Rep*. 2005;4(6):309–317.
85. Belval LN, Casa DJ, Adams WM, et al. Consensus statement-prehospital care of exertional heat stroke. *Prehosp Emerg Care*. 2018;22(3):392–397.
86. Bouchama A, De Vol EB. Acid-base alterations in heatstroke. *Intensive Care Med*. 2001;27(4):680–685.
87. Argaud L, Ferry T, Le QH, et al. Short- and long-term outcomes of heatstroke following the 2003 heat wave in Lyon, France. *Arch Intern Med*. 2007;167(20):2177–2183.
88. Hew-Butler T, Rosner MH, Fowkes-Godek S, et al. Statement of the Third International Exercise-Associated Hyponatremia Consensus Development Conference, Carlsbad, California, 2015. *Clin J Sport Med*. 2015;25(4):303–320.
89. Oruch R, Pryme IF, Engelsen BA, Lund A. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome: an easily overlooked neurologic emergency. *Neuropsychiatr Dis Treat*. 2017;13:161–175.
90. Boyer EW, Shannon M. The serotonin syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(11):1112–1120.
91. Bouchama A, Cafege A, Devol EB, Labdi O, el-Assil K, Seraj M. Ineffectiveness of dantrolene sodium in the treatment of heatstroke. *Crit Care Med*. 1991;19(2):176–180.
92. Bouchama A, Dehbi M, Chaves-Carballo E. Cooling and hemodynamic management in heatstroke: practical recommendations. *Crit Care*. 2007;11(3):R54.
93. Bouchama A, Knochel JP. Heat stroke. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(25):1978–1988.
94. Walter EJ, Carraretto M. The neurological and cognitive consequences of hyperthermia. *Crit Care*. 2016;20(1):199.
95. Fontaine J-A. Emploi chirurgical de l'air comprimé. *L'Union Médicale Journal des intérêts scientifiques et pratiques moraux et professionnels du corps médicale Paris*. 1879;28(Sér 3):445–448.
96. Zuntz N. Zur Pathogenese und Therapie der durch rasche Luftdruckänderungen erzeugten Krankheiten. *Fortschr Med*. 1897;15:632–639.
97. Yarbrough OD, Behnke AR. The treatment of compressed air illness using oxygen. *J Ind Hyg Toxicol*. 1939;21:213–218.
98. Cochran WD, Levison H, Muirhead Jr DM, Boston RW, Wang CCS, Smith CA. A clinical trial of high oxygen pressure for the respiratory-distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 1965;272:347.
99. Boerema I, Meijne NG, Vermeulen-Cranch DME. Observations during operation on deeply cyanotic young children breathing oxygen at three atmospheres absolute. *Surgery*. 1962;52:796–799.
100. Bernhard WF, Frittelli G, Tank ES, Carr JG. Surgery under hyperbaric oxygenation in infants with congenital cardiac disease. *Circulation*. 1964;29(suppl):91–94.
101. Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. Durham, NC: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019.
102. Fenn WO, Rahn H, Otis AB. A theoretical study of the composition of the alveolar air at altitude. *Am J Physiol*. 1946;146:637–653.
103. Riley RL, Cournand A. Ideal alveolar air and the analysis of ventilation-perfusion relationships in the lungs. *J Appl Physiol*. 1949;1(12):825–847.

104. Gilbert R, Keighley JF. The arterial-alveolar oxygen tension ratio. An index of gas exchange applicable to varying inspired oxygen concentrations. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1974;109:142–145.
105. Moon RE, Camporesi EM, Shelton DL. Prediction of arterial PO2 during hyperbaric treatment. In: Bove AA, Bachrach AJ, Greenbaum Jr LJ, eds. *Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology IX. Proceedings of the Ninth International Symposium on Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology*. Bethesda, MD: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 1987:1127–1131.
106. McMahon TJ, Moon RE, Luschinger BP, et al. Nitric oxide in the human respiratory cycle. *Nat Med*. 2002;8:711–717.
107. Camporesi EM, Bosco G. Mechanisms of action of hyperbaric oxygen therapy. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2014;41(3):247–252.
108. Buras JA, Reenstra WR. Endothelial-neutrophil interactions during ischemia and reperfusion injury: basic mechanisms of hyperbaric oxygen. *Neurol Res*. 2007;29(2):127–131.
109. Francis A, Kleban SR, Stephenson LL, et al. Hyperbaric oxygen inhibits reperfusion-induced neutrophil polarization and adhesion via plasmin-mediated VEGF release. *Plast Reconstr Surg Glob Open*. 2017;5(9):e1497.
110. Mathieu D, Neviere R, Pellerin P, Patenotre P, Wattel F. Pedicle musculocutaneous flap transplantation: prediction of final outcome by transcutaneous oxygen measurements in hyperbaric oxygen. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1993;91:329–334.
111. Fife CE, Buyukcakir C, Otto GH, et al. The predictive value of transcutaneous oxygen tension measurement in diabetic lower extremity ulcers treated with hyperbaric oxygen therapy: a retrospective analysis of 1,144 patients. *Wound Repair Regen*. 2002;10(4):198–207.
112. Demchenko IT, Oury TD, Crapo JD, Piantadosi CA. Regulation of the brain's vascular responses to oxygen. *Circ Res*. 2002;91(11):1031–1037.
113. Stamler JS, Jia L, Eu JP, et al. Blood flow regulation by S-nitrosohemoglobin in the physiological oxygen gradient. *Science*. 1997;276:2034–2037.
114. Whalen R, Saltzman H, Holloway D, McIntosh HD, Sieker HO, Brown Jr IW. Cardiovascular and blood gas responses to hyperbaric oxygenation. *Am J Cardiol*. 1965;15:638–646.
115. Ishikawa K, Kanamasa K, Yamakado T, Kohashi Y, Katori R. The failure of oxygen breathing to decrease the myocardial contractile force in denervated dogs. *Jpn Circ J*. 1983;47(7):824–829.
116. Savitt MA, Rankin JS, Elberry JR, Owen CH, Camporesi EM. Influence of hyperbaric oxygen on left ventricular contractility, total coronary blood flow, and myocardial oxygen consumption in the conscious dog. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1994;21:169–183.
117. Berry JM, Doursout MF, Butler BD. Effects of hyperbaric hyperoxia on cardiac and regional hemodynamics in conscious dogs. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1998;69(8):761–765.
118. Abel FL, McNamee JE, Cone DL, Clarke D, Tao J. Effects of hyperbaric oxygen on ventricular performance, pulmonary blood volume, and systemic and pulmonary vascular resistance. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2000;27(2):67–73.
119. Lavoute C, Weiss M, Rostain JC. The role of NMDA and GABA(A) receptors in the inhibiting effect of 3 MPa nitrogen on striatal dopamine level. *Brain Res*. 2007;1176:37–44.
120. Bennett PB, Towse EJ. Performance efficiency of men breathing oxygen-helium at depths between 100 feet and 1500 feet. *Aerosp Med*. 1971;42(11):1147–1156.
121. Bennett PB, Coggin R, Roby J. Control of HPNS in humans during rapid compression with trimix to 650 m (2131 ft). *Undersea Biomed Res*. 1981;8(2):85–100.
122. Rostain JC, Balon N. Recent neurochemical basis of inert gas narcosis and pressure effects. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2006;33(3):197–204.
123. Winter PM, Smith RA, Smith M, Eger EI, II. Pressure antagonism of barbiturate anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1976;44:416–419.
124. Gran L, Coggin R, Bennett PB. Diazepam under hyperbaric conditions in rats. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1980;24(5):407–411.
125. Tonner PH, Poppers DM, Miller KW. The general anesthetic potency of propofol and its dependence on hydrostatic pressure. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:926–931.
126. Tonner PH, Scholz J, Koch C, Schulte am Esch J. The anesthetic effect of dexmedetomidine does not adhere to the Meyer-Overton rule but is reversed by hydrostatic pressure. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(3):618–622.
127. Koblin DD, Fang Z, Eger 2nd EI, et al. Minimum alveolar concentrations of noble gases, nitrogen, and sulfur hexafluoride in rats: helium and neon as nonimmobilizers (nonanesthetics). *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(2):419–424.
128. Heimburg T, Jackson AD. The thermodynamics of general anesthesia. *Biophys J*. 2007;92(9):3159–3165.
129. Gross DR, Kramer WG, Gentile BJ, Welch DW, Fife WP. Plasma volume and estimated liver plasma flow during hyperbaric and hyperoxic exposures in awake dogs. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1985;56:1203–1208.
130. Kramer WG, Gross DR, Moreau PM, Fife WP. Drug disposition under hyperbaric and hyperbaric-hyperoxic conditions: meperidine in the dog. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1983;54:410–412.
131. Kramer WG, Welch DW, Fife WP, Chaikin BN, Medlock C, Gross DR. Pharmacokinetics of pentobarbital under hyperbaric and hyperbaric hyperoxic conditions in the dog. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1983;54:1005–1008.
132. Kramer WG, Gross DR, Fife WP, Chaikin BN. Theophylline pharmacokinetics during hyperbaria and hyperbaric hyperoxia in the dog. *Res Commun Chem Pathol Pharmacol*. 1981;34:381–388.
133. Kramer WG, Welch DW, Fife WP, Chaikin BN, Gross DR. Salicylate pharmacokinetics in the dog at 6 ATA in air and at 2.8 ATA in 100% oxygen. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1983;54:682–684.
134. Stoudemire A, Miller J, Schmitt F, et al. Development of an organic affective syndrome during a hyperbaric diving experiment. *Am J Psychiatry*. 1984;141:1251–1254.
135. Hampson NB. Carboxyhemoglobin: a primer for clinicians. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2018;45(2):165–171.
136. Piantadosi CA, Lee PA, Sylvia AL. Direct effects of CO on cerebral energy metabolism in bloodless rats. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1988;65:878–887.
137. Thom S. Antagonism of carbon monoxide-mediated brain lipid peroxidation by hyperbaric oxygen. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*. 1990;105:340–344.
138. Thom SR. Dehydrogenase conversion to oxidase and lipid peroxidation in brain after carbon monoxide poisoning. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1992;73(4):1584–1589.
139. Thom SR. Functional inhibition of leukocyte b2 integrins by hyperbaric oxygen in carbon monoxide-mediated brain injury in rats. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*. 1993;123(2):248–256.
140. Thom SR. Leukocytes in carbon monoxide-mediated brain oxidative injury. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*. 1993;123(2):234–247.
141. Piantadosi CA. Diagnosis and treatment of carbon monoxide poisoning. *Respir Care Clin N Am*. 1999;5:183–202.
142. Thom SR, Fisher D, Manevich Y. Roles for platelet-activating factor and *NO-derived oxidants causing neutrophil adherence after CO poisoning. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2001;281(2):H923–930.
143. Thom SR, Bhopale VM, Fisher D. Hyperbaric oxygen reduces delayed immune-mediated neuropathology in experimental carbon monoxide toxicity. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*. 2006;213(2):152–159.
144. Thom SR, Bhopale VM, Han ST, Clark JM, Hardy KR. Intravascular neutrophil activation due to carbon monoxide poisoning. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2006;174(11):1239–1248.
145. Kao LW, Nanagas KA. Toxicity associated with carbon monoxide. *Clin Lab Med*. 2006;26(1):99–125.
146. Thom SR, Bhopale VM, Fisher D, Zhang J, Gimotty P. Delayed neuropathology after carbon monoxide poisoning is immune-mediated. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2004;101(37):13660–13665.
147. Thom S, Taber R, Mendiguren I, Clark J, Hardy K, Fisher A. Delayed neuropsychologic sequelae after carbon monoxide poisoning: prevention by treatment with hyperbaric oxygen. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1995;25:474–480.
148. Weaver LK, Hopkins RO, Chan KJ, et al. Hyperbaric oxygen for acute carbon monoxide poisoning. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347(14):1057–1067.
149. Weaver LK, Valentine KJ, Hopkins RO. Carbon monoxide poisoning: risk factors for cognitive sequelae and the role of hyperbaric oxygen. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2007;176(5):491–497.
150. Shepherd Ali G, Ashoka Ali A, Steinke JM, Shepherd AP. A simple method for measuring fetal hemoglobin by co-oximetry. *Clin Chim Acta*. 2001;307(1-2):249–252.
151. Pracyk JB, Stolp BW, Fife CE, Gray L, Piantadosi CA. Brain computerized tomography after hyperbaric oxygen therapy for carbon monoxide poisoning. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1995;22:1–7.
152. Gale SD, Hopkins RO, Weaver LK, Bigler ED, Booth EJ, Blatter DD. MRI, quantitative MRI, SPECT, and neuropsychological findings following carbon monoxide poisoning. *Brain Inj*. 1999;13:229–243.

153. Parkinson RB, Hopkins RO, Cleavinger HB, et al. White matter hyperintensities and neuropsychological outcome following carbon monoxide poisoning. *Neurology*. 2002;58(10):1525–1532.
154. Moon JM, Chun BJ, Baek BH, Hong YJ. Initial diffusion-weighted MRI and long-term neurologic outcomes in charcoal-burning carbon monoxide poisoning. *Clin Toxicol (Phila)*. 2018;56(3):161–169.
155. Pace N, Strajman E, Walker E. Acceleration of carbon monoxide elimination in man by high pressure oxygen. *Science*. 1950;111:652–654.
156. Hampson NB, Piantadosi CA, Thom SR, Weaver LK. Practice recommendations in the diagnosis, management, and prevention of carbon monoxide poisoning. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;186(11):1095–1101.
157. Scheinkestel CD, Bailey M, Myles PS, et al. Hyperbaric or normobaric oxygen for acute carbon monoxide poisoning: a randomised controlled clinical trial. *Med J Aust*. 1999;170(5):203–210.
158. Ducassé JL, Celsis P, Marc-Vergnes JP. Non-comatose patients with acute carbon monoxide poisoning: hyperbaric or normobaric oxygenation? *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1995;22:9–15.
159. Mathieu D, Wattel F, Mathieu-Nolf M, et al. Randomized prospective study comparing the effect of HBO versus 12 hours NBO in non-comatose CO poisoned patients: results of the interim analysis. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1996;23(suppl):7–8.
160. Rose JJ, Nouraie M, Gauthier MC, et al. Clinical outcomes and mortality impact of hyperbaric oxygen therapy in patients with carbon monoxide poisoning. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(7):e649–e655.
161. Rose JJ, Wang L, Xu Q, et al. Carbon monoxide poisoning: pathogenesis, management, and future directions of therapy. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;195(5):596–606.
162. Hollander DI, Nagey DA, Welch R, Pupkin M. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy for the treatment of acute carbon monoxide poisoning in pregnancy. A case report. *J Reprod Med*. 1987;32:615–617.
163. Van Hoesen KB, Camporesi EM, Moon RE, Hage ML, Piantadosi CA. Should hyperbaric oxygen be used to treat the pregnant patient for acute carbon monoxide poisoning? A case report and literature review [published erratum appears in JAMA 1990;273:2750]. *JAMA*. 1989;261:1039–1043.
164. Brown DB, Mueller GL, Golich FC. Hyperbaric oxygen treatment for carbon monoxide poisoning in pregnancy: a case report. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1992;63:1011–1014.
165. Elkharrat D, Raphael JC, Korach JM, et al. Acute carbon monoxide intoxication and hyperbaric oxygen in pregnancy. *Intensive Care Med*. 1991;17:289–292.
166. Mathieu D, Wattel F, Nevière R, Mathieu-Nolf M. Carbon monoxide poisoning: mechanism, clinical presentation and management. In: Oriani G, Marroni A, Wattel F, eds. *Handbook on Hyperbaric Medicine*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag; 1996:281–296.
167. Camporesi EM. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy for CO intoxication during pregnancy. In: Oriani G, Marroni A, Wattel F, eds. *Handbook on Hyperbaric Medicine*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag; 1996:305–311.
168. Kaufman BS, Kaminsky SJ, Rackow EC, Weil MH. Adult respiratory distress syndrome following orogenital sex during pregnancy. *Crit Care Med*. 1987;15:703–704.
169. Morris WP, Butler BD, Tonnesen AS, Allen SJ. Continuous venous air embolism in patients receiving positive end-expiratory pressure. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1993;147:1034–1037.
170. Wilmshurst PT, Morrison WL, Walsh KP. Comparison of the size of persistent foramen ovale and atrial septal defects in divers with shunt-related decompression illness and in the general population. *Diving Hyperb Med*. 2015;45(2):89–93.
171. Gempp E, Lyard M, Louge P. Reliability of right-to-left shunt screening in the prevention of scuba diving related-decompression sickness. *Int J Cardiol*. 2017;248:155–158.
172. Cockett AT, Nakamura RM, Franks JJ. Delayed shock in experimental dysbarism. *Surg Forum*. 1963;14:7–8.
173. Brunner F, Frick P, Bühlmann A. Post-decompression shock due to extravasation of plasma. *Lancet*. 1964;1:1071–1073.
174. Boussuges A, Blanc P, Molenat F, Bergmann E, Sainty JM. Haemoconcentration in neurological decompression illness. *Int J Sports Med*. 1996;17:351–355.
175. Nossum V, Hjelde A, Brubakk AO. Small amounts of venous gas embolism cause delayed impairment of endothelial function and increase polymorphonuclear neutrophil infiltration. *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2002;86:209–214.
176. Helps SC, Parsons DW, Reilly PL, Gorman DF. The effect of gas emboli on rabbit cerebral blood flow. *Stroke*. 1990;21:94–99.
177. Helps SC, Meyer-Witting M, Rilley PL, Gorman DF. Increasing doses of intracarotid air and cerebral blood flow in rabbits. *Stroke*. 1990;21:1340–1345.
178. Helps SC, Gorman DF. Air embolism of the brain in rabbits pretreated with mechlorethamine. *Stroke*. 1991;22:351–354.
179. Pearson RR, Goad RF. Delayed cerebral edema complicating cerebral arterial gas embolism: case histories. *Undersea Biomed Res*. 1982;9:283–296.
180. Vann RD, Butler FK, Mitchell SJ, Moon RE. Decompression illness. *Lancet*. 2011;377(9760):153–164.
181. Xu W, Liu W, Huang G, Zou Z, Cai Z, Xu W. Decompression illness: clinical aspects of 5278 consecutive cases treated in a single hyperbaric unit. *PLoS ONE*. 2012;7(11):e50079.
182. Longphre JM, Denoble PJ, Moon RE, Vann RD, Freiberger JJ. First aid normobaric oxygen for the treatment of recreational diving injuries. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2007;34(1):43–49.
183. Moon RE, ed. *Adjunctive Therapy for Decompression Illness*. Kensington, MD: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2003.
184. Merton DA, Fife WP, Gross DR. An evaluation of plasma volume expanders in the treatment of decompression sickness. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1983;54:218–222.
185. van Hulst RA, Haitsma JJ, Lameris TW, Klein J, Lachmann B. Hyperventilation impairs brain function in acute cerebral air embolism in pigs. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30(5):944–950.
186. Moon RE, Gorman DF. Treatment of the decompression disorders. In: Bennett PB, Elliott DH, eds. *The Physiology and Medicine of Diving*. Philadelphia, PA: WB Saunders; 1993:506–541.
187. Moon RE, Sheffield PJ. Guidelines for treatment of decompression illness. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1997;68:234–243.
188. Chin W, Joo E, Ninokawa S, Popa DA, Covington DB. Efficacy of the U.S. Navy Treatment Tables in treating DCS in 103 recreational scuba divers. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2017;44(5):399–405.
189. Ziser A, Adir Y, Lavon H, Shupak A. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy for massive arterial air embolism during cardiac operations. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1999;117(4):818–821.
190. Wherrett CG, Mehran RJ, Beaulieu MA. Cerebral arterial gas embolism following diagnostic bronchoscopy: delayed treatment with hyperbaric oxygen. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49(1):96–99.
191. Benson J, Adkinson C, Collier R. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy of iatrogenic cerebral arterial gas embolism. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2003;30(2):117–126.
192. Tekle WG, Adkinson CD, Chaudhry SA, et al. Factors associated with favorable response to hyperbaric oxygen therapy among patients presenting with iatrogenic cerebral arterial gas embolism. *Neurocrit Care*. 2012.
193. Dexter F, Hindman BJ. Recommendations for hyperbaric oxygen therapy of cerebral air embolism based on a mathematical model of bubble absorption. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:1203–1207.
194. Gempp E, Blatteau JE, Stephant E, Pontier JM, Constantin P, Peny C. MRI findings and clinical outcome in 45 divers with spinal cord decompression sickness. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2008;79(12):1112–1116.
195. Chung JM, Ahn JY. Relationship between clinical and radiologic findings of spinal cord injury in decompression sickness. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2017;44(1):57–62.
196. Lowe VJ, Hoffman JM, Hanson MW, et al. Cerebral imaging of decompression injury patients with 18F-2-fluoro-2-deoxyglucose positron emission tomography. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1994;21:103–113.
197. Van Unnik AJM. Inhibition of toxin production in Clostridium perfringens in vitro by hyperbaric oxygen. *Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek*. 1965;31:181–186.
198. Mader JT, Brown GL, Guckian JC, Wells CH, Reinarz JA. A mechanism for the amelioration by hyperbaric oxygen of experimental staphylococcal osteomyelitis in rabbits. *J Infect Dis*. 1980;142:915–922.
199. Allen DB, Maguire JJ, Mahdavian M, et al. Wound hypoxia and acidosis limit neutrophil bacterial killing mechanisms. *Arch Surg*. 1997;132(9):991–996.
200. Greif R, Akca O, Horn EP, Kurz A, Sessler DI. Supplemental perioperative oxygen to reduce the incidence of surgical-wound infection. Outcomes Research Group. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342(3):161–167.
201. Buras JA, Holt D, Orlow D, Belikoff B, Pavlides S, Reenstra WR. Hyperbaric oxygen protects from sepsis mortality via an interleukin-10-dependent mechanism. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(10):2624–2629.

202. Luongo C, Imperatore F, Cuzzocrea S, et al. Effects of hyperbaric oxygen exposure on a zymosan-induced shock model. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26(12):1972–1976.
203. Rachmilewitz D, Karmeli F, Okon E, Rubenstein I, Better OS. Hyperbaric oxygen: a novel modality to ameliorate experimental colitis. *Gut*. 1998;43(4):512–518.
204. Cuzzocrea S, Imperatore F, Costantino G, et al. Role of hyperbaric oxygen exposure in reduction of lipid peroxidation and in multiple organ failure induced by zymosan administration in the rat. *Shock*. 2000;13(3):197–203.
205. Clarke LA, Moon RE. Hyperbaric oxygen in the treatment of life threatening soft tissue infections. *Respir Care Clin N Am*. 1999;5:203–219.
206. Bakker DJ. Clostridial myonecrosis (gas gangrene). *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2012;39(3):731–737.
207. Soh CR, Pietrobon R, Freiberger JJ, et al. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy in necrotising soft tissue infections: a study of patients in the United States Nationwide Inpatient Sample. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38(7):1143–1151.
208. Bakker DJ, Cherng BPZ, Soh CR. Clostridial myonecrosis (gas gangrene). In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019 (in press).
209. Camporesi EM, Moon RE. Hyperbaric oxygen as an adjunct to therapeutic lung lavage in pulmonary alveolar proteinosis. In: Bove AA, Bachrach AJ, Greenbaum Jr LJ, eds. *Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology IX. Proceedings of the Ninth International Symposium on Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology*. Bethesda, MD: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 1987:955–960.
210. Jansen HM, Zuurmond WW, Roos CM, Schreuder JJ, Bakker DJ. Whole-lung lavage under hyperbaric oxygen conditions for alveolar proteinosis with respiratory failure. *Chest*. 1987;91:829–832.
211. Strauss MB, Hargens AR, Gershuni DH, et al. Reduction of skeletal muscle necrosis using intermittent hyperbaric oxygen in a model compartment syndrome. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 1983;65(5):656–662.
212. Nylander G, Lewis D, Nordstrom H, Larsson NJ. Reduction of postischemic edema with hyperbaric oxygen. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1985;76:596–603.
213. Garcia-Covarrubias L, McSwain Jr NE, Van Meter K, Bell RM. Adjuvant hyperbaric oxygen therapy in the management of crush injury and traumatic ischemia: an evidence-based approach. *Am Surg*. 2005;71(2):144–151.
214. Strauss MB. The effect of hyperbaric oxygen in crush injuries and skeletal muscle-compartment syndromes. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2012;39(4):847–855.
215. Butler Jr FK, Hagan C, Murphy-Lavoie H. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy and the eye. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2008;35(5):333–387.
216. Murphy-Lavoie H, Butler F, Hagan C. Central retinal artery occlusion treated with oxygen: a literature review and treatment algorithm. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2012;39(5):943–953.
217. Murphy-Lavoie H, Piper S, Moon RE, Legros T. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy for idiopathic sudden sensorineural hearing loss. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2012;39(3):777–792.
218. Rhee TM, Hwang D, Lee JS, Park J, Lee JM. Addition of hyperbaric oxygen therapy vs medical therapy alone for idiopathic sudden sensorineural hearing loss: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2018.
219. Weaver LK, Strauss MB, eds. *Monoplace Hyperbaric Chamber Safety Guidelines*. Kensington, MD: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 1997.
220. Weaver LK. Operational use and patient care in the monoplace hyperbaric chamber. *Respir Care Clin N Am*. 1999;5:51–92.
221. Navy Department, *US Navy Diving Manual. Revision 7. Diving Medicine and Recompression Chamber Operations. NAVSEA 0910-LP-115-1921*. Vol 5. Washington, DC: Naval Sea Systems Command; 2016.
222. Yusa T, Beckman JS, Crapo JD, Freeman BA. Hyperoxia increases H2O2 production by brain in vivo. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1987;63:353–358.
223. Clark JM, Lambertsen CJ. Rate of development of pulmonary O2 toxicity in man during O2 breathing at 2.0 Ata. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1971;30(5):739–752.
224. Harabin AL, Homer LD, Weathersby PK, Flynn ET. An analysis of decrements in vital capacity as an index of pulmonary oxygen toxicity. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1987;63:1130–1135.
225. Arieli R, Yalov A, Goldenshluger A. Modeling pulmonary and CNS O(2) toxicity and estimation of parameters for humans. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2002;92(1):248–256.
226. Eckenhoff RG, Dougherty Jr JH, Messier AA, Osborne SF, Parker JW. Progression and recovery of pulmonary oxygen toxicity in humans exposed to 5 ATA air. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 1987;58:658–667.
227. Miller JN, Camporesi EM, McLeod M, Feezor M. Studies of early pulmonary oxygen toxicity in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1981;55(suppl):A369.
228. Thorsen E, Aanderud L, Aasen TB. Effects of a standard hyperbaric oxygen treatment protocol on pulmonary function. *Eur Respir J*. 1998;12(6):1442–1445.
229. Mathes DD. Bleomycin and hyperoxia exposure in the operating room. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;81:624–629.
230. Bilfinger TV, Hartman AR. Acute pulmonary failure with neoadjuvant protocol including mitomycin C and surgical therapy. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1991;102:935.
231. Thompson CC, Bailey MK, Conroy JM, Bromley HR. Postoperative pulmonary toxicity associated with mitomycin C therapy. *South Med J*. 1992;85:1257–1259.
232. Torp KD, Carraway MS, Ott MC, et al. Safe administration of hyperbaric oxygen after bleomycin: a case series of 15 patients. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2012;39(5):873–879.
233. Donald KW. Oxygen poisoning in man. I. *Br Med J*. 1947;1:667–672.
234. Donald KW. Oxygen poisoning in man. II. *Br Med J*. 1947;1:712–717.
235. Hampson N, Atik D. Central nervous system oxygen toxicity during routine hyperbaric oxygen therapy. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2003;30(2):147–153.
236. Hampson NB, Simonson SG, Kramer CC, Piantadosi CA. Central nervous system oxygen toxicity during hyperbaric treatment of patients with carbon monoxide poisoning. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1996;23(4):215–219.
237. Behnke AR, Forbes HS, Motley EP. Circulatory and visual effects of oxygen at 3 atmospheres pressure. *Am J Physiol*. 1936;114:436–442.
238. Anderson Jr B, Farmer Jr JC. Hyperoxic myopia. *Trans Am Ophthalmol Soc*. 1978;76:116–124.
239. Evanger K, Haugen OH, Irgens A, Aanderud L, Thorsen E. Ocular refractive changes in patients receiving hyperbaric oxygen administered by oronasal mask or hood. *Acta Ophthalmol Scand*. 2004;82(4):449–453.
240. Anderson Jr B, Shelton DL. Axial length in hyperoxic myopia. In: Bove AA, Bachrach AJ, Greenbaum Jr LJ, eds. *Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology IX. Proceedings of the Ninth International Symposium on Underwater and Hyperbaric Physiology*. Bethesda, MD: Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society; 1987:607–611.
241. Koren C, Sharav T, Pastuszak A, et al. A multicenter, prospective study of fetal outcome following accidental carbon monoxide poisoning in pregnancy. *Reprod Toxicol*. 1991;5:397–403.
242. Wattel F, Mathieu D, Neviere R, Mathieu-Nolf M, Lefebvre-Lebleu N. [Carbon monoxide poisoning]. *Presse Med*. 1996;25(31):1425–1429.
243. Plafki C, Peters P, Almeling M, Welslau W, Busch R. Complications and side effects of hyperbaric oxygen therapy. *Aviat Space Environ Med*. 2000;71(2):119–124.
244. Hadanny A, Meir O, Bechor Y, Fishlev G, Bergan J, Efrati S. The safety of hyperbaric oxygen treatment--retrospective analysis in 2,334 patients. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2016;43(2):113–122.
245. Heyboer 3rd M, Sharma D, Santiago W, McCulloch N. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy: side effects defined and quantified. *Adv Wound Care (New Rochelle)*. 2017;6(6):210–224.
246. Heyboer 3rd M, Wojcik SM, Grant WD, Chambers P, Jennings S, Adcock P. Middle ear barotrauma in hyperbaric oxygen therapy. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2014;41(5):393–397.
247. Klingmann C, Praetorius M, Baumann I, Plinkert PK. Barotrauma and decompression illness of the inner ear: 46 cases during treatment and follow-up. *Otol Neurotol*. 2007;28(4):447–454.
248. Unsworth IP. Case report. Pulmonary barotrauma in a hyperbaric chamber. *Anaesthesia*. 1973;28(6):675–678.
249. Wolf HK, Moon RE, Mitchell PR, Burger PC. Barotrauma and air embolism in hyperbaric oxygen therapy. *Am J Forensic Med Pathol*. 1990;11:149–153.
250. Walker KJ, Millar IL, Fock A. The performance and safety of a pleural drainage unit under hyperbaric conditions. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2006;34(1):61–67.

251. Hummel III RS, Ornato JP, Weinberg SM, Clarke AM. Spark-generating properties of electrode gels used during defibrillation. A potential fire hazard. *JAMA*. 1988;260(20):3021–3024.
252. Martindale LG, Milligan M, Friese P. Test of an R-2 defibrillator adaptor in a hyperbaric chamber. *J Hyperb Med*. 1987;2:15–25.
253. Moon RE, Hart BB. Operational use and patient monitoring in a multiplace hyperbaric chamber. *Respir Care Clin N Am*. 1999;5:21–49.
254. Van Meter K. Medical field management of the injured diver. *Respir Care Clin N Am*. 1999;5:137–177.
255. Weaver LK, Howe S. Normobaric measurement of arterial oxygen tension in subjects exposed to hyperbaric oxygen. *Chest*. 1992;102:1175–1181.
256. Tenney SM. A theoretical analysis of the relationship between venous blood and mean tissue oxygen pressures. *Respir Physiol*. 1974;20:283–296.
257. Moon RE, Bergquist LV, Conklin B, Miller JN. Monaghan 225 ventilator use under hyperbaric conditions. *Chest*. 1986;89:846–851.
258. Anthonisen NR, Bradley ME, Vorosmarti J, Linaweaver PG. Mechanics of breathing with helium-oxygen and neon-oxygen breathing mixtures in deep saturation diving. In: Lambertsen CJ, ed. *Underwater Physiology IV: Proceedings of the Fourth Symposium on Underwater Physiology*. New York, NY: Academic Press; 1971:339–345.
259. Mummery HJ, Stolp BW, Dear GdL, et al. Effects of age and exercise on physiological dead space during simulated dives at 2.8 ATA. *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 2003;94(2):507–517.
260. Sheffield PJ, Desautels DA. Hyperbaric and hypobaric chamber fires - a 73-year analysis. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1997;24:153–164.
261. Vermeulen-Cranch DM. Hyperbaric oxygen. Anaesthesia in a high pressure chamber. *Proc R Soc Med*. 1965;58:319–324.
262. Severinghaus JW. Hyperbaric oxygenation: anesthesia and drug effects. *Anesthesiology*. 1965;26:812–824.
263. Churchill-Davidson I, Sanger C, Thomlinson RH. High-pressure oxygen and radiotherapy. *Lancet*. 1955;268:1091–1095.
264. Ross JAS, Manson HJ, Shearer A, Dundas CR. Some aspects of anaesthesia in high pressure environments. In: Smith G, ed. *Proceedings of the Sixth International Congress on Hyperbaric Medicine*. Aberdeen, Scotland: Aberdeen University Press; 1977:449–452.
265. Jacobson I, Bloor K, McDowall DG, Norman JN. Internal carotid endarterectomy at two atmospheres of pressure. *Lancet*. 1963;2:546–549.
266. Ledingham IM, McBride TI, Jennett WB, Adams JH, Tindal SAP. Fatal brain damage associated with cardiomyopathy of pregnancy, with notes on caesarean section in a hyperbaric chamber. *Br Med J*. 1968;4:285–287.
267. Carter LH, Goldsmith GA. The ordeal of Donald Boone. *Nutrition Today*. 1970; Autumn(Autumn): 2–9.
268. Smith RM. Anesthesia during hyperbaric oxygenation. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1965;117:768–773.
269. Holt JAG. The principles of hyperbaric and anoxic radiotherapy. *Br J Radiol*. 1975;48:819–826.
270. Russell JB, Snider MT, Richard RB, Loomis JL. Hyperbaric nitrous oxide as a sole anesthetic agent in humans. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:289–295.
271. Smith WDA, Mapleson WW, Siebold K, Hargreaves MD, Clarke GM. Nitrous oxide anaesthesia induced at atmospheric and hyperbaric pressures. I. Measured pharmacokinetic and EEG data. *Br J Anaesth*. 1974;46:3–12.
272. Hornbein TF, Eger EI, II, Winter PM, Smith G, Wetstone D, Smith KH. The minimum alveolar concentration of nitrous oxide in man. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:553–556.
273. Blenkarn GD, Aquadro C, Hills BA, Saltzman HA. Urticaria following the sequential breathing of various inert gases at a constant ambient pressure of 7 ATA: a possible manifestation of gas-induced osmosis. *Aerosp Med*. 1971;42:141–146.
274. Lambertsen CJ, Idicula J. A new gas lesion syndrome in man, induced by "isobaric gas counterdiffusion". *J Appl Physiol (1985)*. 1975;39:434–443.
275. Acott CJ, Gorman DF. Decompression illness and nitrous oxide anaesthesia in a sports diver. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1992;20:249–250.
276. McDowell DG. Anaesthesia in a pressure chamber. *Anaesthesia*. 1964;19:321–336.
277. Hentia C, Rizzato A, Camporesi E, et al. An overview of protective strategies against ischemia/reperfusion injury: the role of hyperbaric oxygen preconditioning. *Brain Behav*. 2018;8(5):e00959.
278. Sharifi M, Fares W, Abdel-Karim I, Koch JM, Sopko J, Adler D. Usefulness of hyperbaric oxygen therapy to inhibit restenosis after percutaneous coronary intervention for acute myocardial infarction or unstable angina pectoris. *Am J Cardiol*. 2004;93(12):1533–1535.
279. Alex J, Laden G, Cale AR, et al. Pretreatment with hyperbaric oxygen and its effect on neuropsychometric dysfunction and systemic inflammatory response after cardiopulmonary bypass: a prospective randomized double-blind trial. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2005;130(6):1623–1630.
280. Yogaratnam JZ, Laden G, Guvendik L, Cowen M, Cale A, Griffin S. Hyperbaric oxygen preconditioning improves myocardial function, reduces length of intensive care stay, and limits complications post coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Cardiovasc Revasc Med*. 2010;11(1):8–19.
281. Li Y, Dong H, Chen M, et al. Preconditioning with repeated hyperbaric oxygen induces myocardial and cerebral protection in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery: a prospective, randomized, controlled clinical trial. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2011;25(6):908–916.
282. Yogaratnam JZ, Laden G, Madden LA, et al. Hyperbaric oxygen: a new drug in myocardial revascularization and protection? *Cardiovasc Revasc Med*. 2006;7(3):146–154.
283. Yang ZJ, Bosco G, Montante A, Ou XI, Camporesi EM. Hyperbaric O2 reduces intestinal ischemia-reperfusion-induced TNF-alpha production and lung neutrophil sequestration. *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2001;85(1-2):96–103.
284. Bosco G, Yang ZJ, Nandi J, Wang J, Chen C, Camporesi EM. Effects of hyperbaric oxygen on glucose, lactate, glycerol and anti-oxidant enzymes in the skeletal muscle of rats during ischaemia and reperfusion. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2007;34(1-2):70–76.
285. Losada DM, Jordani ME, Jordani MC, et al. Should preconditioning hyperbaric oxygenation protect the liver against ischemia-reperfusion injury? An experimental study in a rat model. *Transplant Proc*. 2014;46(1):56–62.
286. Li J, Liu W, Ding S, et al. Hyperbaric oxygen preconditioning induces tolerance against brain ischemia-reperfusion injury by upregulation of antioxidant enzymes in rats. *Brain Res*. 2008;1210:223–229.
287. Liu Y, Sun XJ, Liu J, Kang ZM, Deng XM. Heme oxygenase-1 could mediate the protective effects of hyperbaric oxygen preconditioning against hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury in rats. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2011;38(10):675–682.
288. Perdrizet GA. Preoperative stress conditioning in humans: is oxygen the drug of choice? *Adv Exp Med Biol*. 2016;876:223–231.
289. Veltkamp R, Warner DS, Domoki F, Brinkhous AD, Toole JF, Busija DW. Hyperbaric oxygen decreases infarct size and behavioral deficit after transient focal cerebral ischemia in rats. *Brain Res*. 2000;853(1):68–73.
290. Miljkovic-Lolic M, Silbergleit R, Fiskum G, Rosenthal RE. Neuroprotective effects of hyperbaric oxygen treatment in experimental focal cerebral ischemia are associated with reduced brain leukocyte myeloperoxidase activity. *Brain Res*. 2003;971(1):90–94.
291. Yin D, Zhou C, Kusaka I, et al. Inhibition of apoptosis by hyperbaric oxygen in a rat focal cerebral ischemic model. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2003;23(7):855–864.
292. Mu J, Ostrowski RP, Soejima Y, et al. Delayed hyperbaric oxygen therapy induces cell proliferation through stabilization of cAMP responsive element binding protein in the rat model of MCAo-induced ischemic brain injury. *Neurobiol Dis*. 2013;51:133–143.
293. Guo ZN, Xu L, Hu Q, et al. Hyperbaric oxygen preconditioning attenuates hemorrhagic transformation through reactive oxygen species/thioredoxin-interacting protein/nod-like receptor protein 3 pathway in hyperglycemic middle cerebral artery occlusion rats. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(6):e403–411.
294. Heyman A, Saltzman HA, Whalen RE. The use of hyperbaric oxygenation in the treatment of cerebral ischemia and infarction. *Circulation*. 1966;33(5 suppl):1120–1127.
295. Michalski D, Hartig W, Schneider D, Hobohm C. Use of normobaric and hyperbaric oxygen in acute focal cerebral ischemia - a preclinical and clinical review. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 2011;123(2):85–97.
296. McCormick JG, Houle TT, Saltzman HA, Whaley RC, Roy RC. Treatment of acute stroke with hyperbaric oxygen: time window for efficacy. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2011;38(5):321–334.
297. Efrati S, Fishlev G, Bechor Y, et al. Hyperbaric oxygen induces late neuroplasticity in post stroke patients - randomized, prospective trial. *PLoS ONE*. 2013;8(1):e53716.

298. Rockswold SB, Rockswold GL, Vargo JM, et al. Effects of hyperbaric oxygenation therapy on cerebral metabolism and intracranial pressure in severely brain injured patients. *J Neurosurg*. 2001;94(3):403–411.
299. Rockswold SB, Rockswold GL, Defillo A. Hyperbaric oxygen in traumatic brain injury. *Neurol Res*. 2007;29(2):162–172.
300. Rockswold SB, Rockswold GL, Zaun DA, et al. A prospective, randomized clinical trial to compare the effect of hyperbaric to normobaric hyperoxia on cerebral metabolism, intracranial pressure, and oxygen toxicity in severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2010;112(5):1080–1094.
301. Rockswold SB, Rockswold GL, Zaun DA, Liu J. A prospective, randomized phase II clinical trial to evaluate the effect of combined hyperbaric and normobaric hyperoxia on cerebral metabolism, intracranial pressure, oxygen toxicity, and clinical outcome in severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2013;118(6):1317–1328.
302. Moon RE. Hyperbaric oxygen treatment for air or gas embolism. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2014;41(2):159–166.
303. Moon RE. Air or gas embolism. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019 (in press).
304. Moon RE. Hyperbaric oxygen treatment for decompression sickness. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2014;41(2):151–157.
305. Moon RE, Mitchell SJ. Decompression sickness. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019 (in press).
306. Weaver LK. Carbon monoxide poisoning. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019 (in press).
307. Truss CD, Killenberg PG. Treatment of carbon tetrachloride with hyperbaric oxygen. *Gastroenterology*. 1982;82:767–769.
308. Berk RF, Lane JM, Patel K. Relationship of oxygen and glutathione in protection against carbon tetrachloride-induced hepatic microsomal lipid peroxidation and covalent binding in the rat. Rationale for the use of hyperbaric oxygen to treat carbon tetrachloride ingestion. *J Clin Invest*. 1984;74:1996–2001.
309. Riseman JA, Zamboni WA, Curtis A, Graham DR, Konrad HR, Ross DS. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy for necrotizing fasciitis reduces mortality and the need for debridements. *Surgery*. 1990;108:847–850.
310. Zamboni WA, Kindwall EP. Author's reply to: still unproved in necrotising fasciitis. *Br Med J*. 1993;307:936.
311. Anderson CA, Jacoby I. Necrotizing soft tissue infections. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019 (in press).
312. Davis JC, Heckman JD, DeLee JC, Buckwold FJ. Chronic non-hematogeneous osteomyelitis treated with adjuvant hyperbaric oxygen. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 1986;68:1210–1217.
313. Bartek Jr J, Jakola AS, Skyrman S, et al. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy in spontaneous brain abscess patients: a population-based comparative cohort study. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 2016;158(7):1259–1267.
314. Tomoye EO, Moon RE. Intracranial abscess. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019 (in press).
315. Price JC, Stevens DL. Hyperbaric oxygen in the treatment of rhinocerebral mucormycosis. *Laryngoscope*. 1980;90:737–747.
316. Yohai RA, Bullock JD, Aziz AA, Markert RJ. Survival factors in rhino-orbital-cerebral mucormycosis. *Surv Ophthalmol*. 1994;39:3–22.
317. Bouachour G, Cronier P, Gouello JP, Toulemonde JL, Talha A, Alquier P. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy in the management of crush injuries: a randomized double-blind placebo-controlled clinical trial. *J Trauma*. 1996;41:333–339.
318. Strauss MB. The role of hyperbaric oxygen for acute traumatic ischemias. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019 (in press).
319. Zamboni WA, Wong HP, Stephenson LL. Effect of hyperbaric oxygen on neutrophil concentration and pulmonary sequestration in reperfusion injury. *Arch Surg*. 1996;131:756–760.
320. Kleban SR, Baynosa RC. The effect of hyperbaric oxygen on compromised grafts and flaps. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019 (in press).
321. Elder MJ, Rawstron JA, Davis M. Hyperbaric oxygen in the treatment of acute retinal artery occlusion. *Diving Hyperb Med*. 2017;47(4):233–238.
322. Bagli BS, Cevik SG, Cevik MT. Effect of hyperbaric oxygen treatment in central retinal artery occlusion. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 2018;45(4):421–425.
323. Clarke RE, Tenorio LM, Hussey JR, et al. Hyperbaric oxygen treatment of chronic refractory radiation proctitis: a randomized and controlled double-blind crossover trial with long-term follow-up. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys*. 2008;72(1):134–143.
324. Bennett MH, Feldmeier J, Hampson N, Smee R, Milross C. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy for late radiation tissue injury. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;5:CD005005.
325. Hampson NB, Holm JR, Wreford-Brown CE, Feldmeier J. Prospective assessment of outcomes in 411 patients treated with hyperbaric oxygen for chronic radiation tissue injury. *Cancer*. 2012;118(15):3860–3868.
326. Hammarlund C, Sundberg T. Hyperbaric oxygen reduced size of chronic leg ulcers: a randomized double-blind study. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1994;93:829–833.
327. Zamboni WA, Wong HP, Stephenson LL, Pfeifer MA. Evaluation of hyperbaric oxygen for diabetic wounds - a prospective study. *Undersea Hyperb Med*. 1997;24:175–179.
328. Londahl M, Katzman P, Nilsson A, Hammarlund C. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy facilitates healing of chronic foot ulcers in patients with diabetes. *Diabetes Care*. 2010;33(5):998–1003.
329. Londahl M, Landin-Olsson M, Katzman P. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy improves health-related quality of life in patients with diabetes and chronic foot ulcer. *Diabet Med*. 2011;28(2):186–190.
330. Brolmann FE, Ubbink DT, Nelson EA, Munte K, van der Horst CM, Vermeulen H. Evidence-based decisions for local and systemic wound care. *Br J Surg*. 2012;99(9):1172–1183.
331. Hart GB, O'Reilly RR, Broussard ND, Cave RH, Goodman DB, Yanda RL. Treatment of burns with hyperbaric oxygen. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1974;139:693–696.
332. Niu AKC, Yang C, Lee HC, Chen SH, Chang LP. Burns treated with adjunctive hyperbaric oxygen therapy - a comparative study in humans. *J Hyperb Med*. 1987;2:75–85.
333. Cianci P, Lueders HW, Lee H, et al. Adjunctive hyperbaric oxygen therapy reduces length of hospitalization in thermal burns. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1989;10:432–435.
334. Niezgoda JA, Cianci P, Folden BW, Ortega RL, Slade JB, Storrow AB. The effect of hyperbaric oxygen therapy on a burn wound model in human volunteers. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1997;99:1620–1625.
335. Cianci P, Sato RM, Faulkner J. Adjunctive hyperbaric oxygen therapy in the treatment of thermal burns. In: Moon RE, ed. *Hyperbaric Oxygen Therapy Indications*. North Palm Beach, FL: Undersea & Hyperbaric Medical Society; 2019 (in press).
336. Broughton 2nd G. Management of the brown recluse spider bite to the glans penis. *Mil Med*. 1996;161:627–629.
337. Maynor ML, Moon RE, Klitzman B, Fracica PJ, Canada A. Brown recluse spider envenomation: a prospective trial of hyperbaric oxygen therapy. *Acad Emerg Med*. 1997;4:184–192.
338. Hadanny A, Fishlev G, Bechor Y, Meir O, Efrati S. Nonhealing wounds caused by brown spider bites: application of hyperbaric oxygen therapy. *Adv Skin Wound Care*. 2016;29(12):560–566.
339. Weaver LK, Howe S, Hopkins R, Chan KJ. Carboxyhemoglobin half-life in carbon monoxide-poisoned patients treated with 100% oxygen at atmospheric pressure. *Chest*. 2000;117(3):801–808.
340. Clark JM. Oxygen toxicity. In: Bennett PB, Elliott DH, eds. *The Physiology and Medicine of Diving*. Philadelphia, PA: WB Saunders; 1993:121–169.
341. Michaud G, Reddy C, Ernst A. Whole-lung lavage for pulmonary alveolar proteinosis. *Chest*. 2009;136(6):1678–1681.
342. Committee on Hyperbaric Oxygenation. *Fundamentals of Hyperbaric Medicine*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 1966. Publication No. 1298.

76 Regional Anesthesia in Children

SANTHANAM SURESH and PER-ANNE LONNQVIST

KEY POINTS

- Over the last three decades, regional anesthesia in pediatrics has become an integral part of everyday practice.
- Regional anesthesia appears as a viable option for treating intraoperative and postoperative pain control in children.
- In recent years, there has been an upsurge in the use of peripheral nerve blockade in infants and children.
- Large pediatric databases have contributed pertinent data on the safety of peripheral nerve blockades.
- Peripheral catheter techniques are becoming routine practice with data substantiating their use in pediatric patients.
- The efficiency and safety of these techniques may facilitate early ambulation with improved pain management and includes treatment at home and improved rehabilitation of children.
- Landmark techniques and nerve stimulation localization, which were commonly used for regional anesthesia in children, are being replaced by ultrasound guidance.
- The benefits of the ultrasound-guided regional technique are visualization of targeted nerves and spaces, the spread of injected local anesthetic, and improved safety of the blocks.
- The use of ultrasound guidance for performing peripheral nerve blocks permits the decrease of local anesthetic doses, decrease in number of punctures, and increase in the onset time and duration of sensitive block.
- To avoid local or systemic toxicity, the dose of local anesthetic, in terms of volume and concentration, should be carefully calculated. The introduction of lipid rescue has decreased the incidence of serious complications associated with the use of regional anesthesia.

Introduction

Pediatric regional anesthesia and the research into techniques and applications have followed its use in adults. The adaptation of the pediatric practitioners to several well-described blocks and their use in children have clearly allowed us to explore opportunities for adapting the use of these blocks in even low birth weight neonates. Emerging data from both Europe and North America support the universal acceptance and utilization of regional anesthesia in infants and children. In addition, the introduction of Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS) protocols in children is now gaining acceptance as standardized methods for the delivery of postoperative analgesia.

The use of ultrasound guidance for regional anesthesia has opened several avenues for regional anesthesia techniques. In addition, a recent Cochrane Review demonstrated the effectiveness of ultrasound guidance as well as the opportunity to reduce the local anesthetic dosage for regional techniques (see ref. [1] below).

Relevant Differences Between Children and Adults

ANATOMIC DIFFERENCES

Change in Body Size Resulting From the Growth Process

The most obvious difference between children and adults is body size. "Normal" full-term neonates weigh 3 to 3.5 kg, with a height of 50 cm, and within 10 to 15 years they will multiply their weight by more than 12 (>1200%) and their height by more than 3 (>300%). During the early stages of development the spinal cord occupies the spinal canal entirely, but later the growth of vertebrae exceeds that of the cord,[1a] and the last spinal nerves, the cord, and its envelopes are contained within the spinal canal. At birth the dura mater ends at the level of the third or fourth sacral vertebra and the cord (conus medullaris) at the L3 or L4 level. It is only at the end of the first year of life that the adult level is attained—that is, L1 for the conus medullaris and S2 for the dural sac.

Anatomic relationships and landmarks are constantly changing with growth throughout infancy and childhood, which interferes with regional procedures and requires a working knowledge of the developmental anatomy and the assistance of accurate techniques for localization of anatomic spaces and nerve trunks.

Congenital malformations, genetic disorders, and consequences of fetal and neonatal asphyxia (cerebral palsy) are observed in the pediatric population resulting in surgical procedures that are done to facilitate mobility or adaptation to normal childhood life.

The main pediatric anatomic and physiologic factors that can influence indications for performance of regional block procedures are listed in Table 76.1.

Delayed Ossification of Bones and Fusion of Sacral Vertebrae

Bones of neonates, including vertebrae, are mostly cartilaginous. Sharp needles can easily traverse them because cartilage offers little resistance to penetration, and ossification nuclei can be severely damaged, thus compromising further bone and joint development. Consequently, bone contact should be avoided as often as possible during block procedures, especially in infants. This cartilaginous structure also allows easy penetration of radiographs and ultrasound.

Development of Curvature of the Spine

At birth, a single spinal curvature is present and the orientation of epidural needles is the same regardless of the intervertebral space. Flexures, however, are not fixed, and they can be easily counteracted by forced flexion almost throughout childhood because of persistent spinal flexibility, which is a major advantage in the pediatric period (in addition to the absence of osteophytes).

Loose Attachment of Fasciae and Fluidity of Epidural Fat

Fasciae and perineurovascular sheaths are loosely attached to underlying structures (e.g., nerves, muscles, tendons, vessels). This allows extended spread of local anesthetics, resulting in high-quality nerve blockade regardless of the technique but also, occasionally, undesirable spread to distant nerves or anatomic spaces. The epidural fat is very fluid in infants and young children (up to 6-7 years of age). This fluidity combined with the loose attachment of the sheaths surrounding the spinal roots favors consistent leakage of local anesthetics injected within the epidural space; therefore comparatively large volumes of epidural local anesthetics (up to 1.25 mL/kg) are required to reach desired levels of anesthesia.

Delayed Myelinization of Nerve Fibers

Myelinization begins during the fetal period in cervical neuromeres and extends cephalad and caudad,[2,3] but the process is not finalized before the twelfth year of life. Myelinization is especially poor in infants; the lack of fully developed nerve fibers is the main reason why they are unable to walk. A major pharmacologic consequence of this condition is that local anesthetics can penetrate and block nerve fibers more easily. Diluted solutions of local anesthetics provide the same quality of nerve blockade as with at least twofold more concentrated solutions in adults. Onset time is shortened, but duration of blockade is reduced because trapping of local anesthetics within myelin with subsequent progressive release is reduced and because local circulation and therefore vascular absorption are greater in infants.

PAIN PERCEPTION

Somatic pain is a subjective sensory experience resulting from the intermixing of three main components[4]: motivational-directive, sensory-discriminatory, and cognitive-evaluative. The motivational-directive component is conveyed by unmyelinated C fibers (“slow” pain or “true” pain). Pain leads to protective reflexes such as autonomic reactions, muscle contraction, and rigidity. C fibers are fully functional from early fetal life onward. Connections between C fibers and dorsal horn neurons are not mature before the second week of postnatal life. However, nociceptive stimulations transmitted to the dorsal horn by C fibers elicit long-lasting responses,[5,6] probably as a result of extensive depolarization of surrounding neurons in response to the production of large amounts of substance P. As the number of dorsal horn receptors to substance P decreases during the first 2 weeks of life, this exaggerated response of neonates to nociceptive stimulation progressively disappears. The inhibitory control pathways, which are immature at birth, develop concomitantly.

Painful procedures during the neonatal period modify subsequent pain responses in infancy and childhood,[7] depending on the developmental stage of the infant (full-term vs. preterm) and the infant’s cumulative experience with pain. Noxious procedures in full-term neonates react with heightened behavioral responsiveness, whereas preterm neonates react with a dampened response. When analgesic drugs (local anesthetics or opioids) are administered before painful procedures, infants demonstrate less evidence of procedural pain and a reduction in the magnitude of long-term changes in pain behaviors.[7]

A major difficulty in assessment, and, at times, even identification of pain in children pertains to the inability of young patients to communicate with their caregiver and precisely express their distress and discomfort. During the past 2 decades, pediatric pain has received considerable attention, and reliable age-related pain scales have been developed to evaluate both the severity of pain and the efficacy of its treatment.

PHARMACOLOGY OF LOCAL ANESTHETICS AND ADDITIVES

Two main factors influence pharmacologic properties of medications in children: (1) immaturity of some enzyme pathways and their replacement by other biochemical pathways and (2) progressive increase in body surface area concomitantly with the growth process. Drug prescriptions made according to body surface area are the same as (or in simple ratio with) adult dosing.[8] However, body surface area is not easily obtained and, in practice, doses are calculated according to body weight and require constant adaptation as the child grows up; dosage errors are not infrequent.

TABLE 76.1 Main Anatomic and Physiologic Factors in the Pediatric Period That Can Influence the Selection or Performance of a Regional Block Procedure

Pediatric Factors (Mainly Infants)	Resulting Danger	Implications for Regional Anesthesia
Lower termination of spinal cord	Increased risk for direct trauma to the spinal cord	Avoid epidural approaches above L3 whenever possible.
Lower projection of dural sac	Increased risk for inadvertent penetration of the dura mater	Check for cerebrospinal fluid reflux, including during caudal approaches. Favor low approaches to the epidural space.
Delayed myelinization of nerve fibers	Easier intraneural penetration of local anesthetics	Onset time is shortened, and diluted local anesthetic is as effective as more concentrated anesthetic in adults.
Cartilaginous structure of bones and vertebrae	Reduced resistance to penetration by sharp needles Danger of direct trauma and bacterial contamination of ossification nuclei compromising further bone or joint growth	Avoid use of thin and sharp needles; use short and short beveled ones instead. Do not apply excessive force on needle: if resistance is felt, stop trying to insert the needle farther.
Lack of fusion of sacral vertebrae	Persistence of sacral intervertebral spaces	Intervertebral sacral epidural approaches can be performed throughout childhood.
Delayed development of curvatures of the spine	Cervical lordosis (3-6 months) Lumbar lordosis (8-9 months)	Same orientation of epidural needles is appropriate whatever the spinal level before 6 months of age; then adapt needle orientation to spinal flexures.
Changing axis of coccyx and absence of growth of sacral hiatus	Sacral hiatus comparatively smaller with increasing age	Identification of sacral hiatus becomes more difficult after 6-8 years (increased failure rate of caudal anesthesia).
Delayed ossification and growth of iliac crests	Tuffier line, which joins anterior superior iliac spinous processes, crosses the spine at L5 or lower in infants.	This line passes over L5-S1 interspace instead of L4-L5 interspace.
Increased fluidity of epidural fat	Increased diffusion of local anesthetic up to 6-7 years of age	Excellent blockade after caudal anesthesia can be achieved up to 6-7 years of age.
Loose attachment of sheaths and aponeuroses to underlying structures	Increased spread along nerve paths with danger of penetrating remote anatomic spaces and blocking distant nerves	Larger volume of local anesthetic is required for epidural blocks because of leakage along spinal nerve roots. Smaller volume of local anesthetic is necessary to produce excellent peripheral blocks.
Enzymatic immaturity	Slower metabolism of local anesthetics (usually compensated by other enzyme pathways)	Increased mean body residency time and half-life, with accumulation (especially after repeat injection and continuous infusions of local anesthetic), are characteristic.
Increased extracellular fluids	Increased distribution volume and mean body residency time of local anesthetic (and most medications)	Decreased C_{max} occurs after single injection but accumulation occurs with repeat or continuous injections.
Low plasma protein content (HSA and AGP)	Competition at nonspecific HSA binding sites Limited capacity of specific binding of local anesthetic by AGP, resulting in increased plasma concentration of the free fraction	Increased unbound free fraction of all local anesthetic occurs, with greater danger of systemic toxicity
Increased cardiac output and heart rate	Increased regional blood flow resulting in increased systemic absorption of local anesthetic	Increased systemic absorption of local anesthetic occurs (decreased T_{max} and shorter duration of blockade). Increased efficacy of epinephrine. Vasoconstriction reduces absorption (thus toxicity) and prolongs duration of blockade.
Sympathetic immaturity, diminished autonomic adaptability of the heart, smaller vascular bed in lower extremities	Hemodynamic stability during neuraxial blocks	Fluid preloading and use of vasoactive agents are unnecessary.
Delayed acquisition of body scheme and conceptualization, anxiety	Inability of patients to locate precise body areas Concept of paresthesia not understandable Difficult cooperation	Nerve and space identification requires application of location techniques independent of patient's cooperation. Heavy sedation or general anesthesia is required in most patients (especially when a "dangerous" technique is planned to avoid detrimental consequences of panic attacks at a critical phase of the block procedure).

AGP, α_1-Acid glycoprotein; *C_{max},* peak plasma concentration; *HSA,* human serum albumin; *T_{max},* time to reach C_{max}.

Local Anesthetics

Chemical properties and mechanisms of action of local anesthetics are detailed elsewhere in this book (see also Chapter 29); they are basically the same during the pediatric period and only pharmacokinetic properties may notably differ, especially in neonates and infants.[9]

Local Fixation

Schematically, local anesthetic fixation is reduced and spread is increased in infants in contrast to the occurrence in adults, especially within the epidural space, because the epidural fat is more fluid and less densely packed. The main consequences are (1) shorter onset time of action, (2) more extended longitudinal and circumferential spread of local anesthetics, and (3) shorter duration of action because of reduced secondary release from local binding sites.

Regional Spread Toward the Target. The target of local anesthetic action is voltage-dependent sodium channels located within nerve fibers. Nonionized molecules can achieve penetration of only biologic membranes, and the speed of the process depends on the number and thickness (increasing with age) of sheaths.

Systemic Absorption and Distribution

PLASMA PROTEIN BINDING. Nonionized local anesthetics easily traverse the capillary wall close to the injection site. Because cardiac output and local blood flow are two to three times greater in infants than in adults, systemic local anesthetic absorption is increased accordingly and vasoactive agents such as epinephrine are very effective in slowing systemic uptake.

Once they have penetrated within the vascular bed, local anesthetics undergo plasma protein binding mainly to human serum albumin (HSA) and α_1-acid glycoprotein (AGP), or orosomucoid. HSA has a low affinity for local anesthetics, and many pharmacologic agents can compete at available binding sites. Furthermore, plasma levels of HSA are low during the first months of life, especially in premature and fasted infants; thus the protection offered by HSA against systemic toxicity of local anesthetics is low and decreases postoperatively. The affinity of AGP for local anesthetics is 5000 to 10,000 times greater than that of HSA, which makes AGP very effective to protect the patient from systemic toxicity (which depends on the unbound free form of local anesthetics). However, plasma concentration of AGP is very low at birth (0.2-0.3 g/L) and does not reach adult levels (0.7-1.0 g/L) before 1 year of age.[10-12]

Because plasma concentration of the two proteins able to bind local anesthetics are low at birth, the free fraction of all local anesthetics is increased in infants; therefore the maximum doses of all aminoamides must be significantly reduced in this age group even though the plasma concentration of AGP increases postoperatively, except in case of liver insufficiency.[12] On the other hand, with the stress of surgery, particularly in infants with infection or in an emergency surgery, plasma levels of AGP may increase.[10] The increase in plasma AGP concentration can change the proportion of free fraction of ropivacaine, increasing the plasma concentration of the bound fraction of this molecule and thus protecting from systemic toxicity of local anesthetic.[13] These phenomena can largely reduce the potential risk of local anesthetics after a single injection by retaining their plasma concentration within the safety margins.

RED CELL STORAGE. Once in the bloodstream, local anesthetics distribute to red blood cells, which retain 20% to 30% of the total dose, depending on the anesthetic and the hematocrit. Red cell storage usually has a minor impact on the pharmacokinetics of local anesthetics except in the following situations:

- In neonates: High hematocrit values (which may exceed 70%) and enlargement of erythrocytes (physiologic macrocytosis) result in consistent “entrapment” of local anesthetics, thus lowering peak plasma concentration (C_{max}) values after a single injection but increasing secondary release, thus increasing the half-life of all local anesthetics.
- In infants: Physiologic anemia reduces red cell storage and its protective effect against systemic toxicity of local anesthetics (after a single-shot injection only) when the plasma protein binding sites are saturated—that is, close to toxic blood concentrations.

ABSORPTION FROM THE EPIDURAL SPACE. Absorption of local anesthetics has been well studied in the epidural space. In children and infants, the same kinetics of absorption is reported, but the younger the patient, the less accentuated is the biphasic shape of the plasma concentration curve. The peak plasma concentration and the slope of the decreasing concentration curve are increased,[14] whereas the time (T_{max}) to reach C_{max} remains basically unchanged; for example, the T_{max} of bupivacaine is approximately 30 minutes regardless of the patient’s age.

Ropivacaine is a remarkable exception. After caudal or lumbar epidural injection, T_{max} is prolonged up to 2 hours in infants and C_{max} is increased.[15] This atypical pharmacokinetic profile may be explained by factors such as enzyme immaturity, slower systemic uptake, and decrease in distribution volume.[16,17] Intrinsic vasoconstrictive properties of ropivacaine also may play a role in the same way as the addition of epinephrine. This significant increase in both C_{max} and T_{max} values must be kept in mind because surgeries in infants are brief and the young patient may have left not only the operating room but also the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) less than 2 hours after the caudal or epidural procedure was performed, usually before peak plasma concentration is reached.

Importantly, levobupivacaine displays a similar pharmacokinetic profile. After caudal injection of levobupivacaine 2 mg/kg in infants younger than 2 years of age, the C_{max} range is 0.41 to 2.42 μg/mL (0.91 ± 0.40 μg/mL), which is higher than the C_{max} reported after caudal injection of the same dose of racemic bupivacaine.[18] T_{max} values also are delayed (50 vs. 30 minutes) in infants younger than 3 months of age as a result of reduced plasma clearance.[19]

When repeat injections are considered, the epidural dose must be reduced to keep C_{max} values in the same range as that resulting from the first injection. For the second injection, the following recommendations can be made:

- Reduce the dose to one third of the initial dose and do not inject it less than 30 minutes (lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine) or 45 minutes (bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, ropivacaine) after the first injection;

or

- Inject half of the initial dose, but 60 minutes (lidocaine, mepivacaine, prilocaine, chloroprocaine) or 90 minutes (bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, ropivacaine) after the first injection.

If repeated injections are necessary, dosing should be further reduced to half of the second dose (i.e., one sixth of the initial dose) while respecting the same delay as for the second injection.

Continuous infusions aim to produce a steady-state concentration at the 24th hour postoperatively. This goal is easily achieved in adolescents with infusion rates of approximately 0.3 mg/kg/h of bupivacaine and levobupivacaine or 0.4 mg/kg/h of ropivacaine.

In infants, infusion rates must be reduced,[20,21] not exceeding 0.2 mg/kg/h with bupivacaine (or equipotent doses of other local anesthetics) in infants younger than 4 months and 0.25 mg/kg/h in older infants. Infants younger than 4 months (occasionally up to 9 months) may develop systemic toxicity even at these "safe" infusion rates with racemic bupivacaine because no steady-state plasma concentration is reached, even at 48 hours. In this age group, levobupivacaine[22] or ropivacaine[23] instead of racemic bupivacaine is preferred because stable plateau concentrations are obtained from the twenty-fourth hour onward.

ABSORPTION FROM OTHER INJECTION SITES. Absorption of local anesthetics deposited along mucous membranes is increased in infants.[24] Mucosal topical anesthesia has long been considered contraindicated in this age group. However, the technique can be safely used with certain precautions—selection of specific transmucosal patches[22] or sprays with diluted lidocaine[23,25] and recognition that topical lidocaine exaggerates laryngomalacia.[26]

After cutaneous application of EMLA (lidocaine and prilocaine) cream, peak plasma concentrations occur 4 hours later and remain low[27]—less than 200 ng/mL for lidocaine and less than 131 ng/mL for prilocaine, even in infants younger than 6 months of age.

Absorption of local anesthetics from compartment blocks (e.g., fascia iliaca, umbilical, ilioinguinal, pudendal blocks) follows the same biphasic curve as for the epidural space.[28-31] Because of the extended surface of absorption, injection of highly concentrated solutions of local anesthetics often leads to high, occasionally potentially toxic peak plasma concentrations, especially with 0.5% ropivacaine,[31] whereas use of more diluted solutions results in rather low plasma concentrations.

Absorption from peripheral nerve conduction blocks also follows a similar biphasic curve with different C_{max} and T_{max} values depending on the local anesthetic, the addition of epinephrine, and the site of injection; the more distal the injection, the slower is the absorption process (as in adults).

PULMONARY EXTRACTION. After they have reached the venous bloodstream and undergone plasma protein linkage and erythrocyte storage, aminoamides reach the right cardiac cavities and then the pulmonary circulation, from which they are extracted by the lung. Their plasma concentration in pulmonary veins and then in systemic arterial circulation (especially coronary and cerebral arteries) is consistently decreased. Thus pulmonary extraction represents a temporary protection against systemic toxicity. However, certain medical conditions suppress this protective effect. Some medications such as propranolol decrease pulmonary extraction in a clinically relevant way. Also, children with right-to-left shunts undergo considerable increase in arterial plasma concentration of local anesthetics because of pulmonary circulation bypass; even with small doses of local anesthetics they can develop systemic toxicity.[32]

DISTRIBUTION VOLUME. After intravenous injection, volume distribution at the steady state (Vd_{ss}) is 1 to 2 L/kg for all aminoamides (Table 76.2). After administration at other sites, calculated distribution is increased, often considerably, because of the "flip-flop" effect, especially for long-lasting local anesthetics. In infants and neonates, owing to higher extracellular fluid content (Table 76.3), the distribution volume of all local anesthetics is greater than in adults, the consequences of which are (1) significant decrease in peak plasma concentration of all local anesthetics, thus decreasing the danger of systemic toxicity after a single dose; and (2) accumulation with reinjections, which increases drug plasma concentration and elimination half-life while concomitantly decreasing clearance.

HEPATIC EXTRACTION AND CLEARANCE OF AMINOAMIDES. Short-acting local anesthetics undergo high hepatic extraction (0.65-0.75 ratio for lidocaine), which depends mainly on hepatic blood flow and not much on their plasma concentration. Only limited pediatric data are available for levobupivacaine. After a single injection, the clearance of levobupivacaine increases during the first months of life, but during continuous infusion (even with 0.0625% levobupivacaine), it tends to decrease almost to the same extent as that for racemic bupivacaine, and plasma concentrations do not reach a plateau.[19]

PLACENTAL TRANSFER. In pregnant women, placental extraction may consistently affect tissue distribution of local anesthetics. Protein binding influences placental transfer. The concentration ratio between umbilical venous blood and maternal arterial blood is approximately 0.73 for lidocaine, 0.85 for prilocaine, but only 0.32 for bupivacaine. Chirality may play a role, too, at least for bupivacaine, because placental transfer of D-bupivacaine exceeds that of L-bupivacaine but only with solutions containing epinephrine.[33] Most aminoesters undergo such a rapid plasma hydrolysis that placental transfer is not an issue. Tetracaine and cocaine, the hydrolysis of which is slow, are used only for topical applications or (tetracaine only) spinal anesthesia; systemic uptake is slow and plasma concentrations remain extremely low and thus are not issues again for placental transfer.

METABOLISM. Aminoesters are rapidly hydrolyzed by plasma cholinesterases. This enzymatic activity is low at birth (but no adverse clinical consequences are to be feared) and gradually reaches adult levels by 1 year of

TABLE 76.2 Age-Related Differences in Pharmacokinetic Parameters of Aminoamides

Local Anesthetic	Protein Binding (%)	Distribution Volume at Steady State (Vd_{ss})	Clearance (mL/kg/min)	Elimination Half-Life (h)
LIDOCAINE				
Neonate	25	1.4-4.9	5-19	2.9-3.3
Adult	55-65	0.2-1.0	11-15	1.0-2.2
MEPIVACAINE				
Neonate	36	1.2-2.8	1.6-3	5.3-11.3
Adult	75-80	0.6-1.5	10-13	1.7-6.9
BUPIVACAINE				
Neonate	50-70	3.9 (±2.01)	7.1 (±3.2)	6.0-22.0
Adult	95	0.8-1.6	7-9	1.2-2.9
LEVOBUPIVACAINE				
Infant	50-70	2.7	13.8	4
Adult	95	0.7-1.4	28-39	1.27 ± 0.37
ROPIVACAINE				
Infant	94	2.4	6.5	3.9
Adult	94	1.1 ± 0.25	4-6	1.15 ± 0.41

TABLE 76.3 Variation of Body Fluid Distribution by Age Group

Distribution of Body Fluids	Preterm Neonates (%)	Full-Term Neonates (%)	Infants (%)	Children (%)	Adults (%)
Total body fluids	80-85	70-75	65	55-60	50-55
Intracellular	20-25	30-35	35	35-40	40-45
Extracellular	55-60	45	30	20-25	20

age.[34] Chloroprocaine is eliminated at the fastest rate (4.7 mol/mL/h), procaine at a slower rate (1.1 mol/mL/h), and cocaine at only 0.3 mol/mL/h. Procaine and chloroprocaine are also metabolized, in part, by hepatic cholinesterases.

Aminoamides are metabolized within the liver, where they are subjected to two types of enzymatic reactions. Phase I reactions occur first, during which oxidation of the amide link is achieved within hepatic microsomes by the cytochrome P (CYP)450 enzyme superfamily, then phase II reactions, during which glucuronic acid or amino acid residues are appended to phase I metabolites, produce atoxic and water-soluble compounds, which are thus easily eliminated from the body.

CYP450 enzymatic activities are reduced during the first months of life. Bupivacaine is mainly metabolized by CYP3A4 in adults, but this enzyme is defective in infants. However, fetal CYP3A7 remains very active in infants, thus allowing metabolism of bupivacaine to be almost as effective as with CYP3A4.[24] Ropivacaine and levobupivacaine[19] are metabolized by CYP1A2, which is not fully functional before the third year, and, to a minor extent, by CYP3A4. This enzyme immaturity is clinically relevant but with limited consequences (lower clearance, delayed T_{max} and, for ropivacaine only, increased C_{max} but within clinically acceptable levels): it does not preclude administering these local anesthetics in neonates and infants.

Phase II reactions, especially glucuro-Vd_{ss} conjugation, are immature at birth and remain so until the third year of life. However, other conjugation pathways such as sulfoconjugation are active and quite effective during the first months of life.

ELIMINATION HALF-LIFE. Elimination half-life ($t_{1/2}\beta$) depends on both distribution and metabolism. It can be calculated using the formula below (*Cp* is the plasma clearance and Vd_{ss} the distribution volume at the steady state):

$$\frac{t_1}{2}\beta = (0.693 \times Vd_{SS})/Cp$$

Basically, $t_{1/2}\beta$ is the same in children older than 1 year of age and adults, mainly because the increase in Vd_{ss} is compensated by concomitant increase in *Cp* (related in part to higher hepatic blood flow in children, whose liver accounts for 4% of body weight, vs. only 2% in adults). Before the age of 1 year, *Cp* is low and elimination half-life of all local anesthetics is prolonged (see Table 76.2), thus favoring accumulation with repeat injections. Nevertheless, Bricker and colleagues[35] measured no consistent differences in pharmacokinetic parameters between infants and adults.

SYSTEMIC TOXICITY. Clinical signs of neurologic toxicity have been reported with plasma concentration ranging from 7 to 10 µg/mL for lidocaine or mepivacaine and 1.5 to 2 µg/mL (intraoperatively) to 2 to 2.5 µg/mL (postoperatively) with bupivacaine. However, plasma concentrations of bupivacaine higher than 4 µg/mL have been

TABLE 76.4 Commonly Used Additives and Recommended Doses in Pediatric Regional Anesthesia

Additive	Recommended Doses	Maximum Doses
MORPHINE		
Epidural	30 μg/kg	50 μg/kg
Intrathecal	10 μg/kg	20 μg/kg
Fentanyl (epidural)	1-1.5 μg/kg	2.5 μg/kg
Sufentanil (epidural)	0.25-0.5 μg/kg	0.75 μg/kg
Clonidine (epidural or along peripheral nerves)	1-1.5 μg/kg	2 μg/kg
Ketamine* (epidural or occasionally along peripheral nerves)	0.5 mg/kg	1 mg/kg

*Preservative-free ketamine (preferably preservative-free *S*-ketamine).

reported without evidence of clinical toxicity. From studies in adult volunteers, the following thresholds of toxicity of the unbound form of local anesthetics have been defined:

- 0.3 μg/mL for unbound bupivacaine
- 0.6 μg/mL for unbound levobupivacaine or ropivacaine

Because plasma protein binding is lower in infants, hazards of systemic toxicity might be increased, the more so as cardiac toxicity is usually concomitant with, not preceded by, central nervous system toxicity.

Opioids

Elimination half-life of neuraxial opioids is considerably increased in neonates and infants.[36] After epidural injection, morphine reaches its peak concentration in plasma within 10 minutes, but this concentration is very low and unable to provide clinically relevant analgesia.[35,37] Elimination half-life from cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) is similar to that from plasma, but CSF concentrations are very high after epidural injection; therefore it takes 12 to 24 hours before they decrease below minimal effective concentrations (near 10 ng/mL). Usual doses of neuraxial narcotics are listed in Table 76.4. Short-acting lipid-soluble opioids (fentanyl, sufentanil) can be used, but, as in adults, they do not significantly prolong postoperative pain relief unless repeat injections are given or a continuous infusion is established. Their analgesic effect is mainly a systemic effect, and the patient may experience acute respiratory depression (sudden apnea); this condition is very different from the progressive and delayed respiratory depression, preceded by generalized pruritus, sedation, and bradypnea, reported after excessive doses of epidural and intrathecal morphine.

Other Additives

Epinephrine 5 mg/L or 1/200,000 concentration is frequently coadministered with local anesthetics to decrease plasma peak concentration[28] and prolong the duration of blockade, especially in children younger than 4 years of age.[38,39] Another benefit expected from epinephrine is early detection of accidental intravenous injection (test dose) because young children are very sensitive to arrhythmogenic properties of epinephrine. Neuraxial epinephrine has long been suspected to potentially elicit spinal ischemia: even though this fear proved to be unfounded, many anesthesiologists recommend using lower concentrations of epinephrine (2.5 mg/L or 1/400,000) in local anesthetic solutions administered to neonates and infants; at such concentrations, the absorption rate of caudal bupivacaine is decreased by 25%.[39]

Clonidine, like epinephrine, is an α_2-adrenergic agonist that offers several benefits in children when added to local anesthetics either neuraxially[40-42] or peripherally (see Table 76.4)[43]; it increases (by a factor of ~2) the duration of nerve blockade without eliciting hemodynamic disorders, decreases plasma peak concentration of the local anesthetics, and produces a slight sedation for 1 to 3 hours postoperatively (which does not preclude hospital discharge). Addition of clonidine often eliminates the need for placement of a catheter to prolong postoperative pain relief, thus reducing morbidity and costs. However, its clearance in neonates is approximately one third of that in adults owing to immature elimination pathways[44] and several instances of respiratory depression in neonates and small infants have been reported[45,46]; this additive should be avoided during the first 6 months of life.[47]

Ketamine, especially S-ketamine, is an interesting adjuvant because of its blocking effects on *N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptors and interaction with sodium channels in a local anesthetic–like fashion (it shares a binding site with local anesthetics). Coadministered at a dose of 0.25 to 0.5 mg/kg, ketamine prolongs the duration of analgesia for many hours[41,48] with no significant adverse effects. This is not approved for use in the United States for this indication.

Many other agents have been occasionally used as adjuvants to local anesthetics.[49] Even though some of them proved to have analgesic properties (corticosteroids, buprenorphine, neostigmine, tramadol, and midazolam), they all produce significant adverse effects that preclude their use in most patients. Furthermore, their administration to pediatric patients raises ethical questions, and they are not approved for pediatric use in the United States.

PHYSIOLOGIC FACTORS

Surgery generates a neuroendocrine stress response in neonates, infants, and children,[4,50] resulting in undesirable alterations of the metabolic state and immune function.[51] Epidural anesthesia diminishes or even suppresses this stress response.[52-54] Central blocks do not affect left ventricular function and are virtually free of measurable hemodynamic effects, at least up to the age of 8 years.[55,56] Epidural anesthesia does not result in systemic or pulmonary hemodynamic changes as measured by mean blood pressure, end-diastolic diameter of the left ventricle, ejection fraction of the left ventricle, and mean velocity circumferential fiber shortening.[57] However, pulmonary Doppler flow velocity is decreased during epidural anesthesia, probably owing to an increase in the pulmonary arterial resistance. Preloading with saline is not recommended in children, and, even in adolescents, fluid therapy or injection of vasoactive agents is rarely required.

PSYCHOLOGICAL FACTORS

Children are frightened by new environmental conditions in the operating room, and most of them cannot cope with their anxiety.[58,59] They feel abandoned by their parents and exposed to strangers who are threatening them with needles. Furthermore, children younger than 10 years of age have not acquired their complete body image and cannot clearly make a distinction between adjacent parts of their body such as forearm and arm. Young patients cannot understand the concepts of paresthesia and differential blockade ("touch" is not "pain"). Thus localization of nerve trunks and anatomic spaces requires using physical methods independent of the patient's cooperation (loss of resistance [LOR] seeking, nerve stimulation, ultrasound techniques). Infants and most children cannot cope with their anxiety and fear of needles; therefore sedation or light general anesthesia may be needed before attempting a block procedure to avoid panic attacks and unwanted movements. Prospective regional anesthesia registries have demonstrated that awake versus asleep placement of regional blocks in children do not have any deleterious effects in outcomes.[60]

Regional anesthesia has a significant psychological impact. A pain-free postoperative course improves the morale of the patient, the family, and the nurses. Surgeons are happy to examine quiet, alert, and manageable patients. Occasionally, negative psychological effects can be observed—persistent motor (even sensory) blocks postoperatively may be frightening to some children (3-5 years of age especially) and their parents even though precise explanations had been given preoperatively as to the expected course of events during the postoperative period. Offering friendly environmental conditions, empathy, and additional explanations on local anesthetic pharmacology can reduce this postoperative anxiety.

Indications, Contraindications, and Complications

INDICATIONS

Indications for regional anesthesia in children are not identical to those in adults, not only because surgical pathologic processes are quite different but also because regional block procedures are used as techniques of analgesia in anesthetized children rather than in conscious or lightly sedated adult patients. There are data to demonstrate that performing regional anesthesia in children can be done with them asleep safely.[60,61]

Anesthetic Indications

Some children and adolescents are occasionally willing to undergo their surgery under regional anesthesia while remaining conscious. If a regional block can provide adequate analgesia, there is no reason to refuse such management, especially for short-duration surgery. Occasionally, such a management approach can be considered in children at risk for severe complications during general anesthesia from certain problems, such as the following[62]:

- Testicular torsion or incarcerated hernia at immediate risk for rupture in children who have nothing by mouth (NPO) guideline violation
- Inguinal hernia repair in former preterm infants younger than 60 weeks of postconceptual age who are at risk for developing severe postoperative apnea
- Severe acute or chronic respiratory insufficiency
- Emergency conditions in children with severe metabolic or endocrine disorders
- Neuromuscular disorders, myasthenia gravis, or some types of porphyria
- Some congenital syndromes and skeletal deformities

Cervical instability (making tracheal intubation a risk for tetraplegia) is seen in children with Chiari malformation, achondroplasia, and Down syndrome. Patients with facial deformities, microstomia, metabolic disorders like Hurler and Hunter syndromes and mandibular hypoplasia can be difficult to intubate, thus making general anesthesia less safe. Also, infants with epidermolysis bullosa are extremely difficult to manage under general anesthesia; occasionally, regional block procedures may represent an alternative with lower morbidity.[63-65] Trauma patients with extremity lesions may greatly benefit from peripheral nerve block for alleviating pain without impeding monitoring and evaluation of head trauma or hemodynamic disorders and allowing wound dressing as well as temporary stabilization of fractures, provided that appropriate precautions are taken to avoid masking development of compartment syndromes (see later).

Intraoperative and Postoperative Analgesia and Procedural Pain

Analgesia is currently the main indication for regional blocks in children because they offer the best risk-benefit ratio for many outpatient and inpatient surgeries: orthopedic (including scoliosis surgery), thoracic, urologic, and upper and lower abdominal surgeries.[66-68] Cardiac surgery is a more controversial indication,[69,70] and many anesthesiologists are reluctant to perform neuraxial blocks in children scheduled to receive anticoagulants although this is changing with more recent guidelines from the American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine (ASRA) regarding heparinization after 60 minutes of placing the block.

Procedural pain can easily be anticipated and thus prevented mostly by topical anesthesia or infiltration techniques.[71-73] The indications for perineural catheters depend on the expected duration of postoperative pain.[74] Also, surgery associated with intense postoperative pain (major orthopedic surgery, hand or foot amputation) and postoperative pain management or painful physical therapy necessary for several days (knee arthroscopy and repair) are excellent indications for catheters.[75]

A comparative evaluation of suitability, and risk-benefit ratio for most regional techniques is provided in Table 76.5.

Management of Nonsurgical Pain

Relief of pain associated with some medical conditions such as herpes zoster, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), mucosal and cutaneous lesions, and cancer can be achieved using regional block techniques.[76,77] Children with sickle cell disease may greatly benefit from epidural analgesia during vasoocclusive crisis or thoracic syndromes with intractable pain by other means, provided that pain is localized to limited areas and concomitant fever is not due to bacteremia.[78,79]

Chronic Pain Relief and Palliative Care

Chronic pain is less unusual in children than commonly believed, and regional techniques such as epidural anesthesia, stellate ganglion blockade, or continuous peripheral nerve blocks may help treat this condition, especially in case of phantom limb pain and complex regional pain syndrome (CRPS), leading to pain reduction (minimal pain scores), facilitating physiotherapy, and functional rehabilitation.[80] Treatment of intractable refractory pain from a chronic dislocated hip with long-time perineural catheter has been described.[81] Erythromelalgia, a rare but extremely painful condition, can be successfully relieved by continuous epidural analgesia.[82] Cancer pain resulting from either primary tumor or metastases also can be controlled by regional techniques when other medications fail or produce too many adverse effects. Virtually all techniques of regional anesthesia have been reported in this ultimate management of pain in children, from epidural analgesia to intrathecal infusions to celiac or brachial plexus block.[83,84]

Nonanalgesic Indications

For certain medical conditions, analgesia is not the only benefit expected from regional blockade. Sympathetic blockade is essential to protect and improve blood supply to an upper or lower extremity in a context of severe trauma. Also, continuous epidural blockade proved to be effective in treating vascular insufficiency resulting from Kawasaki disease, accidental intra-arterial injection of an anesthetic drug,[85] penile block with a local anesthetic containing epinephrine, and severe frostbite. Axillary and stellate ganglion blocks have also successfully treated acute vascular insufficiency of the upper limb.[86]

TABLE 76.5 Evaluation of the Suitability and Benefit-to-Risk Ratio and Feasibility With Ultrasound Guidance of Most Techniques of Regional Anesthesia in Children

Technique	Ease of Performance	Benefit-to-Risk Ratio	Feasibility With Ultrasound	Catheter Placement
CENTRAL BLOCKS				
Spinal block	+ to ++	+++	Mild	No
Caudal block	+++	++++	Easy	Occasionally
Lumbar epidural anesthesia	+++	+++	Difficult	Yes
Thoracic epidural anesthesia	+++	+++	Difficult	Yes
Sacral epidural anesthesia	++	++	Difficult	Yes
Cervical epidural anesthesia	Avoid	Very low	Avoid	Avoid
LIMB PLEXUS AND PERIPHERAL NERVE CONDUCTION BLOCKS				
Interscalene block	++	++	Mild	Occasionally
Parascalene block	+++	++++	Mild	Yes
Subclavicular block	+++	+++	Mild	Yes
Axillary block	++++	++++	Easy	Occasionally
Psoas compartment block	+++	++	Difficult	Occasionally
Femoral block	+++	++++	Easy	Yes
Proximal sciatic blocks	++ to +++	+++	Mild	Yes
Subgluteal sciatic block	+++	++++	Easy	Yes
Popliteal sciatic block	+++	++++	Easy	Yes
Distal block	++ to +++	+++	No	No (except tibial nerve at ankle)
TRUNCAL COMPARTMENT BLOCKS				
Intercostal block	++	+	No	Occasionally
Intrapleural block	++++	0 to +	No	Yes
Thoracic paravertebral block	++	+	Difficult	Yes
Rectus sheath block	++++	+++	Easy	No
Ilioinguinal-iliohypogastric	++++	+++	Easy	Occasionally
nerve block		+++	Easy	Occasionally
Transabdominis plane block	++++	++++	Mild	No
Penile block	++++	+++	Difficult	No
Pudendal nerve block	+++			
FACIAL BLOCKS				
Trigeminal superficial block	++++	++++	Mild	No
Suprazygomatic maxillary nerve	+++	+++	Mild	Occasionally
block		+++	Difficult	No
Mandibular nerve block	+++			
OTHER TECHNIQUES				
Bier block	++ to +++	+	No	No
Wound infiltration	++++	+++	No	Yes
Topical anesthesia	++++	++++ (skin)	No	No

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND LIMITATIONS

Absolute Contraindications to Neuraxial Blocks

Medical conditions that contraindicate neuraxial blocks in children are (1) severe coagulation disorders, which may be constitutional (hemophilia), acquired (disseminated intravascular coagulation), or therapeutic; (2) severe infection such as septicemia or meningitis; (3) intracranial tumor with increased intracranial pressure; (4) true allergy to local anesthetics (a very rare condition even with aminoesters); (5) certain chemotherapies (such as with cisplatin) prone to induce subclinical neurologic lesions that can be acutely aggravated by a block procedure; (6) uncorrected hypovolemia; and (7) cutaneous or subcutaneous lesions, whatever their nature (infection, angioma, dystrophic, tattoo) at the contemplated site of puncture. Parental refusal is a nonmedical absolute contraindication.

Depending on the clinical condition of the patient and the possibility to cure (at least temporarily) the impeding disorder, a regional block may be considered in spite of the existence of a contraindication. After correction of hypovolemia, injection of factor VIII to a hemophilic child, or effective antibiotic treatment of a septicemic patient,[87] a central block may be performed, provided that the expected benefits consistently outweigh the risks by comparison with other techniques of analgesia. Also, some authors consider it acceptable to perform a caudal block in children with shunt devices under protection of antibioprophylaxis.[88] In a single-center study, it was demonstrated that caudal blocks in children with VP shunts can be safely performed.[89]

Absolute Contraindications to Peripheral Nerve Block Procedure

True allergy to local anesthetics is the only absolute medical contraindication to peripheral nerve blocks. Coagulation disorders are less hazardous than during neuraxial blocks, but it is prudent to avoid techniques with a danger of arterial trauma, especially in an area where compression is difficult or impossible (infraclavicular brachial plexus block, psoas compartment block).[61] Septicemia does not necessarily contraindicate peripheral nerve blockade if expected benefits are significant. Local skin infection at the puncture site should be considered before performing a peripheral nerve block, especially if a catheter is implanted. Hypovolemia should preferably be corrected but does not preclude peripheral blocks because hemodynamic consequences are minimal.

Patients at Risk for Compartment Syndrome

Because pain is one of the cardinal symptoms of a compartment syndrome, any pain treatment, including regional anesthesia, is often claimed to be contraindicated because it can suppress this manifesting symptom, thus delaying the rescuing surgery. Such a refusal of pain management is not acceptable either medically and ethically.[90] Fractures are very frequent in the pediatric population, whereas compartment syndromes are very rare; whether or not a compartment syndrome is in progress, intense pain is a constant feature. Adequate pain management, including continuous epidural analgesia,[91] does not preclude early diagnosis, and this fact was confirmed by the National Pediatric Epidural Audit in Great Britain.[92]

The European Society of Regional Anaesthesia and ASRA collaboration recently published guidelines for the use of regional anesthesia and compartment syndrome.[61]

Excruciating pain is not a "manifesting" symptom but a late symptom of compartment syndrome. Patients at risk should be monitored adequately, which is not done most of the time even in university hospitals, and precautions must be taken including avoidance of closed plaster casts; elbow immobilization with an angle greater than 90 degrees[93]; closed reduction of supracondylar fractures of the humerus; repeat clinical evaluation of the distal perfusion and tissue oxygenation of the limb; and noninvasive monitoring of the intracompartmental pressure, even though this monitoring is not 100% reliable. If the risk is considered high (e.g., displaced humeral fractures, intramedullary nail fixation of tibia or radius, obtunded patients), intracompartmental pressure close to the fracture site should be invasively monitored. The procedure is easy and almost inexpensive, requiring only a venous cannula, an intravenous line, and a pressure gauge (as for central venous pressure measurement).[94,95]

Hemoglobinopathies

Children with sickle cell disease are prone to develop hemolysis in case of desaturation and undergo repeat episodes of extreme pain as a result of extended microthromboses when local blood flow slows down (e.g., hemoconcentration, shock, surgical tourniquet).[96] In the case of a danger of hypoxemia (respiratory disease) or hemodynamic disorders (surgery known to produce significant blood loss, tourniquet placement), regional (especially neuraxial) blocks should be avoided. Regional anesthesia has been shown to improve symptoms in children with sickle cell disease and decrease their pain.[78]

Bone and Joint Deformities

Minor or localized malformations of the spine (hemivertebra, spina bifida occulta, Scheuermann disease) do not preclude neuraxial blocks, whereas extended malformations of vertebrae, spinal fusion, myelomeningoceles, open spina bifida, and major spondylolisthesis are relative contraindications.[89] Tethered cord syndrome is not unusual and is often misdiagnosed. The diagnosis must be suspected if a clump of hairs or a dystrophic lesion of the skin is present at the lower extremity of the spinous process line or in the case of minor neurologic disorders involving pelvic nerves (minimal sphincter disorders, perineal dysesthesia). This can be diagnosed using ultrasound guidance. Although some authors consider that this condition is not a contraindication,[97] it is preferable to select another technique of analgesia than epidural blockade.[89] Many pediatric syndromes, cerebral palsy, and kyphoscoliosis are associated with bone and joint deformities that represent more of a technical difficulty than a contraindication to performing a regional block.

Preexisting Neurologic Disorders or Diseases

Controlled epilepsy is not a contraindication to regional anesthesia, including neuraxial blockade. Preexisting central nervous system disorders and degenerative axonal diseases have long been considered to be contraindications, at least relative, even though no data support the hypothesis that a regional block could worsen their course.[98]

COMPLICATIONS

Complications of regional anesthesia are essentially the same as those in adults. The complication rate found recently in a large epidemiologic study was 0.12%, with two major risk factors—age and the central blocks.[99] They can be classified as local, regional, and general (or systemic).

Local Complications

The four main types of local complications are as follows:

1. Inappropriate needle insertion damaging the nerve and surrounding anatomic structures
2. Tissue coring and introduction of epithelial cells into tissues where they do not belong and where they can develop as compressive tumors (especially in the spinal canal)[100]
3. Injection of neurotoxic solutions (syringe mismatch, epinephrine close to a terminal artery)
4. Leakage around the puncture site, especially when a catheter has been introduced, which may cause partial block failure and favor bacterial contamination (very rare)

These local complications are easily avoidable by using adequate devices and applying standard precautions (appropriate dressing and bacterial precautions). Tunneling the catheter and applying a slightly compressive dressing can reduce leakage around the catheter.

Local anesthetics are locally toxic. Myelin, effective protection of nerve roots, is less abundant or absent in children, potentially making the nerves more sensitive to local anesthetics. In animals, it has been clearly demonstrated that the sensitivity of nerve fibers to local anesthetics is inversely correlated with age.[101] However, in most cases, perineural injection is around muscle. The myotoxicity of local anesthetics has been previously demonstrated in humans and animals,[102] primarily through mitochondrial damage. This also has been demonstrated in young animals.[103] By comparing continuous bupivacaine perineural administration in adult rats and young rats, the authors showed that muscle, mitochondrial, and ultrastructural toxicity was significantly greater in the juvenile group,[103] thus emphasizing the need to use lower dosages in younger patients.

Systemic Complications

Systemic complications usually result from accidental intravenous injection of local anesthetics or, less frequently, excessive dosing.[9,104] Systemic toxicity is essentially of two types: neurologic and cardiac resulting from heart failure by blocking sodium and potassium channels. Early signs of neurologic toxicity (tinnitus, malaise, metallic taste in the mouth) are unfortunately masked by general anesthesia. The main complications are heart conduction disorders, cardiac arrhythmias (bradycardia or tachycardia), and atrioventricular block. QRS widening, bradycardia, and torsade de pointes are followed by ventricular fibrillation, asystole, or both.[105] Nevertheless, signs of cardiac and neurologic toxicity occur at lower plasma concentrations of bupivacaine than ropivacaine.[106] This toxicity may be aggravated by a decrease in plasma binding protein, mainly AGP, resulting in a greater proportion of the unbound form of local anesthetic. The plasma concentration of this protein is low at birth, and tends to increase with the age of the child to reach values equivalent to those of adults at the age of 10 months.[107] However, special care must be taken during continuous injections; the dosage of local anesthetic should be systematically reduced in very young children or after prolonged administration (>48 hours).

Systemic complications can be life threatening and should be managed in the same way as in adults. The major difference between adults and children is that cardiovascular complications are not preceded by neurologic signs but are concomitant with cerebral toxicity.[108] In addition to pharmacokinetic factors, the rapid heart rate of children may increase the risk for cardiac toxicity induced by local anesthetic toxicity. Even if toxic events occur with ropivacaine, small doses of epinephrine should produce rapid recovery. Impaired ventricular conduction is the primary manifestation of local anesthetic toxicity. Treatment includes oxygenation, cardiac massage, and epinephrine, which is given in small incremental boluses beginning with 1 to 2 μg/kg.[109] If ventricular fibrillation persists, defibrillation (2-4 J/kg) is performed. Although resuscitation measures must be initiated immediately, the specific treatment of local anesthetic toxicity is rapid administration of Intralipid.[109] The recommended dose of 20% Intralipid for pediatric patients is 2 to 5 mL/kg by intravenous bolus. If cardiac function does not return, this dose (up to 10 mL/kg**)** is repeated.[24]

Epidemiology

Available pediatric information is limited. The first report of the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) closed claims analysis contained 238 pediatric cases (10% of claims), but only 7 involved children who received regional anesthesia[110]; however, at that time regional anesthesia was not commonly used in children, making this apparently low rate of complications meaningless. In 1996, the 1-year prospective study of the French-Language Society of Pediatric Anesthesiologists evaluated 85,412 pediatric anesthetic procedures, including 24,409 involving regional anesthesia.[111] Twenty-three complications (no sequelae, no death, and no legal consequences) were found, all following neuraxial blocks. In 2000, the Australian Incident Monitoring Study[112] included 2000 claims involving 160 pediatric cases with a regional block procedure (83 epidurals, 42 spinals, 14 brachial plexus, 4 Bier blocks, 3 ophthalmic blocks, and 14 local infiltrations). The largest single cause of complications was circulatory problems; 24 drug errors (including 10 "wrong drugs" and 14 "inappropriate use") were found. In 2007, the British National Pediatric Epidural Audit[92] reported 96 incidents in 10,633 epidural blocks performed, as follows:

- Fifty-six (0.53%) were associated with the insertion or maintenance of epidural anesthesia, and most were of low severity; only one child had residual effects from cauda equina syndrome (after a programming error of the infusion pump).
- Forty (0.38%), mainly pressure sores,[92] were believed to be associated with the epidural infusion technique.

A significantly higher rate of incidents occurred in the neonatal age group, mainly because of drug errors (13 cases) and local anesthetic toxicity (1 case); these incidents were not related to catheter insertion. Twenty-eight infection-related incidents occurred, of which 85% were relatively minor skin infections; caudal catheters did not result in increased incidence of infections. Six children older than 8 years of age had mild postdural puncture headache. Four patients developed a compartment syndrome, but the condition was not masked by the epidural infusion.

From November 2005 to October 2006, a large epidemiologic study recorded the characteristics and developments of regional anesthesia in children in 47 French hospitals.[99] As previously demonstrated by Rochette and colleagues,[113] the authors reported a radical change in regional practice among French anesthesiologists with a transition from using predominantly neuraxial blocks to peripheral nerve blocks, including catheter techniques. A recent 1-year prospective survey of regional anesthesia evaluated complications and side effects in 31,132 cases of regional anesthesia. Complications (41, involving 40 patients) were rare and usually minor and did not result in sequelae. The study recorded a very low overall rate of complications of 0.12%, significantly six times lower for peripheral blocks than for neuraxial blocks. Age was also a risk factor, because the incidence of complications was higher before 6 months of life than after (0.4% vs. 0.1% after 6 months of life). Fifteen cases of cardiotoxicity were observed, of which 87% occurred with a central block. The occurrence of complications does not seem to increase with the use of catheters.

A large North American Regional anesthesia registry (Pediatric Regional Anesthesia Network- PRAN) has just published prospective data on 100,000 blocks in over 20 centers. The incidence of systemic toxicity was 0.76:10,000 cases with the majority occurring in infants. No permanent neurologic deficits were reported; however the risk of transient neurologic deficit was 2.4:10,000 and was not different between peripheral and neuraxial blocks.[114]

In conclusion, regional block procedures—mainly neuraxial blocks—are associated with the occurrence of adverse incidents (~0.5%) that are mostly minor but occasionally severe. The majority of these complications result from insufficient precautions at the time of the block procedure (drug errors) and postoperatively (pressure sores). Also, of major importance is the fact that compartment syndrome is not hidden by regional anesthesia provided that adequate monitoring is guaranteed.[61]

Selection of Materials and Anesthetic Solution

SELECTION OF BLOCK PROCEDURE

Careful selection of block procedures is based first on anatomic considerations. Sensory blockade must cover all areas from which noxious stimuli can originate (e.g., operative field, sites for skin or bone graft tissue, placement of tourniquet or drains). Then, the potential morbidity of the technique, from the medical condition of the patient, the requested positioning, or the "intrinsic" morbidity of the technique itself, must be evaluated. The anticipated duration of postoperative pain is the third most important factor to take into account because the regional technique should provide adequate analgesia until minor analgesics are sufficient. The anesthesiologist will select one of the following approaches:

- A single-shot technique with either a short-acting or a long-acting local anesthetic
- A single-shot technique with local anesthetic and adjuvants
- A catheter technique with repeat or continual injections of local anesthetic

SELECTION OF EQUIPMENT

Epidural anesthesia (sacral, lumbar, or thoracic) is performed using Tuohy needles ranging in size from 17 to 21 gauge and in length from 50 to 90 cm; shorter Tuohy needles (25 cm) would be more appropriate in neonates and infants but are not easily available. Caudal anesthesia has been performed in the past with almost all types of needles. This is no longer acceptable, and only short beveled needles (Crawford needles) with a guide sealing their lumen or intravenous cannulas with an introducer needle should be used. Ultrasound guidance has not been introduced for placement of epidural catheters in neonates and infants with greater precision and less complications.[115]

Spinal anesthesia in premature infants can be performed using either a neonatal lumbar puncture needle (22 gauge) or, preferably, a thinner spinal needle (shorter than 50 mm). The distal end of the needle does not have the same importance as in adults because the incidence of postdural puncture headache remains low in children and may not be influenced by the design of the tip of the needle.[116,117] What matters most is the distance separating the tip of the needle from its distal orifice; this distance must be as short as possible to avoid extradural leakage if the needle has not been introduced far enough through the dura mater. Pencil-point needles have no advantage in infants and young children; they do not improve the results and are even suspected to decrease the success rate by favoring subdural spread of the local anesthetic. A summary of recommended needles for most regional block procedures in pediatric patients is provided in Table 76.6.

SELECTION OF DRUG

The prerequisites for selecting a local anesthetic are not exactly the same in children as in adults because regional techniques are mostly used for analgesic purposes rather than anesthesia. The factors to be considered are (1) site and severity of surgery, (2) expected duration of intense postoperative pain, and (3) hospital stay versus early discharge. Usual doses are listed in Table 76.7.

Lidocaine, chloroprocaine, and mepivacaine are preferred for outpatient surgery. For inpatient surgery, ropivacaine, levobupivacaine, and bupivacaine are commonly used. Nevertheless, it is now recommended that L-enantiomers be used especially for continuous infusions; they are well known for their lower cardiac toxicity compared with bupivacaine.[118] The pharmacologic characteristics of ropivacaine can achieve a differential nerve block[119] and have limited myotoxicity in contrast to bupivacaine.[120] After

TABLE 76.6 Recommended Devices for Most Regional Block Procedures in Children

Block Procedure	Recommended Device	Alternate Device
Intradermal wheals and metacarpal blocks	Intradermal needles (25 gauge)	None
Subcutaneous infiltrations and field blocks	Standard intramuscular needles (21-23 gauge)	Intradermal needles (25 gauge)
Compartment blocks (thoracic paravertebral, rectus sheath, ilioinguinal-iliohypogastric, pudendal, penile)	Short (25-50 mm) and short beveled (45-55 degrees) needles	Epidural needles (intercostal block) Neonatal spinal needle
Peripheral mixed nerve blocks and plexus blocks	Insulated 21-23 gauge short beveled needles of appropriate length connected to a nerve stimulator (0.5-1 mA) Specific catheter (for continuous techniques)	Sheathed pencil-point needles Unsheathed needles only when ultrasound guidance is used Epidural catheter (for continuous techniques)
Spinal anesthesia	Spinal needle (24-25 gauge; 30, 50 or 100 mm long, Quincke bevel, stylet)	Neonatal lumbar puncture needle (22 gauge, 30-50 mm long) Whitacre spinal needle
Caudal anesthesia	Short (25-30 mm) and short beveled (45-degrees) needle with stylet	Intravenous cannula (22-18 gauge), especially for epidural catheter insertion Pediatric epidural (occasionally spinal) needle
Epidural anesthesia	Tuohy needle (22, 20, and 19/18 gauge); LOR syringe and medium epidural catheter	Crawford, Whitacre, or Sprotte epidural needles appropriately sized; LOR syringe and medium epidural catheter

LOR, Loss of resistance.

TABLE 76.7 Usual and Maximum Recommended Doses of Local Anesthetic for Conduction Nerve Blocks (Excluding Bier Blocks and Spinal Anesthesia)

Local Anesthetics	Usual Concentration (%)	Maximum Dose of Plain Solution (mg/kg)	Maximum Dose With Epinephrine (mg/kg)
AMINOESTERS			
Procaine	1-2	7	10
Chloroprocaine	2-3	7	10
AMINOAMIDES			
Lidocaine	0.25-2	5 (or 400 mg)	10 (or 700 mg)
Mepivacaine	0.25-2	5-7 (or 400 mg)	Not available
Bupivacaine	0.125-0.5	2 (or 150 mg)	3 (or 200 mg)
Levobupivacaine	0.125-0.5	3 (or 200 mg)	4 (or 250 mg)
Ropivacaine	0.1-10	3 (or 300 mg)	Not available (and not recommended)

extravascular injection, the plasma concentration of ropivacaine peaks later than that of bupivacaine, sometimes up to more than 2 hours after injection.[17] This delay in the peak plasma concentration of ropivacaine usually reduces the maximum plasma concentration, providing some security in terms of toxicity, as demonstrated in some pediatric studies.[17,121] Even if the plasma concentration of free and total ropivacaine is higher in younger children, plasma concentrations of ropivacaine and its main metabolite (2,6-pipecoloxylidide) are not influenced by the duration of infusion of local anesthetics. In infants younger than 3 months of age, epidural infusion of ropivacaine should not be maintained for more than 36 hours.[122] The clearance of ropivacaine increases with age but remains unchanged throughout the infusion in each age category. Ropivacaine appears to be more predictable, and safer during continuous infusion for 48 to 72 hours than bupivacaine; the plasma concentration of bupivacaine increases and clearance decreases in proportion to the duration of infusion.[12] Studies examining the pharmacokinetics of local anesthetics during continuous perineural administration are rare in children. The safety of continuous regional anesthesia techniques in children relies on the use of low-concentration solutions accompanied by low plasma concentrations of local anesthetics and limit the risk for systemic toxicity of these molecules. Addition of clonidine or ketamine helps improve the quality and duration of blockade without precluding early hospital discharge. In many cases, these drugs make it unnecessary to insert a catheter and establish a continuous infusion to provide adequate postoperative pain relief.

For many years, continuous epidural anesthesia was the only suitable technique for treating protracted pain. In recent years, peripheral nerve catheter techniques have proved to be effective,[67] with less morbidity and limitations than continuous epidural blockade, even allowing hospital discharge[80] and management at home in selected pediatric patients. For these techniques, continuous infusion (2-5 mL/h) or on-demand injections (2-5 mL) of low-concentration levobupivacaine or ropivacaine (0.1%-0.2%) represents the best and safest choice.

Patient-controlled administration of continuous infusion seems to be better in children, allowing decrease of the dose of local anesthetics for the same quality of analgesia.[123,124] Duflo and associates[124] comparing standard continuous administration (0.1 mL/kg/h) and patient controlled regional anesthesia regimen (infusion of 0.02 mL/kg/h and bolus of 0.1 mL/kg every 30 minutes) of 0.2% ropivacaine in patients undergoing fascia iliaca compartment or sciatic catheters noted lower hourly consumption of ropivacaine in patient-controlled administration. Ropivacaine plasma levels were also lower in this group in contrast to standard administration (0.31 and 0.86 mg/mL at 24 hours and 0.31 and 0.52 mg/mL at 48 hours). In a recent study, plasma levels of ropivacaine were collected and compared with continuous epidural block and continuous psoas compartment block in children.[125] The dose of local anesthetic infusion was 0.2 mg/kg/h of 0.2% ropivacaine in the continuous psoas compartment block. The median plasma concentrations of ropivacaine did not exceed 0.59 μg/mL in this patient group and was lower than the plasma concentration in the epidural catheter group. Recent studies demonstrating blood levels of bupivacaine in adolescents with indwelling continuous catheters showed safety in these infusions at home.[126]

Anatomic Identification in Regional Anesthesia

MANUAL APPROACHES

The success of a regional anesthesia technique depends on the administration of a solution of local anesthetic close to the nerve or space limited by anatomic structures. Few nerve blocks can be performed using a manual approach without the aid of a nerve stimulator or ultrasound. These techniques are feasible in children anesthetized or sedated.

Some important consideration for performing regional anesthesia without any additional equipment include:

- Possessing good knowledge of the anatomy of the child according to age and good location of landmarks for the puncture site
- Defining the anatomic space at which the local anesthetic spreads to block the selected nerves
- Ensuring no risks exist for damage to other surrounding structures (e.g., vessels, nerves, organs)

Central blocks (caudal, epidural, or spinal block) are among the blocks that primarily can be achieved without assistance from technical devices, even though ultrasound-guided techniques for punctures are currently proposed. The realization of epidural block is facilitated by the LOR technique. For the spinal block, passing into the subarachnoid space is marked by the crossing of the dura mater (tough fibrous structure): a slight LOR is felt, and then the flow of CSF. For the caudal block, the passage of the sacrococcygeal membrane is felt by an increase and LOR in the needle. The majority of limb peripheral nerve blocks are performed using a nerve stimulator or with ultrasound guidance. Blocks of the trunk, performed with anatomic landmarks techniques for a long time, benefit greatly from ultrasound guidance for their localization. The pudendal block, even if it is done using anatomic landmarks, also can benefit from using the nerve stimulator to be closer to the nerve[127] or ultrasound guidance.[128] The superficial trigeminal nerve blocks on the face, described by anatomic landmarks for a long time, can now benefit from ultrasound guidance for the puncture.[129] Finally, older techniques, such as the paresthesia technique, transarterial techniques for the axillary block, and “swoosh” (test of good hand position by auscultation with a stethoscope of the caudal vertebrae low back during the injection of liquid into the needle) test for caudal block, should no longer be used.

Electrical Stimulation

Ultrasound guidance represents a revolution in regional anesthesia in children and adults. Despite its increasing use, electrical stimulation remains the gold standard of nerve location in adults and children. Nerve stimulation equipment has largely improved and is clinically safer. The location of needle entry point before puncture can reduce the number of attempts and decrease the potential risk for nerve injury.[130]

For plexus and truncal nerve blocks, the anesthesiologist should use a nerve stimulator to elicit muscle twitches. The positive electrode of the nerve stimulator is placed distant to the nerve location. The nerve stimulator delivers square-wave electric impulses lasting 50 to 100 microseconds at the rate of 1 to 5 Hz. With a starting output of 2 to 2.5 mA, needles are advanced until they elicit the required muscle movement. The position is judged adequate when muscle contractions continue to occur at a current of 0.5 to 0.8 mA, when the tip of the needle is approximately 1 mm from the nerve or within the perineural fascial sheath. In contrast to adults, in whom a current of 0.5 mA or less is considered an acceptable indicator for a successful nerve block,[131] in children, if muscle contractions are still present at a current under 0.5 mA, the needle should be withdrawn to avoid intraneural injection and nerve damage.[132] Gurnaney and colleagues[133] evaluated the relationship between the lowest current amperage used to obtain a motor response, the success rate, and the incidence of neurologic complications with peripheral nerve blocks in pediatric patients under general anesthesia. The authors observed a similar peripheral nerve block success rate with both a low (<0.5 mA) and a high stimulation threshold (0.5-1.0 mA). They concluded that it may not be necessary to perform needle manipulation in close proximity to the nerve to achieve a low stimulation threshold (<0.5 mA), because it may increase the risk for intraneural injection. Most importantly, in performing peripheral nerve blocks in anesthetized children, the needle should not be intrafascicular. The disappearance of the motor response by reducing the intensity under 0.5 mA for 0.1 ms, confirms that the tip of the needle is not in contact with axons. In adults, Bigeleisen and associates[134] revisited the relationship between minimum stimulating current and intraneural needle placement in a clinical investigation comparing intraneural and extraneural stimulation thresholds in ultrasound-guided supraclavicular block. Intraneural stimulation thresholds in excess of 0.2 and less than 0.5 mA were observed in 54% of patients. In 10% of patients, the stimulating threshold exceeded 0.5 mA when the needle was in an intraneural location. Thus a response obtained for a current intensity less than 0.2 mA for 0.1 msec may be associated with an intrafascicular position of the needle and should be avoided.

Peripheral nerves are not as deep in children as in adults and can be located percutaneously. By using surface nerve mapping technique the success rate of peripheral nerve blocks in children can be improved.[135] Nerve mapping helps locate the needle entry point before puncture, thereby reducing the number of attempts and decreasing the potential risk for nerve injury.

Nerve stimulation can be used for ultrasound guidance training. Concomitant use of nerve stimulation can increase the confidence of the trainee while lessening the anxiety of the attending instructor. Other common sources of error during novice practice and beyond include failure to distinguish between adjacent isoechoic structures.[136]

Ultrasound Techniques

Ultrasonographic guidance for regional anesthesia in children has seen considerable interest recently. The benefit of this technique is the visualization of targeted nerves or spaces and the spread of injected local anesthetic.

The majority of peripheral nerves for regional anesthesia can be visualized in children using US guidance. However, the nerves are not static structures and can move, depending on the position of the child, pressure of the probe to the skin, and progression of the needle or injection of local anesthetic. In children, a linear ultrasound probe with a 25-mm active surface area (or probes with 38 mm of active surface area in older children) provides a square image that is not deformed. Probes with frequencies of 8 to 13 MHz offer excellent resolution for superficial structures of the upper limb (e.g., axillary block) and good penetration depth for the lower extremity (e.g., popliteal block). The higher frequencies could provide images that will be sharp for superficial structures. In principle, the needles typically used to perform peripheral nerve blocks can be used with ultrasound guidance. In vitro, results have shown that visualization of the needle depends on its diameter and mainly the angle of penetration.[137] Use of a facet-tipped needle for peripheral nerve blocks facilitates precise placement of the needle with minimal pain for the child,[138] which seems particularly interesting for blocks performed in children without sedation or general anesthesia. Sterile preparation of the probe and the block site is an important prerequisite for ultrasound-guided blocks. A sterile probe cover should be used for single and continuous block techniques.

The easier ultrasound-guided blocks are axillary blocks, femoral blocks, fascia iliaca compartment blocks, caudal blocks, ilioinguinal blocks, and paraumbilical blocks.[139] They permit a safe and easy learning curve of these techniques. The main advantage of ultrasound-guided regional anesthesia is the visualization of different anatomic structures and the approximate localization of the tip of needle. The other advantages for ultrasound-guided peripheral nerve blocks in children are faster onset time of sensory and motor block, longer duration of sensory blockade,[138] increase of blockade quality,[138,140] and reduction of local anesthetic injections.[140,141] The use of ultrasonographic guidance for central block allows visualization of different structures, spine, and spinal contents. Spinous process, ligament flavum, dura mater, conus medullaris, and CSF are identifiable, and give some information on spine, epidural space, and the depth between epidural space and skin.[142] Finally, in a caudal block, ultrasound imaging permits evaluation of the anatomy of the caudal epidural space, especially the relation of the sacral hiatus to the dural sac, and the search for occult spinal dysraphism.[143] Recently, ultrasound imaging showed its superiority over the swoosh test when performing a caudal block.[144] Anterior displacement of the posterior dura mater during saline or local anesthetic injection is a predictor of block success. This ultrasound-guided puncture improves the efficacy and safety of the central blocks by reducing the number of punctures. Unfortunately, the image quality is rapidly altered with ossification of the structures occurring in older children.[145]

A recent Cochrane review suggested that ultrasound guidance provided greater accuracy, reduced doses in younger children, fewer needle insertions, and better user appreciation of the anatomy.[1] A comparative evaluation of feasibility with ultrasound guidance for most regional techniques is provided in Table 76.5.

Safety, Precautions and Discharge Criteria

ACCEPTABLE ENVIRONMENTS FOR PERFORMING A REGIONAL BLOCK

Regional techniques are techniques of anesthesia; therefore they must be performed only in places where all the monitoring, anesthetic, and resuscitation equipment (including anesthetic and emergency drugs) is available. Additionally, the anesthesiologist must be assisted by staff members able to provide adequate patient monitoring and trained to help in emergency situations. Most blocks should be done in the operating room unless the patient is an older teenage adolescent who may be willing to allow performance of a block in the preoperative area.

SEDATION AND GENERAL ANESTHESIA

Regional procedures are performed in conscious adult patients, with or without sedation, but usually not under general anesthesia. In some pediatric patients, the same management can be offered and is sometimes requested by the child.[144] However, most children require being unconscious during the block procedure. If general anesthesia is not medically contraindicated, it is widely accepted that regional blocks be performed with the patient under light general anesthesia; large databases have demonstrated safety.[68,99,114,147]

PATIENT MONITORING AND SAFETY PRECAUTIONS DURING THE BLOCK PROCEDURE

Monitoring and Anesthesia Chart

Even if general anesthesia is not used and the surgical procedure is primarily based on a regional technique, the anesthesiologist should always apply routine intraoperative monitoring, including electrocardiographic (ECG) tracings and blood pressure, temperature, respiratory rate, and oxygen saturation measurements. An intravenous line must be established before any injection of local anesthetic,[148] and vital parameters, techniques, and doses of local anesthetics must be reported on a detailed anesthesia chart. It is also imperative to site mark the area to be blocked and get consent, if under 10 years, and consent and assent from the patient, if they are older.

Technique of Injection

Techniques in adults and children are similar. Of prime importance is to evaluate the effects on ECG tracings of a test dose containing epinephrine (0.1 mL/kg up to 3 mL containing 0.5-1 μg/kg of epinephrine) for 30 to 60 seconds. Any elevation of ST segment or increase in T-wave amplitude,[149-151] followed by an increase in blood pressure but only occasionally by tachycardia, suggests inadvertent intravenous injection and necessitates cessation of the procedure; when epinephrine is contraindicated, isoproterenol 0.05 to 0.1 μg/kg should be used instead.[152]

Assessment of the Block

After every block procedure, the quality and extension of analgesia must be evaluated before surgical incision. However, this evaluation is difficult, even in conscious children. Gentle skin pinching is the most dependable technique of sensory testing, especially in lightly anesthetized children. One technique is to use ice in a plastic bag to determine the efficacy of the block in lightly sedated children; however, it may be difficult to elicit any response in children under general anesthesia. Electrical stimulation using a nerve stimulator at different threshold intensities proved to be suitable in healthy volunteers, but data on children are limited. Skin temperature is not suitable, and whether pupillary reflex dilation of 0.2 mm is sensitive to the loss of analgesia is not clinically useful.[153]

POSTOPERATIVE MONITORING IN THE RECOVERY ROOM

After combined regional and general anesthesia, all children must be transferred to a recovery room (PACU), where the stability of respiratory and hemodynamic status is checked in the same way as after any general anesthesia. In addition to this standard postanesthetic care, they require repeat evaluations of the anesthetized area. In the case of motor blockade, which should be avoided as often as possible, it is important to verify that its distribution corresponds to the area supplied to the blocked nerve. Patient positioning must be carefully and regularly checked to avoid pressure points. The possibility that a compartment syndrome is evolving must always be kept in mind, and both the hemodynamic status of the relevant limb and the quality of analgesia must be repeatedly evaluated.

Urinary retention can be of concern after neuraxial blocks. In many institutions, however, voiding is not requested before discharging the child.

Adult surgical patients under regional blockade often bypass the postanesthesia recovery room. In children, even if no sedative has been given, it is not wise to do so, and adequate monitoring and skilled assistance improve recovery from immediate postoperative incidents.[154] After short procedures, sudden cessation of external stimulation may unmask some compensated adverse effects (hemodynamic and respiratory especially) that are not harmful if detected early. As noted earlier, ropivacaine and, to a lesser extent, levobupivacaine, have a longer T_{max} (up to 2 hours) and C_{max} in infants; therefore after short-duration surgeries, these patients may leave the operating room before local anesthetic plasma peak concentration has been reached. It is recommended to keep them monitored in a PACU up to 2 hours after the block procedure.

DISCHARGE CRITERIA AFTER SINGLE-SHOT PROCEDURES

The same criteria apply with discharge from the PACU as with after general anesthesia (pediatric adaptation of Aldrete score or specific scoring method in use in the relevant institution); in the absence of motor blockade, children usually may be discharged within 30 minutes. In other cases, discharge depends on the behavior of the child. Partial restoration of motor function is mandatory, even in quiet children with caring families. Boisterous children should not leave before motor functions have been fully restored; additionally, protective dressings (including casts) may help prevent harm to the operated limb. Persistence of sensory blockade is not a contraindication to early discharge unless the familial environment is inadequate. Pain medication should be systematically prescribed and administered on a regular basis to prevent the return of intense pain at home when the sensory block is no longer effective.[155] Most additives do not preclude early discharge except for epidural or intrathecal opioids, especially morphine, or hydromorphone which necessitates that the child stay hospitalized overnight.

MANAGEMENT OF CONTINUOUS REGIONAL TECHNIQUES

Children with patient controlled or continuous epidural infusion should remain hospitalized to be adequately monitored. Occasionally, a few selected patients can be allowed to return home with an epidural catheter, mostly in a context of chronic pain or cancer pain in terminally ill children. These continuous techniques are newer in pediatrics[74] and not yet widely used. Studies on peripheral nerve blocks in children monitored at home have reported a low complication rate and good quality of analgesia.[156,157] In one institution, children suffering from CRPS were treated at home with peripheral nerve catheters.[80] The use of an elastomeric disposable device to infuse local anesthetic allows simplifying the management of children at home and a nursing economy. Such management will probably gain wider acceptance in the near future, but currently it should be considered under evaluation.

Neuraxial Blocks

CAUDAL ANESTHESIA

Ultrasound Guidance for Caudal Block Placement

- Initially use a transverse plane of imaging to identify the sacral hiatus located between the cornua; the sacral hiatus is located between an upper hyperechoic line representing the sacrococcygeal membrane/ligament and an inferior hyperechoic line representing the dorsum of the pelvic surface (base) of the sacrum.

- Rotate the probe to the longitudinal plane (a paramedian plane may be required in older children) to capture the sacrococcygeal membrane, a relatively thick linear hyperechoic band, sloping caudally.
- Insert the needle under either plane of view, although a longitudinal view may allow for optimal viewing along the needle. A transverse view can be used after needle placement within the epidural space, in order to view the spread of local anesthetic (as dilation of the caudal space and localized turbulence).

The caudal block is likely the most commonly used technique of central neuraxial blockade in children. Nevertheless, it is less used in some countries in favor of peripheral blocks due to the use of ultrasound guidance.[99] The technique is described as simple and easy to perform for most, with few complications.

Caudal anesthesia considerably decreases stress hormone response to surgery.[158-160] The rate of complete or partial failure of this technique is 3% to 11%,[161] especially in children older than 7 years of age.

Anatomy of the Sacral Hiatus

Children have a specific anatomic level of the sacrum. Until the age of 1 year, five sacral vertebrae are easily identifiable and have the appearance of the lumbar vertebrae. Each sacral vertebra has five primitive centers of ossification, which will knit by 2 to 6 years of age. This is due to the standing body of the child, who will develop the walking and the mechanical stresses in the vertebrae.

The sacral hiatus is a U-shaped or V-shaped aperture resulting from the lack of dorsal fusion of the fifth and often fourth sacral vertebral arches. It is limited laterally by two palpable bony structures, the sacral cornua, and is covered by the sacrococcygeal membrane (sacral continuation of the ligamenta flava). The distance separating the summit of the sacral hiatus and the dural sac ending is approximately 30 mm (SD=10 mm) (range, 13.6-54.7 mm) in children 10 months to 18 years of age.[162] Mean distance from skin to anterior sacral wall is 21 mm (extremes, 10-39 mm) between 2 months and 7 years of age.[142] The distance from skin to the epidural space is only slightly influenced by the age and weight of the patient (Fig. 76.1), and 25-mm needles are long enough to reach the sacral epidural space and short enough to prevent inadvertent dural puncture in most patients.

With growth, the axis of sacrum changes; the sacral hiatus becomes more difficult to identify and may even close.[163] Concomitantly, the epidural fat becomes more densely packed, thus reducing the spread of local anesthetics. These changes make caudal anesthesia less suitable and more difficult to perform in children older than 6 to 7 years of age.

Indications, Contraindications, and Complications. Caudal anesthesia is recommended for most surgical procedures of the lower part of the body (mainly below the umbilicus), including inguinal hernia repair, urinary and digestive tract surgery, and orthopedic procedures on the pelvic girdle and lower extremities.[164] It is usually performed in lightly anesthetized patients but can be used as the sole anesthetic regimen in fully awake former premature infants younger than 50 to 60 weeks of postconceptual age after local anesthesia of the skin covering the sacral hiatus, either as a single-shot technique[165,166] or after placement of an epidural catheter allowing repeat or continuous injection of local anesthetics.[167]

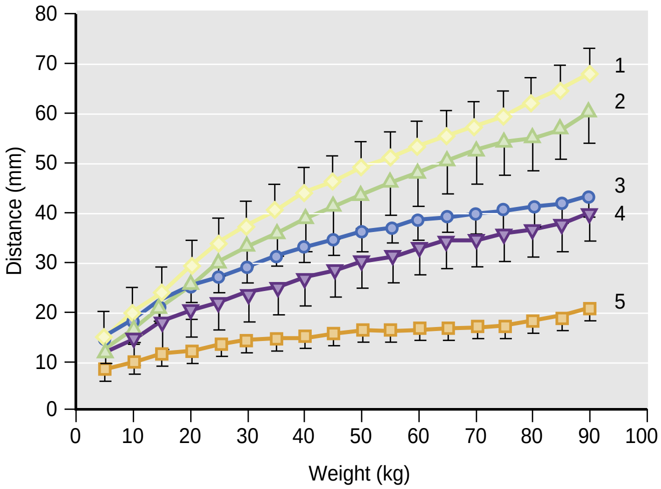


Fig. 76.1 Distance from the skin to the epidural and subarachnoid spaces at different intervertebral levels and through the sacral hiatus. *1,* Spinal anesthesia; *2,* lumbar epidural approach (midline); *3,* thoracic epidural approach (midline); *4,* sacral epidural approach; *5,* caudal approach.

Contraindications include major malformations of the sacrum (myelomeningocele, open spina bifida), meningitis, and intracranial hypertension.

Complications of caudal anesthesia are infrequent and usually minor[92,99] when adequate devices are used. Notably, dural puncture and subsequent injection of local anesthetic solution can lead to cardiovascular collapse or respiratory arrest (apnea). A large database of 18,650 caudal blocks registry demonstrated an overall rate of complications of 1.9%, with no temporary or permanent sequelae; an estimated incidence of 0.005%, further suggesting safety concerns, should not be a barrier to the use of caudal blocks in children.[168]

Technique

The technique is performed with the patient in the lateral decubitus position or, especially in awake premature infants, in the prone position either with a rolled towel slipped under the pelvis or with the legs flexed in the “frog” position. The two sacral cornua limiting the V-shaped sacral hiatus are located by palpation along the spinal process line at the level of the sacrococcygeal joint (Fig. 76.2). The hiatus along with the two posterior superior iliac crests is claimed to form an equilateral triangle, but in clinical practice this assumption does not help in locating the hiatus when palpation is not informative. The caudal puncture technique is shown in Fig. 76.3.

Caudal anesthesia is basically a single-shot technique. Occasionally, placement of an epidural catheter for repeat or continuous infusion is contemplated. The “normal” length of catheter to be introduced into the epidural space is 2 to 3 cm, as for any epidural block. Because the epidural fat is very fluid in infants, a longer distance can be introduced to reach lumbar or even thoracic levels. This technique should be considered with caution, by experts only. The final position of the tip of the catheter must be controlled; it is misplaced in 28% of cases.[169] This is usually achieved by obtaining a contrast-enhanced radiograph, but the following techniques also are available:

- Nerve stimulation at rather high intensities (however, safety of this technique is not established).[170,171]
- Recording ECG tracings from the metallic wire of the catheter and comparing them with those obtained from an electrode placed on the spinous process line, at the level where the tip of the catheter should be placed. The position is correct when the two tracings are identical.[172] This technique is very elegant and noninvasive, but the "second" ECG tracing is not easily readable in some patients (especially when they are conscious and moving).
- Ultrasound guidance[173] is the most promising noninvasive technique.

Catheter tunneling has been recommended to decrease the risk for bacterial contamination.[174] The volume prescription scheme of Armitage that was published many years ago still remains the most dependable, as follows:

- 0.5 mL/kg: All sacral dermatomes are blocked.
- 1 mL/kg: All sacral and lumbar dermatomes are blocked.
- 1.25 mL/kg: The upper limit of anesthesia is at least midthoracic.

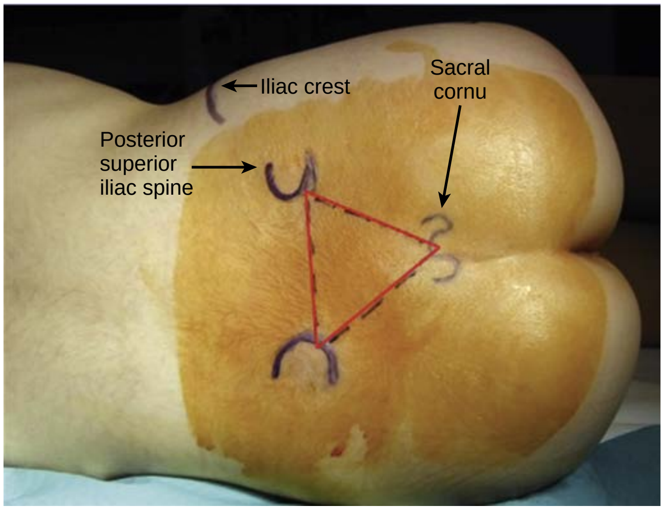


Fig. 76.2 Landmarks for caudal block procedure in lateral position. Two posterior superior iliac crests form an equilateral triangle; the top of this triangle indicates V-shaped sacral hiatus limited by two sacral cornua.

When 1.25 mL/kg is injected, excessive rostral spread (above T4) can occur[175]; it is therefore preferable not to administer more than 1 mL/kg of local anesthetic. Hong and colleagues[176] sought the best compromise between the two regimens of caudal injections in terms of quality of analgesia and spread of local anesthetic. The authors compared the same total dose of local anesthetic (ropivacaine 2.25 mg/kg), a high injection volume and low concentration (ropivacaine 0.15% 1.5 mL/kg), and low injection volume and high concentration (ropivacaine 0.225% 1 mL/kg). Spread of local anesthetic was significantly higher in the high volume and low concentration group in contrast to the other group (T6 [T3-T11] and T11 [T8-L2], respectively). In addition to the injection system, high volume and low concentration produced a longer duration of analgesia before the first analgesic request (554.5 minutes vs. 363 minutes). When a catheter is inserted, repeat injections must be reduced to avoid systemic toxicity. The second injection should be made no earlier than 60 minutes (for a short-duration local anesthetic) or 90 minutes (for a long-duration local anesthetic) after the first one and should be half of the initial dose. Further injections should be reduced to half of the second dose (i.e., one sixth of the initial dose) while respecting the same delays.

Ultrasound has facilitated the use of caudal block in children, allowing an initial assessment of the anatomy of the sacrum (Fig. 76.4), including the relationship of the sacral hiatus to the dural sac ending, and research of spinal dysraphism.[143] Roberts and associates[173] demonstrated the value of ultrasound imaging with a test dose of saline when performing a caudal block to confirm the correct location of the needle. According to the authors, the displacement of the dura mater during the injection of saline is an indicator of a successful block. They found ultrasound-guided caudal blocks successful with a sensitivity of 96.5%, a specificity of 100%, and a positive predictive value 100%. Ultrasound is also better than the swoosh test to determine the correct location of the needle.[177] Recently, Shin and associates[178] noted that prior anatomic study of the sacral region via ultrasound made it easier to identify the sacral hiatus and determine the level of the dural sac before completion of a caudal block or block-sacral interspinous in children.

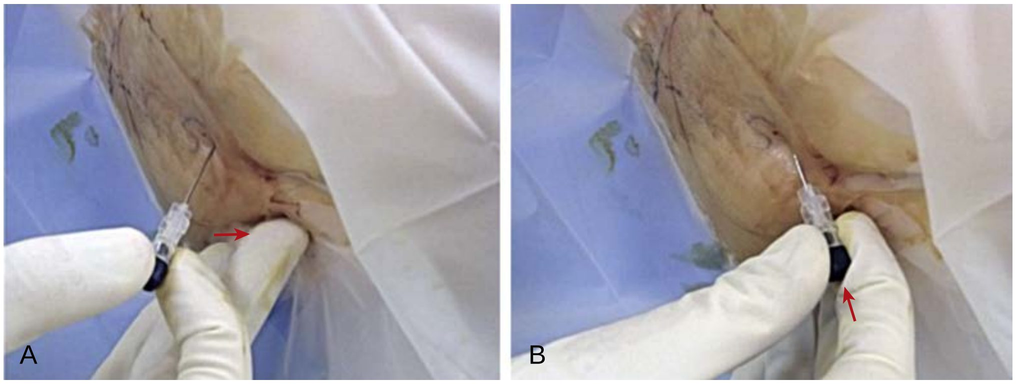


Fig. 76.3 Caudal puncture technique. (A) Insertion of the needle at right angles to the skin. (B) Cephalic redirection of the needle after piercing the sacrococcygeal membrane.

EPIDURAL ANESTHESIA

EPIDURAL ANALGESIA UNDER ULTRASOUND GUIDANCE

- Ultrasound-guided technique does not preclude continuous testing for loss of resistance.
- The limitation of the technique is that the needle shaft and tip may be hard to localize with the tangential relationship of the needle (midline) and the probe (paramedian longitudinal).
- An assistant (second set of hands) is required during catheter placement in order to perform the imaging real-time for ultrasound-aided catheter placement. It is important to use saline for the loss of resistance technique to facilitate ultrasound imaging.

Anatomy and Physiology

The epidural space surrounds the spinal cord and the meninges from the foramen magnum to the sacral hiatus. Limited posteriorly by the vertebral laminae and the ligamenta flava, it communicates quite freely with both the paravertebral spaces and the root sleeves. In the dural cuff region, near the spinal ganglia, it is intimately connected with the subarachnoid space owing to protrusion of arachnoid granulations, which are easily traversed by local anesthetics. It contains blood vessels and lymphatics and is filled with loose fat in infants and in children up to 6 to 8 years of age.

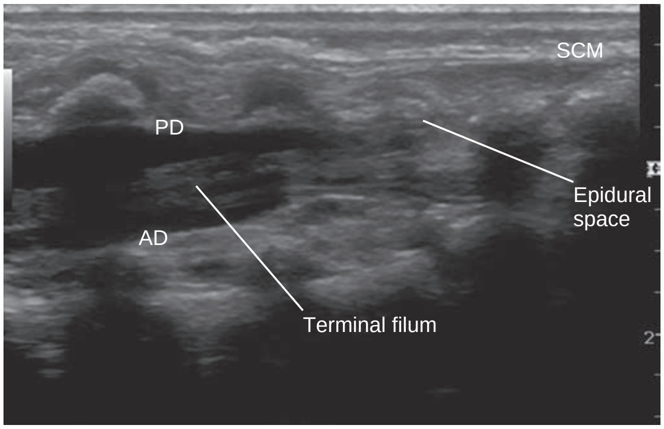


Fig. 76.4 Ultrasound-guided caudal block facilitating initial assessment of the anatomy of the sacrum. *AD,* Anterior dura mater; *PD,* posterior dura mater; *SCM,* sacrococcygeal membrane.

One of the major characteristics of the child for the central blocks is a line connecting the two iliac crests—the Tuffier line. This line joining the two iliac crests is proportionally smaller in young children and crosses the spinous process line at the L5 to S1 level in infants up to 1 year of age instead of at L4 to L5 as in older children and adults.[179] Bending the spine (as for performing an epidural block) does change the level at which the Tuffier line crosses the spine in 58.3% of patients. Mobility of the vertebrae and the elasticity of the ligaments in children can change the position of the spinal cord in the spinal canal. The spinal cord tends to move backward and get closer to the vertebral arches in a sitting position, making it more difficult to identify the epidural space. In the lateral decubitus position, bending moves the spinal cord forward, away from the ligamentum flavum and expands the epidural space. This is the preferred position for the epidural catheter procedure in children (Fig. 76.5).

Epidural injections result in considerable pressure changes. After placement of a 20-gauge epidural catheter in 20 infants, Vas and associates[180] measured the following changes:

- Pressure on penetrating the epidural space: 1 ± 10 mm Hg (extremes, −17 to +16 mm Hg)
- Peak pressure during injection of a local anesthetic at 1 mL/min: 27.8 ± 18.6 mm Hg with residual pressure of 12 ± 5.5 mm Hg 1 minute after completion of injection
- Peak pressure during injection of a local anesthetic at 0.5 mL/min: 15.2 ± 9.5 mm Hg with residual pressure of 14.8 ± 5.4 mm Hg 1 minute after completion of injection

The spine presents at birth only one concavity: anterior curvature (kyphosis). Lumbar lordosis appears only with the acquisition of walking. Until the installation of lordosis, the spinous processes are parallel and the introduction of the needle between them in the epidural space is perpendicular to the plane of the back. In addition, ossification of the lumbar vertebrae is very underdeveloped at birth and risks exist for injury to cartilaginous structures.

Indications and Contraindications

Young children tolerate epidural anesthesia well without significant hemodynamic changes.[56] Epidural anesthesia

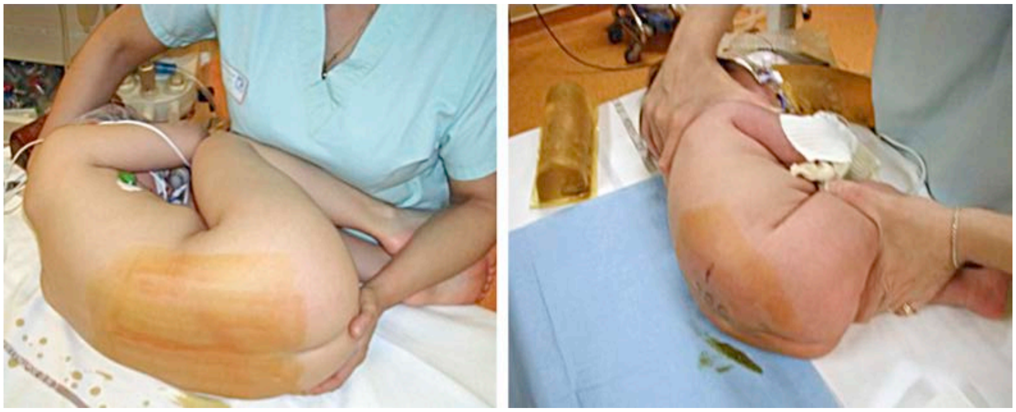


Fig. 76.5 Lateral position for epidural puncture in a 10-year-old boy *(left)* and 4-month-old girl *(right)*.

is recommended for all major abdominal, retroperitoneal, pelvic, and thoracic[181,182] procedures, including pectus excavatum repair[183] and scoliosis surgery,[184,185] preferably with a two-catheter technique.[69] The technique is also used for cardiac surgery in a few institutions,[70,186] but this indication is controversial and most authors consider it contraindicated because of anticoagulation.

The intervertebral level at which the epidural space should be approached is a matter of debate and depends on both the patient's age and the experience of the anesthesiologist. When a single-shot technique is planned for a surgery below the umbilicus, a caudal approach is most often selected in infants and young children and a lumbar approach is used in older patients. When catheter placement is contemplated it is preferable to select a lumbar approach in all patients to decrease the risk for bacterial contamination from anal proximity, even though this is rare.[92]

When sensory blockade of high thoracic dermatomes is required, the most reliable approach is a thoracic epidural block, which requires expertise because the spinal cord could be damaged. When the anesthesiologist is not used to performing thoracic epidural blocks in infants, some authors recommend a caudal approach with cephalic insertion of a catheter over a long distance to reach thoracic levels.[187] This technique, however, requires experience and luck—the catheter is misplaced in almost 30% of cases, even in experienced hands,[169] and serious complications are possible (e.g., spinal cord or vessel trauma during insertion, bacterial contamination, breakage, or buckling around a nerve root on removal attempts).[188-190]

Specific contraindications to epidural anesthesia include severe malformations of the spine and spinal cord (not spina bifida occulta), intraspinal lesions or tumors, and tethered cord syndrome. In most instances, epidural anesthesia should be avoided in children with a history of hydrocephalus, elevated intracranial pressure, unstable epilepsy, or reduced intracranial compliance, but these disorders are not absolute contraindications, depending on the context.[191] Also, previous surgery on the spine usually makes epidural (and spinal) anesthesia technically difficult or impossible, but they are not contraindications unless underlying lesions of the spinal cord are present.

Techniques

Lumbar Epidural Anesthesia. The lumbar epidural is usually performed in anesthetized patients via a midline route below the L2 to L3 interspace, which represents the lower limit of the conus medullaris (Fig. 76.6). The technique is essentially as in adults. A paramedian approach can be used instead in cases of spinous process anomaly or spine deformity. The child is positioned in the semiprone position, with the side to be operated lowermost and the spine bent to enlarge the interspinous spaces. The sitting position can be used in conscious patients.

Medium selection for the LOR technique has elicited considerable debate. Both air and saline are advocated for the LOR test to identify the epidural space. Saline is more popular, however air (or carbon dioxide) is perhaps more sensitive, especially in neonates and infants.

The distance from the skin to the epidural space is correlated with the patient's age and size (see Fig. 76.1), but 1 mm/kg is a useful approximation for children between 6 months and 10 years of age.[192] An ultrasound probe provides precise measurement of the distance from skin to the ligamenta flava and from skin to the posterior dura mater (Fig. 76.7).

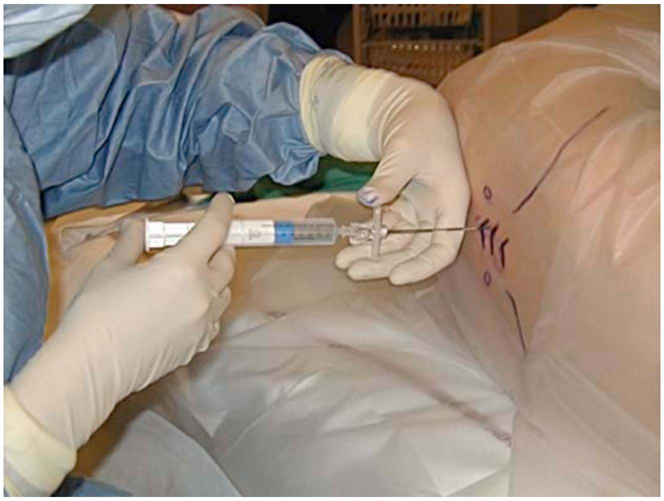


Fig. 76.6 Lumbar epidural anesthesia by loss-of-resistance technique with saline.

When the tip of the needle penetrates the epidural space, the LOR technique syringe is disconnected, and no reflux of biologic fluid (blood or CSF) should appear at the hub. The next step consists of injecting the local anesthetic at a slow speed, either through the epidural needle or through a catheter. Progressive displacement of the dura mater can be visualized by placing an ultrasound probe in line with the spinous process line during injection in infants younger than 2 years of age.[145] By using ultrasound, the anatomy of the spinal canal, the position of the spinal cord, visualization of the ligamentum flavum, and the space caudal spinous processes can actually be seen (see Fig. 76.7).[193] When a catheter is inserted, it should not be introduced more than 3 cm, to avoid buckling, knotting, and lateralization of blockade or erratic migration. Tunneling the catheter reduces the incidence of accidental removal and bacterial contamination.[194] Catheters inserted over a long distance have to be controlled in the same way as caudal catheters.

The volume of anesthetic solution depends on the upper level of analgesia required for completion of the surgery; approximately 0.1 mL/year of age is necessary to block 1 neuromere.[195] Usual volumes of injectate range from 0.5 to 1 mL/kg (up to 20 mL), and the upper limit of sensory blockade ranges between T9 and T6 in more than 80% of patients.

Single-shot epidural blocks are appropriate for many pediatric surgeries, especially when adjuvants such as clonidine 1 to 2 μg/kg, and, in appropriate indications, morphine 30 μg/kg, or 10 μg /kg of hydromorphone are coadministered. Major operations resulting in long-lasting postoperative pain require placement of an epidural catheter and postoperative infusion of local anesthetics (Table 76.8).

In mature children who understand the concept of patient-controlled analgesia and who are willing to use it, patient-controlled epidural analgesia (PCEA) can be an interesting option. A prospective study involving 128 children older than 5 years of age reported a 90.1%

success rate; PCEA was stopped in 6.1% of children because of adverse effects and only in 3.8% because of inadequate analgesia.[196] The local anesthetic was either 0.0625% or 0.125% bupivacaine with fentanyl 2 to 10 μg/mL; the background infusion rate was 0.2 mL/kg/h or less, and 1- to 3-mL bolus doses were permitted every 15 to 30 minutes with a maximum dose of bupivacaine of 0.4 mg/kg/h.

Another prospective study involving 58 children (age range, 7-12 years) undergoing lower extremity orthopedic surgery compared continuous epidural infusion of 0.2% ropivacaine 0.2 mL/kg/h with PCEA, with background infusion of 1.6 mL/h and 2-mL bolus doses (lockout interval, 10 minutes) of the same solution. Pain scores were excellent and identical in both groups, but children from the PCEA group required half the doses of ropivacaine on an hourly basis in contrast to the continuous infusion group.[123]

Thoracic Epidural Anesthesia. Thoracic epidural blocks are indicated for major operations requiring long-lasting pain relief, thus requiring placement of an epidural catheter to allow repeat injections or continuous infusion of local anesthetic. These are not commonly used techniques in children because indications are limited to thoracic and upper abdominal surgery and spinal cord damage is a risk. In children younger than 1 year of age, the procedure is similar to that for a lumbar approach, with needle insertion perpendicular to the spinous process line, because the spine displays a single flexure, especially when bent. As the patient grows and the flexure develops, the technique becomes progressively similar to thoracic approaches in adults, requiring cephalic orientation of the Tuohy needle up to a 45-degree angle to the skin. A paramedian approach can be used instead, but it is rarely required in children. In infants, ultrasonography makes visible the dura mater, the progression of the Tuohy needle, and, in many cases, the progression and final position of the tip of the epidural catheter.[197]

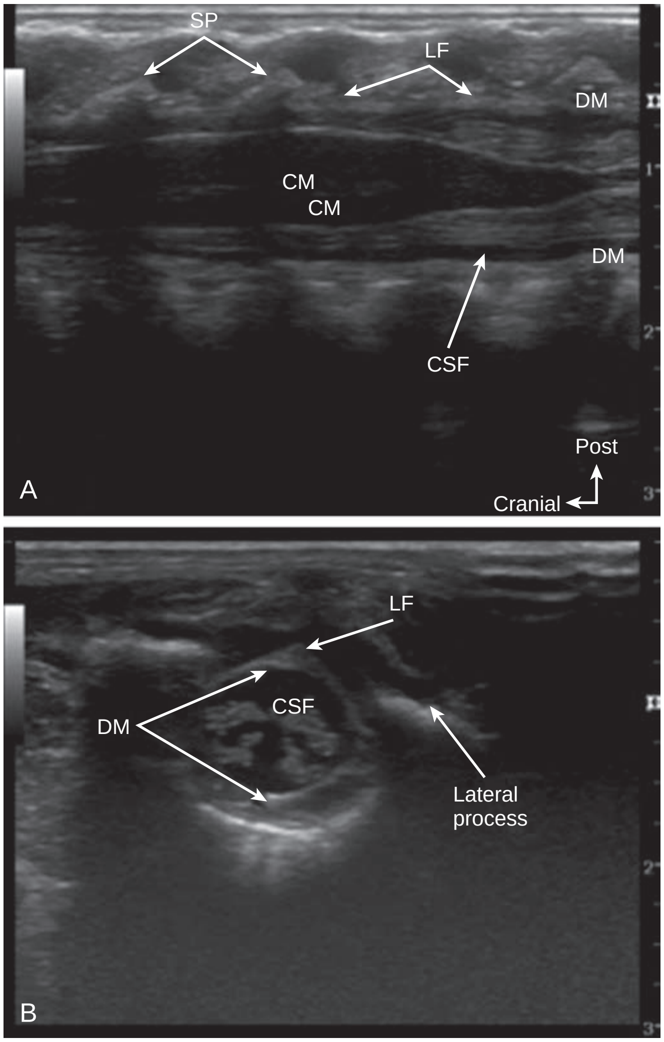


Fig. 76.7 Transverse (A) and axial (B) ultrasound images of conus medullaris. *CM,* Conus medullaris; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid; *DM,* dura mater; *LF,* ligamentum flavum; *SP,* spinous process.

TABLE 76.8 Usual Doses and Infusion Regimens for Epidural Anesthesia in Pediatric Patients

Agent	Initial Dose	Continuous Infusion (Maximum Doses)	Repeat Injections
Bupivacaine, levobupivacaine	Solution: 0.25% with 5 μg/mL (1/200,000) epinephrine Dose: <20 kg: 0.75 mL/kg 20-40 kg: 8-10 mL (or 0.1 mL/year/no. of metameres) >40 kg: same as for adults	<4 months: 0.2 mg/kg/h (0.15 mL/kg/h of a 0.125% solution or 0.3 mL/kg/h of a 0.0625% solution) 4-18 months: 0.25 mg/kg/h (0.2 mL/kg/h of a 0.125% solution or 0.4 mL/kg/h of a 0.0625% solution) >18 months: 0.3-0.375 mg/kg/h (0.3 mL/kg/h of a 0.125% solution or 0.6 mL/kg/h of a 0.0625% solution)	0.1-0.3 mL/kg every 6-12 h of a 0.25% or 0.125% solution (according to pain scores)
Ropivacaine	Solution: 0.2% Dose: Same regimen in mL/kg as for bupivacaine (see above)	Same age-related infusion rates in mg/kg/h as for bupivacaine (usual concentration of ropivacaine: 0.1%, 0.15%, or 0.2%) Do not infuse for more than 36 h in infants <3 months	0.1-0.3 mL/kg every 6-12 h of a 0.15% or 0.2% solution (according to pain scores)
Adjuvants	Avoid in infants <6 months Fentanyl 1-2 μg/kg or sufentanil 0.1-0.6 μg/kg or clonidine 1-2 μg/kg	Select only one additive: Fentanyl: 1-2 μg/mL Sufentanil: 0.25-0.5 μg/mL Morphine: 10 μg/mL Hydromorphone: 1-3 μg/mL Clonidine 0.3 at 1 μg/mL of solution	Morphine (without preservatives): 25-30 μg/kg every 8 h

Cervical Epidural Anesthesia. No surgical indications exist for cervical epidural blockade in children. Very rarely, the technique can be contemplated for patients with chronic pain or to prevent phantom limb pain before an amputation of the upper arm at the scapular level (osteosarcoma of humerus), which is done almost exclusively in adolescents. The block procedure is the same as in adults.

SPINAL ANESTHESIA

Anatomy and Physiology

The spinal cord and dural sac of infants younger than 1 year of age end at a lower level than in older patients (see earlier section on Caudal Anesthesia). Also, the volume of CSF varies considerably according to the patient's age, from more than 10 mL/kg in neonates, to 4 mL/kg in infants weighing less than 15 kg, to 3 mL/kg in children, to 1.5 to 2.0 mL/kg in adolescents and adults. The spinal and cerebral distribution of CSF also varies with age; half the CSF volume is located within the spinal subarachnoid space versus only 25% in adults. This has considerable pharmacokinetic consequences and explains why larger doses of local anesthetics are required for spinal anesthesia in infants and young children.

CSF hydrostatic pressure is lower in infants in the dorsal recumbent position[198] and further decreased during general anesthesia. In performing a spinal block, the progression of the needle must be slow to detect CSF reflux before the needle is advanced farther.

Children older than 5 years of age behave like adults after spinal anesthesia, whereas younger patients remain hemodynamically stable, without significant hypotension or bradycardia,[199] even in cases of cardiac malformations.[200] However, a decrease in mean arterial pressure during the first 10 minutes after injection of 0.8 mg/kg of 0.5% bupivacaine was reported in infants aged 1.5 to 5 months.[201] This decrease was time limited, well tolerated, and rapidly corrected by intravenous fluids. Similar results with concomitant decrease in cerebral blood flow were reported in former preterm infants of 41 weeks of postconceptual age.[202]

Indications and Contraindications

Spinal anesthesia has limited indications in pediatric patients. One of these is inguinal hernia repair in former preterm infants younger than 60 weeks of postconceptual age[203,204] who are prone to develop postoperative apnea after general anesthesia or even light sedation.[205] However, even after pure spinal anesthesia, apnea may occur postoperatively (as they may preoperatively) and it is prudent to keep at-risk infants hospitalized. Other indications are scarce, mainly for elective lower abdominal or lower extremity surgery[206-208] and, occasionally, for cardiac surgery or cardiac catheterization,[209,210] but these indications are controversial. There has been a greater increase in interest in spinal anesthetics for infants lately due to the potential for neurocognitive changes associated with general anesthesia.[211-213]

Technique

The technique of spinal anesthesia is similar to lumbar puncture (Fig. 76.8). It can be performed with the patient in the lateral decubitus position or sitting (Fig. 76.9). Currently, hyperbaric tetracaine and bupivacaine are the most commonly used local anesthetics. Isobaric bupivacaine can be used instead.[206] Ropivacaine[208] and levobupivacaine[214] may become the standard of the future but are not currently approved for spinal administration in pediatric patients.

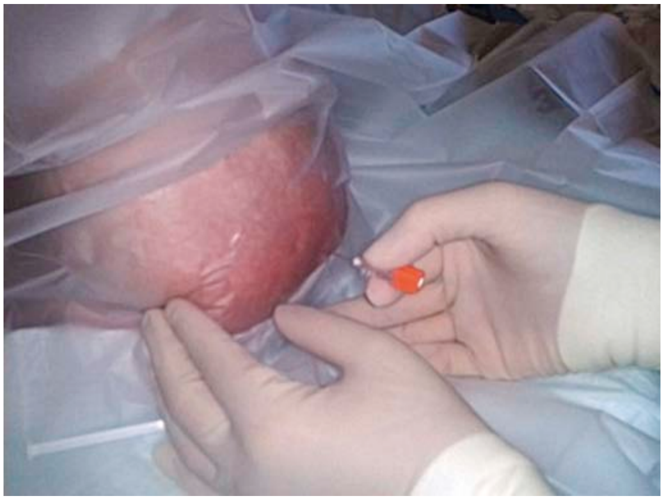


Fig. 76.8 Spinal anesthesia procedure in sitting position in 1-month-old girl.

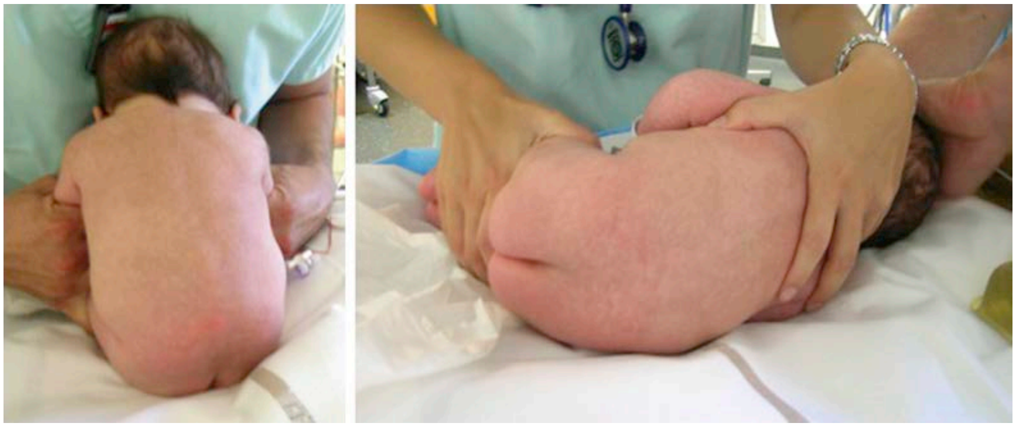


Fig. 76.9 Sitting or lateral position for spinal anesthesia procedure.

Drugs and Doses

The drugs most frequently used are tetracaine 0.5% and bupivacaine 0.5%. The usual doses are 0.5 to 0.8 mg/kg to achieve low to medium levels and 1 mg/kg to achieve high levels (T2-T4). The duration of the block is approximately 60 to 75 minutes for both drugs. Newborns and infants are at an increased risk for toxicity after the administration of amide local anesthetics; the risk is even greater in the case of jaundice.[215] Usual dosages for neonates to adolescents are given in Table 76.9.

The older the child, the lower is the dose required; in children between 6 months and 14 years, 0.5% hyperbaric bupivacaine at a dose of 0.2 mg/kg has been used with a success rate of 98%. More recently, the successful use of 0.5% ropivacaine in children between 1 and 17 years at 0.5 mg/kg and 0.5% levobupivacaine in children between 1 and 14 years at 0.3 mg/kg has been reported. Clonidine 1 µg/kg, fentanyl 1 µg/kg, and morphine 4 to 5 µg/kg are reported in the pediatric literature as adjuvants to increase the spinal block duration (see Table 76.9). In cardiac patients, a higher dose of morphine has been used for spinal anesthesia to ensure adequate postoperative analgesia.

Adverse Effects and Complications

Spinal anesthesia is technically difficult in neonates and infants; the overall failure rate ranges from 10% to 25%.[205,216] Short duration of blockade and lack of residual analgesia are important limitations, and alternative (awake caudal anesthesia) or additional techniques (ilioinguinal or iliohypogastric block) are often contemplated. Postdural puncture headache is rare in children younger than 8 years of age but not exceptional, and its incidence may be decreased with use of pencil-point spinal needles.[217] All complications reported after lumbar epidural blockade can occur after spinal anesthesia.

Upper Extremity Conduction Blocks

ANATOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Nerve supply to the upper extremity depends mainly on the brachial plexus formed by the union of the ventral rami of the fifth cervical to the first thoracic spinal nerve roots. Roots emerge from the intervertebral foramina within the interscalene space (between the scalene anterior and scalene middle muscle). As in adults, brachial plexus nerve fibers redistribute first to three trunks (superior, middle, and inferior), then to three divisions between the clavicle and the first rib. These divisions recombine and surround the axillary artery as three cords and are named according to their relation to the artery as the lateral, medial, and posterior cords (Fig. 76.10). Because of this complicated redistribution of nerve fibers, distribution of anesthesia varies considerably depending on the level at which the local anesthetic is injected. Some anatomic knowledge is essential to predict the extension of the motor and sensory block and to determine the most appropriate approach for a given surgery (Fig. 76.11).

TABLE 76.9 Usual Doses of Local Anesthetics for Spinal Anesthesia

Local Anesthetic	Dose	Duration
NEONATES		
Tetracaine 0.5%	0.6-1 mg/kg	60-75 min
Bupivacaine 0.5%	0.5-1 mg/kg	65-75 min
Ropivacaine 0.5%	1.08 mg/kg	50-70 min
Levobupivacaine 0.5%	1 mg/kg	75-90 min
INFANTS TO ADOLESCENT		
Bupivacaine 0.5%	0.4 mg/kg (5-15 kg)	
Tetracaine 0.5%	0.3 mg/kg (<15 kg)	
Levobupivacaine 0.5%	0.4 mg/kg (5-15 kg)	
Ropivacaine 0.5%	0.3 mg/kg (>15 kg)	
	0.4 mg/kg (5-15 kg)	
	0.3 mg/kg (15-40 kg)	
	0.25 mg/kg (>40 kg)	
	0.5 mg/kg (maximum 20 mg)	
ADJUVANT		
Clonidine	1 µg/kg (neonates)	
Fentanyl	1 µg/kg (infants <1 year)	
Morphine	4-5 µg/kg (all ages)	

The most important anatomic difference between infants and adults pertains to the upper part of the lung and apical pleura that penetrates the neck, above the plane formed by the clavicle and first rib (superior thoracic aperture). Subclavian vessels and the lower division of the plexus are encountered in the apical pleura, thus making any perisubclavian approach at major risk for pleural penetration. The concept of perineurovascular sheath has been challenged in spite of strong embryologic and anatomic evidence, but it received additional confirmation in a recent radiologic study, and even the volume of the axillary tunnel could be precisely measured (5.1-9.5 mL in adults).[218]

Ultrasound imaging allows precise localization of the parietal pleura and subclavian and axillary vessels, thus improving the safety of supraclavicular and infraclavicular approaches, provided the tip of the block needle can be continuously seen during the procedure. Nerve stimulation may be used in conjunction with ultrasound guidance to confirm the localized nerve and prevent an intraneural injection.

Roberts[139] recommended initially performing simple blocks. Interscalene and periclavicular approaches are considered difficult and must be done by trained operators. The axillary and forearm blocks seem easier, especially for those who are new to ultrasound-guided regional anesthesia.

Indications for brachial plexus blocks include emergency and elective surgery of the upper extremity in conscious or anesthetized children.[219–221] These blocks are useful for outpatient surgery and elicit a high degree of patient satisfaction.

- The axillary block was the most common approach to the brachial plexus in pediatric patients, especially when the lesions involve the forearm and the hand. Advantages of this block include an easy and safe procedure with a high rate of success and very low rate of complications. With the advent of ultrasonographic guidance, the supraclavicular block seems to be the most common block for upper extremity in children.[114]

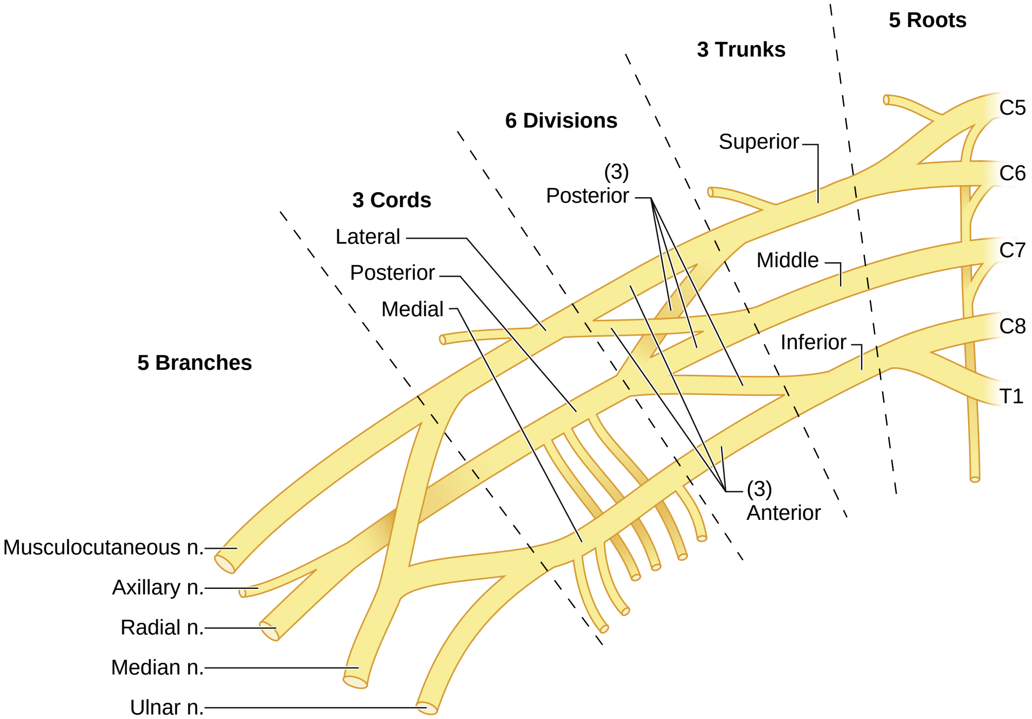

5 Roots
3 Trunks
6 Divisions
3 Cords
5 Branches
C5
C6
C7
C8
T1
Superior
Middle
Inferior
(3) Posterior
(3) Anterior
Lateral
Posterior
Medial
Musculocutaneous n.
Axillary n.
Radial n.
Median n.
Ulnar n.

Fig. 76.10 Brachial plexus anatomy. *n.*, Nerve.

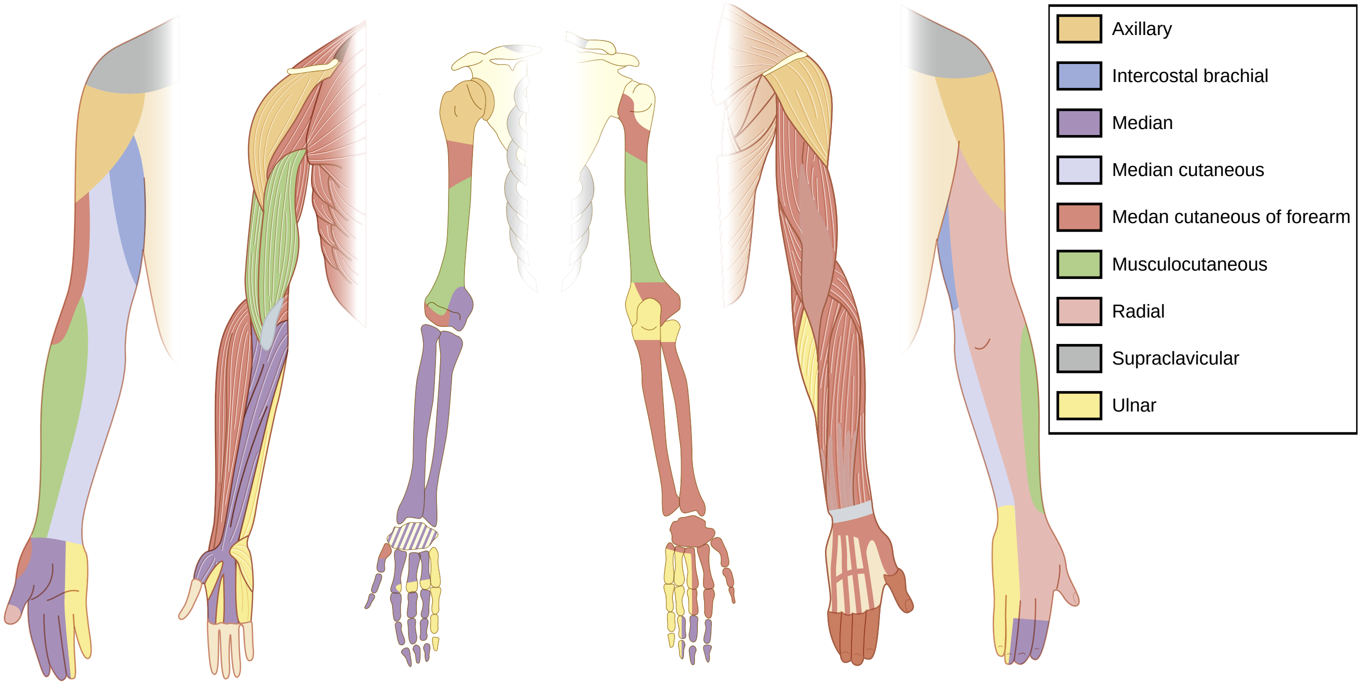

Axillary
Intercostal brachial
Median
Median cutaneous
Medan cutaneous of forearm
Musculocutaneous
Radial
Supraclavicular
Ulnar

Fig. 76.11 Cutaneous, muscle, and bone innervations of the upper extremity.

- The infraclavicular paracoracoid approach is being increasingly used with the development of ultrasound guidance. The technique provides complete blockade of the upper extremity, catheter placement is easier and more comfortable than at axillary levels, and catheter immobilization and protection against accidental removal are also easier.
- Supraclavicular approaches are indicated when the lesion is located on the shoulder or on the proximal part of the arm, including the elbow. This approach should be used in infants with extreme caution because of the proximity of the apical pleura; ultrasound imaging reduces the risk for complications such as vascular or pleural incidental punctures. Before the use of

ultrasound-guided nerve block, the parascalene and the modified interscalene approach (the tip of the block needle is placed virtually at the same place in the interscalene space with both techniques) were considered as safe alternative procedures.

- Distal nerve blocks are used either for distal lesions (surgery involving the hand or one finger only) or as complementary block when distribution of anesthesia is incomplete after a more proximal block.

CERVICAL BRACHIAL PLEXUS BLOCKS

Cervical brachial plexus approaches are not commonly used in children because of potential adverse effects (pneumothorax, vertebral artery injection, intrathecal injection) and the low incidence of isolated shoulder surgery in this population.

Interscalene Approach

The interscalene approach aims to enter the interscalene space at its upper extremity, close to the transverse process of C6. The child is placed in the dorsal recumbent position with the arms extended alongside the thorax and head slightly turned to the contralateral side.

The landmarks are the cricoid cartilage, the anterior ramus of the C6 transverse process (Chassaignac tubercle), and the interscalene groove. The puncture site is located at the skin projection of Chassaignac tubercle in the interscalene groove, just posterior to the lateral border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The needle is inserted at an 80-degree angle (not perpendicularly) to the skin; that is, dorsally and slightly caudal pointing toward the midpoint of the clavicle, until one of the primary trunks (instead of roots) of the brachial plexus is located by elicited muscle twitches in the upper arm. Any distal motor twitch and biceps, triceps, or deltoid muscles are adequate (Fig. 76.12). Contraction of the diaphragm indicates phrenic nerve stimulation and anterior placement of the needle tip. Alternatively, trapezius muscle stimulation indicates that needle placement is too posterior. Borgeat and colleagues[222] described a modified technique in adults that can be used in children. The block needle is inserted at the same puncture site, but the needle is oriented laterally, pointing toward the midpoint of the clavicle until one of the primary trunks (instead of roots) of the brachial plexus is located and twitches are elicited in the upper arm. The interscalene block is not very popular in children because of its adverse effects—ipsilateral phrenic nerve blockade, danger of vascular damage (vertebral artery and vein), and accidental cervical epidural and intrathecal penetration.

Ultrasound imaging improves the safety of this approach by showing the great vessels of the neck, aponeuroses of scalene muscles, and C5-C6-C7 brachial plexus roots.[138,223] The probe is placed in a transverse oblique plane at the level of the cricoid cartilage (Fig. 76.13). The trunks and roots of the brachial plexus can be identified in the interscalene groove as distinct round-to-oval hypoechoic structures between the scalene anterior and middle muscles, both deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The internal jugular vein and carotid artery can be visualized medially (Fig. 76.14). Using combined ultrasound-guided nerve stimulation techniques, the needle is advanced with an in-plane alignment from lateral (posterior) to medial (anterior) side of the probe, toward the target nerves. Precise needle placement may limit the dose of local anesthetic required.[224]

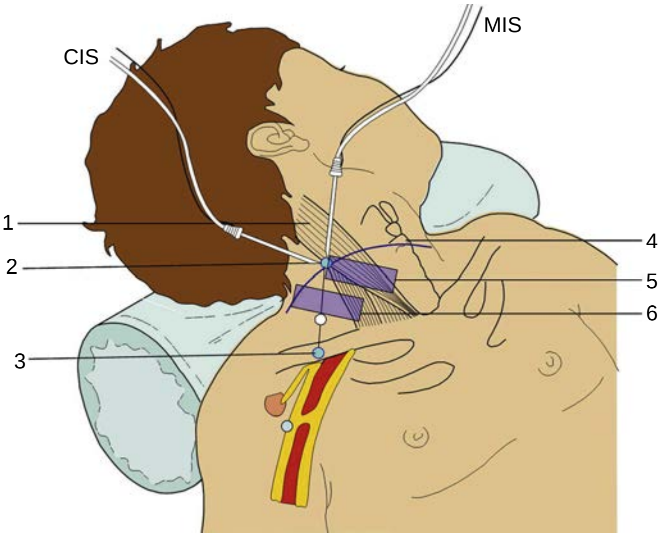


Fig. 76.12 Interscalene approach to the brachial plexus. *CIS,* Classic interscalene approach (after Winnie); *MIS,* modified interscalene approach (after Borgeat); *1,* sternocleidomastoid muscle; *2,* skin projection of the Chassaignac tubercle; *3,* midpoint of the clavicle; *4,* cricoid cartilage; *5,* probe positioning (classic approach); *6,* probe positioning (Borgeat approach).

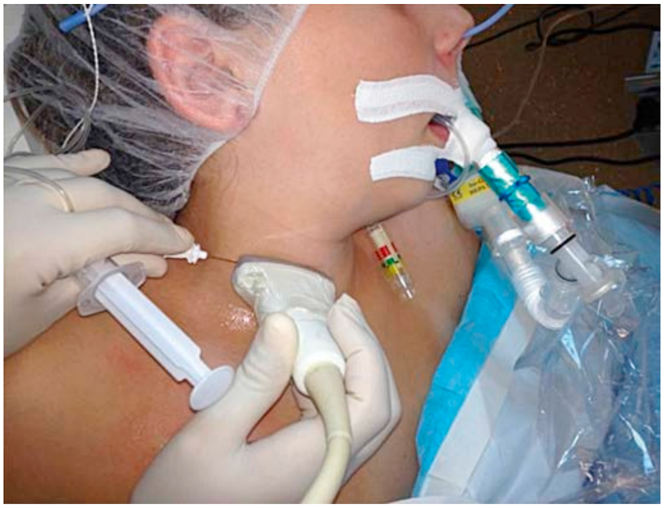


Fig. 76.13 Ultrasound interscalene block procedure: patient head and probe position and in-plane needle approach.

Parascalene Approach

The parascalene approach described by Dalens and colleagues[225] aims to penetrate the interscalene space at a distance from the apical pleura and great vessels of the neck. The landmarks are the midpoint of the upper border of the clavicle and the transverse process of C6 located by palpation in the interscalene groove, just posterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, at the level of the cricoid cartilage. The puncture site is identified at the junction of the upper two thirds, with the lower third of the line joining the skin projection of the C6 process and the midpoint of the clavicle (Fig. 76.15). The success rate for this approach is very

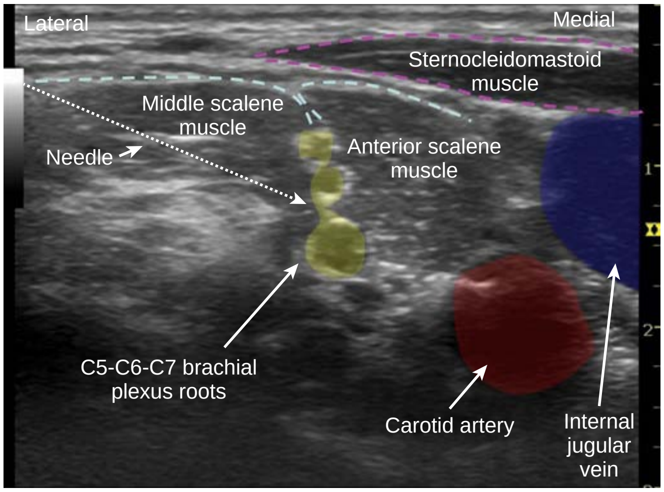


Fig. 76.14 Ultrasound interscalene block imaging.

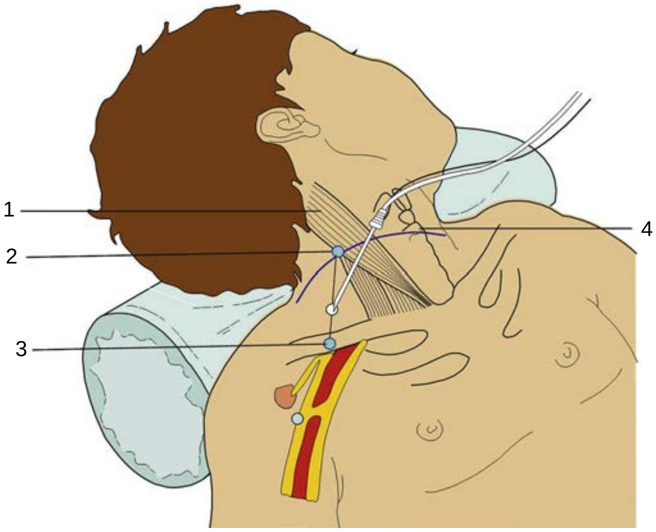


Fig. 76.15 Parascalene approach to the brachial plexus. *1,* Sternocleidomastoid muscle; *2,* skin projection of the Chassaignac tubercle; *3,* midpoint of the clavicle; *4,* cricoid cartilage.

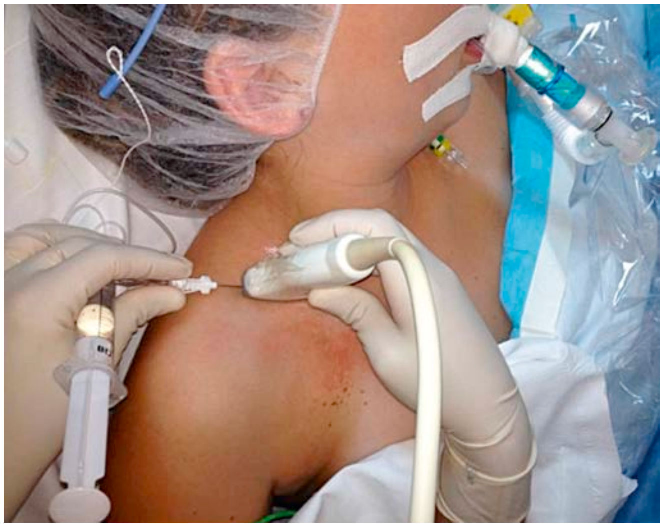


Fig. 76.16 Supraclavicular block procedure. Probe position and in-plane needle insertion.

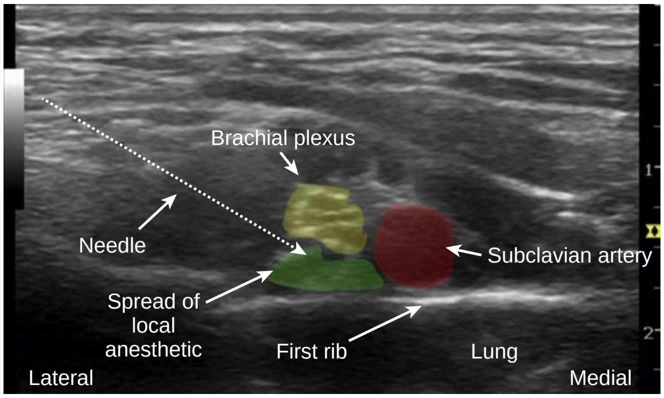


Fig. 76.17 Ultrasound supraclavicular block imaging.

high, with a good safety record. Occasionally, blockade of the lower cord (ulnar nerve or medial branch of the median nerve) can be incomplete. The morbidity of this technique is virtually nil.[226]

SUPRACLAVICULAR BRACHIAL PLEXUS BLOCK

In contrast to other brachial plexus blocks, risk for pneumothorax is increased because of the proximity of the lung parenchyma at this level. Use of ultrasound guidance with an in-plane approach is strongly recommended and allows real-time viewing of the needle tip, thus avoiding inadvertent pleural puncture.

Ultrasound-guided supraclavicular block in adults has been described in several articles, but few reports are available in the pediatric literature.[75,227,228] The brachial plexus trunks gather at the lower part of the interscalene space, where they surround the subclavian artery. This level carries the advantage of being the area where the trunks are most compact. With a high-frequency probe placed parallel and against the clavicle in the coronal oblique plane (Fig. 76.16), the brachial plexus (trunk or division) appears as a cluster of hypoechoic nodules located lateral, posterior, and superior to the subclavian artery (hypoechoic and pulsatile) and just above the underlying first rib (hyperechoic and curvilinear) (Fig. 76.17). Care should be taken to avoid intravascular injection of surrounding vessels (i.e., the suprascapular artery or dorsal scapular artery) by using color Doppler (Fig. 76.18). The needle is slowly advanced under direct visualization with an in-plane approach (from lateral to medial) toward the angle formed by the first rib and the subclavian artery (see Fig. 76.17). The goal of the supraclavicular technique is to see the spread of local anesthetic reaching the angle between the first rib and the subclavian artery. At Lurie Children’s, we primarily use this technique for brachial plexus blocks. In addition, we prefer testing the child regarding the integrity of the brachial plexus using a simple algorithm: a thumbs up sign (radial nerve); making an “O” with the thumb and index finger (median nerve); and scissoring the index and the third digit (ulnar nerve). Using this paradigm, we have been able to successfully delineate children who may not be eligible for nerve blocks due to preexisting nerve damage.[228]

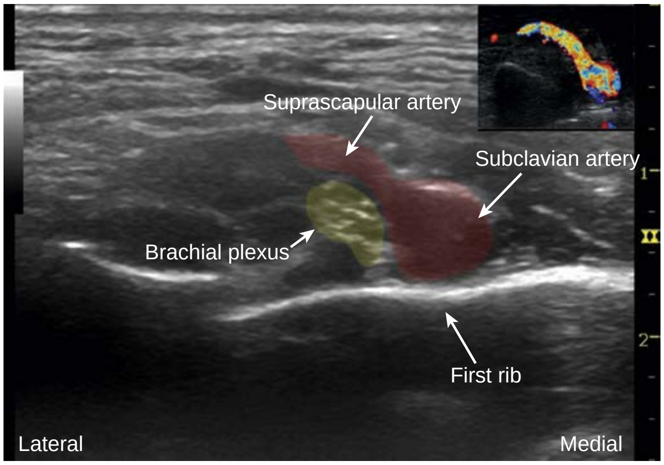


Fig. 76.18 Ultrasound supraclavicular block imaging and surrounding vessels by using color Doppler.

Ultrasound guidance has increased the safety profile of the supraclavicular approach so that in experienced hands this may be one of the most reliable and effective blocks of the brachial plexus.[224]

INFRACLAVICULAR BRACHIAL PLEXUS BLOCKS

Infraclavicular Approaches

Infraclavicular blocks have gained considerable interest, especially with the development of ultrasound guidance. They consist of approaching the divisions (close to the clavicle) or the cords (close to or below the coracoid process) of the brachial plexus. The two main approaches are midclavicular and paracoracoid, both performed with the patient in the dorsal recumbent position.[229] A catheter can be easily inserted and safely secured, which is not the case in the axilla area.

Midclavicular Approaches

Two midclavicular approaches, vertical and anterolateral, have been described. The vertical midclavicular approach is performed by inserting the needle at a right angle to the skin, immediately below the midpoint of the lower border of the clavicle, until twitches are elicited in the upper extremity. Even though use of this technique was reported in pediatric patients without apparent complication,[227,230] the path followed by the needle threatens the apical pleura and lung, thus contraindicating this approach in children.

The anterolateral midclavicular approach can be safely used in children lying supine with the ipsilateral arm alongside the thorax. The landmarks are the coracoid process of the scapula, the lower border of the clavicle, and the deltopectoral groove (Fig. 76.19). The block needle is introduced 1 cm below the midpoint of the lower border of the clavicle at a 30- to 45-degree angle dorsally and a 30-degree angle laterally, aligned with the deltopectoral groove, in direction to the axilla. The objective is to enter the neurovascular sheath 1.0 to 1.5 cm medial to the coracoid process of the scapula until twitches are elicited in the arm, forearm, or hand.

Paracoracoid Approaches

The medial paracoracoid approaches are currently the most popular techniques of infraclavicular blockade in children. It is the reference technique with nerve stimulation and the one with the lowest morbidity. The puncture site is located at the caudal extremity of the deltopectoral groove, 1 to 2 cm (according to patient's age) both caudally and medially to the coracoid (see Fig. 76.19). Abducting the upper arm at 90 degrees instead of placing it alongside the thorax brings the plexus closer to the skin and favors circumferential spread of local anesthetic.[231] The needle is inserted perpendicularly to the skin until twitches are elicited in muscles of the upper extremity.

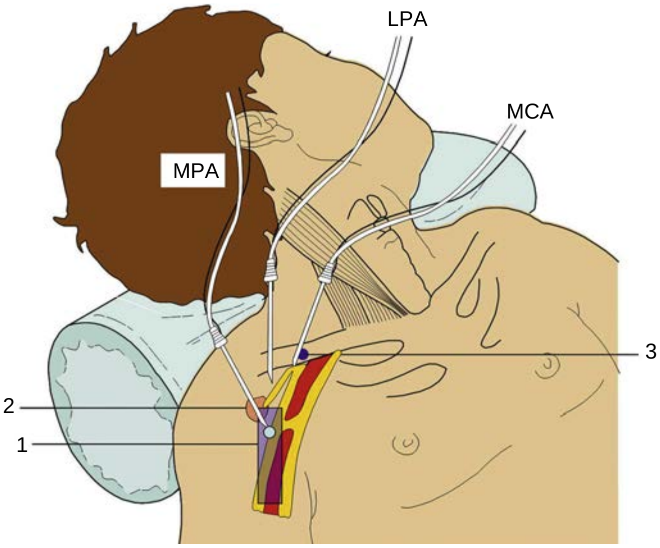


Fig. 76.19 Infraclavicular approaches to the brachial plexus. *LPA,* Lateral paracoracoid approach; *MCA,* midclavicular approach; *MPA,* median paracoracoid approach; *1,* ultrasound probe; *2,* coracoid process of the scapula; *3,* midpoint of the clavicle.

Ultrasound-Guided Infraclavicular Block

SUPRACLAVICULAR BLOCK

- Place a linear probe superior to the clavicle scanning lateral to the great vessels.
- Notice the first rib and the subclavian artery.
- The supraclavicular plexus is seen surrounding the subclavian artery as a “bunch of grapes.”
- Using an in-plane approach, place the needle below the plexus; injection of 0.2 mL/kg of local anesthesia will produce adequate analgesia.
- Stay away from using a medially positioned needle due to the close proximity to the pleura.

The lateral paracoracoid approach under nerve stimulation is technically feasible but unsafe if concomitant ultrasound imaging is not available, because of the danger of pleural penetration. The technique can be performed with the arm extended alongside the thorax or abducted 110 degrees and the elbow flexed by 90 degrees,[229] thus taking away the neurovascular sheath from the parietal pleura and loosening it to favor circumferential spread of the local anesthetic. Useful ultrasound landmarks are the axillary artery and vein, which are located deep and medial to the cords, with the vein positioned medial and caudal to the artery. Pectoralis major and minor muscles are most superficial overlying the neurovascular structures.

Two main infraclavicular approaches are used. One is a proximal approach with the probe placed parallel and

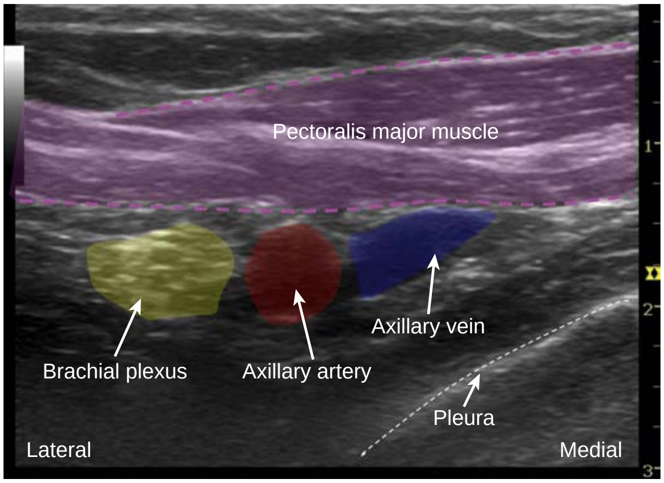


Fig. 76.20 Ultrasound infraclavicular block, infraproximal approach. At this proximal level, the pectoralis major is the main muscle seen superficial to the neurovascular bundle. The pectoralis minor is located distally to this ultrasound section. Among the neurovascular bundle structures the axillary vein is the most medial, followed by the axillary artery and then the divisions of the plexus most laterally.

immediately below the clavicle, and the cords are located lateral to the axillary artery (Fig. 76.20). The second is a paracoracoid approach with the probe placed in a parasagittal plane immediately medial and inferior to the coracoid process, allowing a short-axis view of the brachial plexus (Fig. 76.21). Many individual anatomic variations occur in the location of the cords around the artery. Commonly, the lateral cord is most easily viewed, the medial cord lies between the artery and vein, and the posterior cord is deep to the artery and frequently difficult to individualize. The needle is introduced using an in-plane approach from lateral (superior) to medial (inferior), and advanced aiming to place local anesthetic posterior to the axillary artery near to the posterior cord (Fig. 76.22).

Axillary Approach

AXILLARY BLOCK

- Place a hockey stick probe or a linear small footprint probe in the axilla as proximal as possible.
- The needle is directed from superior to inferior using an in-plane approach.
- The structures are located fairly superficially and can be easily identified.
- Color Doppler can be used to recognize the vascular structures.
- Local anesthetic solution is injected to surround the cords.

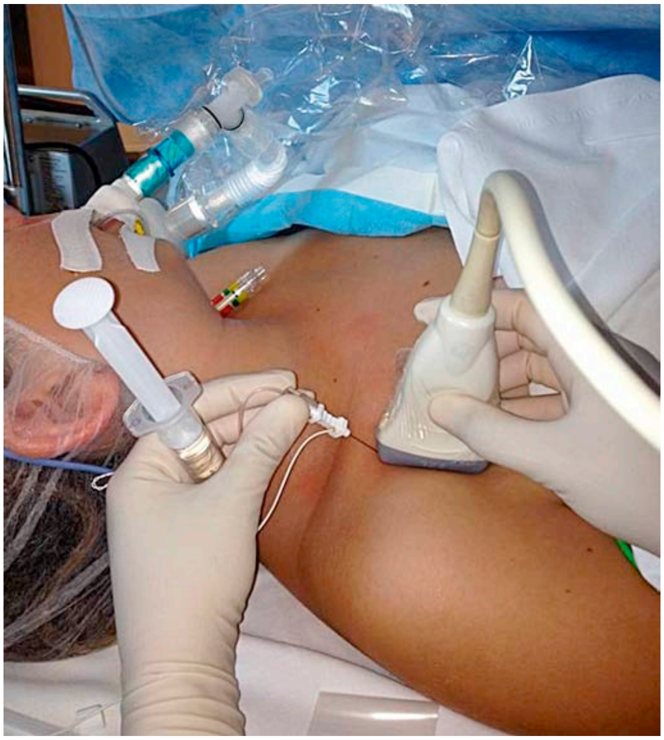


Fig. 76.21 Paracoracoid infraclavicular approach procedure, with probe position and in-plane needle insertion.

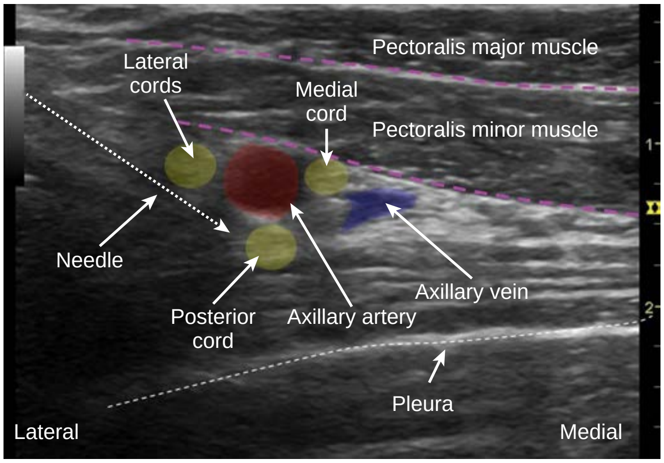


Fig. 76.22 Ultrasound infraclavicular block imaging by paracoracoid approach.

Historically, the axillary block was the most common approach to the brachial plexus in pediatric patients, aiming to approach the plexus at the level of its terminal branches in the axilla. It is a relatively easy and safe procedure to control perioperative pain in elbow, forearm, and hand surgeries. In children, several variants of the axillary approach have been described, with no difference in clinical outcomes regardless of the technique selected. In contrast to the procedure in adults, the transarterial approach is not used in children because of the higher incidence of vessel spasm and potential risk for ischemia. Unlike in adults, a single injection is sufficient to block all the nerves of the forearm and hand, with the exception of the musculocutaneous nerve in 50% of cases.[232] To overcome this problem, the most useful variant of this technique is the transcoracobrachialis approach. The child is placed in the supine position with the ipsilateral arm both supinated and abducted by 90 degrees.[220] The block needle is introduced posteriorly at the crossing of the coracobrachialis muscle with the lower border of the pectoralis major muscle (Fig. 76.23). The needle is advanced posteriorly toward the medial border of the humerus through the upper and lateral part of the coracobrachialis muscle (within which runs the musculocutaneous muscle). With nerve stimulation, the musculocutaneous nerve is usually the first nerve encountered

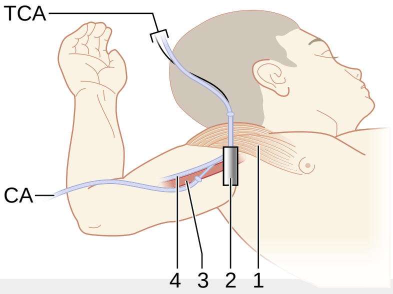


Fig. 76.23 Axillary approaches to the brachial plexus. *CA,* Classic approach; *TCA,* transcoracobrachialis approach; *1,* pectoralis major muscle; *2,* ultrasound probe; *3,* axillary artery; *4,* coracobrachialis muscle.

(it will be preferably blocked on removal of the needle); the needle is moved deeper until it crosses the perineurovascular sheath[218] and elicits twitches in the muscles of the hand and forearm. At this level the cords have split into terminal nerves, and the median nerve is usually contacted first. The local anesthetic is then injected, and the needle is removed while a small volume (0.1 mL/kg up to 5 mL) is injected close to the musculocutaneous nerve. All tourniquet pain (intercostobrachial nerve) can be blocked with a subcutaneous injection in the axilla.

With ultrasound guidance, a high-frequency probe is placed perpendicular to the major axis of the arm to obtain a short-axis view of the neurovascular bundle. The ultrasound-guided axillary approach to the brachial plexus is strictly a multi-injection technique. At this level, median, radial, and ulnar nerves are situated close to the axillary artery and vein. Great variation exists on the anatomic relationship of nerves with axillary location.[233] Generally, the median nerve is located between the lateral aspect of the artery and the biceps brachii muscle, the ulnar nerve is located more superficial and medial to the artery, and the radial nerve lies deep to the artery. Sliding the probe from distal arm to axilla area should help identify the nerve. The needle can be visualized throughout the procedure as it progresses in the plane of the ultrasound beam (Fig. 76.24); its tip can be precisely placed close to each of the three main nerves and, on removal of the needle, close to the musculocutaneous nerve between the coracobrachial and short head of the biceps muscles.

Axillary blocks are relatively safe. Accidental arterial puncture is the most undesirable complication, which may occasionally result in transient vascular insufficiency or a compressive hematoma. Intraneural injection is the most feared complication. It is usually thought to be the main cause of permanent nerve damage and mostly undetected in the patient under general anesthesia. In a prospective study on volunteers, Bigeleisen and associates[134] deliberately attempted to penetrate axillary nerve trunks under ultrasound guidance. Deliberate intraneural injections were made, and the patients were evaluated after the injection and 6 months later. No motor or sensory deficits were observed. Regardless of whether the design of this study is debatable, the results are interesting in showing that intraneural injection might not be as detrimental as commonly believed and might even be innocuous provided no intrafascicular injection (which elicits strong resistance to injection and excruciating pain) is made. However, such intraneural injections should be avoided, especially when ultrasound imaging is suggestive (tip of the needle within the nerve path and increase in nerve diameter when a fraction of the local anesthetic is being injected).

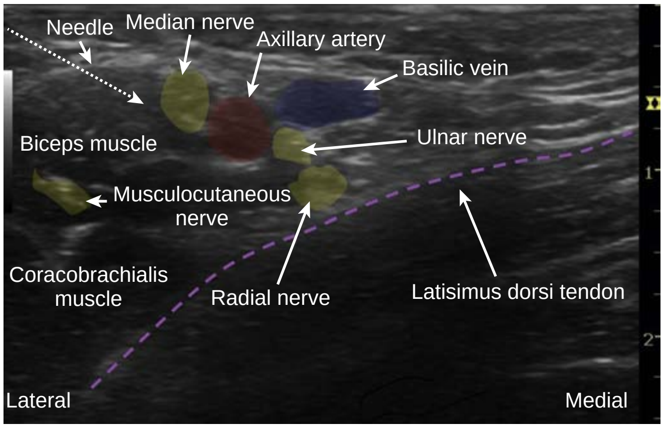


Fig. 76.24 Ultrasound-guided axillary block imaging.

TABLE 76.10 Usual Local Anesthetic Bolus Doses of Ropivacaine 0.1% (Neonate) to 0.2% or Levobupivacaine 0.125% (Neonate) to 0.25% and Infusion Rates for Brachial Plexus Nerve Blocks

Conduction Block	Bolus Doses (mL/kg)	Infusion Rates
Brachial plexus above and below clavicle	0.3-0.5	0.1-0.2 mL/kg/h
Any nerve trunk at elbow	0.1-0.2	—
Any nerve trunk at wrist	0.05-0.1	—

When continuous analgesia is required, a catheter may be introduced into the axillary nerve sheath, but its fixation and immobilization are difficult. Usually, periclavicular or interscalene approaches are preferred, with safe immobilization and increased patient comfort at these levels.

The volume of injectate is critical and depends on the approach and technique used to locate the nerves (Table 76.10). With nerve stimulation, no information is obtained regarding the circumferential spread around nerve trunks; thus recommended volumes of injection are based on the probability to obtain complete blockade. With ultrasound-guided techniques, the circumferential spread of local anesthetics can be clearly seen as a complete “donut” surrounding the relevant nerve trunk. In clinical practice, the use of ultrasound for nerve block must be associated with a significant reduction in the volume of local anesthetic.

DISTAL CONDUCTION BLOCKS

Elbow and Forearm Approaches

In pediatrics, approaching the radial, median, or ulnar nerve at the elbow or wrist is still not very common. These approaches are rather difficult with nerve stimulation only, and their failure rate is relatively high when blind subcutaneous injections are made. Indications have long been limited to complementation of partially failed brachial blocks.

Ultrasound imaging is widening the field of indications for these techniques because these superficial nerves are easy to identify and approach with ultrasound guidance, the more so as very small amounts of local anesthetic (0.05 mL/kg up to 1-2 mL) are sufficient to produce complete nerve blockade. It is possible to block median and ulnar nerves at any point of their route from the wrist to the axilla, but at the level of the wrist, caution is necessary because it is often difficult to distinguish the nerves from the tendons owing to their similar appearance.

- The median nerve is located in the antecubital fossa just medial to the brachial artery (Fig. 76.25). In the middle of the mid forearm, the median nerve is medial to the radial artery and medial and superficial to the radius (Fig. 76.26). At the wrist, the medial nerve is located between the tendons of the palmaris longus and the flexor carpi radialis but the distinction between the nerve and tendons may be difficult.
- The ulnar nerve can be blocked several centimeters above (Fig. 76.27) or below the elbow but never in the cubital tunnel, the groove between the olecranon and the medial epicondyle, because it can be compressed in this poorly compliant space. At the wrist, the ulnar nerve appears as a small hyperechoic triangle in close proximity to the medial side of the ulnar artery (Fig. 76.28*A*). To facilitate and secure the procedure, we prefer to track the ulnar nerve proximally until it separates away from the artery (see Fig. 76.28*B*).
- The radial nerve travels posterior to the humerus to the lateral side of the elbow, where it divides into superficial and deep branches. When scanning the posterolateral aspect of humerus just above the elbow, the radial nerve can be visualized below the brachial muscle in close proximity to the humerus (Fig. 76.29).

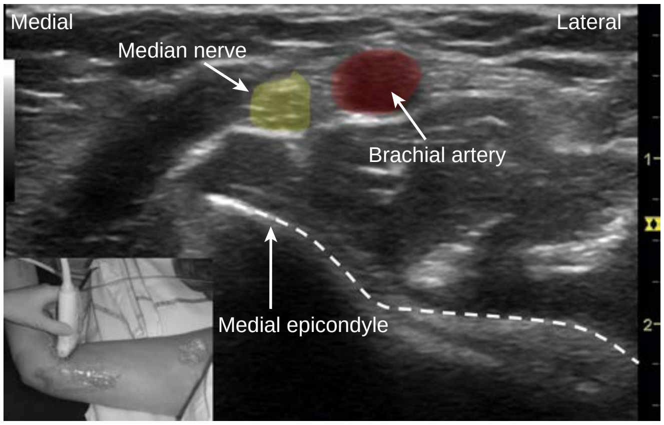


Fig. 76.25 Ultrasound view of median nerve at the elbow level.

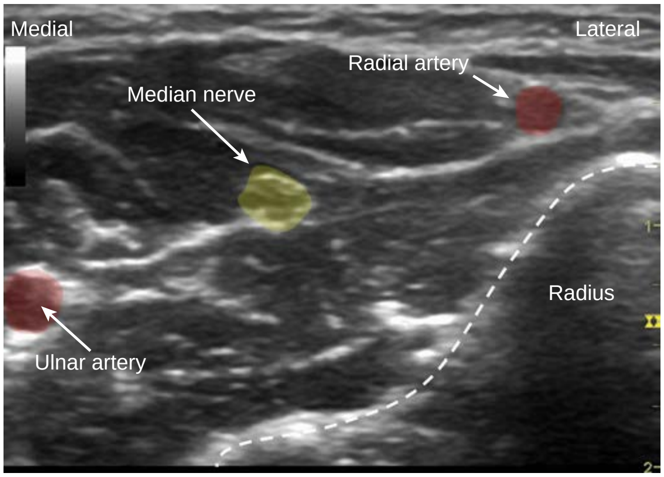


Fig. 76.26 Ultrasound view of median nerve at the midforearm.

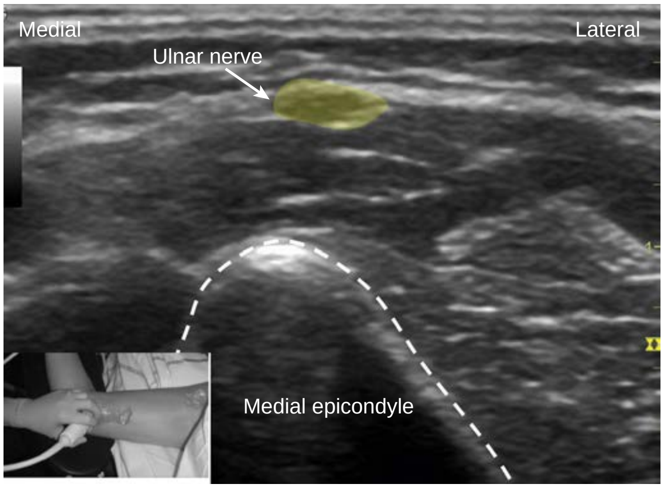


Fig. 76.27 Ultrasound view of ulnar nerve at the elbow.

DIGITAL BLOCKS

Traditional digital ring blocks are almost never used in children, at least by anesthesiologists, because of technically safer alternatives such as metacarpal block and subcutaneous infiltration.

A single, subcutaneous digital block was developed with the rationale of avoiding introduction of fluid into the digital flexor tendon sheath and a theoretic risk for infection. The subcutaneous block is performed by a single injection with a 25-gauge needle into the palmar skin at the base of the finger (Fig. 76.30).[234]

Note that these palmar techniques, including single subcutaneous palmar block, carry a risk for anesthetizing only the last two phalanges and the ventral aspect of the proximal phalanx of the fingers.

Lower Extremity Conduction Blocks

LUMBAR PLEXUS NERVE BLOCKS

Anatomic Considerations

The lumbar plexus is formed by the union of the anterior rami of the first four lumbar nerves (L1-L4) with variable input from the 12th thoracic nerve (T12) and L5. The lumbar plexus lies in the psoas compartment in the paravertebral space, with the anterior border formed by the psoas major muscle and the posterior border formed by the quadratus lumborum muscle. As it emerges from this space, it divides into the four nerves that innervate the anterior portion of the upper aspect of the lower extremity—the femoral, lateral cutaneous, genitofemoral, and obturator nerves. These nerves run a variable part of their course just

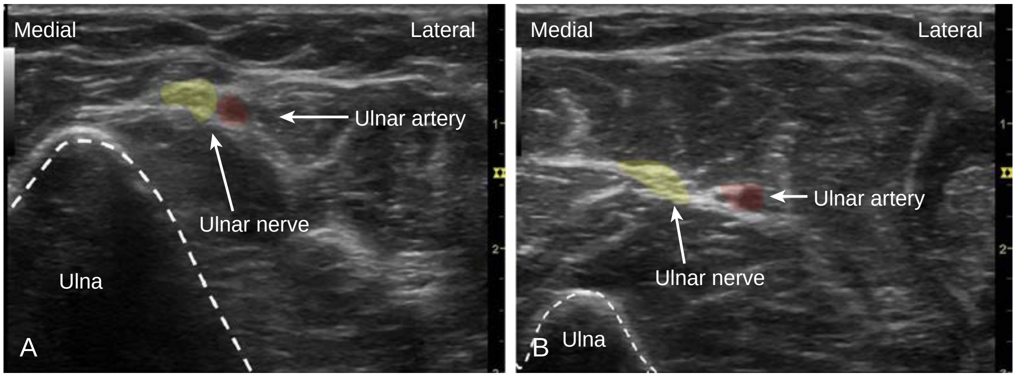


Fig. 76.28 Ultrasound view of ulnar nerve at the wrist (A) and at midforearm level (B).

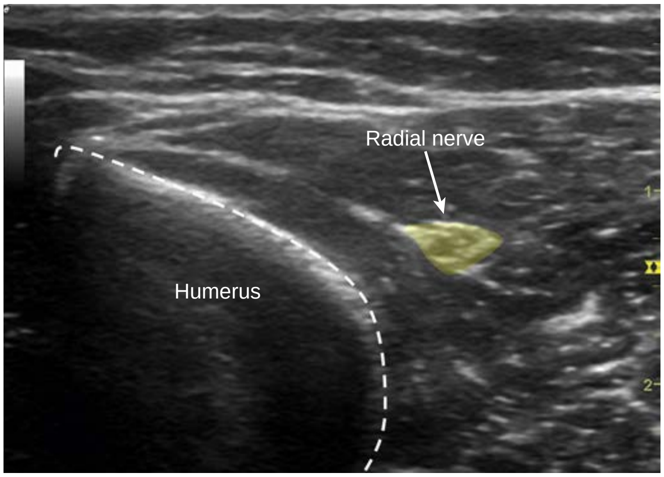


Fig. 76.29 Ultrasound view of radial nerve at the posterolateral aspect of the midarm.

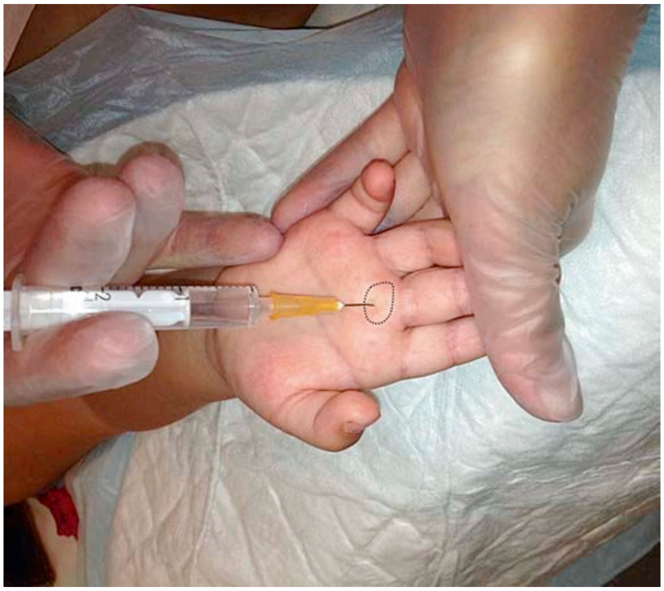


Fig. 76.30 Transthecal nerve block. The head of the metacarpal bone is located by palpation.

below the fascia iliaca, which is the common fascia covering psoas and iliacus muscle. A sufficient volume of local anesthetic injected at the inner surface of this fascia will spread along it and reach these nerves, thus producing a fascia iliaca compartment block.

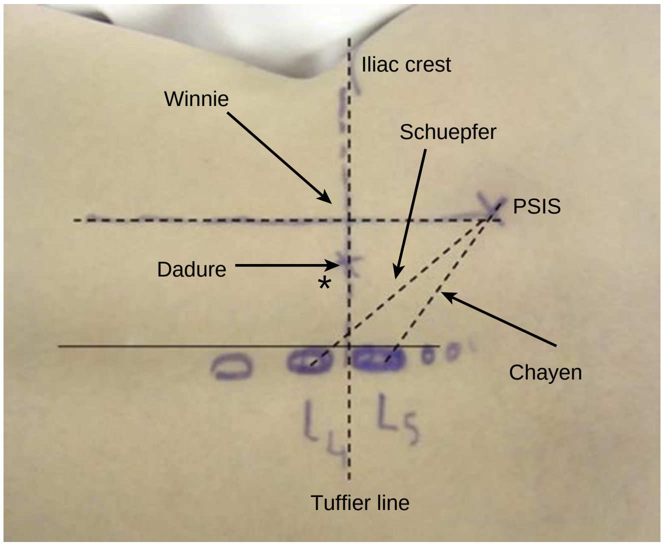


Fig. 76.31 Landmarks of psoas compartment block with different procedures described in the pediatric literature. *PSIS,* Posterior superior iliac spine.

Psoas Compartment Block (Direct Lumbar Plexus Block)

Psoas compartment block is performed with the child turned in the lateral decubitus position with the operated side uppermost. The landmarks are the iliac crests, the ipsilateral posterior superior iliac spine, and the L5 spinous process. The following three puncture sites can be used (Fig. 76.31):

1. The midpoint of the line joining the posterior iliac spine to the L5 spinous process (modified Chayen approach)
2. A point located on the intercristal line (Tuffier line), three quarters of the distance between the spinous process of L4 and a line parallel to the spinal column passing through the posterior superior iliac spine[235]
3. A point located at medial two thirds and the lateral one third on a line from spinous process of L4 to the posterior superior iliac spine[236]

Whatever the puncture site used, the block needle is inserted perpendicularly to the skin until twitches are elicited in the ipsilateral quadriceps muscle. Complications, including cardiac arrest from intravascular injection, psoas muscle hematomas, epidural anesthesia, and retroperitoneal injection if the needle is inserted deeper than recommended, have been reported.[237,238] Consequently, this

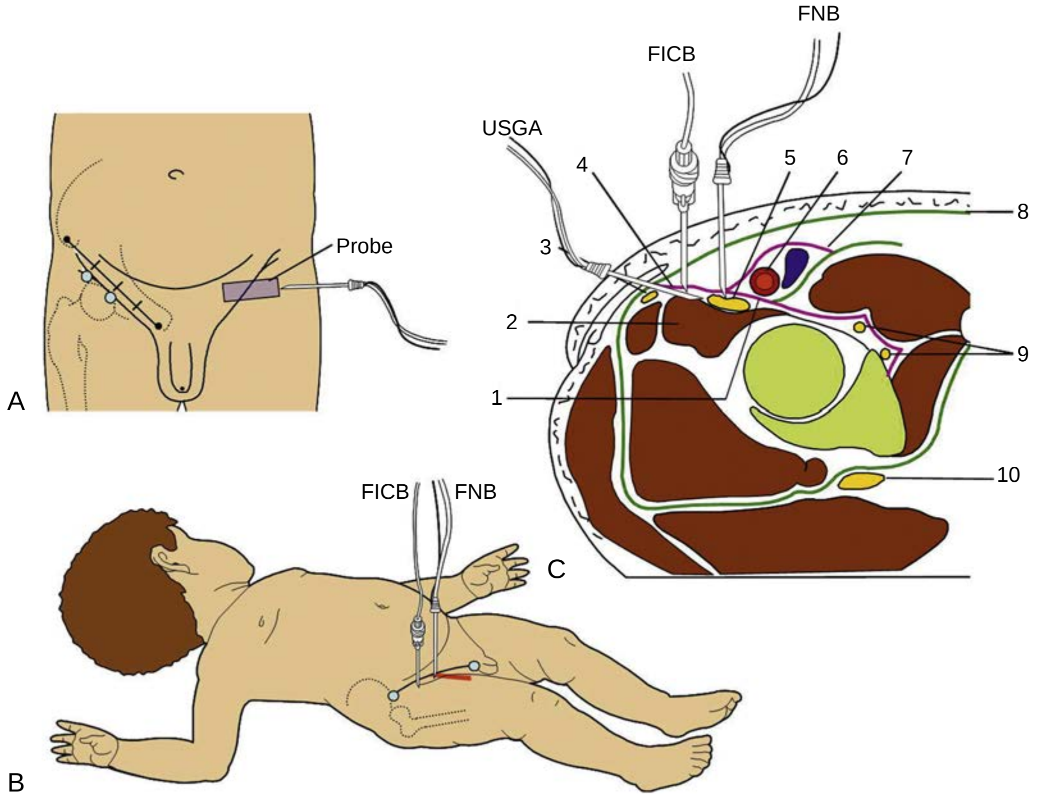


Fig. 76.32 Femoral nerve and fascia iliaca compartment blocks. (A) Landmarks and probe positioning. (B) Patient position. (C) Transverse section of the thigh. *FICB,* Fascia iliaca compartment block; *FNB,* femoral nerve block; *USGA,* ultrasound-guided approach; *1,* iliopectineal arch; *2,* psoas muscle; *3,* lateral cutaneous nerve of the thigh; *4,* fascia iliaca; *5,* femoral nerve; *6,* femoral artery; *7,* femoral vessel sheath; *8,* fascia lata; *9,* division branches of the obturator nerve; *10,* sciatic nerve.

regional technique should be performed only by trained anesthesiologists, taking into consideration the depth of the lumbar plexus estimated according to the patient's age or weight and the proximity of important anatomic structures to the psoas compartment.

The usual indications for this block are surgeries on the hip or femoral shaft (femoral and hip osteotomies). These operations require blockade of the three main nerves innervating the hip joint: femoral, lateral femoral cutaneous, and obturator nerves. Psoas compartment block can produce excellent postoperative pain management during the first 48 hours. A recent study using sonography of the lumbar plexus in children showed that the depth of the lumbosacral plexus correlated with weight rather than age.[239] Continuous psoas compartment block provides good management of pain relief in major hip or femoral surgeries in children.[125,235,240] Continuous psoas compartment block has been compared with continuous epidural block in hip and femoral surgery in children.[125] Continuous psoas compartment block provided the same quality of postoperative analgesia with significantly less adverse events and required decreased doses of ropivacaine than continuous epidural block.

Femoral Nerve Block

Femoral nerve blocks are performed while the child lies supine, preferably with the ipsilateral limb slightly abducted. The landmarks are the inguinal ligament and the femoral artery. The puncture site is located 0.5 to 1.0 cm both below the inguinal ligament (not the inguinal crease) and lateral to the femoral artery (Fig. 76.32). The block needle is inserted posteriorly, either perpendicular to the anterior aspect of the thigh or, especially when a catheter has to be inserted, at a 45-degree angle cephalad, pointing to the umbilicus, until twitches are elicited in the quadriceps muscle when nerve stimulation is used.

Ultrasound imaging makes the technique even easier.[141] The probe is placed slightly above and parallel to the inguinal ligament (Figs. 76.33 and 76.34).

The main surgical indications are femoral shaft or knee surgeries. The introduction of a catheter for continuous analgesia can be achieved by the direct perineural (femoral) approach[241] or the fascia iliaca compartment approach.[242,243] These two approaches have never been compared in terms of efficacy in children.[244] The fascia iliaca technique, which does not require the use of a nerve stimulator or mobilization of the limb, seems easier to perform in fractures of the femur with less accidental vascular puncture.

Fascia Iliaca Compartment Blocks

The technique consists of injecting a local anesthetic below the fascia iliaca.[244] The injectate spreads at the inner surface of the fascia and, depending on its volume, spreads around the nerves emerging from the lumbar plexus that supply the lower extremity. The technique is performed with the child lying supine (see Fig. 76.32). With this technique, the femoral and lateral cutaneous nerves are almost constantly blocked. The local anesthetic usually reaches the upper division branch of the obturator nerve, which is the branch giving a twig to the hip joint. The anesthetized area also includes areas supplied by upper branches of the lumbar plexus in more than 70% of procedures, such as the genitofemoral nerve.

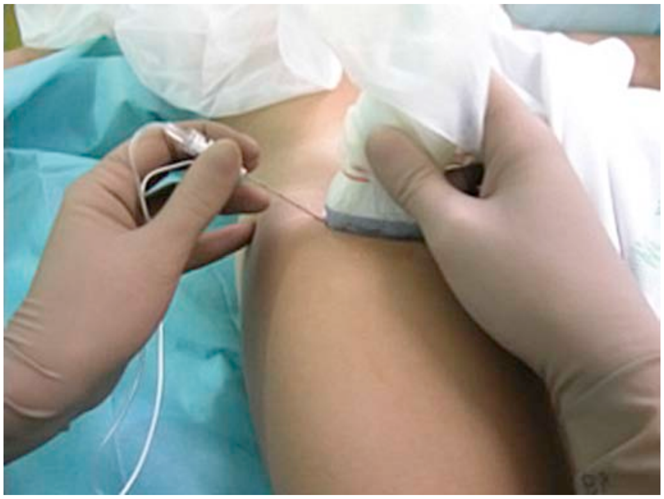


Fig. 76.33 Probe location for ultrasound in-plane femoral block procedure.

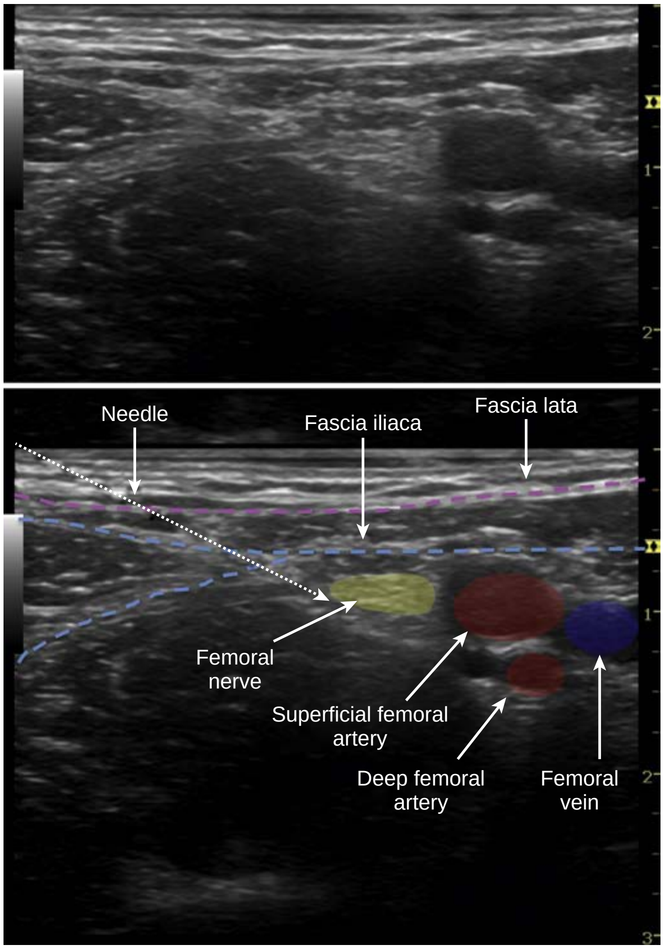


Fig. 76.34 Ultrasound picture of femoral nerve block procedure.

Perivascular femoral nerve and fascia iliaca compartment approaches have never been compared in terms of efficacy in children.[244] The fascia iliaca compartment block was superior in terms of blockade for lateral femoral cutaneous, obturator, and genitofemoral nerves. The perivascular approach provides a risk for significant vascular puncture. Moreover, the fascia iliaca technique, which does not require the use of a nerve stimulator or mobilization of the limb, seems easier to perform in femur fracture surgeries.

Performing this block using ultrasound showed several advantages, including extension of the duration of postoperative analgesia and decrease in the volume of injected local anesthetic in contrast to that with nerve stimulation technique. Recent reviews comparing use of ultrasound to no ultrasound demonstrated increased block duration and better pain scores in the postanesthesia unit, as well as higher block success rates.[1,141] Oberndorfer and associates found that the duration of analgesia in the ultrasound group was significantly increased to approximately 508/178 minutes versus approximately 335/69 minutes for sciatic and femoral nerve blocks using the same techniques.[141]

Usual doses of local anesthetic are 0.2 to 0.5 mL/kg in single-shot or induction bolus and 0.1 to 0.2 mL/kg/h in postoperative continuous infusion of long-acting local anesthetic.[126] Patient-controlled regional anesthesia can be used with bolus of 0.1 mL/kg (up to 5 mL, and maximum 3 boluses per hour). Local anesthetics with epinephrine produce significantly lower plasma concentrations and should be preferred whenever possible. The addition of clonidine (1-2 µg/kg)[60] significantly prolongs the duration of analgesia.[44]

In fascia iliaca compartment and femoral nerve block, placement of a catheter is easy and allows long-lasting pain relief (Fig. 76.35) and is improved with ultrasound guidance. Recently, Lako and associates[243] compared continuous fascia iliaca block and intravenous morphine in terms of analgesia and side effects in children undergoing pelvic osteotomy. The authors noted excellent postoperative pain relief, with less sedation and a better return of appetite in the regional analgesia group in contrast to the morphine group. On the other hand, Paut and colleagues[242] determined plasma concentrations of bupivacaine during continuous fascia iliaca block in children after major femur or knee surgery or femoral fracture. The regimen of local anesthetic administration was a bolus dose of 0.25% bupivacaine with epinephrine followed by continuous administration of 0.1% bupivacaine for 48 hours. They concluded that the plasma concentrations of bupivacaine during continuous fascia iliaca compartment block are within the safety margins for children (0.71 ± 0.4 g/mL and 0.84 ± 0.4 g/mL at 24 hours and 48 hours, respectively).

Other Lumbar Plexus Nerve Blocks

SAPHENOUS NERVE BLOCK GUIDANCE

- Place a linear probe along the medial aspect of the lower third of the thigh
- The artorius and the superficial femoral artery are identified, a needle is inserted in an in-lane approach
- The local anesthetic is injected to surround the nerve that is located in the fascial plane between the sartorius and the vastus medialis muscle but superficial to the superficial femoral artery
- Frequent aspiration of the needle is performed to reduce intravascular injections

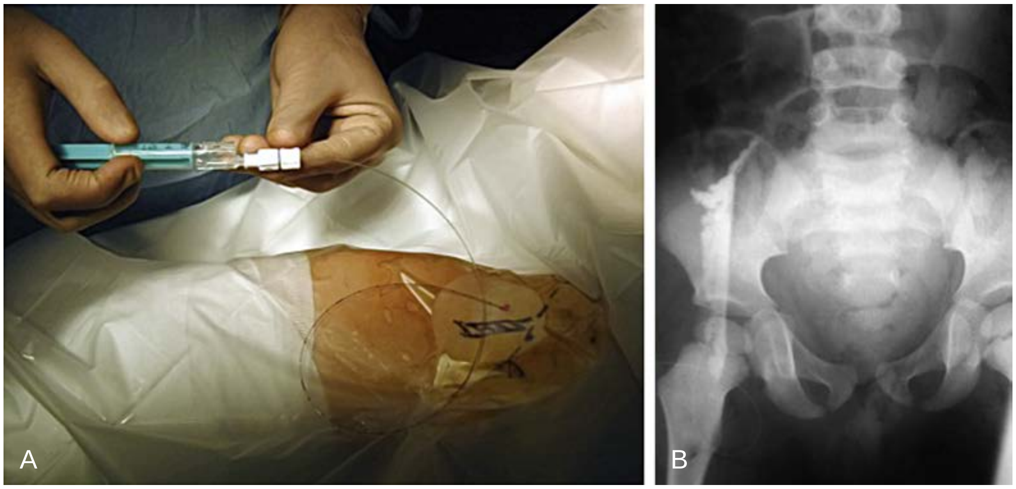


Fig. 76.35 Femoral nerve catheter placement (A) and spread of contrast medium solution after injection into the catheter (B).

Saphenous Nerve Block. Saphenous nerve blocks are used as a complement to sciatic blocks with small amounts of local anesthetic. Because the saphenous nerve is a purely sensory nerve, it is not identifiable by nerve stimulation. This block is also alluded to as the adductor canal block and has gained immense popularity especially for lower extremity procedures in which motor block can be avoided. Many block procedures have been published, all resulting in a high failure rate (30% or higher). Ultrasound guidance has greatly facilitated this block placement.

The classic approach is performed at knee level with the patient supine. The anterior edge of the medial head of the gastrocnemius muscle and the tibial tuberosity are identified by palpation. A line is drawn at a 45-degree angle with the intercondylar line, from the tibial tuberosity to the anterior edge of the gastrocnemius muscle. The technique consists of subcutaneously injecting local anesthetic along this line. This very simple technique is virtually free of complications, but its failure rate is rather high.

The saphenous and vastus medialis nerve block takes advantage of the proximity of the vastus medialis and saphenous nerves within the adductor canal in the upper part of the thigh. Being a mixed nerve, the vastus medialis nerve can be located easily by nerve stimulation, and injecting a local anesthetic, which results in concomitant blockade of the two nerves. The landmarks are the femoral artery, the inguinal ligament, and the upper border of the sartorius muscle (Fig. 76.36). A short and short-beveled insulated needle is inserted perpendicularly to the skin, 0.5 cm lateral to the femoral artery just above the upper border of the sartorius until twitches are elicited in the vastus medialis muscle. Injecting 0.1 to 0.2 mL/kg of a local anesthetic is sufficient to block the two nerves and obtain complete analgesia of the medial aspect of the leg and foot.

Ultrasound guidance is now commonly used for saphenous and vastus medialis nerve block. Using a linear high frequency probe and with the limb slightly laterally rotated, the sartorius muscle is scanned and the subsartorial area is identified. The vastus medialis muscle is then identified and the facial plane separating the vastus medialis from the sartorius is identified. The saphenous nerve is located in close proximation to the superficial femoral artery. Local anesthetic is injected under direct ultrasound guidance around the nerve plexus.

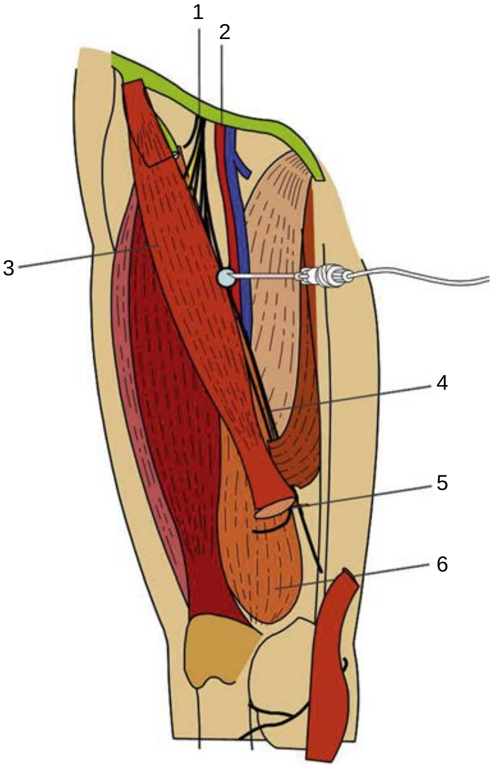


Fig. 76.36 Saphenous and vastus medialis nerve block. *1,* Femoral nerve; *2,* femoral artery; *3,* sartorius muscle; *4,* saphenous nerve; *5,* motor nerve supplying the sartorius muscle; *6,* vastus medialis muscle.

Lateral Femoral Cutaneous Nerve Block. A specific lateral cutaneous nerve block is rarely used solely for analgesia in children; its main indication is as a technique complementary to a femoral block. The block can be used for providing analgesia for fascia lata grafts, femoral pinning, and for muscle biopsies. Ultrasound guidance has made the performance of this block easy and safe.

Performance of the block: A linear probe is placed below the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS); the sartorius is identified. The potential space between the tensor fascia lata and the sartorius houses the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve between the fascia lata. It is a potential space and has hardly any complications. The old technique using ‘pops’ for LOR has now been abandoned for the aforementioned ultrasound-guided technique.

LATERAL FEMORAL CUTANEOUS NERVE BLOCK: ULTRASOUND GUIDANCE.

- Palpate the groove between the sartorius and the tensor fascia lata just below the anterior superior iliac spine.
- A linear high-frequency probe is placed below the anterior superior iliac spine; the sartorius can be imaged as a triangular structure close to its insertion with the tensor fascia lata lateral to that.
- The fascia iliaca compartment is seen in the groove between the tensor fascia lata and the sartorius and the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve is located in this space.
- After aspiration, the compartment is filled with local anesthetic solution. Large volumes can spread to the femoral nerve and can result in a motor block.

Obturator Nerve Block. This procedure is performed with the child supine and the thigh slightly abducted and externally rotated (if possible). The landmarks are the groove between the tendon of the long adductor muscle and medial border of the pectineus muscle. The puncture site lies in this groove at the level of the greater trochanter of the femur. With nerve stimulation, the needle is inserted following a strict anterior-to-posterior path until twitches are elicited in the long and short adductor muscles (stimulation of the anterior division branch of the obturator nerve). The needle is further advanced dorsally over 1 to 2 cm until twitches are elicited in the great adductor (posterior branch). Half of the local anesthetic solution (of a total of 0.1 mL/kg up to a maximum of 5 mL per nerve) is injected; the needle is then removed until stimulation of the anterior branch is obtained again and the second half of the anesthetic is injected.

The technique can be performed with ultrasound guidance. The probe is placed below the pubic tubercle, with its major axis parallel to the inguinal ligament. The aponeuroses of the sartorius and long and short adductors are easily identified. The anterior branch can be easily found between the long and short adductors, and the posterior branch lies between the short and great adductors (Fig. 76.37).

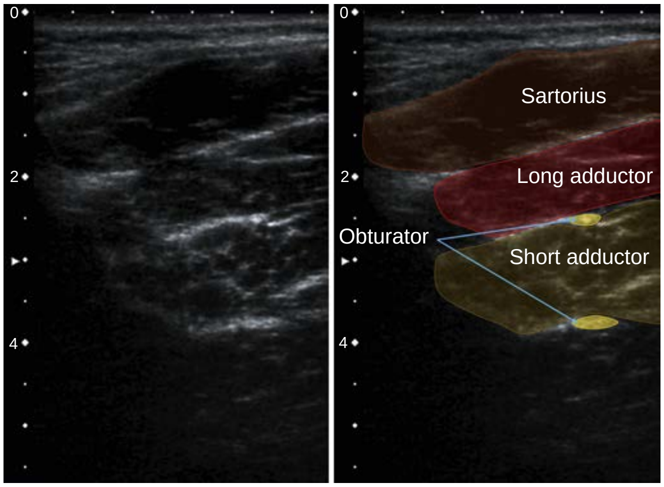


Fig. 76.37 Obturator nerve block, with ultrasound imaging of the anterior and medial aspect of the thigh.

SCIATIC NERVE BLOCKS

Anatomic Considerations

The sacral plexus is formed by the anterior rami of the fourth and fifth lumbar nerves and the first three sacral nerves with variable input from the fourth sacral nerve. The sacral plexus lies on the surface of the sacrum anterior to the piriformis muscle. The sacral plexus gives rise to the other two nerves that innervate the lower extremity: the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh (otherwise known as the small sciatic nerve) and the sciatic nerve. Peripheral blockade of these two nerves is considered together as blockade of the sciatic nerve. These two nerves travel together in the same sheath as they exit through the greater sciatic foramen into the posterior aspect of the upper part of the leg. The sciatic nerve runs in the midline of the posterior aspect of the thigh to the apex of the popliteal fossa. At the level of this fossa, it divides, at a variable distance, into the common peroneal and the posterior tibial nerves. The common nerve continues its descent around the head and neck of the fibula. The terminal branches form the superficial and deep peroneal nerves. The tibial nerve runs in the internal face of the leg and emerges laterally and behind the tibial artery at the level of the lateral malleolus. Its terminal branches are the lateral and medial plantar nerves.

Indications and Contraindications

Sciatic nerve blocks are recommended for operations on the foot and the leg (an additional saphenous nerve block is often required because this nerve provides cutaneous innervation of the medial aspect of the leg). Depending on the surgery, the sciatic nerve will be approached in the popliteal fossa or more proximally. Sciatic blocks have no specific contraindications. As with other extremity nerve blocks, patients at risk for compartment syndrome require close monitoring and use of diluted solution to avoid motor blockade.

Proximal Sciatic Nerve Blocks

Numerous techniques have been described for which the associated morbidity can differ significantly. When successful, they provide the same distribution of anesthesia. When contemplating a proximal sciatic block, the anesthesiologist must consider (1) morbidity of the technique, (2) positioning of the patient, (3) technique used to locate the nerve, (4) necessity for catheter placement, and (5) experience of the anesthesiologist with this particular technique.

Subgluteal Approach. The subgluteal approach is a common proximal way to the sciatic nerve in children. This block can be performed in a supine, lateral, or prone position. In supine position, the leg is flexed to 90 degrees at the hip with the knee flexed at 90 degrees (Fig. 76.38). This position is preferable in small children. In older ones, the lateral or prone position is preferred. The point of puncture is located at the midline joining the ischial tuberosity and the greater trochanter of the femur. The needle is inserted at right angles to the skin toward the femur until twitches are elicited in the foot. The nerve is easily accessible, is relatively superficial, and lies in a palpable groove.

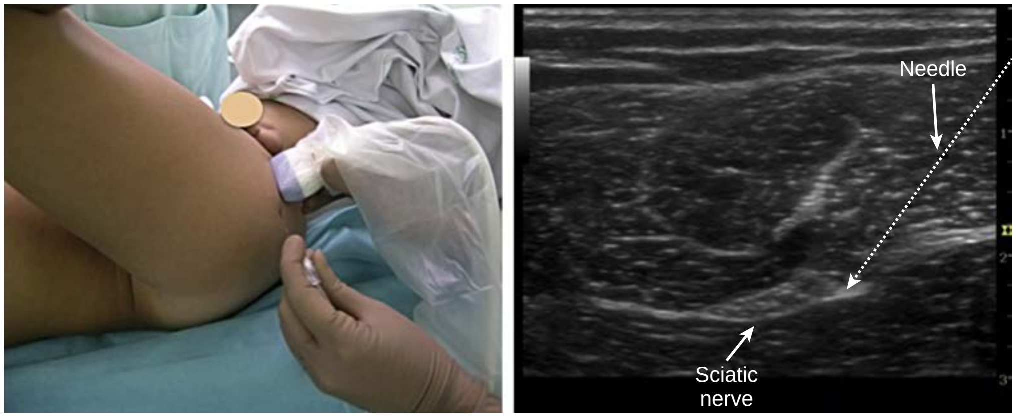


Fig. 76.38 **Position and ultrasound visualization of the in-plane subgluteal approach to sciatic nerve.**

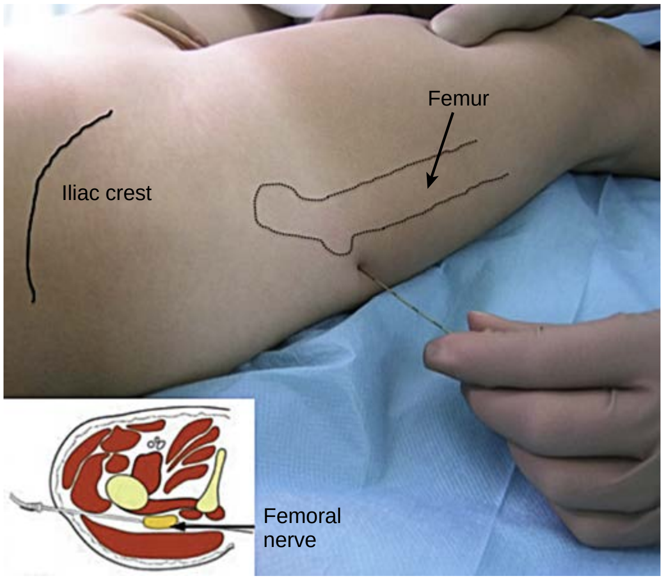


Fig. 76.39 **Proximal sciatic lateral block procedure.**

Ultrasound guidance with or without nerve stimulation facilitates the success of this block.[245] Continuous subgluteal block can be easily performed and permits good postoperative pain management in major ankle or foot pediatric surgery.[245]

Lateral Approach. A lateral approach to the sciatic nerve has been described for use in patients lying supine[246] with the relevant leg slightly rotated medially. The needle is inserted horizontally toward the lower border of the femur (Fig. 76.39). If bone contact is made, the needle is withdrawn and reinserted slightly more posteriorly until twitches are elicited in the leg and the foot. The distance at which the sciatic nerve is found can be correlated with patient age (Fig. 76.40).

Proximal lateral sciatic nerve blocks have been described for major foot surgery in children, but with high doses of local anesthetics and catheter migration or dislodgement maintained during patient mobilization.[247,248] It has been described in children with the same landmarks and technique of puncture described later. The catheter can be fixed with transparent dressing or tunneled to permit more stable fixation and prolonged administration.

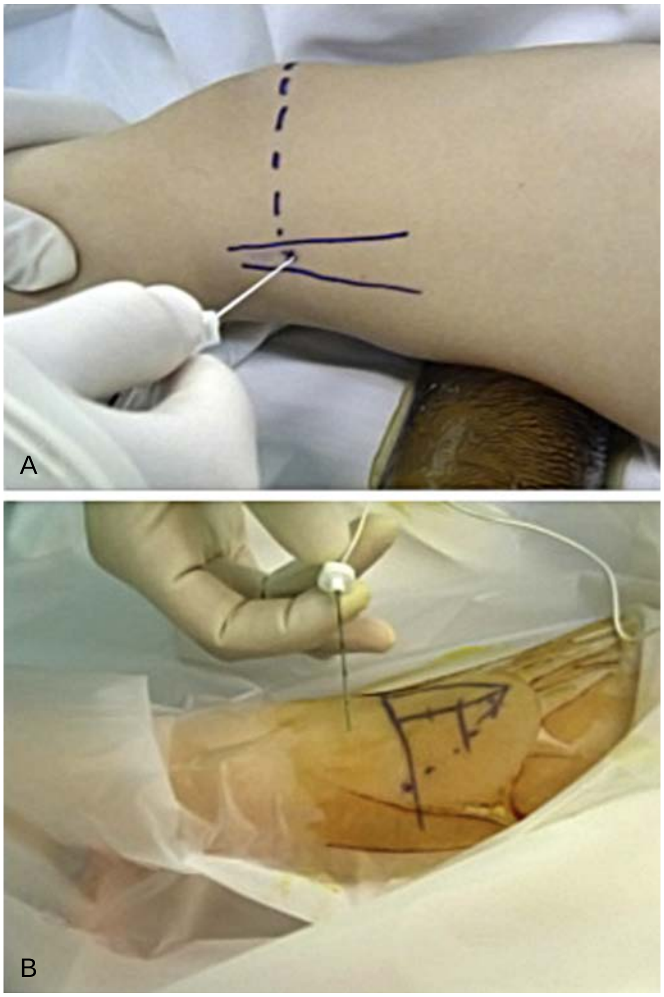


Fig. 76.40 Sciatic popliteal nerve block with lateral approach (A) and posterior modified Singelyn technique approach (B).

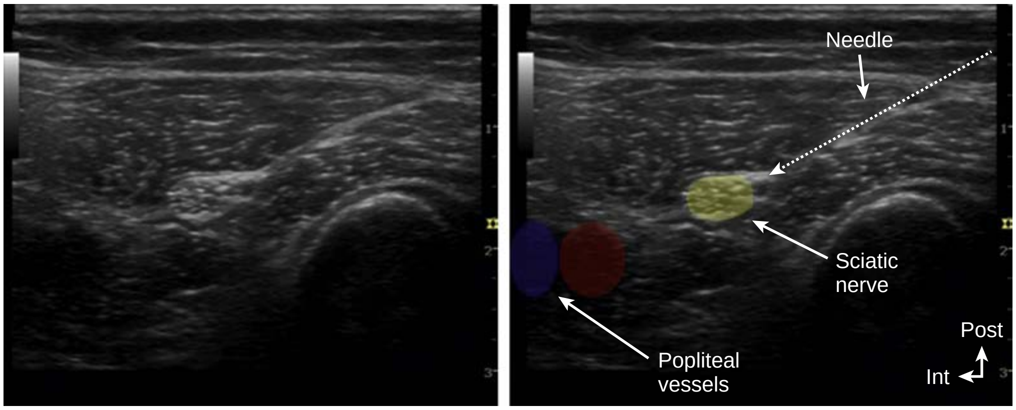


Fig. 76.41 Ultrasound of sciatic popliteal nerve block. Sciatic nerve is usually located laterally and superficially to the popliteal vessels.

Popliteal Sciatic Approach

SCIATIC NERVE BLOCK AT THE POPLITEAL FOSSA

- Place a linear probe in the popliteal fossa at the crease at the knee.
- Look for the popliteal artery.
- The popliteal vein is noted above the artery.
- The tibial nerve is often located in close proximity to the popliteal artery.
- The common peroneal nerve is located lateral to the tibial nerve.
- A linear probe is gently moved cephalad until the confluence of the two branches; the nerve will diverge from the vessels.
- Using an in-plane approach, a needle is placed in close proximity to the sciatic nerve and local anesthetic solution is injected to surround the nerve.

Popliteal nerve block is a simple, safe, and effective method, providing good analgesia with small amounts of local anesthetics. This approach is our first choice for major foot and ankle surgeries in children. The two approaches to the sciatic nerve in the popliteal fossa are the lateral and posterior approaches. The child may remain in the supine position for the lateral approach. The landmark for lateral distal sciatic nerve approach is the groove between the vastus lateralis muscle and the tendon of the long head of the biceps femoris muscle at the level of the superior edge of the patella (Fig. 76.41*A*). In the posterior approach, the child is placed in the prone or, preferably, the semiprone position, resting on the nonoperated side. A popliteal sciatic nerve block with posterior approach is performed using the landmarks of Singelyn and colleagues[249] adapted to children (see Fig. 76.41*B*). A nerve stimulator may be used to assist the practitioner to identify the nerve. Correct needle placement is identified when an output 0.6 mA elicits a characteristic motor response corresponding to either tibial (dorsiflexion of the foot) or common peroneal (foot eversion) nerve stimulation.

Ultrasound guidance has become the choice method for performing this block, allowing an in-plane or out-of-plane approach depending on the habits of the practitioner. Ultrasound scanning permits the location of the sciatic nerve and its division in popliteal fossa.[245,250] The sciatic nerve is usually located laterally and superficially to the popliteal artery (see Fig. 76.41). Ideally, the sciatic nerve should be blocked before its division into tibial and common peroneal nerves to obtain the best result. This can be corroborated with nerve stimulation to verify placement of the block.

Pain management for major foot and ankle surgery requires continuous sciatic nerve block. The distal approach is particularly interesting because of the ease of performance and the quality, power, and duration of analgesia with low doses of local anesthetics.[67,157,251,252] Continuous popliteal nerve block was compared with continuous epidural block in children undergoing major foot and ankle surgery.[252] Both techniques were associated with excellent postoperative analgesia in this study, but continuous popliteal nerve block led to less urinary retention, less discontinuation of local anesthetic infusion, and less nausea and vomiting. The popliteal catheter is the location most frequently used to treat children at home.[80,156]

Metatarsal Blocks

The metatarsal (or midtarsal) block is an easy technique for providing good pain relief for surgical procedures on the toes. The child is placed supine, and the head of the relevant metatarsal is palpated on the sole. The technique consists of inserting a standard intramuscular needle dorsally on the dorsum of the foot in close contact with the medial border of the base of the metatarsal until the tip of the needle is felt and seen as it pushes the skin of the sole. A volume of 1 to 3 mL of local anesthetic is then injected while the needle is slowly withdrawn. The same procedure is repeated along the lateral border of the same metatarsal to provide full anesthesia of the relevant toe.

Truncal Blocks

Surgeries of the trunk are some of the most common surgeries performed in children. Traditionally, central neuraxial blocks are frequently used for these procedures. Nevertheless, central neuraxial blocks have some adverse effects, including unwanted motor block, urinary retention, pruritus, nausea and vomiting, and risk for spinal cord injury or epidural hematoma. Globally, peripheral nerve blocks are increasingly utilized in the practice of pediatric anesthesia.[99] Abdominal wall blocks are known as effective techniques to provide adequate analgesia for minor abdominal surgery in children. The use of ultrasound guidance has increased the utilization of these blocks especially in children.

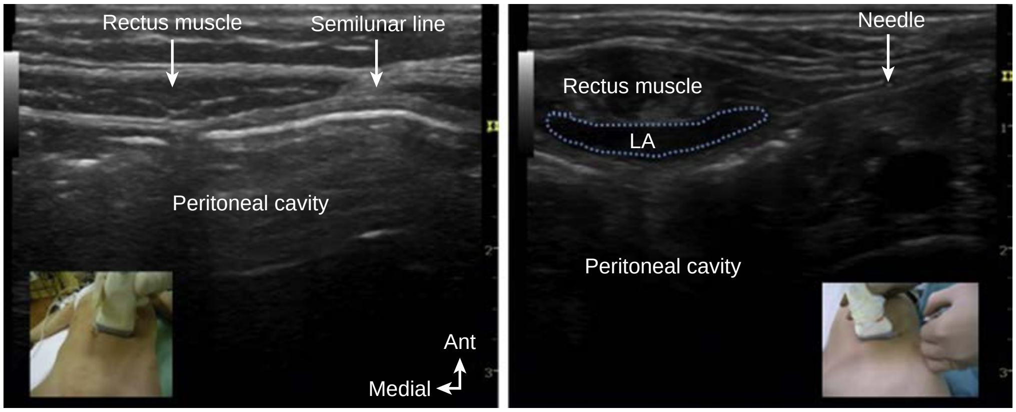


Fig. 76.42 Ultrasound of paraumbilical block. Insertion of the needle close to the posterior fascia of the rectus muscle and injection of the local anesthetic creating a biconvex black cloud.

PERIPHERAL BLOCKS FOR ABDOMINAL WALL SURGERY

Rectus Sheath and Paraumbilical Block

The rectus sheath and paraumbilical block technique consists of injecting a local anesthetic within the substance of the rectus abdominis muscle along the course of the terminal branch of the tenth intercostal nerve, which supplies sensory innervation to the periumbilical area. It provides efficient pain relief for umbilical or other midline surgical incisions, as well as umbilical and epigastric hernia repair, laparoscopic surgery, and pyloromyotomy. Today, this regional anesthetic technique has become increasingly popular.[253]

Technique: Ultrasound guidance is used to demonstrate the various layers of the abdomen. The rectus abdominis muscle is clearly seen with the posterior rectus sheath and the peritoneal layer. A high-frequency linear probe is used; two punctures on each side of the umbilicus are necessary. A short beveled needle inserted at 45-degree angle is necessary to perceive the passage of different planes. The local anesthetic is deposited below the posterior rectus sheath; the potential space is noted to open up with the injected local anesthetic solution. Long-acting local anesthetics are usually used with a low concentration (0.2%-0.5%). The total volume of anesthetic solution injected is 0.1 to 0.5 mL/kg of body weight in each side.

Performing this block under ultrasound guidance can avoid intraperitoneal punctures and erratic needle position.[254] In contrast to the fascial-click method, ultrasound guidance significantly increases correct needle position (88% vs. 44%) and decreases the rate of intraperitoneal or injections that are too superficial (11.5% vs. 34.5% and 0% vs. 20.9%, respectively, for ultrasound-guided techniques and fascial click).[255] Both aponeuroses of the rectus muscle and the parietal peritoneum are very echoic. The probe is placed horizontally over the umbilicus, and the block needle is inserted medially in long-axis orientation. The superficial fascia is bent and then crossed by the tip of the needle, which should be moved forward until it contacts the deep fascia (to favor the longitudinal spread of the anesthetic). The anesthetic is then injected and can be visualized in the form of an expanding biconvex black shadow (Fig. 76.42).

Rectus Sheath Block

- A linear high-frequency probe or a hockey stick probe is placed at the level of the umbilicus.
- The rectus abdominis muscle is identified along with the anterior and posterior rectus sheaths.
- Using an in-plane technique, a 27-gauge needle is advanced until it penetrates the space between the rectus abdominis and the posterior rectus sheath.
- 0.1 mL/kg of local anesthetic solution is injected into the potential space between the posterior rectus sheath and the rectus abdominis muscle.
- Hydrodissection can be used to find the exact plane since the space is small and may need exact localization.

Ilioinguinal and Iliohypogastric Nerve Blocks

The three nerves supplying the inguinal area are the ilioinguinal, iliohypogastric, and genitofemoral nerves. In 50% of patients, sensory innervation of the inguinal canal depends exclusively on the genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve (also termed the external spermatic nerve in males). Several publications focusing only on the ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves have appeared in the literature, especially with the introduction of ultrasound imaging.[140,256,257]

The ilioinguinal nerve block is effective in providing analgesia for inguinal area surgery including but not limited to inguinal hernia and hydrocele surgery in children. An additional injection of the genitofemoral nerve or local infiltration of the testicular sack is needed to provide complete analgesia for orchidopexy repair. This technique, widely described in the literature, is a fascial-click technique. A single-injection technique can safely and reliably block the three relevant nerves at once because these nerves are located in the same fascial plane close to the subcutaneous inguinal ring formed by the aponeurosis of the external oblique muscle. The landmarks are the umbilicus, ipsilateral ASIS, and midpoint of the inguinal ligament. The ASIS-umbilicus line is divided into four equal parts; the puncture site is located at the union of the lateral fourth with the medial three fourths (Fig. 76.43). A short-bevel needle is essential to perceive the passage of the various planes. The two main risks are intravascular injection (very low) and the crossing of three muscle layers with penetration into the abdominal cavity or intraperitoneal organ. In addition, the extension of the territory femoral anesthesia is a complication reported after ilioinguinal-iliohypogastric block with an incidence of up to 10%.[258] The usual dose is 2.5 mg/kg of long-acting local anesthetic. Puncture may be bilateral if the surgery requires. The risk for bowel trauma is present with the use of the

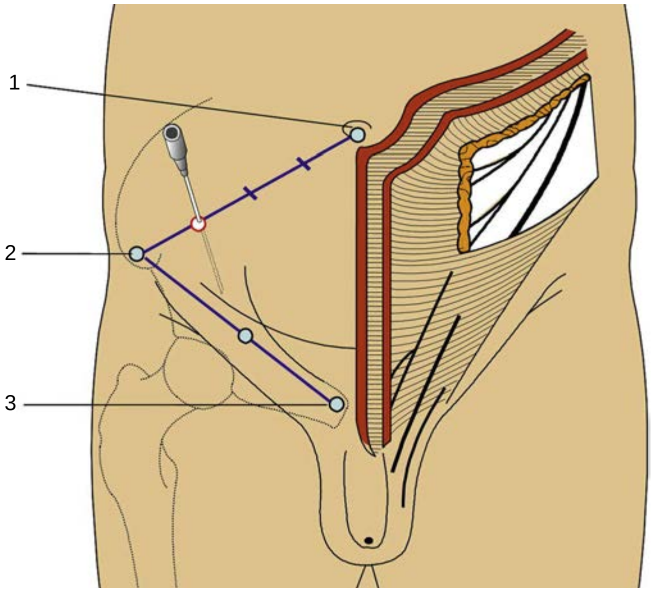


Fig. 76.43 Iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal nerve blocks. *1,* Umbilicus; *2,* anterior iliac crest; *3,* pubic spine.

facial click technique and our preferred methodology is to use ultrasound guidance for this block.

Ultrasound guidance of this block has advantages in terms of quality of analgesia and dose reduction of local anesthetics.[140] The probe is located on the line between the ASIS and umbilicus close to ASIS. We use a high frequency linear probe for this procedure. Two muscles of the abdominal wall are visible at this level: the transverse muscle and internal oblique muscle. The external oblique and internal oblique could at this level become a single aponeurotic layer. The neural target is located between both these muscles (Fig. 76.44). The needle insertion can be performed with an in-plane or out-of-plane technique. Willschke and associates[140] showed that the total volume of local anesthetic used in the ultrasound group was significantly lower than in the fascial-click technique (respectively, 0.19 mL/kg vs. 0.3 mL/kg of 0.25% levobupivacaine). They concluded that the local anesthetic optimal minimum volume for this ultrasound-guided block was 0.075 mL/kg of 0.25% levobupivacaine.[257] Using the traditional fascial-click technique causes erratic needle location in 85% of cases and 45% of blockade failures.[259]

Transversus Abdominis Plane Block

The transversus abdominis plane (TAP) block presents a very interesting alternative to the ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerve block for inguinal surgery in children.[260] It has become incredibly popular for analgesia for abdominal wall surgery. One objective of this technique is to block the segmental nerves T9 to T12 (thoracoabdominal nerves) and ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves by spread of local anesthetic in the plane separating the transverse abdominal muscle and internal oblique muscle by a single injection.

Ilioinguinal Nerve Block

- Place a linear probe or a hockey stick probe along the anterior superior iliac spine with the probe oriented towards the umbilicus.

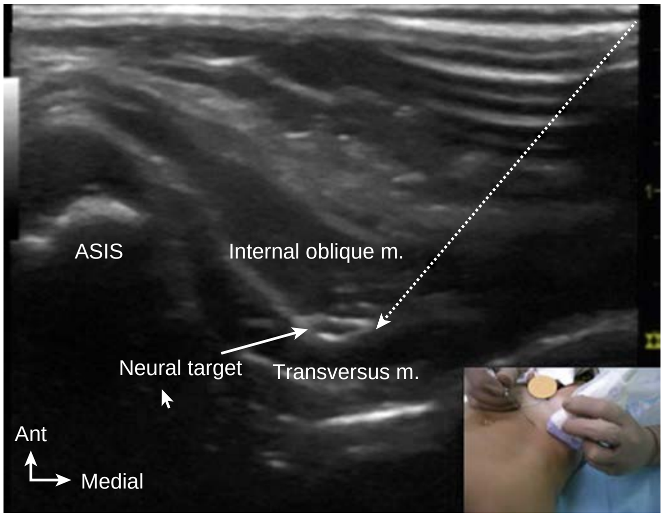


Fig. 76.44 Ultrasound. Ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric block imaging and probe placement for in-plane needle insertion. *ASIS,* Anterior superior iliac spine; *m,* muscle.

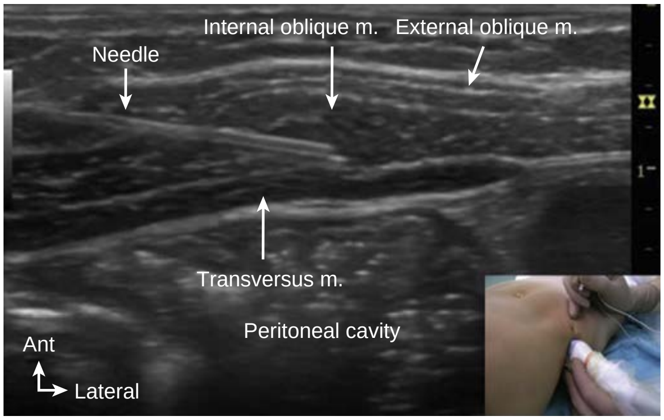


Fig. 76.45 Ultrasound transversus abdominis plane block imaging and probe placement for in-plane needle insertion. *m.,* Muscle.

- The three layers of the abdominal wall muscles can be recognized.
- The ilioinguinal nerve and iliohypogastric nerves are seen as two hypoechoic structures between the internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles.
- Using an in-plane approach, a 27-gauge needle is advanced and placed between the internal oblique abdominal and the transversus abdominis muscle.
- After aspiration, 0.1mL/kg of local anesthetic solution is injected.

The lumbar triangle of Petit (a space bounded by the iliac crest, latissimus dorsi muscle, and external oblique muscle) is used as a landmark, and a sensation of two "pops" indicates the correct needle position. The first pop occurs after penetration of the fascia of the external oblique muscle, and the second occurs after penetration of the internal oblique muscle. In general, the blind TAP block technique is described as easy to perform and having few complications.

In children, ultrasound guidance to perform this block is recommended. The block is accomplished by positioning the probe on the midclavicular line between the iliac crest and the last rib, allowing a puncture in plane (Fig. 76.45). Ultrasound guidance provides greater safety when performing this block by direct visualization of different muscle planes, the needle and its correct position, and distribution of local anesthetics in this plane.[261] Visualization of different muscle planes is sufficient and does not require identification of neural structures itself. The TAP block has been compared to the ultrasound-guided block and ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric ultrasound-guided block for hernia surgery in children.[262] The ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric block produces better postoperative analgesia, probably due to inefficient blockage of the genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve with the TAP block technique. A large prospective data base has demonstrated that the block is safe in children and has few complications.[263] In addition, pharmacokinetic studies have demonstrated the safety of this block in neonates.[264]

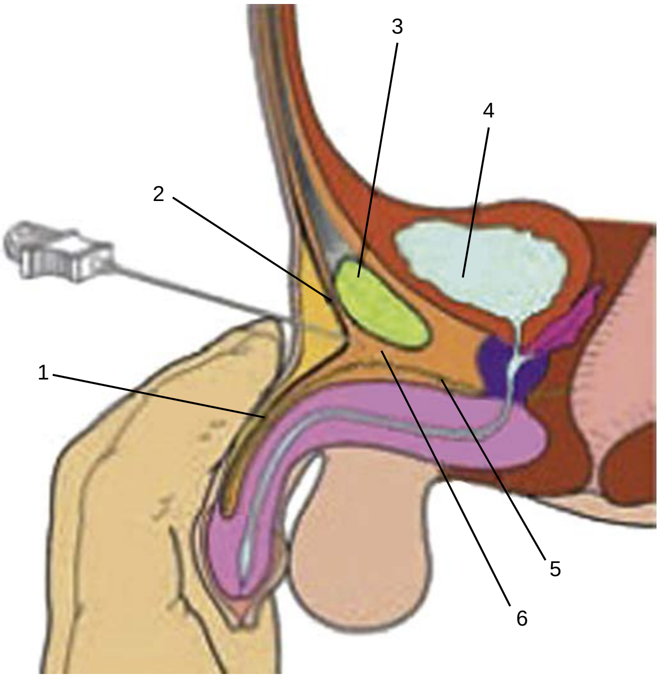


Fig. 76.46 **Anatomic puncture for penile block via the subpubic space.** *1,* Buck fascia; *2,* Scarpa fascia; *3,* pubic bone; *4,* bladder; *5,* dorsal nerve of penis; *6,* subpubic space.

Transversus Abdominis Plane Block

- A high-frequency linear probe or a hockey stick probe is placed lateral to the umbilicus.
- Sliding the probe laterally, the three muscle layers of the abdominal wall are recognized (external and internal oblique abdominal and transverse abdominal).
- In the midaxillary line, using an in-plane approach, place a needle between the internal oblique and the transverse abdominal muscles.
- As local anesthetic is injected, the plane is seen to expand with posterior movement of the transversus abdominis muscle.

PERIPHERAL BLOCKS FOR PENILE SURGERY

Penile Block

Surgery of the prepuce and penis surgery is common in children. This surgery may need advanced pain control for 12 to 24 hours, and is usually done on an outpatient basis. Nerve supply to the penis depends mainly on the dorsal nerve of the penis, which is a terminal branch of the pudendal nerve. The penile block by subpubic approach with long-acting local anesthetic for prolonged analgesia is a good indication for this type of surgery. The usual dose is 0.1 mL/kg (maximum 5 mL) of local anesthetic on each side. The technique is to inject an appropriate volume of local anesthetic in the two compartments of the potential subpubic space behind the Scarpa fascia (Fig. 76.46). Puncture is performed perpendicularly to the skin. Gentle traction is exerted on the penis to tension the Scarpa fascia and better feel the fascial click (Fig. 76.47). This block procedure is easy and its

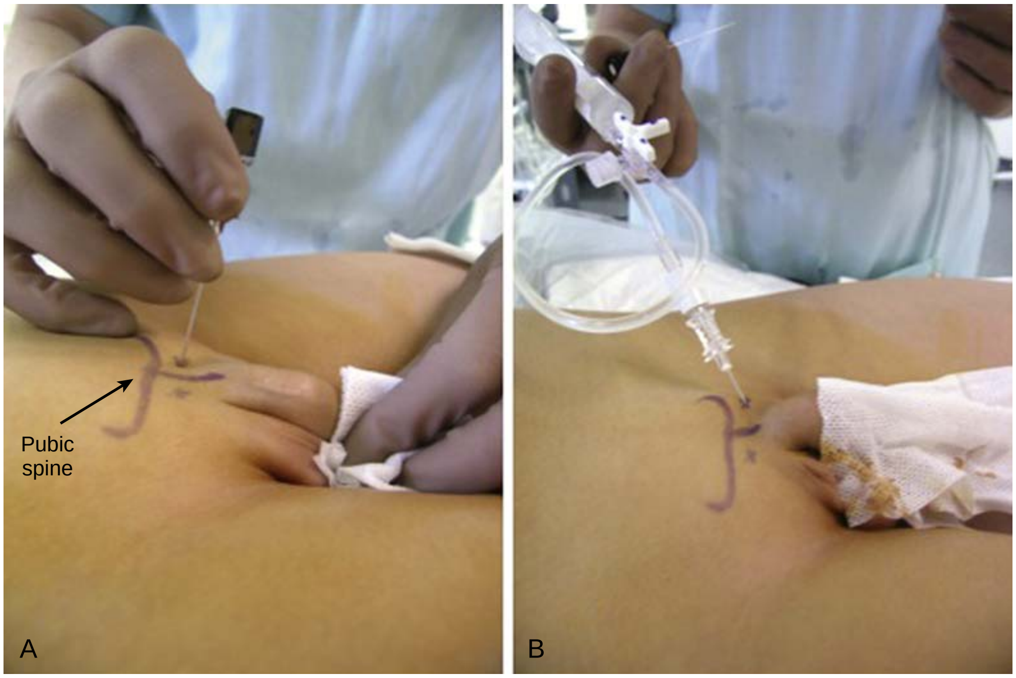


Fig. 76.47 Penile block technique procedure. Gentle traction is exerted on the penis to tension the Scarpa fascia and better feel the fascial click (A). Injection of local anesthetic is easy without resistance (B).

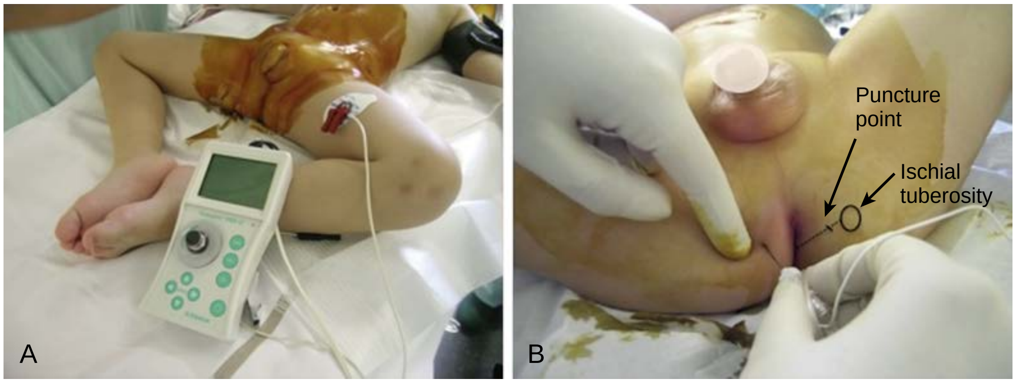


Fig. 76.48 Position for pudendal block procedure (A) and landmarks and puncture (B).

learning curve is particularly short.[265] Ventral injections of the perineal nerve can be combined with dorsal penile nerve block for circumcision surgery to overcome the failure rate of the dorsal nerve block of the penis.

Crossing of the Scarpa fascia also can be verified by ultrasound imaging.[266,267] Ultrasound-guided penile nerve block improved the efficacy of the block in contrast to the fascia-click technique in terms of the postoperative pain during the first postoperative hour and the time to the first requirement for postoperative analgesia.[268]

The morbidity is extremely low (almost nil when a local anesthetic without epinephrine only is used), whereas complications have been reported after attempts to block the nerves by infiltration of a local anesthetic below the Buck fascia at the dorsal part of the penis.

The use of adrenaline and skin infection at the puncture site are the main contraindications to this block. Serious complications are the consequence of a lesion of the dorsal artery in case of median puncture and the risk for injury to the cavernosus corpus with local anesthetic injection equivalent to an intravenous injection of local anesthetic.[269]

The usual indications are elective surgery such as circumcision and phimosis cure or emergency surgery such as reduction of a paraphimosis or release of a foreskin stuck in a zipper pants.

Pudendal Nerve Block

Given the random effectiveness of penile block for surgery of the prepuce in children, some teams advocate the use of pudendal block. The pudendal nerve provides sensory and motor innervation to the pelvic cavity and its contents, including external genital organs. The landmarks are the two ischial tuberosities and anus (Fig. 76.48). The distribution of anesthesia depends on the volume of injectate. With 0.1 mL/kg (up to 5 mL), anesthesia is usually limited to the perineal nerve that supplies the posterior part of the scrotum (this is enough to complement an ilioinguinal, iliohypogastric, and genitofemoral nerve block when a scrotal incision is required). With 0.3 to 0.4 mL/kg on each side (up to 15 mL), all division branches of the pudendal nerve are blocked, thus providing complete analgesia of the perineum, including blockade of the dorsal nerve of the penis.

Because the pudendal nerve is a mixed nerve, a nerve stimulator can be used to locate it more precisely if this is deemed useful (see Fig. 76.48*A*).[256] The expected motor response is a contraction of the external anal sphincter. It is recommended to start at an intensity of 1.5 to 2.0 mA. The position of the needle is considered adequate if the muscle response is obtained for an intensity of between 0.5 and 0.8 mA (0.1-0.2 ms, 1 Hz).

Ultrasound guidance has been used in adults, but identification of the pudendal nerve was possible in only half of the procedures.[270] Because this nerve is accompanied by a terminal artery (pudendal artery), local anesthetics with ephedrine must be avoided.

Naja and associates[271] compared nerve-stimulated pudendal block and dorsal penile nerve block with the fascia-click technique in 60 children undergoing surgery for circumcision. The authors showed a significant decrease in pain scores and analgesic consumption in the group with a pudendal block, with higher parental and surgical satisfaction. Perineal nerves appear to play an important role in the innervation of the penis, and it is the recommended block for circumcision surgery. The perineal and dorsal nerves are terminal branches of the pudendal nerve. The pudendal nerve block has the ability to block the dorsal and perineal nerves with only one single injection.

INTERCOSTAL NERVE BLOCK

Intercostal nerves run along the lower border of each rib, within the intercostal space, a triangular space, with (1) a medial border formed by the posterior intercostal and innermost intercostal muscles, endothoracic fascia, and parietal pleura; (2) a lateral border formed by the internal and external intercostal muscles and intercostal membrane (thickening of the inner fascia of external intercostal muscles); and (3) a base formed by the lower rib. Intercostal nerve block is obtained by injecting a local anesthetic within the intercostal space and, provided several adjacent intercostal spaces are infiltrated, adequate intraoperative and postoperative pain relief is obtained for thoracotomy,[272] liver transplantation, pleural drainage, and management of rib fractures.

This block must be avoided in the presence of impaired oxygenation or gas exchange, and it requires that all patients be kept under intensive medical observation because of the danger of clinically delayed pneumothorax. It is not suitable for outpatient surgery.

The safest approach to the intercostal space is along the midaxillary line with the child lying semiprone using a short 22- or 20-gauge Tuohy needle (intradermal needles are not appropriate) (Fig. 76.49).

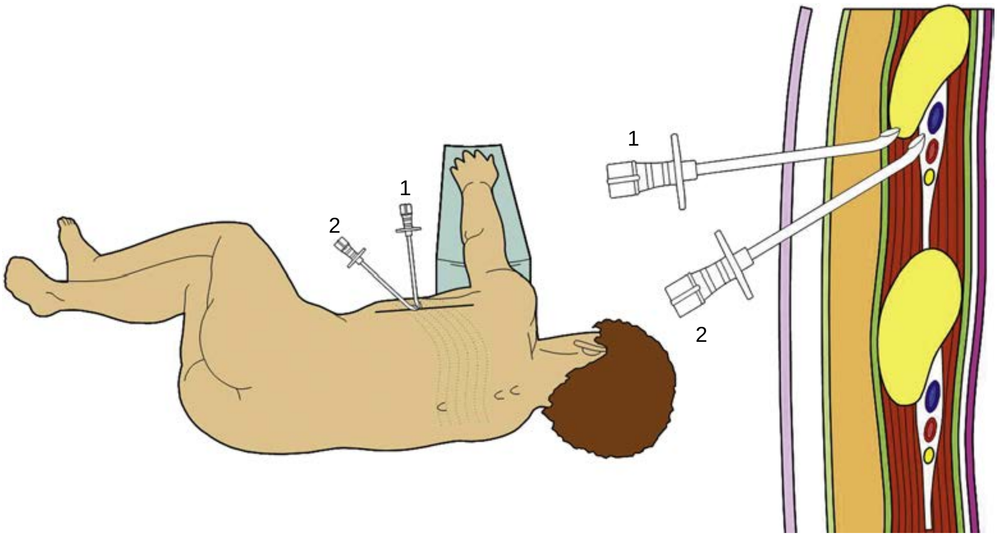


Fig. 76.49 Intercostal nerve block. *1,* Insertion of the needle at an 80-degree angle to the skin; *2,* caudal and dorsal redirection of the needle.

A catheter can be introduced in the intercostal space located at the center of the area to be anesthetized to allow reinjections; the catheter also can be inserted intraoperatively under direct vision by the surgeon.[273,274] However, the safety of continuous techniques is questionable because of high systemic uptake of local anesthetic.[275] Spread of large-volume anesthetic solution can reach distant intercostal spaces (even contralateral ones), probably via the paravertebral space, thus providing adequate duration of pain relief with a single injection in some patients. Spread to the epidural space also can occur. Thus the patient should be admitted to the intensive care unit for careful monitoring of respiratory function and for delayed pneumothorax.

THORACIC PARAVERTEBRAL SPACE BLOCK

Paravertebral block in children was first described in the 1990s[276] and many studies have been done on this block. This technique uses local anesthetic to infiltrate the paravertebral space by a posterior approach, and simultaneously to block several unilateral dermatomes with a single injection, in the manner of a plexus block. A catheter can be introduced into this space to maintain analgesia over an extended period. Paravertebral block will allow a somatic and sympathetic block (sympathetic chain being located in space infiltrated). The dosage is 0.5 mL/kg of long-acting local anesthetic, followed by a continuous infusion of 0.2 to 0.25 mL/kg/h of the same solution.

Anatomic landmarks are the spinous processes of thoracic vertebrae. The puncture site is located parallel to the vertebral axis at the level of the spinous process (Fig. 76.50). The needle must contact the transverse process of a vertebra. The landmarks are defined in children as follows[277]:

- Point of puncture: 10.2 mm + (0.12 × weight in kg) laterally to the spinous process
- Depth of the space: 18.7 mm + (0.48 × weight in kg)

The puncture of the paravertebral space is related to the level of surgery and is usually for a T5 to T6 for thoracotomy surgery and T9 to T10 for subcostal surgery. The LOR method is used to locate the paravertebral space with the Tuohy needle crossing the costotransverse ligament. It is also possible to identify the spinal nerve with nerve stimulation through space at the chosen level. Ultrasound guidance is used to identify the transverse process, the costotransverse ligament, and measure the distance from skin to parietal pleura before performing the block.[278]

Indications for thoracic paravertebral block in children are postoperative analgesia after thoracotomy[279] and upper abdominal surgery with unilateral subcostal incision (kidney surgery, cholecystectomy, splenectomy).[280] This block has been also described for unilateral inguinal hernia repair in children.[281] This block can be used in infants undergoing thoracic surgery for coarctation of aorta or other thoracotomies. Contraindications for this technique are a history of ipsilateral thoracotomy with an increased risk for pneumothorax or parenchymal lung puncture and the deformation of the spinal column, increasing the risk for pleural puncture. This block also must be avoided in cases of serious potential risk for complications (risk for pneumothorax in patients suffering from respiratory diseases with poor gas exchange).

Paravertebral block requires an anesthetist with good technical skills. An alternative to this block is thoracic epidural anesthesia, which has less risk for direct spinal cord injury. This has now become part of the ERAS protocol for children undergoing pectus excavatum repair at Lurie Children's Hospital. (Personal correspondence, SS)

OTHER NERVE BLOCKS OF THE TRUNK

Interpleural (or intrapleural) blocks that consist of injecting a local anesthetic within the pleural cavity without creating a pneumothorax elicited enthusiasm some years ago but was never established in pediatric anesthesia. Other blocks of nerves of the trunk, including paravertebral ganglion, genitofemoral, paracervical (uterosacral), and transsacral nerve blocks, are not used in pediatric patients. More recently there are other blocks introduced in this space including erector spinae blocks and serratus plane blocks. There is no definitive evidence in children for these blocks and their efficacy although we have used them as an alternative for paravertebral blocks in certain settings.

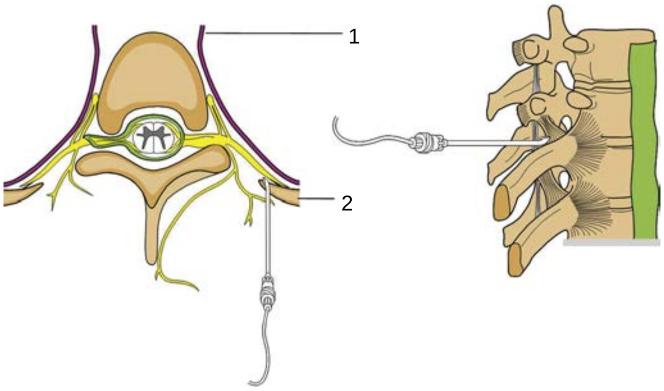


Fig. 76.50 Block of the thoracic paravertebral space. *1,* Parietal pleura; *2,* rib.

ERECTOR SPINAE PLANE BLOCKS

First described in 2016, the erector spinae plane (ESP) block has very recently gained substantial interest and use, with limited but rapidly growing evidence[282] suggesting promise as a safe and effective alternative to neuraxial blocks, including but not limited to paravertebral blocks, for procedures including thoracotomy,[283] pyeloplasties,[284] inguinal hernia repairs,[285] and hip surgery.[286] Single injection, programmed intermittent serial bolus,[287] and continuous catheter[283] routes have all been described, but are limited to case reports and series.

Technique: The erector spinae muscle is visualized lateral to the spine under ultrasound guidance, followed by needle guidance towards the transverse process and hydrodissection of the erector spinae interfascial plane, with injectate spreading cranially and caudally along the continuous plane of the vertebral column. Proposed mechanism is blockade of the dorsal and ventral rami of thoracic spinal nerves and sympathetic nerve fibers, providing somatic and visceral pain control (Fig. 76.51).[282]

This posterior thoracic block presents key advantages of avoiding or decreased risks of dural puncture, potential for bladder catheterization, pneumothorax, or spinal hematoma formation, giving it the potential for use in cardiac procedures with anticoagulation and cardiopulmonary bypass[288] and higher risk patients[289] including pre- and full-term infants.[283,284,290]

Face, Head, and Neck Nerve Blocks

NERVE BLOCK OF THE FACE

All sensory innervation of the face is the trigeminal nerve (fifth cranial nerve, or vagus nerve) associated with the C2 to C4 cervical nerve roots that constitute the superficial cervical plexus.

Anatomic Considerations

The fifth cranial nerve provides sensory and motor components. The sensory component is combined in the trigeminal ganglion (semilunar or gasserian ganglion), which lies in the Meckel cave, an invagination of the dura mater near the apex of the petrous part of the temporal bone in the posterior cranial fossa. Postganglionic fibers exit the ganglion to form three nerves, as follows:

1. The supratrochlear (V1), innervating the forehead, eyebrows, upper eyelids, and anterior area of the nose
2. The maxillary nerve (V2), innervating the lower eyelid, upper lip, lateral portion of the nose and nasal septum, cheek, roof of the mouth, bone, teeth, sinus of the maxilla, and soft and hard palates
3. The mandibular nerve (V3) innervating the anterior two thirds of the tongue and the skin, mucosa, teeth, and the bone of the mandibular.

These terminal sensory nerves can be blocked either at their emergence point from the cranium, as deep procedures (V2 and V3), or more distally when they exit the facial bone as superficial blocks (V1, V2, V3) (Fig. 76.52).

Superficial Trigeminal Nerve Blocks

For superficial trigeminal nerve blocks, the local anesthetic solution should be injected in close proximity to the three individual terminal superficial branches of the trigeminal nerve divisions: the frontal nerve (of ophthalmic nerve, V1 division), infraorbital nerve (of maxillary nerve, V2 division), and mental nerve (sensory terminal branch of mandibular nerve, V3 division). Each nerve is anatomically close to its respective foramen, which is usually on a line perpendicular through the center of the pupil.

Supratrochlear nerve: The supraorbital foramen can be easily palpated by following the orbit rim 2 cm from the midline in adults (union of the medial third and lateral two thirds). The needle (intradermal needle, 25 gauge in adults to 30 gauge in children) is introduced a half centimeter under the inferior edge of the eyebrow and is directed medially and cephalad. When the needle tip is near the supraorbital notch, after test aspiration and with caution to not penetrate the foramen, local anesthetic solution (0.5-1 mL) can be injected, creating a subcutaneous wheal. For supratrochlear block, the landmarks are the top of the angle formed by the eyebrow and the nasal spine where the nerve is in contact with the bone. The supratrochlear nerve can be blocked without removal by directing the needle approximately 1 cm toward the midline and injecting an additional 0.5 mL of local anesthetic.

Infraorbital branch: The terminal branch of the maxillary nerve (second division of the trigeminal nerve) is called the infraorbital nerve when it reaches the infraorbital fossa. The infraorbital artery and vein run parallel in close proximity to the nerve. Its innervation involves the skin and mucous membrane of the upper lip, lower eyelid, and the cheek. Two approaches can be used to perform this block: the intraoral and extraoral approaches. Regardless of the technique, it is necessary to prevent penetration of the foramen and eventual damage of the eyeball by palpating the foramen.

Intraoral approach: For the intraoral approach, the external landmarks include the foramen localized by palpation, the incisor, and the first premolar. The needle (25 or 27 gauge) is inserted at the buccal mucosa in the subsulcal groove at the level of the canine or the first premolar

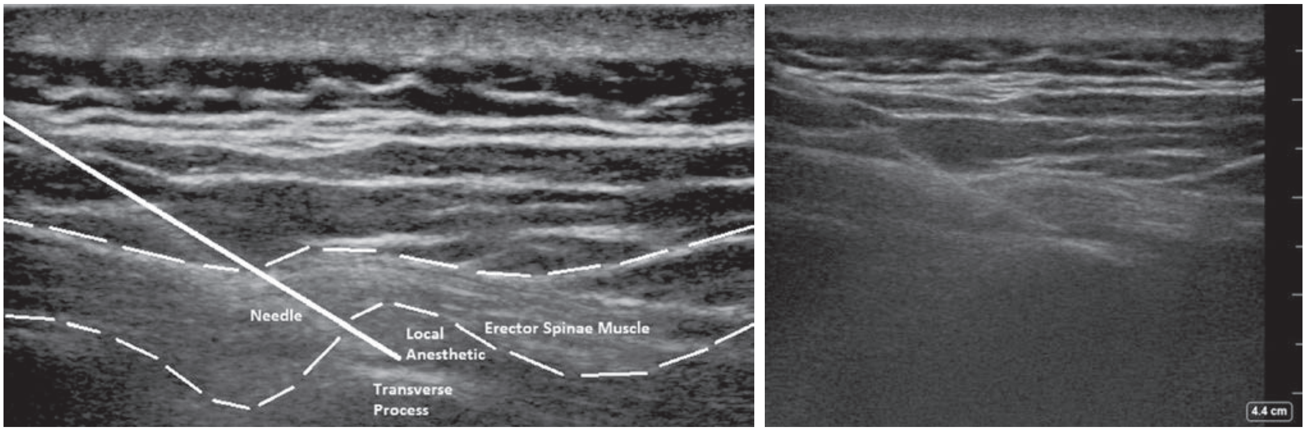


Fig. 76.51 **Erector spinae block.**

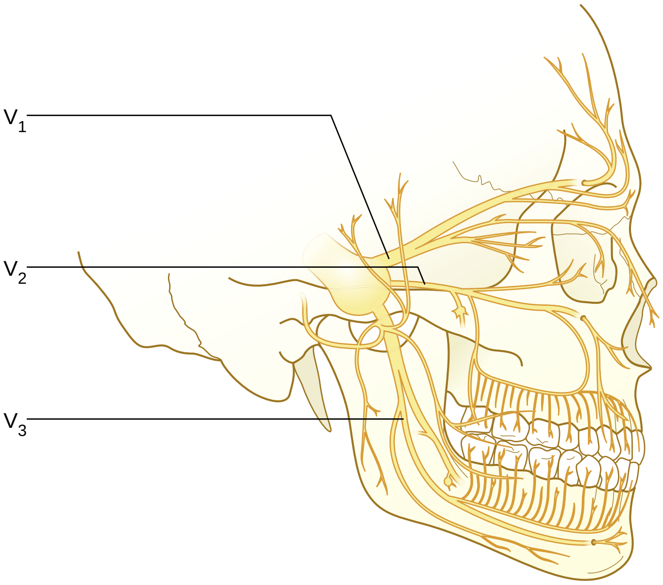


Fig. 76.52 **Facial nerves distribution.**

and directed upward and outward into the canine fossa. A finger is placed over the infraorbital foramen to assess the proper location of the needle tip and avoid damage to the eye.[294]

Extraoral approach: For the extraoral approach, the infraorbital foramen is palpated just below the orbital rim, at the intersection of a vertical line drawn caudally through the center of the pupil and a horizontal line through the alae nasi. The needle (25 or 27 gauge) is advanced perpendicularly with a cephalic and medial direction toward the foramen until bony resistance is met (Fig. 76.53).

The main surgical indication in children is cleft lip repair with good perioperative pain management and a decrease in opioid use.[291-294]

The mental nerve is the terminal branch of the alveolar nerve (the largest branch of the mandibular nerve). It emerges at the mental foramen. The mental foramen is located in line with the pupil on the mental process of the mandible, in regard to the inferior premolar tooth. Puncture is 1 cm lateral to the foramen palpated. The 25- or 27-gauge needle is directed with a lateral-to-medial direction to avoid foramen penetration (Fig. 76.54).

After negative aspiration, 1 to 3 mL of local anesthetic is injected for these different approaches. Complications are hematoma, persistent paresthesia of the innervated territory, prolonged numbness, and intravascular injection.

Ultrasound guidance can be used to locate the foramina for superficial trigeminal nerve blocks.[129] It appears as an easy and safe modality. The ultrasound imaging of foramina is the classic disruption of the bone table (Fig. 76.55).

Suprazygomatic Approach to Maxillary Nerve

The maxillary nerve exits the skull through the foramen rotundum and gives its terminal branches. Except for the middle meningeal nerve, innervating the dura mater, all branches (zygomatic branches, superior alveolar nerve, pterygopalatine and parasympathetic branches, palatine and pharyngeal branches) arise in the pterygopalatine fossa to the face. At the upper part of the pterygopalatine fossa, the maxillary nerve is accessible for a complete maxillary block. The block covers the lower eyelid, ala of the nose, cheek, upper lip, cutaneous zygomatic and temporal zone on the face and superior teeth, palatine zone, and maxillary bone.

The suprazygomatic approach to the maxillary nerve in pterygopalatine fossa seems to be the safest and is easily reproducible in children.[295] The patient is supine, with the head in neutral position or turned slightly to the opposite side. The needle entry point is situated at the angle formed by the superior edge of the zygomatic arch below and the posterior orbital rim forward (Fig. 76.56). The needle (22-25 gauge) is inserted perpendicular to the skin and advanced to reach the greater wing of the sphenoid at a depth of approximately 10 to 15 mm. The needle is then reoriented in a caudal and posterior direction and advanced 35 to 45 mm deep to the pterygopalatine fossa (Fig. 76.57). After a negative aspiration test for blood, 0.15 mL/kg to a maximum of 5 mL of local anesthetic solution is slowly injected.

Ultrasound guidance technique is possible with the ultrasound transducer located in the infrazygomatic area, over the maxilla, with an inclination of 45 degrees in both the frontal and horizontal planes (Fig. 76.58). The probe location allows visualization of the pterygopalatine fossa, limited anteriorly by the maxilla and posteriorly by the greater

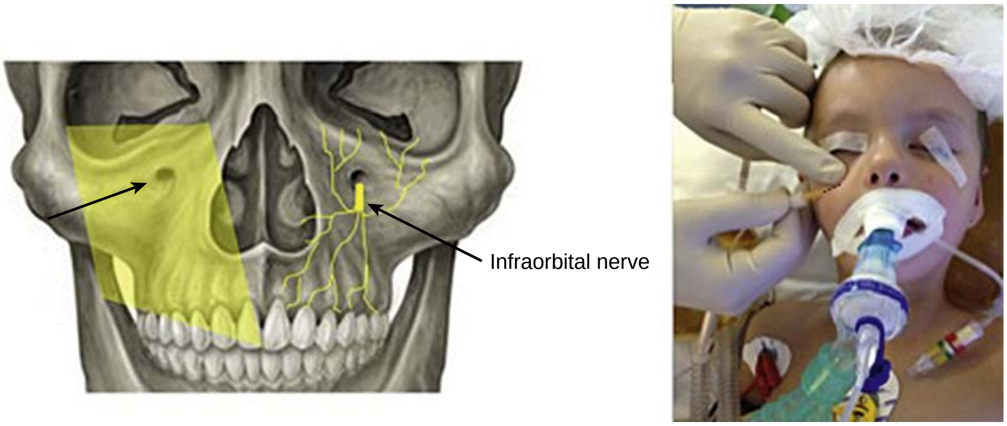


Fig. 76.53 **Infraorbital nerve block procedure.**

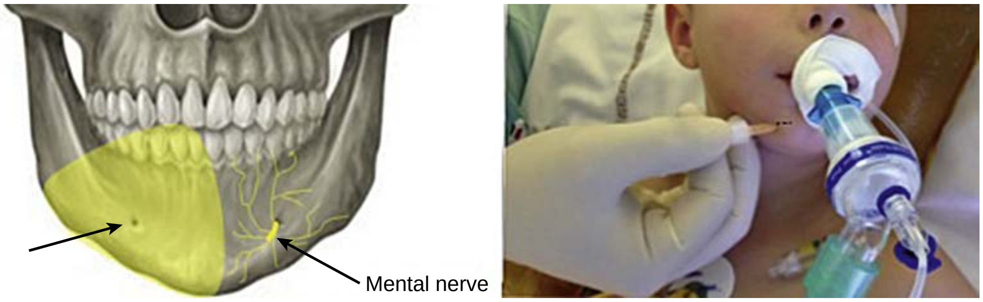


Fig. 76.54 **Mental nerve block procedure.**

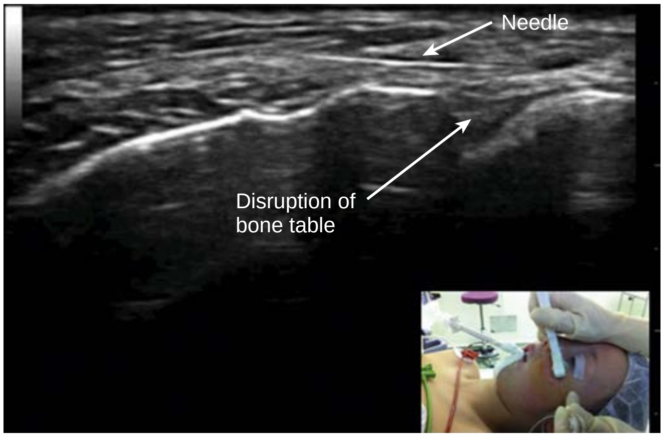


Fig. 76.55 **Ultrasound of infraorbital nerve block and probe position on face.** Disruption of bone table indicates foramen of trigeminal nerve.

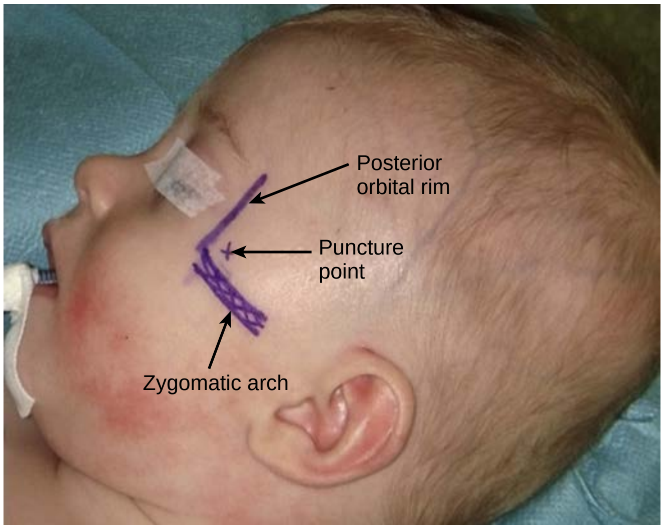


Fig. 76.56 **Suprazygomatic maxillary nerve block landmarks.**

wing of the sphenoid. The needle is advanced using an out-of-plane approach. This real-time ultrasound-guided technique is easy and ensures the correct location of local anesthetic injection in the pterygopalatine fossa (Fig. 76.59).[296]

Mandibular Nerve Block

The mandibular nerve, the largest branch of the trigeminal nerve, exits from the cranium through the foramen ovale of the greater wing of the sphenoid. The anterior trunk is formed with branches serving mainly motor innervation to temporalis, masseter, pterygoids, mylohyoid, tensor tympani and palati muscles, and the buccal nerve. Auriculotemporal, lingual, and inferior alveolar nerves comprise the posterior trunk.

The puncture area is bounded by the zygomatic arch at the top and the mandibular notch just anterior to and below the tragus of the ear (Fig. 76.60). The needle entry point is located in the sigmoid fossa between the coronoid and condylar process of the ramus of the mandible. To avoid the risk for arterial puncture, it is recommended to prick as high as possible in the space between the zygomatic arch and the center of mandibular notch (see Fig.

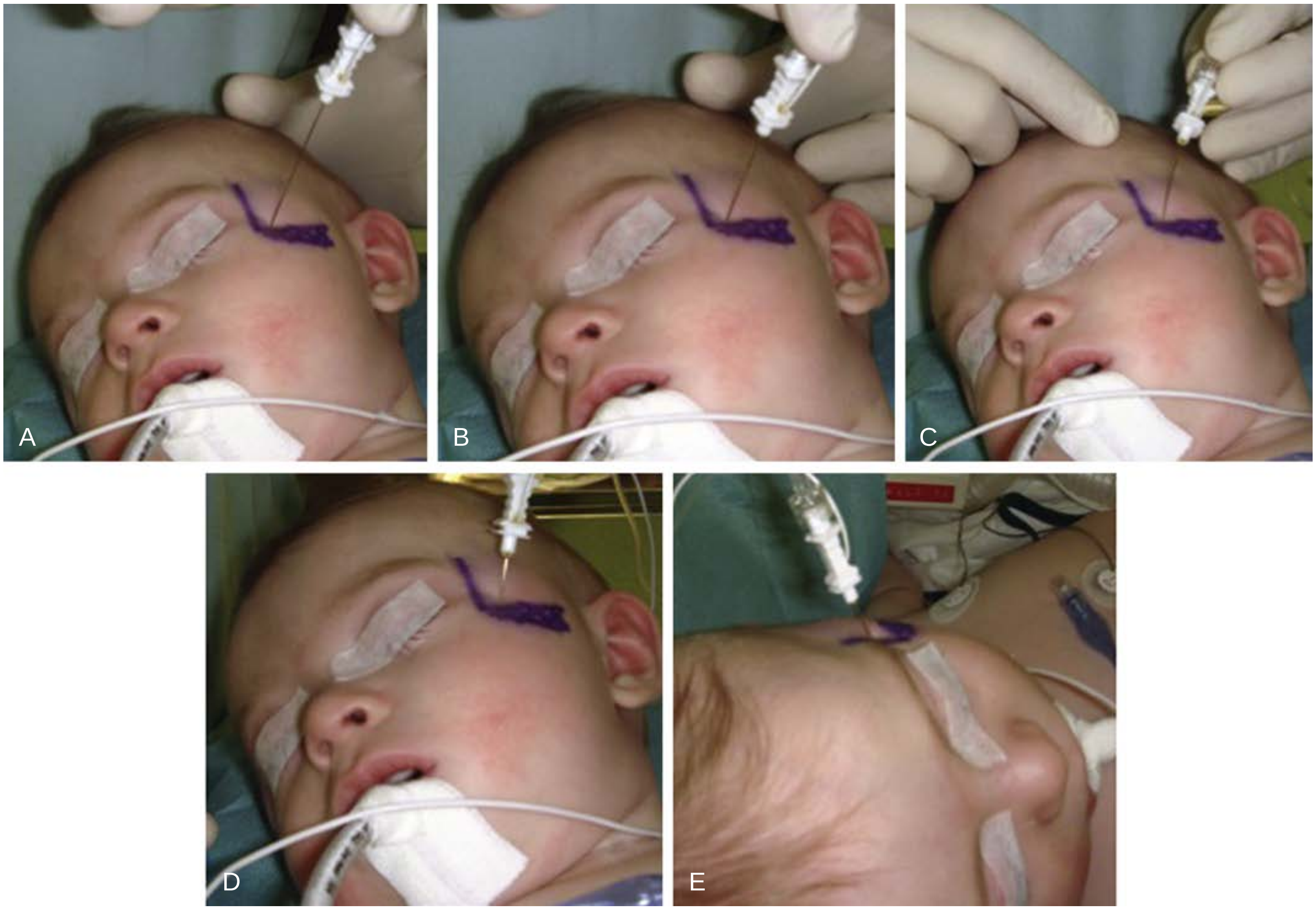


Fig. 76.57 Suprazygomatic maxillary nerve block technique. The needle was inserted perpendicular to the skin (A) and advanced to reach the greater wing of the sphenoid at approximately 10 to 15 mm depth (B). Reorientation of needle in a caudal and posterior direction (C) and advancement of 35 to 45 mm deep to the pterygopalatine fossa (D and E).

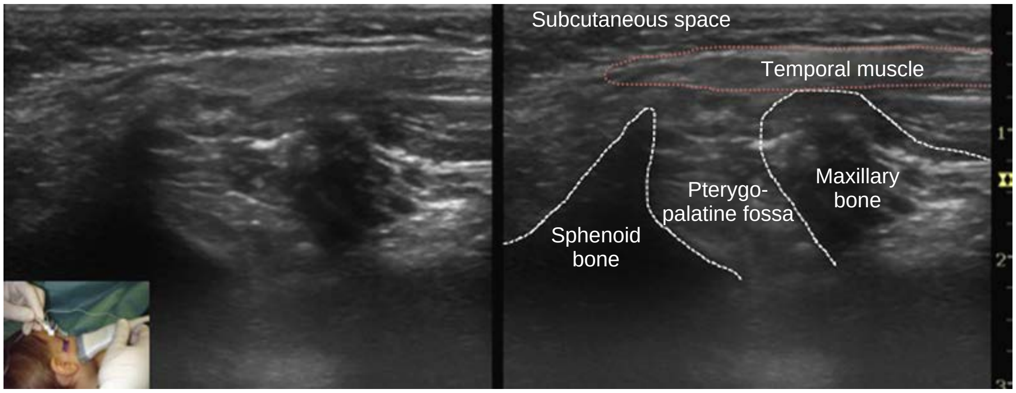


Fig. 76.58 Ultrasound imaging of suprazygomatic maxillary nerve block.

76.60). After perpendicular skin penetration, toward the lateral pterygoid plate (to a distance of 2-4 cm of depth), the needle (22-25 gauge) is advanced posteriorly and inferiorly maintaining the same depth, guided by mandible ascension twitch. The minimal intensity of stimulation (~0.5 mA) is determined, and 0.1 mL/kg to a maximum of 5 mL of local anesthetic solution is slowly injected after negative repeated blood test aspirations. This transcutaneous procedure with nerve stimulation appears easier and has a high success rate.

Block of the Nose: Nasociliary Nerve Block and External Nasal Nerve Block

The innervation of the nose and nasal cavity is quite complex, implicating both the ophthalmic (V1) and maxillary (V2) branches of the trigeminal nerve.

The nasociliary nerve is blocked before its division into nasal branches of the anterior ethmoidal nerve and the infratrochlear nerve, and near the ethmoidal foramen. A 25- or 27-gauge needle is inserted 1 cm above the medial

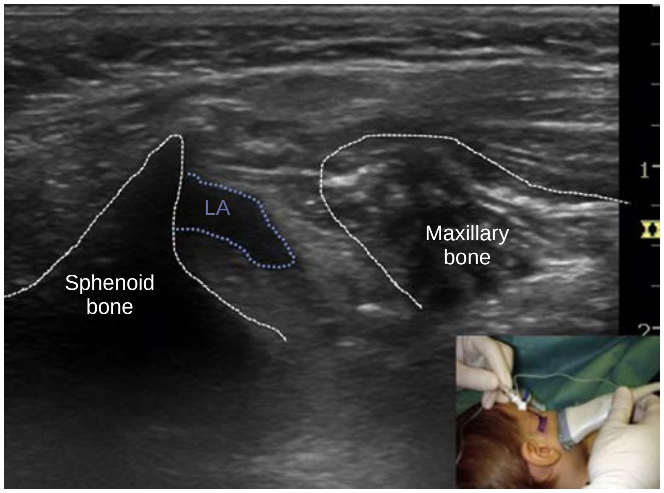


Fig. 76.59 **Ultrasound imaging of suprazygomatic maxillary nerve block with local anesthetic *(LA)* injection.**

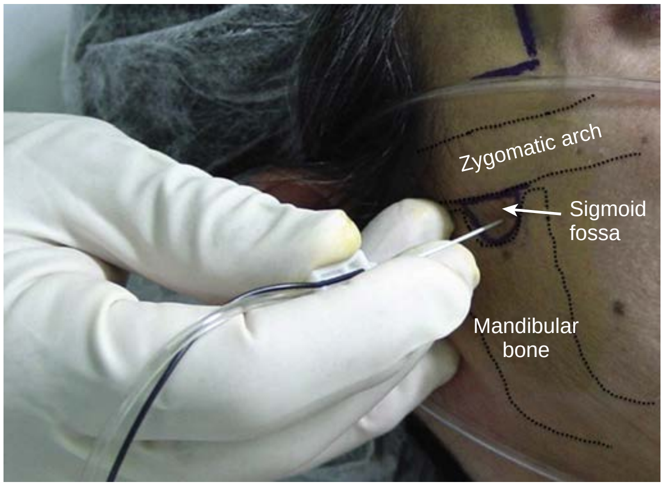


Fig. 76.60 **Mandibular nerve block procedure.**

canthus, halfway between the posterior palpebral fold and the eyebrow. It is then directed medially and backward in contact with the bony roof of the orbit. At a depth of 1.5 cm the needle should be at the anterior ethmoidal foramen, and a maximum of 2 mL of local anesthetic solution is then slowly injected after a negative aspiration test.

The external nasal branch of the anterior ethmoidal nerve can be blocked by infiltration at the junction of nasal bone with cartilage. Combined with infraorbital nerve block, the external nasal nerve block is very effective for perioperative pain control in cleft lip repair.[297]

Nerve Blocks of the External Ear

Anatomic Considerations. The innervation of the pinna of the ear is complex. Both the trigeminal nerve and the cervical plexus mainly provide innervation.

The auriculotemporal branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve supplies the superior two thirds of the anterior surface. The auriculotemporal nerve passes through the parotid gland to ascend anterior to the auditory canal with the superficial temporal artery and passing superiorly superficial to the zygomatic arch.

The posterior surface of the ear and the lower third of its anterior surface depend on the great auricular nerve and the lesser occipital nerve, two branches of the cervical plexus.

The great auricular nerve arises from the second and third cervical nerve roots, emerges from the posterior border of sternocleidomastoid muscle, and ascends (dividing into anterior and posterior branches) to the mandibular, parotid gland, and pinna. It supplies the lower back of the auricle, the lobule, and the skin of the angle of the mandible (in complement to the mandibular nerve).

The lesser occipital nerve arises from the ventral primary rami of the second and third cervical roots and gives the innervation of the upper part of the ear lobe and lateral occipital zone.

The auricular branch of the vagus nerve (nerve of Arnold) innervates the concha, most of the posterior wall of the external auditory meatus (zona of Ramsay Hunt), and inferior portion of the tympanic membrane.

Regional Anesthesia Techniques. Regional field block around the auricle allows anesthesia of each nerve branch involved in external ear sensory innervation except the Ramsay Hunt area (Fig. 76.61*A*).

The auriculotemporal nerve can be blocked by injecting local anesthetic solution above the posterior portion of the zygoma, anterior to the ear and behind the superficial temporal artery. The needle (27 gauge) is inserted anterior and superior to the tragus. Caution is necessary because of the vicinity of the temporal artery.

The great auricular nerve and the lesser occipital nerves can be blocked distally over the mastoid process posterior to the ear. The needle is inserted behind the lower lobe of the ear and advanced following the curve of the posterior sulcus.

Infiltration with the ring-block technique also provides an additional efficient analgesia of the external ear (see Fig. 76.61*B*).

The superficial cervical plexus block is a widely described proximal approach that anesthetizes two of its terminal branches, the lesser occipital nerve and the great auricular nerve. Several painful procedures of the ear can benefit from this analgesic block, such as incision and drainage of an abscess or hematoma,[298] suture of a large laceration of the ear or the skin surrounding the ear,[299] postauricular incision as in tympanomastoid surgery and cochlear implants,[300] otoplasty,[301] and surgical correction of “bat” ears.[291]

For tympanomastoid surgery, a great auricular nerve block provides good analgesia with reduction of opioid use and a decrease in postoperative nausea and vomiting.[300]

The block of the auricular branch of the vagus nerve is used for pain control after myringotomy and tube placement, tympanoplasty, and paper patch for ruptured tympanic membrane.[286] To perform this block, the tragus is everted, a 30-gauge needle is inserted into the tragus, and, after an aspiration test, 0.2 mL of local anesthetic solution is injected (see Fig. 76.61*C*).

Nerve Block of the Head

Greater Occipital Nerve Block. The greater occipital nerve arises from the second cervical nerve root that emerges between the atlas and the axis. It ascends between the obliquus capitis inferior and semispinalis capitis before piercing the latter muscle. It then becomes subcutaneous by piercing the trapezius aponeurosis, slightly inferior to the superior

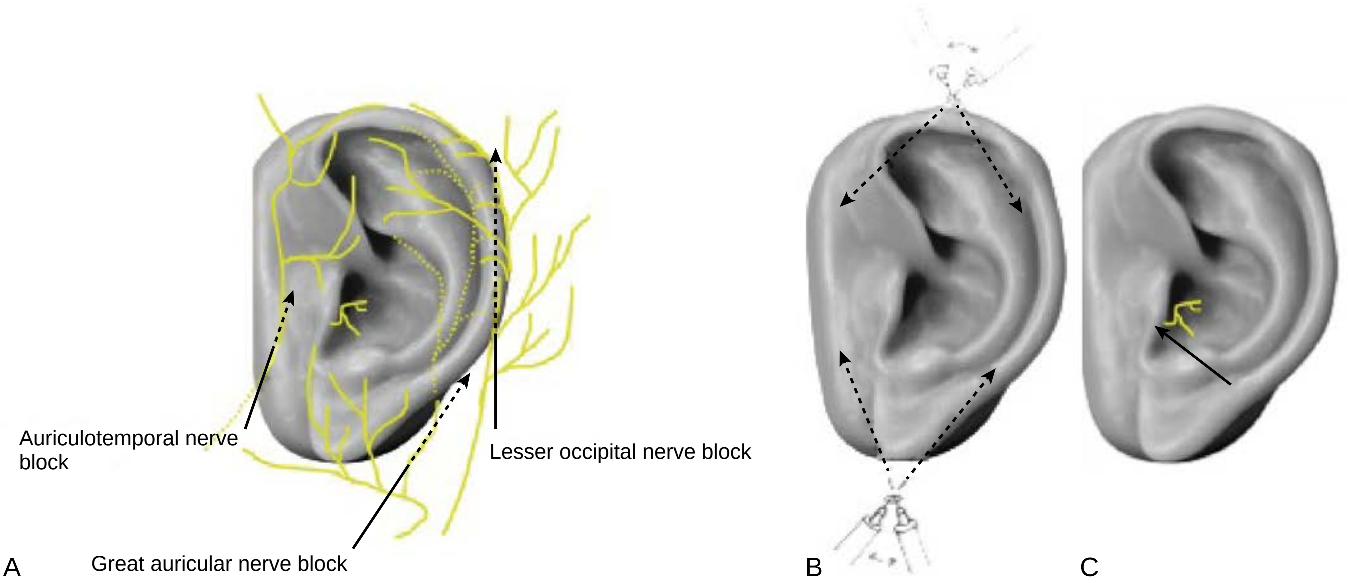

Auriculotemporal nerve block
Lesser occipital nerve block
A
Great auricular nerve block
B
C

Fig. 76.61 (A) Regional field block of ear. (B) Ring block of ear. (C) Block of the auricular branch of the vagus nerve.

nuchal line. At this point, the greater occipital nerve is most often located immediately medial to the occipital artery. The greater occipital nerve provides cutaneous innervation to a major portion of the posterior scalp from the level of the external occipital protuberance to the vertex.

The landmarks to perform the greater occipital nerve block are located at approximately two thirds of the distance on a line drawn from the center of the mastoid to the external occipital protuberance along the superior nuchal line, where it lies medial to the occipital artery. The pulsation of the occipital artery is easy to palpate. Palpation in this area may elicit a paresthesia or uncomfortable feeling in the distribution of the nerve. Usually a 25- or 27-gauge needle can be used depending on the size of the patient. The needle is directed at a 90-degree angle toward the occiput and, after aspiration, 1 to 3 mL of local anesthetic is injected. When the needle is withdrawn, pressure should be maintained over the site of injection to promote the nerve impregnation and to achieve hemostasis. Numbness over the top of the head, after the injection, is a sign of a successful greater occipital nerve block.

An ultrasound-guided technique of greater occipital nerve block has been described recently with good visualization of the nerve. The nerve can be easily visualized between the obliquus capitis inferior and the semispinalis capitis muscle; the pulsation of the occipital artery can be seen close to the nerve in this position. This technique is preferred for precision and safety of performing this block.[302]

Scalp Blocks. The scalp block is classically described with potential blockade of seven nerves, including branches from cervical spinal rami and from trigeminal division.

The greater occipital, lesser occipital, and great auricular nerves originate from ventral and dorsal rami of C2 and C3 spinal nerves. The greater occipital nerve travels up to the vertex, and the lesser occipital nerve innervates skin behind the ear.

The ophthalmic division of trigeminal nerve gives off, by the frontal nerve, supraorbital and supratrochlear nerves that innervate the skin from the forehead to the lambdoidal suture.

The zygomaticotemporal nerve is one of the two branches of the zygomatic nerve that arises from the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve. It innervates a small area of the forehead and temporal area.

The auriculotemporal nerve arises from the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve. It innervates the posterior portion of the skin of the temple.

Scalp block is used in adults and children for a variety of head and neck procedures and in neurosurgery or chronic pain diagnostic and therapeutic management (many headache disorders of muscular and nervous etiology). Common reasons for providing anesthesia to the scalp are repair of a laceration, foreign body removal, exploration of scalp wounds, and drainage of abscesses or subdural hematomas. We have used this for performing wake craniotomies.

Most of the time, infiltrative anesthesia is used to perform scalp blocks. All the nerves involved in the scalp's sensitivity become superficial and accessible to the anesthetic. To block the entire scalp, a circumferential infiltration of local anesthetic solution (with 1:200,000 epinephrine), above an imaginary line drawn from the occipital protuberance to the eyebrows, passing along the upper border of the ear, is necessary. Approximately 30 mL is required to perform this ring block around the scalp.

The most common complications associated with scalp anesthesia are hematoma formation at the site of injection and the risk for intravascular injection.

Nerve Block of the Neck

Cervical Plexus Block. Cervical plexus blocks have few but specific indications in pediatric surgery—cervical lymph node biopsy, excision of thyroid nodules,[303,304] and surgery of vocal cords.[305] Only the superficial branches are blocked by a subcutaneous infiltration along the lateral border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle.

Laryngeal Nerve Block. Laryngeal nerve blocks can be used for short-duration laryngoscopic examinations in conscious patients or to facilitate awake intubation when difficult intubation is suspected. It also can be used

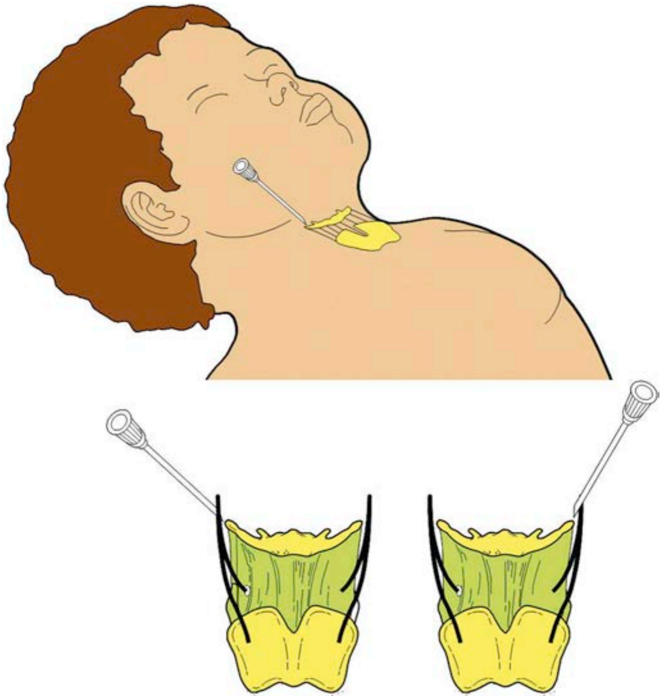


Fig. 76.62 **Laryngeal nerve block.**

to prevent or treat laryngospasm.[306] Several techniques have been described, but the easiest consists of subcutaneous injection of a local anesthetic just lateral to the dorsal ending of the hyoid horns (on each side) (Fig. 76.62). A 27-gauge intradermal needle is inserted close to the hyoid horn ending until contact is made with cartilage. The needle is then slightly withdrawn and 0.1 to 0.2 mL/kg (up to a maximum of 8 mL) of 1% lidocaine is injected subcutaneously. Excellent laryngeal block is usually obtained.

Cervicothoracic (Stellate) Ganglion Block. Stellate ganglion block is a rather dangerous procedure with very few but very specific indications in children: (1) ventricular tachyarrhythmia resulting from congenital long-QT syndrome[307,308] (a left stellate block is recommended) and (2) severe ipsilateral circulatory disorders of the upper extremity. Patients with certain acute pain syndromes such as herpes zoster ophthalmicus[77] or rare chronic pain syndromes such as sympathetically maintained pain syndrome[309,310] may benefit from the technique. This can be performed with the use of US guidance easily. The longus colli muscle is identified; the local anesthetic is injected superior to the longus colli muscle. A Horner's syndrome is verification of correct placement of the block.

Other Procedures

INTRAVENOUS REGIONAL ANESTHESIA

Intravenous regional anesthesia (Bier block) has never been very popular in pediatric anesthesia. Currently, the technique is outdated, even though it is still used in some institutions mainly for fracture repairs (often in emergency departments).[311-313] The technique is the same as in adults. The limb is exsanguinated by an Esmarch bandage or simple gravitation. A tourniquet is placed around the proximal part of the arm and inflated at two to three times the systolic pressure before the Esmarch bandage is removed and 1 mL/kg of 0.5% lidocaine (not exceeding 3 mg/kg) is injected. Prilocaine can be used instead in adolescents. Children tolerate the pain produced by the inflated tourniquet very poorly, and this technique was responsible for several deaths in the past.

Intradermal Wheals

Intradermal wheals are routinely used in adult patients to anesthetize the skin covering deeper structures to be approached. The technique is used less often in children, except for anesthetizing the puncture site of a regional block procedure in nonanesthetized children. It consists of inserting a 25-, 27-, or 30-gauge interdermal needle almost tangentially to the skin, with the bevel facing downward, without penetrating the subcutaneous layers. A small amount (<0.5 mL) of local anesthetic (0.5%-1% lidocaine or prilocaine, with or without epinephrine) is then injected. The skin covering the wheal looks like an orange peel and almost immediate anesthesia of the relevant area is obtained. The only drawback of this technique is that the injection is moderately painful.

Wound Infiltration

In adults, some studies have shown benefits of continuous wound catheters.[314,315] Today, publications on continuous wound catheters in children are limited. Ouaki and coworkers[316] evaluated continuous infusion of ropivacaine through an iliac crest catheter for bone graft postoperative pain relief in children undergoing a maxillary alveolar graft. The catheters were placed close to the iliac periosteal bone at the donor site and infused with 0.125 mL/kg/h of 0.2% ropivacaine for 48 hours with a disposable elastomeric pump. The findings of Ouaki and coworkers showed optimal pain relief with a low pain score and a decrease of chronic pain symptoms after 3 months in contrast to reports in the literature.

In their study, Dashow and associates[317] placed a bupivacaine-soaked absorbable sponge in addition to peri-incisional bupivacaine infiltration at the anterior iliac crest donor site for the management of postoperative pain in children. Their results showed that this regional anesthesia method significantly reduced the postoperative pain score, pain medication requirement, and length of hospital stay.

Precautions must be taken to avoid bacterial contamination and overdosage, especially in cases with extensive wounds or reinjections.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Christophe Dadure, Chrystelle Sola, Bernard Dalens, and Xavier Capdevila for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

The authors would like to thank John Hajduk for his help with copyediting the manuscript.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Guay J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(3):948.
1a. Nolting D, et al. *Spine*. 1998;23:2265.
2. Weidenheim KM, et al. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol*. 1992;51:142.
3. Tanaka S, et al. *Early Hum Dev*. 1995;41:49.
4. Easley RB, et al. Development and evaluation of pain and the stress response. In: Bissonnette B, ed. *Pediatric Anesthesia: Basic Principles, State of the Art, Future, Shelton, Conn*. People's Medical Publishing House; 2011:259.
5. Grunau R. *Clin Perinatol*. 2002;29:373.
6. Anand KJ. *Nat Med*. 2000;6:971.
7. Taddio A, et al. *Paediatr Drugs*. 2005;7:245.
8. Lack JA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:601.
9. Mazoit JX, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2004;43:17.
10. Booker PD, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:365.
11. Mazoit JX, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:387.
12. Meunier JF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:87.
13. Burm AG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:395.
14. Eyres RL, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1986;14:13.
15. Lonnqvist PA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:506.
16. Ala-Kokko TI, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44:1099.
17. Karmakar MK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:259.
18. Chalkiadis GA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:218.
19. Chalkiadis GA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:524.
20. Peutrell JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:160.
21. Luz G, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1998;8:473.
22. Leopold A, et al. *Anesth Prog*. 2002;49:82.
23. Gjonaj ST, et al. *Chest*. 1997;112:1665.
24. Mazoit JX. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22:31.
25. Sitbon P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:1003.
26. Nielson DW, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2000;161:147.
27. Engberg G, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1987;31:624.
28. Doyle E, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1997;7:121.
29. Weston PJ, Bourchier D. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1995;5:219.
30. Dalens B, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11:415.
31. Paut O, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:416.
32. Bokesch PM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:739.
33. Papini O, et al. *Chirality*. 2004;16:65.
34. Zsigmond EK. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1971;18:278.
35. Bricker SR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70(6):942–947.
36. Bouwmeester NJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:208.
37. Attia J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:590.
38. Warner MA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:995–998.
39. Hansen TG, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:42.
40. Jamali S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78:663.
41. De Negri P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:71.
42. Kaabachi O, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:516.
43. Cucchiaro G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:532.
44. Bouchut JC, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26:83.
45. Galante D. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15:708.
46. Potts AL, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17:924.
47. https://www.asra.com/news/66/esra-asra-guidelines-for-pediatric-regio - Suresh, S, ESRA/ASRA Guidelines for Pediatric Regional Anesthesia. Link: http://www.brightcopy.net/allen/asra/15-4/index.php#/14 p15-16.
48. Nafiu OO, et al. *J Natl Med Assoc*. 2007;99:670.
49. Dalens B. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;19:301.
50. Bouwmeester NJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:390.
51. Siebert JN, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17:410.
52. Wolf AR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70:654.
53. Tuncer S, et al. *Pediatr Int*. 2004;46:53.
54. Khalil SN, et al. Middle East. *J Anesthesiol*. 2005;18:391.
55. Larousse E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1165.
56. Raux O, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:948.
57. Ozasa H, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12:317.
58. Kain ZN, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2002;20:29.
59. Wright KD, et al. *Behav Modif*. 2007;31:52.
60. Taenzer AH, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2014;39(4):279.
61. Ivani G, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40(5):526.
62. Ion T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:82.
63. Nasr AA, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18:1278.
64. Diwan R, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11:603.
65. Englbrecht JS, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2010;38:1101.
66. Johr M, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2004;18:357.
67. Dadure C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:687.
68. DeVera HV, et al. *J Pediatr Orthop*. 2006;26:801.
69. Hammer GB. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1999;13:210.
70. Peterson KL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1014.
71. Young KD. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2005;45:160.
72. Blount RL, et al. *Behav Modif*. 2006;30:24.
73. Anand KJ, et al. *Clin Ther*. 2005;27:844.
74. Dadure C, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22:93.
75. Walker BJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(3):457.
76. Tobias JD. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12:272.
77. Elias M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:950.
78. Yaster M, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1994;93:310.
79. Labat F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:935.
80. Dadure C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:387.
81. Nayak S, et al. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2008;18:357.
82. Rauck RL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82:1097.
83. Collins JJ, et al. *Pain*. 1996;65:63.
84. Cooper MG, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 1994;9:277.
85. Kessel G, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1996;51:1154.
86. Elias M. Middle East. *J Anesthesiol*. 2001;16:359.
87. Kotzé A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:662.
88. Platis CM, et al. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2006;16:1198.
89. Longhini AB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127(1):188.
90. Lejus C. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14:622.
91. Dunwoody JM, et al. *J Pediatr Orthop*. 1997;17:285.
92. Llewellyn N, et al. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2007;17:520.
93. Battaglia TC, et al. *J Pediatr Orthop*. 2002;22:431.
94. Bibbo C, et al. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2000;16:244.
95. Carbonell PG, et al. *J Pediatr Orthop B*. 2004;13:412.
96. Firth PG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:766.
97. Ali L, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60:1149.
98. Hernandez-Palazon J. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2003;13:733.
99. Ecoffey C, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20:1061.
100. Krane EJ. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1999;24:494.
101. Benzon HT, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61:754.
102. Nouette-Gaulain K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106:1026.
103. Nouette-Gaulain K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1120.
104. Dalens BJ, et al. *Drug Saf*. 1998;19:251.
105. Di Gregorio G, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35:181.
106. Scott DB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:563.
107. Bienvenu J, et al. *Clin Chem*. 1981;27:721.
108. Maxwell LG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:682.
109. Weinberg GL. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35:188.
110. Morray JP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78:461.
111. Giaufré E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;83:904.
112. Fox MA, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21:646.
113. Rochette A, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22:374.
114. Walker BJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129(4):721.
115. Long JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(6):1965.
116. Kokki H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44:210.
117. Kokki H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:1367.
118. Knudsen K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:507.
119. McClure J, Ropivacaine. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76:300.
120. Zink W, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1173.
121. Ala-Kokko TI, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:438.
122. Hansen TH, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:347.
123. Antok E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1608.
124. Duflo F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:250.
125. Dadure C, et al. *Ann Fr Anesth Réanim*. 2010;29:610.
126. Suresh S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(5):1591.
127. Kim SH, et al. *Colorectal Dis*. 2012;14:611.
128. Rofaeel A, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33:139.
129. Tsui BCH. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56:704.
130. Dillane D, et al. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2012;22:102.
131. Hadzic A. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29:185.
132. Kinder Ross A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:16.
133. Gurnaney H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1605.
134. Bigeleisen PE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:1235.
135. Bosenberg AT, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12:398.
136. Sites BD, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35(suppl 2):S81.
137. Schafhater-Zoppoth I, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29:480.
138. Marhofer P, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59:642.
139. Roberts S. *Techniques Paediatr Anesth*. 2006;16:1112.
140. Willschke H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95:226.
141. Oberndorfer U, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:797.

142. Kil HK, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2007;32:102.
143. Kriss VM, et al. *Am J Roentgenol*. 1998;171:1687.
144. Uguralp S, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2002;37:610.
145. Marhofer P, et al. *Paediatr Anesth*. 2005;15:671.
146. Deleted in proofs.
147. Krane EJ, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1998;23:433.
148. Eyres RL. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1995;5:213.
149. Freid EB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79:394.
150. Kozek-Langenecker SA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:579.
151. Tobias JD. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1156.
152. Perillo M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:178.
153. Emery J, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14:768.
154. Kluger MT, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57:1060.
155. Kokinski MT, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1999;9:243.
156. Ganesh A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1234.
157. Ludot H, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2008;33:52.
158. Nakamura T, et al.: *Takasaki M. Can J Anaesth* 38:969, 1991.
159. Gaitini LA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90:1029.
160. Teyin E, et al. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2006;16:290.
161. Veyckemans F, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1992;17:119.
162. Adewale L, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2000;10:137.
163. Crighton IM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78:391.
164. Dalens BJ. Regional anesthetic techniques. In: Bissonnette B, Dalens B, eds. *Pediatric Anesthesia: Principles and Ractice*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2002:528.
165. Gunter JB, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1991;26:9.
166. Bouchut JC, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11:55.
167. Peutrell JM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1993;48:128.
168. Valairucha S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12:424.
169. Suresh S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(1):151.
170. Valairucha S, et al. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2002;12(5):424.
171. Tsui BC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:694.
172. Tsui BC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;9:374.
173. Tsui BC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:326.
174. Roberts SA, et al. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2005;15:948.
175. Vas L, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2000;10:149.
176. Dalens B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68:83.
177. Hong JY, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1073.
178. Raghunathan K, et al. *Paediatr Anesth*. 2008;18:606.
179. Shin SK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111:1135.
180. Tames SJ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2003;13:676.
181. Vas L, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11:575.
182. Hammer GB. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2002;11:578.
183. Soliman LM, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16:200.
184. Futagawa K, et al. *J Anesth*. 2006;20:48.
185. Arms DM, et al. *Orthopedics*. 1998;21:539.
186. Blumenthal S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:175.
187. Bosenberg AT. *Tech Reg Anesth Pain Manag*. 1999;3:157.
188. Berkowitz D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:365.
189. Lenox WC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83:1112.
190. Kost-Byerly S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:712.
191. Taenzer AH. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98:1014.
192. Cooper MG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:370.
193. Bosenberg AT, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50:895.
194. Willschke H, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2007;32:34.
195. Aram L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:1432.
196. Schulte-Steinberg O. *Ann Chir Gynaecol*. 1984;73:158.
197. Birmingham PK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:686.
198. Busoni P, et al. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1991;19:325.
199. Kaiser AM, et al. *Neuropediatrics*. 1986;17:100.
200. Dohi S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50:319.
201. Sacrista S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2003;13:253.
202. Mahé V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68:601.
203. Bonnet MP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1280.
204. Frumiento C, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2000;135:445.
205. Nickel US, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15:58.
206. William JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86:366.
207. Imbelloni LE, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16:43.
208. Puncuh F, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14:564.
209. Kokki H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:66.
210. Hammer GB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1283.
211. Katznelson R, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15:50.
212. Rappaport BA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372(9):796–797.
213. Davidson AJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2016;387(10015):239.
214. Davidson AJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(1):38.
215. Williams RK, Adams DC, Aladjem EV, et al. The safety and efficacy of spinal anesthesia for surgery in infants: the Vermont Infant Spinal Registry. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(1):67–71.
216. Lopez T, et al. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2012;78:78.
217. Shenkman Z, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49:262.
218. Kokki H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1998;42:1076.
219. Cornish PB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:1288.
220. Dalens B. Peripheral blocks of the upper extremity. In: Dalens B, ed. *Regional Anesthesia in Infants, Children and Adolescents*. London: Williams & Wilkins; 1995:275.
221. Brown TC, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1999;83:65.
222. Tobias JD. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11:265.
223. Borgeat A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:875.
224. Soeding PE, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2005;33:719.
225. Tsui B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:473.
226. Dalens B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:1264.
227. McNeely JK, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1991;16:20.
228. De Jose Maria B, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14:931.
229. Suresh S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19:1238.
230. Bigeleisen P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:502.
231. Zimmermann P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1825.
232. Wang FY, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Taiwan*. 2007;45:15.
233. Carre P, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2000;10:35.
234. Christophe JL, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:606.
235. Yin ZG, et al. *J Hand Surg Br*. 2006;31:547.
236. Dadure C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:623.
237. Schuepfer G, Jöhr M. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15:461.
238. Capdevila X, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:1606.
239. Parkinson SK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;68:243.
240. Kirchmair L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:445.
241. Sciard D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:1521.
242. Johnson CM. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1994;22:281.
243. Paut O, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:1159.
244. Lako SJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:1799.
245. Dalens B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1989;69:705.
246. Van Geffen GJ, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22:241.
247. Dalens B, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1990;70:131.
248. Ivani G, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2003;13:718.
249. Chelly JE, et al. *Foot Ankle Int*. 2002;23:749.
250. Singelyn FJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:383.
251. Ponde VC, et al. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2011;21:406.
252. Vas L. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2005;15:971.
253. Dadure C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:744.
254. Hamill JK, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2016;26(4):363.
255. Willschke H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;97:244.
256. Dolan J, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2009;34:247.
257. Naja ZM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61:1064.
258. Jagannathan N, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(9):892.
259. Lipp AK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92:273.
260. Weintraud M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:89.
261. Willschke H, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22:88.
262. Hebbard P, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35:616.
263. Fredrickson MJ, et al. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2010;20:1022.
264. Long JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(2):395.
265. Suresh S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(3):814.
266. Schuepfer G, Johr M. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14:574.
267. Sandeman DJ, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2007;35:266.
268. O'Sullivan MJ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:1214.
269. Faraoni D, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20:931.
270. Snellman LW, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1996;95:705.
271. Kovacs P, et al. *Dis Colon Rectum*. 2001;44:138.
272. Naja Z, et al. *Anesthesia*. 2011;66:802.
273. Matsota P, et al. *Eur J Pediatr Surg*. 2001;11:21.
274. Downs CS, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1997;25:390.
275. Karmakar MM, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1998;26:115.
276. Maurer K, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52:112.
277. Lonnqvist PA. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47:607.
278. Lonnqvist PA, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1992;2:285.
279. Pusch F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:841.
280. Shah R, et al. *J Cardiovasc Surg*. 1997;38:543.
281. Berta E, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18:593.
282. Naja ZM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:600.
283. Tsui BCH, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2018;53:29–34.

284. Kaplan I, et al. *A&A practice*. 2018;11(9):250–252.
285. Munshey F, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2018;47:47–49.
286. Aksu C, Gurkan Y. *J Clin Anesth*. 2018;50:62–63.
287. Elkoundi A, et al. *Korean journal of anesthesiology*. 2018.
288. Munshey F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.
289. Wong J, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2018;47:82–83.
290. Munoz F, et al. *Canadian journal of anaesthesia = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 2017;64(8):880–882.
291. Hernandez MA, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(2):217–219.
292. Bosenberg AT. *Tech Region Anesth Pain Manage*. 1999;3:196.
293. Bosenberg AT, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74:506.
294. Prabhu KP, et al. *Scand J Plast Reconstr Surg Hand Surg*. 1999;33:83.
295. Simion C, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(11):1060–1065.
296. Mesnil M, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20:343.
297. Sola C, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22:841.
298. Salloum ML, et al. *Cleft Palate Craniofac J*. 2009;46:629.
299. Giles WC, et al. *Laryngoscope*. 2007;117:2097.
300. Brown DJ, et al. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2007;25:83.
301. Suresh S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94:859.
302. Cregg N, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43:141.
303. Greher M. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104:637.
304. Dieudonne N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92:1538.
305. Tobias JD. *J Clin Anesth*. 1999;11:606.
306. Suresh S. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1556.
307. Monso A, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1999;24:186.
308. Parris WCV, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:552.
309. Mesa A, et al. *Reg Anesth*. 1993;18:60.
310. Tong HC, Nelson VS. *Pediatr Rehab*. 2000;4:87.
311. Agarwal V, Joseph B. *J Pediatr Orthop B*. 2006;15:73.
312. Blasier RD, White R. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 1996;12:404.
313. Davidson AJ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12:146.
314. Constantine E, et al. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2007;23:209.
315. Rackelboom T, et al. 116:893 2010.
316. Forastiere E, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101:841.
317. Ouaki J, et al. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2009;19:887.
318. Dashow JE, et al. *Cleft Palate Craniofac J*. 2009;46:173.

References

1. Guay J, Suresh S, Kopp S. The Use of Ultrasound Guidance for Perioperative Neuraxial and Peripheral Nerve Blocks in Children: A Cochrane Review. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(3):948–958.

1a. Nolting D, Hansen BF, Keeling J, Kjaer I. Prenatal development of the normal human vertebral corpora in different segments of the spine. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 1998;23(21):2265–2271.

2. Weidenheim KM, Kress Y, Epshteyn I, Rashbaum WK, Lyman WD. Early myelination in the human fetal lumbosacral spinal cord: characterization by light and electron microscopy. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol*. 1992;51(2):142–149.

3. Tanaka S, Mito T, Takashima S. Progress of myelination in the human fetal spinal nerve roots, spinal cord and brainstem with myelin basic protein immunohistochemistry. *Early Hum Dev*. 1995;41(1):49–59.

4. Easley RB BK, Wolf AR, et al. Development and evaluation of pain and the stress response. In: B B, ed. *Pediatric anesthesia: basic principles, state of the art, future*. Shelton, Conn: People's Medical Publishing House; 2011:259–272.

5. Grunau R. Early pain in preterm infants. A model of long-term effects. *Clin Perinatol*. 2002;29(3):373–394. vii-viii.

6. Anand KJ. Pain, plasticity, and premature birth: a prescription for permanent suffering? *Nat Med*. 2000;6(9):971–973.

7. Taddio A, Katz J. The effects of early pain experience in neonates on pain responses in infancy and childhood. *Paediatr Drugs*. 2005;7(4):245–257.

8. Lack JA, Stuart-Taylor ME. Calculation of drug dosage and body surface area of children. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(5):601–605.

9. Mazoit JX, Dalens BJ. Pharmacokinetics of local anaesthetics in infants and children. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2004;43(1):17–32.

10. Booker PD, Taylor C, Saba G. Perioperative changes in alpha 1-acid glycoprotein concentrations in infants undergoing major surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76(3):365–368.

11. Mazoit JX, Denson DD, Samii K. Pharmacokinetics of bupivacaine following caudal anesthesia in infants. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68(3):387–391.

12. Meunier JF, Goujard E, Dubousset AM, Samii K, Mazoit JX. Pharmacokinetics of bupivacaine after continuous epidural infusion in infants with and without biliary atresia. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(1):87–95.

13. Burm AG, Stienstra R, Brouwer RP, Emanuelsson BM, van Kleef JW. Epidural infusion of ropivacaine for postoperative analgesia after major orthopedic surgery: pharmacokinetic evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(2):395–403.

14. Eyres RL, Hastings C, Brown TC, Oppenheim RC. Plasma bupivacaine concentrations following lumbar epidural anaesthesia in children. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1986;14(2):131–134.

15. Lonnqvist PA, Westrin P, Larsson BA, et al. Ropivacaine pharmacokinetics after caudal block in 1-8 year old children. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85(4):506–511.

16. Ala-Kokko TI, Partanen A, Karinen J, Kiviluoma K, Alahuhta S. Pharmacokinetics of 0.2% ropivacaine and 0.2% bupivacaine following caudal blocks in children. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44(9):1099–1102.

17. Karmakar MK, Aun CS, Wong EL, Wong AS, Chan SK, Yeung CK. Ropivacaine undergoes slower systemic absorption from the caudal epidural space in children than bupivacaine. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(2):259–265. table of contents.

18. Chalkiadis GA, Eyres RL, Cranswick N, Taylor RH, Austin S. Pharmacokinetics of levobupivacaine 0.25% following caudal administration in children under 2 years of age. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(2):218–222.

19. Chalkiadis GA, Anderson BJ, Tay M, Bjorksten A, Kelly JJ. Pharmacokinetics of levobupivacaine after caudal epidural administration in infants less than 3 months of age. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(4):524–529.

20. Peutrell JM, Holder K, Gregory M. Plasma bupivacaine concentrations associated with continuous extradural infusions in babies. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(2):160–162.

21. Luz G, Wieser C, Innerhofer P, Frischhut B, Ulmer H, Benzer A. Free and total bupivacaine plasma concentrations after continuous epidural anaesthesia in infants and children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1998;8(6):473–478.

22. Leopold A, Wilson S, Weaver JS, Moursi AM. Pharmacokinetics of lidocaine delivered from a transmucosal patch in children. *Anesth Prog*. 2002;49(3):82–87.

23. Gjonaj ST, Lowenthal DB, Dozor AJ. Nebulized lidocaine administered to infants and children undergoing flexible bronchoscopy. *Chest*. 1997;112(6):1665–1669.

24. Mazoit JX. Local anesthetics and their adjuncts. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(1):31–38.

25. Sitbon P, Laffon M, Lesage V, Furet P, Autret E, Mercier C. Lidocaine plasma concentrations in pediatric patients after providing airway topical anesthesia from a calibrated device. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82(5):1003–1006.

26. Nielson DW, Ku PL, Egger M. Topical lidocaine exaggerates laryngomalacia during flexible bronchoscopy. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2000;161(1):147–151.

27. Engberg G, Danielson K, Henneberg S, Nilsson A. Plasma concentrations of prilocaine and lidocaine and methaemoglobin formation in infants after epicutaneous application of a 5% lidocaine-prilocaine (EMLA). *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1987;31(7):624–628.

28. Doyle E, Morton NS, McNicol LR. Plasma bupivacaine levels after fascia iliaca compartment block with and without adrenaline. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1997;7(2):121–124.

29. Weston PJ, Bourchier D. The pharmacokinetics of bupivacaine following interpleural nerve block in infants of very low birthweight. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1995;5(4):219–222.

30. Dalens B, Ecoffey C, Joly A, et al. Pharmacokinetics and analgesic effect of ropivacaine following ilioinguinal/iliohypogastric nerve block in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11(4):415–420.

31. Paut O, Schreiber E, Lacroix F, et al. High plasma ropivacaine concentrations after fascia iliaca compartment block in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(3):416–418.

32. Bokesch PM, Castaneda AR, Ziemer G, Wilson JM. The influence of a right-to-left cardiac shunt on lidocaine pharmacokinetics. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(5):739–744.

33. Papini O, Mathes AC, Cunha SP, Lanchote VL. Stereoselectivity in the placental transfer and kinetic disposition of racemic bupivacaine administered to parturients with or without a vasoconstrictor. *Chirality*. 2004;16(2):65–71.

34. Zsigmond EK, Downs JR. Plasma cholinesterase activity in newborns and infants. *Can Anaesth Soc J*. 1971;18(3):278–285.

35. Bricker SR, Telford RJ, Booker PD. Pharmacokinetics of bupivacaine following intraoperative intercostal nerve block in neonates and in infants less than 6 months. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70(6):942–947.

36. Bouwmeester NJ, Anderson BJ, Tibboel D, Holford NH. Developmental pharmacokinetics of morphine and its metabolites in neonates, infants and young children. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;92(2):208–217.

37. Attia J, Ecoffey C, Sandouk P, Gross JB, Samii K. Epidural morphine in children: pharmacokinetics and CO2 sensitivity. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(6):590–594.

38. Warner MA, Kunkel SE, Offord KO, Atchison SR, Dawson B. The effects of age, epinephrine, and operative site on duration of caudal analgesia in pediatric patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66(10):995–998.

39. Hansen TG, Morton NS, Cullen PM, Watson DG. Plasma concentrations and pharmacokinetics of bupivacaine with and without adrenaline following caudal anaesthesia in infants. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45(1):42–47.

40. Jamali S, Monin S, Begon C, Dubousset AM, Ecoffey C. Clonidine in pediatric caudal anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(4):663–666.

41. De Negri P, Ivani G, Visconti C, De Vivo P, Lonnqvist PA. The dose-response relationship for clonidine added to a postoperative continuous epidural infusion of ropivacaine in children. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(1):71–76.

42. Kaabachi O, Zarghouni A, Ouezini R, Abdelaziz AB, Chattaoui O, Kokki H. Clonidine 1 microg/kg is a safe and effective adjuvant to plain bupivacaine in spinal anesthesia in adolescents. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(2):516–519.

43. Cucchiaro G, Ganesh A. The effects of clonidine on postoperative analgesia after peripheral nerve blockade in children. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(3):532–537.

44. Bouchut JC, Dubois R, Godard J. Clonidine in preterm-infant caudal anesthesia may be responsible for postoperative apnea. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26(1):83–85.

45. Galante D. Preoperative apnea in a preterm infant after caudal block with ropivacaine and clonidine. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(8):708–709.

46. Potts AL, Larsson P, Eksborg S, Warman G, Lonnqvist PA, Anderson BJ. Clonidine disposition in children; a population analysis. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(10):924–933.

47. https://www.asra.com/news/66/esra-asra-guidelines-for-pediatric-regio - Suresh, S, ESRA/ASRA Guidelines for Pediatric Regional Anesthesia. Link: http://www.brightcopy.net/allen/asra/15-4/index.php#/14 p15-16.

48. Nafiu OO, Kolawole IK, Salam RA, Elegbe EO. Comparison of caudal ketamine with or without bupivacaine in pediatric subumbilical surgery. *J Natl Med Assoc*. 2007;99(6):670–673.
49. Dalens B. Some current controversies in paediatric regional anaesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2006;19(3):301–308.
50. Bouwmeester NJ, Anand KJ, van Dijk M, Hop WC, Boomsma F, Tibboel D. Hormonal and metabolic stress responses after major surgery in children aged 0-3 years: a double-blind, randomized trial comparing the effects of continuous versus intermittent morphine. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(3):390–399.
51. Siebert JN, Posfay-Barbe KM, Habre W, Siegrist CA. Influence of anesthesia on immune responses and its effect on vaccination in children: review of evidence. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(5):410–420.
52. Wolf AR, Eyres RL, Laussen PC, et al. Effect of extradural analgesia on stress responses to abdominal surgery in infants. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70(6):654–660.
53. Tuncer S, Yosunkaya A, Reisli R, Tavlan A, F CI, Otelcioglu S. Effect of caudal block on stress responses in children. *Pediatr Int*. 2004;46(1):53–57.
54. Khalil SN, Hanna E, Farag A, et al. Presurgical caudal block attenuates stress response in children. *Middle East J Anaesthesiol*. 2005;18(2):391–400.
55. Larousse E, Asehnoune K, Dartayet B, et al. The hemodynamic effects of pediatric caudal anesthesia assessed by esophageal Doppler. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(5):1165–1168. table of contents.
56. Raux O, Rochette A, Morau E, Dadure C, Vergnes C, Capdevila X. The effects of spread of block and adrenaline on cardiac output after epidural anesthesia in young children: a randomized, double-blind, prospective study. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(4):948–955. table of contents.
57. Ozasa H, Hashimoto K, Saito Y. Pulmonary Doppler flow velocity pattern during caudal epidural anaesthesia in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12(4):317–321.
58. Kain ZN, Caldwell-Andrews A, Wang SM. Psychological preparation of the parent and pediatric surgical patient. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2002;20(1):29–44.
59. Wright KD, Stewart SH, Finley GA, Buffett-Jerrott SE. Prevention and intervention strategies to alleviate preoperative anxiety in children: a critical review. *Behav Modif*. 2007;31(1):52–79.
60. Taenzer AH, Walker BJ, Bosenberg AT, et al. Asleep versus awake: does it matter?: Pediatric regional block complications by patient state: a report from the Pediatric Regional Anesthesia Network. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2014;39(4):279–283.
61. Ivani G, Suresh S, Ecoffey C, et al. The European Society of Regional Anaesthesia and Pain Therapy and the American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine Joint Committee Practice Advisory on Controversial Topics in Pediatric Regional Anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40(5):526–532.
62. Ion T, Cook-Sather SD, Finkel RS, Cucchiaro G. Fascia iliaca block for an infant with arthrogryposis multiplex congenita undergoing muscle biopsy. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(1):82–84.
63. Nasr AA, Almathami A, Alhathal N, Fadin A, Zakaria H. Combined spinal and epidural anesthesia in a child with epidermolysis bullosa. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(12):1278–1279.
64. Diwan R, Vas L, Shah T, Raghavendran S, Ponde V. Continuous axillary block for upper limb surgery in a patient with epidermolysis bullosa simplex. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11(5):603–606.
65. Englbrecht JS, Langer M, Hahnenkamp K, Ellger B. Ultrasound-guided axillary plexus block in a child with dystrophic epidermolysis bullosa. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2010;38(6):1101–1105.
66. Johr M, Berger TM. Regional anaesthetic techniques for neonatal surgery: indications and selection of techniques. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2004;18(2):357–375.
67. Dadure C, Pirat P, Raux O, et al. Perioperative continuous peripheral nerve blocks with disposable infusion pumps in children: a prospective descriptive study. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(3):687–690.
68. DeVera HV, Furukawa KT, Matson MD, Scavone JA, James MA. Regional techniques as an adjunct to general anesthesia for pediatric extremity and spine surgery. *J Pediatr Orthop*. 2006;26(6):801–804.
69. Hammer GB. Regional anesthesia for pediatric cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1999;13(2):210–213.
70. Peterson KL, DeCampli WM, Pike NA, Robbins RC, Reitz BA. A report of two hundred twenty cases of regional anesthesia in pediatric cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(5):1014–1019.
71. Young KD. Pediatric procedural pain. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2005;45(2):160–171.
72. Blount RL, Piira T, Cohen LL, Cheng PS. Pediatric procedural pain. *Behav Modif*. 2006;30(1):24–49.
73. Anand KJ, Johnston CC, Oberlander TF, Taddio A, Lehr VT, Walco GA. Analgesia and local anesthesia during invasive procedures in the neonate. *Clin Ther*. 2005;27(6):844–876.
74. Dadure C, Capdevila X. Peripheral catheter techniques. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(1):93–101.
75. Walker BJ, Long JB, De Oliveira GS, et al. Peripheral nerve catheters in children: an analysis of safety and practice patterns from the pediatric regional anesthesia network (PRAN). *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115(3):457–462.
76. Tobias JD. Therapeutic applications of regional anaesthesia in paediatric-aged patients. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12(3):272–277.
77. Elias M, Chakerian MU. Repeated stellate ganglion blockade using a catheter for pediatric herpes zoster ophthalmicus. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(4):950–952.
78. Yaster M, Tobin JR, Billett C, Casella JF, Dover G. Epidural analgesia in the management of severe vaso-occlusive sickle cell crisis. *Pediatrics*. 1994;93(2):310–315.
79. Labat F, Dubousset AM, Baujard C, Wasier AP, Benhamou D, Cucchiaro G. Epidural analgesia in a child with sickle cell disease complicated by acute abdominal pain and priapism. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(6):935–936.
80. Dadure C, Motais F, Ricard C, Raux O, Troncin R, Capdevila X. Continuous peripheral nerve blocks at home for treatment of recurrent complex regional pain syndrome I in children. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(2):387–391.
81. Nayak S, Roberts S, Cunliffe M. Management of intractable pain from a chronic dislocated hip in an adolescent. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(4):357–358.
82. Rauck RL, Naveira F, Speight KL, Smith BP. Refractory idiopathic erythromelalgia. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82(5):1097–1101.
83. Collins JJ, Grier HE, Sethna NF, Wilder RT, Berde CB. Regional anesthesia for pain associated with terminal pediatric malignancy. *Pain*. 1996;65(1):63–69.
84. Cooper MG, Keneally JP, Kinchington D. Continuous brachial plexus neural blockade in a child with intractable cancer pain. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 1994;9(4):277–281.
85. Kessell G, Barker I. Leg ischaemia in an infant following accidental intra-arterial administration of atracurium treated with caudal anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 1996;51(12):1154–1156.
86. Elias M. Continuous cervico-thoracic sympathetic ganglion block: therapeutic modality for arterial insufficiency of the arm of a neonate. *Middle East J Anaesthesiol*. 2001;16(3):359–363.
87. Kotze A, Hinton W, Crabbe DC, Carrigan BJ. Audit of epidural analgesia in children undergoing thoracotomy for decortication of empyema. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98(5):662–666.
88. Platis CM, Kachko L, Livni G, Efrat R, Katz J. Caudal anesthesia in children with shunt devices. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16(11):1198–1199.
89. Longhini AB, Cheon EC, Hajduk J, Bowman R, Birmingham PK. Neuraxial Anesthesia in Children With Ventriculoperitoneal Shunts. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;127(1):188–189.
90. Lejus C. What does analgesia mask? *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(8):622–624.
91. Dunwoody JM, Reichert CC, Brown KL. Compartment syndrome associated with bupivacaine and fentanyl epidural analgesia in pediatric orthopaedics. *J Pediatr Orthop*. 1997;17(3):285–288.
92. Llewellyn N, Moriarty A. The national pediatric epidural audit. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(6):520–533.
93. Battaglia TC, Armstrong DG, Schwend RM. Factors affecting forearm compartment pressures in children with supracondylar fractures of the humerus. *J Pediatr Orthop*. 2002;22(4):431–439.
94. Bibbo C, Lin SS, Cunningham FJ. Acute traumatic compartment syndrome of the foot in children. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2000;16(4):244–248.
95. Carbonell PG, Prats FL, Fernandez PD, Valiente Valero JM, Sastre S. Monitoring antebrachial compartmental pressure in displaced supracondylar elbow fractures in children. *J Pediatr Orthop B*. 2004;13(6):412–416.
96. Firth PG, Head CA. Sickle cell disease and anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(3):766–785.
97. Ali L, Stocks GM. Spina bifida, tethered cord and regional anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2005;60(11):1149–1150.
98. Hernandez-Palazon J. Anaesthetic management in children with metachromatic leukodystrophy. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2003;13(8):733–734.

99. Ecoffey C, Lacroix F, Giaufre E, Orliaguet G, Courreges P, Adarpef. Epidemiology and morbidity of regional anesthesia in children: a follow-up one-year prospective survey of the French-Language Society of Paediatric Anaesthesiologists (ADARPEF). *Pediatr Anesth*. 2010;20(12):1061–1069.
100. Krane EJ. Spinal epidermoid tumors: Will a forgotten complication rise again? *Region Anesth Pain M*. 1999;24(6):494–496.
101. Benzon HT, Strichartz GR, Gissen AJ, Shanks CA, Covino BG, Datta S. Developmental Neurophysiology of Mammalian Peripheral-Nerves and Age-Related Differential Sensitivity to Local-Anesthetic. *Brit J Anaesth*. 1988;61(6):754–760.
102. Nouette-Gaulain K, Sirvent P, Canal-Raffin M, et al. Effects of intermittent femoral nerve injections of bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, and ropivacaine on mitochondrial energy metabolism and intracellular calcium homeostasis in rat psoas muscle. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(5):1026–1034.
103. Nouette-Gaulain K, Dadure C, Morau D, et al. Age-dependent Bapivacaine-induced Muscle Toxicity during Continuous Peripheral Nerve Block in Rats. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(5):1120–1127.
104. Dalens BJ, Mazoit JX. Adverse effects of regional anaesthesia in children. *Drug Safety*. 1998;19(4):251–268.
105. Di Gregorio G, Neal JM, Rosenquist RW, Weinberg GL. Clinical presentation of local anesthetic systemic toxicity: a review of published cases, 1979 to 2009. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35(2):181–187.
106. Scott DB, Lee A, Fagan D, Bowler GMR, Bloomfield P, Lundh R. Acute Toxicity of Ropivacaine Compared with That of Bupivacaine. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1989;69(5):563–569.
107. Bienvenu J, Sann L, Bienvenu F, et al. Laser Nephelometry of Orosomucoid in Serum of Newborns - Reference Intervals and Relation to Bacterial-Infections. *Clin Chem*. 1981;27(5):721–726.
108. Maxwell LG, Martin LD, Yaster M. Bupivacaine-Induced Cardiac Toxicity in Neonates - Successful Treatment with Intravenous Phenytoin. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(3):682–686.
109. Weinberg GL. Treatment of Local Anesthetic Systemic Toxicity (LAST). *Region Anesth Pain M*. 2010;35(2):188–193.
110. Morray JP, Geiduschek JM, Caplan RA, Posner KL, Gild WM, Cheney FW. A Comparison of Pediatric and Adult Anesthesia Closed Malpractice Claims. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(3):461–467.
111. Giaufre E, Dalens B, Gombert A. Epidemiology and morbidity of regional anesthesia in children: A one-year prospective survey of the French-language society of pediatric anesthesiologists. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1996;83(5):904–912.
112. Fox MA, Webb RK, Singleton R, Ludbrook G, Runciman WB. The Australian Incident Monitoring Study. Problems with regional anaesthesia: an analysis of 2000 incident reports. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 1993;21(5):646–649.
113. Rochette A, Dadure C, Raux O, Capdevila X. Changing trends in paediatric regional anaesthetic practice in recent years. *Curr Opin Anesthesio*. 2009;22(3):374–377.
114. Walker BJ, Long JB, Sathyamoorthy M, et al. Complications in Pediatric Regional Anesthesia: An Analysis of More than 100,000 Blocks from the Pediatric Regional Anesthesia Network. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129(4):721–732.
115. Long JB, Joselyn AS, Bhalla T, et al. The Use of Neuraxial Catheters for Postoperative Analgesia in Neonates: A Multicenter Safety Analysis from the Pediatric Regional Anesthesia Network. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(6):1965–1970.
116. Kokki H, Heikkinen M, Turunen M, Vanamo K, Hendolin H. Needle design does not affect the success rate of spinal anaesthesia or the incidence of postpuncture complications in children. *Acta Anaesth Scand*. 2000;44(2):210–213.
117. Kokki H, Turunen M, Heikkinen M, Reinikainen M, Laisalmi M. High success rate and low incidence of headache and neurological symptoms with two spinal needle designs in children. *Acta Anaesth Scand*. 2005;49(9):1367–1372.
118. Knudsen K, Suurkula MB, Blomberg S, Sjovall J, Edvardsson N. Central nervous and cardiovascular effects of i.v. infusions of ropivacaine, bupivacaine and placebo in volunteers. *Brit J Anaesth*. 1997;78(5):507–514.
119. McClure JH. Ropivacaine. *Brit J Anaesth*. 1996;76(2):300–307.
120. Zink W, Seif C, Bohl JRE, et al. The acute myotoxic effects of bupivacaine and ropivacaine after continuous peripheral nerve blockades. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2003;97(4):1173–1179.
121. Ala-Kokko TI, Karinen J, Raiha E, Kiviluoma K, Alahuhta S. Pharmacokinetics of 0.75% ropivacaine and 0.5% bupivacaine after ilioinguinal-iliohypogastric nerve block in children. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2002;89(3):438–441.
122. Hansen TG, Ilett KF, Lim SI, Reid C, Hackett LP, Bergesio R. Pharmacokinetics and clinical efficacy of long-term epidural ropivacaine infusion in childrens. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2000;85(3):347–353.
123. Antok E, Bordet F, Duflo F, et al. Patient-controlled epidural analgesia versus continuous epidural infusion with ropivacaine for postoperative analgesia in children. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2003;97(6):1608–1611.
124. Duflo F, Sautou-Miranda V, Pouyau A, et al. Efficacy and plasma levels of ropivacaine for children: controlled regional analgesia following lower limb surgery. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2006;97(2):250–254.
125. Dadure C, Bringuier S, Mathieu O, et al. Continuous epidural block versus continuous psoas compartment block for postoperative analgesia after major hip or femoral surgery in children: A prospective comparative randomized study. *Ann Fr Anesth*. 2010;29(9):610–615.
126. Suresh S, De Oliveira Jr GS. Blood Bupivacaine Concentrations After a Combined Single-Shot Sciatic Block and a Continuous Femoral Nerve Block in Pediatric Patients: A Prospective Observational Study. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124(5):1591–1593.
127. Kim SH, Song SG, Paek OJ, Lee HJ, Park DH, Lee JK. Nerve-stimulator-guided pudendal nerve block by pararectal approach. *Colorectal Dis*. 2012;14(5):611–615.
128. Rofaeel A, Peng P, Louis I, Chan V. Feasibility of real-time ultrasound for pudendal nerve block in patients with chronic perineal pain. *Region Anesth Pain M*. 2008;33(2):139–145.
129. Tsui BCH. Ultrasound imaging to localize foramina for superficial trigeminal nerve block. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56(9):704–706.
130. Dillane D, Tsui BCH. Is there still a place for the use of nerve stimulation? *Pediatr Anesth*. 2012;22(1):102–108.
131. Hadzic A. Peripheral nerve stimulators: Cracking the code - One at a time. *Region Anesth Pain M*. 2004;29(3):185–188.
132. Ross AK, Eck JB, Tobias JD. Pediatric regional anesthesia: beyond the caudal. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(1):16–26.
133. Gurnaney H, Ganesh A, Cucchiaro G. The relationship between current intensity for nerve stimulation and success of peripheral nerve blocks performed in pediatric patients under general anesthesia. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2007;105(6):1605–1609.
134. Bigeleisen PE, Moayeri N, Groen GJ. Extraneural versus Intraneural Stimulation Thresholds during Ultrasound-guided Supraclavicular Block. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(6):1235–1243.
135. Bosenberg AT, Raw R, Boezaart AP. Surface mapping of peripheral nerves in children with a nerve stimulator. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2002;12(5):398–403.
136. Sites BD, Brull R, Chan VWS, et al. Artifacts and Pitfall Errors Associated With Ultrasound-Guided Regional Anesthesia Part II: A Pictorial Approach to Understanding and Avoidance. *Region Anesth Pain M*. 2010;35(2):S81–S92.
137. Schafhalter-Zoppoth I, McCulloch CE, Gray AT. Ultrasound visibility of needles used for regional nerve block: An in vitro study. *Region Anesth Pain M*. 2004;29(5):480–488.
138. Marhofer P, Sitzwohl C, Greher M, Kapral S. Ultrasound guidance for infraclavicular brachial plexus anaesthesia in children. *Anaesthesia*. 2004;59(7):642–646.
139. Roberts S. Ultrasonographic guidance in pediatric regional anesthesia. Part 2: techniques. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2006;16(11):1112–1124.
140. Willschke H, Marhofer P, Bosenberg A, et al. Ultrasonography for ilioinguinal/iliohypogastric nerve blocks in children. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2005;95(2):226–230.
141. Oberndorfer U, Marhofer P, Bosenberg A, et al. Ultrasonographic guidance for sciatic and femoral nerve blocks in children. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2007;98(6):797–801.
142. Kil HK, Cho JE, Kim WO, Koo BN, Han SW, Kim JY. Prepuncture ultrasound-measured distance: An accurate reflection of epidural depth in infants and small children. *Region Anesth Pain M*. 2007;32(2):102–106.
143. Kriss VM, Desai NS. Occult spinal dysraphism in neonates: Assessment of high-risk cutaneous stigmata on sonography. *Am J Roentgenol*. 1998;171(6):1687–1692.
144. Uguralp S, Mutus M, Koroglu A, Gurbuz N, Koltuksuz U, Demircan M. Regional anesthesia is a good alternative to general anesthesia in pediatric surgery: Experience in 1,554 children. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2002;37(4):610–613.
145. Marhofer P, Bosenberg A, Sitzwohl C, Willschke H, Wanzel O, Kapral S. Pilot study of neuraxial imaging by ultrasound in infants and children. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2005;15(8):671–676.
146. Deleted in proofs.

147. Krane EJ, Dalens BJ, Murat I, Murrell D. The safety of epidurals placed during general anesthesia. *Region Anesth Pain M*. 1998;23(5):433–438.
148. Eyres RL. Local-Anesthetic Agents in Infancy. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 1995;5(4):213–218.
149. Freid EB, Bailey AG, Valley RD. Electrocardiographic and Hemodynamic-Changes Associated with Unintentional Intravascular Injection of Bupivacaine with Epinephrine in Infants. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;79(2):394–398.
150. Kozek-Langenecker SA, Marhofer P, Jonas K, Macik T, Urak G, Semsroth M. Cardiovascular criteria for epidural test dosing in sevoflurane- and halothane-anesthetized children. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2000;90(3):579–583.
151. Tobias JD. Caudal epidural block: A review of test dosing and recognition of systemic injection in children. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2001;93(5):1156–1161.
152. Perillo M, Sethna NF, Berde CB. Intravenous Isoproterenol as a Marker for Epidural Test-Dosing in Children. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1993;76(1):178–181.
153. Emery J, Ho D, MacKeen L, Heon E, Bissonnette B. Pupillary reflex dilation and skin temperature to assess sensory level during combined general and caudal anesthesia in children. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2004;14(9):768–773.
154. Kluger MT, Bullock MFM. Recovery room incidents: a review of 419 reports from the Anaesthetic Incident Monitoring Study (AIMS). *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(11):1060–1066.
155. Kokinsky E, Thornberg E, Ostlund AL, Larsson LE. Postoperative comfort in paediatric outpatient surgery. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 1999;9(3):243–251.
156. Ganesh A, Rose JB, Wells L, et al. Continuous peripheral nerve blockade for inpatient and outpatient postoperative analgesia in children. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2007;105(5):1234–1242.
157. Ludot H, Berger J, Pichenot V, Belouadah M, Madi K, Malinovsky JM. Continuous peripheral nerve block for postoperative pain control at home: A prospective feasibility study in children. *Region Anesth Pain M*. 2008;33(1):52–56.
158. Nakamura T, Takasaki M. Metabolic and Endocrine Responses to Surgery during Caudal Analgesia in Children. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38(8):969–973.
159. Gaitini LA, Somri M, Vaida SJ, et al. Does the addition of fentanyl to bupivacaine in caudal epidural block have an effect on the plasma level of catecholamines in children? *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2000;90(5):1029–1033.
160. Teyin E, Derbent A, Balcioglu T, Cokmez B. The efficacy of caudal morphine or bupivacaine combined with general anesthesia on postoperative pain and neuroendocrine stress response in children. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2006;16(3):290–296.
161. Veyckemans F, Vanobbergh LJ, Gouverneur JM. Lessons from 1100 Pediatric Caudal Blocks in a Teaching Hospital. *Region Anesth*. 1992;17(3):119–125.
162. Adewale L, Dearlove O, Wilson B, Hindle K, Robinson DN. The caudal canal in children: a study using magnetic resonance imaging. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2000;10(2):137–141.
163. Crighton IM, Barry BP, Hobbs GJ. A study of the anatomy of the caudal space using magnetic resonance imaging. *Brit J Anaesth*. 1997;78(4):391–395.
164. Dalens B. Regional anesthetic techniques. In: Bissonnette BDB, ed. *Pediatric Anesthesia: principles and Practice*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill; 2002:528–575.
165. Gunter JB, Watcha MF, Forestner JE, et al. Caudal Epidural-Anesthesia in Conscious Premature and High-Risk Infants. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1991;26(1):9–14.
166. Bouchut JC, Dubois R, Foussat C, et al. Evaluation of caudal anaesthesia performed in conscious ex-premature infants for inguinal herniotomies. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2001;11(1):55–58.
167. Peutrell JM, Hughes DG. Epidural-Anesthesia through Caudal Catheters for Inguinal Herniotomies in Awake Ex-Premature Babies. *Anaesthesia*. 1993;48(2):128–131.
168. Suresh S, Long J, Birmingham PK, De Oliveira Jr GS. Are caudal blocks for pain control safe in children? an analysis of 18,650 caudal blocks from the Pediatric Regional Anesthesia Network (PRAN) database. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(1):151–156.
169. Valairucha S, Seefelder C, Houck CS. Thoracic epidural catheters placed by the caudal route in infants: the importance of radiographic confirmation. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2002;12(5):424–428.
170. Tsui BCH, Wagner A, Cave D, Seal R. Threshold current for an insulated epidural needle in pediatric patients. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2004;99(3):694–696.
171. Tsui BCH, Tarkkila P, Gupta S, Kearney R. Confirmation of caudal needle placement using nerve simulation. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(2):374–378.
172. Tsui BCH, Seal R, Koller J. Thoracic epidural catheter placement via the caudal approach in infants by using electrocardiographic guidance. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2002;95(2):326–330.
173. Roberts SA, Guruswamy V, Galvez I. Caudal injectate can be reliably imaged using portable ultrasound - a preliminary study. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2005;15(11):948–952.
174. Vas L, Naik V, Patil B, Sanzgiri S. Tunnelling of caudal epidural catheters in infants. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2000;10(2):149–154.
175. Dalens B, Hasnaoui A. Caudal Anesthesia in Pediatric-Surgery - Success Rate and Adverse-Effects in 750 Consecutive Patients. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1989;68(2):83–89.
176. Hong JY, Han SW, Kim WO, Cho JS, Kil HK. A Comparison of High Volume/Low Concentration and Low Volume/High Concentration Ropivacaine in Caudal Analgesia for Pediatric Orchiopexy. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2009;109(4):1073–1078.
177. Raghunathan K, Schwartz D, Connelly NR. Determining the accuracy of caudal needle placement in children: a comparison of the swoosh test and ultrasonography. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2008;18(7):606–612.
178. Shin SK, Hong JY, Kim WO, Koo BN, Kim JE, Kil HK. Ultrasound Evaluation of the Sacral Area and Comparison of Sacral Interspinous and Hiatal Approach for Caudal Block in Children. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;111(5):1135–1140.
179. Tame SJ, Burstal R. Investigation of the radiological relationship between iliac crests, conus medullaris and vertebral level in children. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2003;13(8):676–680.
180. Vas L, Raghavendran S, Hosalkar H, Patil B. A study of epidural pressures in infants. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2001;11(5):575–583.
181. Hammer GB. Pediatric thoracic anesthesia. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2002;20(1):153–180.
182. Soliman LM, Mossad EB. Thoracic epidural catheter in the management of a child with an anterior mediastinal mass: a case report and literature review. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2006;16(2):200–205.
183. Futagawa K, Suwa I, Okuda T, et al. Anesthetic management for the minimally invasive Nuss procedure in 21 patients with pectus excavatum. *J Anesth*. 2006;20(1):48–50.
184. Arms DM, Smith JT, Osteyee J, Gartrell A. Postoperative epidural analgesia for pediatric spine surgery. *Orthopedics*. 1998;21(5):539–544.
185. Blumenthal S, Min K, Nadig M, Borgeat A. Double epidural catheter with ropivacaine versus intravenous morphine: A comparison for postoperative analgesia after scoliosis correction surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(1):175–180.
186. Bosenberg A. Caudothoracic epidural block. *Tech Reg Anesth Pain Manag*. 1999;3:157–162.
187. Berkowitz D, Kaye RD, Markowitz SD, Cook-Sather SD. Inadvertent extra-epidural catheter placement in an infant. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2005;100(2):365–366.
188. Lenox WC, Kostbyerly S, Shipley R, Yaster M. Pediatric Caudal Epidural Catheter Sequestration - an Unusual Complication. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;83(5):1112–1114.
189. Kost-Byerly S, Tobin JR, Greenberg RS, Billett C, Zahurak M, Yaster M. Bacterial colonization and infection rate of continuous epidural catheters in children. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1998;86(4):712–716.
190. Taenzer AH. Inadvertent spinal anesthesia during continuous epidural anesthesia in an infant. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;98(4):1014–1015.
191. Cooper MG, Sethna NF. Epidural Analgesia in Patients with Congenital Lumbosacral Spinal Anomalies. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(2):370–374.
192. Bosenberg AT. Skin-Epidural Distance in Children. *Anaesthesia*. 1995;50(10):895–897.
193. Willschke H, Bosenberg A, Marhofer P, et al. Epidural catheter placement in neonates: Sonoanatomy and feasibility of ultrasonographic guidance in term and preterm neonates. *Region Anesth Pain M*. 2007;32(1):34–40.

194. Aram L, Krane EJ, Kozloski LJ, Yaster M. Tunneled epidural catheters for prolonged analgesia in pediatric patients. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2001;92(6):1432–1438.
195. Schulte-Steinberg O. Regional anaesthesia for children. *Ann Chir Gynaecol*. 1984;73(3):158–165.
196. Birmingham PK, Wheeler M, Suresh S, et al. Patient-controlled epidural analgesia in children: Can they do it? *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2003;96(3):686–691.
197. Busoni P, Messeri A, Sarti A. The Lumbosacral Epidural Block - a Modified Taylor Approach for Abdominal Urologic Surgery in Children. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1991;19(3):325–328.
198. Kaiser AM, Whitelaw AGL. Normal Cerebrospinal-Fluid Pressure in the Newborn. *Neuropediatrics*. 1986;17(2):100–102.
199. Dohi S, Naito H, Takahashi T. Age-Related-Changes in Blood-Pressure and Duration of Motor Block in Spinal-Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1979;50(4):319–323.
200. Sacrista S, Kern D, Fourcade O, et al. Spinal anaesthesia in a child with hypoplastic left heart syndrome. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2003;13(3):253–256.
201. Mahe V, Ecoffey C. Spinal-Anesthesia with Isobaric Bupivacaine in Infants. *Anesthesiology*. 1988;68(4):601–603.
202. Bonnet MP, Larousse E, Asehnoune K, Benhamou D. Spinal anesthesia with bupivacaine decreases cerebral blood flow in former preterm infants. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2004;98(5):1280–1283.
203. Frumiento C, Abajian JC, Vane DW. Spinal anesthesia for preterm infants undergoing inguinal hernia repair. *Arch Surg-Chicago*. 2000;135(4):445–451.
204. Nickel US, Meyer RR, Brambrink AM. Spinal anesthesia in an extremely low birth weight infant. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2005;15(1):58–62.
205. Williams JM, Stoddart PA, Williams SAR, Wolf AR. Post-operative recovery after inguinal herniotomy in ex-premature infants: comparison between sevoflurane and spinal anaesthesia. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2001;86(3):366–371.
206. Imbelloni LE, Vieira EM, Sperni F, Guizellini RH, Tolentino AP. Spinal anesthesia in children with isobaric local anesthetics: Report on 307 patients under 13 years of age. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2006;16(1):43–48.
207. Puncuh F, Lampugnani E, Kokki H. Use of spinal anaesthesia in paediatric patients: a single centre experience with 1132 cases. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2004;14(7):564–567.
208. Kokki H, Ylonen P, Laisalmi MA, Heikkinen M, Reinikainen M. Isobaric ropivacaine 5 mg/mL for spinal anesthesia in children. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2005;100(1):66–70.
209. Hammer GB, Ramamoorthy C, Cao H, et al. Postoperative analgesia after spinal blockade in infants and children undergoing cardiac surgery. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2005;100(5):1283–1288.
210. Katznelson R, Mishaly D, Hegesh T, Perel A, Keidan I. Spinal anesthesia for diagnostic cardiac catheterization in high-risk infants. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2005;15(1):50–53.
211. Rappaport BA, Suresh S, Hertz S, et al. Anesthetic neurotoxicity—clinical implications of animal models. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372(9):796–797.
212. Davidson AJ, Disma N, de Graaff JC, et al. Neurodevelopmental outcome at 2 years of age after general anaesthesia and awake-regional anaesthesia in infancy (GAS): an international multicentre, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2016;387(10015):239–250.
213. Davidson AJ, Morton NS, Arnup SJ, et al. Apnea after Awake Regional and General Anesthesia in Infants: The General Anesthesia Compared to Spinal Anesthesia Study--Comparing Apnea and Neurodevelopmental Outcomes, a Randomized Controlled Trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(1):38–54.
214. Williams RK, Adams DC, Aladjem EV, et al. The safety and efficacy of spinal anesthesia for surgery in infants: the Vermont Infant Spinal Registry. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(1):67–71.
215. Lopez T, Sanchez FJ, Garzon JC, Muriel C. Spinal anesthesia in pediatric patients. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2012;78(1):78–87.
216. Shenkman Z, Hoppenstein D, Litmanovitz I, et al. Spinal anesthesia in 62 premature, former-premature or young infants-technical aspects and pitfalls. *Can J Anaesth*. 2002;49(3):262–269.
217. Kokki H, Hendolin H, Turunen M. Postdural puncture headache and transient neurologic symptoms in children after spinal anaesthesia using cutting and pencil point paediatric spinal needles. *Acta Anaesth Scand*. 1998;42(9):1076–1082.
218. Cornish PB, Leaper CJ, Hahn JL. The "axillary tunnel": An anatomic reappraisal of the limits and dynamics of spread during brachial plexus blockade. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2007;104(5):1288–1291.
219. Dalens B. Peripheral blocks of the upper extremity. In: Dalens B, ed. *Regional Anesthesia in Infants, Children and Adolescents*. London: Williams & Wilkins; 1995:275–312.
220. Brown TCK, Eyres RL, McDougall RJ. Local and regional anaesthesia in children. *Brit J Anaesth*. 1999;83(1):65–77.
221. Tobias JD. Brachial plexus anaesthesia in children. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2001;11(3):265–275.
222. Borgeat A, Ekatodramis G, Kalberer F, Benz C. Acute and nonacute complications associated with interscalene block and shoulder surgery - A prospective study. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(4):875–880.
223. Soeding PF, Sha S, Royse CF, Marks P, Hoy G, Royse AG. A Randomized trial of ultrasound-guided brachial plexus anaesthesia in upper limb surgery. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 2005;33(6):719–725.
224. Tsui BCH, Suresh S. Ultrasound Imaging for Regional Anesthesia in Infants, Children, and Adolescents A Review of Current Literature and Its Application in the Practice of Extremity and Trunk Blocks. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(2):473–492.
225. Dalens B, Vanneuville G, Tanguy A. A New Parascalene Approach to the Brachial-Plexus in Children - Comparison with the Supraclavicular Approach. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1987;66(12):1264–1271.
226. Mcneely JK, Hoffman GM, Eckert JE. Postoperative Pain Relief in Children from the Parascalene Injection Technique. *Region Anesth*. 1991;16(1):20–22.
227. Jose Maria BD, Tielens LKP. Vertical infraclavicular brachial plexus block in children: a preliminary study. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2004;14(11):931–935.
228. Suresh S, Sarwark JP, Bhalla T, Janicki J. Performing US-guided nerve blocks in the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) for upper extremity fractures: is this feasible in children? *Pediatr Anesth*. 2009;19(12):1238–1240.
229. Bigeleisen P, Wilson M. A comparison of two techniques for ultrasound guided infraclavicular block. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2006;96(4):502–507.
230. Zimmermann P, Papenfuss T, Schwemmer U, Greim CA. Vertical infraclavicular brachial plexus block in a child with cystic fibrosis. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2002;95(6):1825–1826.
231. Wang FY, Wu SH, Lu IC, et al. Ultrasonographic examination to search out the optimal upper arm position for coracoid approach to infraclavicular brachial plexus block--a volunteer study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Taiwan*. 2007;45(1):15–20.
232. Carre P, Joly A, Field BC, Wodey E, Lucas MM, Ecoffey C. Axillary block in children: single or multiple injection? *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2000;10(1):35–39.
233. Christophe JL, Berthier F, Boillot A, et al. Assessment of topographic brachial plexus nerves variations at the axilla using ultrasonography. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2009;103(4):606–612.
234. Yin ZG, Zhang JB, Kan SL, Wang P. A comparison of traditional digital blocks and single subcutaneous palmar injection blocks at the base of the finger and a meta-analysis of the digital block trials. *J Hand Surg-Brit Eur*. 2006;31b(5):547–555.
235. Dadure C, Raux O, Gaudard P, et al. Continuous psoas compartment blocks after major orthopedic surgery in children: A prospective computed tomographic scan and clinical studies. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2004;98(3):623–628.
236. Schuepfer G, Johr M. Psoas compartment block in children: Part I - description of the technique. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2005;15(6):461–464.
237. Capdevila X, Macaire P, Dadure C, et al. Continuous psoas compartment block for postoperative analgesia after total hip arthroplasty: New landmarks, technical guidelines, and clinical evaluation. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2002;94(6):1606–1613.
238. Parkinson SK, Mueller JB, Little WL, Bailey SL. Extent of Blockade with Various Approaches to the Lumbar Plexus. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1989;68(3):243–248.
239. Kirchmair L, Enna B, Mitterschiffthaler G, et al. Lumbar plexus in children - A sonographic study and its relevance to pediatric regional anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(2):445–450.
240. Sciard D, Matuszczak M, Gebhard R, Greger J, Al-Samsam T, Chelly JE. Continuous posterior lumbar plexus block for acute postoperative pain control in young children. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(6):1521–1523.
241. Johnson CM. Continuous Femoral Nerve Blockade for Analgesia in Children with Femoral Fractures. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1994;22(3):281–283.
242. Paut O, Sallabery M, Schreiber-Deturmeny E, Remond C, Bruguerolle B, Camboulives S. Continuous fascia iliaca compartment block in children: A prospective evaluation of plasma bupivacaine concentrations, pain scores, and side effects. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2001;92(5):1159–1163.

243. Lako SJ, Steegers MA, van Egmond J, Gardeniers J, Staals LM, van Geffen GJ. Incisional Continuous Fascia Iliaca Block Provides More Effective Pain Relief and Fewer Side Effects than Opioids After Pelvic Osteotomy in Children. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2009;109(6):1799–1803.
244. Dalens B, Vanneuville G, Tanguy A. Comparison of the Fascia Iliaca Compartment Block with the 3-in-1 Block in Children. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1989;69(6):705–713.
245. van Geffen GJ, Pirotte T, Gielen MJ, Scheffer G, Bruhn J. Ultrasound-guided proximal and distal sciatic nerve blocks in children. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22(4):241–245.
246. Dalens B, Tanguy A, Vanneuville G. Sciatic-Nerve Blocks in Children - Comparison of the Posterior, Anterior, and Lateral Approaches in 180 Pediatric-Patients. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1990;70(2):131–137.
247. Ivani G, Codipietro L, Gagliardi F, Rosso F, Mossetti V, Vitale P. A long-term continuous infusion via a sciatic catheter in a 3-year-old boy. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 2003;13(8):718–721.
248. Chelly JE, Greger J, Casati A, Al-Samsam T, McGarvey W, Clanton T. Continuous lateral sciatic blocks for acute postoperative pain management after major ankle and foot surgery. *Foot Ankle Int*. 2002;23(8):749–752.
249. Singelyn FJ, Aye F, Gouverneur JM. Continuous popliteal sciatic nerve block: An original technique to provide postoperative analgesia after foot surgery. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 1997;84(2):383–386.
250. Ponde VC, Desai AP, Shah DM, Johari AN. Feasibility and efficacy of placement of continuous sciatic perineural catheters solely under ultrasound guidance in children: a descriptive study. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2011;21(4):406–410.
251. Vas L. Continuous sciatic block for leg and foot surgery in 160 children. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2005;15(11):971–978.
252. Dadure C, Bringuier S, Nicolas F, et al. Continuous epidural block versus continuous popliteal nerve block for postoperative pain relief after major podiatric surgery in children: a prospective, comparative randomized study. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(3):744–749.
253. Hamill JK, Rahiri JL, Liley A, Hill AG. Rectus sheath and transversus abdominis plane blocks in children: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2016;26(4):363–371.
254. Willschke H, Bosenberg A, Marhofer P, et al. Ultrasonography-guided rectus sheath block in paediatric anaesthesia - a new approach to an old technique. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2006;97(2):244–249.
255. Dolan J, Lucie P, Geary T, Smith M, Kenny GNC. The Rectus Sheath Block Accuracy of Local Anesthetic Placement by Trainee Anesthesiologists Using Loss of Resistance or Ultrasound Guidance. *Region Anesth Pain M*. 2009;34(3):247–250.
256. Naja ZM, Raf M, El Rajab M, et al. A comparison of nerve stimulator guided paravertebral block and ilio-inguinal nerve block for analgesia after inguinal herniorrhaphy in children. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61(11):1064–1068.
257. Jagannathan N, Sohn L, Sawardekar A, et al. Unilateral groin surgery in children: will the addition of an ultrasound-guided ilioinguinal nerve block enhance the duration of analgesia of a single-shot caudal block? *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(9):892–898.
258. Lipp AK, Woodcock J, Hensman B, Wilkinson K. Leg weakness is a complication of ilio-inguinal nerve block in children. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2004;92(2):273–274.
259. Weintraud M, Marhofer P, Bosenberg A, et al. Ilioinguinal/Iliohypogastric blocks in children: Where do we administer the local anesthetic without direct visualization? *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2008;106(1):89–93.
260. Willschke H, Kettner S. Pediatric regional anesthesia: abdominal wall blocks. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2012;22(1):88–92.
261. Hebbard P, Fujiwara Y, Shibata Y, Royse C. Ultrasound-guided transversus abdominis plane (TAP) block. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 2007;35(4):616–617.
262. Fredrickson MJ, Paine C, Hamill J. Improved analgesia with the ilioinguinal block compared to the transversus abdominis plane block after pediatric inguinal surgery: a prospective randomized trial. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2010;20(11):1022–1027.
263. Long JB, Birmingham PK, De Oliveira Jr GS, Schaldenbrand KM, Suresh S. Transversus abdominis plane block in children: a multicenter safety analysis of 1994 cases from the PRAN (Pediatric Regional Anesthesia Network) database. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(2):395–399.
264. Suresh S, De Oliveira Jr GS. Blood Bupivacaine Concentrations After Transversus Abdominis Plane Block in Neonates: A Prospective Observational Study. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(3):814–817.
265. Schuepfer G, Johr M. Generating a learning curve for penile block in neonates, infants and children: an empirical evaluation of technical skills in novice and experienced anaesthetists. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2004;14(7):574–578.
266. Sandeman DJ, Dilley AV. Ultrasound guided dorsal penile nerve block in children. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 2007;35(2):266–269.
267. O'Sullivan MJ, Mislovic B, Alexander E. Dorsal penile nerve block for male pediatric circumcision--randomized comparison of ultrasound-guided vs anatomical landmark technique. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21(12):1214–1218.
268. Faraoni D, Gilbeau A, Lingier P, Barvais L, Engelman E, Hennart D. Does ultrasound guidance improve the efficacy of dorsal penile nerve block in children? *Pediatr Anesth*. 2010;20(10):931–936.
269. Snellman LW, Stang HJ. Prospective Evaluation of Complications of Dorsal Penile Nerve Block for Neonatal Circumcision. *Pediatrics*. 1995;95(5):705–708.
270. Kovacs P, Gruber H, Piegger J, Bodner G. New, simple, ultrasound-guided infiltration of the pudendal nerve: ultrasonographic technique. *Dis Colon Rectum*. 2001;44(9):1381–1385.
271. Naja Z, Al-Tannir MA, Faysal W, Daoud N, Ziade F, El-Rajab M. A comparison of pudendal block vs dorsal penile nerve block for circumcision in children: a randomised controlled trial. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(9):802–807.
272. Matsota P, Livanios S, Marinopoulou E. Intercostal nerve block with bupivacaine for post-thoracotomy pain relief in children. *Eur J Pediatr Surg*. 2001;11(4):219–222.
273. Downs CS, Cooper MG. Continuous extrapleural intercostal nerve block for post thoracotomy analgesia in children. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1997;25(4):390–397.
274. Karmakar MM, Critchley L. Continuous extrapleural intercostal nerve block for post thoracotomy analgesia in children. *Anaesth Intens Care*. 1998;26(1):115–116.
275. Maurer K, Rentsch KM, Dullenkopf A, Pretre R, Schmid ER. Continuous extrapleural infusion of ropivacaine in children: is it safe? *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(1):112–113.
276. Lonnqvist PA. Continuous Paravertebral Block in Children - Initial Experience. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47(7):607–609.
277. Lonnqvist PH,U. Location of the paravertebral space in children and adolescents in relation to surface anatomy assessed by computed tomography. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1992;2:285–289.
278. Pusch F, Wildling E, Klimscha W, Weinstabl C. Sonographic measurement of needle insertion depth in paravertebral blocks in women. *Brit J Anaesth*. 2000;85(6):841–843.
279. Shah R, Sabanathan S, Richardson J, Mearns A, Bembridge J. Continuous paravertebral block for post thoracotomy analgesia in children. *J Cardiovasc Surg*. 1997;38(5):543–546.
280. Berta E, Spanhel J, Smakal O, Smolka V, Gabrhelik T, Lonnqvist PA. Single injection paravertebral block for renal surgery in children. *Pediatr Anesth*. 2008;18(7):593–597.
281. Naja ZM, Raf M, El Rajab M, Ziade FM, Al Tannir MA, Lonnqvist PA. Nerve stimulator-guided paravertebral blockade combined with sevoflurane sedation versus general anesthesia with systemic analgesia for postherniorrhaphy pain relief in children - A prospective randomized trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(3):600–605.
282. Tsui BCH, Fonseca A, Munshey F, McFadyen G, Caruso TJ. The erector spinae plane (ESP) block: A pooled review of 242 cases. *J Clin Anesth*. 2018;53:29–34.
283. Kaplan I, Jiao Y, AuBuchon JD, Moore RP. Continuous Erector Spinae Plane Catheter for Analgesia After Infant Thoracotomy: A Case Report. *A&A practice*. 2018;11(9):250–252.
284. Munshey F, Rodriguez S, Diaz E, Tsui B. Continuous erector spinae plane block for an open pyeloplasty in an infant. *J Clin Anesth*. 2018;47:47–49.
285. Aksu C, Gurkan Y. Opioid sparing effect of Erector Spinae Plane block for pediatric bilateral inguinal hernia surgeries. *J Clin Anesth*. 2018;50:62–63.
286. Elkoundi A, Bentalha A, Kettani SEE, Mosadik A, Koraichi AE. Erector spinae plane block for pediatric hip surgery. *Korean journal of anesthesiology*. 2018.
287. Munshey F, Caruso TJ, Wang EY, Tsui BCH. Programmed Intermittent Bolus Regimen for Erector Spinae Plane Blocks in Children: A Retrospective Review of a Single-Institution Experience. *Anesth Analg*. 2018.

288. Wong J, Navaratnam M, Boltz G, Maeda K, Ramamurthi RJ, Tsui BCH. Bilateral continuous erector spinae plane blocks for sternotomy in a pediatric cardiac patient. *J Clin Anesth*. 2018;47:82–83.
289. Munoz F, Cubillos J, Bonilla AJ, Chin KJ. Erector spinae plane block for postoperative analgesia in pediatric oncological thoracic surgery. *Canadian journal of anaesthesia = Journal canadien d'anesthesie*. 2017;64(8):880–882.
290. Hernandez MA, Palazzi L, Lapalma J, Forero M, Chin KJ. Erector Spinae Plane Block for Surgery of the Posterior Thoracic Wall in a Pediatric Patient. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2018;43(2):217–219.
291. Bosenberg A. Blocks of the face and neck. *Tech Reg Anesth Pain Manage*. 1999;3:196–203.
292. Bosenberg AT, Kimble FW. Infraorbital nerve block in neonates for cleft lip repair: anatomical study and clinical application. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74(5):506–508.
293. Prabhu KP, Wig J, Grewal S. Bilateral infraorbital nerve block is superior to peri-incisional infiltration for analgesia after repair of cleft lip. *Scand J Plast Reconstr Surg Hand Surg*. 1999;33(1):83–87.
294. Simion C, Corcoran J, Iyer A, Suresh S. Postoperative pain control for primary cleft lip repair in infants: is there an advantage in performing peripheral nerve blocks? *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(11):1060–1065.
295. Mesnil M, Dadure C, Captier G, et al. A new approach for perioperative analgesia of cleft palate repair in infants: the bilateral suprazygomatic maxillary nerve block. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20(4):343–349.
296. Sola C, Raux O, Savath L, Macq C, Capdevila X, Dadure C. Ultrasound guidance characteristics and efficiency of suprazygomatic maxillary nerve blocks in infants: a descriptive prospective study. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(9):841–846.
297. Salloum ML, Eberlin KR, Sethna N, Hamdan US. Combined use of infraorbital and external nasal nerve blocks for effective perioperative pain control during and after cleft lip repair. *Cleft Palate Craniofac J*. 2009;46(6):629–635.
298. Giles WC, Iverson KC, King JD, Hill FC, Woody EA, Bouknight AL. Incision and drainage followed by mattress suture repair of auricular hematoma. *Laryngoscope*. 2007;117(12):2097–2099.
299. Brown DJ, Jaffe JE, Henson JK. Advanced laceration management. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2007;25(1):83–99.
300. Suresh S, Barcelona SL, Young NM, Seligman I, Heffner CL, Cote CJ. Postoperative pain relief in children undergoing tympanomastoid surgery: is a regional block better than opioids?. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(4):859–862. table of contents.
301. Cregg N, Conway F, Casey W. Analgesia after otoplasty: regional nerve blockade vs local anaesthetic infiltration of the ear. *Can J Anaesth*. 1996;43(2):141–147.
302. Greher M, Moriggl B, Curatolo M, Kirchmair L, Eichenberger U. Sonographic visualization and ultrasound-guided blockade of the greater occipital nerve: a comparison of two selective techniques confirmed by anatomical dissection. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;104(5):637–642.
303. Dieudonne N, Gomola A, Bonnichon P, Ozier YM. Prevention of postoperative pain after thyroid surgery: a double-blind randomized study of bilateral superficial cervical plexus blocks. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;92(6):1538–1542.
304. Tobias JD. Cervical plexus block in adolescents. *J Clin Anesth*. 1999;11(7):606–608.
305. Suresh S, Templeton L. Superficial cervical plexus block for vocal cord surgery in an awake pediatric patient. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(6):1656–1657. table of contents.
306. Monso A, Riudeubas J, Palanques F, Braso JM. A new application for superior laryngeal nerve block: treatment or prevention of laryngospasm and stridor. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1999;24(2):186–187.
307. Parris WC, Reddy BC, White HW, McGrath DM. Stellate ganglion blocks in pediatric patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72(4):552–556.
308. Mesa A, Kaplan RF. Dysrhythmias controlled with stellate ganglion block in a child with diabetes and a variant of long QT syndrome. *Reg Anesth*. 1993;18(1):60–62.
309. Tong HC, Nelson VS. Recurrent and migratory reflex sympathetic dystrophy in children. *Pediatr Rehabil*. 2000;4(2):87–89.
310. Agarwal V, Joseph B. Recurrent migratory sympathetically maintained pain syndrome in a child: a case report. *J Pediatr Orthop B*. 2006;15(1):73–74.
311. Blasier RD, White R. Intravenous regional anesthesia for management of children's extremity fractures in the emergency department. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 1996;12(6):404–406.
312. Davidson AJ, Eyres RL, Cole WG. A comparison of prilocaine and lidocaine for intravenous regional anaesthesia for forearm fracture reduction in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12(2):146–150.
313. Constantine E, Steele DW, Eberson C, Boutis K, Amanullah S, Linakis JG. The use of local anesthetic techniques for closed forearm fracture reduction in children: a survey of academic pediatric emergency departments. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2007;23(4):209–211.
314. Rackelboom T, Le Strat S, Silvera S, et al. Improving continuous wound infusion effectiveness for postoperative analgesia after cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2010;116(4):893–900.
315. Forastiere E, Sofra M, Giannarelli D, Fabrizi L, Simone G. Effectiveness of continuous wound infusion of 0.5% ropivacaine by On-Q pain relief system for postoperative pain management after open nephrectomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2008;101(6):841–847.
316. Ouaki J, Dadure C, Bringuier S, et al. Continuous infusion of ropivacaine: an optimal postoperative analgesia regimen for iliac crest bone graft in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(9):887–891.
317. Dashow JE, Lewis CW, Hopper RA, Gruss JS, Egbert MA. Bupivacaine administration and postoperative pain following anterior iliac crest bone graft for alveolar cleft repair. *Cleft Palate Craniofac J*. 2009;46(2):173–178.

77

Pediatric Anesthesia

LASZLO VUTSKITS and ANDREW DAVIDSON

KEY POINTS

- At birth the circulation undergoes a fundamental change as blood oxygenation occurs through the lungs rather than the placenta. This transition places some newborns at risk of sudden increases in pulmonary artery pressure with resultant shunting of blood past the lungs through a patent foramen ovale or the ductus arteriosus. This may be triggered by hypoxia, hypercapnia, acidosis, and infection.
- The reduced cellular mass of the neonatal heart devoted to contractility results in less compliant ventricles. This leads to a sensitivity to excessive intravascular volume, poor tolerance to increases in afterload (i.e., the development of biventricular failure), and compared to older children, a relatively rate-dependent cardiac output. In addition, the reduced cardiac calcium stores produce increased susceptibility to myocardial depression by potent anesthetics and also make neonates dependent on exogenous (i.e., blood-ionized) calcium values and vulnerable to the negative inotropic effects of ionized hypocalcemia.
- The neonatal airway differs from the adult airway in four ways: the larynx is located higher in the neck, the glottis is shaped differently and angled over the laryngeal inlet, the vocal cords are angled with the narrowest portion in the subglottic region at the level of the cricoid cartilage.
- Neonates have relatively larger volumes of distribution and lower clearances for most drugs. Thus loading doses generally have to be relatively larger whereas continuous infusion rates or dose intervals tend to be longer. Allometric scaling (e.g., body mass) can predict the dose requirement for most drugs in children better than simple mg/kg calculations.
- The minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) of volatile anesthetic agents is higher in children compared to adults. However, for most agents the MAC in neonates is lower than for older children. Infants achieve more rapid equilibration of inspired-to-tissue concentrations of volatile agents compared to older agents, and hence relative overdose is a risk if higher concentrations are used for prolonged periods of time.
- Neonates and infants are at greater risk of anesthesia-related cardiac arrest compared to older children. The etiology is most commonly related to cardiac or respiratory effects.
- Former preterm infants are at risk for postoperative apnea. The use of regional anesthesia in these children may reduce the incidence of immediate postanesthesia apnea, but ongoing monitoring of the preterm infant is critically important.
- Neonates and infants require adequate analgesia for painful procedures. The optimal dose of general anesthetics to achieve adequate analgesia is unclear in this population. Adult-derived electroencephalograph (EEG) algorithms such as bispectral index (BIS) cannot be used in this age group to guide anesthesia.
- Temperature regulation is especially important for neonates and infants. Because of the large body surface-to-weight ratio, they are vulnerable to intraoperative hypothermia. Efforts to maintain a warm surgical unit through the use of warming devices such as hot air mattresses, application of warm surgical skin preparation solutions, and transport of the neonate or infant in an appropriate transport device, as well as keeping the infant covered during transport, all help prevent hypothermia.
- Compared to adults, children are more susceptible to iatrogenic hyponatremia and subsequent significant morbidity. To minimize this risk, perioperative fluid therapy should consist of an isotonic solution. The classic 4-2-1 rule of Holliday and Segar overestimates the replacement requirement.
- Preschool children are at risk of postoperative delirium and/or agitation. Agitation may be due to many factors including pain, fear, and hunger. Delirium may also cause agitation. Children manifest delirium by becoming inconsolable and not interacting with their parents or caregivers. Many strategies are known to reduce the risk of delirium. A number of approaches have been used to minimize postoperative delirium. Children receiving propofol anesthesia are at lower risk for delirium than those receiving volatile anesthetics.
- Most general anesthetics cause morphologic changes to the developing brain, based on animal studies. Accelerated neuronal apoptosis is the most widely described change. Some human studies have found an association between exposure to anesthesia and surgery in early childhood and subsequent neurodevelopmental issues. This may be explained by a number of confounding factors. At the same time, increasing evidence suggests that an hour of anesthesia in infancy does not have a lasting impact on cognition and a range of other psychometric outcomes.
- Pediatric anesthesia requires appropriate pediatric equipment in a range of sizes. Neonates require ventilators that are designed to meet their needs.
- Preoperative anxiety is common in children. Distraction techniques, premedication with midazolam or α_2 agonists, and parental presence at induction have all been shown to reduce anxiety.

Physiologic Considerations

During development there are substantial changes in a child's physiology and anatomy. Understanding these is key to providing safe pediatric anesthesia care. The most substantial changes occur at birth and in early infancy; however, many systems continue to develop throughout childhood.

INTRAUTERINE DEVELOPMENT

Intrauterine development extends from conception to birth. This prenatal period is characterized by increased vulnerability to a large variety of genetic and external factors that can induce permanent organ dysfunction of variable severity (Table 77.1). Identification of these prenatal risk factors is of utmost importance since they can have a major impact on perioperative management. Prenatal development is usually divided into three stages: (1) the germinal, (2) the embryonic, and (3) the fetal stage. The germinal stage starts with conception and ends approximately 2 weeks later with the implantation of the embryo into the uterine wall. One key feature of this period is the formation of the placenta. Factors, either genetic or environmental, that interfere with the implantation process lead to the termination of pregnancy. The embryonic stage comprises the period between the third and eighth weeks of pregnancy and is characterized by intense cell proliferation, migration, and differentiation leading to the establishment of all major organs. Increased vulnerability to a wide variety of substrates, commonly called teratogens, during this period can induce major developmental defects, many of them incompatible with life. The fetal stage lasts from the ninth week of pregnancy to birth and is characterized by the growth and functional differentiation of organs formed during the embryonic period. Numerous exogenous factors, such as environmental toxins, ionizing radiation, and maternal infections as well as a multitude of drugs can interfere with the physiological patterns of organ development throughout the fetal period which, in turn, will result in organ dysfunction of variable severity. Careful evaluation of prenatal history is therefore an important part of preoperative assessment and can guide further investigations prior to perioperative management.

While pregnancy is considered to reach full term between the completion of the 37th and the 42nd weeks of gestation, fetuses reach an age of viability that may be considered, under tight medical support, as compatible with extrauterine life between the 22nd and 26th weeks after conception. Prematurity is stratified into mild preterm (32-37 weeks), very preterm (28-31 weeks) and extremely preterm (<28 weeks) periods with increasing neonatal morbidity and mortality based on degree of prematurity (Fig. 77.1).[1]

Normal birth weight at term is 2500 g to 4200 g. Infants weighing less than these norms can be classified as low birth weight (<2500 g), very low birth weight (<1500 g), and extremely low birth weight (<1000 g). Plotting weight against gestational age allows further classification into three additional categories: small for gestational age, appropriate for gestational age, or large for gestational age (see Fig. 77.1). Infants who are small or large for gestational age often have developmental problems or difficulties associated with maternal disease which can directly affect perioperative care (see Table 77.1).

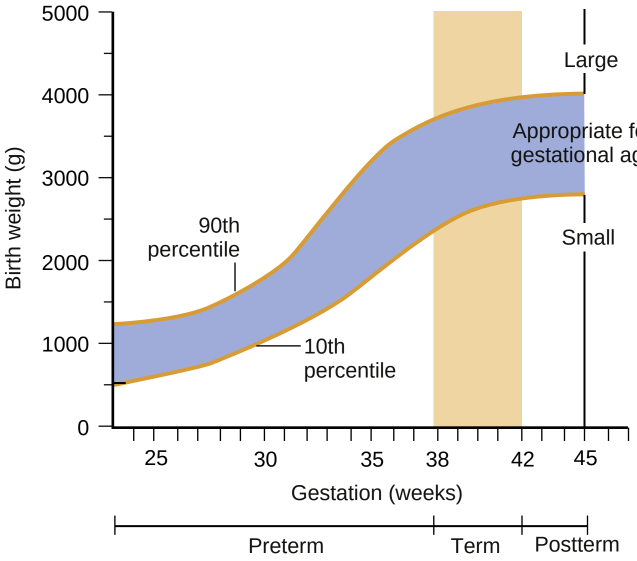


Fig. 77.1 Plotting birth weight against gestational age for neonates determines whether infants are small, appropriate, or large for gestational age. Babies who are either small or large for gestational age are particularly likely to have a variety of problems such as metabolic, developmental, infectious, or structural abnormalities, as well as drug addiction and withdrawal. (Modified from Battaglia FC. Intrauterine growth retardation. *Am J Obstet Gynecol.* 1970;106:1103–1114. Used with permission.)

NEONATAL AND INFANT PHYSIOLOGY

The physiology of fetal life is fundamentally different from that of the neonate. The transition from intra- to extrauterine life is rapid and involves a complex and well-orchestrated series of events aimed to ensure neonatal viability.[2] A clinically useful measure to assess the condition of the newborn infant immediately after birth is the Apgar score (Table 77.2) This score is reported at 1 minutes and 5 minutes after birth for all infants and can be extended thereafter to follow fetal to neonatal transition. Apgar scores between 7 and 10 are considered reassuring, a score of 4 to 6 as moderately abnormal, while scores 3 and below are usually indicative of poor outcome.[3] It is, nevertheless, important to note that the Apgar score has its limitations and cannot be used alone to diagnose neonatal asphyxia.[3]

Cardiovascular System

The cardiovascular system undergoes dramatic physiologic and maturational changes during the first year of life. In utero, most of the cardiac output is directed from the placenta across the foramen ovale into the ascending aorta (oxygenated blood), whereas superior vena cava blood (deoxygenated) is directed to both the pulmonary artery and the ductus arteriosus (see also Chapter 78).[2] This pattern of circulation results in minimal

TABLE 77.1 Common Neonatal Problems Associated With Weight and Gestational Age

Gestation	Relative Weight	Neonatal Problems at Increased Incidence
Preterm (<37 weeks)	SGA	Respiratory distress syndrome Apnea Perinatal depression Hypoglycemia Polycythemia Hypocalcemia Hypomagnesemia Hyperbilirubinemia Viral infection Thrombocytopenia Congenital anomalies Maternal drug addiction Fetal alcohol syndrome
	AGA	Respiratory distress syndrome Apnea Hypoglycemia Hypocalcemia Hypomagnesemia Hyperbilirubinemia
	LGA	Respiratory distress syndrome Hypoglycemia; infant of diabetic mother Apnea Hypoglycemia Hypocalcemia Hyperbilirubinemia
Normal (37-42 weeks)	SGA	Congenital anomalies Viral infection Thrombocytopenia Fetal alcohol syndrome Perinatal depression Hypoglycemia
	AGA	—
	LGA	Birth trauma Hyperbilirubinemia Hypoglycemia; infant of diabetic mother
Postmature (>42 weeks)	SGA	Meconium aspiration syndrome Congenital anomalies Viral infection Thrombocytopenia Maternal drug addiction Perinatal depression Aspiration pneumonia Hypoglycemia
	AGA	—
	LGA	Birth trauma Hyperbilirubinemia Hypoglycemia; infant of diabetic mother

AGA, Appropriate for gestational age; *LGA,* large for gestational age; *SGA,* small for gestational age.
From Coté CJ, Lerman J, Anderson BJ, eds. *A Practice of Anesthesia for Infants and Children*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2013.

intrauterine pulmonary blood flow. At birth, a number of events change hemodynamic interactions such that the fetal circulation adapts to the postuterine environment. Specifically, the placenta is removed from the circulation; portal blood pressure falls, which causes the ductus venosus to close; and blood becomes oxygenated through the lungs. Exposure of the ductus arteriosus to oxygenated blood induces ductal closure. As a result of the combined effects of lung expansion, exposure of blood to oxygen, and loss of low resistance through placental blood flow, pulmonary vascular resistance decreases while peripheral vascular resistance rapidly rises. The decrease in pulmonary vascular resistance occurs on the first day of life and continues to decrease gradually during the next several years as the architecture of the pulmonary vessels changes. An increase in pressure on the left side of the heart (caused by the increase in peripheral vascular resistance) induces mechanical closure of the foramen ovale. As a result, all three connections between the right and left sides of the circulation close. Although closure of the ductus arteriosus probably occurs primarily from an increase in arterial oxygen concentration, successful completion requires arterial muscular tissue; that such tissue is less prevalent in preterm infants may

TABLE 77.2 The Apgar Score

Score	0 Points	1 Point	2 Points
Appearance (skin color)	Cyanotic/pale all over	Peripheral cyanosis only	Pink
Pulse (heart rate)	0	<100	100-140
Grimace (reflex irritability)	No response to stimulation	Grimace (facial movement)/weak cry when stimulated	Cry when stimulated
Activity (tone)	Floppy	Some flexion	Well flexed and resisting extension
Respiration	Apneic	Slow, regular breathing	Strong cry

partly account for the frequent incidence of patent ductus arteriosus in preterm infants. True mechanical closure of the ductus by fibrosis does not occur until 2 to 3 weeks of age.

During this critical period, the infant can readily revert from the adult type of circulation to a fetal type of circulation; this state is called *transitional circulation*. Many factors (e.g., hypoxia, hypercapnia, anesthesia-induced changes in peripheral or pulmonary vascular tone) can affect this precarious balance and result in a sudden return to the fetal circulation. When such a *flip-flop* occurs, pulmonary artery pressure increases to systemic levels, blood is shunted past the lungs via the patent foramen ovale, and the ductus arteriosus may reopen and allow blood to shunt at the ductal level. A rapid downhill spiral may occur and lead to severe hypoxemia. In this situation, the hypoxemia may be prolonged, despite adequate pulmonary ventilation with 100% oxygen. In most cases, simple hyperventilation with resultant reduction in arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide ($PaCO_2$) will cause the pulmonary artery pressure to return to normal.

Risk factors increasing the likelihood of prolonged transitional circulation include prematurity, infection, acidosis, pulmonary disease resulting in hypercapnia or hypoxemia (aspiration of meconium), hypothermia, and congenital heart disease. Care must be directed to keeping the infant warm, maintaining normal arterial oxygen and carbon dioxide tensions, and minimizing the effects of anesthetic-induced myocardial depression for those newborns requiring anesthesia.

The myocardial structure of the heart, particularly the volume of cellular mass devoted to contractility, is significantly less developed in neonates than in adults. This difference, as well as developmental changes in contractile proteins, produce a leftward displacement of the cardiac function curve and less compliant ventricles. As a result of these differences, cardiac output is strongly dependent on heart rate; bradycardia is poorly tolerated because the infant cannot easily compensate for the decreased heart rate by increasing stroke volume to maintain normal cardiac output.

The most frequently encountered arrhythmia in pediatric populations is hypoxia-induced bradycardia that can lead to asystole, if not appropriately handled. Ventricular fibrillation is extremely rare in infants and children.

Generally, myocardial function is usually adequate in most infants and children including those with congenital heart disease. Rare exceptions from this rule are individuals with congenital neuromuscular and metabolic diseases where the myocardium can be seriously compromised.[4] In neonates and infants, cardiac calcium stores are reduced because of the immaturity of the sarcoplasmic reticulum; consequently, these populations have a greater dependence on exogenous (blood-ionized) calcium and probably increased susceptibility to myocardial depression by volatile anesthetics that have calcium channel–blocking activity.

Respiratory System

The pulmonary system is not capable of sustaining life until both the lungs and the vascular system have sufficiently matured to allow the exchange of oxygen from air to the bloodstream across the pulmonary alveolar-vascular bed. The lung bud septates from the foregut during the first trimester and the gas exchanging portions of the airway are formed during the second trimester. Alveolar ductal development starts at gestation week 24 while the septation of the air sacs begins around gestational week 36.[5] Alveoli then increase in number and size until a child is approximately 8 years old. Further growth is manifested as an increase in size of the alveoli and airways. At term, complete development of surface-active proteins helps maintain patency of the airways. If a child is prematurely born and these proteins are insufficient, then respiratory failure (e.g., respiratory distress syndrome) may occur.

Respiration is less efficient in infants than adults. The airway of infants is highly compliant and poorly supported by the surrounding structures. The chest wall is also highly compliant; therefore the ribs provide little support for the lungs; that is, negative intrathoracic pressure is poorly maintained. The small diameter of the airways increases resistance to airflow. Thus functional airway closure accompanies each breath. Dead space ventilation is proportionally similar to that in adults; however, oxygen consumption is two to three times higher. In preterm infants, the work of breathing is approximately three times that of adults. This increased work of breathing can increase significantly by cold stress (i.e., increased metabolic demand for oxygen) or any degree of airway obstruction. Another important factor is the composition of the diaphragmatic and intercostal muscles. These muscles do not achieve the adult configuration of type I muscle fibers until the child is approximately 2 years old (Fig. 77.2).[6] Because type I muscle fibers provide the ability to perform repeated exercise, any factor that increases the work of breathing contributes to early fatigue of the respiratory muscles of infants; this partially explains why the infant's respiratory rate and hemoglobin desaturation is so rapid, and their propensity to develop fatigue and apnea with airway obstruction.

Differences in airway anatomy explain the more likely potential for technical airway difficulties in infants than in teenagers or adults. Typically, the airway of infants differs from adults in five ways[7,8]: (1) The relatively large size of the infant's tongue, in relation to the oropharynx, suggests that the infant is more likely to sustain airway obstruction and technical difficulties during induction of anesthesia and laryngoscopy. Recently, however, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) studies have called this into question by showing that soft tissues surrounding the upper airway grow proportionally to the skeletal structures during childhood.[9] (2) Other anatomic differences may account for some of the airway management challenges in children. The larynx is located higher (more cephalic) in the neck, thus making straight blades more useful than curved blades. (3) The epiglottis is shaped differently, being short, stubby, omega shaped, and angled over the laryngeal inlet. Control with the laryngoscope blade is therefore more difficult. (4) The vocal cords are angled; consequently, a *blindly* passed tracheal tube may easily lodge in the anterior commissure rather than slide into the trachea. (5) Finally, the infant larynx is funnel shaped, the narrowest portion occurring at the cricoid cartilage (Fig. 77.3).[8] While classic teaching is that the adult larynx is cylindrical and the infant larynx is funnel shaped, it is now recognized that the narrowest portion of the airway in approximately 70% of adults is also in the same subglottic region at the level of the cricoid cartilage as it is in children. Nonetheless, the challenges of tracheal tube placement in children are different than they are in adults. For adult patients, the airway size is much larger, so the commonly used tracheal tubes are usually easy to advance past the glottic opening.[10] In infants or young children, a tracheal tube that easily passes the vocal cords may be tight in the subglottic region because of the relatively greater proportional narrowing at the level of the cricoid cartilage.

Although neonates and infants are considered as obligate nasal breathers, they can also utilize the oral airway to maintain ventilation both spontaneously and in response to complete nasal obstruction.[11] Even in preterm infants, the prevalence of spontaneous oral breathing has been reported to be as high as 50% during sleep, and oral breathing could be consistently initiated in this population upon nasal obstruction.[12,13]

The Kidneys

Renal function is diminished in neonates with even less function in preterm infants as a result of lower renal perfusion pressures and immature glomerular and tubular function (Table 77.3) (Fig. 77.4).[14,15] In full-term infants, maturation of glomerular filtration and tubular function is nearly complete by approximately 20 weeks after birth, although delayed in preterm infants. Complete maturation of renal function occurs at approximately 2 years of age. As a result of the delayed development, newborns have reduced ability to excrete free water and solute loads; the half-life of medications excreted by means of glomerular filtration will be prolonged (e.g., antibiotics). Dosing intervals should be longer in neonates.

The Liver

At term, the functional maturity of the liver is incomplete.[16,17] Most enzyme systems for drug metabolism are developed, but not yet induced (stimulated) by the material that they metabolize. As the infant grows, the ability to

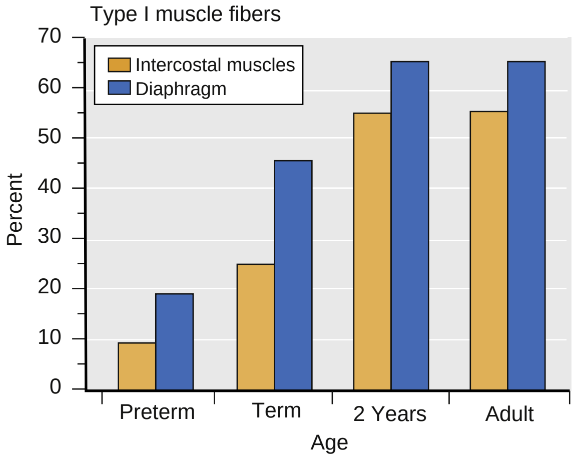


Fig. 77.2 The composition of the diaphragm and intercostal muscles significantly changes during the first 2 years of life. The number of type I muscle fibers is inversely related to age and may account, in part, for the ease of inducing respiratory fatigue as the work of breathing increases. (Data from Keens TG, Bryan AC, Levison H, et al. Developmental pattern of muscle fiber types in human ventilatory muscles. *J Appl Physiol.* 1978;44:909–913.)

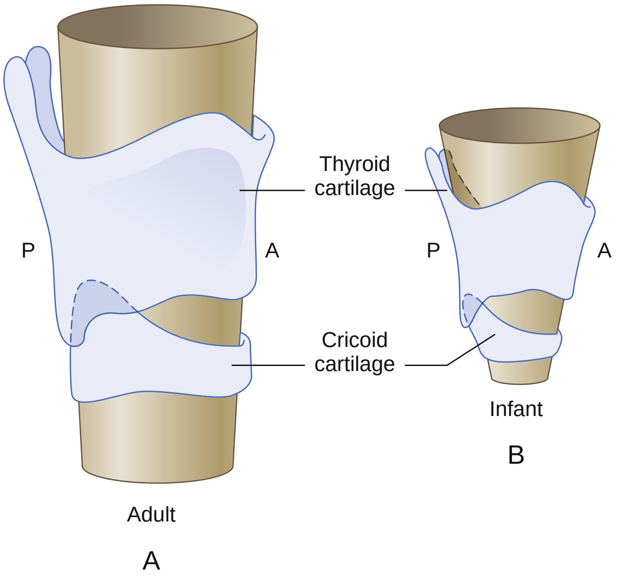


Fig. 77.3 The narrowest part of the adult larynx and the pediatric larynx is at the level of the cricoid cartilage. Traditionally, the adult larynx was thought to be cylindrically shaped, but autopsy data suggest that the narrowing in adults (A) is not as pronounced as it is in infants (B). The narrowest part of the infant larynx occurs at the level of the cricoid cartilage; the normal adult configuration of the larynx is not achieved until the teenage years. This anatomic difference is one of the reasons uncuffed tracheal tubes have been traditionally preferred for children younger than 6 years of age. *A,* Anterior; *P,* posterior. (From Coté CJ, Lerman J, Anderson BJ, eds. *A Practice of Anesthesia for Infants and Children.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2013.)

metabolize medications rapidly increases for two reasons: (1) hepatic blood flow increases and hence more drug is delivered to the liver, and (2) the enzyme systems develop and are induced. The cytochrome P450 system is responsible for phase I drug metabolism of lipophilic compounds. This system reaches approximately 50% of adult levels at birth. The capacity for drug metabolism (e.g., caffeine) is reduced. However, this is not true for all lipophilic medications. The ability of neonates to metabolize some drugs is dependent on specific individual drug cytochromes. CYP3A (cytochrome P450, family 3, subfamily A) is generally present at adult values at birth, whereas other cytochromes are absent or reduced. Phase II reactions involve conjugation that makes the drug more water-soluble to facilitate renal excretion. These reactions are often impaired in neonates and result in jaundice (decreased bilirubin breakdown) and long drug (and their active metabolites) half-lives (e.g., the half-life of morphine and benzodiazepines is several days). Some of these reactions do not achieve adult activity until after 1 year of age.

A preterm infant's liver has minimal glycogen stores and is unable to manage large protein loads. These differences account for the neonate's tendency toward hypoglycemia and acidemia and for the failure to gain weight when the diet contains too much protein. Additionally, plasma levels of albumin and other proteins necessary for the binding of drugs are lower in full-term newborns (and are even lower in preterm infants) than in older infants (Fig. 77.5). This condition has clinical implications regarding neonatal coagulopathy (e.g., need for vitamin K at birth), as well as for drug binding and its pharmacodynamic effects; the lower the albumin value, the less protein binding of some drugs with resultant greater levels of unbound drug (i.e., unbound drug is the portion available to cross biologic membranes). In addition, the binding of some drugs to albumin may be altered in the presence of hyperbilirubinemia in the neonatal period; this effect is more important for drugs with high protein binding because a greater fraction of unbound drug will occur.

Gastrointestinal System

At birth, gastric pH is alkalotic; by the second day of life, pH is in the normal physiologic range for older children. The ability to coordinate swallowing with respiration does not

TABLE 77.3 Development of Glomerular Filtration Rate in the Term Newborn

Age	Glomerular Filtration Rate (mL/min/1.73 m^2 mean)	Range
1 day	24	3-38
2-8 days	38	17-60
10-22 days	50	32-68
37-95 days	58	30-86
1-2 years	115	95-135

From Heilbron DC, Holliday MA, al-Dahwi A, et al. Expressing glomerular filtration rate in children. *Pediatr Nephrol.* 1991;5(1):5–11.

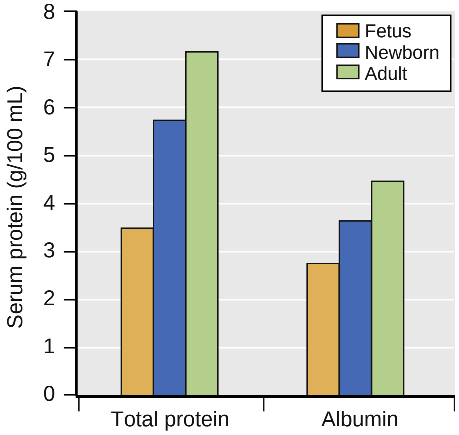


Fig. 77.5 Total serum protein and albumin values change with maturation. Total protein and albumin are less in preterm infants than in term infants and less in term infants than in adults. The result may be pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic alterations for drugs with a high degree of protein binding because less drug is protein bound and more is available for clinical effect. (From Ehrnebo M, Agurell S, Jalling B, et al. Age differences in drug binding by plasma proteins: studies on human foetuses, neonates and adults. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol.* 1971;3:189–193; Coté CJ, Lerman J, Anderson BJ, eds. *A Practice of Anesthesia for Infants and Children.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2013.)

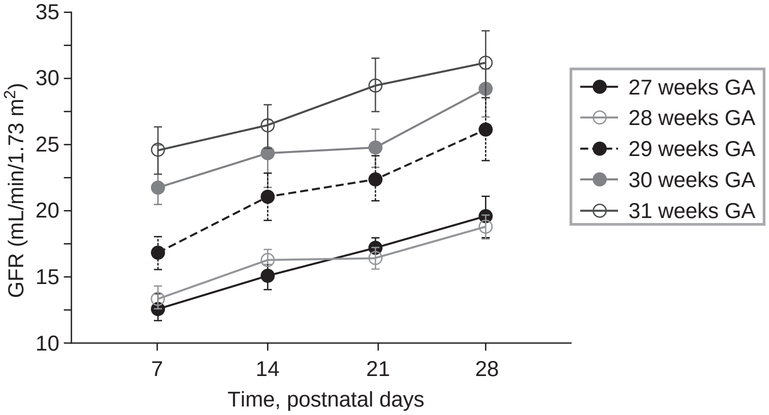


Fig. 77.4 Glomerular filtration rate *(GFR)* in the first month of life in preterm infants. The ability of the kidney to regulate large amounts of solutes and water is also limited during the first several months of life. These developmental changes have significant implications for drug excretion and fluid therapy, particularly during the first 4 weeks of life. Maturation of renal function may be delayed in sick and preterm neonates. Data are means ± SEM. (From Vieux R, Hascoet JM, Merdariu D, et al. Glomerular filtration rate reference values in very preterm infants. *Pediatrics.* 2010;125(5):e1186–e1192.)

fully mature until infants are 4 to 5 months of age, resulting in a high incidence of gastroesophageal reflux, particularly in preterm newborns. If a developmental problem exists within the gastrointestinal system, then symptoms will generally occur within 24 to 36 hours of life. Upper intestinal abnormalities are exhibited as vomiting and regurgitation, whereas lower intestinal abnormalities produce abdominal distention and a failure to pass meconium.

Hematology and Coagulation System

The fetus uses two compensatory mechanisms to assure adequate oxygen delivery in the relatively hypoxemic in utero environment. One of them is the increased red blood cell production resulting from increased fetal renal erythropoietin secretion in response to hypoxemia. The other compensatory mechanism is the production of fetal hemoglobin. Fetal hemoglobin has a high affinity for oxygen, causing a leftward shift in the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve, increasing oxygen uptake at the lower oxygenated placental vascular bed. Hemoglobin levels are high at birth (160-240 g/L) but rapidly decrease during the first 3 months of life because of decreased renal erythropoietin production in the normoxic ex utero environment. Fetal hemoglobin will be progressively replaced by adult hemoglobin during the first 6 months of postnatal life. The extent of this physiologic anemia is more important in premature infants and may contribute to the need for perioperative blood transfusion.

The hemostatic system of the neonate and infant has many unique features compared to adults.[18-20] At birth, levels of vitamin K-dependent coagulation factors are low. They reach adult levels by 6 months of age. Fibrinogen levels are comparable between newborns and adults. However, fibrinogen polymerization does not reach its full capacity during the first few postnatal months, thereby leading to prolonged thrombin time. Platelet number at birth is also comparable to adults, but platelet function is impaired during early life. Despite these apparent deficits, the postnatal period represents a hypercoagulable state, since inhibitors of coagulation are also decreased by 30% to 50% in the newborn. Antithrombin III and protein S levels reach maturity by 3 months of age whereas protein C and plasminogen levels reach adult levels after 6 months of life. The overall results of this hypercoagulable state are higher risks of thrombotic complications in neonates and infants.[21] Children between 1 and 16 years of age have a 25% lower ability to form thrombin compared to adults, and the incidence of venous thrombosis in this population is estimated to be very low (0.05%-0.08%).[19,22] At adolescence, the physiology of the coagulation system matures. In the adolescent population, additional factors such as smoking, obesity, pregnancy, and use of oral contraceptives become relevant. As a result of some of these factors, recent guidelines recommend *considering* thromboprophylaxis in postpubertal adolescents.[23]

In utero, the immune system of the fetus remains tolerant to maternal alloantigens. After birth, exposure to myriads of environmental antigens, including those derived from intestinal bacteria, leads to a rapid development of the immune system.[24] However, full maturation of both the innate and adaptive immune systems is achieved after several years of life. Therefore young children are at increased risk from many pathogenic viruses, bacteria, fungi, and parasites when compared to adults.

Central Nervous System

In humans, the neural tube is formed between the third and fourth week of pregnancy and is followed by an active phase of cell proliferation and migration during the second trimester. With particular relevance to neonatal and pediatric perioperative care, the most intense phase of brain development takes place between the beginning of the third trimester of pregnancy and the first few years of postnatal life. During this period, also called the brain growth spurt, the nervous system undergoes important differentiation, including the formation of myriads of synaptic contacts between neurons. Neural activity plays a preponderant role in these events especially during critical periods of development when the nervous system is particularly sensitive to and relies on external stimuli to drive differentiation of neuronal networks. Pharmacologic interference with physiologic activity patterns during this period may lead to impaired brain development.

Both premature and term newborns show strong pain behavior that is more diffuse and untuned when compared to older children and adults. The first functional and reflex responses to tactile and noxious stimuli are aimed to protect the individual from tissue damage and can trigger a range of physiologic responses throughout the whole organism. The onset of pain awareness or “feelings” in humans remains undefined and largely debated. Nevertheless, there is evidence that early painful experiences, even if nonconscious, might alter subsequent central nervous system (CNS) function and that adequate pain relief can improve outcome.[25-27]

Thermoregulation

Infants are especially vulnerable to hypothermia because of the large ratio of body surface area to weight, the thinness of the skin, and a limited ability to cope with cold stress.[28] Cold stress causes increased oxygen consumption and a metabolic acidosis, particularly in preterm infants because of even thinner skin and limited fat stores. The infant compensates by shivering and nonshivering (cellular) thermogenesis (metabolism of brown fat); however, the minimal ability to shiver during the first 3 months of life makes cellular thermogenesis the principal method of heat production. As a result of these issues, managing heat loss is vital for newborns undergoing anesthesia and surgery. Placing the baby on a warming mattress and warming the surgical unit (80°F or warmer) will reduce heat lost by conduction. Keeping the infant in an incubator and covered with blankets minimizes heat lost through convection. The head should also be covered, since heat loss from the scalp is significant. Heat lost from radiation is decreased with the use of a double-shelled isolette during transport. Heat lost through evaporation is lessened by humidification of inspired gases, the use of plastic wrap to decrease water loss through the skin, and warming of skin disinfectant solutions. Hot air blankets are the most effective means of warming children; at the same time, especially in neonates, overheating must be avoided. Anesthetics also impact thermoregulation, particularly nonshivering thermogenesis in neonates.

Pharmacology

DEVELOPMENTAL PHARMACOLOGY

For nearly all drugs used in anesthesia, the dose required in children and adults differs. These differences are due to factors such as growth, maturation, and differing profiles of concurrent morbidity.[29] A thorough understanding of developmental pharmacology may reduce drug error in children.[30] Size alone cannot predict the differences between adults and children.[31] In adults, many drugs are given on a per kilogram basis. This assumes clearance and volume of distribution remain fixed relative to weight. This assumption is not valid for children. Pharmacokinetics in children varies with body composition, renal and hepatic function, and with altered protein binding. Renal and hepatic function in turn changes with age as relative blood flow and organ maturity change with age. The pharmacodynamics of anesthesia drugs may also differ substantially in children. The changes in pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics are most pronounced in neonates. It is important to note that for many drugs, knowledge is limited regarding drug pharmacology in children in general and infants and neonates in particular. The evidence upon which to guide practice is limited; as a result, many anesthesia drugs are used "off label" in small children.[32]

Body Composition

The body compartments (e.g., fat, muscle, water) change with age (Fig. 77.6).[33] Total body water content is significantly higher in preterm infants than in term infants and in term infants than in 2-year-olds. Neonates and infants have a substantially greater extracellular fluid volume compared to intracellular fluid volume. Fat and muscle content increases with age. These alterations in body composition have several clinical implications for neonates. First, a drug that is water soluble has a large volume of distribution and usually requires a large initial dose (mg/kg) to achieve the desired blood level (e.g., most antibiotics, succinylcholine). Second, because the neonate has less fat and muscle, a drug that depends on the redistribution into fat or muscle for the termination of its action will have a long clinical effect (e.g., fentanyl, propofol, and thiopental).

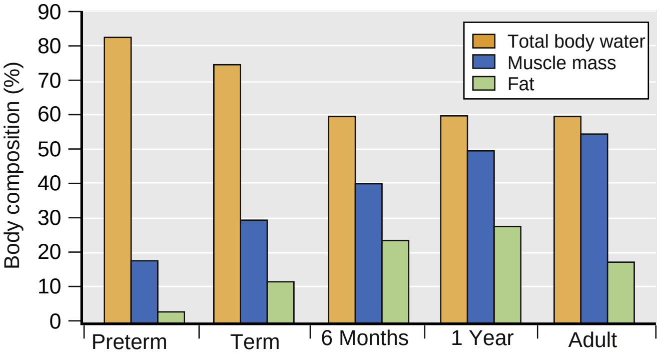


Fig. 77.6 Body composition rapidly changes in preterm and term infants during the first 12 months of life. Their high water content provides a large volume of distribution for water-soluble medications, whereas their low fat and muscle content provides a small reservoir for drugs that depend on redistribution into these tissues for the termination of the drug effect. Thus body composition may significantly affect pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. (Data from Friis-Hansen B. Body composition during growth. In vivo measurements and biochemical data correlated to differential anatomical growth. *Pediatrics.* 1971;47:264; Coté CJ, Lerman J, Anderson BJ, eds. *A Practice of Anesthesia for Infants and Children.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2013.)

Protein Binding

Neonates have reduced total plasma protein levels, including lower levels of albumin (which binds acidic drugs such as diazepam and barbiturates) and α_1 acid glycoprotein (which binds lidocaine and alfentanil). Reduced protein levels mean that drugs that are highly protein bound will have a higher free fraction and hence a greater drug effect; however it is important to note that this is only clinically relevant for drugs that have a very high degree of protein binding, a high extraction ratio, and a narrow therapeutic index (such as lidocaine). Some drugs, such as caffeine and ceftriaxone, may also displace bilirubin from plasma proteins increasing the risk of kernicterus in sick neonates.

Clearance

Clearance is the fundamental parameter in predicting drug elimination. It is also an important characteristic for determining duration of effect, dosing interval, and infusion rate. Drugs are cleared through a combination of metabolism and excretion. Clearance changes with age in a complex manner.[34] Clearance (expressed as L/h/kg) is greater in a toddler than it is for an older child. The difference is related to a nonlinear relationship between many aspects of organ function and size. This nonlinear relationship is not related to organ maturity and is surprisingly constant across different aspects of organ function, age, and species. It is known as *allometry* and can be expressed as

$$\text{Function} = (\text{scaling constant}) \times (\text{body mass})^{(\text{allometric exponent})}$$

Using body surface instead of body mass results in an allometric exponent of approximately 2/3 and is a reasonable predictor of clearance. Other pediatric pharmacologists argue that an allometric exponent of 3/4 better reflects actual function. Allometry alone, however, does not explain changes to clearance in the infant and neonate. For these infants, organ maturity has a substantial impact. A sigmoid hyperbolic or Hill model, in addition to allometry, is needed to predict clearance in this age group. Using postmenstrual age provides a better fit than chronologic age, consistent with organ maturity being on a continuum from fetal to postnatal life. The time to full maturation of renal and hepatic clearance varies between drugs. In general the slope is steepest in the neonatal period and full maturity is achieved by 2 years of age (Fig. 77.7).[29]

Many drugs such as succinylcholine, atracurium, and remifentanil undergo clearance independent of the liver or kidney. The nonspecific esterases that metabolize remifentanil are mature at birth.[35] The clearances for these drugs do not require an adjustment for maturation and can be predicted largely through allometry alone.

For drugs that require hepatic or renal clearance, neonates and infants will have a lower clearance resulting in longer elimination half-times, and hence infrequent dosing and lower infusion rates at steady state. In older children, elimination half-times may appear to be shorter, but this difference tends to disappear with allometric (body mass) scaling.

In addition to the differences in drug pharmacokinetics in neonates, other factors will have influence on drug dosing and clearance. Some of the critical factors include sepsis, congestive heart failure, and increases in intraabdominal pressure affecting renal and hepatic function.

Pharmacodynamic Differences

In older children pharmacodynamic properties of most anesthetic agents are probably similar to those in adults, albeit with some notable exceptions such as anticoagulants.[20,36] In infants and neonates much less is known about the pharmacodynamics of anesthetic agents. The lack of data are partly due to the lack of robust and validated measures of various aspects of anesthetic effect in the infant and neonatal population. For example, fundamental anesthesia endpoints such as pain, memory, and even unconsciousness can be difficult to assess in infants. Surrogate measures of anesthesia effect, such as the EEG, are also unreliable in infants. With increasing understanding of the developmental neurobiology of pain and consciousness it is likely that we will identify other clinically significant pharmacodynamic differences in infants.

INHALED ANESTHETICS

Potency of Inhaled Anesthetics in Children

The expired minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) of an inhaled anesthetic required in children changes with age (Fig. 77.8).[37-44] Anesthetic requirement is smaller for preterm than for term neonates and smaller for term neonates than for 3-month olds. Infants have a higher MAC than that of older children or adults; the reasons for these age-related differences in MAC are not known. When considering the impact of age on MAC, it must be noted that the evidence is limited; the number of studies and the number of children in each study are small.

It is also important to note that MAC measures only one aspect of anesthesia effect and reflects primarily a spinal cord reflex. Compared to adults, older children have a similar relationship between MAC and other measures of anesthetic effect. The ratio of MAC to $\text{MAC}_{\text{awake}}$, $\text{MAC}_{\text{intubation}}$, $\text{MAC}_{\text{LMA insertion}}$, $\text{MAC}_{\text{extubation}}$, and MAC_{BAR} are similar in children to adults.[45-48] The relationship between MAC and the EEG, and hence most anesthesia depth monitors, is not as consistent in children and adults. Children have a higher BIS (bispectral index) for a specific fraction of MAC.[49,50] The significance of this is unclear. In infants and neonates there are no data to determine how MAC relates to other aspects of anesthetic effect. It is clear that the relationship between MAC and the EEG is substantially different in infants compared to adults, but once again the clinical significance of this is unclear.

Halothane, sevoflurane, isoflurane, and desflurane all produce a dose-dependent reduction in systemic blood

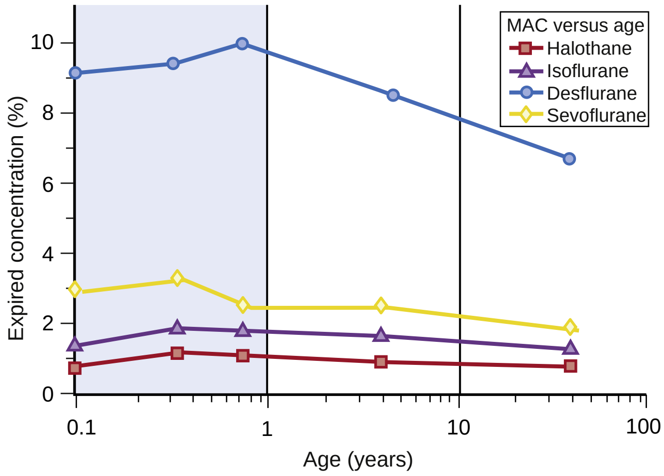


Fig. 77.8 The minimum alveolar concentrations *(MACs)* of four commonly used inhaled anesthetics are plotted versus age. (From references 37–44.)

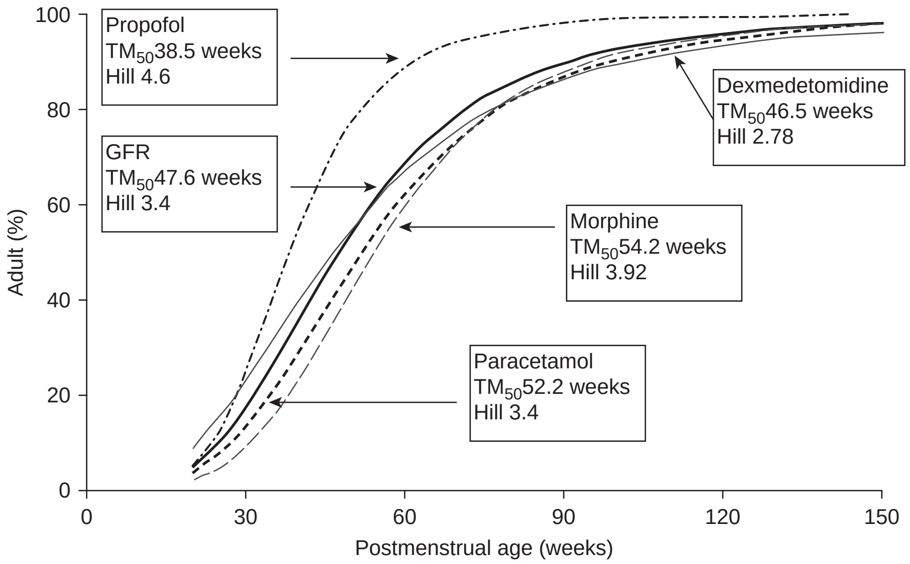


Fig. 77.7 Clearance maturation, expressed as a percentage of mature clearance, of drugs in which glucuronide conjugation plays a major role. *GFR,* Glomerular filtration rate. (From Sumpter A, Anderson BJ. Pediatric pharmacology in the first year of life. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol.* 2009;22:469–475.)

pressure. It is unclear if this is a direct effect on myocardial contractility and vascular smooth muscle or an indirect effect via autonomic or neurohumoral reflexes. The myocardial depressant effect is greater in neonates compared to older children.[51] All of these agents also have a dose-dependent effect on ventilator drive and response to carbon dioxide.[52-54]

Pharmacokinetics of Inhaled Anesthetics in Children

The rate of rise of inhalational anesthetic concentration depends on rate of delivery determined by the inspired concentration, minute ventilation, and ratio of minute ventilation to residual functional capacity; it also depends on the rate of uptake that is determined by the cardiac output, tissue/blood solubility, and alveolar to venous partial pressure gradient.

Attainment of steady state, where the alveolar and inspired fractions equilibrate, is faster in children than adults. This difference is due to a greater minute ventilation relative to functional residual capacity as well as a lower tissue/blood solubility. This effect in children is greater for more soluble agents such as halothane and less for sevoflurane and desflurane.

The faster attainment of steady state in neonates can increase the risk of overdose during induction of anesthesia, particularly if a high inspired concentration is used for an excessively long period. The risk may be greater for agents when greater MAC multiples can be delivered by the vaporizer; for example, a halothane vaporizer can deliver up to 5.75 MAC multiples versus 2.42 MAC multiples for a sevoflurane vaporizer (Table 77.4).

TABLE 77.4 Minimum Alveolar Concentration Multiples for a Neonate Allowed by Current Vaporizers

Agent	Maximum Vaporizer Output (%)	MAC (%)	Maximum Possible MAC Multiples
Halothane	5	0.87	5.75
Isoflurane	5	1.20	4.2
Sevoflurane	8	3.3	2.42
Desflurane	18	9.16	1.96

MAC, Minimum alveolar concentration.
From Coté CJ, Lerman J, Anderson BJ, eds. *A Practice of Anesthesia for Infants and Children*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2013.

Halothane

Halothane is now rarely, if ever, used in the United States and many other countries; however, it is still widely used in developing countries. Halothane is a relatively potent agent, but has a greater blood solubility and slower induction and emergence if similar MAC multiples of inspired concentrations are used. It does not have a noxious smell and hence, prior to the use of sevoflurane, was the agent of choice for inhalational inductions in children. Halothane, being a polyhalogenated alkane, has subtle differences in pharmacodynamic properties compared to the other ether inhalational anesthetics. Halothane has more "analgesic" properties than the ethers and has a higher BIS at equivalent MAC multiples. The MAC of halothane is low in neonates, highest in infants, and then steadily declines with age.

Halothane is a potent myocardial depressant that can have profound effects on neonates and children. Halothane also causes sensitization of the myocardium to arrhythmias. The first Pediatric Perioperative Cardiac Arrest (POCA) registry study reported that halothane was a major cause for perioperative cardiac arrest. It was thought to be particularly dangerous with the use of controlled ventilation without reducing the inspired concentration after induction.[55] The decline in cardiac events in subsequent POCA audits has been attributed to the decline in use of halothane in the United States.[56] At the same time, halothane may be used safely, but care should be exercised particularly if the anesthesiologist is not experienced with its use.

Sevoflurane

Sevoflurane is a polyhalogenated ether. It has a low blood solubility facilitating a relatively rapid inhalational induction. Sevoflurane is less pungent than isoflurane and desflurane and has become the agent of choice for inhaled induction of anesthesia in children. Unlike other inhalational agents, the MAC is similar with neonates and infants, but like other agents becomes lower with age after infancy: 3.3% for neonates, 3.2% for infants 1 to 6 months old, and 2.5% for children older than 6 months.[37,38] Sevoflurane is associated with a greater incidence of emergence delirium compared to halothane (see later). Sevoflurane is also reported to cause epileptiform changes in the EEG when delivered at high concentrations in children. The clinical significance of these EEG changes is not clear.[57]

Isoflurane

Isoflurane, a polyhalogenated ether, has a blood solubility between halothane and sevoflurane. As with sevoflurane, it has a relatively lower MAC in neonates, peaks in infancy, and then declines with age. It is more potent than sevoflurane but has a relatively more noxious smell, which makes an inhalational induction with it unacceptable for most children.

Desflurane

Desflurane is another polyhalogenated ether, with a blood solubility lower than isoflurane or sevoflurane. Similar to sevoflurane and isoflurane, desflurane's MAC peaks in infancy, is lower in neonates, and declines with age after infancy.[40,58] The low solubility facilitates a more rapid emergence. It is however not suitable for inhalational induction in children because of its pungent odor and an unacceptable incidence of laryngospasm (~50%).[59] It is however suitable for maintenance of anesthesia in children although the package insert indicates that it is not recommended for maintenance in children without tracheal tubes.

Nitrous Oxide

Nitrous oxide is an odorless gas that has a low solubility in blood, but is relatively nonpotent. The MAC of nitrous oxide has not been accurately determined in children. When nitrous oxide is used with an inhaled anesthetic, it reduces the concentration required for the more potent inhalational agents. It may speed the uptake of more potent anesthetics, but the underlying theory behind this "second gas" effect has been challenged. This characteristic is probably of limited clinical relevance. Nitrous oxide is a weak analgesic; it can be used alone or in conjunction with other agents for procedural sedation and analgesia for children.[60-62] Since it is odorless, it is also commonly used for an inhalational induction in cooperative children. For example, breathing high concentrations for a short period can provide considerable sedation prior to adding sevoflurane. In many institutions the routine use of nitrous oxide during maintenance of anesthesia has declined since it is associated with an increased risk of postoperative nausea and vomiting in adults; however studies have shown little evidence that nitrous oxide has any impact on postoperative nausea and vomiting in children.[63,64]

Xenon

Xenon is another odorless anesthetic gas that has a relatively low potency. While it is currently not routinely used, it has some potential advantages over other anesthetic agents. The MAC in children is unknown. In adults it has remarkably little cardiovascular effect. It has thus been proposed as a potentially superior anesthetic for children with significant congenital heart disease but only preliminary studies have evaluated this to date.[65,66] Its high cost mandates the use of either very low fresh gas flows or complex scavenging and recycling systems. This may reduce the practicality of its use in many pediatric settings.

Emergence Agitation and Delirium

Children can become agitated on emergence or shortly after arrival in the postanesthesia care unit (PACU). The reported incidence of agitation varies enormously, reflecting the variety of definitions of agitation and delirium used in various studies. The potential list of causes or associated factors is long. Agitation may be due to many factors including pain, cold, full bladder, presence of restrictive casts, fear, anxiety due to parental separation, or simply having a "tantrum." Agitation is best measured with the Cravero scale.[67] The initial management of agitation is to try to identify or rule out likely causes. In some cases agitation may be due to delirium. Delirium is characterized by reduced awareness of the environment and altered cognition or perceptual disturbances. Typically the child is disoriented and does not respond to parents or staff. There is generally no eye contact and the child cannot be consoled.[68] If the delirium is associated with thrashing around or violent movement, this is known as "emergence delirium." Emergence delirium occurs most frequently in preschool children. It is distressing to staff and parents. It may also lead to self injury, and dislodging dressings, drains, and intravenous lines. In most cases, emergence delirium may persist for 10 to 20 minutes but is self-limiting. Delirium may also be hypoactive; in this situation, the child has a delirium, but is inactive and not agitated, and thus is at less risk of doing harm to themselves.

The cause for delirium is not precisely known. It may relate to the mode of awakening.[69] It is intriguingly similar to night terrors in children. It is more common when maintenance anesthesia included either sevoflurane or desflurane. It is unusual after total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA) with propofol. Many agents have been found to reduce the incidence.[70-72] The most effective is using TIVA or giving 2 to 3 mg/kg of propofol before emergence.[73] Fentanyl and α_2 agonists have also been found to be effective.[74] Propofol, clonidine, and midazolam have all been described as useful in management. When managing delirium other causes for agitation should be considered, particularly pain. Emergence delirium may occur after painless procedures; however there is also some evidence that pain may increase the risk of emergence delirium. Other physiologic changes, including hypoxia, metabolic derangement, and hyponatremia, may also cause agitation or delirium, so must be ruled out, particularly if the delirium is prolonged.

INTRAVENOUS GENERAL ANESTHETICS

Propofol

The pharmacokinetics of propofol have been well described in children. In children the volume of distribution is greater than in adults and there is a more rapid redistribution. Clearance is similar in children to adults; however clearance is longer in preterm neonates. The dose for induction increases with decreasing age. The median effective dose (ED_{50}) for loss of eyelash reflex is 3 mg/kg in infants aged 1 to 6 months, and 1.3 to 1.6 mg/kg in children aged 1 to 12 years. The pharmacokinetics of propofol in neonates has not been as well described; however, the induction dose is generally less than for older infants. Use of propofol has been associated with profound hypotension in neonates.[75] A potential drawback is pain on injection. Numerous strategies have been described to reduce this pain. The most effective is probably using a large vein, or adding lidocaine (0.5-1.0 mg/kg) to the propofol, or injecting lidocaine before the propofol. Propofol is not contraindicated in children with egg allergy.[76]

A major concern with propofol is the potential for propofol infusion syndrome (lipemia, metabolic acidosis, rhabdomyolysis, and hyperkalemia followed by refractory cardiovascular collapse), which is generally associated with high-dose infusions for an extended period (usually days in an intensive care unit [ICU] environment).[77] The onset may be subtle and unnoticed followed by rapid demise. The mechanism underlying propofol infusion syndrome remains unclear. It may be related to mitochondrial lipid metabolism.[78]

Total Intravenous Anesthesia in Children

TIVA is becoming increasingly popular in pediatric anesthesia.[79-81] Propofol and remifentanil are the main agents used. In children TIVA has been suggested to have many advantages including reduced emergence agitation and emergence delirium, faster recovery, reduced postoperative vomiting, and fewer airway complications on emergence. These advantages are all plausible; however there are few well-designed studies to test these assertions. One limitation of TIVA in children is the need for specific and well-validated pediatric algorithms. Adult target-controlled infusion models are not best suited for children.[82] The Paedfusor model is one pediatric-specific algorithm that is widely used for children.

Thiopental

In most countries, propofol has largely replaced thiopental in pediatric anesthesia. The ED_{50} of thiopental is 3.4 mg/kg in neonates, 6 mg/kg in infants, 4 mg/kg in preschool children, 4.5 mg/kg in children aged 4 to 7 years, 4.3 mg/kg in children aged 7 to 12 years, and 4.1 mg/kg in older children. Clearance is slower in neonates. Limiting the total dose to 10 mg/kg or less in older children minimizes the possibility of prolongation of anesthesia caused by residual barbiturate sedation.

Ketamine

Ketamine has a similar volume of distribution in children compared to adults, but the clearance is reduced in infants. Ketamine has a number of niche uses in pediatric anesthesia. Ketamine may be used for induction of anesthesia (1-3 mg/kg intravenously and 5-10 mg/kg intramuscularly). The intramuscular route is well described for larger uncooperative children where intravenous and inhalational induction are impossible and other forms of premedication are refused. The intramuscular dose may have a benzodiazepine added to reduce the risk of hallucinations and an anticholinergic agent to reduce the risk of hypersecretion. For relatively brief procedures a large intramuscular dose may lead to significantly delayed emergence.

Compared to equipotent doses of other intravenous anesthetics, ketamine causes relatively little cardiovascular or respiratory depression and is less likely to result in airway obstruction. It is thus favored as a safer drug in resource poor settings. However, although spontaneous respirations and a patent airway are usually maintained, apnea and laryngospasm may still occur. It is also frequently used in the pediatric emergency department for brief painful procedures. Ketamine may be used alone or in combination with other agents as an effective premedication. Given its cardiovascular stability it may be the optimal premedication for children with significant cardiovascular disease such as children with congenital heart disease. Ketamine is increasingly used as a postoperative analgesic, either alone or in combination with other agents.

Etomidate

Clearance is similar in children to adults; however the volume of distribution is larger in children and hence a larger initial bolus is required. Concerns regarding anaphylactoid reactions and suppression of adrenal function have limited widespread use of this anesthetic in children. As with propofol, the incidence of pain on intravenous administration is frequent. Etomidate has minimal cardiovascular suppression and thus it is useful in children who are critically ill and those with a head injury. Etomidate has gained increasing popularity for airway management in the emergency department.

α_2 AGONISTS

α_2 Agonists are increasingly used in pediatric anesthesia. Uses include sedation, premedication, analgesia, prevention of emergence delirium, and as an adjunct to extend the duration of action of regional nerve blockade. α_2 Agonists cause a dose-dependent reduction in heart rate and blood pressure; however this is rarely clinically relevant in the doses commonly described.

Clonidine

Clonidine is increasingly used for premedication. To be optimally effective 4 mcg/kg clonidine should be given orally 45 to 60 minutes prior to induction. There is some evidence that clonidine is superior to midazolam as a premedicant in terms of sedation, postoperative agitation, and postoperative pain.[83] Similar to many other drugs, the clearance of clonidine is reduced in neonates; however it rises to 82% of adult levels by 1 year of age.[84]

Dexmedetomidine

Dexmedetomidine has greater selectivity for the α_2 adrenoreceptor than clonidine, and hence produces less hypotension and bradycardia compared to clonidine. It also has minimal respiratory depressive effects. The sedation provided by dexmedetomidine is similar to natural sleep. Thus with stimuli, children may be more easily aroused from dexmedetomidine sedation compared to other sedative agents. Dexmedetomidine has been widely used as a sedative in the intensive care setting. It has also been used as a sole sedative for medical imaging in children. The loading dose of 1 to 2 μg/kg is typically given over 10 minutes followed by an infusion of 0.5 to 1 μg/kg/h.[85] This may however produce a more prolonged recovery compared to other regimens. Dexmedetomidine has also been used for cardiac catheterization, awake-craniotomies, and to facilitate opioid withdrawal. Dexmedetomidine may produce a biphasic hemodynamic response with a bolus producing an initial increase in blood pressure before a mild reduction in blood pressure. The clearance is reduced in neonates.[86]

Dexmedetomidine is increasingly used intranasally for premedication where it has a bioavailability of 80%. A dose of 1 to 2 μg/kg is usually used for intranasal premedication, taking 30 to 40 minutes for peak effect. Several studies have found intranasal dexmedetomidine to be superior to midazolam for premedication in children.[87,88]

OPIOIDS

Morphine

Morphine is frequently used for postoperative analgesia. In children, as in adults, there is also a large variability in pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic profile and thus doses should be titrated to effect. Morphine is metabolized by both glucuronidation and sulfation. In adults sulfation is a minor pathway; however in neonates it is relatively more dominant. The clinical significance of this is unclear. Clearance is low in neonates but reaches adult levels at 6 to 12 months of age. The most worrisome adverse effect of morphine is respiratory depression. In animal models neonates are more susceptible to respiratory depression compared to older animals, perhaps due to an immature blood-brain barrier. There is some evidence that human neonates are also more susceptible to the respiratory depressive effects of morphine; however the mechanism remains unclear. Nevertheless it should be used cautiously in infants, especially preterm infants.

Codeine

Codeine is a morphine-like opioid with approximately 10% the potency of morphine. It has rapid oral absorption and 90% bioavailability. These features resulted in it previously being used extensively as an oral analgesic (1 mg/kg). Approximately 10% of codeine is metabolized to morphine and thus a considerable amount of its analgesic action is through this mechanism of metabolism. There is considerable variation in this metabolism with poor, rapid, and ultra-rapid metabolizers. About 10% of Caucasians and 30% of Hong Kong Chinese are poor metabolizers in whom codeine provides only poor analgesia.[89] In contrast, 1% of some Caucasian groups and 30% of Ethiopians are ultra-rapid metabolizers. Ultra-rapid metabolizers are at risk of increased clinical response including profound respiratory depression that has been associated with death in children.[90] For this reason, codeine is increasingly being used infrequently. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) issued a "black box" warning against its use in children after tonsillectomy.

Meperidine

The use of meperidine is declining because of concerns over the accumulation of the metabolite normeperidine with multiple doses, which may cause seizures. Meperidine has a potency of approximately one tenth that of morphine and a shorter time to peak effect. The elimination of meperidine is reduced in neonates.

Fentanyl

Fentanyl is commonly used in pediatric anesthesia for intraoperative analgesia. It has greater hemodynamic stability than morphine. High doses of 10 µg/kg or greater can be used to maintain cardiovascular stability. The clearance is markedly reduced in preterm infants but rises to 80% of adult values by term. Adult levels of clearance are achieved within the first few weeks post term. The volume of distribution is greatest in neonates (5.9 L/kg) and steadily declines with age to 1.6 L/kg in adults.

Alfentanil

The clearance of alfentanil in preterm neonates is markedly reduced and the volume of distribution is greater than older infants. Pharmacokinetic data are generally sparse and somewhat contradictory but volume of distribution and elimination half-life are similar between infants aged 3 to 12 months and older children.[91]

Sufentanil

Sufentanil is used mainly for pediatric cardiac surgery. Like other similar agents, in neonates sufentanil has a greater volume of distribution, reduced clearance, and longer elimination half-life.

Remifentanil

The main advantage of remifentanil is its extremely brief half-life. The elimination half-life is 3 to 6 minutes and is independent of dose and duration. Remifentanil is degraded by nonspecific plasma and tissue esterases and metabolism is not affected by butyrylcholinesterase deficiency. The importance of maturation of renal and hepatic function is minimal and the drug has great utility in infants with hepatic or renal failure. The differences in remifentanil's half-life among neonates, infants, and adults are minimal.

One study examined its pharmacokinetic effects in children and found age-related differences in the volume of distribution and clearance but not in half-life with volume of distribution being greater in infants compared to older children (Fig. 77.9).[92] Contrary to the pharmacokinetics of most drugs, neonates are able to clear the drug more rapidly than older children. Of further interest is the very small patient-to-patient variability in pharmacokinetic parameters when compared with similar studies examining other opioids, particularly in infants and neonates. The particularly favorable pharmacokinetics in neonates allows the provision of a deep opioid-induced plane of anesthesia while avoiding cardiovascular depression and the need for postoperative ventilation.

An initial dose of remifentanil may be required prior to infusion; however, a rapid large bolus may produce hypotension and bradycardia. A combination of 3 µg/kg remifentanil with 3 to 4 mg/kg propofol is an alternative to succinylcholine to facilitate endotracheal intubation.[93,94] An acute tolerance similar to that occurring in adults has also been described in children. If postoperative pain is anticipated, adequate long-acting analgesia should be given well before the remifentanil infusion is discontinued.

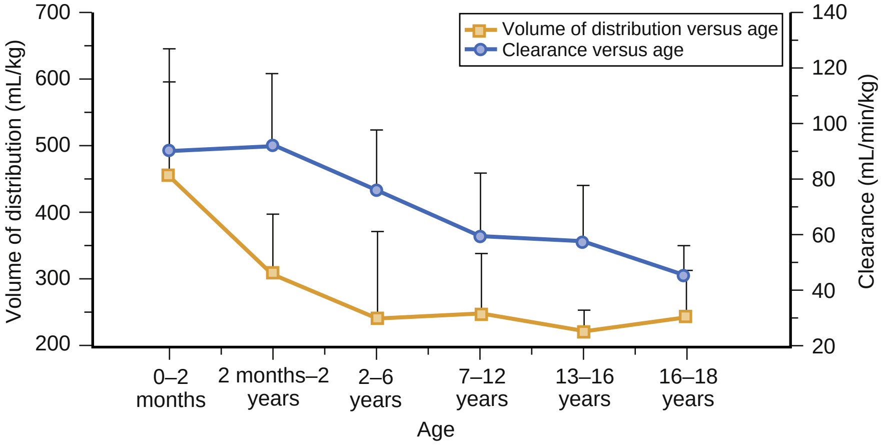


Fig. 77.9 Remifentanil is the newest potent opioid available for the care of neonates. Unlike virtually all other medications, its clearance is more rapid in neonates than it is in older children, probably because of elimination of remifentanil by nonspecific plasma and tissue esterases, as well as the larger volume of distribution in neonates. The importance of this observation is that developmental immaturity of liver and renal function does not affect the pharmacokinetics of remifentanil. (Data abstracted from Ross AK, Davis PJ, del Dear G, et al. Pharmacokinetics of remifentanil in anesthetized pediatric patients undergoing elective surgery or diagnostic procedures. *Anesth Analg.* 2001;93:1393–1401.)

Tramadol

Tramadol is a relatively weak opioid with less respiratory depressant effects. Two enantiomers provide analgesia; one is an opioid mu receptor agonist and the other inhibits uptake of serotonin and noradrenaline. Clearance is less in premature neonates but in children is similar to adults if standard allometric scaling is applied. Tramadol is metabolized by various pathways including via CYP2D6 to 0-desmethyltramadol. This metabolite has mu-receptor affinity approximately 200 times greater than tramadol.[95] The genetic polymorphism of CYP2D6 produces fast and slow metabolizers that may produce a variable response among children. The FDA has warned against using tramadol after tonsillectomy in children with obstructive sleep apnea. One oral formulation of tramadol for children has a concentration of 100 mg/mL and is administered in drops. This may increase the risk of errors in administration if milliliters are mistakenly given rather than drops, resulting in a potentially 10-fold overdose. This formulation has been replaced in some countries by an elixir of 10 mg/mL.

MUSCLE RELAXANTS AND REVERSAL AGENTS

Succinylcholine

Succinylcholine is highly water soluble and rapidly redistributes into the extracellular fluid volume. For this reason, the dose required for intravenous administration of this depolarizing muscle relaxant in infants (2.0 mg/kg) is approximately twice that for older children (1.0 mg/kg). Succinylcholine is also effective when given intramuscularly; reliable muscle relaxation occurs within 3 to 4 minutes after 5 mg/kg in infants and 4 mg/kg in children older than 6 months. The skeletal muscle relaxation produced by intramuscular administration may last up to 20 minutes. In an emergency situation, succinylcholine may be administered intralingually (via a submental approach), which will further speed the onset of relaxation because the drug is more rapidly absorbed from the tongue than from peripheral skeletal muscle.

Cardiac arrhythmias may follow intravenous administration. Prior intravenous administration of atropine (but not intramuscular administration of atropine as a premedication) reduces the incidence of arrhythmias. Cardiac sinus arrest may follow the first dose of succinylcholine but is more common after repeated bolus administrations; such arrest may occur in children of any age. Therefore a vagolytic drug should probably be intravenously administered just before the first dose of succinylcholine in all children, including teenagers, unless a contraindication to tachycardia (e.g., a cardiomyopathy) exists.

Succinylcholine has received significant attention because of the severity of its possible complications. The potential for rhabdomyolysis and hyperkalemia (particularly in boys younger than 8 years of age who have unrecognized muscular dystrophy), as well as the risk for malignant hyperthermia, suggests that succinylcholine should not be *routinely* used in children.[96] Increased jaw muscle tone (masseter spasm) after succinylcholine has been observed, particularly when halothane is used. Masseter tetany ("jaws of steel"), which prevents any mouth opening, is an extreme variation in increased masseter muscle tone. Such tetany may be an early sign of malignant hyperthermia, but certainly not all cases of tetany progress to malignant hyperthermia.

Succinylcholine is still used for emergency airway management including the management of severe laryngospasm and as part of a rapid sequence induction (RSI) where the child has a full stomach. High-dose nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockers such as rocuronium or a large dose of propofol and remifentanil have been proposed as alternatives to succinylcholine for RSI. Large-dose rocuronium produces adequate intubating conditions almost as quickly as succinylcholine in adults.[97] The advent of sugammadex has enabled the rapid reversal of large-dose rocuronium if needed. High-dose propofol and remifentanil may also produce timely adequate intubating conditions; however significant hypotension may occur.

Nondepolarizing Muscle Relaxants

A comparison of infants with older children and adults regarding responses to nondepolarizing muscle relaxants shows that infants are generally more sensitive to these drugs and that their responses vary to a greater degree. Although the initial dose per kilogram needed for neuromuscular blockade is often similar for children of all ages, the greater volume of distribution and reduced renal or hepatic function of neonates result in a slower rate of excretion and a prolongation of effect. Neuromuscular blockade occurs at a lower blood concentration in infants.

The choice of nondepolarizing muscle relaxant depends on the side effects and the duration of the desired muscle relaxation. If tachycardia is desired (e.g., with fentanyl anesthesia), then pancuronium may be an appropriate choice. Vecuronium, atracurium, rocuronium, and cisatracurium are useful for shorter procedures in infants and children; they may also be administered as a constant infusion. The method of excretion of atracurium and cisatracurium (Hofmann elimination and ester hydrolysis) makes these relaxants particularly useful in newborns and children with immature or abnormal hepatic or renal function. Vecuronium is valuable because no histamine is released; however, its duration of action is prolonged in newborns.

Rocuronium has a clinical profile similar to that of vecuronium, cisatracurium, and atracurium. Rocuronium can be administered intramuscularly. One study observed that acceptable conditions for intubation are produced by rocuronium within 3 to 4 minutes after 1 mg/kg intramuscularly in infants and 1.8 mg/kg intramuscularly in children older than 1 year of age; these effects were more dependable with deltoid than with quadriceps muscle injection.[98] Table 77.5 provides commonly recommended guidelines for doses. Routine pharmacologic antagonism of neuromuscular blockade is recommended in all children, even if they have clinically recovered. Recovery times vary between subjects and residual blockade may be difficult to detect, and may be associated with increased postoperative complications.

Sugammadex

Sugammadex is a cyclodextrin that rapidly encapsulates rocuronium, and to a lesser extent, vecuronium, forming a stable complex that prevents any further action of the muscle relaxant. The complex is excreted by the kidney. There are few data in children; however one study found that 2

TABLE 77.5 Commonly Used Muscle Relaxants and Reversal Agents in Pediatrics

Drug	Average Intubation Dose (mg/kg)	Category	Approximate Duration (minutes)
MUSCLE RELAXANTS*			
Pancuronium	0.1	Long acting	~45-60
Cisatracurium	0.1	Intermediate acting	~30
Vecuronium	0.1	Intermediate acting	~30
Rocuronium		Dose related:	
	0.3	Short acting	~15-20
	0.6	Intermediate acting	~30-45
	1.2	Long acting	~45-75
REVERSAL AGENTS†			
Edrophonium	0.3-1.0 mg/kg + atropine, 0.02 mg/kg		
Neostigmine	0.02-0.06 mg/kg + atropine, 0.02 mg/kg		

*The response of preterm and term neonates (who may be more sensitive to the drugs) to muscle relaxants varies greatly from patient to patient. Therefore all doses should be titrated to response. The recommended tracheal intubation doses may be reduced 30% to 50% in the presence of a potent inhaled agent.

†The dose of the reversal agent given to antagonize nondepolarizing neuromuscular blockade should be determined by the degree of residual neuromuscular blockade (i.e., the dose should be titrated to clinical effect).

mg/kg reversed moderate rocuronium-induced block in children and adolescents in a time that was similar to that seen in adults.[99,100]

THE IMPACT OF ANESTHESIA ON THE DEVELOPING BRAIN

Recently the FDA issued a warning that many general anesthetics may have a harmful effect on the developing brain.[101,102] The warning emphasizes that the risk is greater with prolonged and repeated anesthetics in children under the age of 3 years. This warning is based on a large amount of animal data and a more limited amount of human data. It has received some criticism.

Animal data

There is substantial preclinical evidence that many general anesthetics have the capacity to cause morphological and functional changes to the developing brain.[103-105] These changes have been demonstrated in a wide variety of species, ranging from the nematode to the nonhuman primate.[106,107] A variety of different morphological changes have been seen. Accelerated neuronal apoptosis is the most widely recognized.[108] Changes to dendritic morphology have also been described.[109] Apoptosis has also been described in glial cells.[110] Several mechanisms have been identified, and mitochondrial dysfunction may be important.[103] The effects are greatest with larger doses and longer exposure; however, it is difficult to identify the upper limit of duration of exposure that has no effect.[104] The effect also varies with age at the time of exposure. Generally the effects are greater in the more immature brain—which may translate to the late trimester of pregnancy or early infancy in humans, but some effects are also seen in older animals. The area of the brain affected may also vary with age of exposure. Effects are greatest with γ-aminobutyric acid agonists and N-methyl-D-aspartate antagonists and have been seen with propofol, benzodiazepines, volatile anesthetics, and ketamine. There is contradictory evidence for an effect with α_2 agonists. Functional experiments have demonstrated that animals, including nonhuman primates exposed to anesthesia in early life, may have deficits in learning and altered behavior; however not all experiments have demonstrated functional deficits and it is unclear if the functional deficits are a function of the observed morphologic changes.

Translating the Animal Data to Humans

There are considerable problems translating animal data to humans in general, and more challenging when considering age.[111,112] Translating dose ranges is problematic as is understanding exactly how a particular age of animal correlates to the age of a human. In small animals, homeostasis may be deranged during anesthesia and few models examine the impact of concurrent surgery. Human brains are complex and develop over a longer period. The impact of an injury in humans will depend on the type of injury and timing of the injury. Human brains can be extraordinarily vulnerable to injuries of a specific type at particular times, or demonstrate considerable plasticity and recovery. Importantly, genetic and environmental factors have a huge impact on resilience and recovery or vulnerability.

Human Study Outcomes

The human studies can be broadly grouped according to their design and the outcomes at which they look.[113] So far there is only one prospective trial with published results. All other studies are observational. This is a crucial point that will be explained later. Various study designs have been used.

The ***design*** of observational studies broadly consist of:

- *Data linkage population-based studies.* These studies use existing datasets that can be linked. They are inherently retrospective and limited by the outcomes and exposure variables that have already been collected. They can however be very large, examining whole country or whole state populations. The outcomes commonly used are some form of preschool test for school readiness, or school grades.

- *Use of existing birth cohorts or longitudinal studies.* These studies use existing data in longitudinal cohorts that have usually been set up for other purposes. They often include access to more detailed outcome measures including some psychometric outcomes; they may also include diagnoses of disability and school grades. While often large, they are not as big as the population linkage studies. The details of exposure may be limited but there are usually good data about other factors that may contribute to outcome.
- *Purpose built cohort studies.* These studies recruit children that have been exposed to anesthesia and match them to those that have not, and then test the children for a range of psychometric outcomes. These studies enable researchers to focus on neurodevelopmental areas of greatest interest but logistically it is difficult to recruit large numbers of children. Children may be recruited in various ways including from existing longitudinal studies.

Various **outcome measures** have also been used.[114]

- *School grades or school readiness tests.* These are of great interest and importance to families but they are coarse measures of neurodevelopment. A deficit may however exist in one aspect of neurodevelopment that is not reflected in school grades; conversely many other factors influence school grades, diluting any possible “injury” effect. Their advantage is not only their importance to families, but also that they are easy to obtain in very large numbers.
- *Diagnosis of a learning disorder or specific neurodevelopmental disorder.* These are also of great importance to the families and the community. A major problem is that the diagnosis may not always be clear and definitions of disorders vary between jurisdictions and over time. Another potential disadvantage is that these disorders are not common enough to be able to produce precise results except in very large studies.
- *Psychometric testing.* Many tests are available to test a wide range of neurodevelopmental domains. Apical tests, such as intelligence quotient (IQ), are composite scores that pool results from several domains. Apical tests have the best value as far as predicting future function, but using apical tests may miss deficits in some subdomains. Looking at multiple domains raises the problem of type 1 error (finding a “significant” association due to multiple testing). The psychology literature abounds with studies that are not replicable—partly because of this issue. If a “deficit” is found in only one or two of many subdomains tested then the results must be interpreted very cautiously until they are replicated in following studies. Performing psychometric testing is labor intensive and must be done to a high standard to be useful.
- *Imaging.* MRI may provide some insight; however, these studies are usually small due to logistic problems and, similar to psychometric testing, many outcomes are usually measured that increase the risk of type 1 error. Our understanding of MRI is rapidly increasing but there is still a degree of disconnect between what is seen on the MRI and functional relevance.

In all these studies, it is important to consider the subject’s age at testing. Some aspects of neurodevelopment such as higher executive function cannot be tested until the child is older. Also, after an injury children will usually “grow into their deficit.” An injury in a particular aspect of brain function will become more apparent as the child develops and lacks that function. This is contrary to the idea that the brain will always have plasticity and recovery.

Confounding. Confounding occurs when an observed association between A and B is not direct or causal, but due to another factor C, which increases the likelihood of both A and B. There are huge issues with confounding in all the observational studies looking at anesthesia and developmental outcome. Children have anesthesia because they are having surgery or an investigational procedure. The surgery or procedure may itself cause injury—for example, the stress response of surgery or poorly managed pain. Also, the condition that warrants surgery may be associated with increased risk of poor neurodevelopmental outcome. This may be obvious in the case of genetic abnormalities or major illnesses, but it can also be more subtle. Children having ear tube insertion may require the tubes because they have shown signs of developmental delay as a result of hearing loss. Alternatively, a child needing dental care may require general anesthesia due to the extent of the previously untreated dental problems or as a result of subtle behavioral problems that make providing dental care without general anesthesia challenging.

Confounding can be reduced by careful sample selection, matching, or statistical adjustments in the analysis, but these measures are never mathematically perfect and thus cannot completely remove the influence of confounding. Importantly, they can only reduce the influence of known confounding factors. The problem of confounding means that, by itself, any association seen in an observational study cannot ever be regarded as anything better than weak evidence for causation. Randomized trials are by far the best way to reduce confounding; however, it is nearly impossible to randomize children to anesthesia or no anesthesia.

Results From Population-Based Clinical Studies. Most, but not all, large population-based studies looking at school grades or readiness for school found evidence for a small difference in school grade or readiness in children that have had anesthesia in early childhood.[115-120] The increase in risk is small and, in fact much smaller than the risk associated with gender or month of birth. Interestingly, the studies do not indicate that exposure at 0 to2 years of age is worse than 2 to 4 years of age, and some find the opposite. As far as frequency of exposure, some show weak evidence for a greater risk with multiple exposure but most have insufficient power to determine if having multiple exposures poses any greater risk than single exposure. Several studies found that surgery reduced the likelihood of readiness for school or poor test performance. These findings have many potential explanations, and may be associated with increased risk of acquiring a specific developmental disorder.

Results From Studies That Look at Specific Developmental Disorders

Most, but not all, studies that identify a diagnosis of a learning or developmental disorder found evidence for an association between anesthesia in early childhood and an increased risk of a diagnosis of a behavioral disorder or learning disability.[121-128] Most of these studies also note that this association is greater with multiple exposures.

Results From Studies That Use Psychometric Testing for Outcomes. There is no clear pattern that links the results of these studies. Many studies find evidence for an association between anesthesia in early childhood and one or two particular domains of psychometric testing. These domains include: language, reading, abstract reasoning, executive function, some aspects of memory, processing speed, fine motor abilities, and some aspects of behavior.[129-132] Some, but not all, find an association with a small reduction in IQ.[117]

Some robust studies such as PANDA found no evidence for an association with any deficit.[133] The only trial to report an outcome (the GAS trial) found no evidence for a difference in IQ and a range of other psychometric tests of children tested at age 2 or age 5 after being randomized to either general or awake regional anesthesia for hernia repair.[134]

Summary and Recommendations. In spite of strong animal evidence, there is inconsistent human evidence for an association between anesthesia in early childhood and a range of later neurodevelopmental outcomes. A causal relationship cannot be ruled out; however the human evidence that these associations could be casual is very weak. These associations could be simply explained by confounding. Clinical decisions need to be made in the context of the preclinical and clinical data. Currently, this is an imprecise task; however as further data emerge, the task will become clearer. Most pediatric anesthesia societies currently recommend that surgery not be delayed even in neonates because of what is still a theoretical risk of neurotoxicity and that anesthetic technique should not be altered. Some recommend delaying nonurgent procedures. However, very few purely elective procedures are done in children; delaying procedures is nearly always associated with an increased material risk inherent in not treating the condition that warranted the procedure. Finally, even if surgery is postponed, there are no data to indicate how long any such delay should be. As a result of these conflicting data and while not all agree that neurotoxicity should be included as part of informed consent, anesthesiologists should be prepared to discuss the potential risk of neurotoxicity with parents if they are asked or concerns are expressed. The discussion should include a review of the implications of delaying a procedure.

Ongoing Uncertainties. There are almost no human data specifically examining the impact of prolonged exposures. Two recent studies have identified the range of durations of anesthesia in children in the United States and the majority of these children have had anesthesia for a duration of an hour or less.[135,136]

Apart from the issue of anesthesia neurotoxicity, there is also growing evidence that neonates having major surgery do have a substantially increased risk of neurologic injury and poor neurologic outcome.[137,138] This observation may be completely unrelated to the anesthesia toxicity observed in preclinical studies. It may be partly explained by the considerable comorbidities that these children have; but it is plausible that the injury may also be related to a variety of other factors in the perioperative period such as cerebral perfusion, with or without hypotension, inflammation, hypoxia, hypercarbia, stress, and pain. While the concerns may not be directly related to administration of an anesthetic, the other potential causes for perioperative neurologic injury must be considered and addressed by the anesthesiologist.

It is clear that neonates have vulnerable brains and much more work needs to be done to identify optimal perioperative care for them.

Perioperative Management

PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION

Preoperative evaluation is an essential component of perioperative management. It is aimed to evaluate (1) the child's medical conditions, (2) the needs of the planned surgical or diagnostic procedure, and (3) the psychological context of the child and family. If indicated, this evaluation should be complemented with specific preoperative tests as well as other specialty consultations. The timing of preanesthesia consultation depends on the patient's condition and the type of surgery. It can be strongly influenced by the institutional organization, and demographic and geographic characteristics. Patients with significant medical conditions should be evaluated well in advance of elective surgery to allow sufficient time for appropriate planning and any optimization of medical conditions to decrease perioperative risk. A preanesthesia visit conducted before surgery will also benefit children without notable comorbidities (ASA I and II status) since it offers a meaningful opportunity to provide the child and family with detailed and individualized information on perioperative management which, in turn, can decrease both procedure- and anesthesia-related anxiety. Conducting this interview several days before anesthesia is a legal obligation in several countries to obtain informed consent.

The medical history should have a particular focus on medications, details of previous anesthesia experiences, and family history. Obtaining this information from the child's pediatrician is very helpful when hospital chart reviews are not available. Physical examination includes a thorough assessment of the airway, cardiovascular, respiratory, and nervous systems along with the hydration state of the child. Routine preoperative tests do not make an important contribution to the process of perioperative assessment and management of the patient by the anesthesiologist.[139,140] Although decision-making parameters for specific preoperative tests or for the timing of these tests cannot be adequately determined by current literature,[140] the anesthesiologist should order specific preoperative investigations related to suspected conditions (e.g., the presence of congenital heart disease), which may modify perioperative management and outcome; or conditions (e.g., asthma) in which introduction of a specific treatment could decrease perioperative risks.[139,140] Routine requests for preoperative electrocardiograms (ECG) are not recommended for healthy children. There is, nevertheless, an ongoing controversy about the need for routine neonatal screening for long QT syndrome (LQTS).[141,142] Indeed, LQTS is the leading suspected cause of sudden infant death, and mortality can be decreased by pharmacologic treatment.[143] Since both perioperative stress and a number of anesthetics can lengthen QT interval, performing ECG in neonates and infants under 6 months of age may be an option.[144] The routine use of preoperative chest radiographs should be abandoned especially in view of the harmful effects of ionizing radiation.[140,144] In contrast, a pregnancy test is recommended in all females of childbearing age after proper consent is obtained.[140,144]

The Child With an Upper Respiratory Tract Infection

Upper respiratory tract infections (URIs) are very frequent in childhood with an annual incidence of up to 6 to 8 episodes in infants and preschool children.[145] They usually last for 7 to 10 days, but symptoms may persist for up to 3 weeks. More than 200 viruses have been shown to be associated with URI.[146] The viral invasion of the respiratory mucosa leads to an inflammatory response that results in airway edema and increased secretions.[147] Bronchial hyperreactivity, resulting primarily from the impact of the viral infection on the autonomic nervous system, may persist for up to 6 weeks or longer, well beyond the disappearance of clinical symptoms.[145] Therefore a child with a URI is a major challenge for pediatric anesthesia.[145,148] The most common perioperative respiratory adverse events (PRAEs) associated with URI are: laryngospasm, bronchospasm, breath holding, atelectasis, arterial oxygen desaturation, bacterial pneumonia, and unplanned hospital admission.[149] Fortunately, the incidence of serious PRAEs in children with "common cold" is low.[145]

During the preanesthesia visit, the anesthesiologist should assess the patient for an underlying respiratory illness and identify the risk factors associated with PRAE. These risk factors can be related to the child itself, the specific risks of the anesthesia procedure, or surgery specific factors. Children presenting with signs of serious URI, including fever, productive cough, green runny nose, or otitis media, are at increased risk for PRAE.[150] Infants with respiratory syncytial virus infection present a particularly high-risk group during perioperative management.[151] The anesthesiologist should also elicit any history or signs of primary pulmonary morbidity, such as bronchial asthma, prematurity, and bronchopulmonary dysplasia, cystic fibrosis, and pulmonary hypertension. Passive smoke exposure should also be considered. The anesthesia- and surgery-specific risk factors are most important with instrumental manipulation of the airway such as with bronchoscopy and endotracheal intubation.[145,150] Ear, nose and throat, and eye surgery as well as upper abdominal and thoracic surgeries also increase the risk of PRAE.

The question of whether to cancel a procedure in a child with URI and, if so for how long, is difficult to answer and is influenced by many factors (Fig. 77.10). There is now an increasing expert consensus that it is not necessary to postpone a surgical procedure for 6 weeks after any URI in children.[145,148] Indeed, given the high annual incidence of URI in children, such an approach could even lead to postponing surgery indefinitely. Recent recommendations emphasize an approximately 2-week-long time lag between the resolutions of clinical symptoms and anesthesia.[145]

Several approaches can be taken to decrease the incidence of PRAE in children with URI. Premedication with an aerosol of salbutamol has been shown to be effective in both the prevention and treatment of perioperative bronchospasm in children with bronchial hyperreactivity.[152] While intravenous lidocaine (1 mg/kg) has also been proposed to decrease the incidence of PRAE, current evidence does not support this approach.[145] Induction of anesthesia through an intravenous approach with propofol has been suggested to result in a lower incidence of PRAE in children with URI when compared to inhalational induction.[150] Endotracheal intubation in patients with bronchial hyperreactivity has been shown to be associated with a higher incidence of PRAE when compared with ventilation via a face mask or LMA.[150] Last but not least, several lines of investigations point to the anesthesiologist's experience as an important factor to prevent PRAE.[145]

PERIOPERATIVE ANXIETY IN CHILDREN

A majority of children experience significant anxiety and stress before anesthesia.[153] There is some evidence to suggest an association between preoperative anxiety and adverse postoperative outcomes, including emergence delirium, increased analgesic requirement, and negative behavioral changes.[154,155] In general, fear in children can be related to a number of factors including parental separation, an unfamiliar and threatening hospital environment, painful procedures, the operation itself, and anesthesia.[155] The preanesthesia visit provides an opportunity to identify the contribution of each of these factors, and to discuss the magnitude of preoperative anxiety as well as to plan interventions aimed at decreasing anxiety levels.[154,155] The planning of these interventions has to take into account the age-specific developmental differences in how children react to the stress of anesthesia and surgery. Infants up to 9 months of age are less prone to separation anxiety, and will most probably accept parental surrogates (including soothing voices, gentle rocking, and being held).[156] Separation anxiety is the greatest problem in children between 1 and 3 years of age. Some, but not all, these children may respond to distraction techniques such as toys and stories. While parental presence at anesthesia induction has been advocated in this population, recent studies do not support routine parental presence as the optimal means of reducing anxiety.[157] In addition to being frightened about what is to take place, children between 3 and 6 years of age have concerns about body mutilation and may require reassurance.[155] Preoperative play therapy is especially useful in this age group. Children between 7 and 12 years of age usually require more explanation and wish to actively participate in their perioperative course.

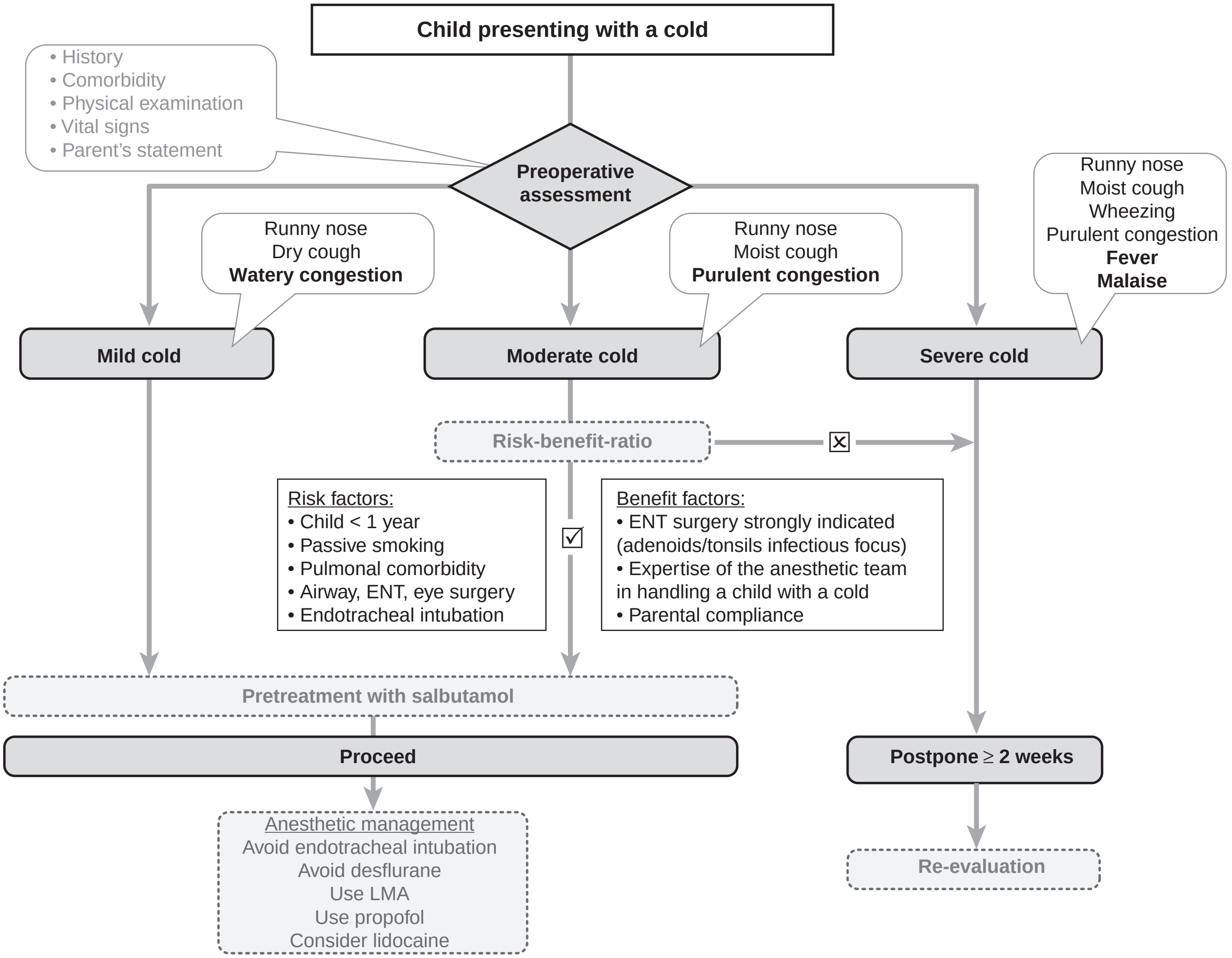

Child presenting with a cold
• History
• Comorbidity
• Physical examination
• Vital signs
• Parent's statement
Preoperative assessment
Runny nose
Dry cough
Watery congestion
Runny nose
Moist cough
Purulent congestion
Runny nose
Moist cough
Wheezing
Purulent congestion
Fever
Malaise
Mild cold
Moderate cold
Severe cold
Risk-benefit-ratio
☒
☑
Risk factors:
• Child < 1 year
• Passive smoking
• Pulmonal comorbidity
• Airway, ENT, eye surgery
• Endotracheal intubation
Benefit factors:
• ENT surgery strongly indicated (adenoids/tonsils infectious focus)
• Expertise of the anesthetic team in handling a child with a cold
• Parental compliance
Pretreatment with salbutamol
Proceed
Postpone ≥ 2 weeks
Anesthetic management
Avoid endotracheal intubation
Avoid desflurane
Use LMA
Use propofol
Consider lidocaine
Re-evaluation

Fig. 77.10 Proposal for decision algorithm for a child with a "cold." *ENT,* Ear, nose, and throat; *LMA,* laryngeal mask airway. (From Becke K. Anesthesia in children with a cold. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol.* 2012;25[3]:333–339.)

Videos, leaflets, and interactive computer applications are very helpful in this population. Evaluating anxiety in adolescents is particularly difficult. Despite their outwardly calm appearance, teenagers can experience high anxiety and this may steadily increase on their way from the preoperative holding area to the operating room. Risk factors to predict higher anxiety in this group include increased baseline anxiety, depression, somatizing problems, and a fearful temperament.[158]

There is a large variety of different play therapies and behavioral interventions aimed to reduce perioperative anxiety in children. Prehospitalization programs, including tours of the hospital and the operating room, videos, leaflets, and other interactive books and apps should be implemented several days before surgery to achieve the desired effects.[156,159] On the day of intervention, several distraction techniques, including tablets, arrival to the operating room in toy cars, etc., has been shown to be equivalent or even superior to pharmacological premedication in several studies.[160,161] Hypnosis, music, and nonaggressive lighting can also be used to provide a calm and soothing environment for the child upon arrival to the operating room.[155]

Various drugs can be used for pharmacological reduction of anxiety in children.[155,162] In the absence of an intravenous line, the most commonly used routes are the oral, nasal, and rectal routes in decreasing order of acceptability by most children. Midazolam is the most commonly used benzodiazepine for premedication because of its desirable profile of safety and efficacy. It is usually administered orally at a dose of 0.5 mg/kg (up to a maximum of 15 mg); after administration, sedation and anxiolysis are achieved within approximately 20 minutes. It can also be administered by the intravenous route (0.05-0.1 mg/kg) as well as by the intranasal (0.3 mg/kg) and the rectal (0.5 mg/kg) route.[154] Potential limitations of its use as an ideal drug for premedication is the potential for prolonged effect and for paradoxical reactions.[154] Agonists of α_2 adrenergic receptors are increasingly used for premedication. Clonidine can be administered both orally (4 µg/kg) or intranasally (4 µg/kg) and, albeit it has a relatively long onset time (45 minutes), its analgesic and anesthetic-sparing properties are very advantageous. Dexmedetomidine has a shorter onset and duration of action when compared with clonidine and is an interesting alternative for premedication. It has a low bioavailability when given orally (~15%) but may be more effective when given intranasally.[158] Ketamine is highly lipid soluble and is rapidly absorbed after either oral, intranasal, intramuscular, or intravenous administration. Onset of sedation occurs after 15 to 20 minutes following oral intake (5-8 mg/kg).[155] Intramuscular administration of ketamine (4-5 mg/kg) is especially useful in uncooperative and combative children when the procedure cannot be delayed or rescheduled. Premedication with ketamine, however, can be associated with hypersalivation, hyperventilation, hallucinations, and with an increased incidence of emergence delirium.[155,162] Fentanyl is rapidly absorbed by the transmucosal route and can be used for premedication as a pleasant tasting lollipop. The bioavailability by this route is 33% but is reduced if the lollipop is chewed or swallowed.[162] Side effects of fentanyl premedication include vomiting, pruritus, and respiratory depression.

PREOPERATIVE FASTING

Preoperative fasting minimizes the risk of pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents during anesthesia. Most national guidelines recommend the "6-4-2 rule" meaning a minimum of 6-hour-long fasting for solid foods, 4-hour-long fasting for breast milk, and a 2-hour-long fasting for clear fluids. These guidelines do not make any distinction between adults and children[163] and are primarily based on expert opinion, and are not backed by solid clinical evidence.[163] Adhering to these guidelines in children may pose several problems. First, in reality, fasting times often end up being much longer, and it is not uncommon to see young children fasting for clear liquids up to 12 hours or more prior to anesthesia induction.[164-166] In addition to the obvious discomfort related to hunger and thirst, these prolonged fasting times may result in hypoglycemia, metabolic acidosis, dehydration, and cardiovascular instability.[164,165] The incidence of pulmonary aspiration in otherwise healthy children is very low ($1\text{-}2/10^4$), and increasing evidence indicates that liberal clear fluid intake, at least until the point when premedication is given, does not result in increased residual gastric volume, or increase the incidence of pulmonary aspiration.[164,165] Therefore the currently applied fasting guidelines may need reevaluation. The new European consensus statement on fasting in children recommends a 1-hour-long fasting after clear fluid intake.

ANESTHESIA INDUCTION

The method of inducing anesthesia is determined by a number of factors including the medical condition of the child, the surgical procedure, the level of anxiety of the child, the child's ability to cooperate and communicate (because of age, developmental delay, or language barrier), and the presence or absence of a full stomach. As discussed above, most children are anxious prior to anesthesia induction and numerous pharmacological and nonpharmacological techniques have been proposed to alleviate this anxiety. Many of the play therapies and/or hypnotic suggestions can be continued during the anesthesia induction. Use of parental presence varies markedly between hospitals. A recent evidence-based review of the existing literature suggests that neither the child's nor the parent's anxiety is alleviated by parental presence upon anesthesia induction.[167] Nevertheless, parental presence may be important with children who have underlying behavioral problems or developmental delay (e.g., autism spectrum disorders, Down syndrome), as well as in children scheduled for repeated procedures. In these circumstances, education of the parents prior to anesthesia induction can be helpful in reducing anxiety for both the parent and child.

Both the parents and the operating room staff should be involved in the perioperative plan and management of aggressive combatant children.[155] These children are particularly anxious; they will rarely cooperate with behavioral therapies used prior to anesthesia and will often refuse to take any pharmacological premedication. Often they have had previous anesthetics; the parents can be extremely helpful in describing what works best for them. For these children, intranasal administration of premedication may be beneficial. In the absence of an existing intravenous line, intramuscular administration of ketamine (4-5 mg/kg) or inhalational induction using high concentrations of sevoflurane can be a helpful option to induce anesthesia in this population. These latter approaches necessitate physical restraint which raises ethical, legal, and practical problems. To be the most effective, restraining and holding should not be left to the parents alone, but should be performed under the direction of experienced anesthesia staff. Relative contraindications to this approach include lack of consent by parents or staff, failure to exhaust all other techniques, and when the restraint-induced stress could significantly worsen the child's state (e.g., significant cardiac comorbidities).[155,168] The option of postponing elective surgery for these children should always be considered.

The two most common anesthesia induction techniques in children are inhalational and intravenous induction. The causal relationship between the type of anesthesia induction and PRAE is poorly documented. In children with a high risk of PRAE, a retrospective study suggested a benefit of intravenous induction,[150] and this has recently been further substantiated by a randomized trial.[167] It is, nevertheless, important to note that these studies were focused only on PRAE in a group of children with increased risk for PRAE and many other factors, including the child's acceptance/fear for the establishment of an intravenous line as well as the feasibility of this approach with relative ease, should also be considered. Therefore when deciding on the induction technique, care should be taken to weigh all the relevant factors.[169]

The use of RSI to prevent pulmonary aspiration of gastric content is based on experiences in the adult population. Direct extrapolation of the "classical form" of this technique to pediatric populations may not always be the correct choice due to the anatomical and physiological differences between adults and young children.[170-172] While the classic RSI relies on adequate preoxygenation, this often cannot be achieved in uncooperative children. Even in cooperative children, preoxygenation is not as effective as it is in adult patients. Importantly, due to the low FRC, even brief periods of apnea in the absence of positive pressure ventilation can lead to profound hypoxemia and related bradycardia in this population. Administration of an intravenous agent necessitates an intravenous line, something difficult to achieve in the agitated child. Application of cricoid pressure can easily distort the airway in young children thereby rendering the visualization of glottic structures difficult. Most important, these factors may lead to a higher incidence of unsafe actions such as forced mask ventilation and unsuccessful intubation attempts.[171,172] Therefore to balance the risk of pulmonary aspiration with the much more prevalent risk of hypoxemia, controlled forms of the RSI technique have become increasingly popular among pediatric anesthesiologists.[170-172] Importantly, regurgitation and vomiting with aspiration are mostly elicited by direct laryngoscopy under light anesthesia and incomplete muscle paralysis.[173-175] While the possibility of mask induction should always be evaluated, intravenous access has to be considered mandatory in “at-risk” children.[172] Intraosseous access is a suitable alternative in this population where intravenous access cannot be established.[176] In the presence of an existing intravenous line, rapid induction of adequate hypnosis and profound muscle paralysis using a nondepolarizing muscle relaxant, gentle mask ventilation with a maximum airway pressure of 12 cm H_2O until endotracheal intubation can be performed. The adoption of such a “controlled” approach may reduce the potentially significant risk of hypoxemia while providing rapid intubating conditions.[170]

AIRWAY MANAGEMENT AND VENTILATION

Airway Management

Preoperative evaluation of the airway should be based on both the child’s medical record and clinical evaluation. A wide range of syndromic and genetic conditions and congenital malformations are associated with potential airway problems, especially those involving facial dysmorphias.[177,178] History of birth complications, obstructive sleep apnea, head and neck trauma, previous surgery, and related airway management must also be considered. During the physical examination, the anesthesiologist should check for facial dysmorphias, signs of stridor, dysphonia, swallowing disorders, difficulty in breathing, difficulty in speaking, and hoarseness.[178] There are a large number of difficult airway predictors in children but their applicability, sensitivity, and specificity vary greatly in the clinical setting. Among them, mandibular protrusion, Mallampati’s classification, movement of atlantooccipital joint, reduced mandibular space, and increased tongue thickness have all been shown to be good predictors of airway problems.[179,180] Other reported risk factors are age less than 1 year, ASA II-IV status, obesity, and maxillofacial and cardiac surgery.[181]

Appropriately performed mask ventilation is a critical component of pediatric airway management. Anesthetized children are particularly prone to upper airway collapse; it can be easily relieved by a combination of moderate head tilt, chin lift, jaw thrust, and the application of continuous positive airway pressure.[182,183] The combination of these maneuvers with lateral decubitus position can further improve airway patency.[184] Additionally, both oropharyngeal and nasopharyngeal airway devices can be used during spontaneous or positive pressure mask ventilation to further relieve airway obstruction caused by the posterior displacement of the tongue in anesthetized children.[185,186]

A large variety of supraglottic airway devices are now commonly used in pediatric anesthesia. The two most popular among these are the classic laryngeal mask airway (LMA) and the LMA ProSeal.[183] Both devices have comparable safety and efficacy profiles in pediatric populations.[187] Increasing evidence suggests that the use of the LMA in children is associated with a decreased incidence of perioperative respiratory complications when compared to endotracheal tube insertion.[188]

Direct laryngoscopy is still the most frequently used technique for intubation in children. Because of the diverse ages and size of the pediatric patient population, any hospital that cares for children must have a full selection of both curved and straight laryngoscope blades to ensure that the blade most appropriate for the child is readily available. In general, since the epiglottis is more “U” shaped in young children and it may lie across the glottic opening, straight blades are routinely used in neonates and toddlers to directly elevate the epiglottis and visualize the vocal cords. Older children can be managed with either curved or straight blades. An ever-increasing number of devices have been developed over the past decade to facilitate endotracheal intubation.[189] Among them, videolaryngoscopy has been initially introduced as an aid for difficult airway management, and it may even replace the use of flexible fibroscopy in an increasing number of indications.[190] The use of videolaryngoscopy in everyday routine airway management is also increasing. Indeed, these devices enable a better and faster glottic visualization thereby reducing the time of intubation, the number of attempts, as well as dental trauma. It is, however, important to note that each type of videolaryngoscope requires a particular technique, and that technique can vary considerably between devices.[189] While awake fiberoptic intubation is generally considered as the gold standard for the known or anticipated difficult airway in adults, this option is usually not feasible in children due to the need for significant cooperation during the procedure. Most pediatric anesthesiologists prefer the use of inhalational induction in the case of predicted difficult airway and perform flexible fibroscopy-aided intubation under spontaneous ventilation in the anesthetized child.[191]

The use of cuffed endotracheal tubes has become increasingly common in neonates, infants, and young children.[183] Historically, uncuffed endotracheal tubes were recommended in children less than 8 years of age, because it was thought that the narrowest part of the airway was the cricoid ring and to minimize potential cuff-induced damage of the tracheal mucosa as well as to allow reduction of air flow resistance by inserting a larger size tube.[192] Airway trauma can also occur when using an uncuffed tube with acceptable leak pressures. Moreover, a higher incidence of laryngospasm with the use of uncuffed tubes has also been reported, and there is no data of increased subglottic airway trauma when cuffed versus uncuffed tubes are used.[178] A cuffed tube with no leak may also allow a more accurate estimate of end tidal carbon dioxide (CO_2) concentrations and avoid pollution of the operating room. Last but not least, the relatively frequent need for changing the endotracheal tubes due to significant leak associated with insertion of an uncuffed tube is also virtually eliminated by using cuffed tubes. Repeat laryngoscopy is avoided since inflating the cuff may allow insertion of a smaller tube and using the cuff to occlude the airway without the need for replacing the tube with a larger tube. At the same time, care must be exercised when using a cuffed tube since smaller diameter tracheal tubes may become more easily kinked or obstructed by secretions.

The incidence of an unexpected difficult pediatric airway is low compared to adults but may still result in major morbidity and mortality.[193] As a result, although sparse high-quality evidence is available on pediatric airway management, there is a general expert consensus that adult guidelines are not designed for use in young children. The recent international guidelines for the management of unanticipated difficult airway in pediatric practice is the result of a Delphi panel expert discussion and is focusing on airway management in children between 1 year and 8 years of age.[193] Three scenarios are identified: (a) difficult mask ventilation, (b) difficult tracheal intubation, and (c) cannot intubate and cannot ventilate in paralyzed anesthetized children. Detailed guidance for each of these scenarios is provided (Fig. 77.11). These guidelines were developed specifically for the nonspecialist anesthesiologist and can be adapted to the specificities of the anesthesia service taking care of children. Most importantly, each area for anesthetizing children should have access to a specific difficult airway trolley with appropriate equipment as well as a written plan of difficult airway algorithms along with a plan for whom to call for help, should an anesthesiologist need additional help in managing an unanticipated difficult pediatric airway.[194]

The Child With Stridor

A child with intrathoracic airway obstruction has expiratory stridor and prolonged expiration (e.g., bronchiolitis, asthma, intrathoracic foreign body).[195] In contrast, a child with extrathoracic upper airway obstruction has inspiratory stridor (e.g., epiglottitis, laryngotracheobronchitis, laryngeal, subglottic foreign body). When agitated or crying, such children exhibit dynamic collapse of the airway (Fig. 77.12), which can significantly worsen airway obstruction and lead to respiratory failure and hypoxemia. Therefore events that can upset the child, such as drawing of blood for analysis of gases, venipuncture for blood tests, and separation from parents, must be minimized. The difficult-airway cart should also be present. The surgical team should be mobilized and prepared to perform an emergency tracheotomy should total airway obstruction occur and mask ventilation or tracheal intubation not be possible.

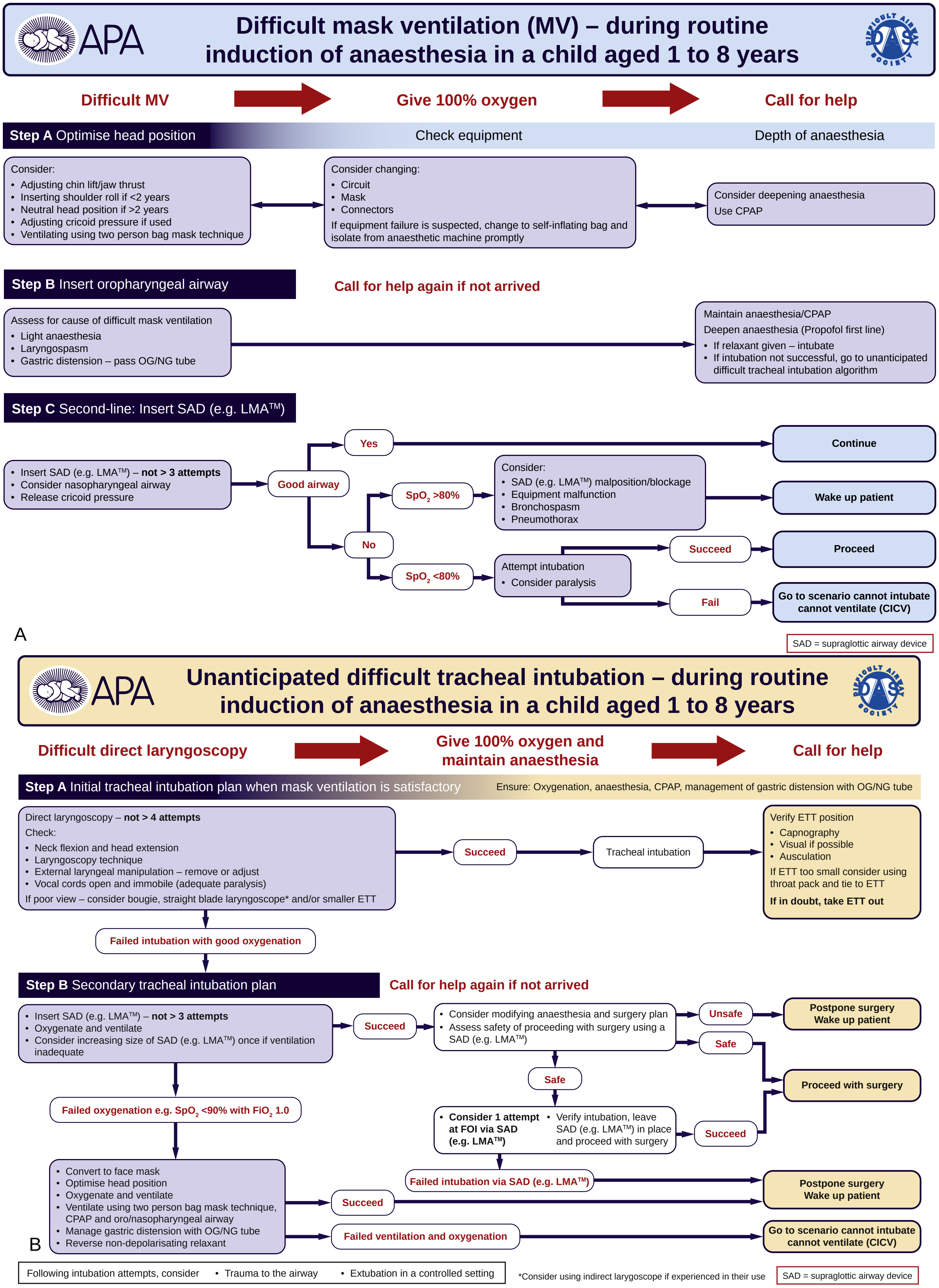
When inducing anesthesia in a child with stridor the following is suggested. To minimize upsetting the child, the child is brought to the operating room with the mother or father, who holds the child during induction (preferably lying down in a semi-upright position). Induction of anesthesia with sevoflurane in oxygen by mask is the preferred method because maintaining spontaneous respirations is critical. If the stridor worsens or mild laryngospasm occurs, then the pop-off valve is sufficiently closed to develop 10 to 15 cm H_2O of positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP). This procedure relieves most instances of airway obstruction caused by dynamic collapse of the airway and loss of pharyngeal muscle tone when the child attempts to inspire against an obstructed airway (Fig. 77.13). As the level of anesthesia deepens, gentle assistance with ventilation may be necessary; however, maintaining spontaneous respiratory effort is important if possible.

Any child with airway obstruction will have a long, slow induction of anesthesia before becoming sufficiently anesthetized to permit laryngoscopy and tracheal intubation. The issue of a full stomach is secondary to the airway problem. Rapid induction of anesthesia and paralysis is contraindicated in these children. A child with laryngotracheobronchitis or epiglottitis usually requires an uncuffed tracheal tube that is 0.5 to 1.0 mm internal diameter smaller than normal (Table 77.6); the use of a stylet facilitates its insertion.

Ventilation Strategies

Details of respiratory care, ventilator modalities, and setting are reviewed in Chapter 41 (Respiratory Care). There is a paucity of evidence to guide optimal pediatric ventilation practices for patients either with or without lung injury.[196] As a result, when pediatric anesthesiologists determine ventilator settings deemed optimal for any individual patient, they take into account available adult data, the age-specific anatomic and physiological differences between the young and the adult lung, as well as their own personal experience. In adults, it is increasingly recognized that mechanical ventilation can cause injury to the lung (ventilator-induced lung injury [VILI]) even in healthy patients, and the importance of volutrauma via higher than physiologic tidal volumes in this pathology is now established.[197] The clinical relevance of VILI in pediatric populations is not clear. No study has examined the relationship between modalities of mechanical ventilation during pediatric anesthesia and patient outcome. A recent meta-analysis demonstrated no relationship between tidal volume and mortality in mechanically ventilated patients in the pediatric ICU irrespective of the severity of disease.[198] Therefore it may be that the susceptibility to VILI is age-dependent.[196] No evidence-based recommendation can be made on the optimal tidal volume in pediatric ventilation; however, it may be argued that a tidal volume between 6 and 10 mL/kg is justifiable but a tidal volume more than 10 mL/kg should be avoided.[199] The effects of inspiratory pressures in pediatric patients with healthy lungs have not been studied but data from children with acute lung injury suggest a direct relationship between peak inspiratory pressures and mortality.[200] Thus pressure-controlled ventilation (PCV) with a decelerative flow may be favored over volume-controlled ventilation with a continuous inspiratory flow pattern.[196,201] One obvious disadvantage of PCV is the lack of volume guarantee since the resulting tidal volume will depend on the compliance and the resistance of the respiratory system. Monitoring pressure and flow curves are therefore essential components of mechanical ventilation. New ventilators are now providing us with ventilatory modes combining PCV with volume guarantee.[201]

PEEP is an important part of protective lung ventilation strategies, and is aimed to prevent atelectasis via stabilization of recruited alveoli.[196,201] The optimal PEEP in pediatric ventilation is undetermined but is routinely set at a level of 5 cm H_2O.[201] Higher levels of PEEP (exceeding 10-15 cm H_2O) may be necessary in case of lung injury. However, care should be exercised when increasing the PEEP to avoid hemodynamic compromise as a result of the higher intrathoracic pressure. PEEP should always be carefully titrated



Difficult mask ventilation (MV) – during routine induction of anaesthesia in a child aged 1 to 8 years

Difficult MV → **Give 100% oxygen** → **Call for help**

Step A Optimise head position — Check equipment — Depth of anaesthesia

Consider:
- Adjusting chin lift/jaw thrust
- Inserting shoulder roll if <2 years
- Neutral head position if >2 years
- Adjusting cricoid pressure if used
- Ventilating using two person bag mask technique

Consider changing:
- Circuit
- Mask
- Connectors

If equipment failure is suspected, change to self-inflating bag and isolate from anaesthetic machine promptly

Consider deepening anaesthesia
Use CPAP

Step B Insert oropharyngeal airway

Call for help again if not arrived

Assess for cause of difficult mask ventilation
- Light anaesthesia
- Laryngospasm
- Gastric distension – pass OG/NG tube

Maintain anaesthesia/CPAP
Deepen anaesthesia (Propofol first line)
- If relaxant given – intubate
- If intubation not successful, go to unanticipated difficult tracheal intubation algorithm

Step C Second-line: Insert SAD (e.g. LMA^{TM})

- Insert SAD (e.g. LMA^{TM}) – **not > 3 attempts**
- Consider nasopharyngeal airway
- Release cricoid pressure

Consider:
- SAD (e.g. LMA^{TM}) malposition/blockage
- Equipment malfunction
- Bronchospasm
- Pneumothorax

Attempt intubation
- Consider paralysis

Go to scenario cannot intubate cannot ventilate (CICV)

SAD = supraglottic airway device

Unanticipated difficult tracheal intubation – during routine induction of anaesthesia in a child aged 1 to 8 years

Difficult direct laryngoscopy → **Give 100% oxygen and maintain anaesthesia** → **Call for help**

Step A Initial tracheal intubation plan when mask ventilation is satisfactory — Ensure: Oxygenation, anaesthesia, CPAP, management of gastric distension with OG/NG tube

Direct laryngoscopy – **not > 4 attempts**
Check:
- Neck flexion and head extension
- Laryngoscopy technique
- External laryngeal manipulation – remove or adjust
- Vocal cords open and immobile (adequate paralysis)

If poor view – consider bougie, straight blade laryngoscope* and/or smaller ETT

Verify ETT position
- Capnography
- Visual if possible
- Auscultation

If ETT too small consider using throat pack and tie to ETT

If in doubt, take ETT out

Failed intubation with good oxygenation

Step B Secondary tracheal intubation plan

Call for help again if not arrived

- Insert SAD (e.g. LMA^{TM}) – **not > 3 attempts**
- Oxygenate and ventilate
- Consider increasing size of SAD (e.g. LMA^{TM}) once if ventilation inadequate

- Consider modifying anaesthesia and surgery plan
- Assess safety of proceeding with surgery using a SAD (e.g. LMA^{TM})

Postpone surgery
Wake up patient

Proceed with surgery

- **Consider 1 attempt at FOI via SAD (e.g. LMA^{TM})**
- Verify intubation, leave SAD (e.g. LMA^{TM}) in place and proceed with surgery

Failed oxygenation e.g. SpO$_2$ <90% with FiO$_2$ 1.0

Failed intubation via SAD (e.g. LMA^{TM})

Postpone surgery
Wake up patient

- Convert to face mask
- Optimise head position
- Oxygenate and ventilate
- Ventilate using two person bag mask technique, CPAP and oro/nasopharyngeal airway
- Manage gastric distension with OG/NG tube
- Reverse non-depolarising relaxant

Failed ventilation and oxygenation

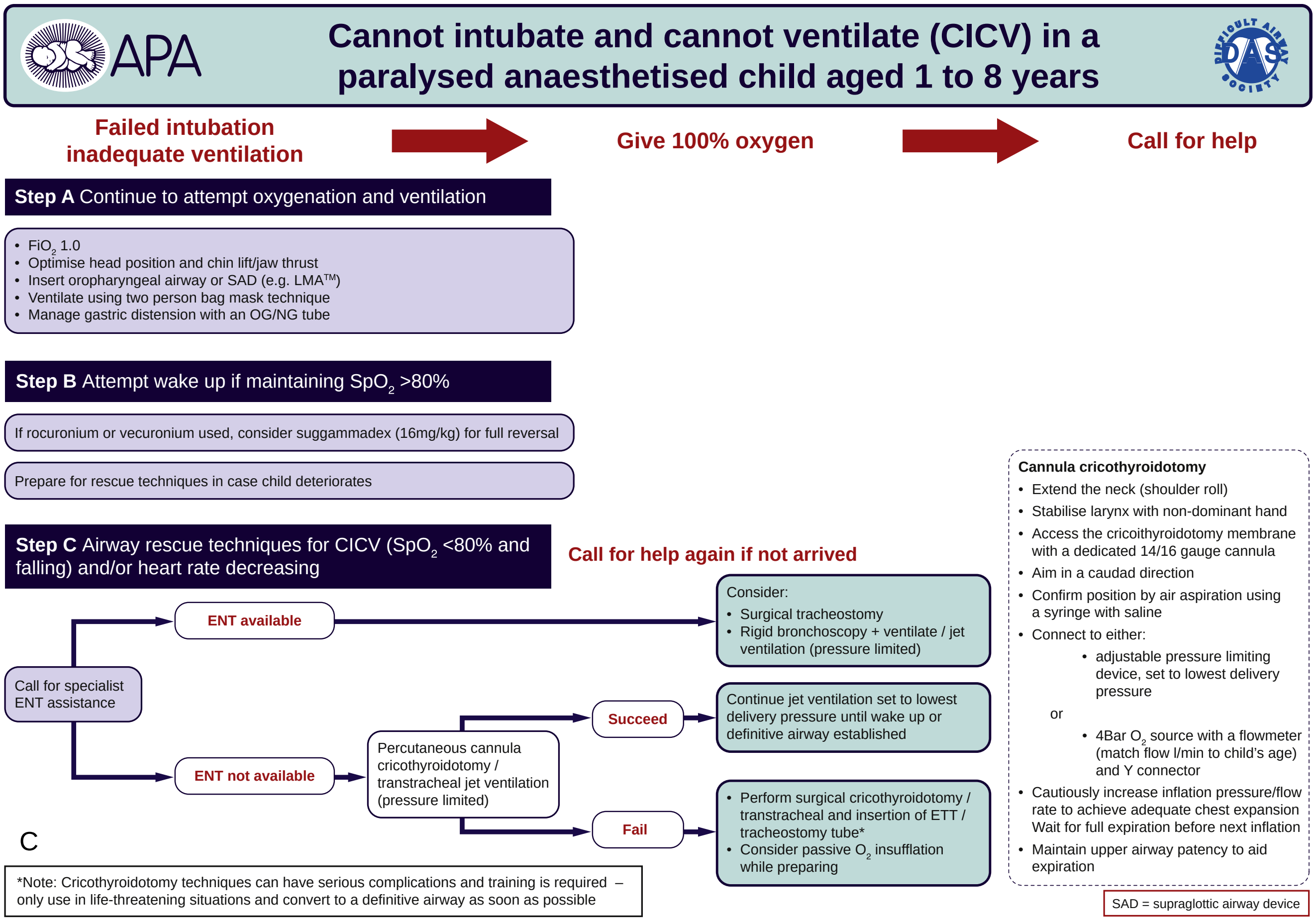
Go to scenario cannot intubate cannot ventilate (CICV)

Following intubation attempts, consider • Trauma to the airway • Extubation in a controlled setting

*Consider using indirect larygoscope if experienced in their use

SAD = supraglottic airway device

Fig. 77.11 Difficult airway algorithms in children aged 1 to 8 years. (A) Guideline for the management of unanticipated difficult mask ventilation. (B) Guideline for the management of the unanticipated tracheal intubation during routine induction of anesthesia.



APA

Cannot intubate and cannot ventilate (CICV) in a paralysed anaesthetised child aged 1 to 8 years

Failed intubation inadequate ventilation → **Give 100% oxygen** → **Call for help**

Step A Continue to attempt oxygenation and ventilation

- FiO_2 1.0
- Optimise head position and chin lift/jaw thrust
- Insert oropharyngeal airway or SAD (e.g. LMA™)
- Ventilate using two person bag mask technique
- Manage gastric distension with an OG/NG tube

Step B Attempt wake up if maintaining SpO_2 >80%

If rocuronium or vecuronium used, consider suggammadex (16mg/kg) for full reversal

Prepare for rescue techniques in case child deteriorates

Step C Airway rescue techniques for CICV (SpO_2 <80% and falling) and/or heart rate decreasing

Call for help again if not arrived

Call for specialist ENT assistance

ENT available → Consider:
- Surgical tracheostomy
- Rigid bronchoscopy + ventilate / jet ventilation (pressure limited)

ENT not available → Percutaneous cannula cricothyroidotomy / transtracheal jet ventilation (pressure limited)

Succeed → Continue jet ventilation set to lowest delivery pressure until wake up or definitive airway established

Fail →
- Perform surgical cricothyroidotomy / transtracheal and insertion of ETT / tracheostomy tube*
- Consider passive O_2 insufflation while preparing

Cannula cricothyroidotomy
- Extend the neck (shoulder roll)
- Stabilise larynx with non-dominant hand
- Access the cricoithyroidotomy membrane with a dedicated 14/16 gauge cannula
- Aim in a caudad direction
- Confirm position by air aspiration using a syringe with saline
- Connect to either:
    - adjustable pressure limiting device, set to lowest delivery pressure

  or
    - 4Bar O_2 source with a flowmeter (match flow l/min to child's age) and Y connector
- Cautiously increase inflation pressure/flow rate to achieve adequate chest expansion Wait for full expiration before next inflation
- Maintain upper airway patency to aid expiration

C

*Note: Cricothyroidotomy techniques can have serious complications and training is required – only use in life-threatening situations and convert to a definitive airway as soon as possible

SAD = supraglottic airway device

Fig. 77.11—cont'd (C) Guideline for the management of can't intubate, can't ventilate *(CICV)* when there is a failure to intubate and failure to adequately ventilate an anesthetized and paralyzed child. (From Black AE, Flynn PE, Smith HL, et al. Development of a guideline for the management of the unanticipated difficult airway in pediatric practice. *Paediatr Anaesth.* 2015;25[4]:346–362.)

to achieve an optimal balance between hemodynamics and ventilation.[196]

Equipment dead space, defined as any portion of the anesthesia circuit in which there is a bidirectional gas flow without gas exchange, is more significant in children than adults.[201] The circuit dead space adds to the anatomic and physiologic dead space and, as a result, particularly in smaller patients may be the greatest contributor to an increase in the dead space to tidal volume ratio which, in turn, can lead to an increase in $PaCO_2$.[202] Therefore every effort should be made to minimize apparatus dead space, especially in neonates and infants.

EQUIPMENT AND MONITORING

Standards for basic anesthesia monitoring are the same for adults and children. These monitoring modalities include the presence of qualified anesthesia personnel in the operating room during the whole duration of the procedure as well as equipment to monitor the patient's oxygenation, ventilation, circulation, and temperature. The need for additional monitoring, above these minimal requirements, will depend on the child's condition and on the type of surgery. Much of the equipment used in adults is not suitable for children. Pediatric anesthesia may involve caring for children that range from a neonate of a few hundred grams weight to an adult-sized adolescent; therefore there should be a full range of sizes of pediatric equipment available and an anesthesiologist with pediatric anesthesia experience should be responsible for the organization of these items.[203] A resuscitation cart with equipment appropriate for pediatric patients of all ages, including pediatric defibrillation paddles, is needed. Resuscitation cardiac drugs should be available in appropriate concentrations and a written pediatric dose schedule for these drugs should also be included. Pediatric-specific cognitive aids for the diagnosis/treatment of the most common emergencies and critical conditions should be immediately available both in the operating room and in the PACU. Airway equipment for all pediatric age groups should include ventilation masks, supraglottic airway devices, tracheal tubes, oral and nasopharyngeal airways, as well as laryngoscopes with pediatric blades. A separate, fully stocked difficult airway cart containing specialized equipment for the management of the difficult pediatric airway along with institution-specific difficult airway algorithm should also be available. A 20% lipid emulsion should readily be accessible to treat local anesthetic systemic toxicity in any location where regional blocks are performed. Most importantly, an anesthesiologist with experience in pediatric perioperative care should be immediately available to evaluate and treat any critical anesthesia event in a child.

There have been considerable improvements and greater options for equipment and monitoring for children over the past decade.[189,204] The development of a large array of videolaryngoscopes has fundamentally changed both the notion of and the approaches to the difficult airway in institutions where these devices are available.[189] Equipment aimed to facilitate the often-challenging venous access in children include near-infrared and ultrasound devices. Near-infrared devices use the principle that near-infrared light penetrates the skin and is principally absorbed by hemoglobin which, in turn, helps to visualize veins of even small diameters. While these devices have been available for several years, there is still a paucity of evidence that they can reduce either the time or the success rate of venous cannulation in children.[189] In contrast, ultrasound-guided central venous access in children is faster, has a higher success rate, and a reduced complication rate compared to traditional landmark techniques, and has consequently become a standard of care.[205] Ultrasound can also be useful for peripheral venous cannulation in children with difficult venous access.[206] Tablets and smartphones can be useful as distraction techniques during venous cannulation and other stressful times for children during the perioperative period.[189,207] An increasing number of pediatric anesthesia *apps* are also available to assist with calculations and algorithms when managing a diverse group of patients and to ensure appropriate drug dosages and equipment selection.[189]

Continuous cardiac output monitoring is also increasingly used in children. Currently available options are based on the principles of Doppler, electrical impedance methods, measures of cardiac output adequacy, or pulse contour analysis. Transesophageal Doppler probes are validated against thermodilution, Fick, and dye dilution techniques for children as small as 3 kg.[208] Changes in thoracic electrical bioimpedance, as a result of changes in blood volume and flow, and blood cell orientation can be used for continuous noninvasive monitoring of cardiac output and other cardiac parameters. The ICON monitor (Cardiotronic/Osypka Medical Inc., La Jolla, CA, USA) is a portable noninvasive

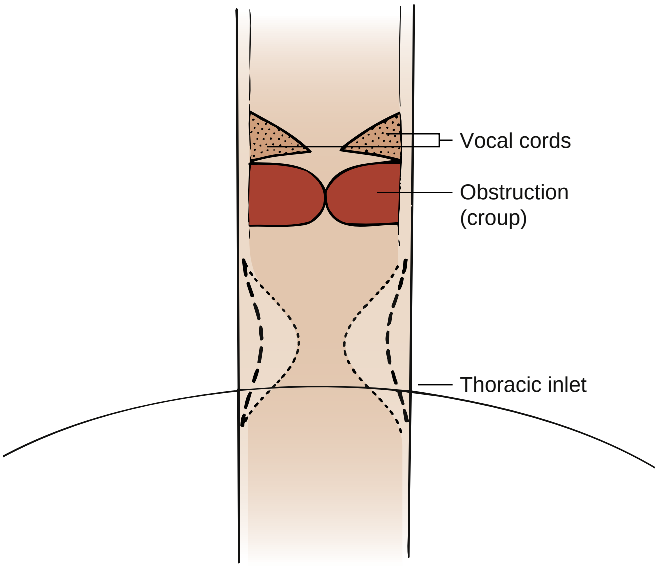


Fig. 77.12 Infants and young children have highly compliant airway structures. With normal respiration, some dynamic collapse of the extrathoracic upper airway occurs *(broken line)*. When a child has upper airway obstruction, as in epiglottitis, laryngotracheobronchitis, or extrathoracic foreign body *(dark brown)*, and struggles to breathe against this obstruction, dynamic collapse of the trachea increases. This increase in dynamic collapse *(dotted line)* augments the mechanical obstruction of the airway. Therefore until the airway is secured, avoiding procedures that will upset the child is important. (Modified from Coté CJ, Lerman J, Anderson BJ, eds. *A Practice of Anesthesia for Infants and Children.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2013.)

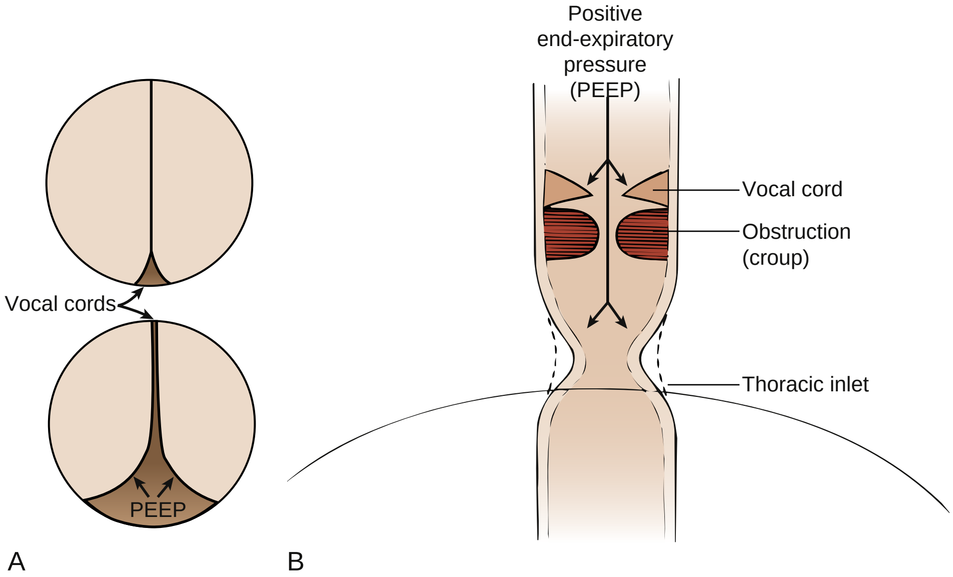


Fig. 77.13 When a child has upper airway obstruction caused by laryngospasm (A) *(top)* or mechanical obstruction (B), application of approximately 10 to 15 cm H_2O of positive end-expiratory pressure *(PEEP) (arrows)* during spontaneous breathing often relieves the obstruction. PEEP helps keep the vocal cords separated (A) *(bottom)* and the airway open (B) *(broken lines)*. If this simple maneuver does not relieve the obstruction, then more vigorous positive-pressure ventilation may be necessary. Airway obstruction caused by the tongue requires insertion of an appropriately sized oral airway.

TABLE 77.6 Recommended Sizes and Distance of Insertion of Endotracheal Tubes and Laryngoscope Blades for Use in Pediatric Patients

Age of Patient	Internal Diameter of Endotracheal Tube (mm)	Recommended Size of Laryngoscope Straight Blade	Distance of Insertion* (cm)
Preterm (<1250 g)	2.5 uncuffed	0	6-7
Full term	3.0-3.5 uncuffed	0-1	8-10
3 months-1 year	3.5-4.0 cuffed	1	11
2 years	4.5-5.0 cuffed	1-1.5	12
6 years	5.0-5.5 cuffed	1.5-2	15
10 years	6.0-6.5 cuffed	2-3	17
18 years	7.0-8.0 cuffed	3	19

*Inserting the endotracheal tube these distances from the alveolar ridge of the mandible or maxilla usually places the distal end of the tube in the midtrachea.

cardiac output monitor that is based on the principle of electrical velocimetry. This device has been validated against the Fick equation, thermodilution, and echocardiography in pediatric populations ranging from neonates to adolescents.[208] Cardiac output monitors based on pulse contour analysis use complex algorithms to calculate cardiac output from the shape of the arterial blood pressure waveform. They usually require calibration based on an arterial line and the majority of these devices have not been validated in children.[189] Pulse oximetry-based noninvasive hemoglobin determination is an appealing possibility but still needs to be validated in pediatric populations.[204]

Near-infrared spectroscopy (NIRS) uses principles similar to those of pulse oximetry to measure tissue hemoglobin oxygenation. NIRS monitoring can be used to monitor oxygenation and thus indirectly, the blood flow and supply-demand relationship in multiple organs, including the brain, liver, kidney, intestines, and muscles. Evidence that NIRS improves outcomes is lacking, as it is for many of the monitoring devices, but there is certainly potential for its use in goal-directed interventions to reduce organ hypoxemia and ischemia.[204,209]

There is so far little evidence that intraoperative EEG monitoring improves outcomes in children. It is, nevertheless, important to note that neuromorbidity, unless overt, is very difficult to detect. BIS monitoring has been successfully used in older children to decrease the total amount of anesthesia drugs delivered and to enhance recovery.[210] The utility of BIS in infants, particularly those less than 6 months old, is questionable as there is little correlation between BIS values and other measures of depth of anesthesia in these populations.[210] More recently developed approaches, such as spectral frequency analysis, could be interesting in this regard but future work is still necessary to validate these methods.[211]

SAFETY ISSUES

Perioperative mortality in neonates and infants is several fold higher when compared to older children.[212] It is important to realize that, in these populations, increased mortality is not synonymous with anesthesia-related mortality, since anesthesia-related death rarely occurs in children who do not have significant associated medical comorbidities. Nevertheless, critical events that could potentially lead to mortality or significant and lasting morbidity can be a direct consequence of anesthesia management. There are three major approaches that can identify adverse outcomes in pediatric perioperative care: (1) institutional audits; (2) closed claims analysis; and (3) large-scale registries of anesthesia-related cardiac arrest. Each of these approaches has strengths and limitations in terms of size, reporting bias, and varying definitions but they all identify young age (i.e., infants), ASA III-V status, and emergency surgery as principal risk factors for critical events. The critical events are most often cardiac and/or respiratory. According to the POCA, the most common causes of perioperative cardiac arrest in children are cardiac in origin including, in a decreasing order of frequency, hypovolemia, myocardial ischemia, hyperkalemia, and sudden arrhythmias.[56] Respiratory causes include laryngospasm, inadequate oxygenation, and difficult intubation.[56] Based on analysis of closed claims, it has been suggested that critical events leading to serious respiratory morbidity have decreased since the introduction of minimal monitoring standards.[213]

There is circumstantial evidence suggesting an association between the level of expertise in pediatric anesthesia and perioperative morbidity. Indeed, the incidence of respiratory complications has been repeatedly reported to be dependent on the anesthesiologist's experience.[150,214-216] There is also a relationship between perioperative complications and the number of pediatric anesthetics provided by the anesthesiologist.[217,218] Specific training for pediatric anesthesia and maintaining a suitable volume of experience of pediatric anesthesia has therefore been recommended for those providing anesthesia care to children.[219,220]

FLUID MANAGEMENT

Perioperative fluid management raises important challenges in pediatric populations. Hypovolemia, often underestimated, is the most common cause of perioperative cardiac arrest in children.[55] Administration of solutes with inappropriate composition or at an exceedingly high rate can also result in significant morbidity and mortality. The rapidly evolving age-specific changes in metabolism, extracellular fluid volume, and fluid turnover do not allow the direct extrapolation of adult guidelines to children, neither do they permit the generation of simplified recommendations that are broadly applicable to all pediatric age groups.

Given these difficulties, the availability of evidence-based recommendations is scarce while expert opinions dominate. Although no unequivocal consensus has been reached between experts, the concept of perioperative fluid management in children has undergone important changes over the past decade.

The three major goals of perioperative fluid management are (1) to meet maintenance requirements; (2) to replace preoperative deficits; and (3) to compensate for ongoing losses occurring during the perioperative period. The most commonly used basic fluid maintenance formula in pediatric anesthesia practice is based on the relationship between physiologic fluid loss and caloric expenditure,[221] and has been evolved into the so-called "4-2-1" rule which is a weight-based formula stating that the hourly fluid requirements of children are 4 mL/kg for the first 10 kg of body weight followed by 2 mL/kg between 10 to 20 kg and 1 mL for each additional kg of body weight above 20 kg.[222] It is widely accepted that this formula overestimates the maintenance requirements for sick children. There is also an ongoing debate on how to compensate for preoperative fluid deficits.[223] The reason behind this incertitude is that perioperative studies to guide and determine optimal fluid status in children are lacking. One of the simplest options to decrease preoperative fluid deficits is to minimize preoperative fasting times for clear liquids.[164] Previously it was recommended to calculate and replace the preoperative fasting deficit based on the "4-2-1" rule, or to provide a bolus of 25 mL/kg for children younger than 3 years of age and 25 mL/kg over 3 years of age. Recently, the German guidelines, widely adopted in Europe, state that "the background infusion may be initiated with an initial infusion rate of 10 mL/kg/h and be adjusted to the actual requirement during the further course."[224] Moreover, in case of apparent clinical signs of dehydration, these guidelines recommend 10 mL/kg fluid bolus for every percent of estimated dehydration.[224] The amount of fluids needed for ongoing losses during the perioperative period largely depends on the type of procedure as well as on the pathological state of the child. It can easily be as high as 10 to 15 mL/kg/h and, in some specific cases such as burns or extensive neonatal abdominal surgery, can exceed 50 mL/kg/h.[223] Individualized goal-directed fluid management using a combination of hemodynamic monitoring approaches is of utmost importance to meet these goals.

Fluid management of term and preterm infants must also take into account other variables. The amount of insensible water loss is inversely proportional to gestational age. The younger and more physically immature the infant, the higher the skin permeability, the ratio of body surface area to weight, and the metabolic demand. In addition, the use of radiant warmers and phototherapy increases insensible water loss. On the other hand, preservation of body heat with warming devices reduces insensible water loss. The fact that the neonatal kidney is unable to excrete large amounts of excess water or electrolytes must also be considered. As described earlier, the volume of extracellular fluid in a newborn is relatively large. During the first days of life, some of this excess water is excreted. Therefore term newborns have reduced fluid requirements for the first week of life. The daily fluid requirements for a term newborn in the days after birth are estimated to be 70 mL/kg on day 1, 80 mL/kg on day 3, 90 mL/kg on day 5, and 120 mL/kg on day 7. Daily fluid requirements would be slightly higher for preterm infants. Sodium and potassium concentrations are usually kept at 2 to 3 mEq/100 mL and routine serial monitoring of plasma sodium levels are mandatory.

The question of what kind of fluid to administer is at least as important as the amount of fluid. There has been major change in our consideration over the past decade in this regard. Based on the electrolyte composition of either human or cow milk, the original publication from Holliday and Segar defined the daily electrolyte requirements as 2 mEq/100 kcal/day for both potassium and chloride and 3 mEq/100 kcal/day for sodium.[221] This electrolyte administration regimen, along with the "4-2-1" rule, resulted in the frequent administration of excessive quantities of hypotonic fluid solution that, in turn, led to hyponatremia, seizures, cerebral edema, and death. Children are particularly susceptible to cerebral edema with acute hyponatremia. Hospital acquired hyponatremia may occur rapidly in children and may present initially as vomiting and drowsiness.[225] A recent meta-analysis and a large randomized trial convincingly demonstrate that isotonic intravenous maintenance fluids with sodium concentrations similar to that of plasma reduce the risk of hyponatremia when compared with hypotonic intravenous fluids.[226,227] Therefore to maintain homeostasis during the perioperative period, crystalloids should be administered in isotonic compositions.[223,224] Since the composition of the extracellular fluid is comparable between all age groups from newborns to the elderly, the same solutions for infusion can be used in children as for adults (see also Chapter 47). It is, nevertheless, important to note that both hyponatremia and hypernatremia can still develop in children receiving isotonic saline solutions, and routine serial checking of serum sodium concentrations in children undergoing prolonged or extensive interventions is advised.[225]

The use of perioperative dextrose solutions for pediatric populations has undergone important changes over the past decades.[223] Initially, administration of intraoperative dextrose administration was a common practice in pediatric anesthesia care in an attempt to avoid hypoglycemia and its related consequences. It is now, however, well established that the incidence of preoperative hypoglycemia is less than 2.5% and is usually associated with fasting periods well exceeding currently recommended fasting guidelines.[228] On the other hand, the use of 5% dextrose-containing fluid during surgery in pediatric patients has led to hyperglycemia which, in turn, can also lead to increased morbidity and mortality.[228,229] Therefore a growing consensus is that routine administration of dextrose is not necessary in otherwise healthy children receiving anesthesia.[223] The addition of dextrose is important for selected patient populations. Those at highest risk of hypoglycemia include children receiving hyperalimentation as well as those with endocrine/metabolic diseases. In these individuals, adjusting the rate of glucose infusion based on routine blood glucose monitoring is recommended. Neonates and infants also need dextrose supplementation during anesthesia surgery albeit at a lower rate than their normal maintenance requirements.[228,229] The use of 1% to 2.5% dextrose-containing isotonic solutions for intraoperative maintenance in neonates and infants appears to be the best option while serial blood glucose measurements are needed to maintain blood glucose levels in the optimal range.[224,229]

In the absence of well-controlled studies with clearly defined endpoints, there is currently no evidence supporting the role of crystalloids versus colloids in perioperative fluid loss replacement and volume expansion in neonatal and pediatric populations.[223,230] Historically, albumin has been considered as the gold standard for maintenance of colloid osmotic pressure in infants and neonates, and is still the most frequently used plasma expander in these populations. Nevertheless, data supporting the continued use of albumin for general fluid resuscitation in children are lacking. Nonprotein synthetic colloids such as hydroxyethyl starch (HES), gelatin, and dextrans have also been used as plasma expanders in children. While a prospective observational drug safety trial using a third-generation HES revealed no serious adverse drug reactions, such as anaphylaxis, renal failure, or clotting disorder in children with normal renal and clotting function, further studies are needed before presuming safety in patients with renal failure or those at increased risk of bleeding.[223,231] Both the efficacy, in terms of intravascular volume expansion, and the safety profile of HES has been reported comparable to albumin in the setting of pediatric cardiac surgery.[232] Gelatins are polypeptides produced by degradation of bovine collagen. Although the initial formulations of this product induced a high incidence of hypersensitivity reactions, a more recent trial was unable to show evidence of any short- or long-term adverse effects.[233,234] Dextrans are water-soluble glucose polymers. Although these molecules have excellent colloid oncotic powers, they probably should not be used because of their negative coagulation effects and high anaphylactic potential.[223]

Transfusion guidelines for nonneonatal pediatric patients are similar to those for adults.[235] Some precautions, however, should be considered, especially in case of massive transfusion. When caring for children, the emphasis should be on blood volume and percentage loss of blood volume, rather than specific units of blood, since a unit of blood may constitute several blood volumes in a preterm infant, but only a fraction of the blood volume of a robust teenager. These considerations govern the calculation of the maximal allowable blood loss (MABL) resulting in an acceptable hematocrit. MABL takes into account the effect of patient age, weight, and starting hematocrit on blood volume. In general, blood volume is approximately 100 to 120 mL/kg for a preterm infant, 90 mL/kg for a full-term infant, 70 to 80 mL/kg for a child 3 to 12 months old, and 70 mL/kg for a child older than 1 year of age. These volumes are merely estimates of blood volume. The individual child's blood volume is calculated by simple proportion by multiplying the child's weight by the estimated blood volume (EBV) per kilogram. Although several formulas are available, a simple relationship is easiest to remember:

$$\text{MABL} = \frac{\text{EBV} \times (\text{Starting hematocrit} - \text{Target hematocrit})}{\text{Starting hematocrit}}$$

Thus if a 3-year-old child weighs 15 kg and has a starting hematocrit of 38% and if clinical judgment estimates the desired postoperative hematocrit to be 25%, then the calculation would be as follows:

$$\text{MABL} = [(15 \times 70) \times (38 - 25)]/38 = 360 \text{ mL}$$

The MABL would be replaced with 3 mL of lactated Ringer solution per milliliter of blood loss; that is, 3 mL of lactated Ringer solution times the 360 mL of blood loss equals approximately 1080 mL of lactated Ringer solution. If blood loss is less than or equal to the MABL and no further significant blood loss occurs or is anticipated in the postoperative period, then there is no need for transfusion of packed red blood cells (PRBCs). If, however, significant postoperative bleeding occurs or is anticipated, then a discussion with the surgeon can be very helpful in defining and preparing for the potential transfusion needs. Normally, a child who has had adequate replacement of intravascular volume deficits will tolerate anemia very well. In most cases, there is sufficient time to make the decision to transfuse by observing postoperative urinary output, heart rate, respiratory rate, and overall cardiovascular stability. Unfortunately, no one formula permits a definitive decision. The development of lactic acidosis is a late sign of inadequate oxygen-carrying capacity.

If the child has reached the MABL and significantly more blood loss is expected during surgery, then the child should receive PRBCs in sufficient quantity to maintain the hematocrit in the 20% to 25% range. The entire loss of red cell mass should not be replaced unless clinically indicated if these additional PRBCs would expose the child to additional units of blood products. Hematocrit values in the low 20% range are generally well tolerated by most children, the exception being preterm infants, term newborns, and children with cyanotic congenital heart disease or those with respiratory failure in need of high oxygen-carrying capacity. Older children with a history of sickle cell disease may require preoperative transfusion and should be managed in conjunction with their attending hematologist.

The indications and contraindications for the transfusion of fresh frozen plasma (FFP) are essentially the same for children as for adults. FFP is administered to replenish clotting factors lost during massive blood transfusion (usually defined as blood loss exceeding one blood volume), for disseminated intravascular coagulopathy, or for congenital clotting factor deficit. The anesthesiologist initiates and guides therapy with FFP during massive blood loss, whereas the hematologist's advice is sought when either of the other two conditions exists.

Children with known clotting factor deficits, such as those with massive thermal injury or coagulopathy, may require transfusion of FFP before blood loss exceeds 1 blood volume. In contrast, healthy children who do not have coagulation factor deficits at the beginning of surgery do not need FFP until blood loss exceeds 1 blood volume.[236,237] Despite the loss of 1 blood volume, prolongation of the prothrombin time (PT) and the partial thromboplastin time (PTT) will only be minor. This generalization applies to children given PRBCs; children given whole blood will not need FFP, even when blood loss exceeds several blood volumes.

No studies in children have definitively defined values of PT and PTT that are associated with pathologic bleeding for which FFP should be administered. Usually an international normalized ratio (INR) < 2 does not warrant correction. In general, if the clotting factor deficit is associated with abnormal oozing, then a PT exceeding 15 seconds (INR > 1.4) or a PTT greater than 60 seconds (>1.5 times baseline) warrants close observation. If these abnormalities exist but there is limited bleeding in the surgical field, it seems appropriate to observe the child and withhold the transfusion of FFP.

The volume of FFP required to correct prolongation of the PT and PTT values depends on the severity of the clotting factor deficit and the presence or absence of consumptive coagulopathy. In general, FFP therapy may require replacement of 30% or more of the child's blood volume. Transfusion of FFP at rates exceeding 1 mL/kg/min is sometimes followed by severe ionized hypocalcemia and cardiac depression with hypotension, especially if FFP is administered during anesthesia with a potent inhaled anesthetic (Fig. 77.14).[238,239] Therefore exogenous calcium chloride (2.5-5 mg/kg) or calcium gluconate (7.5-15 mg/kg) should be administered, preferably through a separate IV, during rapid transfusion of FFP.[240] Ionized hypocalcemia occurs very frequently in neonates given FFP, possibly because of their decreased ability to mobilize calcium and metabolize citrate. Children undergoing liver transplantation or those with compromised hepatic function or perfusion may also be at increased risk because of a decreased ability to metabolize citrate.

Massive blood transfusion (MBT) in children has been recently defined as transfusion of greater than 50% of total blood volume (TBV) in 3 hours, transfusion of greater than 100% of TBV in 24 hours, or transfusion support to replace ongoing blood loss of greater than 10% of TBV per minute.[241] The management of massive transfusion requires that circulating blood volume is restored and components are given such that hemostasis is maintained or returned to normal.[242,243] A major concept in hemostatic resuscitation is the construction of a balanced transfusion strategy delivering PRBCs, FFP, platelets, coagulation factors, and antifibrinolytics. Adult MBT strategies suggest a PRBC:FFP:platelet ratio of 1:1:1 with early consideration of fibrinogen replacement and the potential use of tranexamic acid. Laboratory evaluation of massive bleeding in pediatric patients is challenging and acute management cannot rely on waiting for the results of these relatively time-consuming examinations. Thromboelastometry and rotational thromboelastometry can be useful monitoring methods, providing more timely assessment than standard laboratory investigations during MBT. Once bleeding has been controlled, appropriate targets after massive transfusion are suggested as Hb 80 g/L, fibrinogen greater than 1 g/L, PT ratio greater than 1.5, platelet count greater than 75 × 109/L (100 × 109/L in traumatic head injury).[243] Permissive hypotension during MBT is an often used strategy in adult trauma setting until definite management of bleeding can be achieved. This approach may not be an appropriate strategy in pediatric populations since children compensate for blood loss with minimal change in vital signs until significant compromise. Complications of MBT are similar to those in adults.[241]

A fluid and blood warmer is essential for any child who might require rapid correction of intravascular volume. Using such devices for maintenance intravenous fluid therapy, however, provides no benefit because the rate of infusion is so slow that the intravenous fluid returns to room temperature between the times that it exits the warmer and enters the child. Administration of large volumes of blood products also requires adequate vascular access. During pediatric trauma, when massive hemorrhage is suspected, if no intravenous access is established after 90 seconds or two attempts, intraosseous access should be utilized.[243] The anesthesiologist should be familiar with the maximal flow rates that can be delivered via intravenous and intraosseous cannulas of different sizes (Table 77.7).[244]

Regional Anesthesia and Analgesia

Most regional anesthesia techniques used in adults can be safely administered to children as long as strict attention is paid to the dose of the local anesthetic, the dose of

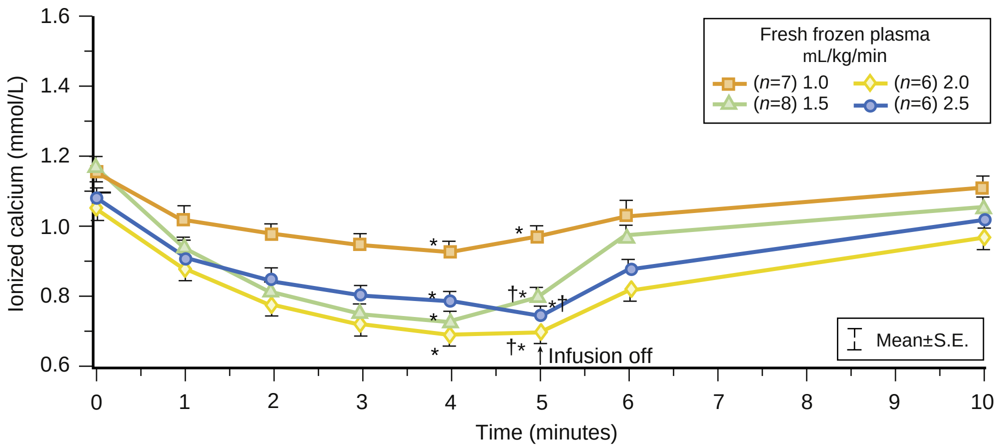


Fig. 77.14 Ionized hypocalcemia always accompanies the administration of citrated blood products (e.g., fresh frozen plasma, citrated whole blood). Fresh frozen plasma has the highest concentration of citrate per unit volume of any blood product and is the most likely to cause ionized hypocalcemia during rapid infusion. Studies in children with thermal injuries suggest that rates exceeding 1 mL/kg/min produce severe ionized hypocalcemia. If no further citrated blood products are administered, then this abnormality corrects itself because of metabolism of the citrate. However, children with impaired hepatic blood flow—infants, patients undergoing liver transplantation, patients with trauma—may need exogenous calcium therapy. **$*P$, <.001; $^{\dagger}P$, <.0021 versus baseline; *S.E.*, standard error.** (From Coté CJ, Drop LJ, Hoaglin DC, et al. Ionized hypocalcemia after fresh frozen plasma administration to thermally injured children: effects of infusion rate, duration, and treatment with calcium chloride. *Anesth Analg.* 1988;67:152–160. Used with permission.)

TABLE 77.7 Flow Rates of Intravenous and Intraosseous Cannulas

Intravenous Catheter	Maximum Rate of Flow With Gravity (mL/min)	Maximum Rate of Flow With Pressure (mL/min)
14 G 50 mm cannula	236.1	384.2
16 G 50 mm cannula	154.7	334.4
18 G 45 mm cannula	98.1	153.1
20 G 33 mm cannula	64.4	105.1
22 G 25 mm cannula	35.7	71.4
15 G 25 mm intraosseous needle (tibial)	68.2	204.6

From Reddick AD, Ronald J, Morrison WG. Intravenous fluid resuscitation: was Poiseuille right? *Emerg Med J*. 2011;28(3):201–202.

epinephrine, and the use of proper equipment. Perhaps the greatest advance in regional pediatric anesthesia has been the development of methods producing postoperative analgesia. Caudal anesthesia, caudal opioids, regional blocks, and child-parent-nurse–controlled analgesia have all been accepted by anesthesiologists and children. Recent advances in ultrasound equipment and techniques have further improved the accuracy of nerve blocks and reduced the dose of drug needed to provide a successful block.

Regional nerve blocks and direct local infiltration of surgical wounds with long-acting local anesthetics are simple yet very effective and safe methods of providing pain relief for all children.[245,246] This practice has been especially helpful in the outpatient population; parents are encouraged to start analgesics when they observe their child becoming irritable but before the complete dissipation of the block. This approach usually provides a smooth transition from general anesthesia and a pain-free child.

Important Pediatric Anesthesia Scenarios

Some patient groups or surgical procedures in children require particular attention when determining optimal anesthesia management.

NEONATAL ANESTHESIA

The neonate has unique requirements for equipment, fluid and drug therapy, anesthetic dosage, and environmental control. Children younger than 1 year of age have a more frequent incidence of complications than older children.[55,247-251] These complications primarily relate to oxygenation, ventilation, airway management, and response to anesthetic medications. An understanding of the basic differences in physiology and pharmacology, and an understanding of the common comorbidities and the underlying pathologic surgical problem is essential for the development of a safe anesthesia plan. Neonates generally have limited cardiovascular and respiratory reserve resulting in a narrow margin for error and the need for meticulous attention to details in all aspects of anesthesia care. Neonates are more likely to have a sudden deterioration in function and thus require careful monitoring and being prepared for rapid and appropriate interventions. Neonates may also have a transitional circulation or undiagnosed congenital malformations or genetic conditions that may become apparent during anesthesia.

As is true for other patient populations, when anesthesiologists are to deliver optimal neonatal anesthesia care, they must always ensure there is thorough preoperative preparation, appropriate monitoring, the proper size and variety of equipment available, and obtain the most intense level of support, both in the operating room and in the ICU. If the anesthesiologist only occasionally cares for infants, then the likelihood of a problem (often unanticipated) dramatically increases. As one example, when caring for the neonate, access to the child may be difficult after the patient is positioned for the surgical procedure, so it is critical that when managing these patients, the airway, intravenous access, and all monitoring should be checked and secure before surgery starts.

The anesthesiologist must devote particular care to the calculation of drug dose and preparation of drugs. Careful attention to the administration of all medications is essential. Prevention of paradoxical air emboli is critical for the pediatric patient. A volume of air that is clinically unimportant in an adult may prove catastrophic in an infant. To reduce the risk of air emboli requires that all air be vented from intravenous devices and syringes before use; each intravenous injection port is aspirated to remove air trapped at these junctions, and some drug is ejected before intravenous administration to clear air from the dead space of the needle. Intravenous fluids should be administered with volume-limiting devices; infusion pumps are particularly helpful in preventing over administration of intravenous fluids. The composition and infusion rate of flush solutions should be noted and calculated into maintenance fluid therapy. In neonates and small infants, a basal infusion rate of balanced salt solution with a pump is most useful, with other fluid or blood product boluses given via piggyback or a three-way stopcock.

Every effort must be made to maintain the infant's temperature to minimize thermal stress. The surgical environment should be warmed and exposure of the neonate kept to a minimum. Forced air warming is particularly useful for maintaining temperature. Fluids should be warmed, and heated mattresses and overhead radiant heaters may also be used.

Monitoring expired concentrations of carbon dioxide can be less accurate in small infants, but is still extremely useful for diagnosing changes over time and for issues such as bronchospasm, a kinked endotracheal tube, or endobronchial intubation. Transcutaneous carbon dioxide monitoring may also be used, although it requires careful calibration and management. Hypocarbia should be avoided due to the risk of cerebral vasoconstriction.

Pulse oximetry is mandatory to detect hypoxia, and also helps avoid hyperoxia. The optimal oxygen saturation for neonates is controversial. High oxygen saturations in premature infants increase the risk of retinopathy of prematurity; however some randomized trials have found that aiming for low (85%-89%) saturations in extremely preterm infants may increase the risk of other neurologic morbidity.[252] During stable situations it is reasonable to aim for an oxygen saturation between 93% and 95% in preterm infants. However, because these infants have the highest oxygen consumption, oxygen saturation in the 93% to 95% range can change to severe hypoxemia within seconds. When managing such a delicate balance and in view of the slight inaccuracies of these monitors, the anesthesiologist must be extremely vigilant and prepared to respond rapidly to changes in oxygen saturation.

The newborn goes through a transitional circulation and it takes some days for the pulmonary circulation to adjust. Hypoxia or acidosis in the newborn can lead to significant pulmonary vasoconstriction and resultant pulmonary hypertension. This may lead to right to left shunting, exacerbating arterial hypoxia and thus leading to a vicious cycle of worsening pulmonary hypertension, acidosis, hypoxia, and eventual cardiovascular collapse.

The neonatal lung is fragile and particularly prone to injury from excessive tidal volumes. In contrast, careful attention to ventilation is required to maintain functional residual capacity and avoid atelectasis. Positive end expiratory pressures should be used. Even brief disconnection of the airway circuit or mechanical ventilator can lead to significant alveolar collapse and should thus be avoided if possible. In the operating room neonates should only be anesthetized with ventilators that are designed to include neonatal use, and it is optimal to have monitoring equipment that can accurately measure tidal volumes in a neonate. It is also increasingly recognized that intubated neonates should be transferred to and from the operating room with appropriate neonatal transport ventilator equipment rather than simply a bag and t-piece. For some critically ill children, it may be safer to perform the surgery in the neonatal intensive care unit (NICU) using NICU ventilators rather than transfer the child to the operating room. Transferring a child that is on an oscillator is particularly challenging. In these cases, however, the NICU staff and surgeons must be prepared to perform the procedure, have all necessary equipment and a process to ensure sterility, and a safe environment for the procedure.

The optimal blood pressure during neonatal anesthesia is unknown. Traditionally an acceptable mean arterial pressure in mm Hg was judged to be roughly the same as the postmenstrual age of the child in weeks; however there is little if any evidence to support this. Recent studies have suggested that the neonatal brain may be particularly susceptible to hypotension.[253]

Little doubt exists that neonates, even extremely preterm infants, are capable of feeling pain and will respond to painful stimuli; indeed preterm infants may be even more sensitive to painful stimuli.[254] Neonates cannot form explicit memories, but there is evidence for implicit memory formation. The differentiation between conscious and unconscious can also be problematic in neonates. No child should be denied analgesia or anesthesia because of size or age. However, what exactly constitutes a state of adequate anesthesia in the neonate is unclear.[255,256] Similarly, difficulty in measuring appropriate endpoints of adequate anesthesia makes it very difficult to determine the optimal dose of anesthetic agents.

Propofol and inhaled anesthetics can result in profound cardiovascular depression in the neonate. In contrast, the synthetic opioids (e.g., fentanyl, sufentanil, alfentanil, remifentanil) are usually well tolerated, even in critically ill infants. When used, these potent opioids must be carefully titrated to a defined response. Anesthesiologists must be particularly cautious about opioid-induced bradycardia and its consequences on cardiac output. Low concentrations of potent inhaled anesthetics can be used with opioids to provide a means of controlling hemodynamic responses without significantly depressing the myocardium. The relative merits of one anesthetic technique over another are not well defined.

Regional anesthesia can be highly effective in neonates. Caudal and spinal anesthesia are relatively straightforward; however the safe placement of a lumbar or thoracic epidural block requires considerable skill. Epidural local anesthetic infusions can result in systemic toxicity due to immature metabolism.

ANESTHESIA FOR SPECIFIC NEONATAL SURGICAL PROCEDURES

Meningomyelocele

Meningomyelocele, the hernial protrusion of a part of the meninges and spinal cord through a defect in the vertebral column, is becoming less common in developed countries due to improvements in maternal folic acid intake and antenatal screening. The following should be considered in addition to the usual concerns for the management of neonates: (1) special positioning for tracheal intubation (i.e., the defect is placed on a "doughnut" and towels are placed under the head); (2) possibility of underestimating fluid and blood loss; (3) high association of meningomyelocele with hydrocephalus; (4) possibility of cranial nerve (vocal cord) palsy, resulting in inspiratory stridor; and (5) potential for brainstem herniation. The anesthesiologist must establish adequate intravenous access to replace all fluid deficits, including loss from the defect (usually with normal saline), and ensure that cross-matched blood is available (especially if rotational skin flaps are planned). Latex allergy precautions should be used with these children for their first and all subsequent anesthetics.

Omphalocele and Gastroschisis

Omphalocele and gastroschisis are major defects in the closure of the abdominal wall that result in exposure of viscera that are either covered (omphalocele) or not covered (gastroschisis) by peritoneum (Fig. 77.15; Table 77.8). The major anesthesia-related problems with these defects include the following: (1) severe dehydration and potential massive fluid loss from the exposed visceral surfaces and due to partial bowel obstruction; (2) heat loss;

(3) raised abdominal pressure with closure; and (4) high association of these conditions with prematurity and other congenital defects, including cardiac abnormalities (with omphalocele, ~20%). These children must have an adequate preoperative work-up that includes an echocardiogram to assess both anatomy and myocardial function. Postoperative ventilation is usually required for these patients as a result of a tight abdominal wall closure. In some cases, a staged approach is needed to complete the repair.

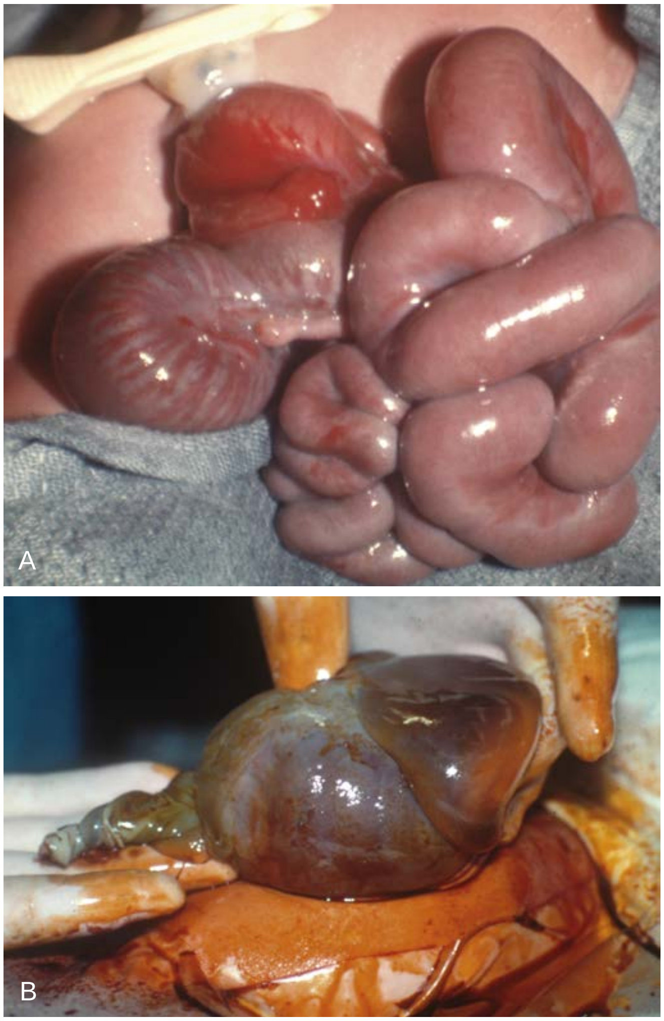


Fig. 77.15 (A) Gastroschisis malformation. The viscera have herniated outside the peritoneum. (B) Omphalocele malformation. The viscera are still covered by peritoneum.

Infants with omphalocele or gastroschisis require careful management preoperatively to minimize the likelihood of infection or compromise of bowel function. For all children, adequate fluid resuscitation should be provided and electrolyte imbalances corrected prior to surgery. Adequate intravenous access is essential. Invasive monitoring is occasionally necessary, particularly if the child has an associated cardiac defect. The liberal use of muscle relaxants provides optimal surgical conditions for closure of the defect. Hypotension during closure may occur due to tension on the liver or caval compression. Similarly raised abdominal pressure during closure may impede adequate ventilation. Postoperative ventilation may be necessary until the abdominal wall has had time to stretch to accommodate the viscera. It should be noted that increased abdominal pressure after a tight closure (abdominal compartment syndrome) may compromise hepatic and renal function and significantly alter drug metabolism. Staged closure with a premade spring-loaded silastic silo is being used with increasing frequency, thus minimizing repeat trips to the operating room. A small percentage of children with omphalocele will also have Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, a condition characterized by profound hypoglycemia, hyperviscosity syndrome, congenital heart disease, and associated visceromegaly.

Tracheoesophageal Fistula

A tracheoesophageal fistula can have five or more configurations, most of which are diagnosed after an inability to swallow because of an associated esophageal atresia (the esophagus ends in a blind pouch). In these cases the characteristic diagnostic test is an inability to pass a suction catheter into the stomach. Neonates may have aspiration pneumonitis from a distal fistula connecting the stomach to the trachea through the esophagus or from a proximal connection of the esophagus with the trachea. Neonates with the rarer H-type fistulae have a fistula between esophagus and trachea; however the esophagus is patent with no atresia. These children present later, typically with respiratory distress and chest infections.

The tracheoesophageal fistula may be part of a larger constellation of anomalies known as the VATER association (**V**,

TABLE 77.8 Comparison of Gastroschisis and Omphalocele Malformations

	Gastroschisis	Omphalocele
Pathophysiologic characteristics	Occlusion of the omphalomesenteric artery	Failure of gut migration from the yolk sac into the abdomen
Incidence	~1 in 15,000 births	~1 in 6000 births
Incidence of associated anomalies	~10%-15%	~40%-60%
Location of defect	Periumbilical	Within the umbilical cord
Problems associated with defect	Inflammation of exposed gut Edema Dilated and foreshortened gut (chemical peritonitis)	Congenital heart disease (~20%) Exstrophy of the bladder Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome (macroglossia, gigantism, hypoglycemia, hyperviscosity)

From Coté CJ, Lerman J, Anderson, BA, eds. *A Practice of Anesthesia for Infants and Children*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2013.

vertebral; **A**, anal; **TE**, tracheoesophageal; **R**, renal) or the VACTERL association (VATER and **C**, cardiac; and **L**, limb). Any child with a tracheoesophageal fistula or esophageal atresia should be suspected of having the other anomalies. An echocardiogram to examine for a right-sided aortic arch and the presence of congenital heart disease should be performed before anesthesia.[257] Abdominal ultrasound should also be performed to detect major renal abnormalities.

The major anesthetic issues include: (1) already compromised respiratory function due to aspiration pneumonia; (2) overdistention of the stomach from entry of air directly into the stomach through the fistula, particularly after administration of positive pressure ventilation by mask; (3) inability to ventilate the child's lungs because of the large size of the fistula; (4) problems associated with other anomalies, particularly a patent ductus arteriosus and other forms of congenital heart disease.[258] Prior to anesthesia, the infant's feedings should be withheld, a catheter placed in the esophagus to drain saliva, and the infant placed prone in a head-up position. Anesthesia evaluation centers on the pulmonary and cardiovascular systems.

A major aim of anesthesia is to ensure adequate ventilation despite the presence of the fistula. Since positive pressure ventilation may inflate the stomach through the fistula and cause distension of the stomach, it should be avoided until an endotracheal tube is placed distal to the fistula and/or the fistula is occluded or ligated. The risk of abdominal distension and hypoventilation is greatest when the fistula is large or the lung compliance is poor. The distended stomach will further compromise ventilation of the lungs, exacerbating the situation. Several different strategies for anesthesia have been described.[259] Usually an inhalational induction is preferred and spontaneous ventilation is maintained until the fistula is ligated. This is not always possible. Coordination with the surgeon is critical to defining the optimal way to ensure adequate ventilation until the fistula is occluded. Bronchoscopy is usually performed after induction to assess the size and location of the fistula. At bronchoscopy a Fogarty catheter or similar device may be placed directly in the fistula to occlude it. The endotracheal tube is ideally placed in the trachea distal to the origin of the fistula. This may be done blindly by advancing the tube into a main bronchus and then carefully pulling it back until equal air entry is heard. The endotracheal tube may be inadvertently placed into the fistula resulting in rapid gastric distension and arterial oxygen desaturation. If this occurs the tube should be withdrawn. Urgent transcutaneous gastric decompression may be needed or intraabdominal clamping of the distal esophagus through an abdominal incision.

Most repairs are now done thoracoscopically. Invasive blood pressure monitoring is recommended since intraoperative arterial desaturation or hypotension may occur with manipulation of mediastinal structures. A preductal and postductal pulse oximeter can be useful in diagnosing an intracardiac shunting. Some surgeons prefer that the infant remain intubated postoperatively, whereas others prefer an attempt at extubation of the trachea. Postoperative pain may be managed with a local anesthetic infusion, or intermittent bolus, via a caudal catheter threaded up to the thoracic level, or with a paravertebral catheter placed by the surgeon.

Congenital Diaphragmatic Hernia

A congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH) consists of herniation of the abdominal viscera through a defect in the diaphragm, most commonly the foramen of Bochdalek on the left side. Many of the abdominal viscera, including the liver and spleen, may be above the diaphragm. Approximately half the cases are diagnosed antenatally. More than half of CDH cases are associated with other congenital anomalies and therefore a full evaluation of all systems should be performed prior to surgery. The primary concern with respect to anesthesia management is pulmonary hypoplasia and associated pulmonary hypertension. It is important to note that surgery does not directly correct the pulmonary hypertension and respiratory status may acutely deteriorate postsurgery. Thus surgery should not be rushed, but planned for when the child is in optimal condition. Preoperatively extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) and the use of nitric oxide have become important aspects to the management of CDH; however there is mixed evidence that they improve outcome and ECMO should only be used in the most severe cases.[260,261] Sildenafil and prostacyclin may also be used to manage pulmonary hypertension. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation is often required and permissive ventilation is also advocated (limiting peak inspiratory pressures and PEEP with resultant permissive hypercapnia).[262]

The surgery may be open via a subcostal incision or done thoracoscopically. It is often performed in the ICU to avoid transferring the child to the operating room. Anesthetic management of children with a diaphragmatic hernia includes the following: (1) preventing any exacerbation of pulmonary hypertension through avoiding hypoxemia and excessive hypercapnia, and blunting the stress response (e.g., with high-dose fentanyl, 25 µg/kg or more); (2) avoiding bag and mask ventilation prior to intubation of the trachea as this may result in gastric distension within the chest; (3) avoiding nitrous oxide to prevent any risk of expansion of viscera in the chest; (4) awareness of the risk for the development of barotrauma-induced pneumothorax on the ipsilateral or contralateral side; and (5) meticulous fluid management and inotopic support of the circulation if needed. Other methods to address the CDH have been attempted, including fetoscopic endoluminal tracheal occlusion. This approach, while successful in selected cases, is still regarded as an experimental approach to managing CDH.[263]

ANESTHESIA FOR SPECIFIC SURGICAL PROCEDURES IN INFANTS

Pyloric Stenosis

Pyloric stenosis is diagnosed from 1 week to 3 months of life, typically after persistent projectile vomiting. The child may be severely dehydrated with a profound hypochloremic, hypokalemic, metabolic alkalosis. This procedure is never a surgical emergency. Children should be carefully evaluated, and any dehydration or metabolic imbalance should be corrected before surgery. The metabolic imbalance and dehydration can be corrected slowly, provided there is no cardiovascular instability and hypovolemic shock. A persistent alkalosis increases the risk of postoperative apnea and it should be noted that correction of the CSF pH may lag several hours behind plasma pH correction.

Increasingly the myotomy is performed laparoscopically. Nasogastric tubes are not always used preoperatively as they may worsen the electrolyte imbalance. Aspiration of gastric contents during induction is a primary concern. Even if the child arrives with a nasogastric tube in place the stomach should still be immediately suctioned with a wide-bore vented catheter in the supine and the right and left lateral positions immediately before induction of anesthesia. This suctioning technique will generally remove 98% of the gastric contents.[264] A wide variety of techniques have been described for the induction of children with pyloric stenosis. Awake-intubation has been frequently used; however this approach is becoming less common. One study demonstrated fewer attempts and one half the time for successful intubation of the trachea when a muscle relaxant was used.[265] The classically described rapid sequence technique (preoxygenation, cricoid pressure, and avoiding mask ventilation) may not be appropriate for an infant with pyloric stenosis. Cricoid pressure can easily distort the anatomy making laryngoscopy difficult. If it is applied and there is no clear view of the larynx then the pressure should be relaxed. It may also not be appropriate to avoid mask ventilation. Infants rapidly desaturate with apnea so it is often necessary to gently ventilate the child with 100% oxygen prior to laryngoscopy to avoid hypoxemia and bradycardia. A variety of different intravenous anesthetic agents and neuromuscular blocking agents have been described in this situation. Atropine (0.02 mg/kg) should be given to prevent bradycardia if succinylcholine (2 mg/kg) is used. Postoperative analgesia is generally provided by local infiltration of the skin incision and acetaminophen. Rectus sheaf and transversus abdominis plane blocks have also been described in this setting.

Reports of apnea events after pyloromyotomy have been reported.[266] Children who undergo this procedure should be closely monitored with both apnea monitors and pulse oximetry postoperatively.

Infant Inguinal Hernia Repair

Inguinal hernia repair is one of the most common surgeries performed in infants. Inguinal hernia is often bilateral and is more common in males and in ex-premature infants. The optimal timing of surgery is controversial. Waiting until the child is older may reduce anesthesia risk; however, an unrepaired asymptomatic hernia is still at risk of incarceration, which may be a life-threatening complication. The repair may be performed laparoscopically or open. Anesthesia may be with an awake-regional technique or general anesthesia. The awake-regional technique is usually with a spinal anesthetic. Awake-caudal anesthesia has been described but usually requires substantial additional sedation. Spinal anesthesia has fewer complications in PACU and shorter PACU stay but fails in approximately 10% to 20% of cases.[267-269] This may be due to inability to find the subarachnoid space or the child failing to adequately settle even with an effective block. The spinal anesthetic usually provides 60 to 90 minutes of anesthesia and thus may not be appropriate for hernia repair that is anticipated to be complex. The spinal block may be augmented with a caudal local anesthetic block. General anesthesia for inguinal hernia repair may be with an endotracheal tube or LMA. A caudal local anesthetic block, ilioinguinal block, or local infiltration of local anesthetic by the surgeon can all provide adequate analgesia and obviate the need for opioids.

The major anesthesia concern around infant inguinal hernia repair is the risk of postoperative apnea. The majority of infants who develop postanesthesia apnea are former preterm infants (gestational age <37 weeks) and younger than 44 weeks postmenstrual age (PMA); however, apnea can occur at up to 60 weeks PMA.[270] Studies evaluating postoperative apnea are difficult to interpret or compare due to widely varying definitions of apnea and methods to detect apnea. In one combined analysis the risk of postoperative apnea increases with lower PMA and lower gestational age.[271] Anemia (hematocrit <30%) was also found to be an independent risk factor associated with apnea in former preterm infants. Apnea still occurs even with sevoflurane or desflurane anesthesia; therefore the newer volatile anesthetics have not eliminated this concern.[272] The risk of early apnea is less with awake-regional anesthesia; however, the risk of late apnea may be similar.[267,273] There is also some evidence that those who required sedation with spinal anesthesia have increased risk of apnea compared to those who had no sedation.[274]

A Cochrane review found some evidence that prophylactic methylxanthine (caffeine) reduces the risk of postoperative apnea; however, it was cautious about recommendations for its routine use.[275] Caffeine may not reduce the risk of late apnea. Recommendations vary, but in general, all former preterm infants younger than 56 to 60 weeks' PMA should be admitted after inguinal hernia repair for apnea monitoring.[271,276,277] The risk for term infants is poorly defined; however, apnea is still considered a risk up to 44 weeks' PMA.

Cleft Lip and Palate

Cleft lip and palate are relatively common congenital malformations. Approximately one third are associated with a wide range of other syndromes so careful and thorough preoperative assessment is required. Cleft lip is usually repaired at 3 to 6 months of age whereas the palate is repaired at 9 to 12 months of age. Difficult airway may occur but is unusual unless there is also retrognathia. In children with large or bilateral clefts, the tongue may impinge in the cleft obstructing the airway, or the laryngoscope blade may fall into the cleft. Correction of the lip is usually a straightforward procedure. Cleft palate repair may be complicated by postoperative obstruction. The child should be extubated awake. Postoperative analgesia is based on regular acetaminophen and the judicious use of opioids. Infraorbital nerve blocks also provide effective analgesia for cleft lip repair.[278]

ANESTHESIA FOR SPECIFIC PROCEDURES AND CONDITIONS IN OLDER CHILDREN

Anterior Mediastinal Mass

In children, anterior mediastinal masses may be due to a range of pathology with lymphoma being the most common. They may cause airway and/or vascular compression. This may be asymptomatic or result in dyspnea, orthopnea, pain, cough, or superior vena cava syndrome. These children frequently present for a biopsy of the lesion or other lymph node which, for accurate diagnosis and appropriate management, must be obtained prior to any chemotherapy or radiotherapy. The major anesthesia concern is profound cardiorespiratory collapse and death on induction of anesthesia. Such collapse can occur in a child that is asymptomatic preoperatively. The exact etiology of this collapse is uncertain, but probably relates to increasing compression of major vessels, heart, and/or the airway. The collapse may be triggered by paralysis or positive pressure ventilation. As a result, some pediatric anesthesiologists advocate avoiding neuromuscular blocking agents and maintaining spontaneous respiration. Preoperative assessment should include a careful history and examination to determine if positioning has any impact on symptoms and chest computed tomography (CT) and echocardiography. Occlusion of greater than 50% of the airway on CT is associated with increased risk of significant obstruction under anesthesia. Echocardiography can be helpful to determine if positioning might have any impact on compression of vessels and cardiac function. If collapse does occur on induction, changing the child's position to lateral or prone may be life saving. In severe cases, every effort should be made to obtain the biopsy without general anesthesia so that further management options can be determined.

Inhaled Foreign Body

Inhalation of foreign bodies is a major source of morbidity and mortally in young children, occurring most frequently in children ages 1 to 2 years. The airway obstruction may be acute, causing significant respiratory distress and require urgent management; however, often the diagnosis is delayed. Partial obstruction may be undiagnosed for days or even weeks. The acute choking episode may not have been witnessed and the child may present late with signs of pneumonia. The urgency of removal depends on the degree of respiratory symptoms and the likely location of the obstruction. Ideally the child should be fasting. Several anesthetic techniques have been described. Clear, effective, and ongoing communication with the surgeon before and throughout the procedure is paramount. Often anticholinergic agents are given prior to induction to reduce secretions and steroids given to reduce airway swelling. Ideally, spontaneous ventilation is maintained to reduce the risk of positive ventilation pushing the object further distally, which makes extraction more technically challenging. Once the child is deeply anesthetized, local anesthetic should be directly applied to the glottis and trachea. Anesthesia may be maintained with volatile agents through the bronchoscope or with a propofol infusion. Propofol infusion may provide a more reliable delivery. It also avoids the issue of volatile agent exposure to the surgeon. Remifentanil infusion may also be used to help obtund airway reflexes but should be used judiciously to avoid unwanted apnea. Muscle relaxation may be required in some situations but relaxants should never be given before establishing that positive pressure ventilation is safe.

Tonsillectomy and Obstructive Sleep Apnea

Tonsillectomy and/or adenoidectomy are some of the more common surgical procedures in children. While not performed as often as they were in the past, the most common indications include recurrent infection and airway obstruction, including obstructive sleep apnea. A wide variety of techniques have been described for tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy. For maintenance of anesthesia, inhalational and TIVA can be used. A flexible laryngeal mask airway or a preformed Ring-Adair-Elwyn (RAE) endotracheal tube may be used for the airway. Kinking or displacement of the LMA or RAE tube is not uncommon when the surgeon inserts the mouth gag. Children may be extubated awake or deep. Deep extubation may avoid bleeding associated with coughing during emergence but there is an increased risk of airway obstruction after the airway is removed. If children are extubated deep it is essential that they are subsequently managed in an environment that can rapidly and effectively detect and manage any airway obstruction. Postoperative nausea and vomiting is common after this surgery and prophylactic antiemetics should be used. Dexamethasone is often given to reduce swelling and emesis; however, dexamethasone should never be given if lymphoma is a likely cause of tonsillar hypertrophy as dexamethasone may produce lethal hyperkalemia from tumor lysis. Effective analgesia is a challenge after tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy. Acetaminophen alone is insufficient. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) are used in many centers; however some surgeons avoid their use due to concerns over bleeding even though there is good evidence that bleeding is not increased.[279] Local anesthetic infiltration to the tonsillar bed may provide some analgesia and some surgeons infiltrate with epinephrine to reduce bleeding. Such infiltration must be done cautiously as injection into the major vessels beneath the tonsillar bed may result in seizures or cerebral infarction. Tonsillectomy is associated with significant pain for up to 10 days or more postoperatively.[280] Opioids are often required for tonsillectomy, both in the immediate recovery and early days after the child goes home. They should be used carefully in the presence of obstructive sleep apnea. Bleeding after tonsillectomy may occur immediately postoperatively or in the early days after discharge. Minor bleeding may be managed conservatively but active ongoing bleeding requires anesthesia for surgical management. Anesthesia for a bleeding tonsil requires consideration of: (1) acute hypovolemia associated with massive blood loss—these children must always be adequately resuscitated before anesthesia; (2) presence of a full stomach—the child may have swallowed a large amount of blood; and (3) a potentially difficult airway management and laryngoscopy due to active bleeding and airway swelling.

Children scheduled for tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy frequently have a degree of obstructive sleep apnea. Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) is defined as a "disorder of breathing during sleep characterized by prolonged upper airway obstruction and/or intermittent complete obstruction (obstructive apnea) that disrupts normal ventilation during sleep." These children also have an altered response to carbon dioxide.[281] The gold standard to diagnose severity of OSA is the formal polysomnogram.[282] The apnea-hypopnea index (AHI) and the respiratory disturbance index (RDI) are measurements of the presence and severity of OSA syndrome. The AHI is the number of discrete obstructive events per hour while the RDI includes central apnea as well as apnea due to obstruction. OSA is regarded as severe if the AHI is greater than 10 and the oxygen saturation nadir is less than 80%. Most children, however, will have surgery for obstructive symptoms without having had a formal polysomnogram. Thus a variety of other scores based on overnight oximetry, child factors, and degree of symptoms have been developed to assess degree of obstruction and hence perioperative risk.[283]

The main problems that anesthesiologists must consider include when it is safe to send a child with OSA home after tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy and how best to provide postoperative analgesia. There is considerable variation in practice surrounding postoperative management of children with and without OSA. The ASA has published a set of guidelines.[284] Some day-surgery centers routinely send children who do not have OSA home after tonsillectomy; others hold the children for at least 4 hours (the interval during which bleeding or respiratory compromise will most likely occur), and then an additional 7 hours if there have been any obstructive events. Children with known or suspected severe OSA should be monitored overnight. Children with comorbidities such as Down syndrome, or craniofacial abnormalities, younger age (>3 years), or obesity should also be considered for overnight admission and monitoring.

Pain management can be challenging for these patients. Usually opioids are required for analgesia; however some centers avoid opioids and supplement acetaminophen with NSAIDs. If opioids are used, some suggest that children with OSA should have reduced doses. Codeine is no longer recommended for analgesia after tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy as there have been reports of deaths after tonsillectomy related to altered conversion of the prodrug codeine to morphine.[90,285] A small proportion of children have genetically determined rapid conversion to morphine.[286] Thus the combination of OSA-induced opioid sensitivity and rapid metabolism can lead to fatal outcomes. The FDA has issued a warning strongly recommending that codeine not be administered to children for post-tonsillectomy analgesia, particularly to those with obstructive sleep apnea.

Muscle Biopsy

Children may require muscle biopsy to assist the diagnosis of a myopathy or other neurodegenerative condition. There are a broad range of myopathies that present a range of issues for anesthesia (see Chapter 35). These include existing compromised cardiac or respiratory function, developmental delay, poor nutritional status, and risks for malignant hyperthermia, rhabdomyolysis, and propofol infusion syndrome. Thorough preoperative assessment is essential, including an assessment of respiratory and cardiac function.[287] There must also be clear communication with the referring physician to identify and discuss the most likely diagnosis, and which tests will be performed on the biopsy. The optimal anesthetic technique is dependent on knowing this information.[288]

Awake-regional anesthesia would be the ideal option for cooperative older children but is rarely feasible in younger children.[289] When choosing the optimal anesthetic agents, the following patient-related factors should be considered:

- Succinylcholine is contraindicated in children with muscular dystrophy due to risk of acute rhabdomyolysis.
- Halogenated volatile anesthetics have been associated with rhabdomyolysis with muscular dystrophy, particularly Duchenne and Becker muscular dystrophy, younger children, and children with an elevated creatinine kinase.[290,291]
- Some children with mitochondrial disorders may be more susceptible to adverse metabolic and cardiac events after propofol.[292,293] This may be linked to propofol infusion syndrome.

The impact of anesthesia on the biopsy specimen also needs consideration:

- If a contracture test is planned then a "nontriggering" anesthetic is required. Care should also be taken that no local anesthetic contaminates the specimen.
- Some metabolic clinicians prefer propofol to be avoided if a mitochondrial enzyme analysis is planned.

In summary, there is no single, optimal anesthetic for children having the muscle biopsy. The choice of anesthetic agents requires a clear understanding of (1) the likely diagnosis and hence balance of risks, (2) any anesthesia-related requirements stipulated by the laboratory analyzing the sample, and (3) tailoring the plan to the child's particular cardiorespiratory status and ability to tolerate an awake procedure.

Child With Developmental Disability

Children with developmental disability are more likely to require anesthesia for surgery and a range of other procedures. They are however often neglected in terms of systematic research. For example, most studies looking at premedication exclude children with developmental disability, in spite of the fact that they may need it, and benefit from it more than other children.

A key aspect in the perioperative care of these children is to appreciate that they represent a heterogeneous group with a wide range of disabilities and varying clinical needs. These children often have multiple diagnoses and several comorbidities. Even those with a single diagnosis, such as autism spectrum disorder (ASD), may present with a wide range of behavioral issues. No two children with ASD are the same and care must be tailored to each child.[294,295] Another key element is to engage the parents or caregivers early in planning. They are best placed to give advice on what aspects of management will be challenging and what strategies are likely to work best.

Children with ASD often have fixed routines. Similarly children with ASD may find particular actions, environments, noises, or smells distressing. Knowing and accommodating these will reduce distress. Children with ASD also may find communication easier if things are explained with pictures.

Cerebral palsy describes a broad spectrum of movement and posture disorders with varying severity. Anesthesia challenges include poor nutrition, concurrent poor respiratory status, poor cough reflex, reflux of gastric contents, difficulty with positioning, susceptibility to pressure injuries, hypothermia, and difficult venous access.[296,297] Muscle spasm after surgery may result in significant pain. Spasm may be effectively reduced with regional analgesia techniques and/or diazepam. Opioids are often required and must be used carefully to avoid respiratory depression. Titrating analgesia to effect may be difficult in children with cognitive impairment. Often parents or caregivers are the best judges of whether or not their child is in pain.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Dr. Charles J. Cote for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Moutquin JM. *BJOG*. 2003;110(suppl 20):30–33.
2. Morton SU, Brodsky D. *Clin Perinatol*. 2016;43(3):395–407.
3. American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Fetus and Newborn. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Committee on Obstetric Practice. *Pediatrics*. 2015;136(4):819–822.
4. Lloyd DF, et al. *Pediatr Int*. 2017;59(5):525–529.
5. Hillman NH, et al. *Clin Perinatol*. 2012;39(4):769–783.
6. Keens TG, et al. *J Appl Physiol Respir Environ Exerc Physiol*. 1978;44(6):909–913.
7. Eckenhoff JE. *Anesthesiology*. 1951;12(4):401–410.
8. Holzki J, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(1):13–22.
9. Arens R, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;165(1):117–122.
10. Seymour AH, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2002;16(2):196–198.
11. Miller MJ, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1985;107(3):465–469.
12. de Almeida V, et al. *Am J Perinatol*. 1995;12(3):185–188.
13. deAlmeida VL, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 1994;18(6):374–378.
14. Heilbron DC, et al. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 1991;5(1):5–11.
15. Vieux R. *Pediatrics*. 2010;125(5):e1186–1192.
16. Beath SV, et al. *Semin Neonatol*. 2003;8(5):337–346.
17. Grijalva J, et al. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2013;22(4):185–189.
18. Andrew M, et al. *Blood*. 1987;70(1):165–172.
19. Andrew M, et al. *Blood*. 1992;80(8):1998–2005.
20. Hepponstall M, et al. *Blood cells, molecules & diseases*. 2017;67:41–47.
21. Haley KM, et al. *Front Pediatr*. 2017;5:136.
22. Stein PD, et al. *The Journal of pediatrics*. 2004;145(4):563–565.
23. Morgan J, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(5):382–391.
24. Simon AK, et al. *Proc Biol Sci*. 2015;282(1821):20143085.
25. Fitzgerald M, et al. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2005;6(7):507–520.
26. Fitzgerald M, et al. *Exp Physiol*. 2015;100(12):1451–1457.
27. Valeri BO, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2015;31(4):355–362.
28. Knobel RB, et al. *Newborn and infant nursing reviews*. 2014;14:45–49.
29. Sumpter A, Anderson BJ. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22(4):469–475.
30. Kaufmann J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(5):670–679.
31. Anderson BJ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(6):530–538.
32. Barker CIS, et al. *Archives of disease in childhood*. 2018;103(7):695–702.
33. Friis-Hansen B, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1971;47(1):264+. suppl 2.
34. Anderson BJ, Holford NH. *Drug metabolism and pharmacokinetics*. 2009;24(1):25–36.
35. Welzing L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(3):570–577.
36. Monagle P, et al. *Chest*. 2012;141(suppl 2):e737S–e801S.
37. Katoh T, Ikeda K. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;68(2):139–141.
38. Lerman J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(4):814–824.
39. Lerman J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59(5):421–424.
40. Taylor RH, Lerman J. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(6):975–979.
41. LeDez KM, Lerman J. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(3):301–307.
42. Gregory GA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1969;30(5):488–491.
43. Katoh T, Ikeda K. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(3):301–303.
44. Nicodemus HF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1969;31(4):344–348.
45. Katoh T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76(2):348–352.
46. Inomata S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(6):1263–1267.
47. Taguchi M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(3):628–631.
48. Kihara S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(5):1055–1058.
49. Davidson AJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(5):674–679.
50. Wodey E, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94(6):810–820.
51. Murat I, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(1):73–81.
52. Murat I, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57(12):1197–1203.
53. Murat I, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57(6):569–572.
54. Murat I, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1987;42(7):711–718.
55. Bhananker SM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(2):344–350.
56. Ramamoorthy C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(5):1376–1382.
57. Constant I, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(4):266–274.
58. Fisher DM, Zwass MS. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(3):354–356.
59. Zwass MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(3):373–378.
60. Tsze DS, et al. *Pediatr*. 2016;169:260–265 e262.
61. Babl FE, et al. *EMJ*. 2008;25(11):717–721.
62. Babl FE, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2008;121(3):e528–532.
63. Villeret I, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12(8):712–717.
64. Pandit UA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80(2):230–233.
65. Devroe S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(8):726–738.
66. Devroe S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(12):1210–1219.
67. Bajwa SA, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20(8):704–711.
68. Malarbi S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21(9):942–950.
69. Martin JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(4):740–752.
70. Costi D, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(5):517–523.
71. Dahmani S, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2014;27(3):309–315.
72. Moore AD, Anghelescu DL. *Paediatr Drugs*. 2017;19(1):11–20.
73. van Hoff SL, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(7):668–676.
74. Kim N, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(9):885–892.
75. Veyckemans F, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11(5):630–631.
76. Fernandez PG, Mikhael M. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(5):461–470.
77. Parke TJ, et al. *BMJ*. 1992;305(6854):613–616.
78. Wolf A, et al. *Lancet*. 2001;357(9256):606–607.
79. Lerman J, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20(3):273–278.
80. Lauder GR, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(1):52–64.
81. Mani V, Morton NS. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20(3):211–222.
82. Gaynor J, Ansermino JM. *BJA Education*. 2016;16(11):369–474.
83. Dahmani S, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54(4):397–402.
84. Potts AL, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(10):924–933.
85. Phan H, Nahata MC. *Paediatr Drugs*. 2008;10(1):49–69.
86. Potts AL, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(8):722–730.
87. Sun Y, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(8):863–874.
88. Pasin L, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(5):468–476.
89. Crews KR, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2012;91(2):321–326.
90. Ciszkowski C, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361(8):827–828.
91. Goresky GV, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(5):654–659.
92. Ross AK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(6):1393–1401. table of contents.
93. Crawford MW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(6):1599–1604.
94. Morgan JM, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(2):135–139.
95. Anderson BJ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(8):785–788.
96. Larach MG, et al. *Clinical pediatrics*. 1997;36(1):9–16.
97. Tran DTT, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72(6):765–777.
98. Reynolds LM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(2):231–239.
99. Plaud B, et al. *Annales francaises d'anesthesie et de reanimation*. 2009;28(suppl 2):S64–69.
100. Tobias JD, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(7):781.
101. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. FDA review results in new warning about using general anesthetics and sedation drugs in youg hildren and pregnant women. In: UFaD A, ed. FDA Drug Safety Communication2016.
102. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. FDA approves label changes for use of general anesthetic and sedation drugs in young children. In: UFaD A, ed. FDA Drug Safety communication2017.
103. Vutskits L, Xie Z. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2016;17(11):705–717.
104. Lin EP, et al. *Neurotoxicol Teratol*. 2017;60:117–128.
105. Jevtovic-Todorovic V, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2003;23(3):876–882.
106. Paule MG, et al. *Neurotoxicol Teratol*. 2011;33(2):220–230.
107. Raper J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(5):1084–1092.
108. Istaphanous GK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(4):845–854.
109. Briner A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(3):546–556.
110. Brambrink AM, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 2012;72(4):525–535.
111. Vutskits L, Davidson A. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30(3):337–342.
112. Disma N, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(9):758–763.
113. Davidson AJ, Sun LS. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(4):840–853.
114. Beers SR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(3):661–669.
115. Bartels M, et al. *Twin Res Hum Genet*. 2009;12(3):246–253.
116. Hansen TG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(5):1076–1085.
117. Glatz P, et al. *JAMA pediatrics*. 2017;171(1):e163470.
118. O'Leary JD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(2):272–279.
119. Graham MR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(4):667–677.
120. Schneuer FJ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(6):528–536.
121. Wilder RT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(4):796–804.
122. Flick RP, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2011;128(5):e1053–1061.
123. Hu D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(2):227–240.
124. Ing C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(6):1988–1998.
125. Warner DO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129(1):89–105.
126. DiMaggio C, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2009;21(4):286–291.
127. Ko WR, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(7):741–748.
128. Ko WR, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2015;32(5):303–310.
129. Ing C, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2012;130(3):e476–485.
130. Stratmann G, et al. *Neuropsychopharmacology*. 2014;39(10):2275–2287.
131. Backeljauw B, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2015;136(1):e1–12.
132. de Heer IJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72(1):57–62.
133. Sun LS, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;315(21):2312–2320.
134. Davidson AJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2016;387(10015):239–250.
135. Bartels DD, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(6):520–527.
136. Shi Y, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(6):513–519.
137. Stolwijk LJ, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2016;137(2):e20151728.

138. Stolwijk LJ, et al. *The Journal of pediatrics*. 2017;182:335–341 e331.
139. American Academy of Pediatrics. *Pediatrics*. 1996;98(3 Pt 1):502–508.
140. Apfelbaum JL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):522–538.
141. Skinner JR, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2014;11(12):2322–2327.
142. Saul JP, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2015;12(3):610–611.
143. Van Niekerk C, et al. *J Clin Pathol*. 2017;70(9):808–813.
144. Section on Anesthesiology and Pain Medicine. *Pediatrics*. 2014; 134(3):634–641.
145. Becke K, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25(3):333–339.
146. Makela MJ, et al. *J Clin Microbiol*. 1998;36(2):539–542.
147. Empey DW, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1976;113(2):131–139.
148. Tait AR, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;18(6):603–607.
149. Tait AR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(2):299–306.
150. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, et al. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9743):773–783.
151. Worner J, et al. *Anaesthesist*. 2009;58(10):1041–1044.
152. Scalfaro P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(4):898–902.
153. Kain ZN, et al. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med*. 1996;150(12):1238–1245.
154. O'Sullivan M, Wong G. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care and Pain*. 2013;13(6):196–199.
155. Tan L, Meakin G. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care and Pain*. 2010;10(2):48–52.
156. Watson AT, Visram A. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2003;13(3):188–204.
157. Chundamala J, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56(1):57–70.
158. Strom S. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25(3):321–325.
159. Caldas JC, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(11):910–915.
160. Marechal C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(2):247–253.
161. Liu PP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;121(2):438–444.
162. Bozkurt P, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2007;20(3):211–215.
163. Practice guidelines for preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration: application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Preoperative Fasting and the Use of Pharmacologic Agents to Reduce the Risk of Pulmonary Aspiration. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(3):376–393.
164. Frykholm P, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(3):469–474.
165. Mesbah A, Thomas M. *BJA Education*. 2017;17(10):346–350.
166. Schmidt AR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;121(3):647–655.
167. Ramgolam A, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(6):1065–1074.
168. Christiansen E, Chambers N. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(5):421–425.
169. Davidson AJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(6):1051–1052.
170. Newton R, Hack H. *BJA Eduction*. 2016;16(4):120–123.
171. Eich C, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(9):1167–1172.
172. Engelhardt T, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(1):5–8.
173. Warner MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(1):56–62.
174. Kalinowski CP, Kirsch JR. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2004;18(4):719–737.
175. Warner MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(1):66–71.
176. Weiss M, Engelhardt T. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29(6):257–258.
177. Raj D, Luginbuehl I. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care and Pain*. 2015;15(1):7–13.
178. Klucka J, et al. *Biomed Res Int*. 2015;2015:368761.
179. Frei FJ, Ummenhofer W. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1996;6(4):251–263.
180. Karkouti K, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47(8):730–739.
181. Heinrich S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(8):729–736.
182. Meier S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(3):494–499. table of contents.
183. Harless J, et al. *Int J Crit Illn Inj Sci*. 2014;4(1):65–70.
184. Arai YC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(6):1638–1641. table of contents.
185. Brambrink AM, Braun U. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;19(4):675–697.
186. Holm-Knudsen R, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(10):839–845.
187. White MC, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(suppl 1):55–65.
188. Luce V, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(10):1088–1098.
189. Leslie D, et al. *Anaesthesia and Intensive Care Medicine*. 2015;16(8):389–394.
190. Wallace C, Englehardt T. *Current Treatment Options in Pediatrics*. 2015;1:25–37.
191. Brooks P, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(3):285–290.
192. Brambrink AM, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2002;15(3):329–337.
193. Black AE, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(4):346–362.
194. Engelhardt T, Weiss M. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25(3):326–332.
195. Maloney E, Meakin GH. *Conitnuing Education in Anesthesia, Critical Care and Pain*. 2007;7:183–186.
196. Kneyber MC. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2015;29(3):371–379.
197. Slutsky AS, Ranieri VM. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(22):2126–2136.
198. de Jager P, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(12):2461–2472.
199. Randolph AG. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37(8):2448–2454.
200. Erickson S, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(4):317–323.
201. Feldman JM. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(1):165–175.
202. Pearsall MF, Feldman JM. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(4):776–780.
203. Section on A, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2015;136(6):1200–1205.
204. Holtby H, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(10):952–961.
205. Schindler E, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(10):1002–1007.
206. Benkhadra M, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(5):449–454.
207. Seiden SC, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(12):1217–1223.
208. Cote CJ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(2):150–159.
209. Yu Y, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2018;1:CD010947.
210. Ganesh A, Watcha MF. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2004;17(3):229–234.
211. Cornelissen L, et al. *Elife*. 2015;4:e06513.
212. van der Griend BF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(6):1440–1447.
213. Jimenez N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(1):147–153.
214. Schreiner MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(3):475–480.
215. Mamie C, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(3):218–224.
216. Habre W, et al. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2017;5(5):412–425.
217. Auroy Y, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(1):234–235.
218. Zgleszewski SE. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(2):482–489.
219. Lunn JN. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 1992;2:69–72.
220. Weiss M, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2015;28(3):302–307.
221. Holliday MA, Segar WE. *Pediatrics*. 1957;19(5):823–832.
222. Oh TH. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53(4):351.
223. Bailey AG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(2):375–390.
224. Sumpelmann R, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(1):10–18.
225. Oh GJ, Sutherland SM. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 2016;31(1):53–60.
226. McNab S, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;12:CD009457.
227. McNab S, et al. *Lancet*. 2015;386(9989):136.
228. Leelanukrom R, Cunliffe M. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2000;10(4):353–359.
229. Datta PK, Aravindan A. *Anesth Essays Res*. 2017;11(3):539–543.
230. Osborn DA, Evans N. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2004;(2):CD002055.
231. Sumpelmann R, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(10):929–933.
232. Brutocao D, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1996;10(3):348–351.
233. Northern Neonatal Nursing Initiative. *Eur J Pediatr*. 1996;155(7): 580–588.
234. Northern Neonatal Nursing Initiative. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9022): 229–232.
235. Hume HA, Limoges P. *Am J Ther*. 2002;9(5):396–405.
236. Barcelona SL, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(9):716–726.
237. Barcelona SL, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(10):814–830.
238. Cote CJ. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(5):676–680.
239. Cote CJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67(2):152–160.
240. Cote CJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(4):465–470.
241. Diab YA, et al. *Br J Haematol*. 2013;161(1):15–26.
242. Chidester SJ, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;73(5):1273–1277.
243. Blain S, Paterson N. *BJA Education*. 2016;16(8):269–275.
244. Reddick AD, et al. *Emergency medicine journal : EMJ*. 2011;28(3):201–202.
245. Polaner DM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(6):1353–1364.
246. Suresh S, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30(1):101–117.
247. Morray JP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(1):6–14.
248. Flick RP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(2):226–237. quiz 413-224.
249. Murat I, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(2):158–166.
250. Tay CL, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11(6):711–718.
251. Tiret L, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61(3):263–269.
252. Askie LM, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;4:CD011190.
253. McCann ME, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2014;133(3):e751–757.
254. Chang PS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(4):885–898.
255. Davidson A. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(1):3–4.
256. Davidson AJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):507–509.
257. Diaz LK, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(10):862–869.
258. Broemling N, Campbell F. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21(11):1092–1099.
259. Knottenbelt G, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(3):268–274.
260. Putnam LR, et al. *JAMA pediatrics*. 2016;170(12):1188–1194.
261. Kays DW. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2017;26(3):166–170.
262. Snoek KG, et al. *Neonatology*. 2016;110(1):66–74.
263. Deprest J, et al. *Ultrasound Obstet Gyncecol*. 2004;24:121–126.
264. Cook-Sather SD, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44(2):168–172.
265. Cook-Sather SD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(5):945–951.
266. Andropoulos DB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(1):216–219.
267. Davidson AJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(1):38–54.
268. Frawley G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(1):55–65.
269. Silins V, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(3):230–238.
270. Kurth CD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(4):483–488.
271. Cote CJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(4):809–822.

272. Sale SM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96(6):774–778.
273. William JM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86(3):366–371.
274. Welborn LG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(5):838–842.
275. Henderson-Smart DJ, Steer PA. *Ochrane Database Ssyt rev*. 2001;4:CD000048.
276. Walther-Larsen S, Rasmussen LS. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50(7):888–893.
277. Murphy JJ, et al. *Journal of Pediatric Surgery*. 2008;43(5):865–868.
278. Bosenberg AT, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74(5):506–508.
279. Lewis SR, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;7:CD003591.
280. Stewart DW, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(2):136–143.
281. Strauss SG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(2):328–332.
282. American Academy of Pediatrics. *Pediatrics*. 2002;109(4):704–712.
283. Nixon GM, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2004;113(1 Pt 1):e19–25.
284. Gross D, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16(4):444–450.
285. Kelly LE, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2012;129(5):e1343–1347.
286. Voronov P, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(7):684–687.
287. Birnkrant DJ, et al. *Chest*. 2007;132(6):1977–1986.
288. Allison KR. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(1):1–6.
289. Shapiro F, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2016;26(7):710–721.
290. Brandom BW, Veyckemans F. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2013;23(9):765–769.
291. Veyckemans F. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23(3):348–355.
292. Litman RS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(1):159–167.
293. Parikh S, et al. *Genetics in medicine : official journal of the American College of Medical Genetics*. 2017;19(12).
294. Vlassakova BG, Emmanouil DE. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2016;29(3):359–366.
295. Taghizadeh N, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(11):1076–1084.
296. Wongprasartsuk P, Stevens J. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12(4):296–303.
297. Theroux MC, Akins RE. *Anesthesiology clinics of North America*. 2005;23(4):733–743. ix.

References

1. Moutquin JM. Classification and heterogeneity of preterm birth. *BJOG*. 2003;110(suppl 20):30–33.
2. Morton SU, Brodsky D. Fetal physiology and the transition to extrauterine Life. *Clin Perinatol*. 2016;43(3):395–407.
3. American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Fetus and Newborn. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Committee on Obstetric Practice. The Apgar Score. *Pediatrics*. 2015;136(4):819–822.
4. Lloyd DF, Vara R, Mathur S. Cardiac manifestations of inherited metabolic disease in children. *Pediatr Int*. 2017;59(5):525–529.
5. Hillman NH, Kallapur SG, Jobe AH. Physiology of transition from intrauterine to extrauterine life. *Clin Perinatol*. 2012;39(4):769–783.
6. Keens TG, Bryan AC, Levison H, Ianuzzo CD. Developmental pattern of muscle fiber types in human ventilatory muscles. *J Appl Physiol Respir Environ Exerc Physiol*. 1978;44(6):909–913.
7. Eckenhoff JE. Some anatomic considerations of the infant larynx influencing endotracheal anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1951;12(4):401–410.
8. Holzki J, Brown KA, Carroll RG, Cote CJ. The anatomy of the pediatric airway: has our knowledge changed in 120 years? A review of historic and recent investigations of the anatomy of the pediatric larynx. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(1):13–22.
9. Arens R, McDonough JM, Corbin AM, et al. Linear dimensions of the upper airway structure during development: assessment by magnetic resonance imaging. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;165(1):117–122.
10. Seymour AH, Prakash N. A cadaver study to measure the adult glottis and subglottis: defining a problem associated with the use of double-lumen tubes. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2002;16(2):196–198.
11. Miller MJ, Martin RJ, Carlo WA, Fouke JM, Strohl KP, Fanaroff AA. Oral breathing in newborn infants. *J Pediatr*. 1985;107(3):465–469.
12. de Almeida V, Alvaro R, al-Alaiyan S, et al. Prevalence and characterization of spontaneous oral breathing in preterm infants. *Am J Perinatol*. 1995;12(3):185–188.
13. deAlmeida VL, Alvaro RA, Haider Z, et al. The effect of nasal occlusion on the initiation of oral breathing in preterm infants. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 1994;18(6):374–378.
14. Heilbron DC, Holliday MA, al-Dahwi A, Kogan BA. Expressing glomerular filtration rate in children. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 1991;5(1):5–11.
15. Vieux R, Hascoet JM, Merdariu D, Fresson J, Guillemin F. Glomerular filtration rate reference values in very preterm infants. *Pediatrics*. 2010;125(5):e1186–e1192.
16. Beath SV. Hepatic function and physiology in the newborn. *Semin Neonatol*. 2003;8(5):337–346.
17. Grijalva J, Vakili K. Neonatal liver physiology. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2013;22(4):185–189.
18. Andrew M, Paes B, Milner R, et al. Development of the human coagulation system in the full-term infant. *Blood*. 1987;70(1):165–172.
19. Andrew M, Vegh P, Johnston M, Bowker J, Ofosu F, Mitchell L. Maturation of the hemostatic system during childhood. *Blood*. 1992;80(8):1998–2005.
20. Hepponstall M, Chan A, Monagle P. Anticoagulation therapy in neonates, children and adolescents. *Blood Cells Mol Dis*. 2017;67:41–47.
21. Haley KM. Neonatal venous thromboembolism. *Front Pediatr*. 2017;5:136.
22. Stein PD, Kayali F, Olson RE. Incidence of venous thromboembolism in infants and children: data from the National Hospital Discharge Survey. *J Pediatr*. 2004;145(4):563–565.
23. Morgan J, Checketts M, Arana A, et al. Prevention of perioperative venous thromboembolism in pediatric patients: guidelines from the Association of Paediatric Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (APAGBI). *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(5):382–391.
24. Simon AK, Hollander GA, McMichael A. Evolution of the immune system in humans from infancy to old age. *Proc Biol Sci*. 2015;282(1821):20143085.
25. Fitzgerald M. The development of nociceptive circuits. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2005;6(7):507–520.
26. Fitzgerald M. What do we really know about newborn infant pain? *Exp Physiol*. 2015;100(12):1451–1457.
27. Valeri BO, Holsti L, Linhares MB. Neonatal pain and developmental outcomes in children born preterm: a systematic review. *Clin J Pain*. 2015;31(4):355–362.
28. Knobel RB. Fetal ad neonatal thermal physiology. *Newborn Infant Nurs Rev*. 2014;14:45–49.
29. Sumpter A, Anderson BJ. Pediatric pharmacology in the first year of life. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2009;22(4):469–475.
30. Kaufmann J, Wolf AR, Becke K, Laschat M, Wappler F, Engelhardt T. Drug safety in paediatric anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(5):670–679.
31. Anderson BJ. My child is unique; the pharmacokinetics are universal. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(6):530–538.
32. Barker CIS, Standing JF, Kelly LE, et al. Pharmacokinetic studies in children: recommendations for practice and research. *Arch Dis Child*. 2018;103(7):695–702.
33. Friis-Hansen B. Body composition during growth. In vivo measurements and biochemical data correlated to differential anatomical growth. *Pediatrics*. 1971;47(1):suppl 2:264.
34. Anderson BJ, Holford NH. Mechanistic basis of using body size and maturation to predict clearance in humans. *Drug Metab Pharmacokinet*. 2009;24(1):25–36.
35. Welzing L, Ebenfeld S, Dlugay V, Wiesen MH, Roth B, Mueller C. Remifentanil degradation in umbilical cord blood of preterm infants. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(3):570–577.
36. Monagle P, Chan AKC, Goldenberg NA, et al. Antithrombotic therapy in neonates and children: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Chest*. 2012;141(suppl 2):e737S–e801S.
37. Katoh T, Ikeda K. Minimum alveolar concentration of sevoflurane in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 1992;68(2):139–141.
38. Lerman J, Sikich N, Kleinman S, Yentis S. The pharmacology of sevoflurane in infants and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(4):814–824.
39. Lerman J, Robinson S, Willis MM, Gregory GA. Anesthetic requirements for halothane in young children 0-1 month and 1-6 months of age. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;59(5):421–424.
40. Taylor RH, Lerman J. Minimum alveolar concentration of desflurane and hemodynamic responses in neonates, infants, and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(6):975–979.
41. LeDez KM, Lerman J. The minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) of isoflurane in preterm neonates. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(3):301–307.
42. Gregory GA, Eger EI, Munson ES. The relationship between age and halothane requirement in man. *Anesthesiology*. 1969;30(5):488–491.
43. Katoh T, Ikeda K. The minimum alveolar concentration (MAC) of sevoflurane in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(3):301–303.
44. Nicodemus HF, Nassiri-Rahimi C, Bachman L, Smith TC. Median effective doses (ED50) of halothane in adults and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1969;31(4):344–348.
45. Katoh T, Suguro Y, Ikeda T, Kazama T, Ikeda K. Influence of age on awakening concentrations of sevoflurane and isoflurane. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76(2):348–352.
46. Inomata S, Suwa T, Toyooka H, Suto Y. End-tidal sevoflurane concentration for tracheal extubation and skin incision in children. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(6):1263–1267.
47. Taguchi M, Watanabe S, Asakura N, Inomata S. End-tidal sevoflurane concentrations for laryngeal mask airway insertion and for tracheal intubation in children. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81(3):628–631.
48. Kihara S, Yaguchi Y, Inomata S, et al. Influence of nitrous oxide on minimum alveolar concentration of sevoflurane for laryngeal mask insertion in children. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(5):1055–1058.
49. Davidson AJ, Huang GH, Rebmann CS, Ellery C. Performance of entropy and bispectral index as measures of anaesthesia effect in children of different ages. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(5):674–679.
50. Wodey E, Tirel O, Bansard JY, et al. Impact of age on both BIS values and EEG bispectrum during anaesthesia with sevoflurane in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94(6):810–820.
51. Murat I, Lechene P, Ventura-Clapier R. Effects of volatile anesthetics on mechanical properties of rat cardiac skinned fibers. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73(1):73–81.
52. Murat I, Chaussain M, Saint-Maurice C. Ventilatory responses to carbon dioxide in children during nitrous oxide-halothane anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57(12):1197–1203.
53. Murat I, Delleur MM, MacGee K, Saint-Maurice C. Changes in ventilatory patterns during halothane anaesthesia in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 1985;57(6):569–572.

54. Murat I, Chaussain M, Hamza J, Saint-Maurice C. The respiratory effects of isoflurane, enflurane and halothane in spontaneously breathing children. *Anaesthesia*. 1987;42(7):711–718.
55. Bhananker SM, Ramamoorthy C, Geiduschek JM, et al. Anesthesia-related cardiac arrest in children: update from the Pediatric Perioperative Cardiac Arrest Registry. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(2):344–350.
56. Ramamoorthy C, Haberkern CM, Bhananker SM, et al. Anesthesia-related cardiac arrest in children with heart disease: data from the Pediatric Perioperative Cardiac Arrest (POCA) registry. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(5):1376–1382.
57. Constant I, Seeman R, Murat I. Sevoflurane and epileptiform EEG changes. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(4):266–274.
58. Fisher DM, Zwass MS. MAC of desflurane in 60% nitrous oxide in infants and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(3):354–356.
59. Zwass MS, Fisher DM, Welborn LG, et al. Induction and maintenance characteristics of anesthesia with desflurane and nitrous oxide in infants and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76(3):373–378.
60. Tsze DS, Mallory MD, Cravero JP. Practice patterns and adverse events of nitrous oxide sedation and analgesia: a report from the pediatric sedation research consortium. *J Pediatr*. 2016;169:260–265 e262.
61. Babl FE, Oakley E, Puspitadewi A, Sharwood LN. Limited analgesic efficacy of nitrous oxide for painful procedures in children. *EMJ*. 2008;25(11):717–721.
62. Babl FE, Oakley E, Seaman C, Barnett P, Sharwood LN. High-concentration nitrous oxide for procedural sedation in children: adverse events and depth of sedation. *Pediatrics*. 2008;121(3):e528–532.
63. Villeret I, Laffon M, Duchalais A, Blond MH, Lecuyer AI, Mercier C. Incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting in paediatric ambulatory surgery. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12(8):712–717.
64. Pandit UA, Malviya S, Lewis IH. Vomiting after outpatient tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy in children: the role of nitrous oxide. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80(2):230–233.
65. Devroe S, Lemiere J, Van Hese L, et al. The effect of xenon-augmented sevoflurane anesthesia on intraoperative hemodynamics and early postoperative neurocognitive function in children undergoing cardiac catheterization: a randomized controlled pilot trial. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(8):726–738.
66. Devroe S, Meeusen R, Gewillig M, et al. Xenon as an adjuvant to sevoflurane anesthesia in children younger than 4 years of age, undergoing interventional or diagnostic cardiac catheterization: a randomized controlled clinical trial. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(12):1210–1219.
67. Bajwa SA, Costi D, Cyna AM. A comparison of emergence delirium scales following general anesthesia in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20(8):704–711.
68. Malarbi S, Stargatt R, Howard K, Davidson A. Characterizing the behavior of children emerging with delirium from general anesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21(9):942–950.
69. Martin JC, Liley DT, Harvey AS, Kuhlmann L, Sleigh JW, Davidson AJ. Alterations in the functional connectivity of frontal lobe networks preceding emergence delirium in children. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121(4):740–752.
70. Costi D, Ellwood J, Wallace A, Ahmed S, Waring L, Cyna A. Transition to propofol after sevoflurane anesthesia to prevent emergence agitation: a randomized controlled trial. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(5):517–523.
71. Dahmani S, Delivet H, Hilly J. Emergence delirium in children: an update. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2014;27(3):309–315.
72. Moore AD, Anghelescu DL. Emergence delirium in pediatric anesthesia. *Paediatr Drugs*. 2017;19(1):11–20.
73. van Hoff SL, O'Neill ES, Cohen LC, Collins BA. Does a prophylactic dose of propofol reduce emergence agitation in children receiving anesthesia? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(7):668–676.
74. Kim N, Park JH, Lee JS, Choi T, Kim MS. Effects of intravenous fentanyl around the end of surgery on emergence agitation in children: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(9):885–892.
75. Veyckemans F. Propofol for intubation of the newborn? *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11(5):630–631.
76. Fernandez PG, Mikhael M. Perioperative considerations for the food-allergic pediatric patient. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(5):461–470.
77. Parke TJ, Stevens JE, Rice AS, et al. Metabolic acidosis and fatal myocardial failure after propofol infusion in children: five case reports. *BMJ*. 1992;305(6854):613–616.
78. Wolf A, Weir P, Segar P, Stone J, Shield J. Impaired fatty acid oxidation in propofol infusion syndrome. *Lancet*. 2001;357(9256):606–607.
79. Lerman J. TIVA, TCI, and pediatrics: where are we and where are we going? *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20(3):273–278.
80. Lauder GR. Total intravenous anesthesia will supercede inhalational anesthesia in pediatric anesthetic practice. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(1):52–64.
81. Mani V, Morton NS. Overview of total intravenous anesthesia in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2010;20(3):211–222.
82. Gaynor J, Ansermino JM. Paediatric total intravenous anaesthesia. *BJA Education*. 2016;16(11):369–474.
83. Dahmani S, Brasher C, Stany I, et al. Premedication with clonidine is superior to benzodiazepines. A meta analysis of published studies. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2010;54(4):397–402.
84. Potts AL, Larsson P, Eksborg S, Warman G, Lonnqvist PA, Anderson BJ. Clonidine disposition in children; a population analysis. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(10):924–933.
85. Phan H, Nahata MC. Clinical uses of dexmedetomidine in pediatric patients. *Paediatr Drugs*. 2008;10(1):49–69.
86. Potts AL, Warman GR, Anderson BJ. Dexmedetomidine disposition in children: a population analysis. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(8):722–730.
87. Sun Y, Lu Y, Huang Y, Jiang H. Is dexmedetomidine superior to midazolam as a premedication in children? A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(8):863–874.
88. Pasin L, Febres D, Testa V, et al. Dexmedetomidine vs midazolam as preanesthetic medication in children: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(5):468–476.
89. Crews KR, Gaedigk A, Dunnenberger HM, et al. Clinical Pharmacogenetics Implementation Consortium (CPIC) guidelines for codeine therapy in the context of cytochrome P450 2D6 (CYP2D6) genotype. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2012;91(2):321–326.
90. Ciszkowski C, Madadi P, Phillips MS, Lauwers AE, Koren G. Codeine, ultrarapid-metabolism genotype, and postoperative death. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361(8):827–828.
91. Goresky GV, Koren G, Sabourin MA, Sale JP, Strunin L. The pharmacokinetics of alfentanil in children. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(5):654–659.
92. Ross AK, Davis PJ, Dear GdL, et al. Pharmacokinetics of remifentanil in anesthetized pediatric patients undergoing elective surgery or diagnostic procedures. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(6):1393–1401. table of contents.
93. Crawford MW, Hayes J, Tan JM. Dose-response of remifentanil for tracheal intubation in infants. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(6):1599–1604.
94. Morgan JM, Barker I, Peacock JE, Eissa A. A comparison of intubating conditions in children following induction of anaesthesia with propofol and suxamethonium or propofol and remifentanil. *Anaesthesia*. 2007;62(2):135–139.
95. Anderson BJ, Thomas J, Ottaway K, Chalkiadis GA. Tramadol: keep calm and carry on. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(8):785–788.
96. Larach MG, Rosenberg H, Gronert GA, Allen GC. Hyperkalemic cardiac arrest during anesthesia in infants and children with occult myopathies. *Clin Pediatr*. 1997;36(1):9–16.
97. Tran DTT, Newton EK, Mount VAH, et al. Rocuronium vs. succinylcholine for rapid sequence intubation: a Cochrane systematic review. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72(6):765–777.
98. Reynolds LM, Lau M, Brown R, Luks A, Fisher DM. Intramuscular rocuronium in infants and children. Dose-ranging and tracheal intubating conditions. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(2):231–239.
99. Plaud B. [Sugammadex: something new to improve patient safety or simply a gadget?]. *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*. 2009;28(suppl 2):S64–69.
100. Tobias JD. Current evidence for the use of sugammadex in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(7):781.
101. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. FDA review results in new warning about using general anesthetics and sedation drugs in youg hildren and pregnant women. In: UFaD A, ed. *FDA Drug Safety Communication* 2016.
102. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. FDA approves label changes for use of general anesthetic and sedation drugs in young children. In: UFaD A, ed. *FDA Drug Safety Communication*. 2017.
103. Vutskits L, Xie Z. Lasting impact of general anaesthesia on the brain: mechanisms and relevance. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2016;17(11):705–717.
104. Lin EP, Lee JR, Lee CS, Deng M, Loepke AW. Do anesthetics harm the developing human brain? An integrative analysis of animal and human studies. *Neurotoxicol Teratol*. 2017;60:117–128.

105. Jevtovic-Todorovic V, Hartman RE, Izumi Y, et al. Early exposure to common anesthetic agents causes widespread neurodegeneration in the developing rat brain and persistent learning deficits. *J Neurosci*. 2003;23(3):876–882.
106. Paule MG, Li M, Allen RR, et al. Ketamine anesthesia during the first week of life can cause long-lasting cognitive deficits in rhesus monkeys. *Neurotoxicol Teratol*. 2011;33(2):220–230.
107. Raper J, Alvarado MC, Murphy KL, Baxter MG. Multiple anesthetic exposure in infant monkeys alters emotional reactivity to an acute stressor. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(5):1084–1092.
108. Istaphanous GK, Ward CG, Nan X, et al. Characterization and quantification of isoflurane-induced developmental apoptotic cell death in mouse cerebral cortex. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116(4):845–854.
109. Briner A, De Roo M, Dayer A, Muller D, Habre W, Vutskits L. Volatile anesthetics rapidly increase dendritic spine density in the rat medial prefrontal cortex during synaptogenesis. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(3):546–556.
110. Brambrink AM, Back SA, Riddle A, et al. Isoflurane-induced apoptosis of oligodendrocytes in the neonatal primate brain. *Ann Neurol*. 2012;72(4):525–535.
111. Vutskits L, Davidson A. Update on developmental anesthesia neurotoxicity. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2017;30(3):337–342.
112. Disma N, O'Leary JD, Loepke AW, et al. Anesthesia and the developing brain: a way forward for laboratory and clinical research. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(9):758–763.
113. Davidson AJ, Sun LS. Clinical evidence for any effect of anesthesia on the developing brain. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(4):840–853.
114. Beers SR, Rofey DL, McIntyre KA. Neurodevelopmental assessment after anesthesia in childhood: review of the literature and recommendations. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;119(3):661–669.
115. Bartels M, Althoff RR, Boomsma DI. Anesthesia and cognitive performance in children: no evidence for a causal relationship. *Twin Res Hum Genet*. 2009;12(3):246–253.
116. Hansen TG, Pedersen JK, Henneberg SW, et al. Academic performance in adolescence after inguinal hernia repair in infancy: a nationwide cohort study. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(5):1076–1085.
117. Glatz P, Sandin RH, Pedersen NL, Bonamy AK, Eriksson LI, Granath F. Association of anesthesia and surgery during childhood with long-term academic performance. *JAMA Pediatr*. 2017;171(1):e163470.
118. O'Leary JD, Janus M, Duku E, et al. A population-based study evaluating the association between surgery in early life and child development at primary school entry. *Anesthesiology*. 2016; 125(2):272–279.
119. Graham MR, Brownell M, Chateau DG, Dragan RD, Burchill C, Fransoo RR. Neurodevelopmental assessment in kindergarten in children exposed to general anesthesia before the age of 4 years: a retrospective matched cohort study. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125(4):667–677.
120. Schneuer FJ, Bentley JP, Davidson AJ, et al. The impact of general anesthesia on child development and school performance: a population-based study. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(6):528–536.
121. Wilder RT, Flick RP, Sprung J, et al. Early exposure to anesthesia and learning disabilities in a population-based birth cohort. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(4):796–804.
122. Flick RP, Katusic SK, Colligan RC, et al. Cognitive and behavioral outcomes after early exposure to anesthesia and surgery. *Pediatrics*. 2011;128(5):e1053–e1061.
123. Hu D, Flick RP, Zaccariello MJ, et al. Association between exposure of young children to procedures requiring general anesthesia and learning and behavioral outcomes in a population-based birth cohort. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(2):227–240.
124. Ing C, Sun M, Olfson M, et al. Age at exposure to surgery and anesthesia in children and association with mental disorder diagnosis. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(6):1988–1998.
125. Warner DO, Zaccariello MJ, Katusic SK, et al. Neuropsychological and behavioral outcomes after exposure of young children to procedures requiring general anesthesia: the Mayo Anesthesia Safety in Kids (MASK) Study. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129(1):89–105.
126. DiMaggio C, Sun LS, Kakavouli A, Byrne MW, Li G. A retrospective cohort study of the association of anesthesia and hernia repair surgery with behavioral and developmental disorders in young children. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2009;21(4):286–291.
127. Ko WR, Liaw YP, Huang JY, et al. Exposure to general anesthesia in early life and the risk of attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder development: a nationwide, retrospective matched-cohort study. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(7):741–748.
128. Ko WR, Huang JY, Chiang YC, et al. Risk of autistic disorder after exposure to general anaesthesia and surgery: a nationwide, retrospective matched cohort study. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2015;32(5):303–310.
129. Ing C, DiMaggio C, Whitehouse A, et al. Long-term differences in language and cognitive function after childhood exposure to anesthesia. *Pediatrics*. 2012;130(3):e476–e485.
130. Stratmann G, Lee J, Sall JW, et al. Effect of general anesthesia in infancy on long-term recognition memory in humans and rats. *Neuropsychopharmacology*. 2014;39(10):2275–2287.
131. Backeljauw B, Holland SK, Altaye M, Loepke AW. Cognition and brain structure following early childhood surgery with anesthesia. *Pediatrics*. 2015;136(1):e1–12.
132. de Heer IJ, Tiemeier H, Hoeks SE, Weber F. Intelligence quotient scores at the age of 6 years in children anaesthetised before the age of 5 years. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72(1):57–62.
133. Sun LS, Li G, Miller TL, et al. Association between a single general anesthesia exposure before age 36 months and neurocognitive outcomes in later childhood. *JAMA*. 2016;315(21):2312–2320.
134. Davidson AJ, Disma N, de Graaff JC, et al. Neurodevelopmental outcome at 2 years of age after general anaesthesia and awake-regional anaesthesia in infancy (GAS): an international multicentre, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2016;387(10015):239–250.
135. Bartels DD, McCann ME, Davidson AJ, Polaner DM, Whitlock EL, Bateman BT. Estimating pediatric general anesthesia exposure: quantifying duration and risk. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(6):520–527.
136. Shi Y, Hu D, Rodgers EL, et al. Epidemiology of general anesthesia prior to age 3 in a population-based birth cohort. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2018;28(6):513–519.
137. Stolwijk LJ, Lemmers PM, Harmsen M, et al. Neurodevelopmental outcomes after neonatal surgery for major noncardiac anomalies. *Pediatrics*. 2016;137(2):e20151728.
138. Stolwijk LJ, Keunen K, de Vries LS, et al. Neonatal surgery for noncardiac congenital anomalies: neonates at risk of brain injury. *J Pediatr*. 2017;182:335–341.e331.
139. American Academy of Pediatrics. Evaluation and preparation of pediatric patients undergoing anesthesia. American Academy of Pediatrics. Section on Anesthesiology. *Pediatrics*. 1996;98(3 Pt 1):502–508.
140. Committee on S, Practice P, Apfelbaum JL, et al. Practice advisory for preanesthesia evaluation: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Preanesthesia Evaluation. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):522–538.
141. Skinner JR, Van Hare GF. Routine ECG screening in infancy and early childhood should not be performed. *Heart Rhythm*. 2014;11(12):2322–2327.
142. Saul JP, Schwartz PJ, Ackerman MJ, Triedman JK. Neonatal ECG screening: opinions and facts. *Heart Rhythm*. 2015;12(3):610–611.
143. Van Niekerk C, Van Deventer BS, du Toit-Prinsloo L. Long QT syndrome and sudden unexpected infant death. *J Clin Pathol*. 2017;70(9):808–813.
144. Section on Anesthesiology and Pain Medicine. The pediatrician's role in the evaluation and preparation of pediatric patients undergoing anesthesia. *Pediatrics*. 2014;134(3):634–641.
145. Becke K. Anesthesia in children with a cold. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25(3):333–339.
146. Makela MJ, Puhakka T, Ruuskanen O, et al. Viruses and bacteria in the etiology of the common cold. *J Clin Microbiol*. 1998;36(2):539–542.
147. Empey DW, Laitinen LA, Jacobs L, Gold WM, Nadel JA. Mechanisms of bronchial hyperreactivity in normal subjects after upper respiratory tract infection. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1976;113(2):131–139.
148. Tait AR. Anesthetic management of the child with an upper respiratory tract infection. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;18(6):603–607.
149. Tait AR, Malviya S, Voepel-Lewis T, Munro HM, Seiwert M, Pandit UA. Risk factors for perioperative adverse respiratory events in children with upper respiratory tract infections. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(2):299–306.
150. von Ungern-Sternberg BS, Boda K, Chambers NA, et al. Risk assessment for respiratory complications in paediatric anaesthesia: a prospective cohort study. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9743):773–783.
151. Worner J, Johr M, Berger TM, Christen P. [Infections with respiratory syncytial virus. Underestimated risk during anaesthesia in infants]. *Anaesthesist*. 2009;58(10):1041–1044.
152. Scalfaro P, Sly PD, Sims C, Habre W. Salbutamol prevents the increase of respiratory resistance caused by tracheal intubation during sevoflurane anesthesia in asthmatic children. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(4):898–902.

153. Kain ZN, Mayes LC, O'Connor TZ, Cicchetti DV. Preoperative anxiety in children. Predictors and outcomes. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med*. 1996;150(12):1238–1245.
154. O'Sullivan M, Wong G. Preinduction techniques to relieve anxiety in children underging general anaesthesia. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care and Pain*. 2013;13(6):196–199.
155. Tan L, Meakin G. Anaesthesia for the uncooperative child. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care and Pain*. 2010;10(2):48–52.
156. Watson AT, Visram A. Children's preoperative anxiety and postoperative behaviour. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2003;13(3):188–204.
157. Chundamala J, Wright JG, Kemp SM. An evidence-based review of parental presence during anesthesia induction and parent/child anxiety. *Can J Anaesth*. 2009;56(1):57–70.
158. Strom S. Preoperative evaluation, premedication, and induction of anesthesia in infants and children. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25(3):321–325.
159. Caldas JC, Pais-Ribeiro JL, Carneiro SR. General anesthesia, surgery and hospitalization in children and their effects upon cognitive, academic, emotional and sociobehavioral development - a review. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(11):910–915.
160. Marechal C, Berthiller J, Tosetti S, et al. Children and parental anxiolysis in paediatric ambulatory surgery: a randomized controlled study comparing 0.3 mg kg-1 midazolam to tablet computer based interactive distraction. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;118(2):247–253.
161. Liu PP, Sun Y, Wu C, et al. The effectiveness of transport in a toy car for reducing preoperative anxiety in preschool children: a randomised controlled prospective trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;121(2):438–444.
162. Bozkurt P. Premedication of the pediatric patient - anesthesia for the uncooperative child. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2007;20(3):211–215.
163. Practice guidelines for preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration: application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Preoperative Fasting and the Use of Pharmacologic Agents to Reduce the Risk of Pulmonary Aspiration. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(3): 376–393.
164. Frykholm P, Schindler E, Sumpelmann R, Walker R, Weiss M. Preoperative fasting in children: review of existing guidelines and recent developments. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120(3):469–474.
165. Mesbah A, Thomas M. Preoperative fasting in children. *BJA Education*. 2017;17(10):346–350.
166. Schmidt AR, Buehler KP, Both C, et al. Liberal fluid fasting: impact on gastric pH and residual volume in healthy children undergoing general anaesthesia for elective surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;121(3):647–655.
167. Ramgolam A, Hall GL, Zhang G, Hegarty M, von Ungern-Sternberg BS. Inhalational versus intravenous induction of anesthesia in children with a high risk of perioperative respiratory adverse events: a randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(6):1065–1074.
168. Christiansen E, Chambers N. Induction of anesthesia in a combative child; management and issues. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(5):421–425.
169. Davidson AJ. Induction of anesthesia for children: should we recommend the needle or the mask? *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(6):1051–1052.
170. Newton R, Hack H. Place of rapid sequence induction in paediatric anaesthesia. *BJA Eduction*. 2016;16(4):120–123.
171. Eich C, Timmermann A, Russo SG, et al. A controlled rapid-sequence induction technique for infants may reduce unsafe actions and stress. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2009;53(9):1167–1172.
172. Engelhardt T. Rapid sequence induction has no use in pediatric anesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(1):5–8.
173. Warner MA, Warner ME, Weber JG. Clinical significance of pulmonary aspiration during the perioperative period. *Anesthesiology*. 1993;78(1):56–62.
174. Kalinowski CP, Kirsch JR. Strategies for prophylaxis and treatment for aspiration. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2004;18(4):719–737.
175. Warner MA, Warner ME, Warner DO, Warner LO, Warner EJ. Perioperative pulmonary aspiration in infants and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(1):66–71.
176. Weiss M, Engelhardt T. Cannot cannulate: bonulate!. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2012;29(6):257–258.
177. Raj D, Luginbuehl I. Managing the difficult airway in the syndromic child. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care and Pain*. 2015;15(1):7–13.
178. Klucka J, Stourac P, Stoudek R, Toukalkova M, Harazim H, Kosinova M. Controversies in pediatric perioperative airways. *Biomed Res Int*. 2015;2015:368761.
179. Frei FJ, Ummenhofer W. Difficult intubation in paediatrics. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1996;6(4):251–263.
180. Karkouti K, Rose DK, Wigglesworth D, Cohen MM. Predicting difficult intubation: a multivariable analysis. *Can J Anaesth*. 2000;47(8):730–739.
181. Heinrich S, Birkholz T, Ihmsen H, Irouschek A, Ackermann A, Schmidt J. Incidence and predictors of difficult laryngoscopy in 11,219 pediatric anesthesia procedures. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(8):729–736.
182. Meier S, Geiduschek J, Paganoni R, Fuehrmeyer F, Reber A. The effect of chin lift, jaw thrust, and continuous positive airway pressure on the size of the glottic opening and on stridor score in anesthetized, spontaneously breathing children. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(3):494–499. table of contents.
183. Harless J, Ramaiah R, Bhananker SM. Pediatric airway management. *Int J Crit Illn Inj Sci*. 2014;4(1):65–70.
184. Arai YC, Fukunaga K, Hirota S, Fujimoto S. The effects of chin lift and jaw thrust while in the lateral position on stridor score in anesthetized children with adenotonsillar hypertrophy. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(6):1638–1641. table of contents.
185. Brambrink AM, Braun U. Airway management in infants and children. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2005;19(4):675–697.
186. Holm-Knudsen R, Eriksen K, Rasmussen LS. Using a nasopharyngeal airway during fiberoptic intubation in small children with a difficult airway. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(10):839–845.
187. White MC, Cook TM, Stoddart PA. A critique of elective pediatric supraglottic airway devices. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(suppl 1):55–65.
188. Luce V, Harkouk H, Brasher C, et al. Supraglottic airway devices vs tracheal intubation in children: a quantitative meta-analysis of respiratory complications. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(10):1088–1098.
189. Leslie D, Froom S, Gildersleve C. Equipment and monitoring for paediatric anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia and Intensive Care Medicine*. 2015;16(8):389–394.
190. Wallace C, Englehardt T. Videolaryngoscopes in paediatric anaesthesia. *Current Treatment Options in Pediatrics*. 2015;1:25–37.
191. Brooks P, Ree R, Rosen D, Ansermino M. Canadian pediatric anesthesiologists prefer inhalational anesthesia to manage difficult airways. *Can J Anaesth*. 2005;52(3):285–290.
192. Brambrink AM, Meyer RR. Management of the paediatric airway: new developments. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2002;15(3):329–337.
193. Black AE, Flynn PE, Smith HL, et al. Development of a guideline for the management of the unanticipated difficult airway in pediatric practice. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(4):346–362.
194. Engelhardt T, Weiss M. A child with a difficult airway: what do I do next? *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25(3):326–332.
195. Maloney E, Meakin GH. Acute stridor in children. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care and Pain*. 2007;7:183–186.
196. Kneyber MC. Intraoperative mechanical ventilation for the pediatric patient. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2015;29(3):371–379.
197. Slutsky AS, Ranieri VM. Ventilator-induced lung injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(22):2126–2136.
198. de Jager P, Burgerhof JG, van Heerde M, Albers MJ, Markhorst DG, Kneyber MC. Tidal volume and mortality in mechanically ventilated children: a systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies*. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(12):2461–2472.
199. Randolph AG. Management of acute lung injury and acute respiratory distress syndrome in children. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37(8):2448–2454.
200. Erickson S, Schibler A, Numa A, et al. Acute lung injury in pediatric intensive care in Australia and New Zealand: a prospective, multicenter, observational study. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(4):317–323.
201. Feldman JM. Optimal ventilation of the anesthetized pediatric patient. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;120(1):165–175.
202. Pearsall MF, Feldman JM. When does apparatus dead space matter for the pediatric patient? *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(4):776–780.
203. Section on Anesthesiology and Pain Medicine, Polaner DM, Houck CS, American Academy of Pediatrics. Critical elements for the pediatric perioperative anesthesia environment. *Pediatrics*. 2015; 136(6):1200–1205.

204. Holtby H, Skowno JJ, Kor DJ, Flick RP, Uezono S. New technologies in pediatric anesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(10):952–961.
205. Schindler E, Schears GJ, Hall SR, Yamamoto T. Ultrasound for vascular access in pediatric patients. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(10):1002–1007.
206. Benkhadra M, Collignon M, Fournel I, et al. Ultrasound guidance allows faster peripheral IV cannulation in children under 3 years of age with difficult venous access: a prospective randomized study. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(5):449–454.
207. Seiden SC, McMullan S, Sequera-Ramos L, et al. Tablet-based Interactive Distraction (TBID) vs oral midazolam to minimize perioperative anxiety in pediatric patients: a noninferiority randomized trial. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(12):1217–1223.
208. Cote CJ, Sui J, Anderson TA, et al. Continuous noninvasive cardiac output in children: is this the next generation of operating room monitors? Initial experience in 402 pediatric patients. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(2):150–159.
209. Yu Y, Zhang K, Zhang L, Zong H, Meng L, Han R. Cerebral near-infrared spectroscopy (NIRS) for perioperative monitoring of brain oxygenation in children and adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2018;1:CD010947.
210. Ganesh A, Watcha MF. Bispectral index monitoring in pediatric anesthesia. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2004;17(3):229–234.
211. Cornelissen L, Kim SE, Purdon PL, Brown EN, Berde CB. Age-dependent electroencephalogram (EEG) patterns during sevoflurane general anesthesia in infants. *Elife*. 2015;4:e06513.
212. van der Griend BF, Lister NA, McKenzie IM, et al. Postoperative mortality in children after 101,885 anesthetics at a tertiary pediatric hospital. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112(6):1440–1447.
213. Jimenez N, Posner KL, Cheney FW, Caplan RA, Lee LA, Domino KB. An update on pediatric anesthesia liability: a closed claims analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(1):147–153.
214. Schreiner MS, O'Hara I, Markakis DA, Politis GD. Do children who experience laryngospasm have an increased risk of upper respiratory tract infection? *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85(3):475–480.
215. Mamie C, Habre W, Delhumeau C, Argiroffo CB, Morabia A. Incidence and risk factors of perioperative respiratory adverse events in children undergoing elective surgery. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(3):218–224.
216. Habre W, Disma N, Virag K, et al. Incidence of severe critical events in paediatric anaesthesia (APRICOT): a prospective multicentre observational study in 261 hospitals in Europe. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2017;5(5):412–425.
217. Auroy Y, Ecoffey C, Messiah A, Rouvier B. Relationship between complications of pediatric anesthesia and volume of pediatric anesthetics. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(1):234–235.
218. Zgleszewski SE, Graham DA, Hickey PR, et al. Anesthesiologist- and system-related risk factors for risk-adjusted pediatric anesthesia-related cardiac arrest. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122(2):482–489.
219. Lunn JN. Implications of the national confidential enquiry into perioperative deaths for paediatric anaesthesia. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*. 1992;2:69–72.
220. Weiss M, Vutskits L, Hansen TG, Engelhardt T. Safe anesthesia for every tot - The SAFETOTS initiative. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2015;28(3):302–307.
221. Holliday MA, Segar WE. The maintenance need for water in parenteral fluid therapy. *Pediatrics*. 1957;19(5):823–832.
222. Oh TH. Formulas for calculating fluid maintenance requirements. *Anesthesiology*. 1980;53(4):351.
223. Bailey AG, McNaull PP, Jooste E, Tuchman JB. Perioperative crystalloid and colloid fluid management in children: where are we and how did we get here? *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(2):375–390.
224. Sumpelmann R, Becke K, Brenner S, et al. Perioperative intravenous fluid therapy in children: guidelines from the Association of the Scientific Medical Societies in Germany. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27(1):10–18.
225. Oh GJ, Sutherland SM. Perioperative fluid management and postoperative hyponatremia in children. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 2016;31(1):53–60.
226. McNab S, Ware RS, Neville KA, et al. Isotonic versus hypotonic solutions for maintenance intravenous fluid administration in children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2014;12:CD009457.
227. McNab S, Babl FE, Lee KJ, Arnup SJ, Davidson A. Isotonic fluid for intravenous hydration maintenance in children - authors' reply. *Lancet*. 2015;386(9989):136.
228. Leelanukrom R, Cunliffe M. Intraoperative fluid and glucose management in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2000;10(4):353–359.
229. Datta PK, Aravindan A. Glucose for children during surgery: pros, cons, and protocols: a postgraduate educational review. *Anesth Essays Res*. 2017;11(3):539–543.
230. Osborn DA, Evans N. Early volume expansion for prevention of morbidity and mortality in very preterm infants. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2004;(2):CD002055.
231. Sumpelmann R, Kretz FJ, Gabler R, et al. Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.42/6:1 for perioperative plasma volume replacement in children: preliminary results of a European prospective multicenter observational Postauthorization Safety Study (PASS). *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2008;18(10):929–933.
232. Brutocao D, Bratton SL, Thomas JR, Schrader PF, Coles PG, Lynn AM. Comparison of hetastarch with albumin for postoperative volume expansion in children after cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1996;10(3):348–351.
233. Northern Neonatal Nursing Initiative. A randomized trial comparing the effect of prophylactic intravenous fresh frozen plasma, gelatin or glucose on early mortality and morbidity in preterm babies. The Northern Neonatal Nursing Initiative [NNNI] Trial Group. *Eur J Pediatr*. 1996;155(7):580–588.
234. Northern Neonatal Nursing Initiative. Randomised trial of prophylactic early fresh-frozen plasma or gelatin or glucose in preterm babies: outcome at 2 years. Northern Neonatal Nursing Initiative Trial Group. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9022):229–232.
235. Hume HA, Limoges P. Perioperative blood transfusion therapy in pediatric patients. *Am J Ther*. 2002;9(5):396–405.
236. Barcelona SL, Thompson AA, Cote CJ. Intraoperative pediatric blood transfusion therapy: a review of common issues. Part I: hematologic and physiologic differences from adults; metabolic and infectious risks. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(9):716–726.
237. Barcelona SL, Thompson AA, Cote CJ. Intraoperative pediatric blood transfusion therapy: a review of common issues. Part II: transfusion therapy, special considerations, and reduction of allogenic blood transfusions. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(10):814–830.
238. Cote CJ. Depth of halothane anesthesia potentiates citrate-induced ionized hypocalcemia and adverse cardiovascular events in dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67(5):676–680.
239. Cote CJ, Drop LJ, Hoaglin DC, Daniels AL, Young ET. Ionized hypocalcemia after fresh frozen plasma administration to thermally injured children: effects of infusion rate, duration, and treatment with calcium chloride. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67(2):152–160.
240. Cote CJ, Drop LJ, Daniels AL, Hoaglin DC. Calcium chloride versus calcium gluconate: comparison of ionization and cardiovascular effects in children and dogs. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(4):465–470.
241. Diab YA, Wong EC, Luban NL. Massive transfusion in children and neonates. *Br J Haematol*. 2013;161(1):15–26.
242. Chidester SJ, Williams N, Wang W, Groner JI. A pediatric massive transfusion protocol. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;73(5):1273–1277.
243. Blain S, Paterson N. Paediatric massive transfusion. *BJA Education*. 2016;16(8):269–275.
244. Reddick AD, Ronald J, Morrison WG. Intravenous fluid resuscitation: was Poiseuille right? *EMJ*. 2011;28(3):201–202.
245. Polaner DM, Taenzer AH, Walker BJ, et al. Pediatric Regional Anesthesia Network (PRAN): a multi-institutional study of the use and incidence of complications of pediatric regional anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(6):1353–1364.
246. Suresh S, Birmingham PK, Kozlowski RJ. Pediatric pain management. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30(1):101–117.
247. Morray JP, Geiduschek JM, Ramamoorthy C, et al. Anesthesia-related cardiac arrest in children: initial findings of the Pediatric Perioperative Cardiac Arrest (POCA) Registry. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(1):6–14.
248. Flick RP, Sprung J, Harrison TE, et al. Perioperative cardiac arrests in children between 1988 and 2005 at a tertiary referral center: a study of 92,881 patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;106(2):226–237. quiz 413-224.
249. Murat I, Constant I, Maud'huy H. Perioperative anaesthetic morbidity in children: a database of 24,165 anaesthetics over a 30-month period. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(2):158–166.
250. Tay CL, Tan GM, Ng SB. Critical incidents in paediatric anaesthesia: an audit of 10 000 anaesthetics in Singapore. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2001;11(6):711–718.

251. Tiret L, Nivoche Y, Hatton F, Desmonts JM, Vourc'h G. Complications related to anaesthesia in infants and children. A prospective survey of 40240 anaesthetics. *Br J Anaesth*. 1988;61(3):263–269.
252. Askie LM, Darlow BA, Davis PG, et al. Effects of targeting lower versus higher arterial oxygen saturations on death or disability in preterm infants. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;4:CD011190.
253. McCann ME, Schouten AN, Dobija N, et al. Infantile postoperative encephalopathy: perioperative factors as a cause for concern. *Pediatrics*. 2014;133(3):e751–757.
254. Chang PS, Walker SM, Fitzgerald M. Differential suppression of spontaneous and noxious-evoked somatosensory cortical activity by isoflurane in the neonatal rat. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(4):885–898.
255. Davidson A. Do we actually need to anesthetize the neonate? *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24(1):3–4.
256. Davidson AJ. Neurotoxicity and the need for anesthesia in the newborn: does the emperor have no clothes? *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(3):507–509.
257. Diaz LK, Akpek EA, Dinavahi R, Andropoulos DB. Tracheoesophageal fistula and associated congenital heart disease: implications for anesthetic management and survival. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(10):862–869.
258. Broemling N, Campbell F. Anesthetic management of congenital tracheoesophageal fistula. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21(11):1092–1099.
259. Knottenbelt G, Costi D, Stephens P, Beringer R, Davidson A. An audit of anesthetic management and complications of tracheo-esophageal fistula and esophageal atresia repair. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(3):268–274.
260. Putnam LR, Tsao K, Morini F, et al. Evaluation of variability in inhaled nitric oxide use and pulmonary hypertension in patients with congenital diaphragmatic hernia. *JAMA Pediatr*. 2016;170(12):1188–1194.
261. Kays DW. ECMO in CDH: Is there a role? *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2017;26(3):166–170.
262. Snoek KG, Reiss IK, Greenough A, et al. Standardized postnatal management of infants with congenital diaphragmatic hernia in Europe: The CDH EURO Consortium Consensus - 2015 Update. *Neonatology*. 2016;110(1):66–74.
263. Deprest J, Gratacos E, Nicolaides KH, et al. Fetoscopic trachel occlusion (FETO) for sever congenital diaphragmatic hernia: evolution of a technique and preliminary results. *Ultrasound Obstet Gyncecol*. 2004;24:121–126.
264. Cook-Sather SD, Liacouras CA, Previte JP, Markakis DA, Schreiner MS. Gastric fluid measurement by blind aspiration in paediatric patients: a gastroscopic evaluation. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44(2):168–172.
265. Cook-Sather SD, Tulloch HV, Cnaan A, et al. A comparison of awake versus paralyzed tracheal intubation for infants with pyloric stenosis. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(5):945–951.
266. Andropoulos DB, Heard MB, Johnson KL, Clarke JT, Rowe RW. Post-anesthetic apnea in full-term infants after pyloromyotomy. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80(1):216–219.
267. Davidson AJ, Morton NS, Arnup SJ, et al. Apnea after awake regional and general anesthesia in infants: the general anesthesia compared to spinal anesthesia study--comparing apnea and neurodevelopmental outcomes, A randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(1):38–54.
268. Frawley G, Bell G, Disma N, et al. Predictors of failure of awake regional anesthesia for neonatal hernia repair: data from the general anesthesia compared to spinal anesthesia study--comparing apnea and neurodevelopmental outcomes. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123(1):55–65.
269. Silins V, Julien F, Brasher C, Nivoche Y, Mantz J, Dahmani S. Predictive factors of PACU stay after herniorraphy in infant: a classification and regression tree analysis. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(3):230–238.
270. Kurth CD, Spitzer AR, Broennle AM, Downes JJ. Postoperative apnea in preterm infants. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66(4):483–488.
271. Cote CJ, Zaslavsky A, Downes JJ, et al. Postoperative apnea in former preterm infants after inguinal herniorrhaphy. A combined analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(4):809–822.
272. Sale SM, Read JA, Stoddart PA, Wolf AR. Prospective comparison of sevoflurane and desflurane in formerly premature infants undergoing inguinal herniotomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96(6):774–778.
273. William JM, Stoddart PA, Williams SA, Wolf AR. Post-operative recovery after inguinal herniotomy in ex-premature infants: comparison between sevoflurane and spinal anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86(3):366–371.
274. Welborn LG, Rice LJ, Hannallah RS, Broadman LM, Ruttimann UE, Fink R. Postoperative apnea in former preterm infants: prospective comparison of spinal and general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72(5):838–842.
275. Henderson-Smart DJ, Steer PA. Prophylactic caffeine to prevent postoperative apnoea following general anaesthesia in preterm infants. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2001;4:CD000048.
276. Walther-Larsen S, Rasmussen LS. The former preterm infant and risk of post-operative apnoea: recommendations for management. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50(7):888–893.
277. Murphy JJ, Swanson T, Ansermino M, Milner R. The frequency of apneas in premature infants after inguinal hernia repair: do they need overnight monitoring in the intensive care unit? *J Pediatr Surg*. 2008;43(5):865–868.
278. Bosenberg AT, Kimble FW. Infraorbital nerve block in neonates for cleft lip repair: anatomical study and clinical application. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74(5):506–508.
279. Lewis SR, Nicholson A, Cardwell ME, Siviter G, Smith AF. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and perioperative bleeing in paediatric tonsillectomy. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;7:CD003591.
280. Stewart DW, Ragg PG, Sheppard S, Chalkiadis GA. The severity and duration of postoperative pain and analgesia requirements in children after tonsillectomy, orchidopexy, or inguinal hernia repair. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(2):136–143.
281. Strauss SG, Lynn AM, Bratton SL, Nespeca MK. Ventilatory response to CO2 in children with obstructive sleep apnea from adenotonsillar hypertrophy. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(2):328–332.
282. American Academy of Pediatrics. Clinical practice guideline: diagnosis and management of childhood obstructive sleep apnea syndrome. *Pediatrics*. 2002;109(4):704–712.
283. Nixon GM, Kermack AS, Davis GM, Manoukian JJ, Brown KA, Brouillette RT. Planning adenotonsillectomy in children with obstructive sleep apnea: the role of overnight oximetry. *Pediatrics*. 2004;113(1 Pt 1):e19–e25.
284. Gross D, Reuss S, Dillier CM, Gerber AC, Weiss M. Early vs late intraoperative administration of tropisetron for the prevention of nausea and vomiting in children undergoing tonsillectomy and/or adenoidectomy. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16(4):444–450.
285. Kelly LE, Rieder M, van den Anker J, et al. More codeine fatalities after tonsillectomy in North American children. *Pediatrics*. 2012;129(5):e1343–1347.
286. Voronov P, Przybylo HJ, Jagannathan N. Apnea in a child after oral codeine: a genetic variant - an ultra-rapid metabolizer. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(7):684–687.
287. Birnkrant DJ, Panitch HB, Benditt JO, et al. American College of Chest Physicians consensus statement on the respiratory and related management of patients with Duchenne muscular dystrophy undergoing anesthesia or sedation. *Chest*. 2007;132(6):1977–1986.
288. Allison KR. Muscular dystrophy versus mitochondrial myopathy: the dilemma of the undiagnosed hypotonic child. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(1):1–6.
289. Shapiro F, Athiraman U, Clendenin DJ, Hoagland M, Sethna NF. Anesthetic management of 877 pediatric patients undergoing muscle biopsy for neuromuscular disorders: a 20-year review. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2016;26(7):710–721.
290. Brandom BW, Veyckemans F. Neuromuscular diseases in children: a practical approach. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2013;23(9):765–769.
291. Veyckemans F. Can inhalation agents be used in the presence of a child with myopathy? *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2010;23(3):348–355.
292. Litman RS, Griggs SM, Dowling JJ, Riazi S. Malignant hyperthermia susceptibility and related diseases. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128(1):159–167.
293. Parikh S, Goldstein A, Karaa A, et al. Patient care standards for primary mitochondrial disease: a consensus statement from the Mitochondrial Medicine Society. *Genetics in medicine: Official Journal of the American College of Medical Genetics*. 2017;19(12).
294. Vlassakova BG, Emmanouil DE. Perioperative considerations in children with autism spectrum disorder. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2016;29(3):359–366.
295. Taghizadeh N, Davidson A, Williams K, Story D. Autism spectrum disorder (ASD) and its perioperative management. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25(11):1076–1084.
296. Wongprasartsuk P, Stevens J. Cerebral palsy and anaesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12(4):296–303.
297. Theroux MC, Akins RE. Surgery and anesthesia for children who have cerebral palsy. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am*. 2005;23(4):733–743, ix.

78

Anesthesia for Pediatric Cardiac Surgery

EDMUND H. JOOSTE, KELLY A. MACHOVEC, and WILLIAM J. GREELEY

KEY POINTS

- Organ system maturation, from birth through adolescence, affects physiologic function and therefore anesthetic and surgical management and outcome.
- The understanding of congenital heart disease (CHD) and consequent anesthetic management is based on the pathophysiologic determinants of four categories of defects: shunts, mixing lesions, stenotic lesions, and regurgitant lesions.
- The chronic sequelae of CHD (repaired, palliated, or unrepaired) affect anesthetic management: ventricular failure, residual hemodynamic effects (e.g., valve stenosis), arrhythmias, and pulmonary blood flow changes (e.g., pulmonary artery hypertension).
- Preoperative assessment of cardiac status and planning are the keys to a successful anesthesia outcome.
- Intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography and central nervous system (CNS) monitoring enhance surgical outcome and reduce morbidity.
- The induction technique needs to consider degree of cardiac dysfunction, cardiac defects, level of sedation achieved with premedication, and the presence of an indwelling venous catheter. Other factors to be considered include pulmonary hypertension, electrical rhythm disorders, and other comorbidities.
- The maintenance of anesthesia depends on the age and condition of the patient, the nature of the surgical procedure, the duration of cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB), and the need for postoperative ventilation. It is usually desirable to return the patient to an arousable, sedated state with spontaneous ventilation at the end of the procedure.
- The physiologic effects of CPB on neonates, infants, and children are significantly different from the effects on adults. During CPB, pediatric patients are exposed to biologic extremes not seen in adults, including deep hypothermia (18°C), increased hemodilution, low perfusion pressures, and wide variation in pump flow rates.
- After repair of complex congenital heart defects, separating patients from CPB may be difficult. The causes may be an inadequate surgical result, pulmonary artery hypertension, low systemic vascular resistance, low hemoglobin, and right or left ventricular dysfunction
- The use of modified ultrafiltration (MUF) reverses the deleterious effects of hemodilution and the inflammatory response associated with CPB in children. Furthermore, with MUF perioperative blood loss and blood use are significantly reduced, left ventricular function and systolic blood pressure are improved, oxygen delivery is increased, and pulmonary compliance and brain function are also better.
- Neonates, infants, and children undergoing cardiac surgery with CPB have a more frequent rate of postoperative bleeding than that seen in older patients. This is due to an inflammatory response that a disproportionate exposure to the nonendothelialized extracorporeal circuit produces, the type of surgery performed in neonates and infants that involves more extensive reconstruction and suture lines, the frequent utilization of deep hypothermia or circulatory arrest, a more immature coagulation system in neonates, and an increased bleeding tendency in patients with cyanotic heart disease.
- The management of the postoperative patient warrants an understanding of both normal and abnormal convalescence after anesthesia and cardiac surgery, as it is characterized by continuous physiologic change.
- The care of adults with CHD is a new and expanding field of medicine that requires the skilled management of an experienced multidisciplinary team.
- Additional anesthetic considerations exist in patients with CHD who undergo transplantation, closed heart operations without CPB, cardiac interventional procedures, and noncardiac surgery.

Cardiac surgery is an established and effective treatment for children with congenital heart defects. Early successes in surgical treatment led to a new therapeutic era in the management of congenital heart disease (CHD) and fostered the development of the subspecialties for pediatric cardiology and cardiac surgery and their collaboration. Through this cooperative effort, tremendous progress in medical diagnosis and surgical treatment has been achieved. In turn, these accomplishments gave rise to the development of pediatric cardiac anesthesiologists, individuals who understand the pathophysiology of congenital heart malformations, the diagnostic and surgical procedures used to treat heart disease, and the principles of pediatric and cardiac anesthesia and intensive care medicine. Pediatric cardiac anesthesia continues to evolve as an exciting and technically demanding subspecialty in which anesthetic management is based on physiologic principles.

Cardiovascular surgery and anesthesia in CHD are often performed under unusual physiologic conditions. Rarely in clinical medicine are patients exposed to such biologic extremes as during surgery for CHD. Commonly, patients are cooled to 18°C, are acutely hemodiluted by more than 50% of their extracellular fluid volume, and undergo periods of total circulatory arrest lasting up to 1 hour. Management of patients under these physiologic extremes is a vital function of the pediatric cardiovascular anesthesiologist. As with other areas of medicine, the application and management of technology preceded a comprehensive understanding of its physiologic effects.

Clearly, the perioperative management of these complex cases requires a group of physicians (surgeon, anesthesiologist, cardiologist, critical care specialist), nurses, and perfusionists to work as a team. Although the quality of the surgical repair, the effects of cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB), and postoperative care are the major determinants of outcome, meticulous anesthetic management is also imperative. Ideally, despite the complexity of the cases and the marked physiologic changes attributed to CPB and the surgical procedures, anesthetic care should never contribute substantially to morbidity or mortality.[1] The challenge is to understand the principles underlying the management of patients with CHD and apply them to clinical anesthesia.

Unique Features of Pediatric Cardiac Anesthesia

Pediatric cardiovascular management is unique, with important differences from adult cardiac surgery (Box 78.1). These differences are attributable to normal organ system maturation in the neonate and young infant, differing pathophysiologic conditions in CHD, the diversity of surgical repairs, and the use of specialized CPB techniques such as deep hypothermia, total circulatory arrest, cerebral regional perfusion, and three-region perfusion techniques.

PHYSIOLOGIC CONSIDERATIONS AND MATURATIONAL FEATURES OF THE PEDIATRIC PATIENT

The cardiovascular system changes markedly at birth because of a dramatic alteration in blood flow patterns (Fig. 78.1). During fetal life, blood flow returning to the right atrium (RA) bypasses the unventilated fluid-filled lungs. Blood is then preferentially shunted across the patent foramen ovale into the left atrium (LA) or passes from the right ventricle (RV) across the patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) to the systemic circulation. At birth, physiologic closure of the PDA and of the foramen ovale brings about the normal adult circulatory pattern. The presence of certain congenital heart defects or pulmonary disease can disrupt this normal adaptive process, creating a transitional circulation in which right-to-left shunting persists across the foramen ovale or the PDA. Under such circumstances, the continued presence of a transitional circulation can lead to severe hypoxemia, acidosis, and hemodynamic instability, which are poorly tolerated in the neonate. In contrast, when initially treating some forms of CHD, the prolongation of this transitional circulation is actually beneficial, promoting systemic blood flow or pulmonary blood flow (PBF) and postnatal viability. An example of the latter is pulmonary atresia, in which PBF is supplied via the PDA. In the absence of collateral vessels, closure of the PDA eliminates the principal source of PBF, resulting in hypoxemia and death. In such patients, ductal patency can be maintained with the administration of prostaglandin E1. Importantly, the transitional circulation can be manipulated by pharmacologic and ventilatory strategies, thereby promoting hemodynamic stability.

BOX 78.1 Unique Characteristics of Pediatric Cardiac Anesthesia

Patient

- Normal organ system development and maturational changes of infancy
  - *Cardiovascular:* Blood flow patterns of circulation at birth, myocardial compliance, systemic and pulmonary vasculature, and β-adrenergic receptors
  - *Pulmonary:* Respiratory quotient, closing capacity, chest compliance
  - *Central nervous system:* Brain growth, cerebral blood flow, autonomic regulation
  - *Renal:* Glomerular filtration rate, creatinine clearance
  - *Hepatic:* Liver blood flow, microsomal enzyme activity
- Disease and growth interrelationship
- Effects of systemic disease alter somatic and organ growth
- Compensatory ability of developing organs to recover from injury
- Immunologic immaturity of the infant
- Obligatory miniaturization (i.e., small patient size and body surface area)

Congenital Heart Disease

- Diverse anatomic defects and physiologic changes
- Altered ventricular remodeling owing to myocardial hypertrophy and ischemia
- Chronic sequelae of congenital cardiac disease

Surgical Procedures

- Diversity of operations
- Frequent intracardiac and right ventricular procedures
- Use of deep hypothermia and circulatory arrest during repair
- Trend toward repair in early infancy
- Evolution of surgical techniques to avoid residua and sequelae
- Trend toward wider application of certain operations

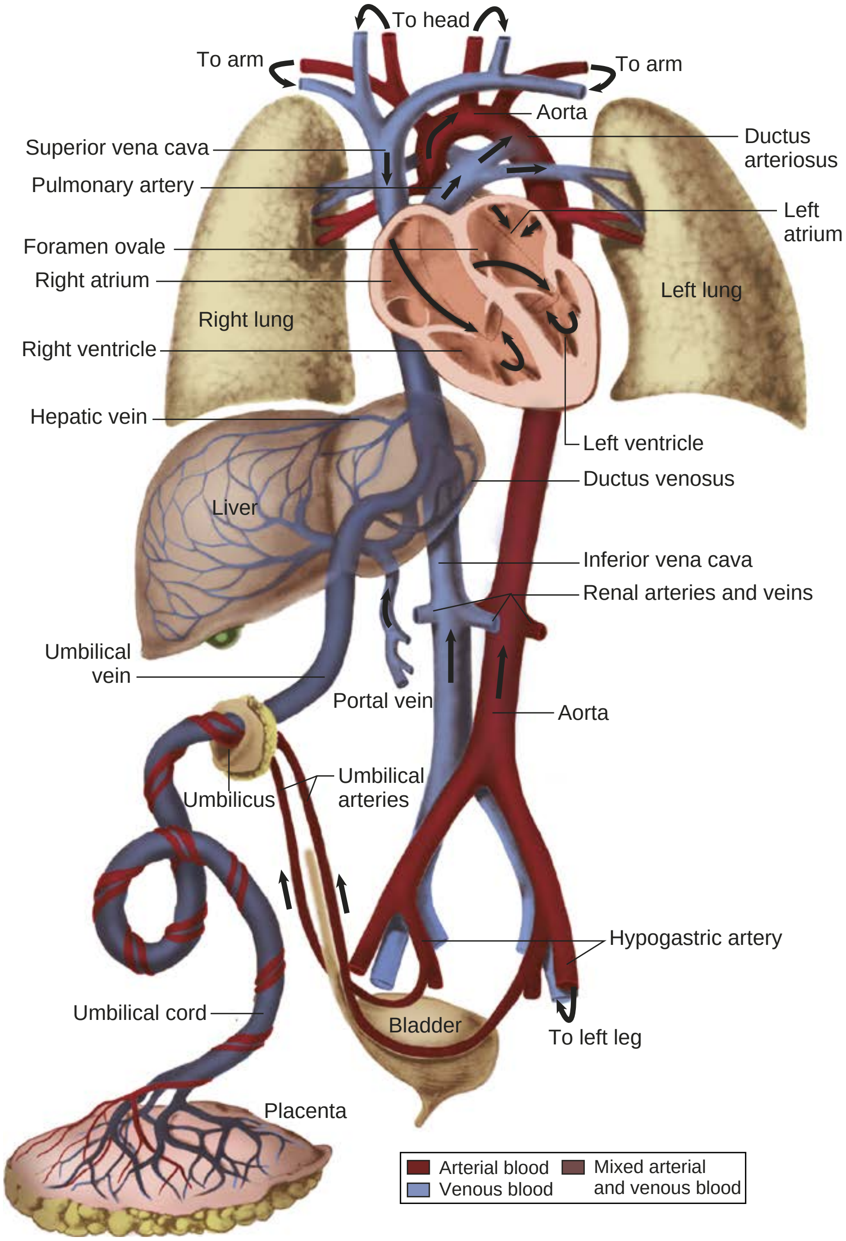

To head
To arm
To arm
Aorta
Superior vena cava
Ductus arteriosus
Pulmonary artery
Left atrium
Foramen ovale
Right atrium
Left lung
Right lung
Right ventricle
Hepatic vein
Left ventricle
Ductus venosus
Liver
Inferior vena cava
Renal arteries and veins
Umbilical vein
Portal vein
Aorta
Umbilical arteries
Umbilicus
Hypogastric artery
Umbilical cord
Bladder
To left leg
Placenta
Arterial blood
Mixed arterial and venous blood
Venous blood

Fig. 78.1 Course of the fetal circulation in late gestation. Note the selective blood flow patterns across the foramen ovale and the ductus arteriosus.

Another unique feature of the normal neonatal and infant cardiovascular system is the reduced myocardial reserve in contrast to that in the healthy adult. The newborn left ventricular function is restricted by a reduced number of α-adrenergic receptors, high resting levels of circulating catecholamines, limited recruitable stroke work, an immature calcium transport system, and decreased ventricular compliance.[2] These factors limit contractile reserve with the result of a left ventricle (LV) with a high level of resting tone. Although the resting performance of the neonatal myocardium may be greater than in adults and older children, sensitivity to β-blockade is greater and only modest increases occur in cardiac performance after administration of the β-agonist drugs dobutamine and isoproterenol.[3] Furthermore, the contractile mass of the heart is effectively reduced, resulting in a ventricle with low compliance. Preload augmentation is effective at low filling pressures (1-7 mm Hg). However, when left-sided filling pressures exceed 7 to 10 mm Hg, further increases in left ventricular stroke volume are minimal.[2] As a consequence, neonates are more dependent on heart rate and, to a lesser extent, on preload, to maintain cardiac output at filling pressures of 7 to 10 mm Hg or greater.[4] Additionally, the calcium transport system in the neonatal myocardium is underdeveloped. The neonatal heart therefore depends more on extracellular calcium levels than the adult myocardium,[5,6] and normal or even elevated plasma levels of ionized calcium may be necessary to augment or maintain an effective stroke volume. This is in contrast to adult cardiac patients, in whom calcium use during cardiac surgery has fallen into some disfavor, owing to direct concerns over myocardial ischemia and reperfusion injury.

Another unique feature relates to the pulmonary circulation. The pulmonary circulation undergoes significant changes during the first months of life. In the immediate newborn period, the large decrease in pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) is due to lung expansion and the vasodilatory effects of a higher PaO_2 than existed in utero. Further decline in PVR throughout the next 2 months of life is attributable to regression of the smooth muscle layer in the pulmonary arterioles. A corresponding decrease in pulmonary artery pressure occurs as PVR declines. Acute physiologic stress in the newborn period, such as hypoxemia or acidosis, may increase pulmonary artery pressure and thus PVR. If the resulting right ventricular hypertension causes reduced right ventricular compliance, right-to-left shunting can occur at the foramen ovale. Once PVR exceeds systemic vascular resistance (SVR), right-to-left shunting develops at the PDA. Either phenomenon will worsen the hypoxemia and eventually limit tissue oxygen (O_2) delivery. In contrast, left-to-right shunts, such as those present with a ventricular septal defect (VSD), increase PBF which over time produces intimal changes in the pulmonary vasculature, delaying regression of medial muscle hypertrophy and producing persistent elevation of PVR.

Size differences between adult and pediatric cardiac patients require different anesthetic techniques and miniaturization. Anatomically, pediatric patients have smaller upper and lower airways, smaller veins and arteries, and decreased body surface area compared to adult patients; these differences have anesthetic implications. Availability of ultrasound has made placement of arterial catheters more expedient, even in the smallest patients, reducing the need for arterial cutdown. Pulmonary artery catheters are used infrequently because of technical difficulties in positioning the tip in the pulmonary artery and because of the fundamental fact that pulmonary flow bears no obligatory relationship to systemic output in children with either intracardiac or extracardiac communications. Transthoracic catheters for pressure monitoring and delivery of vasoactive substances may be placed from the surgical field instead of percutaneous approach via the neck. Adequacy of surgical repair and function is assessed by transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) with Doppler color flow imaging with miniaturized probes.[7,8]

Patient size also influences CPB management. The ratio of pump priming volume to patient blood volume is considerably higher in small children than in adults, resulting in a greater degree of hemodilution. Several studies demonstrated a heightened inflammatory response to CPB in children in contrast to in adults,[9] related to the disproportionate exposure of the child's blood elements to the nonendothelialized surfaces of the pump circuit per body surface area.

In pediatric patients with CHD, the cardiovascular system often represents the sole cause of the medical problem. A special disease and growth interrelationship, unique to growing infants and children, permits developing organs to compensate for and modify existing disease processes. Reparative and recuperative processes in children are greater as a result of this compensatory ability of developing organ systems. Despite adaptation to their cardiovascular pathologic processes CHD pediatric patients do experience detrimental and sometimes permanent effects on somatic growth and on the growth and development of the brain, myocardium, and lung.

The premature infant with CHD deserves special consideration. Premature infants are classified as low birth weight (31-34 weeks, 1-1.5 kg), very low birth weight (26-30 weeks, 600 g-1 kg), and extremely low birth weight (<26 weeks, 400-600 g). Respiratory failure is common and multifactorial. The small airways are prone to obstruction, which results in increased airway resistance and work of breathing with easy fatigability. Lung compliance is reduced because of a deficiency of surfactant, resulting in intrapulmonary shunting and ventilation-perfusion mismatch. Mechanical ventilation prevents alveolar collapse, maintains patency of the airway, and maintains lung volume, preventing hypoxia, but must be used cautiously as premature lungs are susceptible to barotrauma and oxidant injury. Ventilatory strategies for lung protection include reduced peak inspiratory pressures and the lowest inspired oxygen concentration that produces reasonable levels of oxygenation.

Premature infants are also prone to perioperative periods of apnea that may be central in origin or obstructive, either of which can be aggravated by anesthetic drugs. Apnea may also be precipitated by abrupt changes in oxygenation or pulmonary mechanics, brain hemorrhage, and hypothermia. After emergence from anesthesia, sustained apnea may occur and persist for up to 48 hours. Continuous apnea and saturation monitoring with correction of anemia (hematocrit > 30) and intravenous administration of caffeine are therapeutic options. The incidence of postoperative apnea is related to postconceptional and gestational age, the presence of anemia, and the type of surgical procedure.

Cardiac pathophysiology can compound respiratory concerns. The premature heart is a poorly contractile organ with poor diastolic function, and is sensitive to changes in intracellular calcium. Cardiac output depends chiefly on heart rate, with marginal reserve. The premature infant also has a relatively low absolute blood volume and tolerates blood loss poorly. Autoregulation is not well developed, and blood loss compromises cerebral and coronary flow before other manifestations of hypovolemia. However, fluid overload is also not well tolerated. Patency of the ductus arteriosus results in left-to-right shunting and pulmonary overcirculation with heart failure (HF). If uncorrected, this would result in pulmonary hypertension secondary to the development of pulmonary vascular intimal hypertrophy.

Thermoregulation by nonshivering thermogenesis is also poor owing to inadequate stores of brown fat in prematurity. It is critical to maintain normothermia by increasing the operating room temperature, using incubators for transport, warming and humidifying respiratory gases, and warming all intravenous fluids. Glycemic control is difficult, with a tendency to both hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia. Frequent glucose checks are important. Parenteral glucose solutions should be continued in the perioperative period. Premature infants are also prone to retinopathy of prematurity with high inspired O_2 concentrations and intraventricular hemorrhage. Every attempt should be made to avoid hemodynamic perturbances and fluctuation in O_2 saturations. In general, immaturity of organ systems results in both increased drug effect and duration of action, warranting careful titration of drugs.

Premature infants have a twofold increase in cardiovascular malformations compared with term infants.[10] One in six infants with CHD, not including those with PDA or atrial septal defect (ASD), is born prematurely. Some malformations such as tetralogy of Fallot (TOF), pulmonary stenosis, pulmonary atresia with VSD, complete atrioventricular (AV) septal defect, large VSDs in isolation or associated with coarctation, and aortic stenosis are more prevalent in this population.[11]A significant increase in the likelihood of being small for gestational age is seen among infants with TOF, complete AV septal defect, hypoplastic left heart, pulmonary stenosis, or large VSD.[12]

While cardiac catheterization, intervention, and complete surgical repair in the newborn of very low birth weight (<1.5 kg) can be successfully undertaken with low risk, it is notable that given the complexity of premature organ systems and superimposed cardiorespiratory pathophysiology, morbidity and mortality are increased.[13,14] Low-birth-weight neonates with complex single ventricle disease undergoing surgical palliation have a significant mortality risk.[15,16] Interventional catheterization in premature infants is associated with a higher risk for complications related to vascular access, arrhythmias, and respiratory compromise.[13] Maintenance of euglycemia and normothermia and attention to fluid and electrolyte balance are important. O_2 delivery is optimized by maintaining age-appropriate blood pressures, adequate intravascular volume, and hematocrit. Any acidosis must be sought and aggressively corrected. Whenever possible, such infants should recover in a specialized pediatric cardiac intensive care unit (ICU).

CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE

The marked array of anatomic and physiologic conditions seen with CHD distinguishes these processes from acquired adult cardiac disease. The spectrum of intracardiac shunts, valve pathologies, disrupted great artery connections, and the absence of one or more chambers of the heart preclude a uniform anesthetic approach to patients with CHD. Moreover, myocardial changes result from the hemodynamic impact and increased cardiac work incurred by these defects. Functionally, these myocardial changes place the ventricles at great risk for the development of intraoperative ischemia and failure. Therefore, an understanding of the isolated defect, associated myocardial changes, and hemodynamic consequences is fundamental to planning an appropriate anesthetic regimen. Distilling CHD into a finite number of physiologic categories enables the anesthesiologist to construct a strategy that employs the qualitatively predictable impact of drugs, ventilatory management, and fluid administration to optimize cardiovascular performance. Although an isolated heart malformation may be identified, the entire cardiopulmonary system is usually affected.

TABLE 78.1 Classification of Congenital Heart Defects

Physiologic Classification	Pulmonary Blood Flow	Comments
Left-to-right shunts		
VSD	↑	Volume-overloaded ventricle
ASD		Development of CHF
PDA		
AV canal		
Right-to-left shunts		
Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF)	↓	Pressure-overloaded ventricle
Pulmonary atresia/VSD		Cyanotic
Eisenmenger complex		Hypoxemia
Mixing lesions		
Transposition/VSD	Generally↓ but variable $\dot{Q}p/\dot{Q}s$	Variable pressure versus volume loaded
Tricuspid atresia		Usually cyanotic
Anomalous venous return		
Univentricular heart		
Obstructive lesions		
Interrupted aortic arch		Ventricular dysfunction
Critical aortic stenosis		Pressure-overloaded ventricle
Critical pulmonic stenosis		Ductal dependence
Hypoplastic left heart syndrome		
Coarctation of the aorta		
Mitral stenosis		
Regurgitant lesions		
Ebstein anomaly		Volume-overloaded ventricle
Other secondary causes		Development of CHF

ASD, Atrial septal defect; *AV*, atrioventricular; *CHF*, congestive heart failure; *PDA*, patent ductus arteriosus; $\dot{Q}p$, pulmonary blood flow; $\dot{Q}s$, systemic blood flow; *VSD*, ventricular septal defect.

Physiologic Approach to Congenital Heart Disease

Although the structural variations seen in CHD constitute an encyclopedic list of malformations, anesthetic management is more logically designed to achieve physiologic goals. A general physiologic classification is listed in Table 78.1. Fortunately, although structurally complex, these defects can be understood within a more limited physiologic spectrum. Identification and classification on the basis of physiology provide an organized framework for the intraoperative anesthetic management and postoperative care of children with complex congenital cardiac defects. In general, congenital heart lesions fit into one of four categories: shunts, mixing lesions, flow obstruction, and regurgitant valves (see Table 78.1). Each category imposes at least one of three pathophysiologic states: ventricular volume overload, ventricular pressure overload, or hypoxemia. Ultimately, these pathophysiologic conditions can result in myocardial failure or pulmonary vascular disease. Medical and surgical perioperative management strategies focus on minimizing the pathophysiologic consequences of these lesions.

Shunt Lesions. Shunts are intracardiac connections between chambers (e.g., ASD or VSD) or extracardiac connections between a systemic and pulmonary artery (e.g., PDA). The direction of blood flow through the shunt depends on the relative resistances on either side of the shunt and on the size of the shunt orifice. The direction and magnitude of shunt at the atrial level are additionally governed by the relative differences in ventricular compliance and respective AV valve function. With a nonrestrictive VSD or PDA that does not impede blood in either direction, the main determinant of the direction of blood flow is relative resistance between the pulmonary and systemic vascular beds. The effect that a shunt lesion has on the cardiovascular system depends on both the size of the shunt and its direction.

Left-to-right shunts occur when the PVR is lower than the SVR, so that blood flow is preferentially directed toward the lungs, resulting in increased PBF. In patients with large left-to-right shunts and low PVR, this increase in PBF can be substantial and result in three pathophysiologic problems: (1) congestion of the pulmonary circulation; (2) intravascular volume overload with resulting increased cardiac work for the LV; and (3) excessive PBF, resulting in progressive elevation in PVR. Volume overload causes ventricular dilation that places the heart at a mechanical and physiologic disadvantage, resulting in reduced diastolic compliance. Diastolic changes lead to engorgement of the respective venous beds, which produces the signs and symptoms of clinical congestive heart failure (CHF) early in the natural history of volume-overload condition. The demand for increased cardiac output placed on the LV is limited in the infant by virtue of its immature structure, so that large left-to-right shunts may outstrip the capacity of the left side of the heart to maintain adequate systemic perfusion.

Surgical closure of a hemodynamically significant VSD usually provides immediate benefit by dramatically lowering left ventricular volume output demands. Occasionally, the sudden increase in wall stress imposed on a dilated ventricle that must now pump solely against SVR can produce worsening ventricular failure during the early postoperative period after eliminating the low-resistance "pop off" into the pulmonary circulation. If the left-to-right shunt is not repaired, prolonged exposure to increased PBF results in progressive elevations in PVR. Fixed changes in pulmonary arterioles may occur, leading to pulmonary vascular obstructive disease, which may become irreversible. Table 78.1 lists common left-to-right shunt lesions.

Right-to-left shunts occur when pulmonary vascular or right ventricular outflow tract resistance exceeds SVR, thereby reducing PBF. The systemic circulation receives an admixture of deoxygenated blood via the shunt. This manifests clinically as cyanosis and hypoxemia. Pure right-to-left shunting resulting from increased PVR is seen in the Eisenmenger complex and persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn with shunt at both the atrial and ductal levels. More commonly, PVR is low, and the right-to-left shunt is produced by a more complex lesion with obstruction of pulmonary outflow proximal to the pulmonary vasculature. A classic example of right-to-left shunt is TOF, where shunting occurs through the VSD because of pulmonary outflow obstruction. Systemic perfusion is generally normal with right-to-left shunting lesions unless hypoxemia becomes severe enough to impair O_2 delivery to tissues. Right-to-left shunting produces two pathophysiologic problems: (1) reduced PBF resulting in systemic hypoxemia and cyanosis, and (2) increased impedance to right ventricular ejection, which may ultimately lead to ventricular dysfunction and RV failure. However, the physiologic mechanisms designed to compensate for pressure overload rarely create abnormalities in systolic or diastolic function early in the natural history of the disease process. In contrast to lesions that produce excessive ventricular volume, lesions that produce isolated pressure overload typically require years to cause ventricular dysfunction and failure.

TABLE 78.2 Ductal-Dependent Lesions

PDA Provides Systemic Flow	PDA Provides Pulmonary Flow
Coarctation of the aorta	Pulmonary atresia
Interrupted aortic arch	Critical pulmonary stenosis
Hypoplastic left heart syndrome	Severe subpulmonic stenosis with VSD
Critical aortic stenosis	Tricuspid atresia with pulmonic stenosis

PDA, Patent ductus arteriosus; *VSD,* ventricular septal defect.

Mixing Lesions. Mixing lesions constitute the largest group of cyanotic congenital heart defects (see Table 78.1). In these defects, the mixing between the pulmonary and the systemic circulation is so large that the systemic and pulmonary artery O_2 saturations approach each other. The pulmonary-to-systemic flow ratio $\dot{Q}p/\dot{Q}s$ is independent of shunt size, and is completely dependent on vascular resistance or outflow obstruction. The pulmonary and systemic circulations tend to be in parallel with one another rather than in series (see Table 78.1). In patients with no outflow obstruction, flow to the systemic or pulmonary circulation depends on the relative vascular resistances of both circuits, such as with univentricular hearts or double-outlet RV. If SVR exceeds PVR, as in the typical circumstance, the tendency is toward excessive PBF, and the predominant pathophysiologic process is left-to-right shunting. These patients have increased PBF, ventricular volume overload, and a gradual elevation of PVR over time. If PVR exceeds SVR, as may occur episodically in ductal-dependent lesions such as hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS), systemic blood flow predominates and PBF dramatically decreases, causing hypoxemia (Table 78.2).

In patients with a mixing lesion and left ventricular outflow obstruction, PBF may be sufficiently excessive to impair systemic perfusion. In patients with mixing lesions and a right ventricular outflow obstruction, such as a single ventricle with subpulmonic stenosis, systemic-to-pulmonary flow can vary from balanced flow to significantly decreased PBF in which the severity of hypoxemia depends on the degree of obstruction. Typical mixing lesions include truncus arteriosus, univentricular heart, total anomalous pulmonary venous return, pulmonary atresia with large VSD, and single atrium.

Obstructive Lesions. Obstructive lesions range from mild to severe. Severe lesions manifest in the newborn period with a pressure-overloaded, diminutive, or profoundly dysfunctional ventricle proximal to the obstruction. Such lesions include critical aortic stenosis, critical pulmonic stenosis, coarctation of the aorta, and interrupted aortic arch. Although aortic and pulmonary atresia represent the most extreme variants of outflow tract obstruction, they are associated with such significant hypoplasia of the ventricle (HLHS and pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum, respectively) that the ventricle's function does not contribute to the circulatory physiology. As with other critical obstructive lesions, these extreme variants have ductal-dependent circulations, but beyond that similarity they are perhaps better understood as univentricular hearts for which the management characteristics of a mixing lesion dominate in importance.

In critical neonatal left-sided obstructive defects, systemic perfusion depends on desaturated blood flow from the RV via the PDA; the coronary perfusion is supplied by retrograde flow from the descending aorta (see Table 78.2). In right-sided lesions, PBF is supplied from the aorta via the PDA and right ventricular function is impaired.

Pathophysiologic problems in critical neonatal left-sided heart obstructive lesions include (1) profound left ventricular failure, (2) impaired coronary perfusion with an increased incidence of ventricular ectopy, (3) systemic hypotension, (4) PDA-dependent systemic circulation, and (5) systemic hypoxemia. The pathophysiologic problems in critical neonatal right-sided heart obstructive lesions include (1) right ventricular dysfunction, (2) decreased PBF, (3) systemic hypoxemia, and (4) PDA-dependent PBF. Apart from the most extreme variants that become evident in the neonatal period, infants and children with outflow obstruction (e.g., mild-to-moderate aortic or pulmonary stenosis, coarctation of the aorta) manifest compensatory mechanisms for pressure overload, and often remain clinically asymptomatic for many years.

Regurgitant Valves. Regurgitant valves are uncommon as primary congenital defects. Ebstein malformation of the tricuspid valve is the only pure regurgitant defect manifesting in the newborn period. However, regurgitant lesions are frequently associated with an abnormality of valve structure, such as incomplete or partial AV canal defect, truncus arteriosus, and TOF with an absent pulmonary valve. The pathophysiology of regurgitant lesions includes (1) volume-overloaded circulation and therefore (2) progression toward ventricular dilation and failure.

When considering the incidence of all the congenital heart defects, three uncomplicated left-to-right shunts (VSD, ASD, PDA) and two obstructive lesions (pulmonic stenosis, aortic coarctation) constitute 60% of all congenital cardiac defects. Mixing lesions, complicated obstructive defects, and right-to-left shunting lesions account for the vast majority of the remaining 40%. The latter group of defects, which are more difficult to manage, have a significantly higher morbidity and mortality rate.

Chronic Consequences of Congenital Heart Disease. The chronic effects of CHD are a consequence of the imposed hemodynamic stress of the defect or the residua and sequelae after cardiac surgery. These effects continue to alter normal growth and development of the cardiovascular system and other organ systems throughout life. Complete surgical cures are rarely achieved, and some repairs are palliative rather than corrective; therefore, abnormalities before and after repair produce long-term effects in patients with CHD.[17] Many of the abnormalities are trivial and have no major import. Others affect major organ system processes, such as ventricular function, the conduction system of the heart, central nervous system (CNS) growth, or PBF. Whether anesthetizing these patients for their primary or subsequent cardiac repair or for noncardiac surgery, these chronic changes should be ascertained and reflected in the anesthetic plan.

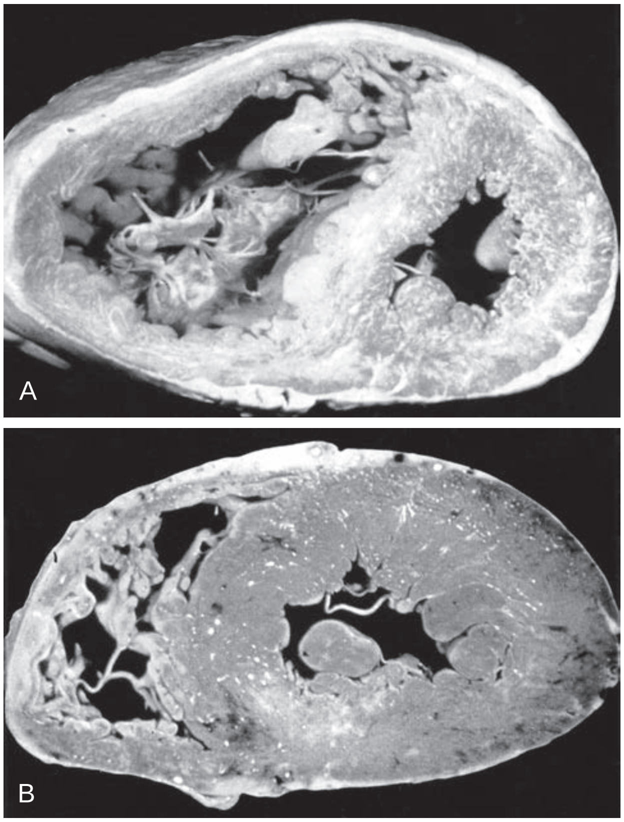
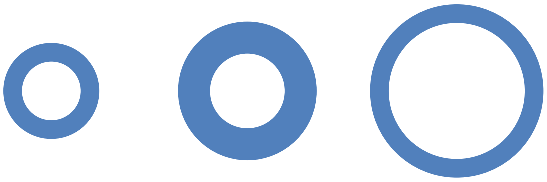


Fig. 78.2 Comparison of ventricular hypertrophy patterns demonstrating altered ventricular remodeling in two different congenital heart defects. (A) Note the right ventricular hypertrophy and the diminutive left ventricle in tetralogy of Fallot. (B) Note the severe left ventricular hypertrophy and septal bulging into the right ventricle in aortic stenosis.

The myocardium is continually remodeled by specific hemodynamic stresses in utero and throughout life. Abnormal hemodynamic loading conditions associated with CHD interrupt the normal ventricular modeling process (Fig. 78.2).[18] Abnormal ventricular remodeling typically begins in utero and stimulates an increase in ventricular mass. Increased ventricular mass is due to both hyperplasia and hypertrophy of myocytes in response to altered wall stress on the developing ventricle. The resultant biomechanical deformation of the ventricle alters its geometry, affecting normal systolic and diastolic function.



	Normal	Pressure overload	Volume overload
LVp	$\frac{117 \pm 7}{10 \pm 1}$	$\frac{220^* \pm 6}{23^* \pm 3}$	$\frac{139 \pm 7}{24^* \pm 2}$
h	.8 ± .1	1.5* ± .1	1.1* ± .1
r	2.4 ± .1	2.8 ± .2	3.3* ± .1
h/r	.34 ± .02	.58* ± .05	.34 ± .02
σ_s	151 ± 14	161 ± 24	175 ± 7
σ_p	17 ± 2	23 ± 3	41* ± 3

Fig. 78.3 Changes in ventricular physiology that accompany abnormal pressure and volume loading in human adolescents and adults. Schematic diagram represents the changes in cross-sectional ventricular geometry that accompany abnormal pressure and volume loads. Data are measured and derived from catheterization and echocardiography of 30 adolescent and adult human subjects. Pressure overload triggers significant increases in wall thickness and wall thickness-to-radius ratio *(h/r)*, but these compensatory mechanisms preserve σ within normal limits. Whereas volume overload causes dilation and enough hypertrophy to preserve normal σ_S, diastolic function deteriorates significantly. **P* = .01. σ_d, End-diastolic wall stress; σ_s, peak systolic wall stress; *h,* wall thickness (mm); *LVp,* left ventricular pressure; *r,* radius of the left ventricular chamber. (From Grossman W, Jones D, McLaurin LP. Wall stress and patterns of hypertrophy in the human left ventricle. *J Clin Invest.* 1975;56[1]:56–64.)

Abnormalities of ventricular performance at rest and with exercise can be detected in patients with chronic hemodynamic overload and complex cyanotic lesions. These abnormalities in ventricular function are the consequences of chronic ventricular overload, repeated episodes of myocardial ischemia, and residua or sequelae of surgical treatment (ventriculotomy, altered coronary artery supply, inadequate myocardial protection). Although chronic volume or pressure overload of the LV results in CHF, the compensatory mechanisms for pressure overload create less physiologic disturbance than volume overload, particularly in diastolic function. Consequently, CHF occurs later in the natural history of isolated obstructive lesions that do not require treatment in the neonatal period. Similarly, chronic right ventricular volume overload as seen in pulmonic insufficiency after TOF repair is more likely to be associated with chronic ventricular dysfunction and failure than a pressure-loaded RV that manifests with residual pulmonic stenosis. In fact, the most potent combination for inducing ventricular dysfunction and failure occurs when a pressure overload is superimposed on a dilated, volume-overloaded ventricle (e.g., postoperative TOF with pulmonary insufficiency and branch pulmonary artery stenosis).

Initial manifestations of CHF reflect alterations in ventricular compliance that result from a variety of biophysical responses to abnormal loading conditions. The ventricular dilation and compensatory hypertrophy that accompany excessive intravascular volume provide effective compensation to preserve normal systolic wall stress, but alterations in diastolic wall stress become evident (Fig. 78.3). Ultimately, chronic or severe pressure overload causes similar changes as the resultant myocardial hypertrophy outgrows vascular supply and results in ischemia and fibroblast proliferation. Permanent changes in myocardial structure and function are the end result.

In patients with cyanotic heart defects, the long-term compensation for chronic hypoxemia is major redistribution of organ perfusion with selected blood flow to the heart, brain, and kidney and decreased flow to the splanchnic circulation, skin, muscle, and bone. Chronic hypoxemia is associated with increased work of breathing in an attempt to increase O_2 uptake and delivery. The most dramatic complications are decreased rate of somatic growth, increased metabolic rate, and an increase in hemoglobin concentrations.

Congenital syndromes may have associated CHD that will influence long-term outcome (Table 78.3).

Surgical Procedures and Special Techniques. The ultimate objectives for congenital heart surgery are (1) physiologic separation of the circulation, (2) relief of outflow obstruction, (3) preservation or restoration of ventricular mass and function, (4) normalization of life expectancy, and (5) maintenance of quality of life. The available surgical procedures to accomplish these objectives are diverse and complex (Table 78.4). In general, operations performed for congenital heart defects can be divided into corrective and palliative procedures. The type and timing of repair depend on the age of the patient, the specific anatomic defect, and the experience of the surgeon and the team (see Table 78.4).

Palliation in infancy is usually performed when anatomic parts are missing, as in pulmonary atresia (absent RV and pulmonary artery), tricuspid atresia (absent RV and tricuspid valve), HLHS (aortic atresia and hypoplastic LV), univentricular heart (absent RV or LV), and mitral atresia (absent LV). These palliative procedures can be further subdivided into those that increase PBF, those that decrease PBF, and those that increase mixing (see Table 78.4). Palliative procedures that increase PBF include shunts (Blalock-Taussig, central, and Glenn), outflow patch, and enlargement of the VSD. Those that decrease PBF include pulmonary artery banding and ligation of a PDA. Those that improve intracardiac mixing include atrial septostomy (balloon, blade, and Blalock-Hanlon).

The improvements in surgical technique, coupled with advancements in anesthetic and technologic support, make repair in early infancy not only feasible but in many cases preferable.[19,20] Currently, repair in infancy can be offered for a number of congenital heart defects, as shown in Table 78.4. The timing of surgical intervention reflects medical necessity, physiologic and technical feasibility, and optimal outcome. Cardiac defects that require a PDA to sustain sufficient systemic blood flow or PBF (e.g., pulmonary atresia, HLHS, interrupted aortic arch, critical aortic stenosis, and critical pulmonic stenosis) require an intervention in the neonatal period. A variety of defects are optimally repaired in early infancy. Lesions such as transposition of the great arteries (TGA) may exhibit better left ventricular function if the arterial switch operation is performed in the first few weeks of life when the PVR has recently been high enough to increase left ventricular systolic pressure, whereas other repairs may manifest less volatile postoperative physiology if deferred a few weeks or months until PVR has consistently fallen (e.g., TOF, AV

TABLE 78.3 Syndromes Associated with Congenital Heart Disease

Syndrome	Lesion	Cardiac Lesion	Comments
SYNDROMES WITH AIRWAY ISSUES AND CHD			
CHARGE syndrome (association)		VSD, ASD, PDA, TOF	Micrognathia, possible difficult airway
Edwards syndrome	Trisomy 18	VSD, ASD, PDA	Micrognathia, small mouth, difficult intubation
Di George sequence	Microdeletion 22q11.2	Aortic arch and conotruncal lesions	Short trachea—tendency to endobronchial intubation
Goldenhar syndrome		VSD, PDA, TOF, CoA	Maxillary and mandibular hypoplasia, C-spine anomalies—difficult intubation
Hurler syndrome	MPS 1, storage disorder	Multivalvular disease, CAD, cardiomyopathy	Macroglossia, short neck—extremely difficult intubation
Noonan syndrome		PS, ASD, cardiomyopathy	Short webbed neck, macrognathia—difficult intubation
Turner syndrome	Monosomy X	LVOT O, AS, HLHS, CoA	Micrognathia, webbed neck—difficult intubation
VATER association		VSD, TOF, ASD, PDA	Potential for difficult intubation
SYNDROMES WITH RISK FOR ARRHYTHMIAS			
Long QT syndrome (LQTS)		Torsade de pointes, SCD	
Brugada syndrome		VT/VF/SCD	
Arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia (ARVD)		VT/SCD	
Catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia		Polymorphic VT/SCD	
Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome		SVT	
Maternal lupus		CCHB in the newborn	
CHROMOSOMAL DISORDERS ASSOCIATED WITH CHD			
Down syndrome	Trisomy 21	VSD, ASD, CAVC	
Edwards syndrome	Trisomy 18	VSD, ASD, PDA	
Patau syndrome	Trisomy 13	VSD, PDA, ASD	
Turner syndrome	Monosomy X	LVOT O, AS, HLHS, CoA	
3p–syndrome	Deletion 3p	CAVC	
Cri du chat syndrome	Deletion 4p	Variable	
8p–syndrome	Deletion 8p	CAVC	
9p–syndrome	Deletion 9p	VSD, PDA, PS	
Williams syndrome	Microdeletion 7q11	SVAS, SVPS, branch PS	
Smith-Magenis syndrome	Microdeletion 17p11.2	ASD, VSD, PS, AV valve malformations	
Miller-Dieker syndrome	Microdeletion 17p13.3	TOF, VSD, PS	
CHARGE association		VSD, ASD, PDA, TOF	Coloboma, heart, choanal atresia, retardation, genital and ear anomalies

AS, Atrial stenosis; *ASD,* atrial septal defect; *AV,* atrioventricular; *CAD,* coronary artery disease; *CAVC,* complete atrioventricular canal; *CCHB,* congenital complete heart block; *CHARGE,* coloboma of the eye, heart defects, atresia of the nasal choanae, restriction of growth and/or development, genital and/or urinary abnormalities, and ear abnormalities and deafness; *CHD,* congenital heart disease; *CoA,* coarctation of the aorta; *HLHS,* hypoplastic left heart syndrome; *LVOT O,* left ventricular outlet obstruction; *MPS 1,* mucopolysaccharidosis type 1; *PDA,* patent ductus arteriosus; *PS,* pulmonary stenosis; *SCD,* sudden cardiac death; *SVAS,* supraventricular aortic stenosis; *SVPS,* supravalvular pulmonic stenosis; *SVT,* supraventricular stenosis; *TOF,* tetralogy of Fallot; *VATER,* vertebral defects, imperforate anus, tracheoesophageal fistula, and radial and renal dysplasia; *VSD,* ventricular septal defect; *VT/VF,* ventricular tachycardia/ventricular fibrillation.

canal defect). Each defect may have mitigating factors for which deferred definitive repair will enable an optimal surgical result (e.g., TOF with aberrant coronary branching pattern or multiple VSDs; TGA with VSD and severe left ventricular outflow tract obstruction).

Pediatric cardiovascular surgery aims to preferentially repair defects in infancy rather than palliate.[21] This trend reflects improved technical capabilities coupled with a desire to limit the morbidity and mortality associated with long-term medical management and the sequelae

TABLE 78.4 Congenital Cardiac Defects and Their Repair

Anatomic Defects	Palliation	Complete Repair
Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF)		VSD closure and RVOT patch
With PA atresia	Shunt	
With anomalous right coronary artery	Rastelli	
HLHS	Norwood I/transplant	
Transposition of the great arteries		Arterial switch
Unfavorable coronary anatomy	Atrial switch (Senning)	
Tricuspid atresia	Shunt followed by Fontan	
Pulmonary atresia with VSD	Shunt followed by Fontan	
With intact septum	Shunt followed by Fontan	
Critical aortic stenosis		Aortic valvotomy
Interrupted aortic arch		End-to-end anastomosis/reverse subclavian flap/tube graft
Total anomalous pulmonary		Anastomosis of pulmonary veins to left atrium venous return and ASD closure
Single ventricle/normal PAs	Band followed by Fontan	
With small PAs	Shunt followed by Fontan	
Truncus arteriosus		RV-PA conduit and VSD closure
Atrioventricular canal		Repair valve clefts/patch closure of ASD/attach valves to patch

ASD, Atrial septal defect; *HLHS,* hypoplastic left heart syndrome; *PA,* pulmonary artery; *RV,* right ventricle; *RVOT,* right ventricular outflow tract; *VSD,* ventricular septal defect.

of multiple palliative operations. Early correction should decrease the incidence of the chronic complications of CHD, such as the problems associated with ventricular overload, cyanosis, and pulmonary vascular obstructive disease.[22] Early repair also may have the selective advantage of enhancing organ system protection during repair because of poorly understood factors promoting resistance to injury and enhanced recovery potential (i.e., enhanced plasticity). With the continued improvement in surgical techniques and the early treatment of CHD, specific organ systems such as the brain, heart, and lungs will be spared the detrimental effects of chronic derangements of hemodynamics and O_2 delivery.

Procedures for the treatment of CHD continue to evolve to decrease long-term morbidity and enhance survival. For example, the long-term problems with right ventricular dysfunction and failure associated with the Mustard procedure for repair of TGA encouraged many surgical groups to develop the neonatal arterial switch operation, which probably provides an anatomic correction with better long-term results. A second example of the continuing evolution of technique is surgery for TOF. Long-standing pulmonary insufficiency after right ventricular outflow repair for TOF is associated with right ventricular dysfunction and failure. Preservation of the pulmonary valve at initial repair using a combined transatrial and transpulmonary approach during correction and the early insertion of a pulmonary homograft in the setting of pulmonary insufficiency are techniques employed to avoid the long-term problems of right ventricular dysfunction and failure.[23]

Surgery for HLHS, once considered a fatal disease, has achieved significant long-term survival after a series of staged reconstructive procedures.[24,25] The use of RV-PA conduits as an alternative to traditional systemic-to-pulmonary shunts confers some advantage in survival after stage 1 palliation owing to elimination of diastolic runoff into the pulmonary circulation with concurrent unloading of the systemic RV. Myocardial perfusion improves with higher diastolic pressures, no run off to the pulmonary circulation, and decreased myocardial work. The long-term impact of a right ventriculotomy in a univentricular heart is unknown.[26-28] In 2008, the Pediatric Heart Network, an organization sponsored by the National Institutes of Health, completed enrollment in a randomized control trial comparing the effects of modified Blalock-Taussig shunt (mBTS) to RV-PA conduits as part of the stage 1 Norwood procedure.[29] Recent results revealed infants treated with an RV-PA shunt had improved survival over those with mBTS, although the long-term outcomes were not different.[29,30]

Neurologic outcome after surgical repair is an ongoing concern. Preoperative cerebral blood flow (CBF) was shown to be diminished in patients with a variety of congenital heart defects, and low CBF values were associated with periventricular leukomalacia.[31] Some centers routinely advocate regional low-flow cerebral perfusion and measurement of regional cerebral O_2 saturation index and CBF velocity using transcranial Doppler imaging during arch reconstruction in this population. Reductions in the regional cerebral O_2 saturation index or CBF greater than 20% of baseline are treated aggressively in an attempt to increase cerebral O_2 delivery by increasing the mean perfusion pressure, red blood cell (RBC) transfusion, and maintenance of high normal levels of $PaCO_2$ to achieve cerebral vasodilation.

Techniques have evolved to a “three-region” perfusion strategy for aortic arch reconstruction in the Norwood procedure. This technique involves direct perfusion of the coronaries and distal thoracic aorta as well as continuous cerebral perfusion via innominate cannulation. The arch repair occurs from distal to proximal at warmer patient temperatures, theoretically allowing decreased coronary and splanchnic ischemic times, decreasing the risk of cardiac dysfunction and abdominal organ damage, and mitigating the negative hypothermic effects on the hematologic system.[32,33]

Surgical management has evolved in a broader application of certain surgical procedures initially designed for a specific defect. For example, modifications of the Fontan operation, which was originally devised for patients with tricuspid atresia, are now being used to repair a variety of univentricular hearts, including HLHS.[34,35] Initially, the wider application of the Fontan operation to include complex defects once considered inoperable was associated with a rise in morbidity and mortality. However, this trend has been reversed in recent years by several groups who have demonstrated improved outcome with the staging of the operation (superior cavopulmonary anastomosis, subsequent completion of the Fontan operation), the creation of a fenestration between the RA and LA at the time of the Fontan operation, and the use of modified ultrafiltration (MUF) at least in the early years.[36]

However, as patients who undergo the Fontan procedure grow older, they present with the unique pathophysiologic challenges of refractory arrhythmias, a failing single ventricle, protein-losing enteropathy, and plastic bronchitis. Most of these adults are cared for in a combined pediatric and adult cardiac program and require intensive multidisciplinary care to optimize cardiorespiratory status. Ingenuity and innovation such as demonstrated with the Fontan procedure have permitted continued improvements in survival for all patients with CHD. As incisions in the myocardium become smaller and sutures more precisely placed, and as improvements in surgical techniques continue to evolve, the complications of ventricular dysfunction, arrhythmias, and residual obstruction should decline, contributing to improved patient quality of life.

One final difference unique to congenital heart surgery that has a major impact on anesthetic management relates to the type of cardiopulmonary support. Because of the complexity of repair in small patients, surgery often requires significant alterations in the bypass techniques, such as the use of deep hypothermic CPB at temperatures of 18°C and total circulatory arrest. Despite widespread use of these techniques during CPB, their physiologic effects on major organ system function are just beginning to be understood. These effects are discussed in subsequent sections.

Anesthetic Management

PREOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

Anesthetic Evaluation

Caring for children with CHD presents the anesthesiologist with a wide spectrum of anatomic and physiologic abnormalities. Patients range from young, healthy, asymptomatic children who are having closure of a small ASD to the neonate with HLHS requiring aggressive perioperative hemodynamic and ventilatory support. Intertwined with the medical diversity of these patients are the psychological factors affecting both the patient and their parents. Preparation of the patient and the family is time-consuming, but omitting or compromising this aspect of patient care is a major deterrent to a successful outcome and patient and parental satisfaction. This team-oriented approach also serves as a safeguard to prevent errors and omissions in the exacting perioperative care necessitated by the complexity of cardiac surgery for CHD. The preoperative visit offers the family the opportunity to meet the surgeon and anesthesiologist.

Parents should be questioned about the general health and activity of their child. Fundamentally, a child's general health and activity will reflect cardiorespiratory reserve. Deficiencies may point toward cardiovascular or other systems that may influence anesthetic or surgical risk. Does the child have impaired exercise tolerance? Is the child gaining weight appropriately, or exhibiting signs of failure to thrive on the basis of cardiac cachexia? Does the child exhibit signs of CHF (diaphoresis, tachypnea, poor feeding, recurrent respiratory infections)? Is there progressive cyanosis or new onset of cyanotic spells? Any intercurrent illness such as a recent upper respiratory tract infection or pneumonia must be ascertained. Lower respiratory tract infections may require a delay in proposed surgery, based on the negative impact that airway reactivity and elevations in PVR may have on surgical outcome. Recurrent pneumonia is frequently associated with pulmonary overcirculation and altered lung compliance in patients with increased PBF.

A good history will delineate previous surgical and cardiologic interventions, which may impact both surgical and anesthetic plans for the current procedure. Patients who have had their subclavian artery sacrificed for a subclavian flap angioplasty to correct coarctation or a Blalock-Taussig shunt will not accurately display systemic arterial pressure or perhaps even pulse oximetry readings when the monitoring is applied to the affected side. Likewise, children who have femoral venous occlusion after catheterization are not candidates for femoral venous access, particularly for femoral CPB should sternotomy prove impossible. It is equally important to obtain current medications, previous anesthetic problems, and family history of anesthetic difficulties.

In the modern era of echocardiography and cardiac catheterization, physical examination rarely contributes additional anatomic information about the underlying cardiac lesion. However, it is extremely useful in assessing the overall clinical condition of the child. For example, an ill-appearing, cachectic child in respiratory distress has limited cardiorespiratory reserve and the use of excessive premedication or a prolonged inhaled induction of anesthesia could result in significant hemodynamic instability.

Concurrent Medications and Drug Interactions

Drug interactions are common both among the co-therapeutic cardiovascular agents and between hemodyamic drugs and anesthetic drugs. An understanding of the mechanisms and interactions is useful to the pediatric cardiovascular anesthesiologist. Some common cardiovascular medications and anesthesia considerations are shown in Table 78.5.

Pediatric oncology patients presenting for cardiac or noncardiac procedures may manifest higher cardiovascular risk because of cardiotoxic chemotherapy.[37] Common cardiotoxic agents include the antimetabolite 5-fluorouracil, the anthracycline antibiotics doxorubicin and daunorubicin, and the alkylating agent cyclophosphamide. The acute form of toxicity is characterized by acute ST segment/T wave changes on the electrocardiogram (ECG), serious dysrhythmias, and CHF associated with pericardial effusion. Chronic cardiotoxic HF is cumulative, dose related, and unresponsive to digoxin therapy. Serious cardiomyopathy can occur and is related to dose, irradiation, and use of an anthracycline. The mortality rate can

TABLE 78.5 Common Perioperative Medications and Considerations

Cardiac Drug Class	Interactions	Considerations
Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors	Hypotension with induction of general anesthesia	Consider withholding morning dose, or reducing dosage, in hypotensive patients; avoid fixed dose induction regimens with drugs having a profound vagomimetic effect
β-Blockers	Acute withdrawal can precipitate tachycardia and arrhythmias; can potentiate hypotension with volatile anesthesia; can decrease response to inotropic agents	Continue in the perioperative period
Calcium channel blockers	May augment the negative inotropic and chronotropic effects of volatile anesthesia	Continue in the perioperative period
Diuretics	Hypovolemia/hypokalemia; may augment effect of neuromuscular blocking agents	Discontinue preoperatively
Antiarrhythmics	Can be proarrhythmic with inotropes, electrolyte disturbances; high catecholaminergic states; can interact with other antiarrhythmics and precipitate bradycardia	Avoid electrolyte imbalance Avoid drugs that are proarrhythmic Monitor carefully
α_2-Agonists	Reduces perioperative shivering, ischemia, anesthetic and analgesic requirements	Continue into the perioperative period with appropriate monitoring

exceed 50%. These patients should undergo thorough preoperative evaluation, including a full blood cell count, assessment of renal and hepatic function and coagulation parameters, and an echocardiogram. An isoflurane/nitrous oxide (N_2O)-based anesthetic might confer better hemodynamic stability than opioid-based anesthesia in such patients.[38]

Anesthetics can induce torsade de pointes, a malignant arrhythmia. Risk factors include female gender, electrolyte imbalances such as hypokalemia and hypomagnesemia, genetic ion channel polymorphisms of congenital long QT syndrome (LQTS), subclinical LQTS, baseline QT prolongation, and use of QT-prolonging drugs especially in high concentrations or as rapid intravenous infusions. Conditions with reduced repolarization reserve such as CHF or digoxin toxicity can also precipitate torsade de pointes. Drugs that may cause torsade de pointes in patients with congenital LQTS are shown in Table 78.6. The website https://crediblemeds.org provides an updated list of drugs that prolong the QT interval.

Traditionally, patients undergoing cardiac surgery have blood drawn for laboratory evaluation as standard of care (hemoglobin, electrolytes, type, and screen). Recently the utility of this practice has been questioned especially in the patient coming from home. These tests are expensive, utilize significant hospital resources, cause pain and anxiety to the patient, and rarely lead to a change in care.[39] A more thoughtful, directed, and individualized strategy can limit costs and discomfort without sacrificing patient safety. On the other hand, special populations such as patients with trisomy 21, cyanotic heart disease, and those on antiplatelet therapy may require additional specific testing.

An increased hematocrit in a normovolemic child gives an indication of the magnitude and chronicity of hypoxemia. A hematocrit more than 60% may predispose to capillary sludging and secondary end organ damage, including stroke. Despite these risks, liberalized guidelines for nothing by mouth that permit children to consume clear liquids up to 2 hours before anesthetic induction have virtually eliminated the need to admit these patients to the hospital early for preoperative intravenous hydration.[40,41]

TABLE 78.6 Drugs That May Cause Torsade De Pointes in Patients With Congenital Long QT Syndrome

Drug Category	Drug Name
Antiarrhythmics	Amiodarone Procainamide Disopyramide Ibutilide Quinidine Sotalol
Antipsychotics	Chlorpromazine Haloperidol Thioridazine Mesoridazine
Antimicrobials	Erythromycin Clarithromycin
Miscellaneous	Cisapride Arsenic Methadone Droperidol Domperidone Dolasetron Ondansetron Glycopyrrolate

Echocardiography with Doppler color flow imaging (echo-Doppler) is an invaluable tool that provides a noninvasive means of assessing intracardiac anatomy, blood flow patterns, and estimates of physiologic data.[42] For many cardiac defects, more invasive studies are generally not required if a good echocardiographic assessment is made. Echo-Doppler imaging is especially helpful for defining intracardiac abnormalities. Extracardiac abnormalities, such as pulmonary artery or vein stenosis, are more difficult to define by echo-Doppler and may require computed tomography (CT) or cardiac catheterization. The ability to interpret anatomy and physiology accurately requires a skilled echocardiographer, reaffirming the need for a well-integrated interactive team. Although the complexities posed by extreme anatomic variation and changing loading conditions render intraoperative echo-Doppler challenging even for experienced echocardiographers, the pediatric cardiac anesthesiologist should develop some familiarity with its capabilities and limitations so as to participate in critical intraoperative management decisions.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the heart and major vessels has become a very useful noninvasive imaging tool in children with heart disease. Typically, MRI is used for segmental description of cardiac anomalies; evaluation of thoracic aortic anomalies; noninvasive detection and quantification of shunts, stenoses, and regurgitations; evaluation of conotruncal malformations and complex anomalies; identification of pulmonary and systemic venous anomalies; and postoperative studies and evaluation of CHD in adult patients.[43,44] MRI is particularly useful in quantifying ventricular function, regional wall motion, valvular competence, and velocity flow mapping. It is especially useful for imaging the aortic arch, pulmonary arteries, and the mediastinal vessels in children with complex CHD. Lesions for which MRI provides accurate and useful information include coarctation of the aorta, anomalies of the pulmonary arteries, anomalous pulmonary venous connections and persistent left superior vena cava, and intracardiac baffles, conduits, and shunts.[43,44] MRI is also useful in older patients with poor acoustic windows and patients with chest wall deformities. It may be an alternative to cardiac catheterization in select patients and may provide noninvasive assessment of coronary anomalies, myocardial perfusion defects, and the detection of conditions associated with myocardial scarring (e.g., arrhythmogenic RV dysplasia). Even more novel, MRI images are now being used to reconstruct complex lesions using 3D printers to build a model of the heart to help plan the surgical procedure.[45,46] Adenosine stress cardiac MRI is used to delineate areas of inducible ischemia. However, physiologic data such as O_2 saturations cannot be obtained with MRI.

Anesthetic considerations remain the same as for all cardiac lesions, with the additional concerns for MRI safety and restricted access to an anesthetized patient with suboptimal monitors. MRI scans are prolonged and traditionally require absolute patient immobility, with control of ventilator parameters to obtain optimal images. However, with advances in technology such as respiratory gating and use of free-breathing protocols, images can be acquired with the patient spontaneously breathing. This eliminates the need for general anesthesia with an endotracheal tube and breath-holds, thus allowing for intravenous sedation with spontaneous breathing instead.

Cardiac catheterization remains the gold standard for assessing anatomy and physiologic function in CHD. Although many anatomic questions can now be reliably answered noninvasively, catheterization remains a vital tool for cases that present complex anatomic questions or require knowledge of physiologic data. Important catheterization data for the anesthesiologist include the following:

1. Child's response to sedative medications
2. Pressure and O_2 saturation in all chambers and great vessels
3. Location and magnitude of intracardiac and extracardiac shunt $\dot{Q}p/\dot{Q}s$
4. PVR and SVR
5. Chamber size and function
6. Valvular anatomy and function
7. Distortion of systemic or pulmonary arteries related to prior surgery
8. Coronary artery anatomy
9. Anatomy, location, and function of previously created shunts
10. Acquired or congenital anatomic variants that might have an impact on planned vascular access or surgery

Careful review of the cardiac catheterization data and an understanding of their potential impact on the operative and anesthetic plan are essential. Not all medical problems can be evaluated and corrected preoperatively; the surgeon, cardiologist, and anesthesiologist must discuss the potential management problems and need for further evaluation or intervention before arrival in the operating room. Appropriate communication and cooperation will optimize patient care and facilitate perioperative clinical management.

INTRAOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

Operating Room Preparation

Advance, careful preparation of the operating room and anesthesia equipment is essential. The anesthesia machine must have the capacity to provide air, O_2, and N_2O to help balance pulmonary and systemic blood flow. Some anesthetic machines may be equipped with carbon dioxide (CO_2) as an additional gas that can be added to help balance the circulations. NO is invaluable to help lower the PVR and is usually added into the inspiratory limb of the circuit via a separate machine, which then also allows continuous NO administration, also while transporting the patient. Intravenous tubing must be free from air bubbles to prevent paradoxical air embolism, and air filters should be added to all infusion lines. Resuscitative drugs, labeled and ready for administration, should include succinylcholine, calcium gluconate or calcium chloride, sodium bicarbonate, atropine, lidocaine, phenylephrine, and epinephrine. An inotropic infusion, usually epinephrine or dopamine, should be premixed and ready for administration in high-risk cases, but additional infusions are prepared if their need is strongly suspected (e.g., milrinone, vasopressin). For all pediatric cases, certain anesthetic drugs should be available (etomidate, propofol, ketamine). No single drug can be recommended; how a particular drug is used is more important. In pediatric cardiac anesthesia, many patients have limited reserve and high endogenous catecholamine levels released in an adaptive response to their underlying cardiac disease. The resuscitative drugs should therefore be prepared and immediately available before anesthetic induction.

BOX 78.2 Monitoring of Organ Systems

Cardiopulmonary System

- Esophageal stethoscope
- Electrocardiogram
  - Standard five-lead system, ST-T wave analysis, esophageal electrocardiographic lead
- Pulse oximetry
- Automated oscillatory blood pressure
- Capnograph
- Ventilator parameters
- Indwelling arterial catheter
- Central venous pressure catheter
- Pulmonary artery catheter
- Transthoracic pressure catheter
  - Left or right atrium, pulmonary artery
- Echocardiography with Doppler color flow imaging
  - Epicardial or transesophageal

Central Nervous System

- Peripheral nerve stimulator
- Processed electroencephalography
- Specialized
  - Cerebral blood flow: Xenon clearance methodology
  - Cerebral metabolism: Near-infrared spectroscopy, oxygen consumption measurements
  - Transcranial Doppler
  - Jugular venous bulb saturations

Temperature

- Nasopharyngeal, rectal, esophageal, tympanic

Renal Function

- Foley catheter

For congenital heart surgery, the ability to alter body temperature rapidly for cooling and rewarming is essential. During deep hypothermic CPB, patients are cooled to 18°C. Surface cooling with a heating and cooling water mattress, ice in watertight bags, and an efficient room and ambient temperature control system are important in the operative management of these patients.

Physiologic Monitoring

The specific monitoring used should depend on the child's condition and the magnitude and nature of the planned surgical procedure. The perioperative monitoring techniques available are listed in Box 78.2. Noninvasive monitoring equipment is ideally placed before induction of anesthesia, although the anesthesiologist may elect to defer application of monitoring devices in the crying child until immediately after the induction. Standard monitoring includes electrocardiography, pulse oximetry, capnography, and an appropriate-sized blood pressure cuff (either oscillometric or Doppler). Additional monitoring includes an indwelling arterial catheter and temperature probes. Foley catheters are generally employed when surgical intervention entails CPB or might produce renal ischemia, or when the anesthetic management includes a regional technique associated with urinary retention. Most centers routinely employ percutaneously placed central venous pressure (CVP) monitoring or alternatively, directly placed transthoracic atrial lines by the surgeons to help with separation from CPB and the hemodynamic management in the postoperative period.

Continuous monitoring of arterial pressure is possible only through an indwelling intraarterial catheter. In young children, cannulation of the radial artery with a 22- or 24-gauge catheter is preferred. In older children and adolescents, a 20-gauge catheter may be substituted. Careful inspection, palpation, four-extremity noninvasive blood pressure determinations, and ultrasound use help ensure that previous or currently planned operative procedures (e.g., a previous radial artery cutdown, subclavian flap for coarctation repair, or Blalock-Taussig shunt) do not interfere with the selected site of arterial pressure monitoring. Other sites available for cannulation include the ulnar, femoral, axillary, and umbilical (in neonates) arteries. Cannulation of the posterior tibial or dorsalis pedis arteries is not usually sufficient for complex operative procedures. Peripheral arterial catheters, principally of the distal lower extremities, function poorly after CPB and do not reflect central aortic pressure when distal extremity temperature remains low.[47]

Myocardial and cerebral preservation is maintained principally through hypothermia; therefore, the accurate and continuous monitoring of body temperature is crucial. Rectal and nasopharyngeal temperatures are monitored because they reflect core temperature and brain temperature, respectively. Monitoring of esophageal temperature is a good reflection of cardiac and thoracic temperature. Tympanic probes, although a useful reflection of cerebral temperature, can cause tympanic membrane rupture.

Pulse oximetry and capnography provide instantaneous feedback concerning adequacy of ventilation and oxygenation. They are useful guides in ventilatory and hemodynamic adjustments to optimize $\dot{Q}p/\dot{Q}s$ before and after surgically created shunts and pulmonary artery bands. Peripheral vasoconstriction in patients undergoing deep hypothermia and circulatory arrest renders digital O_2 saturation probes less reliable. In the newborn, the use of a tongue sensor has been advocated to provide a more central measure of O_2 saturation, with less temperature-related variability.[48]

The use of transthoracic or transvenous pulmonary artery catheters is determined on an individual basis based on the disease process, physiologic state, and surgical intervention. For example, in children undergoing a Fontan procedure for tricuspid atresia or a univentricular heart, catheters in the Fontan pathway and the pulmonary venous atrium are especially useful. After a Fontan operation, PBF must occur without benefit of a ventricular pumping chamber. Subtle changes in preload, PVR, and pulmonary venous pressure will influence PBF and thus systemic cardiac output. Data derived from the difference between the CVP and left atrial pressure ([LAP]; also known as the transpulmonary gradient) help identify the relative importance of intravascular volume (CVP), PVR (CVP-LAP gradient), or ventricular compliance (LAP), each of which requires a different therapeutic approach.

As a general guideline, a transvenous pulmonary artery catheter may be placed using the internal jugular approach in children weighing more than 7 kg. A 5.0-Fr catheter is used for children weighing between 7 and 25 kg, and a 7.0-Fr one is used for children weighing more than 25 kg. For infants weighing less than 7 kg, percutaneous placement of a pulmonary artery catheter can be performed from the femoral vein. Occasionally, the latter technique will require

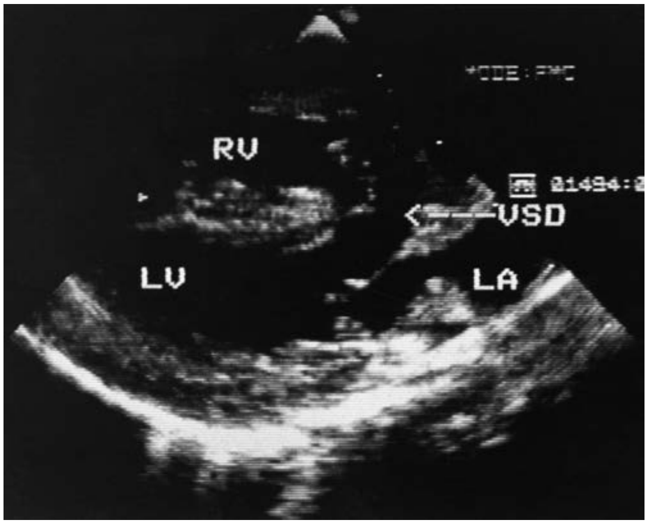


Fig. 78.4 Intraoperative pre–cardiopulmonary bypass epicardial echocardiogram in the long-axis view. Note the insertion of the papillary muscle of the tricuspid valve on the interventricular septum. On the basis of this view, the surgeon decided that ventricular septal defect *(VSD)* closure was possible in a child thought preoperatively to be a candidate for only palliation. *LA,* Left atrium; *LV,* left ventricle; *RV,* right ventricle.

fluoroscopy. The use of intraoperative transthoracic monitoring lines and echo-Doppler imaging limits the need for transvenous pulmonary artery catheters in most cases.

Special Monitoring

Intraoperative Echocardiography. The use of echo-Doppler imaging is now regarded as standard of care for almost all pediatric cardiac surgeries.[49,50] Two-dimensional echocardiography combined with pulsed-wave Doppler ultrasonography and color flow mapping provide detailed morphologic and physiologic information in the majority of operative cases. Using echo-Doppler in the operating room, anatomic and physiologic data can be obtained before CPB, thus refining the operative plans. Prebypass echo-Doppler precisely defines anesthetic and surgical management.[49] Because of the unrestricted epicardial and TEE approaches in anesthetized patients, new findings are frequently discovered and management plans changed accordingly (Fig. 78.4).

Postbypass echo-Doppler evaluation is able to immediately assess the quality of the surgical repair and cardiac function by examining ventricular wall motion and systolic thickening.[49] This technique can show residual structural defects after bypass, which can be immediately repaired, thus avoiding the patient leaving the operating room with significant residual structural defects that will require reoperation at a later time (Fig. 78.5). By identifying patients with right or left ventricular contraction abnormalities after bypass, as determined by a change in wall motion or systolic thickening, echo-Doppler provides guidance for immediate pharmacologic interventions. Importantly, postbypass ventricular dysfunction and residual structural defects identified by echo-Doppler imaging are associated with an increased incidence of reoperation and higher morbidity and mortality rates. Thus, this monitoring tool is helpful in assessing surgical repair and identifying operative risk factors, which will hopefully improve outcomes.

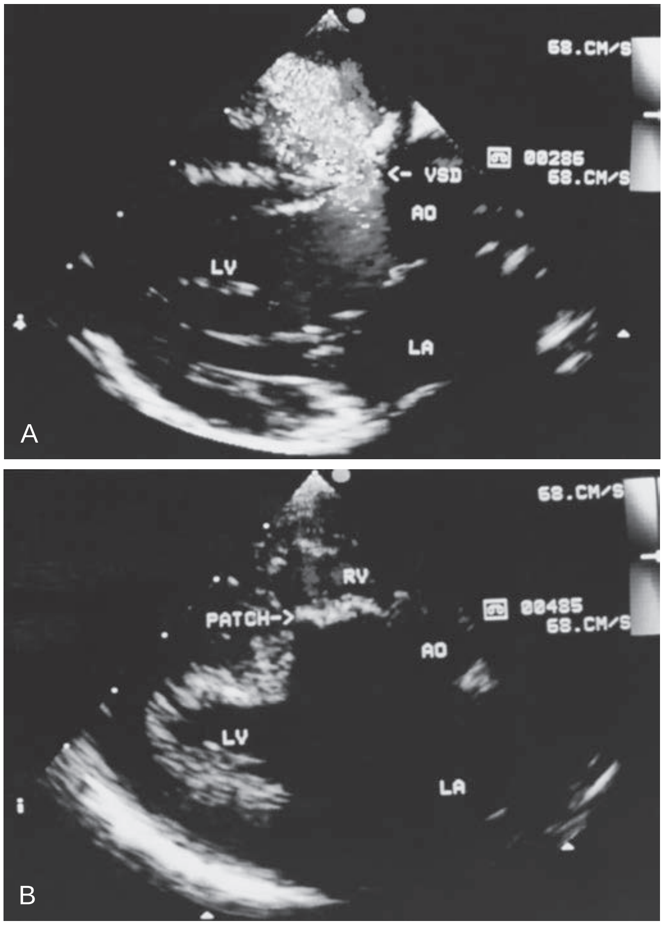


Fig. 78.5 (A) Echocardiogram with a Doppler flow map in the long-axis view illustrating a residual ventricular septal defect *(VSD)* resulting from patch dehiscence after initial repair. Turbulent flow through the VSD appears as a mosaic of white particles *(arrow)*. This finding necessitated immediate reinstitution of cardiopulmonary bypass and repeat repair. (B) Repeat Doppler flow map in the long-axis view illustrates patch closure *(arrow)* of the VSD after repeat repair. Note the absence of turbulent flow with the loss of the mosaic of white particles. *AO,* Aorta; *LA,* left atrium; *LV,* left ventricle; *RV,* right ventricle.

Two techniques for intraoperative echo-Doppler imaging have been described: epicardial and TEE. Using TEE, the probe is placed after induction of anesthesia and intubation and is then available for monitoring of the patient. The advantage of this technique is its utility as a continuous monitor of cardiac structure and function, without interrupting surgery.[49,51] Because of its ideal imaging location, TEE has been especially helpful in evaluating pulmonary venous return and the integrity of the left AV valve after mitral valvuloplasty, complete AV valve repair, and correction of complex CHD. Early limitation in views has been virtually eliminated as a result of clinical experience and improved biplane images. Pediatric biplane TEE probes have now extended the patient weight limits to neonates between 2.5 and 3 kg.[52] Potential hazards of TEE that merit particular vigilance include descending aorta and airway compression because of probe size or during probe flexion. There have been reports of esophageal damage during hypothermia and low or no flow states because of the heat energy the probe produces while connected to the TEE machine, leading most institutions to pause the imaging ability of the probe, disconnect the probe from the machine, or even remove it during the CPB period of the procedure.

A second technique for intraoperative echocardiographic analysis in children is the epicardial approach.[52] This approach requires passing a clean, short-focused 5.0- or 7.0-MHz transducer over the anesthesia screen into a sterile sheath, where it then can be placed on the epicardial surface of the heart. This technique best facilitates the probe manipulations necessary for thorough interrogation of the major structures and dynamic function of the heart. The advantage of this approach is that all views can be obtained in patients of any size. Among the disadvantages are the need for sufficient operator skill and experience to perform the manipulations, the need to interrupt surgery to manipulate the probe, and the possible deleterious impact of direct myocardial mechanical manipulation. Given current TEE capabilities, epicardial imaging is rarely employed.

Specialized Central Nervous System Monitoring. The primary goal of brain monitoring is to improve our understanding of cerebral function during cardiac surgery so that effective brain protection strategies can be developed. Because many of the determinants of normal brain perfusion become externally controlled by the cardiac team during CPB, such as flow rate (cardiac output), perfusion pressure, temperature, hematocrit, and $PaCO_2$, a knowledge of the effect of these factors on the brain in neonates, infants, and children is essential. Numerous intraoperative techniques have been used for monitoring the brain to prevent secondary brain injury from hypoxia, ischemia, emboli, and electrophysiologic derangements. These have primarily included the following three modalities in isolation or combination: (1) electroencephalography (EEG) to assess perfusion-related changes in cortical activity; (2) transcranial Doppler imaging to measure arterial flow and resistance; and (3) near-infrared spectroscopy (NIRS) to provide a measure of venous-weighted, tissue oxyhemoglobin saturation. Additionally, the measurement of CBF and metabolism with specialized clinical research tools has been very important in furthering our understanding of brain function during and after surgery. Multimodal neurologic monitoring is also used to guide CPB, deep hypothermic circulatory arrest (DHCA), and regional low-flow cerebral perfusion techniques in neonatal arch reconstruction.[53-55]

Electroencephalographic monitoring allows detection of ischemia or recognition of an adequate decrease in cerebral metabolic activity during hypothermia before DHCA. EEG is helpful in monitoring physiologic functions of the CNS during deep hypothermic bypass and total circulatory arrest. For example, during deep hypothermia and before total circulatory arrest, the processed EEG can identify residual cerebral electrical activity. Isoelectric silence can then be induced by further cooling and any further brain activity detected by EEG. Because this residual electrical activity during arrest is associated with ongoing cerebral metabolism, an isoelectric state may prevent ischemic injury to the brain during circulatory arrest. EEG also may be useful in detecting the level and depth of anesthesia. Postoperative electroencephalographic analysis has demonstrated subclinical seizure activity in a number of high-risk patients, potentially linking these abnormalities to poorer neuropsychologic outcome. The value of intraoperative electroencephalographic monitoring after CPB and the significance of the findings remain to be determined.

Transcranial Doppler imaging has been used primarily for research purposes in infants and allows detection of venous or arterial flow abnormalities and the detection of microemboli.[56] This technology uses the Doppler principle to detect shifts in the frequency of reflected signals from blood in the middle cerebral artery to calculate blood flow velocity.[57] Because the diameter of this large cerebral artery is relatively constant, flow velocity can be used to approximate CBF. Transcranial Doppler imaging has several advantages: (1) it is noninvasive, (2) it does not require radiation exposure, (3) it is a continuous monitor, and (4) it captures rapid alterations in blood flow velocity caused by temperature or perfusion changes. The limitations of transcranial Doppler monitoring include (1) reproducibility, especially at low flow rates, when small movements of the patient's head can dramatically alter the signal, and (2) the lack of validating studies during hypothermic CPB, when hypothermia, reduced flow rates, and the laminar flow characteristics of non-pulsatile perfusion may limit the accuracy of CBF velocity measurements.

Transcranial Doppler imaging has been used to investigate the effect of CPB and DHCA on cerebral hemodynamics in children, as well as to assess the incidence of cerebral emboli. Recent studies examining the brain using transcranial Doppler have enabled several investigative groups to provide important information regarding questions of normal and abnormal brain perfusion during cardiac surgery in children. Questions regarding cerebral perfusion pressure, autoregulation, effect of $PaCO_2$, and temperature have been addressed using transcranial Doppler imaging in children.[58-60] This technique also has provided qualitative information regarding the presence of gaseous emboli in the middle cerebral artery during cardiac surgery.[61]

NIRS is a noninvasive monitor of cerebral tissue oxygenation, reflecting the balance of O_2 delivery and consumption. Cerebral NIRS reflects O_2 saturation of the venous compartment, and values correlate with jugular venous bulb saturations.[62] There is significant interest in studying the ability of NIRS to predict outcomes, particularly on the neurodevelopmental spectrum. A study of infants undergoing the stage 1 Norwood procedure for HLHS demonstrated an association between low NIRS (particularly when less than 50%-60%) and poor neurodevelopmental outcomes.[63] Although there was not a linear association, it provides evidence that NIRS can be used to detect clinically consequential hypoxia. Somatic and cerebral saturations are further clinically relevant in the immediate postoperative period by predicting overall morbidity and mortality in patients with HLHS stage 1 palliation.[64] The number of minutes of cerebral desaturation below 50% predicts morbidity and serves as an early warning sign for hypoxia, bleeding, and/or low cardiac output state.[65] A decrease of greater than 20% from baseline in renal saturation as detected by NIRS for a period of 20 minutes has been associated with a longer duration of mechanical ventilation and ICU convalescence.[66]

A 2016 review of NIRS use in pediatric cardiac surgery identified several prospective trials, mostly observational, that found inconsistent results overall regarding improved

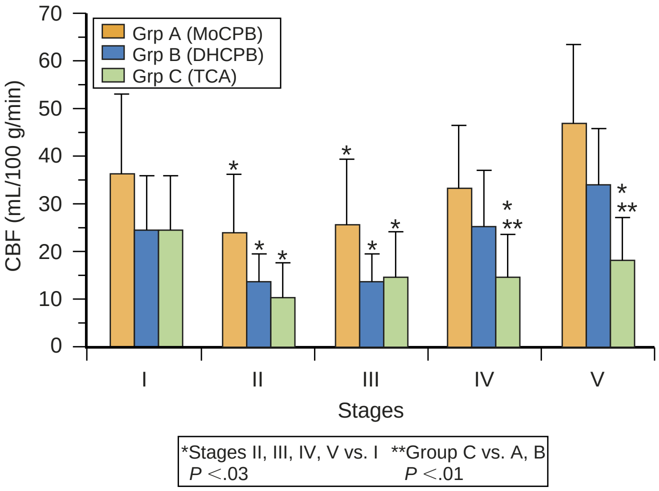


Fig. 78.6 Bar chart of the changes in cerebral blood flow *(CBF)* before, during, and after cardiopulmonary bypass *(CPB)* in 67 infants and children (mean ± SD). Group A underwent repair with moderate hypothermic bypass *(MoCPB)* at 28°C to 32°C; group B, with deep hypothermic bypass at 18°C to 22°C; and group C, with total circulatory arrest *(TCA)* at 18°C. Note the impaired cerebral reperfusion after total circulatory arrest (group C). Stage I, prebypass; stages II and III, during hypothermic bypass; stage IV, rewarmed on bypass; stage V, after bypass. (From Greeley WJ, Brusino FG, Ungerleider RM, et al. The effects of cardiopulmonary bypass on cerebral blood flow in neonates, infants, and children. *Circulation*. 1989;80:I209.)

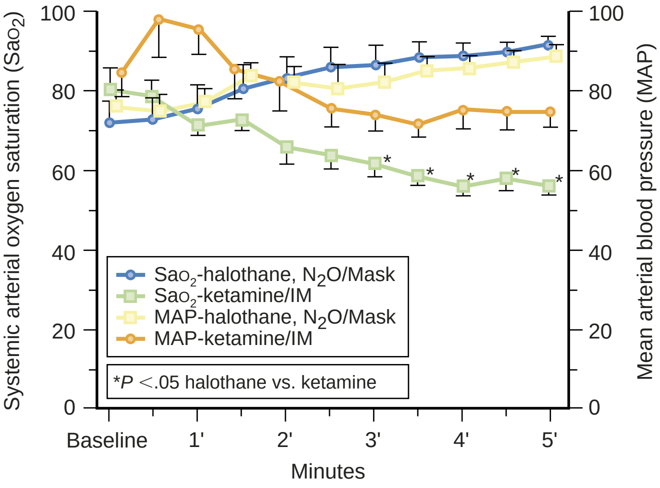


Fig. 78.7 Comparative changes in arterial oxygen saturation *(Sao$_2$)* and mean arterial pressure *(MAP)* during mask halothane nitrous oxide (*n* = 7) and intramuscular ketamine (*n* = 7) inductions in children with tetralogy of Fallot at risk for right-to-left shunting. Note the maintenance of Sao$_2$ in the halothane group despite the significant drop in MAP. *N_2O*, Nitrous oxide. (From Greeley WJ, Bushman GA, Davis DP, et al. Comparative effects of halothane and ketamine on systemic arterial oxygen saturation in children with cyanotic heart disease. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:666–668.)

clinical outcomes with NIRS use.[67] Importantly, the current evidence does not provide clear thresholds for cerebral or somatic NIRS, below which the chance of morbidity would increase. Differences in longer-term cardiac, renal, or neurodevelopmental outcomes have not been demonstrated based on differences in NIRS values. Despite these reservations, NIRS remains an important clinical tool to interpret alongside other monitoring technologies.

CBF studies using xenon clearance technology have improved the understanding of cerebrovascular dynamics in young children during CPB and especially during deep hypothermia and after periods of circulatory arrest.[68-71] In general, this investigational tool has described the effects of CPB, temperature, and various perfusion techniques on CBF and, indirectly, on brain metabolism (Fig. 78.6). Studies using this methodology have shown that some of the mechanisms of CBF autoregulation, such as pressure-flow regulation, are lost with deep hypothermia and that cerebral reperfusion is impaired after a period of total circulatory arrest.

Induction and Maintenance of Anesthesia

The principles of intraoperative management of cardiothoracic surgical procedures are based on an understanding of the pathophysiology of each disease process and a working knowledge of the effects of the various anesthetic and other pharmacologic interventions on a particular patient's condition. Selecting a technique for induction of anesthesia needs to consider the degree of cardiac dysfunction, the cardiac defect, the degree of sedation provided by the premedication, and the presence of an indwelling catheter. In children with good cardiac reserve, induction techniques can be quite varied in well-monitored patients. The titration of anesthetics for induction of anesthesia is more important than the specific anesthetic technique in patients with reasonable cardiac reserve. A wide spectrum of anesthetic induction techniques have been used safely and successfully, including sevoflurane, isoflurane, N_2O, intravenous and intramuscular ketamine, and intravenous propofol, fentanyl, and midazolam.[72] Ketamine is often used in anesthetic induction in patients with cyanotic conditions because it increases SVR and cardiac output, thereby diminishing the magnitude of right-to-left shunting. Administration of ketamine can be intravenous or intramuscular, with the caveat that an intramuscular injection may result in pain, agitation, and subsequent arterial desaturation.

Inhaled inductions are generally well received and tolerated by most children. An inhaled induction of anesthesia with sevoflurane can easily and safely be performed even in cyanotic patients, such as those with TOF (Fig. 78.7). In these patients, who are at risk for right-to-left shunting and systemic desaturation, oxygenation is well maintained with a good airway and ventilation despite reduction in systemic arterial pressure.[73] Skilled airway management and efficiency of ventilation are equally essential components of anesthetic induction. Recognizing the complexities of shunts and vascular resistance changes, as well as airway and ventilation effects on the cardiovascular system, is of primary importance during the induction of anesthesia.

After anesthetic induction, intravenous access is established or augmented as appropriate. A nondepolarizing muscle relaxant is usually administered and an intravenous opioid and/or inhaled anesthetic chosen for maintenance of anesthesia. The child is preoxygenated with 100% FiO$_2$, and an endotracheal tube is carefully positioned. Some degree of alveolar preoxygenation is recommended, even in the infant whose systemic perfusion might be jeopardized by lowering PVR with resulting increase in PBF, as this maneuver delays desaturation during intubation. A nasal route is usually selected in neonates and other patients who will remain intubated postoperatively, as it may provide greater stability and patient comfort than an oral endotracheal tube. However, with the trend of earlier and even intraoperative extubation, as well as new data showing an association between nasal intubation and increased infections in children older than 6 months of age, the prevalence of nasal intubation has decreased. If the child arrives in the operating room with an endotracheal tube in place, it is prudent to assess the depth and the overall state of the endotracheal tube. Inspissated secretions in a tube with a small internal diameter can cause significant obstruction to gas flow and may be made worse during periods of bypass when humidified ventilation is discontinued. This may be minimized by placing a new endotracheal tube at the beginning of the procedure.

Because of the diverse array of congenital heart defects and surgical procedures, an individualized anesthetic management plan is essential. The maintenance of anesthesia in these patients depends on the age and condition of the patient, the nature of the surgical procedure, the duration of the CPB, and the need for postoperative ventilation. An assessment of the hemodynamic objectives designed to lessen the pathophysiologic loading conditions should be developed for each patient, taking advantage of the known qualitative effects of specific anesthetic drugs and ventilatory strategies. These individualized plans must also be integrated with the overall perioperative goals to configure the optimal anesthetic. In patients with complex defects requiring preoperative inotropic and mechanical ventilatory support, a carefully controlled induction and maintenance anesthetic with a potent opioid is generally chosen. In patients with a simple ASD or VSD, a balanced anesthetic with inhaled anesthetics, opioid titration, and the use of dexmedetomidine is preferred. This allows for intraoperative tracheal extubation and a less prolonged period of intensive care monitoring. More important than the specific anesthetic techniques and drugs is the skilled execution of the anesthetic plan, taking into account patient response to drugs, the changes associated with surgical manipulation, and early recognition of intraoperative complications.

The reported changes in arterial blood pressure and heart rate from the inhaled anesthetic in normal children are observed in pediatric cardiac surgical patients as well. We use potent inhaled anesthetics in almost all cases, including while on CPB, as part of a balanced anesthetic technique and for their direct protective effects against ischemia/reperfusion myocardial injury.[74,75] Although isoflurane decreases blood pressure in neonates, infants, and children, the vasodilatory properties of isoflurane may improve overall myocardial contractility in contrast to the effects of halothane.[76] Despite improved cardiac reserve with isoflurane, the incidence of laryngospasm, coughing, and desaturation during induction of anesthesia limits its use as an induction agent in children with congenital heart defects.[77]

Desflurane has cardiorespiratory properties similar to those of isoflurane.[78] Its main advantage is low blood gas and tissue solubility, allowing for rapid equilibration between the inspired and alveolar concentrations and rapid decrease of alveolar concentrations during elimination.[79] This provides greater precision in drug dosing during the operative period and may make desflurane a more titratable adjunctive drug for pediatric cardiac anesthesia. The three main disadvantages of desflurane are potency, pungency, and negative inotropic effect.[80,81] Studies in normal infants and children suggest that 1 minimum alveolar concentration of desflurane requires concentrations of 8% to 10%.[82,83] Desflurane is also quite pungent, and, although its uptake is rapid, early experience with this drug for inhalation induction in children has reported a fairly high incidence of airway reactivity and laryngospasm.[83-85] Although its negative inotropic effect is significantly less potent than that of halothane, desflurane should not be used as the sole anesthetic in patients with significant cardiac dysfunction.[85]

Sevoflurane, our volatile anesthetic of choice, offers a more tolerable aroma without the magnitude of myocardial depression that accompanies halothane.[86] In addition, its blood gas solubility is nearly as low as that of desflurane. Hemodynamically, sevoflurane tends to produce some tachycardia, particularly in older children, and preserve systemic arterial pressure.[87] Reductions in heart rate and systemic arterial pressure are more modest in infants anesthetized with sevoflurane than in control subjects anesthetized with halothane, and the former exhibit echocardiographic evidence of normal contractility and cardiac index. This effect is particularly seen in children with trisomy 21.[88,89]

Children with complex CHD and limited cardiac reserve demand an anesthetic technique that provides hemodynamic stability. Inhalation anesthetics are less well tolerated as a sole primary anesthetic in patients who have limited cardiac reserve, especially after CPB. Fentanyl is an excellent induction and maintenance anesthetic for this group of patients. Low-to-moderate doses of this opioid can be supplemented with inhalation anesthetics. Adding low concentrations of inhalation anesthetics to smaller doses of opioids shortens or eliminates the need for postoperative mechanical ventilation while maintaining the advantage of intraoperative hemodynamic stability. Postoperative mechanical ventilation will be required when a high-dose (e.g., fentanyl > 20 μg/kg) opioid technique is used. The hemodynamic effects of fentanyl at a dose of 25 μg/kg with pancuronium given to infants in the postoperative period after operative repair of a congenital heart defect include no change in LAP, pulmonary artery pressure, PVR, and cardiac index and a small decrease in SVR and mean arterial pressure.[90] Because of its cardiovascular effects, pancuronium was an ideal neuromuscular blocking drug for pediatric heart surgery, but it is no longer available for clinical use. Therefore, either vecuronium or rocuronium are most often used. Larger doses of fentanyl at 50 to 75 μg/kg with rocuronium or vecuronium compared to doses of fentanyl at 50 to 75 μg/kg with pancuronium result in a slightly larger decrease in arterial blood pressure and heart rate in infants undergoing repair for complex congenital heart defects.[91] Despite the wide safety margin exhibited by this opioid, a selected population of infants and children with marginally compensated hemodynamic function sustained by endogenous catecholamines may manifest more extreme cardiovascular changes with these doses. Fentanyl also has been shown to block stimulus-induced pulmonary vasoconstriction and contributes to the stability of the pulmonary circulation in neonates after congenital diaphragmatic hernia repair.[92] Thus, the use of fentanyl may be extrapolated to the operating room, where stabilizing pulmonary vascular responsiveness in newborns and young infants with reactive pulmonary vascular beds is crucial to weaning from CPB and stabilizing shunt flow. Fentanyl in the 8 to 12 µg/kg dose range should provide sufficient analgesia, but still allow adequate ventilation efforts to allow for intraoperative extubation with stable hemodynamics during the procedure.

Children receiving sufentanil for induction of anesthesia as a single dose of 5 to 20 µg/kg have a stable preintubation period.[93,94] Intubation and other stimuli such as sternotomy do not produce clinically significant alterations in hemodynamics, although changes are more than with equipotent doses of fentanyl. The use of fentanyl as an infusion (1-2 µg/kg/h) produces fewer alterations in heart rate and blood pressure. This is particularly important in infants, in whom significant hemodynamic changes are poorly tolerated. For neonates with critical CHD, sufentanil anesthetic and postoperative infusion reduce morbidity after cardiac surgery when compared with a halothane anesthetic and routine morphine postoperatively.[95] The blunting of the stress response observed in this study probably accounted for the differences in morbidity; no comparison group representing a more typical dose of a phenylpiperidine opioid (e.g., fentanyl, 0-75 µg/kg) was included to permit conclusions as to whether such large opioid doses are optimal.

In contrast to other opioids, remifentanil, an ultra–short-acting opioid, offers the unique advantage of metabolism by nonspecific and tissue esterases, thereby limiting the potential for accumulation related to protracted elimination.[96] Remifentanil may provide advantages in the selected group of patients for whom the blunting of endogenous responses is desirable intraoperatively but potentially deleterious at the end of the procedure. A randomized controlled trial comparing equipotent doses of alfentanil and remifentanil for outpatient pediatric surgery revealed delayed emergence, requiring naloxone only in the alfentanil group.[97] In both adults and children, remifentanil is associated with qualitative hemodynamic changes similar to those with other opioids, a variable tendency to bradycardia, and a small decrease in arterial blood pressure.[98-101]

Because of the widespread use of the opioids for pediatric cardiac surgery and the availability of invasive monitoring, the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of these drugs have been well studied.[93,99] In general, the clinical pharmacology of fentanyl and sufentanil share the same age-related pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic features. For example, sufentanil has an increased clearance in patients 1 month to 12 years of age, comparable to adult clearance in adolescents (12-16 years of age), and a decreased clearance during the neonatal period (newborn to 1 month of age) (Table 78.7).[84,88] Furthermore, sequential sufentanil anesthetics in neonates with CHD show marked increases in clearance and elimination between the first week and the third or fourth week of life (Fig. 78.8).[101] The latter observation is most likely attributable to maturational changes in hepatic microsomal activity and improved hepatic blood flow from closure of the ductus venosus. The variability in clearance and elimination, coupled with limited cardiovascular reserve in the neonate during the first month of life, makes opioid dosing difficult in this age group.

TABLE 78.7 Sufentanil Pharmacokinetics in Pediatric Cardiovascular Patients

Age Group	$t_{1/2}\ \alpha$ (min)	$t_{1/2}\ \beta$ (min)	Clearance (mL/kg/min)	Vdss (L/kg)
1-30 days	23 ± 17	737 ± 346	6.7 ± 6.1	4.2 ± 1.0
1-24 months	16 ± 5	214 ± 41	18.1 ± 2.7	3.1 ± 1.0
2-12 years	20 ± 6	140 ± 30	16.9 ± 2.2	2.7 ± 0.5
12-18 years	20 ± 6	209 ± 23	13.1 ± 0.4	2.7 ± 0.5

All values are mean ± standard deviations (see Forbess et al.[386]).
$t_{1/2}\ \alpha$, Slow distribution half-life; $t_{1/2}\ \beta$, elimination half-life; *Vdss*, volume of distribution at steady state.

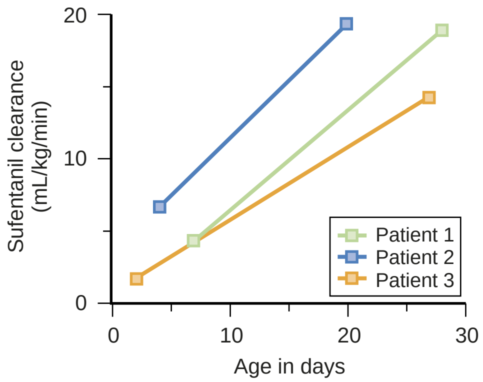


Fig. 78.8 Sequential sufentanil clearance during the first month of life in three neonates with congenital heart disease. Clearance of sufentanil increases above adult rates within the neonatal period. (Data from Greeley WJ, de Bruijn NP. Changes in sufentanil pharmacokinetics within the neonatal period. *Anesth Analg*. 1988;67:86–90.)

Careful titration of fentanyl 5 to 10 µg/kg or sufentanil 1 to 2 µg/kg or a continuous infusion technique provides the most reliable method of achieving hemodynamic stability and an accurate dose response. CPB, different institutional anesthetic practices, and individual patient differences influence pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic disposition of the opioids in ways that are not predictable. Even certain disease states such as TOF or pathophysiologic conditions such as increased intraabdominal pressure alter pharmacokinetic processes.[90,91]

Intraoperative use of methadone is an alternative pain control strategy introduced as an answer to counter acute tolerance to fentanyl infusions in the postoperative period. Adult data suggest that intraoperative use of methadone as the primary opioid in CPB cases significantly reduced the use of other opioids in the postoperative period, improved pain scores, and enhanced patient-perceived quality of pain management.[102] There is no pharmacokinetic data in children having CPB surgery, but available data show that the pharmacokinetic parameters in children and neonates are similar to those reported in adults, and that there is no clearance maturation with age.[103] For non-CPB cases, a dose of 0.2 mg/kg is suggested; we have used total doses of 0.3 to 0.4 mg/kg in CPB cases and extubated intraoperatively. Other strategies to address opioid tolerance include alternating opioid drugs, instituting opioid holidays, the addition of benzodiazepines on an as-needed basis, and the use of dexmedetomidine infusions.

Dexmedetomidine is an α_2-agonist approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for sedation in adults. It has been used in pediatric anesthesia as part of a balanced technique preoperatively and intraoperatively for sedation, anxiolysis, and analgesia, and postoperatively for prevention of emergence delirium and sedation.[104] Dexmedetomidine has significant analgesic and antiinflammatory effects, attenuates the neuroendocrine response to surgery, and has no neurotoxic effects; it is a crucial adjunct to a balanced anesthetic as it reduces the need for other analgesics and hypnotics.[105-107]

The pharmacodynamic effects of dexmedetomidine when used as an infusion are generally well tolerated.[108] The clinical effects are predictable and usually insignificant with slight lowering of both heart rate and arterial blood pressure compared to baseline.[109] However, when administered as a rapid bolus, the first physiologic effect noted is hypertension along with heart rate slowing, lasting approximately 2 to 5 minutes before arterial blood pressure decreases.[110]

Dexmedetomidine demonstrates cardiac conduction effects, via both direct depression of the sinus and AV nodes in the heart, and decreased sympathetic tone in the locus coeruleus.[111] Clinically, this translates into a significant reduction of the incidence of junctional ectopic tachycardia post-CPB.[112] However, some studies and case reports, mostly in the adult literature, have documented clinically significant bradycardia, hypotension, and even asystole with its use. It is necessary to remain vigilant and titrate dexmedetomidine carefully. Dexmedetomidine should be used with particular caution in children at risk for bradycardia or sinus or AV node dysfunction, and possibly in patients who have had a heart transplant.[113] At our institution, dexmedetomidine is used in almost every case, with an infusion of 0.2 μg/kg/h in neonates and 0.5 μg/kg/h in all other cases initiated postinduction. The infusion is continued throughout the surgery and into the postoperative period. This practice is particularly helpful in patients that are extubated intraoperatively and we will often increase the dose to 1 to 2 μg/kg/h after extubation to keep the child calm for transport to the ICU.

Cardiopulmonary Bypass

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN ADULT AND PEDIATRIC CARDIOPULMONARY BYPASS

The physiologic effects of CPB on neonates, infants, and children are significantly different from the effects on adults (Table 78.8). During CPB, pediatric patients are exposed to biologic extremes not seen in adults, including deep hypothermia (18°C), hemodilution (threefold to fivefold greater dilution of circulating blood volume), low perfusion pressures (20-30 mm Hg), wide variation in pump flow rates (ranging from total circulatory arrest to 200 mL/kg/min), and differing blood pH management techniques (α-stat, pH-stat, or both sequentially). These parameters deviate far from normal physiology and affect preservation of normal organ function during and after CPB. In addition to these prominent changes, subtle variations in glucose supplementation, cannula placement, presence of aortopulmonary collaterals, and patient age affect organ function during CPB.

TABLE 78.8 Differences Between Adult and Pediatric Cardiopulmonary Bypass

Parameter	Adult	Pediatric
Hypothermic temperature	Rarely below 25°C -30°C	Commonly 15°C -20°C
Use of total circulatory arrest	Rare	Common
Pump prime		
Dilution effects on blood volume	25%-33%	150%-300%
Additional additives in pediatric primes		Blood, albumin
Perfusion pressures	50-80 mm Hg	20-50 mm Hg
Influence of α-stat versus pH-stat management strategy	Minimal at moderate hypothermia	Marked at deep hypothermia
Measured $PaCO_2$ differences	30-45 mm Hg	20-80 mm Hg
Glucose regulation		
Hypoglycemia	Rare—requires significant hepatic injury	Common—reduced hepatic glycogen stores
Hyperglycemia	Frequent—generally easily controlled with insulin	Less common—rebound hypoglycemia may occur

Adult patients are infrequently exposed to such biologic extremes; temperature is rarely lowered below 25°C, hemodilution is more moderate, perfusion pressure is generally maintained at 50 to 80 mm Hg, flow rates are maintained at 50 to 65 mL/kg/min, and pH management strategy is less consequential because of moderate hypothermic temperatures and rare use of circulatory arrest. Variables such as glucose supplementation rarely pose a problem in adult patients owing to large hepatic glycogen stores. Venous and arterial cannulas are less deforming of the atria and aorta, and their placement is more predictable. Although superficially similar, the conduct of CPB in children is considerably different from that in adults. Marked physiologic differences in the response to CPB in children can occur. Additionally, several modifiable intraoperative factors can influence neuropsychologic morbidity (Box 78.3).

Volume of Priming Solutions

The priming solutions used in pediatric CPB take on great importance because of the disproportionately large priming volume–to–blood volume ratio in children. In adults, the priming volume is equivalent to 25% to 33% of the patient's blood volume, whereas in neonates and infants the priming volume may exceed the patient's blood volume by 200%. With contemporary low-volume bypass circuits (e.g., small volume oxygenators, smaller tubing), priming volume is not more than one blood volume in a small neonate. Care must be taken, therefore, to achieve a physiologically balanced priming solution and limit the volume as much as

BOX 78.3 Central Nervous System Injury and Potential Modifiable Intraoperative Factors

Air or particulate embolus
Rate and depth of core cooling (if used)
Deep hypothermic circulatory arrest (if used)
Reperfusion injury and inflammation
Rate of core rewarming/hyperthermia
Hyperglycemia
Hyperoxia
pH management during cardiopulmonary bypass
Hematocrit management during cardiopulmonary bypass

possible. Most pediatric priming solutions, however, have quite variable levels of electrolytes, calcium, glucose, and lactate. Electrolytes, glucose, and lactate levels may be quite high if the solution includes large amounts of banked blood or quite low if a minimal amount of banked blood is added. Calcium levels are generally very low in pediatric priming solutions; this may contribute to the rapid slowing of the heart with the initiation of bypass.

The main constituents of the priming solution include crystalloid, colloid, and, if necessary, banked blood to maintain a temperature-appropriate hematocrit. Other potential supplements are fresh frozen plasma, mannitol, a buffer (sodium bicarbonate or trishydroxymethylaminomethane [THAM]), and steroids. Low concentrations of plasma proteins have been shown experimentally to impair lymphatic flow and alter pulmonary function by increasing capillary leak.[114] Although adding albumin to the pump prime has not been shown to alter outcome in adults during CPB, one study suggested that maintaining normal colloid osmotic pressure may improve survival in infants undergoing CPB.[115,116]

Whole blood, if available, is an alternative to adding both packed RBCs and fresh frozen plasma. Blood cells are added to the prime solution to maintain a postdilutional hematocrit of at least 20% to 25% (usually higher in patients with cyanotic CHD), and plasma restores levels of procoagulants. Low-volume bypass circuits enable perfusionists and anesthesiologists to share a single unit of whole blood, thereby limiting the donor.

The addition of any blood products will cause a much higher glucose load in the priming solution. Hyperglycemia may increase the risk for neurologic injury if brain ischemia occurs. Mannitol is added to promote an osmotic diuresis and scavenge O_2 free radicals from the circulation. Steroids are added to stabilize membranes and produce the theoretic advantage of reducing ion shifts during periods of ischemia, attenuating inflammation caused by CPB, decreasing low cardiac output states, and improving fluid balance in the postoperative period. Steroids, however, may raise glucose levels, which can be detrimental if there is a period of cerebral ischemia, and may suppress immune function. Steroids remain a controversial additive in priming solutions. Recent retrospective data suggest negative effects with its use and an association with decreased survival in neonates having the Norwood procedure.[117] A number of prospective studies are ongoing to address the role of steroids in pediatric cardiac surgery.

Temperature

Hypothermic CPB is used to preserve organ function during cardiac surgery. Three distinct methods of CPB are used: moderate hypothermia (25°-32°C), deep hypothermia (18°C), and DHCA. The choice of method of bypass is based on the required surgical conditions, patient size, type of operation, and potential physiologic impact on the patient.

Moderate hypothermic CPB is the principal method of bypass employed for older children and adolescents. In these patients, venous cannulas are less obtrusive and the heart can easily accommodate superior and inferior vena cava cannulation. Bicaval cannulation reduces right atrial blood return and improves the surgeon's ability to visualize intracardiac anatomy. Moderate hypothermia may also be chosen for less demanding cardiac repairs, such as an ASD or uncomplicated VSD. Most surgeons are willing to cannulate the inferior and superior venae cavae in neonates and infants. In these patients, however, this approach is technically more difficult and likely to induce brief periods of hemodynamic instability. Additionally, the pliability of the venae cavae and the rigidity of the cannulas may result in caval obstruction, impaired venous drainage, and elevated venous pressure in the mesenteric and cerebral circulation.

Deep hypothermic CPB is generally reserved for neonates and infants requiring complex cardiac repair. However, certain older children with complex cardiac disease or severe aortic arch disease benefit from deep hypothermic temperatures. For the most part, deep hypothermia is selected to allow the surgeon to operate under conditions of low-flow CPB or total circulatory arrest. Low pump flows (50 mL/kg/min) improve the operating conditions for the surgeon by providing a nearly bloodless field. DHCA allows the surgeon to remove the atrial or aortic cannula. If this technique is used, surgical repair is more precise because of the bloodless and cannula-free operative field. Arresting the circulation, even at deep hypothermic temperatures, introduces the concern of how well deep hypothermia preserves organ function, with the brain being at greatest risk. Three-region perfusion techniques may be an option to deep hypothermic CPB, but further studies are needed to assess feasibility and outcomes of this newer strategy.

Hemodilution

Hemodilution is used during CPB to decrease homologous blood use and improve microcirculatory flow by reducing blood viscosity during periods of hypothermia. Although hemoconcentrated blood has an improved O_2-carrying capacity, its viscosity reduces efficient flow through the microcirculation. With hypothermic temperatures, blood viscosity increases significantly and flow decreases. Hypothermia, coupled with the nonpulsatile flow of CPB, impairs blood flow through the microcirculation. Blood sludging, small vessel occlusion, and multiple areas of tissue hypoperfusion may result. Therefore, hemodilution is an important consideration during hypothermic CPB.

The appropriate level of hemodilution for a given hypothermic temperature, however, is not well defined. Further, hemodilution reduces perfusion pressure; increases CBF, thereby potentially increasing the microembolic load to the brain; and reduces the O_2-carrying capacity of blood.[118] Using an animal model, one group of investigators found that extreme hemodilution to a hematocrit less than 10% resulted in inadequate O_2 delivery, but with higher hematocrit levels of 30%, there was improved cerebral recovery after DHCA.[119] Jonas and colleagues[120] confirmed these findings in a randomized trial using two hemodilution protocols (20% vs. 30% hematocrit) in infants younger than 9 months of age. In the short term, the group with lower hematocrit values had lower nadirs of cardiac index, higher serum lactate levels 1 hour after CPB, and a greater increase in total body water on the first postoperative day. At 1 year of age, mental development index scores were similar but psychomotor development index scores were significantly lower in the group with lower hematocrit values. Also, infants in this group had psychomotor development scores that were 2 standard deviations below the mean. Because RBCs serve as the major reservoir of O_2 during circulatory arrest, especially during rewarming, hematocrit values closer to 30% are generally preferred for deep hypothermia when this technique is contemplated. Currently, most centers maintain hematocrit levels approximately 25% to 30% during CPB, enhancing O_2 delivery to vital organs such as the brain. Cerebral O_2 delivery is an especially important consideration because cerebral autoregulation is impaired at deep hypothermic temperatures and after DHCA.

To achieve a hematocrit level of 25% to 30% in neonates and infants, banked blood should be added to the priming solution. The mixed hematocrit level on CPB (the hematocrit level of the total priming volume plus the patient's blood volume) can be calculated by the following formula:

$$\mathrm{Hct_{CPB}} = \mathrm{BV_{pt}} \times \mathrm{HCT_{pt}} / \mathrm{BV_{pt}} + \mathrm{TPV}$$

where $\mathrm{Hct_{CPB}}$ is the mixed hematocrit (TPV + BVpt), $\mathrm{BV_{pt}}$ is the patient's blood volume (weight in kilograms × estimated blood volume in milliliters per kilogram), TPV is the total priming volume, and $\mathrm{Hct_{pt}}$ is the starting hematocrit level of the patient. This calculation allows an estimate of the hematocrit level of the patient using an asanguinous priming solution and is therefore useful for older children and adolescents. In neonates and infants, the perfusionist must add blood to the pump prime to achieve a desired hematocrit level during hypothermic CPB. The following formula estimates the amount of packed RBCs in milliliters that must be added to the prime volume to achieve this hematocrit level:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Added RBCs (mL)} &= (\mathrm{BV_{pt}} + \mathrm{TPV})\,(\mathrm{Hct_{desired}}) \\ &\quad - (\mathrm{BV_{pt}})\,(\mathrm{Hct_{pt}})\end{aligned}$$

where $\mathrm{BV_{pt}}$ is the patient's blood volume, TPV is the total priming volume, $\mathrm{Hct_{desired}}$ is the desired hematocrit level on CPB, and $\mathrm{Hct_{pt}}$ is the starting hematocrit level of the patient.

Like in adults, the optimal hematocrit level after weaning from CPB is not clear for pediatric patients. Decisions concerning post-CPB hematocrit levels are made based on the patient's post-repair function and anatomy. Neonates, patients with residual hypoxemia, and those with moderate-to-severe myocardial dysfunction benefit from the improved O_2-carrying capacity of hematocrit levels of 40% or higher. Patients with a physiologic correction and excellent myocardial function may tolerate hematocrit levels of 25% to 30%.[121] In children with mild-to-moderate myocardial dysfunction, accepting hematocrit values between these levels seems prudent. Therefore, in patients with physiologic correction, moderately good ventricular function, and hemodynamic stability, the risks associated with blood and blood product transfusion should be strongly considered during the immediate postbypass period.

BLOOD GAS MANAGEMENT

The theoretic benefit of α-stat versus pH-stat blood gas management during hypothermic CPB has been a topic of great debate. Although the pH-stat strategy may not be optimal for adults in whom the principal risk for brain injury is microembolism, this risk is thought to be lower in infants because of the lack of atherosclerotic disease. With pH-stat management, the addition of CO_2 to the inspired gas mixture during cooling on CPB increases CBF and may improve cerebral tissue oxygenation and outcomes.

The controversial issue of pH management during CPB has been addressed in a large study from Boston Children's Hospital. In this study, infants younger than 9 months of age were randomized to α-stat versus pH-stat during deep hypothermic CPB with excellent long-term follow-up.[122,123] Neurodevelopmental outcomes were evaluated in infants undergoing biventricular repair for a variety of cardiac defects when younger than 9 months of age. The short-term benefits identified with the pH-stat strategy included a trend toward less postoperative morbidity and shorter recovery time to first electroencephalographic activity. In patients with TGA, there was a shorter duration of intubation and ICU stay in patients.[122] However, the use of either the α-stat or pH-stat strategies was not consistently related to either improved or impaired neurodevelopmental outcomes at 2- and 4-year follow-up.[123]

INITIATION OF CARDIOPULMONARY BYPASS

Arterial and venous cannula placed in the heart before initiating CPB may result in significant problems in the peribypass period. A malpositioned venous cannula has the potential for vena cava obstruction. The problems of venous obstruction are magnified during CPB in the neonate because arterial pressures are normally low (20-40 mm Hg), and large, relatively stiff cannulas easily distort these very pliable venous vessels.[114,116] A cannula in the inferior vena cava may obstruct venous return from the splanchnic bed, resulting in ascites from increased hydrostatic pressure or directly reduced perfusion pressure across the mesenteric, renal, and hepatic vascular beds. Significant renal, hepatic, and gastrointestinal dysfunction may ensue and should be anticipated in the young infant with unexplained ascites. Similar cannulation problems may result in superior vena cava obstruction. This condition may be more ominous during bypass. Under these circumstances, three problems may ensue: (1) cerebral edema, (2) a reduction in regional or global CBF, and (3) reduced proportion of pump flow reaching the cerebral circulation, causing inefficient brain cooling.

In the operating room, superior vena cava pressures via an internal jugular catheter should be monitored by examining the patient's head for signs of suffusion after initiating bypass. Discussions with the perfusionist regarding adequacy of venous return and large cooling gradients between the upper and lower body should alert the anesthesiologist and the surgeon to potential venous cannulae problems. Patients with anomalies of the large systemic veins (persistent left superior vena cava or azygous continuation of an interrupted inferior vena cava) are at particular risk for problems with venous cannulation and drainage.

Problems with aortic cannula placement can occur. The aortic cannula may slip beyond the takeoff of the innominate artery, with blood therefore selectively flowing to the right side of the cerebral circulation. Also, the position of the tip of the cannula may promote preferential flow down the aorta or induce a Venturi effect to steal flow from the cerebral circulation. This problem has been confirmed during CBF monitoring by the appearance of large discrepancies in flow between the right and left hemispheres after initiating CPB. The presence of large aortic-to-pulmonary collaterals, such as a large PDA, also may divert blood to the pulmonary circulation from the systemic circulation, thereby reducing CBF and the efficiency of brain cooling during CPB. The surgeon should gain control of the ductus either before or immediately after instituting CPB to eliminate this problem and, if possible, large aortopulmonary collaterals should be embolized in the cardiac catheterization laboratory before the operative procedure. Neonates with significant aortic arch abnormalities (e.g., aortic atresia, interrupted aortic arch) may require radical modifications of cannulation techniques, such as placing the arterial cannula in the main pulmonary artery and temporarily occluding the branch pulmonary arteries to perfuse the body via the PDA or even dual arterial cannulation of both the ascending aorta and main pulmonary artery. Such adaptations require careful vigilance to ensure effective, thorough perfusion and cooling of vital organs.

Once the aortic and venous cannulas are positioned and connected to the arterial and venous limb of the extracorporeal circuit, bypass is initiated. The arterial pump is slowly started, and, once forward flow is ensured, venous blood is drained into the oxygenator. Pump flow rate is gradually increased until full circulatory support is achieved. If venous return is diminished, arterial line pressure is high, or mean arterial pressure is excessive, pump flow rates must be reduced. High line pressure and inadequate venous return are usually caused by malposition or kinking of the arterial and venous cannulae, respectively. The rate at which venous blood is drained from the patient is determined by the height difference between the patient and the oxygenator inlet and the diameter of the venous cannula and line tubing. Venous drainage can be increased by using vacuum-assisted drainage under certain circumstances.

In neonates and infants, deep hypothermia is commonly used. For this reason, the pump prime is kept cold (18°-22°C). When the cold perfusate contacts the myocardium during the institution of CPB, heart rate slows immediately and contraction is impaired. The contribution of total blood flow pumped by the infant's heart rapidly diminishes. Therefore, to sustain adequate systemic perfusion at or near normothermic temperatures, the arterial pump must reach full flows quickly.

CPB is initiated in neonates and infants by beginning the arterial pump flow first. Once aortic flow is ensured, the venous line is unclamped and blood is siphoned out of the RA into the inlet of the oxygenator. Flowing before unclamping the venous line prevents the potential problem of exsanguination if aortic dissection or misplacement of the aortic cannula occurs. Neonates and infants have a low blood volume–to–priming volume ratio, and intravascular volume falls precipitously if the venous drainage precedes aortic inflow. Once the aortic cannula position is verified, pump flow rates are rapidly increased to maintain effective systemic perfusion. Because coronary artery disease is rarely a consideration, the myocardium should cool evenly unless distortion caused by the cannulas compromises the coronary arteries. When a cold prime is used, caution must be exercised in using the pump to infuse volume before initiating CPB. Infusion of cold perfusate may result in bradycardia and impaired cardiac contractility before the surgeon is prepared to initiate CPB.

Once CPB is initiated, appropriate circuit connections, myocardial perfusion, and optimal cardiac decompression should be confirmed. Ineffective venous drainage can rapidly result in ventricular distention. This is especially true in infants and neonates, in whom ventricular compliance is low and the heart is relatively intolerant of excessive preload augmentation. If ventricular distention occurs, pump flow must be reduced and the venous cannula repositioned. Alternatively, the heart may be decompressed by placing a cardiotomy suction catheter or small vent in the appropriate chamber.

PUMP FLOW RATES

Recommendations for optimal pump flow rates for children have historically been based both on the patient's body mass and on evidence of efficient organ perfusion as determined by arterial blood gases, acid-base balance, and whole-body O_2 consumption during CPB.[124] At hypothermic temperatures, metabolism is reduced, and CPB flow rates can therefore be reduced and still meet or exceed the tissue's metabolic needs (see the discussion of low-flow CPB in the following section).

SPECIAL TECHNIQUES

Deep Hypothermic Circulatory Arrest

A certain subset of neonates, infants, and children with CHD require extensive repair of complex congenital heart defects using DHCA. This technique facilitates precise surgical repair under optimal conditions, with no blood or cannulae in the operative field and providing maximal organ protection and often resulting in shortened total CPB time. The scientific rationale for the use of deep hypothermic temperatures rests primarily on a temperature-mediated reduction of metabolism. Whole-body and cerebral O_2 consumption during induced hypothermia decreases the metabolic rate for O_2 by a factor of 2 to 2.5 for every 10°C reduction in temperature.[125] These results are consistent with in-vitro models, which relate temperature reduction to a decrease in the rate constant of chemical reactions, as originally described by Arrhenius using the equation $k = Ae - RT$. The reduction in O_2 supply during deep hypothermic low-flow CPB is associated with preferential increases in vital organ perfusion (e.g., to the brain) and increased extraction of O_2.[126] Therefore, to some extent, deep hypothermic low-flow CPB

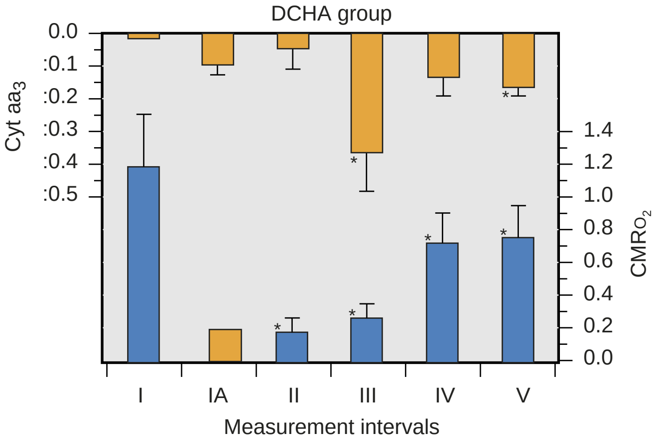


Fig. 78.9 Bar graph of variations in cytochrome oxidase *(cyt aa_3)* near-infrared spectroscopic signals and cerebral metabolic rate for oxygen *(CMRO_2)* in subjects with deep hypothermic circulatory arrest *(DHCA)*. Each point of cyt aa_3 represents mean ± SE in six subjects; CMRO_2 values are mean ± SD. Negative values in cyt aa_3 represent relative decreases in quantity of oxidized enzyme. *CMRO_2 and cyt aa_3 are significantly different from control, $P \pm .05$.

exerts a protective effect by reducing the metabolic rate for O_2, promoting preferential organ perfusion, and increasing tissue O_2 extraction.

The duration of the safe period for DHCA has not clearly been delineated.[127] Although all organ systems are at risk for the development of ischemic and reperfusion injury, as manifested by lactate and pyruvate production during DHCA, the brain appears to be the most sensitive to and the least tolerant of these effects. Brainstem and cortical evoked potentials as well as processed electroencephalographs are altered after DHCA.[127-129] The abnormalities in evoked potentials appear to be related to the duration of DHCA and are attributed to altered metabolism. During reperfusion after the arrest period, CBF and metabolism remain depressed in neonates and small infants (Fig. 78.9; also see Fig. 78.6).[70] Importantly, during the use of these extremes of temperature, autoregulation is lost and cerebral perfusion becomes highly dependent on the extracorporeal perfusion and presumably postbypass hemodynamic performance.

The potentially deleterious effects of prolonged DHCA in infants and neonates are well described. In general, it is agreed that very prolonged periods of uninterrupted DHCA may have adverse neurologic outcomes. However, considerable disagreement exists if a “safe” period of DHCA exists and whether patient-specific, procedure-specific, or postoperative management strategies may attenuate or promote CNS damage from DHCA. Cases have been reported of detrimental effects of DHCA on a variety of outcomes regarding the CNS, while others have described an inconsistent effect or no effect.[122,130,131] Three issues have become clear over time: (1) the effects of short durations of DHCA are inconsistently related to adverse outcomes, (2) the effect of DHCA is not a linear phenomenon, and (3) the effects are most likely modified by other patient-related, preoperative, and postoperative factors.[131-133] A large-scale study of 549 subjects undergoing the Norwood stage 1 procedure with DHCA found duration of greater than 45 minutes to be a risk factor for 30-day mortality.[134]

Regional Cerebral Perfusion

Some surgeons have developed innovative and challenging strategies to provide continuous cerebral perfusion during complex reconstruction of the aortic arch or intracardiac repair to avoid or minimize the use of DHCA. However, avoiding DHCA, the duration of CPB is necessarily lengthened, and longer durations of CPB have been shown to adversely affect both short- and long-term outcomes.[51,52] The relative risks and benefits of longer CPB versus less (or no) DHCA remain a subject of continued controversy. In efforts to study this newer strategy, two recent studies have evaluated the technique of regional cerebral perfusion. In one non-randomized study, Wypij and colleagues[135] followed 29 infants who underwent a stage 1 palliation, 9 of whom received regional cerebral perfusion at 30 to 40 mL/kg/min. The authors reported no difference in mental or psychomotor developmental indices at 1 year of age between the regional cerebral perfusion group and those who received DHCA as a primary strategy. A larger randomized trial of DHCA with or without regional cerebral perfusion at 20 mL/kg/min in patients with a functional single ventricle included 77 patients with similar survival to hospital discharge (88%) and at 1-year follow-up (75%).[136] No significant difference was seen in either the psychomotor development index or the mental development index scores between the two groups at any time points, although the scores tended to be lower in the regional cerebral perfusion group.

A further innovation to the previously described technique is a three-region perfusion strategy for aortic arch reconstruction in the Norwood procedure. This strategy involves direct perfusion of the coronaries via a proximal aortic cannula, splanchnic beds via a distal thoracic aorta cannula, and cerebral perfusion via an innominate cannula. The arch repair occurs from distal to proximal at warmer patient temperatures and with a beating heart. This theoretically provides the potential for decreased coronary and splanchnic ischemic times, decreasing the risk of cardiac dysfunction and abdominal organ damage, and mitigating the negative hypothermic effects on the hematological system.[2,3] Larger, long-term studies are needed to assess the efficacy of this technique in improving cardiovascular, renal, and other outcomes.

Glucose Regulation

The detrimental effects of hyperglycemia during complete, incomplete, and focal cerebral ischemia are well demonstrated.[137,138] The role of glucose in potentiating cerebral injury appears to rest on two factors: adenosine triphosphate (ATP) usage and lactic acidosis.[139,140] The anaerobic metabolism of glucose requires phosphorylation and the expenditure of two molecules of ATP before ATP production can occur. This initial ATP expenditure may result in a rapid depletion of ATP and may explain why hyperglycemia worsens neurologic injury. Lactic acidosis is also important in glucose-augmented cerebral injury, though its role may be as a glycolytic enzyme inhibitor: lactate slows anaerobic ATP production by inhibiting glycolysis immediately after ATP is consumed in the phosphorylation of glucose.[141]

Although the detrimental effects of hyperglycemia during ischemia are clear, very little evidence supports a relationship between a worsening neurologic outcome and hyperglycemia during CPB or DHCA in children. A review of acquired neurologic lesions in patients undergoing the Norwood stage 1 procedure for HLHS suggested hyperglycemia as a significant associated finding in patients with extensive cerebral necrosis or intraventricular hemorrhage. A host of other potentially damaging factors (e.g., periods of hypoxia, low diastolic and systolic pressure, thrombocytopenia) were statistically associated with the observed neuropathology.[142] Whether glucose directly contributes to neurologic injury or merely serves as a marker for a high-risk population that ultimately suffers neurologic insult as a result of other factors is not clear.

Hypoglycemia is also a frequent concern in neonates during the perioperative period. Reduced hepatic gluconeogenesis coupled with decreased glycogen stores places the newborn at increased risk for hypoglycemic events. In newborns with CHD, reduced systemic perfusion (e.g., critical coarctation, HLHS, critical aortic stenosis) may result in worsening hepatic biosynthesis, further impairing glucose production. These patients may be fully dependent on exogenous glucose; therefore, it is not uncommon for them to require 20% to 30% dextrose infusions to maintain euglycemia in the prebypass period. Older children are not immune to hypoglycemic events and are therefore susceptible to hypoglycemia-induced neurologic injury. Patients with low cardiac output states (cardiomyopathies, pre-transplant patients, critically ill postoperative patients) requiring reoperation and when on substantial inotropic support are at high risk for reduced glycogen stores and intraoperative hypoglycemia.[143]

The impact of hypoglycemia during CPB is further complicated by the consequences of hypothermia, CO_2 management, and other factors that may modify normal cerebrovascular responses during bypass. In a dog model, insulin-induced hypoglycemia to 30 mg/dL did not alter the electroencephalographic findings. However, after 10 minutes of hypocapnic hypoglycemia, the electroencephalogram became flat.[144] The loss of electroencephalographic activity from hypoglycemia alone does not normally occur above glucose levels of 8 mg/dL.[145]

During deep hypothermic CPB and DHCA, CBF and metabolism are altered. The additive effect of hypoglycemia, even if mild, may cause alterations in cerebral autoregulation and culminate in increased cortical injury.[142] The common practice of using hyperventilation to reduce PVR in neonates and infants during weaning from CPB and in the early postbypass period can further exacerbate hypoglycemic injury. Glucose monitoring and rigid maintenance of euglycemia are an important part of CPB management in the patient with CHD.

Renal Effects

After CPB, the combined effects of hypothermia, nonpulsatile perfusion, and reduced mean arterial pressure cause release of angiotensin, renin, catecholamines, and antidiuretic hormones.[146-148] These circulating hormones promote renal vasoconstriction and reduce renal blood flow. However, despite the negative impact of CPB on renal function, low-flow, low-pressure, nonpulsatile perfusion has not been linked with postoperative renal dysfunction (Table 78.9).[147] The factors that best correlate with postoperative renal dysfunction are preoperative renal dysfunction and profound reductions in post-CPB cardiac output. Preoperative factors include primary renal disease, low cardiac output, and dye-related renal injury after cardiac catheterization.[148]

TABLE 78.9 Sequelae of Pediatric Cardiopulmonary Bypass

End-Organ Injury	Cause and Signs
Renal injury	Organ immaturity, preexisting renal disease Post–cardiopulmonary bypass low cardiac output, use of DHCA Renal dysfunction characterized by reduced GFR and ATN
Pulmonary injury	Endothelial injury, increased capillary leak, complement activation, and leukocyte degranulation Pulmonary dysfunction characterized by reduced compliance, reduced FRC, and increased A-a gradient
Cerebral injury after DHCA	Loss of autoregulation, suppressed metabolism and cerebral blood flow, cellular acidosis, and cerebral vasoparesis CNS dysfunction characterized by seizures, reduced developmental quotients, choreoathetosis, learning disabilities, behavioral abnormalities

A-a, Alveolar-arterial; ATN, acute tubular necrosis; *CNS,* central nervous system; *DHCA,* deep hypothermic circulatory arrest; *FRC,* functional residual capacity; *GFR,* glomerular filtration rate.

Acute kidney injury after pediatric cardiac surgery has an incidence between 20% to 60% depending on criteria used.[149] Multiple causative factors are involved, and the final common result is oliguria and an increased serum creatinine. Diuretics have been the mainstay of promoting urine flow after pediatric CPB. Furosemide in a dose of 1 to 2 mg/kg or ethacrynic acid 1 mg/kg every 4 to 6 hours, or both, induces diuresis and may reverse renal cortical ischemia associated with CPB. After DHCA, a 24-hour period of oliguria or anuria can occur that resolves over the next 12- to 24-hour period. The use of diuretics is effective only after spontaneous urine output has been initiated in these patients.

Glomerular filtration rate, creatinine clearance, and medullary concentrating ability are substantially reduced in neonates and young infants. Therefore, the use of CPB in these patients results in greater fluid retention than is typically seen in older children and adult patients. The net result may be increased total body water, increased organ weight (e.g., lungs, heart), and greater difficulty with postoperative weaning from ventilatory support. The use of ultrafiltration during rewarming or after CPB is effective in reducing total body water, limiting the damaging effects of CPB, and decreasing the postoperative ventilation period.[150,151]

Pulmonary Effects

Cardioplegia protects the heart, but no parallel protection is afforded to the lungs during bypass. Pulmonary dysfunction is common after CPB, and its pathogenesis is poorly understood (see Table 78.9). In the broadest terms, lung injury is mediated in one of two ways: first, by an inflammatory response resulting from leukocyte and complement activation and, second, by a mechanical effect culminating in surfactant loss, atelectasis with resultant ventilation-perfusion mismatch, loss of lung volumes, and altered mechanics of breathing.

Pulmonary function after CPB is characterized by reduced static and dynamic compliance, reduced functional residual capacity, surfactant deficiency, and an increased A-a gradient.[152,153] Atelectasis and increased capillary leak due to hemodilution and hypothermic CPB are the most likely causes. Hemodilution reduces circulating plasma proteins, reducing intravascular oncotic pressure, and favors water extravasation into the extravascular space. Hypothermic CPB causes complement activation and leukocyte degranulation.[154] Leukocytes and complement are important in causing capillary-alveolar membrane injury and microvascular dysfunction through platelet plugging and release of mediators, which increase PVR. The technique of MUF is highly effective in reducing lung water and pulmonary morbidity during the postoperative period.

STRESS RESPONSE AND CARDIOPULMONARY BYPASS

The release of a large number of metabolic and hormonal substances, including catecholamines, cortisol, growth hormone, prostaglandins, complement, glucose, insulin, endorphins, and other substances, characterizes the stress response during hypothermic CPB.[9,155] The likely causes of the elaboration of these substances include contact of blood with the nonendothelialized surface of the pump tubing and oxygenator, nonpulsatile flow, low perfusion pressure, hemodilution, hypothermia, and light anesthesia depth. Other factors that may contribute to elevations of stress hormones include delayed renal and hepatic clearance during hypothermic CPB, myocardial injury, and exclusion of the pulmonary circulation from bypass. The lung is responsible for metabolizing and clearing many of these stress hormones. The stress response generally peaks during rewarming from CPB. Strong evidence indicates that the stress response can be blunted by increasing the depth of anesthesia.[9,155]

The stress response in return can mediate undesirable effects such as myocardial damage (catecholamines), systemic and pulmonary hypertension (catecholamines, prostaglandins), pulmonary endothelial damage (complement, prostaglandins), and pulmonary vascular reactivity (thromboxane). The benefits of controlling the stress response with fentanyl in premature infants undergoing PDA ligation and with sufentanil in neonates with complex CHD have been demonstrated.[95,156] Although blunting the stress response seems warranted, additional evidence suggests that the newborn stress response, especially the endogenous release of catecholamines, may be an adaptive metabolic response necessary for survival at birth.[157] Thus, the complete elimination of an adaptive stress response may not be desirable. To what extent acutely ill neonates with CHD depend on the stress response for maintaining hemodynamic stability is currently unknown.

A depth of anesthesia adequate to attenuate the stress response should be used, but to attempt to block the response altogether is likely not necessary. Acceptable anesthesia during CPB may be best accomplished by the continuous administration of an inhaled anesthetic via a vaporizer connected to the pump oxygenator, dexmedetomidine infusion, careful titration of incremental doses of opioids, or the precise administration of an opioid or opioid and benzodiazepine by a continuous infusion technique. Primary opioid anesthetic techniques result in reduced stress hormone release and decreased postoperative metabolic acidosis and lactate production compared with halothane anesthesia and may therefore be a preferred technique in complex CHD.[95] If an adequate depth of anesthesia is accomplished by the administration of excessively large doses of opioids (e.g., fentanyl or sufentanil), postoperative mechanical ventilation will be necessary. By contrast, residual levels of inhaled anesthetics (e.g., halothane or isoflurane) can produce transient myocardial depression at the termination of CPB, complicating separation from CPB. Because of the improved surgical techniques coupled with the reduced morbidity of CPB, the use of high doses of an opioid anesthetic is infrequent in current practice.

DISCONTINUATION OF CARDIOPULMONARY BYPASS

In separating the patient from CPB, blood volume is assessed by direct visualization of the heart and monitoring right atrial or left atrial filling pressures. When filling pressures are adequate, the patient is fully warmed, acid-base status is normalized, heart rate is adequate, and sinus rhythm has been achieved, the venous drainage is stopped and the patient can be weaned from bypass. The arterial cannula is left in place so that a slow infusion of residual pump blood can be used to optimize filling pressures. Myocardial function is assessed by direct cardiac visualization and a transthoracic left or right atrial catheter, by a percutaneous internal jugular catheter, or by the use of intraoperative echocardiography. Pulse oximetry also can be used to assess the adequacy of cardiac output.[158] Low systemic arterial saturation or the inability of the oximeter probe to register a pulse may be a sign of very low output and high systemic resistance.[159]

After the repair of complex congenital heart defects, the anesthesiologist and surgeon may have difficulty separating patients from CPB. Under these circumstances, a diagnosis must be made and includes (1) an inadequate surgical result with a residual defect requiring repair, (2) pulmonary artery hypertension, and (3) right or left ventricular dysfunction.

Two general approaches are customarily used, either independently or in conjunction. An intraoperative “cardiac catheterization” can be performed to assess isolated pressure measurements from the various great vessels and chambers of the heart (i.e., catheter pullback measurements or direct needle puncture to evaluate residual pressure gradients across repaired valves, sites of stenosis and conduits, and O_2 saturation data to examine for residual shunts).[160] Alternatively, echo-Doppler imaging may be used to provide an intraoperative image of structural or functional abnormalities to assist in the evaluation of the postoperative cardiac repair.[7,161] If structural abnormalities are found, the patient can be placed back on CPB and residual defects can be repaired before the patient leaves

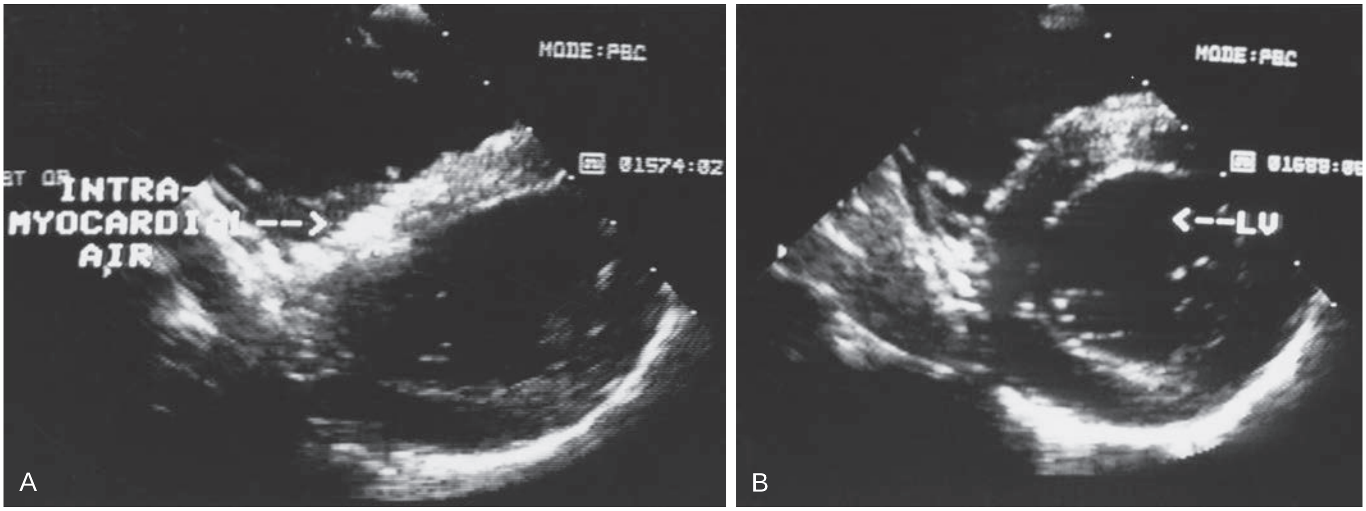


Fig. 78.10 (A) Two-dimensional echocardiogram in the short-axis view across the ventricles demonstrating the presence of intramyocardial air *(arrow)* in the ventricular septum and right ventricular wall. The intramyocardial air appears as a dense, "snowy" echogenic area. Note the associated wall motion abnormality appearing as flattening of the ventricular septum. (B) The patient was treated with phenylephrine, increasing systemic and coronary perfusion pressure, resulting in clearance of the air, normalization of the echogenic density, and restoration of normal left ventricular *(LV)* wall motion and configuration.

the operating room. Leaving the operating room with a significant residual structural defect adversely affects survival and increases patient morbidity (see Fig. 78.5).[7,161] Echo-Doppler imaging can rapidly identify right and left ventricular dysfunction and suggest the presence of pulmonary artery hypertension. In addition, echo-Doppler imaging can identify regional wall motion abnormalities caused by ischemia or intramyocardial air that will direct specific pharmacologic therapy and provide a means of assessing the results of these interventions (Fig. 78.10).[162]

ULTRAFILTRATION

Institution of CPB in neonates, infants, and young children results in a profound proinflammatory response and significant hemodilution. This may contribute to post-CPB morbidity and mortality resulting from poor organ function. The organ systems most affected by this are the heart, lungs, and brain. Although contact between the patient's blood and the foreign surface of the bypass circuit is a potent stimulus to trigger the inflammatory cascade, other factors including ischemia, profound hypothermia, rewarming, and surgical trauma are also important in its genesis. These inflammatory mediators include complement anaphylatoxins, vasoactive amines, and cytokines (e.g., tumor necrosis factor-α [TNF-α]) that lead to an increase in vascular permeability.[163] Hemodilution occurs at the onset of CPB despite the use of physiologically balanced priming solutions that include blood, crystalloid, albumin, and buffer and smaller volume circuits. Hemodilution may, however, be advantageous in patients in whom the surgery is performed under hypothermic conditions ranging from mild hypothermia to DHCA. Initiation of CPB will change the viscoelastic properties of blood, and these changes have been shown to continue into the post-CPB period.[164] Although the mode of perfusion, cardiotomy suction, arterial roller pump type, and shear forces of the CPB circuit are important, it is the temperature and hematocrit of the blood that play the most important role in changing viscoelasticity. It has been shown that low temperature with a high hematocrit leads to a higher viscosity.[165] This elevated viscosity may lead to altered organ perfusion, particularly in the brain. Because of these alterations in blood viscosity, hemodilution is tolerated in the cooling phases of CPB. Although advantageous early, this hemodilution combined with the inflammatory response will lead to transudation of fluid into the extravascular space, which in turn leads to the potential for organ dysfunction as eluded to earlier. Prevention of organ dysfunction and improved oxygenation by the removal of excess fluid and inflammatory mediators are the rationale, therefore, in the use of ultrafiltration. The end result is removal of plasma water and low-molecular-weight solutes across a semipermeable membrane.

Essentially, five forms of ultrafiltration are used in modern perfusion practice, three of which are while the patient is on CPB. Prime ultrafiltration is used when packed RBCs are added to the prime solution and is performed in the prebypass phase; prime ultrafiltration aims to replace crystalloid prime with blood prime, adjust pH, alter electrolyte concentration to safer levels, and remove inflammatory mediators potentially present in the donor blood.[166] Conventional ultrafiltration (CUF) involves the removal of fluid at any time while the patient is being supported by CPB. A common use for this method is removal of the volume of clear fluid equal to the volume of cardioplegia used. CUF can be performed during all phases of CPB. It involves the placement of an ultrafilter within the circuit and connected either to the venous line or the venous reservoir. The removal of an excess of ultrafiltrate will result in low reservoir volumes. In zero balance ultrafiltration, once fluid has been removed it is replaced with crystalloid to avoid inadequate reservoir volume, and thus there is no net removal of volume.

The third method of on-bypass ultrafiltration is dilutional ultrafiltration, which is employed when the concentration of a given electrolyte (e.g., potassium) is deemed elevated.

The method involves removal of ultrafiltrate with its replacement by half with normal saline, thus diluting the concentration of the given electrolyte to safer levels. All on-bypass ultrafiltration have similar end points—that is, attempted removal of excess clear fluid resulting in hemoconcentration, removal of inflammatory mediators, and manipulation of electrolyte concentrations to safe levels.

MUF, first described by Naik and associates[150] in 1991, involves filtration of blood once the patient has been weaned from bypass. This can be achieved either by a venovenous technique in which blood is removed and returned to the atrium once concentrated or by an arteriovenous technique in which blood is removed via the aortic cannula and returned via the venous line.[150,167,168] In more detail, in this technique blood is removed in a retrograde fashion by the aortic cannula and passes through the ultrafilter along with remaining circuit volume from the venous reservoir and oxygenator. Flow through the ultrafilter is maintained by a roller pump at flows of between 10 and 30 mL/kg, with the slower rates resulting in a more gradual change in the intravascular fluid compartment and thus potentially better tolerated. A constant atrial pressure is maintained throughout the procedure by adding crystalloid into the venous reservoir as needed. Suction is applied to the filtrate port to achieve a maximal transmembrane pressure, thus allowing for ultrafiltration rates of between 100 and 150 mL/min. End points for the process of MUF are time (15-20 minutes) and reaching of a target hematocrit (usually 40%) once the circuit volume has been replaced by crystalloid or should the patient's hemodynamics not tolerate the procedure.

Cardiac surgeries in the very young may be complex with potentially protracted CPB and cross-clamp times. Therefore, myocardial performance is more commonly depressed after weaning from CPB. Although ultrafiltration is used during CPB in an attempt to remove excess body water, it appears from studies that it is the use of MUF that significantly improves myocardial performance (Fig. 78.11).[169,170] Using echocardiographic measurements in a study of infants undergoing corrective surgery under nonhypothermic arrested conditions, Davies and associates[171] found improvements in both systolic and diastolic function in the children studied. They found that the preload recruitable stroke work, which is load independent, improved after MUF and was thus a good indicator of improved systolic function. The same study showed that after MUF a decrease in the myocardial wall thickness and cross-sectional area occurred that was not present in the control group of patients who received no ultrafiltration. These reductions result in an increase in end-diastolic length and a fall in end-diastolic pressure, both of which are indicators of improved diastolic function. Although presumably it was the decrease in myocardial edema that was the cause for these improvements, increased hematocrit also was observed. Because these positive effects were not seen past 24 hours, the absolute benefit of MUF is not clear.[171]

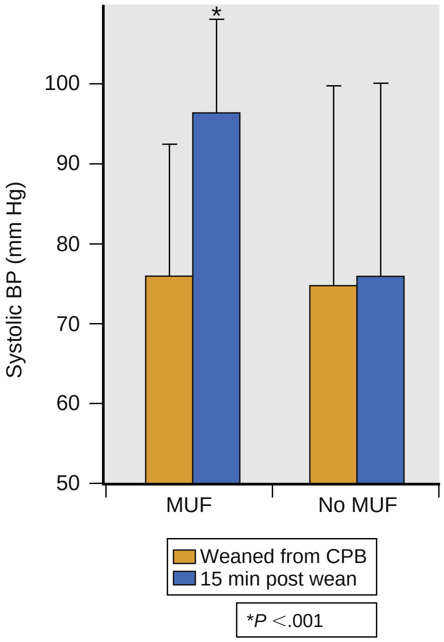


Fig. 78.11 Systolic blood pressure *(BP)* after separating from cardiopulmonary bypass *(CPB)* and 15 minutes after separating with and without modified ultrafiltration *(MUF)*. Note the significant improvement in systolic BP with the use of MUF. (From Ungerleider RM. Effects of cardiopulmonary bypass and use of modified ultrafiltration. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1998;65:S35; reprinted with permission from the Society of Thoracic Surgeons.)

Pulmonary dysfunction is one of the most common negative effects of CPB[172]; MUF is utilized to improve oxygenation, decrease the effects of inflammatory mediators on the alveolar capillary membrane, and decrease pulmonary vascular reactivity. Studies have demonstrated that in patients in whom ultrafiltration and MUF were used, improvements in pulmonary compliance, decreased airway resistance, pulmonary arterial reactivity, and improved oxygenation were demonstrated.[172-175] It is therefore obvious why these methods have found such wide acceptance in pediatric cardiac surgery, particularly in patients in whom normal compliance with low PVR is vital (i.e., those with single-ventricle physiology). Although these studies commonly find improvement in pulmonary function immediately after weaning from CPB and the completion of MUF, disagreement exists as to whether these effects result in improved function much beyond 6 hours, with some showing little if any benefit at 24 hours. A conclusion, however, from these studies is that combination of on-bypass ultrafiltration coupled with MUF has the best results in the early postbypass period.

In a study performed on a piglet model of DHCA, the use of MUF after CPB improved hematocrit, cerebral O_2 delivery, and cerebral O_2 consumption, thus representing a potential reduction in cerebral injury. Further studies have made similar conclusions, demonstrating that four variables are of importance in improving cerebral oxygenation: PCO_2, mean arterial pressure, hematocrit, and MUF flow rate.[176,177] Increasing all except MUF flow rate improved O_2 delivery. Increasing the flow rate appeared to cause a steal-like phenomenon in which apparent diastolic runoff occurred into the MUF circuit from the aortic cannula. Thus, although the process of MUF is important for recovery of normal cerebral function, care must be used not to negate the benefits by decreasing the time on MUF by increasing the flow rates (Fig. 78.12).

Common to the improvement in cardiac and pulmonary function are the associated decrease in inflammatory mediators seen after ultrafiltration. Studies have shown

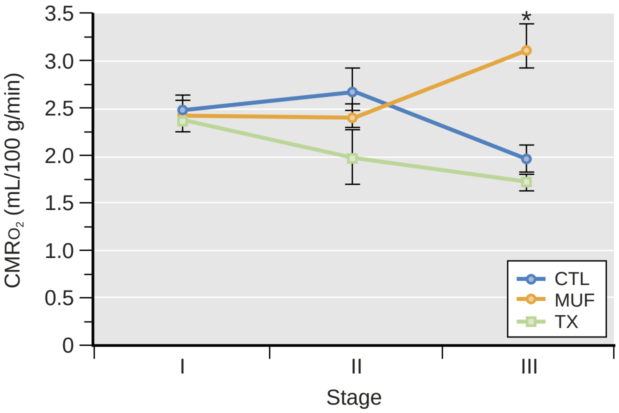


Fig. 78.12 Cerebral metabolic rate for oxygen measurements *(CMRO$_2$)* before and after deep hypothermic circulatory arrest. Note the significant increase in CMRO$_2$ in the MUF animals compared with the control and transfusion groups at stage 3. *CTL,* Control; *MUF,* modified ultrafiltration; *TX,* transfusion. (From Skaryak LA, Kirshbom PM, DiBernardo LR, et al. Modified ultrafiltration improves cerebral metabolic recovery after circulatory arrest. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg.* 1995;109:744–751.)

that the ultrafiltrate contains a wide variety of low-molecular-weight inflammatory mediators, including C3a, C5a, interleukin (IL)-6, IL-8, TNF, myocardial depressant factor, and endothelin.[173,178,179] It is the removal of endothelin-1 after MUF that results in the improvement of pulmonary vascular reactivity, which is of great importance, particularly in infants younger than 4 to 6 months of age, when pulmonary vascular reactivity is high, and in patients who are having staged cavopulmonary reconstructions. TNF, a potent inflammatory mediator implicated in the development of capillary leak syndrome seen after CPB, has been shown to be removed best by MUF. Despite these positive effects of MUF, the literature does not give a clear advantage of one form of ultrafiltration over the other, and it may be the combination of these methods that once again shows the best potential results.

Another important post-CPB issue is ongoing blood loss. The use of MUF will result in an elevation of the patient's hematocrit secondary to the removal of the excess body water, as already discussed. This further results in decreased blood use and the observation that there is less postoperative bleeding.[180] Indeed, in older children attempts can thus be made to avoid the use of donor blood altogether.

Disadvantages to these techniques are noted. The addition of an ultrafilter to the CPB circuit adds a level of complexity to the circuitry and thus another potential area in which circuit-related complications may occur. Opponents of MUF note also the following potential problems: the potential for air entrainment into the arterial cannula, additional time in which the patient is anticoagulated, potential for hypovolemia as volume is drawn off from the patient, hypothermia because the filtered volume does not pass through the heater/oxygenator, and the potential for the increase in the plasma concentration of drugs (e.g., fentanyl).[181] Another interesting complication potentially associated with ultrafiltration was the reduction in thyroid hormone. This acute hypothyroidism may lead to depressed function, manifesting as decreased contractility, heart rate, cardiac output, and elevated SVR, all of which will clearly affect the immediate post-CPB period.[182] As with other techniques in medicine the benefit versus risk must be seriously considered, but from the presented evidence the use of ultrafiltration both on and off CPB is extremely beneficial and these methods are thus commonly used in modern pediatric cardiac surgery with good result and little complication.[143,145,183,184]

In the preceding paragraphs the discussion concluded that no clear advantage has been determined of one method of ultrafiltration over the other. Unfortunately, comparing a wide range of patients having different surgeries under different conditions is difficult, and thus it appears that from the articles referenced the best strategy would include both the use of on-CPB ultrafiltration and the use of MUF once the patient has been separated from bypass to achieve the goals of decreasing total-body water; removal of inflammatory mediators; improved hematocrit, and thus O$_2$-carrying capacity; and preservation of vital organ function. With the miniaturization of CPB circuits and resultant reduced hemodilution, some institutions have stopped using MUF because it simplifies and decreases the volume of the CPB circuit. They believe there is an advantage to preventing hemodilution rather than reversing hemodilution with MUF. Significantly miniaturizing circuits is also not without safety concerns as it may limit the ability to increase CPB flow rates. At our institution we continue to use MUF for the many reasons previously described.

SPECIFIC PROBLEMS ENCOUNTERED IN DISCONTINUING CARDIOPULMONARY BYPASS

Left Ventricular Dysfunction

The contractile state of the LV may be reduced after pediatric cardiac surgery, due to surgically induced ischemia during the repair, the preoperative condition of the myocardium, the effects of DHCA on myocardial compliance, and new, altered loading conditions on the LV caused by the repair.[185,186] Left ventricular dysfunction can be treated by optimizing preload, increasing heart rate, increasing coronary perfusion pressure, correcting ionized calcium levels, and adding inotropic support. The neonate's heart rate–dependent cardiac output, reduced myocardial compliance, and diminished response to calcium and catecholamines are factors influencing the need for inotropic support. Inotropic support usually begins with epinephrine 0.03 to 0.05 μg/kg/min or dopamine 3 to 10 μg/kg/min. Several studies suggest that the effect of dopamine in children is age dependent. After cardiac surgery in young children, dopamine increases cardiac output, which correlates more with elevations in heart rate than augmentation of stroke volume, whereas, in young adults, dopamine clearly increases stroke volume. Nonetheless, infants and neonates respond favorably to epinephrine and dopamine infusions with increased systemic arterial blood pressure and cardiac output and improved systemic perfusion.

Calcium supplementation is important in augmenting cardiac contractility. Although calcium supplementation has fallen into some disfavor because of concerns over reperfusion injury, it remains an important therapy after pediatric cardiac surgery. Fluctuations in ionized calcium levels occur commonly in the immediate post-CPB period in children. This is most often due to the relatively large transfusions of citrate-rich and albumin-rich blood products, such as whole blood, fresh frozen plasma, platelets, and cryoprecipitate necessary for hemostasis, all of which bind calcium.[187] Routine calcium supplementation during the early post-CPB period is especially helpful in patients with diminished left ventricular function. In patients with a slow sinus or junctional rate, calcium must be administered cautiously because marked slowing of AV conduction may occur.

Epinephrine 0.02 to 0.2 μg/kg/min is useful in patients with significant left ventricular dysfunction who remain hypotensive with high left atrial filling pressures or echo-Doppler imaging evidence of reduced contractility or regional ischemia.[188]

Milrinone, a potent phosphodiesterase-3 inhibitor, is also an effective inotrope-vasodilator in infants and children. Studies in neonates after open-heart surgery reveal significant reductions in SVR and PVR and increases in cardiac index, primarily as a result of larger stroke volume.[189] Infants and children demonstrate a larger volume of distribution and clearance of milrinone than that in adults; thus, the initial loading dose necessary to achieve therapeutic levels may be as large as 100 μg/kg.[190] In neonates, the initial dose of milrinone on CPB is 25 to 100 μg/kg, followed by a continuous infusion to be started within 90 minutes of the initial dose at a rate of 0.2 μg/kg/min to maintain a therapeutic level. In older infants and children, the rate of continuous infusion is larger, usually 0.5 to 1 μg/kg/min.

Dobutamine is an effective, albeit weaker, inotropic agent in children. Although it is reported to have a lesser chronotropic effect than dopamine in neonates, significant tachyarrhythmias may occur. This may be related to structural similarities between dobutamine and isoproterenol.[188] In children after cardiac surgery, dobutamine increases cardiac output primarily through increased heart rate. This is consistent with reduction in α-receptors and a higher level of circulating catecholamines in newborns.

Right Ventricular Dysfunction

Primary right ventricular dysfunction is a common finding after CPB in neonates, infants, and children. For example, after repair of TOF, preexisting right ventricular hypertrophy, a right ventriculotomy, and the placement of a transannular patch across the right ventricular outflow tract, resulting in acute pulmonary regurgitation and right ventricular volume overload, are common causes of postoperative right ventricular dysfunction.[17] The treatment of right ventricular dysfunction consists of measures directed at lowering PVR and preserving coronary perfusion without distending the RV. In cases of ventricular dysfunction, low-dose epinephrine (0.01-0.03 μg/kg/min) may provide inotropy without vasoconstriction.[186] Mechanical ventilation should be adjusted to assist right ventricular function and minimize PVR.

In contrast to the LV, the low intracavitary pressure of the normal RV receives two thirds of its coronary filling during ventricular systole. In patients with right ventricular dysfunction, maintaining a normal or slightly elevated systolic arterial pressure maximizes coronary perfusion to the RV and augments contractility. A vasopressin infusion can prove advantageous in such circumstances. If the need for inotropic support persists after the early post-CPB period, a critical evaluation for other structural and functional abnormalities should be aggressively pursued. Preload should be maintained at a normal to slightly elevated level. Because right ventricular contractility is reduced, it is important to maximize preload to the highest portion of the Starling curve. Overdistention of the RV, however, is not well tolerated, owing to diminished ventricular compliance and diastolic dysfunction. Excessive volume loading may result in significant diastolic dysfunction, tricuspid regurgitation, and worsening forward flow. Generally, CVP much above 12 to 14 mm Hg is poorly tolerated in neonates and infants with right ventricular dysfunction.[191] If right ventricular dysfunction is severe, the sternum should be left open.[192] This eliminates the impedance imposed by the chest wall and mechanical ventilation, allowing the RV to maximize its end-diastolic volume. An additional strategy in neonates, infants, and children with significant post-CPB right ventricular dysfunction is to allow right-to-left shunting at the atrial level. Typical patients who would benefit from this strategy include neonates undergoing repairs for TOF and truncus arteriosus. Allowing an atrial communication to remain open, with blood shunting in a right-to-left direction, preserves cardiac output and O_2 delivery to the systemic circulation. Although these patients have somewhat diminished systemic O_2 saturation, their effective cardiac output and tissue O_2 delivery are enhanced, systemic perfusion pressure improves and coronary perfusion of the RV is maintained. As right ventricular function improves, right atrial pressure falls, right-to-left shunting decreases, and systemic arterial saturation rises.

If right ventricular dysfunction persists to the extent that systemic cardiac output is compromised, consideration should be given to extracorporeal life support (extracorporeal membrane oxygenation [ECMO]). When ECMO is used for circulatory support, venoarterial cannulation is preferred. Venous and arterial access may be achieved through a large central artery and vein, usually the carotid artery and internal jugular vein, or by direct chest cannulation. Recovery from severe ventricular dysfunction is predicated on the concept that the myocardium has sustained a transient injury (i.e., “stunned myocardium”) and is capable of recovery with time.[193,194] ECMO is used to decrease ventricular wall tension, increase coronary perfusion pressure, and maintain systemic perfusion with oxygenated blood. ECMO also may be used for left ventricular failure, although success with this condition is less common than that seen with right ventricular dysfunction or pulmonary artery hypertension. Patients placed on ECMO because they fail to separate from CPB demonstrate significantly greater mortality than do those for whom ECMO was instituted later in the postoperative course.[195] The children who consistently have the lowest survival rate are those who require ECMO after a Fontan operation.[196] The role of ECMO in patients with myocardial injury or pulmonary hypertension is to provide adequate systemic O_2 transport and systemic perfusion while allowing the ventricles to rest and recover. ECMO may even provide an effective means of resuscitation for postoperative cardiac patients, particularly if instituted promptly.[197] In larger infants and children with predominantly right ventricular dysfunction and satisfactory pulmonary function, a selective right ventricular assist device (VAD) may be preferable to ECMO.[198]

Pulmonary Artery Hypertension

Primary pulmonary hypertension is a devastating disease. The progressive and sustained elevation in PVR eventually leads to right-sided HF and death.[199,200] Pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH) is defined by the presence of mean pulmonary arterial pressure greater than 25 mm Hg at rest or 30 mm Hg during exercise.[201] In two studies, the presence of PAH was shown to be a significant predictor of major perioperative cardiovascular complications, including pulmonary hypertensive crises, cardiac arrest, and death in patients undergoing cardiac catheterization or noncardiac surgery under anesthesia.[202,203] Suprasystemic pulmonary artery pressure was predictive of major complications. Complications, however, were not associated with age, cause, type of anesthetic, or airway management. Preanesthesia evaluation should gauge disease severity. A history significant for chest pain, syncope, and dizziness, with signs of dyspnea at rest, low cardiac output state, metabolic acidosis, hypoxemia, and signs of right-sided HF warrants caution. Acute increases in PVR resulting in pulmonary hypertensive crises cause an increase in right ventricular afterload, right ventricular dysfunction, and hemodynamic decompensation. Suprasystemic pulmonary artery pressure results in inadequate PBF, inadequate left ventricular preload, low cardiac output, and biventricular failure. The associated hypotension results in coronary ischemia, which worsens this cycle. Perioperative factors thought to precipitate a pulmonary hypertensive crisis include hypoxia, hypercarbia, acidosis, hypothermia, pain, and airway manipulations in patients with pulmonary hypertension. Such patients present for hemodynamic catheterization, drug study, and noncardiac and cardiac surgical procedures. Although each anesthetic has to be tailored to the patient's pathophysiologic condition and surgical procedure, certain common principles remain. Pulmonary vasodilator therapy and inotropes must be continued in the perioperative period. Investigations include a comprehensive echocardiogram with occasional chest computed tomography angiography to exclude pulmonary thromboembolic disease. After premedication, the patient should be monitored with pulse oximetry to ensure the patient does not hypoventilate or become hypoxic. An intravenous induction with carefully titrated doses of ketamine may be the safest; if no intravenous is present, an inhalational induction with sevoflurane can be performed safely with 100% O_2, keeping the end-tidal sevoflurane concentration as low as possible and quickly obtaining intravenous access. Procedures with potential for blood loss, hemodynamic instability, and changes in ventilatory status mandate invasive arterial monitoring. Care should be taken to avoid systemic hypotension while achieving general anesthesia. Ventilation and oxygenation are controlled, and acidosis is treated aggressively. Hypotension in the presence of euvolemia may need to be treated with inotropes and, if necessary, α_1-agonists.[204,205]

Therapy for elevated pulmonary artery pressures is directed at lowering PVR and unloading the RV. Reduction of PVR is accomplished by altering ventilation pattern, inspired O_2 concentration, and blood pH. Specifically, manipulating the pulmonary vascular bed in newborns and infants is a matter of regulating partial pressure of CO_2 in arterial blood ($PaCO_2$), pH, PaO_2, partial pressure of alveolar oxygen, and ventilatory mechanics.[206,207] $PaCO_2$ is a potent mediator of PVR, especially in the newborn and young infant. Reducing $PaCO_2$ to 20 mm Hg and increasing pH to 7.6 produces a consistent and reproducible reduction in PVR in infants with pulmonary artery hypertension. Manipulating serum bicarbonate levels to achieve a pH of 7.5 to 7.6 while maintaining a $PaCO_2$ of 40 mm Hg has equal salutary effects on PVR.[208] An increase in the FiO2 and the PaO_2 decreases PVR as well. In the circumstance of intracardiac shunts, changes in FiO_2 have little effect on PaO_2. Thus, by inference, a reduction in PVR induced by increasing the inspired O_2 concentration is probably a direct pulmonary vasodilatory effect of PaO_2 rather than FiO_2.

Ventilatory mechanics also play a major role in reducing PVR. Neonates and infants have a closing volume above functional residual capacity. Thus, at the end of a normal breath, some airway closure occurs. This process results in areas of lung that are perfused and yet underventilated. As these lung segments become increasingly hypoxemic, secondary hypoxic vasoconstriction occurs. The net effect is an increase in PVR. Therefore, careful inflation of the lungs to maintain functional residual capacity will selectively reduce PVR. In practice, this is accomplished with relatively large tidal volumes and low respiratory rates, which produce an exaggerated chest excursion. Respiratory rates of 15 to 25 breaths/min are used for neonates and infants.

Because PBF occurs predominantly during the expiratory phase of the respiratory cycle, the ventilatory pattern should be adjusted to allow an adequate distribution of gas throughout the lung during inspiration and a more prolonged expiratory phase to promote blood flow through the lungs. End-expiratory pressure must be applied cautiously during the post-CPB period. Low positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) (3-5 mm Hg) prevents narrowing of the capillary and precapillary blood vessels, thereby reducing PVR. Higher PEEP or excessive mean airway pressure results in alveolar overdistention and compression of the capillary network in the alveolar wall and interstitium. This condition elevates PVR and reduces PBF.[153]

The final and perhaps the least well-recognized use of the mechanical ventilator is to assist in unloading the RV. During positive pressure inspiration, intrathoracic pressure increases and creates an increased pressure gradient from the lung to the LA, promoting cardiac output. This ventilatory assist is commonly seen in patients with PAH or right ventricular dysfunction. An augmentation of the arterial pressure trace during inspiration is seen. The use of the ventilator to augment systemic blood flow is very similar to the thoracic pump concept used to explain blood flow during CPR.[209] The inspiratory assist must be balanced by the potential negative effects of increased mean airway pressure on PVR and right ventricular afterload. To maximize these cardiopulmonary interactions, high tidal volume with low respiratory rates should be employed.

Attempts to manipulate PVR through pharmacologic interventions are also possible. Drugs that have shown promise in decreasing PVR both clinically and experimentally have been the phosphodiesterase inhibitors such as amrinone and milrinone. Both reduce PVR and SVR and increase RV contractility.[210] Isoproterenol has mild pulmonary artery–vasodilating properties in the normal pulmonary circulation.[211] It reduces PVR in adults after cardiac transplantation, but very few data support PVR reduction in infants and young children after cardiac surgery. In immature animals, the myocardium is less responsive to isoproterenol and causes tachycardia and increased myocardial O_2 consumption. These latter effects may reduce coronary perfusion and result in relative myocardial ischemia. Both prostaglandin E1 and prostacyclin have a pulmonary vasodilating effect; however, both drugs produce systemic hypotension, which severely limits their use.[212,213]

There are now ultra–short-acting intravenous vasodilators and inhaled vasodilating agents such as NO. Ultra–short-acting intravenous vasodilators are nonspecific potent vasodilators, with a half-life of seconds. Infusion of these drugs into the right side of the circulation produces a potent short-lived relaxation of the pulmonary artery smooth muscle.[214] Once the drug reaches the systemic circulation it is no longer functional. Adenosine and ATP-like compounds have these properties and may have clinical applicability in pulmonary artery hypertension in the future.[215]

Beginning in the past decade, several potent therapies for pulmonary hypertension have evolved.[206,207] A continuous intravenous infusion of prostacyclin improves pulmonary vascular hemodynamics, exercise tolerance, and survival in pulmonary hypertension.[216] Sildenafil is a selective phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitor. Phosphodiesterase type 5 breaks down cyclic guanosine monophosphate. Sildenafil produces acute and relatively selective pulmonary vasodilatation and acts synergistically with NO.[217-219] Bosentan is a dual endothelin receptor blocker. Preliminary reports indicate that bosentan improves symptoms, exercise tolerance, and hemodynamics in patients with pulmonary hypertension. The drug is well tolerated and free of side effects apart from a dose-dependent increase in liver enzymes.[220] Lung transplantation is the only available surgical therapy for primary pulmonary hypertension; however, the 5-year survival remains less than 50%, and bronchiolitis obliterans remains the single most common cause of death.[221,222] Before listing for transplantation, all patients undergo a hemodynamic cardiac catheterization and drug study in which reversibility of pulmonary hypertension with increased inspired O_2 concentrations and NO is determined.[223] Prostacyclin analogues including inhaled iloprost or intravenous epoprostenol, although used in adult centers, have not become routine in pediatric practice.

CPB with associated endothelial injury predisposes to the development of postoperative pulmonary hypertension in patients with CHD. Anatomic factors that impose either obstruction to PBF or residual left-to-right shunting need to be surgically addressed. Elevated LAP resulting from mitral valve disease or left ventricular dysfunction, pulmonary venous obstruction, branch pulmonary artery stenosis, or surgically induced loss of the pulmonary vascular cross-sectional area all raise right ventricular pressure and impose a burden on the right side of the heart.

NO, an endothelium-derived vasodilator that is administered as an inhaled gas, represents the most promising development in the therapy for elevated PVR in patients with CHD. Although nonselective, it is rapidly inactivated by hemoglobin and, when inhaled, produces no systemic vasodilation.[224] NO reduces pulmonary artery pressure in adult patients with mitral valve stenosis and in selected pediatric cardiac patients with PAH.[225-227] The congenital cardiac patient population in whom NO appears to be effective is patients with acute PVR elevation after open-heart surgery, as well as preoperative pulmonary hypertension accompanying specific anatomic conditions (e.g., total anomalous pulmonary venous return, congenital mitral stenosis).[225,227] Because it acts directly on vascular smooth muscle, NO remains effective despite the post-CPB endothelial injury frequently encountered in children.[228] Some centers routinely employ low-dose NO (1-5 ppm) after a Fontan operation when the CVP-LAP gradient exceeds 10 mm Hg.[229] At our institution, a dose of 20 ppm is the standard dose in both the ICU and the cardiac operating room. Finally, NO can provide diagnostic information that helps distinguish reactive pulmonary vasoconstriction from fixed anatomic obstructive disease either in the postoperative surgical patient or in the patient undergoing pre-transplant evaluation.[230,231] In the latter, the distinction between pulmonary vasoconstriction and advanced pulmonary vascular occlusive disease will influence the prediction as to whether a child with pulmonary hypertension in association with either CHD or cardiomyopathy will survive a heart transplant or requires replacement of both heart and lungs.

Management strategies for postoperative pulmonary hypertension and treatment of pulmonary hypertensive crises include sedation, moderate hyperventilation (maintaining CO_2 partial pressure [PCO_2] between 30 and 35 mm Hg), moderate alkalosis (pH > 7.5), increased inspired O_2, optimization of PEEP (to maximize functional residual capacity), pulmonary vasodilators (e.g., NO), and the creation or maintenance of an intracardiac right-to-left shunt in an attempt to maintain cardiac output.[232,233] NO is also useful in the manipulation of PVR after Fontan-type procedures.[234] Care should be exercised in weaning NO in patients, because abrupt withdrawal can precipitate rebound pulmonary hypertension and pulmonary hypertensive crises.[234,235]

Anticoagulation, Hemostasis, and Blood Conservation

Pediatric anesthesiologists must manage coagulation, hemostasis, and blood conservation in the perioperative period of cardiac surgery. Coagulopathy after CPB remains a significant problem in pediatric cardiac surgery.[223] Continuing blood loss after CPB requiring blood component replacement is associated with hemodynamic compromise as well as morbidity. In pediatric patients, restoration of hemostasis has proved difficult; diagnosis of the problem and treatment are marginally effective.

Neonates, infants, and children undergoing cardiac surgery with CPB have a higher rate of postoperative bleeding than that seen in older patients.[236] First, the ratio of patient body surface area to the nonendothelialized extracorporeal circuit volume is disproportionate; the relatively large inflammatory-type response provoked in response to CPB is inversely related to patient age—the younger the patient, the more pronounced is the response.[9] Because complement and platelet activation are linked to the activation of other protein systems in the blood (i.e., fibrinolytic proteins), it is probable that this hemostatic activation, which results in impaired hemostasis and increased bleeding tendency, plays a major role during pediatric cardiac surgery. Second, the type of operation performed in neonates and infants usually involves more extensive reconstruction and suture lines, creating more opportunities for surgical bleeding than in adult cardiac patients. Operations are also frequently performed using DHCA, which may further impair hemostasis.[237] Third, the immature coagulation system in neonates is also likely to contribute to impaired hemostasis.[238] Although procoagulant and factor levels may be reduced in young patients with CHD resulting from immature or impaired hepatosynthesis,[239] functional bleeding tendencies are usually not present before surgery. Furthermore, compounding the problem of immature coagulation proteins is the massive hemodilution that occurs when initiating CPB in infants and small children. Despite advances in circuit miniaturization, initiation of CPB induces a dilutional thrombocytopenia and reduces levels of factors II, V, VII, VIII, IX, X, ATIII, and fibrinogen.[240] Patients with cyanotic heart disease demonstrate an increased bleeding tendency before and after CPB because of a range of factors including thrombocytopenia, low numbers of von Willebrand factor multimers, clotting factor deficiencies, and poor fibrinogen function.[241]

CPB is a significant stimulant of the coagulant and inflammatory systems, requiring anticoagulation with heparin before its initiation. Heparin is traditionally administered based on patient weight, at an empiric dose of 400 units/kg. Adequacy of heparinization is monitored by the activated clotting time (ACT), a measure of inhibition of the contact activation pathway, with a goal ACT of greater than 480 seconds prior to initiation of CPB. An accurate ACT requires normothermia, normal platelet count and function, and normal levels of other coagulation proteins including antithrombin III. As these derangements are common in children having cardiac surgery, the ACT may not be the ideal monitor of anticoagulation in this population. In neonates, infants, and young children, the ACT does not correlate with plasma heparin concentration,[242] and children exhibit evidence of ongoing thrombin generation and coagulation activity despite very high ACT values.[243]

An alternative to weight-based heparin dosing is use of a blood heparin concentration-based system, which utilizes protamine titration to indicate whole blood heparin concentration at the bedside. Such a setup allows for individual variability in heparin efficacy and metabolism. Although blood heparin concentration devices have shown disappointing results in adults, results in children suggest greater suppression of thrombin generation and hemostatic activity,[244] reduced number of blood transfusions, and improvement in clinical outcomes of ventilator hours and ICU stay.[245] Blood heparin concentration systems also account for bypass circuit characteristics when deciding heparin dose in the bypass prime. In the absence of such a system, empiric dosing is recommended at 1 to 3 units/mL of priming solution.

An important caveat to anticoagulation management in infants is the role of antithrombin III, the body's most abundant natural anticoagulant and target for heparin efficacy. Neonates have low levels of antithrombin III activity,[246,247] and those with CHD have a functional antithrombin III level of approximately 50%.[248] Heparin exerts its anticoagulant effect by accelerating the reaction between thrombin and antithrombin. Low antithrombin activity is one reason for low heparin sensitivity in the pediatric cardiac population; however, large clinical trials examining antithrombin III replacement have not been conducted. In addition, other heparin cofactors, including α_2-macroglobulin, may play an important, though poorly understood, role in anticoagulation in young children.[249]

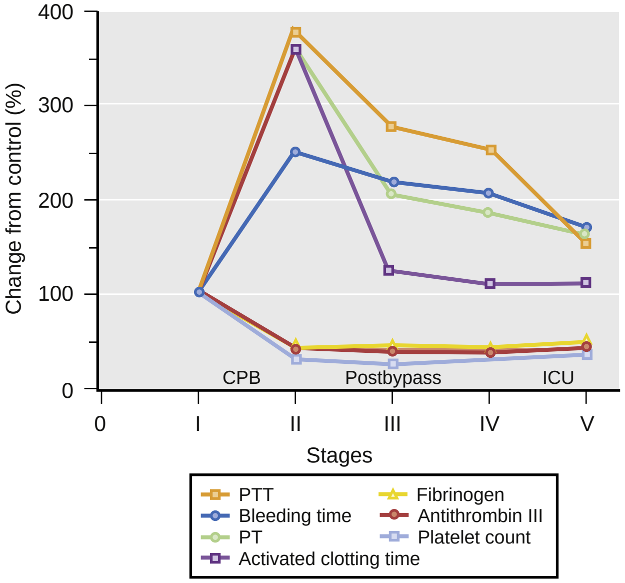


Fig. 78.13 Plot of blood coagulation profile changes before, during, and after cardiopulmonary bypass *(CPB)* in 25 children. Clotting times and coagulant factors are shown as percent change from control. Stage I, baseline, before CPB; stage II, post-CPB, before protamine reversal of heparin; stage III, after protamine; stage IV, just before leaving the operating room; stage V, after 3 hours in the intensive care unit *(ICU)*. *PT,* Prothrombin time; *PTT,* partial thromboplastin time.

Heparin is neutralized with protamine according to the quantity of heparin administered or based on body weight, usually 2 to 4 mg/kg, accounting for heparin administered to the patient only (excluding heparin added to the pump prime). Blood heparin concentration devices may be used to dose protamine according to the amount of circulating heparin in the patient, accounting for metabolism or recent dosing. Delayed hepatic clearance of heparin resulting from organ immaturity and the predominant use of hypothermic circulatory arrest in the young decrease metabolism and excretion of heparin. Younger children require relatively more protamine compared to older children and adults, as reflected by higher circulating heparin levels after CPB.[250] Prolonged ACT after adequate protamine dosing may indicate platelet dysfunction, hypofibrinogenemia, or other coagulation abnormalities. This should be assessed before administering additional protamine, which in excess may contribute to postoperative bleeding.[251]

Bleeding after CPB is not an unusual occurrence. The surgeon should first attempt to identify any obvious source of surgical bleeding at the sites of repair. In general, standard coagulation tests show a prolongation of the partial thromboplastin time, prothrombin time, hypofibrinogenemia, dilution of other procoagulants, and prolonged bleeding time in many pediatric patients, with and without bleeding (Fig. 78.13). The most common reason for persistent bleeding is platelet dysfunction,[252-254] and empiric platelet administration can be warranted. Routine administration of blood products to correct laboratory coagulation abnormalities in the absence of bleeding is never clinically indicated. Under most circumstances, meticulous surgical technique, appropriate administration of protamine, adequate patient temperature, and platelet infusion will correct excessive bleeding.

Risk factors for bleeding after bypass include lower body weight,[255,256] lower temperatures on bypass,[257] resternotomy,[257] preoperative congestive HF,[257] and presence of cyanotic CHD.[256] In these populations, a more aggressive approach is warranted. Although use of transfusion algorithms demonstrate reduced transfusion and even decreased mortality in adults having cardiac surgery,[258,259] no large or multicenter trials have been conducted examining transfusion algorithms in children. Complicating the development of algorithms in children is the heterogeneity in congenital defects, the surgical operation performed, and the complexity across congenital heart centers.[260]

However, several single-center studies show that use of viscoelastic testing (particularly rotational thromboelastography) to guide transfusion after bypass surgery may reduce transfusion requirement[256,261,262] and ICU days.[262] These studies provide reasonable thresholds for initiating transfusion after bypass as guided by rotational thromboelastometry (ROTEM) parameters, but no large prospective studies have been conducted to validate the targets. Importantly, use of either thromboelastography or ROTEM in children having cardiac surgery must be interpreted against age-appropriate reference values.[263,264]

Pharmacologic interventions are increasingly used to reduce bleeding after CPB. Antifibrinolytics exert their effects by reversibly binding to lysine analogue sites on plasminogen, a molecule primarily responsible for the breakdown of fibrin. By inhibiting plasminogen, and therefore plasmin, the procoagulant effects of fibrin remain. Lysine analogues epsilon amino-caproic acid and tranexamic acid are efficacious in reducing bleeding and transfusion requirement in pediatric cardiac surgery.[265] A large-scale observational study of 22,258 patients found that the serine protease inhibitor aprotinin had effects similar to those of both aminocaproic acid and tranexamic acid in terms of reducing bleeding requiring surgical intervention and mortality.[266] Unfortunately, aprotinin was removed from the United States market because of concerns of life-threatening anaphylactic reactions.[237,267-271] Dosing schemes for antifibrinolytic therapy are variable, though neonates require reduced loading and infusion doses compared to older children and adults because of decreased clearance.[272] After bypass surgery, desmopressin acetate has been administered to improve platelet function with variable success in reducing postoperative blood loss.[273,274]

Factor concentrates are increasingly used off-label in pediatric cardiac populations to provide needed coagulation factors in small children who may not tolerate the volume of fresh frozen plasma or cryoprecipitate required to satisfactorily raise factor levels.[275] Observational evidence suggests that recombinant activated factor VII is efficacious as a rescue agent for protracted after-bypass bleeding, after the transfusion of platelets, fibrinogen, and coagulation factors to provide adequate scaffolding for its action.[275] Fibrinogen concentrate has also been used to replace fibrinogen in pediatric cardiac patients and may be used in place of cryoprecipitate.[276] Prothrombin complex concentrates (PCCs) are purified plasma-derived products containing vitamin-K–dependent clotting factors (II, VII, IX, X) in either 3- (3F) or 4- (4F) factor preparations. PCCs are included in many transfusion algorithms in adult cardiac surgical populations but the safety and efficacy in pediatrics remains understudied.[277] Both 3- and 4-factor PCC improve thrombin generation in ex vivo studies of neonatal plasma,[278,279] but most evidence for clinical use is limited to case reports or small case series. At our institution, we administer 3-factor PCC as part of a transfusion algorithm in severe hemorrhage, after replacement of platelets, fibrinogen, and other coagulation factors.

Blood transfusion during the perioperative period must be thoughtful and intentional. Injudicious use of blood products to correct individual coagulation abnormalities separately further exacerbates dilution of existing procoagulants, and carries the risk of multiple donor exposures. Transfusion should be undertaken as specifically indicated by an impairment in tissue oxygenation or documented coagulopathies with clinically significant bleeding. Interestingly, while transfusion algorithms may reduce transfusion, in pediatric populations they may be more likely to alter the pattern of transfusion,[262] for example decreasing RBC transfusion while increasing platelet and cryoprecipitate use. Algorithms may improve hemodynamic stability[262]; research is needed to confirm improved outcomes.

Determining the optimal hematocrit is necessary to guide transfusion and is best decided in conjunction with the surgeon based on an individual patient's lesion, complexities, and planned procedure. RBCs should be administered to maintain a postdilutional hematocrit of at least 20% on CPB[280]; children with cyanotic CHD require a higher hematocrit. A recent study demonstrated an association between the indication for blood transfusion and postoperative morbidity in a cohort of children having cardiac surgery. Study results indicated that patients who required transfusion to maintain a target postdilutional hematocrit on pump had no increase in morbidity, while those requiring a therapeutic transfusion experienced severe morbidity and mortality.[281]

An increasingly recognized problem in pediatric cardiac surgical populations is thrombosis. Approximately 11% of children having cardiac surgical procedures experience a thrombotic complication[282]; risk factors include younger age,[282,283] cyanotic disease,[282,283] use of DHCA,[282] longer duration of in situ central lines,[282] and administration of blood products in the absence of intraoperative coagulation testing.[284] Alterations in levels of pro- and anti-coagulants in the immature pediatric patient combined with the inflammatory effects of bypass create a hypercoagulable state in many patients postoperatively.[285] Decreased antithrombin III levels after cardiac surgery are associated with thrombotic events in adults[286] but this has not been evaluated in children. Further, the ability of the infant's immature antifibrinolytic system to lyse clots composed of adult fibrinogen may be impaired.[287]

The techniques of thoughtful transfusion and blood conservation must be continued as the patient is transferred to the ICU. Isolated coagulation abnormalities are often present in the postoperative patient with uncomplicated cardiac issues (see Fig. 78.13), but are not associated with excessive bleeding and self-correct during the first postoperative day. Routine correction of these abnormalities with infusion of blood products is not warranted. Administration of blood products should not occur in the absence of clinical evidence of bleeding and the identification of a specific defect requiring targeted component therapy. Routine use of blood products for volume replacement is also to be avoided; lactated Ringer or saline solution can be satisfactorily administered at a reduced cost without the hazards associated with transfusion.

Postoperative Management

Immediate postoperative care of the pediatric patient who has undergone cardiothoracic surgery is an important period in the overall sequence of anesthetic and surgical management. Although the primary influence on outcome is determined by the conduct of the operation, postoperative care is an important factor. As a member of the operative team, it is necessary that the anesthesiologist understand and become involved during the immediate postoperative period. Detailed principles of postoperative management of pediatric cardiac surgical patients are beyond the scope of this chapter. However, a few general guiding principles and approaches are given to provide fundamental knowledge for the anesthesiologist.

The postoperative period can be characterized by a series of physiologic and pharmacologic changes as the body convalesces from the abnormal biologic conditions of CPB and cardiac surgery. During this period, the effects of the cardiac operation, any underlying disorders, the effects of hypothermic CPB, and special techniques such as DHCA may create special problems. In the immediate postoperative setting, abnormal convalescence and specialized problems must be recognized and managed appropriately. Fortunately, most patients are able to balance the cost imposed by the physiologic trespass created by the surgical repair and the effects of CPB against the benefit of reduced pathophysiologic loading conditions, resulting in low morbidity and mortality.

Therefore, the guiding principle in the management of the postoperative patient is an understanding of both normal and abnormal convalescence after anesthesia and cardiac surgery. The immediate postoperative period, even that of normal convalescence, is one of continuous physiologic change because of the pharmacologic effects of residual anesthetic agents and the ongoing physiologic changes secondary to abrupt alteration in hemodynamic loading conditions, surgical trauma, and extracorporeal circulation. Anesthesia and surgery affect not only the patient's conscious state but also cardiovascular, respiratory, renal, and hepatic function; fluid and electrolyte balance; and immunologic defense mechanisms. Despite these changes, postoperative care should be predictable and standardized for most patients undergoing cardiac procedures.

In general, the four temporal phases of postoperative management in the cardiac patient are (1) transport to the ICU, (2) stabilization in the ICU, (3) weaning from inotropic and ventilatory support, and (4) mobilization of fluids. Patients proceed through these phases at variable rates based on such factors as the underlying disease process, preoperative medical condition, sequelae of the surgical procedure, duration of CPB, and presence or absence of intraoperative complications. One of the most important functions of the ICU team is to identify postoperative complications in the patient who convalesces abnormally and to provide interventional therapy. Because physiologic change after cardiac surgery is dramatic but self-limiting during normal convalescence, recognition of abnormal processes can be difficult. Under such circumstances a uniform, multidisciplinary approach with experienced clinicians and nurses facilitates the identification of any abnormalities in convalescence. These abnormalities often are indications for closer observation, more invasive monitoring, pharmacologic intervention, and increased cardiopulmonary technical support. Complications include hypovolemia, residual structural heart defect, right and left ventricular failure, hyperdynamic circulation, pulmonary artery hypertension, cardiac tamponade, arrhythmias, cardiac arrest, pulmonary insufficiency, oliguria, seizures, hypercoagulable state, thrombosis, and brain dysfunction. It is critical to detect these departures from the normal convalescent course and to treat them aggressively.

One important area in which the anesthesiologist can aid the recovery of the cardiac patient is pain control. Pain and sedation are among the most common problems requiring ICU intervention. Many factors influence the onset, incidence, and severity of postoperative pain. The attenuation of the stress response in the immediate postoperative period using infusions of potent opioids in the critically ill infant reduces morbidity.[95] Attenuation of postoperative pain can be attempted with a preoperative medication and an intraoperative anesthetic management technique that includes the use of potent opioids. Patients who receive no opioids preoperatively or during the operative procedure will require analgesics in the immediate postoperative period once the inhalation anesthetic is eliminated. Most cases of postoperative pain can be managed by the administration of small intravenous doses of opioids, usually morphine or hydromorphone. This is important in a patient being weaned from the ventilator during the early postoperative period. Patients who are intubated and ventilated overnight should receive adequate sedation and pain control until ventilatory weaning is begun. This is usually accomplished by a continuous infusion of a benzodiazepine and an opioid. Continuous infusion of sedatives and analgesics results in a more consistent and reliable control of postoperative pain. When separated from mechanical ventilation, the patient is concurrently weaned from the sedatives and analgesics. In patients with reactive pulmonary artery hypertension, opioids have been shown to prevent hypertensive crisis.[92]

Regional anesthesia may be used for postoperative pain control in infants and children after thoracotomy. This method avoids opioid-induced respiratory depression from intravenous doses of these drugs. The administration of opioids in the epidural space is a very effective approach to pain management. This technique is used in children for postoperative pain control via the caudal route as a "single shot" or by a small caudal catheter. Morphine or hydromorphone provides effective analgesia with a duration of 6 to 12 hours, with no significant respiratory depression. Caudal morphine 0.05 to 0.075 mg/kg delivered in a total volume of 1.25 mL/kg of sterile saline has been used with good success in our practice. The use of regional anesthesia for postoperative pain appears to be best suited for the child extubated in the early postoperative period. Relative contraindications of this technique include hemodynamic instability and patients with abnormal clotting profiles and/or continued active bleeding. Using regional analgesia can result in better arterial oxygenation, a more rapid ventilator weaning, and decreased postoperative respiratory complications. However, urinary retention occurs frequently in patients without a bladder catheter.

Children requiring large thoracotomies or a bilateral thoracosternotomy (i.e., "clamshell") incision merit consideration for thoracic epidural analgesia. This technique significantly reduces the respiratory depression and pulmonary mechanics abnormalities that accompany the quantity of systemic opioids that would be necessary to provide adequate analgesia for these excruciatingly painful incisions. If the procedure requires systemic heparinization, we will typically defer placement of these catheters until the heparin effect is neutralized. For the patient undergoing coarctation repair via a left thoracotomy there is some concern for paraplegia following the operation. However, as the incidence of paraplegia in children is exceedingly low, we usually choose to place the caudal or epidural catheter before surgical incision to maximize the benefit intraoperatively; however some centers choose to place it at the end of surgery after it is clear there is no neurologic impairment. For patients undergoing heart, lung, or dual transplantations, a thoracic epidural catheter is placed at a time in the postoperative period when the patient can be weaned from intravenous medications that would adversely affect the patient's ability to breathe in close proximity to the planned extubation. It is helpful for these patients to have a functioning thoracic epidural catheter for several days.

POSTOPERATIVE NEUROPSYCHOLOGIC MORBIDITY

Neurologic morbidity has been identified to be increasingly problematic in neonates and infants with CHD as surgical mortality rates have improved. Although early postoperative CNS sequelae such as stroke and seizures occur in a small percentage of neonates with CHD, the importance of more subtle neurologic abnormalities at long-term follow-up is being increasingly recognized.[222,231,288]

These findings may include fine and gross motor impairments, speech and language delays, disturbances in visual-motor and visual-spatial abilities, attention-deficit disorders, learning disorders, and impaired executive functioning. The presence of congenital brain disease in patients with CHD represents a challenge in improving long-term neurologic outcomes. Many neonates with CHD have congenital structural brain abnormalities, chromosomal abnormalities, or both, as well as physiologic abnormalities that may impair brain development. Brain abnormalities on head ultrasonography have been noted in one fifth of full-term infants undergoing heart surgery, with half of them being present preoperatively.[288]

Postoperatively, secondary neurologic injury may be related to post-CPB alterations in cerebral autoregulation and additional hypoxic-ischemic insult, seizures, or other issues associated with prolonged ICU stay. In addition to prenatal and modifiable perioperative factors, genetic and environmental factors are known to be important. Unfortunately, modifiable perioperative factors may explain less of the variability in long-term outcomes than do patient-specific factors.

New, postoperative neurologic injury may be detected clinically in over 10% of infants,[288a] increasing to over 50% using more sensitive brain imaging techniques such as MRI.[289,290] Given that new neurologic injury can occur at various time points during the neonate's hospitalization, perioperative attention to reducing known risk factors is critical. Mechanisms of CNS injury in infants undergoing cardiac surgery include hypoxia-ischemia, emboli, reactive O_2 species, and inflammatory microvasculopathy. Preoperatively, the primary focus is on preventing hypoxic-ischemic injury and thromboembolic insults. Modifiable intraoperative factors associated with CNS injury include, but are not limited to, pH management, hematocrit during CPB, regional cerebral perfusion, and the use of DHCA. The adverse effects of CPB may be greater in infants than larger children or adults given the immaturity of their organ function and tissues, and the size of the CPB circuit relative to their body size.[291] However, a significant amount of research has been conducted in the area of intraoperative prevention of neurologic injury. With ongoing changes in technology and new therapies, the conduct of CPB and other support techniques have been actively under investigation.

The developmental consequences of exposure to general anesthetics are not well understood and are difficult to elaborate on in the absence of prospective randomized controlled trials, because of multiple factors that affect neurologic outcome in this population. Current literature suggests that multiple exposures, cumulative doses of exposure, and exposure in infancy might increase the risk for neurodevelopmental delay.[292-298] Thus, pediatric cardiac anesthesia is associated with all three risk factors, so attempting to minimize time of exposure, bundling of necessary procedures only if it will shorten the overall exposure to anesthesia, and delaying nonessential procedures to an age associated with less neurologic risk might be appropriate. Careful choice of anesthetic agents that do not act on different neuroreceptors at key time points in development might be critical.

Our current practice has evolved to minimize neurotoxicity with time under anesthesia minimized by getting help early if there is difficulty with intravenous access and having the surgeon in the room and ready to start immediately postinduction. NIRS monitors are used in all cases to optimize cardiac output and help define the need for blood transfusions. Multiple anesthetics are combined and administered in lower individual doses with the thinking that this is less toxic than a single anesthetic at a higher concentration. In all cases, a dexmedetomidine infusion is administered to decrease the dose of the other hypnotics and, when possible, regional techniques are used to reduce the total anesthesia dose.

MECHANICAL ASSIST DEVICES

Survival in children with congenital cardiac as well as pulmonary defects has improved over recent decades as a result of improved preoperative management, surgical techniques, anesthesia management, drug therapies, and postoperative management. Despite these advances, patients may still require therapies for both acute and chronic HF that are refractory to medical therapy. Mechanical support in the form of ECMO or VADs may then need to be instituted. Examples of conditions that may require support include failure to wean from CPB, acute cardiac arrest, malignant arrhythmia, and worsening myocardial function secondary to the underlying congenital defect or related to acquired cardiomyopathy. Fortunately, however, the incidence is small, with less than 2% of post-CPB patients requiring this intervention.[299] Mechanical support can thus be used as a treatment option to allow for recovery of ventricular function, as a bridge to transplant, or to support the heart in those with marginal functional reserve requiring invasive diagnostics or treatments (e.g., Williams syndrome with severe supravalvular pulmonary or aortic stenosis). As with any therapy, contraindications must be excluded before embarking on the use of a mechanical assist device. These may include extreme prematurity, severe and irreversible multiorgan failure, incurable malignancy, and preexisting neurologic devastation.[299] Anesthetic management in the use of ECMO is supportive, with management limited to assistance in the resuscitative efforts and hemorrhage associated with the cardiac surgery that was ongoing at the time of conversion to ECMO. Once the patient is on full ECMO support, ventilation is continued but at a slower rate of ventilation on the order of 10 breaths/min, with a peak pressure of 20 cm H_2O, PEEP set at 5 to 10 cm H_2O, and FiO_2 decreased to about 40%. These settings aid in the prevention of atelectasis with management of CO_2 and O_2 related to flow across the circuit membrane.

This is very different from the patient into whom a VAD is placed. Here the anesthesiologist continues to manage the patient as for routine CPB weaning. If a systemic VAD is placed, careful attention must be given to the ventricle pumping blood into the pulmonary bed because failure of this ventricle will have disastrous consequences. Thus, management tailored to unload this pulmonary ventricle is vitally important and will include inodilators in the form of phosphodiesterase inhibitors, inotropic support, and possibly even inhaled NO to decrease PVR and promote forward flow. In association with the perfusionist, intravascular volume loading is assessed and maintained for effective functioning of the VAD and thus adequate offloading of the assisted ventricle. Careful attention to pulmonary function is also vital. Adequate pulmonary toilet, recruitment maneuvers, and appropriate ventilatory parameters must be used. Bleeding is a potential complication in the implantation of the VAD and thus a clear strategy must be planned for in the form of antifibrinolytics, adequate volumes of blood and blood products, and even possibly the use of activated clotting factors (e.g., factor VII, PCCs).[300]

TABLE 78.10 Comparison of Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation Versus Ventricular Assist Device

Comparison Factors	ECMO	VAD
Bleeding at insertion	++	++
Sternotomy	Not required	Required
Left atrial venting	±	–
Blood product use	+++	+
Number of cannulae for biventricular support	2	4
Pulmonary support	+	–
Intravenous anticoagulation	+	±
Duration of support	Weeks	Months
Emergent support	Yes	No
Patient mobility	–	+

ECMO, Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation; *VAD*, ventricular assist device.

As can be seen in Table 78.10 differences can be appreciated between assist devices. The potential for bleeding exists at the time of insertion of both of these modalities; however, it would seem from clinical experience that because of the extensive dissection and need for sizeable ventriculotomy, implantation of a VAD (and especially bi-VAD) is more problematic. The requirements of anticoagulation to keep the ACT in the range of 180 to 200 for ECMO also may lead to ongoing and significant bleeding, especially if placed into a patient who requires support in the immediate perioperative phase. The use of an ECMO circuit with a membrane oxygenator requires ongoing intravenous anticoagulation with maintenance of the ACT in the aforementioned range. Apart from the immediate postoperative phase, patients with VAD systems can be transitioned to oral agents. A two-part therapy is recommended. Antiplatelet therapy includes aspirin or clopidogrel. The second part of the therapy will entail the use of anticoagulation with either warfarin (Coumadin) or subcutaneous low-molecular-weight heparin.[299]

Three potential disadvantages exist in the use of the VAD system. The lack of pulmonary support when using the VAD limits its use to patients whose lung function is adequate. Second, Table 78.10 illustrates that biventricular support requires two separate VAD devices, necessitating the placement of four cannulas, which may be technically difficult in a very young child. The third disadvantage is that VAD placement cannot be performed in a code situation or at the bedside as with ECMO.

Important advantages of the VAD system are the ability of patients to ambulate while on support and that VAD support can be maintained for months in contrast to the weeks only of ECMO support. Another important advantage over ECMO is that these patients will not require further venting of the LA. In patients on ECMO this is achieved by the placement of a left atrial vent at the time of sternotomy or a balloon atrial septostomy, which may require transfer to the catheterization laboratory with the possible complications associated with transport of a patient on an ECMO circuit.

Despite successful resuscitation and placement onto mechanical assist devices, morbidity and mortality remain high, with ECMO appearing to have worse outcomes. The mortality rate for ECMO in the 1990s was on the order of 47%, with survival in series published in the early 2000s not showing much improvement.[301-304] In contrast, the survival for those into whom a VAD is placed appears to be superior within the quoted series, with up to 80% of patients surviving to transplantation or being successfully weaned from support.[303,305] In the study by Blume and co-workers,[302] however, it was noted that associated CHD, and patients who are younger and smaller, have a higher mortality than those with fulminant myocarditis and cardiomyopathy.[302] Alongside survival data, the next most important marker is neurologic outcome, and it appears that this is also better in the VAD group.[306,307] Risk factors for poor neurologic outcome were once again of low weight and duration of DHCA, both of which place patients on ECMO at a survival disadvantage because patients on ECMO will be smaller and some of those who undergo DHCA for repair of congenital anomalies will require emergent ECMO support to wean from CPB or in the immediate postoperative phase.[308]

Survival predictors are important in our management of these patients. One common variable that can predict survival is the return of ventricular function between 3 and 5 days after the initiation of support.[304,308] Both of these modalities have been used successfully as a bridge to transplantation, with patients with a VAD having a greater than 80% survival to transplantation and patients on ECMO showing a less than 60% survival. Yet ECMO is used often in the infant population and in those with complex CHD, both of which are factors known to increase mortality among VAD patients.[308] The important causes of morbidity and mortality in patients on both of these modalities include cerebrovascular events secondary to either hemorrhagic or embolic phenomena, circuit-related issues (e.g., circuit thrombosis), renal failure requiring hemofiltration, sepsis, ongoing hemorrhage, and multiple-organ failure.

Although these modalities are often compared to each other, they both have unique places in the care of children with cardiac disability. ECMO has a great advantage in that it can be employed rapidly in a code situation for a patient of any age or size. In the past, size has been the limiting factor for implantation of VAD systems into pediatric patients. The Berlin Heart VAD (Berlin Heart AG, Berlin, Germany) is a pulsatile-flow device and available for use even in neonates. The system has been employed in Europe for over 20 years and has pump sizes from 10 to 80 mL.

Although this is currently the only FDA-approved VAD for children, a high incidence of adverse events such as embolic stroke, bleeding, and infections are noted.[309] This has led to the increased use of adult continuous-flow devices including the HeartMate II (Thoratec Corp., Pleasanton, CA) and HeartWare HVAD (HeartWare Inc., Framingham, MA) in children who may need it for longer periods of time, or who will potentially discharge home on the device. The Infant Jarvik VAD, a pediatric-specific continuous-flow device is currently undergoing pre-clinical testing. There are a number of other short-term VAD options that can provide additional organ support including oxygenation, hemodialysis, and plasma exchange if needed. The CentriMag/PediMag (Thoratec Corp., Pleasanton, CA) and the Jostra Rotaflow (MAQUET Cardiovascula, Wayne, NJ) are both rotary or centrifugal pumps used for short-term VAD support in multiorgan failure patients. Finally, there are percutaneous VADs now small enough to place in children. The Impella 2.5 (Abiomed Inc., Danvers, MA) is an axial VAD catheter that has been used in children as small as 22 kg. One can appreciate how these modalities complement each other, with ECMO being used acutely, and then once the patient is physiologically stable, but still requiring support, a VAD can be implanted for intermediate or long-term support. Recent data from the Organ Procurement and Transplant Network supports a survival to transplant advantage for patients with VAD (in particular, CentriMag) compared to ECMO.[310]

A newer mechanical assist device for use in children is the temporary Total Artificial Heart (TAH) system. The TAH system is indicated for use as a bridge to transplant for patients at imminent risk for death from biventricular failure. The implantation and use of this device is unique in that it requires the complete removal of the native myocardium, such that recovery without transplantation is not possible. Once the myocardium is removed, inflow and outflow pumping chambers are sown into the right and left heart vessels. Sizing requirements include patient body surface area of 1.7 m^2 or greater, echocardiographic left ventricular end-diastolic diameter of 70 mm or greater, a CT scan with an anterior-to-posterior dimension at the 10th thoracic vertebrae of 10 cm or greater, and a chest radiograph with a cardiothoracic ratio of 0.5 or greater. Smaller TAH devices may be available soon, which would allow implantation in smaller patients. This device has been used successfully as a bridge to transplant in a patient with failing Fontan physiology who later went on to receive a heart transplant.

Anesthesia for Heart and Lung Transplantation

Although perioperative management for thoracic organ transplantation is considered elsewhere in this text, the application of these procedures to children requires some specific modification. Differences include the characteristics of the candidates, preparation of these children, anesthetic management, surgical considerations, post-CPB management, and outcome. Even though some of the earliest heart transplant procedures were performed for congenital heart malformations, this indication became rare by the early 1980s. In 1984, over 60% of the few pediatric heart transplant procedures were performed in patients with cardiomyopathy, usually adolescents. In the next decade, a dramatic rise in the number of infants and young children with congenital heart malformations treated with heart transplantation resulted in a marked shift in the demographics (Fig. 78.14).[311] By 1995, over 70% of the children receiving heart transplants were younger than 5 years of age, with half of those younger than 1 year. The overwhelming majority of these infants received transplants for congenital heart malformations for which reconstructive options either had failed or were not believed to exist (Fig. 78.15).[311] The implications of this shift reach into every element of perioperative management.

Children considered for heart transplantation are more likely to have pulmonary hypertension than adults. Most adult transplant programs will not offer heart transplant therapy to patients with PVR over 6 Wood units/m^2.[312]The exclusion threshold in infants and children remains controversial. Some programs accept patients with PVR as high

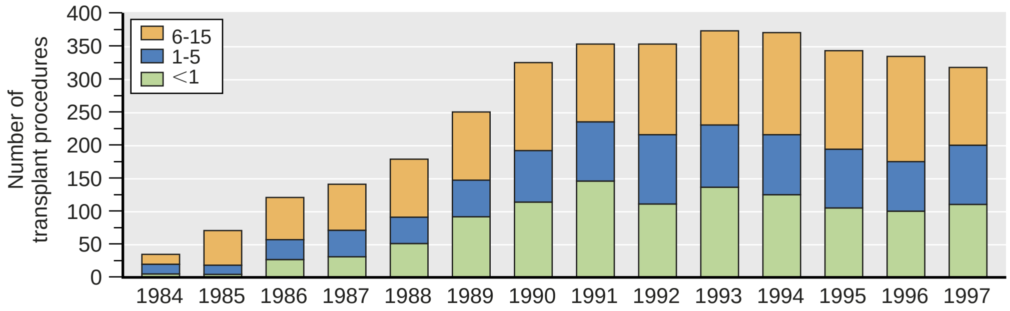


Fig. 78.14 Demographic data for pediatric heart transplantation by age. Stacked bar graph illustrates the total number and age distribution for heart transplantation in patients younger than 16 years of age. Note the rapid rise in transplant procedures performed during the late 1980s, with particular growth in the population of children 5 years of age and younger. Having peaked in the mid-1990s, the total number of transplant procedures (both adult and pediatric) has declined slightly, but the relative age proportions within the pediatric population remain relatively constant. (Data from the Registry of the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation, Addison, TX.)

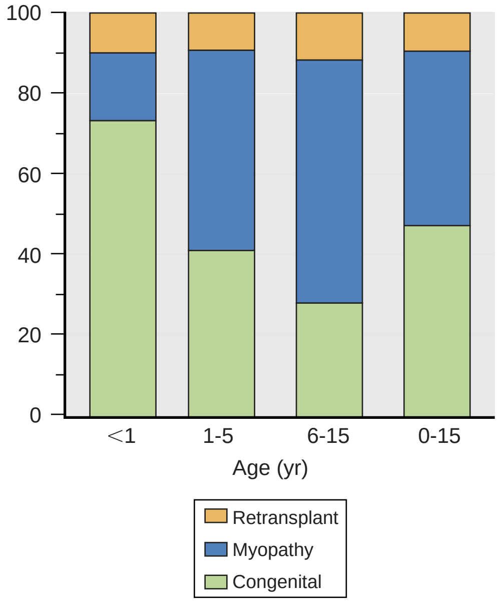


Fig. 78.15 Indication for heart transplantation in children. Over the past 2 decades, the major indications for pediatric heart transplantation were nearly equally divided between congenital malformation and cardiomyopathy. In later years, pediatric recipients with congenital malformations assumed a slight plurality as a result of shifting age demographics. As illustrated, younger children are more likely to undergo heart transplantation because of congenital malformation. (Data from the Registry of the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation, Addison, TX.)

as 12 Wood units/m^2, particularly if the pulmonary vasculature responds to vasodilators such as O_2, NO, calcium channel blockers, or prostacyclin.[313] Neonates are generally assumed to have elevated PVR, but outcome data from some programs suggest that the importance of this factor for postoperative outcome is substantially less in the first year of life, perhaps because the infant donor hearts, having recently undergone transitional circulation, are better prepared to cope with the right ventricular pressure load that elevated PVR imposes.[314]

The anesthetic plan for pediatric heart transplantation must accommodate a wide spectrum of pathophysiology. Recipients with congenital heart malformations benefit from the analysis of loading conditions and optimizing hemodynamics discussed previously. Although a few of these patients undergo heart transplantation because the natural history of reconstructive heart surgery poses greater risk despite reasonable ventricular function, most candidates exhibit some manifestations of impaired ventricular performance. Accordingly, they require careful titration of anesthetic agents with minimal myocardial depressant characteristics to avoid cardiovascular collapse. In this fragile population, even modest doses of opioids can be associated with marked deterioration in systemic hemodynamics, presumably by reducing endogenous catecholamine release. As with most congenital heart patients, skilled management of the airway and ventilation represents crucial elements in a satisfactory induction, particularly in the presence of elevated PVR. No matter how elegant the anesthetic plan in conception and implementation, a certain proportion of these children will decompensate on induction, necessitating resuscitative therapy. A particularly critical time is that of central line placement, when transplant patients may not tolerate the Trendelenburg position; a level table and the use of ultrasound is sufficient to place a central line.

Although orthotopic heart transplantation poses technical challenges in neonates and young infants, the replacement of an anatomically normal heart is less complex than several reconstructive heart procedures commonly performed in patients at this age. However, the need to adapt this procedure to incorporate repair of major concurrent cardiovascular malformations requires the consummate skill and creativity that remain the province of a few exemplary heart surgeons in congenital disease.[315,316]

Having withstood extended ischemic periods, heart grafts are extraordinarily intolerant of superimposed residual hemodynamic loads that may accompany imperfect vascular reconstruction. The extensive vascular repair and, particularly in older children with long-standing hypoxemia, the propensity to coagulopathy together elevate hemorrhage to a major cause of morbidity and even mortality in pediatric heart transplantation. Nevertheless, once successfully implanted, these grafts will respond to physiologic factors that stimulate growth and adaptation in the developing infant and child.[317]

Management considerations during separation from CPB and the early postoperative period are primarily focused on three pathophysiologic conditions: myocardial preservation, denervation, and PVR. Even expeditious transplant procedures usually force the heart to endure ischemic periods that exceed those encountered during reconstructive surgery. Although some researchers believe the infant heart is more tolerant of extended ischemia, these hearts will demonstrate a period of reperfusion injury, and virtually all require pharmacologic and, in some cases, mechanical support.[314] In addition, endogenous adaptive responses and exogenous pharmacologic agents that act by myocardial sympathetic activation are ineffective in the denervated graft. Because the majority of children presenting for heart transplantation exhibit some element of elevated PVR, even with isolated end-stage cardiomyopathy, the RV of a newly implanted heart is particularly vulnerable to failure.

Ventilatory and pharmacologic interventions are usually configured to exert a favorable impact on PVR and provide inotropic and chronotropic support. Once the lungs are fully expanded, we ventilate to $PaCO_2$ values in the low 30 mm Hg range using an FiO_2 of 1. Virtually all recipients receive low-dose inotropic support such as epinephrine, milrinone, dopamine, and/or isoproterenol to promote inotropy, chronotropy, and lower PVR. As mentioned previously, a major concern is RV dysfunction, hence we will generally start iNO for the immediate post-CPB period.

Most transplant centers have a specific regimen for immunosuppression to be initiated in the perioperative period. As with adults, pediatric transplant programs typically employ triple-drug immunosuppression with a calcineurin inhibitor (e.g., cyclosporine, tacrolimus), antimetabolite (e.g., azathioprine), and steroid. After an interval without rejection, some pediatric programs will taper and discontinue one or even two of these agents, particularly in neonates, in whom some element of tolerance develops.[318,319]

Survival after pediatric heart transplant is improving. The principal risk factors are age younger than 1 year and congenital heart defects. Because these factors are closely related (i.e., the vast majority of infants younger than 1 year of age undergo transplantation for a congenital heart defect), it is difficult to determine the independent effect of age. Concurrent repair of structural cardiovascular anomalies substantially increases perioperative risks for hemorrhage, residual hemodynamic loading conditions, and right-sided HF from elevated PVR. The greatest risk of mortality is found in the first year after transplant; however, infants who survive the first postoperative year have better long-term survival than other age groups.[320]. Average survival for infants is 18 years of age, which is the time at which 50% of patients are alive after transplant.[321] Average survival is 15 years for those transplanted at ages 1 to 10 years of age, and 11 years survival for those transplanted as teenagers. The sequelae of rejection and the consequences of the immunosuppression result in significant ongoing morbidity and mortality; despite advances in pharmacologic therapy, rates of acute rejection in the first year have not changed appreciably.[321]

A unique quality of neonates is that their immune system remains immature, unable to produce antibodies effectively against foreign blood cells, until approximately 12 to 24 months of age. Infants also have a poorly developed complement system. These developmental characteristics allow for transplantation of an ABO-mismatched organ into an infant, which has expanded the pool of available organs for that population. Anesthetic implications for infants who are candidates for ABO-incompatible transplant surround transfusion management—these patients should receive only ABO compatible blood products before transplant, and should not receive whole blood.[321]

Lung and heart-lung transplantation have achieved respectable operative survival rates in children.[322] They remain the only viable surgical therapy for infants and children with severe pulmonary vascular disease and selected progressive pulmonary diseases. These remain uncommon procedures in pediatrics. Lung transplantation carries the additional morbidity of obliterative bronchiolitis, a debilitating small airway disease that results in gradual deterioration in flow-related pulmonary functions over time. Despite a low operative mortality rate, 5-year survival is only 53%.[322]

Patients with transplanted hearts also present for surveillance cardiac catheterizations, biopsies, and other procedures.[299,323-325] The anesthesia plan in these patients should take into account the physiologic and pharmacologic problems of allograft denervation, the side effects of immunosuppression, the risk for infection, and the potential for rejection.[323-325] Cardiac allograft vasculopathy is the leading cause of morbidity and mortality after transplantation, leading to progressive graft dysfunction with HF, an increased risk for dysrhythmia, and the possibility of arrhythmogenic sudden death. Conventional revascularization procedures are ineffective because cardiac allograft vasculopathy is caused by intimal proliferation leaving retransplantation as the only therapeutic option.

Hyperlipidemia after heart transplantation is a common occurrence in both adults and children and is aggravated by chronic steroid therapy and other immunosuppressive agents. Statins are used with good results in controlling hyperlipidemia after transplantation and are likely to manifest inherent immunosuppressive effects. Risk factors for posttransplant renal dysfunction are the use of calcineurin inhibitors, mechanical circulatory support, prolonged inotropic support, and preexisting renal dysfunction. Newer, more potent immunosuppressive agents (e.g., tacrolimus) have led to steroid-sparing regimens late after transplantation, eliminating the detrimental effects of long-term steroid administration. Agents such as sirolimus may now be used in combination with lower levels of calcineurin inhibitors, thus minimizing long-term nephrotoxicity.

Posttransplant lymphoproliferative disorders represent a pathologic spectrum of abnormal lymphoid proliferation ranging from localized early lesions to polymorphic disease or, in some cases, monomorphic lymphomatous disease. From a clinical perspective, the most common sites of disease and presenting symptoms included the gastrointestinal tract and pulmonary systems. Patients with polymorphic disease are treated primarily by a reduction or temporary cessation of immunosuppression, along with adjunctive surgical therapy for tissue diagnosis or obstructive lesions. Most centers reserve traditional chemotherapeutic regimens for patients with nonresponsive polymorphic disease and monomorphic disease. As a result of cardiac denervation, autonomic regulatory mechanisms are not available to prevent the wide swings in a patient's hemodynamic state and the stress response is slower than usual. Cardiac parameters are significantly altered, and patients may experience a decrease in systemic blood pressure and cardiac filling pressures. Compensatory mechanisms are delayed, and reductions in cardiac output lead to decreased coronary and cerebral perfusion, especially on the background of hypertension. Drugs with direct myocardial and vascular effects are the mainstay of therapy. Most immunosuppressive agents affect hepatic and renal functions and interact with anesthetic drugs.

Anesthesia for Closed-Heart Operations

Early corrective repair in infancy has significantly reduced the number of non-corrective, palliative closed-heart operations. Corrective closed-heart procedures include PDA ligation and repair of coarctation of the aorta. Non-corrective closed-heart operations include pulmonary artery banding and extracardiac shunts such as the Blalock-Taussig shunt. These procedures are performed without CPB. Therefore, venous access and intraarterial monitoring are important in evaluating and supporting these patients. A pulse oximeter and NIRS monitors (cerebral and somatic) are invaluable devices during intraoperative management.

Ligation of a PDA is typically performed through a left thoracotomy, although video-assisted thoracoscopic techniques are increasingly common.[326,327] Physiologic management is that of a left-to-right shunt producing volume overload. Patients with a large PDA and low PVR generally present with excessive PBF and CHF. Neonates and premature infants also run the risk for having substantial diastolic runoff to the pulmonary artery, potentially impairing coronary perfusion. Thus, patients range from an asymptomatic healthy young child to the sick ventilator-dependent premature infant on inotropic support. The health of the former patient allows a wide variety of anesthetic techniques culminating in extubation in the operating room. The latter patient requires a carefully controlled anesthetic and fluid management plan. Generally, a trial of medical management with indomethacin and fluid restriction is attempted in the premature infant before surgical correction. Transport of the premature infant to the operating room can be especially difficult and potentially hazardous, requiring great vigilance to avoid extubation, excessive patient cooling, and venous access disruption. For these reasons, many centers are now performing ligation in the neonatal ICU.

A subset of premature infants with PDAs is located at institutions without cardiac surgical teams. Ligation of the PDA in these patients requires either transfer of these high-risk neonates to a center that has a team who routinely perform the procedure or the availability of a team capable of performing the procedure who is willing to travel to perform the procedure in the neonate's home neonatal ICU (NICU). Gould and associates[328] reviewed the experience with onsite and off-site ligations of a team composed of a pediatric cardiac attending anesthesiologist, a certified registered nurse anesthetist, an attending pediatric cardiothoracic surgeon and fellow, and cardiac operating room nurses. There were no anesthetic-related complications in their group. No differences were found in the incidence of perioperative complications in the procedures in the two sites. This study showed PDA ligations can be performed safely in the NICUs of hospitals lacking onsite pediatric cardiac surgical units, without incurring the risk inherent in transport of critically ill infants. In addition, patient care is continued by the neonatology team most familiar with the child's medical and social history and the patient's family is minimally inconvenienced.

Complications of PDA ligation include inadvertent ligation of the left pulmonary artery or descending aorta, recurrent laryngeal nerve damage, and excessive bleeding as a result of inadvertent PDA disruption. Placement of a pulse oximeter on the lower extremity should alert the anesthesiologist and surgeon in the case of inadvertent aortic ligation. After ductal ligation in premature infants, worsening pulmonary compliance can precipitate a need for increased ventilatory support, and manifestations of an acute increase in left ventricular afterload should be anticipated, especially if left ventricular dysfunction has developed preoperatively. PDA ligation has been performed in infants and children using thoracoscopic surgical techniques. This approach has the advantage of limited incisions at thoracoscopic sites, promoting less postoperative pain and discharge from the hospital the same day of surgery.

Coarctation of the aorta is a narrowing of the descending aorta near the insertion of the ductus arteriosus. Obstruction to aortic flow results and may range from severe obstruction with compromised distal systemic perfusion to mild upper extremity hypertension as the only manifestation. Associated anomalies of both the mitral and aortic valves can occur. In the neonate with severe coarctation, systemic perfusion depends on right-to-left shunting across the PDA. In these circumstances, left ventricular dysfunction is very common and prostaglandin E1 is necessary to preserve sufficient systemic perfusion. Generally, a peripheral intravenous line and an indwelling arterial catheter, in the right upper extremity, are recommended for intraoperative and postoperative management. In patients with left ventricular dysfunction, a central venous catheter may be desirable for pressure monitoring and inotropic support.

The surgical approach is through a left thoracotomy, whereby the aorta is cross-clamped and the coarctation repaired with an end-to-end anastomosis, patch aortoplasty, or subclavian patch. During cross-clamping, we usually allow significant proximal hypertension (20%-25% increase over baseline), based on evidence that vasodilator therapy may jeopardize distal perfusion and promote spinal cord ischemia. Intravascular crystalloid administration of 10 to 20 mL/kg is given just before removal of the clamp. The anesthetic concentration is decreased, and additional blood volume support is given until the blood pressure rises. Postrepair rebound hypertension as a result of heightened baroreceptor reactivity is common and often requires medical therapy. After cross-clamping, aortic wall stress resulting from systemic hypertension is most effectively lowered by institution of β-blockade with esmolol or α/β-blockade with labetalol.[329] Recent work indicates that patients younger than 6 years of age should receive an initial dose of esmolol 250 to 500 μg/kg, followed by an infusion of 250 to 750 μg/kg/min, depending on the blood pressure. Despite an esmolol infusion, 25% to 50% of patients have a blood pressure that is above the targeted range, requiring a second drug. Sodium nitroprusside or nicardipine is usually chosen as the second drug. Propranolol is useful in older patients but can cause severe bradycardia in infants and young children. Although it actually increases calculated aortic wall stress in the absence of β-blockade by accelerating dP/

dT (contractile force), the addition of sodium nitroprusside may be necessary to control refractory hypertension. Captopril or an alternative antihypertensive regimen is begun in the convalescent stage of recovery in patients with persistent hypertension.

The management of infants undergoing placement of extracardiac shunts without CPB centers on goals similar to those of other shunt lesions—balancing pulmonary and systemic blood flow by altering $PaCO_2$, PaO_2, and ventilatory dynamics. Central shunts are usually performed through a median sternotomy, whereas Blalock-Taussig shunts may be performed through a thoracotomy or sternotomy. In patients in whom PBF is critically low, partial cross-clamping of the pulmonary artery required for the distal anastomosis causes further reduction of PBF and desaturation, necessitating meticulous monitoring of pulse oximetry. Careful application of the cross-clamp to avoid pulmonary artery distortion will help maintain PBF. Under circumstances in which severe desaturation and bradycardia occur with cross-clamping, CPB will be required for the procedure.

Intraoperative complications include bleeding and severe systemic O_2 desaturation during chest closure, usually indicating a change in the relationship of the intrathoracic contents that results in distortion of the pulmonary arteries or kink in the shunt. Pulmonary edema may develop in the early postoperative period in response to the acute volume overload that accompanies the creation of a large surgical shunt. Measures directed at increasing PVR, such as lowering inspired O_2 to room air, allowing the $PaCO_2$ to rise, and adding PEEP are helpful maneuvers to decrease PBF until the pulmonary circulation can adjust. Decongestive therapy such as diuretics and digoxin may alleviate the manifestations of CHF. Under such circumstances, early extubation is inadvisable.

Pulmonary artery banding is used to restrict PBF in infants whose defects are deemed uncorrectable for either anatomic or physiologic reasons. These patients are generally in CHF with reduced systemic perfusion and excessive PBF. The surgeon places a restrictive band around the main pulmonary artery to reduce PBF. Band placement is very imprecise and requires careful assistance from the anesthesia team to accomplish successfully. Many approaches have been suggested. We place the patient on 21% inspired O_2 concentration and maintain the $PaCO_2$ at 40 mm Hg to simulate the postoperative state. Depending on the malformation, a pulmonary artery band is tightened to achieve hemodynamic (e.g., distal pulmonary artery pressure 50%-25% systemic pressure) or physiologic (e.g., $\dot{Q}p/\dot{Q}s$ approaching 1) goals. Should the attainment of these objectives produce unacceptable hypoxemia, the band is loosened.

Anesthesia for Interventional or Diagnostic Cardiac Procedures

Advances in interventional and diagnostic cardiac catheterization techniques are significantly changing the operative and nonoperative approach to the patient with a congenital heart defect. Common interventions in the cardiac catheterization laboratory are shown in Table 78.11. Nonoperative interventional techniques are being used instead of procedures requiring surgery and CPB for safe closure of secundum ASDs, VSDs, and PDAs. Stenotic aortic and pulmonic valves, recurrent aortic coarctations, and branch pulmonary artery stenoses can be dilated in the catheterization laboratory, avoiding surgical intervention.[330,331]

TABLE 78.11 Common Interventions in the Cardiac Catheterization Laboratory

Device Closures	Coil Embolization
SIMPLE INTERVENTIONS	
Atrial septal defect (ASD)	Decompressing veins
Ventricular septal defect (VSD)	Aortopulmonary (AP) collaterals
Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA)	Surgical shunts
Patent foramen ovale (PFO)	Coronary/atrioventricular fistulas
Balloon valvuloplasty	Balloon angioplasty
Aortic stenosis (AS)	Branch pulmonary artery stenosis
Pulmonary stenosis (PS)	Coarctation of the aorta
COMPLEX INTERVENTIONS	
Hypoplastic Left Heart Syndrome (HLHS)	
After Norwood	
Pulmonary artery stenosis	Angioplasty
Shunt thrombosis	Dilation/thrombectomy
Restrictive ASD	Balloon septostomy
Aortic arch obstruction	Angioplasty
AP collaterals	Coil embolization
Post Glenn/Fontan	
Decompressing veins	Coil embolization
Baffle leaks	Device/coil embolization
Systemic vein stenosis/thrombosis	Angioplasty/thrombectomy
Right ventricular failure	Creation of fenestration
Exercise intolerance	Closure of fenestration
AP collaterals	Coil embolization
Obstructive Fontan pathway	PA angioplasty, balloon septostomy
Transposition of Great Arteries	Balloon atrial septostomy
Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF)	
Shunt thrombosis	Thrombectomy
Pulmonary artery stenosis	Angioplasty
AP collaterals	Coil occlusion
MISCELLANEOUS INTERVENTIONS	
Severe pulmonary hypertension	Atrial septostomy
ECMO left heart decompression	Atrial septostomy
Stenosis of pulmonary veins	Balloon angioplasty stent
Stenosis/thrombosis of systemic veins	Balloon angioplasty/thrombectomy

ECMO, Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation.

These techniques shorten the hospital stay and are particularly beneficial to patients with recurrent coarctation and muscular or apical VSDs, who are at a higher risk for operative intervention. Many patients with complex cardiac defects are poor operative candidates. Innovative interventional procedures improve vascular anatomy, reduce pressure loads on ventricles, and decrease the operative risk for these patients. For example, in TOF with hypoplastic pulmonary arteries, balloon angioplasty and vascular stenting procedures create favorable pulmonary artery anatomy and reduce pulmonary artery pressure and right ventricular end-diastolic pressure. Complications are more common during interventional catheterization and include arterial thrombosis, arrhythmias (especially heart block), hemodynamic instability, embolization of devices or coils, bleeding, perforation of the major vessels or heart, and lung reperfusion injuries.[332] Complications are more common in smaller infants, particularly those younger than 6 months of age. Constant vigilance, correction of electrolyte imbalance, maintenance of acid-base status, and appropriate heparinization will mitigate some of the morbidity. Appropriate and early transfusion with deployment of rapid-response ECMO in the resuscitation of an infant in cardiac arrest improves outcome. High-risk patients undergoing diagnostic evaluation of pulmonary artery hypertension in anticipation of heart-lung transplantation also require anesthetic management. Despite the attendant high risks for the procedure in patients with suprasystemic right ventricular pressure, these patients are best managed with general anesthesia and controlled ventilation.

Anesthetic management of interventional or diagnostic procedures in the catheterization laboratory must include the same level of preparation that applies in caring for these patients in the operating room. These patients have the same complex cardiac physiology and, in some cases, greater physiologic complexity and less cardiovascular reserve. Interventional catheterization procedures can impose acute pressure load on the heart during balloon inflation. Large catheters placed across mitral or tricuspid valves create acute valvular regurgitation or, in the case of a small valve orifice, transient valvular stenosis. When catheters are placed across shunts, severe reductions in PBF and marked hypoxemia may occur. The anesthetic plan must consider the specific cardiology objectives of the procedure and the impact of anesthetic management in facilitating or hindering the interventional procedure. In general, the three distinct periods involved in an interventional catheterization are the data acquisition period, the interventional period, and the postprocedural evaluation period.

During the data acquisition period, the cardiologist performs a hemodynamic catheterization to evaluate the need for and extent of the planned intervention. Catheterization data are obtained under normal physiologic conditions—that is, room air and physiologic $PaCO_2$. Increased FiO_2 or changes in $PaCO_2$ may obscure physiologic data. Although some patients may require O_2 administration if the PBF is such that the administration of room air may lead to life-threatening hypoxia, a discussion with the interventional cardiologist is essential in the care of these children. Ideally a patient would be kept spontaneously ventilating, but this is impractical. A secured airway allows the anesthesiologist to concentrate on hemodynamic issues. Positive-pressure ventilation also reduces the risk for air embolism; the cardiologist can measure pressures during expiration to obtain the most accurate data. During spontaneous ventilation, a large reduction in intrathoracic pressure can entrain air into vascular sheaths and result in moderate-to-large pulmonary or systemic air emboli. Precise device placement is also facilitated with muscle relaxants that eliminate patient movements and controlled ventilation, thereby reducing the respiratory shifting of cardiac structures. Substantial blood loss and changes in ventricular function occur commonly during the intervention.

In the postprocedural period, the success and physiologic impact of the intervention are evaluated. Blood pressure, mixed venous O_2 saturation, ventricular end-diastolic pressure, and cardiac output, when available, are used to assess the impact of the intervention. Persistent severe hemodynamic derangement indicates the need for ICU monitoring and respiratory or cardiovascular support.

A brief description of some of the interventional procedures and the associated anesthetic implications follows. The success of these interventions will undoubtedly result in widespread availability and use over the next few years.

TRANSCATHETER TECHNIQUE FOR ATRIAL SEPTAL DEFECT CLOSURES

In the transcatheter technique for ASD closures, a collapsed double-umbrella clamshell device is loaded into a large introducer sheath placed through the femoral vein, advanced to the RA, and placed across the ASD into the left atrial chamber. Each side of the device consists of a Dacron mesh patch suspended in six spring-loaded arms that open like an automatic umbrella. Using biplane fluoroscopy and TEE, the catheter is positioned in the LA away from the mitral valve.[333] The sheath is pulled back to open the six distal arms and its Dacron mesh cover into the LA. The sheath and device are then pulled back so the distal arms contact the left atrial septum. Fluoroscopy and TEE or intracardiac echocardiography are used to confirm that the arms are on the left atrial side and do not interfere with mitral valve motion. Once adequately seated, the sheath is pulled farther back to expose the proximal side of the device and the proximal arms, which spring open to engage the right side of the atrial septum. When proper positioning is certain, the device is released.[333] Device closure of secundum ASD is the preferred therapeutic approach. Data continue to support closure of defects of small-to-moderate size (<8-20 mm) in appropriate-size patients with appropriate septal length and device diameter.[334-338] A 2012 review of percutaneous device ASD closure found a major complication rate of 1% to 2.5% (device embolization or erosion, stroke, endocarditis, tamponade, and device thrombus), and a 3.5% to 6% minor complication rate (inflammatory reactions in those with nickel allergy, arrhythmia, access-site complications).[339] Cardiac erosions and heart block can occur in patients who receive a large device for patient size, especially those who have a deficient anterosuperior rim.[340,341] Thrombus is a rare problem that can usually be treated medically, and its incidence appears to be device-dependent.[342]

TRANSCATHETER VENTRICULAR SEPTAL DEFECT CLOSURES

Most VSDs that are electively closed in the catheterization laboratory are mid-muscular or apical VSDs that are either difficult to close in the operating room or would require a left ventriculotomy. Left ventriculotomies are associated with a high incidence of left ventricular dysfunction and have been relegated to a position as the least desirable surgical option. The preferred therapeutic approach for VSD is surgical closure. Transcatheter closure of muscular VSDs can be performed safely. However, a significant incidence of complications occurs, including heart block, blood loss, and hemodynamic instability.[343,344] Device closure of membranous VSD is in early stages of investigation, and the incidence of complications remains to be determined.[345,346] The transcatheter approach requires a blade atrial septostomy and a retrograde catheter placed through the femoral artery and advanced to the LA. This catheter is pulled across the atrial septum into the RA and is used to guide a superior vena cava catheter (placed through the internal jugular vein) across the ASD into the LA, across the mitral valve, and into the LV. The VSD defect is approached from the left ventricular side. The large sheath containing the double-umbrella clamshell device prevents closure of the mitral valve, resulting in acute mitral regurgitation or, in cases in which the VSD is large or the mitral annulus small, acute severe mitral stenosis. In the latter case, systemic output is decreased and a period of severe hypotension is unavoidable. Judicious use of vasoconstrictors to maintain coronary perfusion may be required during the catheter placement, followed by volume and inotropic resuscitation after the VSD device is deployed. This highly specialized application of the clamshell device is confined to only a few pediatric centers in the United States. A 2015 review and meta-analysis comparing percutaneous versus open surgical closure of perimembranous VSD showed equivalent closure success rates between groups, and no differences in major complications (death, reoperation, need for permanent pacemaker).[347] Patients in the percutaneous closure group were older (median 12 years vs. 5 years in surgical group); blood transfusions and hospital length of stay were shorter in the percutaneous versus the surgical group.

ANGIOPLASTY OF BRANCH PULMONARY ARTERY STENOSIS

One of the most important areas of interventional catheterization has been the dilation and stenting of hypoplastic or stenotic branch pulmonary arteries. In patients with TOF with hypoplastic pulmonary arteries, pulmonary atresia, or single ventricle with surgically induced peripheral stenoses, the use of balloon angioplasty and stenting procedures creates favorable pulmonary artery anatomy and reduces the risk for subsequent surgical repairs (Fig. 78.16). Peripheral pulmonary artery stenosis is not a surgically amenable lesion and is particularly suited to catheterization and angioplasty. Balloon angioplasty is accomplished by tearing the vascular intima and media, allowing the vessel to remodel and heal with a larger diameter. The balloon is placed across the stenotic lesion so that the middle of the balloon is at the stenosis. The balloon is inflated until the waist of the balloon is eliminated. Ideally, the most stenotic lesions are dilated first to minimize the impact on PBF and cardiac output. When the balloon is inflated, PBF is reduced, right ventricular afterload is increased, and cardiac output falls. In patients with an associated VSD or ASD, right-to-left shunting and desaturation occur with balloon inflation. In patients without a shunt, acute increase in right ventricular afterload can cause systemic hypotension and right ventricular failure. The large vascular sheaths required for these procedures can introduce tricuspid regurgitation, which is poorly tolerated in patients with severe RV hypertension. Occasionally, balloon catheters must be placed across aortopulmonary shunts, significantly reducing PBF.

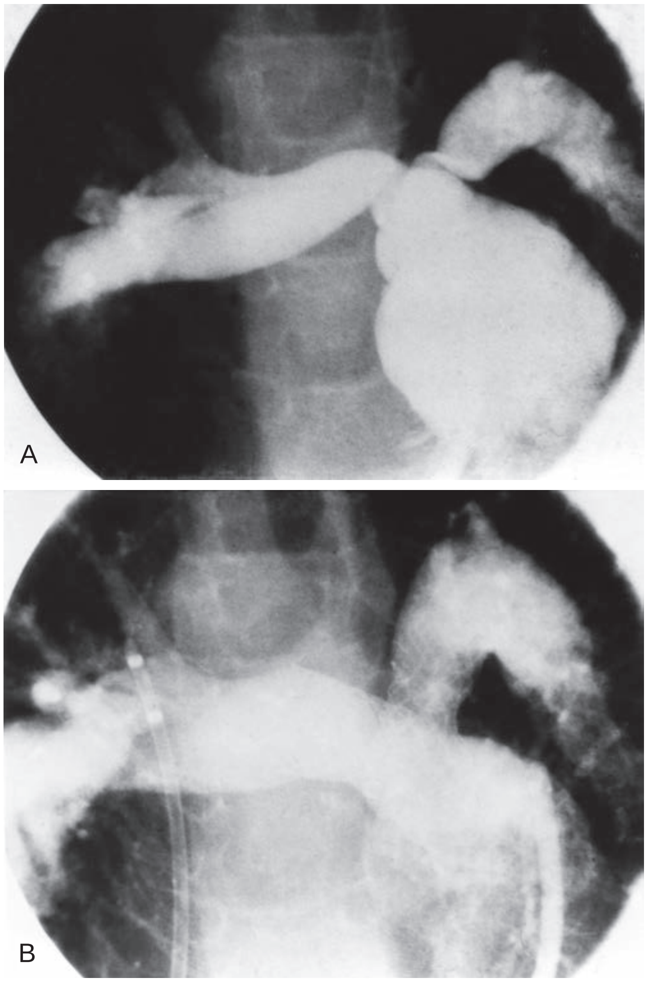


Fig. 78.16 (A) Severe bilateral branch pulmonary artery stenoses at the distal end of a conduit in a patient with pulmonary trunk atresia and ventricular septal defect. Stents were placed in the right and left pulmonary arteries. (B) Follow-up angiogram in the same projection and magnification showed marked improvement of both right and left stenoses.

The procedure is successful in approximately 60% of patients. In an early series, complications included hypotension (40%), pulmonary artery rupture (3%), unilateral reperfusion pulmonary edema (4%), aneurysmal dilation of the dilated pulmonary vessel (8%), death (1.5%), and transient postprocedural right ventricular dysfunction.[348] Improved techniques and patient selection have favorably influenced the results with superior balloon catheters and stents while significantly reducing serious complications. Anesthetic support minimizes hemodynamic compromise by anticipating changes in blood flow patterns, treating transient hypotension, and providing airway support to minimize the risks associated with pulmonary artery disruption and acute unilateral pulmonary edema.[348]

A unique group of patients are those with Williams syndrome with supravalvular aortic and pulmonary stenosis. Such patients can have multiple areas of severe branch pulmonary artery stenosis, with resultant systemic or suprasystemic right ventricular pressures and right ventricular dysfunction. Patients can also have coronary stenosis and develop subendocardial ischemia from hemodynamic disturbances in the setting of biventricular hypertrophy. The presence of supravalvular aortic stenosis, biventricular outflow tract obstruction, and coronary stenosis is associated with increased perioperative risk. Typically, such patients undergo general anesthesia with positive-pressure ventilation and recover in the cardiac ICU for angioplasty of branch pulmonary artery stenosis.[349] Care must be exercised in maintaining SVR, myocardial oxygenation, and contractility. Tachycardia and subendocardial ischemia should be avoided in the presence of ventricular hypertrophy.

BALLOON VALVULOTOMIES

Balloon valvulotomies conducted in well-compensated infants and children often can be accomplished without anesthetic support. Exceptions include neonates with critical aortic or pulmonary stenosis and patients with significant ventricular dysfunction who exhibit unstable hemodynamics. Balloon valvuloplasty is indicated in valvular pulmonary or aortic stenosis with valvular gradients more than 50 mm Hg. Balloon dilation is effective in most patients, except those with dysplastic valves (e.g., Noonan syndrome); postdilation pulmonary incompetence is anticipated and does not pose a problem in the immediate and intermediate period. Long-term prophylaxis for subacute bacterial endocarditis is needed. Only 8% of patients require repeat interventions. Typically, patients recover in the ICU and may require transfusion depending on hemodynamic stability. Valvular aortic stenosis is associated with poor surgical outcome in the neonatal period. All therapies are palliative, with a high incidence of repeat interventions, and balloon valvuloplasty is often the initial treatment. Residual obstruction or regurgitation is common after balloon dilatation and can require repeat intervention. A real risk exists for damage to the aortic valve and subaortic septum, with the consequence of acute aortic insufficiency and coronary ischemia. Hypotension and bradycardia commonly occur during valvuloplasty, and many centers have a policy of ECMO standby for these high-risk interventions in the catheterization laboratory. Ready availability of a surgical and perfusion team is crucial to a good outcome. Neonates with critical aortic stenosis often require stabilization with inotropes and prostaglandins to maintain systemic perfusion before the procedure. Balloon dilation of recurrent coarctation is often the therapy of choice in older children with recoarctation after surgery. Such patients are often hypertensive. The procedure can be performed with the patient under deep sedation or general anesthesia. In infants after Norwood palliation for HLHS, coarctation can occur in the distal arch anastomotic site. Catheters placed antegrade via the right side of the heart into the neoaorta can induce hemodynamically significant tricuspid and neoaortic regurgitation, resulting in hemodynamic instability. Careful monitoring and aggressive hemodynamic intervention result in a good outcome.

COIL EMBOLIZATION

Transcatheter methods can be adapted to occlude undesired vascular structures. Intravascular coils have been used to close PDAs, aortopulmonary collaterals, surgical systemic and pulmonary artery shunts, venous collaterals in single ventricle lesions, coronary fistulas, and some arteriovenous malformations (e.g., vein of Galen malformation). In selected instances, to minimize the risk that coils may escape to threaten vital organ perfusion, cardiologists request the use of general anesthesia with a muscle relaxant.

Depending on the lesion, patients might manifest severe cyanosis, low-output or high-output cardiac failure, or coronary ischemia. Extra care should be exercised in patients with coronary fistulas to maintain myocardial O_2 supply and reduce demand. Materials used for embolization can include surgical gel (Gelfoam), alcohol, and coils. Some of these substances can induce severe allergic reactions with hemodynamic collapse. Antibiotic prophylaxis is mandatory to prevent bacterial endocarditis. Angiography is used to demonstrate successful occlusion of the vascular structure and ascertain appropriate placement.

VALVE PROSTHESES

Transcatheter bioprosthetic valve replacement of the pulmonary and aortic valves is being performed. The pulmonary valve is a bovine jugular venous valve mounted on a balloon-expandable Cheatham platinum stent. The technique is limited by the maximum size of 22 mm of the bovine jugular venous valve. Percutaneous placement of bioprosthetic valve in the pulmonary position is a reality, and further refinement and miniaturization will lead to its application in aneurysmal right ventricular outflow tract. Current candidates for the implantation of transcatheter pulmonary valve include age of 5 years or older, weight of 30 kg or more, and a conduit diameter of 16 to 22 mm. Candidates have moderate-to-severe pulmonary regurgitation, often with RV dilation or dysfunction and mean right ventricular outflow tract gradients greater than 35 mm Hg. A single-center study comparing transcatheter PVR versus surgical PVR found that patients younger than 17 years of age had better pulmonary valve function following transcatheter versus surgically replaced valves.[350] Transcatheter PVR reduces even significant tricuspid valve regurgitation in patients with RV outflow obstruction and pulmonary regurgitation.[351] Interestingly, a prospective study of transcatheter PVR found significant increases in the size of the pulmonary artery postprocedure; this finding is of unclear significance for patient selection and long-term outcome.[352]

Transcatheter aortic valve replacement continues to be used in the management of adult patients with complex status and aortic stenosis who are not considered surgical candidates because of surgical risk. The use of these devices in pediatrics has been limited. Some authors have described the use of transcatheter pulmonary valves in the high-pressure circuit with good short-term performance. Complications of the transcatheter valve placements include wire perforation of vessels, conduit rupture, or coronary artery compression.

EMERGENT PROCEDURES

Emergent interventions such as balloon atrial septostomy to ensure adequate mixing in patients with transposition physiology and in patients who have restrictive ASD with single ventricle physiology are lifesaving and enable planning surgery at a suitable time. The procedure can be performed at the bedside with echocardiography or in the catheterization laboratory with fluoroscopic confirmation of balloon position. Access is by the femoral or umbilical vein, and the balloon catheter is advanced through the foramen ovale into the LA. The balloon is inflated with contrast and pulled back via the septum until a satisfactory ASD is created. If the procedure is successful, the left and right atrial pressures should equalize and adequate mixing should occur. Oxygenation and pulmonary venous drainage should improve. Complications include atrial perforation, laceration of the mitral or tricuspid valves and pulmonary veins, and low cardiac output state. Balloon atrial septostomy is also performed emergently in patients receiving ECMO therapy for left-sided heart decompression.

ENDOMYOCARDIAL BIOPSY

Typically, endomyocardial biopsies are performed as part of posttransplant surveillance catheterizations at regular intervals to ascertain absence of rejection in patients after orthotopic heart transplantation. Right-sided heart catheterization is usually performed by access of the right internal jugular vein, through which the long sheath and biotome are introduced. Usually five to eight samples are taken. Endomyocardial biopsies are also used to confirm a diagnosis of myocarditis or cardiomyopathy; sedation or general anesthesia is required for smaller children, although older children can undergo this procedure with local anesthesia alone. Children who undergo catheterization during a period of acute rejection are at high risk for malignant arrhythmias during endomyocardial biopsy and might require resuscitation. A clinical history suggestive of an episode of rejection includes fever, gastrointestinal disturbances, and arrhythmias. Complications include perforation, tricuspid valve damage, and the development of coronary-to–right ventricular fistulas.

CARDIAC CATHETERIZATION OF PATIENTS SUPPORTED BY EXTRACORPOREAL MEMBRANE OXYGENATION

Booth and associates[353] reported on the Boston experience of cardiac catheterization in pediatric patients supported with ECMO. Indications included assessment of surgical repair, left-sided heart decompression, myocarditis or cardiomyopathy, hemodynamic assessment, catheter interventions, and ablation of arrhythmias. The most common interventions were left-sided heart decompression in patients with left atrial hypertension, balloon angioplasty of the pulmonary arteries, and endomyocardial biopsy. The anesthesiologist coordinates safe transport of the patient on mechanical support with the perfusion and nursing team. The logistics of the transport, availability of surgeon, and blood need to be addressed before the transfer. Anesthesia is provided using isoflurane or sedatives on the ECMO circuit, and paralysis must be achieved before transport. Rest ventilation of the lungs is continued. The anesthesiologist's role is in managing a safe transport and attending to emergency mechanical, cardiorespiratory, and hematologic issues.

At present, hybrid techniques find a niche in lesions in which cardiac surgery is problematic, such as apical muscular or anterior muscular VSDs or in high-risk patients with more complex lesions in which immediate surgery is contraindicated or is associated with significant morbidity and mortality. Close collaboration is required so that a surgical approach is modified to facilitate the subsequent interventional approach. The hybrid approach has been used in the management of HLHS. Stage 1 palliation is performed by creation of an atrial septal communication and stent placement in the ductus arteriosus during catheterization to maintain ductal patency with surgically applied external right and left pulmonary artery bands or transcatheter-placed internal bands.[354,355] A modified Norwood procedure with a bidirectional Glenn anastomosis is performed with CPB during stage 2 palliation.[356] Stage 3 (Fontan operation) is performed entirely by transcatheter techniques.[357] In the current surgical climate, it seems difficult to promote ductal stenting as a method of choice but in patients with contraindications to immediate surgery this provides an attractive bridge.[358]

Adult Congenital Heart Disease

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND CLASSIFICATION

The care of adults with CHD is a new and exciting frontier in medicine. Adult congenital heart disease (ACHD) represents a large spectrum of clinical entities ranging from mild to severe and palliated to corrected, with no or multiple adult comorbidities. The incidence of CHD is estimated to be 3 to 6 cases per 1000 live births. Approximately 85% of these patients can be expected to reach adulthood.[359] The prevalence of CHD is rising in both children and adults, with adults representing the largest group.

At the Bethesda conference in 2001, patients with ACHD were categorized into groups of simple, moderate, or great complexity based on medical diagnosis.[359] Anesthesiologists should be aware of the Bethesda task conference recommendations for ACHD in terms of distribution of care for these patients. It is recommended that patients with CHD of great complexity be regularly seen at tertiary care centers that specialize in ACHD.

CONSIDERATIONS IN THE CARE OF PATIENTS WITH ADULT CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE

Adults with CHD may present with unique anatomy or physiologic sequelae not otherwise encountered in pediatric patients with CHD. Some patients with ACHD may have had palliative repairs no longer primarily employed for specific diseases today, such as the Mustard or Senning procedure for dextro-transposition of the great arteries (d-TGA). In addition, these patients may not have complete awareness or access to information on medical treatments completed when they were a child. As the number of patients with ACHD increases, so do the chances an anesthesiologist will need to care for one of these patients in an emergent situation. In general, practitioners would want to gather as much information as available in regard to the details of the patient's medical history, surgical repairs, and current functional status.

General considerations include presence of arrhythmias, hypoxemia, pulmonary hypertension, ventricular dysfunction, shunts, thrombosis, and need for antibiotic prophylaxis. Arrhythmias are one of the most common sequelae in adults with CHD. Common arrhythmias occur as the result of atrial dilation and include atrial fibrillation or flutter, which may or may not be hemodynamically significant. A right bundle branch block pattern of the QRS segment of the ECG is common after repair of TOF. In the absence of lung disease, hypoxemia results from a decrease of PBF, either due to obstruction or right-to-left shunting. Strategies to avoid further hypoxemia include adequate hydration, ventilation, and pulmonary perfusion while decreasing PVR or O_2 consumption. It is prudent to determine patient baseline SpO_2 as a reference for the anesthetic. Many patients with ACHD with chronic hypoxemia may require hematocrit values greater than 45% to allow for adequate O_2 delivery; O_2 carrying capacity may be maximized by the administration of packed RBCs. Along with cyanosis, the presence of polycythemia in these patients increases their thromboembolic risk.

The presence of pulmonary hypertension should always be considered when caring for patients with ACHD. Chronic volume overload to the pulmonary vascular bed creates hypertrophy of the arterioles with resultant pulmonary hypertension. Common defects where pulmonary hypertension may be found in childhood include shunt lesions, which, if untreated, result in pulmonary vasoocclusive disease. When hypoxemia is present with these conditions, a high level of suspicion for pulmonary hypertension and possibly Eisenmenger syndrome is necessary. The anesthesiologist should always have a high level of suspicion for the presence of ventricular dysfunction in patients with ACHD. Many CHD defects place a volume or pressure load on the heart that over time may lead to dilated or hypertrophied performance. The careful titration of induction and maintenance agents that maintain ventricular performance is warranted in providing anesthesia care. Shunts of varying size and location may be created in the care of hypoxic patients with CHD in an effort to increase PBF. In many cases, patients rely on the patency of these shunts to supply the lungs with blood and their occlusion could be catastrophic. Likewise, thrombosis of various shunts or cardiac chambers may occur related to altered patterns of blood flow. Therefore, specific anticoagulation strategies may be required to ensure blood flow. The American Heart Association has provided updated guidelines regarding recommendations for prophylaxis against infective endocarditis, and specific guidelines may be found in this chapter (Table 78.12).

TABLE 78.12 Infective Endocarditis Prophylaxis

		SINGLE DOSE 30-60 MIN BEFORE DENTAL PROCEDURE	
Situation	**Drug**	**Adults**	**Children**
Oral	Amoxicillin	2 g	50 mg/kg
Unable to take oral medication	Ampicillin or	2 g IM/IV	50 mg/kg IM/IV
	Cefazolin/ceftriaxone	1 g IM/IV	50 mg/kg IM/IV
Allergic to penicillins/oral	Cephalexin or	2 g	50 mg/kg IM/IV
	Clindamycin or	600 mg	20 mg/kg IM/IV
	Azithromycin/clarithromycin	500 mg	15 mg/kg
Allergic to penicillins/unable to take oral medication	Cefazolin/ceftriaxone or	1 g IM/IV	50 mg/kg IM/IV
	Clindamycin	600 mg	20 mg/kg

Vancomycin is an alternative for patients who are unable to tolerate a β-lactam or when the infective agent is considered to be methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*.

SPECIFIC LESIONS WITH UNIQUE CONSIDERATIONS FOR ADULT CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE

Tetralogy of Fallot

TOF consists of four defects of varying physiologic significance: malignant type VSD, varying degrees of right ventricular outflow tract obstruction, right ventricular hypertrophy, and an overriding aorta. The typical clinical significance of this pattern of cardiac anomalies is that of hypoxia as a result of decreased PBF. In the early stages of treatment of TOF the systemic–pulmonary artery shunt (Blalock-Taussig shunt) was used to allow the child to grow, followed by a definitive repair later in life. Many patients up until the 1970s may have had classic Blalock-Taussig shunt or central shunts performed. A mBTS is used today for patients who require augmented PBF but who are not candidates for early complete repair. Most infants undergo complete repair in the first year of life; on occasion, a degree of pulmonary stenosis protects the lung from overcirculation of blood from the VSD while allowing adequate PBF for growth, and these patients may ultimately not require surgical repair.

Adults with TOF may have had any of these potential surgical repairs. The type of repair completed and functional status of the repair should be ascertained. The most common long-term complication after TOF repair is pulmonary insufficiency; cardiac MRI is utilized to follow right ventricular volumes over time to aid in the timing of surgical repair or pulmonary valve replacement.[360] Elevated jugular venous pressures and hepatomegaly should alert the anesthesiologist to right ventricular failure. Other complications of TOF repair include arrhythmias of right ventricular origin or right bundle branch block patterns on the ECG, particularly in the case of previous ventriculotomy. Cyanosis in these patients suggests inadequate PBF.

Fontan Circulations

In the early1970s, Fontan and Kreutzer preformed a procedure in a patient with tricuspid atresia in an attempt to separate the PBF from the systemic circulation[361]; known now as the Fontan procedure, or total cavopulmonary anastomosis, the goal is to divert deoxygenated venous blood return directly and passively from the systemic venous circulation to the lungs, allowing the single ventricle to pump oxygenated blood to the systemic circulation. This principle of blood diversion is now applied to many types of functionally single-ventricle patients, usually as a series of two to three-staged procedures. Currently, Fontan operations for single-ventricle patients are performed on patients between 2 and 4 years of age, resulting in separation of pulmonary and systemic circulations. However, occasionally, adults present without having undergone a complete separation of circulations. Such patients have variable levels of cyanosis and ventricular dysfunction.

Even with the completion of total cavopulmonary anastomosis, many patients experience a decreased survival beyond 15 years after surgery. Impaired systolic and diastolic ventricular function as well as increased PVR contribute to mortality, and HF therapies to treat two-ventricle patients may not be efficacious in one-ventricle patients.[362] Common causes of death after Fontan procedures include thromboembolism, HF, protein-losing enteropathy, and arrhythmias.[363] When caring for adults with Fontan physiology, the anesthesiologist should be mindful of conditions that may further impair oxygenation and myocardial function. PBF is passive, and any condition that increases PVR, or decreases systemic venous volume, will be poorly tolerated. These patients may also be very sensitive to myocardial depressants. In addition, the initial Fontan procedures included a direct baffle of the atrium to the pulmonary artery, but this was later modified because of complications from atrial dilation and the resulting arrhythmias. Fontan procedures are currently extracardiac, to minimize atrial arrhythmia. Expected O_2 saturation in a patient with Fontan physiology is at least 95%, though it may be lower in a patient with Fontan failure. Chronic anticoagulation for patients who have previously demonstrated, or are at presumed high risk for, thromboembolism is common and must be considered preoperatively.

Transposition of the Great Arteries

TGA occurs when the aorta arises from the anatomic RV and the pulmonary artery arises from the anatomic LV. In classic d-TGA the two circulations are in parallel and require mixing to be compatible with life. In the 1980s, surgical management of TGA consisted of atrial-level switch procedures—the Mustard or Senning procedure—in which venous return to the heart was redirected at the atrial level though a baffle system. Therefore, highly oxygenated pulmonary venous return was redirected to the RV, which pumped to the aorta and systemic circulation. Systemic deoxygenated blood was directed to the LV, which pumped the blood through the pulmonary artery to the lungs for oxygenation. Long-term complications of this strategy include atrial dilation from baffle obstruction or leak with resultant arrhythmias, sinus node dysfunction, or sudden death. Particularly problematic complications included the systemic right ventricular dysfunction, AV valve regurgitation, subpulmonary stenosis, and pulmonary hypertension. Today, the arterial switch operation is preferred, in which the aorta with the coronary arteries are attached to the LV and the pulmonary artery is attached to the RV. Complications from the arterial switch operation include regurgitation of the neoaortic valve, myocardial ischemia from coronary ostial stenosis, right or left ventricular outflow tract obstruction, residual intracardiac shunting, and left ventricular dysfunction.

Pediatric Cardiac Electrophysiology

DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

Cardiac Event Monitoring

Most patients with cardiac arrhythmias present with infrequent or episodic symptoms. These symptoms may include chest pain, palpitations, syncope, and presyncope. Transtelephonic electrocardiographic event monitors may yield documentation of the arrhythmia because they are portable and patient activated.[364]

Insertable Cardiac Recorders

Insertable loop recorders implanted subcutaneously allow continuous rhythm monitoring that is stored either when manually activated by a patient or parent or automatically when high or low rate parameters are met.[365] These insertable loop recorders have value in correlating arrhythmias with symptoms when noninvasive means do not make a diagnosis. Typically, loop recorders are inserted under general anesthesia as an outpatient procedure and cause minimal pain.

RADIOFREQUENCY ABLATION OF ACCESSORY PATHWAYS

Radiofrequency ablation is a nonsurgical approach designed to eliminate atrial or ventricular reentrant tachyarrhythmias. The technique requires pathway mapping and precision ablation of the aberrant pathway, using a radiofrequency ablation catheter. Catheter ablation is offered to patients with refractory arrhythmias that are bothersome and the focus or pathway is amenable to ablation. Supraventricular tachycardias (SVTs) have an incidence of 1 in 250 to 1000 children and usually present later in childhood.[366] Up to 50% of adults with CHD develop SVT.[367] Although right-sided pathways are easier to access, left-sided pathways that require a transseptal puncture have a better cure rate.[368] In pediatrics, the electrophysiology catheters are introduced by femoral venous catheterization and the tips are positioned in the right atrial appendage, the bundle of His area, right ventricular apex, and the coronary sinus. Occasionally, right internal jugular venous access is used for placement of the coronary sinus catheter. Rapid atrial pacing and, occasionally, an isoproterenol infusion are required during the mapping procedure to induce the arrhythmia. An ablation catheter is used to map the substrate, and, subsequently, the pathway is ablated using radiofrequency energy (300-750 kHz). In complex cases or in cases with pathways in the vicinity of the AV node, cryotherapy is used to limit damage to the AV node. Cryotherapy permits a slower burn, and the ability to stop the ablation if transient AV block or lengthening of the PR interval occurs. General anesthesia is required for ablation procedures in children, as unexpected patient movement may result in catheter dislodgment and damage to normal conducting tissue.

Anesthetic drugs and techniques should aim to maintain circulating catecholamines and avoid suppression of arrhythmogenesis, to aid in identification of the aberrant pathway. Total intravenous anesthesia with propofol or a low-dose volatile anesthetic are equally satisfactory options. Data suggest that modern inhaled anesthetics such as isoflurane and sevoflurane have no significant effects on cardiac conduction in children with SVT and are therefore suitable options.[369,370] There is conflicting evidence on desflurane with more recent data suggesting it may block AV conduction and therefore may not be a good anesthetic in these cases.[371] An increased incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV) is reported after these procedures, which is not only distressing but may produce bleeding from the access sites. Both low-dose propofol infusion and low-dose volatile anesthetic may be used along with the bispectral index monitor to maintain a lighter level of anesthesia. To minimize the risk of PONV, two classes of antinausea medications should be administered. Placement of an arterial line is needed for rapid atrial pacing and isoproterenol during the mapping procedure, both of which can cause significant hypotension. Medications that suppress conduction or decrease sympathetic tone, including dexmedetomidine, should be avoided until the end of the procedure.

Severe postablation cardiomyopathy has been described but is very unusual. Presumed causative factors include underlying cardiomyopathy from frequent episodes of SVT, and myocardial O_2 imbalance caused by prolonged periods of rapid atrial pacing and isoproterenol infusions. Other procedure complications include radiation exposure, tamponade, pericarditis, groin hematoma, arterial thrombosis, AV block, systemic embolization, coronary artery dissection, trauma to the mitral and tricuspid valves, and endocarditis.

Intraatrial Reentrant Tachycardia

Intraatrial reentrant tachycardia (IART) is the most common arrhythmia in CHD and is associated with significant morbidity and mortality. The incidence of IART is highest in patients who have undergone Fontan and atrial switch operations because of atrial incisions, sutures lines, and dilation, and fibrosis caused by long-term hemodynamic changes.[367] Therapeutic options for IART include antiarrhythmic medications, radiofrequency catheter ablation, cryoablation, surgery, and pacing. The Pediatric and Congenital Electrophysiology Society and the Heart Rhythm Society have published comprehensive guidelines for arrhythmia management in ACHD.[372] Careful choice of anesthetic, monitoring, and early management of low cardiac output states, especially in patients with single-ventricle physiology, are important. Prolonged periods of arrhythmia induction during mapping can reduce cardiac output and necessitate inotropic therapy. Cardiac ICU may be indicated for postoperative recovery. Although acute success rates are high at 90%, arrhythmia recurrence is problematic in this population occurring in 34% to 54% of patients. Fontan physiology and older age are risk factors for recurrence.[367,373] As more patients with CHD survive into adulthood, the incidence of both permanent IART and atrial fibrillation are increasing.[374]

Intraoperative cryoablation within the RA for patients with IART or LA for atrial fibrillation using preoperative and intraoperative mapping can be used successfully. Atrial antitachycardia pacing is an option to terminate treatable tachycardias; a single-center cohort study demonstrated that this technology decreased the need for cardioversion rate in patients with CHD.[375] Atrial antitachycardia pacing has reduced efficacy in patients with L-TGA. In patients who are either unsuitable candidates for catheter ablation or in whom ablation has been unsuccessful, surgical ablation may be successfully combined with repair of CHD.

Arrhythmias and Sudden Cardiac Death

Certain cardiomyopathies and channelopathies are associated with an increased risk for sudden cardiac death resulting from lethal arrhythmias. The patient usually has a history of syncope, near-syncope, or aborted sudden death. Such patients present for insertion of automated internal cardioverter-defibrillators (AICDs) for either primary or secondary prevention.

IMPLANTATION OF PACEMAKERS AND DEFIBRILLATORS

Pacemakers are indicated for complete heart block or sinus node dysfunction with symptomatic bradycardia and hemodynamic decompensation. Children usually require general anesthesia with endotracheal intubation. It should be noted that the anesthetic can be associated with worsening bradycardia. Transthoracic pacing pads are applied before induction of anesthesia, and an isoproterenol infusion should be available in case its needed for chronotropy. External transthoracic, esophageal, or emergent transvenous pacing may be necessary until placement of a permanent pacing device is achieved. In small children the pacemaker generator is typically placed in the upper abdomen, and in older children and teenagers it is placed in the subclavicular region. Epicardial leads are used in small children because of inadequate size of the veins and in those in whom transvenous access to the heart is impossible (e.g., the Fontan circulation). Epicardial pacemaker placement usually is performed by a cardiac surgeon, with electrophysiologists readily available to program the device. Adequate peripheral venous access is mandatory in the event of major hemorrhage, and blood should be readily available. A mode of monitoring mechanical capture of electrical pacing activity is also necessary and can include invasive arterial monitoring or pulse plethysmography. Transvenous pacing can be achieved in the operating room with surgical backup or in the cardiac catheterization laboratory by the cardiologists. In the latter situation it is important to address the need for surgical backup during case planning.

AICDs are placed for life-threatening ventricular arrhythmias, which include LQTS, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, and arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia. Of note, the device is tested after placement, with induction of ventricular fibrillation. It is absolutely essential to have external modes of defibrillation available, as well as antiarrhythmics such as amiodarone, magnesium, and lidocaine, in the event of device failure. These devices are placed with the patient under general anesthesia with endotracheal intubation and controlled ventilation. Invasive arterial pressure monitoring is typically used. Adequate analgesia can be provided with local infiltration with local anesthetics and short-acting intravenous opioids. Patients are admitted overnight with telemetry monitoring. Appropriate antibiotic therapy is provided for a 24-hour period.

Advances in Resynchronization Therapy

Bundle branch block or interventricular conduction delay often accompanies HF and some forms of CHD, either preoperatively or postoperatively, and may result in ventricular dysfunction caused by asynchronous myocardial contraction. Biventricular pacing is an attempt to resynchronize ventricular contraction by pacing both ventricles, thereby improving overall ventricular function. In patients with left bundle branch block, cardiac resynchronization therapy counteracts the underlying electrical and mechanical dyssynchrony, leading to improved contractility, function, exercise tolerance, and quality of life. Multisite pacing, involving intraoperative placement of atrial and ventricular unipolar epicardial temporary pacing wires, improves cardiac index and systolic blood pressure in the immediate postbypass period.[376] Multisite, temporary pacing may not be indicated or necessary to improve function in low-risk, biventricular repairs[377]; however, despite long-term outcome data, multisite pacing has become standard in many circumstances, including single-ventricle physiology, redo-procedures, or in patients at high risk for morbidity and mortality.

Right bundle branch block is a common outcome after surgery for congenital heart lesions. Right ventricular pressure, volume loading, or both also may be present, with attendant right ventricular enlargement and dyskinesis. Dual-chamber pacing decreases the QRS duration and increases cardiac index; the pacing site producing the most narrow QRS duration is of most benefit.[378,379]

Anesthesia for Noncardiac Surgery

INFECTIVE ENDOCARDITIS PROPHYLAXIS: AMERICAN HEART ASSOCIATION GUIDELINES

Guidelines for infective endocarditis prophylaxis were updated by the American College of Cardiology and the American Heart Association in 2008. A detailed discussion of the changes is beyond the scope of this chapter.

Procedures for which prophylaxis for infective endocarditis is recommended include the following[380]:

- Dental procedures involving manipulation of the gingival tissue or periapical region of the teeth or involving perforation of the oral mucosa
- Respiratory procedures involving incision of the respiratory mucosa
- Procedures involving infected skin, skin structure, or musculoskeletal tissue

Prophylaxis is no longer routinely recommended for gastrointestinal and genitourinary procedures. For elective procedures, coexisting enterococcal urinary tract infections should be treated before genitourinary or gastrointestinal procedures; for emergent procedures, in patients at highest risk for infective endocarditis, prophylaxis can be considered.

Conditions for which prophylaxis is recommended for dental procedures include the following (see Table 78.12):

- Prosthetic cardiac valve
- Previous infective endocarditis
- Unrepaired CHD, including palliative shunts and conduits
- Completely repaired CHD with prosthetic material or device within the first 6 months after the procedure
- Repaired CHD with residual defects at the site or adjacent to the site of a prosthetic patch or device
- Cardiac transplant recipients who develop cardiac valvulopathy

These are guidelines only, and it is prudent practice to consult the child's cardiologist in order to create an individualized plan based on the child's condition, operative procedure, and risk for bacteremia.

MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGING OF THE HEART

A major advantage of MRI is the ability to assess the volume and mass of asymmetric ventricular shapes, especially the RV. The American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) has published a practice advisory on anesthetic care for MRI.[381] Apart from the usual considerations of providing general anesthesia in a remote location, the anesthesiologist must be prepared to provide resuscitative care when working in a magnetic field necessitating the use of magnet-safe equipment. Patients with implanted devices and hardware need to be assessed to ensure magnet compatibility and safety. Generally, pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, and aneurysm clips are contraindications to MRI. Coils, stents, and other surgical clips produce interference and imaging artifact but do not constitute a threat to patient safety. In a majority of patients, the scan can be performed as an outpatient procedure.

Patients who are younger, uncooperative, or claustrophobic require sedation or general anesthesia. Good image quality, angiography, and delayed enhancement imaging are aided by breath holds, which may last for more than one minute and require preoxygenation. Typically, if breath holds are required, general endotracheal anesthesia is required and an anesthesia provider is present in the room. However, radiologic advances have allowed many centers to use "free breathing" protocols to avoid the need for breath holds and therefore general anesthesia.[382,383] Such protocols acquire multiple images, then use an algorithm that eliminates the artifact created by respiration. Radiologists are increasingly cognizant of the potential risk of general anesthesia in young children and are adapting protocols to avoid the need for general anesthesia when possible.[384]

Irrespective of anesthetic technique, it is mandatory to maintain continuous monitoring of heart rate, pulse oximetry, capnography, and noninvasive blood pressure. In the event of hemodynamic compromise, the patient should be removed from the MRI scanner into a safe environment where resuscitation equipment can be safely used. With the development of compatible catheters and devices, MRI is a useful tool in minimizing x-ray exposure, particularly in patients whose CHD necessitates numerous catheterization procedures. Cardiac MRI may be used in combination with fluoroscopy in the catheterization suite to decrease radiation exposure and improve soft tissue visualization in patients with CHD.[385]

Offsite Anesthesia in Cardiac Surgery Patients

Patients with cardiac disease are no different from any other group of patients who require procedures or investigations in areas outside the operating room. Therefore, anesthesiologists should always be prepared for any eventuality and follow guidelines such as those set out by the ASA. This discussion excludes procedures performed in the cardiac catheterization laboratory as this has been addressed elsewhere. The nature of congenital cardiac surgery will result in a number of patients requiring emergent chest exploration for hemorrhage or to relieve tamponade, or for ECMO cannulation, all of which may take place in the ICU setting. It is obvious that we cannot predict with certainty which patients will have problematic postoperative courses, but the practitioners who have participated in the operative phase will gain an accurate sense of which patients may require possible further exploration or surgery. Accordingly, it is best to plan ahead, and prepare for worst-case scenarios. It is imperative that enough blood and blood products are available to perform surgery at any given time. Successful treatment of emergency situations depends on a team approach to patient care, and thus surgeons, anesthesiologists, intensivists, perfusionists, and operating room nurses must be immediately available. When the decision is made to perform a procedure within the ICU, speed of preparation is of the essence. Drugs, electrolytes, and infusions must be readily available. Emergent preparation includes ensuring that blood is checked, a warmer is ready for use, emergency drugs are present, and the code cart (with internal paddles) is available. The anesthesiologist's role is one of facilitation of the entire procedure including sedation, airway management, patient positioning, preparing the blood, and continuing ongoing volume and pharmacologic resuscitation.

The premature infant with a PDA poses an interesting management problem to cardiac surgery teams because frequently these ill neonates are at hospitals far from major centers where the team is normally assembled. As referenced in an article by Gould and associates,[328] teams have been performing these ductal ligations with great success at hospitals remote from their "home" hospitals. The philosophy is to take the cardiac team to the neonate instead of having these fragile infants transported. In this article, neonates operated on in the "home" hospital NICU were used as the controls, and it was found that the success and complication rates were comparable in the two groups. Thus, from an anesthetic perspective, travel with a full complement of airway equipment and drugs, as described earlier, with packed red cells being made available at the host hospital. The anesthetic regimen for this procedure comprises a high-dose opioid, muscle relaxant, antibiotic, and a continuation of any preoperative vasoactive infusions. We have found that this is a stable and well-tolerated anesthetic regimen.

The requirement for anesthesia services is ever-widening, and in patients with pediatric heart disease this is also the case. Thus, the patients will require radiologic investigations, including CT, MRI, and nuclear medicine scans; interventional radiology procedures; and gastrointestinal procedures, among others. Before discussion of the patient and the anesthetic, it is important for the practitioners to have a thorough knowledge of the environment into which they are taking the patient with regard to magnetic fields, closest code cart, and the ability to get help quickly if needed. Without going into the specifics of every potential clinical scenario, a few basic points are discussed.

As with any anesthetic procedure, a thorough preoperative evaluation is vital. Most patients with pediatric heart disease have long and complex histories, so this assessment should include a detailed description of their cardiac status, including prior surgeries, catheterization findings, and associated conditions (e.g., neurocognitive function, pulmonary status, renal function). Depending on the patient's underlying condition a recent echocardiogram will give very important clinical details related to overall function, valve pathology, presence or absence of intracardiac shunt, patency of surgical shunts, and presence of pericardial fluid. Although this may be ideal, often the echocardiographic examination may be remote from the anesthetic encounter and thus the clinical history and examination are important. Patients who have had a heart transplant should have a relatively recent echocardiogram, as it will provide vital information that may indicate worsening function in an otherwise asymptomatic patient.

Nothing-by-mouth guidelines deserve special consideration. Many congenital cardiac patients have physiology in which dehydration may be deleterious (e.g., single-ventricle, presence of surgical shunts, unrepaired TOF). In these patients, it is important to allow and encourage oral hydration up until 2 hours before the planned procedure; if this is not possible, intravenous fluids must be used. The anesthetic course will depend on the duration of the planned procedure, the patient's physiology (i.e., spontaneous vs. controlled ventilation), airway management (natural vs. laryngeal mask airway vs. endotracheal tube airway), anesthetic maintenance, travel to and from the procedural area, and maintenance of the patient's temperature. Before leaving the induction area the anesthetic team must be prepared for airway misadventures and even a code situation; thus, the team must travel with auxiliary airway equipment and resuscitative drugs. The very number of these different venues may make it difficult to have an anesthesia machine present in each; however, an anesthetic cart with additional airway equipment, intravenous materials, and resuscitative drugs should be present. The anesthetic that is delivered may vary among practitioners and institutions, but the common details of importance are a thorough knowledge of the patient and the ability to treat expeditiously should any difficulty ensue in a remote venue.

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and returning author Dr. William J. Greeley, would like to thank Dr. Aruna T. Nathan and the late Dr. Chad C. Cripe for their contributions to this chapter in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Hickey PR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:657.
2. Teitel DF, et al. *Pediatr Res*. 1985;19:948.
3. Teitel DF, et al. *Pediatr Res*. 1991;29:473.
4. Thornburg KL, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1983;244:H656.
5. Vetter R, et al. *Biomed Biochim Acta*. 1986;45:S219.
6. Humphreys JE, et al. *J Mol Cell Cardiol*. 1984;16:643.
7. Jarmakani JM, et al. *Dev Pharmacol Ther*. 1982;5(1).
8. Nassar R, et al. *Circ Res*. 1987;61:465.
9. Muhiudeen IA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:165.
10. Ungerleider RM, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1989;63(suppl):3F–8F, 14F.
11. Greeley WJ, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1988;95:842.
12. Cheng HH, et al. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2011;32:1139.
13. Tanner K, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2005;116:e833.
14. Rosenthal GL, et al. *Am J Epidemiol*. 1991;133:1273.
15. Simpson JM, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2001;87:1372.
16. Kramer HH, et al. *Eur J Pediatr*. 1990;149:752.
17. Reddy VM, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1999;117:324.
18. Weinstein S, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;100:II167.
19. Reddy VM, et al. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2000;9:91.
20. Reddy VM. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg Pediatr Card Surg Annu*. 2013;16:13.
21. Deleted in proofs.
21. Turley K, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1980;79:194.
22. Pacifico AD, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1987;93:919.
23. McElhinney DB, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;122:507.
24. Norwood Jr WI, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1992;54:1025; discussion 9.
25. Norwood Jr WI. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1991;52:688.
26. Azakie A, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;77:1727.
27. Sano S, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:1951; discussion 7.
28. Pizarro C, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:1959; discussion 63.
29. Ohye RG, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2008;136:968.
30. Ohye RG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362:1980.
31. Licht DJ, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;128:841.
32. Karavas AN, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2011;92:1138.
33. Turek JW, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2013;96:219–223; discussion 23.
34. Kopf GS, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1992;103:1039; discussion 47.
35. Gildein HP, et al. *Int J Cardiol*. 1990;29:21.
36. Mayer Jr JE, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1992;103:444; discussion 51.
37. Fukumi D, et al. *Pediatr Int*. 2002;44:134.
38. Thorne AC, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1993;7:307.
39. Nieto RM, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2017;153:678.
40. Nicolson SC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:694.
41. Schreiner MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:593.
42. Sahn DJ. *Circulation*. 1985;71:849.
43. Helbing WA, Ouhlous M. Cardiac magnetic resonance imaging in children. *Pediatr Radiol*. 2015;45:20–26.
44. Driessen MM, et al. *Pediatr Radiol*. 2015;45:5.
45. Kappanayil M, et al. *Ann Pediatr Cardiol*. 2017;10:117.
46. Valverde I, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2017;52:1139.
47. Stern DH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:557.
48. Reynolds LM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:751.
49. Kamra K, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:479.
50. Randolph GR, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2002;124:1176.
51. Cyran SE, et al. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 1991;32:318.
52. Shah PM, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:8–14.
53. Andropoulos DB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1365.
54. Boothroyd A. *Eur J Radiol*. 1998;26:154.
55. Andropoulos DB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1267.
56. Rodriguez RA, et al. *Perfusion*. 2006;21:247.
57. Bishop CC, et al. *Stroke*. 1986;17:913.
58. Zimmerman AA, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1997;114:594.
59. Lundar T, et al. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 1987;8:161.
60. Hillier SC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:723.
61. Padayachee TS, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1987;44:298.
62. Kussman BD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:234–240.
63. Hoffman GM, et al . *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2013;146:1153–1164.
64. Hoffman GM, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2017;103:1527–1535.
65. Vida VL, et al. *Can J Cardiol*. 2016;32:970–977.
66. Gist KM, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2016;17:342–349.
67. Ghanayem NS, Hoffman GM. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2016;17:S201–S206.
68. Kern FH, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1992;54:749.
69. Greeley WJ, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1991;101:783.
70. Greeley WJ, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1989;97:737.
71. Kern FH, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1991;101:618.
72. Laishley RS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:673.
73. Greeley WJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:666.
74. Landoni G, et al. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2009;12:4–9.
75. Yildirim V, et al. *Heart Surg Forum*. 2009;12:E1–E9.
76. Murray D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:211.
77. Friesen RH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62:411.
78. Eger 2nd EI. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:S3; discussion S8.
79. Davis PJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:298.
80. Taylor RH, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:6–13.
81. Warltier DC, Pagel PS. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:S17; discussion S31.
82. Taylor RH, Lerman J. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:975.
83. Smiley RM. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:S38; discussion S6.
84. White PF. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:S47; discussion S4.
85. Zwass MS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:373.
86. Sarner JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:38.
87. Kern C, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1997;7:439.
88. Holzman RS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:1260.
89. Wodey E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:795.
90. Hickey PR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:483.
91. Hickey PR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:117.
92. Hickey PR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:1137.
93. Greeley WJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:1067.
94. Moore RA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:725.
95. Anand KJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;326:1–9.
96. Guy J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:514.
97. Sebel PS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:990.
98. Thompson JP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80:467.
99. Davis PJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:982.
100. Davis PJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:203.
101. Frink Jr EJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:566.
102. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:1112–1122.
103. Ward RM, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24:591–601.
104. Tobias JD, et al. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2011;32:1075.
105. Li B, et al. *Sci Rep*. 2015;5:12342.
106. Schwartz LI, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:715–721.
107. Tang C, Xia Z. *J Pain Res*. 2017;10:1899–1904.
108. Chrysostomou C, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2006;7:126–131.
109. Lam F, et al. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2012;33:1069–1077.
110. Jooste EH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1490–1496.
111. Hammer GB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:79.
112. Gautam NK, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1960–1965.
113. Schwartz LI, et al. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;20:175–178.
114. Schupbach P, et al. *Vox Sang*. 1978;35:332.
115. Marelli D, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1989;98:751.
116. Haneda K, et al. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 1987;28:614.
117. Elhoff JJ, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2016;17:30–35.
118. Sakamoto T, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;77:1656; discussion 63.
119. Shin'oka T, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1996;112:1610; discussion 20.
120. Jonas RA, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;126:1765.
121. Spahn DR, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1993;105:694.
122. Bellinger DC, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2001;121:374.
123. Andropoulos DB, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;125:491.
124. Fox LS, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1982;83:239.
125. Michenfelder JD, Theye RA. *Anesthesiology*. 1968;29:1107.
126. Fox LS, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1984;87:658.
127. Rebeyka IM, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1987;43:391.
128. Henriksen L, et al. *Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1986;34:116.
129. Burrows FA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:632.
130. du Plessis AJ, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1997;114:991; discussion 1.

131. Kern JH, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1998;102:1148.
132. Wells FC, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1983;86:823.
133. Oates RK, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;110:786.
134. Tabbutt S, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012; 144:882–895.
135. Wypij D, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;126:1397.
136. Visconti KJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:2207; discussion 11.
137. Nakakimura K, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:1005.
138. Lanier WL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:39.
139. Farias LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:595.
140. Plum F. *Neurology*. 1983;33:222.
141. Kubler W, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1977;40:467.
142. Glauser TA, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1990;85:991.
143. Auer RN. *Stroke*. 1986;17:699.
144. Sieber FE, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1989;256:H697.
145. Rappaport LA, et al. *Circulation*. 1998;97:773.
146. Kron IL, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1985;39:590.
147. Hilberman M, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1979;77:880.
148. Gomez-Campdera FJ, et al. *Child Nephrol Urol*. 1988;9:138.
149. Toda Y, Sugimoto K. *J Intensive Care*. 2017;5:49.
150. Naik SK, et al. *Circulation*. 1991;84:III422.
151. Naik SK, et al. *Perfusion*. 1991;6:41.
152. McGowan Jr FX, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1993;106:968.
153. Jenkins J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1985;13:77.
154. Howard RJ, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1988;123:1496.
155. Anand KJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:661.
156. Anand KJ, et al. *Lancet*. 1987;1:62.
157. Lagercrantz H, et al. *Sci Am*. 1986;254:100.
158. Oshita S, et al. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1989;3:597.
159. Severinghaus JW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:532.
160. Gold JP, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1986;42:185.
161. Ungerleider R. *Int J Card Imaging*. 1989;4:33.
162. Greeley WJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:1042.
163. Goldberg CS, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;133:880–887.
164. Seghaye MC, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1996;112:687.
165. Undar A. *ASAIO J*. 2005;51:522.
166. Eckmann DM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:539.
167. Williams GD, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2006;132:1291.
168. Bando K, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1998;66:821; discussion 8.
169. Draaisma AM, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1997;64:521.
170. Maluf MA. *Perfusion*. 2003;18(suppl 1):61.
171. Davies MJ, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1998;115:361; discussion 9.
172. Sever K, et al. *Scand Cardiovasc J*. 2004;38:307.
173. Huang H, et al. *Chin Med J (Engl)*. 2003;116:1504.
174. Gaynor JW, et al. *Cardiol Young*. 2005;15:4.
175. Mahmoud AB, et al. *Chest*. 2005;128:3447.
176. Keenan HT, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;119:501; discussion 6.
177. Hiramatsu T, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;73:861.
178. Ramamoorthy C, Lynn AM. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1998;12:483–485.
179. Bando K, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1998;115:517; discussion 25.
180. Skaryak LA, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;109:744; discussion 51.
181. Rodriguez RA, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;80:22.
182. Medlin WM, Sistino JJ. *Perfusion*. 2006;21:325.
183. Journois D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1181; discussion 26A.
184. Taenzer AH, et al. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2005;37:369.
185. Graham Jr TP, et al. *Circulation*. 1986;74:I–61.
186. Berner M, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1989;97:297.
187. Rebeyka IM, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1990;100:240.
188. Bohn DJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1980;8:367.
189. Chang AC, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23:1907.
190. Ramamoorthy C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:283.
191. Rudolph AM. *Circ Res*. 1985;57:811.
192. Pearl JM, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1991;52:780.
193. Golding LA. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1991;3:29–32.
194. Klein MD, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1990;100:498.
195. Walters 3rd HL, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1995;60:329; discussion 36.
196. Meliones JN, et al. *Circulation*. 1991;84:III168.
197. Duncan BW, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1998;116:305.
198. Karl TR. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1994;6:154.
199. Runo JR, Loyd JE. *Lancet*. 2003;361:1533.
200. Atz AM, Wessel DL. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:307.
201. Clabby ML, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1997;30:554.
202. Carmosino MJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:521.
203. Rich S, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1987;107:216.
204. Blaise G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1415.
205. Taylor CJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:657.
206. Adatia I. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2002;14:292.
207. Fischer LG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1603.
208. Lyrene RK, et al. *Pediatr Res*. 1985;19:1268.
209. Rudolph AM, et al. *J Clin Invest*. 1966;45:399.
210. Weisfeldt ML, et al. *Circulation*. 1986;74:443.
211. Lawless S, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 1988;28:283.
212. Molloy DW, et al. *Chest*. 1985;88:432.
213. Levin DL, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1976;89:626.
214. Bush A, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1987;136:767.
215. Zall S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:689.
216. Barst RJ, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1994;121:409.
217. Prasad S, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;343:1342.
218. Barst RJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;334:296.
219. Abrams D, et al. *Heart*. 2000;84:E4.
220. Zhao L, et al. *Circulation*. 2001;104:424.
221. Boucek MM, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2003;22:636.
222. Barst RJ, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2003;73:372.
223. Gaynor JW, et al. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 1998;10:256.
224. Pepke-Zaba J, et al. *Lancet*. 1991;338:1173.
225. Russell IA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:46.
226. Girard C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:880.
227. Curran RD, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1995;60:1765.
228. Wessel DL, et al. *Circulation*. 1993;88:2128.
229. Zobel G, et al. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 1998;39:79–86.
230. Adatia I, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1996;112:1403.
231. Adatia I, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1995;25:1656.
232. Wheller J, et al. *Circulation*. 1979;60:1640.
233. Bartkowski R, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2002;22:879.
234. Journois D, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1994;107:1129.
235. Yahagi N, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1994;57:1371.
236. Manno CS, et al. *Blood*. 1991;77:930.
237. Fergusson DA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:2319.
238. Andrew M, et al. *Blood*. 1987;70:165.
239. Colon-Otero G, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1987;62:379.
240. Hornykewycz S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19:854–861.
241. Zabala LM, Guzzetta NA. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25:981–989.
242. Guzzetta NA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:173–179.
243. Guzzetta NA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1276–1282; table of contents.
244. Guzzetta NA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:419–425; table of contents.
245. Gruenwald CE, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2010;56:1794–1802.
246. Andrew M, et al. *Blood*. 1987;70:165–172.
247. Monagle P, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 2006;95:362–372.
248. Manlhiot C, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2016;151:444–450.
249. Arnold PD. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24:89–97.
250. Jobes DR, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;110:36.
251. Horkay F, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1992;53:822.
252. Romlin BS, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:847–854.
253. Woodman RC, Harker LA. *Blood*. 1990;76:1680.
254. Harker LA. *N Engl J Med*. 1986;314:1446.
255. Williams GD, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1998;66:870–875; discussion 5-6.
256. Faraoni D, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2015;32:320–329.
257. Williams GD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:1411–1416.
258. Steiner ME, Despotis GJ. *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am*. 2007;21:177–184.
259. Wikkelso A, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72:519–531.
260. Pasquali SK, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2016;102:1580–1587.
261. Romlin BS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:30–36.
262. Nakayama Y, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114:91–102.
263. Oswald E, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:827–835.
264. Chan KL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1610–1613; table of contents.
265. Eaton MP. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1087–1100.
266. Pasquali SK, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;143:550.
267. Royston D, et al. *Lancet*. 1987;2:1289.
268. Dietrich W, et al. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1989;3:79.
269. Dietrich W, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:1119.
270. Dietrich W, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1991;102:505.
271. Dietrich W, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:324.
272. Eaton MP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:1002–1009.

273. Salzman EW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1986;314:1402.
274. Reynolds LM, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1993;106:954.
275. Guzzetta NA, Williams GD. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27:678–687.
276. Galas FR, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2014;148:1647–1655.
277. Ghadimi K, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:1287–1300.
278. Guzzetta NA, et al. 2014;112:319–327.
279. Franklin SW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:935–942.
280. Cholette JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
281. Willems A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:420–429.
282. Manlhiot C, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;124:1511–1519.
283. Faraoni D, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2016;102:1360–1367.
284. Faraoni D, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1943–1948.
285. Jaggers JJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1999;68:513–520.
286. Garvin S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:862–869.
287. Brown AC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:1021–1031.
288. Limperopoulos C, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2000;137:638.
288a. Chen J, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;88:823–829.
289. Galli KK, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:692.
290. Mahle WT, et al. *Circulation*. 2002;106:I109.
291. Balasubramanian SK, et al. *J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2007;2:4.
292. Flick RP, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2011;128:e1053.
293. DiMaggio C, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1143.
294. DiMaggio C, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2009;21:286.
295. Gleich SJ, et al. *Contemp Clin Trials*. 2015;41:45–54.
296. Hu D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:227–240.
297. Ing C, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2017;29:264–273.
298. O'Leary JD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:272–279.
299. Jaggers JJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;69:1476.
300. Shah SA, et al. *ASAIO J*. 2005;51:504.
301. Kolovos NS, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;76:1435; discussion 41.
302. Blume ED, et al. *Circulation*. 2006;113:2313.
303. Ibrahim AE, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;69:186.
304. Carberry KE, et al. *Crit Care Nurs Q*. 2007;30:121.
305. Duncan BW, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1999;117:529.
306. Heise D, et al. *J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2007;2:47.
307. Shen I, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;75:S729.
308. Duncan BW. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;73:1670.
309. Adachi I, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 2015;7:2194–2202.
310. Yarlagadda VV, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;70:2250–2260.
311. Hosenpud JD, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 1998;17:656.
312. Kirklin JK, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1988;11:917.
313. Gajarski RJ, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1994;23:1682.
314. Fukushima N, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1994;107:985.
315. Chartrand C, et al. *J Heart Transplant*. 1990;9:608; discussion 16.
316. Bailey LL. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 1993;12:S168.
317. Zales VR, et al. *Circulation*. 1994;90:II61.
318. Boucek MM, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1990;116:171.
319. Canter CE, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 1994;13:74; discussion 9.
320. Dipchand AI, et al. *Pediatr Transplant*. 2013;17:99–111.
321. Schure AY, Kussman BD. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:594–603.
322. Benden C. *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9:2675–2683.
323. Drews T, et al. *ASAIO J*. 2007;53:640.
324. Wessel DL. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29:S220.
325. Boucek MM, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2005;24:968.
326. Laborde F, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;110:1681; discussion 4.
327. Burke RP, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;109:499; discussion 8.
328. Gould DS, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2003;112:1298.
329. DeSanctis RW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1987;317:1060.
330. Malviya S, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36:320.
331. Mullins CE. *Circulation*. 1989;79:1153.
332. Lock JE, et al. *Circulation*. 1989;79:1091.
333. Hellenbrand WE, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1990;66:207.
334. Haas NA, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2016;88:571–581.
335. Wyss Y, et al. *J Interv Cardiol*. 2016;29:646–653.
336. Yew G, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2005;64:193.
337. Masura J, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2005;45:505.
338. Butera G, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2004;148:507.
339. Tobis J, Shenoda M. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;60:1722–1732.
340. Suda K, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;43:1677.
341. Amin Z, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2004;63:496.
342. Krumsdorf U, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;43:302.
343. Holzer R, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;43:1257.
344. Knauth AL, et al. *Circulation*. 2004;110:501.
345. Bass JL, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2003;58:238.
346. Hijazi ZM, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2002;56:508.
347. Saurav A, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2015;86:1048–1056.
348. Rothman A, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1990;15:1109.
349. Geggel RL, et al. *Circulation*. 2001;103:2165.
350. Li WF, et al. *Congenit Heart Dis*. 2018;13:140–146.
351. Jones TK, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2016;68:1525–1535.
352. Callahan R, et al. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2017;38:456–464.
353. Booth KL, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2002;40:1681.
354. Akintuerk H, et al. *Circulation*. 2002;105:1099.
355. Vitiello R, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1998;32:1433.
356. Boucek MM, et al. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg Pediatr Card Surg Annu72*. 2005.
357. Galantowicz M, et al. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg Pediatr Card Surg Annu*. 2004;7:48.
358. Michel-Behnke I, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2004;61:242.
359. Warnes CA, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2001;37:1170.
360. Twite MD, Ing RJ. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;16:97–105.
361. Bailey Jr PD, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:285.
362. Kverneland LS, et al. *Congenit Heart Dis*. 2018.
363. Rychik J. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg Pediatr Card Surg Annu*. 2010;13:96.
364. Saarel EV, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2004;113:248.
365. Rossano J, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2003;112:e228.
366. Perry JC, Garson Jr A. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1990;16:1215–1220.
367. Wasmer K, Eckardt L. *Heart*. 2016;102:1614–1619.
368. Kugler JD. *Circulation*. 1994;90:639–641.
369. Erb TO, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1577–1581; table of contents.
370. Lavoie J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:884–887.
371. Hino H, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2018;62:159–166.
372. Khairy P, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2014;11:e102–e165.
373. Yap SC, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2010;56:1589–1596.
374. Labombarda F, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;70:857–865.
375. Kramer CC, et al. *Heart Rhythm*. 2017.
376. Zimmerman FJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;75:1775.
377. Jeewa A, et al. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2010;31:181–187.
378. Dubin AM, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;107:2287.
379. Roofthooft MT, et al. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 2003;26:2042.
380. Nishimura RA, et al. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2008;72:E1.
381. Practice advisory on anesthetic care for magnetic resonance imaging. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:495–520.
382. Cindea N, et al. *Magn Reson Med*. 2010;63:59–67.
383. Moghari MH, et al. *Magn Reson Med*. 2017.
384. Ahmad R, et al. *Pediatr Radiol*. 2018;48:37–49.
385. Tzifa A, et al. *Magn Reson Imaging Clin N Am*. 2012;20:117–128.
386. Forbess JM, et al. *Circulation*. 1995;92:II-262–II-266.

References

1. Hickey PR, Hansen DD, Norwood WI, et al. Anesthetic complications in surgery for congenital heart disease. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:657–664.
2. Teitel DF, Sidi D, Chin T, et al. Developmental changes in myocardial contractile reserve in the lamb. *Pediatr Res*. 1985;19:948–955.
3. Teitel DF, Klautz R, Steendijk P, et al. The end-systolic pressure-volume relationship in the newborn lamb: effects of loading and inotropic interventions. *Pediatr Res*. 1991;29:473–482.
4. Thornburg KL, Morton MJ. Filling and arterial pressures as determinants of RV stroke volume in the sheep fetus. *Am J Physiol*. 1983;244:H656–H63.
5. Vetter R, Will H, Kuttner I, et al. Developmental changes of Ca^{++} transport systems in chick heart. *Biomed Biochim Acta*. 1986;45:S219–S222.
6. Nassar R, Reedy MC, Anderson PA. Developmental changes in the ultrastructure and sarcomere shortening of the isolated rabbit ventricular myocyte. *Circ Res*. 1987;61:465–483.
7. Muhiudeen IA, Roberson DA, Silverman NH, et al. Intraoperative echocardiography for evaluation of congenital heart defects in infants and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:165–172.
8. Ungerleider RM, Greeley WJ, Kisslo J. Intraoperative echocardiography in congenital heart disease surgery: preliminary report on a current study. *Am J Cardiol*. 1989;63(suppl):3F–8F, 14F.
9. Greeley WJ, Bushman GA, Kong DL, et al. Effects of cardiopulmonary bypass on eicosanoid metabolism during pediatric cardiovascular surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1988;95:842–849.
10. Cheng HH, Almodovar MC, Laussen PC, et al. Outcomes and risk factors for mortality in premature neonates with critical congenital heart disease. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2011;32:1139–1146.
11. Tanner K, Sabrine N, Wren C. Cardiovascular malformations among preterm infants. *Pediatrics*. 2005;116:e833–e838.
12. Rosenthal GL, Wilson PD, Permutt T, et al. Birth weight and cardiovascular malformations: a population-based study. The Baltimore-Washington Infant Study. *Am J Epidemiol*. 1991;133:1273–1281.
13. Simpson JM, Moore P, Teitel DF. Cardiac catheterization of low birth weight infants. *Am J Cardiol*. 2001;87:1372–1377.
14. Reddy VM, McElhinney DB, Sagrado T, et al. Results of 102 cases of complete repair of congenital heart defects in patients weighing 700 to 2500 grams. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1999;117:324–331.
15. Weinstein S, Gaynor JW, Bridges ND, et al. Early survival of infants weighing 2.5 kilograms or less undergoing first-stage reconstruction for hypoplastic left heart syndrome. *Circulation*. 1999;100:II-167–II-170.
16. Reddy VM, Hanley FL. Cardiac surgery in infants with very low birth weight. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2000;9:91–95.
17. Stark J. Do we really correct congenital heart defects?. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1989;97:1–9.
18. Perloff JK. Development and regression of increased ventricular mass. *Am J Cardiol*. 1982;50:605–611.
19. Castaneda AR, Mayer Jr JE, Jonas RA, et al. The neonate with critical congenital heart disease: repair—a surgical challenge. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1989;98:869–875.
20. Reddy VM. Low birth weight and very low birth weight neonates with congenital heart disease: timing of surgery, reasons for delaying or not delaying surgery. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg Pediatr Card Surg Annu*. 2013;16:13–20.
21. Turley K, Tucker WY, Ebert PA. The changing role of palliative procedures in the treatment of infants with congenital heart disease. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1980;79:194–201.
22. Pacifico AD, Sand ME, Bargeron Jr LM, et al. Transatrial-transpulmonary repair of tetralogy of Fallot. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1987;93:919–924.
23. McElhinney DB, Hellenbrand WE, Zahn EM, et al. Short- and medium-term outcomes after transcatheter pulmonary valve placement in the expanded multicenter US Melody Valve Trial. *Circulation*. 2010;122:507–516.
24. Norwood Jr WI, Jacobs ML, Murphy JD. Fontan procedure for hypoplastic left heart syndrome. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1992;54:1025–1029. discussion 9–30.
25. Norwood Jr . WI: hypoplastic left heart syndrome. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1991;52:688–695.
26. Azakie A, Martinez D, Sapru A, et al. Impact of right ventricle to pulmonary artery conduit on outcome of the modified Norwood procedure. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;77:1727–1733.
27. Sano S, Ishino K, Kado H, et al. Outcome of right ventricle-to-pulmonary artery shunt in first-stage palliation of hypoplastic left heart syndrome: a multi-institutional study. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:1951–1957; discussion 7–8.
28. Pizarro C, Mroczek T, Malec E, et al. Right ventricle to pulmonary artery conduit reduces interim mortality after stage 1 Norwood for hypoplastic left heart syndrome. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;78:1959–1963; discussion 63–64.
29. Ohye RG, Gaynor JW, Ghanayem NS, et al. Design and rationale of a randomized trial comparing the Blalock-Taussig and right ventricle-pulmonary artery shunts in the Norwood procedure. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2008;136:968–975.
30. Ohye RG, Sleeper LA, Mahony L, et al. Comparison of shunt types in the Norwood procedure for single-ventricle lesions. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;362:1980–1992.
31. Licht DJ, Wang J, Silvestre DW, et al. Preoperative cerebral blood flow is diminished in neonates with severe congenital heart defects. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;128:841–849.
32. Karavas AN, Deschner BW, Scott JW, Mettler BA, Bichell DP. Three-region perfusion strategy for aortic arch reconstruction in the Norwood. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2011;92:1138–1140.
33. Turek JW, Hanfland RA, Davenport TL, et al. Norwood reconstruction using continuous coronary perfusion: a safe and translatable technique. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2013;96:219–223; discussion 23-24.
34. Kopf GS, Kleinman CS, Hijazi ZM, et al. Fenestrated Fontan operation with delayed transcatheter closure of atrial septal defect: improved results in high-risk patients. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1992;103:1039–1047; discussion 47–48.
35. Gildein HP, Ahmadi A, Fontan F, et al. Special problems in Fontan-type operations for complex cardiac lesions. *Int J Cardiol*. 1990;29:21–28.
36. Mayer Jr JE, Bridges ND, Lock JE, et al. Factors associated with marked reduction in mortality for Fontan operations in patients with single ventricle. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1992;103:444–451; discussion 51–52.
37. Fukumi D, Uchikoba Y, Maeda M, et al. Longitudinal evaluation of anthracycline cardiotoxicity by signal-averaged electrocardiography in children with cancer. *Pediatr Int*. 2002;44:134–140.
38. Thorne AC, Orazem JP, Shah NK, et al. Isoflurane versus fentanyl: hemodynamic effects in cancer patients treated with anthracyclines. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1993;7:307–311.
39. Nieto RM, De Leon LE, Diaz DT, Krauklis KA, Fraser Jr CD. Routine preoperative laboratory testing in elective pediatric cardiothoracic surgery is largely unnecessary. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2017;153:678–685.
40. Nicolson SC, Dorsey AT, Schreiner MS. Shortened preanesthetic fasting interval in pediatric cardiac surgical patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:694–697.
41. Schreiner MS, Triebwasser A, Keon TP. Ingestion of liquids compared with preoperative fasting in pediatric outpatients. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:593–597.
42. Sahn DJ. Real-time two-dimensional Doppler echocardiographic flow mapping. *Circulation*. 1985;71:849–853.
43. Helbing WA, Ouhlous M. Cardiac magnetic resonance imaging in children. *Pediatr Radiol*. 2015;45:20–26.
44. Driessen MM, Breur JM, Budde RP, et al. Advances in cardiac magnetic resonance imaging of congenital heart disease. *Pediatr Radiol*. 2015;45:5–19.
45. Kappanayil M, Koneti NR, Kannan RR, Kottayil BP, Kumar K. Three-dimensional-printed cardiac prototypes aid surgical decision-making and preoperative planning in selected cases of complex congenital heart diseases: early experience and proof of concept in a resource-limited environment. *Ann Pediatr Cardiol*. 2017;10:117–125.
46. Valverde I, Gomez-Ciriza G, Hussain T, et al. Three-dimensional printed models for surgical planning of complex congenital heart defects: an international multicentre study. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2017;52:1139–1148.
47. Stern DH, Gerson JI, Allen FB, et al. Can we trust the direct radial artery pressure immediately following cardiopulmonary bypass? *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:557–561.
48. Reynolds LM, Nicolson SC, Steven JM, et al. Influence of sensor site location on pulse oximetry kinetics in children. *Anesth Analg*. 1993;76:751–754.

49. Kamra K, Russell I, Miller-Hance WC. Role of transesophageal echocardiography in the management of pediatric patients with congenital heart disease. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:479–493.
50. Randolph GR, Hagler DJ, Connolly HM, et al. Intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography during surgery for congenital heart defects. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2002;124:1176–1182.
51. Cyran SE, Myers JL, Gleason MM, et al. Application of intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography in infants and small children. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 1991;32:318–321.
52. Shah PM, Stewart 3rd S, Calalang CC, et al. Transesophageal echocardiography and the intraoperative management of pediatric congenital heart disease: initial experience with a pediatric esophageal 2D color flow echocardiographic probe. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:8–14.
53. Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Diaz LK, et al. Neurological monitoring for congenital heart surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1365–1375.
54. Boothroyd A. Magnetic resonance: its current and future role in paediatric cardiac radiology. *Eur J Radiol*. 1998;26:154–162.
55. Andropoulos DB, Diaz LK, Fraser Jr CD, et al. Is bilateral monitoring of cerebral oxygen saturation necessary during neonatal aortic arch reconstruction? *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98:1267–1272.
56. Rodriguez RA, Belway D. Comparison of two different extracorporeal circuits on cerebral embolization during cardiopulmonary bypass in children. *Perfusion*. 2006;21:247–253.
57. Bishop CC, Powell S, Rutt D, et al. Transcranial Doppler measurement of middle cerebral artery blood flow velocity: a validation study. *Stroke*. 1986;17:913–915.
58. Zimmerman AA, Burrows FA, Jonas RA, et al. The limits of detectable cerebral perfusion by transcranial Doppler sonography in neonates undergoing deep hypothermic low-flow cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1997;114:594–600.
59. Lundar T, Lindberg H, Lindegaard KF, et al. Cerebral perfusion during major cardiac surgery in children. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 1987;8:161–165.
60. Hillier SC, Burrows FA, Bissonnette B, et al. Cerebral hemodynamics in neonates and infants undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass and profound hypothermic circulatory arrest: assessment by transcranial Doppler sonography. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;72:723–728.
61. Padayachee TS, Parsons S, Theobold R, et al. The detection of microemboli in the middle cerebral artery during cardiopulmonary bypass: a transcranial Doppler ultrasound investigation using membrane and bubble oxygenators. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1987;44:298–302.
62. Kussman BD, Laussen PC, Benni PB, McGowan Jr FX, McElhinney DB. Cerebral oxygen saturation in children with congenital heart disease and chronic hypoxemia. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:234–240.
63. Hoffman GM, Brosig CL, Mussatto KA, Tweddell JS, Ghanayem NS. Perioperative cerebral oxygen saturation in neonates with hypoplastic left heart syndrome and childhood neurodevelopmental outcome. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2013;146:1153–1164.
64. Hoffman GM, Ghanayem NS, Scott JP, Tweddell JS, Mitchell ME, Mussatto KA. Postoperative cerebral and somatic near-infrared spectroscopy saturations and outcome in hypoplastic left heart syndrome. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2017;103:1527–1535.
65. Vida VL, Tessari C, Cristante A, et al. The role of regional oxygen saturation using near-infrared spectroscopy and blood lactate levels as early predictors of outcome after pediatric cardiac surgery. *Can J Cardiol*. 2016;32:970–977.
66. Gist KM, Kaufman J, da Cruz EM, et al. A decline in intraoperative renal near-infrared spectroscopy is associated with adverse outcomes in children following cardiac surgery. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2016;17:342–349.
67. Ghanayem NS, Hoffman GM. Near infrared spectroscopy as a hemodynamic monitor in critical illness. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2016;17:S201–S206.
68. Kern FH, Jonas RA, Mayer Jr JE, et al. Temperature monitoring during CPB in infants: does it predict efficient brain cooling? *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1992;54:749–754.
69. Greeley WJ, Kern FH, Ungerleider RM, et al. The effect of hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass and total circulatory arrest on cerebral metabolism in neonates, infants, and children. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1991;101:783–794.
70. Greeley WJ, Ungerleider RM, Smith LR, et al. The effects of deep hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass and total circulatory arrest on cerebral blood flow in infants and children. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1989;97:737–745.
71. Kern FH, Ungerleider RM, Quill TJ, et al. Cerebral blood flow response to changes in arterial carbon dioxide tension during hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass in children. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1991;101:618–622.
72. Laishley RS, Burrows FA, Lerman J, et al. Effect of anesthetic induction regimens on oxygen saturation in cyanotic congenital heart disease. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:673–677.
73. Greeley WJ, Bushman GA, Davis DP, et al. Comparative effects of halothane and ketamine on systemic arterial oxygen saturation in children with cyanotic heart disease. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:666–668.
74. Landoni G, Bignami E, Oliviero F, Zangrillo A. Halogenated anaesthetics and cardiac protection in cardiac and non-cardiac anaesthesia. *Ann Card Anaesth*. 2009;12:4–9.
75. Yildirim V, Doganci S, Aydin A, Bolcal C, Demirkilic U, Cosar A. Cardioprotective effects of sevoflurane, isoflurane, and propofol in coronary surgery patients: a randomized controlled study. *Heart Surg Forum*. 2009;12:E1–E9.
76. Murray D, Vandewalker G, Matherne GP, et al. Pulsed Doppler and two-dimensional echocardiography: comparison of halothane and isoflurane on cardiac function in infants and small children. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;67:211–217.
77. Friesen RH, Lichtor JL. Cardiovascular effects of inhalation induction with isoflurane in infants. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62:411–414.
78. Eger 2nd EI. Desflurane animal and human pharmacology: aspects of kinetics, safety, and MAC. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:S3–S7; discussion S8–S9.
79. Davis PJ, Cohen IT, McGowan Jr FX, et al. Recovery characteristics of desflurane versus halothane for maintenance of anesthesia in pediatric ambulatory patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;80:298–302.
80. Taylor RH, Lerman J. Induction, maintenance and recovery characteristics of desflurane in infants and children. *Can J Anaesth*. 1992;39:6–13.
81. Warltier DC, Pagel PS. Cardiovascular and respiratory actions of desflurane: is desflurane different from isoflurane?. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:S17–S29; discussion S-31.
82. Taylor RH, Lerman J. Minimum alveolar concentration of desflurane and hemodynamic responses in neonates, infants, and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75:975–979.
83. Smiley RM. An overview of induction and emergence characteristics of desflurane in pediatric, adult, and geriatric patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:S38–S44; discussion S-6.
84. White PF. Studies of desflurane in outpatient anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;75:S47–S53; discussion S-4.
85. Zwass MS, Fisher DM, Welborn LG, et al. Induction and maintenance characteristics of anesthesia with desflurane and nitrous oxide in infants and children. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;76:373–378.
86. Sarner JB, Levine M, Davis PJ, et al. Clinical characteristics of sevoflurane in children: a comparison with halothane. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:38–46.
87. Kern C, Erb T, Frei FJ. Haemodynamic responses to sevoflurane compared with halothane during inhalational induction in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1997;7:439–444.
88. Holzman RS, van der Velde ME, Kaus SJ, et al. Sevoflurane depresses myocardial contractility less than halothane during induction of anesthesia in children. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;85:1260–1267.
89. Wodey E, Pladys P, Copin C, et al. Comparative hemodynamic depression of sevoflurane versus halothane in infants: an echocardiographic study. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87:795–800.
90. Hickey PR, Hansen DD, Wessel DL, et al. Pulmonary and systemic hemodynamic responses to fentanyl in infants. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:483–486.
91. Hickey PR, Hansen DD. Fentanyl- and sufentanil-oxygen-pancuronium anesthesia for cardiac surgery in infants. *Anesth Analg*. 1984;63:117–124.
92. Hickey PR, Hansen DD, Wessel DL, et al. Blunting of stress responses in the pulmonary circulation of infants by fentanyl. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64:1137–1142.
93. Greeley WJ, de Bruijn NP, Davis DP. Sufentanil pharmacokinetics in pediatric cardiovascular patients. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:1067–1072.
94. Moore RA, Yang SS, McNicholas KW, et al. Hemodynamic and anesthetic effects of sufentanil as the sole anesthetic for pediatric cardiovascular surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62:725–731.

95. Anand KJ, Hickey PR. Halothane-morphine compared with high-dose sufentanil for anesthesia and postoperative analgesia in neonatal cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;326:1–9.
96. Guy J, Hindman BJ, Baker KZ, et al. Comparison of remifentanil and fentanyl in patients undergoing craniotomy for supratentorial space-occupying lesions. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:514–524.
97. Sebel PS, Hoke JF, Westmoreland C, et al. Histamine concentrations and hemodynamic responses after remifentanil. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:990–993.
98. Thompson JP, Hall AP, Russell J, et al. Effect of remifentanil on the haemodynamic response to orotracheal intubation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80:467–469.
99. Davis PJ, Lerman J, Suresh S, et al. A randomized multicenter study of remifentanil compared with alfentanil, isoflurane, or propofol in anesthetized pediatric patients undergoing elective strabismus surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84:982–989.
100. Davis PJ, Cook DR, Stiller RL, et al. Pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics of high-dose sufentanil in infants and children undergoing cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1987;66:203–208.
101. Frink Jr EJ, Green Jr WB, Brown EA, et al. Compound A concentrations during sevoflurane anesthesia in children. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84:566–571.
102. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Avram MJ, et al. Intraoperative methadone for the prevention of postoperative pain: a randomized, double-blinded clinical trial in cardiac surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:1112–1122.
103. Ward RM, Drover DR, Hammer GB, et al. The pharmacokinetics of methadone and its metabolites in neonates, infants, and children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24:591–601.
104. Tobias JD, Gupta P, Naguib A, et al. Dexmedetomidine: applications for the pediatric patient with congenital heart disease. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2011;32:1075–1087.
105. Li B, Li Y, Tian S, et al. Anti-inflammatory effects of perioperative dexmedetomidine administered as an adjunct to general anesthesia: a meta-analysis. *Sci Rep*. 2015;5:12342.
106. Schwartz LI, Twite M, Gulack B, Hill K, Kim S, Vener DF. The perioperative use of dexmedetomidine in pediatric patients with congenital heart disease: an analysis from the Congenital Cardiac Anesthesia Society-Society Of Thoracic Surgeons congenital heart disease database. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:715–721.
107. Tang C, Xia Z. Dexmedetomidine in perioperative acute pain management: a non-opioid adjuvant analgesic. *J Pain Res*. 2017;10:1899–1904.
108. Chrysostomou C, Di Filippo S, Manrique AM, et al. Use of dexmedetomidine in children after cardiac and thoracic surgery. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2006;7:126–131.
109. Lam F, Bhutta AT, Tobias JD, Gossett JM, Morales L, Gupta P. Hemodynamic effects of dexmedetomidine in critically ill neonates and infants with heart disease. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2012;33:1069–1077.
110. Jooste EH, Muhly WT, Ibinson JW, et al. Acute hemodynamic changes after rapid intravenous bolus dosing of dexmedetomidine in pediatric heart transplant patients undergoing routine cardiac catheterization. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1490–1496.
111. Hammer GB, Drover DR, Cao H, et al. The effects of dexmedetomidine on cardiac electrophysiology in children. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:79–83.
112. Gautam NK, Turiy Y, Srinivasan C. Preincision initiation of dexmedetomidine maximally reduces the risk of junctional ectopic tachycardia in children undergoing ventricular septal defect repairs. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1960–1965.
113. Schwartz LI, Miyamoto SD, Stenquist S, Twite MD. Cardiac arrest in a heart transplant patient receiving dexmedetomidine during cardiac catheterization. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;20:175–178.
114. Schupbach P, Pappova E, Schilt W, et al. Perfusate oncotic pressure during cardiopulmonary bypass: optimum level as determined by metabolic acidosis, tissue edema, and renal function. *Vox Sang*. 1978;35:332–344.
115. Marelli D, Paul A, Samson R, et al. Does the addition of albumin to the prime solution in cardiopulmonary bypass affect clinical outcome? A prospective randomized study. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1989;98:751–756.
116. Haneda K, Thomas R, Breazeale DG, et al. The significance of colloid osmotic pressure during induced hypothermia. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 1987;28:614–620.
117. Elhoff JJ, Chowdhury SM, Zyblewski SC, Atz AM, Bradley SM, Graham EM. Intraoperative steroid use and outcomes following the Norwood procedure: an analysis of the Pediatric Heart Network's public database. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2016;17:30–35.
118. Sakamoto T, Nollert GD, Zurakowski D, et al. Hemodilution elevates cerebral blood flow and oxygen metabolism during cardiopulmonary bypass in piglets. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2004;77:1656–1663; discussion 63.
119. Shin'oka T, Shum-Tim D, Jonas RA, et al. Higher hematocrit improves cerebral outcome after deep hypothermic circulatory arrest. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1996;112:1610–1620; discussion 20–21.
120. Jonas RA, Wypij D, Roth SJ, et al. The influence of hemodilution on outcome after hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass: results of a randomized trial in infants. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;126:1765–1774.
121. Spahn DR, Smith LR, Veronee CD, et al. Acute isovolemic hemodilution and blood transfusion: effects on regional function and metabolism in myocardium with compromised coronary blood flow. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1993;105:694–704.
122. Bellinger DC, Wypij D, du Plessis AJ, et al. Developmental and neurologic effects of alpha-stat versus pH-stat strategies for deep hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass in infants. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2001;121:374–383.
123. Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, McKenzie ED, et al. Novel cerebral physiologic monitoring to guide low-flow cerebral perfusion during neonatal aortic arch reconstruction. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;125:491–499.
124. Fox LS, Blackstone EH, Kirklin JW, et al. Relationship of whole body oxygen consumption to perfusion flow rate during hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1982;83:239–248.
125. Michenfelder JD, Theye RA. Hypothermia: effect on canine brain and whole-body metabolism. *Anesthesiology*. 1968;29:1107–1112.
126. Fox LS, Blackstone EH, Kirklin JW, et al. Relationship of brain blood flow and oxygen consumption to perfusion flow rate during profoundly hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass: an experimental study. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1984;87:658–664.
127. Rebeyka IM, Coles JG, Wilson GJ, et al. The effect of low-flow cardiopulmonary bypass on cerebral function: an experimental and clinical study. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1987;43:391–396.
128. Henriksen L, Barry DI, Rygg IH, et al. Cerebral blood flow during early cardiopulmonary bypass in man: effect of procaine in cardioplegic solutions. *Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1986;34:116–123.
129. Burrows FA, Hillier SC, McLeod ME, et al. Anterior fontanel pressure and visual evoked potentials in neonates and infants undergoing profound hypothermic circulatory arrest. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:632–636.
130. du Plessis AJ, Jonas RA, Wypij D, et al. Perioperative effects of alpha-stat versus pH-stat strategies for deep hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass in infants. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1997;114:991–1000; discussion 1.
131. Kern JH, Hinton VJ, Nereo NE, et al. Early developmental outcome after the Norwood procedure for hypoplastic left heart syndrome. *Pediatrics*. 1998;102:1148–1152.
132. Wells FC, Coghill S, Caplan HL, et al. Duration of circulatory arrest does influence the psychological development of children after cardiac operation in early life. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1983;86:823–831.
133. Oates RK, Simpson JM, Turnbull JA, et al. The relationship between intelligence and duration of circulatory arrest with deep hypothermia. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;110:786–792.
134. Tabbutt S, Ghanayem N, Ravishankar C, et al. Risk factors for hospital morbidity and mortality after the Norwood procedure: a report from the Pediatric Heart Network Single Ventricle Reconstruction Trial. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;144:882–895.
135. Wypij D, Newburger JW, Rappaport LA, et al. The effect of duration of deep hypothermic circulatory arrest in infant heart surgery on late neurodevelopment. The Boston Circulatory Arrest Trial. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2003;126:1397–1403.
136. Visconti KJ, Rimmer D, Gauvreau K, et al. Regional low-flow perfusion versus circulatory arrest in neonates: one-year neurodevelopmental outcome. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2006;82:2207–2211; discussion 11–13.
137. Nakakimura K, Fleischer JE, Drummond JC, et al. Glucose administration before cardiac arrest worsens neurologic outcome in cats. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:1005–1011.

138. Lanier WL, Stangland KJ, Scheithauer BW, et al. The effects of dextrose infusion and head position on neurologic outcome after complete cerebral ischemia in primates: examination of a model. *Anesthesiology*. 1987;66:39–48.
139. Farias LA, Willis M, Gregory GA. Effects of fructose-1,6-diphosphate, glucose, and saline on cardiac resuscitation. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65:595–601.
140. Plum F. The Robert Wartenberg Lecture. What causes infarction in ischemic brain? *Neurology*. 1983;33:222–233.
141. Kubler W, Katz AM. Mechanism of early "pump" failure of the ischemic heart: possible role of adenosine triphosphate depletion and inorganic phosphate accumulation. *Am J Cardiol*. 1977;40:467–471.
142. Glauser TA, Rorke LB, Weinberg PM, et al. Acquired neuropathologic lesions associated with the hypoplastic left heart syndrome. *Pediatrics*. 1990;85:991–1000.
143. Auer RN. Progress review: hypoglycemic brain damage. *Stroke*. 1986;17:699–708.
144. Sieber FE, Derrer SA, Saudek CD, et al. Effect of hypoglycemia on cerebral metabolism and carbon dioxide responsivity. *Am J Physiol*. 1989;256:H697–H706.
145. Rappaport LA, Wypij D, Bellinger DC, et al. Relation of seizures after cardiac surgery in early infancy to neurodevelopmental outcome. Boston Circulatory Arrest Study Group. *Circulation*. 1998;97:773–779.
146. Kron IL, Joob AW, Van Meter C. Acute renal failure in the cardiovascular surgical patient. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1985;39:590–598.
147. Hilberman M, Myers BD, Carrie BJ, et al. Acute renal failure following cardiac surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1979;77:880–888.
148. Gomez-Campdera FJ, Maroto-Alvaro E, Galinanes M, et al. Acute renal failure associated with cardiac surgery. *Child Nephrol Urol*. 1988;9:138–143.
149. Toda Y, Sugimoto K. AKI after pediatric cardiac surgery for congenital heart diseases-recent developments in diagnostic criteria and early diagnosis by biomarkers. *J Intensive Care*. 2017;5:49.
150. Naik SK, Knight A, Elliott M. A prospective randomized study of a modified technique of ultrafiltration during pediatric open-heart surgery. *Circulation*. 1991;84:III-422–III-431.
151. Naik SK, Knight A, Elliott MJ. A successful modification of ultrafiltration for cardiopulmonary bypass in children. *Perfusion*. 1991;6:41–50.
152. McGowan Jr FX, Ikegami M, del Nido PJ, et al. Cardiopulmonary bypass significantly reduces surfactant activity in children. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1993;106:968–977.
153. Jenkins J, Lynn A, Edmonds J, et al. Effects of mechanical ventilation on cardiopulmonary function in children after open-heart surgery. *Crit Care Med*. 1985;13:77–80.
154. Howard RJ, Crain C, Franzini DA, et al. Effects of cardiopulmonary bypass on pulmonary leukostasis and complement activation. *Arch Surg*. 1988;123:1496–1501.
155. Anand KJ, Hansen DD, Hickey PR. Hormonal-metabolic stress responses in neonates undergoing cardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:661–670.
156. Anand KJ, Sippell WG, Aynsley-Green A. Randomised trial of fentanyl anaesthesia in preterm babies undergoing surgery: effects on the stress response. *Lancet*. 1987;1:62–66.
157. Lagercrantz H, Slotkin TA. The "stress" of being born. *Sci Am*. 1986;254:100–107.
158. Oshita S, Uchimoto R, Oka H, et al. Correlation between arterial blood pressure and oxygenation in tetralogy of Fallot. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1989;3:597–600.
159. Severinghaus JW, Spellman Jr MJ. Pulse oximeter failure thresholds in hypotension and vasoconstriction. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:532–537.
160. Gold JP, Jonas RA, Lang P, et al. Transthoracic intracardiac monitoring lines in pediatric surgical patients: a ten-year experience. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1986;42:185–191.
161. Ungerleider R. Decision making in pediatric cardiac surgery using intraoperative echo. *Int J Card Imaging*. 1989;4:33–35.
162. Greeley WJ, Kern FH, Ungerleider RM, et al. Intramyocardial air causes right ventricular dysfunction after repair of a congenital heart defect. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:1042–1046.
163. Goldberg CS, Bove EL, Devaney EJ, et al. A randomized clinical trial of regional cerebral perfusion versus deep hyperthermic circulatory arrest: outcomes for infants with functional single ventricle. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2007;133:880–887.
164. Seghaye MC, Grabitz RG, Duchateau J, et al. Inflammatory reaction and capillary leak syndrome related to cardiopulmonary bypass in neonates undergoing cardiac operations. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1996;112:687–697.
165. Undar A. Effect of hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass on blood viscoelasticity in pediatric cardiac patients. *ASAIO J*. 2005;51:522–524.
166. Eckmann DM, Bowers S, Stecker M, et al. Hematocrit, volume expander, temperature, and shear rate effects on blood viscosity. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:539–545.
167. Williams GD, Ramamoorthy C, Chu L, et al. Modified and conventional ultrafiltration during pediatric cardiac surgery: clinical outcomes compared. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2006;132:1291–1298.
168. Bando K, Turrentine MW, Vijay P, et al. Effect of modified ultrafiltration in high-risk patients undergoing operations for congenital heart disease. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1998;66:821–827; discussion 8.
169. Draaisma AM, Hazekamp MG, Frank M, et al. Modified ultrafiltration after cardiopulmonary bypass in pediatric cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1997;64:521–525.
170. Maluf MA. Modified ultrafiltration in surgical correction of congenital heart disease with cardiopulmonary bypass. *Perfusion*. 2003;18(suppl 1):61–68.
171. Davies MJ, Nguyen K, Gaynor JW, et al. Modified ultrafiltration improves left ventricular systolic function in infants after cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1998;115:361–369; discussion 9–70.
172. Sever K, Tansel T, Basaran M, et al. The benefits of continuous ultrafiltration in pediatric cardiac surgery. *Scand Cardiovasc J*. 2004;38:307–311.
173. Huang H, Yao T, Wang W, et al. Combination of balanced ultrafiltration with modified ultrafiltration attenuates pulmonary injury in patients undergoing open heart surgery. *Chin Med J (Engl)*. 2003;116:1504–1507.
174. Gaynor JW, Kuypers M, van Rossem M, et al. Haemodynamic changes during modified ultrafiltration immediately following the first stage of the Norwood reconstruction. *Cardiol Young*. 2005;15:4–7.
175. Mahmoud AB, Burhani MS, Hannef AA, et al. Effect of modified ultrafiltration on pulmonary function after cardiopulmonary bypass. *Chest*. 2005;128:3447–3453.
176. Keenan HT, Thiagarajan R, Stephens KE, et al. Pulmonary function after modified venovenous ultrafiltration in infants: a prospective, randomized trial. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2000;119:501–505; discussion 6–7.
177. Hiramatsu T, Imai Y, Kurosawa H, et al. Effects of dilutional and modified ultrafiltration in plasma endothelin-1 and pulmonary vascular resistance after the Fontan procedure. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;73:861–865.
178. Ramamoorthy C, Lynn AM. Con: the use of modified ultrafiltration during pediatric cardiovascular surgery is not a benefit. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1998;12:483–485.
179. Bando K, Vijay P, Turrentine MW, et al. Dilutional and modified ultrafiltration reduces pulmonary hypertension after operations for congenital heart disease: a prospective randomized study. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1998;115:517–525; discussion 25–27.
180. Skaryak LA, Kirshbom PM, DiBernardo LR, et al. Modified ultrafiltration improves cerebral metabolic recovery after circulatory arrest. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;109:744–751; discussion 51–52.
181. Rodriguez RA, Ruel M, Broecker L, et al. High flow rates during modified ultrafiltration decrease cerebral blood flow velocity and venous oxygen saturation in infants. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2005;80:22–28.
182. Medlin WM, Sistino JJ. Cerebral oxygen saturation changes during modified ultrafiltration. *Perfusion*. 2006;21:325–328.
183. Journois D, Pouard P, Greeley WJ, et al. Hemofiltration during cardiopulmonary bypass in pediatric cardiac surgery: effects on hemostasis, cytokines, and complement components. *Anesthesiology*. 1994;81:1181–1189. discussion 26A-27A.
184. Taenzer AH, Groom R, Quinn RD. Fentanyl plasma levels after modified ultrafiltration in infant heart surgery. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2005;37:369–372.
185. Graham Jr TP, Franklin RC, Wyse RK, et al. Left ventricular wall stress and contractile function in childhood: normal values and comparison of Fontan repair versus palliation only in patients with tricuspid atresia. *Circulation*. 1986;74:I-61–I-69.

186. Berner M, Oberhansli I, Rouge JC, et al. Chronotropic and inotropic supports are both required to increase cardiac output early after corrective operations for tetralogy of Fallot. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1989;97:297–302.
187. Rebeyka IM, Hanan SA, Borges MR, et al. Rapid cooling contracture of the myocardium: the adverse effect of prearrest cardiac hypothermia. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1990;100:240–249.
188. Bohn DJ, Poirier CS, Edmonds JF, et al. Hemodynamic effects of dobutamine after cardiopulmonary bypass in children. *Crit Care Med*. 1980;8:367–371.
189. Chang AC, Atz AM, Wernovsky G, et al. Milrinone: systemic and pulmonary hemodynamic effects in neonates after cardiac surgery. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23:1907–1914.
190. Ramamoorthy C, Anderson GD, Williams GD, et al. Pharmacokinetics and side effects of milrinone in infants and children after open heart surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:283–289.
191. Rudolph AM. Distribution and regulation of blood flow in the fetal and neonatal lamb. *Circ Res*. 1985;57:811–821.
192. Pearl JM, Laks H, Drinkwater Jr DC, et al. Repair of truncus arteriosus in infancy. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1991;52:780–786.
193. Golding LA. Postcardiotomy mechanical support. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1991;3:29–32.
194. Klein MD, Shaheen KW, Whittlesey GC, et al. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for the circulatory support of children after repair of congenital heart disease. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1990;100:498–505.
195. Walters 3rd HL, Hakimi M, Rice MD, et al. Pediatric cardiac surgical ECMO: multivariate analysis of risk factors for hospital death. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1995;60:329–336; discussion 36–37.
196. Meliones JN, Custer JR, Snedecor S, et al. Extracorporeal life support for cardiac assist in pediatric patients: review of ELSO Registry data. *Circulation*. 1991;84:III-168–III-172.
197. Duncan BW, Ibrahim AE, Hraska V, et al. Use of rapid-deployment extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for the resuscitation of pediatric patients with heart disease after cardiac arrest. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1998;116:305–311.
198. Karl TR. Extracorporeal circulatory support in infants and children. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1994;6:154–160.
199. Runo JR, Loyd JE. Primary pulmonary hypertension. *Lancet*. 2003;361:1533–1544.
200. Atz AM, Wessel DL. Sildenafil ameliorates effects of inhaled nitric oxide withdrawal. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:307–310.
201. Clabby ML, Canter CE, Moller JH, et al. Hemodynamic data and survival in children with pulmonary hypertension. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1997;30:554–560.
202. Carmosino MJ, Friesen RH, Doran A, et al. Perioperative complications in children with pulmonary hypertension undergoing noncardiac surgery or cardiac catheterization. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:521–527.
203. Rich S, Dantzker DR, Ayres SM, et al. Primary pulmonary hypertension: a national prospective study. *Ann Intern Med*. 1987;107:216–223.
204. Blaise G, Langleben D, Hubert B. Pulmonary arterial hypertension: pathophysiology and anesthetic approach. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1415–1432.
205. Taylor CJ, Derrick G, McEwan A, et al. Risk of cardiac catheterization under anaesthesia in children with pulmonary hypertension. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;98:657–661.
206. Adatia I. Recent advances in pulmonary vascular disease. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2002;14:292–297.
207. Fischer LG, Van Aken H, Burkle H. Management of pulmonary hypertension: physiological and pharmacological considerations for anesthesiologists. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1603–1616.
208. Lyrene RK, Welch KA, Godoy G, et al. Alkalosis attenuates hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction in neonatal lambs. *Pediatr Res*. 1985;19:1268–1271.
209. Rudolph AM, Yuan S. Response of the pulmonary vasculature to hypoxia and H^+ ion concentration changes. *J Clin Invest*. 1966;45:399–411.
210. Weisfeldt ML, Halperin HR. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation: beyond cardiac massage. *Circulation*. 1986;74:443–448.
211. Lawless S, Burckart G, Diven W, et al. Amrinone pharmacokinetics in neonates and infants. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 1988;28:283–284.
212. Molloy DW, Lee KY, Jones D, et al. Effects of noradrenaline and isoproterenol on cardiopulmonary function in a canine model of acute pulmonary hypertension. *Chest*. 1985;88:432–435.
213. Levin DL, Heymann MA, Kitterman JA, et al. Persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn infant. *J Pediatr*. 1976;89:626–630.
214. Bush A, Busst C, Knight WB, et al. Modification of pulmonary hypertension secondary to congenital heart disease by prostacyclin therapy. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1987;136:767–769.
215. Zall S, Milocco I, Ricksten SE. Effects of adenosine on myocardial blood flow and metabolism after coronary artery bypass surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1991;73:689–695.
216. Barst RJ, Rubin LJ, McGoon MD, et al. Survival in primary pulmonary hypertension with long-term continuous intravenous prostacyclin. *Ann Intern Med*. 1994;121:409–415.
217. Prasad S, Wilkinson J, Gatzoulis MA. Sildenafil in primary pulmonary hypertension. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;343:1342.
218. Barst RJ, Rubin LJ, Long WA, et al. A comparison of continuous intravenous epoprostenol (prostacyclin) with conventional therapy for primary pulmonary hypertension. The Primary Pulmonary Hypertension Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;334:296–302.
219. Abrams D, Schulze-Neick I, Magee AG. Sildenafil as a selective pulmonary vasodilator in childhood primary pulmonary hypertension. *Heart*. 2000;84:E4.
220. Zhao L, Mason NA, Morrell NW, et al. Sildenafil inhibits hypoxia-induced pulmonary hypertension. *Circulation*. 2001;104:424–428.
221. Boucek MM, Edwards LB, Keck BM, et al. The registry of the international society for heart and lung transplantation: sixth official pediatric report—2003. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2003;22:636–652.
222. Barst RJ, Ivy D, Dingemanse J, et al. Pharmacokinetics, safety, and efficacy of bosentan in pediatric patients with pulmonary arterial hypertension. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 2003;73:372–382.
223. Gaynor JW, Bridges ND, Clark BJ, et al. Update on lung transplantation in children. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 1998;10:256–261.
224. Pepke-Zaba J, Higenbottam TW, Dinh-Xuan AT, et al. Inhaled nitric oxide as a cause of selective pulmonary vasodilatation in pulmonary hypertension. *Lancet*. 1991;338:1173–1174.
225. Russell IA, Zwass MS, Fineman JR, et al. The effects of inhaled nitric oxide on postoperative pulmonary hypertension in infants and children undergoing surgical repair of congenital heart disease. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:46–51.
226. Girard C, Lehot JJ, Pannetier JC, et al. Inhaled nitric oxide after mitral valve replacement in patients with chronic pulmonary artery hypertension. *Anesthesiology*. 1992;77:880–883.
227. Curran RD, Mavroudis C, Backer CL, et al. Inhaled nitric oxide for children with congenital heart disease and pulmonary hypertension. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1995;60:1765–1771.
228. Wessel DL, Adatia I, Giglia TM, et al. Use of inhaled nitric oxide and acetylcholine in the evaluation of pulmonary hypertension and endothelial function after cardiopulmonary bypass. *Circulation*. 1993;88:2128–2138.
229. Zobel G, Gamillscheg A, Schwinger W, et al. Inhaled nitric oxide in infants and children after open heart surgery. *J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino)*. 1998;39:79–86.
230. Adatia I, Atz AM, Jonas RA, et al. Diagnostic use of inhaled nitric oxide after neonatal cardiac operations. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1996;112:1403–1405.
231. Adatia I, Perry S, Landzberg M, et al. Inhaled nitric oxide and hemodynamic evaluation of patients with pulmonary hypertension before transplantation. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1995;25:1656–1664.
232. Wheller J, George BL, Mulder DG, et al. Diagnosis and management of postoperative pulmonary hypertensive crisis. *Circulation*. 1979;60:1640–1644.
233. Bartkowski R, Wojtalik M, Korman E, et al. Thyroid hormones levels in infants during and after cardiopulmonary bypass with ultrafiltration. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2002;22:879–884.
234. Journois D, Pouard P, Mauriat P, et al. Inhaled nitric oxide as a therapy for pulmonary hypertension after operations for congenital heart defects. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1994;107:1129–1135.
235. Yahagi N, Kumon K, Tanigami H, et al. Inhaled nitric oxide for the postoperative management of Fontan-type operations. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1994;57:1371–1373.
236. Manno CS, Hedberg KW, Kim HC, et al. Comparison of the hemostatic effects of fresh whole blood, stored whole blood, and components after open heart surgery in children. *Blood*. 1991;77:930–936.
237. Fergusson DA, Hebert PC, Mazer CD, et al. A comparison of aprotinin and lysine analogues in high-risk cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358:2319–2331.

238. Andrew M, Paes B, Milner R, et al. Development of the human coagulation system in the full-term infant. *Blood*. 1987;70:165–172.
239. Colon-Otero G, Gilchrist GS, Holcomb GR, et al. Preoperative evaluation of hemostasis in patients with congenital heart disease. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1987;62:379–385.
240. Hornykewycz S, Odegard KC, Castro RA, Zurakowski D, Pigula F, DiNardo JA. Hemostatic consequences of a non-fresh or reconstituted whole blood small volume cardiopulmonary bypass prime in neonates and infants. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19:854–861.
241. Zabala LM, Guzzetta NA. Cyanotic congenital heart disease (CCHD): focus on hypoxemia, secondary erythrocytosis, and coagulation alterations. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25:981–989.
242. Guzzetta NA, Monitz HG, Fernandez JD, Fazlollah TM, Knezevic A, Miller BE. Correlations between activated clotting time values and heparin concentration measurements in young infants undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:173–179.
243. Guzzetta NA, Miller BE, Todd K, Szlam F, Moore RH, Tosone SR. An evaluation of the effects of a standard heparin dose on thrombin inhibition during cardiopulmonary bypass in neonates. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:1276–1282; table of contents.
244. Guzzetta NA, Bajaj T, Fazlollah T, et al. A comparison of heparin management strategies in infants undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:419–425; table of contents.
245. Gruenwald CE, Manlhiot C, Chan AK, et al. Randomized, controlled trial of individualized heparin and protamine management in infants undergoing cardiac surgery with cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2010;56:1794–1802.
246. Andrew M, Paes B, Milner R, et al. Development of the human coagulation system in the full-term infant. *Blood*. 1987;70:165–172.
247. Monagle P, Barnes C, Ignjatovic V, et al. Developmental haemostasis. Impact for clinical haemostasis laboratories. *Thromb Haemost*. 2006;95:362–372.
248. Manlhiot C, Gruenwald CE, Holtby HM, et al. Challenges with heparin-based anticoagulation during cardiopulmonary bypass in children: Impact of low antithrombin activity. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2016;151:444–450.
249. Arnold PD. Coagulation and the surgical neonate. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2014;24:89–97.
250. Jobes DR, Aitken GL, Shaffer GW. Increased accuracy and precision of heparin and protamine dosing reduces blood loss and transfusion in patients undergoing primary cardiac operations. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;110:36–45.
251. Horkay F, Martin P, Rajah SM, et al. Response to heparinization in adults and children undergoing cardiac operations. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1992;53:822–826.
252. Romlin BS, Soderlund F, Wahlander H, Nilsson B, Baghaei F, Jeppsson A. Platelet count and function in paediatric cardiac surgery: a prospective observational study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:847–854.
253. Woodman RC, Harker LA. Bleeding complications associated with cardiopulmonary bypass. *Blood*. 1990;76:1680–1697.
254. Harker LA. Bleeding after cardiopulmonary bypass. *N Engl J Med*. 1986;314:1446–1448.
255. Williams GD, Bratton SL, Riley EC, Ramamoorthy C. Association between age and blood loss in children undergoing open heart operations. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1998;66:870–875; discussion 5-6.
256. Faraoni D, Willems A, Romlin BS, Belisle S, Van der Linden P. Development of a specific algorithm to guide haemostatic therapy in children undergoing cardiac surgery: a single-centre retrospective study. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2015;32:320–329.
257. Williams GD, Jones TK, Hanson KA, Morray JP. The hemodynamic effects of propofol in children with congenital heart disease. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89:1411–1416.
258. Steiner ME, Despotis GJ. Transfusion algorithms and how they apply to blood conservation: the high-risk cardiac surgical patient. *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am*. 2007;21:177–184.
259. Wikkelso A, Wetterslev J, Moller AM, Afshari A. Thromboelastography (TEG) or rotational thromboelastometry (ROTEM) to monitor haemostatic treatment in bleeding patients: a systematic review with meta-analysis and trial sequential analysis. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72:519–531.
260. Pasquali SK, Wallace AS, Gaynor JW, et al. Congenital heart surgery case mix across North American centers and impact on performance assessment. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2016;102:1580–1587.
261. Romlin BS, Wahlander H, Berggren H, et al. Intraoperative thromboelastometry is associated with reduced transfusion prevalence in pediatric cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:30–36.
262. Nakayama Y, Nakajima Y, Tanaka KA, et al. Thromboelastometry-guided intraoperative haemostatic management reduces bleeding and red cell transfusion after paediatric cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;114:91–102.
263. Oswald E, Stalzer B, Heitz E, et al. Thromboelastometry (ROTEM) in children: age-related reference ranges and correlations with standard coagulation tests. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:827–835.
264. Chan KL, Summerhayes RG, Ignjatovic V, Horton SB, Monagle PT. Reference values for kaolin-activated thromboelastography in healthy children. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1610–1613; table of contents.
265. Eaton MP. Antifibrinolytic therapy in surgery for congenital heart disease. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:1087–1100.
266. Pasquali SK, Li JS, He X, et al. Comparative analysis of antifibrinolyticmedications in pediatric heart surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;143:550–557.
267. Royston D, Bidstrup BP, Taylor KM, et al. Effect of aprotinin on need for blood transfusion after repeat open-heart surgery. *Lancet*. 1987;2:1289–1291.
268. Dietrich W, Henze R, Barankay A, et al. High-dose aprotinin application reduces homologous blood requirement in cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Anesth*. 1989;3:79.
269. Dietrich W, Spannagl M, Jochum M, et al. Influence of high-dose aprotinin treatment on blood loss and coagulation patterns in patients undergoing myocardial revascularization. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;73:1119–1126.
270. Dietrich W, Spannagl M, Schramm W, et al. The influence of preoperative anticoagulation on heparin response during cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1991;102:505–514.
271. Dietrich W, Barankay A, Hahnel C, et al. High-dose aprotinin in cardiac surgery: three years' experience in 1,784 patients. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 1992;6:324–327.
272. Eaton MP, Alfieris GM, Sweeney DM, et al. Pharmacokinetics of epsilon-aminocaproic acid in neonates undergoing cardiac surgery with cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:1002–1009.
273. Salzman EW, Weinstein MJ, Weintraub RM, et al. Treatment with desmopressin acetate to reduce blood loss after cardiac surgery: a double-blind randomized trial. *N Engl J Med*. 1986;314:1402–1406.
274. Reynolds LM, Nicolson SC, Jobes DR, et al. Desmopressin does not decrease bleeding after cardiac operation in young children. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1993;106:954–958.
275. Guzzetta NA, Williams GD. Current use of factor concentrates in pediatric cardiac anesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2017;27:678–687.
276. Galas FR, de Almeida JP, Fukushima JT, et al. Hemostatic effects of fibrinogen concentrate compared with cryoprecipitate in children after cardiac surgery: a randomized pilot trial. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2014;148:1647–1655.
277. Ghadimi K, Levy JH, Welsby IJ. Prothrombin complex concentrates for bleeding in the perioperative setting. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:1287–1300.
278. Guzzetta NA, Szlam F, Kiser AS, et al. Augmentation of thrombin generation in neonates undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;112:319–327.
279. Franklin SW, Szlam F, Fernandez JD, Leong T, Tanaka KA, Guzzetta NA. Optimizing thrombin generation with 4-factor prothrombin complex concentrates in neonatal plasma after cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:935–942.
280. Cholette JM, Faraoni D, Goobie SM, Ferraris V, Hassan N. Patient blood management in pediatric cardiac surgery: a review. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
281. Willems A, Datoussaid D, Tucci M, et al. Impact of on-bypass red blood cell transfusion on severe postoperative morbidity or mortality in children. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:420–429.
282. Manlhiot C, Menjak IB, Brandao LR, et al. Risk, clinical features, and outcomes of thrombosis associated with pediatric cardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 2011;124:1511–1519.
283. Faraoni D, Gardella KM, Odegard KC, Emani SM, DiNardo JA. Incidence and predictors for postoperative thrombotic complications in children with surgical and nonsurgical heart disease. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2016;102:1360–1367.
284. Faraoni D, Emani S, Halpin E, et al. Relationship between transfusion of blood products and the incidence of thrombotic complications in neonates and infants undergoing cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1943–1948.
285. Jaggers JJ, Neal MC, Smith PK, Ungerleider RM, Lawson JH. Infant cardiopulmonary bypass: a procoagulant state. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1999;68:513–520.

286. Garvin S, Muehlschlegel JD, Perry TE, et al. Postoperative activity, but not preoperative activity, of antithrombin is associated with major adverse cardiac events after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:862–869.
287. Brown AC, Hannan RT, Timmins LH, Fernandez JD, Barker TH, Guzzetta NA. Fibrin network changes in neonates after cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:1021–1031.
288. Limperopoulos C, Majnemer A, Shevell MI, et al. Neurodevelopmental status of newborns and infants with congenital heart defects before and after open heart surgery. *J Pediatr*. 2000;137:638–645.
288a. Chen J, Zimmerman RA, Jarvik GP, et al. Perioperative stroke in infants undergoing open heart operations for congenital heart disease. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2009;88:823–829.
289. Galli KK, Zimmerman RA, Jarvik GP, et al. Periventricular leukomalacia is common after neonatal cardiac surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127:692–704.
290. Mahle WT, Tavani F, Zimmerman RA, et al. An MRI study of neurological injury before and after congenital heart surgery. *Circulation*. 2002;106. I-109–I-114.
291. Balasubramanian SK, Tiruvoipati R, Amin M, et al. Factors influencing the outcome of paediatric cardiac surgical patients during extracorporeal circulatory support. *J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2007;2(4).
292. Flick RP, Katusic SK, Colligan RC, et al. Cognitive and behavioral outcomes after early exposure to anesthesia and surgery. *Pediatrics*. 2011;128:e1053–e1061.
293. DiMaggio C, Sun LS, Li G. Early childhood exposure to anesthesia and risk of developmental and behavioral disorders in a sibling birth cohort. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:1143–1151.
294. DiMaggio C, Sun LS, Kakavouli A, et al. A retrospective cohort study of the association of anesthesia and hernia repair surgery with behavioral and developmental disorders in young children. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2009;21:286–291.
295. Gleich SJ, Flick R, Hu D, et al. Neurodevelopment of children exposed to anesthesia: design of the Mayo Anesthesia Safety in Kids (MASK) study. *Contemp Clin Trials*. 2015;41:45–54.
296. Hu D, Flick RP, Zaccariello MJ, et al. Association between exposure of young children to procedures requiring general anesthesia and learning and behavioral outcomes in a population-based birth cohort. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:227–240.
297. Ing C, Wall MM, DiMaggio CJ, et al. Latent class analysis of neurodevelopmental deficit after exposure to anesthesia in early childhood. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2017;29:264–273.
298. O'Leary JD, Janus M, Duku E, et al. A population-based study evaluating the association between surgery in early life and child development at primary school entry. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125: 272–279.
299. Jaggers JJ, Forbess JM, Shah AS, et al. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for infant postcardiotomy support: significance of shunt management. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;69:1476–1483.
300. Shah SA, Shankar V, Churchwell KB, et al. Clinical outcomes of 84 children with congenital heart disease managed with extracorporeal membrane oxygenation after cardiac surgery. *ASAIO J*. 2005;51:504–507.
301. Kolovos NS, Bratton SL, Moler FW, et al. Outcome of pediatric patients treated with extracorporeal life support after cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;76:1435–1441; discussion 41–42.
302. Blume ED, Naftel DC, Bastardi HJ, et al. Outcomes of children bridged to heart transplantation with ventricular assist devices: a multi-institutional study. *Circulation*. 2006;113:2313–2319.
303. Ibrahim AE, Duncan BW, Blume ED, et al. Long-term follow-up of pediatric cardiac patients requiring mechanical circulatory support. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2000;69:186–192.
304. Carberry KE, Gunter KS, Gemmato CJ, et al. Mechanical circulatory support for the pediatric patient. *Crit Care Nurs Q*. 2007;30:121–142.
305. Duncan BW, Hraska V, Jonas RA, et al. Mechanical circulatory support in children with cardiac disease. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1999;117:529–542.
306. Heise D, Brauer A, Quintel M. Recombinant activated factor VII (Novo7) in patients with ventricular assist devices: case report and review of the current literature. *J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2007;2:47.
307. Shen I, Giacomuzzi C, Ungerleider RM. Current strategies for optimizing the use of cardiopulmonary bypass in neonates and infants. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;75:S729–S734.
308. Duncan BW. Mechanical circulatory support for infants and children with cardiac disease. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2002;73:1670–1677.
309. Adachi I, Burki S, Zafar F, Morales DL. Pediatric ventricular assist devices. *J Thorac Dis*. 2015;7:2194–2202.
310. Yarlagadda VV, Maeda K, Zhang Y, et al. Temporary circulatory support in U.S. children awaiting heart transplantation. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;70:2250–2260.
311. Hosenpud JD, Bennett LE, Keck BM, et al. The registry of the International Society For Heart And Lung Transplantation: fifteenth official report: 1998. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 1998;17:656–668.
312. Kirklin JK, Naftel DC, McGiffin DC, et al. Analysis of morbid events and risk factors for death after cardiac transplantation. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1988;11:917–924.
313. Gajarski RJ, Towbin JA, Bricker JT, et al. Intermediate follow-up of pediatric heart transplant recipients with elevated pulmonary vascular resistance index. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1994;23:1682–1687.
314. Fukushima N, Gundry SR, Razzouk AJ, et al. Risk factors for graft failure associated with pulmonary hypertension after pediatric heart transplantation. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1994;107:985–989.
315. Chartrand C, Guerin R, Kangah M, et al. Pediatric heart transplantation: surgical considerations for congenital heart diseases. *J Heart Transplant*. 1990;9:608–616; discussion 16–17.
316. Bailey LL. Heart transplantation techniques in complex congenital heart disease. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 1993;12:S168–S175.
317. Zales VR, Wright KL, Pahl E, et al. Normal left ventricular muscle mass and mass/volume ratio after pediatric cardiac transplantation. *Circulation*. 1994;90:II-61–II-65.
318. Boucek MM, Kanakriyeh MS, Mathis CM, et al. Cardiac transplantation in infancy: donors and recipients. Loma Linda University Pediatric Heart Transplant Group. *J Pediatr*. 1990;116:171–176.
319. Canter CE, Moorhead S, Saffitz JE, et al. Steroid withdrawal in the pediatric heart transplant recipient initially treated with triple immunosuppression. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 1994;13:74–79; discussion 9–80.
320. Dipchand AI, Kirk R, Mahle WT, et al. Ten yr of pediatric heart transplantation: a report from the Pediatric Heart Transplant Study. *Pediatr Transplant*. 2013;17:99–111.
321. Schure AY, Kussman BD. Pediatric heart transplantation: demographics, outcomes, and anesthetic implications. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:594–603.
322. Benden C. Pediatric lung transplantation. *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9:2675–2683.
323. Drews T, Stiller B, Hubler M, et al. Coagulation management in pediatric mechanical circulatory support. *ASAIO J*. 2007;53:640–645.
324. Wessel DL. Managing low cardiac output syndrome after congenital heart surgery. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29:S220–S230.
325. Boucek MM, Edwards LB, Keck BM, et al. Registry of the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation: eighth official pediatric report—2005. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2005;24:968–982.
326. Laborde F, Folliguet T, Batisse A, et al. Video-assisted thoracoscopic surgical interruption: the technique of choice for patent ductus arteriosus: routine experience in 230 pediatric cases. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;110:1681–1684; discussion 4–5.
327. Burke RP, Wernovsky G, van der Velde M, et al. Video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery for congenital heart disease. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1995;109:499–507; discussion 8.
328. Gould DS, Montenegro LM, Gaynor JW, et al. A comparison of on-site and off-site patent ductus arteriosus ligation in premature infants. *Pediatrics*. 2003;112:1298–1301.
329. DeSanctis RW, Doroghazi RM, Austen WG, et al. Aortic dissection. *N Engl J Med*. 1987;317:1060–1067.
330. Malviya S, Burrows FA, Johnston AE, et al. Anaesthetic experience with paediatric interventional cardiology. *Can J Anaesth*. 1989;36:320–324.
331. Mullins CE. Pediatric and congenital therapeutic cardiac catheterization. *Circulation*. 1989;79:1153–1159.
332. Lock JE, Rome JJ, Davis R, et al. Transcatheter closure of atrial septal defects: experimental studies. *Circulation*. 1989;79:1091–1099.
333. Hellenbrand WE, Fahey JT, McGowan FX, et al. Transesophageal echocardiographic guidance of transcatheter closure of atrial septal defect. *Am J Cardiol*. 1990;66:207–213.
334. Haas NA, Soetemann DB, Ates I, et al. Closure of secundum atrial septal defects by using the Occlutech occluder devices in more than 1300 patients: the IRFACODE project: a retrospective case series. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2016;88:571–581.
335. Wyss Y, Quandt D, Weber R, et al. Interventional closure of secundum type atrial septal defects in infants less than 10 kilograms: indications and procedural outcome. *J Interv Cardiol*. 2016;29: 646–653.

336. Yew G, Wilson NJ. Transcatheter atrial septal defect closure with the Amplatzer septal occluder: five-year follow-up. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2005;64:193–196.
337. Masura J, Gavora P, Podnar T. Long-term outcome of transcatheter secundum-type atrial septal defect closure using Amplatzer septal occluders. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2005;45:505–507.
338. Butera G, Carminati M, Chessa M, et al. CardioSEAL/STARflex versus Amplatzer devices for percutaneous closure of small to moderate (up to 18 mm) atrial septal defects. *Am Heart J*. 2004;148:507–510.
339. Tobis J, Shenoda M. Percutaneous treatment of patent foramen ovale and atrial septal defects. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2012;60:1722–1732.
340. Suda K, Raboisson MJ, Piette E, et al. Reversible atrioventricular block associated with closure of atrial septal defects using the Amplatzer device. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;43:1677–1682.
341. Amin Z, Hijazi ZM, Bass JL, et al. Erosion of Amplatzer septal occluder device after closure of secundum atrial septal defects: review of registry of complications and recommendations to minimize future risk. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2004;63:496–502.
342. Krumsdorf U, Ostermayer S, Billinger K, et al. Incidence and clinical course of thrombus formation on atrial septal defect and patient foramen ovale closure devices in 1,000 consecutive patients. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;43:302–309.
343. Holzer R, Balzer D, Cao QL, et al. Device closure of muscular ventricular septal defects using the Amplatzer muscular ventricular septal defect occluder: immediate and mid-term results of a U.S. registry. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;43:1257–1263.
344. Knauth AL, Lock JE, Perry SB, et al. Transcatheter device closure of congenital and postoperative residual ventricular septal defects. *Circulation*. 2004;110:501–507.
345. Bass JL, Kalra GS, Arora R, et al. Initial human experience with the Amplatzer perimembranous ventricular septal occluder device. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2003;58:238–245.
346. Hijazi ZM, Hakim F, Haweleh AA, et al. Catheter closure of perimembranous ventricular septal defects using the new Amplatzer membranous VSD occluder: initial clinical experience. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2002;56:508–515.
347. Saurav A, Kaushik M, Mahesh Alla V, et al. Comparison of percutaneous device closure versus surgical closure of peri-membranous ventricular septal defects: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2015;86:1048–1056.
348. Rothman A, Perry SB, Keane JF, et al. Early results and follow-up of balloon angioplasty for branch pulmonary artery stenoses. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1990;15:1109–1117.
349. Geggel RL, Gauvreau K, Lock JE. Balloon dilation angioplasty of peripheral pulmonary stenosis associated with Williams syndrome. *Circulation*. 2001;103:2165–2170.
350. Li WF, Pollard H, Karimi M, et al. Comparison of valvar and right ventricular function following transcatheter and surgical pulmonary valve replacement. *Congenit Heart Dis*. 2018;13:140–146.
351. Jones TK, Rome JJ, Armstrong AK, et al. Transcatheter pulmonary valve replacement reduces tricuspid regurgitation in patients with right ventricular volume/pressure overload. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2016;68:1525–1535.
352. Callahan R, Bergersen L, Lock JE, Marshall AC. Transcatheter pulmonary valve replacement and acute increase in diastolic pressure are associated with increases in both systolic and diastolic pulmonary artery dimensions. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2017;38:456–464.
353. Booth KL, Roth SJ, Perry SB, et al. Cardiac catheterization of patients supported by extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2002;40:1681–1686.
354. Akintuerk H, Michel-Behnke I, Valeske K, et al. Stenting of the arterial duct and banding of the pulmonary arteries: basis for combined Norwood stage I and II repair in hypoplastic left heart. *Circulation*. 2002;105:1099–1103.
355. Vitiello R, McCrindle BW, Nykanen D, et al. Complications associated with pediatric cardiac catheterization. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1998;32:1433–1440.
356. Boucek MM, Mashburn C, Chan KC. Catheter-based interventional palliation for hypoplastic left heart syndrome. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg Pediatr Card Surg Annu*. 2005:72–77.
357. Galantowicz M, Cheatham JP. Fontan completion without surgery. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg Pediatr Card Surg Annu*. 2004;7:48–55.
358. Michel-Behnke I, Akintuerk H, Thul J, et al. Stent implantation in the ductus arteriosus for pulmonary blood supply in congenital heart disease. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2004;61:242–252.
359. Warnes CA, Liberthson R, Danielson GK, et al. Task force 1: the changing profile of congenital heart disease in adult life. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2001;37:1170–1175.
360. Twite MD, Ing RJ. Tetralogy of Fallot: perioperative anesthetic management of children and adults. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2012;16:97–105.
361. Bailey Jr PD, Jobes DR. The Fontan patient. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27:285–300.
362. Kverneland LS, Kramer P, Ovroutski S. Five decades of the Fontan operation: a systematic review of international reports on outcomes after univentricular palliation. *Congenit Heart Dis*. 2018.
363. Rychik J. Forty years of the Fontan operation: a failed strategy. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg Pediatr Card Surg Annu*. 2010;13:96–100.
364. Saarel EV, Stefanelli CB, Fischbach PS, et al. Transtelephonic electrocardiographic monitors for evaluation of children and adolescents with suspected arrhythmias. *Pediatrics*. 2004;113:248–251.
365. Rossano J, Bloemers B, Sreeram N, et al. Efficacy of implantable loop recorders in establishing symptom-rhythm correlation in young patients with syncope and palpitations. *Pediatrics*. 2003;112:e228–e233.
366. Perry JC, Garson Jr A. Supraventricular tachycardia due to Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome in children: early disappearance and late recurrence. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1990;16:1215–1220.
367. Wasmer K, Eckardt L. Management of supraventricular arrhythmias in adults with congenital heart disease. *Heart*. 2016;102:1614–1619.
368. Kugler JD. Radiofrequency catheter ablation for supraventricular tachycardia. Should it be used in infants and small children? *Circulation*. 1994;90:639–641.
369. Erb TO, Hall JM, Ing RJ, et al. Postoperative nausea and vomiting in children and adolescents undergoing radiofrequency catheter ablation: a randomized comparison of propofol- and isoflurane-based anesthetics. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1577–1581; table of contents.
370. Lavoie J, Walsh EP, Burrows FA, Laussen P, Lulu JA, Hansen DD. Effects of propofol or isoflurane anesthesia on cardiac conduction in children undergoing radiofrequency catheter ablation for tachydysrhythmias. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:884–887.
371. Hino H, Oda Y, Yoshida Y, Suzuki T, Shimada M, Nishikawa K. Electrophysiological effects of desflurane in children with Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome: a randomized crossover study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2018;62:159–166.
372. Khairy P, Van Hare GF, Balaji S, et al. PACES/HRS Expert Consensus Statement on the Recognition and Management of Arrhythmias in Adult Congenital Heart Disease: developed in partnership between the Pediatric and Congenital Electrophysiology Society (PACES) and the Heart Rhythm Society (HRS). Endorsed by the governing bodies of PACES, HRS, the American College of Cardiology (ACC), the American Heart Association (AHA), the European Heart Rhythm Association (EHRA), the Canadian Heart Rhythm Society (CHRS), and the International Society for Adult Congenital Heart Disease (ISACHD). *Heart Rhythm*. 2014;11:e102–e165.
373. Yap SC, Harris L, Silversides CK, Downar E, Chauhan VS. Outcome of intra-atrial re-entrant tachycardia catheter ablation in adults with congenital heart disease: negative impact of age and complex atrial surgery. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2010;56:1589–1596.
374. Labombarda F, Hamilton R, Shohoudi A, et al. Increasing prevalence of atrial fibrillation and permanent atrial arrhythmias in congenital heart disease. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;70:857–865.
375. Kramer CC, Maldonado J, Olson M, Gingerich JC, Ochoa L, Law IH. Safety and efficacy of atrial antitachycardia pacing in congenital heart disease. *Heart Rhythm*. 2017.
376. Zimmerman FJ, Starr JP, Koenig PR, et al. Acute hemodynamic benefit of multisite ventricular pacing after congenital heart surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2003;75:1775–1780.
377. Jeewa A, Pitfield AF, Potts JE, et al. Does biventricular pacing improve hemodynamics in children undergoing routine congenital heart surgery? *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2010;31:181–187.
378. Dubin AM, Feinstein JA, Reddy VM, et al. Electrical resynchronization: a novel therapy for the failing right ventricle. *Circulation*. 2003;107:2287–2289.

379. Roofthooft MT, Blom NA, Rijlaarsdam ME, et al. Resynchronization therapy after congenital heart surgery to improve left ventricular function. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 2003;26:2042–2044.
380. Nishimura RA, Carabello BA, Faxon DP, et al. ACC/AHA 2008 guideline update on valvular heart disease: focused update on infective endocarditis: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines endorsed by the Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, and Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2008;72:E1–E12.
381. Practice advisory on anesthetic care for magnetic resonance imaging: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on anesthetic care for magnetic resonance imaging. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:495–520.
382. Cindea N, Odille F, Bosser G, Felblinger J, Vuissoz PA. Reconstruction from free-breathing cardiac MRI data using reproducing kernel Hilbert spaces. *Magn Reson Med*. 2010;63:59–67.
383. Moghari MH, Barthur A, Amaral ME, Geva T, Powell AJ. Free-breathing whole-heart 3D cine magnetic resonance imaging with prospective respiratory motion compensation. *Magn Reson Med*. 2017.
384. Ahmad R, Hu HH, Krishnamurthy R, Krishnamurthy R. Reducing sedation for pediatric body MRI using accelerated and abbreviated imaging protocols. *Pediatr Radiol*. 2018;48:37–49.
385. Tzifa A, Schaeffter T, Razavi R. MR imaging-guided cardiovascular interventions in young children. *Magn Reson Imaging Clin N Am*. 2012;20:117–128.
386. Forbess JM, Cook N, Roth SJ, et al. Ten-year institutional experience with palliative surgery for hypoplastic left heart syndrome: risk factors related to stage I mortality. *Circulation*. 1995;92:II-262–II-266.

79

Pediatric and Neonatal Critical Care

TODD J. KILBAUGH, MAURICE S. ZWASS, and PATRICK ROSS

KEY POINTS

- Congenital heart disease causes significant alterations in oxygenation, perfusion, and myocardial function after birth, and it can be categorized into hypoxic and normoxic lesions.
- The overall goal of therapy in shock is to treat the underlying cause, return adequate oxygen delivery to the tissues, and remove metabolic products that developed during anaerobic metabolism. It appears that the faster the body returns to adequate perfusion, the better the overall outcome.
- One of the specifics for neonatal resuscitation is the recommendation of positive pressure ventilation (PPV) with room air, unless chest compressions or medications are needed during the resuscitation, then the recommendation is still for PPV with 100% oxygen.
- Pediatric cardiac arrest is not a rare event. At least 16,000 American children (8-20 per 100,000 children per year) suffer a cardiopulmonary arrest each year.
- The four distinct phases of cardiac arrest and cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) interventions are: (1) prearrest, (2) no-flow (untreated cardiac arrest), (3) low-flow (CPR), and (4) post-resuscitation and arrest.
- Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) diagnostic criteria have been revised recently and are now the Berlin Definition, where ARDS is separated into three mutually exclusive categories based on the degree of hypoxia. Mild is $PaO_2/FiO_2 = 201$ to 300 with positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) > 5, moderate is $PaO_2/FiO_2 = 100$ to 200 with PEEP > 5, and severe is $PaO_2/FiO_2 < 100$ with PEEP > 10.
- Traumatic brain injury (TBI) is composed of two components—an initial primary injury owing to direct mechanical deformation of brain parenchyma and a subsequent secondary injury that can develop over hours to days. Secondary injury may be the result of multiple mechanisms including ischemia, excitotoxicity, metabolic failure and eventual apoptosis, cerebral swelling, axonal injury, and inflammation and regeneration.
- A vascular occlusive crisis in the lungs leads to acute chest syndrome (ACS). Acute chest syndrome is the leading cause of death and the second most common complication in sickle cell disease.
- Tumor lysis syndrome is a metabolic crisis precipitated by acute lysis of a large number of tumor cells. Serum uric acid, potassium, and phosphate concentrations are elevated. The elevated phosphate concentrations cause hypocalcemia.
- The role of family in the pediatric intensive care unit (PICU) has evolved over time, and the inclusion of family in the care of their child is now recognized as an important part of critical care.
- Accidents and trauma are the leading causes of death in children 1 to 14 years of age.

Relationship Between the Intensive Care Unit and the Operating Room

The field of pediatric intensive care may have originated from anesthesia, but these areas have grown apart over time. Due to the extensive training, there are few individuals who cover both disciplines. With more complex patients, it is likely that care will occur both in the operating room and the intensive care unit (ICU). There needs to be excellent communication between the ICU and operating room clinicians to ensure a seamless transition of care. Many institutions require an attending to attending handoff between the ICU and anesthesia for each case. It is important that this occurs in the preanesthetic as well as the postanesthetic setting. Information regarding current ICU therapy response can simplify a potentially difficult anesthetic. Similarly, understanding the operative and anesthetic course will guide the next several days of management. A complete anesthesia sign-out includes pertinent past medical history, allergies, ease of mask ventilation, induction agents, ease of intubation, decisions regarding extubation, venous and arterial access, blood products, fluid totals, inotropic agents, medications delivered including timing of antibiotics, complications, laboratory values, and most recent blood gas. This information may be available in the anesthetic record; however, a short verbal summary by the anesthesiologist provides a greater amount of practical detail.

Family Partnered Care in the Pediatric Intensive Care Unit

The family is an important part of the critical care team and needs to be included in shared decision making. In pediatric hospitals, families participate in multidisciplinary rounds with their nurses, respiratory therapists, pharmacists, and physician caring for their child. This does not require more time than traditional rounds and it does not compromise teaching.[1] There has been a significant push to increase family participation in both pediatric and adult ICUs. Family engagement is part of the ICU Liberation ABCDEF Bundle that is directed and supported by the Society of Critical Care Medicine. A great amount of information is available at www.iculiberation.org. An international multidisciplinary team of experts in neonatal, pediatric and adult critical care recently published Guidelines for Family Centered Care.[2] The guidelines address the need for family presence in the ICU, the need for family support beyond the ICU; goals for communication, use of consult services such as Palliative Care and Ethics, and a means to address the operational and environmental issues in ICUs that prevent family engagement. We see significant family satisfaction with participation in rounds and we believe it likely benefits the team and patient as well.[3-5] We anticipate a point in the future where we do not need to prove to anyone the need to have family involvement.

Giving the family a greater presence in the ICU with more responsibility and autonomy in decision making can increase their anxiety and distress. In addition to the potential development of posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) in our patients,[6-8] parents of children admitted to an ICU can incur severe emotional distress.[9] A recent review places the incidence of PTSD in parents of children in the PICU between 10% and 21%, with symptoms of PTSD occurring in up to 84% of families.[10] PTSD can occur no matter how routine the caregivers may view the process. The ICU is a unique and often terrifying experience for families and children. The process of ICU care involves multiple caregivers, changing shifts, and endless physicians. For families in the ICU, there can be a loss of control, significant financial worries, and other factors that affect coping. Helping parents cope with their child's critical illness and these stressors is a central part of intensive care. Parents may display behaviors that out of context may seem abnormal, such as excessive clinginess, intellectualizing the process, blaming others (including their spouses), minimizing, and seeking opinions everywhere (the internet, environmental care, etc.). We must attempt to understand what drives these behaviors to provide optimal care. We must help the parents be parents and educate them about their child's illness. This emphasizes that social workers, psychologists, and child and family therapists are all part of the critical care team.

With the move to family-centered care, we must address the issue of parental presence during invasive procedures and cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) efforts. There is increasing literature that families would like to have the choice to stay during CPR events or invasive procedures and the parents do find benefit to being present.[11-14] We believe that allowing parents to stay during procedures or resuscitation is helpful for the parents coping with the trauma of a critically ill child. As each PICU addresses this issue there are several things to consider. Caregiver attitudes toward parental presence will need to be addressed, as the likelihood of this event increases over time. The decision to allow parental presence cannot be forced on providers. However, we have seen that resistance to family presence among providers is decreasing over time. A means for declining on the part of the clinician as well as the parent must be available. There must be someone identified who will stay with the family and support them. In our ICUs, this role been filled by social workers or members of the clergy. For those who are looking for assistance in making the transition to parental presence during CPR, there have been guidelines published from a national consensus conference.[15] Parental presence during invasive procedures may pose a different challenge as these events occur more frequently compared with CPR. In the same manner, someone other than the person performing the procedure should be looking after the family, even for what we believe to be routine procedures. We also must give younger trainees the opportunity to opt out of family presence during procedures.

A final topic that needs to be addressed is the use of palliative care services for our critically ill patients. There is a role for early consultation of palliative care, as we do not believe in restricting its use or support to just those patients who are near to death. We feel that there is a significant benefit to early engagement for children who are at high risk for mortality during their hospitalization, for children with complex diseases, or those where they cognitive and physical abilities following ICU discharge will be significantly different than previously. There are great benefits to palliative care intervention to provide families ongoing support and opportunities to develop coping mechanisms. Many different PICUs have developed automatic triggers for palliative care consultation, so as not to miss opportunities to improve family support. Examples of triggers can be PICU duration, episodes of CPR, prolonged mechanical ventilation, and specific types of surgeries. A review by the IPAL-ICU (Improving Palliative Care in the ICU) Advisory Board in 2014[16] addresses the needs and goals of palliative care integration in the PICU.[1]

Disclosure of Medical Errors

We believe it is ethically correct to disclosure medical errors to families. However, some clinicians may continue to resist due to concerns regarding litigation. In a survey of 1018 Illinois residents, 27% indicated they would sue, but 38% stated they would recommend the hospital if appropriate disclosure and remediation occurred.[17] The conclusion drawn by the author of the study was that "[p]atients who are confident in their providers' commitment to disclose medical errors are not more litigious and far more forgiving than patients who have no faith in their providers' commitment to disclose." Explanations of medical errors should come from the senior member of the team to the family. This is usually the current ICU attending, but can be the medical director of the ICU, based on the complexity of the incident and outcome. The discussion should include an explanation of what happened in layman's terms, how it occurred, the repercussions and change of care planned for the child, and what will be done to prevent a similar error in the future. We find it helpful to have the ICU social worker present to help validate concerns and provide support. The attending remains present until all questions are answered or additional time is scheduled if necessary. Most hospitals will track errors or negative outcomes through a quality assurance program. Depending on the incident, a "root cause analysis" should be performed. Medical errors will occur, but they should also be an opportunity to improve practice quality and prevent future events.

In an ICU setting, there unfortunately will also be a need to cope with death and dying.[18] Palliative care plays an important role when nothing medically can be done for the child. We also find their services exceedingly helpful for children with chronic medical conditions who are anticipated to die during a future admission. With a team approach, we try to minimize pain and suffering for the child and family at the end of life. Caregivers in and ICU must understand when to allow the families choices and support them over what may be their own beliefs and practices—as long as the goal remains to prevent further pain and suffering.[19] The awareness of medical futility is increasing over time. However, with this concept there is a significant interplay with financial, societal, ethical, personal, and religious opinions and feelings. It may be difficult to define futility, but when the pain and suffering of continuing life are more severe than the inevitability of death, care may become futile. However, pain relief and caring support for the child and family can never be classified as futile care.

Organization of the Pediatric Intensive Care Unit

Medical and nursing directors, hospital administrators, and representatives from pediatric medicine, anesthesia, surgery, and the pediatric subspecialties should be responsible for policy and procedures pertaining to the PICU and should make recommendations regarding personnel staffing, equipment purchases, and structural and design changes within the unit. The medical director oversees the quality of patient care, patient triage, implementation of policy and procedures, in-service education, and coordination of consultants. Physician coverage should be full-time geographic at the resident, fellow, and attending staff level, and should include in-house, full-time coverage at night. The nursing director should have special skills in pediatric intensive care, education, and personnel management. The nursing staff must be trained in all aspects of pediatric critical care and resuscitation. Staffing should be flexible enough to provide one-on-one patient care when necessary. A multidisciplinary in-service program is essential for continuing education and orientation. Other team members include respiratory therapists, physical therapists, nutritionists, social workers, laboratory technologists, pharmacists, and psychiatrists and psychologists for the patients and staff. All medical and support personnel should be encouraged to participate in rounds, educational endeavors, and team meetings whenever possible. There must be adequate workspace around each bed and enough storage space to keep life support equipment within reach. Space for reading, meeting, sleeping, and showering should be available for the staff. Space should be provided for parents to remain with their children during the day and for parents to sleep overnight. Parents should be encouraged to participate as much as possible in the care of their child. Each bed space should be standardized so that it can be used to provide any level of care. Private rooms are ideal, but if shared rooms are necessary, the distance between beds must be adequate to ensure privacy and minimize nosocomial infection. Isolation rooms should be available within the confines of the unit. Devices for diversion and entertainment should be available for conscious children. Television and computer games are often better than heavy sedation.[20,21] Adequate nurses and nursing involvement at the bedside will prevent potentially life-threatening events. Because sick children require close personal observation, centrally monitored nursing stations have little place in the PICU.

Cardiovascular System

STRUCTURAL AND FUNCTIONAL DEVELOPMENT

The shape of the heart is complete by 6 weeks' gestation, but myofibrillar density and maturation increase through the first year of postnatal life. During this time, myocytes engage in rapid protein synthesis and rapid cell growth, which requires a high intracellular concentration of nuclei, mitochondria, and endoplasmic reticulum. The greater number of nonelastic and noncontractile elements makes the neonatal myocardium less compliant, and it contracts less efficiently than the adult myocardium. In the fetus and newborn, the decreased ventricular compliance causes small changes in end-diastolic volume to induce large changes in end-diastolic pressure. In addition, augmentation of stroke volume by the Frank-Starling mechanism is less effective in young children. The newborn is more dependent on heart rate (HR) for maintenance of cardiac output.[22,23] Cardiac output increases only about 15% with volume loading; it increases much more by increasing the HR.[24] This is an important consideration when taking care of the critically ill infant.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE CIRCULATION

The adult and fetal circulation differs in many ways. The fetal circulation is distinguished by (1) the placenta as the organ of respiration, (2) high pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR), (3) low systemic vascular resistance (SVR), and (4) fetal ventricles that pump in parallel with right ventricular dominance. While the fetus lives in a low oxygen environment, the oxygen content of the blood of the fetus is similar to that of adults (20 mL of oxygen/100 mL of blood) because of a higher concentration of hemoglobin that has high affinity for oxygen. The neonatal circulation has several shunts—the ductus arteriosus, ductus venosus, and foramen ovale—that direct more oxygenated blood to the brain and heart and bypass the lungs. Changes then occur that allow the parallel circulation of the fetus to convert to the series circulation of the adult:

1. With the first breath, expansion of the lung, increased alveolar oxygen, an increase in pH, and neurohumoral

mediators and nitric oxide (NO) relax the pulmonary vasoconstriction.[25]

2. When the placenta separates from the uterine wall, the placental blood vessels constrict, and SVR and left ventricular afterload increase. The decrease in PVR plus increase in SVR raises left atrial pressure above right atrial pressure (RAP) and functionally closes the "flap valve" of the foramen ovale. The foramen ovale may not close anatomically for months to years, if ever. It is patent in at least 15% of adults.[26,27]
3. The decrease in PVR causes flow through the ductus arteriosus to reverse. This exposes the ductus to oxygenated systemic arterial blood, which along with the rapid decrease in prostaglandin E_2 after birth closes the ductus. Anatomic closure of the ductus requires several weeks.
4. The ductus venosus closes passively with removal of the placental circulation and readjustment of portal pressure relative to inferior vena cava pressure.
5. There is a further gradual decline in PVR secondary to structural remodeling of the muscular layer of the pulmonary blood vessels. During fetal life, the central pulmonary vascular bed has a relatively thick muscle layer. After birth, the muscle coat thins and extends to the periphery of the lung—a process that takes months to years to complete.

DEVELOPMENT OF AUTONOMIC CONTROL OF THE CIRCULATION

The functional integrity of autonomic circulatory control during fetal and perinatal development is still a matter of considerable speculation. The fetal heart has reduced catecholamine stores and increased sensitivity to exogenously administered norepinephrine (NE).

Adrenergic innervation of the human myocardium is complete between 18 and 28 weeks' gestation. Human newborns have low cardiac stores of NE and decreased numbers of sympathetic nerves after birth. Adrenergic responses are apparently present but diminished in newborn humans. In human neonates, the cholinergic system is completely developed at birth, and the heart is sensitive to vagal stimulation. Bradycardia is the probable response to an increase in autonomic tone. The baroreceptor reflex is present but incompletely developed at term in humans. In preterm infants, postural changes elicit no change in HR, suggesting an incomplete or attenuated baroreceptor response.[26] The chemoreceptor response is well developed in utero. The fetal bradycardia that occurs in response to hypoxia is thought to be mediated through chemoreceptors and may be similar to the oxygen-conserving mechanisms of diving animals.[27]

MYOCARDIAL METABOLISM

Fetal myocardial metabolism differs from that of adults. Relative "hypoxia" is normal in utero, and infant hearts tolerate hypoxia better than the hearts of adults do. This difference may be due in part to high concentrations of glycogen in fetal myocardial tissue and to the ability to more effectively use anaerobic metabolism. Because of the high glycogen stores and the ability to use anaerobic metabolism efficiently, the fetal/newborn heart is relatively resistant to hypoxia and can be resuscitated more easily if oxygenation and perfusion are reestablished reasonably quickly.

Oxygen consumption increases precipitously after birth, presumably because neonates are required to maintain their own temperature. A full-term infant's oxygen consumption in a neutral thermal environment is approximately 6 mL/kg/min; it increases to 7 and 8 mL/kg/min at 10 days and 4 weeks, respectively.

Common Cardiovascular Disease States

CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE

Congenital heart disease causes significant alterations in oxygenation, perfusion, and myocardial function after birth (Box 79.1). These abnormalities can be divided into hypoxic and normoxic lesions. The latter include obstructive lesions of the left side of the heart (mitral valve stenosis, aortic valve stenosis, aortic stenosis, anomalous pulmonary venous return, ventricular septal defect, or patient ductus arteriosus with a right-to-left shunt), whereas hypoxic lesions include tricuspid valve stenosis, pulmonary valve stenosis, pulmonary artery stenosis or aplasia, and the tetralogy of Fallot. Right-sided lesions cause hypoxia if the left-to-right shunting of blood is sufficient to cause congestive heart failure (CHF) and pulmonary edema. Newborns with significant congenital heart disease commonly have either cyanosis or CHF. The degree of dysfunction usually changes during the first few months of life as PVR decreases to adult levels. As PVR decreases, left-to-right shunting of blood usually increases, and the symptoms of CHF become more apparent. Many neonates with a significant ventricular septal defect, which may or may not be observed during the preoperative workup, have no left-to-right shunting for several weeks after birth; however, induction of alkalosis during surgery can increase shunting. In the newborn, the usual signs and symptoms of CHF include poor feeding, irritability, sweating, tachycardia, tachypnea, decreased peripheral pulses, poor cutaneous perfusion, and hepatomegaly. Many patients with pulmonary edema exhibit tachypnea without retractions. Cyanosis occurs with structural cardiac disease,

BOX 79.1 **Common Congenital Heart Malformations in the Newborn**

1. Cyanotic congenital heart lesions
   - Tetralogy of Fallot
   - Transposition of the great arteries
   - Hypoplastic left heart syndrome
   - Pulmonary atresia with an intact ventricular septum
   - Single ventricle
   - Total anomalous pulmonary venous return
   - Tricuspid atresia
2. Congenital heart lesions manifested as congestive heart failure
   - Ventricular septal defect
   - Patent ductus arteriosus
   - Critical aortic stenosis
   - Coarctation of the aorta

but other causes such as respiratory disease, increased PVR (persistent pulmonary hypertension), and methemoglobinemia must also be considered. Congenital heart disease is diagnosed by physical examination, electrocardiogram (ECG), chest radiograph, and echocardiogram, postnatally and via fetal echocardiography. Cardiac catheterization is occasionally performed as interventional therapy or as a diagnostic tool. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is used to define the anatomy of congenital heart lesions before cardiac surgery. Initial treatment of congenital heart disease is aimed at relieving CHF, improving systemic perfusion, and improving or maintaining pulmonary blood flow. The ductus arteriosus must be maintained open in instances of hypoplastic left heart syndrome, aortic stenosis or atresia, interrupted aortic arch, and symptomatic neonatal coarctation of the aorta. In many cases, infusion of PGE_1 sustains life until definitive surgical correction can be performed.[28]

ACUTE CIRCULATORY FAILURE IN CHILDREN (SHOCK AND SEPSIS)

Shock

Shock is the inability to provide adequate oxygen to the tissues that require it. The condition of shock depends on the balance of supply and demand of oxygen. Typically the body delivers excess oxygen to the tissues. Under periods of stress or illness there can be a decrease in supply caused by diminished blood flow or as decreased oxygen in blood. There can also be increased demand or oxygen extraction from the tissues. The content of oxygen is the blood is dependent on the amount bound to hemoglobin and the amount dissolved in plasma. Oxygen content (CaO_2) (mL/dL) = (1.34g/dL) (SaO_2) (Hb) + (PaO_2) (0.003). The normal oxygen content is approximately 20 mL/dL. Delivery of oxygen to the tissues depends on oxygen content and cardiac output. Oxygen delivery ($\dot{D}O_2$) (mL/min) = oxygen content (CaO_2) × cardiac output (CO) × 0.01. Oxygen consumption ($\dot{V}O_2$) is the demand portion of the equation. Oxygen consumption ($\dot{V}O_2$) is independent of oxygen delivery ($\dot{V}O_2$) above a critical threshold and over a wide range. Below this critical threshold $\dot{V}O_2$ is dependent on $\dot{D}O_2$. For infants and young children, $\dot{V}O_2$ is estimated at 175 mL/min/m^2. Oxygen consumption is equal to oxygen delivery multiplied by oxygen extraction (O_2EX) by the body: $\dot{V}O_2 = \dot{D}O_2 \times O_2EX$. Oxygen extraction O_2EX is equal to $(CaO_2 - CvO_2)/CaO_2$. CaO_2 is the oxygen content of arterial blood and CvO_2 the oxygen content of venous blood. The difference between oxygen content of arterial and venous blood is predictably 4 to 6 mL/100 mL blood. Initially, as oxygen delivery decreases, the oxygen consumption can remain constant via increased extraction. Below a critical threshold in oxygen delivery, oxygen consumption becomes dependent on delivery. When oxygen to meet metabolic needs of the body cannot be met, nonessential metabolism is decreased or eliminated. Such metabolism includes growth, neurotransmitter synthesis, thermoregulation, and so forth. In this way the remaining oxygen can continue to be substrate for mitochondria. There are organs in the body, such as the kidney, skin, intestines, and skeletal muscle, that receive a high supply of blood relative to their metabolic needs. These organs also have a high proportion of sympathetic nerve innervations that allow for redistribution of blood flow to organs that with limited oxygen reserves such as the brain and heart.

Classification of Shock

There are several schemas which clinicians use to classify shock. Further within these classification schemas, disease states can fall into more than one category. One classification schema separates shock into the categories of hypovolemic, cardiogenic, distributive or vasogenic, and extracardiac obstructive.

Hypovolemic shock can be due to hemorrhage from trauma or gastrointestinal (GI) losses from internal bleeding. Nonhemorrhagic hypovolemic shock can be due to external losses of fluid from vomiting, diarrhea, polyuria, and poor fluid intake. Fluid redistribution in cases of burns, trauma, and anaphylaxis can also be a cause.

Cardiogenic shock may be myopathic due to decreased heart function. For adults this may commonly follow myocardial infarction. For children, myocarditis or cardiomyopathy are more common. Other causes of cardiogenic shock include mechanical failure such as valvular regurgitation or obstruction. Significant arrhythmias may result in cardiogenic shock when contractions are so asynchronous they decrease cardiac output.

Extracardiac obstructive shock results from a physical obstruction that prevents adequate forward circulatory flow. Causes include inadequate preload secondary to mediastinal masses, increased intrathoracic pressure from tension pneumothorax, constrictive pericarditis, and cardiac tamponade from pericardial effusions. Pulmonary hypertension, pulmonary embolus, and aortic dissection can cause obstruction to systolic contraction.

Distributive shock is caused by a decrease in SVR and the maldistribution of end-organ blood flow. Cardiac output may be increased in distributive shock, however, blood pressure may remain low due to a very low SVR. Septic causes of distributive shock can be related to bacterial, fungal, viral or rickettsial infections or toxins produced from these infections. Toxic shock syndrome would be an example of toxin-mediated hypotension. Anaphylactic or anaphylactoid reactions are a type of distributive shock. Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) may present with distributive shock. Spinal shock can result in distributive shock on a neurogenic basis. Adrenal insufficiency with low circulating hormones results in distributive shock decreased SVR.

Diagnosis of Shock

Maintaining a high index of suspicion is important to rapidly identify shock in pediatric patients. Volume losses may be readily apparent from the history of present illness. Fever, rash and irritability may point to infection. However, cardiogenic shock may present with vague reports of decreased activity and level of alertness. In addition, if the patient's shock is currently compensated, changes in physical findings may be limited. A child in shock may present initially with tachycardia, cold extremities, and poor capillary refill. Further, in distributive shock, the child may be warm with just an isolated tachycardia. A brief pertinent physical exam should evaluate level of alertness, peripheral perfusion, mucous membranes, pulse rate and quality, respiratory effort, urine output, and blood pressure. In children, blood pressure may be preserved until the degree of shock has progressed. Hypotension is a sign of late and decompensated shock in children. Metabolic acidosis may not be present on the initial laboratory tests.

Compensatory Mechanisms

The body applies compensatory mechanisms with the onset of shock to maintain adequate tissue perfusion for as long as possible. There is redistribution of fluid from the intracellular and interstitium to the vascular space. There is a decrease in glomerular filtration to limit renal fluid losses. Renal fluid losses are also limited by the release of aldosterone and vasopressin. There is an increase in sympathetic activity and release of epinephrine. This results in decreased venous capacitance and some preservation of blood pressure. HR is increased as the body tries to maintain cardiac output. There is an increase in cardiac contractility through circulating catecholamines and adrenal stimulation. Increase in sympathetic nerve stimulation shunts blood away from nonvital organs. At the tissue level, transfer of oxygen from hemoglobin is increased by increased red blood cell (RBC) 2, 3-diphosphoglycerate, fever, and tissue acidosis.

Therapy and Outcomes

Aggressive therapy to treat pediatric septic shock appears to have resulted in improved outcomes. Therefore therapy for septic shock appears to be a good model for the treatment of shock in general. The overall goal of therapy in shock is to treat the underlying cause, return adequate oxygen delivery to the tissues, and remove metabolic products that developed during anaerobic metabolism. It appears the faster the body returns to adequate perfusion, the better the overall outcome. Many hospitals have developed sepsis pathways based on the data presented as follows that act as guidelines for resuscitation and are readily available to all care providers (Fig. 79.1).

In 1991 Carcillo et al.[29] described a population of 34 children that presented with septic shock to an emergency department. Shock was diagnosed based on hypotension for age, with decreased perfusion, poor peripheral pulses, cool extremities, and tachycardia. Sepsis was defined as a positive blood or tissue culture. Remarkably, within 6 hours of presentation, all the patients had a pulmonary artery catheter placed. The overall mortality for the group was 47%. However, in the nine patients who received more than 40 mL/kg of fluids in the first hour, there was only one death (mortality 11%). The authors point out this patient died with a second episode of sepsis 2 weeks later. In this study, the rapid fluid administration was not associated with an increase in cardiogenic pulmonary edema or ARDS.

In 2001 Rivers et al.[30] published a study in adult patients with septic shock showing early, aggressive, goal directed therapy in the first 6 hours of care improved mortality. There were 263 adults were enrolled; 133 received standard therapy based on clinician discretion. The 130 patients randomized to early goal-directed therapy followed protocols treating hypovolemia and supporting blood pressure with vasoactive agents if necessary. The baseline characteristics of the two groups were similar. The in-hospital mortality was 46.5% in the standard therapy group and 30.5% in early goal-directed therapy group ($P < .01$). Although in adults, this demonstrated the need for early aggressive intervention.

Following the Rivers publication, a task force was formed by members of the Society of Critical Care Medicine to address shock in children. Their work was published in 2002 as "Clinical Practice Parameters for Hemodynamic Support of Pediatric and Neonatal Patients in Septic Shock."[31] Their guidelines were incorporated into the American Heart Association's (AHA) Pediatric Advanced Life Support (PALS) Provider Manual. Their guidelines were translated into Spanish and Portuguese and disseminated widely. The effectiveness of these interventions as well as an 2007 update was published by the same group in 2009.[32] They highlighted significant improvements in mortality in dengue shock syndrome, malaria, and septic shock treated by community physicians using early goal directed therapy.[33-35] The guidelines include rapid recognition of shock and early antibiotic administration and early administration of intravenous (IV) crystalloid. The initial resuscitation should include 20 mL/kg of isotonic saline or colloid pushed as a bolus to over 60 mL/kg until there is an improvement in the patient's perfusion or rales or hepatomegaly develops. The goal is for the initial fluid resuscitation to occur in the first 15 minutes of therapy, and therapy should be initiated even if peripheral IV cannulation attempts fail, by placing and intraosseous (IO) device (Fig. 79.2). The guidelines target therapeutic end points of normal pulses with no difference between peripheral and central; capillary refill ≤ 2 seconds; warm extremities, normalization of blood pressure for age, mental status, glucose concentration, ionized calcium concentration; and urine output greater than 1 mL/kg/h. If central venous access is not readily obtained, consideration should be given for placement of an IO line. Cold shock (cold mottled extremities with prolonged capillary refill) should be treated with dopamine up to 10 μg/kg/min and then epinephrine 0.05 to 0.3 μg/kg/min if there is no improvement. Warm shock (brisk capillary refill) should be treated with NE. Arrangements should be made early to admit the child to an ICU. If shock is not reversed with the inotropic support, hydrocortisone should be considered for catecholamine resistant shock. Recommendations for stabilization in the ICU following the first hour of therapy include monitoring central venous pressure, central venous saturation, and cardiac output. Persistent shock that is resistant to catecholamines should prompt the clinician to rule out pericardial tamponade, pneumothorax, or significantly elevated intra-abdominal pressure that may be compromising circulation. In the absence of a correctible condition, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) should be considered.

There were several new recommendations in the 2007 guidelines that addressed changes in the literature between 2002 and 2007. It was identified that the availability of skilled practitioners to place central venous access could delay the initiation of inotropic support. Therefore, the 2007 guidelines recommended the use of a peripheral IV dopamine or epinephrine if there was delay in obtaining central venous access. Ongoing monitoring of the access site should be performed. It was not recommended to use NE in a peripheral IV, due to risk of extravasation. In the 2002–2007 interval there were several pediatric and adult studies indicating adrenal suppression and increased severity of illness adjusted mortality with the use of etomidate.[36,37] The 2007 guidelines do not

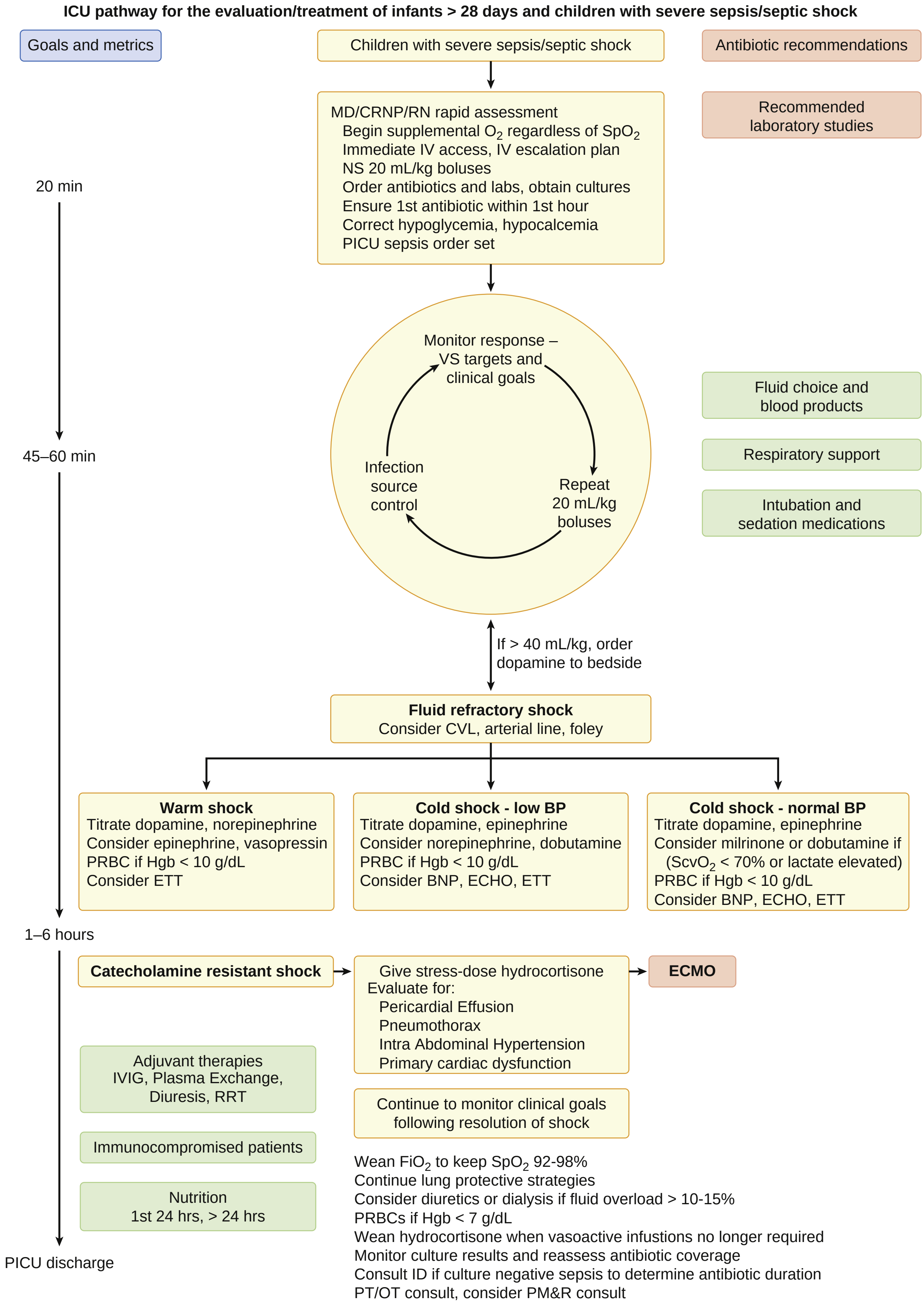

ICU pathway for the evaluation/treatment of infants > 28 days and children with severe sepsis/septic shock
Goals and metrics
Children with severe sepsis/septic shock
Antibiotic recommendations
MD/CRNP/RN rapid assessment
Begin supplemental O2 regardless of SpO2
Immediate IV access, IV escalation plan
NS 20 mL/kg boluses
Order antibiotics and labs, obtain cultures
Ensure 1st antibiotic within 1st hour
Correct hypoglycemia, hypocalcemia
PICU sepsis order set
Recommended laboratory studies
20 min
Monitor response – VS targets and clinical goals
Repeat 20 mL/kg boluses
Infection source control
Fluid choice and blood products
Respiratory support
Intubation and sedation medications
45–60 min
If > 40 mL/kg, order dopamine to bedside
Fluid refractory shock
Consider CVL, arterial line, foley
Warm shock
Titrate dopamine, norepinephrine
Consider epinephrine, vasopressin
PRBC if Hgb < 10 g/dL
Consider ETT
Cold shock - low BP
Titrate dopamine, epinephrine
Consider norepinephrine, dobutamine
PRBC if Hgb < 10 g/dL
Consider BNP, ECHO, ETT
Cold shock - normal BP
Titrate dopamine, epinephrine
Consider milrinone or dobutamine if (ScvO2 < 70% or lactate elevated)
PRBC if Hgb < 10 g/dL
Consider BNP, ECHO, ETT
1–6 hours
Catecholamine resistant shock
Give stress-dose hydrocortisone
Evaluate for:
Pericardial Effusion
Pneumothorax
Intra Abdominal Hypertension
Primary cardiac dysfunction
ECMO
Adjuvant therapies IVIG, Plasma Exchange, Diuresis, RRT
Immunocompromised patients
Nutrition 1st 24 hrs, > 24 hrs
Continue to monitor clinical goals following resolution of shock
Wean FiO2 to keep SpO2 92-98%
Continue lung protective strategies
Consider diuretics or dialysis if fluid overload > 10-15%
PRBCs if Hgb < 7 g/dL
Wean hydrocortisone when vasoactive infustions no longer required
Monitor culture results and reassess antibiotic coverage
Consult ID if culture negative sepsis to determine antibiotic duration
PT/OT consult, consider PM&R consult
PICU discharge

Fig. 79.1 Sepsis resuscitation pathway. *ECMO*, Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation; *ETT*, endotracheal tube; *FiO$_2$*, fraction of inspired oxygen; *ICU*, intensive care unit; *IV*, intravenous; *PICU*, pediatric intensive care unit; *PRBC*, packed red blood cells; *PT*, prothrombin time; *SpO$_2$*, saturation of peripheral oxygen.
]

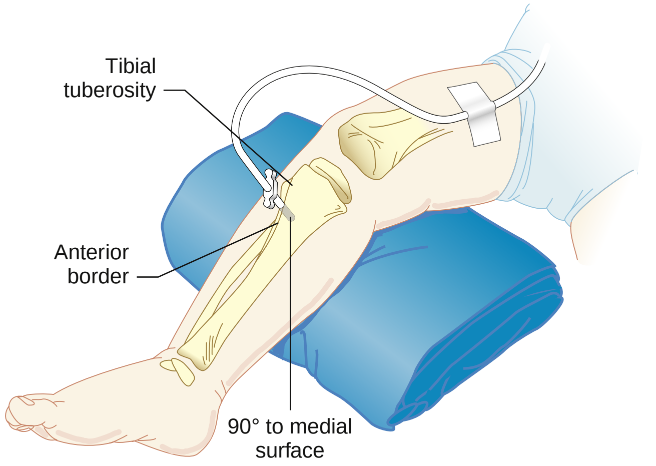


Fig. 79.2 Intraosseous Cannulation Technique.

recommend the use of etomidate unless it is in the format of a randomized controlled trial. Ketamine with atropine was recommended for sedation for invasive procedures in infants and children. However, due to limited experience, ketamine could not be recommended for the newborn population.

The 2007 guidelines[32] recommend titrating therapy to cardiac output and indicate that there are several methods by which cardiac output can be measured. The use of pulmonary arterial catheters has decreased in pediatrics over time, but other methods are available. A good review of monitoring techniques was published by Mtaweh et al. in 2013.[38] Cardiac output can be monitored by newer techniques analyzing the arterial pulse wave, transpulmonary thermodilution, carbon dioxide rebreathing, echocardiography, bio-impedance of the thorax, and ultrasound continuous-wave Doppler. These techniques are less invasive than pulmonary artery catheters. However, many still require validation studies in pediatric, and they may not be available at all centers.

One additional area to be addressed in the 2007 guidelines is in the area of fluid removal.[32] A study published by Goldstein et al. in 2005 in pediatric patients with multiorgan failure, including acute renal failure requiring continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT), showed improved survival in the group that had a lower percentage of fluid overload at the initiation of CRRT.[39] While supporting the primary premise of fluid resuscitation, the 2007 guidelines offered new recommendation for fluid removal in patients with fluid overload and multiorgan failure.[31] They recommended the use of diuretics, peritoneal dialysis, or CRRT in patients who had been adequately fluid resuscitated but were not able to maintain an even fluid balance through native urine output. Again, it should be noted that peritoneal dialysis and CRRT for pediatric patients may not be available at all centers. However, the association between fluid overload and mortality with acute renal failure has been seen in other studies and will likely be an ongoing issue in pediatric ICU care.

The concern for possible adrenal insufficiency during septic shock needs to be addressed by the clinician caring for the patient. There are certain instances where limited function of the adrenal axis is anticipated. This would include patients who have recently received glucocorticosteroids, ketoconazole, or etomidate. Further, patients with disease states such as purpura fulminans or those affecting the hypothalamus, pituitary, or adrenal glands will be at increased risk. Patients with adrenal insufficiency need supplemental corticosteroids. However, for children with septic shock but without these factors, it is not clear whether the risk of relative adrenal insufficiency or treatment with systemic steroids alter outcome. Dr. Zimmerman[40] reviewed the adult and limited pediatric literature in 2007 for therapeutic steroid use in sepsis. He highlighted adult studies showing high dose short courses of steroids are associated with decreased survival. Further, data from the CORTICUS trial[41] indicated that low dose steroids as a physiologic replacement during periods of vasopressor resistant shock resolve shock more quickly but there was no change in mortality. In turn, the 2007 guidelines were unchanged from 2002. Hydrocortisone treatment was only recommended for patients with absolute adrenal insufficiency or adrenal-pituitary axis failure and catecholamine-resistant shock. Absolute adrenal insufficiency was defined as peak cortisol concentration of less than 18 μg/dL obtained after corticotropin stimulation.

Cardiovascular Pharmacology

Pharmacologic support of the circulation includes positive inotropic and chronotropic agents, vasoconstrictors and vasodilators (afterload reduction), and antiarrhythmics (see Chapters 14, 18, and 86). Most currently used drugs have not been adequately tested in children, so dosage recommendations and anticipated effects must be extrapolated from adult doses and clinical experience.

Positive inotropic drugs are used to augment the cardiac output of patients with circulatory failure. Most inotropic agents also affect the HR and vasomotor tone. Tachycardia in a child is usually well tolerated and is frequently beneficial.[42] In a neonate whose ventricles are relatively noncompliant and whose stroke volume is less variable, tachycardia is an important means of augmenting cardiac output. Because drugs that increase the HR or contractility also increase myocardial oxygen consumption, adequate arterial oxygenation and sufficient metabolic substrates are required when these drugs are administered. The cardiovascular response to sympathomimetic amines is attenuated in the presence of severe acidosis and possibly sepsis; higher infusion rates of these drugs are required and need readjustment as the acidosis improves. Commonly used inotropes are listed with brief comments regarding their use in pediatric intensive care are provided in the following paragraphs (Table 79.1).

EPINEPHRINE

Epinephrine is useful for the treatment of shock in the presence of myocardial dysfunction. Typical starting doses in children are 0.05 to 0.2 μg/kg/min; with escalating doses up to 1 to 2 μg/kg/min, there is profound vasoconstriction in the periphery and abdominal organs to shunt blood to the heart and brain.

TABLE 79.1 Vasoactive and Inotropic Medications

Drug	Effect	Dose (μg/kg/min)	Inotropy	Chronotropy	Vasodilation	Vasoconstriction
Epinephrine (Adrenalin)	α, β	0.05-2.0	++	++		++
Isoproterenol (Isuprel)	β_1, β_2	0.05-2.0	++	++	+	
Dopamine (Intropin)	δ	1-3			+Renal splanchnic	
	β > α	5-15	+	+		+ or –
	β, α	>15	+	+		+
Milrinone		Bolus: 50 μg/kg over 15-min period	+		+	
		Infusion: 0.375-0.75				
Norepinephrine	α >> β	0.05-1.0	Slight+	+		++
Nitroprusside		0.5-10			++	
					Arterial > venous	
Nitroglycerin		1-20			++	

Dopamine

Dopamine is the most commonly infused inotrope in pediatric patients. Dopamine is the metabolic precursor of both NE and epinephrine. Its effects are dose dependent, with dopaminergic activity at low doses (although these low-dose dopamine effects have not been demonstrated in critically ill children); β-adrenergic activity with intermediate doses 5 to 10 μg/kg/min exhibiting chronotropic and inotropic effects; and some α-adrenergic activity at higher doses, with 10 to 20 μg/kg/min exhibiting peripheral vasoconstriction. Young children require higher doses of dopamine than adults do to produce the same effect. In one study, an infusion of 15 μg/kg/min was required to increase cardiac output above control levels after cardiac surgery.[43] This may reflect the decreased releasable myocardial stores of NE in immature ventricles. Therefore, in the sick preterm infant there can be decreased dopamine clearance with a much greater vasopressor response than expected.

Vasopressin

Vasopressin is a pituitary peptide hormone with method of action on the kidney and vasculature. In the kidney, vasopressin controls water reabsorption in the renal tubules, and in the vasculature, it causes vasoconstriction by stimulating smooth muscle V1 receptors. Its clinical applications include GI hemorrhage, central diabetes insipidus (DI), and as a second- or third-line agent to treat hypotension.

Isoproterenol

Isoproterenol is a synthetic, potent, nonselective β-agonist with strong chronotropic effects with very low affinity to α-adrenergic receptors, and is usually well tolerated in children. However, high doses of isoproterenol can cause myocardial ischemia.[44] Isoproterenol also induces vasodilation that is responsive to acute volume administration. It is often used for increasing HR in complete heart block, in the immediate postoperative period after cardiac transplantation to improve cardiac output by increasing HR in the denervated donor heart, and as a potent pulmonary vasodilator during pulmonary hypertensive crisis via β2-adrenergic receptor activity.

Dobutamine

Dobutamine provides positive inotropy and afterload reduction, β and α receptors. Its function is primarily as a inotropic agent but with less vasopressor activity compared with dopamine. It is only used as a continuous infusion of 5 to 20 μg/kg/min, and in some studies may increase myocardial oxygen In children but not in adults it causes tachycardia.[45,46]

Norepinephrine

NE, a drug with strong α- and β-agonist effects, has had a resurgence of use in infants and children.[47] Children with nearly normal cardiac function and marked peripheral vasodilation have good responses to this drug. It is especially useful in instances of warm septic shock, anaphylaxis, liver failure, and sympathetic blockade with regional anesthesia. It will increase SVR, but also limits mesenteric blood flow, including hepatic perfusion.

Milrinone

Milrinone is a selective phosphodiesterase III inhibitor that increases cyclic adenosine monophosphate by inhibiting breakdown. Milrinone has both inotropic and vasodilator effects, without acting on α and β receptors. This drug has improved the outcome of children who have low cardiac output syndrome after cardiac surgery.[48] The loading dose of milrinone is 25 to 75 μg/kg administered over a period of 10 minutes; the maintenance infusion rate is 0.25 to 0.75 μg/kg/min. Loading doses are often avoided in the ICU setting because of resultant hypotension. Renal failure significantly increases the elimination half-life of this drug.[49,50] Outside the cardiac ICU, milrinone is used for vasoconstricted septic shock and may have a role in the treatment of pulmonary hypertension.

Levosimendan

Levosimendan is a novel agent that increases the sensitivity of the contractile apparatus to calcium increasing inotropy by binding to cardiac myocyte troponin C. This agent will increase cardiac ejection fraction, while reducing catecholamine dose with minimal effects on blood pressure and HR. In children, the most common indications have been for cardiac failure or post–cardiac surgery, with a loading does of 612 μg/kg followed by an infusion of 0.1 to 0.2 μg/kg/min.[51,52]

Nesiritide

Nesiritide is a recombinant form of the human B-type natriuretic peptide, the hormone release from the cardiac ventricles in response to volume overload and increasing mechanical wall stress. The action is on guanylate cyclase with resulting venous and arterial vasodilation. In addition, B-type natriuretic peptide leads to myocardial relaxation (lusitropy) and natriuresis. In children, it has been used to decrease central venous pressure and increase urinary output.[53] Usual dosing suggestions for children and adults: initial 2 μg/kg bolus followed by a continuous infusion of 0.005 to 0.01 μg/kg/min.

Digitalis

Digitalis is useful for the long-term treatment of myocardial failure in children but may not be effective in neonates.[54] Because of its long half-life and unpredictability, digitalis should be administered cautiously to children who have changing levels of serum potassium, calcium, and pH. In these cases, it is more appropriate to use rapid-acting, titratable inotropic agents.

Calcium

When serum ionized calcium levels are below normal, administration of calcium produces a positive inotropic effect. If the patient's ionized calcium levels are normal, less marked inotropic effects occur. Low ionized calcium levels most commonly occur in patients with DiGeorge's syndrome, when large volumes of citrate-containing blood products are rapid administered, and in neonates with relatively unstable calcium metabolism. Calcium also has effects on the cardiac conduction system. Rapid administration of calcium can cause severe bradycardia or asystole. This effect may be exaggerated in hypokalemic children or in those receiving digitalis. The vasomotor effects of calcium are controversial, but most reports show an increase in both SVR and PVR when the drug is administered.[55]

Bicarbonate Therapy

Severe acidosis decreases myocardial function and tissue perfusion. Correction of acidosis with 1 to 2 mEq/kg of sodium bicarbonate is indicated for a pH below 7.20 if ventilation is adequate (PCO_2 <40 mm Hg if possible). Treatment is necessary because the circulatory system is refractory to sympathomimetic amines when the pH is less than 7.00. After initial correction of pH, persistence or reappearance of metabolic acidosis suggest a continuing underperfused state and the need for further therapy. Administration of sodium bicarbonate is only a stopgap measure to improve the response to drugs. Repeat infusions of sodium bicarbonate can cause hypernatremia and hyperosmolarity. Every 50 mEq of bicarbonate administered produces 1250 mL of CO_2 when the bicarbonate is fully reacted with acid. Consequently, adequate ventilation must be ensured while the drug is administered to avoid worsening the acidosis. Trishydroxymethylaminomethane (THAM) is an alternative to sodium bicarbonate, but larger volumes of THAM are required to produce the same amount of acid-base correction, which may be a problem in patients who have CHF. THAM does not increase $PaCO_2$.

Vasodilators

Vasodilators are used to control systemic hypertension, increase cardiac output by decreasing afterload, control pulmonary hypertension, and control cardiac shunting. Vasodilators are an effective treatment of systemic hypertension and increase cardiac output in children with CHF. Treatment of pulmonary hypertension and intracardiac shunting with vasodilators has met with limited success because they decrease both PVR and SVR, which may increase extrapulmonary right-to-right shunting and further reduce pulmonary blood flow.

Nicardipine

Nicardipine is a dihydropyridine calcium channel-blocking agent used as an IV infusion that has powerful, antihypertensive effects in children. Studies have shown that the rapid onset of action is usually within 1 minute, adding to the profile appropriate for treating severe hypertension. Flynn et al. reports that nicardipine is an effective antihypertensive medication in children ranging in age from 2 to 18 years.[56] In our institution, nicardipine is the drug of choice for hypertensive crisis. Infusion ranges: 0.5 to 1.0 μg/kg/min up to 3.0 μg/kg/min.

Sodium Nitroprusside

Sodium nitroprusside relaxes arteriolar and venous smooth muscle, which decreases afterload and preload. The half-life of sodium nitroprusside is only minutes, making it safe to titrate the drug to a desired effect. Nitroprusside is commonly used to control severe systemic hypertension, to provide controlled hypotension to reduce blood loss, and to increase cardiac output in children with low cardiac output syndromes (myocarditis, post–cardiac surgery status).[57] Sodium nitroprusside can generally be used for days without problems, although cyanide and thiocyanate poisoning develops in some children, especially those with renal failure or reduced renal perfusion. Serum thiocyanate levels of 10 mg/dL are associated with weakness, hypoxia, nausea, muscle spasms, and disorientation. When these symptoms occur, nitroprusside administration should be discontinued immediately.

Hydralazine

Hydralazine is used to control systemic hypertension because it relaxes arterial smooth muscle more than it relaxes veins. Administration of the drug can cause headache, nausea, dizziness, sweating, and tremors. The most important acute side effect is tachycardia, which may increase cardiac output; labetalol, a β-antagonist, can counteract this effect.[58]

Tolazoline and Phentolamine

These competitive α-adrenergic blockers have had varied success in the treatment of pulmonary hypertension.[59] However, they are effective in treating the symptoms of pheochromocytoma preoperatively. Serious side effects of these drugs include tachycardia, ventricular arrhythmias, hypotension, and tissue edema.

Prostaglandin E_1

PGE_1 acts directly on vascular smooth muscle and has greatly improved the care of neonates with heart disease. At infusion rates of of 0.1 μg/kg/min, patency of the ductus arteriosus is maintained and a closed ductus reopens in some neonates. The drug is indispensable in the care of patients with ductus-dependent cardiac lesions, such as interrupted aortic arch, critical aortic stenosis, or hypoplastic left heart syndrome, where systemic blood flow is supplied through the ductus arteriosus. It is equally important for the care of patients who have pulmonary atresia or critical pulmonic stenosis.[28] Apnea, fever, and hypotension are common side effects of this drug.

Nitric Oxide

NO is an endothelium-derived relaxing factor that selectively vasodilates the pulmonary vasculature.[60] When administered by inhalation to patients with pulmonary hypertension, NO reduces PVR. It improves the survival of neonates who have reactive pulmonary hypertension.[61-63] This compound is inactivated by hemoglobin before it reaches the systemic circulation. On rare occasions, NO causes systemic vasodilation or clinically significant methemoglobinemia when administered at 5 to 80 ppm.[62]

Disorders of Cardiac Rhythm

Sinus tachycardia or an elevated HR for age is not considered an arrhythmia. However, patients with a significantly increased HR may be the most critically ill in the ICU. Causes of tachycardia include hypovolemia, fever, pain, anxiety, CHF, myocardial disease and dysfunction and thyrotoxicosis. With all of these causes, the goal is to treat the underlying disease state and not the tachycardia. For children without underlying heart disease, temporary increases in HR up to 180 to 200 beats/min is well tolerated. This is also not uncommon; children cannot increase their stroke volume so they increase their cardiac output by increasing their HR. Again, the goal is not to specifically control an elevated HR but to treat the cause of the tachycardia. Sinus arrhythmia is a phasic acceleration and slowing of the HR that occurs with respiration. This is not an uncommon finding. It indicates that the patient has a vagal tone greater than sympathetic tone and it can indicate that there is good cardiac reserve. A slow HR or sinus bradycardia is another relatively common heart rhythm seen in the ICU. It is an unremarkable finding in an older teenage patient who is relatively fit. Other potential causes can include increased intracranial pressure (ICP), hyperkalemia, hypothermia, profound hypoxia, and hypothyroidism. These causes should also be investigated. A slow HR is being seen more commonly with the increased of Dexmedetomidine but can also occur with beta blockers or Digoxin use. Sinus node dysfunction can occur following repair of congenital heart disease in children. Temporary slowing may be treated with the transcutaneous pacemaker placed during surgery. In the absence of myocardial pacing, if there is complete heart block or a very slow ventricular escape rate, a pacemaker may be needed shortly after the cardiac surgery. Otherwise, some amount of time is given to see if this will resolve.

Normal cardiac conduction starts in the sinus node. The electrical activity propagates through the internodal pathways in the atrium, is delayed in the AV node, it travels though the bundle of His, and then is conducted to the ventricles through the left and right bundle branches. Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) is an elevated HR occurring at the level of the atrium, the AV node, or both. SVT typically has a narrow QRS morphology. Sinus tachycardia is therefore not a type of SVT but an acceleration of the normal conduction pathways. SVT includes reentrant and non-reentrant tachycardias.

The reentrant tachycardias include AV node reentrant tachycardia (AVNRT), orthodromic reciprocating tachycardia (ORT), and atrial flutter. AVNRT is what is classically thought of as pediatric SVT. The reentrant tachycardias occur due to the presence of an accessory conduction pathway that allows for abnormal electrical conduction in the heart. The presence of the abnormal pathway may be apparent on a standard ECG such as the case of Wolf-Parkinson-White (WPW). Alternatively the abnormal pathway may not appear on an ECG and is described as a concealed pathway. Concealed pathways are non-WPW ORT. In AVNRT, the AV node itself is the area in which the reentrance occurs. In atrial flutter there is a microreentrant circuit within the atrial tissue itself. In children, the circuit is typically near the tricuspid valve. In atrial flutter, after the reentrant circuit in the atria, the conduction proceeds through the AV node, where it is slowed. The reentrant circuit is small, and the rates of atrial flutter can be very high. As the conduction is slowed in the AV node, these high rates are not usually conducted to the ventricle. However, if atrial flutter or fibrillation occurs in a patient with WPW, the accessory pathway can allow conduction of the electrical impulse at a rate much greater than through the AV node. This can lead to ventricular tachycardia or fibrillation and can cause sudden death.

The non-reentrant causes of SVT occur due to abnormal automaticity of myocardial tissue. Causes of abnormal automaticity include atrial fibrillation and ectopic atrial tachycardia (EAT). In non-reentrant SVT, the elevated atrial rate is slowed as conduction goes through the AV node. In children, atrial fibrillation is caused by disorganized circuits typically near the pulmonary veins. This rhythm is described as irregularly irregular. EAT is rapid atrial beats that are consecutive and occur without sinus morphology. There can be one focus of the rapid atrial beats. Alternatively, in multifocal or chaotic atrial tachycardia, there can be several different atrial origins. Brief periods of EAT usually do not cause much sequel but can lead to cardiomyopathy if it is prolonged.

Treatment of reentrant SVT is based on whether the patient is clinically unstable or stable. The abnormal reentrant circuit can be interrupted with synchronized cardioversion or other methods. If the patient is unstable, reentrant SVT is treated with synchronized cardioversion with a dose of 0.5 to 1 J/kg. If the patient is stable, there is time to try other therapies. Therapies that increase vagal tone such as ice to the eyes or a Valsalva maneuver may interrupt the reentrant circuit. The medication adenosine will temporarily block conduction through the AV node. Adenosine can be used to interrupt episodes of reentrant SVT that have a reentrant circuit using the AV node. If the reentrant circuit does not include the AV node adenosine might not stop the tachycardia, but it may be helpful with diagnosis. Following administration of adenosine, there will be a period of sinus pause. Adenosine is metabolized by erythrocytes so it is a short acting medication. Equipment to perform cardioversion should be immediately available when adenosine is given. The initial dose is 0.1 mg/kg, and the dose should be given quickly with a sufficient flush. It is more effective when given centrally if available. If it is not effective at the dose of 0.1 mg/kg, the second dose can be increased to 0.2 mg/kg. Higher doses than this are not likely to be more effective, and if the SVT persists, other medications such as amiodarone, procainamide, or verapamil may be necessary. Amiodarone can block an accessory pathway as well as the AV node. If given too quickly, amiodarone will decrease the blood pressure. For both amiodarone and procainamide, continuous infusions may be necessary after the loading dose. Verapamil will block the AV node for a much longer period of time than adenosine. However, in younger patients (<2 years), verapamil may induce other life-threatening arrhythmias. If a patient has SVT, a cardiology consult should be obtained. This is because an echocardiogram may be beneficial, and depending on the cause, there may be a need for long-term follow-up.

Junctional ectopic tachycardia is caused by abnormal automaticity in an area around the atrioventricular junction. This is not a common pediatric arrhythmia but can occur following repair of congenital heart disease. The most common lesion with which this occurs is tetralogy of Fallot.

Wide complex tachycardias are assumed to arise from the ventricle until proven otherwise. SVT can cause a wide complex tachycardia if there is aberrancy of the conduction through the pathways in the ventricle. However, given the risk of delaying therapy, all wide complex tachycardias should initially be treated as ventricular tachycardia. If there is no pulse, initiate CPR, defibrillate, and follow PALS guidelines. If the patient has a pulse and stable blood pressure, there may be time to consider other therapies. These therapies are cardioversion or use of medications such as adenosine, amiodarone, or procainamide. Ventricular fibrillation is treated with CPR, defibrillation, and then medications following PALS guidelines. Ventricular rhythms should be quickly examined for the possibility of Torsades de Pointes, as giving magnesium will be especially helpful.

In the course of following the continuous rhythm strip of all children in the PICU, common abnormalities may be noted. A prolongation of the PR interval or first degree heart block can occur in otherwise normal children. Typically, these children are asymptomatic. Second-degree heart block occurs as Mobitz Type I and Mobitz Type II. Mobitz Type I is also known as *Wenckebach*. This is a gradual prolongation of the PR interval until a QRS is not seen and then the cycle restarts. This occurs due to delay of the electrical signal in the AV node, and it can be a benign phenomenon. Mobitz Type II is less likely to be a benign phenomenon. The PR interval remains constant, but intermittently there is no QRS or ventricular beat. This phenomenon is evidence of disease of the His-Purkinje fibers and can progress to complete heart block. Mobitz Type II occurs much less frequently in children as compared with adults. Complete heart block or third-degree AV block is the complete dissociation of atrial and ventricular activity. In complete heart block, the atria contract at a rate greater than the ventricle. Ventricular contraction occurs through ventricular escape. Congenital complete heart block can occur in infants born to mothers who have an autoimmune disorder such as lupus. When there is damage to the conduction pathway during surgery for congenital heart disease, complete heart block can occur. As immediate treatment of complete heart block, the ventricular rate may be increased with IV isoproterenol. When this is ineffective, transthoracic or transvenous pacing will be necessary until definitive therapy can be arranged.

Premature beats are also seen quite frequently in a PICU setting. Premature atrial contractions are usually benign and are caused by automaticity of atrial tissue other than the sinus node. Premature ventricular contractions (PVC) are usually benign with a few considerations. The presence of a central venous catheter touching the heart may cause increased PVCs, and if present, the catheter should be pulled back. Electrolyte abnormalities; typically of potassium, magnesium, and calcium, may cause PVCs. The frequency of PVCs may improve as the electrolytes are corrected. Exogenous catecholamines may cause PVCs, and the frequency of PVCs may improve if the catecholamines can be decreased. Endogenous catecholamines may cause PVCs, and the frequency may be decreased if pain or anxiety is treated.

HYPERTENSION

Essential hypertension is uncommon in children, but when it occurs, it is often associated with another disease process (Box 79.2) and is frequently difficult to control. The acute onset of severe systemic arterial hypertension is a medical emergency that has the potential of causing cardiovascular decompensation, encephalopathy, seizures, and intracranial hemorrhage. In older children, the neurologic manifestations of hypertension are more likely to precede cardiovascular decompensation. Neonates with severe hypertension are frequently initially found to have CHF. Treatment of hypertension is tailored to the disease process, the absolute degree of hypertension, and the presence of cardiovascular or neurologic symptoms.[64,65]

Neonatal Resuscitation

Profound changes occur in the cardiovascular and respiratory systems at birth. Failure to successfully make these changes may result in death or central nervous system (CNS) injury. Consequently, someone capable of performing neonatal resuscitation must be present at every delivery. Wasting time finding someone to resuscitate the neonate may be disastrous for the infant. This section discusses the causes and effects of cardiorespiratory insufficiency at birth and the techniques of resuscitation. When possible, the recommendations of the American Academy of Pediatrics have been followed.

BOX 79.2 Causes of Severe Hypertension in Children

Renal

Acute glomerulonephritis (e.g., poststreptococcal, Henoch-Schönlein purpura)
Hemolytic-uremic syndrome
Chronic glomerulonephritis (all types)
Acute and chronic pyelonephritis
Congenital malformations (dysplasia, hypoplasia, cystic diseases)
Tumors (e.g., Wilms, leukemic infiltrate)
Post–renal transplantation status; also rejection
Oliguric renal failure
Trauma
Obstructive uropathy
After genitourinary surgery
Blood transfusions in children with azotemia

Cardiovascular

Coarctation of the aorta
Renal artery abnormalities (e.g., stenosis, thrombosis)
Takayasu's disease

Endocrine

Pheochromocytoma
Neuroblastoma
Adrenogenital disease
Cushing syndrome
Hyperaldosteronism
Hyperthyroidism
Hyperparathyroidism

Iatrogenic

Intravascular volume overload
Sympathomimetic administration (e.g., epinephrine, ephedrine)
Corticosteroid administration
Rapid intravenous infusion of methyldopa

Miscellaneous

Immobilization (e.g., fractures, burns, Guillain-Barré syndrome)
Hypercalcemia (e.g., hypervitaminosis D, metastatic disease, sarcoidosis, some immobilized patients)
Hypernatremia
Stevens-Johnson syndrome
Increased intracranial pressure (any cause)
Dysautonomia
After resuscitation

Guidelines for neonatal resuscitation have been issued by many organizations, including the AHA and the American Academy of Pediatrics.[66]

INITIAL ASSESSMENT OF THE FETUS AT BIRTH

Initial stabilization should begin with a rapid evaluation of the newborn to determine if the infant is term, breathing, or crying, and has a normal tone (Table 79.2).[66]

ONGOING ASSESSMENT

Ongoing assessment consists of three signs: HR, respirations, and oxygenation. The preferred method for auscultation of HR is by auscultation. All of these vital signs should be determined within the first 30 seconds.

TABLE 79.2 Evaluation of the Newborn

Clinical Condition	Intervention
Initial resuscitation	Clear infant airway Warm, dry, stimulate, position Evaluate HR, respirations, color
HR > 100 beats/min, breathing, no cyanosis	Observation
HR > 100 beats/min, but persistent respiratory distress or cyanosis	Clear airway SpO_2 monitoring Consider CPAP
Apnea, gasping, or HR < 100 beats/min	Bag-mask PPV SpO_2 monitoring
After initiation of resuscitation (PPV), HR > 100 beats/min, effective ventilation	Post-resuscitation care
HR < 60 beats/min	Consider intubation Chest compressions Coordinate PPV
HR = 60-100 beats/min	Continue with PPV SpO_2 monitoring

CPAP, Continuous positive airway pressure; *HR,* heart rate; *PPV,* positive pressure ventilation; *SpO_2,* saturation of peripheral oxygen.

CLEARING THE AIRWAY

Proper positioning by placing the infant in the sniffing position is recommended, and the practitioner must try to avoid either underextension or hyperextension, both of which will obstruct the airway. Deep sucking should be avoided even in healthy, vigorous newborns, because of risks of vagal-mediated bradycardia.[67] This does not apply to newborns who may have airway obstruction or the depressed infant with meconium (covered later in this section.)

TEMPERATURE CONTROL

During the initial resuscitation period, the goal temperature for the newborn is normothermia. The initial step is to dry the infant and warm the infant to a goal axillary temperature of 36.5°C. The goal for each neonate is euthermia. Infants wrapped in polyethylene from the neck down will avoid evaporative heat loss. Controlled hypothermia should only be attempted in select tertiary centers within hours after birth in infants with hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy (HIE).

OXYGEN

One of the recent changes in neonatal resuscitation in the 2011 Neonatal Resuscitation Program Guidelines is the recommendation of positive pressure ventilation (PPV) with room air, unless chest compressions or medications are needed during the resuscitation then the recommendation are still for PPV with 110% oxygen. It is important to place a preductal (right hand) oximeter probe on the newborn if PPV is initiated. For the preterm infant, oxygen should be blended to goal saturation targets. In summary: (1) Use room air in the baby is cyanotic or needs PPV. (2) If the baby is less than 32 weeks, titrate oxygen (Table 79.3).

TABLE 79.3 Preterm Infant (<32 Weeks): Titrate Oxygen Using Oxygen Blender to Achieve Target SpO_2

Time after Birth (min)	Target SpO_2 (%)
1	60-65
2	65-70
3	70-75
4	75-80
5	80-85
10	85-95

SpO_2, Saturation of peripheral oxygen.

(3) Use 100% oxygen if chest compressions or medications are given, then titrate to targeted SpO_2. (4) Apply oximeter to right hand (preductal).

VENTILATION

Breathing usually begins by 30 seconds after birth and is sustained by 90 seconds of age. A few minutes after birth, the respiratory rate (RR) of normal neonates is between 40 and 60 breaths/min. The absence of a pause between inspiration and expiration helps develop and maintain functional residual capacity (FRC). Apnea and bradypnea prolong exhalation, reduce FRC, and cause hypoxia. Causes of apnea and bradypnea include severe acidosis, asphyxia, maternal drugs, infections, and CNS damage. Tachypnea (>60 breaths/min) occurs with hypoxemia, hypovolemia, metabolic and respiratory acidosis, CNS hemorrhage, pulmonary gas leaks, pulmonary disease (e.g., hyaline membrane disease, aspiration syndromes, infections), pulmonary edema, and maternal drugs (e.g., narcotics, alcohol, magnesium, barbiturates).

Recommendations now are that initial breaths should be at 20 cm H_2O. Ventilation should be performed at 40 to 60 breaths/min with reassessment of HR, color, and breath sounds. In the neonate, rising HR may be the best assessment of adequate ventilation. If gastric distention becomes a problem, hindering compliance, a gastric tube may be placed (8 Fr) to improve compliance. Both sides of the chest should rise equally and simultaneously with inspiration, but the amount of rise should not exceed that associated with the neonate's normal spontaneous breathing. The presence of breath sounds may be misleading because they are well transmitted within the neonate's small chest. A difference in breath sounds between the two sides of the chest should raise suspicion of endobronchial intubation, pneumothorax, atelectasis, or a congenital anomaly of the lung. The presence of loud breath sounds over the stomach suggests esophageal intubation or a tracheoesophageal fistula. If ventilation is adequate, the neonate will become pink, initiate rhythmic breathing, and have a normal HR.

Because most asphyxiated neonates have no lung disease, they can be effectively ventilated with peak airway pressures lower than 25 cm H_2O, even for the first few breaths. Those with stiff lungs (e.g., erythroblastosis fetalis, congenital anomalies of the lung, pulmonary edema, severe meconium aspiration, diaphragmatic hernia) may require higher inspiratory pressure to ventilate their lungs and are more likely to have pulmonary gas leaks. To reduce this likelihood, the lungs should first be ventilated with an inspiratory pressure of 15 to 20 cm H_2O and inspiratory rate of 150 to 200 breaths/min. If low-pressure (low-volume), high-rate ventilation does not improve the oxygenation, higher pressure and volume may be required. Failure to adequately ventilate the lungs at birth may worsen hypoxemia and lead to CNS damage or even death. If P_aO_2 exceeds 70 to 80 mm Hg or SaO_2 exceeds 94%, the inspired oxygen concentration should be reduced (if increased concentrations of oxygen are used) until SaO_2 and PaO_2 are normal for age. Oxygenation is maintained at the low range of normal in neonates 34 weeks' or less gestation to avoid the retinopathy of prematurity.[68] The neonate's HR should be monitored continuously during endotracheal intubation because the process of tracheal intubation may cause arrhythmias in hypoxic neonates.

If the practitioner is having difficulty with bag mask ventilation or fails intubation, a laryngeal mask airway (LMA) should be considered.[69,70]

PNEUMOTHORAX

Pneumothorax occurs in 1% of all vaginal deliveries, in 10% of meconium-stained neonates, and in 2% to 3% of neonates who require mechanical ventilation in the delivery room. The hemithorax containing free air is usually hyperexpanded and moves poorly with ventilation. The point of maximum cardiac impulse is shifted toward the side without the pneumothorax. Heart tones may be muffled.

If a small, high-intensity cold light is placed directly on the skin of the neonate's chest, the involved side of the chest will glow if a pneumothorax is present.[71] Pneumothoraces are relieved by needle or chest tube drainage.

ENDOTRACHEAL INTUBATION

The head should be placed in a neutral or "sniffing" position during bag-and-mask ventilation and tracheal intubation. An appropriately sized endotracheal tube (ETT) is inserted and its tip is placed 1 to 2 cm below the vocal cords, depending on the size of the neonate. Usually, this means that the distance from the tip of the tube to the gums is 7, 8, 9, or 10 cm in 1-, 2-, 3-, and 4-kg infants. A small gas leak should be present between the ETT and trachea when the ventilation pressure is 15 to 25 cm H_2O. This usually entails the use of a 2.5-mm (internal diameter) tube for neonates weighing less than 1.5 kg, a 3.0-mm tube for those between 1.5 and 2.5 kg, and a 3.5-mm tube for those weighing more than 2.5 kg. Successful tracheal intubation is confirmed by observing the ETT pass through the vocal cords, by observing bilateral chest movement with each mechanical inspiration, and by observing condensation in the ETT during exhalation. Breath sounds should be much louder over the chest than over the abdomen, and the skin color, HR, and SaO_2 should improve with positive-pressure ventilation. Carbon dioxide should be present during exhalation. However, the small tidal volumes and low pulmonary blood flow of some infants at birth may make it difficult to use capnography effectively.

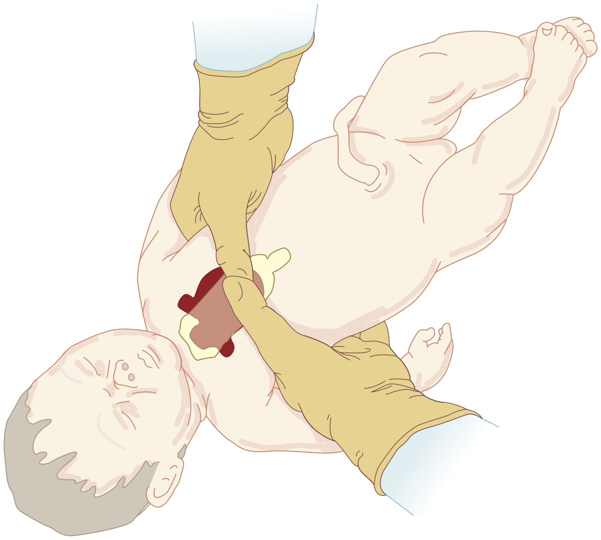


Fig. 79.3 Neonatal chest compression. For simplification, ventilation is not shown. (From Gregory GA. Resuscitation of the newborn. *Anesthesiology*. 1975;43:225.)

CARDIAC COMPRESSIONS

Place both thumbs on the sternum and allow the fingers to support the back (Fig. 79.3). Compress the sternum to approximately one-third the depth of the chest. Three compressions should be performed with a breath in place of the fourth compression for an effective compression rate of 90 compressions and 30 breaths/min. HR should be evaluated every 45 to 60 seconds, and if after adequate ventilation and compressions for 60 seconds the HR is still less than 60 beats/min, then medications should be considered.

MEDICATIONS

Resuscitation with medications are needed only for the infant that is critically depressed or presents with significant anomalies leading to cardiovascular depression. There should be a quick reference drug list designed for each delivery room for easy access for these rare occasions, and should help with dosing based on an estimated weight of the infant at birth. IV route of administration is the preferred for administration of resuscitation medications; however, IO and umbilical venous catheters can be placed rapidly by trained individuals and may be life-saving.

Epinephrine

The primary medication used in the resuscitation of a newborn is epinephrine, and should be given if the infant's HR is less than 60 bpm, 45 to 60 seconds after the initiation of PPV and chest compressions. The recommended dose is 0.1 to 0.3 mL/kg of 1:10,000 concentration; (0.01-0.03 mg/kg), followed by a 1 mL flush of saline. While IV administration is preferable, if venous access is not obtained, it is appropriate to give epinephrine via the ETT. In this instances the practitioner, should give a higher dose of Epinephrine: 0.5 to 1 mL/kg of 1:10,000 concentration; (0.05-0.1 mg/kg). Epinephrine can be repeated every five minutes, as needed, while re-evaluating HR every 45 to 60 seconds.

Naloxone

Naloxone (Narcan) is not recommended as an initial response to respiratory distress in neonatal resuscitation.[66,72] Neonates should be supported on PPV, even in women who have received narcotics less than four hours prior to delivery. However, if respiratory depression continues, naloxone can be considered. In addition, naloxone should be avoided in an infant whose mother has a history of narcotic dependence due to the risk of seizures from withdrawal.

DETECTION OF HYPOVOLEMIA

Hypovolemia is detected by measuring arterial blood pressure and by physical examination (i.e., skin color, perfusion, capillary refill time, pulse volume, and extremity temperature).

CVP measurements are useful in detecting hypovolemia and in determining the adequacy of fluid replacement. The venous pressure of normal neonates is 2 to 8 cm H_2O. If CVP is less than 2 cm H_2O, hypovolemia should be suspected.

TREATMENT OF HYPOVOLEMIA

Treatment of hypovolemia requires expansion of intravascular volume with blood and crystalloid. Albumin may also be used, but evidence of its effectiveness is limited. If it is suspected that the neonate will be hypovolemic at birth, Rh-negative type O packed RBCs should be available in the delivery room before the neonate is born.[73] Crystalloid and blood should be titrated in 10 mL/kg and given slowly over 10 minutes, if hemodynamics allow, to limit the risk of intraventricular hemorrhage.

Occasionally, enormous volumes of blood and fluid are required to raise arterial blood pressure to normal. At times, more than 50% of the blood volume (85 mL/kg in term neonates and 100 mL/kg in preterm neonates) must be replaced, especially when the placenta is transected or abrupted during birth. In most cases, less than 10 to 20 mL/kg of volume restores mean arterial pressure to normal.

OTHER CAUSES OF HYPOTENSION

Hypoglycemia, hypocalcemia, and hypermagnesemia also cause hypotension in neonates. Hypotension induced by alcohol or magnesium intoxication usually responds to blood volume expansion or dopamine, or to both. Hypermagnesemic neonates generally respond to 100 to 200 mg/kg of calcium gluconate administered over a 5-minute period.[66]

MECONIUM

Meconium stained amniotic fluid (MSAF) when aspirated into the lungs during delivery or in utero can cause serious lung injury and respiratory distress syndrome (RDS). Most cases of meconium aspiration occur in utero; therefore, endotracheal intubation to suction the airway to remove MSAF should only occur if the neonate is distress: absent or depressed respirations, HR less than 100 bpm, or poor muscle tone.[66,74,75] A depressed MSAF stained infant should be intubated as soon as possible following delivery. Suctioning is accomplished through an ETT, and if there is a significant amount of MSAF or the infant remains in extremis, they should be transferred directly to the neonatal ICU.

COLOR

Essentially all neonates have a blue-tinged cast to their skin at birth. By 60 seconds of age, most of them are entirely pink, except for their hands and feet, which remain blue. If central cyanosis persists beyond 90 seconds of age, asphyxia, low cardiac output, pulmonary edema, methemoglobinemia, polycythemia, congenital heart disease, arrhythmias, and pulmonary disorders (e.g., respiratory distress, airway obstruction, hypoplastic lungs, diaphragmatic hernia) should be considered, especially if the infant remains cyanotic despite oxygen and controlled ventilation. Neonates who are pale at birth are often asphyxiated, hypovolemic, acidotic, or anemic, or they have congenital heart disease. A neonate whose skin is entirely pink within 2 minutes of birth may be intoxicated with alcohol or magnesium or may be alkalotic (pH >7.50). Rubrous neonates are usually polycythemic.

RESUSCITATION EQUIPMENT

Resuscitation beds should allow positioning of the neonate's head below the level of the lungs to promote drainage of lung fluid and reduce the likelihood of aspirating gastric contents. A servo-controlled infrared heater should be used to maintain the neonate's temperature between 36°C and 37°C, unless there is evidence of asphyxia. If asphyxia is noted, body temperature should be reduced to 34°C to 35°C for brain protection. A suction device should be available and should allow the suction pressure to be varied; pressures below −100 mm Hg should not be used.

Equipment required for tracheal intubation includes 0 and 00 straight laryngoscope blades; a pencil-type laryngoscope handle; 2.5-, 3.0-, and 3.5-mm ETTs; and a suction catheter that easily fits through each size tube. The ventilation system must permit ventilatory rates of at least 150 breaths/min and make it possible to maintain positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP). One-way valves can stick in the closed position, especially when high gas flow and high RRs are used. The modified Jackson-Rees or Ayres system works well when appropriately trained people use it. Overexpansion of the lungs with large tidal volumes injures the lungs and activates inflammatory processes that may cause chronic lung disease. Gentle inflation of the lung is less injurious to the lung. Airway inflation pressures should be measured continuously during assisted or controlled ventilation in the delivery room, and excessive pressures and tidal volumes should be avoided. As in any critical care situation, patient care should be guided by information. Consequently, blood gas and pH measurements are mandatory, and the results of these tests must be available within 10 minutes of drawing the blood sample. Umbilical arterial catheters are useful for measuring arterial blood pressure and withdrawing blood for blood gas analysis and pHa. They can also be used to infuse emergency fluids. Arterial oxygen saturation (SaO_2) can be measured immediately after birth by attaching a pulse oximeter to a hand or foot.[76] Pulse oximeters permit rapid detection of changes in oxygenation and rapid reduction of fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2). The normal SaO_2 of neonates is usually 87% to 95%, which is associated with a PaO_2 of 55 to 70 mm Hg.

PEDIATRIC CARDIAC ARREST AND RESUSCITATION

Pediatric cardiac arrest is not a rare event. At least 16,000 American children (8-20/100,000 children/year) suffer a cardiopulmonary arrest each year.[77-81] More than half of these cardiac arrests probably occur in-hospital.[77-82] With advances in resuscitation science and implementation techniques, survival from pediatric cardiac arrest has improved substantially over the past 25 years.[83]

Outcomes from pediatric cardiac arrest have improved significantly over the past 20 years. For example, survival to discharge from pediatric in-hospital cardiac arrest has increased from less than 10% in the 1980s[84,85] to greater than 25% in the 21st century. Of the pediatric patients that survive to hospital discharge, nearly three quarters will have favorable neurologic function defined by specific pediatric cerebral outcome measures and quality of life indicators.[83,86-88] Factors that influence outcome from pediatric cardiac arrest include (1) the pre-existing condition of the child; (2) the environment in which the arrest occurs; (3) the initial ECG rhythm detected; (4) the duration of no-flow time (the time during an arrest without spontaneous circulation or CPR); (5) the quality of the life-supporting therapies provided during the resuscitation; and (6) the quality of the life-supporting therapies during postresuscitation.

Not surprisingly, outcomes after pediatric out-of-hospital arrests are much worse than those after in-hospital arrests.[78,79,89-97] This may be due to the fact that there is a prolonged period of no flow in out-of-hospital arrests, where many of the pediatric cardiac arrests are not witnessed and only 30% of children are provided with bystander CPR. As a result of these factors, less than 10% of cases of pediatric out-of-hospital cardiac arrest (OHCA) survive to hospital discharge, and for those that do survive, severe neurological injury is common. These findings are especially troublesome, given that bystander CPR more than doubles patient survival rates in adults.[98] An exciting prospective, nationwide, population-based cohort study from Japan similarly demonstrates more than doubling of survival rates for children who have OHCA and receive bystander CPR either with conventional CPR (with rescue breathing) or chest compression only CPR compared with no bystander CPR.[99] The same study then further stratifies outcomes for OHCA into "cardiac" and "noncardiac" causes for arrest, and defines the relative value of rescue breathing during CPR by bystanders. Pediatric patients who have OHCA with noncardiac causes and receive bystander conventional CPR (including rescue breathing) had an association with higher frequency of favorable neurologic outcomes at 1 month after arrest compared with compression-only bystander CPR or no bystander CPR. For pediatric arrests defined as "cardiac" in nature, bystander CPR (conventional or compression-only) was associated with a higher rate of favorable neurologic outcomes 1 month after arrest compared with no bystander CPR. Interestingly, the two types of bystander CPR (conventional or compression-only) seemed to be similarly effective for pediatric cardiac arrests with cardiac causes, consistent with animal and adult studies.[99]

Survival outcomes after in-hospital cardiac arrest are higher in the pediatric population compared with adults; 27% of children survive to hospital discharge compared with only 17% of adults.[83] For both children and adults, outcomes are better after arrhythmogenic arrests, ventricular fibrillation (VF)/ventricular tachycardia (VT). Importantly, pediatric in-hospital arrests are less commonly caused by arrhythmias (10% of pediatric arrests vs. 25% of adult arrests), and approximately one-third of children and adults with these arrhythmogenic arrests survive to hospital discharge. Interestingly, the superior pediatric survival rate following in-hospital cardiac arrest reflects a substantially higher survival rate among children with asystole or pulseless electrical activity (PEA) compared with adults (24% vs. 11%). Further investigations have shown that the superior survival rate seen in children is mostly attributable to a much better survival rate among infants and preschool age children compared with older children.[87] Although speculative, the higher survival rates in children may be due to improved coronary and cerebral blood flow (CBF) during CPR because of increased chest compliance in these younger arrest victims, with improved aortic diastolic pressure and venous return.[100,101] In addition, survival of pediatric patients from an in-hospital cardiac arrest is more likely in hospitals staffed with dedicated pediatric physicians.[102]

Phases of Resuscitation

The four distinct phases of cardiac arrest and CPR interventions are (1) prearrest, (2) no flow (untreated cardiac arrest), (3) low flow (CPR), and (4) postresuscitation/arrest. Interventions to improve outcome of pediatric cardiac arrest should optimize therapies targeted to the time and phase of CPR, as suggested in Table 79.4.

TABLE 79.4 Phases of Cardiac Arrest and Resuscitation

Phase	Interventions
Prearrest phase (protect)	Optimize patient monitoring and rapid emergency response Recognize and treat respiratory failure or shock to prevent cardiac arrest
Arrest (no-flow) phase (preserve)	Minimize interval to BLS and ACLS Organize response with clear leadership Minimize interval to defibrillation, when indicated
Low-flow (CPR) phase (resuscitate)	Push hard, push fast Allow full chest recoil Minimized interruptions in compressions Avoid overventilation Titrate CPR to optimize myocardial blood flow (coronary perfusion pressures and exhaled CO_2) Consider adjuncts to improve vital organ perfusion during CPR Consider ECMO if standard CPR/ALS not promptly successful
Post-resuscitation phase: short-term	Optimize cardiac output and cerebral blood flow Treat arrhythmias, if indicated Avoid hyperglycemia, hyperthermia, hyperventilation Debrief to improve future responses to emergencies
Postresuscitation phase: long-term rehabilitation (regenerate)	Early intervention with occupational and physical therapy Bioengineering and technology interface Possible future role for stem cell transplantation

ACLS, Advanced cardiac life support; *ALS*, advanced life support; *BLS*, basic life support; *CPR*, cardiopulmonary resuscitation; *ECMO*, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation.

PREARREST

The prearrest phase refers to any relevant preexisting conditions of the child (e.g., neurologic, cardiac, respiratory, or metabolic problems) and precipitating events (e.g., respiratory failure or shock), uncoupling metabolic delivery and metabolic demand. Pediatric patients who suffer an in-hospital cardiac arrest often have changes in their physiological status in the hours leading up to their arrest event.[103,104] Therefore, interventions during the prearrest phase focus on preventing the cardiac arrest, with special attention to early recognition and targeted treatment of respiratory failure and shock. Early recognition plays a key role in identifying a prearrest state in children, who unlike adults may be able to mount a prolonged physiologic response to a worsening clinical picture. Medical emergency teams (METs; also known as *rapid response teams*) are in-hospital emergency teams designed specifically for this purpose. Frontline providers, and even parents, are encouraged to initiate evaluation by METs based on physiologic protocol driven parameters or even intuition. Patients are assessed by the METs, and those at high risk of clinical decompensation are transferred to a pediatric ICU if necessary, with the goal to prevent progression to full cardiac arrest or to decrease the response time to initiation of advanced life support, thereby limiting the no-flow state. Implementation of METs decreases the frequency of cardiac arrests compared with retrospective control periods before MET initiation.[105-107] While early recognition protocols cannot identify all children at risk for cardiac arrest, it seems reasonable to assume that transferring critically ill children to an ICU early in their disease process for better monitoring and more aggressive interventions can improve resuscitative care and clinical outcomes. The caveat is that prearrest states must be identified to initiate monitoring and interventions that may inhibit the progression to an arrest. While a significant amount of research dollars and resources are spent on the other phases of cardiac arrest, particular focus on the prearrest state may yield the greatest improvement in survival and neurologic outcomes.

NO FLOW/LOW FLOW

Airway-Breathing-Circulation or Circulation-Airway-Breathing

For OHCA victims, "compression-only" CPR has been associated with improved outcomes.[108,109] This is now the recommended modality for emergency medical service dispatcher instructing bystander CPR.[110] In a recent Japanese study, children with OHCA due to a primary cardiac etiology displayed an equivalent survival rate between compression-only CPR and classic CPR with rescue breaths. However, only 29% of patients had a cardiac cause of OHCA. Those with noncardiac etiology in the overall cohort had a significantly worse survival rate with compression-only CPR, as compared with classic CPR with rescue breaths.[111] Additionally, in another nationwide Japanese OHCA registry study, compression-only CPR was superior to no bystander CPR at all but not to conventional CPR.[112] In a recent American OHCA registry study, children who received conventional bystander CPR with chest compressions and rescue breaths had improved rates of overall survival and survival with favorable outcomes as compared with those who did not receive CPR, whereas those receiving compression-only CPR did not fare any better than children not receiving CPR.[113] Thus compression-only CPR is not recommended for children in either the inpatient or out-of-hospital setting, except in situations in which "rescuers are unwilling or unable to deliver breaths."[114]

Regardless, the prioritization of initial interventions during CPR has shifted from airway-breathing-circulation ("A-B-C") to circulation-airway-breathing ("C-A-B") in order to prevent harmful delays in the initiation of chest compressions and due to the relative complexity of the tasks involved in providing assisted ventilation. This is endorsed by both the 2010 and 2015 AHA BLS Guidelines.[114,115] However, a 2015 International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation consensus statement identified a paucity of pediatric-specific evidence to support this recommendation.[116] In our opinion, the approach is physiologically sound, especially given the association of delayed chest compression initiation with poor outcomes. With that said, the pediatric provider must consider the predominance of asphyxia and hypoxemia as precursors to cardiac arrest.[83,117] This is especially true in the ICU and operating room, where personnel and other resources frequently allow for simultaneous circulatory support with high-quality chest compressions as well as the provision of assisted ventilations by experienced personnel.

In order to improve outcomes from pediatric cardiac arrest, it is imperative to shorten the no-flow phase of untreated cardiac arrest. To that end, it is important to monitor high-risk patients to allow early recognition of the cardiac arrest and prompt initiation of basic and advanced life support. Effective CPR optimizes coronary perfusion pressure (by elevating aortic diastolic pressure relative to RAP) and cardiac output to critical organs to support vital organ viability (by elevating mean aortic pressure) during the low flow phase. Important tenets of basic life support are *push hard, push fast, allow full chest recoil between compressions, and minimize interruptions of chest compression*. The myocardium receives blood flow from the aortic root, mainly during diastole, via the coronary arteries. When the heart arrests and no blood flows through the aorta, coronary blood flow ceases. However, during chest compressions, aortic pressure rises at the same time as RAP and with the subsequent decompression phase of chest compressions, the RAP falls faster and lower than the aortic pressure, which generates a pressure gradient that perfuses the heart with oxygenated blood. Therefore, full elastic recoil (release) is critical to create a pressure difference between the aortic root and the right atrium. A CPP below 15 mm Hg during CPR is a poor prognostic factor for ROSC. Achieving optimal coronary perfusion pressure, exhaled carbon dioxide concentration, and cardiac output during the low flow phase of CPR is consistently associated with an improved chance for return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC) and improved short- and long-term outcome in mature animal and human studies.[118-125] There is a critical need for research evaluating goal directed CPR, both in immature animal models and pediatric patients. Other measures essential for truncating the no-flow phase during VF and pulseless VT are rapid detection and prompt defibrillation. Clearly, CPR alone is inadequate for successful resuscitation from these arrhythmias. For cardiac arrests resulting from asphyxia and/or ischemia, provision of adequate myocardial perfusion and myocardial oxygen delivery are the critical elements for ROSC.

POSTARREST/RESUSCITATION

The postarrest/resuscitation phase includes coordinated, skilled management of the immediate post-resuscitation stage, the next few hours to days, and long-term rehabilitation. The immediate post-resuscitation stage is a high-risk period for ventricular arrhythmias and other reperfusion injuries. Goals of interventions implemented during the immediate post-resuscitation stage and the next few days include adequate tissue oxygen delivery, treatment of post-resuscitation myocardial dysfunction, and minimizing post-resuscitation tissue injury (e.g., preventing post-resuscitation hyperthermia and hypoglycemia; and, perhaps initiating post-resuscitation therapeutic hypothermia, preventing hyperglycemia and avoiding hyperoxia). This post-arrest/resuscitation phase may have the greatest potential for innovative advances in the understanding of cell injury (excitotoxicity, oxidative stress, metabolic stress) and cell death (apoptosis and necrosis), ultimately leading to novel molecular-targeted interventions. The rehabilitation stage concentrates on salvage of injured cells, and support for reengineering of reflex and voluntary communications of these cell and organ systems to improve long-term functional outcome.

The specific phase of resuscitation dictates the focus of care. Interventions that improve outcome during one phase may be deleterious during another. For instance, intense vasoconstriction during the low flow phase of cardiac arrest improves coronary perfusion pressure and the probability of ROSC. The same intense vasoconstriction during the post-resuscitation phase increases left ventricular afterload and may worsen myocardial strain and dysfunction. Current understanding of the physiology of cardiac arrest and recovery allows us to only crudely manipulate blood pressure, oxygen delivery and consumption, body temperature, and other physiologic parameters in our attempts to optimize outcome. Future strategies likely will take advantage of increasing knowledge of cellular injury, thrombosis, reperfusion, mediator cascades, cellular markers of injury and recovery, and transplantation technology, including stem cells.

Interventions During the Cardiac Arrest (No Flow) and Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (Low Flow)

AIRWAY AND BREATHING

During CPR, cardiac output and pulmonary blood flow are ~10% to 25% of that during normal sinus rhythm; therefore, a lower minute ventilation is necessary for adequate gas exchange from the blood traversing the pulmonary circulation. Animal and adult data indicate that overventilation ("overventilation" from exuberant rescue breathing) during CPR is common and can substantially compromise venous return and subsequently cardiac output.[126-128] These detrimental hemodynamic effects are compounded when one considers the effect of interruptions in CPR to provide airway management and rescue breathing and may contribute to worse survival outcomes.[129-132] While overventilation is problematic, in light of the fact that most pediatric arrests are asphyxial in nature, immediate initiation of *adequate* ventilation is still important. The difference between arrhythmogenic and asphyxial arrests lies in the physiology. In animal models of sudden VF cardiac arrest, acceptable PaO_2 and $PaCO_2$ persist for 4 to 8 minutes during chest compressions without rescue breathing.[133,134] This is in part because aortic oxygen and carbon dioxide concentrations at the onset of the arrest do not vary much from the prearrest state with no blood flow and minimal aortic oxygen consumption. The lungs act as a reservoir of oxygen during the low-flow state of CPR; therefore, adequate oxygenation and ventilation can continue without rescue breathing. Several retrospective studies of witnessed VF cardiac arrest in adults have also shown that outcomes are similar after bystander-initiated CPR with either chest compressions alone or chest compressions plus rescue breathing.[135] However, during asphyxial arrest, peripheral and pulmonary blood flow continues during the prearrest, state resulting in significant arterial and venous oxygen desaturation, elevated lactate levels, and depletion of the pulmonary oxygen reserve. Therefore, at the onset of CPR, there is substantial arterial hypoxemia and resulting acidemia. In this circumstance, rescue breathing with controlled ventilation can be a life-saving maneuver. In contrast, the adverse hemodynamic effects from overventilation during CPR combined with possible interruptions in chest compressions to open the airway and deliver rescue breathing are a lethal combination in certain circumstances such as VT/VF arrests. In short, the resuscitation technique should be titrated to the physiology of the patient to optimize patient outcome.

CIRCULATION: OPTIMIZING BLOOD FLOW DURING LOW FLOW CARDIOPULMONARY RESUSCITATION: PUSH HARD, PUSH FAST

When the heart arrests, no blood flows to the aorta and coronary blood flow ceases immediately.[135] At that point, provision of high quality CPR (PUSH HARD, PUSH FAST) is vital to reestablish coronary flow. The goal during CPR is to maximize the myocardial perfusion pressure (MPP). Related by the following equation: MPP = aortic diastolic blood pressure (AoDP) minus RAP, myocardial blood flow improves as the gradient between AoDP and RAP increases. During downward compression phase, aortic pressure rises at the same time as RAP with little change in the MPP. However, during the decompression phase of chest compressions, the RAP falls faster and lower than the aortic pressure, which generates a pressure gradient perfusing the heart with oxygenated blood during this artificial period of "diastole." Several animal and human studies have demonstrated, in both VT/VF and asphyxial models, the importance of establishing MPP as a predictor for short-term survival outcome (ROSC).[124,136-139] Because there is no flow without chest compressions, it is important to minimize interruptions in chest compressions. To allow good venous return in the decompression phase of external cardiac massage, it is also important to allow full chest recoil and to avoid overventilation (preventing adequate venous return because of increased intrathoracic pressure).

Based on the provided equation, MPP can be improved by strategies that increase the pressure gradient between the aorta and the right atrium. As an example, the inspiratory impedance threshold device (ITD) is a small, disposable valve that can be connected directly to the tracheal tube or face mask to augment negative intrathoracic pressure during the inspiratory phase of spontaneous breathing and the decompression phase of CPR by impeding airflow into the lungs. Application in animal and adult human trials of CPR has established the ability of the ITD to improve vital organ perfusion pressures and myocardial blood flow[140-145]; however, in the only randomized trial during adult CPR, mortality benefit was limited to the subgroup of patients with PEA.[145] Additional evidence that augmentation of negative intrathoracic pressure can improve perfusion pressures during CPR comes from the active compression-decompression device (ACD). The ACD is a handheld device that is fixed to the anterior chest of the victim by means of suction similar to a household plunger that can be used to apply active decompression forces during the release phase, thereby creating a vacuum within the thorax. By actively pulling during the decompression phase, blood is drawn back into the heart by the negative pressure.[146] Animal and adult studies have demonstrated that the combination of ACD with ITD act in concert to further improve perfusion pressures during CPR compared with ACD alone.[142] In the end, while novel interventions such as the ITD and ACD are promising adjuncts to improve blood flow during CPR, the basic tenants of PUSH HARD, PUSH FAST, ALLOW FULL CHEST WALL RELEASE, MINIMIZE INTERRUPTIONS, and DON'T OVERVENTILATE are still the dominate factors to improve blood flow during CPR and chance of survival.

CHEST COMPRESSION DEPTH

The pediatric chest compression depth recommendation of at least one-third anterior-posterior chest depth (approximately 4 cm in infants and 5 cm in children) is based largely upon expert clinical consensus, using data extrapolated from animal, adult, and limited pediatric data. In a small study of six infants, chest compressions targeted to one half anterior-posterior chest depth resulted in improved systolic blood pressures, compared with those targeted at one-third anterior-posterior chest depth.[147] While only a small series with qualitatively estimated chest compression depths, this is the first study to collect actual data from children supporting the existing chest compression depth guidelines. On the contrary, two recent studies using computer automated tomography (CT)[148,149] suggest that depth recommendations based on a relative (%) anterior-posterior chest compression depth are deeper than that recommended for adults, and that a depth of one half anterior-posterior chest depth will result in direct compression to the point of fully emptying the heart and requisite shifting of heart because of inadequate AP diameter reserve in most children. Future studies that collect data from actual children and that associate quantitatively measured chest compression depths with short- and long-term clinical outcomes (arterial blood pressure, end tidal carbon dioxide, ROSC, survival) are needed.

COMPRESSION/VENTILATION RATIOS

The amount of ventilation provided during CPR should match, but not exceed, perfusion and should be titrated to the amount of circulation during the specific phase of resuscitation, as well as the metabolic demand of the tissues. Therefore, during the low flow state of CPR when the amount of cardiac output is roughly 10% to 25% of normal, less ventilation is needed.[150] However, the best ratio of compressions to ventilations in pediatric patients is largely unknown and depends on many factors, including the compression rate, the tidal volume, the blood flow generated by compressions, and the time that compressions are interrupted to perform ventilation. Recent evidence demonstrates that a compression/ventilation ratio of 15:2 delivers the same minute ventilation and increases the number of delivered chest compressions by 48% compared with CPR at a compression/ventilation ratio of 5:1 in a simulated pediatric arrest model.[151,152] This is important because when chest compressions cease, the aortic pressure rapidly decreases and coronary perfusion pressure falls precipitously, thereby decreasing myocardial oxygen delivery.[135] Increasing the ratio of compressions to ventilations minimizes these interruptions, thus increasing coronary blood flow. The benefits of PPV (increased arterial content of oxygen and carbon dioxide elimination) must be balanced against the adverse consequence of decreased circulation. These findings are in part the reason the AHA now *recommends a pediatric compression/ventilation ratio of 15:2*.

DUTY CYCLE

In a model of human adult cardiac arrest, cardiac output and coronary blood flow are optimized when chest compressions last for 30% of the total cycle time (approximately 1:2 ratio of time in compression to time in relaxation).[153] As the duration of CPR increases, the optimal duty cycle may increase to 50%. In a juvenile swine model, a relaxation period of 250 to 300 milliseconds (duty cycle of 40%-50% at a compression rate of 120/min) correlates with improved cerebral perfusion pressures (CPPs) compared with shorter duty cycles of 30%.[154]

CIRCUMFERENTIAL VERSUS FOCAL STERNAL COMPRESSIONS

In adult and animal models of cardiac arrest, circumferential (vest) CPR has been demonstrated to dramatically improve CPR hemodynamics.[155] In smaller infants, it is often possible to encircle the chest with both hands and depress the sternum with the thumbs, while compressing the thorax circumferentially (thoracic squeeze). In an infant animal model of CPR, this “two-thumb” method of compression with thoracic squeeze resulted in higher systolic and diastolic blood pressures and a higher pulse pressure than traditional two-finger compression of the sternum.[156] Although not rigorously studied, our clinical experience indicates that it is very difficult to attain adequate chest compression force and adequate aortic pressures with the two-finger technique, so we fully support the AHA Guidelines for health care providers to perform CPR on infants with the two-thumb-encircling hands technique.[157]

OPEN-CHEST CARDIOPULMONARY RESUSCITATION

In animal models, high quality standard, closed-chest CPR generates myocardial blood flow that is greater than 50% of normal, CBF that is approximately 50% of normal, and cardiac output ~10% to 25% of normal.[135,155,158,159] By contrast, open-chest CPR can generate myocardial and CBF that approaches normal. Although open-chest massage improves coronary perfusion pressure and increases the chance of successful defibrillation in animals and humans,[160-162] performing a thoracotomy to allow open-chest CPR is impractical in many situations. A retrospective review of 27 cases of CPR following pediatric blunt trauma (15 with open-chest CPR and 12 with closed-chest CPR) demonstrated that open-chest CPR increased hospital cost without altering rates of ROSC or survival to discharge. However, survival in both groups was 0%, indicating that the population may have been too severely injured or too late in the process to benefit from this aggressive therapy.[163] Open-chest CPR is often provided to children after open-heart cardiac surgery and sternotomy. Earlier institution of open-chest CPR may warrant reconsideration in selected special resuscitation circumstances.

MEDICATIONS USED TO TREAT CARDIAC ARREST

While animal studies have indicated that epinephrine can improve initial resuscitation success after both asphyxial and VF cardiac arrests, there are no prospective studies to support the use of epinephrine or any other medication to improve survival outcome from pediatric cardiac arrest. A variety of medications are used during pediatric resuscitation attempts, including vasopressors (epinephrine and vasopressin), antiarrhythmics (amiodarone and lidocaine), and other drugs such as calcium chloride and sodium bicarbonate. Each will be discussed separately as follows.

Vasopressors

Epinephrine (adrenaline) is an endogenous catecholamine with potent α- and β-adrenergic stimulating properties. The α-adrenergic action (vasoconstriction) increases systemic and PVR. The resultant higher aortic diastolic blood pressure improves coronary perfusion pressure and myocardial blood flow, even though it reduces global cardiac output during CPR; as noted previously, adequacy of myocardial blood flow is a critical determinant of ROSC. Epinephrine also increases CBF during good quality CPR because peripheral vasoconstriction directs a greater proportion of flow to the cerebral circulation.[164-166] However, recent evidence suggests that epinephrine can decrease local cerebral microcirculatory blood flow at a time when global cerebral flow is increased.[167] The β-adrenergic effect increases myocardial contractility and HR, and relaxes smooth muscle in the skeletal muscle vascular bed and bronchi; however, the β-adrenergic effects are not observed in the peripheral vascular beds secondary to the high dose used in cardiac arrest. Epinephrine also increases the vigor and intensity of VF, increasing the likelihood of successful defibrillation. High-dose epinephrine (0.05-0.2 mg/kg) improves myocardial and CBF during CPR more than standard-dose epinephrine (0.01-0.02 mg/kg) in animal models of cardiac arrest and may increase the incidence of initial ROSC.[168,169] However, prospective and retrospective studies have indicated that the use of high-dose epinephrine in adults or children does not improve survival and may be associated with worse neurologic outcome.[170,171] A randomized, blinded, controlled trial of rescue high-dose epinephrine versus standard-dose epinephrine after failed initial standard dose epinephrine in pediatric in-hospital cardiac arrest demonstrated a worse 24-hour survival in the high-dose epinephrine group (1 of 27 survivors vs. 6 of 23 survivors, $P < .05$).[172] Based on these clinical studies, high-dose epinephrine cannot be recommended routinely for either initial or rescue therapy. Importantly, these studies indicate that high-dose epinephrine can worsen a patient's post-resuscitation hemodynamic condition and likelihood of survival.

Vasopressin is a long-acting endogenous hormone that acts at specific receptors to mediate systemic vasoconstriction (V_1 receptor) and reabsorption of water in the renal tubule (V_2 receptor). Vasoconstrictive properties are most intense in the skeletal muscle and skin vascular beds. Unlike epinephrine, vasopressin is not a pulmonary vasoconstrictor. In experimental models of cardiac arrest, vasopressin increases blood flow to the heart and brain and improves long-term survival compared with epinephrine. However, vasopressin can decrease splanchnic blood flow during and following CPR and can increase afterload in the post-resuscitation period placing further strain on the left ventricle.[158,173-176] Adult randomized, controlled trials suggest that outcomes are similar after use of vasopressin or epinephrine during CPR.[177,178] During pediatric arrest, a case series of four children who received vasopressin during six prolonged cardiac arrest events suggested that the use of bolus vasopressin may result in ROSC when standard medications have failed.[179] However, a more recent retrospective study of 1293 consecutive pediatric arrests from the National Registry of CPR (NPCRP) found that vasopressin use, while infrequent (administered in only 5% of events), was associated with a lower likelihood of ROSC. Therefore, it is unlikely that vasopressin will replace epinephrine as a first-line agent in pediatric cardiac arrest. However, the available data suggest that its use in conjunction with epinephrine may deserve further investigation, especially in prolonged arrest unresponsive to initial epinephrine resuscitation.

Antiarrhythmic Medications

Calcium. Calcium is used frequently in cases of pediatric cardiac arrest, despite the lack of evidence for efficacy. In the absence of a documented clinical indication (i.e., hypocalcemia, calcium channel blocker overdose, hypermagnesemia, or hyperkalemia), administration of calcium does not improve outcomes from cardiac arrest.[180-188] To the contrary, three pediatric studies have suggested a potential for harm, as routine calcium administration was associated with decreased survival rates and / or worse neurological outcomes.[180-188] Despite limited clinical data to support the use of calcium during CPR, it is reasonable to consider calcium administration during CPR for cardiac arrest patients at high risk of hypocalcemia (e.g., renal failure, shock associated with massive transfusion, etc.).

Buffer Solutions. There are no randomized controlled studies in children examining the use of sodium bicarbonate for management of pediatric cardiac arrest. Two randomized controlled studies have examined the value of sodium bicarbonate in the management of adult cardiac arrest[189] and in neonates with respiratory arrest in the delivery room.[190] Neither study was associated with improved survival. In fact, one multicenter retrospective in-hospital pediatric study found that sodium bicarbonate administered during cardiac arrest was associated with decreased survival, even after controlling for age, gender and first documented cardiac rhythm.[187] Therefore, during pediatric cardiac arrest resuscitation, the routine use of sodium bicarbonate is not recommended. Clinical trials involving critically ill adults with severe metabolic acidosis do not demonstrate a beneficial effect of sodium bicarbonate on hemodynamics despite correction of acidosis.[191-192] This is somewhat surprising in light of data that severe acidosis may depress the action of catecholamines and worsen myocardial function.[193,194] Nevertheless, the common use of sodium bicarbonate during CPR is not supported by clinical data. Pediatric patients with implanted cardiac pacemakers may have an increased threshold for myocardial electrical stimulation when acidotic[195]; therefore, administration of bicarbonate or another buffer is appropriate for management of severe documented acidosis in these children. Administration of sodium bicarbonate also is indicated in the patient with a tricyclic antidepressant overdose, hyperkalemia, hypermagnesemia, or sodium channel blocker poisoning. The buffering action of bicarbonate occurs when a hydrogen cation and a bicarbonate anion combine to form carbon dioxide and water. Carbon dioxide must be cleared through adequate minute ventilation; thus, if ventilation is impaired during sodium bicarbonate administration, carbon dioxide buildup may negate the buffering effect of bicarbonate. Because carbon dioxide readily penetrates cell membranes, intracellular acidosis may paradoxically increase after sodium bicarbonate administration without adequate ventilation. Therefore, bicarbonate should not be used for management of respiratory acidosis.

Unlike sodium bicarbonate, tromethamine (THAM) buffers excess protons without generating carbon dioxide; in fact, carbon dioxide is consumed following THAM administration. In a patient with impaired minute ventilation, tromethamine may be preferable when buffering is necessary to mitigate severe acidosis. Tromethamine undergoes renal elimination, and renal insufficiency may be a relative contraindication to its use. Carbicarb, an equimolar combination of sodium bicarbonate and sodium carbonate, is another buffering solution that generates less carbon dioxide than sodium bicarbonate. In a canine model of cardiac arrest comparing animals given normal saline, sodium bicarbonate, THAM, or Carbicarb, the animals given any buffer solution had a higher rate of ROSC than the animals given normal saline. In the animals given sodium bicarbonate or Carbicarb, the interval to ROSC was significantly shorter than in animals given normal saline. However, at the end of the 6-hour study period, all resuscitated animals were in a deep coma, so no inferences regarding meaningful survival can be drawn.[196] It is premature to recommend either THAM or Carbicarb during CPR at this time.

POST-RESUSCITATION INTERVENTIONS

Temperature Management

Two seminal articles[197,198] have established that induced hypothermia (32°C-34°C) could improve outcome for comatose adults after resuscitation from VF cardiac arrest. In both randomized, controlled trials, the inclusion criteria were patients older than 18 years who were persistently comatose after successful resuscitation from nontraumatic VF.[199,200] However, in a recent randomized control trial with unconscious adult survivors of OHCA, a targeted temperature of 33°C did not confer a benefit as compared with the targeted temperature of 36°C.[201] Interpretation and extrapolation of these studies to children is difficult; however, fever within the first 48 hours following cardiac arrest, brain trauma, stroke, and ischemia is associated with poor neurologic outcome. Emerging neonatal trials of selective brain cooling and systemic cooling show promise in neonatal HIE, suggesting that induced hypothermia may improve outcomes.[202,203] The efficacy of therapeutic hypothermia following pediatric cardiac arrest is being evaluated in a randomized controlled trial (clinicaltrials.gov identifier NCT00880087); THAPCA: Therapeutic Hypothermia After Pediatric Cardiac Arrest (www.thapca.org). At a minimum, it is advisable to avoid hyperthermia in children following CPR. Using an approach of "therapeutic normothermia" with scheduled administration of antipyretic medications and the use of external cooling devices, while monitoring core temperature, may be necessary to prevent hyperthermia in this population. Notably, preventing hyperthermia is not easy. Many children become hyperthermic post-arrest despite the intent to prevent hypothermia.[198]

Glucose Control

Both hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia following cardiac arrest is associated with worse neurologic outcome.[204-207] While it seems intuitive that hypoglycemia would be associated with worse neurologic outcome, whether hyperglycemia per se is harmful or is simply a marker of the severity of the stress hormone response from prolonged ischemia is not clear. A recent randomized control trial suggests that tight glycemic control in critically ill children had no effect on major clinical outcomes, but was associated with a higher incidence of hypoglycemia.[208] In summary, there is insufficient evidence to formulate a strong recommendation on the management of hyperglycemia in children with ROSC following cardiac arrest. If hyperglycemia is treated following ROSC in pediatric patients, blood glucose concentrations should be carefully monitored to avoid hypoglycemia.

Blood Pressure Management

A patient with ROSC may have substantial variability in blood pressure following cardiac arrest. Postarrest/resuscitation myocardial dysfunction is very common and is often associated with hypotension (discussed later).[199,200,209-218] In addition, hypertension may occur, especially if the patient receives vasoactive infusions for postarrest myocardial dysfunction. Optimization of blood pressure postarrest is critical to maintain adequate perfusion pressure to vital organs that may have already been injured from the "no flow" and "low blood flow" states during initial cardiac arrest and CPR. Cerebral blood flow in healthy patients is tightly controlled over a wide range of mean arterial blood pressure via cerebral neurovascular bundle (autoregulation); however, adults resuscitated from cardiac arrest have demonstrated impaired autoregulation of CBF, and this may also be the case in children.[219] Dysautoregulation of the cerebral neurovascular bundle following cardiac arrest may limit the brain's ability to regulate excessive blood flow and microvascular perfusion pressure, thereby leading to reperfusion injury during systemic hypertension. However, in animal models, brief induced hypertension following resuscitation results in improved neurologic outcome compared with normotensive reperfusion.[220,221] Conversely, systemic hypotension may perpetuate neurologic metabolic crisis following ischemic injury by uncoupling bioenergetic demand and delivery. Therefore, a practical approach to blood pressure management following cardiac arrest is to attempt to minimize blood pressure variability in this high-risk period following resuscitation.

Post-resuscitation Myocardial Dysfunction

Postarrest myocardial stunning and arterial hypotension occur commonly after successful resuscitation in both animals and humans.[199,200,209-218] Animal studies demonstrate that postarrest myocardial stunning is a global phenomenon with biventricular systolic and diastolic dysfunction. Postarrest myocardial stunning is pathophysiologically and physiologically similar to sepsis-related myocardial dysfunction and postcardiopulmonary bypass myocardial dysfunction, including increases in inflammatory mediators and NO production.[212,215,218,216] Because cardiac function is essential to reperfusion following cardiac arrest, management of postarrest myocardial dysfunction may be important to improving survival. The classes of agents used to maintain circulatory function (i.e., inotropes, vasopressors, and vasodilators) must be carefully titrated during the post-resuscitation phase to the patient's cardiovascular physiology. Although the optimal management of post–cardiac arrest hypotension and myocardial dysfunction has not been established, data suggest that aggressive hemodynamic support may improve outcomes. Controlled trials in animal models have shown that dobutamine, milrinone, levosimendan can effectively ameliorate post–cardiac arrest myocardial dysfunction.[209,210,222,223] In clinical observational studies, fluid resuscitation has been provided for patients with hypotension and concomitant low central venous pressure, and various vasoactive infusions, including epinephrine, dobutamine, and dopamine, have been used to treat the myocardial dysfunction syndrome.[199,200,213-217] In the end, optimal use of these agents involves close goal-directed titration, and the use of invasive hemodynamic monitoring may be appropriate. General critical care principles suggest that appropriate therapeutic goals are adequate blood pressures and adequate oxygen delivery. However, the definition of "adequate" is elusive. Reasonable interventions for vasodilatory shock with low central venous pressure include fluid resuscitation and vasoactive infusions. Appropriate considerations for left ventricular myocardial dysfunction include euvolemia, inotropic infusions, and afterload reduction.

NEUROMONITORING

Continuous neuromonitoring and goal-directed intervention following cardiac arrest is an exciting frontier with great promise in improving neurologic outcomes post–cardiac arrest.[224] Continuous electroencephalogram (cEEG) monitoring is an increasingly instituted modality for neuromonitoring of critically ill patients, especially to diagnose nonconvulsive seizures (NCS) and seizures in patient's receiving muscle relaxants. cEEG monitoring is noninvasive, performed at the bedside, and permits continuous assessment of cortical function. Interpretation of continuous electroencephalogram (EEG) is usually performed by a neurologist from a remote location, and not bedside critical care physicians. However, advances in quantitative EEG tools may allow bedside caregivers to identify important electrographic events, such as seizures or abrupt background changes, to potentially permit real-time analysis and intervention.[225] In a prospective study of cEEG in children, NCS were detected in 39% (12 of 31) children following cardiac arrest.[226] In a partially overlapping cohort of 19 children, NCS were common in children undergoing therapeutic hypothermia after cardiac arrest.[226] NCS seems to be a common occurrence following cardiac arrests in children. Although the relationship of NCS to worse outcomes has not been established in pediatric patients following cardiac arrest, it has been associated with worse outcomes among critically ill adults and neonates.[227-233] We believe that cEEG should be considered for children post–cardiac arrest and that patients with NCS (especially status epilepticus with NCS) should be treated with anticonvulsant medication. Further study is warranted to better establish frequency of NCS and potential benefit in outcomes with anticonvulsant therapy.

Oxidative injury may be greatest in the early phases of post-resuscitation therapy following cardiac arrest.[234] Interestingly, the use of 100% oxygen (compared with room air) during and immediately following resuscitation in animal models may potentiate oxidative injury to key mitochondrial enzymes (pyruvate dehydrogenase or manganese superoxide) or mitochondrial lipids (cardiolipin), and is associated with worse neurologic outcomes.[235-238] Experimental protocols in large animals using peripheral pulse-oximetry to titrate oxygenation in the post-resuscitation phase can reduce post-resuscitation hyperoxia and significantly improve neuropathology and neurobehavioral outcomes.[239] Consistent with these experimental findings, arterial hyperoxia ($PaO_2 \geq 300$ mm Hg) was independently associated with in-hospital mortality compared with either hypoxia or normoxia in an observational study among critically ill adult patients admitted to the ICU within 24 hours of a cardiac arrest.[240] We believe it is prudent to titrate oxygenation during and following pediatric cardiac arrest. Although the optimal SpO_2 is not known, we recommend titration of FiO_2 to the lowest amount necessary to assure $SpO_2 > 94\%$. Perhaps the future of post-arrest care will include more aggressive neurocritical care monitoring, such as near infrared spectroscopy, cerebral microdialysis, $PbtO_2$, CBF, and even bedside analysis of mitochondrial dysfunction.

QUALITY OF CARDIOPULMONARY RESUSCITATION

Despite evidence-based guidelines, extensive provider training, and provider credentialing in resuscitation medicine, the quality of CPR is typically poor. CPR guidelines recommend target values for selected CPR parameters related to rate and depth of chest compressions and ventilations, avoidance of CPR-free intervals, and complete release of sternal pressure between compressions.[241] Slow compression rates, inadequate depth of compression, and substantial pauses are the norm. An approach to *Push Hard, Push Fast, Minimize Interruptions, Allow Full Chest Recoil, and Don't Overventilate* can markedly improve myocardial, cerebral, and systemic perfusion, and will likely improve outcomes.[131] Quality of post-resuscitative management has also been demonstrated to be critically important to improve resuscitation survival outcomes.[213] Measuring the quality of CPR and avoiding overventilation during cardiac arrest resuscitation have recently been reemphasized by consensus of the International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation and the AHA.[242] Although the correct amount, timing, intensity, and duration of ventilation that is required during CPR is controversial, there is no controversy that measurement and titration of the amount of ventilation to the amount of blood perfusion are desirable. Thus additional technology that is safe, accurate, and practical would improve detection and feedback of the "quality of CPR."

Recent technology has been developed that monitors quality of CPR by force sensors and accelerometers, and can provide verbal feedback to the CPR administrator regarding the frequency and depth of chest compressions and the volume of ventilations. Recent pediatric data illustrates that intensive training and real-time corrective feedback can help chest compression quality approach age-specific AHA CPR guideline targets.[243-245] Moreover, improvements in post-resuscitation care can improve resuscitation survival outcomes.[213]

EXTRACORPOREAL MEMBRANE OXYGENATION-CARDIOPULMONARY RESUSCITATION

The use of extracorporeal membrane life-saving (ECLS) devices as a rescue therapy for refractory cardiac arrest (ECPR) is an exciting topic in resuscitation science. In children with medical or surgical cardiac diseases, ECPR has been shown to improve survival to hospital discharge[246] and can be effective after even greater than 50 minutes of CPR.[247] However, at this time, observational data has not consistently demonstrated a survival benefit of ECPR compared with conventional CPR across broad populations.[248,249] Children with primary cardiac disease may have a survival advantage, due to these disease processes being amenable to a bridge with ECLS—whether to recovery, surgery, or transplantation. There may be an underlying advantage for these patients as well, stemming from predominantly single-organ failure compared with patients with noncardiac etiologies of cardiac arrest, allowing for a greater chance of full recovery after resuscitation.[250] Importantly, in these observational studies, ECPR is used as a rescue therapy in patients who likely would have died with continued conventional resuscitation efforts.[250] In fact, in a GWTG-R study that looked at both cardiac and noncardiac patients with greater than 10 minutes of CPR, those who received ECPR had improved survival and favorable neurologic outcome at discharge.[251] A lack of survival advantage, even when controlling for confounding factors, is flawed by the nature of these studies.[252] In the absence of randomized controlled trials that specifically compare early initiation of ECPR and conventional CPR, it is probably reasonable to consider ECPR as a rescue therapy in patients with potentially reversible underlying disease processes. However, as noted in PALS guidelines, any reasonable chance of success requires a setting with "existing ECMO protocols, expertise, and equipment,"[253] and dedicated teams that train for efficient cannulation under difficult circumstances. Therefore, timely, quality E-CPR may be an exciting adjuvant to conventional CPR for pediatric patients. Future frontiers will define patient populations and optimize the clinical approach to extracorporeal support; however, clinicians providing CPR should consider E-CPR early in the course of a resuscitation not responding to conventional CPR. Perhaps after failure to attain ROSC within 5 minutes, clinicians should ask themselves: (1) does the patient have a potentially reversible process, (2) would ECMO be a "bridge" to a potentially good outcome, and (3) do we have the personnel and resources to provide EMCO promptly? If the answer to all three are "yes," prompt implementation of E-CPR should be considered. We believe that patients arriving with a witnessed arrest with immediate initiation of CPR *and* evidence of quality CPR should be considered E-CPR candidates.

Ventricular Fibrillation and Ventricular Tachycardia in Children

Pediatric VF, or VT, has been an underappreciated pediatric problem. Recent studies indicate that VF and VT (i.e., shockable rhythms) occur in 27% of in-hospital cardiac arrests at some time during the resuscitation.[254] In a population of pediatric cardiac ICU patients, as many as 41% of arrests were associated with VF or VT.[255] According to the National Registry of Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (NRCPR) database, 10% of children with in-hospital cardiac arrest had an initial rhythm of VF/VT. In all, 27% of the children had VF/VT at some time during the resuscitation.[254] The incidence of VF varies by setting and age.[256] In special circumstances, such as tricyclic antidepressant overdose, cardiomyopathy, post–cardiac surgery, and prolonged QT syndromes, VF and pulseless VT are more likely. The treatment of choice for short-duration VF is prompt defibrillation. In general, the mortality rate increases by 7% to 10% per minute of delay to defibrillation. Because VF must be considered before defibrillation can be provided, early determination of the rhythm by ECG is critical. An attitude that VF is rare in children can be a self-fulfilling prophecy with a uniformly fatal outcome. The recommended defibrillation dose is 2 J/kg, but the data supporting this recommendation are not optimal and are based on old monophasic defibrillators. In the mid-1970s, authoritative sources recommended starting doses of 60 to 200 J for all children. Because of concerns for myocardial damage and animal data suggesting that shock doses ranging from 0.5 to 1 J/kg were adequate for defibrillation in a variety of species, Gutgesell et al. evaluated the efficacy of their strategy to defibrillate with 2 J/kg monophasic shocks.[257] Seventy-one transthoracic defibrillations in 27 children were evaluated. Shocks within 10 J of 2 J/kg resulted in successful defibrillation (i.e., termination of fibrillation) in 91% of defibrillation attempts. More recent data demonstrate that an initial shock dose of 2 J/kg terminates fibrillation in less than 60% of children, suggesting that a higher dose may be needed.[93,258-260] Interestingly, retrospective observational NRCPR data demonstrate that higher initial doses of 4 J/kg were associated with worse short-term survival (i.e., immediate survival of the cardiac arrest event with a spontaneous rhythm). Despite 5 decades of clinical experience with pediatric defibrillation, the optimal dose remains unknown.

ANTIARRHYTHMIC MEDICATIONS: LIDOCAINE AND AMIODARONE

Administration of antiarrhythmic medications should never delay administration of shocks to a patient with VF. However, after an unsuccessful attempt at electrical defibrillation, medications to increase the effectiveness of defibrillation should be considered. Epinephrine is the current first-line medication for both pediatric and adult patients in VF. If epinephrine and a subsequent repeat attempt to defibrillate are unsuccessful, lidocaine or amiodarone should be considered.

Lidocaine traditionally has been recommended for shock-resistant VF in adults and children. However, only amiodarone improved survival to hospital admission in the setting of shock-resistant VF compared with placebo.[261] In another study of shock-resistant out-of-hospital VF, patients receiving amiodarone had a higher rate of survival to hospital admission than patients receiving lidocaine.[262] Neither study included children. Because there is moderate experience with amiodarone use as an antiarrhythmic agent in children and because of the adult studies, it is rational to use amiodarone similarly in children with shock-resistant VF/VT.

The recommended dosage is 5 mg/kg by rapid IV bolus. There are no published comparisons of antiarrhythmic medications for pediatric refractory VF. Although extrapolation of adult data and electrophysiologic mechanistic information suggest that amiodarone may be preferable for pediatric shock-resistant VF, the optimal choice is not clear.

PEDIATRIC AUTOMATED EXTERNAL DEFIBRILLATORS

Automated external defibrillators (AEDs) have improved adult survival from VF.[263,264] AEDs are recommended for use in children 8 years or older with cardiac arrest.[157,265] The available data suggest that some AEDs can accurately diagnose VF in children of all ages, but many AEDs are limited because the defibrillation pads and energy dosage are geared for adults. Adapters having smaller defibrillation pads that dampen the amount of energy delivered have been developed as attachments to adult AEDs, allowing their use in children. However, it is important that the AED diagnostic algorithm is sensitive and specific for pediatric VF and VT. The diagnostic algorithms from several AED manufacturers have been tested for such sensitivity and specificity and therefore can be reasonably used in younger children.

WHEN SHOULD CARDIOPULMONARY RESUSCITATION BE DISCONTINUED?

Several factors determine the likelihood of survival after cardiac arrest including the mechanism of the arrest (e.g., traumatic, asphyxial, progression from circulatory shock), location (e.g., in-hospital or out-of-hospital), response (i.e., witnessed or unwitnessed, with or without bystander CPR), underlying pathophysiology (i.e. cardiomyopathy, congenital defect, drug toxicity or metabolic derangement), and the potential reversibility of underlying diseases. These factors should all be considered before deciding to terminate resuscitative efforts. Continuation of CPR has been traditionally considered futile beyond 15 minutes of CPR or when more than 2 doses of epinephrine are needed.[266] Presumably in part because of improvements in CPR quality and post-resuscitation care, improved outcomes from in-hospital CPR efforts beyond 15 minutes or 2 doses of epinephrine are increasingly the norm.[83,86] The potential for excellent outcomes despite prolonged CPR has been highlighted by the ECPR data noted above.[267-271] Conversely, the decision to discontinue CPR prematurely is final and cannot be rescinded. In the first decade of the 21st century, there is no simple answer to the important clinical question: when should CPR be discontinued?

Respiratory System

STRUCTURAL AND FUNCTIONAL DEVELOPMENT: AGE-DEPENDENT VARIABLES

Airways and Alveoli

The lungs appear in the fourth to eighth weeks of gestation. At this time, the lung buds divide into the mainstem bronchi; by 6 weeks all subsegmental bronchi are present; and by 16 weeks, the number of airway generations is similar to that of adults. When airway development is complete, the terminal airways remodel and multiply to form a cluster of large saccules, or alveolar precursors, that can support gas exchange. True alveoli appear before and after birth, and the respiratory saccules are thin and septate during postnatal growth.

At birth, children have approximately 24 million alveoli; by 8 years of age, the number has increased to 300 million (Table 79.5). After that, further lung growth is primarily the result of increased alveolar size. There is less elastic tissue in the neonatal lung than in the lungs of adults, and the elastin extends only to the alveolar duct. By 18 years of age, elastin extends to the alveolus and is at its maximum. It then slowly decreases over the next 5 decades. Lung compliance is integrally related to the amount of elastin; hence, compliance peaks in adolescence. It is lower in the very young and the very old. Airways close in the tidal volume range until about 5 years of age.

Pulmonary Circulation

The main axial arteries of the lungs are present at 14 weeks' gestation. By 20 weeks' gestation, the pattern of branching is similar to that of adults, and collateral supernumerary vessels are present. During fetal life, additional arteries develop to accompany the respiratory airways and saccules. Bronchial arteries appear between the 9th and 12th weeks of gestation. The arterial wall develops a fine elastic lamina by 12 weeks' gestation, and muscle cells are present as early as 14 weeks of gestation. By 19 weeks, the elastic tissue extends to the seventh generation of arterial branching, and muscularization extends distally. In the fetus, muscularization of the arteries ends at a more proximal level than in children and adults. The muscularized arteries have thicker walls than arteries of similar size in adults. The pulmonary arteries are actively constricted until the latter part of gestation. In the fetal lamb, pulmonary blood flow is only 3.5% of the combined ventricular output at 0.4 to 0.7 of gestation and is just 7% near term. Immediately after birth, pulmonary blood flow increases to near adult levels. Development of the pulmonary venous system mirrors that of the arterial system. The pulmonary arteries continue to develop after birth; new artery formation follows airway branching up to about 19 months of age, and supernumerary arteries continue to grow until 8 years of age. As alveolar size increases, the acinar branching pattern becomes more extensive and complex. The arterial structure also changes as preexisting arteries increase in size; the thickness of the muscular arteries decreases to adult levels during the first year of life.

Biochemical Development

By 24 weeks of gestation, the alveolar cuboidal epithelium flattens, and type I pneumocytes become the lining and supporting cells for the alveoli. The larger type II cells, which manufacture and store surfactant, also develop at this time. Surfactant initially appears at 23 to 24 weeks' gestation in humans and increases in concentration during the last 10 weeks of gestational life.[68] Surfactant is released into the alveoli at about 36 weeks' gestation, thus making normal extrauterine life possible.

TABLE 79.5 Age-dependent Respiratory Variables: Normal Values

	Newborn	6 months	12 months	3 years	5 years	12 years	Adult
Respiratory rate (breaths/min)	50 ± 10	30 ± 5	24 ± 6	24 ± 6	23 ± 5	18 ± 5	12 ± 3
Tidal volume (mL)	21	45	78	112	270	480	575
Minute ventilation (L/min)	1.05	1.35	1.78	2.46	5.5	6.2	6.4
Alveolar ventilation (mL/min)	385	—	1245	1760	1800	3000	3100
Dead space–tidal volume ratio	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3
Oxygen consumption (mL/kg/min)	6 ± 1.0	5 ± 0.9	5.2 ± 0.9	—	6.0 ± 1.1	3.3 ± 0.6	3.4 ± 0.6
Vital capacity (mL)	120	—	—	870	1160	3100	4000
Functional residual capacity (mL)	80	—	—	490	680	1970	3000
Total lung capacity (mL)	160	—	—	1100	1500	4000	6000
Closing volume as percentage of vital capacity	—	—	—	—	20	8	4
Number of alveoli (saccules) $\times 10^6$	30	112	129	257	280	—	300
Specific compliance: CL/FRC (mL/cm H_2O/L)	0.04	0.038	—	—	0.06	—	0.05
Specific conductance of small airways (mL/s/cm H_2O/g)	0.02	—	3.1	1.7	0.12	8.2	13.4
Hematocrit	55 ± 7	37 ± 3	35 ± 2.5	40 ± 3	40 ± 2	42 ± 2	43-48
pH_a	7.30 ± 7.40	—	7.35-7.45	—	—	—	7.35-7.45
$Paco_2$ (mm Hg)	30-35	—	30-40	—	—	—	30-40
Pao_2 (mm Hg)	60-90	—	80-100	—	—	—	80-100

From O'Rourke PP, Crone RK. The respiratory system. In: Gregory G, ed. *Pediatric Anesthesia*. 2nd ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1989;63.

Respiratory Transition: Placenta to Lung

By approximately 24 weeks' gestation, the lungs are capable of extrauterine gas exchange. However, several important circulatory and mechanical changes must occur immediately after birth for pulmonary gas exchange to be adequate. Ventilation begins to match perfusion within the first hours of life. Initially, there is right-to-left intrapulmonary shunting through atelectatic areas of the lung, as well as left-to-right shunting through the ductus arteriosus and some right-to-left shunting through the foramen ovale. The resultant PaO_2 of 50 to 70 mm Hg indicates a right-to-left shunt that is three times that of normal adults. Transition from fetal to neonatal respiration and circulation is dynamic. Postnatally, the pulmonary vascular bed remains constricted if it is exposed to acidosis, cold, or hypoxia. If pulmonary artery constriction occurs, right-to-left shunting of desaturated blood through the foramen ovale and ductus arteriosus increases and consequently reduces pulmonary blood flow. Maintenance of this active pulmonary vasoconstriction is called persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn or persistent fetal circulation.

Mechanics of Breathing

For ventilation of the lungs, the respiratory muscles must overcome the lung's static-elastic and dynamic-resistive forces. Changes in these opposing forces during postnatal development affect lung volume, the pattern of respiration, and the work of breathing.

Lung Compliance Versus Age

Lung compliance changes with age because of the changing alveolar structure, amount of elastin, and amount of surfactant. At birth, compliance is low because alveolar precursors have thick walls and decreased amounts of elastin. A deficiency of surfactant (e.g., hyaline membrane disease) further decreases lung compliance. The improved lung compliance occurring over the first years of life is the result of continued development of alveoli and elastin.

Chest Wall

The chest wall of infants is very compliant because their ribs are cartilaginous. Because of the box-like configuration of an infant thorax, there is less elastic recoil than there is with the dorsoventrally flattened thoracic cage of adults. Adults have a high proportion of slow-twitch, high-oxidative, fatigue-resistant fibers in their diaphragm and intercostal muscles. Whereas adults have 65% of these fibers in the intercostal muscles and 60% in the diaphragmatic muscles, neonates have only 19% to 46% of these fibers in their intercostal muscles and 10% to 25% in the diaphragm.[70] Consequently, infants are more vulnerable to muscle fatigue and decreased stability of the chest wall. The net effect of the compliant chest wall and the poorly compliant lungs is alveolar collapse and lower resting lung volume (FRC). Despite this tendency for lung collapse, a child maintains a large dynamic FRC via rapid RRs, laryngeal breaking, and stabilization of the chest wall with increased intercostal tone during exhalation.

Upper Airway

The upper airways of children and adults have several anatomic differences that affect their ability to maintain a patent airway. The more anterior and cephalad position of the larynx in children makes the "sniffing position" ideal for mask ventilation and endotracheal intubation. Extreme neck extension can actually obstruct the airway. The narrowest part of the adult airway is the vocal cords. Up to the age of 5 years, the narrowest portion of a child's airway is at the cricoid cartilage, because the posterior larynx is positioned more cephalad than the anterior larynx, which causes the cricoid ring to be an ellipse rather than a circle. By 5 years of age, the posterior larynx has descended to the adult level.[272] An ETT that passes easily through the vocal cords of a young child may cause ischemic damage to the distal airway. The cricoid narrowing and very pliant tracheal cartilage provide an adequate seal around an uncuffed ETT. Children younger than 5 years rarely require a cuffed ETT, although some practitioners use cuffed tubes regularly in these patients.[273]

Closing Capacity

The elastic properties of the lung closely correlate with closing capacity. Closing volume is the lung volume at which the terminal airways close and gas is trapped behind the closed airways. Large closing volumes increase dead space ventilation, which leads to atelectasis and right-to-left shunting of blood. Elastic tissues help keep the airways open, so the greater the elastic stroma in the small airways, the lower the lung volume required to close small, noncartilaginous airways. Closing volume is small in late adolescence and relatively large in the elderly and the very young. Children overcome the complications of large closing volumes and secondary atelectasis by breathing rapidly, by constant activity, and by crying. Closing volume becomes a significant problem in infants who are inactive, sedated, or anesthetized.

Resistive Forces

Neonates have small airways with high resistance or low conductance (conductance = 1/resistance). The diameter of the small airways does not significantly increase until about 5 years of age; hence, young children have elevated airway resistance at baseline and are particularly vulnerable to diseases that cause further narrowing of the airways (i.e., smooth muscle constriction, airway edema/inflammation). The normal high airway resistance of neonates and young children helps maintain FRC.

Control of Breathing

The newborn's respiratory control is unique. Hypoxia initially increases ventilation for a short time. This increase is followed by a sustained decrease in ventilation.[77] The response is more exaggerated in preterm neonates. In full-term infants, it disappears after several weeks. Periodic breathing is also more common in infants, particularly preterm infants, and is probably due to inadequate development of the medullary respiratory centers.

Oxygen Transport: Oxygen Loading and Unloading

Fetal hemoglobin has low levels of 2,3-diphosphoglycerate and an oxygen half-saturation pressure of hemoglobin (P_{50}) of 18 mm Hg, which is much lower than the 27 mm Hg in adults. This lower P_{50} allows the fetus to load more oxygen at low placental oxygen tension, but it makes unloading oxygen in tissues more difficult. Three to 6 months after birth, fetal hemoglobin has been replaced with adult hemoglobin. The increased oxygen content of fetal hemoglobin and the increased fetal hemoglobin concentration are advantageous to the fetus because it allows an oxygen content of 20 mL of oxygen/100 mL of blood to be delivered to the brain and heart. This is the same oxygen content that adults have when breathing room air. The oxygen concentration of neonates at birth is 6 to 8 mL/kg/min. It decreases to 5 to 6 mL/kg/min over the first year of life. The decreased ventilation-perfusion ratio, the decreased P^{63} of fetal hemoglobin, and the progressive anemia characteristic of infants can make it difficult to deliver adequate oxygen during the first few months of life. Infants compensate by having a cardiac output of approximately 250 mL/kg/min for the first 4 to 5 months of life.

RESPIRATORY FAILURE

Respiratory failure is the inability of the lungs to adequately oxygenate and remove CO_2 from pulmonary arterial blood. There are many causes of respiratory failure, including a low environmental oxygen concentration, parenchymal lung disease, and pulmonary vascular disease. A complete history of the severity and chronicity of the respiratory problem helps formulate a differential diagnosis and an approach to treatment. Specific data should include a history of prematurity, previous airway instrumentation, previous mechanical ventilation, nonpulmonary organ dysfunction, and a family history of respiratory disease. A detailed feeding history and up-to-date growth chart may provide valuable information because growth failure may increase the need for oxygen. Usually, 1% to 2% of the total oxygen consumed is used for breathing. During respiratory illnesses, as much as 50% of the total oxygen consumption may be used for breathing. Infants and children with respiratory failure often have intercostal and suprasternal retractions, signs that the work of breathing and oxygen consumption are increased. Patients grunt during expiration in an attempt to maintain FRC. Most infants and children have tachypnea, which also helps maintain FRC by decreasing the time for exhalation. Less energy is required to breath rapidly and shallowly than to take deep breaths. Infants with respiratory failure often have cyanotic lips, skin, and mucous membranes. However, it is often difficult to recognize skin color changes unless the PaO_2 is below 70 mm Hg. Symmetry of chest movement should be noted. Differences in movement may indicate pneumothorax or blockage of a bronchus. The small thoracic volume allows easy transmission of breath sounds from one side to the other. Breath sound may be normal, even when pneumothorax is present. Abdominal distention can dramatically impede breathing in infants and young children.

MONITORING OF RESPIRATORY FUNCTION

An arterial blood gas is considered the gold standard to measure oxygenation, as PaO_2 is measured directly from blood. The percent oxygen saturation of hemoglobin can be measured directly or calculated from PaO_2, pH, $PaCO_2$, and temperature. Venous and capillary blood gases do not predict PaO_2. Use of arterial lines has decreased in pediatric ICUs over time.[274] Pulse oximeters are ubiquitous. Pulse oximeters can provide continuous estimations of SaO_2 when the saturation is less than 97%. This is due to the shape of the oxygen dissociation curve. Pulse oximeters pass at least two wavelengths of light through the patient and the change in the absorbance of light is compared with an algorithm that produces the oxygen saturation. In the saturation range of 91 to 97%, pulse oximeters have been shown to read higher than measured arterial saturations by approximately 1%.[275] However, in the saturation range of 76% to 90%, pulse oximeters read higher than measured arterial saturations by approximately 5% with very wide confidence intervals.[275] Pulse oximeters may also have poorer performance when there is decreased perfusion to the extremity with the sensor. Lastly, most pulse oximeters have difficulty detecting abnormal forms of hemoglobin, such as methemoglobin or carboxyhemoglobin, and will produce erroneous results in their presence.

Umbilical artery cannulation is common in neonates, so those caring for such children can obtain arterial blood and continuously measure arterial blood pressure. These catheters are relatively simple to insert and reasonably easy to maintain.[276-278] The tip of the catheter ideally should be at or just above the level of the aortic bifurcation and below the level of the renal arteries (L2). Once the child's condition is stable, a peripheral artery catheter should be inserted and the umbilical artery catheter should be removed. All intraarterial catheters have the potential to cause distal thromboembolic disease. Care must be taken to flush arterial catheters gently to prevent cerebral or cardiac emboli. With proper insertion and maintenance, serious complications of arterial lines are rare. They have been shown to be relatively safe for short term use.[279] Although arteries that are cannulated for a long time may develop thrombosis in a small study by Ergaz et al. all of the infants that developed thrombosis had spontaneous resolution with sequela.[280]

$PaCO_2$ is used as a measure of ventilation. An arterial blood gas may be the gold standard, $PaCO_2$ obtained from capillary or venous blood gases can provide valuable information. CO_2values obtained from capnography or transcutaneous CO_2(TCOM) can provide continuous information in a manner similar to pulse oximeters.[281] Capnographs produce a waveform displaying exhaled CO_2that can be either time-based or volumetric. Time-based capnography is much more common. Capnographs can either be an aspirating or nonaspirating system. An aspirating system takes gas from the ventilator circuit and measure the CO_2. A nonaspirating system has an exhalation chamber placed in line with the ventilator circuit. The system uses an infrared light source and detector which measures the exhaled CO_2. There is a great amount of information that can come from capnography, including the end-tidal CO_2($ETCO_2$) value, RR, dead space calculations, cardiac output, and detection of obstruction of the airways.

For time-based capnography, the plateau of the slope will always be lower than $PaCO_2$. Elevations in $ETCO_2$ must be investigated as they signal a change in ventilation. For individuals with healthy lungs, this $ETCO_2$ to $PaCO_2$ gradient is usually 2 to 5 mm Hg. The gradient increases with increased dead space, abnormalities in the pulmonary vasculature, decreased cardiac output, and pulmonary over distension. $ETCO_2$ from capnography can be used clinically to calculate the approximate alveolar dead space by the alveolar dead space fraction (AVDSf). $AVDSf = (PaCO_2 - PETCO_2)/PaCO_2$. AVDSf is a reasonable indicator of alveolar dead space[282] and has been shown in several pediatric patients with acute hypoxemic respiratory failure to be associated with mortality.[283-285] Other valuable information is available from the waveform produced by time-based capnography. As an example, a rising upslope to the exhalation phase can indicate obstructive airways disease. Time-based capnography is more accurate with slower RRs and when there is a minimal leak around the ETT.

Volumetric capnography traces the CO_2 concentration against the exhaled volume and is appearing as a feature on some ventilators. Free-standing monitors that provide the same measure are also available. Volumetric capnography provides direct information for dead space calculations. Clinically volumetric capnography is helpful in setting the optimal PEEP. In this way, PEEP can be titrated to balance improved oxygenation through alveolar recruitment and decreased dead space by not causing overdistension. Volumetric capnography can also be used to demonstrate a response to bronchodilator therapy.

In circumstances such as high frequency ventilation (HFV), the use of transcutaneous CO_2monitoring (TCOM) provides a continuous measure of ventilation. The TCOM module heats the skin underneath a small sensor. There is increased diffusion of CO_2across the skin as the capillary bed dilates from the heat. The diffused $CO_2$is then measured. When the TCOM is first set up, it should be calibrated against a capillary or arterial blood gas. There can be drift of calibration over time, but newer modules have improved stability. A recent study by Bhalla et al. demonstrated that transcutaneous CO_2monitoring provides an acceptable estimate of $PaCO_2$, even with low cardiac output or increased subcutaneous tissue.[281] In their study, it did not perform well in patients with cyanotic heart disease.

The effort of breathing with or without a ventilator can be obtained by the objective measurement value of the pressure-rate-product (PRP). The pressure measure by a balloon-tipped catheter placed into the distal third of the esophagus can be used as a surrogate for pleural pressure. The PRP is the change in esophageal pressure (Pes) multiplied by the RR. PRP = Pes × RR. The PRP has been used as an objective measure of effort of breathing in studies: before and after extubation,[286,287] with PEEP and obstructed airways disease,[277] evaluating increasing inspiratory load;[278] pressure-rate product and phase angle as measures of acute inspiratory upper airway obstruction in rhesus monkeys, evaluating effectiveness of high-flow nasal cannula;[288,289] and evaluating effectiveness of noninvasive ventilation (NIV) in infants.[290] Some ventilators can measure esophageal pressure, or it can be obtained with separate devices. We have found that the accuracy of PRP measurements is sensitive to the volume of air used to fill the esophageal catheter.[291] In addition to measuring the PRP, the esophageal pressure is very important in measuring the pressure across the lungs or the transpulmonary pressures. Many adult studies are appearing demonstrating the benefits of titrating ventilator settings to trans-pulmonary pressure for patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS).[292-294] The transpulmonary pressure may have particular benefit in patients who are obese and requiring mechanical ventilation for respiratory failure,[295-298] where the decreased compliance of the chest wall may cause practitioners to limit ventilator pressures. For adult medicine, the field of esophageal pressure monitoring and the titration of mechanical ventilation to transpulmonary pressure has recently grown significantly. The need for and goals of this type of monitoring can be best summarized in a few review articles,[299,300] including one from the PleUral pressure working Group (PLUG-Acute Respiratory Failure section of the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine).[301]

The phase of breathing or the synchrony between movement of the abdomen and the chest wall can be measured with respiratory inductance plethysmography (RIP).[302] This noninvasive measure uses elastic bands placed around the abdomen and chest. Movement of the abdomen and chest changes the inductance of a small wire in the bands. Movement of the abdomen relative to the chest can be presented graphically or measured as the phase angle. When there is obstruction to breathing, such as with upper airway obstruction, there is a lag in the movement of the abdomen and chest wall, which is identified as an increasing phase angle. The phase angle obtained by RIP is an objective measure of the degree of upper airway obstruction[278,302,303] and can be used to evaluate the effectiveness of therapy.[304-306] This is a valuable tool for research in the area of causes and treatment of upper airway obstruction, as there is great interobserver variability in the clinician's assessment of this process.[307] RIP can easily be measured with free-standing devices and may have an increased role in future pediatric studies.

A great deal of information on the respiratory effort of patients receiving mechanical ventilation can be obtained from respiratory spirometry. Spirometry can display flow-volume loops, pressure-volume loops, in addition to graphs of flow-time, pressure-time, and volume-time. The characteristic shape of some respiratory flow-volume loops can help with the diagnosis of various respiratory diseases. There is a classic scooped out appearance to the exhalation portion of a flow-volume curve with obstructive lung disease. The pressure-volume loops obtained on the ventilator can be used to increase PEEP to keep lung tissue recruited above an area of potential atelectasis. This can be seen graphically as a lower inflection point on the inspiratory curve. This is where the curve moves from a flat area to an area of maximal compliance where there is the greatest change in volume for a given change in pressure. There is also an upper inflection point on pressure volume loops where overdistension of the lungs can be identified if the inspiratory pressure or volume is too great. The pressure-volume curve with over-distension looks like a bird's beak and ventilator settings should be reduced.

There are multiple noninvasive techniques that can provide additional information on the patient's respiratory status. Radiologic evaluation of the nasopharynx, neck, and thorax can provide meaningful information regarding the cause and severity of the respiratory dysfunction. Fluoroscopy can be used to evaluate the airways and movement of the diaphragm in an uncooperative child. Electrical impedance tomography (EIT) is a noninvasive technique that does not use ionizing radiation that can provide information on regional lung ventilation. The technique uses electrodes placed on the chest wall to measure the electrical conductivity and impedance of the lung to form a tomographic image. The images are used to determine which areas of the lungs have atelectasis, normal ventilation, or overdistension. At the moment, there is much more adult data showing uses of and management strategies with EIT,[308-311] as compared with pediatrics.[312-314] However, as more companies produce the machines and more adult manuscripts are published, we expect there will be an increased use of EIT in pediatric mechanical ventilation monitoring. Finally, there is a rapid growth of point of care ultrasound use in pediatrics. This has multiple benefits for the patient, as it can be provided at the bedside and does not use ionizing radiation. Lung ultrasound offers the ability to identify pneumothorax, alveolar consolidation, pneumonia, atelectasis, pulmonary edema, pleural effusions, and diaphragm movements and thickness. There are an increasing number of pediatric manuscripts identifying the benefits of lung ultrasound.[315-318] In the near future, ultrasound diaphragm thickness and how it changes over time may be used to guide mechanical ventilation strategies and help predict extubation success.[319-322]

RESPIRATORY FAILURE

The cause of respiratory failure depends to some degree on the age of the patient. Newborn respiratory failure is often the result of congenital anomalies and immaturity of the lungs and their blood vessels. Congenital anomalies can include airway malformations, dysgenesis or malfunction of the lung or nonpulmonary organs, and abnormalities of the pulmonary vessels. Lesions of immaturity include apnea of prematurity, hyaline membrane disease, and abnormalities of surfactant production and secretion. During the perinatal period, neonates are subject to infections and stress. Persistent pulmonary hypertension can complicate neonatal pulmonary and nonpulmonary problems. These and other important causes of respiratory failure in the newborn are listed in Table 79.6. A wide variety of disorders cause respiratory failure in older children (Box 79.3). Regardless of the specific cause, respiratory failure can be categorized as hypoventilation syndromes in patients with normal lungs, intrinsic alveolar and interstitial disease, and obstructive airway disease.

HYPOVENTILATION SYNDROMES IN CHILDREN WITH NORMAL LUNGS

Causes of hypoventilation include neuromuscular disease, central hypoventilation, and structural/anatomic impairment of lung expansion (i.e., upper airway obstruction,

TABLE 79.6 Causes of Neonatal Respiratory Distress

Location	Congenital Abnormalities	Developmental Immaturity	Specific Neonatal Stress
Impaired control of ventilation	Central nervous system dysgenesis Ondine's curse	Apnea of prematurity Intracranial hemorrhage	Drug intoxication (note maternal drugs) Sepsis Central nervous system infection Seizures
Neuromuscular disorders	Congenital myopathies		High cervical cord injuries
Structural impairment	Thoracic deformities Lung hypoplasia Diaphragmatic hernia Potter syndrome Abdominal malfunction Gastroschisis Omphalocele		Severe abdominal distention Pneumothorax or other leak
Airway obstruction	Choanal atresia		Massive meconium aspiration
Upper airway	Pierre Robin syndrome Laryngeal web/cleft Congenital tracheal/laryngeal stenosis Recurrent laryngeal palsy Hemangioma Lymphangioma		Vocal cord paralysis is secondary to myelodysplasia
Lower airway	Tracheoesophageal fistula Lobar emphysema		Meconium/blood aspiration
Alveolar disorders		Respiratory distress syndrome	Bronchopulmonary dysplasia

massive abdominal distention). These clinical conditions are characterized by inadequate lung expansion, secondary atelectasis, intrapulmonary right-to-left shunting, and systemic hypoxia. Atelectasis and the secondary reduction in FRC increase the work of breathing. The child's response to the increased work of breathing and lower lung volumes is to breathe faster with a smaller tidal volume. This pattern of breathing eventually increases the amount of atelectasis and shunting. As a result, children with intrinsically normal lungs and hypoventilation syndromes exhibit tachypnea, small tidal volumes, increased work of breathing, and cyanosis. Chest radiographs reveal small lung volumes and miliary or lobar atelectasis. Positive-pressure ventilation and PEEP quickly reverse the pathologic processes.

Primary Pulmonary Alveolar or Interstitial Disorders

Intrinsic lung disease involving the alveoli or pulmonary interstitium decreases lung compliance and increases airway closure, both of which cause atelectasis and increase the work of breathing. Edema or inflammation of the alveoli or fibrosis of the interstitium decreases lung compliance. The stiffer lung requires a greater negative intrapleural pressure for air movement, thereby increasing the work of breathing and the risk for pneumothorax.

Obstructive Airway Disease

Airway obstruction can be extrinsic or intrinsic. Intrinsic small airway obstruction commonly occurs with bronchiolitis, bronchopneumonia, asthma, and bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD). Airway obstruction decreases conductance and increases airway resistance and the work of breathing. Partial obstruction impedes expiration more than inspiration and causes gas trapping or regional emphysema. Complete airway obstruction results in atelectasis and right-to-left shunting of blood within the lung. Patients with disease of the small airways usually have a mixture of total and partial airway obstruction and inhomogeneous collapse and overdistention of the lung. The areas of collapse cause intrapulmonary right-to-left shunting of blood, and the overdistended areas increase the amount of dead space. If the entire lung is overdistended, compliance is decreased and the work of breathing is increased. The clinical and radiographic picture varies with the different degrees of collapse and overdistention of the lung. In summary, all causes of respiratory failure share similar pathophysiology: atelectasis and decreased FRC with intrapulmonary right-to-left shunting of blood or alveolar overdistention with increased dead space and decreased CO_2 elimination, or both. The increased work of breathing associated with all forms of respiratory dysfunction can cause fatigue and a breathing pattern that further complicates the initial process. It may also lead to apnea, hypoxia, and cardiac arrest in young children if the increased work of breathing is not quickly detected and treated.

RESPIRATORY CARE

A patient's FiO_2 can be increased by a number of means including nasal cannula or mask. The FiO_2 can be increased up to approximately 40% with nasal cannula oxygen at 5 L flow/min. However, this high rate of flow can become uncomfortable. As room air is entrained around the cannula during inspiration the FiO_2 cannot be increased further with nasal cannula. It should be noted that the size of the patient correlates with the inspiratory volume with each breath. The larger the patient, the greater inspiratory volume is relative to flow from the cannula and the greater volume of room air that is entrained. In turn, the smaller a patient the less room air is entrained and there may be a greater impact on FiO_2.

BOX 79.3 Causes of Respiratory Failure in Children

1. Impaired control of ventilation
    - Head trauma
    - Intracranial hemorrhage
    - Increase intracranial pressure secondary to tumor, edema, hydrocephalus, Reye syndrome
    - Central nervous system infections
    - Drug intoxication
    - Status epilepticus
2. Neuromuscular disorders
    - High cervical cord injury
    - Poliomyelitis
    - Guillain-Barré syndrome
    - Neurodegenerative disease (e.g., Werdnig-Hoffman syndrome)
    - Muscular dystrophies and myopathies
    - Myasthenia gravis
    - Botulism
    - Tetanus
    - Phrenic nerve injury
3. Structural impairment
    - Severe kyphoscoliosis
    - Flail chest
    - Large intrathoracic tumor
    - Pneumothorax or pneumomediastinum
    - Large pleural effusion, hemothorax, empyema
    - Severe abdominal distention
    - Severe obesity (pickwickian syndrome)
4. Airway obstruction
    - Upper airway
    - Congenital anomalies
    - Tumor, intrinsic or extrinsic
    - Epiglottitis
    - Croup (laryngotracheobronchitis)
    - Foreign body
    - Postintubation edema, granulation tissue, or scarring
    - Vocal cord paralysis
    - Burns
    - Vascular ring
    - Lower airway
    - Asthma
    - Bronchiolitis
    - Foreign body
    - Lobar emphysema
    - Cystic fibrosis
5. Alveolar disorders, pneumonia
    - Infectious: bacteria, virus, fungus, *Pneumocystis* species
    - Chemical: aspiration, hydrocarbon, smoke inhalation
    - Pulmonary edema: cardiogenic, near-drowning, capillary leak syndrome
6. Massive atelectasis
7. Oxygen toxicity
8. Pulmonary confusion
9. Pulmonary hemorrhage

The FiO_2 can be increased further with a properly fitted face mask. The open holes of a venture or simple face mask allow for greater entrainment of room air as compared with a non-rebreather face mask that has no holes. A FiO_2 approaching 1.0 can be obtained with a non-rebreather face mask with an oxygen reservoir and one-way valve. Patients with respiratory distress while on the pediatric ward may temporarily require a non-rebreather mask at high flows. If there is no significant improvement to immediate interventions, arrangements should be made to transfer the patient to the PICU. Non-rebreathing mask systems can be humidified for comfort, but they don't provide any positive pressure to the airways.

High flow humidified nasal cannula (HFHNC) oxygen can provide a higher FiO_2 and is more easily tolerated as compared with standard nasal cannula. The gas in HFHNC is heated to body temperature and near completely humidified with water vapor. HFHNC can be delivered with flow rates in pediatrics up to 2 L/kg/min. HFHNC has been shown in a number of studies to decrease the effort of breathing in critically ill children.[323-325] HFHNC has been used frequently to support patients with bronchiolitis.[324-328] Weiler et al. demonstrated that the lowest effort of breathing for toddlers with bronchiolitis was at greater than 1.5 L/kg/min of flow.[324] It is unclear whether the significant benefits of HFHNC come from washing out carbon dioxide from the airways,[329,330] from the generation of positive pressure,[331] or from increases in end expiratory lung volumes.[332] The potential for complications exists with higher gas flow rates. Air leak syndrome was reported in three patients by Hegde et al.[333] As the use of HFHNC increases, other problems may be identified. Given that the amount of FiO_2 delivered approaches 1.0, HFHNC outside of an ED or ICU setting should be used with caution. The high degree of respiratory support provided can mask a significant degree of respiratory distress. However, with appropriate monitoring and protocols, it is possible to provide HFHNC on a general ward to specific populations such as stable patients with bronchiolitis. Franklin et al.[326] recently published a study of children younger than 12 months of age with bronchiolitis. The use of HFHNC significantly reduced the risk of escalation of care (12%) as compared with regular nasal cannula (23%).

NIV can be supplied with continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) or bilevel positive airway pressure (BiPAP). This is typically delivered with a tight fitting nasal or face mask that allows for the development of positive airway pressure. Most modern ventilators can be set to deliver this therapy, but specific free-standing BiPAP machines are more often used. BiPAP therapy is best for short-term use and in patients who have the ability to cough and protect their airway. It is not an absolute that the patient initiates every breath as a back-up rate can be set. However, if the patient is completely reliant on the rate set on the machine, intubation should be considered. Other indications for conversion from BiPAP to endotracheal intubation include pressure related tissue breakdown on the face from constantly wearing the mask and the need to initiate enteral feedings, as patients are typically NPO on BiPAP, increasing pressure settings on the BiPAP machine.

CPAP reduces the patient's work of breathing by providing airway pressure, reducing atelectasis, decreasing dead space, and improving the balance of ventilation to perfusion. An initial CPAP pressure is typically 4 to 6 mm Hg and is then increased as needed and as the patient tolerates the therapy. Given that the feeling of positive airway pressure is a bit foreign, starting with lower pressures and increasing gives the patient a chance to adapt. We typically start patients on CPAP therapy for several minutes even if they will ultimately receive BiPAP. For BiPAP, the expiratory pressure is also initially at 4 to 6 mm Hg and the inspiratory pressure is set at 4 to 6 mm Hg above that. The inspiratory and expiratory pressures are adjusted, as well as the rise time to inspiratory flow. All of these changes can help the patients tolerate therapy. Given the tight seal, a FiO_2 of 1.0 can be delivered. With use of the full face mask, patients are at risk for aspiration if they vomit. BiPAP therapy is being used in status asthmaticus,[334,335] and it may provide a more effective means of delivering aerosolized medication. The use of BiPAP therapy for this indication may increase over time as it is being recommended in current guidelines.[336,337] BiPAP can also be used as an ongoing therapy for chronic respiratory failure for such things as central hypoventilation or restrictive lung disease. These patients may be able to receive their therapy at home and are typically followed by the hospital's pulmonary service.

The size of ETT required should be selected carefully. One formula that estimates the appropriately sized tube for children older than 2 years is (age + 16)/4. This formula provides the internal diameter of the appropriately sized ETT. The correct size should have a slight air leak when a positive pressure of 20 to 30 cm H_2O is applied. Serious lifelong laryngeal and subglottic damage can result from using inappropriately large ETTs, particularly in children with inflammatory lesions of the upper airway such as laryngotracheobronchitis. Because of the more flexible tracheal cartilage and the relative subglottic narrowing of children, uncuffed ETTs generally provide an adequate seal in those younger than 5 years. However, if the patient has lung disease that requires high ventilation pressure, a cuffed tube is more appropriate. Small cuffed ETTs are frequently used in the ICU in younger patients,[338] but care should be taken to ensure that there is a small leak of air at 25 to 30 cm H_2O. Cuffed tubes will usually eliminate the air leak around an ETT, but overinflation of the cuff may occlude venous flow and injure the airway. There are presently no data on the long-term safety of using cuffed ETTs in young children. However, there has been work by Khemani et al.[339] that showed risk factors associated with the development of postextubation subglottic upper airway obstruction included low cuff leak volume or high preextubation leak pressure. We should take care to make sure that ETT cuffs are appropriately inflated.

With endotracheal intubation, it is important to correctly position the ETT. If correctly positioned, chest movements should be symmetric, and breath sounds should be equal when auscultated in the axillae. An electronic or colorimetric CO_2detection system helps confirm whether the ETT is in the trachea or the esophagus.[340] If the double lines on the ETT are at the level of the vocal cords, the ETT is usually in the correct position. Another way to correctly position the ETT is to advance it into the right mainstem bronchus and listen for breath sounds in the left axilla. Breath sounds will be diminished. Withdraw the ETT slowly. When breath sounds are heard on the left, pull the tube out an additional 1 to 2 cm, depending on the size of the child. If the breath sounds are equal, fix the tube in place. The tip of the ETT should be midway between the vocal cords and the carina on the chest radiograph. In small infants, the distance between the carina and the vocal cords is very short. It is easy to inadvertently place the ETT in the right mainstem bronchus in small infants because of this short distance. Flexion of the head moves the ETT into the airway. Extension moves it toward the vocal cords. Turning the head to the side may obstruct the tip of the ETT if it comes in contact with the tracheal wall, which may cause CO_2retention or hypoxemia, or both (unpublished data). It is common to leave a child's trachea intubated for 2 weeks or longer before performing a tracheostomy. This is possible with proper humidification of the inspired gases, improved endotracheal suctioning and monitoring (SaO_2), and excellent nursing care. Everyone caring for the child must be constantly alert to the possibility that the ETT will become obstructed by secretions or that accidental extubation or mainstem bronchus intubation will occur. Tracheostomy is indicated when children require a long-term artificial airway for mechanical ventilation, for endotracheal suctioning, or to bypass an upper airway obstruction. Accidental dislodgement of the tracheostomy tube before the tract is well healed can be life threatening. Reinsertion of a tracheostomy tube during the first 72 hours after insertion can be very difficult and can create false passages that can make it impossible to ventilate the lungs or can cause pneumothorax.

Intubation and mechanical ventilation can provide significant elevations in airway pressure as compared with NIV and a FiO_2 of 1.0. There can be regional variation to the mode of mechanical ventilation chosen, but there is likely a greater use of pressure controlled ventilation rather than volume controlled ventilation in pediatric ICUs. However, as there are no studies looking at outcomes with mode of ventilation, we cannot recommend one mode over another. With pressure-controlled ventilation, pressure is set and the tidal volume may change as the pulmonary compliance changes. With volume-controlled ventilation, tidal volume is set, and the pressure needed to deliver that may change as the pulmonary compliance changes. These are likely the two main modes of mechanical ventilation in pediatric ICUs. For the majority of intubated children who have reasonable pulmonary compliance, there are little differences between the two modes. One potential advantage of pressure-controlled ventilation for patients who are sicker with poorer pulmonary compliance is that most ventilators in this mode use a decelerating inspiratory flow pattern. This means that the flow of gas is greatest early in inspiration and then decelerates to zero flow when the peak pressure is achieved. This can result in the delivery of a larger tidal volume for a lower peak pressure as compared with the same pressure that might be required in a tidal volume mode.

There are additional modes available on modern ventilators that may have benefit for patients with lung injury. The names of the modes will differ between the ventilator manufacturers. Many will have a mode where a desired tidal volume is guaranteed and the lowest pressure necessary to achieve that is used. Terms usually given to define this mode are *pressure-regulated volume control* and *volume guarantee*. These modes may reduce the pressure used, but they work best when the patient is well sedated and not competing with the ventilator.

Neurally adjusted ventilatory assist is a newer method of triggering ventilator synchrony available on the Servo-i ventilators by Maquet. This uses a small esophageal probe that can sense the electrical activity of the diaphragm and use that activity to synchronize the ventilator. The potential benefits of improved triggering such as improved comfort, lower ventilator settings, and increased minute ventilation have been shown in some studies.[341,342] Some degree of expertise is necessary with the mode, as the electrical activity of the heart can also cause auto-triggering of the ventilator.[343]

Airway pressure release ventilation (APRV) is a mode of mechanical ventilation that is less common than pressure control or volume control. There is adult data that was recently published by Zhou et al.[344] that early use of APRV can reduce length of mechanical ventilation. As we do know, however, children are just little adults. Lalgudi et al.[345] recently published the results of a randomized controlled trial of APRV in children with ARDS. The trial was stopped early for increased mortality in the APRV arm. There are few published pediatric studies using this mode,[346-349] and its benefits and limitations continue to be explored. Like other modes of ventilation, its use appears to be regional, and some will only consider this as rescue therapy when patients fail conventional ventilation.

To describe its use, APRV is essentially CPAP with brief, intermittent release coupled with spontaneous ventilation. The high CPAP level (Phigh) maintains alveolar recruitment and aids in oxygenation over a period of time (Thigh), and the timed release to a low pressure (Plow) minimizes resistance to expiratory flow and carbon dioxide removal. In addition, the patient is able to spontaneous breath during all phases, Phigh and Plow, potentially allowing for improved pulmonary mechanics and gas exchange. APRV differs from other modes of ventilation because it relies on an intermittent decrease in airway pressure, instead of an increase in airway pressure to maintain an open lung strategy for ventilation. Therefore, the release time (Tlow) should be set long enough to allow for an adequate tidal volume (6-8 mL/kg), but short enough to avoid alveolar collapse and atelectrauma. In summary, the operator-controlled parameters in APRV are: Phigh, Thigh, Plow, Tlow, and FiO_2. Recommendations for implementing APRV are limited in pediatrics, and thus extrapolated from adult recommendations.[350] Plow is initially set a zero. Phigh can be set by several methods such plateau pressures or 75% of peak inspiratory pressure; however, when transitioning from conventional modes of ventilation, Phigh is often determined by mP_{AW} pressure formula where the mP_{AW} is set 2 to 3 cm H_2O above conventional mP_{AW}: (Phigh × Thigh) + (Plow × Tlow) / (Thigh + Tlow). To determine Thigh and Tlow, first determine the total cycle time according to a normal RR range for the patient's age (i.e., a RR of 20 yields a total cycle time of 3 seconds). Thigh will be the total cycle time minus a Tlow of 0.2 to 0.6 seconds, initially starting at 0.4 seconds (i.e., total cycle time of 3 seconds yields a Thigh of 2.6 seconds and Tlow of 0.4 seconds), or Number of cycles (RR) = 60 seconds/(Thigh + Tlow). Transitioning to APRV, like transitioning to HFOV, will take time for optimal lung recruitment. After several hours, if the patient continues to have severe hypoxemia, Thigh can be increased to aid in oxygenation. Once established Plow and Tlow usually do not require further changes; however, as lung compliance improves, Phigh and Thigh can be decreased and increased, respectively, to wean a patient toward a target of a continual CPAP of 5 to 6 cm H_2O in preparation for extubation. APRV may be advantageous to other modes of advanced mechanical ventilation because of the patient's ability to breathe spontaneously throughout the entire ventilatory cycle improving respiratory mechanics and reducing the need for sedation and neuromuscular blockade. However, some authors are concerned that there may be a higher incidence of cyclic alveolar collapse during airway release leading to a greater degree of atelectrauma, as compared with HFOV.[346,347]

High frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV) is being used in pediatrics as a rescue therapy for acute lung injury (ALI) or ARDS. HFOV is a subset of HFV. Use of HFOV was first described by Lunkenheimer in 1972.[351] A 1994 publication by Arnold et al.[352] is the only multicenter randomized trial of HFOV. This study showed lower use of oxygen supplementation in the HFOV group at 30 days. There have been other pediatric studies showing positive benefit of HFOV such as a single center prospective study by Samransamruajkit et al.[353] and a single center retrospective study by Babbitt et al.[354] The conclusion that could be drawn by many studies with HFOV in pediatrics is that for disease processes with significant mortality, rescue therapy with HFOV may be appropriate and may show improved outcomes. In some of the most critically ill patients with a very high mortality such as immune compromised children with ARDS, the response to HFOV has been used as diagnostic criteria to identify survivors from nonsurvivors.[347,355] Early use of HFOV has been shown to decrease mortality in patients who have undergone hematopoietic cell transplant who have developed severe pediatric ARDS.[356] There is some adult data using HFOV from large randomized trials. The OSCAR trial[357] was a negative study and the OSCILLATE Trial[357] was stopped early for a potential increase mortality in the HFOV group. It is unclear whether these findings can be translated to pediatric patients. The disease processes and the condition of our patients can be very different as compared with adults. Bateman et al.[358] used a propensity score model to reanalyze results from the Randomized Evaluation of Sedation Titration for Respiratory Failure (RESTORE) Study.[359] Using their adjusted models, they found that early use of HFOV was associated with longer mechanical ventilation. There also was no mortality benefit to the use of HFOV. Given the results of the adult studies as well as those from Bateman et al.,[358] it is unclear if the motivation would be present to perform a multicenter HFOV trial in pediatrics. There may continue to be other indications for HFOV in pediatrics, such as air leak syndrome or congenital diaphragmatic hernia.

To describe its use, HFV is a type of mechanical ventilation where the RR of the ventilator is much greater than a normal physiologic rate. Maintaining the same minute ventilation these ventilation modes produce tidal volumes that are very small. There are several different methods, but most commonly used in pediatrics is the HFOV. This type of ventilator houses a piston that is attached to semi-rigid connecting tubing which attaches to the ETT. This circuit can be pressurized to a set mean airway pressure (MAP). The piston then oscillates up to 840 times a minute, creating small positive and negative respiratory cycles. The MAP is higher as compared with conventional ventilation, and this prevents atelectasis as well as shear forces from opening and closing alveoli with each respiratory cycle. The FiO_2 is set as in a conventional ventilator. The frequency of oscillation of the piston is adjusted to remove carbon dioxide and can vary between 6 and 14 Hz (Hz = 60 cycles/s). The amplitude of the ventilator is the distance the piston moves with each excursion, and by these excursions small breaths are propelled down the tubing. Several proposed mechanisms for the method of gas transport during HFOV have been proposed but none have been proven. Tidal volumes are dependent on the patient's compliance, ETT size, device frequency, and device amplitude. Tidal volume is inversely related to cyclic frequency: VCO_2 = frequency × VT_2. Transitioning from conventional modes of ventilation to HFOV, the initial power setting (ΔP/amplitude) is adjusted to visible chest "wiggle" from the clavicles to the abdomen or pelvis. MAP (mP_{AW}) is initially set approximately 5 cm H_2O greater than the last mP_{AW} on conventional ventilation, just prior to the initiation of HFOV. Traditionally, tidal volumes in HFOV are considered to be just above FRC; however, it is difficult to measure actual tidal volumes and provide precise "optimal" lung volumes strategy. Clinically, MAP mP_{AW} is titrated by upward by 1 to 2 cm H_2O till oxygenation improves, and inspired oxygen concentrations can be weaned to less toxic levels, below 0.60. While titrating mP_{AW}, it is important to assess for overdistention by following chest radiographs (CXR): overdistention/hyperinflation is determined by greater than nine posterior ribs or flattened hemi-diaphragms on CXR. Initial frequency settings, measured in Hz, can be found in Table 79.7. HFOV is the only mode of ventilation with active expiration. If hypercarbia, despite allowances for permissible hypercapnia, leads to profound respiratory acidosis and patient instability, minute ventilation can be improved by several means during HFOV. First, one of the drawbacks of HFOV is the lack of spontaneous ventilation and adequate airway clearance; therefore, inline suction (without breaking into the circuit causing derecruitment) should be used to ensure adequate airway, ETT patency, and lung recruitment. Second, ΔP should be increased to maximize lung recruitment and increase minute ventilation. Third, frequency (Hz) can be slowly decreased to enhance lung recruitment and increase minute ventilation. Finally, the ETT cuff should be deflated to allow additional escape of CO_2around the ETT. Disadvantages of HFOV include no partial ventilatory support leading to increased requirements for sedation and paralysis, cardiopulmonary interactions due higher mP_{AW} and decreased venous return, and loss of alveolar recruitment if circuit detached for suctioning of manual ventilation.

High frequency percussive ventilation (HFPV) pneumatically stacks subtidal volume breaths at a set rapid rate superimposed upon conventional cyclic rates. This allows for a progressive stepwise inflation of the lung to a set peak pressure while allowing for passive exhalation to a preset lower pressure. HFPV has been well-described in the inhalational injury population for its ability to safely oxygenate and ventilate with continuous pneumatically-powered high frequency percussions to facilitate clearance of airway debris.[360-362] These properties may be particularly useful in pediatric patients with acute respiratory failure, by improving oxygenation and ventilation while maintaining lung protective strategies.[363]

TABLE 79.7 Initial Frequency Settings in High-Frequency Oscillatory Ventilation

Patient Weight (kg)	Initial Frequency Setting (Hz)
<2	15
2-15	10
16-20	8
21-30	7
31-50	6
>50	5

PEDIATRIC ACUTE RESPIRATORY DISTRESS SYNDROME

ARDS is a severe form of ALI that can result from a number of triggers that directly or indirectly injure the lung. The disease results in inflammation of the lungs, edema of the alveoli, and hypoxemic respiratory failure. Prior definitions of pediatric ARDS (PARDS) often were adapted from studies on adult patients and adult consensus conferences. Although PARDS represents a small portion of PICU admissions, it is very clinically important as it carries a very high mortality rate. In turn, PARDS garners a significant amount of attention from PICU researchers and clinicians. Since 2012, PICU intensivists had been using the *Berlin definition* of ARDS[364,365] for management and study enrollment. Finally, in 2015 pediatrics had its own unique definition of ARDS. In 2015 the Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference (PALICC) completed their 2-year process of consensus meetings to provide a new definition of PARDS and guidelines for management.[366] The PALICC group included 27 experts from 8 countries. They used peer reviewed data that was specific to pediatrics to form new guidelines. Where data were unavailable specifically for pediatrics, recommendations were adapted from adult or neonatal data as appropriate. In areas where there was no available data, expert opinion formed the basis of their recommendations. Multiple follow-up publications have provided important information in PARDS, including methodology of the group,[367] the incidence and epidemiology,[368] comorbidities,[369] means of ventilator support,[370] noninvasive support,[371] monitoring,[372] use of ECMO,[373] and outcomes.[374] The group identifies the need for future randomized control trials in PARDS.

There are several key aspects to defining PARDS.[375] The PALICC definition of PARDS excludes neonates with perinatal-related lung disease, as it is likely a different entity. The lung injury should occur within 7 days of a known clinical insult. The hypoxemic respiratory failure should not be able to be explained by cardiac failure or fluid overload. Chest radiographs typically have new infiltrates consistent with parenchymal lung disease. There are now separate sections for the use of noninvasive and invasive mechanical ventilation. One significant difference in comparison to adult ARDS definitions is that the definition of PARDS for mechanically ventilated patients includes stratification by oxygenation index or oxygen saturation index. Oxygenation index (OI) = $[FiO_2 \times MAP \times 100]/PaO_2$. The oxygen saturation index (OSI) = $[FiO_2 \times MAP \times 100]/S_pO_2$. Mild PARDS is $4 \leq I < 8$, as well as $5 \leq OSI < 7.5$. Moderate PARDS is $8 \leq OI < 16$, as well as $7.5 \leq OSI < 12.3$. Severe PARDS is $OI \geq 16$, as well as $OSI \geq 12.3$. There is additional information for patients with cyanotic heart disease, chronic lung disease, and left ventricular dysfunction. Future studies will need to address these more difficult aspects of defining PARDS.

The management of mechanical ventilation in PARDS currently can be summarized as the use of restrictive tidal volumes, increased use of PEEP, an ongoing relative tolerance of hypoxemia as long as it does not alter systemic oxygen delivery, and a tolerance of relative hypercarbia to reduce trauma from elevated mechanic ventilator pressures. The PALICC group among many others recognizes that there has never been a randomized control trial of tidal volume restriction in PARDS. There are also prior studies that have demonstrated a lower mortality with larger tidal volumes in pediatric patients.[376,377] This seems to be a result of the increased use of pressure control ventilation in pediatric patients. An individual patient might be sick enough to be classified as having ARDS, but those with a milder form of the disease have better pulmonary compliance. As pressure is set on the ventilator, larger tidal volumes occur with better compliance. The PALICC guidelines do not make a recommendation as the mode of ventilation. However, the guidelines do recommend targeting the delivered tidal volume to be "in or below the range of physiologic tidal volumes for age/body weight (i.e., 5-8 mL/kg predicted body weight) according to lung pathology and respiratory system compliance."[366] It should be noted that PALICC guidelines do recommend adjusting the tidal volumes to the degree of disease severity. They recommend tidal volumes of 3 to 6 mL/kg predicted body weight for those patients with poor respiratory system compliance. They do believe the larger tidal volumes could be appropriate for patients with better pulmonary compliance.

Potentially, one of the more important recommendations from the PALICC group has been the increased application of PEEP. They recommended levels of PEEP of 10 to 15 cm H_2O for patients with severe PARDS and identify that levels higher than 15 cmH2O may be needed for some patients. Given concerns for the potential cardiopulmonary interactions, they do recommend following hemodynamics closely. The application of increased PEEP may have significant importance in future PARDS studies. It has recently been shown by Khemani et al.[377] that the use of PEEP settings lower than those recommended by the ARDS Network Protocol is associated with increased mortality in PARDS.

Some by extrapolation would consider the use of HFOV the most extreme form of tidal volume restriction. HFOV is able to prevent atelectasis by maintaining a constant airway pressure. Trauma from lung stretch is avoided by delivering tidal volumes that are less than anatomic dead space.[378] Unfortunately, there is very little information in pediatric mechanical ventilation with no recent randomized control trials. There have been two recent adult studies, but they did not yield results supportive of HFOV. OSCAR[357] was a negative study, and OSCILLATE[379] was stopped early for a potential increase in mortality in the HFOV group. Adult practitioners are likely moving away from HFOV and use in pediatrics remains regionalized to a few centers that continue its use. The PALICC guidelines leave HFOV as a potential rescue therapy.

There are further adjunctive therapies for PARDS that will require future studies to confirm their potential benefit. This list would include the use of corticosteroids, inhaled nitric oxide, ECMO, prone positioning, use of neuromuscular blockade, and the use of exogenous surfactant. There is insufficient data at this time to state these therapies should be routinely used for PARDS. Inhaled NO should be used for patients who have documented pulmonary hypertension or right heart dysfunction. The most recent published pediatric study of inhaled NO shows the possibility for harm.[380] The use of extracorporeal life support for PARDS has not been sufficiently studied to indicate it is beneficial. Further, given the complexity of the therapy, future trials may be very difficult, and to what extent ECMO is used for PARDS will vary based upon the individual institution.

As patients progress through their disease course and care is no longer increasing, the issue of weaning from mechanical ventilation and timing of extubation must be addressed. Various different strategies have been used to wean off of the ventilator to varying degrees of success. Likely one of the most effective strategies is the daily scheduled use of spontaneous breathing trials (SBTs) to assess whether a patient is ready for extubation.[381,382] Faustino et al. in 2018 published a secondary analysis of the RESTORE clinical trial.[383] Of patients requiring mechanical ventilation for lower respiratory tract disease, they found 43% passed their first extubation readiness. Of the group that passed an extubation readiness test, 66% were extubated within 10 hours. Many PICUs are using protocols to provide daily SBTs. In the right setting, the breathing trial can be performed safely by the respiratory therapy staff without physician input. In the near future, we will see an increase in computerized ventilation protocols driving care in the PICU. Without protocols, there is significant variability in usual care mechanical ventilation strategies,[384] and even with protocols, there can be poor adherence to protocols.[385] As a group, PICU intensivists would benefit from computer decision support and likely would accept some version of this.[386,387] Future studies will be needed to determine if we can find the Goldilocks version of ventilation protocols. We need to provide not so little mechanical ventilation that the patient is struggling to breathe. Yet, we must provide not so much that there is atrophy of the diaphragm.[388,389]

PRINCIPLES OF LUNG PROTECTIVE STRATEGIES: LIMITING VENTILATOR ASSOCIATED LUNG INJURY

As lung injury progresses, in response to pulmonary or extrapulmonary injury, the lungs can be divided into three hypothetical regions: (1) areas with severe collapse and alveolar flooding "dependent areas"; (2) recruitable areas with alveolar atelectasis "intermediate areas"; and (3) normal lung "nondependent areas" (Fig. 79.4). The goal of mechanical ventilation is to recruit intermediate areas, allowing improved gas exchange, spare normal areas of lung from ventilator associated lung injury (VALI), while giving dependent collapsed regions of lung with alveolar flooding time to recover from the primary process resolves (i.e., pneumonia, sepsis, etc.). Lung recruitment of intermediate areas and prevention of VALI is accomplished by using PEEP and limiting tidal volume and plateau pressures. This can be a complicated task, so let us first look at Fig. 79.5, and try to conceptualize a theoretical pressure-volume curve of the lung. As alveolar airway pressure increases, there is

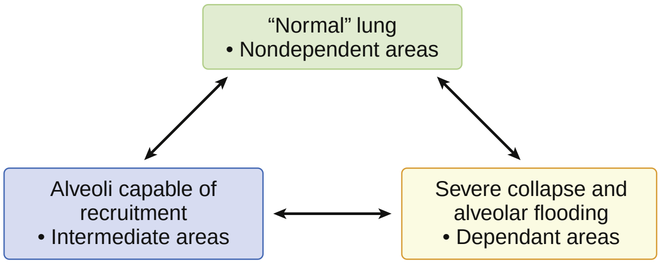

"Normal" lung
• Nondependent areas
Alveoli capable of recruitment
• Intermediate areas
Severe collapse and alveolar flooding
• Dependant areas

Fig. 79.4 For the purposes of lung protective ventilator strategies, the lung can be divided into three hypothetical areas.

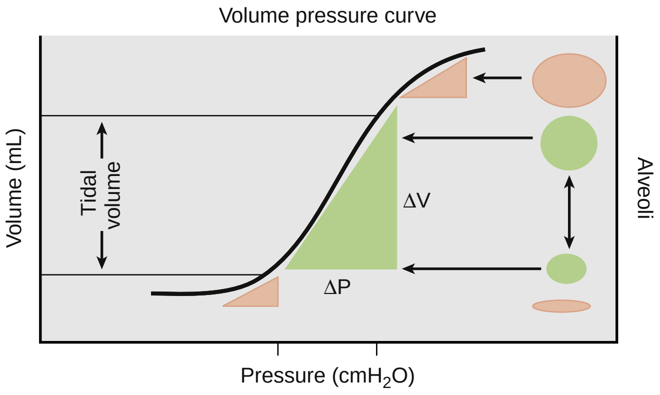


Fig. 79.5 Volume pressure curve.

an opening pressure (Pflex) required to overcome airway resistance and alveolar compliance (Compliance = ΔV/ΔP). Pressures below Pflex will lead to alveolar collapse, termed *atelectasis*. If airway pressure cycles above and below Pflex, alveoli will continually open and collapse, leading to wall shear stress and eventual damage: atelectrauma. Following the hysteresis curve to the upper extent of the inspiratory limb, as pressure increases, there comes a point termed, Pmax, whereby the alveoli start to become overdistended. Above Pmax, shear stress again leads to alveolar damage, this time termed *volutrauma*. Therefore, in theory, we attempt to keep tidal volumes on the most compliant part of the volume-pressure curve, above Pflex and below Pmax, leading to the idea called "open lung ventilation." Triggered by the ARDSnet's initial study, the use of low tidal volumes (6-8 mL/kg) with the addition of PEEP (open lung strategy) may reduce morbidity and mortality in patients with ARDS (Fig. 79.6).[390] However, as lung injury to the normal and intermediate areas of the lungs progresses, the volume-pressure curve moves to the right as the compliance of the lungs decreases, leaving a smaller therapeutic window requiring an increase in PEEP, resulting in higher MAP to maintain recruitment of areas of normal and recruitable lung (Fig. 79.7).

Lung protective strategy attempts to decrease VALI by inhibiting volutrauma, barotrauma, atelectrauma, oxygen toxicity, and biotrauma (Fig. 79.8).

Low Tidal Volume: Despite using usual control groups in the ARDSnet original study, employing a low tidal volume approach of 6 to 8 mL/kg has become a standard of care.

PEEP: The advantages of PEEP as a distending pressure include: increase in FRC, improvement of respiratory compliance, improvement of ventilation/perfusion mismatch, redistribution of lung water/edema. PEEP ultimately improves arterial oxygenation. The use of low tidal volumes has been consistent across multiple recent trials, but the selection of PEEP in these trials has been highly variable. Recent pediatric studies have shown that setting PEEP lower than the ARDSnet guidelines can result in increased mortality.[391] Further, guidelines from

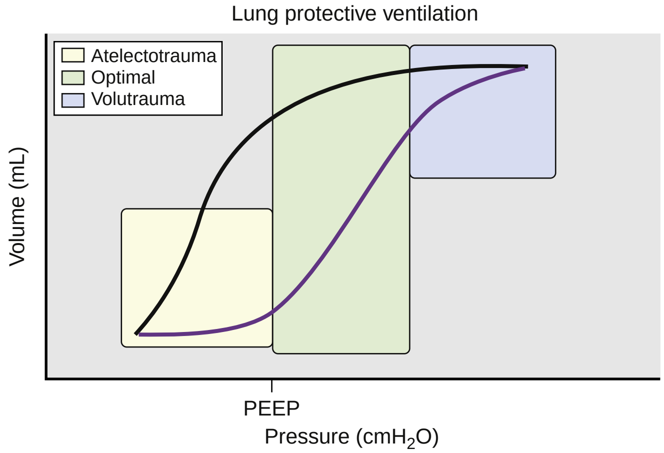


Fig. 79.6 Lung protective ventilation strategy. *PEEP,* Positive end-expiratory pressure.

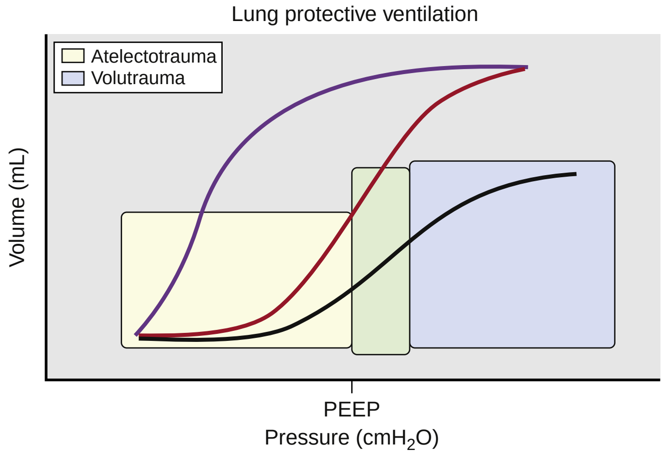


Fig. 79.7 Lung protective ventilation with worsening lung compliance. *PEEP,* Positive end-expiratory pressure.

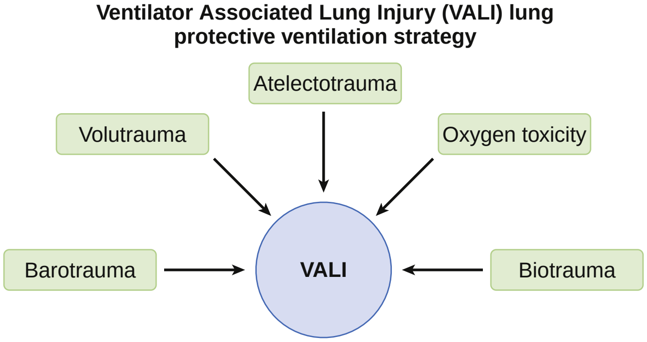

Ventilator Associated Lung Injury (VALI) lung protective ventilation strategy
Atelectotrauma
Volutrauma
Oxygen toxicity
Barotrauma
VALI
Biotrauma

Fig. 79.8 Tenets of ventilator-associated lung injury. *VALI*, Ventilator associated lung injury.

the PALICC recommends increased levels of PEEP.[366] It can be difficult to determine the critical opening pressure of alveoli clinically. Therefore, most clinicians initially use a minimal distension strategy by setting PEEP between 5 and 9 cm H_2O, as lung injury progresses and hypoxemia worsens, PEEP may be increased to increase mean plateau pressures (keep $<$30-35 cm H_2O) and aid in recruitment. More precise methods of determining optimal PEEP in patients with ARDS include titration using dynamic compliance or static pressure-volume loops to identifying the critical opening pressure. Alternatively, one can use titration with dynamic compliance or static pressure-volume curve. Likely, in the future we will determine optimal PEEP in patients with ARDS use transpulmonary pressures with an esophageal catheter. It is important to remember that as PEEP is increased and lung is recruited, intrathoracic pressure is also increased. There has been concern by clinicians that increased intrathoracic pressure can inhibit cardiac output by reducing venous return. There have been a number of studies that have shown even with increasing PEEP there is not a decrease in cardiac output.[392,393] However, given the concern for decreased cardiac output, hemodynamics should be monitored as PEEP is increased.

Plateau Airway Pressures: Sustained plateau airway pressures greater than 35 cm H_2O can lead to barotrauma: pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum, and subcutaneous emphysema. In an attempt to limit barotrauma, $PaCO_2$ is allowed to increase in the face of inadequate minute ventilation. This permissible hypercapnia can be employed as long as the patient tolerates the acidosis and is able to buffer with the renal retention of HCO_3 and there are no contraindications from coexisting disease.

Driving Pressure: Driving pressure is the peak inspiratory pressure minus the PEEP for patients who are paralyzed and receiving mechanical ventilation. Amato et al.[394] demonstrated in a reanalysis of adult ARDS patients involved in prior randomized trials that decreases in driving pressure due to changes in ventilator management were strongly associated with increased survival.

Neuromuscular Blockade: Neuromuscular blocking agents (NMBA) have been provided to patients with ARDS to control ventilation and reduce trauma caused by increased tidal volume or increased airway pressure. NMBAs may also allow patients to tolerate higher levels of PEEP. This would lead to decreased trauma from repeated opening and closing of lung units. Further, NMBAs may reduce oxygen consumption from both skeletal and respiratory muscles. Papazian et al.[395] as part of the ACURASYS study demonstrated that early use of NMBA improved the adjusted 90-day survival with ARDS and increased the time off of the ventilator. They did not see an increase in muscle weakness with the use of cisatracurium. Pediatric trials looking at use of NMBAs have not yet been performed.

ADJUVANT THERAPIES FOR ACUTE RESPIRATORY DISTRESS SYNDROME

Prone Positioning

In pediatric patients, Curley et al.[396] demonstrated that prone positioning was associated with an improvement oxygenation in patients with ARDS. This group also showed proning can be safely applied in pediatric patients.[397] However, proning was not associated with a benefit in mortality or ventilator-free days, and the trial was stopped early for futility.[396] Prone positioning improves lung recruitment in select patients with ARDS. This may explain the difference between adult and pediatric results. In adults, Guerin et al.[398] performed a multicenter prospective randomized control trial, Proning Severe ARDS Patients (PROSEVA), which showed that early administration of prone positioning significantly decreased 28-day and 90-day mortality. Between these two studies, the pediatric patients were more heterogenous and the adults were homogenous with more severe ARDS. The impact of patient selection and duration of prone positioning is unclear; however, it is likely that a subgroup of patients, respond to prone positioning early after lung injury, and immediate responders may benefit from prolonged proned positioning.[399] Pediatric patients with brain injury and worsening hypoxemia prone positioning may be attempted with careful monitoring of ICP.[400,401] Future studies in pediatrics are needed.

Surfactant Therapy

Exogenous surfactant therapy is standard of care in neonates suffering from RDS; however, the utility of surfactant therapy in the treatment of ALI and ARDS is uncertain and continues to be researched. In pediatric patients, a 2003 study by Möller et al.[402] showed immediate improvement in oxygenation and a trend toward improved survival with the exogenous surfactant therapy, calfactant. However, Willson et al. in a recent randomized control trial found that surfactant did not improve oxygenation and decrease mortality relative to placebo administration.[403] However, there was no difference in length of mechanical ventilation or ICU stay. The current PALICC guidelines do not recommend routine use of surfactant.[366] Clinicians still feel that there still may be a specific pediatric patient population (i.e., near drowning victims) that still may benefit from exogenous surfactant administration, and research is ongoing to determine patient selection, timing, and combination with other therapies for treatment of ALI/ARDS.

Corticosteroids

A great percentage of pediatric patients with ARDS will receive corticosteroids at some point during their hospitalization. There are a number of underlying issues of inflammation and potentially adrenal insufficiency that would prompt clinicians to provide them. There were two pediatric studies published in 2015 that provide some insight. Drago et al.[404] published a small randomized placebo controlled trial of 35 patients with ARDS. There was no difference between groups with regard to duration of mechanical ventilation, length of ICU stay or mortality. They did find that it was feasible to provide low dose infusions of methylprednisolone without significant increases in nosocomial infections or serum glucose. Yehya et al.[405] reported a single center observational study in which 169 of 283 children with pediatric ARDS received corticosteroids for greater than 24 hours while receiving mechanical ventilation. The group that received steroids had fewer ventilator-free days and a longer duration of mechanical ventilation in survivors. Currently, the PALICC guidelines do not recommend routine therapy with corticosteroids for pediatric ARDS.[366]

Nitric Oxide

Inhaled nitric oxide (iNO) acts as a selective pulmonary vasodilator to improve V/Q mismatch, decrease pulmonary hypertension, and reduce right ventricular cardiac work. NO upregulates cGMP, ultimately resulting in smooth muscle relaxation and pulmonary arteriolar vasodilatation. iNO is delivered directly to ventilated lung units and improves perfusion in these areas of lung without significant effects on the rest of the pulmonary vascular bed, thereby improving V/Q mismatch and oxygenation in patients with ARDS. Much like prone positioning and surfactant therapy, NO can result in transient improvements in oxygenation. A systemic review and meta-analysis performed by Adhikari et al.[406] in adults with ARDS showed inhaled NO does not reduce mortality, regardless of severity of illness. In pediatrics, a small, randomized trial by Bronicki et al.[407] showed that pediatric patients with ARDS randomized to receive iNO had significantly improved ECMO-free survival and ventilator-free days at 28 days. This trial only had 55 total subjects and did not show a difference in overall mortality. The most recent study was a propensity matched cohort of 499 pediatric patients with ARDS by Bhalla et al.[380] There were a total of 143 that received iNO. They found that use of iNO was not associated with improvement in ventilator-free days or mortality. There still remains a role for iNO in patients with pulmonary hypertension, right heart dysfunction, and potentially a bridge to ECMO. Any further roles would require future studies to show benefit.

Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation

ECMO remains a rescue strategy for pediatric patients with ARDS that fail to respond to advanced modes of mechanical ventilation. There has been much more research with ECMO in adult ARDS as compared with pediatrics. The CESAR Trial in adults demonstrated improved outcomes in adults treated with ECMO; however, this trial had significant methodological flaws.[408] Results of the EOLIA (ECMO to rescue lung injury in severe ARDS) were reported in 2018.[409] The trial enrolled adults with very severe ARDS. They found that 60 day mortality was not significantly lower in the group randomized to ECMO as compared with conventional mechanical ventilation and possible use of ECMO as a rescue therapy. With regard to pediatric data, in 2018 Barbaro et al.[410] published a secondary propensity score matching analysis of ECMO use in patients from the RESTORE study. They found that in patients with severe pediatric ARDS there was not superior outcomes in the group treated with ECMO as compared with those that did not receive ECMO support. With improved care and research, presumably the mortality risk for both ECMO as well as ARDS will decrease. J. C. Lin[411] recently published a review on this topic which may provide additional insights. Further research regarding ECMO support of severe pediatric ARDS is needed.

ADJUNCTIVE PHARMACOLOGIC THERAPY: SEDATIVES AND ANALGESICS

Sedation is often required to help children cooperate with mechanical ventilation. The amount of sedation required depends on the child's age, size, underlying disease, and amount of respiratory support needed. Some children are neurologically depressed and require no sedation. Sedation allows patients to breathe "in phase" with the ventilator, which reduces the peak airway pressure and eliminates coughing and straining, all of which can cause pulmonary gas leaks or inadequate ventilation. Sedation has changed over the past many years in PICUs across the country. Part of the cause of this can be attributed to the development of protocols to limit sedation to decrease tolerance, withdrawal symptoms when sedation was weaned, and the potential for exacerbation of delirium. Many of the larger PICUs participated in the RESTORE study.[359] The RESTORE study can serve as a good example of how to deliver sedation using protocols. Each patient's level of sedation was titrated to a State Behavioral Scale, which allowed for a common language among care providers.[412] The medications that they used to provide sedation while patients were intubated were primarily morphine and midazolam. They recommended the use of fentanyl infusions as the opioid agent for patients that had hypotension or reactive airways disease. There were also secondary sedation agents that were used which included pentobarbital, ketamine, methadone, clonidine, dexmedetomidine, and propofol. Some institutions did use lorazepam as an alternative benzodiazepine. Pentobarbital and ketamine were adjunct medications when the patient was unresponsive or less responsive to the primary agents. Methadone and clonidine were adjuncts used primarily to prevent withdrawal symptoms as the patient was tapered off medications. Dexmedetomidine and propofol were used in this study as temporary agents to wean off other medications in anticipation of extubation. Propofol is not used in some units or only used as a temporary measure because of the concerns for propofol infusion syndrome.[413] Dexmedetomidine is seeing increased usage in PICUs across the country not just for short-term sedation. In some instances, it can replace opioids as a means of providing sedation. There should be a word of caution in administering lorazepam to premature neonates. Lorazepam repeatedly dosed over several days may cause steroid-responsive hypotension as a result of buildup of drug in the body. The half-life of lorazepam is approximately 72 hours in premature infants. Giving the drug every 4 to 6 hours causes accumulation of the drug in blood and tissues.

NMBAs increase chest wall compliance, reduce oxygen consumption, and facilitate mechanical ventilation. If neuromuscular blocking drugs are used, they should be administered in conjunction with medications that cause amnesia and anxiolysis and control pain. Vecuronium, rocuronium, and cisatracurium are the most commonly administered muscle relaxants used in the PICU (also see Chapter 27). Rocuronium is often given for intubation and for intermittent dosing. Vecuronium can be used as an intermittent agent but also as a continuous infusion. There are risks of decreased metabolism and prolonged clearance with vecuronium infusions and many will choose instead to use cisatracurium. Cisatracurium is often useful because its elimination is not dependent on renal or hepatic function. If these drugs are given for more than a day, provision of regular drug holidays should be considered to avoid serum buildup of the drug and prolonged paralysis.

WEANING FROM MECHANICAL VENTILATION

The pediatric literature falls behind adult publications with regard to guidance in weaning and extubation from mechanical ventilation. A 2009 review by Newth et al.[414]

addressed what was known at the time. Attempts have been made to develop predictive indices identifying which children can be successfully weaned from mechanical ventilation. Most of the indices are used in research but do have clinical applications. One indices is the Rapid Shallow Breathing Index (RSBI) from Yang and Tobin.[415] The RSBI is equal to the RR/tidal volume. When patients are breathing comfortably, they have a lower RR with larger tidal volumes. In this circumstance, the RSBI is a low number. Further, patients with respiratory distress tend to breathe more rapidly with smaller tidal volumes and hence have a higher RSBI. There are several different techniques for weaning from mechanical ventilation. These include lowering the set ventilator rate over time, performing a daily SBT, or increasing pressure support or CPAP sprints.[416] Many hospitals are initiating daily SBTs for their patients. These are periods of decreased ventilatory support while the patient is observed for evidence of respiratory distress. The decreased support can be pressure support, CPAP, or T-piece ventilation. Patients are observed to see that there is no significant increase in RR, decrease in saturations, diaphoresis, hemodynamic compromise, or evidence of increased work of breathing. The successful completion of a SBT will initiate of plans for extubation. Depending on the ICU, SBT are carried out under direction of the physicians or they can be independently performed by the respiratory therapist. It is possible that computerized weaning protocols will further reduce time on mechanical ventilation.[417] At the moment it seems that the best solution is to ask on a daily basis whether the patient is able to be extubated. Studies indicate a significant percentage of patients being evaluated for weaning are ready for extubation.[418]

We must keep in mind that as we are weaning patients from mechanical ventilation, there is an anticipated extubation failure rate. If we continue mechanical ventilation until we are absolutely certain a patient will not fail, many patients will be ventilated longer than necessary. A 2003 review[418] of 16 ICUs showed an extubation failure rate of 6.2% (range 1.5%-8.8%) for patients requiring mechanical ventilation longer than 48 hours. Our own research shows a reintubation rate of 8.3% following extubation.[286]

With regard to the degree of decreased ventilatory support during an SBT, use of CPAP does not put patients under increased stress. Multiple prior studies demonstrate that infants or children with smaller ETTs are not “breathing through a straw” when put on CPAP or T-piece.[419-422] Relative to an adult, the ETT may be smaller in diameter, but it is also shorter and the inspiratory flow rate in infants is low compared with an adult. Flow rates are measured to be approximately 0.5 L/kg/min.[421] Therefore, a 3 kg infant has a flow velocity of 1.5 L/min as compared with 30 L/min for a 60 kg adult. If patients are unable to successfully complete an SBT, it is possible they would not manage the work of breathing postextubation.

Overall, the criteria for extubation readiness includes intact airway reflexes, hemodynamic stability, manageable secretions, and an appropriate level of alertness. The amount of negative inspiratory force (NIF) the patient can generate can be measured. A NIF should be measured with a calibrated manometer and inspiration from residual volume. Typically, a NIF of negative 30 or more is associated with extubation success. The presence of a leak around the ETT may be supportive of extubation. There is some research showing the absence of a leak around the ETT does not predict extubation failure.[423,424] However, absence of a leak is associated with the development of subglottic upper airway obstruction after extubation.[286] Extubation failure is typically defined as reintubation less than 24 hours after a scheduled extubation attempt. Extubation failure may be caused by a multitude of reasons but large category is postextubation upper airway obstruction. We believe the incidence of upper airway obstruction to be between 37% and 41%.[286,418] As there is significant interobserver variability[286] in the clinical assessment of upper airway obstruction, physiology based tools may be valuable.[286] Objective measures of airway obstruction may be necessary before we have a definitive answer as to which therapies reduce subglottic narrowing and reduce obstruction.

RESPIRATORY DISORDERS

Laryngotracheobronchitis (Croup)

Croup occurs most frequently in the 3-month-old to 3-year-old age group. Croup is a viral infection (parainfluenza, influenza, adenovirus) that causes edema of the tissues in the upper airway, particularly in the immediate subglottic region. There is usually a history of a few days of upper respiratory tract infection symptoms followed by hoarseness, a croupy cough, and possibly stridor. The degree of respiratory distress and the child’s ability to compensate for the increased work of breathing are best assessed clinically. These patients are initially treated with mist and aerosolized racemic epinephrine to reduce swelling of upper airway mucosa.[425] Steroid administration is common yet controversial.[87] Tracheal intubation is required when the child can no longer sustain the increased work of breathing and CO_2 increases. When the trachea is intubated, the ETT should be 0.5 to 1.0 mm smaller than usual for age. The ETT must be of sufficient size that the patient can breathe easily during spontaneous ventilation and the nurses can effectively suction secretions from the airways. Croup usually resolves spontaneously in 3 to 7 days. The average duration of tracheal intubation is approximately 5 days. Laryngotracheobronchitis is less common in children older than 4 years.

Epiglottitis

Epiglottitis is an inflammation of the mucosa of the supraglottic structures that was previously caused by *Haemophilus influenzae* type B but is now commonly caused by *Staphylococcus aureus* and streptococcal organisms because immunization against the *Haemophilus* organism has been so effective. In the past, epiglottitis was a disease of 4- to 6-year-old children. Now, it occurs more commonly at older ages (even in adults).[426] In young children, epiglottitis is a true airway emergency because it may rapidly progress to complete and fatal airway obstruction. Providing a secure airway is the first priority. Children with epiglottitis appear toxic and have a fulminant onset of fever and respiratory distress. Tracheal intubation during anesthesia is commonly required until antibiotic therapy (ampicillin and chloramphenicol or ceftriaxone) is initiated and the signs of systemic toxicity subside. Introduction of the *H. influenzae* vaccine has dramatically decreased the incidence of *H. influenzae* infection, as well as that of other *H. influenzae* processes.[131]

Bronchiolitis

Bronchiolitis is an acute viral infection of the lower respiratory tract that occurs primarily during the first 2 years of life. The signs and symptoms of this malady are air trapping, wheezing, mild to moderate systemic hypoxemia, increased work of breathing, and increased airway resistance. The cause is usually an infection with respiratory syncytial virus (RSV).[427] Patients at high risk for respiratory failure from this disease include infants and young children with a history of prematurity, chronic lung disease, or congenital heart disease. Apnea is frequently the first sign of decompensation in neonates, which often occurs before significant hypercapnia appears. Fatigue is a common indication for mechanical ventilation. Treatment is primarily supportive and includes endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation for respiratory failure.[428] RSV immune globulin (RespiGam) is a prophylactic IV drug that is administered to patients at risk for seasonal RSV disease (ex-premature infants, infants with congenital heart disease, immunosuppressed patients, or those with multiple congenital anomalies); it has dramatically decreased the incidence of illness in this population. Ribavirin is a virostatic drug available for the treatment of children with RSV and congenital heart disease, immunosuppressive disease, or multiple congenital anomalies.

Cystic Fibrosis

Cystic fibrosis is a fatal autosomal recessive disease carried on chromosome 7. Although it affects the pancreatic, hepatic, pulmonary, GI, and reproductive systems, 90% of the reported morbidity and mortality is pulmonary.[142] The pulmonary pathology consists of severe airway obstruction, bronchiectasis, emphysema, and terminal respiratory failure.

Survival of patients with cystic fibrosis has improved dramatically over the past 30 years. More than one-third of patients survive to greater than 30 years of age.[143] This change is the result of improved antibiotic therapy, nutritional support, and aggressive treatment of complications. Lung transplantation has been performed in patients with chronic respiratory failure with varied success.[429,430]

Bronchopulmonary Dysplasia

BPD is a form of chronic lung disease that occurs in patients who have survived severe neonatal lung disease. The cause of this disease is uncertain, but usually patients were premature, had hyaline membrane disease, and required prolonged and aggressive respiratory support with high inflating and distending pressure and high oxygen concentrations. Inflammation appears to be an important component of this disease.[431] Children with BPD have decreased dynamic compliance, increased airway resistance, increased physiologic dead space, and markedly increased work of breathing. The lungs are hyperinflated, and there are intercostal retractions, nasal flaring, and wheezing. Chest radiographs demonstrate large lung volumes and fibrosis as well as cystic and atelectatic areas. Hypercapnia and hypoxia are present to varying degrees.[432,433] Therapy for BPD includes providing enough calories to meet the higher energy expenditure required for the increased work of breathing. Respiratory support (mechanical ventilation, CPAP) is required for some patients. Diuretics and bronchodilators are frequently used and may be associated with electrolyte abnormalities. Most long-term survivors have subjectively normal pulmonary function. However, some survivors have severe chronic physiologic changes.[434,435] During the first years of life, viral or bacterial pulmonary infections often increase the need for respiratory support; these infections may prove to be fatal. Great effort is being made to prevent BPD. Because the trauma of mechanical ventilation on an immature lung is thought to be the major cause of BPD, alternative modes of ventilatory support are being evaluated, including exogenous surfactant, high-frequency ventilation (especially HFOV),[436] ECMO, and liquid ventilation.[432,437]

Sleep Apnea

Normal ventilation during sleep requires normal upper airway anatomy and normal intact reflexes. The latter include central responses to hypercapnia and hypoxia, response to airway irritation, and dynamic phasic contraction of the pharyngeal and hypopharyngeal muscles. Sleep apnea usually occurs when one or more of these protective responses is abnormal. In infancy, sleep apnea is relatively common. Numerous causes have been postulated, the most attractive of which is immaturity of the medullary chemoreceptors. Patients with Ondine's curse, the most severe form of central apnea, have complete apnea when asleep. Lesser breathing disorders may be present during sleep in patients with sudden infant death syndrome. Treatment of sleep apnea consists of respiratory stimulants (theophylline), cardiorespiratory monitoring during sleep, and in some severe cases, tracheotomy and nighttime mechanical ventilation. Obstructive sleep apnea occurs in all pediatric age groups. It may be associated with an identifiable anatomic disorder, such as enlarged tonsils and adenoids, the Pierre Robin syndrome, and tracheal and laryngeal malacia. Signs and symptoms of obstructive sleep apnea include loud snoring, obstructive episodes with frequent arousal, behavior disorders caused by sleep deprivation, and cor pulmonale. The diagnosis is made by the history, ECG, and formal sleep studies. Bronchoscopy may also be helpful in defining the problem. In young children, an enlarged liver may suggest that the child has pulmonary hypertension. Treatment of sleep apnea includes removal or bypass of an obstruction. Although tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy may improve the airway, there may still be significant airway obstruction for the first few days after surgery. Rarely does such a child require a tracheostomy.

Foreign Body Aspiration

Foreign body aspiration is a relatively common and often catastrophic event in children. Although it can occur at any age, the peak incidence of foreign body aspiration occurs at 6 months to 3 years of age. Vegetable matter (peanuts) and other foodstuff (hot dogs) or coins and small pieces of toys are the most commonly aspirated material. Many of these objects are radiolucent. The symptoms of aspiration are related to the location of the foreign body within the airway and the time since the object was aspirated. Acute symptoms may include total airway obstruction, stridor, wheezing, or acute onset of coughing, whereas more chronic symptoms include bloody sputum, chronic coughing, or wheezing. The diagnosis of a foreign body in the airway is made from the history and physical examination and, in some cases, by radiologic imaging. The efficacy and safety of abdominal thrusts have been questioned. The Heimlich maneuver and back slaps are reserved for acute upper airway obstruction with no air movement. Treatment of less acute or lower airway foreign body aspiration includes bronchoscopy, postural drainage, chest physical therapy, bronchodilators, and surgical removal of the object.[438]

Upper Airway Obstruction and Meningomyelocele

Vocal cord paralysis is a common result of several disorders, including brainstem abnormalities and myelodysplasia. Children with meningomyelocele usually have an Arnold-Chiari malformation and may have stridor. This lesion allows caudal displacement of the medulla, stretching of the cranial nerve tracts, and abnormal arterial architecture of the brainstem. Vocal cord paralysis may result from pressure on the brainstem (i.e., with hydrocephalus) or from focal infarcts of the brainstem. Treatment of these brainstem abnormalities includes relief of the hydrocephalus and, if the paralysis persists, cervical decompression of the Arnold-Chiari lesion. Despite these surgical procedures, some children require a tracheotomy and long-term mechanical ventilation.

ASTHMA

The prevalence of childhood asthma is increasing over time. Estimates from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention placed the percentage of children with asthma at 3.6% in 1980 5.8% in 2003 and 9.5% in 2011 (www.cdc.gov/nchs/fastats/asthma.htm). Thankfully, the majority of children with asthma will never require intensive care. However, for the children that do there can be significant morbidity and a risk of mortality. In a 2012 study by Newth et al.[439] of fatal and near-fatal asthma in an ICU setting, 12% of patients had complications and the mortality was 4%. Cardiac arrest prior to admission occurred in 10 of the 11 patients who died. For the purposes of this section critical asthma is defined as an asthma exacerbation requiring ICU admission.

Asthma is a disease of inflammation. There is infiltration of the submucosal area of the airways with mast cells, eosinophils and CD4 lymphocytes. Degranulation of mast cells releases leukotrienes and histamine causing edema, increases in mucus production, and chemotaxis of white blood cells (WBCs). Multiple factors can trigger an asthma attacks and degranulations of mast cells. Such factors include allergens, infections (viral > bacterial), changes in the weather, and strong emotions. Inflammation increases irritability of the airway as well as airway hyper responsiveness. The airway lumen is decreased by spasm of the bronchial muscles, edema, and mucus. Decreases in the airway lumen significantly increase airway resistance. For laminar airflow, airway resistance is related to the third power of the radius, but with turbulent airflow it is related to the fourth power. Due to the smaller lumen of their airways, children experience much greater changes in airway resistance during asthma attacks than adults. Due to resistance in exhalation, an expiratory wheeze is typically noted. Bronchospasm, edema, or mucus plugging can lead to complete obstruction of small airways. Hypoxemia occurs as a result of a mismatch in ventilation and perfusion. Airway dead space is increased by obstruction of the airways. To maintain ventilation, the RR is typically increased. In turn, the initial $PaCO_2$ is usually low. Respiratory fatigue or impending failure may be identified by a normal or elevated $PaCO_2$.

It should be reinforced early that wheezing is caused more things than just asthma and that asthma can occur without wheezing. Wheezing is the sound that is produced when there is obstruction to airflow. Wheezing can be caused by pneumonia, upper airway obstruction, foreign body aspiration, and CHF. Each would require different therapy. Wheezing in a toddler of a sudden onset should prompt evaluation for foreign body aspiration. The history should be addressed at recent choking or coughing episodes. Even the presence of a history of reactive airways or atopy does not rule out aspiration. A high index of suspicion should be maintained. Intermittently a chest-ray obtained for a child who is wheezing shows cardiomegaly rather than peribronchial cuffing. Asthma is statistically more likely but this can be the presentation of heart failure. In turn, a chest x-ray is warranted for any patient with their first presentation of wheezing patient and certainly for any child who is admitted to the ICU for wheezing. With regard to asthma that occurs without wheezing, the movement of air is required to hear wheezing. It is possible to have such significant airflow restrictions that patients don't produce audible wheezing. Patients who present with a quiet chest or limited airflow on auscultation require immediate action.

Children presenting with an asthma exacerbation may have a few days of URI symptoms followed by increased work of breathing. The patient may have low room air oxygen saturations. The patient's position of comfort may be sitting up to support their muscles of respiration. Accessory muscle use is noted. There is a prolonged expiratory phase on auscultation. Some children in an effort to increase airway pressure may be breathing out with pursed lips or in smaller children grunting may be noted. The child may not be able to speak in more than one or two word phrases. Therapy should be started immediately first with supplemental oxygen to address hypoxemia. If the child mild respiratory distress, nasal cannula oxygen may be sufficient. If the child has moderate or severe respiratory distress, oxygen should be delivered by either face mask or non-rebreather face mask. Inhaled beta agonists such as albuterol are given to relax bronchial smooth muscles. IV or subcutaneous terbutaline or epinephrine may be required if there is not enough air movement to deliver inhaled medications. Steroids should be given early as the effect will take some time. If there is limited improvement with initial therapy arrangements should be made for ICU admission. Many emergency departments will attempt to obtain arterial blood gases. However, the clinical picture alone may provide enough information to guide therapy.

Asthma Therapy

Supplemental Oxygen. Oxygen can be delivered with a standard nasal cannula, but the FiO_2 is limited. Standard nasal cannula might provide up to 28% FiO_2. Increasing the flow of oxygen with a standard cannula above 4 to 5 LPM is not usually tolerated. A simple face mask might increase the FiO_2 to 50%. A tightly sealed non-rebreather face masks might be able to provide a FiO_2 closer to 1. Providing oxygen with a HFHNC may provide nearly complete humidification of the airway gases and the FiO_2 also approaches 1. A 2014 study by Rubin et al.[440] demonstrated a decrease in effort of breathing in patients receiving HFHNC. The mechanism of its effect is not elucidated. Some clinicians have begun using HFHNC as a mechanism for delivery of beta agonists or other aerosolized medications, but there is not yet data supporting its use.

Inhaled β Agonists. Inhaled β agonists are used to relax bronchial smooth muscles. The most commonly used β agonists is albuterol, which is a racemic mixture of the active R and inactive S enantiomer. Levalbuterol, the active R enantiomer, is available as a separate preparation, but recent studies have not shown it to be more effective[441] or have less elevations in HR.[442] Albuterol is β_2 selective and comes as a metered dose inhaler or solution for nebulization. For initial therapy in the ICU, continuous albuterol is preferred, and the usual dose is 0.15 to 0.5 mg/kg/h or 10 to 20 mg/h. After improvement in air movement with decreased respiratory distress, intermittent doses can be given every 1 to 2 hours. Terbutaline as an inhaled medication is less β_2 selective compared with albuterol and therefore is used less commonly. Terbutaline remains as an important IV medication. Tachycardia is commonly associated with albuterol use. At times it is unclear if the elevated HR is related to toxicity of medications or due to ongoing respiratory distress. Arrhythmias may be seen with albuterol use but this is usually just an increased frequency of PVC. Diastolic hypotension is observed with higher doses of albuterol, although this can be related to decreased intravascular volume and increased intrathoracic pressure. Agitation and tremors can be seen with CNS stimulation. Hypokalemia may be noted as the Beta agonists drive potassium into cells. Ipratropium bromide, an inhaled anticholinergic, is sometimes paired with intermittent albuterol doses. Ipratropium bromide has the benefit of promoting bronchodilation without decreasing mucociliary clearance.

Corticosteroids. IV steroids are preferred to oral dosing in the ICU due to the possibility of decreased absorption or delayed onset. Methylprednisolone is used commonly due to its limited mineralocorticoid effects. The initial dose is 2 mg/kg and then 0.5 to 1 mg/kg every 6 hours. There may be regional preference for dexamethasone or hydrocortisone. Steroids are typically given for the duration of the acute asthma phase. If steroids are given for 5 days or less, they are not usually tapered. Systemic steroid use is associated with hyperglycemia, hypertension and occasionally agitation. In the initial ICU care inhaled steroids are of no benefit.

Intravenous Fluids. Children admitted to the ICU with critical asthma will likely be dehydrated from limited oral intake during their illness and increased insensible losses from the higher RR. The patient's circulating volume should be supported with fluid boluses if needed. However, excessive fluids should be avoided as this could lead to pulmonary edema. Pulmonary edema could worsen both oxygenation and airway resistance. Fluid boluses may also be needed for children whose respiratory distress progresses require mechanical ventilation. Hypotension often occurs during intubation.

Intravenous and Subcutaneous β Agonists. A significant decrease in air exchange may result in poor delivery of inhaled medications and IV β agonists may be required. Terbutaline is often the first choice of the available beta agonists. Terbutaline is relatively β_2 selective as compared with isoproterenol and epinephrine. Terbutaline can be given subcutaneously for children without IV access as a dose of 0.01 mg/kg/dose up to a maximum of 0.3 mg. IV terbutaline is loaded at a dose of 10 μg/kg over 10 to 20 minutes followed by a continuous infusion of terbutaline in a range of 0.1 to 10 μg/kg/min. The infusion can be titrated to effect. Subcutaneous epinephrine may be given for severe asthma exacerbation with limited IV access with a dose of 0.01 mg/kg of to the 1:1000 solution with a maximum dose of 0.5 mg. Absorption of the drug may be limited by poor perfusion to extremities. IV epinephrine may be an ideal drug for mechanically ventilated patients with hypotension. The use of isoproterenol in critical asthma has decreased over time.

Methylxanthines. There is regional variation in the use of the methylxanthine aminophylline in place of IV terbutaline as a second line drug for critical asthma. Fewer children with asthma are admitted to the ICU with a methylxanthine as a chronic medication. There are improved controller medications including the leukotriene inhibitors so fewer children are receiving oral theophylline. The methylxanthines promote bronchial smooth muscle relaxation, but the exact mechanism of action is not known. IV aminophylline is loaded at a dose of 5 to 7 mg/kg over 30 minutes, followed by a continuous infusion in the range of 0.5 to 0.9 mg/kg/h. If the patient has taken oral theophylline in the past 24 hours, the loading dose is reduced by 50% or the aminophylline dosing is adjusted based on a serum theophylline level. In general, an aminophylline loading dose of 1 mg/kg will raise the serum theophylline level by 2 μg/mL. The target range for serum theophylline in acute asthma is 10 to 20 μg/mL. Theophylline has a very narrow therapeutic window. Theophylline levels above 20 μg/mL are associated with nausea, tachycardia, restlessness, or irritability. Higher theophylline levels have been associated with seizure activity.

Magnesium. Magnesium can be given as an inhaled or IV medication to relax bronchial muscles. Smooth muscle relaxation occurs due to magnesium's effect as a calcium channel blocker. Results from the 2013 MAGNEsium Trial in Children (MAGNETIC)[443] indicate nebulized magnesium may be beneficial in an acute severe asthma exacerbation. There is some evidence that IV magnesium may also be beneficial in severe asthma.[444,445] As there is still regional variation to magnesium, at the least a magnesium level should be checked with the initial set of electrolytes and hypomagnesium should be treated. The dose for critical asthma and hypomagnesium can be the same 25 to 45 mg/kg given over 30 minutes. Magnesium toxicity can include muscle weakness, cardiac arrhythmias, decreased reflexes, and respiratory depression.

Helium. Mixtures of helium and oxygen (heliox) can be used to improve laminar gas flow. This occurs due to the decreased density of helium as compared with nitrogen (approximately one-seventh). For Helium to be beneficial in small airways, it must occur in a high ration with oxygen. The greatest benefits may be seen with an 80:20 or 70:30 ratio of helium:oxygen. Therefore, hypoxemia and the need for increased supplemental oxygen may limit heliox use. There is data supporting the use of heliox as a method of delivering inhaled β_2 agonists.[446] As with other advanced therapy, helium may not have a role in routine care, but there may be benefit from its use in severe critical asthma.

Ketamine. Ketamine is a noncompetitive N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonist that can produce a state of dissociative anesthesia. An additional effect of ketamine is bronchodilation. It is a useful medication for sedation in the ICU as ketamine has limited effect on the respiratory drive, and in usual doses, hemodynamics are not usually affected. For patients with asthma who are intubated and mechanically ventilated, ketamine may be a good choice for sedation along with a benzodiazepine. Further, there was one pediatric study[447] showing an improvement in the PaO_2/FiO_2 ratio as well as dynamic compliance in mechanically ventilated children with refractory bronchospasm who were receiving a continuous infusion of Ketamine. There has been no study to show whether ketamine used to treat anxiety is beneficial in preventing intubation in patients during an asthma attack. For non-intubated patients, a recent Cochrane Database Review[448] did not show significant benefit in severe acute asthma. If a decision is made to use ketamine either for a procedure or a means of sedation, the bolus dose is usually 1 mg/kg, allowing time for effect before repeating. Ketamine is given as a continuous infusion at the dose of 5 to 30 μg/kg/min titrated to effect. One of the additional side effects of ketamine can be dysphoria, and as such it is usually given with a benzodiazepine.

Noninvasive Ventilation. There is very limited evidence that NIV is effective in children with asthma.[335] Clinically patients with effective air exchange who fight the mask and positive pressure do not benefit from NIV. Nevertheless, some children with very limited air exchange and fatigue take to NIV easily and appear more comfortable. NIV may allow time for therapies to become effective (steroids) and may prevent intubation. This should not be used when the level of alertness or ability to protect the airway is diminished.

Intubation. By the time patients with asthma require intubation and mechanical, they are hypoxemic, acidotic, fatigued, and have limited reserve. It is suggested that the most experienced person available perform the intubation. Appropriate venous access is required, and fluid boluses may be necessary. Ketamine and a benzodiazepine have been recommended by many. Ketamine may produce increased secretions, so atropine should be considered. Ketamine may produce dysphoria so the benzodiazepine is given for its amnestic effects. The management style in our ICU is to get the patient back to breathing spontaneously or initiating their own breathes as soon as possible after intubation. In turn, Rocuronium can be considered as medium short-acting muscle relaxant. Succinylcholine can be used, but the other side effects of this medication, including elevation of potassium, should be considered. A cuffed ETT is recommended, as ventilator settings may require high peak pressures. Immediately after intubation, we typically hand ventilate the patient with a low rate. This is to prevent alveolar overdistension and reduce the risk of pneumothorax. There can be acute decompensation following intubation. Hypovolemia and increased intrathoracic pressures may be an issue. Following the DOPE acronym, one should also look for **Displacement** or **Obstruction** of the ETT and rule out **Pneumothorax** or **Equipment** failure.

Mechanical Ventilation. There can be controversy regarding the best means to mechanically ventilate patients with asthma. The argument against setting the ventilator in a pressure control mode is that changes in airway resistance that occur with asthma can result in delivery of an inadequate tidal volume. The argument against a the ventilator in a volume control mode is that due to flow patterns of the ventilator the same tidal volume can be delivered with a higher peak pressure as compared with a pressure control mode. As stated before, our management style is to get intubated asthmatics breathing spontaneously as soon as possible. This allows them to set their own breathing rate, and on pressure support and PEEP, they can set their own inspiratory to expiratory ratio. Pressure support has been recommended because it is patient-initiated, even if not patient-limited.[449] There may be initial elevations in $PaCO_2$, but if the patient is well oxygenated, the carbon dioxide elevation is usually well tolerated.

Historically, clinicians set zero or low PEEP for intubated asthmatics due to the perceived risk of hyperinflation[450] and barotrauma. However, since 1988 there have been four adult studies[451-454] and one pediatric study[277] strongly suggesting the benefits of extrinsic PEEP during mechanical ventilation for intubated asthmatics. These studies demonstrated that extrinsic PEEP, up to a level to matching intrinsic PEEP, improves the triggering sensitivity of the ventilator, diminishes ventilatory work, and reduces mechanical work of breathing for patients spontaneously breathing with assisted ventilation. As the work of breathing is reduced, there is improved patient comfort and potentially a reduced need for sedation. It is felt that matching extrinsic PEEP applied with the ventilator to the intrinsic PEEP developed by the patient with asthma may improve delivery of aerosol therapy via the ETT. Matching PEEP may possibly result in earlier liberation from mechanical ventilation. It should be noted that some clinicians believe that attempts to match PEEP may include the risk that extrinsic PEEP will cause overdistension of the lungs. Overdistension of the lungs may increase the risk of hyperinflation and air leak syndrome.[450] Our studies[277,287] indicate that spontaneous breathing with pressure support and PEEP lowers WOB. For the individual patient, the level of extrinsic PEEP at which hyperinflation will occur is unknown. Theoretically, for the spontaneously breathing patient, extrinsic PEEP applied to counteract intrinsic PEEP should not cause an increase in end-expiratory lung volume (EELV) until extrinsic PEEP exceeds intrinsic PEEP.[455] Further, the EELV may even decrease, leading to decreased dead space and increased compliance. In our ICU intrinsic, PEEP is measured during a ventilator pause, allowing the patient to exhale completely and measuring the pressure before the next breath. We gradually add extrinsic PEEP with the ventilator and observe RR and clinical work of breathing. We always keep extrinsic PEEP at a level below intrinsic PEEP. We continue to reassess the level of extrinsic and intrinsic PEEP as the patient responds to therapy. Further research is needed to determine the best practice of mechanical ventilation for intubated asthmatics, but this is limited by the small number requiring intubation each year.

Inhalational Anesthetics. One of the properties of inhaled anesthetics is bronchodilation. In turn, inhaled anesthetics have been used as rescue therapy in children with critical asthma who are intubated. We have used isoflurane in our ICU for its reduction in bronchospasm with the added benefit of a decreased sedation requirement. However, inhaled anesthetics are difficult to use in an ICU setting. Modern ICU ventilators are not designed to accept a vaporizer. There is no circle system in ICU ventilators, so there is a tremendous use of anesthetic vapor. There is no primary means of gas scavenging in an ICU ventilator, so significant steps must be taken to contamination of the patient room. There is a case series of six patients reported by Wheeler et al.[456] Dr. J. Tobias has published several articles[457-459] detailing the use of inhaled anesthetics in asthma and other clinical conditions. A recent retrospective cohort study by Char et al.[460] in intubated asthmatics did not demonstrate a difference in mortality between centers that did or did not use inhaled anesthetics. There was significantly greater length of mechanical ventilation, greater length of stay, and increased hospital charges in the centers using inhaled anesthetics. The significant expertise needed to safely deliver inhaled anesthetics may limit its use to a few centers. An anesthetic conserving device (AnaConDa Sedana Medical) is available in the European market but not the United States. The device is a miniature vaporizer and a conserving medium or reflective filter that keeps the inhaled anesthetic on the patient side of the device. This device can be used with a normal ventilator. Finally, as the scientific community learns more about the potential neurotoxicity with inhaled anesthetics, the physician must weigh the risk and benefit profile to long-term inhalational anesthetics for the management of status asthmaticus.

Extra Corporeal Life Support for Status Asthmaticus. ECLS has been used as a rescue therapy in near fatal asthma. As with inhaled anesthetics, the use of ECLS for this indication is likely limited to a small number of centers. One single center study reports[35] their use, but the number of patients (13 total) is too small to determine whether this therapy has advantages over mechanical ventilation or conventional therapy.

Pulmonary Hypertension

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

Systemic illness is a common cause of CNS dysfunction in infants and children. Seizures, head trauma, CNS infections, and hypoxic or metabolic encephalopathy commonly cause acute neurologic dysfunction in the PICU. Assessment of neurologic function depends on an understanding of the age-dependent progression of motor and cognitive skills. Table 79.8 lists the developmental milestones.

TABLE 79.8 Normal Ages for Major Developmental Milestones

Age	Motor Function	Language	Adaptive Behavior
4-6 weeks	Lifts head from prone position and turns from side to side	Cries	Smiles
4 months	Shows no head lag when pulled to sitting from supine position; tries to grasp large objects	Utters sounds of pleasure	Smiles, laughs aloud, and shows pleasure from familiar objects or persons
5 months	Grasps voluntarily with both hands; plays with toes	Makes primitive sounds	Smiles at self in mirror (ah, goo)
6 months	Grasps with one hand; rolls prone to supine; sits with support	His increased range of sounds	Expresses displeasure and food preferences
8 months	Sits without support; transfers objects from hand to hand; rolls supine to prone	Combines syllables (baba, dada, mama)	Responds to "No"
10 months	Sits well; crawls; stands holding; finger-thumb apposition in picking up small objects		Waves goodbye; plays patty-cake and peek-a-boo
12 months	Stands holding; walks with support	Says two or three words with meaning	Understands names of objects; shows interest in pictures
15 months	Walks alone	Utters several intelligible words	Requests by pointing; imitates
18 months	Walks up and down stairs holding; removes clothes	Says many intelligible words	Carries out simple commands
2 years	Walks up and down stairs by self; runs	Makes two- or three-word phrases	Engages in organized play; points to some parts of the body

Functional Postnatal Neurologic Development

Motor function in the newborn depends on gestational rather than postnatal age. That is, an infant born at 28 weeks' gestation exhibits motor responses similar to those of a full-term newborn when the former is 3 months old. Although potentially modifiable by cortical influence, most neonatal motor behavior is subcortically controlled, which permits normal motor behavior in newborns who have severe cortical damage. Assessment of intellectual development is difficult in a newborn; initially, it is based on the absence of reflexes and the acquisition of new motor skills. Adaptive or interactive behavior is first seen with accommodation to repeated stimuli and eye contact. The infant's intellectual development depends on the presence of external stimulation and social interaction, preferably from one or a few individuals. This is why infants and children who require long-term intensive care must have parental input and developmental stimulus.

Assessment of Neurologic Function

Clinical examination is the most important tool we have for assessing neurologic function in children. In an awake child, interactions with the examiner and caretakers are sensitive indicators of high or integrative cortical function. When the child's cognitive function is depressed from disease or drugs, examination of the general level of activity and peripheral and brainstem reflexes becomes an important, albeit crude, measure of CNS function. A detailed examination includes an evaluation of the level of consciousness and alertness in the context of sedative medications. The Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) is a commonly accepted tool to evaluate the level of function of neurologically impaired patients (Table 79.9); however, it was not developed for this purpose, and extensive research needs to continue on directed scales and noninvasive means to improve assessment consciousness in the critically ill child.[461] Painful stimulation can stimulate both decorticate or decerebrate posturing and likely indicates significant CNS malfunction and should trigger further investigation. Decerebrate posturing is an extension at the elbows with the arms and hands pronated, whereas decorticate posturing of the upper extremities is flexion at the elbows with the hands clenched. These responses to painful stimuli or no response at all should (in combination with attempts to elicit a cough, gag, or ability to handle oral secretions) make the practitioner question whether the patient can protect their airway. Pupillary reflex is a well preserved function, and therefore unreactive pupils are very concerning. Large reactive pupils may be caused by tricyclic antidepressant ingestion, atropine administration, or a symptom of pharmacologic withdrawal. Small reactive pupils may indicate damage at the level of the pons, but usually indicate the presence of opioids or barbiturates. Fundoscopic exam is important to assess for signs of increased ICP or retinal hemorrhage; however, the bedside practitioner may have difficulty with these assessments, and it may require an ophthalmologist consultation.

Laboratory Assessment of Neurologic Function

The EEG is used to diagnose seizures and isoelectric brain death and to monitor the effects of barbiturates administered to induce coma. In addition, continuous EEG monitoring is often used to detect nonconvulsive seizure activity in critically ill children.[226,462,463] This is a resource-intense monitoring system that has yet to show that it improves

TABLE 79.9 Glasgow Coma Scale for Infants and Children

Activity	Adult/Child Response	Infant Response	Score
Eye opening (E)	Spontaneous	Spontaneous	4
	To verbal stimuli	To verbal stimuli	3
	To pain	To pain	2
	None	None	1
Best verbal response (V)	Oriented, appropriate	Coos and babbles	5
	Confused conversation	Irritable cries	4
	Inappropriate words	Cries to pain	3
	Incomprehensible words	Moans to pain	2
	None	None	1
Best motor response (M)	Obeys verbal command	Normal movement	6
	Localizes stimulus	Withdraws upon touch	5
	Withdraws from noxious stimulus	Withdraws upon pain	4
	Decorticate flexion	Decorticate flexion	3
	Decerebrate extension	Decerebrate extension	2
	None (flaccid)	None (flaccid)	1

outcomes; however, its use continues to grow in neonatal and pediatric critical care, and further study is needed for this promising noninvasive tool. CT allows rapid detection of CNS lesions, the extent of structural injury, and noninvasive assessment of ICP. Cranial ultrasound is a bedside technique used to assess ventricular size and intracranial anatomy in infants with nonfused cranial sutures. MRI permits intraorbital and ocular injuries and brainstem and spinal cord lesions to be examined; it is also good for defining soft tissue abnormalities.[464] MRI's major drawback is the length of time required for each examination and the relative inaccessibility of the patient while in the scanner. Maintaining body temperature can also be a problem in small children during MRI scanning because the room must be cold. It may be difficult to safely perform MRI in patients who have significant cardiorespiratory compromise because many of the pumps and ventilators cannot enter the scanner. Doppler ultrasound allows bedside assessment of CBF velocity in the ICU. Although it does not directly measure CBF, Doppler ultrasound is a useful bedside guide to therapy. CBF scans are the "gold standard" and are usually required to diagnose brain death during barbiturate coma. ICP can be monitored by inserting a catheter into a lateral ventricle or by inserting a subarachnoid screw or transducer into the epidural space or cerebral parenchyma. The ventricular catheter provides an accurate waveform and permits withdrawal of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) to reduce ICP. The other devices used to measure ICP provide less consistent pressure waves and do not permit removal of CSF.

Traumatic Brain Injury

Despite advances in resuscitation care, morbidity following pediatric TBI remains high. TBI is composed of two components, an initial primary injury due to direct mechanical deformation of brain parenchyma, and a subsequent secondary injury that may develop over hours to days. Secondary injury may be the result of multiple mechanisms including ischemia, excitotoxicity, metabolic failure and eventual apoptosis, cerebral swelling, axonal injury, and inflammation and regeneration.[465] For improvements in outcome to be achieved in the pediatric critical care setting, secondary brain injury must be prevented or minimized.

Conventional wisdom about TBI has dictated that ischemia plays a major role in secondary brain injury. While reversal of ischemia is crucial, simply delivering oxygen to injured areas of the brain does not abate the onslaught of secondary injury cascades destroying vulnerable areas of brain following TBI. Recent evidence suggests that secondary injury persists despite adequate oxygen delivery to brain tissue due to persistent metabolic crisis.[466,467] Furthermore, hyperoxia is not effective in completely reversing metabolic crisis and may lead to persistent secondary injury due to superoxide and free radical generation. There is widespread heterogeneity of metabolism following TBI, with some regional areas of increased glucose and oxygen utilization (likely due to electrical instability); however, in large regions of the brain, oxidative metabolism is reduced to a critical threshold with critically low rates of $CMRO_2$.[468] This coupled with ongoing low CBF following TBI places viable brain tissue at risk.[468,469] How the neurovascular bundle regulates the delivery of blood flow to regions gripped in metabolic crisis in ongoing secondary crisis and determining how to manipulate CBF remains an important avenue of study in the immature brain.

Cerebral Perfusion Pressure and Cerebral Blood Flow

In children, developing effective treatments for TBI is complicated by the rapid changing responses of the immature brain to each type of brain injury during development from infancy through childhood.[470,471] Therefore, evaluation of therapies for children with brain injury must utilize immature animal models as a translational pathway to human trials in children. It must be understood that much of the research in this field that drives clinical guidelines and recommendations are born from adult clinical studies and adult aged small animal research. How this evidence translates to the child provides some direction but should catalyze further research focusing on the immature brain. This is especially true when the practitioner must indirectly target metabolic delivery in the face of secondary brain injury by attempting to modulate CBF and predict regulation or lack of regulation in the neurovascular bundle. Even in the healthy brain, CVR regulation is complex and poorly understood.[472-474] To add to this layer of complexity, CVR is likely heterogenous following brain injury dependent on the mechanisms of injury, age, and even gender. Optimal global CBF is an elusive clinical target, with a lower inflection point associated with ischemic injury and an upper inflection point associated with hyperemia increasing cerebral blood volume and ICP. In early posttraumatic brain injury, cerebral hypoperfusion may greatly contribute to secondary brain injury, ultimately increasing morbidity and mortality.[469,475] In adults, areas of contusions have low CBF similar to the ischemic penumbral zones surrounding areas of acute ischemic stroke.[476,477] Low CBF states have been demonstrated in children by xenon CT scans following TBI within 24 hours of the initial injury, but by 48 hours these patients had normal or supernormal blood flows.[475] Furthermore, CBF in pediatric patients as a target for neuro-resuscitation is a theoretical point of manipulation due to limited options of continuous measurement in the clinical setting. Therefore, CPP (mean arterial blood pressure [MAP] minus ICP) is a commonly used surrogate.

When cerebral autoregulation is impaired, CBF and the metabolic needs of the injured brain may depend on maintaining adequate CPP. The difficulty comes in identifying the term adequate. Currently, pediatric CPP thresholds (40-60 mm Hg) have been extrapolated from adult experimental and clinical TBI and stroke studies.[476,478] However, recently it has been reported in adults that ischemia following TBI may occur at much higher levels of CBF compared with stroke.[476] Chambers et al, have published much needed age-specific pediatric thresholds for critical CPP, below which cerebral ischemia occurs with unfavorable neurologic outcomes and increased mortality.[479-481] These studies identified inadequate CPP levels but did not identify an "optimal treatment" CPP, and therefore assumed that these CPP levels were equivalent to brain injury insult thresholds.

It is not clear if a CPP of 40 mm Hg is a minimal threshold and/or that an optimal CPP to prevent brain injury may be higher.[482] Using currently accepted pediatric CPP guidelines (CPP >40 mm Hg) may not ensure adequate oxygen delivery to brain tissue.[483,484] This raises the question: is a CPP greater than 40 mm Hg in the pediatric TBI patient high enough? Mild induced hypertension after ischemic stroke has shown promise in animal models but remains controversial in the clinical setting.[485,486] Adult TBI studies have observed an increased risk of adult RDS associated with targeting a CPP greater than 70 mm Hg, but it is unclear how applicable this is to pediatric neurocritical care.[487,488] A retrospective study of 146 pediatric TBI patients observed a strong association of poor outcome at discharge with hypotension within the first 6 hours of injury.[489] The window for treatment of hypoperfusion appears to be early after pediatric TBI, and may be of relatively short duration in children. We believe that early aggressive intervention of blood pressure support especially during early critical periods, such as initial resuscitation of a multitrauma patient, intubation, placement of support lines and neuromonitoring devices is critical to neuro-resuscitation. Guidelines released in 2012, based on Class III evidence for pediatric traumatic brain injury, suggest that a minimum CPP of 40 mm Hg should be maintained and that 50 mm Hg for a minimum CPP in older children may be required.[490] However, data in our laboratory in large animal models of TBI may support the use of higher CPP support (>70 mm Hg) in severe TBI.[491]

Targeting CPP often requires vasopressor support. While central venous access should not delay administration of vasopressor support, it is important to understand the risks of extravasation of these infusions and have qualified individuals place central venous access as soon as possible to mitigate these risks. Initial stabilization of the pediatric TBI patient may occur in limited resource environments where complex invasive intracranial monitoring may not be available. Early stabilization of cerebrovascular hemodynamics with phenylephrine and targeting a higher MAP or CPP may reduce brain injury and improve long-term outcomes. A common first-line vasopressor to improve MAP in pediatric brain injury is phenylephrine. Phenylephrine is an α adrenergic agonist that may have little or no effect on cerebral vasculature resistance.[492-495] Another vasoactive medication gaining favor is NE. NE primarily targets alpha-receptors for peripheral vasoconstriction, but has additional effects on β-receptors increasing inotropy. There are several published reports now in adults that show the rising use of NE as a preferred vasoactive medication and may provide more predictable CPP augmentation when compared with dopamine.[496-498] Prathep et al. have reported that adults with isolated traumatic brain injury and cardiac dysfunction have a higher incidence of in-hospital mortality.[499] Further research is critical to determine the degree of cardiovascular compromise following TBI in children and which vasopressor should be considered a first-line agent in pediatric brain injury; this currently should be determined by local experience and comfort of use. We believe that the next generation of treatments will build upon the tenets of ischemic neuro-resusciation and combine early directed metabolic neuroresuscitation.[500]

Respiratory Management in the Brain Injured Child

Airway Management. The comatose and brain-injured patient is at severe risk for respiratory failure due to loss of airway protective reflexes and impaired central regulation of respiratory function. In addition, progression of ALI and ARDS can be exacerbated by concomitant injuries (pulmonary contusions, aspiration, left ventricular dysfunction or failure, and inflammation due to systemic inflammation due to trauma or infection) and treatments to improve cerebral perfusion (crystalloid administration, hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis, hypernatremia, and vasopressor therapy). It is critical that the physician caring for these patients have a neuroprotective plan in place for induction and intubation, as well as adequate training and skill to obtain an artificial airway. In addition, the physician needs to be adept at ongoing neuro-resuscitation in the face of progressive lung disease and hemodynamic instability from SIRS and rising MAPs impeding cardiac preload. The initial step in treating the head-injured pediatric patient is always to promote adequate oxygenation and ventilation, and to prevent or treat hypotension thereby limiting ischemia. Criteria for tracheal intubation include hypoxemia not resolved with supplemental oxygen, apnea, hypercarbia ($PaCO_2 > 45$ mm Hg), GCS ≤8, an incremental decrease in GCS greater than 3 independent of the initial GCS (combined with clinical correlation, anisocoria greater than 1 mm, cervical spine injury compromising ventilation, loss of pharyngeal reflex, and any clinical evidence of a herniation pattern or Cushing triad).[501]

Induction and Intubation. Patients with neurologic injury are at a high risk for aspiration during induction of anesthesia, due to loss of airway protective reflexes. In addition, there is a heightened risk of cervical spine injury due to trauma and most patients will be in a cervical collar requiring manual in-line stabilization. The goal of intubation in the neurologically impaired patients should be (1) rapid sequence from induction to placement of an ETT to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration; (2) blunt nociceptive reflexes that may further elevate ICP or cerebral hypertension that may exacerbate intracranial hemorrhage or facilitate herniation; (3) maintaining adequate, age-appropriate CPP; and (4) limiting ischemia by maximizing adequate oxygen delivery and maintaining $PaCO_2$ in a normal range to ensure appropriate CBF.[502] It should be assumed that all patients are at risk for a full stomach and cervical spine injury, so intubation should be performed utilizing a neuroprotective, rapid-sequence induction whenever possible. Supplemental oxygen (100%) should be delivered by face mask to allow nitrogen washout from the patient's FRC to allow sufficient oxygenation prior to tracheal intubation attempts. To avoid risk of aspiration bag-valve-mask (BVM) ventilation should not be done, unless the patient has signs and symptoms of impending herniation or life threatening desaturation events. Outside of impending herniation, if BVM ventilation is conducted it is imperative to not over-ventilate the patient, decreasing $PaCO_2$ and thereby increasing cerebral vascular resistance, resulting in decreased CBF and metabolic delivery in a brain-injured patient. A separate health care professional's sole responsibility is to maintain the child's neck in a neutral position by mild axial traction during airway maneuvers to prevent or perpetuate cervical spinal injury. Cricoid pressure should be done by a third individual only if the individual is appropriately trained in the technique and it should be abandoned if it hinders a rapid intubation attempt. Orotracheal intubation by direct laryngoscopy should be performed, and nasotracheal intubation should be avoided due to potential for direct intracranial damage in a patient with a basilar skull fracture.

Because tracheal intubation is a noxious stimulus and can increase ICP, appropriate sedative and analgesic medications should be administered during rapid-sequence induction. The hemodynamic and neurologic status of the patient dictates the choice of agents. Patients usually receive lidocaine (1-1.5 mg/kg) intravenously before intubation to help blunt the rise in ICP that occurs during direct laryngoscopy.[73] For the hemodynamically unstable patient, the combination of lidocaine, etomidate (0.2-0.6 mg/kg), and neuromuscular blockade with rocuronium (1 mg/kg) or succinylcholine (1 mg/kg) IV is a popular choice. The authors believe that succinylcholine may still be an option for rapid sequence intubation (RSI) in children who may be a difficult airway due to its rapid recovery, as opposed to the non-depolarizing intermediate neuromuscular blockade of rocuronium. There are several choices for induction agents in the critically ill child with acute brain injury. In the following sections, we will discuss the pros and cons of each induction agent. It still remains unclear if any of these agents have particular advantages or disadvantages for patients with brain injury, all have been implicated in animal studies as neuroprotectants and neurotoxins. But what is clear is that they are essential to the care of these patients and practitioners should stay current with literature and consider the pharmacodynamics of each drug.

Etomidate. Etomidate is a short-acting IV drug that produces sedation, anxiolysis, and amnesia. Side effects include respiratory depression, hypotension, myoclonus, and adrenal suppression; and it should not be used in children with suspected adrenal insufficiency and sepsis.[503] Etomidate has the benefits of decreasing ICP by reductions in CBF and $CMRO_2$ and has the advantage of producing less cardiovascular depression than barbiturates or propofol, preserving CPP.[504,505] These neuroprotective qualities are counterbalanced by its ability to increase cerebral vascular resistance by a greater magnitude than its reduction of $CMRO_2$ resulting in an increased metabolic deficit.[506,507] The increased metabolic deficit has the potential expand the ischemic core and penumbra in brain injured tissue. This increase in cerebrovascular tone is thought to be attributed to etomidate's inhibition of NO synthase.[508] Particular attention should also be paid to the rapid recovery of etomidate, once the airway is secured etomidate's effects on consciousness dissipates quickly, principally due to the redistribution of the drug from the brain to inactive tissue sites. Recovery of consciousness can be between 5 and 15 minutes, and if rocuronium (paralyzed for approximately 45 minutes) is used in combination for RSI, the patient will need ongoing sedation while paralyzed. The addition of a short-acting opioid such as fentanyl may be necessary, especially if the patient has concomitant injuries, such as bone fractures. An alternative is the combination of lidocaine, fentanyl (1-4 μg/kg), and rocuronium. In the hemodynamically stable patient, either of the provided combinations with fast-acting benzodiazepine midazolam (0.05-0.2 mg/kg) can be added. In addition, the short-acting narcotic fentanyl, when used with lidocaine, can decrease the catecholamine release associated with direct laryngoscopy.[509]

Ketamine. Ketamine is a phencyclidine derivative typically formulated as a mixture of two enantiomers in a hydrochloride salt form. It possess of low pH of around 4, which can produce pain at the injection site when administered intramuscularly or intravenously. Ketamine is a NMDA antagonist, which produces increases in CBF and $CMRO_2$.[510,511] Early studies in patients with obstructed CSF pathways reported ketamine administration increase ICP with reductions in CPP.[512,513] More recent studies in adult patients with severe head injury have demonstrated improvements in CPP and minimal increases in ICP with ketamine.[514-516] One recent report of 30 intubated pediatric head injury patients observed that single doses of ketamine lowered ICP without producing decreases in blood pressure or CPP.[517] It is still unclear what ketamine's effect is on neurologic outcome in these patients or in patients where ventilation is not being tightly controlled. However, we believe that ketamine can be used in the brain injured patient, especially in multitrauma patients and if etomidate is not indicated.

Propofol. Propofol is a short-acting sedative-hypnotic IV agent that can be used to provide moderate or deep sedation. Propofol can induce a deep state of sedation rapidly, provide a short duration of effect, and have a pleasant recovery phase. Propofol is a very popular agent for sedating pediatric patients with neurologic conditions for noninvasive diagnostic imaging, such as a CT scan or MRI. Due to the fast onset and recovery following administration, repeated neurologic examinations are easy to assess such as a child with sickle cell disease who comes in with altered mental status due to a stroke. Propofol also has anticonvulsant properties and reduces ICP, which can be advantageous in sedating a patient with epilepsy or a patient with concerns for obstructive hydrocephalus due to a malfunctioning ventriculoperitoneal shunt to obtain diagnostic neuroradiologic imaging.[518] While there have been cases of propofol providing adequate sedation and successfully treating intracranial hypertension,[518,519] several pediatric traumatic brain injury case reports have reported metabolic acidosis and death in patients on prolonged (24 hours) continuous infusion of propofol.[520-524] Furthermore, a rare but potentially fatal "propofol infusion syndrome," associated with lactic acidosis, hyperlipidemia, and multiorgan system failure, was first described in pediatric patients who received prolonged (24 hours) continuous infusion and at higher dosages (>4.5 mg/kg/h).[525] Current guidelines suggest, that in the care of pediatric traumatic brain-injured patients, "continuous infusion of propofol is not recommended."[526] Adverse effects of propofol include pain at the injection site, apnea or respiratory depression, hypotension, and bradycardia, which can be detrimental in a patient at risk for brain ischemia. If used particular attention should be paid to the decrease in mean arterial blood pressure with the administration of propofol. Crystalloid bolus and vasopressor usage will likely be needed to counter act the effects of propofol to maintain proper CPP and avoid ischemic insult. Propofol does not provide any analgesia.

Dexmedetomidine. Dexmedetomidine, a centrally acting α_2-adrenergic agonist, is a recently FDA-approved agent used for short-term (<24 hours) continuous IV sedation of adults who are tracheally intubated.[527] Like propofol, it has a rapid onset and a relatively rapid elimination half-life and is administered as a loading dose followed by continuous IV infusion. One of the advantages is that it provides sedation with a lower risk of respiratory depression than many other sedative medications. There is increased interest with this agent as a sedative during noninvasive neuroradiologic imaging studies in children who are not intubated. In one study, dexmedetomidine was compared with propofol in children undergoing MRI studies.[528] While the onset of sedation and recovery time were significantly shorter in the children that received propofol, hypotension, respiratory depression and desaturation were more common compared with the children receiving dexmedetomidine.[528]

There is increased interest in the use of dexmedetomidine as a sedative and potential neuroprotective agent in both adults and children, as animal studies revealed neuroprotection from hypoxia-ischemia and decreased apoptosis, and adult human studies in healthy volunteers demonstrated parallel decrease in cerebral metabolic rate for oxygen and CBF, which may potentially be helpful in briefly sedating patients who are at risk for intracranial hypertension, such as head trauma, brain tumor, and obstructive hydrocephalus.[529] In pediatric traumatic brain injury case reports, no detrimental effects on their ICP were observed. However, systemic hypertension was observed in one child who was receiving dexmedetomidine with other sedatives, while bradycardia was observed in two other children who were receiving dexmedetomidine, other sedatives, and therapeutic hypothermia.[530,531] Further studies are warranted on the potential use of this agent in children at risk for intracranial hypertension. The most common adverse side effects of dexmedetomidine appear to be cardiovascular. Bradycardia with rare reports of sinus pause or cardiac arrest has been reported. Hypotension has been reported as well as hypertension, the latter thought to be due to peripheral α_{2B} agonism with peripheral vasoconstriction. There are conflicting reports on the effects of ventilatory function, with some studies suggesting mild respiratory depression, while others show no effect. While ICP does not appear to increase, CPP and CBF have been shown to decrease. The effects on seizure threshold appear to be mixed.[532] The authors do not recommend dexmedetomidine as an induction agent; however, it may be a useful agent for patients with brain injury and ongoing sedation needs; however, further study in pediatric patients is needed.

After successful tracheal intubation, oxygen saturation of 100%, normocarbia (35-39 mm Hg confirmed by arterial blood gas and trended with an end-tidal CO_2), and a chest x-ray showing the tracheal tube in good position above the carina (right mainstem tracheal intubation is common in pediatrics) should be confirmed. Unless the patient has signs or symptoms of herniation, prophylactic hyperventilation ($PaCO_2$ < 35 mm Hg) should be avoided. Hyperventilation causes cerebral vasoconstriction, which decreases CBF and subsequent cerebral blood volume—this will lower ICP, but may lead to ischemia.[533] However, in the presence of signs and symptoms of herniation, such as the Cushing triad (irregular respirations, bradycardia, systemic hypertension), pupillary dysfunction, lateralizing extremity weakness, or extensor posturing, hyperventilation with 100% oxygen can be a life-saving maneuver. Hyperoxia is to be avoided, once a stable airway is obtained, and FiO_2 should be titrated to maintain SaO_2 greater than 90%. Elevating the head to 30 degrees (with C-spine precautions) increases venous drainage and lowers ICP.[534,535] Furthermore, the head should be midline to prevent obstruction of venous return from the brain. If these maneuvers don't relieve the signs and symptoms of herniation, additional sedative and analgesic agents can be administered as long as hypotension is avoided.

Supraglottic Airway Devices. While supraglottic airways are not considered a permanent airway in critically ill patients, competency in placement is critical for all individuals participating in resuscitation of a brain-injured child. Supraglottic airway devices, such as a LMA device, can be lifesaving, and in a situation where there is difficulty with direct laryngoscopy and inadequate BMV, an LMA should be placed to limit hypoxia and control ventilation until a physician with advanced airway skills can arrive to place an ETT.

Postintubation Stabilization. After successful intubation, inspired oxygen should be titrated to maintain oxygen saturation greater than 90 percent, normocarbia (35-39 mm Hg confirmed by arterial blood gas and trends followed with end tidal CO_2, unless there is impending herniation when it is acceptable to use moderate hyperventilation to 30-35 mm Hg), and confirmation of ETT position with a portable chest radiograph.[533] The head of the bed should be elevated to 30 degrees, and the patient's head should remain midline to improve venous drainage and lower ICP.[534]

Neurologic Monitoring. Recent guidelines published by Kochanek et al. provide an update on treatment for infants, children, and adolescents with TBI.[536] ICP increases when the intracranial volume of one of the four compartments (CSF, blood, brain, and supporting tissues) within the cranial vault increases. An increase in one compartment can occur without raising ICP if an equal volume is displaced from another compartment. When displacement is no longer possible, ICP rises in proportion to the added volume. In older children and adults who have a rigid calvaria, the cranial cavity is a closed container and the contents are noncompressible. In patients with a GCS of 8, there is Grade III evidence to place and ICP monitor.[536] Treatment of ICP should be considered when pressure is greater than

20 mm Hg; however, absolute goals are unclear children, and intermittent increases in ICP greater than 20 mm Hg may be associated with autonomic instability. Chesnut et al. have recently reported in a randomized control trial comparing intracranial monitoring with a strategy of imaging and clinical examination in adults with severe TBI.[537] While aspects of the study and recent evidence in adult severe TBI calls into question the utility of treating an ICP goal of 20 mm Hg, these goals should likely be used as a component of multimodal monitoring (MMM). The most common monitor used in TBI as an adjuvant monitor for MMM is brain tissue oxygenation (Licox, Integra). There is limited evidence in children, but in our center brain tissue, oxygen monitoring is a standard in children with severe TBI.[484,538] If brain tissue oxygenation is used, maintain partial pressure of brain tissue oxygen greater than 10 to 15 mm Hg. It is unclear how multimodal neurologic monitoring, both invasive (brain tissue oxygenation, microdialysis, CBF, intracranial EEG) and noninvasive, should be considered for advanced neuroresuscitation, but studies including the one by Chesnut et al. prove that future research is critical to understand the mechanisms, timing, and monitoring of the brain to limit secondary injury.

Adjuvant First and Second Tiered Therapies for Intracranial Hypertension and Secondary Injury. In the 2012 guidelines[536] the use of hypertonic saline for intracranial hypertension is now grade II evidence and should be considered reduce ICP in pediatric TBI. Use of 3% saline to treat increased ICP is gaining in popularity[539] because the sodium does not cross the blood-brain barrier quickly and it has an osmolar gradient similar to that of mannitol. Three percent saline has additional theoretical beneficial effects, including enhancement of cardiac output, reduction of inflammation, restoration of normal cellular resting membrane potential and cell volume, and stimulation of the release of atrial natriuretic peptide. Recommended dosing is 6.5 to 10 mL/kg IV bolus, but the practitioner may consider starting with small boluses and titrate to pharmacodynamics response. Repeat doses can be given but it is recommended to keep serum osmolality less than 320 mOsm/L. Prophylactic hyperventilation less to a $PaCO_2$ less than 30 mm Hg should be avoided. Mannitol reduces ICP by decreasing blood viscosity and transiently increasing CBF and oxygen transport. The adenosine concentration decreases and CBF is maintained in areas that have intact autoregulation. CBF remains constant despite a decrease in cerebral blood volume and ICP. Mannitol also reduces ICP by withdrawing water from the brain parenchyma and excreting the water as urine.[540] It takes 20 to 30 minutes for this osmotic effect of the drug to develop. Intermittent boluses of 0.25 to 1 g/kg of mannitol are administered intravenously to control ICP. The drug eventually enters the CSF and can increase ICP. Barbituates should only be considered for refractory intracranial hypertension. There is no evidence to recommend tight glucose control in head injured patients, nor is there evidence suggesting the use of immune modulating diets at this time. There is grade II evidence to suggest that antiepileptic therapy should be initiated in patients with severe traumatic brain injury; in our institution, we placed continuous EEG monitoring and start prophylactic levetiracetam. Elevating the head of the bed 30 degrees while keeping it in the midline position enhances cerebral venous outflow. Even slight movement of the head to a few degrees off midline may double the ICP.

Hypothermia for Severe Traumatic Brain Injury. Hutchison et al. published a multicenter randomized control trial to investigate the use of hypothermia as a neuroprotective strategy in children.[541] This trial concluded that children with severe TBI, where therapeutic hypothermia (32.5°C for 24 hours) was initiated within 8 hours of injury, there was no improvement in neurologic outcome and the hypothermic group had an increase in mortality. Subsequent analysis of this study suggests that the hypothermia group had a significant increase in hypotension and decreased CPP that may have contributed to the increase in mortality.[542] A second phase 3 randomized control trial was initiated to compare hypothermia and normothermia after severe TBI in children with a prolonged hypothermia window, 48 to 72 hours, and slower rewarming phase.[543] The study was terminated early for futility after interim analysis. Therefore, we believe current standard of care is normothermia for traumatic brain injury in children.

Decompressive Craniectomy. Decompressive craniectomy with duraplasty may be considered for pediatric patients with TBI who display early signs of deterioration, herniation, or refractory hypertension. Currently, there is an ongoing study in adults to investigate surgical decompression for severe TBI.

Environment. Care of patients with TBI within an organized trauma system has shown to reduce mortality associate with severe injury.[544] Unfortunately, most severe traumatic brain injuries occur in regions lacking in prehospital and advanced care in an ICU.[545] Critically injured children with traumatic brain injury should be stabilized and transferred to a level 1 trauma center as soon as possible.

Hypoxic-Ischemic Encephalopathy

There is little evidence that increased ICP or correction of ICP alters the outcome of patients with HIE. The clinical impression is that the outcome is less favorable in patients who have trauma or metabolic encephalopathy and that aggressive management of ICP, at best, prevents further CNS damage, which is important.[546] The GCS score provides a reasonable assessment of neurologic function in these patients.

Hydrocephalus

Another cause of increased ICP is an increase in CSF volume (i.e., hydrocephalus). Common causes of hydrocephalus include obstructed ventricular shunts, aqueductal stenosis/compression as a result of congenital malformations, infection, posterior fossa tumors, or intracranial bleeding. Inserting an external or internal shunt to reduce the volume of CSF can be lifesaving.

Tumors

Brain tumors are common in children, and approximately 70% occur in the posterior fossa. The most common tumor type is astrocytoma. The initial symptoms may include focal deficits, ataxia, or symptoms of increased ICP. A change in condition following tumor resection requires an immediate neurologic evaluation and possibly a brain CT scan. Following a posterior fossa craniectomy, hemorrhage into the posterior fossa can compromise respiration, and if there is an externalized ventricular drain present, output should be carefully inspected. Postoperatively, the patient should be followed closely for syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion (SIADH), DI, and cerebral salt wasting. SIADH usually occurs within 24 to 48 hours following surgery and results in the retention of free water and a decrease in serum electrolytes, which may rapidly worsen cerebral edema. Central DI usually follows the removal of a suprasellar tumor and results in significant diuresis when antidiuretic stores are exhausted with a resulting increased serum osmolality and a low urine osmolality and urine specific gravity (<1.005). DI is part of a typical triphasic (SIADH to DI to SIADH) response following suprasellar surgery and is treated with volume replacement, and a vasopressin infusion may be required.

Status Epilepticus in Children

Status epilepticus is a continuous motor seizure that lasts for more than 20 minutes or a series of seizures without intercurrent awakening. Although it is common for physicians to never find a cause of the seizures, the most commonly diagnosed causes are infections (meningitis or encephalitis) and metabolic abnormalities (toxins, head trauma, and hypoxic and ischemic injury). Because seizure activity increases with status epilepticus, brain and skeletal muscle metabolism and oxygen consumption increase and place the child at risk for cellular hypoxia. During a seizure, airway obstruction and ineffective chest wall and diaphragmatic excursion can limit ventilation and worsen arterial hypoxemia and hypercapnia. Treatment of a seizure begins with establishing a patent airway, administering oxygen, and ensuring adequate ventilation. IV anticonvulsant drugs are given to stop the seizure. Commonly used anticonvulsants include lorazepam, phenobarbital, paraldehyde, and phenytoin. Lorazepam is a rapid and reliable drug used to stop seizures. Boluses of 0.1 mg/kg are given intravenously or rectally when there is no IV access. Phenobarbital, 5- to 10- mg/kg boluses (maximal dose of 20 mg/kg), also stops seizures. The main complication of lorazepam is respiratory depression when administered in high doses. Giving both phenobarbital and lorazepam together exaggerates the respiratory depression. Fosphenytoin is also given intravenously in doses of up to 20 mg/kg and should be administered slowly to avoid cardiovascular depression. Paraldehyde, 0.3 mL/kg, can be given rectally. Finally, an IV injection of 1 to 4 mg/kg of sodium thiopental stops most intractable seizures; higher doses of the drug may cause apnea, and the risk of vomiting and aspiration of gastric contents is real. Once the seizures are under control, the cause of the seizures must be determined.

Renal System

Functional Development of the Renal System. Embryologic development of the renal system begins in the middle of the third week of gestation with development of the pronephric tubules. By 10 weeks' gestation, a functioning kidney and collection system exist, and fetal urine is discharged into the bladder. At 32 to 36 weeks' gestation, each kidney has a full complement of nephrons. Because the placenta is the major excretory organ of the fetus, renal growth is not governed by functional requirements. Renal growth increases linearly with body weight and body surface area during the third trimester of pregnancy. The glomerular filtration rate (GFR) increases rapidly from 28 to 35 weeks of gestation. At term, the GFR is 10 mL/min/m^2 and increases to 20 mL/min/m^2 by 2 weeks of age. Although the GFR of premature infants is lower, the rate of increase is the same as that in a term infant.[547] Tubular function is not fully mature in full-term newborns. The newborn kidney is sensitive to antidiuretic hormone (ADH) and vasopressin, and urine osmolarity can vary from only 50 up to 780 mOsm/L.[548] The tubular function of premature infants is less mature.

The newborn's renal threshold for bicarbonate is about 20 mEq/L, which means that standard acid-base nomograms do not apply to infants because their serum bicarbonate concentration of 20 mEq/L is not indicative of metabolic acidosis. The renal tubular glucose threshold of term infants is similar to that of adults, but it is only 125 to 150 mg/dL in premature infants. A full-term infant has 1% or less fractional excretion of sodium by the third day of life. Fractional excretion of sodium can be much higher (5%) in premature infants. Renin, angiotensin, and aldosterone concentrations are high in newborns and decrease over the first few weeks of life.

Assessment of Renal Function. In the resting state, the kidney receives 20% to 25% of the cardiac output, and due to autoregulation, the kidney maintains near constant renal blood flow and GFR. Creatinine is an end product of skeletal muscle catabolism and is excreted solely by the kidneys and blood urea nitrogen is a byproduct of protein metabolism. Values for BUN can increase independent of renal function as a result of dehydration, high protein intake, and degradation of blood from the GI tract. Normal values for pediatric renal function are presented in Table 79.10.

Renal Pharmacology. An important aspect of critical care is the maintenance of appropriate fluid balance in the critically ill child. Even in patients who have normal renal function, such as patients with ARDS, chronic lung disease, and CHF, diuretics are often used to limit lung edema and help with cardiorespiratory dysfunction. The ascending loop diuretic furosemide is likely one of the most widely used drugs in pediatric intensive care. Furosemide reaches the ascending loop of Henle by the way of the tubular fluid. A prescribed starting dose of furosemide is typically 0.5 to 1 mg/kg up to approximately 10 mg total dose for patients who are naïve to diuretic therapy. The lowest dose necessary to increase urine output should be used, to limit

TABLE 79.10 Normal Values for Pediatric Renal Function

	Age	Value
Creatinine (mg/dL)	1 year	0.41 ± 0.1
	10 years	0.61 ± 0.22
	18 years	0.91 ± 0.17
Glomerular filtration rate (mL/min/1.72 m^2)	2-8 days	39 (range, 17-60)
	6-12 months	103 (range, 49-157)
	2-12 years	127 (range, 89-165)
Urine concentration (mOsm/L)	1 month	600-1100
	2-16 years	1089 (range, 870-1309)

Modified from Goldsmith DI. Clinical and laboratory evaluation of renal function. In: Edelman CM Jr, ed. *Pediatric Kidney Disease*. Boston: Little, Brown; 1978:213.

toxicity including electrolyte imbalance and ototoxicity.[549] With progressive renal dysfunction, escalating doses of furosemide may be required to maintain the same clinical response. Electrolyte and renal function need to be monitored frequently, as diuretic therapy frequently causes significant hypokalemia and hypochloremia, as well as other electrolyte wasting. Furosemide is albumin-bound and, in low albumin states, often found in critical illness, the delivery of furosemide to renal secretory sites is decreased. Improved delivery and diuresis is often improved with the administration of 25% albumin just before or with the diuretic. The typical dose is 0.5 to 1 g albumin/kg. Additional diuretics acting at other locations such as hydrochlorothiazide (distal tubule) can are often used as adjuvant medications to improve diuresis. The drug spironolactone, which blocks the hormone aldosterone, is a weak diuretic but may prevent spare potassium loss. Failure of increasing amounts of diuretics to be effective likely represents worsening renal perfusion and or renal failure.

Renal Failure. Acute renal failure is defined as an abrupt, often temporary loss of renal function (see Chapters 17 and 42), where there is insufficient removal of nitrogenous wastes and problems with fluid and electrolyte balance. Acute renal failure is described by (1) the area of obstruction (prerenal, postrenal [obstructive], or intrinsic renal disorders); and (2) the urine volume (oliguria, polyuria, and anuria). Urine composition is often altered, and fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base disorders are common in acute renal failure. Common causes include hypoperfusion, obstruction, toxins, drugs, inflammation, and autoimmune disorders.

Prerenal causes are common in the critically ill child due to systemic hypoperfusion and reduced renal blood flow, resulting in reduced urine output and results in azotemia and ischemic renal damage. *Azotemia* is the term for the accumulation of nitrogenous byproducts of protein metabolism. Intravascular fluids in the case of dehydration or fluids and inotropic support may be needed to reverse prerenal renal failure. The adequacy of circulating blood volume is assessed by CVP and cardiac output measurements, and by estimating renal blood flow with Doppler flow studies or nuclear imaging techniques.

Intrinsic renal failure is caused by disorders of the renal glomeruli, tubules, or blood vessels. Glomerular diseases include hemolytic-uremic syndrome (HUS), poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis, Henoch-Schönlein purpura, and other inflammatory and immune complex diseases. Acute tubular injury is most commonly caused by hypoxia and ischemia; other causes are rhabdomyolysis, sepsis, hyperthermia, hemolysis, and a myriad of nephrotoxins, including mercury, carbon tetrachloride, and ethylene glycol.

Postrenal obstruction of urine flow can occur anywhere within the collecting system, but it occurs most commonly as partial obstruction of the bladder neck or the ureterovesical or ureteropelvic junction. All these malformations cause obstructive nephropathy and renal injury or renal failure. Signs of obstruction may be subtle and require radiologic, ultrasonic, or endoscopic evaluation to detect. Recurrent urinary tract infections are frequent clinical manifestations of obstructive lesions.[550]

Vascular diseases, including arterial embolism, venous thrombosis, and congenital malformations, are also causes of acute renal failure.

Hyperkalemia and Abnormalities of Sodium. With increasing renal dysfunction there is a continued decrease in excretion of potassium. Hyperkalemia can lead to life-threatening cardiac arrhythmias and requires immediate treatment. ECG presentation of results in a peak in the T wave at moderately elevated potassium levels. As hyperkalemia increases, there may be ST segment depression, and widening of the QRS complex, leading to conduction abnormalities, bradycardia, ventricular fibrillations or asystole. Treatment includes removal of exogenous potassium (administration should be discontinued immediately) and calcium in the form of IV CaCl 10 to 20 mg/kg or CaGluconate 30 to 60 mg/kg to stabilize the cardiac cell membrane. IV sodium bicarbonate 1 to 2 mEq/kg will drive potassium into the intracellular fluid by increasing blood pH. Glucose and insulin also drive K+ into cells. Glucose is given as 1 to 2 g/kg IV with insulin 1 unit per 4 g of glucose IV. If the patient is intubated, increasing RR makes blood more basic driving K+ into the cells. It is important to note that none of these efforts will remove potassium from the body. Prior to the initiation of dialysis, potassium removal may be attempted with the ion exchange resin Kayexalate, a sodium polystyrene sulfate, which can bind potassium. It is given orally or rectally in suspension but does require excretion from the body. The dose is 1 g/kg orally, and it can be given every 6 hours; rectally, it can be given every 2 to 6 hours. The enema route is less effective than oral administration.

Severe hyponatremia and hypernatremia can be another electrolyte disturbance seen in the critically ill child. Hyponatremia may present with seizure activity, often when serum sodium is less than 120 mEq/L. In the presence of hyponatremic seizures, the initial treatment is the administration of 3% hypertonic saline with a goal to terminate seizure activity and raise serum sodium to greater than 124 mEq/L. However, in the absence of seizures, if a patient reached this low value slowly, it has to be corrected slowly, to potentially avoid osmotic demyelination. The same condition applies to hypernatremia. Rapid correction of elevated serum sodium is likely more harmful than the value itself.

BOX 79.4 Indications for Dialysis

1. Severe hyperkalemia
2. Metabolic acidosis unresponsive to therapy
3. Fluid overload with or without severe hypertension
4. Fluid overload with or without congestive heart failure
5. Uremia causing encephalopathy, pericarditis, or bleeding
6. Nonobstructive anuria
7. Inborn errors of metabolism
8. Certain drug overdoses
9. Significantly elevated (>100) blood urea nitrogen possibly a relative indication
10. Potential treatment can reduce inflammation with sepsis or systemic inflammatory response syndrome

Renal Replacement Therapy. Renal replacement therapy may be required to improve ongoing fluid shifts and significant electrolyte disturbance (Box 79.4). Modalities for renal replacement therapy are commonly: peritoneal dialysis, hemodialysis, or continuous venovenous dialysis. Modality often depends on the size of the patient and the experience and resources of the institution.

Peritoneal dialysis (PD) has the benefits of being relatively low-cost, causing less hemodynamic compromise compared with venovenous filtration, requires no central venous line, and is technically simpler. This technique is especially effective in infants and smaller children. Peritoneal dialysis requires the insertion of a soft, multiholed catheter into the peritoneal cavity. When patency of the catheter is confirmed, a dialysate solution is infused that equilibrates with plasma and extracellular fluids. The parietal and visceral surfaces function as semipermeable dialysis membranes. The composition of the dialysis fluid is similar to that of plasma and consists of approximately 130 mEq/L of sodium, 100 mEq/L of chloride, 35 mEq/L of acetate or lactate as a buffer, 3.5 mEq/L of calcium, and 1.5 mEq/L of magnesium. The glucose concentration of the solution can be either isosmotic or hyperosmotic. Hyperosmotic solutions remove fluid and electrolytes. Respiratory compromise may occur with peritoneal dialysis because the increased abdominal pressure caused by the dialysate in the abdomen may prevent effective spontaneous ventilation. Mechanical ventilation will be required if this occurs. Bacterial or fungal peritonitis is common. Severe dehydration, circulatory collapse, and metabolic derangements are other complications of peritoneal dialysis.

The principles of hemodialysis are essentially the same as those of peritoneal dialysis, except the blood interfaces with a semipermeable membrane rather than with the peritoneum. Hemodialysis is more appropriate in the acute setting with life-threatening electrolyte disturbances, fluid overload, and toxic ingestions. Hemodialysis is more efficient than peritoneal dialysis. Hemofiltration and ultrafiltration are processes of convective solute transport. An ultrafiltrate of plasma is created by hydrostatic pressure exerted across a highly permeable membrane, with simultaneous blood volume replacement with a modified lactated Ringer solution.[551] Continuous venovenous hemofiltration (CVVHF) is a common form CRRT, which provides isotonic fluid removal but minimal solute clearance. However, these circuits can be easily converted to perform dialysis, termed *continuous venovenous hemodialysis* (*CVVHD*), providing more solute clearance. In smaller patients, accurate flow rates are important in circumstances where more than 15% of the patient's circulating blood volume can be in the CVVHD tubing. Furthermore, technical challenges occur in smaller patients due to flow characteristics of smaller dialysis catheters. Hemodialysis can be performed with two separate 5 Fr single lumen catheters, but typically a dual-lumen 7 Fr catheter at a minimum is required. Anticoagulation for CVVHD can be either with heparin or with regional citrate administration. Citrate can be given in a stopcock prior to the machine, which creates a regional area of hypocalcium in the circuit, leading to relative anticoagulation in the circuit, while IV calcium is given back to the patient via a central line. The use of regional anticoagulation with citrate avoids the concerns of systemic anticoagulation and may reduce the risk of systemic bleeding.

Renal Failure Outcomes. The prognosis with acute renal failure depends on the patient's age, underlying disease, and the extent of the precipitating insult (also see Chapter 17 and 42). In general, children do better than adults; in fact, children usually recover completely from a renal insult if the hypoxia or ischemia lasted only a short time and other organ systems are not involved. Children with chronic renal failure require long-term outpatient peritoneal dialysis or hemodialysis until they can undergo renal transplantation.[552] It has been demonstrated that the degree of fluid overload at initiation of CRRT is associated with patient mortality.[132] This has been found to be independent of patient severity of illness scoring.

Hemolytic-Uremic Syndrome. HUS is one of the most common causes of acute renal failure in children. This syndrome is characterized by microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenia, and acute renal injury. In North America, HUS is most often associated with infection by cytotoxin-producing *Escherichia coli* O157, but other serotypes and other Shiga-like toxin–producing bacteria have been implicated.[553] *E. coli* O157 resides in the intestinal tract of cattle and may contaminate beef during processing.[554] The organism is killed by cooking. Infections can be spread by person-to-person contact in daycare centers, institutions, and the military. There is also a familial form of the disease that accounts for a small percentage of the total cases. HUS is seen predominately in 0.5- to 4-year-old children, but it can occur in all age groups.[190] It shares many laboratory and clinical features with the adult disease, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. In fact, some investigators consider the two disorders a continuum of the same disease. The abnormalities that develop in HUS are believed to be caused by cytotoxins and lipopolysaccharide, a bacterial endotoxin. Toxin-induced damage to renal endothelial cells, the vasculature, and other organs is directly or indirectly associated with the activation of leukocytes.[555] Cytokines such as interleukin-1 and tumor necrosis factor, prostaglandin I_2, thromboxane A_2, and von Willebrand factor multimers probably play a role in the pathogenesis of this disease.[556] The time from exposure to the organism to initial evaluation of the patient varies from 3 to 12 days. Symptoms last for about a week. Patients usually have abdominal cramping, bloody diarrhea, tenesmus, and vomiting.[557] On average, about 10% of children with *E. coli* O157–induced bloody diarrhea progress to HUS. Mildly affected patients exhibit anemia, thrombocytopenia, azotemia, and decreased urine output, and have an uncomplicated course. In severely affected patients, anuria is common, hypertension and seizures may occur, and the duration of illness is prolonged. A small number of children exhibit progressive and permanent renal insufficiency, severe and recurrent hemolysis, thrombocytopenia, and neurologic impairment. Hematologic abnormalities include hemolysis and thrombocytopenia. Hemolysis often causes hyperbilirubinemia and, despite reticulocytosis, severe anemia with hemoglobin concentrations of 4 to 5 g/dL. Thrombocytopenia is the result of platelet destruction and sequestration in the liver and spleen.[558] The remaining platelets show evidence of impaired aggregation.[559] Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) is relatively common. Glomerular capillary endothelial injury is the most consistent renal finding in HUS. Acute renal failure with oliguria or anuria usually lasts less than a week but may linger for more than 10 weeks.[560] Glomerular or arterial injury, or both, may predominate, depending on the presence and extent of renal insufficiency (glomerular injury) and hemolysis and hypertension (arterial injury). CNS abnormalities are manifested as decreased levels of consciousness, seizures, irritability, ataxia, hypotonia, hemiparesis, hyperreflexia, and hallucinations; these problems may be caused by severe hypertension, electrolyte disturbances, microthrombi, or cerebral edema and increased ICP.[561] Abdominal cramping is common and may be difficult to distinguish from intussusception, intestinal stricture or bowel perforation, colonic gangrene, or other surgical emergencies.[562] Pancreatitis is common in patients with HUS. CHF may occur if there is fluid overload, hypertension, anemia, or myocardial depression caused by circulating endotoxins. Treatment of HUS is primarily supportive. Meticulous attention should be paid to volume status, electrolyte and acid-base balance, nutrition, antisepsis, and treatment of hypertension and coagulopathies. Enteric isolation is mandatory to prevent secondary spread of the disease. Accurate fluid intake and output measurements and frequent assessment of weight and volume status are important for management of these patients. A central venous catheter is useful for CVP measurements, blood sampling, and administration of IV medications and nutrition. Nephrotoxic drugs should be avoided if possible. If nephrotoxic drugs must be given, the drug dose should be adjusted and serum concentrations monitored closely. Daily fluids should be restricted to the amounts required to replace insensible losses, urine output, and other ongoing losses. Fluids administered should reflect the electrolyte content of the fluid losses. Caloric support is essential. Enteral feedings are preferred, but parenteral feeding may be necessary if ileus develops. Antidiarrheal medications prolong the duration of colitis, and antibiotics may increase the risk for HUS.[563,564] No specific treatment has been effective to date. Heparin, fibrinolytic agents, aspirin, dipyridamole, corticosteroids, vitamin E, and furosemide have not affected the outcome of HUS.[201] Immunoglobulin therapy, plasmapheresis, and infusions of fresh frozen plasma have had mixed results, but no long-term therapeutic benefit has been demonstrated. Dialysis, improved nutrition, and supportive care have decreased the mortality rate from 100% in the original report to less than 10% in the last 30 years. Mortality rates remain high in developing countries and in children with a genetic predisposition for HUS.

ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

Adrenal Axis

Abnormalities of the adrenal axis result in deficient or excessive production of glucocorticoids, mineralocorticoids, or both. Many of these disorders are diagnosed and treated as they are in adults. Congenital adrenal hyperplasia, pheochromocytoma, and iatrogenic chronic adrenal insufficiency will be discussed briefly.

Congenital Adrenal Hyperplasia

Congenital adrenal hyperplasia is an autosomal recessive disorder that is associated with deficiencies in either 21-, 11-, or 17-hydroxylase. 21-Hydroxylase deficiency in children can be partial (simple virilizing form) or more complete (salt-losing form); at birth, affected children demonstrate masculinization of the external genitalia, and those with the more complete deficiency show a progressive salt-losing state (i.e., loss of sodium and elevation of potassium). This condition is usually manifested in the first few weeks of life as feeding difficulty, vomiting, and failure to thrive. The clinical and historical course is suggestive of pyloric stenosis. If the deficiency is not diagnosed and treated early in life, affected children may suffer severe cardiovascular collapse. A blood sample should be obtained for electrolytes, glucose, and if the diagnosis has not been established, adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), cortisol, aldosterone, and plasma renin activity.

Treatment requires aggressive support of intravascular volume and myocardial function, glucose, and replacement of the deficient hormones. Cortisol can be replaced by oral administration of hydrocortisone at a dose of 25 mg/m^2/day divided into three doses; if the child cannot tolerate oral medication, cortisone acetate can be administered intramuscularly at a dose of 37.5 mg/m^2/day once every 3 days. For emergency therapy, when the oral route is not possible and perfusion of the muscle is poor, hydrocortisone acetate is used intravenously at a bolus dose of 1.5 to 2.0 mg/kg and then 25 to 250 mg/day in divided doses. Mineralocorticoid is replaced with cortisone acetate, 0.05 to 0.2 mg/day orally; these patients usually require the addition of salt to their diet. Deficiencies of 11- and 17-hydroxylase do not result in salt wasting; masculinization and hypertension are the common initial signs

Pheochromocytoma

Less than 5% of pheochromocytomas are diagnosed in childhood. As a rule, these tumors are confined to the adrenal medulla, but they can occur anywhere throughout the sympathetic chain. The clinical signs and symptoms of excessive catecholamines are the same as those in adults. Pre-, intra-, and postoperative therapy is similar to adults.

Iatrogenic Chronic Adrenal Insufficiency

Long-term daily use of steroids for the treatment of asthma, nephrotic syndrome, and malignancies is common. Such use may cause a hypoadrenal state and increase the risk for cardiovascular collapse during a severe illness or stress. In children, topical steroids can also depress the production of ACTH. Replacement of stress-level steroids (three times the daily replacement dose) is required.

Anterior Pituitary

Panhypopituitarism is usually secondary to a tumor or to aggressive dissection of a tumor.[565] Acute ICU problems related to this lesion include support of the adrenal axis and abnormalities of ADH.

Diabetes Insipidus

DI can be of central, renal, or psychogenic origin. The central mechanism is the most common form in ICU patients. Absence of ADH results in polyuria and polydipsia; patients with a severe form of this disease may not be able to drink sufficiently to meet their requirement, and severe hypovolemia may develop. DI is precipitated by brain tumors, head trauma, neurosurgery, and clinical brain death.[566,567] Treatment, in the setting of the ICU, is fluid replacement or, if unwieldy, hormone replacement with aqueous vasopressin (Pitressin), 0.1 to 1.0 mL intramuscularly (duration, 4-6 hours); Pitressin tannate in oil, 0.25 to 1.0 mL intramuscularly (duration, 24-72 hours); or desmopressin acetate intranasal, 2.5 to 10 μg twice daily (duration, 10-11 hours). The clinical syndrome may be transient or chronic. In either case, close supervision of fluid intake and output is essential.

Syndrome of Inappropriate Secretion of Antidiuretic Hormone

The syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion is associated with hyponatremia and hypo-osmolality caused by inappropriate urinary loss of sodium and free water in patients with normal kidneys. Urine osmolality is greater than serum osmolality. This syndrome is precipitated by a number of mechanisms, including head trauma, neurosurgery, meningitis, hypoxia, and any major surgical procedure in which there is large-volume fluid shifts and fluid replacement.[209,568] This disease is usually self-limited, and the only real problem occurs if the diagnosis is not considered and the level of hyponatremia is low enough to cause CNS dysfunction. Seizures are rare unless serum sodium is less than 120 mEq/dL. Care should be taken to raise the serum concentration of sodium slowly. This syndrome is treated by fluid restriction and, in severe cases, by the infusion of hypertonic or isotonic saline.

Pancreas/Insulin

Hypoglycemia. Hypoglycemia is a common problem in ICU patients. What constitutes hypoglycemia in children has been disputed. However, it is uncommon to find a blood glucose level below 40 mg/dL in normal, nourished premature, or term neonates. The usual symptoms of hypoglycemia include tachycardia, diaphoresis, weakness, mental clouding, seizures, and coma. The causes of hypoglycemia can be subdivided into disorders of increased utilization and disorders of decreased production. Transient hypoglycemia of the newborn is caused by decreased or immature hepatic gluconeogenesis and it self-corrects within hours to days. If the hypoglycemia persists, hepatic enzyme deficiencies, endocrine problems, or hyperinsulinism (i.e., pancreatic cell abnormalities, infants of diabetic mothers) must be considered. Other causes of hypoglycemia in the neonatal period include sepsis, hypothermia, hypoxia, and transplacental exposure to maternal hypoglycemic drugs. In older children, hypoglycemia is associated with ketotic hypoglycemia,[569] hepatic enzyme abnormalities, hyperinsulinism, hepatic failure, and Reye syndrome, and it is a side effect of certain drugs. Regardless of cause, the initial treatment of hypoglycemia is glucose administration. The initial dose is 0.5 g/kg given as 50% dextrose in water ($D_{50}W$). This dose should be followed by an infusion of dextrose that is sufficient to meet the metabolic requirements of the child (see the later section on the GI system).

Hyperglycemia. Hyperglycemia in the pediatric ICU can be separated into two main categories with distinct concerns and outcomes. Patients with Type I diabetes mellitus are often admitted to the ICU, with either initial presentation of the disease or those patients with known diabetes who are exhibiting recurrent problems of insulin balance. The second category of patients with hyperglycemia in critically ill children are those who develop elevated glucose during treatment for their underlying disease process, likely due to stress biology.

Diabetic Ketoacidosis. The most serious acute complication of diabetes mellitus is DKA, a syndrome of glucose and ketone overproduction and underutilization that causes hyperglycemic ketoacidosis. The clinical syndrome includes dehydration and hypovolemic shock from hyperglycemic osmotic diuresis, compensatory hyperventilation (Kussmaul pattern), life-threatening electrolyte depletion, and in cases of severe metabolic imbalance, neurologic obtundation and coma.[570] Laboratory evaluation demonstrates elevated blood glucose concentrations, severe metabolic acidosis, and compensatory hypocapnia, increased osmolality, hyperlipidemia, and a normal or low sodium level (usually fictitiously low because of the hyperlipidemia). Total-body depletion of potassium and possibly phosphate occurs. Levels of both may be falsely normal because of the metabolic acidosis.

Treatment of DKA requires careful correction of the metabolic derangements with meticulous monitoring of the multisystem complications of DKA, as well as the complications of therapy. Adequate intravascular volume is restored with an isotonic glucose-free solution, combined with exogenous insulin administration, commonly referred to as a "two-bag system."[571] Regular insulin is given as an IV infusion of 0.1 Units/kg/h. The goal is to decrease blood glucose by 75 to 100 mg/dL/h. This infusion is continued until the blood glucose reaches 250 to 300 mg/dL, at which time 5% dextrose in normal saline (D_5NS) is added to the infusate. This regimen of simultaneous glucose and insulin infusion can be continued until the patient can tolerate oral feedings and routine subcutaneous insulin administration. Most clinicians continue the insulin infusion until the acidosis is nearly corrected. Potassium concentrations should be monitored closely. These children have total-body potassium depletion, but potassium should not be added to any infusion until there is urine output. The need for phosphate may be more theoretical than real, but in most situations, half the potassium is given as a phosphate salt. The severe metabolic acidosis is usually corrected with volume and insulin administration. The use of bicarbonate to correct acidosis is generally avoided because bicarbonate may precipitate or worsen the child's neurologic dysfunction. In severe DKA, the intracellular volume of brain cells is reduced by hyperosmolar dehydration. In an attempt to maintain their normal size, brain cells generate osmotically active idiogenic osmoles (e.g., inositol) that attract more water into the intracellular compartment. As systemic rehydration and correction of the hyperosmolar state begin, the brain cells may swell until the idiogenic osmoles are metabolized or cleared. Consequently, rapid correction of osmolarity can cause significant brain edema[572] and may also worsen the neurologic dysfunction, which may require invasive neuromonitoring.[546] The pH of the brain is determined by the CSF bicarbonate level and by the CO_2content; the CSF CO_2content equilibrates much more rapidly with the vascular space than bicarbonate does. Therefore, correcting the systemic acidosis decreases the level of hyperventilation and causes a rise in $PaCO_2$; if this rise is precipitous, the CSF acidosis could worsen before the bicarbonate equilibrates with CSF. Because rapid correction of pH is problematic, bicarbonate administration is not advocated in DKA unless cardiovascular instability is present. Even then, the doses administered are small. Unfortunately, despite very careful and slow correction of the hyperosmolar and acidotic state, hyperosmolar coma and fulminant brain edema can occur.[573] The pathophysiology of brain swelling in DKA is poorly understood. Subclinical brain swelling may be relatively common in children with DKA.[574] If the swelling is significant, mannitol should be administered immediately and therapy for intracranial hypertension begun. The goal is to prevent secondary injury to the brain.

GASTROINTESTINAL SYSTEM

GI problems in the ICU include organ dysfunction and failure from acquired disease and from congenital anatomic malformations and dysfunction. Delivery of adequate nutrition to critically ill patients is necessary.

Structural and Functional Development of the Intestine

Knowledge of fetal midgut development makes it easier to understand a number of severe congenital anomalies. Although the intestine begins as a hollow tube, it is occluded by 7 to 10 weeks' gestation by rapidly growing epithelial cells. The lumen is later reconstituted when vacuoles within the epithelial cells coalesce. Some of the neonatal intestinal atresias are the result of abnormalities of this recanalization process. At 3 to 10 weeks' gestation, the midgut lies outside the abdominal cavity, with only the hindgut fixed in the left side of the abdomen. The gut rotates 270 degrees counterclockwise and reenters the abdominal cavity at 10 weeks' gestation. If the midgut fails to migrate back into the abdominal cavity, an omphalocele occurs. Abnormalities in midgut rotation result in abnormal intraabdominal relationships, the most important being malrotation and volvulus of the intestine.

Development of the Liver

The liver begins as an outgrowth of the foregut at approximately 3 weeks' gestation. During fetal life, it is relatively large in comparison to the adult liver. Although the fetus relies on the maternal liver and placenta for detoxification and excretory function in utero, the fetal liver is necessary for both prenatal and postnatal survival. As early as 10 to 12 weeks' gestation, the fetal liver is involved in glucose regulation, protein synthesis, and lipid synthesis, and is capable of some drug metabolism. The fetal liver contains approximately three times the amount of glycogen as the adult liver, but the glycogen is nearly completely released within hours of birth to compensate for interruption of the placental supply of nutrients.[575] It takes several weeks for the newborn to reestablish the store of liver glycogen, putting the infant at risk for hypoglycemia during this vulnerable period.

Congenital Malformations

Gross anatomic malformations are usually diagnosed during the first few days of life. Some, such as omphalocele, gastroschisis, diaphragmatic hernia, and imperforate anus, are apparent on the initial physical examination. Others manifest themselves in the first few days of life as failure to feed enterally, intestinal atresia, microcolon, tracheoesophageal fistula, and meconium ileus. Other malformations present difficult diagnostic and therapeutic dilemmas after the neonatal period. Specific clinical problems are discussed in the following sections.

Intestinal Malrotation and Midgut Volvulus. Malrotation of the intestine is caused by incomplete rotation of the fetal midgut when the gut migrates into the abdominal cavity. This abnormal rotation can cause partial or complete duodenal obstruction by peritoneal (Ladd) bands or, more importantly, midgut volvulus. The midgut (duodenum to transverse colon) and its vascular supply hang on a single pedicle; if the pedicle twists, the entire midgut may infarct. Infants with omphalocele almost invariably have associated malrotation of the gut. Symptomatic infants and children have signs of high intestinal obstruction (bilious vomiting) or signs of an acute abdomen, intestinal perforation, and sepsis. Treatment is surgical reduction and fixation of the volvulus and resection of nonviable bowel. Postoperative respiratory support and total parenteral nutrition are often necessary in infants who were severely compromised before surgery.

Meckel Diverticulum. Meckel diverticulum represents persistence of the omphalomesenteric or vitelline duct and is brought to the attention of the physician because of painless lower GI bleeding. The bleeding site is due to ulceration of the bowel mucosa caused by secretion of gastric acid.

Although usually self-limited, massive and life-threatening hemorrhage has been reported.[576] The diagnosis can be difficult to make because it is often one of exclusion. The technetium pertechnetate isotope scan demonstrates gastric mucosa in the diverticulum. Therapy is supportive, but particular attention must be paid to blood replacement. Definitive therapy is surgical resection.

Hirschsprung Disease. Hirschsprung disease (congenital aganglionic megacolon) is characterized by the absence of parasympathetic ganglion cells in the rectum and colon and occasionally in the small bowel.[218] Lack of ganglia cause narrowing of the distal bowel and distention of the normal proximal bowel. The clinical symptoms can be relatively minor, with abdominal distention and stool retention, or severe, with toxic megacolon, peritonitis, and intestinal perforation. Toxic megacolon is usually manifested in younger children; reported mortality rates are as high as 75% with toxic megacolon. The diagnosis of Hirschsprung disease is occasionally made by the history and physical examination. A barium enema reveals a narrowed segment with ballooning of the proximal part of the bowel. The definitive diagnosis is made by finding no ganglion cells on rectal or colon biopsy (or both). Treatment of toxic megacolon is both supportive (volume re-expansion and antibiotic administration) and definitive (surgical decompression via colostomy).

Other Intestinal Disorders. Intestinal disorders can cause bleeding, obstruction, or inflammation, and there can be secondary problems such as malabsorption and bowel perforation. GI bleeding in children is caused by inflammatory diseases (gastritis), ulcers, varices, or vascular malformations. Although ulcer disease is an uncommon initial complaint in pediatric patients, stress gastritis or stress ulcers occur in critically ill children. Prophylactic antacids or an H_2 antagonist should be considered. Bowel obstruction can be caused by intussusception, twisting of the bowel around congenital or postsurgical bands, and twisting of the bowel on itself (volvulus). Intussusception is relatively common in the pediatric age group and usually occurs in the distal part of the ileum. In only a few cases can a leading point, such as a polyp or localized edema (as seen in Henoch-Schönlein purpura), be identified. Treatment of intussusception can be surgical or, in patients with no evidence of necrotic bowel, with barium, air, or saline enema.[577] Inflammatory bowel diseases include Crohn disease and regional enteritis.[578] Infectious agents to be considered include *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, and *Yersinia*. These patients often have diarrhea, malabsorption (especially lactose intolerance), and bloody diarrhea. They also can have a toxic acute abdomen.

Necrotizing Enterocolitis. Necrotizing enterocolitis (NEC) is an often fulminant neonatal disease characterized by ulceration and necrosis of the small bowel and colon. Its cause is unknown but is probably multifactorial. Prematurity is the greatest risk factor for NEC. It is probably due to a combination of intestinal ischemia, oral feeding, and pathogenic organisms. Umbilical artery catheters, perinatal asphyxia, RDS, and persistent patent ductus arteriosus have all been implicated.[579] The incidence of NEC is on the rise, with 1% to 5% of infants in neonatal ICUs affected. The most common initial signs are feeding intolerance, abdominal distention, and bloody stools. Intestinal obstruction, bowel perforation, and sepsis may follow. Treatment consists of withholding enteral feeding, nasogastric decompression, IV fluids, hemodynamic support, administration of appropriate antibiotics, and surgical exploration if there is evidence of an acute abdomen with free air. Peritoneal drainage may be helpful for very-low-birth-weight babies and for those in extremis.[580] Total parenteral nutrition is frequently required for several weeks, and intestinal obstruction may occur weeks to months after a relatively benign course.[581]

Hepatic Failure. Hepatic failure occurs with chronic or acute liver disease. Chronic liver failure can be caused by biliary atresia, inborn errors of metabolism (tyrosinosis, Wilson disease, galactosemia, cystic fibrosis), or chronic inflammatory hepatitis. Children with chronic disease often have signs and symptoms of synthetic dysfunction (malnutrition, hypoalbuminemia, abnormal coagulation), degradation dysfunction (icterus and hyperammonemia), and portal hypertension (hypersplenism and varices). Acute liver failure is most commonly caused by infectious hepatitis A and B. Evidence of bleeding, edema, and other organ dysfunction, including identification of liver and spleen size, is sought on physical examination. Laboratory evaluation should include screening for synthetic function (albumin, prothrombin time [PT], partial thromboplastin time [PTT]), degradation products (bilirubin, ammonia), and liver enzyme concentrations. Hepatic ultrasound, radiographic contrast studies, and liver biopsy are indicated on an individual basis. Life-threatening complications of liver failure include acute bleeding and cardiovascular compromise (from massive intravascular hypovolemia as a result of fluid shifts) and intracranial hypertension from toxic encephalopathy. Treatment is expectant and supportive. A 10% dextrose infusion will provide adequate carbohydrate intake. Low-protein diets minimize ammonia production. Coagulation is supported with vitamin K, fresh frozen plasma, and platelets as required. Plasmapheresis with fresh frozen plasma and platelets improves coagulation and maintains normovolemia. Oral lactulose and neomycin enemas decrease the enterohepatic cycle of ammonia production and absorption.[582] Cardiovascular and respiratory function should be monitored closely and supported as required. The development of intracranial hypertension must be anticipated. Serum ammonia levels are used to monitor neurologic dysfunction,[582] but it is unknown whether ammonia is the primary CNS toxin or whether it is just one of many chemical markers. Steroids have been used for some forms of inflammatory hepatitis. Exchange transfusions and plasmapheresis have been used to decrease the toxin load,[583] but there is no strong evidence that such measures reduce morbidity and mortality.[584] Patients with certain forms of acute hepatic failure, including those resulting from toxic and infectious causes, may be considered candidates for liver transplantation.[228,585]

Extrahepatic Biliary Atresia. Extrahepatic biliary atresia occurs once in every 8000 to 10,000 live births.[586] The extent of atresia differs from patient to patient and involves variable degrees of obstruction or discontinuity of the biliary tree between the duodenum and the proximal branches of the hepatic ducts. Treatment is surgical (jejunal Roux-en-Y and portoenterostomy) and is tailored to the amount of extrahepatic bile duct present. The Kasai procedure is most successful in patients operated on before they are 6 to 9 months of age. However, this procedure is associated with many acute and chronic complications, including hepatic failure, ascending cholangitis, and cirrhosis with portal hypertension and varices. Despite these complications, the Kasai procedure persists because there are not enough suitable donor organs.[587]

Liver Transplants. Improved immunosuppressive drugs and surgical techniques have increased the success of liver transplantation (see Chapters 16, 60, and 61). For transplantation to be successful, the perioperative and postoperative periods require a coordinated approach among surgery, gastroenterology, anesthesia, immunology, and the ICU staff. Most of the clinical issues that arise can be anticipated. Large blood losses occur and massive replacement therapy is required in the operating room. Accordingly, intravascular volume status, renal status, and hematology/coagulation profiles must be closely monitored. The immunosuppression required puts the patient at risk for infection with both "normal" and opportunistic organisms. Surveillance cultures and early aggressive antibiotic therapy are indicated. Systemic hypertension, which appears to be unrelated to elevated CVP or pulmonary capillary wedge pressure, is due to the antirejection drugs. Many patients require aggressive antihypertensive therapy (hydralazine, diazoxide, captopril).[588,589]

Enteral and Parenteral Nutrition for the Critically Ill Child

Nutritional support of a patient in the PICU may be less of a concern to health care providers when there are neurologic, respiratory, and cardiovascular issues to be addressed. However, not addressing the nutritional needs of our patients misses an important opportunity to improve their care and outcome. The active area of research is to demonstrate the benefits of early enteral nutrition (EEN) in critically ill children. There are the potential benefits of reduced translocation of gut bacteria, reduced constipation, and reduced infectious risks as compared with parental nutrition. Research by Khorasani et al.[590] published in 2010 in a single center study showed decreased mortality in children with burns who received EEN 8.5% as compared with late enteral nutrition 12%. In a 2012 international multicenter cohort study published by Mehta et al.,[591] there was a lower 60-day mortality associated with a higher percentage of goal energy intake via an enteral route. The consecutively enrolled cohort consisted of 500 children ages 1 month to 18 years who required mechanical ventilation greater than 48 hours in a pediatric ICU. Their study further demonstrated that mortality was higher in the patients who received parenteral nutrition.[592] This research demonstrating EEN improves outcome in critically ill children is further supported by the 2013 work of Mikhailov et al.[592a] The study was a multicenter retrospective study with 12 participating centers. Pediatric patients 1 month to 18 years were included if they had a PICU length of stay ≥ 96 hours and a total of 5105 patients were identified. The study defined EEN as obtaining 25% of goal calories enterally within the first 48 hours of ICU admission. The study noted that children who received EEN were less likely to die as compared with those that did not (odds ratio, 0.51; 95% CI 0.34-0.76; $P = .001$). This was after adjusting for severity of illness, age, and participating center. There were nonsignificant increases in length of stay and duration of mechanical ventilation.

Given the increasing evidence supporting EEN, we should be considering daily whether it is possible to start feedings. We should also considering placing feedings tubes beyond the pylorus to that enteral nutrition can proceed during ICU procedures. Mehta et al.[592] showed significant interruptions in enteral feedings even after they had been initiated. Feeds were stopped on average for 2 days in 71% of their patients. If it is not possible for each of us to individually advance feedings, there is good information that adoption of a feeding protocol in an ICU setting increases goal enteral nutrition.[593] It is possible that between 25% and 30% of the patients admitted to the PICU are malnourished.[592] Smaller children and those with chronic illness have limited energy reserves, and early enteral feeding should be targeted. If enteral nutrition is not a possibility, parenteral should be considered, but it does carry risks. Higher dextrose solutions increase the risk of phlebitis or complications, should there be an infiltrate of a peripheral IV catheter. Higher dextrose concentrations might also require placement of central venous catheters, which carries risks during placement and ongoing risks of infection. Additional risks of parenteral nutrition include infection, cholestasis, hepatic stenosis, electrolyte disturbance, and elevated triglycerides. Until there is further evidence showing harm for malnourished children, initiation of parenteral nutrition should be considered if enteral feeding is not an option.

Hematology

Hematologic emergencies in the ICU include abnormalities in coagulation, immunity, and RBC mass. They can be primary isolated defects, or they can be caused by multiorgan system failure. The immune system is discussed in the section on infectious disease.

Coagulation System. Normal clotting includes initial platelet hemostatic plug formation and fibrin production (intrinsic or extrinsic pathways). For both to occur, platelets, coagulation factors, and an intact blood vessel are essential. Neonates have a number of measurable coagulation abnormalities that rarely have clinical manifestations. Full-term and most preterm infants have normal platelet-vessel interaction, but platelet aggregation is transiently impaired. In addition, many coagulation factors show decreased activity or concentration in the fetus and newborn. Of greatest importance are the vitamin K–dependent factors: factors II, VII, IX, and X. These factors are low at birth and decrease to even lower levels during the first week of life unless vitamin K is administered. The amounts of factor V and VIII are close to adult levels in all but the most premature of infants. Although routine screening tests for coagulation activity are prolonged in infants, the newborn's blood clots more rapidly in vitro because neonates lack sufficient naturally occurring protease inhibitors, principally antithrombin III.

Transfusion Therapy. Many PICU patients require blood transfusions during their hospitalization (Table 79.11). Decreased RBCs may be secondary to decreased production or ongoing losses frequent lab testing. Decreased platelets may be secondary to decreased production or sequestration in the spleen. Thrombocytopenia from frequent lab testing may be less common. Decreased production of coagulation factors in the setting of liver failure may predispose patients to further blood loss. The transfusion of blood products in any setting carries associated risks. Transfusion reactions can be separated into nonimmune and immune mediated problems. The nonimmune reactions include transmission of viral or bacterial infections through blood components, circulatory overload, coagulopathy, hypothermia, and changes in electrolytes. Hemolysis of erythrocytes in packed red blood cells (PRBC) is increased by prolonged storage. The potassium levels can be quite elevated in older units. In trauma or situations of acute blood loss, rapid transfusion of RBCs can lead to hyperkalemia. This is typically not a problem in an ICU setting, where PRBC are transfused over 2 to 4 hours. The immune mediated reactions include intravascular and extravascular hemolysis. Hemolytic transfusion reactions can be severe and life threatening. Cross-matching blood products can reduce hemolytic reactions, but there must also be careful identification of the patient and the blood unit to be transfused. Nonhemolytic immune-mediated reactions include febrile reactions, mild allergic, anaphylactic reactions, and transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI).

Transfusion Related Acute Lung Injury. TRALI previously may have been an under reported complication of transfusion, but awareness is improving. The number of studies on TRALI in pediatric ICU patients is increasing.[594-600] The diagnosis TRALI following a blood transfusion relies on excluding other causes of pulmonary edema. This includes eliminating volume overload, sepsis, and cardiogenic pulmonary edema as causes of the patient's pulmonary edema. It is proposed that there is a two-hit model of TRALI. The first hit is an underlying component of inflammation in the lungs. The second hit is transfusion of a blood product that results in the development of TRALI. It is still not clear whether the damage is caused by the presence of neutrophils, HLA antibodies, or biologically active lipids present in older blood units. A study by Church et al.[601] showed an association with increased mortality for pediatric patients with Acute Lung Injury who received fresh frozen plasma. Due to the ALI, this is a group that already has the first hit. The mortality association was independent of the severity of hypoxemia, the presence of disseminated intravascular coagulopathy, or the presence of multiple organ dysfunction syndrome. Blood transfusion has associated risk, and these risks should be considered prior to any transfusion. In some clinical scenarios, pediatric patients will tolerate a greater degree of anemia than we would have previously considered. In 2007 Lacroix et al.[602] with the Transfusion Requirements in Pediatric Intensive Care Units (TRIPICU) study demonstrated that by adopting a restrictive transfusion strategy, they were able to reduce transfusion of PRBCs to PICU. A hemoglobin threshold of 7 g was targeted in one group as compared with 10 g in other. In the restrictive threshold group, there was a 44% reduction in PRBC transfusion without an increase in adverse outcomes. This information may not be able to be applied to all groups in the ICU, such as those with ongoing blood loss. The patients in the TRIPICU study did not have a blood pressure lower than 2 SD below an age appropriate mean, and they did not require increasing doses of inotropic medication. Subgroup analysis of the original TRIPICU study in general pediatric surgery[603] and cardiac surgery patients did not show a significant difference in the development of multiple organ dysfunction syndrome.

TABLE 79.11 Blood Component Therapy

Blood Component	Dose	Comments
Packed red blood cells	10-20 mL/kg	Raises hemoglobin 2-4 g/dL
Random donor platelets	1 unit/10 kg or 5-10 mL/kg	Pooled units from multiple donors
Apheresis platelets	10 mL/kg	Donation from single donor
Fresh frozen plasma	10-20 mL/kg	Provides 20%-30% of coagulation factors
Cryoprecipitate	1 unit/10 kg	Significant amount of fibrinogen (50-80 mg/dL)

Coagulopathy. Coagulation defects can occur due to a number of underlying conditions in PICU patients, such as sepsis, trauma, malignancy, pancreatitis, and liver failure. As a reminder, the PT tests the extrinsic and common pathways of coagulation. The PT is prolonged in liver failure, vitamin K deficiency, and DIC. The activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) tests the intrinsic and common pathways of coagulation. The aPTT is prolonged in liver failure, hemophilia A, Von Willebrand disease, and DIC. One major concern in a PICU setting is that the underlying inflammatory state in some patients can activate coagulation and inhibit the natural anticoagulation mechanisms. This is the basis for disseminated intravascular coagulation. In 2001, the International Society of Thrombosis and Hemostasis[604] published a DIC scoring system. Their DIC score uses platelet count, fibrin-related markers, PT, and fibrinogen. They separated DIC into nonovert DIC and overt DIC. In nonovert DIC, the balance of hemostasis is stressed by inflammation or noninflammatory disorders of the microvasculature stress hemostasis, but compensation is maintained. In overt DIC, the hemostatic system is can no longer compensate. A DIC scoring system such as this allows for ongoing research and a measure of response to therapy. In 2009, Khemani et al.[605] demonstrated the association between an elevated DIC score and mortality in 132 PICU patients with sepsis or shock. There are a maximum of 8 total points on the DIC score. Lower platelet counts and fibrinogen, prolongation of the PT, and evidence of fibrin degradation all are given points. There was a 50% mortality for patients with overt DIC (DIC score ≥ 5). For patients with a DIC score of less than 5, the mortality was 20%. This association between elevated DIC score and mortality remained even when controlling for severity of illness and/or use of inotropic medications. The treatment of DIC is to treat the underlying condition which is causing imbalance of the coagulation system. A future goal of research will be to study patient outcomes as DIC is corrected with FFP. As Church et al.[601] found an increased mortality associated with FFP transfusion, it is not clear what the balance will be between the risk of DIC or the risk of transfusion.

Sickle Cell Disease. Hemoglobin S or sickle cell trait is the most common of the hemoglobinopathies. There are also significant regional variations on the concentration of patients with different thalassemias. Hemoglobin S is caused by a point mutation in the beta-chain at codon position 6, which results in a substitution of valine for the normal glutamine. Hemoglobin S is formed from the combination of an abnormal beta chains with the valine with normal alpha chains. When there are two copies of the abnormal gene present, hemoglobin SS or sickle cell disease is produced. Complications from sickle cell disease (Hb SS) cause the most frequent PICU admissions of the hemoglobinopathies. Deoxygenation of the Hb SS erythrocytes causes intracellular hemoglobin polymerization, which leads to loss of deformability and changes in the erythrocyte morphology. In a deoxygenated state the abnormal erythrocytes change from a biconcave configuration to the classic sickle cell shape. The abnormal erythrocytes have a much shorter life-span and hemolyze more readily. In turn, patients with sickle cell disease have a chronic severe hemolytic anemia.

Sickle Cell Crisis. There are three types of sickle cell crisis that can occur: hemolytic, aplastic, and vaso-occlusive. A hemolytic crisis is characterized by increased hemolysis, which results in an acute drop in hematocrit and hemoglobin. This is typically accompanied by a significant increase in red cell production or reticulocytosis. AI an aplastic crisis there is a drop in hematocrit and hemoglobin, but there is no associated reticulocytosis. The production of red cell precursors in the bone marrow has slowed or stopped. The cause of an aplastic crisis is often infectious with greater than 90% of cases due to parvovirus B19. A vascular occlusive crisis is what is typically thought of as the classic sickle cell crisis. A vascular occlusive crisis may be brought on by infection, dehydration acidosis, or hypoxia. The erythrocytes assume a sickled configuration, which blocks small vessels leading to infarction. The infarcts can occur in any organ but are frequent in the lungs, kidney, bones, skin, spleen, eyes, and CNS.

Acute Chest Syndrome. A vascular occlusive crisis in the lungs leads to acute chest syndrome (ACS). Acute chest syndrome is leading cause of death and the second most common complication in sickle cell disease. ACS is defined as a new pulmonary infiltrate on a chest radiograph, in association with a fever, respiratory symptoms, or chest pain. There is great variability to the clinical course in ACS. The National Acute Chest Syndrome Study Group[606] reported a multicenter showing almost 50% of patients later diagnosed with ACS present initially with another symptom, mostly typically being pain. The presence of a pulmonary fat embolism is frequently reported and is associated with a particularly severe course. The cause of the pulmonary fat embolism is most likely bone marrow necrosis with release necrotic bone marrow fat into the blood stream. A common etiology of ACS is infection. *Chlamydia pneumonia* and *mycoplasma* are the most commonly identified pathogens. The goal for management of ACS is early recognition. As children with sickle cell disease may have few initial symptom, there should be a high index of suspicion. All febrile children with sickle cell disease should have a chest radiograph obtained. If there is any positive radiologic findings, therapy should begin immediately. Initial antibiotic treatment is cefuroxime or cefotaxime with a macrolide. The patient should be adequately hydrated. The patient should be observed closely, and if the patient becomes fluid overloaded, diuretic therapy should be started. Patients should receive oxygen therapy even if there are normal oxygen saturations. Incentive spirometers should be used by every child who is able. There should be consideration given to the use of bronchodilators. Every effort should be made to see that pain is adequately controlled. A simple red cell transfusion may be helpful if the patient is anemic, but an exchange transfusion may be needed. There is some regional variation in this practice. The reason to perform an exchange transfusion is that as the hemoglobin rises the blood viscosity will increase. Further sickle cell blood has a very high viscosity in the deoxygenated state. Performing a red cell exchange can reduce blood viscosity as well as improve oxygenation.[604] An exchange transfusion may improve perfusion in the microvascular perfusion, as well as cause a reduction in inflammatory mediators. In patients with sickle cell disease, red cell exchange has been shown to reduce white blood count, platelet count, and soluble vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 in patients. However, there was no effect on interleukin-1α, interleukin-1β, interleukn-8, or tumor necrosis factor-α, and the reductions that occurred were short-lived. In the National Acute Chest Syndrome Study Group[607] publication, 13% of patients required mechanical ventilation, and in this group that required intubation, the mortality was 19%.

Neurologic Complications. Exchange transfusion has a vital role in the treatment of neurologic complications from sickle cell disease. In a population of patients with sickle cell disease, at less than 20 years of age the incidence of stroke was measured at 0.44 per 100 patient-years.[608] Studies have been performed to identify at risk patients and initiate therapy prior to the development of stroke. The Stroke Prevention Trial in Sickle Cell Anemia (STOP) was to evaluate whether chronic transfusion therapy could prevent an initial stroke in children with sickle cell disease. Transcranial Doppler was used to identify patients at increased risk for stroke. A hemoglobin S concentration of less than 30% was maintained in the study group.[609] The risk for stroke development was reduced by 90% in the chronic transfusion group, as compared with the patients receiving standard of care. The trial was stopped 16 months early due to these findings. Chronic transfusion therapy does carry the long-term side effects of alloimmunization and iron overload.[610] The information available would indicate that for a child with sickle cell disease and an acute neurologic change exchange transfusion should be performed. While there is a significant need with ACS or neurologic change, for an exchange transfusion, it is not without risks. Depending on regional variation, central venous or arterial access is needed. Patients need to be followed closely for the development of fluid overload or hypovolemia during the exchange. There are the risks of blood products. Small children are at risk for hypothermia if the blood is not warmed. The best location and method to handle exchange transfusion will depend on the resources of the ICU, blood bank, and hematology department.

Acquired Disorders. A variety of circumstances can impair the production of coagulation factors. The vitamin K–dependent factors are most commonly affected. These factors are decreased with liver disease, warfarin therapy, and malabsorption syndromes secondary to either bowel disease or altered bowel flora caused by long-term antibiotic therapy. In addition, untreated neonatal vitamin K deficiency results in hemorrhagic disease of the newborn. In these disorders, the PT is prolonged and there are low levels of factors II, VII, IX, and X. Administration of vitamin K usually reverses these deficiencies, unless the synthetic function of the liver is markedly compromised.

Acquired platelet abnormalities include decreased production, increased destruction, and decreased function. Decreased production or hypoproliferative states include marrow diseases, such as leukemia and aplastic anemia, and the side effects of chemotherapeutic agents. Increased destruction can be immune mediated (i.e., idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura[611]) or the result of consumption (i.e., microangiopathic states, HUS, or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura[612]). Finally, platelet dysfunction has been found with uremia and chronic polycythemia in patients with cyanotic heart disease.[613] Treatment of acquired thrombocytopenia includes platelet transfusions and, if possible, correction of the underlying disorder. Therapeutic splenectomy will increase platelet survival in some patients with severe immune-mediated diseases.

Oncology

Over the past several decades, there has been significant improvement in survival of pediatric cancers. A great amount of information demonstrating this effect is available from the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results Program at www.seer.cancer.gov. Further, there has been an increase in the number and types of diseases treated with hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT). These facts have resulted in an increasing volume of oncology patients in the pediatric ICU. This patient population received very specialized, detailed care on specialized oncology wards or bone marrow transplant units. The care delivered in these areas as well as the strict solation procedures employed there are difficult to replicate in other locations in the hospital. In an effort to keep oncology patients in oncology wards, some hospitals have policies allowing the use of low amounts of inotropic support in these areas—for example, dopamine up to 5 μg/kg/min. This may mean that some oncology patients are transferred to the ICU when they have exceeded this level of support. They may have sepsis and shock not responding to fluid resuscitation and low inotropic support. Other patients may require respiratory support that cannot be delivered on the ward. Finally, there is early literature indicating that earlier initiation of CRRT to treat or prevent fluid overload[614,615] has benefits in HSCT, with other studies showing no benefit.[616] However, the positive literature has prompted earlier admission to the ICU for HSCT patients who become fluid overloaded. Overall, there is evidence showing improved outcomes for pediatric oncology patients requiring ICU care.[617-620] For patients following HSCT, after controlling for severity of illness, a temporal improvement in mortality is less evident.[621] Further, for patients requiring mechanical ventilation, the mortality is greater following HSCT compared with non-HSCT oncology patients.[622]

Due to the disease and therapy at times during their illness, oncology patients are profoundly immunocompromised. There is an increased risk of sepsis during periods of neutropenia. Fever may be the first indication of sepsis and studies have looked at predicting which patients will go on to be bacteremic.[623,624] The outcome of sepsis and oncologic disease is an ongoing concern. A study by Pound et al.[617] showed that ICU mortality for patients with septic shock was not significantly different between oncology patients 15.9% compared with matched controls 11.6%. There was no significant survival difference between groups in the first 6 months following discharge from the ICU. A 2005 study by Fiser et al.[620] showed on overall mortality of 17% for pediatric oncology patients with severe sepsis. The mortality in the HSCT group (30%) was greater than the non-HSCT group (12%). For patients who required both mechanical ventilation and inotropic support there was a high mortality (64%).

Leukostasis

Leukostasis (vascular obstruction) results from high viscosity caused by elevated cell counts or by the WBCs themselves. This syndrome is anticipated in patients with acute lymphoblastic leukemia when the WBC count exceeds 500,000 and in AML patients with WBC counts greater than 200,000/mm^3. In AML, leukemic cells are less deformable than lymphoblasts, so a lower WBC count produces the same syndrome.

The brain and lungs are the two major target organs for leukostasis; vascular plugging and organ infarction are the usual manifestations. Initial symptoms include tachypnea, cyanosis, increased work of breathing, altered mental status, and focal neurologic deficits. Besides supportive therapy, reducing the circulating tumor load and viscosity are the primary goals of therapy. Leukapheresis and exchange transfusion transiently accomplish these goals. Cranial irradiation may reduce the CNS tumor load, and chemotherapy will interrupt cell production and possibly destroy circulating cells. The initial goal of chemotherapy is to stop cell production without producing massive cell lysis; this halts the increase in tumor load without causing a severe metabolic crisis before adequate perfusion is reestablished.[625,626]

Tumor Lysis Syndrome

TLS is a metabolic crisis precipitated by acute lysis of a large number of tumor cells. Serum uric acid, potassium, and phosphate concentrations are elevated; the elevated phosphate concentrations cause hypocalcemia. The hyperkalemia and hypocalcemia can be life threatening; increased uric acid may cause acute renal failure.[627] Therapy for TLS consists of alkalinization of urine, fluid administration, and diuresis. Before any chemotherapy is administered, the patient's renal function should be assessed. If renal function is normal, allopurinol or rasburicase therapy is begun. In most cases, this conservative approach of forced diuresis and allopurinol or rasburicase will prevent renal failure, but occasionally dialysis must be instituted. Indications for the initiation of dialysis include

1. Potassium greater than 6 mEq/L and rising despite resin exchange
2. Uric acid greater than 19 mg/L
3. Creatinine greater than 10 mg/L
4. Phosphorus greater than 10 mg/L or rapidly rising
5. Volume overload
6. Symptomatic hypocalcemia

Mediastinal Mass

Children with a mediastinal mass and respiratory distress often complain of coughing, difficulty breathing, stridor, and shortness of breath. They prefer to sit upright and cannot lie supine. The chest radiograph usually shows a large mediastinal mass, often with obliteration or obscuring of the tracheal air column. These masses can also cause positional obstruction of vascular structures such as the superior vena cava or a pulmonary artery. Lam et al. indicate that clinical presentation is often nonspecific or often times incidental, and that patients with airway compromise often times also exhibit symptoms of superior vena cava syndrome.[628] These patients are often referred to as having *critical mediastinal mass syndrome* and require the care of an experienced multidisciplinary team. These tumors can be malignant (87% Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin lymphoma) or benign; the prognosis and therapy rely on adequate diagnosis, which is best made by obtaining a tissue sample before treatment is begun.[629] However, obtaining a sample of the mediastinal mass may require anesthesia and surgery, and the airway must be manipulated and instrumented. All these maneuvers may cause the patient to die. Local anesthesia with fine-needle biopsy under radiographic guidance allows tissue sampling without anesthesia in some patients. Irradiation of the tumor before obtaining a tissue sample may reduce the size of the tumor and make biopsy easier and safer under anesthesia. Obstruction of the intrathoracic trachea is a major anesthetic risk for these patients; it is often impossible to maintain a patent airway when the patient lies supine, is deeply anesthetized, or is paralyzed with muscle relaxants.[628,630] However, the patient must cooperate sufficiently to perform the test, which is often difficult for them because of respiratory distress. Induction of anesthesia and tracheal intubation are usually done with the patient in the sitting position and breathing spontaneously. If the airway compromise is severe, the tumor should be irradiated and the child given steroids before a tissue diagnosis is made; however, these treatments could alter diagnosis and should be discussed with an oncology consultant prior to initiating. Sometimes, a peripheral node or mass can be biopsied under local anesthesia, or if the tumor mass is very large, some of the tumor can remain outside the field of radiation. Sticker et al. report that in a single center review of 46 cases that patients with symptomatic anterior mediastinal mass underwent biopsy with general anesthesia while maintaining spontaneous ventilation without serious complications.[630] In summary, although diagnosis is the key to treatment of neoplastic disease, the risk associated with biopsy may far outweigh the benefit of tissue diagnosis.

IMMUNITY AND INFECTION

Empiric Antibiotic Coverage

It is difficult to make empiric recommendations for antibiotic coverage for the pediatric ICU. Antibiotic resistance may result from use of broad spectrum antibiotics without some degree of stewardship. Further, empiric antibiotics should be based on the susceptibility profile of the common bacteria within each hospital and patient population. In our practice, for patients presenting with sepsis, vancomycin and a third generation cephalosporin in combination are the antibiotics of first choice. This is due to a rising incidence of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus Aureus (MRSA). To reduce the spread of MRSA, all patients are screened on admission for colonization and isolated if MRSA is found. Antibiotic coverage can be more specific and narrowed as culture results as well as sensitivities return. Likely the best recommendation to be made regarding empiric antibiotic coverage is to meet with the Infectious Disease Specialists and discuss the current hospital culture isolates and their antibiotic resistance. Decisions regarding empiric antibiotics are best made in advance of the situation.

Prevention of Health Care–Associated Infections

The impact of health care–associated infections (HAI) on the medical system is significant and on the individual patient level can be deadly. A 2007 paper from Klevens et al.[631] estimated the number of HAIs in U.S. hospitals in the year 2002 at 1.7 million. Of these, 417,946 HAIs occurred among adults and children in an ICU setting. The estimated deaths associated with the HAIs in this time frame were 98,987. Likely the best thing we can do to protect our patients is to wash our hands or use alcohol-based gels and encourage others to do so. Encouraging others or providing a positive role model may have a larger impact than anticipated. A 2009 study by Schneider et al.[632] paired trainees who were critical care fellows or nurse orientees with senior supervisors and evaluated compliance with HH. In the control phase the senior supervisors were unaware of the study and had a HH compliance of 20%. The trainees that were being mentored had a HH compliance of 22%. When the senior supervisors were recruited into the study there was a HH compliance of 94%. The trainees who were still blinded to the study had an increase in the HH compliance to 56%. Certainly, it is anticipated that there will be better compliance with hand hygiene if health care providers know that they are being observed. Yet the Schneider study shows the importance of role modeling positive behavior. In our ICUs, we have ongoing audits of HH compliance. We ask our patients' parents to remind health care providers to wash their hands if they have not done so. Although it may be difficult, we must we willing to remind others to wash their hands.

Ventilator-Associated Pneumonia

Intubation and mechanical ventilation is necessary for patients with respiratory failure. Unfortunately, an ETT prevents airway protective mechanisms and this increases the risk of ventilator associated pneumonia (VAP). Patients mechanically ventilated who do not have a pulmonary infection may develop pneumonia and patients mechanically ventilated for pneumonia may develop a secondary infection. VAP can increase morbidity and mortality. A 2009 study by R. Srinivasan et al.[633] demonstrated that patients with VAP had increased length of mechanical ventilation, prolonged stays in the ICU, and more importantly a significant increase in mortality. There was 2.4% mortality in the patients who did not develop VAP as compared with 10.5% mortality in the patients who did. VAP has been defined as the new onset of a lower respiratory tract infection for patients who have required mechanical ventilation for greater than 48 hours. The diagnostic criteria includes a new infiltrate on chest radiograph, a positive respiratory culture, a low or elevated WBC count, and fever or instability in temperature.

In January 2005, the Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI) started the 100,000 lives campaign. The goal was to save the lives of 100,000 patients in a period of 18 months by six specific clinical interventions that were evidence based. They encouraged hospitals to deploy rapid response teams, deliver evidenced based care for acute myocardial infarction, prevent adverse drug events, prevent surgical site infections, prevent central line infections, and prevent VAPs. The last two incorporated the use of bundles or collections of scientifically grounded interventions that were implemented collectively. These interventions have been successful. From the VAP standpoint the pre-bundle VAP incidence for PICU patients was reported in 2002[634] as 11.6/1000 ventilator days. The VAP bundle has been tailored to pediatric patients,[635] and there have been significant improvements in VAP incidence. In a 2009 study showing the benefit of bundle implementation, Bigham et al.[636] showed a significant reduction in VAP incidence from 5.6 to 0.3 per 1000 ventilator days. This was a single center study that also showed a reduction in length of mechanical ventilation, length of stay, and mortality. This positive benefit of bundle initiation has been shown in other pediatric studies as well.[637,638]

In an effort to reduce a new bacterial infection while mechanically ventilated, the components of the VAP bundle aim to reduce bacterial colonization and prevent aspiration of contaminated secretions. To reduce the amount of bacteria present in the mouth and sinuses, mouth care is performed with a chlorhexidine rinse every two to four hours. Several things are done to reduce the risk of aspiration of contaminated secretions. One is to suction the oropharynx prior to suctioning the ETT or deflating the ETT cuff. A second is to drain the condensation that occurs in the ventilator tubing every two to four hours and prior to repositioning the patient. This should be done without disconnecting the ventilator circuit. A third is to use inline suction catheters such that the ETT can be suctioned without disconnecting the ventilator circuit. Finally, by maintaining the head of the bed greater than 30 degrees, there is a decreased risk of secretions in the ventilator tubing draining passively into the ETT.

We have found that the measures included in a VAP bundle are not difficult to perform and become routine practice quite quickly. More interesting is synergy that occurs with a bundle in that the impact of the combined interventions seems to be greater than any individual component. A strong adherence to a bundle of preventive measures has also been significantly helpful in the prevention of blood stream infection due to the presence of a central line.

Catheter-Associated Blood Stream Infections

There is a significant increase in hospital stay, morbidity, mortality, and costs with the development of catheter associated blood stream infections (CA-BSI). In a prospective study performed in a pediatric cardiac ICU Abou et al.[639] showed 11% mortality in patients who developed a blood stream infection as compared with 2% mortality in patients who did not. It has been said by many that the best way to reduce a CA-BSI is to never place a central venous catheter. There is benefit to continually reviewing a patient's requirements for central venous access and when possible only using peripheral catheters. Unfortunately, there are many instances such as the need for vasoactive medications, where central venous catheters cannot be avoided. The implementation of bundles to care for central venous catheters can significantly reduce the development of blood stream infections and reduce the mortality and morbidity for each patient.

Implementation of preventive bundles during the insertion of and ongoing maintenance of central venous catheters will reduce infections. In a 2010 study[640] in 29 PICUs, there was a 43% reduction in the development of CA-BSI when bundles were used. These results are sustainable and continue to improve. The 2011[641] follow-up by the same group showed a further reduction in the incidence of CA-BSI. The bundle can be broken down into two parts: central line insertion and maintenance. During the insertion of the central venous catheter the goal of the bundle is to maintain complete sterility of the field. Chlorhexidine is used as the skin prep for patients greater than 2 months of age. All people in the room wear hats and masks. The persons performing the procedure wear these as well, along with a sterile gown and gloves. A large sterile barrier covering the entire bed is used. The second phase of the bundle is ongoing maintenance of the central venous catheter. There are strict guidelines for the care of the IV tubing, hub, and catheter insertion site. When dressing changes are performed, sterile gloves are used and the area is scrubbed for 30 seconds with chlorhexidine; then it is allowed to air dry for 30 seconds. Strict adherence to the same maintenance guidelines throughout the entire hospital is necessary to prevent CA-BSI. In many institutions, the number of infections has dropped so low that each event can be individually reviewed.

Urinary Tract Infection

Catheter-associated urinary tract infections CA-UTI is the most common health care related infection. Removing a bladder catheter if it is not needed can significantly reduce the risk of developing a urinary tract infection. In some cases, the catheter cannot be removed and efforts should be made to prevent infection. Institution of a bladder care bundle as a quality improvement measure can significantly reduce infection rates. In a 2013 study by Esteban et al.,[642] implementation of quality improvement interventions decreased the number of catheter-associated urinary tract infections from 23.3 to 5.8 per 1000 urinary catheter days. The goals of a bladder catheter bundle are to reduce the bacterial colonization and to reduce the reflux of urine back into the bladder. Catheters are inserted in a sterile fashion, and periurethral cleaning is performed with a chlorhexidine cloth at least once per shift. To prevent reflux, the collection bag is always kept below the level of the bladder and is drained completely or clamped prior to moving the patient.

Infections in the Newborn

Neonates with developmental immunologic deficiencies have increased susceptibility to infection. Depressed cell-mediated immunity makes the fetus and infant more susceptible to viral and fungal infection. In addition, infants have depressed B-cell function and diminished production of immunoglobulins. The latter is partially offset by increased maternal immunoglobulin G (IgG). By 2 to 3 months of age, which is before infants can adequately produce their own antibodies in sufficient quantity, the level of maternal antibodies reaches a nadir.[643] The time during which the circulating antibody concentration is low is a time when the risk for infections is increased. Perinatal infections are either congenitally or postnatally acquired. Congenital infections occur with prenatal exposure to viral, protozoal, or rarely, bacterial pathogens. Common diseases include the TORCH infections: *Toxoplasma gondii* (T); “other” (O), including human immunodeficiency virus, syphilis, and tuberculosis; rubella (R); cytomegalovirus (C); and herpes simplex virus type 2 (H). Only rarely do these infections cause overwhelming sepsis, but they can be confused with bacterial infection when profound CNS depression, circulatory collapse, or thrombocytopenia occurs. When a TORCH infection develops in the first trimester of pregnancy, it causes fetal wastage or major organ malformation. Premature infants have a high incidence of acute infections in the newborn period. Regardless of gestational age, the signs and symptoms of infection are often subtle. Therefore, a very high index of suspicion and low threshold for diagnosing and treating infection are required.[644] Box 79.5 lists the common signs and symptoms of neonatal sepsis. The most common acquired pathogens are those that colonize the mother’s genital tract: group B streptococci, *E. coli*, *Listeria monocytogenes*, and herpesvirus. Herpes is such a fulminant infection in neonates that the presence of active herpes lesions in the birth canal is an indication for cesarean section, although this may not prevent herpes in all children. Group B *Streptococcus* is the most common bacterial pathogen that causes neonatal sepsis. Infection with group B streptococci is manifested as severe cardiorespiratory instability and meningitis in 30% of cases. By 2 to 3 weeks of age, this organism is more commonly associated with meningitis and less commonly with pulmonary disease. Whenever sepsis is suspected, cultures of blood, urine, and CSF should be obtained. Because it is difficult for the physician to localize the infection in an infant, repeated complete sepsis workups are often required. When appropriate cultures are obtained, treatment with ampicillin and an aminoglycoside, such as gentamicin, is usually begun until specific bacteriologic information becomes available. Only about 50% of neonates thought to be septic have positive cultures.

BOX 79.5 **Common Signs and Symptoms of Neonatal Sepsis**

Temperature instability (hypothermia and hyperthermia)
Lethargy and poor feeding
Respiratory distress and apnea
Hypoglycemia and metabolic acidosis
Poor cutaneous perfusion, hypotension
Rashes or petechiae
Seizures

PEDIATRIC TRAUMA

Prenatal and Perinatal Injuries

Perinatal trauma occurs before or immediately after birth (also see Chapter 77). The most common prenatal injuries are due to maternal gunshot wounds and blunt trauma. Fetal mortality in both cases is at least twice that of the mother,[645] with fetal death being attributable to maternal shock and fetal oxygen deprivation rather than direct injury. Birth injuries occur more commonly in large full-term infants and in infants born by breech presentation. Injuries to the head include linear or depressed skull fractures, cephalohematomas, subdural or subarachnoid hematomas, and intraparenchymal or intraventricular hemorrhage. Intracranial injuries can increase ICP and cause cerebral ischemia, neurologic injury, and death. Injury to the sternocleidomastoid muscle may cause torticollis; traction on the neck may transect the cervical spinal cord. Less devastating nerve 2 head injuries caused by cervical traction are phrenic nerve paralysis and Erb or Klumpke palsy, which are caused by brachial plexus stretching or tearing (or both). Shoulder dystocia is commonly associated with clavicular and humoral fractures; femoral shaft fractures occur with breech deliveries. Injuries to the liver, spleen, adrenal glands, and kidneys can cause life-threatening hemorrhage or thrombosis. Vasoocclusion causes tissue loss in the cerebral, coronary, or renal vascular beds. Emergency instrumentation of the airway in the delivery room on rare occasion leads to tracheal and esophageal perforation, particularly in a premature infant.

Trauma in Children

Accidents and trauma are the leading causes of death in children 1 to 14 years of age.[646] Children are frequently victims of falling or being dropped, drowning, near-drowning, motor vehicle accidents (pedestrian), ingestions, and burns. Head injuries are common, especially in younger children, who have disproportionately large heads and relatively poor neck muscle support.[647] Young children are less likely to be victims of gunshot or knife attacks; blunt injuries are more usual. Blunt trauma to the abdomen can cause solid organ injury (liver and spleen), rather than a perforated viscus. Hypothermia is a frequent complication of trauma; children lose heat rapidly because they have a relatively large surface-to-volume ratio. Drowning and near-drowning are the prototypical hypothermic injuries. Management of trauma patients of all ages requires an organized approach that permits rapid diagnosis and treatment. Most preventable deaths in pediatric trauma patients are caused by airway obstruction, pneumothorax, and shock; shock is often the result of inadequate treatment of bleeding or secondary brain injury from an expanding intracranial hematoma.[648] The American College of Surgeons recommends a four-step approach to pediatric trauma patients: (1) primary survey, (2) resuscitation, (3) secondary survey, and (4) definitive care.[271] The primary survey requires rapid assessment of the airway, breathing, and circulations. A disproportionately large tongue, in relation to a narrow oropharynx, easily obstructs the airway in an unconscious child. Proper jaw positioning enables bag-and-mask ventilation until the trachea is intubated. Ventilation through an inadequate airway may lead to gaseous distention of the stomach, vomiting, and aspiration of gastric contents. Cervical spine injuries are less common in children than in adults, but the child's neck should be immobilized until spinal injury is excluded. After establishing an airway, adequacy of respiration should be verified by observation of symmetric chest movement, auscultation of normal and equal breath sounds, and an early chest radiograph. Tension hemopneumothorax can be diagnosed clinically and treated by needle aspiration. Aspiration will alleviate the tension and stabilize the patient's condition until a chest tube can be inserted. Circulation can be quickly assessed by looking for tachycardia, poor peripheral perfusion, weak peripheral pulses, and hypotension (which may not occur until blood loss exceeds 25% of the circulating blood volume).[649] A severely hypovolemic child requires rapid insertion of a central venous catheter. If a peripheral venous catheter cannot be inserted expeditiously, an IO cannula should be placed.[650] The amount of volume resuscitation is dictated by the clinical condition of the child and the estimated volume of blood or plasma lost. During the secondary survey, a thorough head-to-toe examination is performed, and a plan of definitive treatment is developed. Diagnostic measures in a pediatric trauma patient are similar to those in adult patients, but there should be consideration of special problems that occur in children. Most intraabdominal injuries requiring laparotomy are recognized clinically because they produce peritonitis or cause increasing abdominal girth.[651] Diagnostic peritoneal lavage may be of help in children who are hemodynamically unstable, despite administering more than 40 mL/kg of blood. Peritoneal lavage may locate the site of occult bleeding in a child too unstable to undergo CT, or it can be used to evaluate abdominal injury in a child about to undergo emergency non-abdominal surgery. Many practitioners forego this procedure if surgery is imminent. Indications for surgical intervention for abdominal trauma include free peritoneal air, evidence of a ruptured viscus, and acute uncontrolled bleeding. A ruptured spleen or a liver laceration is not an indication for surgery in and of itself; the preferred treatment is supportive, blood volume replacement, and reevaluation.[652] A careful head and neurologic examination is done to quickly detect intracranial trauma. The most important indicator of intracranial trauma is a decrease in the level of consciousness. Rapid diagnosis and treatment of intracranial mass lesions will reduce ICP and may prevent secondary brain injury.

Child Abuse

The diagnosis of child abuse is made by finding an acute injury that may have a plausible explanation and signs of past trauma, including healing bruises, contusions, and fractures. Child abuse may also take the form of psychological or sexual abuse and failure to meet a child's need for food, clothing, shelter, hygiene, medical care, education, or supervision. Suspicion of child abuse begins with an inappropriate or inadequate explanation for the child's injuries or when the degree of trauma exceeds the stated cause. Multiple hospital admissions, emergency department visits, doctor or hospital "shopping," and a history of previous trauma should be of concern. Frequently, the story regarding the injury changes over time. Certain clinical features are common to child abuse, but they are by no means pathognomonic. Most abused children are older than 3 years and may have poor hygiene and delayed somatic or psychological development. The injuries most commonly include bruises, welts, lacerations, scalds, and burns from cigarettes, stoves, heating grates, or irons. Long-bone fractures, often of varying age, abdominal injuries, signs of smothering, and multiple soft tissue or genital bruises are also common. Head injuries can occur. Shaking an infant can cause neck injuries, intracranial hemorrhage, and contra-coup injuries, without necessarily producing external manifestations of trauma. The approach to a suspected victim of child abuse includes a meticulous and nonjudgmental history, written in detail in the chart. All allegations are recorded and changes in the reported history are documented. The physical examination includes growth parameters, descriptions of soft tissue bruising or burns, and diagrams or preferably photographs of all injuries. The color, shape, placement, and estimated age of all injuries should be catalogued. Laboratory studies should include the following: a skeletal survey of all long bones, ribs, and the skull; a coagulation profile, including hematocrit, platelet count, PT, and PTT; and genital and throat cultures for venereal disease if sexual abuse is suspected. If child abuse is suspected, it must be reported to the authorities.

Ingestion Injury

Despite the success of various preventive public health programs, poisoning continues to occur commonly in pediatric patients. Fortunately, the vast majority of presumed poisonings in young children can be managed by telephone consultation with a regional poison control center. In one study, acute poisoning accounted for approximately 5% of all medical admissions to a PICU.[653] Approximately half of these admissions were accidental ingestions, and half were attempted suicides. The median age for the accidental poisoning group was 2 years. For the suicide group, it was 15 years. Although many different toxic substances are ingested by children and adolescents, management of poisoning has three main goals: (1) identifying, decontaminating, and eliminating the toxic agents[654]; (2) minimizing the toxic effects on the child; and (3) providing close observation and organ system support until detoxification is complete. Procedures for drug elimination include emesis, gastric lavage, activated charcoal, and magnesium citrate.

Toxic effects can be minimized with specific antidotes when available, by hemodialysis, or by charcoal hemoperfusion. Examples of specific antidotes are deferoxamine for iron ingestion, ethanol infusion for methanol ingestion, naloxone for narcotic overdose, and *N*-acetylcysteine for acetaminophen ingestion. Because many ingestions, particularly those for attempted suicide, include multiple drugs, specific antidote therapy is only occasionally successful. Organ system support usually includes airway protection and mechanical ventilation, IV fluids, cardiovascular monitoring for arrhythmias and myocardial depression, and anticonvulsive therapy for patients who are seizing. Consultation with clinical pharmacologists or with the regional poison control center and contacting a social worker or psychiatrist are essential aspects of the care of an acutely toxic child. Common complications of ingestions and their therapy include aspiration pneumonia with hydrocarbon ingestion or loss of glottic function, sepsis, respiratory depression, myocardial depression, arrhythmias, seizures, and coma. The psychosocial environment that allowed or precipitated the ingestion must also be considered. Families should be counseled about proper supervision and "childproofing" their home. Psychiatric intervention should be introduced early; unsuccessful suicide attempts are often repeated.

Transport of the Critically Ill Child

Transport for critically ill children includes intrahospital and interhospital transport. Intrahospital transport of patients is necessary to and from the operating room. However, this also includes transport for radiologic procedures and studies throughout the hospital. In this circumstance, the clinician who ordered the test must understand the balance of risk and benefit. Is the information that can be obtained by an MRI worth the transport, changes in monitoring, and the time away from the ICU? In the case of a brain MRI, a patient may be away from the unit for 90 to 120 minutes with transport. There are significant differences in the ability to monitor and provide care to those patients. CT scans are certainly shorter but still entail many of the same risks. The severity of the patient's illness must be considered. Any patient with and ETT is at risk for obstruction or dislodgement. Any patient requiring inotropic support is at risk for those medications being interrupted. Depending on the hospital, the team transporting the patient may include a respiratory therapist, bedside nurse, and transport nurse. Some hospitals will send their ICU fellows, and some have a dedicated intrahospital transport team. When new equipment is purchased, transport monitors should be considered that have the ability to monitor end-tidal CO_2. In the smallest patients, the maintenance of body temperature can be difficult during transport.

Interhospital transport systems are typically set up by a tertiary care hospital. Smaller community hospitals may use outside resources. One should investigate the capabilities of the transport team available to you. Details to understand include availability of helicopter and fixed wing flight, types of practitioners on the transport team, coverage in the circumstance where the primary team is out on a transport, and the ability to provide interventions when the transport team arrives at the outside facility. Many transport care physicians will be able to intubate, place arterial and venous lines, and place chest tubes at an outside facility. All of this information is valuable when speaking to the referring hospital. In that regard, the person receiving the transport request may need to make some assessments of whether the patient is safe to transfer by a team that only provides basic life support resuscitation. For hospitals unfamiliar with caring for critically ill children, it may be foremost in their mind to get the child to a higher level of care and out of their hospital. They may not have taken into account what support is available during the transport if the patient deteriorates. They may be unwilling to wait for arrival of a transport team, but the overall needs of the child the focus of the discussion. When deciding on the make-up of the transport team, the distance of the referring hospital, condition of the child, ongoing resuscitation efforts, and chance of change in condition need to be taken into account. While the transport team is en route, the referring hospital should continue to support and resuscitate the child with advice from the receiving hospital. Further information regarding the development of a transport team is beyond the scope of this chapter. One excellent resource is the Guidelines for Air and Ground Transport of Neonatal and Pediatric Patients available through the American Academy of Pediatrics. An understanding of altitude physiology is necessary when considering transport by helicopter. One may not give much thought to the barometric pressure in the alveolar gas equation ($PAO_2 = (P_B - PH_2O)(FiO_2) - (PaCO_2/R)$). This is because at sea level P_B is 760 mm Hg. However, at 8000 feet P_B is 565 mm Hg. Supplemental oxygen may needed in flight, and for patients with significant lung disease, low saturation may remain even with supplemental oxygen. From Boyle's law ($\text{Pressure}_1 \times \text{Volume}_1 = \text{Pressure}_2 \times \text{Volume}_2$), there will be expansion of gas with the decreased pressure of altitude. This means that a small pneumothorax can expand to a large pneumothorax. The size of an ETT cuff can expand significantly, putting pressure on the trachea. The pediatric ICU relies significantly on the skills of our transport team. To maintain proficiency, the providers will need to practice intubation and other procedures. Please give some consideration to helping if you are asked to have a transport physician or nurse shadow you in the operating room to get some practice with intubation.

Acknowledgment

Portions of this chapter are taken from Dr. George Gregory's fine treatment of this topic in the last edition.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Phipps LM, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care*. 2007;8:220.
2. Davidson JE, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(1):103–128.
3. Eggly S, Meert KL. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2011;12(6):684–685.
4. Meert KL, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2013;60(3):761–772.
5. Rea KE, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2018;141(3). pii: e20171883.
6. Rees G, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30(8):1607–1614.
7. Colville G, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care*. 2008;177(9):976–982.
8. Bronner MB, et al. *Child Adolesc Psychiatry Ment Health*. 2008;2(1):9.
9. Bronner MB, et al. *J Pediatr Psychol*. 2010;35:966.
10. Nelson LP, Gold JI. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;13(3):338–347.

11. Mangurten J, et al. *J Emerg Nurs*. 2006;32(3):225–233.
12. Dingeman RS, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2007;120:842.
13. Mangurten J, et al. *J Emerg Nurs*. 2006;32(3):225.
14. Tinsley C, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2008;122(4):e799.
15. Henderson DP, Knapp JF. *J Emerg Nurs*. 2006;32(1):23–29.
16. Boss R, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014;15(8):762–767.
17. Helmchen LA, et al. *Med Care*. 2010;48(11):955.
18. Truog RD, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(suppl 11):S373.
19. Wellesley H, Jenkins IA. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(10):972.
20. Denman WT, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(2):162.
21. Patel A, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16(10):1019.
22. McAuliffe G, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44(2):154.
23. Crone RK. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12(1):33.
24. Klopfenstein HS, Rudolph AM. *Circ Res*. 1978;42(6):839.
25. Ziegler JW, et al. *Clin Perinatol*. 1995;22(2):387.
26. Waldman S, et al. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 1979;21(6):714.
27. Daly MD, J.E, et al. *Lancet*. 1979;1(8119):764.
28. Freed MD, et al. *Circulation*. 1981;64(5):899.
29. Carcillo JA, et al. *JAMA*. 1991;266(9):1242.
30. Rivers E, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345(19):1368.
31. Carcillo JA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30(6):1365.
32. Brierley J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37(2):666.
33. Wills BA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353(9):877.
34. Maitland K, et al. *Clin Infect Dis*. 2005;40(4):538.
35. Hebbar KB, et al. *Crit Care*. 2009;13(2):R29.
36. Mohammad Z, et al. *Crit Care*. 2006;10(4):R105.
37. Jones D, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2006;34(5):599.
38. Mtaweh H, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2013;60(3):641.
39. Goldstein SL, et al. *Kidney Int*. 2005;67(2):653.
40. Zimmerman JJ. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(6):530.
41. Sprung CL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(2):111.
42. Crone RK. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1980;27(3):525.
43. Outwater KM, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1990;2(4):253.
44. Bhimji S, et al. *Acta Anat (Basel)*. 1986;127(3):205.
45. Martinez AM, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1992;89(1):47.
46. Perkin RM, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1982;100(6):977.
47. Beloeil H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(6):782.
48. Hoffman TM, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;107(7):996.
49. Barton P, et al. *Chest*. 1996;109(5):1302.
50. Bailey JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(4):1012.
51. Ricci Z, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38(7):1198.
52. Tosoni A, et al. *Cardiol Young*. 2013;1.
53. Tobias JD. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2011;26(3):183.
54. Singh S. *Indian J Pediatr*. 1988;55(1):27.
55. Drop LJ, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 1981;47(5):1041.
56. Flynn JT, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2001;139(1):38.
57. Beekman RH, et al. *Circulation*. 1981;64(3):553.
58. Rubin LJ, Peter RH. *N Engl J Med*. 1980;302(2):69.
59. Drummond WH, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1981;98(4):603.
60. Palmer RM, et al. *Nature*. 1987;327(6122):524.
61. Roberts Jr JD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;336(9):605.
62. Zapol WM, Hurford WE. *New Horiz*. 1993;1(4):638.
63. Kinsella JP, Abman SH. *J Pediatr*. 1995;126(6):853.
64. Stapleton FB, et al. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 1987;1(3):314.
65. Sinaiko AR. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1993;40(1):195.
66. Kattwinkel J, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;122(18 suppl 3):S909.
67. Gungor S, et al. *Gynecol Obstet Invest*. 2006;61(1):9.
68. Clements JA, et al. *Science*. 1970;169(3945):603.
69. Grein AJ, Weiner GM. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2005;(2):CD003314.
70. Trevisanuto D, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2006;71(2):263.
71. Kuhns LR, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1975;56(3):355.
72. Moe-Byrne T, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;2:CD003483.
73. Wyckoff MH, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2005;115(4):950.
74. Wiswell TE, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2000;105(1 Pt 1):1.
75. Vain NE, et al. *Lancet*. 2004;364(9434):597.
76. Jennis MS, Peabody JL. *Pediatrics*. 1987;79(4):524.
77. Atkins DL, et al. *Circulation*. 2009;119:1484.
78. Donoghue AJ, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2005;46(6):512.
79. Young KD, Seidel JS. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1999;33(2):195.
80. Suominen P, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2000;45(1):17.
81. Slonim AD, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1951;25(12):1997.
82. Berg RA, Personal communication of up-to-date data from the National Registry of CPR.
83. Nadkarni VM, et al. *JAMA*. 2006;295(1):50.
84. Zaritsky A, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1987;16(10):1107.
85. Nichols DG, et al. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 1986;2(1):1.
86. Reis AG, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2002;109(2):200.
87. Meaney PA, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2006;118(6):2424.
88. Parra DA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(9):3296.
89. Suominen P, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41(2):260.
90. Sirbaugh PE, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1999;33(2):174.
91. Schindler MB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;335(20):1473.
92. Dieckmann RA, Vardis R. *Pediatrics*. 1995;95(6):901.
93. Berg MD, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2005;67(1):63.
94. Gerein RB, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2006;13(6):653.
95. Tunstall-Pedoe H, et al. *BMJ*. 1992;304(6838):1347.
96. Lopez-Herce J, et al. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2005;21(12):807.
97. Kuisma M, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1995;30(2):141.
98. Holmberg M, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2000;47(1):59.
99. Kitamura T, et al. *Lancet*. 2010;375(9723):1347.
100. Kouwenhoven WB, et al. *JAMA*. 1960;173:1064.
101. Dean JM, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;62(6):2212.
102. Donoghue AJ, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2006;118(3):995.
103. Buist MD, et al. *Med J Aust*. 1999;171(1):22.
104. Chaplik S, Neafsey PJ. *Dimens Crit Care Nurs*. 1998;17(4):200.
105. Tibballs J, Kinney S. *Pediatric Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(3):306.
106. Brilli RJ, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(3):236.
107. Sharek PJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;298(19):2267.
108. Hallstrom AP. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(suppl 11):N190–N192.
109. Hüpfl M, et al. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9752):1552–1557.
110. Lerner EB, et al. *Circulation*. 2012;125(4):648–655.
111. Kitamura T, et al. *Lancet*. 2010;375(9723):1347.
112. Fukuda T, et al. *Circulation*. 2016;134(25):2060–2070.
113. Naim MY, et al. *JAMA Pediatr*. 2017;171(2):133–141.
114. Atkins DL, et al. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18 suppl 2):S519-25.
115. Berg RA, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;122(18 suppl 3):S685-705.
116. Maconochie IK, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2015;95:e147–e168.
117. Berg RA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(8):e762–e764.
118. Kern KB, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1986;7(4):859–867.
119. Kern KB, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1988;16(4):241.
120. Kern KB, et al. *Am Heart J*. 1990;120(2):324.
121. Sanders AB, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12(10):871.
122. Sanders AB, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1985;6(1):113.
123. Sanders AB, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1985;14(10):948.
124. Paradis NA, et al. *JAMA*. 1990;263(8):1106.
125. Ornato JP, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1989;18(7):732.
126. Aufderheide TP, et al. *Circulation*. 2004;109(16):1960.
127. Aufderheide TP, Lurie KG. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(9 suppl):S345.
128. Milander MM, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 1995;2(8):708.
129. Ewy GA. *Circulation*. 2007;116(25):2894.
130. Valenzuela TD, et al. *Circulation*. 2005;112(9):1259.
131. Edelson DP, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2006;71(2):137.
132. Yannopoulos D, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(5):1444.
133. Chandra NC, et al. *Circulation*. 1994;90(6):3070.
134. Weil MH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1986;315(3):153.
135. Berg RA, et al. *Circulation*. 2001;104(20):2465.
136. Schleien CL, et al. *Circulation*. 1986;73(4):809.
137. Halperin HR, et al. *Circulation*. 1986;73(3):539.
138. Michael JR, et al. *Circulation*. 1984;69(4):822.
139. Voorhees WD, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1980;8(3):134.
140. Yannopoulos D, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2006;69(3):487.
141. Lurie K, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(suppl 11):N207.
142. Lurie KG, et al. *Circulation*. 1995;91(6):1629.
143. Plaisance P, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2004;61(3):265.
144. Yannopoulos D, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(5):1444.
145. Aufderheide TP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(4):734.
146. Wolcke BB, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;108(18):2201.
147. Maher KO, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2009.
148. Kao PC, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2009;124(1):49.
149. Braga MS, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2009;124(1):e69.
150. Idris AH, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1827;22(11):1994.
151. Srikantan SK, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2005;6(3):293.
152. Kinney SB, Tibballs J. *Resuscitation*. 2000;43(2):115.
153. Babbs CF, Thelander K. *Acad Emerg Med*. 1995;2(8):698.
154. Dean JM, et al. *J Appl Physiol*. 1990;68(2):554.
155. Halperin HR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;329(11):762.
156. Dorfsman ML, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2000;7(10):1077.
157. American Heart A. *Pediatrics*. 2006;117(5):e989.
158. Voelckel WG, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(4):1083.

159. Berg RA, et al. *Circulation*. 1997;95(6):1635.
160. Boczar ME, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23(3):498.
161. Sanders AB, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1984;13(9 Pt 1):672.
162. Fleisher G, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1985;3(4):305.
163. Sheikh A, Brogan T. *Pediatrics*. 1994;93(3):392.
164. Koehler RC, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1985;14(8):744.
165. Berkowitz ID, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(6):1041.
166. Lindner KH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74(2):333.
167. Ristagno G, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(9):2145.
168. Lindner KH, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1991;9(1):27.
169. Brown C, et al. *New Engl J Med*. 1992;327:151.
170. Behringer W, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1998;129(6):450.
171. Callaham M, et al. *JAMA*. 1992;268:2667.
172. Perondi MB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350(17):1722.
173. Lindner KH, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 1996;124(12):1061.
174. Wenzel V, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2000;35(2):527.
175. Prengel AW, et al. *Stroke*. 1996;27(7):1241.
176. Prengel AW, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1998;38(1):19.
177. Stiell IG, et al. *Lancet*. 2001;358(9276):105.
178. Wenzel V, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350(2):105.
179. Mann K, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2002;52(2):149.
180. Stueven HA, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1985;14(7):626.
181. Stueven HA, et al. *Ann of Emerg Med*. 1985;14(7):630.
182. Stueven H, et al. *Ann of Emerg Med*. 1983;12(3):136.
183. Redding JS, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1983;11(9):681.
184. Niemann JT, et al. *Ann of Emerg Med*. 1985;14(6):521.
185. Blecic S, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1987;15(4):324.
186. Srinivasan V, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2008;121(5):e1144.
187. Meert KL, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009.
188. de Mos N, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(4):1209.
189. Vukmir RB, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2006;24(2):156.
190. Lokesh L, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2004;60(2):219.
191. Mathieu D, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1991;19(11):1352.
192. Cooper DJ, et al. *Ann Int Med*. 1990;112(7):492.
193. Huang YG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74(5):583.
194. Preziosi MP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1901;21(12):1993.
195. Dohrmann ML, Goldschlager NF. *Cardiol Clin*. 1985;3(4):527.
196. Bar-Joseph G. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(5):1693.
197. Zeiner A, et al. *Arch Int Med*. 2007;161(16):2001.
198. Hickey RW, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2000;106(1 Pt 1):118.
199. Bernard SA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(8):557.
200. Hypothermia after Cardiac Arrest Study. *G: N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(8):549.
201. Nielsen N, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(23):2197.
202. Shankaran S, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2002;110(2 Pt 1):377.
203. Gluckman PD, et al. *Lancet*. 2005;365(9460):663.
204. Oksanen T, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2007;33(12):2093.
205. Beiser DG, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(6):624.
206. Ulate KP, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2008;122(4):e898.
207. Langhelle A, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2003;56(3):247.
208. Macrae D, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(2):107.
209. Meyer RJ, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2002;55(2):187.
210. Kern KB, et al. *Circulation*. 1997;95(12):2610.
211. Trzeciak S, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37(11):2895.
212. Niemann JT, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(8):1753.
213. Sunde K, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2007.
214. Ruiz-Bailen M, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2005;66(2):175.
215. Laurent I, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2005;46(3):432.
216. Adrie C, et al. *Circulation*. 2002;106(5):562.
217. Mullner M, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1998;39(1-2):51.
218. Laurent I, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2002;40(12):2110.
219. Sundgreen C, et al. *Stroke*. 2001;32(1):128.
220. Sterz F, et al. *Stroke*. 1990;21(8):1178.
221. Safar P, et al. *Stroke*. 1996;27(1):105.
222. Niemann JT, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;108(24):3031.
223. Vasquez A, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2004;61(2):199.
224. Friedman D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(2):506.
225. Scheuer ML, Wilson SB. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2004;21(5):353.
226. Abend NS, et al. *Neurology*. 1931;72(22):2009.
227. Young GB, Doig GS. *Neurocrit Care*. 2005;2(1):5.
228. Oddo M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37(6):2051.
229. Carrera E, et al. *Arch Neurol*. 2008;65(12):1612.
230. Glass HC, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2009;155(3):318.
231. McBride MC, et al. *Neurology*. 2000;55(4):506.
232. Coen RW, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1982;100(4):628.
233. Ronen GM, et al. *Neurology*. 2007;69(19):1816.
234. Abdel-Rahman U, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2009;137(4):978.
235. Bayir H, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 2007;62(2):154.
236. Bayir H, et al. *J Neurochem*. 2007;101(1):168.
237. Vereczki V, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2006;26(6):821.
238. Martin E, et al. *J Neurosci Res*. 2005;79(1-2):240.
239. Balan IS, et al. *Stroke*. 2006;37(12):3008.
240. Kilgannon JH, et al: *JAMA* 303(21):2165.
241. Wik L, et al. *JAMA*. 2005;293(3):299.
242. *Circulation*. 2005;112(suppl 24):IV1.
243. Sutton RM, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(11):1259.
244. Sutton RM, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2009;124(2):494.
245. Niles D, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(8):909.
246. Ortmann L, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;124(21):2329–2337.
247. Morris MC, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2004;5(5):440–446.
248. Lowry AW, et al. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2013;34(6):1422–1430.
249. Odegard KC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(1):175–182.
250. Raymond TT, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2010;11(3):362–371.
251. Lasa JJ, et al. *Circulation*. 2016;133(2):165–176.
252. Kilbaugh TJ, et al: *Resuscitation* 81(7):786.
253. de Caen AR, et al. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18 suppl 2):S526-42.
254. Samson RA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354(22):2328.
255. Rhodes JF, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;100(19 suppl):194.
256. Appleton GO, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1995;25(4):492.
257. Gutgesell HP, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1976;58:898.
258. Rodriguez-Nunez A, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2006;71(3):301.
259. Tibballs J, et al. *J Paediatr Child Health*. 2012;48(7):551.
260. Meaney PA, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2011;127(1):e16.
261. Kudenchuk PJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;341(12):871.
262. Dorian P, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(12):884.
263. Valenzuela TD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;343(17):1206.
264. Caffrey SL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347(16):1242.
265. Samson RA, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;107(25):3250.
266. Zaritsky A. *Clin Chest Med*. 1987;8(4):561.
267. Dalton HJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1993;21(7):1020.
268. del Nido PJ, et al. *Circulation*. 1992;86(suppl 5):II300.
269. Morris MC, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2004;5(5):440.
270. Thiagarajan RR, Bratton SL. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(4):1285.
271. Thiagarajan RR, et al. *Circulation*. 2007;116(15):1693.
272. McNiece WL, Dierdorf SF. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2004;13(3):152.
273. Fine GF, Borland LM. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(1):38.
274. Engorn BM, et al. *Front Pediatr*. 2018;6:365.
275. Ross PA, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2014;133(1):22.
276. Kitterman JA, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1970;17(4):895–912.
277. Graham AS, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2007;33(1):120.
278. Ross PA, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2010;45(7):639.
279. Coleman MM, et al. *Pediatrics Apr*. 2004;113(4):770–774.
280. Ergaz Z, et al. *J Perinatol Dec*. 2012;32(12):933–940.
281. Bhalla AK, et al. *Respir Care*. 2019;64(2):201–208.
282. Frankenfield DC, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(1):288.
283. Bhalla AK, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(11):2439–2445.
284. Yehya N, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2016;17(2):101–109.
285. Ghuman AK, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;13(1):11.
286. Khemani RG, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2016;193(2): 198–209.
287. Willis BC, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2005;31(12):1700.
288. Pham TM, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2015;50(7):713–720.
289. Weiler T, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2017;189:66–71.
290. Kamerkar A, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2017;185:26–32.e3.
291. Hotz JC, et al. *Respir Care*. 2018;63(2):177–186.
292. Rodriguez PO, et al. *Respir Care*. 2013;58(5):754.
293. Yang Y, et al. *Chin Med J (Engl)*. 2013;126(17):3234.
294. Sarge T, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2014;40(1):126.
295. Fumagalli J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(8):1374–1381.
296. Eichler L, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2018;28(1):122–129.
297. Pirrone M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(2):300–307.
298. Hibbert K, et al. *Chest*. 2012;142(3):785.
299. Akoumianaki E, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;189(5): 520–531.
300. Mietto C, et al. *Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther*. 2015;47. Spec No: s27–37.
301. Mauri T, et al. *Intensive Care Med Sep*. 2016;42(9):1360–1373.
302. Hammer J, Newth CJ. *Paediatr Respir Rev*. 2009;10(2):75–80.
303. Hammer J, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 1995;19(3):167.
304. Reber A, et al. *Chest*. 2002;122(2):473.
305. Reber A, et al. *Eur Respir J*. 2001;17(6):1239.
306. Khemani RG, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(8):e798–e805.
307. Khemani RG, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2013;28(4):490.

308. Frerichs I, et al. *Thorax*. 2017;72(1):83–93.
309. Zhao Z, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2017;61(9):1166–1175.
310. Nestler C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(6):1194–1205.
311. Pereira SM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129(6):1070–1081.
312. Ngo C, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2018;53(5):636–644.
313. Mazzoni MB, et al. *Respir Med*. 2017;130:9–12.
314. Dmytrowich J, et al. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2018;32(3):503–507.
315. Durand P, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2018, 3.
316. Hendaus MA, et al. *Ther Clin Risk Manag*. 2015;9(11):1817–1818.
317. Basile V, et al. *BMC Pediatr*. 2015;21(15):63.
318. Pereda MA, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2015;135(4):714–722.
319. Ferrari G, et al. *Crit Ultrasound J*. 2014;6(1):8.
320. Umbrello M, et al. *Crit Care*. 2015;19(1):161.
321. Farghaly S, Hasan AA. *Aust Crit Care*. 2017;30(1):37–43.
322. Lee EP, et al. *PLoS One*. 2017;12(8):e0183560.
323. Rubin S, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014;15(1):1–6.
324. Weiler T, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2017;189:66–71.e3.
325. Pham TM, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2015;50(7):713–720.
326. Franklin D, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:1121–1131.
327. McKiernan C, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2010;156(4):634.
328. Schibler A, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37(5):847.
329. Onodera Y, et al. *Intensive Care Med Exp*. 2018;6(1):7.
330. Sivieri EM, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2017;52(6):792–798.
331. Okuda M, et al. *BMJ Open Respir Res*. 2017;4(1):e000200.
332. Hough JL, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014;15(5):e214–e219.
333. Hegde S, Prodhan P. *Pediatrics*. 2013;131(3):e939.
334. Basnet S, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;13(4):393.
335. Thill PJ, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2004;5(4):337.
336. Nievas IF, Anand KJ. *J Pediatr Pharmacol Ther*. 2013;18(2):88.
337. Koninckx M, et al. *Paediatr Respir Rev*. 2013;14(2):78.
338. Fine GF, Borland LM. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(1):38–42.
339. Khemani RG, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2016;193(2): 198–209.
340. Bhende MS, LaCovey DC. *Prehosp Emerg Care*. 2001;5(2):208.
341. Piastra M, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2013.
342. Bordessoule A, et al. *Pediatr Res*. 2012;72(2):194.
343. Inata Y, Takeuchi M. *Clin Case Rep*. 2018;6(7):1379–1380.
344. Zhou Y, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2017;43(11):1648–1659.
345. Lalgudi Ganesan S, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;198(9): 1199–1207.
346. Yehya N, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2013.
347. Yehya N, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014;15(4):e147–e156.
348. Walsh MA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(12):2599–2604.
349. Demirkol D, et al. *Indian J Pediatr*. 2010;77(11):1322–1325.
350. Daoud EG, et al. *Respiratory Care*. 2012;57(2):282.
351. Lunkenheimer PP, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1972;44(6):627.
352. Arnold JH, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1994;22(10):1530.
353. Samransamruajkit R, et al. *Asian Pac J Allergy Immunol*. 2005;23(4): 181–188.
354. Babbitt CJ, et al. *Lung*. 2012;190(6):685.
355. Stewart CA, et al. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2018;53(6):816–823.
356. Rowan CM, et al. *Respir Care*. 2018;63(4):404–411.
357. Young D, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(9):806–813.
358. Bateman ST, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2016;193(5):495–503.
359. Curley MA, et al. *JAMA*. 2015;313(4):379–389.
360. Mabe TG, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(4):383–385.
361. Hall JJ, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2007;28(3):396.
362. Carman B, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2002;23(6):444.
363. Rizkalla NA, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2013.
364. ARDS Definition Task Force, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;307(23): 2526–2533.
365. Ferguson ND, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(9):795.
366. Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference Group. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5):428–439.
367. Bembea MM, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1):S1–5.
368. Khemani RG, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1): S23–40.
369. Flori H, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1):S41–50.
370. Rimensberger PC, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1):S51–60.
371. Essouri S, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1): S102–S110.
372. Emeriaud G, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1): S86–101.
373. Dalton HJ, Macrae DJ. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1):S111–S117.
374. Quasney MW, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1): S118–S131.
375. Erickson S, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(4):317–323.
376. Khemani RG, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35(8):1428–1437.
377. Khemani RG, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;198(1):77–89.
378. Imai Y, Slutsky AS. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(3 suppl):S129–S134.
379. Ferguson ND, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(9):795–805.
380. Bhalla AK, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(11):1803–1810.
381. Foronda FK, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(11):2526–2533.
382. Kallet RH, et al. *Respir Care*. 2018;63(1):1–10.
383. Faustino EV, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(1):94–102.
384. Newth CJL, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2017;18(11):e521–e529.
385. Ward SL, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2016;17(10):917–923.
386. Sward KA, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2017;18(11):1027–1034.
387. Newth CJL, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2017;64(5):1057–1070.
388. Lee EP, et al. *PLoS One*. 2017;12(8):e0183560.
389. Goligher EC, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;197(2):204–213.
390. Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome Network, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342(18):1301.
391. Khemani RG, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;198(1):77–89.
392. Ingaramo OA, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014;15(1):15–20.
393. Ross PA, et al. *Front Pediatr*. 2014;2:134.
394. Amato MBP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372:747–755.
395. Papazian L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:1107–1116.
396. Curley MA, et al. *JAMA*. 2005;294(2):229–237.
397. Fineman LD, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2006;7(5):413–422.
398. Guerin C, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(23):2159.
399. Mancebo J, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2006;173(11):1233.
400. Beuret P, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2002;28(5):564.
401. Thelandersson A, et al. *Acta anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50(8):937.
402. Möller JC, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29(3):437–446.
403. Willson DF, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2013;14(7):657.
404. Drago BB, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(3):e74–81.
405. Yehya N, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41(9):1658–1666.
406. Adhikari NK, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(2):404–412.
407. Bronicki RA, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2015;166(2):365–369.e1.
408. Peek GJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2009;374(9698):1351.
409. Coombes A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:1965–1975.
410. Barbaro RP, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;197(9): 1177–1186.
411. Lin JC. *Respir Care*. 2017;62(6):732–750.
412. Curley MA, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2006;7(2):107–114.
413. Krajčová A, et al. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:398.
414. Newth CJ, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(1):1.
415. Yang KL, Tobin MJ. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324(21):1445.
416. Chavez A, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2006;7(4):324.
417. Jouvet PA, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2013;39(5):919.
418. Kurachek SC, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31(11):2657.
419. Manczur T, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(5):1595.
420. Hammer J, Newth CJ. *Eur Respir J*. 1870;10(8):1997.
421. Argent AC, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2008;34(2):324.
422. Khemani RG, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42(8):1214–1222.
423. Suominen PK, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;21(2):197.
424. Wratney AT, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2008;9(5):490.
425. Taussig LM, et al. *Am J Dis Child*. 1975;129(7):790.
426. Sheikh KH, Mostow SR. *West J Med*. 1989;151(5):520.
427. Wohl ME, Chernick V. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1978;118(4):759.
428. Nicolai T, Pohl A. *Lung*. 1990;168(suppl):396.
429. Smyth RL, et al. *Thorax*. 1991;46(3):213.
430. Meachery G, et al. *Thorax*. 2008;63(8):725.
431. Pierce MR, Bancalari E. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 1995;19(6):371.
432. Truog WE, Jackson JC. *Clin Perinatol*. 1992;19(3):621.
433. Parker RA, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1992;90(5):663.
434. Bader D, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1987;110(5):693.
435. Gerhardt T, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1987;110(3):448.
436. Abbasi S, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1991;87(4):487.
437. Greenspan JS, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1990;117(1 Pt 1):106.
438. Weissberg D, Schwartz I. *Chest*. 1987;91(5):730.
439. Newth CJ, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2012;161(2):214 e3.
440. Rubin S, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014;15(1):1–6.
441. Jat KR, Khairwa A. *Pulm Pharmacol Ther*. 2013;26(2):239.
442. Kelly A, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2013;47(5):644.

443. Powell CV, et al. *Health Technol Assess*. 2013;17(45).
444. Rowe BH, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2000;36(3):181.
445. Silverman RA, et al. *Chest*. 2002;122(2):489.
446. Rodrigo GJ, Castro-Rodriguez JA. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol*. 2014;112(1):29.
447. Youssef-Ahmed MZ, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1996;22(9):972.
448. Jat KR, Chawla D. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;11:CD009293.
449. Wetzel RC. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24(9):1603.
450. Tuxen DV. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1989;140(1):5.
451. Smith TC, Marini JJ. *J Appl Physiol*. 1985;65(4):1488–1988.
452. Appendini L, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1999;159(5 Pt 1):1510.
453. MacIntyre NR, et al. *Chest*. 1997;111(1):188.
454. Kong W, et al. *Chin Med J (Engl)*. 2001;114(9):912.
455. Tan IK, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70(3):267.
456. Wheeler DS, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2000;1(1):55.
457. Tobias JD. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2009;24(6):361.
458. Tobias JD. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2008;9(2):169.
459. Tobias JD, Garrett JS. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1997;7(1):47.
460. Char DS, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2013;14(4):343.
461. Teasdale G, Jennett B. *Lancet*. 1974;2(7872):81.
462. Gutierrez-Colina AM, et al. *Pediatr Neurol*. 2012;46(3):158.
463. Hasbani DM, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2013;14(7):709.
464. Gentry LR. *Radiol Clin North Am*. 1989;27(2):435.
465. Kochanek PM, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2000;1(1):4.
466. Hillered L, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2005;22(1):3.
467. Marcoux J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36(10):2871.
468. Glenn TC, et al. *J Cerebral Blood Flow and Metabolism*. 2003;23(10):1239.
469. Kilbaugh TJ, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2011;28(5):763.
470. Raghupathi R, Margulies SS. *J Neurotrauma*. 2002;19:843.
471. Duhaime AC, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2000;93(3):455.
472. Udomphorn Y, et al. *Pediatr Neurol*. 2008;38(4):225.
473. Wintermark M, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2004;113(6):1642.
474. Vavilala MS, et al. *Pediatric research*. 2005;58(3):574.
475. Adelson PD, et al. *Pediatr Neurosurg*. 1997;26:200.
476. Cunningham AS, et al. *Brain*. 1931;128:2005.
477. von Oettingen G, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2002;50:781.
478. Jackson S, Piper IR. *Acta Neurochir Suppl*. 2000;76:453.
479. Chambers IR, et al. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 2006;77(2):234.
480. Chambers IR, et al. *Childs Nerv Syst*. 2005;21(3):195.
481. Chambers IR, Kirkham FJ. *Neurosurg Focus*. 2003;15(6):E3.
482. Adelson PD, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2003;4:S1.
483. Stiefel MF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;103:805.
484. Stiefel MF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2006;105(4 suppl):281.
485. Llinas RH. *Semin Neurol*. 2008;28(5):645.
486. Broderick JP, Hacke W. *Circulation*. 2002;106(13):1736.
487. Robertson CS, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27(10):2086.
488. Contant CF, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2001;95(4):560.
489. UBt Samant, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2008;25(5):495.
490. Kochanek PM, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;13(suppl 1):S1.
491. Friess SH, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40(8):2400.
492. Johnston WE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(1):14.
493. Duebener LF, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18(4):423.
494. Strebel SP, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(1):67.
495. Cherian L, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27(11):2512.
496. Di Gennaro JL, et al. *Dev Neurosci*. 2010;32(5-6):420.
497. Pfister D, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2008;42(suppl):98.
498. Steiner LA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(4):1049.
499. Prathep S, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(1):142.
500. Kilbaugh TJ, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2011;28(5):763.
501. Kochanek PK, et al. Severe head injury in the infants and children. In: Furman BP, Zimmerman JJ, eds. *Pediatric Critical Care*. Philadelphia: Mosby; 2006:1595.
502. Kilbaugh TJ, et al. *Int J Pediatr*. 2010:2010.
503. Bergen JM, Smith DC. *J Emerg Med*. 1997;15(2):221.
504. Moss E, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51(4):347.
505. Renou AM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50(10):1047.
506. Drummond JC, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1995;37(4):742.
507. Edelman GJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(4):821.
508. Drummond JC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):841.
509. Lev R, Rosen P. *J Emerg Med*. 1994;12(4):499.
510. Langsjo JW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):614.
511. Langsjo JW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(2):258.
512. Gibbs JM. *Br J Anaesth*. 1972;44(12):1298.
513. Wyte SR, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;36(2):174.
514. Albanese J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(6):1328.
515. Bourgoin A, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31(3):711.
516. Kolenda H, et al. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 1996;138(10):1193.
517. Bar-Joseph G, et al. *J Neurosurg Pediatr*. 2009;4(1):40.
518. Spitzfaden AC, et al. *Pediatr Neurosurg*. 1999;31(4):194.
519. Farling PA, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44(3):222.
520. Bray RJ. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1998;8(6):491.
521. Cray SH, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26(12):2087.
522. Parke TJ, et al. *BMJ*. 1992;305(6854):613.
523. Canivet JL, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 1994;45(1):19.
524. Veldhoen ES, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(2):e19.
525. Cray SH, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26(12):2087.
526. Adelson PD, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2003;4(suppl 3):S72.
527. Phan H, Nahata MC. *Paediatric Drugs*. 2008;10(1):49.
528. Mason KP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(1):57.
529. Tobias JD. *Pediatric Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(2):115.
530. Tobias JD. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2008;23(6):403.
531. Erkonen G, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2008;9(3):366.
532. Ray T, Tobias JD. *J Clin Anesth*. 2008;20(5):364.
533. Skippen P, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25(8):1402.
534. Feldman Z, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;76(2):207.
535. Huh JW, Raghupathi R. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27(2):213.
536. Kochanek PM, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;13(suppl 1):S1.
537. Chesnut RM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(18):1751.
538. Friess SH, et al. *Crit Care Res Pract* 2012:361310, 2012.
539. Qureshi AI, Suarez JI. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(9):3301.
540. Pollay M, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1983;59(6):945.
541. Hutchison JS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(23):2447.
542. Hutchison JS, et al. *Dev Neurosci*. 2010;32(5-6):406.
543. Adelson PD, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2013;12(6):546.
544. Sanchez AI, et al. *J Head Trauma Rehabil*. 2012;27(2):159.
545. Shakur H, et al. *Lancet*. 2012;380(9859):2062.
546. Friess SH, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;13(6):702.
547. Guignard JP. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1982;29(4):777.
548. Aviles DH, et al. *Clin Perinatol*. 1992;19(1):69.
549. Eades SK, Christensen ML. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 1998;12(7):603.
550. Warshaw BL, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1982;100(2):183.
551. Pascual JF, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1987;34(3):803.
552. Salusky IB, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1982;29(4):1005.
553. Karmali MA. *Clin Microbiol Rev*. 1989;2(1):15.
554. Riley LW. *Annu Rev Microbiol*. 1987;41:383.
555. Kaplan BS, et al. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 1990;4(3):276.
556. Forsyth KD, et al. *Lancet*. 1989;2(8660):411.
557. Riley LW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1983;308(12):681.
558. Fong JS, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1982;29(4):835.
559. Fong JS, Kaplan BS. *Blood*. 1982;60(3):564.
560. Sieniawska M, et al. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 1990;4(3):213.
561. Hahn JS, et al. *J Child Neurol*. 1989;4(2):108.
562. Robson WL, Leung AK. *J R Soc Med*. 1991;84(6):383.
563. Banatvala N, et al. *J Infect Dis*. 2001;183(7):1063.
564. Safdar N, et al. *JAMA*. 2002;288(8):996.
565. Hoffman HJ, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1977;47(2):218.
566. Perkin RM, Levin DL. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1980;27(3):567.
567. Outwater KM, Rockoff MA. *Neurology*. 1984;34(9):1243.
568. Burrows FA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1983;11(7):527.
569. Dahlquist G, et al. *Acta Paediatr Scand*. 1979;68(5):649.
570. Hochman HI, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1979;26(4):803.
571. Poirier MP, et al. *Clin Pediatr (Phila)*. 2004;43(9):809.
572. Marcin JP, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2002;141(6):793.
573. Rosenbloom AL, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1980;96(3 Pt 1):357.
574. Krane EJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1985;312(18):1147.
575. de la Iglesia FA, et al. *Am J Pathol*. 1976;82(1):61.
576. Mackey WC, Dineen P. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1983;156(1):56.
577. Hadidi AT. *El Shal N: J Pediatr Surg*. 1999;34(2):304.
578. Poley JR. *South Med J*. 1978;71(8):935.
579. Stoll BJ. *Clin Perinatol*. 1994;21(2):205.
580. Cass DL, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2000;35(11):1531.
581. Schwartz MZ, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1980;15(6):890.
582. Rogers EL, Rogers MC. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1980;27(3):701.
583. Singer AL, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2001;234(3):418.
584. Gow PJ, Mutimer D. *BMJ*. 2001;323(7322):1164.
585. Paradis KJ, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1988;35(2):409.
586. Weber TR, Grosfeld JL. *Surg Clin North Am*. 1981;61(5):1079.
587. Chardot C, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2001;138(2):224.
588. Cienfuegos JA, et al. *Transplant Proc*. 1984;16(5):1230.
589. McDiarmid SV. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2000;4(4):879.

590. Khorasani EN, Mansouri F. *Burns*. 2010;36(7):1067.
591. Mehta NM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40(7):2204.
592. Mehta NM. *Nutr Clin Pract*. 2009;24(3):377.
592a. Mikhailov TA, et al. *J Paren Enteral Nutr*. 2014;38:459–466.
593. Petrillo-Albarano T, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2006;7(4):340.
594. Schleicherk K, et al. *J Craniofac Surg*. 2011;22(1):194.
595. Dunbar N, et al. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2010;35(23):E1322.
596. Yildirim I, et al. *Pediatr Hematol Oncol*. 2008;25(4):319.
597. Sanchez R, Toy P. *Pediatr Blood Cancer*. 2005;45(3):248.
598. Donelan KJ, Anderson KA. *S D Med*. 2011;64(3):85.
599. Dotis J, et al. *Hippokratia*. 2011;15(2):184.
600. Gupta S, et al. *Indian J Pediatr*. 2012;79(10):1363.
601. Church GD, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(3):297.
602. Lacroix J, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(16):1609.
603. Rouette J, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2010;251(3):421.
604. Swerdlow PS. *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program48*. 2006.
605. Khemani RG, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35(2):327.
606. Vichinsky EP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1855;342(25):2000.
607. Taylor Jr FB, et al. *Thromb Haemost*. 2001;86(5):1327.
608. Ohene-Frempong K, et al. *Blood*. 1998;91(1):288.
609. Adams RJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;339(1):5.
610. Lee MT, et al. *Blood*. 2006;108(3):847.
611. Medeiros D, Buchanan GR. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1996;43(3):757.
612. Ridolfi RL, Bell WR. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 1981;60(6):413.
613. Mauer HM, et al. *Blood*. 1972;40(2):207.
614. Elbahlawan L, Morrison RR. *Curr Stem Cell Res Ther*. 2012;7(5):381.
615. Elbahlawan L, et al. *Pediatr Blood Cancer*. 2010;55(3):540.
616. Rajasekaran S, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2010;11(6):699.
617. Pound CM, et al. *Pediatr Blood Cancer*. 2008;51(5):584.
618. Hallahan AR, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(11):3718.
619. Dalton HJ, et al. *Pediatr Hematol Oncol*. 2003;20(8):643.
620. Fiser RT, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2005;6(5):531.
621. van Gestel JP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36(10):2898.
622. Tamburro RF, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2008;9(3):270.
623. Asturias EJ, et al. *Curr Oncol*. 2010;17(2):59.
624. El-Maghraby SM, et al. *J Pediatr Hematol Oncol*. 2007;29(3):131.
625. Dearth J, et al. *Med Pediatr Oncol*. 1983;11(4):225.
626. Wald BR, et al. *Cancer*. 1982;50(1):150.
627. Cohen LF, et al. *Am J Med*. 1980;68(4):486.
628. Lam JC, et al. *Pediatr Surg Int*. 2004;20(3):180.
629. King RM, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1982;17(5):512.
630. Stricker PA, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22(3):159.
631. Klevens RM, et al. *Public Health Rep*. 2007;122(2):160.
632. Schneider J, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(3):360.
633. Srinivasan R, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2009;123(4):1108.
634. Elward AM, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2002;109(5):758.
635. Curley MA, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2006;53(6):1231.
636. Bigham MT, et al. *J Pediatr*. 2009;154(4):582 e2.
637. Rosenthal VD, et al. *Am J Infect Control*. 2012;40(6):497.
638. Muszynski JA, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2013;14(5):533.
639. Abou Elella R, et al. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2010;31(4):483.
640. Miller MR, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2010;125(2):206.
641. Miller MR, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2011;128(5):e1077.
642. Esteban E, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2013;14(5):525.
643. Wilson CB. *J Pediatr*. 1986;108(1):1.
644. Harris MC, Polin RA. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1983;30(2):243.
645. Rothenberger D, et al. *J Trauma*. 1978;18(3):173.
646. Eichelberger MR, Randolph JG. *J Trauma*. 1983;23(2):91.
647. Rivara FP. *Am J Dis Child*. 1982;136(5):399.
648. Dykes EH, et al. *J Trauma*. 1989;29(6):724.
649. Kissoon N, et al. *CMAJ*. 1990;142(1):27.
650. Fiser DH. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;322(22):1579.
651. Breaux Jr CW, et al. *J Trauma*. 1990;30(1):37.
652. Hoelzer DJ, et al. *J Trauma*. 1986;26(1):57.
653. Fazen 3rd LE, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1986;77(2):144.
654. Riordan M, et al. *Arch Dis Child*. 2002;87(5):392.

This page intentionally left blank

References

1. Phipps LM, et al. Assessment of parental presence during bedside pediatric intensive care unit rounds: effect on duration, teaching, and privacy. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(3):220–224.
2. Davidson JE, Aslakson RA, Long AC. Guidelines for family-centered care in the neonatal, pediatric, and adult ICU. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(1):103–128.
3. Eggly S, Meert KL. Parental inclusion in pediatric intensive care rounds: how does it fit with patient- and family-centered care? *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2011;12(6):684–685.
4. Meert KL, Clark J, Eggly S. Family-centered care in the pediatric intensive care unit. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2013;60(3):761–772.
5. Rea KE, Rao P, Hill E, et al. Families' experiences with pediatric family-centered rounds: a systematic review. *Pediatrics*. 2018;(3):141. pii: e20171883.
6. Rees G, Gledhill J, Garralda ME, Nadel S. Psychiatric outcome following paediatric intensive care unit (PICU) admission: a cohort study. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30(8):1607–1614.
7. Colville G, Kerry S, Pierce C. Children's factual and delusional memories of intensive care. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2008;177(9):976–982.
8. Bronner MB, Knoester H, Bos AP, et al. Posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) in children after paediatric intensive care treatment compared with children who survived a major fire disaster. *Child Adolesc Psychiatry Ment Health*. 2008;2(1):9.
9. Bronner MB, et al. Course and predictors of posttraumatic stress disorder in parents after pediatric intensive care treatment of their child. *J Pediatr Psychol*. 2010;35(9):966–974.
10. Nelson LP, Gold JI. Posttraumatic stress disorder in children and their parents following admission to the pediatric intensive care unit: a review. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;13(3):338–347.
11. Mangurten J, et al. Effects of family presence during resuscitation and invasive procedures in a pediatric emergency department. *J Emerg Nurs*. 2006;32(3):225–233.
12. Dingeman RS, et al. Parent presence during complex invasive procedures and cardiopulmonary resuscitation: a systematic review of the literature. *Pediatrics*. 2007;120(4):842–854.
13. Maxton FJ. Parental presence during resuscitation in the PICU: the parents' experience. Sharing and surviving the resuscitation: a phenomenological study. *J Clin Nurs*. 2008;17(23):3168–3176.
14. Tinsley C, et al. Experience of families during cardiopulmonary resuscitation in a pediatric intensive care unit. *Pediatrics*. 2008;122(4):e799–e804.
15. DP1 Henderson, Knapp JF. Report of the national consensus conference on family presence during pediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation and procedures. *J Emerg Nurs*. 2006;32(1):23–29.
16. Boss R, Nelson J, Weissman D, et al. Integrating palliative care into the PICU: a report from the Improving Palliative Care in the ICU Advisory Board. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014;15(8):762–767.
17. Helmchen LA, Richards MR, McDonald TB. How does routine disclosure of medical error affect patients' propensity to sue and their assessment of provider quality? Evidence from survey data. *Med Care*. 2010;48(11):955–961.
18. Truog RD, Meyer EC, Burns JP. Toward interventions to improve end-of-life care in the pediatric intensive care unit. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(suppl 11):S373–S379.
19. Wellesley H, Jenkins IA. Withholding and withdrawing life-sustaining treatment in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(10):972–978.
20. Denman WT, et al. The PediSedate device, a novel approach to pediatric sedation that provides distraction and inhaled nitrous oxide: clinical evaluation in a large case series. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(2):162–166.
21. Patel A, et al. Distraction with a hand-held video game reduces pediatric preoperative anxiety. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16(10):1019–1027.
22. McAuliffe G, et al. Heart rate and cardiac output after atropine in anaesthetised infants and children. *Can J Anaesth*. 1997;44(2):154–159.
23. Crone RK. The cardiovascular effects of isoproterenol in the preterm newborn lamb,. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12(1):33–35.
24. Klopfenstein HS, Rudolph AM. Postnatal changes in the circulation and responses to volume loading in sheep. *Circ Res*. 1978;42(6):839–845.
25. Ziegler JW, et al. The role of nitric oxide, endothelin, and prostaglandins in the transition of the pulmonary circulation. *Clin Perinatol*. 1995;22(2):387–403.
26. Waldman S, Krauss AN, Auld PA. Baroreceptors in preterm infants: their relationship to maturity and disease. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 1979;21(6):714–722.
27. Daly MD, Angell-James JE, Elsner R. Role of carotid-body chemoreceptors and their reflex interactions in bradycardia and cardiac arrest. *Lancet*. 1979;1(8119):764–767.
28. Freed MD, et al. Prostaglandin E1 infants with ductus arteriosus-dependent congenital heart disease. *Circulation*. 1981;64(5):899–905.
29. Carcillo JA, Davis AL, Zaritsky A. Role of early fluid resuscitation in pediatric septic shock. *JAMA*. 1991;266(9):1242–1245.
30. Rivers E, et al. Early goal-directed therapy in the treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345(19):1368–1377.
31. Carcillo JA, Fields AI. American College of Critical Care Medicine Task Force Committee M: clinical practice parameters for hemodynamic support of pediatric and neonatal patients in septic shock. *Crit Care Med*. 2002;30(6):1365–1378.
32. Brierley J, et al. Clinical practice parameters for hemodynamic support of pediatric and neonatal septic shock: 2007 update from the American College of Critical Care Medicine. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37(2):666–688.
33. Wills BA, et al. Comparison of three fluid solutions for resuscitation in dengue shock syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353(9):877–889.
34. Maitland K, et al. Randomized trial of volume expansion with albumin or saline in children with severe malaria: preliminary evidence of albumin benefit. *Clin Infect Dis*. 2005;40(4):538–545.
35. Hebbar KB, et al. Experience with use of extracorporeal life support for severe refractory status asthmaticus in children. *Crit Care*. 2009;13(2):R29.
36. Mohammad Z, Afessa B, Finkielman JD. The incidence of relative adrenal insufficiency in patients with septic shock after the administration of etomidate. *Crit Care*. 2006;10(4):R105.
37. Jones D, et al. Relative adrenal insufficiency in etomidate-naive patients with septic shock. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2006;34(5):599–605.
38. Mtaweh H, et al. Advances in monitoring and management of shock. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2013;60(3):641–654.
39. Goldstein SL, et al. Pediatric patients with multi-organ dysfunction syndrome receiving continuous renal replacement therapy. *Kidney Int*. 2005;67(2):653–658.
40. Zimmerman JJ. A history of adjunctive glucocorticoid treatment for pediatric sepsis: moving beyond steroid pulp fiction toward evidence-based medicine,. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(6):530–539.
41. Sprung CL, et al. Hydrocortisone therapy for patients with septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(2):111–124.
42. Crone RK. Acute circulatory failure in children. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1980;27(3):525–538.
43. Outwater KM, et al. Renal and hemodynamic effects of dopamine in infants following cardiac surgery. *J Clin Anesth*. 1990;2(4):253–257.
44. Bhimji S, Godin DV, McNeill JH. Isoproterenol-induced myocardial ischemic injury in the rabbit: functional and ultrastructural alterations. *Acta Anat (Basel)*. 1986;127(3):205–211.
45. Martinez AM, Padbury JF, Thio S. Dobutamine pharmacokinetics and cardiovascular responses in critically ill neonates. *Pediatrics*. 1992;89(1):47–51.
46. Perkin RM, et al. Dobutamine: a hemodynamic evaluation in children with shock. *J Pediatr*. 1982;100(6):977–983.
47. Beloeil H, et al. Norepinephrine kinetics and dynamics in septic shock and trauma patients. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(6):782–788.
48. Hoffman TM, et al. Efficacy and safety of milrinone in preventing low cardiac output syndrome in infants and children after corrective surgery for congenital heart disease. *Circulation*. 2003;107(7):996–1002.
49. Barton P, et al. Hemodynamic effects of i.v. milrinone lactate in pediatric patients with septic shock. A prospective, double-blinded, randomized, placebo-controlled, interventional study. *Chest*. 1996;109(5):1302–1312.
50. Bailey JM, et al. The pharmacokinetics of milrinone in pediatric patients after cardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(4):1012–1018.

51. Ricci Z, et al. Levosimendan infusion in newborns after corrective surgery for congenital heart disease: randomized controlled trial. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38(7):1198–1204.
52. Tosoni A, Dipchand AI, Mohseni-Bod H. The use of levosimendan in children with cancer with severe acute cardiac dysfunction: case series and a review of the literature. *Cardiol Young*. 2013:1–4.
53. Tobias JD. B-type natriuretic peptide: diagnostic and therapeutic applications in infants and children. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2011;26(3):183–195.
54. Singh S. Digitalis toxicity in infancy and childhood. *Indian J Pediatr*. 1988;55(1):27–34.
55. Drop LJ, et al. Relation between ionized calcium concentration and ventricular pump performance in the dog under hemodynamically controlled conditions. *Am J Cardiol*. 1981;47(5):1041–1051.
56. Flynn JT, et al. Intravenous nicardipine for treatment of severe hypertension in children. *J Pediatr*. 2001;139(1):38–43.
57. Beekman RH, Rocchini AP, Rosenthal A. Hemodynamic effects of nitroprusside in infants with a large ventricular septal defect. *Circulation*. 1981;64(3):553–558.
58. Rubin LJ, Peter RH. Oral hydralazine therapy for primary pulmonary hypertension. *N Engl J Med*. 1980;302(2):69–73.
59. Drummond WH, et al. The independent effects of hyperventilation, tolazoline, and dopamine on infants with persistent pulmonary hypertension,. *J Pediatr*. 1981;98(4):603–611.
60. Palmer RM, Ferrige AG, Moncada S. Nitric oxide release accounts for the biological activity of endothelium-derived relaxing factor. *Nature*. 1987;327(6122):524–526.
61. Roberts Jr JD, et al. Inhaled nitric oxide and persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn. The Inhaled Nitric Oxide Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;336(9):605–610.
62. Zapol WM, Hurford WE. Inhaled nitric oxide in the adult respiratory distress syndrome and other lung diseases. *New Horiz*. 1993;1(4):638–650.
63. Kinsella JP, Abman SH. Recent developments in the pathophysiology and treatment of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn. *J Pediatr*. 1995;126(6):853–864.
64. Stapleton FB, Jones DP, Green RS. Acute renal failure in neonates: incidence, etiology and outcome. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 1987;1(3):314–320.
65. Sinaiko AR. Pharmacologic management of childhood hypertension. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1993;40(1):195–212.
66. Kattwinkel J, et al. Part 15: neonatal resuscitation: 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*. 2010;122(18 suppl 3):S909–S919.
67. Gungor S, et al. Oronasopharyngeal suction versus no suction in normal and term infants delivered by elective cesarean section: a prospective randomized controlled trial. *Gynecol Obstet Invest*. 2006;61(1):9–14.
68. Clements JA, Nellenbogen J, Trahan HJ. Pulmonary surfactant and evolution of the lungs. *Science*. 1970;169(3945):603–604.
69. Grein AJ, Weiner GM. Laryngeal mask airway versus bag-mask ventilation or endotracheal intubation for neonatal resuscitation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2005;(2):CD003314.
70. Trevisanuto D, et al. Drug administration via the laryngeal mask airway. *Resuscitation*. 2006;71(2):263–264; author reply 264.
71. Kuhns LR, et al. Diagnosis of pneumothorax or pneumomediastinum in the neonate by transillumination. *Pediatrics*. 1975;56(3):355–360.
72. Moe-Byrne T, Brown JV, McGuire W. Naloxone for opiate-exposed newborn infants. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;2:CD003483.
73. Wyckoff MH, Perlman JM, Laptook AR. Use of volume expansion during delivery room resuscitation in near-term and term infants. *Pediatrics*. 2005;115(4):950–955.
74. Wiswell TE, et al. Delivery room management of the apparently vigorous meconium-stained neonate: results of the multicenter, international collaborative trial. *Pediatrics*. 2000;105(1 Pt 1):1–7.
75. Vain NE, et al. Oropharyngeal and nasopharyngeal suctioning of meconium-stained neonates before delivery of their shoulders: multicentre, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2004;364(9434):597–602.
76. Jennis MS, Peabody JL. Pulse oximetry: an alternative method for the assessment of oxygenation in newborn infants. *Pediatrics*. 1987;79(4):524–528.
77. Atkins DL, et al. Epidemiology and outcomes from out-of-hospital cardiac arrest in children. The resuscitation outcomes consortium epistry cardiac arrest. *Circulation*. 2009;119:1484–1491.
78. Donoghue AJ, et al. Out-of-hospital pediatric cardiac arrest: an epidemiologic review and assessment of current knowledge. [see comment]. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2005;46(6):512–522.
79. Young KD, Seidel JS. Pediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation: a collective review. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1999;33(2):195–205.
80. Suominen P, et al. Utstein style reporting of in-hospital paediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Resuscitation*. 2000;45(1):17–25.
81. Slonim AD, et al. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation in pediatric intensive care units. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25(12):1951–1955.
82. Berg RA: Personal communication of up-to-date data from the National Registry of CPR.
83. Nadkarni VM, et al. First documented rhythm and clinical outcome from in-hospital cardiac arrest among children and adults. *JAMA*. 2006;295(1):50–57.
84. Zaritsky A, et al. CPR in children. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1987;16(10):1107–1111.
85. Nichols DG, et al. Factors influencing outcome of cardiopulmonary resuscitation in children. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 1986;2(1):1–5.
86. Reis AG, et al. A prospective investigation into the epidemiology of in-hospital pediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation using the international Utstein reporting style. *Pediatrics*. 2002;109(2):200–209.
87. Meaney PA, et al. Higher survival rates among younger patients after pediatric intensive care unit cardiac arrests. *Pediatrics*. 2006;118(6):2424–2433.
88. Parra DA, et al. Outcome of cardiopulmonary resuscitation in a pediatric cardiac intensive care unit. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(9):3296–3300.
89. Suominen P, et al. Paediatric cardiac arrest and resuscitation provided by physician-staffed emergency care units. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1997;41(2):260–265.
90. Sirbaugh PE, et al. A prospective, population-based study of the demographics, epidemiology, management, and outcome of out-of-hospital pediatric cardiopulmonary arrest. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1999;33(2):174–184.
91. Schindler MB, et al. Outcome of out-of-hospital cardiac or respiratory arrest in children. *N Engl J Med*. 1996;335(20):1473–1479.
92. Dieckmann RA, Vardis R. High-dose epinephrine in pediatric out-of-hospital cardiopulmonary arrest. *Pediatrics*. 1995;95(6):901–913.
93. Berg MD, et al. Pediatric defibrillation doses often fail to terminate prolonged out-of-hospital ventricular fibrillation in children. *Resuscitation*. 2005;67(1):63–67.
94. Gerein RB, et al. What are the etiology and epidemiology of out-of-hospital pediatric cardiopulmonary arrest in Ontario, Canada? *Acad Emerg Med*. 2006;13(6):653–658.
95. Tunstall-Pedoe H, et al. Survey of 3765 cardiopulmonary resuscitations in British hospitals (the BRESUS Study): methods and overall results. *BMJ*. 1992;304(6838):1347–1351.
96. Lopez-Herce J, et al. Outcome of out-of-hospital cardiorespiratory arrest in children. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2005;21(12):807–815.
97. Kuisma M, Suominen P, Korpela R. Paediatric out-of-hospital cardiac arrests–epidemiology and outcome. *Resuscitation*. 1995;30(2):141–150.
98. Holmberg M, Holmberg S, Herlitz J. Effect of bystander cardiopulmonary resuscitation in out-of-hospital cardiac arrest patients in Sweden. *Resuscitation*. 2000;47(1):59–70.
99. Kitamura T, et al. Conventional and chest-compression-only cardiopulmonary resuscitation by bystanders for children who have out-of-hospital cardiac arrests: a prospective, nationwide, population-based cohort study. *Lancet*. 2010;375(9723):1347–1354.
100. Kouwenhoven WB, Jude JR, Knickerbocker GG. Closed-chest cardiac massage. *JAMA*. 1960;173:1064–1067.
101. Dean JM, et al. Age-related changes in chest geometry during cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *J Appl Physiol*. 1987;62(6):2212–2219.
102. Donoghue AJ, et al. Effect of hospital characteristics on outcomes from pediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation: a report from the national registry of cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Pediatrics*. 2006;118(3):995–1001.
103. Buist MD, et al. Recognising clinical instability in hospital patients before cardiac arrest or unplanned admission to intensive care. A pilot study in a tertiary-care hospital. *Med J Aust*. 1999;171(1):22–25.

104. Chaplik S, Neafsey PJ. Pre-existing variables and outcome of cardiac arrest resuscitation in hospitalized patients. *Dimens Crit Care Nurs*. 1998;17(4):200–207.
105. Tibballs J, Kinney S. Reduction of hospital mortality and of preventable cardiac arrest and death on introduction of a pediatric medical emergency team. *Pediatric Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(3):306–312.
106. Brilli RJ, et al. Implementation of a medical emergency team in a large pediatric teaching hospital prevents respiratory and cardiopulmonary arrests outside the intensive care unit. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(3):236–246; quiz 247.
107. Sharek PJ, et al. Effect of a rapid response team on hospital-wide mortality and code rates outside the ICU in a Children's Hospital. *JAMA*. 2007;298(19):2267–2274.
108. Hallstrom AP. Dispatcher-assisted "phone" cardiopulmonary resuscitation by chest compression alone or with mouth-to-mouth ventilation. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(suppl 11):N190–N192.
109. Hüpfl M, Selig HF, Nagele P. Chest-compression-only versus standard cardiopulmonary resuscitation: a meta-analysis. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9752):1552–1557.
110. Lerner EB, Rea TD, Bobrow BJ, et al. Emergency medical service dispatch cardiopulmonary resuscitation prearrival instructions to improve survival from out-of-hospital cardiac arrest: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2012;125(4):648–655.
111. Kitamura T, Iwami T, Kawamura T, et al. Conventional and chest-compression-only cardiopulmonary resuscitation by bystanders for children who have out-of-hospital cardiac arrests: a prospective, nationwide, population-based cohort study. *Lancet*. 2010;375(9723):1347–1354.
112. Fukuda T, Ohashi-Fukuda N, Kobayashi H, et al. Conventional versus compression-only versus no-bystander cardiopulmonary resuscitation for pediatric out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Circulation*. 2016;134(25):2060–2070.
113. Naim MY, Burke RV, McNally BF, et al. Association of bystander cardiopulmonary resuscitation with overall and neurologically favorable survival after pediatric out-of-hospital cardiac arrest in the united states: a report from the cardiac arrest registry to enhance survival surveillance registry. *JAMA Pediatr*. 2017;171(2):133–141.
114. Atkins DL, Berger S, Duff JP, et al. Part 11: pediatric basic life support and cardiopulmonary resuscitation quality: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18 suppl 2):S519–S525.
115. Berg RA, Hemphill R, Abella BS, et al. Part 5: adult basic life support: 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2010;122(18 suppl 3):S685–S705.
116. Maconochie IK, de Caen AR, Aickin R, Atkins DL. Part 6: pediatric basic life support and pediatric advanced life support: 2015 international consensus on cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care science with treatment recommendations. *Resuscitation*. 2015;95:e147–e168.
117. Berg RA, Nadkarni VM, Sutton RM, et al. The authors reply. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(8):e762–e764.
118. Kern KB, et al. Twenty-four hour survival in a canine model of cardiac arrest comparing three methods of manual cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1986;7(4):859–867.
119. Kern KB, et al. Myocardial perfusion pressure: a predictor of 24-hour survival during prolonged cardiac arrest in dogs. *Resuscitation*. 1988;16(4):241–250.
120. Kern KB, et al. The effect of coronary artery lesions on the relationship between coronary perfusion pressure and myocardial blood flow during cardiopulmonary resuscitation in pigs. *Am Heart J*. 1990;120(2):324–333.
121. Sanders AB, Ewy GA, Taft TV. Prognostic and therapeutic importance of the aortic diastolic pressure in resuscitation from cardiac arrest. *Crit Care Med*. 1984;12(10):871–873.
122. Sanders AB, et al. Importance of the duration of inadequate coronary perfusion pressure on resuscitation from cardiac arrest. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1985;6(1):113–118.
123. Sanders AB, et al. Expired PCO2 as a prognostic indicator of successful resuscitation from cardiac arrest. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1985;14(10):948–952.
124. Paradis NA, et al. Coronary perfusion pressure and the return of spontaneous circulation in human cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *JAMA*. 1990;263(8):1106–1113.
125. Ornato JP, et al. The effect of applied chest compression force on systemic arterial pressure and end-tidal carbon dioxide concentration during CPR in human beings,. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1989;18(7):732–737.
126. Aufderheide TP, et al. Hyperventilation-induced hypotension during cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Circulation*. 2004;109(16):1960–1965.
127. Aufderheide TP, Lurie KG. Death by hyperventilation: a common and life-threatening problem during cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(suppl 9):S345–S351.
128. Milander MM, et al. Chest compression and ventilation rates during cardiopulmonary resuscitation: the effects of audible tone guidance. *Acad Emerg Med*. 1995;2(8):708–713.
129. Ewy GA. Continuous-chest-compression cardiopulmonary resuscitation for cardiac arrest. *Circulation*. 2007;116(25):2894–2896.
130. Valenzuela TD, et al. Interruptions of chest compressions during emergency medical systems resuscitation. *Circulation*. 2005;112(9):1259–1265.
131. Edelson DP, et al. Effects of compression depth and pre-shock pauses predict defibrillation failure during cardiac arrest. *Resuscitation*. 2006;71(2):137–145.
132. Yannopoulos D, et al. Clinical and hemodynamic comparison of 15:2 and 30:2 compression-to-ventilation ratios for cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(5):1444–1449.
133. Chandra NC, et al. Observations of ventilation during resuscitation in a canine model. *Circulation*. 1994;90(6):3070–3075.
134. Weil MH, et al. Difference in acid-base state between venous and arterial blood during cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *N Engl J Med*. 1986;315(3):153–156.
135. Berg RA, et al. Adverse hemodynamic effects of interrupting chest compressions for rescue breathing during cardiopulmonary resuscitation for ventricular fibrillation cardiac arrest. *Circulation*. 2001;104(20):2465–2470.
136. Schleien CL, et al. Effect of epinephrine on cerebral and myocardial perfusion in an infant animal preparation of cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Circulation*. 1986;73(4):809–817.
137. Halperin HR, et al. Determinants of blood flow to vital organs during cardiopulmonary resuscitation in dogs. *Circulation*. 1986;73(3):539–550.
138. Michael JR, et al. Mechanisms by which epinephrine augments cerebral and myocardial perfusion during cardiopulmonary resuscitation in dogs. *Circulation*. 1984;69(4):822–835.
139. Voorhees WD, Babbs CF, Tacker Jr WA. Regional blood flow during cardiopulmonary resuscitation in dogs. *Crit Care Med*. 1980;8(3):134–136.
140. Yannopoulos D, et al. Hemodynamic and respiratory effects of negative tracheal pressure during CPR in pigs. *Resuscitation*. 2006;69(3):487–494.
141. Lurie K, et al. Improving the efficiency of cardiopulmonary resuscitation with an inspiratory impedance threshold valve. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(suppl 11):N207–N209.
142. Lurie KG, et al. Improving active compression-decompression cardiopulmonary resuscitation with an inspiratory impedance valve. *Circulation*. 1995;91(6):1629–1632.
143. Plaisance P, et al. Evaluation of an impedance threshold device in patients receiving active compression-decompression cardiopulmonary resuscitation for out of hospital cardiac arrest. *Resuscitation*. 2004;61(3):265–271.
144. Yannopoulos D, et al. Clinical and hemodynamic comparison of 15:2 and 30:2 compression-to-ventilation ratios for cardiopulmonary resuscitation*. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(5):1444–1449.
145. Aufderheide TP, et al. Clinical evaluation of an inspiratory impedance threshold device during standard cardiopulmonary resuscitation in patients with out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(4):734–740.
146. Wolcke BB, et al. Comparison of standard cardiopulmonary resuscitation versus the combination of active compression-decompression cardiopulmonary resuscitation and an inspiratory impedance threshold device for out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Circulation*. 2003;108(18):2201–2205.

147. Maher KO, et al. Depth of sternal compression and intra-arterial blood pressure during CPR in infants following cardiac surgery. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(6):662–6664. Epub 2009 Apr 28.
148. Kao PC, et al. What is the correct depth of chest compression for infants and children? A radiological study. *Pediatrics*. 2009;124(1):49–55.
149. Braga MS, et al. Estimation of optimal CPR chest compression depth in children by using computer tomography. *Pediatrics*. 2009;124(1):e69–e74.
150. Idris AH, et al. Effect of ventilation on acid-base balance and oxygenation in low blood- flow states. *Crit Care Med*. 1994;22(11): 1827–1834.
151. Srikantan SK, et al. Effect of one-rescuer compression/ventilation ratios on cardiopulmonary resuscitation in infant, pediatric, and adult manikins. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2005;6(3):293–297.
152. Kinney SB, Tibballs J. An analysis of the efficacy of bag-valve-mask ventilation and chest compression during different compression-ventilation ratios in manikin-simulated paediatric resuscitation. *Resuscitation*. 2000;43(2):115–120.
153. Babbs CF, Thelander K. Theoretically optimal duty cycles for chest and abdominal compression during external cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Acad Emerg Med*. 1995;2(8):698–707.
154. Dean JM, et al. Age-related effects of compression rate and duration in cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *J Appl Physiol*. 1990;68(2): 554–560.
155. Halperin HR, et al. A preliminary study of cardiopulmonary resuscitation by circumferential compression of the chest with use of a pneumatic vest. *N Engl J Med*. 1993;329(11):762–768.
156. Dorfsman ML, et al. Two-thumb vs. two-finger chest compression in an infant model of prolonged cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2000;7(10):1077–1082.
157. American Heart A. 2005 American Heart Association (AHA) guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) and emergency cardiovascular care (ECC) of pediatric and neonatal patients: pediatric basic life support. *Pediatrics*. 2006;117(5):e989–e1004.
158. Voelckel WG, et al. Effects of vasopressin and epinephrine on splanchnic blood flow and renal function during and after cardiopulmonary resuscitation in pigs. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(4):1083–1088.
159. Berg RA, et al. Assisted ventilation does not improve outcome in a porcine model of single-rescuer bystander cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Circulation*. 1997;95(6):1635–1641.
160. Boczar ME, et al. A technique revisited: hemodynamic comparison of closed- and open-chest cardiac massage during human cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23(3):498–503.
161. Sanders AB, et al. Improved resuscitation from cardiac arrest with open-chest massage. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1984;13(9 Pt 1):672–675.
162. Fleisher G, et al. Open- versus closed-chest cardiac compressions in a canine model of pediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1985;3(4):305–310.
163. Sheikh A, Brogan T. Outcome and cost of open- and closed-chest cardiopulmonary resuscitation in pediatric cardiac arrests. *Pediatrics*. 1994;93(3):392–398.
164. Koehler RC, et al. Beneficial effect of epinephrine infusion on cerebral and myocardial blood flows during CPR. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1985;14(8):744–749.
165. Berkowitz ID, et al. Epinephrine dosage effects on cerebral and myocardial blood flow in an infant swine model of cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(6):1041–1050.
166. Lindner KH, et al. Influence of epinephrine on systemic, myocardial, and cerebral acid-base status during cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74(2):333–339.
167. Ristagno G, et al. Effects of epinephrine and vasopressin on cerebral microcirculatory flows during and after cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(9):2145–2149.
168. Lindner KH, Ahnefeld FW, Bowdler IM. Comparison of different doses of epinephrine on myocardial perfusion and resuscitation success during cardiopulmonary resuscitation in a pig model. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1991;9(1):27–31.
169. Brown C, et al. A comparison of standard-dose and high-dose epinephrine in cardiac arrest outside the hospital. *New Engl J Med*. 1992;327:151–155.
170. Behringer W, et al. Cumulative epinephrine dose during cardiopulmonary resuscitation and neurologic outcome. *Ann Intern Med*. 1998;129(6):450–456.
171. Callaham M, et al. A randomized clinical trial of high-dose epinephrine and norepinephrine versus standard-dose epinephrine in prehospital cardiac arrest,. *JAMA*. 1992;268:2667–2672.
172. Perondi MB, et al. A comparison of high-dose and standard-dose epinephrine in children with cardiac arrest. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350(17):1722–1730.
173. Lindner KH, et al. Vasopressin administration in refractory cardiac arrest. *Ann Intern Med*. 1996;124(12):1061–1064.
174. Wenzel V, et al. Survival with full neurologic recovery and no cerebral pathology after prolonged cardiopulmonary resuscitation with vasopressin in pigs. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2000;35(2):527–533.
175. Prengel AW, Lindner KH, Keller A. Cerebral oxygenation during cardiopulmonary resuscitation with epinephrine and vasopressin in pigs. *Stroke*. 1996;27(7):1241–1248.
176. Prengel AW, et al. Splanchnic and renal blood flow after cardiopulmonary resuscitation with epinephrine and vasopressin in pigs. *Resuscitation*. 1998;38(1):19–24.
177. Stiell IG, et al. Vasopressin versus epinephrine for inhospital cardiac arrest: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2001;358(9276): 105–109.
178. Wenzel V, et al. A comparison of vasopressin and epinephrine for out-of-hospital cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350(2):105–113.
179. Mann K, Berg RA, Nadkarni V. Beneficial effects of vasopressin in prolonged pediatric cardiac arrest: a case series. *Resuscitation*. 2002;52(2):149–156.
180. Stueven HA, et al. The effectiveness of calcium chloride in refractory electromechanical dissociation. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1985;14(7): 626–629.
181. Stueven HA, et al. Lack of effectiveness of calcium chloride in refractory asystole. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1985;14(7):630–632.
182. Stueven H, et al. Use of calcium in prehospital cardiac arrest. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1983;12(3):136–139.
183. Redding JS, Haynes RR, Thomas JD. Drug therapy in resuscitation from electromechanical dissociation. *Crit Care Med*. 1983;11(9):681–684.
184. Niemann JT, et al. Predictive indices of successful cardiac resuscitation after prolonged arrest and experimental cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1985;14(6):521–528.
185. Blecic S, et al. Calcium chloride in experimental electromechanical dissociation: a placebo-controlled trial in dogs. *Crit Care Med*. 1987;15(4):324–327.
186. Srinivasan V, et al. Calcium use during in-hospital pediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation: a report from the national registry of cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Pediatrics*. 2008;121(5): e1144–e1151.
187. Meert KL, et al. Multicenter cohort study of in-hospital pediatric cardiac arrest. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009.
188. de Mos N, et al. Pediatric in-intensive-care-unit cardiac arrest: incidence, survival, and predictive factors. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(4):1209–1215.
189. Vukmir RB, Katz L. Sodium Bicarbonate Study G: Sodium bicarbonate improves outcome in prolonged prehospital cardiac arrest. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2006;24(2):156–161.
190. Lokesh L, et al. A randomized controlled trial of sodium bicarbonate in neonatal resuscitation-effect on immediate outcome. *Resuscitation*. 2004;60(2):219–223.
191. Mathieu D, et al. Effects of bicarbonate therapy on hemodynamics and tissue oxygenation in patients with lactic acidosis: a prospective, controlled clinical study. *Crit Care Med*. 1991;19(11):1352–1356.
192. Cooper DJ, et al. Bicarbonate does not improve hemodynamics in critically ill patients who have lactic acidosis. A prospective, controlled clinical study. *Ann Intern Med*. 1990;112(7):492–498.
193. Huang YG, et al. Cardiovascular responses to graded doses of three catecholamines during lactic and hydrochloric acidosis in dogs. *Br J Anaesth*. 1995;74(5):583–590.
194. Preziosi MP, et al. Metabolic acidemia with hypoxia attenuates the hemodynamic responses to epinephrine during resuscitation in lambs. *Crit Care Med*. 1993;21(12):1901–1907.
195. Dohrmann ML, Goldschlager NF. Myocardial stimulation threshold in patients with cardiac pacemakers: effect of physiologic variables, pharmacologic agents, and lead electrodes. *Cardiol Clin*. 1985;3(4):527–537.
196. Bar-Joseph G. Is sodium bicarbonate therapy during cardiopulmonary resuscitation really detrimental? [letter]. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(5):1693–1694.
197. Zeiner A, et al. Hyperthermia after cardiac arrest is associated with an unfavorable neurologic outcome. *Arch Int Med*. 2001;161(16):2007–2012.

198. Hickey RW, et al. Hypothermia and hyperthermia in children after resuscitation from cardiac arrest. *Pediatrics*. 2000;106(1 Pt 1): 118–122.
199. Bernard SA, et al. Treatment of comatose survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest with induced hypothermia. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(8):557–563.
200. Hypothermia after Cardiac Arrest Study Group. Mild therapeutic hypothermia to improve the neurologic outcome after cardiac arrest. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(8):549–556.
201. Nielsen N, et al. Targeted temperature management at 33 degrees C versus 36 degrees C after cardiac arrest. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(23):2197–2206.
202. Shankaran S, et al. Whole-body hypothermia for neonatal encephalopathy: animal observations as a basis for a randomized, controlled pilot study in term infants. *Pediatrics*. 2002;110(2 Pt 1):377–385.
203. Gluckman PD, et al. Selective head cooling with mild systemic hypothermia after neonatal encephalopathy: multicentre randomised trial. *Lancet*. 2005;365(9460):663–670.
204. Oksanen T, et al. Strict versus moderate glucose control after resuscitation from ventricular fibrillation. *Intensive Care Med*. 2007;33(12):2093–2100.
205. Beiser DG, et al. Derangements in blood glucose following initial resuscitation from in-hospital cardiac arrest: a report from the national registry of cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(6):624–630.
206. Ulate KP, et al. Strict glycemic targets need not be so strict: a more permissive glycemic range for critically ill children. *Pediatrics*. 2008;122(4):e898–e904.
207. Langhelle A, et al. In-hospital factors associated with improved outcome after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. A comparison between four regions in Norway. *Resuscitation*. 2003;56(3):247–263.
208. Macrae D, et al. A randomized trial of hyperglycemic control in pediatric intensive care. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(2):107–118.
209. Meyer RJ, et al. Post-resuscitation right ventricular dysfunction: delineation and treatment with dobutamine. *Resuscitation*. 2002;55(2):187–191.
210. Kern KB, et al. Postresuscitation left ventricular systolic and diastolic dysfunction. Treatment with dobutamine. *Circulation*. 1997;95(12):2610–2613.
211. Trzeciak S, et al. Significance of arterial hypotension after resuscitation from cardiac arrest. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37(11):2895–2903.
212. Niemann JT, Garner D, Lewis RJ. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha is associated with early postresuscitation myocardial dysfunction. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(8):1753–1758.
213. Sunde K, et al. Implementation of a standardised treatment protocol for post resuscitation care after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Resuscitation*. 2007.
214. Ruiz-Bailen M, et al. Reversible myocardial dysfunction after cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Resuscitation*. 2005;66(2):175–181.
215. Laurent I, et al. High-volume hemofiltration after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest: a randomized study. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2005;46(3): 432–437.
216. Adrie C, et al. Successful cardiopulmonary resuscitation after cardiac arrest as a “sepsis-like” syndrome. *Circulation*. 2002;106(5): 562–568.
217. Mullner M, et al. Measurement of myocardial contractility following successful resuscitation: quantitated left ventricular systolic function utilising non-invasive wall stress analysis. *Resuscitation*. 1998;39(1-2):51–59.
218. Laurent I, et al. Reversible myocardial dysfunction in survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2002;40(12): 2110–2116.
219. Sundgreen C, et al. Autoregulation of cerebral blood flow in patients resuscitated from cardiac arrest. *Stroke*. 2001;32(1):128–132.
220. Sterz F, et al. Hypertension with or without hemodilution after cardiac arrest in dogs. *Stroke*. 1990;21(8):1178–1184.
221. Safar P, et al. Improved cerebral resuscitation from cardiac arrest in dogs with mild hypothermia plus blood flow promotion. *Stroke*. 1996;27(1):105–113.
222. Niemann JT, et al. Milrinone facilitates resuscitation from cardiac arrest and attenuates postresuscitation myocardial dysfunction. *Circulation*. 2003;108(24):3031–3035.
223. Vasquez A, et al. Optimal dosing of dobutamine for treating post-resuscitation left ventricular dysfunction. *Resuscitation*. 2004;61(2):199–207.
224. Friedman D, Claassen J, Hirsch LJ. Continuous electroencephalogram monitoring in the intensive care unit. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109(2):506–523.
225. Scheuer ML, Wilson SB. Data analysis for continuous EEG monitoring in the ICU: seeing the forest and the trees. *J Clin Neurophysiol*. 2004;21(5):353–378.
226. Abend NS, et al. Electroencephalographic monitoring during hypothermia after pediatric cardiac arrest. *Neurology*. 2009;72(22):1931–1940.
227. Young GB, Doig GS. Continuous EEG monitoring in comatose intensive care patients: epileptiform activity in etiologically distinct groups. *Neurocrit Care*. 2005;2(1):5–10.
228. Oddo M, et al. Continuous electroencephalography in the medical intensive care unit. *Crit Care Med*. 2009;37(6):2051–2056.
229. Carrera E, et al. Continuous electroencephalographic monitoring in critically ill patients with central nervous system infections. *Arch Neurol*. 2008;65(12):1612–1618.
230. Glass HC, et al. Clinical neonatal seizures are independently associated with outcome in infants at risk for hypoxic-ischemic brain injury. *J Pediatr*. 2009;155(3):318–323.
231. McBride MC, Laroia N, Guillet R. Electrographic seizures in neonates correlate with poor neurodevelopmental outcome. *Neurology*. 2000;55(4):506–513.
232. Coen RW, et al. Continuous monitoring of the electroencephalogram following perinatal asphyxia. *J Pediatr*. 1982;100(4):628–630.
233. Ronen GM, et al. Long-term prognosis in children with neonatal seizures: a population-based study. *Neurology*. 2007;69(19): 1816–1822.
234. Abdel-Rahman U, et al. Hypoxic reoxygenation during initial reperfusion attenuates cardiac dysfunction and limits ischemia-reperfusion injury after cardioplegic arrest in a porcine model. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2009;137(4):978–982.
235. Bayir H, et al. Selective early cardiolipin peroxidation after traumatic brain injury: an oxidative lipidomics analysis. *Ann Neurol*. 2007;62(2):154–169.
236. Bayir H, et al. Neuronal NOS-mediated nitration and inactivation of manganese superoxide dismutase in brain after experimental and human brain injury. *J Neurochem*. 2007;101(1):168–181.
237. Vereczki V, et al. Normoxic resuscitation after cardiac arrest protects against hippocampal oxidative stress, metabolic dysfunction, and neuronal death. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2006;26(6):821–835.
238. Martin E, Rosenthal RE, Fiskum G. Pyruvate dehydrogenase complex: metabolic link to ischemic brain injury and target of oxidative stress. *J Neurosci Res*. 2005;79(1-2):240–247.
239. Balan IS, et al. Oximetry-guided reoxygenation improves neurological outcome after experimental cardiac arrest. *Stroke*. 2006;37(12):3008–3013.
240. Kilgannon JH, et al: Association between arterial hyperoxia following resuscitation from cardiac arrest and in-hospital mortality. *JAMA* 303(21):2165–2171.
241. Wik L, et al. Quality of cardiopulmonary resuscitation during out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *JAMA*. 2005;293(3):299–304.
242. 2005 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2005;112(suppl 24): IV1–203.
243. Sutton RM, et al. Quantitative analysis of chest compression interruptions during in-hospital resuscitation of older children and adolescents. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(11):1259–1263.
244. Sutton RM, et al. Quantitative analysis of CPR quality during in-hospital resuscitation of older children and adolescents. *Pediatrics*. 2009;124(2):494–499.
245. Niles D, et al. “Rolling Refreshers”: a novel approach to maintain CPR psychomotor skill competence. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(8): 909–912.
246. Ortmann L, Prodhan P, Gossett J, et al. Outcomes after in-hospital cardiac arrest in children with cardiac disease: a report from Get With the Guidelines–Resuscitation. *Circulation*. 2011;124(21):2329–2337.
247. Morris MC, Wernovsky G, Nadkarni VM. Survival outcomes after extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation instituted during active chest compressions following refractory in-hospital pediatric cardiac arrest. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2004;5(5):440–446.
248. Lowry AW, Morales DL, Graves DE, et al. Characterization of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for pediatric cardiac arrest in the United States: analysis of the kids’ inpatient database. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2013;34(6):1422–1430.

249. Odegard KC, Bergersen L, Thiagarajan R, et al. The frequency of cardiac arrests in patients with congenital heart disease undergoing cardiac catheterization. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118(1):175–182.
250. Raymond TT, et al. Outcomes among neonates, infants, and children after extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation for refractory inhospital pediatric cardiac arrest: a report from the National Registry of Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2010;11(3):362–371.
251. Lasa JJ, Rogers RS, Localio R, et al. Extracorporeal Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (E-CPR) during pediatric in-hospital cardiopulmonary arrest is associated with improved survival to discharge: a report from the American Heart Association's Get With The Guidelines-Resuscitation (GWTG-R) Registry. *Circulation*. 2016;133(2):165–176.
252. Kilbaugh TJ, et al: Propensity, prophecy, and perplexity: does in-hospital extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation really make a difference? Resuscitation 81(7):786–787.
253. de Caen AR, Berg MD, Chameides L, et al. Part 12: pediatric advanced life support: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18 suppl 2):S526–S542.
254. Samson RA, et al. Outcomes of in-hospital ventricular fibrillation in children. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354(22):2328–2339.
255. Rhodes JF, et al. Cardiac arrest in infants after congenital heart surgery. *Circulation*. 1999;100(suppl 19):194–199.
256. Appleton GO, et al. CPR and the single rescuer: at what age should you "call first" rather than "call fast"? *Ann Emerg Med*. 1995;25(4):492–494.
257. Gutgesell HP, Tacker WA, Geddes LA, et al. Energy dose for ventricular defibrillation of children. *Pediatrics*. 1976;58:898–901.
258. Rodriguez-Nunez A, et al. Effectiveness and long-term outcome of cardiopulmonary resuscitation in paediatric intensive care units in Spain. *Resuscitation*. 2006;71(3):301–309.
259. Tibballs J, Aickin R, Nuthall G. Basic and advanced paediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation - guidelines of the Australian and New Zealand Resuscitation Councils 2010. *J Paediatr Child Health*. 2012;48(7):551–555.
260. Meaney PA, et al. Effect of defibrillation energy dose during in-hospital pediatric cardiac arrest. *Pediatrics*. 2011;127(1):e16–e23.
261. Kudenchuk PJ, et al. Amiodarone for resuscitation after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest due to ventricular fibrillation. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;341(12):871–878.
262. Dorian P, et al. Amiodarone as compared with lidocaine for shock-resistant ventricular fibrillation. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(12):884–890.
263. Valenzuela TD, et al. Outcomes of rapid defibrillation by security officers after cardiac arrest in casinos. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;343(17):1206–1209.
264. Caffrey SL, et al. Public use of automated external defibrillators. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;347(16):1242–1247.
265. Samson RA, et al. Use of automated external defibrillators for children: an update: an advisory statement from the pediatric advanced life support task force, International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation. *Circulation*. 2003;107(25):3250–3255.
266. Zaritsky A. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation in children. *Clin Chest Med*. 1987;8(4):561–571.
267. Dalton HJ, et al. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for cardiac rescue in children with severe myocardial dysfunction. *Crit Care Med*. 1993;21(7):1020–1028.
268. del Nido PJ, et al. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenator rescue in children during cardiac arrest after cardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 1992;86(suppl 5):II300–II304.
269. Morris MC, Wernovsky G, Nadkarni VM. Survival outcomes after extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation instituted during active chest compressions following refractory in-hospital pediatric cardiac arrest. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2004;5(5):440–446.
270. Thiagarajan RR, Bratton SL. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for cardiac arrest: when to use it, and what are the outcomes? *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(4):1285–1286.
271. Thiagarajan RR, et al. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation to aid cardiopulmonary resuscitation in infants and children. *Circulation*. 2007;116(15):1693–1700.
272. McNiece WL, Dierdorf SF. The pediatric airway. *Semin Pediatr Surg*. 2004;13(3):152–165.
273. Fine GF, Borland LM. The future of the cuffed endotracheal tube. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(1):38–42.
274. Engorn BM, et al. *Front Pediatr*. 2018;6:365.
275. Ross PA, Newth CJ, Khemani RG. Accuracy of pulse oximetry in children. *Pediatrics*. 2014;133(1):22–29.
276. Kitterman JA, Phibbs RH, Tooley WH. Catheterization of umbilical vessels in newborn infants. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1970;17(4):895–912.
277. Graham AS, et al. Positive end-expiratory pressure and pressure support in peripheral airways obstruction : work of breathing in intubated children. *Intensive Care Med*. 2007;33(1):120–127.
278. Ross PA, et al. Pressure-rate product and phase angle as measures of acute inspiratory upper airway obstruction in rhesus monkeys. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2010;45(7):639–644.
279. Coleman MM, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2004;113(4):770–774.
280. Ergaz Z, Simanovsky N, Rozovsky K, et al. Clinical outcome of umbilical artery catheter-related thrombosis - a cohort study. *J Perinatol*. 2012;32(12):933–940.
281. Bhalla AK, Khemani RG, Hotz JC, et al. Accuracy of transcutaneous carbon dioxide levels in comparison to arterial carbon dioxide levels in critically ill children. *Respir Care*. 2019;64(2):201–208.
282. Frankenfield DC, et al. Predicting dead space ventilation in critically ill patients using clinically available data. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(1):288–291.
283. Bhalla AK, Belani S, Leung D, et al. Higher dead space is associated with increased mortality in critically ill children. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(11):2439–2445.
284. Yehya N, Bhalla AK, Thomas NJ, Khemani RG. Alveolar dead space fraction discriminates mortality in pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2016;17(2):101–109.
285. Ghuman AK, Newth CJ, Khemani RG. The association between the end tidal alveolar dead space fraction and mortality in pediatric acute hypoxemic respiratory failure. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;13(1):11–15.
286. Khemani RG, Hotz J, Morzov R, et al. Evaluating risk factors for pediatric post-extubation upper airway obstruction using a physiology-based tool. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2016;193(2):198–209.
287. Willis BC, et al. Pressure-rate products and phase angles in children on minimal support ventilation and after extubation. *Intensive Care Med*. 2005;31(12):1700–1705.
288. Pham TM, O'Malley L, Mayfield S, et al. The effect of high flow nasal cannula therapy on the work of breathing in infants with bronchiolitis. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2015;50(7):713–720.
289. Weiler T, Kamerkar A, Hotz J, et al. The relationship between high flow nasal cannula flow rate and effort of breathing in children. *J Pediatr*. 2017;189:66–71.
290. Kamerkar A, Hotz J, Morzov R, et al. Comparison of effort of breathing for infants on nasal modes of respiratory support. *J Pediatr*. 2017;185: 26–32.e3.
291. Hotz JC, Sodetani CT, Van Steenbergen J, et al. Measurements obtained from esophageal balloon catheters are affected by the esophageal balloon filling volume in children with ARDS. *Respir Care*. 2018;63(2):177–186.
292. Rodriguez PO, et al. Transpulmonary pressure and gas exchange during decremental PEEP titration in pulmonary ARDS patients. *Respir Care*. 2013;58(5):754–763.
293. Yang Y, et al. Positive end expiratory pressure titrated by transpulmonary pressure improved oxygenation and respiratory mechanics in acute respiratory distress syndrome patients with intra-abdominal hypertension. *Chin Med J (Engl)*. 2013;126(17):3234–3239.
294. Sarge T, et al. Raising positive end-expiratory pressures in ARDS to achieve a positive transpulmonary pressure does not cause hemodynamic compromise. *Intensive Care Med*. 2014;40(1):126–128.
295. Fumagalli J, Berra L, Zhang C, et al. Transpulmonary pressure describes lung morphology during decremental positive end-expiratory pressure trials in obesity. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(8):1374–1381.
296. Eichler L, Truskowska K, Dupree A, et al. Intraoperative ventilation of morbidly obese patients guided by transpulmonary pressure. *Obes Surg*. 2018;28(1):122–129.
297. Pirrone M, Fisher D, Chipman D, et al. Recruitment maneuvers and positive end-expiratory pressure titration in morbidly obese ICU patients. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(2):300–307.
298. Hibbert K, Rice M, Malhotra A. Obesity and ARDS. *Chest*. 2012;142(3):785–790.
299. Akoumianaki E, Maggiore SM, Valenza F, et al. The application of esophageal pressure measurement in patients with respiratory failure. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;189(5):520–531.

300. Mietto C, Malbrain ML, Chiumello D. Transpulmonary pressure monitoring during mechanical ventilation: a bench-to-bedside review. *Anaesthesiol Intensive Ther*. 2015;47 Spec No s27–s37.
301. Mauri T, Yoshida T, Bellani G, et al. Esophageal and transpulmonary pressure in the clinical setting: meaning, usefulness and perspectives. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42(9):1360–1373.
302. Hammer J, Newth CJ. Assessment of thoraco-abdominal asynchrony. *Paediatr Respir Rev*. 2009;10(2):75–80.
303. Hammer J, Newth CJ, Deakers TW. Validation of the phase angle technique as an objective measure of upper airway obstruction. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 1995;19(3):167–173.
304. Reber A, et al. Effect of continuous positive airway pressure on the measurement of thoracoabdominal asynchrony and minute ventilation in children anesthetized with sevoflurane and nitrous oxide. *Chest*. 2002;122(2):473–478.
305. Reber A, et al. Effect of airway opening manoeuvres on thoraco-abdominal asynchrony in anaesthetized children. *Eur Respir J*. 2001;17(6):1239–1243.
306. Khemani RG, Sekayan T, Hotz J, et al. Risk factors for pediatric extubation failure: the importance of respiratory muscle strength. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(8):e798–e805.
307. Khemani RG, et al. Pediatric upper airway obstruction: interobserver variability is the road to perdition. *J Crit Care*. 2013;28(4):490–497.
308. Frerichs I, Amato MB, van Kaam AH, et al. Chest electrical impedance tomography examination, data analysis, terminology, clinical use and recommendations: consensus statement of the TRanslational EIT developmeNt stuDy group. *Thorax*. 2017;72(1):83–93.
309. Zhao Z, Peng SY, Chang MY, et al. Spontaneous breathing trials after prolonged mechanical ventilation monitored by electrical impedance tomography: an observational study. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2017;61(9):1166–1175.
310. Nestler C, Simon P, Petroff D, et al. Individualized positive end-expiratory pressure in obese patients during general anaesthesia: a randomized controlled clinical trial using electrical impedance tomography. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(6):1194–1205.
311. Pereira SM, Tucci MR, Morais CCA, et al. Individual positive end-expiratory pressure settings optimize intraoperative mechanical ventilation and reduce postoperative atelectasis. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129(6):1070–1081.
312. Ngo C, Dippel F, Tenbrock K, et al. Flow-volume loops measured with electrical impedance tomography in pediatric patients with asthma. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2018;53(5):636–644.
313. Mazzoni MB, Perri A, Plebani AM, et al. Electrical impedance tomography in children with community acquired pneumonia: preliminary data. *Respir Med*. 2017;130:9–12.
314. Dmytrowich J, Holt T, Schmid K, Hansen G. Mechanical ventilation guided by electrical impedance tomography in pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2018;32(3):503–507.
315. Durand P, De Luca D, Tissieres P. What's new in lung ultrasound in the critically ill or injured child. *Intensive Care Med*. 2018.
316. Hendaus MA, Jomha FA, Alhammadi AH. Lung ultrasound for the diagnosis of childhood pneumonia: a safe and accurate imaging mode. *Ther Clin Risk Manag*. 2015;11:1817–1818.
317. Basile V, Di Mauro A, Scalini E, et al. Lung ultrasound: a useful tool in diagnosis and management of bronchiolitis. *BMC Pediatr*. 2015;15:63.
318. Pereda MA, Chavez MA, Hooper-Miele CC, et al. Lung ultrasound for the diagnosis of pneumonia in children: a meta-analysis. *Pediatrics*. 2015;135(4):714–722.
319. Ferrari G, De Filippi G, Elia F, et al. Diaphragm ultrasound as a new index of discontinuation from mechanical ventilation. *Crit Ultrasound J*. 2014;6(1):8.
320. Umbrello M, Formenti P, Longhi D, et al. Diaphragm ultrasound as indicator of respiratory effort in critically ill patients undergoing assisted mechanical ventilation: a pilot clinical study. *Crit Care*. 2015;19(1):161.
321. Farghaly S, Hasan AA. Diaphragm ultrasound as a new method to predict extubation outcome in mechanically ventilated patients. *Aust Crit Care*. 2017;30(1):37–43.
322. Lee EP, Hsia SH, Hsiao HF, et al. Evaluation of diaphragmatic function in mechanically ventilated children: an ultrasound study. *PLoS One*. 2017;12(8):e0183560.
323. Rubin S, Ghuman A, Deakers T, et al. Effort of breathing in children receiving high-flow nasal cannula. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014;15(1):1–6.
324. Weiler T, Kamerkar A, Hotz J, et al. The relationship between high flow nasal cannula flow rate and effort of breathing in children. *J Pediatr*. 2017;189:66–71.e3.
325. Pham TM, O'Malley L, Mayfield S, et al. The effect of high flow nasal cannula therapy on the work of breathing in infants with bronchiolitis. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2015;50(7):713–720.
326. Franklin D, Babl FE, Schlapbach LJ, et al. A randomized trial of high-flow oxygen therapy in infants with bronchiolitis. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:1121–1131.
327. McKiernan C, et al. High flow nasal cannulae therapy in infants with bronchiolitis. *J Pediatr*. 2010;156(4):634–638.
328. Schibler A, et al. Reduced intubation rates for infants after introduction of high-flow nasal prong oxygen delivery. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37(5):847–852.
329. Onodera Y, Akimoto R, Suzuki H, et al. A high-flow nasal cannula system with relatively low flow effectively washes out $CO_2$from the anatomical dead space in a sophisticated respiratory model made by a 3D printer. *Intensive Care Med Exp*. 2018;6(1):7.
330. Sivieri EM, Foglia EE, Abbasi S. Carbon dioxide washout during high flow nasal cannula versus nasal CPAP support: an in vitro study. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2017;52(6):792–798.
331. Okuda M, Tanaka N, Naito K, et al. Evaluation by various methods of the physiological mechanism of a high-flow nasal cannula (HFNC) in healthy volunteers. *BMJ Open Respir Res*. 2017;4(1):e000200.
332. Hough JL, Pham TM, Schibler A. Physiologic effect of high-flow nasal cannula in infants with bronchiolitis. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014;15(5):e214–e219.
333. Hegde S, Prodhan P. Serious air leak syndrome complicating high-flow nasal cannula therapy: a report of 3 cases. *Pediatrics*. 2013;131(3):e939–e944.
334. Basnet S, Mander G, Andoh J, et al. Safety, efficacy, and tolerability of early initiation of noninvasive positive pressure ventilation in pediatric patients admitted with status asthmaticus: a pilot study. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;13(4):393–398.
335. Thill PJ, et al. Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation in children with lower airway obstruction. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2004;5(4):337–342.
336. Nievas IF, Anand KJ. Severe acute asthma exacerbation in children: a stepwise approach for escalating therapy in a pediatric intensive care unit. *J Pediatr Pharmacol Ther*. 2013;18(2):88–104.
337. Koninckx M, Buysse C, de Hoog M. Management of status asthmaticus in children. *Paediatr Respir Rev*. 2013;14(2):78–85.
338. Fine GF, Borland LM. The future of the cuffed endotracheal tube. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(1):38–42.
339. Khemani RG, Hotz J, Morzov R, et al. Evaluating risk factors for pediatric post-extubation upper airway obstruction using a physiology-based tool. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2016;193(2):198–209.
340. Bhende MS, LaCovey DC. End-tidal carbon dioxide monitoring in the prehospital setting. *Prehosp Emerg Care*. 2001;5(2):208–213.
341. Piastra M, et al. Neurally adjusted ventilatory assist vs pressure support ventilation in infants recovering from severe acute respiratory distress syndrome: Nested study. *J Crit Care*. 2013.
342. Bordessoule A, et al. Neurally adjusted ventilatory assist improves patient-ventilator interaction in infants as compared with conventional ventilation. *Pediatr Res*. 2012;72(2):194–202.
343. Inata Y, Takeuchi M. Ventilator auto-triggering by cardiac electrical activity during noninvasive ventilation with neurally adjusted ventilatory assist. *Clin Case Rep*. 2018;6(7):1379–1380.
344. Zhou Y, Jin X, Lv Y, et al. Early application of airway pressure release ventilation may reduce the duration of mechanical ventilation in acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Intensive Care Med*. 2017;43(11):1648–1659.
345. Lalgudi Ganesan S, Jayashree M, Chandra Singhi S, Bansal A. Airway pressure release ventilation in pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome. A randomized controlled trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;198(9):1199–1207.
346. Yehya N, et al. High frequency oscillation and airway pressure release ventilation in pediatric respiratory failure. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2013.
347. Yehya N, Topjian AA, Thomas NJ, Friess SH. Improved oxygenation 24 hours after transition to airway pressure release ventilation or high-frequency oscillatory ventilation accurately discriminates survival in immunocompromised pediatric patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014;15(4):e147–e156.

348. Walsh MA, Merat M, La Rotta G, et al. Airway pressure release ventilation improves pulmonary blood flow in infants after cardiac surgery. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(12):2599–2604.
349. Demirkol D, Karabocuoglu M, Citak A. Airway pressure release ventilation: an alternative ventilation mode for pediatric acute hypoxemic respiratory failure. *Indian J Pediatr*. 2010;77(11):1322–1325.
350. Daoud EG, Farag HL, Chatburn RL. Airway pressure release ventilation: what do we know? *Resp Care*. 2012;57(2):282–292.
351. Lunkenheimer PP, et al. Application of transtracheal pressure oscillations as a modification of "diffusing respiration". *Br J Anaesth*. 1972;44(6):627.
352. Arnold JH, et al. Prospective, randomized comparison of high-frequency oscillatory ventilation and conventional mechanical ventilation in pediatric respiratory failure. *Crit Care Med*. 1994;22(10):1530–1539.
353. Samransamruajkit R, Prapphal N, Deelodegenavong J, Poovorawan Y. Plasma soluble intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (sICAM-1) in pediatric ARDS during high frequency oscillatory ventilation: a predictor of mortality. *Asian Pac J Allergy Immunol*. 2005;23(4):181–188.
354. Babbitt CJ, et al. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation in pediatric acute hypoxemic respiratory failure: disease-specific morbidity survival analysis. *Lung*. 2012;190(6):685–690.
355. Stewart CA, Yehya N, Fei L, Chima RS. High frequency oscillatory ventilation in a cohort of children with respiratory failure. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 2018;53(6):816–823.
356. Rowan CM, Loomis A, McArthur J, et al. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation use and severe pediatric ards in the pediatric hematopoietic cell transplant recipient. *Respir Care*. 2018;63(4):404–411.
357. Young D, Lamb SE, Shah S, MacKenzie I, et al. High-frequency oscillation for acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(9):806–813.
358. Bateman ST, Borasino S, Asaro LA, et al. Early high-frequency oscillatory ventilation in pediatric acute respiratory failure. a propensity score analysis. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2016;193(5):495–503.
359. Curley MA, Wypij D, Watson RS, et al. Protocolized sedation vs usual care in pediatric patients mechanically ventilated for acute respiratory failure: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2015;313(4):379–389.
360. Mabe TG, et al. High-frequency percussive ventilation in a pediatric patient with hydrocarbon aspiration. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(4):383–385.
361. Hall JJ, et al. Use of high-frequency percussive ventilation in inhalation injuries. *J Burn Care Res*. 2007;28(3):396–400.
362. Carman B, et al. A prospective, randomized comparison of the Volume Diffusive Respirator vs conventional ventilation for ventilation of burned children. 2001 ABA paper. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2002;23(6):444–448.
363. Rizkalla NA, et al. High-frequency percussive ventilation improves oxygenation and ventilation in pediatric patients with acute respiratory failure. *J Crit Care*. 2013.
364. Definition Task Force ARDS, Ranieri VM, Rubenfeld GD, et al. Acute respiratory distress syndrome: the Berlin Definition. *JAMA*. 2012;307(23):2526–2533.
365. Ferguson ND, Fan E, Camporota L, et al. The Berlin definition of ARDS: an expanded rationale, justification, and supplementary material. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38(10):1573–1582.
366. Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference Group. Pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome: consensus recommendations from the Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5):428–439.
367. Bembea MM, Jouvet P, Willson D, et al. Methodology of the pediatric acute lung injury consensus conference. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1):S1–S5.
368. Khemani RG, Smith LS, Zimmerman JJ, et al. Pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome: definition, incidence, and epidemiology: proceedings from the Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1):S23–S40.
369. Flori H, Dahmer MK, Sapru A, et al. Comorbidities and assessment of severity of pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome: proceedings from the Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1):S41–S50.
370. Rimensberger PC, Cheifetz IM. Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference Group. Ventilatory support in children with pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome: proceedings from the Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1):S51–S60.
371. Essouri S, Carroll C. Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference Group. Noninvasive support and ventilation for pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome: proceedings from the Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1):S102–S110.
372. Emeriaud G, Newth CJ. Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference Group. Monitoring of children with pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome: proceedings from the Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1):S86–S101.
373. Dalton HJ, Macrae DJ. Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference Group. Extracorporeal support in children with pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome: proceedings from the Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(5 suppl 1):S111–S117.
374. Quasney MW, López-Fernández YM, Santschi M, et al. The outcomes of children with pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome: proceedings from the Pediatric Acute Lung Injury Consensus Conference. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 16(5 Suppl 1):S118–S131.
375. Erickson S, Schibler A, Numa A, et al. Acute lung injury in pediatric intensive care in Australia and New Zealand: a prospective, multicenter, observational study. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(4):317–323.
376. Khemani RG, Conti D, Alonzo TA, et al. Effect of tidal volume in children with acute hypoxemic respiratory failure. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35(8):1428–1437.
377. Khemani RG, Parvathaneni K, Yehya N, et al. Positive end-expiratory pressure lower than the ards network protocol is associated with higher pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome mortality. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;198(1):77–89.
378. Imai Y, Slutsky AS. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation and ventilator-induced lung injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(suppl 3):S129–S134.
379. Ferguson ND, et al. High-frequency oscillation in early acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(9):795–805.
380. Bhalla AK, Yehya N, Mack WJ, et al. The association between inhaled nitric oxide treatment and icu mortality and 28-day ventilator-free days in pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(11):1803–1810.
381. Foronda FK, Troster EJ, Farias JA, et al. The impact of daily evaluation and spontaneous breathing test on the duration of pediatric mechanical ventilation: a randomized controlled trial. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(11):2526–2533.
382. Kallet RH, Zhuo H, Yip V, et al. Spontaneous breathing trials and conservative sedation practices reduce mechanical ventilation duration in subjects with ARDS. *Respir Care*. 2018;63(1):1–10.
383. Faustino EV, Gedeit R, Schwarz AJ, et al. Accuracy of an extubation readiness test in predicting successful extubation in children with acute respiratory failure from lower respiratory tract disease. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(1):94–102.
384. Newth CJL, Sward KA, Khemani RG, et al. Variability in usual care mechanical ventilation for pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome: time for a decision support protocol? *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2017;18(11):e521–e529.
385. Ward SL, Quinn CM, Valentine SL, et al. Poor adherence to lung-protective mechanical ventilation in pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2016;17(10):917–923.
386. Sward KA, Newth CJL, Khemani RG, et al. Potential acceptability of a pediatric ventilator management computer protocol. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2017;18(11):1027–1034.
387. Newth CJL, Khemani RG, Jouvet PA, et al. Mechanical ventilation and decision support in pediatric intensive care. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2017;64(5):1057–1070.
388. Lee EP, Hsia SH, Hsiao HF, et al. Evaluation of diaphragmatic function in mechanically ventilated children: an ultrasound study. *PLoS One*. 2017;12(8):e0183560.
389. Goligher EC, Dres M, Fan E, et al. Mechanical ventilation-induced diaphragm atrophy strongly impacts clinical outcomes. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;197(2):204–213.
390. Ventilation with lower tidal volumes as compared with traditional tidal volumes for acute lung injury and the acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342(18):1301–1308.
391. Khemani RG, Parvathaneni K, Yehya N, et al. Positive end-expiratory pressure lower than the ards network protocol is associated with higher pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome mortality. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;198(1):77–89.

392. Ingaramo OA, Ngo T, Khemani RG, et al. Impact of positive end-expiratory pressure on cardiac index measured by ultrasound cardiac output monitor. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014;15(1):15–20.
393. Ross PA, Khemani RG, Rubin SS, et al. Elevated positive end-expiratory pressure decreases cardiac index in a rhesus monkey model. *Front Pediatr*. 2014;2:134.
394. Amato MBP, Meade MO, Slutsky AS, et al. Driving pressure and survival in the acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372:747–755.
395. Papazian L, Forel J-M, Gacouin A, et al. Neuromuscular blockers in early acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:1107–1116.
396. Curley MA, Hibberd PL, Fineman LD, et al. Effect of prone positioning on clinical outcomes in children with acute lung injury: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2005;294(2):229–237.
397. Fineman LD, LaBrecque MA, Shih MC, et al. Prone positioning can be safely performed in critically ill infants and children. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2006;7(5):413–422.
398. Guerin C, et al. Prone positioning in severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(23):2159–2168.
399. Mancebo J, et al. A multicenter trial of prolonged prone ventilation in severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Am J Resp Crit Care Med*. 2006;173(11):1233–1239.
400. Beuret P, et al. Prone position as prevention of lung injury in comatose patients: a prospective, randomized, controlled study. *Intensive Care Med*. 2002;28(5):564–569.
401. Thelandersson A, Cider A, Nellgard B. Prone position in mechanically ventilated patients with reduced intracranial compliance. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scan*. 2006;50(8):937–941.
402. Möller JC, Schaible T, Roll C, et al. Treatment with bovine surfactant in severe acute respiratory distress syndrome in children: a randomized multicenter study. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29(3):437–446.
403. Willson DF, et al. Pediatric calfactant in acute respiratory distress syndrome trial. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2013;14(7):657–665.
404. Drago BB, Kimura D, Rovnaghi CR, et al. Double-blind', placebo-controlled pilot randomized trial of methylprednisolone infusion in pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(3):e74–e81.
405. Yehya N, Servaes S, Thomas NJ, et al. Corticosteroid exposure in pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41(9):1658–1666.
406. Adhikari NK, Dellinger RP, Lundin S, et al. Inhaled nitric oxide does not reduce mortality in patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome regardless of severity: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(2):404–412.
407. Bronicki RA, Fortenberry J, Schreiber M, et al. Multicenter randomized controlled trial of inhaled nitric oxide for pediatric acute respiratory distress syndrome. *J Pediatr*. 2015;166(2):365–369.e1.
408. Peek GJ, et al. Efficacy and economic assessment of conventional ventilatory support versus extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for severe adult respiratory failure (CESAR): a multicentre randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2009;374(9698):1351–1363.
409. Coombes A, Hajage D, Capellier G, et al. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:1965–1975.
410. Barbaro RP, Xu Y, Borasino S, et al. Does extracorporeal membrane oxygenation improve survival in pediatric acute respiratory failure? *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;197(9):1177–1186.
411. Lin JC. Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation for Severe Pediatric Respiratory Failure. *Respir Care*. 2017;62(6):732–750.
412. Curley MA, Harris SK, Fraser KA, et al. State Behavioral scale: a sedation assessment instrument for infants and young children supported on mechanical ventilation. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2006;7(2):107–114.
413. Krajčová A, Waldauf P, Anděl M, et al. Propofol infusion syndrome: a structured review of experimental studies and 153 published case reports. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:398.
414. Newth CJ, et al. Weaning and extubation readiness in pediatric patients. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(1):1–11.
415. Yang KL, Tobin MJ. A prospective study of indexes predicting the outcome of trials of weaning from mechanical ventilation. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;324(21):1445–1450.
416. Chavez A, dela Cruz R, Zaritsky A. Spontaneous breathing trial predicts successful extubation in infants and children. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2006;7(4):324–328.
417. Jouvet PA, et al. Weaning children from mechanical ventilation with a computer-driven protocol: a pilot trial. *Intensive Care Med*. 2013;39(5):919–925.
418. Kurachek SC, et al. Extubation failure in pediatric intensive care: a multiple-center study of risk factors and outcomes. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31(11):2657–2664.
419. Manczur T, et al. Resistance of pediatric and neonatal endotracheal tubes: influence of flow rate, size, and shape. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(5):1595–1598.
420. Hammer J, Newth CJ. Influence of endotracheal tube diameter on forced deflation flow-volume curves in rhesus monkeys. *Eur Respir J*. 1997;10(8):1870–1873.
421. Argent AC, Newth CJ, Klein M. The mechanics of breathing in children with acute severe croup,. *Intensive Care Med*. 2008;34(2): 324–332.
422. Khemani RG, Hotz J, Morzov R, et al. Pediatric extubation readiness tests should not use pressure support. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42(8):1214–1222.
423. Suominen PK, et al. The air-leak test is not a good predictor of postextubation adverse events in children undergoing cardiac surgery. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2007;21(2):197–202.
424. Wratney AT, et al. The endotracheal tube air leak test does not predict extubation outcome in critically ill pediatric patients. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2008;9(5):490–496.
425. Taussig LM, et al. Treatment of laryngotracheobronchitis (croup). Use of intermittent positive-pressure breathing and racemic epinephrine. *Am J Dis Child*. 1975;129(7):790–793.
426. Sheikh KH, Mostow SR. Epiglottitis–an increasing problem for adults. *West J Med*. 1989;151(5):520–524.
427. Wohl ME, Chernick V. State of the art: bronchiolitis. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1978;118(4):759–781.
428. Nicolai T, Pohl A. Acute viral bronchiolitis in infancy: epidemiology and management. *Lung*. 1990;168(suppl):396–405.
429. Smyth RL, et al. Cystic fibrosis. 5. The current state of lung transplantation for cystic fibrosis. *Thorax*. 1991;46(3):213–216.
430. Meachery G, et al. Outcomes of lung transplantation for cystic fibrosis in a large UK cohort. *Thorax*. 2008;63(8):725–731.
431. Pierce MR, Bancalari E. The role of inflammation in the pathogenesis of bronchopulmonary dysplasia. *Pediatr Pulmonol*. 1995;19(6): 371–378.
432. Truog WE, Jackson JC. Alternative modes of ventilation in the prevention and treatment of bronchopulmonary dysplasia. *Clin Perinatol*. 1992;19(3):621–647.
433. Parker RA, Lindstrom DP, Cotton RB. Improved survival accounts for most, but not all, of the increase in bronchopulmonary dysplasia. *Pediatrics*. 1992;90(5):663–668.
434. Bader D, et al. Childhood sequelae of infant lung disease: exercise and pulmonary function abnormalities after bronchopulmonary dysplasia. *J Pediatr*. 1987;110(5):693–699.
435. Gerhardt T, et al. Serial determination of pulmonary function in infants with chronic lung disease. *J Pediatr*. 1987;110(3):448–456.
436. Abbasi S, et al. Pulmonary mechanics in preterm neonates with respiratory failure treated with high-frequency oscillatory ventilation compared with conventional mechanical ventilation. *Pediatrics*. 1991;87(4):487–493.
437. Greenspan JS, et al. Liquid ventilation of human preterm neonates. *J Pediatr*. 1990;117(1 Pt 1):106–111.
438. Weissberg D, Schwartz I. Foreign bodies in the tracheobronchial tree. *Chest*. 1987;91(5):730–733.
439. Newth CJ, et al. Fatal and near-fatal asthma in children: the critical care perspective. *J Pediatr*. 2012;161(2):214–221. e3.
440. Rubin S, Ghuman A, Deakers T, et al. Effort of breathing in children receiving high-flow nasal cannula. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2014;15(1):1–6.
441. Jat KR, Khairwa A. Levalbuterol versus albuterol for acute asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Pulm Pharmacol Ther*. 2013;26(2):239–248.
442. Kelly A, et al. A comparison of heart rate changes associated with levalbuterol and racemic albuterol in pediatric cardiology patients. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2013;47(5):644–650.
443. Powell CV, et al. MAGNEsium Trial In Children (MAGNETIC): a randomised, placebo-controlled trial and economic evaluation of nebulised magnesium sulphate in acute severe asthma in children. *Health Technol Assess*. 2013;17(45):1–216, v–vi.

444. Rowe BH, et al. Intravenous magnesium sulfate treatment for acute asthma in the emergency department: a systematic review of the literature. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2000;36(3):181–190.
445. Silverman RA, et al. IV magnesium sulfate in the treatment of acute severe asthma: a multicenter randomized controlled trial. *Chest*. 2002;122(2):489–497.
446. Rodrigo GJ, Castro-Rodriguez JA. Heliox-driven beta2-agonists nebulization for children and adults with acute asthma: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol*. 2014;112(1):29–34.
447. Youssef-Ahmed MZ, et al. Continuous infusion of ketamine in mechanically ventilated children with refractory bronchospasm. *Intensive Care Med*. 1996;22(9):972–976.
448. Jat KR, Chawla D. Ketamine for management of acute exacerbations of asthma in children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;11:CD009293.
449. Wetzel RC. Pressure-support ventilation in children with severe asthma. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24(9):1603–1605.
450. Tuxen DV. Detrimental effects of positive end-expiratory pressure during controlled mechanical ventilation of patients with severe airflow obstruction. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1989;140(1):5–9.
451. Smith TC, Marini JJ. Impact of PEEP on lung mechanics and work of breathing in severe airflow obstruction. *J Appl Physiol*. 1985;65(4):1488–1499, 1988.
452. Appendini L, et al. Physiologic response of ventilator-dependent patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease to proportional assist ventilation and continuous positive airway pressure. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1999;159(5 Pt 1):1510–1517.
453. MacIntyre NR, Cheng KC, McConnell R. Applied PEEP during pressure support reduces the inspiratory threshold load of intrinsic PEEP. *Chest*. 1997;111(1):188–193.
454. Kong W, et al. Effects of extrinsic positive end-expiratory pressure on cardiopulmonary function in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Chin Med J (Engl)*. 2001;114(9):912–915.
455. Tan IK, et al. Effects of PEEP on dynamic hyperinflation in patients with airflow limitation. *Br J Anaesth*. 1993;70(3):267–272.
456. Wheeler DS, et al. Isoflurane therapy for status asthmaticus in children: a case series and protocol. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2000;1(1): 55–59.
457. Tobias JD. Inhalational anesthesia: basic pharmacology, end organ effects, and applications in the treatment of status asthmaticus. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2009;24(6):361–371.
458. Tobias JD. Therapeutic applications and uses of inhalational anesthesia in the pediatric intensive care unit. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2008;9(2):169–179.
459. Tobias JD, Garrett JS. Therapeutic options for severe, refractory status asthmaticus: inhalational anaesthetic agents, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation and helium/oxygen ventilation. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1997;7(1):47–57.
460. Char DS, et al. Volatile anesthetic rescue therapy in children with acute asthma: innovative but costly or just costly? *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2013;14(4):343–350.
461. Teasdale G, Jennett B. Assessment of coma and impaired consciousness. A practical scale. *Lancet*. 1974;2(7872):81–84.
462. Gutierrez-Colina AM, et al. Electroencephalogram monitoring in critically ill children: indications and strategies. *Pediatr Neurol*. 2012;46(3):158–161.
463. Hasbani DM, et al. Nonconvulsive electrographic seizures are common in children with abusive head trauma*. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2013;14(7):709–715.
464. Gentry LR. Facial trauma and associated brain damage. *Radiol Clin North Am*. 1989;27(2):435–446.
465. Kochanek PM, et al. Biochemical, cellular, and molecular mechanisms in the evolution of secondary damage after severe traumatic brain injury in infants and children: lessons learned from the bedside. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2000;1(1):4–19.
466. Hillered L, Vespa PM, Hovda DA. Translational neurochemical research in acute human brain injury: the current status and potential future for cerebral microdialysis. *J Neurotrauma*. 2005;22(1):3–41.
467. Marcoux J, et al. Persistent metabolic crisis as measured by elevated cerebral microdialysis lactate-pyruvate ratio predicts chronic frontal lobe brain atrophy after traumatic brain injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36(10):2871–2877.
468. Glenn TC, et al. Energy dysfunction as a predictor of outcome after moderate or severe head injury: indices of oxygen, glucose, and lactate metabolism. *J Cereb Blood Blow Metab*. 2003;23(10):1239–1250.
469. Kilbaugh TJ, et al. Cyclosporin A preserves mitochondrial function after traumatic brain injury in the immature rat and piglet. *J Neurotrauma*. 2011;28(5):763–774.
470. Raghupathi R, Margulies SS. Traumatic axonal injury after closed head injury in the neonatal pig. *J Neurotrauma*. 2002;19:843–853.
471. Duhaime AC, et al. Maturation-dependent response of the piglet brain to scaled cortical impact. *J Neurosurg*. 2000;93(3):455–462.
472. Udomphorn Y, Armstead WM, Vavilala MS. Cerebral blood flow and autoregulation after pediatric traumatic brain injury. *Pediatr Neurol*. 2008;38(4):225–234.
473. Wintermark M, et al. Brain perfusion in children: evolution with age assessed by quantitative perfusion computed tomography. *Pediatrics*. 2004;113(6):1642–1652.
474. Vavilala MS, et al. Gender differences in cerebral blood flow velocity and autoregulation between the anterior and posterior circulations in healthy children. *Pediatr Res*. 2005;58(3):574–578.
475. Adelson PD, et al. Cerebrovascular response in infants and young children following severe traumatic brain injury: a preliminary report. *Pediatr Neurosurg*. 1997;26:200–207.
476. Cunningham AS, et al. Physiological thresholds for irreversible tissue damage in contusional regions following traumatic brain injury. *Brain*. 2005;128:1931–1942.
477. von Oettingen G, et al. Blood flow and ischemia within traumatic cerebral contusions. *Neurosurgery*. 2002;50:781–790.
478. Jackson S, Piper IR. A study of the effects of using different cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP) thresholds to quantify CPP "secondary insults" in children. *Acta Neurochir Suppl*. 2000;76:453–456.
479. Chambers IR, et al. Critical thresholds of intracranial pressure and cerebral perfusion pressure related to age in paediatric head injury. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 2006;77(2):234–240.
480. Chambers IR, et al. Age-related differences in intracranial pressure and cerebral perfusion pressure in the first 6 hours of monitoring after children's head injury: association with outcome. *Childs Nerv Syst*. 2005;21(3):195–199.
481. Chambers IR, Kirkham FJ. What is the optimal cerebral perfusion pressure in children suffering from traumatic coma? *Neurosurg Focus*. 2003;15(6):E3.
482. Adelson PD, et al. Guidelines for the acute medical management of severe traumatic brain injury in infants, children, and adolescents. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2003;4:S1–75.
483. Stiefel MF, et al. Reduced mortality rate in patients with severe traumatic brain injury treated with brain tissue oxygen monitoring. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;103:805–811.
484. Stiefel MF, et al. Brain tissue oxygen monitoring in pediatric patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2006;105(suppl 4):281–286.
485. Llinas RH. Ischemic stroke and ICU care. *Semin Neurol*. 2008;28(5):645–656.
486. Broderick JP, Hacke W. Treatment of acute ischemic stroke: part II: neuroprotection and medical management. *Circulation*. 2002;106(13):1736–1740.
487. Robertson CS, et al. Prevention of secondary ischemic insults after severe head injury. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27(10):2086–2095.
488. Contant CF, et al. Adult respiratory distress syndrome: a complication of induced hypertension after severe head injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2001;95(4):560–568.
489. UBt Samant, et al. Time of hypotension and discharge outcome in children with severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurotrauma*. 2008;25(5):495–502.
490. Kochanek PM, et al. Guidelines for the acute medical management of severe traumatic brain injury in infants, children, and adolescents–second edition. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;(13 suppl 1):S1–S82.
491. Friess SH, et al. Early cerebral perfusion pressure augmentation with phenylephrine after traumatic brain injury may be neuroprotective in a pediatric swine model. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40(8):2400–2406.
492. Johnston WE, et al. Phenylephrine does not reduce cerebral perfusion during canine cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(1):14–18.

493. Duebener LF, et al. Effects of hemodilution and phenylephrine on cerebral blood flow and metabolism during cardiopulmonary bypass. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2004;18(4):423–428.
494. Strebel SP, et al. The impact of systemic vasoconstrictors on the cerebral circulation of anesthetized patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;89(1):67–72.
495. Cherian L, et al. Cerebral hemodynamic effects of phenylephrine and L-arginine after cortical impact injury. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27(11):2512–2517.
496. Di Gennaro JL, et al. Use and effect of vasopressors after pediatric traumatic brain injury. *Dev Neurosci*. 2010;32(5-6):420–430.
497. Pfister D, Strebel SP, Steiner LA. Effects of catecholamines on cerebral blood vessels in patients with traumatic brain injury. European journal of anaesthesiology. *Supplement*. 2008;42:98–103.
498. Steiner LA, et al. Direct comparison of cerebrovascular effects of norepinephrine and dopamine in head-injured patients. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(4):1049–1054.
499. Prathep S, et al. Preliminary report on cardiac dysfunction after isolated traumatic brain injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42(1):142–147.
500. Kilbaugh TJ, et al. Cyclosporin A preserves mitochondrial function after traumatic brain injury in the immature rat and piglet. *J Neurotrauma*. 2011;28(5):763–774.
501. Kochanek PK, Forbes ML, Ruppel R. Severe head injury in the infants and children. In: Furman BP, Zimmerman JJ, eds. *Pediatric Critical Care*. Philadelphia: Mosby; 2006:1595–1617.
502. Kilbaugh TJ, et al. Sedation and analgesia in children with developmental disabilities and neurologic disorders. *Int J Pediatr*. 2010.
503. Bergen JM, Smith DC. A review of etomidate for rapid sequence intubation in the emergency department. *J Emerg Med*. 1997;15(2):221–230.
504. Moss E, et al. Effect of etomidate on intracranial pressure and cerebral perfusion pressure. *Br J Anaesth*. 1979;51(4):347–352.
505. Renou AM, et al. Cerebral blood flow and metabolism during etomidate anaesthesia in man. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50(10):1047–1051.
506. Drummond JC, et al. Focal cerebral ischemia during anesthesia with etomidate, isoflurane, or thiopental: a comparison of the extent of cerebral injury. *Neurosurgery*. 1995;37(4):742–748; discussion 748–749.
507. Edelman GJ, Hoffman WE, Charbel FT. Cerebral hypoxia after etomidate administration and temporary cerebral artery occlusion. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(4):821–825.
508. Drummond JC, et al. The role of nitric oxide synthase inhibition in the adverse effects of etomidate in the setting of focal cerebral ischemia in rats,. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):841–846, table of contents.
509. Lev R, Rosen P. Prophylactic lidocaine use preintubation: a review. *J Emerg Med*. 1994;12(4):499–506.
510. Langsjo JW, et al. Effects of subanesthetic doses of ketamine on regional cerebral blood flow, oxygen consumption, and blood volume in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):614–623.
511. Langsjo JW, et al. S-ketamine anesthesia increases cerebral blood flow in excess of the metabolic needs in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(2):258–268.
512. Gibbs JM. The effect of intravenous ketamine on cerebrospinal fluid pressure,. *Br J Anaesth*. 1972;44(12):1298–1302.
513. Wyte SR, et al. Ketamine-induced intracranial hypertension. *Anesthesiology*. 1972;36(2):174–176.
514. Albanese J, et al. Ketamine decreases intracranial pressure and electroencephalographic activity in traumatic brain injury patients during propofol sedation. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(6):1328–1334.
515. Bourgoin A, et al. Safety of sedation with ketamine in severe head injury patients: comparison with sufentanil. *Crit Care Med*. 2003;31(3):711–717.
516. Kolenda H, et al. Ketamine for analgosedative therapy in intensive care treatment of head-injured patients. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 1996;138(10):1193–1199.
517. Bar-Joseph G, et al. Effectiveness of ketamine in decreasing intracranial pressure in children with intracranial hypertension. *J Neurosurg Pediatr*. 2009;4(1):40–46.
518. Spitzfaden AC, Jimenez DF, Tobias JD. Propofol for sedation and control of intracranial pressure in children. *Pediatr Neurosurg*. 1999;31(4):194–200.
519. Farling PA, Johnston JR, Coppel DL. Propofol infusion for sedation of patients with head injury in intensive care. A preliminary report. *Anaesthesia*. 1989;44(3):222–226.
520. Bray RJ. Propofol infusion syndrome in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1998;8(6):491–499.
521. Cray SH, Robinson BH, Cox PN. Lactic acidemia and bradyarrhythmia in a child sedated with propofol. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26(12):2087–2092.
522. Parke TJ, et al. Metabolic acidosis and fatal myocardial failure after propofol infusion in children: five case reports. *BMJ*. 1992;305(6854):613–616.
523. Canivet JL, et al. Massive ketonuria during sedation with propofol in a 12 year old girl with severe head trauma. *Acta Anaesthesiol Belg*. 1994;45(1):19–22.
524. Veldhoen ES, Hartman BJ, van Gestel JP. Monitoring biochemical parameters as an early sign of propofol infusion syndrome: false feeling of security. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(2):e19–e21.
525. Cray SH, Robinson BH, Cox PN. Lactic acidemia and bradyarrhythmia in a child sedated with propofol. *Crit Care Med*. 1998;26(12):2087–2092.
526. Adelson PD, et al. Guidelines for the acute medical management of severe traumatic brain injury in infants, children, and adolescents. Chapter 19. The role of anti-seizure prophylaxis following severe pediatric traumatic brain injury. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2003;4(suppl 3):S72–S75.
527. Phan H, Nahata MC. Clinical uses of dexmedetomidine in pediatric patients. *Paediatr Drugs*. 2008;10(1):49–69.
528. Mason KP, et al. Dexmedetomidine for pediatric sedation for computed tomography imaging studies. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;103(1):57–62, table of contents.
529. Tobias JD. Dexmedetomidine: applications in pediatric critical care and pediatric anesthesiology. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(2):115–131.
530. Tobias JD. Bradycardia during dexmedetomidine and therapeutic hypothermia. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2008;23(6):403–408.
531. Erkonen G, Lamb F, Tobias JD. High-dose dexmedetomidine-induced hypertension in a child with traumatic brain injury. *Neurocrit Care*. 2008;9(3):366–369.
532. Ray T, Tobias JD. Dexmedetomidine for sedation during electroencephalographic analysis in children with autism, pervasive developmental disorders, and seizure disorders. *J Clin Anesth*. 2008;20(5):364–368.
533. Skippen P, et al. Effect of hyperventilation on regional cerebral blood flow in head-injured children. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25(8):1402–1409.
534. Feldman Z, et al. Effect of head elevation on intracranial pressure, cerebral perfusion pressure, and cerebral blood flow in head-injured patients. *J Neurosurg*. 1992;76(2):207–211.
535. Huh JW, Raghupathi R. New concepts in treatment of pediatric traumatic brain injury. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2009;27(2):213–240.
536. Kochanek PM, et al. Guidelines for the acute medical management of severe traumatic brain injury in infants, children, and adolescents–second edition. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;13(suppl 1):S1–S82.
537. Chesnut RM, Petroni G, Rondina C. Intracranial-pressure monitoring in traumatic brain injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(18):1751–1752.
538. Friess SH, Kilbaugh TJ, Huh JW. Advanced neuromonitoring and imaging in pediatric traumatic brain injury. *Crit Care Res Pract 2012*. 2012:361310.
539. Qureshi AI, Suarez JI. Use of hypertonic saline solutions in treatment of cerebral edema and intracranial hypertension. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(9):3301–3313.
540. Pollay M, et al. Effect of mannitol and furosemide on blood-brain osmotic gradient and intracranial pressure. *J Neurosurg*. 1983;59(6):945–950.
541. Hutchison JS, et al. Hypothermia therapy after traumatic brain injury in children. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;358(23):2447–2456.
542. Hutchison JS, et al. Impact of hypotension and low cerebral perfusion pressure on outcomes in children treated with hypothermia therapy following severe traumatic brain injury: a post hoc analysis of the Hypothermia Pediatric Head Injury Trial. *Dev Neurosci*. 2010;32(5-6):406–412.
543. Adelson PD, et al. Comparison of hypothermia and normothermia after severe traumatic brain injury in children (Cool Kids): a phase 3, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Neurol*. 2013;12(6):546–553.
544. Sanchez AI, et al. Trends in survival and early functional outcomes from hospitalized severe adult traumatic brain injuries, pennsylvania, 1998 to 2007. *J Head Trauma Rehabil*. 2012;27(2):159–169.

545. Shakur H, et al. A promise to save 100,000 trauma patients. *Lancet*. 2012;380(9859):2062–2063.
546. Friess SH, Kilbaugh TJ, Topjian AA. New tricks for an old dog: multimodal neuromonitoring for diabetic ketoacidosis-associated cerebral edema*. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2012;13(6):702–703.
547. Guignard JP. Renal function in the newborn infant. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1982;29(4):777–790.
548. Aviles DH, Fildes RD, Jose PA. Evaluation of renal function. *Clin Perinatol*. 1992;19(1):69–84.
549. Eades SK, Christensen ML. The clinical pharmacology of loop diuretics in the pediatric patient. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 1998;12(7):603–616.
550. Warshaw BL, et al. Progression to end-stage renal disease in children with obstructive uropathy. *J Pediatr*. 1982;100(2):183–187.
551. Pascual JF, Lopez JD, Molina M. Hemofiltration in children with renal failure. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1987;34(3):803–818.
552. Salusky IB, et al. Continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis in children. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1982;29(4):1005–1012.
553. Karmali MA. Infection by verocytotoxin-producing Escherichia coli. *Clin Microbiol Rev*. 1989;2(1):15–38.
554. Riley LW. The epidemiologic, clinical, and microbiologic features of hemorrhagic colitis. *Annu Rev Microbiol*. 1987;41:383–407.
555. Kaplan BS, Cleary TG, Obrig TG. Recent advances in understanding the pathogenesis of the hemolytic uremic syndromes. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 1990;4(3):276–283.
556. Forsyth KD, et al. Neutrophil-mediated endothelial injury in haemolytic uraemic syndrome. *Lancet*. 1989;2(8660):411–414.
557. Riley LW, et al. Hemorrhagic colitis associated with a rare Escherichia coli serotype. *N Engl J Med*. 1983;308(12):681–685.
558. Fong JS, de Chadarevian JP, Kaplan BS. Hemolytic-uremic syndrome. Current concepts and management. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1982;29(4):835–856.
559. Fong JS, Kaplan BS. Impairment of platelet aggregation in hemolytic uremic syndrome: evidence for platelet “exhaustion”. *Blood*. 1982;60(3):564–570.
560. Sieniawska M, et al. Prognostic significance of certain factors in the haemolytic-uraemic syndrome. *Pediatr Nephrol*. 1990;4(3):213–218.
561. Hahn JS, et al. Neurological complications of hemolytic-uremic syndrome. *J Child Neurol*. 1989;4(2):108–113.
562. Robson WL, Leung AK. Gastrointestinal complications of haemolytic uraemic syndrome. *J R Soc Med*. 1991;84(6):383.
563. Banatvala N, et al. The United States National Prospective Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome Study: microbiologic, serologic, clinical, and epidemiologic findings,. *J Infect Dis*. 2001;183(7):1063–1070.
564. Safdar N, et al. Risk of hemolytic uremic syndrome after antibiotic treatment of Escherichia coli O157:H7 enteritis: a meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2002;288(8):996–1001.
565. Hoffman HJ, et al. Management of craniopharyngioma in children. *J Neurosurg*. 1977;47(2):218–227.
566. Perkin RM, Levin DL. Common fluid and electrolyte problems in the pediatric intensive care unit. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1980;27(3):567–586.
567. Outwater KM, Rockoff MA. Diabetes insipidus accompanying brain death in children. *Neurology*. 1984;34(9):1243–1246.
568. Burrows FA, Shutack JG, Crone RK. Inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone in a postsurgical pediatric population. *Crit Care Med*. 1983;11(7):527–531.
569. Dahlquist G, et al. Ketotic hypoglycemia of childhood–a clinical trial of several unifying etiological hypotheses. *Acta Paediatr Scand*. 1979;68(5):649–656.
570. Hochman HI, Grodin MA, Crone RK. Dehydration, diabetic ketoacidosis, and shock in the pediatric patient. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1979;26(4):803–826.
571. Poirier MP, Greer D, Satin-Smith M. A prospective study of the “two-bag system” in diabetic ketoacidosis management. *Clin Pediatr (Phila)*. 2004;43(9):809–813.
572. Marcin JP, et al. Factors associated with adverse outcomes in children with diabetic ketoacidosis-related cerebral edema. *J Pediatr*. 2002;141(6):793–797.
573. Rosenbloom AL, et al. Cerebral edema complicating diabetic ketoacidosis in childhood. *J Pediatr*. 1980;96(3 Pt 1):357–361.
574. Krane EJ, et al. Subclinical brain swelling in children during treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis. *N Engl J Med*. 1985;312(18):1147–1151.
575. de la Iglesia FA, et al. Quantitative microscopic evaluation of the endoplasmic reticulum in developing human liver. *Am J Pathol*. 1976;82(1):61–70.
576. Mackey WC, Dineen P. A fifty year experience with Meckel’s diverticulum. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1983;156(1):56–64.
577. Hadidi AT. El Shal N: Childhood intussusception: a comparative study of nonsurgical management. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1999;34(2):304–307.
578. Poley JR. Chronic inflammatory bowel disease in children and adolescents: part I. *South Med J*. 1978;71(8):935–948.
579. Stoll BJ. Epidemiology of necrotizing enterocolitis. *Clin Perinatol*. 1994;21(2):205–218.
580. Cass DL, et al. Peritoneal drainage as definitive treatment for neonates with isolated intestinal perforation. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2000;35(11):1531–1536.
581. Schwartz MZ, et al. Intestinal stenosis following successful medical management of necrotizing enterocolitis. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1980;15(6):890–899.
582. Rogers EL, Rogers MC. Fulminant hepatic failure and hepatic encephalopathy. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1980;27(3):701–713.
583. Singer AL, et al. Role of plasmapheresis in the management of acute hepatic failure in children. *Ann Surg*. 2001;234(3):418–424.
584. Gow PJ, Mutimer D. Treatment of chronic hepatitis. *BMJ*. 2001;323(7322):1164–1167.
585. Paradis KJ, Freese DK, Sharp HL. A pediatric perspective on liver transplantation,. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1988;35(2):409–433.
586. Weber TR, Grosfeld JL. Contemporary management of biliary atresia. *Surg Clin North Am*. 1981;61(5):1079–1088.
587. Chardot C, et al. Is the Kasai operation still indicated in children older than 3 months diagnosed with biliary atresia? *J Pediatr*. 2001;138(2):224–228.
588. Cienfuegos JA, et al. Surgical complications in the postoperative period of liver transplantation in children. *Transplant Proc*. 1984;16(5):1230–1235.
589. McDiarmid SV. Liver transplantation. The pediatric challenge. *Clin Liver Dis*. 2000;4(4):879–927.
590. Khorasani EN, Mansouri F. Effect of early enteral nutrition on morbidity and mortality in children with burns. *Burns*. 2010;36(7):1067–1071.
591. Mehta NM, et al. Nutritional practices and their relationship to clinical outcomes in critically ill children–an international multicenter cohort study*. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40(7):2204–2211.
592. Mehta NM. Approach to enteral feeding in the PICU. *Nutr Clin Pract*. 2009;24(3):377–387.

592a. Mikhailov TA, Kuhn EM, Manzi J, et al. Early enteral nutrition is associated with lower mortality in critically ill children. *J Paren Enteral Nutr*. 2014;38:459–466.

593. Petrillo-Albarano T, et al. Use of a feeding protocol to improve nutritional support through early, aggressive, enteral nutrition in the pediatric intensive care unit. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2006;7(4):340–344.
594. Schleicherk K, Muzaffar A, Tobias JD. Intraoperative transfusion-related acute lung injury in a child during calvarial vault remodeling. *J Craniofac Surg*. 2011;22(1):194–198.
595. Dunbar N, et al. Transfusion-related acute lung injury after transfusion of maternal blood: a case-control study. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2010;35(23):E1322–E1327.
596. Yildirim I, et al. Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI): a report of two pediatric cases. *Pediatr Hematol Oncol*. 2008;25(4):319–324.
597. Sanchez R, Toy P. Transfusion related acute lung injury: a pediatric perspective. *Pediatr Blood Cancer*. 2005;45(3):248–255.
598. Donelan KJ, Anderson KA. Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI): a case report and literature review. *S D Med*. 2011;64(3):85–88.
599. Dotis J, et al. Transfusion-related acute lung injury management in a pediatric intensive care unit. *Hippokratia*. 2011;15(2):184–186.
600. Gupta S, et al. Transfusion related acute lung injury in a neonate. *Indian J Pediatr*. 2012;79(10):1363–1365.
601. Church GD, et al. Blood product transfusions and clinical outcomes in pediatric patients with acute lung injury. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(3):297–302.
602. Lacroix J, et al. Transfusion strategies for patients in pediatric intensive care units. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(16):1609–1619.

603. Rouette J, et al. Red blood cell transfusion threshold in postsurgical pediatric intensive care patients: a randomized clinical trial. *Ann Surg*. 2010;251(3):421–427.
604. Swerdlow PS. Red cell exchange in sickle cell disease. *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program*. 2006:48–53.
605. Khemani RG, et al. Disseminated intravascular coagulation score is associated with mortality for children with shock. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35(2):327–333.
606. Vichinsky EP, et al. Causes and outcomes of the acute chest syndrome in sickle cell disease. National Acute Chest Syndrome Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342(25):1855–1865.
607. Taylor Jr FB, et al. Towards definition, clinical and laboratory criteria, and a scoring system for disseminated intravascular coagulation. *Thromb Haemost*. 2001;86(5):1327–1330.
608. Ohene-Frempong K, et al. Cerebrovascular accidents in sickle cell disease: rates and risk factors. *Blood*. 1998;91(1):288–294.
609. Adams RJ, et al. Prevention of a first stroke by transfusions in children with sickle cell anemia and abnormal results on transcranial Doppler ultrasonography. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;339(1):5–11.
610. Lee MT, et al. Stroke Prevention Trial in Sickle Cell Anemia (STOP): extended follow-up and final results. *Blood*. 2006;108(3):847–852.
611. Medeiros D, Buchanan GR. Current controversies in the management of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura during childhood. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1996;43(3):757–772.
612. Ridolfi RL, Bell WR. Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. Report of 25 cases and review of the literature. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 1981;60(6):413–428.
613. Mauer HM, et al. Impairment in platelet aggregation in congenital heart disease. *Blood*. 1972;40(2):207–216.
614. Elbahlawan L, Morrison RR. Continuous renal replacement therapy in children post-hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: the present and the future. *Curr Stem Cell Res Ther*. 2012;7(5):381–387.
615. Elbahlawan L, et al. Impact of continuous renal replacement therapy on oxygenation in children with acute lung injury after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. *Pediatr Blood Cancer*. 2010;55(3):540–545.
616. Rajasekaran S, et al. Outcomes of hematopoietic stem cell transplant patients who received continuous renal replacement therapy in a pediatric oncology intensive care unit. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2010;11(6):699–706.
617. Pound CM, et al. The morbidity and mortality of pediatric oncology patients presenting to the intensive care unit with septic shock,. *Pediatr Blood Cancer*. 2008;51(5):584–588.
618. Hallahan AR, et al. Improved outcomes of children with malignancy admitted to a pediatric intensive care unit. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(11):3718–3721.
619. Dalton HJ, Slonim AD, Pollack MM. MultiCenter outcome of pediatric oncology patients requiring intensive care. *Pediatr Hematol Oncol*. 2003;20(8):643–649.
620. Fiser RT, et al. Outcome of severe sepsis in pediatric oncology patients. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2005;6(5):531–536.
621. van Gestel JP, et al. Intensive care unit mortality trends in children after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: a meta-regression analysis. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36(10):2898–2904.
622. Tamburro RF, et al. Changes in outcomes (1996-2004) for pediatric oncology and hematopoietic stem cell transplant patients requiring invasive mechanical ventilation. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2008;9(3):270–277.
623. Asturias EJ, Corral JE, Quezada J. Evaluation of six risk factors for the development of bacteremia in children with cancer and febrile neutropenia. *Curr Oncol*. 2010;17(2):59–63.
624. El-Maghraby SM, et al. The diagnostic value of C-reactive protein, interleukin-8, and monocyte chemotactic protein in risk stratification of febrile neutropenic children with hematologic malignancies,. *J Pediatr Hematol Oncol*. 2007;29(3):131–136.
625. Dearth J, et al. Early death in acute leukemia in children. *Med Pediatr Oncol*. 1983;11(4):225–228.
626. Wald BR, Heisel MA, Ortega JA. Frequency of early death in children with acute leukemia presenting with hyperleukocytosis. *Cancer*. 1982;50(1):150–153.
627. Cohen LF, et al. Acute tumor lysis syndrome. A review of 37 patients with Burkitt's lymphoma. *Am J Med*. 1980;68(4):486–491.
628. Lam JC, et al. When is a mediastinal mass critical in a child? An analysis of 29 patients. *Pediatr Surg Int*. 2004;20(3):180–184.
629. King RM, et al. Primary mediastinal tumors in children. *J Pediatr Surg*. 1982;17(5):512–520.
630. Stricker PA, Gurnaney HG, Litman RS. Anesthetic management of children with an anterior mediastinal mass. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22(3):159–163.
631. Klevens RM, et al. Estimating health care-associated infections and deaths in U.S. hospitals, 2002. *Public Health Rep*. 2007;122(2):160–166.
632. Schneider J, et al. Hand hygiene adherence is influenced by the behavior of role models. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(3):360–363.
633. Srinivasan R, et al. A prospective study of ventilator-associated pneumonia in children. *Pediatrics*. 2009;123(4):1108–1115.
634. Elward AM, Warren DK, Fraser VJ. Ventilator-associated pneumonia in pediatric intensive care unit patients: risk factors and outcomes. *Pediatrics*. 2002;109(5):758–764.
635. Curley MA, et al. Tailoring the Institute for Health Care Improvement 100,000 Lives Campaign to pediatric settings: the example of ventilator-associated pneumonia. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 2006;53(6):1231–1251.
636. Bigham MT, et al. Ventilator-associated pneumonia in the pediatric intensive care unit: characterizing the problem and implementing a sustainable solution. *J Pediatr*. 2009;154(4):582–587. e2.
637. Rosenthal VD, et al. Effectiveness of a multidimensional approach to reduce ventilator-associated pneumonia in pediatric intensive care units of 5 developing countries: international Nosocomial Infection Control Consortium findings. *Am J Infect Control*. 2012;40(6):497–501.
638. Muszynski JA, et al. Multidisciplinary quality improvement initiative to reduce ventilator-associated tracheobronchitis in the PICU. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2013;14(5):533–538.
639. Abou Elella R, et al. Impact of bloodstream infection on the outcome of children undergoing cardiac surgery. *Pediatr Cardiol*. 2010;31(4):483–489.
640. Miller MR, et al. Decreasing PICU catheter-associated bloodstream infections: NACHRI's quality transformation efforts. *Pediatrics*. 2010;125(2):206–213.
641. Miller MR, et al. Reducing PICU central line-associated bloodstream infections: 3-year results. *Pediatrics*. 2011;128(5):e1077–e1083.
642. Esteban E, et al. The impact of a quality improvement intervention to reduce nosocomial infections in a PICU. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2013;14(5):525–532.
643. Wilson CB. Immunologic basis for increased susceptibility of the neonate to infection. *J Pediatr*. 1986;108(1):1–12.
644. Harris MC, Polin RA. Neonatal septicemia. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1983;30(2):243–258.
645. Rothenberger D, et al. Blunt maternal trauma: a review of 103 cases. *J Trauma*. 1978;18(3):173–179.
646. Eichelberger MR, Randolph JG. Pediatric trauma: an algorithm for diagnosis and therapy. *J Trauma*. 1983;23(2):91–97.
647. Rivara FP. Epidemiology of childhood injuries. I. review of current research and presentation of conceptual framework. *Am J Dis Child*. 1982;136(5):399–405.
648. Dykes EH, et al. Evaluation of pediatric trauma care in Ontario. *J Trauma*. 1989;29(6):724–729.
649. Kissoon N, Dreyer J, Walia M. Pediatric trauma: differences in pathophysiology, injury patterns and treatment compared with adult trauma. *CMAJ*. 1990;142(1):27–34.
650. Fiser DH. Intraosseous infusion. *N Engl J Med*. 1990;322(22):1579–1581.
651. Breaux Jr CW, Smith G, Georgeson KE. The first two years' experience with major trauma at a pediatric trauma center. *J Trauma*. 1990;30(1):37–43.
652. Hoelzer DJ, et al. Selection and nonoperative management of pediatric blunt trauma patients: the role of quantitative crystalloid resuscitation and abdominal ultrasonography. *J Trauma*. 1986;26(1):57–62.
653. Fazen 3rd LE, Lovejoy Jr FH, Crone RK. Acute poisoning in a children's hospital: a 2-year experience. *Pediatrics*. 1986;77(2):144–151.
654. Riordan M, Rylance G, Berry K. Poisoning in children 1: general management. *Arch Dis Child*. 2002;87(5):392–396.

80 The Postanesthesia Care Unit

SHERI M. BERG and MATTHIAS R. BRAEHLER

KEY POINTS

- Emergence from general anesthesia and surgery may be accompanied by a number of physiologic disturbances that affect multiple organ systems. Most common are postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV), hypoxia, hypothermia and shivering, and cardiovascular instability.
- In a prospective study of more than 18,000 consecutive admissions to the postanesthesia care unit (PACU), the complication rate was found to be as high as 24%. Nausea and vomiting (9.8%), the need for upper airway support (6.8%), and hypotension (2.7%) were the most common problems.
- The most frequent cause of airway obstruction in the immediate postoperative period is the loss of pharyngeal muscle tone in a sedated or obtunded patient. The persistent effects of inhaled and intravenous anesthetics, neuromuscular blocking drugs, and opioids all contribute to the loss of pharyngeal tone in the PACU patient.
- Pharyngeal function is not normalized until an adductor pollicis train-of-four (TOF) ratio is greater than 0.90.
- The ability to strongly oppose the incisor teeth against a tongue depressor is a reliable indicator of pharyngeal muscle tone. This maneuver correlates with an average TOF ratio of 0.85 as opposed to 0.60 for the sustained head lift.
- An estimated 8% to 10% of patients who undergo abdominal surgery subsequently require intubation and mechanical ventilation in the PACU. Respiratory failure in the immediate postoperative period is often due to transient and rapidly reversible conditions such as splinting from pain, diaphragmatic dysfunction, muscular weakness, and pharmacologically depressed respiratory drive.
- Although a combination of leads II and V5 will reflect 80% of the ischemic events detected on a 12-lead ECG, visual interpretation of the cardiac monitor is often inaccurate. Because of human error, the American College of Cardiology guidelines recommend that computerized ST-segment analysis be used (if available) to monitor high-risk patients in the immediate postoperative period.
- In one study, urinary retention was defined as bladder volume greater than 600 mL in conjunction with inability to void within 30 minutes and the incidence of postoperative urinary retention in the PACU was 16%. The most significant predictive factors were age older than 50 years, intraoperative fluid greater than 750 mL, and bladder volume on entry to PACU greater than 270 mL.
- Perioperative attention to adequate hydration is indicated in any patient who has received an intravenous contrast agent. Aggressive hydration with a balanced crystalloid solution provides the single most effective protection against contrast nephropathy.
- Rhabdomyolysis has been reported to occur in 22.7% of 66 consecutive patients undergoing laparoscopic bariatric surgery. Risk factors include increased body mass index (BMI) and duration of operation.
- The incidence of postoperative shivering may be as high as 66% after general anesthesia. Identified risk factors include young age, endoprosthetic surgery, and core hypothermia.
- Multiple studies across different surgical specialties in elective and emergency cases have shown that postoperative delirium is associated with worse surgical outcomes, increased hospital length of stay, functional decline, higher rates of institutionalization, higher mortality, and higher cost and resource utilization.
- PACU Standards of Care require that a physician accept responsibility for the discharge of patients from the unit (Standard V). This is the case even when the decision to discharge the patient is made at the bedside by the PACU nurse in accordance with hospital-sanctioned discharge criteria or scoring systems.

The postanesthesia care unit (PACU) is designed and staffed to monitor and care for patients who are recovering from the immediate physiologic effects of anesthesia and surgery. PACU care spans the transition from one-on-one monitoring in the operating room to the less acute monitoring on the hospital ward or, in some cases, independent function of the patient at home. To serve this unique transition period, the PACU is equipped to resuscitate unstable patients while providing a tranquil environment for the "recovery" and comfort of stable patients. Its location in close proximity to the operating rooms facilitates rapid access to anesthesiologists for consultation and assistance.

Admission to the Postanesthesia Care Unit

The PACU is staffed by specially trained nurses skilled in the prompt recognition of postoperative complications. On arrival to the PACU, the anesthesiologist provides the PACU nurse with pertinent details of the patient's history, medical condition, anesthesia, and surgery. Particular attention is directed toward monitoring oxygenation (pulse oximetry), ventilation (breathing frequency, airway patency, capnography), and circulation (systemic blood pressure, heart rate, electrocardiogram [ECG]). Vital signs are recorded as often as necessary but at least every 15 minutes while the patient is in the unit. Vital signs and other pertinent information are recorded as part of the patient's medical record. Specific requirements and recommendations for patient monitoring and therapeutic intervention can be found in the Practice Standards and Guidelines drafted by the American Society of Anesthesiologists.

The Standards for Postanesthesia Care

Practice Standards delineate the required obligation of minimal care in the clinical setting. As such, they serve as a threshold that can be exceeded when indicated by the clinical judgment of the practitioner. The Standards for Postanesthesia Care are updated on a regular basis to keep up with changing practice parameters and technologic advances. The most recent revision published in 2009 is summarized here[1]:

I. All patients who have received general anesthesia, regional anesthesia, or monitored anesthesia care shall receive appropriate postanesthesia management.
II. A patient transported to the PACU shall be accompanied by a member of the anesthesia care team who is knowledgeable about the patient's condition. The patient shall be continually evaluated and treated during transport with monitoring and support appropriate to the patient's condition.
III. Upon arrival in the PACU, the patient shall be reevaluated and a verbal report provided to the responsible PACU nurse by the member of the anesthesia care team who accompanies the patient.
IV. The patient's condition shall be evaluated continually in the PACU. The patient shall be observed and monitored by methods appropriate to the patient's medical condition. Particular attention should be given to monitoring oxygenation, ventilation, circulation, level of consciousness, and temperature. During recovery from all anesthetics, a quantitative method of assessing oxygenation such as pulse oximetry shall be employed in the initial phase of recovery.*
V. A physician is responsible for the discharge of the patient from the PACU.

Unlike Practice Standards, Practice Guidelines are not requirements. They are recommendations designed to assist the healthcare provider in clinical decision making. The ASA Practice Guidelines for Post Anesthetic Care are the result of a multiple-step process that incorporates input from three groups: (1) an ASA-appointed task force consisting of private practice and academic anesthesiologists and epidemiologists, (2) PACU consultants, and (3) ASA members at large. The guidelines are based upon literature review, expert opinion, open forum commentary, and clinical feasibility. They recommend the appropriate assessment, monitoring, and treatment of the major organ system functions during recovery from anesthesia and surgery (Box 80.1).[2]

BOX 80.1 Summary of Recommendations for Patient Assessment and Monitoring in the Postanesthesia Care Unit

Respiratory

Assessment of airway patency, respiratory rate, and oxygen saturation should be periodically performed. Particular attention should be given to monitoring oxygenation and ventilation.

Cardiovascular

Heart rate and blood pressure should be routinely monitored. Electrocardiographic monitors should be immediately available.

Neuromuscular

Assessment of neuromuscular function should be performed for all patients who received nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs or who have medical conditions associated with neuromuscular dysfunction (also see Chapter 43).

Mental Status

Mental status should be periodically assessed.

Temperature

Patient temperature should be periodically assessed.

Pain

Pain should be periodically assessed.

Nausea and Vomiting

Periodic assessment of postoperative nausea and vomiting should be routinely performed.

Hydration

Postoperative hydration should be assessed and managed accordingly. Certain procedures may involve significant blood loss and require additional intravenous fluids management.

Urine

Assessment of urine output and of urinary voiding should be performed on a case-by-case basis for selected patients or selected procedures.

Drainage and Bleeding

Assessment of drainage and bleeding should be performed periodically as needed.

From Apfelbaum JL, Silverstein JH, Chung FF, et al. Practice guidelines for postanesthetic care: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Postanesthetic Care. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:291–307.

---

*Under extenuating circumstances, the responsible anesthesiologist may waive the requirements marked with an asterisk (*): it is recommended that when this is done, it should be stated (including the reasons) in a note in the patient's medical record.

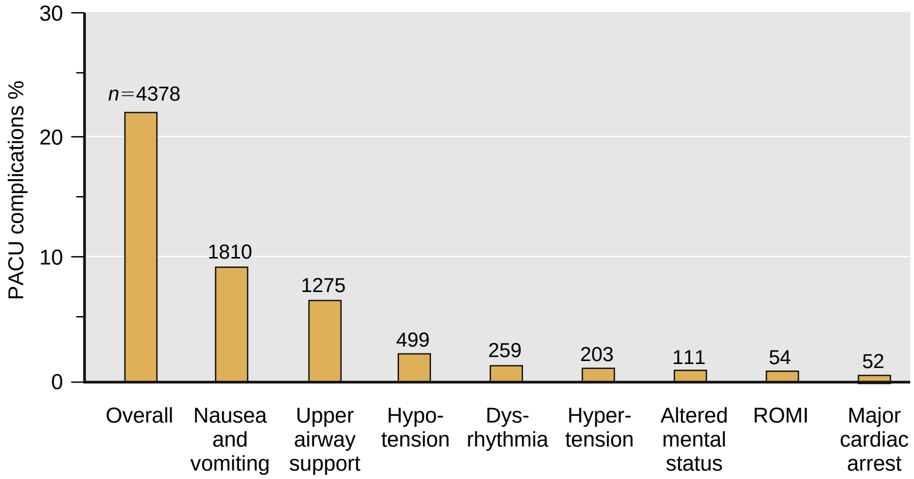


Fig. 80.1 The overall complication rate in 18,473 consecutive patients entering a postanesthesia care unit *(PACU)* was 23.7%. Nausea and vomiting, the need for upper airway support, and hypotension were the most frequent individual complications. (From Hines HR, Barash PG, Watrous G, et al. Complications occurring in the postanesthesia care unit: a survey. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:503–509, with permission.)

Early Postoperative Physiologic Changes

Emergence from general anesthesia and surgery may be accompanied by a number of physiologic disturbances that effect multiple organ systems. Most common are postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV), hypoxia, hypothermia and shivering, and cardiovascular instability. In a prospective study of more than 18,000 consecutive admissions to the PACU, the complication rate was found to be as high as 24%. Nausea and vomiting (9.8%), the need for upper airway support (6.8%), and hypotension (2.7%) were the most common (Fig. 80.1).[3]

Over a 4-year period ending in 1989, 7.1% of the 1175 anesthesia-related malpractice claims in the United States were attributed to recovery room incidents.[4] Despite the significant incidence of nausea and vomiting in the PACU, serious adverse outcomes correlate more closely with airway/respiratory and cardiovascular compromise. In 2002, airway/respiratory problems (183, 43%) and cardiovascular events (99, 24%) accounted for the majority of 419 recovery room incidents reported to the Australian Incident Monitoring Study database (Table 80.1).[5] Similar data were obtained from the United States closed claims database in 1989, in which critical respiratory incidents accounted for more than one-half of the recovery room malpractice claims.[4]

TABLE 80.1 Primary Presenting Problem in 419 Recovery Room Incidents Reported to Australian Incident Monitoring Study

Primary Presenting Problem	No. (%)
Cardiovascular	99 (24)
Respiratory	97 (23)
Airway	86 (21)
Drug error	44 (11)
Central nervous system	32 (8)
Equipment	27 (6)
Communication problems	7 (2)
Hypothermia	6 (1)
Regional block problems	4 (1)
Inadequate documentation	4 (1)
Hyperthermia	3 (1)
Trauma	3 (1)
Dental problems	2 (0.5)
Renal	1 (0.2)
Skin	1 (0.2)
Blood transfusion	1 (0.2)
Facility limitations	1 (0.2)
Gastrointestinal problems	1 (0.2)

From Kluger MT, Bullock MF. Recovery room incidents: a review of the Anesthetic Incident Monitoring Study (AIMS). *Anesthesia*. 2002;57:1060–1066.

Transport to the Postanesthesia Care Unit

Upper airway patency and the effectiveness of the patient's respiratory efforts must be monitored when transporting the patient from the operating room to the PACU. Adequate ventilation can be confirmed by watching for the appropriate rise and fall of the chest wall with inspiration, listening for breath sounds, or simply feeling for exhaled breath with the palm of one's hand over the patient's nose and mouth.

With rare exception, patients who undergo general anesthesia should receive supplemental oxygen during their transport to the PACU. In an observational study of 502 patients admitted to the PACU, breathing room air during transport was the single most significant factor to correlate with hypoxemia (SaO_2 <90%) on arrival. Other significant factors included elevated body mass index (BMI), sedation score, and respiratory rate.[6]

Although the majority of otherwise healthy patients undergoing ambulatory surgery can be transported safely breathing room air, the decision to do so must be made on a case-by-case basis. In the ambulatory setting, advanced age (>60 years) and weight (>100 kg) identifies adults who are at increased risk for oxygen desaturation when breathing room air on transport to the PACU.[7] Hypoventilation alone may cause hypoxemia even in healthy patients who undergo minor procedures.

Upper Airway Obstruction

LOSS OF PHARYNGEAL MUSCLE TONE

The most frequent cause of airway obstruction in the immediate postoperative period is the loss of pharyngeal muscle tone in a sedated or obtunded patient. The persistent effects of inhaled and intravenous anesthetics, neuromuscular blocking drugs, and opioids all contribute to the loss of pharyngeal tone in the PACU patient.

In an awake patient, opening of the upper airway is facilitated by the contraction of the pharyngeal muscles at the same time that negative inspiratory pressure is generated by the diaphragm. As a result, the tongue and soft palate are pulled forward, tenting the airway open during inspiration. This pharyngeal muscle activity is depressed during sleep, and the resulting decrease in tone can promote airway obstruction. A vicious cycle then ensues wherein the collapse of compliant pharyngeal tissue during inspiration produces a reflex compensatory increase in respiratory effort and negative inspiratory pressure that promotes further airway obstruction.[8]

The effort to breathe against an obstructed airway is characterized by a paradoxical breathing pattern consisting of retraction of the sternal notch and exaggerated abdominal muscle activity. Collapse of the chest wall and protrusion of the abdomen with inspiratory effort produces a rocking motion that becomes more prominent with increasing airway obstruction. Obstruction secondary to loss of pharyngeal tone can be relieved by simply opening the airway with the “jaw thrust maneuver” or continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) applied via a facemask (or both). Support of the airway is needed until the patient has adequately recovered from the effects of drugs administered during anesthesia. In selected patients, placement of an oral or nasal airway, laryngeal mask airway, or endotracheal tube may be required.

RESIDUAL NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKADE

Postoperative residual neuromuscular blockade is unfortunately very common (Box 80.2). The literature reports incidences between 20% and 40%[9] and a recent study even found that 56% of patients had residual neuromuscular blockade upon arrival in the PACU.[10] When evaluating upper airway obstruction in the PACU, the possibility of residual neuromuscular blockade should be considered in any patient who received neuromuscular blocking drugs during anesthesia.[11,12] Residual neuromuscular blockade may not be evident on arrival in the PACU because the diaphragm recovers from neuromuscular blockade before the pharyngeal muscles do. With an endotracheal tube in place, end-tidal carbon dioxide concentrations and tidal volumes may indicate adequate ventilation while the ability to maintain a patent upper airway and clear upper airway secretions remains compromised. The stimulation associated with tracheal extubation, followed by the activity of patient transfer to the gurney and subsequent encouragement to breathe deeply may keep the airway open during transport to the PACU. Only after the patient is calmly resting in the PACU does upper airway obstruction become evident. Even patients treated with intermediate- and short-acting neuromuscular blocking drugs may manifest residual paralysis in the PACU despite what was deemed clinically adequate pharmacologic reversal in the operating room.

Measurement of the train-of-four (TOF) ratio is a subjective assessment that is often misleading when done by touch or observation alone. A decline in this ratio may not be appreciated until it reaches a value less than 0.4 to 0.5, whereas significant signs and symptoms of clinical weakness persist to a ratio of 0.7.[13] Pharyngeal function is not restored to normal until an adductor pollicis TOF ratio is greater than 0.9.[14]

In the anesthetized patient, a quantitative TOF measurement showing a TOF ratio ≥0.9 is the most reliable

BOX 80.2 Factors Contributing to Prolonged Nondepolarizing Neuromuscular Blockade

Drugs

- Inhaled anesthetic drugs
- Local anesthetics (lidocaine)
- Cardiac antiarrhythmics (procainamide)
- Antibiotics (polymyxins, aminoglycosides, lincosamines [clindamycin], metronidazole [Flagyl], tetracyclines)
- Corticosteroid agents
- Calcium channel blockers
- Dantrolene

Metabolic and Physiologic States

- Hypermagnesemia
- Hypocalcemia
- Hypothermia
- Respiratory acidosis
- Hepatic or renal failure
- Myasthenia syndromes
- Excessive dose of succinylcholine
- Reduced plasma cholinesterase activity
  - Decreased levels
    - Extremes of age (newborn, old age)
    - Disease states (hepatic disease, uremia, malnutrition, plasmapheresis)
    - Hormonal changes
    - Pregnancy
    - Contraceptives
    - Glucocorticoids
  - Inhibited activity
    - Irreversible (echothiophate)
    - Reversible (edrophonium, neostigmine, pyridostigmine)
- Genetic variant (atypical plasma cholinesterase)

indicator of adequate reversal of drug-induced neuromuscular blockade.[13,15] Qualitative TOF measurement and 5-second sustained tetanus at 50 Hz are insensitive and will not allow detection of fade above an average TOF ratio of 0.31 ± 0.15; 5-second sustained tetanus at 100 Hz is unreliable.[16] In an awake patient, clinical assessment of reversal of neuromuscular blockade is preferred to the application of painful TOF or tetanic stimulation. Clinical evaluation includes grip strength, tongue protrusion, the ability to lift the legs off the bed, and the ability to lift the head off the bed for a full 5 seconds. Of these maneuvers, the 5-second sustained head lift has been considered to be the standard, reflecting not only generalized motor strength but, more importantly, the patient's ability to maintain and protect the airway. However, studies have shown that the 5-second head lift is remarkably insensitive and should not routinely be used to assess recovery from neuromuscular blockade. The ability to strongly oppose the incisor teeth against a tongue depressor is a more reliable indicator of pharyngeal muscle tone. This maneuver correlates with an average TOF ratio of 0.85 as opposed to 0.60 for the sustained head lift.[13] In a year-long study of 7459 PACU patients who had received general anesthesia, Murphy et al. reported critical respiratory events (CREs) in 61 of them. These events occurred within the first 15 minutes of PACU admission, at which time a TOF ratio was measured. When compared with matched controls, these patients had a significantly lower TOF ratio (0.62 [+0.20]) compared to controls 0.98 [+0.07]).[17] In a recent study, Bulka and associates were able to demonstrate that patients who had received neuromuscular blocking drugs, but did not receive reversal agents, had a 2.26 times higher risk of developing postoperative pneumonia compared to those who did receive reversal agents.[18]

When a PACU patient demonstrates signs and/or symptoms of muscular weakness in the form of respiratory distress and/or agitation, one must suspect that there could be a residual neuromuscular blockade and prompt review of possible etiologic factors is indicated (see Box 80.2). Common factors include respiratory acidosis and hypothermia, alone or in combination. Upper airway obstruction as a result of the residual depressant effects of volatile anesthetics or opioids (or both) may result in progressive respiratory acidosis after the patient is admitted to the PACU and external stimulation is minimized. Simple measures such as warming the patient, airway support, and correction of electrolyte abnormalities can facilitate recovery from neuromuscular blockade. The approval of sugammadex in the United States by the FDA in December 2015 may have a major impact on residual paralysis in patients who were paralyzed with aminosteroid neuromuscular blocking drugs (sugammadex does not work with benzylisoquinolinium neuromuscular blocking drugs). While reversal with neostigmine requires a baseline twitch response, and the duration until the patient has a TOF ratio of ≥0.9 is highly variable, sugammadex can be administered at any depth of neuromuscular blockade and most commonly produces full recovery within several minutes after administration. In a recent study, reversal with sugammadex resulted in a return of TOF ratio to greater than 0.9 within 5 minutes in 85% of patients with no twitches on TOF stimulation.[19] It is anticipated that the increased availability and use of sugammadex, as an alternative to neostigmine, will result in a decreased incidence of residual neuromuscular blockade in the PACU.

LARYNGOSPASM

Laryngospasm refers to a sudden spasm of the vocal cords that completely occludes the laryngeal opening via forceful tonic contractions of the laryngeal muscles and descent of the epiglottis over the laryngeal inlet. It typically occurs in the transitional period when the extubated patient is emerging from general anesthesia yet not fully awake. Although laryngospasm is most likely to occur in the operating room at the time of tracheal extubation, patients who arrive in the PACU asleep after general anesthesia are also at risk for laryngospasm upon awakening, which is often triggered by airway irritants, such as secretions or blood. Treatment of laryngospasm involves removal of the stimulus (suctioning of secretions, blood) and the application of a jaw thrust maneuver with CPAP (up to 40 cm water [H_2O]) is often sufficient stimulation to break the laryngospasm. However, if jaw thrust maneuver and CPAP fail, then immediate skeletal muscle relaxation can be achieved with succinylcholine (0.1-1.0 mg/kg intravenously [IV] or 4 mg/kg intramuscularly [IM]). If these maneuvers fail, one should proceed with a full dose of an induction agent and intubating dose of a muscle relaxant to enable the practitioner to perform an emergent tracheal intubation; attempting to pass a tracheal tube forcibly through a glottis that is closed because of laryngospasm is not acceptable.

EDEMA OR HEMATOMA

Airway edema is a possible surgical complication in patients undergoing prolonged procedures in the prone or Trendelenburg position, procedures involving the airway and neck (including thyroidectomy,[20] carotid endarterectomy,[21] and cervical spine procedures[22]), as well as those in which the patient receives a large volume resuscitation. Although facial and scleral edema is an important physical sign that can alert the clinician to the presence of airway edema, visible external signs may not accompany significant edema of pharyngeal tissue (see also Chapter 44). Patients who have had a difficult intraoperative intubation and/or airway instrumentation may also have increased airway edema from direct injury. If tracheal extubation is to be attempted in these patients in the PACU, then evaluation of airway patency must precede removal of the endotracheal tube. The patient's ability to breathe around the endotracheal tube can be evaluated by suctioning the oral pharynx and deflating the endotracheal tube cuff. With occlusion of the proximal end of the endotracheal tube, the patient is then asked to breathe around the tube. Good air movement suggests that the patient's airway will remain patent after tracheal extubation. An alternative method involves measuring the intrathoracic pressure required to produce a leak around the endotracheal tube with the cuff deflated. This method was originally used to evaluate pediatric patients with croup before extubation.[23-25] When used in patients with general oropharyngeal edema, the safe pressure threshold can be difficult to identify. Lastly, when ventilating patients in the volume control mode, one can measure the exhaled tidal volume before and after cuff deflation. Patients who require reintubation generally have a smaller leak (i.e., less percentage difference between exhaled volume before and after cuff deflation) than those who do not. A difference greater than 15.5% is the advocated cutoff value for extubation of the trachea.[26] The presence of a cuff leak demonstrates the likelihood of successful extubation, not a guarantee, just as a failed cuff leak does not rule out a successful extubation.[27] The cuff leak test does not and should never take the place of sound clinical judgment, as it is neither sensitive nor specific; it may be used as an adjunct to aid in providing another layer of guidance.

In order to facilitate the reduction of airway edema, one may sit the patient upright to ensure adequate venous drainage, and consider administering a diuretic and intravenous dexamethasone (4-8 mg every 6 hours for 24 hours), which may help decrease airway swelling.

External airway compression is most often caused by hematomas following thyroid, parathyroid, or carotid surgical procedures. Patients may complain of pain and/or pressure, dysphagia, and can demonstrate signs of respiratory distress as the pressure from the expanding hematoma within the tissue can disrupt both venous and lymphatic drainage, both of which can further exacerbate airway swelling. Mask ventilation may not be possible in a patient with severe upper airway obstruction resulting from edema or hematoma. In the case of a hematoma, an attempt can be made to decompress the airway by releasing the clips or sutures on the wound and evacuating the hematoma. This maneuver is recommended as a temporizing measure, but it will not effectively decompress the airway if a significant amount of fluid or blood (or both) has infiltrated the tissue planes of the pharyngeal wall. If emergency tracheal intubation is required, then ready access to difficult airway equipment and surgical backup to perform an emergency tracheostomy are crucial, as one should assume increased difficulty secondary to laryngeal and airway edema, possible tracheal deviation, and a compressed tracheal lumen. If the patient is able to move adequate air via spontaneous ventilation, then an awake technique is often preferred as visualization of the cords by direct laryngoscopy may not be possible.

OBSTRUCTIVE SLEEP APNEA

Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) syndrome is an often overlooked cause of airway obstruction in the PACU, given that most patients are actually not obese and the vast majority of patients are undiagnosed at the time of surgery.[28,29]

It is well known that patients with OSA are at an increased risk of suffering from cardiopulmonary complications as compared to the general population not affected by OSA syndrome. Patients with OSA are particularly prone to airway obstruction and should not be extubated until they are fully awake and following commands.[30,31] Any redundant compliant pharyngeal tissue in these patients not only increases the incidence of airway obstruction, but can also increase the difficulty of intubation by direct laryngoscopy.[32,33] Once in the PACU, a patient with OSA whose trachea has been extubated is exquisitely sensitive to opioids and, when possible, continuous regional anesthesia techniques should be used to provide postoperative analgesia.[34,35] Other opioid-sparing techniques should be utilized, such as scheduled acetaminophen, and use of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) when not contraindicated. One may also employ the use of ketamine, dexmedetomidine, and clonidine, all of which can also decrease postoperative opioid requirements. Interestingly, benzodiazepines can have a greater effect on pharyngeal muscle tone than opioids, and the use of benzodiazepines in the perioperative setting can significantly contribute to airway obstruction in the PACU.[8,36]

Another strategy to employ when caring for a patient with OSA is to position them in either an upright (seated, reverse Trendelenburg) or semi-upright position whenever possible, as the supine position is known to worsen OSA.

In addition, the use of goal-directed fluid strategies should be utilized with consideration of lower salt-containing substances, as these patients are more prone to fluid shifts, which can worsen airway edema.

When caring for a patient with OSA, plans should be made preoperatively to provide CPAP in the immediate postoperative period. Patients should be asked to bring their own CPAP machines with them on the day of surgery to enable the equipment to be set up before the patient's arrival in the PACU. Patients who do not routinely use CPAP at home or who do not have their machines with them may require additional attention from the respiratory therapist to ensure proper fit of the CPAP delivery device (mask or nasal airways) and to determine the amount of positive pressure needed to prevent upper airway obstruction.[37,38]

In patients with OSA who are morbidly obese, immediately applying CPAP postextubation in the operating room rather than waiting to apply positive pressure in the PACU may offer additional benefits. In patients undergoing laparoscopic bariatric surgery, Neligan and colleagues compared the application of 10 cm H_2O CPAP immediately postextubation to instituting the same CPAP 30 minutes later in the PACU. When compared with matched controls, patients who received immediate CPAP demonstrated improved spirometric lung function (i.e., functional residual capacity [FRC], peak expiratory flow [PEF], and forced expiratory volume [FEV]) at 1 hour and 24 hours postoperatively.[38]

Two large cohort studies demonstrated that patients with OSA who are not treated with positive airway pressure (PAP) preoperatively are at increased risk for cardiopulmonary complications after general and vascular surgery and that PAP therapy was associated with a reduction in postoperative cardiovascular complications. If the patient can tolerate PAP, and their surgical procedure is not a contraindication to its application, patients with OSA should use a PAP device postoperatively.

Management of Upper Airway Obstruction

An obstructed upper airway requires immediate attention. Efforts to open the airway by noninvasive measures should be attempted before reintubation of the trachea. Jaw thrust with CPAP (5-15 cm H_2O) is often enough to tent the upper airway open in patients with decreased pharyngeal muscle tone. If CPAP is not effective, an oral, nasal, or laryngeal mask airway can be inserted rapidly. After successfully opening the upper airway and ensuring adequate ventilation, the cause of the upper airway obstruction should be identified and treated. In adults the sedating effects of opioids and benzodiazepines can be reversed with persistent stimulation or small, titrated doses of naloxone (0.3-0.5 µg/kg IV) or flumazenil (0.2 mg IV to maximum dose of 1 mg), respectively. Residual effects of neuromuscular blocking drugs can be reversed pharmacologically or by correcting contributing factors such as hypothermia.

Differential Diagnosis of Arterial Hypoxemia in the Postanesthesia Care Unit

Atelectasis and alveolar hypoventilation are the most common causes of transient postoperative arterial hypoxemia in the immediate postoperative period.[39] Clinical correlation should guide the workup of a postoperative patient who remains persistently hypoxic.[40] Review of the patient's history, operative course, and clinical signs and symptoms will direct the workup to rule in possible causes (Box 80.3).

ALVEOLAR HYPOVENTILATION

Review of the alveolar gas equation demonstrates that hypoventilation alone is sufficient to cause arterial hypoxemia in a patient breathing room air (Fig. 80.2). At sea level, a normocapnic patient breathing room air will have an alveolar oxygen pressure (PAO_2) of 100 mm Hg. Thus, a healthy patient without a significant alveolar-arterial gradient will have a PaO_2 near 100 mm Hg. In the same patient, an increase in $PaCO_2$ from 40 to 80 mm Hg (alveolar hypoventilation) results in a PaO_2 of 50 mm Hg. Hence, even a patient with normal lungs will become hypoxic if allowed to significantly hypoventilate while breathing room air.

Normally, minute ventilation increases linearly by approximately 2 L/min for every 1-mm Hg increase in $PaCO_2$. In the immediate postoperative period, the residual effects of inhaled anesthetics, opioids, and sedative-hypnotics can significantly depress this ventilatory response to carbon dioxide. In addition to depressed respiratory drive, the differential diagnosis of postoperative hypoventilation includes generalized weakness due to residual neuromuscular blockade or underlying neuromuscular disease. The presence of restrictive pulmonary conditions, such as preexisting chest wall deformity, postoperative abdominal binding, or abdominal distention, can also contribute to inadequate ventilation.

Arterial hypoxemia secondary to hypercapnia can be reversed by the administration of supplemental oxygen (Fig. 80.3)[41] or by normalizing the patient's $PaCO_2$ by external stimulation of the patient to wakefulness, pharmacologic reversal of opioid or benzodiazepine effect, or controlled mechanical ventilation of the patient's lungs.

BOX 80.3 Factors Contributing to Postoperative Arterial Hypoxemia

- Right-to-left intrapulmonary shunt (atelectasis)
- Mismatching of ventilation to perfusion (decreased functional residual capacity)
- Congestive heart failure
- Pulmonary edema (fluid overload, postobstructive edema)
- Alveolar hypoventilation (residual effects of anesthetics and/or neuromuscular blocking drugs)
- Diffusion hypoxia (unlikely if receiving supplemental oxygen)
- Inhalation of gastric contents (aspiration)
- Pulmonary embolus
- Pneumothorax
- Increased oxygen consumption (shivering)
- Sepsis
- Transfusion-related lung injury
- Adult respiratory distress syndrome
- Advanced age
- Obesity

$$PAO_2 = FiO_2\,(PB - PH_2O) - \frac{PaCO_2}{RQ}$$

$$PaCO_2 = 40 \text{ mm Hg}$$
$$PAO_2 = 21(760 - 47) - \frac{40}{0.8} = 150 - 50 = 100 \text{ mm Hg}$$

$$PaCO_2 = 80 \text{ mm Hg}$$
$$PAO_2 = 21(760 - 47) - \frac{80}{0.8} = 150 - 100 = 50 \text{ mm Hg}$$

PAO_2 = alveolar oxygen pressure
$PaCO_2$ = partial pressure of CO_2 in arterial blood
FiO_2 = fraction of inspired oxygen
PB = barometric pressure
PH_2O = vapor pressure of water
RQ = respiratory quotient

Fig. 80.2 Hypoventilation as a cause of arterial hypoxemia. (From Nicholau D. Postanesthesia recovery. In: Miller RD, Pardo MC Jr, eds. *Basics of Anesthesia.* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.)

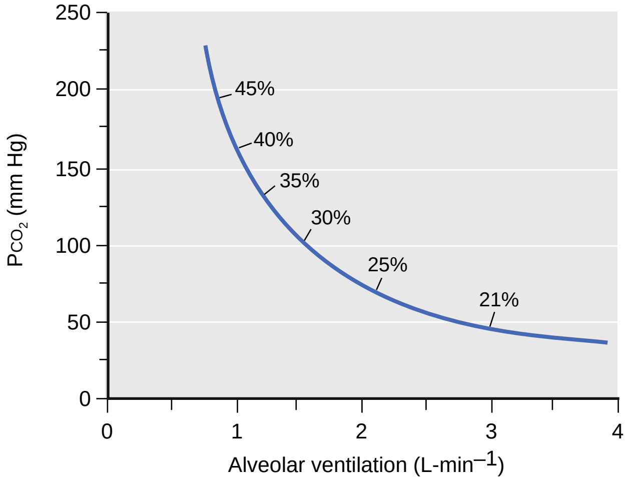


Fig. 80.3 Alveolar partial pressure of carbon dioxide (PCO_2) as a function of alveolar ventilation at rest. The percentages indicate the inspired oxygen concentration required to restore alveolar partial pressure of oxygen (PO_2) to normal. (Adapted from Nunn JF. *Nunn's Applied Respiratory Physiology.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2005, with permission.)

DECREASED ALVEOLAR OXYGEN PRESSURE

Diffusion hypoxia refers to the rapid diffusion of nitrous oxide into alveoli at the end of a nitrous oxide anesthetic. Nitrous oxide dilutes the alveolar gas and produces a transient decrease in Pao_2 and $Paco_2$. In a patient breathing room air, the resulting decrease in Pao_2 can produce arterial hypoxemia while decreased $Paco_2$ can depress the respiratory drive. In the absence of supplemental oxygen administration, diffusion hypoxia can persist for 5 to 10 minutes after discontinuation of a nitrous oxide anesthetic; therefore, it may contribute to arterial hypoxemia in the initial moments in the PACU.

VENTILATION-PERFUSION MISMATCH AND SHUNT

Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction refers to the attempt of normal lungs to optimally match ventilation and perfusion. This response constricts vessels in poorly ventilated regions of the lung and directs pulmonary blood flow to well-ventilated alveoli. In the PACU, the residual effects of inhaled anesthetics and vasodilators such as nitroprusside and dobutamine used to treat systemic hypertension or improve hemodynamics will blunt hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction and contribute to arterial hypoxemia.

Unlike a mismatch, a true shunt will not respond to supplemental oxygen. Causes of postoperative pulmonary shunt include atelectasis, pulmonary edema, gastric aspiration, pulmonary emboli, and pneumonia. Of these, atelectasis is probably the most common cause of pulmonary shunting in the immediate postoperative period. Mobilization of the patient to the sitting position, incentive spirometry, and PAP by facemask can be effective in treating atelectasis.

INCREASED VENOUS ADMIXTURE

Increased venous admixture typically refers to low cardiac output states. It is due to the mixing of desaturated venous blood with oxygenated arterial blood. Normally, only 2% to 5% of cardiac output is shunted through the lungs, and this shunted blood with a normal mixed venous saturation has a minimal effect on Pao_2. In low cardiac output states, blood returns to the heart severely desaturated. Additionally, the shunt fraction increases significantly in conditions that impede alveolar oxygenation, such as pulmonary edema and atelectasis. Under these conditions, mixing of desaturated shunted blood with saturated arterialized blood decreases Pao_2.

DECREASED DIFFUSION CAPACITY

A decreased diffusion capacity may reflect the presence of underlying lung disease such as emphysema, interstitial lung disease, pulmonary fibrosis, or primary pulmonary hypertension. In this regard, the differential diagnosis of arterial hypoxemia in the PACU must include the contribution of any preexisting pulmonary condition.

Finally, keep in mind that inadequate oxygen delivery may result from an unrecognized disconnection of the oxygen source or empty oxygen tank.

Pulmonary Edema

Pulmonary edema in the immediate postoperative period is often cardiogenic in nature, secondary to intravascular volume overload or congestive heart failure. Other causes of noncardiogenic pulmonary edema, namely postobstructive pulmonary edema (secondary to airway obstruction), sepsis, or transfusion (transfusion-related acute lung injury [TRALI]), may occur less frequently, but they must not be overlooked as a potential cause of pulmonary edema in the postoperative period.

POSTOBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY EDEMA

Postobstructive pulmonary edema (also referred to as negative pressure pulmonary edema, NPPE) is a rare, but significant consequence of laryngospasm and other upper airway obstruction that may follow tracheal extubation at the conclusion of anesthesia and surgery. Laryngospasm is likely the most common cause of postobstructive pulmonary edema in the PACU, but postobstructive pulmonary edema may result from any condition that occludes the upper airway.[42-45] The etiology of NPPE is multifactorial, but is clearly correlated with the generation of exaggerated negative intrathoracic pressure attributable to forced inspiration against a closed glottis. The resulting negative intrathoracic pressure augments blood flow to the right side of the heart, which in turn dilates and increases hydrostatic pressure gradient across the pulmonary vascular bed, promoting the movement of fluid into the interstitial and alveolar spaces from the pulmonary capillaries. Negative inspiratory pressure will also increase left ventricular afterload, thus decreasing the ejection fraction, which heightens left ventricular end diastolic pressure, left atrial pressure, and pulmonary venous pressure. This chain of events further escalates the development of pulmonary edema via increase of pulmonary hydrostatic pressures. Patients who are muscularly healthy are at increased risk of postobstructive pulmonary edema secondary to their ability to generate significant inspiratory force.

The resulting arterial hypoxemia develops relatively quickly (usually observed within 90 minutes of the upper airway obstruction), and is accompanied by dyspnea, pink frothy sputum, and bilateral fluffy infiltrates on the chest radiograph. Treatment is generally supportive and includes supplemental oxygen, diuresis, and, in severe cases, initiation of positive-pressure ventilation. The general consensus of postoperative monitoring in these patients ranges anywhere from 2 to 12 hours. Resolution of NPPE typically occurs within 12 to 48 hours when recognized and treated immediately; however, if diagnosis and resulting therapy is delayed, mortality rates can reach 40%. Although it is quite uncommon, pulmonary hemorrhage and hemoptysis have been observed.

TRANSFUSION-RELATED ACUTE LUNG INJURY

The differential diagnosis of pulmonary edema in the PACU should include transfusion-related lung injury in any patient who intraoperatively received blood products.[46-48] Transfusion-related lung injury is typically exhibited within 2 to 4 hours after the transfusion of plasma-containing blood products, including packed red blood cells, whole blood, fresh frozen plasma, or platelets. TRALI occurs when recipient neutrophils become activated by constituents of the donor blood products. These neutrophils then release inflammatory mediators which initiate the cascade of pulmonary edema and resulting lung injury via increasing the permeability of the pulmonary vasculature. Given that presenting symptoms (sudden onset of hypoxemic respiratory failure) can appear up to 6 hours after the conclusion of the transfusion, the syndrome may develop during the patient's stay in the PACU. The resulting noncardiogenic pulmonary edema is often associated with fever, pulmonary infiltrates on chest radiograph (without signs of left heart failure), cyanosis, and systemic hypotension. If a complete blood cell count is obtained with the onset of symptoms, then documenting an acute drop in the white blood cell count (leukopenia) is possible, reflecting the sequestration of granulocytes within the lung and exudative fluid.[49,50]

Treatment is supportive and includes supplemental oxygen and diuresis. It is estimated that up to 80% of patients will recover within 48 to 96 hours. Mechanical ventilation may be needed to support hypoxemia and respiratory failure. Vasopressors may be required to treat refractory hypotension.[51,52]

In past years, the lack of specific diagnostic criteria has resulted in the underdiagnosing and underreporting of this syndrome. Recently, a group of transfusion experts in the American-European Consensus Conference developed and implemented diagnostic criteria that have raised the awareness of the syndrome (Box 80.4).[51,53-56]

BOX 80.4 Criteria for the Diagnosis of Transfusion-Related Acute Lung Injury: the American-European Consensus Conference Recommendations

1. Acute lung injury evidenced by:
    a. Acute onset of signs and symptoms
    b. Hypoxemia:
        i. PaO_2/FiO_2 <300, or
        ii. Room air SpO_2 <90%, or
        iii. Other clinical evidence of hypoxemia
    c. Bilateral infiltrates on chest radiography without cardiomegaly
    d. No clinical evidence of left atrial hypertension
2. No preexisting acute lung injury before transfusion
3. Onset of lung dysfunction within 6 h of transfusion
4. No temporal association of onset to alternative causes of acute lung injury

FiO_2, Fraction of inspired oxygen; *PaO_2*, Arterial oxygen pressure; *SpO_2*, oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry.

Modified from Swanson K, Dwyre DM, Krochmal J, et al. Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI): current clinical and pathophysiologic considerations. *Lung*. 2006;184:177–185.

TRANSFUSION-ASSOCIATED CIRCULATORY OVERLOAD (TACO)

TACO may be difficult to distinguish from TRALI, however TACO should be highly considered in patients who have diminished cardiac function at baseline, renal insufficiency, and in surgical procedures where there is both rapid and large-volume fluid and blood product administration.[57] Patients with TACO are essentially unable to manage the rate and/or volume of product received secondary to their underlying comorbidities, and tend to develop symptoms of respiratory distress, hypoxemia, and signs of left and/or right heart failure within 2 to 6 hours of the transfusion. TACO is commonly associated with physical manifestations of fluid overload and these patients frequently are hypertensive during the onset of dyspnea. The chest radiograph may demonstrate findings of preexisting cardiac disease and a possible cardiogenic component, such as cardiomegaly and pleural effusions. Elevated levels of BNP are suggestive of TACO. TACO and TRALI may indeed coexist. Treatment is mainly supportive and should focus on treatment of supplemental oxygen for hypoxemia and diuresis for acute volume overload. Positive pressure ventilation can be employed as well.

Monitoring and Treatment of Hypoxemia

OXYGEN SUPPLEMENTATION

In the era of cost containment, it has been suggested that the routine delivery of supplemental oxygen to all patients recovering from general anesthesia is a costly and unnecessary practice.[58] The argument against the use of routine oxygen supplementation relies on the fact that continuous pulse oximetry, now a PACU standard, readily identifies those patients who will require oxygen therapy.[59] Supporting this argument is the observation that after general anesthesia a majority of patients do not become hypoxic (63% at threshold of Sao_2 <90%, and 83% at threshold of Sao_2 <94%) when breathing room air in the PACU.[59] Although the authors of this observational study predict that the elimination of routine oxygen supplementation in the PACU would result in significant cost savings, others assert that the economic benefit of limited oxygen therapy is likely to be offset by the cost of complications.[60,61]

Although the practice of providing prophylactic oxygen therapy to all patients after general anesthesia is controversial, most would argue that the benefits outweigh the risks. Even with oxygen supplementation, a significant percentage of patients will become hypoxic at some point during their PACU stay.[62,63] Russell and associates studied 100 patients who were transferred to the PACU breathing room air before receiving at least 40% oxygen by aerosol face tent in the unit.[62] All patients had an Sao_2 greater than 97% before the 2-minute transport to the PACU. Fifteen percent of patients experienced transient desaturation on arrival in the PACU (<92% saturation for >30 seconds). This immediate desaturation correlated positively with patient age, body weight, ASA classification, general anesthesia, and increased volume of intravenous fluid greater than 1500 mL. An even larger percentage of patients (25%) desaturated 30 to 50 minutes later in their PACU stay despite prophylactic oxygen administration. These later desaturations were more severe (71%-91%) and lasted longer (5.8 ± 12.6 minutes) than those that occurred on admission. Additional correlating factors included duration of anesthesia and female gender.

The safe practice of postanesthesia care without oxygen supplementation requires ideal conditions at all times; that is, functioning oxygen delivery apparatus at every bedside as well as sufficient manpower for observation and immediate intervention. Gravenstein argues that this degree of vigilance is likely unrealistic and the risk of adverse outcome to even a small number of patients is unwarranted.[64]

LIMITATIONS OF PULSE OXIMETRY

The ASA Standards for Postanesthesia Care require that patients be observed and monitored with "particular attention given to" both oxygenation and ventilation. The pulse oximeter is a standard monitor in the PACU for the detection of hypoxemia, but it does not reflect the adequacy of ventilation.[65] Although several studies have demonstrated oximetry's limited ability to detect hypoventilation in patients breathing room air,[66,67] they confirm that it does not reliably detect hypoventilation in patients breathing oxygen.[67] When monitoring ventilation in the PACU, pulse oximetry is not a substitute for close observation by trained personnel.

Oxygen Delivery Systems

SUPPLEMENTAL OXYGEN

The degree of hypoxemia, the surgical procedure, and patient compliance determine the oxygen delivery system of choice in the PACU. Regardless of the delivery system, oxygen should be humidified in order to prevent the subsequent dehydration of the nasal and/or oral mucosa. Patients who have just undergone head and neck surgery may not be candidates for facemask oxygen because of the risk of pressure necrosis on incision sites and microvascular muscle flaps, whereas nasal packing prohibits the use of nasal cannulas in others. Face tent oxygen or blow-by setups are viable alternatives in cases in which tight-fitting masks and straps are contraindicated. In an elderly patient, or one who is at an increased risk of delirium, nasal cannula may be selected over a facemask, as long as their oxygenation saturation levels are adequate.

Simple facemasks are generally used in the postoperative setting in patients who are breathing spontaneously yet require a higher oxygen flow rate and/or concentration in order for them to maintain their oxygenation saturation. The practitioner should ensure the proper size, as the mask should fit comfortably over the patient's nose and mouth. Oxygen flow rates should be at least 5 L/min in order to preclude rebreathing of CO_2. Nonrebreather masks have traditionally been known to deliver the highest concentration (up to 95%) in spontaneously breathing patients.

The delivery of oxygen through a traditional nasal cannula with bubble humidifier is usually limited to a maximum flow of 6 L/min to minimize the discomfort and complications that result from inadequate humidification. As a general rule, each liter per minute of oxygen flow through nasal cannula increases the FiO_2 by 0.04, with 6 L/min delivering an FiO_2 of approximately 0.44.

Until recently, maximum oxygen delivery to extubated patients required delivery by facemask through a nonrebreather system or high-flow nebulizer. These systems can be inefficient, however, because of inadequate mask fit and/or high-minute ventilation requirements that result in significant entrainment of room air. The newer high-flow nasal cannula (HFNC) devices can comfortably deliver oxygen at 40 L/min, 37°C, and 99.9% relative humidity.[68] The delivery of high-flow oxygen directly to the nasopharynx produces an FiO_2 equal to that delivered by traditional mask devices. HFNC is an appropriate alternative in patients with hypoxemic respiratory failure without hypercapnia. In fact, the Vapotherm system has been shown to deliver a higher FiO_2 than a nonrebreather mask at similar flow ranges (10-40 L/min). Unlike the nonrebreather mask, these devices deliver high-flow oxygen directly to the nasopharynx throughout the respiratory cycle.[69,70] The efficacy of these devices may be enhanced by a CPAP effect resulting from the high gas flow.[71]

In a recent meta-analysis by Zhao et al., it was concluded that HFNC, when compared to conventional oxygen therapy systems, reduced the need for mechanical ventilation[72]; however outcomes were similar when compared to noninvasive ventilation.

CONTINUOUS POSITIVE AIRWAY PRESSURE

An estimated 8% to 10% of patients who undergo abdominal surgery subsequently require intubation and mechanical ventilation in the PACU. As discussed earlier in this chapter, respiratory failure in the immediate postoperative period is often due to transient and rapidly reversible conditions such as splinting from pain, diaphragmatic dysfunction, muscular weakness, and pharmacologically depressed respiratory drive. Readily reversible hypoxemia may be due to hypoventilation, atelectasis, or volume overload. The application of CPAP in this setting can potentially decrease hypoxemia as a result of atelectasis by recruiting alveoli. The resulting increase in functional reserve capacity may also improve pulmonary compliance and decrease the work of breathing.

A large percentage of patients who are obese and undergoing Roux-en-Y gastric bypass surgery have OSA and stand to benefit significantly from postoperative CPAP therapy. Yet surgeons were initially hesitant to embrace this modality for fear that applying positive pressure to the airway would inflate the stomach and proximal intestine and result in anastomotic disruption. In a single-center study of 1067 patients undergoing gastro-jejunostomy bypass and 420 diagnosed with OSA, CPAP did not increase the risk of postoperative anastomotic leaks.[73]

NONINVASIVE POSITIVE-PRESSURE VENTILATION

Even with the application of CPAP in the PACU, a number of patients will require additional ventilatory support. Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation (NIPPV) has been shown to be an effective alternative to endotracheal intubation in the intensive care unit (ICU) setting. Although the use of NIPPV in both chronic and acute respiratory failure is well established, its application in the PACU is limited.

In the past, the use of NIPPV was avoided in the immediate postoperative period because of the potential for gastric distention, aspiration, and wound dehiscence. These potential complications were especially true in patients who had undergone esophageal or gastric surgery. Careful consideration of both the patient and the surgical factors must guide the decision to use noninvasive modes of ventilation in the PACU. Relative contraindications include hemodynamic instability or life-threatening arrhythmias, altered mental status, high risk of aspiration, inability to use nasal or facial mask (head and neck procedures), and refractory hypoxemia.[74,75]

NIPPV can be delivered by facemask using the pressure support mode of a mechanical ventilator. Alternatively, the use of a biphasic PAP machine allows the delivery of positive pressure by either nasal cannula or facemask. An example protocol for instituting NIPPV in patients with acute respiratory failure is shown in Box 80.5.[76]

NIPPV should be considered postoperatively in patients with OSA, COPD, and cardiogenic pulmonary edema. Utilization of PPV postextubation in the immediate postoperative periods may aid in the prevention of atelectasis as well as ensuing respiratory failure. There have been several studies that investigated the prophylactic use of NIPPV in the bariatric, general, thoracic, and vascular surgical populations. Despite the fact that there is lack of data demonstrating succinct results and large RCTs, NIPPV has shown to be beneficial in distinctive patient populations.[77]

Patients who are able to cooperate and tolerate PPV, as well as those with an intact mental status, moderate hypercarbia and academia ($PaCO_2$ 45-92, pH 7.1-7.35), and physiologic improvement within 2 hours are often associated with higher rates of success with NIPPV. Relative contraindications to PPV include copious secretions, lack of an intact mental status, cardiac or respiratory arrest, and those who are considered to be high aspiration risks or are unable to protect their airway.

BOX 80.5 **Example Protocol for Instituting Noninvasive Positive-Pressure Ventilation in Patients with Acute Respiratory Failure**

1. Choose the appropriate patient, based on the surgical procedure and the patient's risk of aspiration, ability to protect his or her airway, and ability to comply with the mask fit.
2. Position the head of the bed at ≥45-degree angle.
3. Choose the correct size mask and connect mask to ventilator.
4. Explain the modality to the patient and provide reassurance.
5. Set initial ventilatory settings (CPAP, 0 cm H_2O; pressure support, 10 cm H_2O).
6. Gently hold mask on face until the patient is comfortable and synchronous with ventilation.
7. Apply wound care dressing on nasal bridge and other pressure points.
8. Secure mask with head straps.
9. Slowly increase CPAP.
10. Adjust pressure support to achieve adequate tidal volumes and maximal patient comfort.
11. In patients with hypoxia, increase CPAP in increments of 2 to 3 cm H_2O until FiO_2 is ≤0.6.
12. Avoid peak mask pressures >30 cm H_2O.
13. Set ventilator alarms and apnea backup parameters.
14. Ask the patient and nurse to call for needs (e.g., repositioning mask, pain, discomfort) or if complications occur (e.g., respiratory difficulties, abdominal distention, nausea, vomiting).
15. Monitor with oximetry, and adjust ventilator settings after blood gas results.

CPAP, Continuous positive airway pressure; *FiO_2*, fraction of inspired oxygen.

Modified from Abou-Shala N, Meduri U. Noninvasive mechanical ventilation in patients with acute respiratory failure. *Crit Care Med.* 1996;24:705–715.

Hemodynamic Instability

Hemodynamic compromise in the patient in the PACU is exhibited in a number of ways—systemic hypertension, hypotension, tachycardia, or bradycardia—alone or in combination. Hemodynamic instability in the PACU has a negative impact on long-term outcome. Interestingly, postoperative systemic hypertension and tachycardia are associated with an increased risk of unplanned critical care admission and a higher mortality than hypotension and bradycardia.[78]

SYSTEMIC HYPERTENSION

Patients with a history of essential hypertension are at greatest risk for significant systemic hypertension in the PACU, especially if they did not take their morning antihypertensive medications.[79] Additional factors include pain (which is usually associated with tachycardia +/− tachypnea), nausea and vomiting, hypoventilation and associated hypercapnia, hypoxia, emergence excitement, anxiety, agitation, advanced age, urinary retention (secondary to large intraoperative administration of IV fluids), and preexisting renal disease (Box 80.6). One must also not forget the possibility of alcohol withdrawal (which can occur as early as 24 hours after the patient's last alcohol consumption). Drug withdrawal must also be considered as a possibility; this can be secondary to β-blocker withdrawal, or opioid or benzodiazepine withdrawal as well. Recent use/abuse of certain recreational drugs, such as cocaine, methamphetamines, or LSD/PCP can all produce exaggerated sympathetic states and patients under the influence of these will present with tachycardia and hypertension.

The surgical procedures most commonly associated with postoperative hypertension are carotid endarterectomy and intracranial procedures. A significant number of patients, especially those with a known history of hypertension, will require pharmacologic blood pressure control in the PACU.

BOX 80.6 Factors Leading to Postoperative Hypertension

- Preoperative hypertension
- Arterial hypoxemia
- Hypervolemia
- Emergence excitement
- Shivering
- Drug rebound
- Increased intracranial pressure
- Increased sympathetic nervous system activity
  - Hypercapnia
  - Pain
  - Agitation
  - Bowel distention
  - Urinary retention

BOX 80.7 Differential Diagnosis of Hypotension in the Postanesthesia Care Unit

- Intravascular volume depletion
  - Persistent fluid losses
  - Ongoing third-space translocation of fluid
  - Bowel preparation
  - Gastrointestinal losses
  - Surgical bleeding
- Increased capillary permeability
  - Sepsis
  - Burns
  - Transfusion-related acute lung injury
- Decreased cardiac output
  - Myocardial ischemia or infarction
  - Cardiomyopathy
  - Valvular disease
  - Pericardial disease
  - Cardiac tamponade
  - Cardiac dysrhythmias
  - Pulmonary embolus
  - Tension pneumothorax
  - Drug induced (β-blockers, calcium channel blockers)
- Decreased vascular tone
  - Sepsis
  - Allergic reactions (anaphylactic, anaphylactoid)
  - Spinal shock (cord injury, iatrogenic high spinal)
  - Adrenal insufficiency

SYSTEMIC HYPOTENSION

Postoperative systemic hypotension may be characterized as (1) hypovolemic (decreased preload), (2) distributive (decreased afterload), (3) cardiogenic (intrinsic pump failure), and/or (4) extracardiac/obstructive. (Box 80.7).

Regardless of the type of shock the patient is in postoperatively, the underlying cause must be identified and treated. Fluids, blood products, and vasopressors can be used as needed to restore intravascular volume and support adequate perfusion while the patient is being assessed or undergoing a subsequent therapeutic procedure.

Hypovolemic (Decreased Preload)

Systemic hypotension in the PACU is often due to decreased intravascular fluid volume and preload, and, as such, it responds favorably to intravenous fluid administration. Common causes of decreased intravascular fluid volume in the immediate postoperative period include ongoing third-space translocation or loss of fluid, inadequate intraoperative fluid replacement (especially in patients who undergo major intraabdominal procedures or preoperative bowel preparation), and loss of sympathetic nervous system tone as a result of neuraxial (spinal or epidural) blockade.

Patients who are in hypovolemic shock often have typical associated clinical characteristics including tachycardia, tachypnea, hypotension, mottled skin (cool, clammy), venous collapse, decreased urine output, and altered mental status. The amount of volume loss tends to dictate clinical signs, as patients seem to be able to tolerate up to a 10% blood volume loss, with tachycardia being the only sign, whereas when patients lose around 40% of their total blood volume, clear signs of shock are evident (lactic acidosis, severe hypotension, reduced cardiac output).

Ongoing bleeding (hemorrhagic shock) should be ruled out in patients with hypotension who have undergone a surgical procedure in which significant blood loss was possible. Regardless of the estimated intraoperative blood loss, the measured blood loss may be inaccurate. If the patient is unstable, then hemoglobin can be measured at the bedside to eliminate laboratory turnover time. In addition, tachycardia may not be a reliable indicator of hypovolemia or anemia (or both) if the patient is taking β-blockers or calcium channel blockers. Non-hemorrhagic hypovolemia leading to hypotension can be a result of skin losses, especially in burn patients, and ascites, as in patients with liver failure or certain cancers (i.e., ovarian), GI fluid losses, secondary to vomiting and/or diarrhea and should be repleted with appropriate fluids as needed.

The potential for local anesthetic toxicity must be considered when assessing perioperative hypotension. Local anesthetics can become systemic secondary to accidental intravascular injection or following an overdose of injected medication +/− rapid absorption. Central nervous system signs, including tinnitus, confusion, altered mental status, and ultimately seizures may not always precede cardiovascular collapse. Once recognized, benzodiazepines should be given to abate seizures and supportive therapy should be instituted immediately to support cardiovascular function. Lipid emulsion therapy (20%) should be initiated, starting with a bolus of 1.5 mL/kg IV over 1 minute followed by a continuous rate of 0.25 mL/kg per minute for 30 minutes. Repeated boluses can be given every 5 minutes if cardiovascular collapse continues.

Distributive (Decreased Afterload)

Distributive shock in the PACU may be the result of a number of physiologic derangements, including iatrogenic sympathectomy, critical illness, allergic reactions, and sepsis. Iatrogenic sympathectomy, secondary to regional anesthetic techniques, is an important cause of hypotension in the perioperative period. A high sympathetic block (to T4) will decrease vascular tone and block the cardio-accelerator fibers. If not treated promptly, then the resulting bradycardia in the presence of severe hypotension can lead to cardiac arrest even in young healthy patients.[80] Vasopressors, including phenylephrine and ephedrine, are pharmacologic treatments of hypotension caused by residual sympathetic nervous system blockade.

Patients who are critically ill may rely on exaggerated sympathetic nervous system tone to maintain systemic blood pressure and heart rate. In these patients, even minimal doses of inhaled anesthetics, opioids, or sedative-hypnotics can decrease sympathetic nervous system tone and produce significant systemic hypotension.

Allergic (anaphylactic or anaphylactoid) reactions may be the cause of hypotension in the PACU. In addition to the sometimes-profound hypotension, patients experiencing an allergic reaction/anaphylaxis often present with an associated rash/hives, bronchospasm/wheezing, stridor, and facial edema. Patients should be treated immediately, with prompt removal of the offending agent if known and still present, steroids (hydrocortisone or methylprednisolone), H1 and H2 blockers, fluids, and vasopressors. Epinephrine is the drug of choice to treat hypotension secondary to an allergic reaction. Increased serum tryptase concentrations confirm the occurrence of an allergic reaction, but an elevated tryptase level does not differentiate anaphylactic from anaphylactoid reactions. The blood specimen for tryptase determination must be obtained within 30 to 120 minutes after the allergic reaction, but the results may not be available for several days. Neuromuscular blocking drugs are the most common cause of anaphylactic reactions in the surgical setting followed by latex, antibiotics, and other rare substances (Table 80.2).[81-83]

If sepsis is suspected as the cause of hypotension in the PACU, then blood should be obtained for culture, and empiric antibiotic therapy should be initiated as soon as possible. Urinary tract manipulation and biliary tract procedures are examples of interventions that can result in a sudden onset of severe systemic hypotension secondary to sepsis. Although fluid resuscitation is the most important immediate intervention, pressor support is often required—at least transiently. Norepinephrine is the pressor of choice in septic patients. Vasopressin deficiency has been shown to contribute to vasodilation in septic shock,[84] and low-dose vasopressin (0.01-0.05 unit/min) improves mean arterial pressure, decreases catecholamine vasopressor requirement, and may spare renal function in severe septic shock.[85]

TABLE 80.2 Drugs Involved in Perioperative Anaphylaxis

Substance	Incidence of Perioperative Anaphylaxis (%)	Most Commonly Associated With Perioperative Anaphylaxis
Muscle relaxants	69.2	Succinylcholine, rocuronium, atracurium
Natural rubber latex	12.1	Latex gloves, tourniquets, Foley catheters
Antibiotics	8	Penicillin and other β-lactams
Hypnotics	3.7	Propofol, thiopental
Colloids	2.7	Dextran, gelatin
Opioids	1.4	Morphine, meperidine
Other substances	2.9	Propacetamol, aprotinin, chymopapain, protamine, bupivacaine

From Hepner DL, Castells MC. Anaphylaxis during the perioperative period. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97:1381–1395.

Cardiogenic (Intrinsic Pump Failure)

Significant cardiogenic causes of postoperative hypotension include myocardial ischemia and infarction, cardiomyopathy, cardiac tamponade, and cardiac arrhythmias. The differential diagnosis depends on the surgical procedure and the patient's preoperative cardiac risk and medical condition. To determine the cause of the hypotension, central venous pressure monitoring, echocardiography, and, rarely, pulmonary artery catheter monitoring may be required.

Patients can have a similar clinical appearance to those in hypovolemic shock; however one of the cardinal signs here is indication of relative fluid overload/congestive heart failure, such as distended central and peripheral veins, evidence of pulmonary edema, and a possible S3 heart sound on exam. These patients have elevated filling pressures in conjunction with reduced/impaired cardiac output. Cardiogenic shock can ensue when greater than 40% of the myocardium is damaged. Patients with underlying ischemic heart disease, especially if they are undergoing an emergent or high-risk procedure, are notably at increased risk of experiencing an adverse cardiac event. It should also be noted that the mortality rate for those in cardiogenic shock is remarkably high, reaching up to 70%. Patients may require immediate postoperative placement of an intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP), cardiac catheterization and stenting, echocardiography, or a surgical procedure for a mechanical/valvular abnormality.

Extracardiac/Obstructive Shock

Impairment in diastolic filling which ultimately results in decreased preload can lead to shock if not promptly recognized and treated. IVC compression (vena cava obstruction, intrathoracic tumors), tension pneumothorax, cardiac tamponade, constrictive pericarditis, and even PEEP/mechanical ventilation, can lead to diminished filling and compromise venous return. Intrathoracic tumors and tension pneumothoraces typically have similar clinical presentations to those in hypovolemic shock secondary to obstruction of the great veins, namely tachycardia and hypotension, possibly with associated distended neck veins. Patients in tamponade are also tachycardic and hypotensive; if they have indwelling invasive monitors, one typically can observe the "equalization of pressures" (increased and relatively equal LV and RV diastolic pressures, PAOP, CVP).

Acute pulmonary hypertension, pulmonary embolism, and aortic dissections result in impaired systolic contraction of the left and/or right ventricle secondary to increased afterload. These patients can present in either LV or RV failure, or even both.

Patients may need to undergo emergent needle thoracostomy and chest tube placement for a tension pneumothorax, a pericardiocentesis for tamponade, or thrombolysis/embolectomy for a pulmonary embolism.

Myocardial Ischemia: Evaluation and Treatment

Over 1 million people die every year after noncardiac surgery, with myocardial infarction being the most common cardiovascular complication.[86] The incidence of major adverse cardiac events depends on the number of inherent patient risk factors. According to the Revised Goldman Cardiac Risk Index, the risk of an adverse cardiac event can be as high as 5.4% after noncardiac surgery in patients who possess three or more risk factors.[87] Myocardial ischemia is rarely accompanied by chest pain in the recovery room secondary to the fact that patients are still emerging from anesthesia in the immediate postoperative period and are also still under the influence of residual medication effects, especially analgesics. In a study by Mangano et al., 94% of postoperative ischemic episodes were silent.[88]

EVALUATION

Patients who complain of chest pain in the recovery room should have a 12-lead ECG performed and a troponin level drawn. A physical exam and further workup, as indicated, should be done in order to rule out other causes for chest pain (e.g., pulmonary embolus, aortic dissection, tension pneumothorax, cardiac tamponade, esophageal rupture, etc.). ECG changes, such as ST-segment changes, may not necessarily represent myocardial ischemia (especially in younger patients with no known cardiac disease and no cardiac risk factors), however, should associated signs and symptoms point toward cardiac ischemia, further workup is certainly warranted.

Presently, myocardial ischemia after non-cardiac surgery (MINS) has been established as an entity in itself. MINS is defined as elevated postoperative troponin levels without any clinical symptoms or any changes in the ECG, provided there is no other nonischemic cause for the elevated troponin level (e.g., chronic troponin elevation, pulmonary embolism, sepsis, rapid atrial fibrillation). Elevated troponin levels are independently associated with poor outcomes.[89] An international prospective cohort study found that postoperative elevated troponin after noncardiac surgery was a strong independent predictor of 30-day mortality.[90]

The most recent guidelines established by the American Heart Association/American College of Cardiology (AHA/ACC) recommend obtaining a troponin level for all patients who present with ECG changes suggestive of ischemia or exhibit typical ischemic chest pain after surgery. Furthermore, they recommend drawing serial troponin levels for stable patients after vascular or intermediate risk surgery.[91] A recent multicenter study investigated the association between postoperative high-sensitivity troponin (hsTnT) levels with myocardial injury and 30-day mortality after noncardiac surgery.[92] The authors confirmed that postoperative myocardial injury is most commonly silent, as 93% of patients with MINS did not experience any symptoms. Furthermore, they found that elevated hsTnT levels without an ischemic feature in the first 3 days after noncardiac surgery were associated with a significantly increased 30-day mortality. These newer studies may even warrant a more liberal approach to drawing postoperative hsTnT levels in the PACU.

TREATMENT

Once the diagnosis of myocardial ischemia/injury has been made, the primary surgical team should immediately be notified and a cardiology consult should be obtained.

After ruling out other life-threatening causes, the patients should receive oxygen, and blood pressure and heart rate should be controlled. If there are no absolute contraindications to their administration, the patient should be given nitroglycerin, a β blocker, a statin, and aspirin. Pain and anxiety should be treated with an opioid and a benzodiazepine, and anemia should be corrected, if present. One should be prepared for further decompensation of the patient and have a code cart readily available. Should the patient become hemodynamically unstable, echocardiography may help in guiding next steps (e.g., placing an IABP, emergent interventions).

Depending on the acuity of the situation, further interventions like fibrinolysis, percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI), or revascularization should be considered and discussed. However, since these patients just had surgery, there are conflicting goals in terms of postoperative bleeding versus coronary blood flow. A mutual approach between surgeon, cardiologist, anesthesiologist, and patient should be chosen to determine the best course of action.

Cardiac Arrhythmias

Postoperative cardiac arrhythmias are frequently transient and multifactorial. Reversible causes of cardiac arrhythmias in the perioperative period include hypoxemia, hypoventilation and associated hypercapnia, endogenous or exogenous catecholamines, electrolyte abnormalities, acidemia, fluid overload, anemia, and substance withdrawal.[93]

TACHYCARDIA

Common causes of tachycardia in the PACU include pain, agitation, hypoventilation with associated hypoxia and hypercapnia, hypovolemia, PONV, and shivering. Less common but serious causes include hemorrhage; cardiogenic, septic, or anaphylactic shock; pulmonary embolism; pneumothorax; thyroid storm; and malignant hyperthermia.

When evaluating postoperative tachycardia, the most important question is whether or not the patient is hemodynamically stable. If the patient is stable, oxygen should be administered, a 12-lead ECG obtained, and the underlying rhythm determined. Unstable patients typically present with a heart rate greater than 150 bpm, are hypotensive, and may exhibit other signs of decreased perfusion, for example, altered mental status, chest pain, or shock. These patients should undergo immediate synchronized cardioversion. There are various different causes of tachyarrhythmia in the PACU which warrant individualized approaches regarding the medications to administer and the energy doses to use for cardioversion. A comprehensive overview can be found in the American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care 2015.[94]

BRADYCARDIA

Bradycardia in the PACU is often iatrogenic. Drug-related causes include β-blocker therapy, anticholinesterase reversal of neuromuscular blockade, opioid administration, and treatment with clonidine or dexmedetomidine. Procedure- and patient-related causes include bowel distention, increased intracranial or intraocular pressure, hypoxia, hypothermia, hypothyroidism, and spinal anesthesia. A high spinal block can impede the cardioaccelerator fibers originating from T1 through T4, resulting in severe bradycardia. The ensuing sympathectomy and possible intravascular fluid volume depletion along with decreased venous return can produce sudden bradycardia and cardiac arrest, even in young healthy patients.

When evaluating postoperative bradycardia, vital signs and hemodynamic stability should be immediately assessed. Underlying causes should be corrected, if possible. Asymptomatic bradycardia may not need to be treated at all, however, if the patient is unstable and hypotensive, or shows signs of shock, altered mental status, ischemic chest discomfort, or acute heart failure, urgent intervention is indicated. According to the ACLS guidelines, first-line treatment is atropine IV. If this is ineffective, transcutaneous pacing or initiation of a vasopressor (dopamine, epinephrine infusion) is indicated. Eventually, expert consultation and transvenous pacing should be considered.[94]

ATRIAL ARRHYTHMIAS

The most common atrial arrhythmia is atrial fibrillation, which affects approximately 4% of patients following major noncardiac surgery.[95] The overall incidence of new postoperative atrial arrhythmias may be as high as 10% in this patient population. The incidence is even higher after cardiac and thoracic procedures when the cardiac arrhythmia is often attributed to atrial irritation.[96] The risk of postoperative atrial fibrillation is increased by preexisting cardiac risk factors, positive fluid balance, electrolyte abnormalities, and oxygen desaturation.[97] These new-onset atrial arrhythmias are not benign as they are associated with a longer hospital stay and increased mortality.[98,99]

Control of the ventricular response rate is the immediate goal in the treatment of new-onset atrial fibrillation. Hemodynamically unstable patients may require prompt electrical cardioversion, but most patients can be treated pharmacologically with an intravenous β-adrenergic blocker or calcium channel blocker.[100] If hemodynamic instability is a concern, the short-acting β-blocker esmolol can be considered. Rate control with these agents is often enough to chemically cardiovert the postoperative patient whose arrhythmia may be catecholamine driven. If the goal of therapy is chemical cardioversion, an amiodarone load can be initiated in the PACU with the knowledge that QT prolongation, bradycardia, and hypotension may accompany the intravenous infusion of this drug.

VENTRICULAR ARRHYTHMIAS

Premature ventricular contractions (PVCs) and ventricular bigeminy commonly occur in the PACU. PVCs most often reflect increased sympathetic nervous system stimulation that may accompany tracheal intubation, pain, and transient hypercapnia. They commonly resolve on their own, but this can be facilitated by administering analgesics and ensuring proper ventilation. True ventricular tachycardia is rare and is indicative of underlying cardiac pathology. In the case of torsades de pointes (polymorphic ventricular tachycardia), underlying QT prolongation on the ECG may be intrinsic or drug related. The most commonly administered QT prolonging drugs in PACU are 5-HT3 receptor antagonists (e.g., ondansetron, dolasetron), haloperidol, droperidol, albuterol, methadone, and amiodarone. Treatment with 1 to 2 g of magnesium IV over 5 minutes should be initiated and potentially repeated, if necessary.

TREATMENT

Early postoperative arrhythmias often require immediate electrolyte correction as well as pharmacologic and nonpharmacologic interventions.[101] In general, the urgency of treatment of a cardiac arrhythmia depends on the physiologic consequences of the arrhythmia, basically hypotension, cardiac ischemia, or both. Tachyarrhythmias decrease coronary perfusion time and increase myocardial oxygen consumption. Their impact depends on the patient's underlying cardiac function, and they are most harmful in patients with coronary artery disease. Bradycardia has a more deleterious effect in patients with a fixed stroke volume, such as infants and patients with restrictive pericardial disease or cardiac tamponade. For the most part, treatment relies on identifying and correcting the underlying cause (i.e., hypoxemia or electrolyte abnormalities).[102] The possible role of myocardial ischemia or the occurrence of pulmonary embolism must be considered when contemplating treatment options.

Renal Dysfunction

The differential diagnosis of postoperative renal dysfunction includes prerenal, intrarenal, and postrenal etiologies (Box 80.8). Frequently, the cause of renal insufficiency in the postoperative period is multifactorial, with an intraoperative insult exacerbating a preexisting renal insufficiency.[103-106] In the PACU, diagnostic efforts should focus on the identification and treatment of the readily reversible causes of oliguria (i.e., urine output less than 0.5 mL/kg/h). For example, urinary catheter obstruction or dislodgment is easily remedied and often overlooked (see Box 80.8). When appropriate, one should confer with the surgical team regarding the details of the surgical procedure (urologic or gynecologic) to rule out anatomic obstruction or disruption of the ureters, bladder, or urethra.

Patient-related factors play a role in the development of acute kidney injury (AKI) in the postoperative period. Comorbidities, such as preexisting renal insufficiency (CKD), diabetes mellitus, hypertension, morbid obesity, history of steroid use, male sex, and old age, are a number of

BOX 80.8 **Postoperative Oliguria**

Prerenal

Hypovolemia (bleeding, sepsis, third-space fluid loss, inadequate volume resuscitation)
Hepatorenal syndrome
Low cardiac output
Renal vascular obstruction or disruption
Intraabdominal hypertension

Renal

Ischemia (acute tubular necrosis)
Radiographic contrast dyes
Rhabdomyolysis
Tumor lysis
Hemolysis

Postrenal

Surgical injury to the ureters
Obstruction of the ureters with clots or stones
Mechanical (urinary catheter obstruction or malposition)

issues that should be taken into account when determining whether a patient is at an increased risk of perioperative renal dysfunction. In addition to nonmodifiable patient risk factors, the surgical procedure itself also comprises an independent risk factor in the development of perioperative renal dysfunction, with cardiac surgery, emergency surgery, and "major" surgery (vascular, transplant, thoracic) all serving to increase the probability.

A number of perioperative events may alter renal perfusion. Preoperative or intraoperative angiography can result in ischemic injury, secondary to renal vasoconstriction and direct renal tubular injury. Perioperative volume depletion can exacerbate hepatorenal syndrome or acute tubular necrosis caused by sepsis. The surgical procedure itself can alter renal vascular patency, decreasing renal perfusion. Finally, increased intraabdominal pressure (IAP) can impair renal perfusion.

Judicious intraoperative fluid management is of utmost importance both during the surgical procedure and in the postoperative period. Hemodynamics must be monitored to ensure that relative intravascular volume is sufficient to allow for tissue perfusion and avoidance of organ hypoxia and dysfunction. Crystalloid solutions are ubiquitous in the operating room and PACU. Balanced solutions (lactated Ringers, Plasmalyte) may be superior to chloride-only containing solutions (NaCl), as hyperchloremia is associated with the development of AKI.[107] A study published in Critical Care in 2014 revealed that chloride-liberal fluid administration was a risk factor in the development of postoperative AKI in liver transplant patients.[108] In general, hydroxylethyl starch solutions should be avoided, as there lacks any clear benefit to their use.[109]

A recent study published in Anesthesiology demonstrated that the risk of developing postoperative AKI was increased when the MAP was less than 60 for greater than 20 minutes or less than 55 for greater than 10 minutes.[110] As stated above, given the changes in renal autoregulation that occur over time in patients with hypertension, MAP goals should be tailored to each patient. Vasopressors may be needed as an adjunct to fluid therapy in hypotensive patients. To date, there is no evidence that one vasopressor is superior to another. It should be noted that even though low-dose dopamine can increase urine output, it is no longer deemed to be renoprotective and is not endorsed as a treatment strategy in AKI. Furthermore, vasodilator therapy (fenoldopam, atrial natriuretic peptide) is also not recommended in AKI prevention or treatment.

OLIGURIA

Intravascular Volume Depletion

The most common cause of oliguria in the immediate postoperative period is intravascular volume depletion. If the patient also demonstrates signs of hypovolemia, such as tachycardia and hypotension, a fluid challenge (500-1000 mL of crystalloid) is usually effective in restoring urine output. A CBC should be drawn if ongoing surgical blood loss is suspected and repeated fluid boluses are required to maintain adequate urine output. Patients with a history of hypertension may require higher MAPs to produce adequate urine. Their kidneys may not be perfused adequately with the standard "MAP > 65." In this patient population, it is imperative to review their baseline blood pressures and target a MAP greater than 75 mm Hg to ensure renal perfusion. Volume resuscitation to maximize renal perfusion is particularly important to prevent ongoing ischemic injury and the development of acute tubular necrosis. However, urine output does not predict the likelihood of developing postoperative AKI.

If a fluid challenge is contraindicated or oliguria persists, then assessment of intravascular fluid volume status and cardiac function is indicated to differentiate hypovolemia from sepsis and low cardiac output states. Fractional excretion of sodium can be useful in determining the adequacy of renal perfusion, assuming that diuretics have not been given. However, the diagnosis of prerenal azotemia will not differentiate hypovolemia, congestive heart failure, or hepatorenal syndrome. Further evaluation with central venous monitoring or echocardiography, or both, may facilitate the differential diagnosis.

Postoperative Urinary Retention

Postoperative urinary retention can cause bladder overdistention and permanent detrusor damage. Ultrasonography can measure bladder volume and identify urinary retention in the PACU.[111] Using this technique, Keita and associates attempted to identify patients at high risk by measuring bladder volume in 313 adult inpatients on admission to and before discharge from the PACU. They collected data on age, sex, history of urinary retention, intraoperative administration of anticholinergic agents, amount of intraoperative fluid administration, and intravenous use of morphine. Urinary retention was defined as bladder volume greater than 600 mL in conjunction with an inability to void within 30 minutes. In this study, the incidence of postoperative urinary retention in the PACU was 16%. The most significant predictive factors were age older than 50 years, intraoperative fluid more than 750 mL, and bladder volume on entry to the PACU greater than 270 mL.[112] This study argues for the use of ultrasound to identify patients at high risk for possible urinary retention.

CONTRAST NEPHROPATHY

Patients who have undergone angiography +/− intravascular stent placement for carotid stenosis, thoracic and abdominal aortic aneurysms, peripheral vascular disease, and cerebral aneurysms are increasing in numbers in our PACUs. As a result, contrast nephropathy should always be considered in the differential diagnosis of postoperative renal dysfunction and prompt diagnosis is crucial, as contrast nephropathy, in general, is one of the reversible causes of postoperative AKI. The creatinine tends to increase within 24 to 48 hours following the administration of contrast media, however return to the patient's baseline typically occurs within one week. Perioperative attention to adequate hydration is indicated in any patient who has received an intravenous contrast agent. Aggressive hydration with a balanced crystalloid solution is the single most effective means of protection against contrast nephropathy. Alkalinization of the urine with a sodium bicarbonate infusion and Mucomyst are sometimes used as well; however, beneficial evidence of these therapies is lacking and not well established.[113]

INTRAABDOMINAL HYPERTENSION

Intraabdominal hypertension (IAH) should be considered in any patient with oliguria and a tense abdomen on examination after abdominal surgery.[114,115] Elevated IAP can impede renal perfusion and lead to renal ischemia and postoperative renal dysfunction. Normal IAP in a patient who is not obese is approximately 5 mm Hg. Intraabdominal hypertension is graded into four categories: I: 12 to 15 mm Hg; II: 16 to 20 mm Hg; III: 21 to 25 mm Hg; and IV: greater than 25 mm Hg. Abdominal compartment syndrome is defined as an IAP greater than 20 mm Hg with or without an abdominal perfusion pressure less than 50 mm Hg.[116] Abdominal compartment syndrome (IAP usually >25 mm Hg) should be considered in patients with IAH that are exhibiting signs of new end organ dysfunction. In a prospective study of patients undergoing major abdominal surgery, intraabdominal hypertension accounted for 40% of new-onset renal insufficiency. In this study, postoperative renal impairment was independently associated with four factors: hypotension, sepsis, older age, and increased abdominal pressure.[117]

Elevation of IAP impairs venous drainage from the kidney, secondary to the increased vascular resistance that ensues when the renal vein is compressed. This cascade of events is responsible for the renal dysfunction that ultimately arises. When IAP reaches 15 mm Hg, oliguria tends to develop, whereas anuria is not common until pressures reach approximately 30 mm Hg. Management and treatment are mainly supportive (limiting extraneous fluids); however in severe cases, surgical decompression of the abdomen may be required.

Bladder pressure, an indirect assessment of IAP, should be measured in patients in whom intraabdominal hypertension is suspected to ensure the initiation of prompt intervention to relieve the pressure and therefore restore renal perfusion. Bladder pressure is measured at end expiration with the patient in the supine position and in the absence of abdominal muscle contractions. As with arterial pressure measurements, the transducer is placed in the midaxillary line.[117]

RHABDOMYOLYSIS

Rhabdomyolysis may complicate the postoperative course of patients who have suffered major crush or thermal injury. Patients may complain of myalgias, abdominal pain, nausea, and weakness. Myoglobinuria may be present and creatine kinase (CK) levels are elevated. The incidence is also significantly increased in morbidly obese patients undergoing bariatric surgery. Rhabdomyolysis has been reported to occur in 22.7% of 66 consecutive patients undergoing laparoscopic bariatric surgery.[118-121] Risk factors include increased BMI and the length of the surgery. Patient history and the operative course should guide the decision to measure creatine phosphokinase in the PACU.[119] Early, aggressive hydration to maintain urine output is the mainstay of treatment, as hypovolemia only serves to further intensify the impending renal failure secondary to renal ischemia and tubular obstruction from the heme casts. Electrolyte abnormalities, including hyperkalemia, hyperphosphatemia, and hypocalcemia must be detected and corrected immediately. Loop diuretics can be used to flush the renal tubules and to avoid fluid overload. The infusion of mannitol to enhance the elimination of myoglobin casts from the renal tubules and bicarbonate to protect against myoglobin toxicity is commonly practiced but may not provide further benefit. In a study of more than 2000 trauma patients with rhabdomyolysis, the infusion of bicarbonate and mannitol did not further decrease the incidence of acute renal failure.[121] In severe cases, an attempt can be made to remove myoglobin by continuous renal replacement therapy. Unlike conventional hemodialysis filters that do not remove circulating myoglobin, high-flux membranes can be effective. Continuous renal replacement modes typically use high-flux membranes. Additionally, convection (i.e., the mechanism of solute removal in continuous hemofiltration) removes larger molecular weight solutes than diffusion (i.e., the mechanism of solute removal in conventional hemodialysis).[122]

Postoperative Hypothermia and Shivering

Postoperative hypothermia, defined as a core temperature less than 36°C, is a detrimental and unpleasant condition that can occur after general and neuraxial anesthesia. According to the American Society of Anesthesiologists, the patient's temperature should be measured within 15 minutes after anesthesia end time and ideally be at least 36°C.[123] Postoperative shivering also often occurs after general and neuraxial anesthesia. The incidence of postoperative shivering may be as high as 66% after general anesthesia.[124] Identified risk factors include young age, endoprosthetic surgery, and core hypothermia.[125]

MECHANISM

Postoperative hypothermia occurs secondary to heat loss during surgery. Underlying mechanisms are radiation, convection, evaporation, and conduction.[126] Postoperative shivering is usually, but not always, associated with hypothermia. Although thermoregulatory mechanisms can explain shivering in the hypothermic patient, a number of different mechanisms have been proposed to explain shivering in normothermic patients. One proposed mechanism is based on the observation that the brain and spinal cord do not recover simultaneously from general anesthesia. The more rapid recovery of spinal cord function is thought to result in uninhibited spinal reflexes manifested as clonic activity. This theory is supported by the fact that doxapram, a central nervous system stimulant, is somewhat effective in abolishing postoperative shivering. Other proposed mechanisms include the action of kappa opioid, N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA), and 5-hydroxytryptamine receptors. The higher incidence of postanesthetic shivering in patients who receive high-dose remifentanil is thought to be by the same mechanism that causes hyperalgesia in these patients—sudden opioid withdrawal resulting in the stimulation of NMDA receptors.[127] Additional support for this theory comes from the same authors who found that a small dose of intraoperative ketamine reduced the incidence of remifentanil-induced postanesthetic shivering.[128] Tramadol, a weak μ-opioid receptor agonist, and norepinephrine and serotonin reuptake inhibitor, has been shown to be effective in preventing postoperative shivering while also contributing to analgesia.[129]

TREATMENT

Intervention includes the identification and treatment of hypothermia if present. Accurate core body temperatures can be most easily obtained at the tympanic membrane. Axillary, rectal, and nasopharyngeal temperature measurements are less accurate and may underestimate core temperature. Forced air warmers are used to actively warm the hypothermic patient. A number of opioids, ondansetron,[130] clonidine,[131] and ketamine[132] have been shown to be effective in abolishing shivering once it starts. Of those, meperidine, 12.5-25 mg IV, is most commonly used in adults. The intraoperative infusion of dexmedetomidine has been shown to be an effective prophylactic measure.[133]

CLINICAL EFFECTS

In addition to significant patient discomfort, so-called thermal discomfort, postoperative shivering increases oxygen consumption, CO_2 production, and sympathetic tone. It is associated with increased cardiac output, heart rate, systemic blood pressure, and intraocular pressure. Patients who are hypothermic on arrival in the PACU should be actively warmed to avoid these immediate complications as well as delayed consequences of hypothermia. Mild to moderate hypothermia (33°C-35°C) inhibits platelet function, coagulation factor activity, and drug metabolism. It exacerbates postoperative bleeding, prolongs neuromuscular blockade, and may delay awakening. Whereas these immediate consequences are associated with a prolonged PACU stay,[134] long-term deleterious effects include an increased incidence of myocardial ischemia and myocardial infarction, delayed wound healing, and increased perioperative mortality.

Postoperative Nausea and Vomiting

Without prophylactic intervention, roughly one third of patients who undergo inhalational anesthesia will develop PONV (range, 10%-80%).[135,136] The consequences of PONV include delayed discharge from the PACU, unanticipated hospital admission, increased incidence of pulmonary aspiration, and significant postoperative discomfort. The ability to identify high-risk patients for prophylactic intervention can significantly improve the quality of patient care and satisfaction in the PACU. From a patient's perspective, PONV may be more uncomfortable than postoperative pain.

PREVENTION AND TREATMENT

Prophylactic measures to prevent PONV include modification of anesthetic technique and pharmacologic intervention. In a randomized controlled multicenter multifactorial trial, Apfel and associates studied the efficacy of six prophylactic interventions in high-risk patients (PONV risk > 40%).[135] Interventions were both pharmacologic and technique related. Pharmacologic intervention included droperidol, 1.25 mg; dexamethasone, 4 mg; or ondansetron, 4 mg. Anesthetic intervention included propofol in lieu of volatile anesthetic, nitrogen in lieu of nitrous oxide, or remifentanil in lieu of fentanyl. More than 4000 patients were assigned to 1 of 64 possible combinations. The study found that each of the three antiemetics reduced the relative risk of PONV to the same degree (26%). Together, propofol (19% decrease) and nitrogen (12% decrease) reduced the relative risk of PONV to a similar degree.

Although prophylactic measures to prevent PONV are more effective than rescue measures, a subset of patients will require treatment in the PACU even after appropriate prophylactic treatment. There is no convincing evidence that any of the serotonin receptor antagonists commonly prescribed at this time are more effective than any others. Box 80.9 lists the different classes of antiemetic medications commonly prescribed for prophylaxis as well as treatment of PONV in the PACU. If an adequate dose of antiemetic given at the appropriate time is ineffective, simply giving more of the same class of drug in the PACU is unlikely to produce any significant benefit. Therefore, it is not recommended to redose any medication of the same class within 6 hours after the initial dose. Specific antiemetic medications such as scopolamine, dexamethasone, and aprepitant should not be redosed at all.[136]

The likelihood of a patient experiencing PONV depends on several risk factors and increases with the number of those factors that the patient possesses. Apfel et al. identified female gender, non-smoker, history of PONV/motion

BOX 80.9 Commonly Used Antiemetics (Adult Doses)

Anticholinergics

Scopolamine (1.5 mg) transdermal patch to a hairless area behind the ear before surgery (remove 24 h postoperatively)

NK-1 receptor antagonist

Aprepitant (40 mg per os within 3 h prior to anesthesia)

Corticosteroids

Dexamethasone (4 mg IV after induction of anesthesia)

Antihistamines

Hydroxyzine (12.5-25 mg IM)
Diphenhydramine (25-50 mg IV)

Phenothiazines

Promethazine (12.5-25 mg IM)
Prochlorperazine (5-10 mg IV)

Butyrophenones

Droperidol (0.625-1.25 mg IV); monitor the ECG for prolongation of the QT interval for 2-3 h after administration; preoperative 12-lead ECG recommended
Haloperidol (0.5-<2 mg IM/IV)

Prokinetic

Metoclopramide (10-20 mg IV; avoid if any possibility of gastrointestinal obstruction)

Serotonin Receptor Antagonists

Ondansetron (4 mg IV 30 min before the conclusion of surgery)

Vasopressors

Ephedrine (25 mg IM, combined with hydroxyzine, 25 mg)

sickness, and the need for postoperative opioids as independent risk factors. Their group has created a simplified risk score which predicts a likelihood to develop PONV of 10% for patients with no risk factor, 20% with 1 risk factor, 40% with 2 risk factors, 60% with 3 risk factors, and 80% with all four risk factors. More recently, the same author identified young age, defined as age below 50 years, as another independent risk factor for postdischarge nausea and vomiting.[137] The Society of Ambulatory Anesthesia published "Consensus Guidelines for the Management of Postoperative Nausea and Vomiting,"[136] which provides a great overview of the topic. The Prevention of PONV was added to the Physician Quality Reporting System of the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. The goal is to give at least two different antiemetics to every patient older than 18 years undergoing any procedure under inhalational general anesthesia, if they have at least three risk factors for PONV.[138]

Emend (aprepitant), a substance P/neurokinin 1 receptor antagonist, may be effective in very high-risk patients and refractory cases. The recommended dose is 40 mg by mouth within 3 hours prior to anesthesia. Initial clinical trials have shown the drug to be effective for up to 48 hours after surgery.[139]

Delirium

Postoperative delirium (POD) is defined as an acute and fluctuating alteration of mental state of reduced awareness and disturbance of attention. POD often starts in the recovery room and can occur up to 5 days after surgery. One study found that many patients who were diagnosed with POD on the floor already had POD in the recovery room. The incidence of POD depends on peri- and intraoperative risk factors and is highly variable, for example, a meta-analysis of 26 studies of POD found an incidence ranging from 4.0% to 53.3% in hip fracture patients.[140] Multiple studies across different surgical specialties in elective and emergency cases have shown that POD is associated with worse surgical outcomes, increased hospital length of stay, functional decline, higher rates of institutionalization, higher mortality, and higher cost and resource utilization.[141] It is important to distinguish between the hyperactive and the hypoactive subtype of delirium, since the latter may easily go unnoticed, be therefore untreated, and potentially linked to a worse outcome.[142]

RISK FACTORS

POD has been linked to multiple risk factors. These are commonly distinguished between predisposing factors (inherent to the patient) and precipitating factors (triggering the onset of delirium). Major predisposing patient risk factors include (1) age greater than 65 years, (2) cognitive impairment, (3) severe illness or comorbidity burden, (4) hearing or vision impairment, and (5) presence of infection.[143] In the perioperative context, the performed surgical procedure acts as a physiologic stressor with the extent of surgery having a major impact on the likelihood of developing delirium. Risk assessment is a shared clinical responsibility and should ideally be implemented in a perioperative clinical pathway.

PROPHYLAXIS AND MANAGEMENT

Patients at high risk of POD should ideally be identified prior to entering the operating room by using a delirium risk screening tool. Patients who screen positive should potentially go on a delirium reduction pathway to decrease their likelihood of developing delirium in the postoperative phase. Once in the recovery room, any deliriogenic medications should be avoided (e.g., anticholinergics, sedative-hypnotics, meperidine), unless the specific needs for any of these medications outweigh their potential risks (e.g., benzodiazepines for benzodiazepine or alcohol withdrawal).[144] Simple measures, such as frequent reorientation, sensory enhancement (ensuring glasses, hearing aids, or listening amplifiers are available upon arrival in the PACU), pain control, cognitive stimulation, simple communication standards and approaches to prevent the escalation of behaviors, and keeping the patients in their circadian rhythm can decrease the incidence of developing POD by 30% to 40%.[144] Screening for delirium in the PACU should be performed before the patient leaves the unit (e.g., with the Nursing Delirium Screening Scale or Confusion Assessment Method score).

If prevention has failed and the patient screens positive, prompt evaluation of possible precipitating factors should occur. These include uncontrolled pain, hypoxia, pneumonia, infection (wound, indwelling catheter and blood stream, urinary tract, sepsis), electrolyte abnormalities, urinary retention, fecal impaction, medications, and hypoglycemia.[141] Treatment of causative factors and symptoms has a major impact on reducing the duration of delirium and should therefore be initiated immediately. Generally, multicomponent nonpharmacologic interventions should be used for all delirious patients (e.g., frequent reorientation, calm environment, eliminating restraint use, familiar objects in the room, bringing glasses and hearing aids to the patient). Pharmacologic interventions should be reserved and only used in the lowest effective dose for agitated delirious patients when other interventions have failed and the patients pose a substantial harm to themselves or others. The medication of choice in this case is haloperidol starting at 0.5 to 1 mg IM/IV. Alternatively, atypical antipsychotics like risperidone, olanzapine, quetiapine, or ziprasidone can also be considered.[141]

Emergence Excitement

Persistent POD should not be confused with emergence “excitement,” a transient confusional state that is associated with emergence from general anesthesia. Emergence excitement is common in children, with more than 30% experiencing agitation or delirium at some period during their PACU stay. It usually occurs within the first 10 minutes of recovery but can have onset later in children who are brought to the recovery room asleep. The peak age of emergence excitement in[145] children is between 2 and 4 years. Unlike delirium, emergence excitement typically resolves quickly and is followed by uneventful recovery.[146]

In children, emergence excitement is most frequently associated with rapid “wake up” from inhalational anesthesia. Although it has also been reported after isoflurane[147] and, to a lesser extent, halothane[148] anesthesia, it is most often associated with the less-soluble vapors sevoflurane[149] and desflurane. Several studies suggest that the incidence of emergence excitement is more a reflection of the anesthetic agent used rather than the rapidity of emergence.[150] In studies comparing sevoflurane and propofol, propofol resulted in a much smoother awakening than sevoflurane despite rapid emergence. Furthermore, delaying emergence by a slow reduction in the inhaled concentration of sevoflurane did not reduce the incidence of emergence excitement.[151]

In addition to rapid emergence, the literature supports a number of possible etiologic factors, including intrinsic characteristics of the anesthetic, postoperative pain, type of surgery, age, preoperative anxiety, underlying temperament, and adjunct medications. Awareness of these contributors allows one to identify and treat children who are at increased risk.[146]

Simple preventative measures should be taken to treat children at risk. These include reducing preoperative anxiety, treating postoperative pain, and providing a stress-free environment for recovery. Medications that have been used to prevent and treat emergence agitation/delirium in children include midazolam,[152] clonidine,[153-155] dexmedetomidine,[156,157] fentanyl,[158,159] ketorolac,[160] and physostigmine.[161] In children, the most common preoperative anxiolytic, midazolam, has produced conflicting data. Although midazolam is generally associated with a decrease in the incidence and duration of POD, not all studies are in agreement. In studies in which it has not been shown to be beneficial, it is unclear whether midazolam is an independent factor or merely a reflection of other preoperative variables.[162]

The incidence of emergence excitement in adults is significantly less than in children. It is estimated to be between 3% and 4.7%.[163] One study found that significant surgical- and anesthesia-related risk factors included preoperative medication with midazolam (OR 1.9), breast surgery (OR 5.2), abdominal surgery (OR 3.2), and, to a much lesser extent, length of surgery.[163]

Delayed Awakening

Even after prolonged surgery and anesthesia, a response to stimulation in 60 to 90 minutes should occur.[164] If emergence has not taken place at that point, it is important to consider multiple different reasons as the possible underlying cause. Residual drug effects are the most frequent cause of delayed emergence and may occur after too much anesthetic has been given or in a patient who is susceptible to the side effects of certain medications due to age, underlying disease, or metabolic derangements. The most common drugs to consider are benzodiazepines, opioids, and neuromuscular blocking drugs, however, after a very long anesthetic, propofol and volatile anesthetics can also cause a delay in emergence. Furthermore, acute alcohol or illicit drug intoxication can be other culprits. Another often overlooked drug effect is the central anticholinergic syndrome (CAS). Several drugs used during anesthesia can block the central cholinergic neurotransmission and therefore delay the wakeup.[165] Metabolic disturbances such as hypothermia (<33°C), electrolyte imbalances (e.g., hyponatremia, hypercalcemia, hypermagnesemia), hypo- or hyperglycemia, as well as underlying metabolic diseases (e.g., liver, kidney, or thyroid abnormalities) can delay emergence after anesthesia. Finally, neurologic complications such as cerebral hypoxia, seizures (with consecutive postictal state), elevated ICP, as well as any intracerebral event (hemorrhage, thrombosis, embolus) should be considered.[166,167]

In any patient who presents with a delayed emergence, airway, breathing, and circulation should be assessed. It is important to confirm that all anesthetic agents are discontinued (including residual agents left in the IV tubing). The patient’s body temperature should be checked upon arrival in the PACU and if hypothermia is present, the patient should be actively rewarmed. A cardiopulmonary as well as a neurologic exam (including pupils, cough and gag reflex, motor/strength) should be performed. The use of a neuromuscular transmission monitor (TOF, ideally TOF-R) is instrumental in detecting residual neuromuscular blockade, which should be reversed (with either neostigmine/glycopyrrolate or sugammadex). If a residual opioid effect is suspected, naloxone in small increments (40 µg every 2 minutes up to 200 µg) can be titrated to effect. Equally, if a residual benzodiazepine effect is suspected, flumazenil in 0.1 to 0.2 mg increments every 1 minute up to 1 mg can be titrated to effect. A blood glucose level should be checked and hypoglycemia should be treated with dextrose, whereas hyperglycemia can be treated with insulin as needed. An ABG and electrolyte panel should be obtained. CO_2 narcosis can be treated with hyperventilation (and potentially intubation), and electrolyte disturbances should be corrected. If none of the above interventions yields any suspicious results, CAS should be considered and physostigmine 1 to 2 mg IV could be administered. At the same time, it is important to rule out any cerebrovascular accident by consulting neurology and obtaining a stat head CT. If the patient still does not emerge, admission to the ICU for further monitoring and serial exams should be initiated.

Discharge Criteria

Although specific PACU discharge criteria may vary, certain general principles are universally applicable (Box 80.10).[2] To summarize, a mandatory minimum stay in the PACU is not required. Patients must be observed until they are no longer at risk for ventilatory depression and their mental status is clear or has returned to baseline. Hemodynamic criteria are based on the patient's baseline hemodynamics without specific systemic blood pressure and heart rate requirements. An assessment and written documentation of the patient's peripheral nerve function on discharge from the PACU may become useful information should a new peripheral neuropathy develop in the later postoperative period.

POSTANESTHESIA SCORING SYSTEMS

In 1970, Aldrete and Kroulik developed a postanesthesia scoring system to monitor recovery from anesthesia. The original Aldrete score assigned a number of 0, 1, or 2 to 5 variables: activity, respiration, circulation, consciousness, and color. A score of 9 out of 10 was considered adequate for discharge from the PACU.[168] Over the years, this system has been modified to keep up with advances in technology and anesthesia practice, including the expansion of ambulatory surgery. In 1995, pulse oximetry replaced visual assessment of oxygenation and additional assessments were added to accommodate patients undergoing ambulatory surgery (Tables 80.3 and 80.4).[169]

With the increase in number and complexity of outpatient surgeries, discharge criteria have been amended by various authors to include assessment of home readiness. The resulting PADSS, or postanesthesia discharge scoring system, continues to evolve. It was initially based on five criteria: vital signs, ambulation and mental status, pain and nausea/vomiting, surgical bleeding, and fluid intake/output. The current version has been modified to separate pain and nausea/vomiting and to eliminate the need to urinate before discharge.[170-174] In the ambulatory

BOX 80.10 Summary of Recommendations for Discharge

1. Patients should be alert and oriented or mental status returned to baseline.
2. A minimum mandatory stay is not required.
3. Vital signs should be stable and within acceptable limits.
4. Discharge should occur after patients have met specified criteria.
5. Use of scoring systems may assist in documenting fitness for discharge.
6. The requirement to urinate before discharge and drink and retain clear liquids should *not* be part of a routine discharge protocol, although these requirements may be appropriate for selected patients.
7. Outpatients should be discharged to a responsible adult who will accompany them home.
8. Outpatients should be provided with written instructions regarding postprocedure diet, medications, activities, and a telephone number to call in case of emergency.

Modified from American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Postanesthetic Care. Practice Guidelines for Postanesthetic Care: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Postanesthetic Care. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:742–752.

TABLE 80.3 Criteria for the Determination of Discharge Score for Release from the Postanesthesia Care Unit

Variable Evaluated	Score
ACTIVITY	
Able to move four extremities on command	2
Able to move two extremities on command	1
Able to move no extremities on command	0
BREATHING	
Able to breathe deeply and cough freely	2
Dyspnea	1
Apnea	0
CIRCULATION	
Systemic blood pressure ≤20% of the preanesthetic level	2
Systemic blood pressure is 20% to 50% of the preanesthetic level	1
Systemic blood pressure ≥50% of the preanesthetic level	0
CONSCIOUSNESS	
Fully awake	2
Arousable	1
Not responding	0
OXYGEN SATURATION (PULSE OXIMETRY)	
Greater than 92% while breathing room air	2
Needs supplemental oxygen to maintain saturation >90%	1
Less than 90% with supplemental oxygen	0

Modified from Aldrete JA. The postanaesthesia recovery score revisited. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7:89–91.

TABLE 80.4 Criteria for Determination of Discharge Score for Release Home to a Responsible Adult

Variable Evaluated	Score*
VITAL SIGNS (STABLE AND CONSISTENT WITH AGE AND PREANESTHETIC BASELINE)	
Systemic blood pressure and heart rate within 20% of the preanesthetic level	2
Systemic blood pressure and heart rate 20% to 40% of the preanesthetic level	1
Systemic blood pressure and heart rate >40% of the preanesthetic level	0
ACTIVITY LEVEL (ABLE TO AMBULATE AT PREOPERATIVE LEVEL)	
Steady gait without dizziness or meets the preanesthetic level	2
Requires assistance	1
Unable to ambulate	0
NAUSEA AND VOMITING	
None to minimal	2
Moderate	1
Severe (continues after repeated treatment)	0
PAIN (MINIMAL TO NO PAIN, CONTROLLABLE WITH ORAL ANALGESICS; LOCATION, TYPE, AND INTENSITY CONSISTENT WITH ANTICIPATED POSTOPERATIVE DISCOMFORT)	
Acceptability:	
Yes	2
No	1
SURGICAL BLEEDING (CONSISTENT WITH THAT EXPECTED FOR THE SURGICAL PROCEDURE)	
Minimal (does not require dressing change)	2
Moderate (up to two dressing changes required)	1
Severe (more than three dressing changes required)	0

*Patients achieving a score of at least 9 are acceptable for discharge.
Modified from Marshall SI, Chang F. Discharge criteria and complications after ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88:508–517.

surgery setting, postoperative pain is the most significant cause of delayed discharge and unplanned hospital admission. In an effort to improve patient satisfaction and timely discharge, Chung and associates identified a subset of high-risk patients who are likely to benefit from intense prophylactic analgesic therapy. This study of 10,008 consecutive ambulatory surgical patients found that the incidence and intensity of postoperative pain increased with increasing BMI and duration of anesthesia. Orthopedic and urologic procedures were the most significant surgical factors.[175]

PACU Standards of Care require that a physician accept responsibility for the discharge of patients from the unit (Standard V).[1] This is the case even when the decision to discharge the patient is made at the bedside by the PACU nurse in accordance with hospital-sanctioned discharge criteria or scoring systems. If discharge criteria are to be used, they must first be approved by the department of anesthesia and the hospital medical staff. A responsible physician's name must be noted on the record.

Infection Control

Limitations in space,[161] staffing,[176,177] and time contribute to the transmission of infectious organisms in the PACU. The PACU is typically an open unit without physical barriers between bed stations, however many units, such as those at Massachusetts General Hospital (MGH), have transitioned to individual rooms with doors. There are also a number of both positive and negative pressure specific rooms. Nurses and respiratory therapists simultaneously care for more than one patient, and admissions to the unit are transient with a length of stay measured in hours rather than days. Infection control monitoring can be difficult, as an infection that is transmitted as a result of a lapse in proper infection control in the PACU might not be identified by routine monitoring until days later on the inpatient unit.

Standard precautions, which are known as the absolute minimum method of infection control, should always be followed when encountering each patient.[178,179] Hand hygiene, which encompasses washing the hands with an antimicrobial soap or the use of alcohol-based hand rub (ABHR), is the single most important and effective component of preventing contamination between patients and should be employed both before and after patient contact.[180,181] Proper hand hygiene is required even if the caregiver is wearing gloves. The installation of bedside alcohol-based cleansers increases compliance of hand hygiene among heathcare workers in the ICU.[182-185] Although no equivalent study has been conducted in the PACU, the unit is similar to the ICU in workload and intensity of patient care. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's Guideline for Hand Hygiene in Health-Care Settings recommends that an "alcohol based hand rub [be made] available at the entrance to the patient's room or at the bedside, in other convenient locations, and in individual pocket-sized containers to be carried by [healthcare workers] HCWs."[186] Although the convenience of appropriately placed alcohol-based cleansers is expected to improve hand-cleansing compliance, no follow-up studies in the PACU have been published.

With these limitations in mind, it is not surprising that the PACU has been described as the "weakest link" in the chain of care that bridges the sterile technique practiced in the operating room with infection control protocols practiced on the surgical unit. Despite an awareness of the factors that increase the risk of infection in the PACU, no studies have addressed the problem until recently. A study of hand cleansing during postanesthesia care documents the poor compliance of PACU nurses with this standard infection control procedure.[182,187] In this observational study of 3143 patient care activities, the average compliance with hand cleansing was only 19.6% on patient admission to the unit and 12.5% in patients already admitted to the unit. In this study, the intensity of patient care activities was an independent predictor of noncompliance; that is, the greater the workload, the less likely the nursing staff would comply with infection control measures. Additional independent factors included patients of advanced age (65 years and older) and those recovering from clean surgery (i.e., surgical sites in which the respiratory, alimentary, and urinary tracts are not entered) and clean-contaminated surgery (i.e., surgical sites in which

TABLE 80.5 Infectious Agent Precautions

Droplet Precautions	Airborne Precautions
Neisseria meningitides (meningitis)	Tuberculosis (TB)
Group A Streptococcus	Varicella virus (chickenpox)
Rubella (German measles)	Variola virus (smallpox)
Mumps virus	Influenza A
Corynebacterium diphtheria (pharyngeal diphtheria)	Hemorrhagic Fever viruses (Ebola, Marburg, Lassa)
Bordetella pertussis (whooping cough)	Rubeola virus (measles)
Yersinia pestis (pneumonic plague)	SARS

respiratory, alimentary, genital, or urinary tracts are entered under controlled conditions without unusual contamination). As expected, compliance was best in patients with contaminated or known infected wounds.

There are three primary modes of transmission of infectious agents: contact (direct or indirect), droplet, and airborne. The most common way pathogens are transmitted is via contact. In direct contact, organisms are transmitted directly from one person to another usually via blood or bodily fluids. Contact Plus (IE: C difficile infections) requires the healthcare worker to both wash their hands and use ABHR. Droplet transmission occurs when the source coughs or sneezes and usually requires relatively close contact for the other person to become infected as droplets (large particle, >5 mm) do not remain suspended in the air for greater than three feet. Airborne transmission occurs when small particle droplets (<5 mm) are disseminated into the air, can remain there for longer periods of time, and have the ability to travel further as compared to large particles. Patients with known or suspected airborne infections should be placed in negative pressure rooms. Healthcare workers are required to wear N95 masks when they are caring for a patient with tuberculosis (Table 80.5).

Postoperative Management of Patients Undergoing Transcatheter Aortic Valve Replacement and Transcatheter Mitral Valve Repair

Transcatheter aortic valve implantation (TAVI) was first described in 2002 and was touted as a less invasive surgical option in those with severe aortic stenosis when compared to the classic approach of an aortic valve replacement. In brief, this procedure involves the deployment of a prosthetic valve within the native, stenotic aortic valve via a catheter that is inserted into the femoral, iliac, or subclavian artery. Classically, these patients have been admitted to an ICU postoperatively; however, as the volume of these patients increases and with continued advances in surgical technique, many patients are now extubated in the operating room and have ICU lengths of stay less than 24 hours (Table 80.6).[188] Given the ever-expanding need for ICU beds, some of these patients are now brought to the PACU to recover. We have recently developed a pathway at MGH designed for specific patients to recover in the PACU, instead of going to the cardiac surgical ICU (SICU). Currently, we are relatively selective with regard to the specific patients we recover in the PACU and those who will be admitted to the ICU postoperatively.

TABLE 80.6 Massachusetts General Hospital's Indications for Admission to the Intensive Care Unit After Transcatheter Aortic Valve Implantation

Preoperative	Intraoperative
Transapical approach	Expected postoperative intubation
Transaortic approach	Unexpected placement of a PA line
Need for preoperative hemodynamic support	Hemodynamic instability
Emergency case	Conditions requiring close monitoring (pericardial fluid, aortic injury)
Pulmonary artery catheter needed postoperative	Ischemia
Preoperative significant delirium	Significant arrhythmia
Significant pulmonary hypertension	Suspected complete heart block without adequate safe pacing
High-grade coronary artery disease	

PA, Pulmonary artery.

Patients who undergo TAVIs are typically older and have a significant number of comorbidities, including coronary artery, peripheral vascular, and/or cerebrovascular disease, as well as COPD and pulmonary hypertension.[189,190] For the purpose of this chapter, only the immediate postoperative issues that are most commonly encountered in the PACU will be described. For a comprehensive review of ICU care following TAVI, please see chapter 54.

As with any cardiac procedure, the postoperative period may be complicated by neurologic issues (pain, altered mental status, cerebrovascular accident), cardiac issues (hemodynamic instability, arrhythmias, ischemia), and vascular access issues (bleeding). The average age at MGH of patients who undergo TAVI is 82, and the average age was 83 in the PARTNER trial.[189] POD is a well-known complication in older individuals undergoing cardiac surgery[188] and POD is associated with increased ICU and hospital length of stay, as well as increased mortality. Preventative measures to help reduce delirium, such as frequent reorientation, natural light, minimizing lines and tubes, and promoting a normal sleep-wake cycle should be utilized as often as possible. ICU stay is an independent risk factor for delirium, and simply bypassing the ICU via recovering in the PACU and discharging the patient to the floor may help decrease the incidence of delirium in this patient population. If necessary, the use of antipsychotics may be used to treat delirium, however many are associated with QT prolongation which can predispose this already fragile patient population to arrhythmias. Dexmedetomidine may be used to prevent delirium, however its associated hypotension and bradycardia may require intervention with regard to vasopressor support. When managing postoperative pain, every attempt to minimize narcotics should be undertaken, as narcotics are associated with increased delirium in the elderly. At MGH with TAVIs via the femoral route, we have found that patients do not often complain of severe pain and are easily managed with acetaminophen and occasional low-dose fentanyl. These patients also require close monitoring —hence monitoring in the PACU for mental status changes with frequent performance of neurological exams, as the risk of stroke is the highest within the first 24 hours post-TAVI neurological event should be immediately evaluated.[191,192] These embolic events are most likely embolic secondary to the nature of the procedure and likelihood for embolization of calcium and microthrombi.

After undergoing a TAVI, the ejection fraction and cardiac output will increase. These changes are generally well tolerated. Pacing wires are used intraoperatively to allow for rapid ventricular pacing during valve deployment. These wires may be left in postoperatively in patients who either go into complete heart block and have not had a permanent pacemaker (PPM) placed intraoperatively. The PARTNER trial demonstrated that patients who undergo TAVI are more likely to require PPM placement than those who undergo surgical aortic valve replacement.[193,194] New-onset atrial fibrillation is also a common occurrence post-TAVI, however most patients are not anticoagulated given they will be started on dual antiplatelet therapy and the known association with increased risk of bleeding and even death.[195,196]

Vascular access site complications are a familiar occurrence following TAVI and can include retroperitoneal hemorrhage, arterial dissection, or pseudoaneurysm formation. Removal of arterial sheaths requires proper technique and includes the application of pressure at the insertion site for an appropriate amount of time.[188]

The first procedure involving transcatheter mitral valve repair (with the MitraClip) was performed in 2003. MitraClips are a minimally invasive alternative to open valvular surgery in those who suffer from mitral regurgitation. The number of these procedures performed at MGH is less than the patients who undergo TAVI, however, within the last year we have started to recover these patients in the PACU as well. Postoperative complications to be aware of are similar to TAVIs. Bleeding is one of the most common adverse events[197,198] and ample pressure must be applied when the femoral venous catheter is removed. These patients commonly have atrial fibrillation, necessitating anticoagulation therapy, which only serves to further amplify the risk of bleeding, and not only from the vascular access site (i.e., GI hemorrhage). Patients who are not on anticoagulation therapy will typically receive dual antiplatelet therapy for one month postprocedure.[199] Fortunately, pericardial tamponade remains a rare occurrence, as does the risk of clip migration and partial clip detachment.[197,198]

It appears as though patients who undergo both TAVI and MitraClip procedures can recover in the PACU. Caregivers must be aware of, and remain mindful of, potential procedural complications.

Immediate Postoperative Care of Craniotomies

In many institutions, it is the standard of care to admit patients to the neurosurgical intensive care unit (NICU) after any type of craniotomy. However, it has never been shown that this improves patients' outcomes and lately several authors have questioned this approach. The number of NICU beds is limited and certain patients may not require this elevated level of acuity, such as those who undergo minor craniotomies.[200] Instead, the patients are admitted to the PACU and after they meet discharge criteria, are transferred to a lower acuity ward (neurosurgical transitional care unit [NTCU]). This approach may decrease the average hospitalization length of these patients and also provide substantial cost savings.[201] The goal is to reduce the demand for NICU beds and allocate resources more effectively to those for whom they are appropriate.

This is an evolving issue and obviously local conditions and policies have to be taken into account. First and foremost, the neurosurgeons have to agree to have their patients on this pathway. Furthermore, clear criteria for patients to get on this pathway have to be developed. Currently, at University of California, San Francisco (UCSF), we use a "Safe Transition Pathway" where we apply several criteria to determine whether or not a patient can safely bypass the ICU. Besides taking type of surgery, patient's age, comorbidities (especially those that would warrant postoperative ICU level of care), the duration of the procedure, and the estimated blood loss (EBL) during surgery into account,[202] we also only consider tumors below a certain size eligible for our pathway at UCSF. Furthermore, in order to remain on this pathway, no adverse intraoperative events should occur and the patient should have had an uneventful routine intubation and extubation.[203] There should not be any concerns regarding bypassing the NICU from the surgical and anesthesia teams during the debriefing at the end of surgery.

Patients on this pathway need some closer attention in the PACU. During the sign-out, the baseline neurologic examination prior to surgery should be conveyed to the PACU team (e.g., motor function, any deficits, patient conversant), as well as anticipated or expected deficits given the location of the procedure. Explicit hemodynamic goals should be clarified, especially upper limit for SBP or MAP, since even minor bleeding can have devastating consequences. Drugs to treat postoperative hypertension are either labetalol or a nicardipine infusion, since these medications do not increase cerebral vasodilation. A pupillary exam should be performed upon arrival in PACU, with the goal to rule out significant anisocoria or a unilateral, fixed, dilated pupil. Bilateral miosis is not uncommon and may be attributed to intra- and postoperative opioid administration. During the PACU stay, the head of the bed is typically elevated to promote cerebral venous drainage. Significant neck manipulation should be limited, since this can impair venous drainage. Airway obstruction and apnea should be avoided, since an increase in $PaCO_2$ will cause cerebral vasodilation and increase the intracerebral pressure (ICP). For the same reason oxygenation should be maintained, since hypoxemia will also increase the ICP. Coughing and bucking is best avoided, too, since they can also cause acute elevation of the ICP.

Common issues that can arise in the PACU in this patient population include altered mental status, which warrants frequent reassessment and examination, especially for any motor deficits. Seizures can be observed even in previously healthy patients without a history of epilepsy, since the surgical manipulation of the brain and dura are highly irritating and do increase the risk of these occurring. The clinician's primary focus should be on terminating the seizures with IV benzodiazepines (lorazepam, midazolam) and maintaining a patent airway. Endotracheal intubation should be considered if protection of the airway in the postictal state is not possible in order to avoid hypercarbia and hypoxia. This would obviously require the patient to be transferred to the NICU. Nonsurgical causes for a seizure (e.g., hypoglycemia or electrolyte imbalance) should always be considered and ruled out. In terms of postoperative pain, headaches and neck pain are not uncommon after craniotomies, although the pain is usually not severe. Acetaminophen and low-dose opioids should be the first choice of analgesics. NSAIDs should be used either with caution or not at all in the acute postoperative setting, since they can cause intracerebral bleeding. The primary surgical team should always be consulted before the administration of any NSAIDs. Finally, PONV can occur in this patient population as well and should be treated aggressively since retching and vomiting can cause a transient increase of the ICP.

The patients will typically stay in the PACU until the routine criteria for transfer to the NTCU are met and they will continue to be monitored and examined very closely and should have telemetry and continuous pulse oximetry ordered.

Potentially Devastating Visual Complications

CORNEAL ABRASIONS

Corneal abrasions (CAs) are the most common ophthalmic injury in the postoperative period with an incidence ranging from 0.17% to 44%.[204] Many CAs are secondary to mechanical trauma and patients often complain of blurry vision, tearing, redness, photophobia, and foreign body sensation in the eye. Corneal epithelial cells are self-regenerating, and therefore CAs tend to resolve quickly with limited treatment and long-term complications are uncommon. However, the injury is unexpected, painful, and anxiety-inducing for the patient. Statistically significant risk factors include age, general anesthesia, greater average EBL, eyes taped during surgery, prone position, Trendelenburg position, and supplemental oxygen on the way to and in the PACU.[204] Minor CAs do not necessarily need to be evaluated by an ophthalmologist; several institutions have developed treatment protocols in conjunction with their ophthalmology department. According to these protocols, minor CAs can usually be treated by anesthesiologists, who can diagnose them and initiate a pre-established treatment regimen. However, should the patient have any vision loss, change in visual acuity, severe or uncontrolled pain, a history of refractive eye disease, a large or complicated abrasion or a foreign body, an ophthalmology consult should immediately be initiated. If the patients receive the pre-established treatment regimen, their symptoms should be resolved by the next morning, which can be confirmed with a follow-up phone call; otherwise they should be evaluated by an ophthalmologist.[204,205]

POSTOPERATIVE VISION LOSS

Postoperative vision loss (POVL) is a rare but devastating complication after anesthesia. The etiology is multifactorial (e.g., CA, ischemic optic neuropathy [ION], cerebral vision loss, central retinal artery occlusion, and several other less common causes) and POVL can occur after any surgical procedure. However, there seems to be an increased incidence after spinal fusions and cardiac surgeries. ION is the most common cause of permanent POVL and accounts for 89% of POVL following prone spine surgeries.[206] The incidence of ION has decreased by over 50% from 1.63/10,000 (1998–2000) to 0.6/10,000 (2010–2012).[207] Risk factors for ION have been identified and include: male gender, obesity, use of Wilson frame, long surgery/anesthesia (>6.5 hours), high EBL (>45% of estimated blood volume), and lower percent colloid administration.[208,209] If POVL is suspected, immediate ophthalmologic consultation should be sought. However, the long-term outcome of this complication is unfortunately usually poor.[210]

Future Considerations

INTENSIVE CARE

In recent years, the demand for ICU beds has increased significantly within the United States and Europe. Because the PACU possesses the equipment and expertise to monitor, ventilate, and resuscitate patients recovering from general anesthesia, it has become the logical choice to provide care for critically ill patients for whom ICU beds are not available.[211] Although it is now common to care for critically ill patients in the PACU, the maintenance of quality patient care continues to challenge hospital administrators and staff.[212]

One obstacle to efficient ICU care in the PACU is the diversity of physician coverage required. Whereas the proximity of the operating room and the patient population recovering from anesthesia dictate that an anesthesiologist be the responsible physician for the majority of patients in the unit, nonsurgical ICU patients often require physician coverage by specialists who are unfamiliar with the unit and whose practices are located in distant areas of the hospital. As a result, PACU nurses must identify and contact physicians with whom they rarely interact.

Physician coverage (who will be primarily responsible for patient care—internist, anesthesiologist, or surgeon), privacy for family visitation (lack of space in a traditionally open unit), infection control (the proximity of patient beds and rapid turnover of patients), and nursing competencies (ongoing ICU training of staff) are some of the challenges facing the PACU today.[213] In a study of 400 ICU overflow patients admitted to the PACU in the United Kingdom, Ziser and colleagues identified insufficient medical and nursing coverage, inadequate communications, and visiting facilities for patient's families as the most significant problems facing the unit. The ICU patients in this study were on average 53 years of age with a mean length of stay of 12.9 hours. Seventy percent were mechanically ventilated, 77.8% required invasive monitoring, and 4.5% died in the PACU while awaiting placement in the ICU. The busiest hours of admission were 1 am to 11 am.[214]

In an effort to ensure the quality of patient care in the PACU, the professional societies responsible for the delivery of care in the unit have collaborated to develop standards for the care of ICU overflow patients. The "Joint Position Statement on ICU Overflow Patients" issued in 2000 is the result of this collaboration. It specifically requires that PACU staffing meet the nursing staffing ratios and competencies required in the critical care units.[215]

The Joint Position Statement reproduced here recommends that the following criteria be met:

- It must be recognized that the primary responsibility for Phase 1 PACU is to provide the optimal standard of care to the postanesthesia patient and to effectively maintain the surgery schedule.
- Appropriate staffing requirements should be met to maintain safe, competent nursing care of the postanesthesia patient as well as the ICU patient. Staffing criteria for the ICU patient should be consistent with ICU guidelines and based on individual acuity and needs.
- Phase 1 PACUs are by their nature critical care units and as such should meet the competencies required for the care of the critically ill patient. These competencies should include, but are not limited to, ventilator management, hemodynamic monitoring, and medication administration, as appropriate to their patient population.
- Management should develop and implement a comprehensive resource utilization plan with ongoing assessment that supports the staffing needs for both the PACU and ICU patients when the need for overflow admission arises.
- Management should have a multidisciplinary plan to address appropriate utilization of ICU beds. Admission and discharge criteria should be utilized to evaluate the necessity for critical care and to determine the priority of admission.

In addition to increasing the acuity of patient care in the PACU, the shortage of ICU beds has encouraged the de-escalation of care in selected patient populations. Postoperative patients who were historically admitted directly to the ICU from the operating room for intensive or specialized monitoring have had successful recovery by routine postoperative care in the PACU. Examples include postoperative craniotomy,[216] liver transplantation,[217,218] and cardiac surgery patients. The neurosurgical group at the University of Florida has shown that uncomplicated craniotomy patients can be safely cared for in the PACU at a significant savings of hospital-days and cost without increased morbidity or mortality.[187] Likewise, the trend to early extubation of liver transplant patients in the operating room has led to the successful uncomplicated recovery of these patients in the PACU. Finally, in an effort to protect ICU bed availability and reduce the number of cardiac surgery cancellations, a group in Melbourne established a cardiac surgery recovery unit within the PACU.[219] Each of these examples requires adequate space and specialized nursing skills to be successful.

OUTPATIENT PROCEDURES

Finally, the PACU has responded to the economic restrictions that currently limit hospital resources by accommodating the performance of simple outpatient procedures (see Chapter 72).[220] The PACU is uniquely equipped to care for patients who are undergoing noninvasive and minimally invasive procedures such as electroconvulsive therapy,[221,222] cardioversion,[223] epidural blood patch,[220] and liver biopsy.[220] Ambulatory patients undergoing such procedures can be admitted directly to the PACU for the procedure and discharged to home after a brief recovery period. In order to do so, the PACU must be appropriately staffed and scheduled so as to not interfere with routine operating room scheduling and postoperative recovery. Electroconvulsive therapy is somewhat unique in that it requires general anesthesia that is delivered by an anesthesia care practitioner. Typically these are short procedures that can be scheduled before the routine operating room cases. One successful electroconvulsive therapy program schedules the procedure at 5:30 am with nurse-to-patient ratio of 2:1 and estimated PACU length of stay of 2 hours.[222]

Summary

The PACU is more than a postanesthesia observation unit. It is unique in its ability to support the care of patients of all ages and in every stage of illness. Since its inception more than 50 years ago, the PACU has proved to be an exceptionally adaptable unit that is equipped to meet the demands of an evolving healthcare system.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Daniel Sessler, Theodora Katherine Nicholau, and Christian C. Apfel for their contributions in the prior edition of this work. Their chapters have served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. American Society of Anesthesiologists. *Standards of the American Society of Anesthesiologists; Standards for Postanesthesia Care, amended*; 2009.
2. Practice guidelines for postanesthetic care: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on postanesthetic care. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(3):742.
3. Hines R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74:503.
4. Zeitlin G. *ASA Newsletter*. 1989;53:28.
5. Kluger MT, Bullock MF. *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(11):1060.
6. Siddiqui N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:A1392.
7. Mathes DD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(4):917.
8. Benumof JL. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13(2):144.
9. Brull SJ, G.S. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):129.
10. Fortier, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(2):366.
11. Brull SJ, Murphy GS. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):129.
12. Murphy GS, Brull SJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):120.
13. Kopman AF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(4):765.
14. Eriksson LI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(5):1035.
15. Bevan DR. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2001;19(4):913.
15. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(1):130.

16. Capron, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(5):1578.
17. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(1):130.
18. Bulka, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:647.
19. White PF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(3):846.
20. Shen WT, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2004;139(6):656.
21. Self DD, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46(7):635.
22. Venna R. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:A1171.
23. Fisher MM, Raper RF. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47(1):10.
24. Adderley RJ, Mullins GC. *Can J Anaesth*. 1987;34(3 Pt 1):304.
25. De Bast Y, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2002;28(9):1267.
26. Ochoa ME, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35(7):1171.
27. Kriner EJ, et al. *Respir Care*. 2005;50(12):1632.
28. Vidhani K, Langham BT. *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(4):442.
29. American Sleep Apnea Association. Sleep apnea and BMI: the majority of OSA patients are not obese. http://www.sleepapnea.org.
30. Hillman DR, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91(1):31.
31. Brodsky JB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(3):732.
32. Siyam MA, Benhamou D. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(4):1098.
33. Loadsman JA, Hillman DR. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86(2):254.
34. Cullen DJ. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13(2):83.
35. Dhonneur G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):762.
36. Gross JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(5):1081.
37. Lickteig C, Grigg P. *Sleep Rev*. 2003.
38. Neligan PJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(4):878.
39. Daley MD, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38(6):740.
40. Rock P, Rich PB. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2003;16(2):123.
41. Lumb A. *Nunn's Applied Respiratory Physiology*. ed 6. Philadelphia: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2005.
42. Silva PS, et al. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2005;21(11):751.
43. Lamaze M, Mallat J. *J Int Care Med*. 2014;40:1140.
44. Schwartz David R, et al. *Chest*. 1999;115(4):1194.
45. Mallar Bhattacharya M, et al. *RSSChest*. 2016;150(4):927.
46. Goldsmith WW, Pandharipande PP. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17(5):366.
47. Barrett NA, Kam PC. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61(8):777.
48. Silliman CC, McLaughlin NJ. *Blood Rev*. 2006;20(3):139.
49. Curtis BR, McFarland JG. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(suppl 5):S118.
50. Moore SB. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(suppl 5):S114.
51. Swanson K, et al. *Lung*. 2006;184(3):177.
52. Vlar A, Juffermans N. *Lancet* –382(9896):984.
53. Toy P, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(4):721.
54. Popovsky MA. *Transfusion*. 2009;49(1):2.
55. Zhou L, et al. *Transfusion*. 2005;45(7):1056.
56. Roubinian NH, Murphy EL. *Int J Clin Trans Med*. 2015;3:17.
57. Gajic O, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(suppl 5):S109–S113.
58. DiBenedetto RJ, Gravenstein N. *J Clin Monit*. 1995;11(6):408.
59. DiBenedetto RJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(2):365.
60. Johnstone RE. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(4):816.
61. Hopf H, Sessler DI. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(3):615.
62. Russell GB, Graybeal JM. *Chest*. 1993;104(3):899.
63. Scuderi PE, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1996;8(4):294.
64. Gravenstein D. *J Clin Monit*. 1995;11(6):406.
65. Davidson JA, Hosie HE. *BMJ*. 1993;307(6900):372.
66. Witting MD, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2005;23(4):497.
67. Fu ES, et al. *Chest*. 2004;126(5):1552.
68. Waugh JB, Granger WM. *Respir Care*. 2004;49(8):902.
69. Jensen AG, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35:289.
70. Boumphrey SM, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2003;57:69.
71. Tiep BL, et al. *Respir Care*. 2002;47(8):887.
72. Zhao, et al. *Crit Care*. 2017;21:184.
73. Huerta S, et al. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2002;6(3):354.
74. Hillberg RE, Johnson DC. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337(24):1746.
75. Cereda, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesth*. 2013;26(2).
76. Albala MZ, Ferrigno M. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17(8):636.
77. International concensus conferences in intensive care medicine. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2001;163:288.
78. Rose DK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(4):772.
79. Gal TJ, Cooperman LH. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47(1):70.
80. Lovstad RZ, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44(1):48.
81. Hepner DL, Castells MC. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(5):1381.
82. Moss J. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):521.
83. Linsey E, et al. *BJA*. 2015;15(3):136.
84. Landry DW, et al. *Circulation*. 1997;95(5):1122.
85. Patel BM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(3):576.
86. Gordon EK, Fleisher LA. *Curr Opin Crit Car*. 2013;19:342–345.
87. Lee TH, et al. *Circulation*. 1999;100:1043–1049.
88. Mangano DT, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1991;17(4):848.
89. Devereaux PJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;307:2295.
90. Botto F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(3):564.
91. Fleisher LA, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;130(24):2215.
92. Writing Committee for the VISION Study Investigators. *JAMA*. 2017;317(16):1642.
93. Hollenberg SM, Dellinger RP. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(suppl 10):N145.
94. Neumar RW, et al. *Circulation*. 2015;132(suppl 2):S315.
95. Walsh SR, et al. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 2007;89:91.
96. Vaporciyan AA, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127(3):779.
97. Christians KK, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2001;182(6):713.
98. Brathwaite D, Weissman C. *Chest*. 1998;114(2):462.
99. Bhave PD, et al. *Am Heart J*. 2012;164(6):918.
100. Neumar RWOC, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;122:S729.
101. Lan YT, et al. *Curr Opin Card*. 2003;18:73.
102. Vanden Hoek TL, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;122:S829.
103. Kidney disease: improving global outcomes (KDIGO) acute kidney injury work group. *Kidney Int Suppl*. 2012;2(1).
104. Goren, O. et al. *Br J Anaesth* 115; ii3 - ii14.
105. Doty JM, et al. *J Trauma*. 2000;48:874.
106. Doty JM, et al. *J Trauma*. 1999;47:1000.
107. Chowdhury AH, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256:18.
108. Nadeem A, et al. *Crit Care*. 2014;18:625.
109. Hartog CS, et al. *Br Med J*. 2014;349:g5981.
110. Sun LY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:515.
111. Rosseland LA, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(3):279.
112. Keita H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(2):592.
113. Merten GJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2004;291(19):2328.
114. Vidal MG, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:1823.
115. Richards WO, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1983;197:183.
116. Sugrue M. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2005;11(4):333.
117. Sugrue M, et al. *Arch Surg*. 1999;134(10):1082.
118. Mognol P, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2004;14(1):91.
119. Collier B, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2003;13(6):941.
120. Bostanjian D, et al. *Obes Surg*. 2003;13(2):302.
121. Brown CV, et al. *J Trauma*. 2004;56(6):1191.
122. Cruz DN, Bagshaw SM. *Semin Dial*. 2011;24(4):417.
123. ASA 2015 accessed online: file:///Users/braehlerm/Downloads/nqmc-003673_perioperative-temperature-management.pdf
124. Hoffman J, Hamner C. *JBI Database of Systematic Reviews & Implementation Reports*. 2015;13(2):37–48.
125. Eberhart LHJ, et al. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2005;101:1849–1857.
126. Bindu B, et al. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2017;33(3):303–316.
127. Nakasuji M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(2):162.
128. Nakasuji M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(3):484.
129. Mohta M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(2):141.
130. Kelsaka E, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(1):40.
131. Horn EP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(3):613.
132. Kose EA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:120–122.
133. Liu ZX, et al. *Can J Anesth*. 2015;62:816–829.
134. Bock M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80(2):159.
135. Apfel CC, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350(24):2441.
136. Gan TJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:85.
137. Apfel CC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:475.
138. CMS. https://pqrs.cms.gov/dataset/2016-PQRS-Measure-430-11-17-2015/9yst-9f5b/data.
139. FDA approves EMEND (aprepitant): Merck's antiemetic therapy, for prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. <http://www.medicalnewstoday.com/releases/47323.php>(Accessed 16.01.2014)
140. *European Society of Anaesthesiology Eur J Anaesth*. 2017;34(4):192.
141. Mohanty S, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2016;222(5):930.
142. Robinson TN, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2011;146(3):295.
143. American Geriatrics Society Expert Panel. Postoperative delirium in older adults:. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2015;220(2):136.
144. American Geriatrics Society 2015 Beers Criteria Update Expert Panel. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2015;63(11):2227.
145. Cole JW, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12(5):442.
146. Vlajkovic GP, Sindjelic RP. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(1):84.
147. Meyer RR, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(1):56.
148. Kain ZN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(4):720.
149. Keaney A, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(10):866.
150. Mayer J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(2):400.
151. Oh AY, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(3):297.
152. Lapin SL, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1999;9(4):299.

153. Bock M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(6):790.
154. Tesoro S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(6):1619.
155. Almenrader N, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(12):1143.
156. Shukry M, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(12):1098.
157. Ibacache ME, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(1):60.
158. Demirbilek S, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21(7):538.
159. Cohen IT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(1):88.
160. Davis PJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(1):34.
161. Funk W, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2008;25:37.
162. Breschan C, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(4):347.
163. Lepouse C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96(6):747.
164. Pavlin DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(4):816.
165. Martin B, et al. *Eur J Anaesth*. 1997;14:467.
166. Frost EA. *Middle East J Anaesthesiol*. 2014;22(6):537.
167. Misal US, et al. *Anesth Essays Res*. 2016;10:164.
168. Aldrete JA, Kroulik D. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49(6):924.
169. Aldrete JA. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7(1):89.
170. Chung F. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(11):1056.
171. White PF. *J Clin Anesth*. 1999;11(1):78.
172. White PF, Song D. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(5):1069.
173. Chung F. *J Clin Anesth*. 1993;5(6 suppl 1):64S.
174. Marshall SI, Chung F. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(3):508.
175. Chung F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(4):808.
176. Assadian O, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(1):296.
177. Pittet D, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):530.
178. Siegel JD, et al. *2007 Guideline for Isolation Precautions: Preventing Transmission of Infectious Agents in Healthcare Settings*. Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee, Centers for Disease Control; 2007. Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/hicpac/pdf/isolation/Isolation2007.pdf.
179. The hospital infection control practices advisory committee, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Public Health Service, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. *Am J Infect Cont*. 1996;24:32–52.
180. Ellingson K, et al. *Infect Cont Hosp Epidemiol*. 2014;35:937.
181. Huang GKL, et al. *Curr Opin Infect Dis*. 2014;27:379.
183. Pittet D, et al. *Lancet*. 2000;356(9238):1307.
184. Hugonnet S, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2002;162(9):1037.
185. Picheansathian W. *Int J Nurs Pract*. 2004;10(1):3.
186. Boyce JM, Pittet D. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2002;51(RR-16):1.
187. Herwaldt LA. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):519.
188. Raiten JM, et al. *F1000Research*. 2013;2:62.
189. Leon MB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:1597.
190. Smith CR, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:2187.
191. Miller DC, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;143:832–843. e813.
192. Tay EL, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Interv*. 2011;4:1290.
193. Tomey MI, et al. *Card Clin*. 2013;31(4):607.
194. Lo J, Hill C. *Sem Card Vasc Anesth*. 2015;19(2):105.
195. Dewilde WJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2013;381:1107.
196. Zeymer U, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2011;32:900.
197. Eggebrecht H, et al. *Cath Card Int*. 2015;86:728.
198. Puls M, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2016;37(8):703.
199. Feldman T, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:1395.
200. Hanak BW, et al. *World Neurosurg*. 2014;81(1):165.
201. Beauregard CL, Friedman WA. *Surg Neurol*. 2003;60(6):483.
202. Bui JQ, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2011;115(6):1236.
203. Rhondali O, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2011;23(2):118.
204. Segal KL, et al. *J Ophthal*. 2014:901901.
205. Lichter JR, et al. *Clin Ophthal*. 2015;9:1689.
206. Epstein NE. *Surg Neurol Int*. 2016;7(suppl 13):S347.
207. Rubin DS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:457.
208. American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on perioperative visual loss. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:274.
209. Visual Loss Study Group. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:15.
210. Myers MA, et al. *Spine*. 1997;22:1325.
211. Schweizer A, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14(7):486.
212. Weissman C. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17(4):314.
213. Lindsay M. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 1999;14(2):73.
214. Ziser A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(4):577.
215. A Joint Position paper on ICU Overflow Patients. *Developed by the American Society of PeriAnesthesia Nursing, American Association of Critical Care Nurses,*. American Society of Anesthesiologists: Anesthesia Care Team Committee and Committee on Critical Care Medicine and Trauma Medicine; 2000.
216. Beauregard CL, Friedman WA. *Surg Neurol*. 2003;60(6):483.
217. Mandell MS, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2002;8(8):676.
218. Mandell MS, et al. *Liver Transpl*. 2002;8(8):682.
219. Heland M, Retsas A. *Collegian*. 1999;6(3):10.
220. Saastamoinen P, et al. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2007;22(2):102.
221. Petty DS. *Nurs Manage*. 2000;31(11):42.
222. Irvin SM. *Aorn J*. 1997;65(3):573–581.
223. Walker JR. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 1999;14(1):35.

References

1. Standards of the American Society of Anesthesiologists; Standards for Postanesthesia Care, Approved by the House of Delegates on Oct. 12, 1988 and last amended on Oct. 27, 2009. Copyright 1999. American Society of Anesthesiologists. 2009.
2. Practice guidelines for postanesthetic care: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Postanesthetic Care. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(3):742–752.
3. Hines R, et al. Complications occurring in the postanesthesia care unit: a survey. *Anesth Analg*. 1992;74(4):503–509.
4. Zeitlin G. Recovery room mishaps in the ASA closed claims study. *ASA Newsletter*. 1989;53(7).
5. Kluger MT, Bullock MF. Recovery room incidents: a review of 419 reports from the anaesthetic incident monitoring study (AIMS). *Anaesthesia*. 2002;57(11):1060–1066.
6. Siddiqui N, et al. Hypoxemia on arrival to PACU: an observational audit. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:A1392.
7. Mathes DD, Conaway MR, Ross WT. Ambulatory surgery: room air versus nasal cannula oxygen during transport after general anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(4):917–921.
8. Benumof JL. Obstructive sleep apnea in the adult obese patient: implications for airway management. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13(2): 144–156.
9. Brull SJ, Kopman AF. Current status of neuromuscular reversal and monitoring: challenges and opportunities. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(1):173–190.
10. Fortier LP, et al. The RECITE Study: A Canadian Prospective, Multicenter Study of the Incidence and Severity of Residual Neuromuscular Blockade. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(2):366-372.
11. Brull SJ, Murphy GS. Residual neuromuscular block: lessons unlearned. Part II: Methods to Reduce the Risk of Residual Weakness. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):129-140.
12. Murphy GS, Brull SJ. Residual neuromuscular block: lessons unlearned. Part I: definitions, incidence, and adverse physiologic effects of residual neuromuscular block. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(1):120–128.
13. Kopman AF, Yee PS, Neuman GG. Relationship of the train-of-four fade ratio to clinical signs and symptoms of residual paralysis in awake volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86(4):765–771.
14. Eriksson LI, et al. Functional assessment of the pharynx at rest and during swallowing in partially paralyzed humans: simultaneous videomanometry and mechanomyography of awake human volunteers. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;87(5):1035–1043.
15. Bevan DR. Neuromuscular blockade. Inadvertent extubation of the partially paralyzed patient. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2001;19(4):913–922.
16. Capron F, et al. Tactile fade detection with hand or wrist stimulation using train-of-four, double burst stimulation, 50-hertz tetanus, 100-hertz tetanus, and acceleromyography. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(5):1578-1584.
17. Murphy GS, et al. Residual neuromuscular blockade and critical respiratory events in the postanesthesia care unit. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(1):130–137.
18. Bulka et al. Nondepolarizing neuromuscular blocking agents, reversal, and risk of postoperative pneumonia. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:647–655.
19. White PF, et al. The effect of residual neuromuscular blockade on the speed of reversal with sugammadex. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(3):846–851.
20. Shen WT, et al. Predictors of airway complications after thyroidectomy for substernal goiter. *Arch Surg*. 2004;139(6):656–659. discussion 659-60.
21. Self DD, Bryson GL, Sullivan PJ. Risk factors for post-carotid endarterectomy hematoma formation. *Can J Anaesth*. 1999;46(7): 635–640.
22. Venna R. A nine-year retrospective review of postoperative airway related problems in patients following multilevel anterior cervical corpectomy. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:A1171.
23. Fisher MM, Raper RF. The 'cuff-leak' test for extubation. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47(1):10–12.
24. Adderley RJ, Mullins GC. When to extubate the croup patient: the "leak" test. *Can J Anaesth*. 1987;34:304–306. 3 (Pt 1).
25. De Bast Y, et al. The cuff leak test to predict failure of tracheal extubation for laryngeal edema. *Intensive Care Med*. 2002;28(9):1267–1272.
26. Ochoa ME, et al. Cuff-leak test for the diagnosis of upper airway obstruction in adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35(7):1171–1179.
27. Kriner EJ, Shafazand S, Colice GL. The endotracheal tube cuff-leak test as a predictor for postextubation stridor. *Respir Care*. 2005;50(12):1632–1638.
28. Vidhani K, Langham BT. Obstructive sleep apnoea syndrome: is this an overlooked cause of desaturation in the immediate postoperative period? *Br J Anaesth*. 1997;78(4):442–443.
29. American Sleep Apnea Association. *Sleep Apnea and BMI: the majority of OSA patients are not obese*; 2007. Available from http://www.sleepapnea.org.
30. Hillman DR, Platt PR, Eastwood PR. The upper airway during anaesthesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2003;91(1):31–39.
31. Brodsky JB, et al. Morbid obesity and tracheal intubation. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;94(3):732–736. table of contents.
32. Siyam MA, Benhamou D. Difficult endotracheal intubation in patients with sleep apnea syndrome. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95(4):1098–1102. table of contents.
33. Loadsman JA, Hillman DR. Anaesthesia and sleep apnoea. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;86(2):254–266.
34. Cullen DJ. Obstructive sleep apnea and postoperative analgesia—a potentially dangerous combination. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13(2): 83–85.
35. Dhonneur G, et al. Postoperative obstructive apnea. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(3):762–767.
36. Gross JB, et al. Practice guidelines for the perioperative management of patients with obstructive sleep apnea: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Management of patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(5):1081–1093. quiz 1117-8.
37. Lickteig C, Grigg P. Risks of OSA and anesthesia. *Sleep Rev*. 2003.
38. Neligan PJ, et al. Continuous positive airway pressure via the Boussignac system immediately after extubation improves lung function in morbidly obese patients with obstructive sleep apnea undergoing laparoscopic bariatric surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(4): 878–884.
39. Daley MD, et al. Hypoxaemia in adults in the post-anaesthesia care unit. *Can J Anaesth*. 1991;38(6):740–746.
40. Rock P, Rich PB. Postoperative pulmonary complications. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2003;16(2):123–131.
41. Lumb A. *Nunn's Applied Respiratory Physiology*. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2005.
42. Silva PS, et al. Negative-pressure pulmonary edema: a rare complication of upper airway obstruction in children. *Pediatr Emerg Care*. 2005;21(11):751–754.
43. Lamaze M, Mallat J. Understanding negative pressure pulmonary edema. *J. Intensive Care Med*. 2014;40:1140.
44. Schwartz David R, et al. Negative pressure pulmonary hemorrhage. *Chest*. 1999;115(4):1194–1197.
45. Mallar Bhattacharya, M et al. Negative-pressure pulmonary edema RSS. *Chest*. 2016;150(4): 927–933.
46. Goldsmith WW, Pandharipande PP. Transfusion-related acute lung injury--does the anesthesiologist need to worry about this? *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17(5):366–368.
47. Barrett NA, Kam PC. Transfusion-related acute lung injury: a literature review. *Anaesthesia*. 2006;61(8):777–785.
48. Silliman CC, McLaughlin NJ. Transfusion-related acute lung injury. *Blood Rev*. 2006;20(3):139–159.
49. Curtis BR, McFarland JG. Mechanisms of transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI): anti-leukocyte antibodies. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(suppl 5):S118–S123.
50. Moore SB. Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI): clinical presentation, treatment, and prognosis. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34(suppl 5):S114–S117.
51. Swanson K, et al. Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI): current clinical and pathophysiologic considerations. *Lung*. 2006;184(3):177–185.
52. Vlar A, Juffermans N. Transfusion-related acute lung injury: a clinical review. *The Lancet*. 2013;382(9896):984–994.

53. Toy P, et al. Transfusion-related acute lung injury: definition and review. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(4):721–726.
54. Popovsky MA. Transfusion-associated circulatory overload: the plot thickens. *Transfusion*. 2009;49(1):2.
55. Zhou L, et al. Use of B-natriuretic peptide as a diagnostic marker in the differential diagnosis of transfusion-associated circulatory overload. *Transfusion*. 2005;45(7):1056.
56. Roubinian NH, Murphy EL. Transfusion-associated circulatory overload (taco): prevention, management, and patient outcomes. *International Journal of Clinical Transfusion Medicine*. 2015;3:17–28.
57. Gajic O, et al. Pulmonary edema after transfusion: how to differentiate transfusion-associated circulatory overload from transfusion-related acute lung injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2006 May;34(suppl 5):S109–S113.
58. DiBenedetto RJ, Gravenstein N. Against routine postoperative oxygen administration in the PACU. *J Clin Monit*. 1995;11(6):408–410.
59. DiBenedetto RJ, et al. Pulse oximetry monitoring can change routine oxygen supplementation practices in the postanesthesia care unit. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;78(2):365–368.
60. Johnstone RE. Studies of cost savings require cost measurements. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(4):816–817.
61. Hopf H, Sessler DI. Routine postoperative oxygen supplementation. *Anesth Analg*. 1994;79(3):615–616.
62. Russell GB, Graybeal JM. Hypoxemic episodes of patients in a postanesthesia care unit. *Chest*. 1993;104(3):899–903.
63. Scuderi PE, et al. Oxygen administration during transport and recovery after outpatient surgery does not prevent episodic arterial desaturation. *J Clin Anesth*. 1996;8(4):294–300.
64. Gravenstein D. For routine postoperative oxygen administration in the PACU. *J Clin Monit*. 1995;11(6):406–408.
65. Davidson JA, Hosie HE. Limitations of pulse oximetry: respiratory insufficiency--a failure of detection. *BMJ*. 1993;307(6900):372–373.
66. Witting MD, Hsu S, Granja CA. The sensitivity of room-air pulse oximetry in the detection of hypercapnia. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2005;23(4):497–500.
67. Fu ES, et al. Supplemental oxygen impairs detection of hypoventilation by pulse oximetry. *Chest*. 2004;126(5):1552–1558.
68. Waugh JB, Granger WM. An evaluation of 2 new devices for nasal high-flow gas therapy. *Respir Care*. 2004;49(8):902–906.
69. Jensen AG, Johnson A, Sandstedt S. Rebreathing during oxygen treatment with face mask. The effect of oxygen flow rates on ventilation. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1991;35:289.
70. Boumphrey SM, Morris EA, Kinsella SM. 100% inspired oxygen from a Hudson mask-a realistic goal? *Resuscitation*. 2003;57:69.
71. Tiep BL, et al. Maintaining oxygenation via demand oxygen delivery during rest and exercise. *Respir Care*. 2002;47(8):887–892.
72. Zhao H, et al. High-flow nasal cannula oxygen therapy is superior to conventional oxygen therapy but not to noninvasive mechanical ventilation on intubation rate: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Crit Care*. 2017;21(1):184.
73. Huerta S, et al. Safety and efficacy of postoperative continuous positive airway pressure to prevent pulmonary complications after Roux-en-Y gastric bypass. *J Gastrointest Surg*. 2002;6(3):354–358.
74. Hillberg RE, Johnson DC. Noninvasive ventilation. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337(24):1746–1752.
75. Cereda, et al. Noninvasive respiratory support in the perioperative period. *Current Opinion in Anaesthesiology*. 2013;26(2).
76. Albala MZ, Ferrigno M. Short-term noninvasive ventilation in the postanesthesia care unit: a case series. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17(8):636–639.
77. International Concensus Conferences in Intensive Care Medicine. Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation in acute respiratory failure. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2001;163:288.
78. Rose DK, Cohen MM, DeBoer DP. Cardiovascular events in the postanesthesia care unit: contribution of risk factors. *Anesthesiology*. 1996;84(4):772–781.
79. Gal TJ, Cooperman LH. Hypertension in the immediate postoperative period. *Br J Anaesth*. 1975;47(1):70–74.
80. Lovstad RZ, Granhus G, Hetland S. Bradycardia and asystolic cardiac arrest during spinal anaesthesia: a report of five cases. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44(1):48–52.
81. Hepner DL, Castells MC. Anaphylaxis during the perioperative period. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;97(5):1381–1395.
82. Moss J. Allergic to anesthetics. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):521–523.
83. Christie LE, Picard J, Weinberg GL. Local anaesthetic systemic toxicity, *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia Critical Care & Pain*. (*BJA Volume)*. 2015;15(3):136–142.
84. Landry DW, et al. Vasopressin deficiency contributes to the vasodilation of septic shock. *Circulation*. 1997;95(5):1122–1125.
85. Patel BM, et al. Beneficial effects of short-term vasopressin infusion during severe septic shock. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(3):576–582.
86. Gordon EK, Fleisher LA. Reducing perioperative cardiac morbidity and mortality: if this the right goal? *Curr Opin Crit Car*. 2013;19:342–345.
87. Lee TH, Marcantonio ER, Mangione CM, et al. Derivation and prospective validation of a simple index for prediction of cardiac risk of major noncardiac surgery. *Circulation*. 1999;100:1043–1049.
88. Mangano DT, Hollenberg M, Fegert G, et al. Perioperative myocardial ischemia in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery –I: incidence and severity during the 4 day perioperative period. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1991;17(4):848–850.
89. Devereaux PJ, Chan MT, Alonso-Coello P, et al. Association between postoperative troponin levels and 30-day mortality among patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2012;307:2295–2304.
90. Botto F, et al. Myocardial injury after noncardiac surgery: a large, international, prospective cohort study establishing diagnostic criteria, characteristics, predictors, and 30-day outcomes. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120(3):564–578.
91. Fleisher LA, Fleischmann KE, Auerbach AD, et al. 2014 ACC/AHA guideline on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and management of patients undergoing noncardiac surgery: executive summary: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*. 2014;130(24):2215.
92. Writing Committee for the VISION Study Investigators. Association of postoperative high-sensitivity troponin levels with myocardial injury and 30-day mortality among patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2017;317(16):1642–1651.
93. Hollenberg SM, Dellinger RP. Noncardiac surgery: postoperative arrhythmias. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(suppl 10):N145–N150.
94. Neumar RW, Shuster M, Callaway CW, et al. Part 1: executive summary: 2015 American Heart Association guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*. 2015;132(suppl 2):S315–S367.
95. Walsh SR, et al. Postoperative arrhythmias in general surgical patients. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl*. 2007;89:91–95.
96. Vaporciyan AA, et al. Risk factors associated with atrial fibrillation after noncardiac thoracic surgery: analysis of 2588 patients. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2004;127(3):779–786.
97. Christians KK, et al. Postoperative atrial fibrillation in noncardiothoracic surgical patients. *Am J Surg*. 2001;182(6):713–715.
98. Brathwaite D, Weissman C. The new onset of atrial arrhythmias following major noncardiothoracic surgery is associated with increased mortality. *Chest*. 1998;114(2):462–468.
99. Bhave PD, Goldman LE, Vittinghoff E, Maselli J, Auerbach A. Incidence, predictors, and outcomes associated with post-operative atrial fibrillation after major non-cardiac surgery. *American Heart Journal*. 2012;164(6):918–924.
100. Neumar RW. Otto C, Link MS, et al. Part 8: adult advanced cardiovascular life support: 2010 American Heart Association guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*. 2010;122:S729–S767.
101. Lan YT, et al. Postoperative arrhythmia. *Current Opinion in Cardiology*. 2003;18:73–78.
102. Vanden Hoek TL ML, Shuster M, et al. Part 12: cardiac arrest in special situations: 2010 American Heart Association guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*. 2010;122:S829–S861.
103. Kidney Disease: Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) Acute Kidney Injury Work Group. KDIGO clinical practice guideline for acute kidney injury. *Kidney Int Suppl*. 2012;2:1–138.
104. Goren, O. et al. Perioperative acute kidney injury. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*. Volume 115 , ii3 - ii14
105. Doty JM, Saggi BH, Blocher CR, et al. Effects of increased renal parenchymal pressure on renal function. *J Trauma*. 2000;48:874.

106. Doty JM, Saggi BH, Sugerman HJ, et al. Effect of increased renal venous pressure on renal function. *J Trauma*. 1999;47:1000.
107. Chowdhury AH, Cox EF, Francis ST, Lobo DN. A randomized, controlled, double-blind crossover study on the effects of 2-L infusions of 0.9% saline and Plasma-Lyte® 148 on renal blood flow velocity and renal cortical tissue perfusion in healthy volunteers. *Ann Surg*. 2012;256:18–24.
108. Nadeem A, Salahuddin N, El Hazmi A, et al. Chloride-liberal fluids are associated with acute kidney injury after liver transplantation. *Crit Care*. 2014;18:625.
109. Hartog CS, Natanson C, Sun J, Klein HG, Reinhart K. Concerns over use of hydroxyethyl starch solutions. *Br Med J*. 2014;349: g5981.
110. Sun LY, Wijeysundera DN, Tait GA, Beattie WS. Association of intraoperative hypotension with acute kidney injury after elective noncardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:515–523.
111. Rosseland LA, Stubhaug A, Breivik H. Detecting postoperative urinary retention with an ultrasound scanner. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2002;46(3):279–282.
112. Keita H, et al. Predictive factors of early postoperative urinary retention in the postanesthesia care unit. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(2):592–596. table of contents.
113. Merten GJ, et al. Prevention of contrast-induced nephropathy with sodium bicarbonate: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2004;291(19):2328–2334.
114. Vidal MG, Ruiz Weisser J, Gonzalez F, et al. Incidence and clinical effects of intra-abdominal hypertension in critically ill patients. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36:1823.
115. Richards WO, Scovill W, Shin B, Reed W. Acute renal failure associated with increased intra-abdominal pressure. *Ann Surg*. 1983;197:183.
116. Sugrue M. Abdominal compartment syndrome. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2005;11(4):333–338.
117. Sugrue M, et al. Intra-abdominal hypertension is an independent cause of postoperative renal impairment. *Arch Surg*. 1999;134(10):1082–1085.
118. Mognol P, et al. Rhabdomyolysis after laparoscopic bariatric surgery. *Obes Surg*. 2004;14(1):91–94.
119. Collier B, Goreja MA, Duke BE 3rd. Postoperative rhabdomyolysis with bariatric surgery. *Obes Surg*. 2003;13(6):941–943.
120. Bostanjian D, et al. Rhabdomyolysis of gluteal muscles leading to renal failure: a potentially fatal complication of surgery in the morbidly obese. *Obes Surg*. 2003;13(2):302–305.
121. Brown CV, et al. Preventing renal failure in patients with rhabdomyolysis: do bicarbonate and mannitol make a difference? *J Trauma*. 2004;56(6):1191–1196.
122. Cruz DN, Bagshaw SM. Does continuous renal replacement therapy have a role in the treatment of rhabdomyolysis complicated by acute kidney injury? *Semin Dial*. 2011;24(4):417–420.
123. ASA 2015 accessed online: file:///Users/braehlerm/Downloads/nqmc-003673_perioperative-temperature-management.pdf
124. Hoffman J, Hamner C. Effectiveness of dexmedetomidine use in general anesthesia to prevent postoperative shivering: a systematic review protocol. *JBI Database of Systematic Reviews & Implementation Reports*. 2015;13(2):37–48.
125. Eberhart LHJ, Doederlein F, Eisenhardt G, et al. Independent risk factors for postoperative shivering. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*. 2005;101:1849–1857.
126. Bindu B, Bindra A, Rath G. Temperature management under general anesthesia: compulsion or option. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2017;33(3):303–316.
127. Nakasuji M, et al. Intraoperative high-dose remifentanil increases post-anaesthetic shivering. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(2):162–167.
128. Nakasuji M, et al. An intraoperative small dose of ketamine prevents remifentanil-induced postanesthetic shivering. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(3):484–487.
129. Mohta M, et al. Tramadol for prevention of postanaesthetic shivering: a randomised double-blind comparison with pethidine. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(2):141–146.
130. Kelsaka E, et al. Comparison of ondansetron and meperidine for prevention of shivering in patients undergoing spinal anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(1):40–45.
131. Horn EP, et al. Late intraoperative clonidine administration prevents postanesthetic shivering after total intravenous or volatile anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;84(3):613–617.
132. Kose EA, Dal D, Akinci SB, et al. The efficacy of ketamine for the treatment of postoperative shivering. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:120–122.
133. Liu ZX, Xu FY, Liang X, et al. Efficacy of dexmedetomidine on postoperative shivering: a meta-analysis of clinical trials. *Can J Anesth*. 2015;62:816–829.
134. Bock M, et al. Effects of preinduction and intraoperative warming during major laparotomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80(2):159–163.
135. Apfel CC, et al. A factorial trial of six interventions for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350(24):2441–2451.
136. Gan TJ, et al. Consensus guidelines for the management of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg*. 2014;118:85–113.
137. Apfel CC, Philip BK, Cakmakkaya OS, et al. Who is at risk for postdischarge nausea and vomiting after ambulatory surgery? *Anesthesiology*. 2012;117:475–486.
138. CMS:https://pqrs.cms.gov/dataset/2016-PQRS-Measure-430-11-17-2015/9yst-9f5b/data
139. *FDA approves EMEND (aprepitant), Merck's antiemetic therapy, for prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting*. 2006. Available from. http://www.medicalnewstoday.com/releases/47323.php.
140. European Society of Anaesthesiology evidence-based and consensus-based guideline on postoperative delirium. *European Journal of Anaesthesiology*. 2017;34(4):192–214.
141. Mohanty S, Rosenthal RA, Russell MM, et al. Optimal perioperative management of the geriatric patient: a best practices guideline from the American College of Surgeons NSQIP and the American Geriatrics Society. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2016;222(5):930–947.
142. Robinson TN, Raeburn CD, Tran ZV, et al. Motor subtypes of postoperative delirium in older adults. *Arch Surg*. 2011;146(3):295–300.
143. The American Geriatrics Society Expert Panel. Postoperative delirium in older adults: best practice statement from the American Geriatrics Society. *J Am Coll Surg. 2015*. 2015;220(2):136–148.
144. American Geriatrics Society. American Geriatrics Society 2015 updated Beers criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2015;63(11):2227–2246.
145. Cole JW, et al. Emergence behaviour in children: defining the incidence of excitement and agitation following anaesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2002;12(5):442–447.
146. Vlajkovic GP, Sindjelic RP. Emergence delirium in children: many questions, few answers. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(1):84–91.
147. Meyer RR, et al. Isoflurane is associated with a similar incidence of emergence agitation/delirium as sevoflurane in young children--a randomized controlled study. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(1):56–60.
148. Kain ZN, et al. Sevoflurane versus halothane: postoperative maladaptive behavioral changes: a randomized, controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(4):720–726.
149. Keaney A, et al. Postoperative behavioral changes following anesthesia with sevoflurane. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2004;14(10):866–870.
150. Mayer J, et al. Desflurane anesthesia after sevoflurane inhaled induction reduces severity of emergence agitation in children undergoing minor ear-nose-throat surgery compared with sevoflurane induction and maintenance. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(2):400–404.
151. Oh AY, et al. Delayed emergence process does not result in a lower incidence of emergence agitation after sevoflurane anesthesia in children. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(3):297–299.
152. Lapin SL, et al. Effects of sevoflurane anaesthesia on recovery in children: a comparison with halothane. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1999;9(4):299–304.
153. Bock M, et al. Comparison of caudal and intravenous clonidine in the prevention of agitation after sevoflurane in children. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(6):790–796.
154. Tesoro S, et al. Clonidine treatment for agitation in children after sevoflurane anesthesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101(6):1619–1622.
155. Almenrader N, et al. Premedication in children: a comparison of oral midazolam and oral clonidine. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(12):1143–1149.
156. Shukry M, et al. Does dexmedetomidine prevent emergence delirium in children after sevoflurane-based general anesthesia? *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2005;15(12):1098–1104.
157. Ibacache ME, et al. Single-dose dexmedetomidine reduces agitation after sevoflurane anesthesia in children. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;98(1):60–63. table of contents.
158. Demirbilek S, et al. Effects of fentanyl on the incidence of emergence agitation in children receiving desflurane or sevoflurane anaesthesia. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21(7):538–542.

159. Cohen IT, Hannallah RS, Hummer KA. The incidence of emergence agitation associated with desflurane anesthesia in children is reduced by fentanyl. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(1):88–91.
160. Davis PJ, et al. Recovery characteristics of sevoflurane and halothane in preschool-aged children undergoing bilateral myringotomy and pressure equalization tube insertion. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(1):34–38.
161. Funk W, Hollnberger H, Geroldinger J. Physostigmine and anaesthesia emergence delirium in preschool children: a randomized blinded trial. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2007:1–6.
162. Breschan C, et al. Midazolam does not reduce emergence delirium after sevoflurane anesthesia in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(4):347–352.
163. Lepouse C, et al. Emergence delirium in adults in the post-anaesthesia care unit. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96(6):747–753.
164. Pavlin DJ, et al. Factors affecting discharge time in adult outpatients. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(4):816–826.
165. Martin B, Howell PR. Physostigmine: going . . . going . . . gone? Two cases of central anticholinergic syndrome following anaesthesia and its treatment with physostigmine. *European Journal of Anaesthesiology*. 1997;14:467–470.
166. Frost EA. Differential diagnosis of delayed awakening from general anesthesia: a review. *Middle East J Anaesthesiol*. 2014 Oct;22(6): 537–548.
167. Misal US, Joshi SA, Shaikh MM. Delayed recovery from anesthesia: a postgraduate educational review. *Anesth Essays Res*. 2016;10: 164–172.
168. Aldrete JA, Kroulik D. A postanesthetic recovery score. *Anesth Analg*. 1970;49(6):924–934.
169. Aldrete JA. The post-anesthesia recovery score revisited. *J Clin Anesth*. 1995;7(1):89–91.
170. Chung F. Discharge criteria--a new trend. *Can J Anaesth*. 1995;42(11):1056–1058.
171. White PF. Criteria for fast-tracking outpatients after ambulatory surgery. *J Clin Anesth*. 1999;11(1):78–79.
172. White PF, Song D. New criteria for fast-tracking after outpatient anesthesia: a comparison with the modified Aldrete's scoring system. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(5):1069–1072.
173. Chung F. Are discharge criteria changing? *J Clin Anesth*. 1993;5(6 suppl 1):64S–68S.
174. Marshall SI, Chung F. Discharge criteria and complications after ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(3):508–517.
175. Chung F, Ritchie E, Su J. Postoperative pain in ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(4):808–816.
176. Assadian O, Toma CD, Rowley SD. Implications of staffing ratios and workload limitations on healthcare-associated infections and the quality of patient care. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35(1):296–298.
177. Pittet D, et al. Hand-cleansing during postanesthesia care. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):530–535.
178. Siegel JD, Rhinehart E, Jackson M, Chiarello L. *2007 Guideline for Isolation Precautions: Preventing Transmission of Infectious Agents in Healthcare Settings*. Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee, Centers for Disease Control; 2007. Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/hicpac/pdf/isolation/Isolation2007.pdf.
179. The hospital infection control practices advisory committee, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Public Health Service, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. guideline for isolation precautions in hospitals: Part II. Recommendations for isolation precautions in hospitals. *Am J Infect Cont. February*. 1996;24:32–52.
180. Ellingson K, Haas JP, Aiello AE, et al. Strategies to prevent healthcare-associated infections through hand hygiene. *Infect Cont Hosp Epidemiol*. 2014;35:937–960.
181. Huang GKL, Stewardson AJ, Grayson ML. Back to basics: hand hygiene and isolation. *Curr Opin Infect Dis*. 2014;27:379–389.
182. Widmer AF. Replace hand washing with use of a waterless alcohol hand rub? *Clin Infect Dis*. 2000;31(1):136–143.
183. Pittet D, et al. Effectiveness of a hospital-wide programme to improve compliance with hand hygiene. Infection control programme. *Lancet*. 2000;356(9238):1307–1312.
184. Hugonnet S, Perneger TV, Pittet D. Alcohol-based handrub improves compliance with hand hygiene in intensive care units. *Arch Intern Med*. 2002;162(9):1037–1043.
185. Picheansathian W. A systematic review on the effectiveness of alcohol-based solutions for hand hygiene. *Int J Nurs Pract*. 2004;10(1):3–9.
186. Boyce JM, Pittet D. Guideline for hand hygiene in health-care settings. recommendations of the healthcare infection control practices advisory committee and the HICPAC/SHEA/APIC/IDSA hand hygiene task force. Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America/ Association for Professionals in Infection Control/Infectious Diseases Society of America. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2002;51(RR-16):1–45. quiz CE1-4.
187. Herwaldt LA. A study of hand hygiene in the postanesthesia care unit--it's about time!. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99(3):519–520.
188. Raiten JM, Gutsche JT, Horak J, Augoustides JG. Critical care management of patients following transcatheter aortic valve replacement [version 1; referees: 2 approved]. *F1000Research*. 2013;2:62. https://doi.org/10.12688/f1000research.2-62.v1.
189. Leon MB, Smith CR, Mack M, et al. Transcatheter aortic-valve implantation for aortic stenosis in patients who cannot undergo surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:1597–1607.
190. Smith CR, Leon MB, Mack MJ, et al. Transcatheter versus surgical aortic-valve replacement in high-risk patients. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:2187–2198.
191. Miller DC, Blackstone EH, Mack MJ, et al. Transcatheter (TAVR) versus surgical (AVR) aortic valve replacement: occurrence, hazard, risk factors, and consequences of neurologic events in the PARTNER trial. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2012;143:832–843. e813.
192. Tay EL, Gurvitch R, Wijesinghe N, et al. A high-risk period for cerebrovascular events exists after transcatheter aortic valve implantation. *JACC Cardiovasc Interv*. 2011;4:1290–1297.
193. Matthew I. Tomey MD, Umesh K. Gidwani MD, Samin K. Sharma MD. Cardiac critical care after transcatheter aortic valve replacement cardiology clinics. 2013-11-01, Vol. 31, Issue 4, Pages 607-618.
194. Lo Joyce, Charles Hill. Intensive care unit management of transcatheter aortic valve recipients. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015; 19(2):95–105.
195. Dewilde WJ, Oirbans T, Verheught FW, et al. Use of clopidogrel with or without aspirin in patients taking oral anticoagulant therapy and undergoing percutaneous coronary intervention: an open-label, randomized, control trial. *Lancet*. 2013;381:1107–1115.
196. Zeymer U, Zahn R, Gerckens U, et al. Antithrombotic therapy after transfemoral aortic valve implantation (TAVI). Potential hazard of triple-therapy. *Eur Heart J*. 2011;32:900.
197. Holger Eggebrecht MD Sibylle Schelle MD Miriam Puls MD Björn Plicht MD Ralph Stephan von Bardeleben MD Christian Butter MD Andreas E. May MD Edith Lubos MD Peter Boekstegers MD Taoufik Ouarrak Jochen Senges MD Axel Schmermund MD. Risk and outcomes of complications during and after MitraClip implantation: experience in 828 patients from the German TRAnscatheter mitral valve interventions (TRAMI) registry. *Catheter Cardiovasc Interv*. 2015;86:728–735.
198. Puls M, Lubos E, Boekstegers P, et al. One-year outcomes and predictors of mortality after MitraClip therapy in contemporary clinical practice: results from the German transcatheter mitral valve interventions registry. *Eur Heart J*. 2016;37(8):703–712.
199. Feldman T, Foster E, Glower DD, et al. Percutaneous repair or surgery for mitral regurgitation. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:1395–1406.
200. Hanak BW, Walcott BP, Nahed BV, et al. Postoperative intensive care unit requirements after elective craniotomy. *World Neurosurg*. 2014;81(1):165–172.
201. Beauregard CL, Friedman WA. Routine use of postoperative ICU care for elective craniotomy: a cost-benefit analysis. *Surg Neurol*. 2003;60(6):483–489.
202. Bui JQ, Mendis RL, van Gelder JM, Sheridan MM, Wright KM, Jaeger M. Is postoperative intensive care unit admission a prerequisite for elective craniotomy? *J Neurosurg*. 2011;115(6):1236–1241.
203. Rhondali O, Genty C, Halle C, et al. Do patients still require admission to an intensive care unit after elective craniotomy for brain surgery? *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2011;23(2):118–123.
204. Segal KL, Fleischut PM, Kim C, et al. Evaluation and treatment of perioperative corneal abrasions. *Journal of Ophthalmology*. 2014: 901901.

205. Lichter JR, Marr LB, Schilling DE, et al. A Department-of-Anesthesiology-based management protocol for perioperative corneal abrasions. *Clinical Ophthalmology*. 2015;9:1689–1695.
206. Epstein NE. Perioperative visual loss following prone spinal surgery: a review. *Surg Neurol Int*. 2016;7(suppl 13):S347–S360.
207. Rubin DS, Parakati I, Lee LA, Moss HE, Joslin CE, Roth S. Perioperative visual loss in spine fusion surgery: ischemic optic neuropathy in the United States from 1999 to 2011 in the nationwide inpatient sample. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:457–464.
208. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Visual Loss. Practice advisory for perioperative visual loss associated with spine surgery: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists task force on perioperative visual loss. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:274.
209. Visual Loss Study Group. Risk factors associated with ischemic optic neuropathy after spinal fusion surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:15.
210. Myers MA, Hamilton SR, Bogosian AJ, et al. Visual loss as a complication of spine surgery. a review of 37 cases. *Spine*. 1997;22:1325–1329.
211. Schweizer A, et al. Opening of a new postanesthesia care unit: impact on critical care utilization and complications following major vascular and thoracic surgery. *J Clin Anesth*. 2002;14(7):486–493.
212. Weissman C. The enhanced postoperative care system. *J Clin Anesth*. 2005;17(4):314–322.
213. Lindsay M. Is the postanesthesia care unit becoming an intensive care unit? *J Perianesth Nurs*. 1999;14(2):73–77.
214. Ziser A, et al. The postanaesthesia care unit as a temporary admission location due to intensive care and ward overflow. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;88(4):577–579.
215. A Joint Position paper on ICU Overflow Patients. *Developed by the American Society of PeriAnesthesia Nursing, American Association of Critical Care Nurses*. American Society of Anesthesiologists: Anesthesia Care Team Committee and Committee on Critical Care Medicine and Trauma Medicine; 2000.
216. Beauregard CL, Friedman WA. Routine use of postoperative ICU care for elective craniotomy: a cost-benefit analysis. *Surg Neurol*. 2003;60(6):483–489. discussion 489.
217. Mandell MS, et al. Reduced use of intensive care after liver transplantation: influence of early extubation. *Liver Transpl*. 2002;8(8):676–681.
218. Mandell MS, et al. Reduced use of intensive care after liver transplantation: patient attributes that determine early transfer to surgical wards. *Liver Transpl*. 2002;8(8):682–687.
219. Heland M, Retsas A. Establishing a cardiac surgery recovery unit within the post anaesthesia care unit. *Collegian*. 1999;6(3):10–13.
220. Saastamoinen P, Piispa M, Niskanen MM. Use of postanesthesia care unit for purposes other than postanesthesia observation. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 2007;22(2):102–107.
221. Petty DS. ECT in the PACU? It's possible. *Nurs Manage*. 2000;31(11):42–44.
222. Irvin SM. Treatment of depression with outpatient electroconvulsive therapy. *Aorn J*. 1997;65(3):573–578. 581-2.
223. Walker JR. Anesthesia for cardioversion. *J Perianesth Nurs*. 1999;14(1):35–38.

81

Acute Postoperative Pain

ROBERT W. HURLEY, NABIL M. ELKASSABANY, and
CHRISTOPHER L. WU

KEY POINTS

- The process of nociception is a dynamic process (i.e., neuroplasticity) with multiple points of modulation. Persistent noxious input may result in relatively rapid neuronal sensitization and possibly persistent pain.
- Postoperative pain, especially when poorly controlled, results in harmful acute effects (i.e., adverse physiologic responses) and chronic effects (i.e., delayed long-term recovery and chronic pain).
- By preventing central sensitization, preventative analgesia may reduce acute and chronic pain. Although studies overwhelmingly support the concept of preemptive analgesia, the evidence from clinical trials is equivocal, mostly because of methodological issues.
- Multimodal analgesia entails use of multiple classes of analgesic drugs (acetaminophen, gabapentinoids, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs [NSAIDs], ketamine, and others) to act on different receptors along the pain pathway. Different drugs act synergistically to enhance analgesia and reduce side effects resulting from use of an individual class of drugs. Use of multimodal analgesia is recommended whenever feasible.
- By allowing individual titration of analgesic drugs, use of patient-controlled analgesia (oral, subcutaneous, iontophoretic, intravenous, paravertebral, or epidural) may provide several advantages over traditional provider-administered analgesia (e.g., intramuscular or intermittent intravenous injections) in the management of postoperative pain.
- The incidence of respiratory depression from opioids is not significantly different among the various routes of administration (i.e., oral, intravenous vs. intramuscular vs. subcutaneous vs. neuraxial). Appropriate monitoring of patients receiving opioid analgesics is essential to detect those with opioid-related side effects, such as respiratory depression. When compared with systemic opioids, perioperative epidural analgesia may confer several advantages, including a facilitated return of gastrointestinal function and decrease in the incidence of pulmonary complications, coagulation-related adverse events and cardiovascular events, especially in higher-risk patients or procedures. However, the risks and benefits of epidural analgesia should be evaluated for each patient, and appropriate monitoring protocols should be used during postoperative epidural analgesia.
- Epidural analgesia is not a generic entity because different catheter locations (catheter-incision congruent vs. catheter-incision incongruent), durations of postoperative analgesia, and analgesic regimens (local anesthetics vs. opioids) may differentially affect perioperative morbidity.
- Postoperative pain management should be tailored to the needs of special populations (e.g., opioid-tolerant, pediatric, and obese patients, as well as those with obstructive sleep apnea) who may have different anatomic, physiologic, pharmacologic, or psychosocial issues.

Fundamental Considerations

A revolution in the management of acute postoperative pain has occurred during the past four decades. Widespread recognition of the undertreatment of acute pain by clinicians, economists, and health policy experts has led to the development of a national clinical practice guideline for management of acute pain by the Agency for Healthcare Quality and Research (formerly the Agency for Health Care Policy and Research) of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.[1] This landmark document includes acknowledgment of the historical inadequacies in perioperative pain management, importance of good pain control, need for accountability for adequate provision of perioperative analgesia by health care institutions, and a statement on the need for involvement of specialists in appropriate cases. In addition, several professional societies including American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA),[2] The Joint Commission,[3] American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine, and American Pain Society[4] have developed clinical practice guidelines for acute pain management or provided new pain management standards. With their knowledge of and familiarity with pharmacology, various regional anesthetic techniques, and the neurobiology of nociception, anesthesiologists are prominently associated with the clinical and research advances in acute postoperative pain management. Anesthesiologists developed the concepts of acute pain services (APS) (inpatient pain services), application of evidence-based practice to acute postoperative pain, and creation of innovative approaches to acute pain medicine (APM), all of which are a natural extension of the anesthesiologist's role as a "perioperative physician," consultant, and therapist throughout the institution, in addition to being a highly skilled expert in the operating room. Provision of effective analgesia for surgical and other medical patients is an important component of this multidimensional role. An area that is often challenging in the acute perioperative pain services (PPS) is the management of patients with acute surgical pain in addition to a baseline chronic pain. These patients are often not well served by the arbitrary distinction of "acute" versus "chronic" pain services in hospitals. Anesthesiologists are well trained to manage acute pain in the patient with concomitant chronic pain as a result of the strength of chronic pain curricula in current anesthesiology training programs. Although this chapter focuses on the patient who has acute perioperative pain, acute management of chronic pain in the hospitalized setting is discussed in Chapter 51, "Management of the Patient with Chronic Pain."

PAIN PATHWAYS AND THE NEUROBIOLOGY OF NOCICEPTION

Surgery produces tissue injury with consequent release of histamine and inflammatory mediators such as peptides (e.g., bradykinin), lipids (e.g., prostaglandins), neurotransmitters (e.g., serotonin), and neurotrophins (e.g., nerve growth factor).[5] Release of inflammatory mediators activates peripheral nociceptors, which initiate transduction and transmission of nociceptive information to the central nervous system (CNS) and the process of neurogenic inflammation in which release of neurotransmitters (e.g., substance P and calcitonin gene-related peptide) in the periphery induces vasodilatation and plasma extravasation.[5] Noxious stimuli are transduced by peripheral nociceptors and transmitted by A-delta and C nerve fibers from peripheral visceral and somatic sites to the dorsal horn of the spinal cord, where integration of peripheral nociceptive and descending modulatory input (i.e., serotonin, norepinephrine, γ-aminobutyric acid, enkephalin) occurs. Further transmission of nociceptive information is determined by complex modulating influences in the spinal cord. Some impulses pass to the ventral and ventrolateral horns to initiate segmental (spinal) reflex responses, which may be associated with increased skeletal muscle tone, inhibition of phrenic nerve function, or even decreased gastrointestinal motility. Others are transmitted to higher centers through the spinothalamic and spinoreticular tracts, where they induce supra-segmental and cortical responses to ultimately produce the perception of and affective component of pain.

Continuous release of inflammatory mediators in the periphery sensitizes functional nociceptors and activates dormant ones. Sensitization of peripheral nociceptors may occur and is marked by a decreased threshold for activation, increased rate of discharge with activation, and increased rate of basal (spontaneous) discharge. Intense noxious input from the periphery may also result in central sensitization ("persistent postinjury changes in the CNS that result in pain hypersensitivity")[6] and hyperexcitability ("exaggerated and prolonged responsiveness of neurons to normal afferent input after tissue damage").[6] Such noxious input may lead to functional changes in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord and other consequences that may later cause postoperative pain to be perceived as more painful than it would otherwise have been. The neural circuitry in the dorsal horn is extremely complex, and we are just beginning to elucidate the specific role of the various neurotransmitters and receptors in the process of nociception.[5] However, it seems that certain receptors (e.g., *N*-methyl-D-aspartate [NMDA]) may be especially important for the development of chronic pain after an acute injury, although other neurotransmitters or second messenger effectors (e.g., substance P, protein kinase C) may also play important roles in spinal cord sensitization and chronic pain. Our understanding of the neurobiology of nociception has progressed from the hard-wired system proposed by Descartes in the 17th century to the current view of neuroplasticity in which dynamic integration and modulation of nociceptive transmission take place at several levels. There still are many gaps in our knowledge of the specific roles of various receptors, neurotransmitters, and molecular structures in the process of nociception.

An understanding of the neurobiology of nociception is important for appreciating the transition from acute to chronic pain. The traditional dichotomy between acute and chronic pain is arbitrary because acute pain may quickly transition into chronic pain.[7] Noxious stimuli can produce expression of new genes (which are the basis for neuronal sensitization) in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord within 1 hour and these changes are sufficient to alter behavior within the same timeframe.[8] Also, the intensity of acute postoperative pain is a significant predictor of chronic postoperative pain.[9] Control of perioperative pain (e.g., preventive analgesia) and the manner in which it is implemented (e.g., multimodal perioperative pain management) may be important in facilitating short- and long-term patient convalescence after surgery.

ACUTE AND CHRONIC EFFECTS OF POSTOPERATIVE PAIN

Uncontrolled postoperative pain may produce a range of detrimental acute and chronic effects. The attenuation of perioperative pathophysiology that occurs during surgery through reduction of nociceptive input to the CNS and optimization of perioperative analgesia may decrease complications and facilitate recovery during the immediate postoperative period[10] and after discharge from the hospital.

Acute Effects

The perioperative period has a variety of pathophysiologic responses that may be initiated or maintained by nociceptive input. At one time, these responses may have had a beneficial teleological purpose; however, the same response to the iatrogenic nature of modern-day surgery may be harmful. Uncontrolled perioperative pain may enhance some of these perioperative pathophysiologies and increase patient morbidity and mortality. Attenuation of postoperative pain, especially with certain types of analgesic regimens, may decrease perioperative morbidity and mortality.

Transmission of nociceptive stimuli from the periphery to the CNS results in the neuroendocrine stress response, a combination of local inflammatory substances (e.g., cytokines, prostaglandins, leukotrienes, tumor necrosis factor-α) and systemic mediators of the neuroendocrine response. The dominant neuroendocrine responses to pain involve hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenocortical and sympathoadrenal interactions. Suprasegmental reflex responses to pain result in increased sympathetic tone, increased catecholamine and catabolic hormone secretion (e.g., cortisol, adrenocorticotropic hormone, antidiuretic hormone, glucagon, aldosterone, renin, angiotensin II), and decreased secretion of anabolic hormones.[11] The effects include sodium and water retention and increased levels of blood glucose, free fatty acids, ketone bodies, and lactate. A hypermetabolic, catabolic state occurs as metabolism and oxygen consumption are increased and metabolic substrates are mobilized from storage depots.[11] The extent of the stress response is influenced by many factors, including the type of anesthesia and intensity of the surgical injury, with the extent of the stress response being proportional to the degree of surgical trauma.[12] The negative nitrogen balance and protein catabolism may impede convalescence; however, attenuation of the stress response and postoperative pain may facilitate and accelerate the patient's recovery postoperatively.

The neuroendocrine stress response may enhance detrimental physiologic effects in other areas of the body. The stress response is likely a factor in the postoperative development of hypercoagulability. Enhancement of coagulation (i.e., decreased levels of natural anticoagulants and increased levels of procoagulants), inhibition of fibrinolysis, and increased platelet reactivity and plasma viscosity may enhance the incidence of postoperative hypercoagulable-related events such as deep venous thrombosis, vascular graft failure, and myocardial ischemia.[13] The stress response may also enhance postoperative immunosuppression, the extent of which correlates with the severity of surgical injury.[7] Hyperglycemia from the stress response may contribute to poor wound healing and depression of immune function.

Uncontrolled postoperative pain may activate the sympathetic nervous system and thereby contribute to morbidity or mortality. Sympathetic activation may increase myocardial oxygen consumption, which may be important in the development of myocardial ischemia and infarction,[13] and may decrease myocardial oxygen supply through coronary vasoconstriction and attenuation of local metabolic coronary vasodilation.[14] Activation of the sympathetic nervous system may also delay return of postoperative gastrointestinal motility, which may develop into paralytic ileus. Although postoperative ileus is the result of a combination of inhibitory input from central and local factors,[13,14] an increase in sympathetic efferent activity, such as from uncontrolled pain, may decrease gastrointestinal activity and delay return of gastrointestinal function.

Nociceptors are activated after surgical trauma and may initiate several detrimental spinal reflex arcs. Postoperative respiratory function is markedly decreased, especially after upper abdominal and thoracic surgery. Spinal reflex inhibition of phrenic nerve activity is an important component of this decreased postoperative pulmonary function.[13] However, patients with poor postoperative pain control may breathe less deeply, have an inadequate cough, and be more susceptible to the development of postoperative pulmonary complications.[14] Activation of nociceptors may also initiate spinal reflex inhibition of gastrointestinal tract function and delay return of gastrointestinal motility.[13]

Many detrimental postoperative pathophysiologic effects can occur in the perioperative period and can activate nociceptors and the stress response. Uncontrolled pain may activate the sympathetic nervous system, which can cause a variety of potentially harmful physiologic responses that may adversely increase morbidity and mortality. Nociceptor activation may also result in several detrimental inhibitory spinal reflexes. Control of the pathophysiologic processes associated with acute postoperative pain may attenuate the stress response, sympathetic outflow, and inhibitory spinal reflexes and contribute to improvements in morbidity, mortality, and patient-reported outcomes (e.g., health-related quality of life [HRQL], patient satisfaction).[13]

Chronic Effects

Chronic persistent postsurgical pain (CPSP) is a largely unrecognized problem that may occur in 10% to 65% of postoperative patients (depending on the type of surgery), with 2% to 10% of these patients experiencing severe CPSP.[15] Poorly controlled acute postoperative pain is an important predictive factor in the development of CPSP.[9,16] The transition from acute to chronic pain occurs very quickly, and long-term behavioral and neurobiologic changes occur much sooner than was previously thought.[7] CPSP is relatively common after procedures such as limb amputation (30%-83%), thoracotomy (22%-67%), sternotomy (27%), breast surgery (11%-57%), and gallbladder surgery (up to 56%).[9] Although the severity of acute postoperative pain may be an important predictor in the development of CPSP,[9] a causal relationship has not been definitively established, and other factors (e.g., area of postoperative hyperalgesia) may be more important in predicting the development of CPSP.[17] One such factor may be the severity of the patient's preoperative pain. Patients with more intense levels of preoperative pain may also develop a degree of CNS sensitization predisposing them to the increased likelihood of higher postoperative pain and the subsequent development of chronic pain.[17] Thus, it is important that APS clinicians understand chronic pain conditions and involve themselves in the patient's preoperative care. The increased involvement of the APM team in preoperative anesthesia clinics or services can positively attenuate the incidence and severity of postoperative pain.

Control of acute postoperative pain may improve long-term recovery or patient-reported outcomes (e.g., quality of life). Patients whose pain is controlled in the early postoperative period (especially with the use of continuous epidural or peripheral catheter techniques) may be able to actively participate in postoperative rehabilitation, which may improve short- and long-term recovery after surgery.[18] Optimizing treatment of acute postoperative pain can improve HRQL.[19] Postoperative chronic pain that develops as a result of poor postoperative pain control may interfere with patients' activities of daily living.

Preventive Analgesia

The older terminology of "preemptive" analgesia referred to an analgesic intervention that preceded a surgical injury and was more effective in relieving acute postoperative pain than the same treatment following surgery. The precise definition of preemptive analgesia is one of the major controversies in this area of medicine and contributes to the question of whether preemptive analgesia is clinically relevant. Definitions of preemptive analgesia include what is administered before the surgical incision, what prevents the establishment of central sensitization resulting from incisional injury only (i.e., intraoperative period), what prevents central sensitization resulting from incisional and inflammatory injury (i.e., intraoperative and postoperative periods), or the entire perioperative period encompassing preoperative interventions, intraoperative analgesia, and postoperative pain management (i.e., preventive analgesia).[6] The first two definitions are relatively narrow and may contribute to the lack of a detectable effect of preemptive analgesia in clinical trials. The rationale for preemptive analgesia was based on the inhibition of the development of central sensitization. Effectively, noxious input initiated by surgical procedures induced a state of CNS hyperactivity that accentuates pain. Although a very popular and discussed theory, a single analgesic treatment (either peripheral or neuraxial) before the incision does not reduce postoperative pain behaviors beyond the expected duration of the analgesic effect.[20] When the block of nociceptive afferents diminishes, the surgical injury is able to reinitiate central sensitization. Clinical trials have been negative.[21] For these reasons, this terminology has fallen out of favor.

As stated previously, intense noxious input (e.g., postoperative pain from the periphery) can change the CNS (i.e., central sensitization) to induce “pain hypersensitivity” and hyperexcitability (i.e., exaggerated and prolonged responsiveness of neurons to normal afferent input after tissue damage). Preventive analgesia is aimed at inhibiting the development of this type of chronic pain. This definition broadly includes any regimen given at any time during the perioperative period that controls pain-induced sensitization. Central sensitization and hyperexcitability can develop after the surgical incision in a patient who has no history of preoperative pain.

In contrast, some patients may already have existing acute or chronic pain and developed central sensitization prior to the surgical incision. These patients with preexisting pain may have even more intense pain in the postoperative period. This augmentation of preexisting pain can occur in the acutely hospitalized and even in those patients in subacute or chronic outpatient settings. Preventing the establishment of altered central processing by analgesic treatment may result in short-term (e.g., reduction in postoperative pain and accelerated recovery) and long-term (e.g., reduction in chronic pain and improvement in HRQL[19] benefits during a patient’s convalescence). Unfortunately, many clinical studies (e.g., trials) lack clarity of study design and clear terminology of preemptive versus preventative analgesia.[21,22]

Timing of the intervention may not be as clinically important as other aspects of preventive analgesia (i.e., intensity and duration of the intervention). An intervention administered before the surgical incision is not preventative if it is incomplete or insufficient such that central sensitization is not prevented. Incisional and inflammatory injuries are important in initiating and maintaining central sensitization. Confining the definition of preventative analgesia to only the intraoperative (incisional) period is not relevant or appropriate because the inflammatory response lasts well into the postoperative period and continues to maintain central sensitization.

Maximal clinical benefit is observed when there is complete multi-segmental blockade of noxious stimuli with extension of this into the postoperative period. Preventing central sensitization with intensive multimodal analgesic interventions[21] could theoretically reduce the intensity or even eliminate acute postoperative pain/hyperalgesia and chronic pain after surgery.[9]

Multimodal Approach to Perioperative Recovery/Enhanced Recovery after Surgery

The analgesic benefits of controlling postoperative pain are generally maximized when a multimodal strategy to facilitate the patient’s convalescence is implemented. Yet, postoperative pain treatment may not provide major improvements in some outcomes because it is unlikely that a unimodal intervention can be effective in addressing a complex problem such as perioperative outcomes.[10,23] The complex nature of nociception and mixed mechanisms of generating surgical pain are also responsible for failure of unimodal analgesia to adequately address postoperative pain.[10,23] Principles of a multimodal analgesia include using multiple strategies and drug classes to manage patient expectation and control postoperative pain to allow early mobilization, enteral nutrition, and to attenuate the perioperative stress response.[10] These strategies include: patient education, local anesthetic-based techniques (local infiltration, peripheral nerve blocks, and neuraxial analgesia),[10] and a combination of analgesic drugs that act via different mechanisms on different receptors within the pain transmission pathway to provide synergistic effect, superior analgesia, and physiologic benefits.

A multimodal approach to perioperative recovery to control postoperative pathophysiology and facilitate rehabilitation is an integral part of almost all enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) pathways and will result in accelerated recovery and decreased length of hospitalization.[24] One of the key components of a multimodal analgesic regimen within any ERAS pathway is the minimization of opioid use and side effects from opioids by utilizing nonopioid analgesics and techniques.[25] Patients undergoing major abdominal or thoracic procedures and who participate in a multimodal strategy have a reduction in hormonal and metabolic stress, preservation of total-body protein, shorter times to tracheal extubation, lower pain scores, earlier return of bowel function, and earlier fulfillment of intensive care unit discharge criteria when compared to patients receiving traditional pain management.[24] ERAS pathways integrate the most recent evidence from surgery, anesthesiology, nociceptive neurobiology, and pain treatment, and transforms traditional care programs into effective postoperative rehabilitation pathways.[24] This approach will decrease perioperative morbidity, costs of care, decrease the length of hospital stay, and improve patient satisfaction without compromising safety.[26,27] ERAS pathways are more common in adult surgical patients, although there is increasing interest in utilizing ERAS in pediatric patients.[26] Widespread implementation of these programs requires multidisciplinary collaboration, change in the traditional principles of postoperative care, additional resources, and expansion of the traditional APS, which may be limited in the current economic climate.[28]

Treatment Methods

Many options are available for the treatment of postoperative pain, including systemic (i.e., opioid and non-opioid) analgesics and regional (i.e., neuraxial and peripheral) analgesic techniques. By considering patients' preferences and making an individualized assessment of the risks and benefits of each treatment modality, the clinician can optimize the postoperative analgesic regimen for each patient. Essential aspects of postoperative monitoring of patients receiving various postoperative analgesic treatment methods are listed in Box 81.1.[29]

BOX 81.1 Monitoring and Documentation of Postoperative Analgesia

Analgesic Medication*

Medication, concentration, and dose of drug
Settings of PCA device: demand dose, lockout interval, continuous basal infusion
Amount of drug administered (including number of unsuccessful and successful doses)
Limits set (e.g., 1- and 4-h limits on dose administered)
Supplemental or breakthrough analgesics

Routine Monitoring

Vital signs: temperature, heart rate, blood pressure, respiratory rate, average pain score
Pain score at rest and with activity, pain relief

Side Effects

Cardiovascular: hypotension, bradycardia, or tachycardia
Respiratory status: respiratory rate, level of sedation
Nausea and vomiting, pruritus, urinary retention

Neurologic Examination

Assessment of motor block or function and sensory level
Evidence of epidural hematoma

Instructions Provided

Treatment of side effects
Concurrent use of other CNS depressants
Parameters for triggering notification of the covering physician
Provision of contact information (24 hr/7 day per week) if problems occur
Emergency analgesic treatment if the PCA device fails

*Postoperative analgesia includes systemic opioids and regional analgesic techniques. This list incorporates some of the important elements of preprinted orders, documentation, and intravenous PCA and epidural analgesia daily care described in the ASA Practice Guidelines for Acute Pain Management.[29]

CNS, Central nervous system; *PCA*, patient-controlled analgesia.

Systemic Analgesic Techniques

OPIOIDS

Advantages and Characteristics

Opioid analgesics are one of the cornerstone options for the treatment of postoperative pain. They generally exert their analgesic effects through μ-receptors in the CNS, although opioids may also act at peripheral opioid receptors. A theoretical advantage of opioid analgesics is that there is no analgesic ceiling. Realistically, the analgesic efficacy of opioids is typically limited by the development of tolerance or opioid-related side effects such as nausea, vomiting, sedation, or respiratory depression. Opioids may be administered by the subcutaneous, transcutaneous, transmucosal, or intramuscular route, but the most common routes of postoperative systemic opioid analgesic administration are oral and intravenous (IV). Opioids may also be administered at specific anatomic sites such as the intrathecal or epidural space (see later sections, "Single-Dose Neuraxial Opioids" and "Continuous Epidural Analgesia").

There is wide intersubject and intrasubject variability in the relationship of opioid dose, serum concentration, and analgesic response in the treatment of postoperative pain. Serum drug concentrations may exhibit wider variability with certain routes of administration (e.g., intramuscular) than with others (e.g., IV). In general, opioids are administered parenterally (intravenously or intramuscularly) for the treatment of moderate to severe postoperative pain, in part because these routes provide a more rapid and reliable onset of analgesic action than the oral route does. Parenteral opioid administration may be necessary in patients who are unable to tolerate oral intake postoperatively. The transition from parenteral to oral administration of opioids usually occurs after the patient resumes oral intake and postoperative pain has been stabilized with parenteral opioids.

Intravenous Patient-Controlled Analgesia

Various factors, including the aforementioned broad interpatient and intrapatient variability in analgesic needs, variability in serum drug levels (especially with intramuscular injection), and administrative delays, may contribute to inadequate postoperative analgesia. A traditional prescribed as-needed (PRN) analgesic regimen probably cannot compensate for these limitations. By circumventing some of these issues, IV patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) optimizes delivery of analgesic opioids and minimizes the effects of pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic variability in individual patients. IV PCA is based on the premise that a negative-feedback loop exists; when pain is experienced, analgesic medication is self-administered, and when pain is reduced, there are no further demands. When the negative-feedback loop is violated, excessive sedation or respiratory depression may occur. Although some equipment-related malfunctions can occur, the PCA device itself is relatively free of problems, and most problems related to PCA use result from user or operator error.[30]

A PCA device can be programmed for several variables, including the demand (bolus) dose, lockout interval, and background infusion (Table 81.1). An optimal demand or bolus dose is integral to the efficacy of IV PCA because an insufficient demand dose may result in inadequate analgesia, whereas an excessive demand dose may result in a higher incidence of undesirable side effects such as respiratory depression.[31] Although the optimal demand dose is uncertain, the data available suggest that the optimal

TABLE 81.1 Intravenous Patient-Controlled Analgesia Regimens

Drug Concentration	Size of Bolus*	Lockout Interval (min)	Continuous Infusion
AGONISTS			
Morphine (1 mg/mL)			
Adult	0.5-2.5 mg	5-10	—
Pediatric	0.01-0.03 mg/kg (max, 0.15 mg/kg/h)	5-10	0.01-0.03 mg/kg/h
Fentanyl (0.01 mg/mL)			
Adult	10-20 μg	4-10	—
Pediatric	0.5-1 μg/kg (max, 4 μg/kg/h)	5-10	0.5-1 μχg/kg/h
Hydromorphone (0.2 mg/mL)			
Adult	0.05-0.25 mg	5-10	—
Pediatric	0.003-0.005 mg/kg (max, 0.02 mg/kg/h)	5-10	0.003-0.005 mg/kg/h
Alfentanil (0.1 mg/mL)	0.1-0.2 mg	5-8	—
Methadone (1 mg/mL)	0.5-2.5 mg	8-20	—
Oxymorphone (0.25 mg/mL)	0.2-0.4 mg	8-10	—
Sufentanil (0.002 mg/mL)	2-5 μg	4-10	—
AGONIST-ANTAGONISTS			
Buprenorphine (0.03 mg/mL)	0.03-0.1 mg	8-20	—
Nalbuphine (1 mg/mL)	1-5 mg	5-15	—
Pentazocine (10 mg/mL)	5-30 mg	5-15	—

*All doses are for adult patients unless noted otherwise. Units vary across agents for size of the bolus (mg vs. mg/kg vs. mcg vs. μg/kg) and continuous infusion (mg/kg/h vs. μχg/kg/h). The anesthesiologist should proceed with titrated intravenous loading doses if necessary to establish initial analgesia. Individual patient requirements vary widely, with smaller doses typically given to elderly or compromised patients. Continuous infusions are not initially recommended for opioid-naïve adult patients.

demand dose is 1 mg for morphine and 40 μg for fentanyl in opioid-naïve patients; however, the actual dose for fentanyl (10-20 μg) is often less in clinical practice.[30] The lockout interval may also affect the analgesic efficacy of IV PCA. A lockout interval that is too long may result in inadequate analgesia and decrease the effectiveness of IV PCA. A lockout interval that is too short allows the patient to self-administer another demand dose before feeling the full analgesic effect of the previous dose and thus may contribute to an increase in medication-related side effects. In essence, the lockout interval is a safety feature of IV PCA, and although the optimal lockout interval is unknown, most intervals range from 5 to 10 minutes, depending on the medication in the PCA pump; varying the interval within this range appears to have no effect on analgesia or side effects.[30]

Most PCA devices allow administration of a continuous or background infusion in addition to the demand dose. Initially, routine use of a background infusion predicted certain advantages, including improved analgesia, especially during sleep; however, analgesic benefits of a background infusion have not been successful in opioid-naïve patients. A background infusion only increases the analgesic dosage used and the incidence of adverse respiratory events in the postoperative period, especially in adult subjects. Furthermore, use of a nighttime background infusion does not improve postoperative sleep patterns, analgesia, or recovery profiles.[32] Although routine use of continuous or background infusion as part of IV PCA in adult opioid-naïve patients is not recommended, a background infusion in opioid-tolerant or pediatric patients may be effective (see later sections, "Opioid-Tolerant Patients" and "Pediatric Patients") (also see Chapter 24).

When compared with traditional PRN analgesic regimens, IV PCA provides superior postoperative analgesia and improves patient satisfaction, but the presence of economic benefits is not clear.[33] A metaanalysis revealed that IV PCA (vs. as-needed opioids) provides significantly better analgesia and patient satisfaction; however, these patients used more opioids and had a more frequent incidence of pruritus than those treated with PRN opioids, but there was no difference in the incidence of adverse events.[33] With regard to economic outcomes, whether IV PCA is less expensive than traditional PRN intramuscular opioid administration is not clear because the calculations of cost are complex.

IV PCA may provide advantages when assessing other patient-related outcomes such as patient satisfaction; these outcomes have become more important as healthcare organizations use them as a measure of quality and a tool for marketing purposes. Patients usually prefer IV PCA over intravenously, intramuscularly, or subcutaneously administered PRN opioids. Greater patient satisfaction with IV PCA may be the result of superior analgesia and perceived control over the administration of analgesic medications and avoidance of disclosing pain or securing analgesic medication from nurses; however, the reasons for patient satisfaction are complex and many factors may contribute to or predict satisfaction with IV PCA. Although IV PCA use overall creates better satisfaction, the proper assessment of patient satisfaction can be complex.[34]

The incidence of opioid-related adverse events from IV PCA is not different from that of PRN opioids administered intravenously, intramuscularly, or subcutaneously. The rate of respiratory depression associated with IV PCA is infrequent (approximately 1.5%) and is not more frequent than that with PRN systemic or neuraxial opioids.[35] Factors that may influence the frequency and intensity of respiratory depression with IV PCA include use of a background infusion, advanced age, concomitant administration of sedative or hypnotic drugs, and coexisting pulmonary disease such as obstructive sleep apnea (OSA).[36] IV PCA-related respiratory depression may also be caused by errors in programming or administration (i.e., operator error).[37]

NON-OPIOIDS

Nonsteroidal Antiinflammatory Agents

Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) consist of a diverse group of analgesic compounds with different pharmacokinetic properties. The primary mechanism by which NSAIDs exert their analgesic effect is through inhibition of cyclooxygenase (COX) and synthesis of prostaglandins, which are important mediators of peripheral sensitization and hyperalgesia. In addition to being peripherally acting analgesics, NSAIDs can also exert their analgesic effects through inhibition of spinal COX.[38] The discovery of at least two COX isoforms (i.e., COX-1 is constitutive and COX-2 is inducible) with different functions (i.e., COX-1 participates in platelet aggregation, hemostasis, and gastric mucosal protection, whereas COX-2 participates in pain, inflammation, and fever) has led to the development of selective COX-2 inhibitors that differ from traditional NSAIDs, which block both COX-1 and COX-2.[39] The discovery of a COX-3 variant may represent a primary central mechanism by which acetaminophen and other antipyretics decrease pain and fever; however, the precise relationship between COX-3 and acetaminophen is still uncertain.[40]

NSAIDs given alone generally provide effective analgesia for mild to moderate pain. NSAIDs are also traditionally considered a useful adjunct to opioids for the treatment of moderate to severe pain. Yet, some quantitative, systematic reviews suggest that NSAIDs, alone or in combination with opioids, may be more beneficial than previously thought (Table 81.2 and Fig. 81.1). NSAIDs may be administered orally or parenterally and are particularly useful as components of a multimodal analgesic regimen by producing analgesia through a different mechanism from that of opioids or local anesthetics. Several meta-analyses have examined the analgesic efficacy of NSAIDs (including COX-2 inhibitors) and acetaminophen when added to IV PCA with opioids. Surprisingly and importantly, NSAIDs[41,42] resulted in a statistically significant (but probably not clinically meaningful) reduction in pain scores.[43,44] Although all regimens significantly decreased morphine consumption, only NSAIDs reduced risk for the opioid-related side effects of nausea, vomiting, and sedation.

Perioperative use of NSAIDs has several side effects, including decreased hemostasis, renal dysfunction, and gastrointestinal hemorrhage. Inhibition of COX and the formation of prostaglandins cause many of the side effects, which mediate many diverse processes throughout the body. Decreased hemostasis from NSAID use is from platelet dysfunction and inhibition of thromboxane A2 (generated by COX-1), an important mediator of platelet aggregation and vasoconstriction. Evidence of the effect of NSAIDs on perioperative bleeding is equivocal; a surveillance study of perioperative ketorolac administration did not demonstrate a significant increase in operative site bleeding. Whether NSAIDs may also have a deleterious effect on bone healing and osteogenesis is controversial. Although NSAIDs have been used following acetabular/hip fractures and hip replacement surgery to reduce heterotopic ossification, the short-term effect of NSAIDs on other skeletal tissues is less clear.[45] Two recent systematic reviews indicated that when examining the highest-quality studies, there was no increased risk of nonunion with NSAID exposure. Certainly, a short-term NSAID regimen can be used for treatment of post-fracture pain without significantly increasing the risk of disrupted healing.[46] A brief (<14 days) exposure to normal-dose NSAIDs (e.g., ketorolac <120 mg/day) was safe after spinal fusion; however, use of large-dose ketorolac

TABLE 81.2 Relative Efficacy of Single-Dose Analgesics in Providing Greater than 50% Relief of Moderate to Severe Postoperative Pain

Drug*	Mean NNT†	95% CI
Acetaminophen (1000 mg PO)	3.8	3.4-4.4
Aspirin (600-650 mg PO)	4.4	4.0-4.9
Aspirin (1000 mg PO)	4.0	3.2-5.4
Diclofenac (50 mg PO)	2.3	2.0-2.7
Diclofenac (100 mg PO)	1.9	1.6-2.2
Ibuprofen (600 mg PO)	2.4	1.9-3.3
Ketorolac (10 mg PO)	2.6	2.3-3.1
Ketorolac (30 mg IM)	3.4	2.5-4.9
Naproxen (550 mg PO)	2.7	2.3-3.3
Celebrex (200 mg PO)	3.5	2.9-4.4
Celebrex (400mg PO)	2.1	1.8-2.5
Tramadol (100 mg PO)	4.8	3.8-6.1
Gabapentin (600 mg PO)	11	6.0-35
Codeine (60 mg) + acetaminophen (600-650 mg PO)	4.2	3.4-5.3
Oxycodone (5 mg) + acetaminophen (325 mg PO)	2.5	2.0-3.2
Codeine (60 mg PO)	16.7	11.0-48.0
Morphine (10 mg IM)	2.9	2.6-3.6
Oxycodone (15 mg PO)	2.4	1.5-4.9

*Data obtained in part and modified from Bandolier with permission. http://www.bandolier.org.uk/booth/painpag/Acutrev/Analgesics/lftab.html.

†NNT in this case refers to the number of patients who must be treated to obtain greater than 50% relief of moderate to severe postoperative pain. NNT conveys statistical and clinical significance, is useful in comparing the efficacy of different interventions, and summarizes treatment effects in a clinically relevant manner. A lower mean NNT implies greater analgesic efficacy in this example. *CI*, confidence interval; *IM*, intramuscular; *NNT*, number needed to treat; *PO*, oral route.

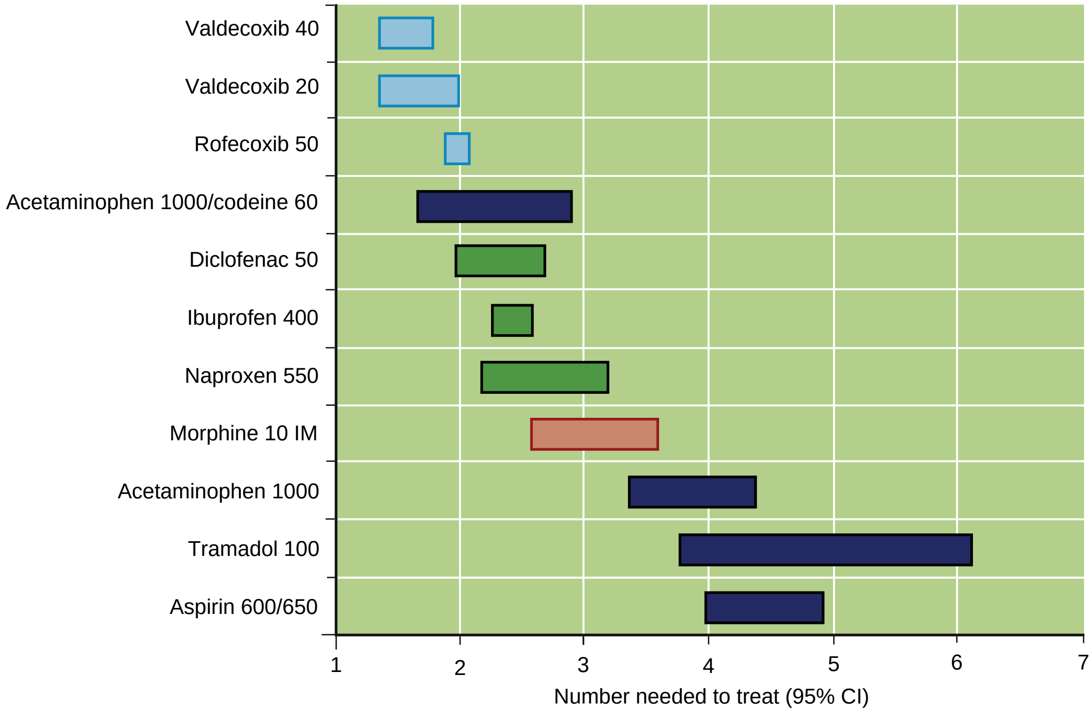


Fig. 81.1 Number needed to treat (NNT) for at least 50% pain relief in patients with moderate to severe pain. The mean and 95% confidence interval *(CI)* for the NNTs are shown for several opioid and nonopioid analgesics from Table 81.2. The NNTs are derived from trials investigating the efficacy of a single dose of nonopioid analgesic versus placebo in providing more than 50% pain relief for moderate to severe postoperative pain. Numbers with drug names are doses in mg. (From Bandolier. http://www.medicine.ox.ac.uk/bandolier/.)

(>120 mg/day) increased the risk of nonunion, suggesting a dose-dependent effect of perioperative NSAIDs on spinal fusion healing.[47] Spine surgeons will more commonly err on the conservative side and refuse to have postoperative spine fusion patients receive NSAIDs.

Perioperative NSAID-induced renal dysfunction may occur in high-risk patients, such as those with hypovolemia, abnormal renal function, or abnormal serum electrolytes, because prostaglandins dilate the renal vascular beds and mediate diuretic and natriuretic renal effects. NSAIDs should not be withheld in patients with normal preoperative renal function, as euvolemic patients with normal renal function are unlikely to be affected, although NSAIDs may cause a clinically unimportant transient reduction in renal function in the early postoperative period in patients with normal preoperative renal function.[48] Gastrointestinal bleeding may be more likely with NSAID intake because of inhibition of COX-1, which is required for the synthesis of cytoprotective gastric mucosal prostaglandins. Bronchospasm may be induced by NSAIDs (including aspirin).[49] Because expression of peripheral COX-2 is increased during inflammation, selective inhibition of COX-2 could theoretically provide analgesia without the side effects associated with COX-1 inhibition. COX-2 inhibitors have a less frequent incidence of gastrointestinal complications[50] and exhibit minimal platelet inhibition, even when administered in supratherapeutic doses.[51] However, long-term use of COX-2 inhibitors has an excess cardiovascular risk such that rofecoxib was withdrawn from the market.[52] The cardiovascular risks of COX-2 inhibitors are heterogeneous and influenced by many factors such as the specific medication, dosage, and patient characteristics.[52] Issues surrounding the perioperative use of COX-2 inhibitors are slightly different from those of longer-term use of COX-2 inhibitors. The perioperative use of potent COX-2 inhibitors resulted in a higher rate of cardiovascular events in high-risk (coronary artery bypass grafting)[53] but not lower-risk (major noncardiac surgery) patients. Celecoxib, a COX-2 inhibitor, has less COX-2 selectivity than other more potent COX-2 inhibitors (rofecoxib) and is still clinically available.[54] Nissen and associates conducted a randomized controlled trial (RCT) of 24,081 patients randomly assigned to celecoxib, naproxen, or ibuprofen and found that celecoxib was noninferior to ibuprofen or naproxen with regard to cardiovascular safety.[55] Liu and associates studied 10,873 patients admitted for total joint arthroplasty and concluded that perioperative use of NSAIDs was not associated with increased risk of postoperative myocardial ischemia and may reduce the hospital length of stay.[55,56]

Another controversial topic regarding NSAIDs is the association with postoperative bleeding. It is not surprising that several metaanalyses indicate that COX-2 inhibitors, which exhibit minimal platelet inhibition even when administered in supratherapeutic doses, are not associated with an increase in perioperative bleeding.[57-59] More recent metaanalyses also indicate that traditional NSAIDs (ibuprofen, ketorolac) are not associated with an increase in perioperative bleeding. Finally, some studies have been published suggesting a link between NSAIDs and anastomotic leak, but most studies are flawed or have preexisting selection bias and a metaanalysis did not demonstrate a statistically significant increase in incidence of anastomotic dehiscence with NSAIDs. Newer formulations of NSAIDs are approved for treatment of acute postoperative pain (IV ibuprofen,[60] and intranasal ketorolac[3]). Cost of the new drugs remains to be an issue, especially in today's cost-conscious healthcare environment.[61,62]

Acetaminophen

Acetaminophen has been used for several decades and is believed to have a central role of action in analgesia. It has antipyretic and antiinflammatory properties. Its mechanism of action is through activation of descending serotonergic pathways in the CNS and via the inhibition of prostaglandin synthesis.[63] It is used most often in conjunction with other medications as part of a multimodal analgesia protocol. Maximum recommended dose is 4 gm/day in adult patients. The US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved IV acetaminophen formulation for use in the United States in 2011.[64] Sinatra and colleagues studied the efficacy of IV acetaminophen after joint arthroplasty in a placebo-controlled study.[65] The study group had decreased pain scores, used fewer opioids, had a longer median time to morphine rescue compared to placebo, and were more satisfied with pain management. A metaanalysis of 865 patients enrolled in four clinical trials addressing the impact of addition of IV acetaminophen to multimodal analgesia after total hip and knee arthroplasty concluded that there was a significant decrease in pain score and opioid consumption on POD 1 to 3. Nausea and vomiting were decreased in the groups who received acetaminophen.[66] However, the quality of the studies included in the analysis was questioned. Peak plasma concentration is achieved faster after IV versus oral administration of acetaminophen.[67] Evidence to support the premise that increased bioavailability would enhance clinical efficacy is lacking. Cost effectiveness of the IV formulation and patient ability to tolerate oral intake, based on the targeted surgery, should be accounted for when considering integrating IV acetaminophen into a multimodal analgesia protocol. Data from 2013 show that the average increase in cost to hospitals adopting IV acetaminophen can be significant, based on its use.[68]

Gabapentinoids

Gabapentin and pregabalin, antiepileptic drugs also used in the treatment of neuropathic pain, interact with calcium channel α_2-delta ligands to inhibit calcium influx and subsequent release of excitatory neurotransmitters. However, oral pregabalin is absorbed more rapidly and has more absolute bioavailability (≥90% vs. <60%) than gabapentin.[69] Despite these differences, oral gabapentin improves the analgesic efficacy of opioids both at rest and with movement, and reduces opioid consumption and opioid-related side effects, but with a possibly increased incidence of side effects such as sedation and dizziness.[70-72] A metaanalysis investigating the analgesic efficacy of pregabalin for acute postoperative pain demonstrated use of pregabalin was associated with a decrease in opioid consumption and opioid-related side effects, but no difference in pain intensity.[73] Another meta-analysis suggested that perioperative administration of pregabalin may provide additional analgesia in the short term but also results in an increase in side effects such as dizziness/light-headedness or visual disturbances.[74]

Although gabapentinoids are commonly used as part of a multimodal analgesic regimen, it should be noted that there have been recent publications questioning the analgesic benefits of gabapentinoids.[75] Several studies have noted that the quality of evidence for a clinically relevant benefit of gabapentinoids is low and the serious adverse events in available trials were poorly reported.[76-78] When examining trials with low risk of bias, gabapentinoids may actually have a minimal opioid-sparing effect but the risk of serious adverse events seems increased, as the use of gabapentin is associated with increased rates of respiratory depression among patients undergoing laparoscopic surgery.[79] Finally, gabapentinoids may not provide any additional analgesia for some surgical procedures including total hip arthroplasty.[80] The use of gabapentinoids should be considered on an individual basis after surgery.

KETAMINE

Ketamine is traditionally recognized as an intraoperatively administered anesthetic; however, small subanesthetic dose (analgesic) ketamine can facilitate postoperative analgesia because of its NMDA-antagonistic properties, which may be important in attenuating central sensitization and opioid tolerance.[81] Ketamine can be administered orally, intravenously (PCA or as a continuous infusion), subcutaneously, or intramuscularly. A systematic review of perioperative ketamine use found that perioperative analgesic doses of ketamine reduce rescue analgesic requirements and pain intensity.[82] In addition, perioperative ketamine reduced 24-hour PCA morphine consumption and postoperative nausea or vomiting and had minimal adverse effects.[82] A subsequent systematic review found that IV ketamine for postoperative analgesia was an effective adjunct for postoperative analgesia, particularly in patients undergoing painful procedures such as upper abdominal, thoracic, and major orthopedic surgeries.[83] The administration of ketamine in postoperative pediatric patients is also associated with decreased postoperative pain intensity.[84] One potential concern is the possible impact of ketamine's amnestic effects on the neuropharmacologic and cognitive level of patients with use of perioperative ketamine infusions.[85] Although possible, these effects infrequently occur when the medication is given in analgesic doses. Ketamine has also been given epidurally and intrathecally, but racemic mixtures of ketamine are neurotoxic, and therefore the use of neuraxial racemic ketamine is strongly discouraged. Although further studies are needed to elucidate the specific parameters (e.g., dose, duration of use) for ketamine in the perioperative period, this analgesic can be considered on an individual basis as part of a multimodal approach to postoperative analgesia.

Tramadol

Tramadol is a synthetic opioid that exhibits weak μ-agonist activity and inhibits reuptake of serotonin and norepinephrine, although the relative degree of contribution of each modality to postoperative analgesia is not certain.[86] Although tramadol exerts its analgesic effects primarily through central mechanisms, it may have peripheral local

TABLE 81.3 Properties of Neuraxial Opioids

Property	Lipophilic Opioids	Hydrophilic Opioids
Common drugs	Fentanyl, sufentanil	Morphine, hydromorphone
Onset of analgesia	Rapid onset (5-10 min)	Delayed onset (30-60 min)
Duration of analgesia*	Shorter duration (2-4 h)	Longer duration (6-24 h)
CSF spread	Minimal CSF spread	Extensive CSF spread
Site of action	Spinal ± systemic	Primarily spinal ± supraspinal
Side effects		
Nausea and vomiting	Lower incidence with lipophilic than with hydrophilic opioids	
Pruritus	Lower incidence with lipophilic than with hydrophilic opioids	
Respiratory depression	Primarily early; minimal delay	Both early (<6 h) and delayed (>6 h) possible

*The duration of analgesia varies. *CSF*, Cerebrospinal fluid.

anesthetic properties and has been used as an adjunct for brachial plexus block.[87] Tramadol is effective in treating mild to moderate postoperative pain[88] and is comparable in analgesic efficacy to aspirin (650 mg), with codeine (60 mg), or ibuprofen (400 mg) (see Table 81.2 and Fig. 81.1).[88] The addition of acetaminophen to tramadol (vs. tramadol alone) may decrease the incidence of side effects of tramadol without reducing its analgesic efficacy.[89] Use of tramadol in IV PCA results in similar pain scores when compared with that from IV PCA opioids; however, the side effect profile is different between the two groups (i.e., a more frequent incidence of postoperative nausea/vomiting but lower pruritus with tramadol).[90] Advantages of tramadol for postoperative analgesia include a relative lack of respiratory depression, major organ toxicity, depression of gastrointestinal motility, and a theoretically lower potential for abuse.[86] Common side effects (overall incidence of 1.6%-6.1%) include dizziness, drowsiness, sweating, nausea, vomiting, dry mouth, and headache.[88] Tramadol should be used with caution in patients with seizures or increased intracranial pressure and is contraindicated in those taking monoamine oxidase inhibitors.[88]

Regional Analgesic Techniques

A variety of neuraxial (primarily epidural) and peripheral regional analgesic techniques may be used for the effective treatment of postoperative pain. In general, the analgesia provided by epidural and peripheral techniques (particularly when local anesthetics are used) is site-specific and superior to that with systemic opioids, and use of these techniques may even reduce morbidity and mortality.[13] However, as with all approaches, the risks and benefits should be compared, especially regarding the controversies about use of these techniques in the presence of various anticoagulants.

Single-Dose Neuraxial Opioids

Administration of a single dose of opioid may be efficacious as a sole or adjuvant analgesic drug when administered intrathecally or epidurally. One of the most important factors in determining the clinical pharmacology for a specific opioid is its degree of lipophilicity (vs. hydrophilicity) (Table 81.3). Once they have reached the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) through direct intrathecal injection or gradual migration from the epidural space, hydrophilic opioids (i.e., morphine and hydromorphone) tend to remain within the CSF and produce a delayed but longer duration of analgesia, along with a generally more frequent incidence of side effects because of the cephalic or supraspinal spread of these compounds. Neuraxial administration of lipophilic opioids, such as fentanyl and sufentanil, provides a rapid onset of analgesia, and their rapid clearance from CSF may limit cephalic spread and the development of certain side effects such as delayed respiratory depression. The site of analgesic action for hydrophilic opioids is overwhelmingly spinal, but the primary site of action (spinal vs. systemic) for single-dose neuraxial lipophilic opioids is not as certain.

The differences in pharmacokinetics between lipophilic and hydrophilic opioids may influence the choice of opioid aiming to optimize analgesia and minimize side effects for a particular clinical situation. Single-dose intrathecal administration of a lipophilic opioid may be useful in situations (e.g., ambulatory surgical patients) in which rapid analgesic onset (minutes) is combined with a moderate duration of action (<4 hours). Single-dose hydrophilic opioid administration provides effective postoperative analgesia and may be useful in patients monitored on an inpatient basis, for whom a longer duration of analgesia would be beneficial.

Single-dose epidural administration of lipophilic and hydrophilic opioids is used to provide postoperative analgesia, with considerations generally similar to those discussed for single-dose intrathecal administration of opioids. A single bolus of epidural fentanyl may be administered to provide rapid postoperative analgesia; however, diluting the epidural dose of fentanyl (typically 50-100 μg) in at least 10 mL of preservative-free normal saline will decrease the onset and prolong the duration of analgesia, possibly as a result of an increase in initial spread and diffusion of the lipophilic opioid. Single-dose epidural morphine is effective for postoperative analgesia and use of a single-dose hydrophilic opioid may be especially helpful in providing postoperative epidural analgesia when the epidural catheter's location is not congruent with the surgical incision (e.g., lumbar epidural catheter for thoracic surgery). Smaller doses of epidural morphine may be required for elderly patients and thoracic catheter sites. Commonly used dosages for intrathecal and epidural administration of neuraxial opioids are provided in Table 81.4.

TABLE 81.4 Dosing of Neuraxial Opioids

Drug	Intrathecal or Subarachnoid Single Dose	Epidural Single Dose	Epidural Continuous Infusion
Fentanyl	5-25 µg	50-100 µg	25-100 µg/h
Sufentanil	2-10 µg	10-50 µg	10-20 µg/h
Alfentanil	—	0.5-1 mg	0.2 mg/h
Morphine	0.1-0.3 mg	1-5 mg	0.1-1 mg/h
Hydromorphone	—	0.5-1 mg	0.1-0.2 mg/h
Extended-release morphine*	Not recommended	5-15 mg	Not recommended

*See package insert for details on dosage and administration.

Doses are based on the use of a neuraxial opioid alone. No continuous intrathecal or subarachnoid infusions are provided. Lower doses may be effective when administered to the elderly or when injected in the cervical or thoracic region. Units vary across agents for single dose (mg vs. µg) and continuous infusion (mg/h vs. µg/h).

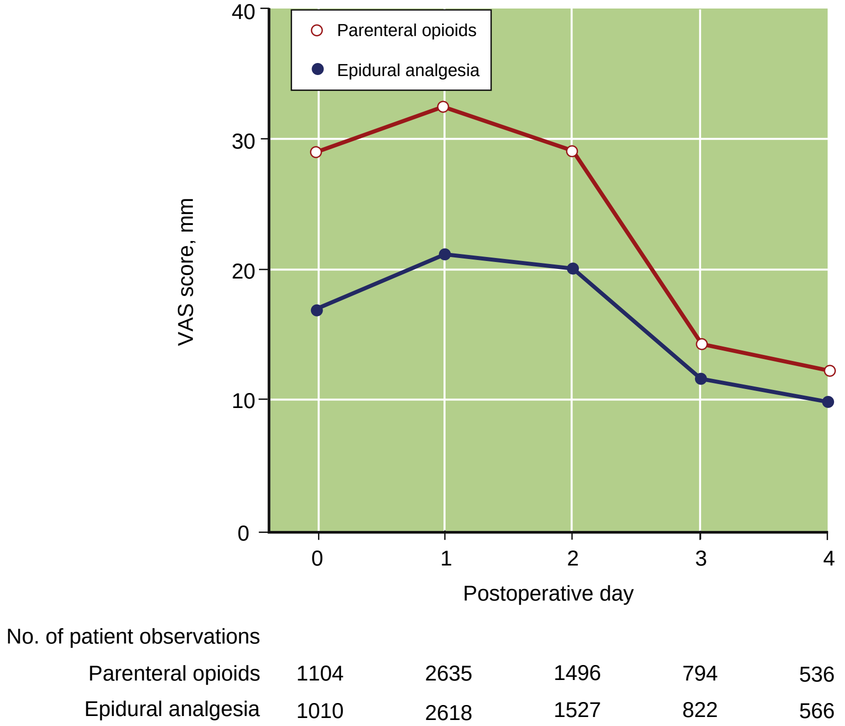


Fig. 81.2 Mean and standard deviation of visual analog pain scores (*y* axis) for both epidural analgesia (represented by *dark blue circles*) and parenteral opioids (represented by *open red circles*) for each postoperative day (*x* axis) up to the fourth day after surgery. (From Block BM, Liu SS, Rowlingson AJ, et al. Efficacy of postoperative epidural analgesia: a meta-analysis. *JAMA.* 2003;290:2455–2463, with permission.)

Continuous Epidural Analgesia

Analgesia delivered through an indwelling epidural catheter is a safe and effective method for management of acute postoperative pain. Postoperative epidural analgesia can provide analgesia superior to that of systemic opioids (Fig. 81.2).[91,92] Of note, however, epidural analgesia is not a generic term but incorporates a wide range of options, including the choice and dose of analgesic drugs, location of catheter placement, and onset and duration of perioperative use.[93] Although this section focuses on the postoperative management of epidural analgesia, intraoperative use of the epidural catheter as part of a combined epidural-general anesthetic technique results in less pain and faster patient recovery immediately after surgery than general anesthesia followed by systemic opioids does. Each of these options may affect the quality of postoperative analgesia, patient-reported outcomes, and even rates of morbidity and mortality.

Analgesic Drugs

Local Anesthetics. Epidural infusion of local anesthetic alone may be used for postoperative analgesia, but in general it is not as effective in controlling pain as local anesthetic-opioid epidural analgesic combinations are.[91,92] The precise location of action of local anesthetics in the epidural space is not clear, and potential sites include the spinal nerve roots, dorsal root ganglion, or spinal cord itself.[94] Epidural infusion of local anesthetic alone may be warranted for postoperative analgesia in an attempt to avoid opioid-related side effects; however, the sole use of local anesthetics is less

TABLE 81.5 Recommended Catheter Insertion Sites for Surgical Procedures

Location of Incision	Examples of Surgical Procedures	Congruent Epidural Catheter Placement
Thoracic	Lung reduction, radical mastectomy, thoracotomy, thymectomy	T4-8
Upper abdominal	Cholecystectomy, esophagectomy, gastrectomy, hepatic resection, Whipple procedure	T6-8
Middle abdominal	Cystoprostatectomy, nephrectomy	T7-10
Lower abdominal	Abdominal aortic aneurysm repair, colectomy, radical prostatectomy, total abdominal hysterectomy	T8-11
Lower extremity	Femoral-popliteal bypass, total hip or total knee replacement	L1-4

L, Lumbar level; *T*, thoracic level.

common than the use of a local anesthetic-opioid combination because of a significant failure rate (from regression of sensory blockade and inadequate analgesia) and relatively high incidence of motor block and hypotension.[93]

Opioids for Epidural Infusion. Opioids may be used alone for postoperative epidural infusion and do not generally cause motor block or hypotension from sympathetic blockade.[93] There are differences between continuous epidural infusion (CEI) of lipophilic (e.g., fentanyl, sufentanil) and hydrophilic (e.g., morphine, hydromorphone) opioids. The analgesic site of action (spinal vs. systemic) of CEI of lipophilic opioids is not clear. Although some data suggest a benefit from epidural (vs. IV) infusion of lipophilic opioids,[95] the overall advantage of administering CEI of lipophilic opioids alone is marginal.[93]

The analgesic site of action for continuous hydrophilic opioid infusion is primarily spinal. Continuous infusion of a hydrophilic opioid may be especially useful for providing postoperative analgesia when the site of catheter insertion is not congruent with the site of surgery or when side effects (e.g., hypotension, motor block) are attributed to the epidural local anesthetic. Use of a continuous infusion rather than intermittent boluses of epidural morphine may result in superior analgesia with fewer side effects. CEI of hydrophilic opioids may provide analgesia superior to that of traditional PRN administration of systemic opioids.

Local Anesthetic-Opioid Combinations. Use of a local anesthetic and an opioid in an epidural infusion may have advantages over infusions consisting of a local anesthetic or opioid alone. When compared with a local anesthetic or opioid alone, a local anesthetic-opioid combination provides superior postoperative analgesia (including improved dynamic pain relief), limits regression of sensory blockade, and possibly decreases the dose of local anesthetic administered, although the effect on the incidence is uncertain.[93] CEI of a local anesthetic-opioid combination also provides analgesia superior to that of IV PCA with opioids.[91] It is unclear whether the analgesic effect of the local anesthetic and opioid in epidural analgesia is additive or synergistic. The choice of local anesthetic for CEI varies. In general, bupivacaine or ropivacaine is chosen because of the differential and preferential clinical sensory blockade with minimal impairment of motor function. Concentrations used for postoperative epidural analgesia are lower than those used for intraoperative anesthesia. The choice of opioid also varies, although many clinicians prefer a lipophilic opioid (e.g., fentanyl, sufentanil) to allow rapid titration of analgesia.[93] Use of a hydrophilic opioid (morphine, hydromorphone) as part of a local anesthetic-opioid epidural analgesic regimen may also provide effective postoperative analgesia. The optimal local anesthetic and opioid dose that provides the lowest pain scores with the fewest medication-related side effects is unknown and further investigation is needed to determine the optimal combinations for other types of surgical procedures with different epidural catheter insertion sites and to compare the efficacy of these optimal continuous infusions with patient-controlled epidural analgesia (PCEA).

Adjuvant Drugs. A variety of adjuvants may be added to epidural infusions to enhance analgesia while minimizing side effects, but none has gained widespread acceptance. Two of the more studied adjuvants are clonidine and epinephrine. Clonidine mediates its analgesic effects primarily through the spinal dorsal horn α_2-receptors on primary afferents and interneurons, as well as the descending noradrenergic pathway, and the epidural dose typically used ranges from 5 to 20 μg/h. Clinical application of clonidine is limited by its side effects: hypotension, bradycardia, and sedation. Hypotension and bradycardia are both dose dependent. Epidural administration of NMDA antagonists, such as ketamine, can theoretically be useful in attenuating central sensitization and potentiating the analgesic effect of epidural opioids, but additional safety and analgesic data are needed.

Location of Catheter Insertion

Insertion of the epidural catheter congruent to the incisional dermatome (i.e., catheter-incision–congruent analgesia) (Table 81.5) results in optimal postoperative epidural analgesia by infusing analgesics to the appropriate incisional dermatomes, providing superior analgesia, minimizing side effects (e.g., lower extremity motor block and urinary retention), and decreasing morbidity.[13,93] When compared with catheter-incision–congruent epidural analgesia, catheter-incision–incongruent epidural analgesia (e.g., low lumbar catheter placement for thoracic procedures) results in increased pain and early removal of the epidural catheter because of ineffective analgesia. By targeting delivery of analgesic drugs to the appropriate dermatomes, catheter-incision–congruent epidural analgesia may result in smaller drug requirements and decreased medication-related side effects. There is a more frequent incidence of lower extremity motor block with the use of lumbar epidural catheters, and an earlier-than-anticipated termination of epidural analgesia may also result. Use of a high thoracic epidural for abdominal or thoracic surgery does not inhibit sympathetic nerve activity in the lower extremities and may result in a relatively infrequent incidence of urinary retention, thus diminishing the need for routine bladder catheterization. Placement of thoracic epidural catheters is relatively safe, and a more frequent incidence of neurologic complications is not documented with placement of a thoracic (vs. lumbar) epidural catheter. Furthermore, the benefits of epidural analgesia in decreasing morbidity in patients undergoing abdominal and thoracic surgery are seen only with thoracic (congruent), not lumbar (incongruent) epidural catheter placement.

Side Effects of Neuraxial Analgesic Drugs

Many medication-related (opioid and local anesthetic) side effects can occur with the use of postoperative epidural analgesia, but before automatically ascribing the cause to the epidural analgesic regimen, other causes should be considered, such as small intravascular volume, bleeding, and low cardiac output leading to hypotension and cerebrovascular accident, pulmonary edema, and evolving sepsis leading to respiratory depression. Standing orders and nursing protocols for analgesic regimens, neurologic monitoring, treatment of side effects, and physician notification about critical variables should be standard for all patients receiving neuraxial and other types of postoperative analgesia (see Box 81.1).

Hypotension. The local anesthetics used in an epidural analgesic regimen may block sympathetic fibers and contribute to postoperative hypotension. Although the precise incidence of postoperative hypotension with postoperative epidural analgesia is uncertain, a systematic review of studies investigating postoperative analgesia found a mean (95% CI) incidence of hypotension for epidural analgesia as 5.6 (3.0%-10.2%).[35] Strategies to treat noncritical hypotension caused by epidural analgesia include decreasing the overall dose of local anesthetic administered (by decreasing the rate or concentration), infusing an opioid epidural alone because it is unlikely that neuraxial opioid administration would contribute to postoperative hypotension, and treating the underlying cause of the decrease in blood pressure.[93]

Motor Block. Use of local anesthetics for postoperative epidural analgesia may also contribute to lower extremity motor block in approximately 2% to 3% of patients, and this may lead to the development of pressure sores in the heels.[96] A metaanalysis noted a mean incidence of motor block of 3.2% with PCEA.[91] A lower concentration of local anesthetic and catheter-incision–congruent placement of epidural catheters for abdominal or thoracic procedures may decrease the incidence of motor block. Although motor block resolves in most cases after stopping the epidural infusion for approximately 2 hours, persistent or increasing motor block should be evaluated promptly, and spinal hematoma, spinal abscess, and intrathecal catheter migration should be considered as part of the differential diagnosis.

Nausea and Vomiting. Nausea and vomiting associated with neuraxial administration of single-dose opioid occurs in up to 50% of patients, and the cumulative incidence in those receiving continuous infusions of opioid may be as high as 80%. The overall data (neuraxial opioids and/or local anesthetic combined) suggest that the incidence of postoperative vomiting is similar between epidural analgesia and systemic opioids, although female patients will exhibit a more frequent incidence regardless of analgesic modality.[97] The incidence of neuraxial opioid-related nausea and vomiting may be dose dependent, although a recent metaanalysis suggested that a larger dose (≥0.3 mg) of intrathecal morphine did not increase the risk of postoperative nausea or vomiting compared to smaller dose (<0.3 mg) of intrathecal morphine.[98] Nausea and vomiting from neuraxial opioids may be related to the cephalad migration of opioid within the CSF to the area postrema in the medulla. Use of fentanyl alone or in combination with a local anesthetic in an epidural infusion is associated with a less frequent incidence of nausea and vomiting than infusions of morphine are. A variety of drugs have been used successfully to treat neuraxial opioid-induced nausea and vomiting, including naloxone, droperidol, metoclopramide, dexamethasone, ondansetron, and transdermal scopolamine.

Pruritus. Pruritus is one of the most common side effects of epidural or intrathecal administration of opioids, with an incidence of approximately 60% versus about 15% to 18% for epidural local anesthetic administration or systemic opioids.[99] A systematic review of studies investigating postoperative analgesia found a mean (95% CI) incidence of pruritus for epidural analgesia as 16.1 (12.8%-20%) versus 13.8 (10.7%-17.5%) for IV opioid PCA.[97] Although the cause of neuraxial opioid-induced pruritus is uncertain, peripheral histamine release is not the cause but may be related to central activation of an “itch center” in the medulla or activation of opioid receptors in the trigeminal nucleus or nerve roots with cephalad migration of the opioid. It is unclear whether the incidence of neuraxial opioid-related pruritus is dose dependent. Many drugs have been evaluated for the prevention and treatment of opioid-induced pruritus, which can be difficult to manage and quite bothersome for some patients. IV naloxone, naltrexone, nalbuphine, and droperidol appear to be efficacious for the pharmacologic control of opioid-induced pruritus. Serotonin receptor antagonists may also be an effective modality in the prevention of neuraxial opioid-induced pruritus. The use of epidural morphine is associated with postpartum reactivation of herpes simplex labialis.

Respiratory Depression. Neuraxial opioids used in appropriate doses are not associated with a more frequent incidence of respiratory depression than that seen with systemic administration of opioids. The incidence of respiratory depression with neuraxial administration of opioids is dose dependent and typically ranges from 0.1% to 0.9%. The incidence of respiratory depression, as defined by a slow

TABLE 81.6 Patient-controlled Epidural Analgesia Regimens

Analgesic Solution*	Continuous Rate (mL/h)	Demand Dose (mL)	Lockout Interval (min)
GENERAL REGIMENS			
0.05% bupivacaine + 4 μg/mL fentanyl	4	2	10-20
0.0625% bupivacaine + 5 μg/mL fentanyl†	4-6	3-4	10-20
0.1% bupivacaine + 5 μg/mL fentanyl	6	2	10-20
0.2% ropivacaine + 5 μg/mL fentanyl	5	2	20
THORACIC SURGERY			
0.0625%-0.125% bupivacaine + 5 μg/mL fentanyl†	3-4	2-3	10-20
ABDOMINAL SURGERY			
0.0625% bupivacaine + 5 μg/mL fentanyl†	4-6	3-4	10-20
0.125% bupivacaine + 0.5 μg/mL sufentanil	3-5	2-3	10-20
0.1%-0.2% ropivacaine + 2 μg/mL fentanyl	3-5	2-5	10-20
LOWER EXTREMITY SURGERY			
0.0625%-0.125% bupivacaine + 5 μg/mL fentanyl†	4-6	3-4	10-20

*Regimens listed are samples of local anesthetic-lipophilic opioid combinations from the literature.
†Patient-controlled epidural analgesic regimens commonly used at the Johns Hopkins Hospital.

respiratory rate, should be less than 1%.[35] The precise incidence of respiratory depression in actual clinical practice may be difficult to determine, as there are many criteria (e.g., respiratory rate, oxygen saturation, partial pressure of carbon dioxide, and need to administer respiratory stimulants/reversal drugs) that have been used to define respiratory depression.[35] Neuraxial lipophilic opioids cause less delayed respiratory depression than hydrophilic opioids, although administration of lipophilic opioids may cause early significant respiratory depression. Delayed respiratory depression is primarily associated with the cephalad spread of hydrophilic opioids, which typically occurs within 12 hours after injection of morphine. Risk factors for respiratory depression with neuraxial opioids include increasing dose, increasing age, concomitant use of systemic opioids or sedatives, possibility of prolonged or extensive surgery, and the presence of comorbid conditions (e.g., OSA). Clinical assessments, such as the respiratory rate, may not reliably predict a patient's ventilatory status or impending respiratory depression. Treatment with naloxone (and airway management if necessary) is effective in 0.1- to 0.4-mg increments; however, because its clinical duration of action is relatively short in comparison to the respiratory depressant effect of neuraxial opioids, continuous infusion of naloxone (0.5-5 μg/kg/h) may be needed.[100] Practice guidelines for the prevention, detection, and management of respiratory depression associated with neuraxial opioid administration have been published.[101]

Urinary Retention. Urinary retention associated with the neuraxial administration of opioids is the result of an interaction with opioid receptors in the spinal cord that decreases the detrusor muscle's strength of contraction. The incidence of urinary retention is more frequent with neuraxially administered opioids than when given systemically. Urinary retention does not depend on the opioid dose and may be treated with the use of low-dose naloxone, although at the risk of reversing the analgesic effect. Urinary retention occurred in 23.0% of patients, with the most frequent rate in those receiving epidural analgesia.[97] However, the exact incidence of urinary retention seen clinically may be difficult to determine because patients who undergo major surgical procedures are often routinely catheterized.

Patient-Controlled Epidural Analgesia

Epidural analgesia has traditionally been delivered at a fixed rate or as a CEI; however, the administration of epidural analgesia through a patient-controlled device (PCEA) has become more common. Like IV PCA, PCEA allows individualization of postoperative analgesic requirements and may have several advantages over CEI, including lower drug use and better patient satisfaction. PCEA may also provide analgesia superior to that afforded by IV PCA.[91]

PCEA is a relatively safe and effective technique for postoperative analgesia on routine surgical wards. Observational data from two series of over 1000 patients each reveal that more than 90% of patients with PCEA receive adequate analgesia, with a median pain score of 1 (of a possible 10) at rest and 4 with activity.[102,103] The incidence of side effects is 1.8% to 16.7% for pruritus, 3.8% to 14.8% for nausea, 13.2% for sedation, 4.3% to 6.8% for hypotension, 0.1% to 2% for motor block, and 0.2% to 0.3% for respiratory depression.[102,103] These rates are favorable and comparable to those reported with CEI.

The optimal PCEA analgesic solution and delivery parameters are unclear. Use of a continuous or background infusion in addition to the demand dose is more common with PCEA than with IV PCA and may provide analgesia superior to that of the use of a demand dose alone.[104] In general, most acute pain specialists have gravitated toward a variety of low-concentration local anesthetic-opioid combinations (Table 81.6) in an attempt to improve analgesia while minimizing side effects, such as motor block and respiratory depression. As for CEI, addition of an opioid to the local anesthetic can provide analgesia superior to that of either analgesic alone. A lipophilic opioid is usually chosen because its rapid analgesic effect and shorter duration of action may be more suitable for use with PCEA.[102] Use of lower concentrations of a local anesthetic (e.g., bupivacaine, ropivacaine) may provide excellent analgesia without significant motor block.[105]

Benefits of Epidural Analgesia

Use of perioperative epidural anesthesia and analgesia, especially with a local anesthetic-based analgesic solution, can attenuate the pathophysiologic response to surgery and may be associated with a reduction in mortality and morbidity when compared with analgesia with systemically administered opioids.[13,14] Metaanalysis of randomized data (141 trials enrolling 9559 subjects) found that perioperative use of neuraxial anesthesia and analgesia (vs. general anesthesia and systemic opioids) reduced overall mortality (primarily in orthopedic patients) by approximately 30%.[106] Use of epidural analgesia can decrease the incidence of postoperative gastrointestinal, pulmonary, and possibly cardiac complications.[13,107]

By inhibiting sympathetic outflow, decreasing the total opioid dose, and attenuating spinal reflex inhibition of the gastrointestinal tract, postoperative thoracic epidural analgesia can facilitate return of gastrointestinal motility without contributing to anastomotic bowel dehiscence.[107,108] Randomized clinical trials demonstrate that use of postoperative thoracic epidural analgesia with a local anesthetic-based analgesic solution allows earlier return of gastrointestinal function and fulfillment of discharge criteria.[109] When compared with those who receive epidural opioids for postoperative analgesia, patients who receive epidural local anesthetics have an earlier return of gastrointestinal motility after abdominal surgery.[109]

Perioperative use of epidural analgesia with a local anesthetic-based regimen in patients undergoing abdominal and thoracic surgery decreases postoperative pulmonary complications,[110,111] presumably by preserving postoperative pulmonary function through providing superior analgesia and thus reducing "splinting" behavior and attenuating the spinal reflex inhibition of diaphragmatic function.[112] A metaanalysis of 48 randomized clinical trials[113] and another large, randomized clinical trial[114] demonstrated that use of thoracic epidural analgesia with a local anesthetic-based regimen decreased the incidence of pulmonary infections and complications. However, patients who received postoperative epidural opioids, intercostal blocks, wound infiltration, or intrapleural analgesia did not have a significant decrease in the incidence of pulmonary complications.[113] A subsequent meta-analysis confirmed the benefits of thoracic epidural analgesia in decreasing perioperative pulmonary complications.[115]

Use of postoperative thoracic, but not lumbar, epidural analgesia may decrease the incidence of postoperative myocardial infarction, possibly by attenuating the stress response and hypercoagulability, improving postoperative analgesia, and providing favorable redistribution of coronary blood flow. The finding that only thoracic epidural analgesia decreases the incidence of postoperative myocardial infarction corroborates experimental data on the physiologic benefits of thoracic epidural analgesia, such as a reduction in the severity of myocardial ischemia or size of infarction, attenuation of sympathetically mediated coronary vasoconstriction, and improvement of coronary flow to areas at risk for ischemia. The use of thoracic epidural analgesia in patients undergoing cardiac surgery decreased the risk of postoperative supraventricular arrhythmias and respiratory complications.[116]

Although postoperative epidural analgesia decreases postoperative gastrointestinal, pulmonary, and possibly cardiac morbidity, the benefits of postoperative epidural analgesia are not as evident in other areas, such as postoperative coagulation, cognitive dysfunction,[117] and immune function. While the use of *intra*operative regional anesthesia decreases the incidence of hypercoagulable-related events (e.g., deep venous thrombosis, pulmonary embolism, vascular graft failure),[106] *post*operative epidural analgesia does not obviously decrease the incidence of hypercoagulable-related events.

The benefits of postoperative epidural analgesia are optimized when the epidural catheter is inserted in a location corresponding to the dermatomes covered by the surgical incision (i.e., catheter-incision–congruent analgesia), which results in a smaller dose of drug administered and decreased incidence of drug-induced side effects, such as pruritus, nausea, vomiting, urinary retention, motor block, and hypotension.[102] When compared with catheter-incision–incongruent epidural analgesia, catheter-incision–congruent analgesia provides earlier return of gastrointestinal function, a lower incidence of myocardial infarction, and superior analgesia.[112] The ability of postoperative epidural analgesia to attenuate postoperative pathophysiology and improve outcomes also depends on the type of drugs used (opioids vs. local anesthetics). Maximal attenuation of perioperative pathophysiology occurs with the use of a local anesthetic-based epidural analgesic solution. The use of a local anesthetic-based (vs. opioid-based) analgesic solution is associated with earlier recovery of gastrointestinal motility after abdominal surgery[109] and less frequent occurrence of pulmonary complications.[113] Epidural analgesia is not a generic entity because different catheter locations and analgesic regimens may differentially affect perioperative morbidity.

It is unclear whether perioperative epidural analgesia may improve patient-reported outcomes.[112] Use of postoperative epidural analgesia may be associated with an improvement in postoperative analgesia and patient-reported outcomes such as patient satisfaction[34] and HRQL.[19] When compared with systemic opioids, epidural local anesthetics consistently provide superior analgesia.[91,92] Although the concept of satisfaction is complex and difficult to measure accurately, the analgesic benefits of postoperative epidural analgesia may contribute to greater patient satisfaction[34] and improved HRQL.[19]

There may be a possible link between the perioperative use of regional anesthesia/analgesia and a decrease in cancer recurrence.[118] There are several hypothetical reasons why the perioperative use of regional anesthesia and analgesia would be of benefit in patients undergoing cancer surgery, including attenuation of perioperative immunosuppression and decreased use of inhaled anesthetics/opioids. A regional anesthetic-induced sympathectomy should increase blood flow to the extremities with subsequent improvement in tissue oxygenation and a potential favorable local anesthetic effect on tumor-cell killing. However, there are multiple factors that may potentially affect cancer recurrence and the impact of perioperative regional analgesic techniques on a long-term outcome such as cancer recurrence is uncertain at this time. Use of neuraxial anesthesia/analgesia for total hip or knee replacement may decrease the risk of surgical site infections compared with general anesthesia.[119]

Risks With Epidural Analgesia

The benefits of perioperative epidural anesthesia-analgesia must be weighed against the risks associated with this technique. Some complications are associated with placement of an epidural catheter, and several risks related to the use of indwelling epidural catheters (e.g., epidural hematoma and abscess) should be discussed in the context of postoperative epidural analgesia. A review of neurologic complications after regional anesthesia revealed that the rate of neurologic complications after central neuraxial blockade is less than 4 in 10,000 (0.04%); the rate of neuropathy after a peripheral nerve block is less than 3 in 100 (3%).[120] However, permanent neurologic injury after either central neuraxial or peripheral nerve block is rare in contemporary anesthetic practice.[120] Elements of routine monitoring of patients receiving neuraxial analgesia are presented in Box 81.1.

The concurrent use of anticoagulants and neuraxial anesthesia and analgesia has always been a relatively controversial issue but has been highlighted over the past decade by the increased incidence of spinal hematoma after the introduction of low-molecular-weight heparin in North America in 1993.

Different types and classes of anticoagulants have different pharmacokinetic properties that affect the timing of neuraxial catheter or needle insertion and catheter removal. Despite many observational and retrospective studies investigating the incidence of spinal hematoma in the setting of various anticoagulants and neuraxial techniques, no definitive conclusion regarding the absolute safety of neuraxial anesthesia and anticoagulation has been reached. The American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine (ASRA) lists a series of guidelines based on the available literature for administration (insertion and removal) of neuraxial techniques in the presence of various anticoagulants, including oral anticoagulants (warfarin), antiplatelet agents, fibrinolytics-thrombolytics, standard unfractionated heparin, and low-molecular-weight heparin.[121] The ASRA guidelines include the concept that the timing of neuraxial needle or catheter insertion or removal should reflect the pharmacokinetic properties of the specific anticoagulant. Frequent neurologic monitoring is essential. Concurrent use of multiple anticoagulants may increase the risk of bleeding, and the analgesic regimen should be tailored to facilitate neurologic monitoring, which may be continued in some cases for 24 hours after removal of the epidural catheter. Although the ASRA guidelines were developed with the latest available literature, these guidelines are limited by the relatively rare incidence of epidural hematoma; there are observational studies during which procedures (e.g., epidural catheter removal) are performed outside the boundaries presented in the ASRA guidelines.[122] A version of the ASRA guidelines on neuraxial anesthesia and anticoagulation[121] can be found on their website (www.asra.com), and some of these statements address the newer anticoagulants. Finally, the risk of epidural hematoma may be different for obstetric versus surgical patients.[123]

Infection associated with postoperative epidural analgesia may result from exogenous or endogenous sources.[93] Serious infections (e.g., meningitis, spinal abscess) associated with epidural analgesics are rare (<1 in 10,000),[124] although a more frequent incidence has been observed (approximately 1 in 1000-2000).[124] Closer examination of the studies that reported a more frequent incidence of epidural abscess reveals that the patients had a relatively longer duration of epidural analgesia or coexisting immunocompromising or complicating diseases (e.g., malignancy, trauma).[93] Use of epidural analgesia in the general surgical population with a typical duration of postoperative catheterization (approximately 2-4 days) is not generally associated with epidural abscess formation.[102] Even though serious infectious complications are rare after short-term (<4 days) epidural infusions, there may be a relatively more frequent incidence of superficial inflammation or cellulitis (4%-14%) and an even higher rate of catheter colonization (20%-35%), with the proportion of positive cultures increasing with longer duration of catheterization; however, the catheter colonization rate may not be a good predictor of infection of the epidural space.[125] A practice advisory from the ASA discussing the prevention, diagnosis, and management of infectious complications associated with neuraxial techniques has been published.[126]

Although epidural analgesia may provide superior postoperative analgesia, migration of the epidural catheter out of the epidural space and into the intrathecal, intravascular, or subcutaneous space decreases the effectiveness of this technique. The failure rate (i.e., earlier-than-anticipated discontinuation of the catheter for any reason, placement of a nonfunctioning epidural catheter) ranges from approximately 6% to 25%, with many centers reporting a rate between 10% and 20%, but the incidence of actual premature epidural catheter dislodgement may be less frequent (mean, 5.7%; 95% confidence interval, 4.0%-7.4%).[127,102] Fortunately, the rate of intrathecal and intravascular migration of an epidural catheter is most likely much less frequent than the failure rate. Some authors have gone further to define a successful epidural as the one that provides good pain relief and facilitates postoperative mobilization and rehabilitation for as long as the catheter is in place.[128] In that sense, determining failure rate maybe even more difficult and only local institutional audits are able to define local failure rate.

Despite the less frequent occurrence of intravascular and intrathecal migration of postoperative epidural catheters, use of an epinephrine-containing test dose, administration of local anesthetic in fractionated doses, and aspiration of the catheter before bolus administration of local anesthetics may prevent complications (e.g., high or total spinal, seizures, neurotoxicity).[93] The issue of whether lower extremity compartment syndrome can be consistently masked by the use of a local anesthetic-based epidural analgesic regimen is unresolved because use of systemic opioid analgesia has also been associated with a delayed diagnosis of compartment syndrome.[129]

Peripheral Regional Analgesia

The use of peripheral regional analgesic techniques as a single injection or continuous infusion can provide site-specific analgesia superior to that with systemic opioids[130] and may even result in improvement in various outcomes.[131] A variety of wound infiltration and peripheral regional techniques (e.g., brachial plexus, lumbar plexus, femoral, sciatic-popliteal, and scalp nerve blocks) can be used to enhance postoperative analgesia. Peripheral regional techniques may have several advantages over systemic opioids (i.e., superior analgesia and decreased opioid-related side effects) and neuraxial techniques (i.e., decreased risk for spinal hematoma and less hemodynamic instability).[132]

A one-time injection of local anesthetic for peripheral regional techniques may be used primarily for intraoperative anesthesia or as an adjunct to postoperative analgesia. When compared with placebo, peripheral nerve blocks with local anesthetics provide superior analgesia and are associated with reduced opioid use, decreased opioid-related side effects, and improvement in patient satisfaction.[132] The duration of postoperative analgesia resulting from the local anesthetic in the peripheral nerve block varies but may last up to 24 hours after injection. Additives to local anesthetics can also increase the duration of action of local anesthetic and improve the quality of nerve blocks. Some of these adjuvants include dexamethasone, clonidine, and dexmedetomidine.[133] An earlier systematic review indicated that local anesthetics may also provide effective wound infiltration analgesia postoperatively for a variety of procedures.[134] A more recent meta-analysis suggested that local anesthetic administered via wound catheters may not reduce pain intensity after surgery.[135]

Continuous infusions of local anesthetics can be administered through peripheral nerve catheters. There are many methods to insert peripheral nerve catheters, including nerve stimulation and ultrasound guidance.[136] RCTs suggest that use of peripheral regional analgesia may facilitate postoperative rehabilitation as evidenced by accelerated resumption of passive joint range-of-motion, decrease in time until discharge readiness, and earlier actual discharge from the hospital or rehabilitation center.[136,137] Continuous peripheral nerve blocks may be used in the outpatient (home) setting typically using a portable ambulatory pump.[136] When compared with systemic opioids, use of continuous infusions or patient-controlled peripheral analgesia results in superior analgesia, decreased opioid-related side effects, and greater patient satisfaction.[130,132] The optimal parameters (i.e., local anesthetic, concentration, opioid, adjuvants, and continuous vs. PCA vs. intermittent boluses) for peripheral analgesia are still being determined. With the evolution of the ultrasound guidance technology and description of new block technique, peripheral nerve blocks are now more integrated into new clinical pathways.

Truncal Blocks

Several nonepidural/truncal regional analgesic techniques can be used for the management of postoperative thoracic and abdominal pain. Some of these techniques are well established and others are relatively new, including; paravertebral and intercostal blocks, transversus abdominis plane (TAP) blocks, quadratus lumborum blocks,[138] erector spinae plane blocks,[139] interpleural (intrapleural) analgesia, and cryoanalgesia. Thoracic paravertebral block has been used for thoracic, breast, and upper abdominal surgery and for the treatment of rib fracture pain.[140] Possible sites of analgesia for a thoracic paravertebral block include direct somatic nerve, sympathetic nerve, and epidural blockade.[140] A thoracic paravertebral block can be administered as a single injection or as continuous infusion through a catheter, may provide analgesia equal or superior to that of thoracic epidural analgesia, and is a valuable alternative to thoracic epidural analgesia.[128,141] Paravertebral blocks may be especially useful in providing postoperative analgesia after breast surgery.[142] When compared to thoracic epidural analgesia, paravertebral analgesia has been shown to provide equivalent analgesia but with a better side effect profile (e.g., lower incidence of hypotension) and also lower the risk of postoperative pulmonary complications.[141,143] Continuous infusions of local anesthetics through a paravertebral catheter are preferable to intermittent boluses, as the former is associated with lower pain scores.[144]

TAP nerve block is an approach for blocking the abdominal wall neural afferents to provide postoperative analgesia. Typically performed under ultrasound guidance, TAP blocks have been mostly described in adult patients (with some in pediatric patients) and used in a variety of surgical patients.[145,146] Several systematic reviews indicate that TAP blocks may reduce postoperative morphine requirements, nausea and vomiting, and possibly the severity of pain after abdominal surgery.[145,147] Although superior early postoperative analgesia appears to occur (within 24 hours of surgery), the surgical procedures, analgesic dosing, techniques, and timing for optimal analgesia following TAP block need further examination. A host of truncal blocks have been described to provide analgesia for the thoracic and abdominal wall. These blocks are yet to be compared head-to-head with well-established analgesic modality.

The analgesic efficacy and the mechanism of interpleural analgesia are no longer controversial (i.e., sensory or sympathetic block, or both). Interpleural analgesia is inferior to epidural and paravertebral analgesia for control of postoperative pain, preservation of lung function after thoracotomy, and reduction of postoperative pulmonary complications.[113] Intercostal blocks may provide short-term postoperative analgesia and may be repeated postoperatively; however, the incidence of pneumothorax increases with each intercostal nerve blocked (1.4% per nerve, with an overall incidence of 8.7% per patient).[148] Like interpleural analgesia, intercostal blocks do not reduce the incidence of pulmonary complications postoperatively when compared with epidural analgesia.[113]

Intraarticular and Local Infiltration Analgesia

Local peripheral administration of opioids (e.g., intraarticular injection after knee surgery) may theoretically provide analgesia for up to 24 hours after surgery and decrease the incidence of chronic pain, as peripheral opioid receptors are found on the peripheral terminals of primary afferent nerves and are upregulated during inflammation of peripheral tissues. Results of the several randomized clinical trials investigating this topic have been summarized. A subsequent qualitative systematic review found no evidence for analgesic effect of intraarticular morphine after knee arthroscopy.[149] A systemic effect of intraarticularly injected morphine cannot be excluded. A systematic review suggested that intraarticular administration of NSAIDs may provide clinically relevant peripheral analgesia.[150] Intraarticular injection of local anesthetics may provide a limited duration of postoperative analgesia, but the clinical benefit from intraarticular injection of local anesthetics is unclear. High-volume infiltration of local anesthetic (LIA) is especially popular after total knee arthroplasty (TKA). Proponents cite its simplicity and no requirement for postoperative management as reasons to adopt the technique. A systematic review of 27 RCTs on LIA for TKA and total hip arthroplasty (THA) showed that LIA for TKA was associated with reduced pain scores and opioid requirements up to 72 hours after surgery.[151,152] Clinicians should be aware that there have been cases of glenohumeral chondrolysis reported in association with postarthroscopy infusion of local anesthetic.[153]

OTHER TECHNIQUES

Other nonpharmacologic techniques, such as transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), acupuncture, exercise/activity, and psychological approaches, can be used to alleviate postoperative pain. The mechanism by which TENS produces analgesia is unclear but may be related to modulation of nociceptive impulses in the spinal cord, release of endogenous enkephalins, or a combination of these, and other, mechanisms. Although the analgesic efficacy of these techniques is controversial, TENS and acupuncture may provide postoperative analgesia, decrease postoperative opioid requirements, reduce opioid-related side effects, and attenuate activation of the sympathoadrenal system. In general, all these approaches to postoperative pain are relatively safe, noninvasive, and devoid of the systemic side effects seen with other analgesic treatment options.[154] TENS may be of benefit in providing postoperative analgesia and decreasing analgesic consumption.[155,156] Early mobilization and activity therapy improve functional outcomes following orthopedic surgical procedures[157] and are effective in reducing pain behaviors in animal models of surgical neuropathic pain.[158] Although some methodologic issues have been raised with many of the available trials and the precise role of these treatments in postoperative pain management is not clear, they represent alternative therapies to add to the clinician's armamentarium. In the case of exercise and activity programs, these represent inexpensive and easily available therapies.

While this chapter has focused on the neurobiology of nociception and pharmacologic treatments available for the treatment of postoperative pain, the experience of pain is complex, multifaceted, and "an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience," as defined in part by the International Association for the Study of Pain. The differential behavior response to surgical incision may be related to global (i.e., personality, gender, age, and culture) and specific (i.e., fear, depression, anger, and coping) psychological factors.[159] Cognitive therapy and behavior therapy may be efficacious in reducing pain and alleviating psychological factors associated with pain.[160] Identifying and addressing psychological factors can reduce pain, improve the efficacy of pharmacologic analgesics, and diminish patients' distress, in part through enhancement of the placebo effect.[159] Although the placebo effect may have a psychological origin, the placebo response may exert part of its effects through activation of endogenous opioids and be useful in reducing the intensity of pain.[161]

POSTOPERATIVE ANALGESIA IN SPECIAL POPULATIONS

The foregoing discussion has provided a general approach to the principles and practice of acute postoperative pain management, but this approach may need to be modified for certain populations that have unique anatomic, physiologic, pharmacologic, affective, and cognitive issues. Management of acute pain should be tailored to the specific needs of a particular population. Although each topic by itself could merit a separate chapter in some textbooks, the general principles and essence of the issues associated with each population are outlined, and references are made to other more extensive sources.

OPIOID-TOLERANT PATIENTS: PATIENTS WITH PREEXISTING PAIN

Opioid-tolerant patients can be categorized into three groups: (1) those who have chronic pain for which they receive opioid-based analgesic therapy, (2) those who use opioids recreationally as a result of a substance use disorder, and (3) those who take opioids for a combination of numbers (1) and (2). Regardless of the reason the individual is using opioids, the management of their perioperative pain is considerably more challenging than for those who are opioid-naïve.

Even though there is no specific threshold or timeframe for when a patient becomes opioid tolerant, the FDA has provided guidelines for defining the opioid tolerant patient.[162] In summary, patients considered opioid-tolerant are those who are regularly taking at least: 60 mg oral morphine per day; 25 μg transdermal fentanyl per hour; 30 mg oral oxycodone per day; 8 mg oral hydromorphone per day; 25 mg oral oxymorphone per day; or an equianalgesic dose of another opioid for one week or longer.

Postoperative pain may be difficult to manage in opioid-tolerant patients because the standard approaches used for baseline assessment and assessment of response to therapy in opioid-naïve or research patients are often less accurate for opioid-tolerant patients. Although opioid-tolerant patients require larger doses of analgesic medications (in addition to their baseline pain medication requirements) in the immediate postoperative period, many healthcare providers still do not provide adequate postoperative pain relief, in part because of the fear of addiction or medication-related side effects. In dealing with patients with chronic opioid use, healthcare providers often mistakenly interchange several pharmacologic terms (i.e., tolerance, physical dependence, and addiction), a practice that may contribute to misunderstanding and inappropriate treatment decisions.

Tolerance refers to the pharmacologic property of an opioid in which an increasing amount is needed to maintain a given level of analgesia. *Physical dependence* is another pharmacologic property of opioids characterized by the occurrence of a withdrawal syndrome on abrupt discontinuation of the opioid or administration of an antagonist. Tolerance and physical dependence are pharmacologic properties of opioids and are not synonymous with the aberrant psychological state or behavior associated with *addiction*, a chronic disorder characterized by the compulsive use of a substance resulting in physical, psychological, or social harm to the user, and continued use despite that harm.

Several principles of pain assessment and treatment can be applied to the postoperative management of opioid-tolerant patients. The physician should expect high self-reported pain scores; base treatment decisions on objective pain

TABLE 81.7 Guidelines for Equianalgesic Dosing of Opioid Agonists

	RELATIVE STRENGTH COMPARED	EQUIANALGESIC DOSE (MG)	
Drug	**With Morphine**	**Oral**	**Parenteral**
Morphine	–	30	10
Buprenorphine	Much, much stronger	N/A	0.4 (7.5 µg/h TD)
Butorphanol	Much stronger	N/A	2
Codeine	Weaker	200	125
Fentanyl	Much, much stronger	N/A	0.1 (16.5 µg/h TD)
Hydrocodone	Equivalent to mildly weaker	30	N/A
Hydromorphone	Much stronger	7.5	1.5
Levophanol	Much stronger	4	N/A
Methadone	Stronger	10	5
Nalbuphine	Equivalent	N/A	10
Oxycodone	Stronger	20	N/A
Oxymorphone	Stronger	10	1
Pentazocine	Weaker	150	60
Tapentadol	Weaker	100	N/A
Tramadol	Much weaker	300	N/A

Equianalgesic doses are approximate and intended to serve only as an estimate of opioid requirements. Actual doses may vary, in part because of wide interpatient variability in response to opioids. Doses should be individualized and gradually titrated to effect. *TD*, Transdermal.

assessment (e.g., ability to breathe deeply, cough, ambulate) in conjunction with patients' self-reported pain scores; recognize the need to identify and treat two major problems, maintenance of a basal opioid requirement and control of incisional pain; and recognize that detoxification is not usually an appropriate goal in the perioperative period.[163-165]

The treatment of patients with prior opioid use requires the management of the expectations of the patient, the patient's family, and the physician's surgical colleagues. The goal of inpatient management of pain in patients with chronic pain or acute-on-chronic pain is to stabilize and rationalize (if necessary) the patient's outpatient pain medication regimen. The goal is not to treat long-standing persistent pain that has been managed on an outpatient basis, because it is unlikely in the very limited time in which you are a member of the patient's care team that you will be able to make a substantial positive difference. Therefore, several general strategies can be used for the treatment of postoperative pain in an opioid-tolerant patient or in a patient with chronic pain who is receiving opioids. Although patients with chronic pain are not synonymous with opioid-tolerant patients, many of these patients are also opioid tolerant, and the same general principles and strategies discussed earlier may be applied to these patients as well. The physician can create a treatment plan early and discuss it with the patient, surgical team, and nursing staff; replace the patient's baseline or basal opioid requirements postoperatively; anticipate an increase in postoperative analgesic requirements[166]; maximize the use of adjuvant drugs; consider the use of regional analgesic techniques; and plan for the transition to an oral regimen. The physician, patient, and other providers need to be aware that the nonopioid adjuvant medications (not including tramadol, NSAIDs, acetaminophen) may be started while the patient is an inpatient, but they are unlikely to have substantial impact on the patient's chronic pain while hospitalized. Recognizing and addressing non-nociceptive sources of distress may be especially important for patients with chronic pain.

Administration of a PRN analgesic regimen alone for opioid-tolerant patients is discouraged because replacing the basal opioid requirement in the postoperative period can optimize pain relief and possibly prevent opioid withdrawal. Basal opioid requirements can be administered systemically (typically intravenously) until the patient can tolerate an oral analgesic regimen.[30] For example, 50% to 100% of the patient's baseline opioid requirement can be administered by an IV PCA regimen, with a demand dose to cover the additional incisional pain. Conversion tables (Table 81.7) may facilitate equianalgesic conversion of opioids (i.e., different routes of administration of one opioid or conversion between two different opioids); however, these tables provide only estimations to assist healthcare providers in initiating opioid titration.[167]

Opioid-tolerant patients generally require increased postoperative analgesic levels, including a larger demand dose.[30,166] Patients may need frequent adjustment of the IV PCA demand dose or continuous infusion, depending on the analgesic requirements. There is individual variability in response to different opioids, and if a decision is made to switch opioids, the choice of opioid is probably not as important as using an equianalgesic dose. Patients may experience different side effects with different opioids, and rotating to another opioid may be reasonable if the patient is not tolerating the first opioid.[168] Adjuvant drugs such as NSAIDs should be administered on a regularly scheduled basis to optimize analgesic efficacy and possibly provide an opioid-sparing effect. Use of regional analgesic techniques with neuraxial opioids may provide excellent analgesia in opioid-tolerant patients while theoretically preventing withdrawal symptoms, although the clinician should be prepared to diagnose and treat perioperative opioid withdrawal in these patients.

After the patient is tolerating oral intake, conversion from IV opioids to oral form that would be more suitable for discharge home may be initiated. Opioid-tolerant patients can generally be converted to a combination of a regularly administered, controlled-release formulation of opioid (i.e., sustained-release morphine) and short-acting, immediate-release opioid on a PRN basis. Although conversion of IV opioid to an oral form can be accomplished over a period of 24 hours in opioid-tolerant patients, this process may take longer in extremely difficult cases. In patients with a relatively high basal requirement of IV opioid (e.g., high, continuous background infusion of IV opioid PCA), clinicians should be aware not to abruptly discontinue the IV infusion of opioid during this transition but ideally decrease the high basal requirement of IV opioid in a stepwise fashion to account for the slower onset of the sustained-release. Converting from an IV to an oral form of opioid is not an exact science, and the conversion tables available can serve only as a rough guide because of significant interpatient and intrapatient variability in the sensitivity to opioids, lack of complete cross-tolerance between opioids (which may lead to greater than anticipated potency of a new opioid), and changes in the level of pain, which may rapidly decrease in the immediate postoperative period.[167] Because of these factors, conversion of approximately 50% to 75% of the equianalgesic dose to a sustained-release preparation of opioid or a transdermal fentanyl patch, with the remainder converted to a short-acting opioid delivered on a PRN basis, may be a reasonable starting point in patients whose pain is reasonably controlled, although additional titration may be necessary.

Although opioids are most commonly used in these patients, with consultation of the inpatient pain services (if available), the physicians can consider the use of analgesic (low-dose) ketamine.[169] Ketamine can be given as a basal infusion as a part of the ketamine PCA or a combination ketamine and opioid PCA, subcutaneously or orally. Ketamine may have significant advantages (such as greater analgesic response, less frequent rates of respiratory depression, and minimal impact on the gastrointestinal system) over continued opioid use in the opioid-tolerant or chronic pain patient in the postoperative setting.

Patients taking medications containing buprenorphine have some similar challenges to those of the opioid-tolerant or chronic pain patient in the perioperative setting, but these patients also have the added difficulties associated with the partial *mu* opioid agonist pharmacodynamics of buprenorphine. Although buprenorphine is a partial agonist, when given in conjunction with a full *mu* opioid agonist, it functions as a pharmacologic antagonist. It also possesses variable time to dissociation from the opioid receptor; therefore, when used in combination with a full agonist, it is challenging to time the switch from antagonism of the *mu*-opioid receptor action to the full agonism of morphine, oxycodone, hydromorphone, and other similar opioids. This can create a dangerous situation in which a previously appropriate dosage of one of the full agonists becomes enough to result in respiratory depression or other dose-related adverse events. Although it is ideal to not take buprenorphine 3 days in advance of surgery, it is often not feasible in many of our surgical settings in which patients are first seen by the anesthesiologist directly prior to the operation. Also, a similar situation can occur in patients who are taking buprenorphine as opioid replacement therapy for an opioid use disorder (OUD) (otherwise known as medication-assisted therapy) where discontinuing buprenorphine can precipitate withdrawal symptoms and the substitution of a full opioid agonist may provoke OUD relapse. In situations in which patients have not discontinued their buprenorphine therapy well in advance of their surgery, the patient should receive their baseline buprenorphine via sublingual or transdermal routes. Alternatively, and if necessary, convert the patient buprenorphine requirements to an IV equivalent while the patient is in the immediate perioperative period. Although the patient is maintained on a stable dosage of buprenorphine, additional full agonist opioids may be titrated to pain reduction, or alternatively, nonopioid adjuvants (including clonidine, ketamine, lidocaine, or dexmedetomidine) can be used instead of opioids for the patient's postoperative pain. Some authors suggest stopping buprenorphine preoperatively and switching to a short-acting opioid, or methadone, to prevent withdrawal symptoms if the surgery is major and will generate severe pain. The choice of methadone is a reasonable one, as it is an effective full opioid agonist but also has a long half-life, thereby providing benefit for continuation of medication-assisted treatment (MAT). Regardless of the approach, coordinated communication between the acute pain team, surgical service, and the primary buprenorphine prescriber should take place to make sure that the patient eventually goes back to their prescribed buprenorphine dose.[170] Sometimes, the logistics of this process can be difficult. Therefore, more often than not, anesthesiologists opt to continue buprenorphine perioperatively and optimize all components of multimodal analgesia for postoperative pain management. Regional anesthesia and local infiltration techniques should be used whenever feasible in these patients.[171]

PEDIATRIC PATIENTS

As in adults, undertreatment of acute pain occurs in a substantial percentage of children.[172] Pediatric patients continue to be undertreated.[166] In addition to anatomic, physiologic, pharmacodynamic, and pharmacokinetic differences between children and adults, there are barriers unique to pediatric patients that may interfere with effective postoperative pain control. Control of postoperative pain is important in pediatric patients because poor pain control may result in increased morbidity or mortality.[173]

Some of the most important barriers to pain control in pediatric patients are the myths that children and infants do not feel pain, that pain is not remembered, and that there is no untoward consequence of experiencing pain.[172] These incorrect assumptions about pain in pediatric patients may hinder management of pediatric pain. Because of developmental, cognitive, and emotional differences, assessment of pain in pediatric patients can be difficult. Pediatric patients may have difficulty conceptualizing and quantifying a subjective experience such as pain. The lack of routine assessment and reassessment of pain may interfere with effective acute pain management.[172] Special scales are available to assist young children in self-reporting of pain; however, interpretation of behavior and physiologic parameters may be used to estimate pain intensity in preverbal children or those who cannot self-report their pain. Furthermore, assessing pain in children with intellectual disabilities presents unique challenges.[174]

A plan for postoperative pain management should be discussed with the family and patient before surgery, as pediatric patients may have many anxieties about pain and analgesic use after surgery. In general, the oral route of analgesic administration is preferred for mild to moderate pain. IV or regional analgesia is appropriate for moderate to severe postoperative pain.[172,175] Use of intramuscular injections is strongly discouraged because of the pain associated with injection and variable absorption of analgesic medications. Fear of needles may inhibit control of postoperative pain because pediatric patients may choose to suffer in silence rather than receive a painful and anxiety-provoking intramuscular injection. Addressing medication-related side effects is important to alleviate patient-related distress and improve compliance with the postoperative analgesic regimen.

Use of an IV PCA device allows individualization of analgesic requirements and offers pediatric patients autonomy. Children as young as 4 years have the cognitive and physical capability to appropriately use an IV PCA device.[176] Although morphine is the standard by which other opioids are compared, morphine does not appear to have an analgesic advantage over other opioids (e.g., hydromorphone) when given in equianalgesic doses. Because of toxicity from its metabolite and much better alternatives, meperidine should not be used in the pain management of pediatric (or adult) patients.[172] A metaanalysis examining whether the addition of a background or continuous infusion to an IV PCA opioid regimen would be associated with an increased risk of respiratory depression indicated that the addition of a continuous or background infusion was associated with a higher incidence of respiratory events in adult but not in pediatric patients.[32] Nurse- or parent-controlled analgesia is also effective and may be used in certain circumstances, but close monitoring of the patient may be needed because significant respiratory depression occurs in approximately 1.7% of patients, although some data suggest that children receiving PCA by proxy do not have a higher incidence of adverse events compared to those who do not.[177,178] For pediatric patients unable to use IV PCA, continuous infusions or intermittent IV administration of opioids is effective in providing postoperative analgesia.[179] Although respiratory depression may occur with opioids regardless of the route administered, clinically significant respiratory depression in pediatric patients is relatively uncommon.[176] Unlike adults, pediatric patients do not appear to exhibit multiple episodes of clinically significant oxygen desaturation postoperatively when treated with neuraxial, IV, or intramuscular opioids.[180] Use of nonopioid analgesic agents, such as NSAIDs or acetaminophen, may improve overall analgesia, reduce the amount of opioid used postoperatively, and decrease some opioid-related side effects such as postoperative nausea and vomiting.[181] For rectal administration of acetaminophen postoperatively, a larger dose (40 mg/kg followed by three doses of 20 mg/kg at 6-hour intervals) than that previously recommended may result in appropriate serum analgesic levels.[182] In addition, other analgesics such as ketamine and tramadol may be considered as adjunct analgesic drugs for the treatment of postoperative pediatric pain in specific clinical situations.[84,183]

Peripheral and neuraxial regional analgesic techniques are commonly used and effective for acute pain management in pediatric patients. The use of ultrasound-guided regional analgesic techniques has been described and may further increase the use of efficacious regional analgesic techniques for pediatric postoperative pain management.[184] One of the more frequently used techniques is epidural analgesia, which can be delivered as a single dose or by using a continuous-infusion catheter technique. The catheter may be inserted (typically using general anesthesia) anywhere along the epidural space (e.g., thoracic, lumbar, caudal), but the caudal approach seems to be the most common technique because the catheter can be easily advanced cephalad to the appropriate dermatome. Local anesthetics or opioids, or both, can be administered through the epidural catheter or needle to provide effective postoperative analgesia. Although epidural (caudal) analgesia may be safely administered to neonates, the clinician should recognize that the maximal continuous infusion dose is probably smaller than that in older children because of lower levels of α_1-acid glycoprotein (which binds local anesthetics) and diminished ability of the relatively immature liver to metabolize amide local anesthetics.[185] The addition of adjuvant drugs, such as clonidine, in the epidural infusion may enhance postoperative analgesia.[186]

Continuous epidural (caudal) analgesia may be used in the postoperative setting, and the infection rate associated with continuous epidural analgesia is extremely low despite the relatively high colonization rate.[125] In addition, continuous peripheral catheter techniques can be used effectively in pediatric patients. Regional analgesic techniques may be useful in providing analgesia for wound incision (e.g., herniorrhaphy or orchiopexy), thoracotomy, and orthopedic procedures.[187] Local anesthetics may also be administered topically to provide analgesia. Despite a lack of data comparing outcomes for regional analgesia versus systemic opioids in the pediatric population, some evidence suggests that the use of epidural analgesia is associated with improvement in some outcomes such as earlier tracheal extubation, return of gastrointestinal function, and length of hospital stay.[188] Finally, other modalities such as acupuncture may be a potentially useful adjunct for the treatment of pediatric postoperative pain, although further large scale randomized, controlled clinical trials are needed to define the role of these modalities in the treatment of pediatric postoperative pain.[189]

OBESITY, OBSTRUCTIVE SLEEP APNEA, AND SLEEP

Patients with obesity and OSA may be at a more frequent risk for postoperative complications. Obesity and OSA are separate disease states, but there is some association between the two because OSA occurs in a relatively higher percentage of obese than nonobese patients. Yet, the optimal postoperative analgesic and monitoring regimen for patients with OSA is not clear. Data suggest that sleep is disrupted in the immediate postoperative period and may influence postoperative morbidity and patient-oriented outcomes.

Obesity is defined as a body mass index (BMI) of greater than 30 kg/m^2, with morbid and supermorbid obesity defined as a BMI of greater than 40 and 60 kg/m^2, respectively. The prevalence of obesity has continued to increase over the past decades to epidemic proportions (including children and adolescents) and is similar across the different ethnic, educational, and income groups.[190-192] Patients with OSA may be at higher risk for pulmonary hypertension, cardiomyopathy, systemic hypertension, and possibly myocardial infarction than their non-OSA counterparts. The pathophysiology of airflow obstruction is related primarily to upper airway pharyngeal collapse, including the retropalatal, retroglossal, and retroepiglottic pharynx, during sleep, especially during rapid eye movement sleep. During these obstructive episodes, OSA patients may exhibit hypoxia, bradyarrhythmias or tachyarrhythmias, myocardial ischemia, abrupt decreases in left ventricular stroke volume and cardiac output, or increases in pulmonary and systemic blood pressure.

Based on our understanding of the pathophysiology of OSA, postoperative pain management can be difficult in this population. Patients with OSA may be at an increased risk for respiratory arrest.[193] Although it is not clear whether OSA will increase the risk of postoperative hypoxemia when compared to other morbidly obese subjects without OSA, morbidly obese subjects (with or without OSA) may experience frequent oxygen desaturation episodes in the postoperative period even with the use of supplemental oxygen. Use of sedative doses of benzodiazepines and opioids may result in frequent hypoxemia and apnea, which may be especially dangerous in OSA patients. Use of nonopioids (e.g., tramadol, dexmedetomidine) or an opioid-sparing technique may limit some of the respiratory-related events postoperatively. Avoiding respiratory depressants by optimizing the use of NSAIDs, nonopioid adjuvants (including clonidine, ketamine, dexmedetomidine), complete avoidance of benzodiazepines, epidural analgesia with a local anesthetic-based regimen, peripheral nerve blocks, and local infiltration techniques may attenuate the risk for respiratory depression and arrest.

The American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Management of Patients with Obstructive Sleep Apnea created guidelines that include recommendations for postoperative analgesia in patients with OSA.[191] Although the consultants acknowledged that the conclusions regarding postoperative analgesic options were based on insufficient literature evaluating the effects of various analgesic techniques, the presence of equivocal literature regarding the use of epidural opioids versus intramuscular or IV opioids in reducing respiratory depression, and insufficient literature regarding the addition of a basal infusion to systemic patient-controlled opioids, the consultants nevertheless recommended that regional techniques rather than systemic opioids be used in an attempt to reduce the likelihood of adverse outcomes in patients at increased perioperative risk from OSA.[194] In addition, the consultants recommended the exclusion (vs. inclusion) of opioids from neuraxial postoperative analgesia to reduce perioperative risk and the use of NSAIDs to reduce adverse outcomes through their opioid-sparing effect. The consultants were equivocal regarding whether avoiding a basal infusion of opioids in patients with OSA reduces the likelihood of adverse outcomes.[194] Unfortunately, randomized clinical trial data are lacking to provide definitive high-quality evidence-based recommendations for the provision of postoperative analgesia to OSA patients.

INPATIENT PAIN SERVICES

“Acute pain services” or “acute pain medicine” is not synonymous with regional anesthesiology pain services (RAPS) or PPS; each term describes a different role and the terminology can be confusing to other physicians and surgeons in the healthcare system. An APS/APM is a more comprehensive service than a PPS. APS/APM take care of all inpatient acute pain issues including perioperative pain as well as medical pain and acute-on-chronic pain such as sickle cell disease, pancreatitis, and acute exacerbations of inflammatory bowel disease or other condition requiring medicinal or catheter-based techniques for pain relief. A PPS takes care of only perioperative pain patients with the same techniques, and RAPS addresses only those patients with a catheter placed by an anesthesiologist for postoperative pain. Which type of service each hospital has depends greatly on the local expertise, the local financial resources available, and the patient population. Chronic pain services developed from the needs of patients in hospitals with the less comprehensive or RAPS/PPS-type of pain service because these services have a very restricted treatment group. As academic regional anesthesiologists have expanded their role to include that of the perioperative pain physician or the APM physician, they have developed services that encompass all inpatient pain concerns, and the role or necessity of the primarily outpatient pain medicine physician (commonly referred to as the chronic pain physician) in the hospital has been reduced.

Although there are several models for the development of APS/APM, the key organizational aspects are similar (Box 81.2). Development and maintenance of APS/APM requires commitment and financial support at the national and local (institutional and departmental) levels. In the United States, there is a dichotomy at the national and third-party payer levels between the requests for improved inpatient pain control, along with the introduction of practice guidelines or expanded roles for APS, and decreased reimbursement for the provision of such services. Because there is a substantial financial burden associated with the establishment of an inpatient pain service, large-volume or larger hospitals may be more likely to have these services and access to more high-tech analgesic techniques such as regional analgesia. Formal inpatient pain services using postoperative pain protocols are more likely to be present in academic/teaching hospitals when compared to nonteaching hospitals. Whether inpatient pain services actually improve outcomes is unclear. Two earlier systematic reviews have examined the impact of APS on patient outcomes,[7,195] and although both systematic reviews suggest that the introduction of APS is associated with a decrease in pain scores, the effect of APS on the incidence

BOX 81.2 Organizational Aspects of an Inpatient Pain Medicine Service

Educational Activity

Anesthesiologists
Residency-fellowship teaching (if applicable)
Health insurance carriers
Hospital administrators
Nurses
Patients and families
Pharmacists
Surgeons

Administrative Activity

Economic issues
Evaluation of equipment
Human resources: pain service personnel, administrative-secretarial support
Institutional administrative activity
Quality improvement and assurance
Research (if applicable)

Nursing

Continuing education and in-service training
Defining of roles in patient care
Nursing policies and procedures
Pain service nurse (if applicable)
Quality improvement and assurance

Documentation

Hospital policies and procedures
Bedside pain management assessment flow sheet
Daily consultation notes
Educational packages
Protocol driven order-sets

of analgesic-related side effects (e.g., nausea, vomiting), satisfaction, and overall costs is uncertain. Despite the direct costs (e.g., personnel, equipment, medication) associated with managing an APS, there is no properly conducted pharmacoeconomic study available to examine the cost-effectiveness (or lack) of an APS. Use of postoperative epidural analgesia in the context of APS may decrease the cost of patient care through shorter intensive care unit stays and a decreased rate of complications.[13] Nevertheless, an RCT comparing an anesthesiologist-led, nurse-based APS group with PCA versus a control group with systemic boluses of opioid analgesia noted that an APS was likely to be cost effective when the role of the APS was extended to a specific group of major surgical procedures.[196] A dedicated inpatient pain service allows anesthesiologists to extend their presence in the field of perioperative medicine, although there is no universal agreement on how to provide these services in a financially viable way.[195] This represents one of the numerous challenges that face the development of these services. If that service becomes valuable to the local medical scene, financial support will almost always follow in one way or another. As inpatient APM services continue to evolve into comprehensive inpatient pain medicine services, there is less need for a separation of acute and chronic pain services for inpatient pain care. The elimination of this duplication and the indeterminate roles of service(s) can reduce costs and improve continuity of patient pain care. Despite the costs associated with implementation of a comprehensive inpatient pain service, these services provide a valuable resource at the individual, institutional, and societal levels. With the development of the APS/APM, we now have different training goals for the traditional regional anesthesiology fellowships, including more formal education in chronic pain conditions and management of these conditions while the patient is hospitalized with acute illness. This would involve education on the medical management of these conditions in the short-term, maintenance of the patient's long-term therapies, and knowledge on how these interact with acute pain management.

With skills in regional anesthetic techniques and knowledge of the neurobiology of nociception and the pharmacology of analgesics and local anesthetics, as well as specialty education in the treatment of acute and chronic pain conditions, anesthesiologists are recognized leaders in perioperative pain relief and the development of APS. Provision of inpatient analgesia, along with other services such as critical care medicine and preoperative evaluation, is highly compatible with the emerging identity of anesthesiologists as perioperative physicians and enhances the role of anesthesiologists as valued consultants outside the operating room.

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and Drs. Robert W. Hurley, Nabil M. Elkassabany, and Christopher L. Wu would like to thank Dr. Jamie D. Murphy for her contribution to this chapter in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Carr DB, et al. *Clinical Practice Guideline: Acute Pain Management: Operative or Medical Procedures and Trauma*. Rockville, MD: 1992.
2. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Acute Pain M. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(2):248.
3. https://www.jointcommission.org/joint_commission_statement_on_pain_management/. Accessed 2/12/18, 2018.
4. Chou R, et al. *J Pain*. 2016;17(2):131.
5. Julius D, Basbaum AI. *Nature*. 2001413:203.
6. Kissin I. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1138.
7. Carr DB, Goudas LC. *Lancet*. 1999;353:2051.
8. Besson JM. *Lancet*. 1999;353:1610.
9. Perkins FM, Kehlet H. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:1123.
10. Kehlet H, Holte K. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:62.
11. Kehlet H. Modification of responses to surgery by neural blockade. In: Cousins MJ, Bridenbaugh PO, eds. *Neural Blockade in Clinical Anesthesia and Management of Pain*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1998:129.
12. Desborough JP. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85:109.
13. Wu CL, Fleisher LA. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:1232.
14. Liu S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82:1474.
15. Kehlet H, et al. *Lancet*. 2006;367:1618.
16. Macrae WA. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:88.
17. Eisenach JC. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31:146.
18. Capdevila X, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:8.
19. Carli F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97:540.
20. Brennan TJ, Taylor BK. *J Pain*. 2000;1:96.
21. Moiniche S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96:725.
22. Ong CK, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:757; table of contents.
23. Boisseau N, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:564.
24. Kehlet H, Wilmore DW. *Am J Surg*. 2002;183:630.

25. Wick EC, et al. *JAMA Surgery*. 2017;152(7):691.
26. George JA, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2017.
27. Stone AB, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2016;222(3):219.
28. Wu CL, et al. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2015;41(10):447.
29. Practice guidelines for acute pain management in the perioperative setting. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(4):1071.
30. Macintyre PE. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:36.
31. Camu F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87:890.
32. George JA, et al. *J Opioid Manag*. 2010;6:47.
33. Hudcova J, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;4:CD003348.
34. Wu CL, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26:196.
35. Cashman JN, Dolin SJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93:212.
36. Looi-Lyons LC, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 1996;8:151.
37. Schein JR, et al. *Drug Saf*. 2009;32:549.
38. Svensson CI, Yaksh TL. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2002;42:553.
39. Sinatra RJ. *Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;24:S18.
40. Kis B, et al. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2005;315:1.
41. Elia N, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103:1296.
42. Remy C, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:505.
43. Straube S, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:601.
44. Marret E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102:1249.
45. O'Connor JP, Lysz T. *Drugs Today (Barc)*. 2008;44:693.
46. Dodwell ER, et al. *Calcif Tissue Int*. 2010;87:193.
47. Li Q, et al. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2011;36:E461.
48. Lee A, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2007;2:CD002765.
49. Knowles SR, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2007;41:1191.
50. Laine LJ. *Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;23:S5.
51. Leese PT, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2000;40:124.
52. Brophy JM. *Expert Opin Drug Saf*. 2005;4:1005.
53. Nussmeier NA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352:1081.
54. Nussmeier NA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:518.
55. Nissen SE, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375(26):2519.
56. Liu SS, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(1):45.
57. Khan JS, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33(3):204.
58. Teerawattananon C, et al. *Semin Arthritis Rheum*. 2017;46(4):520.
59. Bhangu A, et al. *World J Surg*. 2014;38(9):2247.
60. Burton TP, et al. *Dis Colon Rectum*. 2013;56(1):126.
61. Smith HS. *Pain Physician*. 2009;12(1):269.
62. Smith HS. *Pain Med*. 2011;12(6):961.
63. Sinatra RS, et al. *Pain Pract*. 2012;12(5):357.
64. Yang L, et al. *Int J Surg*. 2017;47:135.
65. Langford RA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(3):610.
66. Poeran J, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40(3):284.
67. Bockbrader HN, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2010;49:661.
68. Mathiesen O, et al. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2007;7:6.
69. Peng PW, et al. *Pain Res Manag*. 2007;12:85.
70. Hurley RW, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31:237.
71. Zhang J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106:454.
72. Engelman E, Cateloy F. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:927.
73. Doleman B, Heinink TP, Read DJ, Faleiro RJ, Lund JN, Williams JP. A systematic review and meta-regression analysis of prophylactic gabapentin for postoperative pain. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(10):1186–1204.
74. Fabritius ML, Geisler A, Petersen PL, et al. Gabapentin for post-operative pain management - a systematic review with meta-analyses and trial sequential analyses. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2016;60(9):1188–1208.
75. Fabritius ML, Geisler A, Petersen PL, Wetterslev J, Mathiesen O, Dahl JB. Gabapentin in procedure-specific postoperative pain management – preplanned subgroup analyses from a systematic review with meta-analyses and trial sequential analyses. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2017;17(1).
76. Fabritius ML, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(4):775.
77. Cavalcante AN, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(1):141.
78. Mao Y, et al. *BMC Musculoskeletal Disorders*. 2016;17(1).
79. Celerier E, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92:465.
80. Bell RF, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;1:CD004603.
81. Laskowski K, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58:911.
82. Dahmani S, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21:636.
83. Morgan CJ, Curran HV. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 2006;188:408.
84. Reeves RR, Burke RS. *Drugs Today (Barc)*. 2008;44:827.
85. Altunkaya H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:1461; table of contents.
86. Edwards JE, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;23:121.
87. Ali M, Khan FA. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26:475.
88. Murphy JD, et al. *J Opioid Manag*. 2010;6:141.
89. Wu CL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(5):1079.
90. Block BM, et al. *JAMA*. 2003;290(18):2455.
91. Wheatley RG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(1):47.
92. Liu SS, Bernards CM. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27(2):122.
93. Salomaki TE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(5):790.
94. Shah JL. *BMJ*. 2000;321(7266):941.
95. Dolin SJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89:409.
96. Gehling M, Tryba M. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:643.
97. Kjellberg F, Tramer MR. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2001;18:346.
98. Wang J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80:565.
99. Horlocker TT, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110:218.
100. Liu SS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(3):688.
101. Wigfull J, Welchew E. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56:70.
102. Komatsu H, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:633.
103. Halpern SH, Carvalho B. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108:921.
104. Rodgers A, et al. *BMJ*. 2000;321:1493.
105. Liu SS, Wu CL. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:689.
106. Holte K, Kehlet H. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26:111.
107. Jorgensen H, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2000;4:CD001893.
108. Liu SS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:153.
109. Nishimori M, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;3:CD005059.
110. Liu SS, Wu CL. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:789.
111. Ballantyne JC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86:598.
112. Rigg JR, et al. *Lancet*. 2002;359:1276.
113. Popping DM, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2008;143:990; discussion 1000.
114. Svircevic V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114:271.
115. Wu CL, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29:257.
116. Snyder GL, Greenberg S. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:106.
117. Chang CC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:279.
118. Brull R, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104:965.
119. Horlocker TT, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35:64.
120. Liu SS, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2011;36:231.
121. Bateman BT, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;116:1380.
122. Horlocker TT, Wedel DJ. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25:83.
123. Simpson RS, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25:360.
124. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:530.
125. Dolin SJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(3):409.
126. Rawal N. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(3):310.
127. Harrington P, et al. *Injury*. 2000;31:387.
128. Richman JM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102:248.
129. Wang H, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27:139.
130. Liu SS, Salinas FV. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:263.
131. Brummett CM, Williams BA. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2011;49(4):104.
132. Dahl V, Raeder JC. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44:1191.
133. Gupta A, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55:785.
134. Ilfeld BM. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:904.
135. Ilfeld BM, et al. *Pain*. 2010;150:477.
136. El-Boghdadly K, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(4):548.
137. Forero M, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(5):621.
138. Karmakar MK. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95:771.
139. Davies RG, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96:418.
140. Schnabel A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105:842.
141. Joshi GP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:1026.
142. Kotze A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103:626.
143. Abdallah FW, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37:193.
144. Mai CL, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22:831.
145. Johns N, et al. *Colorectal Dis*. 2012;14:e635.
146. Shanti CM, et al. *J Trauma*. 2001;51:536.
146. Kalso E, et al. *Pain*. 2002;98:269.
147. Rosseland LA. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2005;30:83.
148. Romsing J, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44:672.
149. Andersen LO, Kehlet H. Analgesic efficacy of local infiltration analgesia in hip and knee arthroplasty: a systematic review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(3):360–374.
150. Moiniche S, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1999;24:430.
151. Scheffel PT, et al. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg*. 2010;19:944.
152. Ernst E, White AR. *Am J Med*. 2001;110:481.
153. Bjordal JM, et al. *Eur J Pain*. 2003;7:181.
154. Sbruzzi G, et al. *Rev Bras Cir Cardiovasc*. 2012;27:75.
155. Khan F, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2008;2:CD004957.
156. Chen YW, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:1330.
157. Eccleston C. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87:144.
158. Morley S, et al. *Pain*. 1999;80:1.
159. Hrobjartsson A, Gotzsche PC. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:1594.
160. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/PostmarketDrugSafetyInformationforPatientsandProviders/UCM289730.pdf; 2012

161. Huxtable CA, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2011;39:804.
162. Gordon D, et al. *J Pain*. 2008;9:383.
163. Rozen D, DeGaetano NP. *J Opioid Manag*. 2006;2:353.
164. Patanwala AE, et al. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2008;28:1453.
165. Anderson R, et al. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2001;21:397.
166. Woodhouse A, et al. *Pain*. 1999;80:545.
167. Adam F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100:475.
168. Anderson TA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(6):1180.
169. Lembke A, et al. *Pain Med*. 2018.
170. Anand KJ, Hickey PR. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;326:1.
171. Breau LM, Burkitt C. *Pain Res Manag*. 2009;14:116.
172. Suresh S, et al. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30:101.
173. Kost-Byerly S. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2002;20:115.
174. Monitto CL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91:573.
175. Voepel-Lewis T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:70.
176. van Dijk M, et al. *Pain*. 2002;98:305.
177. Tyler DC, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80:14.
178. Michelet D, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114:393.
179. Birmingham PK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94:385.
180. Akbay BK, et al. *J Anesth*. 2010;24:705.
181. Tsui B, Suresh S. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:473.
182. Pirotte T, Veyckemans F. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27:110.
183. De Negri P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:71.
184. Collins JJ, et al. *J Pediatr*. 1996;129:722.
185. Cassady JF, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25:246.
186. Wu S, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009;10:291.
187. Ogden CL, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;307:483.
188. Hullett BJ, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16:648.
189. Zhuang PJ, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66:989.
190. Cullen DJ. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13:83.
191. Gross JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1081; quiz 1117.
192. Sun E, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:841.
193. Lee A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111:1042.
194. Brennan TJ. *Pain*. 2011;152(suppl 3):S33.
195. Charlton S, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010;(12):CD007705.
196. Clarke H, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(2):428.

References

1. Carr DB, Jacox AK, Chapman RC, et al. Clinical practice guideline: acute pain management: operative or medical procedures and trauma. In: Services DoHaH, ed. Rockville, MD: Agency for Health Care Policy and Research, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; 1992.
2. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Acute Pain M. Practice guidelines for acute pain management in the perioperative setting: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Acute Pain Management. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116(2):248–273.
3. https://www.jointcommission.org/joint_commission_statement_on_pain_management/. Accessed 2/12/18, 2018.
4. Chou R, Gordon DB, de Leon-Casasola OA, et al. Management of postoperative pain: a clinical practice guideline from the American Pain Society, the American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine, and the American Society of Anesthesiologists' Committee on Regional Anesthesia, Executive Committee, and Administrative Council. *J Pain*. 2016;17(2):131–157.
5. Julius D, Basbaum AI. Molecular mechanisms of nociception. *Nature*. 2001;413(6852):203–210.
6. Kissin I. Preemptive analgesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(4):1138–1143.
7. Carr DB, Goudas LC. Acute pain. *Lancet*. 1999;353(9169):2051–2058.
8. Besson JM. The neurobiology of pain. *Lancet*. 1999;353(9164):1610–1615.
9. Perkins FM, Kehlet H. Chronic pain as an outcome of surgery. A review of predictive factors. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93(4):1123–1133.
10. Kehlet H, Holte K. Effect of postoperative analgesia on surgical outcome. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(1):62–72.
11. Kehlet H. Modification of responses to surgery by neural blockade. In: Cousins MJ, Bridenbaugh PO, eds. *Neural Blockade in Clinical Anesthesia and Management of Pain*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1998:129-175.
12. Desborough JP. The stress response to trauma and surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2000;85(1):109–117.
13. Wu CL, Fleisher LA. Outcomes research in regional anesthesia and analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(5):1232–1242.
14. Liu S, Carpenter RL, Neal JM. Epidural anesthesia and analgesia. Their role in postoperative outcome. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(6):1474–1506.
15. Kehlet H, Jensen TS, Woolf CJ. Persistent postsurgical pain: risk factors and prevention. *Lancet*. 2006;367(9522):1618–1625.
16. Macrae WA. Chronic pain after surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(1):88–98.
17. Eisenach JC. Treating and preventing chronic pain: a view from the spinal cord–Bonica lecture, ASRA Annual Meeting, 2005. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(2):146–151.
18. Capdevila X, Barthelet Y, Biboulet P, Ryckwaert Y, Rubenovitch J, d'Athis F. Effects of perioperative analgesic technique on the surgical outcome and duration of rehabilitation after major knee surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91(1):8–15.
19. Carli F, Mayo N, Klubien K, Schricker T, Trudel J, Belliveau P. Epidural analgesia enhances functional exercise capacity and health-related quality of life after colonic surgery: results of a randomized trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(3):540–549.
20. Brennan TJ, Taylor BK. Analgesic treatment before incision compared with treatment after incision provides no improvement in postoperative pain relief. *J Pain*. 2000;1(2):96–98.
21. Moiniche S, Kehlet H, Dahl JB. A qualitative and quantitative systematic review of preemptive analgesia for postoperative pain relief: the role of timing of analgesia. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;96(3):725–741.
22. Ong CK, Lirk P, Seymour RA, Jenkins BJ. The efficacy of preemptive analgesia for acute postoperative pain management: a meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(3):757–773; table of contents.
23. Boisseau N, Rabary O, Padovani B, et al. Improvement of 'dynamic analgesia' does not decrease atelectasis after thoracotomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(4):564–569.
24. Kehlet H, Wilmore DW. Multimodal strategies to improve surgical outcome. *Am J Surg*. 2002;183(6):630–641.
25. Wick EC, Grant MC, Wu CL. Postoperative multimodal analgesia pain management with nonopioid analgesics and techniques. *JAMA Surgery*. 2017;152(7):691.
26. George JA, Koka R, Gan TJ, et al. Review of the enhanced recovery pathway for children: perioperative anesthetic considerations. *Can J Anaesth*. 2017.
27. Stone AB, Grant MC, Pio Roda C, et al. Implementation costs of an enhanced recovery after surgery program in the United States: a financial model and sensitivity analysis based on experiences at a quaternary academic medical center. *Journal of the American College of Surgeons*. 2016;222(3):219–225.
28. Wu CL, Benson AR, Hobson DB, et al. Initiating an enhanced recovery pathway program: an anesthesiology department's perspective. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf*. 2015;41(10):447–456.
29. Practice guidelines for acute pain management in the perioperative setting. A report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Pain Management, Acute Pain Section. *Anesthesiology*. 1995;82(4):1071–1081.
30. Macintyre PE. Safety and efficacy of patient-controlled analgesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(1):36–46.
31. Camu F, Van Aken H, Bovill JG. Postoperative analgesic effects of three demand-dose sizes of fentanyl administered by patient-controlled analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(4):890–895.
32. George JA, Lin EE, Hanna MN, et al. The effect of intravenous opioid patient-controlled analgesia with and without background infusion on respiratory depression: a meta-analysis. *J Opioid Manag*. 2010;6(1):47–54.
33. Hudcova J, McNicol E, Quah C, Lau J, Carr DB. Patient controlled opioid analgesia versus conventional opioid analgesia for postoperative pain. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;(4):CD003348.
34. Wu CL, Naqibuddin M, Fleisher LA. Measurement of patient satisfaction as an outcome of regional anesthesia and analgesia: a systematic review. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26(3):196–208.
35. Cashman JN, Dolin SJ. Respiratory and haemodynamic effects of acute postoperative pain management: evidence from published data. *Br J Anaesth*. 2004;93(2):212–223.
36. Looi-Lyons LC, Chung FF, Chan VW, McQuestion M. Respiratory depression: an adverse outcome during patient controlled analgesia therapy. *J Clin Anesth*. 1996;8(2):151–156.
37. Schein JR, Hicks RW, Nelson WW, Sikirica V, Doyle DJ. Patient-controlled analgesia-related medication errors in the postoperative period: causes and prevention. *Drug Saf*. 2009;32(7):549–559.
38. Svensson CI, Yaksh TL. The spinal phospholipase-cyclooxygenase-prostanoid cascade in nociceptive processing. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2002;42:553–583.
39. Sinatra R. Role of COX-2 inhibitors in the evolution of acute pain management. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;24(suppl 1):S18–27.
40. Kis B, Snipes JA, Busija DW. Acetaminophen and the cyclooxygenase-3 puzzle: sorting out facts, fictions, and uncertainties. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2005;315(1):1–7.
41. Elia N, Lysakowski C, Tramer MR. Does multimodal analgesia with acetaminophen, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, or selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors and patient-controlled analgesia morphine offer advantages over morphine alone? Meta-analyses of randomized trials. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(6):1296–1304.
42. Remy C, Marret E, Bonnet F. Effects of acetaminophen on morphine side-effects and consumption after major surgery: meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94(4):505–513.
43. Straube S, Derry S, McQuay HJ, Moore RA. Effect of preoperative Cox-II-selective NSAIDs (coxibs) on postoperative outcomes: a systematic review of randomized studies. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49(5):601–613.
44. Marret E, Kurdi O, Zufferey P, Bonnet F. Effects of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs on patient-controlled analgesia morphine side effects: meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;102(6):1249–1260.
45. O'Connor JP, Lysz T. Celecoxib, NSAIDs and the skeleton. *Drugs Today (Barc)*. 2008;44(9):693–709.
46. Dodwell ER, Latorre JG, Parisini E, et al. NSAID exposure and risk of nonunion: a meta-analysis of case-control and cohort studies. *Calcif Tissue Int*. 2010;87(3):193–202.
47. Li Q, Zhang Z, Cai Z. High-dose ketorolac affects adult spinal fusion: a meta-analysis of the effect of perioperative nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs on spinal fusion. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*. 2011;36(7):E461–468.
48. Lee A, Cooper MG, Craig JC, Knight JF, Keneally JP. Effects of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs on postoperative renal function in adults with normal renal function. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2007;(2):CD002765.

49. Knowles SR, Drucker AM, Weber EA, Shear NH. Management options for patients with aspirin and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug sensitivity. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2007;41(7):1191–1200.
50. Laine L. Gastrointestinal safety of coxibs and outcomes studies: what's the verdict? *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;23(4):S5–S10.
51. Leese PT, Hubbard RC, Karim A, Isakson PC, Yu SS, Geis GS. Effects of celecoxib, a novel cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor, on platelet function in healthy adults: a randomized, controlled trial. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2000;40(2):124–132.
52. Brophy JM. Celecoxib and cardiovascular risks. *Expert Opin Drug Saf*. 2005;4(6):1005–1015.
53. Nussmeier NA, Whelton AA, Brown MT, et al. Complications of the COX-2 inhibitors parecoxib and valdecoxib after cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;352(11):1081–1091.
54. Nussmeier NA, Whelton AA, Brown MT, et al. Safety and efficacy of the cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors parecoxib and valdecoxib after noncardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(3):518–526.
55. Nissen SE, Yeomans ND, Solomon DH, et al. Cardiovascular safety of celecoxib, naproxen, or ibuprofen for arthritis. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375(26):2519–2529.
56. Liu SS, Bae JJ, Bieltz M, Ma Y, Memtsoudis S. Association of perioperative use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs with postoperative myocardial infarction after total joint replacement. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(1):45–50.
57. Khan JS, Margarido C, Devereaux PJ, Clarke H, McLellan A, Choi S. Preoperative celecoxib in noncardiac surgery. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2016;33(3):204–214.
58. Teerawattananon C, Tantayakom P, Suwanawiboon B, Katchamart W. Risk of perioperative bleeding related to highly selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Semin Arthritis Rheum*. 2017;46(4):520–528.
59. Bhangu A, Singh P, Fitzgerald JEF, Slesser A, Tekkis P. Postoperative nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and risk of anastomotic leak: meta-analysis of clinical and experimental studies. *World J Surg*. 2014;38(9):2247–2257.
60. Burton TP, Mittal A, Soop M. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and anastomotic dehiscence in bowel surgery. *Diseases of the Colon & Rectum*. 2013;56(1):126–134.
61. Smith HS. Potential analgesic mechanisms of acetaminophen. *Pain Physician*. 2009;12(1):269–280.
62. Smith HS. Perioperative intravenous acetaminophen and NSAIDs. *Pain Med*. 2011;12(6):961–981.
63. Sinatra RS, Jahr JS, Reynolds L, et al. Intravenous acetaminophen for pain after major orthopedic surgery: an expanded analysis. *Pain Pract*. 2012;12(5):357–365.
64. Yang L, Du S, Sun Y. Intravenous acetaminophen as an adjunct to multimodal analgesia after total knee and hip arthroplasty: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Int J Surg*. 2017;47:135–146.
65. Langford RA, Hogg M, Bjorksten AR, et al. Comparative plasma and cerebrospinal fluid pharmacokinetics of paracetamol after intravenous and oral administration. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(3):610–615.
66. Poeran J, Babby J, Rasul R, Mazumdar M, Memtsoudis SG, Reich DL. Tales from the wild west of US drug pricing: the case of intravenous acetaminophen. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2015;40(3):284–286.
67. Bockbrader HN, Wesche D, Miller R, Chapel S, Janiczek N, Burger P. A comparison of the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of pregabalin and gabapentin. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2010;49(10):661–669.
68. Mathiesen O, Moiniche S, Dahl JB. Gabapentin and postoperative pain: a qualitative and quantitative systematic review, with focus on procedure. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2007;7:6.
69. Peng PW, Wijeysundera DN, Li CC. Use of gabapentin for perioperative pain control – a meta-analysis. *Pain Res Manag*. 2007;12(2):85–92.
70. Hurley RW, Cohen SP, Williams KA, Rowlingson AJ, Wu CL. The analgesic effects of perioperative gabapentin on postoperative pain: a meta-analysis. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2006;31(3):237–247.
71. Zhang J, Ho KY, Wang Y. Efficacy of pregabalin in acute postoperative pain: a meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2011;106(4):454–462.
72. Engelman E, Cateloy F. Efficacy and safety of perioperative pregabalin for post-operative pain: a meta-analysis of randomized-controlled trials. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55(8):927–943.
73. Doleman B, Heinink TP, Read DJ, Faleiro RJ, Lund JN, Williams JP. A systematic review and meta-regression analysis of prophylactic gabapentin for postoperative pain. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(10):1186–1204.
74. Fabritius ML, Geisler A, Petersen PL, et al. Gabapentin for post-operative pain management - a systematic review with meta-analyses and trial sequential analyses. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2016;60(9):1188–1208.
75. Fabritius ML, Geisler A, Petersen PL, Wetterslev J, Mathiesen O, Dahl JB. Gabapentin in procedure-specific postoperative pain management – preplanned subgroup analyses from a systematic review with meta-analyses and trial sequential analyses. *BMC Anesthesiol*. 2017;17(1).
76. Fabritius ML, Strøm C, Koyuncu S, et al. Benefit and harm of pregabalin in acute pain treatment: a systematic review with meta-analyses and trial sequential analyses. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119(4):775–791.
77. Cavalcante AN, Sprung J, Schroeder DR, Weingarten TN. Multimodal analgesic therapy with gabapentin and its association with postoperative respiratory depression. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(1):141–146.
78. Mao Y, Wu L, Ding W. The efficacy of preoperative administration of gabapentin/pregabalin in improving pain after total hip arthroplasty: a meta-analysis. *BMC Musculoskelet Disord*. 2016;17(1).
79. Celerier E, Rivat C, Jun Y, et al. Long-lasting hyperalgesia induced by fentanyl in rats: preventive effect of ketamine. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;92(2):465–472.
80. Bell RF, Dahl JB, Moore RA, Kalso E. Perioperative ketamine for acute postoperative pain. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;(1):CD004603.
81. Laskowski K, Stirling A, McKay WP, Lim HJ. A systematic review of intravenous ketamine for postoperative analgesia. *Can J Anaesth*. 2011;58(10):911–923.
82. Dahmani S, Michelet D, Abback PS, et al. Ketamine for perioperative pain management in children: a meta-analysis of published studies. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2011;21(6):636–652.
83. Morgan CJ, Curran HV. Acute and chronic effects of ketamine upon human memory: a review. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 2006;188(4):408–424.
84. Reeves RR, Burke RS. Tramadol: basic pharmacology and emerging concepts. *Drugs Today (Barc)*. 2008;44(11):827–836.
85. Altunkaya H, Ozer Y, Kargi E, et al. The postoperative analgesic effect of tramadol when used as subcutaneous local anesthetic. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(5):1461–1464; table of contents.
86. Edwards JE, McQuay HJ, Moore RA. Combination analgesic efficacy: individual patient data meta-analysis of single-dose oral tramadol plus acetaminophen in acute postoperative pain. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2002;23(2):121–130.
87. Ali M, Khan FA. Comparison of analgesic effect of tramadol alone and a combination of tramadol and paracetamol in day-care laparoscopic surgery. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2009;26(6):475–479.
88. Murphy JD, Yan D, Hanna MN, et al. Comparison of the postoperative analgesic efficacy of intravenous patient-controlled analgesia with tramadol to intravenous patient-controlled analgesia with opioids. *J Opioid Manag*. 2010;6(2):141–147.
89. Wu CL, Cohen SR, Richman JM, et al. Efficacy of postoperative patient-controlled and continuous infusion epidural analgesia versus intravenous patient-controlled analgesia with opioids: a meta-analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2005;103(5):1079–1088; quiz 1109-1010.
90. Block BM, Liu SS, Rowlingson AJ, Cowan AR, Cowan JA, Wu CL. Efficacy of postoperative epidural analgesia: a meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2003;290(18):2455–2463.
91. Wheatley RG, Schug SA, Watson D. Safety and efficacy of postoperative epidural analgesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(1):47–61.
92. Liu SS, Bernards CM. Exploring the epidural trail. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27(2):122–124.
93. Salomaki TE, Laitinen JO, Nuutinen LS. A randomized double-blind comparison of epidural versus intravenous fentanyl infusion for analgesia after thoracotomy. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;75(5):790–795.
94. Shah JL. Lesson of the week: postoperative pressure sores after epidural anaesthesia. *BMJ*. 2000;321(7266):941–942.
95. Dolin SJ, Cashman JN. Tolerability of acute postoperative pain management: nausea, vomiting, sedation, pruritus, and urinary retention. Evidence from published data. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;95(5):584–591.
96. Gehling M, Tryba M. Risks and side-effects of intrathecal morphine combined with spinal anaesthesia: a meta-analysis. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64(6):643–651.
97. Kjellberg F, Tramer MR. Pharmacological control of opioid-induced pruritus: a quantitative systematic review of randomized trials. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2001;18(6):346–357.

98. Wang J, Pennefather S, Russell G. Low-dose naloxone in the treatment of urinary retention during extradural fentanyl causes excessive reversal of analgesia. *Br J Anaesth*. 1998;80(4):565–566.
99. Horlocker TT, Burton AW, Connis RT, et al. Practice guidelines for the prevention, detection, and management of respiratory depression associated with neuraxial opioid administration. *Anesthesiology*. 2009;110(2):218–230.
100. Liu SS, Allen HW, Olsson GL. Patient-controlled epidural analgesia with bupivacaine and fentanyl on hospital wards: prospective experience with 1,030 surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 1998;88(3):688–695.
101. Wigfull J, Welchew E. Survey of 1057 patients receiving postoperative patient-controlled epidural analgesia. *Anaesthesia*. 2001;56(1):70–75.
102. Komatsu H, Matsumoto S, Mitsuhata H. Comparison of patient-controlled epidural analgesia with and without night-time infusion following gastrectomy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(4):633–635.
103. Halpern SH, Carvalho B. Patient-controlled epidural analgesia for labor. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;108(3):921–928.
104. Rodgers A, Walker N, Schug S, et al. Reduction of postoperative mortality and morbidity with epidural or spinal anaesthesia: results from overview of randomised trials. *BMJ*. 2000;321(7275):1493.
105. Liu SS, Wu CL. Effect of postoperative analgesia on major postoperative complications: a systematic update of the evidence. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(3):689–702.
106. Holte K, Kehlet H. Epidural analgesia and risk of anastomotic leakage. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2001;26(2):111–117.
107. Jorgensen H, Wetterslev J, Moiniche S, Dahl JB. Epidural local anaesthetics versus opioid-based analgesic regimens on postoperative gastrointestinal paralysis, PONV and pain after abdominal surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2000;(4):CD001893.
108. Liu SS, Block BM, Wu CL. Effects of perioperative central neuraxial analgesia on outcome after coronary artery bypass surgery: a meta-analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101(1):153–161.
109. Nishimori M, Ballantyne JC, Low JH. Epidural pain relief versus systemic opioid-based pain relief for abdominal aortic surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;(3):CD005059.
110. Liu SS, Wu CL. The effect of analgesic technique on postoperative patient-reported outcomes including analgesia: a systematic review. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105(3):789–808.
111. Ballantyne JC, Carr DB, deFerranti S, et al. The comparative effects of postoperative analgesic therapies on pulmonary outcome: cumulative meta-analyses of randomized, controlled trials. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;86(3):598–612.
112. Rigg JR, Jamrozik K, Myles PS, et al. Epidural anaesthesia and analgesia and outcome of major surgery: a randomised trial. *Lancet*. 2002;359(9314):1276–1282.
113. Popping DM, Elia N, Marret E, Remy C, Tramer MR. Protective effects of epidural analgesia on pulmonary complications after abdominal and thoracic surgery: a meta-analysis. *Arch Surg*. 2008;143(10):990–999; discussion 1000.
114. Svircevic V, van Dijk D, Nierich AP, et al. Meta-analysis of thoracic epidural anesthesia versus general anesthesia for cardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;114(2):271–282.
115. Wu CL, Hsu W, Richman JM, Raja SN. Postoperative cognitive function as an outcome of regional anesthesia and analgesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2004;29(3):257–268.
116. Snyder GL, Greenberg S. Effect of anaesthetic technique and other perioperative factors on cancer recurrence. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(2):106–115.
117. Chang CC, Lin HC, Lin HW. Anesthetic management and surgical site infections in total hip or knee replacement: a population-based study. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(2):279–284.
118. Brull R, McCartney CJ, Chan VW, El-Beheiry H. Neurological complications after regional anesthesia: contemporary estimates of risk. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;104(4):965–974.
119. Horlocker TT, Wedel DJ, Rowlingson JC, et al. Regional anesthesia in the patient receiving antithrombotic or thrombolytic therapy: American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine Evidence-Based Guidelines (Third Edition). *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2010;35(1):64–101.
120. Liu SS, Buvanendran A, Viscusi ER, et al. Uncomplicated removal of epidural catheters in 4365 patients with international normalized ratio greater than 1.4 during initiation of warfarin therapy. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2011;36(3):231–235.
121. Bateman BT, Mhyre JM, Ehrenfeld J, et al. The risk and outcomes of epidural hematomas after perioperative and obstetric epidural catheterization: a report from the multicenter perioperative outcomes group research consortium. *Anesth Analg*. 2012.
122. Horlocker TT, Wedel DJ. Neurologic complications of spinal and epidural anesthesia. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25(1):83–98.
123. Simpson RS, Macintyre PE, Shaw D, Norton A, McCann JR, Tham EJ. Epidural catheter tip cultures: results of a 4-year audit and implications for clinical practice. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25(4):360–367.
124. Practice advisory for the prevention, diagnosis, and management of infectious complications associated with neuraxial techniques: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on infectious complications associated with neuraxial techniques. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(3):530–545.
125. Dolin SJ, Cashman JN, Bland JM. Effectiveness of acute postoperative pain management: I. Evidence from published data. *Br J Anaesth*. 2002;89(3):409–423.
126. Rawal N. Epidural technique for postoperative pain: gold standard no more? *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(3):310–317.
127. Harrington P, Bunola J, Jennings AJ, Bush DJ, Smith RM. Acute compartment syndrome masked by intravenous morphine from a patient-controlled analgesia pump. *Injury*. 2000;31(5):387–389.
128. Richman JM, Liu SS, Courpas G, et al. Does continuous peripheral nerve block provide superior pain control to opioids? A meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(1):248–257.
129. Wang H, Boctor B, Verner J. The effect of single-injection femoral nerve block on rehabilitation and length of hospital stay after total knee replacement. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27(2):139–144.
130. Liu SS, Salinas FV. Continuous plexus and peripheral nerve blocks for postoperative analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(1):263–272.
131. Brummett CM, Williams BA. Additives to local anesthetics for peripheral nerve blockade. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 2011;49(4):104–116.
132. Dahl V, Raeder JC. Non-opioid postoperative analgesia. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44(10):1191–1203.
133. Gupta A, Favaios S, Perniola A, Magnuson A, Berggren L. A meta-analysis of the efficacy of wound catheters for post-operative pain management. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2011;55(7):785–796.
134. Ilfeld BM. Continuous peripheral nerve blocks: a review of the published evidence. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113(4):904–925.
135. Ilfeld BM, Mariano ER, Girard PJ, et al. A multicenter, randomized, triple-masked, placebo-controlled trial of the effect of ambulatory continuous femoral nerve blocks on discharge-readiness following total knee arthroplasty in patients on general orthopaedic wards. *Pain*. 2010;150(3):477–484.
136. El-Boghdadly K, Elsharkawy H, Short A, Chin KJ. Quadratus lumborum block nomenclature and anatomical considerations. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(4):548–549.
137. Forero M, Adhikary SD, Lopez H, Tsui C, Chin KJ. The erector spinae plane block: a novel analgesic technique in thoracic neuropathic pain. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2016;41(5):621–627.
138. Karmakar MK. Thoracic paravertebral block. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(3):771–780.
139. Davies RG, Myles PS, Graham JM. A comparison of the analgesic efficacy and side-effects of paravertebral vs epidural blockade for thoracotomy–a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Br J Anaesth*. 2006;96(4):418–426.
140. Schnabel A, Reichl SU, Kranke P, Pogatzki-Zahn EM, Zahn PK. Efficacy and safety of paravertebral blocks in breast surgery: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Br J Anaesth*. 2010;105(6):842–852.
141. Joshi GP, Bonnet F, Shah R, et al. A systematic review of randomized trials evaluating regional techniques for postthoracotomy analgesia. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(3):1026–1040.
142. Kotze A, Scally A, Howell S. Efficacy and safety of different techniques of paravertebral block for analgesia after thoracotomy: a systematic review and metaregression. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;103(5):626–636.
143. Abdallah FW, Chan VW, Brull R. Transversus abdominis plane block: a systematic review. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37(2):193–209.
144. Mai CL, Young MJ, Quraishi SA. Clinical implications of the transversus abdominis plane block in pediatric anesthesia. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2012;22(9):831–840.

145. Johns N, O'Neill S, Ventham NT, Barron F, Brady RR, Daniel T. Clinical effectiveness of transversus abdominis plane (TAP) block in abdominal surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Colorectal Dis*. 2012;14(10):e635–e642.
146. Shanti CM, Carlin AM, Tyburski JG. Incidence of pneumothorax from intercostal nerve block for analgesia in rib fractures. *J Trauma*. 2001;51(3):536–539.
147. Rosseland LA. No evidence for analgesic effect of intra-articular morphine after knee arthroscopy: a qualitative systematic review. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2005;30(1):83–98.
148. Romsing J, Moiniche S, Ostergaard D, Dahl JB. Local infiltration with NSAIDs for postoperative analgesia: evidence for a peripheral analgesic action. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2000;44(6):672–683.
149. Andersen LO, Kehlet H. Analgesic efficacy of local infiltration analgesia in hip and knee arthroplasty: a systematic review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113(3):360–374.
150. Moiniche S, Mikkelsen S, Wetterslev J, Dahl JB. A systematic review of intra-articular local anesthesia for postoperative pain relief after arthroscopic knee surgery. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 1999;24(5):430–437.
151. Scheffel PT, Clinton J, Lynch JR, Warme WJ, Bertelsen AL, Matsen FA. Glenohumeral chondrolysis: a systematic review of 100 cases from the English language literature. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg*. 2010;19(6):944–949.
152. Ernst E, White AR. Prospective studies of the safety of acupuncture: a systematic review. *Am J Med*. 2001;110(6):481–485.
153. Bjordal JM, Johnson MI, Ljunggreen AE. Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) can reduce postoperative analgesic consumption. A meta-analysis with assessment of optimal treatment parameters for postoperative pain. *Eur J Pain*. 2003;7(2):181–188.
154. Sbruzzi G, Silveira SA, Silva DV, Coronel CC, Plentz RD. Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation after thoracic surgery: systematic review and meta-analysis of 11 randomized trials. *Rev Bras Cir Cardiovasc*. 2012;27(1):75–87.
155. Khan F, Ng L, Gonzalez S, Hale T, Turner-Stokes L. Multidisciplinary rehabilitation programmes following joint replacement at the hip and knee in chronic arthropathy. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2008;(2):CD004957.
156. Chen YW, Li YT, Chen YC, Li ZY, Hung CH. Exercise training attenuates neuropathic pain and cytokine expression after chronic constriction injury of rat sciatic nerve. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(6):1330–1337.
157. Eccleston C. Role of psychology in pain management. *Br J Anaesth*. 2001;87(1):144–152.
158. Morley S, Eccleston C, Williams A. Systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials of cognitive behaviour therapy and behaviour therapy for chronic pain in adults, excluding headache. *Pain*. 1999;80(1-2):1–13.
159. Hrobjartsson A, Gotzsche PC. Is the placebo powerless? An analysis of clinical trials comparing placebo with no treatment. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344(21):1594–1602.
160. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/PostmarketDrugSafetyInformationforPatientsandProviders/UCM289730.pdf; 2012
161. Huxtable CA, Roberts LJ, Somogyi AA, MacIntyre PE. Acute pain management in opioid-tolerant patients: a growing challenge. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2011;39(5):804–823.
162. Gordon D, Inturrisi CE, Greensmith JE, Brennan TJ, Goble L, Kerns RD. Perioperative pain management in the opioid-tolerant individual. *J Pain*. 2008;9(5):383–387.
163. Rozen D, DeGaetano NP. Perioperative management of opioid-tolerant chronic pain patients. *J Opioid Manag*. 2006;2(6):353–363.
164. Patanwala AE, Jarzyna DL, Miller MD, Erstad BL. Comparison of opioid requirements and analgesic response in opioid-tolerant versus opioid-naive patients after total knee arthroplasty. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2008;28(12):1453–1460.
165. Anderson R, Saiers JH, Abram S, Schlicht C. Accuracy in equianalgesic dosing. conversion dilemmas. *J Pain Symptom Manage*. 2001;21(5):397–406.
166. Woodhouse A, Ward ME, Mather LE. Intra-subject variability in post-operative patient-controlled analgesia (PCA): is the patient equally satisfied with morphine, pethidine and fentanyl? *Pain*. 1999;80(3):545–553.
167. Adam F, Chauvin M, Du Manoir B, Langlois M, Sessler DI, Fletcher D. Small-dose ketamine infusion improves postoperative analgesia and rehabilitation after total knee arthroplasty. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;100(2):475–480.
168. Anderson TA, Quaye ANA, Ward EN, Wilens TE, Hilliard PE, Brummett CM. To stop or not, that is the question: acute pain management for the patient on chronic buprenorphine. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;126(6):1180–1186.
169. Lembke A, Ottestad E, Schmiesing C. Patients maintained on buprenorphine for opioid use disorder should continue buprenorphine through the perioperative period. *Pain Med*. 2018.
170. Anand KJ, Hickey PR. Halothane-morphine compared with high-dose sufentanil for anesthesia and postoperative analgesia in neonatal cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;326(1):1–9.
171. Breau LM, Burkitt C. Assessing pain in children with intellectual disabilities. *Pain Res Manag*. 2009;14(2):116–120.
172. Suresh S, Birmingham PK, Kozlowski RJ. Pediatric pain management. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30(1):101–117.
173. Kost-Byerly S. New concepts in acute and extended postoperative pain management in children. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2002;20(1):115–135.
174. Monitto CL, Greenberg RS, Kost-Byerly S, et al. The safety and efficacy of parent-/nurse-controlled analgesia in patients less than six years of age. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;91(3):573–579.
175. Voepel-Lewis T, Marinkovic A, Kostrzewa A, Tait AR, Malviya S. The prevalence of and risk factors for adverse events in children receiving patient-controlled analgesia by proxy or patient-controlled analgesia after surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107(1):70–75.
176. van Dijk M, Bouwmeester NJ, Duivenvoorden HJ, et al. Efficacy of continuous versus intermittent morphine administration after major surgery in 0-3-year-old infants; a double-blind randomized controlled trial. *Pain*. 2002;98(3):305–313.
177. Tyler DC, Woodham M, Stocks J, Leary A, Lloyd-Thomas A. Oxygen saturation in children in the postoperative period. *Anesth Analg*. 1995;80(1):14–19.
178. Michelet D, Andreu-Gallien J, Bensalah T, et al. A meta-analysis of the use of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs for pediatric postoperative pain. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;114(2):393–406.
179. Birmingham PK, Tobin MJ, Fisher DM, Henthorn TK, Hall SC, Cote CJ. Initial and subsequent dosing of rectal acetaminophen in children: a 24-hour pharmacokinetic study of new dose recommendations. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;94(3):385–389.
180. Akbay BK, Yildizbas S, Guclu E, Yilmaz S, Iskender A, Ozturk O. Analgesic efficacy of topical tramadol in the control of postoperative pain in children after tonsillectomy. *J Anesth*. 2010;24(5):705–708.
181. Tsui B, Suresh S. Ultrasound imaging for regional anesthesia in infants, children, and adolescents: a review of current literature and its application in the practice of extremity and trunk blocks. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112(2):473–492.
182. Pirotte T, Veyckemans F. Postoperative apnea in a former preterm infant: clonidine or too much unbound bupivacaine? *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2002;27(1):110–111.
183. De Negri P, Ivani G, Visconti C, De Vivo P, Lonnqvist PA. The dose-response relationship for clonidine added to a postoperative continuous epidural infusion of ropivacaine in children. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93(1):71–76.
184. Collins JJ, Geake J, Grier HE, et al. Patient-controlled analgesia for mucositis pain in children: a three-period crossover study comparing morphine and hydromorphone. *J Pediatr*. 1996;129(5):722–728.
185. Cassady JF, Lederhaas G, Cancel DD, Cummings RJ, Loveless EA. A randomized comparison of the effects of continuous thoracic epidural analgesia and intravenous patient-controlled analgesia after posterior spinal fusion in adolescents. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2000;25(3):246–253.
186. Wu S, Sapru A, Stewart MA, et al. Using acupuncture for acute pain in hospitalized children. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2009;10(3):291–296.
187. Ogden CL, Carroll MD, Kit BK, Flegal KM. Prevalence of obesity and trends in body mass index among US children and adolescents, 1999-2010. *JAMA*. 2012;307(5):483–490.
188. Hullett BJ, Chambers NA, Pascoe EM, Johnson C. Tramadol vs morphine during adenotonsillectomy for obstructive sleep apnea in children. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2006;16(6):648–653.

189. Zhuang PJ, Wang X, Zhang XF, Zhou ZJ, Wang Q. Postoperative respiratory and analgesic effects of dexmedetomidine or morphine for adenotonsillectomy in children with obstructive sleep apnoea. *Anaesthesia*. 2011;66(11):989–993.
190. Cullen DJ. Obstructive sleep apnea and postoperative analgesia–a potentially dangerous combination. *J Clin Anesth*. 2001;13(2):83–85.
191. Gross JB, Bachenberg KL, Benumof JL, et al. Practice guidelines for the perioperative management of patients with obstructive sleep apnea: a report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Management of patients with obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104(5):1081–1093; quiz 1117-1088.
192. Sun E, Dexter F, Macario A. Can an acute pain service be cost-effective? *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(4):841–844.
193. Lee A, Chan SK, Chen PP, Gin T, Lau AS, Chiu CH. The costs and benefits of extending the role of the acute pain service on clinical outcomes after major elective surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;111(4):1042–1050.
194. Brennan TJ. Pathophysiology of postoperative pain. *Pain*. 2011; 152(suppl 3):S33–40.
195. Charlton S, Cyna AM, Middleton P, Griffiths JD. Perioperative transversus abdominis plane (TAP) blocks for analgesia after abdominal surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2010;(12):CD007705.
196. Clarke H, Bonin RP, Orser BA, Englesakis M, Wijeysundera DN, Katz J. The prevention of chronic postsurgical pain using gabapentin and pregabalin: a combined systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115(2):428–442.

82

Cognitive Dysfunction and Other Long-Term Complications of Surgery and Anesthesia

LISBETH EVERED, DEBORAH J. CULLEY, and RODERIC G. ECKENHOFF

KEY POINTS

- Postoperative cognitive concerns have been voiced by older patients, their families, and caregivers for over a century, and more recently documented with objective testing.
- The term postoperative cognitive dysfunction (POCD) is neither recognizable by the general medical community nor sufficiently granular to cover the spectrum of perioperative cognitive disorders. It will be replaced by a DSM-5-motivated nomenclature, which will include postoperative delirium.
- The new Perioperative Neurocognitive Disorder (PND) nomenclature will require subjective complaints in addition to objective testing and assessment of daily function.
- Objective testing can take many forms, and can be variously analyzed to establish if a decline has occurred.
- Cognitive screening in older adults should be included in preoperative consultations, and informed consent discussions should include PND.
- PND is the most common perioperative complication in older adults, and the strongest risk factors for PND are advanced age and prior cognitive disorder.
- Few intraoperative parameters or drugs are associated with PND, although some EEG metrics predict delirium and PND in a few studies.
- Many mechanisms for PND have been proposed and tested in preclinical models. Neuroinflammation induced by the surgery in the setting of a vulnerable or "primed" brain has the most support at this time.
- Other than cognitive screening, validated imaging or biofluid biomarkers are not yet available for either risk stratification or disease monitoring.

Introduction

Anesthesia and surgery have been associated with cognitive changes in older adults for more than 100 years,[1] but these observations were largely anecdotal until the International Study of Post-Operative Cognitive Dysfunction (ISPOCD) was undertaken in the late 1990s.[2] Since then, there has been intense investigation and interest in all aspects of "POCD," ranging from mechanistic to therapeutic, rodent to human. This chapter hopes to capture this breadth of investigation in a manner that informs the clinician and peaks the interest of the investigator. At the outset, we emphasize problems with the existing definitions and terminology, and present recommendations for a new nomenclature and diagnostic criteria. We will then present and discuss the details related to both subjective and objective metrics of cognitive decline. Of perhaps greatest interest to clinicians are the pre- and intraoperative risk factors associated with cognitive decline, and if the perioperative management can be adjusted to mitigate the risk. Finally, we review and discuss potential mechanisms underlying the various postoperative neurocognitive disorders (NCDs), both related to the anesthetic management as well as the surgery and associated comorbidities. The chapter is thoroughly referenced, but this field is advancing rapidly, and thus it is inevitable that some current literature is not represented.

Nomenclature, Diagnosis, and Measurement

NOMENCLATURE

The ISPOCD group coined the term postoperative cognitive dysfunction (POCD), which reflected an objectively measured decline in cognitive function that typically persists beyond the period expected for normal recovery from the physiological and pharmacological effects of anesthesia and surgery.[3] When patients presenting for anesthesia and surgery are identified with cognitive impairment at baseline, this has been referred to as preexisting cognitive impairment (PreCI).[4]

TABLE 82.1 Constructs Previously Used to Define Cognitive Change Associated with the Perioperative Period and the Recommended New Nomenclature

Time Period	Previous Nomenclature	Old Criteria	New Nomenclature	New Criteria
OVERARCHING TERM: PERIOPERATIVE NEUROCOGNITIVE DISORDERS (PND)				
Preoperative Baseline	Preexisting cognitive impairment (PreCI)	≥2 SD below norms on ≥2 tests	Mild/Major NCD	NCD criteria, DSM-5: 1 to <2 SD (mild) or ≥2SD (major) below norms or controls in ≥1 cognitive domain *Plus:* Subjective complaint, *and* IADLs (preserved for mild NCD and declined for Major NCD)
Acute postoperative	Postoperative delirium (POD)	DSM-5	Delirium (postoperative) (POD)	DSM-5
1-30 days postoperatively	Postoperative cognitive dysfunction (POCD)	≥1.96 SD below controls on ≥2 tests	Delayed neurocognitive recovery	NCD criteria, DSM-5
30 days-12 months postoperatively	Postoperative cognitive dysfunction (POCD)	≥1.96 SD below controls on ≥2 tests	Mild NCD (postoperative) Major NCD (postoperative)	NCD criteria, DSM-5
New diagnosis beyond 12 months postoperatively	Postoperative cognitive dysfunction (POCD)	≥1.96 SD below controls on ≥2 tests	Mild NCD Major NCD (unless not a new diagnosis)	NCD criteria, DSM-5

IADLs, Instrumental Activities of Daily Living; *NCD*, neurocognitive disorder.

Postoperative delirium (POD) refers to a form of acute cognitive disruption characterized by inattention, a fluctuating course, and cognitive disturbance, and is diagnosed according to the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual for Mental Disorders, version 5 (DSM-5).[5] Delirium in the community conforms to the same definitions and criteria. In contrast to POD, which conforms to the criteria for delirium diagnosed in any situation, POCD and PreCI have been confined to the field of perioperative medicine research where they have been historically defined by objective criteria with no attention given to subjective or functional criteria. In contrast, cognitive impairment and decline diagnosed in the general community conforms to either DSM-5 definitions and criteria, and/or the National Institute of Aging-Alzheimer's Association (NIA-AA) definitions, all of which require a subjective component and an assessment of activities of daily living (ADL). The NIA-AA terms Mild Cognitive Impairment (MCI[6] and dementia[7]) are more familiar than the DSM-5 terms (mild and major NCD), but the definitions and criteria roughly map onto each other.

The NIA-AA nomenclature is more granular, making provisions for the inclusion of biomarkers (biochemical and imaging). This is currently useful for research purposes, but is likely to apply to clinical scenarios in the future. In addition to the subjective complaint and functional criteria, another important difference between DSM-5/NIA-AA and POCD/PreCI has been the objective criteria applied. Although variable, many POCD/PreCI studies require a decline of 1.96SD below controls on two or more tests from a battery of 8-10 neuropsychological tests. Mild NCD and major NCD require 1-2SD and ≥ 2SD, respectively, below controls/norms in only one cognitive domain.

These differences, combined with the variability of POCD criteria (and timing) prompted an international multidisciplinary group to consider a new nomenclature for POCD.[8] Not only would diagnostic standardization facilitate further research in the area, but it would allow effective communication between clinicians at a clinical level. This new nomenclature recommends "perioperative neurocognitive disorders" (PND) as an overarching term for cognitive impairment or change, including delirium, identified in the perioperative period. Constructs previously used to define cognitive change associated with the perioperative period are discussed below with the recommended new nomenclature (Table 82.1).

Preexisting Cognitive Impairment

PreCI was used to refer to objectively assessed cognitive impairment that is observed in patients at baseline (compared to population norms). This is a preoperative assessment of impairment and should be considered in terms of cognitive impairment that might be coincidentally identified in the community and not just in terms of impending anesthesia and surgery. Hence, it is recommended that the term PreCI be replaced by mild NCD (MCI) or major NCD (dementia).

Delirium

POD should be recognized as a specific category consistent with DSM-5 terminology if the patient is in the immediate postoperative period and other specific causes have been excluded. The reported incidence of POD in the elderly is highly dependent on how it is diagnosed and screened. The most widely used and validated tool is the Confusion Assessment Method (CAM) (Box 82.1)[81]. The term *postoperative* refers to a specific and known temporal association with anesthesia and surgery, noting that surgical procedures occur annually in approximately 30% of individuals aged 65 years or more. POD is therefore defined as delirium which occurs in hospital up to 1 week postprocedure or until discharge, and which meets DSM-5 diagnostic criteria.

Postoperative Cognitive Dysfunction

POCD has been used in research studies to describe an objectively measurable decline in cognitive function at intervals from one day to 7.5 years after surgery.[9-11]

BOX 82.1 **Confusion Assessment Method**

Must include both:
A. Acute onset and fluctuating course
B. Inattention
And one of either:
C. Disorganized thinking
D. Altered level of consciousness

Significant heterogeneity around the definitions, time points for assessment, and criteria for POCD has resulted in widely varying results. As stated above, POCD does not require a subjective complaint or evidence of functional impairment, while the DSM-5 requires both. Thus, the major differences between POCD and NCD are the requirement for a cognitive concern, evidence of daily function, and the requirement for an objective decline in only one cognitive domain in the latter.

Cognitive Concern

The subjective cognitive complaint could be reported by the individual, family member, caregiver, or clinician. It is unlikely in the early postoperative period that a patient or an informant would be able to make an accurate assessment of subtle cognitive decline. Therefore, while assessment for NCD after discharge but prior to full recovery may be technically possible, the clinical relevance of its attribution would be unclear. Therefore, the term "delayed neurocognitive recovery" (dNCR) is recommended for this interval. This term should be used up to 30 days after the procedure, when recovery from most surgery and hospitalization should have occurred. The diagnostic criteria for NCD may be applied, but the outcome if impaired would be dNCR. It is possible that high functioning individuals may report cognitive concerns without objective evidence of decline. Because the subjective report from the participant, informant, or clinician is an essential element of diagnosing a PND, this may still be considered dNCR, and considered in the context of each individual case for clinical interpretation.

Activities of Daily Living Assessment

Assessment of daily function is an essential element of classifying mild and major NCD. This is achieved using an appropriate tool to measure ADL, which are everyday *personal care* activities that are fundamental to caring for oneself and maintaining independence. To detect more subtle declines in function, Instrumental Activities of Daily Living (IADLs) are used, which include activities like shopping, driving, and managing finances. For mild NCD (MCI), ADLs are maintained, while for major NCD (dementia), a decline is required.

Objective Testing

According to DSM-5[5] and our recommended PND terms,[8] mild NCD (postoperative) requires a 1 to <2 SD decline in cognitive testing compared to controls or norms, and major NCD (postoperative) requires a decline of 2 or more standard deviations on one or more cognitive domains (complex attention, executive function, learning and memory, language, perceptual-motor, or social cognition)[5] using an appropriate neuropsychological assessment. Neither the DSM-5 nor the NIA-AA criteria for objective testing specify individual neuropsychological tests, nor the number of tests required in a battery. It is important to note that this refers to psychometric assessments that objectively assess specific cognitive domains, *not to the use of screening tools* such as the Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE) or the Montreal Cognitive Assessment (MoCA). While useful for preoperative risk assessment, these brief screening tools do not have the sensitivity to assess change in specific cognitive domains.

Thirty days after surgery, the term mild NCD (postoperative) (postoperative MCI) or major NCD (postoperative) (postoperative dementia) should be used instead of dNCR. The "postoperative" modifier should be used as long as the criteria are met, and as long as first diagnosed prior to 12 months postoperatively. If first noticed or diagnosed 12 or more months following surgery, the postoperative modifier is not used.

MEASUREMENT AND DIAGNOSIS OF PERIOPERATIVE NEUROCOGNITIVE DISORDERS

Historically, a diagnosis of POCD has relied only on an objective assessment of decline using a battery of neuropsychological tests that cover many cognitive domains (e.g., executive function, memory, attention, visuospatial, psychomotor, and language). In most studies, very conservative cut-points were applied (e.g., 1.96 standard deviations below controls on two or more tests out of a battery of 8-10). These research applications contrast sharply with the simple objective criteria required for mild NCD (postoperative) or major NCD (postoperative) as described above, and are described in detail elsewhere.[12]

Assumptions Underlying Assessment of Postoperative Cognitive Dysfunction/ Perioperative Neurocognitive Disorder

Prospective studies investigating POCD usually assessed baseline cognition at a single time point only, often within days to weeks of the procedure. This makes three important and not necessarily valid assumptions. First, it assumes normal preoperative cognitive function, because screening was performed with a tool insensitive to cognitive impairment, such as the MMSE or MoCA. Second, a single time-point assessment assumes stable cognition. The third assumption is that results are reproducible, even without an intervention. Even if we assume that patients have stable cognition, it is unlikely that two consecutive assessments would yield the same results, due to a variety of intrinsic and extrinsic factors.

Cognitive Decline Outcome Criteria

There are several criteria that studies have used to define POCD in the past. These include the 1SD rule,[13] the 20% rule,[14] and the reliable change index (RCI).[15-17] Each has advantages and limitations, but the latter has the large advantage of incorporating the changes observed in a control group over a similar time period, largely to account for practice and time effects. Because the RCI can be related to a control group or normative data, it satisfies the DSM-5 criteria for NCD (postoperative).

Sensitivity. The number of tests directly impacts the sensitivity of the measure; for example, if the definition of POCD is a decline of 2SD in 2 tests from a battery of 8 tests, the probability of identifying a decline of 2SD in 2 tests from 10 tests is doubled to 0.10.[18] For the assessment of NCD, the DSM-5 only requires decline in one or more cognitive domains (complex attention, executive function, learning and memory, language, perceptual-motor, or social cognition), but does not recommend specific neuropsychological tests or a specific number of tests. Sensitivity can be improved by considering small declines across a number of tests, or a single very large decline in what is termed, "combined z-scores."[9,17]

While seemingly esoteric, the various methods of analysis can markedly impact the diagnosis of POCD/PND, highlighted by Keizer et al., who reported a POCD incidence of 10.5%, 31%, and 7.7% using the same test results with different methods of analysis (1SD definition, 20% definition and RCI, respectively).[19] Clearly, standardization will be required to interpret results across many studies.

More recently, computerized cognitive assessment batteries have been developed that avoid practice effects, offer easier administration, are quicker and standardized, and have the potential to overcome cultural and language difficulties. To date, however, computerized test batteries have received limited attention in POCD/PND research mainly due to a lack of relevant validation studies.

GROUP CHANGE VERSUS INDIVIDUAL CHANGE. Studies investigating POCD have variously used either individual or group change. Individual change refers to a dichotomous outcome of "decline" versus "no decline," whereas group analysis considers differences between groups on a continuous scale. Clinical studies typically then use statistics to compare an *a priori* primary outcome between two groups to test whether any observed difference is due to chance. But this approach misses important individual information within each group. In particular, the individuals who decline the most may be a small fraction of the group, but arguably are the most critical to consider. Some individuals may even demonstrate cognitive improvement, due to correction of underlying pathology and improved function (e.g., reduction in pain, improved mobility, improved ADL). Statistics that simply average these groups together will miss these important individual changes (Fig. 82.1), which might be due to identifiable and perhaps correctable factors.

Issues Associated With Repeated Testing

Serial neuropsychological testing is important to reliably assess the trend over time; however, repeated testing may introduce several sources of error, such as reliability, floor/ceiling effects, and practice effects. It is unclear if practice effects can be eliminated, as such effects can be observed as far out as 2.5 years. Individual (e.g., age, sex, culture, language, education, comorbidities, baseline cognitive function) as well as perioperative factors (anxiety, medications, pain, etc.) may also modulate the effect of repeated testing. Other strategies to improve reliability include parallel test versions and the use of control groups (*vide supra*). The major concern with control groups is selecting a well-matched one. It is generally desirable to match for comorbid conditions, even including the need for surgery, to evaluate the effect of the surgery itself.

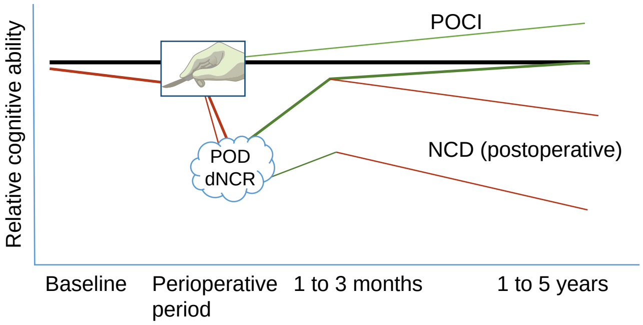


Fig. 82.1 Perioperative cognitive trajectories. Perioperative patients come into surgery having either a stable *(black)* or declining trajectory of cognition *(red)*. After surgery, the majority are unchanged *(black)*, with a small fraction showing postoperative cognitive improvement (*POCI, green*). Some postoperative patients have an acute decline into POD or dNCR, from which most recover *(green)*. A fraction of these will decline again later, perhaps matching their preoperative trajectory. The bottom red trajectory is meant to indicate that a very small fraction of perioperative patients never fully recover, and assume a steeper downward trajectory than if they had not had surgery. Thickness of line is intended as a rough reflection of probability of following the indicated trajectory. Other trajectories are possible. *dNCR*, Delayed neurocognitive recovery; *NCD*, neurocognitive disorder; *POD*, postoperative delirium.

Summary

Patient complaints of cognitive dysfunction after anesthesia and surgery have been reported for over a hundred years, but only recently studied systematically. These studies have included a wide variety of definitions, but all leading to the same provincial diagnosis, POCD. Recent work has standardized definitions and nomenclature for the clinical diagnosis of what are now called the PNDs, to make these consistent with that in the general population, and to recognize differences in magnitude and timing. Finally, we offer a more research-oriented framework for objective study in the future.

Risk Factors, Informed Consent, and Perioperative Management

RISK FACTORS

Multiple studies have investigated risk factors for the development of postoperative NCDs, with the most commonly cited being advanced age, a history of PreCI, and type of surgical procedure.[20,21] Other factors include a prior history of delirium, frailty, psychotropic medications, ASA physical status, number of medications, impairments in IADLs or ADL, and smoking.[22-25] PND is the likely combination of patient vulnerability along with the risks of the surgical procedure and its related complications that enhance the risk for the development of POD and potentially POCD. While many of these risk factors such as age and a prior history of delirium are not modifiable, there is growing interest in identifying modifiable risk factors and the use of multidisciplinary teams combined with prehabilitation to decrease the risk of developing PND.[26-29] Moreover, there has been growing interest in whether genetic risk factors, specifically the apolipoprotein-Ee4 genotype, are associated with the development of either POD or PND. Studies performed to date suggest that the presence of apolipoprotein-Ee4 genotype is not associated with the development of POD, but the data are less clear for other forms of PND, with some studies suggesting that it is, or is not, a predictor for the development of both dNCR and NCD (postoperatively).[30-36]

INFORMED CONSENT

It is currently uncommon that older adults are informed of their risk of PND in the consent process, despite clear evidence that PND is more common than most complications of which patients are routinely informed. However, informed consent is difficult to obtain in older operative patients because of a high prevalence of unrecognized MCI in this population. Among community-dwelling elders, as many as 70% may have some degree of cognitive impairment,[37] although the prevalence appears to be lower for those presenting for elective surgical procedures.[4,21] Preexisting MCI confounds their ability to understand the complex anesthesia and surgical procedures and risks, but also their risk for the development of subsequent NCDs. One must also remain cognizant that there may be substantial risks of forfeiting a surgical procedure that may be of benefit. While it is beyond the scope of this discussion to describe the entirety of the informed consent process, at a minimum, all older patients consenting for anesthesia care should clearly understand and actively participate in discussions about their risks and be capable of understanding the information provided about the planned management and potential adverse outcomes, including the risks of postoperative NCDs.[38-40]

PREOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

Older patients often have geriatric syndromes that are not considered to be a part of the routine preoperative evaluation, yet are associated with an increased risk for the development of PND. For example, the risk of developing delirium is significantly increased in patients with preoperative cognitive impairment, frailty, functional impairment, depression, and among those taking certain psychotropic medications.[41] Accordingly, the American College of Surgeons together with the American Geriatrics Society have developed guidelines for the perioperative evaluation of older surgical patients that are relevant to the development of PND, including an assessment of preoperative cognitive performance, depression, functional status, frailty, and a review of prescription and over-the-counter medications, in order to identify those associated with a risk of PND. In the presence of these risk factors, the perioperative physician should consider referral to either a primary care physician, geriatrician, or mental health specialist for optimization or prehabilitation prior to the surgical procedure.[28] Identification of patients at highest risk for the development of PND may enhance patient-centered outcomes by providing patients and their families with a better understanding of their perioperative course and allow practitioners an opportunity to deploy resources to those at highest risk.

Intraoperative Management

TYPE OF ANESTHESIA

Researchers and clinicians have widely debated whether regional anesthesia is preferable to general anesthesia in suitable surgical cases for the prevention of PND. For all forms of PND, including POD, it is intuitive that regional anesthesia will be preferable, as general anesthesia targets the CNS, and data now suggest that deep anesthesia is associated with a higher incidence of NCDs. However, most studies have been unable to show differences in the risk of either POCD or POD following surgery under either general or regional anesthesia.[42-45] There are a number of potential reasons for this lack of difference. One is that regional anesthesia is often accompanied by sedation at levels comparable with general anesthesia based on processed electroencephalogram monitoring.[46] However, even in the few studies that have limited or randomized sedation during regional anesthesia, little difference was found.[45] This is the basis for the current hypothesis that most forms of PND, including POD, are the result of the surgery itself, combined with preexisting vulnerabilities.

DEXMEDETOMIDINE

Studies have demonstrated that dexmedetomidine, as compared to benzodiazepines and/or propofol for sedation, decreased the incidence of delirium in the intensive care unit. This observation has led to investigations of dexmedetomidine as an intraoperative adjunct to either regional or general anesthesia in older patients.[47,48] The majority of these studies have found that perioperative dexmedetomidine was associated with a lower prevalence of PND as compared to propofol in both cardiac and noncardiac surgery patients.[49-52]

However, it remains unclear whether the reduction in PND is due to the pharmacologic actions of dexmedetomidine itself or simply less brain depression. There is a growing body of evidence that deep sedation or general anesthesia based upon EEG monitoring during a regional anesthetic is associated with a higher prevalence of PND as compared to lighter levels of sedation or general anesthesia.[53] In other words, it may be the state of the brain (and duration) that is responsible for a lower risk of PND, rather than any specific effect of the drugs themselves.

KETAMINE

Ketamine is rarely used as a sole anesthetic, but it is frequently administered intraoperatively to reduce postoperative pain. Most studies performed to date have not shown that intraoperative administration of ketamine, despite its ability to decrease postoperative opioid requirements, decreases the incidence of POD and some studies suggest that it may increase it.[54-56] In addition, at least one study noted that intraoperative administration of ketamine may be associated with postoperative hallucinations and nightmares.[56]

INTRAOPERATIVE BRAIN MONITORING

There has been a growing interest in whether intraoperative management based on processed EEG or cerebral oxygen monitoring decreases the risk of either PND or POD. There is evidence to suggest that the use of the processed EEG to guide anesthetic management may reduce the risk of both, although the evidence is greater for POD.[57-59] Questions remain as to the mechanism, whether PND is a direct result of the anesthetic or its dosage, or the development of EEG burst suppression patterns. Evidence indirectly supports the latter, as the dosage of anesthetic being administered to the patients has not been rigorously correlated with the development of PND.[58,60] As there is little risk of EEG monitoring in most surgical procedures, some have recommended that EEG-based management be used to reduce the risk of PND in older surgical patients.

The evidence is less clear for the use of intraoperative cerebral oximetry to reduce the risk of PND. While some studies have suggested that higher perioperative cerebral oxygen saturation is associated with a lower risk of POD, therapeutic restoration of regional cerebral oxygen desaturation has not been shown to lower POD risk. Overall, the evidence for the use of cerebral oximetry for the prevention of POCD is greater than that for POD, although the majority of studies performed to date have been in the setting of cardiac surgery.[61,62] Taken together, the evidence makes it difficult to make a recommendation regarding the measurement of cerebral oxygenation during routine surgical procedures.

BLOOD PRESSURE CONTROL

There is currently significant interest in whether hypotension, hypertension, or blood pressure variability are associated with the development of PND, but the data are often difficult to interpret. Early studies that randomized patients to either high or low blood pressure management failed to find a difference in cognitive outcomes.[63] However, subsequent observational studies have suggested that intraoperative hypotension, hypertension, and blood pressure variability were each associated with the development of PND, as were vasopressor administration and postoperative hypertension.[64-67] While there is no clear evidence for what constitutes optimal blood pressure management in older surgical patients, maintenance of normal blood pressures without significant variability may decrease the risk of developing PND.

Postoperative Management

PAIN MANAGEMENT

The national opioid crisis has focused anesthesiologists' attention to the use of opioid-sparing techniques in the perioperative period. This is particularly relevant for older surgical patients, in that both postoperative pain and the administration of opioids have been associated with the development of POD. However, the outcomes from opioid-sparing pain management studies are often mixed.[55,68] For example, while regional analgesic techniques to manage postoperative pain are associated with decreased opioid consumption, their role for preventing the development of POD is less clear.[55,69-72]

As described above, perioperative administration of dexmedetomidine has been shown to decrease the development of POD in the majority of studies.[49] Contributing to this action may be that the α-2 adrenergic receptor agonist analgesic effects of dexmedetomidine decrease opioid requirements.[73] Interestingly, there exists little evidence on whether clonidine, another α-2 agonist, is associated with a reduction in POD risk in older surgical patients.[74] Similarly, early studies suggested that the perioperative use of gabapentin reduces the development of POD, but subsequent investigations have demonstrated that, despite decreasing opioid consumption, gabapentin administration did not reduce the development of POD, and may increase respiratory side effects.[75-78] Acetaminophen and COX2 inhibitors have also been suggested as a part of multimodal pain management strategy to reduce POD. While acetaminophen administration has been associated with a reduction in postoperative opioid utilization, it has not been associated with a reduction in POD.[79] In contrast, COX2 inhibitors have been shown to decrease pain severity, opioid utilization, and POD in patients greater than 60 years of age undergoing lower extremity joint replacement surgery. This provides hope that multimodal management of postoperative pain in elders will be associated with a decreased risk of POD, yet may be associated with increases in the costs of pain management.[68,80]

At this point, the effective strategy to reduce PND in older patients is nonpharmacologic—for example, assuring good sleep and nutritional hygiene, rapid mobilization, and early orientation to familiar aspects of their environment, such as family members. Older patients may need their glasses and hearing aids to facilitate orientation. It is also important to remove devices such as Foley catheters to avoid urinary tract infections, to avoid Beers' criteria medications, and to promote normal bowel function. One cannot know the success of these interventions without testing for POD using validated instruments like the CAM.[81] Without formal screening, many cases of delirium, especially the hypoactive type, go undetected.

If a patient is found to be delirious, the cause may be identifiable. For example, delirium might be due to unrecognized hypoxia, pneumonia, urinary tract infection, electrolyte abnormalities, urinary retention, fecal impaction, acute renal failure, hypoglycemia, and dysrhythmias. The medication record may reveal drugs associated with the development of delirium, which should be discontinued, if possible. Nonpharmacologic interventions might include a calm environment and reorientation tools such as the presence of a clock, calendar, family members and familiar items, and the removal of restraint devices. Pharmacologic interventions should be reserved for those who pose a threat to themselves or others, as these drugs may mask, rather than treat, delirium. Effective drugs include dexmedetomidine

TABLE 82.2 Summary of Pathways and Biomarkers

Mechanism	Anesthetic Effect Rank/Order	Biomarker (Type*)	Biofluid	Imaging
Amyloidopathy	Enhanced, Halo>Iso>Des>Pfl	Amyloid β_{1-42} (1) Amyloid β_{1-40} (1)	Plasma, CSF,	Yes, several; e.g. ^{18}F-florbetapir
Tauopathy	Enhanced, Iso>Pfl	Total Tau (1,2) Phospho-Tau (1,2)	Plasma, CSF,	Yes, several; e.g. ^{18}F-AV1451
Apoptosis, Necrosis, Lysis	Enhanced, Iso>Pfl	S100β (2) Neurofilament Light (NFL) (2) Neuron-specific enolase (NSE) (2) Total Tau (1,2)	Plasma, CSF,	MRI. Loss of cellular thickness and/or enlargement of ventricles.
Calcium Dysregulation	Enhanced. Iso>Sevo=Des>Pfl	None	None	None
Neuroinflammation	Various, Sevo/Iso enhanced or no effect. Pfl reduces.	Cytokines, (1,2) Chemokines, CRP (1,2) Prostanoids, (2) Resolvins (2)	Plasma, CSF, Urine	Yes, several; e.g. ^{11}C-PBR28

*Biomarker type; 1, risk stratification; 2, disease progression.
Halo, Halothane; *Iso*, isoflurane; *Sevo*, sevoflurane; *Pfl*, propofol; *CRP*, C-reactive Protein; *CSF*, cerebrospinal fluid; *MRI*, magnetic resonance imaging.

and haloperidol, but the adage of "start low and go slow" to avoid exacerbating the duration or severity of delirium should be adopted.

For patients who develop PND of any form, it is important to refer them to their primary care provider, geriatrician, or mental health expert, as evidence is beginning to suggest that POD and PND are predictors of subsequent cognitive decline.[82-84]

Mechanisms and Biomarkers

As reviewed above, numerous studies in patients have documented a variety of cognitive syndromes following anesthesia and surgery, most of which resolve in several weeks. These clinical studies have only identified age and preexisting cognitive disorders as consistent risk factors; other perioperative features, such as surgery duration, anesthetic management, and intraoperative physiology (e.g., hypotension, hypoxemia) have not been rigorously implicated. Because these associative studies in patients have not yet provided strong clues as to the underlying mechanism, investigators have turned to preclinical models in order to understand causation and thereby design potential interventions. We will first review these preclinical studies and the various pathways that have been implicated, and then discuss how various biomarkers can be used to test for these mechanisms in patients. It is important to point out that early in this exploration, the general anesthetic drug was implicated in a form of "neurotoxicity," and then a gradual shift occurred to view the surgery itself as the primary causation. In reality, it is likely that both, as well as other factors, are involved.

Although PND findings and complaints vary widely, there are similarities in both symptoms and risk factors with neurodegenerative disorders, such as Alzheimer disease. Thus, early studies examined the canonical disease pathways in either cellular/molecular systems and animals, both wild type and transgenic, and these studies then paved the way toward human studies. Three disease-associated pathways will be considered as contributing to PND: amyloidopathy, tauopathy, and calcium dysregulation. Finally, we will discuss neuroinflammation as the principle surgical contribution to PND, and then final common pathways to cellular death. It is essential to realize that biomarkers can be used in at least two principal ways. The first is for risk stratification if collected preoperatively and may not be directly involved in either surgery or anesthesia mechanistic pathways. The second is for detecting and following disease progression and is more likely to directly reflect surgery or anesthesia pathways. Some biomarkers can be used in both ways. These pathways and biomarkers are summarized in Table 82.2.

AMYLOIDOPATHY

The involvement of a small proteolytic fragment of the membrane protein amyloid precursor protein (APP) in neurodegeneration was strongly implicated from both pathological as well as genetic studies.[85] The pathognomonic feature of Alzheimer disease (AD), the senile plaque, contains considerable quantities of this peptide in a characteristic aggregated form, but data now suggest that plaques are a less toxic, sequestered form of the peptide; the neurotoxic forms are thought to be the more labile small (~dodecamers) oligomers of the amyloid β peptide.[85] These oligomers are produced at various rates over a period of decades prior to the onset of symptoms (Fig. 82.2), and are variously eliminated or sequestered into plaque, making a causal association with symptoms exceedingly difficult. In fact, the mechanism by which such small aggregates produce cytotoxicity is not at all clear, but may involve a detergent-like action whereby an amphiphilic peptide inserts into, and disrupts, cell membranes.[86] Despite being a pathognomonic feature of AD, imaging and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) studies (discussed later) have demonstrated a poor relationship between amyloid β accumulation and cognitive loss.

CELL AND MOLECULAR STUDIES

Initial studies found that inhalational anesthetics like halothane enhanced the aggregation of amyloid β in the test tube, and that when combined with cells in culture, also enhanced the cytotoxicity of exogenously added

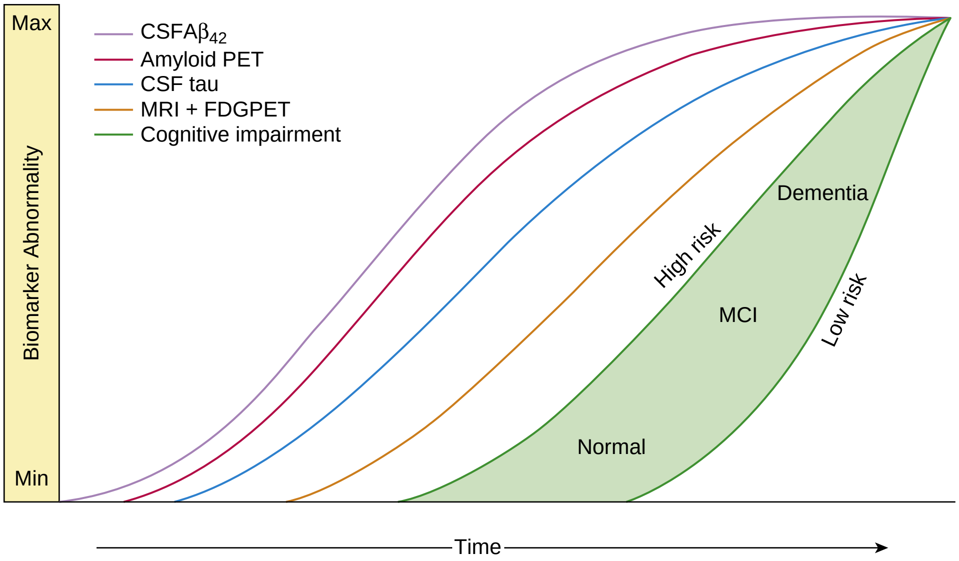


Fig. 82.2 A model of the progression of neurodegeneration and cognition. Cerebrospinal fluid *(CSF)* Aβ42 *(purple)* and deposition of amyloid on PET imaging *(red)* occur early and are then followed by elevations in CSF tau *(blue)* and probably tau aggregates on PET imaging (data not yet available). Neurodegeneration as measured by FDG PET and structural magnetic resonance imaging *(MRI, yellow)*, respectively, follow and precede functional changes such as Mild Cognitive Impairment *(MCI)* or dementia. By definition, all curves converge at the top right-hand corner, the point of maximum abnormality (not levels). The horizontal axis is time, which although highly variable, is on the order of decades. A vertical line drawn between normal and MCI approximates a large fraction of older patients presenting for surgery, which implies that many of our patients will have significant neuropathology at the time of their operation. (From Jack C, Knopman, DS, Jagust WJ, et al. Tracking pathophysiological processes in Alzheimer's disease: an updated hypothetical model of dynamic biomarkers. *Lancet Neurol.* 2013;12:207–216.)

amyloid β peptide.[87] Further studies found that the activity of the enzyme responsible for cleaving and releasing the amyloid β peptide, the β-acting cleavage enzyme, was enhanced by anesthetics like isoflurane, so that amyloid β *production* was also increased.[88] So even without exogenous amyloid β, this pathway was capable of causing apoptosis in cell culture systems. Moreover, isoflurane enhances the cytotoxicity of presenilin-1 mutations in cultured neurons.[89] Presenilin-1 is an important regulator of amyloid β production through effects on the γ-secretase complex, and the mutation in question upregulates this complex to amplify the production of amyloid β. Thus, it is clear that certain anesthetics intersect the amyloidopathy pathways at several points that result in exaggerated cytotoxicity.

There appeared to be variation in the degree that different anesthetics caused these effects. Halothane and isoflurane both caused substantial amyloid β production, aggregation, and cytotoxicity in cell culture.[87] On the other hand, desflurane caused less amyloid β production and apoptosis than isoflurane.[90] Perhaps most importantly, propofol at clinical concentrations (~1 uM) actually inhibited amyloid aggregation in vitro, and was without cytotoxicity in cultured cells.[87] Such rank-order effects are extremely important means of translating hypotheses to intact animals.

ANIMAL STUDIES

In early PND/POCD research, it was found that wild-type rats had impaired learning and memory after isoflurane anesthesia, and this was most apparent in older animals.[91] In addition to age, other vulnerabilities were introduced, such as human transgenes for AD, so that the amyloid mechanism could be explored in vivo. The Tg2576 animal contains the APP Swedish mutation that overproduces amyloid β and acquires cognitive deficits by 10 to 12 months of age. Several 2-hour exposures of aged animals to either halothane or isoflurane caused no further deficits in the already impaired learning or memory, but significantly increased the number and density of amyloid plaques in their brains.[92] Other rodent work, even in wild-type animals, has confirmed that anesthetic exposure (largely isoflurane) increases amyloid β levels in the brain.[93] Rank-order effects appear to be mostly retained, as halothane exposure increases amyloid plaque more than isoflurane,[92] and propofol had little effect, although this was in a different transgenic (3xTgAD) animal.[94]

HUMAN STUDIES

Amyloid β can be assayed in humans either postmortem or in the living by ELISA analysis of CSF, or PET imaging of amyloid β plaque. Low amyloid β in the CSF is consistent with AD pathology because the peptide is thought to be sequestered into plaque and less available for distribution into CSF. In addition, it might also reflect fewer active synapses, as the APP tends to be highly expressed in synaptic regions. Consistent with this, PET imaging that shows high density of amyloid-ligand binding is consistent with AD.[95] Studies have examined amyloid β preoperatively as a risk biomarker, or postoperatively as a marker of PND occurrence and progression. In the former case, it is relatively straightforward to get a sample of CSF when a spinal anesthetic is initiated. Analysis, however, is nontrivial, and should be conducted by standardized laboratories specifically established for this purpose. In one study, low CSF amyloid β predicted dNCR at 3 months postoperatively.[96] PET imaging with any of several amyloid β ligands can also be performed preoperatively for risk assessment. In a recent study of cardiac surgical patients, amyloid imaging was performed at 6 weeks and 1 year postsurgery. At neither time point was amyloid load associated with PND, but it was noted that amyloid load increased more between the two time points than in matched nonsurgical controls.[97] This result is directly analogous to the above animal study in that the increased amyloidopathy was not reflected in worse cognitive outcomes. The reasons are suggested by the mixed role that amyloidopathy represents, both reflecting the presence of, and the sequestering, of toxic oligomers, as well as the delay between this particular proteinopathy and neurodegeneration.

In addition to its use in risk prediction, the use of amyloid β as a marker of disease progression has been studied by several investigators, but in general for very limited periods (days). For example, in patients with lumbar drains in place for the operation and up to 2 days after surgery, repetitive sampling of CSF showed no significant change in the amyloid β.[98,99] An uncontrolled study in cardiac patients showed a significant decrease in CSF amyloid β 6 months after surgery, consistent with progressive amyloidopathy.[100] Finally, one study has shown that CSF amyloid β increases acutely after anesthesia and surgery, which may be consistent with prior data showing anesthetic-induced increases in amyloid β production.[101]

AMYLOIDOPATHY SUMMARY

It is now clear that anesthetics interact directly with the amyloid β pathways, and in a differential manner. The haloalkanes, exemplified by halothane, are the most provocative, predicting acceleration, whereas propofol has little effect. The critical in vivo data confirms these in vitro studies, but they also support the growing recognition that amyloidopathy is itself not temporally associated with cognitive ability, suggesting that amyloidopathy might not underlie the most prevalent form of PND, dNCR. It may, however, contribute to later forms of PND, such as mild or major NCD (postoperative), but the separation in time makes this association difficult to establish. Amyloid β will continue to be useful as a risk biomarker, especially if amyloid imaging or CSF is available preoperatively. Assays of amyloid β in blood have not reached the stage where they are considered sensitive and specific, but this is obviously a highly desired goal.

TAUOPATHY

The other major pathognomonic feature of AD (as well as various tauopathies) is the intracellular neurofibrillary tangle (NFT), now known to consist largely of tau protein. Tau is a microtubule-associated protein (MAP) that regulates microtubule stability and dynamics, both of which are critical for neuronal structure and intracellular transport.[102] Phosphorylation of tau at several sites causes it to detach from the microtubule, which if extensive, ultimately results in loss of microtubular function. Like amyloid, high concentrations of phosphorylated tau will begin to self-assemble into ordered fibrillary structures, which either directly cause further cell stress, or serve to isolate tau from the microtubule. In either case, both neurodegeneration and cognitive loss relate better to NFT prevalence (both by imaging and CSF levels) than does amyloid β, as it is thought to be a later event reflecting cell demise (see Fig. 82.2).[102] Release of tau from damaged cells is thought to enhance tauopathy in neighboring cells in a prion-like manner.[103] Release also deposits tau into the CSF and ultimately bloodstream, making it a useful biomarker of CNS stress/injury.

CELL AND MOLECULAR STUDIES

The effect of isoflurane has been evaluated in a few cell culture studies, and in each case, isoflurane (~2%) caused tau hyperphosphorylation, perhaps by upregulation of the associated kinase, GSK-3b.[104,105] Similarly, both propofol and dexmedetomidine caused tau phosphorylation in a neuronal cell line.[106,107] The mechanism appears to center around inhibition of the associated phosphatase, PP2A, either directly by hypothermia or direct anesthetic binding, or through inhibition of the PP2A-tau complex.

ANIMAL STUDIES

Early work showed that wild-type mice exposed to isoflurane had a dramatic increase in tau phosphorylation in their brains.[108] However, it was found that this was largely due to the extreme temperature sensitivity of the PP2A phosphatase, and the fact that the animals had been allowed to cool during the anesthetic.[108] Subsequent work has determined that a degree of excessive tau phosphorylation exists for several days after the anesthetic, even when animal temperature is carefully maintained.[109] A transgenic mouse that incorporates human genes associated with both amyloid and tau pathology also found that abdominal surgery under volatile anesthesia (desflurane) increased tau deposits, and that this was associated with learning and behavioral defects.[110] Interestingly, neither enhanced tau nor cognitive deficits were observed if propofol was used for the brief surgical procedure.[94]

HUMAN STUDIES

Clinical studies to date have been limited to assays of tau in CSF before and after surgery of various types. As stated previously for amyloidopathy, these studies often take advantage of the need for a subarachnoid catheter for the surgical procedure itself, but in some cases, repeated single CSF draws have been used. Results have been remarkably consistent. Total tau, but not phosphotau, is elevated after surgery, and it continues to rise for at least a day or two, when most of the sampling is terminated.[111] Presumably, this elevation of tau reflects CNS cellular damage, but the implications in terms of future cognition are not yet clear. It is important to note that PET ligands with affinity for NFT tau are now available, yet transsurgical studies have yet to appear in the literature. Sensitive and specific blood assays for tau and other injury biomarkers (neurofilament light, S100β) are now available, and a recent study shows elevations after surgery.[112] While far more convenient than CSF, blood is likely to be contaminated by peripheral tissue sources that are almost invariably damaged during surgery.

TAUOPATHY SUMMARY

The MAP tau is gaining much attention as a more proximal biomarker of CNS injury and neurodegeneration than amyloid β. The effect of anesthesia and surgery on tau is remarkably consistent across species and models, and suggests a form of CNS stress and injury in the immediate postoperative period. The upstream mechanism may reside in surgery-induced neuroinflammation (discussed later), but animal studies suggest that direct effects on tau phosphorylation may also contribute. Postoperative tau imaging studies hold substantial promise for defining the magnitude and time course of any surgery-induced CNS injury.

CALCIUM DYSREGULATION

Intracellular calcium is a critical cell function regulator, which, if excessively elevated, also leads to cell stress, apoptosis, autophagy, and necrosis. Calcium dysregulation has therefore been considered an important link between amyloidopathy/tauopathy and cell death, and has recently been proposed as a target for mitigation of neurodegeneration in disorders like AD,[113] although no trials are underway. The primary source of elevated calcium in neurons is thought to be the endoplasmic reticulum, released via the two major channels, the ryanodine receptor (RyR) and the inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate receptor (InsP3R). An antagonist of RyR, dantrolene, is available and well known to anesthesiologists, but has two principle drawbacks. First, it is distributed only poorly to the brain with the usual parenteral administration, and second, it has the significant side effect of causing weakness due to effects on skeletal muscle. Dantrolene has been proposed as a treatment for AD.[114]

CELL AND MOLECULAR STUDIES

Electrophysiology and cell culture studies have shown that the volatile anesthetics enhance the opening of both the RyR and InsP3R, resulting in concentrations of intracellular calcium that activate apoptosis pathways.[115,116] These effects were not apparent in cell lines devoid of the $InsP_3R$, and were completely mitigated in normal cells treated with either dantrolene or an $InsP_3R$ antagonist, xestospongin-c. It is important to note that fairly high concentrations and long durations of volatile anesthetic exposure were necessary to produce these isolated cell effects, arguing against the in vivo relevance. Also, even higher concentrations of propofol were required to induce cytotoxic calcium levels, suggesting that potentially useful rank-order effects exist among the general anesthetics.

ANIMAL AND HUMAN STUDIES

There are only a few rodent studies that have demonstrated modest efficacy of chronic dantrolene in slowing cognitive decline and neurodegeneration,[117,118] but none to date on the efficacy of acute dantrolene in preventing POD or losses in memory or cognition. Perioperative human studies have not yet been reported.

CALCIUM SUMMARY

Calcium dysregulation is probably an important upstream event in anesthesia and surgery-induced cognitive decline, and yet has remained largely unstudied. While chronic dantrolene administration to slow the progression of AD might be considered implausible, the potential for acute, intraoperative use is attractive, especially given that the various formulations of dantrolene are already clinically approved, and that muscle relaxation during surgery is typically desirable.

NEUROINFLAMMATION

The consistent observation in animals that anesthetics alone induce only modest effects on pathology and cognition, and that more robust and consistent effects are produced in both when a surgical procedure is added, have led to the hypothesis that surgery-induced inflammation due to activation of the innate immune system is the principle contributor to PND. It is well established that surgery induces a classical systemic inflammatory response, triggered by damage-associated molecular pattern molecules, and propagated systemically by a variety of cytokines and chemokines. This inflammatory response is essential for wound healing and microbial defense, but can also exaggerate ongoing inflammatory processes in some individuals. In general, an intact blood-brain barrier (BBB) isolates the brain from significant inflammatory mediators and cells. But the BBB can become “leaky” in the elderly, and in those with preexisting neuroinflammation, so that the peripheral innate immune response can be more effectively transduced into the brain. This is the probable reason that age, preexisting cognitive decline, cardiovascular disease, diabetes, and frailty[2,84,119-124] are important risk factors for PND.

CELL AND MOLECULAR STUDIES

It is not possible to simulate surgery in cell culture systems, but attempts at pro-inflammatory influences have been combined with anesthetic exposure to understand the response of a variety of cell types. For example, a cultured microglia cell line had little cytokine response to sevoflurane and isoflurane (1 and 2 MAC) or to 1 or 2 ED_{50} of propofol. However, in the presence of low-dose lipopolysaccharide (LPS), robust cytokine responses occurred, which were amplified by exposure to the volatile drugs, sevoflurane more than isoflurane. On the other hand, clinical concentrations of propofol completely ablated the cytokine response to LPS.[125] While translation of cell culture results continues to be vexing, such studies will continue to be important to define molecular pathways contributing to cytotoxicity in specific cell types.

ANIMAL STUDIES

The literature contains numerous animal studies demonstrating the contribution of the inflammatory response to PND/POCD. For example, while subtle changes in behavior can be detected after anesthesia alone (typically

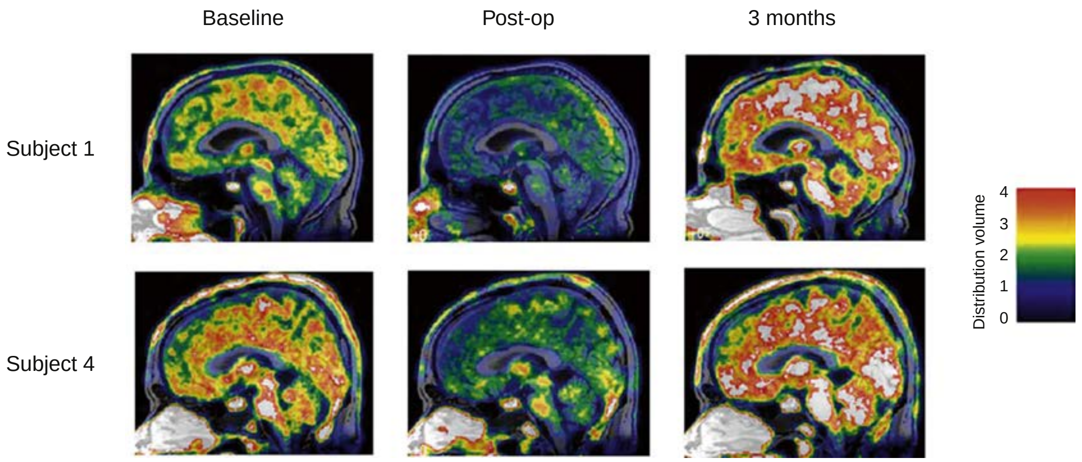


Fig. 82.3 Neuroinflammation imaging by PET after surgery. Two subjects undergoing abdominal surgery were scanned using a PET ligand that targets activated glia ([^{11}C]PBR28), generally thought to reflect the degree of immune activation in the brain. The baseline scan is before the operation and the "postop" scan, clearly showing immune suppression, is 4 days after the operation. At least in these two subjects, the "3-month" scan shows a degree of activation greater than baseline, which correlated with their cognitive assays. The suppression at 4 days may have followed an acute activation in the first day or two after surgery. (From Forsberg et al., *Ann Neurol.* 2017;81:572–582.)

isoflurane), the effects are considerably larger and longer lasting when combined with even a brief surgical procedure.[110,126,127] The effects of surgery-induced inflammation are further magnified in aged animals, metabolic syndrome animals, and in those with human disease transgenes, consistent with predictions above based on BBB disruption.[110,128-132] The cognitive effects are usually accompanied by more pronounced elevations in both peripheral and brain cytokine levels, and activation of astrocytes and microglia, disrupting the precise glia-neuron signaling axis.[133] Removal of pro-inflammatory components, either via cytokine antibodies (to IL-6 or TNFα) or antiinflammatory drugs (e.g., dexamethasone, statins), at least partially mitigates the effect of anesthesia and surgery on both behavior and pathology.[91,127,134,135] Because the pro-inflammatory effect is important for surgical recovery, some of these studies have noted that blocking these cytokines impairs wound healing. Thus, attention is shifting to modulation of inflammation via cholinergic pathways[130,136,137] or to the inflammatory resolution pathways, a complex mixture of specific cytokines (IL-4, 10) as well as small lipid mediators (resolvins). Two studies suggest efficacy of either exogenous cholinergic agonists or resolvin therapy to mitigate PND in rodents.[130,138] Finally, the bidirectional involvement of pain and analgesics in neuroinflammation is well appreciated, but the role in PND/POCD has not yet been systematically studied.

Although the evidence to date suggests that the anesthetic plays only a minor role in producing PND/POCD, the choice of drug may modulate the magnitude and duration of the neuroinflammatory response. For example, the cell culture studies suggested that propofol mitigated the effect of LPS on cultured microglia; accordingly, the use of propofol as compared to desflurane significantly reduced both the pathology and the behavioral effects of surgery in a transgenic animal.[94] In fact, one study suggested that chronic (subanesthetic) doses of propofol reduced the trajectory of decline in a model of murine AD.[139]

HUMAN STUDIES

As is becoming more the rule than the exception, the above rodent studies have only modestly translated to humans. This is undoubtedly a result of extreme variability in how patients are treated, and in the patients themselves. For example, most patients receive both propofol and a volatile agent; few receive a volatile agent alone. There is clear evidence of a peripheral pro-inflammatory effect of surgery, but of widely varying magnitude and duration.[140] Very consistent evidence for this peripheral immune response being mirrored in the CNS has also been reported. A series of studies sampled CSF before and out to 24 or 48 hours after surgery and measured several cytokines.[98,111,141,142] In each case, significant elevations in pro- and antiinflammatory cytokines were detected, which appeared to still be rising even at 48 hours. In addition, one study confirmed preclinical evidence of early changes in BBB integrity as indicated by an abrupt and transient increase in CSF/plasma albumin ratio after orthopedic surgery.[143] Interestingly, the nonrandomized study[98] found that total IV anesthesia was associated with lower CSF pro-inflammatory cytokines than inhalational anesthesia, although the larger randomized study could detect no difference between isoflurane- and propofol-based anesthetics. Again, it may be important to note that the isoflurane group also received propofol for induction in both studies, and that the dose-response relationship for antiinflammatory effects of this drug have not been established. A more recent PET imaging study noted that a marker of activated astrocyte microglia activation was significantly suppressed in patients 4 days after abdominal surgery and followed by an elevation at 3 months postsurgery that was associated with a reduction in cognitive capacity (Fig. 82.3).[144] These findings are consistent with earlier studies with the same PET probe in primates and humans, where an initial and rapid (4 hours) pro-inflammatory signal due to LPS was followed by depression at 22 hours.[145,146] Although difficult and expensive, more time points will be necessary in these biomarker studies to define the contribution of innate immunity to the cognitive outcomes.

Given an important role for inflammation, several studies have attempted mitigation with antiinflammatory medications, typically given in the immediate preoperative period or after induction of anesthesia. Two recent RCTs found dexamethasone reduced the inflammatory response and incidence of POCD[147,148] while two other clinical trials did not find a beneficial effect or even worse outcome.[134,149] A COX2 inhibitor (parecoxib) was found to reduce dNCR in elderly patients, as well as both pain and pro-inflammatory cytokines.[150,151] It is likely that optimal antiinflammatory dosages and timing have yet to be realized, or that emphasis needs to be shifted to enhancement of pro-resolution rather than blockage of pro-inflammation.

In addition, multi "omics" approaches are providing new insights into distinct immune-cellular responses after surgery that will likely inform better therapeutic strategies to prevent PND.[152]

NEUROINFLAMMATION SUMMARY

The evidence that surgery causes both peripheral and CNS inflammation is strong, but its mitigation has to date been largely unrewarding. In vitro studies suggest that the choice of general anesthetic drug might modulate the inflammatory response; however, this has yet to be borne out in patient studies. Future directions will involve deployment of appropriately timed antiinflammatory drugs or pro-resolution therapies in the perioperative setting.

Summary

The pathology and mechanisms are presented above as independent possibilities; however, it is likely that more than one, or all, are present simultaneously after surgery, especially in vulnerable individuals. For example, patients with preexisting MCI may already have both amyloidopathy and tauopathy, which has provoked a smoldering neuroinflammatory state (termed a "primed" state) prior to surgery (see Fig. 82.2). The super-imposed acute inflammatory response to surgery, together with any modulatory effects of the anesthetic, then interact with this primed state to acutely alter the effects of this pathology on synaptic, and therefore, cognitive function. This may be transient, resulting in dNCR, or might in turn accelerate the pathology itself, to result in further neurodegeneration and more durable NCD. This mechanistic work has provided the basis for biomarker development, and for a multimodal campaign on reducing the effects of anesthesia and surgery on the aging brain.

CLOSING COMMENTS

Interest in perioperative brain health issues in older adults is accelerating dramatically. Patients, their families, and caregivers, as well as perioperative providers and scientists, need to become familiar with the risk factors for, and consequences of, POCD/PND and the best practices to mitigate them. In this chapter, we have attempted to provide an up-to-date summary of most aspects related to POCD/PND, from mechanisms to therapy, but the reader desiring more detail should refer to the primary literature.

Acknowledgment

This chapter is a consolidation of content from two chapters in the 8th edition, Chapter 99, "Cognitive Dysfunction and Other Long-term Complications of Surgery and Anesthesia" and Chapter 15, "Perioperative and Anesthesia Neurotoxicity." Dr. Roderic Eckenhoff joins the editors and publisher to thank the following authors for their efforts: Drs. Lars S. Rasmussen, Jan Stygall, Stanton P. Newman, and Vesna Jevtovic-Todorovic. Their contributions have served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Savage GH. *Br Med J*. 1887;2:1199.
2. Moller JT, et al. *Lancet*. 1998;351:857.
3. Evered L, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1179.
4. Silbert B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:1224.
5. APA. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 5th ed. ; 2013.
6. Albert MS, et al. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2011;7:270.
7. McKhann GM, et al. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2011;7:263–269.
8. Evered LA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018.
9. Newman MF, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:395–402.
10. Evered LA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:62–71.
11. Inouye SK, et al. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2016;12:766–775.
12. Murkin JM, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1995;59:1289–1295.
13. Silbert BS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1137–1145.
14. Lewis MS, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50:50–57.
15. Jacobson NS, Truax P. *J Consult Clin Psychol*. 1991;59:12–19.
16. Kneebone AC, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1998;65:1320–1325.
17. Rasmussen LS, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:275–289.
18. Ingraham L, Aiken C. *Neuropsychology*. 1996;10:120–124.
19. Keizer AM, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:1232–1235.
20. Berian JR, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2018;268:93–99.
21. Culley DJ, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:765–774.
22. O'Regan NA, et al. *J Alzheimers Dis*. 2018;64:775–785.
23. Levinoff E, et al. *J Frailty Aging*. 2018;7:34–39.
24. van Velthuijsen EL, et al. *Drugs Aging*. 2018;35:153–161.
25. Watt J, et al. *J Gen Intern Med*. 2018;33:500–509.
26. Eamer G, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2018;1:CD012485.
27. Neuner B, et al. *Aging Clin Exp Res*. 2018;30:245–248.
28. Culley DJ, Crosby G. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:7–9.
29. Kim S, et al. *Clin Interv Aging*. 2015;10:13–27.
30. Cunningham EL, et al. *Age Ageing*. 2017;46:779–786.
31. Adamis D, et al. *Psychiatr Genet*. 2016;26:53–59.
32. Vasunilashorn S, et al. *Am J Geriatr Psychiatry*. 2015;23:1029–1037.
33. McDonagh DL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:852–859.
34. Silbert BS, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;86:841–847.
35. Heyer EJ, et al. *Neurology*. 2005;65:1759–1763.
36. Shoair OA, et al. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2015;31:30–36.
37. Dale W, et al. *Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord*. 2018;32:207–213.
38. Hogan KJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126:629–631.
39. Fields LM, Calvert JD. *Psychiatry Clin Neurosci*. 2015;69:462–471.
40. Chow WB, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2012;215:453–466.
41. Oresanya LB, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311:2110–2220.
42. O'Donnell CM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:37–50.
43. Zywiel MG, et al. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2014;472:1453–1466.
44. Mason SE, et al. *J Alzheimers Dis*. 2010;22(suppl 3):67–79.
45. Rasmussen LS, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:260–266.
46. Sieber FE, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22:179–183.
47. Pandharipande PP, et al. *Crit Care*. 2010;14:R38.
48. Pandharipande PP, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;298:2644–2653.
49. Duan X, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;121:384–397.
50. Zhang DF, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2018.
51. Mei B, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2018;34:811–817.
52. Deiner S, et al. *JAMA Surg*. 2017;152:e171505.
53. Sieber FE, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2010;85:18–26.
54. Hovaguimian F, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2018.

55. Weinstein SM, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:999–1008.
56. Avidan MS, et al. *Lancet*. 2017;390:267–275.
57. MacKenzie KK, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129:417–427.
58. Punjasawadwong Y, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2018;5:CD011283.
59. Dormia G. *Arch Ital Urol Nefrol Androl*. 1987;59:85–88.
60. Deiner S, et al. *Clin Ther*. 2015;37:2700–2705.
61. Zorrilla-Vaca A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2018;65:529–542.
62. Zheng F, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:663–676.
63. Williams-Russo P, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:926–935.
64. Neerland BE, et al. *PLoS One*. 2017;12:e0180641.
65. Hirsch J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:418–426.
66. Hori D, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:1009–1017.
67. Kato T, et al. *Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry*. 1997;21:719–724.
68. Brooks E, et al. *Geriatr Orthop Surg Rehabil*. 2017;8:151–154.
69. Steenberg J, Moller AM. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:1368–1380.
70. van der Sluis FJ, et al. *Surgery*. 2017;161:704–711.
71. Zhang H, et al. *Crit Care*. 2013;17:R47.
72. Mimuro J, et al. *Blood*. 1987;69:446–453.
73. Tsaousi GG, et al. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 2018.
74. Rubino AS, et al. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2010;10:58–62.
75. Deljou A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:798–806.
76. Leung JM, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:633–644.
77. Dighe K, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2014;61:1136–1137.
78. Leung JM, et al. *Neurology*. 2006;67:1251–1253.
79. Greenberg S, et al. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;109:e554–e562.
80. Mu DL, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1992–2000.
81. Marcantonio ER, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2014;161:554–561.
82. Schulte PJ, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;121:398–405.
83. Bratzke LC, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73:549–555.
84. Evered L, et al. *Curr Opin Psychiatry*. 2017;30:220–226.
85. Selkoe DJ, Hardy J. *EMBO Mol Med*. 2016;8:595–608.
86. Khondker A, et al. *Membranes (Basel)*. 2017;7.
87. Eckenhoff RG, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:703–709.
88. Xie Z, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2007;27:1247–1254.
89. Liang G, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:492–500. table of contents.
90. Zhang Y, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 2012;71:687–698.
91. Culley DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1004–1009.
92. Bianchi SL, et al. *Neurobiol Aging*. 2008;29:1002–1010.
93. Xie Z, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 2008;64:618–627.
94. Mardini F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:472–480.
95. Dronkers JJ, et al. *Clin Rehabil*. 2010;24:614–622.
96. Evered L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:353–361.
97. Klinger RY, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:728–744.
98. Tang JX, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:727–732.
99. Berger M, et al. *J Alzheimers Dis*. 2016;52:1299–1310.
100. Palotas A, et al. *J Alzheimers Dis*. 2010;21:1153–1164.
101. Zhang B, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:52–60.
102. Zetterberg H, et al. *Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol*. 2017;43:194–199.
103. Goedert M. *Science*. 2015;349:1255555.
104. Xu J, et al. *Cell Mol Neurobiol*. 2012;32:1343–1351.
105. Dong Y, et al. *PLoS One*. 2012;7:e39386.
106. Whittington RA, et al. *PLoS One*. 2011;6:e16648.
107. Whittington RA, et al. *Neurobiol Aging*. 2015;36:2414–2428.
108. Planel E, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2007;27:3090–3097.
109. Planel E, et al. *FASEB J*. 2009;23:2595–2604.
110. Tang JX, et al. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2011;7:521–531.
111. Berger M, et al. *Front Immunol*. 2017;8:1528.
112. Evered L, et al. *JAMA Neurol*. 2018;75:542–547.
113. Demuro A, et al. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:12463–12468.
114. Liang L, Wei H. *Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord*. 2015;29:1–5.
115. Wei H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:251–260.
116. Qiao H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:490–501.
117. Peng J, et al. *Neurosci Lett*. 2012;516:274–279.
118. Chakroborty S, et al. *PLoS One*. 2012;7:e52056.
119. Monk TG, Price CC. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2011;17:376–381.
120. Price CC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:601–613.
121. Feinkohl I, et al. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev*. 2017;33.
122. Price CC, et al. *J Alzheimers Dis*. 2017;59:1027–1035.
123. Hudetz JA, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29:382–388.
124. Brown CH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:430–435.
125. Ye X, et al. *PLoS One*. 2013;8:e52887.
126. Terrando N, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2010;107:20518–20522.
127. Hu J, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:537–545.
128. Barrientos RM, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32:14641–14648.
129. Hovens IB, et al. *Brain Behav Immun*. 2014;38:202–210.
130. Terrando N, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 2011;70:986–995.
131. Feng X, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1098–1105.
132. Xu Z, et al. *Sci Rep*. 2014;4:3766.
133. Femenia T, et al. *J Neurosci*. 2018;38:452–464.
134. Fang Q, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2014;26:220–225.
135. Vizcaychipi MP, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259:1235–1244.
136. Pavlov VA, Tracey KJ. *Nat Neurosci*. 2017;20:156–166.
137. Zanos TP, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2018;115:E4843–e4852.
138. Terrando N, et al. *FASEB J*. 2013;27:3564–3571.
139. Zhang Y, et al. *Transl Neurodegener*. 2014;3:8.
140. Alazawi W, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2016;264:73–80.
141. Bromander S, et al. *J Neuroinflammation*. 2012;9:242.
142. Reinsfelt B, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2013;57:82–88.
143. Reinsfelt B, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94:549–555.
144. Forsberg A, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 2017;81:572–582.
145. Hannestad J, et al. *Neuroimage*. 2012;63:232–239.
146. Sandiego CM, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2015;112:12468–12473.
147. Glumac S, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2017;34:776–784.
148. Valentin LS, et al. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0152308.
149. Ottens TH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:492–500.
150. Zhu YZ, et al. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2016;95:e4082.
151. Tian Y, et al. *Int Psychogeriatr*. 2014;1–8.
152. Gaudilliere B, et al. *Sci Transl Med*. 2014;6:255ra131.

This page intentionally left blank

References

1. Savage GH. Insanity following the use of anæsthetics in operations. *Br Med J*. 1887;2:1199–1200.
2. Moller JT, Cluitmans P, Rasmussen LS, et al. Long-term postoperative cognitive dysfunction in the elderly ISPOCD1 study. ISPOCD investigators. International Study of Post-Operative Cognitive Dysfunction. *Lancet*. 1998;351:857–861.
3. Evered L, Scott DA, Silbert B, Maruff P. Postoperative cognitive dysfunction is independent of type of surgery and anesthetic. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:1179–1185.
4. Silbert B, Evered L, Scott DA, et al. Preexisting cognitive impairment is associated with postoperative cognitive dysfunction after hip joint replacement surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:1224–1234.
5. APA. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 5th ed. 2013.
6. Albert MS, DeKosky ST, Dickson D, et al. The diagnosis of mild cognitive impairment due to Alzheimer's disease: recommendations from the National Institute on Aging-Alzheimer's Association workgroups on diagnostic guidelines for Alzheimer's disease. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2011;7:270–279.
7. McKhann GM, Knopman DS, Chertkow H, et al. The diagnosis of dementia due to Alzheimer's disease: recommendations from the National Institute on Aging-Alzheimer's Association workgroups on diagnostic guidelines for Alzheimer's disease. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2011;7:263–269.
8. Evered LA, Silbert B, Knopman D, et al. Recommendations for the nomenclature of cognitive change associated with anaesthesia and surgery - 2018. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018.
9. Newman MF, Kirchner JL, Phillips-Bute B, et al. Longitudinal assessment of neurocognitive function after coronary-artery bypass surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;344:395–402.
10. Evered LA, Silbert BS, Scott DA, Maruff P, Ames D. Prevalence of dementia 7.5 years after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:62–71.
11. Inouye SK, Marcantonio ER, Kosar CM, et al. The short-term and long-term relationship between delirium and cognitive trajectory in older surgical patients. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2016;12:766–775.
12. Murkin JM, Newman SP, Stump DA, Blumenthal JA. Statement of consensus on assessment of neurobehavioral outcomes after cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1995;59:1289–1295.
13. Silbert BS, Scott DA, Evered LA, et al. A comparison of the effect of high- and low-dose fentanyl on the incidence of postoperative cognitive dysfunction after coronary artery bypass surgery in the elderly. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:1137–1145.
14. Lewis MS, Maruff P, Silbert BS, Evered LA, Scott DA. The sensitivity and specificity of three common statistical rules for the classification of post-operative cognitive dysfunction following coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2006;50:50–57.
15. Jacobson NS, Truax P. Clinical significance: a statistical approach to defining meaningful change in psychotherapy research. *J Consult Clin Psychol*. 1991;59:12–19.
16. Kneebone AC, Andrew MJ, Baker RA, Knight JL. Neuropsychologic changes after coronary artery bypass grafting: use of reliable change indices. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 1998;65:1320–1325.
17. Rasmussen LS, Larsen K, Houx P, Skovgaard LT, Hanning CD, Moller JT. The assessment of postoperative cognitive function. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2001;45:275–289.
18. Ingraham L, Aiken C. An empiracal approach to determine criteria for abnormality in test batteries with multiple results. *Neuropsychology*. 1996;10:120–124.
19. Keizer AM, Hijman R, Kalkman CJ, Kahn RS, van Dijk D. The incidence of cognitive decline after (not) undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting: the impact of a controlled definition. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2005;49:1232–1235.
20. Berian JR, Zhou L, Russell MM, et al. Postoperative delirium as a target for surgical quality improvement. *Ann Surg*. 2018;268:93–99.
21. Culley DJ, Flaherty D, Fahey MC, et al. Poor performance on a preoperative cognitive screening test predicts postoperative complications in older orthopedic surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:765–774.
22. O'Regan NA, Fitzgerald J, Adamis D, Molloy DW, Meagher D, Timmons S. Predictors of delirium development in older medical inpatients: readily identifiable factors at admission. *J Alzheimers Dis*. 2018;64:775–785.
23. Levinoff E, Try A, Chabot J, Lee L, Zukor D, Beauchet O. Precipitants of delirium in older inpatients admitted in surgery for post-fall hip fracture: an observational study. *J Frailty Aging*. 2018;7:34–39.
24. van Velthuijsen EL, Zwakhalen SMG, Pijpers E, et al. Effects of a medication review on delirium in older hospitalised patients: a comparative retrospective cohort study. *Drugs Aging*. 2018;35:153–161.
25. Watt J, Tricco AC, Talbot-Hamon C, et al. Identifying older adults at risk of delirium following elective surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Gen Intern Med*. 2018;33:500–509.
26. Eamer G, Taheri A, Chen SS, et al. Comprehensive geriatric assessment for older people admitted to a surgical service. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2018;1:CD012485.
27. Neuner B, Hadzidiakos D, Bettelli G. Pre- and postoperative management of risk factors for postoperative delirium: who is in charge and what is its essence? *Aging Clin Exp Res*. 2018;30:245–248.
28. Culley DJ, Crosby G. Prehabilitation for prevention of postoperative cognitive dysfunction? *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:7–9.
29. Kim S, Brooks AK, Groban L. Preoperative assessment of the older surgical patient: honing in on geriatric syndromes. *Clin Interv Aging*. 2015;10:13–27.
30. Cunningham EL, Mawhinney T, Beverland D, et al. Observational cohort study examining apolipoprotein E status and preoperative neuropsychological performance as predictors of post-operative delirium in an older elective arthroplasty population. *Age Ageing*. 2017;46:779–786.
31. Adamis D, Meagher D, Williams J, Mulligan O, McCarthy G. A systematic review and meta-analysis of the association between the apolipoprotein E genotype and delirium. *Psychiatr Genet*. 2016;26:53–59.
32. Vasunilashorn S, Ngo L, Kosar CM, et al. Does apolipoprotein E genotype increase risk of postoperative delirium? *Am J Geriatr Psychiatry*. 2015;23:1029–1037.
33. McDonagh DL, Mathew JP, White WD, et al. Cognitive function after major noncardiac surgery, apolipoprotein E4 genotype, and biomarkers of brain injury. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;112:852–859.
34. Silbert BS, Evered LA, Scott DA, Cowie TF. The apolipoprotein E epsilon4 allele is not associated with cognitive dysfunction in cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2008;86:841–847.
35. Heyer EJ, Wilson DA, Sahlein DH, et al. APOE-epsilon4 predisposes to cognitive dysfunction following uncomplicated carotid endarterectomy. *Neurology*. 2005;65:1759–1763.
36. Shoair OA, Grasso MP II, Lahaye LA, Daniel R, Biddle CJ, Slattum PW. Incidence and risk factors for postoperative cognitive dysfunction in older adults undergoing major noncardiac surgery: a prospective study. *J Anaesthesiol Clin Pharmacol*. 2015;31:30–36.
37. Dale W, Kotwal AA, Shega JW, et al. Cognitive function and its risk factors among older US adults living at home. *Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord*. 2018;32:207–213.
38. Hogan KJ, Bratzke LC, Hogan KL. Informed consent and cognitive dysfunction after noncardiac surgery in the elderly. *Anesth Analg*. 2018;126:629–631.
39. Fields LM, Calvert JD. Informed consent procedures with cognitively impaired patients: a review of ethics and best practices. *Psychiatry Clin Neurosci*. 2015;69:462–471.
40. Chow WB, Rosenthal RA, Merkow RP, Ko CY, Esnaola NF. Optimal preoperative assessment of the geriatric surgical patient: a best practices guideline from the American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Program and the American Geriatrics Society. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2012;215:453–466.
41. Oresanya LB, Lyons WL, Finlayson E. Preoperative assessment of the older patient: a narrative review. *JAMA*. 2014;311:2110–2220.
42. O'Donnell CM, McLoughlin L, Patterson CC, et al. Perioperative outcomes in the context of mode of anaesthesia for patients undergoing hip fracture surgery: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:37–50.
43. Zywiel MG, Prabhu A, Perruccio AV, Gandhi R. The influence of anesthesia and pain management on cognitive dysfunction after joint arthroplasty: a systematic review. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2014;472:1453–1466.
44. Mason SE, Noel-Storr A, Ritchie CW. The impact of general and regional anesthesia on the incidence of post-operative cognitive dysfunction and post-operative delirium: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *J Alzheimers Dis*. 2010;22(suppl 3):67–79.

45. Rasmussen LS, Johnson T, Kuipers HM, et al. Does anaesthesia cause postoperative cognitive dysfunction? A randomised study of regional versus general anaesthesia in 438 elderly patients. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2003;47:260–266.
46. Sieber FE, Gottshalk A, Zakriya KJ, Mears SC, Lee H. General anesthesia occurs frequently in elderly patients during propofol-based sedation and spinal anesthesia. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22:179–183.
47. Pandharipande PP, Sanders RD, Girard TD, et al. Effect of dexmedetomidine versus lorazepam on outcome in patients with sepsis: an a priori-designed analysis of the MENDS randomized controlled trial. *Crit Care*. 2010;14:R38.
48. Pandharipande PP, Pun BT, Herr DL, et al. Effect of sedation with dexmedetomidine vs lorazepam on acute brain dysfunction in mechanically ventilated patients: the MENDS randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2007;298:2644–2653.
49. Duan X, Coburn M, Rossaint R, Sanders RD, Waesberghe JV, Kowark A. Efficacy of perioperative dexmedetomidine on postoperative delirium: systematic review and meta-analysis with trial sequential analysis of randomised controlled trials. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;121:384–397.
50. Zhang DF, Su X, Meng ZT, et al. Impact of dexmedetomidine on long-term outcomes after noncardiac surgery in elderly: 3-year follow-up of a randomized controlled trial. *Ann Surg*. 2018.
51. Mei B, Meng G, Xu G, et al. Intraoperative sedation with dexmedetomidine is superior to propofol for elderly patients undergoing hip arthroplasty: a prospective randomized controlled study. *Clin J Pain*. 2018;34:811–817.
52. Deiner S, Luo X, Lin HM, et al. Intraoperative infusion of dexmedetomidine for prevention of postoperative delirium and cognitive dysfunction in elderly patients undergoing major elective noncardiac surgery: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA Surg*. 2017;152:e171505.
53. Sieber FE, Zakriya KJ, Gottschalk A, et al. Sedation depth during spinal anesthesia and the development of postoperative delirium in elderly patients undergoing hip fracture repair. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2010;85:18–26.
54. Hovaguimian F, Tschopp C, Beck-Schimmer B, Puhan M. Intraoperative ketamine administration to prevent delirium or postoperative cognitive dysfunction: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2018.
55. Weinstein SM, Poultsides L, Baaklini LR, et al. Postoperative delirium in total knee and hip arthroplasty patients: a study of perioperative modifiable risk factors. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:999–1008.
56. Avidan MS, Maybrier HR, Abdallah AB, et al. Intraoperative ketamine for prevention of postoperative delirium or pain after major surgery in older adults: an international, multicentre, double-blind, randomised clinical trial. *Lancet*. 2017;390:267–275.
57. MacKenzie KK, Britt-Spells AM, Sands LP, Leung JM. Processed electroencephalogram monitoring and postoperative delirium: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;129:417–427.
58. Punjasawadwong Y, Chau-In W, Laopaiboon M, Punjasawadwong S, Pin-On P. Processed electroencephalogram and evoked potential techniques for amelioration of postoperative delirium and cognitive dysfunction following non-cardiac and non-neurosurgical procedures in adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2018;5:CD011283.
59. Dormia G. [Prophylaxis of idiopathic kidney calculi with oligo-mineral water therapy]. *Arch Ital Urol Nefrol Androl*. 1987;59:85–88.
60. Deiner S, Luo X, Silverstein JH, Sano M. Can intraoperative processed EEG predict postoperative cognitive dysfunction in the elderly? *Clin Ther*. 2015;37:2700–2705.
61. Zorrilla-Vaca A, Healy R, Grant MC, et al. Intraoperative cerebral oximetry-based management for optimizing perioperative outcomes: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Can J Anaesth*. 2018;65:529–542.
62. Zheng F, Sheinberg R, Yee MS, Ono M, Zheng Y, Hogue CW. Cerebral near-infrared spectroscopy monitoring and neurologic outcomes in adult cardiac surgery patients: a systematic review. *Anesth Analg*. 2013;116:663–676.
63. Williams-Russo P, Sharrock NE, Mattis S, et al. Randomized trial of hypotensive epidural anesthesia in older adults. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:926–935.
64. Neerland BE, Krogseth M, Juliebo V, et al. Perioperative hemodynamics and risk for delirium and new onset dementia in hip fracture patients; a prospective follow-up study. *PLoS One*. 2017;12:e0180641.
65. Hirsch J, DePalma G, Tsai TT, Sands LP, Leung JM. Impact of intraoperative hypotension and blood pressure fluctuations on early postoperative delirium after non-cardiac surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:418–426.
66. Hori D, Brown C, Ono M, et al. Arterial pressure above the upper cerebral autoregulation limit during cardiopulmonary bypass is associated with postoperative delirium. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:1009–1017.
67. Kato T, Shioiri T, Murashita J, Inubushi T. Phosphorus-31 magnetic resonance spectroscopic observations in 4 cases with anorexia nervosa. *Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry*. 1997;21:719–724.
68. Brooks E, Freter SH, Bowles SK, Amirault D. Multimodal pain management in older elective arthroplasty patients. *Geriatr Orthop Surg Rehabil*. 2017;8:151–154.
69. Steenberg J, Moller AM. Systematic review of the effects of fascia iliaca compartment block on hip fracture patients before operation. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:1368–1380.
70. van der Sluis FJ, Buisman PL, Meerdink M, et al. Risk factors for postoperative delirium after colorectal operation. *Surgery*. 2017;161:704–711.
71. Zhang H, Lu Y, Liu M, et al. Strategies for prevention of postoperative delirium: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Crit Care*. 2013;17:R47.
72. Mimuro J, Koike Y, Sumi Y, Aoki N. Monoclonal antibodies to discrete regions in alpha 2-plasmin inhibitor. *Blood*. 1987;69:446–453.
73. Tsaousi GG, Pourzitaki C, Aloisio S, Bilotta F. Dexmedetomidine as a sedative and analgesic adjuvant in spine surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. 2018.
74. Rubino AS, Onorati F, Caroleo S, et al. Impact of clonidine administration on delirium and related respiratory weaning after surgical correction of acute type-A aortic dissection: results of a pilot study. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2010;10:58–62.
75. Deljou A, Hedrick SJ, Portner ER, et al. Pattern of perioperative gabapentinoid use and risk for postoperative naloxone administration. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:798–806.
76. Leung JM, Sands LP, Chen N, et al. Perioperative gabapentin does not reduce postoperative delirium in older surgical patients: a randomized clinical trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:633–644.
77. Dighe K, Clarke H, McCartney CJ, Wong CL. Perioperative gabapentin and delirium following total knee arthroplasty: a post-hoc analysis of a double-blind randomized placebo-controlled trial. *Can J Anaesth*. 2014;61:1136–1137.
78. Leung JM, Sands LP, Rico M, et al. Pilot clinical trial of gabapentin to decrease postoperative delirium in older patients. *Neurology*. 2006;67:1251–1253.
79. Greenberg S, Murphy GS, Avram MJ, et al. Postoperative intravenous acetaminophen for craniotomy patients: a randomized controlled trial. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;109:e554–e562.
80. Mu DL, Zhang DZ, Wang DX, et al. Parecoxib supplementation to morphine analgesia decreases incidence of delirium in elderly patients after hip or knee replacement surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:1992–2000.
81. Marcantonio ER, Ngo LH, O'Connor M, et al. Derivation and validation of a 3-minute diagnostic interview for CAM-defined delirium: a cross-sectional diagnostic test study. *Ann Intern Med*. 2014;161:554–561.
82. Schulte PJ, Roberts RO, Knopman DS, et al. Association between exposure to anaesthesia and surgery and long-term cognitive trajectories in older adults: report from the Mayo Clinic Study of Aging. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;121:398–405.
83. Bratzke LC, Koscik RL, Schenning KJ, et al. Cognitive decline in the middle-aged after surgery and anaesthesia: results from the Wisconsin Registry for Alzheimer's Prevention cohort. *Anaesthesia*. 2018;73:549–555.
84. Evered L, Scott DA, Silbert B. Cognitive decline associated with anesthesia and surgery in the elderly: does this contribute to dementia prevalence? *Curr Opin Psychiatry*. 2017;30:220–226.
85. Selkoe DJ, Hardy J. The amyloid hypothesis of Alzheimer's disease at 25 years. *EMBO Mol Med*. 2016;8:595–608.
86. Khondker A, Alsop RJ, Rheinstadter MC. Membrane-accelerated amyloid-beta aggregation and formation of cross-beta sheets. *Membranes (Basel)*. 2017;7.

87. Eckenhoff RG, Johansson JS, et al. Inhaled anesthetic enhancement of amyloid-beta oligomerization and cytotoxicity. *Anesthesiology*. 2004;101:703–709.
88. Xie Z, Dong Y, Maeda U, et al. The inhalation anesthetic isoflurane induces a vicious cycle of apoptosis and amyloid beta-protein accumulation. *J Neurosci*. 2007;27:1247–1254.
89. Liang G, Wang Q, Li Y, et al. A presenilin-1 mutation renders neurons vulnerable to isoflurane toxicity. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:492–500. table of contents.
90. Zhang Y, Xu Z, Wang H, et al. Anesthetics isoflurane and desflurane differently affect mitochondrial function, learning, and memory. *Ann Neurol*. 2012;71:687–698.
91. Culley DJ, Baxter M, Yukhananov R, Crosby G. The memory effects of general anesthesia persist for weeks in young and aged rats. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96:1004–1009.
92. Bianchi SL, Tran T, Liu C, et al. Brain and behavior changes in 12-month-old Tg2576 and nontransgenic mice exposed to anesthetics. *Neurobiol Aging*. 2008;29:1002–1010.
93. Xie Z, Culley DJ, Dong Y, et al. The common inhalation anesthetic isoflurane induces caspase activation and increases amyloid beta-protein level in vivo. *Ann Neurol*. 2008;64:618–627.
94. Mardini F, Tang JX, Li JC, Arroliga MJ, Eckenhoff RG, Eckenhoff MF. Effects of propofol and surgery on neuropathology and cognition in the 3xTgAD Alzheimer transgenic mouse model. *Br J Anaesth*. 2017;119:472–480.
95. Dronkers JJ, Lamberts H, Reutelingsperger IM, et al. Preoperative therapeutic programme for elderly patients scheduled for elective abdominal oncological surgery: a randomized controlled pilot study. *Clin Rehabil*. 2010;24:614–622.
96. Evered L, Silbert B, Scott DA, Ames D, Maruff P, Blennow K. Cerebrospinal fluid biomarker for Alzheimer disease predicts postoperative cognitive dysfunction. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:353–361.
97. Klinger RY, James OG, Borges-Neto S, et al. 18F-florbetapir positron emission tomography-determined cerebral beta-amyloid deposition and neurocognitive performance after cardiac surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:728–744.
98. Tang JX, Baranov D, Hammond M, Shaw LM, Eckenhoff MF, Eckenhoff RG. Human Alzheimer and inflammation biomarkers after anesthesia and surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2011;115:727–732.
99. Berger M, Nadler JW, Friedman A, et al. The effect of propofol versus isoflurane anesthesia on human cerebrospinal fluid markers of Alzheimer's disease: results of a randomized trial. *J Alzheimers Dis*. 2016;52:1299–1310.
100. Palotas A, Reis HJ, Bogats G, et al. Coronary artery bypass surgery provokes alzheimer's disease-like changes in the cerebrospinal fluid. *J Alzheimers Dis*. 2010;21:1153–1164.
101. Zhang B, Tian M, Zheng H, et al. Effects of anesthetic isoflurane and desflurane on human cerebrospinal fluid Abeta and tau level. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;119:52–60.
102. Zetterberg H. Review: Tau in biofluids - relation to pathology, imaging and clinical features. *Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol*. 2017;43:194–199.
103. Goedert M. Neurodegeneration. Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases: the prion concept in relation to assembled Abeta, tau, and alpha-synuclein. *Science*. 2015;349:1255555.
104. Xu J, Zhang R, Zuo P, et al. Aggravation effect of isoflurane on Abeta(25-35)-induced apoptosis and tau hyperphosphorylation in PC12 cells. *Cell Mol Neurobiol*. 2012;32:1343–1351.
105. Dong Y, Wu X, Xu Z, et al. Anesthetic isoflurane increases phosphorylated tau levels mediated by caspase activation and Abeta generation. *PLoS One*. 2012;7:e39386.
106. Whittington RA, Virag L, Marcouiller F, et al. Propofol directly increases tau phosphorylation. *PLoS One*. 2011;6:e16648.
107. Whittington RA, Virag L, Gratuze M, et al. Dexmedetomidine increases tau phosphorylation under normothermic conditions in vivo and in vitro. *Neurobiol Aging*. 2015;36:2414–2428.
108. Planel E, Richter KE, Nolan CE, et al. Anesthesia leads to tau hyperphosphorylation through inhibition of phosphatase activity by hypothermia. *J Neurosci*. 2007;27:3090–3097.
109. Planel E, Bretteville A, Liu L, et al. Acceleration and persistence of neurofibrillary pathology in a mouse model of tauopathy following anesthesia. *FASEB J*. 2009;23:2595–2604.
110. Tang JX, Mardini F, Caltagarone BM, et al. Anesthesia in presymptomatic Alzheimer's disease: a study using the triple-transgenic mouse model. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2011;7:521–531.
111. Berger M, Ponnusamy V, Greene N, et al. The effect of propofol vs. isoflurane anesthesia on postoperative changes in cerebrospinal fluid cytokine levels: results from a randomized trial. *Front Immunol*. 2017;8:1528.
112. Evered L, Silbert B, Scott DA, Zetterberg H, Blennow K. Association of changes in plasma neurofilament light and tau levels with anesthesia and surgery: results from the Capacity and Arcadian Studies. *JAMA Neurol*. 2018;75:542–547.
113. Demuro A, Parker I, Stutzmann GE. Calcium signaling and amyloid toxicity in Alzheimer disease. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285:12463–12468.
114. Liang L, Wei H. Dantrolene, a treatment for Alzheimer disease? *Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord*. 2015;29:1–5.
115. Wei H, Liang G, Yang H, et al. The common inhalational anesthetic isoflurane induces apoptosis via activation of inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate receptors. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:251–260.
116. Qiao H, Li Y, Xu Z, et al. Propofol affects neurodegeneration and neurogenesis by regulation of autophagy via effects on intracellular calcium homeostasis. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127:490–501.
117. Peng J, Liang G, Inan S, et al. Dantrolene ameliorates cognitive decline and neuropathology in Alzheimer triple transgenic mice. *Neurosci Lett*. 2012;516:274–279.
118. Chakroborty S, Briggs C, Miller MB, et al. Stabilizing ER Ca2+ channel function as an early preventative strategy for Alzheimer's disease. *PLoS One*. 2012;7:e52056.
119. Monk TG, Price CC. Postoperative cognitive disorders. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2011;17:376–381.
120. Price CC, Tanner JJ, Schmalfuss I, et al. A pilot study evaluating presurgery neuroanatomical biomarkers for postoperative cognitive decline after total knee arthroplasty in older adults. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:601–613.
121. Feinkohl I, Winterer G, Pischon T. Diabetes is associated with risk of postoperative cognitive dysfunction: a meta-analysis. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev*. 2017;33.
122. Price CC, Garvan C, Hizel LP, Lopez MG, Billings FTt. Delayed recall and working memory MMSE domains predict delirium following cardiac surgery. *J Alzheimers Dis*. 2017;59:1027–1035.
123. Hudetz JA, Patterson KM, Iqbal Z, Gandhi SD, Pagel PS. Remote ischemic preconditioning prevents deterioration of short-term postoperative cognitive function after cardiac surgery using cardiopulmonary bypass: results of a pilot investigation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;29:382–388.
124. Brown CHt, Max L, LaFlam A, et al. The association between preoperative frailty and postoperative delirium after cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:430–435.
125. Ye X, Lian Q, Eckenhoff MF, Eckenhoff RG, Pan JZ. Differential general anesthetic effects on microglial cytokine expression. *PLoS One*. 2013;8:e52887.
126. Terrando N, Monaco C, Ma D, Foxwell BM, Feldmann M, Maze M. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha triggers a cytokine cascade yielding postoperative cognitive decline. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2010;107:20518–20522.
127. Hu J, Feng X, Valdearcos M, et al. Interleukin-6 is both necessary and sufficient to produce perioperative neurocognitive disorder in mice. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;120:537–545.
128. Barrientos RM, Hein AM, Frank MG, Watkins LR, Maier SF. Intracisternal interleukin-1 receptor antagonist prevents postoperative cognitive decline and neuroinflammatory response in aged rats. *J Neurosci*. 2012;32:14641–14648.
129. Hovens IB, Schoemaker RG, van der Zee EA, Absalom AR, Heineman E, van Leeuwen BL. Postoperative cognitive dysfunction: involvement of neuroinflammation and neuronal functioning. *Brain Behav Immun*. 2014;38:202–210.
130. Terrando N, Eriksson LI, Ryu JK, et al. Resolving postoperative neuroinflammation and cognitive decline. *Ann Neurol*. 2011;70:986–995.
131. Feng X, Degos V, Koch LG, et al. Surgery results in exaggerated and persistent cognitive decline in a rat model of the metabolic syndrome. *Anesthesiology*. 2013;118:1098–1105.
132. Xu Z, Dong Y, Wang H, et al. Age-dependent postoperative cognitive impairment and Alzheimer-related neuropathology in mice. *Sci Rep*. 2014;4:3766.
133. Femenia T, Gimenez-Cassina A, Codeluppi S, et al. Disrupted neuroglial metabolic coupling after peripheral surgery. *J Neurosci*. 2018;38:452–464.

134. Fang Q, Qian X, An J, Wen H, Cope DK, Williams JP. Higher dose dexamethasone increases early postoperative cognitive dysfunction. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2014;26:220–225.
135. Vizcaychipi MP, Watts HR, O'Dea KP, et al. The therapeutic potential of atorvastatin in a mouse model of postoperative cognitive decline. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259:1235–1244.
136. Pavlov VA, Tracey KJ. Neural regulation of immunity: molecular mechanisms and clinical translation. *Nat Neurosci*. 2017;20:156–166.
137. Zanos TP, Silverman HA, Levy T, et al. Identification of cytokine-specific sensory neural signals by decoding murine vagus nerve activity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2018;115:E4843–e4852.
138. Terrando N, Gomez-Galan M, Yang T, et al. Aspirin-triggered resolvin D1 prevents surgery-induced cognitive decline. *FASEB J*. 2013;27:3564–3571.
139. Zhang Y, Shao H, Dong Y, et al. Chronic treatment with anesthetic propofol attenuates beta-amyloid protein levels in brain tissues of aged mice. *Transl Neurodegener*. 2014;3:8.
140. Alazawi W, Pirmadjid N, Lahiri R, Bhattacharya S. Inflammatory and immune responses to surgery and their clinical impact. *Ann Surg*. 2016;264:73–80.
141. Bromander S, Anckarsater R, Kristiansson M, et al. Changes in serum and cerebrospinal fluid cytokines in response to non-neurological surgery: an observational study. *J Neuroinflammation*. 2012;9:242.
142. Reinsfelt B, Westerlind A, Blennow K, Zetterberg H, Ricksten SE. Open-heart surgery increases cerebrospinal fluid levels of Alzheimer-associated amyloid beta. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2013;57:82–88.
143. Reinsfelt B, Ricksten SE, Zetterberg H, Blennow K, Freden-Lindqvist J, Westerlind A. Cerebrospinal fluid markers of brain injury, inflammation, and blood-brain barrier dysfunction in cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94:549–555.
144. Forsberg A, Cervenka S, Jonsson Fagerlund M, et al. The immune response of the human brain to abdominal surgery. *Ann Neurol*. 2017;81:572–582.
145. Hannestad J, Gallezot JD, Schafbauer T, et al. Endotoxin-induced systemic inflammation activates microglia: [(1)(1)C]PBR28 positron emission tomography in nonhuman primates. *Neuroimage*. 2012;63:232–239.
146. Sandiego CM, Gallezot JD, Pittman B, et al. Imaging robust microglial activation after lipopolysaccharide administration in humans with PET. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2015;112:12468–12473.
147. Glumac S, Kardum G, Sodic L, Supe-Domic D, Karanovic N. Effects of dexamethasone on early cognitive decline after cardiac surgery: a randomised controlled trial. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2017;34:776–784.
148. Valentin LS, Pereira VF, Pietrobon RS, et al. Effects of single low dose of dexamethasone before noncardiac and nonneurologic surgery and general anesthesia on postoperative cognitive dysfunction-a phase III double blind, randomized clinical trial. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0152308.
149. Ottens TH, Dieleman JM, Sauer AM, et al. Effects of dexamethasone on cognitive decline after cardiac surgery: a randomized clinical trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;121:492–500.
150. Zhu YZ, Yao R, Zhang Z, Xu H, Wang LW. Parecoxib prevents early postoperative cognitive dysfunction in elderly patients undergoing total knee arthroplasty: a double-blind, randomized clinical consort study. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2016;95:e4082.
151. Tian Y, Zhao P, Li L, Guo Y, Wang C, Jiang Q. Pre-emptive parecoxib and post-operative cognitive function in elderly patients. *Int Psychogeriatr*. 2014;1–8.
152. Gaudilliere B, Fragiadakis GK, Bruggner RV, et al. Clinical recovery from surgery correlates with single-cell immune signatures. *Sci Transl Med*. 2014;6:255ra131.

83

Critical Care Anesthesiology

ALEXANDER S. KUO, DUSAN HANIDZIAR, and J. MATTHEW ALDRICH

KEY POINTS

- Anesthesiologists have been key contributors to the field of critical care, both in the advancement of clinical practice and development of technology relevant to the field.
- Intensive care unit structure, staffing, and utilization varies considerably among developed countries. Studies generally show improved patient outcomes with "high-intensity" staffing models.
- Low-tidal-volume lung protective ventilation improves mortality for patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). Prone positioning is recommended in patients with severe ARDS.
- Open lung strategies that include optimization of positive end-expiratory pressure and recruitment maneuvers are of significant research interest and increasingly used in clinical practice. Study results, however, are mixed and do not clearly demonstrate improved outcomes.
- The Third International Consensus Definitions for Sepsis and Septic Shock (Sepsis-3), a new definition introduced in 2016, emphasizes the key elements of organ dysfunction and dysregulated host response.
- The Surviving Sepsis Campaign's guidelines and bundles promote early recognition, administration of antibiotics, and resuscitation with fluids and vasopressors.
- Hemodynamic resuscitation in shock requires careful evaluation of fluid responsiveness and assessment of end-organ perfusion. There is significant evidence that excess fluid administration can cause harm in critically ill patients.
- Cancer immunotherapy is a rapidly evolving field in oncology with significant toxicities, including cytokine release syndrome, that present new management challenges for intensivists.
- Point-of-care ultrasound is increasingly common in critical care practice but more research is needed to evaluate the impact on clinical outcomes.

Introduction

The history of critical care medicine is relatively brief, dating back to the middle of the previous century. During this time, the field has evolved considerably, with changing approaches to the management of mechanical ventilation, hemodynamic support, sedation, renal replacement therapy, and patient mobilization. Modern critical care is an exciting domain of medicine, with an increasing focus on interprofessional care, family engagement, and long-term outcomes. Outcomes no longer include only attention to survival and length of intensive care unit (ICU) and hospital stay, but also recognition of post-hospital impairments and the new described entity of Post-Intensive Care Syndrome.[1] This chapter begins with a brief overview of the history of critical care medicine, including the specific role of anesthesia intensivists. We will then discuss modern and future ICU structure and management, including focus on resource utilization, staffing and team design, costs, and outcomes. The remainder of the chapter will discuss essential areas of management, including ICU Liberation/A-F Bundle, respiratory failure, shock and hemodynamic support, sepsis, and critical care in oncology.

HISTORY OF CRITICAL CARE MEDICINE AND THE ROLE OF ANESTHESIA INTENSIVISTS

Critical care medicine and the development of the first ICU is often credited to Bjorn Ibsen, a Danish anesthesiologist, in 1952.[2,3] Dr. Ibsen, who was trained in anesthesia at Massachusetts General Hospital, was consulted to help in the care of a 12-year-old girl with poliomyelitis (polio) and respiratory failure. He instituted the approach of manual positive pressure ventilation via a tracheotomy and then applied this to dozens of patients throughout the course of the polio epidemic in Copenhagen. Equally important, Dr. Ibsen implemented the approach of caring for groups of patients with respiratory failure in a dedicated location, thus creating a version of the modern ICU. In addition to this well-cited contribution to modern critical care, the Johns Hopkins neurosurgeon, Walter Dandy, created an earlier version of the modern ICU in 1923, when he opened a three-bed unit for postoperative neurosurgery patients.[4] Max Harry Weil, another key figure in modern critical care, opened a four-bed "shock unit" in 1958 at the Los Angeles County + University of Southern California (LA+USC) Medical Center.[3]

Since the early ICUs, modern critical care has focused on continuous physiologic monitoring and the application of advanced life-sustaining therapies, including mechanical ventilation, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO), and continuous renal replacement therapy. One astute observer and practitioner notes that the focus has often been on syndromes—sepsis, acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), acute renal failure, and delirium—rather than specific diseases.[4] The progress in care for these syndromes and other critical care challenges has often been exciting but has also required periodic major shifts in practice, most notably with regard to sedation, mechanical ventilation in ARDS, use of the pulmonary artery catheter (PAC), intensive insulin therapy, and perhaps also goal-directed therapy.

Anesthesiologists, dating back to Dr. Ibsen, have been central to the development of modern critical care, both with the advancement of clinical practice and the development of technology and tools essential to the practice of the specialty. George Gregory, a pediatric anesthesiologist and intensivist at the University of California, San Francisco (UCSF), and colleagues used continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) in the treatment of neonatal idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome and demonstrated a dramatic improvement in survival.[5] John Severinghaus, who was not an intensivist but certainly a major figure in the field of anesthesiology, was the key contributor to the development of the first blood gas electrode apparatus in the late 1950s.[6] More recently, however, there appears to be a decline in the role of the critical care anesthesiologists in the United States. In 2001, several academic leaders from the United States and Europe authored an editorial raising alarm based on the following: less than 4% of U.S. anesthesiologists have a special certificate in critical care, only 12% of the members of the Society of Critical Care Medicine (SCCM) are anesthesiologists, and relatively few anesthesia critical care diplomates graduate each year from fellowships.[7] By contrast, in Europe, anesthesia intensivists continued to maintain a central role in the field of critical care medicine. In the nearly two decades since this article, it is unclear if much has changed. The number of accredited fellowship programs in anesthesia critical care has declined,[8] and the number of anesthesia critical care diplomates certified by the American Board of Anesthesiology remains low in comparison to other anesthesia subspecialties like pain medicine and pediatric anesthesiology.[9] It is unclear why critical care is a less desirable career path but key factors likely include limited exposure to high quality critical care rotations, lack of faculty mentors, and more favorable financial incentives in anesthesia-based fields. Despite these challenges, the Society of Critical Care Anesthesiologists continues to play a primary advocacy, educational, and mentoring role and memberships have increased over the past several years.[10]

The future roles of anesthesia intensivists in the United States are likely to expand due to the increasing complexity of perioperative medicine, coupled with an aging population in need for critical care. It is also interesting to note a recent proposal by several academic anesthesia leaders from both trauma and critical care of a new paradigm: acute care anesthesiology.[8] Modeled in part on acute care surgery, this new pathway and fellowship would include training in prehospital and emergency care, trauma, and critical care. Specifics of such a training pathway remain unclear but there are compelling reasons to consider this approach as another means of enhancing the anesthesiologist's role in resuscitation and emergency care.[11,12]

Intensive Care Unit Structure and Management

CAPACITY, UTILIZATION, AND COST

ICU bed utilization and cost vary considerably among developed countries. Recognizing that the definition of an ICU bed also varies considerably, the United States, Belgium, and Germany having greater than 20 ICU beds per 100,000 population whereas the United Kingdom, the Netherlands, France, and Spain have fewer than 10 ICU beds per 100,000 population.[13] Similarly, there are also large variations in the volume and type of ICU admissions in developed countries.[14] Part of this can be attributed to differences in bed availability, but it also reflects different approaches to admission and triage that have been well described.[15-17] A recent large prospective study of noncardiac surgery in Europe demonstrated high mortality rates and significant variability in utilization of critical cares services.[18] Perhaps most striking was the finding that among surgical patients who died, the overwhelming majority (73%) were never admitted to an ICU. Therefore, despite concerns about over-utilization of expensive resources in some countries, this study suggests an alarming under-utilization of essential critical care services.

In the United States, in particular, there is continued growth in ICU beds and cost, whereas occupancy has remained generally flat. In 2005, there were 93,955 ICU beds with occupancy rates of 68%. Critical care costs represented 13.4% of all hospital costs and 0.66% of gross domestic product.[19] By 2010, critical care beds had increased to 103,900 with stable occupancy rates over the previous decade. The greatest growth occurred in neonatal ICU beds with similar, but much lower, growth rates in adult and pediatric ICU beds. Critical care costs also grew to $108 billion, which represented an increase relative to gross domestic product (now 0.72%).[20] The type of growth in ICU beds is also worth noting, as described in a recent analysis of Medicare and Medicaid data.[21] Over 15 years, more than 72% of total ICU bed growth occurred in teaching hospitals. Multivariate analysis also demonstrated that large hospitals with high occupancy and teaching hospitals with high occupancy were most associated with next-year growth in the number of ICU beds. The investigators concluded that this may represent a type of "de facto regionalization," which may in turn lead to higher quality of care. What is more, they suggest their results also contradict the theory that ICU bed growth and supply represents a type of "demand elasticity,"[22] whereby increasing supply drives demand without clear benefits to patient care and the potential to change practice patterns and increase costs.[23,24]

STRUCTURE AND STAFFING PATTERNS IN THE INTENSIVE CARE UNIT

Much like the number and use of ICU beds, there is considerable variability throughout the world in the structure and staffing of ICUs. North American ICUs, when compared to the rest of the world, are more likely to have an "open" structure and be stratified into medical and surgical units and are less likely to have 24/7 intensivist presence.[25] ICUs are sometimes described as "open" or "closed;" however, a common research approach is to categorize staffing as "low intensity" (no intensivist or only elective intensivist consult) or "high intensity" (all care directed by intensivist or mandatory intensivist consult).[26] Much attention over the past two decades has focused on the optimal ICU structure and staffing models: specialized versus mixed, "high intensity" versus "low intensity," optimal physician and nursing staffing ratios, nighttime intensivist staffing, use of advanced practice providers (APPs), and best ICU team structure.

The data do not demonstrate a clear outcomes benefit to specialized units but do show increased mortality for patients "boarding" on a non-primary unit in a specialized system.[27] Many studies, including two large systematic reviews, have investigated outcomes associated with the intensity of ICU staffing.[26,28-34] The outcomes have been mixed but generally favor improved mortality and length of stay outcomes with a "high-intensity" model. Data are more limited with regard to provider-to-patient ratios, but a recent retrospective study in the United Kingdom did show a U-shaped relationship between patient-to-intensivist ratios, with an optimal ratio of 7.5. Optimal nursing ratios are also not well described but a large, multinational observational study demonstrated that nurse-to-patient ratios higher than 1.5 are associated with lower risk of in-hospital death.[25] The Working Group on Quality Improvement of the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine (ESICM) recommends 8 to 12 beds as optimal size.[35]

The use of nighttime intensivists is an active area of study, with most studies demonstrating a lack of mortality benefit.[36-39] It is important to note, however, that there is evidence that nighttime intensivist staffing, in one study, was associated with reduced in-hospital mortality in ICUs with low-intensity daytime staffing.[39] Furthermore, a before-and-after prospective study of 24/7 mandatory intensivist presence showed an association with reduced hospital length of stay and complication rate, as well as improved staff satisfaction and adherence to processes of care.[40] Based on available data, some investigators and critical care organizations (CCOs) have concluded that nighttime intensivists are costly and without significant benefit,[36,41] whereas others vigorously argue for the value of a 24/7 intensivist model in high complexity, high-volume ICUs, emphasizing that the benefits derive not just from intensivist presence but rather intensivist-led changes in the systematic delivery of care.[42]

Much attention has focused on the best approach to team structure and function in the ICU. As discussed earlier, "open" or "low-intensity" ICUs use hospitalists or emergency medicine physicians to care for patients in the ICU. Many academic and community-based institutions use nurse practitioners (NPs) and physician assistants (PA)—often described as advanced practice providers (APPs)—as core members of the team, largely because of the limited availability of intensivists.[43] Studies demonstrate equivalent mortality and length of stay outcomes when compared to teams that include both residents[44] and pulmonary/critical care fellows.[45] A larger, more recent retrospective study of cohort data from 29 ICUs in 22 hospitals examined the association between exposure to NP/PA ICU staffing and in-hospital mortality. While the patients in NP/PA-staffed ICUs had lower severity of illness and use of mechanical ventilation, the unadjusted and risk-adjusted mortality was similar in ICUs with and without NPs/PAs.[46] In addition to these outcomes, there is evidence of positive perceptions of NPs/PAs from other ICU providers, including physicians, nurses, and respiratory therapists.[47] Accessibility, communications skills, and knowledge of and adherence to guidelines were recognized as core strengths of the NPs and PAs.

In addition to the benefits of nonphysician providers, there is evidence supporting the benefits of multidisciplinary teams and interprofessional practice in the care of critically ill patients. A retrospective study of medical ICU patients in Pennsylvania hospitals demonstrated the greatest mortality benefit to high-intensity intensivist staffing and daily multidisciplinary rounds.[48] A recent review of interprofessional practice describes the robust literature supporting the value of interprofessional practice in the ICU.[49] Pharmacists, respiratory therapists, and physical and occupational therapists are essential providers in the daily care of critically ill patients and improve short-term and longer-term outcomes.

There are guidelines and expectations that address some of the previously discussed aspects of ICU structure. The Leapfrog Group, a major nonprofit "watchdog" organization, rates hospitals on many factors including ICU staffing. The highest Leapfrog rating with regard to the ICU requires all critical care patients to be managed or actively comanaged by a board certified intensivist.[50] The SCCM's Task Force on Models of Critical Care concludes that an "intensivist-led, high-intensity" team is an "integral" part of care delivery in the ICU. These guidelines do not make a recommendation for either direct management of all patients (i.e., "closed" model) or mandatory consultation by an intensivist.[51] Similarly, the SCCM's Admission, Discharge, and Triage Task Force makes a 1B recommendation for a high-intensity staffing model with "day-to-day" management either via a fully "closed" structure or with a mandatory intensivist model; the SCCM does not recommend 24-hour intensivist staffing *if* the ICU operates within a high-intensity structure.[52]

MANAGEMENT AND QUALITY IMPROVEMENT

The quality of an ICU depends to a significant degree on the management structure, as well as the organizational approach to clinical practice and process, and quality improvement. Management structures vary but have typically included at least a medical director and head nurse or nurse manager as a basic leadership structure.[35] Experts and critical care societies recognize the challenges and importance of selecting and developing skilled critical care leaders. One recent review highlights the need for a leader to maintain and foster "continuity, consistency, and communication" in both clinical practice and the organizational practice.[53] Although this may seem straightforward, the critical care leader often operates in a demanding and complex environment and must have a strong understanding of the broader health system operations and finances. Equally important are strong leadership skills, especially the ability to listen and learn, adapt to changing clinical and organizational circumstances, and constantly serve as a "catalyst for change."[54]

Beyond development of individual leaders, organizations are increasingly focused on how to best integrate ICUs and their leaders within a critical care structure. The SCCM's Academic Leaders in Critical Care Medicine Task Force highlights the growing number of academic medical centers now with CCOs. They describe a road map for integration of operations to focus on patient quality, safety, and value: first using a "horizontal" approach with all ICUs operating in a single system with defined responsibility and accountability for value-based care; and then a "vertical" approach using a population health model with care provided across the continuum for all critically ill patients during and after ICU care.[55] The Task Force also presents a follow-up plan for integration of critical care services into a single organization that explicitly includes the academic missions of research, professional development, and education.[56]

High quality clinical practice and appropriate use of expensive and oftentimes limited resources benefit from a clear set of administrative and clinical guidelines. The SCCM recently revised the Admission, Discharge, and Triage Guidelines, which provide useful guidance for institutions developing policies and protocols for patient flow and quality assurance.[52] Experts and professional societies agree that specific protocols of care—applied to practices like central line insertion and management of mechanical ventilation, and broader challenges like the use of the ICU for potentially inappropriate care—can help provide high quality, high value care in a collaborative model.[57,58] Checklists and bundles often form the foundation for standardization of care and function as a mechanism to implement evidence-based practices and guidelines. The SCCM's ICU Liberation project, for example, provides the ABCDEF Bundle as a daily, standardized approach to the implementation of the guidelines for the Prevention and Management of Pain, Agitation/Sedation, Delirium, Immobility, and Sleep Disruption in adult ICU patients.[59,60] Standardization of care is a necessary step, but quality and value also depend on a robust approach to process improvement. Each ICU or CCO must first define the quality and safety metrics to be measured.[61] It is also important that ICUs and CCOs consider the entire scope of quality in critical care. Recent guidelines describing best practices for family-centered care in the ICU highlight the importance of including measures of family support in our definition of quality in critical care.[62] Once defined, the organization's quality efforts will largely be determined by its ability to collect, analyze, and disseminate data to key leaders and ICU providers and staff.[51,63]

In summary, critical care is a relatively young medical specialty with a strong history of anesthesiologist involvement since its inception. The practice of critical care medicine continues to grow and evolve rapidly, in terms of medical advancement, practice structure, and integration into the broader landscape of population health. In the next sections we will discuss several of the central disease syndromes and therapeutic modalities that have come to define the modern practice of critical care medicine.

Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome and Lung Protective Ventilation

ACUTE RESPIRATORY DISTRESS SYNDROME

ARDS is a final common state in acute lung injury characterized by noncardiogenic pulmonary edema, heterogeneous consolidation, decreased lung compliance, and severe hypoxemia. It is a syndrome that involves injury and increased epithelial-endothelial permeability of the alveoli. It can occur as a result of direct chemical injury, systemic inflammation including sepsis, trauma, or numerous other causes common in critically ill patients.

The 2012 Berlin definition of ARDS focused on clarifying the quantification of hypoxia, the acute timing, and the radiographic findings. Using the ratio of arterial oxygen tension to fractional inspired oxygen (PaO_2/FiO_2), ARDS is graded mild if this ratio is 300 mm Hg or less, but greater than 200 mm Hg; moderate if 200 mm Hg or less, but greater than 100 mm Hg; and severe if 100 mm Hg or less. These measurements should be obtained with a positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP) of at least 5 cm H_2O. The onset must be within 7 days of the presumed inciting insult, and bilateral lung infiltrates must not be fully explainable by other causes including cardiogenic pulmonary edema, effusions, or lobar collapse (Table 83.1).[64]

"BABY LUNG"

Imaging studies have shown that ARDS involves heterogeneous lung consolidation and small regions of remaining aerated lung. As a result, the entire mechanical stress of ventilation is borne by the small remaining regions of aerated lung. This concept has been described as the "baby lung" by some authors, and ventilation strategies have focused on preventing mechanical trauma and optimizing aeration of the remaining functional "baby lung."[65]

LUNG PROTECTIVE VENTILATION

The modern approach to mechanical ventilation in critically ill patients has been characterized by a focus on the prevention of ventilator-induced lung injury. In their landmark ARMA study of tidal volume, the ARDS Network group demonstrated significant decrease in mortality and

TABLE 83.1 Categorization of ARDS Severity With At Least 5 cm H_2O of PEEP

ARDS Severity	PaO_2/FiO_2
Mild	300-200 mm Hg
Moderate	200-100 mm Hg
Severe	100 or less mm Hg

Berlin definition of ARDS also includes: Time course within 1 week of inciting event. Bilateral infiltrates not otherwise explained. Fluid overload and cardiogenic edema excluded as primary causes.[64]

ARDS, Acute respiratory distress syndrome; *PaO_2/FiO_2*, ratio of arterial oxygen tension to fractional inspired oxygen; *PEEP*, positive end-expiratory pressure.

ventilator days with the use of lung protective ventilation, 6 mL/kg of predicted body weight (PBW) with plateau pressures less than 30 cm H_2O compared to ventilation at 12 mL/kg of PBW.[66] This lung protective, low-tidal-volume ventilation strategy has become standard of care for patients with ARDS and subsequent studies have associated improved outcomes even in patients without ARDS.[67-70]

PERMISSIVE HYPERCAPNIA

During low-tidal volume ventilation, hypercapnia often occurs. While the avoidance of ventilator-induced lung injury is beneficial, the exact degree and pleomorphic effects of hypercapnia are less clear.[71] There have been mixed data on the effects of hypercapnia on pulmonary inflammation, cellular and immunologic function, and wound healing.[72-74] Furthermore, hypercapnia may impair right ventricular function, exacerbate pulmonary hypertension, and predispose to cardiac arrhythmias.[75] As a result, most critical care practitioners adopt a pragmatic approach specific to the patients—often described as "permissive hypercapnia"—targeting a pH greater than 7.25. Extracorporeal carbon dioxide removal devices have been in active development to facilitate the management of carbon dioxide clearance during lung injury and low-tidal volume ventilation.[76] However, these invasive devices have yet to prove their clinical utility and effectiveness.[77]

VENTILATION MODES IN ACUTE RESPIRATORY DISTRESS SYNDROME

In the era of lung-protective ventilation, ventilation strategies have focused on preventing volutrauma, barotrauma, and atelectrauma. Volutrauma is injury to alveoli from excessive volume distention and is closely related to barotrauma from excessive force on the alveolar walls. Atelectrauma is related to the repeated collapse and reopening of alveoli.[78]

Conventional modes of ventilation deliver controlled pressure or flow profiles to the airways at tidal volumes larger than dead space and at rates similar to natural respiration. Gas transport occurs due to cyclic bulk flow into and out of the alveoli. Between the traditional ventilation modes of pressure control and volume control, there has been no significant difference shown in ARDS as long as low tidal volumes are used.[79]

Airway pressure release ventilation (APRV) is a mode of ventilation that holds a high constant inspiratory pressure with periodic brief releases to a lower pressure, with spontaneous respiratory activity superimposed on this pattern. The proposed benefits are increased aeration and reduced cycling of alveolar collapse.[80] A review of observational studies in trauma patients has suggested that early use of APRV may reduce the incidence of ARDS; however, more rigorous studies will be needed to evaluate this hypothesis.[81] Given the risks and unproven clinical benefits of this ventilator mode, its use remains controversial.[82,83]

High-frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV) is another less conventional mode of ventilation that requires a special oscillator pump. HFOV delivers very low volumes, often less than 100 mL, at very high rates, typically hundreds of breaths per minute. In HFOV, because tidal volumes are less than dead space, gas transfer does not depend on bulk flow but on other mechanisms, such as "pendelluft" (swinging air) effect and enhanced diffusion. Whereas initial studies demonstrated improved oxygenation, a subsequent larger clinical trial demonstrated no benefit or increased mortality in patients with ARDS.[84,85] As a result, HFOV is not recommended, except as a rescue method in refractory hypoxia.[86]

POSITIVE END-EXPIRATORY PRESSURE AND OPEN LUNG STRATEGIES

ARDS is characterized by extensive alveolar collapse. Repeated opening and closing of alveoli during ventilation results in atelectrauma to the lungs. The lung compliance curve is characterized by hysteresis, meaning a higher driving pressure is required to inflate the lungs during inspiration, as compared to lower driving pressure required to keep the lung open during expiration. As a result, the use of PEEP and more generally "open lung" strategies have received significant attention.

POSITIVE END-EXPIRATORY PRESSURE

PEEP is a continuous pressure held in the airways even on expiration. Increasing PEEP improves oxygenation by increasing functional residual capacity and preventing alveolar collapse on expiration, thus maintaining alveolar recruitment. Excessive PEEP can result in regional or global lung over-distention or exacerbate air trapping. Furthermore, excessive PEEP impairs right ventricular function and venous return, possibly necessitating excess intravenous fluid administration.

Early animal studies demonstrated that the use of PEEP ameliorates ventilation-induced lung injury.[87] As such, a minimum of 5 cm H_2O of PEEP is recommended by ARDS net ventilation protocol.[66] However, large clinical studies comparing lower PEEP protocols to higher PEEP protocols failed to demonstrate improvement in clinical outcomes, although oxygenation was improved.[88-90] The failure of these studies led to the more sophisticated methods of titrating PEEP usually included in open lung strategies (OLSs).

OPEN LUNG STRATEGIES

OLS are the combination of lung protective ventilation with PEEP optimization and possibly recruitment maneuvers. The goal is to maintain aeration of functional lung tissue, thereby preventing atelectrauma, cyclic collapse of the alveoli, and focal lung stress in the remaining compliant regions of the lung. Various PEEP titration strategies have been integrated with recruitment maneuvers into "open lung" strategies.

Esophageal Manometry, Transpulmonary Pressures, and Positive End-Expiratory Pressure

One proposed method is using esophageal pressures to guide determination of the best PEEP. The mechanical stresses of airway pressure can be separated into two components borne by the intrinsic lung compliance and the external chest wall compliance. However, only the lung component, as quantified by the transpulmonary pressure, is involved in ventilation-associated lung injury.[91] The relative contributions of these two components can be difficult to predict and are affected by numerous conditions including ARDS, pulmonary edema, atelectasis, obesity, abdominal compartment syndrome, and burns.[92,93]

The transpulmonary pressure is calculated by subtracting the pleural pressure, outside the lung but inside the chest wall, from the total airway pressure. Pressure measurements in the esophagus are considered a surrogate of pleural pressure. This can be performed by placing a specifically designed air-filled pressure transducing catheter, similar to an orogastric tube, in the esophagus.[91] With this method, PEEP can be titrated to prevent negative transpulmonary pressures that collapse the lung at the end of expiration. This holds special promise for patients with abnormal chest wall compliance, such as those with morbid obesity.

Titration of PEEP using esophageal pressures in ARDS may allow the use of higher airway pressures without risking lung injury.[94] One clinical study demonstrated improved oxygenation and lung compliance with this approach in association with higher PEEP, but further studies will need to be performed to prove improvement in outcomes of this approach.[95]

Decremental Positive End-Expiratory Pressure Trials

Trials of decremental PEEP have involved raising PEEP to a high level (20-25 cm H_2O) after a recruitment maneuver. The PEEP was then slowly decreased in a stepwise manner. The final PEEP was set at the level that maximized lung compliance, driving pressure divided by tidal volume.[96] Initial clinical results of OLSs demonstrated promising physiologic improvement in patients with severe ARDS. However, these initial studies were heterogeneous in nature, and in the largest randomized prospective trial of an open lung protocol, 6-month mortality, ventilator days, and risk of pneumothorax was actually increased.[97-100] Criticisms of this latter study include use of high recruitment pressures resulting in increased barotrauma and hemodynamic instability. Further research will need to be performed to elucidate the best recruitment and PEEP strategies in ARDS.

Recruitment Maneuvers

The goal of recruitment maneuvers is to aerate previously collapsed lung, thereby improving gas exchange and overall lung stress. The most common recruitment maneuver is simply holding sustained airway pressure for a set time period, typically 30 to 40 cm H_2O for 30 to 40 seconds. This therapy is not benign, and common complications include transient hemodynamic instability, oxygen desaturation, ventilator dyssynchrony, or rarely pneumothorax.[101] As such, the patient should be closely monitored during and after recruitment manuvers. Another potentially gentler method of recruitment is incremental PEEP titration. PEEP is increased in a stepwise manner of 2 to 5 cm H_2O every 3 to 5 minutes until there is a worsening of respiratory or hemodynamic parameters. However, there is little evidence of the superiority of any specific recruitment maneuvers. Furthermore, there is an overall lack of strong evidence for improved clinical outcome; thus, the role of recruitment maneuvers in ventilation strategies is uncertain.[99]

PRONE POSITIONING

Prone positioning has a number of physiologic benefits in ARDS. Ventilation-perfusion matching and lung aeration is improved, and parenchymal heterogeneity is reduced. This likely contributes to a protective effect against ventilator-induced lung injury.[102] In the largest study of only patients with severe ARDS, defined as PaO_2:FiO_2 less than 150 mm Hg, 28-day mortality was significantly reduced.[103] As such, prone positioning is recommended in severe ARDS, with the caveat that benefits were demonstrated at centers with deep experience. At centers with less experienced practitioners, prone positioning may be technically challenging with risk for increased serious complications.[104]

SELF-INDUCED LUNG INJURY

In negative pressure spontaneous respiration, the chest wall exerts a negative pressure on the lungs. In instances of increased respiratory drive and lung injury, this can induce lung injury without positive pressure ventilation. In animal studies, chemically induced hyperventilation alone has been demonstrated to induce lung injury.[105] In mild lung injury, spontaneous respiration is associated with better oxygenation, improved dependent lung aeration, and decreased diaphragm atrophy. However, in severe lung injury, spontaneous respiration can be associated with increased lung injury.[106]

NEUROMUSCULAR BLOCKADE

Neuromuscular blocking agents have been used to facilitate synchrony with mechanical ventilation by removing spontaneous chest wall and diaphragm motion. This lowers ventilation pressures, decreases risk of barotrauma, and improves oxygenation. Additionally, some animal data suggest the neuromuscular blocking agent, cisatracurium, has direct lung-protective properties through antiinflammatory actions.[107] One observational study comparing vecuronium and cisatracurium found significantly fewer days on the ventilator with cisatracurium, although no difference in mortality or other clinical outcomes.[108] In a prospective study of neuromuscular blockade in ARDS, the ACURASYS study, cisatracurium administration for the first 48 hours was found to decrease lung injury and mortality in patients with severe ARDS whose PaO_2/FiO_2 was less than 150 mm Hg. Additionally, no increased incidence of weakness or critical illness myopathy was seen with this short duration of use.[109] However, this study was criticized for being relatively small, single centered, and for having insufficiently long follow up to evaluate critical illness myopathy. To address these concerns, the larger, multicentered Reevaluation Of Systemic Early Neuromuscular Blockade (ROSE) study was performed by the Prevention and Early Treatment of Acute Lung injury (PETAL) Network investigators.[110] In this more recent trial, early continuous neuromuscular blockade did not lower all-cause mortality at 90-days. There were no consistent between-group differences in outcomes at 3, 6, and 12 months. However, when compared to the ACURASYS trial, patients in the ROSE trial received higher levels of PEEP, and those not paralyzed also received lighter sedation, potentially contributing to the difference in observed outcomes. [110]

NONINVASIVE POSITIVE-PRESSURE VENTILATION AND HIGH-FLOW NASAL CANNULA

CPAP and bilevel positive airway pressure (Bilevel PAP) masks have been shown to be effective first-line treatment in respiratory failure due to acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).[111-113] However, their use in ARDS is controversial. Although avoidance of endotracheal intubation could have many benefits, studies have failed to show benefit in the need for intubation or mortality. In fact, in one study, noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation (NPPV) was associated with increased mortality compared to high-flow nasal cannula (HFNC).[114] Patients better tolerate HFNC than mask NPPV, and HFNC was not found to be inferior in intubation rates or mortality compared to NPPV.[115] However, the HIGH trial, a prospective, multicenter, randomized study in immunocompromised patients, failed to show any benefit in mortality, intubation rates, or even patient comfort.[116] Further research in the role of HFNC and other nonmask forms of NPPV is needed.

SUMMARY OF EVIDENCE-BASED VENTILATION IN ARDS AND FUTURE RESEARCH

The use of lung protective ventilation with 6 mL/kg of PDW is highly recommended. The use of PEEP at a minimum of 5 cm H_2O and titration based upon the ARDSnet protocol is recommended, but the optimal PEEP level is unclear. In severe ARDS, the early use of prone positioning has been shown to improve mortality. HFOV is not recommended as a primary ventilation method. Future research will need to establish the role of recruitment maneuvers and optimal PEEP titration strategies. The role of noninvasive ventilation, neuromuscular blockade, and the risk of self-induced lung injury will also need to be clarified in the treatment of ARDS.

Ultra low-tidal volume ventilation, 4 mL/kg of PDW or less, continues to be investigated. The technology of artificial gas exchange devices, extracorporeal carbon dioxide exchangers, or venovenous ECMO support, continues to be advanced.[117] Finally, despite negative trials of aspirin, statins, and beta-agonists, new pharmacologic and biologic therapies including mesenchymal stem cell therapies continue to be investigated.[69,118]

MANAGEMENT OF PAIN AND AGITATION

Sedatives are some of the most commonly administered medications in the ICU. The purpose of sedatives is to manage agitation to ensure the safety of the patient and care providers, and to prevent dangerous events such as unintended extubation. The first step to effectively manage agitation is to identify and address underlying causes. Pain is a common cause of agitation in the critically ill and is often underappreciated.[119] Delirium is extremely common in the critically ill and is associated with adverse outcomes including increased length of stay and mortality.[120] Delirium can manifest as hypoactivity or with agitation. The first-line interventions should be nonpharmacologic.

When sedatives are needed, targeting light sedation is recommended.[121] The use of light sedation is not associated with increased posttraumatic stress disorder,[122] and may be associated with shorter ventilator time or even decreased mortality.[122] The use of daily sedation interruptions or nursing-driven protocols with standardized tools are both effective methods to achieve this goal.[121] Two well-validated scales for sedation assessment are the Richmond Agitation-Sedation Scale and the Sedation-Agitation Scale.[123,124] Some even propose protocols that try to completely avoid traditional sedatives and focus primarily on analgesia and control of agitated delirium with haloperidol.[125] Though this approach may be associated with shorter length of stay and mechanical ventilation, further study is needed to confirm this finding. Furthermore, there is a suggestion that benzodiazepines lead to increased hyperalgesia with administered opioids. This should be considered in patients who require opioids for pain.[126]

Choice of specific sedative agent is controversial. However, benzodiazepines, when compared to propofol or dexmedetomidine, may be associated with increased delirium and length of mechanical ventilation.[127-130] Propofol, with the benefits of short duration and rapid titration, is a very common choice, but may cause hypertriglyceridemia or, rarely, propofol infusion syndrome. Propofol infusion syndrome is a serious complication associated with high dose and prolonged infusion duration that presents with metabolic acidosis, electrocardiogram (ECG) and conduction abnormalities, and rhabdomyolysis.[131] Dexmedetomidine is increasingly being used in the ICU. Several studies have suggested that it is less deliriogenic than other sedatives, or may even have prophylactic benefits against delirium.[132,133]

Neuroleptic drugs such as haloperidol are rarely used as primary sedatives, but can be used to control agitated delirium that may result in harm to patient or staff. However, studies have not shown clear benefit with the use of antipsychotics in the prevention or treatment of delirium.[134] Furthermore, many patients who start treatment with antipsychotics in the ICU are discharged with a prescription for antipsychotics with the accompanying dangerous side effects associated with long-term use.[135]

Pragmatically, regardless of the specific sedative agent or protocol and scales used, the evidence points toward using a systematic and adaptive practice of minimizing psychoactive agents, while maintaining safety of the patient and care providers.

Sepsis and Shock

INFECTION, SYSTEMIC INFLAMMATORY RESPONSE SYNDROME, AND SEPSIS

Sepsis is one of the most common diagnoses treated in ICUs. It is estimated that at least 1.7 million patients develop sepsis every year in the United States alone, the majority of whom are over the age of 65.[136,137] Mortality, which reaches 10% in patients with sepsis and 40% in patients with septic shock, is typically a result of multiple organ dysfunction synrome (MODS). Sepsis has been defined as a “life-threatening organ dysfunction that is a result of dysregulated host response to infection.”[138]

The most recent definition of sepsis (“Sepsis-3”), introduced in 2016 by the SCCM/ESICM task force, emphasizes the importance of organ dysfunction for sepsis diagnosis, as opposed to systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS). Although features of SIRS (tachycardia, tachypnea, fever/hypothermia, leukocytosis/leukopenia) are found in many patients with sepsis, SIRS is not a specific response to infection and can develop in many noninfectious conditions (major trauma, major surgery, burns, necrotizing pancreatitis).[139] All patients with sepsis, however, have clinical or laboratory evidence of acute organ dysfunction (e.g., hypotension, hypoxemia, altered mental status, oliguria).

The transition from infection to sepsis is believed to occur when the inflammatory response to the pathogen becomes dysregulated, spreading beyond the original site of infection and leading to systemic organ dysfunction. The organ dysfunction has been defined as an increase in the Sequential Organ Failure Assessment (SOFA) score by at least 2 points. The SOFA score uses a simple numeric assessment (0-4) of neurologic, cardiovascular, respiratory, renal, liver, and hematologic function to assess the severity of a patient's physiologic deterioration (Table 83.2). While SOFA score per se is not diagnostic of sepsis, the increase in SOFA score in a patient with a suspected or confirmed infection indicates a substantially increased risk of in-hospital mortality. Clinicians must maintain a high suspicion for infection in all patients that manifest worsening organ function. It is important to note, however, that in approximately half of the cases of sepsis, the causative microbe is never identified.[138,140] This is because of the limitations of currently used culture-based microbiology methods, inadequate sampling, or concurrent treatment with antimicrobials. Because the initial clinical presentation of sepsis is variable and laboratory findings are nonspecific, detecting sepsis early remains a clinical challenge.

SEPTIC SHOCK

In patients with septic shock, the dysregulated host response to infection is associated with severe circulatory, cellular, and metabolic abnormalities. Required for the clinical diagnosis of septic shock is elevation of plasma lactate levels greater than 2 mmol/L and the requirement for vasopressor support to maintain mean arterial pressure (MAP) greater than 65 mm Hg despite adequate fluid resuscitation. Circulatory failure that occurs in septic shock is a result of vasodilation and increased vascular permeability, which lead to decreased effective circulating volume. Myocardial dysfunction develops in a significant percentage of patients with septic shock. Tissue perfusion is further impaired by tissue edema and aberrant activation of coagulation at the microvascular level. The ability of tissues to extract and utilize oxygen is also impaired, likely due to sepsis-induced mitochondrial dysfunction.[141] Reflecting these perfusion and cellular abnormalities are supranormal values of oxyhemoglobin saturation in mixed venous or central venous blood often found in patients with septic shock.

SURVIVING SEPSIS CAMPAIGN

The high prevalence, high mortality, and mounting costs of intensive care have led to continuous worldwide efforts to identify the best practices in sepsis, resulting in the Surviving Sepsis Campaign. These recommendations were published first in 2004 and revised in several subsequent editions. They emphasized sepsis as a medical emergency and advocated for management to be initiated immediately upon recognition.

It is broadly accepted that an early administration of appropriate antibiotic therapy, within 1 hour of sepsis recognition, is a key intervention to decrease patient mortality. Additional source control (i.e., drainage of an abscess or resection of infected tissues) may be critical in situations in which antibiotic therapy alone would not be curative (e.g., necrotizing soft-tissue infection).

The remaining recommendations for the management of sepsis and septic shock focus on physiologic stabilization (restoration of perfusion, adequate pulmonary gas exchange while avoiding ventilator-induced lung injury, correction of electrolyte abnormalities, and more). Administration of intravenous fluids (30 mL/kg or individualized) is recommended in all infected patients who demonstrate clinical or laboratory signs suggestive of impaired tissue perfusion (i.e., hypotension or lactate elevation greater than

TABLE 83.2 Sequential Organ Failure Assessment Score

	Score				
System	**0**	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**
Central nervous system Glasgow coma scale	15	13-14	10-12	6-9	<6
Respiration PaO_2/FiO_2 (mm Hg)	≥400	<400	<300	<200 with respiratory support	<100 with respiratory support
Cardiovascular	MAP ≥70 mm Hg	MAP <70 mm Hg	dopamine <5 or dobutamine (any dose)*	dopamine 5.1-15 or epinephrine ≤0.1 or norepinephrine ≤0.1*	dopamine >15 or epinephrine>0.1 or norepinephrine >0.1*
Liver Bilirubin (mg/dL)	<1.2	1.2-1.9	2.0-5.9	6.0-11.9	>12
Coagulation Platelets $\times 10^3/\mu L$	≥150	<150	<100	<50	<20
Renal Creatinine (mg/dL) Urine output (mL/day)	<1.2	1.2-1.9	2.0-3.4	3.5-4.9 <500	>5.0 <200

*Catecholamine doses are given as μg/kg/min for at least 1 hour.

MAP, Mean arterial pressure. Adapted from The Third International Consensus Definitions for Sepsis and Septic Shock (Sepsis-3).

4 mmol/L). Treatment with vasopressors is typically initiated when hemodynamic stability cannot be restored with fluid administration alone. To that end, norepinephrine is the recommended vasopressor of choice. Corticosteroids are helpful in decreasing vasopressor requirements and shock reversal but their impact on mortality is less clear.[142,143]

Despite the best available supportive care, shock develops in a subset of patients with sepsis that is refractory to treatment with antibiotics, fluids, vasopressors, and corticosteroids, and ultimately progresses to the failure of most organ systems. This is described as MODS. Encephalopathy, ARDS, liver failure, renal failure, and coagulopathy characterize this clinical picture that has an extremely high mortality.

HEMODYNAMIC SUPPORT IN SEPTIC SHOCK

Over the last 20 years, it has been intensely studied whether specific hemodynamic or metabolic indices should be uniformly achieved during resuscitation, with proponents of such an approach introducing the term "goal-directed therapy." Under such management, predefined "best" values of central venous pressure (CVP), MAP, central venous oxygen saturation ($ScvO_2$), or urine output would be achieved through administration of crystalloids, blood, vasopressors, and inotropes. While this protocolized approach was shown to decrease mortality in a single-center study by Rivers in 2001,[144] more recent multicenter clinical trials (ProCESS, ARISE, and ProMISe) have questioned the benefit of a stringent protocolized resuscitation.[145] Likely due to the improvements in general critical care over the last decade, these studies failed to demonstrate the survival benefit of protocolized hemodynamic resuscitation when compared to standard care. Hemodynamic resuscitation in shock is discussed in further detail in the following section.

Hemodynamic Resuscitation in Shock

Circulatory shock is a common condition in intensive care. It is defined by insufficient end-organ perfusion and, if left untreated, leads to end-organ dysfunction and failure. The purpose of fluid administration in circulatory shock is to increase cardiac output (CO) and thus increase end-organ perfusion. Traditional fluid resuscitation strategies were based on empiric intravenous fluid administration and static markers of cardiac preload such as CVP or pulmonary capillary wedge pressure.

In the landmark 2001 paper, Rivers and associates demonstrated a significant mortality decrease, 30.5% versus 46.5%, in patients with septic shock with the use of an early goal-directed therapy (EGDT) protocol versus standard care.[144] EGDT was an emergency department-based protocol that focused on meeting concrete targets of CVP, oxygen delivery, and $ScvO_2$. This involved aggressive fluid resuscitation, allogenic red blood cell transfusion, and inotropic support per algorithm. Subsequent studies called various parts of this aggressive protocol into question. Three larger, multicenter prospective randomized studies showed no difference between EGDT and standard care.[146,147] Thus, the benefit of the EGDT may have been due to the early intervention by a specialized treatment team, rather than the aggressive therapy protocol.[148]

This data emerged with increasing evidence of harm caused by excessive intravenous fluid administration. One multicentered retrospective study of patients in septic shock demonstrated an association between positive fluid balance, higher CVP, and mortality.[149] Another multicentered observational study associated positive fluid balance with increased mortality and renal failure.[150] In a prospective randomized trial, a conservative fluid protocol demonstrated significantly shorter ICU length of stay and fewer ventilator days in patients with ARDS, but no difference in mortality.[151] Data from the CLASSIC trial demonstrated feasibility of a fluid restrictive protocol in critically ill septic patients without apparent worsened outcomes, but it was underpowered for many important clinical outcomes.[152]

Although fluid resuscitation in septic shock is standard of care, there is no high-quality large-scale clinical outcomes data on the efficacy of intravenous fluid resuscitation. In the thought-provoking multicentered 2011 FEAST trial, children presenting with septic shock in a resource-poor setting were prospectively randomized to intravenous fluid administration.[153] Surprisingly, mortality was increased in the fluid administration arm, primarily from cardiovascular collapse.[154] In adults, a single center randomized study of patients with septic shock in a resource-limited setting also saw increased mortality when randomized to more aggressive intravenous fluid administration.[155] Given the specific resource-limited setting and patient population in these two studies, the results are not generalizable. However, these unexpected results do challenge the traditional dogma of intravenous fluid administration in septic shock[156] and raises questions about the Surviving Sepsis Campaign's recommendation for 30 mL/kg crystalloid bolus in the initial management of septic shock.

Modern fluid resuscitation strategies in circulatory shock are shifting away from empiric intravenous fluid volumes toward a rational approach of supporting perfusion pressure, identifying end-organ malperfusion, evaluating fluid responsiveness, and administration of fluids to augment CO in a targeted manner.

END-ORGAN PERFUSION

Since the goal of fluid resuscitation is to restore end-organ perfusion, the first step should be to identify end-organ malperfusion. There are many surrogates used as indicators for end-organ perfusions, but they all have their limitations and confounders. The most commonly used markers in shock are urine output, lactate, and base deficit.

Urine Output

Urine output is almost universally measured in critically ill patients. Urine output of less than 0.5 mL/kg/hour is a common cut-off used in adults as a marker for systemic malperfusion or hypovolemia. However, urine output is not directly correlated to end-organ perfusion and injury.[157] There are many confounders, especially in the critical care setting, including neurohumoral effects, diuretic use, intrinsic kidney injury, obstructive uropathies, and exogenous vasopressin administration. Despite these many limitations, the ubiquity of this measurement has made it a core component of evaluating a patient in shock.[158] There is further research examining real-time urine output rate as a more effective monitor in shock and may be associated with decreased rates of acute kidney injury.[159,160]

Lactate

Lactate is one of the most commonly measured markers of organ ischemia. Lactate is a product of glycolysis and even under normal physiologic conditions is produced at a high rate. Although production may be increased by tissue-level hypoxia, there are many other causes of increased lactate production that are not secondary to lack of perfusion. These include β-adrenergic activation, acute lung injury, or medications. Further, lactate clearance can be reduced by hepatic or mitochondrial dysfunction. Thus, although elevated lactate levels are associated with poor outcomes in shock states, it may not be a specific marker for organ malperfusion or ischemia.[161]

Standard Base Deficit

Standard base deficit is a calculated value based on blood gas measurement as a gauge of metabolic acidosis. It approximates the amount of base that must be added to in vitro blood at 37°C and P_{CO2} of 40 mm Hg to bring the pH to 7.4. Like lactate, elevated base deficit has been associated with mortality and poor clinical outcomes in shock states, especially in trauma. However, base deficit is affected by many factors. It can also be confounded by nonperfusion-related conditions including sodium and chloride concentrations, hypoalbuminemia, respiration, exogenous sodium bicarbonate, or sodium chloride administration.[162,163]

Other Tissue-Specific Perfusion Markers

The three traditional markers of end-organ perfusion discussed thus far are global markers that may be normal even when there is regional organ level malperfusion. Newer techniques, such as near-infrared spectroscopy, transcutaneous oximetry, and gastric pH/tonometry, may provide a more specific and sensitive endpoint target in shock.[164-167] Currently, however, these technologies are primarily used in research and there is no strong clinical evidence of superior clinical outcomes compared to traditional endpoints.[168] Future developments will also likely involve organ or inflammation-specific biomarkers.

CARDIAC OUTPUT

The purpose of intravenous fluids during resuscitation is to increase CO; therefore, it is important to evaluate the adequacy and the response of CO to avoid excess intravenous fluid administration. There have been an increasing number of noninvasive technologies available to measure CO in the ICU to supplement the physical examination. Each has its own strengths and weaknesses, but no single technology has been proven clinically superior. The absolute measurement accuracy of many of these devices is highly variable, especially under rapidly changing hemodynamic conditions. Although the different methods have been validated individually, actual interdevice agreement is likely poor.[169,170] Measurements from one device cannot be directly compared to another; this may be true even within the same technology from different manufacturers.[171] Several of the most commonly used CO measurement techniques are reviewed in the next section. Refer to Chapter 36 on cardiovascular monitoring.

Pulmonary Artery Catheter, Thermal Dilution

PACs are considered the gold standard of CO measurements. In addition to direct measurement of pulmonary artery and pulmonary capillary wedge pressures, it allows for thermal dilution measurements of CO. This method involves injecting a known amount of cold solution into the right atrium and measuring the temperature change over time in the pulmonary artery. Based on the Steward-Hamilton equation, the area under the curve of the temperature change is inversely proportional to the CO. Current PACs also offer continuous CO measurements with thermal heating elements proximal to the pulmonary artery. Although thermal dilution PAC is the gold standard, precision error is approximately 15% to 20% even in idealized laboratory conditions.[172,173] This precision is further worsened in patients with low CO or severe tricuspid regurgitation.[174] Although PACs were once widely used in critically ill patients, their routine use has fallen out of favor after multiple studies failed to demonstrate improved clinical outcomes and the possibility of increased complication rates with PAC usage.[174,175] In select patients, PAC still provides valuable information during shock resuscitation and can be used to monitor pulmonary artery pressures, CO, and CO responses to intravenous fluid challenges.

Transpulmonary Thermal Dilution or Lithium Dye Dilution

Transpulmonary thermal or other dye dilution techniques use the same principles of the Steward-Hamilton equation; however, the indicator solution is injected into the superior vena cava and the change is measured near the aorta, typically on a femoral or axillary arterial line. The advantage of this technique is that it does not require placement of a PAC and is easy to use. Accuracy and precision are similar to PAC measurements, although it also becomes inaccurate at low CO.[176,177] These systems also allow the measurement of other physiologic parameters such as extravascular lung water.

Pulse Contour Analysis

Pulse contour analysis measures CO by analyzing the morphology of the arterial pressure waveform and thus requires a good quality arterial line tracing.[178] By measuring the area under the systolic portion of the curve and estimating the arterial impedance, the stroke volume can be derived.[179] In modern systems, this is combined with proprietary algorithms with more advanced waveform analysis.[169] These methods suffer from drift and inaccuracy in rapidly changing hemodynamic states, so they are often coupled with thermal or dye dilution techniques for intermittent calibration.[171] The advantages of these devices are in providing a continuous measurement of stroke volume and stroke volume variability, while avoiding the need for central line. These devices have been investigated in perioperative hemodynamic optimization with mixed results in improving clinical outcomes.[180,181]

ELECTRICAL BIOREACTANCE AND IMPEDANCE

Bioreactance and bioimpedance methods measure CO by measuring the changing properties of an electric field placed across the thorax. This is related to the movement of blood into and out of the chest and thus the CO. The main advantage of this technique is that it is minimally invasive and only requires several electrodes placed on the chest. The accuracy of these devices can be variable depending on the clinical situation, and measurements may correlate poorly with other techniques.[182,183]

TRANSTHORACIC AND TRANSESOPHAGEAL ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY

Focused cardiac ultrasound and echocardiography can be used to measure stroke volume and stroke distance.[184] This is performed by pulse wave Doppler integration of systolic flow at the left ventricular outflow tract (LVOT). This is typically performed from the transthoracic apical window or the deep transgastric esophageal window. The volume-time integral (VTI) of the flow velocity curve gives the stroke distance. The VTI multiplied by the LVOT cross-sectional area gives the stroke volume, but VTI alone can be used as an index of stroke volume. However, this technique is very operator dependent, can be labor intensive, and does not account for aortic valve regurgitation. Furthermore, some studies have reported poor agreement with other methods of CO measurement.[185]

Esophageal Doppler operates in a similar manner, except the probe is placed in the esophagus and measures velocities in the descending aorta. These velocities are then indexed to the patient to estimate the total CO.[170,186]

Mixed Venous and Central Venous Saturation

Mixed venous oxygen saturation drawn from the pulmonary artery is a powerful indicator of the balance between global oxygen delivery and global oxygen consumption. Although CO can be calculated using Fick's principle with assumptions about oxygen consumption, a low mixed venous oxygen saturation, less than 65% to 70%, indicates a deficit of oxygen delivery relative to oxygen consumption. Since it is a global measure, organ-specific ischemia may be present even with normal or elevated mixed venous saturations.[187]

Measurement of mixed venous oxygen saturations requires placement of a PAC. As a result, some have proposed central venous saturation from the vena cava as a surrogate. Unfortunately, the relationship between central venous saturation and mixed venous saturation has been found to be variable.[188,189]

FLUID RESPONSIVENESS

The hemodynamic purpose of intravenous fluid administration is to increase global oxygen delivery by increasing CO. In this regard, the administration of intravenous fluid is only beneficial if it increases CO. A patient is considered "fluid responsive" if they are able to increase their CO to a fluid bolus.

Traditional static indicators for fluid administration were measurements of filling pressures to the left or right ventricle. These included CVP[190] and pulmonary capillary wedge pressures. These measurements also have their ultrasound corollaries: inferior vena cava diameter, end diastolic, and end-systolic ventricular diameter. Unfortunately, despite their widespread use, these static indicators of preload, and even their trend, have been found to be poor predictors of volume responsiveness.[191]

As a result, dynamic indicators of fluid responsiveness have become increasingly used. The most straightforward dynamic test of fluid responsiveness is a fluid challenge with measurement of CO before and after. Typically, a small bolus of approximately 100 to 250 mL of intravenous fluid is used. Similarly, a passive leg raise test resulting in transient autotransfusions from the lower extremities has also been shown to be an effective predictor of fluid responsiveness.[192]

Other dynamic indicators depend upon cardiopulmonary interactions and the consistent variations of intrathoracic pressure created by controlled mechanical ventilation to create detectable beat-to-beat variations in stroke volumes. As positive pressure breath is delivered, right ventricular preload is decreased and afterload increased. Meanwhile, the left ventricle preload experiences a transient increase and then a decrease as left ventricular afterload increases. This process is reversed on expiration.[193] If the stroke volume is sensitive to these swings in preload, the stroke volume will vary significantly during the respiratory cycle and is indicative that the patient is likely volume responsive.[191,194,195] The measured parameters can be stroke volume variation, pulse pressure variation, or inferior vena cava distensibility[196,197] on ultrasound; various studies have reported different cut-offs for predicting volume responsiveness. These techniques may not be accurate in arrhythmias, right or left heart failure, or low-tidal volume ventilation.[193] However, these dynamic indicators have been shown consistently superior in predicting volume responsiveness compared to static preload measures.

SUMMARY OF FLUID RESUSCITATION IN SHOCK

The goal of intravenous fluid administration in shock is to restore end-organ perfusion by augmenting CO. There is increasing evidence that excess intravenous fluid administration is harmful in critically ill patients. Thus, the patient should be assessed for end-organ malperfusion, insufficient CO, and likelihood of fluid responsiveness prior to and during fluid resuscitation.[198,199]

Care for Patients Receiving Cancer Immunotherapy in the Intensive Care Unit

Cancer immunotherapy is a rapidly evolving field of oncology. Two major therapeutic approaches utilized in cancer immunotherapy are based on either enhancing the patient's own antitumor immunity (immune checkpoint inhibitors, cytokines, vaccines) or administration of tumor-reactive immune cells (chimeric antigen receptor [CAR] T cells, T-cell receptor engineered T cells). The outcomes of these therapies are currently studied in several hundreds of clinical trials. Remarkable results have already been achieved in certain types of cancer (melanoma, leukemias, lymphomas) for which immunotherapy is now being used as a standard of care.

Besides the desired antitumor effects, immunotherapy can also trigger unique toxicities resulting from excessive immune system activation. These may be restricted to certain organs (colitis, pneumonitis) or be a systemic inflammatory response (cytokine release syndrome [CRS]). When severe, immunotherapy toxicities can be life-threatening and their management may require admission to the ICU for continuous monitoring and supportive care. Intensivists thus increasingly find themselves leading and coordinating multidisciplinary care for complex oncologic patients.

IMMUNE CHECKPOINT INHIBITORS

Immune checkpoint inhibitors are the most commonly administered form of cancer immunotherapy. These agents enhance antitumor activity of the patient's own T cells by blocking certain T-cell inhibitory signals. FDA-approved inhibitors of PD-1 (pembrolizumab, nivolumab), PD-L1 (atezolizumab, avelumab, durvalumab), and CTLA-4 (ipilimumab) are used in treatments of various solid tumors including melanoma, non-small-cell lung cancer, head and neck squamous cancers, and renal cell carcinoma. These agents can produce a unique set of side effects termed immune-related adverse events, which may be dermatologic, gastrointestinal, hepatic, endocrine, pulmonary, cardiac, or neurologic inflammatory complications. These side effects typically manifest weeks to months after initiation of the therapy.

The mainstay of the management in cases of moderate- and high-grade toxicity is the interruption of the checkpoint inhibitor and administration of corticosteroids. Tumor necrosis factor-α antagonists have been used in cases refractory to steroids. ICU monitoring and supportive care may be required in cases of severe pneumonitis (oxygen therapy, mechanical ventilation), myocarditis (inotropic support, antiarrhythmics), severe enterocolitis (fluid and electrolyte repletion), liver failure, and adrenal insufficiency. Echocardiography should be performed in patients with new onset dyspnea, pulmonary edema, or hypotension. Patients receiving prolonged immunosuppression for the treatment of checkpoint inhibitor toxicity are at an especially high risk of infectious complications (opportunistic infections, sepsis).[200]

CHIMERIC ANTIGEN RECEPTOR T CELLS

CAR T cells are genetically engineered T cells that have the ability to bind to target tumor cells, undergo supraphysiologic activation, and cause tumor cell lysis. Upon completion of an *ex vivo* manufacturing process, CAR T cells are infused into patients and patients typically remain monitored for several days in the hospital setting. Currently, CAR T cells are used in the treatment of certain relapsed/refractory hematologic malignancies (leukemias, lymphomas, multiple myeloma) but clinical trials in patients with solid tumors are also ongoing. Two CD19-directed CAR T-cell products for treatment of B-cell malignancies (non-Hodgkin lymphoma, acute lymphoblastic leukemia) have been FDA approved and cases of complete disease remission have been reported.

However, CAR T-cell therapy is frequently associated with toxicities that can range from minor (fatigue, fever, myalgias) to life-threatening (shock, multiple organ dysfunction). These toxicities are primarily driven by proinflammatory cytokines (IL-6, IFNγ) that are released upon CAR T cell–tumor cell interaction. Of importance to ICU clinicians are severe forms of CRS and neurotoxicity, which require ICU monitoring and management. CRS typically manifests within several days after CAR T-cell infusion by a spectrum of fever, tachycardia, hypotension, or respiratory insufficiency. The onset of neurotoxicity (encephalopathy, aphasia, or seizures) can be delayed and is not necessarily preceded by clinically significant CRS. Fatal cases of diffuse cerebral edema have been reported.

The mainstay of the therapy of severe forms of CRS is the administration of antiinflammatory agents (IL-6 antagonists, corticosteroids) in conjunction with individualized supportive care (fluid resuscitation, vasopressors, mechanical ventilation, renal replacement therapy). Neurotoxicity is treated with anticonvulsants and corticosteroids. It is crucial that other precipitating factors of neurologic, hemodynamic, or respiratory decline that are common in patients with advanced cancer are always actively excluded. Sepsis, which often resembles CRS, is a frequent cause of morbidity and mortality in this patient population.[201,202]

Point-of-Care Ultrasound in Critical Care

As a result of improving technology, decreasing cost, and widening availability, the use of point-of-care ultrasound (POCUS) has taken an increasing role in the practice of critical care. The uses of ultrasound in the critically ill are manifold, from vascular access to cardiopulmonary evaluation. POCUS allows for rapid and repeated assessments of the critically ill patient at the bedside to augment traditional physical examination and physiologic monitors. Because techniques and technologies continue to evolve, there are a multitude of published protocols. Although the exact protocol used is of less significance, the specific skills and applications of ultrasound will likely become a core competency in the ICU.[203,204] Ultimately, ultrasound is another tool in the armamentarium of the intensivist that requires understanding of physiology and expert clinical decision making for safe and beneficial use.

VASCULAR ULTRASOUND

Vascular cannulation is a vital skill in the ICU. Ultrasound guidance can be used before the procedure to confirm anatomy and vessel patency or, preferentially, it can be used in real time during the procedure. There are different techniques, the two most common being out-of-plane needle insertion with short axis view of the vessel, or in-plane needle insertion with a long axis view of the vessel. Ultrasound can be used for cannulating central venous structures, arteries, or even peripheral veins.

Central venous access is one of the most common procedures in the ICU. The use of ultrasound imaging to assist catheter insertion is a Grade 1B recommendation by the SCCM guidelines.[203,205] For the cannulation of the internal jugular or femoral veins, SCCM offers an even stronger Grade 1A recommendation.[206] For other central venous cannulation sites, such as the subclavian or axillary, ultrasound guidance may still improve success and reduce complications, but the evidence is not as definitive.[207] Specific recommendations are given for the use of real-time imaging in the short axis when using ultrasound; however, the conclusions are weaker.[208,209] Although the long-axis ultrasound view of vessels can have benefits such as reducing posterior wall puncture, the short-axis orientation affords a view of surrounding structures, requires less training, and has been shown to have a higher success rate in some studies.[210]

Arterial cannulation is another extremely common procedure in the ICU and the use of ultrasound guidance is a Grade 2B recommendation.[203] A recent meta-analysis of randomized control trials concluded real-time ultrasound guidance decreased time to cannulation and hematoma formation.[211] A study of radial arterial access for cardiac catheterization also demonstrated ultrasound significantly decreased the frequency of "difficult access" requiring greater than five attempts or 5 minutes.[212] Given the high incidence of difficult access in critically ill patients, due to peripheral edema, peripheral vascular disease, and weak pulses, ultrasound guidance for arterial cannulation is likely even more valuable in the ICU compared to other settings.

Deep venous thrombosis (DVT) is a common complication in postsurgical and ICU patients that can have serious sequelae including pulmonary embolism. Diagnosis of DVT is traditionally made by a sonographer-performed vascular examination with formal interpretation by a specialist. In contrast, examination with POCUS by a critical care physician can reduce time to diagnosis and be performed when sonographers are unavailable. By using 2D ultrasound to examine the popliteal artery and femoral veins for compressibility along their length, proximal DVTs can be readily diagnosed at the bedside. In one study, a sensitivity and specificity of 86% and 96%, respectively, was achieved even with inexperienced practitioners.[213] Ultrasound screening for DVT by an intensivist is a Grade 1B recommendation in SCCM guidelines.[203]

PULMONARY ULTRASOUND

Ultrasound examination of the lung can be used to identify and manage many pathologies in the ICU.[214] Normal lung is well aerated and does not transmit ultrasound. When imaging healthy lung, only the pleural line is visualized and anything beyond the pleural line is noise or artifact. However, changes or loss in these characteristic ultrasound artifacts can be used to identify pathology.

Three artifacts are expected in normal lung ultrasound: A-lines, lung sliding, and B-lines. A-lines are regularly spaced repeats of the pleural line that appear as horizontal lines deep to the true pleural line. These are artifacts created by reverberations between pleural line and soft tissue. "Lung sliding" artifact is a shimmering of the pleural line that has been described as "ants walking on a twig" that also causes shifting graininess beyond the pleural line. This is created by the sliding of the parietal and visceral pleura of the lung against each other. The M-mode corollary of lung sliding is the "sandy beach" sign, where the soft tissue above pleura appears as stable horizontal lines, "sky," and below the pleural line a grainy pattern of "a sandy beach" due to lung sliding artifact. See Fig. 83.1 for an example of M-mode appearance of normal lung. "B-lines" are a third kind of artifact occasionally seen in normal lung. They are vertical streaks that radiate down from the pleural line to the far field image. Sometimes called "comet tails" or "pleural rockets," they are caused by fine reverberation within interlobular septae. One or two B-lines in a rib space can be normal, especially in the dependent lung fields.[215,216]

Pneumothorax is a common pathology in the ICU and can rapidly be diagnosed by ultrasound. Pneumothorax is readily identified on ultrasound by loss of lung sliding artifact and absence of B-lines due to loss of contact between the pleural surfaces. There may also be the predominance of A-lines, since they arise between the pleura and soft tissue. If M-mode is applied, there is loss of the "sandy beach" sign and the entire field appears as stable horizontal lines that has been called the "bar code" sign. Ultrasound is very sensitive and highly specific in the diagnosis of pneumothorax and consistently outperforms supine chest x-ray.[217] Poor image quality and concurrent pathologies, such as adhesions or bronchial intubation that prevent sliding of the lung pleura, may result in false positives. However, the presence of "lung point," a transition point between lung sliding and nonsliding, conferred a specificity of 100% compared to chest computed tomography in some studies.[218] The use of ultrasound for diagnosis of pneumothorax is a Grade 1A recommendation by the SCCM.[203]

Pleural effusions are easily visualized by ultrasound. Since effusions are fluids, they efficiently transmit ultrasound and

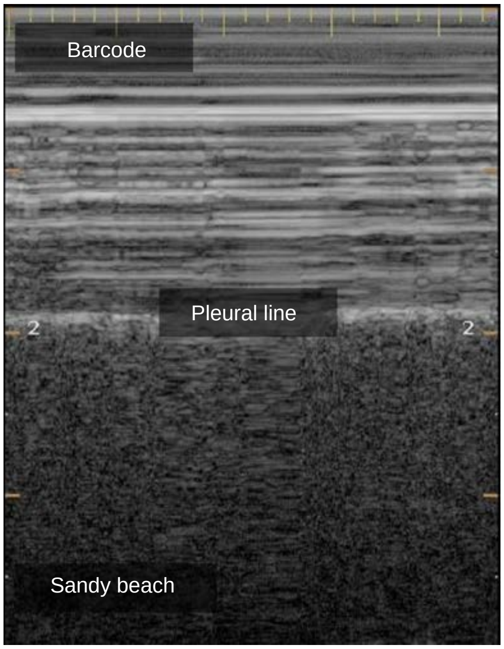


Fig. 83.1 An M-mode ultrasound tracing of normal lung. The near field at the top of the image is dominated by a pattern of horizontal lines created by the relatively still soft tissue above the lung pleura. At 2 cm depth is the pleural line, and below this there is a grainy pattern created by the lung sliding artifact of normally aerated lung. This creates the "sandy beach" sign where the linear pattern of soft tissue is the "sky" above the grainy "beach" pattern created by normal lung sliding.

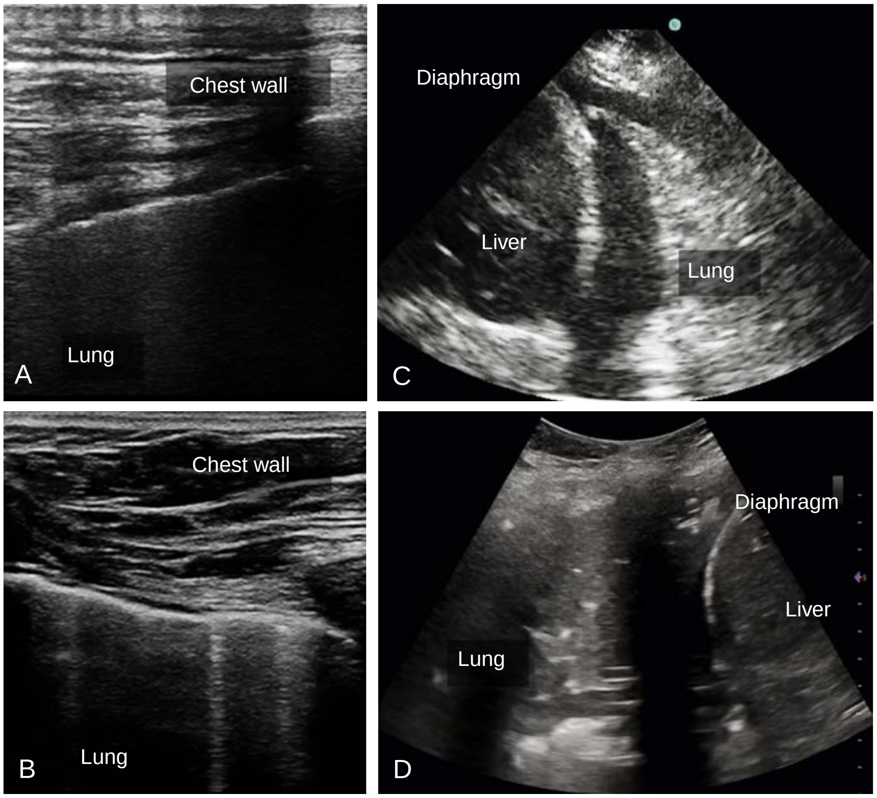


Fig. 83.2 Common lung ultrasound pathologies. (A) Normal lung ultrasound. (B) Atelectatic lung in a pleural effusion. (C) Confluent B-lines indicative of alveolar syndromes like severe pulmonary edema or diffuse alveolar hemorrhage. (D) Consolidated lung with hyperechoic air bronchograms seen in pneumonia or acute respiratory distress syndrome.

appear as a hypoechoic area below the pleural line that allows imaging of deeper structures. They are usually best imaged in the dependent regions from the posterior axillary line. Atelectatic lung can often be seen floating in larger effusions. See (Lung-Fig. 83.2) for an example.[215,216] Loculations with the effusion can also be identified with ultrasound imaging. Compared to traditional chest radiographs, POCUS has been shown to be equivalent or superior in the diagnosis of pleural effusion and allows for quantification and localization. Effusions of greater than 5 cm from the anterior pleural line to lung have been associated with volumes greater than 500 mL.[216] The use of ultrasound for pleural effusions diagnosis is Grade 1A recommendation and Grade 1B recommendation for thoracentesis guidance by the SCCM.[203]

Alveolar-interstitial syndrome occurs in conditions such as pulmonary edema, pneumonia, and ARDS. This can be seen on ultrasound by progressively increasing number, density, and confluence of B-lines. Greater than three B-lines in one rib space is considered pathologic, and indicates thickening of the interlobular septae from edema or alveolar edema. In severe consolidation and atelectasis, aeration is lost and ultrasound is transmitted through the tissue. On ultrasound imaging, the lung has liver-like appearance (hepatization), sometimes with visible air bronchograms and blood vessels.

All these ultrasound findings, in combination with other findings, have been combined into effective protocols such as the BLUE-protocol to differentiate between pulmonary pathologies in critically ill patients.[215,216,219] For example, a COPD exacerbation would be characterized by relatively normal lung ultrasound. In comparison, cardiogenic pulmonary edema from congestive heart failure would be dominated by increased B-lines from interstitial edema and pleural effusions. Pneumonia and ARDS on ultrasound may be characterized by increased B-lines, consolidation, and decreased lung sliding due to exudative adhesions.[220] A recent meta-analysis suggests that ultrasound can accurately diagnose pneumonia; however, further research needs to be performed on the broader use of POCUS with alveolar and interstitial disease. Its use is a Grade 2B recommendation.[203,221] See Figs. 83.2*A-D* for examples of the ultrasound appearance of common pathologies.

CARDIAC ULTRASOUND

Cardiac ultrasound performed by critical care physicians has gone by many names including "focused cardiac ultrasound," "point-of-care echocardiography," "bedside cardiac ultrasound," and "critical care echocardiography (CCE)."[204,222] Regardless of the name, ultrasound assessment of cardiac structures by critical care physicians can rapidly identify many relevant findings in the unstable patient. These include: left ventricular systolic dysfunction or dilation, right ventricular systolic dysfunction or dilation, pericardial effusions, inference of elevated filling pressures, predictions of volume responsiveness, gross intracardiac masses, and severe valvular pathology.[204,214,223-225] For further details, refer to Chapter 37 on Perioperative Echocardiography.

TABLE 83.3 A Table of Contrasting Common Point-of-Care Cardiac Ultrasound Findings in Different Shock States

Category	Shock Type	LV Function	RV Function	Pericardial Effusion	Inferior Vena Cava	Lung Sliding	Lung B-lines	RVSP	CO/VTI	Valvular dysfunction
Afterload	Distributive	↑	↑	–	…	+	–	–	High	–
Preload	Hypovolemic	↑	↑	–	Collapsed	+	–	–	Low	–
Cardiogenic	LV Failure	↓	↑/↓	–	Distended	+	+	↑	Low	–
	RV Failure	↑	↓	–	Distended	+	–	↑/↓	Low	–
	Acute Coronary Syndrome	WMA	↑/↓	–	Distended	+	+	↑	Low	–
	Valvular	↑/↓	↑/↓	–	Distended	+	+/–	↑	Low	+
Obstructive	Tamponade	↑	↑	+	Distended	+	–	–	Low	–
	Pneumothorax	↑	↑	–	Distended	–	–	–	Low	–

Isolated signs are likely not specific or sensitive, especially in mixed shock states. Findings must be correlated to the clinical and physiological situation.
CO, Cardiac output; *LV*, left ventricle; *RV*, right ventricle; *VTI,* volume-time integral; *WMA*, wall motion abnormalities.

Ultrasound evaluation of cardiac and related structures allows for the rapid assessment of patients in undifferentiated shock and has been shown to be more accurate in diagnosing cardiac pathology than physical examination.[225] Information gained when integrated with other clinical information can be used to quickly narrow the differential diagnosis. Table 83.3 gives common findings in different shock states. Cardiac ultrasound during cardiac arrest and cardiopulmonary resuscitation is a valuable tool that can provide key information.[214,225] Furthermore, since the examination is performed by the bedside critical care physician, assessments can be repeated to monitor and evaluate response to therapies.

OTHER APPLICATIONS AND THE FUTURE

Critical care ultrasound is a rapidly developing field. Research continues and more applications are being explored. This includes ultrasound of the optic nerve to evaluate for elevated intracranial pressures, abdominal ultrasound, diaphragmatic ultrasound for ventilator weaning, lung ultrasound for fluid resuscitation, gastric ultrasound, airway ultrasound, and others.[219,226-228] Ultimately, more clinical trials will need to be performed to evaluate the utility of each of these techniques when compared to traditional modalities. Currently, there is a lack of strong clinical outcomes evidence of POCUS, with one prospective emergency department study showing no benefit in patients presenting with hypotension.[229] However, given the advantage of POCUS, many of them will likely find a valuable place in critical care.

Conclusion

Critical care medicine is an exciting and rapidly evolving field that involves the care of a wide variety of patients with life-threatening syndromes regardless of the primary physiologic insult. Effective critical care requires a collaborative, interprofessional approach that utilizes highly developed systems and protocols of care to ensure consistent and high-quality care. Intensivists specialize in the application of advanced life support therapeutics and help lead multidisciplinary care teams in the delivery of patient- and family-centered care.

Acknowledgment

This chapter is a consolidation of two chapters in the 8th edition, Chapter 101 Critical Care Anesthesiology and Chapter 106 Nutrition and Metabolomics. The editors and publisher would like to thank the following authors: Linda Liu, Michael Gropper, and Charles Weissman for their contributions to the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Needham DM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40(4):1340–1341.
2. Reisner-Senelar L. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37(7):1084–1086.
3. Kelly FE, et al. *Clin Med (Lond)*. 2014;14(4):376–379.
4. Vincent JL. *Crit Care*. 2013;17(suppl 1):S2.
5. Gregory GA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1971;284(24):1333–1340.
6. Severinghaus JW. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(1):253–256.
7. Hanson 3rd CW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(3):781–788.
8. McCunn M, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(6):1668–1673.
9. ABA News 2017. *The American Board of Anesthesiology*. 2017.
10. Personal communication. *Society of Critical Care Anesthesiologists*. 2019.
11. Tung A, Apfelbaum JL. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(6):1434–1435.
12. Murray MJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(6):1436–1438.
13. Wunsch H, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36(10):2787–2793. e2781–e2789.
14. Prin M, Wunsch H. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2012;18(6):700–706.
15. Wunsch H, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(4):899–907.
16. Seymour CW, et al. *Health Serv Res*. 2012;47(5):2060–2080.
17. Katz JN. *JAMA Cardiol*. 2017;2(1):45–46.
18. Pearse RM, et al. *Lancet*. 2012;380(9847):1059–1065.
19. Halpern NA, Pastores SM. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(1):65–71.
20. Halpern NA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(8):1490–1499.
21. Wallace DJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(1):e67–e76.
22. Gooch RA, Kahn JM. *JAMA*. 2014;311(6):567–568.
23. Chen LM, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2012;172(16):1220–1226.
24. Stelfox HT, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2012;172(6):467–474.
25. Sakr Y, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(3):519–526.
26. Pronovost PJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2002;288(17):2151–2162.
27. Lott JP, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2009;179(8):676–683.
28. Wilcox ME, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41(10):2253–2274.
29. Wise KR, et al. *J Hosp Med*. 2012;7(3):183–189.
30. Yoo EJ, et al. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2016;31(5):325–332.

31. Levy MM, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2008;148(11):801–809.
32. Dimick JB, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29(4):753–758.
33. Pronovost PJ, et al. *JAMA*. 1999;281(14):1310–1317.
34. Costa DK, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(11):2275–2282.
35. Valentin A, Ferdinande P. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37(10): 1575–1587.
36. Kerlin MP, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;195(3):383–393.
37. Kerlin MP, et al. *Chest*. 2015;147(4):951–958.
38. Kerlin MP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(23):2201–2209.
39. Wallace DJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366(22):2093–2101.
40. Gajic O, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36(1):36–44.
41. Lilly CM. *Chest*. 2015;147(4):867–868.
42. Sabov M, Daniels CE. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(1):149–151.
43. Garland A, Gershengorn HB. *Chest*. 2013;143(1):214–221.
44. Gershengorn HB, et al. *Chest*. 2011;139(6):1347–1353.
45. Hoffman LA, et al. *Am J Crit Care*. 2005;14(2):121–130; quiz 131-122.
46. Costa DK, et al. *Chest*. 2014;146(6):1566–1573.
47. Hoffman LA, et al. *Am J Crit Care*. 2004;13(6):480–488.
48. Kim MM, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2010;170(4):369–376.
49. Donovan AL, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(6):980–990.
50. *The Leapfrog Group Survey*; 2018. http://leapfroggroup.org/survey.
51. Weled BJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(7):1520–1525.
52. Nates JL, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(8):1553–1602.
53. Andre A St. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(4):874–879.
54. Andre A St. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(5):1096–1101.
55. Leung S, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(1):1–11.
56. Moore JE, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(4):e334–e341.
57. Bosslet GT, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2015;191(11): 1318–1330.
58. Wunsch H, et al. *Crit Care Clin*. 2012;28(1):25–37, v.
59. Devlin JW, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(9):e825–e873.
60. Ely EW. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(2):321–330.
61. Rhodes A, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38(4):598–605.
62. Davidson JE, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(1):103–128.
63. Murphy DJ, et al. *Chest*. 2015;147(4):1168–1178.
64. Ranieri VM, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;307:2526–2533.
65. Gattinoni L, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42:663–673.
66. Brower RG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:1301–1308.
67. Fan E, et al. *JAMA*. 2005;294:2889–2896.
68. Needham DM, et al. *BMJ*. 2012;344:e2124.
69. Fan E, et al. *JAMA*. 2018;319:698–710.
70. Serpa Neto A, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1651–1659.
71. Nin N, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2017;43:200–208.
72. Laserna E, et al. *Chest*. 2012;142:1193–1199.
73. Laffey JG, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2000;162:2287–2294.
74. Broccard AF, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2001;164:802–806.
75. Mekontso Dessap A, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35:1850–1858.
76. Fanelli V, et al. *Crit Care*. 2016;20:36.
77. Morelli A, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2017;43:519–530.
78. Curley GF, et al. *Chest*. 2016;150:1109–1117.
79. Chacko B, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;1:CD008807.
80. Habashi NM. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:S228–S240.
81. Andrews PL1, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2013;75:635–641.
82. Daoud EG, et al. *Respir Care*. 2012;57:282–292.
83. Mireles-Cabodevila E, Kacmarek RM. *Respir Care*. 2016;61: 761–773.
84. Young D, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:806–813.
85. Ferguson ND, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:795–805.
86. Sud S, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;4:CD004085.
87. Webb HH, Tierney DF. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1974;110:556–565.
88. Brower RG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:327–336.
89. MercatA, et al. *JAMA*. 2008;299:646–655.
90. Santa Cruz R, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;6:CD009098.
91. Akoumianaki E, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;189: 520–531.
92. Gulati G, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41:1951–1957.
93. Talmor D, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;359:2095–2104.
94. Grasso S, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38:395–403.
95. Talmor D, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1389–1394.
96. Dean R Hess. *Respiratory Care*. 2015;60(11):1688–1704.
97. Briel M, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;303(9):865–873.
98. Hodgson C, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;11:CD006667.
99. Cavalcanti AB, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;318(14):1335–1345.
100. Kacmarek RM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(1):32–42.
101. Fan E, et al. *Respir Care*. 2012;57(11):1842–1849.
102. Scholten EL, et al. *Chest*. 2017;151:215–224.
103. Guerin C, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:2159–2168.
104. Lee JM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42:1252–1262.
105. Mascheroni D, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 1988;15:8–14.
106. Yoshida T, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41:536–545.
107. Fanelli V, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(1):132–140.
108. Sottile PD, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;197(7):897–904.
109. Papazian L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:1107–1116.
110. Moss M, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2019;380(21):1997–2008.
111. Vital FM, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;(5):CD005351.
112. Osadnik CR, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;7:CD004104.
113. Delclaux C, et al. *JAMA*. 2000;284:2352–2360.
114. Frat JP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372:2185–2196.
115. Ni YN, et al. *Chest*. 2017;151:764–775.
116. Azoulay E, et al. *JAMA*. 2018;320(20):2099–2107.
117. Munshi L, et al. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2019;7(2):163–172.
118. Antebi B, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2018;84(1):183–191.
119. Chanques G, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:858–860.
120. Ouimet S, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2007;33:66–73.
121. Devlin JW, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46:e825–e873.
122. Shehabi Y, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;186:724–731.
123. Ely EW, et al. *JAMA*. 2003;289:2983–2991.
124. Riker RR, et al. *Intensiv Care Med*. 2001;27:853–858.
125. Strom T, et al. *Lancet*. 2010;375:475–480.
126. Martyn J, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2019;380:365–378.
127. Pandharipande PP, et al. *JAMA*. 2007;298:2644–2653.
128. Riker RR, et al. *JAMA*. 2009;301:489–499.
129. Hall RI, et al. *Chest*. 2001;119:1151–1159.
130. Carson SS, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1326–1332.
131. Krajčová A, et al. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:398.
132. Jakob SM, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;307:1151–1160.
133. Skrobik Y, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;197:1147–1156.
134. Van den Boogaard M, et al. *JAMA*. 2018;319(7):680–690.
135. Tomichek JE, et al. *Crit Care*. 2016;20:378.
136. Angus DC, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29:1303–1310.
137. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Sepsis. https://www.cdc.gov/sepsis/datareports/index.html.
138. Singer M, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;315(8):801–810.
139. Kaukonen KM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372(17):1629–1638.
140. Gupta S, et al. *Chest*. 2016;150(6):1251.
141. Arulkumaran N, et al. *Shock*. 2016;45(3):271–281.
142. Rhodes A, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2017;43(3):304–377.
143. Levy MM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(6):997–1000.
144. Rivers E, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:1368–1377.
145. Rowan KM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(23):2223–2234.
146. The ProCESS Investigators. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1683–1693.
147. The ARISE Investigators and ANZICS Clinical Trials Group. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371:1496–1506.
148. Rowan KM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:2223–2234.
149. Payen D, et al. *Crit Care*. 2008;12:R74.
150. Boyd JH, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(2):259–265.
151. Wiedemann HP, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:2564–2575.
152. Hjortrup PB, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42:1695–1705.
153. Maitland K, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:2483–2495.
154. Maitland K, et al. *BMC Med*. 2013;11:68.
155. Andrews B, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;318:1233–1240.
156. Rhodes A, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45:486–552.
157. Prowle JR, et al. *Crit Care*. 2011;9(15):R172.
158. Paratz JD, et al. *Shock*. 2014;42:295–306.
159. Jin K, et al. *Chest*. 2017;152:972–979.
160. Brotfain E, et al. *World J Emerg Surg*. 2017;12:41.
161. Suetrong B, Walley KR. *Chest*. 2016;149:252–261.
162. Berend K. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:1419–1428.
163. Mutschler M, et al. *Crit Care*. 2013;17:R42.
164. Crookes BA, et al. *J Trauma*. 2005;58(4):806–813.
165. Yu M, et al. *Shock*. 2007;27:615–622.
166. Gomersall CD, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28:607–614.
167. Zhang X, et al. *Crit Care*. 2015;19(1):22.
168. Hasanin A, et al. *J Intensive Care*. 2017;5:24.
169. Clement RP, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2017;23:302–309.
170. Peyton PJ, Chong SW. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:1220–1235.
171. Hadian ML, et al. *Crit Care*. 2010;14(6):R212.
172. Yang XX, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112:70–77.
173. Monnet X, Teboul JL. *Crit Care*. 2017;21:147.

174. Heerdt PM, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2001;15:183–187.
175. Connors Jr AF, et al. *JAMA*. 1996;276:889–897.
176. Harvey S, et al. *Lancet*. 12;366(9484):472-477, 2005.
177. Reuter DA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(3):799–811.
178. Westerhof N, et al. *Med Biol Eng Comput*. 2009;47:131–141.
179. Drummond KE, Murphy E. *Crit Care and Pain*. 2012;12:5–10.
180. Pearse RM, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311(21):2181–2190.
181. Osawa EA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(4):724–733.
182. Fagnoul D, et al. *Crit Care*. 2012;16:460.
183. De Pascale G, et al. *J Anesth*. 2017;31(4):545–551.
184. Mercado P, et al. *Crit Care*. 2017;9:21–136.
185. Wetterslev M, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42(8):1223–1233.
186. Gunn SR, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2006;32:1537–1546.
187. Squara P. *Crit Care*. 2014;18:579.
188. Chawla LS, et al. *Chest*. 2004;126:1891–1896.
189. Van Beest PA, et al. *Crit Care*. 2010;14:R219.
190. Marik PE, et al. *Chest*. 2008;134:172–178.
191. Michard F, Teboul JL. *Chest*. 2002;121:2000–2008.
192. Bentzer P, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;27(316):1298–1309.
193. Michard F, Teboul JL. *Crit Care*. 2000;4:282–289.
194. Mandeville JC, Colebourn CL. *Crit Care Res Pract*. 2012;2012:513480.
195. Vignon P, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;15(195):1022–1032.
196. Feissel M, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30:1834–1837.
197. Barbier C, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30:1740–1746.
198. Lammi MR, et al. *Chest*. 2015;148:919–926.
199. Marik PE. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:1920–1922.
200. Brahmer JR, et al. *J Clin Oncol*. 2018;36(17):1714–1768.
201. Gutierrez C, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(9):1402–1410.
202. Neelapu SS, et al. *Nat Rev Clin Oncol*. 2018;15(1):47–62.
203. Frankel HL, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43:2479–2502.
204. Díaz-Gómez JL, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45:1801–1804.
205. Milling Jr TJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:1764–1769.
206. Brass P, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;1:CD006962.
207. Brass P, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;1:CD011447.
208. Chittoodan S, et al. *Med Ultrason*. 2011;13(1):21–25.
209. Fragou M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39:1607–1612.
210. Saugel B, et al. *Crit Care*. 2017;21:225.
211. Gu WJ, et al. *Chest*. 2016;149:166–179.
212. Seto AH, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Interv*. 2015;8:283–291.
213. Kory PD, et al. *Chest*. 2011;139:538–542.
214. Levitov A, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:1206–1227.
215. Lichtenstein DA. *Ann Intensive Care*. 2014;4(1):1.
216. Bouhemad B, et al. *Crit Care*. 2007;11(1):205.
217. Ding W, et al. *Chest*. 2010;140:859–866.
218. Lichtenstein DA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(6):1231–1238.
219. Lichtenstein DA, et al. *Chest*. 2015;147:1659–1670.
220. Copetti R, et al. *Cardiovasc Ultrasound*. 2008;29(6):16.
221. Llamas-Álvarez AM, et al. *Chest*. 2017;151:374–382.
222. Spencer KT, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2013;26:567–581.
223. Melamed R, et al. *Chest*. 2009;135(6):1416–1420.
224. Jensen MB, et al. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21(9):700–707.
225. Via G, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2014;27:683.e1–683.e33.
226. Llamas-Álvarez AM, et al. *Chest*. 2017;152:1140–1150.
227. Soldatos T, et al. *Emerg Med J*. 2009;26:630–634.
228. Chatelon J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(12):e1255–e1257.
229. Atkinson PR, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2018;72:478–489.

References

1. Needham DM, Kamdar BB, Stevenson JE. Rehabilitation of mind and body after intensive care unit discharge: a step closer to recovery. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40(4):1340–1341.
2. Reisner-Senelar L. The birth of intensive care medicine: Bjorn Ibsen's records. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37(7):1084–1086.
3. Kelly FE, Fong K, Hirsch N, Nolan JP. Intensive care medicine is 60 years old: the history and future of the intensive care unit. *Clin Med (Lond)*. 2014;14(4):376–379.
4. Vincent JL. Critical care--where have we been and where are we going? *Crit Care*. 2013;17(suppl 1):S2.
5. Gregory GA, Kitterman JA, Phibbs RH, Tooley WH, Hamilton WK. Treatment of the idiopathic respiratory-distress syndrome with continuous positive airway pressure. *N Engl J Med*. 1971;284(24): 1333–1340.
6. Severinghaus JW. The invention and development of blood gas analysis apparatus. *Anesthesiology*. 2002;97(1):253–256.
7. Hanson 3rd CW, Durbin Jr CG, Maccioli GA, et al. The anesthesiologist in critical care medicine: past, present, and future. *Anesthesiology*. 2001;95(3):781–788.
8. McCunn M, Dutton RP, Dagal A, et al. Trauma, critical care, and emergency care anesthesiology: a new paradigm for the "Acute Care" anesthesiologist? *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(6):1668–1673.
9. ABA News 2017. *The American Board of Anesthesiology*. 2017.
10. Personal communication. *Society of Critical Care Anesthesiologists*. 2019.
11. Tung A, Apfelbaum JL. What is an acute care anesthesiologist? *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(6):1434–1435.
12. Murray MJ, Murray TM, Miller RD. Time has come for the acute care anesthesiologist. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(6):1436–1438.
13. Wunsch H, Angus DC, Harrison DA, et al. Variation in critical care services across North America and Western Europe. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36(10):2787–2793.e2781–e2789.
14. Prin M, Wunsch H. International comparisons of intensive care: informing outcomes and improving standards. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2012;18(6):700–706.
15. Wunsch H, Gershengorn HB, Cooke CR, et al. Use of intensive care services for medicare beneficiaries undergoing major surgical procedures. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(4):899–907.
16. Seymour CW, Iwashyna TJ, Ehlenbach WJ, Wunsch H, Cooke CR. Hospital-level variation in the use of intensive care. *Health Serv Res*. 2012;47(5):2060–2080.
17. Katz JN. Who belongs in the cardiac intensive care unit? *JAMA Cardiol*. 2017;2(1):45–46.
18. Pearse RM, Moreno RP, Bauer P, et al. Mortality after surgery in Europe: a 7 day cohort study. *Lancet*. 2012;380(9847):1059–1065.
19. Halpern NA, Pastores SM. Critical care medicine in the United States 2000-2005: an analysis of bed numbers, occupancy rates, payer mix, and costs. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(1):65–71.
20. Halpern NA, Goldman DA, Tan KS, Pastores SM. Trends in critical care beds and use among population groups and medicare and medicaid beneficiaries in the United States: 2000-2010. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(8):1490–1499.
21. Wallace DJ, Seymour CW, Kahn JM. Hospital-Level changes in adult ICU bed supply in the United States. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(1): e67–e76.
22. Gooch RA, Kahn JM. ICU bed supply, utilization, and health care spending: an example of demand elasticity. *JAMA*. 2014;311(6):567–568.
23. Chen LM, Render M, Sales A, Kennedy EH, Wiitala W, Hofer TP. Intensive care unit admitting patterns in the Veterans Affairs health care system. *Arch Intern Med*. 2012;172(16):1220–1226.
24. Stelfox HT, Hemmelgarn BR, Bagshaw SM, et al. Intensive care unit bed availability and outcomes for hospitalized patients with sudden clinical deterioration. *Arch Intern Med*. 2012;172(6):467–474.
25. Sakr Y, Moreira CL, Rhodes A, et al. The impact of hospital and ICU organizational factors on outcome in critically ill patients: results from the extended prevalence of infection in intensive care study. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(3):519–526.
26. Pronovost PJ, Angus DC, Dorman T, Robinson KA, Dremsizov TT, Young TL. Physician staffing patterns and clinical outcomes in critically ill patients: a systematic review. *JAMA*. 2002;288(17):2151–2162.
27. Lott JP, Iwashyna TJ, Christie JD, Asch DA, Kramer AA, Kahn JM. Critical illness outcomes in specialty versus general intensive care units. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2009;179(8):676–683.
28. Wilcox ME, Chong CA, Niven DJ, et al. Do intensivist staffing patterns influence hospital mortality following ICU admission? A systematic review and meta-analyses. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41(10):2253–2274.
29. Wise KR, Akopov VA, Williams Jr BR, Ido MS, Leeper Jr KV, Dressler DD. Hospitalists and intensivists in the medical ICU: a prospective observational study comparing mortality and length of stay between two staffing models. *J Hosp Med*. 2012;7(3):183–189.
30. Yoo EJ, Edwards JD, Dean ML, Dudley RA. Multidisciplinary critical care and intensivist staffing: results of a statewide survey and association with mortality. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2016;31(5):325–332.
31. Levy MM, Rapoport J, Lemeshow S, Chalfin DB, Phillips G, Danis M. Association between critical care physician management and patient mortality in the intensive care unit. *Ann Intern Med*. 2008;148(11):801–809.
32. Dimick JB, Pronovost PJ, Heitmiller RF, Lipsett PA. Intensive care unit physician staffing is associated with decreased length of stay, hospital cost, and complications after esophageal resection. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29(4):753–758.
33. Pronovost PJ, Jenckes MW, Dorman T, et al. Organizational characteristics of intensive care units related to outcomes of abdominal aortic surgery. *JAMA*. 1999;281(14):1310–1317.
34. Costa DK, Wallace DJ, Kahn JM. The association between daytime intensivist physician staffing and mortality in the context of other ICU organizational practices: a multicenter cohort study. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(11):2275–2282.
35. Valentin A, Ferdinande P. Recommendations on basic requirements for intensive care units: structural and organizational aspects. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37(10):1575–1587.
36. Kerlin MP, Adhikari NK, Rose L, et al. An official American Thoracic Society systematic review: the effect of nighttime intensivist staffing on mortality and length of stay among intensive care unit patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;195(3):383–393.
37. Kerlin MP, Harhay MO, Kahn JM, Halpern SD. Nighttime intensivist staffing, mortality, and limits on life support: a retrospective cohort study. *Chest*. 2015;147(4):951–958.
38. Kerlin MP, Small DS, Cooney E, et al. A randomized trial of nighttime physician staffing in an intensive care unit. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368(23):2201–2209.
39. Wallace DJ, Angus DC, Barnato AE, Kramer AA, Kahn JM. Nighttime intensivist staffing and mortality among critically ill patients. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;366(22):2093–2101.
40. Gajic O, Afessa B, Hanson AC, et al. Effect of 24-hour mandatory versus on-demand critical care specialist presence on quality of care and family and provider satisfaction in the intensive care unit of a teaching hospital. *Crit Care Med*. 2008;36(1):36–44.
41. Lilly CM. ICU physician staffing: what else do we need to know? *Chest*. 2015;147(4):867–868.
42. Sabov M, Daniels CE. The value of 24/7 in-house ICU staffing 24/7 intensivist in the ICU. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(1):149–151.
43. Garland A, Gershengorn HB. Staffing in ICUs: physicians and alternative staffing models. *Chest*. 2013;143(1):214–221.
44. Gershengorn HB, Wunsch H, Wahab R, et al. Impact of nonphysician staffing on outcomes in a medical ICU. *Chest*. 2011;139(6):1347–1353.
45. Hoffman LA, Tasota FJ, Zullo TG, Scharfenberg C, Donahoe MP. Outcomes of care managed by an acute care nurse practitioner/attending physician team in a subacute medical intensive care unit. *Am J Crit Care*. 2005;14(2):121–130; quiz 131-122.
46. Costa DK, Wallace DJ, Barnato AE, Kahn JM. Nurse practitioner/physician assistant staffing and critical care mortality. *Chest*. 2014;146(6):1566–1573.
47. Hoffman LA, Happ MB, Scharfenberg C, DiVirgilio-Thomas D, Tasota FJ. Perceptions of physicians, nurses, and respiratory therapists about the role of acute care nurse practitioners. *Am J Crit Care*. 2004;13(6):480–488.
48. Kim MM, Barnato AE, Angus DC, Fleisher LA, Kahn JM. The effect of multidisciplinary care teams on intensive care unit mortality. *Arch Intern Med*. 2010;170(4):369–376.
49. Donovan AL, Aldrich JM, Gross AK, et al. Interprofessional care and teamwork in the ICU. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(6):980–990.
50. The Leapfrog Group Survey. 2018; http://leapfroggroup.org/survey. Accessed 08/27/2018.
51. Weled BJ, Adzhigirey LA, Hodgman TM, et al. Critical care delivery: the importance of process of care and ICU structure to improved outcomes: an update from the American College of Critical Care Medicine task force on models of critical care. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(7): 1520–1525.

52. Nates JL, Nunnally M, Kleinpell R, et al. ICU admission, discharge, and triage guidelines: a framework to enhance clinical operations, development of institutional policies, and further research. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(8):1553–1602.
53. Andre A St. The formation, elements of success, and challenges in managing a critical care program: part I. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(4):874–879.
54. Andre A St. The formation, elements of success, and challenges in managing a critical care program: part II. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(5):1096–1101.
55. Leung S, Gregg SR, Coopersmith CM, et al. Critical care organizations: business of critical care and value/performance building. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(1):1–11.
56. Moore JE, Oropello JM, Stoltzfus D, et al. Critical care organizations: building and integrating academic programs. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(4):e334–e341.
57. Bosslet GT, Pope TM, Rubenfeld GD, et al. An official ATS/AACN/ACCP/ESICM/SCCM policy statement: responding to requests for potentially inappropriate treatments in intensive care units. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2015;191(11):1318–1330.
58. Wunsch H, Gershengorn H, Scales DC. Economics of ICU organization and management. *Crit Care Clin*. 2012;28(1):25–37, v.
59. Devlin JW, Skrobik Y, Gelinas C, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention and management of pain, agitation/sedation, delirium, immobility, and sleep disruption in adult patients in the ICU. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(9):e825–e873.
60. Ely EW. The ABCDEF bundle: science and philosophy of how ICU liberation serves patients and families. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(2): 321–330.
61. Rhodes A, Moreno RP, Azoulay E, et al. Prospectively defined indicators to improve the safety and quality of care for critically ill patients: a report from the Task Force on Safety and Quality of the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine (ESICM). *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38(4):598–605.
62. Davidson JE, Aslakson RA, Long AC, et al. Guidelines for family-centered care in the neonatal, pediatric, and adult ICU. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45(1):103–128.
63. Murphy DJ, Ogbu OC, Coopersmith CM. ICU director data: using data to assess value, inform local change, and relate to the external world. *Chest*. 2015;147(4):1168–1178.
64. Ranieri VM, Rubenfeld GD, Thompson BT, et al. Acute respiratory distress syndrome: the Berlin definition. *JAMA*. 2012;307:2526–2533.
65. Gattinoni L, Marini JJ, Pesenti A, Quintel M, Mancebo J, Brochard L. The "baby lung" became an adult. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42:663–673.
66. Brower RG, Matthay MA, Morris A, et al. Ventilation with lower tidal volumes as compared with traditional tidal volumes for acute lung injury and the acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2000;342:1301–1308.
67. Fan E, Needham DM, Stewart TE. Ventilatory management of acute lung injury and acute respiratory distress syndrome. *JAMA*. 2005;294:2889–2896.
68. Needham DM, Colantuoni E, Mendez-Tellez PA, et al. Lung protective mechanical ventilation and two year survival in patients with acute lung injury: prospective cohort study. *BMJ*. 2012;344:e2124.
69. Fan E, Brodie D, Slutsky AS. Acute respiratory distress syndrome: advances in diagnosis and treatment. *JAMA*. 2018;319:698–710.
70. Serpa Neto A, Cardoso SO, Manetta JA, et al. Association between use of lung-protective ventilation with lower tidal volumes and clinical outcomes among patients without acute respiratory distress syndrome: a meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2012;308:1651–1659.
71. Nin N, Muriel A, Peñuelas O, et al. Severe hypercapnia and outcome of mechanically ventilated patients with moderate or severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Intensive Care Med*. 2017;43:200–208.
72. Laserna E, Sibila O, Aguilar PR, et al. Hypocapnia and hypercapnia are predictors for ICU admission and mortality in hospitalized patients with community-acquired pneumonia. *Chest*. 2012;142:1193–1199.
73. Laffey JG, Tanaka M, Engelberts D, et al. Therapeutic hypercapnia reduces pulmonary and systemic injury following in vivo lung reperfusion. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2000;162:2287–2294.
74. Broccard AF, Hotchkiss JR, Vannay C, et al. Protective effects of hypercapnic acidosis on ventilator-induced lung injury. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2001;164:802–806.
75. Mekontso Dessap A, Charron C, Devaquet J, et al. Impact of acute hypercapnia and augmented positive end-expiratory pressure on right ventricle function in severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35:1850–1858.
76. Fanelli V, Ranieri MV, Mancebo J, et al. Feasibility and safety of low-flow extracorporeal carbon dioxide removal to facilitate ultra-protective ventilation in patients with moderate acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Crit Care*. 2016;20:36.
77. Morelli A, Del Sorbo L, Pesenti A, Ranieri VM, Fan E. Extracorporeal carbon dioxide removal (ECCO2R) in patients with acute respiratory failure. *Intensive Care Med*. 2017;43:519–530.
78. Curley GF, Laffey JG, Zhang H, Slutsky AS. Biotrauma and ventilator-induced lung injury: clinical implications. *Chest*. 2016;150:1109–1117.
79. Chacko B, Peter JV, Tharyan P, John G, Jeyaseelan L. Pressure-controlled versus volume-controlled ventilation for acute respiratory failure due to acute lung injury (ALI) or acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;1:CD008807.
80. Habashi NM. Other approaches to open-lung ventilation: airway pressure release ventilation. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33:S228–S240.
81. Andrews P, Shiber JR, Jaruga-Killeen E, et al. Early application of airway pressure release ventilation may reduce mortality in high-risk trauma patients: a systematic review of observational trauma ARDS literature. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2013;75:635–641.
82. Daoud EG, Farag HL, Chatburn RL. Airway pressure release ventilation: what do we know? *Respir Care*. 2012;57:282–292.
83. Mireles-Cabodevila E, Kacmarek RM. Should airway pressure release ventilation be the primary mode in ARDS? *Respir Care*. 2016;61:761–773.
84. Young D, Lamb SE, Shah S, et al. High-frequency oscillation for acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:806–813.
85. Ferguson ND, Cook DJ, Guyatt GH, et al. OSCILLATE trial investigators; Canadian critical care trials group: high-frequency oscillation in early acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:795–805.
86. Sud S, Sud M, Friedrich JO, et al. High-frequency oscillatory ventilation versus conventional ventilation for acuterespiratory distress syndrome. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;4:CD004085.
87. Webb HH, Tierney DF. Experimental pulmonary edema due to intermittent positive pressure ventilation with high inflation pressures: protection by positive pressures end-expiratory pressure. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1974;110:556–565.
88. Brower RG, Lanken PN, MacIntyre N, et al. Higher versus lower positive end-expiratory pressures in patients with the acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;351:327–336.
89. Mercat A, Richard JC, Vielle B, et al. Positive end-expiratory pressure setting in adults with acute lung injury and acute respiratory distress syndrome: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2008;299:646–655.
90. Santa Cruz R, Rojas JI, Nervi R, Heredia R, Ciapponi A. High versus low positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) levels for mechanically ventilated adult patients with acute lung injury and acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;6:CD009098.
91. Akoumianaki E, Maggiore SM, Valenza F, et al. PLUG Working Group (Acute Respiratory Failure Section of the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine): the application of esophageal pressure measurement in patients with respiratory failure. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;189:520–531.
92. Gulati G, Novero A, Loring SH, Talmor D. Pleural pressure and optimal positive end-expiratory pressure based on esophageal pressure versus chest wall elastance: incompatible results. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41:1951–1957.
93. Talmor D, Sarge T, Malhotra A, et al. Mechanical ventilation guided by esophageal pressure in acute lung injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2008;359:2095–2104.
94. Grasso S, Terragni P, Birocco A, et al. ECMO criteria for influenza A (H1N1)–associated ARDS: role of transpulmonary pressure. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38:395–403.
95. Talmor D, Sarge T, O'Donnell CR, et al. Esophageal and transpulmonary pressures in acute respiratory failure. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1389–1394.
96. Hess Dean R. Recruitment maneuvers and PEEP titration. *Respir Care*. 2015;60(11):1688–1704.
97. Briel M, Meade M, Mercat A, et al. Higher vs lower positive end-expiratory pressure in patients with acute lung injury and acute respiratory distress syndrome: systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2010;303(9):865–873. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2010.218.

98. Hodgson C, Goligher EC, Young ME, et al. Recruitment manoeuvres for adults with acute respiratory distress syndrome receiving mechanical ventilation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;11:CD006667.
99. Cavalcanti AB, Suzumura EA, Laranjeira L, et al. Effect of lung recruitment and titrated positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) vs low PEEP on mortality in patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome. *JAMA*. 2017;318(14):1335–1345.
100. Kacmarek RM, Villar J, Sulemanji D, et al. Open lung approach for the acute respiratory distress syndrome: a pilot, randomized controlled trial. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(1):32–42.
101. Fan E, Checkley W, Stewart TE, et al. Complications from recruitment maneuvers in patients with acute lung injury: secondary analysis from the lung open ventilation study. *Respir Care*. 2012;57(11):1842–1849.
102. Scholten EL, Beitler JR, Prisk GK, Malhotra A. Treatment of ARDS with prone positioning. *Chest*. 2017;151:215–224.
103. Guerin C, Reignier J, Richard JC, et al. Prone positioning in severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:2159–2168.
104. Lee JM, Bae W, Lee YJ, Cho YJ. The efficacy and safety of prone positional ventilation in acute respiratory distress syndrome: updated study-level meta-analysis of 11 randomized controlled trials. *Crit Care Med*. 2014;42:1252–1262.
105. Mascheroni D, Kolobow T, Fumagalli R, Moretti MP, Chen V, Buckhold D. Acute respiratory failure following pharmacologically induced hyperventilation: an experimental animal study. *Intensive Care Med*. 1988;15:8–14.
106. Yoshida T, Uchiyama A, Matsuura N, Mashimo T, Fujino Y. The comparison of spontaneous breathing and muscle paralysis in two different severities of experimental lung injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2013;41:536–545.
107. [AZA*] Fanelli V, Morita Y, Cappello P, et al. Neuromuscular blocking agent cisatracurium attenuates lung injury by inhibition of nicotinic acetylcholine receptor-α1. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124(1):132–140.
108. Sottile PD, Kiser TH, Burnham EL, et al. An observational study of the efficacy of cisatracurium compared with vecuronium in patients with or at risk for acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;197(7):897–904.
109. Papazian L, Forel JM, Gacouin A, et al. Neuromuscular blockers in early acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363:1107–1116.
110. Moss M, Huang DT, Brower RG, et al. Early neuromuscular blockade in the acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2019;380(21):1997–2008.
111. Vital FM, Ladeira MT, Atallah AN. Non-invasive positive pressure ventilation (CPAP or bilevel NPPV) for cardiogenic pulmonary oedema. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;(5):CD005351.
112. Osadnik CR, Tee VS, Carson-Chahhoud KV, Picot J, Wedzicha JA, Smith BJ. Non-invasive ventilation for the management of acute hypercapnic respiratory failure due to exacerbation of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;7:CD004104.
113. Delclaux C, L'Her E, Alberti C, et al. Treatment of acute hypoxemic nonhypercapnic respiratory insufficiency with continuous positive airway pressure delivered by a face mask: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2000;284:2352–2360.
114. Frat JP, Thille AW, Mercat A, et al. FLORALI Study Group: REVA Network. High-flow oxygen through nasal cannula in acute hypoxemic respiratory failure. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372:2185–2196.
115. Ni YN, Luo J, Yu H, et al. Can high-flow nasal cannula reduce the rate of endotracheal intubation in adult patients with acute respiratory failure compared with conventional oxygen therapy and noninvasive positive pressure ventilation?: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Chest*. 2017;151:764–775.
116. Azoulay E, Lemiale V, Mokart D, et al. Effect of high-flow nasal oxygen vs standard oxygen on 28-day mortality in immunocompromised patients with acute respiratory failure: the high randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2018;320(20):2099–2107.
117. Munshi L, Walkey A, Goligher E, Pham T, Uleryk EM, Fan E. Venovenous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for acute respiratory distress syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2019;7(2):163–172.
118. Antebi B, Mohammadipoor A, Batchinsky AI, Cancio LC. The promise of mesenchymal stem cell therapy for acute respiratory distress syndrome. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2018;84(1):183–191.
119. Chanques G, Sebbane M, Barbutt E, et al. A prospective study of pain at rest: incidence and characteristics of an unrecognized symptom in surgical and trauma versus medical intensive care unit patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2007;107:858–860.
120. Ouimet S, Kavangh BP, Gottfried SB, et al. Incidence, risk factors and consequences of ICU delirium. *Intensive Care Med*. 2007;33:66–73.
121. Devlin JW, Skrobik Y, Gélinas C, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention and management of pain, agitation/sedation, delirium, immobility, and sleep disruption in adult patients in the ICU. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46:e825–e873.
122. Shehabi Y, Bellomo R, Reade MC, et al. Sedation Practice in Intensive Care Evaluation (SPICE) Study Investigators; ANZICS Clinical Trials Group: early intensive care sedation predicts long term mortality in ventilated critically ill patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2012;186:724–731.
123. Ely EW, Truman B, Shintani A, et al. Monitoring sedation status over time in ICU patients: reliability and validity of the Richmond Agitation-Sedation Scale (RASS). *JAMA*. 2003;289:2983–2991.
124. Riker RR, Fraser GL, Simmons LE, et al. Validating the sedation-agitation scale with bispectral index and visual analog scale in adult ICU patients after cardiac surgery. *Intensiv Care Med*. 2001;27:853–858.
125. Strom T, Martinussen T, Toft P. A protocol of no sedation for critically ill patients receiving mechanical ventilation: a randomised trial. *Lancet*. 2010;375:475–480.
126. Martyn J, Mao J, Bittner E. Opioid tolerance in critical illness. *NEJM*. 2019;380:365–378.
127. Pandharipande PP, Pun BT, Herr DL, et al. Effect of sedation with dexmedetomidine vs lorazepam on acute brain dysfunction in mechanically ventilated patients: the MENDS randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*. 2007;298:2644–2653.
128. Riker RR, Shehabi Y, Bokesch PM, et al. Dexmedetomidine vs midazolam for sedation of critically ill patients: a randomized trial. *JAMA*. 2009;301:489–499.
129. Hall RI, Sandham D, Cardinal R, et al. Propofol vs midazolam for ICU sedation: a Canadian multicenter randomized trial. *Chest*. 2001;119:1151–1159.
130. Carson SS, Kress JP, Rodgers JE, et al. A randomized trial of intermittent lorazepam versus propofol with daily interruption in mechanically ventilated patients. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1326–1332.
131. Krajčová A, Waldauf P, Anděl M, Duška F. Propofol infusion syndrome: a structured review of experimental studies and 153 published case reports. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:398.
132. Jakob SM, Ruokonen E, Grounds RM, et al. Dexmedetomidine vs midazolam or propofol for sedation during prolonged mechanical ventilation: two randomized controlled trials. *JAMA*. 2012;307:1151–1160.
133. Skrobik Y, Duprey MS, Hill NS, Devlin JW. Low-dose nocturnal dexmedetomidine prevents ICU delirium. A randomized, placebo-controlled trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;197:1147–1156.
134. Van den Boogaard M, Slooter AJC, Brüggemann RJM, et al. Effect of haloperidol on survival among critically ill adults with a high risk of delirium: the reduce randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2018;319(7):680–690.
135. Tomichek JE, Stollings JL, Pandharipande PP, et al. Antipsychotic prescribing patterns during and after critical illness: a prospective cohort study. *Crit Care*. 2016;20:378.
136. Angus DC, Linde-Zwirble WT, Lidicker J, et al. Epidemiology of severe sepsis in the United States: analysis of incidence, outcome, and associated costs of care. *Crit Care Med*. 2001;29:1303–1310.
137. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Sepsis.https://www.cdc.gov/sepsis/datareports/index.html.
138. Singer M, Deutschman CS, Seymour CW, et al. The Third International Consensus definitions for sepsis and septic shock (Sepsis-3). *JAMA*. 2016;315(8):801–810.
139. Kaukonen KM, Bailey M, Pilcher D, Cooper DJ, Bellomo R. Systemic inflammatory response syndrome criteria in defining severe sepsis. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;372(17):1629–1638.
140. Gupta S, Sakhuja A, Kumar G, McGrath E, Nanchal RS, Kashani KB. Culture-negative severe sepsis: nationwide trends and outcomes. *Chest*. 2016;150(6):1251.
141. Arulkumaran N, Deutschman CS, Pinsky MR, et al. Mitochondrial function in sepsis. *Shock*. 2016;45(3):271–281.

142. Rhodes A, Evans LE, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock: 2016. *Intensive Care Med*. 2017;43(3):304–377.
143. Levy MM, Evans LE, Rhodes A. The surviving sepsis campaign bundle: 2018 update. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(6):997–1000.
144. Rivers E, Nguyen B, Havstad S, et al. Early goal-directed therapy in the treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2001;345:1368–1377.
145. Rowan KM, Angus DC, Bailey M, et al. Early, goal-directed therapy for septic shock - a patient-level meta-analysis. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(23):2223–2234.
146. Yealy DM, Kellum JA, Huang DT, et al. A randomized trial of protocol-based care for early septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370: 1683–1693.
147. Peake SL, Delaney A, Bailey M, et al. Goal-directed resuscitation for patients with early septic shock. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;371:1496–1506.
148. Rowan KM, Angus DC, Bailey M, et al. Early, goal-directed therapy for septic shock - a patient-level meta-analysis. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:2223–2234.
149. Payen D, de Pont AC, Sakr Y, Spies C, Reinhart K, Vincent JL. Sepsis Occurrence in Acutely Ill Patients (SOAP) investigators: a positive fluid balance is associated with a worse outcome in patients with acute renal failure. *Crit Care*. 2008;12:R74.
150. Boyd JH, Forbes J, Nakada TA, et al. Fluid resuscitation in septic shock: a positive fluid balance and elevated central venous pressure are associated with increased mortality. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(2):259–265.
151. Wiedemann HP, Wheeler AP, Bernard GR, et al. Comparison of two fluid-management strategies in acute lung injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;354:2564–2575.
152. Hjortrup PB, Haase N, Bundgaard H, et al. CLASSIC trial group; Scandinavian critical care trials group: restricting volumes of resuscitation fluid in adults with septic shock after initial management: the CLASSIC randomised, parallel-group, multicentre feasibility trial. *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42:1695–1705.
153. Maitland K, Kiguli S, Opoka RO, et al. Mortality after fluid bolus in African children with severe infection. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:2483–2495.
154. Maitland K, George EC, Evans JA, et al. FEAST trial group: exploring mechanisms of excess mortality with early fluid resuscitation: insights from the FEAST trial. *BMC Med*. 2013;11:68.
155. Andrews B, Semler MW, Muchemwa L, et al. Effect of an early resuscitation protocol on in-hospital mortality among adults with sepsis and hypotension: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2017;318:1233–1240.
156. Rhodes A, Evans LE, Alhazzani W, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign: international guidelines for management of sepsis and septic shock: 2016. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45:486–552.
157. Prowle JR, Liu YL, Licari E, et al. Oliguria as predictive biomarker of acute kidney injury in critically ill patients. *Crit Care*. 2011;9(15):R172.
158. Paratz JD, Stockton K, Paratz ED, et al. Burn resuscitation—hourly urine output versus alternative endpoints: a systematic review. *Shock*. 2014;42:295–306.
159. Jin K, Muruga R, Sileanu FE, et al. Intensive monitoring of urine output is associated with increased detection of acute kindey injury and improved outcomes. *Chest*. 2017;152:972–979.
160. Brotfain E, Klein Y, Toledano R, et al. Urine flow rate monitoring in hypovolemic multiple trauma patients. *World J Emerg Surg*. 2017;12:41.
161. Suetrong B, Walley KR. Lactic acidosis in sepsis: it's not all anaerobic: implications for diagnosis and management. *Chest*. 2016;149:252–261.
162. Berend K. Diagnostic use of base excess in acid-base disorders. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:1419–1428.
163. [Q#[Mutschler M, Nienaber U, Brockamp T, et al. Renaissance of base deficit for the initial assessment of trauma patients: a base deficit-based classification for hypovolemic shock developed on data from 16,305 patients derived from the TraumaRegister DGU®. *Crit Care*. 2013;17:R42.
164. Crookes BA, Cohn SM, Bloch S, et al. Can near-infrared spectroscopy identify the severity of shock in trauma patients? *J Trauma*. 2005;58(4):806–813.
165. Yu M, Chapital A, Ho HC, Wang J, Takanishi Jr D. A prospective randomized trial comparing oxygen delivery versus transcutaneous pressure of oxygen values as resuscitative goals. *Shock*. 2007;27:615–622.
166. Gomersall CD, Joynt GM, Freebairn RC, Hung V, Buckley TA, Oh T. Resuscitation of critically ill patients based on the results of gastric tonometry: a prospective, randomized, controlled trial. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28:607–614.
167. Zhang X, Xuan W, Yin P, Wang L, Wu X, Wu Q. Gastric tonometry guided therapy in critical care patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Crit Care*. 2015;19(1):22.
168. Hasanin A, Mukhtar A, Nassar H. Perfusion indices revisited. *J Intensive Care*. 2017;5:24.
169. Clement RP, Vos JJ, Scheeren TWL. Minimally invasive cardiac output technologies in the ICU: putting it all together. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2017;23:302–309.
170. Peyton PJ, Chong SW. Minimally invasive measurement of cardiac output during surgery and critical care: a meta-analysis of accuracy and precision. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:1220–1235.
171. Hadian M, Kim HK, Severyn DA, Pinsky MR. Cross-comparison of cardiac output trending accuracy of LiDCO, PiCCO, FloTrac and pulmonary artery catheters. *Crit Care*. 2010;14(6):R212.
172. Yang XX, Critchley LA, Joynt GM. Determination of the precision error of the pulmonary artery thermodilution catheter using an in vitro continuous flow test rig. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;112: 70–77.
173. Monnet X, Teboul JL. Transpulmonary thermodilution: advantages and limits. *Crit Care*. 2017;21:147.
174. Heerdt PM, Blessios GA, Beach ML, Hogue CW. Flow dependency of error in thermodilution measurement of cardiac output during acute tricuspid regurgitation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2001;15:183–187.
175. Connors Jr AF, Speroff T, Dawson NV, et al. The effectiveness of right heart catheterization in the initial care of critically ill patients. Support investigators. *JAMA*. 1996;276:889–897.
176. Harvey S, Harrison DA, Singer M, et al. PAC-Man study collaboration. Assessment of the clinical effectiveness of pulmonary artery catheters in management of patients in intensive care (PAC-Man): a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2005;12(9484): 366. 472-7.
177. Reuter DA, Huang C, Edrich T, Shernan SK, Eltzschig HK. Cardiac output monitoring using indicator-dilution techniques: basics, limits, and perspectives. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110(3):799–811.
178. Westerhof N, Lankhaar JW, Westerhof BE. The arterial Windkessel. *Med Biol Eng Comput*. 2009;47:131–141.
179. Drummond KE, Murphy E. Minimally invasive cardiac output monitors, BJA continuing education in anaesthesia. *Crit Care & Pain*. 2012;12:5–10.
180. [AAA#] Pearse RM, Harrison DA, MacDonald N, et al. Effect of a perioperative, cardiac output-guided hemodynamic therapy algorithm on outcomes following major gastrointestinal surgery: a randomized clinical trial and systematic review. *JAMA*. 2014;311(21):2181–2190.
181. [AAB#] Osawa EA, Rhodes A, Landoni G, et al. Effect of perioperative goal-directed hemodynamic resuscitation therapy on outcomes following cardiac surgery: a randomized clinical trial and systematic review. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(4):724–733.
182. Fagnoul D, Vincent JL, Backer de D. Cardiac output measurements using the bioreactance technique in critically ill patients. *Crit Care*. 2012;16:460.
183. De Pascale G, Singer M, Brealey D. Comparison of stroke volume measurement between non-invasive bioreactance and esophageal Doppler in patients undergoing major abdominal-pelvic surgery. *J Anesth*. 2017;31(4):545–551.
184. Mercado P, Maizel J, Beyls C, et al. Transthoracic echocardiography: an accurate and precise method for estimating cardiac output in the critically ill patient. *Crit Care*. 2017;9:21–136.
185. Wetterslev M, Møller-Sørensen H, Johansen RR, Perner A. Systematic review of cardiac output measurements by echocardiography vs. thermodilution: the techniques are not interchangeable, *Intensive Care Med*. 2016;42(8):1223–1233.
186. Gunn SR, Kim HK, Harrigan PW, Pinsky MR. Ability of pulse contour and esophageal Doppler to estimate rapid changes in stroke volume. *Intensive Care Med*. 2006;32:1537–1546.

187. Squara P. Central venous oxygenation: when physiology explains apparent discrepancies. *Crit Care*. 2014;18:579.
188. Chawla LS, Zia H, Gutierrez G, Katz NM, Seneff MG, Shah M. Lack of equivalence between central and mixed venous oxygen saturation. *Chest*. 2004;126:1891–1896.
189. Van Beest PA, van Ingen J, Boerma EC, et al. No agreement of mixed venous and central venous saturation in sepsis, independent of sepsis origin. *Crit Care*. 2010;14:R219.
190. Marik PE, Baram M, Vahid B. Does central venous pressure predict fluid responsiveness? a systematic review of the literature and the tale of seven mares. *Chest*. 2008;134:172–178.
191. Michard F, Teboul JL. Predicting fluid responsiveness in ICU patients: a critical analysis of the evidence. *Chest*. 2002;121: 2000–2008.
192. Bentzer P, Griesdale DE, Boyd J, MacLean K, Sirounis D, Ayas NT. Will this hemodynamically unstable patient respond to a bolus of intravenous fluids? *JAMA*. 2016;27(316):1298–1309.
193. Michard F, Teboul JL. Using heart-lung interactions to assess fluid responsiveness during mechanical ventilation. *Crit Care*. 2000;4:282–289.
194. Mandeville JC, Colebourn CL. Can transthoracic echocardiography be used to predict fluid responsiveness in the critically ill patient? A systematic review. *Crit Care Res Pract*. 2012;513480: 2012.
195. Vignon P, Repessé X, Bégot E, et al. Comparison of echocardiographic indices used to predict fluid responsiveness in ventilated patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2017;15(195):1022–1032.
196. Feissel M, Michard F, Faller JP, Teboul JL. The respiratory variation in inferior vena cava diameter as a guide to fluid therapy. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30:1834–1837.
197. Barbier C, Loubières Y, Schmit C, et al. Respiratory changes in inferior vena cava diameter are helpful in predicting fluid responsiveness in ventilated septic patients. *Intensive Care Med*. 2004;30:1740–1746.
198. Lammi MR, Aiello B, Burg GT, et al. National heart, lung, and blood institute ARDS network investigators: response to fluid boluses in the fluid and catheter treatment trial. *Chest*. 2015;148:919–926.
199. Marik PE. Fluid responsiveness and the six guiding principles of fluid resuscitation. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:1920–1922.
200. Brahmer JR, Lacchetti C, Schneider BJ, et al. National Comprehensive Cancer Network. Management of immune-related adverse events in patients treated with immune checkpoint inhibitor therapy: American Society of Clinical Oncology Clinical Practice guideline. *J Clin Oncol*. 2018;36(17):1714–1768.
201. Gutierrez C, McEvoy C, Mead E, et al. Management of the critically ill adult chimeric antigen receptor-T cell therapy patient: a critical care perspective. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46(9):1402–1410. https://doi.org/10.1097/CCM.0000000000003258.
202. Neelapu SS, Tummala S, Kebriaei P, et al. Chimeric antigen receptor T-cell therapy - assessment and management of toxicities. *Nat Rev Clin Oncol*. 2018;15(1):47–62.
203. Frankel HL, Kirkpatrick AW, Elbarbary M, et al. Guidelines for the appropriate use of bedside general and cardiac ultrasonography in the evaluation of critically ill patients-part I: general ultrasonography. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43:2479–2502.
204. Díaz-Gómez JL, Frankel HL, Hernandez A. National certification in critical care echocardiography: its time has come. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45:1801–1804.
205. Milling TJ Jr, Rose J, Briggs WM, et al. Randomized, controlled clinical trial of point-of-care limited ultrasonography assistance of central venous cannulation: the Third Sonography Outcomes Assessment Program (SOAP-3) Trial, *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(8):1764–1769.
206. Brass P, Hellmich M, Kolodziej L, Schick G, Smith AF. Ultrasound guidance versus anatomical landmarks for internal jugular vein catheterization. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;1:CD006962.
207. Brass P, Hellmich M, Kolodziej L, Schick G, Smith AF. Ultrasound guidance versus anatomical landmarks for subclavian or femoral vein catheterization. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015;1:CD011447.
208. Chittoodan S, Breen D, O'Donnell BD, Iohom G. Long versus short axis ultrasound guided approach for internal jugular vein cannulation: a prospective randomised controlled trial. *Med Ultrason*. 2011;13(1):21–25.
209. Fragou M, Gravvanis A, Dimitriou V, et al. Real-time ultrasound-guided subclavian vein cannulation versus the landmark method in critical care patients: a prospective randomized study. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39:1607–1612.
210. Saugel B, Scheeren TWL, Teboul JL. Ultrasound-guided central venous catheter placement: a structured review and recommendations for clinical practice. *Crit Care*. 2017;21:225.
211. Gu WJ, Wu XD, Wang F, Ma ZL, Gu XP. Ultrasound guidance facilitates radial artery catheterization: a meta-analysis with trial sequential analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Chest*. 2016;149:166–179.
212. Seto AH, Roberts JS, Abu-Fadel MS, et al. Real-time ultrasound guidance facilitates transradial access: RAUST (Radial Artery access with Ultrasound Trial). *JACC Cardiovasc Interv*. 2015;8:283–291.
213. Kory PD, Pellecchia CM, Shiloh AL, Mayo PH, DiBello C, Koenig S. Accuracy of ultrasonography performed by critical care physicians for the diagnosis of DVT. *Chest*. 2011;139:538–542.
214. Levitov A, Frankel HL, Blaivas M, et al. Guidelines for the appropriate use of bedside general and cardiac ultrasonography in the evaluation of critically ill patients-part II: cardiac ultrasonography. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:1206–1227.
215. Lichtenstein DA. Lung ultrasound in the critically ill. *Ann Intensive Care*. 2014;4(1):1.
216. Bouhemad B, Zhang M, Lu Q, Rouby JJ. Clinical review: bedside lung ultrasound in critical care practice. *Crit Care*. 2007;11(1):205.
217. Ding W, Shen Y, Yang J, He X, Zhang M. Diagnosis of pneumothorax by radiography and ultrasonography: a meta-analysis. *Chest*. 2010;140:859–866.
218. Lichtenstein DA, Mezière G, Lascols N, et al. Ultrasound diagnosis of occult pneumothorax. *Crit Care Med*. 2005;33(6): 1231–1238.
219. Lichtenstein DA. BLUE-protocol and FALLS-protocol: two applications of lung ultrasound in the critically ill. *Chest*. 2015;147:1659–1670.
220. Copetti R, Soldati G, Copetti P. Chest sonography: a useful tool to differentiate acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema from acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Cardiovasc Ultrasound*. 2008;29(6):16.
221. Llamas-Álvarez AM, Tenza-Lozano EM, Latour-Pérez J. Accuracy of lung ultrasonography in the diagnosis of pneumonia in adults: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Chest*. 2017;151:374–382.
222. Spencer KT, Kimura BJ, Korcarz CE, Pellikka PA, Rahko PS, Siegel RJ. Focused cardiac ultrasound: recommendations from the American Society of Echocardiography. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2013;26:567–581.
223. Melamed R, Sprenkle MD, Ulstad VK, Herzog CA, Leatherman JW. Assessment of left ventricular function by intensivists using hand-held echocardiography. *Chest*. 2009;135(6):1416–1420.
224. Jensen MB, Sloth E, Larsen KM, Schmidt MB. Transthoracic echocardiography for cardiopulmonary monitoring in intensive care. *Eur J Anaesthesiol*. 2004;21(9):700–707.
225. Via G, Hussain A, Wells M, et al. International Liaison Committee on Focused Cardiac UltraSound (ILC-FoCUS); International Conference on Focused Cardiac UltraSound (IC-FoCUS). International evidence-based recommendations for focused cardiac ultrasound. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2014;27:683.e1-683.e33.
226. Llamas-Álvarez AM, Tenza-Lozano EM, Latour-Pérez J. Diaphragm and lung ultrasound to predict weaning outcome: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Chest*. 2017;152:1140–1150.
227. Soldatos T, Chatzimichail K, Papathanasiou M, Gouliamos A. Optic nerve sonography: a new window for the non-invasive evaluation of intracranial pressure in brain injury. *Emerg Med J*. 2009;26:630–634.
228. Chatelon J, Bourillon C, Darmon H, et al. Feasibility and predictive value of ultrasound assessment of the gastric residual volume in surgical critically ill patients: a pilot study. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(12):e1255–e1257.
229. Atkinson PR, Milne J, Diegelmann L, et al. Does point-of-care ultrasonography improve clinical outcomes in emergency department patients with undifferentiated hypotension? An international randomized controlled trial from the SHoC-ED investigators. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2018;72:478–489.

84 Neurocritical Care

NERISSA U. KO and KRISTIN ENGELHARD

KEY POINTS

- Critical care of the nervous system is based on control of cerebral and spinal cord physiology and the prevention of secondary insults. This goal, in turn, depends on the comprehensive maintenance and adequacy of physiologic parameters and organ function.
- Cerebral function is critically dependent on oxygen delivery matching metabolism.
- Increased intracranial volume beyond the capacity of compensatory mechanisms increases intracranial pressure (ICP) and may diminish perfusion adversely. The resulting cellular energy failure both initiates and propagates edema and inflammation.
- The resolution of cerebral edema depends on hydrostatic and osmolar forces applied to the blood-brain barrier. Excess perfusion pressure or intravascular hypotonicity worsens edema and must be avoided.
- Blood-brain barrier disruption varies over time and by pathologic process, and it affects the ability of hypertonic agents to exert a beneficial osmotic effect.
- Fever is frequently overlooked in the neurocritical care unit, but it significantly affects patient outcomes across a range of pathologic processes.
- Neurologic monitoring comprises placement of appropriate monitoring devices as well as prompt response and institution of therapy to the changes detected. The goal is to optimize the physiologic environment. Clinical examination of neurologic function remains a crucial part of monitoring and care.
- The main principle in the treatment of traumatic brain injury involves the control of physiologic parameters such as ICP to achieve an adequate cerebral perfusion pressure. No pharmacological intervention exists to minimize secondary brain damage.
- After the initial hemorrhage and early brain injury, mortality and morbidity from subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH) arise from rebleeding and delayed cerebral ischemia. Early treatments of ruptured aneurysms, including medical and endovascular therapies, to improve cerebral perfusion, maintain blood volume, and optimize oxygen delivery have improved outcomes. SAH may be accompanied by significant pulmonary, cardiovascular, or endocrine effects.
- Successful therapy for ischemic stroke is contingent on a time window of viability. Urgent assessment and rapid treatment are crucial to a good outcome. Endovascular therapy, in conjunction with advances in imaging, has led to significant outcome benefits.
- Injury to the spinal cord necessitates careful evaluation of respiratory mechanics to assure adequate ventilation.
- Infections of the central nervous system demand an aggressive approach to volume resuscitation, cerebrospinal fluid sampling, and early empiric antibiotic therapy, similar to treatment for sepsis.

Critical care of the central nervous system (CNS) involves collaboration among several disciplines—neurosurgery, anesthesiology, neurology, neuroradiology, and electrophysiology. Each discipline offers unique contributions, which, in partnership, provide optimal care not only to the injured brain but also to the cardiopulmonary, endocrine, gastrointestinal, and renal systems that support cerebral physiology.[1] Integration of the complex goals of this care relies on the physician specializing in neurocritical care. The use of a neurocritical care team, rather than single specialty care, has been associated with reduced in-hospital mortality and the length of stay.[2] Although other specialists can train to be neurointensivists, anesthesiologists with training in neuroanesthesia and critical care are particularly well suited to demonstrate the combination of airway and cardiovascular support skills that, together with an understanding of the physiology and pharmacology of the nervous system, may improve the outcome.

Although the brain has certain preeminence among the organs of the body, it relies on a stable platform of organ function elsewhere to enable homeostatic control and mechanisms of repair and recovery. Injury to the brain is associated with and precipitates a wide spectrum of dysfunction of other organ systems (Box 84.1). Vice versa, brain function can also be perturbed by injury of the other organs. This mutual relationship is best described by the concept of organ crosstalk.[3-5]

Intracranial Physiology and Cerebrovascular Autoregulation

The cerebrovascular circulation is constrained by a rigid perimeter of bone (see also Chapter 11). After exhaustion of limited compensatory mechanisms, the bony confines of the

BOX 84.1 **Potential Systemic Complications Associated With Serious Traumatic Brain Injury**

Global	Pyrexia
	Inflammatory activation
Cardiovascular	Arrhythmia: bradycardia, tachycardia, atrial fibrillation
	Hypertension
	Hypotension
	Left ventricular dysfunction
Respiratory	Apnea
	Pneumonia: aspiration, hypostatic, ventilator associated
	Pulmonary edema
	Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)
Gastrointestinal	Gastric erosion
	Ileus
	Constipation
	Perforation
	Malabsorption
Renal	Dehydration
	Acute renal failure
	Urinary tract infection
Hematologic	Anemia
	Leukocytosis
	Coagulopathy, disseminated intravascular coagulation
	Deep venous thrombosis, pulmonary embolism
Metabolic or endocrine	Hyponatremia, hypernatremia
	Hypoglycemia, hyperglycemia,
	Hypokalemia, hyperkalemia
	Hypomagnesemia
	Hypophosphatemia
	Catabolic azotemia
	Rhabdomyolysis

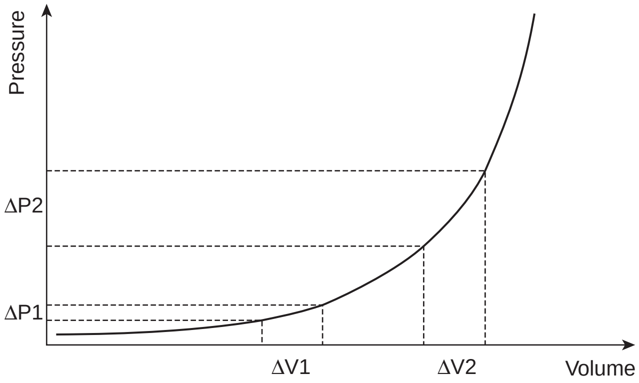


Fig. 84.1 Intracranial pressure-volume relationship: additional intracranial volume *(ΔV1)* is accommodated with minimal change in intracranial pressure *(ΔP1)*. Once this capacity is exhausted, the same increase in volume *(ΔV2)* leads to an exponential rise in intracranial pressure *(ΔP2)*.

skull mandate increasing intracranial pressure (ICP) consequent to increasing intracranial volume. The change in ICP with change in intracranial volume is often referred to as the intracranial compliance curve, but it is more appropriately termed the *intracranial elastance curve* (Fig. 84.1). The increase in elastance (i.e., changes in ICP as a function of changes in intracranial volume) implies poor compliance, and a small change in volume can lead to an inordinate increase in pressure. These changes in volume are due to the increase in intracranial tissue or fluid content (i.e., blood, interstitial fluid/edema, or cerebrospinal fluid [CSF]). Tissue content is relevant insofar as mass lesions influence intracerebral elastance and accentuate the effects of fluid changes. Small increases in volume can be accommodated by an outflow of CSF from the cranial cavity into the spinal canal, producing an exponential pressure-volume relationship (see Fig. 84.1).

The cranial vault is compartmentalized by the falx cerebri and tentorium cerebelli, which creates the possibility of internal pressure gradients (Fig. 84.2). Increased intracranial volume finally leads to herniation of brain tissue through the "apertures" of the compartments. Pressure gradients are initially hydraulically equilibrated, with CSF moving from the ventricular chambers to the extracranial spinal space. Brain herniation may also contribute to impedance of CSF drainage either by occlusion of the foramina of Monro in the case of lateral herniation or by occlusion of the third ventricle and aqueduct by supratentorial herniation through the tentorial gap. This situation typically gives rise to clinical features of midbrain compression. Unilateral pupillary dilation, ipsilateral or even contralateral paralysis (the Kernohan notch phenomenon), and abnormalities of respiration are apparent in the patient. If the herniation continues, it will result in cerebellar descent through the foramen magnum with consequent compression of the brainstem, thus producing bilateral papillary fixation, either tachycardia or bradycardia, and systemic hypertension.[6] Changes in cerebral mass secondary to increase in intracerebral venous blood volume also arise from venous drainage obstruction by compression of the easily susceptible bridging veins draining from cortex to venous sinuses. Once an individual threshold of elastance is crossed, changes in volume exert a mass effect on the draining veins, which act as Starling resistors. This effect decreases drainage, which, in turn, amplifies and prolongs pressure increases. Blood volume increases may be extravascular (i.e., hemorrhage) or intravascular (i.e., accumulation within a predominantly venous capacitance circulation). The other main fluid mass effect is through edema, either cytotoxic or vasogenic.[7] Cytotoxic edema results from hypoxia, with swelling of the intracellular compartment, whereas vasogenic edema in the interstitium usually develops from a breach of the blood-brain-barrier, often in response to high blood pressure.[8]

Changes in the control of cerebral blood volume (CBV) may have significant effects on ICP and, thereby, on cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP). The cerebral vasculature responds to increase in arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide ($PaCO_2$), decrease of arterial partial pressure of oxygen (PaO_2), and reduced mean arterial pressure (MAP) by dynamically altering arteriolar caliber to maintain a constantly matched cerebral blood flow (CBF) sufficient to meet metabolic demands (Fig. 84.3). Carbon dioxide, as with hydrogen, potassium, calcium, nitric oxide, adenosine, and lactate, are among many purported metabolic mediators of flow.[9] A reduction in substrate delivery (i.e., oxygen and nutrients) to less than the threshold necessary to maintain

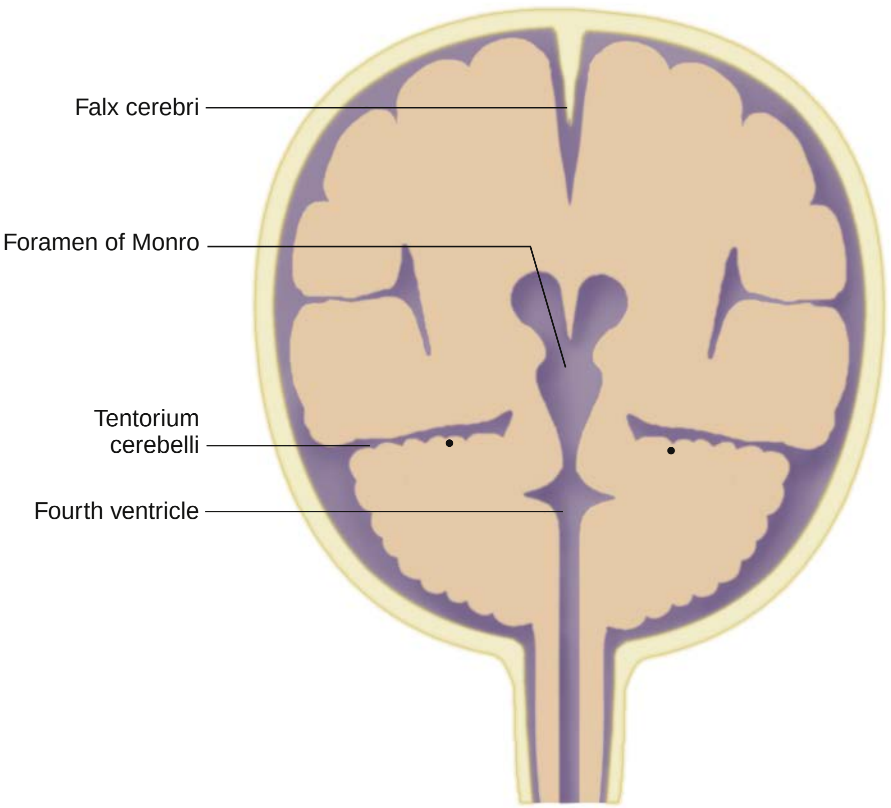


Fig. 84.2 Schematic of intracranial compartments: coronal section.

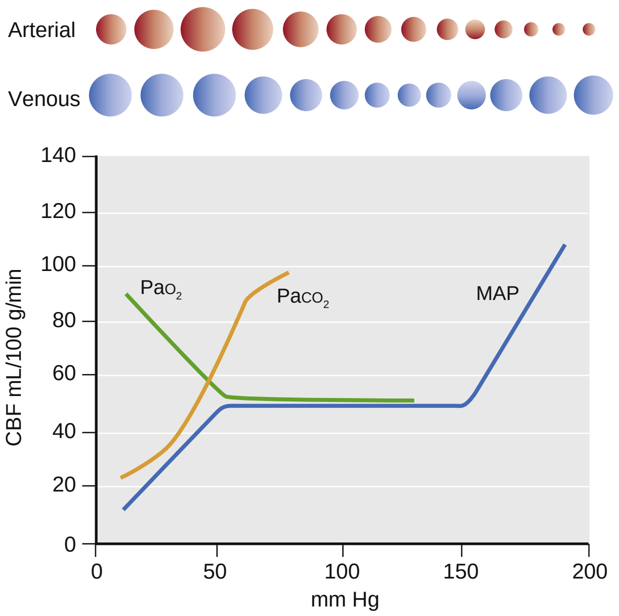


Fig. 84.3 The influence of changes in arterial partial pressure of oxygen *(PaO$_2$)*, arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide *(PaCO$_2$)*, and mean arterial pressure *(MAP)* upon vessel diameter and cerebral blood flow *(CBF)*.

cellular viability induces cell injury with consecutive cytokine and chemokine release. This inflammatory amplification expands the injury, disrupts the blood-brain barrier function, and may directly lead to apoptosis or necrosis.[10] The disruption of the blood-brain barrier creates vasogenic edema and allows serum proteins to cross into brain parenchyma with prolonged effects. This process is more evident in the high metabolically active gray matter than in white matter.

CBF control may be directly compromised by brain injury or by abnormalities of respiration and arterial blood pressure. Consequently, untoward changes in physiologic parameters, including arterial hypotension, hypoxia, hyper- and hypocapnia, hyper- and hypoglycemia, and fever, as well as seizures, produce what is termed a *secondary physiologic insult.* The *primary injury* is caused by the direct destruction of tissue during the initial trauma or ischemia, while the area of the *secondary injury* slowly extends into the intact tissue and induces further harm to the vulnerable brain and worsens outcome.[11] The control of the secondary brain injury is the target of the development of potential neuroprotection protocols.[12]

General Cardiopulmonary Considerations

Arterial hypotension, especially in combination with hypoxemia, is a well-documented source of cerebral morbidity.[13,14] Therefore, a reduction of cardiac output and CPP have to be avoided to prevent further deterioration of the level of consciousness, which in turn leads to airway compromise and hypercapnia and hypoxia. Hypercapnia, hypoxia, and arterial hypotension lead to autoregulatory cerebral vasodilation, which increases CBV and ICP and further diminishes CPP, perpetuating the vicious circle (Fig. 84.4).

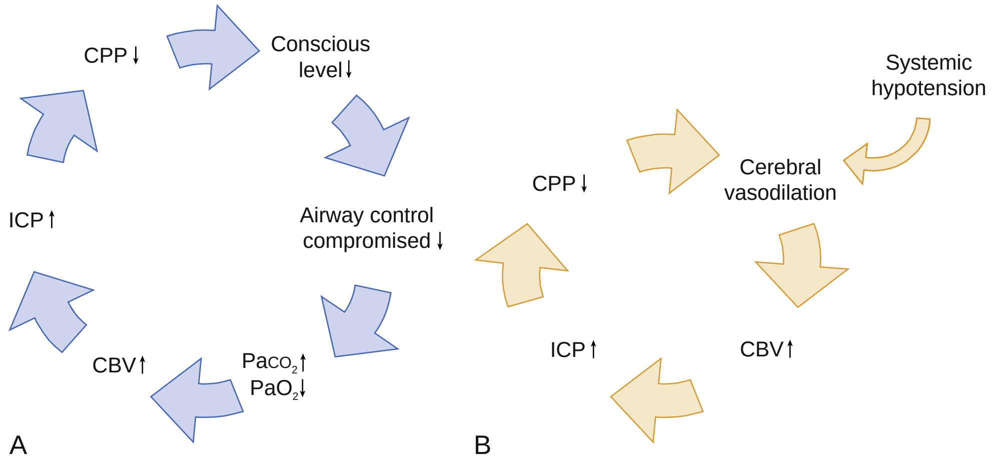


Fig. 84.4 (A) Ventilatory-neurologic circle of dysfunction. Induced changes in partial pressure of carbon dioxide *($PaCO_2$)* and partial pressure of oxygen *(PaO_2)* produce changes in cerebral blood volume *(CBV)*, intracranial pressure *(ICP)*, and cerebral perfusion pressure *(CPP)*. This, in turn, impairs ventilatory control. (B) Hemodynamic-neurologic circle of dysfunction. Similar to the diagram in **(A)**, systemic hypotension induces cerebral vasodilation, which increases CBV and ICP and reduces CPP, which, in turn, increases vasodilation.

Any deterioration in ventilatory efficacy adversely affects cerebral elastance through carbon dioxide-induced vasodilation and leads to hypoxemia, which can cause direct as well as indirect injury to the brain.[14] Arterial hypoxemia, less than 60 mm Hg, is a significant contributor to secondary insult from vasodilatory ICP effects, in addition to reduced oxygen delivery to the cell. Pulmonary compromise is often seen in neurologic patients with altered mental status due to impaired airway reflexes and repeated aspiration episodes, which culminate in a significant incidence of pneumonia, irrespective of the initiating pathologic process.[15,16] Another potential mechanism is the release of cytokines from the brain in response to the inflammatory process triggered by an injury. This release may be sufficient to induce acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) and systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS).[4,17] Conversely, ARDS can also trigger cerebral inflammation by releasing inflammatory mediators like cytokines.[4,17] The ventilatory treatment for ARDS may create a therapeutic dilemma in the presence of cerebral pathophysiology. However, the "open lung" concept (i.e., small tidal volumes, high frequencies, and high positive end-expiratory pressure [PEEP]) developed to minimize alveolar distention and reduce lung injury appears to be feasible in neurosurgical patients, despite theoretic concerns regarding adverse effects on ICP.[18] The use of PEEP up to 15 cm H_2O appears to improve brain tissue oxygen pressure and oxygen saturation without negative effects on ICP or CPP.[19].

Fluids, Electrolytes, and Nutrition

Normally, capillary fluid shift is a function of hydrostatic pressure pushing fluid out and the balance of osmotic forces retaining fluid within[20]:

$$\mathrm{Jv} = \mathrm{Kf}\left([\mathrm{Pc} - \mathrm{Pi}) - \sigma\,[\pi\mathrm{c} - \pi\mathrm{i}]\right)$$

where Jv is the net fluid movement between compartments, Pc is the capillary hydrostatic pressure, Pi is the interstitial hydrostatic pressure, πc is the capillary osmotic pressure, πi is the interstitial osmotic pressure, Kf is the filtration coefficient (this is a product of surface area and hydraulic conductivity), and σ is the reflection coefficient (the membrane impermeability toward osmotically active particles).

In extracranial capillaries, these osmotic forces are derived from oncotic pressure because smaller solutes can cross the capillary basement membrane following concentration gradients and only large protein molecules remain to exert their effect. However, in the brain, because of the presence of tight junctions in the endothelium, the intact blood-brain barrier reflects smaller solutes (e.g., sodium and chloride ions), and this relative impermeability renders cerebral capillary fluid shift a function of hydrostatic and *total* osmolar forces, with the oncotic pressure being responsible for only 1 mOsmol/kg.[21] Therefore, the fluid shift in the cerebral capillaries is most dependent on the osmolar gradient. In the absence of externally administered osmotically active substances (e.g., mannitol), plasma osmolality is 280 to 300 mOsm/kg and is almost entirely determined by sodium concentration.

$$\text{Plasma osmolality} = [\text{NA}]_{\text{serum}} \times 2 + \text{glucose}/18 + \text{BUN}/2.8$$

where Na is sodium and BUN is blood urea nitrogen.

As a reduction of plasma osmolality of 4 to 5 mOsm/kg increases cerebral edema, hypotonic solutions must not be used in the neurosurgical patient. Table 84.1 shows that the mean measured osmolality is often lower than the calculated osmolarity.[21] Hence, intravascular fluid therapy must be carefully considered under circumstances of cerebral ischemia and inflammation. The brain exerts homeostatic control on metabolic and endocrine activity, and neurologic dysfunction can manifest as untoward changes in fluid and electrolyte balance. Diabetes insipidus is a florid example of this, with polyuria, subsequent hypovolemia, and, if the disorder is left untreated, systemic hypotension. Iatrogenic causes may include the use of osmotic diuretics. Sympathetic denervation stemming from brainstem or spinal cord injury (SCI) may also contribute to reductions in venous return due to increased vasodilation and peripheral venous pooling.[22]

TABLE 84.1 Osmolarity and Osmolality of Commonly Used Intravenous Fluids

Fluid	Mean Measured Osmolality (mOsm/kg)	Theoretical Osmolarity (mOsm/L)
Plasma	288 [280-300]	291
Isotonic saline 0.9%	285 [282-286]	308
Ringer´s lactate solution	257 [257-258]	276
Gelatin 4%	271 [270-272]	274
Human albumin (4%)	266 [266-267]	274.4

Nutritional deficits occur often in brain injured critically ill patients, and greater energy and protein deficits are associated with prolonged intensive care unit (ICU) and hospital stays.[23] According to the Brain Trauma Foundation (BTF), early enteral nutrition should be initiated at least by the fifth day and at most by the seventh day post injury.[24] It is possible that an even earlier start at day one after trauma can be beneficial in terms of better control of infection and overall complications.[25] For administration of enteral nutrition, a transgastric jejunal tube is recommended to reduce the incidences of ventilator-associated pneumonia.[24]

Stress-induced hyperglycemia is associated with higher morbidity and mortality in patients with neuronal injury,[26] but tight glycemic control, targeting plasma glucose levels of 80 to 120 mg/dL, increased the risk of hypoglycemia and did not improve outcomes compared to conventional therapy allowing a maximal glucose concentration of 150 mg/dL.[27] Therefore, moderate glycemic control with a target blood glucose level of 110 to 150 mg/dL is advocated.

Temperature Control

Fever occurs with an incidence of up to 70% in brain injured patients.[28] The degree and duration of early hyperthermia are closely correlated with a higher morbidity and mortality after neurologic injury.[29] The temperature threshold that produces progressive thermal injury to the metabolically active brain cells, blood-brain barrier, and vascular endothelium appears to be between 39°C and 40°C.[30] Hyperthermia, an often overlooked insult to the compromised brain, increases oxygen utilization and metabolic stress.[29,31] Patients in the ICU can have multiple risk factors for hyperthermia such as infection from indwelling catheters (e.g., arterial, venous, CSF) or lung injury.[31] However, in up to one-third of cases, the cause of the fever remains unexplained and often is classified as central fever.[28]

The concept of targeted temperature management in neurocritical care includes therapeutic mild hypothermia, controlled normothermia, and aggressive treatment of fever.[32] Although in head trauma patients, induced mild or moderate hypothermia failed to improve outcome, hypothermia did improve neurologic outcome in neonates with hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy and in patients after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest.[33-35] To cool patients, gel pads or intravascular temperature-modulating devices with servo-controls should be used to minimize overshoot. Cold saline infusions are additionally recommended.[32] Core temperature should be monitored continuously using an esophageal temperature probe or a bladder temperature probe.[32] Shivering must be treated promptly with nonsedating interventions (e.g., acetaminophen) instead of narcotic analgesics, sedatives, or paralytics.

Monitoring

The avoidance or correction of secondary brain damage necessitates the use of physiologic monitors to guide individualized therapy. The most important neuromonitoring devices are shown in Fig. 84.5 (see Chapter 39).[36-39] Neuromonitoring does not obviate the need for regular neurologic clinical examination. Similarly, attention should be paid to the basics of volume status evaluation, cardiovascular stability, respiratory care, and metabolic consumption. Monitors (e.g., processed electrical activity, cerebral oxygenation, and ICP) are merely surrogates of actual integrity of brain tissue and cerebral function.

CLINICAL EXAMINATION

Comprehensive neurocritical care encompasses the ability to perform a competent neurologic examination. Reproducible and objective assessment of neurologic function is as important as some of the sophisticated technology mentioned later, with the advantage that it offers better insight into global nervous system function and allows integration of information in an inherently complex dynamic system. One of the most basic yet important examinations is the pupillary light reflex, the unilateral absence of which may indicate midbrain compression from uncal herniation, which is a neurologic emergency. Bilaterally absent pupillary reflexes signify imminent or established cerebellar herniation, but this may be reversible with rapid efficacious treatment.

Clinical scales have been devised for common neurologic settings. The Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) is a well-known, universally applied scale (Table 84.2).[40] It relies on independent assessment of eye opening, speech, and best motor movement in response to progressive trials of command, voice, and noxious stimuli. Its accuracy is compromised by the use of sedatives/anesthetics. In clinical practice, duration of loss of consciousness, altered consciousness, and posttraumatic amnesia are also considered. The World Federation of Neurologic Surgeons (WFNS) scale is the preferred rating because it uses the more prevalent GCS but with a modifying component for focal deficit (Table 84.3). The Hunt and Hess Scale describes the severity of subarachnoid hemorrhages and is used as an outcome predictor (Table 84.4).[41,42] Knowing and using these scales are crucial to understanding the terminology and practice of neurocritical care.

INTRACRANIAL PRESSURE AND CEREBRAL PERFUSION PRESSURE

Intracranial Pressure

Increased ICP after head trauma is an important and well-established indicator of secondary brain injury and is

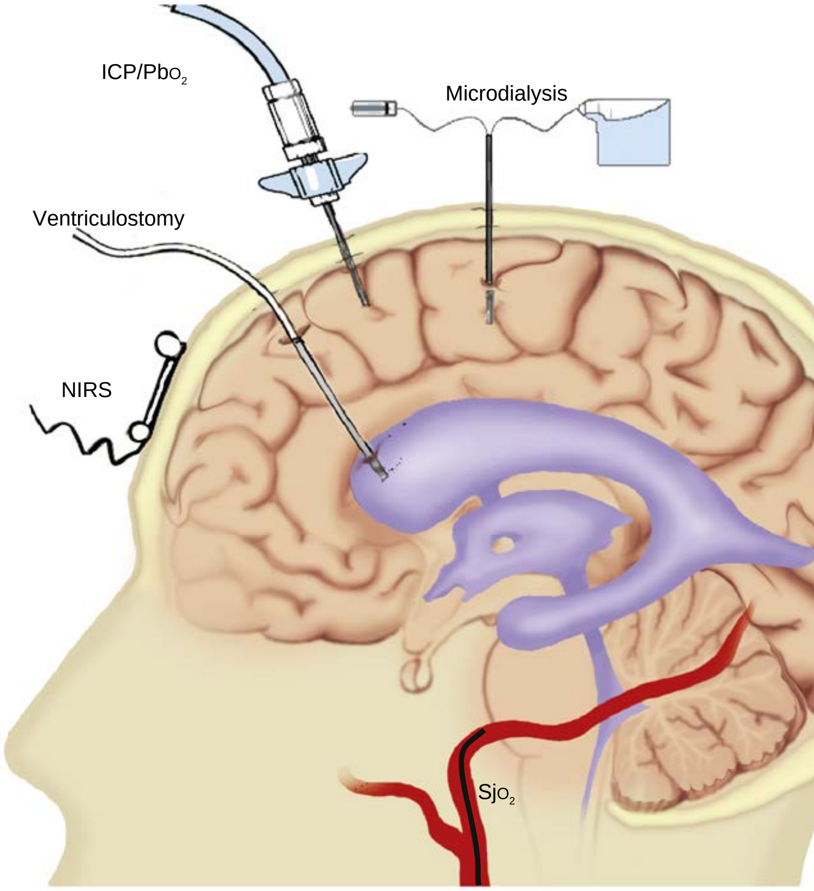


Fig. 84.5 Schematic of available intracranial monitoring, with near-infrared oximetry *(NIRS)*, intracranial pressure (*ICP*, either by ventriculostomy or parenchymal probe), brain tissue oximetry *(Pbo$_2$)*, microdialysis, and jugular venous oximetry *(Sjo$_2$)*.

associated with higher mortality and poor long-term outcome, especially when it is refractory to treatment.[36,43-46] However, the clinical benefit of ICP monitoring is still under discussion.[47-51] The indications for ICP monitoring (e.g., severe head trauma and abnormal computed tomography [CT] scan) and the recommended ICP threshold of 22 mm Hg given in the guidelines are more expert- than evidence-based.[24,52] The sole randomized clinical trial evaluating the potential benefit of ICP monitoring revealed that ICP monitoring does not influence long-term outcome after head trauma.[47] However, ICP-guided therapy in the context of duration of elevated ICP or in combination with information from other neuromonitoring devices may allow for individualized therapy of brain-injured patients and, thereby, improve outcome.[36] For example, the cumulative ICP-time burden with an ICP of 20 mm Hg for longer than 37 minutes diminishes outcome, whereas shorter periods had no adverse effects.[53] Impaired cerebrovascular autoregulation or a CPP below 50 mm Hg reduces the ability to tolerate an elevated ICP.[53]

In clinical practice, two different methods of monitoring ICP are used: microtransducer devices (strain gauge or fiberoptic types) and ventricular catheters.[54] Microtransducer systems are less invasive and easier to place, but they cannot drain CSF and may represent only the compartment pressure where they were placed (see Fig. 84.5).[55] The ventricular catheter is still the “gold standard” of measurement, as long as the ventricles are accessible, because they reflect global ICP and allow therapeutic drainage of CSF. However, they have an increased risk of complications, such as bleeding or infection.[54] Currently, noninvasive ICP measurements are not sufficiently reliable and cannot monitor the dynamics continuously, and, thus, are of research interest only.[36]

Cerebral Perfusion Pressure

The difference between MAP (zero reference point at the tragus of the ear) and the ICP describes the CPP. However, many interventions to decrease ICP, such as head elevation or barbiturate coma, suppress MAP and therefore, may also lower CPP. Most guidelines recommend CPP should be kept between 60 and 70 mm Hg, as higher or lower values worsen outcome after head trauma.[24,44] Recently, the concept of targeting an individualized optimal CPP was introduced, suggesting that an optimal CPP can be calculated for each patient, leading to a more favorable outcome compared with the standard threshold.[56]

CEREBRAL BLOOD FLOW

A constant, uninterrupted CBF is pivotal for the brain, as it has no storage for energy or oxygen. A decrease in CBF below 20 mL/100 g/min causes functional impairment (Table 84.5). Further reductions in CBF lead to structural damage of brain tissue. Modern imaging techniques such as CT perfusion or positron emission tomography (PET)

TABLE 84.2 Glasgow Coma Scale for Head Injury

Ability	Score
MOTOR RESPONSE	
Normal	**6**
Localized to pain (purposeful movement to side of pain)	**5**
Withdraws to pain	**4**
Abnormal flexion to pain *(an abnormal posture that can include rigidity, clenched fists, legs held straight out, and arms bent inward toward the body with the wrists and fingers bent and held on the chest)*	**3**
Abnormal extension to pain *(an abnormal posture that can include rigidity, arms and legs held straight out, toes pointed downward, and head and neck arched backward)*	**2**
None	**1**
VERBAL RESPONSE	
Normal conversation	**5**
Disoriented conversation	**4**
Words, but not coherent	**3**
No words, only sounds	**2**
None	**1**
EYE OPENING	
Spontaneous	**4**
To voice	**3**
To pain	**2**
None	**1**
SUM	3-15

TABLE 84.3 World Federation of Neurologic Surgeons Scale

Grade	Clinical Presentation
Grade 1	GCS score of 15, motor deficit absent
Grade 2	GCS score of 13-14, motor deficit absent
Grade 3	GCS score of 13-14, motor deficit present
Grade 4	GCS score of 7-12, motor deficit absent or present
Grade 5	GCS score of 3-6, motor deficit absent or present

GCS, Glasgow Coma Scale.

TABLE 84.4 Hunt and Hess Grading System

Grade	Clinical Presentation	Survival (%)
Grade 1	Asymptomatic or mild headache	70
Grade 2	Moderate to severe headache, nuchal rigidity, and no neurologic deficit other than possible cranial nerve palsy	60
Grade 3	Mild alteration in mental status (confusion, lethargy) and mild focal neurologic deficit	50
Grade 4	Stupor and/or hemiparesis	20
Grade 5	Comatose and/or decerebrate rigidity	10

TABLE 84.5 Functional Thresholds of Cerebral Blood Flow

CBF (mL/100 g/min)	Result
50	Normal
20	EEG slowing
15	Isoelectric EEG
6-15	Ischemic penumbra
<6	Neuronal death

CBF, Cerebral blood flow; *EEG*, electroencephalogram.

provide detailed information about cerebral hemodynamics, but cannot clinically be used for continuous monitoring of CBF.[36] Therefore, bedside solutions for continuous CBF measurement are necessary.

Thermal Diffusion Flowmetry

Thermal diffusion flowmetry is an invasive, continuous, and quantitative technique to measure local CBF. The thermal diffusion flowmetry catheter measures the temperature difference between a thermistor, which is heated some degrees above tissue temperature, and a temperature probe. The temperature difference can be converted to an absolute measurement of CBF in mL/100 g/min. The catheter is placed in areas at risk for hypoperfusion and can further help detect intracerebral vasospasm and assess cerebrovascular autoregulation.[57] However, there are still concerns about the validity of using thermal diffusion flowmetry long-term, as monitor dysfunctions secondary to placement errors and missing data during recalibration occur.[58]

Transcranial Doppler Monitoring

Transcranial Doppler monitoring is a noninvasive method that uses the Doppler shift effect to assess flow velocity in insonated cerebral arteries. Flow velocity has a linear relationship to CBF as long as the vessel's cross-sectional area and the angle of insonation remain constant.[59] This technique can continuously monitor flow velocity within the main components of the circle of Willis through the ophthalmic, temporal, and foramen magnum acoustic windows.[60] It has excellent temporal resolution and can detect inadequate CBF, assess pressure autoregulation and carbon dioxide reactivity, and can help predict outcome in patients with head trauma.[60,61] Changes in velocity can be used to assess alterations of vascular caliber (e.g., arterial vasospasm) or vascular stenosis.[60] High flow velocities in the middle cerebral artery (MCA) can be caused by vasospasm or hyperemia. This can be distinguished by calculating the ratio between the MCA and the extracranial carotid artery flow velocity (the Lindegaard index).[60]

CEREBROVASCULAR AUTOREGULATION AND VASOMOTOR REACTIVITY

Monitors of CBF can assess the response of the cerebral vasculature to changes in metabolism and blood pressure (i.e., cerebrovascular autoregulation).[62] Static cerebrovascular autoregulation can be determined with sustained blood pressure manipulation by using either a tilt test or a direct vasopressor, whereas dynamic cerebrovascular autoregulation can be assessed using rapid deflation of thigh cuffs that have been inflated above systolic blood pressure (SBP). For continuous assessment of cerebrovascular autoregulation the pressure reactivity index is an established tool. Using the Pearson correlation coefficient the pressure curves of ICP and arterial blood pressure are correlated, calculating an index between -1 and +1.[56]

Instead of ICP other parameters like the CBF (measured by TCD), the brain tissue PO_2, or Near Infrared Spectroscopy (NIRS) derived variables can be used to calculate an autoregulatory index to assess the status of the cerebral autoregulation.[63-67] The presence or lack of autoregulation may guide subsequent treatment and prognosis because the loss of autoregulation is associated with a poor outcome frequently.[68]

CEREBRAL OXYGENATION

To assess the adequacy of cerebral perfusion, measurement of cerebral oxygenation is indicated, because it gives the balance between cerebral oxygen delivery and utilization.

Jugular Venous Oxygen Saturation

The Fick principle may be reversed to examine the venous oxygen saturation which, assuming a constant hematocrit and metabolism, can offer an assessment of the adequacy of CBF and associated oxygen delivery relative to cerebral oxygen consumption:

$$\text{If } AVDO_2 = (CMRO_2/CBF),$$
$$\text{then } CaO_2 - CjvO_2 = (CMRO_2/CBF)$$

Ignoring the contribution of dissolved oxygen, then:

$$(SaO_2 - SjvO_2) \times Hgb \times 1.34 = (CMRO_2/CBF)$$

where $AVDO_2$ is the arteriovenous oxygen content difference; $CMRO_2$ is the cerebral oxygen metabolic rate; CaO_2, $CjvO_2$, SaO_2, and $SjvO_2$ are the arterial oxygen and jugular venous oxygen contents and saturations, respectively; Hgb is the hemoglobin concentration; and 1.34 is the oxygen affinity constant.

In vivo, catheters to measure $SjvO_2$ are placed in retrograde fashion through the internal jugular vein to its jugular bulb at the foramen, or even beyond, to the large sinuses (Fig. 84.6). $SjvO_2$ can be measured intermittently by sampling venous blood from a catheter or continuously by fiberoptic measurement. The normal range of $SjvO_2$ lies between 55% and 75%. Both desaturation (<50%, suggesting inadequate delivery or excess consumption) and abnormally high saturation (>75%, suggesting hyperemia or stroke) have been associated with poor outcomes.[24,69] The arteriovenous oxygen content difference is possibly a more accurate assessment of the adequacy of flow and predictor of outcome.[70] Jugular venous oximetry is sometimes insensitive to focal changes because it reflects the averaged global cerebral venous oxygen saturation from the confluence of hemispheric venous drainage. Consequently, some authors have suggested using oxygen consumption in combination with the cerebral arteriovenous gradient of lactate to make stoichiometric assessments of aerobic versus anaerobic metabolism.[71] The idea is to base goal-directed therapy on metabolic indices ($SjvO_2$) rather than on hemodynamic indices (ICP and CPP).[72] However, due to technical problems (e.g., displacement of catheter) and its low sensitivity, the clinical use of jugular venous oximetry has decreased in favor of alternative monitoring methods for brain tissue oxygen monitoring.[73]

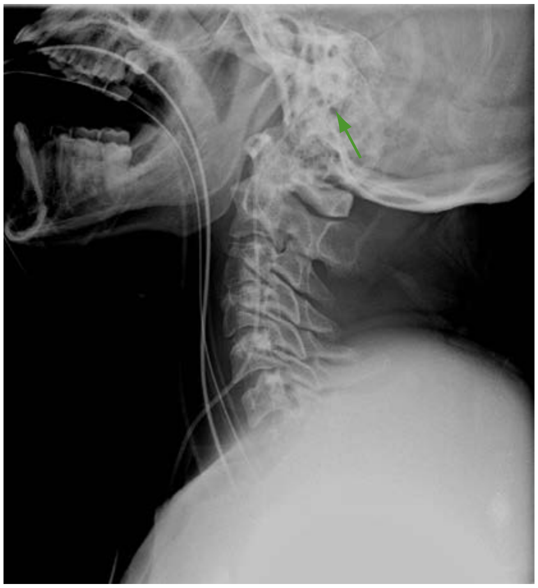


Fig. 84.6 Lateral cervical spine radiograph showing appropriate positioning of the jugular venous oximetry catheter above the lower border of the C1 vertebra (the *arrow tip* is actually within the jugular foramen).

Brain Tissue Oxygen Tension

Miniaturized Clark electrodes have been developed and combined with ICP catheters to provide simultaneous measurements of brain tissue oxygen tension (PbO_2) and ICP. The PbO_2 should be measured in the area of risk, which contains still viable subcortical white matter.[74]The normal range of PbO_2 lies between 20 and 45 mm Hg. In clinical settings, values less than 15 to 20 mm Hg are considered as cerebral ischemia and below 10 mm Hg as severe ischemia.[75] Several studies have demonstrated a correlation between low PbO_2 and poor outcome after traumatic brain injury (TBI). Therapy guided by combined ICP (<20 mm Hg) and CPP (60-70 mm Hg) and PbO_2 (> 20 mm Hg) was superior to ICP and CPP therapy alone.[76-78] To increase a low PbO_2 (<20 mm Hg), mechanical ventilator settings should be optimized. A challenge of 100% oxygen for 2 minutes (a temporary method to restore PbO_2 and to verify probe function) can be performed and CPP and ICP, hemoglobin, and sedation should be optimized.[79]

Near-Infrared Spectroscopy

Pulse oximetry for the brain relies on the principle of reflectance spectroscopy in which near-infrared light traverses bone. The light is scattered and reflected in a ratio that is inversely proportional to the concentration of light-absorbing materials in tissue (e.g., hemoglobin and oxyhemoglobin). The surface detector is constructed and calibrated to detect light that has traversed down to the cerebral cortex and back. An adjacent detector is positioned to detect a signal from superficial tissues, and both signals are then used in an algorithm to derive an estimated tissue saturation.[80]

NIRS is a noninvasive approach to continuously monitor a regional critical oxygen supply/demand mismatch. The normal range lies between 60% and 75%, but the lower threshold varies considerably among individual patients.[81] Unfortunately, the sensitivity to detect isolated cerebral hypoperfusion is low, and, therefore, high-quality data supporting the use of NIRS in patients with TBI, SAH, or stroke are missing.[36,66] In contrast, NIRS is an excellent trend monitor in patients with cerebral hypoperfusion caused by systemic changes, such as during cardiac surgery where a decreased NIRS compared to the awake baseline correlates with a poor outcome.[81-83]

BRAIN METABOLISM AND BIOCHEMISTRY—CEREBRAL MICRODIALYSIS

Cerebral microdialysis probes can assess the biochemical milieu of the brain. The probes are placed through a burr hole and cycle small volumes of dialysate through the catheter to an extracranial collection system. The tip of the catheter should be placed in at-risk brain tissue, which is most vulnerable to secondary brain damage.[84] A semipermeable membrane (molecular weight cutoff of 20 kDa) is incorporated in the tips of the probes through which various substances can diffuse along their concentration gradient (e.g., lactate, pyruvate, glucose, glycerol, and glutamate) into the dialysate for collection and analysis using a bedside high-pressure liquid chromatography device.[85] As these substances are associated with glucose metabolism, hypoxia/ischemia, and cellular energy failure, the cerebral microdialysis is used to guide individualized intensive care therapy to optimize substrate supply, cerebral perfusion, and oxygen transport.[86] An increased lactate:pyruvate ratio with a low pyruvate concentration in combination with a low-glucose concentration can indicate a profound reduction in energy substrate supply and is associated with poor outcome after brain injury.[87] In contrast, an increased lactate:pyruvate ratio with normal pyruvate and glucose concentrations is an indicator of a nonischemic cause (e.g., mitochondrial dysfunction).[88] Glutamate is a marker of excitotoxic brain damage and glycerol can indicate membrane breakdown of neurons.[89,90] Recently, probes with a high-molecular-weight cutoff membrane (100 kDa) have been used to detect biomarkers for neuronal damage like S100B or cytokines.[91,92] Despite promising results, the clinical utility of a therapy guided by cerebral microdialysis is still under discussion.

NEUROPHYSIOLOGIC MONITORING

Clinical neurophysiology picks up the electrical activity of the central or peripheral nervous system.[93] It includes electroencephalography (EEG), evoked potentials (EP), and electroneuromyography and is very useful for diagnosis, prognosis, and follow-up of cerebral disorders.[93] However, clinical neurophysiology only evaluates the current functional brain status and cannot predict future complications.

Electroencephalography

The electroencephalogram (EEG) records spontaneous electrical activity of cortical neurons detected by appropriately placed electrodes in a radial and axial array as defined by the 10/20 system, an internationally standardized system of recording. The EEG is a surrogate parameter for functional metabolism of the cortical neurons and the integrity of the brain. The spectrum of component frequencies, together with amplitude and power, can be quantified and analyzed in a variety of fashions, and processed EEG monitors use these to assess the depth of anesthesia. In unconscious patients in the neurocritical care unit, EEG should be continuously used for the detection of nonconvulsive seizures, which can frequently occur and are associated with intracranial hypertension and cerebral metabolic derangements.[94,95] As the detection of nonconvulsive seizures is difficult, automatic monitoring systems have been developed.[96] Unfortunately, the current automatic detection of seizures is fraught with false negatives and false positives and cannot replace an EEG-trained neurologist.[96]

For prognosis after anoxic brain damage, poor outcome is associated with malignant EEG patterns like burst-suppression, α-coma, and low-voltage delta. In contrast, the persistence of EEG reactivity is an indicator of good outcome. Further development of intracranial electrocorticography, an invasive form of EEG monitoring, might allow the continuous detection of so-called spreading depolarizations, which occur in about half the patients with head trauma and can lead to secondary brain damage.[97,98]

Evoked Potentials

EPs measure changes in neuronal activity, which are triggered by sensory stimuli.[93] They reflect the passive response of the cerebral cortex or the brainstem to peripheral (acoustic, somatosensory, or visual) or central (transcranial magnetic stimulation) stimuli. In contrast to the EEG, where spontaneous cortical activity is recorded, the EPs monitor the integrity of central and peripheral tracts. The EP signals are quantified according to latency and amplitude. In the absence of peripheral or cervical dysfunction, the bilateral absence of the N_20 somatosensory EP response to median-nerve stimulation is the most reliable predictor of non-awakening in post-anoxic coma, whereas the preservation of cognitive evoked potentials (CEP) predicts awakening with a very high probability, irrespective of coma etiology.[93,99] After TBI, impairment of brainstem activity is the best predictor of bad outcome.[93]

MULTIMODALITY NEUROMONITORING

Multimodality monitoring uses a combination of parameters to identify, prevent, and treat the mechanisms of secondary brain damage and guide individualized therapy.[61,100] Various commercial systems are available to process and display multiple data streams.[101] The combination of ICP, cerebrovascular autoregulation, PbO_2, continuous EEG, and cerebral microdialysis offers the possibility to individualize care decisions in patients with severe brain injury.[39] In the future, the development of computational model interpretation of these complex multimodal data sets will provide summary outputs of patient-specific simulations of brain state to facilitate the interpretation and suggest individual therapies.[36,102]

RADIOGRAPHIC IMAGING

The most important diagnostic modalities for unconscious and brain-injured patients are CT, including

TABLE 84.6 Marshall Scale: Computed Tomography Categories for Head Injury

Category	Definition
Diffuse injury I	No visible intracranial pathologic process
Diffuse injury II	Cisterns are present with midline shift of 0-5 mm and/or lesion densities present; no high- or mixed-density lesions at >25 mL
Diffuse injury III	Cisterns compressed or absent, with midline shift of 0-5 mm; no high- or mixed-density lesions of >25 mL
Diffuse injury IV	Midline shift of >5 mm; no high- or mixed-density lesion of >25 mL
Evacuated mass lesion (V)	Any lesion surgically evacuated
Nonevacuated mass lesion (VI)	High- or mixed-density lesion of >25 mL; not surgically evacuated

TABLE 84.7 Classification of the Severity of Traumatic Brain Injury

Criteria	Mild	Moderate	Severe
Structural imaging	Normal	Normal or abnormal	Normal or abnormal
Loss of consciousness	< 30 min	30 min to 24 h	>24 h
Posttraumatic amnesia	0-1 day	>1 and <7 days	>7 days
GCS (best available in 24 h)	13-15	9-12	3-8
Abbreviated injury scale score: Head	1-2	3	4-6

GCS, Glasgow Coma Scale.

CT-angiography, and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). CT and CT-angiography are very efficient methods, while MRI is time consuming but more sensitive for brainstem lesions as well as for axonal injuries. These imaging techniques are used to diagnose damage after TBI (intracranial masses, cortical contusions, and neuronal/axonal injury), an epidural or subdural hematoma, subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH), ischemic or hemorrhagic stroke, cerebral vein/sinus thrombosis, or postoperative complications such as brain edema or rebleeding.

It is important to standardize and categorize CT images for meaningful comparison of therapeutic modalities in clinical trials and for assessment of prognosis. For TBI, the novel Stockholm and Helsinki CT scores seem to give a more accurate outcome prediction compared to the Marshall CT classification and the Rotterdam CT score (Tables 84.6 and 84.7).[103] After SAH, the Hijdra sum score seems to be superior to the more commonly used modified Fisher scale in assessing the amount of subarachnoid blood and in predicting the occurrence and severity of cerebral vasospasm.[104,105] (Tables 84.8 and 84.9). For early assessment of neuronal damage after stroke, the Alberta Stroke Program Early CT Score (ASPECTS) uses signs of early ischemic lesions in regions M1 to M6 and the basal ganglia.[106,107]

TABLE 84.8 Fisher Scale (Computed Tomography Appearance)

Grade	Clinical Presentation
Grade 1	No blood detected
Grade 2	Diffuse deposition of subarachnoid blood, no clots, and no layers of blood <1 mm
Grade 3	Localized clots and/or vertical layers of blood ≥1 mm in thickness
Grade 4	Diffuse or no subarachnoid blood, but intracerebral or intraventricular clots present

TABLE 84.9 Modified Fisher Scale (Computed Tomography Appearance)

Grade	Clinical Presentation
Grade 0	No blood detected
Grade 1	Thin subarachnoid blood*, no intraventricular hemorrhage
Grade 2	Thin subarachnoid blood, with intraventricular hemorrhage
Grade 3	Thick subarachnoid blood, no intraventricular hemorrhage
Grade 4	Thick subarachnoid blood, with intraventricular hemorrhage

*Vertical thickness of 1 mm separates thin from thick subarachnoid hemorrhage.

Common Diseases in the Neurocritical Care Unit

TRAUMATIC BRAIN INJURY

Severe TBI is mainly a result of traffic accidents, assaults, falls, and domestic abuse. It is the leading cause of disability and death in young male adults.[108,109] Poor outcomes after TBI are correlated to older age and are worse after falls.[110,111] The primary injury, which is defined by the kinetic impact of the trauma, deforms the brain structure. The pattern of this damage covers a wide spectrum from localized contusion to diffusely scattered foci, lacerations, and hematomas varying with the circumstances of the incident and the architecture of the victim's brain. TBI is classified by whether it is via blunt or penetrating mechanism. Penetrating injury may again have widely varying consequences depending on site, depth, and energy, but is generally fatal if it bilaterally traverses the midbrain.[112] The GCS categorizes TBI into mild, moderate, and severe injury according to the patient's presenting clinical characteristics and correlates with outcome after TBI (see Table 84.2).[113] Additionally, the Abbreviated Injury Scale (AIS) score for the head and neck region classifies TBI by ranking injuries on a six-point scale based on mortality risk, with "1" indicating minor injury and "6" indicating a nonsurvivable injury. Both scores are comparable in predicting short-term mortality after severe TBI.[114]

The management of TBI in the ICU should include comprehensive examination and assessment using such principles as outlined in the Advanced Trauma and Life Support protocol because occult injuries can escape initial screening.

Pathophysiology

As the brain has no tolerance for hypoxia, TBI patients need immediate treatment according to current guidelines.[24] Unfortunately, the extent of the primary injury cannot be influenced by therapy and, therefore, prevention (e.g., by helmets or airbags) is the only way to avoid damage. The primary brain damage triggers a cascade of pathophysiologic changes, which then lead to secondary brain damage. During the first post-traumatic days, the aim of treatment is to minimize the growth of the secondary damage as much as possible in order to rescue salvageable brain tissue. Pathologic processes such as elevated ICP (due to edema, hemorrhage, obstruction of CSF flow), diminution of arterial inflow, and consequent reduction in CPP with resulting tissue hypoxia and loss of cerebrovascular autoregulation increase secondary brain damage. Inflammation, massive release of excitatory neurotransmitters, apoptotic cell death, high lactic acid concentrations due to anaerobic glycolysis, depleted adenosine triphosphate (ATP)-stores, increased intracellular Ca^{2+} concentrations, generation of free radicals and proteolysis are some of the identified contributors to secondary brain damage. Unfortunately, despite intense research and characterization of all these mechanisms, no drug has been identified that can improve outcome after TBI in randomized, prospective clinical trials. This is most likely related to the complex pathophysiology of brain damage, the heterogeneous patterns of damage, and various preexisting patient diseases. TBI also leads to disturbances in other systems such as: sympathetic discharge of the autonomic nervous system, inflammatory responses, endocrine dysfunctions, electrolyte imbalances, cardiovascular and respiratory disturbances, and coagulation impairments. These systemic effects must be monitored and immediately treated, as they also contribute to secondary brain damage.

Traumatic SAH (tSAH) occurs in up to 60% of admissions for TBI and influences outcome after TBI.[115-117] Approximately 20% of patients with tSAH may also develop vasospasm, which causes secondary ischemic insult.

Treatment

All therapeutic strategies focus on optimization of the delivery of oxygen and glucose to the brain cells. These strategies include maintaining adequate CPP, controlling ICP, and optimizing oxygenation. Therefore, in the critical care setting, the management of TBI patients should follow established protocols with close monitoring of parameters, including CPP, ICP, and oxygenation status.[118] Clinical assessments like continuous measurement of arterial blood pressure, heart rate, and pulse oximetry in combination with monitoring volume status, urine output, and GCS have to be performed.

Cerebral Perfusion Pressure. CPP results from the difference of MAP minus ICP and should be kept between 60 and 70 mm Hg.[24] Aggressive attempts to maintain CPP above 70 mm Hg with fluids and vasopressors should be avoided, as this treatment increases the risk of respiratory failure. Arterial hypotension with a SBP below 90 mm Hg is strongly correlated to poor outcome and has to be avoided in the management of TBI patients.[14,116] There exists a smooth U-shaped relationship between systolic or MAP and outcome without any evidence of an abrupt threshold effect. Therefore, while current recommendations are to maintain SBP above 100 mm Hg for patients 50 to 69 years old or at or above 110 mm Hg for patients 15 to 49 or over 70 years old, new data possibly suggest that an optimal SBP of 135 mm Hg should be the target.[24,119]

BOX 84.2 Management Checklist for the Treatment of Intracranial Hypertension

1. Keep physiological variables in normal range (normotension, normocapnia, normoxia, normothermia, normoglycemia, normovolemia)
2. Head position (30-degree elevation); avoid rotation of the head
3. CPP 60-70 mm Hg; massive fluid-therapy or high doses of vasoconstrictors should be avoided
4. Normocapnia ($PaCO_2$ = 35-40 mm Hg); if ICP >20-25 mm Hg, then induce short-term hyperventilation ($PaCO_2$ = 30-35 mm Hg)
5. Provide adequate sedation
6. CSF drainage if ventricles are still detectable
7. Consider mannitol or hypertonic saline
8. Consider barbiturate therapy (under EEG monitoring)
9. Fever control

CPP, Cerebral perfusion pressure; *CSF*, cerebral spinal fluid; *EEG*, electroencephalogram; *ICP*, increases intracranial pressure; *$PaCO_2$*, arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide.

Intracranial Pressure. Elevated ICP above 22 mm Hg is associated with increased mortality and should be treated[24] with measures according to the checklist in Box 84.2. This includes optimizing patient position, osmotherapy, deep sedation with barbiturates or propofol, and ventricular drains.[120] Hyperventilation reduces CBV and ICP due to its vasoconstrictive effect, but at the same time hyperventilation leads to a mismatch between oxygen delivery and oxygen consumption.[121] Therefore, hyperventilation is only a temporizing measure until other ICP-lowering measures are available. Decompressive craniectomy has been a strategy to lower ICP, but unfortunately this intervention increases the number of patients surviving in a vegetative state or with severe brain damage.[122,123] Prophylactic mild hypothermia was also a promising intervention to reduce ICP; however, in prospective multicenter studies, this therapy was not superior to normothermia.[35] ICP control with high-dose steroids was shown to have an adverse effect on mortality and morbidity in a multicenter study of more than 10,000 patients with brain injury.[124] Therefore, steroids are not recommended for control of ICP after TBI.

Oxygenation and Ventilation. Patients with GCS scores of 8 or less should be intubated and ventilated with a target of PaO_2 above 80 mm Hg. If PEEP is necessary, levels up to 15 cm H_2O have been shown to increase brain tissue oxygen pressure and oxygen saturation without increase in ICP or decrease in CPP.[19]

Sedation. TBI patients should be sedated with drugs with a short context-sensitive half-life like propofol to facilitate daily examination of their neurologic condition. Care should be taken to screen patients for propofol infusion syndrome, which can occur when high-dose propofol is used over several days.[125] Most of the barbiturates and benzodiazepines have a longer half-life and are, therefore, less suitable. Low-dose inhalational anesthetic can also be used. At higher concentrations, volatile anesthetics possess a direct vasodilatory effect, which increases CBV and, in turn, ICP. Ketamine was contraindicated in TBI patients due to perceived risks of causing intracranial hypertension, but in intubated and ventilated patients, ketamine has no adverse effect on ICP.[126] Ketamine has several favorable effects like reduced need of supplementary vasopressors and narcotics, activation of bowel movement, and bronchodilation.[127] Narcotics, like sufentanil, fentanyl, and remifentanil, have no negative effects on ICP as long as MAP is maintained. Muscle relaxants can be used in TBI patients, with the potential exception of succinylcholine, which possibly increases ICP. Nitrous oxide (N_2O) and etomidate should not be used in patients after severe TBI.

Additional Interventions. In TBI patients, enteral nutrition is recommended to attain basal caloric replacement between the fifth and the seventh day after TBI.[24] Enteral feeding using a transgastric jejunal tube should be started as soon as possible.[128-130] Early tracheotomy can facilitate the weaning of the patients and reduce mechanical ventilation days, but there is no evidence that it reduces mortality or the rate of nosocomial pneumonia. Up to 25% of patients with isolated TBI develop deep vein thrombosis (DVT) with the risk of pulmonary embolism.[131] Low-molecular-weight heparin or low-dose unfractionated heparin should be used in combination with mechanical prophylaxis, despite the increased risk of intracranial hemorrhage expansion.[24] The Parkland Protocol, which stratifies patients into different risk groups for spontaneous progression of hemorrhage, can help assess the optimal timing for the start of DVT prophylaxis.[132] The incidence of early posttraumatic seizures (during the first week after TBI) can be reduced by phenytoin.[24] As these early posttraumatic seizures do not influence outcome, this prevention is not obligatory. Late posttraumatic seizures are not susceptible to prophylactic interventions.

SPINAL CORD INJURY

In up to 5% of all major trauma cases, the spinal cord is injured and about 14% of these patients suffer from an unstable spine injury.[133] The American Spinal Injury Association (ASIA) has classified SCI into five categories, where ASIA A represents a complete impairment and ASIA E represents normal sensation and motor function (Table 84.10). Surgical decompression of the spinal cord should be performed within 24 hours after SCI and is associated with improved neurologic outcome.[134,135]

TABLE 84.10 ASIA Classification of Spinal Injury

Grade	Clinical Presentation
Grade A	Complete. No sensory or motor function is preserved in the sacral segments S4-S5
Grade B	Incomplete. Sensory but not motor function is preserved below the neurological level and includes the sacral segments S4-S5
Grade C	Incomplete. Motor function is preserved below the neurological level, and more than half of key muscles below the neurological level have a muscle grade less than 3 (Grades 0-2).
Grade D	Incomplete. Motor function is preserved below the neurological level, and at least half of key muscles below the neurological level have a muscle grade greater than or equal to 3
Grade E	Normal. Sensory and motor functions are normal.

Damage to the sympathetic outflow to the heart and vasculature after SCI contributes to systemic hypotension and bradycardia due to unopposed vagal tone, commonly referred to as neurogenic shock.[136] Injuries above T7 have an 85% risk of serious cardiovascular instability.[137] To avoid secondary injury after SCI, the MAP should be kept above 85 to 90 mm Hg during the first 7 days after injury using fluid and vasopressor therapy.[138,139] Fluid therapy should be monitored by cardiac output monitoring devices and hypotonic solutions like dextrose 5% in water, Ringer´s lactate, and 0.45% sodium chloride should be avoided, as they worsen cord edema. Vasopressors should be inotropic, chronotropic, and vasoconstrictive like α_1- and β_1-agonists (dopamine, norepinephrine). Dobutamine has generally no indication because of its β_2-receptor activation and its vasodilatory effects. In cases with life-threatening bradycardia, a cardiac pacemaker placement can be considered.[140]

The need for ventilatory support depends on the level of injury. The muscles contributing to respiration are the diaphragm (phrenic nerve, C 3-5), the intercostal muscles (thoracic nerves), and the accessory muscles, including the sternocleidomastoid (cranial nerve 11) and scalene muscles (cervical plexus). Respiratory failure secondary to abdominal and intercostal muscle paralysis can still occur even with injuries below C5 because these muscles significantly increase the efficiency of diaphragmatic contractions. The traumatic sympathectomy also leads to intestinal atony with subsequent abdominal distention, which further deteriorates the efficacy of the already compromised diaphragm. With complete cervical SCI, acute respiratory failure is common, secondary to the sudden loss of functional residual capacity and the inability of the sternocleidomastoid muscle to stabilize the chest wall. As hypoxia leads to poor outcome after SCI, patients who develop respiratory insufficiency should be intubated as soon as possible. Weaning should be started early and if it is complicated, the patient should receive a tracheostomy to reduce mechanical ventilation days, decrease the need for sedation, and facilitate pulmonary toilet.

Lower limb blood flow is reduced with increased arterial and venous pooling. This is associated with a higher incidence of thromboembolic disease, and early administration of venous thromboembolism prophylaxis within 72 hours after injury is recommended. Inferior vena cava filters are not suitable for prophylaxis.[138]

Many drugs have been tested for their potential neuroprotective effects; however, high-dose methylprednisolone, monosialotetrahexosylganglioside (GM-1), riluzole, fibroblast growth factor, minocycline, or magnesium have not improved outcome after SCI in prospective, randomized, multicenter studies.[141] Early mild hypothermia after SCI showed some promising results in clinical studies; however, they have to be validated by prospective, randomized, multicenter studies.[142]

Cerebrovascular Disease

Cerebrovascular diseases are the leading cause of death and disability worldwide.[143] Although clinical presentations and outcomes are highly variable, initial management often requires critical care resuscitation. Ischemic strokes are the most common (80%-90%) of stroke subtypes and are increasingly a larger proportion of post-procedural ICU management. Hemorrhagic strokes account for the remaining 10% to 20% of strokes, but are often the most medically complex and have the longest length of stay and highest morbidity and mortality in the ICU.[144] The following sections will provide an overview of the most common critical care management issues for SAH, ischemic stroke, and intracerebral hemorrhage (ICH).

SUBARACHNOID HEMORRHAGE

SAH is a neurologic emergency that requires critical care management. Accounting for less than 5% of all strokes worldwide, SAH is associated with severe morbidity and mortality. Most cases of SAH are aneurysmal in origin (aSAH). The incidence of aSAH per 100,000 person years is variable by ethnicity and geography—the lowest incidence being in China (2), followed by Central and South America (4.2), United States (8-15), and the highest being in Finland and Japan (19-23).[145,146] Women have a greater risk than men by a factor of 1.24, with a higher incidence among blacks and Hispanics compared to Caucasians. Most aneurysms occur between ages 40 and 60 years, with a mean age of 55 years.[145] Risk factors for aSAH include cigarette smoking, hypertension, heavy alcohol abuse, use of sympathomimetic agents, family history of SAH, and prior history of aSAH.[147] Between 10% and 15% of patients will die before hospitalization, and 25% will die within the first 48 hours. The initial hemorrhage is usually the primary cause of death, followed by rebleeding.[148] Case fatality rates had continued to decline in recent decades from 50% to 33% with the advent of endovascular treatment, microsurgical techniques, and improved ICU management.[149]

Early Brain Injury

The degree of neurologic abnormalities and the amount of bleeding are the strongest predictors of clinical outcome and complications after SAH. The Hunt and Hess grading system and World Federation of Neurological Surgeons Scale (WFNSS) are the most widely used (see Tables 84.3 and 84.4) with higher WFNSS and Hunt and Hess grades associated with worse clinical outcomes.[41,42] In the first 72 hours after the acute bleed, multiple mechanisms such as transient global ischemia, elevated intracranial pressures, and toxicity from SAH have been implicated in early brain injury. Subsequent effects on CBF, microcirculatory changes, cerebral edema, and sympathetic response can lead to both neurologic and systemic complications.[150,151] Acute management of blood pressure and oxygenation are critical in this period along with the prevention of early complications such as rebleeding, acute hydrocephalus, and elevated ICPs. Ideally, patients should be managed in high-volume facilities with dedicated neurocritical care units.[152]

Rebleeding. Rebleeding is a serious complication that significantly worsens outcomes and increases mortality as high as 70%.[153] The risk of rebleeding is the highest within the first 24 hours (4%-15%) after the initial bleed, remains elevated for the next 2 to 4 weeks (1%-2% per day), then eventually decreases to 2% to 4% annually after the first 6 months.[154-156] To reduce the risk of rebleeding, guidelines recommend securing the ruptured aneurysm by surgical clipping or endovascular coiling as soon as possible and ideally within the first 24 hours after symptom onset.[157-159] Since the publication of the International Subarachnoid Aneurysm Trial, endovascular coiling is the recommended treatment when the location, size, and morphology of aneurysm are favorable. Some aneurysms may be more suitable for surgical clipping. There should not be any delay in securing a ruptured aneurysm, regardless of the treatment modality chosen.[160,161] When surgical clipping or endovascular coiling are delayed, short-term (less than 72 hours) treatment with antifibrinolytic agents (aminocaproic acid or tranexamic acid) is recommended. In addition, seizure prophylaxis can be considered until the aneurysm is treated along with blood pressure control to normotensive goals.[158,162,163]

Acute Hydrocephalus. Acute hydrocephalus develops in 25% to 30% of patients after SAH, and emergency ventriculostomy may be lifesaving.[164] Patients with hydrocephalus can develop progressive deterioration leading to stupor and coma as well as more subtle clinical signs of gaze palsy, pupillary dysfunction, and cognitive slowing. Head CT showing ventricular dilation can be diagnostic and can facilitate early ventriculostomy placement. Hydrocephalus after SAH can be caused by obstruction of CSF outflow by blood products or by impaired CSF absorption by arachnoid granulations.[165] Most patients should have ventriculostomy drains removed when they no longer require external drainage and ICPs have stabilized. Some patients will develop delayed hydrocephalus (3-21 days after the onset), and 20% of patients will need ventriculoperitoneal (VP) shunt placement for chronic hydrocephalus.[157]

Neurogenic Cardiac and Pulmonary Disturbances. Cardiac and pulmonary disturbances are common after SAH and are thought to be secondary to a surge in catecholamine levels and sympathetic tone.[166,167] Significant autonomic nervous system disturbance after SAH can result in changes in the electrocardiogram and lead to myocardial dysfunction. Transient ECG abnormalities range from sinus tachycardia, peaked T-waves, T-wave inversions, and QT prolongation to ST segment depression or elevation.[168] Electrocardiographic changes are frequent but do not appear to relate to outcome.[169]

Cardiac dysfunction, however, can have a significant impact on management after SAH. Abnormal echocardiography has been described in up to 8% of SAH patients. Poor grade SAH patients can develop sudden hypoxemia and cardiogenic shock with or without pulmonary edema. This phenomenon of neurogenic stunned myocardium can cause severe limitation of cardiac contractility, which is reversible and associated with a good recovery profile. Patients with SAH have echocardiogram changes similar to takotsubo cardiomyopathy, which is also an acute transient dysfunction resulting from sympathetic overactivity.[170] Adrenoreceptor polymorphism has been implicated

BOX 84.3 Suggested Cardiovascular Management Strategies in Subarachnoid Hemorrhage

General

1. Manage hypertension in unsecured aneurysms (systolic BP < 140 mm Hg)
2. Maintain euvolemia prophylactically; no role for prophylactic hypervolemia.
3. Administer nimodipine.

Cardiovascular Instability

1. BP and cardiac output goals will alter as aneurysm is secured.
2. ECG

If abnormal (QTc prolongation, ST-segment changes): check troponins.

If troponins elevated: perform echocardiography.

3. Perform echocardiography if any hemodynamic lability or heart failure is suspected.
4. Monitor cardiac output.
5. Select vasopressors for cardiac output and blood pressure.
6. Consider aneurysm treatment as soon as practical.
7. Reserve coronary catheterization for isolated wall motion deficit and rising troponins (coil aneurysm first if possible).
8. Delayed cerebral ischemia: treat with euvolemia/mild hypervolemia, vasopressors, and cardiac output monitoring; adjust management based on perfusion targets when possible.
9. Transfusion: maintain hematocrit >25%.

BP, Blood pressure; *ECG,* electrocardiogram.

in myocardial stunning. Different receptor genotypes have an increased sensitivity to catecholamines and are associated with a 3- to 4.8-fold increased risk of cardiac injury and dysfunction.[171]

Troponins are frequently elevated in about 30% of patients after acute SAH. High serum levels are associated with increased hemorrhage, hemodynamic fluctuations, and worse outcomes.[172] Release of troponin can represent cardiac ischemia in patients with atherosclerotic heart disease or a "myocardial leak" from neurogenic injury.[172]

Cardiac dysfunction may complicate and limit the active treatment options for delayed cerebral ischemia (DCI) and increased ICP. A typical strategy for cardiovascular management is given in Box 84.3 based on comprehensive consensus guidelines.[157,158]

Pulmonary injury is a frequent complication after SAH, with nearly 17% of patients developing severe pulmonary dysfunction, including ARDS, which is associated with poor neurologic outcome.[173] In addition to acquired respiratory infections, common in ventilated ICU patients, neurogenic pulmonary edema caused by increased permeability of the pulmonary vasculature can occur in isolation or in combination with neurogenic cardiac problems.[174]

Secondary Brain Injury

Delayed Cerebral Ischemia. DCI is one of the most severe complications of SAH and is associated with worse outcomes. Although the exact mechanism of DCI is still unclear, multiple potential causes beyond cerebral vasospasm have been investigated, including microcirculatory dysfunction, microthrombosis, cortical spreading depolarization, and neuroinflammation.[175,176] About one-third of patients will develop symptoms from DCI as early as 3 to 5 days after the onset, with a peak frequency between 5 and 7 days, generally waning over 2 to 4 weeks. Seventy percent of patients will develop angiographic vasospasm, although only 30% to 40% of patients will become symptomatic. In addition, not all patients with DCI have evidence of vasospasm, suggesting vasospasm-independent mechanisms.[177]

Cerebral vasospasm is still considered as a cause of DCI, and most often the target of treatment interventions. Patients with a large amount of subarachnoid blood are at a higher risk for developing vasospasm. Radiographic tools such as the Hijdra sum score and Fisher score were developed to predict vasospasm (Table 84.8).[104,178] The modified Fisher score is the most commonly used to clinically prognosticate the risk of vasospasm (Table 84.9),[179] with the highest incidence of vasospasm observed in patients with modified Fisher grade 4.[180] Vasospasm monitoring is facilitated by serial clinical exams and the use of imaging modalities such as transcranial Doppler, CT with perfusion, and cerebral angiography.

Medical management of DCI centers on augmentation of arterial blood pressure with vasopressors, in the context of euvolemia rather than hypervolemia.[181] "Triple-H therapy," hypertension-hypervolemia-hemodilution, is no longer recommended because there was little evidence of benefit and potential harm shown in randomized control trials and meta-analyses.[182] The use of deliberate transfusion to increase oxygen delivery in the setting of DCI is controversial and needs to be balanced against the deleterious effects of transfusion. A prospective trial is awaited. Trials of endothelin antagonists and statins provided further evidence of some dissociation between vasospasm and clinical outcomes, as neither drug class showed any effect on outcome despite a decrease in the incidence of vasospasm.[183]

Nimodipine should be started for all patients as soon as possible after diagnosis for 21 days. Studies on the use of nimodipine provide the only level I evidence from randomized control trials in SAH that showed modest reduction in the incidence of ischemic deficit without any apparent effect on angiographic vasospasm.[184-187]

In patients who are refractory to medical therapy for DCI, the use of endovascular therapies can be considered.[188,189] Mechanical balloon dilation of blood vessels (angioplasty) can provide an effective treatment for vasospasm involving the larger arteries.[190,191] Intraarterial injection of vasodilator agents, most commonly calcium channel blockers such as nicardipine and verapamil, can be effective in smaller caliber vessels but are limited by the transient nature of their effects (<24 hours).[192]

Hyponatremia. Hyponatremia is observed in 30% to 40% of patients with SAH, and is most commonly the result of cerebral salt-wasting syndrome (CSWS) or the syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone (SIADH).[193] Because these two conditions have different pathophysiology, correct diagnosis and management of hyponatremia is important, particularly when it precedes development of DCI and can worsen clinical outcome. In CSWS, sodium is actively excreted from the body in high concentration, and accompanying diuresis occurs, despite ongoing hyponatremia with hypovolemia.[194] Management of CSWS is the replacement of sodium with isotonic or hypertonic saline to restore volume depletion. Fludrocortisone is considered if diuresis is active and precludes the

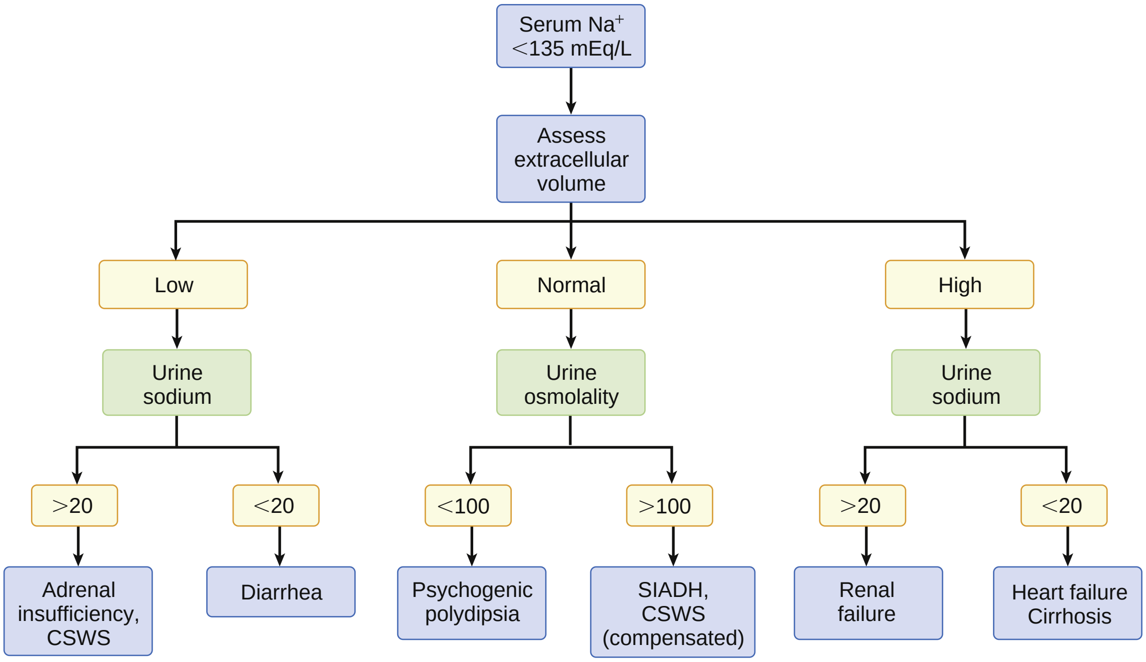


Fig. 84.7 Algorithm for the differential diagnosis of hyponatremia in the neurosurgical patient. *CSWS,* Cerebral salt-wasting syndrome; *SIADH,* syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone.

maintenance of adequate fluid balance.[157,158] Patients with SIADH are typically hypervolemic and are treated with fluid restriction to restore euvolemia and suppress antidiuretic hormone (ADH) release.[195] A suggested algorithm for resolving diagnostic uncertainty is given in Fig. 84.7.

ISCHEMIC STROKE

Stroke is the fifth leading cause of death in the United States and the second leading cause of death globally, accounting for nearly 12% of deaths worldwide with disproportionately higher mortality rates in lower income countries. Although mortality has declined in the United States, stroke remains a major source of disability.[196,197]

Acute ischemic stroke (AIS) is increasingly a treatable neurologic emergency. The deprivation of oxygen and nutrients to the brain beyond the combined thresholds of severity and time induces cellular death in neuronal tissue, resulting in ischemic infarction. The ischemic penumbra is potentially salvageable when factors such as collateral flow and residual perfusion blood flow to brain tissue yield a longer period before irreversible ischemic injury, thereby giving the opportunity for aggressive intervention with revascularization therapies such as thrombolysis and mechanical thrombectomy. Current guidelines recommend intravenous thrombolytics within 4.5 hours and embolectomy with modern thrombectomy devices for large vessel occlusion within 6 hours of symptom onset in eligible patients.[198-200] With current perfusion imaging tools, embolectomy in expanded time windows after stroke onset has shown efficacy in selected patients.[201] Vertebrobasilar occlusion may also benefit from the more recent techniques in even longer time windows.[202]

Successful management of AIS extends beyond the emergency treatment to reperfuse and recover threatened brain tissue. Ongoing management in the critical care setting is necessary to maintain adequate CBF to protect the ischemic penumbra and address factors that adversely affect vulnerable ischemic brain tissue such as fever and abnormal glucose. Early management of the potential complications of AIS, including postinfarction cerebral edema, hemorrhagic transformation, and reperfusion injury, are critical to improving patient outcomes.

Hypotension is uncommon after AIS but requires aggressive management. Neurologic deterioration, poor outcomes, and increased mortality have been reported with baseline blood pressures less than 100/70 mm Hg.[203] Common causes of arterial hypotension include hypovolemia, blood loss, decreased cardiac output, myocardial infarction, and arrhythmias. Neurocardiogenic injury has been described in particular with involvement of the right insula and may predispose to ECG changes and life-threatening arrhythmias.[204,205] The most common arrhythmia associated with AIS is atrial fibrillation.[206] Cardiac monitoring is recommended for at least the first 24 hours after stroke, with additional monitoring of cardiac function if there is evidence of symptomatic heart failure.

Elevated blood pressure should not be aggressively treated in the acute setting because the potential risk of lowering blood pressure may threaten penumbral perfusion and exacerbate brain ischemia. Urgent antihypertensive treatment may be needed for medical complications such as hypertensive encephalopathy, aortic dissection, and acute organ failure. Cautious lowering of blood pressure by 15% if it exceeds 220/120 mm Hg is indicated in certain clinical conditions. Because of the risk of hemorrhagic transformation with thrombolysis, blood pressure should be lowered to less than or equal to 185/110 mm Hg prior to treatment and maintained at less than 180/105 mm Hg for at least 24 hours. Similar blood pressure goals are recommended after revascularization procedures such as intraarterial thrombolysis and embolectomy.[198]

Hypoxia can also exacerbate ischemic injury. Poor airway control, hypoventilation, and aspiration pneumonia are most common after AIS. The patient's airway should be assessed, and tracheal intubation must be considered in stuporous or comatose patients. In addition, patients with brainstem involvement may be at high risk for aspiration. Although intubation and mechanical ventilation is associated with poor outcome and increased mortality, prevention of hypoxia and aspiration pneumonia should be considered.[198]

Changes in the patient examination after AIS may indicate a hemorrhagic complication, cerebral hyperperfusion, or cerebral edema and should prompt an emergent noncontrast CT. Thrombolysis bleeding should be treated with emergency administration of cryoprecipitate. Other rare events to monitor after alteplase administration include allergic reactions such as anaphylaxis and angioedema.[207,208] Attention should be paid to any signs of systemic hemorrhage such as lower abdominal pain, which may indicate retroperitoneal bleeding after embolectomy. Cerebral hyperperfusion is rare, but can also cause neurologic symptoms likely caused by sudden, rapid increase in CBF following revascularization. If severe, patients may develop headache, seizures, confusion, and potentially fatal cerebral edema and intracranial hemorrhage. Blood pressure should be monitored and lowered in patients with suspected hyperperfusion syndrome.[209]

Cerebral edema typically occurs during the first 3 to 5 days after AIS and subsides by 2 weeks. The overall risk of significant cerebral edema is low but tends to occur with distal carotid artery or MCA occlusion with complete MCA infarction. A subset of patients can have early (within 24 hours) malignant cerebral edema with brain herniation signs, which is associated with the highest mortality after AIS. Posterior fossa strokes are also associated with rapid neurologic deterioration from brain edema. Cerebellar infarctions may produce local edema that causes acute hydrocephalus with brainstem compression that can lead to rapid coma and sudden respiratory failure. Medical management using hyperosmolar therapies with mannitol and hypertonic saline and temporary hyperventilation may be helpful. Surgical interventions include management of hydrocephalus with external ventricular drainage and decompressive craniectomy. Early suboccipital craniectomy is potentially lifesaving with good clinical results.[210] Hemicraniectomy for anterior circulation stroke remains more controversial. In selected patients when performed early, outcomes may be better. Based on the combination of randomized trials in Europe, early decompressive hemicraniectomy is effective in decreasing mortality and improving clinical outcome in survivors.[211,212]

A standardized and systematic approach to stroke treatment provided by certified stroke centers has been shown to improve outcomes. Established protocols for all stroke patients including their ICU care have led to more uniform management of not only emergency delivery of care, but also supportive medical care such as glucose control, prevention of deep venous thrombosis, nutrition, and early rehabilitation.[213]

INTRACEREBRAL HEMORRHAGE

ICH has an overall incidence of 24.6 per 100,000 person years, with a high case fatality rate especially in low-income countries.[214,215] Nontraumatic ICH is often categorized as spontaneous or primary when associated with risk factors such as hypertension, tobacco, alcohol and substance use, antithrombotic medications, underlying coagulopathy, and amyloid angiopathy (especially in lobar hemorrhages). ICH may also arise from secondary causes such as ruptured aneurysm, ruptured vascular malformation, conversion from ischemic stroke, or tumor. This wide range of differential diagnoses can swiftly be refined by CT angiogram and assessment of pathophysiologic effect, with accompanying clinical signs aiding localization. Angiography may be required to further characterize any underlying vascular sources such as aneurysm, arteriovenous malformation, or dural fistula.

Management is important to avoid secondary insult by reducing the incidence of rebleeding, hypoxemia, hypercarbia, or cerebral edema. Initial care is directed toward the airway and circulation, with control of arterial blood pressure and early reversal of coagulopathy to decrease the risk of ICH volume expansion and rebleeding.[215,216] If the ICH is in the posterior fossa or midbrain, consideration should be given to the insertion of a ventriculostomy and early surgical decompression to reduce the risk of hydrocephalus and brainstem compression. Patients with lesions in these regions are prone to airway and respiratory problems and may need early tracheal intubation to protect their airway and prevent aspiration. The use of clinical severity scores such as NIH Stroke Scale and GCS with hourly neurologic assessments can detect early clinical deterioration prompting repeat imaging and aggressive management of cerebral edema or hematoma expansion. Medical management of volume status and sodium can be critical in patients with cerebral edema requiring hyperosmolar therapies.[216] The use of validated prognostic scores such as the ICH score for mortality and FUNC score for functional independence are additional tools that providers can use to communicate goals of care.[217,218]

Hypertension after ICH is common and associated with increased hematoma volumes and worse outcomes. Based on randomized controlled trials of aggressive blood pressure management, lowering SBP to a range of 120 to 140 mm Hg was safe, but did not improve outcomes when compared to lowering SBP to 140 to 160 mm Hg and is reflected in the American Heart Association guidelines.[215,219-221] If the initial CT or MRI appearance suggests aneurysm or arteriovenous malformation, then care should be taken to limit blood pressure to reduce the risk of rebleeding. The addition of ICP monitoring allows setting a CPP target and provides a more physiologic approach to the management of systemic blood pressure.

Coagulopathy increases the severity of ICH, with significant hematoma expansion. Acute management with rapid reversal of coagulopathy is warranted.[222] In the setting of vitamin K antagonists, use of prothrombin complex concentrates (PCCs) is advocated. In a prospective, randomized trial of PCC compared to fresh frozen plasma (FFP), PCCs had significantly faster international normalized ratio correction, decreased hematoma expansion, and decreased mortality.[223] There were no significant differences with thrombotic complications, and PCCs avoided the risk of volume overload and transfusion reactions associated with FFP. In patients with known recent thrombotic events, PCCs should be used with caution. With increasing use of the novel oral anticoagulants (NOACs), there is a rising need for rapid reversal agents for NOAC-associated ICH. Idarucizumab is a monoclonal antibody that can bind to dabigatran and rapidly correct coagulopathy in the setting of life-threatening bleed. Andexanet alfa was recently approved by the FDA for reversal of factor Xa inhibitors.[222] In ICH patients on antiplatelet therapy, the use of platelet transfusions to reduce the risk of hematoma expansion and improve outcomes are more controversial. In a prospective, randomized trial of platelet transfusion within 6 hours compared to standard medical therapy in a nonsurgical ICH population, there was no benefit to transfusion, and an increase in mortality and higher disability.[224] Platelet transfusion prior to surgical intervention has not been well studied.

Other neuroprotection strategies remain unproven. Unlike SAH, nimodipine does not have an established role in ICH. Corticosteroids are also not indicated. Statins may be beneficial in ICH when continued in current users. However, starting statins in acute ICH has not been proven beneficial. The role of long-term statin and increased risk of recurrent bleed is also controversial.[215,225] Newer agents such as the iron chelator, deferoxamine, are currently in clinical trials. Large trials of surgical hematoma evacuation have not shown benefit.[226] However, in patients with cerebellar hemorrhage and brainstem compression or in those showing acute neurologic deterioration or obstructive hydrocephalus, surgical evacuation may be indicated.[215] The use of thrombolytics in intraventricular hemorrhage was shown in a randomized, controlled trial to improve mortality, but not functional outcome.[227] There are several ongoing trials testing the benefit of decompressive surgery without hematoma evacuation, minimally invasive surgery, catheter-based hematoma aspiration with thrombolysis (phase 3 trial), and new endoscopic devices.

STATUS EPILEPTICUS

Status epilepticus is a medical and neurologic emergency that is associated with significant morbidity and mortality. Defined as continuous or rapid sequential seizure activity without recovery between attacks, or more strictly, continuous seizure lasting at least 30 minutes, this condition affects both children and adults with an estimated annual incidence of 12.6 per 100,000 worldwide.[228] Although all types of seizures may present status epilepticus, there are two main classifications: convulsive (typically generalized tonic-clonic activity) and nonconvulsive. In addition, psychogenic or nonepileptic seizures can mimic status epilepticus and present their own particular diagnostic challenges.[229] In comatose critically ill patients, obtain an EEG if there are no other explanations for the comatose state.

Seizure activity may arise from multiple etiologies, including any major insult affecting the cerebral cortex (e.g.,vascular, infectious, mechanical, metabolic, or toxic). Even mild insults may provoke status epilepticus if the seizure threshold is reduced by preexisting parenchymal disease or comorbidity (e.g., alcohol withdrawal). Given the previously outlined emphasis on the avoidance and termination of secondary insult to the brain, management of status epilepticus is focused on acute stabilization, rapid control of seizures, and timely identification and treatment of the underlying etiology. Management guidelines have been published that address the important phases of management.[230] Initial goals in the first 5 minutes of treatment include stabilization of the patient's airway, breathing, and circulation with rapid assessment of any neurologic disability. The subsequent treatment phases are focused on seizure termination and prevention of recurrence. Prompt treatment of seizure in the first 5 to 10 minutes should be instituted because a seizure lasting beyond 5 minutes is unlikely to stop spontaneously. Recommended agents include midazolam, lorazepam, and diazepam. If seizures persist, second phase treatments include loading doses of anticonvulsants such as fosphenytoin, valproic acid, levetiracetam, or phenobarbital (if other agents are not available). Ongoing seizures beyond 40 minutes involve third-phase therapies, which include repeating second-line agents or moving to anesthetic doses of thiopental, midazolam, pentobarbital, or propofol. This approach would likely require intubation and ventilation. Paralytic agents should be avoided for the long-term due to fear of masking ongoing or recurrent seizures. Continuous EEG is highly recommended. In patients refractory to treatment, alternative options such as inhaled anesthetics and electroconvulsive therapies have been used with success, but evidence supporting the routine use is lacking.[231,232]

Status epilepticus is also associated with numerous systemic complications that can be related directly to the neurologic injury or associated with the treatments. Early management of acute hypoxic respiratory failure and associated acid-base imbalance can prevent secondary injury. Treatment of glucose abnormalities and early detection and treatment of infection can also prevent seizure recurrence. Myocardial depression from cardiotoxicity of seizure treatments may require additional cardiac monitoring and vasopressor support. Traumatic injury, rhabdomyolysis, and renal dysfunction should be monitored in patients with prolonged convulsions. Many of the antiepileptic medications can cause ileus, hypomotility, and potentially gut ischemia.[233]

Neuromuscular Disease

Neuromuscular diseases involving the muscle, nerve, and neuromuscular junction can pose unique challenges for the anesthesiologist in the ICU. We will review two common diseases that may require critical care management.

GUILLAIN-BARRÉ SYNDROME

Guillain-Barré syndrome (GBS) is a common cause of acute, severe neuropathy occurring at a rate of 1 to 2 cases per 100,000 persons per year worldwide. The incidence increases with age and is more prevalent in men. Because of the associated complications, including respiratory failure, GBS is one of the neurologic causes of admission to critical care units. Although GBS is associated with low overall mortality (6.9%), mortality increases with the need for mechanical ventilation (14.3%). These patients tend to have a higher incidence of cardiorespiratory arrest before ICU admission, prolonged ICU length of stay, and higher severity of illness scores.[234-236]

Several distinct clinical variants are associated with the syndrome, including acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy (AIDP), acute motor axonal neuropathy (AMAN), acute motor-sensory axonal neuropathy (AMSAN), and Miller-Fisher syndrome (MFS). The classic and most common variant of GBS is AIDP that typically manifests as a relatively symmetric, ascending muscle weakness that can progressively lead to severe flaccid paralysis and respiratory failure affecting 20% to 30% of cases. More than half the patients have a recent history of bacterial or viral infection. *Campylobacter jejuni* is the most frequently observed pathogen, along with cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus, and herpes simplex virus.[237] Regional variation has been associated with higher rates of infectious exposures, including recent association with the Zika and chikungunya viral epidemics.[238] GBS may also display sensory and autonomic features, depending on the subtype, and variation in speed of onset and offset. The AMAN variant is usually associated with *C. jejuni* infections, and the severe limb weakness is related to the autoimmune antibody response against GM1 and GD1a gangliosides. Similarly, with the MFS variant, anti-GQ1b antibodies can cause symptoms affecting the cranial nerves resulting in the clinical triad of ophthalmoplegia, ataxia, and areflexia.[235]

Commonly, the preceding infection or other immune response triggers an autoimmune reaction to peripheral nerves and spinal roots. Within 1 to 2 weeks after exposure, symptoms progress over several days to reach their peak at 2 to 4 weeks, with a plateau thereafter. In approximately 5% of patients, GBS progresses more rapidly, with maximal loss of function within 72 hours of symptom onset. At 4 weeks, most patients have progressed to the limit of their symptoms, and improvement is observed to start soon thereafter. However, recovery may be protracted for months to years depending on the extent of nerve injury.[239,240]

Investigations should include electrocardiography, CSF protein (for acellular protein elevation), electrophysiologic studies (axonal degeneration is associated with poorer recovery), and antibody status or screening for possible causative pathogens as well as prognosis. GM1 antibody is associated with worse recovery.[240]

Loss of ventilatory efficacy is often the main reason for admission to the ICU. A forced vital capacity of less than 20 mL/kg is a sensitive indicator of need for observation, and 15 mL/kg for probable intubation, along with maximal inspiratory pressure (MIP) less than -30 cm H_2O and clinical signs of fatigue and airway compromise. Hypercarbia is a relatively late sign, and the clinician should not rely on it. The Erasmus GBS Respiratory Insufficiency Score (EGRIS) is a validated tool to assist in prediction of which patients may benefit from early admission to the ICU based on severity of weakness, timing of symptoms, and bulbar symptoms.[241] Similarly, predicting successful weaning occurs in younger patients with milder symptoms and evidence of rapid improvement. Early tracheostomy in identifiably prolonged respiratory failure cases is appropriate.[242]

Dysautonomia is seen in up to 20% of patients and is a source of morbidity.[240] ICU level monitoring should also be considered for GBS patients with autonomic nervous system involvement that can cause cardiac arrhythmia, blood pressure lability, uncontrolled sweating, temperature dysregulation, ileus, and bladder dysfunction.

Supportive care in the ICU is important for patient outcomes, including DVT prophylaxis, early mobilization and rehabilitation, nutrition, and psychosocial support. Specific challenges to management are the problems of deafferentation pain and psychiatric depression. The pain can be severe, is truncal in distribution, and may respond to anticonvulsants more than opiates. It certainly contributes to the frequently observed depression. This pain is often magnified by immobility, boredom, and the limited ability of busy staff to engage actively with a cognitively intact patient.[240]

Both symptom limitation and recovery from GBS have been improved with the use of plasmapheresis or intravenous immune globulin (IVIG). No advantage is seen with one treatment approach over the other or in combination. However, many physicians try them sequentially in cases of treatment failure. In patients with acute respiratory failure, persistence of lack of foot flexion at the conclusion of immunotherapy is an indicator of prolonged mechanical ventilation.[243] Neither interferon nor corticosteroid use has been shown to improve outcome, either alone or in combination with immunotherapy, but newer immune modulation drugs are currently in clinical trials.[244]

MYASTHENIA GRAVIS

Several disorders affecting the neuromuscular junction, including toxins and immune-mediated and genetic syndromes, can cause skeletal muscle weakness. Myasthenia gravis (MG) is the most common of these disorders. Although the majority of patients with MG have autoantibodies against the muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (AChR-Ab), some patients will have autoantibodies to muscle-specific tyrosine kinase (MuSK-Ab) or lipoprotein-related protein 4 (LRP4). Myasthenia itself has a strong association with various autoimmune conditions (e.g., thyroid disease, pernicious anemia, and rheumatoid arthritis), as well as being linked to women with certain human leukocyte antigen types.[245,246]

Although MG is a relatively rare disease (incidence of 4 to 12 per million person years and prevalence of 40 to 180 per million worldwide), it is relevant to neurocritical care in that patients can present acutely in myasthenic crisis with rapid deterioration of muscle function and ventilatory failure. Typical of autoimmune diseases, MG occurs in young adult women, with a mean age of 30. There is also a late onset presentation in men with mean age over 50 years. Modern management with immunosuppression and supportive treatment has led to improved prognosis with overall mortality rates of 2.2% to 4.5%, including recent lower ICU mortality rates of 5.3%.[247,248]

The myasthenic crisis can be precipitated by a progression in severity of the disease state or often by amplification by another factor. This factor can include infection, recent surgery, or interruption of immunosuppressants. Many drugs can exacerbate myasthenic crisis, including aminoglycosides, fluoroquinolones, anticonvulsants (including phenytoin), steroids, β-blockers, calcium channel antagonists, ketamine, lidocaine, neuromuscular blockers, and anticholinergic agents.[249]

The diagnosis should be suspected in patients with variable weakness, including respiratory, ocular, and bulbar muscles. Diagnostic workup is often to exclude GBS, brainstem stroke, organophosphate poisoning, and botulism. Tests should include electrophysiologic studies (helpful in seronegative cases), CSF protein, edrophonium response (less commonly used), and autoantibody testing to AChR and MUSK and LRP4. Subtyping by autoantibody type is increasingly important for diagnosis and management.[245]

The presentation is typically that of acutely worsening weakness of the respiratory or pharyngeal muscles. The patient should be observed closely for signs of impending respiratory failure. Forced vital capacity is useful, with 15 mL/kg being a useful trigger for intubation.[250]

Symptomatic treatment with acetylcholinesterase inhibitors is often diagnostic as well as therapeutic, balancing improvement in weakness with side effects from cholinergic stimulation. The other mainstay of therapy is immunomodulation. Typically, IVIG or plasmapheresis is started quickly to limit progression of severe generalized symptoms and avert frank crisis. Corticosteroids do have a role in establishing longer-term control of immunosuppression because IVIG and plasmapheresis have limited duration of efficacy. Corticosteroids alone are associated with a transient worsening of symptoms, before improvement, so they are best used concurrently with or immediately after plasmapheresis or IVIG. Chronic management typically involves tapering to low doses of prednisone with addition of a glucocorticoid-sparing immunomodulating agent (azathioprine, mycophenolate mofetil, cyclosporine, or tacrolimus) if necessary. Newer immunosuppression agents, including complement inhibition, are potentially new strategies.[251]

Central Nervous System Infection

Meningitis and encephalitis can be life threatening neurologic emergencies that require critical care management. Inflammation of the meninges and/or the brain can have multiple etiologies with CNS infections being the most common and having significant morbidity and mortality. Early recognition and treatment particularly of bacterial meningitis and herpes encephalitis can improve patient outcomes. The global burden of CNS infection disproportionately impacts lower-income countries. For bacterial meningitis, there are an estimated 3 million cases each year with the highest incidence of 85 cases per 100,000 persons in low income versus 6 cases per 100,000 persons in higher income countries.[252]

MENINGITIS

Meningitis is a serious condition producing inflammation of the leptomeninges covering the CNS. The causative pathogens differ among different patient populations. Community infections are frequently caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae, Listeria monocytogenes, Neisseria meningitidis,* and group B streptococci. *N. meningitidis* is particularly evident in teenagers. Since the advent of childhood vaccination programs, meningitis has become quite rare in high-income countries, with the highest incidence in children under the age of 1. In low-income countries, poverty and poor access to health care have led to persistently high rates of infection with regional differences in the pathogens reported. In the United States, *H. influenzae* affects mainly adults, but other organisms tend to affect all age groups. Worldwide, *S. pneumonia* and *N. meningitidis* are the most common pathogens in adults. Viral infections typically have a more subacute presentation. Fungal meningitis should be considered in immunocompromised patients. Nosocomial infection, in contrast, predominantly arises in the neurosurgical patient, especially with the use of ventricular devices, and the pathogens here comprise gram-negative rods and staphylococci.[253]

Initial assessment should include basic resuscitation, attention to airway management in patients with low GCS, and assessment of sepsis. Diagnostic features include fever, almost invariably with the classic nuchal rigidity and change in mental status; less often, photophobia, papilledema, and new-onset seizures may be seen. A rash is typical of meningococcal infection. Tests should include CSF cell count, protein, glucose, Gram stain, and culture, but any previous antibiotic dosing can diminish sensitivity, although polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing using amplification may be able to identify small amounts of DNA in a sample. Viral PCR, immunoglobulin, fungal antigens, and cultures can also be considered. Opening pressure should always be recorded when possible. A CT scan should delay the lumbar puncture only when the patient's history suggests a previous mass lesion, stroke, or focal infection, recent seizures, or immunocompromised state.[254] Similarly, signs of papilledema, depressed level of consciousness, or focal deficit indicate a need for a CT examination to avoid herniation. Cerebral edema can develop in patients with meningitis and can lead to acute deterioration in mental status. ICP monitoring may be indicated.[255]

Treatment should be instituted quickly, delaying only to obtain emergency samples for Gram stain and culture. If no identification is possible on Gram stain, empiric antibiotic therapy should be delivered with third-generation cephalosporins (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), along with vancomycin, until organism identification and sensitivities are obtained. This approach covers many of the community-acquired pathogens but should be tailored to individual patients and other potential pathogens. Nosocomial or trauma-associated infections may need broader spectrum antibiotic coverage. Steroids are useful adjuncts in bacterial meningitis and have been shown to reduce complications but not overall mortality.[256,257] The outcome of meningitis is a function of patient-related factors, the pathogenicity of the organism, and the time to effective treatment.

ENCEPHALITIS

Encephalitis manifests with fever, headache, and alteration of consciousness. Patients may also have delirium, focal deficit, and, commonly, seizures. Nuchal rigidity may be present in a mixed meningoencephalitis picture but should be absent in isolated encephalitis. Accompanying identifiers may be a vesicular rash associated with herpes zoster (although its absence does not remove zoster from the differential diagnosis), bilateral paralysis typical of West Nile disease, parotitis if mumps is suspected, and, of course, the hyperactivity, hydrophobia, and pharyngeal spasm of rabies.[253,258]

Many nonviral and noninfectious causes of encephalitis may confound the diagnosis. These include an expanding group of autoimmune encephalitis, vasculitis, systemic lupus erythematosus, stroke, rickettsial and parasitic infection, and drug-induced meningitis. Careful examination of clinical features, history, and laboratory data is necessary. CSF should be drawn for viral DNA PCR as well as the routine biochemistry, culture, and cell count. MRI with contrast is useful in identifying the demyelination and edema that can be difficult to see on CT. Serum serology is helpful for the diagnosis of Epstein-Barr virus, mumps, and West Nile disease as sources of encephalitis. Paired samples are recommended to allow later comparison if CSF PCR is unhelpful. Brain biopsy was considered the gold standard but is now a last option, after CSF PCR, culture, and serology have proven negative.[259]

Herpes simplex type 1 infection carries a very poor outlook if it is not treated expeditiously, and a course of empiric intravenous acyclovir is recommended until herpes infection has been excluded. Treatment for other viral etiologies is mainly supportive, including respiratory care and seizure management.[255] Other mosquito-borne viral infections such as West Nile and Zika have been increasing globally.

The pathogen mostly remains unidentified, and outcome usually then depends on classification of the clinical features, with intractable seizure and cerebral edema carrying a poor prognosis. Self-limiting seizure usually indicates a swift recovery. The advent of high-throughput DNA sequencing has advanced the ability to detect viral pathogens and potentially virus discovery in cases of unexplained meningitis and encephalitis.[260]

Postoperative Neurosurgical Care

Many neurosurgical procedures are lengthy and involve significant insult to the brain. Thus, postoperative ICU admission is necessary to avoid secondary insult and monitor postoperative complications like intracranial rebleeding, cerebral edema, or seizures. The incidence of post-craniotomy bleeding of 0.5% is associated with increased blood pressure during and after surgery (SBP >160 mm Hg; MAP >110 mm Hg) and mainly occurs during the first 24 hours.[261]

The patient should be extubated immediately after surgery if possible because a full clinical and neurologic evaluation of the awake patient is the best way to detect post-craniotomy complications. Exceptions are possibly extremely long operations, low preoperative GCS, major surgery in the posterior cranial fossa or close to the brain stem, or a high risk for the development of cerebral edema. The incidence for postoperative complications is higher in patients with intraventricular tumors.[262] Early extubation in combination with close neurologic monitoring is safe and omits the need for routine postoperative CT.[263] In patients where a planned extubation cannot be performed within 1 hour after surgery, an immediate CT should be performed, as these patients have a high risk for postoperative complications and may need emergency neurosurgical interventions.[263]

Pain is often underestimated after craniotomy and narcotics are avoided due to the fear of hypoventilation, which might increase ICP.[264] Therefore, a careful evaluation of pain using the visual analog scale and adequate therapy with nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs and opioids must be initiated. A scalp block with local anesthetics also reduces postoperative pain.

Patients after craniotomy have a high risk for postoperative nausea and vomiting. As retching and vomiting are extremely unpleasant for the patient and additionally increase the risk of rebleeding, pharmacologic prevention with selective serotonin antagonists (e.g., ondansetron and granisetron) in combination with low-dose corticosteroids should be used.[265]

DVT and pulmonary embolism occur in 3% of the patients up to 30 days after craniotomy with a peak at the third postoperative day. Prophylaxis with heparin can be initiated in most cases 1 day after surgery.[266,267]

BRAIN DEATH

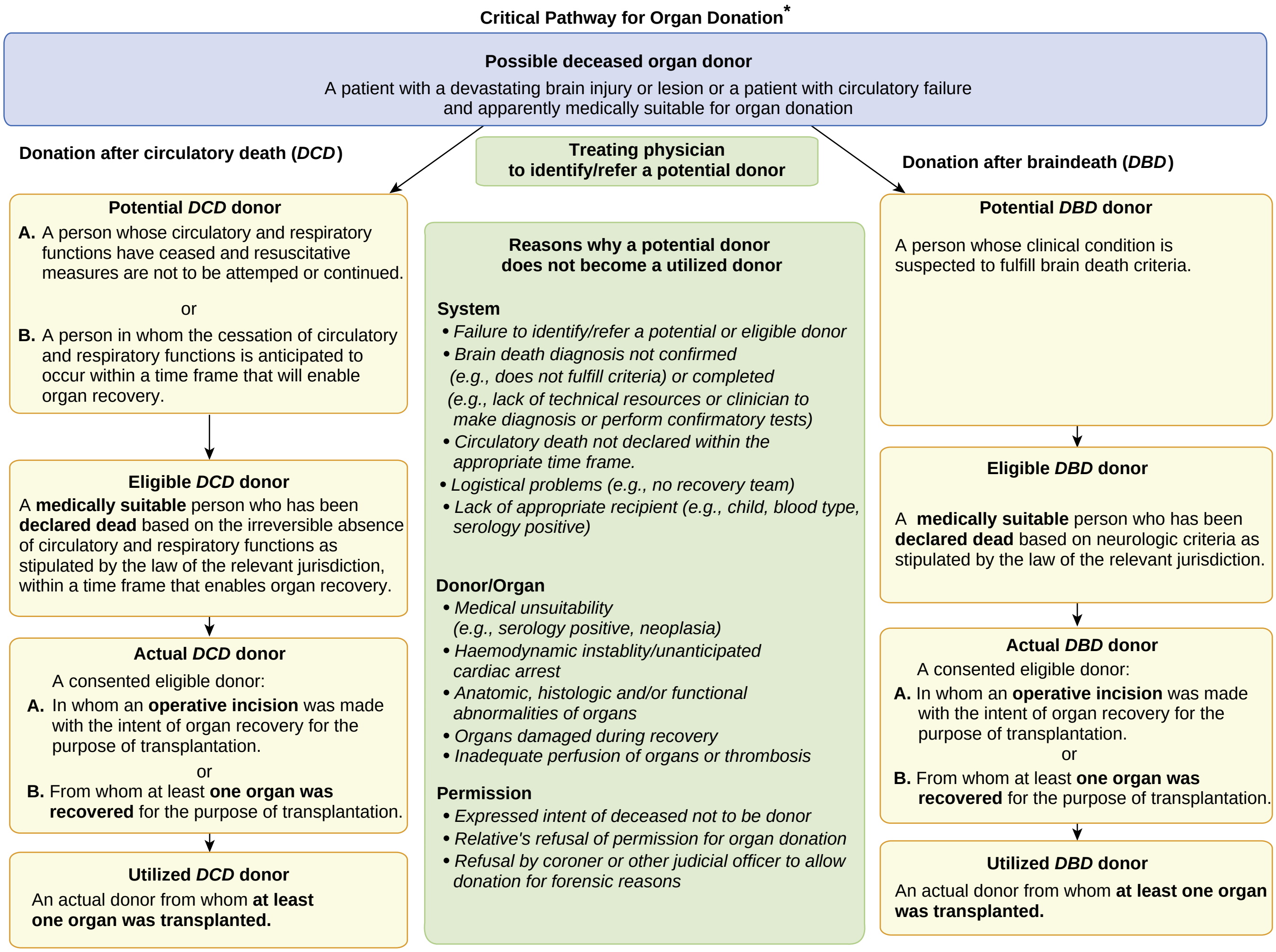
The diagnosis of brain death remains one of the most challenging and controversial areas of neurocritical care. Physicians must have adequate training and understanding of the principles of brain death declaration and be able to apply them assiduously and without compromise (see Chapter 83).

Declaration of brain death was originally codified by the Harvard criteria in 1968, with subsequent modification to allow separation of cerebral death from death of the entire nervous system, including the spinal cord.[268,269] The diagnosis is built on a thorough clinical examination of nervous system function, involving evaluation of the reflex response of the brain and cranial nerves to hypercarbia, pain, light, temperature change, attitudinal change of the middle ear, and detection of the blink, cough, and gag reflexes. The mechanisms for the irreversible cause of neurologic dysfunction should be clear. The examination must be done in circumstances of adequate systemic oxygenation and perfusion. Confounders, such as hypothermia, metabolic or endocrine compromise, and persistent sedative or neuromuscular drugs, must be corrected. One of the tests should include an appropriately conducted apnea trial in the presence of the responsible physician, with confirmation of adequate changes in $PaCO_2$. If for any reason any test cannot be completed in a safe manner or to the satisfaction of the responsible physician(s), then an ancillary test should be performed based on standard policies. The hospital should have an institutionally approved protocol for brain death declaration and the conduct of any ancillary tests. In addition, mechanisms for regular review and quality improvement are essential.

Proper training and knowledge of administrative and legal policies are essential, as there may be differences across hospitals, regions, and countries. Guidelines on the examination and examiner may be different in adult versus pediatric cases).[270,271] In addition, physician qualifications may vary by training in neurology, neurosurgery, or neurocritical care. Perhaps more important than the diagnosis of brain death is communicating with the care team and the family.

Ethical Considerations

Ethical issues are frequently encountered in a neurocritical care unit (see Chapter 8). Unfortunately, significant life-altering morbidity can occur, to the extent that many patients and families would not prefer aggressive therapy.[272] This can be a difficult concept to accept for the physician, whose aim is to heal and preserve life. However, the ethical imperative in Western culture is to preserve the autonomy of the individual (along with the principles of nonmaleficence, beneficence, and justice), and this has been extended to health care decision making. This situation may lead to uncomfortable choices and communication within the health care team, whose members may


Critical Pathway for Organ Donation*
Possible deceased organ donor
A patient with a devastating brain injury or lesion or a patient with circulatory failure and apparently medically suitable for organ donation
Donation after circulatory death (DCD)
Treating physician to identify/refer a potential donor
Donation after braindeath (DBD)
Potential DCD donor
A. A person whose circulatory and respiratory functions have ceased and resuscitative measures are not to be attemped or continued.
or
B. A person in whom the cessation of circulatory and respiratory functions is anticipated to occur within a time frame that will enable organ recovery.
Eligible DCD donor
A medically suitable person who has been declared dead based on the irreversible absence of circulatory and respiratory functions as stipulated by the law of the relevant jurisdiction, within a time frame that enables organ recovery.
Actual DCD donor
A consented eligible donor:
A. In whom an operative incision was made with the intent of organ recovery for the purpose of transplantation.
or
B. From whom at least one organ was recovered for the purpose of transplantation.
Utilized DCD donor
An actual donor from whom at least one organ was transplanted.
Reasons why a potential donor does not become a utilized donor
System
• Failure to identify/refer a potential or eligible donor
• Brain death diagnosis not confirmed (e.g., does not fulfill criteria) or completed (e.g., lack of technical resources or clinician to make diagnosis or perform confirmatory tests)
• Circulatory death not declared within the appropriate time frame.
• Logistical problems (e.g., no recovery team)
• Lack of appropriate recipient (e.g., child, blood type, serology positive)
Donor/Organ
• Medical unsuitability (e.g., serology positive, neoplasia)
• Haemodynamic instablity/unanticipated cardiac arrest
• Anatomic, histologic and/or functional abnormalities of organs
• Organs damaged during recovery
• Inadequate perfusion of organs or thrombosis
Permission
• Expressed intent of deceased not to be donor
• Relative's refusal of permission for organ donation
• Refusal by coroner or other judicial officer to allow donation for forensic reasons
Potential DBD donor
A person whose clinical condition is suspected to fulfill brain death criteria.
Eligible DBD donor
A medically suitable person who has been declared dead based on neurologic criteria as stipulated by the law of the relevant jurisdiction.
Actual DBD donor
A consented eligible donor:
A. In whom an operative incision was made with the intent of organ recovery for the purpose of transplantation.
or
B. From whom at least one organ was recovered for the purpose of transplantation.
Utilized DBD donor
An actual donor from whom at least one organ was transplanted.

**The "dead donor rule" must be respected. That is, patients may become donors only after death, and the recovery of organs must not cause a donor's death.*

Fig. 84.8 The critical pathways for organ donation after brain death and donation after circulatory death, as published by the World Health Organization. (From Dominguez-Gil B, Delmonico FL, Shaheen FAM, et al. The critical pathway for deceased donation: reportable uniformity in the approach to deceased donation. *Transplant Int.* 2011;24:373.)

have differing opinions on goals as well as the patient and relatives, who, again, may think very differently.

Certain strategies can avoid or minimize these difficulties:

- Prognosis should be made based on the best available evidence. This may involve planning and discussion among the team members in advance of family meetings. Personal anecdotes should be avoided, even if solicited.
- The relationship within the team should be open and collegial, with mutual respect given to the principle of open discussion. This approach avoids misperception of goals and attitudes and enables more consistent communication with families, who often find dissonance among members of the ICU team disturbing.
- The presence of an advance directive offers major benefits, and the neurocritical care unit should have an admissions protocol that includes asking all competent, conscious patients to consider making their attitudes or wishes known.
- Regular family and patient conferences allow communication of prognosis and offer the opportunity for correction of any misconceptions, as well as progressive education of the family members to anticipated problems.
- Internal institutional mechanisms for raising concerns and conducting reviews should be in place. This is often facilitated by the presence of an institutional ethics committee, whose members can examine the issues, promote educational discussion, and help achieve consensus.
- All decision making should be documented carefully and completely.
- Orders for limitation or withdrawal of therapy should be written explicitly, and institutional protocols should be used wherever possible.

Other important areas of possible conflict exist that are not possible to address within the confines of this text, but readers are advised to educate themselves on these and include the following:

- The issues surrounding organ donation from the brain dead and the non-heart-beating donor (Fig. 84.8)
- Withdrawal of care for the incompetent patient without family
- Hospital bylaws and state legislation on the certification of death, whether that be by neurologic or cardiovascular criteria

Conclusion

Neurocritical care demands a thorough comprehension of the physiology, pharmacology, and pathology of the nervous system as well as for the organ systems supporting it. The best care is provided in circumstances that allow multidisciplinary collaboration and appropriate attention to detail of often complex and demanding pathologic processes but integrating them optimally under the direction of the critical care physician.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank the following authors: Michael J. Souter and Arthur M. Lam for their contributions to the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Zygun D. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2005;11:139.
2. Suarez JI, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:2311.
3. Afsar B, et al. *Eur J Intern Med*. 2016;36:7–12.
4. Quilez ME, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2012;18:23–28.
5. Sharshar T, et al. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:37–44.
3. Maramattom BV, et al. *Neurology*. 2004;63:2142.
6. Kalmar AF, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:791.
7. Michinaga S, Koyama Y. *Int J Mol Sci*. 2015; 16:9949–9975.
5. Klatzo I. *Acta Neuropathol (Berl)*. 1987;72:236.
6. Jones PA, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1994;6:4.
8. Beaumont A, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2001;18:1359.
9. Venkat P, et al. *Croat Med J*. 2016;57:223–228.
10. Corps KN, et al. *JAMA Neurol*. 2015;72:355–362.
11. Bramlett HM, Dietrich WD. *J Neurotraum*. 2015;32:1834–1848.
12. Beez T, et al. *Bmc Neurology*. 2017;17.
13. Walia S, Sutcliffe AJ. *Injury*. 2002;33:339–344.
14. Mchugh GS, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:287–293.
15. Karanjia N, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;15:4.
16. Heuer JF, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37:1182–1191.
17. Gonzalvo R, et al. *Crit Care*. 2007;11:216.
18. Young N, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2010;16:45–52.
19. Nemer SN, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2015;30:1263–1266.
20. Diringer MN, Zazulia AR. *Neurocrit Care*. 2004;1:219.
21. Van Aken HK, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25:563–565.
22. Claydon VE, et al. *Spinal Cord*. 2006;44:341.
23. Chapple LA, et al. *Crit Care*. 2016;20:6.
24. Carney N, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2017;80:6–15.
25. Chiang YH, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2012;29:75–80.
26. Rau CS, et al. *Int J Environ Res Public Health*. 2017;14.
27. Hermanides J, et al. *Crit Care*. 2018;22:11.
28. Badjatia N. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2009;15:79–82.
29. Li J, Jiang JY. *J Neurotrauma*. 2012;29:96–100.
30. Wang H, et al. *Front Neurosci*. 2014;8:307.
31. Kilpatrick MM, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2000;47:850.
32. Madden LK, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2017;27:468–487.
33. Shankaran S, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353:1574–1584.
34. Bernard SA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346:557–563.
35. Andrews PJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373:2403–2412.
36. Smith M. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:401–415.
37. Citerio G, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2015;21:113–119.
38. Kirkman MA, Smith M. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2016;34:511–523.
39. Makarenko S, et al. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2016;26:8–13.
40. Teasdale G, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2014;13:844–854.
41. Anonymous. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;68:985–986.
42. Hunt WE, Hess RM. *J Neurosurg*. 1968;28:14.
43. Badri S, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38:1800–1809.
44. Balestreri M, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2006;4:8.
45. Farahvar A, et al. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:209–213.
46. Treggiari MM, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2007;6:104–112.
47. Chesnut RM, et al. *New Engl J Med*. 2012;367:2471.
48. Dawes AJ, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78:492–501; discussion 501-492.
49. Maclaughlin BW, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2015;210:1082–1086; discussion 1086-1087.
50. Talving P, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2013;119:1248–1254.
51. Alali AS, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2013;30:1737–1746.
52. Stocchetti N, et al. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 2014;156:1615–1622.
53. Guiza F, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41:1067–1076.
54. Smith M. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:240–248.
55. Sahuquillo J, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1999;90:16.
56. Aries MJ, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:2456–2463.
57. Rosenthal G, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2011;114:62–70.
58. Akbik OS, et al. *Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep*. 2016;16:72.
59. Aaslid R, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1982;57:769.
60. Willie CK, et al. *J Neurosci Methods*. 2011;196:221–237.
61. Bouzat P, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2014;20:153–160.
62. Czosnyka M, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2014;21(suppl 2):S95–S102.
63. Jaeger M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1783–1788.
64. Sorrentino E, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;14:188–193.
65. Lazaridis C, Andrews CM. *Neurocrit Care*. 2014;21:345–355.
66. Weigl W, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2016;36:1825–1843.
67. Zeiler FA, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2017;34:3224–3237.
68. Rivera-Lara L, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45:695–704.
69. Robertson CS, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 1995;12:891–896.
70. Stocchetti N, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:230.
71. Robertson CS, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1987;67:361.
72. Artru F, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2004;16:226.
73. Stocchetti N, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41:412–417.
74. Ponce LL, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2012;70:1492–1502; discussion 1502-1493.
75. Van Den Brink WA, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2000;46:868–876; discussion 876-868.
76. Lin CM, et al. *Biomed Res Int*. 2015;2015:529580.
77. Spiotta AM, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2010;113:571–580.
78. Nangunoori R, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2012;17:131–138.
79. Bohman LE, et al. *Neurocritical Care*. 2011;14:361–369.
80. Ghosh A, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:1373–1383.
81. Holmgaard F, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;121:1203–1211.
82. Colak Z, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2015;47:447–454.
83. Harilall Y, et al. *Heart Lung Circ*. 2014;23:68–74.
84. Hutchinson PJ, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41:1517–1528.
85. Kirkman MA, Smith M. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30:269–287.
86. Carteron L, et al. *Front Neurol*. 2017;8:601.
87. Timofeev I, et al. *Brain*. 2011;134:484–494.
88. Larach DB, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;15:609–622.
89. Clausen T, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;103:233–238.
90. Chamoun R, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2010;113:564–570.
91. Helmy A, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2011;31:658–670.
92. Afinowi R, et al. *J Neurosci Methods*. 2009;181:95–99.
93. Guerit JM. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2010;16:98–104.
94. Vespa PM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:2830–2836.
95. Claassen J, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2013;39:1337–1351.
96. Schramm P, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2017;39:62–65.
97. Hartings JA, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2011;10:1058–1064.
98. Dreier JP, et al. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2017;37:1595–1625.
99. Zandbergen EG, et al. *Neurology*. 2006;66:62–68.
100. Le Roux P, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2014;40:1189–1209.
101. Lazaridis C, Robertson CS. *Neurosurg Clin N Am*. 2016;27:509–517.
102. Caldwell M, et al. *PLoS One*. 2015;10:e0126695.
103. Thelin EP, et al. *PLoS Med*. 2017;14:e1002368.
104. Dupont SA, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2009;11:71–75.
105. Smith ML, et al. *Surg Neurol*. 2005;63:229–234; discussion 234-225.
106. Beare R, et al. *PLoS One*. 2015;10:e0125687.
107. Padroni M, et al. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0147910.
108. Maas AI, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2008;7:728–741.
109. Olesen J, et al. *Eur J Neurol*. 2012;19:155–162.
110. Butcher I, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:281–286.
111. Mushkudiani NA, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:259–269.
112. Kim KA, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2005;57:737.
113. Marmarou A, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:270–280.
114. Rached M, et al. *Injury*. 2018.
115. Mattioli C, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;98:37.
116. Murray GD, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:329.
117. Maas AI, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:303–314.
118. Helmy A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:32–42.

119. Butcher I, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:294–302.
120. Rickard AC, et al. *Emerg Med J*. 2014;31:679–683.
121. Coles JP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:568–578.
122. Hutchinson PJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:1119–1130.
123. Cooper DJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:1493.
124. Edwards P, et al. *Lancet*. 2005;365:1957.
125. Cremer OL, et al. *Lancet*. 2001;357:117–118.
126. Kolenda H, et al. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 1996;138:1193–1199.
127. Morris C, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:532–539.
128. Chourdakis M, et al. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr*. 2012;36:108–116.
129. Hartl R, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2008;109:50–56.
130. Acosta-Escribano J, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2010;36:1532–1539.
131. Denson K, et al. *Am J Surg*. 2007;193:380.
132. Pastorek RA, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2014;31:1737–1743.
133. Ollerton JE, et al. *Emergency Medicine Journal*. 2006;23:3–11.
134. Wilson JR, et al. *Spinal Cord*. 2012;50:840–843.
135. Dvorak MF, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2015;32:645–654.
136. Ruiz IA, et al. *J Neurotrauma*. 2018;35:461–466.
137. Amzallag M. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1993;31:87–102.
138. Walters BC, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2013;60(suppl 1):82–91.
139. Smith BW, et al. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;109:e502–e509.
140. Moerman JR, et al. *J Trauma*. 2011;70:1485–1488.
141. Ahuja CS, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2017;80:S9–S22.
142. Martirosyan NL, et al. *Clin Neurol Neurosurg*. 2017;154:79–88.
143. Krishnamurthi RV, et al. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2013;1:e259–281.
144. Feigin VL, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2009;8:355–369.
145. de Rooij NK, et al. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 2007;78:1365.
146. Ingall T, et al. *Stroke*. 2000;31:1054–1061.
147. Feigin VL, et al. *Stroke*. 2005;36:2773–2780.
148. Schievink WI, et al. *Neurology*. 1995;45:871–874.
149. Vergouwen MD, et al. *Neurology*. 2016;86:59–63.
150. Okazaki T, Kuroda Y. *J Intensive Care*. 2018;6:28.
151. Fujii M, et al. *Transl Stroke Res*. 2013;4:432–446.
152. Egawa S, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2016;32:52–55.
153. Lord AS, et al. *Neurology*. 2012;78:31–37.
154. Inagawa T, et al. *Surg Neurol*. 1987;28:93–99.
155. Larsen CC. *Astrup J: World Neurosurg*. 2013;79:307–312.
156. Tang C, et al. *PLoS One*. 2014;9:e99536.
157. Connolly Jr ES, et al. *Stroke*. 2012;43:1711.
158. Diringer MN, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;15:211.
159. Haley Jr EC, et al. *Stroke*. 1992;23:205–214.
160. Molyneux A, et al. *Lancet*. 2002;360:1267–1274.
161. Molyneux AJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2005;366:809.
162. Murphy-Human T, et al. *World Neurosurg*. 2011;75:269–274.
163. Human T, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2018;28:169–174.
164. Ransom E, et al. *Neurocritical Care*. 2007;6:174.
165. Graff-Radford NR, et al. *Arch Neurol*. 1989;46:744–752.
166. Hall A, O'Kane R. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;109:381–392.
167. Ogura T, et al. *Neurol Res*. 2012;34:484–490.
168. Mayer SA, et al. *Stroke*. 1999;30:780–786.
169. Manninen PH, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1995;7:12.
170. Zaroff JG, et al. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2000;13:774–779.
171. Zaroff JG, et al. *Stroke*. 2006;37:1680–1685.
172. Hravnak M, et al. *Stroke*. 2009;40:3478–3484.
173. Gruber A, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1998;88:28–37.
174. Van Der Bilt IA, et al. *Neurology*. 2009;72:635–642.
175. Geraghty JR, Testai FD. *Curr Atheroscler Rep*. 2017;19:50.
176. Macdonald RL. *Nat Rev Neurol*. 2014;10:44–58.
177. Rabinstein AA, et al. *Stroke*. 2005;36:992–997.
178. Fisher CM, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1980;6:1.
179. Claassen J, et al. *Stroke*. 2001;32:2012–2020.
180. Frontera JA, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2006;59:21.
181. Kissoon NR, et al. *J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis*. 2015;24:2245–2251.
182. Treggiari MM, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;98:978–984.
183. Macdonald RL, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2011;10:618.
184. Dorhout Mees SM, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2007:CD000277.
185. Allen GS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1983;308:619–624.
186. Petruk KC, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;68:505–517.
187. Ohman J, Heiskanen O. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;69:683–686.
188. Lennihan L, et al. *Stroke*. 2000;31:383–391.
189. Egge A, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2001;49:593.
190. Eskridge JM, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1998;42:510.
191. Bejjani GK, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 1998;42:979.
192. Elliott JP, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1998;88:277.
193. Harrigan MR. *Neurosurgery*. 1996;38:152–160.
194. Qureshi AI, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2002;50:749.
195. Woo CH, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2009;11:228–234.
196. Go AS, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;127:e6–e245.
197. Roger VL, et al. *Circulation*. 2012;125:e2.
198. Powers WJ, et al. *Stroke*. 2018;49:e46–e110.
199. Nogueira RG, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:11–21.
200. Saver JL, et al. *JAMA*. 2016;316:1279–1288.
201. Albers GW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:1849–1850.
202. Kansara A, et al. *J Neurointerv Surg*. 2012;4:274.
203. Castillo J, et al. *Stroke*. 2004;35:520–526.
204. Korpelainen JT, et al. *Stroke*. 1996;27:2059–2063.
205. Orlandi G, et al. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 2000;102:317–321.
206. Britton M, et al. *Acta Med Scand*. 1979;205:425–428.
207. Yaghi S, et al. *JAMA Neurol*. 2015;72:1451–1457.
208. Stone JA, et al. *Curr Treat Options Neurol*. 2017;19:1.
209. Kirchoff-Torres KF, Bakradze E. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2018;22:24.
210. Wijdicks EF, et al. *Stroke*. 2014;45:1222–1238.
211. Vahedi K, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2007;6:215–222.
212. Juttler E, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1091–1100.
213. Alberts MJ, et al. *Stroke*. 2005;36:1597–1616.
214. Van Asch CJ, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2010;9:167–176.
215. Hemphill 3rd JC, et al. *Stroke*. 2015;46:2032–2060.
216. Cusack TJ, et al. *Curr Treat Options Neurol*. 2018;20:1.
217. Hemphill 3rd JC, et al. *Stroke*. 2001;32:891–897.
218. Rost NS, et al. *Stroke*. 2008;39:2304–2309.
219. Anderson CS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:2355–2365.
220. Anderson CS, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2008;7:391–399.
221. Qureshi AI, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:1033–1043.
222. Frontera JA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:2251–2257.
223. Steiner T, et al. *Lancet Neurol*. 2016;15:566–573.
224. Baharoglu MI, et al. *Lancet*. 2016;387:2605–2613.
225. Tapia Perez JH, et al. *J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis*. 2015;24:2521–2526.
226. Mendelow AD, et al. *Lancet*. 2005;365:387.
227. Hanley DF, et al. *Lancet*. 2017;389:603–611.
228. Lu RJ, et al. *Epilepsy Res*. 2017;136:12–17.
229. Hocker SE. *Continuum (Minneap Minn)*. 2015;21:1362–1383.
230. Glauser T, et al. *Epilepsy Curr*. 2016;16:48–61.
231. Zeiler FA, et al. *Seizure*. 2016;35:23–32.
232. Kofke WA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:653.
233. Sutter R, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46:138–145.
234. Ancona P, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2018;45:58–64.
235. Willison HJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2016;388:717–727.
236. Van Den Berg B, et al. *Nat Rev Neurol*. 2014;10:469–482.
237. Rees JH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333:1374–1379.
238. Musso D, et al. *Lancet*. 2015;386:243–244.
239. Cosi V, Versino M. *Neurol Sci*. 2006;27(suppl 1):S47.
240. Hughes RA, Cornblath DR. *Lancet*. 2005;366:1653.
241. Walgaard C, et al. *Ann Neurol*. 2010;67:781–787.
242. Walgaard C, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2017;26:6–13.
243. Fourrier F, et al. *Crit Care*. 2011;15:R65.
244. Van Den Berg B, et al. *Neurology*. 2014;82:1984–1989.
245. Gilhus NE. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:2570–2581.
246. Gilhus NE, Verschuuren JJ. *Lancet Neurol*. 2015;14:1023–1036.
247. Carr AS, et al. *BMC Neurol*. 2010;10:46.
248. Al-Bassam W, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2018;45:90–94.
249. Juel VC. *Semin Neurol*. 2004;24:75.
250. Wu JY, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2009;10:35–42.
251. Gilhus NE. *Nat Rev Neurol*. 2011;7:132–134.
252. Robertson FC, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2018:1–20.
253. Ziai WC, Lewin 3rd JJ. *Neurol Clin*. 2008;26:427–468. viii.
254. Tunkel AR, et al. *Clin Infect Dis*. 2004;39:1267–1284.
255. Gaieski DF, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2017;27:124–133.
256. Brouwer MC, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015:CD004405.
257. Figueiredo AHA, et al. *Neurol Clin*. 2018;36:809–820.
258. Boucher A, et al. *Med Mal Infect*. 2017;47:221–235.
259. Armangue T, et al. *Curr Opin Neurol*. 2014;27:361–368.
260. Kennedy PGE, et al. *Viruses*. 2017;9.
261. Jian M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:832–839.
262. Schar RT, et al. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;113:e769–e776.
263. Schar RT, et al. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0153499.
264. Mordhorst C, et al. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2010;22:202–206.
265. Latz B, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 2011;114:491–496.
266. Scheller C, et al. *J Neurol Surg A Cent Eur Neurosurg*. 2014;75:2–6.
267. Chaichana KL, et al. *Neurol Res*. 2013;35:206–211.
268. Wijdicks EFM. *Neurology*. 2003;61:970.
269. Dominguez-Gil B, et al. *Transpl Int*. 2011;24:373–378.
270. Wijdicks EF, et al. *Neurology*. 2010;74:1911.
271. Nakagawa TA, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2011;128:e720.
272. Buchanan KM, et al. *Neurosurgery*. 2000;46:831.

References

1. Zygun D. Non-neurological organ dysfunction in neurocritical care: impact on outcome and etiological considerations. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2005;11:139–143.
2. Suarez JI, Zaidat OO, Suri MF, et al. Length of stay and mortality in neurocritically ill patients: impact of a specialized neurocritical care team. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32:2311–2317.
3. Afsar B, Sag AA, Yalcin CE, et al. Brain-kidney cross-talk: definition and emerging evidence. *Eur J Intern Med*. 2016;36:7–12.
4. Quilez ME, Lopez-Aguilar J, Blanch L. Organ crosstalk during acute lung injury, acute respiratory distress syndrome, and mechanical ventilation. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2012;18:23–28.
5. Sharshar T, Hopkinson NS, Orlikowski D, Annane D. Science review: the brain in sepsis--culprit and victim. *Crit Care*. 2005;9:37–44.
6. Kalmar AF, Van Aken J, Caemaert J, Mortier EP, Struys MM. Value of Cushing reflex as warning sign for brain ischaemia during neuroendoscopy. *Br J Anaesth*. 2005;94:791–799.
7. Michinaga S, Koyama Y. Pathogenesis of brain edema and investigation into anti-edema drugs. *Int J Mol Sci*. 2015;16:9949–9975.
8. Beaumont A, Hayasaki K, Marmarou A, Barzo P, Fatouros P, Corwin F. Contrasting effects of dopamine therapy in experimental brain injury. *J Neurotrauma*. 2001;18:1359–1372.
9. Venkat P, Chopp M, Chen J. New insights into coupling and uncoupling of cerebral blood flow and metabolism in the brain. *Croat Med J*. 2016;57:223–228.
10. Corps KN, Roth TL, Mcgavern DB. Inflammation and neuroprotection in traumatic brain injury. *JAMA Neurol*. 2015;72:355–362.
11. Bramlett HM, Dietrich WD. Long-term consequences of traumatic brain injury: current status of Potential mechanisms of injury and neurological outcomes. *J Neurotraum*. 2015;32:1834–1848.
12. Beez T, Steiger HJ, Etminan N. Pharmacological targeting of secondary brain damage following ischemic or hemorrhagic stroke, traumatic brain injury, and bacterial meningitis - a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Bmc Neurology*. 2017;17.
13. Walia S, Sutcliffe AJ. The relationship between blood glucose, mean arterial pressure and outcome after severe head injury: an observational study. *Injury*. 2002;33:339–344.
14. Mchugh GS, Engel DC, Butcher I, et al. Prognostic value of secondary insults in traumatic brain injury: results from the IMPACT study. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:287–293.
15. Karanjia N, Nordquist D, Stevens R, Nyquist P. A clinical description of extubation failure in patients with primary brain injury. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;15:4–12.
16. Heuer JF, Pelosi P, Hermann P, et al. Acute effects of intracranial hypertension and ARDS on pulmonary and neuronal damage: a randomized experimental study in pigs. *Intensive Care Med*. 2011;37:1182–1191.
17. Gonzalvo R, Marti-Sistac O, Blanch L, Lopez-Aguilar J. Bench-to-bedside review: brain-lung interaction in the critically ill--a pending issue revisited. *Crit Care*. 2007;11:216.
18. Young N, Rhodes JK, Mascia L, Andrews PJ. Ventilatory strategies for patients with acute brain injury. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2010;16:45–52.
19. Nemer SN, Caldeira JB, Santos RG, et al. Effects of positive end-expiratory pressure on brain tissue oxygen pressure of severe traumatic brain injury patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome: a pilot study. *J Crit Care*. 2015;30:1263–1266.
20. Diringer MN, Zazulia AR. Osmotic therapy: fact and fiction. *Neurocrit Care*. 2004;1:219–233.
21. Van Aken HK, Kampmeier TG, Ertmer C, Westphal M. Fluid resuscitation in patients with traumatic brain injury: what is a SAFE approach? *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2012;25:563–565.
22. Claydon VE, Steeves JD, Krassioukov A. Orthostatic hypotension following spinal cord injury: understanding clinical pathophysiology. *Spinal Cord*. 2006;44:341–351.
23. Chapple LA, Chapman MJ, Lange K, Deane AM, Heyland DK. Nutrition support practices in critically ill head-injured patients: a global perspective. *Crit Care*. 2016;20:6.
24. Carney N, Totten AM, O'reilly C, et al. Guidelines for the management of severe traumatic brain injury. Fourth Edition *Neurosurgery*. 2017;80:6–15.
25. Chiang YH, Chao DP, Chu SF, et al. Early enteral nutrition and clinical outcomes of severe traumatic brain injury patients in acute stage: a multi-center cohort study. *J Neurotrauma*. 2012;29:75–80.
26. Rau CS, Wu SC, Chen YC, et al. Stress-induced hyperglycemia, but not diabetic hyperglycemia, is associated with higher mortality in patients with isolated moderate and severe traumatic brain injury: analysis of a propensity score-matched population. *Int J Environ Res Public Health*. 2017;14.
27. Hermanides J, Plummer MP, Finnis M, Deane AM, Coles JP, Menon DK. Glycaemic control targets after traumatic brain injury: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Crit Care*. 2018;22:11.
28. Badjatia N. Fever control in the neuro-ICU: why, who, and when? *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2009;15:79–82.
29. Li J, Jiang JY. Chinese head trauma data bank: effect of hyperthermia on the outcome of acute head trauma patients. *J Neurotrauma*. 2012;29:96–100.
30. Wang H, Wang B, Normoyle KP, Jackson K, Spitler K, Sharrock MF, et al. Brain temperature and its fundamental properties: a review for clinical neuroscientists. *Front Neurosci*. 2014;8:307.
31. Kilpatrick MM, Lowry DW, Firlik AD, Yonas H, Marion DW. Hyperthermia in the neurosurgical intensive care unit. *Neurosurgery*. 2000;47:850–855; discussion 855-856.
32. Madden LK, Hill M, May TL, et al. The implementation of targeted temperature management: an evidence-based guideline from the neurocritical care society. *Neurocrit Care*. 2017;27:468–487.
33. Shankaran S, Laptook AR, Ehrenkranz RA, et al. Whole-body hypothermia for neonates with hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy. *N Engl J Med*. 2005;353:1574–1584.
34. Bernard SA, Gray TW, Buist MD, et al. Treatment of comatose survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest with induced hypothermia. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346:557–563.
35. Andrews PJ, Sinclair HL, Rodriguez A, et al. Hypothermia for intracranial hypertension after traumatic brain injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373:2403–2412.
36. Smith M. Multimodality neuromonitoring in adult traumatic brain injury: a narrative review. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:401–415.
37. Citerio G, Oddo M, Taccone FS. Recommendations for the use of multimodal monitoring in the neurointensive care unit. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2015;21:113–119.
38. Kirkman MA, Smith M. Multimodality neuromonitoring. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2016;34:511–523.
39. Makarenko S, Griesdale DE, Gooderham P, Sekhon MS. Multimodal neuromonitoring for traumatic brain injury: a shift towards individualized therapy. *J Clin Neurosci*. 2016;26:8–13.
40. Teasdale G, Maas A, Lecky F, Manley G, Stocchetti N, Murray G. The Glasgow Coma Scale at 40 years: standing the test of time. *Lancet Neurol*. 2014;13:844–854.
41. Anonymous. Report of world federation of neurological surgeons committee on a universal subarachnoid hemorrhage grading scale. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;68:985–986.
42. Hunt WE, Hess RM. Surgical risk as related to time of intervention in the repair of intracranial aneurysms. *J Neurosurg*. 1968;28:14–20.
43. Badri S, Chen J, Barber J, et al. Mortality and long-term functional outcome associated with intracranial pressure after traumatic brain injury. *Intensive Care Med*. 2012;38:1800–1809.
44. Balestreri M, Czosnyka M, Hutchinson P, et al. Impact of intracranial pressure and cerebral perfusion pressure on severe disability and mortality after head injury. *Neurocrit Care*. 2006;4:8–13.
45. Farahvar A, Huang JH, Papadakos PJ. Intracranial monitoring in traumatic brain injury. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24:209–213.
46. Treggiari MM, Schutz N, Yanez ND, Romand JA. Role of intracranial pressure values and patterns in predicting outcome in traumatic brain injury: a systematic review. *Neurocrit Care*. 2007;6:104–112.
47. Chesnut RM, Temkin N, Carney N, et al. A trial of intracranial-pressure monitoring in traumatic brain injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;367:2471–2481.
48. Dawes AJ, Sacks GD, Cryer HG, et al. Intracranial pressure monitoring and inpatient mortality in severe traumatic brain injury: A propensity score-matched analysis. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2015;78:492–501; discussion 501-492.
49. Maclaughlin BW, Plurad DS, Sheppard W, et al. The impact of intracranial pressure monitoring on mortality after severe traumatic brain injury. *Am J Surg*. 2015;210:1082–1086. discussion 1086-1087.
50. Talving P, Karamanos E, Teixeira PG, et al. Intracranial pressure monitoring in severe head injury: compliance with Brain Trauma Foundation guidelines and effect on outcomes: a prospective study. *J Neurosurg*. 2013;119:1248–1254.

51. Alali AS, Fowler RA, Mainprize TG, et al. Intracranial pressure monitoring in severe traumatic brain injury: results from the American College of Surgeons Trauma Quality Improvement Program. *J Neurotrauma*. 2013;30:1737–1746.
52. Stocchetti N, Picetti E, Berardino M, et al. Clinical applications of intracranial pressure monitoring in traumatic brain injury : report of the Milan consensus conference. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 2014;156:1615–1622.
53. Guiza F, Depreitere B, Piper I, et al. Visualizing the pressure and time burden of intracranial hypertension in adult and paediatric traumatic brain injury. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41:1067–1076.
54. Smith M. Monitoring intracranial pressure in traumatic brain injury. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;106:240–248.
55. Sahuquillo J, Poca MA, Arribas M, Garnacho A, Rubio E. Interhemispheric supratentorial intracranial pressure gradients in head-injured patients: are they clinically important? *J Neurosurg*. 1999;90:16–26.
56. Aries MJ, Czosnyka M, Budohoski KP, et al. Continuous determination of optimal cerebral perfusion pressure in traumatic brain injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:2456–2463.
57. Rosenthal G, Sanchez-Mejia RO, Phan N, Hemphill 3rd JC, Martin C, Manley GT. Incorporating a parenchymal thermal diffusion cerebral blood flow probe in bedside assessment of cerebral autoregulation and vasoreactivity in patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2011;114:62–70.
58. Akbik OS, Carlson AP, Krasberg M, Yonas H. The utility of cerebral blood flow assessment in TBI. *Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep*. 2016;16:72.
59. Aaslid R, et al. *J Neurosurg*. 1982;57:769.
60. Willie CK, Colino FL, Bailey DM, et al. Utility of transcranial Doppler ultrasound for the integrative assessment of cerebrovascular function. *J Neurosci Methods*. 2011;196:221–237.
61. Bouzat P, Oddo M, Payen JF. Transcranial doppler after traumatic brain injury: is there a role? *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2014;20:153–160.
62. Czosnyka M, Miller C. Participants in the international multidisciplinary consensus conference on multimodality M: monitoring of cerebral autoregulation. *Neurocrit Care*. 2014;21(suppl 2):S95–S102.
63. Jaeger M, Schuhmann MU, Soehle M, Meixensberger J. Continuous assessment of cerebrovascular autoregulation after traumatic brain injury using brain tissue oxygen pressure reactivity. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1783–1788.
64. Sorrentino E, Budohoski KP, Kasprowicz M, et al. Critical thresholds for transcranial Doppler indices of cerebral autoregulation in traumatic brain injury. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;14:188–193.
65. Lazaridis C, Andrews CM. Brain tissue oxygenation, lactate-pyruvate ratio, and cerebrovascular pressure reactivity monitoring in severe traumatic brain injury: systematic review and viewpoint. *Neurocrit Care*. 2014;21:345–355.
66. Weigl W, Milej D, Janusek D, et al. Application of optical methods in the monitoring of traumatic brain injury: a review. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2016;36:1825–1843.
67. Zeiler FA, Donnelly J, Calviello L, Smielewski P, Menon DK, Czosnyka M. Pressure autoregulation measurement techniques in adult traumatic brain injury, part II: a scoping review of continuous methods. *J Neurotrauma*. 2017;34:3224–3237.
68. Rivera-Lara L, Zorrilla-Vaca A, Geocadin R, et al. Predictors of outcome with cerebral autoregulation monitoring: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Crit Care Med*. 2017;45:695–704.
69. Robertson CS, Gopinath SP, Goodman JC, Contant CF, Valadka AB, Narayan RK. SjvO2 monitoring in head-injured patients. *J Neurotrauma*. 1995;12:891–896.
70. Stocchetti N, Canavesi K, Magnoni S, et al. Arterio-jugular difference of oxygen content and outcome after head injury. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99:230–234.
71. Robertson CS, Grossman RG, Goodman JC, Narayan RK. The predictive value of cerebral anaerobic metabolism with cerebral infarction after head injury. *J Neurosurg*. 1987;67:361–368.
72. Artru F, Dailler F, Burel E, et al. Assessment of jugular blood oxygen and lactate indices for detection of cerebral ischemia and prognosis. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2004;16:226–231.
73. Stocchetti N, Magnoni S, Zanier ER. My paper 20 years later: cerebral venous oxygen saturation studied with bilateral samples in the internal jugular veins. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41:412–417.
74. Ponce LL, Pillai S, Cruz J, et al. Position of probe determines prognostic information of brain tissue PO2 in severe traumatic brain injury. *Neurosurgery*. 2012;70:1492–1502; discussion 1502-1493.
75. Van Den Brink WA, Van Santbrink H, Steyerberg EW, et al. Brain oxygen tension in severe head injury. *Neurosurgery*. 2000;46:868–876. discussion 876-868.
76. Lin CM, Lin MC, Huang SJ, et al. A prospective randomized study of brain tissue oxygen pressure-guided management in moderate and severe traumatic brain injury patients. *Biomed Res Int*. 2015;2015:529580.
77. Spiotta AM, Stiefel MF, Gracias VH, et al. Brain tissue oxygen-directed management and outcome in patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2010;113:571–580.
78. Nangunoori R, Maloney-Wilensky E, Stiefel M, et al. Brain tissue oxygen-based therapy and outcome after severe traumatic brain injury: a systematic literature review. *Neurocrit Care*. 2012;17:131–138.
79. Bohman LE, Heuer GG, Macyszyn L, et al. Medical management of compromised brain oxygen in patients with severe traumatic brain injury. *Neurocritical Care*. 2011;14:361–369.
80. Ghosh A, Elwell C, Smith M. Review article: cerebral near-infrared spectroscopy in adults: a work in progress. *Anesth Analg*. 2012;115:1373–1383.
81. Holmgaard F, Vedel AG, Langkilde A, Lange T, Nilsson JC, Ravn HB. Differences in regional cerebral oximetry during cardiac surgery for patients with or without postoperative cerebral ischaemic lesions evaluated by magnetic resonance imaging. *Br J Anaesth*. 2018;121:1203–1211.
82. Colak Z, Borojevic M, Bogovic A, Ivancan V, Biocina B, Majeric-Kogler V. Influence of intraoperative cerebral oximetry monitoring on neurocognitive function after coronary artery bypass surgery: a randomized, prospective study. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2015;47:447–454.
83. Harilall Y, Adam JK, Biccard BM, Reddi A. The effect of optimising cerebral tissue oxygen saturation on markers of neurological injury during coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Heart Lung Circ*. 2014;23:68–74.
84. Hutchinson PJ, Jalloh I, Helmy A, et al. Consensus statement from the 2014 International Microdialysis Forum. *Intensive Care Med*. 2015;41:1517–1528.
85. Kirkman MA, Smith M. Multimodal intracranial monitoring: implications for clinical practice. *Anesthesiol Clin*. 2012;30:269–287.
86. Carteron L, Bouzat P, Oddo M. Cerebral microdialysis monitoring to improve individualized neurointensive care therapy: an update of recent clinical data. *Front Neurol*. 2017;8:601.
87. Timofeev I, Carpenter KL, Nortje J, et al. Cerebral extracellular chemistry and outcome following traumatic brain injury: a microdialysis study of 223 patients. *Brain*. 2011;134:484–494.
88. Larach DB, Kofke WA, Le Roux P. Potential non-hypoxic/ischemic causes of increased cerebral interstitial fluid lactate/pyruvate ratio: a review of available literature. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;15:609–622.
89. Clausen T, Alves OL, Reinert M, Doppenberg E, Zauner A, Bullock R. Association between elevated brain tissue glycerol levels and poor outcome following severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2005;103:233–238.
90. Chamoun R, Suki D, Gopinath SP, Goodman JC, Robertson C. Role of extracellular glutamate measured by cerebral microdialysis in severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2010;113:564–570.
91. Helmy A, Carpenter KL, Menon DK, Pickard JD, Hutchinson PJ. The cytokine response to human traumatic brain injury: temporal profiles and evidence for cerebral parenchymal production. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2011;31:658–670.
92. Afinowi R, Tisdall M, Keir G, Smith M, Kitchen N, Petzold A. Improving the recovery of S100B protein in cerebral microdialysis: implications for multimodal monitoring in neurocritical care. *J Neurosci Methods*. 2009;181:95–99.
93. Guerit JM. Neurophysiological testing in neurocritical care. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2010;16:98–104.
94. Vespa PM, Miller C, Mcarthur D, et al. Nonconvulsive electrographic seizures after traumatic brain injury result in a delayed, prolonged increase in intracranial pressure and metabolic crisis. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:2830–2836.
95. Claassen J, Taccone FS, Horn P, et al. Recommendations on the use of EEG monitoring in critically ill patients: consensus statement from the neurointensive care section of the ESICM. *Intensive Care Med*. 2013;39:1337–1351.

96. Schramm P, Luczak J, Engelhard K, El Shazly J, Juenemann M, Tschernatsch M. Continuous electroencephalography in a mixed non-neurological intensive care population, an observational study. *J Crit Care*. 2017;39:62–65.
97. Hartings JA, Bullock MR, Okonkwo DO, et al. Spreading depolarisations and outcome after traumatic brain injury: a prospective observational study. *Lancet Neurol*. 2011;10:1058–1064.
98. Dreier JP, Fabricius M, Ayata C, et al. Recording, analysis, and interpretation of spreading depolarizations in neurointensive care: Review and recommendations of the COSBID research group. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab*. 2017;37:1595–1625.
99. Zandbergen EG, Hijdra A, Koelman JH, et al. Prediction of poor outcome within the first 3 days of postanoxic coma. *Neurology*. 2006;66:62–68.
100. Le Roux P, Menon DK, Citerio G, et al. Consensus summary statement of the International Multidisciplinary Consensus Conference on Multimodality Monitoring in Neurocritical Care : a statement for healthcare professionals from the Neurocritical Care Society and the European Society of Intensive Care Medicine. *Intensive Care Med*. 2014;40:1189–1209.
101. Lazaridis C, Robertson CS. The role of multimodal invasive monitoring in acute traumatic brain injury. *Neurosurg Clin N Am*. 2016;27:509–517.
102. Caldwell M, Hapuarachchi T, Highton D, Elwell C, Smith M, Tachtsidis I. BrainSignals revisited: simplifying a computational model of cerebral physiology. *PLoS One*. 2015;10:e0126695.
103. Thelin EP, Nelson DW, Vehvilainen J, et al. Evaluation of novel computerized tomography scoring systems in human traumatic brain injury: an observational, multicenter study. *PLoS Med*. 2017;14:e1002368.
104. Dupont SA, Wijdicks EF, Manno EM, Lanzino G, Brown Jr RD, Rabinstein AA. Timing of computed tomography and prediction of vasospasm after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurocrit Care*. 2009;11:71–75.
105. Smith ML, Abrahams JM, Chandela S, Smith MJ, Hurst RW, Le Roux PD. Subarachnoid hemorrhage on computed tomography scanning and the development of cerebral vasospasm: the Fisher grade revisited. *Surg Neurol*. 2005;63:229–234; discussion 234-225.
106. Beare R, Chen J, Phan TG, Collaboration VI-A. Googling stroke ASPECTS to determine disability: exploratory analysis from VISTA-acute collaboration. *PLoS One*. 2015;10:e0125687.
107. Padroni M, Bernardoni A, Tamborino C, et al. Cerebral blood volume ASPECTS Is the best predictor of clinical outcome in acute ischemic stroke: a retrospective, combined semi-quantitative and quantitative assessment. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0147910.
108. Maas AI, Stocchetti N, Bullock R. Moderate and severe traumatic brain injury in adults. *Lancet Neurol*. 2008;7:728–741.
109. Olesen J, Gustavsson A, Svensson M, et al. The economic cost of brain disorders in Europe. *Eur J Neurol*. 2012;19:155–162.
110. Butcher I, Mchugh GS, Lu J, et al. Prognostic value of cause of injury in traumatic brain injury: results from the IMPACT study. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:281–286.
111. Mushkudiani NA, Engel DC, Steyerberg EW, et al. Prognostic value of demographic characteristics in traumatic brain injury: results from the IMPACT study. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:259–269.
112. Kim KA, Wang MY, Mcnatt SA, et al. Vector analysis correlating bullet trajectory to outcome after civilian through-and-through gunshot wound to the head: using imaging cues to predict fatal outcome. *Neurosurgery*. 2005;57:737–747; discussion 737-747.
113. Marmarou A, Lu J, Butcher I, et al. Prognostic value of the Glasgow Coma Scale and pupil reactivity in traumatic brain injury assessed pre-hospital and on enrollment: an IMPACT analysis. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:270–280.
114. Rached M, Gaudet JG, Delhumeau C, Walder B. Comparison of two simple models for prediction of short term mortality in patients after severe traumatic brain injury. *Injury*. 2018.
115. Mattioli C, Beretta L, Gerevini S, et al. Traumatic subarachnoid hemorrhage on the computerized tomography scan obtained at admission: a multicenter assessment of the accuracy of diagnosis and the potential impact on patient outcome. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;98:37–42.
116. Murray GD, Butcher I, Mchugh GS, et al. Multivariable prognostic analysis in traumatic brain injury: results from the IMPACT study. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:329–337.
117. Maas AI, Steyerberg EW, Butcher I, et al. Prognostic value of computerized tomography scan characteristics in traumatic brain injury: results from the IMPACT study. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:303–314.
118. Helmy A, Vizcaychipi M, Gupta AK. Traumatic brain injury: intensive care management. *Br J Anaesth*. 2007;99:32–42.
119. Butcher I, Maas AI, Lu J, et al. Prognostic value of admission blood pressure in traumatic brain injury: results from the IMPACT study. *J Neurotrauma*. 2007;24:294–302.
120. Rickard AC, Smith JE, Newell P, Bailey A, Kehoe A, Mann C. Salt or sugar for your injured brain? A meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials of mannitol versus hypertonic sodium solutions to manage raised intracranial pressure in traumatic brain injury. *Emerg Med J*. 2014;31:679–683.
121. Coles JP, Fryer TD, Coleman MR, et al. Hyperventilation following head injury: effect on ischemic burden and cerebral oxidative metabolism. *Crit Care Med*. 2007;35:568–578.
122. Hutchinson PJ, Kolias AG, Timofeev IS, et al. Trial of decompressive craniectomy for traumatic intracranial hypertension. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:1119–1130.
123. Cooper DJ, Rosenfeld JV, Murray L, et al. Decompressive craniectomy in diffuse traumatic brain injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364:1493–1502.
124. Edwards P, Arango M, Balica L, et al. Final results of MRC CRASH, a randomised placebo-controlled trial of intravenous corticosteroid in adults with head injury - outcomes at 6 months. *Lancet*. 2005;365:1957–1959.
125. Cremer OL, Moons KG, Bouman EA, Kruijswijk JE, De Smet AM, Kalkman CJ. Long-term propofol infusion and cardiac failure in adult head-injured patients. *Lancet*. 2001;357:117–118.
126. Kolenda H, Gremmelt A, Rading S, Braun U, Markakis E. Ketamine for analgosedative therapy in intensive care treatment of head-injured patients. *Acta Neurochir (Wien)*. 1996;138:1193–1199.
127. Morris C, Perris A, Klein J, Mahoney P. Anaesthesia in haemodynamically compromised emergency patients: does ketamine represent the best choice of induction agent? *Anaesthesia*. 2009;64:532–539.
128. Chourdakis M, Kraus MM, Tzellos T, et al. Effect of early compared with delayed enteral nutrition on endocrine function in patients with traumatic brain injury: an open-labeled randomized trial. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr*. 2012;36:108–116.
129. Hartl R, Gerber LM, Ni Q, Ghajar J. Effect of early nutrition on deaths due to severe traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg*. 2008;109:50–56.
130. Acosta-Escribano J, Fernandez-Vivas M, Grau Carmona T, et al. Gastric versus transpyloric feeding in severe traumatic brain injury: a prospective, randomized trial. *Intensive Care Med*. 2010;36:1532–1539.
131. Denson K, Morgan D, Cunningham R, Nigliazzo A, Brackett D, Lane M, et al. Incidence of venous thromboembolism in patients with traumatic brain injury. *Am J Surg*. 2007;193:380–383; discussion 383-384.
132. Pastorek RA, Cripps MW, Bernstein IH, et al. The Parkland Protocol's modified Berne-Norwood criteria predict two tiers of risk for traumatic brain injury progression. *J Neurotrauma*. 2014;31:1737–1743.
133. Ollerton JE, Parr MJA, Harrison K, Hanrahan B, Sugrue M. Potential cervical spine injury and difficult airway management for emergency intubation of trauma adults in the emergency department - a systematic review. *Emergency Medicine Journal*. 2006;23:3–11.
134. Wilson JR, Singh A, Craven C, et al. Early versus late surgery for traumatic spinal cord injury: the results of a prospective Canadian cohort study. *Spinal Cord*. 2012;50:840–843.
135. Dvorak MF, Noonan VK, Fallah N, et al. The influence of time from injury to surgery on motor recovery and length of hospital stay in acute traumatic spinal cord injury: an observational Canadian cohort study. *J Neurotrauma*. 2015;32:645–654.
136. Ruiz IA, Squair JW, Phillips AA, et al. Incidence and natural progression of neurogenic shock after traumatic spinal cord injury. *J Neurotrauma*. 2018;35:461–466.
137. Amzallag M. Autonomic hyperreflexia. *Int Anesthesiol Clin*. 1993;31:87–102.
138. Walters BC, Hadley MN, Hurlbert RJ, et al. Guidelines for the management of acute cervical spine and spinal cord injuries: 2013 update. *Neurosurgery*. 2013;60(suppl 1):82–91.
139. Smith BW, Joseph JR, Saadeh YS, et al. Radiosurgery for treatment of renal cell metastases to spine: a systematic review of the literature. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;109:e502–e509.

140. Moerman JR, Christie 3rd B, Sykes LN, Vogel RL, Nolan TL, Ashley DW. Early cardiac pacemaker placement for life-threatening bradycardia in traumatic spinal cord injury. *J Trauma*. 2011;70:1485–1488.
141. Ahuja CS, Nori S, Tetreault L, et al. Traumatic spinal cord injury-repair and regeneration. *Neurosurgery*. 2017;80:S9–S22.
142. Martirosyan NL, Patel AA, Carotenuto A, et al. The role of therapeutic hypothermia in the management of acute spinal cord injury. *Clin Neurol Neurosurg*. 2017;154:79–88.
143. Krishnamurthi RV, Feigin VL, Forouzanfar MH, et al. Global and regional burden of first-ever ischaemic and haemorrhagic stroke during 1990-2010: findings from the Global Burden of Disease Study 2010. *Lancet Glob Health*. 2013;1:e259–e281.
144. Feigin VL, Lawes CM, Bennett DA, Barker-Collo SL, Parag V. Worldwide stroke incidence and early case fatality reported in 56 population-based studies: a systematic review. *Lancet Neurol*. 2009;8:355–369.
145. De Rooij NK, Linn FH, Van Der Plas JA, Algra A, Rinkel GJ. Incidence of subarachnoid haemorrhage: a systematic review with emphasis on region, age, gender and time trends. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 2007;78:1365–1372.
146. Ingall T, Asplund K, Mahonen M, Bonita R. A multinational comparison of subarachnoid hemorrhage epidemiology in the WHO MONICA stroke study. *Stroke*. 2000;31:1054–1061.
147. Feigin VL, Rinkel GJ, Lawes CM, et al. Risk factors for subarachnoid hemorrhage: an updated systematic review of epidemiological studies. *Stroke*. 2005;36:2773–2780.
148. Schievink WI, Wijdicks EF, Parisi JE, Piepgras DG, Whisnant JP. Sudden death from aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurology*. 1995;45:871–874.
149. Vergouwen MD, Jong-Tjien-Fa AV, Algra A, Rinkel GJ. Time trends in causes of death after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: A hospital-based study. *Neurology*. 2016;86:59–63.
150. Okazaki T, Kuroda Y. Aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: intensive care for improving neurological outcome. *J Intensive Care*. 2018;6:28.
151. Fujii M, Yan J, Rolland WB, Soejima Y, Caner B, Zhang JH. Early brain injury, an evolving frontier in subarachnoid hemorrhage research. *Transl Stroke Res*. 2013;4:432–446.
152. Egawa S, Hifumi T, Kawakita K, et al. Impact of neurointensivist-managed intensive care unit implementation on patient outcomes after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Crit Care*. 2016;32:52–55.
153. Lord AS, Fernandez L, Schmidt JM, et al. Effect of rebleeding on the course and incidence of vasospasm after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurology*. 2012;78:31–37.
154. Inagawa T, Kamiya K, Ogasawara H, Yano T. Rebleeding of ruptured intracranial aneurysms in the acute stage. *Surg Neurol*. 1987;28:93–99.
155. Larsen CC, Astrup J. Rebleeding after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a literature review. *World Neurosurg*. 2013;79:307–312.
156. Tang C, Zhang TS, Zhou LF. Risk factors for rebleeding of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a meta-analysis. *PLoS One*. 2014;9:e99536.
157. Connolly Jr ES, Rabinstein AA, Carhuapoma JR, et al. Guidelines for the management of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/american Stroke Association. *Stroke*. 2012;43:1711–1737.
158. Diringer MN, Bleck TP, Claude Hemphill 3rd J, et al. Critical care management of patients following aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: recommendations from the Neurocritical Care Society's Multidisciplinary Consensus Conference. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;15:211–240.
159. Haley Jr EC, Kassell NF, Torner JC. The international cooperative study on the timing of aneurysm surgery. The north american experience. *Stroke*. 1992;23:205–214.
160. Molyneux A, Kerr R, Stratton I, et al. International Subarachnoid Aneurysm Trial (ISAT) of neurosurgical clipping versus endovascular coiling in 2143 patients with ruptured intracranial aneurysms: a randomised trial. *Lancet*. 2002;360:1267–1274.
161. Molyneux AJ, Kerr RS, Yu LM, et al. International subarachnoid aneurysm trial (ISAT) of neurosurgical clipping versus endovascular coiling in 2143 patients with ruptured intracranial aneurysms: a randomised comparison of effects on survival, dependency, seizures, rebleeding, subgroups, and aneurysm occlusion. *Lancet*. 2005;366:809–817.
162. Murphy-Human T, Welch E, Zipfel G, Diringer MN, Dhar R. Comparison of short-duration levetiracetam with extended-course phenytoin for seizure prophylaxis after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *World Neurosurg*. 2011;75:269–274.
163. Human T, Diringer MN, Allen M, et al. A randomized trial of brief versus extended seizure prophylaxis after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurocrit Care*. 2018;28:169–174.
164. Ransom ER, Mocco J, Komotar RJ, et al. External ventricular drainage response in poor grade aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: effect on preoperative grading and prognosis. *Neurocrit Care*. 2007;6:174–180.
165. Graff-Radford NR, Torner J, Adams Jr HP, Kassell NF. Factors associated with hydrocephalus after subarachnoid hemorrhage. A report of the Cooperative Aneurysm Study. *Arch Neurol*. 1989;46:744–752.
166. Hall A, O'kane R. The extracranial consequences of subarachnoid hemorrhage. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;109:381–392.
167. Ogura T, Satoh A, Ooigawa H, et al. Characteristics and prognostic value of acute catecholamine surge in patients with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurol Res*. 2012;34:484–490.
168. Mayer SA, Lin J, Homma S, et al. Myocardial injury and left ventricular performance after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Stroke*. 1999;30:780–786.
169. Manninen PH, Ayra B, Gelb AW, Pelz D. Association between electrocardiographic abnormalities and intracranial blood in patients following acute subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 1995;7:12–16.
170. Zaroff JG, Rordorf GA, Ogilvy CS, Picard MH. Regional patterns of left ventricular systolic dysfunction after subarachnoid hemorrhage: evidence for neurally mediated cardiac injury. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr*. 2000;13:774–779.
171. Zaroff JG, Pawlikowska L, Miss JC, et al. Adrenoceptor polymorphisms and the risk of cardiac injury and dysfunction after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Stroke*. 2006;37:1680–1685.
172. Hravnak M, Frangiskakis JM, Crago EA, et al. Elevated cardiac troponin I and relationship to persistence of electrocardiographic and echocardiographic abnormalities after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Stroke*. 2009;40:3478–3484.
173. Gruber A, Reinprecht A, Gorzer H, et al. Pulmonary function and radiographic abnormalities related to neurological outcome after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg*. 1998;88:28–37.
174. Van Der Bilt IA, Hasan D, Vandertop WP, et al. Impact of cardiac complications on outcome after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a meta-analysis. *Neurology*. 2009;72:635–642.
175. Geraghty JR, Testai FD. Delayed cerebral ischemia after subarachnoid hemorrhage: beyond vasospasm and towards a multifactorial pathophysiology. *Curr Atheroscler Rep*. 2017;19:50.
176. Macdonald RL. Delayed neurological deterioration after subarachnoid haemorrhage. *Nat Rev Neurol*. 2014;10:44–58.
177. Rabinstein AA, Weigand S, Atkinson JL, Wijdicks EF. Patterns of cerebral infarction in aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Stroke*. 2005;36:992–997.
178. Fisher CM, Kistler JP, Davis JM. Relation of cerebral vasospasm to subarachnoid hemorrhage visualized by computerized tomographic scanning. *Neurosurgery*. 1980;6:1–9.
179. Claassen J, Bernardini GL, Kreiter K, et al. Effect of cisternal and ventricular blood on risk of delayed cerebral ischemia after subarachnoid hemorrhage: the Fisher scale revisited. *Stroke*. 2001;32:2012–2020.
180. Frontera JA, Claassen J, Schmidt JM, et al. Prediction of symptomatic vasospasm after subarachnoid hemorrhage: the modified fisher scale. *Neurosurgery*. 2006;59:21–27. discussion 21-27.
181. Kissoon NR, Mandrekar JN, Fugate JE, Lanzino G, Wijdicks EF, Rabinstein AA. Positive fluid balance is associated with poor outcomes in subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis*. 2015;24:2245–2251.
182. Treggiari MM, Walder B, Suter PM, Romand JA. Systematic review of the prevention of delayed ischemic neurological deficits with hypertension, hypervolemia, and hemodilution therapy following subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg*. 2003;98:978–984.
183. Macdonald RL, Higashida RT, Keller E, et al. Clazosentan, an endothelin receptor antagonist, in patients with aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage undergoing surgical clipping: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial (CONSCIOUS-2). *Lancet Neurol*. 2011;10:618–625.

184. Dorhout Mees SM, Rinkel GJ, Feigin VL, et al. Calcium antagonists for aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2007:CD000277.
185. Allen GS, Ahn HS, Preziosi TJ, et al. Cerebral arterial spasm--a controlled trial of nimodipine in patients with subarachnoid hemorrhage. *N Engl J Med*. 1983;308:619–624.
186. Petruk KC, West M, Mohr G, et al. Nimodipine treatment in poor-grade aneurysm patients. Results of a multicenter double-blind placebo-controlled trial. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;68:505–517.
187. Ohman J, Heiskanen O. Effect of nimodipine on the outcome of patients after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage and surgery. *J Neurosurg*. 1988;69:683–686.
188. Lennihan L, Mayer SA, Fink ME, et al. Effect of hypervolemic therapy on cerebral blood flow after subarachnoid hemorrhage : a randomized controlled trial. *Stroke*. 2000;31:383–391.
189. Egge A, Waterloo K, Sjoholm H, Solberg T, Ingebrigtsen T, Romner B. Prophylactic hyperdynamic postoperative fluid therapy after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: a clinical, prospective, randomized, controlled study. *Neurosurgery*. 2001;49:593–605; discussion 605-596.
190. Eskridge JM, Mcauliffe W, Song JK, et al. Balloon angioplasty for the treatment of vasospasm: results of first 50 cases. *Neurosurgery*. 1998;42:510–516. discussion 516-517.
191. Bejjani GK, Bank WO, Olan WJ, Sekhar LN. The efficacy and safety of angioplasty for cerebral vasospasm after subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurosurgery*. 1998;42:979–986. discussion 986-977.
192. Elliott JP, Newell DW, Lam DJ, et al. Comparison of balloon angioplasty and papaverine infusion for the treatment of vasospasm following aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg*. 1998;88:277–284.
193. Harrigan MR. Cerebral salt wasting syndrome: a review. *Neurosurgery*. 1996;38:152–160.
194. Qureshi AI, Suri MF, Sung GY, et al. Prognostic significance of hypernatremia and hyponatremia among patients with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. *Neurosurgery*. 2002;50:749–755; discussion 755-746.
195. Woo CH, Rao VA, Sheridan W, Flint AC. Performance characteristics of a sliding-scale hypertonic saline infusion protocol for the treatment of acute neurologic hyponatremia. *Neurocrit Care*. 2009;11:228–234.
196. Go AS, Mozaffarian D, Roger VL, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics--2013 update: a report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2013;127:e6–e245.
197. Roger VL, Go AS, Lloyd-Jones DM, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics--2012 update: a report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2012;125:e2–e220.
198. Powers WJ, Rabinstein AA, Ackerson T, et al. 2018 Guidelines for the early management of patients with acute ischemic stroke: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. *Stroke*. 2018;49: e46–e110.
199. Nogueira RG, Jadhav AP, Haussen DC, et al. Thrombectomy 6 to 24 hours after stroke with a mismatch between deficit and infarct. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378:11–21.
200. Saver JL, Goyal M, Van Der Lugt A, et al. Time to treatment with endovascular thrombectomy and outcomes from ischemic stroke: a meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2016;316:1279–1288.
201. Albers GW, Marks MP, Lansberg MG. Thrombectomy for stroke with selection by perfusion imaging. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378: 1849–1850.
202. Kansara A, Pandey P, Tiwari A, Rayes M, Narayanan S, Xavier AR. Stenting of acute and subacute intracranial vertebrobasilar arterial occlusive lesions. *J Neurointerv Surg*. 2012;4:274–280.
203. Castillo J, Leira R, Garcia MM, Serena J, Blanco M, Davalos A. Blood pressure decrease during the acute phase of ischemic stroke is associated with brain injury and poor stroke outcome. *Stroke*. 2004;35:520–526.
204. Korpelainen JT, Sotaniemi KA, Huikuri HV, Myllya VV. Abnormal heart rate variability as a manifestation of autonomic dysfunction in hemispheric brain infarction. *Stroke*. 1996;27:2059–2063.
205. Orlandi G, Fanucchi S, Strata G, et al. Transient autonomic nervous system dysfunction during hyperacute stroke. *Acta Neurol Scand*. 2000;102:317–321.
206. Britton M, De Faire U, Helmers C, Miah K, Ryding C, Wester PO. Arrhythmias in patients with acute cerebrovascular disease. *Acta Med Scand*. 1979;205:425–428.
207. Yaghi S, Boehme AK, Dibu J, Leon Guerrero CR, Ali S, Martin-Schild S, et al. Treatment and outcome of thrombolysis-related hemorrhage: a multicenter retrospective study. *JAMA Neurol*. 2015;72:1451–1457.
208. Stone JA, Willey JZ, Keyrouz S, et al. Therapies for hemorrhagic transformation in acute ischemic stroke. *Curr Treat Options Neurol*. 2017;19:1.
209. Kirchoff-Torres KF, Bakradze E. Cerebral hyperperfusion syndrome after carotid revascularization and acute ischemic stroke. *Curr Pain Headache Rep*. 2018;22:24.
210. Wijdicks EF, Sheth KN, Carter BS, et al. Recommendations for the management of cerebral and cerebellar infarction with swelling: a statement for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. *Stroke*. 2014;45:1222–1238.
211. Vahedi K, Hofmeijer J, Juettler E, et al. Early decompressive surgery in malignant infarction of the middle cerebral artery: a pooled analysis of three randomised controlled trials. *Lancet Neurol*. 2007;6:215–222.
212. Juttler E, Unterberg A, Woitzik J, et al. Hemicraniectomy in older patients with extensive middle-cerebral-artery stroke. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1091–1100.
213. Alberts MJ, Latchaw RE, Selman WR, et al. Recommendations for comprehensive stroke centers: a consensus statement from the Brain Attack Coalition. *Stroke*. 2005;36:1597–1616.
214. Van Asch CJ, Luitse MJ, Rinkel GJ, Van Der Tweel I, Algra A, Klijn CJ. Incidence, case fatality, and functional outcome of intracerebral haemorrhage over time, according to age, sex, and ethnic origin: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet Neurol*. 2010;9:167–176.
215. Hemphill 3rd JC, Greenberg SM, Anderson CS, et al. Guidelines for the management of spontaneous intracerebral hemorrhage: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. *Stroke*. 2015;46:2032–2060.
216. Cusack TJ, Carhuapoma JR, Ziai WC. Update on the treatment of spontaneous intraparenchymal hemorrhage: medical and interventional management. *Curr Treat Options Neurol*. 2018;20:1.
217. Hemphill 3rd JC, Bonovich DC, Besmertis L, Manley GT, Johnston SC. The ICH score: a simple, reliable grading scale for intracerebral hemorrhage. *Stroke*. 2001;32:891–897.
218. Rost NS, Smith EE, Chang Y, et al. Prediction of functional outcome in patients with primary intracerebral hemorrhage: the FUNC score. *Stroke*. 2008;39:2304–2309.
219. Anderson CS, Heeley E, Huang Y, et al. Rapid blood-pressure lowering in patients with acute intracerebral hemorrhage. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;368:2355–2365.
220. Anderson CS, Huang Y, Wang JG, et al. Intensive blood pressure reduction in acute cerebral haemorrhage trial (INTERACT): a randomised pilot trial. *Lancet Neurol*. 2008;7:391–399.
221. Qureshi AI, Palesch YY, Barsan WG, et al. Intensive blood-pressure lowering in patients with acute cerebral hemorrhage. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:1033–1043.
222. Frontera JA, Lewin 3rd JJ, Rabinstein AA, et al. Guideline for reversal of antithrombotics in intracranial hemorrhage: executive summary. A statement for healthcare professionals from the Neurocritical Care Society and the Society of Critical Care Medicine. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44:2251–2257.
223. Steiner T, Poli S, Griebe M, et al. Fresh frozen plasma versus prothrombin complex concentrate in patients with intracranial haemorrhage related to vitamin K antagonists (INCH): a randomised trial. *Lancet Neurol*. 2016;15:566–573.
224. Baharoglu MI, Cordonnier C, Al-Shahi Salman R, et al. Platelet transfusion versus standard care after acute stroke due to spontaneous cerebral haemorrhage associated with antiplatelet therapy (PATCH): a randomised, open-label, phase 3 trial. *Lancet*. 2016;387:2605–2613.
225. Tapia Perez JH, Yildiz OC, Schneider T, Nimsky C. Meta-analysis of statin use for the acute therapy of spontaneous intracerebral hemorrhage. *J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis*. 2015;24:2521–2526.
226. Mendelow AD, Gregson BA, Fernandes HM, et al. Early surgery versus initial conservative treatment in patients with spontaneous supratentorial intracerebral haematomas in the International Surgical Trial in Intracerebral Haemorrhage (STICH): a randomised trial. *Lancet*. 2005;365:387–397.
227. Hanley DF, Lane K, Mcbee N, et al. Thrombolytic removal of intraventricular haemorrhage in treatment of severe stroke: results of the randomised, multicentre, multiregion, placebo-controlled CLEAR III trial. *Lancet*. 2017;389:603–611.

228. Lv RJ, Wang Q, Cui T, Zhu F, Shao XQ. Status epilepticus-related etiology, incidence and mortality: a meta-analysis. *Epilepsy Res*. 2017;136:12–17.
229. Hocker SE. Status epilepticus. *Continuum (Minneap Minn)*. 2015;21: 1362–1383.
230. Glauser T, Shinnar S, Gloss D, et al. Evidence-based guideline: treatment of convulsive status epilepticus in children and adults: report of the guideline committee of the American Epilepsy Society. *Epilepsy Curr*. 2016;16:48–61.
231. Zeiler FA, Matuszczak M, Teitelbaum J, Gillman LM, Kazina CJ. Electroconvulsive therapy for refractory status epilepticus: a systematic review. *Seizure*. 2016;35:23–32.
232. Kofke WA, Young RS, Davis P, et al. Isoflurane for refractory status epilepticus: a clinical series. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;71:653–659.
233. Sutter R, Dittrich T, Semmlack S, Ruegg S, Marsch S, Kaplan PW. Acute systemic complications of convulsive status epilepticus-a systematic review. *Crit Care Med*. 2018;46:138–145.
234. Ancona P, Bailey M, Bellomo R. Characteristics, incidence and outcome of patients admitted to intensive care unit with Guillain-Barre syndrome in Australia and New Zealand. *J Crit Care*. 2018;45:58–64.
235. Willison HJ, Jacobs BC, Van Doorn PA. Guillain-Barre syndrome. *Lancet*. 2016;388:717–727.
236. Van Den Berg B, Walgaard C, Drenthen J, Fokke C, Jacobs BC, Van Doorn PA. Guillain-Barre syndrome: pathogenesis, diagnosis, treatment and prognosis. *Nat Rev Neurol*. 2014;10:469–482.
237. Rees JH, Soudain SE, Gregson NA, Hughes RA. Campylobacter jejuni infection and Guillain-Barre syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333:1374–1379.
238. Musso D, Cao-Lormeau VM, Gubler DJ. Zika virus: following the path of dengue and chikungunya? *Lancet*. 2015;386:243–244.
239. Cosi V, Versino M. Guillain-Barre syndrome. *Neurol Sci*. 2006; 27(suppl 1):S47–51.
240. Hughes RA, Cornblath DR. Guillain-Barre syndrome. *Lancet*. 2005;366:1653–1666.
241. Walgaard C, Lingsma HF, Ruts L, et al. Prediction of respiratory insufficiency in Guillain-Barre syndrome. *Ann Neurol*. 2010;67:781–787.
242. Walgaard C, Lingsma HF, Van Doorn PA, Van Der Jagt M, Steyerberg EW, Jacobs BC. Tracheostomy or not: prediction of prolonged mechanical ventilation in guillain-barre syndrome. *Neurocrit Care*. 2017;26:6–13.
243. Fourrier F, Robriquet L, Hurtevent JF, Spagnolo S. A simple functional marker to predict the need for prolonged mechanical ventilation in patients with Guillain-Barre syndrome. *Crit Care*. 2011;15:R65.
244. Van Den Berg B, Fokke C, Drenthen J, Van Doorn PA, Jacobs BC. Paraparetic Guillain-Barre syndrome. *Neurology*. 2014;82:1984–1989.
245. Gilhus NE. Myasthenia gravis. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375:2570–2581.
246. Gilhus NE, Verschuuren JJ. Myasthenia gravis: subgroup classification and therapeutic strategies. *Lancet Neurol*. 2015;14:1023–1036.
247. Carr AS, Cardwell CR, Mccarron PO, Mcconville J. A systematic review of population based epidemiological studies in Myasthenia Gravis. *BMC Neurol*. 2010;10:46.
248. Al-Bassam W, Kubicki M, Bailey M, et al. Characteristics, incidence, and outcome of patients admitted to the intensive care unit with myasthenia gravis. *J Crit Care*. 2018;45:90–94.
249. Juel VC. Myasthenia gravis: management of myasthenic crisis and perioperative care. *Semin Neurol*. 2004;24:75–81.
250. Wu JY, Kuo PH, Fan PC, Wu HD, Shih FY, Yang PC. The role of non-invasive ventilation and factors predicting extubation outcome in myasthenic crisis. *Neurocrit Care*. 2009;10:35–42.
251. Gilhus NE. Neuromuscular disease: acute treatment for myasthenia gravis. *Nat Rev Neurol*. 2011;7:132–134.
252. Robertson FC, Lepard JR, Mekary RA, et al. Epidemiology of central nervous system infectious diseases: a meta-analysis and systematic review with implications for neurosurgeons worldwide. *J Neurosurg*. 2018:1–20.
253. Ziai WC, Lewin 3rd JJ. Update in the diagnosis and management of central nervous system infections. *Neurol Clin*. 2008;26:427–468. viii.
254. Tunkel AR, Hartman BJ, Kaplan SL, et al. Practice guidelines for the management of bacterial meningitis. *Clin Infect Dis*. 2004;39:1267–1284.
255. Gaieski DF, O'brien NF, Hernandez R. Emergency neurologic life support: meningitis and encephalitis. *Neurocrit Care*. 2017;27:124–133.
256. Brouwer MC, Mcintyre P, Prasad K, Van De Beek D. Corticosteroids for acute bacterial meningitis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2015:CD004405.
257. Figueiredo AHA, Brouwer MC, Van De Beek D. Acute community-acquired bacterial meningitis. *Neurol Clin*. 2018;36:809–820.
258. Boucher A, Herrmann JL, Morand P, et al. Epidemiology of infectious encephalitis causes in 2016. *Med Mal Infect*. 2017;47:221–235.
259. Armangue T, Leypoldt F, Dalmau J. Autoimmune encephalitis as differential diagnosis of infectious encephalitis. *Curr Opin Neurol*. 2014;27:361–368.
260. Kennedy PGE, Quan PL, Lipkin WI. Viral encephalitis of unknown cause: current perspective and recent advances. *Viruses*. 2017;9.
261. Jian M, Li X, Wang A, Zhang L, Han R, Gelb AW. Flurbiprofen and hypertension but not hydroxyethyl starch are associated with post-craniotomy intracranial haematoma requiring surgery. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:832–839.
262. Schar RT, Schwarz C, Soll N, Raabe A, Z'graggen WJ, Beck J. Early postoperative perils of intraventricular tumors: an observational comparative study. *World Neurosurg*. 2018;113:e769–e776.
263. Schar RT, Fiechter M, Z'graggen WJ, et al. No routine postoperative head CT following elective craniotomy--a paradigm shift? *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0153499.
264. Mordhorst C, Latz B, Kerz T, et al. Prospective assessment of postoperative pain after craniotomy. *J Neurosurg Anesthesiol*. 2010;22:202–206.
265. Latz B, Mordhorst C, Kerz T, et al. Postoperative nausea and vomiting in patients after craniotomy: incidence and risk factors. *J Neurosurg*. 2011;114:491–496.
266. Scheller C, Rachinger J, Strauss C, Alfieri A, Prell J, Koman G. Therapeutic anticoagulation after craniotomies: is the risk for secondary hemorrhage overestimated? *J Neurol Surg A Cent Eur Neurosurg*. 2014;75:2–6.
267. Chaichana KL, Pendleton C, Jackson C, et al. Deep venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolisms in adult patients undergoing craniotomy for brain tumors. *Neurol Res*. 2013;35:206–211.
268. Wijdicks EF. The neurologist and Harvard criteria for brain death. *Neurology*. 2003;61:970–976.
269. Dominguez-Gil B, Delmonico FL, Shaheen FA, et al. The critical pathway for deceased donation: reportable uniformity in the approach to deceased donation. *Transpl Int*. 2011;24:373–378.
270. Wijdicks EF, Varelas PN, Gronseth GS, Greer DM, American Academy Of N. Evidence-based guideline update: determining brain death in adults: report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. *Neurology*. 2010;74:1911–1918.
271. Nakagawa TA, Ashwal S, Mathur M, Mysore M, Society of Critical Care Medicine SOCC, Section on Neurology of American Academy Of P, et al. Clinical report-Guidelines for the determination of brain death in infants and children: an update of the 1987 task force recommendations. *Pediatrics*. 2011;128:e720–e740.
272. Buchanan KM, Elias LJ, Goplen GB. Differing perspectives on outcome after subarachnoid hemorrhage: the patient, the relative, the neurosurgeon. *Neurosurgery*. 2000;46:831–838.

85

Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation and Cardiac Devices

JAMES G. RAMSAY, KENNETH SHELTON, and GASTON CUDEMUS

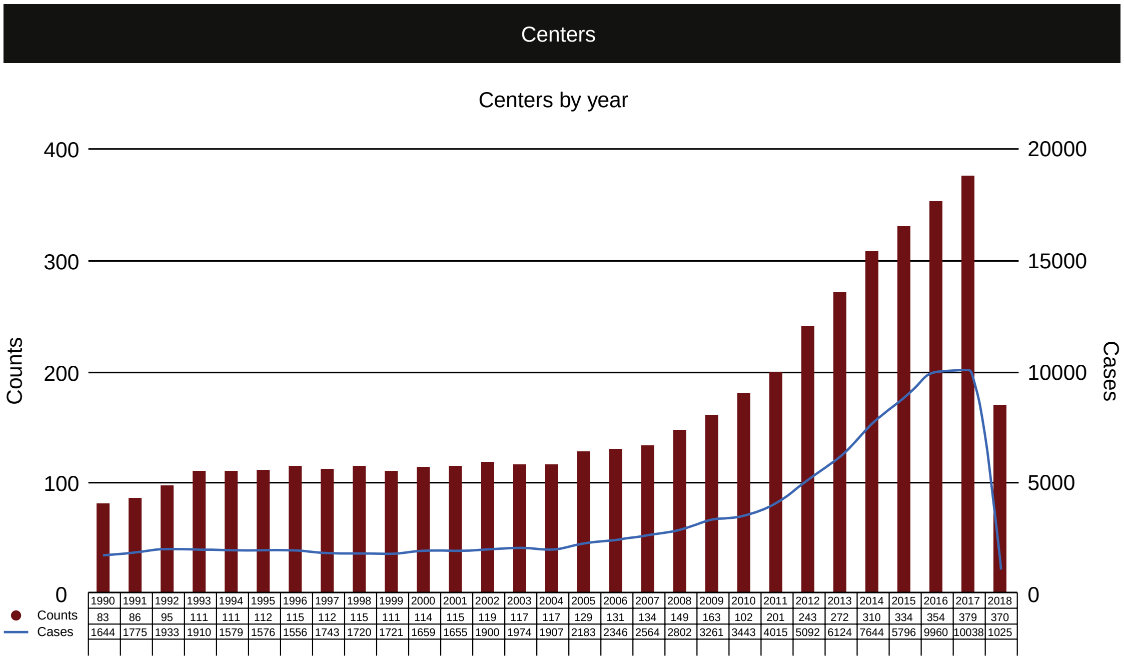
KEY POINTS

- Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) consists of a specific heart-lung machine that provides circulatory support and/or gas exchange for patients with severe but potentially reversible respiratory or cardiac failure or both. Although the term *extracorporeal life support* (ECLS) might describe the system more accurately, ECMO is actually most often used and universally accepted for describing all its applications.
- Different configurations of ECMO (e.g., venovenous [VV], venoarterial [VA], venous to pulmonary artery [V-PA]) can be utilized depending on specific organ failure and severity (e.g., respiratory failure, cardiogenic shock, cardiogenic shock associated with respiratory failure, respiratory failure in association with right ventricular failure). The most rapid way to initiate ECMO urgently (excluding patients undergoing cardiac surgery) is peripheral VA cannulation.
- ECMO must be viewed as a "bridging" therapy where the anticipated outcome is either recovery or replacement of the failing heart, lung, or both. Assessment of the likelihood of survival using recently published scoring systems, and of the patient's potential candidacy for transplant or device (cardiac) should be made prior to initiation. Ideally the decision to proceed with ECMO should be made by a team rather than an individual.
- Overall survival of VV ECMO to recovery is now approximately 60% in adults with acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), usually due to viral or bacterial infection, whereas survival of VA ECMO in adults with severe cardiac failure is approximately 40%. Where ECMO is urgently initiated in the setting of *extracorporeal* cardiopulmonary resuscitation (ECPR) survival in adults is 29%.
- Vascular access is a critical aspect of ECMO as different sites are associated with different characteristics of flow and gas exchange in combination with the patient's native heart and lung functions. Vascular complications are common, with arterial complications more frequent and severe than venous complications.
- Anticoagulation management is institution specific, varying by the nature of the circuit (how much of the ECMO circuit is heparin bonded), flow (greater anticoagulation needed for lower flows), and which coagulation tests are readily available. Bleeding and clotting complications are common.
- The cardiac anesthesiologist plays an important role in the cannulation and decannulation of patients, managing sedation and cardiac support medications for urgent bedside procedures, anesthesia for operative procedures, and in providing echocardiographic assessment of cannula placement and cardiac function. The anesthesiologist-intensivist is an integral part of the management team in the intensive care unit (ICU), providing a continuum of care through ECMO management and potential transition to advanced therapies both in the ICU and the operating room.

Introduction

Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation or ECMO refers to a number of configurations of extracorporeal circulatory and/or respiratory support. As the technology evolved, other acronyms such as MCS (mechanical circulatory support) and ECLS (extracorporeal life support) have been used, but in North America ECMO continues to be the most commonly used term to describe a circuit, pump, and oxygenator that can perform the work of the heart and lungs by adding oxygen and removing carbon dioxide from circulating blood for prolonged intervals. Venovenous (VV) ECMO withdraws venous blood and returns oxygenated blood to the right side of the heart supporting only respiration; venoarterial (VA) ECMO withdraws venous blood and returns oxygenated blood to the arterial system, thereby supporting both respiration and circulation. Another configuration is venous-pulmonary artery (VPA) ECMO used to support the right heart and the lungs when there is right heart failure and respiratory failure but the left heart is not supported.

An ECMO circuit comprises cannulae inserted into large vessels to remove and return the blood from the patient,



	1990	1991	1992	1993	1994	1995	1996	1997	1998	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004
● Counts	83	86	95	111	111	112	115	112	115	111	114	115	119	117	117
— Cases	1644	1775	1933	1910	1579	1576	1556	1743	1720	1721	1659	1655	1900	1974	1907

	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018
● Counts	129	131	134	149	163	102	201	243	272	310	334	354	379	370
— Cases	2183	2346	2564	2802	3261	3443	4015	5092	6124	7644	5796	9960	10038	1025

Fig. 85.1 International Registry of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation cases and centers, from the Extracorporeal Life Support Organization (*red bars*: cases, Y axis on right; *blue line*: centers, Y axis on left) from 1990–2018 (first 6 months). (From ELSO website, www.ELSO.org.)

tubing to connect to a nonpulsatile centrifugal pump that generates blood flow, and an oxygenator, where an oxygen-air mixture flows through the blood, referred to as the "sweep." This is a closed system without a reservoir, with some or all of the circuit components surface bonded with heparin, and is designed for extended use, such as days or weeks. This is in contrast to the extracorporeal circuit used for cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) in the operating room that uses larger-diameter and longer tubing (larger "prime" volume), and is an open system with a reservoir designed to receive input not only from the venous cannula but also from the operative field. Such CPB circuits may or may not be heparin bonded, and are intended for surgical use of short duration (e.g., hours). There is some evidence in the lung transplant literature that use of ECMO during the surgical procedure may be associated with a smaller systemic inflammatory response than the use of the traditional CPB.[1]

Pumpless extracorporeal lung assist (pECLA), or the Novalung, uses the patient's arterial pressure rather than a pump to drive blood through an extracorporeal oxygenator. It therefore supports only respiration. This device requires less anticoagulation than traditional ECMO but due to lower flows and the membrane area also has a more limited capacity especially for oxygenation.[2] It has been used to support patients with pulmonary hypertension awaiting lung transplantation, implanted in a pulmonary artery to left atrium configuration.[3] It is available in North America but is less widely used than ECMO and will not be discussed further.

History of Extracorporeal Cardiorespiratory Support

The history of ECMO is inextricably bound to the development of CPB for cardiac surgery. The first successful use of CPB in a human was by Gibbon in 1953, to repair an atrial septal defect in an 18-year-old patient.[4] The following year, Warden and colleagues reported cardiac surgery using extracorporeal circulation,[5] after which there was an ever increasing number of reports from many centers. Among the major limitations in these early reports was the use of "bubble" oxygenators where oxygen is bubbled through a reservoir of blood to achieve gas exchange. These oxygenators are associated with trauma to formed elements of the blood and coagulopathy with prolonged use.[6] The development of oxygenators with membranes separating flow of the respiratory gases from the blood reduced these effects, making the oxygenators suitable for longer-term use. Membrane oxygenators have replaced bubble oxygenators in cardiac surgery and their development led to the first successful reports of prolonged support outside of the operating room, in 1972 by Hill and associates[7] in a 24-year-old trauma patient, and by Bartlett after neonatal cardiac surgery.[8] In 1985 Bartlett and associates reported the successful use of ECMO for neonatal respiratory failure in 11 patients.[9] In the following two decades a number of additional trials showed the benefit of ECMO in neonatal respiratory failure, the most definitive of which was published in 1996 by the UK Collaborative ECMO Trial Group in 185 infants.[10] In the same year Green and colleagues[11] published a trial demonstrating similar benefit in older pediatric patients with respiratory failure. Note the majority of use in the first decades was for respiratory failure, using VV ECMO. During this period the Extracorporeal Life Support Organization or ELSO was founded, first at the University of Michigan in 1989, then a European ELSO group formed in 1991. This organization has played a key role in documenting worldwide ECMO use, and pioneering education, research, and development in all types of ECMO support in all populations. Fig. 85.1 and Table 85.1 illustrate the increase in use of ECMO and the survival data since 1990 (www.ELSO.org).

TABLE 85.1 International Registry of ECMO; Survival from ECMO and from Hospitalization, by Age Category (Neonatal, Pediatric, or Adult) and Indication (Pulmonary, Cardiac, or "ECPR" [ECMO for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation])

	OVERALL OUTCOMES		
	Total Runs	**Survived ECLS**	**Survived to DC or Transfer**
Neonatal			
Pulmonary	30,934	25,990 (84%)	22,662 (73%)
Cardiac	7,794	5,063 (64%)	3,281 (42%)
ECPR	1,718	1,140 (66%)	708 (41%)
Pediatric			
Pulmonary	8,820	5,953 (67%)	5,131 (58%)
Cardiac	10,462	7,177 (68%)	5,447 (52%)
ECPR	3,946	2,262 (57%)	1,675 (42%)
Adult			
Pulmonary	16,337	10,857 (66%)	9,649 (59%)
Cardiac	15,942	8,865 (55%)	6,747 (42%)
ECPR	4,952	1896 (38%)	1,443 (29%)
Total	100,905	69,203 (68%)	56,743 (56%)

From ELSO website, www.ELSO.org

BOX 85.1 **Indications for VV ECMO**

- Severe ARDS
  - Murray score of 2.5[19]
  - Berlin definition[20]
- Respiratory failure associated with:
  - Refractory hypoxemia despite maximum less invasive therapies
    - e.g., FiO_2 >90%, PEEP >15 cm H_2O, prone ventilation
    - Refractory hypercarbia (e.g., $PaCO_2 > 80$) with acidosis
    - Injurious ventilating pressures (e.g., plateau pressures >30 mm Hg) with lung-protective tidal volumes
- Common clinical conditions
  - Severe pneumonia (viral or bacterial)
  - Aspiration pneumonitis
  - ARDS from any cause
  - Pulmonary contusion
  - Status asthmaticus
  - Severe air leak syndrome
  - Inhalation injury
  - Airway obstruction (e.g., mediastinal mass)
  - Pre and post lung transplant

ECMO for Respiratory Failure (VV ECMO)

In contrast to the ECMO experience in neonatal and pediatric respiratory failure as previously described, demonstration of benefit in adults took much longer, delayed in part due to the publication of a trial in 1979 by Zapol and associates[12] in 90 adult patients with respiratory failure. This trial had many limitations, including the use of VA rather than VV ECMO, patient selection, anticoagulation technique and bleeding complications, and the use of standard ventilation at the time—relatively high-tidal volume and low positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP). Poor outcomes deterred adult use of ECMO for more than 20 years. From 2001 to 2006 a large, ambitious British trial, the CESAR trial, was performed to evaluate VV ECMO for respiratory failure in adults.[13] This study was performed during the H1N1 influenza pandemic, and involved transferring patients with severe respiratory failure to a central expert ECMO center, where they were randomly assigned to ECMO or standard therapy. Despite some methodological and statistical limitations, the results supported the use of ECMO performed in a specialized center to improve survival: 63% versus 43% survival with ECMO versus standard treatment. At the same time, another report (case series) of VV ECMO in adults with severe acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) due to H1N1 was reported from Australia and New Zealand (ANZ ECMO).[14] This study found a 79% survival at 30 days in patients who received ECMO. Recently a large multicenter trial of VV ECMO in adults with severe ARDS, the EOLIA trial, was published in 2018,[15] with the authors concluding no difference in mortality between ECMO and conventional therapy at 60 days: 35% versus 46% ($P = .09$), with 28% of the control group crossing over to ECMO after randomization and a 57% mortality in this crossover group. Editorial comments on this study have challenged this conclusion, maintaining that it supports the use of early ECMO in adults with severe ARDS.[16,17] The ELSO database reports survival to discharge with ECMO for adult respiratory failure as 60% with this percentage being relatively stable over 15 years.[18]

INDICATIONS FOR VV ECMO IN RESPIRATORY FAILURE

Box 85.1 lists common indications for VV ECMO in respiratory failure. As VV ECMO supports only respiratory function, if the patient has right- or left-sided cardiac failure then another configuration of support must be used. The most common indication is ARDS, most commonly due to viral or bacterial infection. As indicated previously, the most studied population is patients with H1N1 viral pneumonia. A commonly used assessment for the severity of ARDS is the Murray score, which is based on four standard criteria: PaO_2/FiO_2 gradient for oxygen, degree of PEEP, number of quadrants affected as shown on the chest radiograph, and lung compliance.[19] In 2012, the Berlin criteria were published, where the severity of ARDS is rated as mild, moderate, or severe based on the PaO_2/FiO_2 gradient for oxygen if other criteria are present.[20] In general, patients with severe ARDS (PaO_2/FiO_2 gradient of < 100 mm Hg with PEEP > 5) are potential candidates for ECMO as the mortality without ECMO is approximately 40%.[20] As described later in the section on the ethics of ECMO, there are studies that evaluate the likelihood of survival at the time ECMO is being considered; this can help guide decision making. It should also be mentioned that from the CESAR trial described earlier,[13] if a patient being considered for VV ECMO is not at an ECMO center or one with expertise in management of ARDS, transfer to such a facility is likely to provide a better outcome even in the absence of ECMO. While not formally studied, many reports indicate that outcomes are better with earlier institution of ECMO, probably at least in part because this permits the use of lung protective ventilation when respiration is supported by ECMO.[21]

ECMO for lung transplantation is discussed in the next section.

BOX 85.2 **Indications for VA ECMO**

- Cardiogenic shock
  - Hypotension/poor tissue perfusion despite maximum medical therapy +/– balloon pump
- Combined cardiorespiratory failure
  - Cardiogenic shock with pulmonary edema and hypoxemia
- Urgent ECMO for respiratory failure
  - As temporizing measure before institution of VV ECMO
- Common clinical conditions
  - Refractory cardiogenic shock (any cause)
  - Failure to separate from cardiopulmonary bypass
  - Bridge to durable ventricular assist device or transplant
  - Intraoperative lung transplant
  - Unstable arrhythmias
  - Anaphylaxis
  - Massive pulmonary embolus
  - Cardiac arrest without return of spontaneous circulation

VA ECMO, venoarterial extracorporeal membrane oxygenation; VV ECMO, venovenous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation.

CONTRAINDICATIONS TO VV ECMO

In keeping with ELSO guidelines[18] there are no absolute contraindications for VV ECMO in adults Box 85.2. There are, however, conditions known to be associated with a poor outcome, despite ECMO; these should always be considered before initiating ECMO assistance. These conditions include: injurious mechanical ventilation for 7 days or longer, major pharmacologic immunosuppression, and intracranial hemorrhage that is recent or expanding. Specific patient conditions should also be considered. Although no specific age is a contraindication, increased age is considered to increase the risk.[18] A body mass index (BMI) of more than 40 to 45 may be associated with technical difficulties and the risk of not being able to achieve an adequate blood flow. VV ECMO is a bridge to either recovery or lung transplant; if neither of these outcomes appears at all likely then its initiation is not advisable.

Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation for Patients Awaiting and Undergoing Lung Transplantation

The history of ECMO for severe respiratory failure as described previously refers mostly to patients with acute or acute on chronic disease where recovery could be anticipated. Another population is patients with end-stage chronic lung disease awaiting lung transplantation. These patients often have a slow (in years) deterioration in function and an increased need for oxygen support, with the final stage being an acute deterioration where standard therapy with mechanical ventilation ultimately fails. Institution of ECMO to prolong survival until transplant, use of ECMO during transplant surgery, and extension or initiation of ECMO postoperatively for primary graft dysfunction (PGD) or other indications have all become common applications for this advanced therapy. As recently as 2010 there was concern that the use of ECMO resulted in a reduced long-term survival from lung transplantation,[22] but this is no longer the case in 2018. Case reports, single center reports, and surveys have documented that the use of pretransplant ECMO, sometimes for months, was followed by successful transplant and good long-term outcomes.[23,24] Raleigh and associates compared 10 studies on the use of preoperative ECMO for lung transplant patients and found similar outcomes to the patients who did not need ECMO[25] and Loor and associates described factors that contributed to posttransplant survival in this population.[26] Intraoperative use of ECMO during the procedure has also been shown to reduce the inflammatory response and leads to less PGD when compared to CPB and leads to improved short-term and longer-term outcomes[1,26,27] even when compared to no use of either CPB or ECMO intraoperatively.[28] While preoperative ECMO may be VV, VA, or VPA, intraoperatively VA ECMO is usually used due to surgical manipulation of the heart with its attendant hemodynamic compromise as well as the need for one-lung ventilation in patients with end-stage pulmonary disease and elevated pulmonary vascular pressures. Postoperatively, ECMO support may be needed to support the new lungs in the face of PGD, the right heart, the left heart, or any combination of these. Postoperative ECMO support is also associated with excellent outcomes.[28]

ECMO for Circulatory Failure (VA ECMO)

VA ECMO can be used to support the heart and lungs temporarily in a patient with poor cardiac function who undergoes an invasive cardiology procedure, to continue postoperative cardiopulmonary support in a cardiac surgery patient who fails to separate from CPB, and in a patient with refractory cardiac failure with or without associated respiratory failure. These conditions may occur due to an acute recoverable illness (e.g., myocarditis) or may be in the setting of acute on chronic heart failure in patients being evaluated for long-term advanced therapies such as a durable ventricular assist device or cardiac transplant. Urgent use of ECMO in the acute setting of in-hospital cardiac arrest (ECPR) is also practiced in some centers. Finally, as VA ECMO can be instituted at the bedside without imaging, it may be the preferred technique for emergent cannulation in any form of respiratory or cardiac failure, with elective conversion to another form (e.g., VV ECMO) once the patient has stabilized.

The historical perspective for use of VA ECMO for cardiac or combined cardiorespiratory support in adults is illustrated in the 2016 report from the ELSO registry.[29] Adult cardiac ECMO was in its infancy in 1990 with little increase in use until 2006 when its use began to increase exponentially; there were more than 2000 adult cardiac ECMO runs reported to ELSO in 2015, comprising an ever-increasing proportion of all ECMO runs (Fig. 85.2). This exponential increase was likely fueled by consistent success in the neonatal and pediatric populations; improvements in the ECMO circuits, pumps, and oxygenators; and the success and experience with VV ECMO for adult respiratory failure. Overall survival in adults who receive ECMO for cardiac indications is approximately 40% with a slight increasing trend over the last 10 years.[29]

INDICATIONS FOR VA ECMO

For periprocedural support of the heart only, short-term devices such as a percutaneous left ventricular assist device

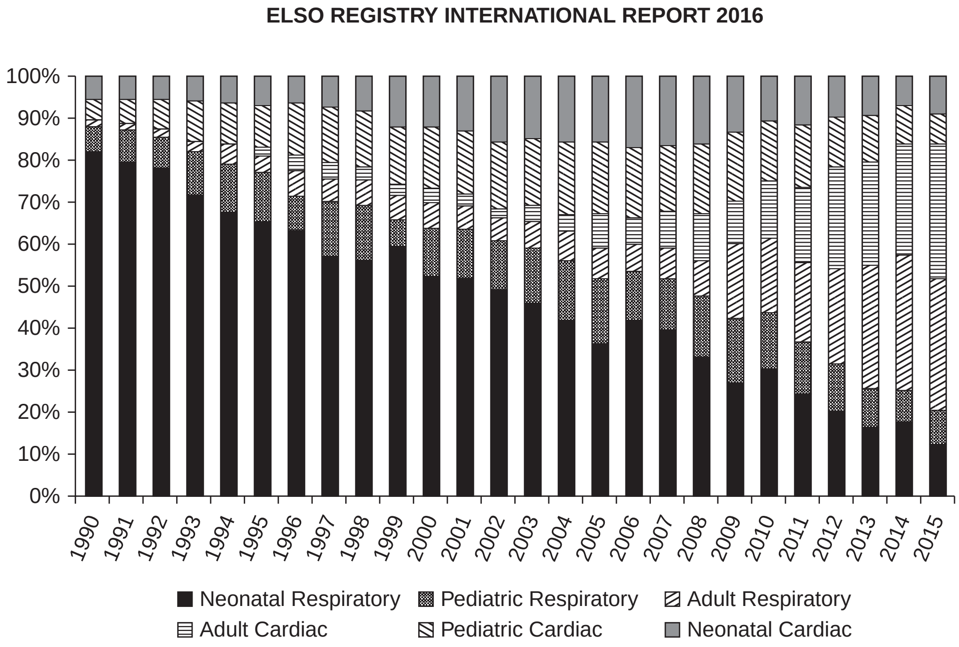


Fig. 85.2 Distribution of trends in extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) utilization (data from the ELSO registry) by patient age and indication (pulmonary or cardiac) between 1990 and 2016. In the early years the majority of ECMO was neonatal respiratory, whereas in recent years it is more adult respiratory and cardiac. (From Thiagarajan RR, Barbaro RP, Rycus PT, et al. Extracorporeal Life Support Organization Registry International Report 2016. *ASAIO J*. 2017;63(1):60–67.)

(LVAD, e.g., Impella or TandemHeart) are one type of support; the other is short-term ECMO, usually peripheral (femoral) VA ECMO. Recent reviews of temporary circulatory support devices in cardiology compare and summarize risks, benefits, and outcomes with the different approaches in different settings.[30,31] Use of VA ECMO provides support for both the right and left heart, whereas short-term LVADs support only one ventricle. Surgeons are much more likely to use VA ECMO in the setting of postcardiotomy failure, partly due to familiarity with surgical cannulation (or the presence of central cannulae), but also due to the support this provides for both ventricles and the lungs. Reviews of postcardiotomy ECMO suggest approximately 30% survival to hospital discharge.[32,33]

For support of the patient with refractory end-stage cardiac failure who may be a potential candidate for durable LVAD or transplant, or who has already been evaluated for such advanced therapy, there are advantages and disadvantages to both the short-term LVAD (Impella or TandemHeart) and ECMO. Such patients always need left ventricular support but if right heart function and pulmonary function are adequate a short-term percutaneous LVAD might be appropriate. As discussed later, a significant advantage of these devices over VA ECMO is decompression of the left ventricle, which is not a feature of VA ECMO. If placed via the axillary/subclavian artery, the patient can be at least somewhat mobile with such a device. If, however the right heart, or lungs, or both, needs support, then VA ECMO is most appropriate. Another issue is urgency or acuity: peripheral VA ECMO can be initiated at the bedside without imaging more rapidly than a temporary assist device. The main problem if this support is needed for days or weeks is the femoral cannulae prevent mobilization. A recent systematic review (publications between 2006 and 2016) of short-term mechanical circulatory support as a bridge to durable LVAD or transplant (or recovery) documented a wide range in the number of days of support (individual study means of up to 47 days) and an overall 45% to 66% of patients surviving to discharge.[34] In this report where the support was via central ECMO (see later), a higher proportion of patients went on to receive durable LVAD or transplant and survived to discharge than those who received peripheral ECMO.

For acute recoverable myocardial illness such as myocarditis, survival is approximately 67% with VA ECMO.[35] This is a better outcome than for other cardiac indications, likely reflective of the younger age of such patients and possibly because in this setting ECMO is usually instituted before cardiogenic shock or arrest.

In the 2016 ELSO report, use of ECMO in the setting of cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) or extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation (ECPR) in adults comprises approximately 15% of all adult ECMO.[29] Sixty-six percent of all centers reporting to the registry indicate some use in this setting. While referrals for ECMO for respiratory and cardiac failure are often relatively acute and urgent, in the setting of bedside CPR, ECMO needs to be instituted very rapidly; time from starting CPR to ECMO initiation is an important determinant of good outcome.[36,37] This limits its use to institutions able to support a team that is ready for such rapid activation. Survival to discharge is, not surprisingly, the lowest of all ECMO applications in both adults (29%) and pediatrics (41%).[29] The quality of evidence in published studies comparing ECLS to standard CPR is low, with a great deal of heterogeneity.[37]

Indications for VA ECMO are summarized in Box 85.2. According to the 2013 ELSO guidelines[18] the most common indication for VA ECMO in adult cardiac failure is the presence of cardiogenic shock with end organ hypoperfusion despite the use of dual inotropes and significant vasopressor requirement. This includes cardiogenic shock with or without myocardial infarction, fulminant myocarditis, peripartum cardiomyopathy, decompensated chronic heart failure, right heart failure, medication or toxic drug overdose, and postcardiotomy shock.

CONTRAINDICATIONS TO VA ECMO

Absolute contraindications to VA ECMO include acute intracranial hemorrhage or massive stroke, active bleeding, and severe aortic insufficiency. Relative contraindications (variable by center) may include contraindication for anticoagulation, advanced age, obesity, active cancer, suicide attempt, chronic hemodialysis, end-stage liver disease, aortic dissection, and lack of social support. As is the case for VV ECMO, if neither recovery nor candidacy for durable therapy (LVAD or transplant) are likely, VA ECMO should not be initiated.

The Ethics of Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation

The initiation of any form of ECMO is lifesaving when the heart, or lungs, or both are failing despite maximum medical therapies. It is a very invasive and labor-intensive therapy, with associated severe complications, and may confine a patient to an ICU for days, weeks, or even months. As the practice has evolved over time, many groups have tried to address issues of patient appropriateness, possible exclusion criteria, and prognosis before initiating the therapy. An essential consideration is that ECMO is a "bridge" to something else and cannot be viewed as a long-term solution; Box 85.3 lists the uses of ECMO as a "bridging" therapy to a variety of possible scenarios. The following discussion addresses only the individual patient ethical dilemmas, and not the overriding issue of the use of a limited availability, expensive, and labor-intensive therapy with its cost:benefit implications, and overall implications for health care systems.

BOX 85.3 Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation as "Bridge" Therapy

Bridge to Decision	Urgent initiation before the ability to assess likelihood of recovery or candidacy for advanced therapy
Bridge to Recovery	Initiation for organ failure that is believed to be potentially recoverable
Bridge to Advanced Durable Therapy	Initiation after acceptance for eligibility for device (e.g., VAD) or transplant
"Bridge to Nowhere"	Bridge to decision which is likely to be non-recovery and non-eligibility for advanced therapy

VAD, Ventricular assist device.

When an otherwise relatively young and healthy patient develops an acute severe illness resulting in acute cardiac failure and shock (e.g., viral cardiomyopathy) or acute refractory lung failure (e.g., viral pneumonia), the decision to initiate lifesaving extracorporeal support as a "bridge to recovery" seems relatively straightforward. Similarly, a patient with end-stage disease of any kind who already has a "do not resuscitate" status would likely not be a candidate for ECMO if the heart suddenly failed. Unfortunately, the clinical spectrum of potential candidates runs as a continuum between these two examples. From the patient and family, through all levels of caregivers and decision makers, tools to help assess the likelihood of successful outcome with this advanced therapy are needed.

The ELSO registry database has been used to study the likelihood of survival *prior to* ECMO initiation, both in respiratory failure (Table 85.2)[38] and cardiac failure (Table 85.3).[39] There are many common elements in these publications, including the duration and degree of respiratory support, age, other organ function, and acidosis. While these publications can be used as a general guide and can be quoted to referring physicians and families, they have to be placed in clinical context; decision making for life-sustaining treatment must be patient-specific. Courtwright and associates[40] make a point of the need to emphasize to the patient's family the "bridging" nature of ECMO therapy, and that a destination must be formulated at the outset or early on. Because of the need for anticoagulation and the risk for bleeding or thrombosis, patients who are not candidates for anticoagulation (e.g., intracranial hemorrhage) are generally not candidates for ECMO, even though more experience is accumulating with reduced or even no anticoagulation with the use of anticoagulant bonded cannulae, tubing, pump heads, and oxygenators. Patients with underlying severe disease who are not expected to survive more than some predetermined period (i.e., 6 months or a year) independent of the need for ECMO are unlikely to be considered as candidates. Rather than have a single physician or surgeon determine whether ECMO should be initiated in a given patient, especially when a request comes from an outside hospital, many institutions make this a shared decision by a small committee (i.e., 3 individuals) who are all familiar with and participate in ECMO management.[41]

Overall survival for adult respiratory and cardiac ECMO is approximately 60% and 40%, respectively. Although this is certainly a major advance for diseases that were previously not survivable, the other side of this coin is that mortality remains at 40% and 60%. It makes good sense to engage palliative care and/or an ethics committee and other counselling services, where available and appropriate, at the outset for this therapy.[40,41] When ECMO is being considered but there is uncertainty about the likelihood of recovery or candidacy for advanced durable therapy, discussions with family and caregivers should be similar to those made regarding "do not resuscitate," assessing the values and goals of the patient.[42] Counselling for ICU caregivers as well as family, including postmortem "debriefings," can be very valuable to help staff deal with end-of-life issues. There are few settings where withdrawal of therapy can so immediately result in death, where patients have intact neurologic function but are on the "bridge to nowhere"; it can be extremely troubling to all involved when ECMO is stopped.

TABLE 85.2 The "RESP" Score for Pre-ECMO Prediction of Survival at 30 Days After Initiation of VV ECMO for Respiratory Failure

PARAMETER	Score
AGE, YEARS	
18-49	0
50-59	−2
≥60	−3
Immunocompromised status[*]	−2
MECHANICAL VENTILATION PRIOR TO INITIATION OF ECMO	
<48 h	3
48 h to 7 days	1
>7 days	0
ACUTE RESPIRATORY DIAGNOSIS GROUP (SELECT ONLY ONE)	
Viral pneumonia	3
Bacterial pneumonia	3
Asthma	11
Trauma and burn	3
Aspiration pneumonitis	5
Other acute respiratory diagnoses	1
Nonrespiratory and chronic respiratory diagnoses	0
Central nervous system dysfunction[†]	−7
Acute associated (nonpulmonary) infection[‡]	−3
Neuromuscular blockade agents before ECMO	1
Nitric oxide use before ECMO	−1
Bicarbonate infusion before ECMO	−2
Cardiac arrest before ECMO	−2
$PaCO_2$, mm Hg	
<75	0
≥75	−1
PEAK INSPIRATORY PRESSURE, cm H_2O	
<42	0
≥42	−1
Total score	−22 to 15

Total RESP Score	Risk Class	Survival
HOSPITAL SURVIVAL BY RISK CLASS		
≥6	I	92%
3-5	II	76%
−1 to 2	III	57%
−5 to −2	IV	33%
≤−6	V	18%

An online calculator is available at www.respscore.com.

[*] "Immunocompromised" is defined as hematological malignancies, solid tumor, solid organ transplantation, human immunodeficiency virus, and cirrhosis.

[†] "Central nervous system dysfunction" diagnosis combined neurotrauma, stroke, encephalopathy, cerebral embolism, and seizure and epileptic syndrome.

[‡] "Acute associated (nonpulmonary) infection" is defined as another bacterial, viral, parasitic, or fungal infection that did not involve the lung.

ECMO, Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation; *RESP,* respiratory ECMO survival prediction.

From Schmidt M, Bailey M, Sheldrake J, et al. Predicting survival after extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for severe acute respiratory failure. The Respiratory Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation Survival Prediction (RESP) score. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 2014;189(11):1374–1382.

TABLE 85.3 The “SAVE” Score for Pre-ECMO Prediction of Survival at 30 Days After Initiation of VA ECMO for Cardiac Failure

Parameter	Score
ACUTE CARDIOGENIC SHOCK DIAGNOSIS GROUP (SELECT ONE OR MORE)	
Myocarditis	3
Refractory VT/VF	2
Post heart or lung transplantation	3
Congenital heart disease	−3
Other diagnoses leading to cardiogenic shock requiring VA ECMO	0
AGE (YEARS)	
18-38	7
39-52	4
53-62	3
≥63	0
WEIGHT (kg)	
≤65	1
65-89	2
≥90	0
ACUTE PRE-ECMO ORGAN FAILURES (SELECT ONE OR MORE IF REQUIRED)	
Liver failure[*]	−3
Central nervous system dysfunction[†]	−3
Renal failure[‡]	−3
Chronic renal failure[§]	−6
DURATION OF INTUBATION PRIOR TO INITIATION OF ECMO (h)	
≤10	0
11-29	−2
≥30	−4
Peak inspiratory pressure ≤ 20 cm H_2O	3
Pre-ECMO cardiac arrest	−2
Diastolic blood pressure before ECMO ≥ 40 mm Hg[¶]	3
Pulse pressure before ECMO ≤ 20 mm Hg[¶]	−2
HCO_3 before ECMO ≤ 15 mmol/L[¶]	−3
Constant value to add to all calculations of SAVE-score	−6
Total score	−35 to 17

Total SAVE-Score	Risk Class	Survival (%)
HOSPITAL SURVIVAL BY RISK CLASS		
>5	I	75
1-5	II	58
−4 to 0	III	42
−9 to −5	IV	30
≤−10	V	18

An online calculator is available at www.save-score.com

[*] Liver failure was defined as bilirubin ≥ 33 μmol/L or elevation of serum aminotransferases (ALT or AST) > 70 UI/L.

[†] CNS dysfunction combined neurotrauma, stroke, encephalopathy, cerebral embolism, as well as seizure and epileptic syndromes.

[‡] Renal dysfunction is defined as acute renal insufficiency (e.g., creatinine > 1.5 mg/dL) with or without RRT.

[§] Chronic kidney disease is defined as either kidney damage or glomerular filtration rate < 60 mL/min/1.73 m^2 for ≥ 3 months.

[¶] Worse value within 6 hours prior to ECMO cannulation.

VA ECMO, Venoarterial extracorporeal membrane oxygenation; *VF,* ventricular fibrillation; *VT,* ventricular tachycardia.

From Schmidt M, Burrell A, Roberts L, et al. Predicting survival after ECMO for refractory cardiogenic shock: the survival after veno-arterial-ECMO (SAVE)-score. *Eur Heart J*. 2015;36(33):2246–2256.

The Mechanics of Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation

THE PUMP

The delivery of ECMO includes a centrifugal pump in series with a membrane oxygenator connected by tubing to an inflow and an outflow cannula from the pump to the patient. Convention is to describe the cannulae in relation to the pump: the inflow cannula aspirates venous blood from the patient and the outflow cannula carries arterialized blood from the pump to the patient. Figs. 85.3 and 85.4 illustrate two common ECMO pumps in use today. Fig. 85.3 shows the Maquet Cardiohelp device (Getinge Group, Wayne, NJ) where the pump head and oxygenator are combined into one disposable unit. Fig. 85.4 shows the Thoratec CentriMag pump where the pump head and oxygenator can be disposed separately. Both pumps work in a similar manner with a magnetically driven rotor. Note, the only variable that is adjustable on the pump is the number of revolutions per minute (RPM); the flow generated at a given RPM is dependent on filling (preload) and impedance to ejection (afterload).[43] In the human heart, it has been argued that venous return is the single most important factor in maintaining adequate cardiac output.[44] In a similar way, the most important determinants of flow for a centrifugal pump fed from the patient's central veins and right atrium are the volume status of the venous circulation and internal diameter of the cannula. Also important in VA ECMO is the mean systemic pressure, as the flow from the pump will be reduced by hypertension. While the centrifugal pumps used in ECMO are relatively nontraumatic to red blood cells, there is hemolysis especially at high RPM settings. In order to maximize flow at a low RPM, thereby reducing hemolysis, the goal is to maintain adequate preload and decrease afterload. Use of the largest possible arterial or outflow cannula will also reduce hemolysis but this need must be balanced with the patient's vessel size.

What is less clear physiologically is how much ECMO flow is necessary for adequate tissue perfusion. This is a complex question and the answer can vary depending on the current physiologic state of the patient (e.g., native cardiac function, hyperthermia, hypothermia, sepsis, ischemia).[45] Most centers have settled on a "normal cardiac output" ECMO flow of 2.2 to 2.4 L/min/m^2 as an initial goal, but this may not be possible in a large patient due to cannula size. Using markers of end-organ perfusion (mental status changes, lactate, mixed venous oxygen saturation, liver function

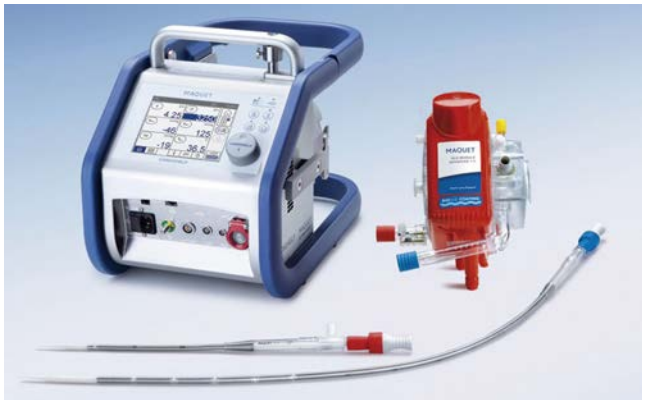


Fig. 85.3 The Maquet "Cardiohelp" system showing the pump, the combined pump head/oxygenator, and an arterial and venous cannula. (Courtesy MAQUET Cardiovascular, LLC, Wayne, NJ.)

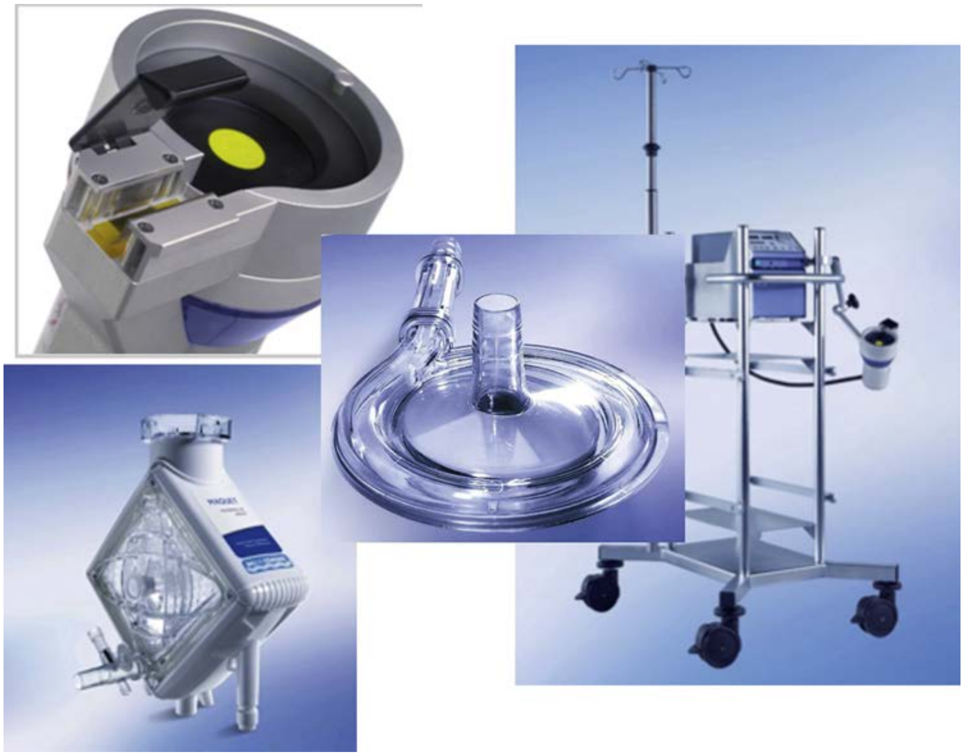


Fig. 85.4 The Thoratec "CentriMag" pump (*top left*) with cart/control panel (*top right*), pump head (*center*) and oxygenator (*bottom left*). (Courtesy Thoratec Switzerland GmbH, Zürich, Switzerland.)

tests, creatinine), the flow goal can be changed as is feasible and necessary.[46] A very important feature of ECMO is that the flow is not necessarily replacing the patient's own cardiac output, either on the right side or the left. With VV ECMO, the circuit may oxygenate only a fraction of the total venous return so that there will still be significant shunt of poorly oxygenated blood through the lungs. With VA ECMO in severe cardiac failure, the circuit may supply the majority of blood flow but as cardiac function improves, native flow may become a significant proportion of total flow. In this case, similar to VV ECMO, the native blood flow through the lungs will dilute the gas exchange benefit provided by the VA ECMO.

The effects of continuous flow rather than physiologic pulsatile flow on the vasculature and organ systems have been studied for short-term CPB runs and long-term durable LVADs, but not well for moderate duration (e.g., days to weeks) as seen in ECMO patients. Changes with durable LVADs include increased aortic valve regurgitation (if it is not opening), histological alterations in the aorta making it stiffer, gastrointestinal mucosal changes associated with increased bleeding and arteriovenous malformations, and acquired von Willebrand disease.[47] Despite this, continuous flow nonpulsatile pumps have replaced pulsatile pumps in all settings of extracorporeal support because of their simplicity, durability, and the reduced trauma to formed elements of the blood; while still being investigated, pulsatile modifications or replacements are not on the clinical horizon. Hemolysis and issues related to coagulation top the list of things to follow closely while on a continuous flow circuit.[48] Lactate dehydrogenase, haptoglobin, bilirubin, and free hemoglobin all remain important laboratory parameters to follow while on ECMO as a way to assess for hemolysis.[49]

THE OXYGENATOR

The membrane oxygenator is constructed to separate gas flow around microtubules of membrane through which the blood is passed, with additional circuitry permitting heat exchange. Traditionally "flow" refers to the flow of blood through the ECMO circuit, and the amount of air-oxygen mixture run through the oxygenator is the "sweep." Oxygenation of the blood is determined by the FiO_2 of the sweep gas mixture, and carbon dioxide removal is determined by the liters per minute of sweep, which is commonly in the range of 1 to 5 L/min depending in part on the patient's metabolic state, size, native lung function, and ventilator settings. Oxygen transfer is very effective at normal blood flows, with post-oxygenator blood samples usually showing a partial pressure of oxygen (pO_2) of more than 300 mm Hg when the sweep is 100% oxygen. As mentioned before, the patient's blood gas values will be the result of a combination of the ECMO blood flow with its carbon dioxide and oxygen content, and the patient's native circulation and gas exchange. Figs. 85.3 and 85.4 show the membrane oxygenator most widely used in North America, the Quadrox made by Getinge (the oxygenator and pump head are one unit with Maquet). With time (days to weeks) the oxygenator becomes less efficient at gas exchange due to build-up of fibrin and micro- or macrothrombi. Need for an increase in FiO_2 or sweep should prompt an evaluation of the pressure drop across the membrane and drawing of a post-oxygenator blood gas.

PULSATILITY WITH VA ECMO

Pulsatility is a term used when describing the arterial waveform both in patients on ECMO and in those with durable LVADs. In the latter case, pulsatility with the cardiac cycle may be related both to LV ejection (i.e., independent of the LVAD) and to the increased filling of the ventricular assist device due to left ventricular contractility. Pulsatility can be detected in this latter case even without aortic valve opening. With VA ECMO the blood filling the ECMO circuit comes from the venous side so any pulsatility is due entirely to left ventricular ejection. When VA ECMO is initiated for cardiac decompensation, there is often very little pulsatility, but as the left ventricle recovers there is gradual recovery of a normal arterial waveform as native left ventricular ejection increases. With VV ECMO, there is normal filling of the left ventricle and arterial pulsatility is not affected.

FLOW AND GAS EXCHANGE PHYSIOLOGY WITH VV ECMO

When VV ECMO is instituted using two separate cannulae as shown in Fig. 85.5, there are two main limitations to its effectiveness. The first limitation is that the patient's native cardiac output may be equal to or even greater than the ECMO flow, which is functionally a large shunt through the lungs. This may lead to inadequate oxygenation despite what appears to be appropriate pump and oxygenator function. The second limitation, due to proximity of the cannulae in the right atrium, is recirculation where some portion of the oxygenated blood being pumped into the patient is aspirated back into the inflow cannula rather than going through the tricuspid valve. This will also result in poor gas exchange.[50,51] Use of the Avalon dual-lumen cannula (Figs. 85.6 and 85.7), where blood is aspirated from superior vena cava and inferior vena cava ports on one lumen and returned through a port positioned (using transesophageal echocardiography [TEE] guidance) such that it flows into the tricuspid valve, is less likely to cause recirculation. The improvement in gas exchange with VV ECMO may result in at least partial relief of pulmonary hypertension, possibly avoiding the need for right ventricular assist (i.e., V-PA or VA ECMO). If oxygenation is not adequately improved due to problems with recirculation or native cardiac output, either additional pulmonary measures such as increasing PEEP and/or prone positioning, or transfusing to a higher hemoglobin can improve oxygen delivery. Addition of a second ECMO circuit is also a possibility.

FLOW AND GAS EXCHANGE PHYSIOLOGY WITH VA ECMO

Peripheral VA ECMO usually is performed with a venous cannula advanced from the femoral vein into the right atrium, and a femoral arterial cannula that ends in the internal iliac artery (Fig. 85.8). Physiology of this arterial flow is complex in that it competes with native left ventricular ejection and also poses an afterload stress to the failing left ventricle.[52,53] A principle of treating the failing heart is

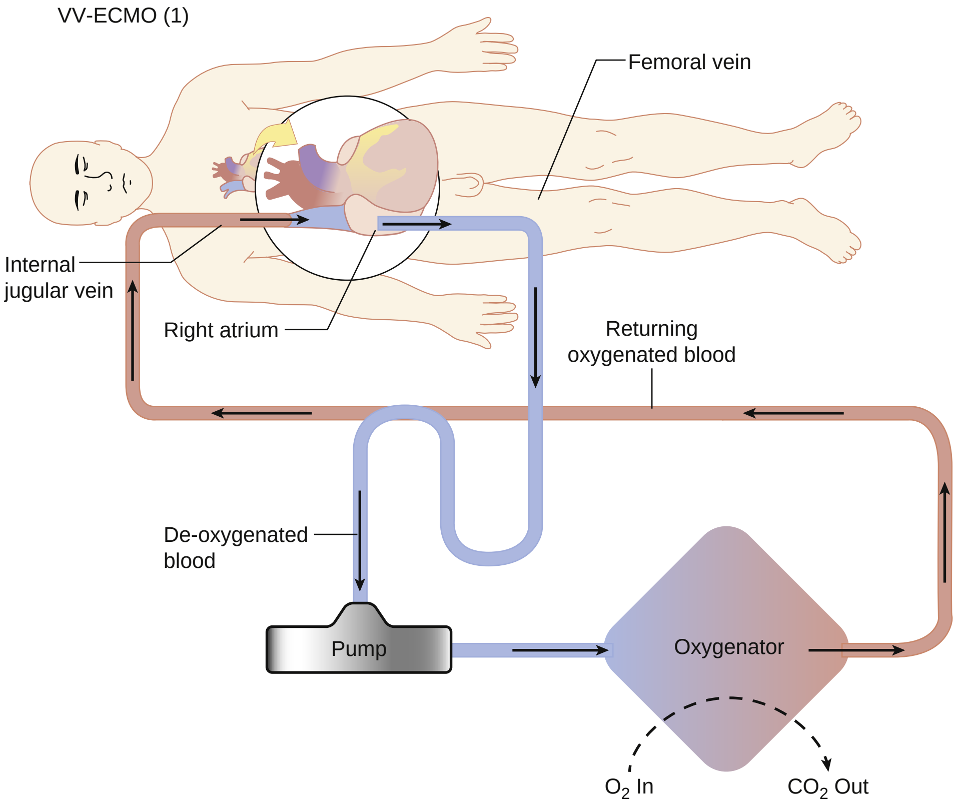


Fig. 85.5 Traditional venovenous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation *(VV ECMO)* circuit with inflow cannula in right femoral vein and outflow cannula in right internal jugular vein.

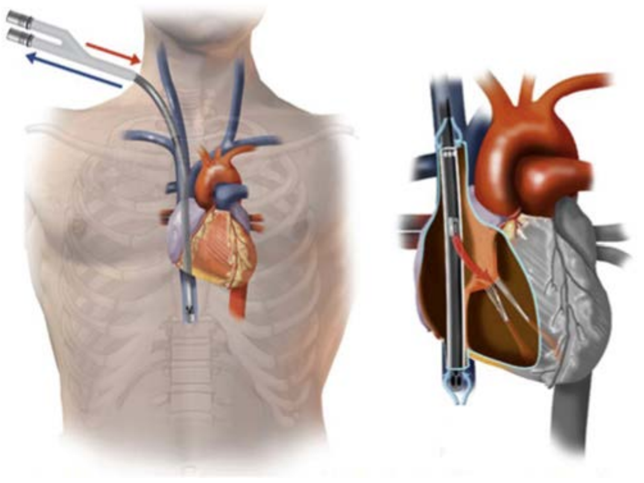


Fig. 85.6 Venovenous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation cannulation with the Avalon cannula, Maquet Inc. The dual-lumen catheter is placed in the right internal jugular vein, with venous blood drawn from the superior and inferior vena cavae (*blue arrow*) into the extracorporeal membrane oxygenation circuit where it is oxygenated and pumped back into the right atrium directed toward the tricuspid valve (*red arrow*). (Courtesy MAQUET Cardiovascular, LLC, Wayne, NJ.)

to reduce wall stress and myocardial oxygen consumption and decrease pulmonary pressures; this is violated with VA ECMO. As discussed, it may be necessary to decompress the left ventricle with either an Impella or a surgically placed left ventricular vent if it is not possible to adequately improve left ventricular function with inotropes or to keep systemic pressures low. Competition with left ventricular ejection means that the ECMO flow from the iliac artery may not reach the aortic arch, leaving the coronary and cerebral vessels hypoxic if there is poor native lung function. The place in the aorta where the ECMO flow meets the native flow (from the left ventricle-aortic valve) is sometimes called the “mixing cloud”; ideally this is as close to the heart as possible. For this reason the right radial artery, reflecting aortic blood flow closest to the heart and to the brain, rather than the left is the sampling site of choice.[54] The phenomenon of poorly oxygenated cerebral and upper body oxygenation but good oxygenation in the lower body is called the “harlequin syndrome” (after an autonomic condition associated with asymmetric upper body sweating and flushing). Solutions to this problem include central cannulation (requiring sternotomy/thoracotomy) where the arterial cannula is in the ascending aorta, or addition of a second cannula in the right atrium to which part of the ECMO outflow is diverted, or VAV ECMO.[55] This runs the risk of recirculation at the atrium, as well as too high a flow diverted away from the aorta and systemic circulation due to the low resistance of the pulmonary circulation. Partial clamping of this cannula to increase resistance will help drive blood to the systemic cannula.

EXTRACORPOREAL MEMBRANE OXYGENATION FOR THE FAILING RIGHT HEART

Clinical circumstances where only the right heart needs mechanical assist are less common than when the left ventricle or both ventricles are failing. Pulmonary hypertension with right ventricular failure in the pre-lung transplant

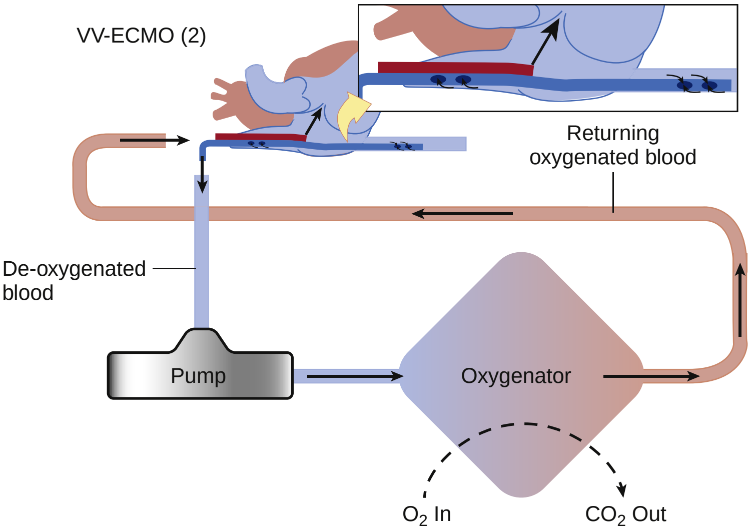


Fig. 85.7 Venovenous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation *(VV ECMO)* circuit using the Avalon cannula (Maquet Inc.).

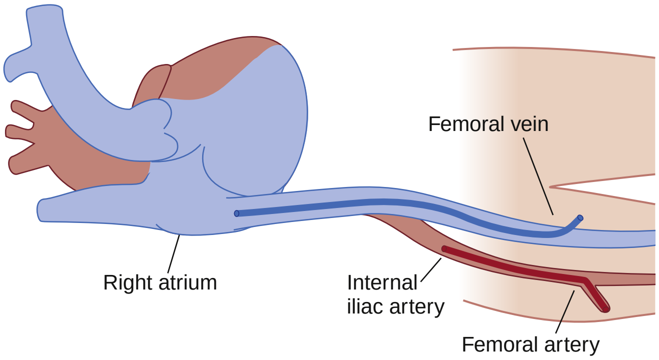


Fig. 85.8 Venoarterial extracorporeal membrane oxygenation circuit with femoral cannulation. The venous cannula *(dark blue)* is advanced to the junction of the inferior vena cava and right atrium, then attached to the pump inflow side of the circuit; the arterial cannula *(red)* is advanced to the iliac artery and attached to the oxygenator/pump outflow side of the circuit.

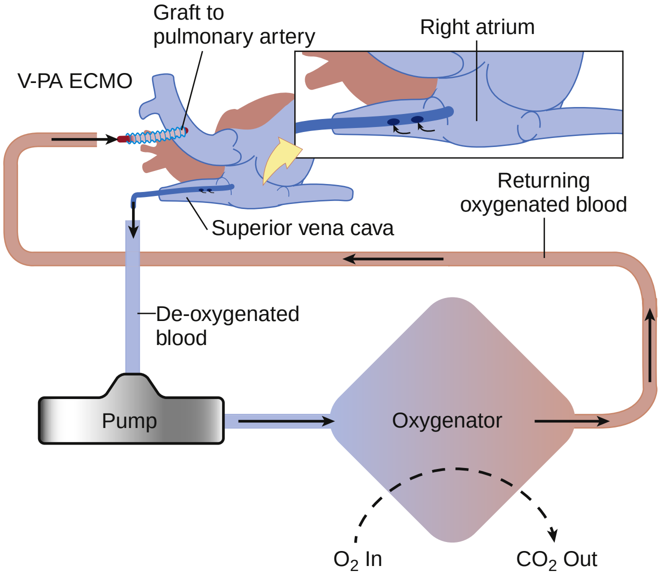


Fig. 85.9 Venous-pulmonary artery extracorporeal membrane oxygenation circuit showing the venous cannula placed through the internal jugular vein to the right atrium, and the arterial cannula placed in a graft which is sewn to the pulmonary artery.

patient, or immediately post-durable LVAD placement where there is right ventricular failure are two examples. It is possible to support the right ventricle alone with V-PA ECMO where the venous cannula is in the right atrium and the “arterial” (outflow) cannula is surgically placed in the pulmonary artery via a graft (Fig. 85.9). If the lungs are intact, then an oxygenator may not be needed and support of the right ventricle can be accomplished by percutaneous devices (TandemHeart or Impella) or with the surgically placed ECMO, or, more correctly, right ventricular assist device (RVAD) circuit without an oxygenator. If there is also respiratory failure, then an oxygenator can be added to the circuit to provide true ECMO. This latter combination for right ventricular failure after LVAD provides a flexible means for managing the RV, lungs, and LV relatively independently.[56]

Vascular Access for Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation

Vascular cannulation location and technique vary depending on the type of support needed, the patient’s age, size, and clinical situation, and the need for imaging. Actual placement techniques include percutaneous vessel puncture (Seldinger technique) followed by guidewire, serial dilators, then finally the cannula. Alternatively, surgical cutdown and direct exposure can be used for peripheral vessels. Finally, surgical access to the right atrium, pulmonary artery, and ascending aorta requires sternotomy/thoracotomy. For percutaneous access there can be little doubt that ultrasound is a very valuable aid. Although there is little science to support this contention specifically for ECMO, in other settings there is compelling evidence.[57,58]

In order to verify placement of the venous cannula appropriately in the right atrium or at the junctions of the superior and inferior vena cavae with the right atrium, TEE is very helpful; similarly during placement of guidewires in peripheral vessels the use of TEE to verify wires in the aorta or the right atrium is also very helpful. Finally, radiographic imaging may be used for guiding the wire used for right internal jugular (RIJ) vein placement with a dual-lumen catheter (AVALON) (see later), followed by TEE imaging to verify correct cannula placement. Vascular cannulation, especially arterial, requires heparinization during cannula placement and generally also requires two operators, for either percutaneous access (one person to handle guidewire, dilators, and intermittent vascular occlusion) or for cutdown (surgical assistance in addition to handling wire and dilators).

CANNULATION FOR VV ECMO

In the original descriptions of VV ECMO in adults, two cannulae were used: one usually inserted in the right femoral vein and advanced to the junction between the inferior vena cava and the right atrium, and the other inserted in the RIJ vein and advanced through the superior vena cava into the right atrium (see Fig. 85.5). The largest possible cannulae are used to maximize flow (see later). When the cannulation of the IJV is technically not possible, an alternative configuration of VV ECMO support involves bilateral femoral cannulation. The tip of the drainage venous cannula is placed in the inferior vena cava while the tip of the outflow cannula is positioned into the right atrium. Either two-cannula technique presents a major drawback in terms of recirculation, where some portion of the oxygenated blood returned to the right atrium is reaspirated back into the inflow cannula.

The Avalon ELITE is a dual-lumen cannula used in contemporary VV ECMO and many centers insert this catheter as the first choice if possible. With this cannula designed for RIJ placement, one lumen is used for inflow to the ECMO circuit; this lumen is designed to reside such that ports for aspiration of blood are in both the superior and vena cavae but not the right atrium. The second lumen where the pump outflow is directed is designed to be positioned in the right atrium aimed at the tricuspid valve (see Fig. 85.6). By use of inflow ports in the vena cavae and outflow in the right atrium directed at the tricuspid valve, blood recirculation is minimized. Use of echocardiography to place the cannula is important to be sure the inflow and outflow ports are in the correct position. TEE is especially useful in identifying the direction of the outflow jet of blood toward the tricuspid valve. In addition to the advantage of a single vascular access and minimal recirculation, the Avalon ELITE catheter improves patient comfort and facilitates mobilization and rehabilitation. It may also decrease the infectious risk associated with groin cannulation. The main limitation of this cannula is the maximum internal diameter achievable for pump inflow, as this is the main determinant of the flow rate.

CANNULATION FOR VA ECMO

The objective of VA ECMO is to provide oxygenated blood into systemic circulation so cannulation of a large artery for the outflow cannula is required. The femoral arteries are usually the first choice, and only in particular conditions (e.g., burns, open wounds, significant peripheral vascular disease) is the subclavian or axillary artery used. Vascular cannulation for peripheral VA ECMO is therefore most commonly done using a venous cannula in the femoral vein advanced to the inferior vena cava/right atrium junction, and an arterial cannula entering the femoral artery with the tip residing in the common iliac artery (Fig. 85.8). As in VV ECMO, the maximum flow achievable is mostly determined by the internal diameter and length of the venous cannula. Placement of the femoral arterial cannula, as with the venous cannula, can be done using the Seldinger technique and serial dilators, or surgical cutdown. Imaging is not required; the venous cannula is placed by the inserter estimating the position of the inferior vena cava/right atrium junction, with possible adjustment in position if needed at a later time. Surgical cutdown is required for accessing the subclavian or axillary artery.

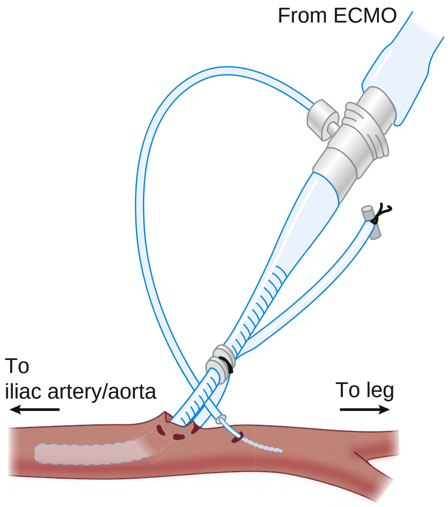


Fig. 85.10 Illustration of a "distal perfusion cannula" in the femoral artery. The extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) arterial cannula is placed in the artery and advanced to the internal iliac artery; the distal perfusion cannula is placed distal to the arterial ECMO cannula, aiming down the leg to provide additional perfusion.

In an attempt to reduce the incidence of distal limb ischemia in the cannulated leg, small catheters (commonly referred to as distal perfusion catheters) can be placed distal to the ECMO arterial cannula, aiming down the leg (Fig. 85.10). Different parts of the distal limb arterial tree can be used as cannulation sites; the femoral artery is most often used but the superficial femoral artery or posterior tibial artery have also been described. Another possible approach to limit distal limb ischemia is to sew a synthetic graft on the femoral artery, and place the cannula in the graft rather than the vessel itself. This approach is always used for subclavian/axillary cannulation. In some centers the femoral artery and vein on the same side are cannulated; in others one cannula is placed in each extremity in order to avoid both reduced arterial perfusion and increased venous obstruction to the same extremity.

The subclavian/axillary artery cannulation for VA ECMO has both advantages and drawbacks when compared to the femoral site. The subclavian artery is rarely affected by atherosclerotic lesions compared to the femoral artery; the presence of a rich collateral flow may reduce the risk of distal extremity ischemia, bacterial contamination is less likely in this anatomic region, and it provides a systemic antegrade perfusion into the distal aortic arch (more proximal than the common iliac). The drawbacks include a potentially challenging surgical dissection in obese patients or in the presence of chest wall edema; the vessel is smaller than the femoral artery, and the limited reports for its use suggest an increased risk of hyperperfusion (rather than hypoperfusion) to the extremity.[59] It is not used in acute emergent cannulations (e.g., unstable cardiogenic shock or cardiac arrest) as it is time-consuming. With axillary artery cannulation, the venous cannula is usually placed in the RIJ to obtain the potential benefit of patient mobility.

Direct cardiac and aortic cannulation for VA ECMO is usually used for patients who cannot come off CPB in the operating room, using the CPB cannulas (central ECMO). The short, large-bore venous cannula permits excellent venous drainage. As oxygenated blood is returned to the ascending aorta, there is less concern for upper body hypoxemia. Other circumstances where central VA ECMO may be used include failure to obtain adequate flow from peripheral cannulation due to vessel size or disease, inadequate improvement in oxygenation (usually upper body), or vascular complications from peripheral VA ECMO. Central cannulation may also facilitate mobilization (e.g., out of bed) provided there is chest wall stability.

CANNULATION FOR VPA ECMO

Where there is right ventricular dysfunction or failure but intact left ventricular function, it would be ideal to avoid peripheral arterial cannulation (i.e., VA ECMO). If the lungs function adequately, a temporary RVAD could be used (e.g., Impella). If lung assist in addition to right ventricular assist is needed, then two options are (1) VPA ECMO using a graft placed surgically on the pulmonary artery for outflow and either a femoral or RIJ venous cannula, or (2) use of a Protek Duo (Cardiac Assist, Inc., Pittsburgh, PA) dual-lumen cannula similar to the Avalon but designed to have the tip reside in the pulmonary artery rather than the inferior vena cava. This cannula is placed via the RIJ with inflow ports in the right atrium and outflow ports in the pulmonary artery. It can provide both oxygenation and cardiac output for the pulmonary circulation but not require a systemic (arterial) cannula. Although there is less experience with the Protek Duo dual-lumen cannula than with the Avalon, it appears to be promising.[60]

ALTERNATIVE CANNULATION STRATEGIES

The cannulation strategy may not be fixed for the duration of the ECMO support; patient physiology or clinical condition and needs may change over time and modifications in ECMO configuration may occasionally be necessary. Conversion from the initial ECMO strategy to a different modality should always be strongly considered if the patient's perfusion is inadequate, other goals of therapy are not being met, or if complications are arising as a result of the cannulation strategy, for example upper extremity hypoxemia with femoral VA ECMO[61] or left ventricle distension with VAECMO.

Conversion from VV to VA or from VA to VV ECMO, or the use of "hybrid" modes, may be desirable or necessary. Patients on VV ECMO can have hemodynamic deterioration (secondary to right, left, or bi–ventricular failure) and require cardiocirculatory support. This can be achieved by the addition of an arterial perfusion cannula to the circuit. This ECMO configuration (also known as veno–arterial–venous [VAV] ECMO) provides circulatory support through an arterial cannula introduced via the femoral or subclavian artery and is referred to as a hybrid approach.[62] In situations where femoral VA ECMO does not provide sufficient oxygenated blood to the upper body (harlequin syndrome or north/south syndrome), an extra outflow cannula can be introduced to the right atrium via the RIJ, directing oxygenated blood into the pulmonary circulation (VAV ECMO hybrid approach).[63] Alternatively, the femoral arterial cannula can be converted to a central (proximal aortic) position, requiring sternotomy or thoracotomy. When there is left ventricular distension with VA ECMO that cannot be overcome with inotropic drugs, then surgical placement of a left-sided inflow vent (usually in the left atrium or pulmonary vein) or insertion of an Impella may be necessary. Placement of additional cannulae of any kind must be approached with caution and the cannula flow monitored. Bleeding and clotting complications are compounded by use of additional cannulae.

Monitoring on Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation

PUMP PRESSURES AND FLOWS

Understanding pressures and flows in the circuit is key to the management of an ECMO patient. The Maquet Cardiohelp device has built-in pressure transducers such that it measures the incoming pressure to the pump (the venous pressure), the pressure after the pump but before the oxygenator, and finally the pressure after the oxygenator (the outflow pressure). It also has a flow probe on the outflow cannula and a monitoring probe for air on the inflow cannula. In order to generate flow, the pump creates a negative pressure on the venous side, and this pressure is displayed on the console. As this pressure becomes more negative, concern arises regarding the volume status of the patient, or a cannula issue (e.g., obstruction, position). For the same flow a smaller cannula will require a greater negative pressure. Greater negative pressures usually precede the phenomenon of venous line "chatter" where flow is intermittently reduced or stopped when the inflow ports (in the superior vena cava and/or right atrium) are sucked against the venous wall due to inadequate volume status of the patient.

The pressure change across the oxygenator is used to indicate the possibility of obstruction due to accumulation of fibrin or clot. Outflow cannula pressure, also displayed, can be elevated by cannula obstruction or high arterial pressure in the patient. Smaller cannulae require higher pressures to generate flow than larger ones. The Maquet Cardiohelp device also has a sampling port on the outflow cannula (post oxygenator) to allow blood gas analysis in the assessment of membrane function; declining pO_2 or rising carbon dioxide partial pressure (pCO_2) indicate a need to change the oxygenator. There is no venous side sampling port; this may be useful on VV ECMO when there is suspicion of recirculation as described previously, but an access point pre-pump is a potential source for air entrainment.

Flow probes can be applied to the branches of outflow cannulae connected to the circuit if these are employed. For example, a probe can be attached to the distal perfusion cannula used in peripheral VA ECMO or to the left ventricular vent in the centrally cannulated patient. A flow that drops abruptly may indicate occlusion of the line possibly from fibrin/thrombus formation.

INTRAVASCULAR PRESSURES

The arterial catheter offering both continuous blood pressure monitoring and sampling for blood gas analysis is an essential monitor in this patient population. As previously mentioned, all current forms of mechanical circulatory support (except intraaortic balloon pumps) provide continuous flow. In the patient on VA ECMO, the arterial line provides real-time information regarding the relative contribution of the native heart (pulsatile) versus the ECMO pump (nonpulsatile). Blood pressure cuffs (manual or automatic) are not able to provide this type of continuous monitoring and in the absence of pulsatility may not be able to measure the pressure at all. In the VA ECMO patient, the location of the arterial catheter is also important as mentioned; blood gas samples from left upper extremity catheters may not reflect the blood perfusing the coronaries and the brain, depending on the location of the "mixing cloud."

A central venous catheter provides access to administer vasoactive and inotropic drugs, and while the presence of a large cannula near or in the right atrium from which the ECMO pump is aspirating blood likely affects the pressure measurement, it can be a useful trend to monitor especially during weaning of flow. Although use of the pulmonary artery catheter in settings other than severe heart failure or cardiac surgery has greatly declined, it provides very useful information in the patient on VA ECMO. As discussed previously, a problem with VA ECMO is left ventricular distension due to the afterload stress; elevated or rising pulmonary artery pressure can be the first indication of this phenomenon, preceding pulmonary edema or even pulmonary hemorrhage. A rising mean pulmonary artery pressure may initiate a discussion regarding treatment with inotropic medications or placement of an Impella device, and be used to monitor the effectiveness of such treatment. During weaning trials when the ECMO pump flow is progressively reduced, the pulmonary artery catheter provides pressures on both sides of the heart and information about biventricular function.

TISSUE OXIMETRY

Tissue oximetry has been used for many years in the cardiac operating room to assess the adequacy of cerebral perfusion. Some ECMO centers are now using this technology to assess both cerebral oxygenation (in the sedated patient) as well as distal extremity perfusion where there is vessel cannulation.[64] Tissue oximetry applied to the lower extremities may alert the provider of a mismatch between the cannulated extremity and the one that is not. This information, along with clinical assessment (physical state of the extremity and pulses) and flow probes applied to the circuit can be used to guide intentional changes in flow or cannula reposition/relocation. Decreasing the cannulated extremity perfusion can sometimes be necessary if there is edema or compartment syndrome.

Anticoagulation

There is continuous contact between the foreign surfaces of the circuit and the patient's blood while on ECMO. Foreign surfaces are intrinsically thrombogenic, placing the circuit components at an increased risk for thrombosis and the patient at risk for embolic complications as well as reduced pump effectiveness. Both Maquet and Thoratec (Thoratec Corp., Pleasanton, CA) have tried to at least partly address this issue by coating the blood-contacting surfaces of the circuit components with proprietary heparin or heparin-albumin bonding processes. In some instances it is possible to run ECMO without anticoagulation at all or using low levels of anticoagulation, but this is not well studied.[65,66]

The membrane oxygenator and distal perfusion tubing used in femoral arterial cannulation are commonly reported sites for clot formation. In order to prevent thrombosis, the standard practice in North America is to administer antithrombotic therapy to a target below the levels used for CPB. The goal is to maintain the circuit with minimal thrombotic risk to the circuit and minimal hemorrhagic risk to the patient.[67] Anticoagulation targets may be altered by the absence of circuit coating, the flow rate (higher target for lower flows), and patient-specific factors such as thrombocytopenia or other coagulation disorders.

Unfractionated heparin (UFH) is the most commonly used anticoagulant for ECMO. Heparin works via antithrombin 3 (AT3); the heparin-AT3 complex then inhibits thrombin and factor Xa.[68] Patients usually receive an initial UFH bolus of 50 to 100 units/kg at the time of cannulation. Dosing of UFH and measured anticoagulation status are institution specific. Problems with the use of UFH include its relative unpredictable bioavailability, the necessity for maintaining AT3 levels, and the occurrence of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia with thrombosis (HITT).[67,69] If the AT3 concentration in plasma is low, coagulation can occur even when large doses of heparin are given. The level of AT3 should be monitored, especially if there is an increasing need for heparin dose to achieve the desired anticoagulation. A low AT3 level can be treated by giving fresh frozen plasma or recombinant AT3.

Therapeutic Monitoring of Unfractionated Heparin (Table 85.4)

ACTIVATED CLOTTING TIME

The activated clotting time (ACT) remains the most commonly utilized test for ECMO to guide UFH dosage, partly due to its being a point-of-care (POC) whole-blood test that

TABLE 85.4 Anticoagulation Strategies

Drug	Pro	Absolute/Relative Contraindications
No anticoagulation	Avoids anticoagulation in high-risk patients (hemorrhagic CVA, postoperative bleeding, etc.)	High risk for thrombus/embolism/short circuit life span
Unfractionated heparin	Most frequently used	HITT
Low-molecular-weight heparin	Infrequently used	Very dependent on renal function and patient weight, HITT
Argatroban	No concern for HITT	Hepatically cleared
Bivalirudin	No concern for HITT, short half-life	Renally cleared
Heparin bonded circuits	Decreases fibrin coating of circuits	HITT

HITT, Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia and thrombosis.

provides immediate results.[70] Results of the ACT may be affected by factors other than UFH including anemia, hypofibrinogenemia, thrombocytopenia and coagulation factor deficiencies, hypothermia, and hemodilution. The UFH infusion is titrated to maintain the ACT at institution-specific levels, usually 1.5 times normal (180-220 s).[18]

ACTIVATED PARTIAL THROMBOPLASTIN TIME

The activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) is a laboratory standardized test used in adults where moderate doses of UFH are administered, and many adult ECMO programs use the aPTT instead of the ACT. The aPTT appears to more accurately reflect heparin anticoagulation in the critical care setting.[71]

Although POC devices are available, in most institutions the aPTT test is performed in the hospital laboratory with the attendant delay in obtaining results. Point-of-care devices which measure the aPTT are available, but these tests are done on whole blood samples and may not be as reliable as laboratory run tests. The laboratory aPTT may be affected by factors other than heparin effect such as factor deficiencies or presence of inhibitors. If the patient has a high platelet or white cell count, or is hypercoagulable, a large amount of heparin may be required to maintain the target aPTT. If the patient is thrombocytopenic, in renal failure, or has circulating fibrin split products, a reduced aPTT target may be appropriate.

ANTI-FACTOR XA (“HEPARIN LEVEL”)

Some institutions use the anti-factor Xa (anti-Xa) assay as the gold standard test to monitor therapeutic UFH dosing.[72] The anti-Xa assay is not a measure of UFH concentration, but rather a measure of UFH effect, based on the ability of the UFH-AT3 complex to inhibit factor Xa.[68] In contrast to the ACT and aPTT, the anti-Xa assay is specific to the anticoagulant effect of UFH and is not influenced by coagulopathy, thrombocytopenia, or dilution. Studies in this patient population have shown poor correlation of anti-Xa assay to ACT, suggesting the anti-Xa test to be preferable.[73] In addition, the anti-Xa activity is associated with better accuracy and reproducibility than the aPTT in many clinical settings.[74]

HEPARIN-INDUCED THROMBOCYTOPENIA

Heparin induced thrombocytopenia (HIT or HITT) is a relatively uncommon but severe complication of UFH therapy. Diagnosis may be challenging with patients on ECMO, as thrombocytopenia from various origins (multiorgan dysfunction, sepsis, platelet activation and consumption by the ECMO circuit, bleeding, hemodilution) is common. Two types of HITT are described: type I is relatively benign, of nonimmune origin, and occurs early without thrombotic complications. It usually spontaneously resolves despite continued treatment with heparin; type II (HITT) is life threatening, of immune origin, and late onset. This syndrome leads to venous and/or arterial thrombosis.[75]

HITT treatment consists of stopping the UFH infusion and any contact with any form of heparin, avoiding platelet transfusions, and administering an alternative anticoagulant treatment such as one of the direct thrombin inhibitors, argatroban or bivalirudin. Argatroban is hepatically cleared whereas bivalirudin has a component of renal elimination; both drugs must be carefully dose-adjusted and monitored in critically ill patients. The Maquet circuit is always heparin-bonded; it is possible to have non-heparin bonded circuitry using the Thoratec CentriMag system. As the effect of heparin-bonded circuitry on the development or maintenance of HITT is not well understood, if HITT is diagnosed there should be an effort to change to a non-heparin bonded circuit.[76]

Weaning from Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation

WEANING FROM VA ECMO

Weaning from VA ECMO is both an art and a science as every patient is different, and both pulmonary and cardiac weaning may be required. Many of the principles used in the cardiac operating room to separate a patient from CPB apply to the patient on VA ECMO. “Ramp” trials for VA ECMO patients where the ECMO support is reduced in a graded fashion while monitoring blood pressure, filling pressures, oxygenation, and often continuous echocardiography, are part of the management of the ECMO patient in the ICU.[56] The pulsatility of the arterial waveform and how it is affected when the ECMO flow is reduced is also important. The desired response to a ramp trial is for the patient to maintain stable blood pressure and pulsatility on minimal inotropic and vasopressor support, with no significant increase in filling pressures, and preserved ventricular function by echocardiographic assessment. Another important consideration is resolution of pulmonary congestion or edema before a ramp trial is performed. In general, once the patient is ready for weaning, there will be good pulsatility indicating the native cardiac output is perfusing the ascending aorta and great vessels; the blood gas from the right radial artery will reflect the native lung function. It may be desirable to reduce the FiO_2 of the sweep, and reduce the sweep itself to confirm that the patient can oxygenate and ventilate adequately with their own lungs. This will require arterial blood gas analysis. Appropriate anticoagulation is important before the ramp trials; often a small bolus dose of heparin (e.g., 1000 units) is given prior to the trial, and as a general rule bedside ramp trials for VA ECMO in the ICU do not decrease the blood flow below 2 L/min. It is important to keep in mind that other cannulae that may come off the main ECMO circuit will also show a decrease in flow during ramp trials (distal perfusion cannulae or left ventricular vents). Providers should be mindful of this when managing patients with high-risk extremities or threatened limbs (large arterial cannulae and/or technical issues related to the distal perfusion cannula itself). Once it is clear that the ramp trial is successful, patients can then be taken to the operating room for decannulation where they are usually monitored with TEE and a pre-decannulation ramp trial is repeated. In some institutions decannulation can be performed in the bedside in the ICU with an operating room-like setup for surgical repair of the artery.

Weaning from VPA ECMO is similar to weaning from VA ECMO but the focus is on the right heart rather than the left heart, and with at least equal attention to the ability of the patient's own lungs to adequately perform gas exchange.

WEANING FROM VV ECMO

VV ECMO ramp trials are often easier to perform as most of the information regarding the ability of the patient's lungs to oxygenate and ventilate can be learned without a change in circuit flow. The purpose of the VV ECMO circuit is to perform gas exchange, but unlike VA ECMO the pump function provides no cardiac support; weaning trials therefore only need to be performed with changes in gas delivery across the membrane. Decreases in FiO_2 of the sweep to reduce oxygenation support, and decreases in sweep itself across the membrane to reduce "ventilation" (CO_2 removal) are all that is required to assess the adequacy of native lung function. Stopping the flow of oxygen/air across the membrane entirely may be performed as a last step prior to decannulation. This is called a "cap" trial whereby a cap is placed over the gas delivery inlet of the membrane valve itself. However, this process may damage the oxygenator, and if the trial is unsuccessful, may lead to a need to replace it. As a general principle, the sweep should not be reduced below 0.8 L/min for anything but a brief (few minutes) time. Venous ECMO cannulae can usually be removed in the ICU without the need for vascular repair.

WEANING THE PATIENT WITH SEPARATE RVAD, LVAD, AND ECMO

Some patients with biventricular failure and pulmonary edema may have cardiopulmonary support in a configuration of CentriMag LVAD, a CentriMag RVAD, and an oxygenator connected to the RVAD circuit. This cannulation strategy provides separate biventricular support with the added benefit of an oxygenator in a VV ECMO configuration (i.e., LVAD plus VPA ECMO). It provides the ability to separately assess native lung function, right heart function, and left heart function during ramp trials. The VV ECMO weaning trial can then be performed as described, without a change in LVAD or RVAD blood flow. Reduction in FiO_2 of the sweep and in the sweep itself are monitored with arterial blood gases, with the ability to remove the oxygenator but remain with biventricular support. The RVAD and LVAD can then be weaned separately as determined by the patient's native right- and left-heart function.

Complications of Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation

It should not be surprising that there are many complications associated with all types of ECMO. These complications have been the subject of recent systematic reviews both for VA ECMO and for VV ECMO and are also described in the annual reports from ELSO. There is less experience with VPA and VAV ECMO configurations but many of the same issues exist with these more complex circuits. Complications of vascular cannulation, bleeding, or clotting from excessive or inadequate anticoagulation, neurologic injury (i.e., intracerebral bleed) usually related to coagulation management, and infection all occur with a significant incidence. With VA ECMO the majority of vascular complications are arterial; overall vascular complications with VV ECMO, especially the double-lumen Avalon, are less common. Renal injury occurring prior to initiation of ECMO or during an ECMO run is associated with a worse outcome.[77]

Vaquer and associates[78] performed a systematic review and meta-analysis, selecting 12 studies from 2000 through 2015, including 1042 patients who underwent VV ECMO for ARDS. The mean hospital mortality in these studies was 38%, with a mean of 7% mortality due to complications. They found 40% of patients experienced medical complications, the most common of which was some kind of bleeding (29%). Intracerebral bleeding occurred in 5%. The 2016 ELSO report suggests a similar incidence of bleeding looking at adult ECMO for all respiratory indications. The ELSO report describes an incidence of 10% cannula infections with Vaquer and associates[78] finding an incidence of all infections of 17%. The ELSO report does not indicate the mortality attributable to complications, but does give overall mortality of respiratory (VV) ECMO as 38% with 42% hospital mortality.[18]

For VA ECMO, the majority of which is femoral, the overall incidence of complications related to the ECMO itself is greater than for VV ECMO. This is illustrated in the 2016 ELSO report, and two recent independent reports—one single center and one meta-analysis. In the ELSO report of all cardiac ECMO in adults, the overall incidence of bleeding is 42% rather than 32% for VV ECMO. Infectious complications are comparable, but renal failure and hyperbilirubinemia are both greater. In a meta-analysis of 1866 patients who received VA ECMO for cardiac arrest or cardiogenic shock between 2005 and 2012, Cheng and associates[35] found an incidence of major bleeding complications of 40% as well as a similar incidence of needing re-thoracotomy if central ECMO was used after cardiotomy. The incidence of significant infection was 30% overall. Most strikingly the incidence of acute kidney injury was 55%, with 46% needing dialysis. They also found an incidence of lower extremity ischemia of 17%, compartment syndrome requiring fasciotomy of 10%, and amputation of 5%. They did not report mortality attributable to the ECMO. In a single-center report by Kaushal and associates,[79] findings associated with hospital mortality included increasing age, the indication for ECMO being cardiac arrest, prolonged ECMO run, need for pre-ECMO dialysis (but not if initiated during ECMO), and limb ischemia.

PERIPHERAL EXTREMITY ISCHEMIA

As indicated previously, limb ischemia, compartment syndrome requiring fasciotomy, and amputation are significant risks of peripheral cannulation for VA ECMO. Approaches to reducing this complication include careful selection of cannula size, meticulous technique in cannula insertion to prevent vessel injury, and interventions to improve flow to the distal extremity such as placement of a distal perfusion cannula or use of an arterial graft where the cannula resides, rather than the vessel itself. Compartment syndrome can be caused by a mismatch in venous outflow to the arterial inflow, which could potentially be avoided by placing the venous and arterial cannulae in different extremities. Other than use of these measures, attentive monitoring of the cannulated extremity for pulses, edema, pain, tissue tension, and temperature, and early intervention if there are ischemic changes, are essential. As mentioned, some centers use oximetry sensors to compare cannulated and noncannulated extremities.

Hyperperfusion is a less common complication, usually associated with an arterial graft to either a femoral or axillary artery, which then provides the extremity with excessive perfusion leading to hyperemia, patient discomfort, and potentially, compartment syndrome. Chameogeorgakis and associates[59] report that hyperperfusion syndrome occurs in 20% of patients when the axillary artery is used (with the cannula residing in an end-to-side graft to the artery), and 20% of these patients will go on to develop compartment syndrome. This is a reason why the axillary artery is not a vessel of first choice for VA ECMO. We have also seen this in a lower extremity in a small female patient who had an arterial graft due to small artery size, where the venous cannula was in the femoral vein on the same side.

A number of reports have addressed the effectiveness of distal perfusion catheters[80,81] and arterial grafts rather than vessel cannulation[82,83]; while these approaches reduce ischemic complications they do not eliminate them. Vigilance on the part of the care team and early intervention to change cannulation strategy are essential to prevent loss of the limb.

The Anesthesiologist's Role in Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation

In many institutions, all ECMO cannulation, management, and decannulation is led by cardiac or thoracic surgeons. In others, respiratory ECMO is managed by a medical ICU team, even when the cannulation is performed by a surgeon. ECMO management in the ICU can involve cardiologists in patients needing cardiac support, pulmonary physicians in those needing only respiratory support, and critical care physicians of all backgrounds in all patients on ECMO. A critical care anesthesiologist who is also cardiac trained is an ideal participant in the management of these patients as many aspects of ECMO are related to CPB. In some institutions nonsurgical members of the critical care team may be involved in the cannulation and initiation of ECMO as well as its ongoing management. The concept of an ECMO team has been described by two of the authors of this chapter, suggesting that outcomes of ECMO can be significantly improved with the strong engagement of cardiac anesthesiologists and critical care anesthesiologists.[84] This may be particularly important in "ECMO to go" where a team from the ECMO center travels to an outside hospital to initiate and then manage ECMO as well as other life-support modalities during transfer. The European experience indicates a stronger role for anesthesiologists in this process than in the United States.[85] Management of patients needing what is essentially a surgical intervention for urgent cardiorespiratory support is very much part of the practice of cardiothoracic anesthesiology, as is the invaluable intraoperative guidance provided by TEE evaluation and monitoring of not only cardiac function, but placement, advancement, and correct positioning of cannulae.[86] Similarly, during decannulation from cardiac ECMO, echocardiographic evaluation of the heart is essential during and after support has been removed.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Zaccaria Ricci, Stefano Romagnoli, and Claudio Ronco for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Nazarnia S, Subramaniam K. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31(4):1505–1508.
2. Ju Z, et al. *Exp Ther Med*. 2018;15(2):1950–1958.
3. Vasanthan V, et al. *Can J Cardiol*. 2017;33(7):950.e11–950.e13.
4. Kirklin JW, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1956;144(1):2–8.
5. Warden HE, et al. *J Thorac Surg*. 1955;30(6):649–656. discussion, 656-7.
6. Iwahashi HK, et al. *J Artif Organs*. 2004;7(3):111–120.
7. Hill JD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1972;286(12):629–634.
8. Bartlett RH. *Asaio J*. 2017;63(6):832–843.
9. Bartlett RH, et al. *Pediatrics*. 1985;76(4):479–487.
10. UK collaborative randomised trial of neonatal extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. UK Collaborative ECMO Trail Group. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9020):75–82.
11. Green TP, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24(2):323–329.
12. Zapol WM, et al. *JAMA*. 1979;242(20):2193–2196.
13. Peek GJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2009;374(9698):1351–1363.
14. Davies A, et al. *JAMA*. 2009;302(17):1888–1895.
15. Combes A, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(21):1965–1975.
16. Mi MY, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;379(9):884–887.
17. Bartlett RH. *Crit Care Med*. 2019;47(1):114–117.
18. ELSO. https//www.elso.org/; 2018

19. Murray JF, et al. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1988;138(3):720–723.
20. Ranieri VM, et al. *JAMA*. 2012;307(23):2526–2533.
21. Combes A, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2017;23(1):60–65.
22. Mason DP, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2010;139(3):765–773.e1.
23. Salam S, et al. *Asaio J*. 2017;63(5):e66–e68.
24. Tsiouris A, et al. *Asaio J*. 2018;64(5):689–693.
25. Raleigh L, et al. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;19(4):342–352.
26. Loor G, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9(9):3352–3361.
27. Machuca TN, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2015;149(4):1152–1157.
28. Hoetzenecker K, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2018;155(5):2193–2206. e3.
29. Thiagarajan RR, et al. *Asaio J*. 2017;63(1):60–67.
30. Gilotra NA, Stevens GR. *Clin Med Insights Cardiol*. 2014;8(suppl 1):75–85.
31. Touchan J, Guglin M. *Curr Treat Options Cardiovasc Med*. 2017;19(10):77.
32. Khorsandi M, et al. *J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2017;12(1):55.
33. Wang L, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32(5):2087–2093.
34. den Uil CA, et al. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2017;52(1):14–25.
35. Cheng R, et al. *J Card Fail*. 2014;20(6):400–406.
36. Debaty G, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2017;112:1–10.
37. Holmberg MJ, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2018;131:91–100.
38. Schmidt M, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;189(11):1374–1382.
39. Schmidt M, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2015;36(33):2246–2256.
40. Courtwright AM, et al. *Ann Am Thorac Soc*. 2016;13(9):1553–1558.
41. Abrams D, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2018;44(6):717–729.
42. Brodie D, et al. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2017;5(10):769–770.
43. J H. Adult cardiac support Ann Arbor, Michigan. In: 4th ed. Annich GM, Lynch WR, MacLaren G, et al., eds. *ECMO. Extracorporeal Cardiopulmonary Support in Critical Care*; 2012:323–330.
44. Sunagawa K. *J Physiol Sci*. 2017;67(4):447–458.
45. R B. Physiology of extracorporeal life support Ann Arbor, Michigan. In: Annich GM, Lynch WR, MacLaren G, et al., eds. *ECMO. Extracorporeal Cardiopulmonary Support in Critical Care*. 4th ed. ; 2012.
46. Tominaga R, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1996;111(4):863–872.
47. Patel SR, Jorde UP. *Curr Opin Cardiol*. 2016;31(3):329–336.
48. Slaughter MS. *J Cardiovasc Transl Res*. 2010;3(6):618–624.
49. O'Brien C, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2017;52(6):975–978.
50. Xie A, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2016;36:107–110.
51. Pierrakos C, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2017;37:60–64.
52. Fuhrman BP, et al. *Artif Organs*. 1999;23(11):966–969.
53. Brasseur A, et al. *J Thorac Dis*. 2018;10(suppl 5):S707–s715.
54. Bartlett RH. Management of blood flow and gas exchange during ECLS Ann Arbor, Michigan. In: Annich GM, Lynch WR, MacLaren G, et al., eds. *ECMO. Extracorporeal Cardiopulmonary Support in Critical Care*. 4th ed. ; 2012:149–156.
55. Cakici M, et al. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2018;26(1):112–118.
56. Reynolds HR, Hochman JS. *Circulation*. 2008;117(5):686–697.
57. Seto AH, et al. *JACC Cardiovasc Interv*. 2010;3(7):751–758.
58. Schmidt GA, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2019.
59. Chamogeorgakis T, et al. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2013;145(4):1088–1092.
60. Ravichandran AK, et al. *Asaio J*. 2018;64(4):570–572.
61. Biscotti M, et al. *Asaio J*. 2014;60(6):635–642.
62. Ius F, et al. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2015;20(6):761–767.
63. Werner NL, et al. *Asaio J*. 2016;62(5):578–583.
64. Steffen RJ, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2014;98(5):1853–1854.
65. Galvagno SM, et al. *Perfusion*. 2019. 267659119826828.
66. Raman J, et al. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2019.
67. Kawahito K, Nose Y. *Artif Organs*. 1997;21(4):323–326.
68. Hirsh J, et al. *Chest*. 2001;119(suppl 1):64s–94s.
69. Annich GM. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2015;13(suppl 1):S336–S342.
70. Horton S, Augustin S. *Methods Mol Biol*. 2013;992:155–167.
71. De Waele JJ, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29(2):325–328.
72. Becker RC. *J Thromb Thrombolysis*. 2005;20(1):65–68.
73. Delmas C, et al. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2018. 885066618776937.
74. Burki S, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2018;8(6):e022943.
75. Koster A, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(1):72–76.
76. Natt B, et al. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2017;49(1):54–58.
77. Kilburn DJ, et al. *Biomed Res Int*. 2016;2016:1094296.
78. Vaquer S, et al. *Ann Intensive Care*. 2017;7(1):51.
79. Kaushal M, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018.
80. Ranney DN, et al. *Asaio J*. 2018;64(3):328–333.
81. Lamb KM, et al. *J Vasc Surg*. 2017;65(4):1074–1079.
82. Calderon D, et al. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2015;42(6):537–539.
83. Jackson KW, et al. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94(5):e111–e112.
84. Dalia AA, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018.
85. Nwozuzu A, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30(6):1441–1448.
86. Combes A, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;190(5):488–496.

References

1. Nazarnia S, Subramaniam K. Pro: Veno-arterial Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation (ECMO) should be used routinely for bilateral lung transplantation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31(4): 1505–1508.
2. Ju Z, et al. Effects of pumpless extracorporeal lung assist on hemodynamics, gas exchange and inflammatory cascade response during experimental lung injury. *Exp Ther Med*. 2018;15(2):1950–1958.
3. Vasanthan V, et al. Extended bridge to heart and lung transplantation using pumpless extracorporeal lung assist. *Can J Cardiol*. 2017;33(7):950.e11–950.e13.
4. Kirklin JW, et al. Studies in extracorporeal circulation. I. Applicability of Gibbon-type pump-oxygenator to human intracardiac surgery: 40 cases. *Ann Surg*. 1956;144(1):2–8.
5. Warden HE, et al. Direct vision intracardiac surgery by means of a reservoir of "arterialized venous" blood; description of a simple method and report of the first clinical case. *J Thorac Surg*. 1955;30(6):649–656. discussion, 656-7.
6. Iwahashi H, Yuri K, Nose Y. Development of the oxygenator: past, present, and future. *J Artif Organs*. 2004;7(3):111–120.
7. Hill JD, et al. Prolonged extracorporeal oxygenation for acute post-traumatic respiratory failure (shock-lung syndrome). Use of the Bramson membrane lung. *N Engl J Med*. 1972;286(12):629–634.
8. Bartlett RH. Esperanza: the first neonatal ECMO patient. *Asaio j*. 2017;63(6):832–843.
9. Bartlett RH, et al. Extracorporeal circulation in neonatal respiratory failure: a prospective randomized study. *Pediatrics*. 1985;76(4): 479–487.
10. UK collaborative randomised trial of neonatal extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. UK Collaborative ECMO Trail Group. *Lancet*. 1996;348(9020):75–82.
11. Green TP, et al. The impact of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation on survival in pediatric patients with acute respiratory failure. Pediatric Critical Care Study Group. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24(2):323–329.
12. Zapol WM, et al. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in severe acute respiratory failure. A randomized prospective study. *JAMA*. 1979;242(20):2193–2196.
13. Peek GJ, et al. Efficacy and economic assessment of conventional ventilatory support versus extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for severe adult respiratory failure (CESAR): a multicentre randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2009;374(9698):1351–1363.
14. Davies A, et al. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for 2009 influenza A(H1N1) acute respiratory distress syndrome. *JAMA*. 2009;302(17):1888–1895.
15. Combes A, et al. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(21):1965–1975.
16. Mi MY, Matthay MA, Morris AH. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;379(9):884–887.
17. Bartlett RH. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for acute respiratory distress syndrome: EOLIA and beyond. *Crit Care Med*. 2019;47(1):114–117.
18. ELSO. 2018. https//www.elso.org/.
19. Murray JF, et al. An expanded definition of the adult respiratory distress syndrome. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1988;138(3):720–723.
20. Ranieri VM, et al. Acute respiratory distress syndrome: the Berlin definition. *JAMA*. 2012;307(23):2526–2533.
21. Combes A, et al. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation: beyond rescue therapy for acute respiratory distress syndrome? *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2017;23(1):60–65.
22. Mason DP, et al. Should lung transplantation be performed for patients on mechanical respiratory support? the US experience. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2010;139(3):765–773.e1.
23. Salam S, et al. Lung transplantation after 125 days on ECMO for severe refractory hypoxemia with no prior lung disease. *Asaio j*. 2017;63(5):e66–e68.
24. Tsiouris A, Budev MM, Yun JJ. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation as a bridge to lung transplantation in the United States: a multicenter survey. *Asaio j*. 2018;64(5):689–693.
25. Raleigh L, Ha R, Hill C. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation applications in cardiac critical care. *Semin Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2015;19(4):342–352.
26. Loor G, Simpson L, Parulekar A. Bridging to lung transplantation with extracorporeal circulatory support: when or when not? *J Thorac Dis*. 2017;9(9):3352–3361.
27. Machuca TN, et al. Outcomes of intraoperative extracorporeal membrane oxygenation versus cardiopulmonary bypass for lung transplantation. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2015;149(4):1152–1157.
28. Hoetzenecker K, et al. Intraoperative extracorporeal membrane oxygenation and the possibility of postoperative prolongation improve survival in bilateral lung transplantation. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2018;155(5):2193–2206. e3.
29. Thiagarajan RR, et al. Extracorporeal Life Support Organization registry international report 2016. *Asaio j*. 2017;63(1):60–67.
30. Gilotra NA, Stevens GR. Temporary mechanical circulatory support: a review of the options, indications, and outcomes. *Clin Med Insights Cardiol*. 2014;8(suppl 1):75–85.
31. Touchan J, Guglin M. Temporary mechanical circulatory support for cardiogenic shock. *Curr Treat Options Cardiovasc Med*. 2017;19(10):77.
32. Khorsandi M, et al. Extra-corporeal membrane oxygenation for refractory cardiogenic shock after adult cardiac surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2017;12(1):55.
33. Wang L, Wang H, Hou X. Clinical outcomes of adult patients who receive extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for postcardiotomy cardiogenic shock: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018;32(5):2087–2093.
34. den Uil CA, et al. Short-term mechanical circulatory support as a bridge to durable left ventricular assist device implantation in refractory cardiogenic shock: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg*. 2017;52(1):14–25.
35. Cheng R, et al. Clinical outcomes in fulminant myocarditis requiring extracorporeal membrane oxygenation: a weighted meta-analysis of 170 patients. *J Card Fail*. 2014;20(6):400–406.
36. Debaty G, et al. Prognostic factors for extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation recipients following out-of-hospital refractory cardiac arrest. A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Resuscitation*. 2017;112:1–10.
37. Holmberg MJ, et al. Extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation for cardiac arrest: a systematic review. *Resuscitation*. 2018;131:91–100.
38. Schmidt M, et al. Predicting survival after extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for severe acute respiratory failure. The Respiratory Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation Survival Prediction (RESP) score. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;189(11):1374–1382.
39. Schmidt M, et al. Predicting survival after ECMO for refractory cardiogenic shock: the survival after veno-arterial-ECMO (SAVE)-score. *Eur Heart J*. 2015;36(33):2246–2256.
40. Courtwright AM, et al. Ethics committee consultation and extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *Ann Am Thorac Soc*. 2016;13(9):1553–1558.
41. Abrams D, et al. Position paper for the organization of ECMO programs for cardiac failure in adults. *Intensive Care Med*. 2018;44(6):717–729.
42. Brodie D, et al. Treatment limitations in the era of ECMO. *Lancet Respir Med*. 2017;5(10):769–770.
43. J, H. Adult cardiac support Ann Arbor, Michigan. In: Annich GM, Lynch WR, MacLaren G, et al., eds. *ECMO. Extracorporeal Cardiopulmonary Support in Critical Care*. 4th ed. ; 2012:323–330.
44. Sunagawa K. Guyton's venous return curves should be taught at medical schools (complete English translation of Japanese version). *J Physiol Sci*. 2017;67(4):447–458.
45. R, B. Physiology of extracorporeal life support Ann Arbor, Michigan. In: Annich GM, Lynch WR, MacLaren G, et al., eds. *ECMO. Extracorporeal Cardiopulmonary Support in Critical Care*. 4th ed. ; 2012.
46. Tominaga R, et al. Chronic nonpulsatile blood flow. III. Effects of pump flow rate on oxygen transport and utilization in chronic nonpulsatile biventricular bypass. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 1996;111(4):863–872.
47. Patel SR, Jorde UP. Creating adequate pulsatility with a continuous flow left ventricular assist device: just do it!. *Curr Opin Cardiol*. 2016;31(3):329–336.
48. Slaughter MS. Hematologic effects of continuous flow left ventricular assist devices. *J Cardiovasc Transl Res*. 2010;3(6):618–624.
49. O'Brien C, et al. Centrifugal pumps and hemolysis in pediatric extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) patients: an analysis of Extracorporeal Life Support Organization (ELSO) registry data. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2017;52(6):975–978.

50. Xie A, Yan TD, Forrest P. Recirculation in venovenous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *J Crit Care*. 2016;36:107–110.
51. Pierrakos C, et al. Injection of agitated saline to detect recirculation with transthoracic echocardiography during venovenous extracorporeal oxygenation: a pilot study. *J Crit Care*. 2017;37:60–64.
52. Fuhrman BP, et al. Pathophysiology of cardiac extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *Artif Organs*. 1999;23(11):966–969.
53. Brasseur A, et al. Hybrid extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *J Thorac Dis*. 2018;10(suppl 5):S707–s715.
54. Bartlett RH. Management of blood flow and gas exchange during ECLS Ann Arbor, Michigan. In: 4th ed. Annich GM, Lynch WR, MacLaren G, et al., eds. *ECMO. Extracorporeal Cardiopulmonary Support in Critical Care*; 2012:149–156.
55. Cakici M, et al. Controlled flow diversion in hybrid venoarterial-venous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2018;26(1):112–118.
56. Reynolds HR, Hochman JS. Cardiogenic shock: current concepts and improving outcomes. *Circulation*. 2008;117(5):686–697.
57. Seto AH, et al. Real-time ultrasound guidance facilitates femoral arterial access and reduces vascular complications: FAUST (Femoral Arterial Access With Ultrasound Trial). *JACC Cardiovasc Interv*. 2010;3(7):751–758.
58. Schmidt GA, et al. Ultrasound-guided vascular access in critical illness. *Intensive Care Med*. 2019.
59. Chamogeorgakis T, et al. Outcomes of axillary artery side graft cannulation for extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg*. 2013;145(4):1088–1092.
60. Ravichandran AK, et al. Outcomes with the tandem Protek duo dual-lumen percutaneous right ventricular assist device. *Asaio j*. 2018;64(4):570–572.
61. Biscotti M, et al. Hybrid configurations via percutaneous access for extracorporeal membrane oxygenation: a single-center experience. *Asaio j*. 2014;60(6):635–642.
62. Ius F, et al. Veno-veno-arterial extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for respiratory failure with severe haemodynamic impairment: technique and early outcomes. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg*. 2015;20(6):761–767.
63. Werner NL, et al. The University of Michigan experience with veno-venoarterial hybrid mode of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *Asaio j*. 2016;62(5):578–583.
64. Steffen RJ, et al. Using near-infrared spectroscopy to monitor lower extremities in patients on venoarterial extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2014;98(5):1853–1854.
65. Galvagno SM, et al. Long term veno-venous extracorporeal life support without intravenous anticoagulation for diffuse alveolar hemorrhage. *Perfusion*. 2019.
66. Raman J, et al. A comparison of low and standard anti-coagulation regimens in extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. 2019.
67. Kawahito K, Nose Y. Hemolysis in different centrifugal pumps. *Artif Organs*. 1997;21(4):323–326.
68. Hirsh J, et al. Heparin and low-molecular-weight heparin: mechanisms of action, pharmacokinetics, dosing, monitoring, efficacy, and safety. *Chest*. 2001;119(suppl 1):64s–94s.
69. Annich GM. Extracorporeal life support: the precarious balance of hemostasis. *J Thromb Haemost*. 2015;13(suppl 1):S336–S342.
70. Horton S, Augustin S. Activated clotting time (ACT). *Methods Mol Biol*. 2013;992:155–167.
71. De Waele JJ, et al. The use of the activated clotting time for monitoring heparin therapy in critically ill patients. *Intensive Care Med*. 2003;29(2):325–328.
72. Becker RC. Cell-based models of coagulation: a paradigm in evolution. *J Thromb Thrombolysis*. 2005;20(1):65–68.
73. Delmas C, et al. Anticoagulation monitoring under ECMO support: a comparative study between the activated coagulation time and the anti-Xa activity assay. *J Intensive Care Med*. 2018.
74. Burki S, et al. Accuracy, reproducibility and costs of different laboratory assays for the monitoring of unfractionated heparin in clinical practice: a prospective evaluation study and survey among Swiss institutions. *BMJ Open*. 2018;8(6):e022943.
75. Koster A, et al. Impact of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia on outcome in patients with ventricular assist device support: single-institution experience in 358 consecutive patients. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2007;83(1):72–76.
76. Natt B, et al. Suspected heparin-induced thrombocytopenia in patients receiving extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2017;49(1):54–58.
77. Kilburn DJ, Shekar K, Fraser JF. The complex relationship of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation and acute kidney injury: causation or association? *Biomed Res Int*. 2016;2016:1094296.
78. Vaquer S, et al. Systematic review and meta-analysis of complications and mortality of veno-venous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for refractory acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Ann Intensive Care*. 2017;7(1):51.
79. Kaushal M, et al. Patient Demographics and Extracorporeal Membranous Oxygenation (ECMO)-related complications associated with survival to discharge or 30-day survival in adult patients receiving Venoarterial (VA) and Venovenous (VV) ECMO in a Quaternary Care Urban Center. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018.
80. Ranney DN, et al. Vascular complications and use of a distal perfusion cannula in femorally cannulated patients on extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *Asaio j*. 2018;64(3):328–333.
81. Lamb KM, et al. Arterial protocol including prophylactic distal perfusion catheter decreases limb ischemia complications in patients undergoing extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. *J Vasc Surg*. 2017;65(4):1074–1079.
82. Calderon D, et al. Modified T-graft for extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in a patient with small-caliber femoral arteries. *Tex Heart Inst J*. 2015;42(6):537–539.
83. Jackson KW, et al. Side-arm grafts for femoral extracorporeal membrane oxygenation cannulation. *Ann Thorac Surg*. 2012;94(5):e111–e112.
84. Dalia AA, et al. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation is a team sport: institutional survival benefits of a formalized ECMO team. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2018.
85. Nwozuzu A, Fontes ML, Schonberger RB. Mobile extracorporeal membrane oxygenation teams: the North American versus the European experience. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2016;30(6):1441–1448.
86. Combes A, et al. Position paper for the organization of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation programs for acute respiratory failure in adult patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2014;190(5):488–496.

86

Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Advanced Cardiac Life Support

YAFEN LIANG, ALA NOZARI, AVINASH B. KUMAR, and
STEN RUBERTSSON

KEY POINTS

- Cardiac arrest is a major public health issue worldwide. Despite significant advances in resuscitation science, survival rates remain considerably low. Improvement of patient survival and neurologic outcome relies on the development and implementation of vigorous and evidence-based resuscitation guidelines involving basic life support (BLS), advanced cardiovascular life support, and post–cardiac arrest care.
- In cardiac arrests without hypoxic causes, oxygen content in the lungs at the time of cardiac arrest is usually sufficient for maintaining acceptable arterial oxygen content during the first several minutes of cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR). Blood flow rather than arterial oxygen content is the limiting factor for oxygen delivery to coronary, cerebral, and systemic circulation during CPR. Thus rescue breaths are less important than initiating effective chest compressions as soon as possible after sudden cardiac arrest (SCA).
- The mechanism through which chest compressions generate blood flow can be explained by the thoracic or cardiac pump theories. The provision of uninterrupted, high-quality chest compressions after SCA is associated with better survival and neurologic outcomes than delaying chest compressions for airway intervention in both adult and pediatric patients. Circulation, airway, breathing has replaced airway, breathing, circulation.
- A single resuscitative shock should be delivered at the earliest possible opportunity after the recognition of cardiac arrest, followed immediately by the resumption of chest compressions without postshock cardiac rhythm analysis. Outcome studies have failed to demonstrate the benefit of a period of chest compressions before shock or for a series of stacked shocks.
- Vasopressor medications during resuscitation have been de-emphasized in deference to providing uninterrupted, high-quality chest compressions. Standard-dose epinephrine (1 mg every 3-5 minutes) is recommended for patients in cardiac arrest. Vasopressin offers no advantage as a substitute for epinephrine in cardiac arrest and has been removed from the adult cardiac arrest algorithm. Steroids combined with a vasopressor bundle or cocktail of epinephrine and vasopressin improved return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC) compared with the use of placebo and epinephrine alone in out-of-hospital cardiac arrest.
- Continuous-flow left ventricular assist devices result in an unconventional, unique physiologic state of hemodynamically stable pulseless electric activity. Assessment of adequate tissue perfusion is the most important factor in determining the need for circulatory assistance such as chest compressions. Total artificial hearts (TAHs) are refractory to chest compressions, antiarrhythmic drugs, and electric therapy. Vasopressor medications are contraindicated because they increase afterload, result in complete hemodynamic collapse with pulmonary edema, and worsen TAH function.
- In consideration of opioid overdose epidemiology, patients with known or suspected opioid addiction who are in cardiac or respiratory arrest should receive intravenous, intramuscular, or intranasal naloxone in addition to standard BLS care.
- For nonshockable rhythms, the essential step will be early detection and correction of potentially reversible underlying causes. Ultrasound technology is used to assess the etiology and the management of these patients, as well as to predict the possibility of ROSC and to justify the termination of resuscitative efforts. However, utilization of this technique should not interfere with other resuscitation efforts such as chest compressions.
- Asphyxiation is a much more common cause of cardiac arrest in infants and children than the primary cardiac event, and airway management and ventilation are therefore more important during the resuscitation of children. However, in order to facilitate training, retention, and implementation of resuscitation guidelines, the pediatric resuscitation guidelines follow similar principles as adult guidelines.

- Targeted temperature management (TTM) applied to comatose survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrests has significantly improved the neurologic recovery in those surviving to hospital discharge. A target temperature between 32°C and 36°C is recommended for at least 24 hours, and normothermia (to treat fever) should be maintained beyond this window. Prognostication should not occur until 72 hours after ROSC or, if TTM is provided, 72 hours after completion of TTM.
- Most deaths after SCA in both adults and children typically occur within the first 24 hours. Coordinated postresuscitation care involving access to coronary catheterization capabilities and intensive care management that includes TTM represents the best chance survivors of SCA have for optimal neurologic and cardiac recovery.
- New technologies such as individualized CPR, extracorporeal CPR, controlled automated reperfusion of the whole body (CARL), and emergency preservation for delayed resuscitation may offer opportunities for patients suffering from cardiac arrest.

Sudden Cardiac Arrest and Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation

BRIEF HISTORY AND PHYSIOLOGIC CONSIDERATIONS

Cardiac arrest is a major public health issue, with more than 500,000 deaths per year in the United States.[1-3] Seventy percent of out-of-hospital cardiac arrests (OHCAs) occur at home, and approximately 50% are unwitnessed. Despite significant advances in resuscitation science, survival rates remain considerably low for both OHCA and in-hospital cardiac arrest (IHCA). Only 10.4% of adult patients with nontraumatic cardiac arrest who receive resuscitative efforts from emergency medical services (EMS) survive to hospital discharge.[4] IHCA has a better outcome, with 22.3% to 25.5% of adults surviving to hospital discharge.[5] Statistics for Europe are similar, with OHCA as one of the leading causes of death in Europe and an overall survival rate of 2.6% to 10.7%.[6-8]

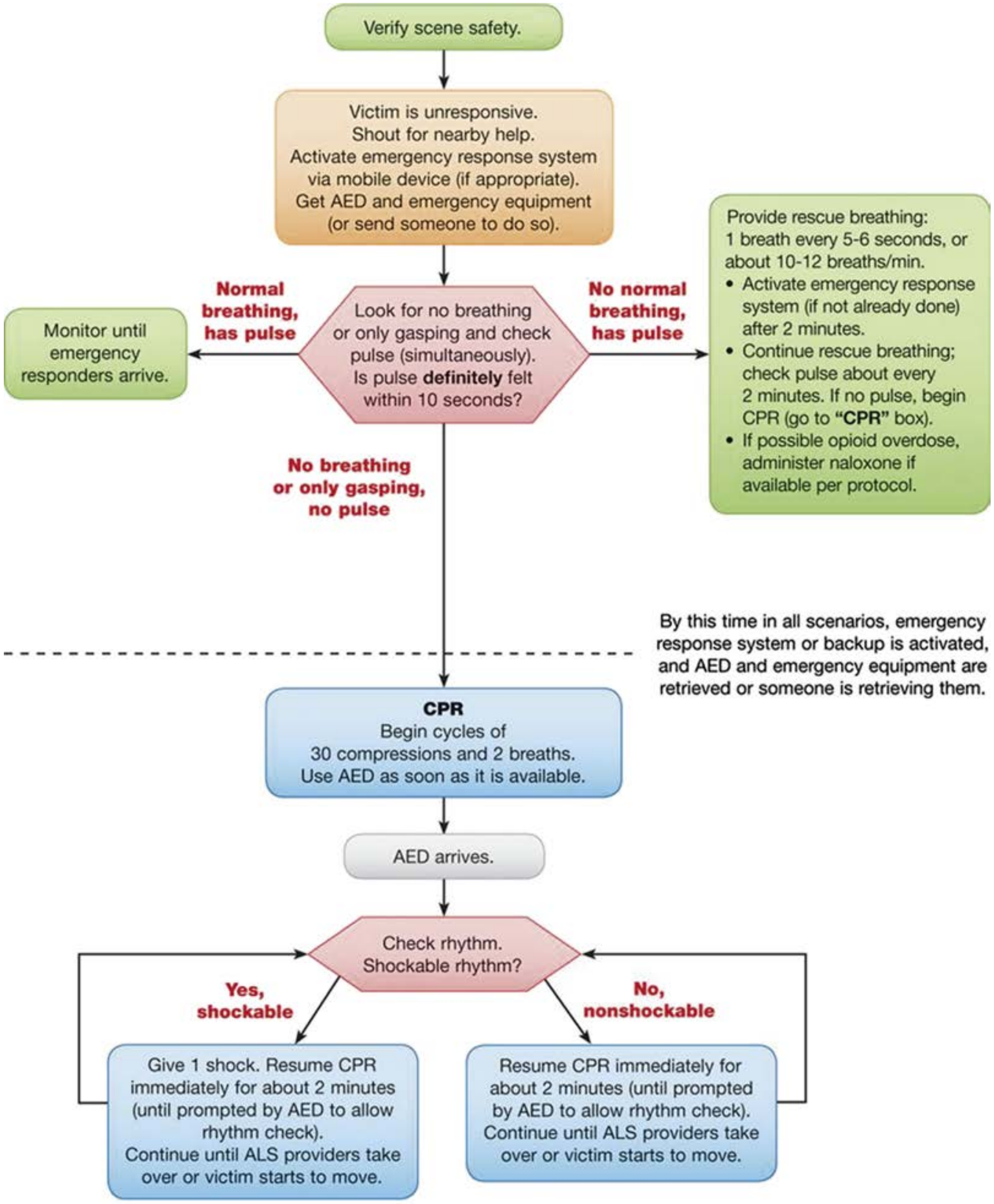
Sudden cardiac arrest (SCA) is a complex and dynamic process. Forward systemic arterial blood flow continues after cardiac arrest until the pressure gradient between the aorta and right heart reaches equilibrium. A similar process occurs with forward pulmonary blood flow between the pulmonary artery and the left atrium. As the arteriovenous pressure gradient diminishes, the left heart filling is decreased, right heart filling is increased, and the venous capacitance vessels become increasingly distended. When the arterial and venous pressures reach equilibration (approximately 5 minutes after no-flow cardiac arrest), coronary perfusion and cerebral blood flows stop. The goal of cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) thus is to maintain oxygen and blood supply to vital organs, restore spontaneous circulation, minimize postresuscitation organ injury, and ultimately improve the patient's survival and neurologic outcome.

The history of CPR traces back to the biblical age. However, the more contemporary approach to CPR dates back to the 1950s.[9] James Elam and Peter Safar showed that the earlier methods of resuscitation with chest-pressure and arm-lift were ineffective, and that mouth-to-mouth ventilation was an easily learned and life-saving approach. William B. Kouwenhoven of Johns Hopkins University is credited with introducing a formalized system of chest compressions. Claude Beck of Case Western Reserve University and Paul Zoll of Beth Israel Hospital introduced defibrillation to break ventricular fibrillation. In 1966 the National Academy of Sciences National Research Council conference generated consensus standards for the performance of CPR and opened the modern era of CPR.

The mechanism through which chest compressions generate blood flow can be explained by the thoracic or cardiac pump theories. The thoracic pump theory postulates that blood flows from the thorax when the intrathoracic vascular pressures exceed extrathoracic pressures.[10] The venous-to-arterial blood flow direction is a result of venous valves that prevent retrograde flow at the thoracic inlet. According to the cardiac pump theory, blood flow is generated as a result of actual compression of the heart between the sternum and the vertebral column.[11,12] Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) during CPR in humans allowed direct visualization of changes in cardiac chambers and valve functions during chest compressions, as well as the direction of blood flow. During chest compression, the tricuspid and mitral valves close, the left and right ventricular volumes decrease, and blood is ejected into the arterial system.[13,14] During the decompression phase of CPR, the pressure gradient between the systemic venous system and thoracic cavity facilitates blood flow into the heart chambers. Systemic blood flow during CPR is dependent on effective chest compressions but also on the venous blood return to the heart. Therefore, even modest increases in the intrathoracic pressure, as might occur with overzealous ventilation during CPR, will impair venous return and negatively impact systemic, coronary, and cerebral perfusions and also reduce the chances of return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC).

Cardiac output during CPR with effective, uninterrupted chest compression is at best 25% to 30% of the normal spontaneous circulation. In cardiac arrests without hypoxic causes (e.g., suffocation, drowning), oxygen content in the lungs at the time of cardiac arrest is usually sufficient for maintaining acceptable arterial oxygen content during the first several minutes of CPR. Blood flow rather than arterial oxygen content is the limiting factor for oxygen delivery to coronary, cerebral, and systemic circulation during CPR. Thus rescue breaths are less important than initiating effective chest compressions as soon as possible after SCA.

Understanding the pathophysiology during SCA and CPR is vitally important. The actual improvement of patient outcome, however, relies on development and implementation of vigorous and evidence-based resuscitation guidelines. The more recent recommendations, the 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation


Verify scene safety.
Victim is unresponsive.
Shout for nearby help.
Activate emergency response system via mobile device (if appropriate).
Get AED and emergency equipment (or send someone to do so).
Normal breathing, has pulse
Monitor until emergency responders arrive.
Look for no breathing or only gasping and check pulse (simultaneously).
Is pulse definitely felt within 10 seconds?
No normal breathing, has pulse
Provide rescue breathing:
1 breath every 5-6 seconds, or about 10-12 breaths/min.
• Activate emergency response system (if not already done) after 2 minutes.
• Continue rescue breathing; check pulse about every 2 minutes. If no pulse, begin CPR (go to "CPR" box).
• If possible opioid overdose, administer naloxone if available per protocol.
No breathing or only gasping, no pulse
By this time in all scenarios, emergency response system or backup is activated, and AED and emergency equipment are retrieved or someone is retrieving them.
CPR
Begin cycles of 30 compressions and 2 breaths.
Use AED as soon as it is available.
AED arrives.
Check rhythm.
Shockable rhythm?
Yes, shockable
No, nonshockable
Give 1 shock. Resume CPR immediately for about 2 minutes (until prompted by AED to allow rhythm check).
Continue until ALS providers take over or victim starts to move.
Resume CPR immediately for about 2 minutes (until prompted by AED to allow rhythm check).
Continue until ALS providers take over or victim starts to move.

© 2015 American Heart Association

Fig. 86.1 Basic Life Support Healthcare Provider Adult Cardiac Arrest Algorithm—2015 Update. *AED*, Automated external defibrillator; *CPR*, cardiopulmonary resuscitation. (From Kleinman ME, Brennan EE, Goldberger ZD, et al. Part 5: Adult Basic Life Support and Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation Quality: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2015;132[18 suppl 2]: S414–S435.)

and Emergency Cardiovascular Care (2015 American Heart Association [AHA] Guidelines for CPR and ECC), represent the fourth internationally recognized resuscitation guidelines from the AHA and the European Resuscitation Council; therefore, these guidelines are practiced in many countries and medical specialties. More recently, the guidelines underwent a major updating process change. Instead of updating guidelines every 5 years, the new process involves a continuous evidence evaluation process and annual guidelines update, with the most recent one being the 2017 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC update. The intent of this chapter is to review the history, rationale, and current understanding of both basic life support (BLS) and advanced cardiovascular life support (ACLS) techniques based on the most recent updated guidelines.

BASIC LIFE SUPPORT

BLS is, according to the Carnegie Safety Institute, the foundation for saving lives after cardiac arrest. Fundamental aspects of adult BLS include immediate recognition of SCA and activation of the emergency response system, early CPR, and rapid defibrillation with an automated external defibrillator (AED). Initial recognition and response to heart attack and stroke are also considered as parts of the BLS. All BLS interventions are time sensitive for preventing SCA, terminating SCA, or supporting circulation until spontaneous circulation is restored. The steps of the adult BLS algorithm for healthcare providers are illustrated in Fig. 86.1.

TABLE 86.1 Summary of Components of High-Quality Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation

Component	Adults and Adolescents	Children (Age 1 Year to Puberty)	Infants (Age Less Than 1 Year, Excluding Newborns)
Scene safety	Make sure the environment is safe for rescuers and victim		
Recognition of cardiac arrest	Check for responsiveness No breathing or only gasping (i.e., no normal breathing) No definite pulse felt within 10 s (Breathing and pulse check can be performed simultaneously in less than 10 s)		
Activation of emergency response system	If you are alone with no mobile phone, leave the victim to activate the emergency response system and get the AED before beginning CPR Otherwise, send someone and begin CPR immediately; use the AED as soon as it is available	*Witnessed collapse* Follow steps for adults and adolescents on the left *Unwitnessed collapse* Give 2 min of CPR Leave the victim to activate the emergency response system and get the AED Return to the child or infant and resume CPR; use the AED as soon as it is available	
Compression-ventilation ratio *without advanced airway*	*1 or 2 rescuers* 30:2	*1 rescuer* 30:2 *2 or more rescuers* 15:2	
Compression-ventilation ratio *with advanced airway*	Continuous compressions at a rate of 100-120/min Give 1 breath every 6 s (10 breaths/min)		
Compression rate	100-120/min		
Compression depth	At least 2 inches (5 cm)*	At least one-third AP diameter of chest About 2 inches (5 cm)	At least one-third AP diameter of chest About 1 1/2 inches (4 cm)
Hand placement	2 hands on the lower half of the breastbone (sternum)	2 hands or 1 hand (optional for very small child) on the lower half of the breastbone (sternum)	*1 rescuer* 2 fingers in the center of the chest, just below the nipple line *2 or more rescuers* 2 thumb–encircling hands in the center of the chest, just below the nipple line
Chest recoil	Allow full recoil of chest after each compression; do not lean on the chest after each compression		
Minimizing interruptions	Limit interruptions in chest compressions to less than 10 s		

*Compression depth should be no more than 2.4 inches (6 cm).

AED, Automated external defibrillator; *AP*, anteroposterior; *CPR*, cardiopulmonary resuscitation.

From Kleinman ME, Brennan EE, Goldberger ZD, et al. Part 5: Adult Basic Life Support and Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation Quality: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2015;132[18 suppl 2]:S414–S435. https://ecc-guidelines.heart.org/index.php/circulation/cpr-ecc-guidelines-2/part-5-adult-basic-life-support-and-cardiopulmonary-resuscitation-quality/.

The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC on BLS continue to emphasize the simplified universal adult BLS algorithm. The recommended sequence for a single rescuer is to initiate chest compressions before giving rescue breaths (circulation, airway, breathing [C-A-B] rather than airway, breathing, circulation [A-B-C]) to reduce any delay in providing effective chest compressions in adults without any known information of possible asphyxiation as the cause of cardiac arrest. The single rescuer should begin CPR with 30 chest compressions followed by 2 breaths. The guideline, in addition, also emphasizes a simultaneous, choreographed approach to the performance of chest compressions, airway management, rescue breathing, rhythm detection, and shocks (if indicated) by an integrated team of highly trained rescuers in applicable settings such as the hospital environment. With the current rhythm analysis technology, pause of chest compressions may still be required for accurate rhythm analysis, but the compressions should be resumed as soon as possible after rhythm analysis or defibrillation. The key components of high-quality CPR for BLS providers are summarized in Table 86.1.

Recognition of Sudden Cardiac Arrest

The necessary first step in the management of cardiac arrest is its immediate recognition. Studies have shown that both lay rescuers and healthcare providers have difficulty detecting a weak pulse.[15] The healthcare provider should take no more than 10 seconds to check for a pulse and, if the rescuer does not definitely feel a pulse within that time period, start chest compressions. Ideally, the pulse check is performed simultaneously with the examination for breathing or gasping, to minimize delay in the detection of cardiac arrest and initiation of CPR. Cardiac arrest victims sometimes present with seizure-like activity or agonal gasps that can confuse potential rescuers. If the victim is unresponsive with absent or abnormal breathing, the rescuer should assume that the victim is in cardiac arrest.

Bystander Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation

For victims of OHCA, the key determinants of survival are timely performance of high-quality bystander CPR and, in the presence of any of the shockable rhythms of ventricular fibrillation or pulseless ventricular tachycardia (VT), defibrillation. Similarly, for IHCA, the important provider-dependent determinants of survival are early defibrillation for shockable rhythms and high-quality CPR, along with recognition and response to deteriorating patients before an arrest. The implication of timely CPR is discussed in the next section of this chapter. The components of high-quality CPR include compressing the chest at an adequate rate and depth, allowing complete chest recoil after each compression, minimizing interruptions in compressions, and avoiding excessive ventilation.

As previously described, chest compressions create blood flow by increasing the intrathoracic pressure and directly compressing the heart. The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC recommended a chest compression rate of 100 to 120/min (updated from at least 100/min), and a chest compression depth for adults of at least 2 inches (5 cm) but not greater than 2.4 inches (6 cm). Despite the "push hard and push fast" recommendation, most CPR feedback devices have shown that compressions are more often too shallow than too deep.[16] In clinical practice, the compression depth may be difficult to judge without the use of feedback devices, and identification of upper limits of compression depth may be challenging. The addition of an upper limit of compression rate is based on a large registry study analysis associating extremely rapid compression rates (greater than 140/min) with inadequate compression depth.[17] Overzealous and rapid chest compressions also compromise chest recoil and venous return, and can potentially have adverse effects on patient survival and outcome.

The total number of compressions delivered during resuscitation is an important determinant of ROSC and survival with good neurologic function from cardiac arrest.[18,19] The number of compressions delivered is affected by the compression rate (the frequency of chest compressions per minute) and by the compression fraction (the portion of total CPR time during which compressions are performed). Obviously, increases in compression rate and fraction increase the total number of compressions delivered. Compression fraction is improved by reducing the number and duration of any interruptions in compressions (such as securing the airway, delivering rescue breaths, or allowing AED analysis).

Compression-only CPR is easy for an untrained rescuer to perform and can be more effectively guided by dispatchers over the telephone. Moreover, survival rates from adult cardiac arrests of cardiac etiology are similar with either compression only CPR or CPR with both compressions and rescue breaths when provided before EMS arrival.[20,21] However, for the trained lay rescuer who is able, the recommendation remains for the rescuer to perform both compressions and breaths, especially for victims with asphyxiation causes of cardiac arrest or prolonged CPR. The same emphasis on rescue breathing should also apply to the pediatric population. All lay rescuers should, at a minimum, provide chest compressions for victims of cardiac arrest. The rescuer should continue CPR until an AED arrives and is ready for use, EMS providers take over care of the victim, or the victim starts to move.

The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC emphasize the initiation of chest compressions before ventilation (i.e., a change in the sequence from A-B-C to C-A-B). The prioritization of circulation (C) over ventilation reflected the overriding importance of blood flow generation for successful resuscitation and practical delays inherent to initiation of rescue breaths (B). Physiologically, in most cases of SCA, the need for assisted ventilation is a lower priority because of the availability of adequate arterial oxygen content at the time of a SCA. The presence of this oxygen and its renewal through gasping and chest compressions (provided there is a patent airway) also supported the use of compression-only CPR and the use of passive oxygen delivery.

Shock First or Chest Compressions?

Previous guidelines recommended a period of chest compressions before attempting defibrillation in unwitnessed cardiac arrests or when CPR had been delayed longer than 4 minutes. However, two recent randomized control trials failed to demonstrate a benefit (ROSC or hospital discharge) when CPR was performed before defibrillation.[22,23] Thus the 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC recommend that for adult witnessed cardiac arrests when an AED is immediately available, the defibrillator should be used as soon as possible. For adults with unmonitored cardiac arrest or for whom an AED is not immediately available, it is reasonable that chest compressions be initiated while the defibrillator equipment is being retrieved and applied, and that defibrillation, if indicated, be attempted as soon as the device is ready for use.

Automated External Defibrillators and Manual Defibrillation

Ventricular fibrillation (VF) and pulseless VT are the most common cardiac arrhythmias encountered during witnessed cardiac arrest in adults. CPR prolongs tissue viability and the duration of VF by providing oxygen and energy substrate, but cannot convert the arrhythmia to an organized rhythm in most circumstances. Defibrillation delivers an electrical current passing through the myocardium to interrupt disorganized cardiac activity and restore an organized cardiac rhythm.[24]

The first AED was introduced in 1979.[25] When it is applied to an individual with possible SCA, the AED analyzes the cardiac rhythm, and then automatically attempts defibrillation if it is VF or rapid VT. A trained rescuer needs to simply apply the defibrillator pads to the patient's chest, activate the AED, and deliver the shock through the push of a button when prompted to do so by the AED. Thus the purpose is to have early defibrillation more readily available through trained bystanders, such as security guards, police, and the general public.

When a standard manual defibrillator is used in resuscitation, the rescuer needs to interpret the rhythm and shock when appropriate. If a monophasic defibrillator is available, then a single 360 joule (J) shock should be delivered. With biphasic defibrillators, a much lower energy level (150-200 J) is usually sufficient to terminate the arrhythmia due to its ability to compensate and adjust for the patient's impedance. If the rescuer is unfamiliar with the waveform used or the manufacturer recommendations, then the maximal available energy should be used as the default energy. There is no evidence indicating superiority of one biphasic waveform design or energy level for the termination of VF with the first shock. For subsequent shocks, it is reasonable to select fixed versus escalating energy based on the specific manufacturer's instructions.

The same protocol used with the AED should be applied when using the manual defibrillator: (1) emphasis is placed on delivering uninterrupted chest compressions while defibrillator pads are being applied and for periods when rhythm analysis is not occurring; (2) chest compressions are immediately resumed after shock delivery; (3) cardiac rhythm is reanalyzed as indicated after 2 minutes of chest compressions and rescue breathing; and (4) defibrillation is attempted only for VF and rapid VT.[26]

Single versus Stacked Defibrillation

The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC recommended a 2-minute period of chest compressions after each shock instead of immediate successive shocks for persistent VF.[27] The rationale for this is that when VF is terminated, a brief period of asystole or pulseless electrical activity (PEA) typically ensues and a perfusing rhythm is unlikely to be present immediately, necessitating chest compressions to provide organ perfusion and circulation of ACLS drugs. No difference in the 1-year survival or frequency of VF recurrence was shown when a single shock protocol with 2 minutes of CPR between successive shocks was compared against a previous resuscitation protocol employing three initial stacked shocks with 1 minute of CPR between subsequent shocks.[28,29] A recent study demonstrated that in monitored in-hospital VF/VT arrests, expeditious defibrillation with use of stacked shocks is associated with a higher rate of ROSC and survival to hospital discharge.[30] Without further data, current AHA guidelines recommend that a single-shock strategy (as opposed to stacked shocks) is reasonable for defibrillation. Stacked defibrillation is considered only during cardiac surgery or in the cardiac catheterization laboratory where invasive monitoring and defibrillation pads are in place already.

Determination of Efficiency of Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation

Immediately after cardiac arrest, when minute ventilation is constant and carbon dioxide (CO_2) production is unchanged, the changes in the partial pressure of end-tidal CO_2 ($PETCO_2$) can serve as a reliable surrogate for pulmonary blood flow and cardiac output. This has been proven extensively by animal and human studies during cardiac arrest and CPR and after ROSC.[31-33] Monitoring of both $PETCO_2$ by quantitative waveform capnography with controlled ventilation and systemic arterial pressure by invasive monitoring should provide optimal assessment of the efficiency of CPR. These parameters can be monitored continuously, without interrupting chest compressions. An abrupt increase in any of these parameters is a sensitive indicator of ROSC. The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC endorse this monitoring as a class I recommendation for adults with SCA with an endotracheal tube (ETT) or supraglottic airway (SGA) device in place. In addition, coronary perfusion pressure, arterial relaxation pressure, and central venous oxygen saturation can assist in determination of the efficiency of CPR, although these monitoring techniques require more complex catheters or devices.[34,35] Currently there are no clinical trials that have studied whether titrating resuscitative efforts to a single or combined set of physiologic parameters during CPR results in improved survival or neurologic outcome. However, the 2010 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC recommended that $PETCO_2$ should be maintained above 10 mm Hg,[36] and mathematical models suggest a cumulative maximum $PETCO_2$ above 20 mm Hg at all time points measured between 5 and 10 minutes postintubation best predicted ROSC.[37]

Update to Airway Management and Ventilation in Cardiac Arrest

When cardiac arrest occurs, adequate oxygen delivery is required to restore the energy state of the heart as well as other vital organs, and consequently ventilation becomes an essential part of the resuscitation. However, it also needs to be emphasized that during the first few minutes after cardiac arrest, oxygen delivery to tissues with CPR is limited more by blood flow and low cardiac output than arterial oxygen content.[38] Low cardiac output associated with CPR results in low oxygen uptake from the lungs that, in turn, reduces the need to ventilate the patient during this low-flow state.[38] Thus chest compressions are the priority intervention, unless the cardiac arrest is due to asphyxiation, drowning, or suffocation, which are the only circumstances in which ventilation must be provided before chest compressions.[39]

Healthcare providers must determine the best way to support ventilation and oxygenation. Options include standard bag-mask ventilation versus placement of an advanced airway (i.e., ETT or SGA device). Bag-mask ventilation with a head tilt–chin lift or head tilt–jaw thrust maneuver is recommended for initial airway control in most circumstances. There is inadequate evidence to show a difference in survival or favorable neurologic outcome with the use of bag-mask ventilation compared with endotracheal intubation or other advanced airway devices.[40,41] There is also inadequate evidence favoring the use of endotracheal intubation compared with other advanced airway devices.[42] Thus 2015 AHA/Guidelines for CPR and ECC recommend that either a bag-mask device or an advanced airway may be used for oxygenation and ventilation during CPR in both the in-hospital and out-of-hospital settings, assuming that providers have ongoing experience to insert the airway and verify proper position with minimal interruption in chest compressions. The choice of bag-mask device versus advanced airway insertion is determined by the skill and experience of the provider.

Regarding the inspired oxygen concentration, the 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC support providing the maximal inspired oxygen concentration during CPR. Since oxygen delivery is dependent on both blood flow and arterial oxygen content and blood flow is typically limited during CPR, it is theoretically important to maximize the oxygen content of arterial blood by maximizing inspired oxygen concentration. Evidence for the detrimental effects of hyperoxia that may exist in the immediate post–cardiac arrest period should not be extrapolated to the low-flow state of CPR, where oxygen delivery is unlikely to exceed demand or cause an increase in tissue PO_2. Therefore, until further data are available, physiology and expert consensus support providing the maximal inspired oxygen concentration during CPR.

After ETT placement, it is very important to confirm its correct placement, although this could be very challenging due to the patient's body habitus, low-flow status, and distraction from other resuscitative tasks. In addition to observation of chest rise and auscultation of the lungs and stomach, continuous waveform capnography is recommended as the most reliable method of confirming and monitoring correct placement of an ETT.[43] However, false-positive results (CO_2 detection with esophageal intubation) can still occur, especially within the first few breaths due to air/CO_2 insufflation of the stomach during bag-mask ventilation. False-negative results (i.e., absent exhaled CO_2 in the presence of tracheal intubation) can occur in the setting of pulmonary embolism (PE), low cardiac output, or severe obstructive pulmonary disease. If continuous waveform capnography is not available, a nonwaveform CO_2 detector, fiberoptic scope, esophageal detector, or ultrasound device used by an experienced operator are reasonable alternatives.

If bag-mask ventilation is chosen, 2 breaths are delivered after 30 chest compressions during one- and two-person CPR, providing that the rescuer(s) is(are) trained in CPR. Each breath is delivered over approximately 1 second. After placement of an advanced airway, it is recommended to provide 1 breath every 6 seconds (10 breaths/min) while continuous chest compressions are being performed. Extreme caution should be taken to avoid excessive airway pressure that will compromise venous return in cardiac arrest patients, as hyperventilation is common during enthusiastic resuscitation.

ADVANCED CARDIAC LIFE SUPPORT: MANAGEMENT OF CARDIAC ARREST

BLS, ACLS, and post–cardiac arrest care are integral steps in the AHA's "chain of survival" for patients suffering from cardiac arrest. CPR almost invariably necessitates rapid progression to ACLS interventions and follow-up care. There is overlap between these steps, as each stage of care progresses to the next, but generally ACLS comprises the level of care between BLS and post–cardiac arrest care. The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC adult cardiac arrest algorithm is illustrated in Fig. 86.2. This section reviews the different interventions for managing cardiac arrest patients based on the presenting ECG rhythm, medications used during cardiac arrest, special situations of cardiac arrest, and new technologies developed to facilitate resuscitation and improve the patient's survival.

Asystole

Asystole is the complete and sustained absence of electrical activity and portends extremely poor prognosis. Management of a patient in cardiac arrest with asystole follows the same pathway as management of PEA (as discussed later). The top priorities are also similar: following the steps in the ACLS Pulseless Arrest Algorithm and identifying and correcting any treatable, underlying causes for the asystole. In most patients, asystole is irreversible, but a brief trial of resuscitation, beginning with effective chest compressions, oxygen therapy, and intravenous (IV) epinephrine, is indicated particularly in the setting of witnessed cardiac arrest. Atropine is no longer recommended for treating asystole. Asystole should be differentiated from agonal bradycardia and fine ventricular fibrillation.

Pulseless Electrical Activity

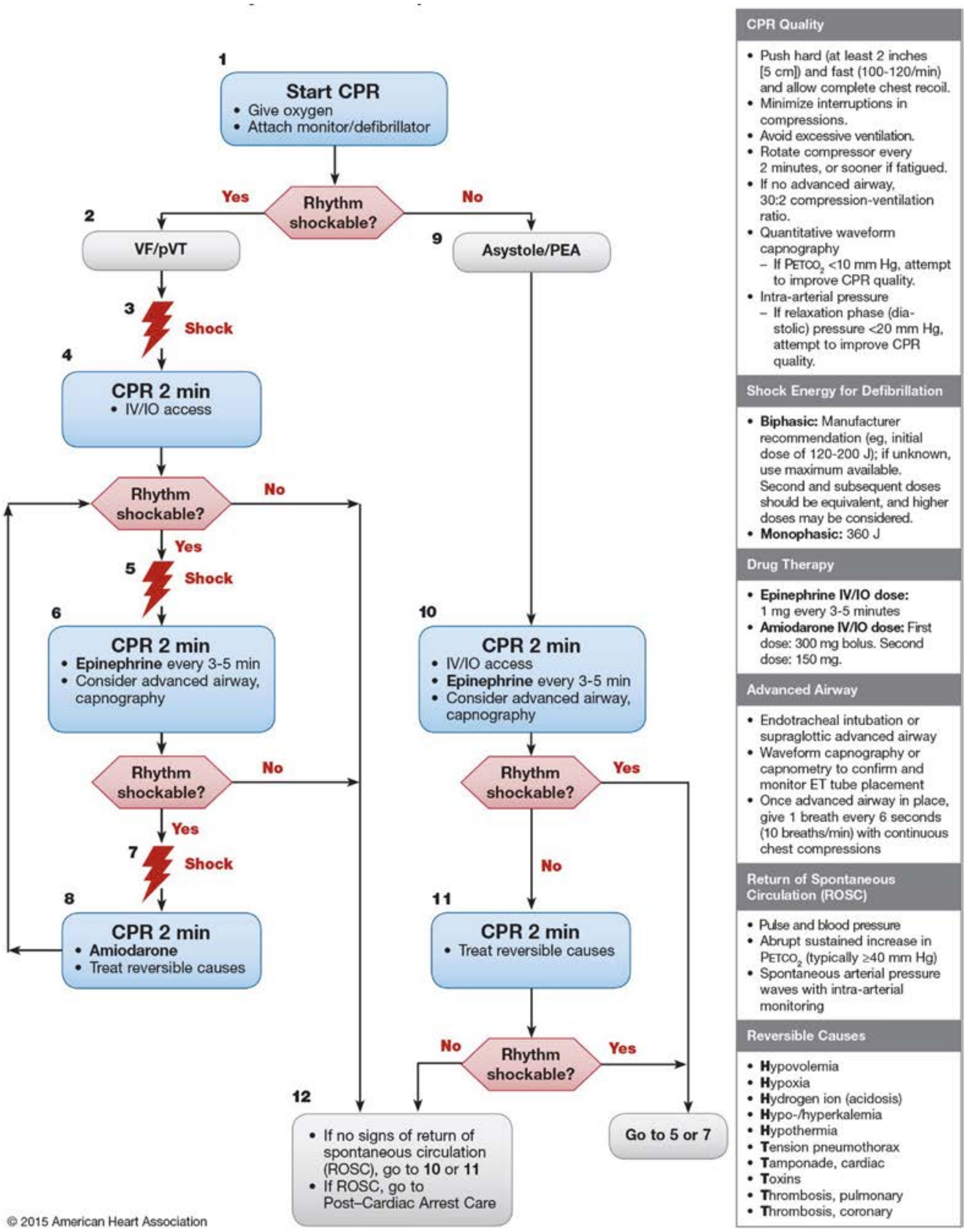
PEA refers to the presence of organized electrical activity without a palpable pulse. Priority must be given to identifying possible reversible causes of PEA, which is frequently referred to as the five Hs (Hypoxia, Hypovolemia, Hypothermia, Hyper- or Hypokalemia, Hydrogen ions or acidosis) and Ts (Tamponade, Tension pneumothorax, Toxins, Thrombosis Pulmonary, and Thrombosis Coronary). Those causes are first suspected for each patient's special circumstance. Severe hypoxia in respiratory emergencies can result in PEA. In the traumatized patient, hypovolemia, cardiac tamponade, and tension pneumothorax are possible causes of cardiac arrest and must be considered and acutely treated. Unanticipated cardiac arrest occurring in the intraoperative and postoperative periods should include acute massive pulmonary thromboembolism or air emboli as possible causes. Electrolyte and metabolic derangements such as severe hyperkalemia, metabolic acidosis, or drug (e.g., digitalis, β-blockers, calcium channel blockers, tricyclic antidepressants) overdose frequently presents as idioventricular rhythms. In every circumstance, prompt initiation of chest compressions and the administration of 1 mg epinephrine are recommended as temporizing measures until more definitive therapy can be provided once the cause for the PEA is identified. Each of these scenarios has an associated intervention unique to that situation. Asystole or VF can develop if PEA is not corrected.

Pulseless Ventricular Tachycardia or Ventricular Fibrillation

Pulseless VT and VF are shockable rhythms and hence the most treatable causes of cardiac arrest, yielding the greatest likelihood of ROSC and long-term survival in both in-hospital and out-of-hospital settings. Early defibrillation, not pharmacologic intervention, is responsible for the improved survival after VF cardiac arrest. Therefore, AEDs are placed in public locations to ensure early defibrillation can be performed by rescuers.

When a pulseless VT or VF arrest occurs, defibrillation should be performed at the earliest opportunity. Chest compressions should be immediately resumed after the delivery of shock and continued for 2 minutes before reassessing the underlying cardiac rhythm, unless obvious evidence for ROSC occurs. No evidence supports one biphasic waveform over another. Defibrillation energies should be increased until VF is terminated. In circumstances in which pulseless VT or VF is terminated with defibrillation but pulseless VT or VF recurs, defibrillation should use the previously successful energy level.

If ROSC does not occur after an initial defibrillatory attempt, then five cycles of CPR consisting of 30


1
Start CPR
• Give oxygen
• Attach monitor/defibrillator
Rhythm shockable?
Yes
No
2
VF/pVT
9
Asystole/PEA
3
Shock
4
CPR 2 min
• IV/IO access
Rhythm shockable?
No
Yes
5
Shock
6
CPR 2 min
• Epinephrine every 3-5 min
• Consider advanced airway, capnography
10
CPR 2 min
• IV/IO access
• Epinephrine every 3-5 min
• Consider advanced airway, capnography
Rhythm shockable?
No
Yes
7
Shock
Rhythm shockable?
Yes
No
8
CPR 2 min
• Amiodarone
• Treat reversible causes
11
CPR 2 min
• Treat reversible causes
No
Rhythm shockable?
Yes
12
• If no signs of return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC), go to 10 or 11
• If ROSC, go to Post–Cardiac Arrest Care
Go to 5 or 7
© 2015 American Heart Association

CPR Quality

- Push hard (at least 2 inches [5 cm]) and fast (100-120/min) and allow complete chest recoil.
- Minimize interruptions in compressions.
- Avoid excessive ventilation.
- Rotate compressor every 2 minutes, or sooner if fatigued.
- If no advanced airway, 30:2 compression-ventilation ratio.
- Quantitative waveform capnography
  - If P_{ETCO_2} <10 mm Hg, attempt to improve CPR quality.
- Intra-arterial pressure
  - If relaxation phase (diastolic) pressure <20 mm Hg, attempt to improve CPR quality.

Shock Energy for Defibrillation

- **Biphasic:** Manufacturer recommendation (eg, initial dose of 120-200 J); if unknown, use maximum available. Second and subsequent doses should be equivalent, and higher doses may be considered.
- **Monophasic:** 360 J

Drug Therapy

- **Epinephrine IV/IO dose:** 1 mg every 3-5 minutes
- **Amiodarone IV/IO dose:** First dose: 300 mg bolus. Second dose: 150 mg.

Advanced Airway

- Endotracheal intubation or supraglottic advanced airway
- Waveform capnography or capnometry to confirm and monitor ET tube placement
- Once advanced airway in place, give 1 breath every 6 seconds (10 breaths/min) with continuous chest compressions

Return of Spontaneous Circulation (ROSC)

- Pulse and blood pressure
- Abrupt sustained increase in P_{ETCO_2} (typically ≥40 mm Hg)
- Spontaneous arterial pressure waves with intra-arterial monitoring

Reversible Causes

- **H**ypovolemia
- **H**ypoxia
- **H**ydrogen ion (acidosis)
- **H**ypo-/hyperkalemia
- **H**ypothermia
- **T**ension pneumothorax
- **T**amponade, cardiac
- **T**oxins
- **T**hrombosis, pulmonary
- **T**hrombosis, coronary

Fig. 86.2 2015 American Heart Association adult advanced cardiovascular life support algorithm. *CPR*, Cardiopulmonary resuscitation; *IO*, intraosseous; *IV*, intravenous; *PEA*, pulseless electric activity; *VF*, ventricular fibrillation; *VT*, ventricular tachycardia. (From Link MS, Berkow LC, Kudenchuk PJ, et al. Part 7: Adult Advanced Cardiovascular Life Support: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2015;132[18 suppl 2]:S444–S464.)

compressions to 2 ventilations (nonintubated patient) should be performed before recheck of rhythm. Placement of a SGA device or endotracheal intubation can be considered in this interval. Peripheral IV access should be attempted if not already established without interruption of the chest compressions.

Resuscitation Medications During Cardiac Arrest

Epinephrine. Epinephrine produces beneficial effects in patients during cardiac arrest, primarily due to its α-adrenergic effects increasing coronary perfusion pressure and cerebral perfusion pressure during CPR. The β-adrenergic effects of epinephrine are controversial because they may increase myocardial work and reduce subendocardial perfusion. Thus standard-dose epinephrine (1 mg every 3-5 minutes) is recommended for patients in cardiac arrest. High-dose epinephrine is not recommended for routine use in cardiac arrest. The exceptions to this recommendation are special circumstances requiring higher or repeated doses of epinephrine, such as in patients with β-blocker overdose, calcium channel blocker overdose, or when epinephrine is titrated to real-time physiologically monitored parameters.

Regarding the timing of epinephrine administration, multiple trials showed the early administration of epinephrine in nonshockable rhythms (asystole or PEA) was associated with increased ROSC, survival to hospital discharge, and neurologically intact survival.[44,45] For shockable rhythms (VF or pulseless VT), there is insufficient evidence to make a recommendation as to the optimal timing of epinephrine, particularly in relation to defibrillation. Therefore early administration of epinephrine is recommended after the onset of cardiac arrest caused by an initial nonshockable rhythm.

Vasopressin. Vasopressin is a nonadrenergic peripheral vasoconstrictor that also causes coronary and renal vasoconstriction. Studies compared multiple doses of standard-dose epinephrine with multiple doses of vasopressin (40 units IV) or vasopressin in combination with epinephrine after OHCA and showed no benefit with the use of vasopressin solely or in combination with epinephrine for ROSC or survival to discharge with or without good neurologic outcome.[46] Vasopressin offers no advantage as a substitute for epinephrine in cardiac arrest and thus has been removed from the adult cardiac arrest algorithm.

Antiarrthymia Medications. The role of antiarrhythmic medications during shock-refractory VF/pulseless VT is to facilitate the restoration and maintenance of a spontaneous perfusing rhythm in concert with the shock termination of VF, instead of directly converting VF/pulseless VT to an organized perfusing rhythm. Some antiarrhythmic drugs have been associated with increased rates of ROSC and hospital admission, but none have yet been proven to increase long-term survival or survival with good neurologic outcome. Thus the 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC on ACLS recommend that amiodarone may be considered for VF/pulseless VT that is unresponsive to CPR, defibrillation, and a vasopressor therapy; and lidocaine may be considered as an alternative to amiodarone. Routine use of magnesium for VF/pulseless VT is not recommended in adult patients, nor is the routine use of sodium bicarbonate for any patient in cardiac arrest.

Steroids. The use of steroids in cardiac arrest has been assessed in both IHCA and OHCA settings. In IHCA, patients administered steroids combined with a vasopressor bundle or cocktail of epinephrine and vasopressin had improved ROSC compared with patients given a saline placebo and epinephrine.[47] However, further studies are needed before recommending the routine use of this therapeutic strategy. For patients with OHCA, studies showed inconsistent benefit of use of steroids alone during CPR and thus routine use is not recommended.

Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation in Patients With Mechanical Circulatory Support

Cardiac arrest in patients on mechanical circulatory support (MCS) has become a much more common clinical scenario due to the increased use of this therapy in patients with end-stage heart failure. Because of the unique characteristics of mechanical support, these patients have physical findings that cannot be interpreted the same as for patients without MCS. This section briefly describes the common types of MCS devices that healthcare providers may encounter and presents expert, consensus-based recommendations from the recent AHA guidelines for the evaluation and resuscitation of adult patients with MCS, and suspected cardiovascular collapse or cardiac arrest.[48]

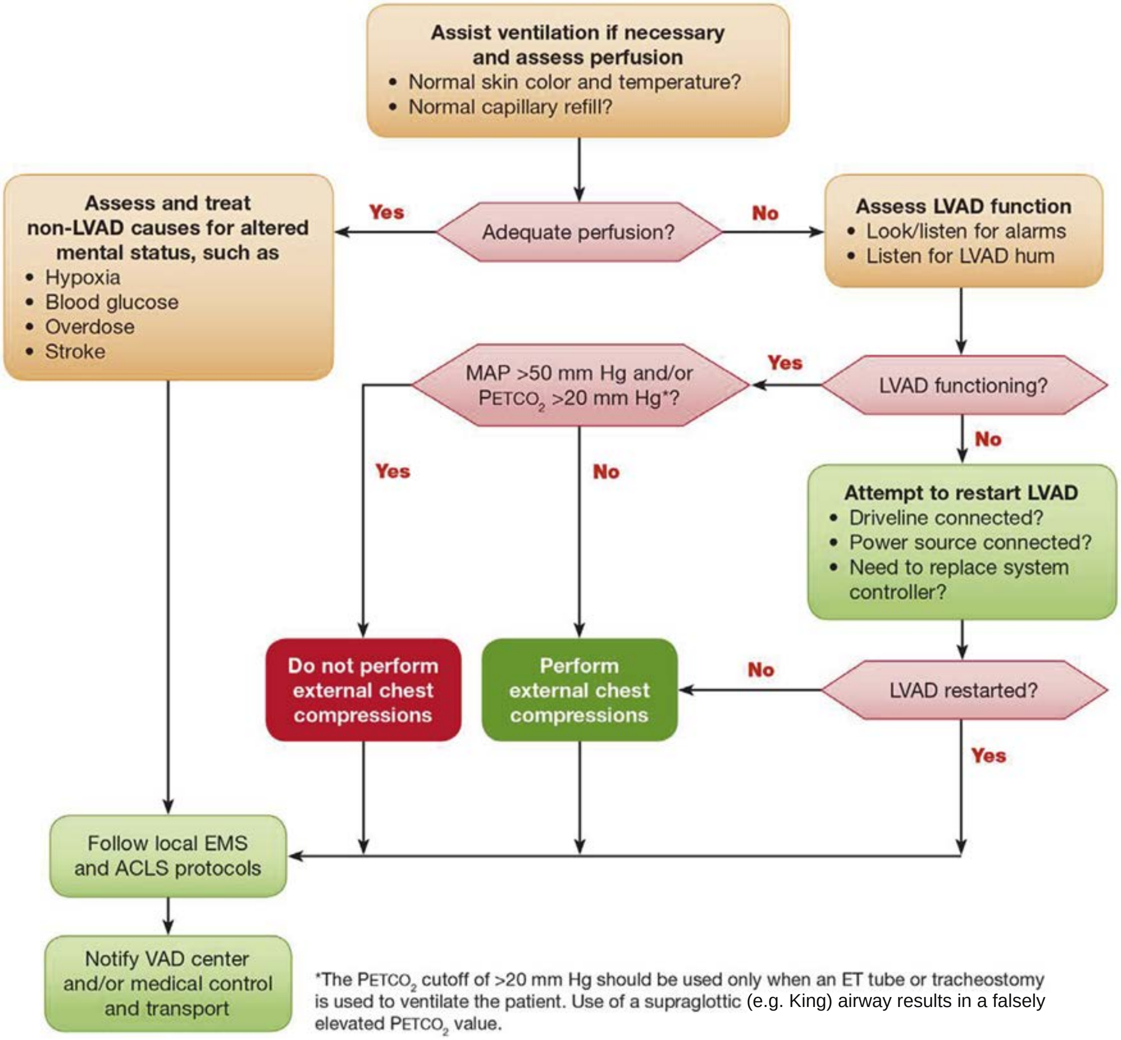
MCS with ventricular assist devices (VADs) can support function of the left ventricle (LV), the right ventricle (RV), or both ventricles with a biventricular assist device. A total artificial heart (TAH) replaces the heart itself. Most patients who are discharged home with MCS currently have a durable left ventricular VAD (LVAD). Continuous-flow LVADs are the more current generation of VADs. It results in an unconventional, unique physiologic state of hemodynamically stable PEA, which we refer to in this population as pseudo-PEA. Vital signs such as noninvasive blood pressure or oxygen saturation may be difficult to obtain. These factors can easily confuse healthcare providers rendering care to these patients. Lack of a pulse alone in a patient with a continuous-flow LVAD is common and cannot be used as a means to determine whether a patient is in cardiac arrest or a low-flow, low-perfusion state.

Assessment of adequate tissue perfusion is the most important factor in determining the need for circulatory assistance such as chest compressions. Clinical findings such as skin color and capillary refill are reasonable predictors of the presence of adequate flow and perfusion. If an LVAD is definitively confirmed by a trained person and there are no signs of life, bystander CPR, including chest compressions, is recommended. Many tachyarrhythmias are tolerated well in patients with an LVAD, although they can affect RV filling. Similar to the decision made for patients without VADs, the decision to cardiovert or to defibrillate a patient with an LVAD with VT or VF is based on the adequacy of mental status and perfusion. Fig. 86.3 outlines consensus-derived recommendations for first-responder assessment of a patient with an LVAD.

For patients with a TAH, the native ventricles are removed completely; therefore, there is no electric depolarization and therefore no detectable ECG tracing. Chest compressions are ineffective because the mechanical ventricles are rigid and cannot be compressed. Antiarrhythmic drugs and electric therapy (e.g., pacing, defibrillation/cardioversion) are also futile for similar reasons. Standard vasopressor drugs used in ACLS such as epinephrine or vasopressin are contraindicated because they increase afterload, result in complete hemodynamic collapse with pulmonary edema, and worsen TAH function. The only therapeutic option is to try to restore mechanical function of the device. One liter of normal saline solution should be administered intravenously to treat for possible hypovolemia. Assisted ventilation should be performed as needed, and the patient should be transported to the hospital as soon as possible. Fig. 86.4 provides an algorithm for evaluation and treatment of a patient with a TAH who is altered mentally, unresponsive, or in respiratory distress.

Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation Using a Mechanical Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation Device

Delivering high-quality chest compressions to achieve ROSC and maintain perfusion to vital organs is vitally important to improving survival and neurologic outcome after cardiac arrest. However, manual conventional chest compressions are frequently affected by fatigue, varying skill levels and training, pauses during defibrillation and the switch of rescuers, and adherence to protocols.[49] It is even more difficult to ensure high-quality chest compressions


Assist ventilation if necessary and assess perfusion
• Normal skin color and temperature?
• Normal capillary refill?
Adequate perfusion?
Yes
No
Assess and treat non-LVAD causes for altered mental status, such as
• Hypoxia
• Blood glucose
• Overdose
• Stroke
Assess LVAD function
• Look/listen for alarms
• Listen for LVAD hum
MAP >50 mm Hg and/or PETCO2 >20 mm Hg*?
Yes
LVAD functioning?
No
Yes
No
Attempt to restart LVAD
• Driveline connected?
• Power source connected?
• Need to replace system controller?
Do not perform external chest compressions
Perform external chest compressions
No
LVAD restarted?
Yes
Follow local EMS and ACLS protocols
Notify VAD center and/or medical control and transport

*The PETCO$_2$ cutoff of >20 mm Hg should be used only when an ET tube or tracheostomy is used to ventilate the patient. Use of a supraglottic (e.g. King) airway results in a falsely elevated PETCO$_2$ value.

Fig. 86.3 Algorithm showing response to a patient with a left ventricular assist device *(LVAD)* with unresponsiveness or other altered mental status. *ACLS*, Advanced cardiovascular life support; *EMS*, emergency medical services; *ET*, endotracheal tube; *MAP*, mean arterial pressure; *PETCO$_2$*, partial pressure of end-tidal carbon dioxide; *VAD*, ventricular assist device. (From Peberdy MA, Gluck JA, Ornato JP, et al. Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation in Adults and Children With Mechanical Circulatory Support: A Scientific Statement From the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2017;135[24]:e1115–e1134.)

during transport.[50] Studies showed that manual compressions provide only approximately 30% of normal cardiac output, at best.[51] Mechanical chest compression devices have therefore been developed to improve CPR. These devices are designed to deliver compressions of consistent rate and depth, eliminate fatigue as a factor, and provide an opportunity to reduce the frequency and length of pauses in compression.

Initial experimental studies with the mechanical chest compression device showed improved organ perfusion pressures, enhanced cerebral blood flow, and higher end-tidal CO$_2$ compared with manual CPR.[52,53] A recent large multicenter randomized controlled trial showed, nevertheless, that an algorithm combining mechanical chest compressions and defibrillation during ongoing compressions provided no survival advantage over manual CPR administered according to guidelines.[54] No difference in survival or neurologic outcome was seen for up to 6 months after the cardiac arrest, even though the mechanical chest compression devices reduced interruptions in chest compressions, and enabled defibrillation during ongoing compressions.

The possible explanation for this discrepancy between early studies and the large clinical trial is that application of the mechanical device resulted in long pauses of chest compression (median device application time 36.0 seconds), and pause in chest compression is clearly associated with worse clinical outcome. Therefore the 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC recommended that manual chest compressions remain the standard of care for the treatment of cardiac arrest, but mechanical CPR devices may be a reasonable alternative for use by properly trained personnel in specific settings where the delivery of high-quality manual compressions may be challenging or dangerous for the provider (e.g., limited rescuers available, prolonged CPR, during hypothermic cardiac arrest, during preparation for extracorporeal CPR [ECPR]). Future emphasis should be placed on streamlining and appropriately timing the deployment of these compression devices.

Echocardiography in Cardiac Arrest

For nonshockable rhythms, the essential step will be early detection and correction of potentially reversible underlying

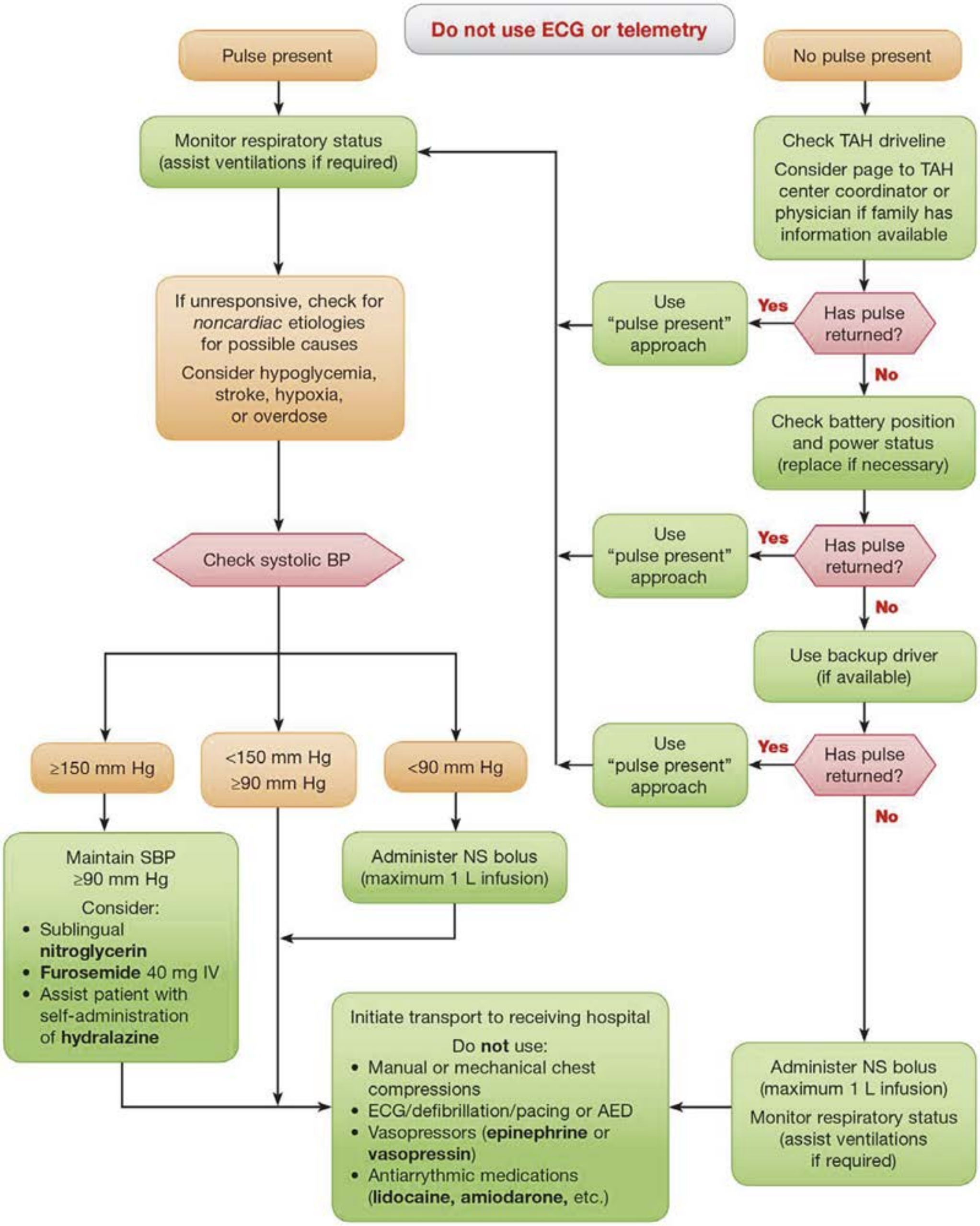

Do not use ECG or telemetry
Pulse present
No pulse present
Monitor respiratory status (assist ventilations if required)
Check TAH driveline
Consider page to TAH center coordinator or physician if family has information available
If unresponsive, check for noncardiac etiologies for possible causes
Consider hypoglycemia, stroke, hypoxia, or overdose
Use "pulse present" approach
Yes
Has pulse returned?
No
Check battery position and power status (replace if necessary)
Check systolic BP
Use "pulse present" approach
Yes
Has pulse returned?
No
Use backup driver (if available)
≥150 mm Hg
<150 mm Hg ≥90 mm Hg
<90 mm Hg
Use "pulse present" approach
Yes
Has pulse returned?
No
Maintain SBP ≥90 mm Hg
Consider:
• Sublingual nitroglycerin
• Furosemide 40 mg IV
• Assist patient with self-administration of hydralazine
Administer NS bolus (maximum 1 L infusion)
Initiate transport to receiving hospital
Do not use:
• Manual or mechanical chest compressions
• ECG/defibrillation/pacing or AED
• Vasopressors (epinephrine or vasopressin)
• Antiarrythmic medications (lidocaine, amiodarone, etc.)
Administer NS bolus (maximum 1 L infusion)
Monitor respiratory status (assist ventilations if required)

Fig. 86.4 Algorithm showing response to a patient with a total artificial heart *(TAH)* with altered mental status, unresponsiveness, or respiratory distress. *AED*, Automated external defibrillator; *BP*, blood pressure; *IV*, intravenous; *NS*, normal saline; *SBP*, systolic blood pressure. (From Peberdy MA, Gluck JA, Ornato JP, et al. Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation in Adults and Children With Mechanical Circulatory Support: A Scientific Statement From the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2017;135[24]:e1115–e1134.)

causes, such as the Hs and Ts of PEA arrest, as described earlier. Echocardiography has revolutionized our ability to assess the etiology and hence the management of these patients. However, performing and interpreting echocardiography frequently proves much more challenging in the real scene of cardiac arrest.

Point-of-care (POC) focused echocardiography can help assess the volume status, ventricular function, valvular disease, cardiac tamponade, PE, and tension pneumothorax. The TEE, compared with transthoracic echocardiography, provides constant visualization of the heart during chest compressions and gives live feedback on cardiac contractility and the quality of compressions. It is less affected by the body habitus, presence of subcutaneous air, and by chest movements. Several studies have evaluated the feasibility and clinical influence of TEE in cardiac arrest patients. TEE showed moderate sensitivity and specificity for diagnosing cause of arrest, and may further impact treatment.[55,56] However, it is unclear if these benefits will be translated to improved patient outcome. Thus the 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC suggested that if a qualified sonographer is present and use of ultrasound does not interfere with the standard cardiac arrest treatment protocol, then ultrasound may be considered as an adjunct to standard patient evaluation and resuscitation measures.

More recently, POC focused echocardiography has also been used to predict short-term outcome in patients with cardiac arrest. Recent meta-analysis showed spontaneous cardiac movement had a sensitivity of 95% and specificity of 80% to predict ROSC, and sensitivity 90% and specificity 78% to predict survival to hospital admission.[57] Absence of spontaneous cardiac movement on echocardiography has a low likelihood of favorable outcome and can aid in the decision of termination of resuscitation. The caveat is that the interpretation of spontaneous cardiac movement is still very operator-dependent. In addition, in cases of significant bradycardia, the image could be potentially interpreted as cardiac standstill between the cardiac contractions.

Cardiac or Respiratory Arrest Associated With Opioid Overdose

In the United States in 2013, 16,235 people died of prescription opioid toxicity, and an additional 8257 died of heroin overdose.[58] In 2012, opioid overdose became the leading cause of unintentional injurious death in people aged 25 to 60 years in the United States, accounting for more deaths than motor vehicle collisions.[59] A majority of these deaths are associated with prescription opioids. In consideration of this epidemiology, the 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC on BLS recommended that for patients with known or suspected opioid addiction who are unresponsive with no normal breathing but a pulse, it is reasonable for appropriately trained lay rescuers and BLS providers, in addition to providing standard BLS care, to administer intramuscular (IM) or intranasal naloxone.

The ideal dose of naloxone is unknown. In the 2010 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC, an empiric starting dose of 0.04 to 0.4 mg IV or IM was recommended to avoid provoking severe opioid withdrawal in patients with opioid dependency and to allow for consideration of a range of doses, depending on the clinical scenario. Repeat doses or dose escalation to 2 mg IV or IM was recommended if the initial response was inadequate. Regardless of the care setting and route of administration, the initial goal of therapy is to restore and maintain patent airway and ventilation, preventing respiratory and cardiac arrest, without provoking severe opioid withdrawal.

Recognition and Emergency Response for Suspected Stroke

Each year, about 6.5 million people die from stroke worldwide, and 1 million from cerebrovascular diseases in the 15 countries of the European Union.[60,61] According to the 2013 Global Burden of Disease study, stroke is the second largest contributor to disability-adjusted life years (113 million disability-adjusted life years) in the world after ischemic heart disease, is a major cause of disability, and is the second most common cause of dementia, after Alzheimer disease. Identifying clinical signs of possible stroke (sudden weakness or numbness of the face, arm, or leg, especially on one side of the body; sudden confusion, trouble speaking, or understanding; sudden trouble seeing in one or both eyes; sudden trouble walking, dizziness, loss of balance, or coordination; or sudden severe headache with no known cause) is important because fibrinolytic treatment must be provided within a few hours of onset of symptoms.[62,63] Community and professional education is essential to increase the early recognition and treatment to improve patient outcome.

The AHA and American Society of Anesthesiologists developed a community-oriented "stroke chain of survival" that links actions to be taken by patients, family members, and healthcare providers to maximize stroke recovery. Important components of this chain are rapid recognition and reaction to stroke warning signs, rapid EMS dispatch, transport and hospital pre-notification, and rapid diagnosis and treatment in the hospital. The algorithm goals for management of patients with suspected stroke is illustrated in Fig. 86.5.

Recognition and Management of Specific Arrythmias

This section highlights recommendations for management of patients with acute symptomatic arrhythmias. It needs to be emphasized that electrocardiographic and rhythm information should be interpreted within the context of total patient assessment. For example, when a patient with respiratory failure and severe hypoxemia becomes hypotensive and develops a bradycardia, the bradycardia is not the primary cause of instability. Treating the bradycardia without treating the hypoxemia is unlikely to improve the patient's condition. Errors in diagnosis and treatment are likely to occur if ACLS providers base their treatment decisions solely on rhythm interpretation and neglect the clinical evaluation of each specific patient.

In general, "unstable arrhythmias" refer to a condition in which vital organ function is acutely impaired due to inefficient cardiac contractions and insufficient cardiac output, or cardiac arrest is ongoing or imminent. When an arrhythmia causes a patient to be unstable, immediate intervention is indicated. "Symptomatic arrhythmias" imply that an arrhythmia is causing symptoms, such as palpitations, lightheadedness, or dyspnea, but the patient is stable and not in imminent danger. In such cases, more time is available to decide on the most appropriate intervention. In both unstable and symptomatic cases, the provider must make an assessment as to whether the arrhythmia is causing the patient to be unstable or symptomatic. It is critically important to determine the cause of the patient's instability in order to properly direct the treatment.

BRADYARRHYTHMIAS

Bradycardia is defined as a heart rate of less than 60 beats/min. However, when bradycardia is the cause of symptoms, the rate is generally less than 50 beats/min. A slow heart rate may be physiologically normal for some patients, whereas a heart rate of more than 50 beats/min may be inadequate for others. Hence, 50 beats/min is a relative number, and it is important to also assess the patient's clinical presentation.

Depending on the origin of the arrhythmia, bradyarrhythmias can be classified as supraventricular (sinus, junctional, or various degrees of atrioventricular [AV] block) or ventricular (complete heart block with a very slow idioventricular escape rhythm). Sinus (or junctional) bradycardia and type I (AV nodal) second-degree block are usually manifestations of increased vagal tone. AV blocks are classified as first, second, and third degree. A first-degree AV block is defined

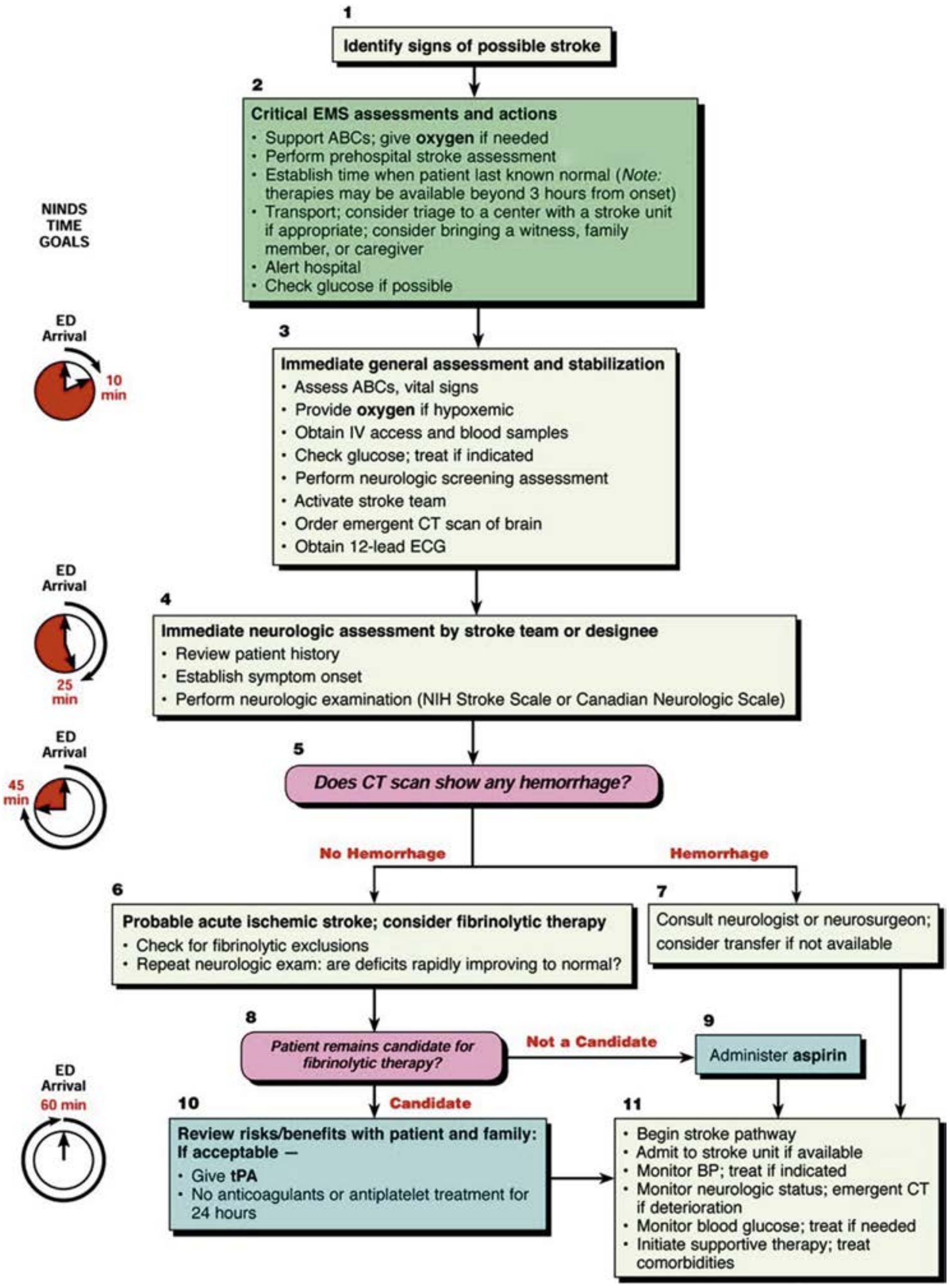

1
Identify signs of possible stroke
2
Critical EMS assessments and actions
• Support ABCs; give oxygen if needed
• Perform prehospital stroke assessment
• Establish time when patient last known normal (Note: therapies may be available beyond 3 hours from onset)
• Transport; consider triage to a center with a stroke unit if appropriate; consider bringing a witness, family member, or caregiver
• Alert hospital
• Check glucose if possible
NINDS TIME GOALS
ED Arrival
10 min
3
Immediate general assessment and stabilization
• Assess ABCs, vital signs
• Provide oxygen if hypoxemic
• Obtain IV access and blood samples
• Check glucose; treat if indicated
• Perform neurologic screening assessment
• Activate stroke team
• Order emergent CT scan of brain
• Obtain 12-lead ECG
ED Arrival
25 min
4
Immediate neurologic assessment by stroke team or designee
• Review patient history
• Establish symptom onset
• Perform neurologic examination (NIH Stroke Scale or Canadian Neurologic Scale)
ED Arrival
45 min
5
Does CT scan show any hemorrhage?
No Hemorrhage
Hemorrhage
6
Probable acute ischemic stroke; consider fibrinolytic therapy
• Check for fibrinolytic exclusions
• Repeat neurologic exam: are deficits rapidly improving to normal?
7
Consult neurologist or neurosurgeon; consider transfer if not available
8
Patient remains candidate for fibrinolytic therapy?
Not a Candidate
9
Administer aspirin
ED Arrival
60 min
Candidate
10
Review risks/benefits with patient and family: If acceptable —
• Give tPA
• No anticoagulants or antiplatelet treatment for 24 hours
11
• Begin stroke pathway
• Admit to stroke unit if available
• Monitor BP; treat if indicated
• Monitor neurologic status; emergent CT if deterioration
• Monitor blood glucose; treat if needed
• Initiate supportive therapy; treat comorbidities

Fig. 86.5 American Heart Association Algorithm for Suspected Stroke. *ABC*, Airway, breathing, circulation; *BP*, blood pressure; *CT*, computed tomography; *EMS*, emergency medical services; *IV*, intravenous. (From ECC Committee, Subcommittees and Task Forces of the American Heart Association: Part 9: Adult Stroke: 2005 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2005;112:IV-111–IV-120.)

by a prolonged PR interval (>0.20 second) and is generally benign. Second-degree AV block is divided into Mobitz types I and II. In Mobitz type I block, the block is at the AV node and is often transient and asymptomatic. In Mobitz type II block, the block is usually below the AV node within the His-Purkinje system; this block is often symptomatic, with the potential to progress to complete (third-degree) AV block. Third-degree AV block may occur at the AV node, bundle of His, or bundle branches. When third-degree AV block is present, the atria and ventricles are completely dissociated. Third-degree AV block can be permanent or transient, depending on the underlying cause.

Because hypoxemia is a common cause of bradycardia, initial evaluation of any patient with bradycardia should focus on signs of increased work of breathing (tachypnea, intercostal retractions, suprasternal retractions, paradoxical abdominal breathing) and oxygen saturation as determined by pulse oximetry. If oxygenation is inadequate or the patient shows signs of increased work of breathing, supplementary oxygen should be provided. A monitor should be attached to the patient for blood pressure, ECG, and oxygen saturation monitoring, and IV access should be established. If possible, obtain a 12-lead ECG to better define the rhythm. While initiating treatment, evaluate the patient's clinical status and identify potentially reversible causes.

The provider must identify signs and symptoms of poor perfusion and determine if those signs are likely to be caused by the bradycardia. If the signs and symptoms are not due to bradycardia, the provider should reassess the underlying cause of the patient's symptoms. Asymptomatic or minimally symptomatic patients do not necessarily require treatment unless there is suspicion that the rhythm is likely to progress to symptoms or more advanced bradyarrhythmias (e.g., Mobitz type II second-degree AV block in the setting of acute myocardial infarction). If the bradycardia is suspected to be the cause of acute altered mental status, ischemic chest discomfort, acute heart failure, hypotension, or other signs of shock, the patient should receive immediate treatment.

Atropine remains the first-line drug for acute symptomatic bradycardia. The recommended atropine dose for bradycardia is 0.5 mg IV every 3 to 5 minutes to a maximum total dose of 3 mg. Doses of atropine sulfate of less than 0.5 mg may result in paradoxical bradycardia. Atropine will also unlikely be effective in patients who had heart transplantation because the transplanted heart lacks vagal innervation. Since atropine works by reversing the muscarinic effects of the parasympathetic nervous system, it is not the preferred drug of choice for type II second-degree or third-degree AV block or in patients with third-degree AV block with a new wide-QRS complex where the location of block is likely to be more distal than the AV nodes. These bradyarrhythmias are not likely to be responsive to atropine and should be treated with transcutaneous pacing (TCP) or β-adrenergic agonists as temporizing measures while the patient is prepared for transvenous pacing.

If bradycardia is unresponsive to atropine, IV infusion of β-adrenergic agonists (dopamine, epinephrine) can be considered. Dopamine is a catecholamine with both α- and β-adrenergic actions. It can be titrated to more selectively target heart rate or vasoconstriction. At lower doses, dopamine has a more selective effect on inotropy and heart rate; at higher doses (>10 μg/kg/min), it also has vasoconstrictive effects. Epinephrine, as described previously, is a catecholamine with α- and β-adrenergic actions. Isoproterenol is a β-adrenergic agent with β-1 and β-2 effects, resulting in an increase in heart rate and vasodilation. The recommended adult dose is 2 to 10 μg/min by IV infusion, titrated to the appropriate heart rate and rhythm response.

TCP can be done through the multifunctional pacing/defibrillating pads. It is painful, and sedation should be considered in all awake patients. TCP should be considered a temporary measure only, and the patient should always be prepared for transvenous pacing. Expert consultation should be obtained as soon as possible. Transesophageal atrial pacing can be effective in treating intraoperative supraventricular bradyarrhythmias such as sinus or junctional bradycardia. This device is compatible with most external pacing devices and defibrillators. However, transesophageal pacing is only effective at pacing the atria, at least in its current configuration. In a patient who has AV conduction issues, such as complete heart block, this intervention is ineffective. Effective and consistent pacing also relies on normal acid-base status and electrolyte concentrations; thus acidemia and electrolyte abnormalities such as severe hyperkalemia need to be corrected if pacing is not successful.

Fig. 86.6 illustrates the bradyarrhythmias treatment algorithm recommended in the 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC.

TACHYARRHYTHMIA

Tachyarrhythmia is defined as an arrhythmia with a rate of more than 100 beats/min, although, as with defining bradycardia, an arrhythmia rate of 150 or more beats/min is more likely to cause clinical symptoms. When encountering patients with tachycardia, efforts should be made to determine whether the tachycardia is the primary cause of the presenting symptoms, or secondary to an underlying condition that is causing both the presenting symptoms and the faster heart rate.

Tachycardia can be classified in several ways, based on the appearance of the QRS complex, heart rate, and regularity. Narrow-complex tachycardias (supraventricular tachycardia [SVT], QRS < 0.12 second) include sinus tachycardia, atrial fibrillation, atrial flutter, AV nodal reentry, accessory pathway–mediated tachycardia, atrial tachycardia (including automatic and reentry forms), multifocal atrial tachycardia, and junctional tachycardia. Wide–QRS-complex tachycardias (QRS ≥ 0.12 second) include VT and VF, SVT with aberrancy, preexcited tachycardias (Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome), and ventricular-paced rhythms.

Because hypoxemia is a common cause of tachycardia, initial evaluation of any patient with tachycardia, similar to those with bradycardia, should focus on identifying signs of increased work of breathing and oxygen saturation. Patients should be closely monitored and supplemental oxygen provided. A 12-lead ECG better defines the rhythm, but the process should not delay immediate cardioversion if the patient is unstable.

If signs and symptoms persist despite provision of supplementary oxygen and support of airway and ventilation, the provider should assess the patient's degree of instability and determine if the instability is related to the tachycardia. If the patient demonstrates rate-related cardiovascular compromise with signs and symptoms such as acute altered mental status, ischemic chest discomfort, acute heart failure, hypotension, or other signs of shock suspected to be due to a tachyarrhythmia, the provider should proceed to immediate synchronized cardioversion, which can terminate tachyarrhythmias by interrupting the underlying reentrant pathway. The recommended initial biphasic energy dose for cardioversion of atrial fibrillation is 120 to 200 J. Cardioversion of atrial flutter and other SVTs generally requires less energy; an initial energy of 50 J to 100 J is often sufficient. If the initial 50 J shock fails, the provider should increase the dose in a stepwise fashion. Monomorphic VT with a pulse responds well to monophasic or biphasic waveform cardioversion (synchronized) shocks at initial energies of 100 J. If a patient has polymorphic VT, treat the rhythm as VF and deliver high-energy unsynchronized shocks (defibrillation doses).

If the patient with tachycardia is stable, then determine if the patient has a narrow-complex or wide-complex tachycardia, whether the rhythm is regular or irregular, and for wide complexes whether the QRS morphology is monomorphic or polymorphic. Therapy is then tailored accordingly. For regular narrow-complex SVT, vagal maneuvers such as carotid massage or Valsalva maneuver are used first to terminate the arrhythmia. If vagal maneuvers are unsuccessful, then adenosine is the drug of choice for terminating organized rapid supraventricular

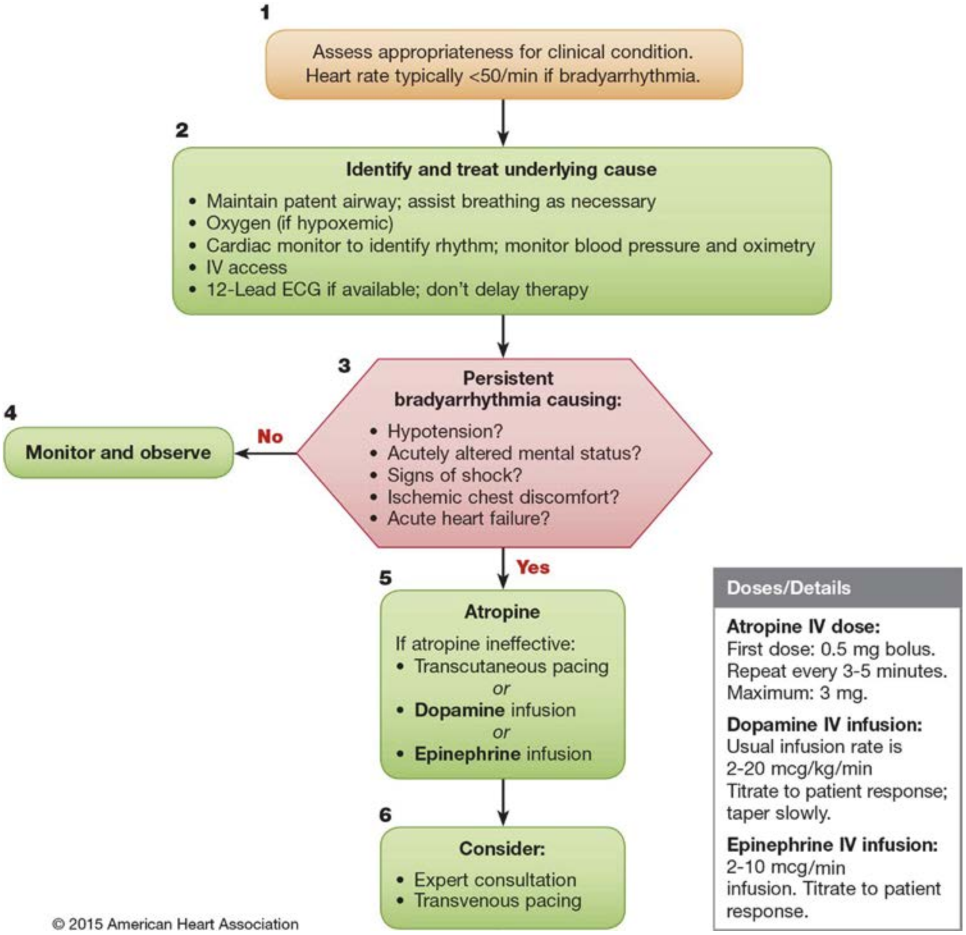

1
Assess appropriateness for clinical condition.
Heart rate typically <50/min if bradyarrhythmia.
2
Identify and treat underlying cause
• Maintain patent airway; assist breathing as necessary
• Oxygen (if hypoxemic)
• Cardiac monitor to identify rhythm; monitor blood pressure and oximetry
• IV access
• 12-Lead ECG if available; don't delay therapy
3
Persistent bradyarrhythmia causing:
• Hypotension?
• Acutely altered mental status?
• Signs of shock?
• Ischemic chest discomfort?
• Acute heart failure?
No
4
Monitor and observe
Yes
5
Atropine
If atropine ineffective:
• Transcutaneous pacing
or
• Dopamine infusion
or
• Epinephrine infusion
6
Consider:
• Expert consultation
• Transvenous pacing
Doses/Details
Atropine IV dose:
First dose: 0.5 mg bolus.
Repeat every 3-5 minutes.
Maximum: 3 mg.
Dopamine IV infusion:
Usual infusion rate is
2-20 mcg/kg/min
Titrate to patient response;
taper slowly.
Epinephrine IV infusion:
2-10 mcg/min
infusion. Titrate to patient
response.
© 2015 American Heart Association

Fig. 86.6 2015 American Heart Association Adult Bradycardia With a Pulse Algorithm. *IV*, Intravenous. (From Link MS, Berkow LC, Kudenchuk PJ, et al. Part 7: Adult Advanced Cardiovascular Life Support: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2015;132[18 suppl 2]:S444–S464.)

arrhythmias. Adenosine slows sinoatrial and AV nodal conduction and prolongs refractoriness, which is very effective in terminating paroxysmal SVT (PSVT), the most common cause of which is reentry within the AV node. The drug is also used to diagnose the underlying mechanism in tachyarrhythmias of uncertain origin (e.g., atrial fibrillation, atrial flutter) by inducing transient block of AV nodal conduction. If adenosine or vagal maneuvers fail to convert PSVT, PSVT recurs after such treatment, or these treatments disclose a different form of SVT (such as atrial fibrillation or flutter), it is reasonable to use longer-acting AV nodal blocking agents, such as the nondihydropyridine calcium channel blockers (verapamil and diltiazem) or β-blockers.

Treatable causes of VT should always be sought before or during pharmacologic or electrical interventions. Hypoxemia, hypercapnia, hypokalemia or hypomagnesemia (or both), digitalis toxicity, and acid-base derangements are obvious causes for VT and should be quickly evaluated and corrected if present. If antiarrhythmic therapy is pursued, procainamide, amiodarone, or sotalol are recommended. Importantly, only one drug should be administered; a second drug should not be added without expert consultation. Hypotension is common with all three of these medications.

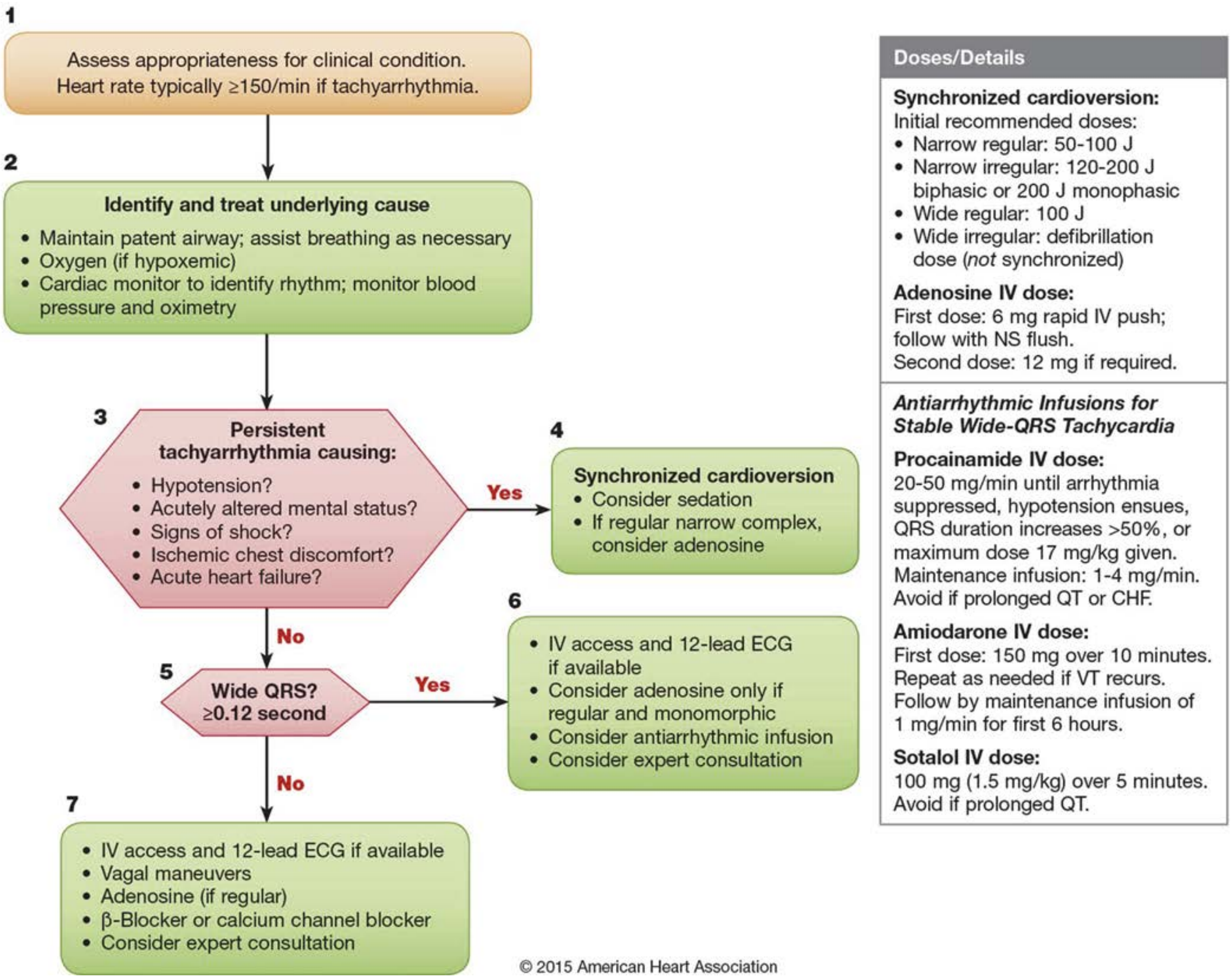
The evaluation and management of tachyarrhythmias is illustrated in the 2015 ACLS Tachycardia with Pulse Algorithm (Fig. 86.7). The medications used for tachyarrhythmia are listed in Tables 86.2 and 86.3.

Postresuscitation Interventions

Hypoxemia, ischemia, and reperfusion occurs during cardiac arrest and resuscitation, regardless of cause of cardiac arrest, and this may cause damage to multiple organ systems. Therefore, effective post–cardiac arrest care consists of identification and treatment of the precipitating cause of cardiac arrest combined with the assessment and mitigation of ischemia-reperfusion injury to multiple organ systems. The severity of damage can vary widely among patients and among organ systems within individual patients. Care must be tailored to the particular disease and dysfunction that affect each patient. Therefore, individual patients may require few, many, or all of the specific interventions discussed in the following part of this section.

EMERGENCY PERCUTANEOUS CORONARY INTERVENTION

Acute coronary syndromes are a common etiology for OHCA in adults with no obvious extracardiac cause of arrest and also can precipitate some IHCA. One study examined


1
Assess appropriateness for clinical condition.
Heart rate typically ≥150/min if tachyarrhythmia.
2
Identify and treat underlying cause
• Maintain patent airway; assist breathing as necessary
• Oxygen (if hypoxemic)
• Cardiac monitor to identify rhythm; monitor blood pressure and oximetry
3
Persistent tachyarrhythmia causing:
• Hypotension?
• Acutely altered mental status?
• Signs of shock?
• Ischemic chest discomfort?
• Acute heart failure?
Yes
4
Synchronized cardioversion
• Consider sedation
• If regular narrow complex, consider adenosine
No
5
Wide QRS? ≥0.12 second
Yes
6
• IV access and 12-lead ECG if available
• Consider adenosine only if regular and monomorphic
• Consider antiarrhythmic infusion
• Consider expert consultation
No
7
• IV access and 12-lead ECG if available
• Vagal maneuvers
• Adenosine (if regular)
• β-Blocker or calcium channel blocker
• Consider expert consultation
Doses/Details
Synchronized cardioversion:
Initial recommended doses:
• Narrow regular: 50-100 J
• Narrow irregular: 120-200 J biphasic or 200 J monophasic
• Wide regular: 100 J
• Wide irregular: defibrillation dose (not synchronized)
Adenosine IV dose:
First dose: 6 mg rapid IV push; follow with NS flush.
Second dose: 12 mg if required.
Antiarrhythmic Infusions for Stable Wide-QRS Tachycardia
Procainamide IV dose:
20-50 mg/min until arrhythmia suppressed, hypotension ensues, QRS duration increases >50%, or maximum dose 17 mg/kg given.
Maintenance infusion: 1-4 mg/min.
Avoid if prolonged QT or CHF.
Amiodarone IV dose:
First dose: 150 mg over 10 minutes.
Repeat as needed if VT recurs.
Follow by maintenance infusion of 1 mg/min for first 6 hours.
Sotalol IV dose:
100 mg (1.5 mg/kg) over 5 minutes.
Avoid if prolonged QT.

© 2015 American Heart Association

Fig. 86.7 2015 American Heart Association Adult Tachycardia With a Pulse Algorithm. *IV*, Intravenous; *NS*, normal saline; *VT*, ventricular tachycardia. (From Link MS, Berkow LC, Kudenchuk PJ, et al. Part 7: Adult Advanced Cardiovascular Life Support: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2015;132[18 suppl 2]:S444–S464.)

a consecutive series of post–cardiac arrest patients with suspected cardiovascular cause, and found a coronary artery lesion amenable to emergency treatment in 96% of patients with ST elevation and in 58% of patients without ST elevation during subsequent coronary angiography.[64] Thus urgent coronary angiography with prompt recanalization of any infarct-related artery is crucially important to improving the patient's survival, enhancing neurologic outcome, and preventing recurrence of arrest.

Evidence regarding the timing of coronary angiography immediately after cardiac arrest (defined variously, but within 24 hours) is limited to observational studies. Data from studies with more than 3800 patients having ST elevation on ECG after ROSC after cardiac arrest demonstrated a benefit of immediate coronary angiography with improved survival to hospital discharge, while more than half of these studies also demonstrated a benefit with improved neurological outcomes.[65-67] Fewer data are available to evaluate coronary angiography in patients without ST elevation on the initial post–cardiac arrest ECG. Two studies demonstrated a benefit with improved survival to hospital discharge and improved neurologic outcome when patients received immediate coronary angiography.[65,68] In these studies, the decision to undertake the intervention was influenced by a variety of factors such as patient age, duration of CPR, hemodynamic instability, presenting cardiac rhythm, neurologic status upon hospital arrival, and perceived likelihood of cardiac etiology. The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC recommended that coronary angiography should be performed emergently (rather than later in the hospital stay or not at all) for OHCA patients with suspected cardiac etiology of arrest and ST elevation on ECG. Emergency coronary angiography should be considered for select (e.g., electrically or hemodynamically unstable) adult patients who are comatose after OHCA of suspected cardiac origin but without ST elevation on ECG. Overall, coronary angiography is reasonable in post–cardiac arrest patients where coronary angiography is indicated, regardless of the patient's mental status. The 2015 acute coronary syndrome algorithm is illustrated in Fig. 86.8.[69]

TABLE 86.2 Summary of Medications Used for Supraventricular Tachycardia

Drug	Characteristics	Indication(s)	Dosing	Side Effects	Precautions or Special Considerations
Adenosine	Endogenous purine nucleoside; briefly depresses sinus node rate and AV node conduction; vasodilator	■ Stable, narrow-complex regular tachycardias ■ Unstable narrow-complex regular tachycardias while preparations are made for electrical cardioversion ■ Stable, regular, monomorphic, wide-complex tachycardia as a therapeutic and diagnostic maneuver	6 mg IV as a rapid IV push followed by a 20 mL saline flush; repeat if required as 12 mg IV push	Hypotension, bronchospasm, chest discomfort	Contraindicated in patients with asthma; may precipitate atrial fibrillation, which may be very rapid in patients with WPW; thus a defibrillator should be readily available; reduce dose in post–cardiac transplant patients, those taking dipyridamole or carbamazepine and when administered via a central vein
Diltiazem, Verapamil	Non-dihydropyridine calcium channel blockers; slow AV node conduction and increase AV node refractoriness; vasodilators, negative inotropes	■ Stable, narrow-complex tachycardias if rhythm remains uncontrolled or unconverted by adenosine or vagal maneuvers or if SVT is recurrent ■ Control ventricular rate in patients with atrial fibrillation or atrial flutter	Diltiazem: Initial dose 15-20 mg (0.25 mg/kg) IV over 2 min; additional 20-25 mg (0.35 mg/kg) IV in 15 min if needed; 5-15 mg/h IV maintenance infusion (titrated to AF heart rate if given for rate control) Verapamil: Initial dose 2.5-5 mg IV given over 2 min; may repeat as 5-10 mg every 15-30 min to total dose of 20-30 mg	Hypotension, bradycardia, precipitation of heart failure	Should only be given to patients with narrow-complex tachycardias (regular or irregular). Avoid in patients with heart failure and preexcited AF or flutter or rhythms consistent with VT
Atenolol, Esmolol, Metoprolol, Propranolol	β-Blockers; reduce effects of circulating catecholamines; reduce heart rate, AV node conduction and blood pressure; negative inotropes	■ Stable, narrow-complex tachycardias if rhythm remains uncontrolled or unconverted by adenosine or vagal maneuvers or if SVT is recurrent ■ Control ventricular rate in patients with atrial fibrillation or atrial flutter ■ Certain forms of polymorphic VT (associated with acute ischemia, familial LQTS, catecholaminergic)	Atenolol (β1 specific blocker) 5 mg IV over 5 min; repeat 5 mg in 10 min if arrhythmia persists or recurs Esmolol (β1 specific blocker with 2- to 9-min half-life) IV loading dose 500 mcg/kg (0.5 mg/kg) over 1 min, followed by an infusion of 50 mcg/kg per min (0.05 mg/kg/min); if response is inadequate, infuse second loading bolus of 0.5 mg/kg over 1 min and increase maintenance infusion to 100 mcg/kg (0.1 mg/kg) per min; increment; increase in this manner if required to maximum infusion rate of 300 mcg/kg [0.3 mg/kg] per min Metoprolol (β1 specific blocker) 5 mg over 1-2 min repeated as required every 5 min to maximum dose of 15 mg Propranolol (nonselective β-blocker) 0.5-1 mg over 1 min, repeated up to a total dose of 0.1 mg/kg if required	Hypotension, bradycardia, precipitation of heart failure	Avoid in patients with asthma, obstructive airway disease, decompensated heart failure and pre-excited atrial fibrillation or flutter
Procainamide	Sodium and potassium channel blocker	■ Preexcited atrial fibrillation	20-50 mg/min until arrhythmia suppressed, hypotension ensues, or QRS prolonged by 50%, or total cumulative dose of 17 mg/kg; or 100 mg every 5 min until arrhythmia is controlled or other conditions described above are met	Bradycardia, hypotension, torsades de pointes	Avoid in patients with QT prolongation and CHF
Amiodarone	Multichannel blocker (sodium, potassium, calcium channel, and noncompetitive α/β-blocker)	■ Stable irregular narrow-complex tachycardia (atrial fibrillation) ■ Stable regular narrow-complex tachycardia ■ To control rapid ventricular rate due to accessory pathway conduction in pre-excited atrial arrhythmias	150 mg given over 10 min and repeated if necessary, followed by a 1 mg/min infusion for 6 h, followed by 0.5 mg/min. Total dose over 24 h should not exceed 2.2 g.	Bradycardia, hypotension, phlebitis	

Continued

TABLE 86.2 Summary of Medications Used for Supraventricular Tachycardia—cont'd

Drug	Characteristics	Indication(s)	Dosing	Side Effects	Precautions or Special Considerations
Digoxin	Cardiac glycoside with positive inotropic effects; slows AV node conduction by enhancing parasympathetic tone; slow onset of action	▪ Stable, narrow-complex regular tachycardias if rhythm remains uncontrolled or unconverted by adenosine or vagal maneuvers or if SVT is recurrent ▪ Control ventricular rate in patients with atrial fibrillation or atrial flutter	8-12 mcg/kg total loading dose, half of which is administered initially over 5 min, and remaining portion as 25% fractions at 4- to 8-h intervals	Bradycardia	Slow onset of action and relative low potency renders it less useful for treatment of acute arrhythmias

AF, Atrial fibrillation; *AV*, atrioventricular; *CHF*, congestive heart failure; *IV*, Intravenous; *LQTS,* long QT syndrome; *SVT*, supraventricular tachycardia; *VT*, ventricular tachycardia; *WPW*, Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome.
From https://eccguidelines.heart.org/index.php/tables/2010-iv-drugs-used-for-tachycardia-2/.

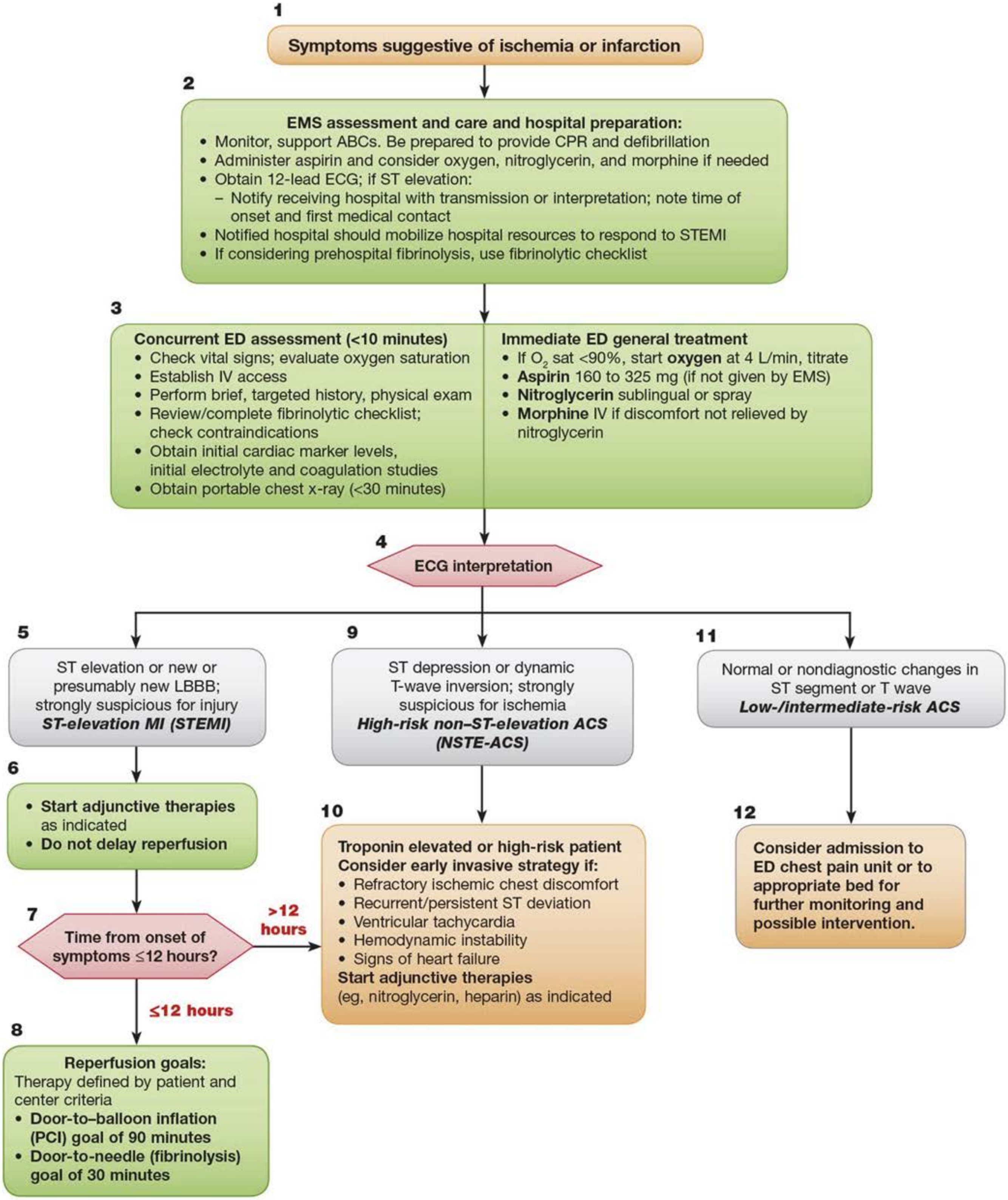
TABLE 86.3 Summary of Medications Used for Ventricular Tachycardia

Drug	Characteristics	Indication(s)	Dosing	Side Effects	Precautions or Special Considerations
Procainamide	Sodium and potassium channel blocker	▪ Hemodynamically stable monomorphic VT	20-50 mg/min until arrhythmia suppressed, hypotension ensues, or QRS prolonged by 50%, or total cumulative dose of 17 mg/kg; or 100 mg every 5 min until arrhythmia is controlled or other conditions described previously are met	Bradycardia, hypotension, torsades de pointes	Avoid in patients with QT prolongation and CHF
Amiodarone	Multichannel blocker (sodium, potassium, calcium channel, α- and noncompetitive β-blocker)	▪ Hemodynamically stable monomorphic VT ▪ Polymorphic VT with normal QT interval	150 mg given over 10 min and repeated if necessary, followed by a 1 mg/min infusion for 6 h, followed by 0.5 mg/min. Total dose over 24 h should not exceed 2.2 g.	Bradycardia, hypotension, phlebitis	
Sotalol	Potassium channel blocker and nonselective β-blocker	▪ Hemodynamically stable monomorphic VT	In clinical studies 1.5 mg/kg infused over 5 min; however, U.S. package labeling recommends any dose of the drug should be infused slowly over a period of 5 h	Bradycardia, hypotension, torsades de pointes	Avoid in patients with QT prolongation and CHF
Lidocaine	Relatively weak sodium channel blocker	▪ Hemodynamically stable monomorphic VT	Initial dose range from 1 to 1.5 mg/kg IV; repeated if required at 0.5-0.75 mg/kg IV every 5-10 min up to maximum cumulative dose of 3 mg/kg; 1-4 mg/min (30-50 mcg/kg/min) maintenance infusion	Slurred speech, altered consciousness, seizures, bradycardia	
Magnesium	Cofactor in variety of cell processes including control of sodium and potassium transport	▪ Polymorphic VT associated with QT prolongation (torsades de pointes)	1-2 g IV over 15 min	Hypotension, CNS toxicity, respiratory depression	Follow magnesium levels if frequent or prolonged dosing required, particularly in patients with impaired renal function

CHF, Congestive heart failure; *CNS,* central nervous system; *IV*, intravenous; *VT*, ventricular tachycardia.
From https://eccguidelines.heart.org/index.php/tables/2010-iv-drugs-used-for-tachycardia-2/.

TARGETED TEMPERATURE MANAGEMENT

Devastating neurologic injury, particularly anoxic brain injury, is frequent in post–cardiac arrest patients. Over the years, numerous pharmacologic interventions, including steroids, barbiturates, and nimodipine, have been tried for cerebral protection in this patient population with unsatisfactory results. This was until the seminal publications describing the use of systemic hypothermia to 33°C within 2 hours of OHCA and maintained for 12 or 24 hours, which showed improved outcomes among survivors.[70,71] The mechanism of cerebral protection with hypothermia is complex, but is suggested to include its effect on the cerebral metabolic rate. For every 1°C reduction in brain temperature, a 6% reduction in cerebral metabolic rate is


1
Symptoms suggestive of ischemia or infarction
2
EMS assessment and care and hospital preparation:
• Monitor, support ABCs. Be prepared to provide CPR and defibrillation
• Administer aspirin and consider oxygen, nitroglycerin, and morphine if needed
• Obtain 12-lead ECG; if ST elevation:
– Notify receiving hospital with transmission or interpretation; note time of onset and first medical contact
• Notified hospital should mobilize hospital resources to respond to STEMI
• If considering prehospital fibrinolysis, use fibrinolytic checklist
3
Concurrent ED assessment (<10 minutes)
• Check vital signs; evaluate oxygen saturation
• Establish IV access
• Perform brief, targeted history, physical exam
• Review/complete fibrinolytic checklist; check contraindications
• Obtain initial cardiac marker levels, initial electrolyte and coagulation studies
• Obtain portable chest x-ray (<30 minutes)
Immediate ED general treatment
• If O_2 sat <90%, start oxygen at 4 L/min, titrate
• Aspirin 160 to 325 mg (if not given by EMS)
• Nitroglycerin sublingual or spray
• Morphine IV if discomfort not relieved by nitroglycerin
4
ECG interpretation
5
ST elevation or new or presumably new LBBB; strongly suspicious for injury
ST-elevation MI (STEMI)
9
ST depression or dynamic T-wave inversion; strongly suspicious for ischemia
High-risk non–ST-elevation ACS (NSTE-ACS)
11
Normal or nondiagnostic changes in ST segment or T wave
Low-/intermediate-risk ACS
6
• Start adjunctive therapies as indicated
• Do not delay reperfusion
7
Time from onset of symptoms ≤12 hours?
>12 hours
≤12 hours
8
Reperfusion goals:
Therapy defined by patient and center criteria
• Door-to–balloon inflation (PCI) goal of 90 minutes
• Door-to-needle (fibrinolysis) goal of 30 minutes
10
Troponin elevated or high-risk patient
Consider early invasive strategy if:
• Refractory ischemic chest discomfort
• Recurrent/persistent ST deviation
• Ventricular tachycardia
• Hemodynamic instability
• Signs of heart failure
Start adjunctive therapies
(eg, nitroglycerin, heparin) as indicated
12
Consider admission to ED chest pain unit or to appropriate bed for further monitoring and possible intervention.

© 2015 American Heart Association

Fig. 86.8 **2015 American Heart Association Acute Coronary Syndrome Algorithm. *ABC*, Airway, breathing, circulation; *CPR*, cardiopulmonary resuscitation; *EMS*, emergency medical services; *IV*, intravenous.** (From O'Connor RE, Al Ali AS, Brady WJ, et al. Part 9: Acute Coronary Syndromes: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2015;132[18 suppl 2]:S483–S500. https://eccguidelines.heart.org/index.php/circulation/cpr-ecc-guidelines-2/part-9-acute-coronary-syndromes/.)

observed. By limiting the metabolic demand and decreasing the utilization of oxygen and glucose, targeted temperature management (TTM) reduces the risk of energy depletion, preserving the ion channel's integrity and decreasing the intracellular calcium influx that can trigger neuronal apoptotic pathways.[72] Indeed, animal models have been used to evaluate the mitigating effects of hypothermia on pathways leading to excitotoxicity, apoptosis, inflammation, and free radical production, as well as its significance in preserving the blood–brain barrier integrity, neuronal viability, and neurologic outcome.[73] TTM encompasses therapeutic hypothermia, controlled normothermia, and treatment of fever.

The HACA trial was the first study to show clinical benefit in a focused patient cohort.[71] Following the publication of this study, a number of other studies also evaluated induced hypothermia after cardiac arrest, which gained widespread use and is now advocated by international guidelines. Of note, the Target Temperature Management After Cardiac Arrest (or the TTM) trial[74] found no difference in neurologic outcome when comparing 939 OHCA victims after cooling to 33°C versus controlled temperature maintenance at 36°C, but both arms of this trial involved a form of TTM as opposed to no TTM. Consequently, the TTM trial might underscore the importance of active temperature management after ROSC. The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC recommend TTM in all comatose (i.e., lack of meaningful response to verbal commands) adult patients with ROSC after cardiac arrest, irrespective of the initial rhythm (shockable or not). A target temperature between 32°C and 36°C is recommended for at least 24 hours. It is also recommended to continue to monitor the temperature and maintain normothermia (treat fever) beyond this window. Prognostication should not occur until 72 hours after ROSC, or if TTM is provided, 72 hours after completion of TTM.

Experimental studies also suggest that the greatest benefit of hypothermia in neuroprotection is achieved when it is effectively applied within hours of the event, with likely benefit being within 6 hours or earlier after the insult. Although human studies have yet not confirmed the critical window for effective implementation of TTM to improve neurologic outcome after cardiac arrest, they have established that the target temperature is more rapidly obtained in cohorts where intranasal, surface, or intravascular temperature-modulating devices (servo-controlled or inbuilt feedback mechanisms) were used, as compared to surface cooling with air-cooling blankets, cooling fans, or ice cooling packs. There was also a lower likelihood to overshoot the target temperature when these devices were employed. Intravascular heat exchange catheters are currently the most efficient technique for achieving the target temperature within a short period after ROSC, and can also be used in combination with surface-cooling modalities.[75] Their use is nevertheless limited by their invasive nature and associated risks such as vascular injury, bleeding, or thrombosis. In addition, no benefit in survival has been shown using these more invasive devices. The use of cold saline as an adjunctive therapy in the prehospital setting is not recommended because the data from the RINSE trial showed that prehospital cold IV fluids in victims of cardiac arrest did not improve outcome, but resulted in an increased incidence of pulmonary edema during the first 24 hours after ROSC.[76]

POSTRESUSCITATION OXYGEN AND VENTILATION THERAPY

Hyperoxia in preclinical studies was associated with worsening oxidative stress, free radical production, and worsened organ function.[77] Importantly, Kilgannon and colleagues reported an association between hyperoxia and in-hospital mortality after resuscitation from cardiac arrest.[78] Consequently, the AHA guidelines recommend that once reliable oxygenation and ventilation monitors are in place, the fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2) should be decreased to avoid hyperoxia.[69,77] It is worth noting that in the immediate post-ROSC period, the intense systemic vasoconstriction may make it challenging for pulse oximetry to work optimally; thus access and use of arterial blood gases to guide therapy should be part of the management strategy.

Post–cardiac arrest patients are at increased risk for developing ARDS. Some of the contributing factors include aspiration pneumonia, pulmonary contusions after aggressive CPR, ventilator-associated lung injury, and the pulmonary manifestations of the post–cardiac arrest syndrome. The optimal mechanical ventilation strategy after cardiac arrest has, nevertheless, not been well defined. Although more focused studies are still needed, it is suggested that patients with ARDS should be ventilated according to the Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome Network (ARDSNet) low-tidal volume strategy.[79]

Excessive hyperventilation and hypocarbia can also adversely affect the outcome, as it can lead to cerebral vasoconstriction and worsening blood flow, in particular in areas with no reflow or hypoperfusion after ROSC. A recent systematic review evaluating data from at least eight studies found that both hypocarbia and hypercarbia are associated with worse neurologic outcomes in the post–cardiac arrest syndrome patient.[23] Therefore, it is recommended that after resuscitation from cardiac arrest, the $PaCO_2$ be maintained within the normal physiologic range (end-tidal CO_2 30-40 mm Hg or $PaCO_2$ 35-45 mm Hg), taking into account any temperature correction.[69]

GLYCEMIC CONTROL IN THE POST–CARDIAC ARREST PATIENT

Hyperglycemia is frequently encountered in survivors of cardiac arrest because of a combination of several factors including the effect of counter-regulatory hormones in the immediate post-ROSC period. Poor glycemic control has been associated with poor neurologic outcome in critically ill patients. Hyperglycemia is thought to cause secondary injury by exacerbating intracellular acidosis, increasing free radical formation, increasing extracellular glutamate levels, and disrupting the blood–brain barrier. On the other hand, tight glucose control at low levels has also been associated with increased frequency of hypoglycemic episodes and poor patient outcome.[80] Although the data on glycemic control in the post-cardiac arrest patient are not definitive, it is reasonable to monitor blood glucose concentration and avoid extreme levels of blood glucose in this population.

DETERMINE THE CAUSE AND EXTENT OF INJURY AFTER CARDIAC ARREST

Laboratory Testing

Laboratory testing may provide insight into the etiology of cardiac arrest, help identify potentially reversible and/or intervenable factors, and may allow the evaluation of the extent of end-organ damage. In addition to the standard laboratory tests such as a complete blood count, electrolyte and lactate levels, arterial blood gases, and cardiac enzymes, it is reasonable to obtain a repeat ECG to identify ischemic changes and direct management toward emergency reperfusion therapy. Arrhythmias are not unusual in the post–cardiac arrest patient and, if not managed appropriately, may place the patient at risk for recurrent arrest. It is worth noting that besides coronary ischemia etiology, cardiomyopathies and electrical conduction abnormalities constitute the major etiologies for cardiac arrest. A prolonged QTc interval may reflect a primary arrhythmia such as Brugada syndrome, congenital QT prolongation syndromes, or a multitude of acquired etiologies of prolonged QTc in critically ill patients, including medications, hypothermia, electrolyte abnormalities, and bradycardia. In select patients, toxicology testing may be of value to rule out cocaine or methamphetamine intoxication. Cardiopulmonary collapse may also be precipitated by overdose of antidepressants, sedatives, and opioids, leading to profound hypoxemia triggering cardiac arrest.

Chest Radiographs

The value attributed to the diagnostic yield of chest radiographs has diminished over the past decade. However, radiographs can be valuable for rapid diagnosis of conditions such as a pneumothorax, or for confirmation of the position of the ETT and central venous catheters. Lung parenchymal pathology and mediastinal pathology should prompt other imaging modalities, such as computed tomography (CT) imaging.

Computed Tomography Imaging

CT imaging can be valuable to determine if pulmonary embolus is present and to examine the presence and extent of pulmonary aspiration or edema after resuscitation from cardiac arrest. CT imaging of the brain can also help identify the presence of intracranial hemorrhage, larger areas of cerebral ischemia, or cerebral edema.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging of the Brain

The role of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) in the evaluation of the post–cardiac arrest patient is discussed in this section.

Echocardiography and Critical Care Ultrasonography

The widespread availability of echocardiographic equipment and its proficient use in intensive care have enabled early identification of important treatable causes of cardiac arrest. Examples include:

- Pericardial tamponade. It is worth noting that the size of pericardial effusion, which is a relatively common finding, is not diagnostic of tamponade, as the rate of fluid accumulation is more likely to determine tamponade pathophysiology. Usually the chamber with the lowest pressure, the right atrium, begins to collapse during ventricular diastole and can be visualized by echocardiography at the time of diagnosis.
- Acute myocardial ischemia with new regional wall motional abnormalities.
- Acute PE. Echocardiography can be very useful in the early diagnosis of PE, especially when the patient is too unstable to be transported for CT scans. Important echocardiographic findings include the demonstration of the McConnell sign (akinesia of the mid free wall but normal motion at the RV apex) or other RV strain patterns such as an RV diameter greater than 30 mm in the parasternal long-axis view, or an increase in the area of the RV relative to the LV in the apical four-chamber view. Flattening of the interventricular septum is another feature (D-shaped septum) that suggests the diagnosis of acute massive PE.
- Tension pneumothorax. Ultrasonography offers a higher sensitivity to the detection of an otherwise clinical diagnosis of tension pneumothorax. The quick demonstration of the "seashore sign," "B-lines," comet tails, and the "lung pulse" confirms the apposition of the visceral and parietal pleura and excludes pneumothorax.
- Severe hypovolemia. Inadequate circulating intravascular volume is frequently a precipitating cause of cardiac arrest of nonmyocardial etiology. Ultrasound/echocardiography allows for rapid evaluation of intravascular fluid status and response to a fluid challenge to guide management in the post–cardiac arrest patient. However, one has to be aware of the pitfalls of assessing volume status based on static indices.

TERMINATION OF RESUSCITATION EFFORTS—INDICATORS OF POOR OUTCOME POST-RETURN OF SPONTANEOUS CIRCULATION

The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC discussed the use of clinical examination, electrophysiologic measurements, imaging studies, and evaluation of blood or cerebrospinal fluid markers of brain injury to estimate the prognosis for neurologic improvement in patients who are comatose after cardiac arrest and the decision to terminate resuscitative efforts. Because sedatives or neuromuscular blockers received during TTM may be metabolized more slowly in post–cardiac arrest patients, and injured brains may be more sensitive to the depressant effects of various medications, residual sedation or paralysis can confound the accuracy of clinical examinations. Multiple investigations suggest that it is necessary to wait to prognosticate for a minimum of 72 hours after ROSC to minimize the rate of false-positive results in patients who had not undergone TTM and to wait for some period of time after return of normothermia for those using TTM. In many cases, clinicians choose to complete their final evaluation for prognostication 5 to 7 days after the arrest.

Studies have shown that factors such as the patient's prearrest comorbidities are associated with poor survival and outcome. The initial cardiac rhythm, the no-flow (arrest) and low-flow (CPR) times, and the quality of chest compressions (as indicated by the $ETCO_2$) are also associated with patient outcome. Clinical examinations, such as loss of corneal and pupillary light reflexes, extensor posturing, and the presence of status myoclonus, also point to a poor prognosis. In comatose patients who are treated with TTM or not, the absence of pupillary reflex to light at 72 hours or more after cardiac arrest has the lowest false-positive rate (FPR) of 0% to 1% to predict poor neurologic outcome compared with other clinical examination indicators.[69] It is also important to distinguish myoclonus from status myoclonus (continuous, repetitive myoclonic jerks lasting more than 30 minutes) because the presence of any myoclonus is not a reliable predictor of poor functional recovery, but status myoclonus during the first 72 hours after cardiac arrest achieved an FPR of 0%.[69]

EEG has been used widely in the diagnosis of seizures and prognostication after cardiac arrest, even though the lack of standardized EEG terminology continues to limit its use in research and practice. In comatose post–cardiac arrest patients who are treated with TTM, persistent absence of EEG reactivity to external stimuli at 72 hours after cardiac arrest and persistent burst suppression on EEG after rewarming, has a FPR of 0%. Intractable and persistent (more than 72 hours) status epilepticus in the absence of EEG reactivity to external stimuli is also an indicator of poor outcome. In comatose post–cardiac arrest patients who are not treated with TTM, the presence of burst suppression on EEG at 72 hours or more after cardiac arrest, in combination with other predictors, has a FPR of 0%, and can be used to predict poor outcome. In patients who are comatose after resuscitation from cardiac arrest regardless of treatment with TTM, bilateral absence of the N20 somatosensory-evoked potentials wave 24 to 72 hours after cardiac arrest or after rewarming predicts poor outcome (FPR 1%).

Brain imaging studies, including CT or MRI scans, can define structural brain injury or detect focal injury. In patients who are comatose after resuscitation from cardiac arrest and not treated with TTM, the presence of a marked reduction of the gray-white ratio on brain CT obtained within 2 hours after cardiac arrest could be used to predict poor outcome, as well as extensive restriction of diffusion on brain MRI at 2 to 6 days after cardiac arrest. However, it needs to be noted that both imaging modalities have higher FPRs and wider confidence intervals compared with clinical examination predictors, and thus should be used in combination with other established predictors to predict a poor neurologic outcome. There is currently no established role of laboratory biomarkers of brain injury in predicting neurologic outcome.

Pediatric Resuscitation

Pediatric cardiac arrest portends similar poor prognosis as adults. Data from the 2005 to 2007 Resuscitation Outcomes Consortium, a registry of 11 U.S. and Canadian emergency medical systems, showed age-dependent discharge survival rates of 3.3% for infants (younger than 1 year), 9.1% for children (1-11 years), and 8.9% for adolescents (12-19 years).[81] More recently, published data from this network demonstrated 8.3% survival to hospital discharge across all age groups.[82] Outcomes from pediatric IHCA, however, have markedly improved over the past decade. From 2001 to 2009, rates of pediatric IHCA survival to hospital discharge improved from 24% to 39%.[83] Prolonged CPR is not always futile, with 12% of patients who receive CPR for more than 35 minutes surviving to discharge and 60% of those survivors having a favorable neurologic outcome.[84] This improvement in survival rate from IHCA can be attributed to multiple factors, including emphasis on high-quality CPR and advances in postresuscitation care.

Pediatric resuscitation requires clinical expertise including understanding of its unique pathophysiology, clinical implications, and therapeutic considerations. Even though asphyxiation is the leading cause of pediatric cardiac arrest and warrants initial focused investigation and management, the pediatric resuscitation guidelines closely follow the adult guidelines in order to facilitate training, retention, and implementation of resuscitation guidelines. For example, minimally interrupted and effectively performed chest compressions, ventilation, and prompt defibrillation are emphasized to improve outcome from cardiac arrest and should always be the focus of resuscitation effort.

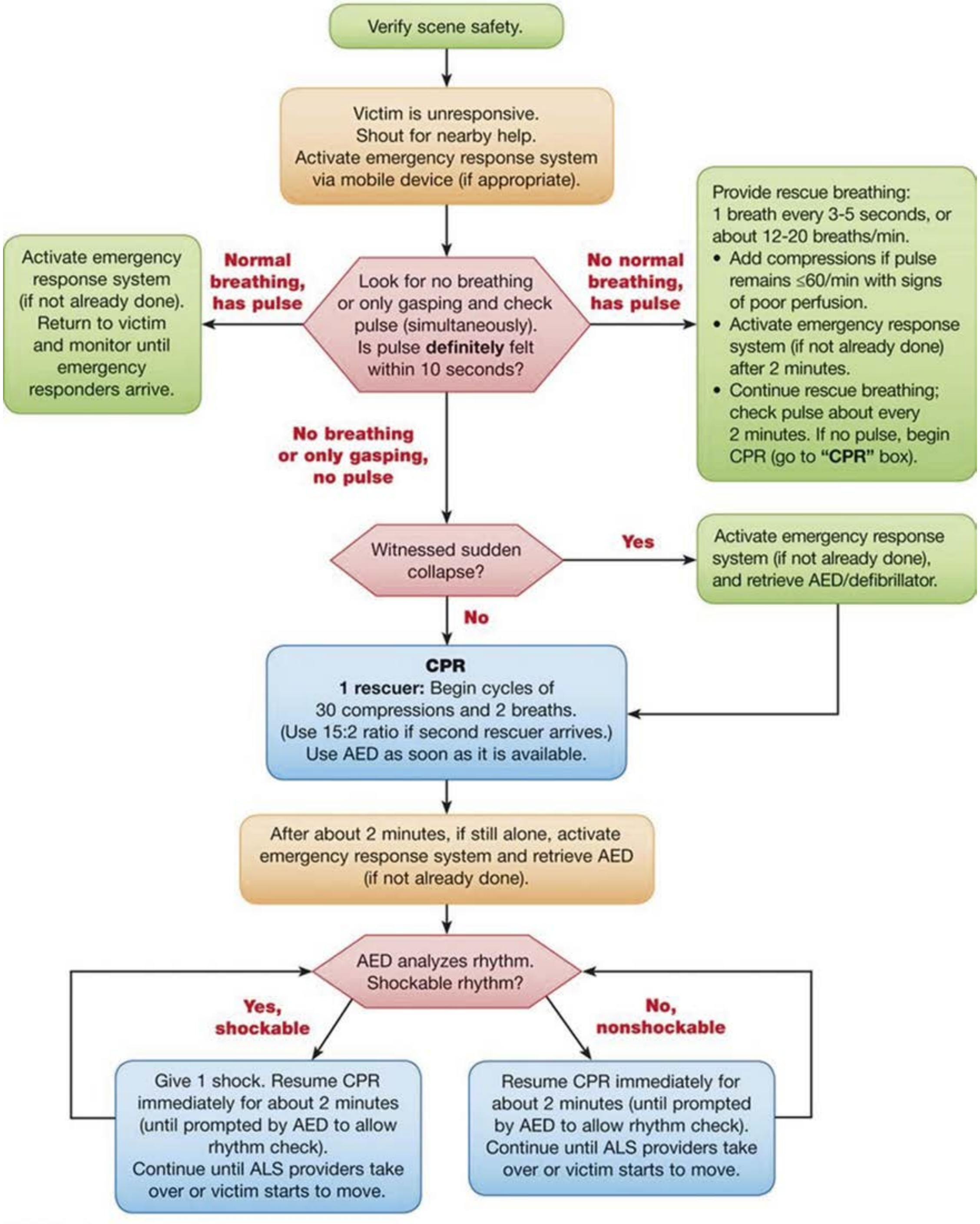
PEDIATRIC BASIC LIFE SUPPORT

Asphyxiation is a much more common cause of cardiac arrest in infants and children than a primary cardiac event, and airway management and ventilation are therefore more important during the resuscitation of children. Data from animal studies[85,86] and pediatric studies[87,88] suggest that resuscitation outcomes for asphyxial cardiac arrest are better with a combination of ventilation and chest compressions. Therefore, historically, the preferred sequence of CPR was A-B-C (Airway-Breathing-Circulation). However, a universal CPR algorithm for victims of all ages minimizes the complexity of CPR and offers consistency in CPR training. In addition, there is inadequate data to identify which resuscitation method offers better survival in this population: beginning with ventilations (A-B-C) first or with chest compressions (C-A-B). The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC maintained the changes of the 2010 recommendations that the C-A-B sequence should be used to decrease the time to initiation of chest compressions and reduce “no blood flow” time in acute pediatric cardiac arrest.

The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC on pediatric BLS algorithms separated one-person from two-person or more healthcare provider CPR to better guide rescuers through the initial stages of resuscitation (Figs. 86.9 and 86.10).[89] In an era where cellular telephones with speakers are common, this technology can allow a single rescuer to activate the emergency response system while beginning CPR. These algorithms continue to emphasize the importance of obtaining an AED quickly in a sudden, witnessed collapse, because such an event is likely to have a cardiac etiology.

The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC on pediatric BLS continue to emphasize the five components of high-quality CPR, which includes:

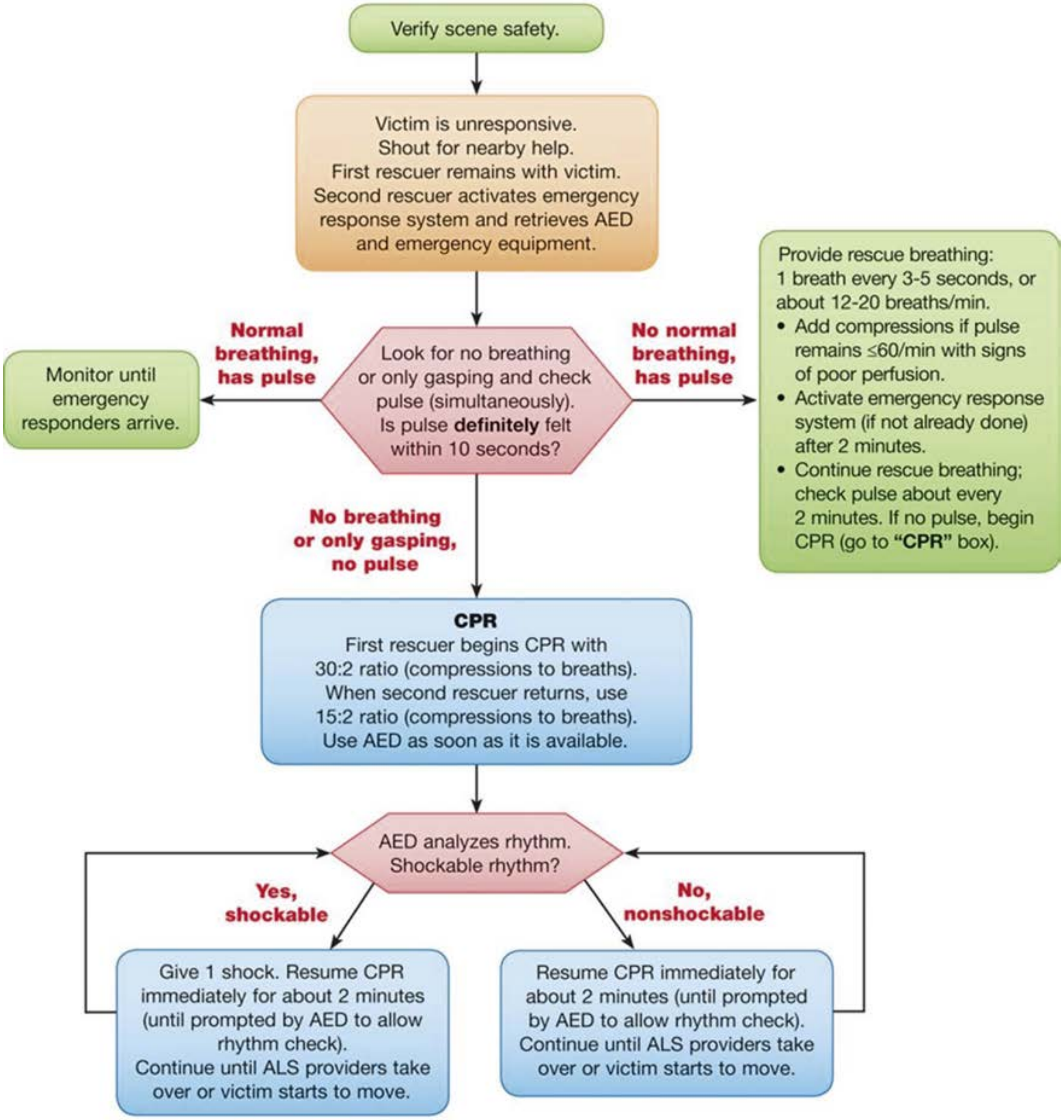
- Ensuring chest compressions of adequate rate
- Ensuring chest compressions of adequate depth
- Allowing full chest recoil between compressions
- Minimizing interruptions in chest compressions
- Avoiding excessive ventilation


Verify scene safety.
Victim is unresponsive. Shout for nearby help. Activate emergency response system via mobile device (if appropriate).
Activate emergency response system (if not already done). Return to victim and monitor until emergency responders arrive.
Normal breathing, has pulse
Look for no breathing or only gasping and check pulse (simultaneously). Is pulse definitely felt within 10 seconds?
No normal breathing, has pulse
Provide rescue breathing: 1 breath every 3-5 seconds, or about 12-20 breaths/min.
• Add compressions if pulse remains ≤60/min with signs of poor perfusion.
• Activate emergency response system (if not already done) after 2 minutes.
• Continue rescue breathing; check pulse about every 2 minutes. If no pulse, begin CPR (go to "CPR" box).
No breathing or only gasping, no pulse
Witnessed sudden collapse?
Yes
Activate emergency response system (if not already done), and retrieve AED/defibrillator.
No
CPR
1 rescuer: Begin cycles of 30 compressions and 2 breaths. (Use 15:2 ratio if second rescuer arrives.) Use AED as soon as it is available.
After about 2 minutes, if still alone, activate emergency response system and retrieve AED (if not already done).
AED analyzes rhythm. Shockable rhythm?
Yes, shockable
No, nonshockable
Give 1 shock. Resume CPR immediately for about 2 minutes (until prompted by AED to allow rhythm check). Continue until ALS providers take over or victim starts to move.
Resume CPR immediately for about 2 minutes (until prompted by AED to allow rhythm check). Continue until ALS providers take over or victim starts to move.

© 2015 American Heart Association

Fig. 86.9 2015 American Heart Association Pediatric Cardiac Arrest Algorithm for Single Rescuer. *AED*, Automated external defibrillator; *CPR*, cardiopulmonary resuscitation. (From Atkins DL, Berger S, Duff JP, et al. Part 11: Pediatric Basic Life Support and Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation Quality: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2015;132[18 suppl 2]:S519–525.)

The guidelines recommend the same chest compression rate as in adults: 100/min to 120/min. In infants, the rescuer should place two fingers just below the inframammary line on the sternum. In children, chest compressions should be performed by compressing the lower half of the sternum (avoiding the xiphoid process) with one or two hands. The guidelines also recommend that for pediatric patients (birth to the onset of puberty) the depth of chest compression should be at least one-third the anterior-posterior diameter of the chest. This equates to approximately 1.5 inches (4 cm) in infants to 2 inches (5 cm) in children. Once children have reached puberty, the recommended adult compression depth of at least 5 cm, but no more than 6 cm, is used for the adolescent of average adult size. Conventional CPR (chest compressions and rescue breaths) should be provided for pediatric cardiac arrests. The guidelines also recommended the use of feedback devices to help the rescuer optimize adequate


Verify scene safety.
Victim is unresponsive. Shout for nearby help. First rescuer remains with victim. Second rescuer activates emergency response system and retrieves AED and emergency equipment.
Normal breathing, has pulse
Monitor until emergency responders arrive.
Look for no breathing or only gasping and check pulse (simultaneously). Is pulse **definitely** felt within 10 seconds?
No normal breathing, has pulse
Provide rescue breathing: 1 breath every 3-5 seconds, or about 12-20 breaths/min.
• Add compressions if pulse remains ≤60/min with signs of poor perfusion.
• Activate emergency response system (if not already done) after 2 minutes.
• Continue rescue breathing; check pulse about every 2 minutes. If no pulse, begin CPR (go to "CPR" box).
No breathing or only gasping, no pulse
CPR
First rescuer begins CPR with 30:2 ratio (compressions to breaths). When second rescuer returns, use 15:2 ratio (compressions to breaths). Use AED as soon as it is available.
AED analyzes rhythm. Shockable rhythm?
Yes, shockable
No, nonshockable
Give 1 shock. Resume CPR immediately for about 2 minutes (until prompted by AED to allow rhythm check). Continue until ALS providers take over or victim starts to move.
Resume CPR immediately for about 2 minutes (until prompted by AED to allow rhythm check). Continue until ALS providers take over or victim starts to move.

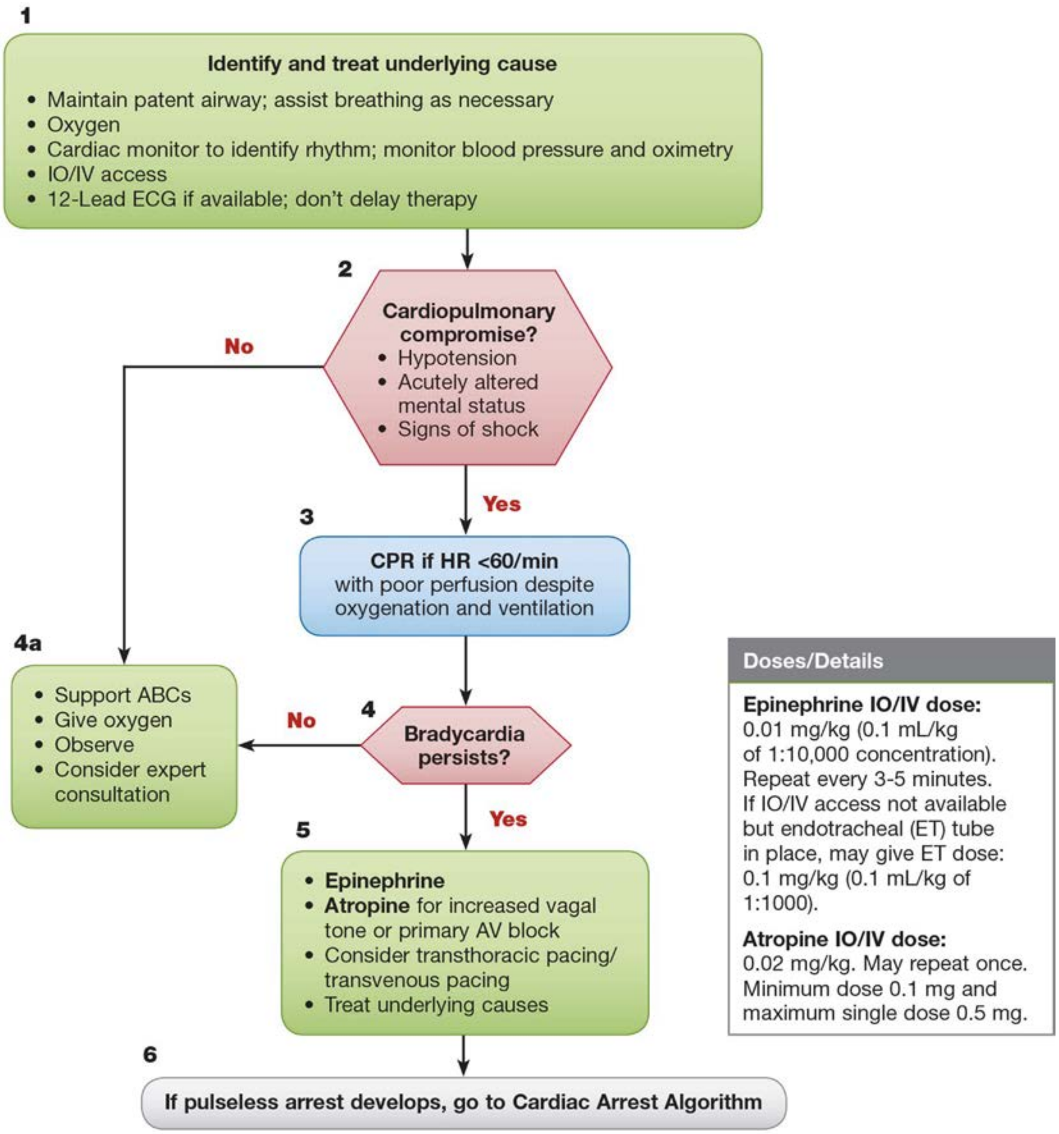
© 2015 American Heart Association

Fig. 86.10 2015 American Heart Association Pediatric Cardiac Arrest Algorithm for Two or More Rescuers. *AED*, Automated external defibrillator; *CPR*, cardiopulmonary resuscitation. (From Atkins DL, Berger S, Duff JP, et al. Part 11: Pediatric Basic Life Support and Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation Quality: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2015;132[18 suppl 2]:S519–S525.)

chest-compression rate and depth. End-tidal CO_2 ($ETCO_2$) monitoring may evaluate the quality of chest compressions, but specific values to guide therapy have not been established in children. For patients with invasive hemodynamic monitoring in place at the time of cardiac arrest, it may be reasonable for rescuers to use blood pressure to guide CPR quality.

The asphyxial nature of the majority of pediatric cardiac arrests necessitates ventilation as part of effective CPR. This survival benefit has been further supported by one recent large observational study where CPR using chest compressions with rescue breaths had higher survival to discharge rates than either no CPR or chest compression–only CPR.[90] However, because compression-only CPR is effective in patients with a primary cardiac event, if rescuers are unwilling or unable to deliver breaths, compression-only CPR is recommended for infants and children in cardiac arrest.

Sudden witnessed collapse in a child is likely to be from VF. For infants, a manual defibrillator is preferred when a shockable rhythm is identified by a trained healthcare provider. An AED with a pediatric attenuator and pediatric defibrillation pads is also preferred for children under 8 years of age. Pediatric defibrillator pads should be applied in the anteroposterior position. In pediatric cardiac arrest, initial defibrillation energy is 2 J/kg and increased to 4 J/kg if a second shock is indicated. For subsequent energy levels, a dose of 4 J/kg may be reasonable and higher energy levels may be considered, but should not exceed 10 J/kg or the adult maximum dose. If no pediatric defibrillator is available, then an adult AED should be applied and used without hesitation.


1
Identify and treat underlying cause
• Maintain patent airway; assist breathing as necessary
• Oxygen
• Cardiac monitor to identify rhythm; monitor blood pressure and oximetry
• IO/IV access
• 12-Lead ECG if available; don't delay therapy
2
Cardiopulmonary compromise?
• Hypotension
• Acutely altered mental status
• Signs of shock
No
Yes
3
CPR if HR <60/min with poor perfusion despite oxygenation and ventilation
4
Bradycardia persists?
No
4a
• Support ABCs
• Give oxygen
• Observe
• Consider expert consultation
Yes
5
• Epinephrine
• Atropine for increased vagal tone or primary AV block
• Consider transthoracic pacing/ transvenous pacing
• Treat underlying causes
6
If pulseless arrest develops, go to Cardiac Arrest Algorithm
Doses/Details

Epinephrine IO/IV dose:
0.01 mg/kg (0.1 mL/kg of 1:10,000 concentration). Repeat every 3-5 minutes. If IO/IV access not available but endotracheal (ET) tube in place, may give ET dose: 0.1 mg/kg (0.1 mL/kg of 1:1000).

Atropine IO/IV dose:
0.02 mg/kg. May repeat once. Minimum dose 0.1 mg and maximum single dose 0.5 mg.

© 2015 American Heart Association

Fig. 86.11 2015 American Heart Association Pediatric Bradycardia With a Pulse and Poor Perfusion Algorithm. *ABC*, Airway, breathing, circulation; *AV*, atrioventricular; *CPR*, cardiopulmonary resuscitation; *IO*, intraosseous; *IV*, intravenous. (From de Caen AR, Berg MD, Chameides L, et al. Part 12: Pediatric Advanced Life Support: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2015;132[18 suppl 2]:S526–S542.)

PEDIATRIC ADVANCED LIFE SUPPORT

Given the fact that asphyxiation is a much more common etiology of cardiac arrest in infants and children than primary cardiac events, effective basic and advanced airway management, oxygenation, and ventilation are of utmost importance. However, as with adult cardiac arrests, airway management should not cause prolonged interruption of chest compressions. Similarly, the placement of an advanced airway warrants confirmation of placement using a CO_2 detector and bilateral breath sounds. If the infant or child is intubated, ventilate at a rate of about 1 breath every 6 to 8 seconds (8-10 times/min) without interrupting chest compressions.

Because vascular access can be challenging in critically ill children and circulating medication levels between IV and intraosseous (IO) routes are equivalent, IO access is often pursued as an alternative in these patients. All resuscitation medications and blood products can be injected into IO catheters. Because of the resistance to fluid flow from the IO catheter into the IO space, fluids must be pressurized to carry fluid into circulation.

As in adults, ECG monitoring permits the immediate recognition of the arrest rhythm or the prearrest rhythm. Prompt intervention and correction in the latter event may prevent cardiac arrest of hypoxia etiology. For pediatric patients, management of different life-threatening arrhythmias, PEA arrest/asystole, or VF/VT arrest is similar to adults except the dosage (defibrillation/medication) for children is weight-based. Actual body weight is recommended to calculate initial resuscitation drug doses. The 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC on pediatric ACLS for bradycardia, tachycardia, and pulseless arrest are illustrated in Figs. 86.11–86.13.[91]

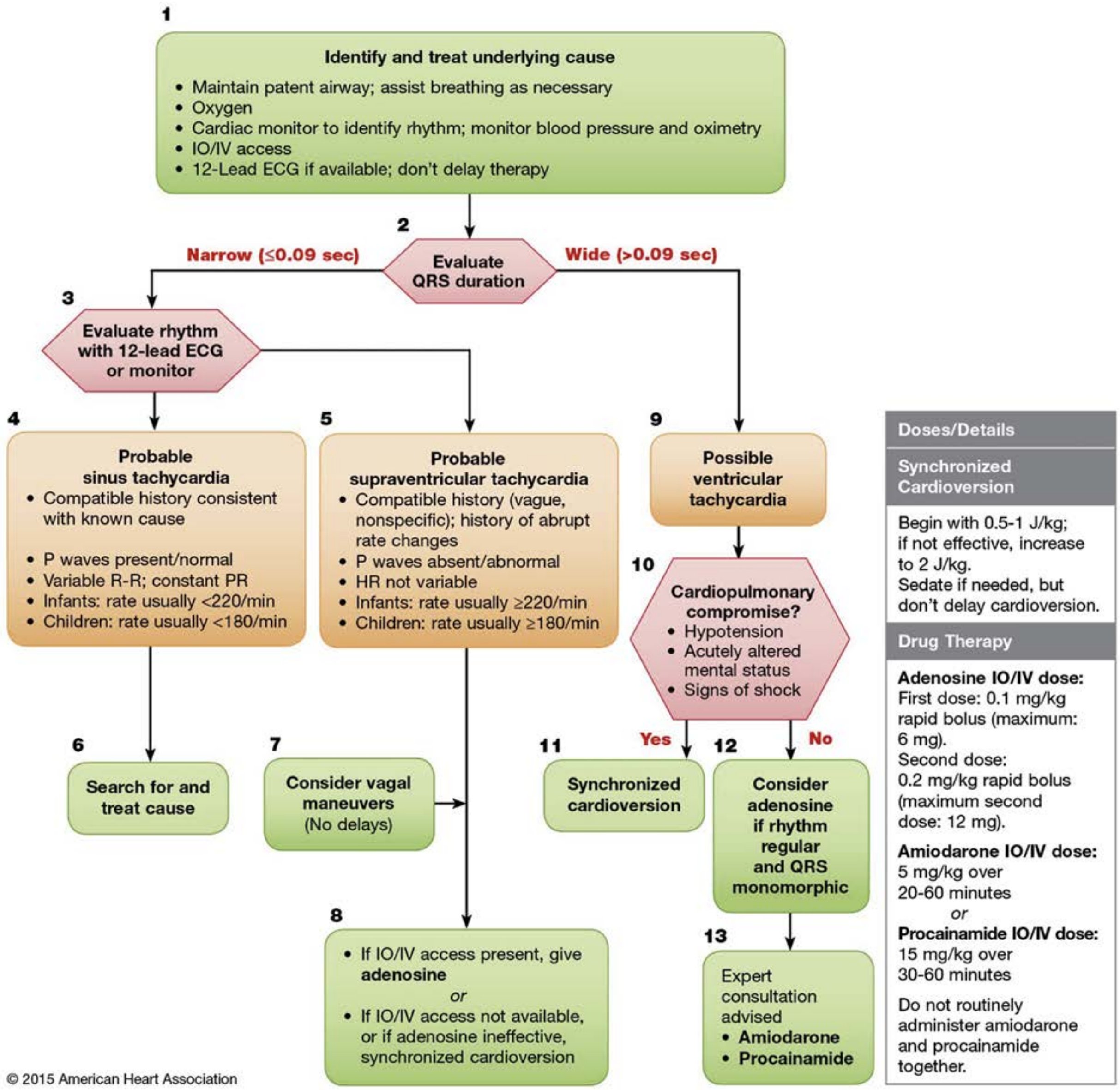
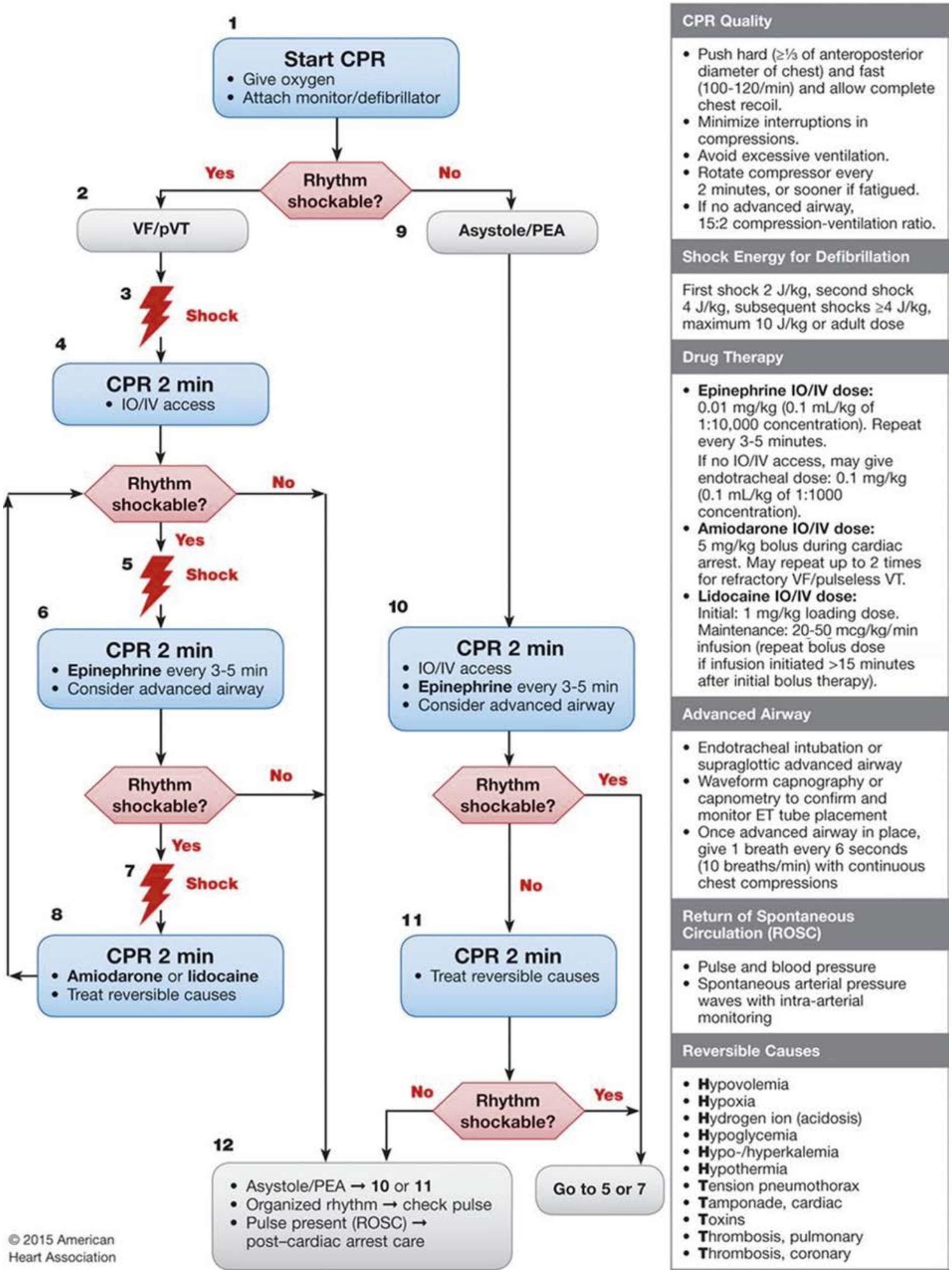

1
Identify and treat underlying cause
• Maintain patent airway; assist breathing as necessary
• Oxygen
• Cardiac monitor to identify rhythm; monitor blood pressure and oximetry
• IO/IV access
• 12-Lead ECG if available; don't delay therapy
2
Evaluate QRS duration
Narrow (≤0.09 sec)
Wide (>0.09 sec)
3
Evaluate rhythm with 12-lead ECG or monitor
4
Probable sinus tachycardia
• Compatible history consistent with known cause
• P waves present/normal
• Variable R-R; constant PR
• Infants: rate usually <220/min
• Children: rate usually <180/min
5
Probable supraventricular tachycardia
• Compatible history (vague, nonspecific); history of abrupt rate changes
• P waves absent/abnormal
• HR not variable
• Infants: rate usually ≥220/min
• Children: rate usually ≥180/min
9
Possible ventricular tachycardia
10
Cardiopulmonary compromise?
• Hypotension
• Acutely altered mental status
• Signs of shock
Yes
No
6
Search for and treat cause
7
Consider vagal maneuvers (No delays)
11
Synchronized cardioversion
12
Consider adenosine if rhythm regular and QRS monomorphic
8
• If IO/IV access present, give adenosine
or
• If IO/IV access not available, or if adenosine ineffective, synchronized cardioversion
13
Expert consultation advised
• Amiodarone
• Procainamide
Doses/Details
Synchronized Cardioversion
Begin with 0.5-1 J/kg; if not effective, increase to 2 J/kg. Sedate if needed, but don't delay cardioversion.
Drug Therapy
Adenosine IO/IV dose:
First dose: 0.1 mg/kg rapid bolus (maximum: 6 mg).
Second dose: 0.2 mg/kg rapid bolus (maximum second dose: 12 mg).
Amiodarone IO/IV dose:
5 mg/kg over 20-60 minutes
or
Procainamide IO/IV dose:
15 mg/kg over 30-60 minutes
Do not routinely administer amiodarone and procainamide together.
© 2015 American Heart Association

Fig. 86.12 2015 American Heart Association Pediatric Tachycardia With a Pulse and Poor Perfusion Algorithm. *IO*, Intraosseous; *IV*, intravenous. (From de Caen AR, Berg MD, Chameides L, et al. Part 12: Pediatric Advanced Life Support: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2015;132[18 suppl 2]:S526–542.)

For bradycardia, continue to support airway, ventilation, oxygenation, and chest compressions. Emergency TCP may be lifesaving if the bradycardia is due to complete heart block or sinus node dysfunction unresponsive to the aforementioned measurements and medications, especially if it is associated with congenital or acquired heart disease. For SVT, attempt vagal stimulation first, unless the patient is hemodynamically unstable or the procedure will delay chemical or electric cardioversion. An IV/IO dose of adenosine 0.1 mg/kg rapid bolus is used first; if it fails, then a second dose of 0.2 mg/kg rapid bolus is given, the maximum second dose is 12 mg. Verapamil, 0.1 to 0.3 mg/kg, is also effective in terminating SVT in older children, but it should not be used in infants without expert consultation because it may cause potential myocardial depression, hypotension, and cardiac arrest. When cardioversion is indicated in unstable SVT, start with a dose of 0.5 to 1 J/kg. If unsuccessful, increase the dose to 2 J/kg. For a patient with SVT unresponsive to vagal maneuvers and adenosine and/or electric cardioversion, consider amiodarone 5 mg/kg IO/IV or procainamide 15 mg/kg IO/IV; for hemodynamically stable patients, expert consultation is strongly recommended prior to administration. For wide-complex (>0.09 second) tachycardia, consider electric cardioversion after sedation using a starting energy dose of 0.5 to 1 J/kg. If that fails, increase the dose to 2 J/kg.

Regarding resuscitation medication, it is reasonable to administer epinephrine in pediatric cardiac arrest. For shock-refractory VF or persistent VT, either amiodarone or lidocaine may be used. Calcium administration is not recommended for pediatric cardiopulmonary arrest in the absence of documented hypocalcemia, calcium channel blocker overdose, hypermagnesemia, or hyperkalemia. Routine administration of sodium bicarbonate is not


1
Start CPR
• Give oxygen
• Attach monitor/defibrillator
Yes
Rhythm shockable?
No
2
VF/pVT
9
Asystole/PEA
3
Shock
4
CPR 2 min
• IO/IV access
Rhythm shockable?
No
Yes
5
Shock
6
CPR 2 min
• Epinephrine every 3-5 min
• Consider advanced airway
Rhythm shockable?
No
Yes
7
Shock
8
CPR 2 min
• Amiodarone or lidocaine
• Treat reversible causes
10
CPR 2 min
• IO/IV access
• Epinephrine every 3-5 min
• Consider advanced airway
Rhythm shockable?
Yes
No
11
CPR 2 min
• Treat reversible causes
No
Rhythm shockable?
Yes
12
• Asystole/PEA → 10 or 11
• Organized rhythm → check pulse
• Pulse present (ROSC) → post–cardiac arrest care
Go to 5 or 7
© 2015 American Heart Association

CPR Quality

- Push hard (≥⅓ of anteroposterior diameter of chest) and fast (100-120/min) and allow complete chest recoil.
- Minimize interruptions in compressions.
- Avoid excessive ventilation.
- Rotate compressor every 2 minutes, or sooner if fatigued.
- If no advanced airway, 15:2 compression-ventilation ratio.

Shock Energy for Defibrillation

First shock 2 J/kg, second shock 4 J/kg, subsequent shocks ≥4 J/kg, maximum 10 J/kg or adult dose

Drug Therapy

- **Epinephrine IO/IV dose:** 0.01 mg/kg (0.1 mL/kg of 1:10,000 concentration). Repeat every 3-5 minutes.
  If no IO/IV access, may give endotracheal dose: 0.1 mg/kg (0.1 mL/kg of 1:1000 concentration).
- **Amiodarone IO/IV dose:** 5 mg/kg bolus during cardiac arrest. May repeat up to 2 times for refractory VF/pulseless VT.
- **Lidocaine IO/IV dose:** Initial: 1 mg/kg loading dose. Maintenance: 20-50 mcg/kg/min infusion (repeat bolus dose if infusion initiated >15 minutes after initial bolus therapy).

Advanced Airway

- Endotracheal intubation or supraglottic advanced airway
- Waveform capnography or capnometry to confirm and monitor ET tube placement
- Once advanced airway in place, give 1 breath every 6 seconds (10 breaths/min) with continuous chest compressions

Return of Spontaneous Circulation (ROSC)

- Pulse and blood pressure
- Spontaneous arterial pressure waves with intra-arterial monitoring

Reversible Causes

- **H**ypovolemia
- **H**ypoxia
- **H**ydrogen ion (acidosis)
- **H**ypoglycemia
- **H**ypo-/hyperkalemia
- **H**ypothermia
- **T**ension pneumothorax
- **T**amponade, cardiac
- **T**oxins
- **T**hrombosis, pulmonary
- **T**hrombosis, coronary

Fig. 86.13 2015 American Heart Association Pediatric Cardiac Arrest Algorithm. *CPR*, Cardiopulmonary resuscitation; *IO*, intraosseous; *IV*, intravenous; *PEA*, pulseless electric activity; *VF*, ventricular fibrillation; *VT*, ventricular tachycardia. (From de Caen AR, Berg MD, Chameides L, et al. Part 12: Pediatric Advanced Life Support: 2015 American Heart Association Guidelines Update for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. *Circulation*. 2015;132[18 suppl 2]:S526–S542.)

recommended in cardiac arrest. A dose of 0.02 mg/kg of atropine may be considered before emergency intubation.

Observational data from a registry of pediatric IHCA showed improved survival to hospital discharge with the use of ECMO cardiopulmonary resuscitation (ECPR) in patients with surgical cardiac diagnoses.[92] For children with underlying cardiac disease, when ECPR is initiated in a critical care setting, long-term survival has been reported even after more than 50 minutes of conventional CPR.[93] When ECPR is used during cardiac arrest, the outcome for children with underlying cardiac disease is better than for those with noncardiac disease.[94] Therefore, ECPR may be considered for pediatric patients with cardiac diagnoses who have IHCA in settings with existing extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) protocols, expertise, and equipment.

For infants and children remaining comatose after OHCA, it is reasonable either to maintain 5 days of continuous normothermia (36°C-37.5°C) or to maintain 2 days of initial continuous hypothermia (32°C-34°C), followed by 3 days of continuous normothermia. Fever (temperature 38°C or higher) should be aggressively treated with antipyretics and cooling devices after ROSC.

Myocardial dysfunction and vascular instability are common after resuscitation from cardiac arrest.[95] After ROSC, IV fluids and/or inotropes or vasoactive drugs is recommended to maintain a systolic blood pressure greater than fifth percentile for age. When appropriate resources are available, continuous arterial pressure monitoring is recommended to identify and treat hypotension.

HIGHLIGHTING THE SIMILARITIES OR DIFFERENCES VERSUS ADULT RESUSCITATION

The similarities and differences of pediatric and adult BLS are listed in Table 86.1 and discussed in the Basic Life Support section. The asphyxial nature of the majority of pediatric cardiac arrests necessitates effective ventilation as part of the CPR. Conventional CPR (rescue breathing and chest compressions) should be provided for pediatric cardiac arrests. For infants, a manual defibrillator is preferred when a shockable rhythm is identified by a trained healthcare provider. An AED with a pediatric attenuator is also preferred for children less than 8 years of age. If neither is available, an AED without a dose attenuator may be used. As previously described, the defibrillation energy dose and resuscitation medication doses are all weight based.

FOREIGN BODY AIRWAY OBSTRUCTION

Although recognition and management has improved, foreign body aspiration (FBA) remains common in children. FBA can occur in children of all ages, although most occur in children younger than 4 years of age, with a peak incidence between the first and second years of age.[96] Liquids are the most common source for infant choking while small objects (e.g., balloons, food) are responsible for most childhood choking.[97] Clinical symptoms and signs vary based on the location of the foreign body and the degree of obstruction. The clinical presentation may also change over time as a result of movement of the foreign body within the respiratory tract.

If a child is making sounds or coughing, the adult should carefully monitor but not intervene. If the child is choking, abdominal thrusts (the Heimlich maneuver) or back blows should be performed until the obstruction is relieved. In either circumstance, if the choking infant or child becomes unresponsive, CPR should be started with 30 chest compressions, followed by an airway examination to identify the presence of the foreign body. Two rescue breaths should be attempted. If the airway obstruction is not relieved, then CPR should be restarted and continued until the airway obstruction is relieved. If a foreign body is visible above the vocal cords during laryngoscopy, an attempt should be made to extract it with Magill forceps. If the foreign body is below the vocal cords, it is reasonable to attempt to push the foreign body more distally to reestablish a patent airway. This may allow for rescue oxygenation and ventilation while preparing for more definitive management.

DROWNING

Drowning is an important cause of OHCA in children and results in approximately 1100 pediatric deaths in the United States annually.[98] It remains one of the leading causes of death in children and adolescents worldwide. The most important positive prognostic indicators include shorter submersion time, salt versus freshwater submersion, and time from rescue to receiving CPR.[99,100] Thus prehospital care is paramount to improve patient outcome.

When a drowning infant or child is encountered by a single rescuer, a CPR pattern of 2 minutes of 30:2 compression-to-ventilation should be provided before summoning help. If two or more rescuers are available, then help should be immediately summoned. Oxygen and ventilation should be provided at the earliest opportunity because respiratory arrest is usually the primary etiology. Heimlich maneuver is not beneficial in the case of drowned patients because it potentially increases time to intubation and the possibility of gastric aspiration.[101] Cuffed ETTs are preferred due to decreased lung compliance secondary to submersion-induced lung injury. The outcomes of survivors of cardiac arrest secondary to drowning are usually better compared with other respiratory etiologies.[102] However, it is very difficult to predict prognosis from initial presentation, with many of the most unexpected physiologic recoveries occurring in the young; therefore, aggressive resuscitation of a patient following submersion should always be undertaken until either ROSC or arrival at the emergency department, at which point further efforts such as ECMO may be considered.

SUDDEN UNEXPLAINED DEATHS

Unexpected and unexplained deaths in infants and children can result from cardiac and noncardiac etiology. Cardiac etiology is often attributed to cardiac arrhythmia caused by cardiac ion-channel dysfunction secondary to genetic variations or mutations, which may be undetectable in a conventional autopsy. In 2% to 10% of infants or children and 14% to 20% of young adults who experience sudden cardiac death, channelopathies are found on autopsy.[103,104] First- and second-degree relatives of young children who unexpectedly die should undergo a genetic analysis to detect undiagnosed channelopathies. Noncardiac conditions include epilepsy, upper airway obstruction from infectious/noninfectious reasons resulting in respiratory arrest, febrile seizures, infection, metabolic disorders, and hippocampal pathology.[105]

TERMINATION OF PEDIATRIC RESUSCITATION ATTEMPTS

Accurate and reliable prognostication during pediatric cardiac arrest would allow termination of CPR when it is futile, while encouraging continued CPR in patients with a potential for good recovery. Several post-ROSC factors have been studied as possible predictors of survival and neurologic outcome after pediatric cardiac arrest. These include the presence of hypotension, serum neurologic biomarkers, and serum lactate. Although these factors are associated with better or worse outcomes, no single factor predicts outcome with sufficient accuracy to recommend termination or continuation of CPR. The AHA 2015 Guidelines for CPR and ECC on pediatric ACLS recommend that multiple variables are used when attempting to prognosticate outcomes during cardiac arrest.

Observational data from two small pediatric studies showed that a continuous and reactive tracing on an EEG performed in the first 7 days after cardiac arrest is associated with a significantly higher likelihood of good neurologic outcome at hospital discharge. In contrast, an EEG demonstrating a discontinuous or isoelectric tracing is associated with a poor neurologic outcome at hospital discharge.[106,107] Thus EEG within the first 7 days after pediatric cardiac arrest may be considered in prognosticating neurologic outcome at the time of hospital discharge, although it should obviously never be used as the sole criterion.

Prolonged resuscitations might be considered for infants and children with recurring or refractory VF or VT, particularly if cardiopulmonary support with ECMO is available and the source for the cardiac arrest is believed reversible.[108]

Future of Resuscitation Science and Care

INDIVIDUALIZED CARDIOPULMONARY RESUSCITATION

As described earlier in this chapter, survival and neurologic outcome in victims of cardiac arrest are critically dependent on the duration of the "no-flow" arrest (circulatory arrest with no chest compressions), as well as the quality of chest compressions during the "low-flow" phase of CPR. Therefore, it is important to provide early and high-quality chest compressions and to use every measure to facilitate early ROSC, irrespective of the cause of the arrest. Recent data have, nevertheless, shown that in addition to this general approach, interventions aimed at specific conditions or physiologic parameters can also affect the chance of ROSC and survival. This individualized approach to CPR has become increasingly important given the persistent poor outcome after cardiac arrest despite efforts to improve implementation of current guidelines, AED accessibility, and provider training.

The use of ECG filtering techniques and fibrillation analysis algorithms has been investigated to identify the optimal time for successful defibrillation from VF. A problem coherent to this technique has been the need to stop chest compressions for rhythm analysis, which is proven to adversely affect the effectiveness of the subsequent chest compressions. The recent development of the "See-Through" technology to extract CPR artifacts from the ECG is promising, as it allows continued chest compressions during ECG analysis but has been criticized for a relatively low specificity that prohibits its incorporation into the AED diagnostic algorithm.[109] Amplitude spectral area (AMSA) is an index for analyzing ventricular fibrillation waveforms to predict ROSC after defibrillation. Nakagawa and associates showed that change in AMSA (ΔAMSA) before the electric shock reliably predicted ROSC in 285 VF patients.[110] Segal and associates report a moderate positive correlation between $ETCO_2$ and AMSA during CPR in pigs.[111]

As was described in the 2015 AHA Guidelines for CPR and ECC ACLS update, provider performance feedback during CPR can also help optimize CPR quality. Despite the absence of convincing evidence, it is reasonable to use quantitative waveform capnography, arterial pressure monitoring, and central venous oxygen saturation when feasible to monitor and optimize CPR quality and guide vasopressor therapy. Gonzalez-Otero and associates recently reported that an accelerometer-based real-time feedback system to guide rescuers during CPR can improve adherence to published resuscitation guidelines. Spectral analysis of chest acceleration was used to compute the depth and rate of chest compressions.[112] The use of a novel CPR card feedback device was also shown to improve the quality of chest compressions.[113]

In addition to interventions aimed at improving the quality of chest compressions, recent data suggest that optimization of oxygen delivery to the ischemic tissue can also be complemented by enhanced ventilation strategies. Chest Compression Synchronized Ventilation (CCSV) is designed to detect starting chest compression efforts and to initiate an instant inspiratory pressure through reprogramming of the Pressure Support Ventilation mode. It comprises an inverse trigger, cycling mechanisms, and higher inspiratory pressure levels up to 60 mbar. Kill and colleagues showed that when compared with Intermitted Positive Pressure Ventilation (IPPV), CCSV results in a higher PaO_2 without an arterial blood pressure drop during resuscitation in pigs.[114] The same group of investigators reported that CCSV is associated with better delivery of the respiratory parameters and minimizes excessive inspiratory pressures that can potentially lead to pulmonary injury during simulated CPR.[115]

Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation

ECMO with CPR (ECPR) continues to evolve as a therapeutic option for refractory cardiac arrest.[116] Its use has significantly increased over the last few years, and new techniques are being developed to enhance its feasibility and access.[117] In a meta-analysis of 10 recent publications, Kim and associates reported a trend toward improved short-term (3-6 months) survival and neurologic outcome with ECPR as compared with conventional CPR.[118] Debaty and associates reported that shorter low-flow duration, shockable cardiac rhythm, higher arterial pH value, and lower serum lactate concentration on hospital admission are associated with better outcomes for ECPR recipients after OHCA.[119] Dennis and associates confirmed that in selected patients with refractory cardiac arrest, ECPR may provide temporary support as a bridge to intervention or recovery. Favorable survival and neurologic outcomes were reported in one-third of patients with pre-ECMO lactate levels predictive of mortality.[120]

Controlled Automated Reperfusion of the whole body (CARL) is a new type of extracorporeal circulation device that provides continuous adjustments of reperfusion conditions with the recirculating blood according to the individual readings of each patient. It combines measures to control arterial blood pressure and blood flow with TTM, as well as control of the acid-base status, oxygen content, osmolarity, and electrolytes to minimize the ischemia-reperfusion injuries. Based on data from experimental studies, recently Trummer and associates successfully employed CARL after 120 minutes of normothermic CPR in a patient. Except for a spinal cord injury resulting in lower extremity weakness, the patient was reported to have survived without any neurologic deficits.[121]

Emergency preservation for delayed resuscitation (EPR) or suspended animation is another promising approach to enable intact survival in patients who are expected to fail conventional resuscitation techniques. It was developed by the Safar team at the University of Pittsburgh to apply profound hypothermia to preserve the organism and avoid irreversible organ damage and buy enough time to obtain surgical hemostasis in victims of exsanguination cardiac arrest. This concept has been tested successfully in multiple large animal studies, confirming that full recovery is possible for up to 2 hours of no-flow cardiac arrest when profound hypothermia to 10°C is induced within minutes, and is then followed by delayed resuscitation using cardiopulmonary bypass or extracorporeal circulation. Tisherman and associates recently reported the development of the first multicenter clinical trial of EPR in victims of traumatic cardiac arrest.[122] If successful, EPR can also be employed as an alternative resuscitation approach in patients with refractory intraoperative exsanguination cardiac arrest.

COORDINATED POSTRESUSCITATION CARE

Postresuscitation syndrome is a complex pathophysiologic condition first described by Negovski and associates in the 1970s, and can significantly affect the outcome after cardiac arrest.[123] It is characterized by myocardial dysfunction, neurologic injury, and systemic perturbations associated with the reperfusion of the ischemic tissue. Post–cardiac arrest care must therefore incorporate measures to minimize the systemic ischemic-reperfusion response, improve myocardial function, and prevent postresuscitation brain injury and other systemic complications. It is recommended that survivors of cardiac arrest are admitted to specialized centers for early goal-directed therapy, including optimization of the hemodynamics and respiratory parameters, urgent coronary angiography, and TTM. It is important to note that TTM is considered in all comatose survivors of cardiac arrest, whose temperature should be monitored closely (goal between 32°C and 36°C) for at least 24 hours. It is also recommended to continue monitoring the temperature and maintain normothermia (treat fever) beyond this window. Prognostication should not occur until 72 hours after ROSC or, if TTM is provided, 72 hours after completion of TTM. A useful tool to predict outcome after cardiac arrest is the GO-FAR score, which was derived from the Get With the Guidelines-Resuscitation registry and identifies a large proportion of patients (28.3%) who have a low or very low likelihood (<2%) of achieving good outcome.[124] Seizure control is also important, but neuroprotective agents such as thiopental, magnesium, and calcium channel inhibitors are not routinely administered and have not been shown to improve outcomes. With the evolution of ECPR, nevertheless, there has been a resurgence of studies aimed at identifying effective neuroprotective agents. Examples include adenosine 2A receptor (A2AR) agonists, which have been suggested to attenuate the ischemia-reperfusion injury during ECPR.[125] A2AR activation can reduce proinflammatory mediators, endothelial adhesion molecule expression, and transmigration of circulating inflammatory cells into tissue through inhibition of lymphocytes, macrophages, monocytes, platelets, and neutrophils. Inhaled nitric oxide (iNO) is also an emerging approach to the treatment of the post–cardiac arrest syndrome and to reducing the ischemia-reperfusion injury. In a pig model of cardiac arrest precipitated by lipopolysaccharide–induced hypotension, Morgan and associates showed that pulmonary vasodilation with iNO improved short-term survival and intra-arrest hemodynamics.[126] Human studies are forthcoming, but there are currently insufficient data to recommend routine use of any of these novel therapies.

Acknowledgment

The editors and publisher would like to thank Drs. Brian P. McGlinch and Roger D. White for contributing a chapter on this topic in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Meaney PA, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;128(4):417.
2. Stiell IG, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40(4):1192.
3. Abella BS, et al. *Circulation*. 2005;111(4):428.
4. Prevention CfDCa, et al. *2014 Cardiac Arrest Registry to Enhance Survival (CARES) National Summary Report*; 2014. https://mycares.net/sitepages/uploads/2018/2017flipbook/index.html
5. Mozaffarian D, et al. *Circulation*. 2015;131(4):e29.
6. Daya MR, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2015;91:108.
7. Wnent J, et al. *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med*. 2015;23:7.
8. Stromsoe A, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2015;36(14):863.
9. Ristagno G, et al. *Crit Care Clin*. 2009;25(1):133. ix.
10. Criley JM, et al. *Circulation*. 1986;74(6 Pt 2):Iv42.
11. Kuhn C, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1991;22(3):275.
12. Deshmukh HG, et al. *Chest*. 1989;95(5):1092.
13. Redberg RF, et al. *Circulation*. 1993;88(2):534.
14. Higano ST, et al. *Mayo Clinic proceedings*. 1990;65(11):1432.
15. Bahr J, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1997;35(1):23.
16. Stiell IG, et al. *Circulation*. 2014;130(22):1962.
17. Idris AH, et al. *Crit care Med*. 2015;43(4):840.
18. Christenson J, et al. *Circulation*. 2009;120(13):1241.
19. Vaillancourt C, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2011;82(12):1501.
20. Svensson L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(5):434.
21. Rea TD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(5):423.
22. Baker PW, et al. *Resuscitation*. Dec 2008;79(3):424.
23. Jacobs IG, et al. *Emergency medicine Australasia : EMA*. 2005;17(1):39.

24. Deakin CD, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2011;17(3):231.
25. Diack AW, et al. *Med Instrum*. 1979;13(2):78.
26. Schneider T, et al. *Circulation*. 2000;102(15):1780.
27. Link MS, et al. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18 suppl 2):S444.
28. Jost D, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;121(14):1614.
29. Berdowski J, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;122(11):1101.
30. Davis D, et al. *J Hosp Med*. 2016;11(4):264.
31. Gudipati CV, et al. *Circulation*. 1988;77(1):234.
32. Sanders AB, et al. *Jama*. 1989;262(10):1347.
33. Callaham M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1990;18(4):358.
34. Sanders AB, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1985;3(1):11.
35. Rivers EP, et al. *Annals of emergency medicine*. 1992;21(9):1094.
36. Meaney PA, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;128(4):417.
37. Einav S, et al. *Acad Emerg Med*. May 2011;18(5):468.
38. Kern KB, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(11 Suppl):N186.
39. Travers AH, et al. *Circulation*. 2010;122(18 Suppl 3):S676.
40. Hasegawa K, et al. *Jama*. 2013;309(3):257.
41. Shin SD, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2012;83(3):313.
42. Tanabe S, et al. *J Emerg Med*. 2013;44(2):389.
43. Grmec S, et al. *Intensive care medicine*. 2002;28(6):701.
44. Donnino MW, et al. *BMJ (Clinical research ed.)*. 2014;348:g3028.
45. Goto Y, et al. *Critical Care (London, England)*. 2013;17(5):R188.
46. Gueugniaud PY, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;339(22):1595.
47. Mentzelopoulos SD, et al. *Jama*. 2013;310(3):270.
48. Peberdy MA, et al. *Circulation*. 2017;135(24):e1115–e1134.
49. Wik L, et al. *Jama*. 2005;293(3):299.
50. Olasveengen TM, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2008;76(2):185.
51. Rubertsson S, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23(12):1984.
52. Rubertsson S, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2005;65(3):357.
53. Axelsson C, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(10):1099.
54. Rubertsson S, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311(1):53.
55. Varriale P, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25(10):1717.
56. Memtsoudis SG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(6):1653.
57. Tsou PY, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2017;114:92.
58. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Injury prevention and control: prescription drug overdose*. http://www.cdc.gov/drugoverdose/index.html.
59. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Fatal injury data*. http://www.cdc.gov/injury/wisqars/fatal.html.
60. Feigin VL, et al. *Neuroepidemiology*. 2015;45(3):161.
61. Townsend N, et al. *Eur Heart J*. 2016;37(42):3232.
62. National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke rt-PA Stroke Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333(24):1581.
63. Hacke W, et al. *Lancet (London, England)*. 2004;363(9411):768.
64. Dumas F, et al. *Circ Cardiovasc Interv*. 2010;3(3):200.
65. Hollenbeck RD, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2014;85(1):88.
66. Cronier P, et al. *Critical Care (London, England)*. 2011;15(3):R122.
67. Zanuttini D, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2012;110(12):1723.
68. Bro-Jeppesen J, et al. *Eur Heart J Acute Cardiovasc Care*. 2012;1(4):291.
69. Callaway CW, et al. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18 suppl 2):S465.
70. Bernard SA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(8):557.
71. Hypothermia after Cardiac Arrest Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(8):549.
72. Steen PA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58(6):527.
73. Yenari MA, et al. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2012;13(4):267.
74. Nielsen N, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(23):2197.
75. Diringer MN. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(2):559.
76. Bernard SA, et al. *Circulation*. 2016;134(11):797.
77. Johnson NJ, et al. *Chest*. 2018;153(6):1466.
78. Kilgannon JH, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;303(21):2165.
79. Malhotra A. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357:1113.
80. Finfer S, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360(13):1283.
81. Atkins DL, et al. *Circulation*. 2009;119(11):1484.
82. Sutton RM, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2015;93:150.
83. Girotra S, et al. *Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes*. 2013;6(1):42.
84. Matos RI, et al. *Circulation*. 2013;127(4):442.
85. Berg RA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27(9):1893.
86. Yannopoulos D, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(1):254.
87. Kitamura T, et al. *Lancet (London, England)*. 2010;375(9723):1347.
88. Goto Y, et al. *J Am Heart Assoc*. 2014;3(3):e000499.
89. Atkins DL, et al. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18 Suppl 2):S519.
90. Naim MY, et al. *JAMA Pediatrics*. 2017;171(2):133.
91. de Caen AR, et al. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18 Suppl 2):S526.
92. Ortmann L, et al. *Circulation*. 2011;124(21):2329.
93. Morris MC, et al. *Pediatric Crit Care Med*. 2004;5(5):440.
94. Raymond TT, et al. *Pediatric Crit Care Med*. 2010;11(3):362.
95. Laurent I, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2002;40(12):2110.
96. Reilly JS, et al. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1996;43(6):1403.
97. Tan HK, et al. *Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol*. 2000;56(2):91.
98. Bowman SM, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2012;129(2):275.
99. Eich C, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2007;75(1):42.
100. Quan L, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2016;104:63.
101. Rosen P, et al. *J Emerg Med*. 1995;13(3):397.
102. Slomine BS, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2017;115:178.
103. Chugh SS, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;43(9):1625.
104. Bagnall RD, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;374(25):2441.
105. Hefti MM, et al. *Forensic Sci Med Pathol*. 2016;12(1):4.
106. Kessler SK, et al. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;14(1):37.
107. Nishisaki A, et al. *Pediatric Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(1):10.
108. Kelly RB, et al. *ASAIO J*. 2005;51(5):665.
109. Affatato R, et al. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2016;22(3):199.
110. Nakagawa Y, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2017;113:8.
111. Segal N, et al. *Physiol Rep*. 2017;5(17).
112. Gonzalez-Otero DM, et al. *PLoS One*. 2018 (2):e0192810.
113. White AE, et al. *Singapore Med J*. 2017;58(7):438.
114. Kill C, et al. *PloS One*. 2015;10(5):e0127759.
115. Speer T, et al. *Adv Ther*. 2017;34(10):2333.
116. Amberman K, et al. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2010;42(3):238.
117. Richardson AS, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2017;112:34.
118. Kim SJ, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2016;103:106.
119. Debaty G, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2017;112:1.
120. Dennis M, et al. *Int J Cardiol*. 2017;231:131.
121. Trummer G, et al. *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med*. 2017;25(1):66.
122. Tisherman SA, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2017;83(5):803.
123. Negovsky VA, et al. *Resuscitation*. 1972;1(1):1.
124. Ebell MH, et al. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2013;173(20):1872.
125. Mehaffey JH, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2019;269(6):1176.
126. Morgan RW, et al. *Am J respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;197(7):905.

This page intentionally left blank

References

1. Meaney PA, Bobrow BJ, Mancini ME, et al. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation quality: [corrected] improving cardiac resuscitation outcomes both inside and outside the hospital: a consensus statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2013;128(4):417–435.
2. Stiell IG, Brown SP, Christenson J, et al. What is the role of chest compression depth during out-of-hospital cardiac arrest resuscitation? *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40(4):1192–1198.
3. Abella BS, Sandbo N, Vassilatos P, et al. Chest compression rates during cardiopulmonary resuscitation are suboptimal: a prospective study during in-hospital cardiac arrest. *Circulation*. 2005;111(4):428–434.
4. Prevention CfDCa. *2014 Cardiac Arrest Registry to Enhance Survival (CARES) National Summary Report*. 2014. https://mycares.net/sitepages/uploads/2018/2017flipbook/index.html
5. Mozaffarian D, Benjamin EJ, Go AS, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics--2015 update: a report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2015;131(4):e29–322.
6. Daya MR, Schmicker RH, Zive DM, et al. Out-of-hospital cardiac arrest survival improving over time: results from the Resuscitation Outcomes Consortium (ROC). *Resuscitation*. 2015;91:108–115.
7. Wnent J, Masterson S, Grasner JT, et al. EuReCa ONE - 27 Nations, ONE Europe, ONE Registry: a prospective observational analysis over one month in 27 resuscitation registries in Europe - the EuReCa ONE study protocol. *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med*. 2015;23:7.
8. Stromsoe A, Svensson L, Axelsson AB, et al. Improved outcome in Sweden after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest and possible association with improvements in every link in the chain of survival. *Eur Heart J*. 2015;36(14):863–871.
9. Ristagno G, Tang W, Weil MH. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation: from the beginning to the present day. *Crit Care Clin*. 2009;25(1):133–151. ix.
10. Criley JM, Niemann JT, Rosborough JP, Hausknecht M. Modifications of cardiopulmonary resuscitation based on the cough. *Circulation*. 1986;74(6 Pt 2):IV42–50.
11. Kuhn C, Juchems R, Frese W. Evidence for the 'cardiac pump theory' in cardiopulmonary resuscitation in man by transesophageal echocardiography. *Resuscitation*. 1991;22(3):275–282.
12. Deshmukh HG, Weil MH, Gudipati CV, Trevino RP, Bisera J, Rackow EC. Mechanism of blood flow generated by precordial compression during CPR. I. Studies on closed chest precordial compression. *Chest*. 1989;95(5):1092–1099.
13. Redberg RF, Tucker KJ, Cohen TJ, Dutton JP, Callaham ML, Schiller NB. Physiology of blood flow during cardiopulmonary resuscitation. A transesophageal echocardiographic study. *Circulation*. 1993;88(2):534–542.
14. Higano ST, Oh JK, Ewy GA, Seward JB. The mechanism of blood flow during closed chest cardiac massage in humans: transesophageal echocardiographic observations. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 1990;65(11):1432–1440.
15. Bahr J, Klingler H, Panzer W, Rode H, Kettler D. Skills of lay people in checking the carotid pulse. *Resuscitation*. 1997;35(1):23–26.
16. Stiell IG, Brown SP, Nichol G, et al. What is the optimal chest compression depth during out-of-hospital cardiac arrest resuscitation of adult patients? *Circulation*. 2014;130(22):1962–1970.
17. Idris AH, Guffey D, Pepe PE, et al. Chest compression rates and survival following out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(4):840–848.
18. Christenson J, Andrusiek D, Everson-Stewart S, et al. Chest compression fraction determines survival in patients with out-of-hospital ventricular fibrillation. *Circulation*. 2009;120(13):1241–1247.
19. Vaillancourt C, Everson-Stewart S, Christenson J, et al. The impact of increased chest compression fraction on return of spontaneous circulation for out-of-hospital cardiac arrest patients not in ventricular fibrillation. *Resuscitation*. 2011;82(12):1501–1507.
20. Svensson L, Bohm K, Castren M, et al. Compression-only CPR or standard CPR in out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(5):434–442.
21. Rea TD, Fahrenbruch C, Culley L, et al. CPR with chest compression alone or with rescue breathing. *N Engl J Med*. 2010;363(5):423–433.
22. Baker PW, Conway J, Cotton C, et al. Defibrillation or cardiopulmonary resuscitation first for patients with out-of-hospital cardiac arrests found by paramedics to be in ventricular fibrillation? A randomised control trial. *Resuscitation*. 2008;79(3):424–431.
23. Jacobs IG, Finn JC, Oxer HF, Jelinek GA. CPR before defibrillation in out-of-hospital cardiac arrest: a randomized trial. *Emergency Medicine Australasia : EMA*. 2005;17(1):39–45.
24. Deakin CD. Advances in defibrillation. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2011;17(3):231–235.
25. Diack AW, Welborn WS, Rullman RG, Walter CW, Wayne MA. An automatic cardiac resuscitator for emergency treatment of cardiac arrest. *Med Instrum*. 1979;13(2):78–83.
26. Schneider T, Martens PR, Paschen H, et al. Multicenter, randomized, controlled trial of 150-J biphasic shocks compared with 200- to 360-J monophasic shocks in the resuscitation of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest victims. Optimized Response to Cardiac Arrest (ORCA) Investigators. *Circulation*. 2000;102(15):1780–1787.
27. Link MS, Berkow LC, Kudenchuk PJ, et al. Part 7: adult advanced cardiovascular life support: 2015 American Heart Association guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18 suppl 2):S444–464.
28. Jost D, Degrange H, Verret C, et al. DEFI 2005: a randomized controlled trial of the effect of automated external defibrillator cardiopulmonary resuscitation protocol on outcome from out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Circulation*. 2010;121(14):1614–1622.
29. Berdowski J, ten Haaf M, Tijssen JG, Chapman FW, Koster RW. Time in recurrent ventricular fibrillation and survival after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Circulation*. 2010;122(11):1101–1108.
30. Davis D, Aguilar SA, Sell R, Minokadeh A, Husa R. A focused investigation of expedited, stack of three shocks versus chest compressions first followed by single shocks for monitored ventricular fibrillation/ventricular tachycardia cardiopulmonary arrest in an in-hospital setting. *J Hosp Med*. 2016;11(4):264–268.
31. Gudipati CV, Weil MH, Bisera J, Deshmukh HG, Rackow EC. Expired carbon dioxide: a noninvasive monitor of cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Circulation*. 1988;77(1):234–239.
32. Sanders AB, Kern KB, Otto CW, Milander MM, Ewy GA. End-tidal carbon dioxide monitoring during cardiopulmonary resuscitation. A prognostic indicator for survival. *JAMA*. 1989;262(10):1347–1351.
33. Callaham M, Barton C. Prediction of outcome of cardiopulmonary resuscitation from end-tidal carbon dioxide concentration. *Crit Care Med*. 1990;18(4):358–362.
34. Sanders AB, Ogle M, Ewy GA. Coronary perfusion pressure during cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Am J Emerg Med*. 1985;3(1):11–14.
35. Rivers EP, Martin GB, Smithline H, et al. The clinical implications of continuous central venous oxygen saturation during human CPR. *Ann Emerg Med*. 1992;21(9):1094–1101.
36. Meaney PA, Bobrow BJ, Mancini ME, et al. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation quality: [corrected] improving cardiac resuscitation outcomes both inside and outside the hospital: a consensus statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2013;128(4):417–435.
37. Einav S, Bromiker R, Weiniger CF, Matot I. Mathematical modeling for prediction of survival from resuscitation based on computerized continuous capnography: proof of concept. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2011;18(5):468–475.
38. Kern KB. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation without ventilation. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(suppl 11):N186–189.
39. Travers AH, Rea TD, Bobrow BJ, et al. Part 4: CPR overview: 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*. 2010;122(18 suppl 3):S676–S684.
40. Hasegawa K, Hiraide A, Chang Y, Brown DF. Association of prehospital advanced airway management with neurologic outcome and survival in patients with out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *JAMA*. 2013;309(3):257–266.
41. Shin SD, Ahn KO, Song KJ, Park CB, Lee EJ. Out-of-hospital airway management and cardiac arrest outcomes: a propensity score matched analysis. *Resuscitation*. 2012;83(3):313–319.
42. Tanabe S, Ogawa T, Akahane M, et al. Comparison of neurological outcome between tracheal intubation and supraglottic airway device insertion of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest patients: a nationwide, population-based, observational study. *J Emerg Med*. 2013;44(2):389–397.
43. Grmec S. Comparison of three different methods to confirm tracheal tube placement in emergency intubation. *Intensive Care Med*. 2002;28(6):701–704.
44. Donnino MW, Salciccioli JD, Howell MD, et al. Time to administration of epinephrine and outcome after in-hospital cardiac arrest with non-shockable rhythms: retrospective analysis of large in-hospital data registry. *BMJ (Clinical research ed.)*. 2014;348:g3028.

45. Goto Y, Maeda T, Goto Y. Effects of prehospital epinephrine during out-of-hospital cardiac arrest with initial non-shockable rhythm: an observational cohort study. *Critical Care (London, England)*. 2013;17(5):R188.
46. Gueugniaud PY, Mols P, Goldstein P, et al. A comparison of repeated high doses and repeated standard doses of epinephrine for cardiac arrest outside the hospital. European Epinephrine Study Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;339(22):1595–1601.
47. Mentzelopoulos SD, Malachias S, Chamos C, et al. Vasopressin, steroids, and epinephrine and neurologically favorable survival after in-hospital cardiac arrest: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2013;310(3):270–279.
48. Peberdy MA, Gluck JA, Ornato JP, et al. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation in adults and children with mechanical circulatory support: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2017;135(24):e1115–e1134.
49. Wik L, Kramer-Johansen J, Myklebust H, et al. Quality of cardiopulmonary resuscitation during out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *JAMA*. 2005;293(3):299–304.
50. Olasveengen TM, Wik L, Steen PA. Quality of cardiopulmonary resuscitation before and during transport in out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Resuscitation*. 2008;76(2):185–190.
51. Rubertsson S, Grenvik A, Zemgulis V, Wiklund L. Systemic perfusion pressure and blood flow before and after administration of epinephrine during experimental cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Crit Care Med*. 1995;23(12):1984–1996.
52. Rubertsson S, Karlsten R. Increased cortical cerebral blood flow with LUCAS; a new device for mechanical chest compressions compared to standard external compressions during experimental cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Resuscitation*. 2005;65(3):357–363.
53. Axelsson C, Karlsson T, Axelsson AB, Herlitz J. Mechanical active compression-decompression cardiopulmonary resuscitation (ACD-CPR) versus manual CPR according to pressure of end tidal carbon dioxide (P(ET)CO2) during CPR in out-of-hospital cardiac arrest (OHCA). *Resuscitation*. 2009;80(10):1099–1103.
54. Rubertsson S, Lindgren E, Smekal D, et al. Mechanical chest compressions and simultaneous defibrillation vs conventional cardiopulmonary resuscitation in out-of-hospital cardiac arrest: the LINC randomized trial. *JAMA*. 2014;311(1):53–61.
55. Varriale P, Maldonado JM. Echocardiographic observations during in hospital cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Crit Care Med*. 1997;25(10):1717–1720.
56. Memtsoudis SG, Rosenberger P, Loffler M, et al. The usefulness of transesophageal echocardiography during intraoperative cardiac arrest in noncardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2006;102(6):1653–1657.
57. Tsou PY, Kurbedin J, Chen YS, et al. Accuracy of point-of-care focused echocardiography in predicting outcome of resuscitation in cardiac arrest patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Resuscitation*. May 2017;114:92–99.
58. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Injury prevention and control: prescription drug overdose. http://www.cdc.gov/drugoverdose/index.html. Accessed March 17, 2018.
59. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Fatal injury data. http://www.cdc.gov/injury/wisqars/fatal.html. Accessed April 4, 2018.
60. Feigin VL, Krishnamurthi RV, Parmar P, et al. Update on the global burden of ischemic and hemorrhagic stroke in 1990-2013: the GBD 2013 study. *Neuroepidemiology*. 2015;45(3):161–176.
61. Townsend N, Wilson L, Bhatnagar P, Wickramasinghe K, Rayner M, Nichols M. Cardiovascular disease in Europe: epidemiological update 2016. *Eur Heart J*. 2016;37(42):3232–3245.
62. National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke rt-PA Stroke Study Group. Tissue plasminogen activator for acute ischemic stroke. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333(24):1581–1587.
63. Hacke W, Donnan G, Fieschi C, et al. Association of outcome with early stroke treatment: pooled analysis of ATLANTIS, ECASS, and NINDS rt-PA stroke trials. *Lancet (London, England)*. 2004;363(9411):768–774.
64. Dumas F, Cariou A, Manzo-Silberman S, et al. Immediate percutaneous coronary intervention is associated with better survival after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest: insights from the PROCAT (Parisian Region Out of hospital Cardiac ArresT) registry. *Circ Cardiovasc Interv*. 2010;3(3):200–207.
65. Hollenbeck RD, McPherson JA, Mooney MR, et al. Early cardiac catheterization is associated with improved survival in comatose survivors of cardiac arrest without STEMI. *Resuscitation*. 2014;85(1):88–95.
66. Cronier P, Vignon P, Bouferrache K, et al. Impact of routine percutaneous coronary intervention after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest due to ventricular fibrillation. *Crit Care (London, England)*. 2011;15(3):R122.
67. Zanuttini D, Armellini I, Nucifora G, et al. Impact of emergency coronary angiography on in-hospital outcome of unconscious survivors after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Am J Cardiol*. 2012;110(12):1723–1728.
68. Bro-Jeppesen J, Kjaergaard J, Wanscher M, et al. Emergency coronary angiography in comatose cardiac arrest patients: do real-life experiences support the guidelines? *Eur Heart J Acute Cardiovasc Care*. 2012;1(4):291–301.
69. Callaway CW, Donnino MW, Fink EL, et al. Part 8: Post-cardiac arrest care: 2015 American Heart Association guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18 suppl 2):S465–482.
70. Bernard SA, Gray TW, Buist MD, et al. Treatment of comatose survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest with induced hypothermia. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(8):557–563.
71. Hypothermia after Cardiac Arrest Study Group. Mild therapeutic hypothermia to improve the neurologic outcome after cardiac arrest. *N Engl J Med*. 2002;346(8):549–556.
72. Steen PA, Newberg L, Milde JH, Michenfelder JD. Hypothermia and barbiturates: individual and combined effects on canine cerebral oxygen consumption. *Anesthesiology*. 1983;58(6):527–532.
73. Yenari MA, Han HS. Neuroprotective mechanisms of hypothermia in brain ischaemia. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2012;13(4):267–278.
74. Nielsen N, Wetterslev J, Cronberg T, et al. Targeted temperature management at 33 degrees C versus 36 degrees C after cardiac arrest. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(23):2197–2206.
75. Diringer MN. Treatment of fever in the neurologic intensive care unit with a catheter-based heat exchange system. *Crit Care Med*. 2004;32(2):559–564.
76. Bernard SA, Smith K, Finn J, et al. Induction of therapeutic hypothermia during out-of-hospital cardiac arrest using a rapid infusion of cold saline: The RINSE trial (rapid infusion of cold normal saline). *Circulation*. 2016;134(11):797–805.
77. Johnson NJ, Carlbom DJ, Gaieski DF. Ventilator management and respiratory care after cardiac arrest: oxygenation, ventilation, infection, and injury. *Chest*. 2018;153(6):1466–1477.
78. Kilgannon JH, Jones AE, Shapiro NI, et al. Association between arterial hyperoxia following resuscitation from cardiac arrest and in-hospital mortality. *JAMA*. 2010;303(21):2165–2171.
79. Malhotra A. Low-tidal volume ventilation in acute respiratory distress syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357:1113–1120.
80. Finfer S, Chittock DR, Su SY, et al. Intensive versus conventional glucose control in critically ill patients. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360(13):1283–1297.
81. Atkins DL, Everson-Stewart S, Sears GK, et al. Epidemiology and outcomes from out-of-hospital cardiac arrest in children: the resuscitation outcomes consortium epistry-cardiac arrest. *Circulation*. 2009;119(11):1484–1491.
82. Sutton RM, Case E, Brown SP, et al. A quantitative analysis of out-of-hospital pediatric and adolescent resuscitation quality--a report from the ROC epistry-cardiac arrest. *Resuscitation*. 2015;93:150–157.
83. Girotra S, Spertus JA, Li Y, Berg RA, Nadkarni VM, Chan PS. Survival trends in pediatric in-hospital cardiac arrests: an analysis from Get With the Guidelines-Resuscitation. *Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes*. 2013;6(1):42–49.
84. Matos RI, Watson RS, Nadkarni VM, et al. Duration of cardiopulmonary resuscitation and illness category impact survival and neurologic outcomes for in-hospital pediatric cardiac arrests. *Circulation*. 2013;127(4):442–451.
85. Berg RA, Hilwig RW, Kern KB, Babar I, Ewy GA. Simulated mouth-to-mouth ventilation and chest compressions (bystander cardiopulmonary resuscitation) improves outcome in a swine model of prehospital pediatric asphyxial cardiac arrest. *Crit Care Med*. 1999;27(9):1893–1899.
86. Yannopoulos D, Matsuura T, McKnite S, et al. No assisted ventilation cardiopulmonary resuscitation and 24-hour neurological outcomes in a porcine model of cardiac arrest. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(1):254–260.
87. Kitamura T, Iwami T, Kawamura T, et al. Conventional and chest-compression-only cardiopulmonary resuscitation by bystanders for

children who have out-of-hospital cardiac arrests: a prospective, nationwide, population-based cohort study. *Lancet (London, England)*. 2010;375(9723):1347–1354.

88. Goto Y, Maeda T, Goto Y. Impact of dispatcher-assisted bystander cardiopulmonary resuscitation on neurological outcomes in children with out-of-hospital cardiac arrests: a prospective, nationwide, population-based cohort study. *J Am Heart Assoc*. 2014;3(3):e000499.
89. Atkins DL, Berger S, Duff JP, et al. Part 11: pediatric basic life support and cardiopulmonary resuscitation quality: 2015 American Heart Association guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18 suppl 2):S519–525.
90. Naim MY, Burke RV, McNally BF, et al. Association of bystander cardiopulmonary resuscitation with overall and neurologically favorable survival after pediatric out-of-hospital cardiac arrest in the United States: a report from the Cardiac Arrest Registry to Enhance Survival Surveillance Registry. *JAMA Pediatr*. 2017;171(2):133–141.
91. de Caen AR, Berg MD, Chameides L, et al. Part 12: pediatric advanced life support: 2015 American Heart Association guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. *Circulation*. 2015;132(18 suppl 2):S526–542.
92. Ortmann L, Prodhan P, Gossett J, et al. Outcomes after in-hospital cardiac arrest in children with cardiac disease: a report from Get With the Guidelines--Resuscitation. *Circulation*. 2011;124(21):2329–2337.
93. Morris MC, Wernovsky G, Nadkarni VM. Survival outcomes after extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation instituted during active chest compressions following refractory in-hospital pediatric cardiac arrest. *Pediatric Crit Care Med*. 2004;5(5):440–446.
94. Raymond TT, Cunnyngham CB, Thompson MT, Thomas JA, Dalton HJ, Nadkarni VM. Outcomes among neonates, infants, and children after extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation for refractory inhospital pediatric cardiac arrest: a report from the National Registry of Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation. *Pediatric Crit Care Med*. 2010;11(3):362–371.
95. Laurent I, Monchi M, Chiche JD, et al. Reversible myocardial dysfunction in survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2002;40(12):2110–2116.
96. Reilly JS, Cook SP, Stool D, Rider G. Prevention and management of aerodigestive foreign body injuries in childhood. *Pediatr Clin North Am*. 1996;43(6):1403–1411.
97. Tan HK, Brown K, McGill T, Kenna MA, Lund DP, Healy GB. Airway foreign bodies (FB): a 10-year review. *Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol*. 2000;56(2):91–99.
98. Bowman SM, Aitken ME, Robbins JM, Baker SP. Trends in US pediatric drowning hospitalizations, 1993-2008. *Pediatrics*. 2012;129(2):275–281.
99. Eich C, Brauer A, Timmermann A, et al. Outcome of 12 drowned children with attempted resuscitation on cardiopulmonary bypass: an analysis of variables based on the Utstein Style for Drowning. *Resuscitation*. 2007;75(1):42–52.
100. Quan L, Bierens JJ, Lis R, Rowhani-Rahbar A, Morley P, Perkins GD. Predicting outcome of drowning at the scene: a systematic review and meta-analyses. *Resuscitation*. 2016;104:63–75.
101. Rosen P, Stoto M, Harley J. The use of the Heimlich maneuver in near drowning: Institute of Medicine report. *J Emerg Med*. 1995;13(3):397–405.
102. Slomine BS, Nadkarni VM, Christensen JR, et al. Pediatric cardiac arrest due to drowning and other respiratory etiologies: neurobehavioral outcomes in initially comatose children. *Resuscitation*. 2017;115:178–184.
103. Chugh SS, Senashova O, Watts A, et al. Postmortem molecular screening in unexplained sudden death. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2004;43(9):1625–1629.
104. Bagnall RD, Weintraub RG, Ingles J, et al. A prospective study of sudden cardiac death among children and young adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;374(25):2441–2452.
105. Hefti MM, Kinney HC, Cryan JB, et al. Sudden unexpected death in early childhood: general observations in a series of 151 cases: part 1 of the investigations of the San Diego SUDC Research Project. *Forensic Sci Med Pathol*. 2016;12(1):4–13.
106. Kessler SK, Topjian AA, Gutierrez-Colina AM, et al. Short-term outcome prediction by electroencephalographic features in children treated with therapeutic hypothermia after cardiac arrest. *Neurocrit Care*. 2011;14(1):37–43.
107. Nishisaki A, Sullivan J 3rd, Steger B, et al. Retrospective analysis of the prognostic value of electroencephalography patterns obtained in pediatric in-hospital cardiac arrest survivors during three years. *Pediatric Crit Care Med*. 2007;8(1):10–17.
108. Kelly RB, Porter PA, Meier AH, Myers JL, Thomas NJ. Duration of cardiopulmonary resuscitation before extracorporeal rescue: how long is not long enough? *ASAIO J*. 2005;51(5):665–667.
109. Affatato R, Li Y, Ristagno G. See through ECG technology during cardiopulmonary resuscitation to analyze rhythm and predict defibrillation outcome. *Curr Opin Crit Care*. 2016;22(3):199–205.
110. Nakagawa Y, Amino M, Inokuchi S, Hayashi S, Wakabayashi T, Noda T. Novel CPR system that predicts return of spontaneous circulation from amplitude spectral area before electric shock in ventricular fibrillation. *Resuscitation*. 2017;113:8–12.
111. Segal N, Metzger AK, Moore JC, et al. Correlation of end tidal carbon dioxide, amplitude spectrum area, and coronary perfusion pressure in a porcine model of cardiac arrest. *Physiol Rep*. 2017;5(17).
112. Gonzalez-Otero DM, Ruiz JM, Ruiz de Gauna S. Monitoring chest compression quality during cardiopulmonary resuscitation: proof-of-concept of a single accelerometer-based feedback algorithm. *PLoS One*. 2018;13(2):e0192810.
113. White AE, Ng HX, Ng WY, et al. Measuring the effectiveness of a novel CPRcard feedback device during simulated chest compressions by non-healthcare workers. *Singapore Med J*. 2017;58(7):438–445.
114. Kill C, Galbas M, Neuhaus C, et al. Chest compression synchronized ventilation versus intermitted positive pressure ventilation during cardiopulmonary resuscitation in a pig model. *PloS One*. 2015;10(5):e0127759.
115. Speer T, Dersch W, Kleine B, Neuhaus C, Kill C. Mechanical ventilation during resuscitation: how manual chest compressions affect a ventilator's function. *Adv Ther*. 2017;34(10):2333–2344.
116. Amberman K, Shen I. Minimizing reperfusion injuries: successful resuscitation using eCPR after cardiac arrest on a post-operative Norwood patient. *J Extra Corpor Technol*. 2010;42(3):238–241.
117. Richardson AS, Schmidt M, Bailey M, Pellegrino VA, Rycus PT, Pilcher DV. ECMO Cardio-Pulmonary Resuscitation (ECPR), trends in survival from an international multicentre cohort study over 12-years. *Resuscitation*. 2017;112:34–40.
118. Kim SJ, Kim HJ, Lee HY, Ahn HS, Lee SW. Comparing extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation with conventional cardiopulmonary resuscitation: a meta-analysis. *Resuscitation*. 2016;103:106–116.
119. Debaty G, Babaz V, Durand M, et al. Prognostic factors for extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation recipients following out-of-hospital refractory cardiac arrest. A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Resuscitation*. 2017;112:1–10.
120. Dennis M, McCanny P, D'Souza M, et al. Extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation for refractory cardiac arrest: a multicentre experience. *Int J Cardiol*. 2017;231:131–136.
121. Trummer G, Supady A, Beyersdorf F, et al. Controlled automated reperfusion of the whole body after 120 minutes of cardiopulmonary resuscitation: first clinical report. *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med*. 2017;25(1):66.
122. Tisherman SA, Alam HB, Rhee PM, et al. Development of the emergency preservation and resuscitation for cardiac arrest from trauma clinical trial. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2017;83(5):803–809.
123. Negovsky VA. The second step in resuscitation--the treatment of the 'post-resuscitation disease'. *Resuscitation*. 1972;1(1):1–7.
124. Ebell MH, Jang W, Shen Y, Geocadin RG. Development and validation of the Good Outcome Following Attempted Resuscitation (GO-FAR) score to predict neurologically intact survival after in-hospital cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2013;173(20):1872–1878.
125. Mehaffey JH, Money D, Charles EJ, et al. Adenosine 2A receptor activation attenuates ischemia reperfusion injury during extracorporeal cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Ann Surg*. 2019;269(6):1176–1183.
126. Morgan RW, Sutton RM, Karlsson M, et al. Pulmonary vasodilator therapy in shock-associated cardiac arrest. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2018;197(7):905–912.

87

Acute and Anesthetic Care of the Burn-Injured Patient

EDWARD A. BITTNER, J.A. JEEVENDRA MARTYN, and FOLKE SJÖBERG

KEY POINTS

- Major burn injury results in pathophysiologic changes affecting virtually all organs from the onset of injury until wounds are healed. Anesthesiologists are often called on to care for burn injury patients through their hospitalization including acute airway management and resuscitation, intraoperative anesthetic care, intensive care, and management of postoperative pain.
- Burn shock is a paradigm of ischemia/reperfusion injury. The initial ischemic (ebb) phase of burn shock is a hypodynamic, hypovolemic state, with rapid loss of fluid from the intravascular space and decreased cardiac output, which typically lasts for the first 24 to 48 hours following injury. Approximately 48 hours after successful resuscitation, a hyperdynamic, hypermetabolic (flow) phase ensues consisting of tachycardia, increased cardiac output, hyperthermia, hyperglycemia, and increased protein catabolism.
- The goal of fluid resuscitation is to maintain organ perfusion by replenishing the massive loss of fluid from intravascular to extravascular compartments. Multiple fluid resuscitation formulae exist for estimating fluid needs and differ somewhat in their recommendations for the amount of crystalloid and colloid replacement. No matter which formula is used, it should serve only as a guideline, and fluid resuscitation should be titrated to physiologic endpoints.
- Inhalation injury is a major prognostic factor for morbidity and mortality after burn injury. Management of inhalation includes observation and monitoring. Endotracheal intubation or tracheostomy is indicated if airway patency is threatened.
- Patients with severe burn injury often suffer from nonthermal traumatic injuries. Failure to diagnose these associated injuries during initial evaluation can lead to serious morbidity and mortality. All burn patients should be approached initially as multiple-trauma patients.
- The magnitude of burns is classified according to percentage of total body surface area (TBSA) involved, depth of the burn, and the presence or absence of inhalational injury. Accurate estimation of burn magnitude is needed to guide the initial resuscitation strategy, make the referral to a burn center, ascertain the need for surgery, and to estimate prognosis. Three of the most commonly used methods to estimate %TBSA are the "rule of nines," palmar surface area, and the Lund-Browder diagram.
- "Fluid creep" refers to the trend of over-resuscitation in burn injury patients. Overly aggressive fluid administration may result in pulmonary edema, compartment syndromes, multiorgan failure, nosocomial infection, and increased mortality as well as the extension of the burn injury because of excessive local edema. Factors that contribute to "fluid creep" include overestimation of the burn size, use of supra-physiologic hemodynamic targets, increased opioid utilization, and failure to reduce the rate of fluid administration in patients with evidence of adequate tissue perfusion.
- Electrical burns can have acute and chronic effects not occurring with other types of burn injury, and with morbidity far higher than expected based on burn size estimation alone. High-voltage injuries are typically associated with loss of consciousness, arrhythmias, myoglobinuria, and extensive deep tissue damage that can result in compartment syndromes. Patients suffering from electrical injury should be evaluated for associated traumatic injury, rhabdomyolysis, and compartment syndromes. For treatment of these complications, patients may come to the operating room within 24 hours of injury.
- Airway management in the burn-injury patient may be challenging and warrants particular consideration. Key features of airway assessment include preexisting airway abnormality, current airway injury (i.e., inhalation injury), and signs of glottic obstruction. The type of airway abnormalities may vary depending on the stage of the injury. In the acute burn setting, mandibular mobility and mouth opening may be limited because of edema or, in later care, may have significant scarring and contractures in the face, mouth, nares, neck, and chest which can make airway management difficult.
- Burn-injured patients develop tolerance to most narcotics and sedatives, thereby requiring substantially higher doses than patients without thermal injury. Sedatives and narcotics should be titrated to effect while the patient is carefully monitored. Adverse effects of opioids, such as respiratory depression, acute opioid tolerance, and hyperalgesia, particularly with the need for rapidly escalating doses, have generated increasing attention to multimodal strategies.

- Muscle relaxant pharmacology is significantly and consistently altered after burn injury. Exposure to succinylcholine can result in an exaggerated hyperkalemic response, which can induce cardiac arrest. The current recommendation is to avoid succinylcholine administration in patients 48 to 72 hours after burn injury. The duration of this dangerous response to succinylcholine after burn injury is unknown.
- Surgical excision of burn wounds is often associated with substantial bleeding. It is not uncommon for the surgical team to remove eschar so rapidly that the patient becomes hypovolemic and hypotensive. Clinical judgment remains a vital component for intraoperative resuscitation, using markers of perfusion, erythrocyte mass, and coagulation, pulse, or arterial waveform as key assessment tools. Good communication between the surgical and anesthesia teams as well as limiting the operative duration and extent of excision are also essential.
- Patients with major burn injury have an impaired ability for thermoregulation and therefore require close monitoring of body temperature. Multiple strategies are used to maintain body temperature in the operating room, including use of forced-air warming blankets, thermal water mattresses, blood/fluid warmers, minimizing skin surface exposure, and wrapping the head and extremities with plastic or thermal insulation.
- Postoperatively, burn-injured patients are likely to be less stable physiologically compared with the preoperative period. Continued bleeding may be concealed by dressings, the patient may be more prone to hypothermia, emergence may be associated with delirium, and analgesic requirements will be greater. During this period of exaggerated physiologic fragility, it is important to be especially vigilant during transfer of the monitors and respiratory and hemodynamic support equipment to the intensive care unit staff.
- Burn injury leads to increased susceptibility to infection due to decreased immunity through multiple mechanisms including loss of the physical barrier of intact skin, damage to lining of the respiratory tract from inhalation injury, and altered gut permeability and function. Preventative measures against infection are critical for the burn-injury patient and include early excision of burn eschar to improve local perfusion and prevent microbial colonization, prudent use of invasive devices, application of antimicrobial burn dressings, and diligent compliance with infection control.
- Nearly all aspects of burn care (e.g., dressing changes, excision and grafting procedures, physical therapy, and line insertion) are associated with pain. There can be ongoing background pain, periodic breakthrough pain, procedure-related pain, and eventually, chronic pain can develop. Standardized pain and anxiety guidelines are used to provide appropriate, consistent patient comfort.

Introduction

Burn injuries are among the leading causes of injury and death worldwide, with about 11 million seeking medical care and over 265,000 deaths annually. Over 95% of these occur in low- and middle-income countries.[1] Approximately 486,000 burn injuries are treated at U.S. medical facilities each year of which 40,000 require hospital admission with approximately 3275 deaths.[2]

Major burn injury produces pathophysiologic changes that affect virtually all organs from the very onset of injury until after the wounds heal. Pathophysiologic effects may persist for years especially in patients with major injuries and include insulin resistance, neuromuscular dysfunction, pruritus, pain, and more frequent hospital admissions related to infections and cardiomyopathies.[3-5] Severe burn injury patients are different from other intensive care patients as they pose challenges regarding fluid resuscitation, metabolic stress, perioperative demands, and other specific burn injury–related complications. Most burn injury patients present to emergency rooms in community hospitals, which do not have a designated burn center. After initial acute care, these patients are usually transferred to tertiary care facilities with a specialized burn center. As a result, anesthesiologists staffing these peripheral hospitals with emergency rooms must be familiar with the pathophysiology of acute burn injury and resuscitation. In addition, treatment of a burn injury patient requires multiple operations, frequent dressing changes, and prolonged hospital stay with extensive rehabilitation needs. In burn care facilities, anesthesiologists need to have expertise in the specific management of the pathophysiologic changes affecting these victims and particularly the unique features of perioperative management of this patient population. Therefore there is a continuous need for specific teaching, training, and maintenance of specialized skills in this field.[6]

Although morbidity from burn-related injuries remains high, advanced methods of resuscitation, early excision and grafting of burn wounds, better methods of wound coverage, improved anesthesia and intensive care techniques, early diagnosis and aggressive treatment of infections, as well as enhanced nutritional support and mental health–care methods have led to significant decrease in burn injury–related morbidity and mortality. Other factors, including immediate prehospital care, early emergency treatment with advanced life support capability, and secondary transfer to a specialized burn unit have also contributed to improved survival.[7] Despite significant advances in therapeutic strategies, care of the burn injury patient continues to pose multiple challenges for clinicians.

Pathophysiology

BURN SHOCK

Burn injury can cause massive tissue destruction and result in activation of an inflammatory response that leads to profound pathophysiologic effects at sites both local and distant from the injury. Understanding the pathophysiologic alterations and their time course is essential for providing appropriate resuscitation and perioperative care.

Burn shock is a paradigm of ischemia/reperfusion injury.[8] The initial ischemic (ebb) phase of burn shock is a hypodynamic, hypovolemic state, with rapid loss of fluid from the intravascular space and decreased cardiac output, which typically lasts for the first 24 to 48 hours following injury. A large volume fluid resuscitation is required to maintain intravascular volume for organ reperfusion, acutely diluting plasma proteins. Approximately 48 hours after successful resuscitation, a hyperdynamic, hypermetabolic (flow) phase ensues due to the systemic inflammatory responses from the trauma-induced release of damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPS), even in the absence of overt infection.[9] This is characterized by increased cardiac output, oxygen consumption, muscle protein catabolism, and body temperature, lasting for many months to years after healing of the burn wounds. When burn shock is left untreated, physiologic exhaustion ensues and is fatal.

The goal of fluid resuscitation is to maintain organ perfusion by replenishing the massive loss of fluid from intravascular to extravascular compartments. There are two main reasons for this loss, both of which have been extensively investigated and have clear temporal patterns. First, there is the negative imbibition pressure in tissues injured by a burn[10-13] and, second, there is an increase in vascular permeability with loss of fluid from the vasculature as well as from the injured areas.[14] In the injured areas, there is protein loss from the vasculature in addition to crystalloid loss. At the uninjured distant sites, there is capillary sieving of protein with loss of crystalloid only.[15]

NEGATIVE IMBIBITION PRESSURE

When fluid losses were investigated in experimental models they could not be explained completely by an increase of permeability, and it was then postulated that there must be another mechanism that would explain these losses. In 1960, Gösta Arturson suggested that the loss from the blood could be explained by a reduction in the interstitial tissue pressure.[16] Subsequently, Lund et al. using in vitro models showed that there is a build-up of strong negative interstitial pressure within injured tissue causing a negative interstitial pressure in the range of −25 to −50 mm Hg (Fig. 87.1).[17] This negative gradient, called negative imbibition pressure, explains most of the early total fluid loss. Imbibition pressure is a negative pressure where water or crystalloid is absorbed causing large increases in volume and is different from hydrostatic and osmotic pressure. More recent in vivo studies by Kinsky and associates have confirmed the previous in vitro findings on imbibition pressure.[18] This negative imbibition pressure is most pronounced immediately after the burn and remains for several hours. Intriguingly, the fluids provided during resuscitation seem to have an adverse effect on the negative imbibition pressure (see Fig. 87.1). Administering a greater amount of fluid results in larger negative tissue imbibition pressure, and correspondingly larger fluid leak and overall demand for fluids. The mechanism underlying the development of negative tissue pressure is not well understood, but probably results from the effect of thermal energy on the tissue integrins (components important for the regulation of hydrostatic pressure in the interstitium), which lose the ability to maintain their beneficial effect on imbibition pressure. The magnitude of the burn seems to affect this defect; the larger the burn injury, the more pronounced is the negative pressure in the tissue.[13] This is the reason for early hypovolemia despite fluid treatment therapy. Importantly, most of the intravascular fluid loss disappears within 24 to 48 hours.[20] The resorption of the extravascular edema fluid, however, takes much longer as detailed later in the *Fluid Resuscitation Strategies* section.

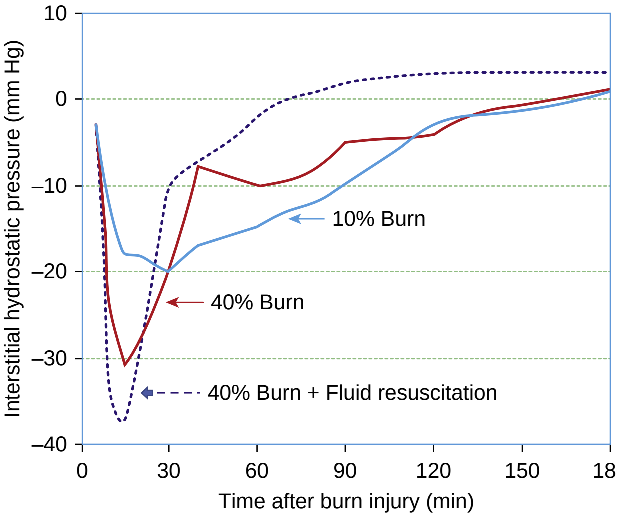


Fig. 87.1 Negative imbibition pressure. Graph showing how negative interstitial fluid pressure changes over time and varies based on the size of the burn injury and the administration of fluid.

PERMEABILITY EFFECTS OF THE BURN

The loss of fluid from the intravascular space is also due to the increase in vascular permeability. This effect is obvious even in a small 5% total body surface area (TBSA) burn and occurs soon after the injury, explaining the blister formation even with small burn injury. Detailed mechanisms as to how even a small burn causes leakage of fluid is unclear, but there seem to be a number of putative mediators (see also section on Mediators Important in Fluid Loss). Another important aspect of vascular permeability is the onset of vasodilatation in most vascular beds as a result of the continued liberation of proinflammatory cytokines into the injured tissues. This vasodilatation increases the hydrostatic pressure in the microcirculation, which leads to further loss of fluid into the interstitial compartment. The Starling equation given here further describes the different factors that play a role in fluid filtration:[20]

$$J_{\mathrm{V}} = \mathrm{Kf}\left(\left(P_{\mathrm{c}} - P_{\mathrm{i}}\right) - \sigma\left(\pi_{\mathrm{c}} - \pi_{\mathrm{i}}\right)\right)$$

where J_{V} is the fluid volume, Kf the filtration coefficient, P_{c} the capillary hydrostatic pressure, P_{i} the interstitial hydrostatic pressure, σ the reflection coefficient, π_{c} is the capillary osmotic pressure, and π_i the interstitial osmotic pressure. In particular, the coefficient of filtration increases dramatically, often to a range 20-fold greater; for the latter parts of the formula, there is an increase in hydrostatic pressure in the capillaries due to vasodilatation; decrease in interstitial pressure (the negative imbibition pressure) together with a decrease in colloid osmotic pressure within the capillaries as the result of a capillary leak, onto which also the increased osmotic effect of proteins lost into the interstitium, is added.

Although these changes affect most vascular compartments, the effect at the venular-end seems more important from a quantitative perspective. Most of the proteins lost across the vascular wall are smaller molecules; a few larger proteins are also lost. This large protein loss is important to note, as it underlies the arguments in favor of so-called "colloid rescue" fluid resuscitation in larger burns, which reduces the total colloid loss (and corresponding total fluid loss) with decreased risk of compartment syndromes.[22] It is important to stress that the loss of fluid from the intravascular space is due to alterations in ***all*** the factors previously described, which are important for the transport of fluid across the capillary and venular walls, and therefore contribute to the large fluid volume loss after burn injury.

In clinical practice, the increase in permeability, dilution effects of the resuscitation, and loss of protein manifest as a decrease in the concentration of serum albumin. The intravascular colloid osmotic pressure during the acute phase of burn injury is dependent not only on albumin but also on the newly synthesized acute phase proteins. Uncertainties in the temporal pattern of the vascular leak of protein locally means that the optimal timing of colloid administration is unclear. Thus the intense debate as to when colloids can safely be started during fluid resuscitation continues. Today most burn clinicians would agree that it is appropriate to start colloids 8 to 12 hours postburn to reduce the total fluid volume (see section *Colloid Rescue Treatment*). It is important to understand, however, that early colloid administration may lead to its extravasation into the extravascular space with a concomitant increase in tissue edema. It must also be noted that even in the absence of burn injury only 20% of the administered crystalloid fluid volume stays within the vasculature, and that large volumes of crystalloid alone will decrease intravascular colloid osmotic pressure and cause a further loss of fluid from this compartment.[23] These interrelated effects must be appreciated when fluid resuscitation for a burn injury patient is initiated. However, the previous dictum that the first 24 hours after burn should consist of only crystalloids does not hold anymore.

FLUID LOSS IN BURNS: THE TEMPORAL ASPECT

When caring for burn injury patients, it is important to discuss the temporal aspects of the fluid loss, and the recommended fluid management. This is particularly important, as recent investigations have shown that in present guidelines there is a clear temporal mismatch between fluid loss and fluid volume protocols. Most of the fluid that is lost from negative imbibition pressure is lost within the first 3 to 4 hours after the burn. The picture is somewhat different for the fluid that is lost from the increase in permeability. The most reliable data in humans has suggested that this fluid is lost at the time of the injury, and up to 8 to 10 hours later.[24,25] The permeability effects continue even after 48 hours due to the continuous systemic inflammatory response that is ongoing after the burn, although its magnitude is significantly less, unless complicated by sepsis.

More important is that the present guidelines for fluid resuscitation, particularly if they are based purely on crystalloids, do not fully account for this early loss of fluid. The patient may therefore be claimed to be in a controlled hypovolemic state during the first 12 to 16 hours after the burn injury. The tissue edema reaches its maximum between the first 24 to 48 hours after the injury, and thereafter the added fluid volume is slowly returned to the circulation and excreted as urine, often until 7 to 14 days after the burn depending on the magnitude of the injury.[26] This is also the time when lung dysfunction can occur because of hypervolemia from the reabsorbed fluid.

Mediators Important in Fluid Loss

Many mediators have been thought to be important in the underlying mechanisms of fluid loss in burns, and there are probably several that contribute in different ways. The most important are: serotonin, nitric oxide, thromboxanes, prostaglandins, and several others including reactive oxygen species and proinflammatory cytokines.[27] But molecular mediators are not the only substances implicated in the permeability effects; white blood cell–related effects have also been suggested.[28,29] Coagulation and the complement cascade are thought to be activated early, and also play an important part. Interest in the mediators and their possible role in the generation of fluid losses is driven by the hope of finding a treatment that can stop or reduce the process. Some attempts have been made and the most successful has been the use of high-dose vitamin C (as a scavenger of oxygen radicals) which, in randomized trials in both animals and humans, showed a reduction in fluid loss in the treatment arm.[30,31] In addition, direct effects were seen on the negative imbibition pressure with vitamin C administration.[32]

Hemodynamic Alterations

Burn shock can result in profound hemodynamic alterations associated with organ dysfunction. Severe burn shock is both distributive and hypovolemic in nature. The increased systemic vascular resistance (SVR) (due to release of catecholamines, antidiuretic hormone, and hemoconcentration) compounds the shock phase adverse effects.

A reduction in cardiac output also often occurs with major thermal injury even before any detectable reduction in plasma volume and may continue even when hypovolemia is alleviated.[33] The cardiac dysfunction is characterized by slowed isovolemic relaxation, impaired contractility, and decreased left ventricular diastolic compliance and often continues for 24 to 36 hours.[34,35] Burn-related left ventricular contraction and relaxation defects increase with burn size, achieving a nadir with 40% TBSA burns.[36] This cardiac dysfunction has been identified as a major cause of multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS) and mortality.

A hyperkinetic and hypermetabolic state develops 48 to 72 hours after burn injury, and is characterized by a decrease in vascular permeability, increased heart rate, and decreased SVR resulting in an increase in cardiac output.

Cardiac output is often increased to more than 1.5 times that of a nonburned, healthy patient 3 to 4 days following the injury. The metabolic rate is increased, approximately 1.5 times that of normal basal rate.[37] This increase in cardiac output is associated with increased liver and kidney blood flow, which has implications for elimination of blood flow–dependent drugs including some antibiotics and anesthetic drugs. The onset of sepsis may further increase cardiac output and decrease SVR.

Inhalation Injury

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

In addition to age and the extent of burns, inhalation injury is a major prognostic factor for morbidity and mortality after burn injury. Inhalation injury can be classified under three subcategories: direct thermal injury to the upper airway; chemical irritation to the lower (subglottic) airway and even lung alveoli; and systemic chemical or metabolic injury caused by specific noxious combustion chemicals, or a combination of these factors.[38] Direct heat and steam injury to the upper airway can lead to marked swelling of the face, tongue, epiglottis, and the glottic opening resulting in an upper airway obstruction. Because airway swelling may not occur immediately but may develop over a period of hours (especially with, and complicated by, concurrent fluid resuscitation), a high index of suspicion and frequent reevaluations of the respiratory status are essential. A scald injury of the epiglottis may mimic symptoms of epiglottitis.[39]

Thermal injury to the lower airway is uncommon due to a highly efficient heat exchange system in the oropharynx and nasopharynx and the low specific heat of steam in conjunction with the laryngeal closure reflex due to the irritation. Damage to the lower airways and lung parenchyma following smoke inhalation tends to be chemical rather than thermal. Toxic substances in smoke damage the epithelium and capillary endothelial cells of the airway resulting in the release of inflammatory mediators, increased vascular permeability, and edema of distal bronchi and alveoli. Many of the previously listed mediators are relevant here as well. Damaged mucosal cells produce excess exudates rich in protein and necrotic debris. Chemicals in smoke promote the formation of neutrophil-generated oxygen radicals leading to inflammation. Destruction and damage to the airway's ciliary transport function leads to the accumulation of casts, airway plugging, and impaired clearance of bacteria and debris.[40] Alveolar collapse and atelectasis can occur because of loss of surfactant production or from plugging of small airways by mucosal debris. Over time, these changes can result in bronchospasm, airway obstruction, atelectasis, and pneumonia, which cause ventilation perfusion mismatch, impaired gas exchange, and decreased pulmonary compliance. The severity of inhalation injury may not be directly proportional to the degree of exposure to smoke alone. Rather, the severity of injury is probably due to the composition of the inhaled material and combustion substances together with differences in the individual host response as well as added effects from the cutaneous burn.

Injury to the airways and lung can also occur with severe cutaneous burns in the absence of inhalational injury. Mechanisms include the effects of inflammatory mediators from the burn-injured area, and the effects of fluid resuscitation and infection. For example, acute lung injury can occur in patients with scald injury without smoke exposure where bronchoscopic features can mimic smoke-induced airway injury.[41,42]

While the gas-phase components of smoke do not produce direct injury to the respiratory tract, they can produce systemic effects. Among the most toxic gas-phase components are carbon monoxide (CO) and cyanide inhalation, which can lead to major morbidity and mortality following inhalation injury. CO is an odorless, colorless gas that has a 200-fold higher affinity than oxygen to the same binding sites on hemoglobin.[43] CO shifts the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve to the left and alters its shape. In addition, CO binds to cytochrome oxidase, impairing mitochondrial function and reducing adenosine triphosphate (ATP) production. CO thus reduces both the oxygen-carrying capacity of blood and oxygen dissociation at a tissue level, as well as disrupting oxidative cellular respiration. The clinical manifestations with patient symptoms of CO poisoning appear when carboxyhemoglobin (HbCO) levels are more than 15%.[44] The symptoms are typical of tissue hypoxia, most notably neurologic impairment and myocardial dysfunction (the organ systems most vulnerable to hypoxia). There is no set combination of symptoms that confirms or rules out diagnosis of CO poisoning. The intensity of clinical manifestations varies and does not correlate closely with HbCO levels. Early signs tend to be neurologic. Central nervous system (CNS) injury can lead to progressive and permanent damage. Severe myocardial dysfunction may occur, especially in patients with preexisting coronary disease. The clinical diagnosis of HbCO poisoning should be confirmed by demonstrating its elevated levels. Elevated HbCO levels indicate significant exposure to smoke, which points to the likelihood of chemical airway injury. Low HbCO levels do not always mean minimal exposure, as oxygen therapy in the early stages can reduce levels during transport to the emergency department. Hypoxemia caused by CO poisoning is not detected by pulse oximetry or by partial pressure of oxygen (PaO_2) measurements, and patients may appear "cherry pink" rather than cyanotic. CO-oximetry is required to make the diagnosis. The binding of CO to hemoglobin is stable, with a half-life of 4 hours for a person breathing air.[45] Increasing the arterial PaO_2 accelerates the CO displacement from the hemoglobin molecule; administration of 100% oxygen at atmospheric pressure shortens the half-life to an average of 74 minutes.[46] Hyperbaric oxygen therapy has been suggested as a therapy to reduce the neurologic sequelae from CO toxicity. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy achieves faster CO displacement and may be more useful in cases of prolonged exposure, when it also may be assumed that it is harder to displace the toxin bound to the cytochrome system (e.g., mitochondria). The drawback of hyperbaric oxygen therapy is the need to transfer the burn injury patient to a treatment facility equipped with a hyperbaric chamber during the critical period of hemodynamic and pulmonary instability. For these reasons, it may be considered in patients with severe neurologic involvement and levels of HbCO greater than 50%, without extensive burns or severe lung damage, and whose symptoms fail to improve despite a high flow of oxygen. The lack of availability of hyperbaric oxygen poses a barrier to its use in many tertiary care centers.

Cyanide (CN) is released by the combustion of nitrogen-containing compounds, which are present in plastics, fabrics, and paper. CN acts by binding to cytochrome oxidase, thereby inhibiting the mitochondrial respiratory chain, cell metabolism, and tissue ATP production, resulting in cytotoxic hypoxia and metabolic acidosis. CN toxicity may have a synergistic effect with CO in producing tissue hypoxia. Concentrations of CN greater than 20 ppm are considered dangerous and concentrations of 100 ppm can lead to seizures, coma, respiratory failure, and death.[47] A rapid diagnostic test for CN poisoning is not widely available; as a result, the treatment of CN poisoning is generally based on clinical suspicion. CN poisoning should be suspected in any patient with a history of smoke inhalation injury with an anion gap metabolic acidosis in the presence of apparently adequate oxygen delivery. Lactic acidosis with a high anion gap can indicate CN poisoning, as can an arteriovenous oxygen saturation difference of less than 10 mm Hg because of the inability of the mitochondria to use tissue oxygen.[48] Lactic acidosis in burn victims may, however, be due to several causes and is not specific for cyanide toxicity. CN's short blood half-life (~1 hour) makes accurate determination of CN poisoning difficult and is hampered by delayed blood sampling.[49] Blood CO concentration is highly correlated with CN levels and as such, may be considered as an indicator of CN poisoning. Empirical treatment involves administration of high-flow oxygen. Specific antidotes are advocated, especially hydroxocobalamin, which binds to CN and is relatively nontoxic; but administration must be immediate for any effect to be useful.[50] The deleterious effects of CN can also be neutralized by the administration of thiosulfate converting CN to thiocyanate, which is excreted in the urine. Exogenous thiosulfate has a slower onset than hydroxocobalamin.[51] The treatment of CN toxicity by administration of nitrites (e.g., amyl nitrite) has generated controversy as this treatment in itself can be hazardous.[52] Nitrites induce methemoglobinemia which, together with HbCO, may interfere with oxygen transport, thus contributing to hypoxia.

DIAGNOSIS OF INHALATION INJURY

The diagnosis of inhalation injury is based on a combination of clinical findings such as patient history, physical examination, and HbCO levels. Patient history should include the duration of exposure such as whether the patient was found in an enclosed space, unconscious at the scene, or has extensive cutaneous burns. Physical findings include facial burns, singed nasal hair, signs of upper airway injury (hoarseness, stridor, carbonaceous sputum, erythema, and swelling of the oropharynx), and signs of lower airway involvement (dyspnea, tachypnea, wheezing, decreased O_2 saturations). Stridor, dyspnea, increased respiratory effort, and cyanosis appear only once critical narrowing of the airway occurs.

Chest radiographs lack the necessary sensitivity to detect lung damage for inhalation injury in the early stages, but their use is helpful as a baseline for determining future changes.[53] Fiberoptic bronchoscopy (FOB) offers a potential means by which to evaluate severity of inhalation injury although it may underestimate the presence of parenchymal disease and controversy exists over whether or not the visualized severity of the mucosal injury predicts clinically meaningful outcomes.[54] FOB is unnecessary if subglottic pathology is unlikely. In patients with clinical signs suggestive of thermal airway injury, a normal endoscopic appearance is reassuring although alveolar damage would not be revealed. FOB can be repeated at intervals or if there is clinical deterioration. The presence of soot, mucosal edema, mucosal hyperemia, and pooling of secretions indicates inhalation injury, and suggests the need for close observation with repeated assessment; more ominous signs include narrowing of the laryngeal inlet, mucosal erosion, ulceration, and exudation.[55] Virtual bronchoscopy is an alternative diagnostic modality to identify inhalation injury; however this is not widely practiced.[56] Other diagnostic methods include xenon scanning, pulmonary function testing, and computed tomography (CT).[57,58] The most reliable indicator of the impact of inhalation injury is the arterial partial pressure of oxygen to inspired oxygen fraction (PaO_2/FiO_2) ratio after the resuscitation has started.[59]

Laryngeal injuries are common in burn injury patients and can be associated with long-term morbidity.[60-63] Early recognition of laryngeal injury and consultation with a laryngologist can influence treatment choices (e.g., tracheostomy) and limit morbidity. Because anesthesiologists are most likely to view the larynx of patients with acute burns, it is important to make laryngeal examination part of the initial intubation whether during resuscitation or induction of general anesthesia. Any pathologic laryngoscopic findings should be documented.

TREATMENT

Treatment of upper airway burns secondary to smoke inhalation includes observation and monitoring.

Endotracheal intubation or tracheostomy is indicated if airway patency is threatened. Thermal injury to the oral cavity and supraglottic structures can cause edema; with severe injury, airway obstruction may result as a consequence of edema of the supraglottic airway. Clinically significant obstruction can also occur following fluid resuscitation, with maximal edema typically presenting hours after the initial insult and lasting for several days. There can be no substitute for patience and repeated airway assessment by an experienced anesthesiologist while minimizing edema formation by upright positioning and the avoidance of excessive fluid therapy. As a general rule, when indicated, it is safer to intubate the patient early than risk a difficult intubation after airway swelling has occurred. Although preemptive intubation of patients with inhalation injury can be lifesaving, it should be performed for clear indications. Reasons for intubation include: protection against anticipated airway swelling, treatment of impaired oxygenation and/or ventilation due to lung injury, and to ensure airway protection and optimal oxygenation in cases of hypoxia or CO poisoning with neurologic impairment. The treatment of pulmonary parenchymal injury is inherently more complex than treatment for cutaneous burns. Necrotic skin can be excised, and healing can be observed directly. In contrast, injured lung involves measures to prevent further injury to allow host mechanisms to repair injured tissues. Healing of pulmonary injury is followed indirectly by observations of blood gas analysis and radiographs/CT scans. Adequate oxygenation must be maintained and bronchial hygiene facilitated. Some patients may benefit from noninvasive ventilation in the absence of usual contraindications.[64] Endotracheal intubation may be necessary if the patient has increased work of breathing or if gas exchange is compromised.

Patients with both cutaneous burns and inhalation injury may require larger fluid volumes for resuscitation than those without inhalation injury.[65] Additional fluid resuscitation measures beyond titrating fluid input to maintain adequate urine output (generally considered 0.5-1 mL/kg/h) are not necessary and there are at least theoretical issues that the lung should be maintained "dry" to optimize gas exchange.[66]

Moderate elevation of the head of the bed allows gravity to help reduce airway edema by facilitating venous and lymphatic drainage, and is therefore a sensible, critical standard practice. The patient should be given oxygen by mask to maintain adequate arterial oxygen saturation. Suction should be used to keep the airway clear of debris and secretions. Children are at greater risk of obstruction because of their smaller airways, as are patients whose burns include circumferential burns to the neck. Other early signs and symptoms of respiratory dysfunction may be more suggestive of a more severe inhalation injury.

Respiratory failure is a consequence of inhalation injury; however, the severely burn-injured patient often has multiple mechanisms contributing to lung injury, systemic inflammation in response to burn injury, pulmonary edema from fluid resuscitation, and sepsis. Thus the extent to which inhalation injury impacts burn patient outcome is difficult to separate from the contributions of other injury drivers, which affect the lungs. Management of respiratory failure commonly consists of mechanical ventilation and effective and repetitive pulmonary toilet. A myriad of ventilation strategies exists, and consensus regarding the most appropriate way to ventilate patients with inhalation injury has not been reached.[67] In all cases, the goal of mechanical ventilation should be to optimize oxygenation and ventilation while minimizing potential ventilator-induced lung injury. The mechanisms of ventilator-induced lung injury include: high airway pressures causing barotrauma, over-distension of alveoli leading to volutrauma, repetitive opening and closing of alveoli causing atelectrauma, and lung inflammation caused by the release of proinflammatory cytokines that produce biotrauma.[68] The use of lung-protective ventilation strategies (i.e., tidal volume of 5-8 mL/kg predicted body weight, limitation of plateau pressure to less than 28 cm H_2O, and application of sufficient positive end-expiratory pressure to maintain alveolar patency and adequate oxygenation) is recommended as the initial approach if invasive ventilation is required. Studies have shown that lung protective ventilation with low tidal volumes are associated with lower mortality in patients with ARDS and are therefore also recommended in burn injury patients.[69] As in other critically ill patients, prone positioning has been shown to improve oxygenation in burn injury patients with severe ARDS.[70] Permissive hypercapnia, where blood carbon dioxide partial pressure ($PaCO_2$) is allowed to rise ($<$60 mm Hg) should be considered to limit plateau pressures unless there is a concomitant neurologic injury with suspected intracranial hypertension.[71] These lung-protective ventilation strategies are generally considered to also apply to pediatric patients, although some evidence exists to challenge this presumption.[72-74] Other strategies used by some burn centers for management of inhalation injury include high frequency percussive ventilation or high frequency oscillation ventilation, either of which may facilitate the clearance of airway debris and secretions.[75,76] High frequency percussive ventilation and high frequency oscillation ventilation may be considered as "rescue modes" in very severe lung disease, though a benefit on outcome remains unproven. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) is increasingly used as a rescue treatment for patients with refractory hypoxemia but there is inadequate evidence to support its benefit in inhalation injury at this time.[78,79]

The consensus recommendations for mechanical ventilation also apply in this context, as do strategies for the prevention of ventilator-associated pneumonia.[80] Bronchodilators may be administered to help optimize ventilation in the event of bronchospasm. Bronchoscopy may improve pulmonary hygiene and patient prognosis by clearing secretions and sloughed epithelial cells. Although not yet in routine clinical use, there are several promising experimental pharmaceutical adjuncts that address physiologic changes associated with inhalation injury. Aerosolized racemic epinephrine serves as a bronchodilator, vasoconstrictor, and mucolytic agent to alleviate wheezing and bronchospasm caused by the chemical tracheobronchitis.[81,82] An aerosolized N-acetylcysteine/heparin combination therapy, which acts as both an oxygen free-radical scavenger and a mucolytic agent, has also been successfully used in children and adults with inhalation injury.[83-85] Inhaled nitric oxide causes selective vasodilation in ventilated lung segments, and may improve oxygenation and pulmonary hemodynamics.[86,87]

Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation (NIV) has been successfully used to avoid endotracheal intubation in select patients with mild inhalation injury with little evidence of edema, or as respiratory support strategy following extubation.[88,88a] The potential benefits of NIV are numerous including allowing the patient to communicate freely, require less sedation, allow cough and expectoration of secretions, and avoid other potential complications of intubation such as oropharyngeal trauma, mucosal ulceration, and ventilator-associated pneumonia. However, very strict case selection is essential. NIV requires compliant patients who can cough and protect their own airway and it must not be used where there is a risk of airway obstruction, or in patients with facial burns because of the tight mask required. In addition, there are legitimate concerns that NIV may conceal signs of progressive airway obstruction in the setting of an inhalation injury. The use of opioid and sedative drugs, often needed in burn injury patients, may complicate the use of NIV as a consequence of their respiratory depressant effects.

High-flow nasal cannula is a mode of respiratory support increasingly used in the management of acute respiratory failure. This mode delivers humidified gas via a nasal cannula at flow rates exceeding minute ventilation. The benefits include the reduced work of breathing and improved gas exchange by nasopharyngeal dead-space washout; decreasing the energy required to humidify and heat respiratory gases; and providing a degree of positive distending pressure. There are limited reports of its use in patients with inhalation injury.[89]

Acute Management

PATIENT EVALUATION

Optimal management of burn injury patients begins at the scene of injury and continues in the emergency department and with transfer to a specialized burn unit. The primary survey should be performed using a systematic approach that first seeks to identify the greatest threats to life as provided in the Advanced Trauma Life Support (ATLS) and Advanced Burn Life Support (ABLS) guidelines.[90,90a] This approach requires a combined strategy of airway assessment and protection, initiation of resuscitation, and evaluation for coexisting injuries. Protecting the airway of a thermally injured patient is of the utmost priority. Early intubation is indicated in patients with symptomatic inhalation injury, or any thermal injury to the face, mouth, or oropharynx that threatens airway patency (stridor, swelling on laryngoscopy, upper airway trauma, altered mentation, and respiratory distress).[91] The current criteria for prehospital intubation has been questioned because of the high incidence of over-intubation and early extubation posthospital admission.[92] Despite this concern, it seems safer to intubate and modify therapy once in hospital rather than be afflicted by airway distress during prolonged transport. Oropharyngeal burns can rapidly cause obstruction; other causes of critical respiratory failure, such as coma, require immediate diagnosis and treatment. Once the airway is secure, breathing assessment follows. Auscultation of breath sounds and determination of respiratory rate and depth are essential for assessing the status of the lungs, chest wall, and diaphragm, and to evaluate the patient's ability to adequately ventilate and oxygenate. Circumferential burns of the trunk or neck may impair respiration and require bedside escharotomy. Continuous monitoring of heart rate, blood pressure, pulse oximetry; and clinical assessment of unburned skin color should be used as parameters to assess circulatory status. An elevated heart rate (100-120 beats/min) is considered within normal limits for adults with burn injury; a higher heart rate should raise suspicion for hypovolemia, other trauma, and inadequate pain management. Circulatory assessment requires evaluation of perfusion of all extremities, paying particular attention to any circumferentially burned extremities. If perfusion is compromised, escharotomy is indicated. Intravenous access should be obtained via peripheral, central, and/or intraosseous routes and may safely be placed through burned tissue if necessary. Adjuncts such as ultrasound may be helpful in placing peripheral intravenous catheters. Large-bore peripheral access is preferred because smaller catheters do not allow faster fluid administration, especially in larger burns.

Fluid management based on weight and burn size should be addressed once total assessment of the injury has been established. Patients who have sustained a thermal injury often present with altered mental status and the possibility of associated injury, substance use, hypoxia, inhalation injury, or a preexisting condition that should always be addressed. As with trauma patients, the Glasgow Coma Scale, which utilizes verbal, motor, and eye measurements, can be used to establish a baseline mental status. Providing adequate environmental temperature control is essential for burn injury patients as they lose their ability to thermoregulate. The patient must be completely exposed to assess injury and to remove any contaminants that might prolong contact with chemicals or heat sources. A warmed environment and immediate coverage with clean blankets can limit hypothermia during the examination. More than 5% of patients admitted to burn centers have also sustained nonthermal traumatic injuries.[93] Therefore all burned patients should be approached initially as multiple trauma patients. Whole-body CT imaging and focused assessment with sonography in trauma-echocardiogram exam should be performed when associated injuries are suspected.

Indicated imaging, laboratory analyses, and adjunctive measures such as urethral catheters and nasogastric tubes should be completed at this time. It is mandatory to perform a rapid primary evaluation and immediately correct any problems found. Once these steps are completed, a more thorough assessment of thermal injury may ensue. The patient's full history should be taken including: detection of the mechanism of injury, consideration of abuse, height and weight, possibility of CO intoxication, and facial burns. In addition, history of previous diseases should be obtained, if possible (allergies, medications, past medical history, events).

Once the primary and secondary surveys have ensured stabilization of the thermally injured patient, transfer to a facility capable of providing the care necessary to support a burn patient is initiated. The American Burn Association has criteria for referral to a specialized burn center that includes both patient and burn characteristics such as size, depth, and etiology (Box 87.1).[94] Patients who should be referred to a higher level of care for burns include those with partial thickness (second degree) burns greater than

BOX 87.1 **American Burn Association Burn Center Transfer Criteria**

- Second- and third-degree burns on >10% of TBSA in patients age <10 or >50 years
- Second- and third-degree burns on >20% of TBSA in other age groups
- Second- and third-degree burns that involve the face, hands, feet, genitalia, perineum, and major joints
- Third-degree burns on >5% TBSA in any age group
- Electrical burns, including lightning injury
- Chemical burns
- Inhalation injury
- Burn injury in patients with preexisting medical disorders that could complicate management, prolong recovery, or affect mortality
- Any patients with burns and concomitant trauma (such as fractures) in which the burn injury poses the greatest risk of morbidity or mortality; in such cases, if the trauma poses the greater immediate risk, the patient may be treated initially in a trauma center until stable before being transferred to a burn center
- Hospitals without qualified personnel or equipment for the care of children with burns should transfer the patient to a burn center with these capabilities
- Burn injury in patients who will require special social/emotional and/or long-term rehabilitative support, including cases involving suspected child abuse and substance abuse

TBSA, Total body surface area.

10% TBSA; those with burns of the face, hands, feet, genitals, perineum, or across major joints; and those with full thickness (third degree) burns of any size. Evidence suggests that burn injury patients have improved outcomes if transferred early to a facility capable of providing an advanced level of burn care.[95,96] Therefore it is important to accurately identify those patients with burns severe enough to merit transfer so that outcomes will be optimized.

Burn centers have been developed to standardize and optimize the overall quality of care delivered to burn-injured patients.[97] Burn centers provide acute care using a multidisciplinary team that includes burn surgeons, anesthesiologists with special interest in burns, critical care physicians, burn-trained nurses, physical and occupational therapists, pharmacists, and dietitians. In addition, improvements in burn survivors' long-term functional and psychological outcomes and quality of life have resulted from burn units having integrated relationships with physiatrists and rehabilitation facilities as well as burn psychologists and exercise therapists. Since an important part of functional recovery includes returning to work or school, newer additions to the burn team include vocational counselors, recreational therapists, child life specialists, and teachers.

Estimation of Size and Depth of Burn Injury

The magnitude of burn injury is classified according to the percentage of total body surface area (%TBSA) involved, depth of the burn, and the presence or absence of inhalational injury. Accurate estimation of burn magnitude is needed to guide the initial resuscitation strategy, make the referral to a burn center, ascertain the need for surgery, and to estimate prognosis.[98] Whereas a detailed evaluation of the extent of the thermal injury is assessed during the secondary survey, an early estimate of burn size and depth is needed during the primary survey to calculate initial resuscitation fluid requirements for circulatory support. Three of the most commonly used methods to estimate %TBSA are the "rule of nines," palmar surface area, and the Lund-Browder diagram. The rule of nines is used in adults and is less accurate in children. This method divides the body into body surface areas of 9% (the head, each upper limb, the front of the trunk, the back of the trunk, the front of each lower extremity, and the back of each lower extremity).[99] The surface area of the patient's palm (excluding the fingers), approximately 0.5% of the TBSA, is used to estimate small (<10% TBSA) burns.[100] However, this method is inaccurate for larger burns. The Lund-Brower diagram is considered the most accurate, if used correctly (Fig. 87.2).[101] It allows for the variation in body proportions with age and is used especially in children. Computerized methods have evolved and demonstrate high correlation and reproducibility.[102]

Burn depth is also considered an important determinant of outcome. First-degree burns are limited to the outer layer or epidermis of the skin. The skin usually appears red and dry and is very painful to touch. Healing takes place in 3 to 5 days. Second-degree burns are further categorized into superficial and deep partial thickness burns. A superficial partial thickness burn extends into the superficial papillary dermis and appears red in color with significant weeping and blisters. It will also blanch when pressure is applied, and generally it takes less than 2 weeks to heal. Deep partial thickness burns extend into the reticular dermis and appear yellow or white and dry and often are extremely painful; however, in some cases, the sensation in the deep partial thickness may become diminished. Full thickness or third-degree burns extend through the entire thickness of the dermis. These may appear dry, leathery, black, or white and are usually painless since nerves and endings are destroyed. They do not blanch under pressure. Although initially painless, the subcutaneous inflammation associated with deep dermal burn often becomes more painful than more superficial burns.[103] The designation, fourth-degree burns, is used to describe those that have injured deeper structures, such as muscle, fascia, and bone. Deep second-, third-, and fourth-degree burns require surgical debridement and grafting, whereas more superficial burns do not. Since the area of injury may progress over the first 2 to 3 days after the initial insult due to the effects of coagulation and ischemia, burn depth estimation may be greater when examined later compared to the initial evaluation. Close reevaluation may be required to determine the actual burn size and depth.

Fluid Resuscitation

Current fluid therapy is based on knowledge gained over the last century. Major breakthroughs in fluid management were made by Underhill, who described the pathophysiology of burn injury in detail in the 1920s.[104] In 1940, after the Coconut Grove night club disaster in Boston, Massachusetts, the first attempts were made to use intravenous fluids to treat a large group of burn injury patients, and the result was that the mortality was significantly lower than expected. In 1953, the first fluid formula based on the size of the burn and the patient's weight was introduced by Evans.[105] The formula most widely used today is the one that was published in 1974 by Charles Baxter, who was then working at the Parkland Memorial Hospital in Dallas, Texas. The Parkland formula calls for 4 mL/kg/%TBSA of Ringer lactate solution given over the first 24 hours, half of which is given within the first 8 hours from the time of injury.[106] The main advantages of the Parkland formula are use of an easily obtainable fluid (Ringer lactate), low cost, and a strategy that is easy to start and follow. A number of other formulations have been reported over the years, but none has the global impact of the Parkland formula. Some of the more common options are listed in Table 87.1.[107,108]

Today, few centers in Europe or the United States use formulations other than the Parkland initially.[109] Appropriate resuscitation should be initiated promptly and tailored based on patient parameters to avoid over- and under-resuscitation. Delayed or inadequate fluid replacement results in hypovolemia, tissue hypoperfusion, hypovolemic shock, and multiple organ failure. Morbidities associated with over-resuscitation include pulmonary edema, compartment syndromes (muscle compartments, abdomen, and the orbits), and even cerebral edema. As a general rule, burns of less than 15% TBSA can be managed with oral or intravenous fluid administered at 1.5 times maintenance rate (Box 87.2) and careful attention to hydration status. Maintenance fluids, including a source of glucose, should be added to pediatric patient resuscitation fluid as hepatic glycogen stores will be depleted after 12 to 14 hours of fasting.[110]

Burn Estimate and
Diagram
Age and Area

Initial Evaluation*

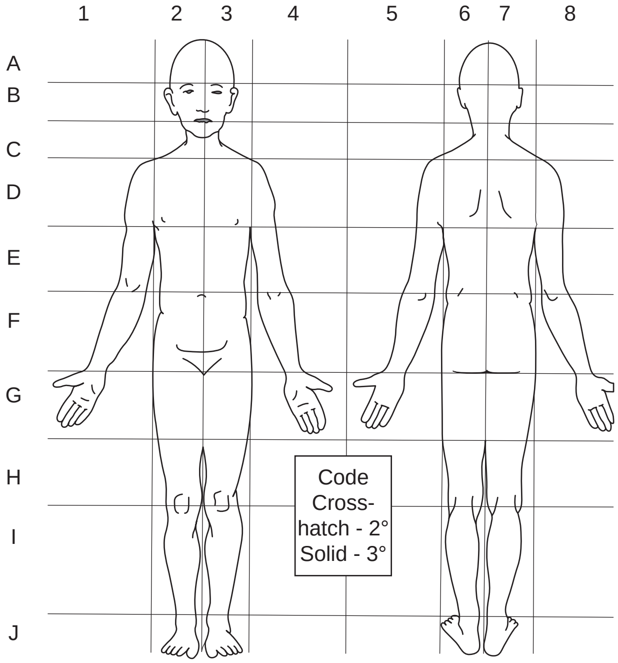
Signature

Date of Burn

Date Completed

*To be completed by the admitting resident or LIP on admission

This is a working burn estimate diagram only, and is not as accurate as photography



Area	Birth–1 yr	1–4 yrs	5–9 yrs	10–14 yrs	15 yrs	Adult	2°	3°	Total
Head	19	17	13	11	9	7			
Neck	2	2	2	2	2	2			
Anterior Trunk	13	13	13	13	13	13			
Posterior Trunk	13	13	13	13	13	13			
Right Buttock	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5			
Left Buttock	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5			
Genitalia	1	1	1	1	1	1			
Right Upper Arm	4	4	4	4	4	4			
Left Upper Arm	4	4	4	4	4	4			
Right Lower Arm	3	3	3	3	3	3			
Left Lower Arm	3	3	3	3	3	3			
Right Hand	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5			
Left Hand	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5			
Right Thigh	5.5	6.5	8	8.5	9	9.5			
Left Thigh	5.5	6.5	8	8.5	9	9.5			
Right Lower Leg	5	5	5.5	6	6.5	7			
Left Lower Leg	5	5	5.5	6	6.5	7			
Right Foot	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5			
Left Foot	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5			
** Only 2° and 3° burns are included in the total TBSA burn percent									

Fig. 87.2 Lund-Browder burn diagram and table. The Lund-Browder burn diagram and table indicate the varying proportions in surface area in persons with different ages. A careful burn diagram should be completed at the time of initial evaluation, including wound size, location, and estimated burn depth. The Lund-Browder chart should be used in pediatric patients because the body surface area relationships vary with age. *TBSA*, Total body surface area.

Later, when insulin resistance and associated hyperglycemia develops, glucose infusions should be modulated. Colloids have the potential to increase oncotic pressure and thereby reduce fluid shifts and losses. Controversy remains as to the ideal time for initiation of colloid therapy in burn resuscitation. There is a general trend now to initiate colloids earlier than the previously recommended time of 24 hours.[109] All the formulae guide resuscitation with the goal of titrating fluids to obtain a urine output of 0.5 mL/kg/h in adults and 1.0 mL/kg/h in children. The reasons for using hourly urine output are that it is easily measured (once a Foley catheter has been placed), it reflects glomerular filtration rate and renal blood flow, and it is a surrogate for end-organ perfusion and an indirect correlate of cardiac output.

ENDPOINTS FOR THE FLUID TREATMENT

No matter which formula is used, it should serve only as a guideline, and fluid resuscitation should be titrated to physiologic endpoints. However, the optimal hemodynamic

TABLE 87.1 Formulations for Fluid Treatment

Formulation	Contains
Parkland	Ringer lactate solution 2-4 mL/kg/TBSA% Half the fluid volume given during the first 8 h and the remainder during the next 16 h
Modified Brooke	Ringer lactate solution 2-4 mL/kg/TBSA%
Brooke	Ringer lactate solution 1.5 mL/kg/TBSA% + colloid 0.5 mL/kg + 5% glucose solution 2000 mL/24 h. The PiCCO instrument measures colloid can be albumin or fresh frozen plasma
HYPERTONIC SOLUTIONS	
Monafo	Ringer lactate containing sodium 250 mmol/L. Volume sufficient to produce urine 30 mL/h. Not commonly used in view of the hyperosmolar effects

BOX 87.2 Maintenance Fluid for Children

- 100 mL/kg up to a body weight 10 kg
- Above 10 kg weight, 50 mL/kg are added in the weight range of 11-20 kg
- Above 20 kg weight, add 20 mL/kg for every kg
  Example: Maintenance fluid for a child of 28 kg:
  1000 mL + 500 mL + 160 mL, i.e., total 1660 mL/24 h

targets of initial resuscitation in burn injury patients remain largely unknown. While traditional markers such as blood pressure, urinary output, and cardiac output are helpful, they do not sufficiently reflect the adequacy of regional perfusion and microcirculation. Even when macrocirculatory variables are within therapeutic goals, signs of tissue hypoperfusion may persist.[112] Furthermore, microcirculatory alterations have been identified in patients with severe burns, and the severity of these alterations has been associated with a poor outcome.[113]

In an effort to address deficiencies in regional tissue perfusion and microcirculation, trials of "goal-directed" resuscitation have been undertaken, in which fluids are increased to normalize acidosis or achieve normal levels of cardiac output or oxygen utilization.[114,115] This approach initially seemed effective but, in subsequent analyses, has not proved superior to traditional resuscitation, and resulted in administration of increased fluid volumes and the associated complications. This experience has confirmed earlier studies showing that cardiac output and other parameters require 18 to 24 hours to normalize following burn injury no matter what resuscitation strategy is employed.[116] Therefore it appears that the optimal resuscitation strategy is to maintain the burn injury patient in a controlled hypovolemic state with an aim to maintain a urine output of 30 to 50 mL/h in adults. Central circulatory variables, such as intrathoracic blood volume index (ITBVI) when using a Pulse Index Contour Continuous Cardiac Output (PiCCO, Pulsion Medical Systems, Germany) system, wedge pressure when using a pulmonary artery catheter, or stroke volume/cardiac output with echocardiography, should indicate hypovolemia during this specific period. The PiCCO instrument measures cardiac output and extravascular lung water by thermodilution. Hence leaky lungs from inhalation injury and during ventilation-perfusion abnormalities it may give incorrect estimates of cardiac output and extravascular lung water, respectively. When assessing circulation 18 hours after the injury, these central variables of cardiac filling and function will normalize with this resuscitation strategy.[116]

During the last few years, there have been indications that an increase in under-resuscitation of burn injury patients may be occurring.[118] In addition, a recent survey of resuscitation strategies in Europe suggests an increase in the use of vasopressors and inotropes and early use of colloid for burn injury patients.[119] While the impact of these changes remains unknown, there are two important issues using such a strategy. First, the skin, which in burn injury is the damaged organ, has a very high density of α1 adrenoceptors in its vascular bed and secondly, this compartment receives a significant portion of the fluid volume provided by resuscitation, thereby significantly increasing the risk of progression of the burn wound from second- to third-degree injury. There is scientific evidence in humans that support skin ischemia in edematous tissue after fluid resuscitation and this may be assumed to be a significant risk for deepening of the burn wound.[120]

FLUID CREEP/RESUSCITATION FAILURE

A small percentage of patients fail to respond to conventional fluid resuscitation. Signs of resuscitation failure include low urine output, repeated episodes of hypotension or need for vasopressors, worsening of base deficit, or fluid infusion in excess of predicted resuscitation needs in the first 24 hours.[121] When the fluid requirements exceed that calculated by the Parkland formula, administering either albumin or plasma (colloid rescue treatment) instead of or in conjunction with the crystalloid is often recommended to reduce the risk of compartment syndrome.[122] The risk of abdominal compartment syndrome (ACS) increases appreciably when fluid volumes greater than 250 mL/kg/24 h are exceeded.[123]

If the total fluid requirement exceeds 6 mL/kg/%TBSA per 24 hours, it is advisable to obtain more information regarding intravascular volume and cardiac function. This usually occurs with very deep burn injury beyond the dermis. Hemodynamic monitoring modalities to obtain this information on cardiac function include transthoracic and/or transesophageal echocardiography, measures of cardiac preload or fluid responsiveness (e.g., stroke volume variation, ITBVI or pulmonary arterial wedge pressure, cardiac index), measures of oxygen delivery and/or consumption (e.g., central venous oxygen saturation [$ScvO_2$]), serum markers (e.g., base deficit, lactate), and measures of cellular metabolism (e.g., gastric tonometry). The major limitation of routinely using these measures for all resuscitations is that they have not been validated as resuscitative endpoints in the burn injury population; targeting multiple endpoints may result in excess fluid administration.

With large volume resuscitation, monitoring of abdominal, ocular, and extremity-fascial compartments for hypertension should regularly be performed. The most commonly used method to monitor intraabdominal pressure is measurement of intravesical pressure through a catheter inserted in the urinary bladder. The normal range of intraabdominal pressure is less than 5 to 12 mm Hg. Values above 25 mm Hg generally necessitate intervention, whereas values between 12 and 25 mm Hg indicate the need for close observation for evaluation.[124,125] ACS is defined as sustained intraabdominal pressure exceeding 25 mm Hg with new-onset organ failure, such as oliguria or decreased lung compliance. It should also be suspected not only in patients with major burns but particularly in those who have received an amount of fluid resuscitation well beyond that predicted based on weight and burn size. In cases of symptomatic intraabdominal pressure or ACS, decompression is necessitated via paracentesis, laparoscopy, or laparotomy.

"Fluid creep" refers to the trend of over-resuscitation in burn injury patients.[126] Overly aggressive fluid administration may result in pulmonary edema, compartment syndromes, multiorgan failure, nosocomial infection, and increased mortality as well as the extension of the burn injury because of excessive local edema.[127] Factors that contribute to "fluid creep" include overestimation of the burn size, emphasis on achieving supra-physiologic hemodynamic targets (e.g., base deficit, lactate, cardiac index and/or output, and surrogate markers, such as stroke volume variation), and increased opioid utilization (opioid creep).[128,129] A hesitancy for reducing the rate of fluid administration in patients with evidence of adequate tissue perfusion such as a urine output greater than 0.5 mL/h in adults or greater than 1.0 mL/kg in children also appears to play a role in fluid creep.[130] Computerized decision-support tools may be beneficial to decrease the volume of crystalloid infused and, consequently, the incidence of fluid creep and its complications.[131] Such systems reduce over-resuscitation by rapid downward titration of fluid volumes when urine output is adequate.

Strategies to limit fluid creep may include albumin administration during early resuscitation and, more commonly, initiation of "colloid rescue" early (12-24 hours) after the burn injury when capillary integrity is thought to be restored. Hypertonic saline may also be beneficial in limiting fluid volumes, but careful monitoring is needed, as hypernatremia is associated with the development of acute renal failure.[132,133] High-dose ascorbic acid (vitamin C) may have efficacy in reducing resuscitation volumes and the time to complete resuscitation in severe burns.[134,135] Its use has not gained traction because of concern for osmotic diuresis and renal failure as well as an association with pseudohyperglycemia.[136] Exchange transfusion (plasmapheresis) has been attempted but is not currently used.[137]

Electrical Injury

Electrical burns account for up to 4% of admissions to burn centers.[138] The severity of injury after an electrical burn depends on voltage (V), current, type of current (alternating or direct current), path of current, duration of contact, resistance of involved tissues, and individual susceptibility.[139] Low-voltage electrical injury is classified as less than 1000 V and can damage tissue at the contact site. High-voltage injury is characterized as more than 1000 V, and leads to damage that extends into the surrounding tissues, particularly to muscle around long bones. Exposure to current generated may also cause cutaneous injury by transformation of electrical energy to thermal energy. Injuries can range from local erythema to full-thickness burns. Burns due to lightning are common but typically quite superficial because of the short duration of contact between the energy source and the victim.[140]

Electrical injury should be managed as a multisystem injury. Evaluation for associated traumatic injury, particularly to the spinal cord, should take place, including assessment for event-associated blunt thoracic or abdominal trauma.[141,142] Patients with high-voltage injuries should also be evaluated for rhabdomyolysis. Limbs should be assessed for compartment syndromes that may require fasciotomy. For treatment of these complications, patients may come to the operating room within 24 hours of injury. In high-voltage electrical injuries, urgent surgery may be life-saving, and is necessary to allow the highest chance for limb salvage. After initial burn wound excision, further debridement may be indicated to ensure adequacy of excision of necrotic tissue before reconstruction. Wound management of high-voltage injuries often requires staged debridement, because the extent of myonecrosis is often difficult to initially ascertain and myonecrosis can extend over time. Wound closure often requires use of grafts and local or distant flaps. High-voltage electrical injuries can be severe resulting in the need for amputations. The tetanic contraction of muscle caused by continued electrical stimulation may cause bone damage including vertebral fractures.

Electrical injury affects the cardiovascular system by directly causing necrosis of the cardiac muscle and by inciting dysrhythmias.[143] The most frequently encountered rhythm disturbance is sinus tachycardia, often accompanied by nonspecific ST- and T-wave changes. Conduction defects such as heart blocks are also common. Cardiac standstill and ventricular fibrillation are the most serious cardiac complications of electrical injury. Patients without electrocardiographic changes on presentation are unlikely to experience life-threatening arrhythmias.[144] The myocardial injury after electric shock behaves more like a cardiac contusion than a myocardial infarction generally with minimal hemodynamic consequences. Enzyme markers of cardiac injury may be misleading, as normal enzyme concentrations in the circulating blood do not exclude the possibly of a conduction system injury with consequent rhythm disturbances.[145]

Patients with major electrical burns should have an individualized fluid resuscitation. Deep tissue injury, including visceral injury with extravasation into extravascular compartments, makes formula-based resuscitation generally inadequate since the surface burn is only a portion of the injury.[146] In addition, the current-induced injury to muscle can lead to rhabdomyolysis and myoglobin release, which can precipitate in the renal tubules causing acute kidney injury. Thus if myoglobinuria is present, urine output should be maintained at 1 to 2 mL/kg/h until the urine is no longer pigmented, at which time urine output can be titrated to 1 mL/kg/h.[147] Additional treatment with sodium bicarbonate, mannitol, and furosemide facilitate myoglobin excretion and protect against renal tubular injury. It is not uncommon for patients with major electrical burns to suffer long-term neuropsychological sequelae such as chronic pain and therapy-resistant psychological symptoms that need to be addressed in an extended rehabilitation process.[148]

Chemical Burns

Chemical burns represent only about 3% of burn center admissions, but they are an important source of morbidity.[138]

Most chemical burns in middle- or high-income countries occur in the workplace, but some are secondary to assault, typically to the face. Chemical injuries have some important biochemical differences when compared to thermal burns. In thermal injuries, there is a rapid coagulation of tissue protein due to irreversible cross-linking reactions, whereas in chemical burns the protein destruction continues longer due to hydrolysis mechanisms.[150] These mechanisms may extend as long as traces of the offending agent are present especially in deeper skin layers. In addition, some chemical agents can produce a systemic toxicity. The duration of the chemical's contact with skin is the major determinant of injury severity. The severity of a chemical burn injury is also determined by the concentration of the agent, its tissue penetration, and mechanism of action.[150]

The initial management of any chemical exposure is to eliminate the toxic chemical quickly without contaminating care providers. Elimination of the toxic chemical involves removal of clothing and a thorough irrigation with water.[152] In most instances, efforts to neutralize chemicals are contraindicated due to the additional generation of heat, which would further contribute to tissue damage.[153] Dilution, not neutralization, is the key to therapy. There are two notable exceptions: hydrofluoric acid (sub-eschar injection of 10% calcium gluconate) and white phosphorous (lavage with 1% or 2% copper sulfate immersed in water).[154] Diphoterine is a new chelating agent that has shown initial promise for treatment of chemical burns.[155] The insidious nature of some chemical injuries allows them to progress for prolonged periods so that an initially superficial-appearing wound ultimately requires surgery. A special concern in larger settings of chemical accidents are precautions not to contaminate the emergency department by the chemical in question. Initial cleansing of the chemical is performed outside the hospital doors and such procedures should have an action plan in the hospital disaster management protocols.[156]

General support and care involves fluid resuscitation as with a burn injury using urine output monitoring to assess adequacy of end-organ perfusion. Disturbances of pH can occur with systemic toxicity.[153] Blood gas and electrolyte analysis should be performed until metabolic disorder has been treated and controlled. After lavage and debridement, chemical burns can be treated with topical antimicrobial agents and dressings. Early excision and grafting may be needed albeit the pronounced difficulties in assessing burn depth in these injuries. Inhalation injury may also occur and be present if chemicals are aerosolized and such injuries are managed like smoke inhalation injuries.

Cold Injury

Cold injury or frostbite occurs when tissues are exposed to temperatures below their freezing point (typically −0.55°C) for a sustained period of time.[158] Severity of injury depends on a number of factors including the absolute temperature, duration of exposure, wet or dry cold, immersion, and patient comorbidities such as peripheral vascular disease, neuropathies, smoking, mental health issues, and substance abuse.[159]

Cold injury most commonly occurs in the distal extremities or exposed areas of the face. It can result in a wide spectrum of injuries, ranging from minor injury with complete resolution to the need for major limb amputation. The progression of cold injury evolves over time. The wounds may initially present with blisters that do not appear to be deep. Over days to weeks, because of injury to the microvasculature, they can progress to full-thickness loss; toes and fingers may mummify over prolonged periods.

On arrival to the hospital setting, underlying unstable comorbidities, trauma, or hypothermia must be assessed and managed before frostbitten extremities are treated. Moderate or severe hypothermia should be corrected to bring core temperature above 35°C before initiating frostbite warming. Rewarming the extremities can become extremely painful, so analgesics should be administered.[160] Rewarming is ideally accomplished using a whirlpool bath set at a temperature range of 37°C to 39°C, which decreases the pain experienced by the patient while only slightly slowing rewarming time. Rewarming should continue until a red/purple color appears and the extremity tissue becomes pliable. Loss of sensation after a long period of normothermia is a poor prognostic indicator.[158]

If ischemic frozen extremities do not reperfuse after rewarming, early angiography, thrombolysis, and anticoagulation may be warranted.[162,163] Intravenous vasodilators (nitroglycerin or papaverine) may be useful in conjunction with thrombolysis to address the vasospasm that often accompanies a frostbite injury. Magnetic resonance angiography may be beneficial for prognostication as it allows direct visualization of occluded vessels and surrounding tissue and may show a clearer demarcation of ischemic tissues.[163] Wound management is generally conservative, allowing ischemic tissues to demarcate before excision. Wound closure often requires skin grafts and local or distant flaps. Prophylactic antibiotics are not indicated since frostbite injuries are not inherently tetanus-prone wounds.

Stevens-Johnson Syndrome/Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis

Toxic epidermal necrolysis syndrome (TENS) and Stevens-Johnson syndrome (SJS) are severe exfoliative diseases of the skin and underlying structures caused by immunologic reactions, usually triggered by a medication or a viral syndrome.[165] Common triggers for SJS and TENS are drug exposure with anticonvulsants, antibiotics, and allopurinol.[166] The two syndromes are distinguished from each other by disease severity, which is characterized by the extent of epidermal detachment and erosions of mucous membranes. The TBSA involved in SJS is less than 10%, 10% to 30% in SJS-TENS overlap, and more than 30% in TENS. Outcomes vary according to the TBSA affected and age. Mortality with TENS is approximately 15% whereas that of SJS is less than 5%.[167] Age, as in thermal burns, is also a major factor affecting outcome in these patients.[168] The primary cause of death is infection and multiorgan failure. Because a burn center has personnel with expertise in the management of patients with skin loss from thermal injury, it often provides care for patients with SJS and TENS. Initial treatment begins with withdrawal of any offending drug and includes airway protection if needed, fluid resuscitation, nutritional support, close monitoring for septic complications, and eye care.[169] Wound desiccation and superinfection is prevented with topical antimicrobial agents, and selective use of wound membranes can also be considered. Numerous other adjuvant therapies have been tried in TENS management including corticosteroids, cyclosporin, cyclophosphamide, plasmapheresis, pentoxifylline, *N*-acetylcysteine, ulinastatin, infliximab, and granulocyte colony-stimulating factors (if TENS-associated leukopenia exists); however their effectiveness is uncertain.[170]

Special Considerations

PEDIATRICS

The treatment of children with burn injury differs from burn care in adults in several areas, including airway management, fluid resuscitation, and pharmacologic therapies.[171] Children have a greater body surface area to mass ratio than adults, resulting in increased fluid resuscitation requirements (based on body weight), greater evaporative water, and making them more prone to hypothermia. In addition, children have disproportionately thinner skin, which may lead to the risk of deeper burns at lesser temperature. Thinner skin also makes initial burn depth assessment difficult because a burn may initially appear to be of partial thickness but be a full thickness injury or can develop into a full thickness injury.

The circulatory system in infants and children also differs from that of adults. Infants have limited cardiac contractility and are dependent on their heart rate to increase cardiac output. In addition, there is a greater susceptibility to fluid overload, especially in younger children, particularly if all the administered fluids (flush solutions, medications, carrier fluids) are not taken into account. During surgical procedures, it is important to account for the volume of fluid administered subcutaneously for tumescence of donor sites and burn sites. The kidneys of young infants have less concentrating ability. The short length of pediatric intravenous catheters and patient activity can lead to extravasation as the patient develops edema after burn injury. Central lines in children can compromise circulation to extremities and require extra monitoring. Intraosseous lines can result in limb loss due to compartment syndrome from either a misplaced or dislodged catheter, or leakage of infused fluids around the needle insertion site.

The child's body temperature should be closely monitored and ambient temperature increased in the examination room to prevent hypothermia. Warm intravenous fluids and warm blankets are useful adjuncts in this setting. Fluid-based convection heat mattresses can be particularly effective and useful in this scenario. Wet cold dressings and cold intravenous solutions should be avoided to decrease loss of body heat.

Airway and pulmonary considerations in children include their smaller airway, which can rapidly be compromised with airway edema causing resistance to airflow. Infants and small children also lack the pulmonary reserve present in older children and adults. In children with scald injury, respiratory failure can occur during and after fluid resuscitation, even in the absence of inhalation injury.[172] Stridor and retractions should be taken as signs of airway compromise and a need for intubation. Asthma is prevalent in children and may be exacerbated by smoke inhalation. Bronchospasm, common in children suffering inhalation injury, should be treated early and aggressively.

Children are susceptible to resuscitation-related cerebral edema, which can result in seizures or brain herniation.[173,174] There is laboratory evidence that the blood brain barrier may be more easily disrupted in children after major burn injury and could thus lead to a larger risk for neurologic dysfunction.

Assessing pain and anxiety is challenging in children because many are unable to verbalize their complaints. Compared to adults, opioid tolerance seems to develop faster in young children.[175] Age-specific pain and anxiety scales exist and should guide care. In general, a child should be upset and crying after burn injury. A moribund or minimally responsive child is likely to be in shock and requires immediate attention. Children are often combative during wound care and dressing changes. During these times, appropriate doses of anxiolytics and analgesics, including ketamine and benzodiazepines, should be administered. However, once the stimulus stops, special attention is needed as children can be oversedated because the half-life of the drug is longer than the duration of painful dressing changes.

Up to 20% of pediatric burn injuries are a result of abuse or neglect. Abuse should always be considered in a child with burn injury, particularly when the injury pattern does not match the history given, in the presence of multiple injuries of different durations, or in cases when there is evidence of delay in seeking treatment. Physical examination indications such as uniform burn depth with sharp borders; symmetrical isolated lower limb and buttock injury; skinfold sparing; absence of splash marks; associated unrelated injuries; and a passive, introverted, fearful child should also raise suspicion and trigger screening by dedicated child abuse teams.

ELDERLY

Older individuals are more vulnerable to burn injury and are less able to compensate from the injury when it occurs.[176,177] Age is the most important outcome factor besides TBSA. Concurrently, mortality rate, as well as severity of complications, is more pronounced in this group of patients. The propensity of geriatric patients to burn injury is likely the result of impaired dexterity and mobility, impaired vision, and decreased coordination, which also impair their ability to react rapidly and reach safety when faced with danger.

Older adults often have more comorbid medical conditions and therefore take multiple medications that may blunt their response to the physiologic stress of burn injury and increase their risk for complications. Coexisting cardiac and pulmonary disease can result in complications related to fluid resuscitation including pulmonary edema, congestive heart failure, and pneumonia. Close monitoring of respiratory and cardiovascular parameters in older adults is mandatory during fluid resuscitation. The decision to resuscitate should be carefully weighed in older patients with large cutaneous burn injuries, especially in the presence of inhalation injury, because mortality rates can exceed 90%.[178] Advanced directives, healthcare proxies, and families should be consulted as early as possible.

Older burn injury patients have a lower threshold for ventilator support during treatment because of the decrease in lung reserve. Preexisting renal disease can result in greater sensitivity to nephrotoxic drugs. Older patients also have an altered and impaired immune-response and thereby an increased susceptibility to infection.[179]

The skin of older patients is thinner and more susceptible to deeper burn injury. In addition, there is impaired capacity for dermal and epidermal regeneration, so harvesting and especially repeated harvesting of donor skin may not be possible because of poor wound healing. Under normal circumstances, older patients have a reduced resting metabolic rate and may be unable to generate the required increase in metabolic response following a burn injury. For even a minor burn injury, they may benefit from nutritional support and may gain benefit from nutritional rehabilitation prior to surgical treatment.[180] Care should be taken with enteral feeding as it poses a risk of aspiration, particularly in delirious older burn victims. Pain control in the older patient is often inadequate following burn injury, and the premise that there is less pain with increasing age is without foundation.[181] Finally, older patients may live alone or have a spouse who is unable to provide the care needed after discharge, including wound care, transportation, and support.

OBESE PATIENTS

Management of the morbidly obese patient poses many clinical challenges including accurate measurement of burn size, resuscitation requirements, mechanical ventilation settings, drug dosing, mobilization, and effective nutritional goals. During resuscitation, obese burn injury patients take a longer time to reach end points of resuscitation and normalize their metabolic derangements.[182] This finding is consistent with findings in the trauma literature in the obese population.[183] This group can have persistent metabolic acidosis during the resuscitation phase and are at greater risk of developing more severe multiple organ failure.[182] These factors may contribute to higher mortality risk in the morbidly obese burn patient.[182,185] It remains unclear as to whether actual or ideal body weight is appropriate for estimating fluid requirements accurately. The use of actual body weight to drive resuscitation volumes may result in over-resuscitation of these patients, depending on the resuscitation formula.[187] However, actual body weight and TBSA provide a reasonable starting point, after which fluid rates should be reduced hourly to meet individual needs while preventing burn shock or other complications. In contrast to morbid obesity, mild obesity, for reasons unclear, seems to have a better survival.[188]

Infection Control

Infection is a leading cause of morbidity and mortality in burn injury patients because of their increased susceptibility to infection through multiple mechanisms, including altered immunity, loss of the physical barrier of intact skin, damage to the lining of the respiratory tract from inhalation injury, altered gut permeability, and invasive devices. These devices include endotracheal tubes (ETTs), intravascular catheters, and urinary catheters, which bypass the body's normal defense mechanisms. Sources of organisms that can cause hospital-acquired (nosocomial) infection include the patient's endogenous flora, exogenous environmental sources, and transmission by healthcare personnel. Pneumonia, central venous lines, and burn wounds are the most common sources of bloodstream infections, which typically occur within a week of injury.

Preventative measures against infection are critical for the burn injury patient and include early excision of burn eschar to improve local perfusion and prevent microbial colonization, prudent use of invasive devices, application of antimicrobial burn dressings, and diligent compliance with infection control practices. To avoid selection of resistant pathogens, prophylactic systemic antibiotics should not be administered.[189] For patients with documented infection, antibiotics should be culture-directed. Knowing incidence and sensitivities to unit specific pathogens will allow more accurate targeting of empirically prescribed antimicrobials. Dosing should be adjusted to account for the altered organ function. Regular monitoring of antibiotic levels is important as evidence suggests that many patients never achieve the recommended therapeutic antibiotic concentrations.

Topical antimicrobials consist of a wide range of agents targeted at reducing the incidence of wound infection by controlling microbial contamination at the wound surface. An advantage of local antimicrobial therapy is the ability to get high concentrations of the active agent at the site. Systemic agents are less successful in treating local infections because they most often do not reach the burn wounds in large concentrations because of the microthrombosis of vessels and wound edema. Eschar penetration, safety profile, desired spectrum of activity, patient tolerance, and projected length of therapy must be balanced.[190] Silver nitrate, silver sulfadiazine, and silver-based dressings are the most commonly used agents. Silver works quickly and may have one of the broadest spectra of activity that includes gram-positive, gram-negative, and fungal organisms. Mafenide is an alternative topical agent that offers the added benefit of eschar penetration for deep burns. Although rare, adverse reactions from mafenide can occur in sulfa-allergic patients and metabolic acidosis from carbonic anhydrase inhibition has been reported.[191]

Early recognition and treatment of sepsis may reduce the incidence of complications and improve survival. Identifying sepsis can be challenging in light of the hyperdynamic, hypermetabolic, and proinflammatory response to burn injury. Systemic inflammatory response syndrome criteria have poor correlation with infection in burn injury patients, with more than 90% of patients fulfilling criteria regardless of clinical stability or infection status.[192,193] Standardized criteria for diagnosis of sepsis and infection-related diagnoses were developed more than a decade ago for burn injury patients.[194] These burn-specific criteria for sepsis include (three of the following with documented infection): temperature over 39°C or under 36.5°C, tachycardia greater than 110 beats/min or more than 2 standard deviations from value for age, progressive tachypnea (spontaneous ventilation: respiratory rate >25 or as necessary for mechanical ventilation), hyperglycemia (plasma glucose ≥230 mg/mL) in the absence of diabetes mellitus, thrombocytopenia (will not apply until 3 days after initial resuscitation; platelet count ≤100,000 μ/L), and the inability to continue enteral feeding for more than 24 hours. Other clinical indicators of sepsis may include increased fluid requirements, hypotension, altered mental status, and worsening renal status. It is likely that use of multiple indicators of sepsis will improve the sensitivity and specificity of early sepsis diagnosis in this clinically more difficult setting.[195]

Burn wounds are particularly known to be tetanus prone. Patients who are current with vaccination status require no further treatment while those with unknown or inadequate vaccination status should receive tetanus toxoid in addition to tetanus immune globulin.[196,197]

Metabolic Considerations

The hypermetabolic response after burn injury is more severe and sustained than any other form of trauma. Burn injury patients have increased resting energy expenditures, increased myocardial oxygen consumption, marked tachycardia, increased body temperature, glycolysis, proteolysis, lipolysis, and futile substrate cycling.[198] Marked and sustained increases in catecholamine, glucocorticoid, glucagon, and dopamine secretions are thought to initiate the cascade of events leading to the acute hypermetabolic response with its ensuing catabolic state. The role of DAMPS in this hypercatabolic state has not been elucidated.[199] The metabolic rate of patients with greater than 40% TBSA burn can exceed 180% of non-burned levels during admission and 150% at the time of complete wound healing.[200] Furthermore, the hypermetabolic response to burn injury persists well beyond wound closure, with metabolic and inflammatory changes that can occur up to 3 years after the injury, especially in children with very large burns.[201] This high metabolic demand and energy expenditure results in the catabolism of lean muscle mass, which may have important detrimental effects for the complete recovery processes.[198]

The relevance of the postburn hypermetabolic and inflammatory effects includes prolonged insulin resistance, increased fracture risk, increased liver size due to steatosis, growth impairment, increased cardiac work and dysfunction, protein catabolic state, and impaired muscle strength, hormonal abnormalities, and increased risk for infection. Consequently, severe burn injury is not an acute illness but rather a chronic health problem. Numerous strategies have been employed to modify this catastrophic response including early excision and grafting, thermoregulation, and early aggressive enteral feeding. There are several proven pharmacologic approaches to attenuate the hypermetabolic flow phase of a burn. Adrenoceptor blockade (most commonly with the nonselective β-blocker, propranolol) has favorable effects on heart rate, resting energy expenditure, oxygen consumption, and net muscle-protein balance.[203] Insulin therapy promotes maintenance of muscle mass and improved donor site healing, without increasing hepatic triglyceride synthesis. It also attenuates the inflammatory response.[204-206] Oxandrolone, a synthetic androgen, has been shown to increase both muscle protein synthesis and muscle strength as well as improve bone mineral content, and is today recommended in burn care guidelines.[207] Despite these pharmacologic therapies, muscle wasting of burn injury persists for several years. More research is needed to better manage these functional deficits.

Nutrition

Nutrition is of critical importance for the burn injury patient. It has been estimated that a patient’s basal energy needs may benefit up to 200%.[208] Nutritional support not only partially abates the hypermetabolic response and attenuates muscle protein loss but also modulates stress hormone levels, improves gut mucosal integrity, improves wound healing, and decreases the risk of stress ulcer formation. Growing evidence suggests that early nutrition is safe, efficacious, and leads to better outcomes. In addition, evidence suggests that delay in enteral nutrition leads to a higher incidence of gut mucosal atrophy, microbial translocation, which can lead to sepsis, and multiorgan failure. The potential disadvantage of early feeding is a higher risk of complications when the patient is being resuscitated from burn shock. Gastric ileus is not uncommon in the early phase, and feeding could lead to a higher risk of aspiration. In addition, there is a concern that burn injury patients who are still in shock may be at risk of intestinal necrosis if fed.

Enteral nutritional support should be used in preference to parenteral nutritional support. Parenteral nutrition should be reserved for those with prolonged ileus and or enteral feeding intolerance. Oral feeding is preferred to enteral feeding (liquid formulae given through nasoenteric tubes) because of the reduction in both cost and complications. However, the severely injured are unable to eat enough to satisfy the hypermetabolic response. While underfeeding can result in complications, it is important to recognize that overzealous nutritional support offers little additional benefit and may be harmful. Overfeeding can result in fluid and electrolyte imbalances, hyperglycemia, and hepatic steatosis. Although formulae exist to predict total caloric requirements, these often lead to underfeeding during periods of highest energy utilization and to overfeeding late in the treatment course. As there is also a large interindividual variability, actual caloric requirements should be determined by measuring resting energy expenditure with indirect calorimetry.[209]

Patients who suffer from extensive burn injury will often undergo multiple operative procedures often under general anesthesia. Historically, the use of general anesthesia requires patient’s to be nil per os (nothing by mouth, NPO) at midnight of the intended procedure day. This practice can lead to a major void in a burn patient’s caloric support. The feasibility and safety of continuing enteral feeding throughout operative procedures has been studied.[210] Enteral feeding using post-pyloric tubes has been successful, provided the airway was secured via a cuffed ETT or tracheostomy (to prevent aspiration of gastric contents).[211,212] Nevertheless, it is prudent to hold enteral feedings when there is potential for increasing abdominal pressure (e.g., prone position or surgery on the abdomen) or when an airway procedure such as tracheostomy is to be performed.

Anesthetic Management

PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION

Patients are often brought to the operating room in the early phase of burn injury, when they are undergoing significant

BOX 87.3 Major Perioperative Concerns for the Burn Patient

- Age of patient
- Extent of burn injury (total body surface area, depth, and location)
- Mechanism of injury
- Elapsed time from injury
- Associated injuries
- Inhalational injury and/or lung dysfunction
- Adequacy of resuscitation
- Coexisting diseases
- Airway patency
- Difficult vascular access
- Gastric stasis
- Altered drug responses
- Altered mental states
- Pain/anxiety
- Presence of organ dysfunction
- Presence of infection
- Susceptibility to infection
- Hematologic issues (anemia, coagulopathy)
- Magnitude of surgical procedure

fluid shifts with corresponding cardiovascular instability and/or respiratory insufficiency. Early excision of dead/necrotic tissue with temporary or permanent coverage of the open areas is important for decreasing the burden of wound colonization and systemic sepsis. In addition to standard preoperative evaluation, there are specific features of the history and physical examinations, which deserve additional focus in the burn injury patient. These include the time and extent of burn injury, airway evaluation, presence of inhalation injury, quantity of fluid received, current resuscitation regimen and the patient's response, vascular access/sites, and tolerance of enteral feeding and NPO status (Box 87.3). Communication with the surgeons and the critical care team is crucial to manage perioperative care in a manner that is compatible with treatment goals of the intensive care unit (ICU). Details of the surgical plan, including the extent and anticipated duration of the procedure, are also essential to estimate blood loss and to plan appropriate vascular access, invasive monitors, arrange thermoregulation, and to order appropriate blood products. Conferring with the nurse taking care of the patient will provide valuable information about the current status of the patient.

Intraoperative Management

AIRWAY MANAGEMENT

Airway management in the burn injury patient may be challenging and warrants particular consideration (see Fig. 87.2). Key features of airway assessment include preexisting airway abnormality, current airway injury (i.e., inhalation injury), and signs of glottic obstruction. The type of airway abnormalities may vary depending on the stage of the injury. In the acute burn setting, mandibular mobility and mouth opening may be limited because of edema or, in later care, the developing contractures. Preanesthetic assessment of the patency and soft-tissue compliance of the airway are essential. Palpation of the neck and submandibular space may reveal tightness that will limit displacement of the tongue and soft tissues into the submandibular area, making laryngoscopy challenging. Dressings and nasogastric tubes may make face mask seal difficult. Facial wounds may be painful, and exudate and topical antibiotics may result in a slippery skin surface and difficulty holding the mask. Burn victims, who are beyond the acute phase of injury, may have significant scarring and contractures in the face, mouth, nares, neck, and chest, which can make airway management very difficult.[213,214] The airway sequelae of burn and inhalation injury or tracheostomy can also include subglottic stenosis, tracheomalacia, granuloma formation, obstruction of the nares, and fixation of the neck in a flexed position. If a patient is suspected to be difficult to mask ventilate, it is wise to either confirm the ability to mask ventilate prior to giving drugs that promote apnea or maintain spontaneous ventilation throughout the induction and intubation. The utility of traditional adjuncts used to facilitate mask ventilation, such as an oral airway, nasal airway, jaw thrust, chin-lift, and two-hand mask ventilation, may be limited in the burn injury patient. An oral airway may be difficult to insert in patients with microstomia, as would a nasal airway in patients with scarring of the nares. Chin-lift and jaw-thrust may be impossible because of scarring and contractures, which can limit neck extension and anterior displacement of the mandible.

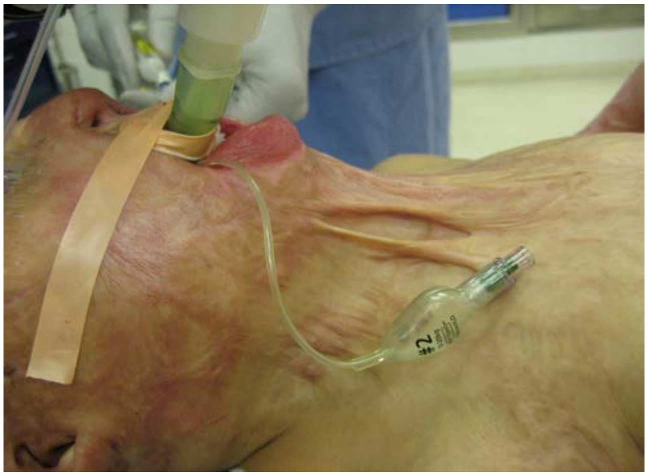


Fig. 87.3 Burn-injured patient with a severe neck contracture undergoing general anesthesia with a laryngeal mask airway.

The laryngeal mask airway (LMA), a supraglottic airway device, has been successfully used as both an alternative to tracheal intubation and a rescue airway device for burn injury patients (Fig. 87.3).[215] Use of the LMA for airway management may help avoid further laryngeal injury associated with tracheal intubation. It can also serve as an aid to fiberoptic intubation. However, microstomia and fixed neck flexion from contractures can limit its use. Microstomia can impair the ability to insert the LMA into the oropharynx. Fixed neck flexion makes insertion difficult because the distal end of the LMA abuts the chest wall. Surgical release of neck contractures under local anesthesia prior to intubation may be required in severe cases.

If the preoperative examination reveals concern for upper airway patency, mobility, or mask ventilation, fiberoptic

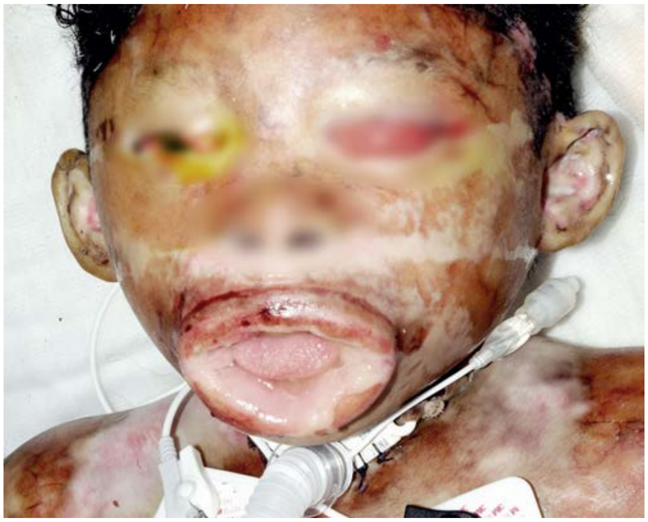


Fig. 87.4 Pediatric patient with burns of the face and neck. The patient underwent early tracheostomy due to profound swelling of the airway present.

intubation while maintaining spontaneous ventilation should be considered. If the patient is uncooperative, inhalational induction or the use of ketamine preserving spontaneous ventilation may permit the advancement of the fiberoptic scope. It is important to avoid gag and laryngospasm during the fiberoptic intubation. Traditional methods to topicalize the airway to prevent gag include using preinduction nebulized lidocaine or lidocaine gargle and postinduction lidocaine sprayed directly on the vocal cords via the fiberscope. Video laryngoscopy is an alternative intubating tool that also permits assessment of hypopharyngeal and glottic anatomy. In children awake intubation is not a viable option. Ketamine-induced sedation/anesthesia maintains the pharyngeal muscle tone and can be used for fiberoptic intubation in children. Tracheostomy completely done under local anesthesia is also at times a viable option (Fig. 87.4). A surgeon capable of performing a potentially difficult tracheostomy should be readily available when there is any question of inability to manage a patient with an anticipated difficult airway. The distorted anatomy can make a surgical tracheostomy difficult in both elective and urgent situations.

Gastric emptying may or may not be delayed in burn injury patients.[216] Sepsis, intestinal edema, and opioids may slow gastric emptying, with increased risk of aspiration. If there is concern for ileus, rapid sequence induction is generally required. The use of the LMA in the presence of decreased chest or abdominal compliance can result in redirection of ventilated volume from the lungs to the stomach. Regurgitation of gastric contents can occur in these instances significantly complicating the procedure.

It is essential to secure the ETT to avoid unintentional extubation. Traditional securing methods using adhesive tapes or ties are unsuitable in patients with facial burns since tape or ties crossing burned areas can irritate the wound or cause injury to grafts. Placement of a circumferential tie around the patient's head, using wire to secure the tube to a tooth, or use of arch bars can provide safe fixation.[217-220]

The use of cuffed ETTs in the pediatric burn population, both in the operating room and in the ICU, is safe and recommended regardless of the child's age.[221] Considerable fluctuation in airway diameter can occur throughout the patient's acute hospital course because of laryngeal, tracheal, and bronchial edema. With fluctuations in airway diameter, the ETT cuff may need to be readjusted to facilitate mechanical ventilation without a leak or prevent overpressure in the cuff, which can cause tracheomalacia.

Severely burn-injured patients may require tracheostomies because of potential complications from long-term translaryngeal intubation for mechanical ventilation. The optimal timing and indications for tracheostomy remain unresolved.[222] In general, early tracheostomy should be considered if prolonged mechanical ventilation is anticipated (inhalation injury, advanced age, chronic pulmonary disease, other significant systemic comorbidities, and large burn size). Complications can occur, particularly when tracheostomies are performed under nonelective conditions, through burned tissue or in the presence of edema. Tracheostomy-related dysphagia, dysphonia, and other laryngeal pathologies have been described in burn injury patients.[223]

VASCULAR ACCESS

Vascular access in burn injury patients can be challenging. The anatomy of typical vascular access sites can be distorted by the burn injury and in the setting of acute injury, patients can be hypovolemic, making venous access technically difficult to obtain. In addition, resuscitation can result in edema. In pediatric patients, the task can be even more difficult. It may be necessary to place vascular catheters through burn-injured tissue or wounds. On occasion, it may be necessary to have the surgeons debride the insertion site just before placement of the vascular catheter. If no intravenous access is available, temporary intraosseous cannulation may safely be placed in patients of any age. This technique obviates the need for venous cutdowns and can be useful in emergency situations. A multiport central venous catheter is usually necessary in patients with large burn injuries because of incompatibility of resuscitation fluids with drugs, blood, and the need for hyperalimentation. Localization of vessels using ultrasonographic guidance can be useful in placing peripheral and central catheters in patients when access is difficult.[224]

Because burn injury patients undergo multiple surgical procedures during their hospitalization, access is required multiple times. Central venous catheters can be kept in place without changing them for more than 7 to 14 days, provided extreme aseptic techniques are practiced during their insertion and use. When a new catheter is needed, the insertion can be rotated and include the jugular, subclavian, and femoral veins. For excision and grafting procedures, securing adequate vascular access before the surgical procedure begins is necessary as blood loss can be rapid and substantial.

VENTILATOR MANAGEMENT

Respiratory failure is common after serious burns caused by inhalation injury, due to inflammatory mediators from the burn, effects of fluid resuscitation, and infection. In providing intraoperative mechanical ventilation, the same considerations used in the ICU must be followed to avoid barotrauma. Although the concept has not been tested in this population, growing evidence supports the importance of maintaining lung protective ventilation even in the operating room. During the hypermetabolic state (beginning ~48-72 hours after burn injury), oxygen consumption and carbon dioxide production can be significantly increased. Consequently, minute ventilation can exceed 20 L/min in an adult patient with a large burn.

Extensive excision and grafting procedures may result in such a physiological disturbance that postoperative mechanical ventilation is needed. The reabsorption of tumescent fluid used during surgery and the surgery-induced bacterial and cytokine release can aggravate the lung dysfunction. The decision to wean from mechanical ventilation and extubate after surgery is based on the same considerations as in the nonburn patient. Extubation should not be performed in the presence of hemodynamic instability, significant metabolic derangement, hypothermia, sepsis, or worsening pulmonary function. Assessment of extubation readiness should include assessment for edema in the upper airway and glottis. The presence of a good air leak after deflation of the endotracheal cuff is an indirect estimate of an adequate glottic opening. Direct visualization using direct laryngoscopy or with flexible FOB is often performed in the operating room prior to planned weaning and extubation.

MONITORING

As with any patient suffering from multiorgan dysfunction, intraoperative monitoring of the burn injury patient depends on the patient's physiologic status and extent of planned surgery. The injury per se can make placement of these monitors challenging when standard sites are burned or are within the surgical field. Difficulty may be encountered in adherence of standard electrocardiogram (ECG) electrodes as a result of exudation of fluid from the injured sites or the presence of topical antibiotic ointment. Use of needle electrodes or surgical staples to fix the electrodes can be effective. Alternatively, placing the electrodes on the back or dependent sites may hold them in place. Application of pulse oximetry probes can also be difficult and may require alternative sites, such as the ear, nose, or tongue in such circumstances. In an extensively burned patient, a blood pressure cuff may have to be placed directly over injured or recently grafted tissue. In this circumstance, great care should be taken to protect the underlying area and a sterile cuff should be used. If rapid or extensive bleeding is expected, an arterial line should be considered for continuous measurement of blood pressure and blood sampling. In addition, the arterial pressure waveform and its alterations in relation to respiration provide continuous hemodynamic information about fluid responsiveness and cardiac output and can be used to guide volume and vasoactive therapy.[225] Temperature monitoring is imperative as these patients are susceptible to and intolerant of hypothermia. Monitoring of body temperature is also useful for detection of blood transfusion reactions intraoperatively (>2°C rise in temperature). Neuromuscular function monitoring in patients receiving neuromuscular blocking drugs is required as dose requirements can be significantly altered. However, continuous use of muscle relaxants during burn surgery is seldom needed. Multiport central venous catheters are useful for simultaneous monitoring of central pressures and administering of drugs and fluids. Meticulous care to prevent contamination from exogenous sources of all existing or planned introduction of catheters and tubes should always be observed.

PHARMACOLOGIC CONSIDERATIONS

Burn injury causes pathophysiologic changes in the cardiovascular, pulmonary, renal, and hepatic systems, as well as in concentrations of circulating plasma proteins as a result of the release of endogenous mediators, and hormones together with exogenous ligands that are administered affect receptor plasticity. These changes result in altered pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic responses to many drugs, and these responses may vary depending on the burn severity and the time elapsed after the injury.[226,227]

The two distinct phases of cardiovascular and metabolic responses to burn injury can affect pharmacokinetics in different ways. During the acute injury phase (0-48 hours), there is rapid loss of fluid from the intravascular space, resulting in decreased cardiac output and blood flow to organs and tissues. Despite adequate resuscitation, patients may continue to have decreased cardiac output and decreased renal and hepatic blood flow. During this phase, there will be decreased elimination of some drugs by the kidney and liver. Because of decreased intestinal blood flow, absorption of oral drugs will also be delayed. Following the resuscitation phase, the hyperdynamic phase begins, which is characterized by increased cardiac output and increased blood flow to the kidneys and liver. Drugs dependent on organ blood flow will have increased clearances; drug doses may have to be adjusted upward accordingly.

The two major drug-binding proteins, albumin and α1-acid glycoprotein (AAG), are altered in opposite ways after burn injury.[227] The concentration of albumin, which binds to mostly acidic and neutral drugs, is decreased in burn injury patients while AAG, which binds cationic drugs, is an acute-phase reactant and its concentration increases twofold or greater in these patients.[229] Cationic drugs (lidocaine, propranolol, muscle relaxants, and some opioids) bind to AAG, resulting in decreases in free fraction. Most likely related to the decreased albumin levels and continued fluid leak through burn wounds and/or resuscitation fluids, there is an increase in volume of distribution of almost every drug studied (propofol, fentanyl, muscle relaxants). In addition, pharmacodynamic changes at target organs alter drug-receptor interactions causing variable and at times unpredictable changes in responses to drugs. Consequently, changes in the usual dosages of drugs or complete exclusion of other drugs (e.g., succinylcholine) may be *necessary* to ensure efficacy, patient safety, or avoid toxicity.

Clearance of drugs highly extracted by the liver depends primarily on hepatic blood flow and is relatively insensitive to alterations in protein binding. Thus clearance of highly extracted drugs (e.g., propofol, fentanyl) may decrease during the early postburn phase as a result of hypoperfusion from hypovolemia and hypotension, and subsequently increase during the hyperdynamic phase when hepatic blood flow increases.[230,231] During the hypermetabolic phase, renal blood flow and glomerular filtration rate increase. Thus renal clearance of some drugs (antibiotics [gentamicin, cephalosporins] and H_2-receptor antagonists [ranitidine]) will have enhanced elimination.[232,233] In contrast, clearance of drugs that have a low hepatic extraction coefficient is unaffected by changes in hepatic blood flow, but is sensitive to alterations in plasma protein levels as it is the unbound fraction of drug that is metabolized. Hepatic enzyme activity also appears to be altered in patients with burns.[226] Phase I reactions, which include oxidation, reduction, hydroxylation, and demethylation, are impaired after burn injury (e.g., diazepam). Phase II reactions involving conjugation, glucuronidation, and sulfation seem to be relatively unaffected (e.g., lorazepam).[235] Additionally, systemically administered drugs may leak out through the burn wound, and blood loss during surgery can potentially exaggerate the elimination of drugs.

ANESTHETIC DRUGS

Many inhalation and intravenous drugs have been used successfully for the induction and maintenance of anesthesia in burn injury patients.[230] Choice of drug should be based on the patient's hemodynamic and pulmonary status and the potential difficulty in securing the patient's airway. Because of its rapid onset and lack of pungency, sevoflurane offers advantages for smooth inhalation induction in children or adults with abnormal airways or those without intravenous lines. The choice of volatile aesthetic does not appear to influence outcome in these patients. Long-term sequelae of repetitive anesthetics in pediatric patients is unknown.

Propofol clearance and volume of distribution are increased in patients with major burns during the hyperdynamic phase of injury.[230] Therefore in comparison with nonburned patients, those with major burn injury may require larger bolus doses and/or increased infusion rates of propofol to attain or maintain therapeutic plasma drug concentrations. Attention to the hemodynamic consequences of administering larger doses of propofol is warranted.

Opioids

Opioids are the mainstay of analgesia in this population of patients because (1) they are potent, (2) the benefits and risks of their use are familiar to the majority of care providers, and (3) they provide a dose-dependent sedation that is beneficial during painful and anxiety-provoking wound-care procedures.[238] The wide spectrum of opioids available for clinical use provides dosing flexibility (i.e., variable routes of administration, time until effect, and duration of analgesia), which can target different pain qualities and contexts. For example, oral opioids with delayed systemic uptake (e.g., sustained-release morphine, fentanyl patch) or prolonged terminal half-life (e.g., methadone) are effective in treating background pain. In contrast, short-acting agents with rapid onset (e.g., intravenous fentanyl, alfentanil) are better suited for procedural pain alleviation. During the acute phase of injury, potent opioids such as morphine sulfate, hydromorphone, and fentanyl should be given intravenously and titrated based on patient response. It is not clear that the use of any one opioid offers fewer side effects than another.

Many patients are receiving continuous infusions of opiates and sedatives before surgery. These infusions have been maintained to reach a steady state of effect and should not be stopped. Intraoperative analgesia can be achieved by increasing these infusions or turning to other drugs. Fentanyl is commonly used as an analgesic in the operating room as well as for sedation in burn care units. The volume of distribution and clearance of fentanyl are increased following burn injury partly explaining the increased dose requirement of this drug.[239,240] A decreased volume of distribution and clearance of morphine has been reported in burn patients, with an expected increase in elimination half-life.[241] However, other literature has suggested no significant difference in morphine pharmacokinetics between adults with and without burn injury.[242]

Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) with intravenous opioids has been shown to be a safe and effective method of opioid delivery for acute or procedure-related pain in both children and adults with burn injury.[243-246] PCA also provides benefit by allowing the patient to retain some degree of control over his/her medical care (i.e., control coping).

The analgesic efficacy of opioids decreases with time resulting in the need for increasing dosage requirements to achieve an equivalent effect. Opioid tolerance, a diminished opioid anti-nociceptive effect following repeated exposure to opioid, may be apparent as early as after 1 week of uninterrupted opioid use.[175] It is not uncommon for these patients to manifest opioid tolerance requiring dosage amounts that far exceed standard textbook recommendations.[248] Studies with burned animals have suggested intrinsic pharmacodynamic opioid receptor alterations. These include desensitization and downregulation in μ-opioid receptors, and upregulation of protein kinase C-γ and *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors.[249] In view of the NDMA upregulation following burns, it is not surprising that ketamine requirements to anesthetize patients also are increased following burn injury.[250] Adverse effects of opioids, such as respiratory depression, acute opioid tolerance, and hyperalgesia, particularly with the need for rapidly escalating doses, have generated increasing attention to multimodal strategies. Clonidine, dexmedetomidine, ketamine, and methadone have been found to be effective in the treatment of pain in patients with extreme tolerance to morphine.[251,252]

A variety of non-opioid analgesics are useful for treating burn pain since their benefit and side effect profiles differ from opioid analgesics (Table 87.2).

NSAIDS

Acetaminophen and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) are useful first-line analgesics for minor burns.[253] However, NSAIDs and acetaminophen exhibit a ceiling effect in their dose-response relationship, rendering them inadequate as a single agent for the treatment of severe burn pain. NSAIDs can also have deleterious effects including bleeding risk, gastrointestinal, cardiovascular, and renal complications. As a consequence, NSAIDs are generally avoided in patients with major burns.

α2 Agonists

Clonidine or dexmedetomidine (α2-adrenoceptor agonists) can be useful analgesic adjuncts without causing respiratory depression.[254] However, the α2-adrenoceptor agonists can cause hypotension in higher doses and in the presence of hypovolemia; therefore these should not be

TABLE 87.2 Sedation and Analgesia Treatment Guideline

Stage of Injury	Background Anxiety	Background Pain	Procedural Anxiety	Procedural Pain
Acute burn mechanically ventilated	Midazolam infusion or Dexmedetomidine infusion Antipsychotics Propofol infusion	Morphine infusion	Midazolam bolus Dexmedetomidine at higher infusion rates Antipsychotics Propofol boluses	Morphine bolus Ketamine IV
Acute burn not mechanically ventilated	Scheduled lorazepam PO or IV or Dexmedetomidine	Scheduled morphine PO or IV	Lorazepam PO or IV	Morphine PO or IV
Chronic acute burn	Scheduled lorazepam or antipsychotics (PO)	Scheduled morphine or methadone	Lorazepam or antipsychotics (PO)	Morphine PO or oxycodone

IV, Intravenous; *PO,* per os (orally).

given to hemodynamically unstable patients. Dexmedetomidine has been used to provide sedation–analgesia for burned patients and to decrease opioid requirements.[255] However, α2 agonists have also been reported to increase excitability of heat-sensitive cutaneous nociceptors but the clinical relevance of this finding in burn patients remains unclear.[256] The use of dexmedetomidine has recently been reported to reduce the risk of developing delirium when used for ICU sedation, especially in comparison to benzodiazepines.[257]

Anxiolytics

The recognition that anxiety can exacerbate acute pain has led to increased use of anxiolytic drugs in combination with opioid analgesics. The combination of benzodiazepines and opioids is particularly useful in premedicating patients for wound care to help reduce the anticipatory anxiety related to such procedures. Patients most likely to benefit from this combined treatment are those with either high anxiety at the time of the procedure or high baseline pain scores.[258] The tolerance to opiates seems to be exaggerated by long-term administration of the benzodiazepine, midazolam.[259]

Gabapentin

Gabapentin is an anticonvulsant that has increasingly been used for chronic and neuropathic pain, and as an adjunct pain medication that may play a role in modulating central sensitization and hyperalgesia. Several studies have shown gabapentin to be a beneficial addition to an opioid analgesic regimen in this population.[260,261]

Ketamine

Ketamine is a dissociative anesthetic that induces rapid and profound sedation, analgesia, and amnesia. It causes functional dissociation between the limbic and the cortical systems, producing a trance-like cataleptic state that impairs sensory recognition of painful stimuli and memory. In addition, by acting as a noncompetitive NMDA receptor antagonist, it is thought to both prevent the induction of central pain sensitization and its windup, thereby reducing the development and maintenance of opioid tolerance and hyperalgesia. Ketamine is a widely used analgesic agent in all stages of burn injury, both primarily and as an adjunct to other analgesic regimens.[262] Intravenous ketamine is commonly used for procedures requiring deep sedation such as dressing changes and line placement because of its rapid onset and short duration of action, which is due to rapid redistribution. Intravenous ketamine infusions can be continued safely in the ward environment after discharge from ICU. Ketamine can also be used for long-term administration although tolerance develops with time. The other advantage is that it can be weaned rapidly without adverse consequences even after long-term use.[263]

Ketamine has many potential advantages for induction and maintenance of anesthesia in burn patients.[264] Ketamine is associated with hemodynamic stability, preservation of hypoxic and hypercapnic responses, and decreasing airway resistance. Ketamine may exert beneficial antiinflammatory effects in patients with burns and or sepsis. Also, by causing peripheral vasoconstriction, ketamine may be advantageous for patients at risk for hypothermia.[265] Whether peripheral vasoconstriction occurs in patients with major burns, and whether this causes a reduction in blood loss, is unknown. It is important that bolus doses of ketamine can cause hypotension in some patients with burn injury, despite ketamine-induced catecholamine release. This occurs because of the persistently high levels of catecholamines in these patients that result in desensitization and downregulation of β-adrenoreceptors.[266] As a result, direct myocardial depressant effects of ketamine can manifest.

Another important feature of ketamine is that, unlike all other anesthetic agents, muscle tone and protective airway reflexes are preserved. Consequently, ketamine may be the agent of choice if one wishes to avoid manipulation of the airway (e.g., after placement of fresh facial grafts, for stent or dressing removal, for brief procedures such as dressing or line changes, or for patients with TENS).

Ketamine administration can result in a number of side effects including nausea and vomiting, hallucinations, mood alteration, bizarre dreams, and emergence delirium, which tend to occur when ketamine is used as a single agent, when given in large doses, and if administered rapidly. The administration of a benzodiazepine in combination with ketamine has been shown to decrease the frequency and severity of emergence reactions.[267]

Regional Anesthesia

Regional anesthesia can be advantageous in targeting specific aspects of burn-injury pain. In its simplest form, regional anesthesia may be tumescent local anesthesia injected into a donor site prior to harvesting or it can take the form of subcutaneous catheter infusions, peripheral nerve blocks, or central neuraxial blockade.[268–271] While regional anesthesia can be the primary anesthetic management for surgical burn care, it is frequently also utilized as an analgesic adjunct, enabling opioid sparing and improved postoperative analgesia. Placement must take into consideration that skin donor sites and injury sites are often in different anatomic locations and that patients often have more intense postoperative pain from the split-thickness skin donor site than from the grafted burn wound.

Central neuroaxial techniques (spinals, epidurals) have been used with good effect as both primary anesthetics and postoperative adjuncts.[272-274] However, fear of meningeal spread in patients densely colonized with infectious organisms, reluctance to inserting a needle through burned tissue, and anatomic surgical incompatibilities (e.g., the need to graft lower extremities but donor sites are on upper extremities or trunk) may limit their use. There are no reports suggesting epidural abscesses are more common in burn patients, but reports have suggested that intravascular catheters are more likely to become infected if placed in or near burned tissue.[275] Administration of local anesthetics (and/or opioids) via an epidural catheter would seem to be of benefit in patients with lower extremity burns, resulting in both background and procedural analgesia, as well as autonomic sympathectomy and peripheral vasodilation.

Truncal blocks (paravertebral and transversus abdominis plane [TAP] can be very useful to provide analgesia for donor-site harvesting, and both block techniques are also amenable to placement of catheters to extend duration of postoperative analgesia.[276] As for central neuraxial catheters, there are theoretical concerns of increased infection with placement of a foreign body (i.e., catheter) in these patients, but such infections have not been reported. It is also likely that infection from a paravertebral or TAP catheter would be a less catastrophic event than an infection from a central neuraxial catheter (e.g., epidural abscess).

The lateral femoral cutaneous nerve is particularly well suited to block because it is exclusively a sensory nerve and innervates an area (the lateral thigh) that is frequently chosen for split-thickness skin grafts.[277,278] Sometimes there is a need to cover the anterior and medial thigh due to the extent of skin harvest, and therefore a fascia iliaca block can also be performed.

The pharmacology of local anesthetics in burn injury patients may be altered by changes in hepatic function, protein binding, and volumes of distribution.[279] The incidence of adverse effects of local anesthetics or tolerance does not appear altered in the burn patient, per se, but caution is advised in the use of these potentially neuro/cardiotoxic agents in critically ill burn patients. Recent advances in local anesthetics, such as liposomally enclosed lidocaine and bupivacaine, have the potential to offer longer duration of action with greater safety (i.e., local anesthetics stay *locally*), but studies specific to burn patients have yet to be performed.[280]

Muscle Relaxants

Muscle relaxant pharmacology is significantly and consistently altered after burn injury.[281] Exposure to succinylcholine can result in an exaggerated hyperkalemic response, which can induce cardiac arrest. The current recommendation is to avoid succinylcholine administration in patients 48 to 72 hours after burn injury.[282,283] An increase in the number of extrajunctional acetylcholine receptors that release potassium during depolarization with succinylcholine is the cause for increased hyperkalemia. The duration of the hyperkalemic response most likely varies with the severity of the injury and accompanying critical illness, and the extent of muscle recovery. The presence of aggravating factors such as disuse (contractures), immobilization due to long-term bed rest, inadequate nourishment, and possibly ICU myopathy may also contribute to these changes and would likely make the potential of hyperkalemia more likely.[281] Almost paralleling the hyperkalemia to succinylcholine, there is concomitantly a decreased sensitivity to the neuromuscular effects of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants (NDMRs). Resistance to NDMRs has been reported in pediatric patients 463 days after burn injury, suggesting that the hyperkalemic response to succinylcholine could also persist for more than a year.[284] Although a hyperkalemic response to succinylcholine may be seen, whether lethal levels would be reached is unknown after such a long period. Whether small doses (0.1 mg/kg) of succinylcholine, as might be used for treatment of laryngospasm, would result in less hyperkalemia has been inadequately studied.[285]

NDMRs are the relaxants of choice in burn patients. However, the dose and duration of onset required to achieve effective paralysis can be substantially increased while the duration of paralysis is reduced. The etiology of the altered response to NDMRs is multifactorial: (1) upregulation of acetylcholine receptors, including upregulation of fetal and α7 (neuronal type) acetylcholine receptors at the muscle membrane; and (2) increased binding to AAG and, enhanced adrenal and hepatic elimination of the NDMRs.[286,287] Resistance to the effects of NDMR is highly correlated with the magnitude of the burn and time after burn.[288]

Rocuronium is the drug of choice in burn patients when rapid onset of paralysis is necessary and succinylcholine is contraindicated. An increased rocuronium dose of 1.2 to 1.5 mg/kg for rapid sequence induction has been recommended in patients with major burn injury.[289,290] It must be noted, however, that even with a dose of 1.5 mg/kg of rocuronium, the onset time to effective paralysis approximates 90 seconds in burned patients compared with less than 60 seconds in nonburned patients with a dose of 0.9 mg/kg (Fig. 87.5). Even at the higher doses, the duration of action of rocuronium can be quite variable; therefore monitoring of neuromuscular function is essential to specifically determine the dose requirement and the adequacy of reversal in patients with major burns. Preliminary evidence suggests that sugammadex, a modified cyclodextrin used for reversal of rocuronium- and vecuronium-induced nondepolarizing muscle block, can be used in burn patients, with recovery times for muscle activity similar to that in other types of patients.[291]

Atracurium, broken down by organ-independent pathways (e.g., Hofmann elimination), also exhibits reduced neuromuscular effect following burns.[292] This suggests that the major component to resistance to NDMRs is pharmacodynamic in nature. No research study has specifically addressed the effect of cisatracurium following burn injury. However, it

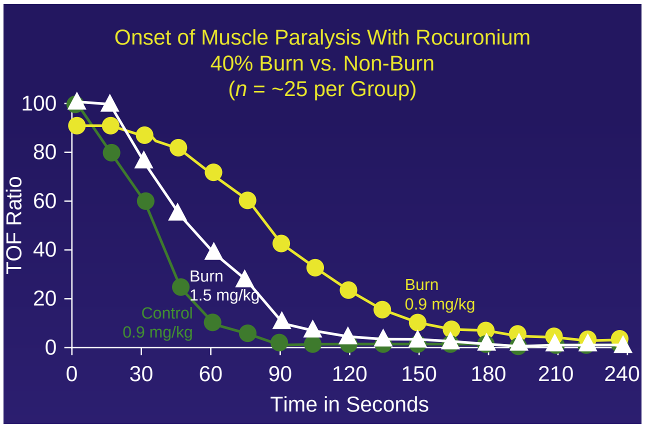


Fig. 87.5 Dose-response curves and time to maximal effect of rocuronium in adult burned and non-burned patients. Dose versus time to percent twitch suppression for rocuronium in control subjects and burned subjects of mean 40% total body surface area (TBSA) burn and studied at least 1 week after burn. In unburned patients the rocuronium dose of 0.9 mg/kg caused 95% twitch suppression in ≤60 seconds. The same dose has an onset of >120 seconds following major burn. Increasing doses of rocuronium shifted dose-response curves to the left. However, even with 1.5 mg/kg dose, the onset was still >90 seconds. TOF ratio refers to train-of-four ratio recorded in muscle during 2 Hz nerve stimulation.

can be inferred that cisatracurium may, too, have an altered pharmacodynamic profile, and dosing should be adjusted accordingly. Pharmacologic reversal of neuromuscular blockade with acetylcholine esterase inhibitors (e.g., neostigmine) poses no special problems in patients with burn injury.[283] Recovery of neuromuscular blockade has been observed at serum concentrations that would cause 100% twitch depression in nonburned patients.

FLUID MANAGEMENT AND BLOOD LOSS DURING EXCISION

Intraoperative fluid administration must be carefully optimized so as not to under-resuscitate or over-resuscitate, both of which may lead to further complications in the postoperative period. Considerations for intraoperative fluid management include the magnitude of burn excision (large excisions incur more blood loss), the depth of burn (partial-thickness burn excisions involve more blood loss than full-thickness burn excisions or fascial excision), the specific hemostatic techniques used (e.g., topical or subcutaneous epinephrine), and the volume of tumescent fluid administered. Injection of tumescent fluid into the burn or donor site should be minimized in the very young as gradual absorption of the tumescent fluid several hours later can lead to pulmonary edema.[294]

Correction of intravascular volume before induction of anesthesia is essential. Good communication between the surgical and anesthesia teams and limiting the operative duration and extent of excision can prevent such problems. Blood should be readily available before extensive burn excision is initiated.

Surgical excision of burn wounds is often associated with substantial bleeding. The hyperdynamic circulation and the inflammation-induced hyperemia exaggerate the blood loss. Published estimates of the amount of blood loss during burn excision operations are in the range of 3.5% to 5% of the blood volume for every 1% TBSA excised.[295] It is not uncommon for the surgical team to remove eschar so rapidly that the patient becomes hypovolemic and hypotensive. Increased blood loss also occurs because diffuse bleeding is used as an endpoint for excision, informing the surgeon that the tissue is viable. It is difficult to estimate blood loss during burn excision because shed blood cannot be efficiently collected in a suction canister, sponges may be presoaked with hemostatic agents, and substantial bleeding can continue unobserved beneath bulky dressings. As with the initial resuscitation, there is no single physiologic endpoint to use for titrating fluid replacement. Clinical judgment remains a vital component, using markers of hypoxemia, perfusion (base deficit, serum lactate), erythrocyte mass, coagulation, and pulse or arterial waveform as key assessment tools. In clinical practice, serial hemoglobin measurement in euvolemic patients is commonly used to determine the need for intraoperative transfusion. Rather than focusing on a single transfusion trigger, blood component therapy should be reserved for patients with a demonstrated physiologic need. Anticipation of continued blood loss may indicate transfusion to prevent significant anemia rather than waiting to treat it when it occurs.

Recent experience with civilian and military trauma with massive bleeding has demonstrated that mortality is decreased with an earlier and more aggressive administration of fresh-frozen plasma.[296] Criteria for massive bleeding include loss of total blood volume in 24 hours, 4 units of packed erythrocytes transfused in an hour, or ongoing loss of more than 150 mL of blood per minute and are not unusual for patients with large burns during burn wound excision. Although clinical experience with burn patients undergoing fluid resuscitation is not exactly equivalent to hemorrhagic shock of nonburned trauma patients, it is logical to assume that more aggressive use of fresh-frozen plasma to prevent development of coagulopathy may also benefit the burn injury population who also experience massive hemorrhage. The use of platelet transfusion may also be indicated in situations with larger losses, but endpoints for such transfusions remain unclear. Targeted correction of coagulopathy using thromboelastometry may reduce transfusion requirements during surgical burn wound excision as it may indicate which blood product is needed.[297]

Surgical hemostasis should be maintained during the burn wound excision in order to limit complications, sustain hemodynamic stability, and limit the number of blood transfusions necessary. Increased transfusion requirement is associated with poorer outcomes. Several methods have been used to maintain hemostasis, including topical application or subcutaneous infiltration of the burn wound and donor sites with diluted epinephrine solutions, limb elevation and use of tourniquets for extremity surgery, use of compression dressings, and topically applied thrombin and fibrinogen. In addition, a brisk operative pace is beneficial.

TEMPERATURE MANAGEMENT

Patients with major burn injury have an impaired ability for thermoregulation and therefore require close monitoring of body temperature. The anesthetic-induced vasodilatation and surgical preparation with alcohol may aggravate the heat loss. The inflammatory response to large burns causes an increase in the hypothalamic core temperature set point and the metabolic rate is increased to maintain this increased temperature. Hypothermia is therefore poorly tolerated as it causes an exaggerated increase in oxygen consumption and exacerbates the catabolic response to the injuries. Consequences of hypothermia during burn excisions also include decreased cardiac output, arrhythmias, abolition of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction, left shift of the hemoglobin dissociation curve, interference with the normal blood coagulation mechanisms, and reduction of hepatic and renal function, as well as the reduced effect of inotropes. Intraoperative hypothermia (<36.0°C) has been associated with significantly increased blood loss, wound infection, and acute lung injury during burn surgery.[298,299] Postoperative consequences of hypothermia include shivering, impairment of drug clearance, and masking of hypovolemia. Furthermore, shivering can dislodge grafts and increase oxygen consumption by up to 500%, resulting in increased demand on the cardiopulmonary system as well as altering nutritional needs.[300]

Maintaining body temperature in these patients is challenging. Multiple strategies are used to maintain body temperature in the operating room, including use of forced-air warming blankets, thermal water mattresses, blood/fluid warmers, minimizing skin surface exposure, and wrapping the head and extremities with plastic or thermal insulation.[298] From an efficacy perspective, water-based mattresses, which provide convection heating, have a significant advantage.[302] Temperature in the operating room is commonly maintained at 80°F to 100°F (27°C-38°C), depending on the age and severity of the burn. Although a hot operating room can be uncomfortable for the operating room staff, it is often essential for maintaining the patient's temperature. The ambient temperature of the preinduction area should also be maintained at above-normal levels and patients should be covered with warm blankets during transport. Children have greater surface-area-to-body-weight ratios, resulting in more rapid heat loss.

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

A general understanding of surgical management is very important for planning and perioperative management of the patient with burn injury. An appropriate surgical plan takes into account the extent, site, and depth of the burn injury; the general physical state of the patient; and the resources of the team treating the patient.[303] Typically, the first excision will be undertaken within the first 72 hours after injury (early excision). Early removal of necrotic tissue in patients with major burn injury has been associated with reduced complications including decreased infection rates, improved cardiac function, decreased overall blood transfusions, reduced hypermetabolic response, and decreased overall mortality.[304,305] However, in some cases it may be delayed until later in order to improve patient stability and/or determine how much of the burn will heal by secondary intention without need for surgery. The first excision is aimed at excision and coverage of a large portion of deep burn, and the largest areas that can be safely excised are chosen. Typically, these would be the front or back of the trunk, or large areas on the limbs. For some patients, up to 50% TBSA can be safely excised in one operation, with significantly less blood loss and hypothermia. However, for patients with comorbidities or systemic instability, the safest course is often to carry out repeated, more modest excisions spaced a few days apart until all of the full thickness burn is excised (staged excision). The extent of excision should be planned to allow the greatest advantage of available autograft or allograft skin, so that the wound may be closed immediately after burn excision. Adequate wound closure also promotes optimal hemostasis after excision. The surgeon must continually monitor the procedure in case the patient becomes unstable and a need to abort surgery becomes evident, which requires close communication with the anesthesiologists.

The most important concept with excision of burn eschar is that debridement should be carried down to a level where only viable tissue remains. Burn wound excision can be performed as either tangential or fascial excision.[303] Tangential excision removes the burn eschar in a serial fashion to a depth of viable tissue capable of accepting a skin graft, which allows for preservation of as much viable tissue as possible and usually provides a better cosmetic outcome than fascial excision. Fascial excision involves a full-thickness excision of skin and subcutaneous tissue down to the level of muscle fascia. Fascial excision is usually reserved for large, life-threatening burns where there is a need for rapid excision and is not uncommon in the older population. Advantages of fascial compared with tangential excision include its ease of dissection, less blood loss, and a well-vascularized fascial layer for skin graft placement. Disadvantages include contour deformities, permanent loss of all cutaneous sensation, and removal of lymphatics leading to lymphedema distal to the excision.

After excision or debridement of the burn wound, it is essential that the wound bed be covered since it creates a potential open portal for invasive infection. In addition, massive fluid, electrolyte, and protein loss may occur from the debrided burn wounds. Autografting is the optimal coverage; however, in massive burns either allograft or skin substitutes may be used to temporize the wound bed until autograft donor sites become available. Temporary skin substitutes provide transient physiologic wound closure giving protection from mechanical trauma, minimizing evaporative water and heat losses, and acting as a physical barrier to bacteria. These skin substitutes can also be used as a dressing on donor sites to decrease pain, enhance epithelialization, and provide temporary closure while awaiting the healing of underlying, and at times, larger injuries of widely meshed autografts. No ideal permanent skin substitute exists at present, although a number of techniques are in use, including cultured epithelial cells and dermal analogs.[306,307]

Postoperative Care

Important postoperative considerations for burn injury patients include whether to extubate in the operating room, safe transport to the ICU, transfer of care to the ICU staff, and control of postoperative pain. A phone call to the burn unit should be made in advance before completion of the surgical procedure in the operating room to allow the care team adequate time to warm the room and to obtain necessary supplies and equipment (e.g., infusions, ventilator) that will be needed on the patient's arrival to the burn unit. Transport of the patient to and from the operating room requires a systematic approach to optimize the patient's physiologic status safely. Monitors appropriate to the patient's physiologic status, transport oxygen with appropriate respiratory support, a plan to keep the patient warm, adequate transport staff, resuscitation drugs, and an easily available intravenous drug administration site are all necessary for safe transport. Patients requiring mechanical ventilation during transport need at least two anesthesia personnel or an anesthesia provider and another clinician to manage ventilation, observe the monitors, and administer medications during transport. Because patient agitation and extubation during transfer can be disastrous, providing adequate sedation and analgesia are essential during intrahospital transport and moving patients to or from the bed to the stretcher or to the operating table. Hypothermia during transport should be minimized.

Postoperatively, burn injury patients are likely to be less stable physiologically compared with the preoperative period. Continued bleeding may be concealed by dressings, the patient may be more prone to hypothermia, emergence may be associated with delirium, and analgesic requirements will be greater. During this period of exaggerated physiologic fragility, it is important to be especially vigilant during transfer of the monitors, and respiratory and hemodynamic support equipment to the ICU staff. Patients should recover in a prewarmed room as considerable heat loss can develop during transport. Radiant heaters, fluid warmers, and warming blankets are useful in maintaining normothermia.

The decision to extubate in the operating room depends on standard criteria with concerns specific to burn patients, including an assessment of airway patency, metabolic status, intraoperative fluid volumes, potential for ongoing bleeding, and when the patient will return for further surgery. Postoperative mechanical ventilation is generally indicated in patients with preoperative mechanical ventilation, as well as those undergoing delicate sheet grafting to the face/neck, in an effort to minimize motion and graft disruption in the initial postoperative days.

Inadequate control of pain and anxiety can adversely affect postoperative care increasing hemodynamic instability, causing asynchrony with mechanical ventilation, impairing wound healing, and negatively impacting psychological well-being. The presence of newly excised tissue and harvested donor sites are very painful. Burn-injured patients become quite tolerant of sedatives and analgesics over time, and thus doses substantially larger than normal doses may be required especially in the postoperative period.[308] Administering intravenous bolus doses of ketamine (approximately 0.25 mg/kg) may at times work well to break through persistent pain postoperatively that seems unresponsive to opioids.[309] The subcutaneously administered fluid and vasopressors are slowly absorbed in the postoperative period and hypertension and pulmonary edema has been noted.

Pain Management

Management of burn-related pain is extremely challenging and may change in intensity and quality over time through the multiple stages of healing.[310] Background pain is most often less of a challenge compared to mobilization pain. All aspects of burn care (e.g., dressing changes, excision and grafting procedures, physical therapy, and line insertion) are associated with pain. There can be ongoing background pain, periodic breakthrough pain, procedure-related pain, and eventually, chronic pain can develop.[311] Furthermore burn-related pain is frequently undertreated in both adults and children, especially with dressing changes and wound care.[312,313] Not uncommonly pain may occur in combination with pruritus.[314]

The painful and distressing trauma of burn injury often causes fear and anxiety in patients, which can complicate their acute care and rehabilitation, and potentially contribute to increased morbidity, mortality, and length of stay. Inadequate treatment of anxiety and pain that lead to posttraumatic stress disorder has been reported to occur in up to 30% of patients with severe burn injury. Undertreated pain may also contribute to the development of chronic pain.

The mechanism of pain in burn injury patients is multifactorial and involves the inflammatory cascades and pathways that form part of the pathophysiologic process following tissue damage and nerve injuries.[315] Excess production of mediators, including calcitonin gene-related peptide and substance P, and activation of NMDA receptors can cause sensitization of A-delta and C sensory nerve fibers.[316] As a result of these processes, patients may develop primary and secondary hyperalgesia, causing an altered or increased sensitivity to painful stimuli.[317] Even normal skin can develop abnormal sensitivity. Repeated tissue trauma and painful stimuli, such as during excision and grafting procedures and during frequent dressing changes, in conjunction with inflammatory processes and infection, can result in neuroplastic adaptations within the CNS, particularly leading to hyperexcitability of the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. Pain afferent sensory impulses undergo facilitation and amplification to a given stimulus, contributing to the generation and maintenance of chronic or persistent pain. Furthermore, these patients often show an altered pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic drug response, requiring a highly individualized pain management plan and effective management often requires multiple treatment modalities.

To provide appropriate, consistent patient comfort, standardized pain and anxiety guidelines are used in many burn centers.[318,319] The effectiveness of the guideline-based approach to pain and anxiety is well established. These guidelines often call for a multimodal approach including the use of opioid and nonopioid analgesics, individual titration, explicit recommendations for drug selection, dosing, and increases in dosing, use of consistent, accurate, age-appropriate pain assessment tools, a limited formulary to promote staff familiarity with drugs used, and continuous reassessment of the guideline itself. Nonpharmacologic techniques may be helpful as analgesic adjuncts in reducing pain and anxiety throughout the acute and rehabilitation stages of healing. Such methods include cognitive behavioral therapy, distraction, relaxation techniques, virtual reality, and hypnosis.[320,321]

Anesthesia providers assume an essential role in developing and refining analgesic guidelines, coordinating the multidisciplinary pain management team, and aid in the education of burn unit staff and patients. Education on pain assessment, pain control, medications, and adverse effects may take the form of consultant-led pain rounds, teaching sessions, and/or rolling training programs, which have been shown to be effective in improving pain assessment and provision of analgesia.[322]

As burn wounds are closed, the painful stimuli decrease and the need for analgesics is gradually reduced. When a patient is being weaned, opioids and other sedative doses should be gradually decreased to prevent withdrawal symptoms and still provide adequate analgesia and anxiolysis.[323] Patients may be safely extubated while still receiving opioid infusions. Pruritus is a common and often distressing problem for these patients during the healing process.[324] It can be debilitating and interfere with sleep, activities of daily living, and may cause additional tissue damage from the scratching of healing or thin epithelium and newly grafted skin leading to increased pain.[325] The causes of pruritus are multifactorial, often being triggered or worsened by opioids, heat, physical activity, and stress. Pruritus usually diminishes gradually with time but sometimes persists even after complete wound healing. A variety of approaches can control itching including systemic antihistamines, moisturizing lotions, and wearing loose-fitting clothing. Centrally acting drugs such as gabapentin and pregabalin may also be beneficial in ameliorating pruritic symptoms.[326]

Conclusion

Burn injury patients pose a myriad of challenges to acute and perioperative care. Despite significant advances in therapeutic strategies, such as improving resuscitation, enhancing wound coverage, appropriate infection control, and improving treatment of inhalation injury, severe burns remain a devastating injury affecting nearly every organ system and leading to significant morbidity and mortality. The decreasing incidence of burns in developed countries reduces exposure to burn-injured patients and underlines the need for ensuring adequate training in burn care by acute and perioperative providers. Anesthesiologists are often called on to care for burn injury patients through their hospitalization including acute airway management and resuscitation, intraoperative anesthetic care, intensive care, and management of postoperative pain. To optimally care for this challenging patient population requires understanding, appreciating, and anticipating the unique preoperative, intraoperative, and postoperative issues and problems of the burn injury patient that predispose them to increased morbidity and mortality.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. World Health Organization. Burns: Fact sheet. http://www.who.int/en/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/burns. (Last accessed 7/28/2018)
2. American Burn Association Fact Sheet. http://ameriburn.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/04/nbaw-fact-sheet-rev.pdf. (Last accessed 7/28/2018)
3. Hundeshagen G, et al. *Lancet Child Adolesc Health*. 2017;1(4):293–301.
4. Duke JM, et al. *Burns*. 2017;43(2):273–281.
5. Browne AL, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2011;27(2):136–145.
6. Tevlin R, et al. *Burns*. 2017;43(6):1141–1148.
7. Jeschke MG, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(4):808–815.
8. Cuthbertson DP. *Lancet*. 1942;239:433–437.
9. Rani M, et al. *Burns*. 2017;43(2):297–303.
10. Lund T, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1989;256(4 Pt 2):H940–H948.
11. Lund T, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1988;255(5 Pt 2):H1069–H1074.
12. Lund T, et al. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 1987;129(3):433–435.
13. Soussi S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018. [Epub ahead of print].
14. Nielson CB, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(1):e469–e481.
15. Demling RH. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2005;26(3):207–227.
16. Arturson G. *Acta Chir Scand Suppl*. 1961;(suppl 274):1–135.
17. Lund T, et al. *Am J Physiol*. 1988;255(5 Pt 2):H1069–H1074.
18. Kinsky MP, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1998;19(1 Pt 1):1–9.
19. Deleted in proofs.
20. Demling RH. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2005;26(3):207–227.
21. Deleted in proofs.
22. Atiyeh BS, et al. *Ann Burns Fire Disasters*. 2012;25(2):59–65.
23. Hahn RG. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(2):470–481.
24. Sjoberg F. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52(6):725–726.
25. Bak Z, et al. *J Trauma*. 2009;66(2):329–336.
26. Zdolsek HJ, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2001;27(5):844–852.
27. Evers LH, et al. *Exp Dermatol*. 2010;19(9):777–783.
28. Johansson J, et al. *Burns*. 2009;35(8):1185–1187.
29. Johansson J, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2015;36(4):484–492.
30. Tanaka H, et al. *Burns*. 1999;25(7):569–574.
31. Tanaka H, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2000;135:326–331.
32. Matsuda T, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1992;13(5):560–566.
33. Bak Z, et al. *Burns*. 2008;34(5):603–609.
34. Adams HR, et al. *Am Heart J*. 1984;108(6):1477e87.
35. Abu-Sittah GS, et al. *Ann Burns Fire Disasters*. 2012;25(1):26e37.
36. Barber RC, et al. *Shock*. 2008;30(4):388–393.
37. Nielson CB, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(1):e469–e481.
38. Foncerrada G, et al. *Ann Plast Surg*. 2018;80(3 Suppl 2):S98–S105.
39. Kudchadkar SR, et al. *J Emerg Med*. 2014;46(2):e43–e46.
40. Enkhbaatar P, et al. *Lancet*. 2016;388(10052):1437–1446.
41. Bittner EA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(2):448–464.
42. Zak AL, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1999;20:391–399.
43. Rodkey FL, et al. *Clin Chem*. 1974;20:83–84.
44. Winter PM, Miller JN. *JAMA*. 1976;236:1502.
45. Ernst A, Zibrak JD. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;339(22):1603–1608.
46. Weaver LK, et al. *Chest*. 2000;117(3):801–808.
47. Weiss SM. *Clin Chest Med*. 1994;15(1):103–116.
48. Hsiao PJ, et al. *Intern Med*. 2015;54:1901–1904.
49. Baud FJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325:1761–1766.
50. MacLennan L, Moiemen N. *Burns*. 2015;41:18–24.
51. Hall AH, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2007;49(6):806–813.
52. Petrikovics I, et al. *World J Methodol*. 2015;5(2):88–100.
53. Putman CE, et al. *Am J Roentgenol*. 1977;129(5):865–870.
54. Spano S, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2016;37(1):1–11.
55. Ikonomidis C, et al. *Burns*. 2012;38:513–519.
56. Kwon HP, et al. *Burns*. 2014;40(7):1308–1315.
57. Yamamura H, et al. *Crit Care*. 2013;17(3):R95.
58. Walker PF, et al. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:351.
59. Ryan CM, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:1345–1346.
60. Fang-Gang N, et al. *Burns*. 2015;41(6):1340–1346.
61. Gaissert HA, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1993;218:672–678.
62. Cobley TD, et al. *Burns*. 1999;25:361–363.
63. Casper JK, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2002;23:235–243.
64. Endorf FW, Dries DJ. *J Burn Care Res*. 2010;31:217–228.
65. Dai NT, et al. *Burns*. 1998;24(7):671–675.
66. Saffle JI. *J Burn Care Res*. 2007;28(3):382–395.
67. Chung KK, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2016;37(2):e131–e139.
68. Slutsky AS, Ranieri VM. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(22):2126–2136.
69. ISBI Practice Guidelines for Burn Care. *Burns*. 2016;42(5):953–1021.
70. Hale DF, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;72(6):1634–1639.
71. Sheridan RL, et al. *J Trauma*. 1995;39(5):854–859.
72. Erickson S, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8:317–323.
73. Sousse LE, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2015;220:570–578.
74. Khemani RG, et al. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35:1428–1437.
75. Chung KK, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(10):1970–1977.
76. Greathouse ST, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2012;33(3):425–435.
77. Walia G, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2011;32(1):118–123.
78. Asmussen S, et al. *Burns*. 2013;39(3):429–435.
79. Nelson J, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2009;30(6):1035–1038.
80. Deutsch CJ, et al. *Burns*. 2018;44(5):1040–1051.
81. Lopez E, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(2):e89–e96.
82. Lange M, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39:718–724.
83. Desai MH, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1998;19:210–212.
84. Miller AC, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2009;30:249–256.
85. Elsharnouby NM, et al. *J Crit Care*. 2014;29:182. e181-184.
86. Musgrave MA, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2000;21:551–557.

87. Sheridan RL, et al. *J Trauma*. 1997;42:629–634.
88. Endorf FW, Dries DJ. *J Burn Care Res*. 2010;31:217–228.
88a. Warner P. *J Burn Care Res*. 2009;30:198–199.
89. Byerly FL, et al. *Burns*. 2006;32(1):121–125.
90. ATLS Subcommittee; American College of Surgeons' Committee on Trauma; International ATLS working group. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2013;74(5):1363–1366.
90a. Advanced Burn Life Support Course Provider Manual https://evidencebasedpractice.osumc.edu/Documents/Guidelines/ABLSProviderManual_20101018.pdf.
91. Badulak JH, et al. *Burns*. 2018;44(3):531–538.
92. Cai AR, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(1):e23–e29.
93. Rosenkranz KM, Sheridan R. *Burns*. 2002;28(7):665–669.
94. American Burn Association. Burn Center Referral Criteria. http://ameriburn.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/05/burncenterreferralcriteria.pdf. Last accessed 7/30/2018.
95. Sheridan R, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1999;20:347–350.
96. Palmieri TL, et al. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(4):319–324.
97. Dimick AR, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1993;14:284–299.
98. Jeschke MG, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(4):808–815.
99. Knaysi GA, et al. *Plast Recon Surg*. 1968;41:560–563.
100. Sheridan RL, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1995;16:605–606.
101. Lund C, Browder N. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1944;79:352–359.
102. Benjamin NC, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(1):e254–e260.
103. Atchison NE, et al. *Pain*. 1991;47(1):41–45.
104. Underhill FP. *JAMA*. 1930;95:852–857.
105. Evans EI, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1952;135:804.
106. Baxter CR, Shires T. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1968;150:874–894.
107. Herndon D. *Total Burn Care*. 5th ed. ; 2018. Edinburgh, London, New York, Oxford, Philadelphia, St Louis, Sidney.
108. Jeschke MG, Kamholz LP, Sjöberg F, Wolf SE. *Handbook of Burns 1*. 2nd ed. Wien: Springer; 2018. Vol. (in Press).
109. Greenhalgh DG. *Burns*. 2010;36(2):176–182.
110. Romanowski KS, Palmieri TL. *Burns Trauma*. 2017;5:26.
111. Deleted in proofs.
112. Soussi S, Legrand M. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2016;30(4): 437–443.
113. Lorente JA, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(6):1728e35.
114. Barton RG, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1997;18(1 Pt 1):1–9.
115. Holm C, et al. *Burns*. 2004;30(8):798–807.
116. Bak Z, et al. *J Trauma*. 2009;66(2):329–336.
117. Deleted in proofs.
118. Soussi S, et al. *Ann Intensive Care*. 2016;6(1):87.
119. Soussi S, et al. *Crit Care*. 2018;22(1):194.
120. Samuelsson A, et al. *Crit Care*. 2006;10(6):R172.
121. Brownson EG, et al. *Crit Care Clin*. 2016;32(4):567–575.
122. Saffle JR. *Crit Care Clin*. 2016;32(4):587–598.
123. Oda J, et al. *Burns*. 2006;32(2):151–154.
124. Kirkpatrick AW, et al. *World J Surg*. 2009;33(6):1142–1149.
125. Malbrain ML, et al. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2013;27(2):249–270.
126. Pruitt Jr BA. *J Trauma*. 2000;49(3):567–568.
127. Klein MB, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2007;245(4):622–628.
128. Saffle JR. *Crit Care Clin*. 2016;32(4):587–598.
129. Sullivan SR, et al. *Burns*. 2004;30(6):583–590.
130. Cancio LC, et al. *J Trauma*. 2004;56(2):404–413.
131. Salinas J, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(9):2031–2038.
132. Belba MK, et al. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2009;27(9):1091–1096.
133. Huang PP, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1995;221(5):543–554.
134. Tanaka H, et al. *Arch Surg*. 2000;135:326–331.
135. Lentz CW, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2014;46:S107.
136. Sartor Z, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2015;36(1):50–56.
137. Klein MB, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2009;30(2):243–248.
138. American Burn Association. Burn Incidence Fact Sheet. http://ameriburn.org/who-we-are/media/burn-incidence-fact-sheet/. Last accessed 7/31/2018.
139. Sheridan RL, Greenhalgh D. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2014;94(4):781–791.
140. Arnoldo BD, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2004;25:479–484.
141. Arévalo JM, et al. *Burns*. 1999;25(5):449–452.
142. Foris LA, Huecker MR. *Electrical Injuries. StatPearls [Internet]*. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2018.
143. Fineschi V, et al. *Int J Cardiol*. 2006;111(1):6–11.
144. Waldmann V, et al. *BMJ*. 2017;357:j1418.
145. Deleted in proofs.
146. Culnan DM, et al. *Ann Plast Surg*. 2018;80(3 suppl 2):S113–S118.
147. Culnan DM, et al. *Ann Plast Surg*. 2018;80(3 suppl 2):S113–S118.
148. Andrews CJ, Reisner AD. *Neural Regen Res*. 2017;12(5):677–686.
149. American Burn Association. Burn Incidence Fact Sheet. http://ameriburn.org/who-we-are/media/burn-incidence-fact-sheet/. (Last accessed 7/31/2018).
150. Palao R, et al. *Burns*. 2010;36(3):295–304.
151. Deleted in proofs.
152. Tan T, Wong DS. *Burns*. 2015;41(4):761–763.
153. Palao R, et al. *Burns*. 2010;36(3):295–304.
154. Cartotto RC, et al. *Can J Surg*. 1996;39(3):205–211.
155. Lewis CJ, et al. *J Plast Reconstr Aesthet Surg*. 2017;70(5):563–567.
156. Clarke SF, et al. *Prehosp Disaster Med*. 2008;23(2):175–181.
157. Deleted in proofs.
158. Handford C, et al. *Extrem Physiol Med*. 2014;3:7.
159. Handford C, et al. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2017;35(2):281–299.
160. Cheung SS. *Temperature (Austin)*. 2015;2(1):105–120.
161. Deleted in proofs.
162. Sheridan RL, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361(27):2654–2662.
163. Heil K, et al. *Br Med Bull*. 2016;117(1):79–93.
164. Deleted in proofs.
165. Cartotto R. *Clin Plast Surg*. 2017;44(3):583–595.
166. Mockenhaupt M, et al. *J Invest Dermatol*. 2008;128:35–44.
167. Hsu DY, et al. *J Invest Dermatol*. 2016;136(7):1387–1397.
168. Finkelstein Y, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2011;128(4):723–728.
169. Dodiuk-Gad RP, et al. *Am J Clin Dermatol*. 2015;16(6):475–493.
170. Schneider JA, Cohen PR. *Adv Ther*. 2017;34(6):1235–1244.
171. Palmieri TL. *Crit Care Clin*. 2016;32(4):547–559.
172. Rocourt DV, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2011;46(9):1753–1758.
173. McManus WF, et al. *J Trauma*. 1974;14(5):396–401.
174. Flierl MA, et al. *Crit Care*. 2009;13(3):215.
175. Anand KJ, et al. *Pediatrics*. 2010;125(5):e1208–e1225.
176. Jeschke MG, et al. *EBioMedicine*. 2015;2(10):1536–1548.
177. Abu-Sittah GS, et al. *Ann Burns Fire Disasters*. 2016;29(4). 249-245.
178. Ryan CM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;338(6):362–366.
179. Agarwal S, Busse PJ. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol*. 2010;104(3): 183–190.
180. Prelack K, et al. *Burns*. 2007;33(1):14–24.
181. Sigakis MJ, Bittner EA. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(11):2468–2478.
182. Rae L, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2013;34(5):507–514.
183. Winfield RD, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(1):51–58.
184. Deleted in proofs.
185. Sayampanathan AA. *Burns*. 2016;42(8):1634–1643.
186. Deleted in proofs.
187. Liu NT, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2017;83(1 suppl 1):S112–S119.
188. Jeschke MG, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2013;258(6):1119–1129.
189. Ramos G, et al. *J Hosp Infect*. 2017;97(2):105–114.
190. Hill DM, et al. *Clin Plast Surg*. 2017;44(3):521–534.
191. Lee JJ, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1988;9(6):602–605.
192. Lavrentieva A, et al. *Burns*. 2007;33(2):189–194.
193. Hogan BK, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2012;33(3):371–378.
194. Greenhalgh DG, et al. *J Burn Care and Research*. 2007;28:776–790.
195. Greenhalgh DG. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(6):e990–e991.
196. Karyoute SM, Badran IZ. *Burns Incl Therm Inj*. 1988;14(3):241–243.
197. Rhee P, et al. *J Trauma*. 2005;58(5):1082–1088.
198. Porter C, et al. *Lancet*. 2016;388(10052):1417–1426.
199. Rani M, et al. *Burns*. 2017;43(2):297–303.
200. Hart DW, et al. *Surgery*. 2000;128:312–319.
201. Jeschke MG, et al. *PLoS One*. 2011;6(7)e21245.
202. Deleted in proofs.
203. Flores O, et al. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2016;80(1):146–155.
204. Jeschke MG, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2010;182:351–359.
205. Varon DE, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(5):299–303.
206. Gore DC, et al. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr*. 2002;26:271–277.
207. Rousseau AF, et al. *Clin Nutr*. 2013;32(4):497–502.
208. Pereira CT, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2005;26:194–199.
209. Núñez-Villaveirán T, et al. *Nutr Hosp*. 2014;29(6):1262–1270.
210. Jenkins ME, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1994;15(2):199–205.
211. Imeokparia F, et al. *Burns*. 2018;44(2):344–349.
212. Varon DE, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(5):299–303.
213. Prakash S, Mullick P. *Burns*. 2015;41(8):1627–1635.
214. Han TH, et al. *Int J Burns Trauma*. 2012;2(2):80–85.
215. McCall JE, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1999;9(6):515–520.
216. Hu OY, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 1993;21:527–531.
217. Gray RM, Rode H. *Burns*. 2010;36(4):572–575.

218. Rooney KD, Poolacherla R. *Burns*. 2010;36:e143–e144.
219. Davis C. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2004;113:982–984.
220. Fleissig Y, et al. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2014;43:1257–1258.
221. Dorsey DP, et al. *Burns*. 2010;36(6):856–860.
222. Aggarwal S, et al. *Burns*. 2009;35(7):962–966.
223. Clayton N, et al. *Burns*. 2010;36(6):850–855.
224. Sheridan RL, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1997;18:156–158.
225. Lavrentieva A, Palmieri T. *Burns*. 2011;37:196–202.
226. Jaehde U, Sörgel F. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1995;29(1):15–28.
227. Blanchet B, et al. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2008;47(10):635–654.
228. Deleted in proofs.
229. Martyn JA, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1984;35(4):535–539.
230. Han TH, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2009;49(7):768–772.
231. Han T, et al. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2007;47(6):674–680.
232. Martyn JA, et al. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1992;51(4):408–414.
233. Udy AA, et al. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev*. 2018;123:65–74.
234. Deleted in proofs.
235. Martyn J, Greenblatt DJ. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1988;43:250–255.
236. Cancio LC, et al. *Int J Burns Trauma*. 2013;3(2):108–114.
237. Deleted in proofs.
238. Wiechman Askay S, et al. *Int Rev Psychiatry*. 2009;21(6):522–530.
239. Deleted in proofs.
240. Kaneda K, Han TH. *Burns*. 2009;35(6):790–797.
241. Furman WR, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1990;11:391–394.
242. Perreault S, et al. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2001;35(12):1588–1592.
243. Choiniere M, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47(6):467–472.
244. MacPherson RD, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2008;24(7):568–571.
245. Prakash S, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(2):552–555.
246. McDonald J, Cooper MG. *Burns*. 1991;17(5):396–399.
247. Deleted in proofs.
248. Bittner EA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(2):448–464.
249. Wang S, et al. *Pain Med*. 2011;12:87–98.
250. Cancio LC, et al. *Int J Burns Trauma*. 2013;3(2):108–114.
251. Griggs C, et al. *Clin Plast Surg*. 2017;44(3):535–540.
252. Holtman Jr JR, Jellish WS. *J Burn Care Res*. 2012;33(6):692–701.
253. Richardson P, Mustard L. *Burns*. 2009;35:921–926.
254. Scibelli G, et al. *Transl Med UniSa*. 2017;16:1–10.
255. Asmussen S, et al. *Burns*. 2013;39(4):625–631.
256. Drummond PD. *Eur J Pain*. 2009;13(3):273–279.
257. Keating GM, et al. *Drugs*. 2015;75(10):1119–1130.
258. Patterson DR, et al. *Pain*. 1997;72:367–374.
259. Song L, et al. *Brain Res*. 2014;1564:52–61.
260. Rimaz S, et al. *Arch Trauma Res*. 2012;1(1):38–43.
261. Gray P, et al. *Pain*. 2011;152(6):1279–1288.
262. McGuinness SK, et al. *Pain Med*. 2011;12(10):1551–1558.
263. White MC, Karsli C. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(11):1102–1104.
264. Ceber M, Salihoglu T. *J Burn Care Res*. 2006;27(5):760–762.
265. Ikeda T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:934–938.
266. Wang C, Martyn JA. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24(1):118–124.
267. Sener S, et al. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2011;57(2):109–114.e2.
268. Gupta A, et al. *Burns*. 2007;33(1):87–91.
269. Bussolin L, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1371–1375.
270. Hernandez JL, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2013;34:e257–e262.
271. Shank ES, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2016;37(3):e213–e217.
272. Sen IM, Sen RK. *Arch Trauma Res*. 2012;1(3):135–136.
273. Mayhew JF, et al. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(7):715.
274. Arqués Teixidor P. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 1989;36:288–290.
275. Tao L, et al. *Burns*. 2015;41(8):1831–1838.
276. Bittner EA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(2):448–464.
277. Shteynberg A, et al. *Burns*. 2013;39(1):146–149.
278. Deleted in proofs.
279. Fruncillo RJ, DiGregorio GJ. *J Pharm Sci*. 1984;73(8):1117–1121.
280. Dissanaike S, et al. *Clin Case Rep*. 2017;6(1):129–135.
281. Martyn JAJ, et al. *Int Anesth Clin*. 2006;44:123–143.
282. Martyn J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:321–322.
283. Bittner EA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(2):448–464.
284. Martyn JA, et al. *AnesthAnalg*. 1982;61:614–617.
285. Martyn J, Ritchfeld M. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:158–169.
286. Deleted in proofs.
287. Lee S, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:76–85.
288. Marathe PH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:752.
289. Han T, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(2):386–392.
290. Han TH, Martyn JA. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(1):55–60.
291. Rodríguez Sánchez ME, et al. *Braz J Anesthesiol*. 2015;65(4):240–243.
292. Dwersteg JF, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(5):517–520.
293. Deleted in proofs.
294. Fuzaylov G, Fidkowski CW. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(3):202–211.
295. Housinger TA, et al. *J Trauma*. 1993;34:262–263.
296. Bhangu A, et al. *Injury*. 2013;44(12):1693–1699.
297. Schaden E, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(3):376–381.
298. Rizzo JA, et al. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(1):e277–e283.
299. Oda J, et al. *J Trauma*. 2009;66(6):1525–1529.
300. Alfonsi P. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2003;69(5):438–442.
301. Deleted in proofs.
302. Kjellman BM, et al. *Ann Surg Innov Res*. 2011;5(1):4.
303. Daugherty THF, et al. *Clin Plast Surg*. 2017;44(3):619–625.
304. Desai MH, et al. *Ann Surg*. 1990;211(6):753–759.
305. Ong YS, et al. *Burns*. 2006;32(2):145–150.
306. Rowan MP, et al. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:243.
307. Nyame TT, et al. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2014;94(4):839–850.
308. Summer GJ, et al. *J Pain*. 2007;8(7):533–548.
309. Weinbroum AA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(3):789–795.
310. Griggs C, et al. *Clin Plast Surg*. 2017;44(3):535–540.
311. Wiechman Askay S, et al. *Int Rev Psychiatry*. 2009;21(6):522–530.
312. McGarry S, et al. *Burns*. 2014;40:606–615.
313. Deleted in proofs.
314. Bell L, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1988;9:305–308.
315. Herndon DN, et al. *Pain Med*. 2018;19(4):641.
316. Laycock H, et al. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2013;716(1-3):169–178.
317. Holtman Jr JR, Jellish WS. *J Burn Care Res*. 2012;33(6):692–701.
318. Gamst-Jensen H, et al. *Burns*. 2014;40(8):1463–1469.
319. Faucher L, Furukawa K. *J Burn Care Res*. 2006;27(5):659–668.
320. de Jong AE, et al. *Burns*. 2007;33(7):811–827.
321. Morris LD, et al. *Clin J Pain*. 2009;25(9):815–826.
322. Richardson P, Mustard L. *Burns*. 2009;35:921–936.
323. Brown C, et al. *Am Surg*. 2000;66(4):367–370; discussion 370-1.
324. Bell PL, Gabriel V. *J Burn Care Res*. 2009;30(1):55–61.
325. Bell L, et al. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1988;9:305–308.
326. Kaul I, et al. *Burns*. 2018;44(2):414–422.

References

1. World Health Organization. Burns: Fact sheet. http://www.who.int/en/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/burns. (Last accessed 7/28/2018).
2. American Burn Association Fact Sheet. http://ameriburn.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/04/nbaw-fact-sheet-rev.pdf. (Last accessed 7/28/2018).
3. Hundeshagen G, Herndon DN, Clayton RP, et al. Long-term effect of critical illness after severe paediatric burn injury on cardiac function in adolescent survivors: an observational study. *Lancet Child Adolesc Health*. 2017;1(4):293–301.
4. Duke JM, Randall SM, Wood FM, Boyd JH, Fear MW. Burns and long-term infectious disease morbidity: a population-based study. *Burns*. 2017;43(2):273–281.
5. Browne AL, Andrews R, Schug SA, Wood F. Persistent pain outcomes and patient satisfaction with pain management after burn injury. *Clin J Pain*. 2011;27(2):136–145.
6. Tevlin R, Dillon L, Clover AJP. Education in burns: lessons from the past and objectives for the future. *Burns*. 2017;43(6):1141–1148.
7. Jeschke MG, Pinto R, Kraft R, et al. Inflammation and the Host Response to Injury Collaborative Research Program. Morbidity and survival probability in burn patients in modern burn care. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(4):808–815.
8. Cuthbertson DP. Postshock metabolic response. *Lancet*. 1942;239:433–437.
9. Rani M, Nicholson SE, Zhang Q, Schwacha MG. Damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) released after burn are associated with inflammation and monocyte activation. *Burns*. 2017;43(2):297–303.
10. Lund T, Onarheim H, Wiig H, Reed RK. Mechanisms behind increased dermal imbibition pressure in acute burn edema. *Am J Physiol*. 1989;256(4 Pt 2):H940–H948.
11. Lund T, Wiig H, Reed RK. Acute postburn edema: role of strongly negative interstitial fluid pressure. *Am J Physiol*. 1988;255(5 Pt 2):H1069–H1074.
12. Lund T, et al. A ‘new’ mechanism for oedema generation: strongly negative interstitial fluid pressure causes rapid fluid flow into thermally injured skin. *Acta Physiol Scand*. 1987;129(3):433–435.
13. Soussi S, Dépret F, Benyamina M, Legrand M. Early hemodynamic management of critically ill burn patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2018.
14. Nielson CB, Duethman NC, Howard JM, Moncure M, Wood JG. Burns: pathophysiology of systemic complications and current management. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(1):e469–e481.
15. Demling RH. The burn edema process: current concepts. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2005;26(3):207–227.
16. Arturson G. Pathophysiological aspects of the burn syndrome with special reference to liver injury and alterations of capillary permeability. *Acta Chir Scand Suppl*. 1961;(suppl 274):1–135.
17. Lund T, Wiig H, Reed RK. Acute postburn edema: role of strongly negative interstitial fluid pressure. *Am J Physiol*. 1988;255(5 Pt 2):H1069–H1074.
18. Kinsky MP, Guha SC, Button BM, Kramer GC. The role of interstitial starling forces in the pathogenesis of burn edema. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1998;19(1 Pt 1):1–9.
19. Deleted in proofs.
20. Demling RH. The burn edema process: current concepts. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2005;26(3):207–227.
21. Deleted in proofs.
22. Atiyeh BS, Dibo SA, Ibrahim AE, Zgheib ER. Acute burn resuscitation and fluid creep: it is time for colloid rehabilitation. *Ann Burns Fire Disasters*. 2012;25(2):59–65.
23. Hahn RG. Volume kinetics for infusion fluids. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113(2):470–481.
24. Sjoberg F. The ‘Parkland protocol’ for early fluid resuscitation of burns: too little, too much, or … even … too late …? *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2008;52(6):725–726.
25. Bak Z, Sjöberg F, Eriksson O, Steinvall I, Janerot-Sjoberg B. Hemodynamic changes during resuscitation after burns using the Parkland formula. *J Trauma*. 2009;66(2):329–336.
26. Zdolsek HJ, Lisander B, Jones AW, Sjöberg F. Albumin supplementation during the first week after a burn does not mobilise tissue oedema in humans. *Intensive Care Med*. 2001;27(5):844–852.
27. Evers LH, Bhavsar D, Mailänder P. The biology of burn injury. *Exp Dermatol*. 2010;19(9):777–783.
28. Johansson J, Lindbom L, Herwald H, Sjöberg F. Neutrophil-derived heparin binding protein--a mediator of increased vascular permeability after burns? *Burns*. 2009;35(8):1185–1187.
29. Johansson J, Steinvall I, Herwald H, Lindbom L, Sjöberg F. Alteration of leukocyte count correlates with increased pulmonary vascular permeability and decreased PaO2:FiO2 ratio early after major burns. *J Burn Care Res*. 2015;36(4):484–492.
30. Tanaka H, et al. High dose vitamin C counteracts the negative interstitial fluid hydrostatic pressure and early edema generation in thermally injured rats. *Burns*. 1999;25(7):569–574.
31. Tanaka H, Matsuda T, Miyagantani Y, Yukioka T, Matsuda H, Shimazaki S. Reduction of resuscitation fluid volumes in severely burned patients using ascorbic acid administration: a randomized prospective study. *Arch Surg*. 2000;135:326–331.
32. Matsuda T, et al. Effects of high-dose vitamin C administration on postburn microvascular fluid and protein flux. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1992;13(5):560–566.
33. Bak Z, Sjöberg F, Eriksson O, Steinvall I, Janerot-Sjoberg B. Cardiac dysfunction after burns. *Burns*. 2008;34(5):603–609.
34. Adams HR, Baxter CR, Izenberg SD. Decreased contractility and compliance of the left ventricle as complications of thermal trauma. *Am Heart J*. 1984;108(6):1477e87.
35. Abu-Sittah GS, Sarhane KA, Dibo SA, et al. Cardiovascular dysfunction in burns review of the literature. *Ann Burns Fire Disasters*. 2012;25(1):26e37.
36. Barber RC, Maass DL, White DJ, Horton JW. Increasing percent burn is correlated with increasing inflammation in an adult rodent model. *Shock*. 2008;30(4):388–393.
37. Nielson CB, Duethman NC, Howard JM, Moncure M, Wood JG. Burns: pathophysiology of systemic complications and current management. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(1):e469–e481.
38. Foncerrada G, Culnan DM, Capek KD, et al. Inhalation injury in the burned patient. *Ann Plast Surg*. 2018;80(3 suppl 2):S98–S105.
39. Kudchadkar SR, Hamrick JT, Mai CL, Berkowitz I, Tunkel D. The heat is on…thermal epiglottitis as a late presentation of airway steam injury. *J Emerg Med*. 2014;46(2):e43–e46.
40. Enkhbaatar P, Pruitt Jr BA, Suman O, et al. Pathophysiology, research challenges, and clinical management of smoke inhalation injury. *Lancet*. 2016;388(10052):1437–1446.
41. Bittner EA, Shank E, Woodson L, Martyn JA. Acute and perioperative care of the burn-injured patient. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(2):448–464.
42. Zak AL, Harrington DT, Barillo DJ, Lawlor DF, Shirani KZ, Goodwin CW. Acute respiratory failure that complicated the resuscitation of pediatric patients with scald injuries. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1999;20:391–399.
43. Rodkey FL, O’Neal JD, Collison HA, Uddin DE. Relative affinity of hemoglobin S and hemoglobin A for carbon monoxide and oxygen. *Clin Chem*. 1974;20:83–84.
44. Winter PM, Miller JN. Carbon monoxide poisoning. *JAMA*. 1976;236:1502.
45. Ernst A, Zibrak JD. Carbon monoxide poisoning. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;339(22):1603–1608.
46. Weaver LK, Howe S, Hopkins R, Chan KJ. Carboxyhemoglobin half-life in carbon monoxide-poisoned patients treated with 100% oxygen at atmospheric pressure. *Chest*. 2000;117(3):801–808.
47. Weiss SM, Lakshminarayan S. Acute inhalation injury. *Clin Chest Med*. 1994;15(1):103–116.
48. Hsiao PJ, Chang CJ, Chiu CC, et al. High anion gap metabolic acidosis after a suicide attempt with cyanide: the rebirth of cyanide poisoning. *Intern Med*. 2015;54:1901–1904.
49. Baud FJ, Barriot P, Toffis V, et al. Elevated blood cyanide concentrations in victims of smoke inhalation. *N Engl J Med*. 1991;325:1761–1766.
50. MacLennan L, Moiemen N. Management of cyanide toxicity in patients with burns. *Burns*. 2015;41:18–24.
51. Hall AH, Dart R, Bogdan G. Sodium thiosulfate or hydroxocobalamin for the empiric treatment of cyanide poisoning? *Ann Emerg Med*. 2007;49(6):806–813.
52. Petrikovics I, Budai M, Kovacs K, Thompson DE. Past, present and future of cyanide antagonism research: from the early remedies to the current therapies. *World J Methodol*. 2015;5(2):88–100.
53. Putman CE, Loke J, Matthay RA, Ravin CE. Radiographic manifestations of acute smoke inhalation. *Am J Roentgenol*. 1977;129(5):865–870.

54. Spano S, Hanna S, Li Z, Wood D, Cartotto R. Does bronchoscopic evaluation of inhalation injury severity predict outcome? *J Burn Care Res*. 2016;37(1):1–11.
55. Ikonomidis C, Lang F, Radu A, Berger MM. Standardizing the diagnosis of inhalation injury using a descriptive score based on mucosal injury criteria. *Burns*. 2012;38:513–519.
56. Kwon HP, Zanders TB, Regn DD, et al. Comparison of virtual bronchoscopy to fiber-optic bronchoscopy for assessment of inhalation injury severity. *Burns*. 2014;40(7):1308–1315.
57. Yamamura H, Kaga S, Kaneda K, Mizobata Y. Chest computed tomography performed on admission helps predict the severity of smoke-inhalation injury. *Crit Care*. 2013;17(3):R95.
58. Walker PF, Buehner MF, Wood LA, et al. Diagnosis and management of inhalation injury: an updated review. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:351.
59. Ryan CM, Fagan SP, Goverman J, Sheridan RL. Grading inhalation injury by admission bronchoscopy. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:1345–1346.
60. Fang-Gang N, Yang C, Yu-Xuan Q, et al. Laryngeal morphologic changes and epidemiology in patients withinhalation injury: a retrospective study. *Burns*. 2015;41(6):1340–1346.
61. Gaissert HA, Lofgren RH, Grillo HC. Upper airway compromise after inhalation injury. Complex strictures of the larynx and trachea and their management. *Ann Surg*. 1993;218:672–678.
62. Cobley TD, Hart WJ, Baldwin DL, Burd DA. Complete fusion of the vocal cords; an unusual case. *Burns*. 1999;25:361–363.
63. Casper JK, Clark WR, Kelley RT, Colton RH. Laryngeal and phonatory status after burn/inhalation injury: a long term follow-up study. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2002;23:235–243.
64. Endorf FW, Dries DJ. Noninvasive ventilation in the burned patient. *J Burn Care Res*. 2010;31:217–228.
65. Dai NT, Chen TM, Cheng TY, et al. The comparison of early fluid therapy in extensive flame burns between inhalation and noninhalation injuries. *Burns*. 1998;24(7):671–675.
66. Saffle JI. The phenomenon of “fluid creep” in acute burn resuscitation. *J Burn Care Res*. 2007;28(3):382–395.
67. Chung KK, Rhie RY, Lundy JB, et al. A survey of mechanical ventilator practices across burn centers in North America. *J Burn Care Res*. 2016;37(2):e131–e139.
68. Slutsky AS, Ranieri VM. Ventilator-induced lung injury. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(22):2126–2136.
69. ISBI Practice Guidelines for Burn Care. ISBI Practice Guidelines Committee; Steering Subcommittee; Advisory Subcommittee. *Burns*. 2016;42(5):953–1021.
70. Hale DF, Cannon JW, Batchinsky AI, et al. Prone positioning improves oxygenation in adult burn patients with severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2012;72(6):1634–1639.
71. Sheridan RL, Kacmarek RM, McEttrick MM, et al. Permissive hypercapnia as a ventilatory strategy in burned children: effect on barotrauma, pneumonia, and mortality. *J Trauma*. 1995;39(5):854–859.
72. Erickson S, Schibler A, Numa A, et al. Acute lung injury in pediatric intensive care in Australia and New Zealand-A prospective, multicenter, observational study*. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2007;8:317–323.
73. Sousse LE, Herndon DN, Andersen CR, et al. High tidal volume decreases adult respiratory distress syndrome, atelectasis, and ventilator days compared with low tidal volume in pediatric burned patients with inhalation injury. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2015;220:570–578.
74. Khemani RG, Conti D, Alonzo TA, et al. Effect of tidal volume in children with acute hypoxemic respiratory failure. *Intensive Care Med*. 2009;35:1428–1437.
75. Chung KK, Wolf SE, Renz EM, et al. High-frequency percussive ventilation and low tidal volume ventilation in burns: a randomized controlled trial. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(10):1970–1977.
76. Greathouse ST, Hadad I, Zieger M, Nitu M, Rowan CM, Coleman JJ. High-frequency oscillatory ventilators in burn patients: experience of Riley Hospital for Children. *J Burn Care Res*. 2012;33(3):425–435.
77. Walia G, Jada G, Cartotto R. Anesthesia and intraoperative high-frequency oscillatory ventilation during burn surgery. *J Burn Care Res*. 2011;32(1):118–123.
78. Asmussen S, Maybauer DM, Fraser JF, et al. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in burn and smoke inhalation injury. *Burns*. 2013;39(3):429–435.
79. Nelson J, Cairns B, Charles A. Early extracorporeal life support as rescue therapy for severe acute respiratory distress syndrome after inhalation injury. *J Burn Care Res*. 2009;30(6):1035–1038.
80. Deutsch CJ, Tan A, Smailes S, Dziewulski P. The diagnosis and management of inhalation injury: an evidence based approach. *Burns*. 2018;44(5):1040–1051.
81. Lopez E, Fujiwara O, Lima-Lopez F, et al. Nebulized epinephrine limits pulmonary vascular hyperpermeability to water and protein in ovine with burn and smoke inhalation injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2016;44(2):e89–e96.
82. Lange M, Hamahata A, Traber DL, et al. Preclinical evaluation of epinephrine nebulization to reduce airway hyperemia and improve oxygenation after smoke inhalation injury. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39:718–724.
83. Desai MH, Mlcak R, Richardson J, et al. Reduction in mortality in pediatric patients with inhalation injury with aerosolized heparin/N-acetylcystine therapy. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1998;19:210–212.
84. Miller AC, Rivero A, Ziad S, et al. Influence of nebulized unfractionated heparin and N-acetylcysteine in acute lung injury after smoke inhalation injury. *J Burn Care Res*. 2009;30:249–256.
85. Elsharnouby NM, Eid HE, Abou Elezz NF, et al. Heparin/N-acetylcysteine: an adjuvant in the management of burn inhalation injury: a study of different doses. *J Crit Care*. 2014;29. 182. e181-184.
86. Musgrave MA, Fingland R, Gomez M, et al. The use of inhaled nitric oxide as adjuvant therapy in patients with burn injuries and respiratory failure. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2000;21:551–557.
87. Sheridan RL, Hurford WE, Kacmarek RM, et al. Inhaled nitric oxide in burn patients with respiratory failure. *J Trauma*. 1997;42:629–634.
88. Endorf FW, Dries DJ. Noninvasive ventilation in the burned patient. *J Burn Care Res*. 2010;31:217–228.

88a. Warner P. Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation as an adjunct to extubation in the burn patient. *J Burn Care Res*. 2009;30:198–199.

89. Byerly FL, Haithcock JA, Buchanan IB, Short KA, Cairns BA. Use of high flow nasal cannula on a pediatric burn patient with inhalation injury and post-extubation stridor. *Burns*. 2006;32(1):121–125.
90. ATLS Subcommittee; American College of Surgeons’ Committee on Trauma; International ATLS working group. Advanced trauma life support (ATLS): the 9th edition. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2013;74(5):1363–1366.

90a. Advanced Burn Life Support Course Provider Manual. https://evidencebasedpractice.osumc.edu/Documents/Guidelines/ABLSProviderManual_20101018.pdf

91. Badulak JH, Schurr M, Sauaia A, Ivashchenko A, Peltz E. Defining the criteria for intubation of the patient with thermal burns. *Burns*. 2018;44(3):531–538.
92. Cai AR, Hodgman EI, Kumar PB, Sehat AJ, Eastman AL, Wolf SE. Evaluating pre burn center intubation practices: an update. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(1):e23–e29.
93. Rosenkranz KM, Sheridan R. Management of the burned trauma patient: balancing conflicting priorities. *Burns*. 2002;28(7):665–669.
94. American Burn Association. Burn Center Referral Criteria. http://ameriburn.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/05/burncenterreferralcriteria.pdf. Last accessed 7/30/2018.
95. Sheridan R, Weber J, Prelack K, Petras L, Lydon M, Tompkins R. Early burn center transfer shortens length of hospitalization and reduces complications in children with serious burn injuries. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1999;20:347–350.
96. Palmieri TL, Taylor S, Lawless M, Curri T, Sen S, Greenhalgh DG. Burn center volume makes a difference for burned children. *Pediatr Crit Care Med*. 2015;16(4):319–324.
97. Dimick AR, Brigham PA, Sheehy EM. The development of burn centers in North America. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1993;14:284–299.
98. Jeschke MG, Pinto R, Kraft R, Nathens AB, et al. Inflammation and the Host Response to Injury Collaborative Research Program. Morbidity and survival probability in burn patients in modern burn care. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(4):808–815.
99. Knaysi GA, Crikelari GF, Cosman B. The rule of nines: its history and accuracy. *Plast Recon Surg*. 1968;41:560–563.
100. Sheridan RL, Petras L, Basha G, et al. Planimetry study of the percent body surface represented by the hand and palm: sizing irregular burns is more accurately done with the palm. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1995;16:605–606.
101. Lund C, Browder N. The estimation of area burns. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1944;79:352–359.
102. Benjamin NC, Lee JO, Norbury WB, et al. Accuracy of currently used paper burn diagram vs a three-dimensional computerized model. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(1):e254–e260.

103. Atchison NE, Osgood PF, Carr DB, Szyfelbein SK. Pain during burn dressing change in children: relationship to burn area, depth and analgesic regimens. *Pain*. 1991;47(1):41–45.
104. Underhill FP. The significance of anhydremia in extensive superficial burns. *JAMA*. 1930;95:852–857.
105. Evans EI, Purnell OJ, Robinett PW, Batchelor A, Martin M. Fluid and electrolyte requirements in severe burns. *Ann Surg*. 1952;135:804.
106. Baxter CR, Shires T. Physiological response to crystalloid resuscitation of severe burns. *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. 1968;150:874–894.
107. Herndon D. *Total Burn Care*. 5th ed. Edinburgh, London, New York, Oxford, Philadelphia, St Louis, Sidney; 2018.
108. Jeschke MG, Kamholz LP, Sjöberg F, Wolf SE. *Handbook of Burns 1*. 2nd ed. Wien: Springer; 2018.
109. Greenhalgh DG. Burn resuscitation: the results of the ISBI/ABA survey. *Burns*. 2010;36(2):176–182.
110. Romanowski KS, Palmieri TL. Pediatric burn resuscitation: past, present, and future. *Burns Trauma*. 2017;5:26.
111. Deleted in proofs.
112. Soussi S, Legrand M. Hemodynamic coherence in patients with burns. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2016;30(4):437–443.
113. Lorente JA, Ezpeleta A, Esteban A, et al. Systemic hemodynamics, gastric intramucosal PCO2 changes, and outcome in critically ill burn patients. *Crit Care Med*. 2000;28(6):1728e35.
114. Barton RG, Saffle JR, Morris SE, Mone M, Davis B, Shelby J. Resuscitation of thermally injured patients with oxygen transport criteria as goals of therapy. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1997;18(1 Pt 1):1–9.
115. Holm C, Mayr M, Tegeler J, et al. A clinical randomized study on the effects of invasive monitoring on burn shock resuscitation. *Burns*. 2004;30(8):798–807.
116. Bak Z, Sjöberg F, Eriksson O, Steinvall I, Janerot-Sjoberg B. Hemodynamic changes during resuscitation after burns using the Parkland formula. *J Trauma*. 2009;66(2):329–336.
117. Deleted in proofs.
118. Soussi S, Deniau B, Ferry A, et al. Low cardiac index and stroke volume on admission are associated with poor outcome in criticallyill burn patients: a retrospective cohort study. *Ann Intensive Care*. 2016;6(1):87.
119. Soussi S, Berger MM, Colpaert K, et al. Hemodynamic management of critically ill burn patients: an international survey. *Crit Care*. 2018;22(1):194.
120. Samuelsson A, Steinvall I, Sjoberg F. Microdialysis shows metabolic effects in skin during fluid resuscitation in burn-injured patients. *Crit Care*. 2006;10(6):R172.
121. Brownson EG, Pham TN, Chung KK. How to recognize a failed burn resuscitation. *Crit Care Clin*. 2016;32(4):567–575.
122. Saffle JR. Fluid creep and over-resuscitation. *Crit Care Clin*. 2016;32(4):587–598.
123. Oda J, et al. Resuscitation fluid volume and abdominal compartment syndrome in patients with major burns. *Burns*. 2006;32(2): 151–154.
124. Kirkpatrick AW, Ball CG, Nickerson D, D'Amours SK. Intraabdominal hypertension and the abdominal compartment syndrome in burn patients. *World J Surg*. 2009;33(6):1142–1149.
125. Malbrain ML, De Laet IE, De Waele JJ, Kirkpatrick AW. Intra-abdominal hypertension: definitions, monitoring, interpretation and management. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2013;27(2):249–270.
126. Pruitt Jr BA. Protection from excessive resuscitation: pushing the pendulum back. *J Trauma*. 2000;49(3):567–568.
127. Klein MB, Hayden D, Elson C, et al. The association between fluid administration and outcome following major burn: a multicenter study. *Ann Surg*. 2007;245(4):622–628.
128. Saffle JR. Fluid creep and over-resuscitation. *Crit Care Clin*. 2016;32(4):587–598.
129. Sullivan SR, Friedrich JB, Engrav LH, et al. Opioid creep is real and may be the cause of fluid creep. *Burns*. 2004;30(6):583–590.
130. Cancio LC, Chávez S, Alvarado-Ortega M, et al. Predicting increased fluid requirements during the resuscitation of thermally injured patients. *J Trauma*. 2004;56(2):404–413.
131. Salinas J, Chung KK, Mann EA, et al. Computerized decision support system improves fluid resuscitation following severe burns: an original study. *Crit Care Med*. 2011;39(9):2031–2038.
132. Belba MK, Petrela EY, Belba GP. Comparison of hypertonic vs isotonic fluids during resuscitation of severely burned patients. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2009;27(9):1091–1096.
133. Huang PP, Stucky FS, Dimick AR, Treat RC, Bessey PQ, Rue LW. Hypertonic sodium resuscitation is associated with renal failure and death. *Ann Surg*. 1995;221(5):543–554.
134. Tanaka H, Matsuda T, Miyagantani Y, Yukioka T, Matsuda H, Shimazaki S. Reduction of resuscitation fluid volumes in severely burned patients using ascorbic acid administration: a randomized prospective study. *Arch Surg*. 2000;135:326–331.
135. Lentz CW, Huelskamp S, Reid D. Adjuvant high dose ascorbic acid reduces both the volume of burn resuscitation fluids and the time to complete resuscitation in burn shock. *J Burn Care Res*. 2014;46:S107.
136. Sartor Z, Kesey J, Dissanaike S. The effects of intravenous vitamin C on point-of-care glucose monitoring. *J Burn Care Res*. 2015;36(1): 50–56.
137. Klein MB, Edwards JA, Kramer CB, Nester T, Heimbach DM, Gibran NS. The beneficial effects of plasma exchange after severe burn injury. *J Burn Care Res*. 2009;30(2):243–248.
138. American Burn Association. Burn Incidence Fact Sheet. http://ameriburn.org/who-we-are/media/burn-incidence-fact-sheet/. Last accessed 7/31/2018.
139. Sheridan RL, Greenhalgh D. Special problems in burns. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2014;94(4):781–791.
140. Arnoldo BD, Purdue GF, Kowalske K, Helm PA, Burris A, Hunt JL. Electrical injuries: a 20-year review. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2004;25:479–484.
141. Arévalo JM, Lorente JA, Balseiro-Gómez J. Spinal cord injury after electrical trauma treated in a burn unit. *Burns*. 1999;25(5):449–452.
142. Foris LA, Huecker MR. *Electrical Injuries. StatPearls [Internet]*. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2018.
143. Fineschi V, Di Donato S, Mondillo S, Turillazzi E. Electric shock: cardiac effects relative to non fatal injuries and post-mortem findings in fatal cases. *Int J Cardiol*. 2006;111(1):6–11.
144. Waldmann V, Narayanan K, Combes N, Marijon E. Electrical injury. *BMJ*. 2017;357:j1418.
145. Deleted in proofs.
146. Culnan DM, Farner K, Bitz GH, et al. Volume resuscitation in patients with high-voltage electrical injuries. *Ann Plast Surg*. 2018;80(3 Suppl 2):S113–S118.
147. Culnan DM, Farner K, Bitz GH, et al. Volume resuscitation in patients with high-voltage electrical injuries. *Ann Plast Surg*. 2018;80(3 Suppl 2):S113–S118.
148. Andrews CJ, Reisner AD. Neurological and neuropsychological consequences of electrical and lightning shock: review and theories of causation. *Neural Regen Res*. 2017;12(5):677–686.
149. Deleted in proofs.
150. Palao R, Monge I, Ruiz M, Barret JP. Chemical burns: pathophysiology and treatment. *Burns*. 2010;36(3):295–304.
151. Deleted in proofs.
152. Tan T, Wong DS. Chemical burns revisited: what is the most appropriate method of decontamination? *Burns*. 2015;41(4):761–763.
153. Palao R, Monge I, Ruiz M, Barret JP. Chemical burns: pathophysiology and treatment. *Burns*. 2010;36(3):295–304.
154. Cartotto RC, Peters WJ, Neligan PC, Douglas LG, Beeston J. Chemical burns. *Can J Surg*. 1996;39(3):205–211.
155. Lewis CJ, Al-Mousawi A, Jha A, Allison KP. Is it time for a change in the approach to chemical burns? The role of Diphoterine in the management of cutaneous and ocular chemical injuries. *J Plast Reconstr Aesthet Surg*. 2017;70(5):563–567.
156. Clarke SF, Chilcott RP, Wilson JC, Kamanyire R, Baker DJ, Hallett A. Decontamination of multiple casualties who are chemically contaminated: a challenge for acute hospitals. *Prehosp Disaster Med*. 2008;23(2):175–181.
157. Deleted in proofs.
158. Handford C, Buxton P, Russell K, et al. Frostbite: a practical approach to hospital management. *Extrem Physiol Med*. 2014;3:7.
159. Handford C, Thomas O, Imray CHE. Frostbite. *Emerg Med Clin North Am*. 2017;35(2):281–299.
160. Cheung SS. Responses of the hands and feet to cold exposure. *Temperature (Austin)*. 2015;2(1):105–120.
161. Deleted in proofs.
162. Sheridan RL, Goldstein MA, Stoddard Jr FJ, Walker TG. Case records of the Massachusetts General Hospital. Case 41-2009. A 16-year-old boy with hypothermia and frostbite. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361(27):2654–2662.

163. Heil K, Thomas R, Robertson G, Porter A, Milner R, Wood A. Freezing and non-freezing cold weather injuries: a systematic review. *Br Med Bull*. 2016;117(1):79–93.
164. Deleted in proofs.
165. Cartotto R. Burn center care of patients with Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis. *Clin Plast Surg*. 2017;44(3):583–595.
166. Mockenhaupt M, Viboud C, Dunant A, et al. Stevens Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis: assessment of medication risks with emphasis on recently marketed drugs. The Euro-SCAR-study. *J Invest Dermatol*. 2008;128:35–44.
167. Hsu DY, Brieva J, Silverberg NB, Silverberg JI. Morbidity and mortality of Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis in United States adults. *J Invest Dermatol*. 2016;136(7):1387–1397.
168. Finkelstein Y, Soon GS, Acuna P, et al. Recurrence and outcomes of Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis in children. *Pediatrics*. 2011;128(4):723–728.
169. Dodiuk-Gad RP, Chung WH, Valeyrie-Allanore L, Shear NH. Stevens–Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis: an update. *Am J Clin Dermatol*. 2015;16(Issue 6):475–493.
170. Schneider JA, Cohen PR. Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis: a concise review with comprehensive summary of therapeutic interventions emphasizing supportive measures. *Adv Ther*. 2017;34(6):1235–1244.
171. Palmieri TL. Pediatric burn resuscitation. *Crit Care Clin*. 2016;32(4):547–559.
172. Rocourt DV, Hall M, Kenney BD, Fabia R, Groner JI, Besner GE. Respiratory failure after pediatric scald injury. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2011;46(9):1753–1758.
173. McManus WF, Hunt JL, Pruitt Jr BA. Postburn convulsive disorders in children. *J Trauma*. 1974;14(5):396–401.
174. Flierl MA, Stahel PF, Touban BM, et al. Bench-to-bedside review: burn-induced cerebral inflammation--a neglected entity? *Crit Care*. 2009;13(3):215.
175. Anand KJ, Willson DF, Berger J, et al. Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development Collaborative Pediatric Critical Care Research Network. Tolerance and withdrawal from prolonged opioid use in critically ill children. *Pediatrics*. 2010;125(5):e1208–e1225.
176. Jeschke MG, Patsouris D, Stanojcic M, et al. Pathophysiologic response to burns in the elderly. *EBioMedicine*. 2015;2(10):1536–1548.
177. Abu-Sittah GS, Chahine FM, Janom H. Management of burns in the elderly. *Ann Burns Fire Disasters*. 2016;29(4):249-245.
178. Ryan CM, Schoenfeld DA, Thorpe WP, Sheridan RL, Cassem EH, Tompkins RG. Objective estimates of the probability of death from burn injuries. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;338(6):362–366.
179. Agarwal S, Busse PJ. Innate and adaptive immunosenescence. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol*. 2010;104(3):183–190.
180. Prelack K, Dylewski M, Sheridan RL. Practical guidelines for nutritional management of burn injury and recovery. *Burns*. 2007;33(1):14–24.
181. Sigakis MJ, Bittner EA. Ten myths and misconceptions regarding pain management in the ICU. *Crit Care Med*. 2015;43(11):2468–2478.
182. Rae L, Pham TN, Carrougher G, et al. Differences in resuscitation in morbidly obese burn patients may contribute to high mortality. *J Burn Care Res*. 2013;34(5):507–514.
183. Winfield RD, Delano MJ, Dixon DJ, et al. Differences in outcome between obese and nonobese patients following severe blunt trauma are not consistent with an early inflammatory genomic response. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(1):51–58.
184. Deleted in proofs.
185. Sayampanathan AA. Systematic review and metaanalysis of complications and outcomes of obese patients with burns. *Burns*. 2016;42(8):1634–1643.
186. Deleted in proofs.
187. Liu NT, Fenrich CA, Serio-Melvin ML, Peterson WC, Cancio LC, Salinas J. The impact of patient weight on burn resuscitation. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2017;83(1 suppl 1):S112–S119.
188. Jeschke MG, Finnerty CC, Emdad F, et al. Mild obesity is protective after severe burn injury. *Ann Surg*. 2013;258(6):1119–1129.
189. Ramos G, Cornistein W, Cerino GT, Nacif G. Systemic antimicrobial prophylaxis in burn patients: systematic review. *J Hosp Infect*. 2017;97(2):105–114.
190. Hill DM, Sinclair SE, Hickerson WL. Rational selection and use of antimicrobials in patients with burn injuries. *Clin Plast Surg*. 2017;44(3):521–534.
191. Lee JJ, Marvin JA, Heimbach DM, Grube BJ. Use of 5% sulfamylon (mafenide) solution after excision and grafting of burns. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1988;9(6):602–605.
192. Lavrentieva A, Kontakiotis T, Lazaridis L, et al. Inflammatory markers in patients with severe burn injury. What is the best indicator of sepsis? *Burns*. 2007;33(2):189–194.
193. Hogan BK, Wolf SE, Hospenthal DR, et al. Correlation of American Burn Association sepsis criteria with the presence of bacteremia in burned patients admitted to the intensive care unit. *J Burn Care Res*. 2012;33(3):371–378.
194. Greenhalgh DG, Saffle JR, Holmes 4th JH, et al. American Burn Association Consensus Conference on Burn Sepsis and Infection Group. American Burn Association Consensus Conference to define sepsis and infection in burns. *J Burn Care and Research*. 2007;28:776–790.
195. Greenhalgh DG. Defining sepsis in burn patients: still a long way to go. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(6):e990–e991.
196. Karyoute SM, Badran IZ. Tetanus following a burn injury. *Burns Incl Therm Inj*. 1988;14(3):241–243.
197. Rhee P, Nunley MK, Demetriades D, Velmahos G, Doucet JJ. Tetanus and trauma: a review and recommendations. *J Trauma*. 2005;58(5):1082–1088.
198. Porter C, Tompkins RG, Finnerty CC, Sidossis LS, Suman OE, Herndon DN. The metabolic stress response to burn trauma: current understanding and therapies. *Lancet*. 2016;388(10052):1417–1426.
199. Rani M, Nicholson SE, Zhang Q, Schwacha MG. Damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) released after burn are associated with inflammation and monocyte activation. *Burns*. 2017;43(2):297–303.
200. Hart DW, Wolf SE, Mlcak R, et al. Persistence of muscle catabolism after severe burn. *Surgery*. 2000;128:312–319.
201. Jeschke MG, Gauglitz GG, Kulp GA, et al. Long-term persistance of the pathophysiologic response to severe burn injury. *PLoS One*. 2011;6(7). e21245.
202. Deleted in pages.
203. Flores O, Stockton K, Roberts JA, Muller MJ, Paratz JD. The efficacy and safety of adrenergic blockade after burn injury: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg*. 2016;80(1):146–155.
204. Jeschke MG, Kulp GA, Kraft R, et al. Intensive insulin therapy in severely burned pediatric patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2010;182:351–359.
205. Varon DE, et al. Intraoperative Feeding Improves Calorie and Protein Delivery in Acute Burn Patients. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(5):299–303.
206. Gore DC, Wolf SE, Herndon DN, Wolfe RR. Relative influence of glucose and insulin on peripheral amino acid metabolism in severely burned patients. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr*. 2002;26:271–277.
207. Rousseau AF, Losser MR, Ichai C, Berger MM. ESPEN endorsed recommendations: nutritional therapy in major burns. *Clin Nutr*. 2013;32(4):497–502.
208. Pereira CT, Murphy KD, Herndon DN. Altering metabolism. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2005;26:194–199.
209. Núñez-Villaveirán T, Sánchez M, Millán P, et al. *Nutr Hosp*. 2014;29(6):1262–1270.
210. Jenkins ME, Gottschlisch MM, Warden GD. Enteral feeding during operative procedures in thermal injuries. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1994;15(2):199–205.
211. Imeokparia F, Johnson M, Thakkar RK, Giles S, Capello T, Fabia R. Safety and efficacy of uninterrupted perioperative enteral feeding in pediatric burn patients. *Burns*. 2018;44(2):344–349.
212. Varon DE, Freitas G, Goel N, et al. Intraoperative feeding improves calorie and protein delivery in acute burn patients. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(5):299–303.
213. Prakash S, Mullick P. Airway management in patients with burn contractures of the neck. *Burns*. 2015;41(8):1627–1635.
214. Han TH, Teissler H, Han RJ, Gaines JD, Nguyen TQ. Managing difficult airway in patients with post-burn mentosternal and circumoral scar contractures. *Int J Burns Trauma*. 2012;2(2):80–85.
215. McCall JE, Fischer CG, Schomaker E, Young JM. Laryngeal mask airway use in children with acute burns: intraoperative airway management. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 1999;9(6):515–520.
216. Hu OY, Ho ST, Wang JJ, Ho W, Wang HJ, Lin CY. Evaluation of gastric emptying in severe, burn-injured patients. *Crit Care Med*. 1993;21:527–531.
217. Gray RM, Rode H. Intra-operative endotracheal tube stabilisation for facial burns. *Burns*. 2010;36(4):572–575.

218. Rooney KD, Poolacherla R. Use of the nasal bridle to secure fixation of an endotracheal tube in a child with facial blistering secondary to toxic epidermal necrolysis. *Burns*. 2010;36:e143–e144.
219. Davis C. Endotracheal tube fixation to the maxilla in patients with facial burns. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2004;113:982–984.
220. Fleissig Y, Rushinek H, Regev E. Intermaxillary fixation screw for endotracheal tube fixation in the edentulous patient with facial burns. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2014;43:1257–1258.
221. Dorsey DP, Bowman SM, Klein MB, Archer D, Sharar SR. Perioperative use of cuffed endotracheal tubes is advantageous in young pediatric burn patients. *Burns*. 2010;36(6):856–860.
222. Aggarwal S, Smailes S, Dziewulski P. Tracheostomy in burns patients revisited. *Burns*. 2009;35(7):962–966.
223. Clayton N, Kennedy P, Maitz P. The severe burns patient with tracheostomy: implications for management of dysphagia, dysphonia and laryngotracheal pathology. *Burns*. 2010;36(6):850–855.
224. Sheridan RL, Petras L, Lydon M. Ultrasonic imaging as an adjunct to femoral vein catheterization in children. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1997;18:156–158.
225. Lavrentieva A, Palmieri T. Determination of cardiovascular parameters in burn patients using arterial waveform analysis: a review. *Burns*. 2011;37:196–202.
226. Jaehde U, Sörgel F. Clinical pharmacokinetics in patients with burns. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1995;29(1):15–28.
227. Blanchet B, Jullien V, Vinsonneau C, Tod M. Influence of burns on pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of drugs used in the care of burn patients. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 2008;47(10):635–654.
228. Deleted in pages.
229. Martyn JA, Abernethy DR, Greenblatt DJ. Plasma protein binding of drugs after severe burn injury. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1984;35(4):535–539.
230. Han TH, Greenblatt DJ, Martyn JA. Propofol clearance and volume of distribution are increased in patients with major burns. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2009;49(7):768–772.
231. Han T, Harmatz JS, Greenblatt DJ, Martyn JA. Fentanyl clearance and volume of distribution are increased in patients with major burns. *J Clin Pharmacol*. 2007;47(6):674–680.
232. Martyn JA, Bishop AL, Oliveri MF. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of ranitidine after burn injury. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1992;51(4):408–414.
233. Udy AA, Roberts JA, Lipman J, Blot S. The effects of major burn related pathophysiological changes on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of drug use: an appraisal utilizing antibiotics. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev*. 2018;123:65–74.
234. Deleted in proofs.
235. Martyn J, Greenblatt DJ. Lorazepam conjugation is unimpaired in burn trauma. *Clin Pharmacol Ther*. 1988;43:250–255.
236. Cancio LC, Cuenca PB, Walker SC, Shepherd JM. Total intravenous anesthesia for major burn surgery. *Int J Burns Trauma*. 2013;3(2):108–114.
237. Deleted in pages.
238. Wiechman Askay S, Patterson DR, Sharar SR, Mason S, Faber B. Pain management in patients with burn injuries. *Int Rev Psychiatry*. 2009;21(6):522–530.
239. Deleted in proofs.
240. Kaneda K, Han TH. Comparative population pharmacokinetics of fentanyl using non-linear mixed effect modeling: burns vs. non-burns. *Burns*. 2009;35(6):790–797.
241. Furman WR, Munster AM, Cone EJ. Morphine pharmacokinetics during anesthesia and surgery in patients with burns. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1990;11:391–394.
242. Perreault S, Choinière M, du Souich PB, Bellavance F, Beauregard G. Pharmacokinetics of morphine and its glucuronidated metabolites in burn injuries. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2001;35(12):1588–1592.
243. Choiniere M, Grenier R, Paquette C. Patient-controlled analgesia: a double-blind study in burn patients. *Anaesthesia*. 1992;47(6):467–472.
244. MacPherson RD, Woods D, Penfold J. Ketamine and midazolam delivered by patient-controlled analgesia in relieving pain associated with burns dressings. *Clin J Pain*. 2008;24(7):568–571.
245. Prakash S, Fatima T, Pawar M. Patient-controlled analgesia with fentanyl for burn dressing changes. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(2):552–555.
246. McDonald J, Cooper MG. Patient-controlled analgesia: an appropriate method of pain control in children. *Burns*. 1991;17(5):396–399.
247. Deleted in proofs.
248. Bittner EA, Shank E, Woodson L, Martyn JA. Acute and perioperative care of the burn-injured patient. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(2):448–464.
249. Wang S, Zhang L, Ma Y, et al. Nociceptive behavior following hindpaw burn injury in young rats: response to systemic morphine. *Pain Med*. 2011;12:87–98.
250. Cancio LC, Cuenca PB, Walker SC, Shepherd JM. Total intravenous anesthesia for major burn surgery. *Int J Burns Trauma*. 2013;3(2):108–114.
251. Griggs C, Goverman J, Bittner EA, Levi B. Sedation and pain management in burn patients. *Clin Plast Surg*. 2017;44(3):535–540.
252. Holtman Jr JR, Jellish WS. Opioid-induced hyperalgesia and burn pain. *J Burn Care Res*. 2012;33(6):692–701.
253. Richardson P, Mustard L. The management of pain in the burns unit. *Burns*. 2009;35:921–926.
254. Scibelli G, Maio L, Sasso M, Lanza A, Savoia G. Dexmedetomidine: current role in burn ICU. *Transl Med UniSa*. 2017;16:1–10.
255. Asmussen S, Maybauer DM, Fraser JF, Jennings K, George S, Maybauer MO. A meta-analysis of analgesic and sedative effects of dexmedetomidine in burn patients. *Burns*. 2013;39(4):625–631.
256. Drummond PD. Alpha(1)-adrenoceptors augment thermal hyperalgesia in mildly burnt skin. *Eur J Pain*. 2009;13(3):273–279.
257. Keating GM. Dexmedetomidine: a review of its use for sedation in the intensive care setting. *Drugs*. 2015;75(10):1119–1130.
258. Patterson DR, Ptacek JT, Carrougher GJ, Sharar S. Lorazepam as an adjunct to opioid analgesics in the treatment of burn pain. *Pain*. 1997;72:367–374.
259. Song L, Wang S, Zuo Y, Chen L, Martyn JA, Mao J. Midazolam exacerbates morphine tolerance and morphine-induced hyperactive behaviors in young rats with burn injury. *Brain Res*. 2014;1564:52–61.
260. Rimaz S, Alavi CE, Sedighinejad A, Tolouie M, Kavoosi S, Koochakinejad L. Effect of gabapentin on morphine consumption and pain after surgical debridement of burnwounds: a double-blind randomized clinical trial study. *Arch Trauma Res*. 2012;1(1):38–43.
261. Gray P, Kirby J, Smith MT, et al. Pregabalin in severe burn injury pain: a double-blind, randomised placebo-controlled trial. *Pain*. 2011;152(6):1279–1288.
262. McGuinness SK, Wasiak J, Cleland H, et al. A systematic review of ketamine as an analgesic agent in adult burn injuries. *Pain Med*. 2011;12(10):1551–1558.
263. White MC, Karsli C. Long-term use of an intravenous ketamine infusion in a child with significant burns. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2007;17(11):1102–1104.
264. Ceber M, Salihoglu T. Ketamine may be the first choice for anesthesia in burn patients. *J Burn Care Res*. 2006;27(5):760–762.
265. Ikeda T, Kazama T, Sessler DI, et al. Induction of anesthesia with ketamine reduces the magnitude of redistribution hypothermia. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:934–938.
266. Wang C, Martyn JA. Burn injury alters beta-adrenergic receptor and second messenger function in rat ventricular muscle. *Crit Care Med*. 1996;24(1):118–124.
267. Sener S, Eken C, Schultz CH, Serinken M, Ozsarac M. Ketamine with and without midazolam for emergency department sedation in adults: a randomized controlled trial. *Ann Emerg Med*. 2011;57(2):109–114.e2.
268. Gupta A, Bhandari PS, Shrivastava P. A study of regional nerve blocks and local anesthetic creams (Prilox) for donor sites in burn patients. *Burns*. 2007;33(1):87–91.
269. Bussolin L, Busoni P, Giorgi L, Crescioli M, Messeri A. Tumescent local anesthesia for the surgical treatment of burns and postburn sequelae in pediatric patients. *Anesthesiology*. 2003;99:1371–1375.
270. Hernandez JL, Savetamal A, Crombie RE, et al. Use of continuous local anesthetic infusion in the management of postoperative split-thickness skin graft donor site pain. *J Burn Care Res*. 2013;34:e257–e262.
271. Shank ES, Martyn JA, Donelan M, Perone A, Firth P, Driscoll D. Ultrasound guided regional anesthesia for pediatric burn reconstructive surgery; a prespective study. *J Burn Care Res*. 2016;37(3):e213–e217.
272. Sen IM, Sen RK. Regional anesthesia for lower limb burn wound debridements. *Arch Trauma Res*. 2012;1(3):135–136.
273. Mayhew JF, Griswold J, Williams J. Use of caudal morphine in pediatric burn patients. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(7):715.
274. Arqués Teixidor P, Maged Mabrok M, Marco Valls J, Moral García V. Anesthesia and lumbar epidural anesthesia in an infant with third-degree burns. *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*. 1989;36:288–290.

275. Tao L, Zhou J, Gong Y, et al. Risk factors for central line-associated bloodstream infection in patients with major burns and the efficacy of the topical application of mupirocin at the central venous catheter exit site. *Burns*. 2015;41(8):1831–1838.
276. Bittner EA, Shank E, Woodson L, Martyn JA. Acute and perioperative care of the burn-injured patient. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(2): 448–464.
277. Shteynberg A, Riina LH, Glickman LT, Meringolo JN, Simpson RL. Ultrasound guided lateral femoral cutaneous nerve (LFCN) block: safe and simple anesthesia for harvesting skin grafts. *Burns*. 2013;39(1):146–149.
278. Deleted in pages.
279. Fruncillo RJ, DiGregorio GJ. Pharmacokinetics of pentobarbital, quinidine, lidocaine, and theophylline in the thermally injured rat. *J Pharm Sci*. 1984;73(8):1117–1121.
280. Dissanaike S, McCauley J, Alphonso C. Liposomal bupivacaine for the management of postsurgical donor site pain in patients with burn injuries: a case series from two institutions. *Clin Case Rep*. 2017;6(1):129–135.
281. Martyn JAJ, Fukushima Y, Chou J, Yang HS. Muscle relaxants in burns, trauma and critical illness. *Int Anesth Clin*. 2006;44:123–143.
282. Martyn J. Succinylcholine hyperkalemia after burns. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;91:321–322.
283. Bittner EA, Shank E, Woodson L, Martyn JA. Acute and perioperative care of the burn-injured patient. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122(2): 448–464.
284. Martyn JA, Matteo RS, Szyfelbein SK, Kaplan RF. Unprecedented resistance to neuromuscular blocking effects of metocurine with persistence after complete recovery in a burned patient. *Anesth Analg*. 1982;61:614–617.
285. Martyn J, Ritchfeld M. Succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia in acquired pathologic states. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;104:158–169.
286. Deleted in pages.
287. Lee S, Yang HS, Sasakawa T, et al. Immobilization with atrophy induces de novo expression of neuronal nicotinic α7 acetylcholine receptors in muscle contributing to neurotransmission. *Anesthesiology*. 2014;120:76–85.
288. Marathe PH, Dwersteg JF, Pavlin EG, Haschke RH, Heimbach DM, Slattery JT. Effect of thermal injury on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of atracurium in humans. *Anesthesiology*. 1989;70:752.
289. Han T, Kim H, Bae J, Kim K, Martyn JA. Neuromuscular pharmacodynamics of rocuronium in patients with major burns. *Anesth Analg*. 2004;99(2):386–392.
290. Han TH, Martyn JA. Onset and effectiveness of rocuronium for rapid onset of paralysis in patients with major burns: priming or large bolus. *Br J Anaesth*. 2009;102(1):55–60.
291. Rodríguez Sánchez ME, Martínez Torres C, Herrera Calo P, Jiménez I. Use of sugammadex on burn patients: descriptive study. *Braz J Anesthesiol*. 2015;65(4):240–243.
292. Dwersteg JF, Pavlin EG, Heimbach DM. Patients with burns are resistant to atracurium. *Anesthesiology*. 1986;65(5):517–520.
293. Deleted in proofs.
294. Fuzaylov G, Fidkowski CW. Anesthetic considerations for major burn injury in pediatric patients. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2009;19(3):202–211.
295. Housinger TA, Lang D, Warden GD. A prospective study of blood loss with excisional therapy in pediatric burn patients. *J Trauma*. 1993;34:262–263.
296. Bhangu A, Nepogodiev D, Doughty H, Bowley DM. Meta-analysis of plasma to red blood cell ratios and mortality in massive blood transfusions for trauma. *Injury*. 2013;44(12):1693–1699.
297. Schaden E, Kimberger O, Kraincuk P, Baron DM, Metnitz PG, Kozek-Langenecker S. Perioperative treatment algorithm for bleeding burn patients reduces allogeneic blood product requirements. *Br J Anaesth*. 2012;109(3):376–381.
298. Rizzo JA, Rowan MP, Driscoll IR, Chan RK, Chung KK. Perioperative temperature management during burn care. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38(1):e277–e283.
299. Oda J, Kasai K, Noborio M, Ueyama M, Yukioka T. Hypothermia during burn surgery and postoperative acute lung injury in extensively burned patients. *J Trauma*. 2009;66(6):1525–1529.
300. Alfonsi P. Postanaesthetic shivering. Epidemiology, pathophysiology and approaches to prevention and management. *Minerva Anestesiol*. 2003;69(5):438–442.
301. Deleted in pages.
302. Kjellman BM, Fredrikson M, Glad-Mattsson G, Sjöberg F, Huss FR. Comparing ambient, air-convection, and fluid-convection heating techniques in treating hypothermic burn patients, a clinical RCT. *Ann Surg Innov Res*. 2011;5(1):4.
303. Daugherty THF, Ross A, Neumeister MW. Surgical excision of burn wounds: best practices using evidence-based medicine. *Clin Plast Surg*. 2017;44(3):619–625.
304. Desai MH, Herndon DN, Broemeling L, Barrow RE, Nichols Jr RJ, Rutan RL. Early burn wound excision significantly reduces blood loss. *Ann Surg*. 1990;211(6):753–759.
305. Ong YS, Samuel M, Song C. Meta-analysis of early excision of burns. *Burns*. 2006;32(2):145–150.
306. Rowan MP, Cancio LC, Elster EA, et al. Burn wound healing and treatment: review and advancements. *Crit Care*. 2015;19:243.
307. Nyame TT, Chiang HA, Orgill DP. Clinical applications of skin substitutes. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2014;94(4):839–850.
308. Summer GJ, Puntillo KA, Miaskowski C, Green PG, Levine JD. Burn injury pain: the continuing challenge. *J Pain*. 2007;8(7):533–548.
309. Weinbroum AA. A single small dose of postoperative ketamine provides rapid and sustained improvement in morphine analgesia in the presence of morphine-resistant pain. *Anesth Analg*. 2003;96(3):789–795.
310. Griggs C, Goverman J, Bittner EA, Levi B. Sedation and pain management in burn patients. *Clin Plast Surg*. 2017;44(3):535–540.
311. Wiechman Askay S, Patterson DR, Sharar SR, Mason S, Faber B. Pain management in patients with burn injuries. *Int Rev Psychiatry*. 2009;21(6):522–530.
312. McGarry S, Elliott C, McDonald A, Valentine J, Wood F, Girdler S. Paediatric burns: from the voice of the child. *Burns*. 2014;40:606–615.
313. Deleted in pages.
314. Bell L, McAdams T, Morgan R, et al. Pruritus in burns: a descriptive study. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1988;9:305–308.
315. Herndon DN, Ross E, Blears EE. Challenges and opportunities in contemporary burn pain management. *Pain Med*. 2018;19(4):641.
316. Laycock H, Valente J, Bantel C, Nagy I. Peripheral mechanisms of burn injury-associated pain. *Eur J Pharmacol*. 2013;716(1-3):169–178.
317. Holtman Jr JR, Jellish WS. Opioid-induced hyperalgesia and burn pain. *J Burn Care Res*. 2012;33(6):692–701.
318. Gamst-Jensen H, Vedel PN, Lindberg-Larsen VO, Egerod I. Acute pain management in burn patients: appraisal and thematic analysis of four clinical guidelines. *Burns*. 2014;40(8):1463–1469.
319. Faucher L, Furukawa K. Practice guidelines for the management of pain. *J Burn Care Res*. 2006;27(5):659–668.
320. de Jong AE, Middelkoop E, Faber AW, Van Loey NE. Non-pharmacological nursing interventions for procedural pain relief in adults with burns: a systematic literature review. *Burns*. 2007;33(7):811–827.
321. Morris LD, Louw QA, Grimmer-Somers K. The effectiveness of virtual reality on reducing pain and anxiety in burn injury patients: a systematic review. *Clin J Pain*. 2009;25(9):815–826.
322. Richardson P, Mustard L. The management of pain in the burns unit. *Burns*. 2009;35:921–936.
323. Brown C, Albrecht R, Pettit H, McFadden T, Schermer C. Opioid and benzodiazepine withdrawal syndrome in adult burn patients. *Am Surg*. 2000;66(4):367–370; discussion 370-1.
324. Bell PL, Gabriel V. Evidence based review for the treatment of post-burn pruritus. *J Burn Care Res*. 2009;30(1):55–61.
325. Bell L, McAdams T, Morgan R, et al. Pruritus in burns: a descriptive study. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1988;9:305–308.
326. Kaul I, Amin A, Rosenberg M, Rosenberg L, Meyer 3rd WJ. Use of gabapentin and pregabalin for pruritus and neuropathic pain associated with major burn injury: a retrospective chart review. *Burns*. 2018;44(2):414–422.

88

Occupational Safety, Infection Control, and Substance Abuse

CHRISTOPHER CHOUKALAS, MARILYN MICHELOW, and
MICHAEL FITZSIMONS

KEY POINTS

- Exposure to waste anesthetic gas in clinical practice is unavoidable. In the United States, the limits of exposure to waste gases are set by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), which recommends a time-weighted average of 25 ppm for nitrous oxide and a ceiling of 2 ppm for volatile anesthetics.
- Although researchers disagree whether exposure to anesthetic gases at concentrations less than NIOSH limits affects health or performance, these limits are often exceeded. If it can be smelled, the exposure is many times greater than the safe limit.
- Occupational exposure to radiation comes primarily from x-rays scattered by the patient and surrounding equipment. A distance of 3 feet from the patient is recommended to minimize physiologic damage from occupational exposure, and a distance of 6 feet from the patient provides the same protection as 2.5 mm of lead.
- Surgical smoke is increasingly recognized as a source of potentially infectious and carcinogenic material; evacuation devices should be used where the smoke plume is created.
- Diseases can be transmitted via direct contact, droplets, or airborne particles. Some diseases are infectious only if there is direct exposure to blood or body fluid from the host. Appropriate personal protective equipment based on the suspected type of infection should always be used to prevent occupational disease transmission.
- To attenuate occupational exposure to pathogens, standard precautions at a minimum should be used at all times. The appropriate barrier precautions for intubation include eye protection, a surgical mask, and gloves.
- To prevent exposure to bloodborne pathogens, sharps safety, including the use of safety retractable needles and needleless systems, should be used.
- Occupational exposure to human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and hepatitis B and C viruses (HBV and HCV) is most often the result of a percutaneous injury. The risk of disease transmission is generally very low but is greatest from hollow-bore needles, needles contaminated with visible blood, and exposure to a source patient with high viral titer.
- Postexposure prophylaxis (PEP) is recommended after occupational exposure to HIV or HBV. The recommended guidelines for PEP are available on the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention website. The Clinical Consultation Center PEPline service is a free expert resource for guidance on PEP (1-888-448-4911).
- The preference for and access to potent opioids contribute to the prevalence of substance use disorder among anesthesiologists. The rate of drug-related deaths is more than twice as high in anesthesiologists as internists.
- Although many recovered anesthesiologists return to the practice of anesthesia, there is a significant relapse rate. The chance of relapse is highest in physicians who become addicted to potent narcotics early in their career. Successful recovery requires a lifelong commitment to treatment. In some cases, a change in specialty is the only solution.
- Sleep deprivation has an adverse effect on physician mood, cognitive function, reaction time, and vigilance. Although sleep deprivation and fatigue adversely affect clinical performance, the full impact on patient outcome has been difficult to determine.

The practice of anesthesiology exposes its practitioners to a variety of risks unique among medical specialties. Some of these risks are tangible or physical, such as waste anesthetic gases and communicable disease, whereas others are more insidious, such as stress, fatigue, and the risks of substance abuse disorder. Each of these risks can be mitigated but probably not eliminated.

In the case of physical exposures such as waste anesthetic gases, radiation, and bloodborne pathogens, efficient gas scavenger systems, the use of protective lead, needle-shielded intravenous (IV) lines, standard precautions (SP), and postexposure prophylaxis (PEP) protocols are currently commonplace in contemporary anesthesia practice. The less tangible risks are harder to reduce. Work hour restrictions may limit fatigue among housestaff; however, doing so may not improve patient outcomes, particularly when such controls do not apply to practicing physicians. Substance abuse disorders remain a problem with a multifactorial etiology and few clear solutions. This chapter examines the risks associated with each of these environmental and situational hazards, and reviews the measures one can take to avoid them.

Physical Exposures

INHALATIONAL ANESTHETICS

Volatile inhaled anesthetics are an indispensable part of anesthesia practice; however, these agents also have the potential to cause harm to patients and the physicians caring for them. Given what is suspected about their impact on patient health, vis-à-vis neurodevelopment of the very young, the spectrum of postoperative cognitive dysfunction in adults, and immunosuppressant effects on patients of all ages,[1] it is natural to wonder whether these compounds are harmful to health care workers exposed to them on a daily basis.

Definitive answers remain elusive; it is difficult to randomize exposure, and previous work suggesting a link between exposure to waste anesthetic gas and infertility and other health effects suffered serious methodologic flaws. Still, the topic of the impact of exposure on cognitive performance and health continues to generate more questions than answers.

Waste nitrous oxide (N_2O) and halogenated anesthetics in the absence of scavenging may approach concentrations as high as 3000 and 50 ppm, respectively.[2] This is relative to guidelines for safe practice, which historically have proposed limits of exposure well below (e.g., 25 ppm N_2O and 2 ppm of any halogenated agent).[3] Although the concentration of waste gases can be well controlled with proper scavenging, in practice the levels recommended by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) are often exceeded during the routine delivery of anesthesia.[4,5] Although exposure to anesthetic gases is more common in pediatric anesthesia where mask inductions and uncuffed endotracheal tubes are more commonly used, the introduction of the laryngeal mask airway to anesthesia practice may increase operating room exposure to waste gases in adult cases as well. One study of inhaled induction of anesthesia and maintenance with sevoflurane and N_2O in adults resulted in violations of NIOSH standards 50% of the time.[6]

Provider Health Effects

One of the first examinations of the impact of exposure to subanesthetic concentrations of inhalational anesthetics on cognitive performance was conducted by Bruce and Bach in the 1970s. They noted that healthy volunteers in the laboratory suffered a decrease in psychomotor performance when exposed to concentrations of N_2O as low as 50 ppm, alone or in combination with 1 ppm of halothane. The same study showed that 25 ppm of N_2O combined with 0.5 ppm of halothane had no effect.[3,7] Subsequently, three other groups of researchers studying volunteers in laboratories have been unable to confirm the earlier findings. The lack of agreement between investigators has led some to conclude "that there is no convincing evidence that anesthetics in concentrations equal to those found in unscavenged operating theatres have any effect on the psychomotor performance of healthy subjects in the laboratory."[8] A study conducted on volunteers in an operating room during normal clinical activities in which trace concentrations of N_2O and halothane ranged from 0 to 2300 and 0 to 37 ppm, respectively, also failed to detect impairment in psychomotor performance.[9] In contrast, a series of studies in healthy volunteers showed that subanesthetic concentrations of N_2O, isoflurane, and sevoflurane were associated with reductions in psychomotor performance, with some studies suggesting a dose-dependent effect for N_2O dose as low as 10% and a sevoflurane dose as low as 0.4%.[10-12] By way of comparison, 10% N_2O is equivalent to 100,000 ppm, significantly higher than the recommended safe level of exposure and the level of exposure in the Bruce and Bach studies. Whether the methods in these studies closely mimic patterns of occupational exposure in clinical practice is debatable, but it must be acknowledged, as discussed later, that occupational exposure may greatly exceed accepted safe levels.

Fetal Health Effects

Anesthetics have been implicated in the development of cancer, spontaneous abortions, and genetic and developmental anomalies. The possibility that chronic exposure to anesthetic waste gases could result in adverse health effects was first appreciated in the late 1960s, when a report of potential harm appeared in the Russian literature; Vaisman reported an increased incidence of abortions (18 spontaneous abortions in 31 pregnancies) among female anesthetists.[13] After this initial report, a multitude of retrospective studies followed. Of these, three large studies conducted during the 1970s and 1980s in the United States and the United Kingdom all concluded that the prevalence of spontaneous abortion was substantially higher in female anesthesiologists than in female physicians working outside the operating room.[14-17] Studies in this era also concluded that the incidence of congenital anomalies in children of male and female anesthesiologists was higher than in the control groups of physicians.[18-20] In addition to these reproductive effects, meta-analysis of six of these early studies linked the exposure to anesthetic gases to hepatic disease in male anesthesia personnel[21] and cervical cancer, liver disease, and kidney disease in female anesthesia personnel.[22] A number of studies with similar methodologies failed to detect a relationship between exposure and health.[23-25] Although many of these older studies suffered from significant methodologic limitations,[14,15,21] a 1997 meta-analysis of more than 19 studies completed between 1984 and 1992 reported a relative risk of abortion in female subjects exposed to anesthetic gases to be 1.48 (confidence interval [CI] 95%, 1.4-1.58).[26]

The Task Force on Trace Anesthetic Gases was convened by the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Committee on Occupational Health of Operating Room Personnel to analyze data from all available epidemiologic studies. The methodologic flaws in the studies impaired the task force's ability to draw conclusions about an association between occupational exposure to waste anesthetic gases and adverse health effects. Their report, published in 2002,[27,28] cited data from a prospective survey[29] of 11,500 U.K. female physicians documenting occupation, work practices, lifestyle, and medical and obstetric history, as well as hours of exposure and the use of scavenging equipment. This report showed the incidence of infertility, spontaneous abortion, and children with congenital abnormalities in female anesthesiologists to be the same as that in other physicians.[29] The position of the ASA is that "There is no evidence that trace concentrations of waste anesthetic gases cause adverse health effects to personnel working in locations where scavenging of waste anesthetic gases is carried out" and "the general conclusion… is that currently used anesthetics… have no mutagenic potential."[27,28] This reassurance may be of little comfort in light of evidence and clinical experience that show levels of exposure in clinical practice routinely exceed those considered safe by health and regulatory agencies.[4,5] The task force document also summarized contemporaneous recommendations from the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) recommending that from the employee's "Right to Know," there are "potential adverse effects of exposure to waste anesthetic gases such as spontaneous abortions, and congenital abnormalities in children."[27,28]

Subsequently, there have been several more studies that support the possibility of an intrauterine effect. An analysis of Canadian nurses identified significant odds of congenital anomalies in the offspring of nurses working in settings with exposure to waste anesthetic gases compared with those working in settings where the likelihood of exposure was lower.[30] Subsequent research using chromosomal and molecular DNA analysis identified correlations between exposure and genotoxic effects (e.g., sister chromatid exchanges, breaks in DNA, and chromosomal abnormalities)[31-33] but did not examine clinical outcomes in offspring. However, these more recent epidemiologic and genetic studies did not quantify exposure but rather assumed exposure by selecting health care workers from settings where exposure was assumed to have taken place.

Given the study limitations, the lack of consensus or updated ASA guidelines, and the findings that safe inhalational anesthetic levels may often be exceeded, it must be acknowledged that harm is possible. Manufacturers of anesthesia work stations, health care systems, and clinicians must remain vigilant to reduce risk.

Mitigating Health effects

The potential health effects of occupational exposure to anesthetic gas can be mitigated through waste anesthesia gas scavenging systems, establishing levels of safe exposure, auditing exposure levels, and enforcing recommended frequencies of air exchanges in locations where anesthesia gas may be found (e.g., operating rooms, procedural suites, and recovery areas).

Although the universal use of scavenging systems is critical to safe, modern anesthesia practice, it can lead to a false sense of security among operating room personnel. Kanmura and colleagues[34] found abnormally high ambient concentrations of N_2O in 402 delivered anesthetics, of which 42% were the result of mask ventilation, 19.2% a disconnected scavenging system, 12.5% a leak around pediatric endotracheal tubes, and 11.5% equipment leakage. Furthermore, all of the scavenging system disconnects in this study were attributed to human error rather than equipment failure.[34] Because most anesthesia machines were not equipped to recognize disconnected scavenging systems, a fault that has been corrected on most modern anesthesia machines, a failure of the system on older machines may not be readily apparent. Diligent maintenance and a thorough understanding of anesthesia scavenging systems are essential to comply with NIOSH standards and to minimize operating room exposure. Emerging evidence exists for the role of various activated charcoal compounds to absorb molecules of anesthetic vapor,[35] but these have been trialed only in experimental settings and are not yet available commercially.

Regulations and recommendations regarding workplace safety are established by several governmental agencies. The OSHA is the national agency within the U.S. Department of Labor that sets and enforces standards to ensure "safe and healthful working conditions." The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and NIOSH are both federal agencies conducting research and making recommendations regarding health and workplace safety. Unlike OSHA, neither the CDC nor NIOSH are regulatory agencies. State and local health departments, as well as hospital infection control departments, are also tasked with enacting and enforcing health care workplace safety standards.

The NIOSH sets recommended exposure limits for the operating room setting, stating "no worker should be exposed … [to] concentrations greater than 2 ppm of any halogenated anesthetic or 25 ppm of N_2O" in the 1970s.[3] These exposure limits have not been updated nor do they include newer volatile anesthetic drugs. These exposure levels were selected based on the lowest level known at the time to cause side effects (50 ppm N_2O or 1 ppm of halothane caused cognitive impairment in dental students)[36] and the level that could be easily and practically achieved.[37] Subsequently, it was realized that the data used to set the standards might not be generalizable because the subjects were Mormon, a subgroup likely more sensitive to depressant drugs[38]; a more recent study with a small sample size showed cognitive impairment at 50 ppm of N_2O,[39] levels that are routinely found in studies[4,5,40,41] and are well above the NIOSH levels. The threshold of perception of halothane ranges from less than 3 to more than 100 ppm.[2] If the anesthetic can be smelled, its concentration is likely to be many times greater than the maximum recommended level.

Occupational exposure is not limited to operating room staff, because patients continue to exhale trace amounts of N_2O for 5 to 8 hours postoperatively.[42] Sessler and Badgwell used lapel dosimeters to measure the concentrations of volatile anesthetics of recovery room nurses during the first hour of PACU care in patients who had received inhaled anesthetics. In this study, breathing zone anesthetic concentrations were in excess of NIOSH recommendations in 37% of patients who received isoflurane, 87% of patients who received desflurane, and 53% of patients who received N_2O.[43] A more recent but similar study reported a much lower average concentration (3.1 ppm) of N_2O in the breathing zone of recovering patients in a Canadian PACU,[42] also above the recommended safe levels of exposure. These studies demonstrate the importance of proper ventilation in PACUs. Both groups reported PACU room air exchanges of 8 volumes per hour, although much of the air in the Sessler and Badgwell study was recirculated. N_2O levels can be reduced to undetectable levels with air exchanges of 20 per hour, with 25% of each exchange taken from fresh air.[27] Although OSHA does not currently regulate exposure to N_2O and halogenated anesthetics, the agency does provide guidelines designed to minimize workplace exposure. These include the appropriate assembly and monitoring of scavenging systems, the detection and correction of machine leaks, and the installation of effective ventilation systems.[44] In the operating room, the recommended air exchange rate is a minimum of 15 air exchanges per hour, with at least 3 air exchanges of outdoor air per hour. Laminar flow is better than turbulent flow with regard to measured levels of exposure.[4] In the PACU, at least 6 air changes are recommended, with a minimum of 2 exchanges of outdoor air per hour. OSHA recommends air sampling for anesthetic gases be performed on a biannual basis and records of air sampling methods, locations, dates, and concentrations measured, as well as results of anesthesia machine leak tests, be maintained for at least 20 years. Although OSHA is a government agency, these recommendations are not legally mandated.[27,28]

In summary, the possibility that waste anesthetic gas at levels routinely encountered in clinical practice could cause deficits in performance and human health remains. Caution must be exercised, and clinicians should limit their exposure as much as possible.

RADIATION

The anesthesiologist is routinely exposed to both ionizing and nonionizing electromagnetic radiation. The former is primarily from x-rays and occasionally from radioactive isotopes that release gamma rays, and the latter is from lasers. Less common is contact with ionizing radiation from radioactive isotopes that release either alpha or beta particles. Ionizing radiation has enough energy to create both free radicals and ionized molecules in tissues by driving electrons completely out of their stable orbitals. If the radiation exposure is severe enough, tissues may be destroyed or chromosomal changes may cause malignant growth. Nonionizing radiation may excite electrons to move from the ground state to higher orbitals in molecules, but the electrons remain in the molecule. In this case, damage to tissues may result from the heat produced by the absorbed radiation.

Ionizing Radiation: X-rays

In the past, exposure to radiation occurred mostly in the operating room with the use of portable fluoroscopy and x-ray machines. Advancements in endovascular surgery, hybrid cardiac surgery procedures, electrophysiology studies, and other imaging procedures significantly increase exposure of anesthesia personnel to ionizing radiation[45] relative to traditional operating room cases. Radiation is undetectable with our normal senses, so a basic understanding of its features will minimize exposure.

TABLE 88.1 Relevant Exposure Limitations for X-Rays

	OSHA*		ICRP†	
Region	rem	mSv	rem	mSv
Head, eyes, gonads	5	50	2	20
Hands, wrists	75	750	50	500
Skin of the whole body	30	300	50	500
Pregnancy	0.5	5	0.1	1

*Occupational Safety and Health Administration.[47]
†International Commission on Radiological Protection.[48]

One Sievert (Sv) is equal to 100 rem and is a measure of the biologic damage from radiation adjusted to apply to all tissues.[46] Estimates of radiation exposure from natural sources vary, depending on geographic location. The average in the United States ranges from 0.8 to 2 mSv (80-200 millirem [mrem]) per year. Natural radiation comes primarily from cosmic rays (approximately 0.4 mSv at sea level, with an increase of 0.1 mSv/1000 feet), as well as from radioactive compounds found in soil, brick, and concrete. For most physicians, the additional radiation from occupational exposure is no greater than that from natural sources. OSHA sets limits of occupational exposure (expressed as rem) that vary by body area; allowable limits are higher for the hands than for the whole body, gonads, or blood-forming parts of the body.[47] An easy rule of thumb is 5 rem (50 mSv) per year, with no more than 1.25 rem (12.5 mSv) in any given calendar quarter. In 2007 the International Commission on Radiological Protection, an international nonprofit, proposed more stringent limits than those proposed by OSHA (Table 88.1), and both agree that limits should be lower for personnel who are pregnant.[48,49]

Occupational exposure to radiation comes primarily from x-rays scattered by the patient and the surrounding equipment, rather than directly from the x-ray generator itself.[50] One chest radiograph results in approximately 25 mrem of exposure to the patient; procedures requiring multiple films occasionally involve more than 1 rem. The amount of radiation generated during fluoroscopy depends on how long the x-ray beam is on; just as light is reflected from surfaces, x-rays are reflected from the surfaces on which they impinge. This scattering accounts for most occupational exposure. Research findings vary about the degree of exposure typical for anesthesia providers, but most studies show low levels of exposure.[45,51-53] Recent studies have compared risk profiles of various positions of the anesthetist and the x-ray beam. A simulation-based study using phantom patient and anesthetist models with dosimeters demonstrated that exposure was greater near the head of the bed (vs. along the sides of the bed) or when the x-ray beam was in either of the lateral positions (e.g., shooting cross-table images).[54] A real-time evaluation of exposure in personnel conducting transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) during transcatheter aortic valve replacement showed that the TEE operator receives 5 times as much radiation as other clinicians involved in the procedure.[55] Furthermore, this exposure is heightened by the use of oblique angles for imaging. Notably, by using additional shielding (e.g., a ceiling-mounted lead acrylic shield), this exposure was reduced by more than 80%.

Mitigating Health Effects

Radiation physicists recommend the "As Low As Reasonably Achievable" guiding principle for radiation exposure to both the patient and practitioner. Technologic innovation leading to advances in imaging technology and industrial design may further limit exposure.[56,57]

Because the intensity of scattered radiation is inversely proportional to the square of the distance from the source, the best protection is physical separation. A distance of at least 3 feet from the patient is recommended. Six feet of air provides protection the equivalent of 9 inches of concrete or 2.5 mm of lead.[58] Using studies of real-time dosimeters and simulation studies using phantom patients, a recent systematic review found that at a 4.9-foot (1.5 m) distance from the x-ray source, exposure was no greater than that due to background radiation.[51] This finding has been replicated in a handful of studies of clinical exposures.[45,52] The authors go so far as to question the need for anesthesia personnel to wear lead aprons, which conflicts with OSHA recommendations.[59] Although they may be uncomfortable, aprons containing the equivalent of 0.25 to 0.5 mm of lead sheet are effective in blocking most scattered radiation and such devices are recommended to be worn whenever there is an exposure risk.[60] Uncovered areas, such as the lens of the eye, still bear the risk of injury,[50] and radiation dose to the eyes varies with the type of surgery and the position of the anesthesiologist relative to the patient and x-ray field.[54,61] OSHA recommends opaque goggles for health care workers in the "direct x-ray field."[59]

Nonionizing Radiation: Lasers

Laser is an acronym for light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation. Lasers produce infrared, visible, or ultraviolet light. A surgical laser produces intense, focused electromagnetic radiation to cut or destroy tissues. Although the radiation from lasers is nonionizing, it is potentially unsafe both because of its intensity and because of the matter released from tissues during treatment.

Of those in common clinical use, carbon dioxide and neodymium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet (Nd:YAG) lasers emit light in the far-infrared and near-infrared wavelengths, respectively; argon and tunable dye lasers produce visible light.[62]

Eye injuries are the greatest risk to personnel working near lasers. Strict standards for protection have been developed based on current understanding but are subject to periodic revision. Either direct exposure or reflected radiation may cause eye damage. Injuries include corneal and retinal burns, destruction of the macula or optic nerve, and cataract formation. Protective eyewear is designed to filter out the radiation produced by a specific type of laser while still permitting vision. For example, clear plastic lenses block the far-infrared (10,600 nm) radiation from carbon dioxide lasers but provide no protection against the near-infrared (1064 nm) radiation emitted by Nd:YAG lasers. The type of protection provided by a given filter is marked on the frame of the goggles and should be checked before use. Filters that are scratched should not be used. Because certain filters block portions of the visible spectrum, it is prudent to confirm preoperatively that patient monitors can be seen and interpreted correctly with goggles in place. Protective eyewear is recommended for all exposed personnel because reflected radiation can be as hazardous as direct radiation and, unlike x-ray radiation, the intensity is not diminished significantly by the distance traveled in the average operating room.[62]

In addition to direct injury from laser light, clinicians should avoid the smoke plume created by lasers.[63-65] Under experimental conditions, viable bacteria have been recovered from the plume emanating from laser irradiation,[66] as have compounds known to be carcinogens and environmental toxins.[63] Intact DNA from human papillomavirus (HPV) has been detected in the vapor from both laser-treated plantar warts and genital condylomata[67,68] and on the gloves of treating physicians.[69] Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) proviral DNA has been found in laser smoke produced by vaporizing cultures of HIV-positive cells.[70] Although these experiments, which used tissue cultures, do not replicate routine clinical circumstances, they stress the importance of strict attention to smoke removal. Simulation studies confirm that concentrations of laser-generated particulate matter are higher near the operating field than elsewhere in the room, sometimes by a factor of four, regardless of the degree of room ventilation.[64]

As an extreme example, a case report documented the appearance of laryngeal papillomas in a laser surgeon who had previously treated several patients infected with anal condylomata without the benefit of a laser smoke evacuator.[71] Tissue from the surgeon's laryngeal tumors contained HPV DNA types 6 and 11, the same viral types that are commonly harbored by anogenital condylomata. Hence it is prudent to scavenge all vaporized debris.

SURGICAL SMOKE

Increasing attention is focused on the health effects of exposure to surgical smoke created by electrocautery and ultrasonic scalpels.[72] Data suggest that smoke from electrocautery contains infectious and malignant cells, albeit in small quantities, as well as carcinogenic compounds.[73] Ultrasonic scalpels can produce viable cells in the smoke plume, as demonstrated in a study that showed that the malignant cells grew cancer when subsequently injected into mice.[74]

Data from a NIOSH survey of health care workers shows that the majority of operating room personnel believe local exhaust ventilation devices (e.g., smoke evacuators on the surgical field) are not routinely in use.[75] Respondents reported that a lack of institutional protocols and a belief that exposure was minimal or not concerning were responsible for the lack of such protective strategies. Anesthesia personnel are intimately familiar with the various odors common in our practice; the smell of flesh burned with electrocautery should be a signal to those in the operating room that they are being exposed to potentially harmful material.

Mitigating the effects of exposure to surgical smoke is a critical endeavor. Most standard surgical masks trap only the largest of the smoke particles,[76] and standard surgical masks are demonstrably ineffective at filtering particles generated

TABLE 88.2 Occupational Exposure, Risks, and Safety Measures

Exposure	Sources	Potential Risks	Protection
Inhalational agents	Free gases Mask inductions Use of LMA Agent spill Inadequate scavenging	Infertility Decrease in psychomotor performance Cancer development Spontaneous abortion Hepatic disease Congenital abnormalities	Scavenging systems Air exchange Use mask induction appropriately Activated charcoal filters
Ionizing radiation	Portable fluoroscopy Hybrid operating rooms Interventional suites	Cancer Eye damage Infertility	Distance >3 feet from source Lead aprons Leaf shields Lead surgical caps Periodic radiation monitoring
Nonionizing radiation	LASER	Eye injury Vaporization of bacterial or viral matter	Protective eyewear Laser-specific surgical masks
Microdebris from smoke	Surgical cautery Ultrasonic scalpel	Exposure to bacterial, viral, and carcinogenic matter	Surgical smoke evacuators FFP 2 particulate masks

by laser.[77,78] Even laser-specific masks were many-fold less effective at particle removal than the comparator, a protection class FFP level 2 dust and fine particle mask.[77] The median size of particles in plume samples obtained intraoperatively is 0.31 μm in diameter (range, 0.1-0.8 μm). Even after filtration of particles greater than 0.5 μm in diameter, exhaust smoke from tissues treated with a carbon dioxide laser causes pulmonary lesions in laboratory animals. If all particles larger than 0.1 μm are scavenged, no lung damage occurs, emphasizing the importance of scrupulous removal of the plume,[70,79] a practice advocated by the CDC, OSHA, and the Association of Perioperative Registered Nurses.

By using adequate evacuation and filtration equipment specifically designed to scavenge such vapors, it may be less likely that operating room personnel will be contaminated by laser-dispersed HPV DNA.[67] However, laser-specific surgical masks should also be used whenever lasers are in use, and institutions should evaluate the use of smoke evacuators for the surgical field (Table 88.2).

Infectious Exposures

Understanding the basic principles of infection control is essential to the safe and responsible practice of anesthesia.

INFECTION PRECAUTIONS

Infection control standards have changed dramatically over the past 50 years, with the introduction of protocols for handwashing, use of personal protective equipment (PPE), incorporation of environmental controls, and implementation of sharp safety devices.

Beginning in 1985 in response to the HIV/AIDS epidemic, the CDC released recommendations for "universal precautions" to be used by all health care workers exposed to blood or body fluids, regardless of the infectious status of a patient.[80] These recommendations were expanded in 1996 into the concept of standard precautions (SP), which are to be used with all patients at all times. The CDC also introduced airborne, droplet, and contact transmission-based precaution guidelines for diseases spread by those specific routes.[80]

Standard Precautions

SP encompass hand hygiene between every patient contact event, before aseptic tasks, and after contact with bodily fluids. Hand hygiene includes both the use of plain or antibacterial soap and water and the use of alcohol-based gels without water. Unless hands are visibly soiled, hand hygiene with an alcohol-based gel has greater antimicrobial effect and is preferred to soap and water.[81] It is estimated that every anesthesia procedure presents at least 25 hand hygiene opportunities and hundreds of contact events with the patient and then surfaces in the anesthesia environment but that anesthesiologists are compliant with hand hygiene recommendations only approximately 1% to 10% of the time.[82,83] Importantly, using gloves does not obviate the need for hand hygiene, because 1% to 2% of examination gloves have microperforations that can allow bacteria to penetrate the glove surface.[84]

SP include the application of PPE such as a gown, gloves, a mask, or eye protection as appropriate during patient-care activities likely to expose a health care worker to a patient's blood or secretions. The need for PPE differs depending on the specific task at hand. During intubation, it is recommended that the anesthesiologist perform hand hygiene and use gloves, a mask, and eye protection.[85] One study estimated the frequency of glove use by anesthesiologists during intubation, extubation, and IV line placement at only 10% for attending anesthesiologists and 50% for trainees.[86]

When a patient is known or suspected to have an infection transmitted by a specific route, such as contact, airborne particles, or droplets, specific transmission-based precautions should be used in addition to SP. These precautions are discussed in more detail later.

When transporting a patient on transmission-based precautions, it is important to ensure that the infectious areas of the patient are appropriately contained. For example, if a patient is on airborne precautions for active TB, then the patient should wear an N95 mask or higher during transport. If a patient is on contact precautions, the patient should be covered in a gown or sheets and providers should wear clean PPE during transport.[80]

TABLE 88.3 Immunizations Recommended for Health Care Workers

Infection	Risk to Health Care Workers	Immunization	Special Considerations
Hepatitis B	Percutaneous or mucosal exposure to infectious blood/body fluid	3-dose series at 0, 1, and 6 months	Approximately 1% receiving the complete series will not have full immunity
Influenza	Infectious transmission via droplet route	Yearly	Effectiveness of vaccine varies with year
Measles, mumps, rubella	Infectious transmission through droplet and airborne routes	2-dose vaccine for measles, mumps and rubella together (usually as a child)	1% of health care workers who were vaccinated may have lost immunity
Pertussis	Contact or droplet transmission	Every 10 years (usually as Tdap with tetanus and diphtheria toxoids)	Even immunized health care workers need postexposure prophylaxis
Varicella	Contact or airborne transmission	2-dose series (not needed if history of past varicella infection)	

Information from Immunization of health-care personnel, recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP), Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2011- REF 20.

Environmental Controls

Environmental controls are additional safety measures used to prevent the spread of airborne infectious particles; examples in hospitals include engineering systems to manage ventilation (e.g., negative pressure rooms), use of high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtration, frequent air exchange rates, and ultraviolet irradiation of air in the upper portion of a room or in air ducts.[87,88] Because operating rooms are kept at positive pressure with respect to hallways (to prevent the introduction of infectious particles into a sterile area), elective procedures on patients with active TB or other airborne diseases should be postponed. If it is not possible to delay surgery, the procedure should be performed in an operating room with an anteroom.[89] A HEPA filter should be placed in the circuit after the Y-connector, to prevent contamination of the anesthesia machine.

Needlestick and Sharps Safety

A key element of universal precautions and SP is the prevention of injuries due to sharps and the use of safe injection practices. In 2000 the CDC estimated that health care workers experience more than 600,000 needlestick and other percutaneous injuries yearly.[90] OSHA has developed standards to protect health care workers from exposure to bloodborne pathogens. These standards were most recently updated in 2001 after the passage of the federal Needlestick Safety and Prevention Act of 2000.[91] OSHA standards mandate that employers make available safety-engineered sharps devices, provide for safe disposal of sharps, make appropriate PPE available, offer free hepatitis B virus (HBV) vaccination to workers who have been exposed to potentially infectious fluids, and have procedures for medical evaluation and PEP for employees exposed to bloodborne pathogens.[92] With the implementation of safety-engineered sharps, overall needlestick injury rates have dropped significantly from before 2000 to after 2004, in some studies, by well over 50%.[93]

The risk of a sharps injury correlates with medical specialty and clinical experience. The Duke Health and Safety Surveillance System Study quantified the risk of percutaneous exposures to body fluids by various health care worker groups. In this study, anesthesia residents had 19 needlestick events per 100 residents per year, compared with an exposure rate for all anesthesia providers of 6.9 events per 100 employees per year and an overall exposure rate of 3.9 events per 100 full-time employees.[94] In addition, night work and shifts lasting greater than 24 hours were associated with an increased rate of needlestick injury.[95]

Injuries from the use of hollow-bore needles account for more than half of sharps injuries.[90] Percutaneous injuries can occur during and after use of a sharp device. Wearing gloves, double gloving, and avoiding recapping needles by using a two-handed technique can reduce the risk of a needlestick injury.[90,96] In addition, the use of a curved suture needle with a needle holder for suturing is safer than the use of a handheld straight suture needle.[97]

Accidental needlesticks are underreported. The CDC estimates that only approximately 54% of percutaneous exposures are reported to occupational health, perhaps because of fears that reporting will be time consuming or nonconfidential.[98] All occupational needlesticks and exposures should be reported to a hospital occupational health program for evaluation, testing, and possible PEP.

Vaccine Preventable Illness

The CDC Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices recommends that all health care providers be vaccinated against a variety of vaccine-preventable diseases to reduce the risk of occupational exposure and transmission of these pathogens (Table 88.3).

The most up-to-date infection control guidelines are available at the CDC website.[99] Recommendations for infection control specific to the practice of anesthesia have been published by the ASA Committee on Occupational Health Task Force on Infection Control.[6]

TRANSMISSION OF INFECTIOUS AGENTS

Anesthesia providers are exposed to a wide range of infectious pathogens, including bacteria, viruses, fungi, parasites, and prions. The three principle routes of pathogen transmission are via contact, droplet, and airborne spread. Bloodborne infectious agents, such as HIV and HBV, are transmitted to the health care worker via percutaneous injuries or direct contact of nonintact skin or mucous membranes with infected blood or other serum derived body fluids (Table 88.4).[100,101]

Contact Transmission

Contact transmission, the most common type of infectious transmission,[80] can either be direct, from an infected person to another person, or indirect, with a contaminated

TABLE 88.4 Infectious Precautions for Selected Transmissible Diseases*

Infection	Type of Infectious Precaution	Special Considerations
AIDS/HIV	Standard	Standard precautions include needlestick safety. Postexposure prophylaxis indicated for some exposures
Aspergillosis	Standard	
Clostridium difficile	Contact	Handwashing is required after patient contact, spores are not removed with alcohol-based gels
Ectoparasites (i.e., lice, scabies)	Contact	
Gastroenteritis	Standard	Contact precautions if rotavirus, or if the patient is diapered or incontinent
Hepatitis (A-E)	Standard	Postexposure prophylaxis may be indicated for HBV percutaneous exposure
Herpes simplex Severe primary mucocutaneous All other infections (including encephalitis)	Contact Standard	Until lesions are dry and crusted
Herpes zoster (Varicella-zoster) Local Disseminated	Standard Airborne, Contact	Nonimmunized health care workers should not enter room if immunized caregivers are available.
Influenza	Droplet	Postexposure prophylaxis may be indicated in some circumstances
Measles	Airborne	Nonimmunized health care workers should not enter room if immunized caregivers are available.
Meningococcal disease	Droplet	Postexposure prophylaxis may be indicated in some circumstances
Mumps	Droplet	Nonimmunized health care workers should not enter room if immunized caregivers are available.
Multidrug resistant organisms (including MRSA, VRE, ESBLs)	Standard or Contact	Contact precautions are recommended in settings with evidence of ongoing transmission, acute care settings, or wounds that cannot be contained by dressings
Pertussis	Droplet	Postexposure prophylaxis may be indicated in some circumstances
Prion diseases	Standard	Use special sterilization procedures for contaminated surgical equipment
Respiratory syncytial virus	Contact	Use mask for actively coughing patient according to standard precautions
Rhinovirus	Droplet	
Rubella	Droplet	Nonimmunized health care workers should not enter room if immunized caregivers are available.
Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)	Airborne, Droplet, Contact	
Staphylococcus (excluding MRSA) Major draining wounds Minor wounds or infections	Contact Standard	
Streptococcus (group A)	Droplet Contact-only for major wounds	Droplet if major infectious, involves the respiratory tract. Standard precautions if a minor or limited infection
Tuberculosis (active) Pulmonary Extrapulmonary	Airborne Airborne, Contact*	Contact if active draining lesions present
Viral hemorrhagic fevers (including Ebola, Marburg, Lassa)	Droplet, Contact, and Airborne	

*Excerpted from Appendix A. Type and duration of precautions recommended for selected infections and conditions. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) 2007 guideline for isolation precautions: preventing transmission of infectious agents in health care settings.[80]

HBV, Hepatitis B virus; *MRSA*, methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*.

intermediate such as a laryngoscope handle in an operating room.[102] When a patient has a contact-transmitted infection, contact precautions should be used at all times. These include keeping patients separated at least 3 feet from neighbors and wearing a gown and gloves for all patient-care interactions. Examples of microorganisms commonly transmitted via contact include respiratory syncytial virus, herpes simplex virus, *Staphylococcus aureus* (including methicillin-resistant *S. aureus*), and scabies.[80]

Clostridium difficile is an epidemiologically important contact-transmitted organism in health care facilities. *C. difficile* is a gram-positive spore-forming anaerobe that causes diarrhea and pseudomembranous colitis. The use of broad-spectrum antibiotics such as cephalosporins, clindamycin, and vancomycin are associated with *C. difficile* infection. Notably, *C. difficile* spores are not removed by the use of alcohol-based hand disinfectants. Health care workers who are in contact with patients suspected of having *C. difficile* infection should use contact precautions at all times and wash hands with soap and water after patient contact.[80]

Norovirus, a single-stranded RNA virus, is an important contact-transmitted organism and the most common cause of acute gastroenteritis in health care settings.[103] Health care workers should use standard and contact precautions any time a patient presents with diarrheal symptoms. Health care workers who contract norovirus should check with their institutional policy, which may require that the worker be excluded from work for at least 24 hours after symptoms have resolved.[103]

Parasitic skin diseases caused by lice and scabies are also spread via contact transmission. Anesthesiologists should be aware of the highly contagious nature of these conditions and use a gown and gloves for all interactions with patients who have an undiagnosed rash or are suspected of carrying ectoparasites. PEP is not routinely recommended.[104]

Droplet Transmission

Droplet transmission occurs when an infectious agent travels a short distance directly from the respiratory tract of an infected source to a susceptible mucosal surface in a recipient.[80] Droplet transmission can occur during intubation, airway suctioning, or if the patient coughs or sneezes.[105] The risk of droplet transmission is believed to be greatest at a distance of less than 3 feet from an infected person. For this reason, appropriate PPE precautions for patients with droplet-transmitted infections include keeping patients separated at least 3 feet from neighbors and wearing a mask for all close patient contact.

Microorganisms commonly transmitted via droplets include influenza and other respiratory viruses, group A streptococcus, and *Neisseria meningitidis.*[80]

Influenza virus types A and B cause respiratory illness in humans, ranging from mild to severe disease (influenza A infection generally causes more severe disease). Subtypes of influenza A virus are named for the surface antigens they display: H (hemagglutinin) and N (neuraminidase). Because these surface antigens change over time (termed antigenic drift), protective immunity from prior exposure to the influenza virus is partially lost. More infrequently, the surface antigens can change significantly (antigenic shift) and cause pandemic disease because the population has no immunity against the new virus strain. A pandemic H1N1 influenza A strain in 2009 caused illness in an estimated 60 million Americans.[106]

Because influenza virus subtypes change yearly, the CDC recommends that all persons older than 6 months be vaccinated yearly.[107] The influenza vaccine cannot cause influenza infection.[107] Anesthesiologists are at particular risk for exposure to influenza because of close contact with nasopharyngeal secretions. Increasingly, health care organizations are making yearly flu vaccination a mandatory condition of medical credentialing.[108]

Pertussis, a respiratory illness caused by *Bordetella pertussis*, and invasive meningococcal infections caused by *N. meningitidis* are two droplet-transmitted infections for which PEP is recommended for exposed health care workers.[80,105] Because intubation and suctioning are considered high-risk exposures to these infections, even vaccinated anesthesiologists should be aware of the need for chemoprophylaxis if they are involved in the care of infected patients.[24] The CDC recommends 5 to 7 days of macrolide therapy for pertussis exposure and single-dose oral ciprofloxacin or intramuscular ceftriaxone for exposure to invasive meningococcal disease.[109,110]

Droplet transmission of oral flora from health care workers to patients during lumbar puncture where the provider was not wearing a face mask has been implicated as a cause of bacterial meningitis.[80,111-113] Anesthesia providers should wear face masks when placing invasive catheters or needles, including into the spinal, epidural, or central venous spaces to reduce the risk of droplet transmission of infectious agents.

Airborne Transmission

Airborne transmission occurs when infectious particles are carried in the air and remain infective over time and distance, such as when infected droplets dry into much smaller particles called droplet nuclei or when small infectious particles (i.e., spores) are created. These small (<5 µm particles) are more likely to travel into the lower respiratory tract and cause severe infection. Patients with suspected airborne infections should be placed in a negative pressure rooms with specific air filtration requirements. All health care workers taking care of patients on airborne precautions should wear N95 or higher-level respirators.[80,87] These respirators must filter particles of 0.3 µm or greater in size with at least 95% efficiency. A tight mask fit is essential to proper mask function, and for this reason employers are required to perform respirator mask fit testing during employee training and periodically thereafter.[88]

Microorganisms transmitted via the airborne route include *Mycobacterium tuberculosis (TB)*, rubeola virus (causing measles), and varicella-zoster virus (causing chicken pox).[80]

TB is the result of infection with *M. tuberculosis*, an acid-fast bacillus that has caused disease in humans for more than 4000 years. Infection with *M. tuberculosis* occurs when a person inhales small infected airborne particles containing the bacterium. These particles, called droplet nuclei, are 1 to 5 µm in size and can remain airborne for prolonged periods, spreading throughout a room or building.[88] The risk of infection with *M. tuberculosis* varies with proximity to a source and duration of exposure. Anesthesiologists are at particularly high risk for TB exposure because bronchoscopy and endotracheal intubation have been reported as the two highest-risk procedures leading to skin test conversion in health sector workers.[89,114]

In otherwise healthy individuals who have been infected with *M. tuberculosis*, the disease is usually contained by the immune system in 2 to 12 weeks, when immunologic tests for TB will become positive,[88] although the bacteria can remain in the body for years, a condition referred to as latent TB. Latent TB is asymptomatic and is not infectious. Five to 10% of people who are infected with *M. tuberculosis* go on to develop active TB over the course of their lifetime.[115] The risk of developing active TB after infection with *M. tuberculosis* is much higher in those with a compromised immune system, such as persons with HIV or diabetes or undergoing immunosuppressive therapy.[88] Although most TB is curable if properly treated, untreated TB can lead to death in more than 50% of cases within 5 years.[35] Currently, the World Health Organization estimates that 1.7 billion people, approximately one-fourth of the world's population, are infected with *M. tuberculosis*.[115] Ninety-five percent of TB cases and deaths occur in developing countries.

In the United States, there were 9287 new cases of TB reported in 2016, with an incidence of 2.9 cases per 100,000 persons.[116] The incidence of TB in the United States has been declining after a surge in the 1990s, related to infection control measures put in place by the CDC.[88] All health care settings must have a TB infection-control program to identify and treat persons with TB, educate and screen health care workers at risk for contracting TB, develop environmental controls such as isolation rooms and negative pressure ventilation systems, and implement respiratory protection programs to reduce health care worker exposure risk.[88]

The commonly used tuberculin skin test (purified protein derivative) provides a qualitative measure of TB exposure. A newer quantitative test for TB is available that can test for atypical organisms but requires a blood sample.[88] All health care workers at high risk for exposure to TB should be skin tested at the time of employment and retested annually for a new exposure. A two-step test is recommended for anyone who tests negative more than 1 year after a prior test or TB exposure because latent TB infections can result in initial false-negative results from waning of the delayed type hypersensitivity response. The first test will "boost" the response, leading to a positive result with the second test in those with a true exposure.[88]

Health care workers who have a newly positive tuberculin skin test need to be screened for active TB with a clinical evaluation and a chest radiograph. If active TB is diagnosed, treatment according to recommended guidelines should begin immediately. Disease reporting laws generally require notification of local or state health departments within 24 hours of an active TB diagnosis. If active disease is excluded, drug therapy for latent TB infection is recommended for health care workers, in consultation with occupational health and infectious disease physicians. Standard drug regimens for treatment of latent TB are 6 to 9 months of isoniazid or 4 months of rifampin.[88] Those with a previous history of liver injury may not be good candidates for treatment of latent TB infection. Latent TB is not infectious, even if untreated, and should not preclude the anesthesiologist from engaging in patient care.

Complex Transmission

Microorganisms are commonly transmitted by more than just one route. For example, respiratory syncytial virus is most commonly transmitted via contact but can also be transmitted via droplets,[80,117] necessitating health care workers to use PPE to guard against both forms of transmission. Therapies commonly used for respiratory support, such as noninvasive positive pressure ventilation, have been implicated in the aerosol dispersion of respiratory diseases such as influenza.

Aerosol dispersion of infectious particles normally transmitted via droplet or contact transmission was a hallmark of the severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) viral outbreak that occurred between 2003 and 2004. SARS was a respiratory disease with a reported 6% mortality rate.[80] In some centers, up to 50% of the cases of SARS were in health care workers who had cared for patients with SARS.[25] Endotracheal intubation, tracheal suctioning, and care for patients on noninvasive positive pressure ventilation were identified as risk factors for health care worker infection.[80,105,118]

TABLE 88.5 Bloodborne Pathogens

	Risk of Seroconversion After Percutaneous Exposure*	Progression to Chronic Disease
Hepatitis B	6-30%**	5% of immunocompetent adults
Hepatitis C	0.5-2%	75-85%
HIV	0.3%	100%

*Risk varies depending on type of exposure and infectivity of the host.
**In those without serologic immunity.
Risks of seroconversion are related to: depth of exposure, viral load of patient, type of exposure (hollow-bore needle highest risk), presence of visible blood on the needle.

Bloodborne Organisms

Anesthesiologists are at constant risk of needlestick or other sharps injuries or injuries where blood or other serum-derived fluids from a patient could come in contact with nonintact skin or mucosal surfaces. The risk that accidental exposure to blood or body fluids will result in infectious transmission varies with the type of exposure (percutaneous being the highest risk), the instrument of exposure (hollow bore needles are higher risk than suture needles), the depth of needle penetration, the infectious agent, and the quantity of infectious particles a health care worker is exposed to. After an occupational exposure, the area should be washed with soap and water. Use of antiseptics or attempting to express fluid from the wound site has not been shown to be effective at reducing the rate of infectious transmission.[119] PEP may be recommended to reduce the risk of seroconversion. HBV, hepatitis C virus (HCV), and HIV are the three bloodborne infectious agents that pose the greatest occupational risk to the anesthesiologist (Table 88.5).[85]

HBV is a cause of acute viral hepatitis that is acquired by percutaneous or mucosal contact with infected blood or body fluids. Importantly, HBV can survive outside of the body for up to 7 days, and even needles without any visible blood can be infectious.[119,120] In unvaccinated individuals, the risk of seroconversion after percutaneous exposure to HBV varies from 6% to 30%, depending on the infectivity of the source and the type of contact with serum.[121,122] More than 50% of acute infections are asymptomatic, but signs of acute infection include fever, jaundice, fatigue, and abdominal pain. Rarely, acute HBV infection can lead to fulminant hepatitis. In adults, the virus is cleared completely after initial infection in up to 95% of cases.[120] However, chronic HBV can cause cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. Liver disease is the cause of death in 25% of those chronically infected with HBV.[120]

In the United States, there are approximately 20,000 new cases of HBV infection per year and an estimated 850,000 to 2.2 million people living with chronic hepatitis B infection.[123] Globally, there are nearly 900,000 HBV-related deaths every year. Before the introduction of a hepatitis B vaccine in the 1980s, HBV was a significant occupational hazard for anesthesiologists. One multicenter study of anesthesia residents in the 1980s found that 17.8% of 267 tested residents showed serologic evidence of exposure to HBV.[124] The availability of a vaccine has dramatically changed the epidemiology and occupational risk of HBV. The number of HBV infections in health care workers declined by 98% between 1982 and 2010.[119]

Health care workers are strongly encouraged to complete a series of three injections of hepatitis B vaccine. OSHA requires that health care facilities provide the vaccine free of cost.[125] Those who refuse hepatitis B vaccination must sign a statement declining the vaccine. Because immunity can wane over time and some people do not respond completely to the series, serologic testing for anti–hepatitis B surface antigen after vaccination and revaccination if immunity is not present may be part of an occupational health strategy at many hospitals.[119]

In the case of an accidental exposure, the source patient, if known, should be tested for HBV, in accordance with laws regarding informed consent. In those health care workers who have had a three-dose vaccine series and who have documented immunity by serologic testing, there is no need to test the source patient for HBV and no postexposure management is necessary.[119] If the health care worker does not have evidence of serologic immunity, the worker should be tested for immunity. In those without immunity and those who have not been vaccinated, hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) can be administered as PEP, together with the hepatitis B vaccine, if indicated.[119] HBIG will provide temporary protection from HBV for 3 to 6 months.[119]

HCV, like HBV, is a bloodborne virus that causes acute viral hepatitis. However, unlike HBV, HCV is not transmitted efficiently through percutaneous exposure to infected blood. The incidence of seroconversion after accidental percutaneous exposure to HCV varies but is estimated to be between 0.5% and 2%.[126] Of those who are exposed to HCV and develop acute infection, the infection is cleared in only 15% to 25% of cases.[126] The majority of infections progress to a chronic stage, and 5% to 20% of infections cause cirrhosis over the long term.[126]

In the United States, there were 2967 cases of acute HCV reported in 2016. Three to 4 million people in the United States have chronic HCV.[123] Unfortunately, there is no vaccine or PEP available for HCV, but there are effective treatments, including direct-acting antiviral agents, which can lead to complete clearance of infection in more than 90% of patients who are treated.[127]

Because HCV is treatable, health care workers who have an accidental exposure to HCV should be tested for anti-HCV within 48 hours of an exposure. All those tested without evidence of prior exposure should have repeat HCV RNA testing 3 weeks or greater from the time of initial exposure. If there is evidence of HCV infection, the health care worker should be referred for expert monitoring and treatment, if the primary infection is not cleared.

Accessing multidose vials for multiple patients, particularly propofol vials, has been linked to the transmission of HBV and HCV in many health care–associated outbreaks. In a 2006 high-profile case, five cases of HBV and six cases of HCV were linked to a single anesthesiologist at an endoscopy center, who was found to have used a syringe that had been in contact with a chronically infected patient to access a multiuse propofol vial, contaminating it.[128] Subsequent use of the propofol vial in other patients resulted in the transmission of HBV and HCV. Safe injection practices are part of standard infection precautions. The CDC recommends that vials should never be entered with a used syringe, even with a new needle or cannula. Medication vials in the immediate patient treatment area should always be single use.[80,85]

HIV is an RNA retrovirus that is spread through blood or serum-derived fluid. Once introduced into a host, HIV binds to cells with a CD4+ surface antigen (such as helper T lymphocytes) and replicates by integrating its viral DNA into the host cell DNA to establish a persistent infection.[129] According to statistics from the Joint United Nations Program on HIV/AIDS, in 2016 there were approximately 36.7 million people with HIV, with the most affected region being sub-Saharan Africa. HIV is mostly transmitted from person to person through unprotected anal or vaginal intercourse. HIV can also be transmitted from mother to child or through sharing or accidental exposure to an HIV contaminated needle.

If a health care worker has a percutaneous exposure to HIV, the risk of infectious transmission is low, approximately 0.3%. The risk of transmission after mucous membrane exposure (such as being splashed in the eyes or mouth with infected blood) is even lower (approximately 0.09%).[130] Injuries from patients with higher viral loads, use of hollow-bore needles, and deeper injuries are more likely to lead to HIV transmission.

The acute phase of HIV infection follows 3 to 6 weeks after exposure, with a nonspecific, febrile viral syndrome similar to influenza infection or mononucleosis that lasts 2 to 6 weeks.[129] The infection then enters an asymptomatic phase that can last for many years before the appearance of signs of immunodeficiency. Antibody screening tests for HIV will be positive in most patients by 8 weeks after the initial infection.[129]

After a high-risk exposure to an HIV-infected patient, health care workers should immediately contact their onsite occupational health department for postexposure management. The Clinician Consultation Center PEPline service offers free clinician advice on the risk of disease transmission and initiation of PEP.[130] Following an accidental occupational exposure, the source patient should be tested for HIV status with a rapid HIV test, observing local regulations regarding consent for HIV testing. Rapid HIV tests are considered sensitive and specific enough by the CDC to determine the need for PEP without additional testing.[131]

PEP with antiretroviral drugs is available and is most effective when given as soon as possible after the exposure, usually within 72 hours.[50] The decision to use PEP is nuanced and is based on the likelihood of exposure (i.e., if the source is known to have HIV, PEP is more strongly recommended versus if the source has an unknown status or the exposure was from an unknown source such as a sharps box). PEP can always be started and then discontinued after more information is obtained or expert consultation is available. A full course of PEP most commonly consists of a 28-day, three-drug antiretroviral regimen of tenofovir, emtricitabine, and raltegravir or dolutegravir. The most common side effect of

PEP is gastrointestinal upset, with fatigue, headache, and insomnia also contributing to poor PEP adherence. Tenofovir can cause renal toxicity and is relatively contraindicated in those with impaired renal function.

Regardless of whether PEP is initiated, the CDC recommends reevaluating exposed health care workers within 72 hours and, at a minimum, follow-up HIV testing of the exposed health care worker at 6 weeks, 12 weeks, and 6 months after exposure.[131] A systematic review of PEP found that the risk of HIV infection was 89% lower among animals receiving PEP after an exposure to HIV than those who did not receive PEP.[132] One small retrospective study of the use of zidovudine alone for PEP in health care workers exposed to HIV showed that the use of PEP resulted in a risk reduction of 81% for HIV seroconversion.[133]

Emerging Diseases

Occasionally, novel or previously nonvirulent infectious agents shift or become more pathogenic, creating anxiety and uncertainty among the public and the health care sector. In the presence of such outbreaks, medical centers must have plans and procedures in place to contain infectious agents, educate workers, and protect them from infection.

Prion diseases, caused by abnormal pathogenic agents able to induce misfolding of normal cellular proteins in the brain, lead to an incurable progressive neurodegenerative disease that usually results in death within 1 year of symptom onset. Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD), which caused approximately 500 deaths in the United States in 2016, is sporadic or familial in 95% of cases.[134] However, there have been occurrences of iatrogenic transmission of CJD through human-derived growth hormone, dural and corneal grafts, and the use of contaminated neurosurgical equipment.[80] Fortunately, since the implementation of routine sterilization practices, there have been no equipment-related cases[135] and, in the United States, no cases have been linked to percutaneous exposure or bloodborne transmission.[80] Variant CJD (vCJD) is a separate degenerative disorder caused by the same agent responsible for bovine spongiform encephalopathy (mad cow disease) in cows. vCJD transmission has largely been linked to the ingestion of contaminated meat in the United Kingdom; however, there were two reported cases of bloodborne transmission of vCJD.[80] SP should be used when caring for patients with suspected or confirmed prion disease. There are special guidelines for the reprocessing of surgical equipment used in patients with prion disease available through the World Health Organization.

Ebola is one of a group of viruses, including Marburg, Lassa, dengue, and yellow fever, that causes viral hemorrhagic fever syndromes.[80] Between 2014 and 2016, and again in 2018, in West Africa there were outbreaks of Ebola virus disease (EVD), with at least 28,652 cases of Ebola and 11,325 suspected deaths.[135a] EVD is transmitted readily to health care workers and is acquired through direct contact (through broken skin or mucus membranes such as the eyes, nose, or mouth) with blood or body fluids from an infected person but not via aerosol droplets.[80] The CDC recommends that all health care workers caring for patients with EVD use an N95 mask or higher respirator in addition to full contact and droplet precautions, to prevent accidental exposure of a mucus membrane to contaminated body fluid. Health care workers caring for patients with viral hemorrhagic fevers should go through special training on donning and doffing PPE, supervised by a trained observer to ensure that equipment is safely removed without contaminating the surrounding area.

Substance Use Disorders

Medical personnel treat patients suffering from substance use disorders (SUDs) every day. The psychiatric and social impacts are evident. Associated medical conditions such as HCV, HIV, bacteremia, and endocarditis require the highest level of care. Health care workers are not spared from this family of diseases. The Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME) Common Program Requirements state that residents in anesthesiology understand their role in the recognition of impairment; however, recent work by Warner and associates has demonstrated that the problem may in fact be increasing and that the lives of promising young physicians are lost every year due to the use of drugs.[136,137] Some of the factors thought to lead to SUDs in health care personnel include access to potent substances, exposure to a high stress environment, long hours, variable shifts, and a culture of self-medication. Detection of SUDs is difficult because work may be the last area to suffer. Self-policing has been the main mode of detection, but organizations are currently incorporating more objective measures such as surveillance of medical records and drug testing. Timely and compassionate intervention is critical when an individual is suspected of performing under conditions of impairment, especially with SUDs, which threatens the safety of the resident, as well as that of the patient. Comprehensive treatment is critical for those diagnosed with an SUD.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The incidence of SUDs including alcohol abuse among anesthesia personnel is the same as that in the general population, 10% to 20%. The incidence of misuse, abuse, or dependence on drugs other than alcohol among anesthesiologists has remained consistent over the years, at 1% to 2%.[138-141] A survey of Canadian residency program directors revealed a similar rate among residents, at 1.6%.[142] Bell and associates surveyed 2500 practicing nurse anesthetists and reported an incidence of 9.8%.[143] A lower rate was reported for fellows (0.4%). The problem of SUDs among anesthesia personnel is not limited to the United States, because studies in Australia, New Zealand, and Brazil[144] document similar results.[145-147]

The most common substance misused by anesthesia personnel has traditionally been opioids, as indicated in multiple studies (Table 88.6).[137-140,145-147] Over the past several years there has been an increase in the abuse of other drugs, including propofol, ketamine, and remifentanil, as well as volatile anesthetics.[148]

Since its introduction in 1986, the incidence of propofol abuse appears to be increasing. In a 2007 survey of 126 academic anesthesiology training programs, Wischmeyer and associates[149] reviewed 25 cases of propofol abuse and determined an incidence of 0.1% per decade, a fivefold increase from a previous study by Booth et al.[140]

TABLE 88.6 Most Common Drugs of Abuse

Study (Year)	Cohort (Years)	Most Used Substances
Ward (1980)	289 anesthesiology programs in United States 1970-1980	Meperidine Fentanyl Morphine Diazepam Other Alcohol
Menk (1990)	159 anesthesiology programs in United States 1975-1989	Parenteral opioids Diazepam Alcohol Inhalational agents
Weeks (1993)	Anesthesiology training programs in Australia and New Zealand 1981-1991	Opioids Cannabis Cocaine Alcohol Benzodiazepines Barbiturates
Bell (1999)	2500 Actively practicing certified registered nurse anesthetists in United States 1999	Benzodiazepines Propofol Inhalational agents Opioids Dissociative drugs (ketamine)
Booth (2002)	Academic anesthesiology programs July 1990-July 1996 (residents) July 1990-June 1997 (staff)	Fentanyl Sufantanil Cocaine Nitrous oxide Meperidine Midazolam Diazepam Ketamine Halothane Propofol Others
Fry (2005)	Anesthetists in Australia and New Zealand (128 anesthesiology departments) 1994-2003	Opioids Induction agents Benzodiazepines Alcohol Inhalational agents
Palhares-Alves (2012)	Anesthesiologists treated in a reference program in Brazil 2002-2009	Opioids Benzodiazepines Alcohol Marijuana Amphetamines Cocaine/Crack
Warner (2013)	Anesthesiology training records from ABA, DANS, NDI 1975-2010	Opioids Alcohol Marijuana/Cocaine Benzodiazepines Propofol
Fry (2015)	Australian and New Zealand anesthesia trainees 1981-2013	Opioids Propofol Benzodiazepines Alcohol Recreational drugs
Zuleta-Alarcon (2017)	Literature search on PubMed prior to April 11, 2016. Ovid MEDLINE search 1946-April 11, 2016, Anesthesia care providers. PubMed keywords: anesthesiology, anesthesia personnel, AND substance-related disorders. Ovid keywords: anesthesiology, OR anesthesia, OR nurse anesthetist, OR anesthesia care provider, OR perioperative nursing, AND substance-related disorders	Nonopioid anesthetic drugs Propofol Benzodiazepines Inhalational anesthetics Ketamine

ABA, American Board Association; *DANS*, Disciplinary Action Notification Service; *NDI*, National Death Index; *OR*, operating room.

(Table, Study Characteristics) Modified from Zuleta-Alarcon, A, Coffman JC, Soghomonyan S, et al. Non-opioid anesthetic drug abuse among anesthesia care providers: a narrative view. *Can J Anesth/J Can Anesth*. 2017;64:169–184.

The incidence of death was 28%. Health care providers that abuse propofol tend to be female, have training as an anesthesiologist or nurse anesthetist, and work in the operating room theater.[150] Propofol abuse tends to present early in dramatic fashion such as a motor vehicle accident or other physical injury in the setting of acute intoxication.

Ketamine may make up approximately 2% to 4% of abused substances.[137,139] Ketamine causes hallucinations as well as calming effects.[148,151] The risk of death associated with ketamine may be less than opioids among impaired providers, but the acute impact of delusions, delirium, and confusion have the potential to result in injury. Long-term effects include memory impairment, attention dysfunction, tolerance, and flashbacks.

Inhalational anesthetic drug abuse comprises approximately 2% to 5% of misused substances among anesthesia providers.[137,139,146,148] A 2008 survey demonstrated that 22% of anesthesia training programs had at least one provider who had been impaired by inhalational anesthetics and that 26% of those died.[152] N_2O was the most commonly abused drug, followed by volatile anesthetics. Only 22% of those individuals who abused such anesthetics were ultimately able to return to work. The report noted that only 7% of the anesthesia departments had any pharmacy accounting for inhalational anesthetics.

Anesthesia providers may misuse benzodiazepines to relieve stress and to treat insomnia.[148] Benzodiazepines are the drug of choice for 5% to 15% of anesthesiologists impaired by SUD and are the drug of choice of impaired SRNAs.[137,139,143,145,146] Remifentanil was introduced in 1997 as an opioid with a rapid onset and rapid rate of degradation. Remifentanil does have typical opiate-like effects, but when compared with fentanyl, its significantly shorter duration of activity makes it less likely to be abused than fentanyl. Baylon et al. noted that remifentanil is unlikely to be used “on the street,” but if access to the medication and infusion pumps increases and addicts recognize minimal observable effects, abuse of the medication may increase.[153] Remifentanil abuse has been reportedly used by a resident as a foray into opioid abuse.[154]

ETIOLOGY

The underlying etiology of SUDs among anesthesia providers, who are presumably more intimately aware of the risks, remains undetermined. No study has clearly identified individual factors, and those often cited are not specific to the practice of anesthesiology. Risk factors for SUDs may be biologic, psychological, or occupational.[155]

Hiroi and Agatsuma surmise that certain individuals are more likely to transition from substance use to dependence if they are genetically susceptible based upon animal studies.[156]

A family history of SUDs has also been identified as a risk for relapse among addicted individuals.[157] Individuals receiving medical education within the United States had higher rates than those from other countries.[158]

Personality may play a role in the likelihood of developing SUD. Trinkoff and Storr studied the incidence of SUD among nurses and noted that those in emergency medicine and critical care had higher rates than other nursing specialties.[159] These areas of practice are like those in which anesthesiologists work.

Anesthesiologists directly obtain and administer medications to patients. A review of anesthesiologists treated for SUDs by the Medical Association of Georgia Impaired Physician Program concluded that 85% of residents in the program selected anesthesiology because of access to medications and drugs.[160] Emergency and critical care nurses,[159] and pharmacists also have access to medications and have high rates of SUDs.[161]

Anesthesiologists, like other physicians, often self-medicate rather than seeking appropriate medical care from their physician. Christie and colleagues reported in 1998 that more than 50% of prescription medications used by trainees were self-prescribed.[162] Unpredictable schedules, ease of access to medications, and knowledge of medical conditions were cited as potential causes of this behavior,[162] as may the lack of access to health care providers.[162,163] Fortunately, a study showed that the incidence of self-medication may be decreasing.[164]

IMPACT

Health care providers who suffer from SUDs generally divert their drugs from the health care facility at which they work. The National Association of Drug Diversion Investigators defines drug diversion as “any criminal act or deviation that removes a prescription drug from its intended path from the manufacturer to the patient. This can include the outright theft of the drugs, or it can take the form of a variety of deceptions such as doctor shopping, forged prescriptions, counterfeit drugs, and internal smuggling.”[165]

SUDs in health care providers affect their well-being, their career, and their family. Individuals with SUDs have high rates of divorce and marital discord. The cost of rehabilitation and follow-up care is significant. Problems with medical licensing are common. In addition, the individual with an SUD in a sensitive position may carry the stigmata of impairment. The death rate for anesthesiologists with SUDs is 9% to 15%.[138,139,158]

It is generally believed that the impact of SUD is largely limited to the individual with the disease, but an increasing number of reports of injury to patients is being published. Shaefer and Perz reported on public outbreaks of communicable diseases such as HCV, HBV, and other organisms in hospital settings where health care providers abusing drugs placed patients at risk.[166] These situations arose because of providers diverting drugs from the work environment for their own use.

PREVENTION AND DETECTION

Prevention of SUDs among health care providers has been largely limited to education on the impact of drug use. These efforts may include presentation of videos demonstrating the death of a promising young resident physician and the impact on his family. Individuals with a history of SUDs are often invited to share their stories of drug use, detection, and recovery. Members of the state Physicians Health Services are often invited to present resources to

TABLE 88.7 Behaviors and Indicators that Could Indicate Substance Use Disorder

Potential Indicators at Work	Potential Indicators at Home	Physical
Changes in behavior (wide mood swings, anger, euphoria, gossip by others)	Withdrawal from family and friends	Pinpoint pupils
Progressive increases in narcotic use for anesthetic management	Changes in behavior, mood swings, anger	Diaphoresis, tremors
Recurrent documentation errors related to medications	Frequent, unexplained illness	Odor of alcohol on breath
Preference for working alone	Risk behaviors—gambling, extramarital affairs	Weight loss
Frequent requests for bathroom breaks	Decrease in sexual drive	Wearing of long-sleeved gowns (to hide needle tracks or prevent withdrawal chills)
Unusual willingness to provide breaks for others or work additional shifts/calls	Finding of drugs and syringes at home	
Frequent appearances in hospital when not on call	Increased use of alcohol	
Falling asleep during rounds, in OR	Increase interactions with individuals who use illicit substances	
Unexplained absences		
Difficulty contacting when on call		
Excessive postoperative pain in patients		
Direct observation of use		
Sudden death		

OR, Operating Room

support physicians. Lutsky et al. reported that in 1993, only 15% of anesthesiologists could report receiving any education on impairment during their residency.[167] Booth and colleagues reported that, despite enhanced education over the course of their study, the incidence of SUDs had not decreased.[140]

Detection of SUDs has traditionally relied upon colleagues observing and reporting performance characteristics that could indicate SUDs (Table 88.7). However, many health care professionals will not report or even seek assistance for colleagues who may be impaired. In an investigation of reporting behaviors, only 64% of physicians agreed with the statement, "Physicians should report all instances of significantly impaired or incompetent colleagues to their professional society, hospital, clinic and/or relevant authority."[168] Multiple reasons for not being willing to report were cited, including the perception that it is not one's responsibility to report or a fear of retribution for reporting. Because reliance on observation by colleagues and reporting has proven unreliable and death is too often the initial presenting factor for SUD, institutions are starting to use new measures, including anesthesia record surveillance, vigorous control and testing of returned substances, and drug testing of providers.

Medical record surveillance is the practice of comparing the anesthetic record to the medications that have been dispensed for patient use. Pharmacists or other healthcare personnel manually review the record and compare documentation with the amount of medication returned. Inconsistencies may indicate medication diversion from the patient. Discrepancies in practice patterns may also be detected by record surveillance. Epstein and colleagues retrospectively reviewed medical records through a commercial drug-dispensing system to evaluate discrepancies that could indicate diversion.[169] Factors such as high use of opiates, excessive medication wastage, and late transactions on canceled cases were not indicative of diversion, whereas transactions late in the day after completion of cases and transactions that occurred at locations different from where the procedure occurred were associated with episodes of diversion. These authors posited that a surveillance scheme used in real time might identify episodes of diversion earlier than traditional behavioral observation and reporting methods, an assertion they later validated prospectively.[170]

Most organizations use the practice of witnessed wasting of controlled substances. Such practice involves a second individual observing and documenting that controlled substances remaining after a case are wasted. This system relies upon the integrity of several steps: that the elimination of the entire substance occurs, that both providers are honest, and that the wasted substance is a controlled substance at the appropriate concentration. Leaders at the Mayo Clinic recognized these potential weaknesses and developed a vigorous system to prevent diversion. The system requires that all unused substances are returned to a secure, locked box. The box is returned to the pharmacy, where the amount returned is reconciled with the dispensing record and anesthesia record. Random samples are periodically sent for toxicologic analysis. This process occurs under video surveillance to prevent diversion by the pharmacy department.[141] This system has successfully identified multiple health care providers and other personnel diverting substances.

Two major events resulted in widespread use of urine drug screening to reduce the incidence of SUDs. During an investigation after an aircraft accident aboard the USS Nimitz in the early 1980s, it was discovered that nearly 50% of the ground crew tested positive for illicit substances.[171] In addition, the passage of the Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988 required that all federal contractors and all federal grantees establish drug-free workplaces to receive a grant of contract from the U.S. government.[172] The act included the provision that individuals in safety-sensitive professions could be subject to drug testing. The Department of Anesthesia, Critical Care, and Pain Medicine of the Massachusetts General Hospital (MGH) first reported the feasibility of drug testing in anesthesiologists 2008.[173] The incidence of SUDs prior to implementation of testing was 1% among all residents and 2.2% among first-year residents. There were no cases of SUDs reported within the first 4 years of implementation of the program, although the results were not statistically significant. In 2010 Tetzlaff and associates reported their experience developing an SUD prevention program at the Cleveland Clinic's Anesthesiology Institute.[174] The clinic implemented a comprehensive substance abuse prevention protocol that included randomized urine toxicology screening and "for cause" testing that would be initiated in the event of a significant decline in performance. Assessment of the prevention program is ongoing.

Implementation of a drug-testing program is not without challenges and concerns. Senior physicians may opine that their years without a problem indicate that they are without risk and should not be subject to an invasive test without cause. Although Alexander and colleagues reported that the highest rate of SUDs among anesthesiologists occurred within the first 5 years after medical school, the risk is never eliminated and extends into the senior years of one's career.[175] Some argue that if drug testing is not a condition on a contract than it cannot be required. Initially, participation in the MGH drug-testing program was voluntary, but testing became mandatory for all physician members in 2005.

False-positive results are a legitimate concern for those tested, as well as for those administering the program. For example, one of two false-positive tests at MGH was likely due to the consumption of the poppy seeds in a bagel eaten the morning of testing. It was found that the testing threshold for morphine (300 ng/dL) was set far lower than the federal level of 2000 ng/dL.[176] In the second event, the initial enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay reported the presence of ketamine, whereas confirmatory gas chromatography/mass spectroscopy reported a result that was indeterminant. Policy dictates that a second sample is collected at the original test. This second sample was sent to another certified laboratory where a "negative" result was found.[176] Some test results may be positive due to legitimate medication use for which an individual has a valid prescription. A certified, unbiased Medical Review Officer trained to the standards of the Department of Health and Human Services Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration Center for Substance Abuse Prevention should review all results.[177]

INTERVENTION, TREATMENT, PROGNOSIS, AND REENTRY

SUDs curtail promising careers and claim the lives of anesthesiologists every year.[175] Studies have shown that death is the initial presentation in 9% to 16% of cases.[138,139,178] Residents who have an SUD during their training have a markedly increased risk of death after training compared with their colleagues without an SUD.[141]

When an SUD is identified or suspected, it is critical that concerned and compassionate colleagues intervene to prevent injury or harm to patients and to help the impaired individual. An organized, structured, and supportive plan to present the concerns to the impaired individual is critical. Such an "intervention" is more likely to maintain the confidence of the individual than a "confrontation" where the individual feels that guilt is presumed.[179] A suggested approach used at MGH is that a consistent team including the director of the SUD prevention program, another department leader, and a designated psychiatrist familiar with SUDs and the department's policy should be involved in all interventions. Other individuals such as a mentor or certified registered nurse anesthetist (CRNA) leader may be included when appropriate. The intervention team discusses each case before meeting with the individual. The individual is removed from clinical duty in a confidential manner. The issues of concern are presented in a supportive and nonconfrontational manner. If additional drug testing is indicated, the individual is escorted for testing. In the case of admitted or demonstrated SUD, treatment is required. Should an individual refuse to seek care, an immediate report to the Board of Registration in Medicine is made. When it is uncertain whether an SUD is the cause of impaired performance, a medical leave of absence is granted pending completion of evaluation and testing. In either circumstance, access to controlled substances and the operating room is restricted, pending outcome of an investigation.

It is critical that factors other than SUDs be considered, because the "impaired" anesthesiologist is not necessarily an "addicted" anesthesiologist.[180] Other issues that may lead to inadequate or unsafe performance may be depression, anxiety, financial difficulties, and family struggles, and other medical illness may manifest in similar ways to SUDs. Treatment and recovery after a diagnosis of an SUD is complicated for professionals whose livelihood involves daily exposure to the substances which they misuse. In a report by the California Physicians Diversion Program,[181] anesthesiologists made up 5% of the physicians in California yet 17.4% of those in the program. The recovery rate was 69%, with the majority reentering anesthesiology (96%). The relapse rate among those using opioids was 16%. Paris and Canavan studied anesthesiologists compared with physicians from other specialties.[182] The relapse rate was high (40.6%) but like other specialties, relapse was less likely when the individual entered another specialty. In a 5-year longitudinal study of physicians enrolled in physician health programs (PHPs) between 1995 and 2001, a subset of 102 anesthesiologists of the 904 physicians was independently analyzed.[183] Anesthesiologists primarily enrolled in the recovery programs due to opioid abuse, whereas alcohol was the most common drug of abuse for other physicians. Compared with other physicians, anesthesiologists had no higher rate of mortality, relapse, or disciplinary action during the period of recovery. The study's conclusions are limited because only 16 of the 48 PHPs elected to participate because of lack of resources or regulatory impediments to participation. Factors associated with increased risk of relapse specifically among physicians have not been studied well. Domino and colleagues reviewed risk factors for physicians in the Washington Physicians Health Program in 2005.[157] Among a cohort of 292 health professionals enrolled in the program, 74 had at least one relapse (25%). Those with a family history of SUD, as well as individuals whose drug of misuse was a major opioid and who had a coexisting psychiatric disorder, had higher risks of relapse. Individuals with all three risk factors—family history, a coexisting psychiatric illness, and abuse of a major opioid—had the highest relapse risk.

States, hospitals, and departments often rely on the help of PHPs to guide the recovery of physicians impaired by any condition, particularly SUDs. PHPs are not addiction programs, but they do provide active case management and guidance through the diagnosis, treatment, recovery, and reentry process. Individuals with SUDs are required to sign contracts with a PHP and agree to treatment (usually inpatient), follow-up, monitoring, and other stipulations during recovery. PHPs offer a temporary safe haven during the initial phases of management. PHPs work closely with state medical boards to ensure that a physician is compliant with requirements of a comprehensive recovery process.[184]

Specialists in the treatment of physicians with SUDs have identified six lessons that appear to promote long-term recovery through PHPs[185]: (1) Successful programs promote a zero-tolerance policy for any use of alcohol or other nonmedical drugs. (2) Evaluation of individuals should be complete, comprehensive, and patient-focused rather than merely repeating the same practices for every single patient. (3) Frequent random drug testing for both alcohol and drugs serves as a constant reminder of the obligation of the individual being treated. (4) PHPs use leverage with medical boards, hospitals, and medical groups, which may serve as a deterrent to relapse. (5) PHPs define what constitutes a relapse and act in a quick and certain way with meaningful consequences. (6) Lastly, those in recovery working through PHPs generally must be involved in 12-step programs such as Alcoholics Anonymous or Narcotics Anonymous.

The use of naltrexone may reduce the chance of relapse among anesthesiologists in recovery. The state of Florida mandates that anesthesiologists referred for opiate disorders are contractually required to use naltrexone for 2 years.[186] Naltrexone has side effects such as headache, fatigue, insomnia, anxiety, and nervousness, all conditions that can impair performance. In a small prospective study, 11 anesthesiologists treated with naltrexone were compared with 11 controls: only one individual in the naltrexone program relapsed while 8 of 11 (72%) in the untreated group relapsed. Those on naltrexone also had higher rates of return to the practice of anesthesiology.

Whether SUD residents in anesthesia are returned to their training programs or are retrained in either a different specialty or another career is even more controversial. In a review of outcomes for residents treated for chemical dependency, most program directors (80%) had at least one impaired trainee and 19% reported a pretreatment fatality.[187] A high percentage (92%) of trainees attempted reentry into anesthesiology, but only 46% ultimately completed training. The rate of death was 9%. A survey of anesthesiology residency training programs in 2007 showed that nearly two thirds of program directors had at least one resident who required treatment for SUDs.[188] The relapse rate after treatment was 29%, and death occurred in 10%. Despite these statistics, 43% believed that residents should be allowed to continue their training. Bryson and Levine conducted an intensive 12-month posttreatment program involving an anesthesia simulator followed by gradual reintroduction to the clinical practice of anesthesia.[189] Five residents participated in the program, and three (60%) successfully finished their training program. Two of those individuals remained in recovery at 3 and 6 years, whereas one relapsed at 9 years.

The decision whether to return or retrain is difficult, and circumstances vary on an individual basis. Residents often do not have the social and financial supports of graduated physicians, and they are exposed to the substances of risk for perhaps 40 more years. In addition, their youth may predispose them to denial of the disease.

SUDs among anesthesiologists remain a problem. Enhanced education and substance control measures should continue. Other efforts such as drug testing should be explored. When an individual is suspected or found to have an SUD, a timely, compassionate, and professional intervention is necessary to ensure the safety of the individual and patients.

Fatigue

Excessive tiredness due to inadequate sleep, physical illness, or other causes can result in fatigue. In general, physicians are not able to compensate for loss of sleep or to recover from illnesses because of the requirements of their work environment to patient care issues or work structures. Fatigue may place patients at risk of injury, as well as impact the health and safety of anesthesiologists. Fatigue in trainees became a public concern with a case involving Libby Zion, a young woman whose unfortunate death was determined in court to be related to 36-hour duty periods worked by the physicians providing her care. Physicians should understand the causes of fatigue, the impact on patients and themselves, and the means to manage the challenges ever present in a difficult and unpredictable work environment.

INCIDENCE AND IMPACT

Few studies of the impact of fatigue have been performed in the population of providers involved in anesthesia care. Gravenstein and colleagues conducted a survey of anesthesiologists, residents, and CRNAs wherein residents and CRNAs noted that they occasionally worked beyond what they would consider their limitations and that they had made errors associated with fatigue.[190] Ten years later, Cao and colleagues evaluated the differences in performance during day and night shifts among residents. Residents had a more negative mood at night, although workload ratings and alarm response times were no different between the two

TABLE 88.8 Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education Duty Hour Rules and Modifications

2003 ACGME Duty Hour Standards	2017 ACGME Clinical Experience and Education Modifications
80-h weekly limit (averaged over 4 weeks)	Clinical work done from home must be counted toward the 80-h weekly maximum
10 h between work shifts (suggested)	All residents must have at least 14 h free of clinical work after 24 h of clinical assignments
Limit of 24 h of continuous duty plus 6 for transition of care	Clinical work for all residents must not exceed 24 h of continuous schedule clinical assignments
One day in 7 free from all obligations	
In-house call no more than every 3 nights	
Options for some programs to request 8 h additional time	Clinical work exceptions may be granted by the RRC up to a maximum of 88 h based on sound educational rationale
	Residents who have handed off work have the flexibility to remain at work in unusual circumstances for the benefit of patient care. Hours must count towards the 80-h work week

ACGME, Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education; *RRC*, Residency Review Committee.

shifts.[191] More recently, Husby and colleagues studied the impact of short- and intermediate-duration hospital calls on anesthesiologists.[192] Reaction times were significantly worse after 18-hour shifts, but not after shorter shifts. The incidence of adverse events has been found to be higher later in the day; the lowest rate of adverse events was found at 9:00 AM, whereas the highest rate was at 4:00 PM.[193]

The impact of fatigue on the safety of the physicians themselves may be significant. Extended work duration of interns is associated with increases in percutaneous injuries.[194] A lapse in concentration and fatigue were the most commonly cited contributing factors. Injury was more common during the night shift than during the day. Depression, fatigue, and sleepiness were associated with a higher likelihood of a motor vehicle incident in resident physicians.[195] The personal lives and well-being of trainees may also be impacted by sleep loss and fatigue. A study of 149 resident-physicians at five academic medical centers revealed that many residents perceived that sleep loss and fatigue had a major impact on their personal lives such that personal and social activities were deferred or postponed.[196]

Attempts to restrict duty hours have been implemented by the ACGME. The benefit of limitation of duty hours is unclear, and negative consequences on patient care and education may result. Early studies of the impact of duty hour restrictions demonstrated that when efforts were made to reduce sleep deprivation, medical errors were lower, as were patient hospital length of stay and laboratory tests ordered,[197] but this has not been a consistent finding, and the relationship between duty hour restrictions and quality of care remains controversial.[198]

GUIDELINES

Training for resident physicians requires a balance between the safety of both patients and residents, as well as assurance that optimal educational outcomes are achieved. The ACGME implemented duty hour restrictions for trainees in 2003 and updated these restrictions in 2011. At their core, the restrictions included an 80-hour weekly duty limit, 10 hours of rest between shifts, and no more than 24 hours of continuous duty with a limit of 6 hours for transition of care and education.[199] Many potential benefits were anticipated including improvements in patient care, improved resident quality of life and health, and decreased risk of personal harm due to fatigue.[200] At the time of implementation of duty hour restrictions, many physicians anticipated several unintended consequences, including discontinuity of care, an increased work burden on attending physicians, negative impact on professionalism and the perceptions of the profession, poor preparation for the realities of independent practice, a reduction in educational opportunities, and a major economic impact (Table 88.8).

Multiple studies have been performed on the impact of these changes. Ahmed and associates performed a systematic review of the effects of duty hour restrictions in surgery.[201] There was no significant improvement in patient safety. Their review found that wellness improved, and fatigue and burnout declined after implementation of the 2003 guidelines but further improvements were not seen after the 2011 modifications. The effects on education and training were either a worsening or no change. Written examination scores were unchanged, but passage of oral examinations decreased in surgery.

REQUIREMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The ACGME Program Requirements for Graduate Medical Education in Anesthesiology require inclusion of formal efforts to educate faculty and residents in the recognition of fatigue, alertness management, and fatigue mitigation. Programs are also required to ensure adequate sleep facilities and safe transportation options after duty.[202] The Association of Professional Sleep Societies' Committee on Catastrophes, Sleep, and Public Policy developed a consensus report concluding that human performance is at its most vulnerable period between 1:00 AM and 8:00 AM, with a less pronounced period from 2:00 PM to 6:00 PM (Table 88.9).[203] It is also known that sleep duration less than 7 hours affects cognitive performance involving vigilance, attention, cognitive processing speed, and working memory, and at least 7 to 8 hours are recommended per night.[204] Less sleep and patterns associated with chronic sleep deprivation are associated with even more impairment. Recommendations are in Table 88.9.

Researchers at the Mayo Clinic studied whether capping residents' patient census would improve the perception of workload among residents.[205] These changes led to improvements in ratings of workload appropriateness and conference attendance. Duty hour violations were

TABLE 88.9 Recommendations of the Association of Professional Sleep Societies

Observation	Recommendation
The time of 1 AM-8 AM constitutes a time span when human medical and performance catastrophes are far more likely to occur A second but less pronounced period from 2 PM to 6 PM constitutes a second period of vulnerability	Increased awareness is necessary. Policymakers are urged to consider relevant aspects of sleep physiology that affect performance.
Inadequate sleep, even as little as 1-2 h, can greatly exaggerate the tendency for error during the time zones of vulnerability	Programs should be developed to identify the signs of sleep-related error in vehicle operation and on the job, particularly in industries that have a responsibility to minimize accidents and effort for the sake of public health and safety
	Industries and services impacting public safety should address the physiologic needs of workers
	Attention should be given to identification of the least adaptive shiftwork schedules and to the implementation of schedules that promote health and safety

Modified from Mitler MM, Carskadon MA, Czeisler CA, et al. Catastrophes, sleep, and public policy: consensus report. *Sleep*. 1988;11:100–109.

decreased, as were patient readmissions, but other safety outcomes, such as the rate of rapid response team and “code blue” events, were unchanged.

Acknowledgment

The editors, publisher, and Dr. Christopher Choukalas thank Dr. Theodora Nicholau for her contribution to this chapter in the prior edition of this work. It has served as the foundation for the current chapter.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Yuki K, Eckenhoff RG. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(2):326.
2. Barker JP, Abdelatti MO. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52(11):1077.
3. National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. *Criteria for a Recommended Standard: Occupational Exposure to Anesthetic Gases and Vapors*; 1977.
4. Herzog-Niescery J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(6):1519.
5. Chaoul MM, et al. *Inflamm Res*. 2015;64(12):939.
6. Hoerauf KH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(4):925.
7. Bruce DBM. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:871.
8. Smith G, Shirley AW. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50(7):701.
9. Gambill AF, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1979;58(6):475.
10. Zacny JP, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82(1):153.
11. Janiszewski DJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(5):1149.
12. Beckman NJ, et al. *Drug Alcohol Depend*. 2006;81(1):89.
13. Vaisman AI. *Eksp Khir Anesteziol*. 1967;12(3):44.
14. Spence AA, et al. *JAMA*. 1977;238(9):955.
15. Tannenbaum TN, Goldberg RJ. *J Occup Med*. 1985;27(9):659.
16. Spence AA, Knill-Jones RP. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50(7):713.
17. Vessey MP. *Anaesthesia*. 1978;33(5):430.
18. Knill-Jones RP, et al. *Lancet*. 2:807.
19. Cohen EN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:343.
20. Rosenberg P, Kirves A. *Acta Anaesth Scand Suppl*. 1973;53:37.
21. Buring JE, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(3):325.
22. Burm AG. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2003;17(1):147.
23. Rosenberg PH, Vanttinnen H. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica*. 1973;22:202.
24. Axelsson G, Rylander R. *Int J Epidemiol*. 1982;11:250.
25. Tannenbaum TN, Goldberg RJ. *J Occup Med*. 1985;27:659.
26. Boivin JF. *Occup Environ Med*. 1997;54(8):541.
27. McGregor DG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(2):472.
28. McGregor DG. *ASA Newsletter*.
29. Maran NK-JRSA. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76(581P).
30. Teschke K, et al. 54:118.
31. Serkan Y, Çalbayram NÇ. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;35(C):326.
32. Szyfter K, et al. *J Appl Genet*. 2016;57(3):1.
33. Santovito A, et al. *J Biochem Mol Toxicol*. 2015;29(5):234.
34. Kanmura Y, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(3):693.
35. Mehrata M, et al. *J Environ Sci Health A Tox Hazard Subst Environ Eng*. 2016;51(10):805.
36. Bruce DL, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40(5):453.
37. Bruce DL. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74(6):1160.
38. Bruce DL, Stanley TH. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62(6):617.
39. Scapellato ML, et al. *Neurotoxicology*. 2008;29(1):116.
40. Trevisan A, Gori GP. *Am J Ind Med*. 1990;17(3):357.
41. Wiesner G, et al. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*. 2001;74(1):16.
42. Nayebzadeh A. *Industrial Health*. 2006;45:334.
43. Sessler DI, Badgwell JM. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(5):1083.
44. Occupational Safety and Health Administration. *Directorate of Technical Support and Emergency Management*. Washington D.C.: Anesthetic Gases: Guidelines for Workplace Exposures; 2000.
45. Maghshoudi B, et al. *J Biomed Phys Eng*. 2017;7(3):1.
46. Voelz GL. *Occup Health Saf*. 1982;51(7):34.
47. Occupationl Safety and Health Administration. Occupational safety and health standards: Toxic and hazardous substances, ionizing radiation. https://www.osha.gov/pls/oshaweb/owadisp.show_document?p_table=STANDARDS&p_id=10098.
48. Wrixon AD. *J Radiol Prot*. 2008;28.
49. Bushong SC. *Radiologic Science for the Technologist: Physics, Biology, and Protection*. 4th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1988.
50. Dagal A. *Curr Opin Anesthesio*. 2011;24(4):445.
51. Rhea EB, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(4):455.
52. Arii T, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;70(1):47.
53. Kiviniitty K, et al. *Health Physics*. 1980;38(3):419.
54. Kong Y, et al. *Radiat Prot Dosim*. 2015;163(2):181.
55. Crowhurst JA, et al. *JAC*. 2018;71(11):1246.
56. Athwal GS, et al. *J Hand Surg*. 2005;30(6):1310.
57. Norbash A, et al. *J Neurointerv Surg*. 2011;3(3):266.
58. Barker D. *Radiography*. 1978;44(518):45.
59. OSHA Technical Manual. Washington DC. https://www.osha.gov/dts/osta/otm/otm_vi/otm_vi_1.html.
60. Mohr H. *Med Biol Eng*. 1973;11(4):396.
61. Vaes B, et al. 2017;31(2):303.
62. Holmes JA. A summary of safety considerations for the medical and surgical practitioner. In: Apfelberg DB, ed. *Evaluation and Installation of Laser Systems*. New York: Springer-Verlag; 1987:69.
63. Chuang GS, et al. *JAMA Dermatol*. 2016;152(12):1320.
64. Lopez R, et al. *J Occup Environ Hyg*. 2015;12(5):309.
65. Lippert1 JF, et al. *J Occup Environ Hyg*. 2013;11(6):D69.
66. Byrne PO, et al. *J Hosp Infect*. 1987;9(3):265.
67. Ferenczy A, et al. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1990;75(1):114.
68. Garden JM, et al. *JAMA*. 1988;259(8):1199.
69. Ilmarinen T, et al. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 2012;269(11):2367.
70. Baggish MS, et al. *Lasers Surg Med*. 1991;11(3):197.
71. Hallmo P, Naess O. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 1991;248(7):425.
72. Okoshi K, et al. *Surg Today*. 2014;45(8):957.
73. Mowbray N, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2013;27(9):3100.
74. In SM, et al. *Br J Surg*. 2015;102(12):1581.
75. Steege AL, et al. *Am J Ind Med*. 2016;59(11):1020.
76. Nezhat C, et al. *Lasers Surg Med*. 1987;7(4):376.

77. Derrick JL, et al. *J Hosp Infect*. 2006;64(3):278.
78. Kunachak S, Sobhon P. *J Med Assoc Thai*. 1998;81(4):278.
79. Baggish MS, et al. *Lasers Surg Med*. 1988;8(3):248.
80. Siegel JD, et al. *AJIC: Am J Infect Control*. 2007;35(10):S164.
81. Boyce John M, Pittet Didier. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2002;51 (RR-16):1.
82. Scheithauer S, et al. *Am J Infect Control*. 2013;41(11):1001.
83. Silvia Munoz-Price L, et al. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2014;35(8):1056.
84. World Health Organization. *WHO Guidelines on Hand Hygiene in Health Care*; 2009. http://www.who.int/iris/handle/10665/44102.
85. ASA Committee on Occupational Health Task Force on Infection Control: Recommendations for infection control for the practice of anesthesiology (third edition). https://www.asahq.org/~/media/sites/asahq/files/public/resources/asa%20committees/recommendations%20for%20infection%20control%20for%20the%20practice%20of%20anesthesiology.pdf?la=en. Accessed December 28, 2017.
86. Goudra B. *AANA J*. 2014;82(5):363.
87. Lynne S, Chinn Raymond YW. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2003;52(RR-10):1.
88. Jensen Paul A, Lambert Lauren A. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2005;54(RR-17):1.
89. Tait AR. *Anesth. Analg*. 1997;85(2):444.
90. NIOSH ALERT. *Connecticut Nursing News*. 2000;73(1):8.
91. U.S. Department of Labor. *Occupational Safety and Health Administration: Occupational Exposure to Bloodborne Pathogens; Needlestick and Other Sharps Injuries; Final Rule: (29 CFR, Part 1910)*; 2001.
92. American College of Physicians. *OSHA Bloodborne Pathogens Requirement*; 2014. www.acponline.org/running_practice.
93. Jagger J, et al. *J Infect Public Health*. 2008;1(2):62.
94. Dement JM, et al. *Am J Ind Med*. 2004;46(6):637.
95. Ayas NT, et al. *JAMA*. 2006;296(9):1055.
96. Tanner J, Parkinson H. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;3:CD003087.
97. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. 1997;46(2):25.
98. Schillie S, et al. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2013;62(RR-10):1.
99. https://www.cdc.gov/infectioncontrol/guidelines/index.html. Accessed Jan 2018.
100. Shefer Abigail, et al. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2011;60(7):1.
101. Bolyard Elizabeth A, et al. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 1998;19(6):407.
102. Williams D, et al. *J Hosp Infect*. 2010;74(2):123.
103. MacCannell T, et al. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2011;32(10):939.
104. Weber DJ. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(suppl 1):S314.
105. Fowler RA, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2004;169(11):1198.
106. Grohskopf L, et al. Chapter 12: influenza. In: Hamborsky J, Kroger A, Wolfe S, eds. *Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases*. 13th ed. Washington D.C.: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 2015:187.
107. Grohskopf LA, et al. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2017;66(2):1.
108. Talbot TR, et al. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2010;31(10):987.
109. Tiwari T, et al, CDC National Immunization Program. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2005;54(RR-14):1.
110. Cohn AC, et al. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2013;62(RR-2):1.
111. Trautmann M, et al. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis*. 2002;21(1):43.
112. Couzigou C, et al. *J Hosp Infect*. 2003;53(4):313.
113. Baer ET. *Clin Infect Dis*. 2000;31(2):519.
114. Catanzaro A. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1982;125(5):559.
115. World Health Organization. Global Tuberculosis Report 2017. Geneva. Licence: CC BY-NCSA 3.0 IGO.
116. Schmit KM, et al. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. 2017;66(11):289.
117. Leclair JM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1987;317(6):329.
118. Hui DSC, et al. *Hong Kong Med J*. 2014;20(suppl 4):9.
119. Schillie S, et al. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. 2013;62(10):1.
120. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Chapter 10: Hepatitis B. In: Hamborsky J, Kroger A, Wolfe S, eds. *Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases*. Washington D.C.: Public Health Foundation; 2015:149–174.
121. Gerberding JL. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;332(7):444.
122. Díaz JC, Johnson LA. *Am J Infect Control*. 2016;44(12):1738.
123. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Surveillance for Viral Hepatitis – United States*; 2015.
124. Berry AJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1985;64(7):672.
125. Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Final rule. *Federal Register*. 2001;66(12):5318.
126. U S Public Health Service. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2001;50(RR-11):1.
127. Chung RT, et al. *Hepatology*. 2015;62(3):932.
128. Gutelius B, et al. *Gastroenterology*. 2010;139(1):163.
129. German Advisory Committee on Blood, Subgroup 'Assessment of Pathogens Transmissible by Blood'. *Transfus Med Hemother*. 2016;43(3):203.
130. http://nccc.ucsf.edu/clinical-resources/pep-resources/pep-quick-guide/. Accessed in January 2018.
131. Kuhar DT, et al. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2013;34(9):875.
132. Irvine C, et al. *Clin Infect Dis*. 2015;60(suppl 3):165.
133. Cardo DM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337(21):1485.
134. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. https://www.cdc.gov/prions/cjd/occurrence-transmission.html
135. Rutala WA, Weber DJ. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2010;31(2):107.
135a. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. https://www.cdc.gov/vhf/ebola/outbreaks/2014-west-africa/index.html. Updated 6/22/2016. Accessed 3/6/2018.
136. www.acgme.org. Accessed August 25, 2014.
137. Warner DO, et al. *JAMA*. 2013;310:2289.
138. Ward CF, et al. *JAMA*. 1983;250:922.
139. Menk EJ, et al. *JAMA*. 1990;263:3060.
140. Booth JV, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1024.
141. Berge KH, et al. *Mayo Clin Proceed*. 2012;87:674.
142. Boulis S, et al. *Can J Anesth*. 2015;62:964.
143. Bell DM, et al. *AANA J*. 1999;67:133.
144. Palhares-Alves HN, et al. *Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2012;62:356.
145. Weeks AM, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care Med*. 1993;21:151.
146. Fry RA. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2005;43:111.
147. Fry RA, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2015;43:530.
148. Zuleta-Alarcon A, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 2017;64:169.
149. Wischmeyer PE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1066.
150. Earley PH, Finver T. *J Addict Med*. 2013;7:169.
151. Moore NN, Bostwick JM. *Psychosomatics*. 1999;40:356.
152. Wilson JE, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:616.
153. Baylon GJ, et al. *J Clin Pharm*. 2000;20:597.
154. Levine AI, Bryson AO. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:52405.
155. Wright EL, et al. *AANA J*. 2012;80:120.
156. Hiroi N, Agatsuma S. *Mol Psychiatry*. 2005;10:336.
157. Domino KB, et al. *JAMA*. 2005;293:1453.
158. Warner DO, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:929.
159. Trinkoff AM, Storr CL. *Am J Public Health*. 1998;88:581.
160. Gallegos KV, et al. *Qual Rev Bull*. 1988;14:116.
161. Kenna GA, Wood MD. *Am J Health-Syst Pharm*. 2004;61:921.
162. Christie JD, et al. *JAMA*. 1998;280:1253.
163. Gross CP, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 2000;160:3209.
164. Guille C, Sen S. *Arch Intern Med*. 2012;172:371.
165. National Association of Drug Diversion Investigators. httpp://www.naddi.org
166. Schaefer MK, Perz JF. *Mayo Clin Proceed*. 2014;89:878.
167. Lutsky I, et al. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:915.
168. DesRoches CM, et al. *JAMA*. 2010;304:187.
169. Epstein RH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1053.
170. Epstein RH, et al. *Anesth analg*. 2011;113(1):160.
171. Reinhold R. New York Times; 1981.
172. http://www.dol.gov/elaws/asp/drugfree/require.htm.
173. Fitzsimons MG, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:630.
174. Tetzlaff J, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22:143.
175. Alexander BH, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:922.
176. Fitzsimons MG, et al. *J Clin Anesth*. 2013;25:669.
177. Department of Health and Human Services. Medical Review Officer Guidance Manual for Federal Workplace Drug Testing Programs. www.Samhsa.gov. Accessed February 27, 2018.
178. Gravenstein JS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62:467.
179. Skipper GE. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2009;84:1040.
180. Rose GL, Brown RE. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22:379.
181. Pelton C, Ikeda RM. *J Psychoactiv Drugs*. 1991;23:427.
182. Paris RT, Canavan DI. *J Addict Disease*. 1999;18:1.
183. Skipper GE, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:891.
184. DuPont RL, et al. *J Subst Abuse Treat*. 2009;36:159.
185. DuPont RL, Skipper GE. *J Psychoactive Drugs*. 2012;44:72.
186. Merlo LJ, et al. *J Addict Med*. 2011;5:279.
187. Collins GB, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1457.

188. Bryson EO. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21:508.
189. Bryson EO, Levine A. *J Clin Anesth*. 2008;20:397.
190. Gravenstein JS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:737.
191. Cao CG, et al. *Hum Factors*. 2008;50:276.
192. Husby T, et al. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58:177.
193. Wright MC, et al. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2006;15:258.
194. Ayas NT, et al. *JAMA*. 2006;296:1055.
195. West CP, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2012;87:1138.
196. Papp KK, et al. *Acad Med*. 2004;79:394.
197. Gottlieb DJ, et al. *Arch Intern Med*. 1991;151:2065.
198. Bolster L, Rourke L. *J Grad Med Educ*. 2015;7(3):349.
199. www.acgme (Duty hours reference).
200. Peets A, Ayas N. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:960.
201. Ahmed N, et al. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259:1041.
202. www.asahq.org. Accessed August 25, 2014.
203. Milter MM, et al. *Sleep*. 1988;11:100.
204. Watson NF, et al. *Sleep*. 2015;38:1161.
205. Thanarajasingam U, et al. *Mayo Clin Pro*. 2012;87:320.

References

1. Yuki K, Eckenhoff RG. Mechanisms of the immunological effects of volatile anesthetics. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123(2):326–335. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000001403.
2. Barker JP, Abdelatti MO. Anaesthetic pollution. Potential sources, their identification and control. *Anaesthesia*. 1997;52(11):1077–1083.
3. National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. *Criteria for a Recommended Standard: Occupational Exposure to Anesthetic Gases and Vapors*; 1977.
4. Herzog-Niescery J, Botteck NM, Vogelsang H, et al. Occupational chronic sevoflurane exposure in the everyday reality of the anesthesia workplace. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121(6):1519–1528. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000001015.
5. Chaoul MM, Braz JRC, Lucio LMC, Golim MA, Braz LG, Braz MG. Does occupational exposure to anesthetic gases lead to increase of pro-inflammatory cytokines? *Inflamm Res*. 2015;64(12):939–942. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00011-015-0881-2.
6. Hoerauf KH, Wallner T, Akca O, Taslimi R, Sessler DI. Exposure to sevoflurane and nitrous oxide during four different methods of anesthetic induction. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(4):925–929.
7. Bruce DL Bach MJ. Effects of trace anaesthetic gases on behavioral performance of volunteers. *Br J Anaesth*. 1976;48:871.
8. Smith G, Shirley AW. A review of the effects of trace concentrations of anaesthetics of performance. *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50(7):701–712.
9. Gambill AF, McCallum RN, Henrichs TF. Psychomotor performance following exposure to trace concentrations of inhalation anesthetics. *Anesth Analg*. 1979;58(6):475–482.
10. Zacny JP, Yajnik S, Lichtor JL, et al. The acute and residual effects of subanesthetic concentrations of isoflurane/nitrous oxide combinations on cognitive and psychomotor performance in healthy volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1996;82(1):153–157.
11. Janiszewski DJ, Galinkin JL, Klock PA, Coalson DW, Pardo H, Zacny JP. The effects of subanesthetic concentrations of sevoflurane and nitrous oxide, alone and in combination, on analgesia, mood, and psychomotor performance in healthy volunteers. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;88(5):1149–1154.
12. Beckman NJ, Zacny JP, Walker DJ. Within-subject comparison of the subjective and psychomotor effects of a gaseous anesthetic and two volatile anesthetics in healthy volunteers. *Drug Alcohol Depend*. 2006;81(1):89–95. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2005.06.002.
13. Vaisman AI. [Working conditions in the operating room and their effect on the health of anesthetists]. *Eksp Khir Anesteziol*. 1967;12(3):44–49.
14. Spence AA, Cohen EN, Brown BW, Knill-Jones RP, Himmelberger DU. Occupational hazards for operating room-based physicians. Analysis of data from the United States and the United Kingdom. *JAMA*. 1977;238(9):955–959.
15. Tannenbaum TN, Goldberg RJ. Exposure to anesthetic gases and reproductive outcome. A review of the epidemiologic literature. *J Occup Med*. 1985;27(9):659–668.
16. Spence AA, Knill-Jones RP. Is there a health hazard in anaesthetic practice? *Br J Anaesth*. 1978;50(7):713–719.
17. Vessey MP. Epidemiological studies of the occupational hazards of anaesthesia--a review. *Anaesthesia*. 1978;33(5):430–438.
18. Knill-Jones RP, Newman BJ, Spence AA. Anaesthetic practice and pregnancy: controlled survey of male anaesthetists in the United Kingdom. *Lancet*. 2:807–809.
19. Cohen EN, Belville JW, Brown BW. Anesthesia, pregnancy, and miscarriage. a study of operating room nurses and anesthetists. *Anesthesiology*. 1971;35:343–347.
20. Rosenberg P, Kirves A. Miscarriages among operating theatre staff. *Acta Anaesth Scand Suppl*. 1973;53:37–42.
21. Buring JE, Hennekens CH, Mayrent SL, Rosner B, Greenberg ER, Colton T. Health experiences of operating room personnel. *Anesthesiology*. 1985;62(3):325–330.
22. Burm AG. Occupational hazards of inhalational anaesthetics. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol*. 2003;17(1):147–161.
23. Rosenberg PH, Vanttinnen H. Occupational hazards to reproductive health in anaesthetists and paediatricians. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 1973;22:202–207.
24. Axelsson G, Rylander R. Exposure to anaesthetic gases and spontaneous abortion: response bias in a postal questionnaire study. *Int J Epidemiol*. 1982;11:250–256.
25. Tannenbaum TN, Goldberg RJ. Exposure to anesthetic gases and reproductive outcome. *J Occup Med*. 1985;27:659–668.
26. Boivin JF. Risk of spontaneous abortion in women occupationally exposed to anaesthetic gases: a meta-analysis. *Occup Environ Med*. 1997;54(8):541–548.
27. McGregor DG, Senjem DH, Mazze RI. Trace nitrous oxide levels in the postanesthesia care unit. *Anesth Analg*. 1999;89(2):472–475.
28. McGregor DG. Task force on trace anesthetic gases; committee on occupational health of operating room personnel. Trace anesthetic gases in the operating room. ASA Newsletter.
29. Maran NK-JRSA. Infertility among female hospital doctors in the UK. *Br J Anaesth*. 1996;76(581P).
30. Teschke K, Abanto Z, Arbour L, et al. Exposure to anesthetic gases and congenital anomalies in offspring of female registered nurses. 54:118–127.
31. Yılmaz Serkan, Çalbayram NÇ. Exposure to anesthetic gases among operating room personnel and risk of genotoxicity: a systematic review of the human biomonitoring studies. *J Clin Anesth*. 2016;35(C):326–331. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclinane.2016.08.029.
32. Szyfter K, Stachecki I, Kostrzewska-Poczekaj M, Szaumkessel M, Szyfter-Harris J, Sobczyński P. Exposure to volatile anaesthetics is not followed by a massive induction of single-strand DNA breaks in operation theatre personnel. *J Appl Genet*. 2016;57(3):1–6. https://doi.org/10.1007/s13353-015-0329-y.
33. Santovito A, Cervella P, Delpero M. Evaluation of genomic damage in peripheral lymphocytes from occupationally exposed anesthetists: assessment of the effects of age, sex, and GSTT1gene polymorphism. *J Biochem Mol Toxicol*. 2015;29(5):234–239. https://doi.org/10.1002/jbt.21689.
34. Kanmura Y, Sakai J, Yoshinaka H, Shirao K. Causes of nitrous oxide contamination in operating rooms. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90(3):693–696.
35. Mehrata M, Moralejo C, Anderson WA. Adsorbent comparisons for anesthetic gas capture in hospital air emissions. *J Environ Sci Health A*. 2016;51(10):805–809. https://doi.org/10.1080/10934529.2016.1181438.
36. Bruce DL, Bach MJ, Arbit J. Trace anesthetic effects on perceptual, cognitive, and motor skills. *Anesthesiology*. 1974;40(5):453–458.
37. Bruce DL. Recantation revisited. *Anesthesiology*. 1991;74(6):1160–1161.
38. Bruce DL, Stanley TH. Research replication may be subject specific. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62(6):617.
39. Scapellato ML, Mastrangelo G, Fedeli U, et al. A longitudinal study for investigating the exposure level of anesthetics that impairs neurobehavioral performance. *Neurotoxicology*. 2008;29(1):116–123. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuro.2007.10.001.
40. Trevisan A, Gori GP. Biological monitoring of nitrous oxide exposure in surgical areas. *Am J Ind Med*. 1990;17(3):357–362.
41. Wiesner G, Harth M, Szulc R, et al. A follow-up study on occupational exposure to inhaled anaesthetics in Eastern European surgeons and circulating nurses. *Int Arch Occup Environ Health*. 2001;74(1):16–20.
42. Nayebzadeh A. Exposure to exhaled nitrous oxide in hospitals post-anesthesia care units. *Ind Health*. 2006;45:334–337.
43. Sessler DI, Badgwell JM. Exposure of postoperative nurses to exhaled anesthetic gases. *Anesth Analg*. 1998;87(5):1083–1088.
44. Occupational Safety and Health Administration. *Directorate of Technical Support and Emergency Management*. Washington D.C.: Anesthetic Gases: Guidelines for Workplace Exposures; 2000.
45. Maghshoudi B, Mortazavi SM, Khademi S, Vatankhah P. Evaluation of radiation exposure pattern and radiation absorbed dose resulting from occupational exposure of anesthesiologists to ionizing radiation. *J Biomed Phys Eng*. 2017;7(3):1–8.
46. Voelz GL. Ionizing radiation. *Occup Health Saf*. 1982;51(7):34–37.
47. Occupational Safety and Health Administration. *Occupational Safety and Health Standards: Toxic and Hazardous Substances, Ionizing Radiation*. https://www.osha.gov/pls/oshaweb/owadisp.show_document?p_table=STANDARDS&p_id=10098.
48. Wrixon AD. New ICRP recommendations. *J Radiol Prot*. 2008;28.
49. Bushong SC. *Radiologic Science for the Technologist: Physics, Biology, and Protection*. 4th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1988.
50. Dagal A. Radiation safety for anesthesiologists. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol*. 2011;24(4):445–450. https://doi.org/10.1097/ACO.0b013e328347f984.

51. Rhea EB, Rogers TH, Riehl JT. Radiation safety for anaesthesia providers in the orthopaedic operating room. *Anaesthesia*. 2016;71(4):455–461. https://doi.org/10.1111/anae.13400.
52. Arii T, Uchino S, Kubo Y, Kiyama S, Uezono S. Radiation exposure to anaesthetists during endovascular procedures. *Anaesthesia*. 2014;70(1):47–50. https://doi.org/10.1111/anae.12841.
53. Kiviniitty K, Lahti R, Lahde S, Torniainen P. Radiation doses from x-ray units used outside radiology departments. *Health Physics*. 1980;38(3):419–421.
54. Kong Y, Struelens L, Vanhavere F, Vargas CS, Schoonjans W, Zhuo WH. Influence of standing positions and beam projections on effective dose and eye lens dose of anaesthetists in interventional procedures. *Radiation Protection Dosimetry*. 2015;163(2):181–187. https://doi.org/10.1093/rpd/ncu148.
55. Crowhurst JA, Scalia GM, Whitby M, et al. Radiation exposure of operators performing transesophageal echocardiography during percutaneous structural cardiac interventions. *JAC*. 2018;71(11):1246–1254. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2018.01.024.
56. Athwal GS, Bueno RAJ, Wolfe SW. Radiation exposure in hand surgery: mini versus standard C-arm. *J Hand Surg*. 2005;30(6):1310–1316. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhsa.2005.06.023.
57. Norbash A, Klein LW, Goldstein J, et al. The neurointerventional procedure room of the future: predicting likely innovations in design and function. *J Neurointerv Surg*. 2011;3(3):266–271. https://doi.org/10.1136/jnis.2010.004424.
58. Barker D. Protection and safety in the X-ray department. *Radiography*. 1978;44(518):45–49.
59. Occupational Safety and Health Administration Technical Manual. Washington DC. https://www.osha.gov/dts/osta/otm/otm_vi/otm_vi_1.html.
60. Mohr H. The design of x ray equipment for use in operating rooms. *Med Biol Eng*. 1973;11(4):396–403.
61. Vaes B, Van Keer K, Struelens L, et al. Eye lens dosimetry in anesthesiology: a prospective study. *J Clin Monit Comput*. 2017;31(2):303–308.
62. Holmes JA. A summary of safety considerations for the medical and surgical practitioner. In: Apfelberg DB, ed. *Evaluation and Installation of Laser Systems*. New York: Springer-Verlag; 1987:69.
63. Chuang GS, Farinelli W, Christiani DC, Herrick RF, Lee NCY, Avram MM. Gaseous and particulate content of laser hair removal plume. *JAMA Dermatol*. 2016;152(12):1320–1327. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamadermatol.2016.2097.
64. Lopez R, Lacey SE, Jones RM. Application of a two-zone model to estimate medical laser-generated particulate matter exposures. *J Occup Environ Hyg*. 2015;12(5):309–313. https://doi.org/10.1080/15459624.2014.989361.
65. Lippert1 JF, Lacey SE, Lopez R, et al. A pilot study to determine medical laser generated air contaminant emission rates for a simulated surgical procedure. *J Occup Environ Hyg*. 2013;11(6):D69–D76. https://doi.org/10.1080/15459624.2014.888074.
66. Byrne PO, Sisson PR, Oliver PD, Ingham HR. Carbon dioxide laser irradiation of bacterial targets in vitro. *J Hosp Infect*. 1987;9(3):265–273.
67. Ferenczy A, Bergeron C, Richart RM. Human papillomavirus DNA in CO2 laser-generated plume of smoke and its consequences to the surgeon. *Obstet Gynecol*. 1990;75(1):114–118.
68. Garden JM, O'Banion MK, Shelnitz LS, et al. Papillomavirus in the vapor of carbon dioxide laser-treated verrucae. *JAMA*. 1988;259(8):1199–1202.
69. Ilmarinen T, Auvinen E, Hiltunen-Back E, Ranki A, Aaltonen L-M, Pitkäranta A. Transmission of human papillomavirus DNA from patient to surgical masks, gloves and oral mucosa of medical personnel during treatment of laryngeal papillomas and genital warts. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 2012;269(11):2367–2371. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00405-012-2049-9.
70. Baggish MS, Poiesz BJ, Joret D, Williamson P, Refai A. Presence of human immunodeficiency virus DNA in laser smoke. *Lasers Surg Med*. 1991;11(3):197–203.
71. Hallmo P, Naess O. Laryngeal papillomatosis with human papillomavirus DNA contracted by a laser surgeon. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol*. 1991;248(7):425–427.
72. Okoshi K, Kobayashi K, Kinoshita K, Tomizawa Y, Hasegawa S, Sakai Y. Health risks associated with exposure to surgical smoke for surgeons and operation room personnel. *Surg Today*. 2014;45(8):957–965. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00595-014-1085-z.
73. Mowbray N, Ansell J, Warren N, Wall P, Torkington J. Is surgical smoke harmful to theater staff? A systematic review. *Surg Endosc*. 2013;27(9):3100–3107. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00464-013-2940-5.
74. In SM, Park DY, Sohn IK, et al. Experimental study of the potential hazards of surgical smoke from powered instruments. *Br J Surg*. 2015;102(12):1581–1586. https://doi.org/10.1002/bjs.9910.
75. Steege AL, Boiano JM, Sweeney MH. Secondhand smoke in the operating room? Precautionary practices lacking for surgical smoke. *Am J Ind Med*. 2016;59(11):1020–1031. https://doi.org/10.1002/ajim.22614.
76. Nezhat C, Winer WK, Nezhat F, Nezhat C, Forrest D, Reeves WG. Smoke from laser surgery: is there a health hazard? *Lasers Surg Med*. 1987;7(4):376–382.
77. Derrick JL, Li PTY, Tang SPY, Gomersall CD. Protecting staff against airborne viral particles: in vivo efficiency of laser masks. *J Hosp Infect*. 2006;64(3):278–281. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhin.2006.06.021.
78. Kunachak S, Sobhon P. The potential alveolar hazard of carbon dioxide laser-induced smoke. *J Med Assoc Thai*. 1998;81(4):278–282.
79. Baggish MS, Baltoyannis P, Sze E. Protection of the rat lung from the harmful effects of laser smoke. *Lasers Surg Med*. 1988;8(3):248–253.
80. Siegel JD, Rhinehart E, Jackson M, Chiarello L. 2007 Guideline for isolation precautions: preventing transmission of infectious agents in health care settings. *AJIC: Am J Infect Control*. 2007;35(10):S164. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajic.2007.10.007. http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0196655307007407.
81. Boyce JM, Pittet D. Guideline for hand hygiene in health-care settings: recommendations of the healthcare infection control practices advisory committee and the HICPAC/SHEA/APIC/IDSA hand hygiene task force. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2002;51(RR-16):1–45. http://www.jstor.org/stable/42000923.
82. Scheithauer S, Rosarius A, Rex S, et al. Improving hand hygiene compliance in the anesthesia working room work area: more than just more hand rubs. *Am J Infect Control*. 2013;41(11):1001. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajic.2013.02.004. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23669298.
83. Munoz-Price LS, Riley B, Banks S, et al. Frequency of interactions and hand disinfections among anesthesiologists while providing anesthesia care in the operating room: induction versus maintenance. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2014;35(8):1056–1059. https://doi.org/10.1086/677154. http://www.jstor.org/stable/10.1086/677154.
84. World Health Organization. *WHO Guidelines on Hand Hygiene in Health Care*; 2009. http://www.who.int/iris/handle/10665/44102.
85. ASA committee on occupational health task force on infection control: Recommendations for infection control for the practice of anesthesiology (third edition). https://www.asahq.org/~/media/sites/asahq/files/public/resources/asa%20committees/recommendations%20for%20infection%20control%20for%20the%20practice%20of%20anesthesiology.pdf?la=en. Accessed December 28, 2017.
86. Goudra B, Singh PM, Galvin E. Comparison of compliance of glove use among anesthesia providers: a prospective blinded observational study. *AANA J*. 2014;82(5):363. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25842651.
87. Sehulster L, Chinn RYW. Guidelines for environmental infection control in health-care facilities: recommendations of CDC and the healthcare infection control practices advisory committee (HICPAC). *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2003;52(RR-10):1–43. http://www.jstor.org/stable/42000936.
88. Jensen PA, Lambert LA, Iademarco MF, Ridzon R. Guidelines for preventing the transmission of mycobacterium tuberculosis in health-care settings, 2005. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2005;54(RR-17):1–140. http://www.jstor.org/stable/42000931.
89. Tait AR. Occupational transmission of tuberculosis: implications for anesthesiologists. *Anesth Analg*. 1997;85(2):444–451. https://doi.org/10.1097/00000539-199708000-00036. http://ovidsp.ovid.com/ovidweb.cgi?T=JS&NEWS=n&CSC=Y&PAGE=fulltext&D=ovft&AN=00000539-199708000-00036.
90. NIOSH ALERT. Preventing needlestick injuries in health care settings. *Connecticut Nursing News*. 2000;73(1):8. https://search.proquest.com/docview/203571451.

91. U.S. Department of Labor. *Occupational Safety and Health Administration: Occupational Exposure to Bloodborne Pathogens; Needlestick and Other Sharps Injuries; Final Rule: (29 CFR, Part 1910)*; 2001.
92. American College of Physicians. *OSHA Bloodborne Pathogens Requirement*; 2014. www.acponline.org/running_practice.
93. Jagger J, Perry J, Gomaa A, Phillips EK. The impact of U.S. policies to protect healthcare workers from bloodborne pathogens: the critical role of safety-engineered devices. *J Infect Public Health*. 2008;1(2):62–71. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jiph.2008.10.002. https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1876034108000294.
94. Dement JM, Epling C, Østbye T, Pompeii LA, Hunt DL. Blood and body fluid exposure risks among health care workers: results from the duke health and safety surveillance system. *Am J Ind Med*. 2004;46(6):637–648. https://doi.org/10.1002/ajim.20106. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/ajim.20106/abstract.
95. Ayas NT, Barger LK, Cade BE, et al. Extended work duration and the risk of self-reported percutaneous injuries in interns. *JAMA*. 2006;296(9):1055–1062. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.296.9.1055.
96. Tanner J, Parkinson H. Double gloving to reduce surgical cross-infection. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006;3:CD003087. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858. doi(3):CD003087. pub2.
97. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Evaluation of blunt suture needles in preventing percutaneous injuries among health-care workers during gynecologic surgical procedures--New York City, March 1993-June 1994. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. 1997;46(2):25–29.
98. Schillie S, Murphy TV, Sawyer M, et al. CDC guidance for evaluating health-care personnel for hepatitis B virus protection and for administering postexposure management. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2013;62(RR-10):1–19.
99. https://www.cdc.gov/infectioncontrol/guidelines/index.html. Accessed Jan 2018.
100. Shefer A, Atkinson W, Friedman C, et al. Immunization of health-care personnel. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2011;60(7):1–45. http://www.jstor.org/stable/24842397.
101. Bolyard EA, Tablan OC, Williams WW, Pearson ML, Shapiro CN, Deitchman SD. Guideline for infection control in healthcare personnel, 1998. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 1998;19(6):407–463. https://doi.org/10.1086/647840. http://www.jstor.org/stable/30142429.
102. Williams D, Dingley J, Jones C, Berry N. Contamination of laryngoscope handles. *J Hosp Infect*. 2010;74(2):123–128. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhin.2009.09.015. https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0195670109004204.
103. MacCannell T, Umscheid CA, Agarwal RK, et al. Guideline for the prevention and control of norovirus gastroenteritis outbreaks in healthcare settings. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2011;32(10):939–969. https://doi.org/10.1086/662025. http://www.jstor.org/stable/10.1086/662025.
104. Weber DJ. Lessons learned: protection of healthcare workers from infectious disease risks. *Crit Care Med*. 2010;38(suppl 1):S314. https://doi.org/10.1097/CCM.0b013e3181e69ebd. http://ovidsp.ovid.com/ovidweb.cgi?T=JS&NEWS=n&CSC=Y&PAGE=fulltext&D=ovft&AN=00003246-201008001-00006.
105. Fowler RA, Guest CB, Lapinsky SE, et al. Transmission of severe acute respiratory syndrome during intubation and mechanical ventilation. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2004;169(11):1198–1202. https://doi.org/10.1164/rccm.200305-715OC.
106. Grohskopf L, Tokars J, Shimabukuro T, Epperson S. Chapter 12: influenza. In: Hamborsky J, Kroger A, Wolfe S, eds. *Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases*. 13th ed. Washington D.C.: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 2015:187–208.
107. Grohskopf LA, Sokolow LZ, Broder KR, et al. Prevention and control of seasonal influenza with vaccines: recommendations of the advisory committee on immunization practices - United States, 2017-18 influenza season. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2017;66(2):1–20. https://doi.org/10.15585/mmwr.rr6602a1.
108. Talbot TR, Babcock H, Caplan AL, et al. Revised SHEA position paper: influenza vaccination of healthcare personnel. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2010;31(10):987–995. https://doi.org/10.1086/656558. http://www.jstor.org/stable/10.1086/656558.
109. Tiwari T, Murphy TV, Moran J, CDC National Immunization Program. Recommended antimicrobial agents for the treatment and postexposure prophylaxis of pertussis: 2005 CDC guidelines. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2005;54(RR-14):1–16.
110. Cohn AC, MacNeil JR, Clark TA, et al. Prevention and control of meningococcal disease: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2013;62(RR-2):1–28.
111. Trautmann M, Lepper PM, Schmitz FJ. Three cases of bacterial meningitis after spinal and epidural anesthesia. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis*. 2002;21(1):43–45.
112. Couzigou C, Vuong TK, Botherel AH, Aggoune M, Astagneau P. Iatrogenic streptococcus salivarius meningitis after spinal anaesthesia: need for strict application of standard precautions. *J Hosp Infect*. 2003;53(4):313–314.
113. Baer ET. Iatrogenic meningitis: the case for face masks. *Clin Infect Dis*. 2000;31(2):519–521.
114. Catanzaro A. Nosocomial tuberculosis. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1982; 125(5):559–562. https://doi.org/10.1164/arrd.1982.125.5.559.
115. World Health Organization. *Global Tuberculosis Report 2017*. Geneva: Licence: CC BY-NCSA 3.0 IGO.
116. Schmit KM, Wansaula Z, Pratt R, Price SF, Langer AJ. Tuberculosis - United States, 2016. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. 2017; 66(11):289–294. https://doi.org/10.15585/mmwr.mm6611a2.
117. Leclair JM, Freeman J, Sullivan BF, Crowley CM, Goldmann DA. Prevention of nosocomial respiratory syncytial virus infections through compliance with glove and gown isolation precautions. *N Engl J Med*. 1987;317(6):329–334. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM198708063170601. [doi].
118. Hui DSC, Chan MTV, Chow B. Aerosol dispersion during various respiratory therapies: a risk assessment model of nosocomial infection to health care workers. *Hong Kong Med J*. 2014;20(suppl 4):9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25224111.
119. Schillie S, Murphy TV, Sawyer M, et al. CDC guidance for evaluating health-care personnel for hepatitis B virus protection and for administering postexposure management. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2013;62(10):1–19. http://www.jstor.org/stable/mmwrrecorepo.62.10.1.
120. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Chapter 10: hepatitis B. In: Hamborsky J, Kroger A, Wolfe S, eds. *Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases*. Washington D.C.: Public Health Foundation; 2015:149–174.
121. Gerberding JL. Management of occupational exposures to bloodborne viruses. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;332(7):444–451. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199502163320707. http://content.nejm.org/cgi/content/extract/332/7/444.
122. Díaz JC, Johnson LA. Health care worker follow-up compliance after occupational bloodborne pathogens exposure: a brief report. *Am J Infect Control*. 2016;44(12):1738–1740. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajic.2016.04.243. https://search.proquest.com/docview/1845698645.
123. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Surveillance for Viral Hepatitis – United States*; 2015.
124. Berry AJ, Isaacson IJ, Kane MA, et al. A multicenter study of the epidemiology of hepatitis B in anesthesia residents. *Anaesth Analg*. 1985; 64(7):672–676. https://doi.org/10.1213/00000539-198507000-00004. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3160260.
125. Occupational exposure to bloodborne pathogens; needlestick and other sharps injuries; final rule. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), Department of Labor. Final rule. *Federal Register*. 2001;66(12):5318–5325. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11503775.
126. U.S. Public Health Service. Updated U.S. public health service guidelines for the management of occupational exposures to HBV, HCV, and HIV and recommendations for postexposure prophylaxis. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2001;50(RR-11):1–52.
127. Chung RT, Davis GL, Jensen DM, et al. Hepatitis C guidance: AASLD–IDSA recommendations for testing, managing, and treating adults infected with hepatitis C virus. *Hepatology*. 2015;62(3):932–954. https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.27950. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/hep.27950/abstract.
128. Gutelius B, Perz JF, Parker MM, et al. Multiple clusters of hepatitis virus infections associated with anesthesia for outpatient endoscopy procedures. *Gastroenterology*. 2010;139(1):163–170. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2010.03.053. https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0016508510004865.
129. German Advisory Committee on Blood, Subgroup 'Assessment of Pathogens Transmissible by Blood'. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). *Transfus Med Hemother*. 2016;43(3):203–222. https://doi.org/10.1159/000445852. https://www.karger.com/Article/Abstract/445852.

130. http://nccc.ucsf.edu/clinical-resources/pep-resources/pep-quick-guide/. Accessed in January 2018.
131. Kuhar DT, Henderson DK, Struble KA, et al. Updated US public health service guidelines for the management of occupational exposures to human immunodeficiency virus and recommendations for postexposure prophylaxis. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2013;34(9):875–892. https://doi.org/10.1086/672271. http://www.jstor.org/stable/10.1086/672271.
132. Irvine C, Egan KJ, Shubber Z, Van Rompay KK, Beanland RL, Ford N. Efficacy of HIV postexposure prophylaxis: Systematic review and meta-analysis of nonhuman primate studies. *Clin Infect Dis*. 2015;60(suppl 3):165. https://doi.org/10.1093/cid/civ069. [doi].
133. Cardo DM, Culver DH, Ciesielski CA, et al. A case-control study of HIV seroconversion in health care workers after percutaneous exposure. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Needlestick Surveillance Group. *N Engl J Med*. 1997;337(21):1485–1490. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199711203372101.
134. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Occurrence and transmission of Creuetzfeldt-Jacob disease. https://www.cdc.gov/prions/cjd/occurrence-transmission.html
135. Rutala WA, Weber DJ. Guideline for disinfection and sterilization of prion–contaminated medical instruments. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol*. 2010;31(2):107–117. https://doi.org/10.1086/650197. http://www.jstor.org/stable/10.1086/650197.

135a. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. 2014-2016 Ebola outbreak in West Africa. https://www.cdc.gov/vhf/ebola/outbreaks/2014-west-africa/index.html. Updated 6/22/2016. Accessed 3/6/2018.

136. www.acgme.org. Accessed August 25, 2014.
137. Warner DO, Berge K, Sun H, Harman A, Hanson A, Schroeder DR. Substance use disorder among anesthesiology residents, 1975-2009. *JAMA*. 2013;310:2289–2296.
138. Ward CF, Ward GC, Saidman LJ. Drug abuse in anesthesia training programs. A survey: 1970-1980. *JAMA*. 1983;250:922–925.
139. Menk EJ, Baumgarten RK, Kingsley CP. Success of reentry into anesthesiology training programs by residents with a history of substance abuse. *JAMA*. 1990;263:3060–3062.
140. Booth JV, Grossman D, Moore J, et al. Substance abuse among physicians: a survey of academic anesthesiology programs. *Anesth Analg*. 2002;95:1024–1030.
141. Berge KH, Dillon KR, Sikkink KM, Taylor TK, Lanier WL. Diversion of drugs within health care facilities, a multiple-victim crime: patterns of diversion, scope, consequences, detection, and prevention. *Mayo Clin Proceed*. 2012;87:674–682.
142. Boulis S, Khanduja K, Downey K, Friedman Z. Substance abuse: a national survey of Canadian residency program directors and site chiefs at university-affiliated anesthesia departments. *Can J Anesth*. 2015;62:964–971.
143. Bell DM, McDonough JP, Ellison JS, Fitzhugh EC. Controlled drug misuse by certified nurse anesthetists. *AANA J*. 1999;67:133–140.
144. Palhares-Alves HN, Vieira DL, Laranjeira RR, Viera JE, Nogueira-Martins LA. Clinical and demographic profile of anesthesiologists using alcohol and other drugs under treatment in a pioneering program in Brazil. *Rev Bras Anestesiol*. 2012;62:356–364.
145. Weeks AM, Buckland MR, Morgan EB, Myles PS. Chemical dependence in anaesthetic registrars in Australia and New Zealand. *Anaesth Intensive Care Med*. 1993;21:151–155.
146. Fry RA. Substance abuse by anaesthetists in Australia and New Zealand. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2005;43:111–117.
147. Fry RA, Fry LE, Weeks A. Substance use disorder amongst Australian and New Zealand anaesthetic trainees: an analysis of 30 years of data. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2015;43:530.
148. Zuleta-Alarcon A, Coffman JC, Soghomonyan S, Papadimos TJ, Bergese SD, Moran KR. Non-opioid anesthetic drug abuse among anesthesia care providers: a narrative view. *Can J Anaesth*. 2017;64:169–184.
149. Wischmeyer PE, Johnson BR, Wilson JE, et al. A survey of propofol abuse in academic anesthesiology programs. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1066–1071.
150. Earley PH, Finver T. Addiction to propofol: a study of 22 treatment cases. *J Addict Med*. 2013;7:169–176.
151. Moore NN, Bostwick JM. Ketamine dependence in anesthesia providers. *Psychosomatics*. 1999;40:356–359.
152. Wilson JE, Kiselanova N, Stevens Q, et al. A survey of anaesthetic abuse in anaesthesia training programmes. *Anaesthesia*. 2008;63:616–620.
153. Baylon GJ, Kaplan HL, Somer G, Busto UE, Sellers EM. Comparative abuse liability of intravenously administered remifentanil and fentanyl. *J Clin Pharm*. 2000;20:597–606.
154. Levine AI, Bryson AO. Intranasal self-administration of remifentanil as the foray into opioid abuse by an anesthesia resident. *Anesth Analg*. 2010;110:52405.
155. Wright EL, McGuinness T, Moneyham LD, Schumacher JE, Zwerling A, Stullenbarger NE. Opioid abuse among nurse anesthetists and anesthesiologists. *AANA J*. 2012;80:120–128.
156. Hiroi N, Agatsuma S. Genetic susceptibility to substance dependence. *Mol Psychiatry*. 2005;10:336–344.
157. Domino KB, Hornbein TF, Polissar NL, et al. Risk factors for relapse in health care professionals with substance use disorders. *JAMA*. 2005;293:1453–1460.
158. Warner DO, Berge K, Sun H, Harman A, Hanson A, Schroeder DR. Risk and outcomes of substance use disorder among anesthesiology residents: a matched cohort analysis. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;123:929–936.
159. Trinkoff AM, Storr CL. Substance use among nurses: differences between specialties. *Am J Public Health*. 1998;88:581–585.
160. Gallegos KV, Browne CH, Veit FW, Talbott GD. Addiction in anesthesiologists: drug access and patterns of substance abuse. *Qual Rev Bull*. 1988;14:116–122.
161. Kenna GA, Wood MD. Substance use by pharmacy and nursing practitioners in a northeastern state. *Am J Health-Syst Pharm.* 2004;61:921–930.
162. Christie JD, Rosen IM, Belini LM, et al. Prescription drug use and self-prescription among resident physicians. *JAMA*. 1998;280:1253–1255.
163. Gross CP, Mead LA, Ford DE, Klag MJ. Physician, heal thyself? Regular source of care and use of preventative health services among physicians. *Arch Intern Med*. 2000;160:3209–3214.
164. Guille C, Sen S. Prescription drug use and self-prescription among training physicians. *Arch Intern Med*. 2012;172:371–372.
165. National Association of Drug Diversion Investigators. What exactly is drug diversion? National Association of Drug Diversion Investigators website. http://www.naddi.org.
166. Schaefer MK, Perz JF. Outbreaks of infections associated with drug diversion by US Health Care Personnel. *Mayo Clin Proceed*. 2014;89:878–887.
167. Lutsky I, Hopwood M, Abram SE, Jacobson GR, Haddox JD, Kampine JP. Psychoactive substance use among American anesthesiologists: a 30-year retrospective study. *Can J Anaesth*. 1993;40:915–921.
168. DesRoches CM, Rao SR, Fromson JA, et al. Physicians' perceptions, preparedness, for reporting, and experiences related to impaired and incompetent colleagues. *JAMA*. 2010;304:187–193.
169. Epstein RH, Gratch DM, Grunwald Z. Development of a scheduled drug diversion surveillance system based on an analysis of atypical drug transactions. *Anesth Analg*. 2007;105:1053–1060.
170. Epstein RH, Gratch DM, McNulty S, Grunwald Z. Validation of a system to detect scheduled drug diversion by anesthesia care providers. *Anesth analg*. 2011;113(1):160–164.
171. Reinhold Robert. *Congressman Says Most Killed in Nimitz Crash Showed Traces of Drugs*. New York Times; 1981.
172. http://www.dol.gov/elaws/asp/drugfree/require.htm.
173. Fitzsimons MG, Baker KH, Lowenstein E, Zapol WM. Random drug testing to reduce the incidence of addiction in anesthesia residents: preliminary results from one program. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:630–635.
174. Tetzlaff J, Collins GB, Brown DL, Pollock G, Popa D. A strategy to prevent substance abuse in an academic anesthesiology department. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22:143–150.
175. Alexander BH, Checkoway H, Nagahama SI, Domino KB. Cause-specific mortality risks of anesthesiologists. *Anesthesiology*. 2000;93:922–930.
176. Fitzsimons MG, Ishizawa Y, Baker KH. Drug testing physicians for substances of abuse: case report of a false-positive result. *J Clin Anesth*. 2013;25:669–671.
177. Department of Health and Human Services Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration Center for Substance Abuse Prevention Division of Workplace Programs. Medical Review Officer Guidance Manual for Federal Workplace Drug Testing Programs. www.Samhsa.gov. Accessed February 27, 2018.
178. Gravenstein JS, Kory WP, Marks RG. Drug abuse by anesthesia personnel. *Anesth Analg*. 1983;62:467–472.
179. Skipper GE. Confrontational approach has no role in addressing physician addiction. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2009;84:1040–1043.

180. Rose GL, Brown RE. The impaired anesthesiologist: not just about drugs and alcohol anymore. *J Clin Anesth*. 2010;22:379–384.
181. Pelton C, Ikeda RM. The California physicians diversion program's experience with recovering anesthesiologists. *J Psychoactiv Drugs*. 1991;23:427–431.
182. Paris RT, Canavan DI. Physician substance abuse impairment: anesthesiologists vs. other specialties. *J Addict Disease*. 1999;18: 1–7.
183. Skipper GE, Campbell MD, DuPont RT. Anesthesiologists with substance use disorders: a 5-Year outcome study from 16 state physician health programs. *Anesth Analg*. 2009;109:891–896.
184. DuPont RL, McLellan T, White WL, Merlo L, Gold MS. Setting the standard for recovery: physicians' health programs. *J Subst Abuse Treat*. 2009;36:159–171.
185. DuPont RL, Skipper GE. Six lessons from state physicians health programs to promote long-term recovery. *J Psychoactive Drugs*. 2012;44:72–78.
186. Merlo LJ, Greene WM, Pomm R. Mandatory naltrexone treatment prevents relapse among opiate-dependent anesthesiologists returning to practice. *J Addict Med*. 2011;5:279–283.
187. Collins GB, McAllister MS, Jenson M, Gooden TA. Chemical dependency treatment outcomes of residents in anesthesiology: results of a survey. *Anesth Analg*. 2005;101:1457–1462.
188. Bryson EO. Should anesthesia residents with a history of substance abuse be allowed to continue training in clinical anesthesia? The results of a survey of anesthesia program directors. *J Clin Anesth*. 2009;21:508–513.
189. Bryson EO, Levine A. One approach to the return to residency for anesthesia residents recovering from opioid addiction. *J Clin Anesth*. 2008;20:397–400.
190. Gravenstein JS, Cooper JB, Orkin FK. Work and rest cycles in anesthesia practice. *Anesthesiology*. 1990;72:737–742.
191. Cao CG, Weinger MB, Slagle J, et al. Differences in day and night shift clinical performance in anesthesiology. *Hum Factors*. 2008;50:276–290.
192. Husby T, Torgersen J, Flaatten H. Cognitive effects of hospital calls in anaesthesiologists. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*. 2014;58:177–184.
193. Wright MC, Phillips-Bute B, Mark JB, et al. Time of day effects on the incidence of anesthetic adverse events. *Qual Saf Health Care*. 2006;15:258–263.
194. Ayas NT, Barger LK, Cade BE, et al. Extended work duration and the risk of self-reported percutaneous injuries in interns. *JAMA*. 2006;296:1055–1062.
195. West CP, Tan AD, Shanafelt TD. Association of resident fatigue and distress with occupational blood and body fluid exposures and motor vehicle accidents. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2012;87:1138–1144.
196. Papp KK, Stoller EP, Sage P, et al. The effects of sleep loss and fatigue on resident-physicians: a multi-institutional mixed-method study. *Acad Med*. 2004;79:394–406.
197. Gottlieb DJ, Parenti CM, Peterson CA, Lofgren RP. Effect of a change in house staff work schedule on resource utilization and patient care. *Arch Intern Med*. 1991;151:2065–2070.
198. Bolster L, Rourke L. The effect of restricting residents' duty hours on patient safety, resident well-being, and resident education: an updated systematic review. *J Grad Med Educ*. 2015;7(3):349–363.
199. www.acgme (Duty hours reference).
200. Peets A, Ayas N. Restricting resident work hours: the good, the bad, and the ugly. *Crit Care Med*. 2012;40:960–966.
201. Ahmed N, Devitt K, Keshet I, et al. A systematic review of the effects of resident duty hour restrictions in surgery: impact on resident wellness, training, and patient outcomes. *Ann Surg*. 2014;259:1041–1053.
202. www.asahq.org. Accessed August 25, 2014.
203. Milter MM, Carskadon MA, Czeisler CA, Dement W, Dinges DF, Graber RC. Catastrophes, sleep, and public policy: consensus report. *Sleep*. 1988;11:100–109.
204. Watson NF, Badr MS, Belenky G, et al. Joint consensus statement of the American Academy of Sleep Medicine and Sleep Research Society on the recommendation of sleep for a healthy adult: methodology and discussion. *Sleep*. 2015;38:1161–1183.
205. Thanarajasingam U, McDonald FS, Halvorsen AJ, et al. Service census caps and unit-based admissions. Resident workload, conference attendance, duty hour compliance, and patient safety. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2012;87:320–327.

89 Clinical Research

KATE LESLIE, COR J. KALKMAN, and DUMINDA N. WIJEYSUNDERA

KEY POINTS

- Clinical research describes the characteristics and mechanisms of disease and injury in humans and investigates drugs, devices, diagnostic products, and bundles of care with the aim of providing high-quality evidence to guide clinical practice that improves patients' lives.
- Investigators are constrained by the need to draw conclusions based on a sample of patients, providers, or systems rather than the whole of the population of interest, and this introduces random, systematic, and design error that threatens internal and external validity.
- Observational (or nonexperimental) studies involve allowing nature or clinical care to take its course, without any major modification due to study-related procedures. However, nonexperimental designs are prone to systematic error, such as selection and information bias.
- In experimental studies the investigators do not let nature (or clinical care) take its course, but actively intervene to test a new intervention. Randomization and blinding reduce the risk of random and systematic errors in experimental studies, but generalizability can be limited.
- Systematic reviews synthesize the medical literature using a transparent search strategy that every reader can replicate and update, and accompanying metaanalyses produce aggregate estimates of treatment effects.
- A carefully designed protocol is the foundation of all clinical research, facilitating the review, conduct, and eventual publication of the project. Prior planning of sample size and statistical analyses is essential.
- Appropriate ethics, registration, and regulatory approvals; financial, data, and human resource management; plans for monitoring patient safety and data integrity; and plans for publishing the results and sharing the data are vital to the proper conduct of clinical research.
- A quality improvement cycle of reflection, feedback, and forward planning is beneficial. Giving patients an opportunity to comment on the studies in which they participated gives researchers fresh insight and opens up new avenues of research.

> *The measure of greatness in a scientific idea is the extent to which it stimulates thought and opens up new lines of research.*
>
> **PAUL A.M. DIRAC**

Introduction

Research is systematic investigation for the creation of generalizable knowledge. Clinical research describes the characteristics and mechanisms of disease and injury in humans, and investigates drugs, devices, diagnostic products, and bundles of care for human use. Clinical research also includes investigating the interactions of health professionals, students, and other stakeholders with the health care and health education systems. Most studies address an aspect of quality of care or education such as safety, effectiveness, patient-centeredness, timeliness, efficiency, and equity.[1]

Miller's Anesthesia includes references to tens of thousands of clinical research studies. The main purpose of this chapter is to describe how these studies were designed and conducted. The chapter connects directly with Chapter 91, which elaborates on how to interpret and use evidence for clinical decisionmaking. Other related chapters include Chapter 1, Chapter 2, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 8, and Chapter 30. Our goal is to describe how clinical research originates and to inspire our readers to create and support the use of high-quality evidence that is essential in guiding clinical practice that focuses on improving patients' lives.

Key Principles

Researchers want to produce results that will be useful to clinicians in improving patients' lives. However, they are constrained by the need to draw conclusions based on a sample of patients rather than the population of interest as a whole.[2] The random, systematic, and design errors introduced by studying a sample affect the confidence with which the association found in the study can be claimed to truly represent the causal effects of the exposure on the outcome ("internal validity") and impair the generalizability of the results to the source population for the sample and the population of interest as a whole ("external validity").[3,4] These errors will be discussed briefly here and will be highlighted in subsequent sections of this chapter.

RANDOM ERROR

Random error (or "chance") in the association between an exposure and an outcome is introduced by variation between the individuals in the study and within individuals over time, and variation between and within measurements made during the study.[5,6] Random error is equally likely to cause false acceptance and false rejection of the null hypothesis (i.e., the hypothesis that there is no effect). The risk of drawing false conclusions increases with decreasing sample size and more statistical testing.

SYSTEMATIC ERROR

Systematic errors (or "biases") also threaten identification of the true causal effect that the exposure had on the outcome in the sample. They can arise from nature (confounding), selection features of the study (selection bias), or measurement features of the study (information bias). In contrast to random error, which distorts the results of a study in both directions, systematic error distorts only in one direction (i.e., toward acceptance *or* rejection of hypotheses).

Confounding

Confounding is a bias that arises when an association between an exposure and an outcome fails to take account of a third factor (a "confounder") that is associated with both the exposure and the outcome.[5,6] Confounders can be risk factors, preventive factors, or surrogate markers for another cause of the outcome, but they cannot be intermediary steps in the causal pathway between an exposure and an outcome. They may be known and measured ("known knowns"), known and unmeasured ("known unknowns"), or unknown and unmeasured ("unknown unknowns").[7] In observational studies, design (e.g., sampling restriction, matching) and analysis (e.g., statistical adjustment) options only address the distribution of measured confounders. Randomization distributes measured and unmeasured confounders evenly between groups (with increasing reliability in larger studies).[8] Concealment of allocation prevents selective recruitment, and blinding prevents confounding that results when knowledge of group allocation changes processes of care or behavior.[9]

The importance of confounding varies with the type of study. In studies focusing on causality (e.g., whether smoking causes lung cancer), investigators attempt to collect and manage all possible confounders, yet they must always take residual confounding into account or use randomization and blinding to ensure that known and unknown confounders are balanced between the groups. In studies focusing on prognosis (e.g., studies predicting the likelihood that a patient will survive the proposed surgical procedure) any variable that contributes to improved prediction can be used in the prediction model.[10]

Selection Bias

Bias can be introduced by the methods used to select a population of interest, to identify and sample a source of such patients, to recruit and retain those patients, and to disseminate the results.[4] Observational studies are prone to bias with respect to selection of sources of exposed and unexposed patients, or cases and controls. Patients and their treating team can introduce bias by participating or not participating based on the exposures and outcomes under study. Prospective cohort studies and randomized trials are prone to bias with respect to differential loss to follow-up.[2] Studies without preplanned and publicized protocols and statistical analysis plans are prone to bias with respect to selection of outcomes to report (favoring outcomes with statistically significant differences between groups), and studies that fail to find a difference between groups with respect to the primary outcome ("negative" studies) may result in "publication bias," that is, they are either never submitted or not selected for publication by journal editors.[11]

Information Bias

This type of bias can be introduced by inaccurate measurement or classification of exposures, outcomes, and other measured variables. This error arises when survey instruments and diagnostic tests are invalid or unreliable and may be differential (affecting groups differently) or non-differential (affecting groups similarly).[2] Recall bias arises when recollection of past exposures is affected by whether the patient experienced the outcome or not. Socially desirable response bias arises when participants give answers based on their assumptions about the investigators and society. Patients who are not assessed for the primary outcome (i.e., whose information is "missing") can cause random or systematic error, and this should be assessed with sensitivity analyses.[12]

DESIGN ERROR

Design errors limit the usefulness of research to clinicians, even if the research is free of random and systematic errors, by affecting its generalizability.[3] Examples of such design errors include studying exposures that are expensive or difficult to implement; comparing new treatments with placebos or weak treatments rather than the best available option; assessing outcomes that are not relevant to patients and the community; and seeking to prove that a new treatment is superior to an old treatment, when proving that it is equivalent or non-inferior would be more useful.[3]

STATISTICAL INFERENCE

The *P*-value is the "probability under a specified statistical model that a statistical summary of the data (e.g., the sample mean difference between two compared groups) would be equal to or more extreme than its observed value."[13] For example, $P = .05$ means that under the null hypothesis there was a 5% chance of observing results at least as extreme as those seen in the study.[14] *P*-values can indicate how incompatible the data are with a specified statistical model, but do not measure the probability that the studied hypothesis is true nor that the data were produced by random error alone.[13] Confidence intervals are better suited to reflecting the size and precision of the treatment effect than *P*-values: the 95% confidence interval refers to the fact that if the same study were repeated many times and the confidence intervals were similarly calculated for each case, 95% of such intervals would include the true treatment effect.[14] The minimal clinically important difference is important when assessing confidence intervals. If the lower limit of the confidence interval excludes the minimal clinically important difference, then the effect of the treatment is likely to be important.[14] Bayesian inference overcomes some of the limitations of *P*-values and confidence intervals.[15] Instead of interpreting the frequency of a phenomenon, Bayesian

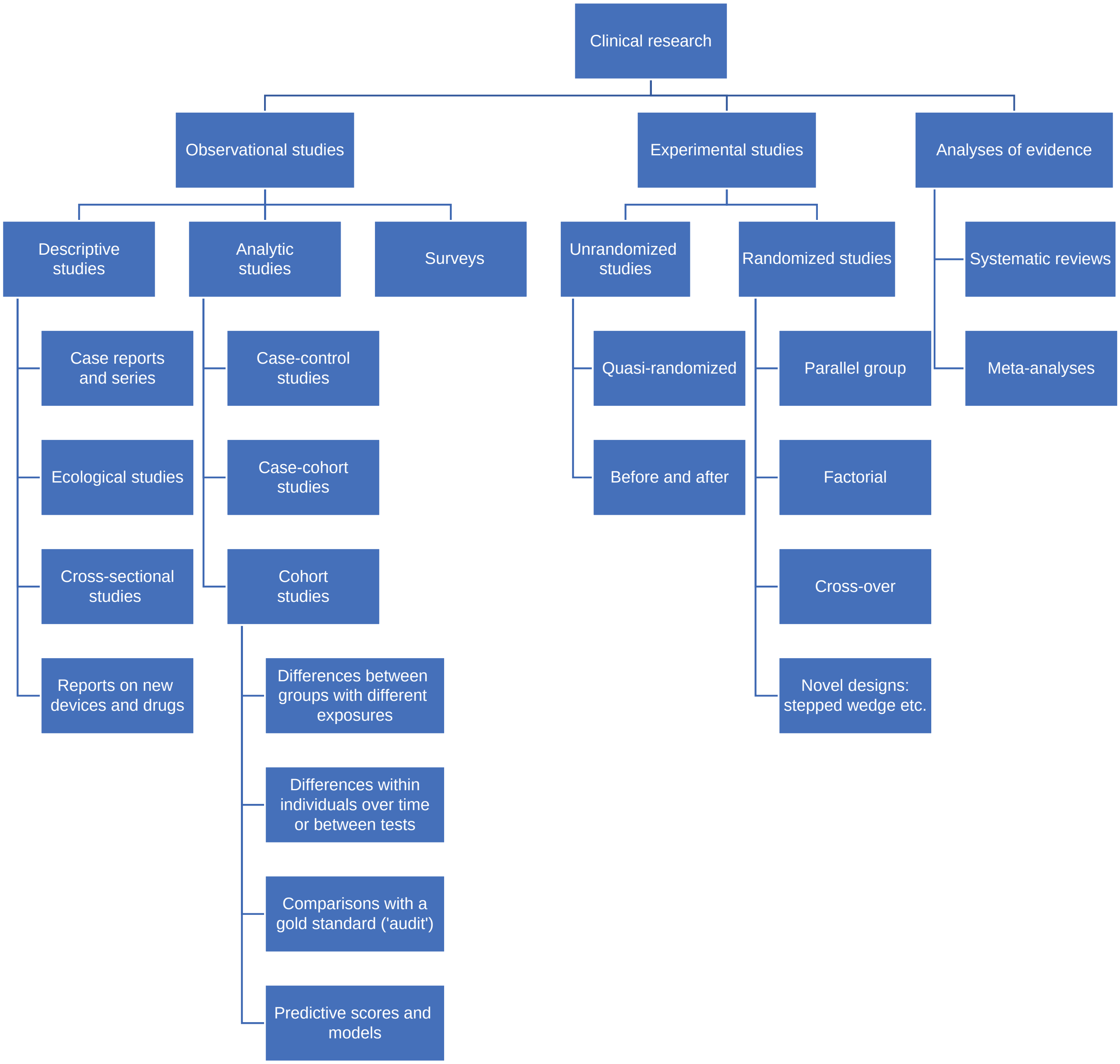

Clinical research
Observational studies
Experimental studies
Analyses of evidence
Descriptive studies
Analytic studies
Surveys
Unrandomized studies
Randomized studies
Systematic reviews
Case reports and series
Case-control studies
Quasi-randomized
Parallel group
Meta-analyses
Ecological studies
Case-cohort studies
Before and after
Factorial
Cross-sectional studies
Cohort studies
Cross-over
Reports on new devices and drugs
Differences between groups with different exposures
Novel designs: stepped wedge etc.
Differences within individuals over time or between tests
Comparisons with a gold standard ('audit')
Predictive scores and models

Fig. 89.1 Study designs in clinical research.

interference incorporates prior evidence, biological plausibility, and pre-existing beliefs into the calculation of the probability of a treatment effect.[14]

Study Design

The study designs used in clinical research are outlined in Fig. 89.1 and Box 89.1. In this chapter, we use the terms "retrospective" and "prospective" to describe the timing of measurement of the exposure and outcome relative to the start of the study, rather than to describe the direction of enquiry (i.e., outcome → exposure or exposure → outcome). We use the US National Institutes of Health definition of a clinical trial ("any research study that prospectively assigns human participants or groups of human participants to one or more health-related interventions to evaluate the effects on health outcomes").[16]

OBSERVATIONAL STUDIES

Observational (or nonexperimental) studies involve allowing nature or clinical care to take its course, with assignment to the intervention based on usual practice, and without any major modification due to study-related procedures, such as recruitment or data collection.[17] An observational study is not a clinical trial, therefore the contradictory term "observational trial" should be avoided. Ethical and pragmatic considerations often mean that an observational design is the only approach to answer a research question.

BOX 89.1 Study Design in Clinical Research: Depth of Anesthesia and Awareness

A ***case study*** reported on a patient who received light anesthesia and was aware.

An ***ecological study*** reported on the incidence of awareness in hospitals with low or high per-patient volatile anesthetic use.

A ***survey*** asked anesthesiologists about their routine use of light or deep anesthesia and the incidence of awareness in their practice.

A ***case-control*** study found patients with awareness, matched them with patients without awareness, and then determined if they had received light or deep anesthesia.

A ***case-cohort*** study found patients who had light anesthesia, matched them with patients who had deep anesthesia, then determined if they had been aware.

A ***retrospective cohort*** study examined existing records to determine the incidence of awareness in patients who had received light or deep anesthesia.

A ***prospective cohort*** study enrolled patients having general anesthesia and followed them to determine the incidence of awareness in patients receiving light and deep anesthesia.

A ***within-patient comparison*** of two processed EEG monitors determined each monitor's ability to predict awareness.

An ***audit*** compared current practice with a national evidence-based guideline on prevention of awareness during general anesthesia.

A ***prediction study*** reported on the development of a risk score for awareness based on a large cohort of patients having light and deep anesthesia.

A ***before-and-after*** study enrolled a cohort of patients having anesthesia without EEG monitoring and then a cohort having anesthesia with EEG monitoring and compared the incidences of awareness.

A ***randomized controlled trial*** randomized patients to light anesthesia or deep anesthesia and compared the incidence of awareness in each group.

A ***systematic review*** searched for clinical trials examining the relationship between light and deep anesthesia and awareness, and conducted ***metaanalysis*** to determine the pooled risk of awareness in patients receiving light or deep anesthesia.

EEG, Electroencephalographic.

For example, most research evaluating the impact of cigarette smoking on lung cancer relies on nonexperimental methods,[18] since assigning smoking as an intervention is unethical.[18] In general, observational studies can demonstrate associations between exposures and outcomes, but do not necessarily prove a causal relationship. Several factors must be carefully considered, including the consistency of findings across multiple high-quality studies, biological plausibility, and whether clear dose-response and temporal relationships exist between exposures and outcomes.[19] This is the case for cigarette smoking: the weight of observational research eventually established cigarette smoking as a cause of lung cancer.[18]

Since most biomedical research is observational in design, several initiatives have been undertaken to improve the conduct and reporting of such studies. For example, the Strengthening the Reporting of Observational Studies in Epidemiology (STROBE) statement makes recommendations for the reporting of three specific types of observational studies, namely cross-sectional, case-control, and cohort studies.[20] However, strong evidence that these tools improve the design and reporting of observational studies is lacking.[21]

Descriptive Studies

Descriptive studies aim to describe the characteristics of patients in a sample, such as baseline features (e.g., age, sex, comorbid disease), processes of care (e.g., anesthesia type), and outcomes (e.g., mortality, stroke). Unlike analytic studies, they do not seek to define relationships among these characteristics.

Case Reports and Series. Case reports describe exposures and outcomes in individual patients, while case series provide the same information for groups of patients. Case reports and series are suited to describing newly recognized uncommon exposures and outcomes, such as drug-related adverse effects.[22] As these studies focus on individuals with a specific exposure or outcome, no direct comparisons are possible with unexposed individuals or those without the outcome. Despite these inherent limitations, case reports and series have made important contributions to medicine. For example, a case report first identified lipid emulsion as a successful treatment for local anesthetic cardiotoxicity[23] and a case series of anesthetic-related deaths in a family first identified the pharmacogenetic disorder malignant hyperthermia.[24]

Descriptions of New Interventions. These studies are a subtype of case reports and series that describe new interventions (e.g., drugs, devices, diagnostic products, monitors, bundles of care, survey instruments, guidelines), but without any comparison against a control group. Such studies have provided valuable information to advance medicine. Important examples include the first use of the non-depolarizing muscle relaxant curare[25] and the initial clinical experience with the laryngeal mask airway.[26] With respect to diagnostic tests, "test research" determines the properties of the test itself (i.e., sensitivity, specificity, likelihood ratios, positive and negative predictive values). However, predictive values in particular are dependent on the prevalence of the outcome in the study population. A better approach ("diagnostic research") determines the extent to which adding a new diagnostic test improves the likelihood of arriving at the correct diagnosis compared with existing diagnostic criteria.[27] Diagnostic tests should always be evaluated using both methods, especially if the new test is simpler, cheaper, less invasive, or less burdensome to the patient than the existing test.[28]

Analytic Studies

Analytic studies seek to measure associations between exposures and outcomes. In contrast to descriptive studies, where all patients have the specified exposure (e.g., a laryngeal mask airway[26]) and/or outcome (e.g., successful resuscitation from local anesthetic cardiotoxicity[23]), in analytic studies patients with and without the exposure of interest (e.g., early childhood exposure to anesthesia) and outcome of interest (e.g., poor educational performance) are required in order to assess associations beyond those expected by chance alone.[29]

Ecological Studies. Ecological studies or "aggregate risk studies" measure exposure status and outcome status as average values across groups of individuals. They are particularly suited to exposures and outcomes that are routinely measured in populations. A major limitation of this approach is that exposure status and outcome status may not be linked at the individual level, leading to the "ecological fallacy," where individuals within the group-level unit with the outcome of interest may not have been the individuals with the exposure of interest. The potential for this bias was highlighted in a study of hospital-level use of neuraxial anesthesia for hip fracture surgery.[30] Higher hospital-level rates of neuraxial anesthesia use were associated with lower overall mortality, but there was no evidence of such an association at the individual level. In fact, at hospitals with higher rates of neuraxial anesthesia use, all patients had better outcomes after hip fracture surgery, regardless of the type of anesthesia they received, suggesting that the causal mechanisms for hospital-level effects were factors other than neuraxial anesthesia use.

Cross-Sectional Studies. Cross-sectional studies assess the exposure status and outcome status of individuals at the same time (or within a short and stable interval). They are suited to exposures that do not change over time, such as genetically-determined characteristics or chronic stable health conditions. Cross-sectional methods have been used to determine whether tibial nerve ultrasound can detect diabetic peripheral neuropathy[31] and whether a preoperative screening questionnaire detects obstructive sleep apnea.[32] Most surveys (see later) are cross-sectional studies since respondents typically complete the survey at a single time-point. Cross-sectional studies are ill-suited to establishing causal relationships because of the "causality dilemma" (i.e., they do not permit clear delineation of the temporal link between putative exposures and outcomes). For example, children presenting for dental treatment and their accompanying parent were tested for anxiety. Forty percent of the children and 60% of the parents were anxious preoperatively, but the investigators could not determine with any certainly if these states were related and, if so, the direction of effect.[33]

Case-Control Studies. Case-control studies assemble participants based on their outcome status; that is, patients who experienced the outcome (cases) and patients who did not (controls). Once the sample is assembled, exposure status is ascertained by looking back in time (Fig. 89.2*A*). Case-control studies are inexpensive, amenable to quick completion, and suited to the study of rare outcomes, such as postoperative stroke[34] and ischemic optic neuropathy.[35] However, they are susceptible to selection bias, especially in relation to the controls, who should be drawn from the same underlying population as the cases.[36] Thus, in a hypothetical study of stroke following cardiac surgery, it would not be appropriate to select cases who had complex aortic arch procedures and controls who had straightforward coronary artery bypass grafting procedures. Investigators can further avoid selection bias by matching cases with up to five controls based on prognostically important characteristics (e.g., age, sex), using more than one control group, and measuring exposure status with equal rigor across cases and controls (avoiding information bias).

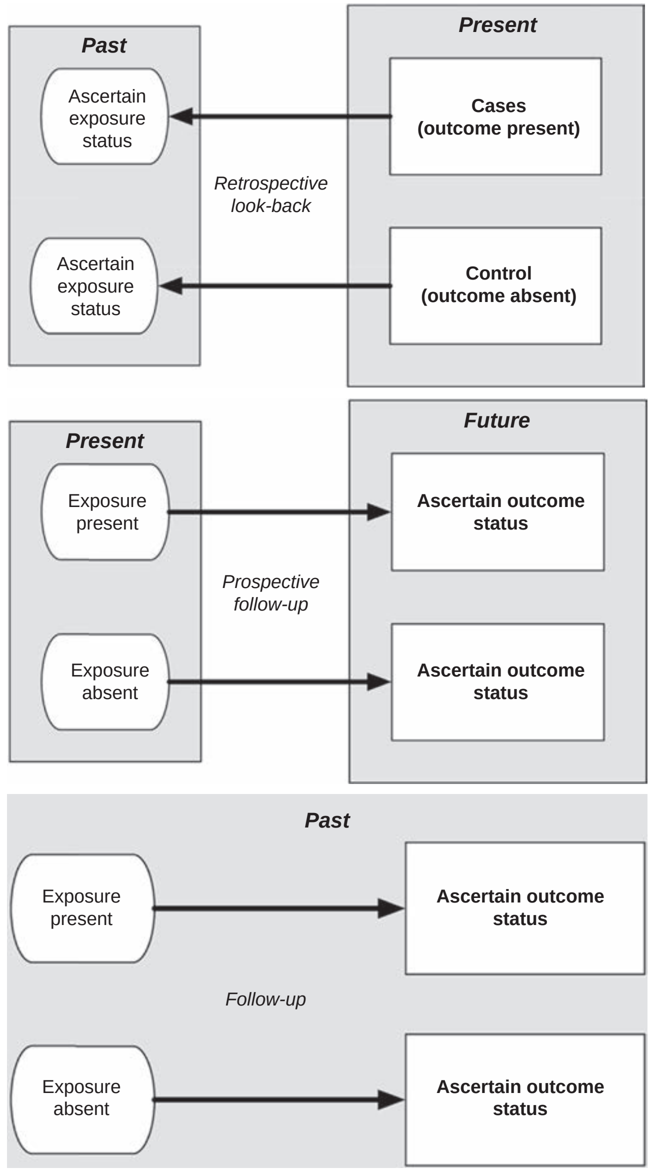


Fig. 89.2 **Observational designs.**

Cohort Studies. Cohort studies assemble participants based on their exposure status and follow them forward in time to ascertain the presence of outcomes. Both the exposure and outcome need to be relatively common to limit the size of the cohort required. Cohort studies can be conducted prospectively and retrospectively. In a prospective study, the cohort is assembled in the present and followed into the future (see Fig. 89.2*B*). This allows investigators to carefully measure exposure status (without recall bias based on knowing the outcome); delineate temporal relationships between exposures and outcomes; and implement standardized follow-up. Standardized follow-up is particularly important when the outcomes might be missed or when baseline characteristics might influence surveillance for the outcomes. For example, standardized troponin estimation is required to detect myocardial infarction and injury, because these outcomes may be silent and some patients are less likely to be tested than others (i.e., females, low-risk surgery patients).[37] Prospective cohort studies are more expensive and take longer to complete than case-control studies and retrospective cohort studies.

In retrospective cohort studies, cohort assembly and follow-up occur entirely in the past (see Fig. 89.2C). Very large databases make addressing uncommon exposures and outcomes feasible using this design. The data needed for the research (i.e., patient characteristics, processes of care and outcomes) can be captured from one or more pre-existing sources, including paper and electronic medical records, administrative and legal databases, government and clinical registries, and databases assembled for research purposes. In anesthesiology, increasing access to these sources has facilitated growth in such research.[38-40] Retrospective cohort studies are quicker and less expensive to conduct than prospective cohort studies. However, they are limited by the available data sources, which may vary in completeness and accuracy, and be influenced by the intensity of follow-up protocols. For example, the reported incidence of postoperative myocardial infarction varied considerably between prospective studies that used standardized surveillance and retrospective studies that used registries of usual clinical practice.[37,39]

Case-Cohort Studies. Case-cohort studies are a subtype of cohort studies where exposed patients are matched to unexposed patients, then followed forward in time to measure outcomes. They can be conducted either prospectively or retrospectively and are suited to the study of rare exposures. Matching reduces the influence of differences in prognostically important characteristics (e.g., age, comorbid status) between exposed and unexposed individuals. For example, a retrospective cohort study evaluating the impact of early childhood anesthesia on educational outcomes matched exposed and unexposed children based on gestational age at birth, maternal age at birth, year of birth, sex, and location of residence.[29] Matching on large numbers of baseline characteristics generally is not feasible because of the difficulties in identifying suitable individuals. In these cases, propensity score matching is an alternative that can help assemble a matched cohort with very similar baseline characteristics for both exposed and unexposed individuals.[41] Importantly, however, propensity score matching does not remove bias related to imbalances in unmeasured confounders between the groups.[41]

Studies Assessing Changes or Differences in Individuals. Some studies make serial measurements in individuals to assess changes over time. Examples include studies that characterize the pharmacokinetics and dynamics of anesthetic drugs[42,43] or postoperative acute pain trajectories.[44] These studies are a subtype of cohort study that incorporate longitudinal repeated measurement of an outcome measure. Statistical analyses of these data must account for correlated measurements in individuals over time.[45] Other studies make parallel measurements in individuals to assess differences between these measurements. Examples include comparing coagulation testing methodologies during surgery[46] or disability scoring instruments after surgery.[47] Bland-Altman analyses which test investigator-defined limits of agreement are an appropriate analysis technique when comparing tests,[48] while scales are often compared using correlation on measures such as validity, reliability, and responsiveness.[49] Some of these studies could equally be described as "experimental" (see later) because the investigators control the intervention.

Studies Assessing Practice Against a Gold Standard ("Audit"). Audits are variants of cohort studies that involve assembling a cohort of patients and determining whether practice complies with an external standard. The term "audit" is sometimes used inaccurately to describe studies that determine the standard that clinical practice achieves (i.e., evaluation) or compare practice with an investigator-derived standard (i.e., research). The extent of compliance with the standard can be compared based on different exposures. Examples of audits include the compliance of venous thromboembolism[50] and surgical site infection[51] prophylaxis with national guidelines. An important issue for such studies is ensuring that the external standard is reasonably valid and accepted within the wider community.

Studies Developing and Validating Prediction Tools. The goal of these studies is to develop tools (e.g., scores, prediction models, risk calculators) that accurately predict outcomes in individual patients. A good clinical prediction tool should be simple to use, exhibit good discrimination (i.e., the extent to which the tool correctly assigns higher predicted risk estimates to individuals who experience the outcome), and demonstrate acceptable calibration (i.e., the extent to which the observed outcome event rates agree with event rates predicted by the tool).[52] These studies first use statistical methods to evaluate associations between exposures (e.g., baseline characteristics, processes of care) and outcomes in one cohort of patients; use the results to develop scoring systems or prediction models; and then validate them in another cohort of patients.[52] Cohort study datasets are the preferred sources of development cohorts because randomized controlled trial datasets may not be generalizable.[53] Different statistical methods can be employed to develop these scores and models, including logistic regression modeling for categorical outcomes,[54] Cox proportional hazards modeling for time to event outcomes,[55] recursive partitioning (i.e., decision tree analysis),[56] and machine learning techniques (e.g., artificial neural networks).[52] Examples from the perioperative setting include the Assess Respiratory Risk in Surgical Patients in Catalonia (ARISCAT) score for predicting postoperative pulmonary complications,[57] the American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Program (NSQIP) calculator for predicting surgical risk,[58] and the Acute Physiology and Chronic Health Evaluation (APACHE) score for predicting hospital mortality in critically ill patients.[59]

Surveys

Surveys collect information from individuals (patients, families, staff, students) or organizations (hospitals, universities, employers) about facts and attitudes.[60] Most are cross-sectional studies assessing exposures and outcomes at the same time. Factual surveys ask for information or test knowledge. Attitudinal surveys ask about attitudes, beliefs, and intentions. Surveys can be descriptive (describing responses from the whole group) or analytic (comparing responses in sub-groups). Surveys must be carefully planned and executed in order to protect participants and provide reliable conclusions.[60,61] Response bias (non-response, incorrect response, or untruthful response) is a particular issue with survey research and must be explicitly considered in survey design and reporting.[61-63] A systematic review of 240 surveys published in six anesthesia journals revealed that reporting was inconsistent, particularly with respect to articulating a hypothesis, describing the design, calculating sample size, providing confidence intervals, and accounting for non-responders.[64] Compliance with design and reporting checklists may improve the quality of survey research.[20,61,62]

Health Services Research

Health services research (also known as health systems research or health policy and systems research) has been defined as a "multi-disciplinary field of scientific investigation that studies how social factors, financing systems, organizational structures and processes, health technologies, and personal behaviors affect access to health care, the quality and cost of health care, and ultimately our health and well-being. Its research domains are individuals, families, organizations, institutions, communities, and populations."[65] While typical clinical research focuses on the epidemiology, risk factors, prognosis, and interventions related to specific disease entities (e.g., ischemic heart disease, postoperative respiratory failure), health services research focuses on the delivery of health care. Health services research and clinical research differ with respect to their focus, but they have considerable overlap with respect to their research methodologies (i.e., how studies are designed to answer specific research questions). Thus, health services researchers also employ surveys, observational designs (as described previously), and experimental designs (as described in the section to follow). In addition, qualitative research methods are employed, such as thematic analyses of individual interviews and focus groups. Qualitative methods are particularly suited to identifying potential underlying reasons for clinician and patient behaviors within healthcare settings. Examples of health services research in the perioperative setting include a retrospective cohort study to evaluate variation in rates of preoperative medical consultation for major surgery,[66] a prospective cohort study of critical care utilization after major surgery,[67] a mixed qualitative-quantitative methods study of a standardized operating room to intensive care unit handoff process,[68] and a stepped wedge cluster randomized trial of a multifaceted implementation of perioperative safety guidelines.[69]

EXPERIMENTAL STUDIES

In experimental studies, the investigators do not let nature (or clinical care) take its course, but actively intervene to test a new intervention. Experimental studies are almost always of a parallel group design where patients or clusters of patients are allocated to an intervention or control treatment (i.e., placebo, usual care, or current best practice) by the investigators and then tested for outcomes (Table 89.1). Newer designs include cluster randomized, factorial, stepped wedge, and adaptive studies.

TABLE 89.1 Advantages and Disadvantages of Controlled Study Designs

	ALLOCATION	
Timing of Data Collection	**Randomized**	**Nonrandomized**
After intervention	Any baseline differences could bias the results.	Comparisons may be confounded by differences between departments or organizations at baseline.
Before and after intervention	Allows for specific comparison of change net of any baseline differences. Enables comparisons to be made between sites that change most or least.	Controls for baseline differences possible. Rates of change are less confounded than cross-sectional data.

Modified from Brown C, Lilford R. Evaluating service delivery interventions to enhance patient safety. *BMJ.* 2008;337:a2764.

Unrandomized Studies

If the investigator allocates the intervention or control to study patients in a nonrandom manner, this introduces selection bias and potential for imbalance between the groups at baseline in terms of risk for the primary outcome.[70] Overestimation or underestimation of the true treatment effect may then occur.

Quasi-Randomized Studies. Quasi-randomized (or quasi-experimental) studies attempt to select patients for the intervention or control in a less obvious but still nonrandom manner, for example, by surgical specialty, day of the week, date of birth, or by using a cut-off score for a certain characteristic. Quasi-randomized designs are seldom considered acceptable in contemporary clinical research because it is very hard to conceal the allocation, prevent selection bias, and ensure blinding. Some quasi-randomized designs may allow limited inference about causality (e.g., those that include a pre-test in the intervention and control groups to establish comparability). Sometimes randomization is not possible and quasi-randomized designs may be the only way to address the research question.[70] The Risk Of Bias In Non-randomized Studies of Interventions (ROBINS-I) tool helps readers to assess the quality of observational studies that evaluate interventions without the benefit of randomization.[71]

The before-and-after study is a simple and tempting study design that has been used for centuries to compare patient status before and after a new intervention. For example, John Snow compared the incidences of cholera in a neighborhood of London before and after removing the local water pump handle.[72] In modern research, these studies can be conducted entirely prospectively, partly prospectively (the "after" group), partly retrospectively (the "before" group), or wholly retrospectively.[73] The "before" intervention is often current usual care and the "after" intervention is often a new treatment. For example, an enhanced recovery pathway for colectomy patients was reported to be associated with decreased opioid administration, earlier return of bowel function, and reduced length of hospital stay compared to the old approach.[74] The methodological challenge here is the influence of time: these improvements could have resulted from the new pathway or from changes in case-mix or unmeasured parallel improvements in care. If the effects of such parallel improvements are large enough, they might even obscure the fact that the new pathway is actually worse in terms of patient outcomes. Difference-in-differences approaches can be used to address time-related trends in outcomes. These approaches assume that trends unrelated to the exposure are the same in both groups.[75] Before-and-after studies are particularly vulnerable to the Hawthorne effect (i.e., the observation that people perform better when they know that they are being observed). The observational study design in which data are collected in individual patients before and after an intervention is addressed above.

Cross-Over Studies. The cross-over study is a more robust form of the before-and-after design. Here each patient receives all the interventions and control treatments, separated by wash-out periods to eliminate carry-over effects from the previous treatment.[76] Cross-over studies are well suited to patients taking chronic medications (e.g., analgesics for chronic pain[77]). A major benefit of the cross-over design is that patients are their own controls, which eliminates the confounding issues seen in parallel group designs. The order in which patients receive the intervention and control treatments can be nonrandom or random (the latter will eliminate time effects). In addition, administration of the intervention and control treatments can be blinded to eliminate placebo and nocebo effects.[78]

Randomized Studies

The ascendency of large simple randomized trials as the most robust form of primary research in anesthesia, intensive care, and pain medicine had its roots in the evidence-based medicine movement.[79] The cardinal features of a high-quality randomized controlled trial are successful randomization and blinding, and a sufficient sample size to reveal clinically important treatment effects on patient-centered outcomes.

Randomization. The many methodological problems associated with observational studies and nonrandomized experimental studies boil down to the distorting influence of confounders (see above).[80] The purpose of random allocation is to ensure that all confounders (known and unknown) are evenly distributed between the intervention and control groups at baseline. The success of randomization in evenly distributing these characteristics is critically dependent on the sample size of the study. After successful randomization any remaining differences in baseline characteristics will be the result of chance alone and patients in the intervention and control groups should have the same probability of experiencing the primary outcome. The study will then have a small likelihood of distorted results from random and systematic error. This is the primary reason that large randomized trials are considered the gold standard for experimental studies in medicine.[79] Randomization schedules can be generated using simple, block, stratified, or covariate adjusted techniques.[81] Allocation concealment is an essential step in preventing selection bias (i.e., recruiting patients based on knowledge of the treatment to which the next study patient will be allocated).[82]

BOX 89.2 Phases of Clinical Trials

Phase I

Phase I trials test a new intervention for the first time in a small group of participants to evaluate safety.

Phase II

Phase II clinical trials study a new intervention in a larger group of participants to determine efficacy and further evaluate safety.

Phase III

Phase III trials study the efficacy of a new intervention in a large group of people by comparing it to other interventions or routine care and monitor adverse effects.

Phase IV

Phase IV trials study an intervention after it has been marketed, and monitor its effectiveness in the general population, collect information about adverse effects, and investigate its use in a different condition or in combination with other therapies.

Blinding. Randomization can effectively eliminate confounding, but it is not enough to guarantee unbiased results. Simply knowing about the treatment allocation can influence the behavior of the investigators, subsequent clinical management by the treating team, and even the symptoms that the patients experience, creating a new imbalance in confounders and undoing the benefits of randomization. The solution here is blinding: hiding the treatment allocation from the observers collecting study data, the patient, and/or the treating team.[83] Blinding observers, patients, and treating team members in phase III and IV drug trials (Box 89.2) is the norm, as matched blinded experimental and control drugs are easy (although not inexpensive) to produce.[84] Other interventions are harder to blind (e.g., intravenous albumin solutions[85]) and others cannot be blinded (e.g., epidural local anesthetics in chronic pain patients[86]). In such cases, it is important to conceal allocation as long as possible to prevent this knowledge from influencing processes of care. Every effort should be made to blind outcome observers in randomized trials.

Superiority, Equivalence, and Non-Inferiority. Randomized trials are often geared toward demonstrating that the intervention results in better outcomes than the control (“superiority”).[87] However, a randomized trial can be designed to demonstrate that the two treatments produce the same results (“equivalent”)[88] or that the one produces results at least as good as the other (“non-inferiority”).[89] Equivalence and noninferiority designs are useful if the new intervention might be simpler, safer, and/or cheaper than the current treatment, and demonstrating equivalence or non-inferiority would be sufficient to change practice.

Factorial Designs. Factorial designs allow testing of more than one intervention in a single clinical trial.[90] Rather than performing a separate randomized trial for each intervention and each combination, patients in factorial studies are separately randomized to two or more different interventions (that is, they receive none, some, or all of the experimental interventions). This design is efficient and allows testing of interactions between the interventions.

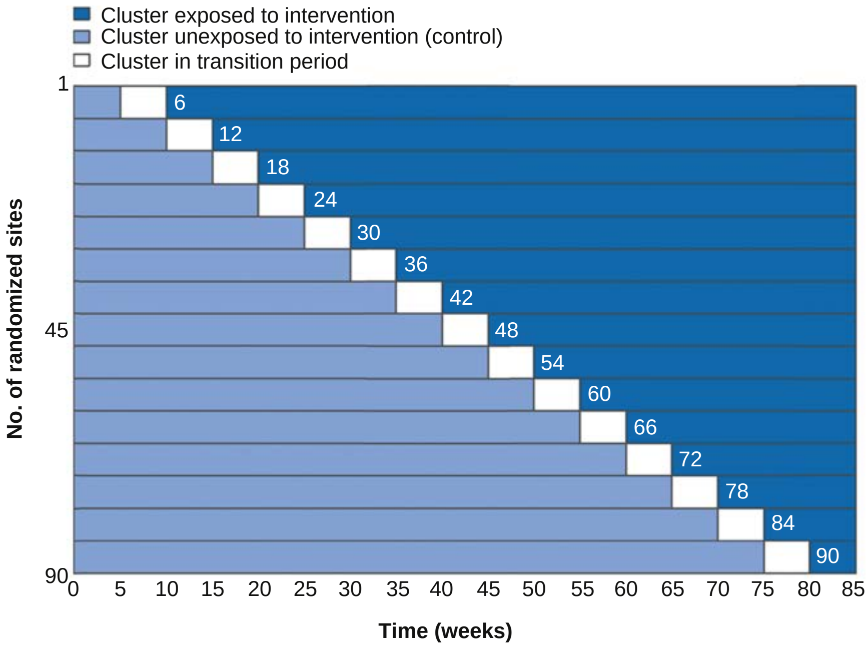


Fig. 89.3 Stepped wedge design.

For example, in a factorial trial of six interventions for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting, 4000 patients were randomized to one of 64 possible combinations of six antiemetics.[91] This design allowed the investigators to conclude that these antiemetics were similarly effective and acted independently. In another example, 5784 patients were randomized to aspirin or placebo, and in a partial factorial, 4662 of these patients were also randomized to tranexamic acid or placebo.[92,93] This allowed the investigators to determine that there were no interactions between the interventions with respect to death, thrombotic complications, or major hemorrhage.

Cluster Randomized Designs. Most studies are randomized at the patient level. Cluster randomized trial designs are needed when randomization at the patient level is not possible or is methodologically unsound. This is particularly the case for process of care interventions because the fidelity of the intervention is dependent on the execution by the treating team and blinding is often not possible.[94] Examples include cross-over cluster randomized trials of selective decontamination of the gut in intensive care patients (even though the intervention is only applied in patients randomized to the treatment group, changes to bacterial colonization profiles will extend to all the patients in the unit)[95] and randomized trials of the introduction of medical emergency teams to treat deteriorating hospital patients.[96]

Stepped Wedge Designs. Cluster randomization means that some hospitals or clinical areas implement the new intervention, and some must remain with the existing model of care. Before-and-after studies are contaminated by the effects of time and cross-over cluster randomized trials have the disadvantage that clusters that were first randomized to the new intervention must revert to the existing model of care. A stepped wedge design circumvents some of these ethical and methodological issues by ensuring that each cluster first provides data for the control condition and then crosses over to the new intervention (Fig. 89.3).[97,98] This may improve recruitment of centers and patients. The duration of these periods differs for every cluster, but at the end of the study period there will be an equal amount of data from control and intervention periods. This eliminates—to a large extent—the effects of time. Stepped wedge designs were originally used in vaccination studies, exploiting the natural limitation that vaccination programs can never be rolled out over an entire region in a very short time frame.[99] They are considered alternatives for randomized trials of complex interventions, provided that there is a high likelihood of a positive effect of the intervention and a very low risk of harm.[97]

ANALYSES OF PUBLISHED RESEARCH

Systematic Reviews

The explosion in published medical knowledge and the requirement for quick answers to urgent clinical questions means that reliable synthesis of the medical literature is invaluable. Traditional narrative reviews are prone to author biases (sometimes even outright conflicts of interest), because authors can “cherry pick” the literature for evidence supporting their own opinions. Systematic reviews pose an explicit research question and publish a transparent search strategy that every reader can replicate and update.[100] The Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses (PRISMA) statement is available to guide authors of systematic reviews.[101] However, the quality of reporting and methodological quality of reviews remains inconsistent.[102]

Metaanalyses

When multiple randomized trials have addressed similar research questions, interventions, and outcomes, the results can be mathematically aggregated in a metaanalysis,[100] the goal of which is to estimate the aggregated effect of the intervention. A high-quality metaanalysis of large

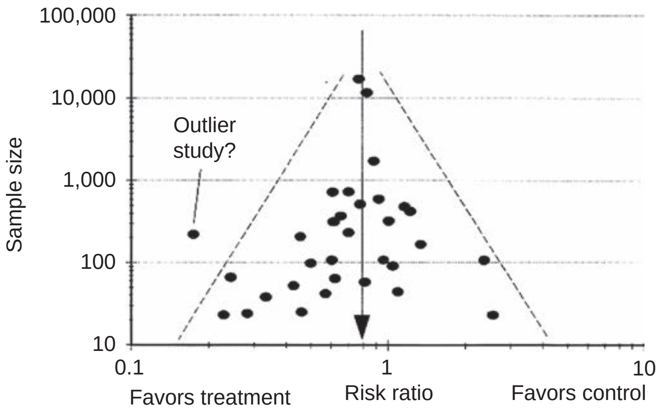


Fig. 89.4 Funnel plot showing publication bias: overrepresentation of studies with small sample sizes showing larger treatment effects.

well-conducted randomized trials is considered the highest level of evidence to guide practice, although results of meta-analyses do not always agree with subsequent very large trials.[103] The Cochrane Collaboration is dedicated to performing systematic reviews and metaanalyses that inform clinical practice. The Collaboration's software tools ("RevMan" and "Covidence") generate analyses, graphs, and metrics about the quality of included studies.[104,105] Funnel plots of treatment effect against study precision are used to detect publication bias toward studies with large treatment effects (typical of small trials) (Fig. 89.4).

Individual Patient Metaanalysis

A more powerful form of metaanalysis aggregates results using individual patient data, rather than aggregated data from the included studies.[106,107] The benefits of this approach are better characterization of outcomes and the opportunity to perform new subgroup analyses. The challenges of this approach include obtaining the raw data (with one paper reporting that only 25% of these meta-analyses retrieved all individual patient data[108]) and reliably merging trial databases containing the original data into the new pooled database. A standard aggregated data metaanalysis will illuminate whether an individual patient data metaanalysis will yield sufficient new information to justify the additional time and effort.

Study Protocol

A carefully designed protocol is the foundation of all clinical research, facilitating the review, conduct, and eventual publication of the study (Fig. 89.5).[109] However protocols are often incomplete and inconsistent with their corresponding published reports.[110,111] In response, templates have been developed, including by the World Health Organisation,[112] the International Council for Harmonisation,[113] national research funding agencies,[114] and the Equator Network (the Standard Protocol Items: Recommendations for Interventional Trials [SPIRIT] statement[115,116]). The effectiveness of these templates in improving the quality of protocols is yet to be determined. Amendments to clinical research protocols must be approved by the coordinating institutional review board (human research ethics committee) and must be reflected in the trial's registration. The International Committee of Medical Journal Editors recommends that investigators make their protocols publicly available before any results are published, for example by posting them on institutional websites or publishing them in peer-reviewed journals.[117]

HYPOTHESES

All clinical research—from a case report through qualitative and observational projects to a multicenter clinical trial—begins with a research question. These questions arise from a myriad of sources: the existing literature, the previous work of the investigators, interactions with colleagues, observations during clinical work, and discussions with patients and their families. A well formulated research question guides the literature review (which establishes the need for the study); informs the study design, methods, and sample size; and limits the potential for error and bias.[118] The Population-Intervention-Comparator-Outcome-Time-frame-Setting (PICOTS) format is a popular framework among clinical researchers[119] and improves the quality of research questions.[118] In an observational study, the "intervention" and "comparator" can be patient-based (e.g., with or without intraoperative hypotension) or care-based (e.g., treated in a metropolitan or rural hospital). In a clinical trial, the intervention and comparator are randomized. During protocol development, research questions are transformed into formal hypotheses. The structure of the hypothesis depends on whether the investigators predict that one group will have superior, equivalent, or non-inferior outcomes to the others. Regardless of this prediction, two-sided hypothesis testing is preferable: that is, entertaining the possibility that standard treatment is better or that the treatments are not equivalent.[120]

POPULATION

Selection of participants depends on the purpose and context of the study, and is a key differentiator between explanatory and pragmatic studies.[121,122] Explanatory (efficacy) studies, such as observational studies of new drugs and devices or phase I to III clinical trials, include highly selected patients in highly controlled settings, to reduce variability between patients and maximize treatment effects. The generalizability of explanatory studies therefore is limited. Pragmatic (effectiveness) studies, such as phase IV clinical trials, include typical patients receiving real-world care.[123] Random sampling is approximated by approaching all patients who have indications for the treatment and who present themselves for care. In practice, however, only a subset of patients is approached. Further nonrandom selection occurs when patients decline to participate or fail to complete data collection.[122] Although national funders promote diversity among participants,[124] children, elderly people, pregnant and lactating women (indeed, women in general), culturally and linguistically diverse people, and people with disabilities are still underrepresented in clinical research.[125-127] An additional factor is failure to identify underrepresented people (e.g., transgender people) among recruited participants.[128] Ideally studies should be powered to allow analysis of major sub-group effects.[124,126]

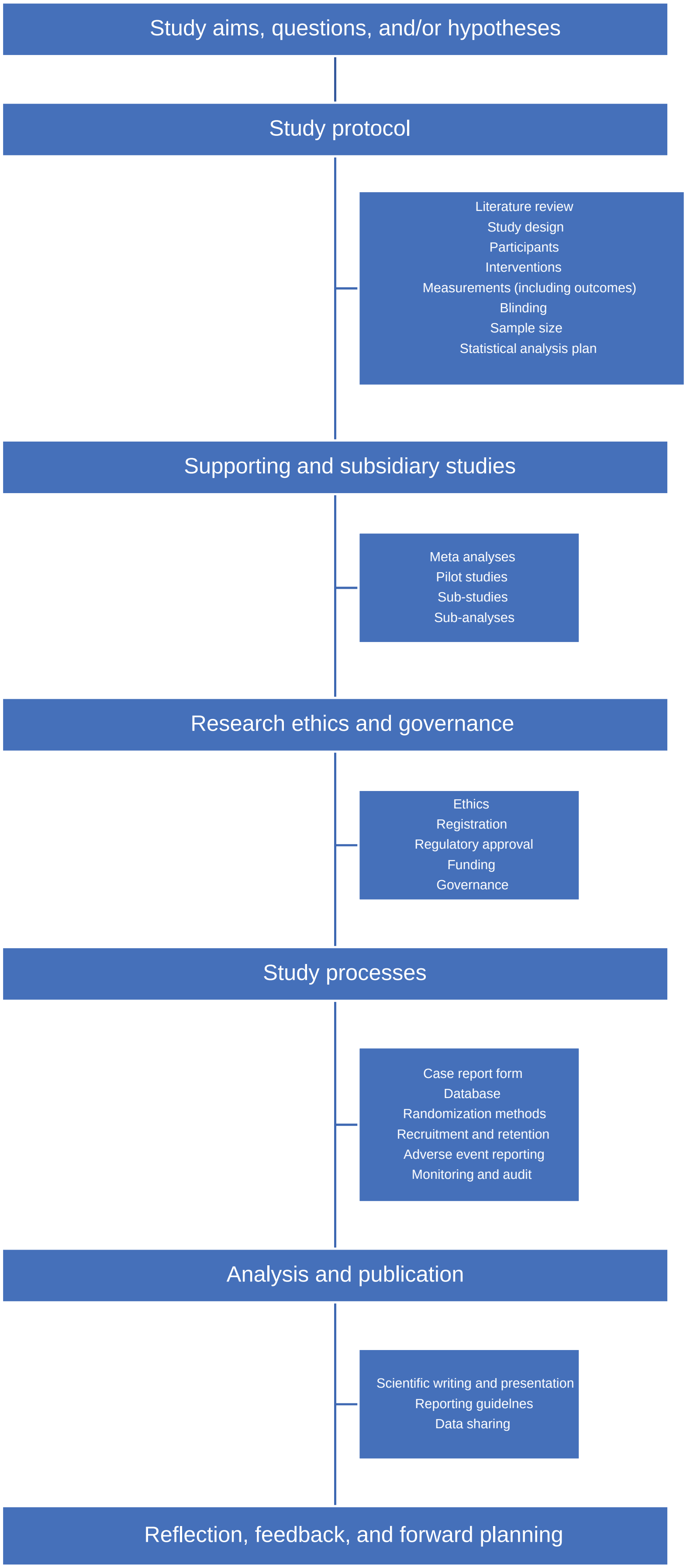

Study aims, questions, and/or hypotheses
Study protocol
Literature review
Study design
Participants
Interventions
Measurements (including outcomes)
Blinding
Sample size
Statistical analysis plan
Supporting and subsidiary studies
Meta analyses
Pilot studies
Sub-studies
Sub-analyses
Research ethics and governance
Ethics
Registration
Regulatory approval
Funding
Governance
Study processes
Case report form
Database
Randomization methods
Recruitment and retention
Adverse event reporting
Monitoring and audit
Analysis and publication
Scientific writing and presentation
Reporting guidelnes
Data sharing
Reflection, feedback, and forward planning

Fig. 89.5 Life cycle of a clinical research project.

INTERVENTIONS AND COMPARATORS

Nearly all clinical research involves an intervention (e.g., a drug, device, procedure, diagnostic test, bundle of care, etc.). In observational studies, the intervention is administered as part of usual care, whereas in experimental studies the intervention is administered by or on behalf of the investigators. Many studies involving an intervention also involve a comparator (e.g., placebo, usual care, or current best practice).[129] The comparator should be the best proven intervention, except when no such intervention exists.[109] In this case, a placebo may be appropriate. Usual care needs to be defined at the outset and monitored for change over time. Current best practice needs to be supported by guidelines and ensured during the study.[129] For a study to be ethical, there must be uncertainty in the expert community about the relative merits of the intervention(s) and comparator(s), and the study must be designed to resolve it (clinical equipoise).[130] Complex perioperative interventions and comparators may not be fully or properly implemented in pragmatic studies, and this variation may be nonrandom. For this reason, patients are usually analyzed in the groups to which they are assigned (intention-to-treat analysis).

OUTCOMES

Outcomes are events that may result from or be associated with an action taken during a study. Ideally, outcomes in clinical research influence the way clinicians practice and the choices that patients make.[131] Although patient-reported outcomes are subjective, they can greatly enhance the impact of the study if properly developed and implemented.[132,133] Binary outcomes that can be expressed as probabilities are easier to interpret than continuous outcomes, which can be converted to binary outcomes by defining an appropriately validated cut-off value.[131] Composite outcomes can be a useful means of assessing the impact of an event or intervention but can be misleading if the components are dissimilar in frequency, magnitude, direction of effect, or importance.[134] Surrogate outcomes occur between the event or intervention and the true outcome, and are used to draw conclusions about the true outcome. To be valid, the relationship between the surrogate and true outcome must be precisely defined.[135] Occasionally surrogate outcomes indicate the direction and magnitude of the effect of the intervention on the true outcome (e.g., the effect of anti-arrhythmic drugs on ventricular ectopic beats and sudden death post-myocardial infarction[136]). The primary outcome is the focus of the study and will be the basis of the sample size calculation. Secondary and safety outcomes should reflect the important beneficial and adverse effects of the event or intervention. Careful definition of outcomes and the timing of their measurement are fundamental to protocol development.

SAMPLE SIZE

A study needs a sufficient number of participants to provide reliable conclusions about the specified outcomes and treatment effects. If the number of study participants is too low, the investigators could incorrectly conclude that there is no treatment effect.[137] If the number of study participants is too large, it may delay the availability of information that is vital to patient care. In both cases resources will be wasted and participants will be exposed to unnecessary risk. A sample size calculation therefore should be conducted in the design phase of all studies. In qualitative and observational research, investigators should justify the reasons for their sampling frame (the population from which the sample is drawn).[20] This should be based on the availability of interviewees or relevant data in an appropriate format, or the investigators' expectations about the numbers of eligible participants and/or their estimates of acceptable 95% confidence intervals around the incidence of the primary outcome.[138] In comparative studies, sample size calculations are based on the expected difference in the primary outcome between the groups (effect size), the variance in the effect size (for continuous variables), and the risk that the investigators are willing to accept of false positive (α; type 1 error) and false negative (β; type 2 error) findings.[139,140] Effect sizes and variances can be estimated from the literature, pilot studies, statistical methods, or opinions about minimal clinically important differences.[141] The planned sample size will also depend on the number of groups, number of anticipated dropouts, and statistical analyses planned. The protocol should provide sufficient information to allow replication of quantitative sample size calculations.[138,140] In the anesthesia literature this is frequently not the case.[142] Post hoc calculation of statistical power using the results of a trial is inappropriate; the width of the confidence intervals around the primary outcome is a better indicator of the reliability of the result.[140]

DATA ANALYSIS PLAN

The details of data analysis are outside the scope of this chapter, and increasingly outside the scope of clinician researchers and reviewers.[143] Statistics training or collaboration with biostatisticians or experts in qualitative data analysis is commonly required to reach the level of statistical excellence required by regulators, funders, and journals. Statistical input is vital during the planning of clinical research, particularly in relation to the sample size calculation. The protocol should also include a plan for description of the data and analyses of the primary and secondary outcomes, subgroup and adjusted analyses, sensitivity analyses, interim analyses and stopping rules, and protocol adherence, as applicable.[115,116,144-146] The detailed statistical analysis plan for large observational studies and clinical trials is often published before the unblinded data are available, and at least should be predefined.[147] Peer-reviewed journals may require submission of the statistical analysis plan with the manuscript, require statistical checklists, and employ statistical editorial teams to assist with the evaluation of manuscripts.[143,146]

SUPPORTING STUDIES

Feasibility and Pilot Studies

Most clinical studies are inspired by prior research of some kind. Increasingly, however, preliminary work is specifically undertaken to demonstrate the viability of a future large observational or experimental study.[148,149] A feasibility study tests whether a future study can be done,[150] examining the knowledge and interest of practitioners, availability of eligible patients, their willingness to participate, ease of applying the intervention and collecting data, qualities of the primary outcome, and resource requirements of the study. A pilot study is a type of feasibility study that tests the proposed hypotheses of a future study, without being scaled to test the effectiveness of interventions nor the strength of associations.[130] Pilot studies are frequently used to inform sample size calculations for the future studies, although this process may be flawed.[151] The rationale for the sample size of the feasibility study itself should be congruent with the feasibility objectives, but need not involve a formal sample size calculation.[150] Pilot studies are subject to the same ethical and regulatory requirements as definitive studies.

Sub-Studies

Sub-studies are an efficient means of investigating additional research questions using additional data collected in subsets of participants in large clinical trials. They are subject to the same ethical and regulatory requirements as the main study, and ideally are planned simultaneously. Substudies can investigate additional outcomes related to the randomized intervention, in which case they can be considered nested randomized trials.[152,153] They can investigate the associations of additional unrandomized exposures (e.g., biomarkers) with the same outcomes, in which case they can be considered nested cohort studies.[152,154] Finally, they can investigate the associations of additional unrandomized exposures with additional outcomes: these are also nested cohort studies and are an efficient use of a unique cohort.[152,155] The effect of additional randomized exposures is more properly evaluated using a factorial study design. Principal design considerations for sub-studies include adequate sample size and limiting the burden on investigators and patients.

Sub-Analyses

Sub-analyses are an efficient means of investigating additional research questions using data collected for another primary research purpose. Some sub-analyses are planned before the main study begins (e.g., population subgroup analyses). Others are planned after the data have been collected or the main results have been published and may address unanticipated events or discoveries. In any case the statistical analysis plan should be finalized before the analyses begin.[147] Sub-analyses can investigate the associations of unrandomized exposures (e.g., baseline characteristics, processes of care, measured variables) with the primary and secondary outcomes,[156,157] or the detailed effects of the randomized intervention on secondary outcomes.[158,159] Propensity scoring methods are increasingly used to determine the probability of a participant receiving a nonrandomized treatment given a particular set of baseline characteristics, and to compensate for this by stratifying, matching, weighting, or adjusting on the basis of the propensity score.[156,160,161] However these methods are heavily reliant on the collection of appropriate and complete baseline data, and do not reduce confounding by unmeasured or unknown factors (e.g., the reasons the anesthesiologist chose a particular technique or defended a particular blood pressure).[160,161]

Ethical and Regulatory Considerations

ETHICS APPROVAL

All research on humans must be conducted within a system that ensures the safety and privacy of the participants.[109,113,162-166] This system can be local, national, or multinational. The degree of scrutiny is based on the potential for risk, discomfort, inconvenience, burden, and threats to privacy. Depending upon the jurisdiction, low-risk research (e.g., audits and surveys) may be conducted without review under policies that promote ethical conduct, or under expedited review processes.[164,166] Research that is not low-risk is considered by an institutional review board. The board approves the processes for obtaining consent or may waive or qualify consent if the risk to participants is low.[109,113,162-165] Deferred consent is also possible in urgent care research in some jurisdictions.[166] Approaching patients for the first time about a study on the day of surgery is acceptable to patients,[167,168] but participation rates are lower than before the day of surgery.[169]

REGISTRATION

Clinical trial registration was introduced in response to concerns about publication bias and selective reporting.[170] Additional aims of registration include reducing waste from unnecessary duplication of studies and improving access to clinical trial participation and results for patients.[171] Initial efforts involved mandating registration of a minimum dataset of protocol information before the enrollment of the first patient.[117,172] Subsequently efforts were expanded to mandating public disclosure of aggregated trial results, including those that were negative or inconclusive.[16,109,172-174] These efforts have not been completely successful.[171] For example, in a report about anesthesiology registration, although rates of registration had improved since 2007, 62% of clinical trials published in six specialty journals in 2015 were still inadequately registered.[175] Further culture change among funders, institutional review boards, investigators, and publishers will be required.[171,176] Registration of observational research is encouraged,[177] but is currently voluntary, partly because of concerns that registration may stifle exploratory analyses.[178]

REGULATORY APPROVAL

Federal, national, and state government agencies regulate the manufacture, import/export, supply, marketing, and surveillance of drugs and medical devices, with the aim of optimizing access to safe and effective therapeutic goods. There is some harmonization between jurisdictions.[179,180] Regulatory authorization is required for clinical trials of therapeutic goods that are not yet approved (phase I-III trials) or are being tested for an indication outside the current approval (phase IV trials).[181] The sponsor, institutional review board, and regulator collaborate in protecting patients who are exposed to unapproved therapeutic goods during clinical trials. This collaboration can be especially complex for international investigator-initiated clinical trials, and must be carefully considered in the planning phase.

DATA SHARING

Sharing of individual patient data from clinical trials is in the public interest, on scientific, economic, and ethical grounds.[182] Third parties may wish to verify trial results, correct errors, explore new hypotheses, or use the data in individual patient data metaanalyses.[175] Funding agencies, publishers, investigators, and the pharmaceutical industry have issued position statements about data sharing.[182-185] Retreating from its initial proposal of mandating data sharing,[186] the International Committee of Medical Journal Editors currently requires investigators to include a data sharing plan in the trial's registration and a data sharing statement in the primary manuscript.[184] These statements and plans must disclose whether, what, with whom, and how data will be shared. This position recognizes the current lack of policies, resources, and culture that will protect the interests of patients and investigators.[184] In order to be effective and responsible, data sharing must be planned from the outset of a clinical trial, as it involves clarifying the need for patient consent, constructing appropriate data management systems, and securing adequate funding.[185,187]

Study Management

FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

Good clinical practice requires investigators and sponsors to document and agree on the financial aspects of a study.[113] Budgets and contracts are approved as part of the research governance process. All clinical research has a cost: even a case report requires retrieval of medical records, preparation of illustrations, and investment of investigator time. The cost of research is increasing in line with the increased size and complexity of clinical research. At the same time, the ability or inclination of health services to absorb costs that are not directly related to patient care is decreasing. Investigators therefore must obtain funding from other sources, including government agencies, commercial enterprises, and philanthropic organizations. This process can be time-consuming and stressful.[188] One study estimated that 34 working days of the principal writer's time was spent preparing each new proposal for a national funding round.[189] Only 20% of these proposals were funded. Streamlined and flexible application processes, and rules regarding resubmission of unsuccessful proposals, may reduce workload and increase success.[188,189]

DATA MANAGEMENT

The protocol should list each item of data to be collected, its source, and the timing of measurement.[115] The ethics review process addresses whether the proposed data collection meets privacy and data security requirements.[113] In explanatory studies, such as phase I-III clinical trials, the volume of data collected can be large, whereas in pragmatic studies data collection should be limited to vital measurements only.[190] Three main options are available for data collection: (1) a bespoke case report form; (2) data extraction from existing sources (such as medical records, registries, and administrative databases); and (3) a hybrid approach.[190] Case report forms can be printed or electronic, with electronic forms offering mechanisms to ensure complete and accurate data entry.[191] Data will then be transferred to a database that is usually established specifically for the study. Increasingly anesthesia research protocols require linkage of records of individual patients or groups across unrelated databases, requiring the input of health informaticians and raising issues of privacy and data security.[192]

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGEMENT

The human resources associated with clinical research include the investigators, trial coordinators, treating clinicians, and patients. Ethics and governance processes address whether the legitimate interests and rights of these parties are protected during the study.[113] Investigators and trial coordinators should be suitability qualified, experienced, and competent for the research they propose to undertake, and ideally should have International Council for Harmonisation E6 Good Clinical Practice certification[113] (a requirement of some funding bodies[193]). Clinical trial networks can play a big role in nurturing careers and fostering collaboration. Treating clinicians need to be advised about their role in implementing the protocol and be engaged in ensuring the success of the study. This is especially important in protocols that require the continuous attention of the treating clinician during an anesthetic[194] or critical care unit stay.[85] Recruiting patients to anesthesia and critical care studies can be difficult, because of time constraints and multiple competing priorities. A systematic review of recruitment strategies identified that open rather than blinded treatment allocation, and phone follow-up to written invitations to participate, significantly improved recruitment.[195] Loss to follow-up is very low in anesthesia and critical care studies, because time frames for data collection are often short and patients are in the operating room or hospital for most or all of the study.[85,156,194] A systematic review of retention strategies in ambulatory settings reported that only monetary incentives improved retention.[196]

ADVERSE EVENT REPORTING

Adverse event reporting is a crucial step in ensuring the safety of participants in all clinical research (Box 89.3).[197] An adverse event is any unfavorable and unintended occurrence associated with the use of a medicinal product, whether or not it is related to that product. Adverse events can be categorized by severity (intensity), seriousness (effect on patient outcome), expectedness (observed before), and causality (attributability to the medicinal product).[197] Expedited reporting of adverse events to regulators and institutional review boards is an essential part of phase I to III trials.[172,198] For phase IV trials, universal safety endpoints and unexpected adverse events are reported periodically by the trial's data and safety monitoring board. Only serious unexpected events that would be reported as part of routine clinical care are reported immediately to regulators and institutional review boards. The primary report of a clinical trial should include a table of adverse events by system and/or severity.[172,198] Adverse event reporting is burdensome and costly, and therefore should be aligned with the risk to patient safety of the medicinal product.[199-201]

BOX 89.3 **Definitions of Adverse Events in Clinical Research**

Adverse event: Any untoward medical occurrence associated with the use of a drug in humans, whether or not considered drug related.

Suspected adverse reaction: Any adverse event for which there is a reasonable possibility that the drug caused the adverse event.

Unexpected: Any adverse event or suspected adverse reaction that is not listed in the investigator brochure (or general investigational plan) or is not listed at the specificity or severity that has been observed.

Serious adverse event or suspected adverse reaction: Any adverse event or suspected adverse reaction that results in any of the following outcomes: death, a life-threatening adverse event, inpatient hospitalization or prolongation of existing hospitalization, a persistent or significant incapacity or substantial disruption of the ability to conduct normal life functions, or a congenital anomaly/birth defect.

Life-threatening: An adverse event or suspected adverse reaction that places the patient or subject at immediate risk of death. It does not include an adverse event or suspected adverse reaction that, had it occurred in a more severe form, might have caused death.

MONITORING AND AUDIT

Monitoring is "the act of overseeing the progress of a clinical trial."[113] All clinical studies require some monitoring, to ensure that participants are protected; the study is being conducted in accordance with its approvals; and the data are complete, accurate, and verifiable.[113] Monitoring may range from simple checks by the investigators through on-site monitoring by the sponsor or a contract research organization. Increasingly, centralized monitoring is being used to look for data trends and integrity issues.[202] Audit is "a systematic and independent examination of trial related activities and documents."[113] Audits are conducted by institutional review boards, regulators, and funders, sometimes after a concern is raised about a study. In clinical trials, quality management is the responsibility of the data and safety monitoring board. The board can review unblinded data and adverse event reports, and make assessments about the evolving balance between efficacy and risk in the study. Boards and board members need to be independent, and increasingly need to be trained for the heavy academic, legal, and ethical responsibilities involved.[203]

Study Reporting

MANUSCRIPT

Accurate, complete, and timely reporting of results supports research integrity and usefulness. Reporting guidelines are available for a wide range of study designs and populations, and compliance with these guidelines and completion of checklists and flow diagrams is mandated by some journals.[117,204] For example, the STROBE and Consolidated Standards Of Reporting Trials (CONSORT) statements aim to improve the quality of reporting of observational studies and randomized trials respectively.[20,138-140] The quality of reporting of randomized controlled trials has improved over time, but it is unclear if this is due to the CONSORT statement.[205] A systematic review about the effect of journal endorsement of the statement on quality of reporting identified a significant improvement in reporting for only five of the 27 items,[206] highlighting the need for research into adherence to guidelines.[207] Research is only useful if the investigators communicate effectively with their intended audience. As well as reporting guidelines[204] and instructions from journal editors,[117] researchers are advised to consult resources about writing clear and graceful prose.

AUTHORSHIP

Investigators can be involved in the concept, design, funding, governance, management, data collection, analysis, and/or reporting of clinical research. The International Committee of Medical Journal Editors recommends that authorship be based on substantial contributions to the research, approval of the submitted manuscripts, and agreement to be accountable for all aspects of the work.[117] Honorary authorship to recognize contributions that do not meet the recommendations (such as leading the department in which the work was done or technical editing of the manuscript) is thereby prohibited. Criteria for authorship and for acknowledging non-author contributions should be established before the research commences and reviewed at manuscript submission.[117,208] With increases in numbers of authors, multi-investigator groups, and data sharing, solutions to acknowledging contributions to research are rapidly evolving.[208-210]

PUBLISHING

Researchers need to choose their target journal with care, taking into consideration the subject and potential impact of their research, the requirements of funders for open access publication, and the bona fides of the target journal. Legitimate publishers conform to recognized standards of publication ethics.[117,211] Open access options are available for a fee in traditional subscription journals and legitimate open access journals. So-called "predatory" open access journals aggressively seek submissions through "spam" email, do not conform to ethical standards, and may charge high fees without delivering on open access or indeed publishing at all.[212,213] Various resources are available to help authors identify predatory journals, although these are imperfect due to increasing numbers of both legitimate and predatory journals.[212-214]

RESEARCH INTEGRITY

Research integrity is "active adherence to the ethical principles and professional standards essential for the responsible practice of research."[215] Research misconduct includes fabrication, falsification, plagiarism, misleading reporting, redundant publication, abuse of authorship, conflict of interest infringements, funding infringements, fraud in the peer review process, and unethical research (in particular, in relation to patient consent and protection).[216-218] Research misconduct damages the reputation of science and scientists, and is a threat to patient safety. A systematic review on interventions to improve research integrity concluded that the evidence for effectiveness was sparse, of low quality, and concentrated on short-term outcomes.[219] Plagiarism, which ranges from intellectual theft through careless practice to self-plagiarism (not strictly speaking plagiarism but possibly duplicate publication),[220] is the most common form of research misconduct.[221] Practical training may reduce plagiarism[219] and routine screening using text-matching software may reduce plagiarism in submitted papers.

Reflection, Feedback, and Forward Planning

Continuous quality improvement is now mainstream in clinical practice and medical education.[222] Practitioners and students are encouraged to reflect on their experiences; note what they did well and where they could do better; discuss these reflections with their supervisors or teachers; and give their colleagues or teachers feedback about the quality of the workplace or learning environment. At the end of this cycle plans are made for the future. Researchers could benefit from a similar cycle of reflection, feedback, and forward planning. While a lot of helpful information and training about designing and conducting clinical research is available, including in *Miller's Anesthesia*, each researcher has unique aptitudes and works in a unique context. We recommend that researchers keep a journal about each research project, reflect on their experience when the project is completed, and share strategies for success with their peers and junior colleagues. Finally, as well as giving patients an opportunity to contribute to study design, giving patients an opportunity to comment on the results of studies in which they participated might give researchers fresh insights and open up new avenues of research.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Institute of Medicine. Washington: National Academy Press; 2001.
2. Coggon D, et al. http://www.bmj.com/about-bmj/resources-readers/publications/epidemiology-uninitiated.
3. Keus F, et al. *BMC Med Res Methodol*. 2010;10:90.
4. Schwartz S, et al. *Epidemiology*. 2015;26:216.
5. Sessler DI, Imrey PB. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:1034.
6. Vetter TR, Mascha EJ. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125.
7. Short T, Leslie K. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:897.
8. Chu R, et al. *PLoS One*. 2012;7:e36677.
9. Zhao W. *Contemp Clin Trials*. 2013;36:263.
10. Moons KG, et al. *BMJ*. 2009;338:b606.
11. Song F, et al. *Health Technol Assess*. 2010;14:1.
12. Akl EA, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2015;5:e008431.
13. Wasserstein R, Lazar N. *Am Stat*. 2016;70:129.
14. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2009;62:13. e15.
15. Ioannidis JPA. *JAMA*. 2018 (in press).
16. World Health Organization. International clinical trials registry platform. international standards for clinical trial registries. http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/76705/1/9789241504294_eng.pdf?ua=1&ua=1.
17. Sessler DI, Imrey PB. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:1043.
18. Doll R, Hill AB. *BMJ*. 1950;2:739.
19. Hill AB. *Proc R Soc Med*. 1965;58:295.
20. von Elm E, et al. *PLoS Med*. 2007;4:e296.
21. Rao A, et al. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0155078.
22. Kruger BD, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:1898.
23. Rosenblatt MA, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:217.
24. Denborough MA, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 1962;34:395.
25. Griffith H, Johnson E. *Anesthesiology*. 1942;3:418.
26. Brain AI. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:801.
27. Rodseth RN, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2011;58:522.
28. Moons KG, et al. *Clin Chem*. 2004;50:473.
29. O'Leary JD, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:272.
30. McIsaac DI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:480.
31. Riazi S, et al. *Diabetes Care*. 2012;35:2575.
32. Chung F, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:812.
33. Busato P, et al. *Sao Paulo Med J*. 2017;135:116.
34. Bijker JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:658.
35. Nuttall GA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1410.
36. Wacholder S, et al. *Am J Epidemiol*. 1992;135:1019.
37. Devereaux PJ, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;317:1642.
38. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Lancet*. 2008;372:562.
39. Liu JB, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:283.
40. Ladha K, et al. *BMJ*. 2015;351:h3646.
41. Rubin DB. *Stat Med*. 2007;26:20.
42. Minto C, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:10.
43. Schnider T, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1502.
44. Kannampallil T, et al. *Pain*. 2016;157:2739.
45. Ma Y, et al. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37:99.
46. Reynolds PS, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:1400.
47. Shulman M, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:524.
48. Abu-Arafeh A, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117:569.
49. Fitzpatrick R, et al. *Health Technol Assess*. 1998;2(i–iv):1.
50. Hunt TD, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2012;2:e000665.
51. Hooper TD, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2015;43:461.
52. Wijeysundera DN. *Can J Anaesth*. 2016;63:148.
53. Rathore SS, et al. *Circulation*. 2003;107:811.
54. Kalkman CJ, et al. *Pain*. 2003;105:415.
55. Sheth T, et al. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h1907.
56. Goldman L, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;307:588.
57. Canet J, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:1338.
58. Bilimoria KY, et al. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;217:833.
59. Zimmerman JE, et al. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1297.
60. American Statistical Association. What is a survey? www.amstat.org/sections/srms/whatsurvey.html.
61. Jones D, et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2006;34:245.
62. Tait AR, Voepel-Lewis T. *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25:656.
63. Klabunde CN, et al. *Eval Health Prof*. 2012;35:477.
64. Story DA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:591.
65. Lohr KN, Steinwachs DM. *Health Services Research*. 2002;37:7.
66. Wijeysundera DN, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:25.
67. Moonesinghe SR, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7:e017690.
68. Lane-Fall MB, et al. *BMC Surgery*. 2014;14:96.
69. Emond YE, et al. *Implement Sci*. 2015;10:3.
70. Harris AD, et al. *Clin Infect Dis*. 2004;38:1586.
71. Sterne JA, et al. *BMJ*. 2016;355:i4919.
72. Paneth N, Fine P. *Lancet*. 2013;381:1267.
73. Ho AMH, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
74. Alvarez MP, et al. *Surg Endosc*. 2015;29:2506.
75. Streeter AJ, et al. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2017;87:23.
76. Wellek S, Blettner M. *Dtsch Arztebl Int*. 2012;109:276.
77. Niesters M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:1010.
78. Colloca L, Miller FG. *Psychosomatic Med*. 2011;73:598.
79. Sackett DL, Rosenberg WM. . *J R Soc Med*. 1995;88:620.
80. Roberts C, Torgerson D. *BMJ*. 1998;317:1301.
81. Suresh K. *J Hum Reprod Sci*. 2011;4:8.
82. Torgerson DJ, Roberts C. *BMJ*. 1999;319:375.
83. Wartolowska K, et al. *F1000Res*. 2017;6:1663.
84. Candiotti KA, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:445.
85. Finfer S, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:2247.
86. van Wijck AJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2006;367:219.
87. Mascha EJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:779.
88. Davidson AJ, et al. *Lancet*. 2016;387:239.
89. Connolly SJ, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361:1139.
90. Sessler DI, Imrey PB. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:1052.
91. Apfel C, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:2441.
92. Myles PS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:136.
93. Myles PS, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;374:728.

94. Brown C, Lilford R. *BMJ*. 2008;337:a2764.
95. de Smet AM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:20.
96. Hillman K, et al. *Lancet*. 2005;365:2091.
97. Hemming K, et al. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h391.
98. Ellenberg SS. *JAMA*. 2018;319:607.
99. The Gambia Hepatitis Study Group. *Cancer Res*. 1987;47:5782.
100. Moller AM, Myles PS. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117:428.
101. Moher D, et al. *PLoS Med*. 2009;6:e1000097.
102. Pussegoda K, et al. *Syst Rev*. 2017;6:131.
103. Sivakumar H, Peyton PJ. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117:431.
104. The Cochrane Collaboration. RevMan5. London. http://www.cochrane.org.
105. The Cochrane Collaboration. Covidence. London. http://community.cochrane.org/tools/review-production-tools/covidence.
106. Debray TP, et al. *Res Synth Methods*. 2015;6:293.
107. Thomas D, et al. *BMC Med Res Methodol*. 2014;14:79.
108. Nevitt SJ, et al. *BMJ*. 2017;357:j1390.
109. World Medical Association. www.wma.net/en/30publications/10policies/b3/index.html. Accessed March 8 2018.
110. Pildal J, et al. *BMJ*. 2005;330:1049.
111. Hrobjartsson A, et al. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2009;62:967.
112. World Health Organization. http://www.who.int/rpc/research_ethics/format_rp/en/. Accessed April 8 2018.
113. ICH Expert Working Group. https://www.ich.org/fileadmin/Public_Web_Site/ICH_Products/Guidelines/Efficacy/E6/E6_R2__Addendum_Step2.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
114. National Institutes of Health and Food and Drug Agency. https://grants.nih.gov/grants/guide/notice-files/NOT-OD-17-064.html. Accessed March 6 2018.
115. Chan AW, et al. *Ann Intern Med*. 2013;158:200.
116. Chan AW, et al. *BMJ*. 2013;346:e7586.
117. International Committee of Medical Journal. In: *Recommendations for the Conduct, Reporting, Editing, and Publication of Scholarly work in Medical Journals*. 2017. http://www.icmje.org/icmje-recommendations.pdf. Accessed April 7 2018.
118. Rios LP, et al. *BMC Med Res Methodol*. 2010;10:11.
119. Haynes RB. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2006;59:881.
120. Nizamuddin SL, et al. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1878.
121. Loudon K, et al. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h2147.
122. Oude Rengerink K, et al. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2017;89:173.
123. Sackett DL. *Pol Arch Med Wewn*. 2011;121:259.
124. National Institutes of Health. https://grants.nih.gov/grants/guide/notice-files/NOT-OD-18-014.html.
125. Geller SE, et al. *J Womens Health (Larchmt)*. 2011;20:315.
126. Spong CY, Bianchi DW. *JAMA*. 2018;319:337.
127. Hughson JA, et al. *Trials*. 2016;17:263.
128. Reisner SL, et al. *Lancet*. 2016;388:412.
129. Zuidgeest MGP, et al. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2017;90:92.
130. Freedman B. *N Engl J Med*. 1987;317:141.
131. Welsing PM, et al. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2017;90:99.
132. Kyte D, et al. *PLoS One*. 2014;9:e110229.
133. Calvert M, et al. *JAMA*. 2018;319:483.
134. Myles PS, Devereaux PJ. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:776.
135. Baker SG. *Stat Med*. 2018;37:507.
136. The CAST Investigators. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;321:406.
137. Halpern SD, et al. *JAMA*. 2002;288:358.
138. Vandenbroucke JP, et al. *PLoS Med*. 2007;4:e297.
139. Schulz KF, et al. *Trials*. 2010;11:32.
140. Moher D, et al. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2010;63:e1–37.
141. Cook JA, et al. *Health Technol Assess*. 2014;18:1.
142. Abdulatif M, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:699.
143. Mascha EJ, Vetter TR. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:719.
144. ICH Expert Working Group. http://www.ich.org/fileadmin/Public_Web_Site/ICH_Products/Guidelines/Efficacy/E9/Step4/E9_Guideline.pdf.
145. Thomas L, Peterson ED. *JAMA*. 2012;308:773.
146. Lang TA, Altman DG. *Int J Nurs Stud*. 2015;52:5.
147. Eisenach JC, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:998.
148. Thabane L, et al. *Trials*. 2011;12:48.
149. Story D. et al. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2018.
150. Eldridge SM, et al. *BMJ*. 2016;355:i5239.
151. Kraemer HC. et al. *Arch Gen Psychiatry*. 2006;63:484.
152. Kirkegaard H, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;318:341.
153. Bro-Jeppesen J, et al. *Circ Cardiovasc Interv*. 2014;7:663.
154. Frydland M, et al. *Am J Cardiol*. 2016;118:998.
155. Gilje P, et al. *Resuscitation*. 2016;107:156.
156. Devereaux P, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1504.
157. Sessler DI, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:317.
158. Devereaux P, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1494.
159. Eikelboom JW, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:1121.
160. Elze MC, et al. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69:345.
161. Leslie K, et al. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:382.
162. Department of Health and Human Services. https://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/regulations-and-policy/regulations/index.html. Accessed April 7 2018.
163. Canadian Institutes of Health Research. http://www.pre.ethics.gc.ca/pdf/eng/tcps2-2014/TCPS_2_FINAL_Web.pdf. Accessed April 7 2018.
164. Health Research Authority. https://www.hra.nhs.uk/planning-and-improving-research/policies-standards-legislation/uk-policy-framework-health-social-care-research/. Accessed March 8 2018.
165. Australian Government. https://www.nhmrc.gov.au/book/national-statement-ethical-conduct-human-research. Accessed April 7 2018.
166. European Commission. https://ec.europa.eu/health/sites/health/files/files/clinicaltrials/2012_07/proposal/2012_07_proposal_en.pdf. Accessed April 7 2018.
167. Australian Government. https://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/publications/attachments/e111_ethical_considerations_in_quality_assurance_140326.pdf. Accessed April 7 2018.
168. Murphy GS, et al. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:1246.
169. Chludzinski A, et al. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2013;88:446.
170. Simes RJ. *J Clin Oncol*. 1986;4:1529.
171. Zarin DA, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:383.
172. US Department of Health and Human Services. https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM227351.pdf. Accessed April 7 2018.
173. European Federation of Pharmaceutical Industries and Associations. https://www.ifpma.org/wp-content/uploads/2010/11/Joint-Position-on-Disclosure-of-CT-Info-via-CT-Registries-Revised-Oct2017-vF.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
174. European Commission. Commission Guideline. https://ec.europa.eu/health//sites/health/files/files/eudralex/vol-10/2012_302-03/2012_302-03_en.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
175. Jones PM, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:1292.
176. Nizamuddin J, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:1098.
177. Loder E, et al. *BMJ*. 2010;340:c950.
178. Sorensen HT, Rothman KJ. *BMJ*. 2010;340:c703.
179. European Medicines Agency. Clinical trials in human medicines. http://www.ema.europa.eu/ema/index.jsp?curl=pages/special_topics/general/general_content_000489.jsp&mid=WC0b01ac058060676f. Accessed March 6 2018.
180. ICH Expert Working Group. http://www.ich.org/fileadmin/Public_Web_Site/ICH_Products/Guidelines/Quality/Q11/Q11_Step_4.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
181. Absalom AR, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:70.
182. Institute of Medicine (IOM). http://nationalacademies.org/hmd/reports/2015/sharing-clinical-trial-data.aspx. Accessed March 6 2018.
183. Pharmaceutical Research and Manufacturers of America, European Federation of Pharmaceutical Industries and Associations. http://phrma-docs.phrma.org/sites/default/files/pdf/PhRMAPrinciplesForResponsibleClinicalTrialDataSharing.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
184. Taichman DB, et al. *BMJ*. 2017;357:j2372.
185. Ohmann C, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7:e018647.
186. Taichman DB, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;374:384.
187. Tudur Smith C, et al. *Trials*. 2017;18:319.
188. Herbert DL, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2014;4:e004462.
189. Herbert DL, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2013;3.
190. Meinecke AK, et al. Series: Pragmatic trials and real world evidence: paper 8. Data collection and management. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2017;91:13.
191. Bellary S, et al. *Perspect Clin Res*. 2014;5:159.
192. Morgan DJ, Ho KM*Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2016;44:237.
193. National Institutes of Health. https://grants.nih.gov/policy/clinical-trials/good-clinical-training.htm. Accessed April 8 2018.
194. Pearse RM, Harrison DA, MacDonald N, et al. *JAMA*. 2014;311:2181–2190.

195. Treweek S, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2018;2:MR000013.
196. Brueton VC, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013:MR000032.
197. ICH Expert Working Group. https://www.ich.org/fileadmin/Public_Web_Site/ICH_Products/Guidelines/Efficacy/E2A/Step4/E2A_Guideline.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
198. ICH Expert Working Group. http://www.ich.org/fileadmin/Public_Web_Site/ICH_Products/Guidelines/Efficacy/E2F/Step4/E2F_Step_4.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
199. Reith C, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369:1061.
200. Wallace S, et al. *Med J Aust*. 2016;204:231.
201. European Medicines Agency, Heads of Medicines Agencies. http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Regulatory_and_procedural_guideline/2017/08/WC500232767.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
202. Pogue JM, et al. *Clin Trials*. 2013;10:225.
203. Fleming TR, et al. *Clin Trials*. 2017;14:115.
204. EQUATOR Network. http://www.equator-network.org/. Accessed April 8 2018.
205. Dechartres A, et al. *BMJ*. 2017;357:j2490.
206. Turner L, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;11:MR000030.
207. Blanco D, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7:e017551.
208. Fontanarosa P, et al. *JAMA*. 2017;318:2433–2437.
209. Bierer BE, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:402.
210. US National Library of Medicine. http://www.nlm.nih.gov/bsd/authors1.html. Accessed April 8 2018.
211. Committee on Publication Ethics (COPE). Core practices. Washington. https://publicationethics.org/core-practices. Accessed March 6 2018.
212. Shen C, Bjork BC. *BMC Med*. 2015;13:230.
213. Moher D, et al. *Nature*. 2017;549:23.
214. Directory of Open Access Journals. Accessed April 8 2018.
215. Korenman SG. https://ori.hhs.gov/education/products/ucla/chapter1/page02.htm. Accessed April 8 2018.
216. Office of Science and Technology Policy. 2000;65:76260–76264.
217. A consensus statement on research misconduct in the UK. *BMJ*. 2012;344:e1111.
218. Haug CJ. Peer-review fraud - hacking the scientific publication process. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373:2393–2395.
219. Marusic A, et al. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;4:MR000038.
220. Shafer SL. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:1776–1780.
221. Moylan EC, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6:e012047.
222. Horsley T, et al. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6:e010368.

References

1. Institute of Medicine (IOM). *Crossing the Quality Chasm: a new Health System for the 21st Century*. Washington: National Academy Press; 2001.
2. Coggon D, Rose G, Barker D. *Epidemiology for the Uninitiated (4th edition)*. http://www.bmj.com/about-bmj/resources-readers/publications/epidemiology-uninitiated.
3. Keus F, Wetterslev J, Gluud C, van Laarhoven CJ. Evidence at a glance: error matrix approach for overviewing available evidence. *BMC Med Res Methodol*. 2010;10:90.
4. Schwartz S, Campbell UB, Gatto NM, Gordon K. Toward a clarification of the taxonomy of "bias" in epidemiology textbooks. *Epidemiology*. 2015;26:216–222.
5. Sessler DI, Imrey PB. Clinical research methodology 1:study designs and methodologic sources of error. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:1034–1042.
6. Vetter TR, Mascha EJ. Bias, confounding, and interaction: lions and tigers, and bears, oh my! *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:1042–1048.
7. Short T, Leslie K. Known unknowns and unknown unknowns: electroencephalographic burst suppression and mortality. *Br J Anaesth*. 2014;113:897–899.
8. Chu R, Walter SD, Guyatt G, et al. Assessment and implication of prognostic imbalance in randomized controlled trials with a binary outcome--a simulation study. *PLoS One*. 2012;7:e36677.
9. Zhao W. Selection bias, allocation concealment and randomization design in clinical trials. *Contemp Clin Trials*. 2013;36:263–265.
10. Moons KG, Altman DG, Vergouwe Y, Royston P. Prognosis and prognostic research: application and impact of prognostic models in clinical practice. *BMJ*. 2009;338:b606.
11. Song F, Parekh S, Hooper L, et al. Dissemination and publication of research findings: an updated review of related biases. *Health Technol Assess*. 2010;14:1–193.
12. Akl EA, Shawwa K, Kahale LA, et al. Reporting missing participant data in randomised trials: systematic survey of the methodological literature and a proposed guide. *BMJ Open*. 2015;5:e008431.
13. Wasserstein R, Lazar N. The ASA's statement on p-values: context, process, and purpose. *Am Stat*. 2016;70:129–133.
14. Wijeysundera DN, Austin PC, Hux JE, Beattie WS, Laupacis A. Bayesian statistical inference enhances the interpretation of contemporary randomized controlled trials. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2009;62:13–21.e15.
15. Ioannidis JPA. The proposal to lower P value thresholds to .005. *JAMA*. 2018
16. World Health Organization. International clinical trials registry platform. International standards for clinical trial registries. http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/76705/1/9789241504294_eng.pdf?ua=1&ua=1. Accessed March 18 2018.
17. Sessler DI, Imrey PB. Clinical research methodology 2: observational clinical research. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:1043–1051.
18. Doll R, Hill AB. Smoking and carcinoma of the lung; preliminary report. *BMJ*. 1950;2:739–748.
19. Hill AB. The environment and disease: association or causation? *Proc R Soc Med*. 1965;58:295–300.
20. von Elm E, Altman DG, Egger M, Pocock SJ, Gotzsche PC, Vandenbroucke JP. The Strengthening the Reporting of Observational Studies in Epidemiology (STROBE) statement: guidelines for reporting observational studies. *PLoS Med*. 2007;4:e296.
21. Rao A, Bruck K, Methven S, et al. Quality of reporting and study design of ckd cohort studies assessing mortality in the elderly before and after STROBE: a systematic review. *PLoS One*. 2016;11:e0155078.
22. Kruger BD, Kurmann J, Corti N, Spahn DR, Bettex D, Rudiger A. Dexmedetomidine-associated hyperthermia: a series of 9 cases and a review of thse literature. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:1898–1906.
23. Rosenblatt MA, Abel M, Fischer GW, Itzkovich CJ, Eisenkraft JB. Successful use of a 20% lipid emulsion to resuscitate a patient after a presumed bupivacaine-related cardiac arrest. *Anesthesiology*. 2006;105:217–218.
24. Denborough MA, Forster JF, Lovell RR, Maplestone PA, Villiers JD. Anaesthetic deaths in a family. *Br J Anaesth*. 1962;34:395–396.
25. Griffith H, Johnson E. The use of curare in general anesthesia. *Anesthesiology*. 1942;3:418–420.
26. Brain AI. The laryngeal mask--a new concept in airway management. *Br J Anaesth*. 1983;55:801–805.
27. Rodseth RN, Lurati Buse GA, Bolliger D, et al. The predictive ability of pre-operative B-type natriuretic peptide in vascular patients for major adverse cardiac events: an individual patient data meta-analysis. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2011;58:522–529.
28. Moons KG, Biesheuvel CJ, Grobbee DE. Test research versus diagnostic research. *Clin Chem*. 2004;50:473–476.
29. O'Leary JD, Janus M, Duku E, et al. A population-based study evaluating the association between surgery in early life and child development at primary school entry. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:272–279.
30. McIsaac DI, Wijeysundera DN, Huang A, Bryson GL, van Walraven C. Association of hospital-level neuraxial anesthesia use for hip fracture surgery with outcomes: a population-based cohort study. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:480–491.
31. Riazi S, Bril V, Perkins BA, et al. Can ultrasound of the tibial nerve detect diabetic peripheral neuropathy? A cross-sectional study. *Diabetes Care*. 2012;35:2575–2579.
32. Chung F, Yegneswaran B, Liao P, et al. STOP questionnaire: a tool to screen patients for obstructive sleep apnea. *Anesthesiology*. 2008;108:812–821.
33. Busato P, Garbin RR, Santos CN, Paranhos LR, Rigo L. Influence of maternal anxiety on child anxiety during dental care: cross-sectional study. *Sao Paulo Med J*. 2017;135:116–122.
34. Bijker JB, Persoon S, Peelen LM, et al. Intraoperative hypotension and perioperative ischemic stroke after general surgery: a nested case-control study. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:658–664.
35. Nuttall GA, Garrity JA, Dearani JA, Abel MD, Schroeder DR, Mullany CJ. Risk factors for ischemic optic neuropathy after cardiopulmonary bypass: a matched case/control study. *Anesth Analg*. 2001;93:1410–1416.
36. Wacholder S, McLaughlin JK, Silverman DT, Mandel JS. Selection of controls in case-control studies. I. Principles. *Am J Epidemiol*. 1992;135:1019–1028.
37. Devereaux PJ, Biccard BM, Sigamani A, et al. Association of postoperative high-sensitivity troponin levels with myocardial injury and 30-day mortality among patients undergoing noncardiac surgery. *JAMA*. 2017;317:1642–1651.
38. Wijeysundera DN, Beattie WS, Austin PC, Hux JE, Laupacis A. Epidural anaesthesia and survival after intermediate-to-high risk non-cardiac surgery: a population-based cohort study. *Lancet*. 2008;372:562–569.
39. Liu JB, Liu Y, Cohen ME, Ko CY, Sweitzer BJ. Defining the intrinsic cardiac risks of operations to improve preoperative cardiac risk assessments. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:283–292.
40. Ladha K, Vidal Melo MF, McLean DJ, et al. Intraoperative protective mechanical ventilation and risk of postoperative respiratory complications: hospital based registry study. *BMJ*. 2015;351:h3646.
41. Rubin DB. The design versus the analysis of observational studies for causal effects: parallels with the design of randomized trials. *Stat Med*. 2007;26:20–36.
42. Minto C, Schnider T, Egan T, et al. Influence of age and gender on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of remifentanil. I. Model development. *Anesthesiology*. 1997;86:10–23.
43. Schnider T, Minto C, Shafer S, et al. The influence of age on propofol pharmacodynamics. *Anesthesiology*. 1999;90:1502–1516.
44. Kannampallil T, Galanter WL, Falck S, et al. Characterizing the pain score trajectories of hospitalized adult medical and surgical patients: a retrospective cohort study. *Pain*. 2016;157:2739–2746.
45. Ma Y, Mazumdar M, Memtsoudis SG. Beyond repeated-measures analysis of variance: advanced statistical methods for the analysis of longitudinal data in anesthesia research. *Reg Anesth Pain Med*. 2012;37:99–105.
46. Reynolds PS, Middleton P, McCarthy H, Spiess BD. A comparison of a new ultrasound-based whole blood viscoelastic test (SEER sonorheometry) versus thromboelastography in cardiac surgery. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;123:1400–1407.
47. Shulman M, Myles P, Chan M, McIlroy D, Wallace S, Ponsford J. Measurement of disability-free survival after surgery. *Anesthesiology*. 2015;122:524–536.
48. Abu-Arafeh A, Jordan H, Drummond G. Reporting of method comparison studies: a review of advice, an assessment of current practice, and specific suggestions for future reports. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117:569–575.
49. Fitzpatrick R, Davey C, Buxton MJ, Jones DR. Evaluating patient-based outcome measures for use in clinical trials. *Health Technol Assess*. 1998;2(i–iv):1–74.
50. Hunt TD, Ramanathan SA, Hannaford NA, et al. CareTrack Australia: assessing the appropriateness of adult healthcare: protocol for a retrospective medical record review. *BMJ Open*. 2012;2:e000665.
51. Hooper TD, Hibbert PD, Hannaford NA, et al. Surgical site infection-a population-based study in Australian adults measuring the compliance with and correct timing of appropriate antibiotic prophylaxis. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2015;43:461–467.

52. Wijeysundera DN. Predicting outcomes: is there utility in risk scores? *Can J Anaesth*. 2016;63:148–158.
53. Rathore SS, Weinfurt KP, Gross CP, Krumholz HM. Validity of a simple ST-elevation acute myocardial infarction risk index: are randomized trial prognostic estimates generalizable to elderly patients? *Circulation*. 2003;107:811–816.
54. Kalkman CJ, Visser K, Moen J, Bonsel GJ, Grobbee DE, Moons KG. Preoperative prediction of severe postoperative pain. *Pain*. 2003;105:415–423.
55. Sheth T, Chan M, Butler C, et al. Prognostic capabilities of coronary computed tomographic angiography before non-cardiac surgery: prospective cohort study. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h1907.
56. Goldman L, Weinberg M, Weisberg M, et al. A computer-derived protocol to aid in the diagnosis of emergency room patients with acute chest pain. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;307:588–596.
57. Canet J, Gallart L, Gomar C, et al. Prediction of postoperative pulmonary complications in a population-based surgical cohort. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:1338–1350.
58. Bilimoria KY, Liu Y, Paruch JL, et al. Development and evaluation of the universal ACS NSQIP surgical risk calculator: a decision aid and informed consent tool for patients and surgeons. *J Am Coll Surg*. 2013;217:833–842.e831–e833.
59. Zimmerman JE, Kramer AA, McNair DS, Malila FM. Acute Physiology and Chronic Health Evaluation (APACHE) IV: hospital mortality assessment for today's critically ill patients. *Crit Care Med*. 2006;34:1297–1310.
60. American Statistical Association. What is a survey? www.amstat.org/sections/srms/whatsurvey.html. Accessed March 8 2018.
61. Jones D, Story D, Clavisi O, Jones R, Peyton P. An introductory guide to survey research in anaesthesia. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2006;34:245–253.
62. Tait AR, Voepel-Lewis T. Survey research: it's just a few questions, right? *Paediatr Anaesth*. 2015;25:656–662.
63. Klabunde CN, Willis GB, McLeod CC, et al. Improving the quality of surveys of physicians and medical groups: a research agenda. *Eval Health Prof*. 2012;35:477–506.
64. Story DA, Gin V, na Ranong V, Poustie S, Jones D. Inconsistent survey reporting in anesthesia journals. *Anesth Analg*. 2011;113:591–595.
65. Lohr KN, Steinwachs DM. Health services research: an evolving definition of the field. *Health Serv Res*. 2002;37:7–9.
66. Wijeysundera DN, Austin PC, Beattie WS, Hux JE, Laupacis A. Variation in the practice of preoperative medical consultation for major elective noncardiac surgery: a population-based study. *Anesthesiology*. 2012;116:25–34.
67. Moonesinghe SR, Wong DJN, Farmer L, Shawyer R, Myles PS, Harris SK. SNAP-2 EPICCS: the second Sprint National Anaesthesia Project-EPIdemiology of Critical Care after Surgery: protocol for an international observational cohort study. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7:e017690.
68. Lane-Fall MB, Beidas RS, Pascual JL, et al. Handoffs and transitions in critical care (HATRICC): protocol for a mixed methods study of operating room to intensive care unit handoffs. *BMC Surgery*. 2014;14:96.
69. Emond YE, Calsbeek H, Teerenstra S, et al. Improving the implementation of perioperative safety guidelines using a multifaceted intervention approach: protocol of the IMPROVE study, a stepped wedge cluster randomized trial. *Implement Sci*. 2015;10:3.
70. Harris AD, Bradham DD, Baumgarten M, Zuckerman IH, Fink JC, Perencevich EN. The use and interpretation of quasi-experimental studies in infectious diseases. *Clin Infect Dis*. 2004;38:1586–1591.
71. Sterne JA, Hernan MA, Reeves BC, et al. ROBINS-I: a tool for assessing risk of bias in non-randomised studies of interventions. *BMJ*. 2016;355:i4919.
72. Paneth N, Fine P. The singular science of John Snow. *Lancet*. 2013;381:1267–1268.
73. Ho AMH, Phelan R, Mizubuti GB, et al. Bias in before-after studies: narrative overview for anesthesiologists. *Anesth Analg*. 2017.
74. Alvarez MP, Foley KE, Zebley DM, Fassler SA. Comprehensive enhanced recovery pathway significantly reduces postoperative length of stay and opioid usage in elective laparoscopic colectomy. *Surg Endosc*. 2015;29:2506–2511.
75. Streeter AJ, Lin NX, Crathorne L, et al. Adjusting for unmeasured confounding in nonrandomized longitudinal studies: a methodological review. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2017;87:23–34.
76. Wellek S, Blettner M. On the proper use of the crossover design in clinical trials: part 18 of a series on evaluation of scientific publications. *Dtsch Arztebl Int*. 2012;109:276–281.
77. Niesters M, Aarts L, Sarton E, Dahan A. Influence of ketamine and morphine on descending pain modulation in chronic pain patients: a randomized placebo-controlled cross-over proof-of-concept study. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;110:1010–1016.
78. Colloca L, Miller FG. The nocebo effect and its relevance for clinical practice. *Psychosom Med*. 2011;73:598–603.
79. Sackett DL, Rosenberg WM. The need for evidence-based medicine. *J R Soc Med*. 1995;88:620–624.
80. Roberts C, Torgerson D. Randomisation methods in controlled trials. *BMJ*. 1998;317:1301.
81. Suresh K. An overview of randomization techniques: An unbiased assessment of outcome in clinical research. *J Hum Reprod Sci*. 2011;4:8–11.
82. Torgerson DJ, Roberts C. Understanding controlled trials. Randomisation methods: concealment. *BMJ*. 1999;319:375–376.
83. Wartolowska K, Beard D, Carr A. Blinding in trials of interventional procedures is possible and worthwhile. *F1000Res*. 2017;6:1663.
84. Candiotti KA, Kovac AL, Melson TI, Clerici G, Joo Gan T. A randomized, double-blind study to evaluate the efficacy and safety of three different doses of palonosetron versus placebo for preventing postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg*. 2008;107:445–451.
85. Finfer S, Bellomo R, Boyce N, French J, Myburgh J, Norton R. A comparison of albumin and saline for fluid resuscitation in the intensive care unit. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:2247–2256.
86. van Wijck AJ, Opstelten W, Moons KG, et al. The PINE study of epidural steroids and local anaesthetics to prevent postherpetic neuralgia: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2006;367:219–224.
87. Mascha EJ. Equivalence and noninferiority testing in anesthesiology research. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:779–781.
88. Davidson AJ, Disma N, de Graaff JC, et al. Neurodevelopmental outcome at 2 years of age after general anaesthesia and awake-regional anaesthesia in infancy (GAS): an international multicentre, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2016;387:239–250.
89. Connolly SJ, Ezekowitz MD, Yusuf S, et al. Dabigatran versus warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;361:1139–1151.
90. Sessler DI, Imrey PB. Clinical research methodology 3: randomized controlled trials. *Anesth Analg*. 2015;121:1052–1064.
91. Apfel C, Korttila K, Abdalla M, et al. A factorial trial of six interventions for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *N Engl J Med*. 2004;350:2441–2451.
92. Myles PS, Smith JA, Forbes A, et al. Tranexamic acid in patients undergoing coronary-artery surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:136–148.
93. Myles PS, Smith JA, Forbes A, et al. Continuing aspirin before coronary artery surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;374:728–737.
94. Brown C, Lilford R. Evaluating service delivery interventions to enhance patient safety. *BMJ*. 2008;337:a2764.
95. de Smet AM, Kluytmans JA, Cooper BS, et al. Decontamination of the digestive tract and oropharynx in ICU patients. *N Engl J Med*. 2009;360:20–31.
96. Hillman K, Chen J, Cretikos M, et al. Introduction of the medical emergency team (MET) system: a cluster-randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2005;365:2091–2097.
97. Hemming K, Haines TP, Chilton PJ, Girling AJ, Lilford RJ. The stepped wedge cluster randomised trial: rationale, design, analysis, and reporting. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h391.
98. Ellenberg SS. The stepped-wedge clinical trial: evaluation by rolling deployment. *JAMA*. 2018;319:607–608.
99. The Gambia Hepatitis Study Group. The gambia hepatitis intervention study. *Cancer Res*. 1987;47:5782–5787.
100. Moller AM, Myles PS. What makes a good systematic review and meta-analysis? *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117:428–430.
101. Moher D, Liberati A, Tetzlaff J, Altman DG. Preferred reporting items for systematic reviews and meta-analyses: the PRISMA statement. *PLoS Med*. 2009;6:e1000097.
102. Pussegoda K, Turner L, Garritty C, et al. Systematic review adherence to methodological or reporting quality. *Syst Rev*. 2017;6:131.
103. Sivakumar H, Peyton PJ. Poor agreement in significant findings between meta-analyses and subsequent large randomized trials in perioperative medicine. *Br J Anaesth*. 2016;117:431–441.
104. The Cochrane Collaboration. RevMan5. London. http://www.cochrane.org.
105. The Cochrane Collaboration. Covidence. London. http://community.cochrane.org/tools/review-production-tools/covidence.

106. Debray TP, Moons KG, van Valkenhoef G, et al. Get real in individual participant data (IPD) meta-analysis: a review of the methodology. *Res Synth Methods*. 2015;6:293–309.
107. Thomas D, Radji S, Benedetti A. Systematic review of methods for individual patient data meta-analysis with binary outcomes. *BMC Med Res Methodol*. 2014;14:79.
108. Nevitt SJ, Marson AG, Davie B, Reynolds S, Williams L, Smith CT. Exploring changes over time and characteristics associated with data retrieval across individual participant data meta-analyses: systematic review. *BMJ*. 2017;357:j1390.
109. World Medical Association. WMA Declaration of Helsinki - Ethical principles for medical research involving human subjects. Ferney-Voltaire. www.wma.net/en/30publications/10policies/b3/index.html. Accessed March 8 2018.
110. Pildal J, Chan AW, Hrobjartsson A, Forfang E, Altman DG, Gotzsche PC. Comparison of descriptions of allocation concealment in trial protocols and the published reports: cohort study. *BMJ*. 2005;330:1049.
111. Hrobjartsson A, Pildal J, Chan AW, Haahr MT, Altman DG, Gotzsche PC. Reporting on blinding in trial protocols and corresponding publications was often inadequate but rarely contradictory. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2009;62:967–973.
112. World Health Organization. Recommended format for a research protocol. http://www.who.int/rpc/research_ethics/format_rp/en/. Accessed April 8 2018.
113. ICH Expert Working Group. *International Conference on Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for Registration of Pharmaceuticals for Human Use. ICH Harmonised Tripartite Guideline: Integrated addendum to ICH E6(R1): Guideline for Good Clinical Practice E6(R2) Step 2*; 2015. https://www.ich.org/fileadmin/Public_Web_Site/ICH_Products/Guidelines/Efficacy/E6/E6_R2__Addendum_Step2.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
114. National Institutes of Health and Food and Drug Agency. NIH and FDA release protocol template for phase 2 and 3 IND/IDE clinical trials. Washington. https://grants.nih.gov/grants/guide/notice-files/NOT-OD-17-064.html. Accessed March 6 2018.
115. Chan AW, Tetzlaff JM, Altman DG, et al. SPIRIT 2013 statement: defining standard protocol items for clinical trials. *Ann Intern Med*. 2013;158:200–207.
116. Chan AW, Tetzlaff JM, Gotzsche PC, et al. SPIRIT 2013 explanation and elaboration: guidance for protocols of clinical trials. *BMJ*. 2013;346:e7586.
117. International Committee of Medical Journal. In: *Recommendations for the Conduct, Reporting, Editing, and Publication of Scholarly Work in Medical Journals*. 2017. http://www.icmje.org/icmjerecommendations.pdf.
118. Rios LP, Ye C, Thabane L. Association between framing of the research question using the PICOT format and reporting quality of randomized controlled trials. *BMC Med Res Methodol*. 2010;10:11.
119. Haynes RB. Forming research questions. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2006;59:881–886.
120. Nizamuddin SL, Nizamuddin J, Mueller A, Ramakrishna H, Shahul SS. Developing a hypothesis and statistical planning. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*. 2017;31:1878–1882.
121. Loudon K, Treweek S, Sullivan F, Donnan P, Thorpe KE, Zwarenstein M. The PRECIS-2 tool: designing trials that are fit for purpose. *BMJ*. 2015;350:h2147.
122. Oude Rengerink K, Kalkman S, Collier S, et al. Series: pragmatic trials and real world evidence: paper 3. Patient selection challenges and consequences. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2017;89:173–180.
123. Sackett DL. Explanatory and pragmatic clinical trials: a primer and application to a recent asthma trial. *Pol Arch Med Wewn*. 2011;121:259–263.
124. National Institutes of Health. NIH policy and guidelines on the inclusion of women and minorities as subjects in clinical research – amended November 2017. https://grants.nih.gov/grants/guide/notice-files/NOT-OD-18-014.html.
125. Geller SE, Koch A, Pellettieri B, Carnes M. Inclusion, analysis, and reporting of sex and race/ethnicity in clinical trials: have we made progress? *J Womens Health (Larchmt)*. 2011;20:315–320.
126. Spong CY, Bianchi DW. Improving public health requires inclusion of underrepresented populations in research. *JAMA*. 2018;319:337–338.
127. Hughson JA, Woodward-Kron R, Parker A, et al. A review of approaches to improve participation of culturally and linguistically diverse populations in clinical trials. *Trials*. 2016;17:263.
128. Reisner SL, Poteat T, Keatley J, et al. Global health burden and needs of transgender populations: a review. *Lancet*. 2016;388:412–436.
129. Zuidgeest MGP, Welsing PMJ, van Thiel G, et al. Series: pragmatic trials and real world evidence: paper 5. Usual care and real life comparators. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2017;90:92–98.
130. Freedman B. Equipoise and the ethics of clinical research. *N Engl J Med*. 1987;317:141–145.
131. Welsing PM, Oude Rengerink K, Collier S, et al. Series: pragmatic trials and real world evidence: paper 6. Outcome measures in the real world. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2017;90:99–107.
132. Kyte D, Duffy H, Fletcher B, et al. Systematic evaluation of the patient-reported outcome (PRO) content of clinical trial protocols. *PLoS One*. 2014;9:e110229.
133. Calvert M, Kyte D, Mercieca-Bebber R, et al. Guidelines for inclusion of patient-reported outcomes in clinical trial protocols: The SPIRIT-PRO Extension. *JAMA*. 2018;319:483–494.
134. Myles PS, Devereaux PJ. Pros and cons of composite endpoints in anesthesia trials. *Anesthesiology*. 2010;113:776–778.
135. Baker SG. Five criteria for using a surrogate endpoint to predict treatment effect based on data from multiple previous trials. *Stat Med*. 2018;37:507–518.
136. The CAST Investigators. Preliminary report: effect of encainide and flecainide on mortality in a randomized trial of arrhythmia suppression after myocardial infarction. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;321:406–412.
137. Halpern SD, Karlawish JH, Berlin JA. The continuing unethical conduct of underpowered clinical trials. *JAMA*. 2002;288:358–362.
138. Vandenbroucke JP, von Elm E, Altman DG, et al. Strengthening the Reporting of Observational Studies in Epidemiology (STROBE): explanation and elaboration. *PLoS Med*. 2007;4:e297.
139. Schulz KF, Altman DG, Moher D. CONSORT 2010 statement: updated guidelines for reporting parallel group randomised trials. *Trials*. 2010;11:32.
140. Moher D, Hopewell S, Schulz KF, et al. CONSORT 2010 explanation and elaboration: updated guidelines for reporting parallel group randomised trials. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2010;63:e1–37.
141. Cook JA, Hislop J, Adewuyi TE, et al. Assessing methods to specify the target difference for a randomised controlled trial: DELTA (Difference ELicitation in TriAls) review. *Health Technol Assess*. 2014;18:1–175. v–vi.
142. Abdulatif M, Mukhtar A, Obayah G. Pitfalls in reporting sample size calculation in randomized controlled trials published in leading anaesthesia journals: a systematic review. *Br J Anaesth*. 2015;115:699–707.
143. Mascha EJ, Vetter TR. The statistical checklist and statistical review: two essential yet challenging deliverables. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;124:719–721.
144. ICH Expert Working Group. *International Conference on Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for Registration of Pharmaceuticals for Human Use. ICH Harmonised Tripartite Guideline: Statistical principles for Clinical trials (E9) Current Step 4 version*dated 5 February ; 1998. http://www.ich.org/fileadmin/Public_Web_Site/ICH_Products/Guidelines/Efficacy/E9/Step4/E9_Guideline.pdf. Accessed April 7 2018.
145. Thomas L, Peterson ED. The value of statistical analysis plans in observational research: defining high-quality research from the start. *JAMA*. 2012;308:773–774.
146. Lang TA, Altman DG. Basic statistical reporting for articles published in biomedical journals: the "Statistical Analyses and Methods in the Published Literature" or the SAMPL Guidelines. *Int J Nurs Stud*. 2015;52:5–9.
147. Eisenach JC, Kheterpal S, Houle TT. Reporting of observational research in anesthesiology: the importance of the analysis plan. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:998–1000.
148. Thabane L, Wells G, Cook R, et al. Canadian-led capacity-building in biostatistics and methodology in cardiovascular and diabetes trials: the CANNeCTIN Biostatistics and Methodological Innovation Working Group. *Trials*. 2011;12:48.
149. Story D, Leslie K, French C. Feasibility and pilot studies. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2018.
150. Eldridge SM, Chan CL, Campbell MJ, et al. CONSORT 2010 statement: extension to randomised pilot and feasibility trials. *BMJ*. 2016;355:i5239.
151. Kraemer HC, Mintz J, Noda A, Tinklenberg J, Yesavage JA. Caution regarding the use of pilot studies to guide power calculations for study proposals. *Arch Gen Psychiatry*. 2006;63:484–489.
152. Kirkegaard H, Soreide E, de Haas I, et al. Targeted temperature management for 48 vs 24 hours and neurologic outcome after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2017;318:341–350.

153. Bro-Jeppesen J, Hassager C, Wanscher M, et al. Targeted temperature management at 33 degrees C versus 36 degrees C and impact on systemic vascular resistance and myocardial function after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest: a sub-study of the target temperature management trial. *Circ Cardiovasc Interv*. 2014;7:663–672.
154. Frydland M, Kjaergaard J, Erlinge D, et al. Usefulness of serum b-type natriuretic peptide levels in comatose patients resuscitated from out-of-hospital cardiac arrest to predict outcome. *Am J Cardiol*. 2016;118:998–1005.
155. Gilje P, Koul S, Thomsen JH, et al. High-sensitivity troponin-T as a prognostic marker after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest - A targeted temperature management (TTM) trial substudy. *Resuscitation*. 2016;107:156–161.
156. Devereaux P, Sessler D, Leslie K, et al. Clonidine in patients having non-cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1504–1513.
157. Sessler DI, Meyhoff CS, Zimmerman NM, et al. Period-dependent associations between hypotension during and for four days after noncardiac surgery and a composite of myocardial infarction and death: a substudy of the POISE-2 trial. *Anesthesiology*. 2018;128:317–327.
158. Devereaux P, Sessler D, Mrkobrada M, et al. Aspirin in patients having non-cardiac surgery. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1494–1503.
159. Eikelboom JW, Kearon C, Guyatt G, et al. Perioperative aspirin for prevention of venous thromboembolism: the perioperative ischemia evaluation-2 trial and a pooled analysis of the randomized trials. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;125:1121–1129.
160. Elze MC, Gregson J, Baber U, et al. Comparison of propensity score methods and covariate adjustment: evaluation in 4 cardiovascular studies. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69:345–357.
161. Leslie K, Myles P, Devereaux P, et al. Neuraxial block, death and serious cardiovascular morbidity and mortality in the POISE Trial. *Br J Anaesth*. 2013;111:382–390.
162. Department of Health and Human Services. Office for human research protections. code of federal regulations title 45; public welfare, Department of Health and Human Services part 46: protection of human subjects. https://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/regulations-and-policy/regulations/index.html. Accessed April 7 2018.
163. Canadian Institutes of Health Research. Natural Sciences and Engineering Research Council of Canada; Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada. Tri-council policy statement: ethical conduct for research involving humans. http://www.pre.ethics.gc.ca/pdf/eng/tcps2-2014/TCPS_2_FINAL_Web.pdf. Accessed April 7 2018.
164. Health Research Authority. UK policy framework for health and social care research v3.3 07/11/17. London. https://www.hra.nhs.uk/planning-and-improving-research/policies-standards-legislation/uk-policy-framework-health-social-care-research/. Accessed March 8 2018.
165. Australian Government. National Health and Medical Research Council; Australian Research Council. National statement on ethical conduct in human research 2007 (Updated May 2015). Canberra. https://www.nhmrc.gov.au/book/national-statement-ethical-conduct-human-research. Accessed April 7 2018.
166. European Commission. Proposal for a regulation of the European Parliament and of the Council on clinical trials on medicinal products for human use, and repealing Directive 2001/20/EC. https://ec.europa.eu/health/sites/health/files/files/clinicaltrials/2012_07/proposal/2012_07_proposal_en.pdf. Accessed April 7 2018.
167. Australian Government: National Health and Medical Research Council. Ethical considerations in quality assurance and evaluation activities. Canberra. https://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/publications/attachments/e111_ethical_considerations_in_quality_assurance_140326.pdf. Accessed April 7 2018.
168. Murphy GS, Szokol JW, Avram MJ, et al. Consent for anesthesia clinical trials on the day of surgery: patient attitudes and perceptions. *Anesthesiology*. 2016;124:1246–1255.
169. Chludzinski A, Irani C, Mascha EJ, Kurz A, Devereaux PJ, Sessler DI. Protocol understanding and anxiety in perioperative clinical trial patients approached for consent on the day of surgery. *Mayo Clin Proc*. 2013;88:446–454.
170. Simes RJ. Publication bias: the case for an international registry of clinical trials. *J Clin Oncol*. 1986;4:1529–1541.
171. Zarin DA, Tse T, Williams RJ, Rajakannan T. Update on trial registration 11 years after the ICMJE policy was established. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376:383–391.
172. US Department of Health and Human Services. Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluations and Research, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research. Guidance for Industry and Investigators: Safety Reporting Requirements for INDs and BA/BE Studies. https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM227351.pdf. Accessed April 7 2018.
173. European Federation of Pharmaceutical Industries and Associations (EFPIA), the International Federation of Pharmaceutical Manufacturers and Associations (IFPMA), the Japanese Pharmaceutical Manufacturers Association (JPMA) and the Pharmaceutical Research and Manufacturers of America (PhRMA). Joint position on the disclosure of clinical trial information via clinical trial registries and databases. Updated November 10, 2009 (with minor revisions as of October 30, 2017). https://www.ifpma.org/wp-content/uploads/2010/11/Joint-Position-on-Disclosure-of-CT-Info-via-CT-Registries-Revised-Oct2017-vF.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
174. European Commission. Commission Guideline — Guidance on posting and publication of result-related information on clinical trials in relation to the implementation of Article 57(2) of Regulation (EC) No 726/2004 and Article 41(2) of Regulation (EC) No 1901/2006. https://ec.europa.eu/health//sites/health/files/files/eudralex/vol-10/2012_302-03/2012_302-03_en.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
175. Jones PM, Chow JTY, Arango MF, et al. Comparison of registered and reported outcomes in randomized clinical trials published in anesthesiology journals. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:1292–1300.
176. Nizamuddin J, Nizamuddin SL, Shahul S. Trial registration and outcome reporting: a bait and switch? *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125:1098–1099.
177. Loder E, Groves T, Macauley D. Registration of observational studies. *BMJ*. 2010;340:c950.
178. Sorensen HT, Rothman KJ. The prognosis for research. *BMJ*. 2010;340:c703.
179. European Medicines Agency. Clinical trials in human medicines. http://www.ema.europa.eu/ema/index.jsp?curl=pages/special_topics/general/general_content_000489.jsp&mid=WC0b01ac058060676f. Accessed March 6 2018.
180. ICH Expert Working Group. *International Conference on Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for Registration of Pharmaceuticals for Human Use. ICH Harmonised Tripartite Guideline: Development and manufacture of drug substances (Chemical entities and biotechnological/biological entities) Q11. Step 4 version dated*; 2012. http://www.ich.org/fileadmin/Public_Web_Site/ICH_Products/Guidelines/Quality/Q11/Q11_Step_4.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
181. Absalom AR, Glen JI, Zwart GJ, Schnider TW, Struys MM. Target-controlled infusion: a mature technology. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:70–78.
182. Institute of Medicine (IOM). Sharing clinical trial data: maximizing benefits, minimizing risk. Washington. http://nationalacademies.org/hmd/reports/2015/sharing-clinical-trial-data.aspx. Accessed March 6 2018.
183. Pharmaceutical Research and Manufacturers of America, European Federation of Pharmaceutical Industries and Associations. Principles for responsible clinical trial data sharing. http://phrma-docs.phrma.org/sites/default/files/pdf/PhRMAPrinciplesForResponsibleClinicalTrialDataSharing.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
184. Taichman DB, Sahni P, Pinborg A, et al. Data sharing statements for clinical trials. *BMJ*. 2017;357:j2372.
185. Ohmann C, Banzi R, Canham S, et al. Sharing and reuse of individual participant data from clinical trials: principles and recommendations. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7:e018647.
186. Taichman DB, Backus J, Baethge C, et al. Sharing clinical trial data: a proposal from the International Committee of Medical Journal. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;374:384–386.
187. Tudur Smith C, Nevitt S, Appelbe D, et al. Resource implications of preparing individual participant data from a clinical trial to share with external researchers. *Trials*. 2017;18:319.
188. Herbert DL, Coveney J, Clarke P, Graves N, Barnett AG. The impact of funding deadlines on personal workloads, stress and family relationships: a qualitative study of Australian researchers. *BMJ Open*. 2014;4:e004462.
189. Herbert DL, Barnett AG, Clarke P, Graves N. On the time spent preparing grant proposals: an observational study of Australian researchers. *BMJ Open*. 2013;3.
190. Meinecke AK, Welsing P, Kafatos G, et al. Series: pragmatic trials and real world evidence: paper 8. Data collection and management. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2017;91:13–22.
191. Bellary S, Krishnankutty B, Latha MS. Basics of case report form designing in clinical research. *Perspect Clin Res*. 2014;5:159–166.
192. Morgan DJ, Ho KM. The anaesthetic assessment, management and risk factors of bariatric surgical patients requiring postoperative intensive care support: a state-wide, five-year cohort study. *Anaesth Intensive Care*. 2016;44:237–244.

193. National Institutes of Health. Good clinical practice training. https://grants.nih.gov/policy/clinical-trials/good-clinical-training.htm. Accessed April 8 2018.
194. Pearse RM, Harrison DA, MacDonald N, et al. Effect of a perioperative, cardiac output-guided hemodynamic therapy algorithm on outcomes following major gastrointestinal surgery: a randomized clinical trial and systematic review. *JAMA*. 2014;311:2181–2190.
195. Treweek S, Pitkethly M, Cook J, et al. Strategies to improve recruitment to randomised trials. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2018;2:MR000013.
196. Brueton VC, Tierney J, Stenning S, et al. Strategies to improve retention in randomised trials. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;(12):MR000032.
197. ICH Expert Working Group. *International Conference on Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for Registration of Pharmaceuticals for Human Use.* ICH Harmonised Tripartite Guideline: clinical safety data management: definitions and standards for expedited reporting E2A. Step 4 version dated 27 October; 1994. https://www.ich.org/fileadmin/Public_Web_Site/ICH_Products/Guidelines/Efficacy/E2A/Step4/E2A_Guideline.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
198. ICH Expert Working Group. *International Conference on Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for Registration of Pharmaceuticals for Human Use*. ICH Harmonised Tripartite Guideline: development safety update report E2F. Step 4 version dated 17 August ; 2010. http://www.ich.org/fileadmin/Public_Web_Site/ICH_Products/Guidelines/Efficacy/E2F/Step4/E2F_Step_4.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
199. Reith C, Landray M, Devereaux PJ, et al. Randomized clinical trials--removing unnecessary obstacles. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369:1061–1065.
200. Wallace S, Myles PS, Zeps N, Zalcberg JR. Serious adverse event reporting in investigator-initiated clinical trials. *Med J Aust*. 2016;204:231–233.
201. European Medicines Agency, Heads of Medicines Agencies. Guideline on good pharmacovigilance practices (GVP). Module VI Collection, management and submission of reports of suspected adverse reactions to medicinal products (Rev 2). http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Regulatory_and_procedural_guideline/2017/08/WC500232767.pdf. Accessed April 8 2018.
202. Pogue JM, Devereaux PJ, Thorlund K, Yusuf S. Central statistical monitoring: detecting fraud in clinical trials. *Clin Trials*. 2013;10:225–235.
203. Fleming TR, DeMets DL, Roe MT, et al. Data monitoring committees: promoting best practices to address emerging challenges. *Clin Trials*. 2017;14:115–123.
204. EQUATOR Network. Enhancing the quality and transparency of health research. http://www.equator-network.org/. Accessed April 8 2018.
205. Dechartres A, Trinquart L, Atal I, et al. Evolution of poor reporting and inadequate methods over time in 20 920 randomised controlled trials included in Cochrane reviews: research on research study. *BMJ*. 2017;357:j2490.
206. Turner L, Shamseer L, Altman DG, et al. Consolidated standards of reporting trials (CONSORT) and the completeness of reporting of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) published in medical journals. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2012;11:MR000030.
207. Blanco D, Kirkham JJ, Altman DG, Moher D, Boutron I, Cobo E. Interventions to improve adherence to reporting guidelines in health research: a scoping review protocol. *BMJ Open*. 2017;7:e017551.
208. Fontanarosa P, Bauchner H, Flanagin A. Authorship and team science. *JAMA*. 2017;318:2433–2437.
209. Bierer BE, Crosas M, Pierce HH. Data authorship as an incentive to data sharing. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377:402.
210. US National Library of Medicine. Number of authors per MEDLINE/PubMed citation. http://www.nlm.nih.gov/bsd/authors1.html. Accessed April 8 2018.
211. Committee on Publication Ethics (COPE). Core practices. Washington. https://publicationethics.org/core-practices. Accessed March 6 2018.
212. Shen C, Bjork BC. Predatory open access: a longitudinal study of article volumes and market characteristics. *BMC Med*. 2015;13:230.
213. Moher D, Shamseer L, Cobey KD, et al. Stop this waste of people, animals and money. *Nature*. 2017;549:23–25.
214. Directory of Open Access Journals. 2018;8.
215. Korenman SG. Research integrity. https://ori.hhs.gov/education/products/ucla/chapter1/page02.htm.
216. Office of Science and Technology Policy. Federal research misconduct policy. *Federal Register, December 6, 2000*. 2000;65:76260–76264.
217. No Authors Listed. A consensus statement on research misconduct in the UK. *BMJ*. 2012;344:e1111.
218. Haug CJ. Peer-review fraud - hacking the scientific publication process. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373:2393–2395.
219. Marusic A, Wager E, Utrobicic A, Rothstein HR, Sambunjak D. Interventions to prevent misconduct and promote integrity in research and publication. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2016;4:MR000038.
220. Shafer SL. Plagiarism is ubiquitous. *Anesth Analg*. 2016;122:1776–1780.
221. Moylan EC, Kowalczuk MK. Why articles are retracted: a retrospective cross-sectional study of retraction notices at BioMed Central. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6:e012047.
222. Horsley T, Lockyer J, Cogo E, Zeiter J, Bursey F, Campbell C. National programmes for validating physician competence and fitness for practice: a scoping review. *BMJ Open*. 2016;6:e010368.

90 Interpreting the Medical Literature

ELIZABETH L. WHITLOCK and CATHERINE L. CHEN

KEY POINTS

- The medical literature can be accessed in many ways, ranging from the primary literature as indexed in sources like PubMed, to sources catering to medical professionals, and via the lay press and social media as well.
- The quality of medical literature varies widely, as does the interpretation or distillation into secondary sources of information.
- The traditional "evidence pyramid" no longer effectively reflects the diversity and impact on clinical care of the rapidly evolving body of medical knowledge.
- Understanding the design of a research study is crucial to understanding the strength and implications of its conclusions.
- Different research study designs have assessment tools, maintained by the EQUATOR Network, to assist in understanding the quality of the study.
- Statistical analysis is commonplace in original research manuscripts, but the interpretation of statistical results, particularly the probability or "*P*-value," is widely misunderstood and misused.
- Although the hallmark of the primary medical literature is a rigorous peer review process, there are serious pitfalls that may be difficult to detect, including predatory journals and reviewer misconduct.

Introduction

Reading and interpreting the medical literature is a critical skill for any practicing anesthesiologist. The numerous scientific advances made over the last few decades make it imperative for anesthesiologists to understand how to read, interpret, and apply the medical literature to the clinical scenarios that arise in daily practice. **Critical appraisal,** a concept that first arose in the early 1980s,[1] is "the process of carefully and systematically examining research to judge its trustworthiness, and its value and relevance in a particular context."[2] The idea that clinicians "should practice medicine in a way that combines research evidence with clinical skills and patient values and preferences" led to the creation of a new approach to caring for patients called "evidence-based medicine," a term first coined in the early 1990s by Gordon Guyatt at McMaster University.[3]

In response to this new approach to patient care, where the most recent published evidence could be used to support clinical decisions in lieu of the usual approach of deferring to a physician's seniority, intuition, or prior experiences with similar patients, the *Journal of the American Medical Association* published a series of articles entitled "Users' Guides to the Medical Literature" in the early 1990s that has since been formatted into a textbook by the same name.[4,5] This text is an excellent resource for those who are interested in effectively incorporating the systematic evaluation of the medical evidence into their daily clinical practice. We do not purport to write as complete a chapter on interpreting the medical literature as the existing resources that are already available to the lay reader.

This chapter is, however, intended to provide some basic information about how medical evidence is created and published, some useful tools for evaluating the medical literature, and to highlight some of the pitfalls to avoid when sorting through the litany of information available to both physicians and to the lay public. The previous chapter provided an introduction to the different study designs used in clinical research and their relative strengths and weaknesses. This chapter will aim to put the key points raised in the previous chapter within the context of how research can be interpreted and used by a clinical anesthesiologist.

INTENT OF THE CHAPTER

The goals of this chapter are: (1) To provide a brief overview of how a research manuscript is treated from the moment of submission to its publication date; (2) to provide a practical guide for accessing, interpreting the quality of, and implementing the knowledge gained from reading the medical literature; and (3) to identify and avoid the pitfalls of indiscriminate use or the misuse of the published evidence.

The Publication Process

TYPES OF JOURNALS

With the advent of the Internet, researchers and consumers of research have an overwhelming array of journals to consider for submitting and reading original work. A journal's focus and target audience can vary. Some journals are known as **general medical journals** because they include work from many different fields within medicine. Examples include *The New England Journal of Medicine (NEJM)*,[6] *Journal of the American Medical Association (JAMA)*,[7] *The BMJ (formerly known as the British Medical Journal)*,[8] and *The Lancet*.[9] Most medical journals, however, focus on a particular medical specialty, or they may highlight particular topics such as research methods or health policy.

Journals can be accessed as printed and bound periodicals requiring an active print subscription, through a designated website offering a selection of free articles or articles requiring payment to view, or often by using a combination of the two delivery methods. The quality and reputation of journals can vary greatly—some require little to no peer review and an upfront payment in exchange for quick online publication of a manuscript of questionable quality (see *Predatory Journals*, later). Others maintain extremely high standards for manuscript acceptance and editorial review. Publication in a medical journal with an established history as a traditional print journal, even while it maintains a distinct web presence, is usually an indicator that a published manuscript has been subjected to peer review and represents a worthwhile contribution to the medical literature.

A number of professional societies in anesthesiology publish journals of peer-reviewed literature relevant to the field and include some of the most reputable journals within the field, such as the American Society of Anesthesiologists *(Anesthesiology)*,[10] the Royal College of Anaesthetists/The College of Anaesthetists of Ireland/the Hong Kong College of Anaesthesiologists *(British Journal of Anaesthesia)*,[11] and the International Anesthesia Research Society *(Anesthesia & Analgesia)*.[12]

TYPES OF JOURNAL ARTICLES

Although each journal's priorities for content may vary, for the most part, journals publish similar types of articles. These article types can be grouped into the following broad categories: original research, review articles, brief reports or letters, case reports, and editorials.

Original research is the most familiar and most common type of article that gets published. Original research usually consists of a scientific manuscript that reports the full results from a research study and can represent any of the study designs that were described in Chapter 89.

Review articles summarize the existing scientific research on a given topic and are a good way for readers to quickly familiarize themselves with the current evidence within an area of research. Review articles are comprehensive, typically written by experts in the field, and are often solicited by the editors of a journal. The authors will usually frame published research within the context of other contemporaneous works and the current and future directions of the research topic being reviewed.

Brief reports and letters provide concise research reports that address a timely issue or spur further research if published before a full original research manuscript has been submitted. Letters are also an opportunity for readers to submit arguments extending or rebutting articles that were previously published in that journal.

Case studies allow researchers or clinicians to share specific examples of unusual or unexpected clinical findings in a single patient that may be instructive to a broader readership. A case series is similar to a case study but describes similar clinical phenomena across multiple patients.

Editorials are essays that encompass the opinion of the author about a subject, usually of topical relevance, or highlight the important scientific contributions of an original research article that was published in the same journal issue. Similar to review articles, editorials are usually solicited by the journal editor, written by experts in the field, and provide important context with which to frame the original research article.

THE PEER REVIEW PROCESS

The peer review process is an important component of publishing original research. Most respected journals, whether web-based or traditional print journals, will have a robust peer review process in place. Once an original research manuscript has been submitted by the authors, the journal editors will usually make a rapid decision about whether the study topic is appropriate for their readership. Authors will either receive notification that their submission was rejected without review, or that the manuscript has been sent out for review to at least two other experts in the field. Reviewers are asked to rate various aspects of the manuscript, including its **readability, novelty, methods, validity of results**, and **potential impact** on the field. They will often provide constructive feedback to the authors on ways the study can be substantially improved. Reviewers will then make a recommendation to the journal editors whether the study should be accepted, revised and resubmitted, or rejected. The editors will consider the reviewers' comments in making the final decision about the manuscript's disposition.

Although different journals may have different terminologies for these final decisions, in general, they fall into the following categories: accept as written, conditional acceptance (i.e., accept with minor revisions or accept with major revisions), revise and resubmit, or reject. **Acceptance** of a manuscript without any changes is extremely rare. **Conditional acceptance**, though frequently considered to be a positive outcome, is not a guarantee of acceptance. The editors still retain the right to reject the manuscript unless the manuscript's authors have satisfactorily addressed any concerns that are deemed important enough to be raised in the outcome letter. More common is a decision to **revise and resubmit**. The editor may require substantial changes to the original manuscript and usually requests a new manuscript submission that clearly highlights within the text what changes have been made in response to the outcome letter. Most of the time, the authors are also required to submit an accompanying document that responds to each of the points that may have been raised by the editor and reviewers during the peer review process. Finally, the editors can still decide to **reject** a manuscript after sending it out for review.

Once a manuscript has been through the peer review process and deemed acceptable for publication, the journal will then format the entire manuscript to fit the journal's style. This usually includes recreating or reformatting the tables and figures that were submitted with the manuscript, as well as detailed copyediting for grammar, punctuation, and clarity. **Proofs** of the formatted article, which show how the article will actually appear when it is finally printed, are sent to the author for final approval. Simultaneously, the journal will select the print issue that will feature the accepted article and decide whether the manuscript would benefit from an accompanying editorial. Although print journals usually require a lead time of several months after an original article has been accepted before it is actually published, a journal will often set an earlier date for online publication, typically referred to as "e-pub ahead of print." Expediting the dissemination of original research by publishing electronically on a journal's website allows readers to obtain the earliest access to interesting and timely research.

Accessing the Medical Literature

PRIMARY LITERATURE

In the past, readers needed to have a journal subscription or access to a medical library to read published articles. In the academic setting, it was very common for attending physicians to photocopy important articles and distribute them to their trainees. As in so many other arenas, access to research articles has been transformed with the arrival of the Internet, and most articles are now easily accessible online, either directly through the journal's website, or through indexed search engines. **Primary literature** refers to these original research articles that are authored by the researchers who performed the study and are published in peer-reviewed journals.[13]

Most readers are probably familiar with **PubMed**,[14] a free resource maintained by the National Center for Biotechnology Information[15] at the US National Library of Medicine,[16] which is located at the National Institutes of Health.[17] PubMed provides access to MEDLINE,[18] an online database that contains more than 28 million references to journal articles in life sciences, with a concentration on biomedicine. The database includes medical literature published from 1966 to the present day, with citations from more than 5200 journals in approximately 40 languages worldwide, with new articles being added daily. Search results include a list of article citations with links to the electronic full-text article if available. Although PubMed is most frequently used to access the primary literature, this resource is useful for accessing the secondary literature as well, which is described in the following section. Searching PubMed is free of charge, and many articles are available for viewing without a subscription or an academic institutional affiliation, including through the archival of full-text articles in PubMed Central. PubMed provides various mechanisms to access articles that are not freely available on the Internet, although fees may apply.

SECONDARY LITERATURE

In addition to primary sources, physicians may rely on other resources to remain informed about recent advances in their field. The term **secondary literature** is used to refer to written summaries of the primary literature that help synthesize or evaluate primary sources for the purpose of dissemination and incorporation of evidence-based medicine into practice.[13] These articles summarize the primary literature to varying degrees and with variable quality, depending on their purpose. **Systematic reviews** and **metaanalyses** are, in and of themselves, valued as high-quality research and important contributions to the medical literature. For example, the Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews[19] is a well-known and highly regarded resource for systematic reviews in health care. Readers should be aware, however, that **narrative reviews** differ from systematic reviews in that they are not obliged to provide unbiased information reflecting the totality of available knowledge. Narrative reviews can be useful, and an efficient source of information particularly when written by authors who might be expected to have an expert command of the available literature, but fundamentally differ from systematic reviews because they are not as rigorous or comprehensive in their approach to manuscript selection, which must be considered in their interpretation. Types of reviews and metaanalyses are further discussed in Chapter 89.

Clinical practice guidelines fall into the category of secondary literature as well. These are typically written by professional groups or government agencies to help guide clinician decision making and will often indicate the level of evidence supporting the practice recommendations that are being made. Other more filtered—yet still evidence-based—distillations of the existing research exist to facilitate clinical decision making by practicing clinicians at the bedside. Examples of the latter include websites like UptoDate[20] and WebMD.[21]

TRADITIONAL AND SOCIAL MEDIA

Finally, the medical literature can be indirectly accessed via both traditional and social media. Traditional media may include press releases issued by the author's institution or coordinated by the print journal to maximize the impact and newsworthiness of an important scientific advance. These press releases can often lead to articles in leading newspapers or newsmagazines that refer to the original article if they are considered of interest to the general public. However, traditional media can also inadvertently or deliberately present an inaccurate or sensationalized version of the article's conclusions, potentially not tempered by the study's limitations. Media reports of peer-reviewed articles are not necessarily written in collaboration with the authors of the article, and even though quotations may be excerpted from press releases and other sources, conclusions can be misrepresented. If a layperson's interpretation of a scientific finding is to be used for clinical practice, the validity of the conclusions presented must be verified against the original article itself.

Many scientists and clinicians are now keeping current with the latest evidence through social media sites such as Twitter[22] and Facebook,[23] or individual blogs, where leading scientists, researchers, and clinicians can link to original articles and provide their own spin or commentary on the relative merits or shortcomings of the most recently published research. Other less reliable, but easily accessible, resources include crowd-sourced websites such as Wikipedia.[24] However, the quality of the information presented on individual blogs or crowd-sourced sites depends

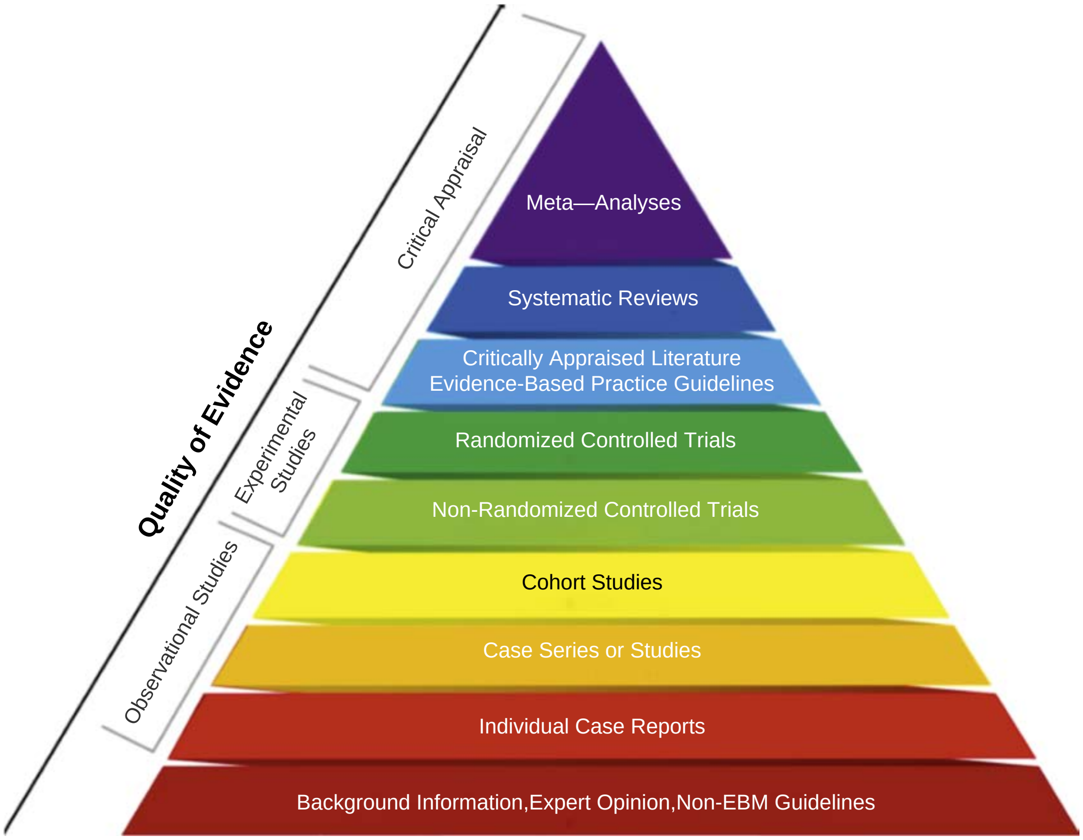

Quality of Evidence
Critical Appraisal
Experimental Studies
Observational Studies
Meta—Analyses
Systematic Reviews
Critically Appraised Literature
Evidence-Based Practice Guidelines
Randomized Controlled Trials
Non-Randomized Controlled Trials
Cohort Studies
Case Series or Studies
Individual Case Reports
Background Information,Expert Opinion,Non-EBM Guidelines

Fig. 90.1 The Evidence Pyramid.

significantly on the credentials of the individuals contributing to the website. Although the democratization of the medical literature has accelerated the dissemination of new research to both scientific audiences and to the public, it is still important for individual clinicians to understand how to approach the literature independently to separate the propaganda surrounding the latest research from the actual strengths and weaknesses of the study itself.

Assessing the Methodology of a Study

Understanding how and why a study was done is essential to understanding how its findings fit in with the progress of medical science. The quality of clinical research is highly dependent on many design choices that were made long before recruitment of the first patient, or collection of the first data record, and a familiarity with clinical research methodology will help all medical professionals critically evaluate the applicability of published findings to their own practice decisions.

As a first pass, it is easiest to separate research designs into two bins: **observational** and **interventional**. Within those designations are subcategories and variants with important implications for study quality. Furthermore, some studies such as metaanalyses incorporate aspects of both. Contrary to older notions of research interpretation, a randomized trial does not always produce better evidence than an observational (cohort) study, and a metaanalysis—far from being the "pinnacle"—is only as good as the evidence on which it rests.

THE "EVIDENCE PYRAMID" AND ITS EVOLUTION

Historically, those interested in evaluating study quality have been referred to an "evidence pyramid," where each step up the pyramid represents a step closer to truth (or quality, or best evidence) (Fig. 90.1).[25]

This pyramid produces a striking visual representation emphasizing the weaknesses—and relative abundance—of expert opinion and observational case studies, the importance of randomized controlled experimental trials, and the primacy of more recently developed summative methods, including systematic reviews and metaanalyses, which comprise the apex of evidentiary quality. But this is overly simplistic in today's world of complex patients with multiple intersecting conditions: the pyramid, with its unlabeled y-axis that may be thought of as "risk of bias" or "internal validity," rather than a progress toward "truth," is due for modification.[26]

Two attempts to refine this pyramid are in Figs. 90.2A and B. Fig. 90.2A highlights the variability in quality within a single type of study design, and the dependence of summative methods like systematic reviews upon the quality of existing evidence,[26] whereas Fig. 90.2B avoids the appearance of a hierarchy altogether, emphasizing that data derived from different methods is necessary to provide a strong foundation for scientific knowledge.[27] Another graphical reconceptualization of the way scientific evidence is generated was proposed by Walach and colleagues in 2006 (see Fig. 90.2C), and recently updated toward a "matrix" concept: their "Circle of Methods" provides a more granular categorization that differentiates between efficacy

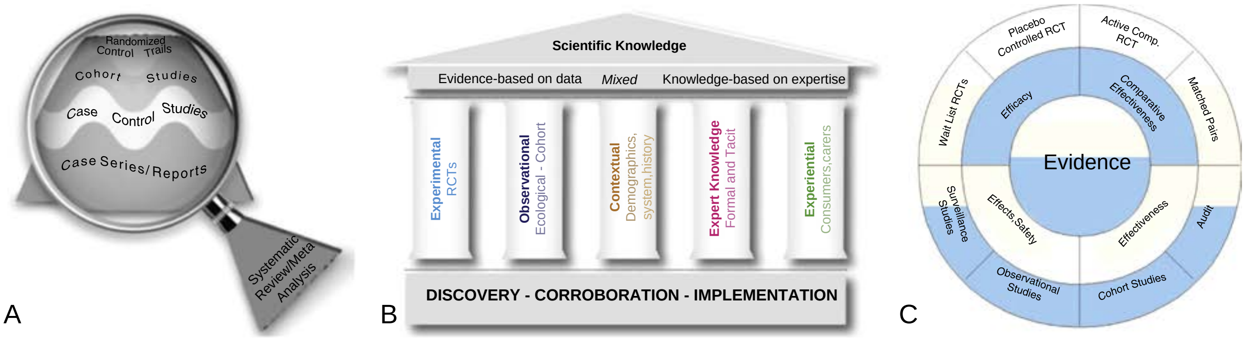

Randomized Control Trails
Cohort Studies
Case Control Studies
Case Series/Reports
Systematic Review/Meta Analysis
A
Scientific Knowledge
Evidence-based on data
Mixed
Knowledge-based on expertise
Experimental RCTs
Observational Ecological - Cohort
Contextual Demographics, system, history
Expert Knowledge Formal and Tacit
Experiential Consumers, carers
DISCOVERY - CORROBORATION - IMPLEMENTATION
B
Placebo Controlled RCT
Active Comp. RCT
Matched Pairs
Audit
Cohort Studies
Observational Studies
Surveillance Studies
Wait List RCTs
Efficacy
Comparative Effectiveness
Effectiveness
Effects, Safety
Evidence
C

Fig. 90.2 Proposed refinements of the "Evidence Pyramid," reflecting the lack of consensus in the scientific community about how to visually encapsulate the relationships among methods of generating evidence. (A) A refinement proposed by Murad and colleagues. (B) The Greek Temple model. (C) Circle of Methods. ([A], Redrawn from Murad MH, Asi N, Alsawas M, Alahdab F. New evidence pyramid. *Evid Based Med.* 2016;21(4):125–127. [B] Redrawn from Salvador-Carulla L, Lukersmith S, Sullivan W. From the EBM pyramid to the Greek temple: a new conceptual approach to guidelines as implementation tools in mental health. *Epidemiol Psychiatr Sci.* 2017;26(2):105–114. [C], Redrawn from Tugwell P, Knottnerus JA. Is the evidence pyramid now dead? *J Clin Epidemiol.* 2015;68(11):1247–1250.)

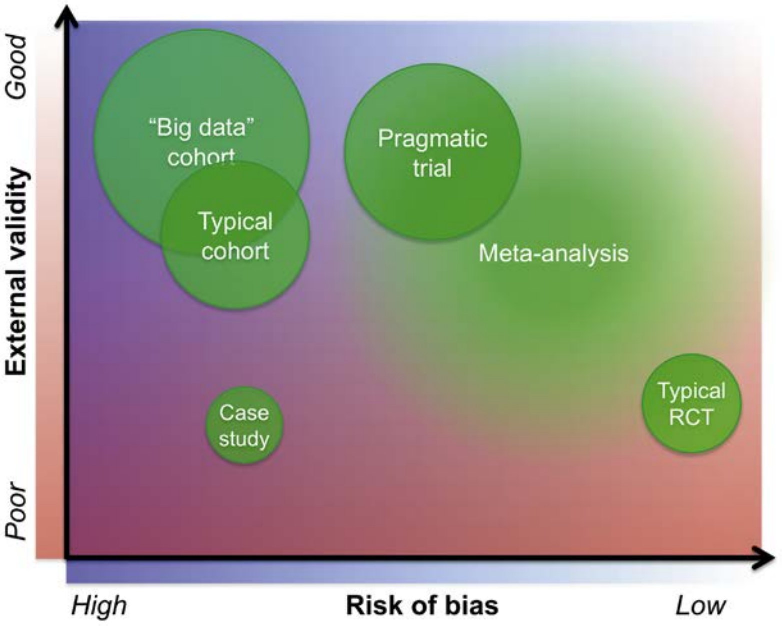


Fig. 90.3 The relationships between sample size (often implying higher costs), external validity, and risk of bias produces trade-offs in study design. Here, bubble size is proportional to the typical number of participants in a particular type of study (larger bubble indicates more participants).

and effectiveness, a crucial concept in the evolution of medical knowledge toward changing care for broad populations of patients.[28]

Perhaps the issue is that no single graphic can capture the unique strengths and limitations of the common experimental designs upon which the advancement of medical science relies. The perfect study would have no bias and a high level of external validity, reflecting some scientific truth that is universally applicable. This is probably impossible to do. Instead, when choosing among different clinical research designs, researchers are faced with many trade-offs between internal and external validity, feasibility (including costs), and risk of bias (Fig. 90.3).

BASIC RESEARCH DESIGNS

Trade-offs between observational and interventional designs are discussed more fully in Chapter 89. Briefly, traditional **observational studies** include cohort studies, case-control studies, and cross-sectional studies, which are unified by their non-interventional nature. This results in risk of bias, which can be mitigated (but not eliminated) by sensible experimental design and analytic choices. **Interventional trials** are the most used method of generating data to demonstrate causal relationships. While observational studies are subject to confounding by observed or unobserved variables, interventional trials take variable advantage of features meant to minimize bias: use of **controls, randomization**, and **blinding**. Understanding the implications of experimental design choices in these three areas, which are discussed in Chapter 89, underpins the assessment of trial quality.

As mentioned earlier in this chapter, summative studies like systematic reviews and metaanalyses offer another method of objectively summarizing available evidence and are discussed further in Chapter 89. Just as a summary of medical evidence presented on a layperson's news website must be approached with caution, a summary of evidence via metaanalysis or systematic review nonetheless glosses over what may be important differences in the quality and methodology of the underlying studies, and is highly reliant on the skill and thoroughness of its authors.[29] Far from being an easy way to understand "scientific truth" in the literature, summative methods of generating evidence hold as many pitfalls as their underlying trials. However, in skilled hands and with the right underlying materials, systematic reviews and metaanalyses can provide important evidence, which could not feasibly be generated any other way.

BIG DATA AND PRAGMATIC CLINICAL TRIALS

"Big data" studies have a unique and evolving place in the continuum of evidence. With the advent and widespread adoption of electronic medical records, enormous quantities of data are recorded every day during the routine provision of clinical care. This has led to two major evolutions in clinical research: the large **secondary data cohort study** and its interventional correlate, the **pragmatic clinical trial**.

Traditionally, data collection decisions for prospective cohort studies were based on the research query itself: for example, a study of lung function over time would obtain annual formal pulmonary function tests. All the anticipated necessary variables would be collected—height, weight, pulmonary function test results, chest x-rays, medication lists, exercise habits, dust mite exposure, and a detailed tobacco use history. From these variables, a (potentially extensive) list of confounding variables would be selected and, in mathematical modeling, accounted for, thus producing an estimate of the "independent effect" of the primary predictor, for example, air pollution exposure on the outcome of lung function.

Collecting extensive data is expensive, though, and requires time and resources. What if dust mite exposure and exercise habits are not hypothesized to be particularly important—could those be eliminated? What if, for no cost and only the time of an analyst to extract the data from an electronic medical record, we could use current tobacco use as a surrogate for a thorough tobacco use history, instead of hiring a clinical research nurse to collect the information? And if we felt that the height, weight, pulmonary function tests, and smoking history collected in the course of normal clinical care would be of sufficient quality, perhaps we could estimate air pollution exposure levels based on proximity to major roads—and, by eliminating the need to directly collect any specific data on our population, expand our population target to all those with valid values of these variables in our electronic medical records system? Thus, the "big data" study is born.

A more generic term for "big data" is "**secondary data**": data collected for purposes other than the study of a researcher's intended question. There are important fundamental differences between a traditional cohort study and the approach described here. Inherent in the compromise is a move from detailed and specific characterization of each participant to a more diffuse idea of individual participant characteristics, and a move from a small (and likely specific) population, compromising external validity, to one that is large and generalizable. Some phenomena simply cannot be studied any other way because they involve a subtle effect or rare outcome requiring large populations to show an association that exceeds our currently acceptable margins of uncertainty in strength—hence the term "big data." Some phenomena are particularly suited to study using this approach, because (acceptably) high-fidelity data are collected in the course of routine clinical care. One such example might be studies of association between postoperative respiratory adverse events and intraoperative mechanical ventilation parameters. Studies on the epidemiology of medical care, or its financial costs, are highly dependent on the availability and quality of secondary data.

There is a growing appreciation that the data collection infrastructure that supports the provision of daily medical care can also be used to support large-scale **pragmatic clinical trials**. Although the philosophy of a pragmatic trial was described before the widespread implementation of electronic medical records,[30] these studies have been greatly facilitated by the increase in availability of secondary data. In contrast to the typical randomized controlled trial, a pragmatic trial seeks to avoid restrictive inclusion criteria and highly protocolized care, more closely recapitulating the way medical care is provided to individual patients. They are typically categorized as **effectiveness**, rather than **efficacy**, trials. This means that findings may have excellent **external validity** (applicability to a broad population of patients and settings). But since the lack of protocolization may introduce random or nonrandom variability in care, these trials are typically very large: thousands or tens of thousands of participants. Pragmatic trials may also be more vulnerable to risk of bias than traditional randomized trials, since it may not be practical or possible to blind clinicians and/or participants, in addition to challenges introduced by using secondary data (described earlier).

One recent pragmatic trial example relevant to anesthesiology is the SMART trial, published in *NEJM*, which randomized 15,802 critically ill patients to receive normal saline (0.9% sodium chloride) or a balanced salt solution.[31] The pragmatic features in this trial included: a cluster-randomized design, where the ICU in which care was provided determined which solution the patient received (instead of individual randomization, which introduces additional protocol adherence challenges); use of the electronic medical record to prompt ordering providers to consider relative contraindications and, if none were present, follow the protocol (rather than having study interventions delivered only by study personnel); and outcome and adjustment variable collection by the electronic medical record (i.e., use of secondary data). Importantly, both interventions—the use of saline versus a balanced solution when intravenous crystalloid solution is required—are standard of care, and the requirement for informed participant consent was, in this trial, waived. The target sample size was achieved in fewer than 2 years of enrollment, with less than 1 year between completion of enrollment and publication. Concurrently, a second complementary trial—of saline versus balanced crystalloid in noncritically ill adults receiving intravenous fluids in the emergency department (SALT-ED trial)—was also run, enrolling over 13,000 patients with a similar randomization scheme and data collection methodology.[32] These two trials substantially contribute to a long-running debate in medicine, and are excellent examples of pragmatic clinical trials.

Evaluating the quality of a study based on data collected for other purposes is complex, challenging, and beyond the scope of this chapter. Fundamental differences in bias, generalizability, and even primary findings can be wrought by small and potentially undetectable design or analytic choices, such as geographically or socioeconomically limited populations; systematic problems in data quality resulting from misaligned incentives; inclusion or exclusion (by choice, or because of unavailability) of key confounding variables; presence of missing data and its treatment; statistical coding errors; and so on. Nevertheless, secondary data research has supported preliminary hypotheses that have launched innumerable research inquiries generating measurable improvements in human health, has allowed us to define the scope and costs of the medical care provided today, offers the opportunity to study research questions that would otherwise be completely inaccessible because of cost or ethical barriers, and holds enormous promise in the burgeoning era of "personalized medicine."

Tools to Ensure Study Quality

RECOGNITION OF THE NEED FOR STANDARDS IN STUDY REPORTING

Research papers are a massive simplification of months or years of work with thousands or maybe millions of choices encapsulated in 3000 words or fewer. Complete disclosure of all details of a work is neither practical nor desirable; the current standard is generally thought of as providing sufficient detail so that another investigator could reproduce the study. There is increasing recognition that, alongside published works meeting traditional standards, there are research papers of questionable quality, often with insufficient detail to understand the potential biases and limitations of the study's conclusions. Thus, a movement toward systematic, checklist-based disclosure of important methodological details began with the **CONSORT (Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials) Statement**[33] of guidelines for reporting randomized trials and has blossomed into the **EQUATOR (Enhancing the QUAlity and Transparency Of health Research) network**,[34] which serves as a central point for identifying reporting guidelines for a wide range of study types.

SUMMARY OF REPORTING GUIDELINES

The rapid adoption of these guidelines by all major journal publishing houses validates well-described concerns that medical literature is of variable (and sometimes poor) quality,[35,36] and that standardized reporting improves the quality and transparency—and therefore, the reliability and value—of medical studies. A list of the relevant guidelines for several major study types is in Table 90.1.

Importantly, even if authors do not use a study quality tool to structure their manuscripts, readers can still use the guidelines to understand where important information may have been omitted, and judge for themselves whether the reported results are reliable (Box 90.1).

REGISTRATION OF CLINICAL TRIALS AND STUDY PROTOCOLS

Guidelines to assess the quality of completed, published research, while helpful, do not address the full spectrum of bias. There is a growing movement to register clinical trials (to prevent selective publication of results that confirm a particular, preferred hypothesis, or to prevent protocol changes that may obscure or invalidate the results of a study) and, increasingly, to register protocols for observational studies as well. Uptake has been better for prospective cohort studies than retrospective studies. In 2014, PLOS Medicine updated its requirements that observational studies must: adhere to the appropriate EQUATOR checklist and requirements for data sharing; specify hypotheses

TABLE 90.1 Study Types and Their Corresponding Reporting Guidelines

Study Type	Reporting Guidelines
Randomized trials	CONSORT
Observational studies	STROBE
Systematic reviews	PRISMA
Case reports	CARE
Qualitative research	SRQR
Diagnostic/prognostic studies	STARD
Prediction models	TRIPOD
Quality improvement studies	SQUIRE
Economic studies	CHEERS
Preclinical animal studies	ARRIVE
Study protocols	SPIRIT
Systematic review and metaanalysis protocols	PRISMA-P
Clinical practice guidelines	AGREE

From equator-network.org: Reporting guidelines for main study types.

BOX 90.1 Steps to Ensure the Publication of High-quality Research

Before Publication

Encourage uniformity in how research is reported (common reporting standards)
Enforce transparency in the way research is conducted (study registration, publication of study protocols or evolving methodological notes collected during data analysis, data sharing)
Pre-prints: Deposition in a repository to collect public comments (and criticism) prior to submission for peer review

In the Review Process

Incentivize reviewers to review critically and constructively (open peer review, publication of reviews along with a completed manuscript)
Incentivize journals to commit to publish research based on methodological rigor, regardless of the findings which are not known or not disclosed at the time of acceptance ("Registered Reports")

After Publication

Continue to accept public commentary in an open forum (e.g., PubPeer)
Publicly flag articles that are under investigation, and promptly retract those that are later found not to adhere to rigorous practices
Encourage replication studies linked to the original work
Reduce disincentives (i.e., normalize the practice) for authors to identify and retract their own articles where findings are due to methodological errors or otherwise cannot be replicated

and planned analyses, document the actual analyses, and explain any differences between the planned and actual analyses; and share the protocol for any prospective study.[37] Rigorous requirements like these are not yet widespread, to the detriment of the quality of the medical literature.

Interpreting the Analysis of a Study

For many, the "statistical analysis" section of a quantitative research study is quickly skimmed on the way to the more interesting results and discussion section. In some situations, like those with a fairly straightforward and well-standardized analytic plan, as with a simple randomized controlled trial, this may be an acceptable time-saving practice. However, the authors' experience is that often, readers do not have the training to interpret a moderately complex analytic plan, even with careful reading. In reality, gaining the training to do this with facility is not practical for most consumers of the medical literature, and the responsibility falls to journal reviewers to ensure that appropriate analytic plans are used in published work (see The Publication Process). We hope here to provide a brief primer and, importantly, equip readers with the knowledge to interpret the commonalities among research designs.

THE CONCERN OVER $P < .05$

Formerly codified as the altar upon which much quantitatively based medical research lives or dies, "$P < 0.05$" is increasingly viewed as an arbitrary threshold that says very little about clinical meaning, or even the likelihood that a finding is due to chance. Over mounting concern that *P*-value misuse was rampant, the American Statistical Society took the exceptionally unusual step of releasing a statement,[38] in March 2016, to help usher science into a "post $P < 0.05$ era."[39]

The statement addressed six key principles (Table 90.2), which should guide interpretation of *P*-values. We refer the interested reader to Greenland and colleagues' even more comprehensive list of ways to misinterpret a *P*-value; they list 25 and provide a helpful introduction to the philosophy behind *P*-values that is accessible to, and in fact targeted toward, non-statisticians.[40]

At a minimum, reporting of a statistical test should include both the *P*-value and a measure of **effect size,** such as an odds ratio or an absolute difference, and **uncertainty,** such as a confidence interval. A measure of absolute or relative difference yields the most likely magnitude and direction of the effect (based on model choices and assumptions). The confidence interval indicates the degree of precision in that estimate. Without even invoking a *P*-value, the reader now understands the effect size and uncertainty in the measurement and may decide, for himself or herself, whether the results aid understanding of a particular phenomenon. *P*-values may soon find themselves left out of the conversation.

TABLE 90.2 American Statistical Society Statement on *P*-values

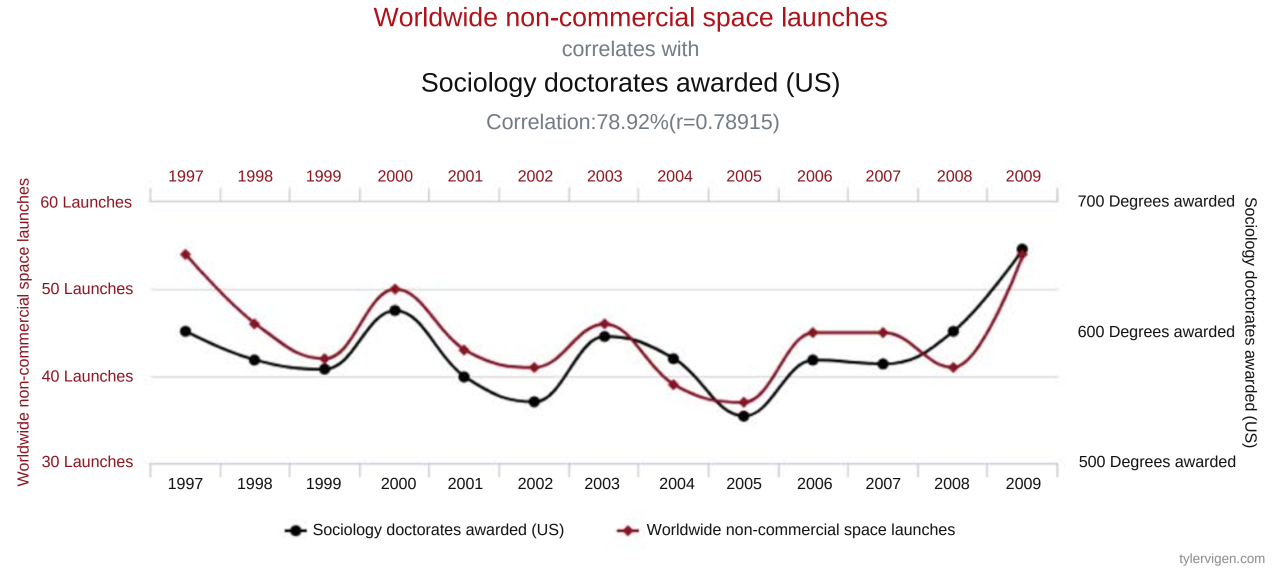
Six Principles	Interpretation
P-values can indicate how incompatible the data are with a specified statistical model	If the model is clearly incompatible, the *P*-value will often be small (e.g., because model assumptions are not met). A small *P*-value does not imply that the chosen model is relevant to the data.
P-values do not measure the probability that the studied hypothesis is true, or the probability that the data were produced by random chance alone	The underlying analytic choices—which may be extremely complex—contribute as much to the relevance of the analysis as the model choice and the statistical test that is reported
Scientific conclusions and business or policy decisions should not be based only on whether a *P*-value passes a specific threshold	A conclusion is no more or less true at $P = .04$ than it is at $P = .06$; thresholds are arbitrary
Proper inference requires full reporting and transparency	A *P*-value is the product of its analytic plan and the data itself; therefore, the full output of all tested hypotheses (including those with *P*-values deemed "not significant") should be presented to prevent selective or biased reporting of statistically significant findings
A *P*-value, or statistical significance, does not measure the size of an effect or the importance of a result	Subtle and clinically irrelevant differences can have a tiny *P*-value, especially with highly precise measurements and/or a large sample size, and clinically important differences can be "nonsignificant" if the measurements are imprecise or the sample size is small. Statistical significance is not an indicator of clinical relevance
By itself, a *P*-value does not provide a good measure of evidence regarding a model or hypothesis	A *P*-value is inseparable from the details of its methodology and, without context, gives inadequate information about effect size and uncertainty so as to be essentially uninterpretable

REDUCING BIAS IN STUDY DESIGN

The analysis plan of a study depends, first, on what study design was chosen. Simplistically, certain study designs, such as a randomized, controlled trial, address potential bias introduced by baseline differences between the comparison and experimental groups by **randomization**, and others must control for that bias in other ways.

Discussed more thoroughly elsewhere in this book (see Chapter 89), randomization is a process used by prospective trials to attempt to control for bias between two or more comparison groups. In its ideal application, it results in a balance between measured and unmeasured factors between the two groups, such that the only difference is the receipt, or nonreceipt, of the treatment of interest. Randomization is the only design that is capable of definitively addressing **unmeasured confounders,** explaining why randomized controls are regarded as a high standard of evidence.

Randomization is not perfect, though. By its very nature, it is possible that certain covariates will (randomly) not be well balanced between the groups. Imbalance in measured covariates can also imply unmeasurable imbalance in those covariates which are unknown. This tends to be a bigger problem in small trials, where a small sample size is left unable to compensate for random variation. One potential



Data sources: Federal Aviation Administration and National Science Foundation

Fig. 90.4 A strong, but spurious, correlation. (From Vigen T. *Spurious Correlations*. New York: Hachette Books; 2015.)

option is to perform **stratified randomization**, where trial participants are first **stratified** by an important clinical predictor (e.g., smoking status), and then randomized to ensure that the groups are balanced on smoking status.

If a "treatment" or characteristic cannot be randomly assigned—for example, childhood socioeconomic status—a researcher could design a **matched** study, where each participant is matched to another who differs on receipt or nonreceipt of the treatment but is otherwise similar; such as, close in age, same gender, similar medical comorbidities. This method of balancing two groups is used in matched cohort studies and in propensity matching (whereby a probability of receiving a certain treatment is calculated, and participants with similar probability of treatment are matched according to whether they were or were not treated). The drawback is that even perfect balance of measured confounders does not ensure perfect balance of unmeasured confounders, which can be a serious source of bias.

A growing roster of increasingly complex statistical methods can be used to adjust for the individual influence of measured confounders mathematically, ultimately producing an estimate of an effect size **adjusted** for those measured confounders. Like any other statistical method, there are a litany of assumptions—some obvious, and some subtle—which must be satisfied for a model to produce accurate results. Like matching, however, adjustment cannot address unmeasured confounders, and there is an additional layer of complexity in that the modeling choices made by the researchers (e.g., which variables to include, and the strategy of building a model), which are rarely discussed in a manuscript, can have profound impact on the effect size estimate, the presence of "statistical significance," and even the direction of the purported effect. Common examples of adjustment methods are linear and logistic regression.

The fundamental differences between randomization and other ways of avoiding bias is the theoretical possibility to adjust for unmeasured confounders. For this reason, observational studies, which are typically limited to matching or mathematical adjustment, rarely produce strong evidence of **causation**. Rather, they can demonstrate an **association**, or a **correlation**—that is, that an outcome is more frequent after a certain treatment—but cannot prove that the outcome is caused by that treatment. This has a major impact on the language which can (or should) be used to describe the findings, and unfortunately, studies demonstrating correlation often find that the "translation" by popular media conflates *correlation* and *causation.*

CORRELATION VERSUS CAUSATION

More humorously, an entire website dedicated to the notion that **correlation does not imply causation** has identified mathematically implausible links between, for example, the number of noncommercial space launches and sociology doctorates awarded in the United States (Fig. 90.4).[41]The absurdness of this website serves to emphasize the importance of understanding when causal language is appropriate, and when relationships are only observed as associations. Furthermore, the underlying mechanism generating these correlations is that of multiple comparisons: the author uses publicly available data sources, along with a computer-based data mining algorithm, to test millions of correlations and identify the ones that are "statistically significant." The parallels between his methodology and that of unscrupulous, *P*-value-focused researchers are, unfortunately, clear.

DATA-DRIVEN ANALYTIC METHODS

The backbone of medical research is the hypothesis-driven study of medical outcomes. Understanding medical research methods and the underlying hypothesis allows us to determine which published work is hypothesis-driven, and which is not (often disparagingly referred to as "data dredging"). However, an emerging discipline of data-driven analytics, rooted in computer science rather than traditional epidemiology or medicine, is increasingly showing promise as a way to manage and glean insights from the enormous volumes of data that are collected through clinical work. Many of the analytic approaches look for patterns in data, without regard to known clinical hypotheses or physiologically probable correlations. Traditional statistical concerns, like power, adjustment for multiple comparisons, nonrandom missing or erroneous data, and selective pursuit of "statistically promising" correlations, are difficult to frame in the context of this emerging methodology.

Artificial intelligence (AI), **machine learning**, and **deep learning** all refer to methods of data-driven analysis incorporating a learning algorithm: computer algorithms that change based on the data they receive.[42] The inherent complexity of these methods and the "learning" —by which an algorithm changes over time from how it was initially programmed to an evolution based on received data—make it extremely difficult to critically evaluate the quality of research that uses these analytic techniques. Usual parameters, such as *P*-values, confidence intervals, and point estimates may no longer apply. Metrics for understanding traditional "research quality" fail, but as these techniques increasingly gain acceptance, anesthesiology must continue to evolve its understanding of what data-driven methods may offer.

The Dark Side of the Medical Literature

In 2005, John Ioannidis published a seminal paper succinctly and provocatively titled, "Why Most Published Research Findings Are False,"[43] which helped spur the explosion of initiatives to improve the quality of research publications detailed earlier (see Tools to Ensure Study Quality). Two decades later, how have we done? A study attempting to replicate 100 high-profile research papers published in 2008 from three psychology journals depressingly concluded that only 39% could be replicated.[44] There is no reason to suspect disciplines other than psychology are not equally affected. Dr. Ioannidis's thesis holds that most published research findings are, apparently, false.[43]

INCENTIVES TO PUBLISH POOR-QUALITY RESEARCH

For Researchers

The incentives for researchers seem obvious. High academic productivity (i.e., publication) is explicitly or implicitly expected as a condition for ongoing funding, promotion, tenure, and compensation. Assuming that poor-quality research is not recognized as poor (for reasons of deliberate or unconscious exclusion of results that do not fit a hypothesis, undisclosed or unrecognized bias, successfully disguised research fraud, and so on), the number of publications, and the quality of the journals in which they are published, provides a quick way to decide whether a researcher is an expert or a dilettante.

But beyond academic prestige, some countries explicitly award cash bonuses for high-profile publications in journals such as *Science*[45] and *Nature*.[46] Availability of a government-initiated cash reward for successful publication is associated with a 46% increase in submissions to *Science*, although the authors of the study infer that, because of lower acceptance rates, cash incentives also encourage the submission of lower-quality research.[47] A recent survey of the monetary reward system in China revealed the magnitude of these potential rewards: cash incentives for publication in the most prestigious journals can be up to 20 times the annual salary of a university professor.[48]

Another incentive has to do with the conclusions of the research itself, and the likelihood of publication. Strong and surprising associations tend to be easier to publish in top journals, while subtle, or unsurprising, or complex/interdependent findings are more likely to be relegated to a small journal, resulting in less reward for the investigator. A "surprising" association implies that the pre-test probability, the likelihood of finding that association, given what we knew before the study, was low. But as Ioannidis shows, that "surprising" association only increases the post-test probability of an improbable association slightly, because of the high likelihood that the newly-demonstrated association is due to chance and/or bias.[43] It remains probable that the finding is wrong, particularly if flexible data analysis methods have been used and the authors have, intentionally or not, engaged in selective reporting. Nonetheless, a novel, statistically significant effect is likely to find a home in a journal, and mathematical modeling studies have shown how spurious findings can become "canonized" into facts using plausible values for publication probabilities that depend upon whether the finding is positive or negative, with bias against publication of negative findings.[49]

Furthermore, conducting adequately powered experiments with low risk of bias requires effort. Lower effort, as in small trials, with high risk of bias, is paradoxically more likely to generate novel positive results, and novel positive results are more likely to result in the reward of publication. Even without conscious bias a low-effort approach can generate the trappings of academic success while adding little to reproducible, meaningful medical research.

For Medical Journals

In 1980, a 101-word letter to the editor titled "Addiction Rare in Patients Treated with Narcotics" was published in the high-impact *NEJM*. It disclosed no methodological details, provided no information about the included patients, and used the "non-standard" interpretation of "reasonably well documented addiction," which was reported in 4 of roughly 12,000 patients receiving a narcotic prescription. The letter went on to be cited more than 600 times and may have provided foundational support to a narrative promoted by opioid manufacturers that was used to mislead prescribers, users, and regulators of opioid medications.[50] The original letter is now modified by an editor's note on the *NEJM* website, that "For reasons of public health, readers should be aware that this letter has been 'heavily and uncritically cited' as evidence that addiction is rare with opioid therapy."[51]

Bad science, particularly when it finds itself supporting a position that brings frequent references from follow-on work, can nonetheless reward its publishing journal with an improvement in ***impact factor***, a heavily criticized but still universal method of ranking the "best" journals. The impact factor is the average number of citations per paper over a 2-year interval, and thus, frequently cited papers repay a journal with an increase in impact factor.

Conversely, replication studies are rarely cited, and thus journals are not incentivized to publish them. Since it is an average, a journal's impact factor clearly does not directly reflect the quality of an individual paper, nor can it be used to distinguish high-quality research from highly sensational work in an explosive field, or citations resulting from well-founded post-publication criticism from the research community (as in the case of the *NEJM* letter, noted previously, which we have deliberately avoided citing in this chapter).

MISCONDUCT IN THE PUBLICATION PROCESS

The availability of the Internet for the communication of research findings has revolutionized the academic publishing business. However, the fundamental components of rigorous peer review, editorial decisions, and publishing services remain largely unchanged. It is entirely possible, and perhaps desirable, to publish well-conducted research in an online-only format, after proper peer review, and it is also completely appropriate for open access publications to charge fees that support the costs of the review and publication process and the journal's overhead (in the absence of subscription fees). However, there has been exploitation of the open-access movement: **Predatory journals**, often styled as "open access," take advantage of the publication fees required by legitimate open access journals, sometimes on the order of several thousand dollars, to "publish" an article without appropriate peer review or editorial oversight. Journals may promise an exceptionally rapid peer review process (easily accomplished when no peer review takes place), offer low barriers to publication such as partial publication cost waivers, mention publication costs late in the review process after the manuscript has been accepted, or invite editorials or review articles with no specified topic.

However, it is very difficult to distinguish a journal's quality based on those characteristics alone, as legitimate journals may conduct rapid peer review (with reviewers motivated to act with a short turn-around time), offer page publication waivers for specified situations, and invite articles on a wide variety of topics. An attempt has been made to generate and maintain a list of predatory journals and criteria to identify them.[52] Unfortunately, the distinction is not black-and-white, the list of criteria may be helpful, as may a website available at thinkchecksubmit.org,[53] founded by a coalition of scholarly organizations (including *BioMed Central*[54] and the *Committee on Publication Ethics*[55]), which provides authors with a checklist to help identify trustworthy journals. Fundamentally, consumers of the medical literature must be aware that a published article no longer implies any degree of peer review in many of these predatory journals.

There are also obvious potential sources for misconduct in the review process, such that the *Committee on Publication Ethics* maintains detailed flow sheets to assist journal editors in addressing allegations of misconduct, such as plagiarism, duplicate publication, data fabrication, "ghost" or "gift" authorship, and reviewer appropriation of an author's ideas.[56] These have been well described, are clearly unethical, and continue to evolve: a recent "new" source of misconduct is the spoofing of reviewers, where an author recommends reviewers either under names of real scientists or pseudonyms, but lists spurious email addresses that go to colleagues or to the author him/herself. The author then completes the "peer review," recommending minimal or no changes. This type of fraud can be extremely difficult to detect, as are other ways of "gaming the system," which have no doubt evolved even further since *Nature* published an initial exposé in 2014.[57]

In 2017, a Discover Magazine blog called Neuroskeptic published a post about a Star Wars-themed spoof manuscript's success in the dark world of predatory journals.[58] The nonsensical paper—"an absurd mess of factual errors, plagiarism and movie quotes," in the words of its author—about midi-chlorians (a fictional intracellular entity closely linked to the transmission of Jedi powers) was accepted by the *American Journal of Medical and Biological Research* (although a fee was subsequently requested prior to publication, which the blogger did not pay) and was published by the *International Journal of Molecular Biology: Open Access*, *Austin Journal of Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, and the *American Research Journal of Biosciences*. The publications were withdrawn after the spoof was revealed.

Even a cursory reading of the paper would have sufficed for someone unfamiliar with Star Wars to identify the paper as unfocused and unclear, with bizarre colloquialisms; of course, it is also written about a fictional organelle, which should have been immediately recognized by any reviewer with appropriate experience in cell biology. Nonetheless, beyond the manuscript's successful publication in three journals, the fictional first author of the "manuscript," Dr. Lucas McGeorge, was shortly thereafter offered an unsolicited invitation to join the editorial board of another research journal.[58] This anecdote proves, to a distressing degree, the existence of these unscrupulous journals, and how distortion of the medical literature could easily occur.

EVOLVING MECHANISMS TO DETECT RESEARCH MISCONDUCT

How might we align incentives in the manuscript preparation, review, and post-publication process to achieve checks on the amount of low-quality research that is published?[59] Currently, the supposedly "self-correcting" nature of the medical literature is in question.[60] Addressing this may require fundamental changes to the way the medical community views research—its generation and its consumption—but refusal to change will undermine public trust in a massive, productive, and necessary enterprise.

In 2012, a nearly two-decades-long career in anesthesiology research built on fabrication was exposed,[61] ten years after the author's work was first publicly called into question.[62] One hundred and sixty-eight randomized trials performed by Yoshitaka Fujii and colleagues were statistically compared against similar trials from other authors. Although the underlying statistical analysis may not have been optimal, Carlisle demonstrated that Fujii's reported distributions of participant characteristics were extremely unlikely to be observed in nature—values were too reliably close to population means, failing to display expected variability.[63] An investigation by Fujii's home institution uncovered widespread data fabrication, and ultimately concluded that "it is as if someone sat at a desk and wrote a novel about a research idea."[64]

As a result, 172 of Fujii's papers have been retracted. The stunning scope of the fraud is eclipsed by the even more stunning duration of his misconduct: at least 10 years of fabrication followed by another decade of public speculation without actionable results. High-profile misconduct cases like this have prompted calls for widespread adoption of automated methods to identify suspicious work both pre- and post-publication.[65] However, those calls have been met with an equally loud resistance, on statistical and ethical grounds. The criticisms focus on the method's inadequate consideration of expected interdependence among study participant baseline variables among other methodological problems, and highlight the potential stigmatization of honest researchers that could stem from an inadequately nuanced approach to questions about academic integrity.[66,67] Ultimately, as in the case of plagiarism-checking software (in widespread use in medical publishing), careful and dispassionate human interpretation will prove necessary as these techniques are refined and gain greater acceptance.

Conclusions

Medical knowledge is evolving at a more rapid pace than ever before. Understanding how to approach a published study, from its design to the quality of its conclusions, is necessary for individual and systems-level care improvement. Alertness to known predictors of incomplete or inaccurate information will help clinicians and scientists continue to generate useful knowledge and provide the best, evidence-based anesthesia care.

Complete references available online at expertconsult.com.

References

1. Sackett DL. *Can Med Assoc J*. 1982;126(12):1373.
2. Burls A. What is critical appraisal? *What is...? Series*. 2009:1–8.
3. Smith R, Rennie D. *JAMA*. 2014;311(4):365–367. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2013.286182.
4. Oxman AD, et al. *JAMA*. 1993;270(17):2093–2095.
5. Gordon G, et al. *Users' Guides to the Medical Literature: A Manual for Evidence-Based Clinical Practice*. 3rd ed. McGraw-Hill Education; 2015.
6. The new england journal of medicine. https://www.nejm.org/.
7. Journal of the american medical association. https://jamanetwork.com/journals/jama/currentissue.
8. The BMJ. https://www.bmj.com/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
9. The lancet. https://www.thelancet.com/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
10. Anesthesiology. http://anesthesiology.pubs.asahq.org/journal.aspx. Accessed May 8, 2018.
11. British Journal of Anaesthesia. https://bjanaesthesia.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
12. Anaesthesia & Analgesia. https://journals.lww.com/anesthesia-analgesia/pages/default.aspx. Accessed May 8, 2018.
13. University of Illinois at Chicago's Library of the Health Sciences at Peoria. Evidence based medicine: levels of evidence. https://researchguides.uic.edu/c.php?g=252338&p=3950157. Accessed May 7, 2018.
14. PubMed. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
15. National center for biotechnology information. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
16. U.S. National library of medicine. https://www.nlm.nih.gov/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
17. National institutes of health. https://www.nih.gov/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
18. MEDLINE: description of the database. https://www.nlm.nih.gov/bsd/medline.html. Accessed May 8, 2018.
19. Cochrane database of systematic reviews. http://www.cochranelibrary.com/cochrane-database-of-systematic-reviews/index.html. Accessed May 8, 2018.
20. UptoDate. https://www.uptodate.com/home. Accessed May 8, 2018.
21. WebMD. https://www.webmd.com/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
22. Twitter. https://www.twitter.com. Accessed May 8, 2018.
23. Facebook. https://www.facebook.com/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
24. Wikipedia. https://www.wikipedia.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
25. Evidence-based medicine: resources by levels of evidence. https://libguides.cmich.edu/cmed/ebm/pyramid. Accessed May 8, 2018.
26. Murad MH, et al. *Evid Based Med*. 2016;21(4):125–127.
27. Salvador-Carulla L, et al. *Epidemiol Psychiatr Sci*. 2017;26(2):105–114.
28. Walach H, et al. *BMC Med Res Methodol*. 2006;6:29.
29. Berlin JA, Golub RM. *JAMA*. 2014;312(6):603–605.
30. Roland M, Torgerson DJ. *BMJ*. 1998;316(7127):285.
31. Semler MW, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(9):829–839.
32. Self WH, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(9):819–828.
33. Consort statement. http://www.consort-statement.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
34. Enhancing the QUAlity and transparency of health research. http://www.equator-network.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
35. Thakur A, et al. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2001;36(8):1160–1164.
36. Chan AW, Altman DG. *Lancet*. 2005;365(9465):1159–1162.
37. PLOS Medicine Editors. *PLoS Med*. 2014;11(8):e1001711.
38. Wasserstein RL, Lazar NA. *The American Statistician*. 2016;70(2):129–133.
39. American Statistical Organization. www.amstat.org/asa/files/pdfs/P-ValueStatement.pdf. Accessed May 8, 2018.
40. Greenland S, et al. *Eur J Epidemiol*. 2016;31(4):337–350.
41. Vigen T. Spurious correlations. http://www.tylervigen.com/spurious-correlations. Accessed May 8, 2018.
42. LeCun Y, et al. *Nature*. 2015;521(7553):436–444.
43. Ioannidis JP. *PLoS Med*. 2005;2(8):e124.
44. Open Science Collaboration. *Science*. 2015;349(6251):aac4716. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aac4716.
45. Science. http://www.sciencemag.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
46. Nature. https://www.nature.com/nature/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
47. Franzoni C, et al. *Science*. 2011;333(6043):702–703.
48. Quan W, et al. *Aslib Journal of Info Mgmt*. 2017;69(5):486–502.
49. Nissen SB, et al. *Elife*. 2016;5.
50. Leung PTM, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(22):2194–2195.
51. Addiction rare in patients treated with narcotics, with editor's note. https://www.nejm.org/doi/10.1056/NEJM198001103020221. Accessed May 8, 2018.
52. Beall J. Criteria for determining predatory open-access publishers. https://scholarlyoa.files.wordpress.com/2012/11/criteria-2012-2.pdf. Accessed August 5, 2019.
53. Think Check. Submit. https://thinkchecksubmit.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
54. BioMed central. https://www.biomedcentral.com/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
55. Committee on Publication Ethics (COPE). https://publicationethics.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
56. Committee on publication ethics flowcharts. https://publicationethics.org/resources/flowcharts. Accessed May 8, 2018.
57. Ferguson C, et al, Oransky I. *Nature*. 2014;515(7528):480–482.
58. Neuroskeptic. *Predatory Journals hit by 'Star Wars' Sting*. 2017.
59. Gorman DM, et al. *Sci Eng Ethics*. 2017.
60. Allison DB, et al. *Nature*. 2016;530(7588):27–29.
61. Carlisle JB. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(5):521–537.
62. Kranke P, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(4):1004–1007.
63. Carlisle JB, et al. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(7):848–858.
64. Anesthesiologist fabricates 172 papers. https://www.the-scientist.com/?articles.view/articleNo/32312/title/Anesthesiologist-Fabricates-172-Papers/. Accessed May 7, 2018.
65. Loadsman JA, McCulloch TJ. *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72(8):931–935.
66. Kharasch ED, Houle TT. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(5):733–737.
67. Mascha EJ, et al. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(4):1381–1385.

References

1. Sackett DL. How to read clinical journals. *Can Med Assoc J*. 1982;126(12):1373.
2. Burls A. *What is Critical Appraisal?* 2009:1–8.
3. Smith R, Rennie D. Evidence-based medicine—an oral history. *JAMA*. 2014;311(4):365–367. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2013.286182.
4. Oxman AD, Sackett DL, Guyatt GH. Users' guides to the medical literature. I. How to get started. The evidence-based medicine working group. *JAMA*. 1993;270(17):2093–2095.
5. Guyatt Gordon, Rennie Drummond, Meade Maureen O, Cook Deborah J. *Users' Guides to the Medical Literature: A Manual for Evidence-Based Clinical Practice*. 3rd ed. McGraw-Hill Education; 2015.
6. The New England Journal of Medicine. https://www.nejm.org/.
7. Journal of the American Medical Association. https://jamanetwork.com/journals/jama/currentissue.
8. The BMJ. https://www.bmj.com/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
9. The Lancet. https://www.thelancet.com/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
10. Anesthesiology. http://anesthesiology.pubs.asahq.org/journal.aspx. Accessed May 8, 2018.
11. British Journal of Anaesthesia. https://bjanaesthesia.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
12. Anaesthesia & Analgesia. https://journals.lww.com/anesthesia-analgesia/pages/default.aspx. Accessed May 8, 2018.
13. University of Illinois at Chicago's Library of the Health Sciences at Peoria. Evidence based medicine: levels of evidence. https://researchguides.uic.edu/c.php?g=252338&p=3950157. Accessed May 7, 2018.
14. PubMed. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
15. National Center for Biotechnology Information. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
16. U.S. National Library of Medicine. https://www.nlm.nih.gov/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
17. National Institutes of Health. https://www.nih.gov/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
18. MEDLINE: description of the database. https://www.nlm.nih.gov/bsd/medline.html. Accessed May 8, 2018.
19. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. http://www.cochranelibrary.com/cochrane-database-of-systematic-reviews/index.html. Accessed May 8, 2018.
20. UptoDate. https://www.uptodate.com/home. Accessed May 8, 2018.
21. WebMD. https://www.webmd.com/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
22. Twitter. https://www.twitter.com. Accessed May 8, 2018.
23. Facebook. https://www.facebook.com/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
24. Wikipedia. https://www.wikipedia.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
25. Evidence-based medicine: resources by levels of evidence. https://libguides.cmich.edu/cmed/ebm/pyramid. Accessed May 8, 2018.
26. Murad MH, Asi N, Alsawas M, Alahdab F. New evidence pyramid. *Evid Based Med*. 2016;21(4):125–127. https://doi.org/10.1136/ebmed-2016-110401.
27. Salvador-Carulla L, Lukersmith S, Sullivan W. From the EBM pyramid to the greek temple: a new conceptual approach to guidelines as implementation tools in mental health. *Epidemiol Psychiatr Sci*. 2017;26(2):105–114. https://doi.org/10.1017/S2045796016000767.
28. Walach H, Falkenberg T, Fonnebo V, Lewith G, Jonas WB. Circular instead of hierarchical: methodological principles for the evaluation of complex interventions. *BMC Med Res Methodol*. 2006;6:29.
29. Berlin JA, Golub RM. Meta-analysis as evidence: building a better pyramid. *JAMA*. 2014;312(6):603–605. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2014.8167.
30. Roland M, Torgerson DJ. What are pragmatic trials? *BMJ*. 1998;316(7127):285.
31. Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in critically ill adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(9):829–839. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1711584.
32. Self WH, Semler MW, Wanderer JP, et al. Balanced crystalloids versus saline in noncritically ill adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2018;378(9):819–828. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1711586.
33. Consort statement. http://www.consort-statement.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
34. Enhancing the quality and transparency of health research. http://www.equator-network.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
35. Thakur A, Wang EC, Chiu TT, et al. Methodology standards associated with quality reporting in clinical studies in pediatric surgery journals. *J Pediatr Surg*. 2001;36(8):1160–1164.
36. Chan AW, Altman DG. Epidemiology and reporting of randomised trials published in PubMed journals. *Lancet*. 2005;365(9465):1159–1162.
37. PLOS Medicine Editors. Observational studies: getting clear about transparency. *PLoS Med*. 2014;11(8):e1001711. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pmed.1001711.
38. Wasserstein RL, Lazar NA. The ASA's statement on p-values: context, process, and purpose. *The American Statistician*. 2016;70(2):129–133. https://doi.org/10.1080/00031305.2016.1154108.
39. American Statistical Organization. American Statistical Association releases statement onstatistical significance and p-values. www.amstat.org/asa/files/pdfs/P-ValueStatement.pdf. Accessed May 8, 2018.
40. Greenland S, Senn SJ, Rothman KJ, et al. Statistical tests, p values, confidence intervals, and power: a guide to misinterpretations. *Eur J Epidemiol*. 2016;31(4):337–350. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10654-016-0149-3.
41. Vigen T. Spurious correlations. http://www.tylervigen.com/spurious-correlations. Accessed May 8, 2018.
42. LeCun Y, Bengio Y, Hinton G. Deep learning. *Nature*. 2015;521(7553):436–444. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature14539.
43. Ioannidis JP. Why most published research findings are false. *PLoS Med*. 2005;2(8):e124.
44. Open Science Collaboration. PSYCHOLOGY. Estimating the reproducibility of psychological science. *Science*. 2015;349(6251):aac4716. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aac4716.
45. Science. http://www.sciencemag.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
46. Nature. https://www.nature.com/nature/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
47. Franzoni C, Scellato G, Stephan P. Science policy. Changing incentives to publish. *Science*. 2011;333(6043):702–703. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1197286.
48. Quan W, Chen B, Shu F. Publish or impoverish: an investigation of the monetary reward system of science in China (1999-2016). *Aslib Journal of Info Mgmt*. 2017;69(5):486–502.
49. Nissen SB, Magidson T, Gross K, Bergstrom CT. Publication bias and the canonization of false facts. *Elife*. 2016;5. https://doi.org/10.7554/eLife.21451.
50. Leung PTM, Macdonald EM, Stanbrook MB, Dhalla IA, Juurlink DN. A 1980 letter on the risk of opioid addiction. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(22):2194–2195. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMc1700150.
51. Addiction rare in patients treated with narcotics, with editor's note. https://www.nejm.org/doi/10.1056/NEJM198001103020221. Accessed May 8, 2018.
52. Beall J. Criteria for determining predatory open-access publishers. https://scholarlyoa.files.wordpress.com/2012/11/criteria-2012-2.pdf. Accessed May 8, 2018.
53. Think. Check. Submit. https://thinkchecksubmit.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
54. BioMed central. https://www.biomedcentral.com/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
55. Committee on Publication Ethics (COPE). https://publicationethics.org/. Accessed May 8, 2018.
56. Committee on Publication Ethics flowcharts. https://publicationethics.org/resources/flowcharts. Accessed May 8, 2018.
57. Ferguson C, Marcus A, Oransky I. Publishing: the peer-review scam. *Nature*. 2014;515(7528):480–482. https://doi.org/10.1038/515480a.
58. Neuroskeptic. *Predatory Journals Hit By 'Star Wars' Sting*. 2017.
59. Gorman DM, Elkins AD, Lawley M. A systems approach to understanding and improving research integrity. *Sci Eng Ethics*. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11948-017-9986-z.
60. Allison DB, Brown AW, George BJ, Kaiser KA. Reproducibility: a tragedy of errors. *Nature*. 2016;530(7588):27–29. https://doi.org/10.1038/530027a.
61. Carlisle JB. The analysis of 168 randomised controlled trials to test data integrity. *Anaesthesia*. 2012;67(5):521–537. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2044.2012.07128.x.

62. Kranke P, Apfel CC, Roewer N, Fujii Y. Reported data on granisetron and postoperative nausea and vomiting by Fujii et al. are incredibly nice! *Anesth Analg*. 2000;90(4):1004–1007.
63. Carlisle JB, Dexter F, Pandit JJ, Shafer SL, Yentis SM. Calculating the probability of random sampling for continuous variables in submitted or published randomised controlled trials. *Anaesthesia*. 2015;70(7):848–858. https://doi.org/10.1111/anae.13126.
64. Anesthesiologist fabricates 172 papers. https://www.the-scientist.com/?articles.view/articleNo/32312/title/Anesthesiologist-Fabricates-172-Papers/. Accessed May 7, 2018.
65. Loadsman JA, McCulloch TJ. Widening the search for suspect data—is the flood of retractions about to become a tsunami? *Anaesthesia*. 2017;72(8):931–935. https://doi.org/10.1111/anae.13962.
66. Kharasch ED, Houle TT. Errors and integrity in seeking and reporting apparent research misconduct. *Anesthesiology*. 2017;127(5):733–737. https://doi.org/10.1097/ALN.0000000000001875.
67. Mascha EJ, Vetter TR, Pittet JF. An appraisal of the Carlisle-Stouffer-Fisher method for assessing study data integrity and fraud. *Anesth Analg*. 2017;125(4):1381–1385. https://doi.org/10.1213/ANE.0000000000002415.